

## GROUP TAB LOCATOR

	Introduction	
0	Lubrication & Maintenance	
2	Suspension	
3	Differential & Driveline	
5	Brakes	
7	Cooling	
8A	Audio/Video	
8B	Chime/Buzzer	
8E	Electronic Control Modules	
8F	Engine Systems	
8G	Heated Systems	
8H	Horn	
8I	Ignition Control	
8J	Instrument Cluster	
8L	Lamps	
8M	Message Systems	
8N	Power Systems	
8O	Restraints	
8P	Speed Control	
8Q	Vehicle Theft Security	
8R	Wipers/Washers	
8W	Wiring	
9	Engine	
11	Exhaust System	
13	Frame & Bumpers	
14	Fuel System	
19	Steering	
21	Transmission and Transfer Case	
22	Tires/Wheels	
23	Body	
24	Heating & Air Conditioning	
25	Emissions Control 4.0L/4.7L	
	Component and System Index	
Service Manual Comment Forms		(Rear of Manual)

# INTRODUCTION

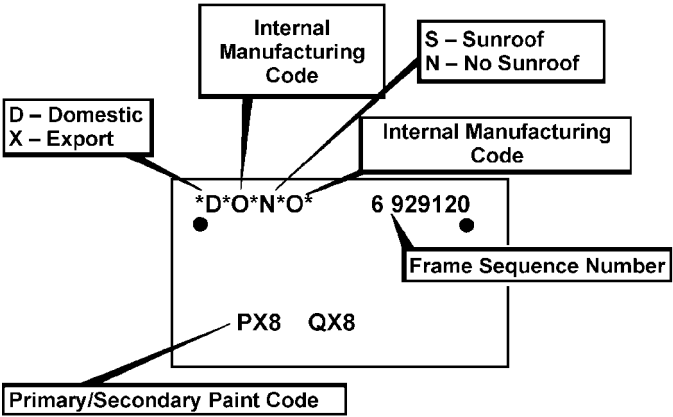
## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page	page
<b>BODY CODE PLATE</b>		
DESCRIPTION .....	1	
<b>VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER</b>		
DESCRIPTION .....	1	
<b>VEHICLE EMISSION CONTROL INFORMATION (VECI)</b>		
DESCRIPTION .....	3	
<b>VEHICLE SAFETY CERTIFICATION LABEL</b>		
DESCRIPTION .....	3	
<b>FASTENER IDENTIFICATION</b>		
DESCRIPTION .....	3	
<b>FASTENER USAGE</b>		
DESCRIPTION - FASTENER USAGE .....		6
<b>THREADED HOLE REPAIR</b>		
DESCRIPTION - THREADED HOLE REPAIR ....		6
<b>INTERNATIONAL SYMBOLS</b>		
DESCRIPTION - INTERNATIONAL SYMBOLS ...		6
<b>METRIC SYSTEM</b>		
DESCRIPTION .....		7
<b>TORQUE REFERENCES</b>		
DESCRIPTION .....		9

### BODY CODE PLATE

#### DESCRIPTION

A metal Body Code plate is located in the engine compartment and attached to the top of the right frame rail. The information listed on the plate (Fig. 1) is used for manufacturing and service purposes.



80a5f17a

Fig. 1 Body Code Plate

### VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

#### DESCRIPTION

The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) plate is attached to the top left side of the instrument panel. The VIN contains 17 characters that provide data concerning the vehicle. Refer to the decoding chart to determine the identification of a vehicle.



## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER (Continued)

## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER DECODING CHART

POSITION	INTERPRETATION	CODE = DESCRIPTION
1	Country of Origin	1 = Manufactured By DaimlerChrysler Corporation
2	Make	J = Jeep
3	Vehicle Type	4 = MPV Less Side Air Bags 8 = MPV With Side Air Bags
4	Gross Vehicle Weight Rating	G = 5001-6000 lbs.
5	Vehicle Line (WJ)	X = Grand Cherokee 4X2 (LHD) W = Grand Cherokee 4X4 (LHD)
5	Vehicle Line (WG)	2 = Grand Cherokee (LHD) 8 = Grand Cherokee (RHD)
6	Series	3 = Sport 4 = Laredo 5 = Limited 6 = Overland <b>WG Family (With Euro Group)</b> B = 4spd Auto Transmission E = 5spd Auto Transmission
7	Body Style	8 = 4dr Sport Utility
8	Engine	A = 2.7 Liter 20V Turbo Diesel Direct Injection S = 4.0 Liter Gasoline N = 4.7 Liter Gasoline J = 4.7 Liter Gasoline High Output
9	Check Digit	0 through 9 or X
10	Model Year	4=2004
11	Assembly Plant	C = Jefferson North Assembly Y = Chrysler Steyer Assembly
12 thru 17	Vehicle Build Sequence	

## VEHICLE EMISSION CONTROL INFORMATION (VECI)

### DESCRIPTION

All vehicles are equipped with a combined vehicle emission control information (VECI) label(s). The label is located in the engine compartment on the vehicle hood (Fig. 2). Two labels are used for vehicles built for sale in the country of Canada.

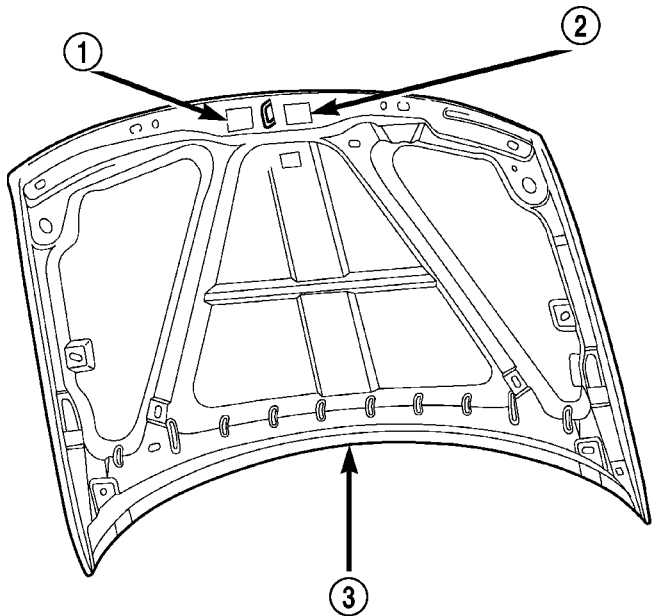


Fig. 2 VECI Label Location

- 1 - VECI LABEL (CANADIAN)
- 2 - VECI LABEL
- 3 - HOOD

The VECI label(s) contain the following:

- Engine family and displacement
- Evaporative family
- Emission control system schematic
- Certification application
- Spark plug and gap

The label also contains an engine vacuum schematic. There are unique labels for vehicles built for sale in the state of California and the country of Canada. Canadian labels are written in both the English and French languages. These labels are permanently attached and cannot be removed without defacing information and destroying label.

## VEHICLE SAFETY CERTIFICATION LABEL

### DESCRIPTION

A vehicle safety certification label (Fig. 3) is attached to every DaimlerChrysler Corporation vehi-

cle. The label certifies that the vehicle conforms to all applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards. The label also lists:

- Month and year of vehicle manufacture.
- Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR). The gross front and rear axle weight ratings (GAWR's) are based on a minimum rim size and maximum cold tire inflation pressure.
- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).
- Type of vehicle.
- Type of rear wheels.
- Bar code.
- Month, Day and Hour (MDH) of final assembly.
- Paint and Trim codes.
- Country of origin.

The label is located on the driver-side door shut-face.

MFD BY	DAIMLER CHRYSLER CORPORATION	DATE OF MFR	1-96 C	GVWR	2268 KG (05000 LB)
GAWR FRONT	1203 KG (2650 LB)	WITH TIRES	P185/75R14	RIMS AT	COLD
				14 X 5.5	380 KPA(35 PSI)
GAWR REAR	1225 KG (2700 LB)	WITH TIRES	P185/75R14	RIMS AT	COLD
				14 X 5.5	380 KPA(35 PSI)

THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE.

VIN: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX TYPE: SINGLE X DUAL

MDH: 010615 021 PAINT:POP VEHICLE MADE IN CANADA TRIM:C5C3 4848505

Fig. 3 VEHICLE SAFETY CERTIFICATION LABEL - TYPICAL

## FASTENER IDENTIFICATION

### DESCRIPTION

The SAE bolt strength grades range from grade 2 to grade 8. The higher the grade number, the greater the bolt strength. Identification is determined by the line marks on the top of each bolt head. The actual bolt strength grade corresponds to the number of line marks plus 2. The most commonly used metric bolt strength classes are 9.8 and 10.9. The metric strength class identification number is imprinted on the head of the bolt. The higher the class number, the greater the bolt strength. Some metric nuts are imprinted with a single-digit strength class on the nut face. Refer to the Fastener Identification and Fastener Strength Charts (Fig. 4) and (Fig. 5).

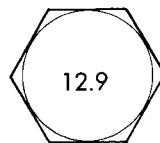
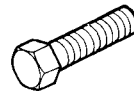
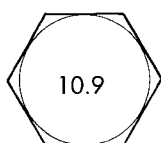
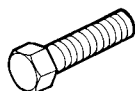
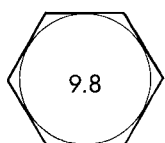
## FASTENER IDENTIFICATION (Continued)

**Bolt Markings and Torque - Metric****Commercial Steel Class**

9.8

10.9

12.9

**Bolt Head Markings**

Body Size	Torque				Torque				Torque			
	Cast Iron		Aluminum		Cast Iron		Aluminum		Cast Iron		Aluminum	
	Diam. mm	N•m	ft-lb	N•m	ft-lb	N•m	ft-lb	N•m	ft-lb	N•m	ft-lb	N•m
6	9	5	7	4	14	9	11	7	14	9	11	7
7	14	9	11	7	18	14	14	11	23	18	18	14
8	25	18	18	14	32	23	25	18	36	27	28	21
10	40	30	30	25	60	45	45	35	70	50	55	40
12	70	55	55	40	105	75	80	60	125	95	100	75
14	115	85	90	65	160	120	125	95	195	145	150	110
16	180	130	140	100	240	175	190	135	290	210	220	165
18	230	170	180	135	320	240	250	185	400	290	310	230

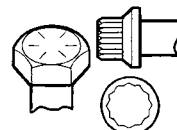
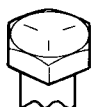
**Bolt Markings and Torque Values - U.S. Customary****SAE Grade Number**

5

8

**Bolt Head Markings**

These are all SAE Grade 5 (3) line

**Bolt Torque - Grade 5 Bolt****Bolt Torque - Grade 8 Bolt**

Body Size	Cast Iron		Aluminum		Cast Iron		Aluminum	
	N•m	ft-lb	N•m	ft-lb	N•m	ft-lb	N•m	ft-lb
1/4 - 20	9	7	8	6	15	11	12	9
- 28	12	9	9	7	18	13	14	10
5/16 - 18	20	15	16	12	30	22	24	18
- 24	23	17	19	14	33	24	25	19
3/8 - 16	40	30	25	20	55	40	40	30
- 24	40	30	35	25	60	45	45	35
7/16 - 14	60	45	45	35	90	65	65	50
- 20	65	50	55	40	95	70	75	55
1/2 - 13	95	70	75	55	130	95	100	75
- 20	100	75	80	60	150	110	120	90
9/16 - 12	135	100	110	80	190	140	150	110
- 18	150	110	115	85	210	155	170	125
5/8 - 11	180	135	150	110	255	190	205	150
- 18	210	155	160	120	290	215	230	170
3/4 - 10	325	240	255	190	460	340	365	270
- 16	365	270	285	210	515	380	410	300
7/8 - 9	490	360	380	280	745	550	600	440
- 14	530	390	420	310	825	610	660	490
1 - 8	720	530	570	420	1100	820	890	660
- 14	800	590	650	480	1200	890	960	710

Fig. 4 FASTENER IDENTIFICATION

## FASTENER IDENTIFICATION (Continued)

## HOW TO DETERMINE BOLT STRENGTH


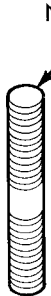


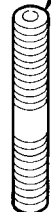



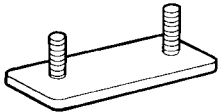

	Mark	Class		Mark	Class
Hexagon head bolt	 Bolt head No. 4 — 4T 5 — 5T 6 — 6T 7 — 7T 8 — 8T 9 — 9T 10 — 10T 11 — 11T		Stud bolt	 No mark 4T	
	 No mark 4T				
Hexagon flange bolt w/washer hexagon bolt	 No mark 4T			 Grooved 6T	
Hexagon head bolt	 Two protruding lines 5T				
Hexagon flange bolt w/washer hexagon bolt	 Two protruding lines 6T		Welded bolt		
Hexagon head bolt	 Three protruding lines 7T			 4T	
Hexagon head bolt	 Four protruding lines 8T				

Fig. 5 FASTENER STRENGTH

## FASTENER USAGE

### DESCRIPTION - FASTENER USAGE

**WARNING: USE OF AN INCORRECT FASTENER MAY RESULT IN COMPONENT DAMAGE OR PERSONAL INJURY.**

Fasteners and torque specifications references in this Service Manual are identified in metric and SAE format.

During any maintenance or repair procedures, it is important to salvage all fasteners (nuts, bolts, etc.) for reassembly. If the fastener is not salvageable, a fastener of equivalent specification must be used.

## THREADED HOLE REPAIR

























### DESCRIPTION - THREADED HOLE REPAIR

Most stripped threaded holes can be repaired using a Helicoil®. Follow the vehicle or Helicoil® recommendations for application and repair procedures.

## INTERNATIONAL SYMBOLS

### DESCRIPTION - INTERNATIONAL SYMBOLS

The graphic symbols illustrated in the following International Control and Display Symbols Chart are used to identify various instrument controls. The symbols correspond to the controls and displays that are located on the instrument panel.

					
1	2	3	4	5	6
					
7	8	9	10	11	12
					
13	14	15	16	17	18
					
19	20	21	22	23	24

80be4788

### INTERNATIONAL SYMBOLS

1	High Beam	13	Rear Window Washer
2	Fog Lamps	14	Fuel
3	Headlamp, Parking Lamps, Panel Lamps	15	Engine Coolant Temperature
4	Turn Warning	16	Battery Charging Condition
5	Hazard Warning	17	Engine Oil
6	Windshield Washer	18	Seat Belt
7	Windshield Wiper	19	Brake Failure
8	Windshield Wiper and Washer	20	Parking Brake
9	Windscreen Demisting and Defrosting	21	Front Hood
10	Ventilating Fan	22	Rear hood (Decklid)
11	Rear Window Defogger	23	Horn
12	Rear Window Wiper	24	Lighter

## METRIC SYSTEM

The following chart will assist in converting metric units to equivalent English and SAE units, or vise versa.

### DESCRIPTION

The metric system is based on quantities of one, ten, one hundred, one thousand and one million.

#### CONVERSION FORMULAS AND EQUIVALENT VALUES

MULTIPLY	BY	TO GET	MULTIPLY	BY	TO GET
in-lbs	x 0.11298	= Newton Meters (N·m)	N·m	x 8.851	= in-lbs
ft-lbs	x 1.3558	= Newton Meters (N·m)	N·m	x 0.7376	= ft-lbs
Inches Hg (60° F)	x 3.377	= Kilopascals (kPa)	kPa	x 0.2961	= Inches Hg
psi	x 6.895	= Kilopascals (kPa)	kPa	x 0.145	= psi
Inches	x 25.4	= Millimeters (mm)	mm	x 0.03937	= Inches
Feet	x 0.3048	= Meters (M)	M	x 3.281	= Feet
Yards	x 0.9144	= Meters	M	x 1.0936	= Yards
mph	x 1.6093	= Kilometers/Hr. (Km/h)	Km/h	x 0.6214	= mph
Feet/Sec	x 0.3048	= Meters/Sec (M/S)	M/S	x 3.281	= Feet/Sec
mph	x 0.4470	= Meters/Sec (M/S)	M/S	x 2.237	= mph
Kilometers/Hr. (Km/h)	x 0.27778	= Meters/Sec (M/S)	M/S	x 3.600	Kilometers/Hr. (Km/h)

#### COMMON METRIC EQUIVALENTS

1 inch = 25 Millimeters	1 Cubic Inch = 16 Cubic Centimeters
1 Foot = 0.3 Meter	1 Cubic Foot = 0.03 Cubic Meter
1 Yard = 0.9 Meter	1 Cubic Yard = 0.8 Cubic Meter
1 Mile = 1.6 Kilometers	

Refer to the Metric Conversion Chart to convert torque values listed in metric Newton- meters (N·m).

Also, use the chart to convert between millimeters (mm) and inches (in.) (Fig. 6).

## METRIC SYSTEM (Continued)

## in-lbs to N•m

## N•m to in-lbs

in- lb	N•m	in-lb	N•m	in-lb	N•m	in-lb	N•m	in-lb	N•m	N•m	in-lb	N•m	in-lb	N•m	in-lb	N•m	in-lb	N•m	in-lb	N•m
2	.2260	42	4.7453	82	9.2646	122	13.7839	162	18.3032	.2	1.7702	4.2	37.1747	8.2	72.5792	12.2	107.9837	16.2	143.3882	
4	.4519	44	4.9713	84	9.4906	124	14.0099	164	18.5292	.4	3.5404	4.4	38.9449	8.4	74.3494	12.4	109.7539	16.4	145.1584	
6	.6779	46	5.1972	86	9.7165	126	14.2359	166	18.7552	.6	5.3107	4.6	40.7152	8.6	76.1197	12.6	111.5242	16.6	146.9287	
8	.9039	48	5.4232	88	9.9425	128	14.4618	168	18.9811	.8	7.0809	4.8	42.4854	8.8	77.8899	12.8	113.2944	16.8	148.6989	
10	1.1298	50	5.6492	90	10.1685	130	14.6878	170	19.2071	1	8.8511	5	44.2556	9	79.6601	13	115.0646	17	150.4691	
12	1.3558	52	5.8751	92	10.3944	132	14.9138	172	19.4331	1.2	10.6213	5.2	46.0258	9.2	81.4303	13.2	116.8348	17.2	152.2393	
14	1.5818	54	6.1011	94	10.6204	134	15.1397	174	19.6590	1.4	12.3916	5.4	47.7961	9.4	83.2006	13.4	118.6051	17.4	154.0096	
16	1.8077	56	6.3270	96	10.8464	136	15.3657	176	19.8850	1.6	14.1618	5.6	49.5663	9.6	84.9708	13.6	120.3753	17.6	155.7798	
18	2.0337	58	6.5530	98	11.0723	138	15.5917	178	20.1110	1.8	15.9320	5.8	51.3365	9.8	86.7410	13.8	122.1455	17.8	157.5500	
20	2.2597	60	6.7790	100	11.2983	140	15.8176	180	20.3369	2	17.7022	6	53.1067	10	88.5112	14	123.9157	18	159.3202	
22	2.4856	62	7.0049	102	11.5243	142	16.0436	182	20.5629	2.2	19.4725	6.2	54.8770	10.2	90.2815	14.2	125.6860	18.5	163.7458	
24	2.7116	64	7.2309	104	11.7502	144	16.2696	184	20.7889	2.4	21.2427	6.4	56.6472	10.4	92.0517	14.4	127.4562	19	168.1714	
26	2.9376	66	7.4569	106	11.9762	146	16.4955	186	21.0148	2.6	23.0129	6.6	58.4174	10.6	93.8219	14.6	129.2264	19.5	172.5970	
28	3.1635	68	7.6828	108	12.2022	148	16.7215	188	21.2408	2.8	24.7831	6.8	60.1876	10.8	95.5921	14.8	130.9966	20	177.0225	
30	3.3895	70	7.9088	110	12.4281	150	16.9475	190	21.4668	3	26.5534	7	61.9579	11	97.3624	15	132.7669	20.5	181.4480	
32	3.6155	72	8.1348	112	12.6541	152	17.1734	192	21.6927	3.2	28.3236	7.2	63.7281	11.2	99.1326	15.2	134.5371	21	185.8736	
34	3.8414	74	8.3607	114	12.8801	154	17.3994	194	21.9187	3.4	30.0938	7.4	65.4983	11.4	100.9028	15.4	136.3073	22	194.7247	
36	4.0674	76	8.5867	116	13.1060	156	17.6253	196	22.1447	3.6	31.8640	7.6	67.2685	11.6	102.6730	15.6	138.0775	23	203.5759	
38	4.2934	78	8.8127	118	13.3320	158	17.8513	198	22.3706	3.8	33.6342	7.8	69.0388	11.8	104.4433	15.8	139.8478	24	212.4270	
40	4.5193	80	9.0386	120	13.5580	160	18.0773	200	22.5966	4	35.4045	8	70.8090	12	106.2135	16	141.6180	25	221.2781	

## ft-lbs to N•m

## N•m to ft-lbs

ft-lb	N•m	ft-lb	N•m	ft-lb	N•m	ft-lb	N•m	ft-lb	N•m	N•m	ft-lb	N•m	ft-lb	N•m	ft-lb	N•m	ft-lb	N•m	ft-lb	N•m
1	1.3558	21	28.4722	41	55.5885	61	82.7049	81	109.8212	1	.7376	21	15.9888	41	30.2400	61	44.9913	81	59.7425	
2	2.7116	22	29.8280	42	56.9444	62	84.0607	82	111.1770	2	1.4751	22	16.2264	42	30.9776	62	45.7289	82	60.4801	
3	4.0675	23	31.1838	43	58.3002	63	85.4165	83	112.5328	3	2.2127	23	16.9639	43	31.7152	63	46.4664	83	61.2177	
4	5.4233	24	32.5396	44	59.6560	64	86.7723	84	113.8888	4	2.9502	24	17.7015	44	32.4527	64	47.2040	84	61.9552	
5	6.7791	25	33.8954	45	61.0118	65	88.1281	85	115.2446	5	3.6878	25	18.4391	45	33.1903	65	47.9415	85	62.6928	
6	8.1349	26	35.2513	46	62.3676	66	89.4840	86	116.6004	6	4.4254	26	19.1766	46	33.9279	66	48.6791	86	63.4303	
7	9.4907	27	36.6071	47	63.7234	67	90.8398	87	117.9562	7	5.1629	27	19.9142	47	34.6654	67	49.4167	87	64.1679	
8	10.8465	28	37.9629	48	65.0793	68	92.1956	88	119.3120	8	5.9005	28	20.6517	48	35.4030	68	50.1542	88	64.9545	
9	12.2024	29	39.3187	49	66.4351	69	93.5514	89	120.6678	9	6.6381	29	21.3893	49	36.1405	69	50.8918	89	65.6430	
10	13.5582	30	40.6745	50	67.7909	70	94.9073	90	122.0236	10	7.3756	30	22.1269	50	36.8781	70	51.6293	90	66.3806	
11	14.9140	31	42.0304	51	69.1467	71	96.2631	91	123.3794	11	8.1132	31	22.8644	51	37.6157	71	52.3669	91	67.1181	
12	16.2698	32	43.3862	52	70.5025	72	97.6189	92	124.7352	12	8.8507	32	23.6020	52	38.3532	72	53.1045	92	67.8557	
13	17.6256	33	44.7420	53	71.8583	73	98.9747	93	126.0910	13	9.5883	33	24.3395	53	39.0908	73	53.8420	93	68.5933	
14	18.9815	34	46.0978	54	73.2142	74	100.3316	94	127.4468	14	10.3259	34	25.0771	54	39.8284	74	54.5720	94	69.3308	
15	20.3373	35	47.4536	55	74.5700	75	101.6862	95	128.8026	15	11.0634	35	25.8147	55	40.5659	75	55.3172	95	70.0684	
16	21.6931	36	48.8094	56	75.9258	76	103.0422	96	130.1586	16	11.8010	36	26.5522	56	41.3035	76	56.0547	96	70.8060	
17	23.0489	37	50.1653	57	77.2816	77	104.3980	97	131.5144	17	12.5386	37	27.2898	57	42.0410	77	56.7923	97	71.5435	
18	24.4047	38	51.5211	58	78.6374	78	105.7538	98	132.8702	18	13.2761	38	28.0274	58	42.7786	78	57.5298	98	72.2811	
19	25.7605	39	52.8769	59	79.9933	79	107.1196	99	134.2260	19	14.0137	39	28.7649	59	43.5162	79	58.2674	99	73.0187	
20	27.1164	40	54.2327	60	81.3491	80	108.4654	100	135.5820	20	14.7512	40	29.5025	60	44.2537	80	59.0050	100	73.7562	

## in. to mm

## mm to in.

in.	mm	in.	mm	in.	mm	in.	mm	in.	mm	in.	mm	in.	mm	in.	mm	in.	mm	in.	mm	in.
.01	.254	.21	5.334	.41	10.414	.61	15.494	.81	20.574	.01	.00039	.21	.00827	.41	.01614	.61	.02402	.81	.03189	
.02	.508	.22	5.588	.42	10.668	.62	15.748	.82	20.828	.02	.00079	.22	.00866	.42	.01654	.62	.02441	.82	.03228	
.03	.762	.23	5.842	.43	10.922	.63	16.002	.83	21.082	.03	.00118	.23	.00906	.43	.01693	.63	.02480	.83	.03268	
.04	1.016	.24	6.096	.44	11.176	.64	16.256	.84	21.336	.04	.00157	.24	.00945	.44	.01732	.64	.02520	.84	.03307	
.05	1.270	.25	6.350	.45	11.430	.65	16.510	.85	21.590	.05	.00197	.25	.00984	.45	.01772	.65	.02559	.85	.03346	
.06	1.524	.26	6.604	.46	11.684	.66	16.764	.86	21.844	.06	.00236	.26	.01024	.46	.01811	.66	.02598	.86	.03386	
.07	1.778	.27	6.858	.47	11.938	.67	17.018	.87	22.098	.07	.00276	.27	.01063	.47	.01850	.67	.02638	.87	.03425	
.08	2.032	.28	7.112	.48	12.192	.68	17.272	.88	22.352	.08	.00315	.28	.01102	.48	.01890	.68	.02677	.88	.03465	
.09	2.286	.29	7.366	.49	12.446	.69	17.526	.89	22.606	.09	.00354	.29	.01142	.49	.01929	.69	.02717	.89	.03504	
.10	2.540	.30	7.620	.50	12.700	.70	17.780	.90	22.860	.10	.00394	.30	.01181	.50	.01969	.70	.02756	.90	.03543	
.11	2.794	.31	7.874	.51	12.954	.71	18.034	.91	23.114	.11	.00433	.31	.01220	.51	.02008	.71	.02795	.91	.03583	
.12	3.048	.32	8.128	.52	13.208	.72	18.288	.92	23.368	.12	.00472	.32	.01260	.52	.02047	.72	.02835	.92	.03622	
.13	3.302	.33	8.382	.53	13.462	.73	18.542	.93	23.622	.13	.00512	.33	.01299	.53	.02087	.73	.02874	.93	.03661	
.14	3.556	.34	8.636	.54	13.716	.74	18.796	.94	23.876	.14	.00551	.34	.01339	.54	.02126	.74	.02913	.94	.03701	
.15	3.810	.35	8.890	.55	13.970	.75	19.050	.95	24.130	.15	.00591	.35	.01378	.55	.02165	.75	.02953	.95	.03740	
.16	4.064	.36	9.144	.56	14.224	.76	19.304	.96	24.384	.16	.00630	.36	.01417	.56	.02205	.76	.02992	.96	.03780	
.17	3.318	.37	9.398	.57	14.478	.77	19.558	.97	24.638	.17	.00669	.37	.01457	.57	.02244	.77	.03032	.97	.03819	
.18	4.572	.38	9.652	.58	14.732	.78	19.812	.98	24.892	.18	.00709	.38	.01496	.58	.02283	.78	.03071	.98	.03858	
.19	4.826	.39	9.906	.59	14.986	.79	20.066	.99	25.146	.19	.00748	.39	.01535	.59	.02323	.79	.03110	.99	.03898	
.20	5.080	.40	10.160	.60	15.240	.80	20.320	1.00	25.400	.20	.00787	.40	.01575	.60	.02362	.80	.03150	1.00	.03937	

## TORQUE REFERENCES

tions Chart for torque references not listed in the individual torque charts (Fig. 7).

### DESCRIPTION

Individual Torque Charts appear within many of the Groups. Refer to the Standard Torque Specifica-

#### SPECIFIED TORQUE FOR STANDARD BOLTS

Class	Diameter mm	Pitch mm	Specified torque					
			Hexagon head bolt			Hexagon flange bolt		
			N•m	kgf-cm	ft-lbf	N•m	kgf-cm	ft-lbf
4T	6	1	5	55	48 in.-lbf	6	60	52 in.-lbf
	8	1.25	12.5	130	9	14	145	10
	10	1.25	26	260	19	29	290	21
	12	1.25	47	480	35	53	540	39
	14	1.5	74	760	55	84	850	61
	16	1.5	115	1,150	83	—	—	—
5T	6	1	6.5	65	56 in.-lbf	7.5	75	65 in.-lbf
	8	1.25	15.5	160	12	17.5	175	13
	10	1.25	32	330	24	36	360	26
	12	1.25	59	600	43	65	670	48
	14	1.5	91	930	67	100	1,050	76
	16	1.5	140	1,400	101	—	—	—
6T	6	1	8	80	69 in.-lbf	9	90	78 in.-lbf
	8	1.25	19	195	14	21	210	15
	10	1.25	39	400	29	44	440	32
	12	1.25	71	730	53	80	810	59
	14	1.5	110	1,100	80	125	1,250	90
	16	1.5	170	1,750	127	—	—	—
7T	6	1	10.5	110	8	12	120	9
	8	1.25	25	260	19	28	290	21
	10	1.25	52	530	38	58	590	43
	12	1.25	95	970	70	105	1,050	76
	14	1.5	145	1,500	108	165	1,700	123
	16	1.5	230	2,300	166	—	—	—
8T	8	1.25	29	300	22	33	330	24
	10	1.25	61	620	45	68	690	50
	12	1.25	110	1,100	80	120	1,250	90
9T	8	1.25	34	340	25	37	380	27
	10	1.25	70	710	51	78	790	57
	12	1.25	125	1,300	94	140	1,450	105
10T	8	1.25	38	390	28	42	430	31
	10	1.25	78	800	58	88	890	64
	12	1.25	140	1,450	105	155	1,600	116
11T	8	1.25	42	430	31	47	480	35
	10	1.25	87	890	64	97	990	72
	12	1.25	155	1,600	116	175	1,800	130

Fig. 7 TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS





# LUBRICATION & MAINTENANCE







## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>INTERNATIONAL SYMBOLS</b>		DESCRIPTION - POWER STEERING FLUID	.. 6
DESCRIPTION .....	1	OPERATION - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION	
<b>PARTS &amp; LUBRICANT RECOMMENDATION</b>		FLUID .....	6
STANDARD PROCEDURE - PARTS &		<b>FLUID CAPACITIES</b>	
LUBRICANT RECOMMENDATIONS .....	1	SPECIFICATIONS - FLUID CAPACITIES .....	6
<b>FLUID TYPES</b>		<b>FLUID FILL/CHECK LOCATIONS</b>	
DESCRIPTION		INSPECTION - FLUID FILL/CHECK	
DESCRIPTION - ENGINE COOLANT .....	2	LOCATIONS .....	7
DESCRIPTION - HOAT COOLANT .....	2	<b>MAINTENANCE SCHEDULES</b>	
ENGINE OIL .....	3	DESCRIPTION .....	7
DESCRIPTION - ENGINE OIL .....	4	<b>LIFT POINTS</b>	
DESCRIPTION - AXLE .....	5	STANDARD PROCEDURE - HOISTING AND	
DESCRIPTION - TRANSFER CASE - NV147 ..	5	JACKING RECOMMENDATIONS .....	14
DESCRIPTION - TRANSFER CASE - NV242 ..	5	<b>JUMP STARTING</b>	
DESCRIPTION - TRANSFER CASE - NV247 ..	5	STANDARD PROCEDURE - JUMP STARTING ..	14
DESCRIPTION - AUTOMATIC		<b>EMERGENCY TOW HOOKS</b>	
TRANSMISSION FLUID .....	5	DESCRIPTION .....	15
DESCRIPTION - AUTOMATIC		<b>TOWING</b>	
TRANSMISSION FLUID - NAG1 .....	5	STANDARD PROCEDURE - TOWING	
DESCRIPTION - ENGINE OIL - DIESEL		RECOMMENDATIONS .....	16
ENGINES .....	6		

## INTERNATIONAL SYMBOLS

### DESCRIPTION

DaimlerChrysler Corporation uses international symbols to identify engine compartment lubricant and fluid inspection and fill locations (Fig. 1).

	ENGINE OIL		BRAKE FLUID
	AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID		POWER STEERING FLUID
	ENGINE COOLANT		WINDSHIELD WASHER FLUID

8097ddbdl

**Fig. 1 INTERNATIONAL SYMBOLS**

## PARTS & LUBRICANT RECOMMENDATION

### STANDARD PROCEDURE - PARTS & LUBRICANT RECOMMENDATIONS

Lubricating grease is rated for quality and usage by the NLGI. All approved products have the NLGI symbol (Fig. 2) on the label. At the bottom NLGI symbol is the usage and quality identification letters. Wheel bearing lubricant is identified by the letter "G". Chassis lubricant is identified by the latter "L". The letter following the usage letter indicates the quality of the lubricant. The following symbols indicate the highest quality.

## PARTS &amp; LUBRICANT RECOMMENDATION (Continued)

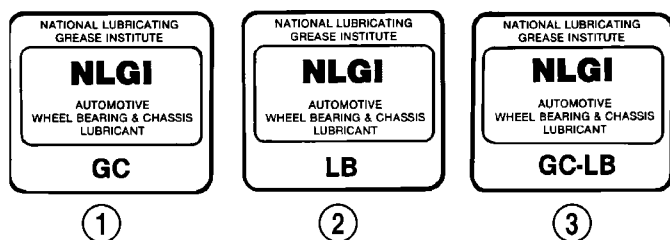


Fig. 2 NLGI Symbol

9200-7

- 1 - WHEEL BEARINGS  
 2 - CHASSIS LUBRICATION  
 3 - CHASSIS AND WHEEL BEARINGS

When service is required, DaimlerChrysler Corporation recommends that only Mopar® brand parts, lubricants and chemicals be used. Mopar provides the best engineered products for servicing DaimlerChrysler Corporation vehicles.

## FLUID TYPES

## DESCRIPTION

## DESCRIPTION - ENGINE COOLANT

## ETHYLENE-GLYCOL MIXTURES

**CAUTION:** Richer antifreeze mixtures cannot be measured with normal field equipment and can cause problems associated with 100 percent ethylene-glycol.

The required ethylene-glycol (antifreeze) and water mixture depends upon the climate and vehicle operating conditions. The recommended mixture of 50/50 ethylene-glycol and water will provide protection against freezing to -37° C (-35° F). The antifreeze concentration **must always** be a minimum of 44 percent, year-round in all climates. **If percentage is lower than 44 percent, engine parts may be eroded by cavitation, and cooling system components may be severely damaged by corrosion.** Maximum protection against freezing is provided with a 68 percent antifreeze concentration, which prevents freezing down to -67.7° C (-90° F). A higher percentage will freeze at a warmer temperature. Also, a higher percentage of antifreeze can cause the engine to overheat because the specific heat of antifreeze is lower than that of water.

Use of 100 percent ethylene-glycol will cause formation of additive deposits in the system, as the corrosion inhibitive additives in ethylene-glycol require the presence of water to dissolve. The deposits act as

insulation, causing temperatures to rise to as high as 149° C (300° F). This temperature is hot enough to melt plastic and soften solder. The increased temperature can result in engine detonation. In addition, 100 percent ethylene-glycol freezes at 22° C (-8° F).

## PROPYLENE-GLYCOL MIXTURES

Its overall effective temperature range is smaller than that of ethylene-glycol. The freeze point of 50/50 propylene-glycol and water is -32° C (-26° F). 5° C higher than ethylene-glycol's freeze point. The boiling point (protection against summer boil-over) of propylene-glycol is 125° C (257° F) at 96.5 kPa (14 psi), compared to 128° C (263° F) for ethylene-glycol. Use of propylene-glycol can result in boil-over or freeze-up on a cooling system designed for ethylene-glycol. Propylene glycol also has poorer heat transfer characteristics than ethylene glycol. This can increase cylinder head temperatures under certain conditions.

Propylene-glycol/ethylene-glycol Mixtures can cause the destabilization of various corrosion inhibitors, causing damage to the various cooling system components. Also, once ethylene-glycol and propylene-glycol based coolants are mixed in the vehicle, conventional methods of determining freeze point will not be accurate. Both the refractive index and specific gravity differ between ethylene glycol and propylene glycol.

## DESCRIPTION - HOAT COOLANT

**WARNING: ANTIFREEZE IS AN ETHYLENE-GLYCOL BASE COOLANT AND IS HARMFUL IF SWALLOWED OR INHALED. IF SWALLOWED, DRINK TWO GLASSES OF WATER AND INDUCE VOMITING. IF INHALED, MOVE TO FRESH AIR AREA. SEEK MEDICAL ATTENTION IMMEDIATELY. DO NOT STORE IN OPEN OR UNMARKED CONTAINERS. WASH SKIN AND CLOTHING THOROUGHLY AFTER COMING IN CONTACT WITH ETHYLENE-GLYCOL. KEEP OUT OF REACH OF CHILDREN. DISPOSE OF GLYCOL BASE COOLANT PROPERLY, CONTACT YOUR DEALER OR GOVERNMENT AGENCY FOR LOCATION OF COLLECTION CENTER IN YOUR AREA. DO NOT OPEN A COOLING SYSTEM WHEN THE ENGINE IS AT OPERATING TEMPERATURE OR HOT UNDER PRESSURE, PERSONAL INJURY CAN RESULT. AVOID RADIATOR COOLING FAN WHEN ENGINE COMPARTMENT RELATED SERVICE IS PERFORMED, PERSONAL INJURY CAN RESULT.**

**CAUTION:** Use of Propylene-Glycol based coolants is not recommended, as they provide less freeze protection and less corrosion protection.

## FLUID TYPES (Continued)

The cooling system is designed around the coolant. The coolant must accept heat from engine metal, in the cylinder head area near the exhaust valves and engine block. Then coolant carries the heat to the radiator where the tube/fin radiator can transfer the heat to the air.

The use of aluminum cylinder blocks, cylinder heads, and water pumps requires special corrosion protection. Mopar® Antifreeze/Coolant, 5 Year/100,000 Mile Formula (MS-9769), or the equivalent ethylene-glycol base coolant with organic corrosion inhibitors (called HOAT, for Hybrid Organic Additive Technology) is recommended. This coolant offers the best engine cooling without corrosion when mixed with 50% ethylene-glycol and 50% distilled water to obtain a freeze point of -37°C (-35°F). If it loses color or becomes contaminated, drain, flush, and replace with fresh properly mixed coolant solution.

**CAUTION:** Mopar® Antifreeze/Coolant, 5 Year/100,000 Mile Formula (MS-9769) may not be mixed with any other type of antifreeze. Mixing of coolants other than specified (non-HOAT or other HOAT), may result in engine damage that may not be covered under the new vehicle warranty, and decreased corrosion protection.

## COOLANT PERFORMANCE

The required ethylene-glycol (antifreeze) and water mixture depends upon climate and vehicle operating conditions. The coolant performance of various mixtures follows:

**Pure Water**-Water can absorb more heat than a mixture of water and ethylene-glycol. This is for purpose of heat transfer only. Water also freezes at a higher temperature and allows corrosion.

**100 percent Ethylene-Glycol**-The corrosion inhibiting additives in ethylene-glycol need the presence of water to dissolve. Without water, additives form deposits in system. These act as insulation causing temperature to rise to as high as 149°C (300°F). This temperature is hot enough to melt plastic and soften solder. The increased temperature can result in engine detonation. In addition, 100 percent ethylene-glycol freezes at -22°C (-8°F).

**50/50 Ethylene-Glycol and Water**-Is the recommended mixture, it provides protection against freezing to -37°C (-34°F). The antifreeze concentration **must always** be a minimum of 44 percent, year-round in all climates. If percentage is lower, engine parts may be eroded by cavitation. Maximum protec-

tion against freezing is provided with a 68 percent antifreeze concentration, which prevents freezing down to -67.7°C (-90°F). A higher percentage will freeze at a warmer temperature. Also, a higher percentage of antifreeze can cause the engine to over-heat because specific heat of antifreeze is lower than that of water.

**CAUTION:** Richer antifreeze mixtures cannot be measured with normal field equipment and can cause problems associated with 100 percent ethylene-glycol.

## COOLANT SELECTION AND ADDITIVES

The use of aluminum cylinder blocks, cylinder heads and water pumps requires special corrosion protection. Only Mopar® Antifreeze/Coolant, 5 Year/100,000 Mile Formula (glycol base coolant with corrosion inhibitors called HOAT, for Hybrid Organic Additive Technology) is recommended. This coolant offers the best engine cooling without corrosion when mixed with 50% distilled water to obtain a freeze point of -37°C (-35°F). If it loses color or becomes contaminated, drain, flush, and replace with fresh properly mixed coolant solution.

**CAUTION:** Do not use coolant additives that are claimed to improve engine cooling.

## ENGINE OIL

**WARNING: NEW OR USED ENGINE OIL CAN BE IRRITATING TO THE SKIN. AVOID PROLONGED OR REPEATED SKIN CONTACT WITH ENGINE OIL. CONTAMINANTS IN USED ENGINE OIL, CAUSED BY INTERNAL COMBUSTION, CAN BE HAZARDOUS TO YOUR HEALTH. THOROUGHLY WASH EXPOSED SKIN WITH SOAP AND WATER. DO NOT WASH SKIN WITH GASOLINE, DIESEL FUEL, THINNER, OR SOLVENTS, HEALTH PROBLEMS CAN RESULT. DO NOT POLLUTE, DISPOSE OF USED ENGINE OIL PROPERLY. CONTACT YOUR DEALER OR GOVERNMENT AGENCY FOR LOCATION OF COLLECTION CENTER IN YOUR AREA.**

## API SERVICE GRADE CERTIFIED

Use an engine oil that is API Service Grade Certified. MOPAR® provides engine oils that conform to this service grade.

FLUID TYPES (Continued)

SAE VISCOSITY

An SAE viscosity grade is used to specify the viscosity of engine oil. Use only engine oils with multiple viscosities such as 5W-30 or 10W-30. These are specified with a dual SAE viscosity grade which indicates the cold-to-hot temperature viscosity range. Select an engine oil that is best suited to your particular temperature range and variation (Fig. 3).

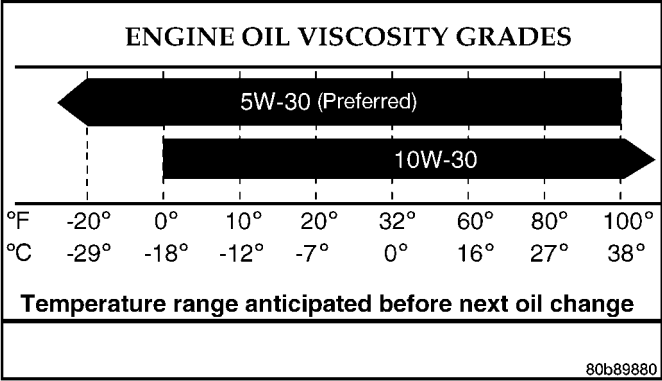


Fig. 3 Temperature/Engine Oil Viscosity - 4.7L

ENERGY CONSERVING OIL

An Energy Conserving type oil is recommended for gasoline engines. The designation of ENERGY CONSERVING is located on the label of an engine oil container.

CONTAINER IDENTIFICATION

Standard engine oil identification notations have been adopted to aid in the proper selection of engine oil. The identifying notations are located on the label of engine oil plastic bottles and the top of engine oil cans (Fig. 4).



Fig. 4 API SYMBOL

9400-9

DESCRIPTION - ENGINE OIL

**WARNING: NEW OR USED ENGINE OIL CAN BE IRRITATING TO THE SKIN. AVOID PROLONGED OR REPEATED SKIN CONTACT WITH ENGINE OIL. CONTAMINANTS IN USED ENGINE OIL, CAUSED BY INTERNAL COMBUSTION, CAN BE HAZARDOUS TO YOUR HEALTH. THOROUGHLY WASH EXPOSED SKIN WITH SOAP AND WATER. DO NOT WASH SKIN WITH GASOLINE, DIESEL FUEL, THINNER, OR SOLVENTS, HEALTH PROBLEMS CAN RESULT. DO NOT POLLUTE, DISPOSE OF USED ENGINE OIL PROPERLY. CONTACT YOUR DEALER OR GOVERNMENT AGENCY FOR LOCATION OF COLLECTION CENTER IN YOUR AREA.**

API SERVICE GRADE CERTIFIED

Use an engine oil that is API Service Grade Certified. MOPAR® provides engine oils that conform to this service grade.

SAE VISCOSITY

An SAE viscosity grade is used to specify the viscosity of engine oil. Use only engine oils with multiple viscosities such as 5W-30 or 10W-30. These oils are specified with a dual SAE viscosity grade which indicates the cold-to-hot temperature viscosity range. Select an engine oil that is best suited to your particular temperature range and variation (Fig. 5).

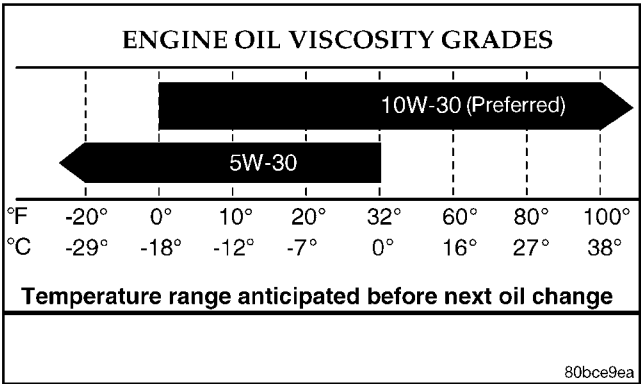


Fig. 5 Temperature/Engine Oil Viscosity - 4.0L

ENERGY CONSERVING OIL

An Energy Conserving type oil is recommended for gasoline engines. The designation of ENERGY CONSERVING is located on the label of an engine oil container.

## FLUID TYPES (Continued)

## CONTAINER IDENTIFICATION

Standard engine oil identification notations have been adopted to aid in the proper selection of engine oil. The identifying notations are located on the label of engine oil plastic bottles and the top of engine oil cans (Fig. 6).



9400-9

Fig. 6 API Symbol

## DESCRIPTION - AXLE

**NOTE:** DaimlerChrysler recommends using Mopar® lubricants or lubricants of equal quality

**FRONT AXLE**

- 186 FBI (Model 30) - Mopar® Synthetic Gear Lubricant 75W-140

**REAR AXLE**

- 194 RBI (Model 35) - Mopar® Gear Lubricant 80W-90 (Trailer Towing - Mopar® Synthetic Gear Lubricant 75W-140
- 226 RBA (Model 44) - Mopar® Gear Lubricant 80W-90 (Trailer Towing - Mopar® Synthetic Gear Lubricant 75W-140

**NOTE:** Trac-lok® and Vari-lok® equipped axles require 118 ml (4 ounces) of Limited Slip Additive be added to the lubricant.

## DESCRIPTION - TRANSFER CASE - NV147

Mopar® Transfer Case Lubricant (P/N 05016796) is the only lubricant recommended for the NV147 transfer case.

## DESCRIPTION - TRANSFER CASE - NV242

Recommended lubricant for the NV242 transfer case is Mopar® ATF+4, Automatic Transmission Fluid.

## DESCRIPTION - TRANSFER CASE - NV247

Mopar® Transfer Case Lubricant (P/N 05016796) is the only lubricant recommended for the NV247 transfer case.

## DESCRIPTION - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID

**NOTE:** Refer to Service Procedures in this group for fluid level checking procedures.

Mopar® ATF +4, Automatic Transmission Fluid is the recommended fluid for DaimlerChrysler automatic transmissions.

**Dexron II fluid IS NOT recommended. Clutch chatter can result from the use of improper fluid.**

Mopar® ATF +4, Automatic Transmission Fluid when new is red in color. The ATF is dyed red so it can be identified from other fluids used in the vehicle such as engine oil or antifreeze. The red color is not permanent and is not an indicator of fluid condition. As the vehicle is driven, the ATF will begin to look darker in color and may eventually become brown. **This is normal.** ATF+4 also has a unique odor that may change with age. Consequently, odor and color cannot be used to indicate the fluid condition or the need for a fluid change.

## FLUID ADDITIVES

DaimlerChrysler strongly recommends against the addition of any fluids to the transmission, other than those automatic transmission fluids listed above. Exceptions to this policy are the use of special dyes to aid in detecting fluid leaks.

Various "special" additives and supplements exist that claim to improve shift feel and/or quality. These additives and others also claim to improve converter clutch operation and inhibit overheating, oxidation, varnish, and sludge. These claims have not been supported to the satisfaction of DaimlerChrysler and these additives **must not be used**. The use of transmission "sealers" should also be avoided, since they may adversely affect the integrity of transmission seals.

## DESCRIPTION - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID - NAG1

**NOTE:** Refer to Service Procedures in this group for fluid level checking procedures.

Shell® 3403 Automatic Transmission Fluid is the recommended fluid for the NAG1 DaimlerChrysler automatic transmission.

**Dexron II fluid IS NOT recommended. Clutch chatter can result from the use of improper fluid.**



## FLUID TYPES (Continued)

Shell® 3403 Automatic Transmission Fluid when new is red in color. The ATF is dyed red so it can be identified from other fluids used in the vehicle such as engine oil or antifreeze. The red color is not permanent and is not an indicator of fluid condition. As the vehicle is driven, the ATF will begin to look darker in color and may eventually become brown. **This is normal.**

## FLUID ADDITIVES

DaimlerChrysler strongly recommends against the addition of any fluids to the transmission, other than those automatic transmission fluids listed above. Exceptions to this policy are the use of special dyes to aid in detecting fluid leaks.

Various "special" additives and supplements exist that claim to improve shift feel and/or quality. These additives and others also claim to improve converter clutch operation and inhibit overheating, oxidation, varnish, and sludge. These claims have not been supported to the satisfaction of DaimlerChrysler and these additives **must not be used**. The use of transmission "sealers" should also be avoided, since they may adversely affect the integrity of transmission seals.

## DESCRIPTION - ENGINE OIL - DIESEL ENGINES

Use only Diesel Engine Oil meeting standard **MIL-2104C** or API Classification **CD or higher** or **CCML D4, D5**.

## SAE VISCOSITY GRADE

**CAUTION:** Low viscosity oils must have the proper API quality or the CCMC G5 designation.

To assure of properly formulated engine oils, it is recommended that SAE Grade 10W-40 engine oils that meet Chrysler material standard MS-6395, be used in accordance to ACEA B3, B4 specification. European Grade 10W-40 oils are also acceptable.

Oils of the SAE 5W-40 grade number are preferred when minimum temperatures consistently fall below -15°C.

## DESCRIPTION - POWER STEERING FLUID

The recommended fluid for the power steering system is MOPAR Power Steering Fluid or equivalent. Do not use automatic transmission fluid and do not overfill.

## OPERATION - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID

The automatic transmission fluid is selected based upon several qualities. The fluid must provide a high level of protection for the internal components by providing a lubricating film between adjacent metal components. The fluid must also be thermally stable so that it can maintain a consistent viscosity through a large temperature range. If the viscosity stays constant through the temperature range of operation, transmission operation and shift feel will remain consistent. Transmission fluid must also be a good conductor of heat. The fluid must absorb heat from the internal transmission components and transfer that heat to the transmission case.

## FLUID CAPACITIES

## SPECIFICATIONS - FLUID CAPACITIES

DESCRIPTION	SPECIFICATION
FUEL TANK	20 U.S. Gallons (76 Liters)****
Engine Oil - with Filter - 2.7L Diesel	6.5L (6.9 qts.)
Engine Oil - with Filter - 4.0L	5.7 L (6.0 qts.)
Engine Oil - with Filter - 4.7L	5.7 L (6.0 qts.)
Cooling System - 2.7L Diesel	14.2L (15 qts.)***
Cooling System - 4.0L	14.1 L (15 qts.)***
Cooling System - 4.7L	13.7 L (14.5 qts.)***
POWER STEERING SYSTEM	
Power steering fluid capacities are dependent on engine/chassis options as well as steering gear/cooler options. Depending on type and size of internal cooler, length and inside diameter of cooler lines, or use of an auxiliary cooler, these capacities may vary. Refer to 19, Steering for proper fill and bleed procedures.	
AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION	
Service Fill - 42RE	3.8 L (4.0 qts.)
Service Fill - 545RFE	2WD - 5.2 L (11 pts.) 4WD - 6.2 L (13 pts.)
Service Fill - NAG1	5.0 L (10.6 pts.)

## FLUID CAPACITIES (Continued)

DESCRIPTION	SPECIFICATION
O-haul Fill - 42RE	9.1-9.5 L (19-20 pts.)
O-haul Fill - 545RFE	13.33 L (28.0 pts.)
O-haul Fill - NAG1	7.7 L (16.3 pts.)
Dry fill capacity Depending on type and size of internal cooler, length and inside diameter of cooler lines, or use of an auxiliary cooler, these figures may vary. (Refer to appropriate 21 - TRANSMISSION/AUTOMATIC/FLUID - STANDARD PROCEDURE).	
TRANSFER CASE	
NV147	1.6L (3.4 pts.)
NV242	1.35L (2.85 pts.)
NV247	1.6L (3.4 pts.)
FRONT AXLE $\pm$ 0.3 L (1 oz.)	
186 FBI (Model 30)	1.18 L (2.5 pts.)*
* With Vari-Lok add 0.07 L (2.5 oz.) of Friction Modifier.	
REAR AXLE $\pm$ 0.3 L (1 oz.)	
198 RBI (Model 35)	1.66 L (3.5 pts.)*
226 RBA (Model 44)	2.24 L (4.75 pts.)**
* With Trac-lok add 0.07 L (2.5 oz.) of Friction Modifier.	
** With Trac-lok or Vari-Lok, add 0.07 L (2.5 oz.) of Friction Modifier.	
*** Includes 0.9L (1.0 qts.) for coolant reservoir.	
****Nominal refill capacities are shown. A variation may be observed from vehicle to vehicle due to manufacturing tolerance and refill procedure.	

## FLUID FILL/CHECK LOCATIONS

## INSPECTION - FLUID FILL/CHECK LOCATIONS

The fluid fill/check locations and lubrication points are located in each applicable group.

## MAINTENANCE SCHEDULES

## DESCRIPTION

Maintenance Schedule Information not included in this section, is located in the appropriate Owner's Manual.

There are two maintenance schedules that show the **required** service for your vehicle.

First is Schedule "B". It is for vehicles that are operated under the conditions that are listed below and at the beginning of the schedule.

- Day or night temperatures are below 0°C (32°F)

- Stop and go driving
- Excessive engine idling
- Driving in dusty conditions
- Short trips of less than 16.2 km (10 miles)
- More than 50% of your driving is at sustained high speeds during hot weather, above 32°C (90°F)
- Trailer towing
- Taxi, police, or delivery service (commercial service)
- Off-road or desert driving
- **If equipped for and operated with E-85 (ethanol) fuel.**

**NOTE:** Most vehicles are operated under the conditions listed for Schedule "B."

**NOTE:** If ANY of these apply to you, change your engine oil every 3,000 miles (5 000 km) or 3 months, whichever comes first, and follow the maintenance recommendations in "Maintenance Schedule B."

Second is Schedule "A". It is for vehicles that are not operated under any of the conditions listed under Schedule "B."

Use the schedule that best describes your driving conditions. Where time and mileage are listed, follow the interval that occurs first.

**CAUTION:** Failure to perform the required maintenance items may result in damage to the vehicle.

**At Each Stop for Fuel**

- Check the engine oil level about 5 minutes after a fully warmed engine is shut off. Checking the oil level while the vehicle is on level ground will improve the accuracy of the oil level reading. Add oil only when the level is at or below the ADD or MIN mark.

- Check the windshield washer solvent, add as required.

**Once a Month**

- Check the tire pressure and look for unusual wear or damage.
- Inspect the battery and clean and tighten the terminals as required.
- Check the fluid levels of the coolant reservoir, brake master cylinder, power steering, and transmission, and add as needed.
- Check all lights and all other electrical items for correct operation.

**At Each Oil Change**

- Change the engine oil filter.
- Inspect the exhaust system.
- Inspect brake hoses.



## MAINTENANCE SCHEDULES (Continued)

- Check the coolant level, hoses, and clamps.
- After completion of off-road operation, the underside of the vehicle should be thoroughly inspected. Examine threaded fasteners for looseness.

**Schedule "B"**

Follow this schedule if you usually operate your vehicle under one or more of the following conditions.

- Day or night temperatures are below 0°C (32°F)
- Stop and go driving
- Excessive engine idling
- Driving in dusty conditions
- Short trips of less than 16.2 km (10 miles)

- More than 50% of your driving is at sustained high speeds during hot weather, above 32°C (90°F)
- Trailer towing
- Taxi, police, or delivery service (commercial service)

- Off-road or desert driving

• **If equipped for and operated with E-85 (ethanol) fuel.**

**NOTE:** If ANY of these apply to you, change your engine oil every 3,000 miles (5 000 km) or 3 months, whichever comes first, and follow the maintenance recommendations in "Maintenance Schedule B."

<b>Miles (Kilometers)</b>	<b>3,000 (5 000)</b>	<b>6,000 (10 000)</b>	<b>9,000 (14 000)</b>	<b>12,000 (19 000)</b>	<b>15,000 (24 000)</b>
Change the engine oil and engine oil filter.	X	X	X	X	X
Lubricate the upper knuckle ball stud at steering & suspension ball joints.		X		X	
Drain and refill the front and rear axles.				X	
<b>Inspect the engine air cleaner filter, replace if necessary.</b>					X
Inspect the brake linings.				X	
Clean and lubricate the brake caliper pins.				X	

<b>Miles (Kilometers)</b>	<b>18,000 (29 000)</b>	<b>21,000 (34 000)</b>	<b>24,000 (38 000)</b>	<b>27,000 (43 000)</b>	<b>30,000 (48 000)</b>
Change the engine oil and engine oil filter.	X	X	X	X	X
Lubricate the upper knuckle ball stud at steering & suspension ball joints.	X		X		X
Drain and refill the front and rear axles.			X		
Inspect the brake linings.			X		
Clean and lubricate the brake caliper pins.			X		
<b>Inspect the engine air cleaner filter, replace if necessary.</b>					X
<b>Inspect the PCV valve, replace if necessary (4.7L Only). ◇</b>					X
<b>Replace the spark plugs.</b>					X
Drain and refill the automatic transmission fluid, change filter, and adjust bands (4.0L Only).					X
Drain and refill the automatic transmission fluid, and replace main sump filter (4.7L Only).					X
Drain the transfer case and refill (Quadra-Trac Models Only).					X

## MAINTENANCE SCHEDULES (Continued)

<b>Miles (Kilometers)</b>	<b>33,000 (53 000)</b>	<b>36,000 (58 000)</b>	<b>39,000 (62 000)</b>	<b>42,000 (67 000)</b>	<b>45,000 (72 000)</b>
Change the engine oil and engine oil filter.	X	X	X	X	X
Drain and refill the front and rear axles.		X			
Inspect the brake linings.		X			
<b>Inspect the engine air cleaner filter, replace if necessary.</b>					X
Lubricate the upper knuckle ball stud at steering & suspension ball joints.		X		X	
Clean and lubricate the brake caliper pins.		X			
Inspect and replace drive belt, if necessary (4.0L Only).					X

<b>Miles (Kilometers)</b>	<b>48,000 (77 000)</b>	<b>51,000 (82 000)</b>	<b>54,000 (86 000)</b>	<b>57,000 (91 000)</b>	<b>60,000 (96 000)</b>
Change the engine oil and engine oil filter.	X	X	X	X	X
Lubricate the upper knuckle ball stud at steering & suspension ball joints.	X		X		X
Clean and lubricate brake caliper pins.	X				X
<b>Inspect the engine air cleaner filter, replace if necessary.</b>					X
<b>Inspect the PCV valve, replace if necessary (4.7L Only). ◇</b>					X
<b>Replace the spark plugs.</b>					X
Inspect the brake linings.	X				X
Drain and refill the front and rear axles.	X				X
Drain and refill the automatic transmission fluid, change filter, and adjust bands (4.0L Only).					X
Drain and refill the automatic transmission fluid, and replace main sump filter (4.7L Only).					X
Inspect the drive belt and replace as needed. Not required if belt was previously replaced (4.0L Only).					X
Drain and refill the transfer case fluid (Selec-Trac and Quadra-Trac Models).					X

<b>Miles (Kilometers)</b>	<b>63,000 (101 000)</b>	<b>66,000 (106 000)</b>	<b>69,000 (110 000)</b>	<b>72,000 (115 000)</b>	<b>75,000 (120 000)</b>
Change the engine oil and engine oil filter.	X	X	X	X	X
Lubricate the upper knuckle ball stud at steering & suspension ball joints.		X		X	
<b>Inspect the engine air cleaner filter, replace if necessary.</b>					X
Inspect the brake linings.				X	
Clean and lubricate the brake caliper pins.				X	

## MAINTENANCE SCHEDULES (Continued)

<b>Miles (Kilometers)</b>	<b>63,000 (101 000)</b>	<b>66,000 (106 000)</b>	<b>69,000 (110 000)</b>	<b>72,000 (115 000)</b>	<b>75,000 (120 000)</b>
Drain and refill the front and rear axle fluid.				X	
Inspect the drive belt and replace as needed. Not required if belt was previously replaced (4.0L Only).					X
Inspect the drive belt and replace as needed (4.7L Only).					X

<b>Miles (Kilometers)</b>	<b>78,000 (125 000)</b>	<b>81,000 (130 000)</b>	<b>84,000 (134 000)</b>	<b>87,000 (139 000)</b>	<b>90,000 (144 000)</b>
Change the engine oil and engine oil filter.	X	X	X	X	X
Lubricate the upper knuckle ball stud at steering & suspension ball joints.	X		X		X
<b>Inspect the engine air cleaner filter, replace if necessary.</b>					X
<b>Inspect the PCV valve, replace if necessary (4.7L Only). ◇</b>					X
<b>Replace the spark plugs.</b>					X
Drain and refill the transfer case fluid (Quadra-Trac Models Only).					X
Inspect the brake linings.			X		
Clean and lubricate the brake caliper pins.			X		
Drain and refill the front and rear axle fluid.			X		
Drain and refill the automatic transmission fluid, change filter, and adjust bands (4.0L Only).					X
Drain and refill the automatic transmission fluid, replace main sump filter, and spin-on cooler return filter (if equipped) (4.7L Only).					X
Inspect the drive belt and replace as needed. Not required if belt was previously replaced.					X

<b>Miles (Kilometers)</b>	<b>93,000 (149 000)</b>	<b>96,000 (154 000)</b>	<b>99,000 (158 000)</b>	<b>100,000 (161 000)</b>	<b>102,000 (163 000)</b>	<b>105,000 (168 000)</b>
Change the engine oil and engine oil filter.	X	X	X		X	X
Lubricate the upper knuckle ball stud at steering & suspension ball joints.		X			X	
<b>Inspect the engine air cleaner filter, replace if necessary.</b>						X
Inspect the brake linings.		X				
Clean and lubricate the brake caliper pins.		X				

## MAINTENANCE SCHEDULES (Continued)

<b>Miles (Kilometers)</b>	<b>93,000 (149 000)</b>	<b>96,000 (154 000)</b>	<b>99,000 (158 000)</b>	<b>100,000 (161 000)</b>	<b>102,000 (163 000)</b>	<b>105,000 (168 000)</b>
Drain and refill the front and rear axle fluid.		X				
Inspect the drive belt and replace as needed. Not required if belt was previously replaced.						X
Flush and replace the engine coolant.				X		

<b>Miles (Kilometers)</b>	<b>108,000 (173 000)</b>	<b>111,000 (178 000)</b>	<b>114,000 (182 000)</b>	<b>117,000 (187 000)</b>	<b>120,000 (192 000)</b>
Change the engine oil and engine oil filter.	X	X	X	X	X
Lubricate the upper knuckle ball stud at steering & suspension ball joints.	X		X		X
<b>Inspect the engine air cleaner filter, replace if necessary.</b>					X
<b>Inspect the PCV valve, replace if necessary (4.7L Only). ◇</b>					X
<b>Replace the spark plugs.</b>					X
Inspect the brake linings.	X				X
Clean and lubricate the brake caliper pins.	X				X
Drain and refill the front and rear axle fluid.	X				X
Drain and refill the automatic transmission fluid, change filter, and adjust bands (4.0L Only).					X
Drain and refill the automatic transmission fluid, and replace main sump filter (4.7L Only).					X
Inspect the drive belt and replace as needed. Not required if belt was previously replaced.					X
Drain and refill the transfer case fluid (Selec-Trac and Quadra-Trac Models).					X

Inspection and service should also be performed anytime a malfunction is observed or suspected. Retain all receipts.

◇ This maintenance is recommended by the manufacturer to the owner, but is not required to maintain emissions warranty.

‡Off-highway operation, trailer towing, taxi, limousine, bus, snow plowing, or other types of commercial service or prolonged operation with heavy loading, especially in hot weather, require front and rear axle service indicated with a ‡ in Schedule "B". Perform these services if the vehicle is usually operated under these conditions.

## MAINTENANCE SCHEDULES (Continued)

## Schedule "A"

<b>Miles</b> <b>(Kilometers)</b> <b>[Months]</b>	<b>6,000</b> <b>(10 000)</b> <b>[6]</b>	<b>12,000</b> <b>(19 000)</b> <b>[12]</b>	<b>18,000</b> <b>(29 000)</b> <b>[18]</b>	<b>24,000</b> <b>(38 000)</b> <b>[24]</b>	<b>30,000</b> <b>(48 000)</b> <b>[30]</b>
Change the engine oil and engine oil filter.	X	X	X	X	X
Lubricate the upper knuckle ball stud at steering & suspension ball joints.		X		X	
Inspect the brake linings.			X		
Clean and lubricate the brake caliper pins.			X		
<b>Replace the engine air cleaner filter.</b>					X
<b>Replace the spark plugs.</b>					X
Inspect transfer case fluid (Selec-Trac Models Only).					X
Drain the transfer case and refill (Quadra-Trac Models Only).					X

<b>Miles</b> <b>(Kilometers)</b> <b>[Months]</b>	<b>36,000</b> <b>(58 000)</b> <b>[36]</b>	<b>42,000</b> <b>(67 000)</b> <b>[42]</b>	<b>48,000</b> <b>(77 000)</b> <b>[48]</b>	<b>54, 000</b> <b>(86 000)</b> <b>[54]</b>
Change the engine oil and engine oil filter.	X	X	X	X
Inspect the brake linings.	X			X
Lubricate the upper knuckle ball stud at steering & suspension ball joints.	X		X	
Clean and lubricate the brake caliper pins.	X			X

<b>Miles</b> <b>(Kilometers)</b> <b>[Months]</b>	<b>60,000</b> <b>(96 000)</b> <b>[60]</b>	<b>66,000</b> <b>(106 000)</b> <b>[66]</b>	<b>72,000</b> <b>(115 000)</b> <b>[72]</b>	<b>78,000</b> <b>(125 000)</b> <b>[78]</b>
Change the engine oil and engine oil filter.	X	X	X	X
Lubricate the upper knuckle ball stud at steering & suspension ball joints.	X		X	
Inspect and replace the drive belt if necessary (4.0L Only). Not required if belt was previously replaced.	X			X
Flush and replace the engine coolant.	X			
<b>Replace the engine air cleaner filter.</b>	X			
<b>Inspect the PCV valve, replace if necessary (4.7L Only).</b> ◇	X			
<b>Replace the spark plugs.</b>	X			
Inspect the brake linings.			X	
Clean and lubricate the brake caliper pins.			X	
Inspect transfer case fluid (Selec-Trac Models Only).	X			
Drain the transfer case and refill (Quadra-Trac Models Only).	X			

## MAINTENANCE SCHEDULES (Continued)

<b>Miles (Kilometers) [Months]</b>	<b>84,000 (134 000) [84]</b>	<b>90,000 (144 000) [90]</b>	<b>96,000 (154 000) [96]</b>	<b>100,000 (161 000) [100]</b>	<b>102, 000 (163 000) [102]</b>
Change the engine oil and engine oil filter.	X	X	X		X
Lubricate the upper knuckle ball stud at steering & suspension ball joints.	X		X		
Clean and lubricate the brake caliper pins.		X			
Inspect the brake linings.		X			
<b>Replace the engine air cleaner filter.</b>		X			
<b>Inspect the PCV valve, replace if necessary (4.7L Only). ◇</b>		X			
<b>Replace the spark plugs.</b>		X			
Inspect the drive belt, and replace as needed. Not required if previously replaced.		X			
Flush and replace the engine coolant if not replaced at 60 months.				X	
Drain and refill the automatic transmission fluid, change filter, and adjust bands (4.0L Only).					X
Drain and refill the automatic transmission fluid, replace main sump filter, and spin-on cooler return filter (if equipped) (4.7L Only).					X
Inspect the transfer case fluid (Selec-Trac Models Only).		X			
Drain the transfer case and refill (Quadra-Trac Models Only).		X			

<b>Miles (Kilometers) [Months]</b>	<b>108,000 (173 000) [108]</b>	<b>114,000 (182 000) [114]</b>	<b>120,000 (192 000) [120]</b>
Change the engine oil and engine oil filter.	X	X	X
Lubricate the upper knuckle ball stud at steering & suspension ball joints.	X		X
Inspect the brake linings.	X		
Clean and lubricate the brake caliper pins.	X		
<b>Replace the engine air cleaner filter.</b>			X
<b>Inspect the PCV valve, replace if necessary (4.7L Only). ◇</b>			X
<b>Replace the spark plugs.</b>			X
Inspect and replace the drive belt if not previously replaced.	X		X
Drain the transfer case and refill (Selec-Trac and Quadra-Trac Models).			X

Inspection and service should also be performed anytime a malfunction is observed or suspected. Retain all receipts.

◇ This maintenance is recommended by the manufacturer to the owner, but is not required to maintain emissions warranty.

**WARNING:** You can be badly injured working on or around a motor vehicle. Do only that service work for which you have the proper equipment. If you have any doubt about your ability to perform a service job, take your vehicle to a competent mechanic.

## LIFT POINTS

### STANDARD PROCEDURE - HOISTING AND JACKING RECOMMENDATIONS

#### FLOOR JACK

When properly positioned, a floor jack can be used to lift a WJ vehicle (Fig. 7). Support the vehicle in the raised position with jack stands at the front and rear ends of the frame rails.

**CAUTION:** Do not attempt to lift a vehicle with a floor jack positioned under:

- An axle tube.
- Aluminum differential.
- A body side sill.
- A steering linkage component.
- A drive shaft.
- The engine or transmission oil pan.
- The fuel tank.
- A front suspension arm.

#### HOIST

A vehicle can be lifted with:

- A single-post, frame-contact hoist.
- A twin-post, chassis hoist.
- A ramp-type, drive-on hoist.

**NOTE:** When a frame-contact type hoist is used, verify that the lifting pads are positioned properly (Fig. 7).

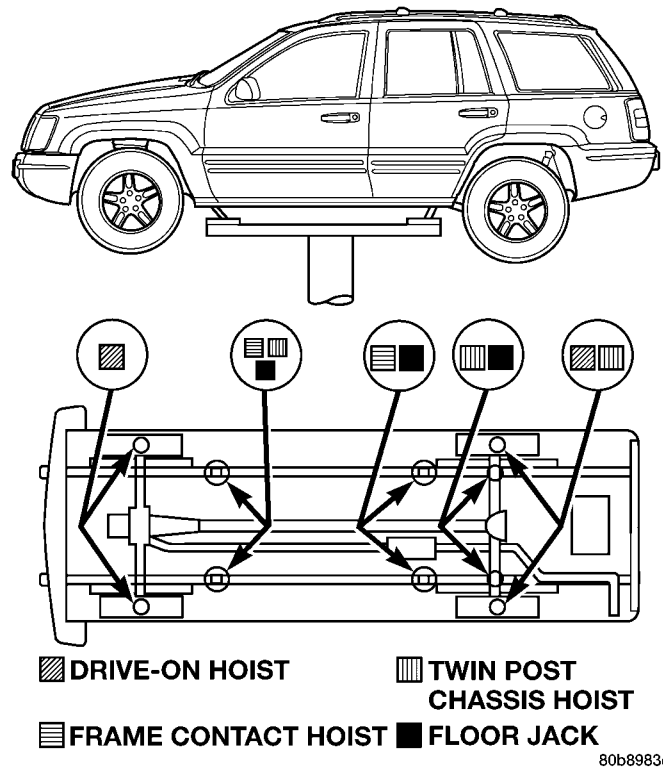
**WARNING:** THE HOISTING AND JACK LIFTING POINTS PROVIDED ARE FOR A COMPLETE VEHICLE. WHEN A CHASSIS OR DRIVETRAIN COMPONENT IS REMOVED FROM A VEHICLE, THE CENTER OF GRAVITY IS ALTERED MAKING SOME HOISTING CONDITIONS UNSTABLE. PROPERLY SUPPORT OR SECURE VEHICLE TO HOISTING DEVICE WHEN THESE CONDITIONS EXIST.

## JUMP STARTING

### STANDARD PROCEDURE - JUMP STARTING

**WARNING:** REVIEW ALL SAFETY PRECAUTIONS AND WARNINGS IN THE BATTERY SYSTEM SECTION OF THE SERVICE MANUAL. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/BATTERY SYSTEM/BATTERY - STANDARD PROCEDURE)

- DO NOT JUMP START A FROZEN BATTERY, PERSONAL INJURY CAN RESULT.



*Fig. 7 Correct Vehicle Lifting Locations*

- IF EQUIPPED, DO NOT JUMP START WHEN MAINTENANCE FREE BATTERY INDICATOR DOT IS YELLOW OR BRIGHT COLOR.

- DO NOT JUMP START A VEHICLE WHEN THE BATTERY FLUID IS BELOW THE TOP OF LEAD PLATES.

- DO NOT ALLOW JUMPER CABLE CLAMPS TO TOUCH EACH OTHER WHEN CONNECTED TO A BOOSTER SOURCE.

- DO NOT USE OPEN FLAME NEAR BATTERY.

- REMOVE METALLIC JEWELRY WORN ON HANDS OR WRISTS TO AVOID INJURY BY ACCIDENTAL ARCING OF BATTERY CURRENT.

- WHEN USING A HIGH OUTPUT BOOSTING DEVICE, DO NOT ALLOW BATTERY VOLTAGE TO EXCEED 16 VOLTS. REFER TO INSTRUCTIONS PROVIDED WITH DEVICE BEING USED. FAILURE TO FOLLOW THESE INSTRUCTIONS MAY RESULT IN PERSONAL INJURY.

**CAUTION:** When using another vehicle as a booster, do not allow vehicles to touch. Electrical systems can be damaged on either vehicle.

#### TO JUMP START A DISABLED VEHICLE:

(1) Raise hood on disabled vehicle and visually inspect engine compartment for:

- Battery cable clamp condition, clean if necessary.
- Frozen battery.



## JUMP STARTING (Continued)

- Yellow or bright color test indicator, if equipped.
- Low battery fluid level.
- Generator drive belt condition and tension.
- Fuel fumes or leakage, correct if necessary.

**CAUTION:** If the cause of starting problem on disabled vehicle is severe, damage to booster vehicle charging system can result.

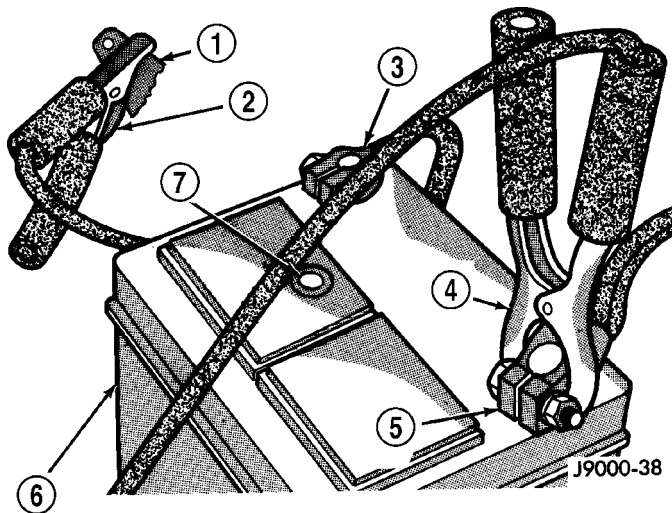
(2) When using another vehicle as a booster source, park the booster vehicle within cable reach. Turn off all accessories, set the parking brake, place the automatic transmission in PARK or the manual transmission in NEUTRAL and turn the ignition OFF.

(3) On disabled vehicle, place gear selector in park or neutral and set park brake. Turn off all accessories.

(4) Connect jumper cables to booster battery. RED clamp to positive terminal (+). BLACK clamp to negative terminal (-). DO NOT allow clamps at opposite end of cables to touch, electrical arc will result. Review all warnings in this procedure.

(5) On disabled vehicle, connect RED jumper cable clamp to positive (+) terminal. Connect BLACK jumper cable clamp to engine ground as close to the ground cable attaching point as possible (Fig. 8).

(6) Start the engine in the vehicle which has the booster battery, let the engine idle a few minutes, then start the engine in the vehicle with the discharged battery.



**Fig. 8 Jumper Cable Clamp Connections**

- 1 - ENGINE GROUND
- 2 - NEGATIVE JUMPER CABLE
- 3 - BATTERY NEGATIVE CABLE
- 4 - POSITIVE JUMPER CABLE
- 5 - BATTERY POSITIVE CABLE
- 6 - BATTERY
- 7 - TEST INDICATOR (IF EQUIPPED)

**CAUTION:** Do not crank starter motor on disabled vehicle for more than 15 seconds, starter will over-heat and could fail.

(7) Allow battery in disabled vehicle to charge to at least 12.4 volts (75% charge) before attempting to start engine. If engine does not start within 15 seconds, stop cranking engine and allow starter to cool (15 min.), before cranking again.

## DISCONNECT CABLE CLAMPS AS FOLLOWS:

- Disconnect BLACK cable clamp from engine ground on disabled vehicle.
- When using a Booster vehicle, disconnect BLACK cable clamp from battery negative terminal. Disconnect RED cable clamp from battery positive terminal.
- Disconnect RED cable clamp from battery positive terminal on disabled vehicle.

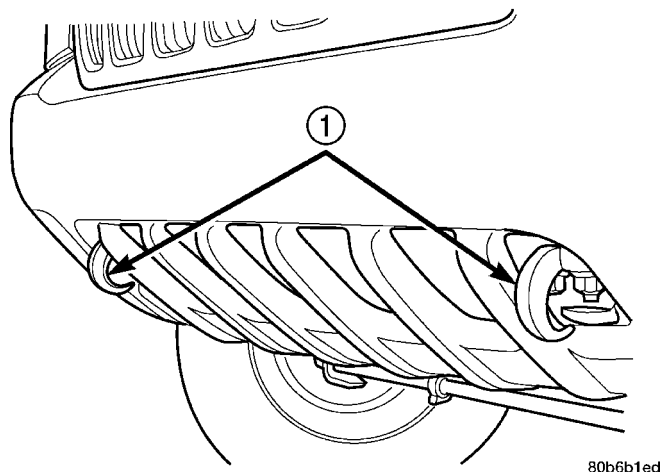
## EMERGENCY TOW HOOKS

## DESCRIPTION

**WARNING:** REMAIN AT A SAFE DISTANCE FROM A VEHICLE THAT IS BEING TOWED VIA ITS TOW HOOKS. THE TOW STRAPS/CHAINS COULD BREAK AND CAUSE SERIOUS INJURY.

Some Jeep vehicles are equipped with front emergency tow hooks (Fig. 9). The tow hooks should be used for **EMERGENCY** purposes only.

**CAUTION:** DO NOT use emergency tow hooks for tow truck hook-up or highway towing.



**Fig. 9 Emergency Tow Hooks**

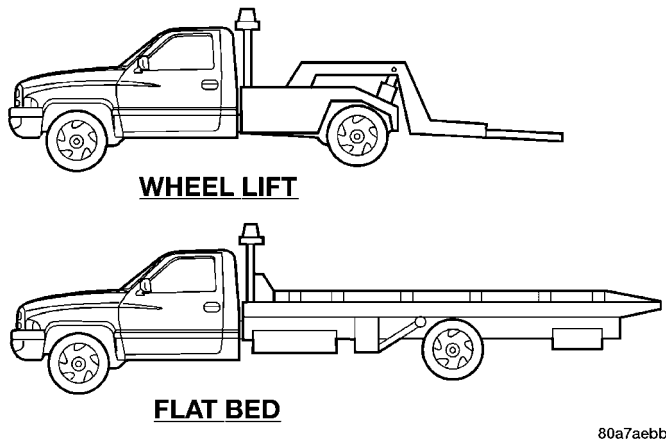
- 1 - TOW HOOK



## TOWING

### STANDARD PROCEDURE - TOWING RECOMMENDATIONS

A vehicle equipped with SAE approved wheel lift-type towing equipment can be used to tow WJ vehicles. When towing a 4WD vehicle using a wheel-lift towing device, use tow dollies under the opposite end of the vehicle. A vehicle with flatbed device can also be used to transport a disabled vehicle (Fig. 10).



*Fig. 10 Tow Vehicles With Approved Equipment*

### SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

**CAUTION:** The following safety precautions must be observed when towing a vehicle:

- Secure loose and protruding parts.
- Always use a safety chain system that is independent of the lifting and towing equipment.
- Do not allow towing equipment to contact the disabled vehicle's fuel tank.
- Do not allow anyone under the disabled vehicle while it is lifted by the towing device.
- Do not allow passengers to ride in a vehicle being towed.
- Always observe state and local laws regarding towing regulations.
- Do not tow a vehicle in a manner that could jeopardize the safety of the operator, pedestrians or other motorists.
- Do not attach tow chains, T-hooks, or J-hooks to a bumper, steering linkage, drive shafts or a non-reinforced frame hole.
- Do not tow a heavily loaded vehicle. Use a flat-bed device to transport a loaded vehicle.

### TWO-WHEEL-DRIVE VEHICLE TOWING

DaimlerChrysler Corporation recommends that a vehicle be towed with the rear end lifted, whenever possible.

**WARNING: WHEN TOWING A DISABLED VEHICLE AND THE DRIVE WHEELS ARE SECURED IN A WHEEL LIFT OR TOW DOLLIES, ENSURE THE TRANSMISSION IS IN THE PARK POSITION (AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION) OR A FORWARD DRIVE GEAR (MANUAL TRANSMISSION).**

**WARNING: ENSURE VEHICLE IS ON A LEVEL SURFACE OR THE WHEELS ARE BLOCKED TO PREVENT VEHICLE FROM ROLLING.**

### TWO WHEEL DRIVE TOWING-REAR END LIFTED

**CAUTION:** Do not use steering column lock to secure steering wheel during towing operation.

2WD vehicles can be towed with the front wheels on the surface for extended distances at speeds not exceeding 48 km/h (30 mph).

- (1) Attach wheel lift device to rear wheels.
- (2) Place the transmission in neutral.
- (3) Raise vehicle to towing position.
- (4) Attach safety chains. Route chains so not to interfere with tail pipe when vehicle is lifted.
- (5) Turn the ignition switch to the OFF position to unlock the steering wheel.

**CAUTION:** Do not use steering column lock to secure steering wheel during towing operation.

- (6) Secure steering wheel in straight ahead position with a clamp device designed for towing.
- (7) Place transmission in park.

### TWO WHEEL DRIVE TOWING-FRONT END LIFTED

**CAUTION:** Many vehicles are equipped with air dams, spoilers, and/or ground effect panels. To avoid component damage, a wheel-lift towing vehicle or a flat-bed hauling vehicle is recommended.

- (1) Attach wheel lift device to rear wheels.
- (2) Place the transmission in neutral.
- (3) Raise the rear of the vehicle off the ground and install tow dollies under rear wheels.
- (4) Attach wheel lift device to front wheels and raise vehicle to towing position.
- (5) Attach the safety chains.

**CAUTION:** Do not use steering column lock to secure steering wheel during towing operation.

## TOWING (Continued)

- (6) Turn the ignition switch to the OFF position to unlock the steering wheel.
- (7) Secure steering wheel in straight ahead position with a clamp device designed for towing.
- (8) Place transmission in park.

**FOUR-WHEEL-DRIVE VEHICLE TOWING**

DaimlerChrysler Corporation recommends that a 4WD vehicle be transported on a flat-bed device. A Wheel-lift device can be used provided **the trailing wheels are off the ground and positioned in tow dollies.**

**WARNING: WHEN TOWING A DISABLED VEHICLE AND THE DRIVE WHEELS ARE SECURED IN A WHEEL LIFT OR TOW DOLLIES, ENSURE THE TRANSMISSION IS IN THE PARK POSITION.**

**CAUTION: Many vehicles are equipped with air dams, spoilers, and/or ground effect panels. To avoid component damage, a wheel-lift towing vehicle or a flat-bed hauling vehicle is recommended.**

**FOUR WHEEL DRIVE TOWING—REAR END LIFTED**

**WARNING: ENSURE VEHICLE IS ON A LEVEL SURFACE OR THE WHEELS ARE BLOCKED TO PREVENT VEHICLE FROM ROLLING.**

- (1) Attach wheel lift device to front wheels.
- (2) Place the transmission in neutral.
- (3) Raise the front of the vehicle off the ground and install tow dollies under front wheels.
- (4) Attach wheel lift device to rear wheels and raise vehicle to towing position.

- (5) Attach safety chains. Route chains so not to interfere with tail pipe when vehicle is lifted.

- (6) Turn the ignition switch to the OFF position to unlock the steering wheel.

**CAUTION: Do not use steering column lock to secure steering wheel during towing operation.**

- (7) Secure steering wheel in straight ahead position with a clamp device designed for towing.

- (8) Place transmission in park.

**FOUR WHEEL DRIVE TOWING—FRONT END LIFTED**

**WARNING: ENSURE VEHICLE IS ON A LEVEL SURFACE OR THE WHEELS ARE BLOCKED TO PREVENT VEHICLE FROM ROLLING.**

- (1) Attach wheel lift device to rear wheels.
- (2) Place the transmission in neutral.
- (3) Raise the rear of the vehicle off the ground and install tow dollies under rear wheels.
- (4) Attach wheel lift device to front wheels and raise vehicle to towing position.
- (5) Attach the safety chains.

**CAUTION: Do not use steering column lock to secure steering wheel during towing operation.**

- (6) Turn the ignition switch to the OFF position to unlock the steering wheel.

- (7) Secure steering wheel in straight ahead position with a clamp device designed for towing.

- (8) Place transmission in park.



# SUSPENSION

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>SUSPENSION</b>		<b>WHEEL ALIGNMENT</b>	3
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - SUSPENSION		<b>FRONT</b>	6
AND STEERING SYSTEM	1	<b>REAR</b>	17

## SUSPENSION

### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - SUSPENSION AND STEERING SYSTEM

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
FRONT END NOISE	1. Loose or worn wheel bearings. 2. Loose or worn steering or suspension components.	1. Adjust or replace wheel bearings. 2. Tighten or replace components as necessary.
EXCESSIVE PLAY IN STEERING	1. Loose or worn wheel bearings. 2. Loose or worn steering or suspension components. 3. Loose or worn steering gear.	1. Adjust or replace wheel bearings. 2. Tighten or replace components as necessary. 3. Adjust or replace steering gear.
FRONT WHEELS SHIMMY	1. Loose or worn wheel bearings. 2. Loose or worn steering or suspension components. 3. Tires worn or out of balance. 4. Alignment. 5. Leaking steering dampener.	1. Adjust or replace wheel bearings. 2. Tighten or replace components as necessary. 3. Replace or balance tires. 4. Align vehicle to specifications. 5. Replace steering dampener.
VEHICLE INSTABILITY	1. Loose or worn wheel bearings. 2. Loose or worn steering or suspension components. 3. Tire pressure. 4. Alignment.	1. Adjust or replace wheel bearings. 2. Tighten or replace components as necessary. 3. Adjust tire pressure. 4. Align vehicle to specifications.
EXCESSIVE STEERING EFFORT	1. Loose or worn steering gear. 2. Power steering fluid low. 3. Column coupler binding. 4. Tire pressure. 5. Alignment.	1. Adjust or replace steering gear. 2. Add fluid and repair leak. 3. Replace coupler. 4. Adjust tire pressure. 5. Align vehicle to specifications.

## SUSPENSION (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
VEHICLE PULLS TO ONE SIDE DURING BRAKING	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Uneven tire pressure.</li><li>2. Worn brake components.</li><li>3. Air in brake line.</li></ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Adjust tire pressure.</li><li>2. Repair brakes as necessary.</li><li>3. Repair as necessary.</li></ol>
VEHICLE LEADS OR DRIFTS FROM STRAIGHT AHEAD DIRECTION ON UNCROWNED ROAD	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Radial tire lead.</li><li>2. Brakes dragging.</li><li>3. Weak or broken spring.</li><li>4. Uneven tire pressure.</li><li>5. Wheel Alignment.</li><li>6. Loose or worn steering or suspension components.</li><li>7. Cross caster out of spec.</li></ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Cross front tires.</li><li>2. Repair brake as necessary.</li><li>3. Replace spring.</li><li>4. Adjust tire pressure.</li><li>5. Align vehicle.</li><li>6. Repair as necessary.</li><li>7. Align vehicle.</li></ol>
KNOCKING, RATTLING OR SQUEAKING	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Worn shock bushings.</li><li>2. Loose, worn or bent steering/suspension components.</li><li>3. Shock valve.</li></ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Replace shock.</li><li>2. Inspect, tighten or replace components as necessary.</li><li>3. Replace shock.</li></ol>
IMPROPER TRACKING	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Loose, worn or bent track bar.</li><li>2. Loose, worn or bent steering/suspension components.</li></ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Inspect, tighten or replace component as necessary.</li><li>2. Inspect, tighten or replace components as necessary.</li></ol>

# WHEEL ALIGNMENT

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>WHEEL ALIGNMENT</b>		STANDARD PROCEDURE - CASTER	4
DESCRIPTION	3	STANDARD PROCEDURE - TOE POSITION	4
OPERATION	3	SPECIFICATIONS	
STANDARD PROCEDURE		ALIGNMENT	5
STANDARD PROCEDURE - CAMBER	4		

## WHEEL ALIGNMENT

### DESCRIPTION

Wheel alignment involves the correct positioning of the wheels in relation to the vehicle. The positioning is accomplished through suspension and steering linkage adjustments. An alignment is considered essential for efficient steering, good directional stability and to minimize tire wear. The most important measurements of an alignment are caster, camber and toe position (Fig. 1).

**CAUTION:** Never attempt to modify suspension or steering components by heating or bending.

**CAUTION:** Components attached with a nut and cotter pin must be torqued to specification. Then if the slot in the nut does not line up with the cotter pin hole, tighten nut until it is aligned. Never loosen the nut to align the cotter pin hole.

**NOTE:** Periodic lubrication of the front suspension/steering system components may be required. Rubber bushings must never be lubricated, Refer to Lubrication And Maintenance for the recommended maintenance schedule.

### OPERATION

- **CASTER** is the forward or rearward tilt of the steering knuckle from vertical. Tilting the top of the knuckle rearward provides positive caster. Tilting the top of the knuckle forward provides negative caster. Caster is a directional stability angle. This angle enables the front wheels to return to a straight ahead position after turns (Fig. 1).

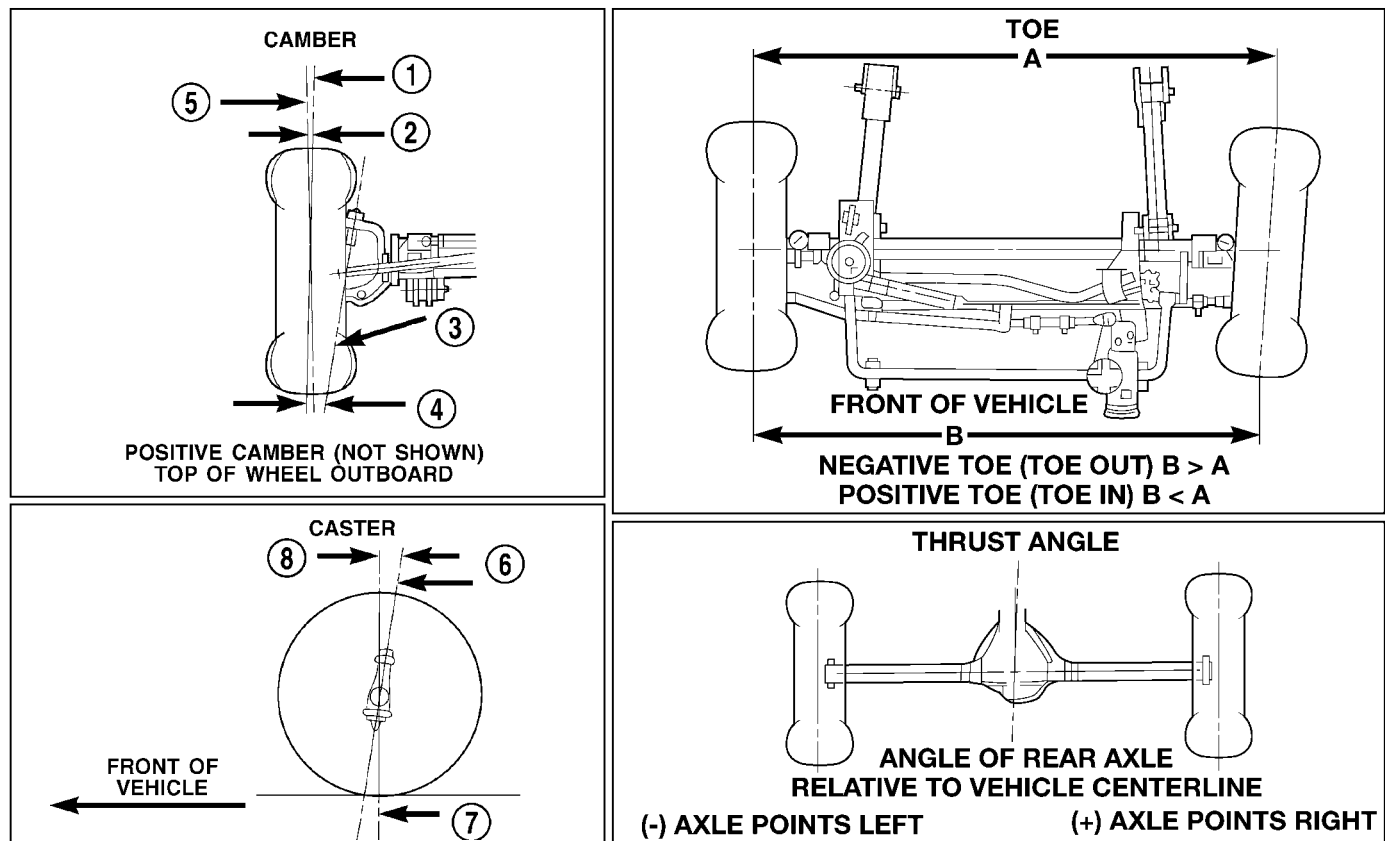
- **CAMBER** is the inward or outward tilt of the wheel relative to the center of the vehicle. Tilting the top of the wheel inward provides negative camber. Tilting the top of the wheel outward provides positive camber. Incorrect camber will cause wear on the inside or outside edge of the tire. The angle is not adjustable, damaged component(s) must be replaced to correct the camber angle (Fig. 1).

- **WHEEL TOE POSITION** is the difference between the leading inside edges and trailing inside edges of the front tires. Incorrect wheel toe position is the most common cause of unstable steering and uneven tire wear. The wheel toe position is the **final** front wheel alignment adjustment (Fig. 1).

- **STEERING AXIS INCLINATION ANGLE** is measured in degrees and is the angle that the steering knuckles are tilted. The inclination angle has a fixed relationship with the camber angle. It will not change except when a spindle or ball stud is damaged or bent. The angle is not adjustable, damaged component(s) must be replaced to correct the steering axis inclination angle.

- **THRUST ANGLE** is the angle of the rear axle relative to the centerline of the vehicle. Incorrect thrust angle can cause off-center steering and excessive tire wear. This angle is not adjustable, damaged component(s) must be replaced to correct the thrust angle (Fig. 1).

## WHEEL ALIGNMENT (Continued)



80b34eaf

**Fig. 1 Wheel Alignment Measurements**

- 1 - WHEEL CENTERLINE
- 2 - NEGATIVE CAMBER ANGLE
- 3 - PIVOT CENTERLINE
- 4 - SCRUB RADIUS

- 5 - TRUE VERTICAL
- 6 - KING PIN
- 7 - VERTICAL
- 8 - POSITIVE CASTER

**STANDARD PROCEDURE****STANDARD PROCEDURE - CAMBER**

Before each alignment reading the vehicle should be jounced (rear first, then front). Grasp each bumper at the center and jounce the vehicle up and down three times. Always release the bumper in the down position.

To obtain an accurate alignment, a 4 wheel alignment machine must be used and the equipment calibration verified.

The wheel camber angle is preset. This angle is not adjustable and cannot be altered.

**STANDARD PROCEDURE - CASTER**

Before each alignment reading the vehicle should be jounced (rear first, then front). Grasp each bumper at the center and jounce the vehicle up and down three times. Always release the bumper in the down position.

To obtain an accurate alignment, a 4 wheel alignment machine must be used and the equipment calibration verified.

The wheel caster angle is preset. This angle is not adjustable and cannot be altered.

**STANDARD PROCEDURE - TOE POSITION**

Before each alignment reading the vehicle should be jounced (rear first, then front). Grasp each bumper at the center and jounce the vehicle up and down three times. Always release the bumper in the down position.

To obtain an accurate alignment, a 4 wheel alignment machine must be used and the equipment calibration verified.

**NOTE:** For an accurate wheel toe position adjustment the engine must be engine running.

- (1) Apply parking brakes.

## WHEEL ALIGNMENT (Continued)

(2) Start the engine and turn wheels both ways before straightening the steering wheel. Center and secure the steering wheel.

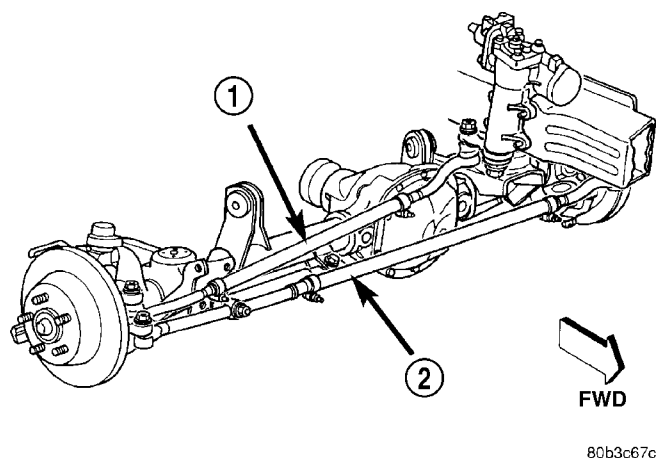
(3) Loosen the tie rod adjustment sleeve clamp bolts (Fig. 2).

(4) Turn the sleeve to obtain the preferred positive TOE-IN specification. Position the clamp bolts as shown (Fig. 2) for proper clearance.

(5) Tighten the clamp bolts to 68 N·m (50 ft. lbs.).

**NOTE:** Make sure the toe setting does not change during clamp tightening.

(6) Verify alignment specifications, then turn the engine off.



**Fig. 2 Steering Linkage**

1 - DRAG LINK ADJUSTMENT SLEEVE  
2 - TIE ROD ADJUSTMENT SLEEVE

## STEERING WHEEL CENTERING

**NOTE:** The steering wheel can be centered without affecting the toe position.

(1) Loosen the drag link adjustment sleeve clamp bolts.

(2) Turn the adjustment sleeve to center the wheel.

(3) Position the clamp bolts as shown (Fig. 2) for proper clearance.

(4) Tighten the clamp bolts to 68 N·m (50 ft. lbs.).

(5) Road test the vehicle to verify the wheel is centered.

## SPECIFICATIONS

## ALIGNMENT

**NOTE:** Specifications are in degrees.

## FRONT WHEELS - STANDARD SUSPENSION

## SPECIFICATIONS

DESCRIPTION	SPECIFICATION		
PREFERRED	CASTER + 6.75°	CAMBER − 0.37°	TOTAL TOE-IN + 0.20°
RANGE	+ 6.0° to + 7.5°	− 0.75° to + 0.5°	+ .14° to + .26°
MAX RT/LT DIFFERENCE	0.5°	0.5°	0.5°

## FRONT WHEELS - UP-COUNTRY SUSPENSION

## SPECIFICATIONS

DESCRIPTION	SPECIFICATION		
PREFERRED	CASTER + 6.5°	CAMBER − 0.37°	TOTAL TOE-IN + 0.20°
RANGE	+ 5.7° to + 7.2°	− 0.75° to + 0°	+ 0.0° to + .36°
MAX RT/LT DIFFERENCE	0.5°	0.5°	0.06°

## REAR AXLE

## SPECIFICATIONS

DESCRIPTION	SPECIFICATION		
PREFERRED	CAMBER −.37°	THRUST ANGLE 0°	TOTAL TOE-IN +.37°
RANGE	0° to −.75°	± 0.25°	0° to +.70°



## FRONT

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>FRONT</b>		<b>SHOCK</b>	
DESCRIPTION .....	6	DESCRIPTION .....	12
STANDARD PROCEDURE - SERVICE		OPERATION .....	12
WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS .....	6	REMOVAL .....	12
SPECIFICATIONS		INSTALLATION .....	13
TORQUE CHART .....	7	<b>SPRING</b>	
SPECIAL TOOLS		DESCRIPTION .....	13
FRONT SUSPENSION .....	8	OPERATION .....	13
<b>BUSHINGS</b>		REMOVAL .....	13
REMOVAL .....	9	INSTALLATION .....	13
INSTALLATION .....	9	<b>STABILIZER BAR</b>	
<b>HUB / BEARING</b>		DESCRIPTION .....	14
DESCRIPTION .....	9	OPERATION .....	14
OPERATION .....	9	REMOVAL .....	14
REMOVAL .....	9	INSTALLATION .....	14
INSTALLATION .....	10	<b>TRACK BAR</b>	
<b>KNUCKLE</b>		DESCRIPTION .....	14
DESCRIPTION .....	10	OPERATION .....	14
OPERATION .....	10	REMOVAL .....	14
REMOVAL .....	10	INSTALLATION .....	15
INSTALLATION .....	10	<b>UPPER BALL JOINT</b>	
<b>LOWER BALL JOINT</b>		REMOVAL .....	15
REMOVAL .....	11	<b>UPPER CONTROL ARM</b>	
<b>LOWER CONTROL ARM</b>		DESCRIPTION .....	16
DESCRIPTION .....	11	OPERATION .....	16
OPERATION .....	11	REMOVAL .....	16
REMOVAL .....	11	INSTALLATION .....	16
INSTALLATION .....	12		

## FRONT

## DESCRIPTION

The front suspension (Fig. 1) is a link/coil design comprised of :

- Drive axle
- Shock absorbers
- Coil springs
- Upper and lower suspension arms
- Stabilizer bar
- Track bar
- Jounce bumpers

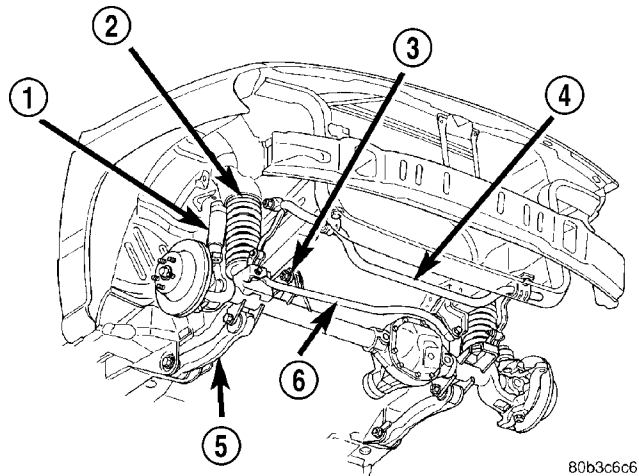
**CAUTION:** Components attached with a nut and cotter pin must be torqued to specification. Then if the slot in the nut does not line up with the cotter pin hole, tighten nut until it is aligned. Never loosen the nut to align the cotter pin hole.

**CAUTION:** Suspension components with rubber bushings must be tightened with the vehicle at normal ride height. It is important to have the springs supporting the weight of the vehicle when the fasteners are torqued. If springs are not at their normal ride position, vehicle ride comfort will be affected and cause premature bushing wear.

STANDARD PROCEDURE - SERVICE  
WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS

**CAUTION:** Suspension components with rubber bushings must be tightened with the vehicle at normal ride height. It is important to have the springs supporting the weight of the vehicle when the fasteners are torqued. If springs are not at their normal ride position, vehicle ride comfort will be affected and cause premature bushing wear.

## FRONT (Continued)

**Fig. 1 Front**

- 1 - SHOCK
- 2 - COIL SPRING
- 3 - UPPER SUSPENSION ARM
- 4 - STABILIZER BAR
- 5 - LOWER SUSPENSION ARM
- 6 - TRACK BAR

## SPECIFICATIONS

## TORQUE CHART

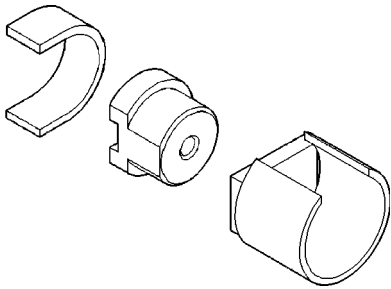
## TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS

DESCRIPTION	N-m	Ft. Lbs.	In. Lbs.
Shock Absorber Upper Nut	35	26	—
Shock Absorber Lower Nut	28	—	250
Suspension Arm Upper Axle Bracket Nut	61	45	—
Suspension Arm Upper Frame Bracket Bolt	61	45	—
Suspension Arm Lower Axle Bracket Nut	163	120	—
Suspension Arm Lower Frame Bracket Bolt	156	115	—
Stabilizer Bar Retainer Bolts	92	68	—
Stabilizer Bar Link Upper Nut	106	78	—
Stabilizer Bar Link Lower Nut	106	78	—
Track Bar Frame Bracket Nut	108	80	—
Track Bar Axle Bracket Bolt	100	74	—
Hub Bearing Knuckle Bolts	102	75	—

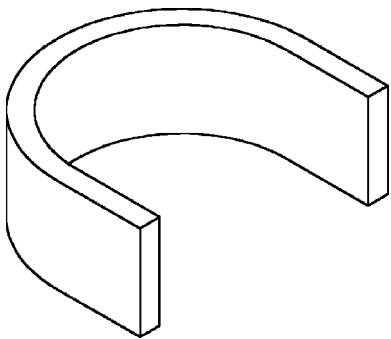
FRONT (Continued)

## SPECIAL TOOLS

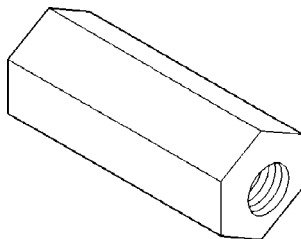
### FRONT SUSPENSION



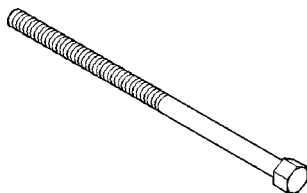
**Remover/Installer Suspension Bushing 7932**



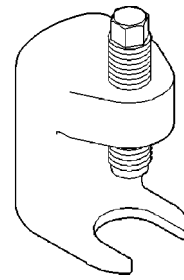
**Spacer 8279**



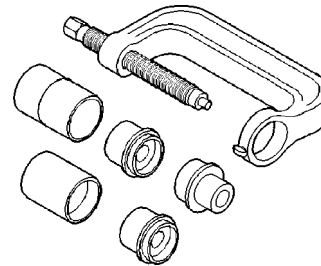
**Nut, Long 7603**



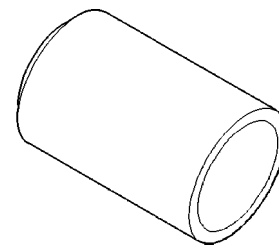
**Bolt, Special 7604**



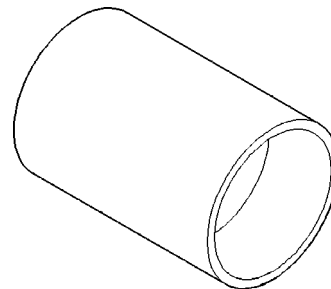
**Remover C-4150A**



**Remover/Installer 6289**



**Reciever 6761**

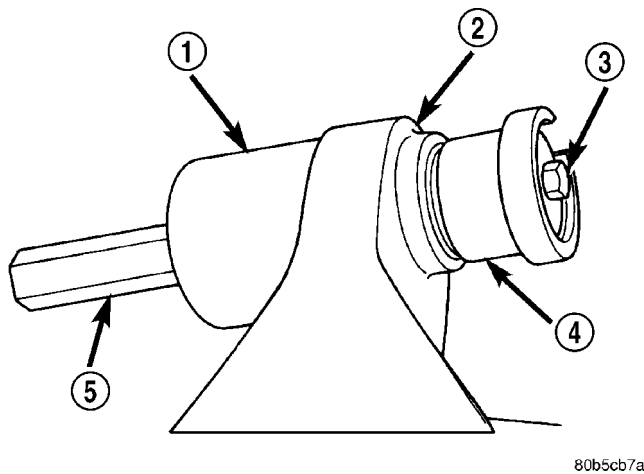


**Installer 6752**

## BUSHINGS

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove the upper suspension arm from axle.
- (2) Position Spacer 8279 over the axle bushing on a 4x2 vehicle and right side on a 4x4 vehicle.
- (3) Place Receiver 7932-1 over flanged end of the bushing. (Fig. 2).
- (4) Place small end of Remover/Install 7932-2 against other side of the bushing.
- (5) Install bolt 7604 through remover, bushing and receiver.
- (6) Install Long Nut 7603 and tighten nut too pull bushing out of the axle bracket.



**Fig. 2 Bushing Removal**

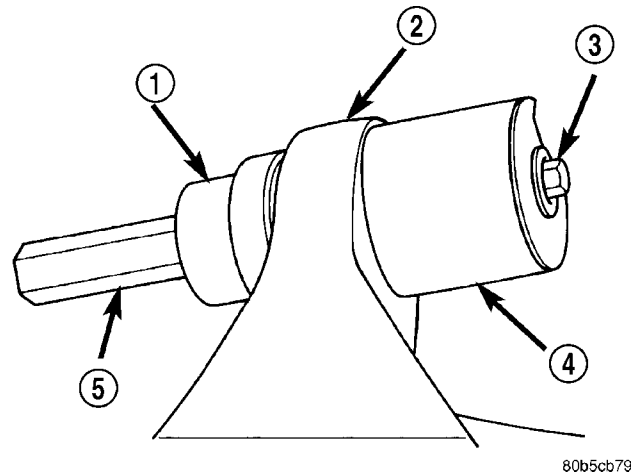
- 1 - RECEIVER
- 2 - AXLE BRACKET
- 3 - BOLT
- 4 - REMOVER/INSTALLER
- 5 - LONG NUT

(7) Remove nut, bolt, receiver, remover and bushing.

**NOTE:** On 4x2 vehicle and right side of 4x4 vehicle, leave Spacer 8279 in position for bushing installation.

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Place Receiver 7932-1 on the other side of the axle bracket.
- (2) Position new bushing up to the axle bracket., and large end of Remover/Install 7932-2 against the bushing (Fig. 3).
- (3) Install bolt 7604 through receiver, bushing and installer.
- (4) Install Long Nut 7603 and tighten nut to draw the bushing into the axle bracket.
- (5) Remove tools and install the upper suspension arm.



**Fig. 3 Bushing Installation**

- 1 - REMOVER/INSTALLER
- 2 - AXLE BRACKET
- 3 - BOLT
- 4 - RECEIVER
- 5 - LONG NUT

## HUB / BEARING

### DESCRIPTION

The bearing used on the front hub of this vehicle is the combined hub and bearing unit type assembly. This unit assembly combines the front wheel mounting hub (flange) and the front wheel bearing into a one piece unit. The wheel mounting studs are the only replaceable component of the hub/bearing assembly.

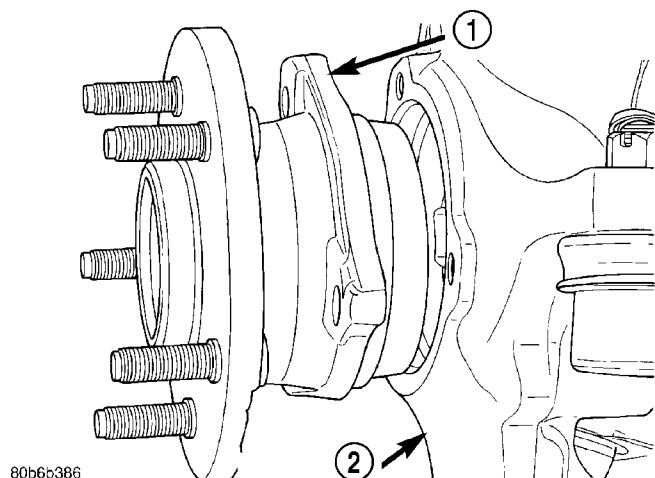
### OPERATION

The hub/bearing assembly is mounted to the steering knuckle and is retained by three mounting bolts accessible from the back of the steering knuckle. The hub/bearing unit is not serviceable and must be replaced as an assembly if the bearing or the hub is determined to be defective.

### REMOVAL

- (1) Raise and support the vehicle.
- (2) Remove the wheel and tire assembly.
- (3) Remove the brake caliper, caliper anchor, rotor and ABS wheel speed sensor, (Refer to 5 - BRAKES/ELECTRICAL/Front Wheel Speed Sensor - Removal).
- (4) Remove the cotter pin, nut retainer and axle hub nut.
- (5) Remove the hub bearing mounting bolts from the back of the steering knuckle. Remove hub bearing (Fig. 4) from the steering knuckle and off the axle shaft.

## HUB / BEARING (Continued)

**Fig. 4 Hub Bearing & Knuckle**

- 1 - HUB BEARING  
2 - KNUCKLE

**INSTALLATION**

- (1) Install the hub bearing to the knuckle.
- (2) Install the hub bearing to knuckle bolts and tighten to 102 N·m (75 ft. lbs.).
- (3) Install the hub washer and nut. Tighten the hub nut to 237 N·m (175 ft. lbs.). Install the nut retainer and a new cotter pin.
- (4) Install the brake rotor, caliper anchor, caliper and ABS wheel speed sensor. (Refer to 5 - BRAKES/ELECTRICAL/FRONT WHEEL SPEED SENSOR - INSTALLATION).
- (5) Install the wheel and tire assembly (Refer to 22 - TIRES/WHEELS - STANDARD PROCEDURE).
- (6) Remove the support and lower the vehicle.

**KNUCKLE****DESCRIPTION**

The knuckle is a single casting with legs machined for the upper and lower ball joints. The knuckle also has machined mounting locations for the front brake calipers and hub bearing.

**OPERATION**

The steering knuckle pivot between the upper and lower ball joint. Steering linkage attached to the knuckle allows the vehicle to be steered.

**REMOVAL**

Ball stud service procedures below require removal of the hub bearing. Removal and installation of upper and lower ball studs require the use of Tool Kit 6289.

- (1) Remove the tire and wheel assembly (Refer to 22 - TIRES/WHEELS/WHEELS - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

- (2) Remove the disc brake caliper and adapter (Refer to 5 - BRAKES/HYDRAULIC/MECHANICAL/DISC BRAKE CALIPER ADAPTER - REMOVAL).

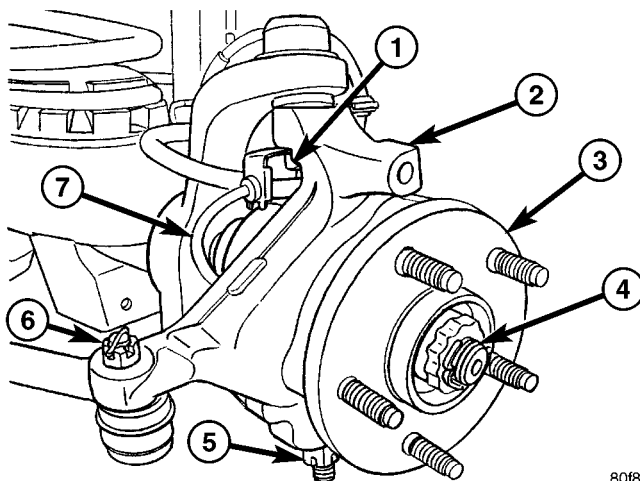
- (3) Remove the rotor (Refer to 5 - BRAKES/HYDRAULIC/MECHANICAL/ROTORS - REMOVAL).

- (4) Remove hub bearing (Fig. 5) (Refer to 2 - SUSPENSION/FRONT/HUB / BEARING - REMOVAL).

- (5) Disconnect the tie-rod or drag link from the steering knuckle arm, (Fig. 5) (Refer to 19 - STEERING/LINKAGE/TIE ROD END - REMOVAL).

- (6) Remove the cotter pins from the upper and lower ball studs (Fig. 5).

- (7) Remove the upper and lower ball stud nuts (Fig. 5).

**Fig. 5 STEERING KNUCKLE**

- 1 - UPPER BALL JOINT NUT  
2 - STEERING KNUCKLE  
3 - HUB/BEARING  
4 - AXLE NUT/COTTER PIN  
5 - LOWER BALL JOINT NUT  
6 - TIE ROD NUT/COTTER PIN  
7 - WHEEL SPEED SENSOR WIRE

- (8) Strike the steering knuckle with a brass hammer to loosen knuckle from the ball studs. Remove knuckle from ball studs.

**INSTALLATION**

- (1) Position the steering knuckle on the ball studs.
- (2) Install and tighten the bottom retaining nut to 109 N·m (80 ft. lbs.) torque. Install new cotter pin. (Fig. 5).
- (3) Install and tighten the top retaining nut to 101 N·m (75 ft. lbs.) torque. Install new cotter pin. (Fig. 5).
- (4) Install the hub bearing (Fig. 5) (Refer to 2 - SUSPENSION/FRONT/HUB / BEARING - INSTALLATION).
- (5) Connect the tie-rod or drag link end to the steering knuckle arm. (Fig. 5) (Refer to 19 - STEERING/LINKAGE/TIE ROD END - INSTALLATION).

## KNUCKLE (Continued)

(6) Install the rotor (Refer to 5 - BRAKES/HYDRAULIC/MECHANICAL/ROTORS - INSTALLATION).

(7) Install the brake caliper and caliper adapter (Refer to 5 - BRAKES/HYDRAULIC/MECHANICAL/DISC BRAKE CALIPER ADAPTER - INSTALLATION).

(8) Install the tire and wheel assembly (Refer to 22 - TIRES/WHEELS - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

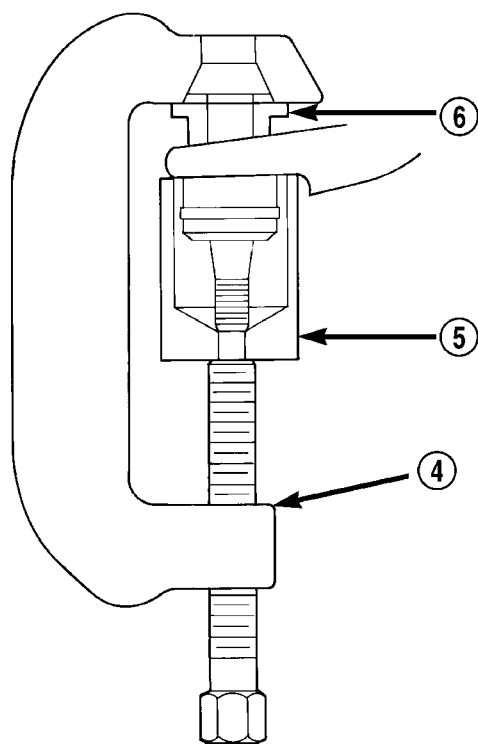
(9) Check for an alignment (Refer to 2 - SUSPENSION/WHEEL ALIGNMENT - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

## LOWER BALL JOINT

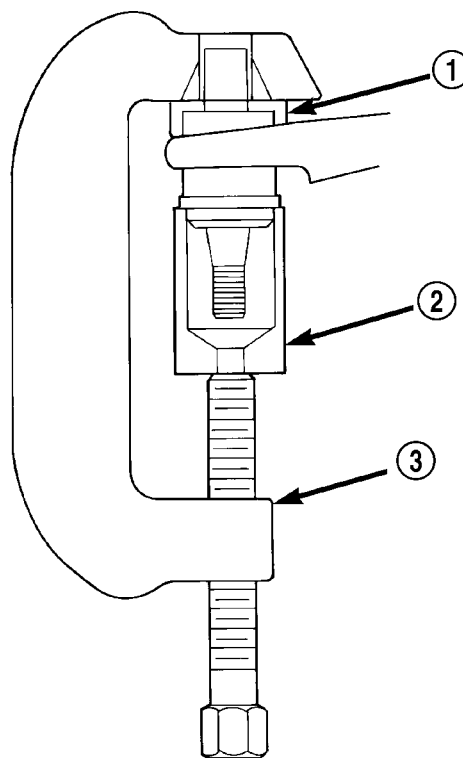
### REMOVAL

Ball stud service procedures below require removal of the hub bearing and axle shaft. Removal and installation of upper and lower ball studs require the use of Tool Kit 6289.

(1) Position tools as shown to remove and install ball stud (Fig. 6).



**REMOVAL**



**INSTALLATION**

80a7e2a8

**Fig. 6 Lower**

1 - SPECIAL TOOL 6289-12  
2 - SPECIAL TOOL 6289-4  
3 - SPECIAL TOOL 4212F

4 - SPECIAL TOOL 4212F  
5 - SPECIAL TOOL 6289-1  
6 - SPECIAL TOOL 6289-3

## LOWER CONTROL ARM

### DESCRIPTION

The lower suspension arms are hydroformed steel and use voided oval bushings at one end of the arm.

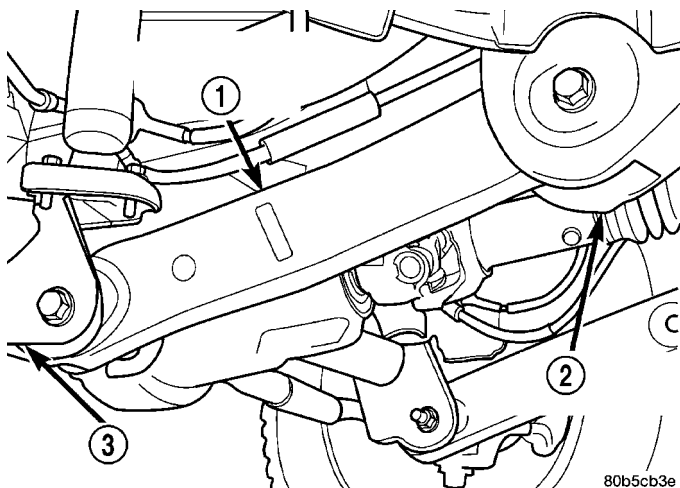
### OPERATION

The bushings provide isolation from the axle. The arms mount to the unibody frame rail bracket and the axle brackets. The arm and bushings provide location and react to loads from the axle.

### REMOVAL

- (1) Raise the vehicle and support the front axle.
- (2) Remove the lower suspension arm nut and bolt from the axle bracket (Fig. 7).
- (3) Remove the nut and bolt from the frame rail bracket and remove the lower suspension arm (Fig. 7).

## LOWER CONTROL ARM (Continued)

**Fig. 7 Lower Suspension Arm**

- 1 - LOWER SUSPENSION ARM
- 2 - FRAME RAIL BRACKET
- 3 - AXLE BRACKET

**INSTALLATION**

(1) Position the lower suspension arm in the axle bracket and frame rail bracket.

**NOTE:** The end of the arm with the oval bushing attaches to the axle bracket.

(2) Install the axle bracket bolt and nut finger tight.

(3) Install the frame rail bracket bolt and nut finger tight.

(4) Remove support and lower the vehicle.

(5) With the vehicle on the ground tighten the frame bracket bolt to 156 N·m (115 ft. lbs.). Tighten the axle bracket nut to 163 N·m (120 ft. lbs.).

(6) Check the alignment if new parts were installed.

**SHOCK****DESCRIPTION**

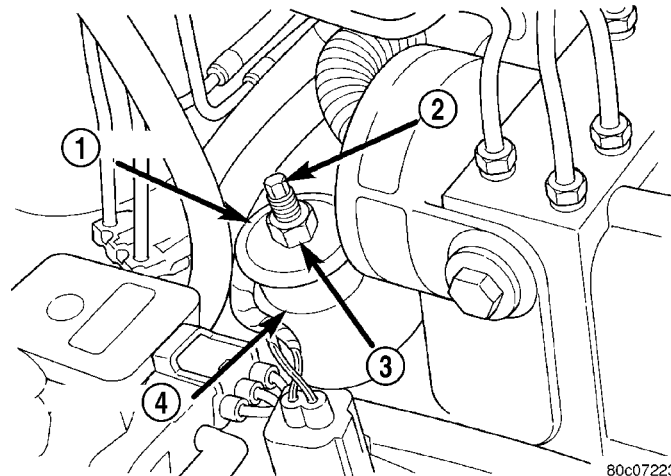
The top of the shock absorbers are bolted to the body. The bottom of the shocks are bolted to the axle brackets. The standard shocks have conventional twin tube construction and are low pressure gas charged. Gas charging prevents cavitation during rough road operation. Up-Country shocks are mono tube design and are high pressure gas charged.

**OPERATION**

The shock absorbers dampen jounce and rebound motion of the vehicle over various road conditions and limit suspension rebound travel.

**REMOVAL**

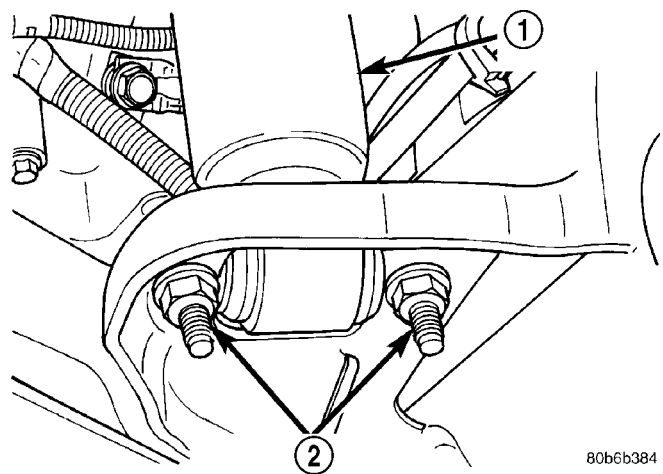
(1) Remove the nut, retainer and grommet from the shock stud in the engine compartment (Fig. 8).

**Fig. 8 Upper Shock Mounting**

- 1 - RETAINER
- 2 - STUD
- 3 - NUT
- 4 - GROMMET

(2) Raise and support the front axle.

(3) Remove the lower mounting nuts from the axle bracket (Fig. 9). Remove the shock absorber.

**Fig. 9 Lower Shock Mounting**

- 1 - SHOCK ABSORBER
- 2 - MOUNTING NUTS



## SHOCK (Continued)

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Position the lower retainer and grommet on the shock stud. Insert the shock absorber through the shock tower hole.
- (2) Install the lower shock studs into the axle bracket.
- (3) Install the mounting nuts and tighten to 28 N·m (250 in. lbs.).
- (4) Remove support and lower the vehicle.
- (5) Install the upper grommet, retainer and nut on the stud in the engine compartment. Hold the shock stud with a 8 mm wrench and tighten the nut to 35 N·m (26 ft. lbs.).

## SPRING

## DESCRIPTION

The coil springs mount up in the wheelhouse which is part of the unitized body bracket. A rubber doughnut isolator is located between the top of the spring and the body. The bottom of the spring seats on a axle isolator made of rubber with a steel insert.

## OPERATION

The coil springs control ride quality and maintain proper ride height. The isolators provide road noise isolation.

## REMOVAL

- (1) Raise and support the vehicle.
- (2) Remove the wheel and tire assemblies.
- (3) Position a hydraulic jack under the axle to support it.
- (4) Remove shock absorbers lower mounting nuts from the axle brackets.
- (5) Remove the track bar mounting bolt from the axle bracket.

**NOTE:** Make sure the lower part of the shock does not hold tension on the brake lines at the axle tube housing located at the lower shock mounting area.

- (6) Lower the axle until the spring is free from the upper mount and isolator (Fig. 10).
- (7) Remove the spring from the vehicle.
- (8) Remove and inspect the upper and lower spring isolators.

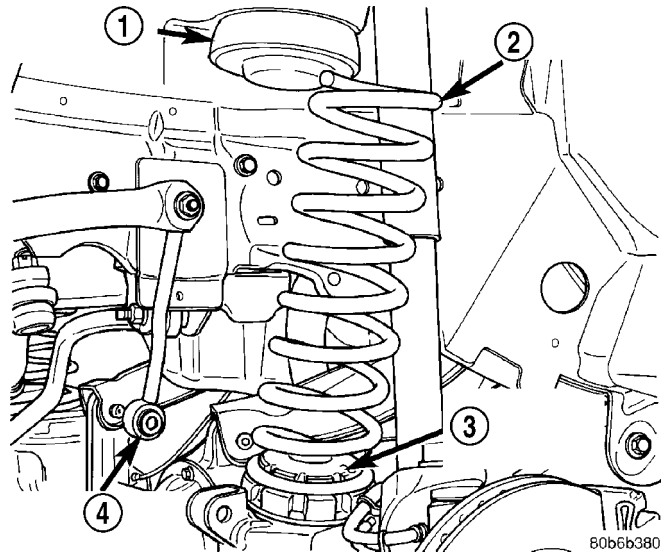


Fig. 10 Front Coil Spring

- 1 - UPPER ISOLATOR
- 2 - COIL SPRING
- 3 - LOWER ISOLATOR
- 4 - STABILIZER LINK

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Install the upper isolator.
- (2) Install the lower isolator with the isolator locator nub in the axle pad hole (Fig. 11).

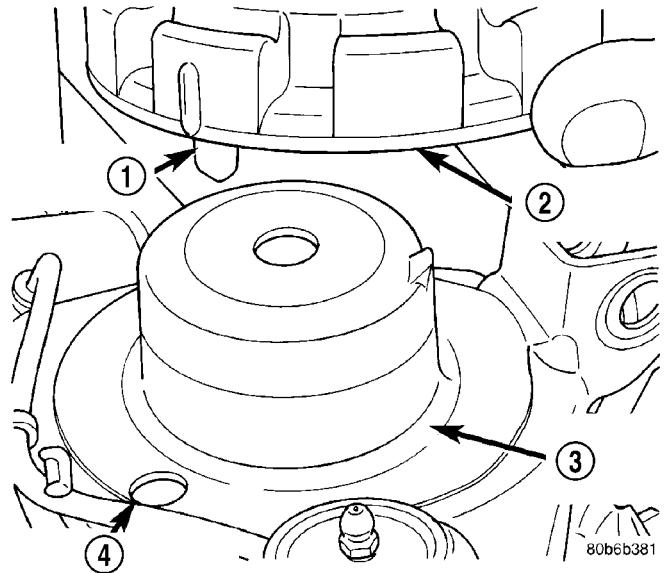


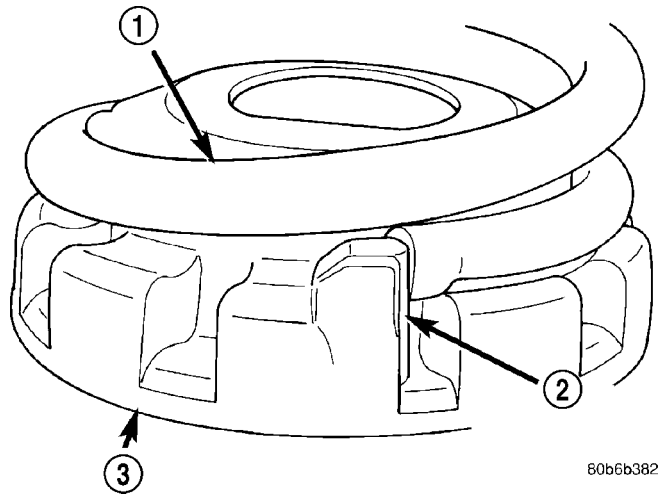
Fig. 11 Lower Isolator

- 1 - LOCATING NUB
- 2 - LOWER ISOLATOR
- 3 - AXLE SPRING PAD
- 4 - LOCATING HOLE

- (3) Position the coil spring on the axle spring pad.

## SPRING (Continued)

**CAUTION:** Ensure the spring is positioned on the lower isolator with the end of the spring coil against the isolator spring locator (Fig. 12).



**Fig. 12 Isolator Spring Locator**

- 1 - COIL SPRING
- 2 - SPRING LOCATOR
- 3 - LOWER ISOLATOR

(4) Raise the axle and guide the springs onto the spring upper mounts and lower shock studs into the axle brackets.

(5) Install the shock absorbers lower mounting nuts.

(6) Install the track bar to the axle bracket and install the mounting bolt.

**NOTE:** It may be necessary to pry the axle assembly over to install the track bar bolt.

(7) Remove the hydraulic jack from under the vehicle.

(8) Tighten all suspension components to proper torque.

(9) Install the wheel and tire assemblies.

(10) Remove support and lower vehicle.

## STABILIZER BAR

### DESCRIPTION

The bar extends across the front underside of the chassis and is mounted to the frame rails. Links are connected from the bar to the axle brackets. The stabilizer bar and links are isolated by rubber bushings.

### OPERATION

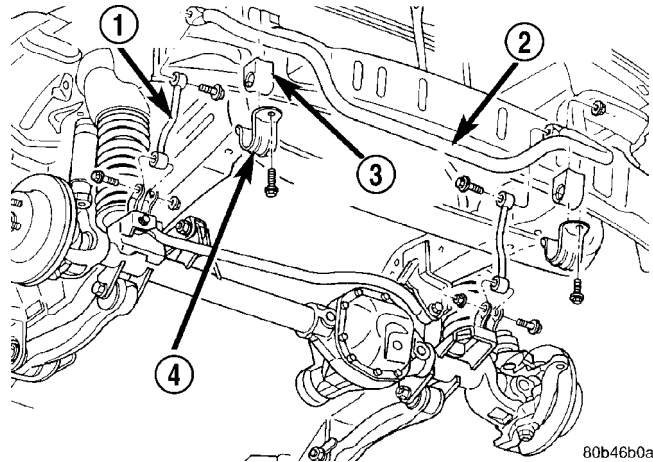
The stabilizer bar is used to control vehicle body roll during turns. The spring steel bar helps to control the vehicle body in relationship to the suspension.

### REMOVAL

(1) Raise and support the vehicle.

(2) Remove link nuts and bolts (Fig. 13) and remove the links.

(3) Remove the stabilizer bar retainer bolts (Fig. 13) from the frame rails and remove the stabilizer bar.



**Fig. 13 Stabilizer Bar**

- 1 - LINK
- 2 - STABILIZER BAR
- 3 - BUSHING
- 4 - RETAINER

### INSTALLATION

(1) Position the stabilizer bar on the frame rail and install the retainers and bolts. Ensure the bar is centered with equal spacing on both sides. Tighten the bolts to 92 N·m (68 ft. lbs.).

(2) Install the links onto the stabilizer bar and axle brackets and install the bolts and nuts finger tight.

(3) Remove the supports and lower the vehicle.

(4) With the vehicle on the ground tighten the stabilizer bar link nuts to 106 N·m (78 ft. lbs.).

## TRACK BAR

### DESCRIPTION

The bar is attached to a frame rail bracket and axle bracket. The bar is forged and has non replaceable isolator bushings at both ends.

### OPERATION

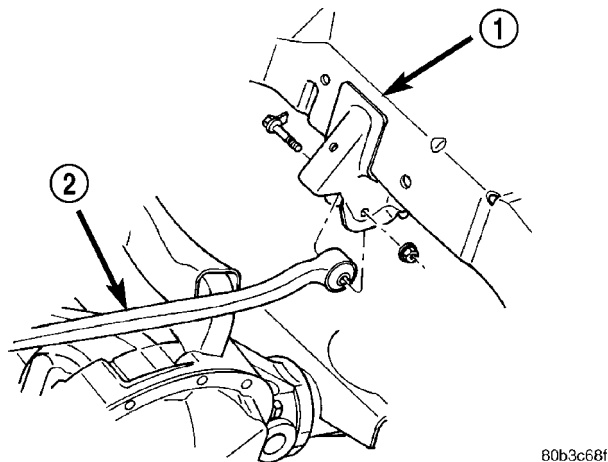
The track bar is used to control front axle lateral movement and provides cross car location of the axle assembly.

### REMOVAL

(1) Raise and support the vehicle.

## TRACK BAR (Continued)

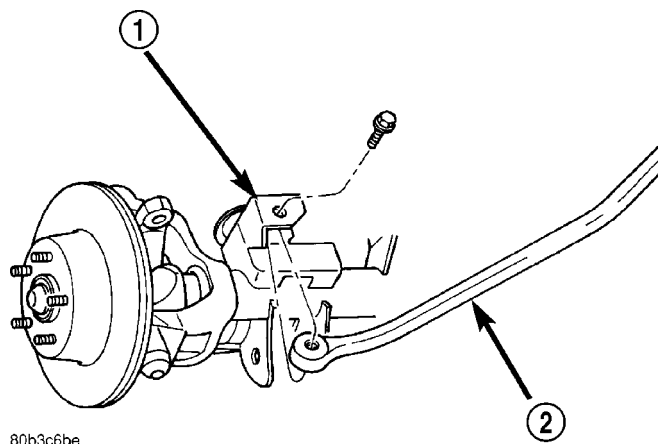
(2) Remove the nut and bolt from the frame rail bracket (Fig. 14).



**Fig. 14 Track Bar Frame Rail Bracket**

1 - FRAME RAIL  
2 - TRACK BAR

(3) Remove the bolt from the axle shaft tube bracket (Fig. 15). Remove the track bar.



**Fig. 15 Track Bar Axle Bracket**

1 - AXLE BRACKET  
2 - TRACK BAR

## INSTALLATION

(1) Install the track bar to the axle tube bracket. Install the retaining bolt finger tight.

(2) Install track bar to the frame rail bracket. Install the bolt and nut finger tight.

**NOTE:** It may be necessary to pry the axle assembly over to install the track bar to the frame rail bracket.

(3) Remove the supports and lower the vehicle.

(4) With the vehicle on the ground tighten the nut at the frame rail bracket and to the bolt at the axle bracket to 100 N·m (74 ft. lbs.).

(5) Check alignment specifications if a new track bar was installed.

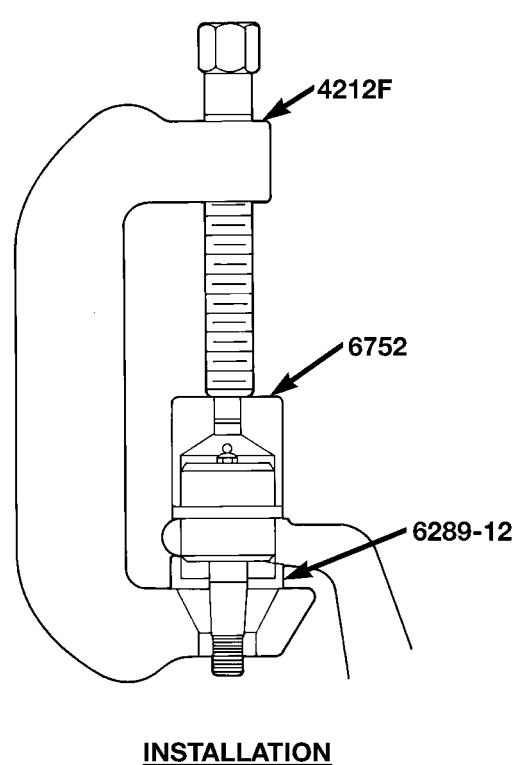
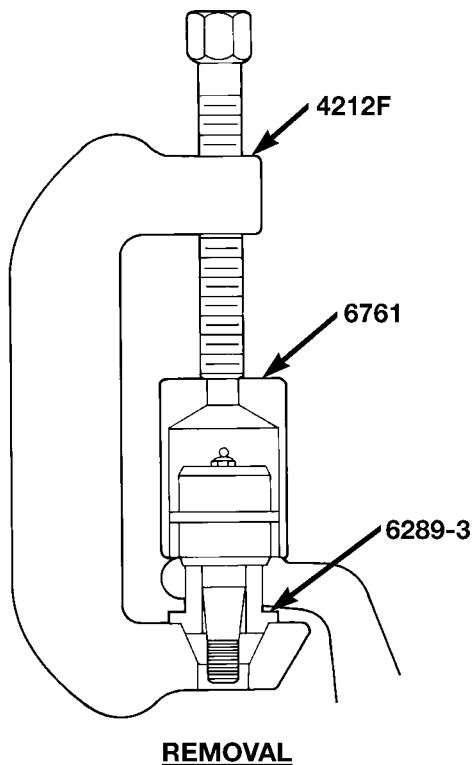
## UPPER BALL JOINT

## REMOVAL

Ball stud service procedures below require removal of the hub bearing and axle shaft. Removal and installation of upper and lower ball studs require the use of Tool Kit 6289.

(1) Position tools as shown to remove and install ball stud (Fig. 16).

## UPPER BALL JOINT (Continued)



80a7e2a7

Fig. 16 Upper

## UPPER CONTROL ARM

## DESCRIPTION

The upper suspension arms are hydroformed steel and use rubber bushings at each end of the arm.

## OPERATION

The arms mount to the unibody frame rail bracket and the axle brackets. The arm and bushings provide location and react to loads from the axle. The bushings provide isolation from the axle.

## REMOVAL

- (1) Raise vehicle and support the axle.
- (2) Remove the upper suspension arm mounting nut and bolt (Fig. 17) from the axle bracket.
- (3) Remove the nut and bolt (Fig. 17) at the frame rail and remove the upper suspension arm.

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Position the upper suspension arm at the axle and frame rail.
- (2) Install the bolts and finger tighten the nuts.
- (3) Remove the supports and lower the vehicle.

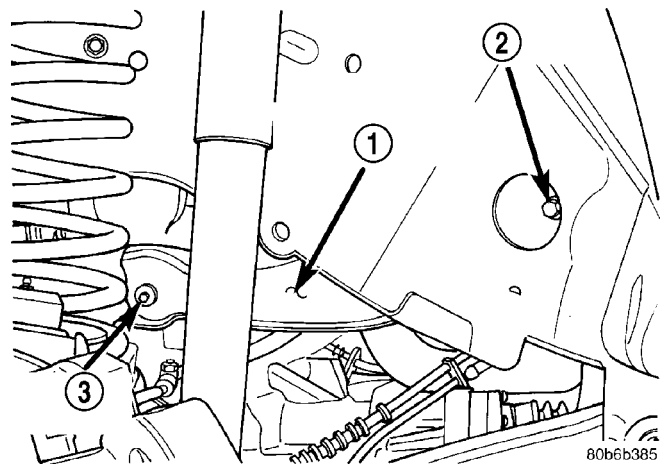


Fig. 17 Upper Suspension Arm

- 1 - UPPER SUSPENSION ARM
- 2 - FRAME BOLT
- 3 - AXLE BOLT

(4) With the vehicle on the ground tighten the axle bracket nut and the frame bracket bolt to 61 N·m (45 ft. lbs.).

(5) Check the alignment if new parts were installed.

REAR

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>REAR</b>		<b>OPERATION</b>	20
DESCRIPTION	17	<b>REMOVAL</b>	20
WARNING	17	<b>INSTALLATION</b>	20
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - REAR		<b>STABILIZER BAR</b>	
SUSPENSION	18	DESCRIPTION	21
SPECIFICATIONS		OPERATION	21
TORQUE CHART	18	REMOVAL	21
SPECIAL TOOLS		INSTALLATION	21
REAR SUSPENSION	19	<b>UPPER BALL JOINT</b>	
<b>LOWER CONTROL ARM</b>		DESCRIPTION - UPPER SUSPENSION ARM,	
DESCRIPTION	19	BUSHINGS, AND BALL JOINT	21
OPERATION	19	OPERATION - UPPER SUSPENSION ARM,	
REMOVAL	19	BUSHINGS, AND BALL JOINT	21
INSTALLATION	19	REMOVAL	21
<b>SHOCK</b>		INSTALLATION	22
DESCRIPTION	19	<b>UPPER CONTROL ARM</b>	
OPERATION	19	DESCRIPTION	22
REMOVAL	19	OPERATION	22
INSTALLATION	19	REMOVAL	22
<b>SPRING</b>		INSTALLATION	23
DESCRIPTION	20		

REAR

DESCRIPTION

The rear suspension (Fig. 1) is comprised of :

- Drive axle
- Shock absorbers
- Coil springs
- Lower suspension arms
- Upper suspension arm
- Stabilizer bar

**CAUTION:** Suspension components with rubber/urethane bushings should be tightened with the vehicle at normal ride height. It is important to have the springs supporting the weight of the vehicle when the fasteners are torqued. This will maintain vehicle ride comfort and prevent premature bushing wear.

WARNING

**WARNING::** Suspension components with rubber bushings must be tightened with the vehicle at normal ride height. It is important to have the springs supporting the weight of the vehicle when the fas-

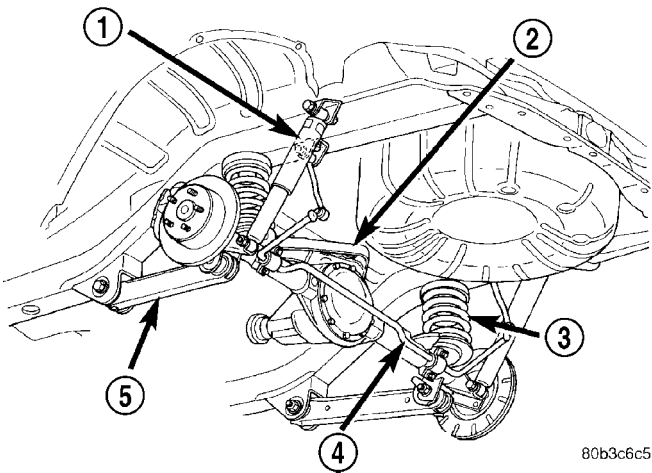


Fig. 1 Rear Suspension

- 1 - SHOCK
- 2 - UPPER SUSPENSION ARM
- 3 - COIL SPRING
- 4 - STABILIZER BAR
- 5 - LOWER SUSPENSION ARM

teners are torqued. If springs are not at their normal ride position, vehicle ride comfort will be affected and cause premature bushing wear.

REAR (Continued)

**DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - REAR SUSPENSION**

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
VEHICLE INSTABILITY	1. Loose or worn wheel bearings. 2. Loose, worn or bent suspension components. 3. Tire pressure.	1. Replace wheel bearings. 2. Inspect, tighten or replace components as necessary. 3. Adjust tire pressure.
VEHICLE PULLS TO ONE SIDE	1. Weak or broken spring. 2. Alignment. 3. Tires. 4. Brakes.	1. Replace spring. 2. Align vehicle to specifications. 3. Replace tires. 4. Repair as necessary.
KNOCKING, RATTLING OR SQUEAKING	1. Worn shock bushings. 2. Loose shock mounting. 3. Shock valve. 4. Loose upper ball joint. 5. Loose, worn or bent suspension components.	1. Replace shock. 2. Tighten to specifications. 3. Replace shock. 4. Replace ball joint. 5. Inspect, tighten or replace components as necessary.
IMPROPER TRACKING	1. Loose, worn or bent suspension components. 2. Bent axle.	1. Inspect, tighten or replace components as necessary. 2. Replace axle.

**SPECIFICATIONS****TORQUE CHART***TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS*

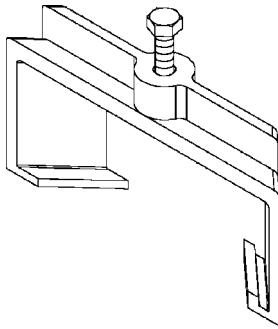
DESCRIPTION	N-m	Ft. Lbs.	In. Lbs.
Shock Absorber Upper Nut	108	80	—
Shock Absorber Lower Nut	115	85	—
Suspension Arm Upper Ball Joint Nut	142	105	—
Suspension Arm Upper Frame Bolts	100	74	—
Ball Joint Plate Bolts	136	100	—
Suspension Arms Lower Axle Bracket Nut	163	120	—
Suspension Arms Lower Frame Bracket Nut	156	115	—
Stabilizer Bar Retainer Bolts	54	40	—
Stabilizer Bar Bar Link Nut	54	40	—
Stabilizer Bar Bracket Link Nut	92	68	—



REAR (Continued)

## SPECIAL TOOLS

## REAR SUSPENSION

**Remover 8278**

## LOWER CONTROL ARM

## DESCRIPTION

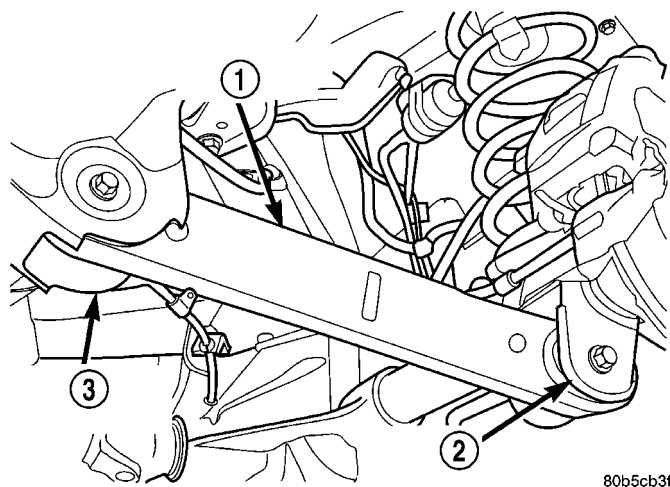
The lower suspension arms are hydroformed steel and use voided oval bushings at each end of the arm.

## OPERATION

The bushings provide isolation from the axle. The arms mount to the unibody frame rail bracket and the axle brackets. The arm and bushings provide location and react to loads.

## REMOVAL

- (1) Raise the vehicle and support the rear axle.
- (2) Remove the lower suspension arm nut and bolt from the axle bracket (Fig. 2).
- (3) Remove the nut and bolt (Fig. 2) from the frame rail and remove the lower suspension arm.



80b5cb3f

**Fig. 2 Lower Suspension Arm**

- 1 - LOWER SUSPENSION ARM
- 2 - AXLE BRACKET
- 3 - FRAME BRACKET

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Position the lower suspension arm in the axle bracket and frame rail bracket.

**NOTE:** The end of the arm with the oval bushing attaches to the axle bracket.

- (2) Install the axle bracket bolt and nut finger tight.
- (3) Install the frame rail bracket bolt and nut finger tight.
- (4) Remove the supports and lower the vehicle.
- (5) With the vehicle on the ground tighten the nut at the frame to 156 N·m (115 ft. lbs.). Tighten the nut at the axle bracket to 163 N·m (120 ft. lbs.).

## SHOCK

## DESCRIPTION

The top of the shock absorbers are bolted to the body. The bottom of the shocks are bolted to the axle brackets. The standard shocks have conventional twin tube construction and are low pressure gas charged. Gas charging prevents cavitation during rough road operation. Up-Country shocks are mono tube design and are high pressure gas charged.

## OPERATION

The shock absorbers dampen jounce and rebound motion of the vehicle over various road conditions and limit suspension rebound travel.

## REMOVAL

- (1) Raise and support the vehicle. Position a hydraulic jack under the axle to support the axle.

**CAUTION:** Do not allow the axle to hang from the upper suspension arm ball joint.

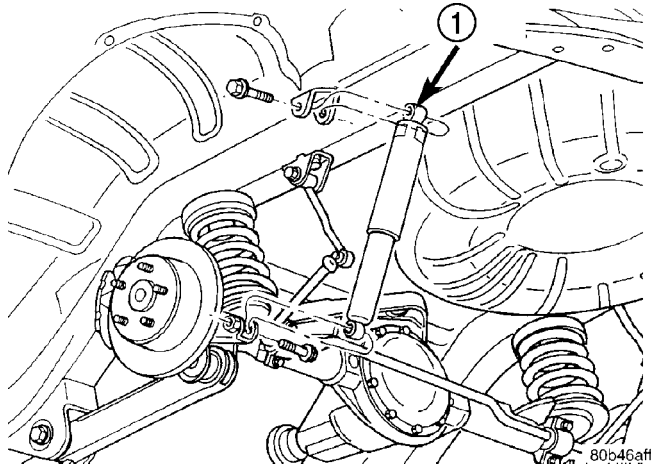
- (2) Remove the upper nut and bolt from the frame bracket (Fig. 3).
- (3) Remove the lower nut and bolt from the axle bracket. Remove the shock absorber.

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Install the shock absorber in the frame bracket and install the bolt and nut.
- (2) Install the shock absorber in the axle bracket and install the bolt and nut.
- (3) Tighten the upper mounting nuts to 108 N·m (80 ft. lbs.). Tighten the lower mounting nuts to 115 N·m (85 ft. lbs.).
- (4) Remove the supports and lower the vehicle.



## SHOCK (Continued)

**Fig. 3 Shock Absorber**

1 - SHOCK

## SPRING

## DESCRIPTION

The coil springs mount up in the wheelhouse which is part of the unitized body bracket. A rubber doughnut isolator is located between the top of the spring and the body. The bottom of the spring seats on a axle isolator made of rubber with a steel insert. The isolators provide road noise isolation.

## OPERATION

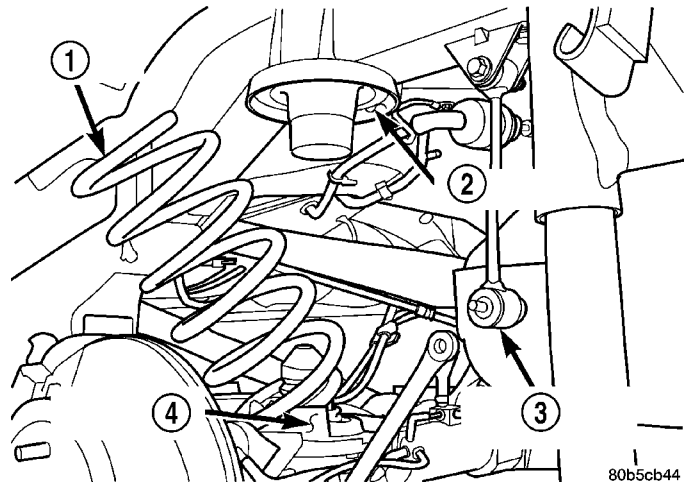
The coil springs control ride quality and maintain proper ride height.

## REMOVAL

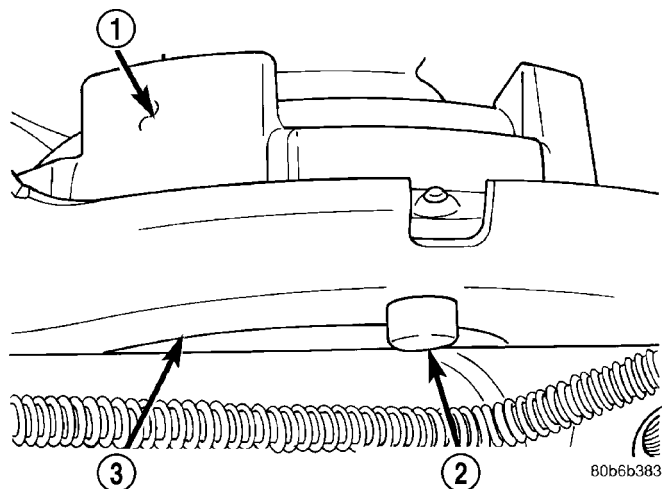
- (1) Raise and support the vehicle. Position a hydraulic jack under the axle to support the axle.
- (2) Remove the wheel and tire assemblies.
- (3) Remove the stabilizer bar link from the stabilizer bar (Fig. 4).
- (4) Remove the shock absorber lower bolt from the axle bracket.
- (5) Lower the hydraulic jack and tilt the axle and remove the coil spring (Fig. 4).
- (6) Remove and inspect the upper and lower spring isolators (Fig. 4).

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Install the upper isolator.
- (2) Install the lower isolator with the isolator locator nub in the axle pad hole (Fig. 5).
- (3) Pull down on the axle and position the coil spring in the lower isolator.

**Fig. 4 Coil Spring**

- 1 - COIL SPRING
- 2 - ISOLATOR
- 3 - STABILIZER LINK
- 4 - ISOLATOR

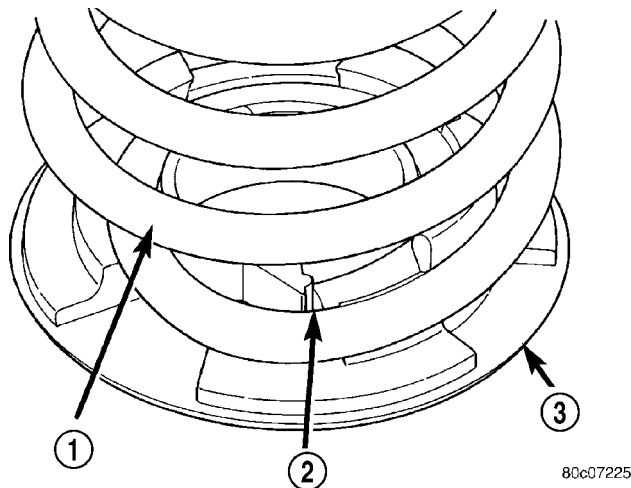
**Fig. 5 Isolator Locator Nub**

- 1 - LOWER ISOLATOR
- 2 - LOCATOR NUB
- 3 - AXLE SPRING PAD

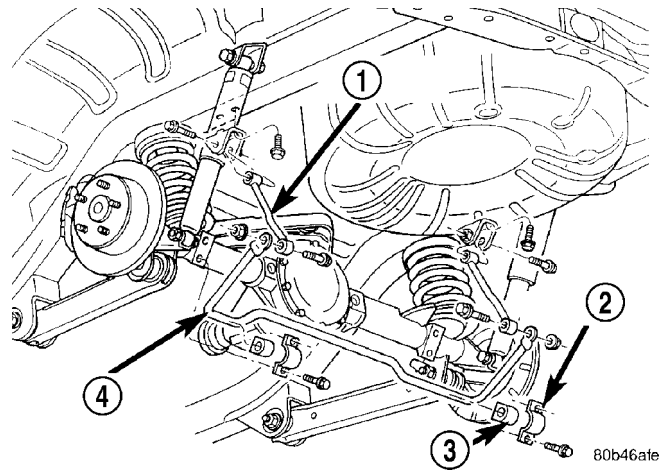
**CAUTION:** Ensure the spring is positioned on the lower isolator with the end of the spring coil against the isolator spring locator (Fig. 6).

- (4) Raise the axle with the hydraulic jack.
- (5) Install the shock absorber to the axle bracket and tighten to specification.
- (6) Install the stabilizer bar link to the stabilizer bar.
- (7) Install the wheel and tire assemblies.
- (8) Remove the supports and lower the vehicle.
- (9) Tighten the stabilizer bar links to specification.

## SPRING (Continued)

**Fig. 6 Isolator Spring Locator - Typical**

- 1 - LOWER ISOLATOR
- 2 - SPRING LOCATOR
- 3 - COIL SPRING

**Fig. 7 Rear Stabilizer Bar**

- 1 - LINK
- 2 - RETAINER
- 3 - BUSHING
- 4 - STABILIZER BAR

## STABILIZER BAR

## DESCRIPTION

The stabilizer bar extends across the back side of the rear axle. Links are connected between the bar and frame rail brackets. The stabilizer bar and links are isolated by rubber bushings.

## OPERATION

The stabilizer bar is used to control vehicle body roll, during turns. The bar helps control the vehicle body in relationship to the suspension.

## REMOVAL

- (1) Raise and support the vehicle.
- (2) Remove the stabilizer bar links from stabilizer bar and frame mount. (Fig. 7).
- (3) Remove the stabilizer bar retainer bolts.
- (4) Remove the stabilizer bar.

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Position the stabilizer bar on the axle and install the retainers and bolts. Ensure the bar is centered with equal spacing on both sides. Tighten the bolts to 54 N·m (40 ft. lbs.).
- (2) Install the links to the stabilizer bar and frame brackets.
- (3) Tighten the nuts at the stabilizer bar to 54 N·m (40 ft. lbs.).
- (4) Tighten the nuts at the frame brackets to 92 N·m (68 ft. lbs.).
- (5) Remove support and lower the vehicle.

## UPPER BALL JOINT

## DESCRIPTION - UPPER SUSPENSION ARM, BUSHINGS, AND BALL JOINT

The suspension arm uses vertical spool bushings to isolate road noise. The suspension arm is bolted through bushings to cage nuts in the body and a ball joint plate to the top of the differential housing.

## OPERATION - UPPER SUSPENSION ARM, BUSHINGS, AND BALL JOINT

The upper suspension arm provides fore/aft and lateral location of the rear axle. The suspension arm travel is limited through the use of jounce bumpers in compression and shock absorbers in rebound.

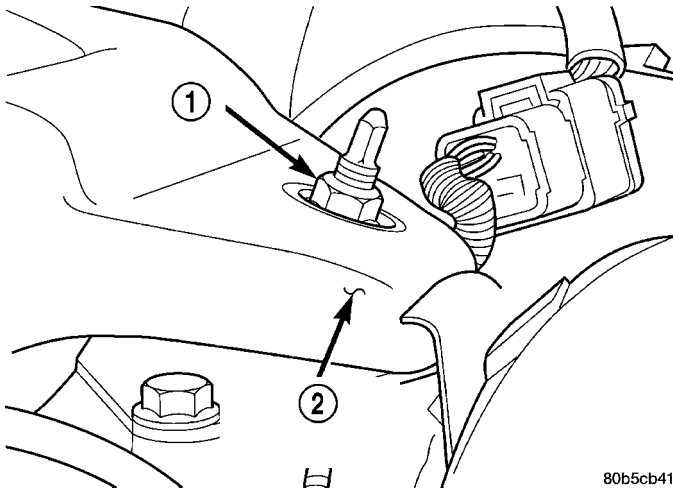
## REMOVAL

- (1) Raise and support the vehicle.
- (2) Support the rear axle with a hydraulic jack.
- (3) Remove the ball joint nut from the top of the upper suspension arm (Fig. 8).
- (4) Separate ball joint from the arm with Remover 8278 (Fig. 9).

**NOTE:** It may be necessary to strike the upper control arm with a hammer to separate the ball joint from the arm.

- (5) Remove the ball joint mounting bolts (Fig. 10) from the differential housing.
- (6) Remove the ball joint from the differential housing.

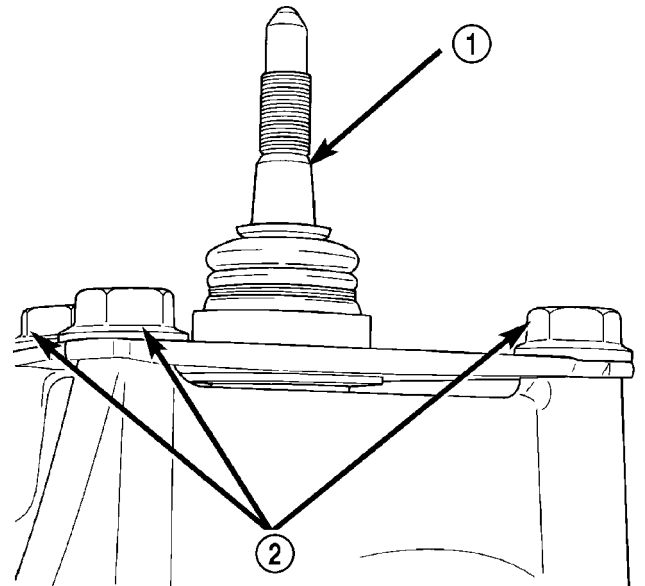
## UPPER BALL JOINT (Continued)



80b5cb41

**Fig. 8 Ball Joint Nut**

- 1 - BALL JOINT NUT  
2 - UPPER SUSPENSION ARM



80b76e7a

**Fig. 10 Ball Joint Mounting Bolts**

- 1 - BALL JOINT  
2 - MOUNTING BOLTS

(5) Remove the supports and lower the vehicle.

## UPPER CONTROL ARM

## DESCRIPTION

The suspension arm uses vertical spool bushings to isolate road noise. The suspension arm is bolted through bushings to cage nuts in the body and a ball joint plate to the top of the differential housing.

## OPERATION

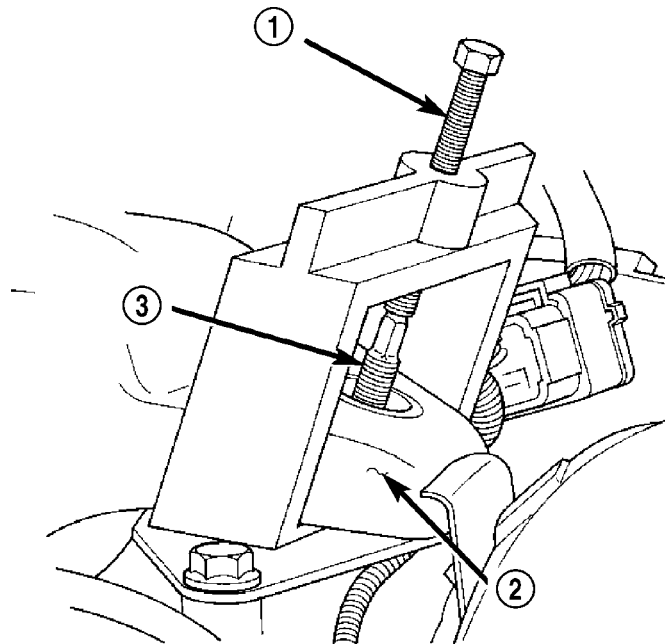
The upper suspension arm provides fore/aft and lateral location of the rear axle. The suspension arm travel is limited through the use of jounce bumpers in compression and shock absorbers in rebound.

## REMOVAL

- (1) Raise and support the vehicle.
- (2) Support the rear axle with a hydraulic jack.
- (3) Remove the park brake cables and brake hose from the arm (Fig. 11).
- (4) Remove the ball joint nut from the top of the upper suspension arm (Fig. 12).
- (5) Separate ball joint from the arm with Remover 8278 (Fig. 13).

**NOTE:** It may be necessary to strike the upper control arm with a hammer to separate the ball joint from the arm.

- (6) Remove the upper suspension arm mounting bolts and remove the arm (Fig. 14).



80b9a4df

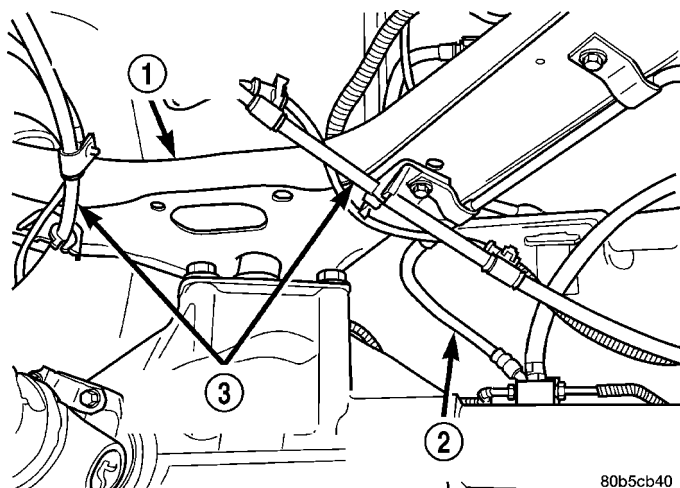
**Fig. 9 Separate Ball Joint**

- 1 - REMOVER  
2 - UPPER SUSPENSION ARM  
3 - BALL JOINT STUD

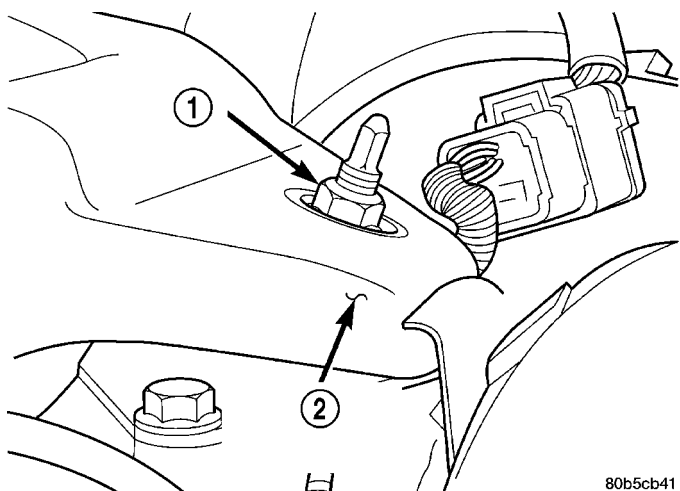
## INSTALLATION

- (1) Install the ball joint on the differential housing.
- (2) Install the ball joint mounting bolts and tighten to 136 N·m (100 ft. lbs.).
- (3) Raise the rear axle with a hydraulic jack to align the upper arm with the ball joint.
- (4) Pull the arm down on the ball joint stud and install a **new** nut. Tighten the nut to 142 N·m (105 ft. lbs.).

## UPPER CONTROL ARM (Continued)

**Fig. 11 Park Brake Cables And Brake Hose**

- 1 - UPPER SUSPENSION ARM
- 2 - REAR BRAKE HOSE
- 3 - PARK BRAKE CABLES

**Fig. 12 Ball Joint Nut**

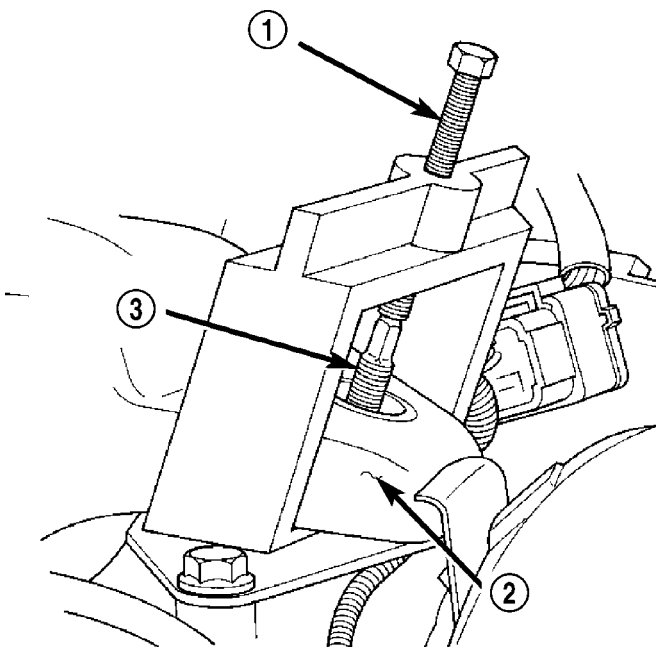
- 1 - BALL JOINT NUT
- 2 - UPPER SUSPENSION ARM

**INSTALLATION**

(1) Position the upper suspension arm in the frame rail brackets.

(2) Install the mounting bolts and tighten to 100 N·m (74 ft. lbs.).

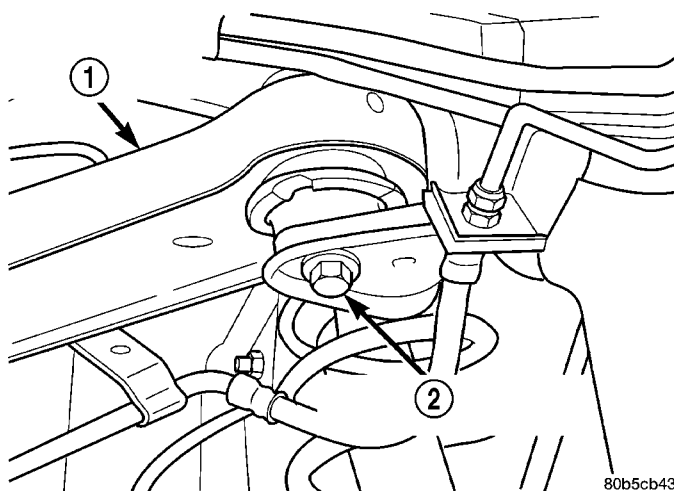
(3) Pull the arm down on the ball joint stud and install a **new** nut. Tighten the nut to 142 N·m (105 ft. lbs.).



80b9a4df

**Fig. 13 Separate Ball Joint**

- 1 - REMOVER
- 2 - UPPER SUSPENSION ARM
- 3 - BALL JOINT STUD



80b5cb43

**Fig. 14 Upper Suspension Arm Mounting Bolt**

- 1 - UPPER SUSPENSION ARM
- 2 - MOUNTING BOLT

(4) Install the park brake cables and brake hose to the arm.

(5) Remove the supports and lower the vehicle.



DIFFERENTIAL & DRIVELINE

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
PROPELLER SHAFT .....	1	REAR AXLE - 198RBI .....	49
FRONT TUBE AXLE .....	16	REAR AXLE - 226RBA .....	82
FRONT AXLE - 186FBI .....	17		

PROPELLER SHAFT

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
PROPELLER SHAFT		INSTALLATION .....	7
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING .....	1	PROPELLER SHAFT - REAR	
STANDARD PROCEDURE .....	4	REMOVAL .....	8
SPECIFICATIONS .....	6	INSTALLATION .....	8
SPECIAL TOOLS .....	6	SINGLE CARDAN UNIVERSAL JOINTS	
PROPELLER SHAFT - C/V FRONT		DISASSEMBLY .....	10
REMOVAL .....	6	ASSEMBLY .....	11
INSTALLATION .....	7	DOUBLE CARDAN UNIVERSAL JOINTS	
PROPELLER SHAFT - U-JOINT FRONT		DISASSEMBLY .....	11
REMOVAL .....	7	ASSEMBLY .....	12

PROPELLER SHAFT

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING

VIBRATION

Tires that are out-of-round, or wheels that are unbalanced, will cause a low frequency vibration. (Refer to 22 - TIRES/WHEELS - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING)

Brake rotors that are unbalanced will cause a harsh, low frequency vibration. (Refer to 5 - BRAKES - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING)

Driveline vibration can also result from loose or damaged engine mounts.

Propeller shaft vibration increases as the vehicle speed is increased. A vibration that occurs within a specific speed range is not usually caused by a propeller shaft being unbalanced. Defective universal joints, or an incorrect propeller shaft angle, are usually the cause of such a vibration.

## PROPELLER SHAFT (Continued)

## DRIVELINE VIBRATION

Drive Condition	Possible Cause	Correction
Propeller Shaft Noise	1) Undercoating or other foreign material on shaft. 2) Loose U-joint clamp screws. 3) Loose or bent U-joint yoke or excessive runout. 4) Incorrect driveline angularity. 5) Rear spring center bolt not in seat. 6) Worn U-joint bearings. 7) Propeller shaft damaged or out of balance. 8) Broken rear spring. 9) Excessive runout or unbalanced condition. 10) Excessive drive pinion gear shaft runout. 11) Excessive axle yoke deflection. 12) Excessive transfer case runout.	1) Clean exterior of shaft and wash with solvent. 2) Install new clamps and screws and tighten to proper torque. 3) Install new yoke. 4) Measure and correct driveline angles. 5) Loosen spring u-bolts and seat center bolt. 6) Install new U-joint. 7) Install new propeller shaft. 8) Install new rear spring. 9) Re-index propeller shaft, test, and evaluate. 10) Re-index propeller shaft and evaluate. 11) Inspect and replace yoke if necessary. 12) Inspect and repair as necessary.
Universal Joint Noise	1) Loose U-joint clamp screws. 2) Lack of lubrication.	1) Install new clamps and screws and tighten to proper torque. 2) Replace U-joints as necessary.

## BALANCE

**NOTE:** Removing and re-indexing the propeller shaft 180° relative to the yoke may eliminate some vibrations.

If propeller shaft is suspected of being unbalanced, it can be verified with the following procedure:

- (1) Raise the vehicle.
- (2) Clean all the foreign material from the propeller shaft and the universal joints.
- (3) Inspect the propeller shaft for missing balance weights, broken welds, and bent areas. **If the propeller shaft is bent, it must be replaced.**

(4) Inspect the universal joints to ensure that they are not worn, are properly installed, and are correctly aligned with the shaft.

(5) Check the universal joint clamp screws torque.

(6) Remove the wheels and tires. Install the wheel lug nuts to retain the brake drums or rotors.

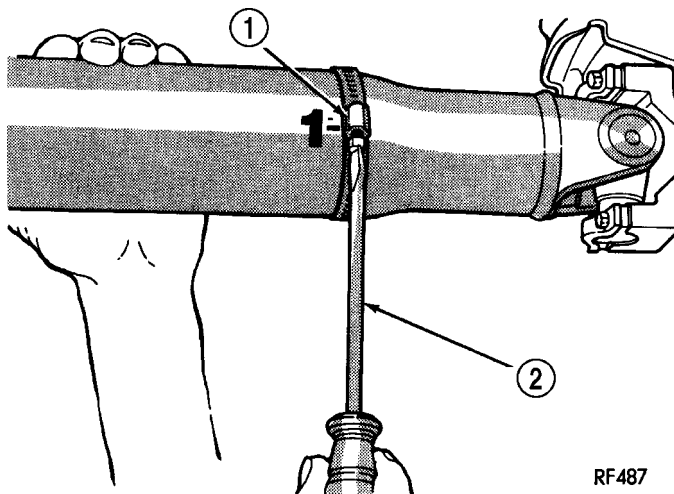
(7) Mark and number the shaft six inches from the yoke end at four positions 90° apart.

(8) Run and accelerate the vehicle until vibration occurs. Note the intensity and speed the vibration occurred. Stop the engine.



## PROPELLER SHAFT (Continued)

(9) Install a screw clamp at position 1 (Fig. 1).



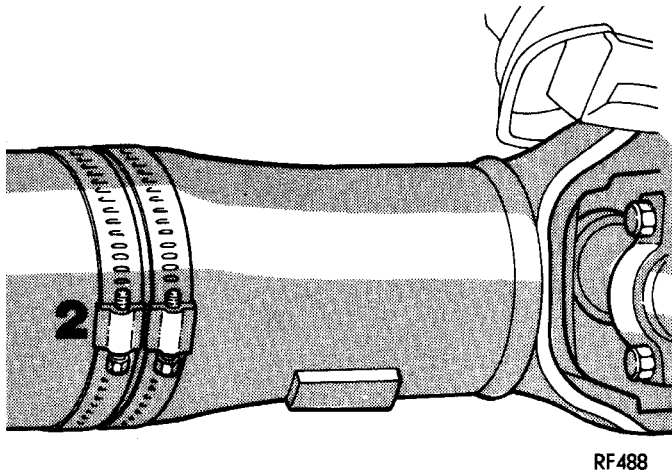
**Fig. 1 CLAMP SCREW POSITION 1**

1 - CLAMP  
2 - SCREWDRIVER

(10) Start the engine and re-check for vibration. If there is little or no change in vibration, move the clamp to one of the other three positions. Repeat the vibration test.

(11) If there is no difference in vibration at the other positions, the source of the vibration may not be propeller shaft.

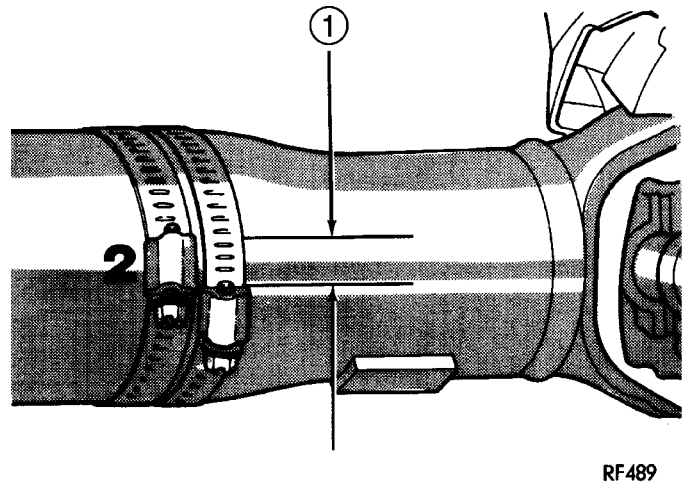
(12) If the vibration decreased, install a second clamp (Fig. 2) and repeat the test.



**Fig. 2 TWO CLAMP SCREWS**

(13) If the additional clamp causes an additional vibration, separate the clamps (1/4 inch above and below the mark). Repeat the vibration test (Fig. 3).

(14) Increase distance between the clamp screws and repeat the test until the amount of vibration is



**Fig. 3 CLAMP SCREWS SEPARATED**

1 - 1/2 INCH

at the lowest level. Bend the slack end of the clamps so the screws will not loosen.

(15) If the vibration remains unacceptable, apply the same steps to the front end of the propeller shaft.

(16) Install the wheel and tires. Lower the vehicle.

### RUNOUT

(1) Remove dirt, rust, paint, and undercoating from the propeller shaft surface where the dial indicator will contact the shaft.

(2) The dial indicator must be installed perpendicular to the shaft surface.

(3) Measure runout at the center and ends of the shaft sufficiently far away from weld areas to ensure that the effects of the weld process will not enter into the measurements.

(4) Refer to Runout Specifications chart.

(5) If the propeller shaft runout is out of specification, remove the propeller shaft, index the shaft 180°, and re-install the propeller shaft. Measure shaft runout again.

(6) If the propeller shaft runout is now within specifications, mark the shaft and yokes for proper orientation.

(7) If the propeller shaft runout is not within specifications, verify that the runout of the transmission/transfer case and axle are within specifications. Correct as necessary and re-measure propeller shaft runout.

(8) Replace the propeller shaft if the runout still exceeds the limits.

## PROPELLER SHAFT (Continued)

## RUNOUT SPECIFICATIONS

Front of Shaft	0.020 in. (0.50 mm)
Center of Shaft	0.025 in. (0.63 mm)
Rear of Shaft	0.020 in. (0.50 mm)

## note:

Measure front/rear runout approximately 3 inches (76 mm) from the weld seam at each end of the shaft tube for tube lengths over 30 inches. For tube lengths under 30 inches, the maximum allowed runout is 0.020 in. (0.50 mm) for the full length of the tube.

## STANDARD PROCEDURE

This procedure applies to the front and rear propeller shaft. To obtain front (output) angle on the C/V front propeller shaft, place Inclinator 7663 on the machined ring of the pinion flange. To obtain propeller shaft angle measurement on the C/V front propeller shaft, place inclinometer on the propeller shaft tube.

## PROPELLER SHAFT ANGLE

(1) Raise and support the vehicle at the axles as level as possible. Allow the wheels and propeller shaft to turn.

(2) Remove universal joint snap rings if equipped, so inclinometer base sits flat.

(3) Rotate shaft until transmission/transfer case output yoke bearing cap is facing downward.

**NOTE:** Always make measurements from front to rear and from the same side of the vehicle.

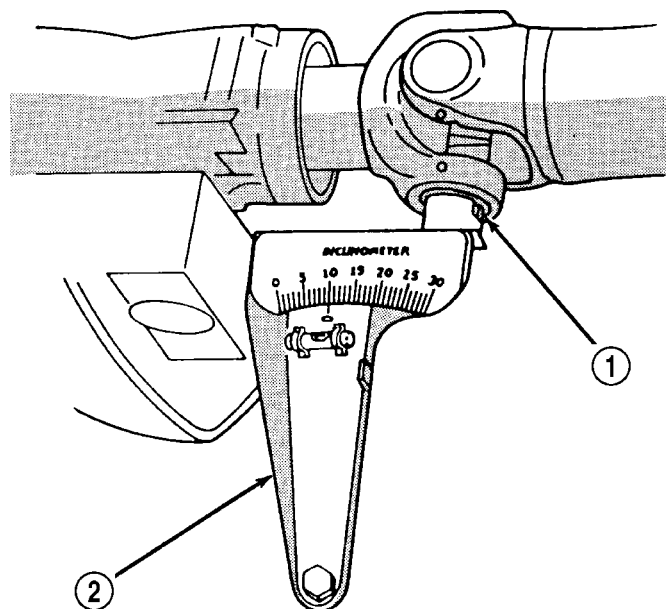
(4) Place inclinometer on yoke bearing cap or pinion flange ring (A) parallel to the shaft (Fig. 4). Center bubble in sight glass and record measurement.

**NOTE:** This measurement will give you the transmission or Output Yoke Angle (A).

(5) Rotate propeller shaft 90 degrees and place inclinometer on yoke bearing cap or propeller shaft tube on C/V propeller shaft, parallel to the shaft (Fig. 5). Center bubble in sight glass and record measurement. This measurement can also be taken at the rear end of the shaft.

**NOTE:** This measurement will give you the propeller shaft angle (C).

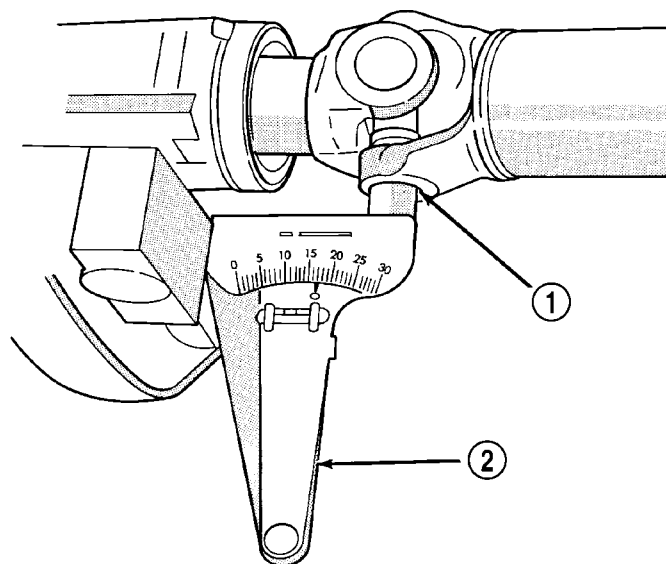
(6) Subtract smaller figure from larger (C minus A) to obtain transmission output operating angle.



J9216-13

Fig. 4 OUTPUT YOKE ANGLE (A)

- 1 - SLIP YOKE BEARING CAP  
2 - INCLINOMETER



J9216-9

Fig. 5 PROPELLER SHAFT ANGLE (C)

- 1 - SHAFT YOKE BEARING CAP  
2 - INCLINOMETER

## PROPELLER SHAFT (Continued)

(7) Rotate propeller shaft 90 degrees and place inclinometer on pinion yoke bearing cap parallel to the shaft (Fig. 6). Center bubble in sight glass and record measurement.

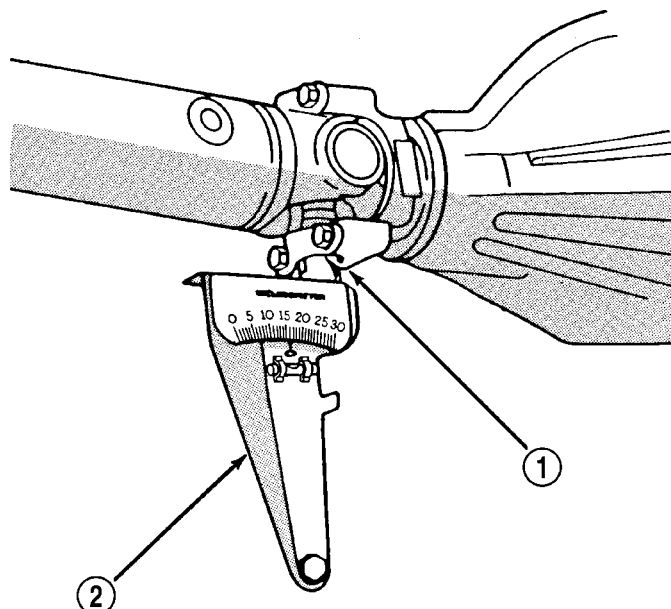
**NOTE:** This measurement will give you the pinion shaft or input yoke angle (B).

(8) Subtract smaller figure from larger (C minus B) to obtain axle Input Operating Angle.

Refer to rules and example in (Fig. 7) for additional information.

**RULES**

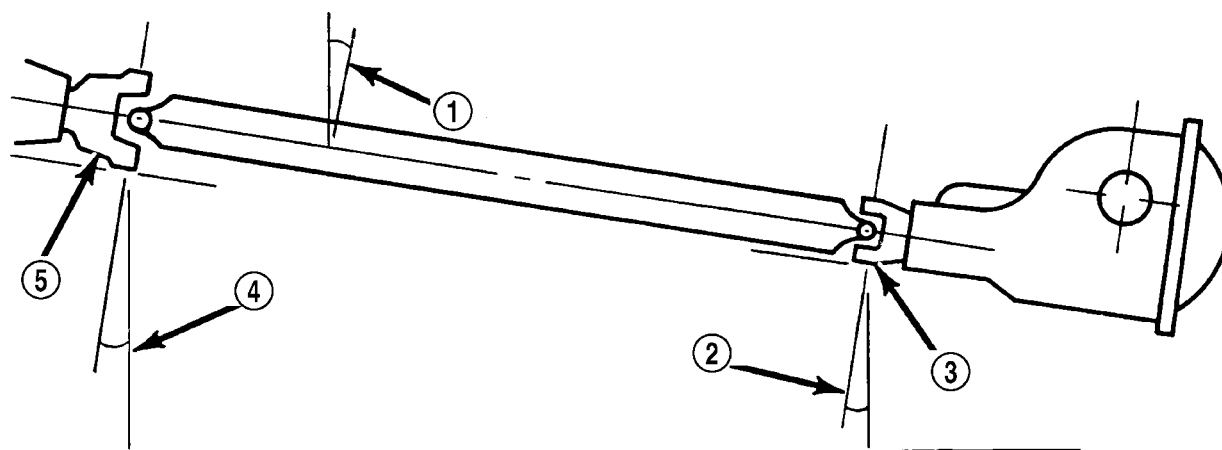
- Good cancellation of U-joint operating angles is within 1 degree.
- Operating angles less than 3 degrees.
- Operating angles less than 10 degrees for double cardan U-joint.
- At least 1/2 of one degree continuous operating (propeller shaft) angle.



J9216-12

**Fig. 6 INPUT YOKE ANGLE (B)**

1 - PINION YOKE BEARING CAP  
2 - INCLINOMETER



Horizontal Level

(A) Output Yoke = 3.0° or 4.9°  
(C) Prop. Shaft = 4.9° or -3.0°

Transmission Output  
Operating Angle 1.9°

(B) Axle Input Yoke = 3.2° or 4.9°  
(C) Prop. Shaft = 4.9° or -3.2°

Axle Input  
Operating Angle 1.7°

Trans. Output Operating Angle 1.9°  
Axle Input Operating Angle -1.7°

Amount of U-Joint Cancellation 0.2°

J9316-3

**Fig. 7 UNIVERSAL JOINT ANGLE EXAMPLE**

1 - 4.9° Angle (C)  
2 - 3.2° Angle (B)  
3 - Input Yoke

4 - 3.0° Angle (A)  
5 - Output Yoke

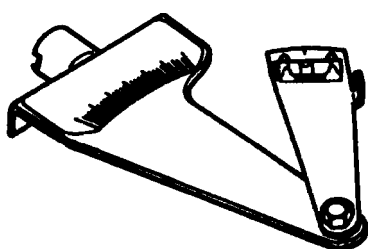
## PROPELLER SHAFT (Continued)

## SPECIFICATIONS

## TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS

DESCRIPTION	N-m	Ft. Lbs.	In. Lbs.
Front C/V Shaft - Flange Bolts	32	24	-
Front U-Joint Shaft - Axle Yoke Nuts	19	14	-
Front U-Joint Shaft - Transfer Case Bolts	27	20	-
Rear Shaft - Yoke Nuts	19	14	-
Rear Shaft - Transfer Case Flange Bolts	32	24	-

## SPECIAL TOOLS



INCLINOMETER 7663

PROPELLER SHAFT - C/V  
FRONT

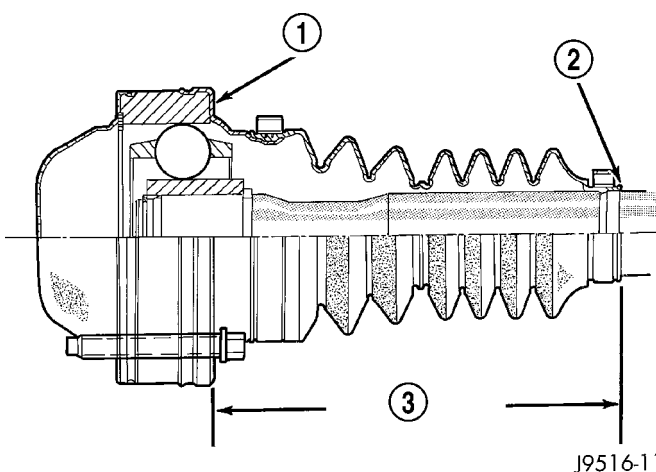
## REMOVAL

**NOTE:** Different length propeller shafts are used for different drivetrain applications. Ensure that the correct propeller shaft is used.

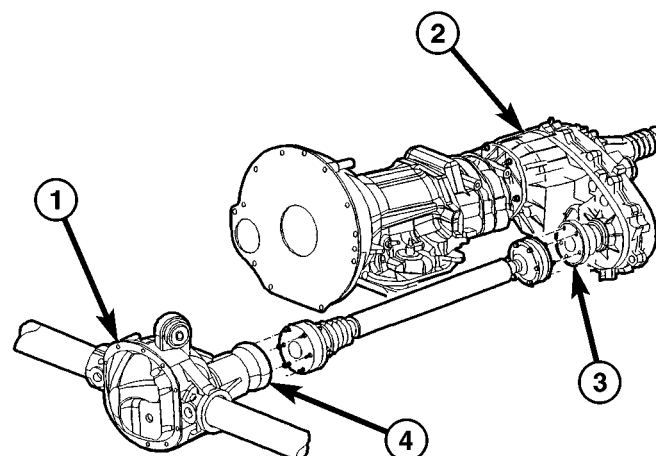
- (1) Place vehicle on floor or drive-on hoist with full weight of vehicle on suspension.
- (2) Shift transmission and transfer case, if equipped into Neutral.
- (3) Measure distance from the face of the C/V joint cup to the end of the C/V joint boot (Fig. 8).
- (4) The correct length is 142.7 mm (5.61 in.).

**NOTE:** If the measurement is not correct, the wrong shaft may have been installed or a mating component (front axle or transfer case) may be installed incorrectly. Investigate and correct as necessary.

- (5) Mark a line across the C/V joints and companion flanges (Fig. 9) for installation reference.
- (6) Remove bolts from C/V joints.
- (7) Push the propeller shaft forward to clear transfer case companion flange and remove the shaft.

**Fig. 8 MEASUREMENT**

- 1 - C/V JOINT CUP
- 2 - C/V BOOT END
- 3 - MEASUREMENT

**Fig. 9 C/V FRONT PROPELLER SHAFT**

- 1 - FRONT AXLE
- 2 - TRANSFER CASE
- 3 - TRANSFER CASE FLANGE
- 4 - AXLE FLANGE

## PROPELLER SHAFT - C/V FRONT (Continued)

## INSTALLATION

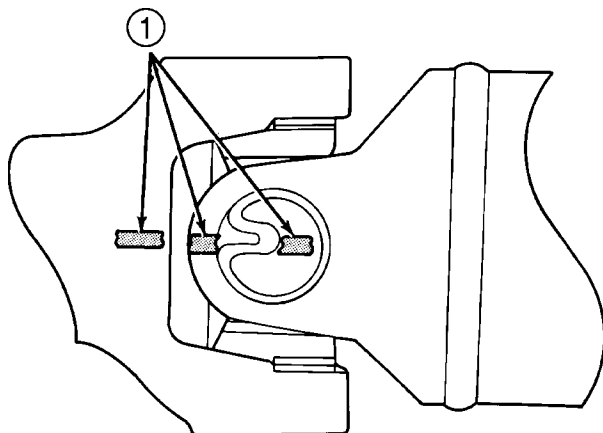
**NOTE:** Different length propeller shafts are used for different drivetrain applications. Ensure that the correct propeller shaft is used.

- (1) Install the shaft between companion flanges.
- (2) The shaft should rotate freely in the pinion flange.
- (3) Align marks on the companion flanges with the marks on the C/V joints.
- (4) Install bolts to the front C/V joint and tighten bolts to 32 N·m (24 ft. lbs.).
- (5) Install the bolts to the rear C/V joint and tighten bolts to 32 N·m (24 ft. lbs.).
- (6) Verify propeller shaft length.
- (7) Lower vehicle.

## PROPELLER SHAFT - U-JOINT FRONT

## REMOVAL

- (1) Raise and support vehicle.
- (2) Remove crossmember/skid plate as necessary to gain access to the propeller shaft.
- (3) Shift transmission and transfer case, if necessary into Neutral.
- (4) Mark a line across the yoke at the transfer case, link yoke and propeller shaft yoke at the rear of the front propeller shaft for installation reference (Fig. 10).
- (5) Mark a line across the propeller shaft yoke and pinion shaft yoke for installation reference.

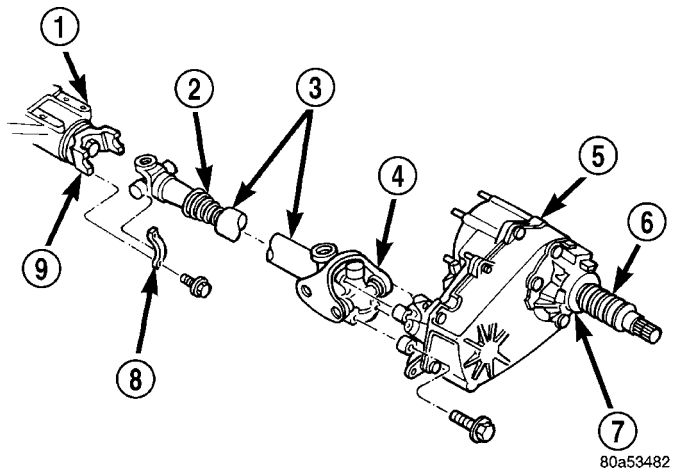


J9316-2

Fig. 10 REFERENCE MARKS ON YOKES

1 - REFERENCE MARKS

- (6) Remove the U-joint strap bolts at the pinion shaft yoke (Fig. 11).
- (7) Remove bolts holding rear universal joint to the transfer case yoke.
- (8) Separate the rear universal joint from the transfer case yoke.
- (9) Push rear of propeller shaft upward to clear transfer case yoke.
- (10) Separate front universal joint from front axle.
- (11) Separate propeller shaft from vehicle.



80a53482

Fig. 11 FRONT PROPELLER SHAFT - 4.7L

- 1 - FRONT AXLE
- 2 - BOOT
- 3 - PROPELLER SHAFT
- 4 - DOUBLE CARDAN U-JOINT
- 5 - TRANSFER CASE
- 6 - BOOT
- 7 - SLINGER
- 8 - CLAMP
- 9 - YOKE

## INSTALLATION

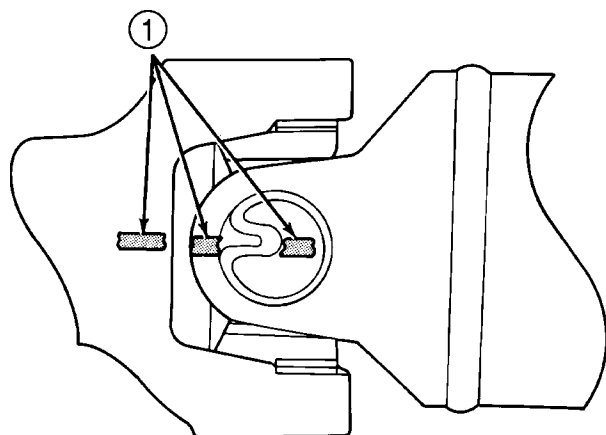
- (1) Position front propeller shaft under vehicle with rear universal joint over the transfer case yoke.
- (2) Place front universal joint into the axle pinion yoke.
- (3) Align mark on the rear link yoke and universal joint to the mark on the transfer case yoke.
- (4) Loosely install bolts to hold universal joint to transfer case yoke.
- (5) Align mark on front universal joint to the mark on the axle pinion yoke.
- (6) Tighten the U-joint strap/clamp bolts at the axle yoke to 19 N·m (14 ft. lbs.).
- (7) Tighten the universal joint to transfer case bolts to 27 N·m (20 ft. lbs.).
- (8) Lower the vehicle.



## PROPELLER SHAFT - REAR

### REMOVAL

- (1) Shift transmission and transfer case if necessary, into neutral.
- (2) Raise and support vehicle.
- (3) Mark pinion yoke, propeller shaft yoke (Fig. 12) and transfer case flange if equipped for installation reference.

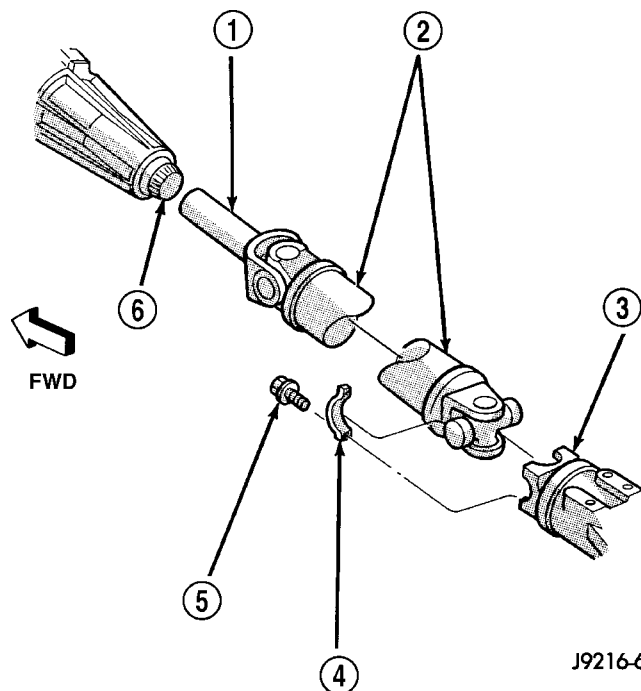


J9316-2

**Fig. 12 REFERENCE MARKS ON YOKES**

1 - REFERENCE MARKS

- (4) Remove universal joint clamps bolts from pinion yoke (Fig. 13) and C/V joint bolts from transfer case flange if equipped (Fig. 14).
- (5) Remove propeller shaft from vehicle.



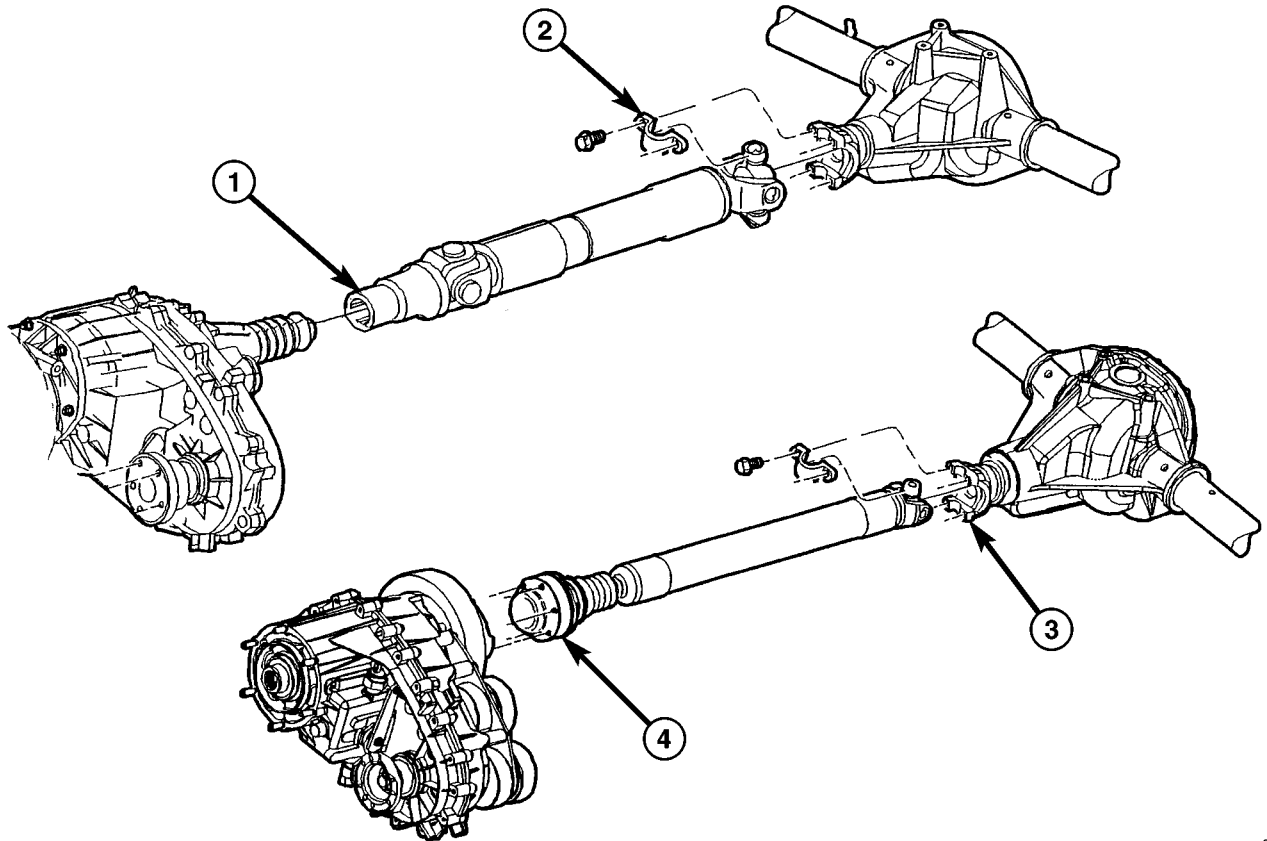
**Fig. 13 REAR PROPELLER SHAFT**

- 1 - SLIDING YOKE
- 2 - PROPELLER SHAFT
- 3 - PINION YOKE
- 4 - CLAMP/STRAP
- 5 - BOLT
- 6 - OUTPUT SHAFT

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Install propeller shaft with reference marks aligned.
- (2) Install universal joint clamp bolts and tighten bolts to 19 N·m (14 ft. lbs.). Install transfer case C/V joint flange bolts if equipped and tighten to 32 N·m (24 ft. lbs.).
- (3) Lower the vehicle.

PROPELLER SHAFT - REAR (Continued)



810a20f6

**Fig. 14 4WD REAR PROPELLER SHAFTS**

1 - SLIP YOKE  
2 - CLAMP/STRAP

3 - PINION YOKE  
4 - C/V JOINT

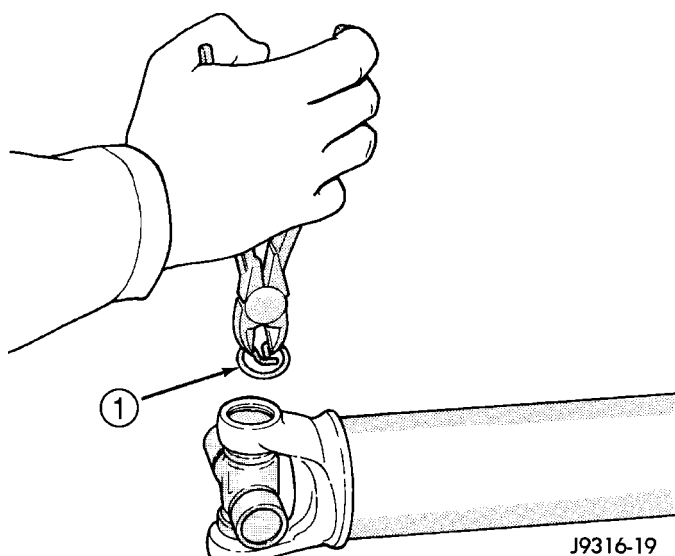


## SINGLE CARDAN UNIVERSAL JOINTS

### DISASSEMBLY

**NOTE:** Individual components of cardan universal joints are not serviceable. If worn or leaking, they must be replaced as an assembly.

- (1) Remove propeller shaft.
- (2) Tap outside of the bearing cap assembly with a drift to loosen snap ring.
- (3) Remove snap rings from both sides of yoke (Fig. 15).



**Fig. 15 REMOVE SNAP RING**

1 - SNAP RING

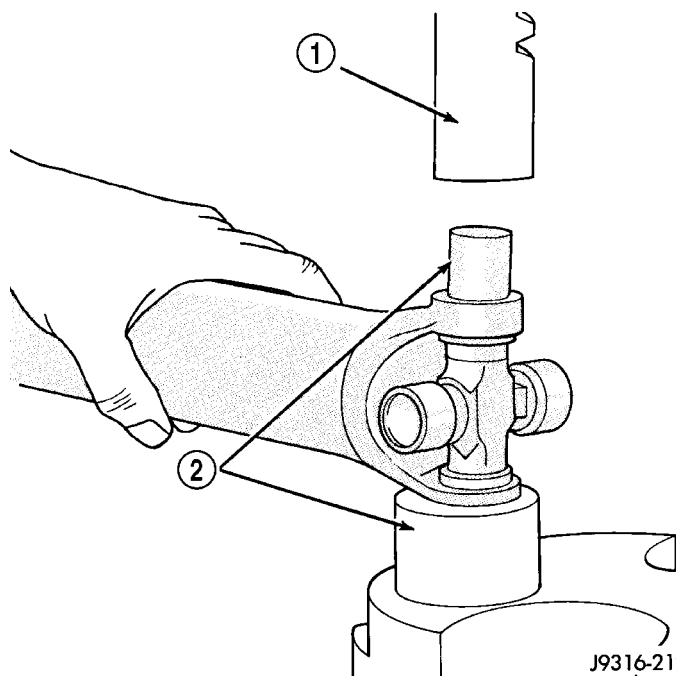
(4) Set yoke in an arbor press or vise with a socket with an inside diameter large enough to receive the bearing cap positioned beneath the yoke.

(5) Position yoke with the grease fitting, if equipped, pointing up.

(6) Place a socket with an outside diameter smaller than the upper bearing cap on the upper bearing cap and press the cap through the yoke to release the lower bearing cap (Fig. 16).

(7) If the bearing cap will not pull out of the yoke by hand after pressing, tap the yoke ear near the bearing cap to dislodge the cap.

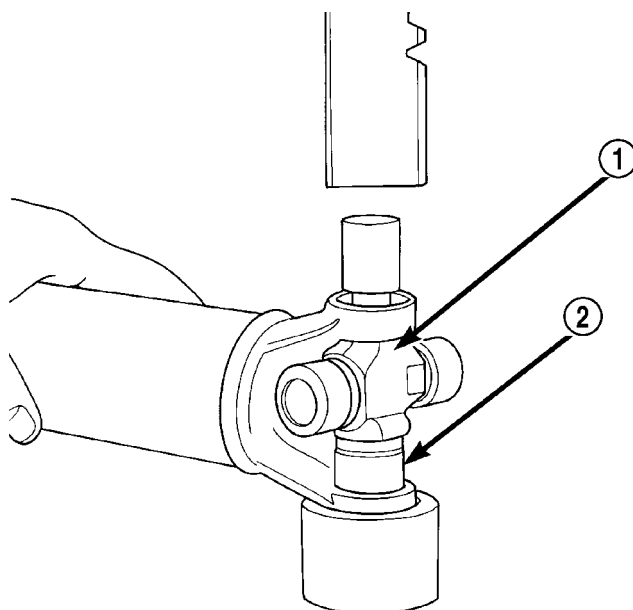
(8) To remove the opposite bearing cap, turn the yoke over and straighten the cross in the open hole. Then, carefully press the end of the cross until the remaining bearing cap can be removed (Fig. 17).



**Fig. 16 PRESS OUT BEARING**

1 - PRESS  
2 - SOCKET

**CAUTION:** If the cross or bearing cap are not straight during installation, the bearing cap will score the walls of the yoke bore and damage can occur.



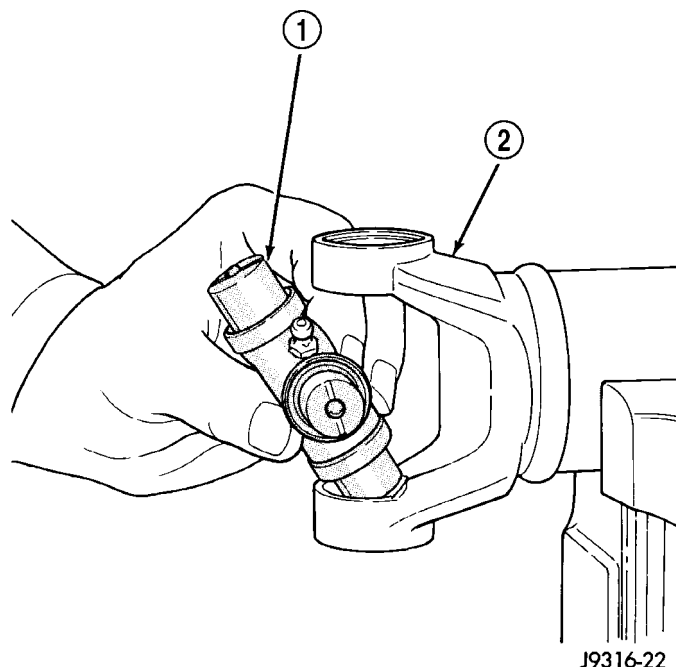
**Fig. 17 PRESS OUT REMAINING BEARING**

1 - CROSS  
2 - BEARING CAP

## SINGLE CARDAN UNIVERSAL JOINTS (Continued)

## ASSEMBLY

- (1) Apply extreme pressure (EP) N.L.G.I. Grade 1 or 2 grease to inside of yoke bores.
- (2) Position the cross in the yoke with its lube fitting, if equipped, pointing up (Fig. 18).

**Fig. 18 CROSS IN YOKE**

- 1 - CROSS  
2 - YOKE

(3) Place a bearing cap over the trunnion and align the cap with the yoke bore (Fig. 19). Keep the needle bearings upright in the bearing cap.

(4) Press the bearing cap into the yoke bore enough to clear snap ring groove.

(5) Install a snap ring.

(6) Repeat Step 3 and Step 4 to install the opposite bearing cap.

**NOTE:** If the joint is stiff or binding, strike the yoke with a soft hammer to seat the needle bearings.

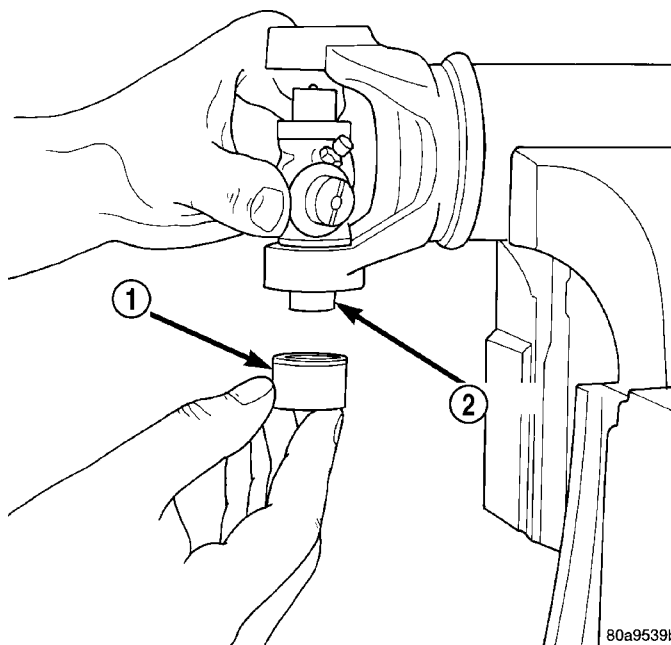
- (7) Add grease to lube fitting, if equipped.
- (8) Install the propeller shaft.

## DOUBLE CARDAN UNIVERSAL JOINTS

## DISASSEMBLY

**NOTE:** Individual components of cardan universal joints are not serviceable they must be replaced as an assembly.

- (1) Remove propeller shaft.

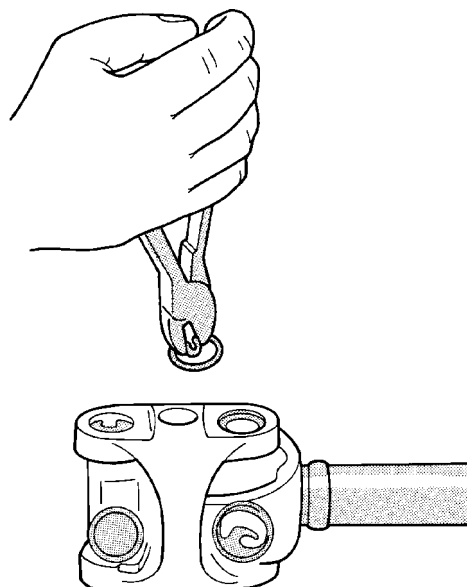
**Fig. 19 INSTALL BEARING ON TRUNNION**

- 1 - BEARING CAP  
2 - TRUNNION

(2) Mark propeller shaft yoke and link yoke for assembly reference.

(3) Tap outside of the bearing cap assembly with drift to loosen snap rings.

(4) Remove all bearing cap snap rings (Fig. 20).



J9316-5

**Fig. 20 SNAP RINGS**

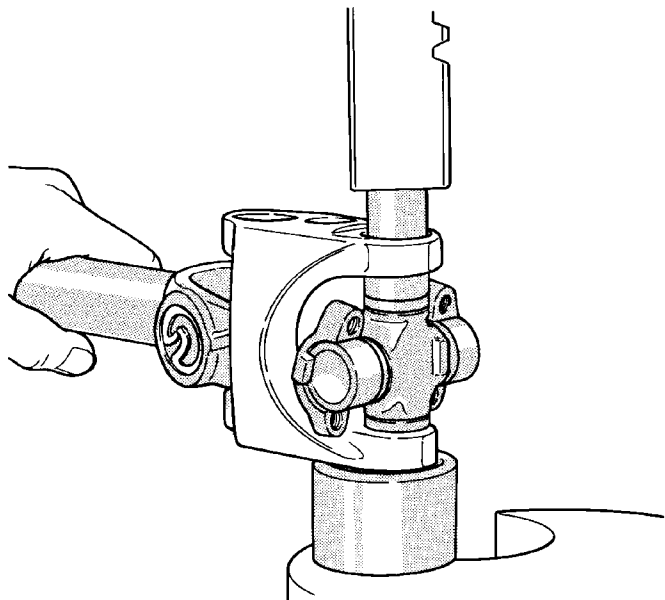
(5) Remove any grease fittings if equipped.

(6) Position a socket on the press with an inside diameter large enough to receive the bearing cap under the link yoke.

## DOUBLE CARDAN UNIVERSAL JOINTS (Continued)

(7) Place another socket with an outside diameter smaller than the bearing cap on the upper bearing cap.

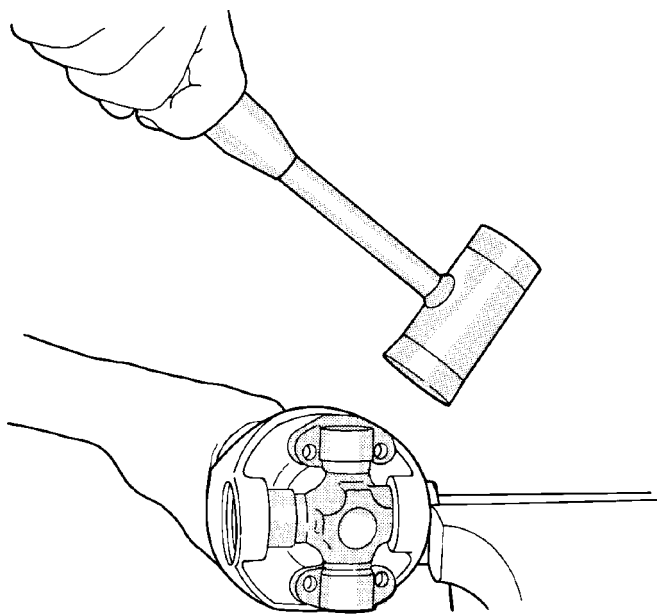
(8) Press one bearing cap from the outboard side of the link yoke enough to grasp the cap with vise jaws (Fig. 21).



J9316-6

**Fig. 21 PRESS OUT BEARING**

(9) Grasp protruding bearing cap with vise jaws and tap link yoke with a mallet to remove bearing cap (Fig. 22).

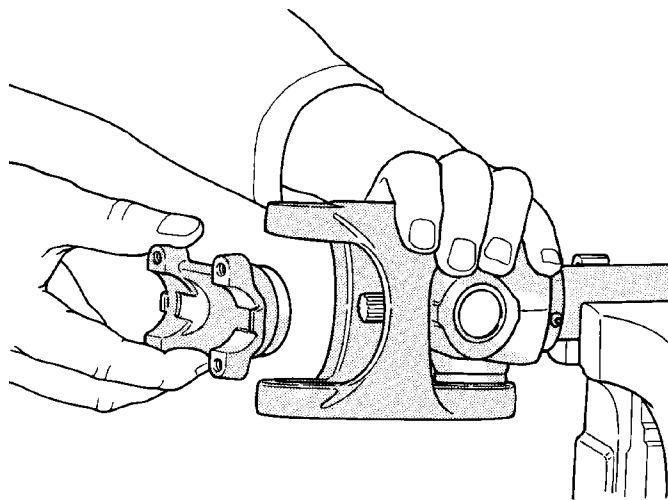


J9316-7

**Fig. 22 REMOVE BEARING FROM YOKE**

(10) Flip assembly and repeat Step 6, Step 7, Step 8 and Step 9 to remove the opposite bearing cap.

(11) Remove cross centering kit assembly and spring (Fig. 23).



J9316-8

**Fig. 23 REMOVE CENTERING KIT**

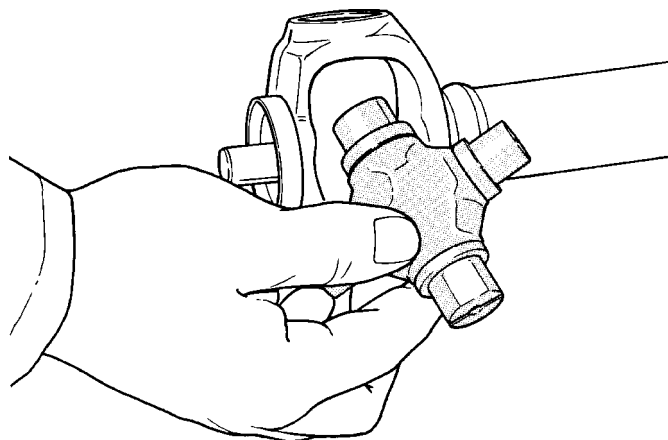
(12) Press remaining bearing caps out of the other end of the link yoke.

**ASSEMBLY**

**CAUTION:** All alignment marks on the link yoke and propeller shaft yoke must be aligned during assembly.

(1) Apply extreme pressure (EP) N.L.G.I. Grade 1 or 2 grease to inside of yoke bores.

(2) Fit cross into propeller shaft yoke (Fig. 24).



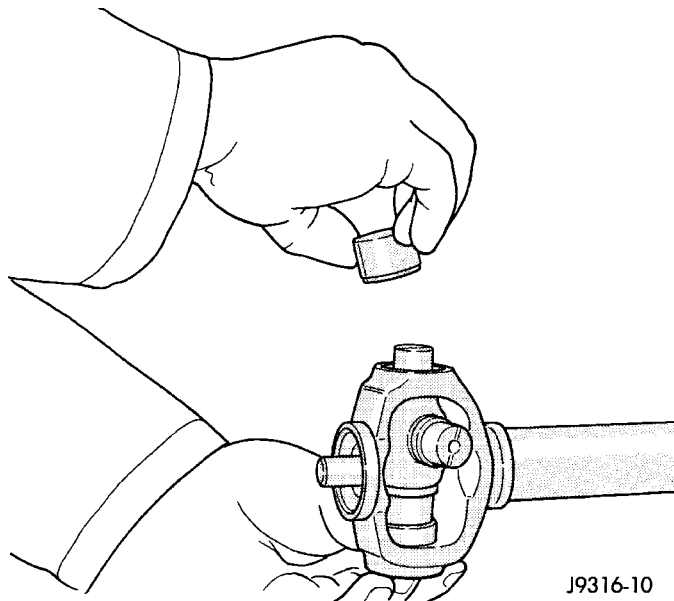
J9316-9

**Fig. 24 INSTALL CROSS IN YOKE**

## DOUBLE CARDAN UNIVERSAL JOINTS (Continued)

(3) Place a bearing cap over trunnion and align cap with the yoke bore (Fig. 25).

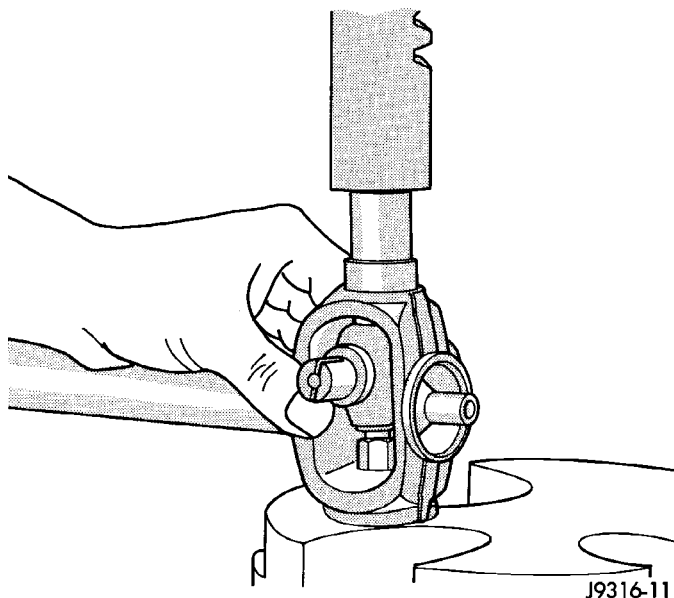
**NOTE:** Keep needle bearings upright in the bearing cap.



**Fig. 25 INSTALL BEARING CAP**

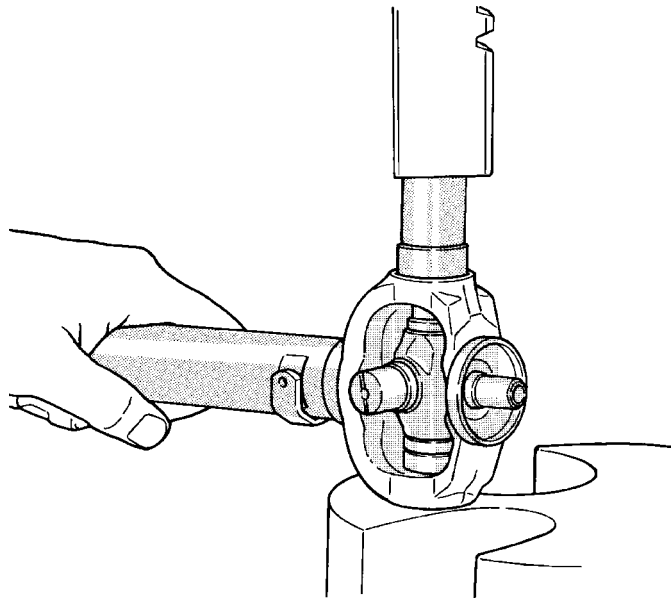
(4) Press bearing cap into yoke bore enough to clear snap ring groove (Fig. 26).

(5) Install a snap ring.



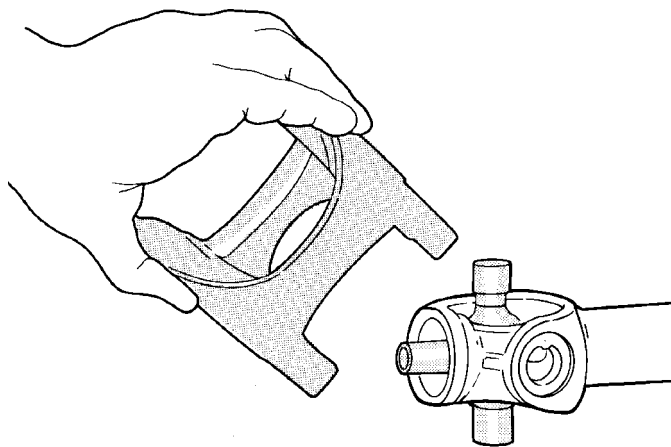
**Fig. 26 PRESS BEARING CAP**

(6) Flip propeller shaft yoke and install other bearing cap and snap ring (Fig. 27).



**Fig. 27 PRESS BEARING CAP**

(7) Fit link yoke onto the remaining trunnions and press both bearing caps into place and install snap rings (Fig. 28).

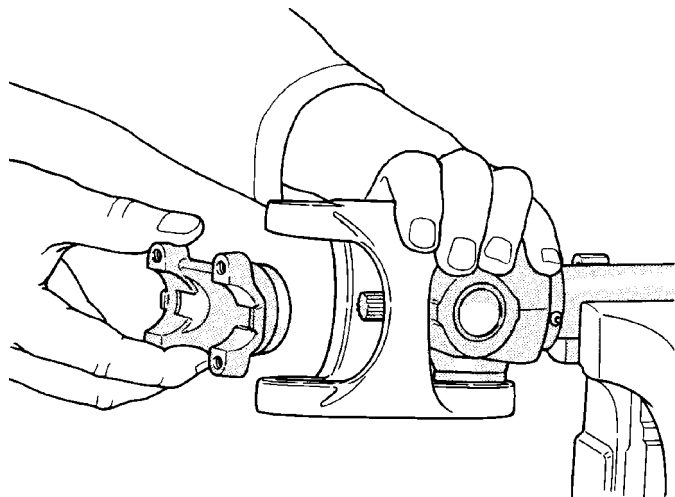


**Fig. 28 INSTALL LINK YOKE**

## DOUBLE CARDAN UNIVERSAL JOINTS (Continued)

(8) Install centering kit assembly inside the link yoke (Fig. 29).

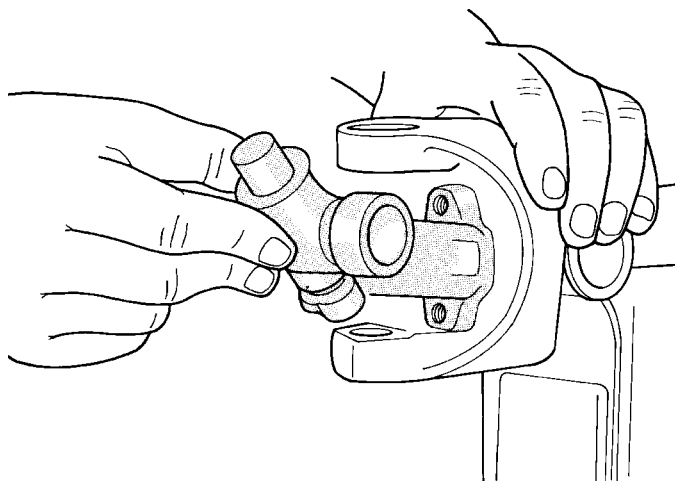
**NOTE:** Making sure the spring is properly positioned.



J9316-14

**Fig. 29 CENTERING KIT**

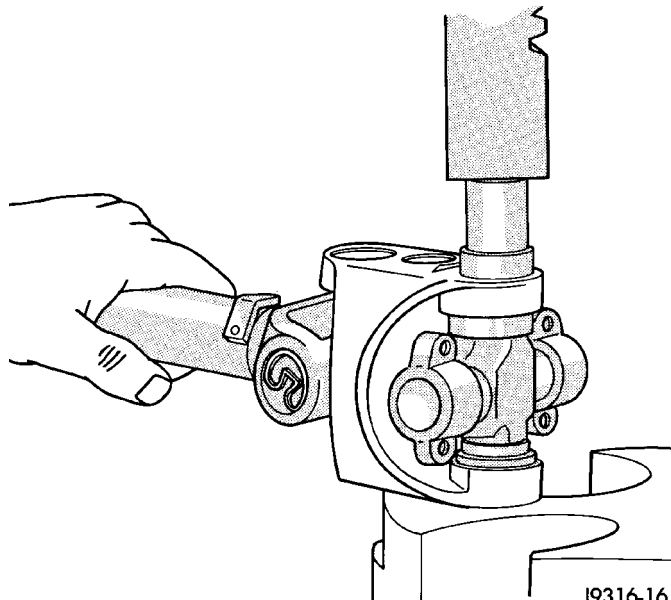
(9) Place two bearing caps on opposite trunnions of the remaining cross. Fit open trunnions into the link yoke bores and the bearing caps into the centering kit (Fig. 30).



J9316-15

**Fig. 30 REMAINING CROSS**

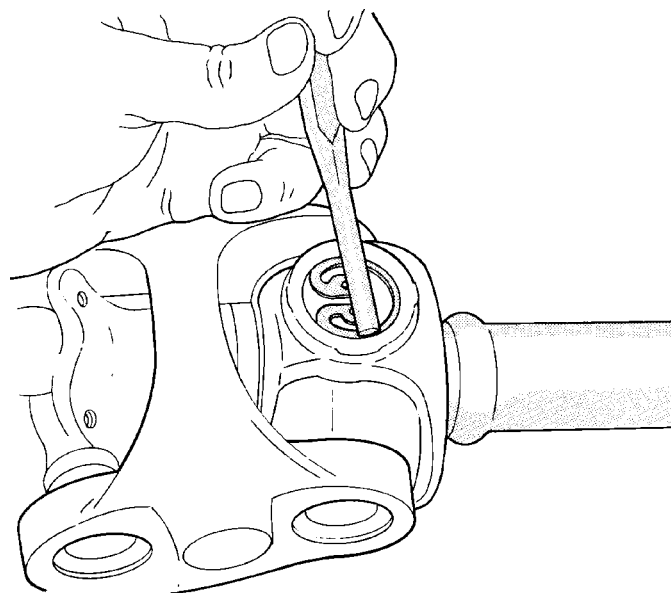
(10) Press remaining two bearing caps into place and install snap rings (Fig. 31).



J9316-16

**Fig. 31 PRESS BEARING CAP**

(11) Tap snap rings to seat them into the grooves (Fig. 32).



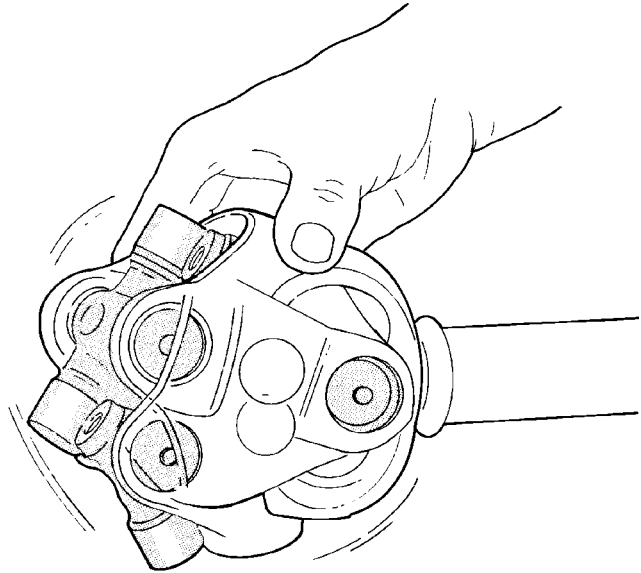
J9316-17

**Fig. 32 SEAT SNAP RINGS**

## DOUBLE CARDAN UNIVERSAL JOINTS (Continued)

(12) Flexing the joint beyond center, the joint should snap over-center in both directions if correctly assembled (Fig. 33).

(13) Install propeller shaft.



J9316-18

**Fig. 33 VERIFY ASSEMBLY**

FRONT TUBE AXLE

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page	page
FRONT TUBE AXLE		
REMOVAL .....	16	INSTALLATION ..... 16

FRONT TUBE AXLE

REMOVAL

- (1) Raise and support the vehicle.
- (2) Position a lifting device under the axle and secure axle to lift.
- (3) Remove the wheels and tires.
- (4) Remove the brake rotors (Refer to 5 - BRAKES/HYDRAULIC/MECHANICAL/ROTORS - REMOVAL) and calipers.
- (5) Disconnect wheel sensor wiring harness from the vehicle wiring harness.
- (6) Remove stabilizer bar links at the axle.
- (7) Remove shock absorbers from axle brackets.
- (8) Remove track bar.
- (9) Remove tie rod and drag link from the steering knuckle.
- (10) Remove steering damper from the axle bracket.
- (11) Remove upper and lower suspension arms from the axle brackets.
- (12) Lower the lift enough to remove the axle. The coil springs will drop with the axle.
- (13) Remove the coil springs from the axle.

INSTALLATION

**CAUTION:** The weight of the vehicle must be supported by the springs before suspension arms and track bar fasteners are tightened. If not at their nor-

mal ride position, ride height and handling could be affected.

- (1) Install springs and retainer clips and tighten retainer bolts to 21 N·m (16 ft. lbs.).
- (2) Lift and position axle under the vehicle and align it with the spring pads.
- (3) Position upper and lower suspension arms in the axle brackets and loosely install bolts and nuts.
- (4) Install track bar to the axle bracket and loosely install bolt.
- (5) Install shock absorbers and tighten bolts to 23 N·m (17 ft. lbs.).
- (6) Install stabilizer bar links to the axle brackets and tighten nuts to 95 N·m (70 ft. lbs.).
- (7) Install drag link and tie rod to the steering knuckles.
- (8) Install steering damper to the axle bracket and tighten nut to 75 N·m (55 ft. lbs.).
- (9) Install the brake rotors and calipers.
- (10) Connect wheel speed sensor wiring harness, if equipped.
- (11) Install the wheel and tire assemblies.
- (12) Remove lift from the axle and lower the vehicle.
- (13) Tighten upper suspension arm nuts to 75 N·m (55 ft. lbs.). Tighten lower suspension arm nuts to 115 N·m (85 ft. lbs.).
- (14) Tighten track bar bolt at the axle bracket to 100 N·m (74 ft. lbs.).
- (15) Check the front wheel alignment.



## FRONT AXLE - 186FBI

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>FRONT AXLE - 186FBI</b>		INSTALLATION .....	37
DESCRIPTION .....	17	<b>COLLAPSIBLE SPACER</b>	
OPERATION .....	17	REMOVAL .....	37
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING .....	17	INSTALLATION .....	38
REMOVAL .....	21	<b>DIFFERENTIAL</b>	
INSTALLATION .....	21	DESCRIPTION .....	39
ADJUSTMENTS .....	21	OPERATION .....	39
SPECIFICATIONS .....	29	REMOVAL .....	39
SPECIAL TOOLS .....	30	DISASSEMBLY .....	40
<b>AXLE SHAFTS</b>		ASSEMBLY .....	41
REMOVAL .....	33	INSTALLATION .....	42
INSTALLATION .....	33	<b>DIFFERENTIAL - VARI-LOK</b>	
<b>AXLE SHAFT SEALS</b>		DESCRIPTION .....	43
REMOVAL .....	34	OPERATION .....	43
INSTALLATION .....	34	DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING .....	43
<b>AXLE - C/V JOINT</b>		<b>DIFFERENTIAL CASE BEARINGS</b>	
REMOVAL .....	34	REMOVAL .....	44
INSTALLATION .....	35	INSTALLATION .....	44
<b>AXLE - U-JOINT</b>		<b>PINION GEAR/RING GEAR</b>	
REMOVAL .....	35	REMOVAL .....	44
INSTALLATION .....	36	INSTALLATION .....	46
<b>PINION SEAL</b>			
REMOVAL .....	36		

## FRONT AXLE - 186FBI

## DESCRIPTION

The Front Beam Iron (FBI) axle consists of a cast iron differential housing with axle shaft tubes extending from either side. The tubes are pressed into the differential housing and welded. The axles are semi-floating supported by the hub bearings. The axle shafts are retained by nuts at the hub bearings.

## OPERATION

The axle receives power from the transfer case through the front propeller shaft. The front propeller shaft is connected to the pinion gear which rotates the differential through the gear mesh with the ring gear bolted to the differential case. The engine power is transmitted to the axle shafts through the pinion mate and side gears. The side gears are splined to the axle shafts.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING

## GEAR NOISE

Axle gear noise can be caused by insufficient lubricant, incorrect backlash, tooth contact, worn/damaged gears or the carrier housing not having the proper offset and squareness.

Gear noise usually happens at a specific speed range. The noise can also occur during a specific type of driving condition. These conditions are acceleration, deceleration, coast or constant load.

When road testing, first warm-up the axle fluid by driving the vehicle at least 5 miles and then accelerate the vehicle to the speed range where the noise is the greatest. Shift out-of-gear and coast through the peak-noise range. If the noise stops or changes greatly check for:

- Insufficient lubricant.
- Incorrect ring gear backlash.
- Gear damage.

Differential side and pinions gears, usually do not cause noise during straight-ahead driving, when the gears are unloaded. The side gears are loaded during

## FRONT AXLE - 186FBI (Continued)

turns. A worn pinion mate shaft can also cause a snapping or a knocking noise.

**BEARING NOISE**

Bearing noise can be either a whining or a growling sound.

**Pinion bearings** have a constant high pitch noise, because it rotates at a faster rate. This noise changes with vehicle speed. If noise is heard under a load, the rear pinion bearing is the source. If noise is heard during a coast, the front pinion bearing is the source.

**Differential bearings** usually produce a low pitch noise. The differential bearing noise is constant and varies only with vehicle speed.

**Axle shaft bearing** noise generally changes when the bearings are loaded. Turn vehicle sharply to the left and the right during a road test. This will load and unload the bearings and change the noise level. If axle bearing damage is slight, the noise is usually not noticeable at speeds above 30 m.p.h.

**LOW SPEED KNOCK**

Low speed knock is generally caused by:

- Worn U-joint.
- Worn side-gear thrust washers.
- Worn pinion shaft bore.

**VIBRATION**

Vibration at the rear of the vehicle is usually caused by:

- Damaged drive shaft.
- Missing drive shaft balance weight(s).
- Worn or out-of-balance wheels.

- Loose wheel lug nuts.
- Worn U-joints/CV joint.
- Loose/broken springs.
- Damaged axle shaft bearing(s).
- Loose pinion gear nut.
- Excessive pinion yoke run out.
- Bent axle shaft(s).

Check for loose or damaged front-end components or engine/transmission mounts. These components can contribute to what appears to be a rear-end vibration. Also look at engine accessories, brackets and drive belts.

**NOTE:** All driveline components should be examined before starting any repair.

**DRIVELINE SNAP**

A snap or clunk noise when the vehicle is shifted into gear or the clutch engaged, can be caused by:

- High engine idle speed.
- Transmission shift operation.
- Loose engine/transmission/transfer case mounts.
- Worn U-joints/CV joint.
- Loose spring mounts.
- Loose pinion gear nut and yoke.
- Excessive ring gear backlash.
- Excessive side gear to case clearance.

To determine the source of a snap/clunk noise, raise vehicle on a hoist with the wheels free to rotate. Have a helper shift the transmission into gear and listen for the noise.

## FRONT AXLE - 186FBI (Continued)

## DIAGNOSTIC CHART

Condition	Possible Causes	Correction
Wheel Noise	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Wheel loose.</li> <li>2. Faulty, brinelled wheel bearing.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Tighten loose nuts.</li> <li>2. Replace bearing.</li> </ol>
Axle Shaft Noise	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Misaligned axle tube.</li> <li>2. Bent or sprung axle shaft.</li> <li>3. End-play in pinion bearings.</li> <li>4. Excessive gear backlash between the ring gear and pinion.</li> <li>5. Improper adjustment of pinion gear bearings.</li> <li>6. Loose pinion yoke nut.</li> <li>7. Scuffed gear tooth contact surfaces.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Inspect axle tube alignment. Correct as necessary.</li> <li>2. Inspect and correct as necessary.</li> <li>3. Refer to pinion pre-load information and correct as necessary.</li> <li>4. Check adjustment of the ring gear and pinion backlash. Correct as necessary.</li> <li>5. Adjust the pinion bearings pre-load.</li> <li>6. Tighten the pinion yoke nut.</li> <li>7. Inspect and replace as necessary.</li> </ol>
Axle Shaft Broke	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Misaligned axle tube.</li> <li>2. Vehicle overloaded.</li> <li>3. Erratic clutch operation.</li> <li>4. Grabbing clutch.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Replace the broken shaft after correcting tube mis-alignment.</li> <li>2. Replace broken shaft and avoid excessive weight on vehicle.</li> <li>3. Replace broken shaft and avoid or correct erratic clutch operation.</li> <li>4. Replace broken shaft and inspect and repair clutch as necessary.</li> </ol>
Differential Cracked	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Improper adjustment of the differential bearings.</li> <li>2. Excessive ring gear backlash.</li> <li>3. Vehicle overloaded.</li> <li>4. Erratic clutch operation.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Replace case and inspect gears and bearings for further damage. Set differential bearing pre-load properly.</li> <li>2. Replace case and inspect gears and bearings for further damage. Set ring gear backlash properly.</li> <li>3. Replace case and inspect gears and bearings for further damage. Avoid excessive vehicle weight.</li> <li>4. Replace case and inspect gears and bearings for further damage. Avoid erratic use of clutch.</li> </ol>
Differential Gears Scored	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Insufficient lubrication.</li> <li>2. Improper grade of lubricant.</li> <li>3. Excessive spinning of one wheel/tire.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Replace scored gears. Fill differential with the correct fluid type and quantity.</li> <li>2. Replace scored gears. Fill differential with the correct fluid type and quantity.</li> <li>3. Replace scored gears. Inspect all gears, pinion bores, and shaft for damage. Service as necessary.</li> </ol>

## FRONT AXLE - 186FBI (Continued)

Condition	Possible Causes	Correction
Loss Of Lubricant	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Lubricant level too high.</li> <li>2. Worn axle shaft seals.</li> <li>3. Cracked differential housing.</li> <li>4. Worn pinion seal.</li> <li>5. Worn/scored yoke.</li> <li>6. Axle cover not properly sealed.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Drain lubricant to the correct level.</li> <li>2. Replace seals.</li> <li>3. Repair as necessary.</li> <li>4. Replace seal.</li> <li>5. Replace yoke and seal.</li> <li>6. Remove, clean, and re-seal cover.</li> </ol>
Axle Overheating	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Lubricant level low.</li> <li>2. Improper grade of lubricant.</li> <li>3. Bearing pre-loads too high.</li> <li>4. Insufficient ring gear backlash.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Fill differential to correct level.</li> <li>2. Fill differential with the correct fluid type and quantity.</li> <li>3. Re-adjust bearing pre-loads.</li> <li>4. Re-adjust ring gear backlash.</li> </ol>
Gear Teeth Broke	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Overloading.</li> <li>2. Erratic clutch operation.</li> <li>3. Ice-spotted pavement.</li> <li>4. Improper adjustments.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Replace gears. Examine other gears and bearings for possible damage.</li> <li>2. Replace gears and examine the remaining parts for damage. Avoid erratic clutch operation.</li> <li>3. Replace gears and examine remaining parts for damage.</li> <li>4. Replace gears and examine remaining parts for damage. Ensure ring gear backlash is correct.</li> </ol>
Axle Noise	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Insufficient lubricant.</li> <li>2. Improper ring gear and pinion adjustment.</li> <li>3. Unmatched ring gear and pinion.</li> <li>4. Worn teeth on ring gear and/or pinion.</li> <li>5. Loose pinion bearings.</li> <li>6. Loose differential bearings.</li> <li>7. Mis-aligned or sprung ring gear.</li> <li>8. Loose differential bearing cap bolts.</li> <li>9. Housing not machined properly.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Fill differential with the correct fluid type and quantity.</li> <li>2. Check ring gear and pinion contact pattern.</li> <li>3. Replace gears with a matched ring gear and pinion.</li> <li>4. Replace ring gear and pinion.</li> <li>5. Adjust pinion bearing pre-load.</li> <li>6. Adjust differential bearing pre-load.</li> <li>7. Measure ring gear run-out. Replace components as necessary.</li> <li>8. Inspect differential components and replace as necessary. Ensure that the bearing caps are torqued to the proper specification.</li> <li>9. Replace housing.</li> </ol>

## FRONT AXLE - 186FBI (Continued)

**REMOVAL**

- (1) Raise and support the vehicle.
- (2) Position a suitable lifting device under the axle.
- (3) Secure axle to lift.
- (4) Remove the wheels and tires.
- (5) Remove the brake calipers and rotors (Refer to 5 - BRAKES/HYDRAULIC/MECHANICAL/ROTORS - REMOVAL) from the axle.
- (6) Disconnect the wheel sensor wiring harness from the vehicle wiring harness.
- (7) Disconnect the vent hose from the axle shaft tube.
- (8) Mark propeller shaft and yoke/pinion flange for installation alignment reference.
- (9) Remove propeller shaft.
- (10) Disconnect stabilizer bar links at the axle.
- (11) Disconnect shock absorbers from axle brackets.
- (12) Disconnect track bar.
- (13) Disconnect the tie rod and drag link from the steering knuckle.
- (14) Disconnect the steering damper from the axle bracket.
- (15) Disconnect the upper and lower suspension arms from the axle brackets.
- (16) Lower the lifting device enough to remove the axle. The coil springs will drop with the axle.
- (17) Remove the coil springs from the axle.

**INSTALLATION**

**CAUTION:** The weight of the vehicle must be supported by the springs before suspension arms and track bar fasteners can be tightened. If springs are not at their normal ride position, ride height and handling could be affected.

- (1) Install the springs and retainer clips. Tighten the retainer bolts to 21 N·m (16 ft. lbs.).
- (2) Support the axle on a lifting device and position axle under the vehicle.
- (3) Raise the axle and align it with the spring pads.
- (4) Position the upper and lower suspension arms in the axle brackets. Loosely install bolts and nuts to hold suspension arms to the axle brackets.
- (5) Install vent hose to the axle shaft tube.
- (6) Install track bar in the axle bracket and install the bolt loosely.
- (7) Install shock absorbers and tighten the bolts to 23 N·m (17 ft. lbs.).
- (8) Install stabilizer bar links to the axle brackets and tighten the nuts to 95 N·m (70 ft. lbs.).
- (9) Install drag link and tie rod to the steering knuckles.

(10) Install steering damper to the axle bracket and tighten the nut to 75 N·m (55 ft. lbs.).

(11) Install the brake rotors (Refer to 5 - BRAKES/HYDRAULIC/MECHANICAL/ROTORS - INSTALLATION) and calipers.

(12) Connect the wheel speed sensor wiring harness to the vehicle wiring harness.

(13) Align the previously made marks on the propeller shaft and the yoke/pinion flange.

(14) Install propeller shaft to pinion flange bolts, if equipped.

(15) Install propeller shaft to yoke straps and bolts, if equipped.

(16) Check and fill axle lubricant.

(17) Install the wheel and tire assemblies.

(18) Remove the lifting device from the axle and lower the vehicle.

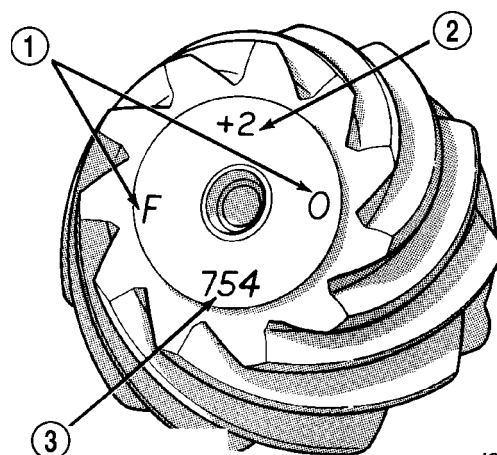
(19) Tighten the upper suspension arm nuts to 75 N·m (55 ft. lbs.). Tighten the lower suspension arm nuts to 115 N·m (85 ft. lbs.).

(20) Tighten the track bar bolt at the axle bracket to 100 N·m (74 ft. lbs.).

(21) Check the front wheel alignment.

**ADJUSTMENTS**

Ring and pinion gears are supplied as matched sets. Identifying numbers for the ring and pinion gear are etched onto each gear (Fig. 1). A plus (+) number, minus (-) number or zero (0) is etched into the face of the pinion gear. This number is the amount (in thousandths of an inch) the depth varies from the standard depth setting of a pinion etched with a (0). The standard depth provides the best gear tooth contact pattern.



J9003-100

**Fig. 1 PINION GEAR ID NUMBERS**

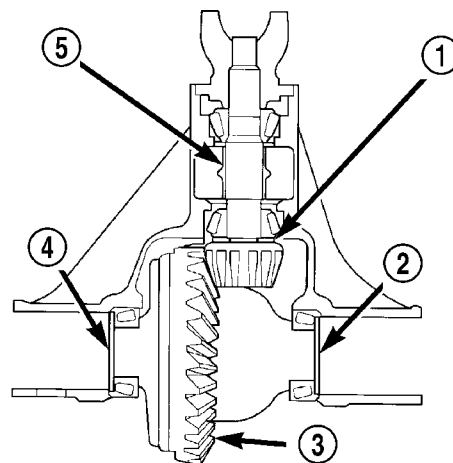
- 1 - PRODUCTION NUMBERS
- 2 - DRIVE PINION GEAR DEPTH VARIANCE
- 3 - GEAR MATCHING NUMBER

## FRONT AXLE - 186FBI (Continued)

Compensation for pinion depth variance is achieved with a select shim/oil slinger. The shims are placed between the rear pinion bearing and the pinion gear head (Fig. 2).

If installing a new gear, note the depth variance number of the original and replacement pinion. Add or subtract this number from the original depth shim/oil slinger to compensate for the difference in the depth variances. The numbers represent thousands of an inch deviation from the standard. If the number is negative, add that value to the required thickness of the depth shims. If the number is positive, subtract that value from the thickness of the depth shim.

**Pinion Gear Depth Variance Chart:** Note where Old and New Pinion Marking columns intersect. Intersecting figure represents plus or minus the amount needed.



80a5037a

**Fig. 2 ADJUSTMENT SHIM LOCATIONS**

- 1 - PINION DEPTH SHIM/OIL SLINGER
- 2 - DIFFERENTIAL BEARING SHIM
- 3 - RING GEAR
- 4 - DIFFERENTIAL BEARING SHIM
- 5 - COLLAPSIBLE SPACER

*PINION GEAR DEPTH VARIANCE*

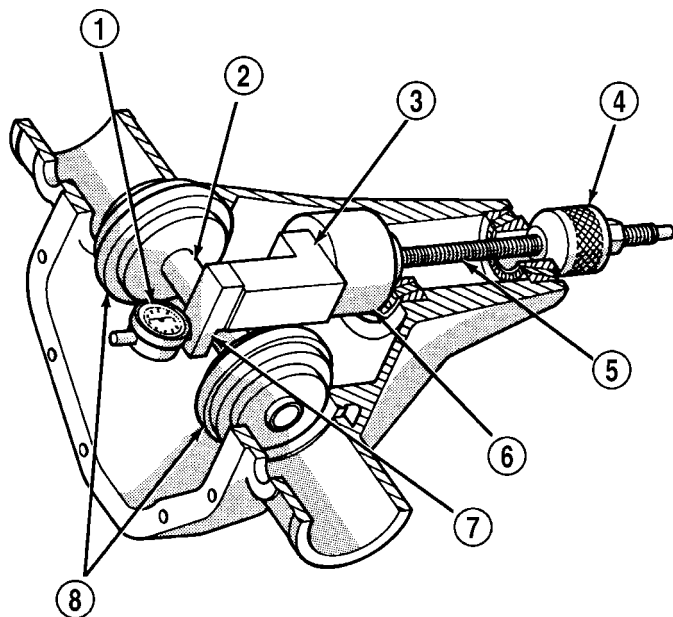
Original Pinion Gear Depth Variance	Replacement Pinion Gear Depth Variance								
	-4	-3	-2	-1	0	+1	+2	+3	+4
<b>+4</b>	+0.008	+0.007	+0.006	+0.005	+0.004	+0.003	+0.002	+0.001	0
<b>+3</b>	+0.007	+0.006	+0.005	+0.004	+0.003	+0.002	+0.001	0	-0.001
<b>+2</b>	+0.006	+0.005	+0.004	+0.003	+0.002	+0.001	0	-0.001	-0.002
<b>+1</b>	+0.005	+0.004	+0.003	+0.002	+0.001	0	-0.001	-0.002	-0.003
<b>0</b>	+0.004	+0.003	+0.002	+0.001	0	-0.001	-0.002	-0.003	-0.004
<b>-1</b>	+0.003	+0.002	+0.001	0	-0.001	-0.002	-0.003	-0.004	-0.005
<b>-2</b>	+0.002	+0.001	0	-0.001	-0.002	-0.003	-0.004	-0.005	-0.006
<b>-3</b>	+0.001	0	-0.001	-0.002	-0.003	-0.004	-0.005	-0.006	-0.007
<b>-4</b>	0	-0.001	-0.002	-0.003	-0.004	-0.005	-0.006	-0.007	-0.008



## FRONT AXLE - 186FBI (Continued)

**PINION DEPTH MEASUREMENT**

Measurements are taken with pinion bearing cups and pinion bearings installed in the housing. Take measurements with Pinion Gauge Set and Dial Indicator C-3339 (Fig. 3).



J9403-45

**Fig. 3 PINION GEAR DEPTH TOOLS**

- 1 - DIAL INDICATOR
- 2 - ARBOR
- 3 - PINION HEIGHT BLOCK
- 4 - CONE
- 5 - SCREW
- 6 - PINION BLOCK
- 7 - SCOOTER BLOCK
- 8 - ARBOR DISC

(1) Assemble Pinion Height Block 6739, Pinion Block 6733 and rear pinion bearing onto Screw 6741 (Fig. 3).

(2) Insert assembled height gauge components, rear bearing and screw into the housing through pinion bearing cups (Fig. 4).

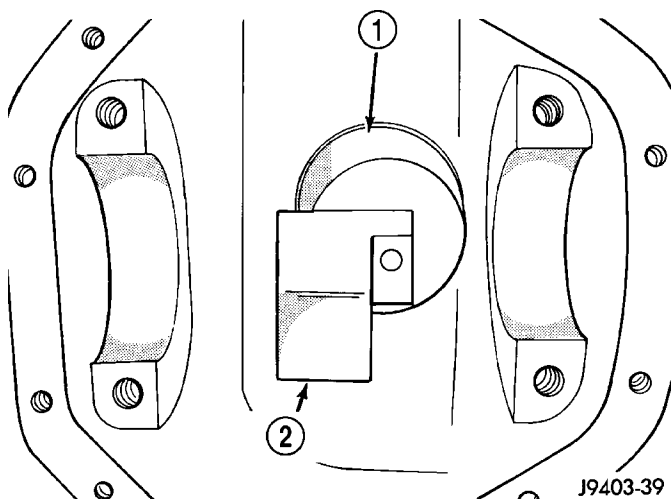
(3) Install front pinion bearing and Cone-nut 6740 hand tight (Fig. 3).

(4) Place Arbor Disc 6732 on Arbor D-115-3 in position, in the housing side bearing cradles (Fig. 5). Install differential bearing caps on Arbor Discs and tighten cap bolts to 41 N·m (30 ft. lbs.).

**NOTE:** Arbor Discs 6732 has different step diameters to fit other axles. Choose proper step for axle being serviced.

(5) Assemble Dial Indicator C-3339 into Scooter Block D-115-2 and secure set screw.

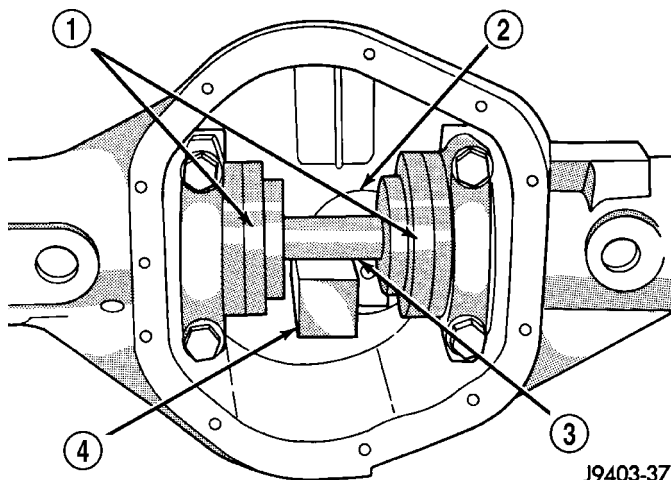
(6) Position Scooter Block/Dial Indicator so dial probe and scooter block are flush on the surface of



J9403-39

**Fig. 4 PINION HEIGHT BLOCK**

- 1 - PINION BLOCK
- 2 - PINION HEIGHT BLOCK



J9403-37

**Fig. 5 GAUGE TOOLS IN HOUSING**

- 1 - ARBOR DISC
- 2 - PINION BLOCK
- 3 - ARBOR
- 4 - PINION HEIGHT BLOCK

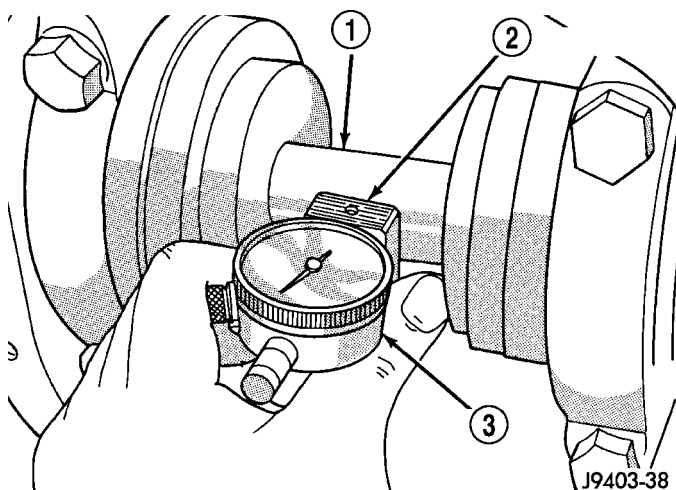
the pinion height block (Fig. 3). Hold scooter block and zero the dial indicator.

(7) Hold scooter block against the pinion height block and slowly slide across the pinion height block to the arbor (Fig. 6). Move the scooter block till the dial probe crests the arbors and record the highest reading.

(8) Select a shim/oil slinger equal to the dial indicator reading plus the pinion depth variance number etched in the face of the pinion (Fig. 1). For example, if the depth variance is -2, add +0.002 in. to the dial indicator reading.



## FRONT AXLE - 186FBI (Continued)

**Fig. 6 PINION GEAR DEPTH MEASUREMENT**

- 1 - ARBOR
- 2 - SCOOTER BLOCK
- 3 - DIAL INDICATOR

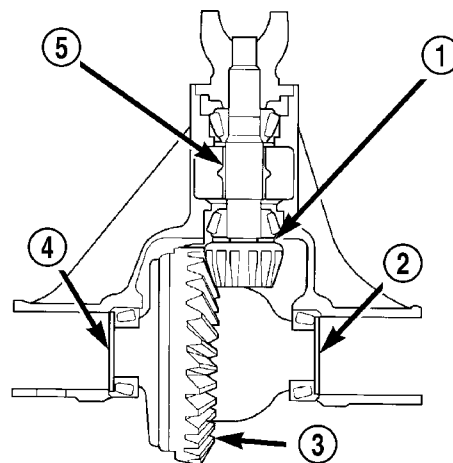
**DIFFERENTIAL SIDE BEARING PRELOAD AND GEAR BACKLASH**

Differential side bearing preload and gear backlash is achieved by selective shims positioned behind the differential side bearing cones. The proper shim thickness can be determined using slip-fit Dummy Bearings D-348 in place of the differential side bearings and a Dial Indicator C-3339. Before measuring differential bearing preload and gear backlash, measure pinion gear depth and prepare pinion for installation. Pinion gear depth is essential to establishing gear backlash and tooth contact patterns. After measuring shim thickness to take up differential side play, install pinion and measure gear backlash shim thickness. Overall shim thickness is the dial indicator reading and preload specification added together. The gear backlash measurement determines the shim thickness used on the ring gear side of the differential case. Subtract gear backlash shim thickness from overall shim thickness to determine shim thickness for pinion gear side of the differential (Fig. 7). Differential shim measurements are performed with spreader W-129-B removed.

**PRELOAD SHIM SELECTION**

**NOTE:** It is difficult to salvage the differential side bearings during the removal procedure. Install replacement bearings if necessary.

- (1) Remove differential side bearings from differential case.
- (2) Install ring gear on differential case and tighten bolts to specification.
- (3) Install dummy side bearings D-348 on differential case.



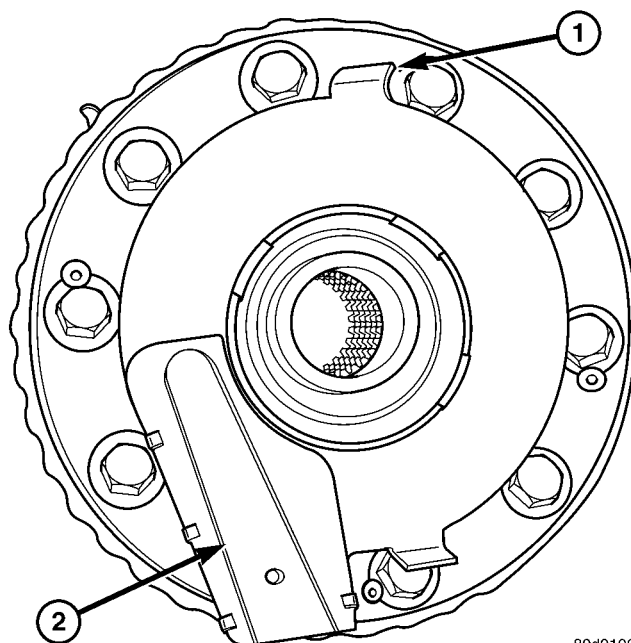
80a5037a

**Fig. 7 ADJUSTMENT SHIM LOCATIONS**

- 1 - PINION DEPTH SHIM/OIL SLINGER
- 2 - DIFFERENTIAL BEARING SHIM
- 3 - RING GEAR
- 4 - DIFFERENTIAL BEARING SHIM
- 5 - COLLAPSIBLE SPACER

- (4) Install differential case in the housing.

**CAUTION:** When installing a Vari-Lok® differential, the oil feed tube must point to the bottom of the housing. If differential is forced in with the oil feed towards the top, the anti-rotation tabs will be damaged (Fig. 8).



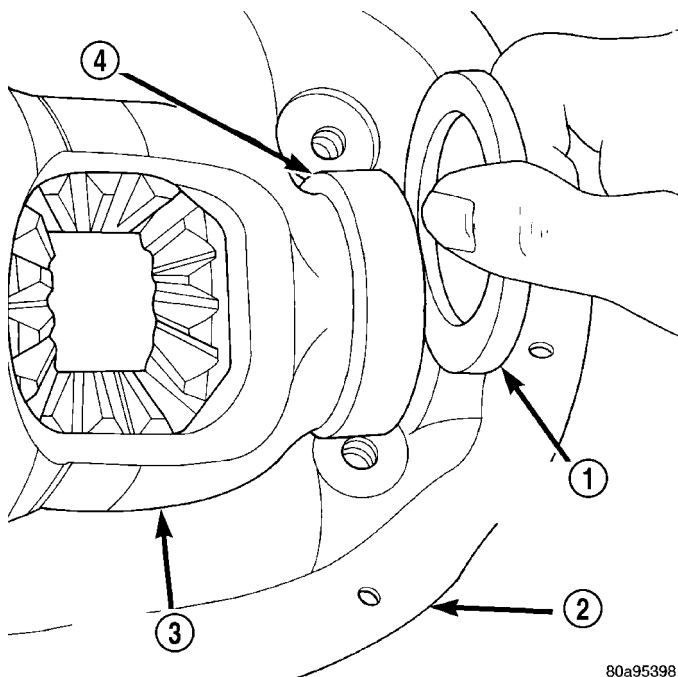
80d0106d

**Fig. 8 VARI-LOK**

- 1 - ANTI-ROTATION TAB
- 2 - OIL FEED TUBE

## FRONT AXLE - 186FBI (Continued)

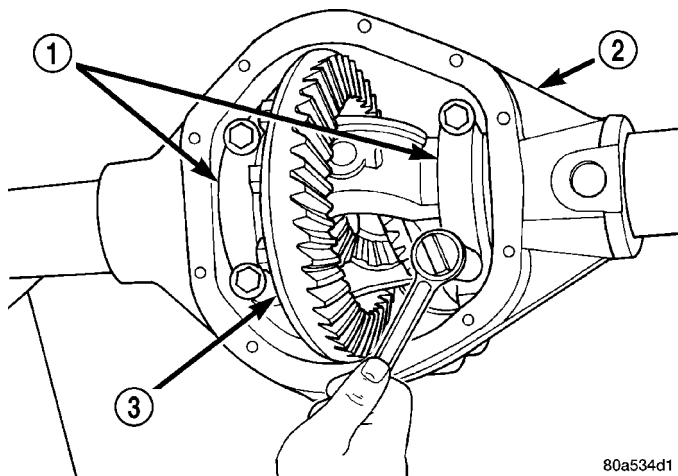
(5) Record the thickness of Dummy Shims 8107. Insert the shims between the dummy bearings and the differential housing (Fig. 9).



**Fig. 9 DUMMY SHIM LOCATION**

- 1 - DUMMY SHIM
- 2 - DIFFERENTIAL HOUSING
- 3 - DIFFERENTIAL CASE
- 4 - DUMMY BEARINGS

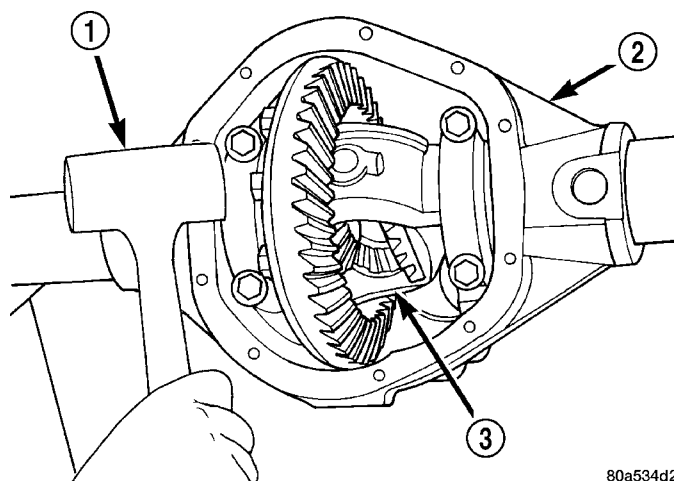
(6) Install the bearing caps in their correct positions and snug the bolts (Fig. 10).



**Fig. 10 BEARING CAP BOLTS**

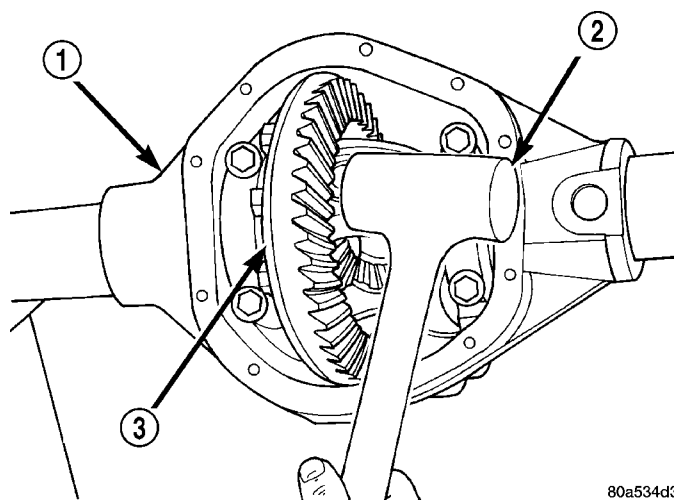
- 1 - BEARING CAP
- 2 - DIFFERENTIAL HOUSING
- 3 - DIFFERENTIAL CASE

(7) With a dead-blow hammer, seat the differential dummy bearings to each side of the housing (Fig. 11) and (Fig. 12).



**Fig. 11 SEAT DUMMY BEARING PINION SIDE**

- 1 - HAMMER
- 2 - DIFFERENTIAL HOUSING
- 3 - DIFFERENTIAL CASE



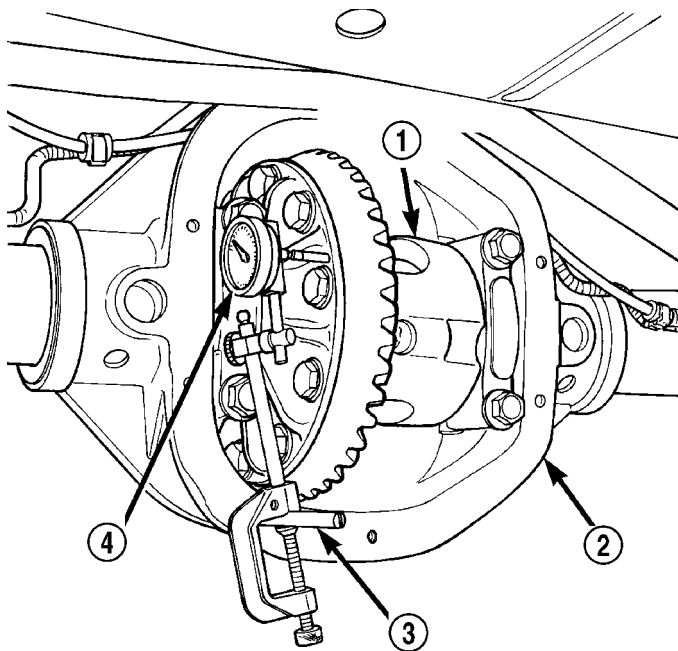
**Fig. 12 SEAT DUMMY BEARING RING GEAR SIDE**

- 1 - DIFFERENTIAL HOUSING
- 2 - HAMMER
- 3 - DIFFERENTIAL CASE

## FRONT AXLE - 186FBI (Continued)

(8) Thread Pilot Stud C-3288-B into rear cover bolt hole below ring gear (Fig. 13).

(9) Attach a dial indicator C-3339 to Pilot Stud. Position the dial indicator plunger on a flat surface between the ring gear bolt heads (Fig. 13).

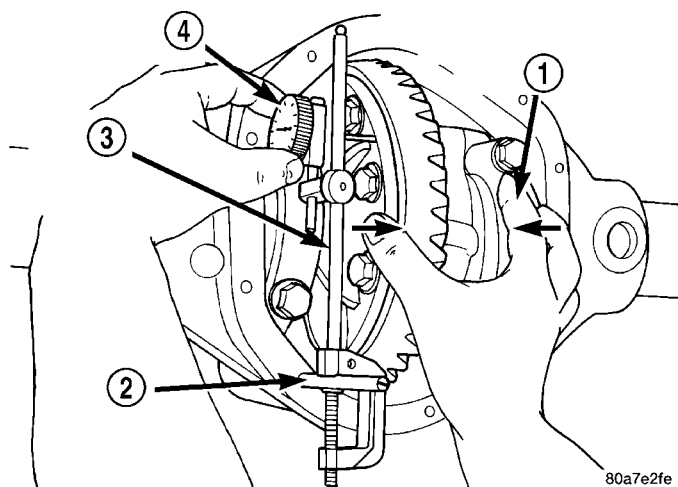


80a7e2cf

**Fig. 13 DIAL INDICATOR LOCATION**

- 1 - DIFFERENTIAL CASE
- 2 - DIFFERENTIAL HOUSING
- 3 - PILOT STUD
- 4 - DIAL INDICATOR

(10) Push and hold differential case to pinion gear side of the housing and zero dial indicator (Fig. 14).

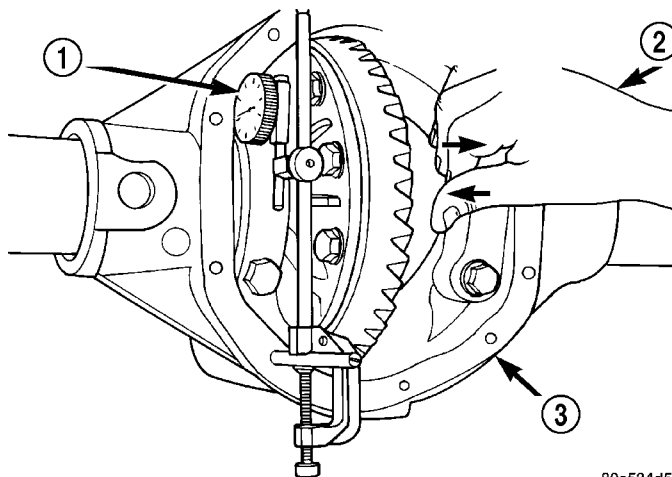


80a7e2fe

**Fig. 14 ZERO DIAL INDICATOR**

- 1 - HOLD DIFFERENTIAL CASE TO PINION GEAR SIDE
- 2 - PILOT STUD
- 3 - INDICATOR EXTENSION
- 4 - DIAL INDICATOR FACE

(11) Push and hold differential case to ring gear side of the housing and record dial indicator reading (Fig. 15).



80a534d5

**Fig. 15 RECORD DIAL INDICATOR READING**

- 1 - DIAL INDICATOR
- 2 - DIFFERENTIAL CASE TO RING GEAR SIDE
- 3 - DIFFERENTIAL HOUSING

(12) Add 0.152 mm (0.006 in.) to the zero end play total. This new total represents the thickness of shims to compress or preload the new bearings when the differential is installed.

(13) Rotate dial indicator out of the way on the pilot stud.

(14) Remove differential case and dummy bearings from the housing.

(15) Install the pinion gear in the housing. Install the pinion yoke and establish the correct pinion rotating torque.

(16) Install differential case and Dummy Bearings D-348 in the housing.

(17) Install a single dummy shim in the ring gear side. Install bearing caps and tighten bolts snug.

(18) Seat ring gear side dummy bearing (Fig. 12).

(19) Position the dial indicator plunger on a flat surface between the ring gear bolt heads (Fig. 13).

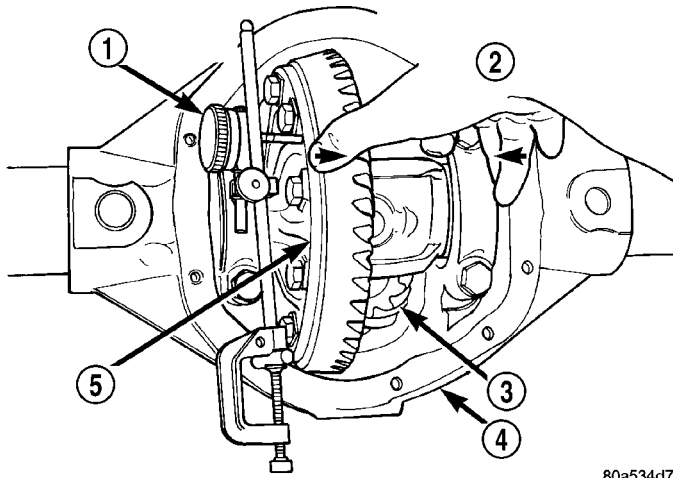
(20) Push and hold differential case toward pinion gear and zero dial indicator (Fig. 16).

(21) Push and hold differential case to ring gear side of the housing and record dial indicator reading (Fig. 17). Add dummy shim thickness to this reading. This will be the total shim thickness to achieve zero backlash.

(22) Subtract 0.076 mm (0.003 in.) from the dial indicator reading to compensate for backlash between ring and pinion gears. This total is the thickness shim required to achieve proper backlash.

(23) Subtract the backlash shim thickness from the total preload shim thickness. The remainder is the shim thickness required on the pinion side of the axle housing.

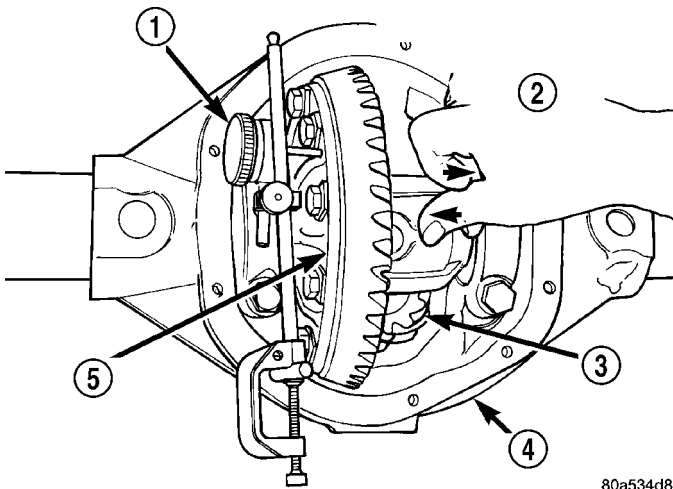
## FRONT AXLE - 186FBI (Continued)



80a534d7

**Fig. 16 ZERO DIAL INDICATOR**

- 1 - DIAL INDICATOR
- 2 - HOLD DIFFERENTIAL CASE TO PINION GEAR SIDE
- 3 - PINION GEAR
- 4 - DIFFERENTIAL HOUSING
- 5 - DIFFERENTIAL CASE



80a534d8

**Fig. 17 RECORD DIAL INDICATOR READING**

- 1 - DIAL INDICATOR
- 2 - HOLD DIFFERENTIAL CASE TO RING GEAR SIDE
- 3 - PINION GEAR
- 4 - DIFFERENTIAL HOUSING
- 5 - DIFFERENTIAL CASE

(24) Rotate dial indicator out of the way on pilot stud.

(25) Remove differential case and dummy bearings from the housing.

(26) Install side bearings and cups on differential case.

(27) Install spreader W-129-B with Adapter Set 6987 on the housing and spread axle opening enough to receive differential case.

**CAUTION:** Never spread the housing over 0.38 mm (0.015 in.). If housing is over spread, it could distort or damaged.

(28) Place the bearing preload shims in the axle housing, against the axle tubes.

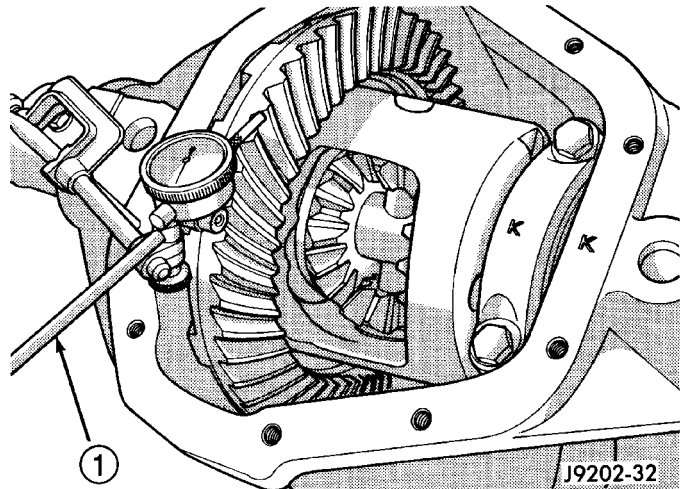
(29) Install differential case into the housing.

**CAUTION:** When installing a Vari-Lok® differential, the oil feed tube must point to the bottom of the housing. If differential is forced in with the oil feed towards the top, the anti-rotation tabs will be damaged.

(30) Remove spreader from the housing.

(31) Rotate the differential case several times to seat the side bearings.

(32) Position the indicator plunger against a ring gear tooth (Fig. 18).



J9202-32

**Fig. 18 RING GEAR BACKLASH**

- 1 - DIAL INDICATOR

(33) Push and hold ring gear upward while not allowing the pinion gear to rotate.

(34) Zero dial indicator face to pointer.

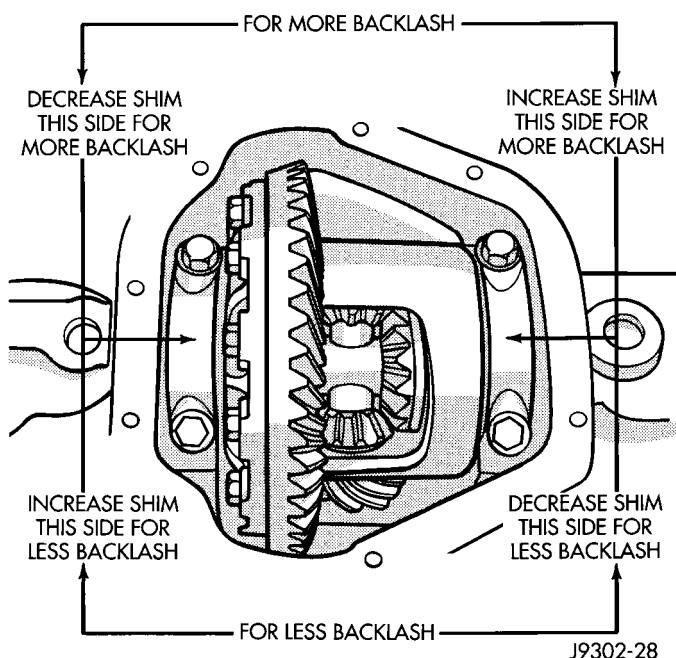


## FRONT AXLE - 186FBI (Continued)

(35) Push and hold ring gear downward while not allowing the pinion gear to rotate. Dial indicator reading should be between 0.13 - 0.20 mm (0.005 - 0.008 in.). If backlash is not within specifications transfer the necessary amount of shim thickness from one side of the housing to the other (Fig. 19).

(36) Verify differential case and ring gear runout by measuring ring to pinion gear backlash at eight locations around the ring gear. Readings should not vary more than 0.05 mm (0.002 in.). If readings vary more than specified, the ring gear or the differential case is defective.

After the proper backlash is achieved, check the torque to rotate for differential bearing preload. If within specification perform Gear Contact Pattern Analysis procedure.



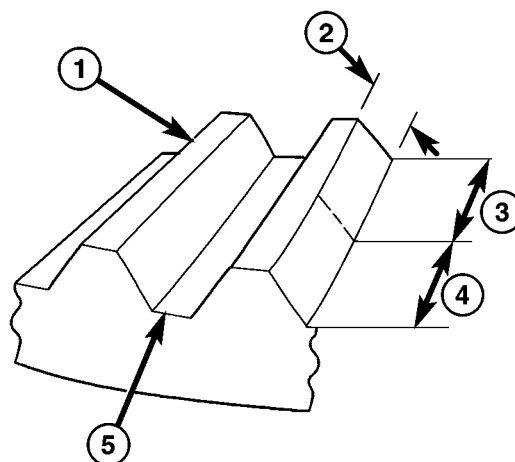
**Fig. 19 BACKLASH SHIM ADJUSTMENT**

### GEAR CONTACT PATTERN

The ring gear and pinion teeth contact patterns will show if the pinion depth is correct in the housing. It will also show if the ring gear backlash has been adjusted correctly. The backlash can be adjusted within specifications to achieve desired tooth contact patterns.

The TOP LAND of the gear tooth is the top surface of the tooth. The PROFILE of the gear tooth is the depth of the tooth. The TOE of the gear is the portion of the tooth surface at the end towards the center. The HEEL of the gear is the portion of the tooth at the outer-end. The ROOT of the gear tooth is the lowest portion of the tooth (Fig. 20).

**NOTE:** If the PROFILE across the tooth is the same it is a 3 Axis cut gear. If the PROFILE across the tooth is tapered it is a 2 Axis cut gear.



810630a0

**Fig. 20 GEAR DESCRIPTION**

- 1 - TOP LAND
- 2 - PROFILE
- 3 - TOE
- 4 - HEEL
- 5 - ROOT

(1) Apply a thin coat of hydrated ferric oxide or equivalent to the drive and coast side of the ring gear teeth.

(2) Wrap, twist and hold a shop towel around the pinion yoke to increase the turning resistance of the pinion. This will provide a more distinct contact pattern.











(3) With a boxed end wrench on a ring gear bolt, rotate the differential case one complete revolution in both directions while a load is being applied from shop towel.

## FRONT AXLE - 186FBI (Continued)

The areas on the ring gear teeth with the greatest degree of contact against the pinion teeth will squeeze the compound to the areas with the least amount of contact. Note and compare patterns on the ring gear teeth to Gear Tooth Contact Patterns chart (Fig. 21) and adjust pinion depth and gear backlash as necessary.

differential combined. This will verify the correct differential bearing preload.

Torque to rotate the differential and pinion should be the torque to rotate the pinion plus 0.79-1.24 N·m (7-11 in. lbs.).

DRIVE SIDE HEEL TOE	CONDITION	COAST SIDE TOE HEEL	CONDITION	ACTION REQUIRED
	<b>Desirable pattern.</b> The drive pattern should be centered on the tooth. There should be some clearance between the pattern and the top of the tooth.		<b>Desirable pattern.</b> The coast pattern should be centered on the tooth, but may be slightly toward the toe. There should be some clearance between the pattern and the top of the tooth.	None
	<b>Top heel contact</b>		<b>Top toe contact</b>	Backlash correct. Thicker pinion position shim required.
	<b>Root toe contact</b>		<b>Root heel contact</b>	Backlash correct. Thinner pinion position shim required.
	<b>Top heel contact</b>		<b>Top heel contact</b>	Pinion position shim correct. Decrease backlash.
	<b>Root toe contact</b>		<b>Root toe contact</b>	Pinion position shim correct. Increase backlash.

8106312d

**Fig. 21 PATTERN INTERPRETATION (GEAR CUT 2 AXIS)**

## DIFFERENTIAL BEARING PRELOAD CHECK

The final check on the differential assembly before installing the axles is torque to rotate pinion and dif-

## SPECIFICATIONS

## AXLE SPECIFICATIONS

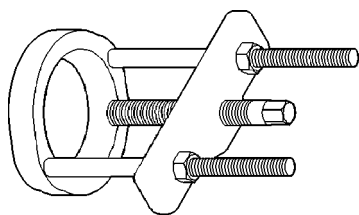
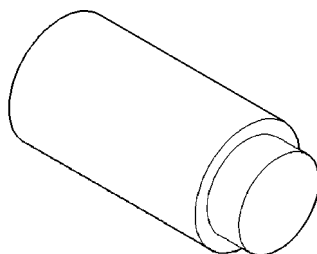
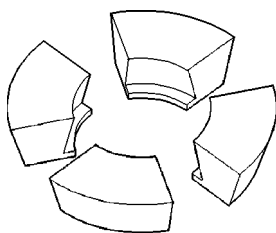
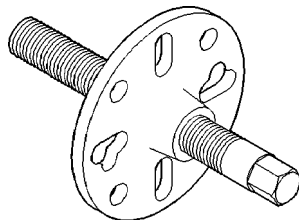
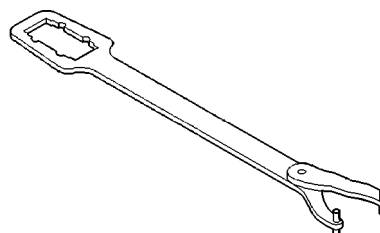
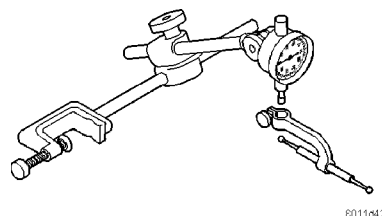
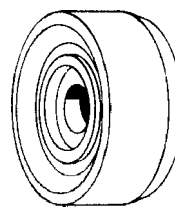
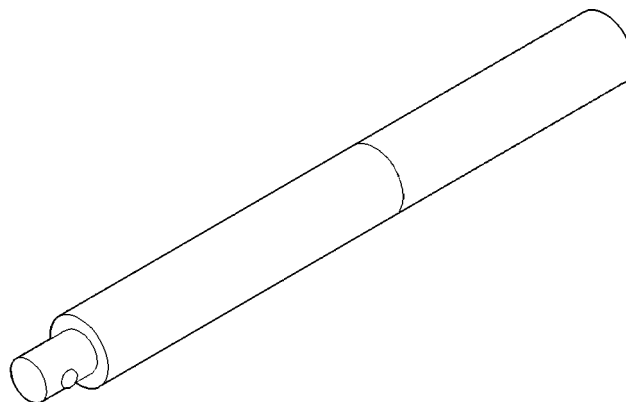
DESCRIPTION	SPECIFICATION
Axle Ratio	3.55, 3.73
Differential Side Gear Clearance	0.13-0.20 mm (0.005-0.008 in.)
Differential Bearing Preload	0.152 mm (0.006 in.)
Ring Gear Diameter	186 mm (7.33 in.)
Ring Gear Backlash	0.13-0.20 mm (0.005-0.008 in.)
Pinion Bearing Preload - Original Bearings	1-2 N·m (10-20 in. lbs.)
Pinion Bearing Preload - New Bearings	1.7-3.4 N·m (15-30 in. lbs.)

## FRONT AXLE - 186FBI (Continued)

## TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS

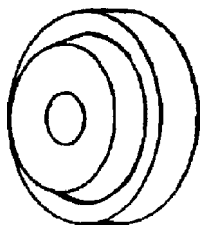
DESCRIPTION	N·m	Ft. Lbs.	In. Lbs.
Fill Hole Plug	34	25	-
Differential Cover Bolts	41	30	-
Bearing Cap Bolts	61	45	-
Ring Gear Bolts	108	80	-
Pinion Nut Min / Max	217 - 500	160 - 368	-
Axle Nut	237	175	-
Hub Bearing Bolts	102	75	-

## SPECIAL TOOLS

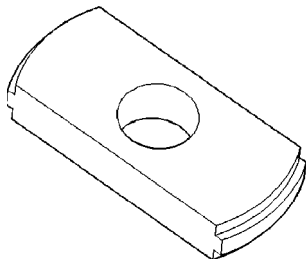
**PULLER C-293-PA****PLUG SP-3289****ADAPTER C-293-39****PULLER C-452****FLANGE WRENCH C-3281****DIAL INDICATOR C-3339****INSTALLER C-3716-A****HANDLE C-4171**



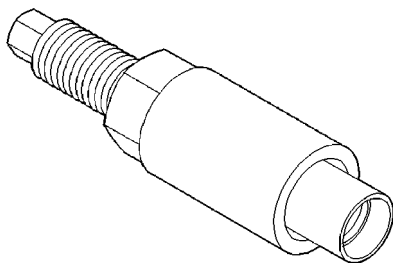
FRONT AXLE - 186FBI (Continued)



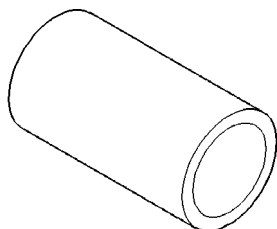
**INSTALLER D-146**



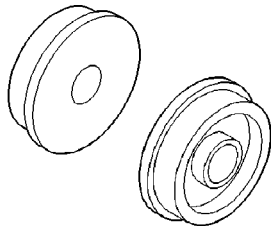
**REMOVER C-4345**



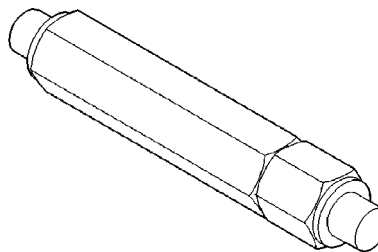
**INSTALLER W-162-D**



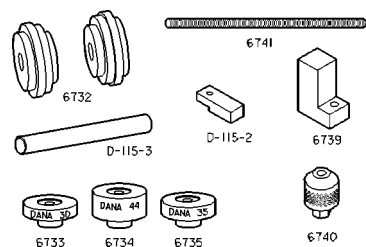
**CUP 8109**



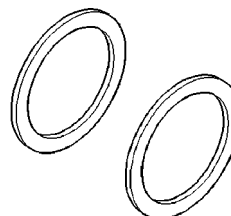
**SEAL INSTALLER 8110**



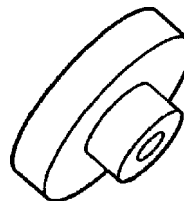
**TURNBUCKLE 6797**



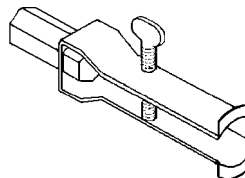
**PINION DEPTH SET 6774**



**DUMMY SHIMS 8107**

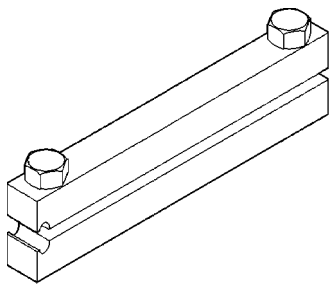


**PINION BLOCK 6733**

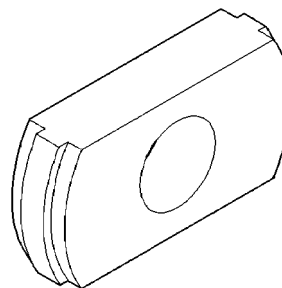


**SEAL REMOVER 7794-A**

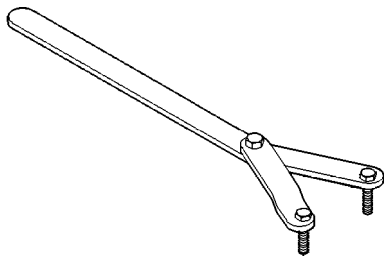
FRONT AXLE - 186FBI (Continued)



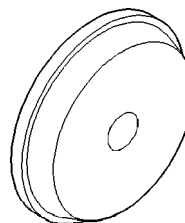
**CLAMP INSTALLER C-4975-A**



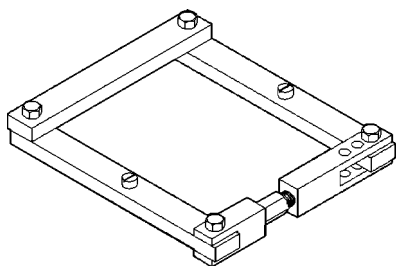
**REMOVER D-149**



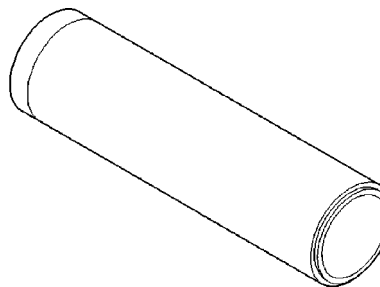
**SPANNER WRENCH 6958**



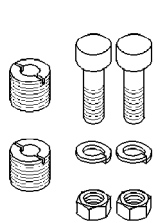
**INSTALLER D-130**



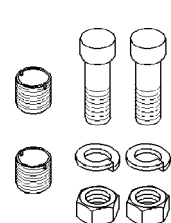
**SPREADER W-129-B**



**INSTALLER W-262**

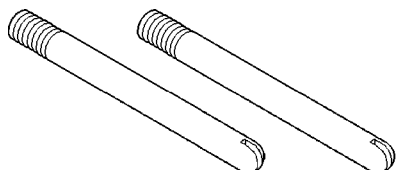


1-1/8 HEX TURNBUCKLE



1-1/4 HEX TURNBUCKLE

**ADAPTER KIT 6987B**



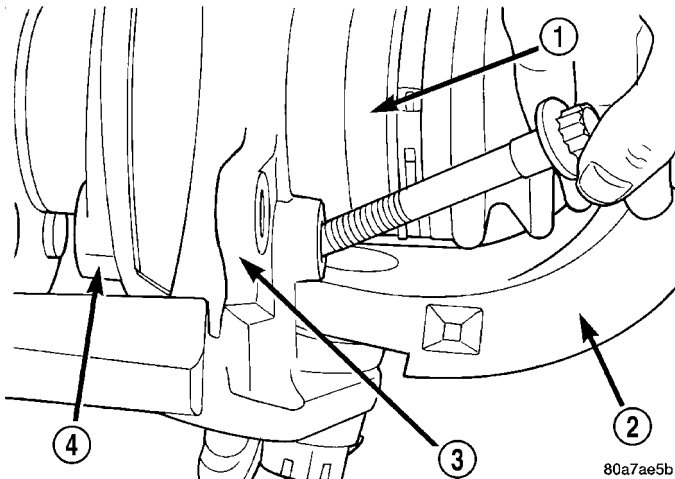
**PILOT STUD C-3288-B**

## AXLE SHAFTS

### REMOVAL

If the axle shaft and hub bearing are being removed in order to service another component, the axle shaft and hub bearing can be removed as an assembly.

- (1) Raise and support the vehicle.
- (2) Remove the wheel and tire assembly.
- (3) Remove brake caliper, rotor and ABS wheel speed sensor.
- (4) Remove cotter pin, nut retainer and axle nut.
- (5) Remove the hub bearing bolts (Fig. 22).

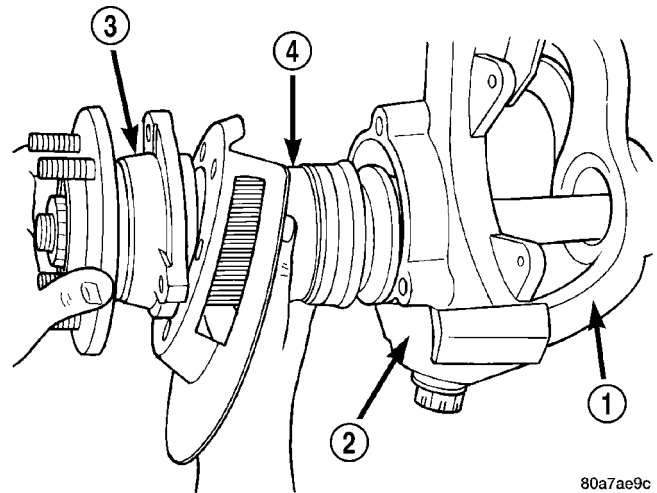


**Fig. 22 HUB BEARING BOLTS**

- 1 - AXLE SHAFT
- 2 - AXLE
- 3 - KNUCKLE
- 4 - HUB BEARING

(6) Remove hub bearing and axle shaft assembly (Fig. 23). **Avoid damaging the axle shaft oil seals in the axle housing.**

(7) Remove brake rotor shield from the hub bearing or knuckle.



**Fig. 23 HUB BEARING AND AXLE ASSEMBLY**

- 1 - AXLE
- 2 - KNUCKLE
- 3 - HUB BEARING
- 4 - AXLE SHAFT

### INSTALLATION

(1) Thoroughly clean the axle shaft and apply a thin film of Mopar Wheel Bearing Grease or equivalent to the shaft splines, seal contact surface and hub bore.

(2) Install brake rotor shield to the knuckle.

(3) Install hub bearing and axle shaft assembly or axle shaft into the housing and differential side gears. Avoid damaging the axle shaft oil seals in the axle housing.

(4) Install the hub bearing.

(5) Install hub bearing bolts and tighten to 102 N·m (75 ft. lbs.).

(6) Install axle hub washer and nut and tighten nut to 237 N·m (175 ft. lbs.). Install the nut retainer and a new cotter pin.

(7) Install ABS wheel speed sensor, brake rotor and caliper.

(8) Install the wheel and tire assembly.

(9) Remove support and lower the vehicle.

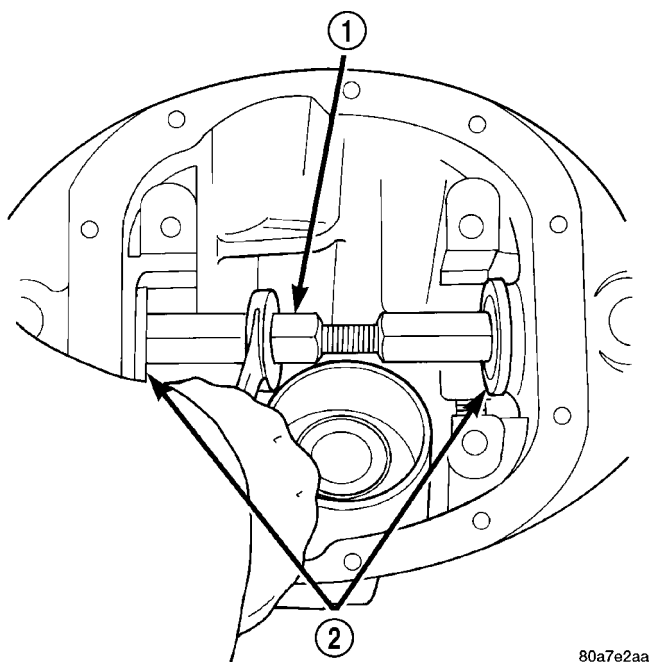
## AXLE SHAFT SEALS

### REMOVAL

- (1) Raise and support vehicle.
- (2) Remove axle shafts.
- (3) Remove differential assembly.
- (4) Remove inner axle shaft seals with a pry bay.

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Remove any sealer remaining from original seals.
- (2) Install oil seals with Discs 8110 and Turnbuckle 6797 (Fig. 24). Tighten tool until disc bottoms in housing.



80a7e2aa

**Fig. 24 AXLE SEAL TOOLS**

- 1 - TURNBUCKLE
- 2 - DISCS

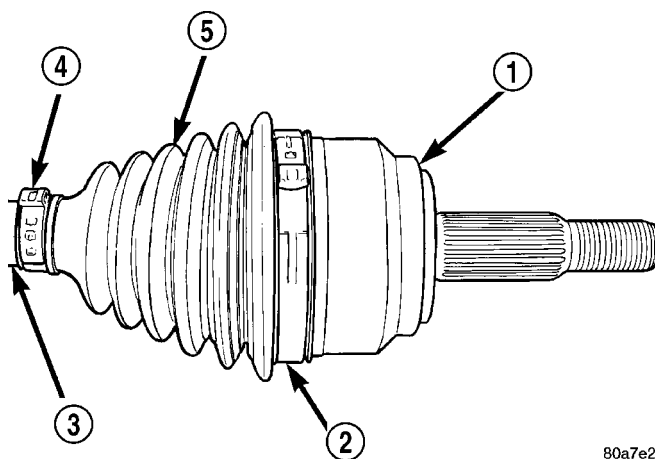
- (3) Install differential and axle shafts.
- (4) Fill differential with lubricant.
- (5) Remove support and lower vehicle.

## AXLE - C/V JOINT

### REMOVAL

**NOTE:** The only service procedure to be performed on the axle C/V joint, is the replacement of the joint seal boot. If any failure of internal axle shaft components is diagnosed during a vehicle road test, the axle shaft must be replaced as an assembly.

- (1) Remove axle shaft.
- (2) Remove large and small C/V boot clamps (Fig. 25) and discard.
- (3) Slid boot off the C/V joint housing and slide it down the axle shaft.



80a7e2ab

**Fig. 25 OUTER C/V BOOT CLAMPS**

- 1 - C/V JOINT HOUSING
- 2 - LARGE CLAMP
- 3 - AXLE SHAFT
- 4 - SMALL CLAMP
- 5 - SEALING BOOT

- (4) Remove C/V joint from axle then slid boot off the axle.

- (5) Thoroughly clean and inspect axle C/V joint assembly and axle shaft for any signs of excessive wear.

## AXLE - C/V JOINT (Continued)

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Slide **new** boot over axle shaft.
- (2) Install C/V joint onto the axle shaft.
- (3) Distribute 1/2 the amount of grease provided in seal boot service package (**DO NOT USE ANY OTHER TYPE OF GREASE**) into axle C/V joint assembly housing. Put the remaining amount into the sealing boot.
- (4) Position boot on the axle locating groove and on the C/V joint.

**CAUTION:** Boot must not be dimpled, stretched or out of shape in any way. If not shaped correctly, equalize pressure in boot and shape it by hand.

- (5) Install the two boot clamps.
- (6) Crimp the boot clamps with Clamp Installer C-4975A. Place clamp tool over bridge of clamp (Fig. 26).

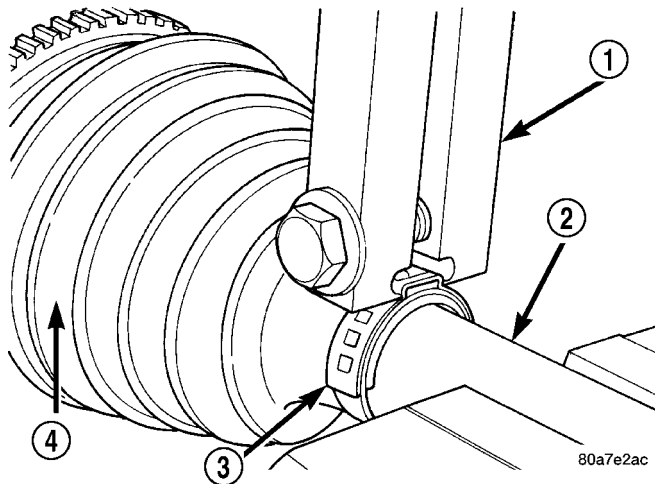


Fig. 26 CRIMPING TOOL

- 1 - INSTALLER
- 2 - AXLE SHAFT
- 3 - CLAMP
- 4 - SEALING BOOT

- (7) Tighten nut on the tool until jaws on tool are closed completely together (Fig. 27) and (Fig. 28).
- (8) Install the axle shaft.

## AXLE - U-JOINT

## REMOVAL

**CAUTION:** Clamp only the narrow forged portion of the yoke in the vise. Do not over tighten vise jaws, to avoid distorting the yoke.

- (1) Remove axle shaft.
- (2) Remove bearing cap retaining snap rings (Fig. 29).

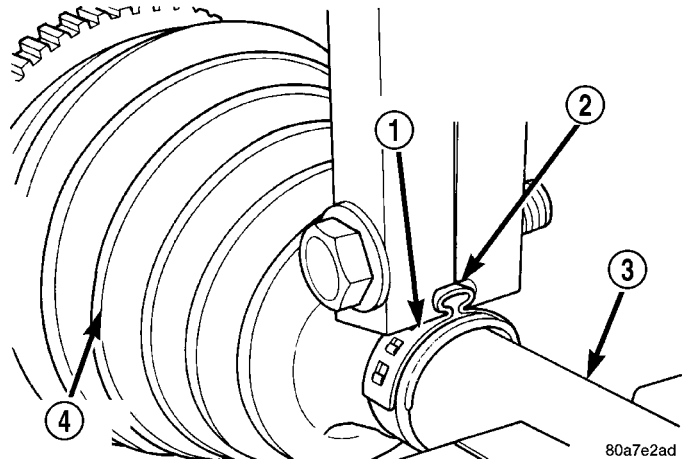


Fig. 27 SMALL BOOT CLAMP

- 1 - CLAMP
- 2 - INSTALLER
- 3 - AXLE SHAFT
- 4 - SEALING BOOT

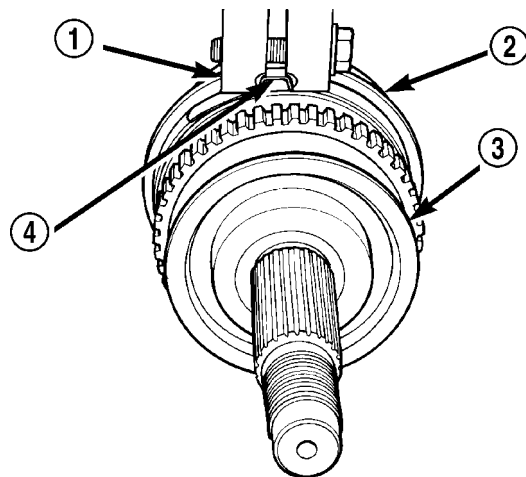


Fig. 28 LARGE BOOT CLAMP

- 1 - CLAMP TOOL
- 2 - SEALING BOOT
- 3 - OUTER C/V JOINT
- 4 - BOOT CLAMP

**NOTE:** Saturate the bearing caps with penetrating oil prior to removal.

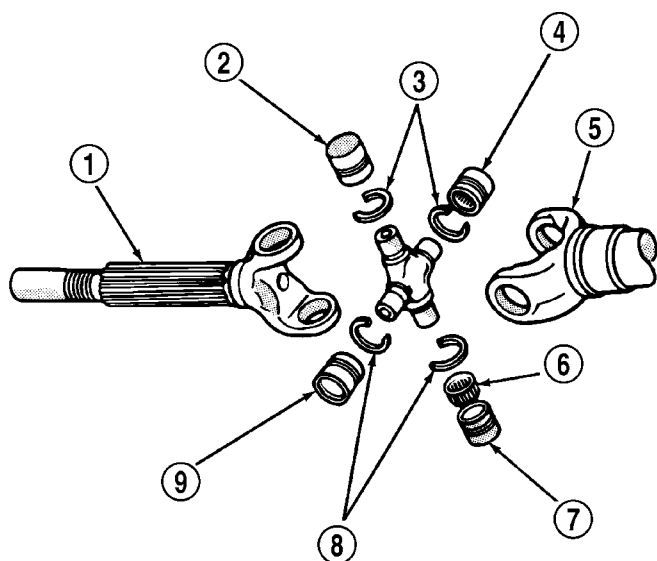
(3) Locate a socket with an inside diameter is larger than the bearing cap. Place the socket (receiver) against the yoke and around the perimeter of the bearing cap to be removed.

(4) Locate a socket with an outside diameter is smaller than the bearing cap. Place the socket (driver) against the opposite bearing cap.

(5) Position the yoke with the sockets in a vise (Fig. 30).

(6) Tighten vise to force the bearing cap into the larger socket (receiver).

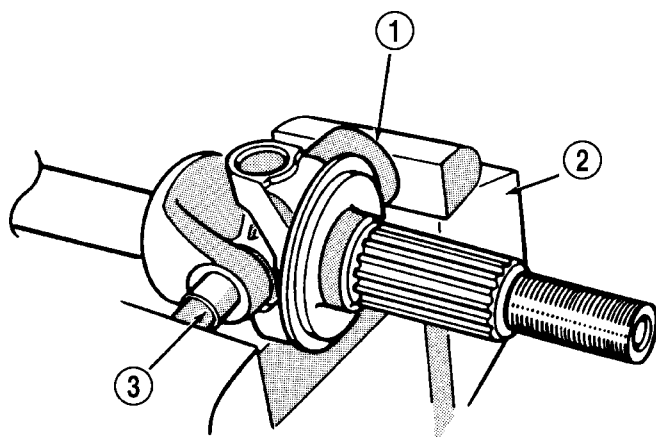
## AXLE - U-JOINT (Continued)



J8902-15

**Fig. 29 AXLE SHAFT OUTER U-JOINT**

- 1 - SHAFT YOKE
- 2 - BEARING CAP
- 3 - SNAP RINGS
- 4 - BEARING CAP
- 5 - SPINDLE YOKE
- 6 - BEARING
- 7 - BEARING CAP
- 8 - SNAP RINGS
- 9 - BEARING CAP



J8902-16

**Fig. 30 YOKE BEARING CAP**

- 1 - LARGE-DIAMETER SOCKET
- 2 - VISE
- 3 - SMALL-DIAMETER SOCKET

(7) Release the vise. Remove sockets and bearing cap that was partially forced out of the yoke.

(8) Repeat the procedure for the remaining bearing cap and remove spider from the propeller shaft yoke.

**INSTALLATION**

(1) Pack the bearing caps 1/3 full of wheel bearing lubricant. Apply extreme pressure (EP), lithium-base lubricant to aid in installation.

(2) Position the spider in the yoke. Insert the seals and bearings, then tap bearing caps into the yoke bores far enough to hold the spider in position.

(3) Place the socket (driver) against one bearing cap. Position the yoke with the socket in a vise.

(4) Tighten the vise to force the bearing caps into the yoke. Force the caps enough to install the retaining clips.

(5) Install the bearing cap retaining clips.

(6) Install axle shaft.

**PINION SEAL****REMOVAL**

(1) Raise and support the vehicle.

(2) Remove wheel and tire assemblies.

(3) Remove brake rotors and calipers.

(4) Mark propeller shaft and pinion companion flange for installation reference.

(5) Remove propeller shaft from the pinion companion flange.

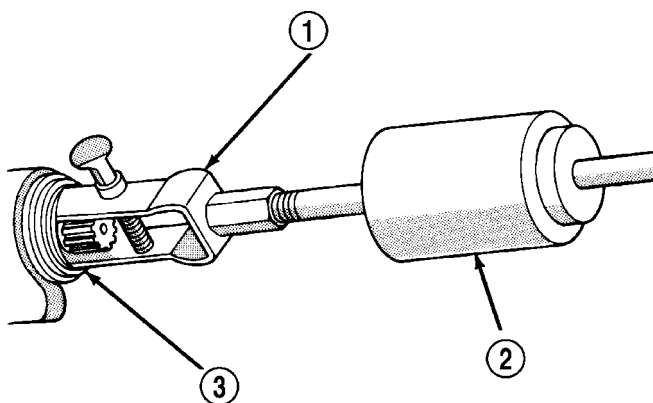
(6) Rotate pinion gear a minimum of ten times and verify the pinion rotates smoothly.

(7) Record torque necessary to rotate the pinion gear with a inch pound torque wrench.

(8) Using a short piece of pipe and Spanner Wrench 6958 to hold the pinion companion flange and remove the pinion nut and washer.

(9) Remove pinion companion flange with Remover C-452 and Flange Wrench C-3281.

(10) Remove pinion seal with Remover 7794-A and a slide hammer (Fig. 31).



J9402-59X

**Fig. 31 PINION SEAL REMOVER**

- 1 - REMOVER
- 2 - SLIDE HAMMER
- 3 - PINION SEAL



## PINION SEAL (Continued)

## INSTALLATION

(1) Apply a light coating of gear lubricant on the lip of pinion seal and install seal with an appropriate installer.

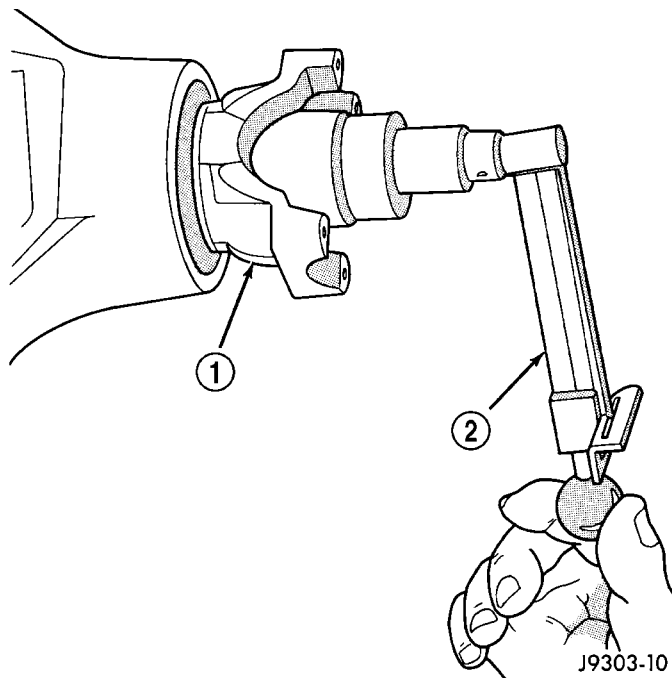
(2) Install pinion companion flange on the pinion gear with Installer W-162-D, Cup 8109 and Wrench 6958.

**CAUTION:** Never exceed the minimum tightening torque 217 N-m (160 ft. lbs.) while installing pinion nut at this point. Damage to collapsible spacer or bearings may result.

(3) Install **new** nut on the pinion gear. **Tighten the nut only enough to remove the shaft end play.**

**CAUTION:** Never loosen pinion nut to decrease pinion rotating torque and never exceed specified preload torque. If preload torque or rotating torque is exceeded a new collapsible spacer must be installed.

(4) Rotate pinion a minimum of ten times and verify pinion rotates smoothly. Rotate the pinion shaft with an inch pound torque wrench. Rotating torque should be equal to the reading recorded during removal plus 0.56 N-m (5 in. lbs.) (Fig. 32).



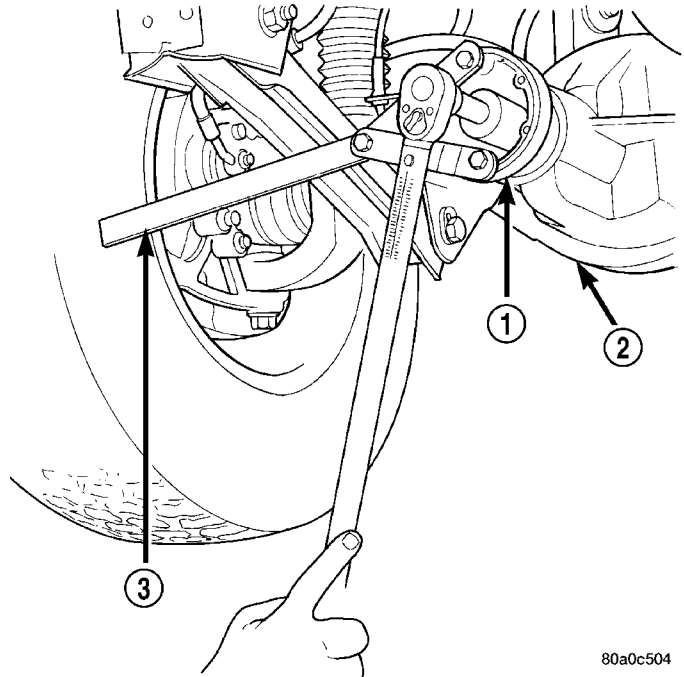
**Fig. 32 PINION ROTATION TORQUE**

- 1 - PINION YOKE/COMPANION FLANGE  
2 - INCH POUND TORQUE WRENCH

(5) If the rotating torque is low, use Spanner Wrench 6958 to hold the pinion companion flange (Fig. 33), and tighten the pinion shaft nut in 6.8 N-m

(5 ft. lbs.) increments until proper rotating torque is achieved.

**CAUTION:** If maximum tightening torque of 500 N-m (386 ft. lbs.) is reached prior to reaching the required rotating torque, the collapsible spacer may have been damaged. Replace the collapsible spacer.



**Fig. 33 PINION SHAFT NUT**

- 1 - PINION FLANGE  
2 - FRONT AXLE  
3 - SPANNER WRENCH

(6) Install propeller shaft with installation reference marks aligned.

(7) Fill differential with gear lubricant.

(8) Install brake rotors and calipers.

(9) Install wheel and tire assemblies.

(10) Lower the vehicle.

## COLLAPSIBLE SPACER

## REMOVAL

(1) Raise and support the vehicle.

(2) Remove wheel and tire assemblies.

(3) Remove brake rotors and calipers.

(4) Mark the propeller shaft and pinion companion flange for installation reference.

(5) Remove propeller shaft from the pinion companion flange.

(6) Rotate pinion gear a minimum of ten times and verify pinion rotates smoothly.

(7) Record pinion gear rotating torque with a torque wrench for installation reference.

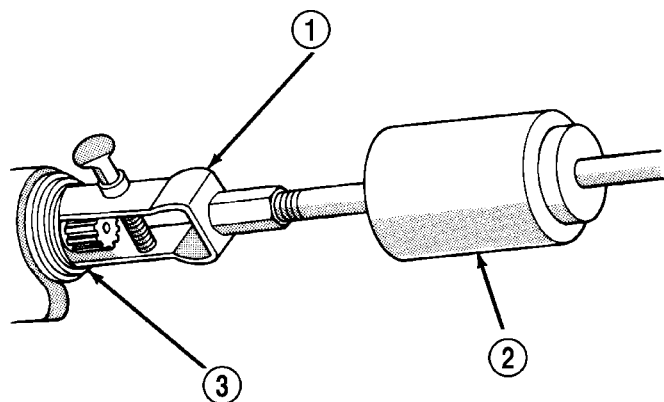


## COLLAPSIBLE SPACER (Continued)

(8) Remove pinion nut and washer. Using a short piece of pipe and Spanner Wrench 6958 to hold the pinion companion flange.

(9) Remove pinion companion flange with Remover C-452 and Flange Wrench C-3281.

(10) Remove pinion shaft seal with Remover 7794-A and slide hammer (Fig. 34).



**Fig. 34 PINION SEAL REMOVER**

- 1 - REMOVER
- 2 - SLIDE HAMMER
- 3 - PINION SEAL

(11) Remove front pinion bearing using a pair of pick tools to pull the bearing straight off pinion shaft.

**NOTE:** If bearing becomes bound on the pinion shaft, lightly tap the end of the pinion gear with a rawhide/rubber mallet.

(12) Remove the collapsible spacer.

## INSTALLATION

(1) Install **new** collapsible preload spacer on pinion shaft.

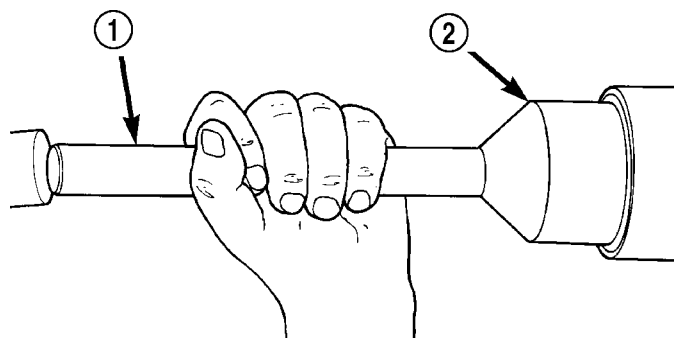
(2) Install pinion front bearing.

(3) Apply a light coating of gear lubricant on the lip of pinion seal. Install seal with an appropriate installer (Fig. 35).

(4) Install pinion companion flange with Installer W-162-D, Cup 8109 and Flange Holder 6958.

(5) Install pinion **new** nut on the pinion gear. Tighten the nut to 217 N·m (160 ft. lbs.) minimum. **Do not overtighten.** Maximum torque is 500 N·m (368 ft. lbs.).

**CAUTION:** Never loosen pinion nut to decrease pinion rotating torque and never exceed specified preload torque. If preload torque is exceeded a new collapsible spacer must be installed.



80a98349

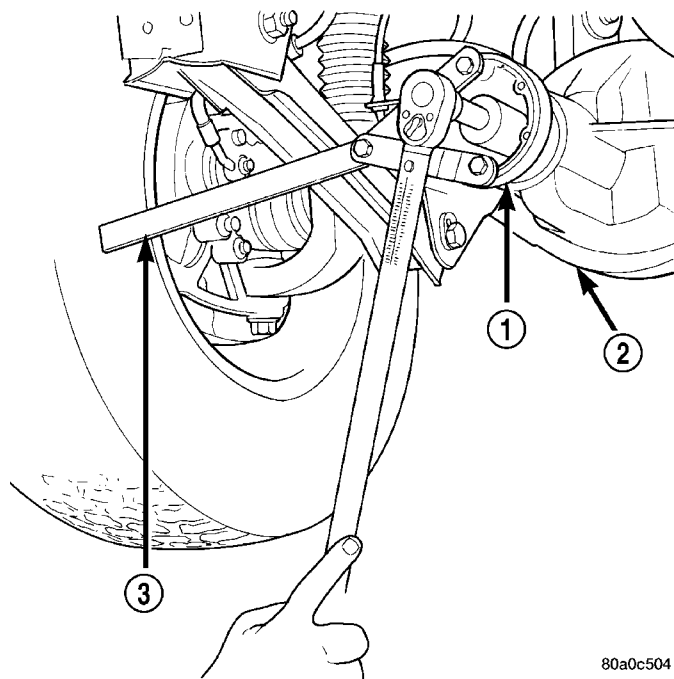
**Fig. 35 PINION SEAL INSTALLER**

- 1 - HANDLE
- 2 - INSTALLER

**NOTE:** New collapsible spacers require high initial torque to start the collapsing of the spacer. This may reach 678 N·m (500 ft. lbs.).

(6) Using Spanner Wrench 6958, a length of 1 in. pipe and a torque wrench set at 500 N·m (368 ft. lbs.) crush collapsible spacer until bearing end play is taken up (Fig. 36).

(7) Slowly tighten the nut in 6.8 N·m (5 ft. lbs.) increments until the required rotating torque is achieved. Measure the rotating torque frequently to avoid over crushing the collapsible spacer.



80a0c504

**Fig. 36 PINION COMPANION FLANGE**

- 1 - COMPANION FLANGE
- 2 - DIFFERENTIAL HOUSING
- 3 - SPANNER WRENCH

## COLLAPSIBLE SPACER (Continued)

(8) Rotate pinion gear a minimum of ten times and verify pinion rotates smoothly. Check rotating torque with an inch pound torque wrench. The rotating torque should be the amount recorded during removal, plus 0.56 N·m (5 in. lbs.).

(9) Install propeller shaft with reference marks aligned.

(10) Install brake rotors and calipers.

(11) Add gear lubricant if necessary.

(12) Install wheel and tire assemblies.

(13) Lower vehicle.

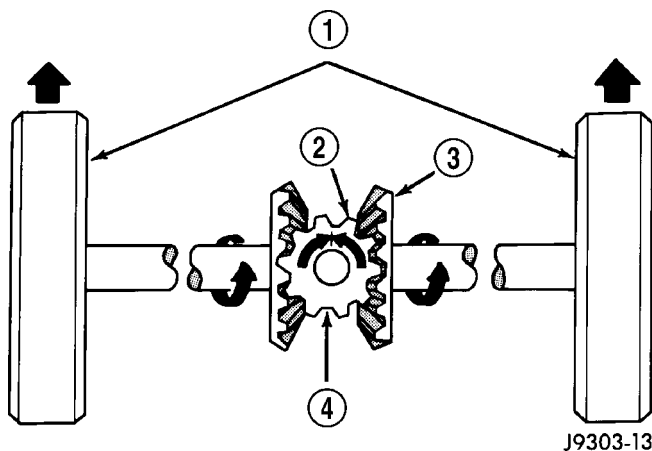
## DIFFERENTIAL

## DESCRIPTION

The differential case is a one-piece design. Differential bearing preload and ring gear backlash is adjusted by the use of shims located between the differential bearing cups and housing. Pinion bearing preload is set and maintained by the use of a collapsible spacer. A differential cover provides a means for inspection and servicing.

## OPERATION

During straight-ahead driving, the differential pinion gears do not rotate on the pinion mate shaft. This occurs because input torque applied to the gears is divided and distributed equally between the two side gears. As a result, the pinion gears revolve with the pinion mate shaft but do not rotate around it (Fig. 37).

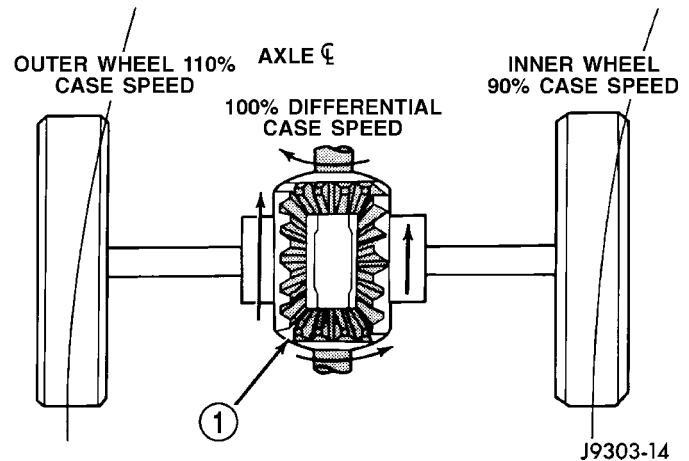


**Fig. 37 DIFFERENTIAL-STRAIGHT AHEAD DRIVING**

- 1 - IN STRAIGHT AHEAD DRIVING EACH WHEEL ROTATES AT 100% OF CASE SPEED
- 2 - PINION GEAR
- 3 - SIDE GEAR
- 4 - PINION GEARS ROTATE WITH CASE

When turning corners, the outside wheel must travel a greater distance than the inside wheel to complete a turn. The difference must be compensated for to prevent the tires from scuffing and skidding through turns. To

accomplish this, the differential allows the axle shafts to turn at unequal speeds (Fig. 38). In this instance, the input torque applied to the pinion gears is not divided equally. The pinion gears now rotate around the pinion mate shaft in opposite directions. This allows the side gear and axle shaft attached to the outside wheel to rotate at a faster speed.

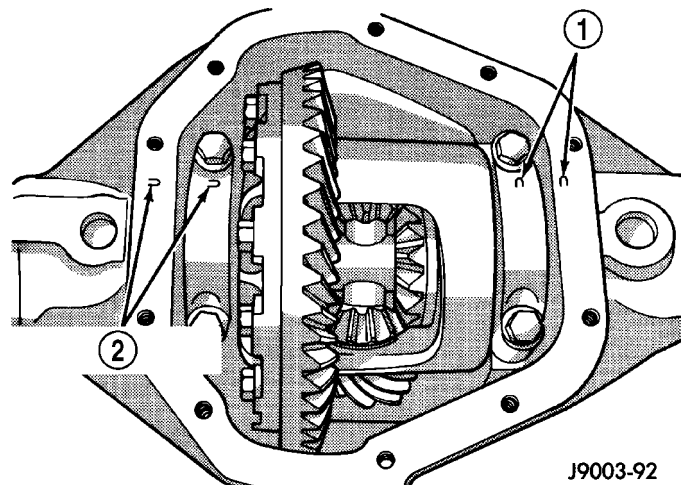


**Fig. 38 DIFFERENTIAL-ON TURNS**

- 1 - PINION GEARS ROTATE ON PINION SHAFT

## REMOVAL

- (1) Raise and support the vehicle.
- (2) Remove lubricant fill hole plug from the differential housing cover.
- (3) Remove differential cover and drain lubricant.
- (4) Clean the housing cavity with a flushing oil, light engine oil or lint free cloth. **Never use water, steam, kerosene or gasoline for cleaning.**
- (5) Remove hub bearings and axle shafts.
- (6) Note installation reference letters stamped on the bearing caps and housing machined sealing surface (Fig. 39).



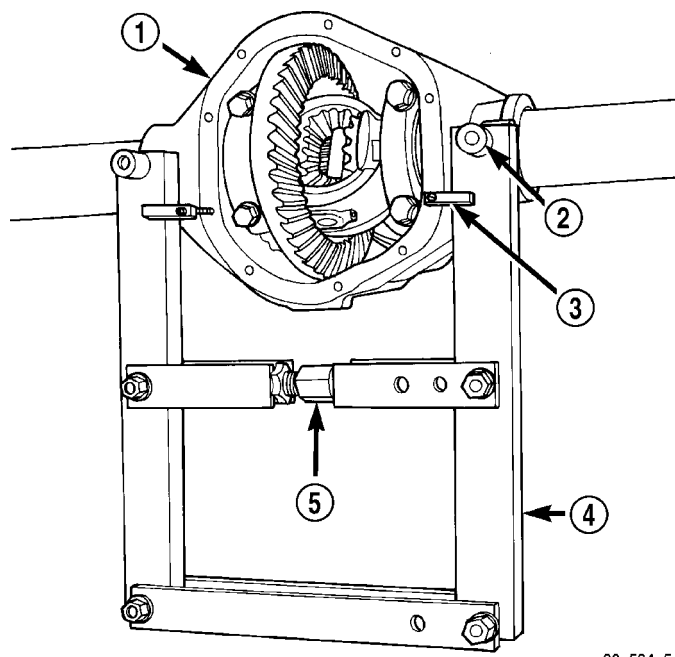
**Fig. 39 BEARING CAP IDENTIFICATION**

- 1 - REFERENCE LETTERS
- 2 - REFERENCE LETTERS

## DIFFERENTIAL (Continued)

(7) Loosen the differential bearing cap bolts.

(8) Position Spreader W-129-B with Adapter Kit 6987B on differential locating holes (Fig. 40). Install hold down clamps and tighten the tool turnbuckle finger-tight.



**Fig. 40 DIFFERENTIAL SPREADER LOCATION**

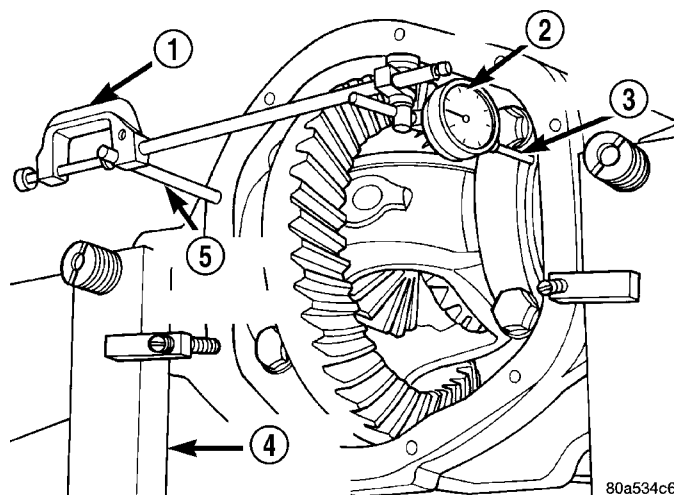
- 1 - DIFFERENTIAL HOUSING
- 2 - ADAPTER
- 3 - HOLD DOWN CLAMPS
- 4 - SPREADER
- 5 - TURNBUCKLE

(9) Install a Pilot Stud C-3288-B at the left side of the differential housing. Attach Dial Indicator C-3339 to stud. Load the lever adapter against the opposite side of the housing (Fig. 41) and zero the indicator.

(10) Spread housing enough to remove the differential case from the housing. Measure the distance with the dial indicator (Fig. 42).

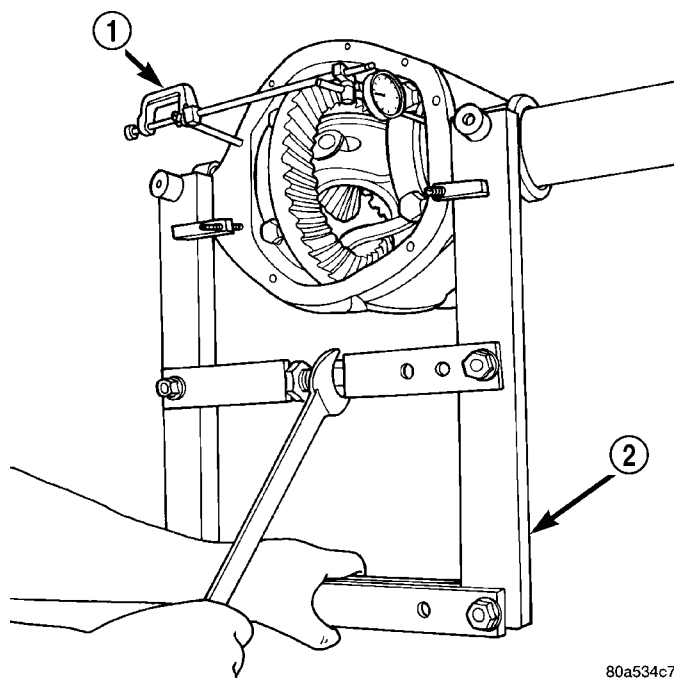
**CAUTION:** Never spread the housing over 0.38 mm (0.015 in). If housing is over-spread, it could distort and damaged the housing.

- (11) Remove the dial indicator.
- (12) Hold differential case in position and remove differential bearing cap bolts and caps.
- (13) Remove differential from the housing and tag differential bearing cups to ensure location (Fig. 43).
- (14) Remove differential case preload shims from the axle housing.
- (15) Remove spreader from housing. Tag differential bearing preload shims to ensure correct location.



**Fig. 41 DIAL INDICATOR LOCATION**

- 1 - CLAMP
- 2 - DIAL INDICATOR
- 3 - LEVER ADAPTER
- 4 - SPREADER
- 5 - PILOT STUD



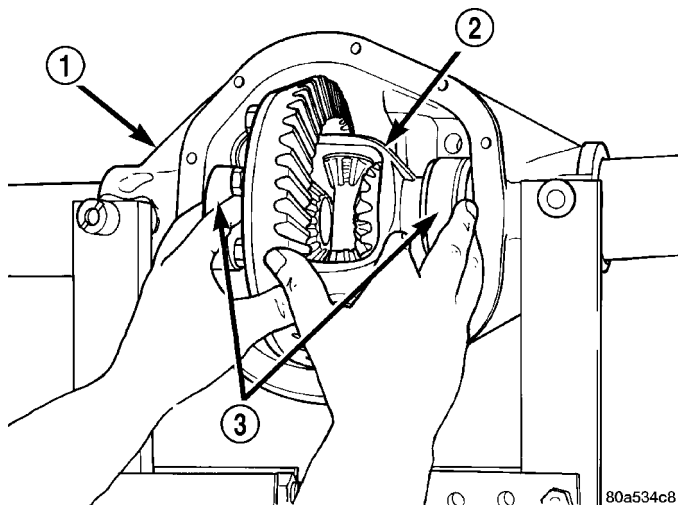
**Fig. 42 SPREAD DIFFERENTIAL HOUSING**

- 1 - DIAL INDICATOR
- 2 - SPREADER

## DISASSEMBLY

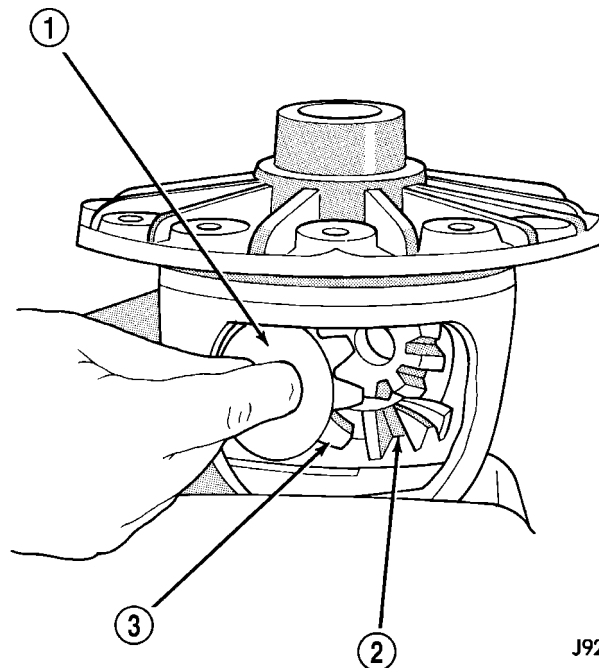
- (1) Remove the ring gear.
- (2) Drive out the roll pin holding pinion gear mate shaft with a hammer and punch (Fig. 44).
- (3) Remove pinion gear mate shaft from the differential case and the pinion mate gears.
- (4) Rotate differential side gears and remove the pinion mate gears and thrust washers (Fig. 45).

## DIFFERENTIAL (Continued)



**Fig. 43 DIFFERENTIAL CASE REMOVAL**

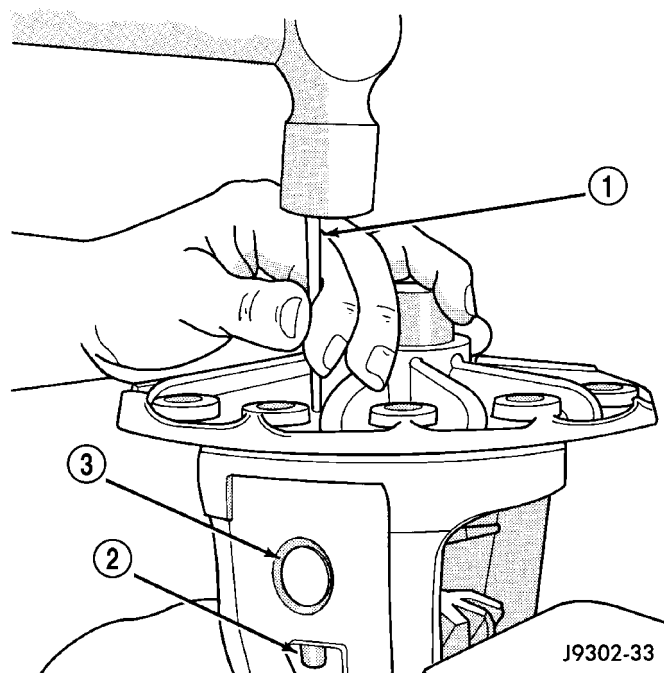
- 1 - DIFFERENTIAL HOUSING
- 2 - DIFFERENTIAL CASE
- 3 - BEARING CUPS



**Fig. 45 PINION MATE GEAR**

- 1 - THRUST WASHER
- 2 - SIDE GEAR
- 3 - PINION MATE GEAR

(4) Install the roll pin in the differential case (Fig. 46).



**Fig. 44 MATE SHAFT ROLL PIN**

- 1 - PUNCH
- 2 - LOCKPIN
- 3 - MATE SHAFT

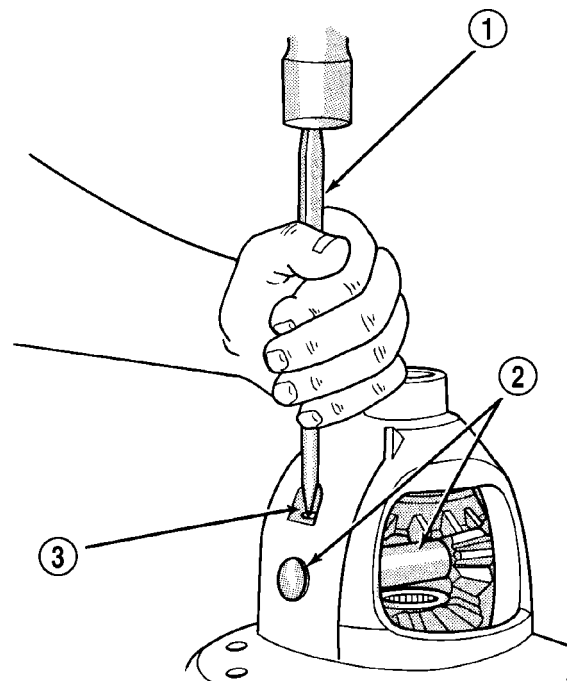
(5) Remove differential side gears and thrust washers.

## ASSEMBLY

(1) Install differential side gears and thrust washers.

(2) Install pinion mate gears and thrust washers.

(3) Install pinion gear mate shaft. Align the roll pin holes in shaft and the differential case.



**Fig. 46 MATE SHAFT ROLL PIN**

- 1 - PUNCH
- 2 - PINION MATE SHAFT
- 3 - MATE SHAFT LOCKPIN

(5) Install the ring gear.



## DIFFERENTIAL (Continued)

(6) Lubricate all differential components with hypoid gear lubricant.

## INSTALLATION

**NOTE:** If replacement differential bearings or differential case are being installed, differential side bearing shim requirements may change. Refer to **Adjustments (Differential Bearing Preload and Gear Backlash)** to determine the proper shim selection.

(1) Position Spreader W-129-B with Adapter Kit 6987B on differential locating holes. Install hold down clamps and tighten the tool turnbuckle finger-tight.

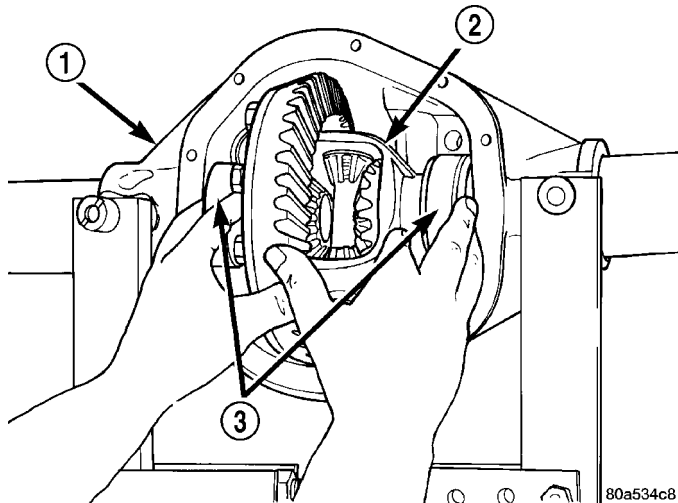
(2) Install a Pilot Stud C-3288-B at the left side of the differential housing. Attach Dial Indicator C-3339 to pilot stud. Load the indicator plunger against the opposite side of the housing and zero the indicator.

(3) Spread the housing enough to install the case in the housing. Measure the distance with the dial indicator.

**CAUTION:** Never spread the housing over 0.38 mm (0.015 in.). If housing is over-spread, it could distort and damage the housing.

(4) Remove the dial indicator.

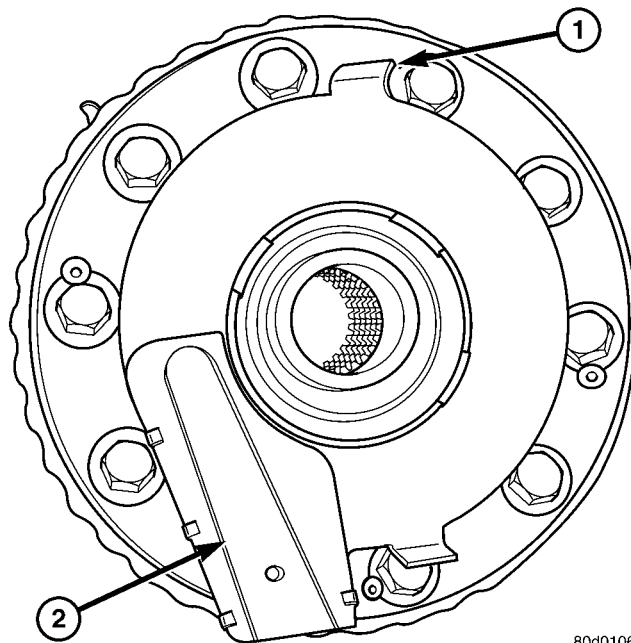
(5) Install differential case in the housing (Fig. 47). Make sure the differential bearing cups remain on the bearings and the preload shims remain between the face of the bearing cup and housing. Tap the differential case to ensure the bearings cups and shims are fully seated in the housing.



**Fig. 47 DIFFERENTIAL CASE REMOVAL**

- 1 - DIFFERENTIAL HOUSING
- 2 - DIFFERENTIAL CASE
- 3 - BEARING CUPS

**CAUTION:** On a Vari-lok® differential the oil feed tube must be pointed at the bottom of the housing (Fig. 48). If differential is installed with the oil feed tube pointed at the top, the anti-rotation tabs will be damaged.

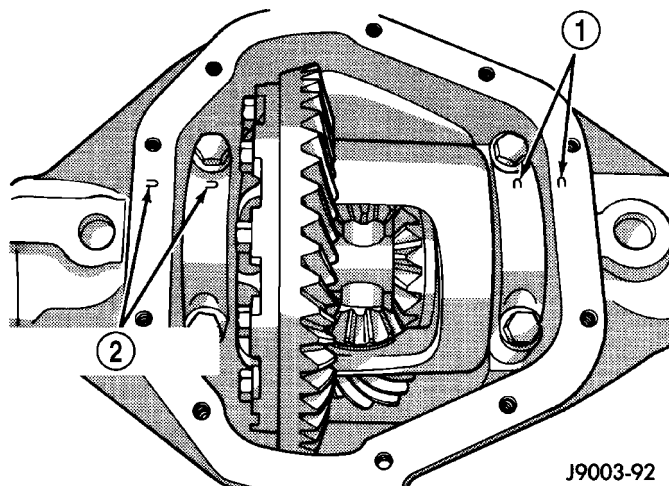


80d0106d

**Fig. 48 VARI-LOK**

- 1 - ANTI-ROTATION TAB
- 2 - OIL FEED TUBE

(6) Install the bearing caps at their original locations (Fig. 49).



J9003-92

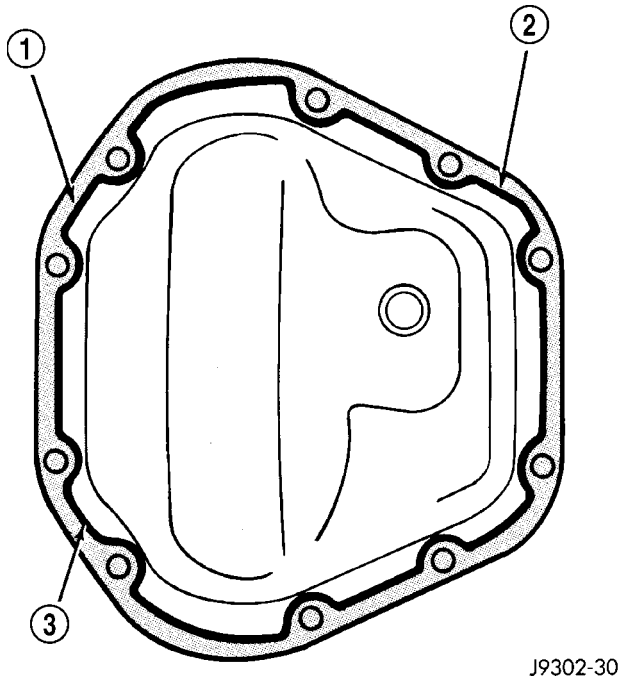
**Fig. 49 Bearing Cap Reference**

- 1 - REFERENCE LETTERS
- 2 - REFERENCE LETTERS

(7) Loosely install differential bearing cap bolts.  
(8) Remove axle housing spreader.

## DIFFERENTIAL (Continued)

- (9) Tighten the bearing cap bolts to 61 N·m (45 ft. lbs.).
- (10) Install the hub bearings and axle shafts.
- (11) Apply a bead 6.35mm (1/4 inch) of red Mopar Silicone Rubber Sealant or equivalent to the housing cover (Fig. 50).



J9302-30

**Fig. 50 DIFFERENTIAL COVER**

- 1 - COVER
- 2 - SEALANT
- 3 - SEALANT BEAD

**CAUTION:** If cover is not installed within 3 to 5 minutes, the cover must be cleaned and new RTV applied or adhesion quality will be compromised.

- (12) Install differential cover and tighten cover bolts in a criss-cross pattern to 41 N·m (30 ft. lbs.).
- (13) Fill differential with gear lubricant to bottom of the fill plug hole.
- (14) Tighten fill plug to 34 N·m (25 ft. lbs.).
- (15) Remove support and lower the vehicle.

## DIFFERENTIAL - VARI-LOK

## DESCRIPTION

The optional Vari-Lok® differential has a one-piece differential case which contains the gerotor pump assembly and the clutch mechanism. This unit is serviced as an assembly only.

## OPERATION

A gerotor pump and clutch pack are used to provide the torque transfer capability. One axle shaft is splined to the gerotor pump and one differential side gears, this provides input to the pump. As a wheel begins to lose traction, the speed differential is transmitted from one side of the differential to the other through the side gears. The motion of one side gear relative to the other turns the inner rotor of the pump. Since the outer rotor of the pump is grounded to the differential case, the inner and outer rotors are moving relative to each other, which creates pressure in the pump. The tuning of the front and rear axle orifices and valves inside the gerotor pump are unique. Each system has a torque-limiting pressure relief valve to protect the clutch pack, which also facilitates vehicle control under extreme side-to-side traction variations. The resulting pressure is applied to the clutch pack and the transfer of torque is completed. Vari-lok® system is less subject to wear, remaining more consistent over time in its ability to transfer torque.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING

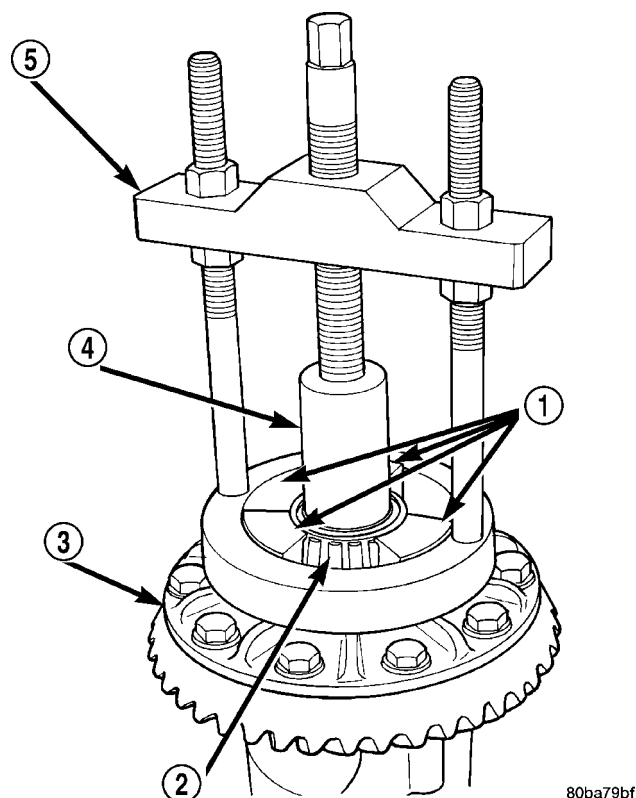
- (1) Park the vehicle on a level surface or raise vehicle on hoist so that the vehicle is level.
- (2) Remove the axle fill plug.
- (3) Verify that the axle fluid level is correct. The fluid level is correct if the fluid is level with the bottom of the fill hole.
- (4) Shift the transfer case into the 4WD full-time position.
- (5) Drive the vehicle in a tight circle for 2 minutes at 5mph to fully prime the pump.
- (6) Block the tires opposite the axle to be tested to prevent the vehicle from moving.
- (7) Shift the transfer case into the 4WD Low position and the transmission into the Park position.
- (8) Raise both the wheels of the axle to be tested off of the ground.
- (9) Rotate the left wheel by hand at a minimum of one revolution per second while an assistant rotates the right wheel in the opposite direction.
- (10) The left wheel should spin freely at first and then increase in resistance within 5 revolutions until the wheels cannot be continuously rotated in opposite directions.
- (11) The Vari-lok® differential has engaged properly if the wheels cannot be rotated in opposite directions for a moment. After the wheels stop rotating for a moment, the fluid pressure will drop in the differential and the wheels begin to rotate once again.
- (12) If the system does not operate properly, replace the Vari-lok® differential.



## DIFFERENTIAL CASE BEARINGS

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove differential case from housing.
- (2) Remove bearings from the differential case with Puller C-293-PA, Adapters 8352 and Plug SP-3289 (Fig. 51).



**Fig. 51 DIFFERENTIAL CASE BEARING**

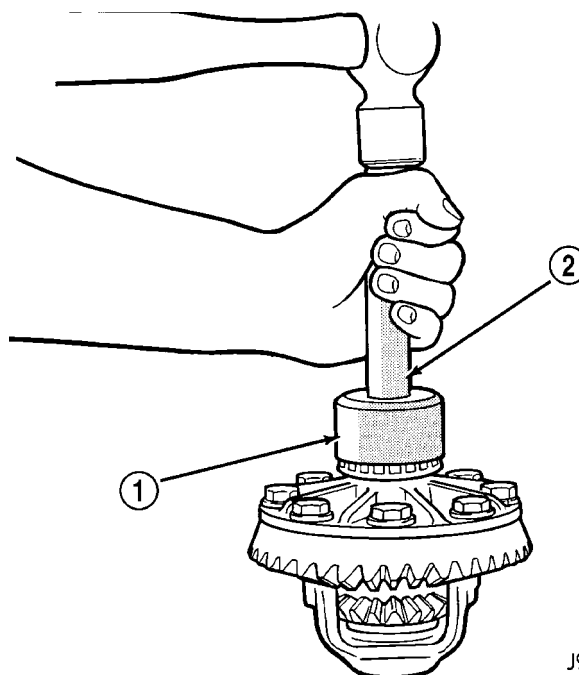
- 1 - ADAPTERS
- 2 - BEARING
- 3 - DIFFERENTIAL
- 4 - PLUG
- 5 - PULLER

### INSTALLATION

**NOTE:** If differential case or side bearings are replaced, differential side bearing shim requirements may change. Refer to Adjustments (Differential Bearing Preload and Gear Backlash) to determine the proper shim selection.

**CAUTION:** Vari-lok® plenum must be seated against the differential case, prior to installing the ring gear side differential bearing.

- (1) Install differential side bearings with Handle C-4171 and Installer C-3716-A (Fig. 52).



J9302-21

**Fig. 52 DIFFERENTIAL CASE BEARING**

- 1 - INSTALLER
- 2 - HANDLE

- (2) Install differential in housing.

## PINION GEAR/RING GEAR

### REMOVAL

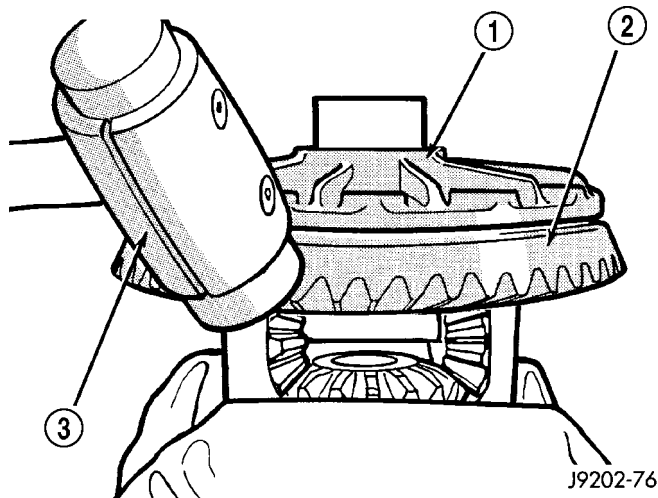
**NOTE:** The ring gear and pinion are serviced as a matched set. Never replace one gear without replacing the other matching gear.

- (1) Raise and support vehicle
- (2) Mark pinion companion flange and propeller shaft for installation alignment.
- (3) Remove propeller shaft from pinion companion flange and tie propeller shaft to underbody.
- (4) Remove differential from axle housing.
- (5) Place differential case in a vise with soft metal jaw (Fig. 53).
- (6) Remove bolts holding ring gear to differential case.

**NOTE:** On Vari-Lok® differential the side bearing and oil feed plenum must be removed before removing the ring gear bolts.

## PINION GEAR/RING GEAR (Continued)

(7) Driver ring gear off the differential case with a rawhide hammer (Fig. 53).

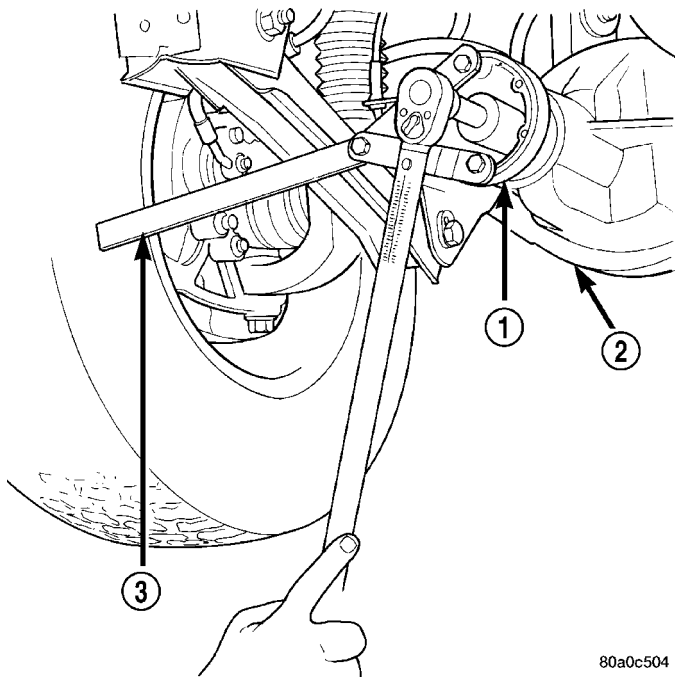


**Fig. 53 RING GEAR**

- 1 - DIFFERENTIAL CASE
- 2 - RING GEAR
- 3 - HAMMER

(8) With Spanner Wrench 6958 and a short length of 1 in. pipe, hold pinion companion flange and remove pinion nut and washer (Fig. 54).

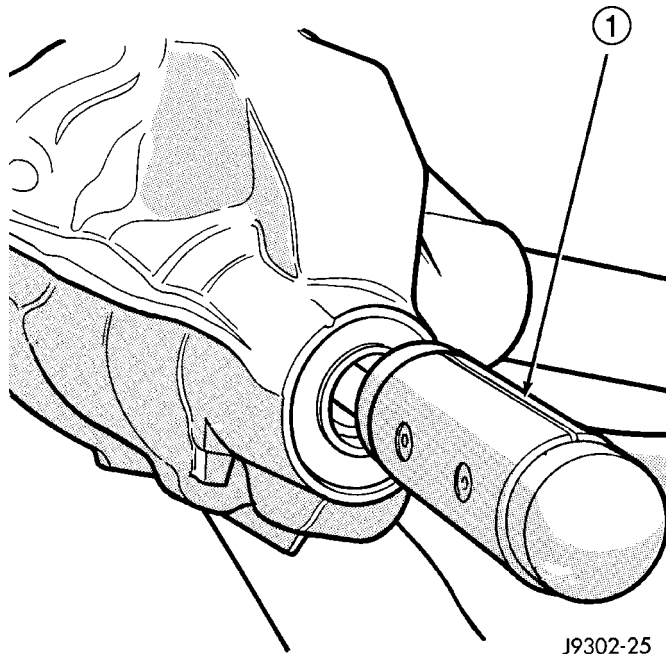
(9) Remove pinion companion flange from pinion shaft with Remover C-452 and Flange Wrench C-3281.



**Fig. 54 Pinion Flange**

- 1 - PINION FLANGE
- 2 - FRONT AXLE
- 3 - SPANNER WRENCH

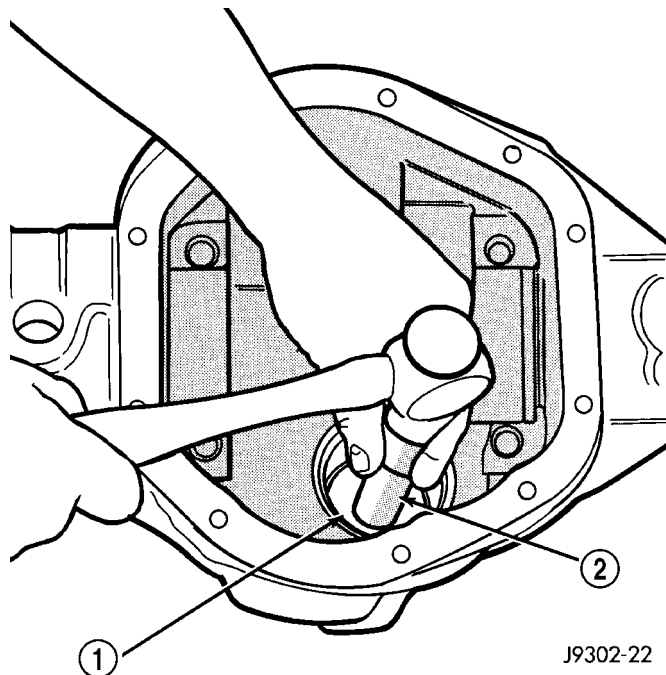
(10) Remove pinion gear and collapsible spacer from housing (Fig. 55).



**Fig. 55 REMOVE PINION GEAR**

- 1 - DEAD-BLOW HAMMER

(11) Remove front pinion bearing cup, bearing, oil slinger and pinion seal with Remover C-4345 and Handle C-4171 (Fig. 56).

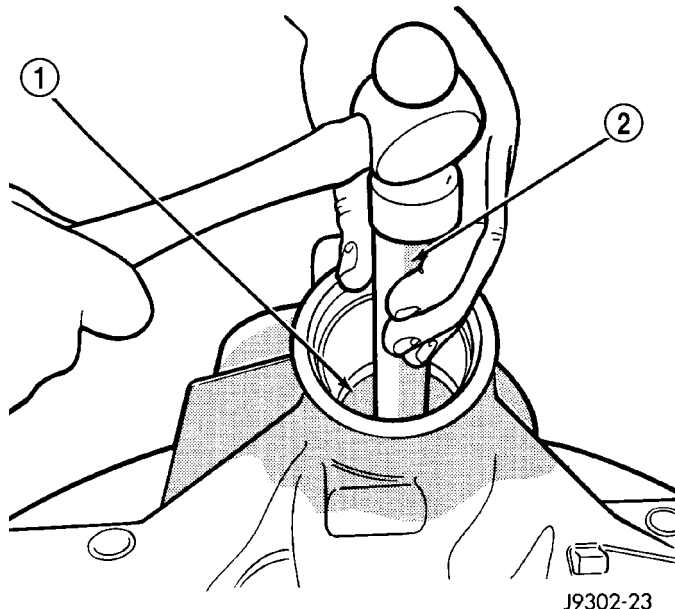


**Fig. 56 FRONT PINION BEARING CUP**

- 1 - REMOVER
- 2 - HANDLE

## PINION GEAR/RING GEAR (Continued)

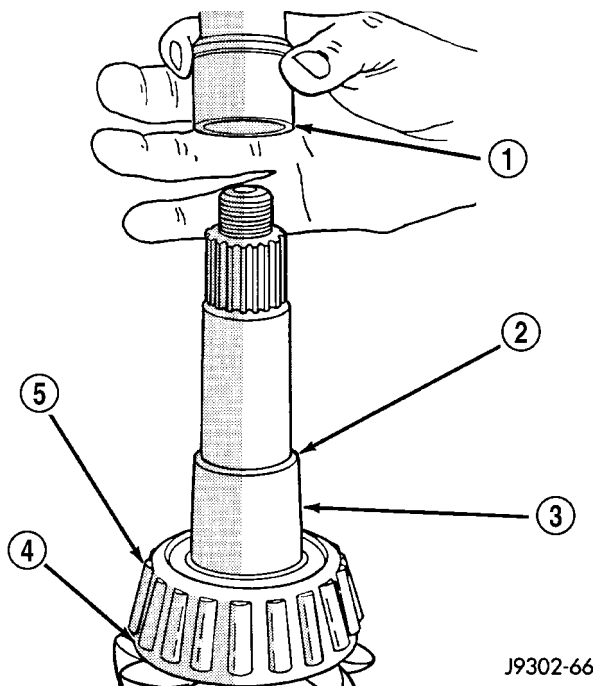
(12) Remove rear pinion bearing cup (Fig. 57) with Remover D-149 and Handle C-4171.



**Fig. 57 REAR PINION BEARING CUP**

- 1 - REMOVER  
2 - HANDLE

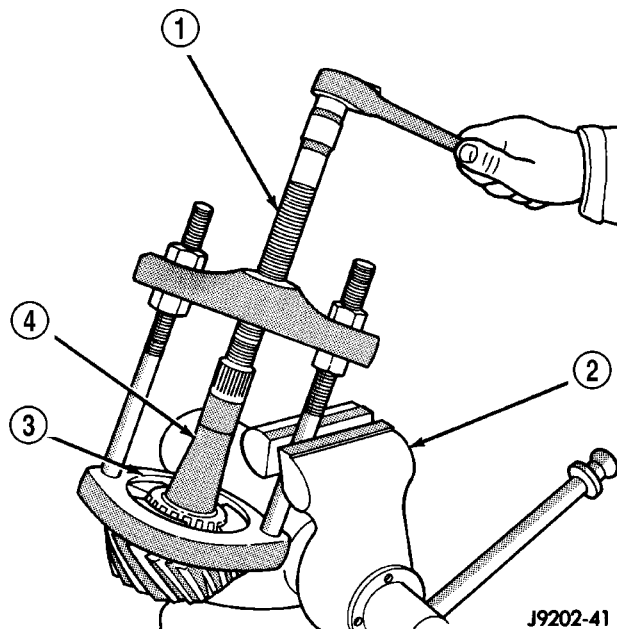
(13) Remove collapsible preload spacer from pinion gear (Fig. 58).



**Fig. 58 COLLAPSIBLE SPACER**

- 1 - COLLAPSIBLE SPACER  
2 - SHOULDER  
3 - PINION GEAR  
4 - DEPTH SHIM  
5 - REAR BEARING

(14) Remove rear pinion bearing from the pinion with Puller/Press C-293-PA and Adapters C-293-39 (Fig. 59). Remove oil slinger/pinion depth shim from the pinion shaft and record thickness.



**Fig. 59 REAR PINION BEARING**

- 1 - PULLER  
2 - VISE  
3 - ADAPTERS  
4 - PINION GEAR SHAFT

## INSTALLATION

**NOTE:** Pinion depth shims are placed between the rear pinion bearing cone and the pinion head to achieve proper ring and pinion gear mesh. If ring and pinion gears are reused, the pinion oil slinger/depth shim should not require replacement. Refer to Adjustments (Pinion Gear Depth) to select the proper thickness shim before installing pinion gear.

(1) Apply Mopar Door Ease or equivalent lubricant to outside surface of pinion bearing cups.

(2) Install rear bearing cup with Installer D-146 and Handle C-4171 and verify cup is seated (Fig. 60).

(3) Install bearing cup with Installer D-130 and Handle C-4171 (Fig. 61) and verify cup is seated.

(4) Install front pinion bearing, and oil slinger if equipped.

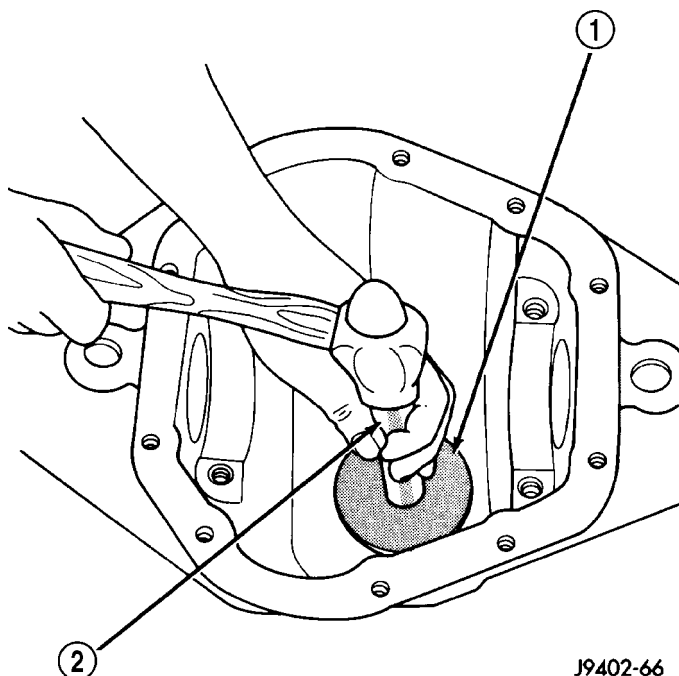
(5) Apply a light coating of gear lubricant on the lip of pinion seal and install seal with Installer 8890.

(6) Install rear pinion bearing and oil slinger/depth shim onto the pinion shaft with Installer W262 and a press (Fig. 62).

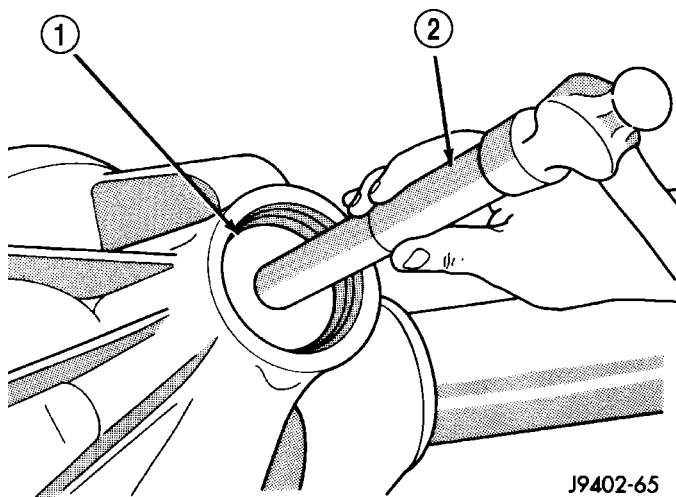
(7) Install a **new** collapsible spacer on pinion shaft and install the pinion into the housing (Fig. 63).

(8) Install pinion companion flange, with Installer W-162-B, Cup 8109 and Spanner Wrench 6958.

## PINION GEAR/RING GEAR (Continued)

J9402-66  
**Fig. 60 REAR PINION BEARING CUP**

- 1 - INSTALLER  
2 - HANDLE

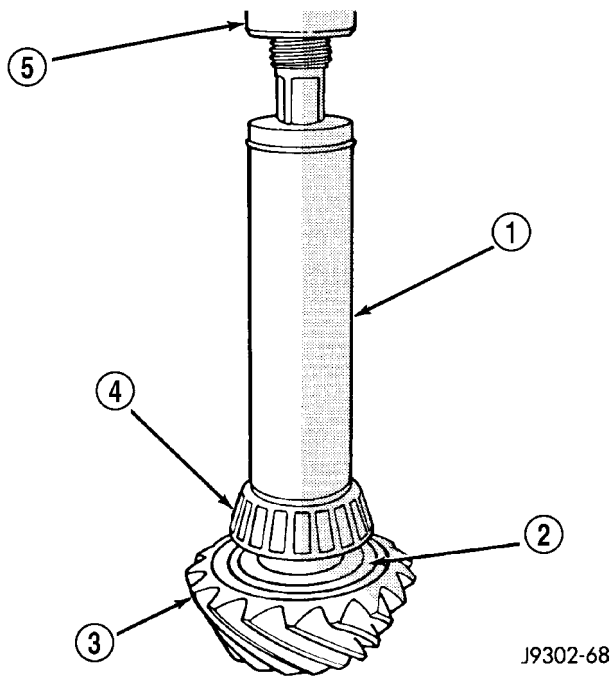
J9402-65  
**Fig. 61 FRONT PINION BEARING CUP**

- 1 - INSTALLER  
2 - HANDLE

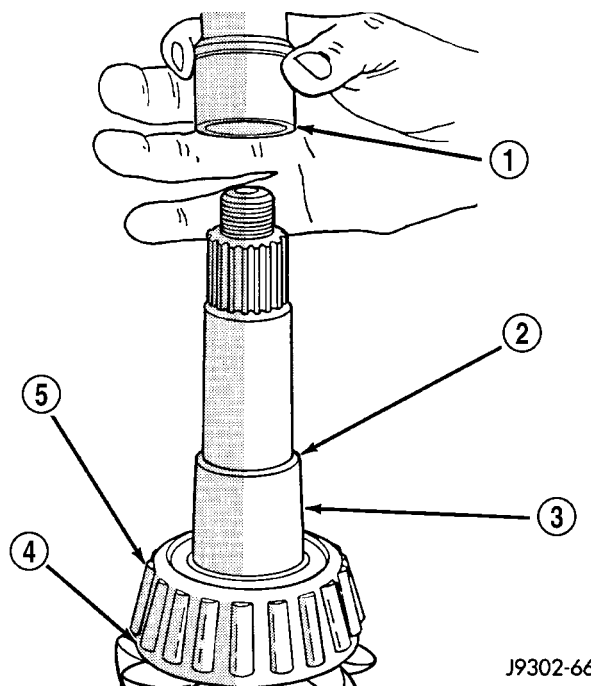
(9) Install pinion washer and a **new** nut onto the pinion gear and tighten the nut to 298 N·m (220 ft. lbs.). **Do not over-tighten.**

**CAUTION:** Never loosen pinion gear nut to decrease pinion rotating torque and never exceed specified preload torque. If preload torque is exceeded a new collapsible spacer must be installed.

**NOTE:** New collapsible spacers require high initial torque to start the collapsing of the spacer. This may reach 678 N·m (500 ft. lbs.).

J9302-68  
**Fig. 62 REAR PINION BEARING**

- 1 - INSTALLER  
2 - OIL SLINGER  
3 - PINION GEAR  
4 - REAR PINION BEARING  
5 - PRESS

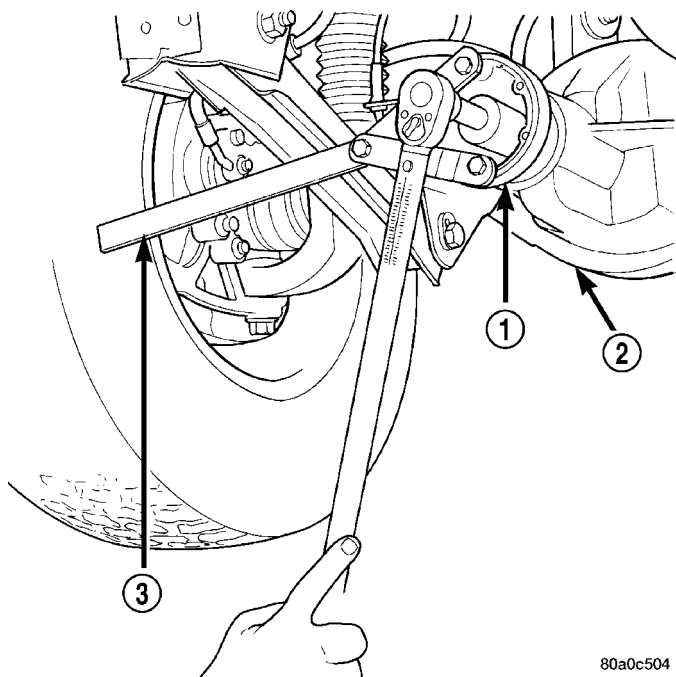
J9302-66  
**Fig. 63 COLLAPSIBLE PRELOAD SPACER**

- 1 - COLLAPSIBLE SPACER  
2 - SHOULDER  
3 - PINION GEAR  
4 - DEPTH SHIM  
5 - REAR BEARING

## PINION GEAR/RING GEAR (Continued)

(10) Use Flange Wrench 6958, a length of 1 in. pipe and a torque wrench set at 500 N·m (368 ft. lbs.) and crush collapsible spacer until bearing end play is taken up (Fig. 64).

(11) Slowly tighten the nut in 6.8 N·m (5 ft. lbs.) increments until the required rotating torque is achieved. Measure the rotating torque frequently to avoid over crushing the collapsible spacer (Fig. 65).



**Fig. 64 PINION NUT**

- 1 - PINION FLANGE
- 2 - FRONT AXLE
- 3 - SPANNER WRENCH

(12) Rotate the pinion a minimum of ten times. Verify pinion rotates smoothly and check rotating torque with an inch pound torque wrench (Fig. 65). Pinion gear rotating torque is:

- Original Bearings: 1 to 2.25 N·m (10 to 20 in. lbs.).
- New Bearings: 1.7 to 3.4 N·m (15 to 30 in. lbs.).

(13) Invert the differential case and start two ring gear bolts. This will provide case-to-ring gear bolt hole alignment.

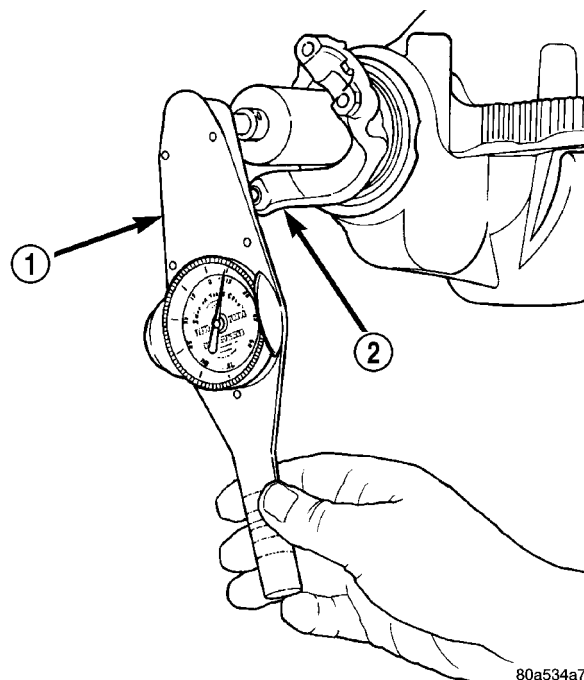
(14) Invert the differential case in the vise.

(15) Install new ring gear bolts and alternately tighten to 108 N·m (80 ft. lbs.) (Fig. 66).

**CAUTION:** Never reuse the ring gear bolts. The bolts can fracture causing extensive damage.

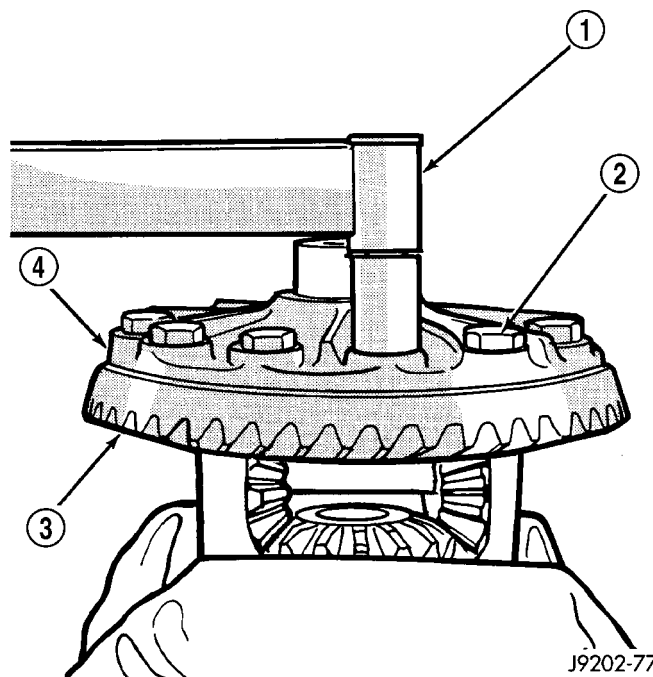
**NOTE:** If equipped with Veri-Lok® differential install oil feed plenum and side bearing.

(16) Install differential in housing and verify differential bearing preload, gear mesh and contact pattern. Refer to Adjustment for procedure.



**Fig. 65 PINION ROTATING TORQUE**

- 1 - TORQUE WRENCH
- 2 - PINION YOKE/FLANGE



**Fig. 66 RING GEAR BOLTS**

- 1 - TORQUE WRENCH
- 2 - RING GEAR BOLTS
- 3 - RING GEAR
- 4 - DIFFERENTIAL CASE

(17) Install differential cover and fill with gear lubricant.

(18) Install propeller shaft with reference marks aligned.

(19) Remove supports and lower vehicle.



## REAR AXLE - 198RBI

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>REAR AXLE - 198RBI</b>		<b>INSTALLATION</b> .....	67
DESCRIPTION .....	49	<b>COLLAPSIBLE SPACER</b>	
OPERATION .....	49	REMOVAL .....	69
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING .....	49	INSTALLATION .....	69
REMOVAL .....	52	<b>DIFFERENTIAL</b>	
INSTALLATION .....	52	DESCRIPTION .....	71
ADJUSTMENTS .....	53	OPERATION .....	71
SPECIFICATIONS .....	61	REMOVAL .....	71
SPECIAL TOOLS .....	62	DISASSEMBLY .....	73
<b>AXLE SHAFTS</b>		ASSEMBLY .....	73
REMOVAL .....	64	INSTALLATION .....	73
INSTALLATION .....	64	<b>DIFFERENTIAL CASE BEARINGS</b>	
<b>AXLE BEARINGS/SEALS</b>		REMOVAL .....	75
REMOVAL .....	65	INSTALLATION .....	76
INSTALLATION .....	66	<b>PINION GEAR/RING GEAR</b>	
<b>PINION SEAL</b>		REMOVAL .....	76
REMOVAL .....	67	INSTALLATION .....	78

## REAR AXLE - 198RBI

### DESCRIPTION

The Rear Beam Iron (RBI) axle has a cast iron differential housing with axle shaft tubes extending from either side. The tubes are pressed into differential housing and welded. The axles are semi-floating supported by the axle shaft and bearings. The axle shafts are retained by bearing retainer plates on the axles which are bolted to flanges at the outboard end of the axle tubes.

### OPERATION

The axle receives power from the transmission/transfer case through the rear propeller shaft. The rear propeller shaft is connected to the pinion gear which rotates the differential through the gear mesh with the ring gear bolted to the differential case. The engine power is transmitted to the axle shafts through the pinion mate and side gears. The side gears are splined to the axle shafts.

### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING

#### GEAR NOISE

Axle gear noise can be caused by insufficient lubricant, incorrect backlash, tooth contact, worn/damaged gears, or the carrier housing not having the proper offset and squareness.

Gear noise usually happens at a specific speed range. The noise can also occur during a specific type of driving condition. These conditions are acceleration, deceleration, coast, or constant load.

When road testing, first warm-up the axle fluid by driving the vehicle at least 5 miles and then accelerate the vehicle to the speed range where the noise is the greatest. Shift out-of-gear and coast through the peak-noise range. If the noise stops or changes greatly check for:

- Insufficient lubricant.
- Incorrect ring gear backlash.
- Gear damage.

Differential side gears and pinions can be checked by turning the vehicle. They usually do not cause noise during straight-ahead driving when the gears are unloaded. The side gears are loaded during vehicle turns. A worn pinion mate shaft can also cause a snapping or a knocking noise.

#### BEARING NOISE

The axle shaft, differential and pinion bearings can all produce noise when worn or damaged. Bearing noise can be either a whining, or a growling sound.

**Pinion bearings** have a constant-pitch noise. This noise changes only with vehicle speed. Pinion bearing noise will be higher pitched because it rotates at a faster rate. Drive the vehicle and load the differential. If bearing noise occurs, the rear pinion bearing is the source of the noise. If the bearing noise is



## REAR AXLE - 198RBI (Continued)

heard during a coast, the front pinion bearing is the source.

**Differential bearings** usually produce a low pitch noise. Differential bearing noise is similar to pinion bearing noise. The pitch of differential bearing noise is also constant and varies only with vehicle speed.

**Axle shaft bearings** produce noise and vibration when worn or damaged. The noise generally changes when the bearings are loaded. Road test the vehicle. Turn the vehicle sharply to the left and to the right. This will load the bearings and change the noise level. Where axle bearing damage is slight, the noise is usually not noticeable at speeds above 30 mph.

**LOW SPEED KNOCK**

Low speed knock is generally caused by:

- Worn U-joint.
- Worn side-gear thrust washers.
- Worn pinion shaft bore.

**VIBRATION**

Vibration at the rear of the vehicle is usually caused by a:

- Damaged drive shaft.
- Missing drive shaft balance weight(s).
- Worn or out-of-balance wheels.
- Loose wheel lug nuts.
- Worn U-joint(s).
- Loose/broken springs.

- Damaged axle shaft bearing(s).
- Loose pinion gear nut.
- Excessive pinion yoke run out.
- Bent axle shaft(s).

Check for loose or damaged front-end components or engine/transmission mounts. These components can contribute to what appears to be a rear end vibration. Do not overlook engine accessories, brackets and drive belts.

All driveline components should be examined before starting any repair.

**DRIVELINE SNAP**

A snap or clunk noise when the vehicle is shifted into gear (or the clutch engaged), can be caused by:

- High engine idle speed.
- Transmission shift operation.
- Loose engine/transmission/transfer case mounts.
- Worn U-joints.
- Loose spring mounts.
- Loose pinion gear nut and yoke.
- Excessive ring gear backlash.
- Excessive side gear to case clearance.

The source of a snap or a clunk noise can be determined with the assistance of a helper. Raise the vehicle on a hoist with the wheels free to rotate. Instruct the helper to shift the transmission into gear. Listen for the noise, a mechanics stethoscope is helpful in isolating the source of a noise.

*DIAGNOSTIC CHART*

Condition	Possible Causes	Correction
Wheel Noise	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Wheel loose.</li> <li>2. Faulty, brinelled wheel bearing.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Tighten loose nuts.</li> <li>2. Replace bearing.</li> </ol>
Axle Shaft Noise	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Misaligned axle tube.</li> <li>2. Bent or sprung axle shaft.</li> <li>3. End-play in pinion bearings.</li> <li>4. Excessive gear backlash between the ring gear and pinion.</li> <li>5. Improper adjustment of pinion gear bearings.</li> <li>6. Loose pinion yoke nut.</li> <li>7. Scuffed gear tooth contact surfaces.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Inspect axle tube alignment. Correct as necessary.</li> <li>2. Inspect and correct as necessary.</li> <li>3. Refer to pinion pre-load information and correct as necessary.</li> <li>4. Check adjustment of the ring gear and pinion backlash. Correct as necessary.</li> <li>5. Adjust the pinion bearings pre-load.</li> <li>6. Tighten the pinion yoke nut.</li> <li>7. Inspect and replace as necessary.</li> </ol>

## REAR AXLE - 198RBI (Continued)

Condition	Possible Causes	Correction
Axle Shaft Broke	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Misaligned axle tube.</li> <li>2. Vehicle overloaded.</li> <li>3. Erratic clutch operation.</li> <li>4. Grabbing clutch.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Replace the broken shaft after correcting tube mis-alignment.</li> <li>2. Replace broken shaft and avoid excessive weight on vehicle.</li> <li>3. Replace broken shaft and avoid or correct erratic clutch operation.</li> <li>4. Replace broken shaft and inspect and repair clutch as necessary.</li> </ol>
Differential Cracked	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Improper adjustment of the differential bearings.</li> <li>2. Excessive ring gear backlash.</li> <li>3. Vehicle overloaded.</li> <li>4. Erratic clutch operation.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Replace case and inspect gears and bearings for further damage. Set differential bearing pre-load properly.</li> <li>2. Replace case and inspect gears and bearings for further damage. Set ring gear backlash properly.</li> <li>3. Replace case and inspect gears and bearings for further damage. Avoid excessive vehicle weight.</li> <li>4. Replace case and inspect gears and bearings for further damage. Avoid erratic use of clutch.</li> </ol>
Differential Gears Scored	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Insufficient lubrication.</li> <li>2. Improper grade of lubricant.</li> <li>3. Excessive spinning of one wheel/tire.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Replace scored gears. Fill differential with the correct fluid type and quantity.</li> <li>2. Replace scored gears. Fill differential with the correct fluid type and quantity.</li> <li>3. Replace scored gears. Inspect all gears, pinion bores, and shaft for damage. Service as necessary.</li> </ol>
Loss Of Lubricant	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Lubricant level too high.</li> <li>2. Worn axle shaft seals.</li> <li>3. Cracked differential housing.</li> <li>4. Worn pinion seal.</li> <li>5. Worn/scored yoke.</li> <li>6. Axle cover not properly sealed.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Drain lubricant to the correct level.</li> <li>2. Replace seals.</li> <li>3. Repair as necessary.</li> <li>4. Replace seal.</li> <li>5. Replace yoke and seal.</li> <li>6. Remove, clean, and re-seal cover.</li> </ol>
Axle Overheating	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Lubricant level low.</li> <li>2. Improper grade of lubricant.</li> <li>3. Bearing pre-loads too high.</li> <li>4. Insufficient ring gear backlash.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Fill differential to correct level.</li> <li>2. Fill differential with the correct fluid type and quantity.</li> <li>3. Re-adjust bearing pre-loads.</li> <li>4. Re-adjust ring gear backlash.</li> </ol>

## REAR AXLE - 198RBI (Continued)

Condition	Possible Causes	Correction
Gear Teeth Broke	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Overloading.</li> <li>2. Erratic clutch operation.</li> <li>3. Ice-spotted pavement.</li> <li>4. Improper adjustments.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Replace gears. Examine other gears and bearings for possible damage.</li> <li>2. Replace gears and examine the remaining parts for damage. Avoid erratic clutch operation.</li> <li>3. Replace gears and examine remaining parts for damage.</li> <li>4. Replace gears and examine remaining parts for damage. Ensure ring gear backlash is correct.</li> </ol>
Axle Noise	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Insufficient lubricant.</li> <li>2. Improper ring gear and pinion adjustment.</li> <li>3. Unmatched ring gear and pinion.</li> <li>4. Worn teeth on ring gear and/or pinion.</li> <li>5. Loose pinion bearings.</li> <li>6. Loose differential bearings.</li> <li>7. Mis-aligned or sprung ring gear.</li> <li>8. Loose differential bearing cap bolts.</li> <li>9. Housing not machined properly.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Fill differential with the correct fluid type and quantity.</li> <li>2. Check ring gear and pinion contact pattern.</li> <li>3. Replace gears with a matched ring gear and pinion.</li> <li>4. Replace ring gear and pinion.</li> <li>5. Adjust pinion bearing pre-load.</li> <li>6. Adjust differential bearing pre-load.</li> <li>7. Measure ring gear run-out. Replace components as necessary.</li> <li>8. Inspect differential components and replace as necessary. Ensure that the bearing caps are torqued to the proper specification.</li> <li>9. Replace housing.</li> </ol>

**REMOVAL**

- (1) Raise and support the vehicle.
- (2) Position a lifting device under the axle and secure axle.
- (3) Remove the wheels and tires.
- (4) Remove brake calipers and rotors.
- (5) Disconnect parking brake cables from brackets and lever.
- (6) Remove wheel speed sensors.
- (7) Remove brake hose at the axle junction block. Do not disconnect the brake hydraulic lines at the calipers.
- (8) Disconnect the vent hose from the axle shaft tube.
- (9) Mark propeller shaft and yokes for installation reference.
- (10) Remove propeller shaft.
- (11) Disconnect stabilizer bar links.

- (12) Remove upper suspension arm rear axle ball joint nut.

- (13) Separate rear axle ball joint from the upper suspension arm with Remover 8278 (Fig. 1).

- (14) Disconnect shock absorbers from axle.

- (15) Disconnect track bar.

- (16) Disconnect lower suspension arms from the axle brackets.

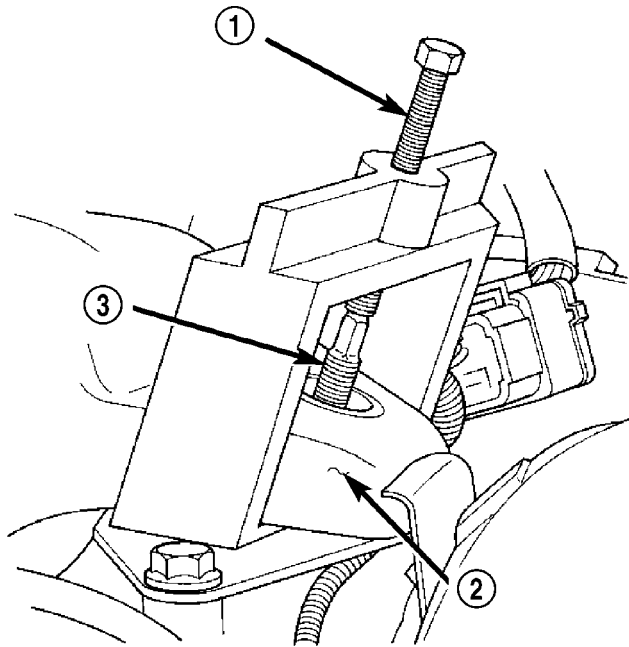
- (17) Separate the axle from the vehicle.

**INSTALLATION**

**CAUTION:** The weight of the vehicle must be supported by the springs before suspension arms and track bar fasteners are tightened. If springs are not at their normal ride position, vehicle ride height and handling could be affected.

- (1) Raise axle with lift and align coil springs.

## REAR AXLE - 198RBI (Continued)

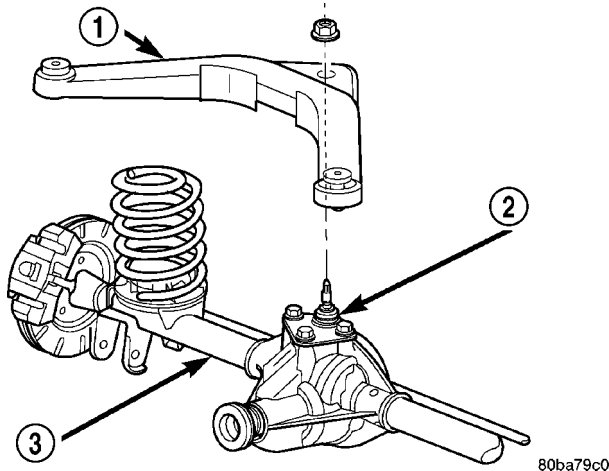
**Fig. 1 BALL JOINT REMOVER**

- 1 - REMOVER  
2 - UPPER SUSPENSION ARM  
3 - BALL JOINT STUD

(2) Install lower suspension arms in axle brackets. Install nuts and bolts, do not tighten bolts at this time.

(3) Install upper suspension arm on rear axle ball joint.

(4) Install rear axle ball joint nut and tighten to 122 N·m (90 ft.lbs.) (Fig. 2).

**Fig. 2 REAR BALL JOINT NUT**

- 1 - UPPER SUSPENSION ARM  
2 - REAR AXLE BALL JOINT  
3 - REAR AXLE

(5) Install track bar and attachment bolts, do not tighten bolts at this time.

(6) Install shock absorbers and tighten nuts to 60 N·m (44 ft. lbs.).

(7) Install stabilizer bar links and tighten nuts to 36 N·m (27 ft. lbs.).

(8) Install wheel speed sensors.

(9) Connect parking brake cable to brackets and lever.

(10) Install brake rotors and calipers.

(11) Install the brake hose to the axle junction block.

(12) Install axle vent hose.

(13) Align propeller shaft and pinion yoke reference marks. Install U-joint straps and nuts tighten to 19 N·m (14 ft. lbs.).

(14) Install the wheels and tires.

(15) Add gear lubricant, if necessary.

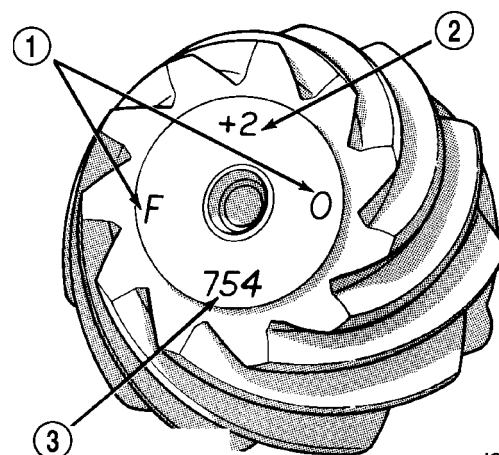
(16) Remove support and lower the vehicle.

(17) Tighten lower suspension arm bolts to 177 N·m (130 ft. lbs.).

(18) Tighten track bar bolts to 100 N·m (74 ft. lbs.).

**ADJUSTMENTS**

Ring and pinion gears are supplied as matched sets only. The identifying numbers for the ring and pinion gear are etched into the face of each gear (Fig. 3). A plus (+) number, minus (−) number or zero (0) is etched into the face of the pinion gear. This number is the amount (in thousandths of an inch) the depth varies from the standard depth setting of a pinion etched with a (0). The standard depth provides the best gear tooth contact pattern.

**Fig. 3 PINION GEAR ID NUMBERS**

- 1 - PRODUCTION NUMBERS  
2 - PINION GEAR DEPTH VARIANCE  
3 - GEAR MATCHING NUMBER

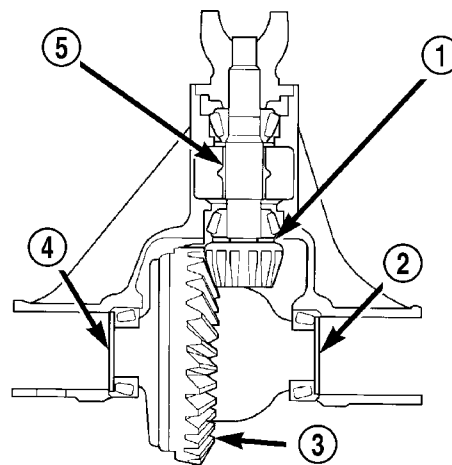
## REAR AXLE - 198RBI (Continued)

Compensation for pinion depth variance is achieved with a select shim. The shims are placed between the rear pinion bearing and the pinion gear head (Fig. 4).

If a new gear set is being installed, note the depth variance etched into both the original and replacement pinion. Add or subtract this number from the thickness of the original depth shim/oil slinger to compensate for the difference in the depth variances. Refer to the Pinion Gear Depth Variance chart.

Note where Old and New Pinion Marking columns intersect. Intersecting figure represents plus or minus the amount needed.

Note the etched number on the face of the pinion gear head (-1, -2, 0, +1, +2, etc.). The numbers represent thousands of an inch deviation from the standard. If the number is negative, add that value to the required thickness of the depth shims. If the number is positive, subtract that value from the thickness of the depth shim.



80a5037a

**Fig. 4 ADJUSTMENT SHIM LOCATIONS**

- 1 - PINION GEAR DEPTH SHIM
- 2 - DIFFERENTIAL BEARING SHIM
- 3 - RING GEAR
- 4 - DIFFERENTIAL BEARING SHIM
- 5 - COLLAPSIBLE SPACER

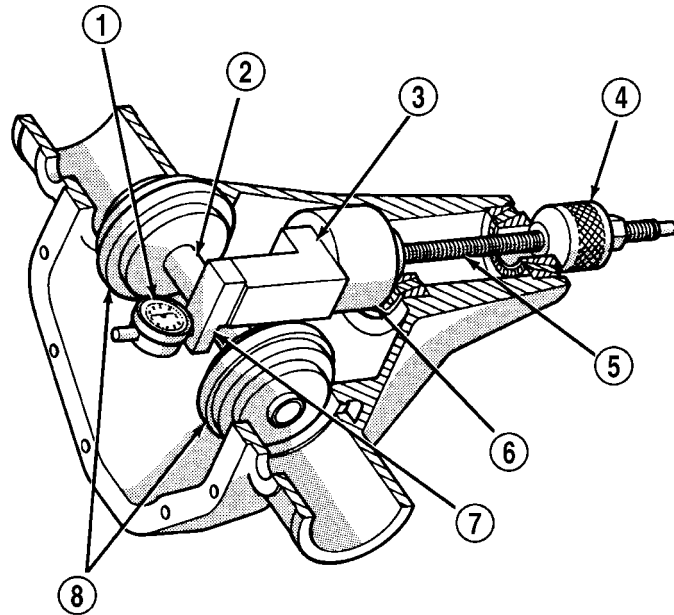
*PINION GEAR DEPTH VARIANCE*

Original Pinion Gear Depth Variance	Replacement Pinion Gear Depth Variance								
	-4	-3	-2	-1	0	+1	+2	+3	+4
<b>+4</b>	+0.008	+0.007	+0.006	+0.005	+0.004	+0.003	+0.002	+0.001	0
<b>+3</b>	+0.007	+0.006	+0.005	+0.004	+0.003	+0.002	+0.001	0	-0.001
<b>+2</b>	+0.006	+0.005	+0.004	+0.003	+0.002	+0.001	0	-0.001	-0.002
<b>+1</b>	+0.005	+0.004	+0.003	+0.002	+0.001	0	-0.001	-0.002	-0.003
<b>0</b>	+0.004	+0.003	+0.002	+0.001	0	-0.001	-0.002	-0.003	-0.004
<b>-1</b>	+0.003	+0.002	+0.001	0	-0.001	-0.002	-0.003	-0.004	-0.005
<b>-2</b>	+0.002	+0.001	0	-0.001	-0.002	-0.003	-0.004	-0.005	-0.006
<b>-3</b>	+0.001	0	-0.001	-0.002	-0.003	-0.004	-0.005	-0.006	-0.007
<b>-4</b>	0	-0.001	-0.002	-0.003	-0.004	-0.005	-0.006	-0.007	-0.008

## REAR AXLE - 198RBI (Continued)

### PINION DEPTH MEASUREMENT

Measurements are taken with pinion bearing cups and pinion bearings installed in the housing. Take measurements with Pinion Gauge Set and Dial Indicator C-3339 (Fig. 5).



J9403-45

**Fig. 5 PINION DEPTH GAUGE TOOLS**

- 1 - DIAL INDICATOR
- 2 - ARBOR
- 3 - PINION HEIGHT BLOCK
- 4 - CONE
- 5 - SCREW
- 6 - PINION BLOCK
- 7 - SCOOTER BLOCK
- 8 - ARBOR DISC

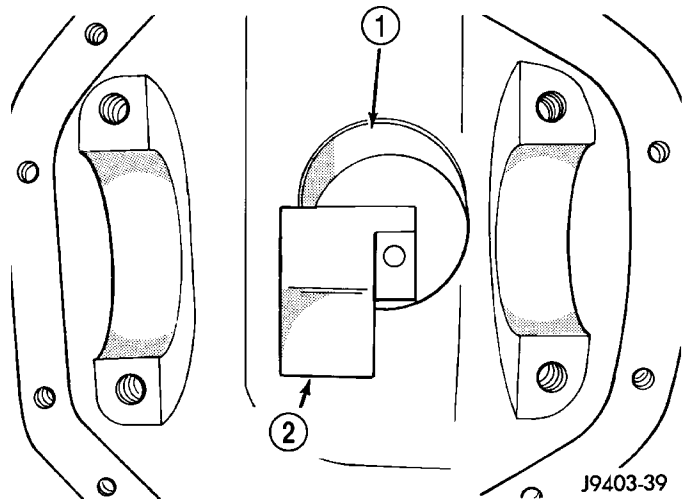
(1) Assemble Pinion Height Block 6739, Pinion Block 6735 and rear pinion bearing onto Screw 6741.

(2) Insert assembled height gauge components, rear bearing and screw into the housing through pinion bearing cups (Fig. 6).

(3) Install front pinion bearing and Cone-nut 6740 hand tight (Fig. 5).

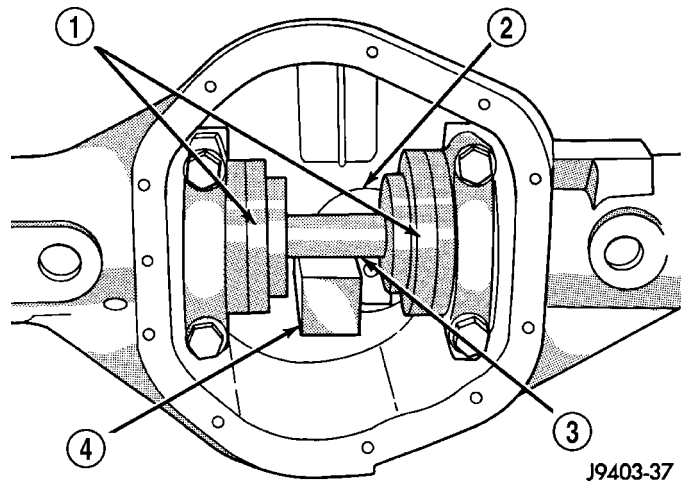
(4) Place Arbor Disc 6732 on Arbor D-115-3 in position in the housing side bearing cradles (Fig. 7). Install differential bearing caps on Arbor Discs and tighten cap bolts to 41 N·m (30 ft. lbs.).

**NOTE:** Arbor Discs 6732 has different step diameters to fit other axles. Choose proper step for axle being serviced.



**Fig. 6 PINION HEIGHT BLOCK**

- 1 - PINION BLOCK
- 2 - PINION HEIGHT BLOCK



**Fig. 7 GAUGE TOOLS IN HOUSING**

- 1 - ARBOR DISC
- 2 - PINION BLOCK
- 3 - ARBOR
- 4 - PINION HEIGHT BLOCK

(5) Assemble Dial Indicator C-3339 into Scooter Block D-115-2 and secure set screw.

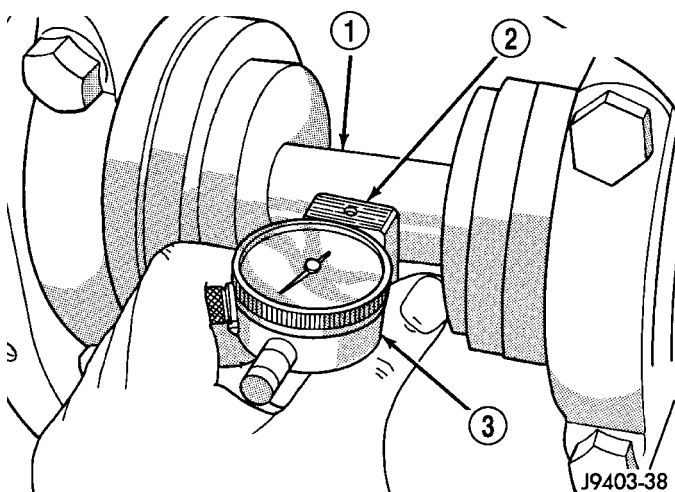
(6) Place Scooter Block/Dial Indicator in position in the housing so dial probe and scooter block are flush against the pinion height block (Fig. 5). Hold scooter block in place and zero the dial indicator.



## REAR AXLE - 198RBI (Continued)

(7) Slide the dial indicator probe across the gap between the pinion height block and the arbor bar with the scooter block against the pinion height block (Fig. 8). Continue moving the dial indicator probe to the crest of the arbor bar and record the highest reading. If the dial indicator can not achieve the zero reading, the rear bearing cup or the pinion depth gauge set is not installed correctly.

(8) Select a shim equal to the dial indicator reading plus the pinion depth variance number etched in the face of the pinion (Fig. 3). For example, if the depth variance is  $-2$ , add  $+0.002$  in. to the dial indicator reading.



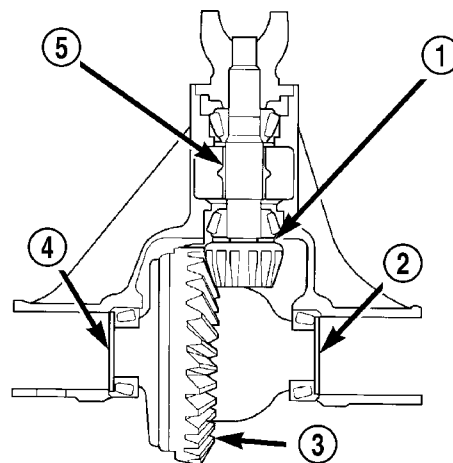
**Fig. 8 PINION GEAR DEPTH MEASUREMENT**

- 1 - ARBOR
- 2 - SCOOTER BLOCK
- 3 - DIAL INDICATOR

## DIFFERENTIAL

Differential side bearing preload and gear backlash is achieved by selective shims positioned behind the differential bearing cups. The proper shim thickness can be determined using slip-fit Dummy Bearings D-348 in place of the differential side bearings and a Dial Indicator C-3339. Before proceeding with the differential bearing preload and gear backlash measurements, measure the pinion gear depth and prepare the pinion for installation. Establishing proper pinion gear depth is essential to establishing gear backlash and tooth contact patterns. After the overall shim thickness to take up differential side play is

measured, the pinion is installed, and the gear backlash shim thickness is measured. The overall shim thickness is the total of the dial indicator reading and the preload specification added together. The gear backlash measurement determines the thickness of the shim used on the ring gear side of the differential case. Subtract the gear backlash shim thickness from the total overall shim thickness and select that amount for the pinion gear side of the differential (Fig. 9). Differential shim measurements are performed with the spreader W-129-B removed.



80a5037a

**Fig. 9 ADJUSTMENT SHIM LOCATIONS**

- 1 - PINION GEAR DEPTH SHIM
- 2 - DIFFERENTIAL BEARING SHIM
- 3 - RING GEAR
- 4 - DIFFERENTIAL BEARING SHIM
- 5 - COLLAPSIBLE SPACER

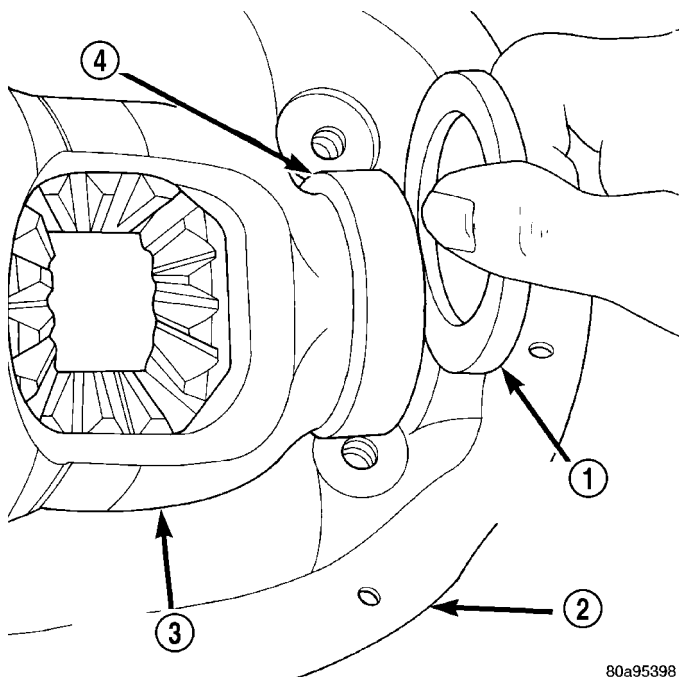
## PRELOAD SHIM SELECTION

**NOTE:** It is difficult to salvage the differential side bearings during the removal procedure. Install replacement bearings if necessary.

- (1) Remove differential side bearings from differential case.
- (2) Install ring gear on differential case and tighten bolts to specification.
- (3) Install Dummy Bearings D-348 on differential case.
- (4) Install differential case in the housing.

## REAR AXLE - 198RBI (Continued)

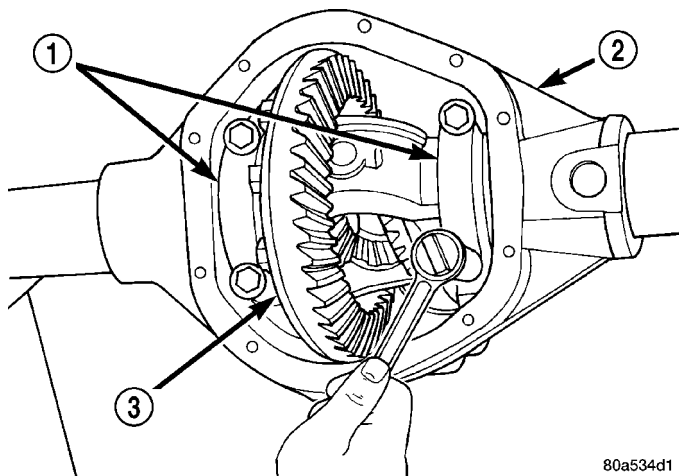
(5) Record the thickness of Dummy Shims 8107. Insert the shims between the dummy bearings and the differential housing (Fig. 10).



**Fig. 10 DUMMY SHIM LOCATION**

- 1 - DUMMY SHIM
- 2 - DIFFERENTIAL HOUSING
- 3 - DIFFERENTIAL CASE
- 4 - DUMMY BEARINGS

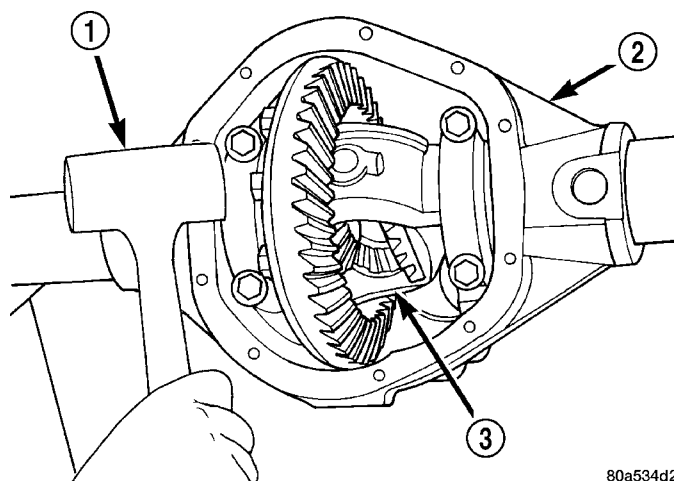
(6) Install the marked bearing caps in their correct positions. Install and snug the bolts (Fig. 11).



**Fig. 11 BEARING CAP BOLTS**

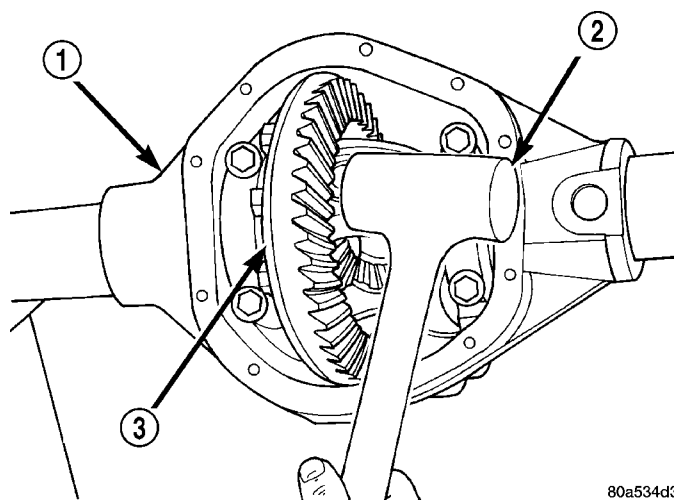
- 1 - BEARING CAP
- 2 - DIFFERENTIAL HOUSING
- 3 - DIFFERENTIAL CASE

(7) Using a dead-blow type hammer seat the differential dummy bearings to each side of the housing (Fig. 12) and (Fig. 13).



**Fig. 12 SEAT DUMMY BEARING PINION SIDE**

- 1 - HAMMER
- 2 - DIFFERENTIAL HOUSING
- 3 - DIFFERENTIAL CASE



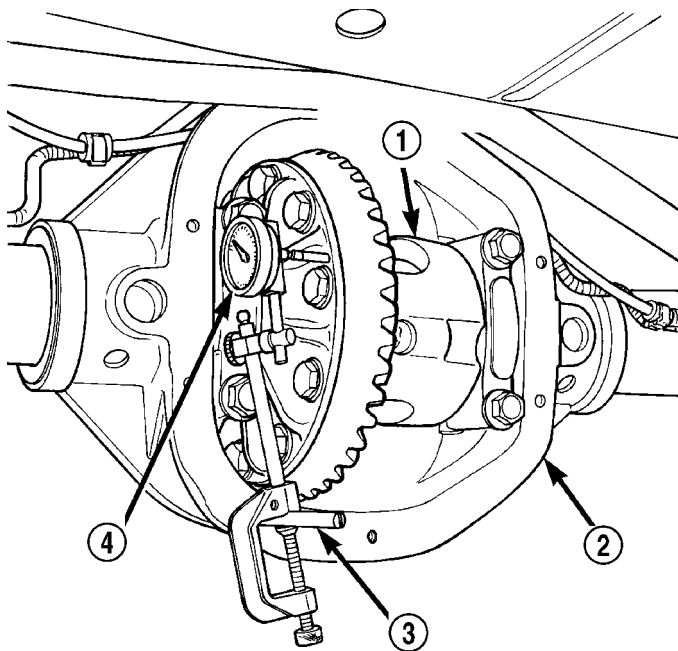
**Fig. 13 SEAT DUMMY BEARING RING GEAR SIDE**

- 1 - DIFFERENTIAL HOUSING
- 2 - HAMMER
- 3 - DIFFERENTIAL CASE

## REAR AXLE - 198RBI (Continued)

(8) Thread Pilot Stud C-3288-B into rear cover bolt hole below ring gear (Fig. 14).

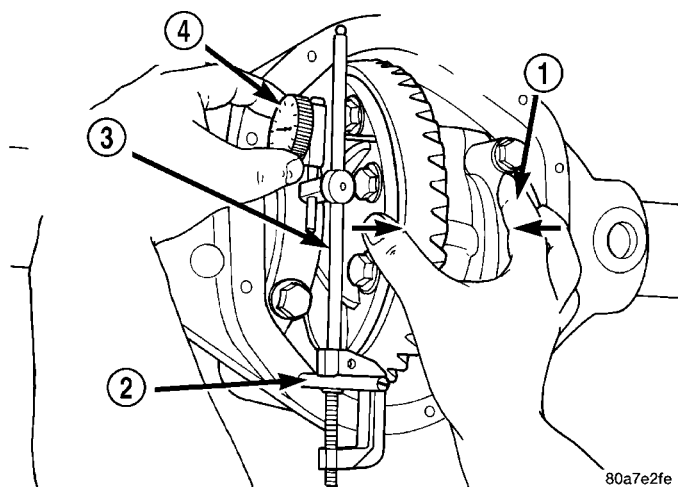
(9) Attach a Dial Indicator C-3339 to pilot stud. Position the dial indicator plunger on a flat surface between the ring gear bolt heads (Fig. 14).



**Fig. 14 DIAL INDICATOR LOCATION**

- 1 - DIFFERENTIAL CASE
- 2 - DIFFERENTIAL HOUSING
- 3 - PILOT STUD
- 4 - DIAL INDICATOR

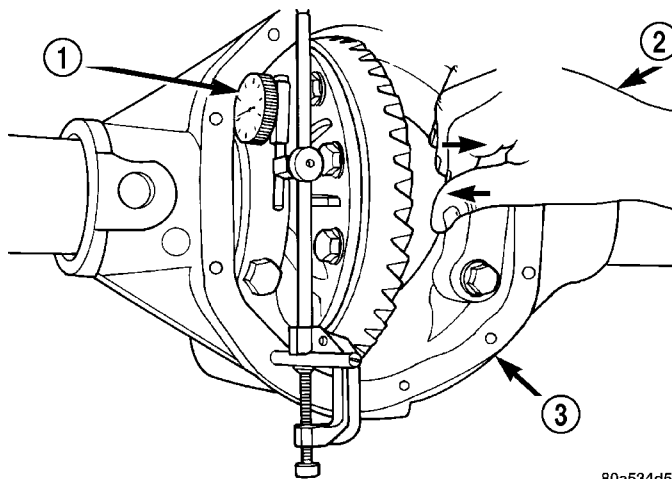
(10) Push and hold differential case to pinion gear side of the housing and zero dial indicator (Fig. 15).



**Fig. 15 ZERO DIAL INDICATOR**

- 1 - HOLD DIFFERENTIAL CASE TO PINION GEAR SIDE
- 2 - PILOT STUD
- 3 - DIAL INDICATOR EXTENSION
- 4 - DIAL INDICATOR

(11) Push and hold differential case to ring gear side of the housing and record dial indicator reading (Fig. 16).



**Fig. 16 RECORD DIAL INDICATOR READING**

- 1 - DIAL INDICATOR
- 2 - HOLD DIFFERENTIAL CASE TO RING GEAR SIDE
- 3 - DIFFERENTIAL HOUSING

(12) Add 0.152 mm (0.006 in.) to the zero end play total. This new total represents the thickness of shims to compress, or preload the new bearings when the differential is installed.

(13) Rotate dial indicator out of the way on the pilot stud.

(14) Remove differential case and dummy bearings from the housing.

(15) Install the pinion gear in axle housing. Install the pinion yoke and establish the correct pinion rotating torque.

(16) Install differential case and Dummy Bearings D-348 in the housing.

(17) Install a single dummy shim in the ring gear side. Install bearing caps and tighten bolts snug.

(18) Seat ring gear side dummy bearing (Fig. 13).

(19) Position the dial indicator plunger on a flat surface between the ring gear bolt heads. (Fig. 14).

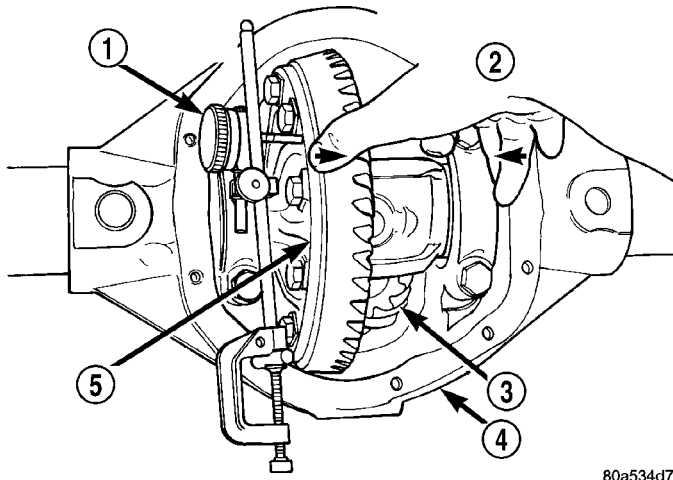
(20) Push and hold differential case toward pinion gear and zero dial indicator (Fig. 17).

(21) Push and hold differential case to ring gear side of the housing and record dial indicator reading (Fig. 18). Add dummy shim thickness to this reading. This will be the total shim thickness to achieve zero backlash.

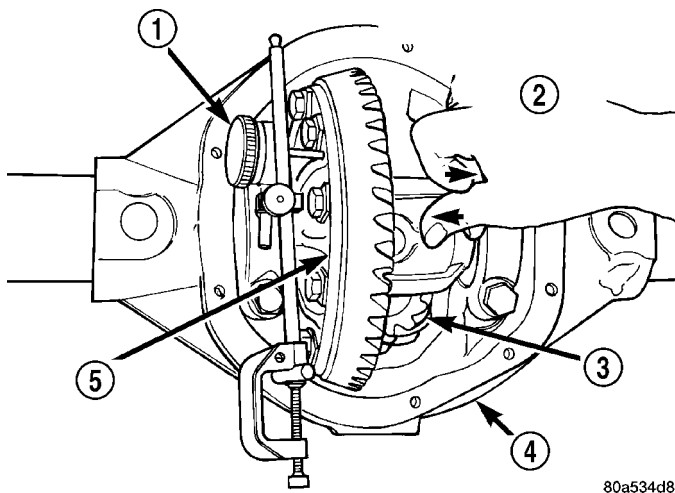
(22) Subtract 0.076 mm (0.003 in.) from the dial indicator reading to compensate for backlash between ring and pinion gears. This total is the thickness shim required to achieve proper backlash.

(23) Subtract the backlash shim thickness from the total preload shim thickness. The remainder is the shim thickness required on the pinion side of the housing.

## REAR AXLE - 198RBI (Continued)

**Fig. 17 ZERO DIAL INDICATOR**

- 1 - DIAL INDICATOR
- 2 - HOLD DIFFERENTIAL CASE TO PINION GEAR SIDE
- 3 - PINION GEAR
- 4 - DIFFERENTIAL HOUSING
- 5 - DIFFERENTIAL CASE

**Fig. 18 RECORD DIAL INDICATOR READING**

- 1 - DIAL INDICATOR
- 2 - HOLD DIFFERENTIAL CASE TO RING GEAR SIDE
- 3 - PINION GEAR
- 4 - DIFFERENTIAL HOUSING
- 5 - DIFFERENTIAL CASE

(24) Rotate dial indicator out of the way on pilot stud.

(25) Remove differential case and dummy bearings from the housing.

(26) Install side bearings and cups on differential case.

(27) Install spreader W-129-B utilizing some items from Adapter Set 6987, on the housing and spread axle opening enough to receive differential case.

**CAUTION:** Never spread over 0.38 mm (0.015 in.). If housing is over-spread, it could be distorted or damaged.

(28) Place the bearing preload shims in the housing, against the axle tubes.

(29) Install differential case into the housing.

(30) Remove spreader from the housing.

(31) Install differential bearing caps in their original locations.

(32) Install bearing cap bolts and tighten to 77 N·m (57 ft. lbs.).

(33) Rotate the differential case several times to seat the side bearings.

(34) Position the indicator plunger against a ring gear tooth (Fig. 19).

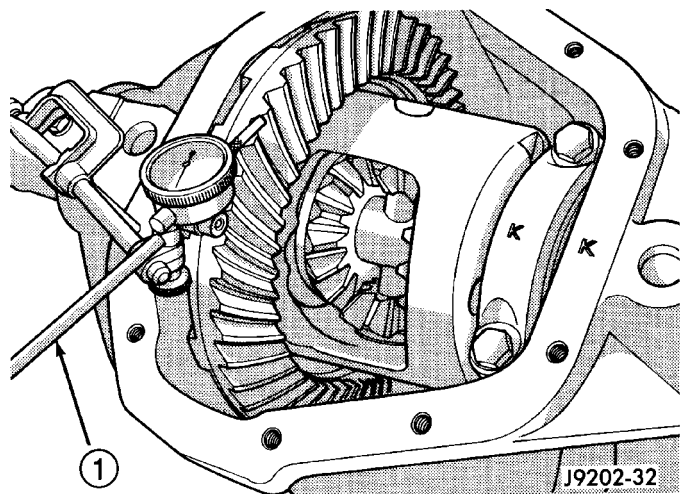
(35) Push and hold ring gear upward while not allowing the pinion gear to rotate.

(36) Zero dial indicator face to pointer.

(37) Push and hold ring gear downward while not allowing the pinion gear to rotate. Dial indicator reading should be between 0.12-0.20 mm (0.005-0.008 in.). If backlash is not within specifications transfer the necessary amount of shim thickness from one side of the axle housing to the other (Fig. 20).

(38) Verify differential case and ring gear runout by measuring ring to pinion gear backlash at eight locations around the ring gear. Readings should not vary more than 0.05 mm (0.002 in.). If readings vary more than specified, the ring gear or the differential case is defective.

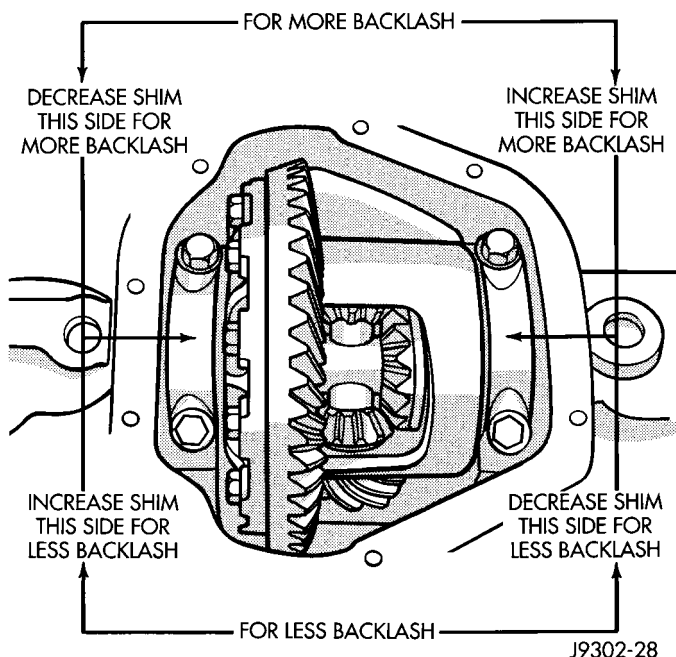
After the proper backlash is achieved, perform Gear Contact Pattern Analysis procedure.

**Fig. 19 RING GEAR BACKLASH MEASUREMENT**

- 1 - DIAL INDICATOR



## REAR AXLE - 198RBI (Continued)

**Fig. 20 BACKLASH SHIM LOCATION****GEAR CONTACT PATTERN**

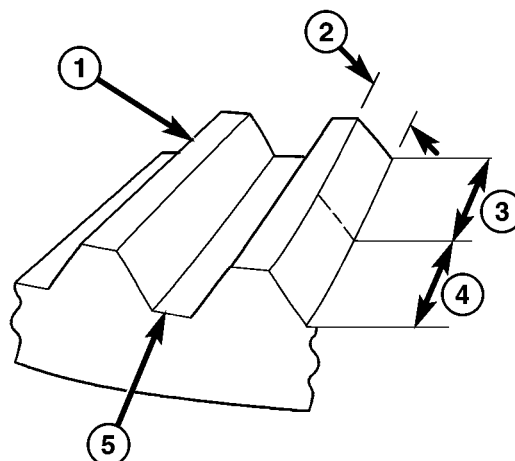
The ring gear and pinion teeth contact patterns will show if the pinion depth is correct in the housing. It will also show if the ring gear backlash has been adjusted correctly. The backlash can be adjusted within specifications to achieve desired tooth contact patterns.

The **TOP LAND** of the gear tooth is the top surface of the tooth. The **PROFILE** of the gear tooth is the depth of the tooth. The **TOE** of the gear is the portion of the tooth surface at the end towards the center. The **HEEL** of the gear is the portion of the tooth at the outer-end. The **ROOT** of the gear tooth is the lowest portion of the tooth (Fig. 21).

**NOTE:** If the **PROFILE** across the tooth is the same it is a 3 Axis cut gear. If the **PROFILE** across the tooth is tapered it is a 2 Axis cut gear.

(1) Apply a thin coat of hydrated ferric oxide or equivalent to the drive and coast side of the ring gear teeth.

(2) Wrap, twist and hold a shop towel around the pinion yoke to increase the turning resistance of the



810630a0

**Fig. 21 GEAR DESCRIPTION**

- 1 - TOP LAND
- 2 - PROFILE
- 3 - TOE
- 4 - HEEL
- 5 - ROOT

pinion. This will provide a more distinct contact pattern.

(3) With a boxed end wrench on a ring gear bolt, rotate the differential case one complete revolution in both directions while a load is being applied from shop towel.











The areas on the ring gear teeth with the greatest degree of contact against the pinion teeth will squeeze the compound to the areas with the least amount of contact. Note and compare patterns on the ring gear teeth to Gear Tooth Contact Patterns chart (Fig. 22) and adjust pinion depth and gear backlash as necessary.

**DIFFERENTIAL BEARING PRELOAD CHECK**

The final check on the differential assembly before installing the axles is torque to rotate pinion and differential combined. This will verify the correct differential bearing preload.

Torque to rotate the differential and pinion should be the torque to rotate the pinion plus 0.15 N·m (6 in. lbs.).

## REAR AXLE - 198RBI (Continued)

DRIVE SIDE HEEL TOE	CONDITION	COAST SIDE TOE HEEL	CONDITION	ACTION REQUIRED
	<b>Desirable pattern.</b> The drive pattern should be centered on the tooth. There should be some clearance between the pattern and the top of the tooth.		<b>Desirable pattern.</b> The coast pattern should be centered on the tooth, but may be slightly toward the toe. There should be some clearance between the pattern and the top of the tooth.	None
	<b>Top toe contact</b>		<b>Top heel contact</b>	Backlash correct. Thicker pinion position shim required.
	<b>Root heel contact</b>		<b>Root toe contact</b>	Backlash correct. Thinner pinion position shim required.
	<b>Top heel contact</b>		<b>Top toe contact</b>	Pinion position shim correct. Decrease backlash.
	<b>Root toe contact</b>		<b>Root heel contact</b>	Pinion position shim correct. Increase backlash.

8106361d

**Fig. 22 PATTERN INTERPRETATION (3 AXIS GEAR CUT)**

## SPECIFICATIONS

## AXLE SPECIFICATIONS

DESCRIPTION	SPECIFICATION
Axle Ratio	3.55, 3.73
Differential Bearing Preload	0.15 mm (0.006 in.)
Ring Gear Diameter	198 mm (7.795 in.)
Ring Gear Backlash	0.12-0.20 mm (0.005-0.008 in.)
Pinion Bearing Preload - Original Bearings	1-2 N·m (10-20 in. lbs.)
Pinion Bearing Preload - New Bearings	1.7-3.9 N·m (15-35 in. lbs.)

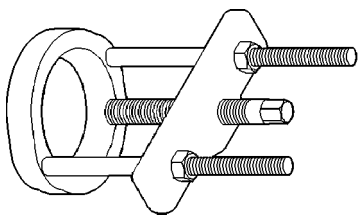
## TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS

DESCRIPTION	N·m	Ft. Lbs.	In. Lbs.
Differential Cover Bolts	41	30	-
Bearing Cap Bolts	77	57	-
Ring Gear Bolts	129-142	95-105	-
Pinion Nut Min / Max	271 - 474	200 - 350	-
Pinion Mate Shaft Screw	16.25	12	-
Axle Bearing Retainer Plate Nuts	61	45	-

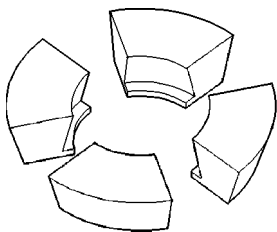


REAR AXLE - 198RBI (Continued)

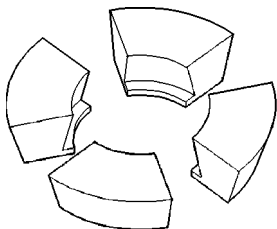
SPECIAL TOOLS



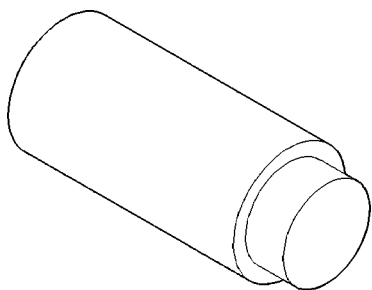
**PULLER C-293-PA**



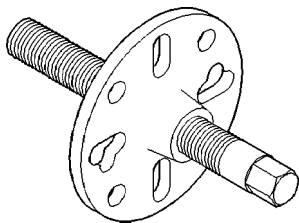
**ADAPTER C-293-39**



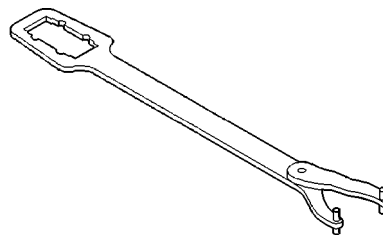
**ADAPTER C-293-40**



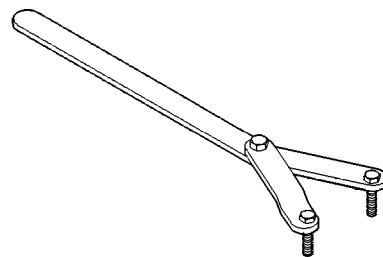
**PLUG SP-3289**



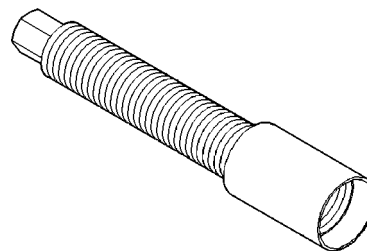
**PULLER C-452**



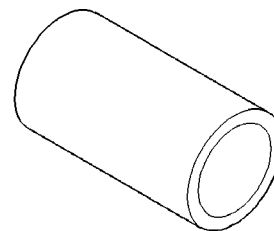
**WRENCH C-3281**



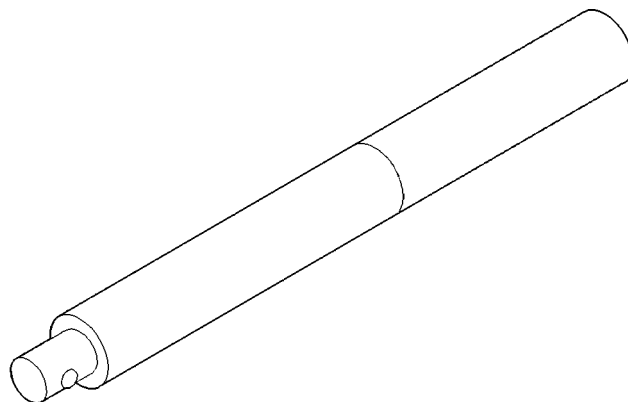
**SPANNER WRENCH 6958**



**INSTALLER 8112**

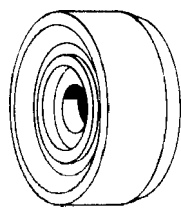


**CUP 8109**

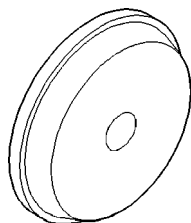


**HANDLE C-4171**

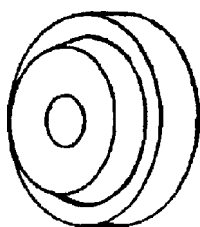
REAR AXLE - 198RBI (Continued)



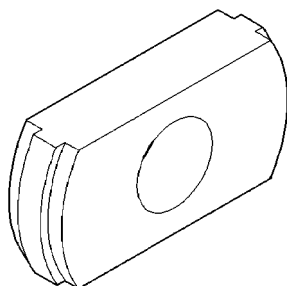
**INSTALLER C-3716-A**



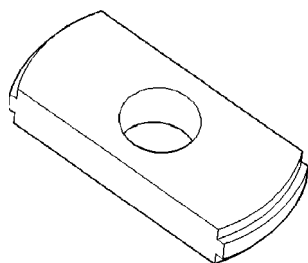
**INSTALLER D-130**



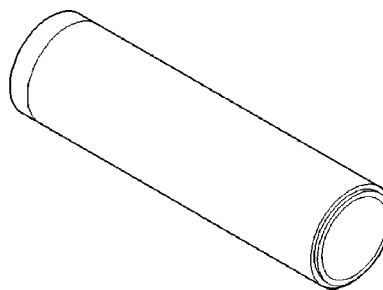
**INSTALLER D-146**



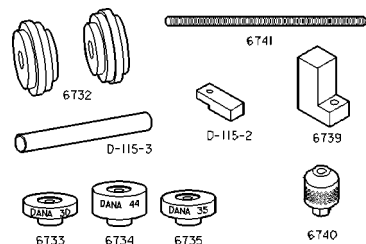
**REMOVER C-4345**



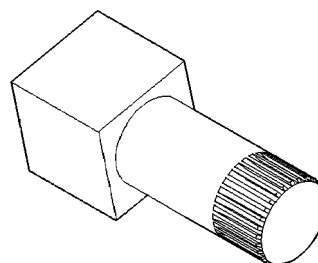
**REMOVER D-149**



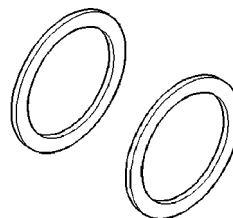
**INSTALLER W-262**



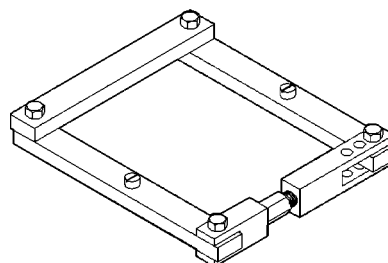
**PINION DEPTH 6774**



**FIXTURE 6965**

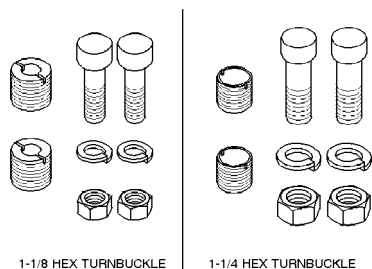
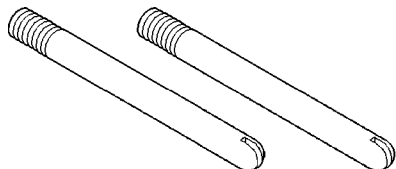
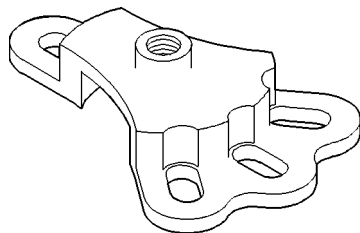
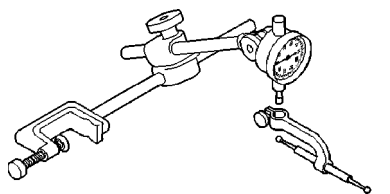
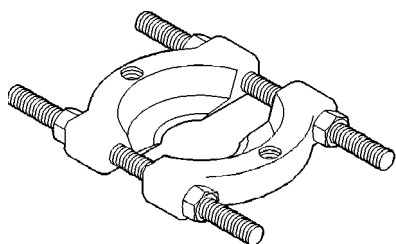
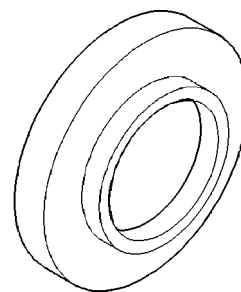


**SHIMS DUMMY 8107**



**SPREADER W-129-B**

## REAR AXLE - 198RBI (Continued)

**ADAPTER KIT 6987****PILOT STUDS C-3288-B****PULLER 6790****DIAL INDICATOR C-3339****SPLITTER BEARING 1130****INSTALLER 7913-A****AXLE SHAFTS****REMOVAL**

- (1) Place transmission in neutral.
- (2) Raise and support vehicle.
- (3) Remove wheel and tire assembly.
- (4) Remove brake caliper and rotor.
- (5) Remove nuts holding axle retainer plate to axle tube from the rear of the axle flange.
- (6) Pull axle shaft from the axle with Slide Hammer 7420 and Adapter 6790. Mount the adapter to the axle with lug nuts.

**NOTE:** The axle bearing race is normally loose in the axle tube.

**INSTALLATION**

- (1) Install axle into the axle tube with the flat area of the retainer plate upward.
- (2) Insert retaining plate studs into the brake backing plate and axle tube flange.
- (3) Install retainer nuts and tighten nuts to 61 N·m (45 ft. lbs.).
- (4) Install the brake rotor and caliper.
- (5) Install wheel and tire.
- (6) Check and fill the differential with gear lubricant.
- (7) Lower vehicle.

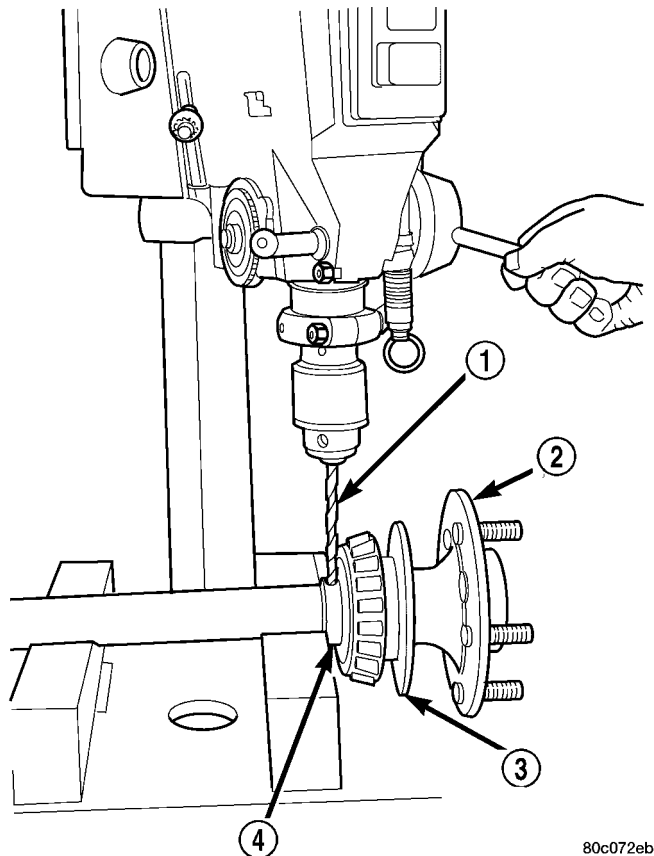
## AXLE BEARINGS/SEALS

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove axle shaft from vehicle.

**NOTE:** The axle bearing race is normally loose in the axle tube.

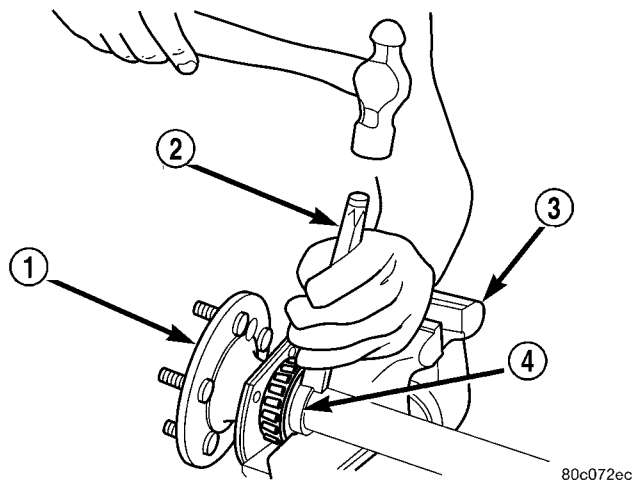
- (2) Drill a shallow hole into soft steel axle bearing retaining ring with a 3/8 in. drill bit (Fig. 23). Use a drill depth stop to avoid marking the axle.



**Fig. 23 DRILL RETAINING RING**

- 1 - DRILL BIT  
2 - AXLE  
3 - RETAINING PLATE  
4 - RETAINING RING

- (3) With a cold chisel cut the retaining ring across drilled hole. (Fig. 24)

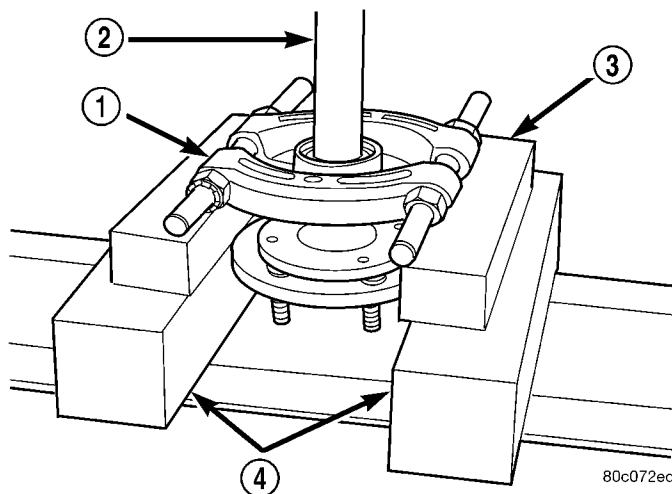


**Fig. 24 RETAINING RING**

- 1 - AXLE  
2 - COLD CHISEL  
3 - VISE  
4 - RETAINING RING

- (4) Slide retaining ring from axle shaft.

- (5) Remove axle bearing from the shaft with, a press and Splitter 1130 placed between the seal and bearing (Fig. 25).



**Fig. 25 AXLE BEARING AND SEAL**

- 1 - SPLITTER  
2 - AXLE  
3 - BLOCKS  
4 - PRESS PLATES

- (6) Remove seal from axle.

- (7) Remove retaining plate from axle shaft.

## AXLE BEARINGS/SEALS (Continued)

## INSTALLATION

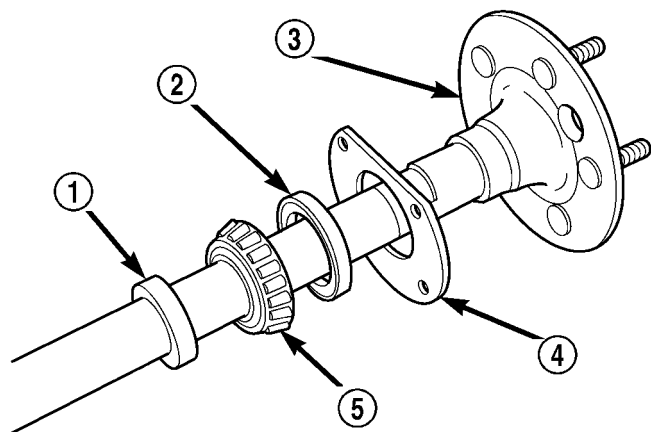
(1) Verify axle shaft retaining plate is flat with a straight edge.

**NOTE:** If the plate is warped or the studs are loose in the plate replace the retaining plate.

(2) Install retaining plate on the axle shaft (Fig. 26).

(3) Apply a coat of multi-purpose grease on sealing surface of axle seal.

(4) Install seal on the axle shaft with cavity away from retaining plate (Fig. 26).



**Fig. 26 AXLE BEARING AND SEAL COMPONENTS**

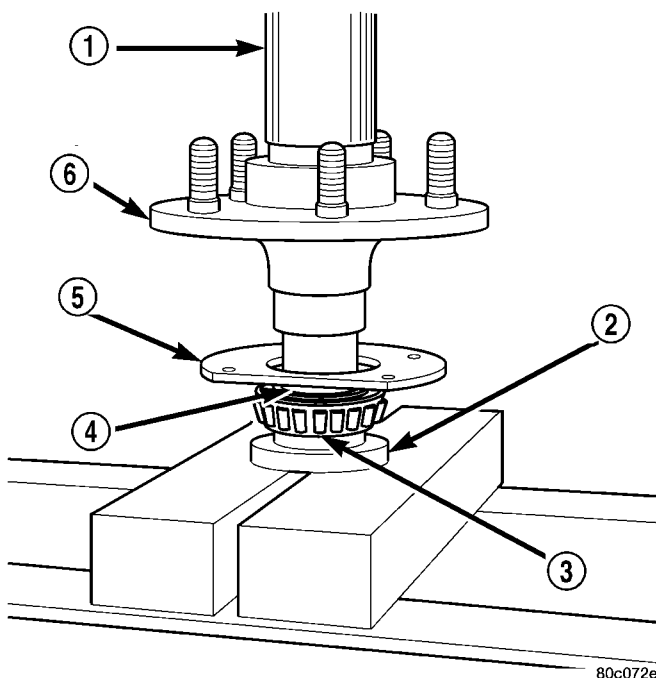
- 1 - RETAINING RING
- 2 - SEAL
- 3 - AXLE
- 4 - RETAINING PLATE
- 5 - AXLE BEARING

(5) Lubricate bearing with Mopar Wheel Bearing Grease or equivalent. Wipe excess grease from the bearing.

(6) Install bearing on the axle shaft with Installer 7913 and a press (Fig. 27).

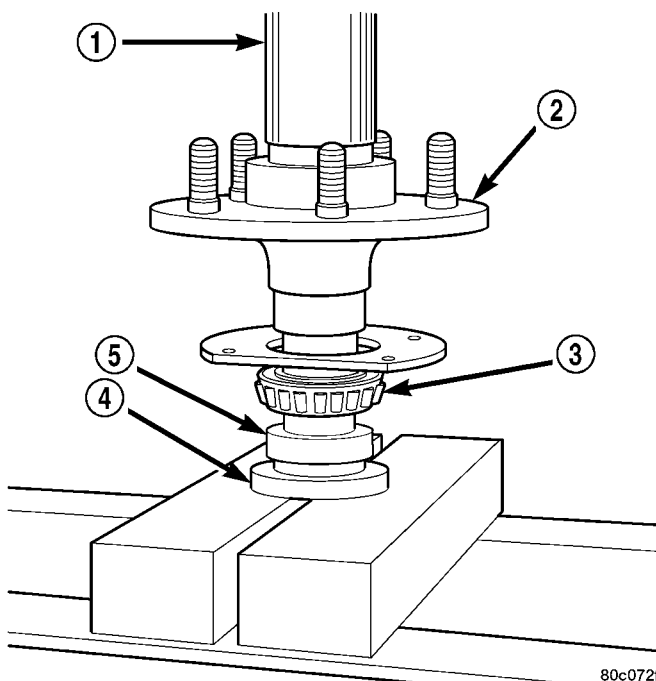
(7) Press metal retaining ring onto axle shaft with Installer 7913 and a press (Fig. 28).

(8) Install axle in vehicle.



**Fig. 27 PRESS BEARING ON AXLE**

- 1 - PRESS RAM
- 2 - INSTALLER
- 3 - AXLE BEARING
- 4 - SEAL
- 5 - RETAINING PLATE
- 6 - AXLE



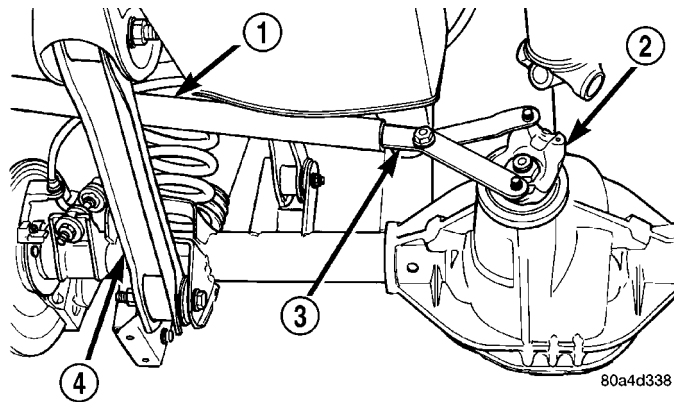
**Fig. 28 BEARING RETAINING RING**

- 1 - PRESS
- 2 - AXLE
- 3 - AXLE BEARING
- 4 - INSTALLER
- 5 - METAL RETAINING RING

## PINION SEAL

### REMOVAL

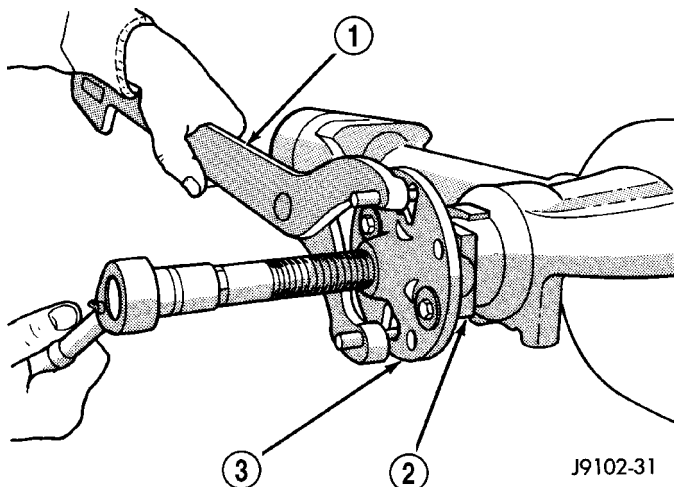
- (1) Raise and support the vehicle.
- (2) Remove wheel and tire assemblies.
- (3) Remove brake calipers and rotors.
- (4) Mark propeller shaft and pinion yoke for installation reference.
- (5) Remove propeller shaft from the yoke.
- (6) Rotate pinion gear a minimum of ten times and verify pinion rotates smoothly.
- (7) Record rotating torque of the pinion gear with an inch pound dial-type torque wrench, for installation reference.
- (8) Hold the pinion yoke with Spanner Wrench 6958 and remove the pinion nut and washer (Fig. 29).



**Fig. 29 PINION YOKE SPANNER**

- 1 - PIPE
- 2 - PINION YOKE
- 3 - SPANNER WRENCH
- 4 - LOWER CONTROL ARM

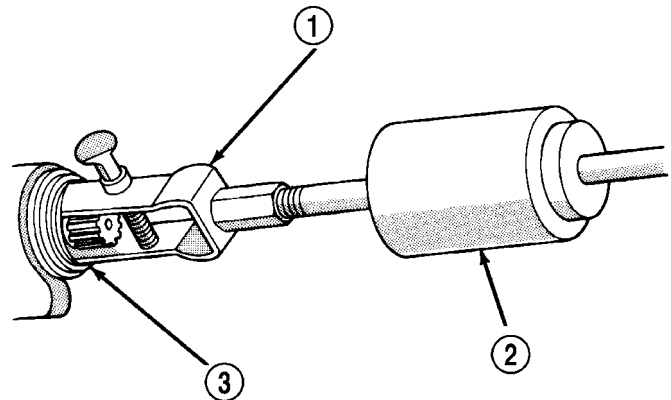
- (9) Remove pinion yoke with Remover C-452 and Wrench C-3281 (Fig. 30).



**Fig. 30 PINION YOKE REMOVER**

- 1 - FLANGE WRENCH
- 2 - YOKE
- 3 - YOKE PULLER

- (10) Remove pinion gear seal with Remover 7794-A and slide hammer (Fig. 31).



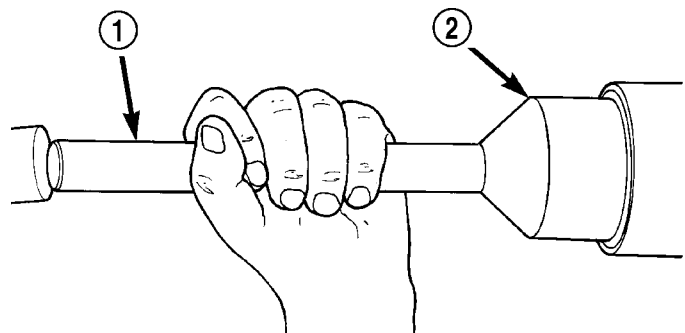
J9402-59X

**Fig. 31 PINION SEAL REMOVER**

- 1 - REMOVER
- 2 - SLIDE HAMMER
- 3 - PINION SEAL

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Apply a light coating of gear lubricant on the lip of pinion seal and install seal with an appropriate installer (Fig. 32).



80a7e2be

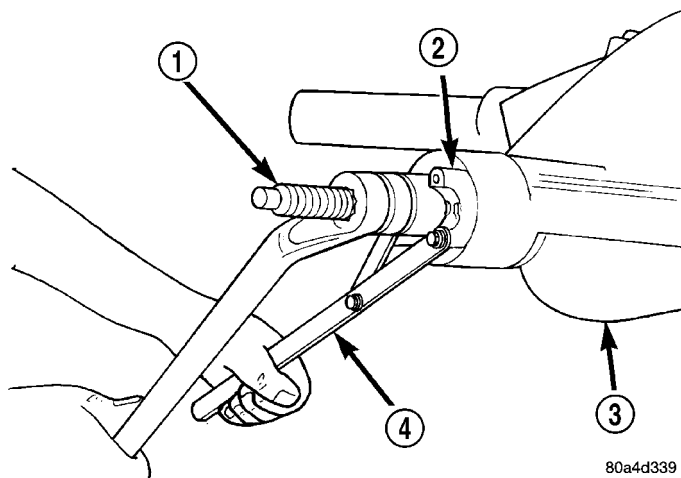
**Fig. 32 PINION SEAL INSTALLER**

- 1 - HANDLE
- 2 - INSTALLER



## PINION SEAL (Continued)

(2) Install yoke on pinion gear with Screw 8112, Cup 8109 and Spanner Wrench 6958 (Fig. 33).



**Fig. 33 PINION YOKE INSTALLER**

- 1 - INSTALLER
- 2 - PINION YOKE
- 3 - DIFFERENTIAL HOUSING
- 4 - SPANNER WRENCH

**CAUTION:** Do not exceed the minimum tightening torque 271 N·m (200 ft. lbs.) when installing the pinion yoke at this point. Damage to the collapsible spacer or bearings may result.

(3) Install yoke and a **new** nut on the pinion gear and tighten the nut until there is zero bearing end-play.

(4) Tighten the nut to 271 N·m (200 ft. lbs.).

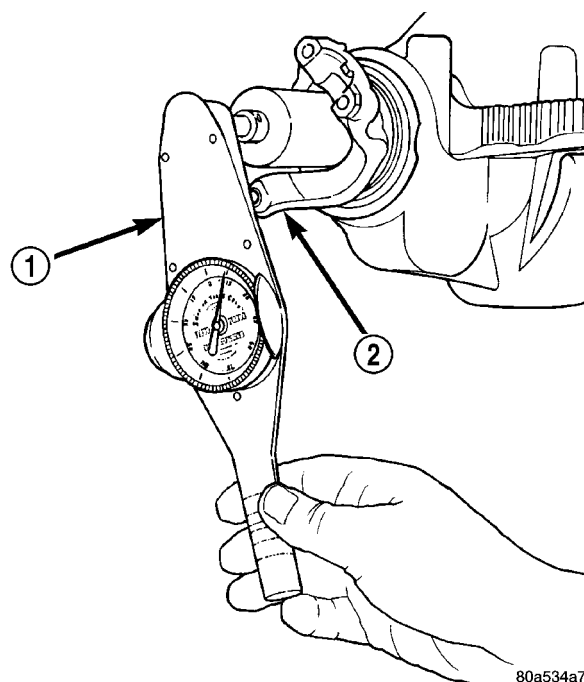
**CAUTION:** Never loosen pinion gear nut to decrease pinion rotating torque and never exceed specified preload torque. If preload torque or rotating torque is exceeded a new collapsible spacer must be installed.

(5) Rotate the pinion gear a minimum of ten times and verify pinion rotates smoothly. Rotate pinion shaft an inch pound torque wrench. Rotating torque should be equal to recorded reading plus an additional 0.56 N·m (5 in. lbs.) (Fig. 34).

(6) If the rotating torque is low, use Spanner Wrench 6958 to hold the pinion yoke (Fig. 35), and tighten the pinion nut in 6.8 N·m (5 ft. lbs.) increments until the proper rotating torque is achieved.

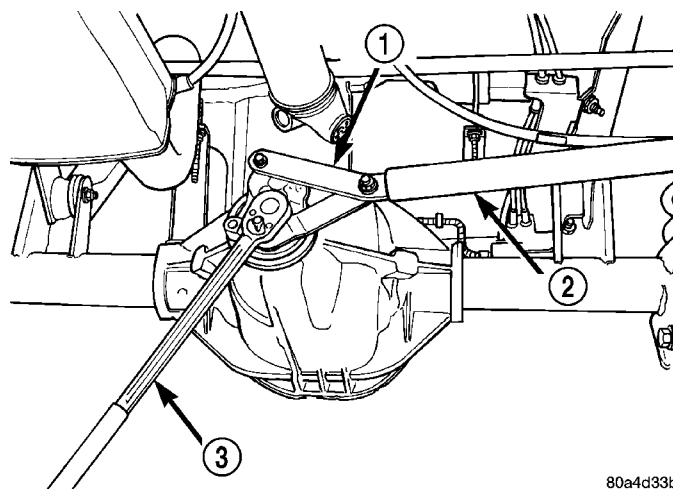
**CAUTION:** If maximum tightening torque is reached prior to reaching required rotating torque, the collapsible spacer may have been damaged. Replace the collapsible spacer.

(7) Install the propeller shaft with reference marks aligned.



**Fig. 34 PINION ROTATING TORQUE**

- 1 - TORQUE WRENCH
- 2 - PINION YOKE



**Fig. 35 PINION SHAFT NUT**

- 1 - SPANNER WRENCH
- 2 - PIPE
- 3 - TORQUE WRENCH

(8) Add gear lubricant to the differential if necessary.

(9) Install brake rotors and calipers.

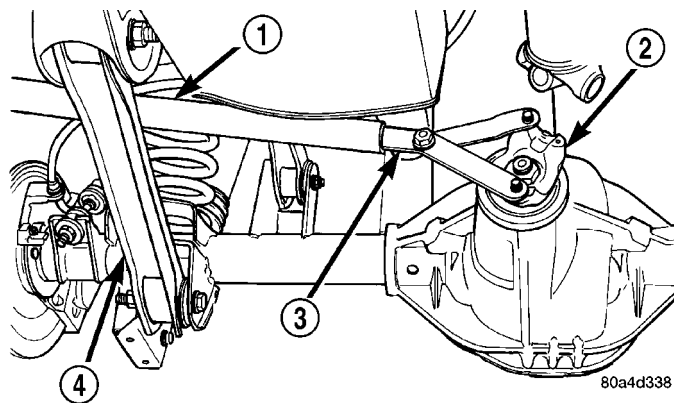
(10) Install wheel and tire assemblies.

(11) Lower the vehicle.

## COLLAPSIBLE SPACER

### REMOVAL

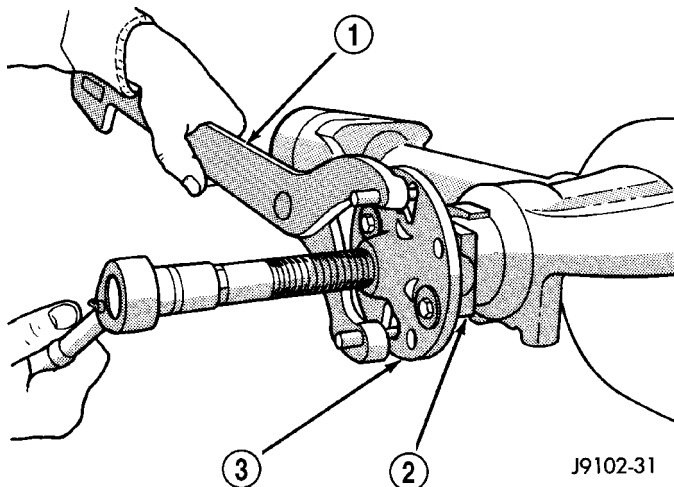
- (1) Raise and support the vehicle.
- (2) Remove wheel and tire assemblies.
- (3) Remove rear brake calipers and rotors.
- (4) Mark propeller shaft and pinion yoke for installation reference and remove propeller shaft.
- (5) Rotate pinion gear a minimum of ten times and verify pinion rotates smoothly.
- (6) Record rotate torque of the pinion gear, with an inch pound torque wrench.
- (7) Hold pinion yoke with Spanner Wrench 6958 and remove pinion nut and washer (Fig. 36).



**Fig. 36 PINION YOKE HOLDER**

- 1 - 1 in. PIPE
- 2 - PINION YOKE
- 3 - SPANNER WRENCH
- 4 - LOWER CONTROL ARM

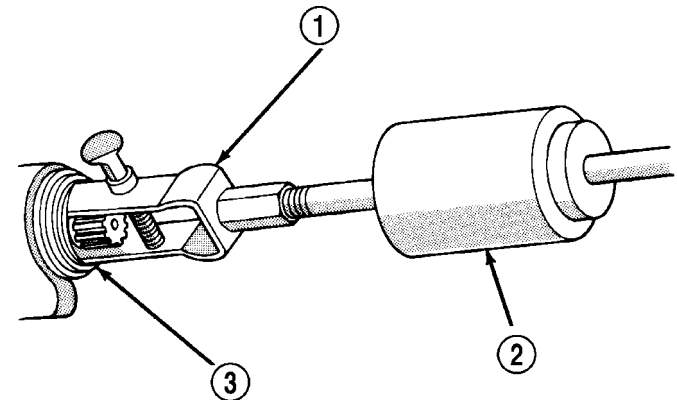
- (8) Remove pinion yoke with Remover C-452 and Wrench C-3281 (Fig. 37).



**Fig. 37 PINION YOKE REMOVER**

- 1 - WRENCH
- 2 - PINION YOKE
- 3 - PULLER

- (9) Remove pinion shaft seal with Remover 7794-A and slide hammer (Fig. 38).



**Fig. 38 PINION SEAL REMOVER**

- 1 - REMOVER
- 2 - SLIDE HAMMER
- 3 - PINION SEAL

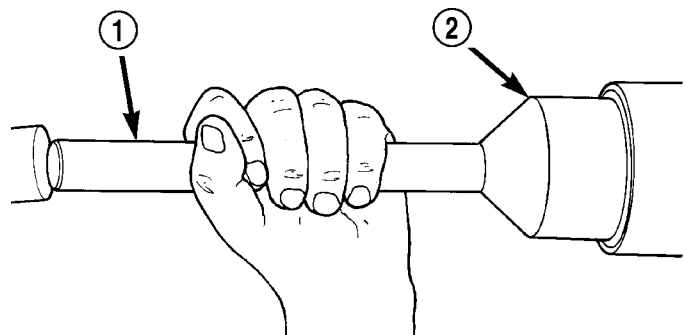
- (10) Remove front pinion bearing using a pair of pick tools to pull the bearing off the pinion gear shaft.

**NOTE:** If the pinion bearing becomes bound on the pinion shaft, lightly tap the end of the shaft with a rawhide/rubber mallet.

- (11) Remove the collapsible spacer.

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Install a **new** collapsible spacer on pinion shaft.
- (2) Install pinion front bearing on the pinion shaft.
- (3) Apply a light coating of gear lubricant on the lip of pinion seal and install seal with an appropriate installer (Fig. 39).

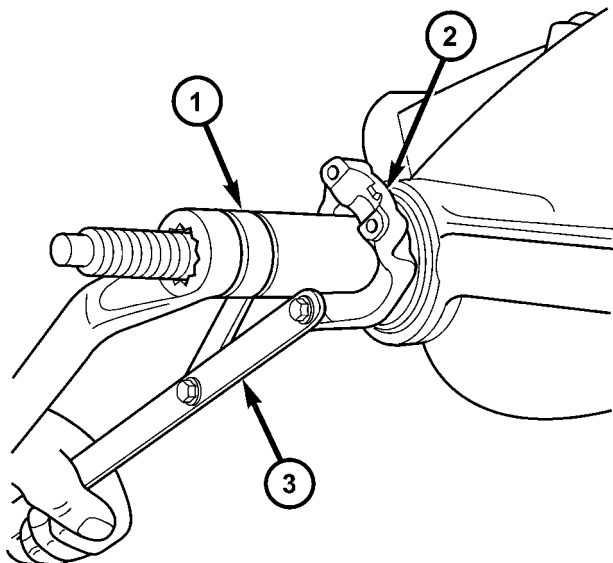


**Fig. 39 PINION SEAL INSTALLER**

- 1 - HANDLE
- 2 - INSTALLER

## COLLAPSIBLE SPACER (Continued)

(4) Install yoke with Screw 8112, Cup 8109 and Spanner Wrench 6958 (Fig. 40).



80c6c0e0

**Fig. 40 PINION YOKE INSTALLER**

- 1 - INSTALLER
- 2 - PINION YOKE
- 3 - SPANNER WRENCH

(5) Install yoke and **new** nut on the pinion gear. Tighten the nut to 271 N·m (200 ft. lbs.).

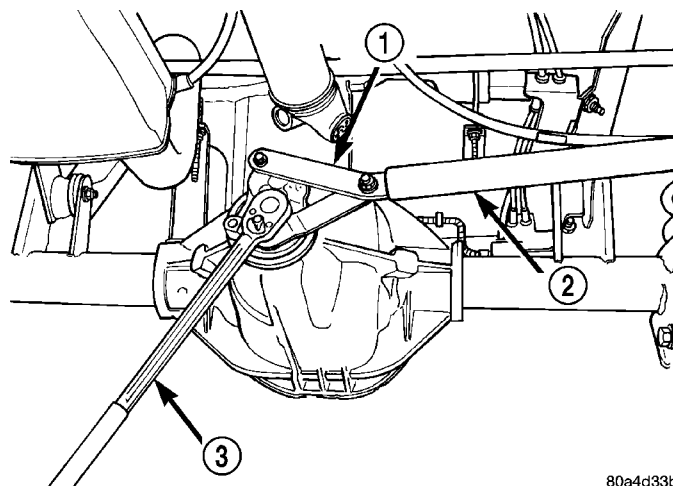
**CAUTION:** Never loosen pinion gear nut to decrease pinion rotating torque and never exceed specified preload torque. If preload torque or rotating torque is exceeded a new collapsible spacer must be installed.

**NOTE:** New collapsible spacers require high initial torque to start the collapsing of the spacer. This may reach 678 N·m (500 ft. lbs.).

(6) Using Spanner Wrench 6958, a length of 1 in. pipe and a torque wrench set at 474 N·m (350 ft. lbs.), (Fig. 41) slowly tighten the nut in 6.8 N·m (5 ft. lbs.) increments until the rotating torque is achieved. Measure the rotating torque frequently to avoid over crushing the collapsible spacer (Fig. 42).

(7) Check rotating torque with an inch pound torque wrench (Fig. 42). The rotating torque of the pinion gear should be, the reading recorded during removal plus an additional 0.56 N·m (5 in. lbs.).

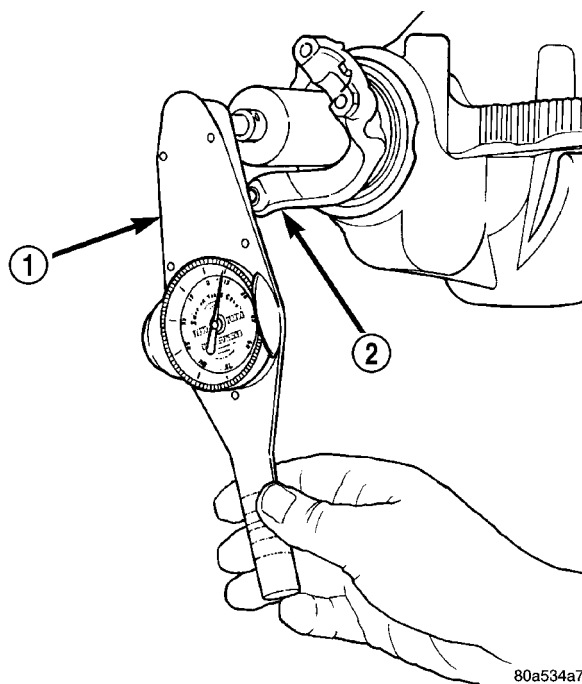
(8) Install propeller shaft with reference marks align.



80a4d33b

**Fig. 41 PINION NUT**

- 1 - SPANNER WRENCH
- 2 - PIPE
- 3 - TORQUE WRENCH



80a534a7

**Fig. 42 PINION ROTATING TORQUE**

- 1 - TORQUE WRENCH
- 2 - PINION YOKE

(9) Install rear brake calipers and rotors (Refer to 5 - BRAKES/HYDRAULIC/MECHANICAL/ROTORS - INSTALLATION).

(10) Add gear lubricant, if necessary.

(11) Install wheel and tire assemblies.

(12) Remove supports and lower vehicle.

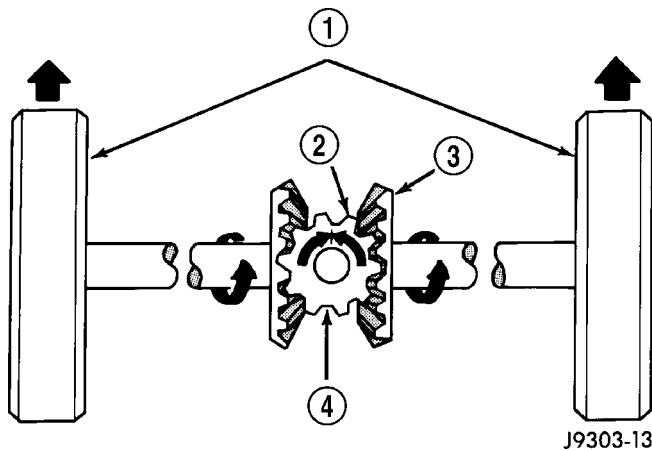
# DIFFERENTIAL

## DESCRIPTION

The differential case is a one-piece design. Differential bearing preload and ring gear backlash is adjusted by the use of selective spacer shims. Pinion bearing preload is set and maintained by the use of a collapsible spacer. A differential cover provides a means for inspection and service.

## OPERATION

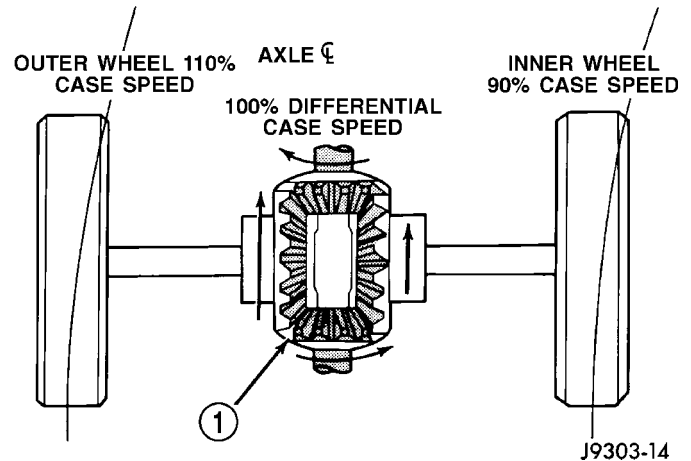
During straight-ahead driving, the differential pinion gears do not rotate on the pinion mate shaft. This occurs because input torque applied to the gears is divided and distributed equally between the two side gears. As a result, the pinion gears revolve with the pinion mate shaft but do not rotate around it (Fig. 43).



**Fig. 43 STRAIGHT AHEAD DRIVING**

- 1 - WHEELS ROTATE AT CASE SPEED
- 2 - PINION GEAR
- 3 - SIDE GEAR
- 4 - PINION GEARS ROTATE WITH CASE

When turning corners, the outside wheel must travel a greater distance than the inside wheel to complete a turn. The difference must be compensated for to prevent the tires from scuffing and skidding through turns. To accomplish this, the differential allows the axle shafts to turn at unequal speeds (Fig. 44). In this instance, the input torque applied to the pinion gears is not divided equally. The pinion gears now rotate around the pinion mate shaft in opposite directions. This allows the side gear and axle shaft attached to the outside wheel to rotate at a faster speed.



**Fig. 44 DIFFERENTIAL ON TURNS**

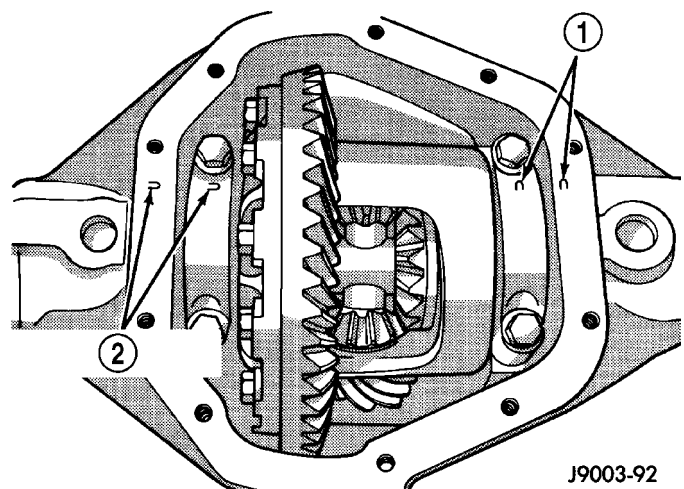
- 1 - PINION GEARS ROTATE ON PINION SHAFT

## REMOVAL

- (1) Raise and support vehicle.
- (2) Remove fill hole plug from the differential housing cover.
- (3) Remove differential housing cover and drain fluid.
- (4) Clean the housing cavity with flushing oil, light engine oil or lint free cloth.

**NOTE:** Do not use water, steam, kerosene or gasoline for cleaning.

- (5) Remove axle shafts.
- (6) Note the reference letters stamped on the bearing caps and housing machined sealing surface (Fig. 45).



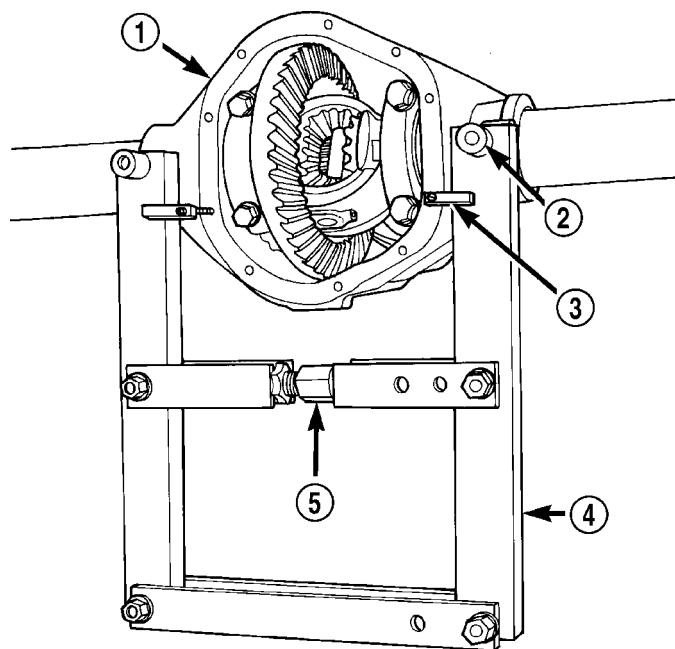
**Fig. 45 Differential Bearing Cap Reference Letters**

- 1 - REFERENCE LETTERS
- 2 - REFERENCE LETTERS

## DIFFERENTIAL (Continued)

(7) Loosen the differential bearing cap bolts.

(8) Position Spreader W-129-B with Adapter Kit 6987B on differential locating holes (Fig. 46). Install holddown clamps and tighten the turnbuckle finger-tight.



80a534c5

**Fig. 46 Install Axle Housing Spreader**

- 1 - DIFFERENTIAL HOUSING
- 2 - DOWEL
- 3 - SAFETY HOLD DOWN
- 4 - SPREADER
- 5 - TURNBUCKLE

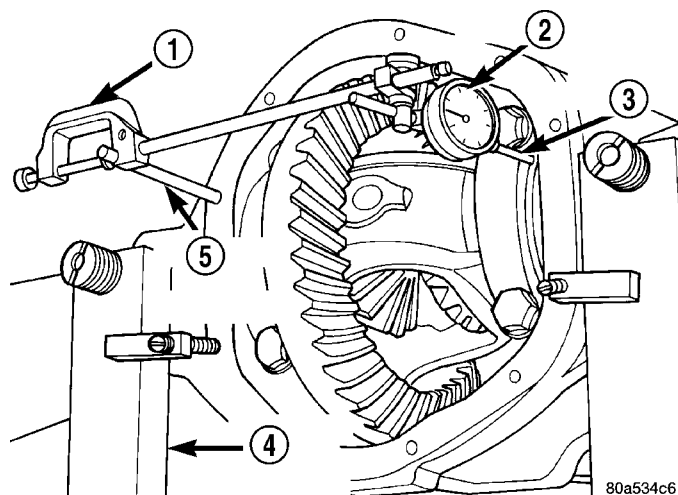
(9) Install a Pilot Stud C-3288-B at the left side of the differential housing. Attach Dial Indicator C-3339 to pilot stud. Load the indicator plunger against the opposite side of the housing (Fig. 47) and zero the indicator.

**CAUTION:** Never spread the housing over 0.38 mm (0.015 in). If housing is over-spread, it could distort and damage the housing.

(10) Spread housing enough to remove the differential case from the housing. Measure the distance with the dial indicator (Fig. 48).

(11) Remove the dial indicator.

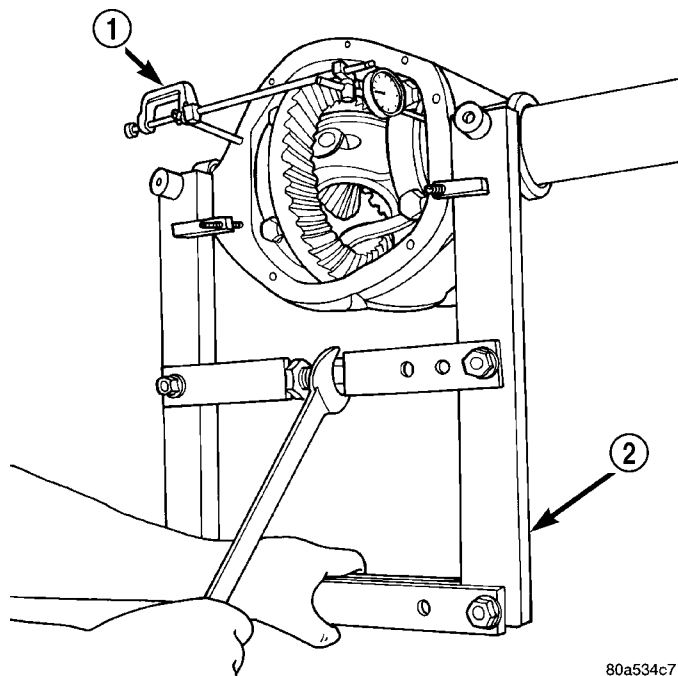
(12) While holding the differential case in position, remove the differential bearing cap bolts and caps.



80a534c6

**Fig. 47 Install Dial Indicator**

- 1 - CLAMP
- 2 - DIAL INDICATOR
- 3 - LEVER ADAPTER
- 4 - SPREADER
- 5 - PILOT STUD



80a534c7

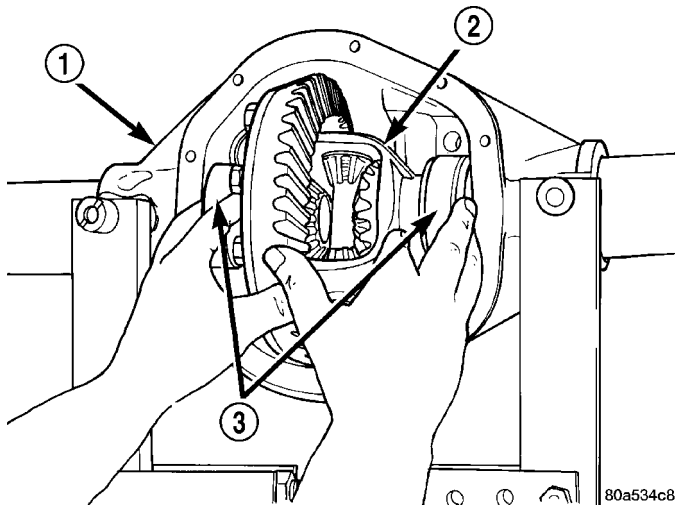
**Fig. 48 Spread Axle Housing**

- 1 - DIAL INDICATOR
- 2 - SPREADER



## DIFFERENTIAL (Continued)

(13) Remove differential from the housing and tag differential bearing cups to indicate location (Fig. 49).



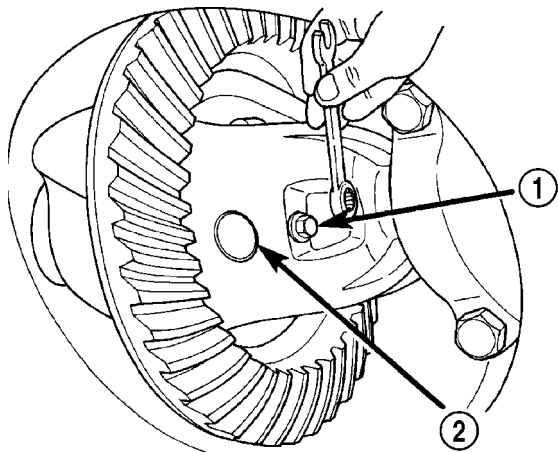
**Fig. 49 Differential Case Removal**

- 1 - DIFFERENTIAL HOUSING
- 2 - DIFFERENTIAL CASE
- 3 - BEARING CUPS

(14) Remove spreader from housing.

## DISASSEMBLY

(1) Remove pinion shaft lock screw (Fig. 50).



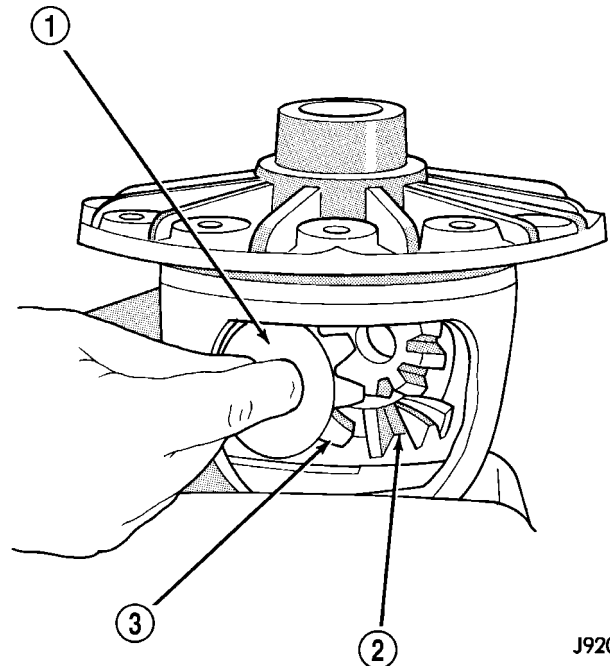
**Fig. 50 Pinion Mate Shaft Lock Screw**

- 1 - LOCK SCREW
- 2 - PINION SHAFT

- (2) Remove pinion shaft.
- (3) Rotate differential side gears and remove differential pinions and thrust washers (Fig. 51).
- (4) Remove differential side gears and thrust washers.

## ASSEMBLY

- (1) Install differential side gears and thrust washers.



**Fig. 51 PINION MATE GEAR REMOVAL**

- 1 - THRUST WASHER
- 2 - SIDE GEAR
- 3 - DIFFERENTIAL PINION

(2) Install differential pinion gears and thrust washers.

(3) Install the pinion mate shaft.

(4) Align hole in the pinion mate shaft with the hole in the differential case and install the pinion mate shaft lock screw.

(5) Lubricate all differential components with hypoid gear lubricant.

## INSTALLATION

**NOTE:** If replacement differential bearings or differential case are being installed, differential side bearing shim requirements may change. Refer **Adjustments (Differential Bearing Preload and Gear Backlash)** to determine the proper shim selection.

(1) Position Spreader W-129-B with Adapter set 6987 on differential housing locating holes. Install the holddown clamps and tighten the tool turnbuckle finger-tight.

(2) Install a Pilot Stud C-3288-B at the left side of the differential housing. Attach Dial Indicator C-3339 to pilot stud. Load the indicator plunger against the opposite side of the housing and zero the indicator.

**CAUTION:** Never spread the housing over 0.38 mm (0.015 in). If housing is over-spread, it could be distorted or damaged.

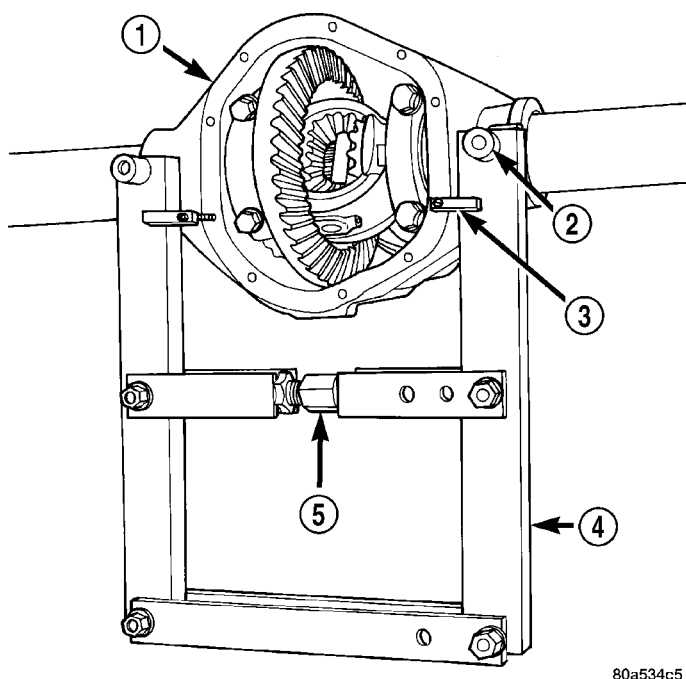


## DIFFERENTIAL (Continued)

(3) Spread housing enough to install the case in the housing.

(4) Remove the dial indicator.

(5) Install differential case in housing (Fig. 52). Verify differential bearing cups remain in position on the bearings and preload shims are between the face of the bearing cup and the housing. Tap the differential case to ensure bearing cups and shims are seated in the housing.



**Fig. 52 Install Axle Housing Spreader**

- 1 - DIFFERENTIAL HOUSING
- 2 - DOWEL
- 3 - SAFETY HOLD DOWN
- 4 - SPREADER
- 5 - TURNBUCKLE

**CAUTION:** On a Vari-lok® differential the oil feed tube must be pointed at the bottom of the housing (Fig. 53). If differential is installed with the oil feed tube pointed at the top, the anti-rotation tabs will be damaged.

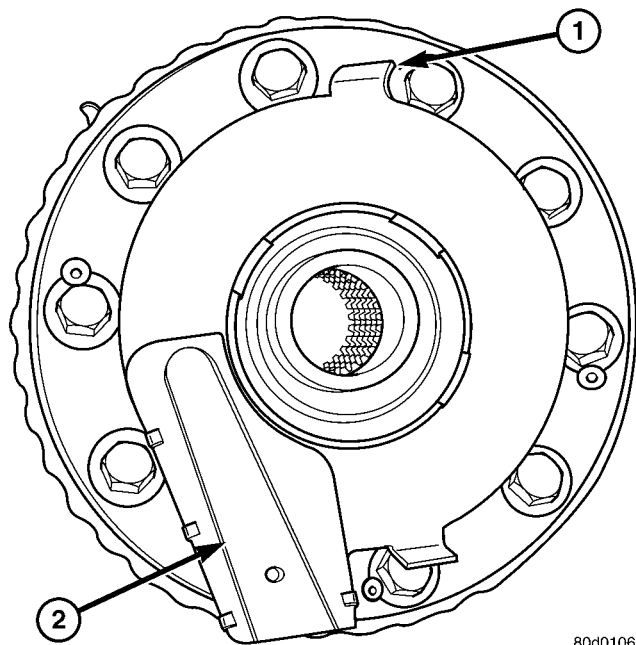
(6) Install bearing caps in their original locations (Fig. 54).

(7) Loosely install differential bearing cap bolts.

(8) Remove axle housing spreader.

(9) Tighten bearing cap bolts in a criss-cross pattern to 77 N·m (57 ft. lbs.).

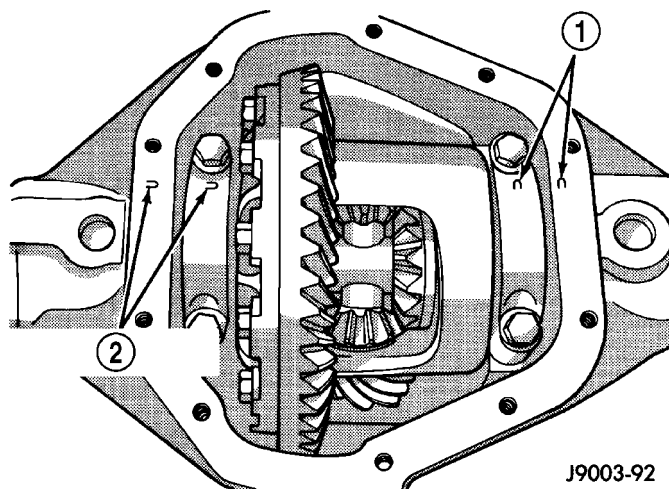
(10) Install the axle shafts.



80d0106d

**Fig. 53 VARI-LOK**

- 1 - ANTI-ROTATION TAB
- 2 - OIL FEED TUBE



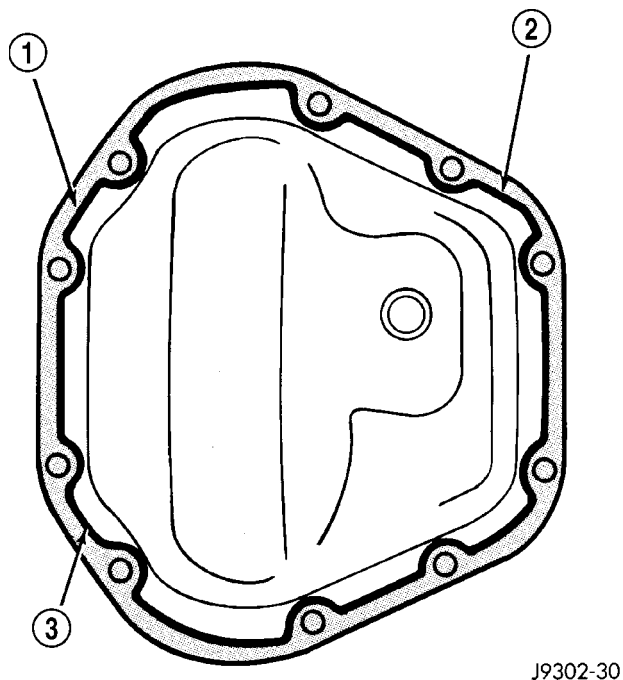
J9003-92

**Fig. 54 Differential Bearing Cap Reference Letters**

- 1 - REFERENCE LETTERS
- 2 - REFERENCE LETTERS

## DIFFERENTIAL (Continued)

(11) Apply a 6.35mm (1/4 in.) bead of red Mopar Silicone Rubber Sealant or equivalent to the housing cover (Fig. 55).



J9302-30

**Fig. 55 DIFFERENTIAL COVER - TYPICAL**

- 1 - COVER
- 2 - SEALANT
- 3 - SEALANT BEAD

**CAUTION:** If cover is not installed within 3 to 5 minutes, the cover must be cleaned and new RTV applied or adhesion quality will be compromised.

(12) Install cover and tighten bolts in a criss-cross pattern to 41 N·m (30 ft. lbs.).

(13) Refill the differential with Mopar Hypoid Gear Lubricant or equivalent to bottom of the fill plug hole.

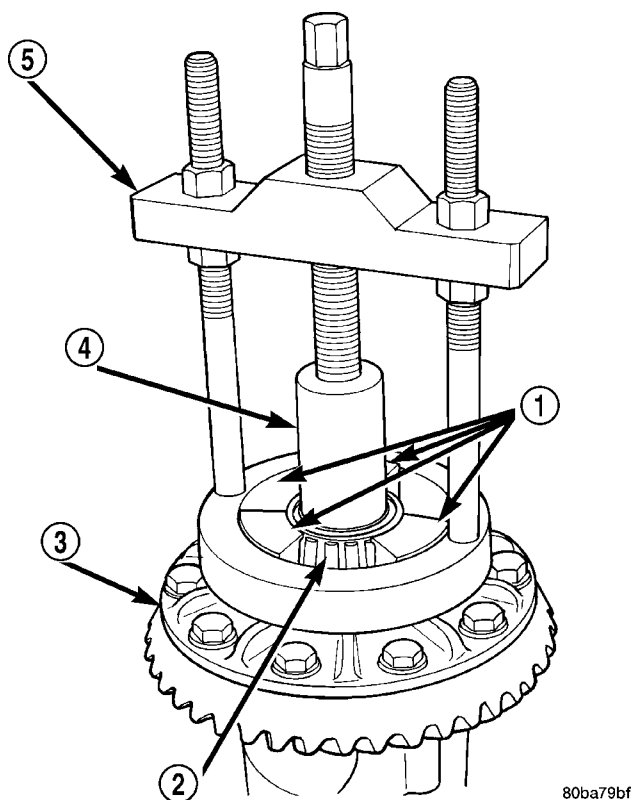
(14) Install fill hole plug.

(15) Remove support and lower the vehicle.

## DIFFERENTIAL CASE BEARINGS

## REMOVAL

- (1) Raise and support vehicle.
- (2) Remove differential case from axle housing.
- (3) Remove bearings from the differential case with Puller/Press C-293-PA, Adapter C-293-39 and Plug SP-3289 (Fig. 56).



80ba79bf

**Fig. 56 DIFFERENTIAL CASE BEARING**

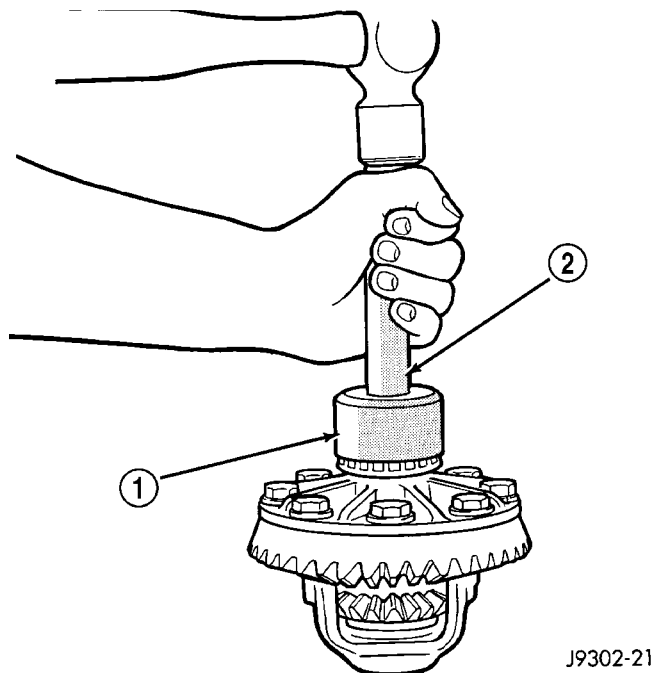
- 1 - ADAPTERS
- 2 - BEARING
- 3 - DIFFERENTIAL
- 4 - PLUG
- 5 - PULLER

## DIFFERENTIAL CASE BEARINGS (Continued)

## INSTALLATION

**NOTE:** If differential side bearings or differential case are replaced, differential side bearing shim requirements may change. Refer to Adjustments (Differential Bearing Preload and Gear Backlash) for procedures.

(1) Install differential case bearings with Installer C-3716-A and Handle C-4171 (Fig. 57).



**Fig. 57 DIFFERENTIAL SIDE BEARING**

1 - INSTALLER  
2 - HANDLE

- (2) Install differential in axle housing.  
(3) Remove support and lower vehicle.

## PINION GEAR/RING GEAR

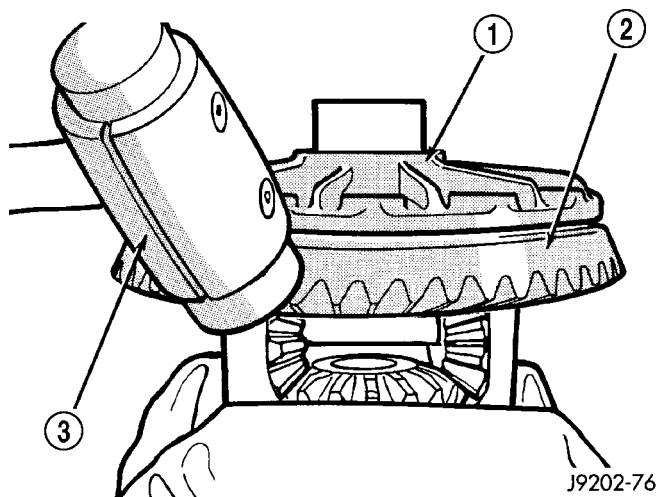
## REMOVAL

**NOTE:** The ring and pinion gears are serviced as a matched set. Never replace one gear without the other gear.

- (1) Raise and support vehicle.
- (2) Mark pinion yoke and propeller shaft for installation reference.
- (3) Disconnect propeller shaft from pinion yoke and tie shaft to underbody.
- (4) Remove differential from the housing.
- (5) Place differential case in a vise with soft metal jaw.

(6) Remove bolts holding ring gear to differential case.

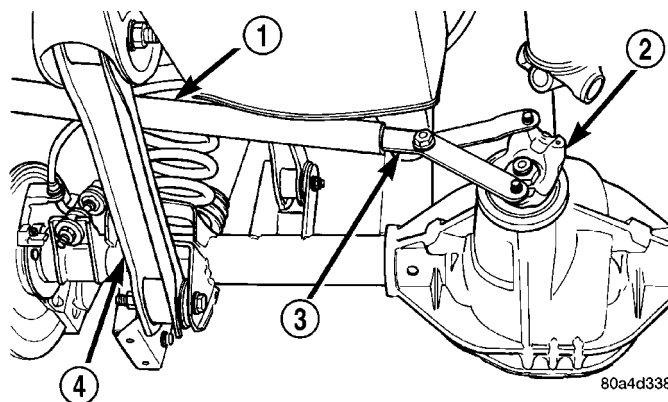
(7) Drive ring gear from differential case with a rawhide hammer (Fig. 58).



**Fig. 58 Ring Gear Removal**

1 - DIFFERENTIAL CASE  
2 - RING GEAR  
3 - HAMMER

(8) Hold the pinion yoke with Spanner Wrench 6958 and remove the pinion yoke nut and washer (Fig. 59).

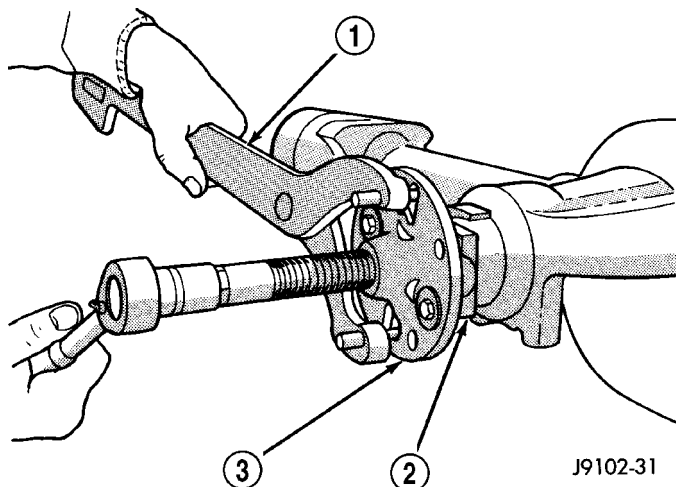


**Fig. 59 Pinion Yoke Holder—Typical**

1 - 1 in. PIPE  
2 - PINION YOKE  
3 - HOLDER  
4 - LOWER CONTROL ARM

## PINION GEAR/RING GEAR (Continued)

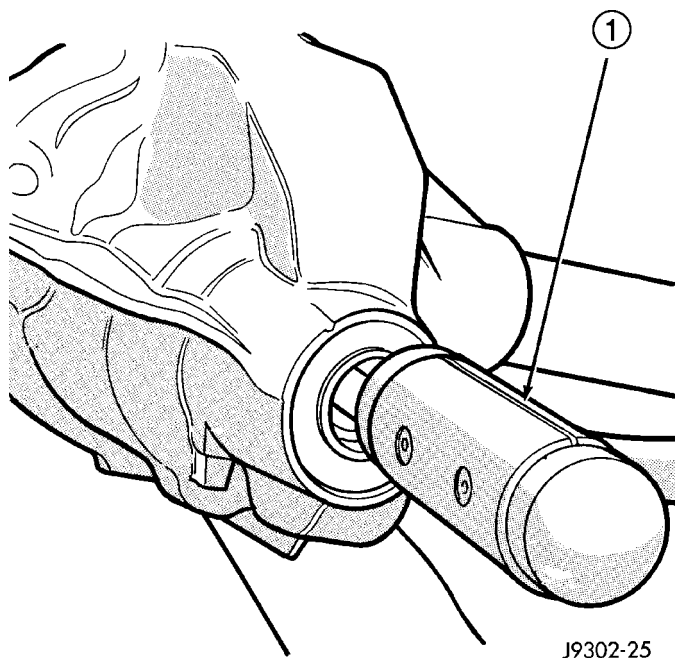
(9) Remove pinion yoke from pinion shaft with Remover C-452 and Flange Wrench C-3281 (Fig. 60).



**Fig. 60 Pinion Yoke Removal**

- 1 - FLANGE WRENCH
- 2 - YOKE
- 3 - REMOVER

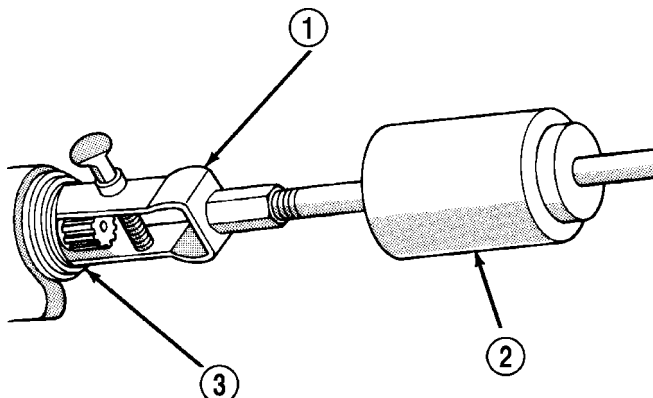
(10) Remove pinion gear from housing (Fig. 61).



**Fig. 61 Remove Pinion Gear**

- 1 - RAWHIDE HAMMER

(11) Remove pinion seal with Remover 7794-A and a slide hammer (Fig. 62).

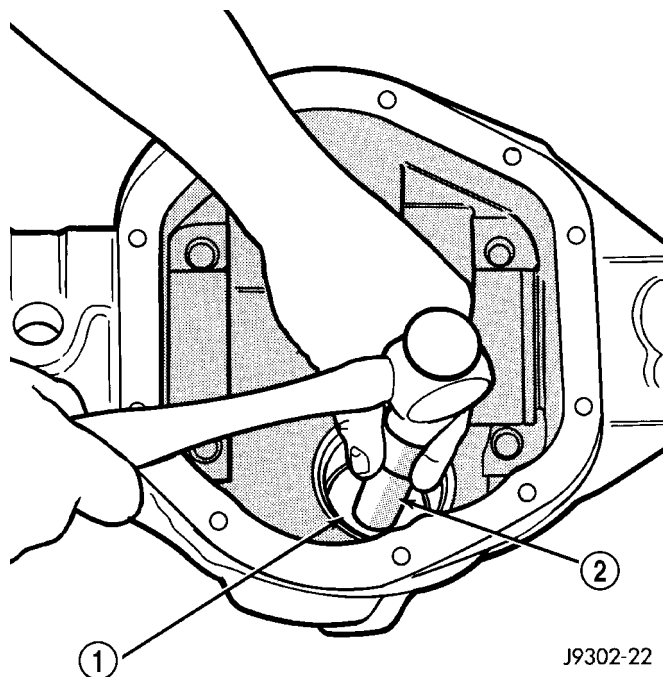


**Fig. 62 Seal Removal**

- 1 - REMOVER
- 2 - SLIDE HAMMER
- 3 - PINION SEAL

(12) Remove oil slinger, if equipped, and front pinion bearing.

(13) Remove front pinion bearing cup with Remover C-4345 and Handle C-4171 (Fig. 63).

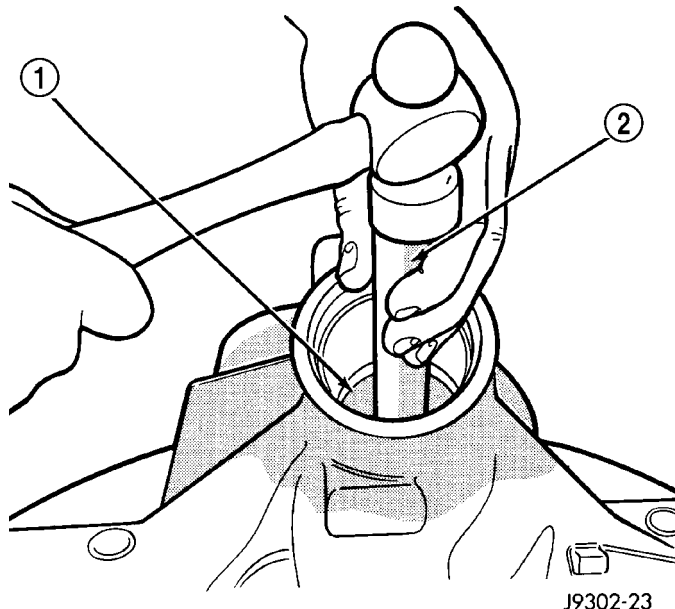


**Fig. 63 Front Bearing Cup Removal**

- 1 - REMOVER
- 2 - HANDLE

## PINION GEAR/RING GEAR (Continued)

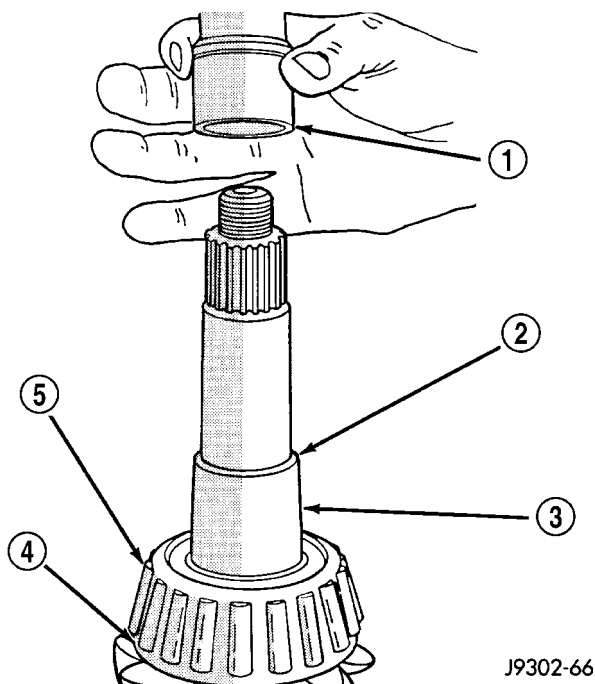
(14) Remove rear bearing cup (Fig. 64) with Remover D-149 and Handle C-4171.



**Fig. 64 Rear Bearing Cup Removal**

- 1 - REMOVER
- 2 - HANDLE

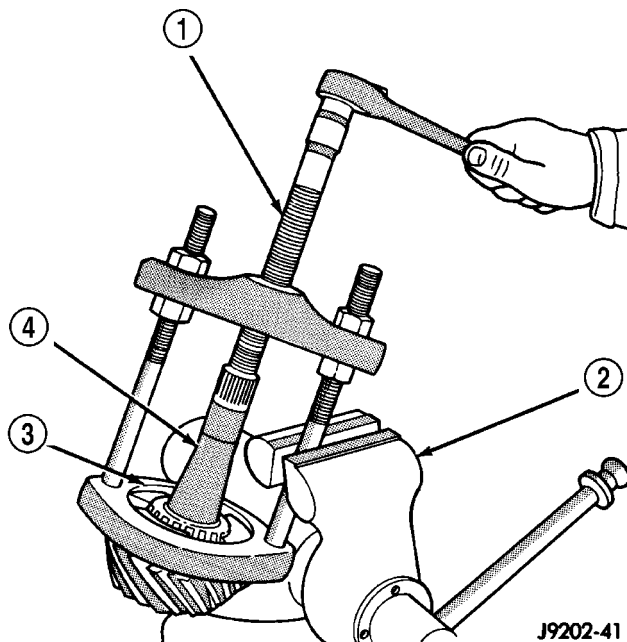
(15) Remove collapsible preload spacer (Fig. 65).



**Fig. 65 Collapsible Preload Spacer**

- 1 - COLLAPSIBLE SPACER
- 2 - SHOULDER
- 3 - PINION GEAR
- 4 - SHIM
- 5 - REAR BEARING

(16) Remove rear bearing from the pinion with Puller/Press C-293-PA and Adapters C-293-40 (Fig. 66).



**Fig. 66 Rear Bearing Removal**

- 1 - PULLER
- 2 - VISE
- 3 - ADAPTERS
- 4 - PINION GEAR SHAFT

(17) Remove depth shims from the pinion gear shaft and record shim thickness.

## INSTALLATION

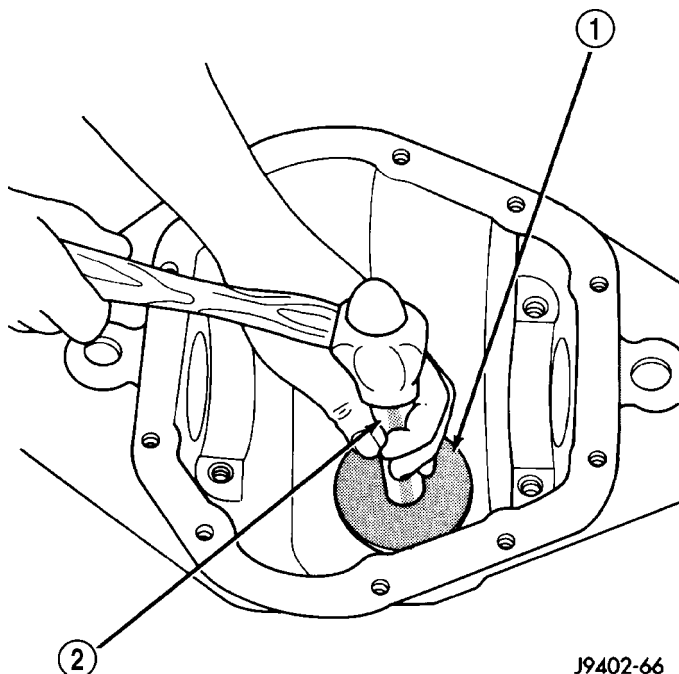
**NOTE:** A pinion depth shim/oil slinger is placed between the rear pinion bearing cone and the pinion head to achieve proper ring gear and pinion mesh. If ring gear and pinion are reused, the pinion depth shim/oil slinger should not require replacement. Refer to Adjustment (Pinion Gear Depth) to select the proper thickness shim/oil slinger if ring and pinion gears are replaced.



## PINION GEAR/RING GEAR (Continued)

(1) Apply Mopar Door Ease or equivalent lubricant to outside surface of the pinion bearing cups.

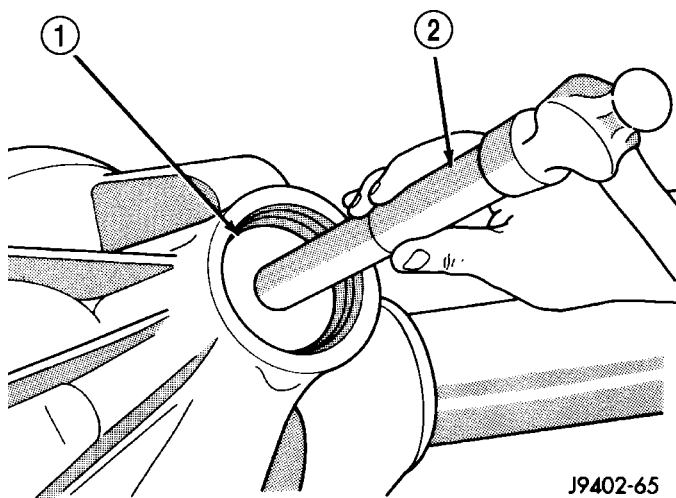
(2) Install pinion rear bearing cup with Installer D-146 and Driver Handle C-4171 (Fig. 67) and verify cup is seated.



**Fig. 67 REAR PINION BEARING CUP**

1 - INSTALLER  
2 - HANDLE

(3) Install pinion front bearing cup with Installer D-130 and Handle C-4171 (Fig. 68) and verify cup is seated.

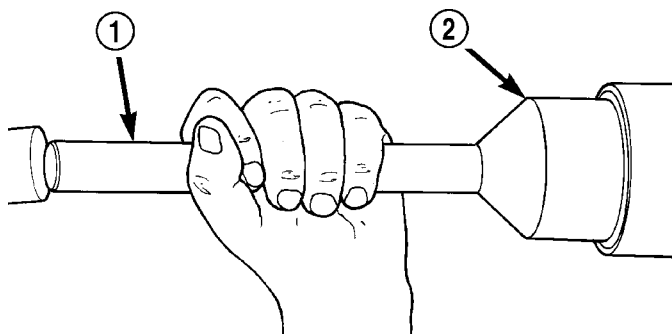


**Fig. 68 PINION FRONT BEARING CUP**

1 - INSTALLER  
2 - HANDLE

(4) Install pinion front bearing and oil slinger, if equipped.

(5) Apply a light coating of gear lubricant on the lip of pinion seal. Install seal with an appropriate installer (Fig. 69).

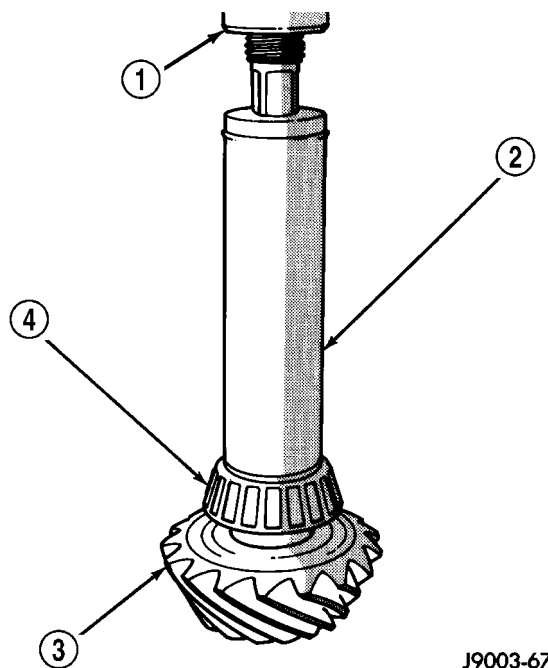


**Fig. 69 PINION SEAL INSTALLER**

1 - HANDLE  
2 - INSTALLER

(6) Install depth shim on the pinion gear.

(7) Install rear bearing and slinger if equipped, on the pinion gear with Installer W-262 and a press (Fig. 70).



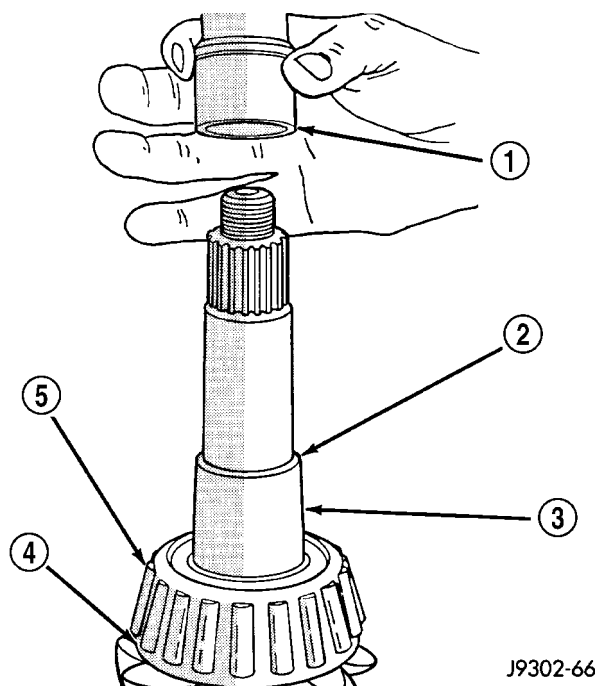
**Fig. 70 REAR PINION BEARING**

1 - PRESS  
2 - INSTALLER  
3 - PINION GEAR  
4 - PINION BEARING



## PINION GEAR/RING GEAR (Continued)

(8) Install a **new** collapsible preload spacer on pinion shaft and install pinion gear in the housing (Fig. 71).



**Fig. 71 COLLAPSIBLE SPACER**

- 1 - COLLAPSIBLE SPACER
- 2 - SHOULDER
- 3 - PINION GEAR
- 4 - DEPTH SHIM
- 5 - REAR BEARING

(9) Install yoke with Installer C-3718 and Spanner Wrench 6958 (Fig. 72).

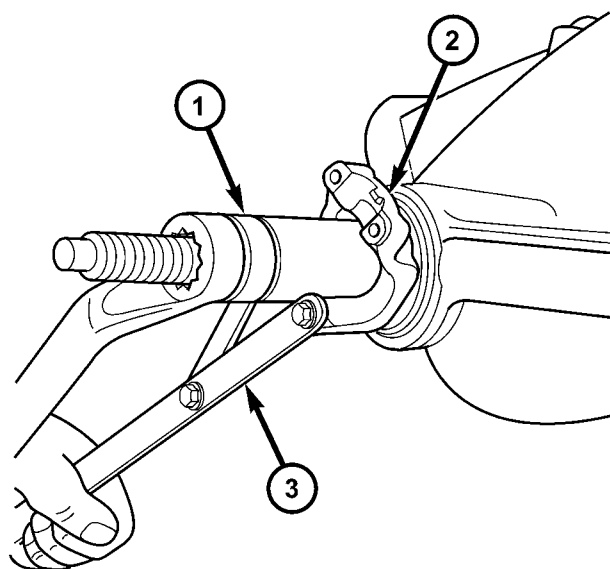
(10) Install the yoke washer and a new nut on the pinion gear and tighten the pinion nut until there is zero bearing end-play.

(11) Tighten the nut to 271 N·m (200 ft. lbs.).

**CAUTION:** Never loosen pinion gear nut to decrease pinion rotating torque and never exceed specified preload torque. If preload torque or rotating torque is exceeded a new collapsible spacer must be installed.

**NOTE:** New collapsible spacers require high initial torque to start the collapsing of the spacer. This may reach 678 N·m (500 ft. lbs.).

(12) Using Spanner Wrench 6958 and a torque wrench set at 474 N·m (350 ft. lbs.), (Fig. 73) slowly tighten the nut in 6.8 N·m (5 ft. lbs.) increments until the rotating torque is achieved. Measure the rotating torque frequently to avoid over crushing the collapsible spacer (Fig. 74).

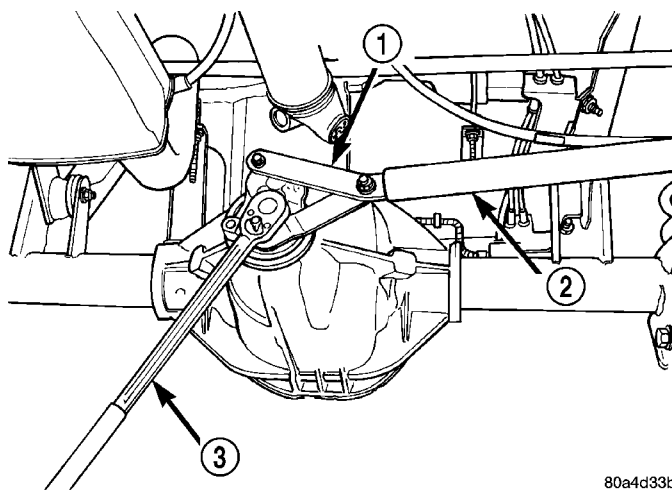


80c6c0e0

**Fig. 72 PINION YOE INSTALLER**

- 1 - INSTALLER
- 2 - PINION YOE
- 3 - SPANNER WRENCH

**NOTE:** If more than 474 N·m (350 ft. lbs.) torque is required to crush the collapsible spacer, the spacer is defective and must be replaced.



80a4d33b

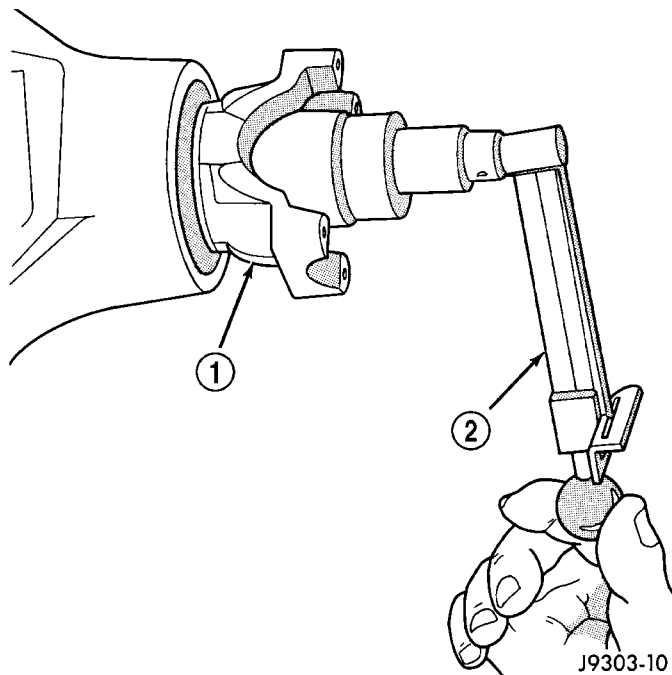
**Fig. 73 PINION SHAFT NUT**

- 1 - SPANNER WRENCH
- 2 - PIPE
- 3 - TORQUE WRENCH

## PINION GEAR/RING GEAR (Continued)

(13) Check bearing rotating torque with a inch pound torque wrench (Fig. 74). The pinion gear rotating torque should be:

- Original Bearings: 1 to 2.25 N-m (10 to 20 in. lbs.).
- New Bearings: 1.7 to 3.9 N-m (15 to 35 in. lbs.).



**Fig. 74 CHECK PINION ROTATION TORQUE**

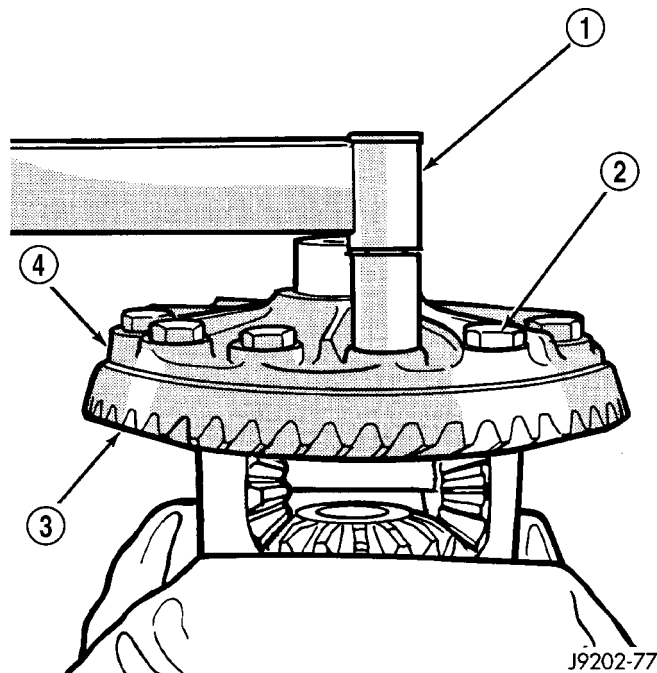
- 1 - PINION YOKE/COMPANION FLANGE  
2 - INCH POUND TORQUE WRENCH

(14) Invert the differential case and start two ring gear bolts. This will provide case-to-ring gear bolt hole alignment.

(15) Invert the differential case in the vise.

(16) Install **new** ring gear bolts and alternately tighten to 136 N-m (100 ft. lbs.) (Fig. 75).

**CAUTION:** Never reuse the ring gear bolts. The bolts can fracture causing extensive damage.



**Fig. 75 RING GEAR**

- 1 - TORQUE WRENCH  
2 - RING GEAR BOLT  
3 - RING GEAR  
4 - CASE

(17) Install differential in housing and verify differential bearing preload, gear mesh and contact pattern. Refer to Adjustments for procedure.

(18) Install differential cover and fill with gear lubricant.

(19) Install the propeller shaft with the reference marks aligned.

(20) Remove supports and lower vehicle.

## REAR AXLE - 226RBA

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>REAR AXLE - 226RBA</b>		<b>OPERATION</b>	104
DESCRIPTION	82	REMOVAL	104
OPERATION	82	DISASSEMBLY	106
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	82	ASSEMBLY	106
REMOVAL	86	INSTALLATION	106
INSTALLATION	86	<b>DIFFERENTIAL - TRAC-LOK</b>	
ADJUSTMENTS	87	DESCRIPTION	108
SPECIFICATIONS	94	OPERATION	108
SPECIAL TOOLS	95	DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	108
<b>AXLE SHAFTS</b>		DISASSEMBLY	109
REMOVAL	98	ASSEMBLY	111
INSTALLATION	98	<b>DIFFERENTIAL - VARI-LOK</b>	
<b>AXLE BEARINGS/SEALS</b>		DESCRIPTION	113
REMOVAL	98	OPERATION	113
INSTALLATION	99	DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	113
<b>PINION SEAL</b>		<b>DIFFERENTIAL CASE BEARINGS</b>	
REMOVAL	100	REMOVAL	113
INSTALLATION	101	INSTALLATION	114
<b>COLLAPSIBLE SPACER</b>		<b>PINION GEAR/RING GEAR</b>	
REMOVAL	102	REMOVAL	114
INSTALLATION	102	INSTALLATION	116
<b>DIFFERENTIAL</b>			
DESCRIPTION	104		

## REAR AXLE - 226RBA

### DESCRIPTION

The Rear Beam Aluminum (RBA) axle housing has a cast aluminum center differential housing with axle shaft tubes extending from either side. The tubes are pressed into the differential housing. The axles are semi-floating supported by the axle shaft and bearings.

### OPERATION

The axle receives power from the transfer case through the front propeller shaft. The front propeller shaft is connected to the pinion gear which rotates the differential through the gear mesh with the ring gear bolted to the differential case. The engine power is transmitted to the axle shafts through the pinion mate and side gears. The side gears are splined to the axle shafts.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING

### GEAR NOISE

Axle gear noise can be caused by insufficient lubricant, incorrect backlash, tooth contact, worn/damaged gears, or the carrier housing not having the proper offset and squareness.

Gear noise usually happens at a specific speed range. The noise can also occur during a specific type of driving condition. These conditions are acceleration, deceleration, coast, or constant load.

When road testing, first warm-up the axle fluid by driving the vehicle at least 5 miles and then accelerate the vehicle to the speed range where the noise is the greatest. Shift out-of-gear and coast through the peak-noise range. If the noise stops or changes greatly check for:

- Insufficient lubricant.
- Incorrect ring gear backlash.
- Gear damage.

Differential side and pinions gears, usually do not cause noise during straight-ahead driving, when the gears are unloaded. The side gears are loaded during

## REAR AXLE - 226RBA (Continued)

turns. A worn pinion mate shaft can also cause a snapping or a knocking noise.

### BEARING NOISE

Bearing noise can be either a whining or a growling sound.

Pinion bearings have a constant high pitch noise, because it rotates at a faster rate. This noise changes with vehicle speed. If noise is heard under a load, the rear pinion bearing is the source. If noise is heard during a coast, the front pinion bearing is the source.

Differential bearings usually produce a low pitch noise. The differential bearing noise is constant and varies only with vehicle speed.

Axle shaft bearing noise generally changes when the bearings are loaded. Turn vehicle sharply to the left and the right during a road test. This will load and unload the bearings and change the noise level. If axle bearing damage is slight, the noise is usually not noticeable at speeds above 30 m.p.h.

### LOW SPEED KNOCK

Low speed knock is generally caused by:

- Worn U-joint.
- Worn side-gear thrust washers.
- Worn pinion shaft bore.

### VIBRATION

Vibration at the rear of the vehicle is usually caused by a:

- Damaged drive shaft.
- Missing drive shaft balance weight(s).
- Worn or out-of-balance wheels.
- Loose wheel lug nuts.

- Worn U-joint(s).
- Loose/broken springs.
- Damaged axle shaft bearing(s).
- Loose pinion gear nut.
- Excessive pinion yoke run out.
- Bent axle shaft(s).

Check for loose or damaged front-end components or engine/transmission mounts. These components can contribute to what appears to be a rear-end vibration. Also look at engine accessories, brackets and drive belts.

**NOTE: All driveline components should be examined before starting any repair.**

### DRIVELINE SNAP

A snap or clunk noise when the vehicle is shifted into gear (or the clutch engaged), can be caused by:

- High engine idle speed.
- Transmission shift operation.
- Loose engine/transmission/transfer case mounts.
- Worn U-joints.
- Loose spring mounts.
- Loose pinion gear nut and yoke.
- Excessive ring gear backlash.
- Excessive side gear to case clearance.

The source of a snap or a clunk noise can be determined with the assistance of a helper. Raise the vehicle on a hoist with the wheels free to rotate. Instruct the helper to shift the transmission into gear. Listen for the noise, a mechanics stethoscope is helpful in isolating the source of a noise.

## REAR AXLE - 226RBA (Continued)

## DIAGNOSTIC CHART

Condition	Possible Causes	Correction
Wheel Noise	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Wheel loose.</li> <li>2. Faulty, brinelled wheel bearing.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Tighten loose nuts.</li> <li>2. Replace bearing.</li> </ol>
Axle Shaft Noise	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Misaligned axle tube.</li> <li>2. Bent or sprung axle shaft.</li> <li>3. End-play in pinion bearings.</li> <li>4. Excessive gear backlash between the ring gear and pinion.</li> <li>5. Improper adjustment of pinion gear bearings.</li> <li>6. Loose pinion yoke nut.</li> <li>7. Scuffed gear tooth contact surfaces.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Inspect axle tube alignment. Correct as necessary.</li> <li>2. Inspect and correct as necessary.</li> <li>3. Refer to pinion pre-load information and correct as necessary.</li> <li>4. Check adjustment of the ring gear and pinion backlash. Correct as necessary.</li> <li>5. Adjust the pinion bearings pre-load.</li> <li>6. Tighten the pinion yoke nut.</li> <li>7. Inspect and replace as necessary.</li> </ol>
Axle Shaft Broke	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Misaligned axle tube.</li> <li>2. Vehicle overloaded.</li> <li>3. Erratic clutch operation.</li> <li>4. Grabbing clutch.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Replace the broken shaft after correcting tube mis-alignment.</li> <li>2. Replace broken shaft and avoid excessive weight on vehicle.</li> <li>3. Replace broken shaft and avoid or correct erratic clutch operation.</li> <li>4. Replace broken shaft and inspect and repair clutch as necessary.</li> </ol>
Differential Cracked	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Improper adjustment of the differential bearings.</li> <li>2. Excessive ring gear backlash.</li> <li>3. Vehicle overloaded.</li> <li>4. Erratic clutch operation.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Replace case and inspect gears and bearings for further damage. Set differential bearing pre-load properly.</li> <li>2. Replace case and inspect gears and bearings for further damage. Set ring gear backlash properly.</li> <li>3. Replace case and inspect gears and bearings for further damage. Avoid excessive vehicle weight.</li> <li>4. Replace case and inspect gears and bearings for further damage. Avoid erratic use of clutch.</li> </ol>
Differential Gears Scored	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Insufficient lubrication.</li> <li>2. Improper grade of lubricant.</li> <li>3. Excessive spinning of one wheel/tire.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Replace scored gears. Fill differential with the correct fluid type and quantity.</li> <li>2. Replace scored gears. Fill differential with the correct fluid type and quantity.</li> <li>3. Replace scored gears. Inspect all gears, pinion bores, and shaft for damage. Service as necessary.</li> </ol>

## REAR AXLE - 226RBA (Continued)

Condition	Possible Causes	Correction
Loss Of Lubricant	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Lubricant level too high.</li> <li>2. Worn axle shaft seals.</li> <li>3. Cracked differential housing.</li> <li>4. Worn pinion seal.</li> <li>5. Worn/scored yoke.</li> <li>6. Axle cover not properly sealed.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Drain lubricant to the correct level.</li> <li>2. Replace seals.</li> <li>3. Repair as necessary.</li> <li>4. Replace seal.</li> <li>5. Replace yoke and seal.</li> <li>6. Remove, clean, and re-seal cover.</li> </ol>
Axle Overheating	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Lubricant level low.</li> <li>2. Improper grade of lubricant.</li> <li>3. Bearing pre-loads too high.</li> <li>4. Insufficient ring gear backlash.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Fill differential to correct level.</li> <li>2. Fill differential with the correct fluid type and quantity.</li> <li>3. Re-adjust bearing pre-loads.</li> <li>4. Re-adjust ring gear backlash.</li> </ol>
Gear Teeth Broke	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Overloading.</li> <li>2. Erratic clutch operation.</li> <li>3. Ice-spotted pavement.</li> <li>4. Improper adjustments.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Replace gears. Examine other gears and bearings for possible damage.</li> <li>2. Replace gears and examine the remaining parts for damage. Avoid erratic clutch operation.</li> <li>3. Replace gears and examine remaining parts for damage.</li> <li>4. Replace gears and examine remaining parts for damage. Ensure ring gear backlash is correct.</li> </ol>
Axle Noise	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Insufficient lubricant.</li> <li>2. Improper ring gear and pinion adjustment.</li> <li>3. Unmatched ring gear and pinion.</li> <li>4. Worn teeth on ring gear and/or pinion.</li> <li>5. Loose pinion bearings.</li> <li>6. Loose differential bearings.</li> <li>7. Mis-aligned or sprung ring gear.</li> <li>8. Loose differential bearing cap bolts.</li> <li>9. Housing not machined properly.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Fill differential with the correct fluid type and quantity.</li> <li>2. Check ring gear and pinion contact pattern.</li> <li>3. Replace gears with a matched ring gear and pinion.</li> <li>4. Replace ring gear and pinion.</li> <li>5. Adjust pinion bearing pre-load.</li> <li>6. Adjust differential bearing pre-load.</li> <li>7. Measure ring gear run-out. Replace components as necessary.</li> <li>8. Inspect differential components and replace as necessary. Ensure that the bearing caps are torqued to the proper specification.</li> <li>9. Replace housing.</li> </ol>



## REAR AXLE - 226RBA (Continued)

## REMOVAL

- (1) Raise and support the vehicle.
- (2) Position a lifting device under the axle and secure axle.
- (3) Remove the wheels and tires.
- (4) Remove brake calipers and rotors.
- (5) Disconnect parking brake cables from brackets and lever.
- (6) Remove wheel speed sensors.
- (7) Remove brake hose at the axle junction block. Do not disconnect the brake hydraulic lines at the calipers.
- (8) Disconnect the vent hose from the axle shaft tube.
- (9) Mark propeller shaft and yokes for installation reference.
- (10) Remove propeller shaft.
- (11) Disconnect stabilizer bar links.
- (12) Remove upper suspension arm rear axle ball joint nut.
- (13) Separate rear axle ball joint from the upper suspension arm with Remover 8278 (Fig. 1).

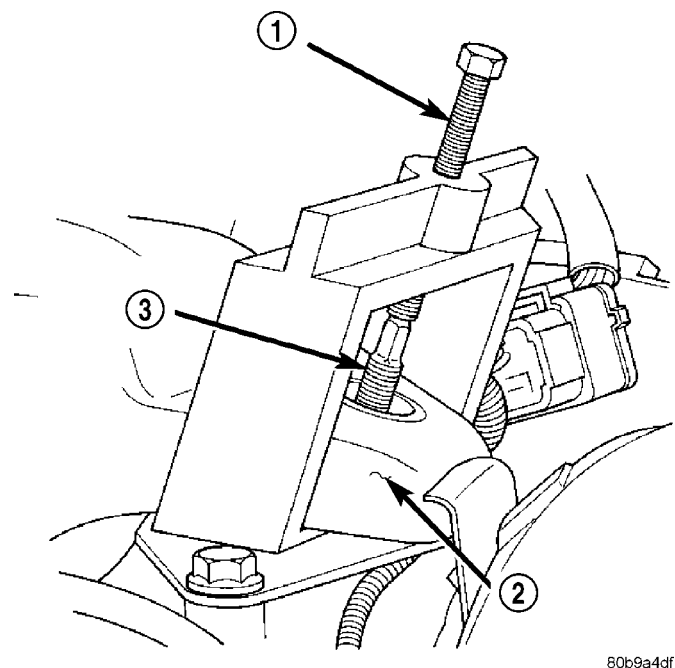


Fig. 1 REAR BALL JOINT

- 1 - REMOVER
- 2 - UPPER SUSPENSION ARM
- 3 - BALL JOINT STUD

- (14) Disconnect shock absorbers from axle.
- (15) Disconnect track bar.
- (16) Disconnect lower suspension arms from the axle brackets.
- (17) Separate the axle from the vehicle.

## INSTALLATION

**CAUTION:** The weight of the vehicle must be supported by the springs before suspension arms and track bar fasteners are tightened. If springs are not at their normal ride position, vehicle ride height and handling could be affected.

- (1) Raise axle with lift and align coil springs.
- (2) Install lower suspension arms in axle brackets. Install nuts and bolts, do not tighten bolts at this time.
- (3) Install upper suspension arm on rear axle ball joint.
- (4) Install rear axle ball joint nut and tighten to 122 N·m (90 ft.lbs.) (Fig. 2).

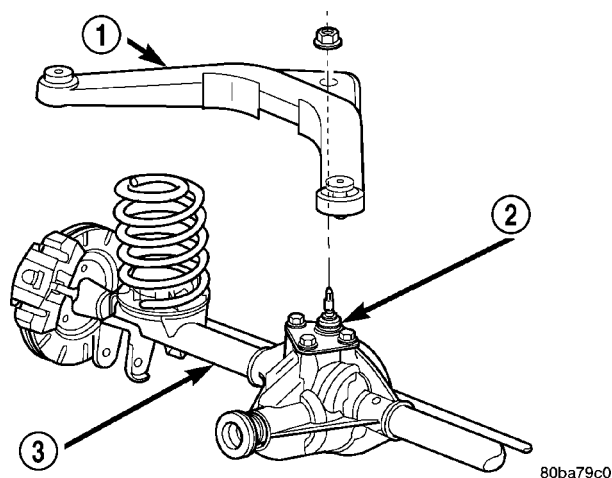


Fig. 2 REAR BALL JOINT NUT

- 1 - UPPER SUSPENSION ARM
- 2 - REAR AXLE BALL JOINT
- 3 - REAR AXLE

- (5) Install track bar and attachment bolts, do not tighten bolts at this time.
- (6) Install shock absorbers and tighten nuts to 60 N·m (44 ft. lbs.).
- (7) Install stabilizer bar links and tighten nuts to 36 N·m (27 ft. lbs.).
- (8) Install wheel speed sensors.
- (9) Connect parking brake cable to brackets and lever.
- (10) Install brake rotors and calipers.
- (11) Install the brake hose to the axle junction block.
- (12) Install axle vent hose.
- (13) Align propeller shaft and pinion yoke reference marks. Install U-joint straps and nuts tighten to 19 N·m (14 ft. lbs.).
- (14) Install the wheels and tires.
- (15) Add gear lubricant, if necessary.
- (16) Remove support and lower the vehicle.

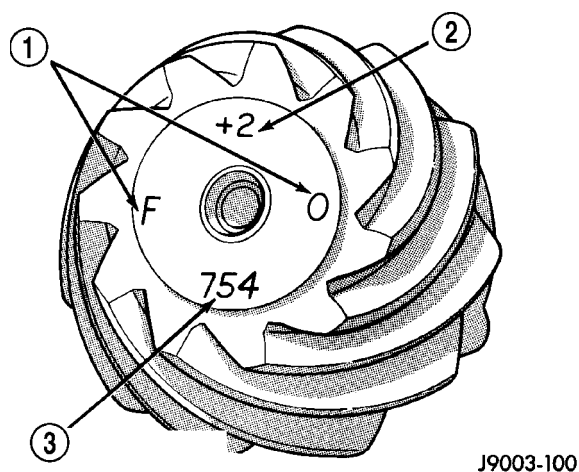
## REAR AXLE - 226RBA (Continued)

(17) Tighten lower suspension arm bolts to 177 N·m (130 ft. lbs.).

(18) Tighten track bar bolts to 100 N·m (74 ft. lbs.).

**ADJUSTMENTS**

Ring and pinion gears are supplied as matched sets. Identifying numbers for the ring and pinion gear are etched into the face of each gear (Fig. 3). A plus (+) number, minus (-) number or zero (0) is etched into the face of the pinion gear. This number is the amount (in thousandths of an inch) the depth varies from the standard depth setting of a pinion etched with a (0). The standard depth provides the best gear tooth contact pattern.

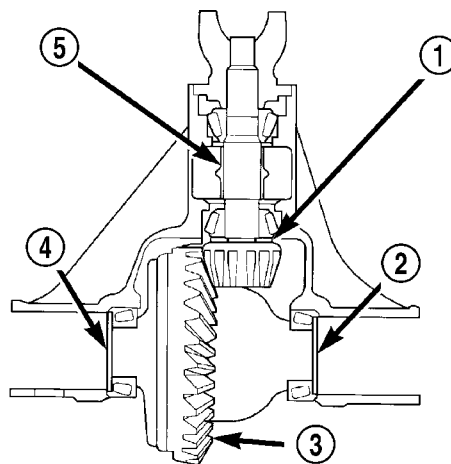


**Fig. 3 PINION GEAR ID NUMBERS**

- 1 - PRODUCTION NUMBERS
- 2 - DRIVE PINION GEAR DEPTH VARIANCE
- 3 - GEAR MATCHING NUMBER

Compensation for pinion depth variance is achieved with a select shim/oil baffle. The shims are

placed between the rear pinion bearing and the pinion gear head (Fig. 4).



80a5037a

**Fig. 4 ADJUSTMENT SHIM LOCATIONS**

- 1 - PINION GEAR DEPTH SHIM
- 2 - DIFFERENTIAL BEARING SHIM
- 3 - RING GEAR
- 4 - DIFFERENTIAL BEARING SHIM
- 5 - COLLAPSIBLE SPACER

If installing a new gear, note the depth variance number of the original and replacement pinion. Add or subtract this number from the original depth shim/oil slinger to compensate for the difference in the depth variances. The numbers represent thousands of an inch deviation from the standard. If the number is negative, add that value to the required thickness of the depth shims. If the number is positive, subtract that value from the thickness of the depth shim.

## REAR AXLE - 226RBA (Continued)

**Pinion Gear Depth Variance Chart:** Note where Old and New Pinion Marking columns intersect.

Intersecting figure represents plus or minus the amount needed.

PINION GEAR DEPTH VARIANCE

Original Pinion Gear Depth Variance	Replacement Pinion Gear Depth Variance								
	-4	-3	-2	-1	0	+1	+2	+3	+4
<b>+4</b>	+0.008	+0.007	+0.006	+0.005	+0.004	+0.003	+0.002	+0.001	0
<b>+3</b>	+0.007	+0.006	+0.005	+0.004	+0.003	+0.002	+0.001	0	-0.001
<b>+2</b>	+0.006	+0.005	+0.004	+0.003	+0.002	+0.001	0	-0.001	-0.002
<b>+1</b>	+0.005	+0.004	+0.003	+0.002	+0.001	0	-0.001	-0.002	-0.003
<b>0</b>	+0.004	+0.003	+0.002	+0.001	0	-0.001	-0.002	-0.003	-0.004
<b>-1</b>	+0.003	+0.002	+0.001	0	-0.001	-0.002	-0.003	-0.004	-0.005
<b>-2</b>	+0.002	+0.001	0	-0.001	-0.002	-0.003	-0.004	-0.005	-0.006
<b>-3</b>	+0.001	0	-0.001	-0.002	-0.003	-0.004	-0.005	-0.006	-0.007
<b>-4</b>	0	-0.001	-0.002	-0.003	-0.004	-0.005	-0.006	-0.007	-0.008

## PINION DEPTH MEASUREMENT

Measurements are taken with pinion bearing cups and pinion bearings installed in the housing. Take measurements with Pinion Gauge Set 6775 and Dial Indicator C-3339 (Fig. 5).

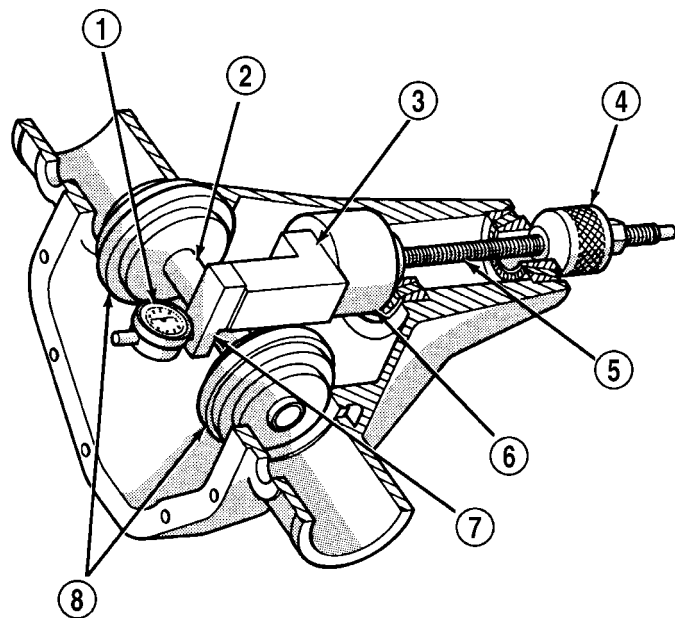


Fig. 5 PINION GEAR DEPTH GAUGE

J9403-45

- 1 - DIAL INDICATOR
- 2 - ARBOR
- 3 - PINION HEIGHT BLOCK
- 4 - CONE
- 5 - SCREW
- 6 - PINION BLOCK
- 7 - SCOOTER BLOCK
- 8 - ARBOR DISC

(1) Assemble Pinion Height Block 6739, Pinion Block 8144 and rear pinion bearing onto Screw 6741.

(2) Insert assembled height gauge components, rear bearing and screw into the housing through pinion bearing cups (Fig. 6).

(3) Install front pinion bearing and Cone-nut 6740 hand tight.

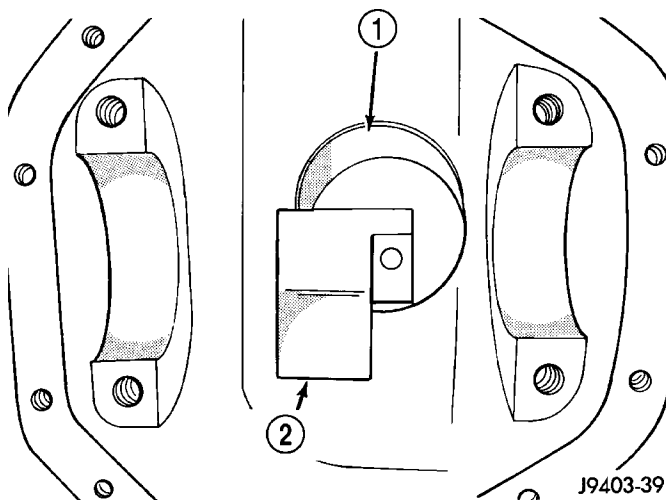


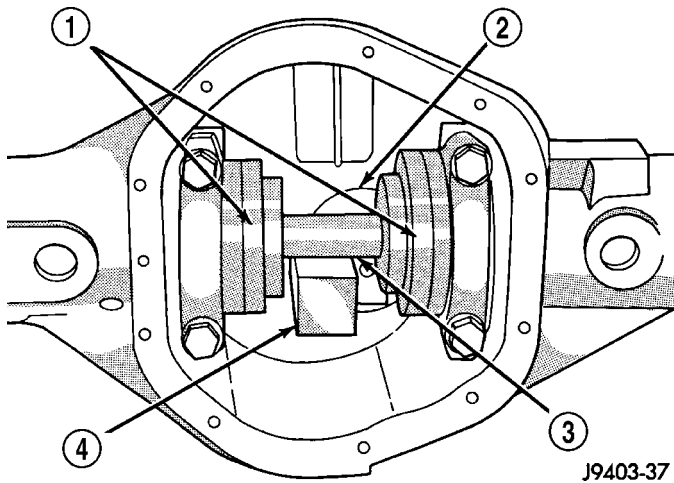
Fig. 6 PINION HEIGHT BLOCK

- 1 - PINION BLOCK
- 2 - PINION HEIGHT BLOCK

## REAR AXLE - 226RBA (Continued)

(4) Place Arbor Disc 6927A on Arbor D-115-3 in position in the housing side bearing cradles (Fig. 7). Install differential bearing caps in their original positions on arbor discs and tighten cap bolts to 85 N-m (63 ft. lbs.).

**NOTE:** Arbor Discs 6927A has different step diameters to fit other axles. Choose proper step for axle being serviced.



**Fig. 7 GAUGE TOOLS IN HOUSING**

- 1 - ARBOR DISC
- 2 - PINION BLOCK
- 3 - ARBOR
- 4 - PINION HEIGHT BLOCK

(5) Assemble Dial Indicator C-3339 into Scooter Block D-115-2 and secure set screw.

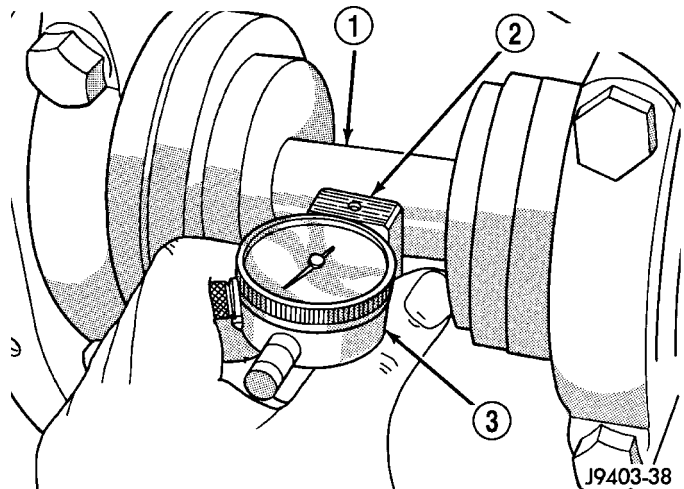
(6) Place Scooter Block/Dial Indicator in position in axle housing so dial probe and scooter block are flush against the rearward surface of the pinion height block (Fig. 5). Hold scooter block in place and zero the dial indicator face to the pointer.

(7) Slide the dial indicator probe across the gap between the pinion height block and the arbor bar with the scooter block against the pinion height block (Fig. 8). Continue moving the dial indicator probe to the crest of the arbor bar and record the highest reading.

(8) Select a depth shim equal to the dial indicator reading plus the pinion depth variance number etched in the face of the pinion (Fig. 3). For example, if the depth variance is -2, add +0.002 in. to the dial indicator reading.

### DIFFERENTIAL SIDE BEARING PRELOAD AND GEAR BACKLASH

Differential side bearing preload and gear backlash is achieved by selective shims positioned behind the differential side bearing cones. The proper shim



**Fig. 8 PINION GEAR DEPTH MEASUREMENT**

- 1 - ARBOR
- 2 - SCOOTER BLOCK
- 3 - DIAL INDICATOR

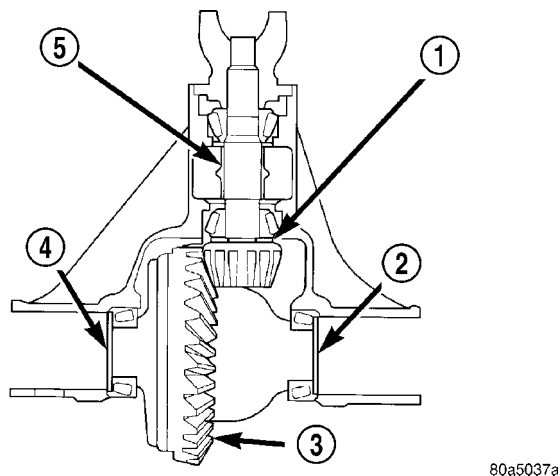
thickness can be determined using slip-fit Dummy Bearings 6929-A in place of the differential side bearings and a Dial Indicator C-3339. Before measuring differential bearing preload and gear backlash, measure pinion gear depth and prepare pinion for installation. Pinion gear depth is essential to establishing gear backlash and tooth contact patterns. After measuring shim thickness to take up differential side play, install pinion and measure gear backlash shim thickness. Overall shim thickness is the dial indicator reading and preload specification added together. The gear backlash measurement determines the shim thickness used on the ring gear side of the differential case. Subtract gear backlash shim thickness from overall shim thickness to determine shim thickness for pinion gear side of the differential (Fig. 9). Differential shim measurements are performed with the spreader W-129-B removed.

### SHIM SELECTION

**NOTE:** It is difficult to salvage the differential side bearings during the removal procedure. Install replacement bearings if necessary.

- (1) Remove differential side bearings from differential case.
- (2) Install ring gear on differential case and tighten bolts to specification.
- (3) Install Dummy Bearings 6929-A on differential case.
- (4) Install differential case in the housing.

## REAR AXLE - 226RBA (Continued)

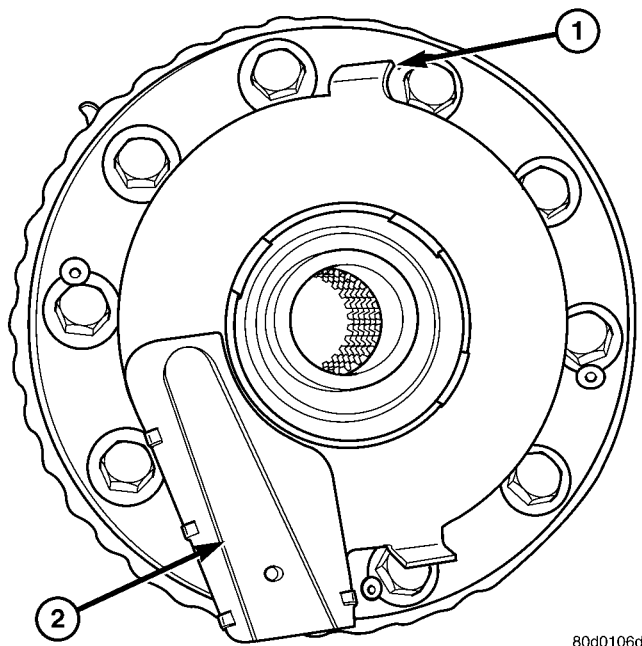


80a5037a

**Fig. 9 ADJUSTMENT SHIM LOCATIONS**

- 1 - PINION GEAR DEPTH SHIM
- 2 - DIFFERENTIAL BEARING SHIM
- 3 - RING GEAR
- 4 - DIFFERENTIAL BEARING SHIM
- 5 - COLLAPSIBLE SPACER

**CAUTION:** On a Vari-lok® differential the oil feed tube must be pointed at the bottom of the housing (Fig. 10). If differential is installed with the oil feed tube pointed at the top, the anti-rotation tabs will be damaged.

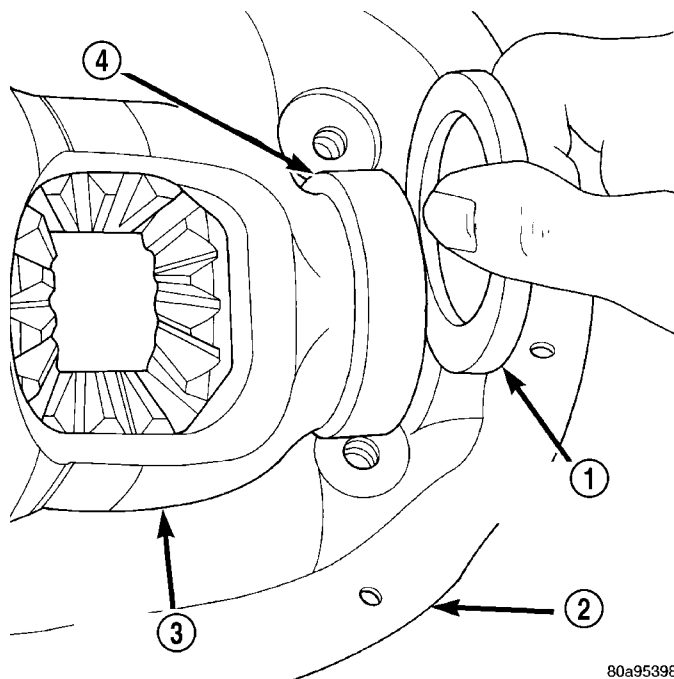


80d0106d

**Fig. 10 VARI-LOK**

- 1 - ANTI-ROTATION TAB
- 2 - OIL FEED TUBE

(5) Record the thickness of Dummy Shims 8107, then insert the shims between the dummy bearings and the differential housing (Fig. 11).

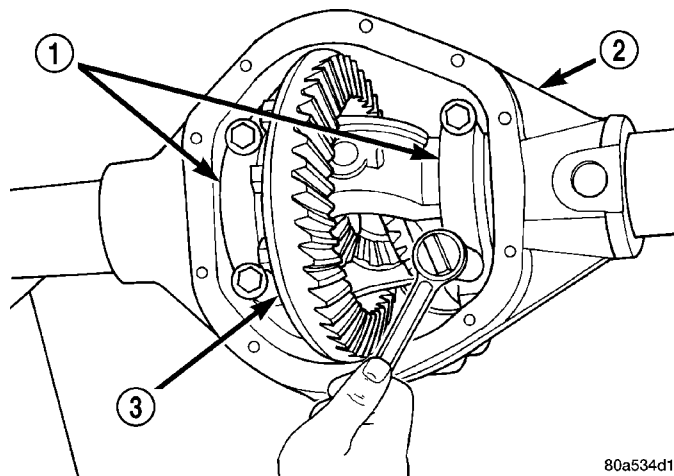


80a95398

**Fig. 11 DUMMY SHIM LOCATION**

- 1 - DUMMY SHIMS
- 2 - HOUSING
- 3 - DIFFERENTIAL CASE
- 4 - DUMMY BEARINGS

(6) Install the bearing caps in their original positions and snug the bolts (Fig. 12).



80a534d1

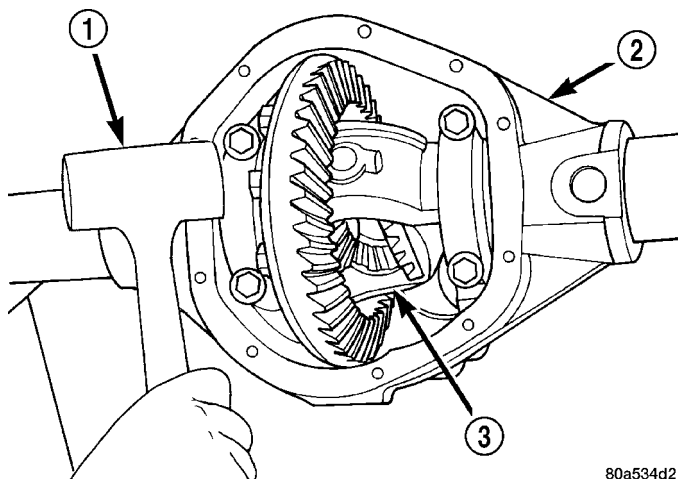
**Fig. 12 BEARING CAP BOLTS**

- 1 - BEARING CAPS
- 2 - HOUSING
- 3 - DIFFERENTIAL CASE



## REAR AXLE - 226RBA (Continued)

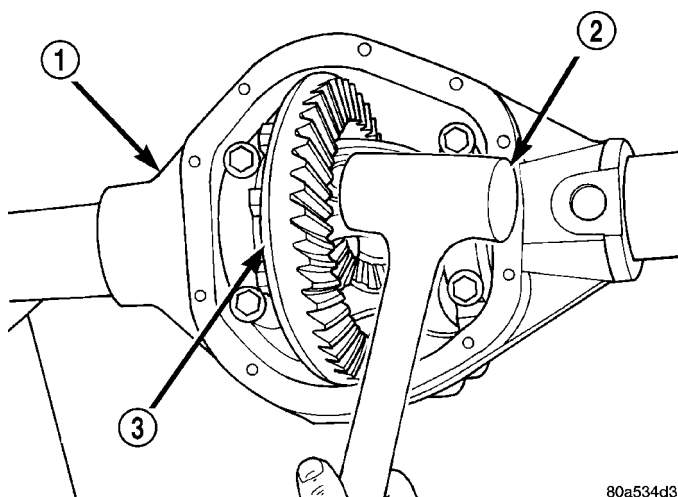
(7) With a dead-blow hammer, seat the differential dummy bearings to each side of the housing (Fig. 13) and (Fig. 14).



80a534d2

**Fig. 13 SEAT DUMMY BEARING PINION GEAR SIDE**

- 1 - HAMMER
- 2 - HOUSING
- 3 - DIFFERENTIAL CASE



80a534d3

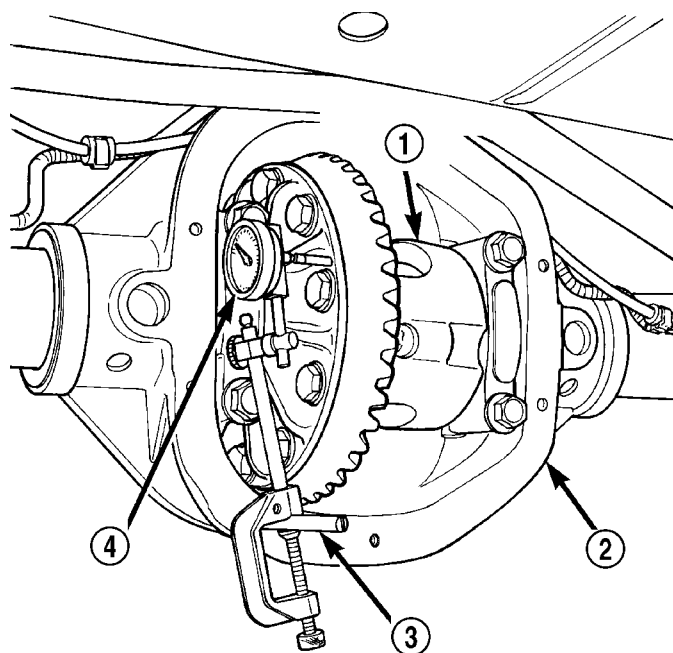
**Fig. 14 SEAT DUMMY BEARING RING GEAR SIDE**

- 1 - HOUSING
- 2 - HAMMER
- 3 - DIFFERENTIAL CASE

(8) Thread Pilot Stud C-3288-B into rear cover bolt hole below ring gear (Fig. 15).

(9) Attach the Dial Indicator C-3339 to pilot stud and position the indicator plunger on the flat surface between the ring gear bolts (Fig. 15).

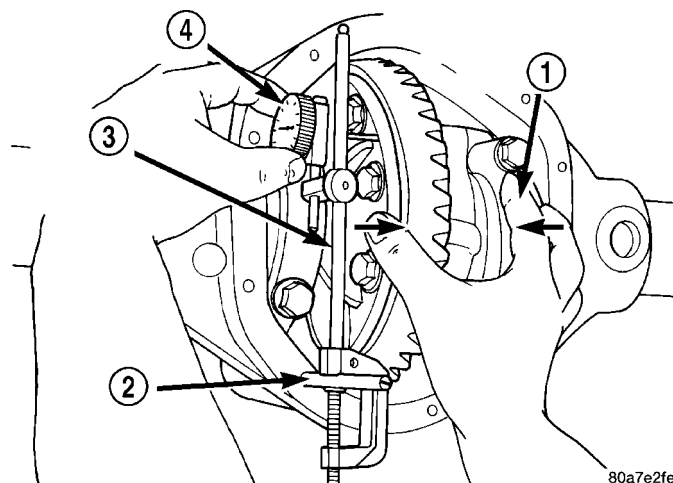
(10) Push and hold differential case to pinion gear side of the housing and zero dial indicator (Fig. 16).



80a7e2cf

**Fig. 15 DIFFERENTIAL SIDE PLAY MEASUREMENT**

- 1 - DIFFERENTIAL CASE
- 2 - HOUSING
- 3 - PILOT STUD
- 4 - DIAL INDICATOR



80a7e2fe

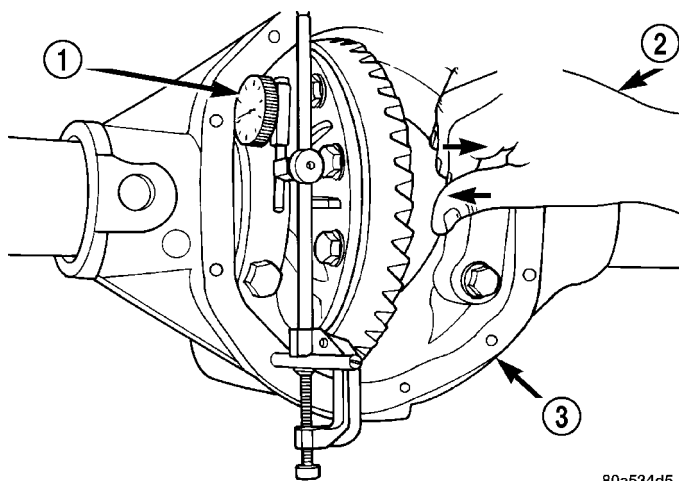
**Fig. 16 ZERO DIAL INDICATOR**

- 1 - HOLD DIFFERENTIAL CASE TO PINION GEAR SIDE
- 2 - PILOT STUD
- 3 - DIAL INDICATOR
- 4 - DIAL INDICATOR FACE



## REAR AXLE - 226RBA (Continued)

(11) Push and hold differential case to ring gear side of the housing and record dial indicator reading (Fig. 17).



80a534d5

**Fig. 17 RECORD DIAL INDICATOR READING**

- 1 - DIAL INDICATOR
- 2 - HOLD DIFFERENTIAL CASE TO RING GEAR SIDE
- 3 - DIFFERENTIAL HOUSING

(12) Add 0.0254 mm (0.001 in.) to the zero end play total. This new total represents the thickness of shims to preload the new bearings when the differential is installed.

(13) Rotate dial indicator out of the way on the pilot stud.

(14) Remove differential case and dummy bearings from the housing.

(15) Install the pinion gear in the housing. Install the pinion yoke and establish the correct pinion rotating torque.

(16) Install differential case and Dummy Bearings 6929-A in the housing.

(17) Install a single dummy shim in the ring gear side. Install bearing caps and tighten bolts snug.

(18) Seat ring gear side dummy bearing.

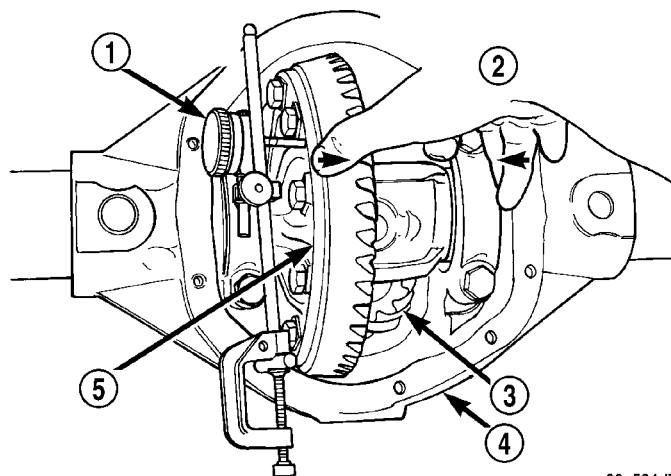
(19) Position the dial indicator plunger on a flat surface between the ring gear bolt heads. (Fig. 15).

(20) Push and hold differential case toward pinion gear and zero dial indicator (Fig. 18).

(21) Push and hold differential case to ring gear side of the housing and record dial indicator reading (Fig. 19). Add Dummy Shim thickness to this reading. This will be the total shim thickness to achieve zero backlash.

(22) Subtract 0.152 mm (0.006 in.) from the dial indicator reading to compensate for backlash between ring and pinion gears. This total is the thickness shim required to achieve proper backlash.

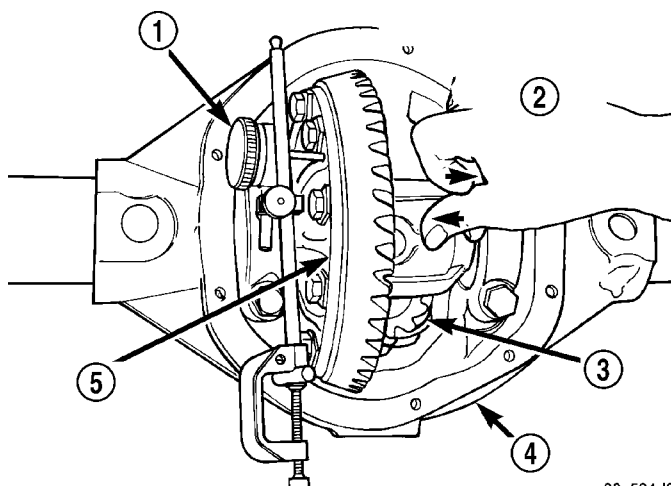
(23) Subtract backlash shim thickness from the total preload shim thickness. The remainder is the shim thickness required on the pinion side of the housing.



80a534d7

**Fig. 18 ZERO DIAL INDICATOR**

- 1 - DIAL INDICATOR FACE
- 2 - HOLD DIFFERENTIAL CASE TO PINION GEAR SIDE
- 3 - PINION GEAR
- 4 - HOUSING
- 5 - DIFFERENTIAL CASE



80a534d8

**Fig. 19 RECORD DIAL INDICATOR READING**

- 1 - READ DIAL INDICATOR
- 2 - HOLD DIFFERENTIAL CASE TO RING GEAR SIDE
- 3 - PINION GEAR
- 4 - DIFFERENTIAL HOUSING
- 5 - DIFFERENTIAL CASE

(24) Rotate dial indicator out of the way on pilot stud.

(25) Remove differential case and dummy bearings from the housing.

(26) Install side bearings and cups on differential case.

(27) Install spreader W-129-B, utilizing some items from Adapter Set 6987, on the housing and spread axle opening enough to receive differential case.

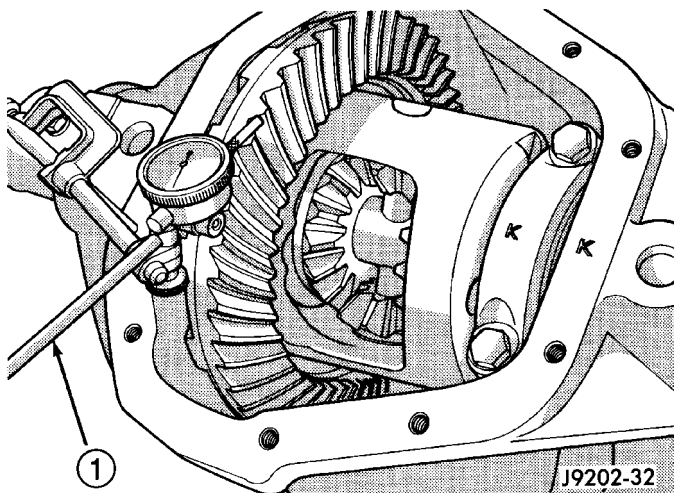
(28) Place the bearing preload shims in the housing against the axle tubes.

(29) Install differential case into the housing.

## REAR AXLE - 226RBA (Continued)

- (30) Remove spreader from housing.
- (31) Rotate the differential case several times to seat the side bearings.
- (32) Position the indicator plunger against a ring gear tooth (Fig. 20).
- (33) Push and hold ring gear upward while not allowing the pinion gear to rotate.
- (34) Zero dial indicator face to pointer.
- (35) Push and hold ring gear downward while not allowing the pinion gear to rotate. Dial indicator reading should be between 0.076 mm (0.003 in.) and 0.15 mm (0.006 in.). If backlash is not within specifications transfer the necessary amount of shim thickness from one side of the housing to the other (Fig. 21).
- (36) Verify differential case and ring gear runout by measuring ring to pinion gear backlash at eight locations around the ring gear. Readings should not vary more than 0.05 mm (0.002 in.). If readings vary more than specified, the ring gear or the differential case is defective.

After the proper backlash is achieved, perform Gear Contact Pattern procedure.



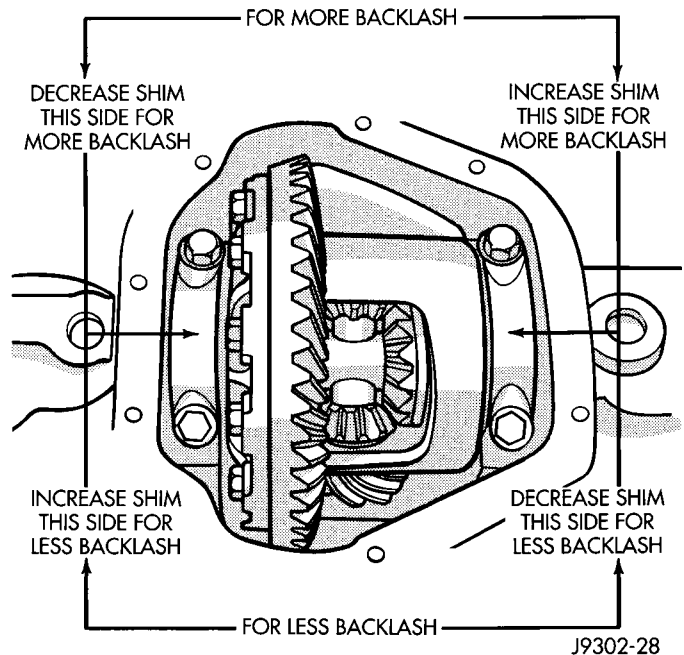
**Fig. 20 RING GEAR BACKLASH**

1 - DIAL INDICATOR

## GEAR CONTACT PATTERN

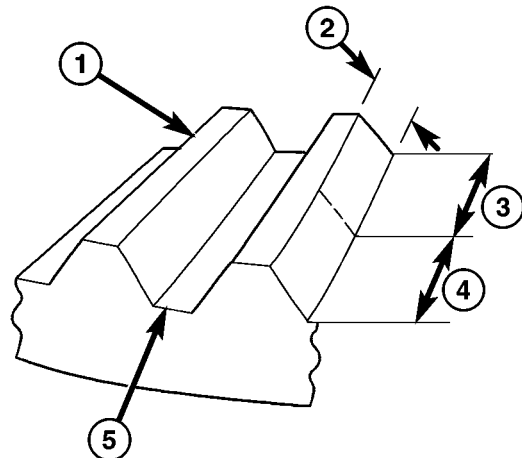
The ring gear and pinion teeth contact patterns will show if the pinion depth is correct in the axle housing. It will also show if the ring gear backlash has been adjusted correctly. The backlash can be adjusted within specifications to achieve desired tooth contact patterns.

The TOP LAND of the gear tooth is the top surface of the tooth. The PROFILE of the gear tooth is the depth of the tooth. The TOE of the gear is the portion of the tooth surface at the end towards the center. The HEEL of the gear is the portion of the tooth at the outer-end. The ROOT of the gear tooth is the lowest portion of the tooth (Fig. 22).



**Fig. 21 BACKLASH SHIM ADJUSTMENT**

**NOTE:** If the PROFILE across the tooth is the same it is a 3 Axis cut gear. If the PROFILE across the tooth is tapered it is a 2 Axis cut gear.



**Fig. 22 GEAR DESCRIPTION**

- 1 - TOP LAND
- 2 - PROFILE
- 3 - TOE
- 4 - HEEL
- 5 - ROOT

(1) Apply a thin coat of hydrated ferric oxide or equivalent to the drive and coast side of the ring gear teeth.

(2) Wrap, twist and hold a shop towel around the pinion yoke to increase the turning resistance of the pinion. This will provide a more distinct contact pattern.

810630a0

## REAR AXLE - 226RBA (Continued)


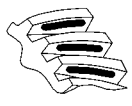








(3) With a boxed end wrench on a ring gear bolt, rotate the differential case one complete revolution in both directions while a load is being applied from shop towel.

The areas on the ring gear teeth with the greatest degree of contact against the pinion teeth will squeeze the compound to the areas with the least amount of contact. Note and compare patterns on the ring gear teeth to Gear Tooth Contact Patterns chart (Fig. 23) and adjust pinion depth and gear backlash as necessary.

## DIFFERENTIAL BEARING PRELOAD CHECK

The final check on the differential assembly before installing the axles is torque to rotate pinion and differential combined. This will verify the correct differential bearing preload.

Torque to rotate the differential and pinion should be the torque to rotate the pinion plus 0.79-1.24 N·m (7-11 in. lbs.).

DRIVE SIDE HEEL TOE	CONDITION	COAST SIDE TOE HEEL	CONDITION	ACTION REQUIRED
	<b>Desirable pattern.</b> The drive pattern should be centered on the tooth. There should be some clearance between the pattern and the top of the tooth.		<b>Desirable pattern.</b> The coast pattern should be centered on the tooth, but may be slightly toward the toe. There should be some clearance between the pattern and the top of the tooth.	None
	<b>Top toe contact</b>		<b>Top heel contact</b>	Backlash correct. Thicker pinion position shim required.
	<b>Root heel contact</b>		<b>Root toe contact</b>	Backlash correct. Thinner pinion position shim required.
	<b>Top heel contact</b>		<b>Top toe contact</b>	Pinion position shim correct. Decrease backlash.
	<b>Root toe contact</b>		<b>Root heel contact</b>	Pinion position shim correct. Increase backlash.

8106361d

Fig. 23 PATTERN INTERPRETATION (GEAR CUT 3 AXIS)

## SPECIFICATIONS

## AXLE SPECIFICATIONS

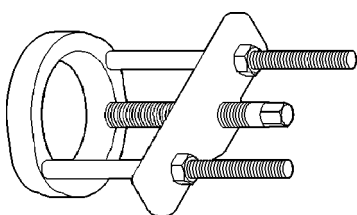
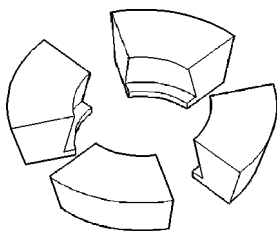
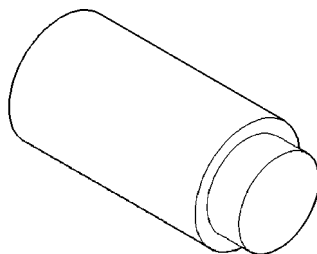
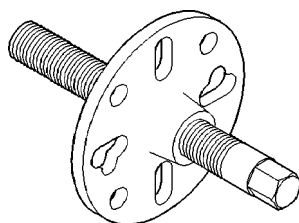
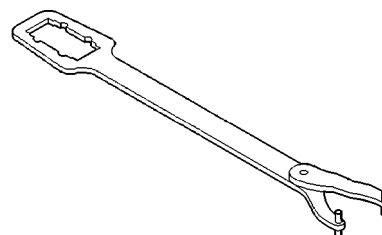
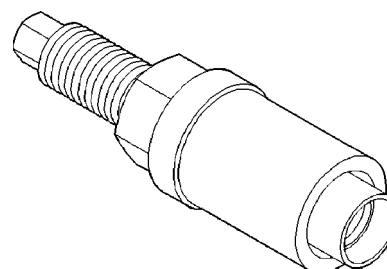
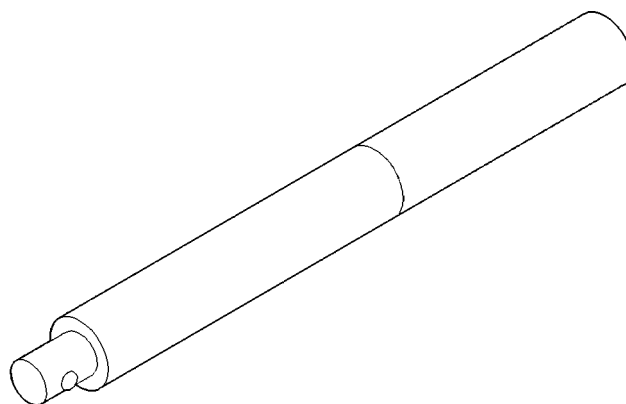
DESCRIPTION	SPECIFICATION
Axle Ratio	3.55, 3.73
Differential Bearing Preload	0.025 mm (0.001 in.)
Ring Gear Diameter	226 mm (8.9 in.)
Ring Gear Backlash	0.076-0.15 mm (0.003-0.006 in.)
Pinion Bearing Preload - Original Bearings	1-2 N·m (10-20 in. lbs.)
Pinion Bearing Preload - New Bearings	2.8-4 N·m (25-35 in. lbs.)

## REAR AXLE - 226RBA (Continued)

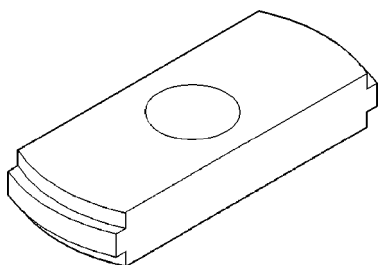
## TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS

DESCRIPTION	N-m	Ft. Lbs.	In. Lbs.
Differential Cover Bolts	41	30	-
Bearing Cap Bolts	85	63	-
Ring Gear Bolts	136	100	-
Pinion Nut Min / Max	298-380	220-280	-
Pinion Mate Shaft Screw	17.6	13	-
Axle Bearing Retainer Plate Nuts	61	45	-

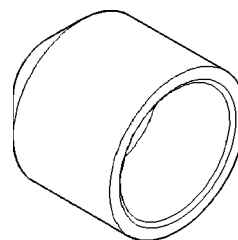
## SPECIAL TOOLS

**PULLER C-293-PA****ADAPTER 8353****PLUG C-293-3****PULLER C-452****FLANGE WRENCH C-3281****INSTALLER C-3718****HANDLE C-4171**

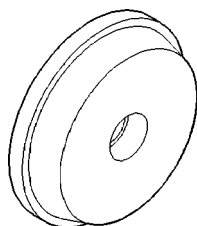
REAR AXLE - 226RBA (Continued)



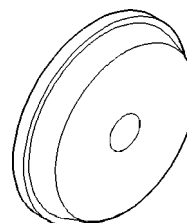
**REMOVER C-4307**



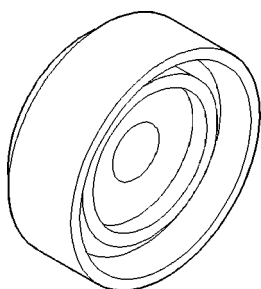
**INSTALLER C-3972-A**



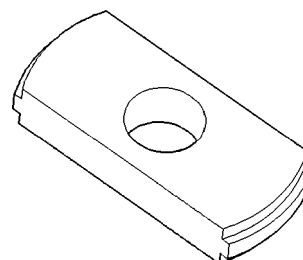
**INSTALLER C-4308**



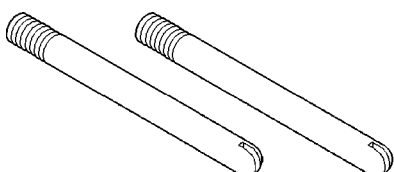
**INSTALLER D-129**



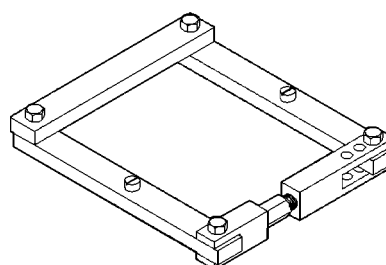
**INSTALLER C-4340**



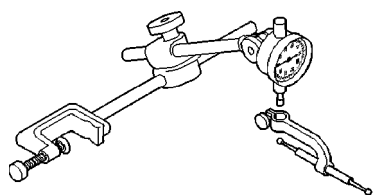
**REMOVER D-103**



**PILOT STUDS C-3288-B**

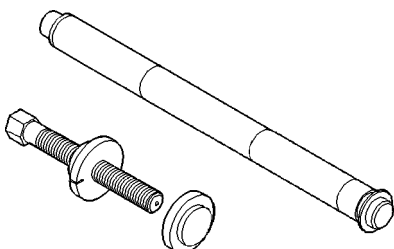


**SPREADER W-129-B**

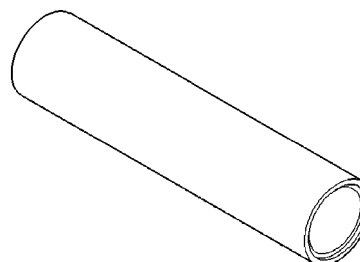


**DIAL INDICATOR C-3339**

8011042b

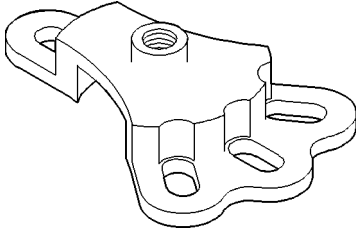


**TRAC-LOK TOOLS C-4487**

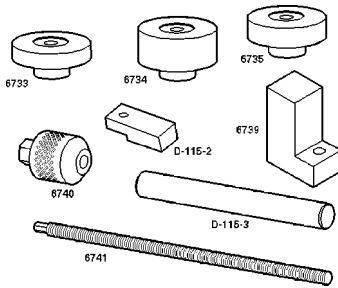


**INSTALLER 6448**

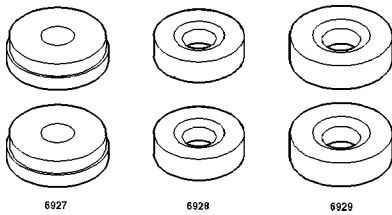
REAR AXLE - 226RBA (Continued)



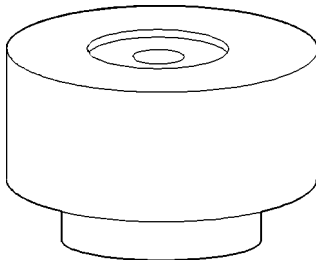
**PULLER 6790**



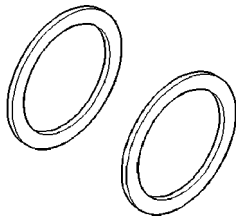
**PINION DEPTH SET 6955**



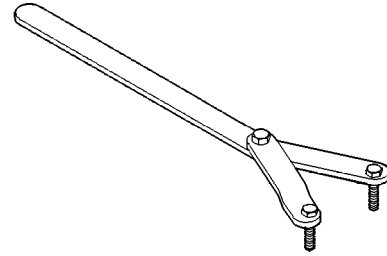
**DIFFERENTIAL TOOL SET 6956**



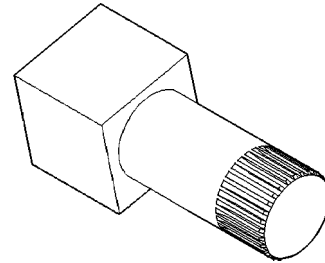
**PINION BLOCK 8144**



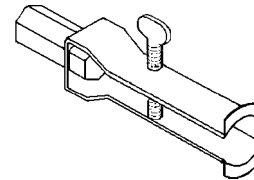
**DUMMY SHIMS 8107**



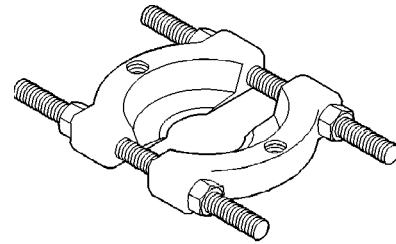
**SPANNER WRENCH 6958**



**FIXTURE 6963**

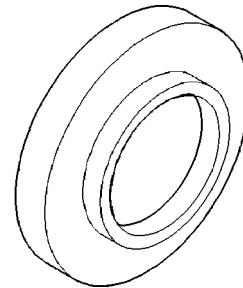


**REMOVER 7794-A**



1130-00109ac2

**SPLITTER 1130**



**INSTALLER 7913-A**



## AXLE SHAFTS

### REMOVAL

- (1) Place transmission in neutral.
- (2) Raise and support vehicle.
- (3) Remove wheel and tire assembly.
- (4) Remove brake caliper and rotor.
- (5) Remove nuts holding axle retainer plate to axle tube from the rear of the axle flange.
- (6) Pull axle shaft from the axle with Slide Hammer 7420 and Puller 6790. Mount the adapter to the axle with lug nuts.

**NOTE:** The axle bearing race is normally loose in the axle tube.

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Install axle into the axle tube with the flat area of the retainer plate upward.
- (2) Insert retaining plate studs into the brake backing plate and axle tube flange.
- (3) Install retainer nuts and tighten nuts to 61 N·m (45 ft. lbs.).
- (4) Install the brake rotor and caliper.
- (5) Install wheel and tire.
- (6) Check and fill the differential with gear lubricant.
- (7) Lower vehicle.

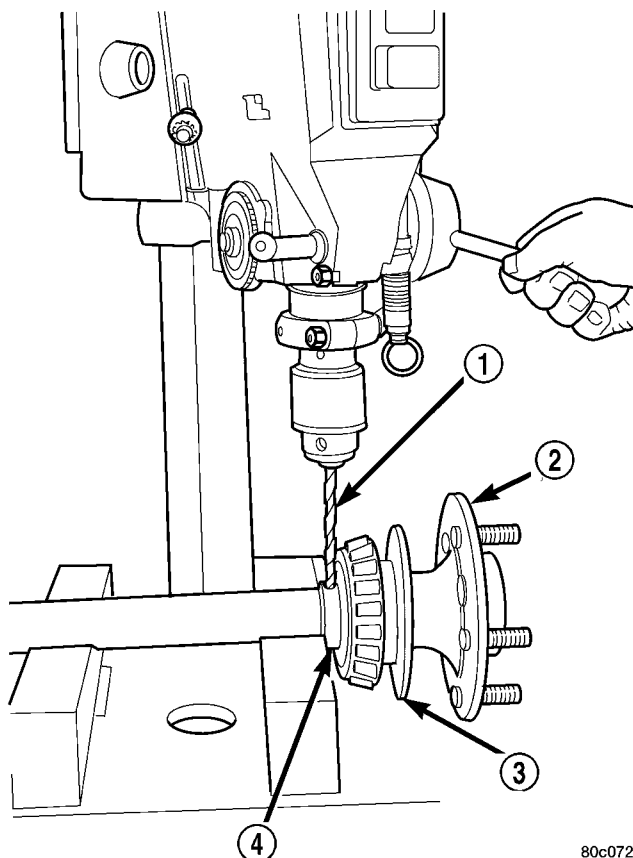
## AXLE BEARINGS/SEALS

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove axle shaft from vehicle.

**NOTE:** The axle bearing race is normally loose in the axle tube.

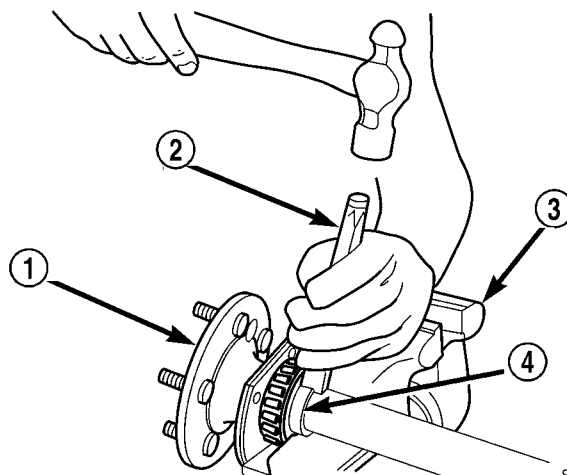
- (2) Drill a shallow hole into soft steel axle bearing retaining ring with a 3/8 in. drill bit (Fig. 24). Use a drill depth stop to avoid marking the axle.
- (3) With a cold chisel cut the retaining ring across drilled hole. (Fig. 25)
- (4) Slide retaining ring from axle shaft.



80c072eb

**Fig. 24 DRILL RETAINING RING**

- 1 - DRILL BIT
- 2 - AXLE
- 3 - RETAINING PLATE
- 4 - RETAINING RING



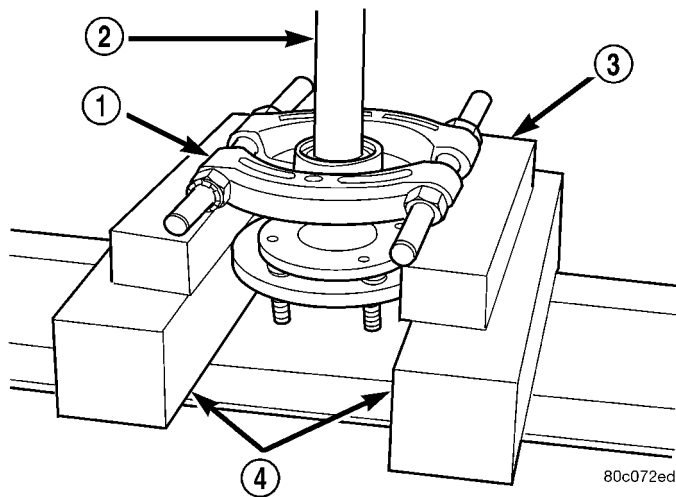
80c072ec

**Fig. 25 RETAINING RING**

- 1 - AXLE
- 2 - COLD CHISEL
- 3 - VISE
- 4 - RETAINING RING

## AXLE BEARINGS/SEALS (Continued)

(5) Remove axle bearing from the shaft with, a press and Splitter 1130 placed between the seal and bearing (Fig. 26).



**Fig. 26 AXLE BEARING AND SEAL**

- 1 - SPLITTER
- 2 - AXLE
- 3 - BLOCKS
- 4 - PRESS PLATES

(6) Remove seal from axle.

(7) Remove retaining plate from axle shaft.

## INSTALLATION

(1) Verify axle shaft retaining plate is flat with a straight edge.

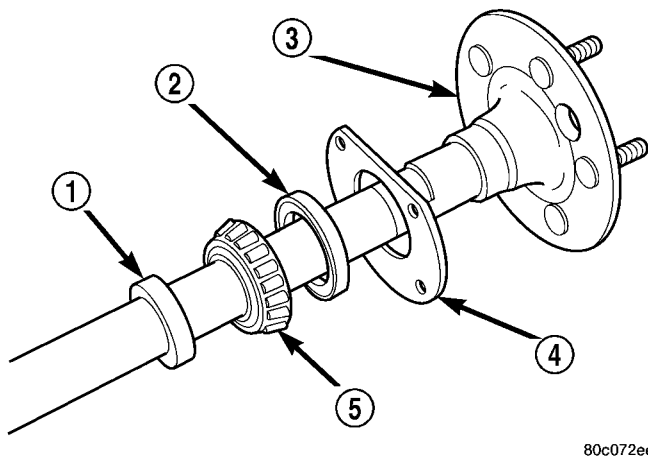
**NOTE:** If the plate is warped or the studs are loose in the plate replace the retaining plate.

(2) Install retaining plate on the axle shaft (Fig. 27).

(3) Apply a coat of multi-purpose grease on sealing surface of axle seal.

(4) Install seal on the axle shaft with cavity away from retaining plate (Fig. 27).

(5) Lubricate bearing with Mopar Wheel Bearing Grease or equivalent. Wipe excess grease from the bearing.

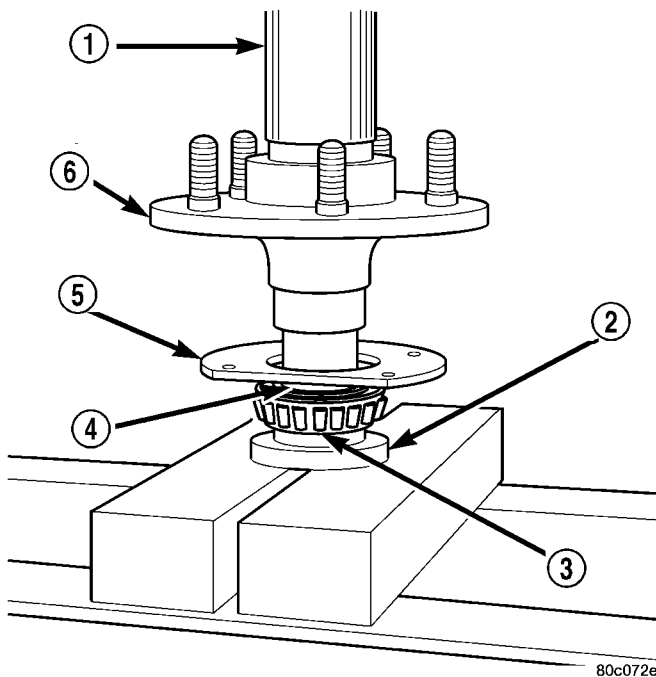


80c072ee

**Fig. 27 AXLE BEARING AND SEAL COMPONENTS**

- 1 - RETAINING RING
- 2 - SEAL
- 3 - AXLE
- 4 - RETAINING PLATE
- 5 - AXLE BEARING

(6) Install bearing on the axle shaft with Installer 7913-A and a press (Fig. 28).



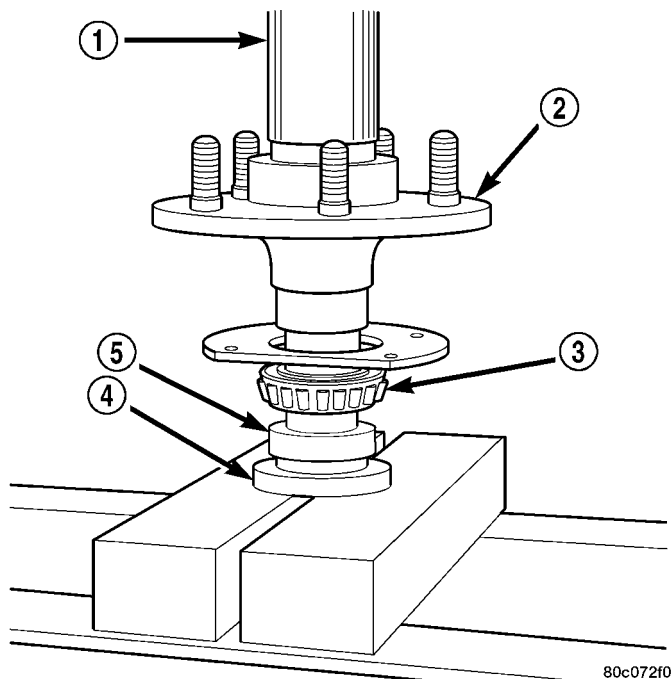
80c072ef

**Fig. 28 PRESS BEARING ON AXLE**

- 1 - PRESS RAM
- 2 - INSTALLER
- 3 - AXLE BEARING
- 4 - SEAL
- 5 - RETAINING PLATE
- 6 - AXLE

## AXLE BEARINGS/SEALS (Continued)

(7) Press metal retaining ring onto axle shaft with Installer 7913-A and a press (Fig. 29).



**Fig. 29 BEARING RETAINING RING**

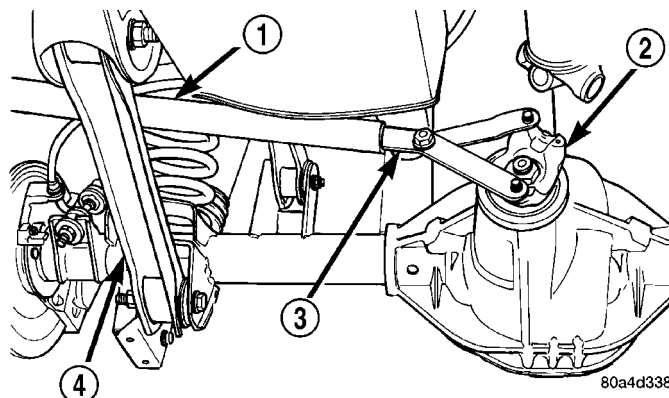
- 1 - PRESS
- 2 - AXLE
- 3 - AXLE BEARING
- 4 - INSTALLER
- 5 - METAL RETAINING RING

(8) Install axle in vehicle.

## PINION SEAL

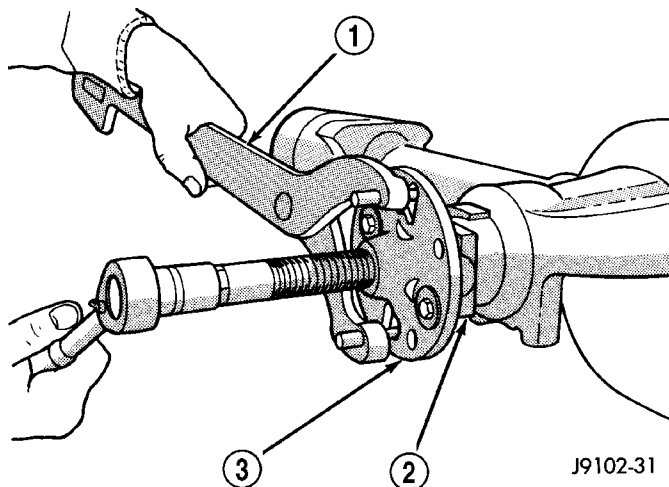
## REMOVAL

- (1) Raise and support the vehicle.
- (2) Remove wheel and tire assemblies.
- (3) Remove rear brake calipers and rotors.
- (4) Mark propeller shaft and pinion yoke for installation reference.
- (5) Remove the propeller shaft from the yoke.
- (6) Rotate pinion gear three or four times and verify that pinion rotates smoothly.
- (7) Record torque necessary to rotate the pinion gear with a inch pound dial-type torque wrench.
- (8) Using a short piece of pipe and Spanner Wrench 6958 to hold the pinion yoke and remove pinion nut and washer (Fig. 30).
- (9) Remove pinion companion flange with Remover C-452 and Flange Wrench C-3281. (Fig. 31)
- (10) Remove pinion seal with Remover 7794-A and a slide hammer (Fig. 32).



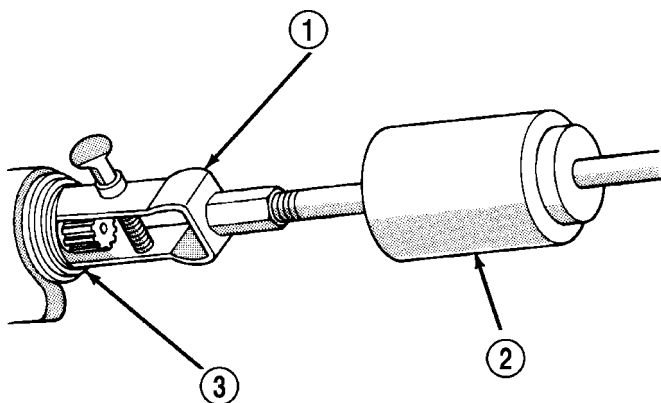
**Fig. 30 Pinion Yoke Holder**

- 1 - PIPE
- 2 - PINION YOKE
- 3 - SPANNER WRENCH
- 4 - LOWER CONTROL ARM



**Fig. 31 Pinion Yoke Remover**

- 1 - FLANGE WRENCH
- 2 - YOKE
- 3 - YOKE PULLER



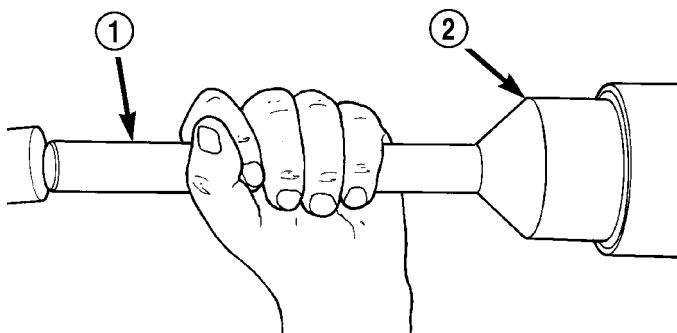
**Fig. 32 Pinion Seal Remover**

- 1 - REMOVER
- 2 - SLIDE HAMMER
- 3 - PINION SEAL

## PINION SEAL (Continued)

## INSTALLATION

(1) Apply a light coating of gear lubricant on the lip of pinion seal. Install seal with an appropriate installer (Fig. 33).

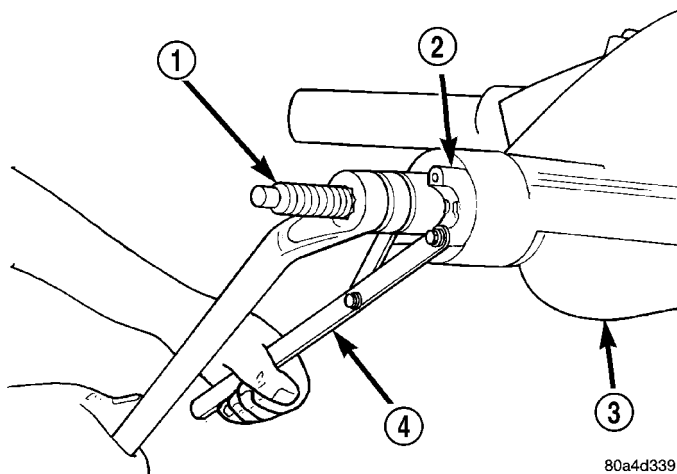


**Fig. 33 PINION SEAL INSTALLER**

80a7e2be

- 1 - HANDLE  
2 - INSTALLER

(2) Install yoke on the pinion gear with Installer C-3718 and Spanner Wrench 6958 (Fig. 34).



**Fig. 34 PINION YOE INSTALLER**

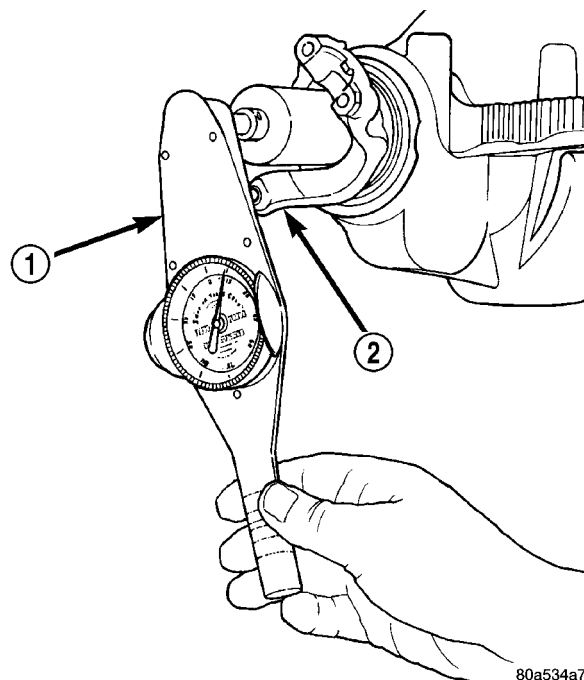
80a4d339

- 1 - INSTALLER  
2 - PINION YOE  
3 - DIFFERENTIAL HOUSING  
4 - SPANNER WRENCH

(3) Install a **new** nut on the pinion gear. **Tighten the nut only enough to remove the shaft end play.**

**CAUTION:** Do not exceed the minimum tightening torque 298 N·m (220 ft. lbs.) when installing the pinion yoke retaining nut at this point. Damage to bearings may result.

(4) Rotate the pinion a minimum of ten times and verify pinion rotates smoothly. Rotate the pinion shaft using an inch pound torque wrench. Rotating torque should be equal to the reading recorded during removal, plus 0.56 N·m (5 in. lbs.) (Fig. 35).



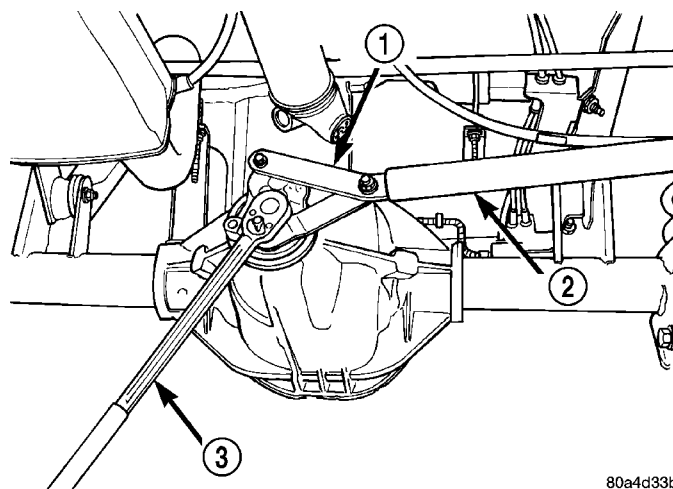
**Fig. 35 PINION ROTATING TORQUE**

80a534a7

- 1 - TORQUE WRENCH  
2 - PINION YOE

(5) If rotating torque is low, use Wrench 6958 to hold the pinion yoke (Fig. 36) and tighten the pinion shaft nut in 6.8 N·m (5 ft. lbs.) increments until rotating torque is achieved.

**CAUTION:** If the maximum tightening torque is reached prior to reaching the required rotating torque, the collapsible spacer may have been damaged. Replace the collapsible spacer.



80a4d33b

**Fig. 36 PINION SHAFT NUT**

- 1 - SPANNER WRENCH  
2 - PIPE  
3 - TORQUE WRENCH

## PINION SEAL (Continued)

- (6) Install propeller shaft with reference marks aligned.
- (7) Fill differential with gear lubricant.
- (8) Install the brake rotors and calipers.
- (9) Install wheel and tire assemblies.
- (10) Lower the vehicle.

## COLLAPSIBLE SPACER

## REMOVAL

- (1) Raise and support the vehicle.
- (2) Remove wheel and tire assemblies.
- (3) Remove rear brake calipers and rotors.
- (4) Mark propeller shaft and pinion yoke for installation reference and remove propeller shaft.
- (5) Rotate pinion gear a minimum of ten times and verify pinion rotates smoothly.
- (6) Record rotate torque of the pinion gear, with an inch pound torque wrench.
- (7) Hold pinion yoke with Spanner Wrench 6958 and remove pinion nut and washer (Fig. 37).

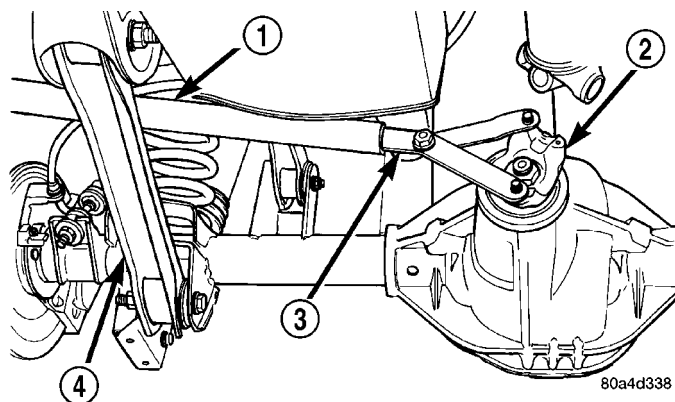


Fig. 37 PINION YOE HOLDER

- 1 - 1 in. PIPE
- 2 - PINION YOE
- 3 - SPANNER WRENCH
- 4 - LOWER CONTROL ARM

- (8) Remove pinion yoke with Remover C-452 and Wrench C-3281 (Fig. 38).

- (9) Remove pinion shaft seal with Remover 7794-A and slide hammer (Fig. 39).

- (10) Remove front pinion bearing using a pair of pick tools to pull the bearing off the pinion gear shaft.

**NOTE:** If the pinion bearing becomes bound on the pinion shaft, lightly tap the end of the shaft with a rawhide/rubber mallet.

- (11) Remove the collapsible spacer.

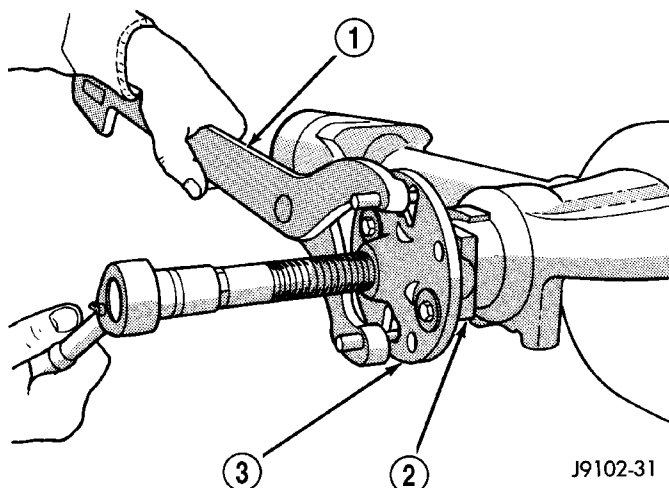


Fig. 38 PINION YOE PULLER

- 1 - WRENCH
- 2 - PINION YOE
- 3 - PULLER

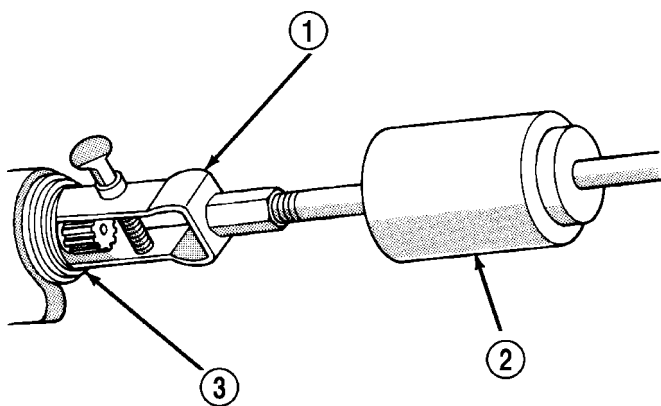


Fig. 39 PINION SEAL REMOVER

- 1 - REMOVER
- 2 - SLIDE HAMMER
- 3 - PINION SEAL

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Install a **new** collapsible spacer on pinion shaft.

- (2) Install pinion front bearing on the pinion shaft.

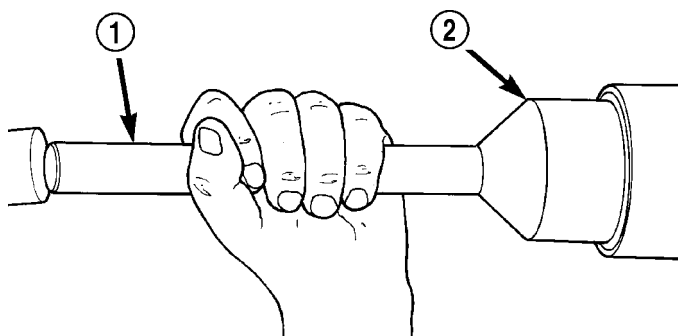
- (3) Apply a light coating of gear lubricant on the lip of pinion seal and install seal with an appropriate installer (Fig. 40).

- (4) Install yoke with Installer C-3718 and Spanner Wrench 6958 (Fig. 41).

- (5) Install yoke washer and **new** nut on the pinion gear. Tighten the nut to remove all end-play. Tighten the nut to a minimum torque of 298 N·m (220 ft. lbs.).



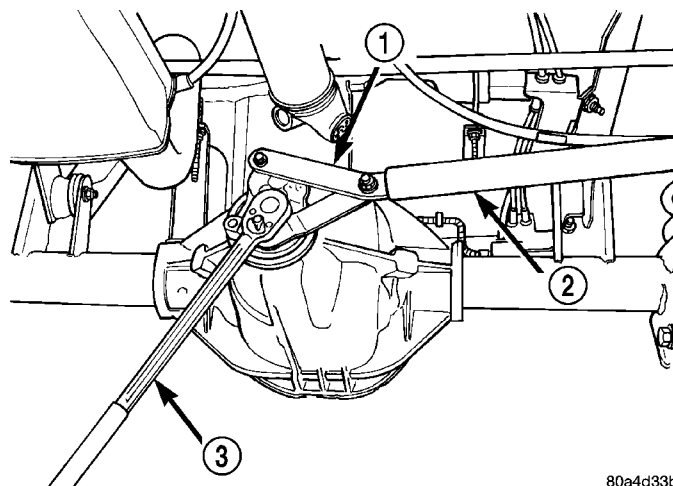
## COLLAPSIBLE SPACER (Continued)



80a7e2be

**Fig. 40 PINION SEAL INSTALLER**

- 1 - HANDLE  
2 - INSTALLER

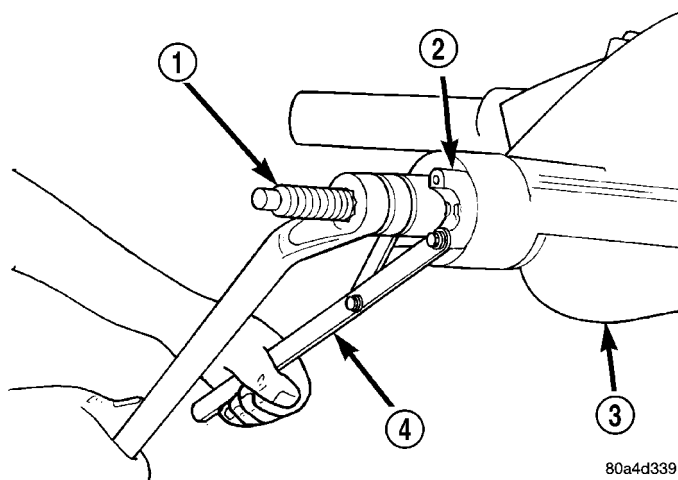


80a4d33b

**Fig. 42 PINION NUT**

- 1 - SPANNER WRENCH  
2 - PIPE  
3 - TORQUE WRENCH

pinion gear should be, the reading recorded during removal plus an additional 0.56 N·m (5 in. lbs.).



80a4d339

**Fig. 41 Pinion Yoke Installer**

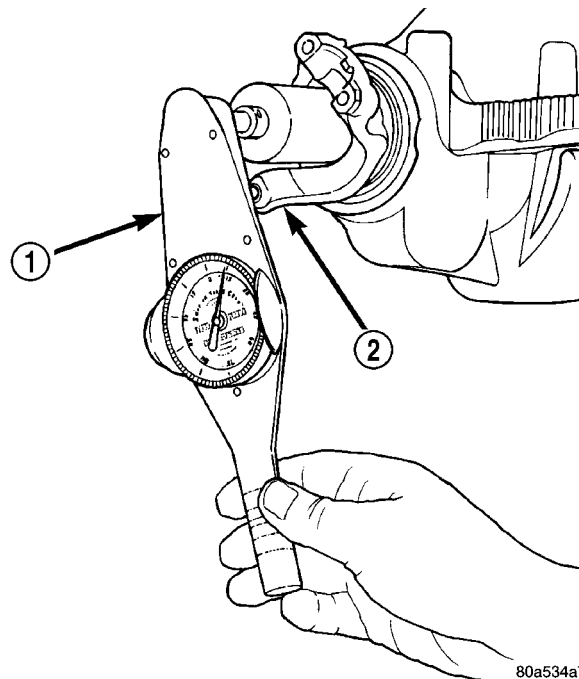
- 1 - INSTALLER  
2 - PINION YOKE  
3 - DIFFERENTIAL HOUSING  
4 - SPANNER WRENCH

**CAUTION:** Never loosen pinion gear nut to decrease pinion rotating torque and never exceed specified preload torque. If preload torque or rotating torque is exceeded a new collapsible spacer must be installed.

**NOTE:** New collapsible spacers require high initial torque to start the collapsing of the spacer. This may reach 678 N·m (500 ft. lbs.).

(6) Hold yoke with Spanner Wrench 6958 and a torque wrench set at 380 N·m (280 ft. lbs.), (Fig. 42) slowly tighten the nut in 6.8 N·m (5 ft. lbs.) increments until the rotating torque is achieved. Measure the rotating torque frequently to avoid over crushing the collapsible spacer (Fig. 43).

(7) Check rotating torque with an inch pound torque wrench (Fig. 43). The rotating torque of the



80a534a7

**Fig. 43 PINION ROTATING TORQUE**

- 1 - TORQUE WRENCH  
2 - PINION YOKE

(8) Install propeller shaft with reference marks align.

(9) Install rear brake rotors and calipers.

(10) Add gear lubricant, if necessary.

(11) Install wheel and tire assemblies.

(12) Remove supports and lower vehicle.



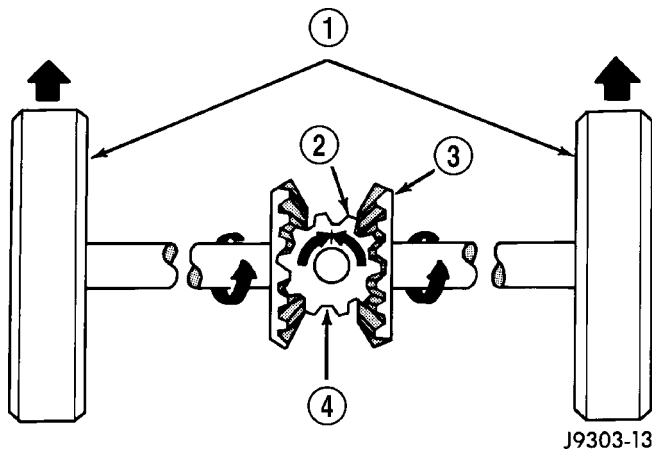
## DIFFERENTIAL

### DESCRIPTION

The differential case is a one-piece design. Differential bearing preload and ring gear backlash is adjusted with selective shims. Pinion bearing preload is set and maintained by the use of a collapsible spacer. The cover provides a means for inspection and service.

### OPERATION

During straight-ahead driving, the differential pinion gears do not rotate on the pinion mate shaft. This occurs because input torque applied to the gears is divided and distributed equally between the two side gears. As a result, the pinion gears revolve with the pinion mate shaft but do not rotate around it (Fig. 44).



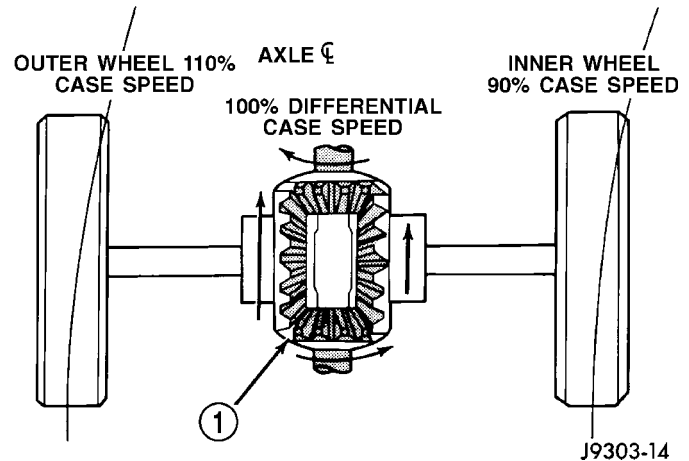
**Fig. 44 DIFFERENTIAL-STRAIGHT AHEAD DRIVING**

- 1 - IN STRAIGHT AHEAD DRIVING EACH WHEEL ROTATES AT 100% OF CASE SPEED
- 2 - PINION GEAR
- 3 - SIDE GEAR
- 4 - PINION GEARS ROTATE WITH CASE

When turning corners, the outside wheel must travel a greater distance than the inside wheel to complete a turn. The difference must be compensated for to prevent the tires from scuffing and skidding through turns. To accomplish this, the differential allows the axle shafts to turn at unequal speeds (Fig. 45). In this instance, the input torque applied to the pinion gears is not divided equally. The pinion gears now rotate around the pinion mate shaft in opposite directions. This allows the side gear and axle shaft attached to the outside wheel to rotate at a faster speed.

### REMOVAL

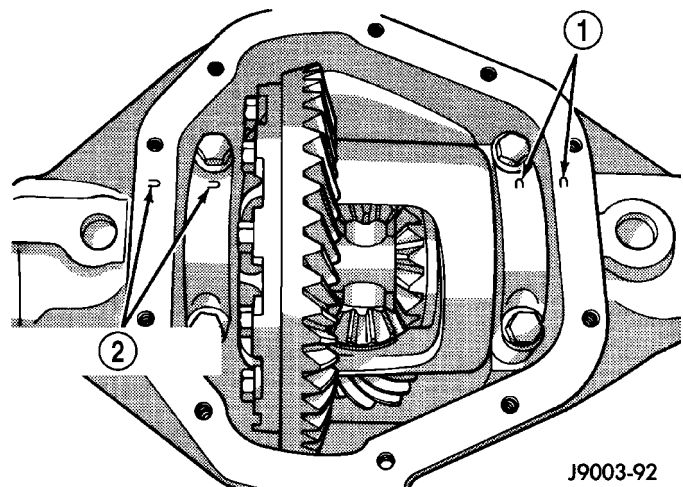
- (1) Raise and support vehicle.
- (2) Remove fill hole plug from the differential housing cover.



**Fig. 45 DIFFERENTIAL-ON TURNS**

- 1 - PINION GEARS ROTATE ON PINION SHAFT

- (3) Remove differential housing cover and drain fluid.
- (4) Remove axle shafts.
- (5) Note the reference letters stamped on the bearing caps and housing machined sealing surface (Fig. 46).

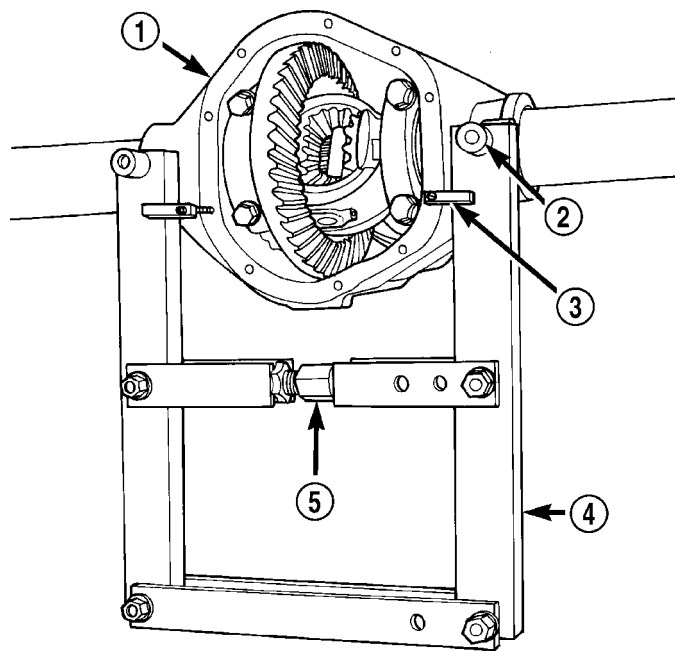


**Fig. 46 BEARING CAP REFERENCE**

- 1 - REFERENCE LETTERS
- 2 - REFERENCE LETTERS

- (6) Loosen the differential bearing cap bolts.
- (7) Position Spreader W-129-B with Adapter Kit 6987B on differential locating holes (Fig. 47). Install holddown clamps and tighten the turnbuckle finger-tight.
- (8) Install a Pilot Stud C-3288-B at the left side of the differential housing. Attach Dial Indicator C-3339 to pilot stud. Load the indicator plunger against the opposite side of the housing (Fig. 48) and zero the indicator.

## DIFFERENTIAL (Continued)

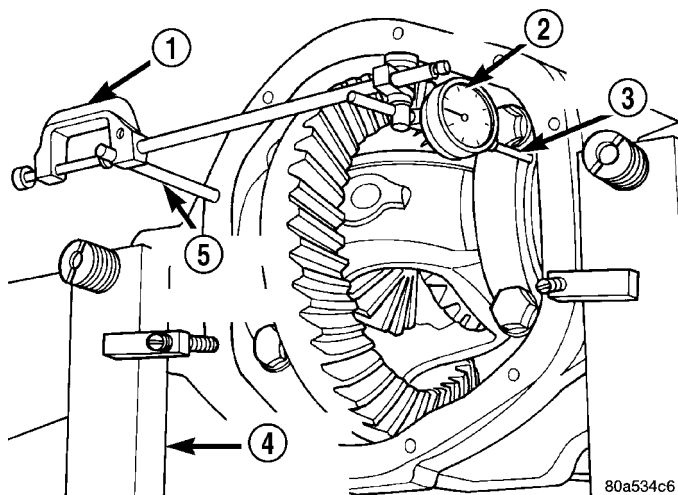


80a534c5

**Fig. 47 SPREADER LOCATION**

- 1 - DIFFERENTIAL HOUSING
- 2 - DOWEL
- 3 - SAFETY HOLD DOWN
- 4 - SPREADER
- 5 - TURNBUCKLE

**CAUTION:** Never spread the housing over 0.25 mm (0.010 in). If housing is over-spread, it could distort and damage the housing.

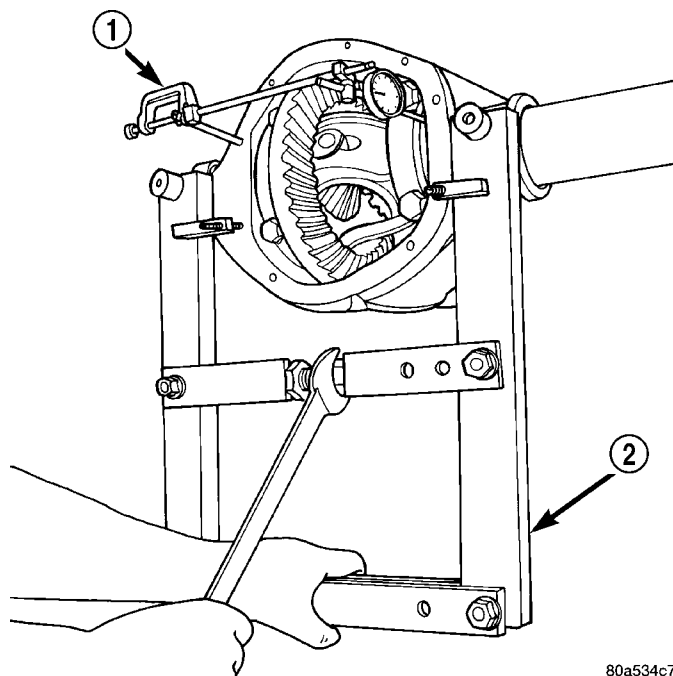


80a534c6

**Fig. 48 DIAL INDICATOR LOCATION**

- 1 - CLAMP
- 2 - DIAL INDICATOR
- 3 - LEVER ADAPTER
- 4 - SPREADER
- 5 - PILOT STUD

(9) Spread housing enough to remove the differential case from the housing. Measure the distance with the dial indicator (Fig. 49).



80a534c7

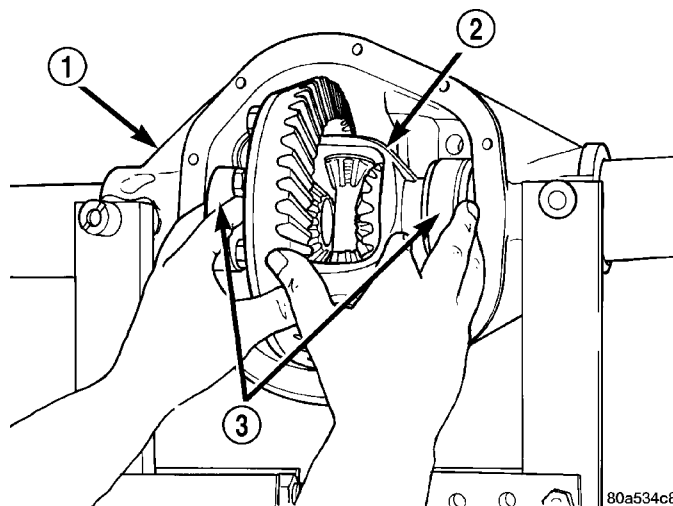
**Fig. 49 SPREAD DIFFERENTIAL HOUSING**

- 1 - DIAL INDICATOR
- 2 - SPREADER

(10) Remove the dial indicator.

(11) While holding the differential case in position, remove the differential bearing cap bolts and caps.

(12) Remove differential from the housing and tag differential bearing cups to indicate location (Fig. 50).



80a534c8

**Fig. 50 DIFFERENTIAL CASE REMOVAL**

- 1 - DIFFERENTIAL HOUSING
- 2 - DIFFERENTIAL CASE
- 3 - BEARING CUPS

(13) Remove spreader from housing.

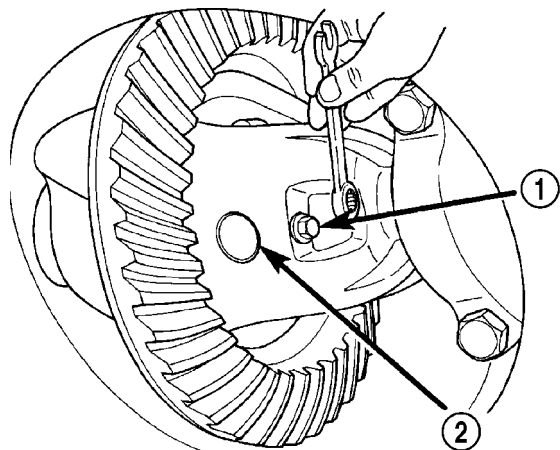
(14) Clean the housing cavity with flushing oil, light engine oil or lint free cloth.

## DIFFERENTIAL (Continued)

**NOTE:** Do not use water, steam, kerosene or gasoline for cleaning.

## DISASSEMBLY

- (1) Remove pinion shaft lock screw (Fig. 51).

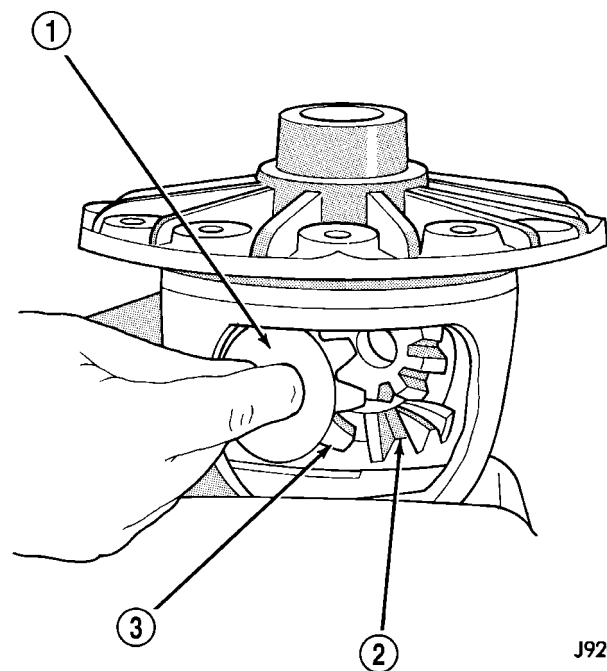


80be4604

**Fig. 51 SHAFT LOCK SCREW**

- 1 - LOCK SCREW
- 2 - PINION SHAFT

- (2) Remove pinion shaft.
- (3) Rotate differential side gears and remove differential pinions and thrust washers (Fig. 52).



J9203-61

**Fig. 52 DIFFERENTIAL GEARS**

- 1 - THRUST WASHER
- 2 - SIDE GEAR
- 3 - DIFFERENTIAL PINION

- (4) Remove differential side gears and thrust washers.

## ASSEMBLY

- (1) Install differential side gears and thrust washers.
- (2) Install differential pinion gears and thrust washers.
- (3) Install the pinion mate shaft.
- (4) Align hole in the pinion mate shaft with the hole in the differential case and install the pinion mate shaft lock screw.
- (5) Lubricate all differential components with hypoid gear lubricant.

## INSTALLATION

**NOTE:** If replacement differential bearings or differential case are being installed, differential side bearing shim requirements may change. Refer Adjustments (Differential Bearing Preload and Gear Backlash) to determine the proper shim selection.

- (1) Position Spreader W-129-B with Adapter set 6987 on differential housing locating holes. Install the holddown clamps and tighten the tool turnbuckle finger-tight.

- (2) Install a Pilot Stud C-3288-B at the left side of the differential housing. Attach Dial Indicator C-3339 to pilot stud. Load the indicator plunger against the opposite side of the housing and zero the indicator.

**CAUTION:** Never spread the housing over 0.25 mm (0.010 in). If housing is over-spread, it could be distorted or damaged.

- (3) Spread housing enough to install the case in the housing.

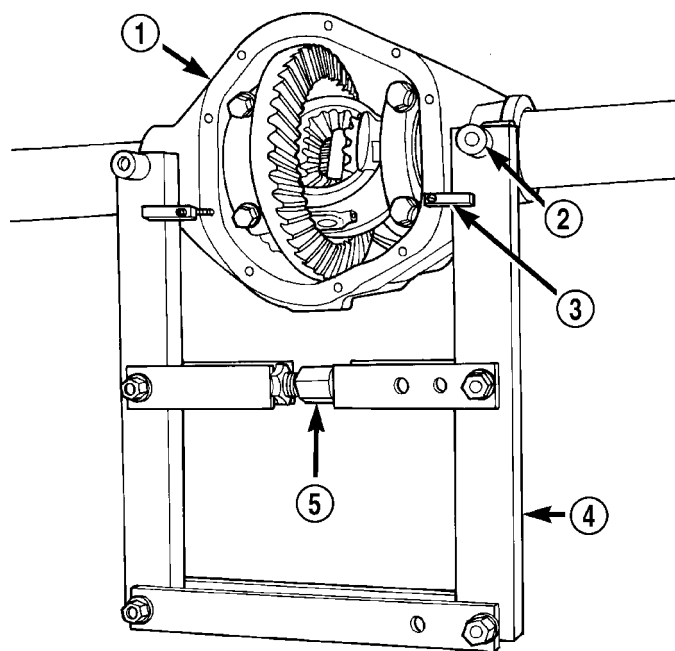
- (4) Remove the dial indicator.

- (5) Install differential case in housing (Fig. 53). Verify differential bearing cups remain in position on the bearings and preload shims are between the face of the bearing cup and the housing. Tap the differential case to ensure bearing cups and shims are seated in the housing.

**CAUTION:** On a Vari-lok® differential the oil feed tube must be pointed at the bottom of the housing (Fig. 54). If differential is installed with the oil feed tube pointed at the top, the anti-rotation tabs will be damaged.

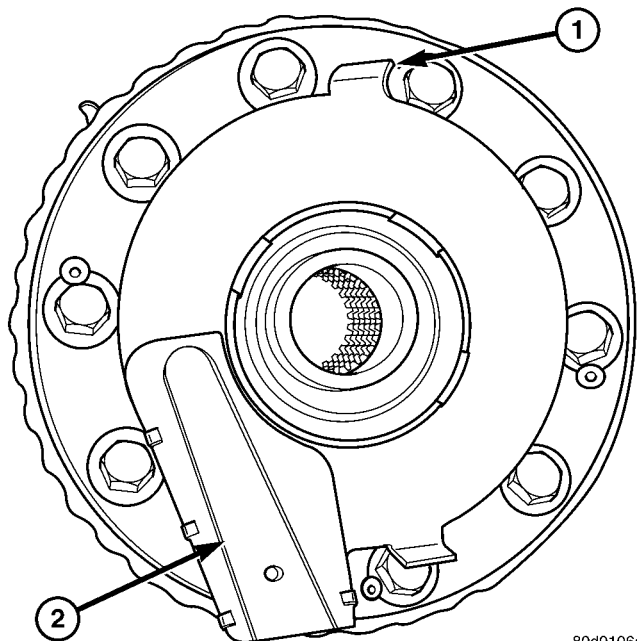
- (6) Install bearing caps in their original locations (Fig. 55).
- (7) Loosely install differential bearing cap bolts.
- (8) Remove axle housing spreader.

## DIFFERENTIAL (Continued)

**Fig. 53 SPREADER LOCATION**

- 1 - DIFFERENTIAL HOUSING
- 2 - DOWEL
- 3 - SAFETY HOLD DOWN
- 4 - SPREADER
- 5 - TURNBUCKLE

80a534c5

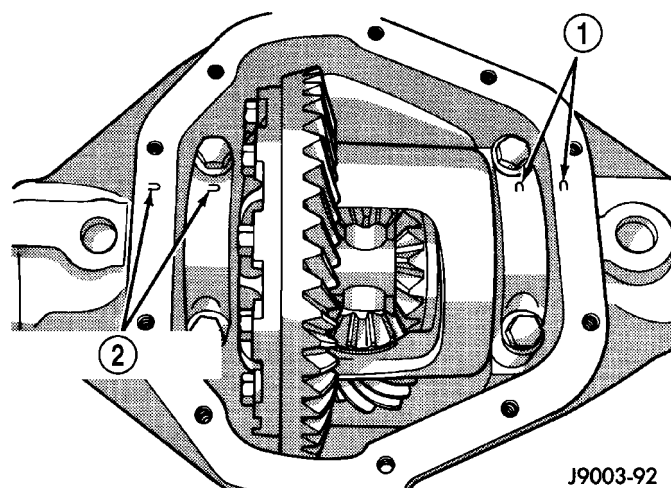
**Fig. 54 VARI-LOK**

- 1 - ANTI-ROTATION TAB
- 2 - OIL FEED TUBE

80d0106d

(9) Tighten bearing cap bolts in a criss-cross pattern to 77 N·m (57 ft. lbs.).

(10) Install the axle shafts.

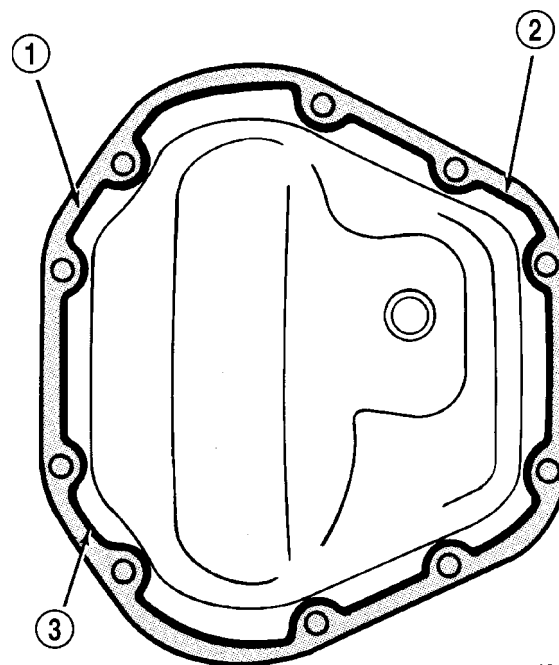


J9003-92

**Fig. 55 BEARING CAP REFERENCE**

- 1 - REFERENCE LETTERS
- 2 - REFERENCE LETTERS

(11) Apply a 6.35 mm (1/4 in.) bead of red Mopar Silicone Rubber Sealant or equivalent to the housing cover (Fig. 56).



J9302-30

**Fig. 56 DIFFERENTIAL COVER - TYPICAL**

- 1 - COVER
- 2 - SEALANT
- 3 - SEALANT BEAD

**CAUTION:** If cover is not installed within 3 to 5 minutes, the cover must be cleaned and new RTV applied or adhesion quality will be compromised.

(12) Install cover and tighten bolts in a criss-cross pattern to 41 N·m (30 ft. lbs.).



## DIFFERENTIAL (Continued)

(13) Refill the differential with Mopar Hypoid Gear Lubricant or equivalent to bottom of the fill plug hole.

(14) Install fill hole plug.

(15) Remove support and lower the vehicle.

## DIFFERENTIAL - TRAC-LOK

## DESCRIPTION

The Trac-Lok® differential has a one-piece differential case, and similar internal components as a standard differential, plus two clutch disc packs. Differential bearing preload and ring gear backlash are set and maintained by threaded adjusters at the outside of the differential housing. Pinion bearing preload is set and maintained by the use of a collapsible spacer.

## OPERATION

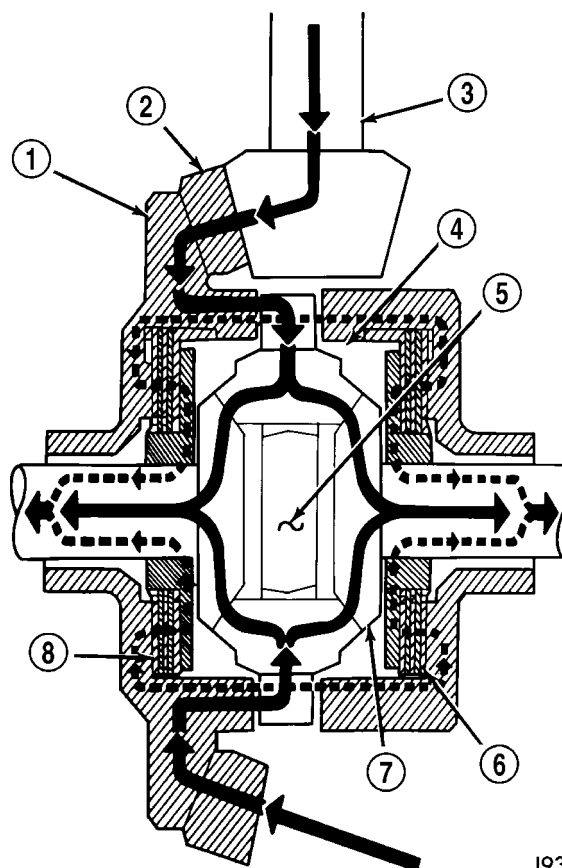
This differential's clutches are engaged by two concurrent forces. The first being the preload force exerted through Belleville spring washers within the clutch packs. The second is the separating forces generated by the side gears as torque is applied through the ring gear (Fig. 57).

This design provides the differential action needed for turning corners and for driving straight ahead during periods of unequal traction. When one wheel loses traction, the clutch packs transfer additional torque to the wheel having the most traction. This differential resists wheel spin on bumpy roads and provide more pulling power when one wheel loses traction. Pulling power is provided continuously until both wheels lose traction. If both wheels slip due to unequal traction, Trac-Lok™ operation is normal. In extreme cases of differences of traction, the wheel with the least traction may spin.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING

The most common problem is a chatter noise when turning corners. Before removing the unit for repair, drain, flush and refill the axle with the specified lubricant. Add a container of Mopar Limited Slip Additive after repair service or during a lubricant change.

After changing the lubricant, drive the vehicle and make 10 to 12 slow, figure-eight turns. This maneuver will pump lubricant through the clutches. This will correct the condition in most instances. If the chatter persists, clutch damage could have occurred.



J9303-15

**Fig. 57 TRAC-LOK LIMITED SLIP DIFFERENTIAL**

- 1 - CASE
- 2 - RING GEAR
- 3 - DRIVE PINION
- 4 - PINION GEAR
- 5 - MATE SHAFT
- 6 - CLUTCH PACK
- 7 - SIDE GEAR
- 8 - CLUTCH PACK

## DIFFERENTIAL TEST

The differential can be tested without removing the differential case by measuring rotating torque. Make sure brakes are not dragging during this measurement.

(1) Place blocks in front and rear of both front wheels.

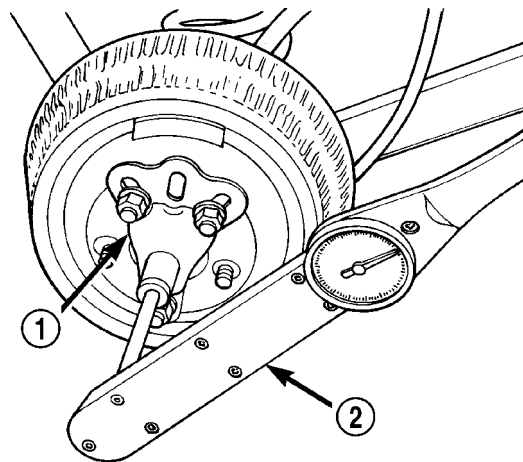
(2) Raise one rear wheel until it is completely off the ground.

(3) Engine off, transmission in neutral, and parking brake off.

(4) Remove wheel and bolt Special Tool 6790 or equivalent tool to studs.

## DIFFERENTIAL - TRAC-LOK (Continued)

(5) Use torque wrench on special tool to rotate wheel and read rotating torque (Fig. 58).



80a4d327

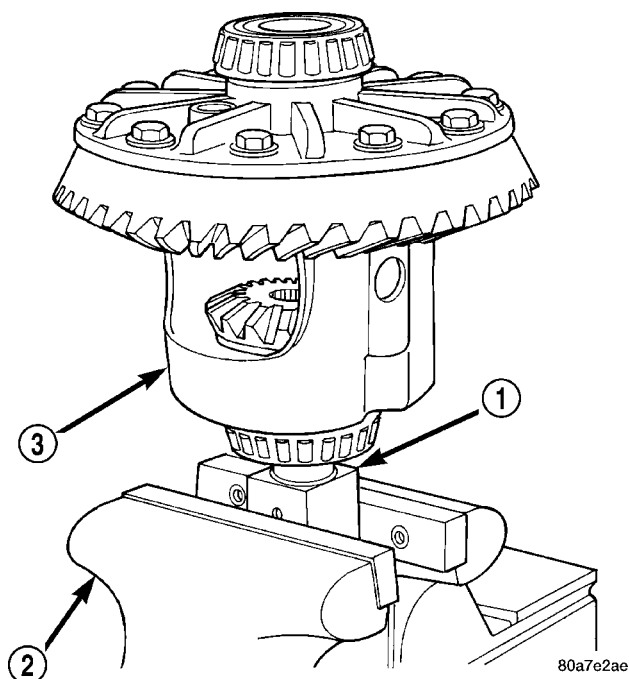
**Fig. 58 ROTATING TORQUE TEST**

- 1 - SPECIAL TOOL WITH BOLT IN CENTER HOLE  
2 - TORQUE WRENCH

(6) If rotating torque is less than 41 N·m (30 ft. lbs.) or more than 271 N·m (200 ft. lbs.) on either wheel the unit should be serviced.

## DISASSEMBLY

(1) Clamp side gear Holding Fixture 6965 in a vise and position the differential case on the Holding Fixture (Fig. 59).



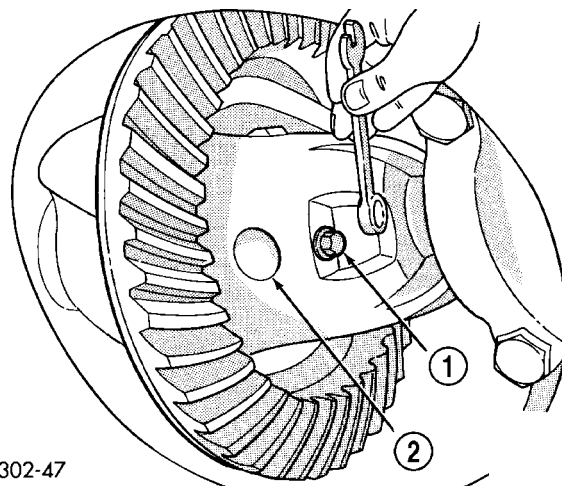
80a7e2ae

**Fig. 59 DIFFERENTIAL CASE FIXTURE**

- 1 - HOLDING FIXTURE  
2 - VISE  
3 - DIFFERENTIAL

(2) Remove ring gear if the ring gear is to be replaced. The Trac-lok® differential can be serviced with the ring gear installed.

(3) Remove the pinion gear mate shaft lock screw (Fig. 60).

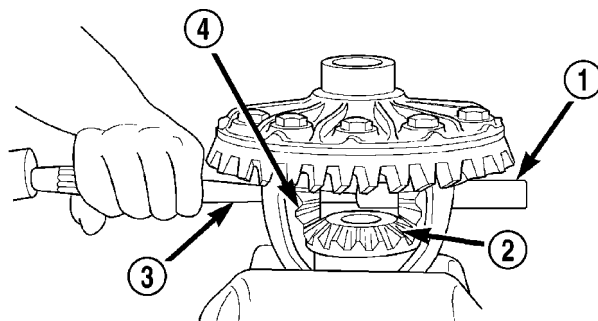


J9302-47

**Fig. 60 MATE SHAFT LOCK SCREW**

- 1 - LOCK SCREW  
2 - PINION GEAR MATE SHAFT

(4) Remove pinion gear mate shaft with a drift and hammer (Fig. 61).



80a773e1

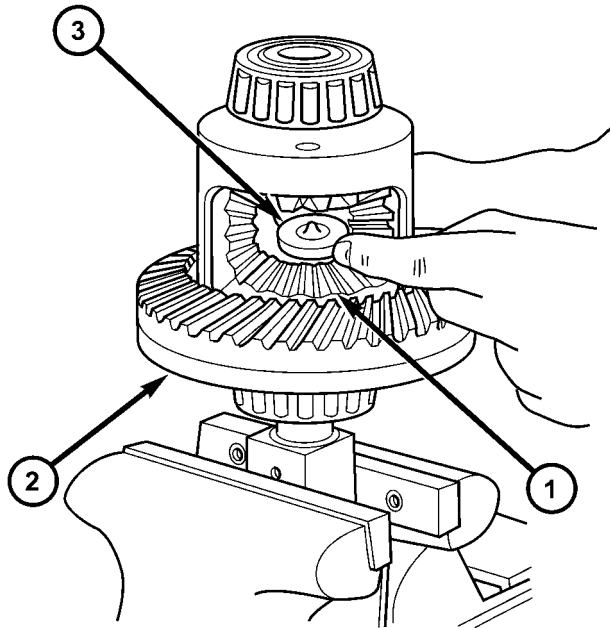
**Fig. 61 PINION MATE SHAFT**

- 1 - PINION MATE SHAFT  
2 - SIDE GEAR  
3 - DRIFT  
4 - PINION MATE GEAR



## DIFFERENTIAL - TRAC-LOK (Continued)

(5) Install and lubricate Step Plate C-4487-3 (Fig. 62).



80bd202b

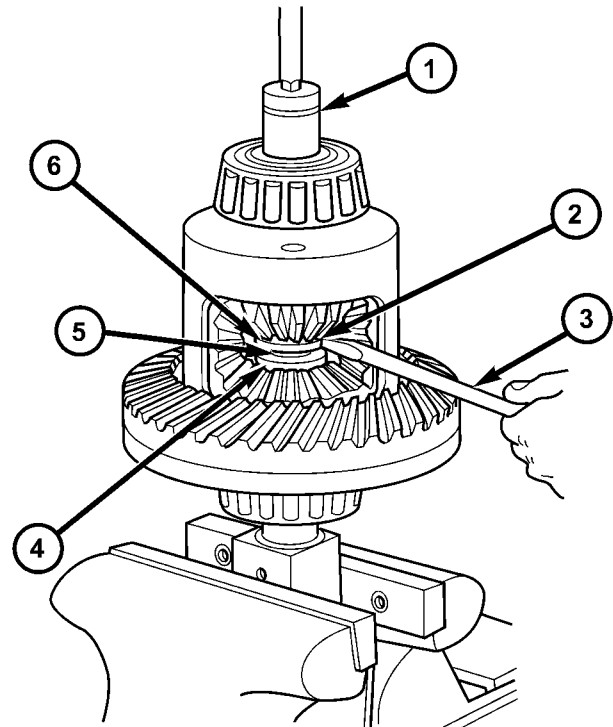
**Fig. 62 STEP PLATE**

- 1 - LOWER SIDE GEAR
- 2 - DIFFERENTIAL CASE
- 3 - STEP PLATE

(6) Assemble Threaded Adapter C-4487-1 into top side gear. Thread Forcing Screw C-4487-4 into adapter until it becomes centered in adapter plate.

(7) Position a small screw driver in slot of Threaded Adapter Disc C-4487-1 (Fig. 63) to prevent adapter from turning.

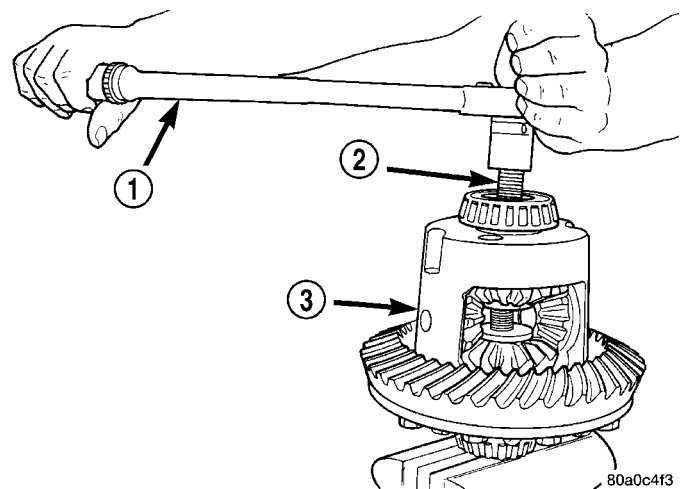
(8) Install Forcing Screw C-4487-4 and tighten screw to 122 N·m (90 ft. lbs.) maximum to compress Belleville springs in clutch packs (Fig. 64).



80bd2327

**Fig. 63 THREADED ADAPTER DISC**

- 1 - SOCKET
- 2 - SLOT IN ADAPTER
- 3 - SCREWDRIVER
- 4 - STEP PLATE
- 5 - FORCING SCREW
- 6 - THREAD ADAPTER DISC



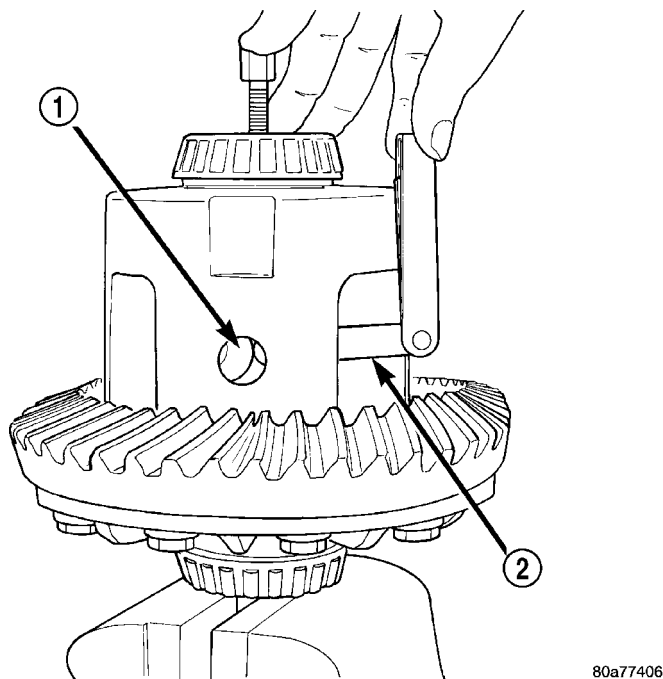
80a0c4f3

**Fig. 64 COMPRESS BELLEVILLE SPRING**

- 1 - TORQUE WRENCH
- 2 - TOOL ASSEMBLED
- 3 - DIFFERENTIAL CASE

## DIFFERENTIAL - TRAC-LOK (Continued)

(9) With a feeler gauge remove thrust washers from behind the pinion gears (Fig. 65).



**Fig. 65 PINION GEAR THRUST WASHER**

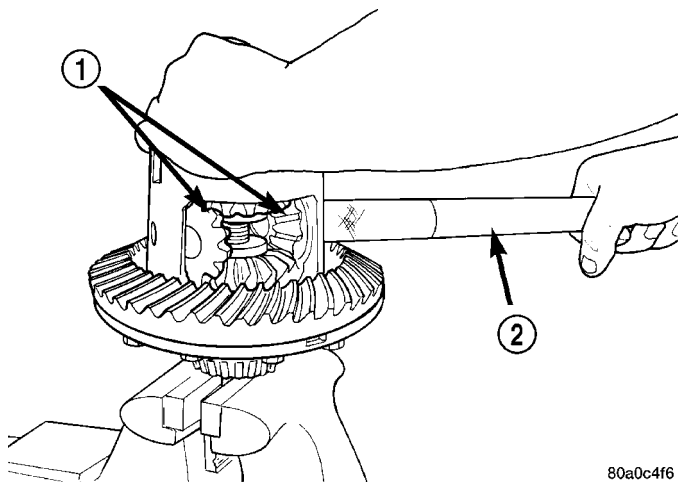
- 1 - THRUST WASHER  
2 - FEELER GAUGE

(10) Insert Turning Bar C-4487-2 into the pinion mate shaft hole in the case (Fig. 66).

(11) Loosen the Forcing Screw in small increments until the clutch pack tension is relieved and the differential case can be turned using Turning Bar.

(12) Rotate differential case until the pinion gears can be removed.

(13) Remove pinion gears from differential case.

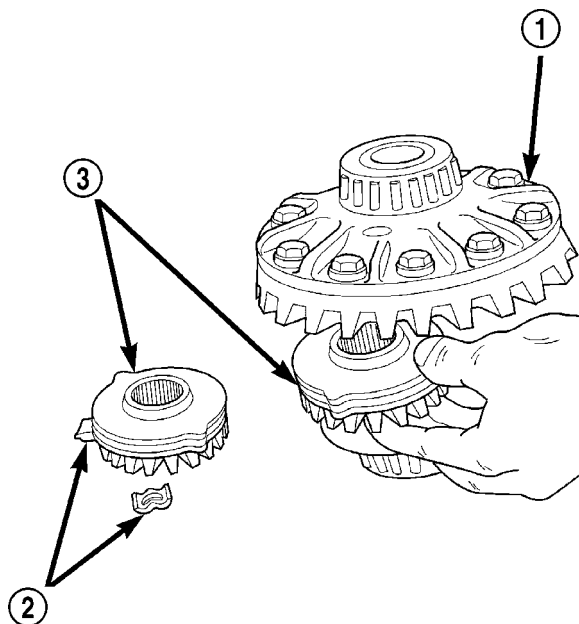


**Fig. 66 PINION GEARS**

- 1 - PINION GEARS  
2 - TURNING BAR

(14) Remove Forcing Screw, Step Plate and Threaded Adapter.

(15) Remove top side gear, clutch pack retainer and clutch pack. Keep plates in correct order during removal (Fig. 67).



**Fig. 67 SIDE GEARS AND CLUTCH DISCS**

- 1 - DIFFERENTIAL CASE  
2 - RETAINER  
3 - SIDE GEAR AND CLUTCH DISC PACK

(16) Remove differential case from the Holding Fixture. Remove side gear, clutch pack retainer and clutch pack. Keep plates in correct order during removal.

## ASSEMBLY

Clean all components in cleaning solvent and dry components with compressed air. Inspect clutch pack plates for wear, scoring or damage. Replace both clutch packs if any one component in either pack is damaged. Inspect side gears and pinions. Replace any gear that is worn, cracked, chipped or damaged. Inspect differential case and pinion shaft. Replace if worn or damaged.

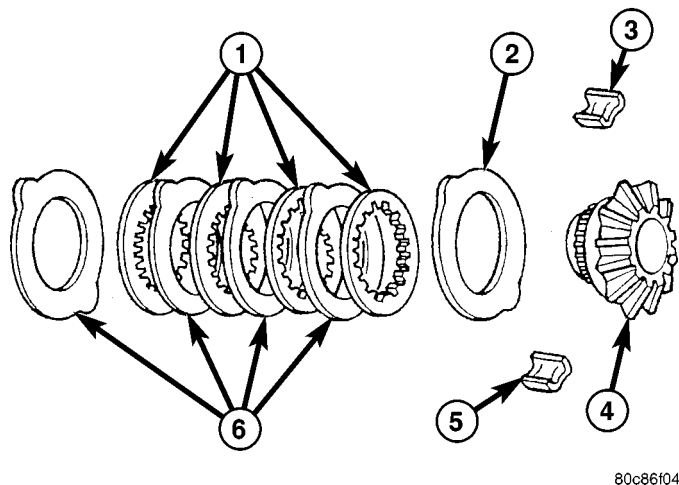
**NOTE:** New Plates and discs with fiber coating (no grooves or lines) must be presoaked in Friction Modifier before assembly. Soak plates and discs for a minimum of 20 minutes.

(1) Lubricate each component with gear lubricant before assembly.

(2) Assemble the clutch discs into packs and secure disc packs with retaining clips (Fig. 68).

## DIFFERENTIAL - TRAC-LOK (Continued)

**NOTE:** Dished plate is position with the convex side against the side gear.



**Fig. 68 CLUTCH PACK**

- 1 - DISCS
- 2 - DISHED PLATE
- 3 - RETAINER
- 4 - SIDE GEAR
- 5 - RETAINER
- 6 - PLATES

(3) Position assembled clutch disc packs on the side gear hubs.

(4) Install clutch pack and side gear in the ring gear side of the differential case (Fig. 69). **Be sure clutch pack retaining clips remain in position and are seated in the case pockets.**

(5) Position the differential case on the Holding Fixture 6965.

(6) Install lubricated Step Plate C-4487-3 in lower side gear (Fig. 70).

(7) Install the upper side gear and clutch disc pack (Fig. 70).

(8) Hold assembly in position. Insert Threaded Adapter C-4487-1 into top side gear.

(9) Install Forcing Screw C-4487-4 and tighten screw to slightly compress clutch disc.

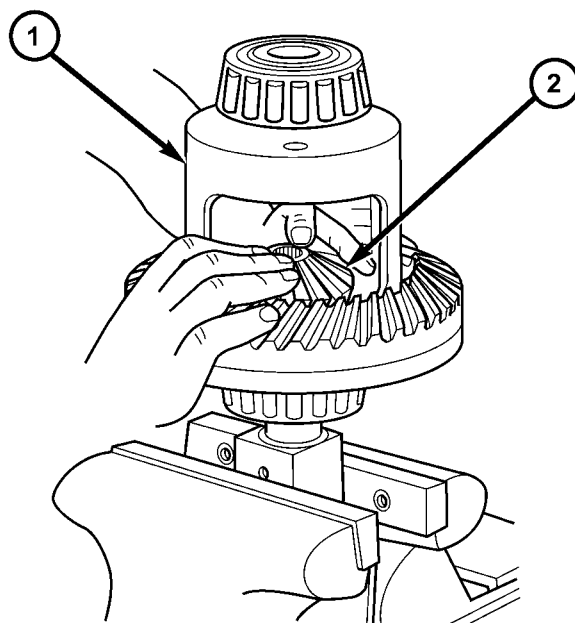
(10) Place pinion gears in position in side gears and verify that the pinion mate shaft hole is aligned.

(11) Rotate case with Turning Bar C-4487-2 until the pinion mate shaft holes in pinion gears align with holes in case. It may be necessary to slightly tighten the forcing screw in order to install the pinion gears.

(12) Tighten forcing screw to 122 N·m (90 ft. lbs.) maximum to compress the Belleville springs.

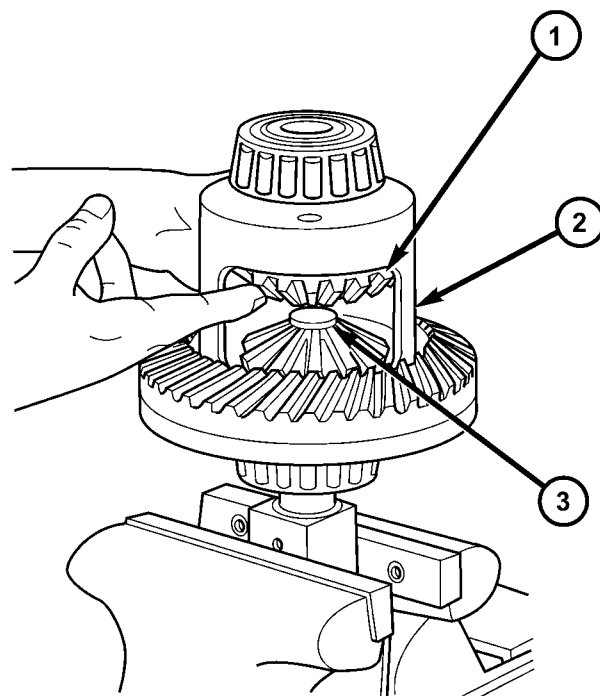
(13) Lubricate and install thrust washers behind pinion gears and align washers with a small screw driver. Insert mate shaft into each pinion gear to verify alignment.

(14) Remove Forcing Screw, Step Plate and Threaded Adapter.



**Fig. 69 CLUTCH PACK AND LOWER SIDE GEAR**

- 1 - DIFFERENTIAL CASE
- 2 - LOWER SIDE GEAR AND CLUTCH DISC PACK



**Fig. 70 CLUTCH PACK AND UPPER SIDE GEAR**

- 1 - SIDE GEAR AND CLUTCH PACK
- 2 - DIFFERENTIAL CASE
- 3 - STEP PLATE

## DIFFERENTIAL - TRAC-LOK (Continued)

(15) Install pinion gear mate shaft and align holes in shaft and case.

(16) Install pinion mate shaft lock screw finger tight to hold shaft during differential installation.

(17) Lubricate all differential components with hypoid gear lubricant.

## DIFFERENTIAL - VARI-LOK

## DESCRIPTION

The optional Vari-Lok® differential has a one-piece differential case which contains the gerotor pump assembly and the clutch mechanism. This unit is serviced as an assembly only.

## OPERATION

A gerotor pump and clutch pack are used to provide the torque transfer capability. One axle shaft is splined to the gerotor pump and one differential side gears, this provides input to the pump. As a wheel begins to lose traction, the speed differential is transmitted from one side of the differential to the other through the side gears. The motion of one side gear relative to the other turns the inner rotor of the pump. Since the outer rotor of the pump is grounded to the differential case, the inner and outer rotors are moving relative to each other, which creates pressure in the pump. The tuning of the front and rear axle orifices and valves inside the gerotor pump are unique. Each system has a torque-limiting pressure relief valve to protect the clutch pack, which also facilitates vehicle control under extreme side-to-side traction variations. The resulting pressure is applied to the clutch pack and the transfer of torque is completed. Vari-lok® system is less subject to wear, remaining more consistent over time in its ability to transfer torque.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING

(1) Park the vehicle on a level surface or raise vehicle on hoist so that the vehicle is level.

(2) Remove the axle fill plug.

(3) Verify that the axle fluid level is correct. The fluid level is correct if the fluid is level with the bottom of the fill hole.

(4) Shift the transfer case into the 4WD full-time position.

(5) Drive the vehicle in a tight circle for 2 minutes at 5mph to fully prime the pump.

(6) Block the tires opposite the axle to be tested to prevent the vehicle from moving.

(7) Shift the transfer case into the 4WD Low position and the transmission into the Park position.

(8) Raise both the wheels of the axle to be tested off of the ground.

(9) Rotate the left wheel by hand at a minimum of one revolution per second while an assistant rotates the right wheel in the opposite direction.

(10) The left wheel should spin freely at first and then increase in resistance within 5 revolutions until the wheels cannot be continuously rotated in opposite directions.

(11) The Vari-lok® differential has engaged properly if the wheels cannot be rotated in opposite directions for a moment. After the wheels stop rotating for a moment, the fluid pressure will drop in the differential and the wheels begin to rotate once again.

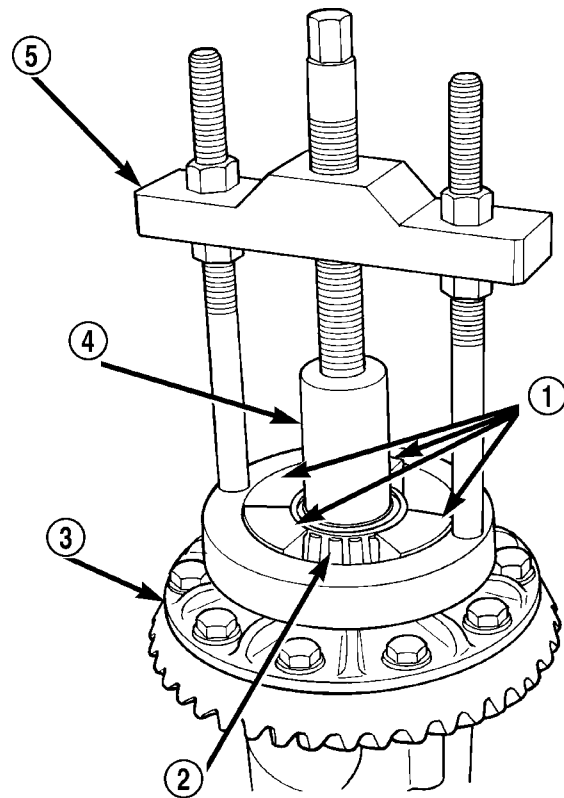
(12) If the system does not operate properly, replace the Vari-lok® differential.

## DIFFERENTIAL CASE BEARINGS

## REMOVAL

(1) Remove differential case from axle housing.

(2) Remove side bearings from the differential case with Puller/Press C-293-PA, Adapters 8353 and Plug C-293-3 (Fig. 71).



80ba79c1

**Fig. 71 DIFFERENTIAL BEARING REMOVAL**

- 1 - ADAPTERS
- 2 - BEARING
- 3 - DIFFERENTIAL
- 4 - PLUG
- 5 - PULLER

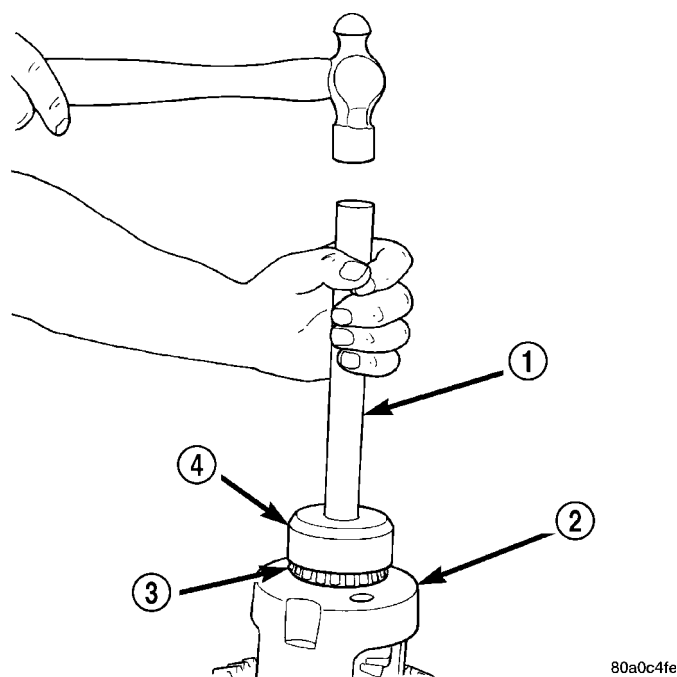
## DIFFERENTIAL CASE BEARINGS (Continued)

## INSTALLATION

**NOTE:** If differential side bearings or differential case are replaced, differential side bearing shim requirements may change. Refer to Adjustments (Differential Bearing Preload and Gear Backlash) for procedures.

**CAUTION:** Vari-lok® plenum must be seated against the differential case prior to installing the ring gear side differential bearing.

(1) Install differential side bearings with Installer C-4340 and Handle C-4171 (Fig. 72).



**Fig. 72 DIFFERENTIAL BEARING INSTALLER**

- 1 - HANDLE
- 2 - DIFFERENTIAL
- 3 - BEARING
- 4 - INSTALLER

- (2) Install differential case into the housing.
- (3) Remove support and lower vehicle.

## PINION GEAR/RING GEAR

## REMOVAL

**NOTE:** The ring and pinion gears are serviced as a matched set. Never replace one gear without the other matched gear.

- (1) Raise and support vehicle.
- (2) Mark pinion yoke and propeller shaft for installation reference.

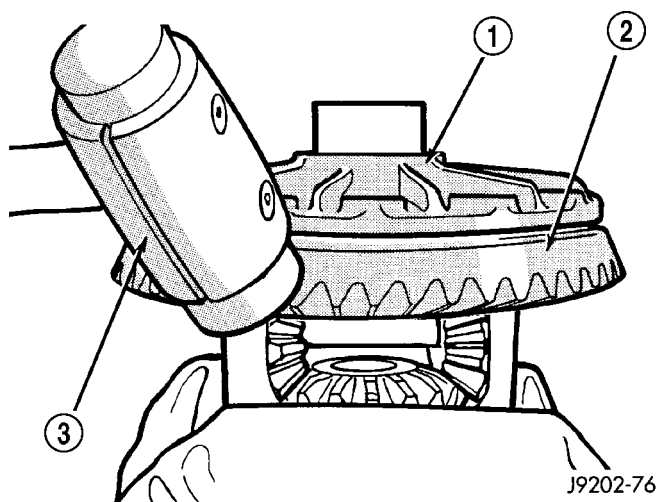
(3) Disconnect propeller shaft from pinion yoke and tie shaft to underbody.

(4) Remove differential from axle housing.

(5) Place differential case in a vise with soft metal jaw.

(6) Remove bolts holding ring gear to differential case.

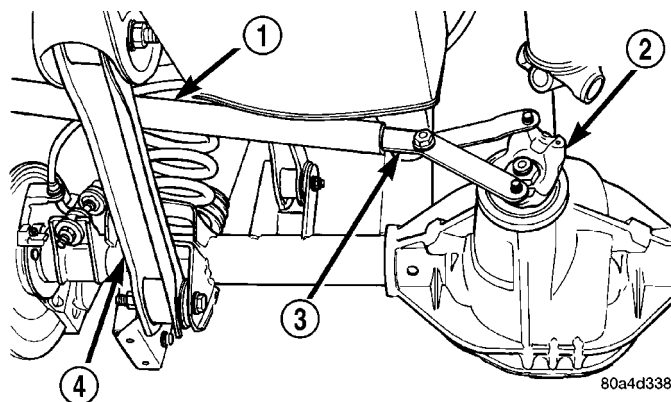
(7) Drive ring gear from differential case with a rawhide hammer (Fig. 73).



**Fig. 73 RING GEAR**

- 1 - DIFFERENTIAL CASE
- 2 - RING GEAR
- 3 - RAWHIDE HAMMER

(8) Hold the pinion yoke with Spanner Wrench 6958 and remove the pinion yoke nut and washer (Fig. 74).



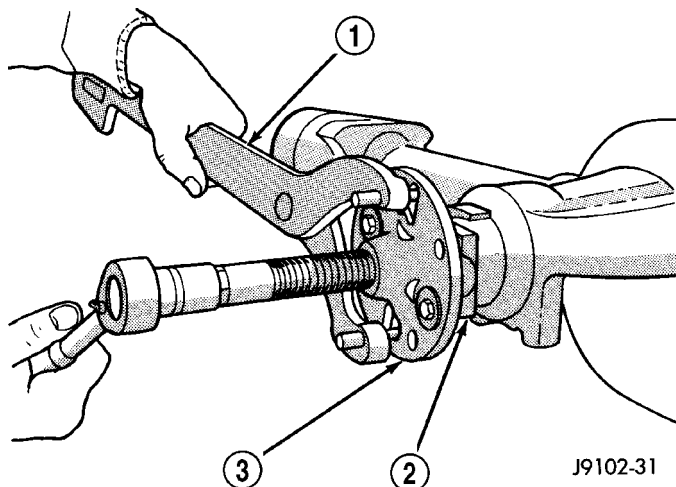
**Fig. 74 PINION YOE HOLDER**

- 1 - PIPE
- 2 - PINION YOE
- 3 - SPANNER WRENCH
- 4 - LOWER CONTROL ARM



## PINION GEAR/RING GEAR (Continued)

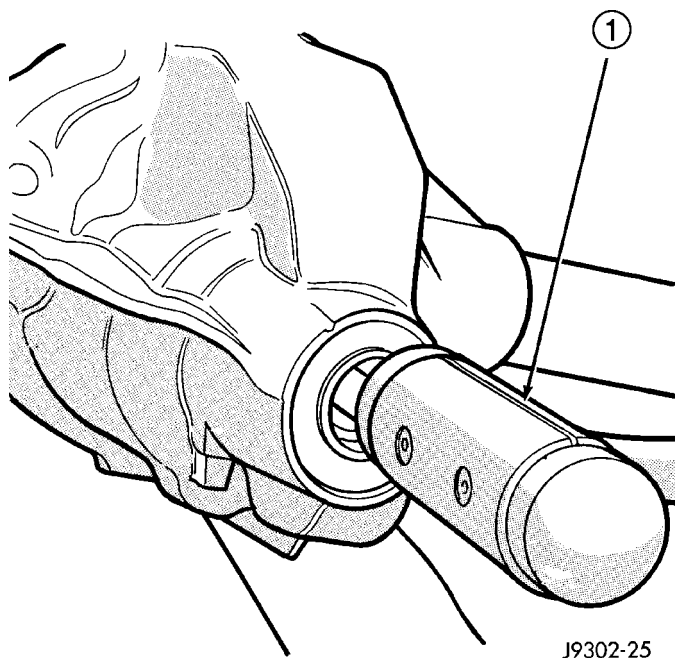
(9) Remove pinion yoke from pinion shaft with Remover C-452 and Wrench C-3281 (Fig. 75).



**Fig. 75 PINION YOKE REMOVER**

- 1 - FLANGE WRENCH
- 2 - YOKE
- 3 - YOKE PULLER

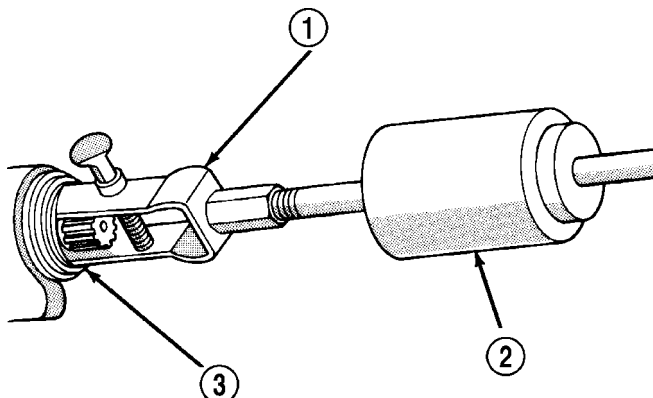
(10) Remove pinion gear from housing (Fig. 76).



**Fig. 76 PINION GEAR**

- 1 - DEAD-BLOW HAMMER

(11) Remove pinion seal with Remover 7794-A and a slide hammer (Fig. 77).

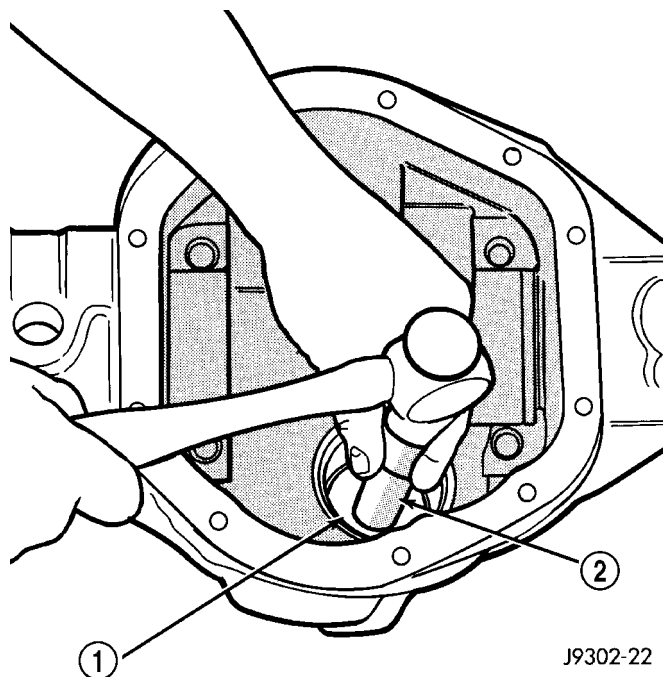


**Fig. 77 PINION SEAL REMOVER**

- 1 - REMOVER
- 2 - SLIDE HAMMER
- 3 - PINION SEAL

(12) Remove oil slinger, if equipped, and front pinion bearing.

(13) Remove the front pinion bearing cup with Remover D-103 and Handle C-4171 (Fig. 78).



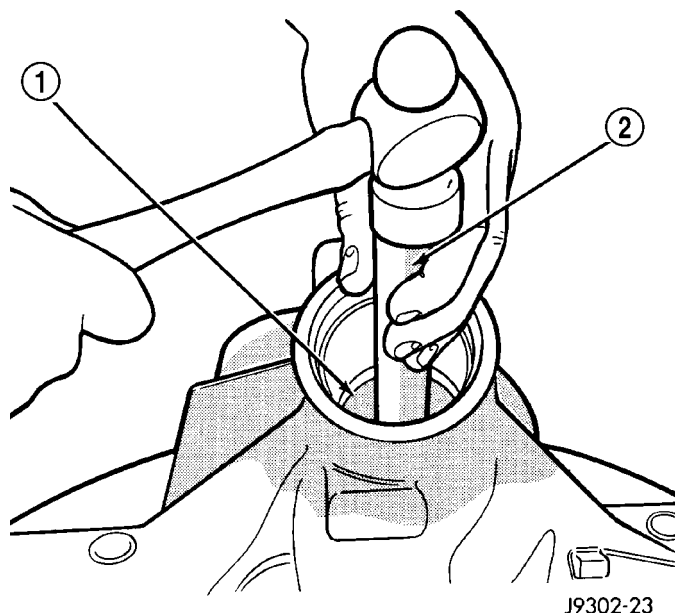
**Fig. 78 FRONT PINION BEARING CUP**

- 1 - REMOVER
- 2 - HANDLE



## PINION GEAR/RING GEAR (Continued)

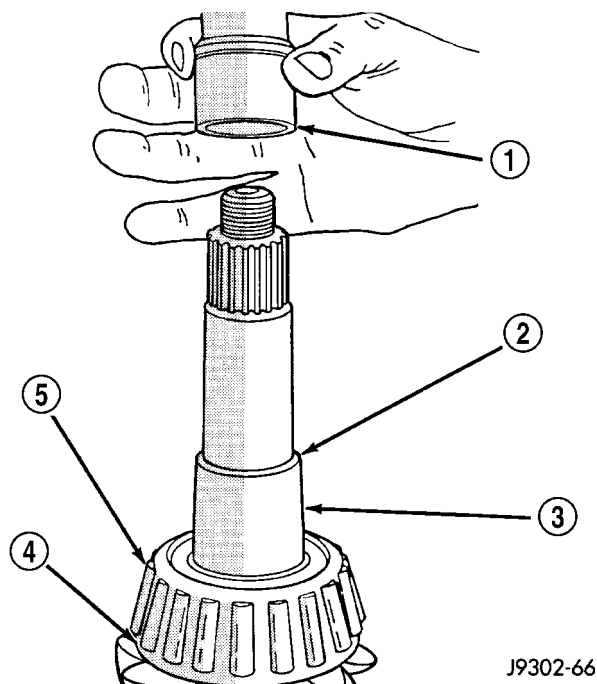
(14) Remove rear bearing cup from housing (Fig. 79) with Remover C-4307 and Handle C-4171.



**Fig. 79 REAR PINION BEARING CUP**

- 1 - REMOVER
- 2 - HANDLE

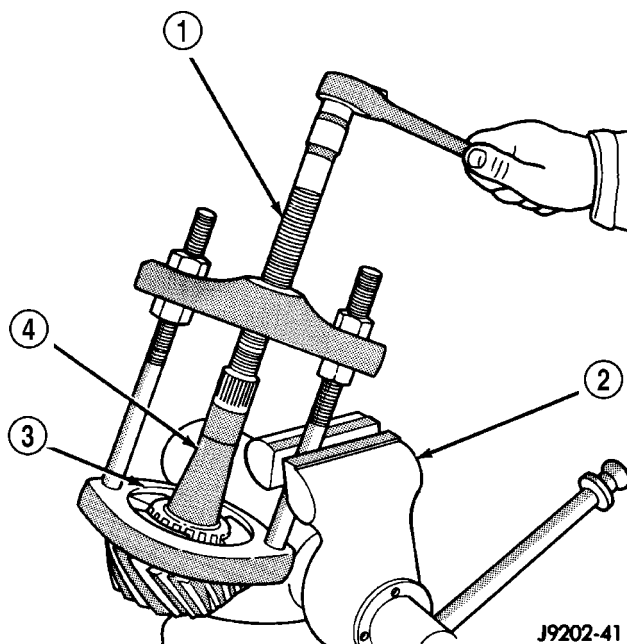
(15) Remove collapsible preload spacer (Fig. 80).



**Fig. 80 COLLAPSIBLE SPACER**

- 1 - COLLAPSIBLE SPACER
- 2 - SHOULDER
- 3 - PINION GEAR
- 4 - DEPTH SHIM
- 5 - REAR BEARING

(16) Remove rear bearing from the pinion with Puller/Press C-293-PA and Adapters C-293-42 (Fig. 81).



**Fig. 81 REAR PINION BEARING PULLER**

- 1 - PULLER
- 2 - VISE
- 3 - ADAPTERS
- 4 - PINION GEAR SHAFT

(17) Remove depth shims from the pinion gear shaft and record shim thickness.

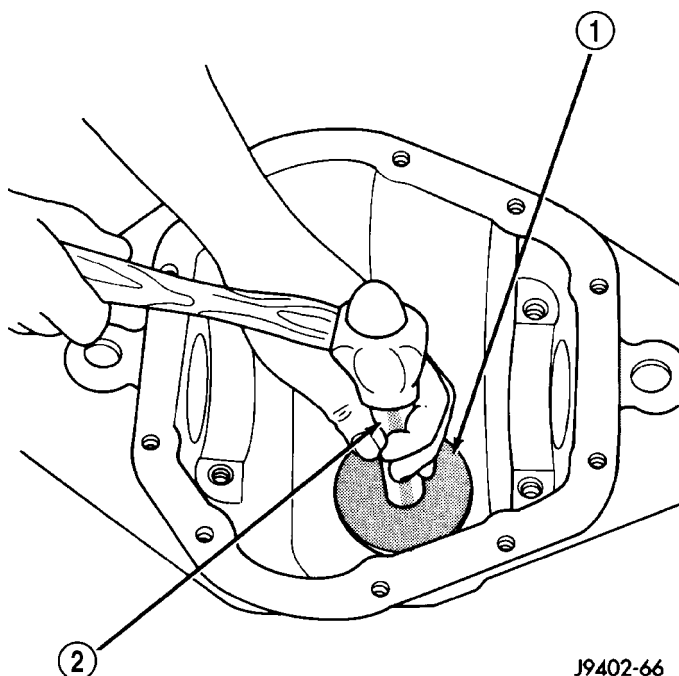
## INSTALLATION

**NOTE:** A pinion depth shim/oil slinger is placed between the rear pinion bearing cone and the pinion head to achieve proper ring gear and pinion mesh. If ring gear and pinion are reused, the pinion depth shim/oil slinger should not require replacement. Refer to Adjustment (Pinion Gear Depth) to select the proper thickness shim/oil slinger if ring and pinion gears are replaced.

## PINION GEAR/RING GEAR (Continued)

(1) Apply Mopar Door Ease or equivalent lubricant to outside surface of pinion bearing cups.

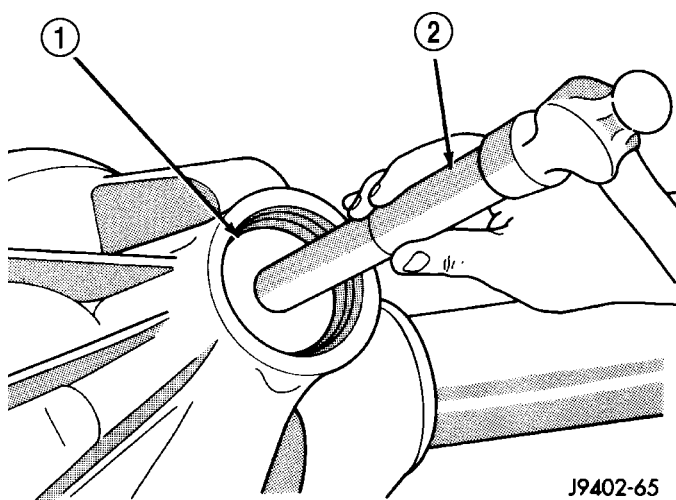
(2) Install pinion rear bearing cup with Installer C-4308 and Driver Handle C-4171 (Fig. 82) and verify cup is seated.



**Fig. 82 REAR PINION BEARING CUP**

1 - INSTALLER  
2 - HANDLE

(3) Install pinion front bearing cup with Installer D-129 and Handle C-4171 (Fig. 83) and verify cup is seated.

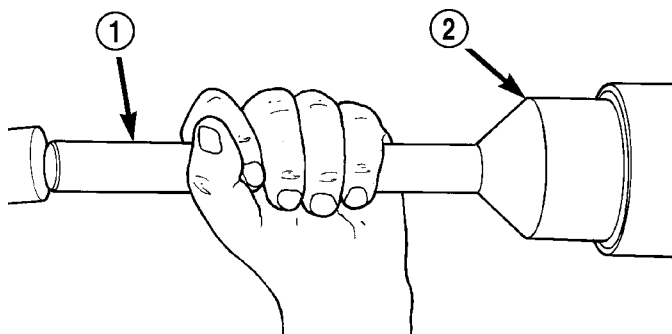


**Fig. 83 FRONT PINION BEARING CUP**

1 - INSTALLER  
2 - HANDLE

(4) Install pinion front bearing and oil slinger, if equipped.

(5) Apply a light coating of gear lubricant on the lip of pinion seal. Install seal with an appropriate (Fig. 84).

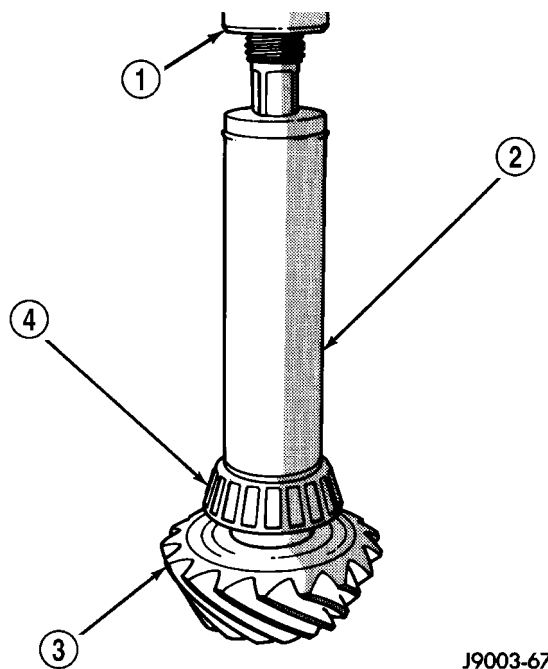


**Fig. 84 PINION SEAL INSTALLER**

1 - HANDLE  
2 - INSTALLER

(6) Install depth shim on the pinion gear.

(7) Install rear bearing on the pinion gear with Installer 6448 and a press (Fig. 85).

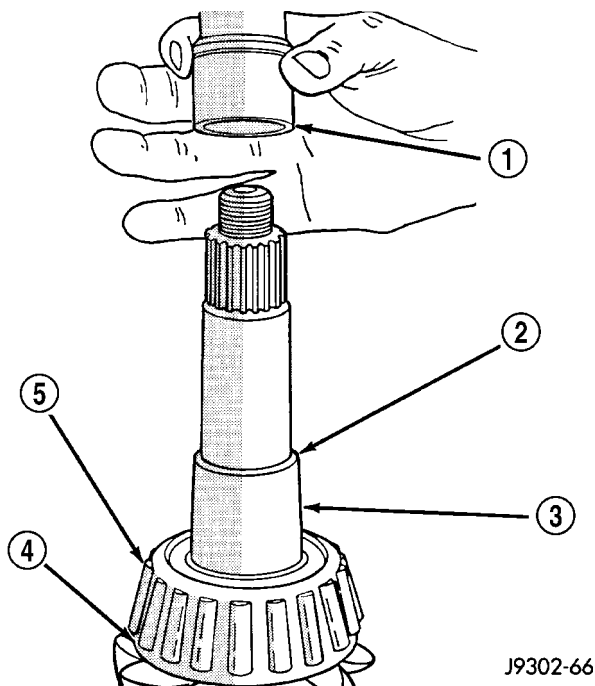


**Fig. 85 REAR PINION BEARING**

1 - PRESS  
2 - INSTALLER  
3 - PINION GEAR  
4 - PINION BEARING

## PINION GEAR/RING GEAR (Continued)

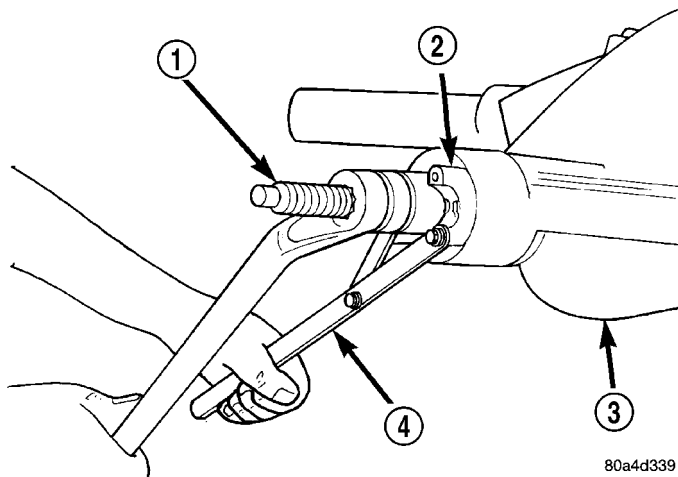
(8) Install a **new** collapsible preload spacer on pinion shaft and install pinion gear in the housing (Fig. 86).



**Fig. 86 COLLAPSIBLE SPACER**

- 1 - COLLAPSIBLE SPACER
- 2 - SHOULDER
- 3 - PINION GEAR
- 4 - DEPTH SHIM
- 5 - REAR BEARING

(9) Install yoke with Installer C-3718 and Spanner Wrench 6958 (Fig. 87).



**Fig. 87 PINION YOKE INSTALLER**

- 1 - INSTALLER
- 2 - PINION YOKE
- 3 - DIFFERENTIAL HOUSING
- 4 - SPANNER WRENCH

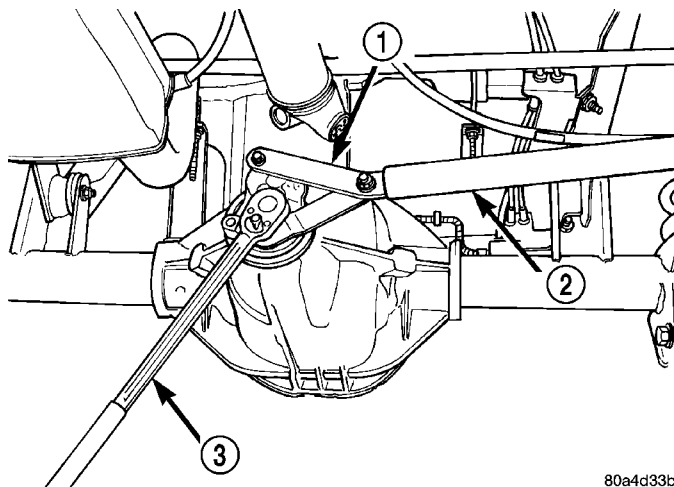
(10) Install yoke washer and a **new** nut on the pinion gear and tighten the pinion nut until there is zero bearing end-play.

(11) Tighten the nut to 298 N·m (220 ft. lbs.).

**CAUTION:** Never loosen pinion gear nut to decrease pinion rotating torque and never exceed specified preload torque. If preload torque or rotating torque is exceeded a new collapsible spacer must be installed.

**NOTE:** New collapsible spacers require high initial torque to start the collapsing of the spacer. This may reach 678 N·m (500 ft. lbs.).

(12) Using Spanner Wrench 6958 and a torque wrench set at 380 N·m (280 ft. lbs.), (Fig. 88) slowly tighten the nut in 6.8 N·m (5 ft. lbs.) increments until the rotating torque is achieved. Measure the rotating torque frequently to avoid over crushing the collapsible spacer (Fig. 89).



**Fig. 88 PINION NUT**

- 1 - SPANNER WRENCH
- 2 - PIPE
- 3 - TORQUE WRENCH

(13) Check bearing rotating torque with a inch pound torque wrench (Fig. 89). The pinion gear rotating torque should be:

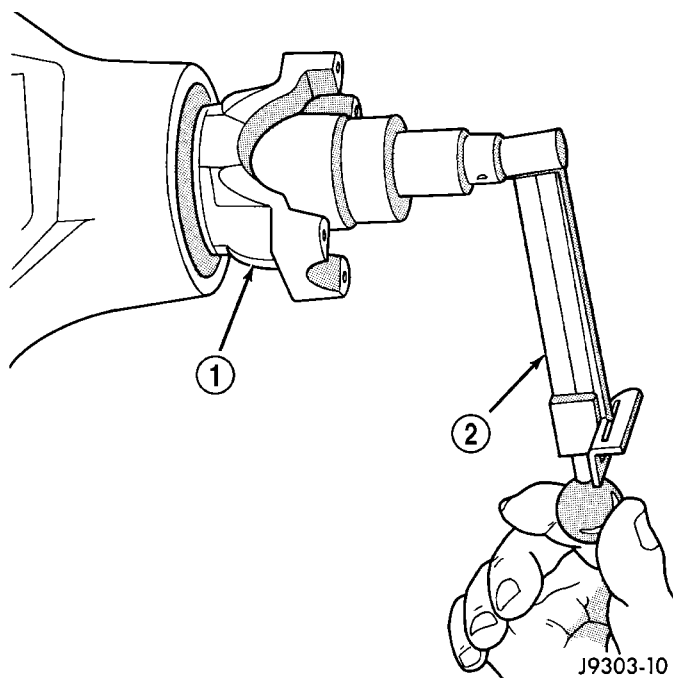
- Original Bearings: 1 to 2.25 N·m (10 to 20 in. lbs.).
- New Bearings: 2.8 to 4 N·m (25 to 35 in. lbs.).

(14) Invert the differential case and start two ring gear bolts. This will provide case-to-ring gear bolt hole alignment.

(15) Invert the differential case in the vise.

(16) Install **new** ring gear bolts and alternately tighten to 129-142 N·m (95-105 ft. lbs.) (Fig. 90).

## PINION GEAR/RING GEAR (Continued)

**Fig. 89 PINION ROTATING TORQUE**

- 1 - PINION YOKE/COMPANION FLANGE  
2 - INCH POUND TORQUE WRENCH

**CAUTION:** Never reuse the ring gear bolts. The bolts can fracture causing extensive damage.

**NOTE:** If equipped with Vari-Lok® differential install oil feed plenum and side bearing.

(17) Install differential in housing.

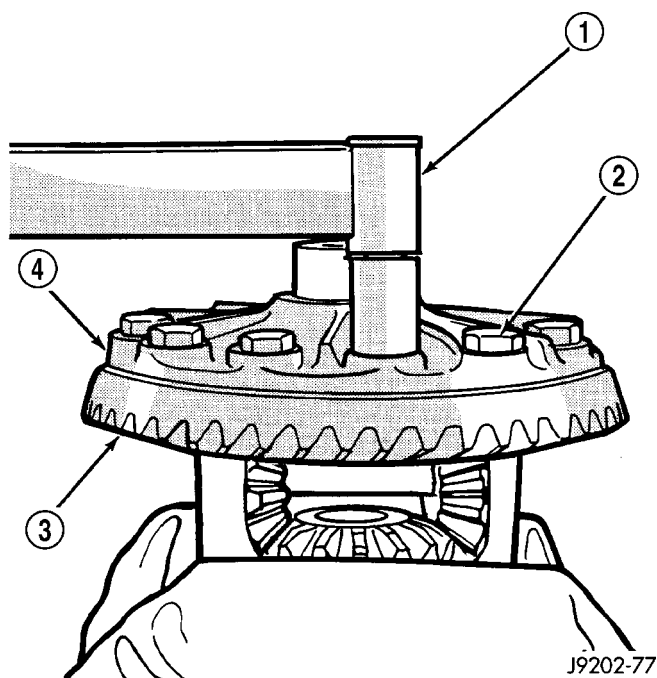
**CAUTION:** When installing a Vari-lok® differential (Fig. 91), the oil feed tube must point to the bottom of the housing. If differential is installed with the oil feed tube pointed toward the top, the anti-rotation tabs will be damaged.

(18) Verify differential bearing preload, gear mesh and contact pattern. Refer to Adjustments for procedure.

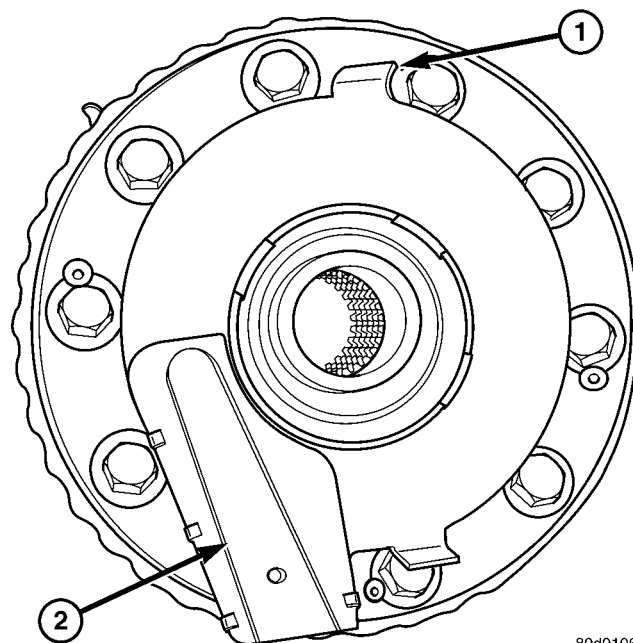
(19) Install differential cover and fill with gear lubricant.

(20) Install the propeller shaft with the reference marks aligned.

(21) Remove supports and lower vehicle.

**Fig. 90 RING GEAR**

- 1 - TORQUE WRENCH  
2 - RING GEAR BOLT  
3 - RING GEAR  
4 - CASE

**Fig. 91 VARI-LOK**

- 1 - ANTI-ROTATION TAB  
2 - OIL FEED TUBE



# BRAKES

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
BRAKES - BASE .....	1	BRAKES - ABS .....	42

## BRAKES - BASE

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>BRAKES - BASE</b>		<b>OPERATION</b>	
DESCRIPTION .....	3	OPERATION - FRONT DISC BRAKE PADS ..	11
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - BASE BRAKE SYSTEM .....	3	OPERATION - REAR DISC BRAKE PADS ..	11
STANDARD PROCEDURE		<b>REMOVAL</b>	
STANDARD PROCEDURE - MANUAL BLEEDING.....	5	REMOVAL- FRONT DISC BRAKE SHOES ..	12
STANDARD PROCEDURE - PRESSURE BLEEDING.....	5	REMOVAL - REAR DISC BRAKE PADS .....	12
SPECIFICATIONS		<b>INSTALLATION</b>	
BRAKE COMPONENTS .....	6	INSTALLATION - FRONT DISC BRAKE SHOES .....	14
TORQUE CHART .....	7	INSTALLATION - REAR DISC BRAKE PADS ..	14
SPECIAL TOOLS		<b>DISC BRAKE CALIPERS</b>	
BASE BRAKES .....	8	<b>REMOVAL</b>	
<b>BRAKE FLUID LEVEL SWITCH</b>		REMOVAL - FRONT DISC BRAKE CALIPER ..	14
REMOVAL .....	8	REMOVAL - REAR DISC BRAKE CALIPER ..	14
INSTALLATION .....	8	<b>DISASSEMBLY</b>	
<b>RED BRAKE WARN INDICATOR SWITCH</b>		DISASSEMBLY - FRONT DISC BRAKE CALIPER .....	16
DESCRIPTION .....	8	DISASSEMBLY - REAR DISC BRAKE CALIPER .....	16
OPERATION .....	8	CLEANING - DISC BRAKE CALIPER .....	17
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - RED BRAKE WARNING LAMP .....	8	INSPECTION - DISC BRAKE CALIPER .....	18
<b>ADJUSTABLE PEDAL SWITCH</b>		<b>ASSEMBLY</b>	
REMOVAL .....	8	ASSEMBLY - FRONT DISC BRAKE CALIPER .....	18
INSTALLATION .....	8	ASSEMBLY - REAR DISC BRAKE CALIPER ..	19
<b>BRAKE LINES</b>		<b>INSTALLATION</b>	
DESCRIPTION .....	9	INSTALLATION - FRONT DISC BRAKE CALIPER .....	20
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - BRAKE HOSES AND LINES .....	9	INSTALLATION - REAR DISC BRAKE CALIPER .....	20
STANDARD PROCEDURE		<b>FLUID</b>	
STANDARD PROCEDURE - DOUBLE INVERTED FLARING .....	9	DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - BRAKE FLUID CONTAMINATION .....	21
STANDARD PROCEDURE - ISO FLARING ..	10	<b>SPECIFICATIONS</b>	
<b>BRAKE PADS / SHOES</b>		BRAKE FLUID .....	21
DESCRIPTION		<b>FLUID RESERVOIR</b>	
DESCRIPTION - FRONT DISC BRAKE PADS ..	10	REMOVAL .....	21
DESCRIPTION - REAR DISC BRAKE PADS ..	10		



INSTALLATION . . . . .	21	REMOVAL - REAR DISC BRAKE ROTOR . . .	31
<b>MASTER CYLINDER</b>		INSTALLATION	
DESCRIPTION . . . . .	22	INSTALLATION - FRONT DISC BRAKE	
OPERATION . . . . .	22	ROTOR . . . . .	31
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - MASTER		INSTALLATION - REAR DISC BRAKE	
CYLINDER/POWER BOOSTER . . . . .	22	ROTOR . . . . .	32
STANDARD PROCEDURE - MASTER		<b>DISC BRAKE CALIPER ADAPTER</b>	
CYLINDER BLEEDING PROCEDURE . . . . .	23	REMOVAL . . . . .	32
REMOVAL . . . . .	23	INSTALLATION . . . . .	32
INSTALLATION . . . . .	23	<b>PARKING BRAKE</b>	
<b>PEDAL</b>		OPERATION . . . . .	32
DESCRIPTION		DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - PARKING	
DESCRIPTION - STANDARD PEDAL . . . . .	24	BRAKE . . . . .	33
DESCRIPTION - ADJUSTABLE PEDALS . . . . .	24	<b>CABLES</b>	
OPERATION . . . . .	24	REMOVAL	
REMOVAL		REMOVAL - FRONT PARKING BRAKE	
REMOVAL - NON-ADJUSTABLE PEDAL . . . . .	24	CABLE . . . . .	33
REMOVAL - ADJUSTABLE PEDALS . . . . .	25	REMOVAL - REAR PARKING BRAKE	
INSTALLATION		CABLES . . . . .	34
INSTALLATION - NON-ADJUSTABLE PEDAL . . . . .	26	INSTALLATION	
INSTALLATION - ADJUSTABLE PEDALS . . . . .	26	INSTALLATION - FRONT PARKING BRAKE	
<b>PEDAL MOTOR</b>		CABLE . . . . .	35
REMOVAL . . . . .	27	INSTALLATION - REAR PARKING BRAKE	
INSTALLATION . . . . .	27	CABLES . . . . .	35
<b>POWER BRAKE BOOSTER</b>		<b>LEVER</b>	
DESCRIPTION . . . . .	27	REMOVAL . . . . .	36
OPERATION . . . . .	27	INSTALLATION . . . . .	36
REMOVAL . . . . .	27	<b>SHOES</b>	
INSTALLATION . . . . .	27	DESCRIPTION . . . . .	37
<b>ROTORS</b>		OPERATION . . . . .	37
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING		REMOVAL . . . . .	37
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - FRONT DISC		CLEANING - REAR DRUM IN HAT BRAKE . . . . .	38
BRAKE ROTOR . . . . .	29	INSPECTION - REAR DRUM IN HAT BRAKE . . . . .	39
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - REAR DISC		INSTALLATION . . . . .	39
BRAKE ROTOR . . . . .	30	ADJUSTMENTS	
STANDARD PROCEDURE - DISC BRAKE		ADJUSTMENT - REAR DRUM IN HAT PARK	
ROTOR MACHINING . . . . .	31	BRAKE (ROTOR REMOVED) . . . . .	39
REMOVAL		ADJUSTMENT - WITH ADJUSTING TOOL . . . . .	41
REMOVAL - FRONT DISC BRAKE ROTOR . . . . .	31		

## BRAKES - BASE

### DESCRIPTION

Dual piston disc brake calipers are used on the front. Single piston disc brake calipers are used on the rear. Ventilated disc brake rotors are used on the front and solid rotors are used on the rear.

Power brake assist is supplied by a vacuum operated, dual diaphragm power brake booster. The master cylinder used for all applications has an aluminum body and nylon reservoir with single filler cap. A fluid level indicator is mounted to the side of the reservoir.

The braking force of the rear wheels is controlled by electronic brake distribution (EBD). The EBD functions like a rear proportioning valve. The EBD system uses the ABS system to control the slip of the rear wheels in partial braking range. The braking force of the rear wheels is controlled electronically by using the inlet and outlet valves located in the HCU.

Factory installed brake linings on all models consists of organic base material combined with metallic particles.

### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - BASE BRAKE SYSTEM

Base brake components consist of the brake shoes, calipers, rear park brake drums/rotors, front brake rotors, brake lines, master cylinder, booster, HCU and parking brake shoes.

Brake diagnosis involves determining if the problem is related to a mechanical, hydraulic, electrical or vacuum operated component.

The first diagnosis step is the preliminary check.

#### PRELIMINARY BRAKE CHECK

(1) Check condition of tires and wheels. Damaged wheels and worn, damaged, or underinflated tires can cause pull, shudder, vibration, and a condition similar to grab.

(2) If complaint was based on noise when braking, check suspension components. Jounce front and rear of vehicle and listen for noise that might be caused by loose, worn or damaged suspension or steering components.

(3) Inspect brake fluid level and condition. Note that the brake reservoir fluid level will decrease in proportion to normal lining wear. **Also note that brake fluid tends to darken over time. This is normal and should not be mistaken for contamination.**

(a) If fluid level is abnormally low, look for evidence of leaks at calipers, brake lines, master cylinder, and HCU.

(b) If fluid appears contaminated, drain out a sample to examine. System will have to be flushed

if fluid is separated into layers, or contains a substance other than brake fluid. The system seals, cups, hoses, master cylinder, and HCU will also have to be replaced after flushing. Use clean brake fluid to flush the system.

(4) Check parking brake operation. Verify free movement and full release of cables and lever. Also note if vehicle was being operated with parking brake partially applied.

(5) Check brake pedal operation. Verify that pedal does not bind and has adequate free play. If pedal lacks free play, check pedal and power booster for being loose or for bind condition. Do not road test until condition is corrected.

(6) Check booster vacuum check valve and hose.

(7) If components checked appear OK, road test the vehicle.

### ROAD TESTING

(1) If complaint involved low brake pedal, pump pedal and note if it comes back up to normal height.

(2) Check brake pedal response with transmission in neutral and engine running. Pedal should remain firm under constant foot pressure.

(3) During road test, make normal and firm brake stops in 25-40 mph range. Note faulty brake operation such as low pedal, hard pedal, fade, pedal pulsation, pull, grab, drag, noise, etc.

(4) Attempt to stop the vehicle with the parking brake only (do not exceed 25 mph) and note grab, drag, noise, etc.

#### PEDAL FALLS AWAY

A brake pedal that falls away under steady foot pressure is generally the result of a system leak. The leak point could be at a brake line, fitting, hose, or caliper. If leakage is severe, fluid will be evident at or around the leaking component.

Internal leakage (seal by-pass) in the master cylinder caused by worn or damaged piston cups, may also be the problem cause.

An internal leak in the ABS system may also be the problem with no visual fluid leak.

#### LOW PEDAL

If a low pedal is experienced, pump the pedal several times. If the pedal comes back up, the most likely causes are worn linings, rotors, or calipers are not sliding on the slide pins. The proper course of action is to inspect and replace all worn component.

#### SPONGY PEDAL

A spongy pedal is most often caused by air in the system. However substandard brake hoses can cause a spongy pedal. The proper course of action is to bleed the system, and replace substandard quality brake hoses if suspected.

## BRAKES - BASE (Continued)

## HARD PEDAL OR HIGH PEDAL EFFORT

A hard pedal or high pedal effort may be due to lining that is water soaked, contaminated, glazed, or badly worn. The power booster, check valve, check valve seal/grommet or vacuum leak could also cause a hard pedal or high pedal effort.

## PEDAL PULSATION

Pedal pulsation is caused by components that are loose, or beyond tolerance limits.

The primary cause of pulsation are disc brake rotors with excessive lateral runout or thickness variation. Other causes are loose wheel bearings or calipers and worn, damaged tires.

**NOTE:** Some pedal pulsation may be felt during ABS activation.

## BRAKE DRAG

Brake drag occurs when the lining is in constant contact with the rotor or drum. Drag can occur at one wheel, all wheels, fronts only, or rears only.

Drag is a product of incomplete brake release. Drag can be minor or severe enough to overheat the linings, rotors and park brake drums.

Minor drag will usually cause slight surface charring of the lining. It can also generate hard spots in rotors and park brake drums from the overheat-cool down process. In most cases, the rotors, wheels and tires are quite warm to the touch after the vehicle is stopped.

Severe drag can char the brake lining all the way through. It can also distort and score rotors to the point of replacement. The wheels, tires and brake components will be extremely hot. In severe cases, the lining may generate smoke as it chars from overheating.

Common causes of brake drag are:

- Parking brake partially applied.
- Loose/worn wheel bearing.
- Seized caliper.
- Caliper binding.
- Loose caliper mounting.
- Mis-assembled components.
- Damaged brake lines.

If brake drag occurs at the front, rear or all wheels, the problem may be related to a blocked master cylinder return port, faulty power booster (binds-does not release) or the ABS system.

## BRAKE FADE

Brake fade is usually a product of overheating caused by brake drag. However, brake overheating and resulting fade can also be caused by riding the brake pedal, making repeated high deceleration stops in a short time span, or constant braking on steep

mountain roads. Refer to the Brake Drag information in this section for causes.

## BRAKE PULL

Front brake pull condition could result from:

- Contaminated lining in one caliper
- Seized caliper piston
- Binding caliper
- Loose caliper
- Rusty caliper slide surfaces
- Improper brake shoes
- Damaged rotor
- Wheel alignment.
- Tire pressure.

A worn, damaged wheel bearing or suspension component are further causes of pull. A damaged front tire (bruised, ply separation) can also cause pull.

A common and frequently misdiagnosed pull condition is where direction of pull changes after a few stops. The cause is a combination of brake drag followed by fade at one of the brake units.

As the dragging brake overheats, efficiency is so reduced that fade occurs. Since the opposite brake unit is still functioning normally, its braking effect is magnified. This causes pull to switch direction in favor of the normally functioning brake unit.

An additional point when diagnosing a change in pull condition concerns brake cool down. Remember that pull will return to the original direction, if the dragging brake unit is allowed to cool down (and is not seriously damaged).

## REAR BRAKE DRAG OR PULL

Rear drag or pull may be caused by improperly adjusted park brake shoes or seized parking brake cables, contaminated lining, bent or binding shoes or improperly assembled components. This is particularly true when only one rear wheel is involved. However, when both rear wheels are affected, the master cylinder or ABS system could be at fault.

## BRAKES DO NOT HOLD AFTER DRIVING THROUGH DEEP WATER PUDDLES

This condition is generally caused by water soaked lining. If the lining is only wet, it can be dried by driving with the brakes very lightly applied for a mile or two. However, if the lining is both soaked and dirt contaminated, cleaning and or replacement will be necessary.

## BRAKE LINING CONTAMINATION

Brake lining contamination is mostly a product of leaking calipers or worn seals, driving through deep water puddles, or lining that has become covered with grease and grit during repair. Contaminated lin-

## BRAKES - BASE (Continued)

ing should be replaced to avoid further brake problems.

## WHEEL AND TIRE PROBLEMS

Some conditions attributed to brake components may actually be caused by a wheel or tire problem.

A damaged wheel can cause shudder, vibration and pull. A worn or damaged tire can also cause pull.

**NOTE: Propshaft angle can also cause vibration/shudder.**

Severely worn tires with very little tread left can produce a grab-like condition as the tire loses and recovers traction. Flat-spotted tires can cause vibration and generate shudder during brake operation. Tire damage such as a severe bruise, cut, ply separation, low air pressure can cause pull and vibration.

## BRAKE NOISES

Some brake noise is common on some disc brakes during the first few stops after a vehicle has been parked overnight or stored. This is primarily due to the formation of trace corrosion (light rust) on metal surfaces. This light corrosion is typically cleared from the metal surfaces after a few brake applications causing the noise to subside.

## BRAKE SQUEAK/SQUEAL

Brake squeak or squeal may be due to linings that are wet or contaminated with brake fluid, grease, or oil. Glazed linings and rotors with hard spots can also contribute to squeak. Dirt and foreign material embedded in the brake lining will also cause squeak/squeal.

A very loud squeak or squeal is frequently a sign of severely worn brake lining. If the lining has worn through to the brake shoes in spots, metal-to-metal contact occurs. If the condition is allowed to continue, rotors may become so scored that replacement is necessary.

**NOTE: The front outer brake shoes are equipped with a wear indicator. The indicator will produce an audible noise when it contacts the rotor surface.**

## BRAKE CHATTER

Brake chatter is usually caused by loose or worn components, or glazed/burnt lining. Rotors with hard spots can also contribute to chatter. Additional causes of chatter are out-of-tolerance rotors, brake lining not securely attached to the shoes, loose wheel bearings and contaminated brake lining.

## THUMP/CLUNK NOISE

Thumping or clunk noises during braking are frequently **not** caused by brake components. In many cases, such noises are caused by loose or damaged steering, suspension, or engine components.

## STANDARD PROCEDURE

## STANDARD PROCEDURE - MANUAL BLEEDING

Use Mopar brake fluid, or an equivalent quality fluid meeting SAE J1703-F and DOT 3 standards only. Use fresh, clean fluid from a sealed container at all times.

Do not pump the brake pedal at any time while bleeding. Air in the system will be compressed into small bubbles that are distributed throughout the hydraulic system. This will make additional bleeding operations necessary.

Do not allow the master cylinder to run out of fluid during bleed operations. An empty cylinder will allow additional air to be drawn into the system. Check the cylinder fluid level frequently and add fluid as needed.

Bleed only one brake component at a time in the following sequence:

(1) Fill the master cylinder reservoir with brake fluid.

(2) If calipers are overhauled, open all caliper bleed screws. Then close each bleed screw as fluid starts to drip from it. Top off master cylinder reservoir once more before proceeding.

(3) Attach one end of bleed hose to bleed screw and insert opposite end in glass container partially filled with brake fluid (Fig. 1). Be sure end of bleed hose is immersed in fluid.

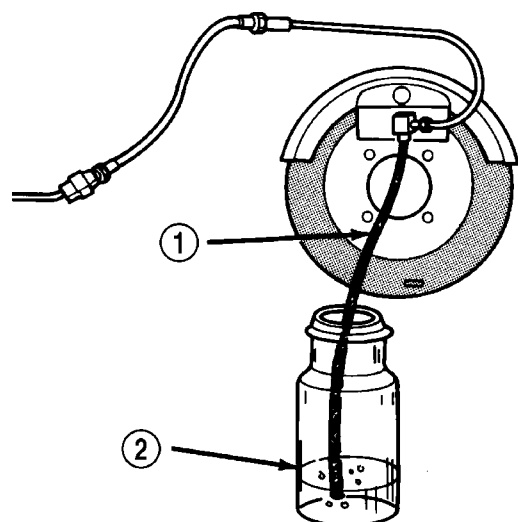
(4) Open up bleeder, then have a helper press down the brake pedal. Once the pedal is down close the bleeder. Repeat bleeding until fluid stream is clear and free of bubbles. Then move to the next wheel.

## STANDARD PROCEDURE - PRESSURE BLEEDING

Use Mopar brake fluid, or an equivalent quality fluid meeting SAE J1703-F and DOT 3 standards only. Use fresh, clean fluid from a sealed container at all times.

Do not pump the brake pedal at any time while bleeding. Air in the system will be compressed into small bubbles that are distributed throughout the hydraulic system. This will make additional bleeding operations necessary.

## BRAKES - BASE (Continued)



J8905-18

**Fig. 1 Bleed Hose Setup**

1 - BLEED HOSE

2 - FLUID CONTAINER PARTIALLY FILLED WITH FLUID

Do not allow the master cylinder to run out of fluid during bleed operations. An empty cylinder will allow additional air to be drawn into the system. Check the cylinder fluid level frequently and add fluid as needed.

Bleed only one brake component at a time in the following sequence:

Follow the manufacturers instructions carefully when using pressure equipment. Do not exceed the tank manufacturers pressure recommendations. Generally, a tank pressure of 51-67 kPa (15-20 psi) is sufficient for bleeding.

Fill the bleeder tank with recommended fluid and purge air from the tank lines before bleeding.

Do not pressure bleed without a proper master cylinder adapter. The wrong adapter can lead to leakage, or drawing air back into the system. Use adapter provided with the equipment or Adapter 6921.

## SPECIFICATIONS

## BRAKE COMPONENTS

## SPECIFICATIONS

DESCRIPTION	SPECIFICATION
Front Disc Brake Caliper Type	Floating
Front Disc Brake Caliper Piston	48 mm (1.889 in.)
Front Disc Brake Rotor Type	Ventilated
Front Disc Brake Rotor Diameter	305 mm (12 in.)
Front Disc Brake Rotor Max. Runout	0.05 mm (0.002 in.)
Front Disc Brake Rotor Max. Thickness Variation	0.0127 mm (0.0005 in.)
Front Disc Brake Rotor Min. Thickness	24.5 mm (0.9646 in.)
Rear Disc Brake Caliper Type	Floating
Rear Disc Brake Caliper Piston	48 mm (1.889 in.)
Rear Disc Brake Rotor Type Diameter	Solid
Rear Disc Brake Rotor Diameter	305 mm (12 in.)
Rear Disc Brake Rotor Max. Runout	0.76 mm (0.003 in.)
Rear Disc Brake Rotor Max. Thickness Variation	0.0127 mm (0.0005 in.)
Rear Disc Brake Rotor Min. Thickness	8.5 mm (0.335 in.)
Rear Disc Brake Rotor Drum Max. Diameter	196 mm (7.7166 in.)
Brake Booster Type	Dual Diaphragm



## BRAKES - BASE (Continued)

## TORQUE CHART

## TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS

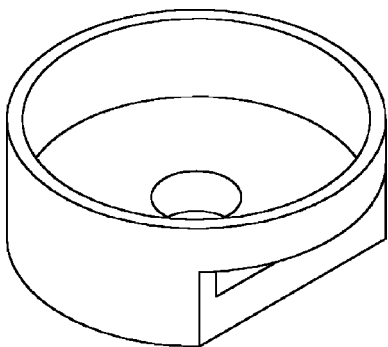
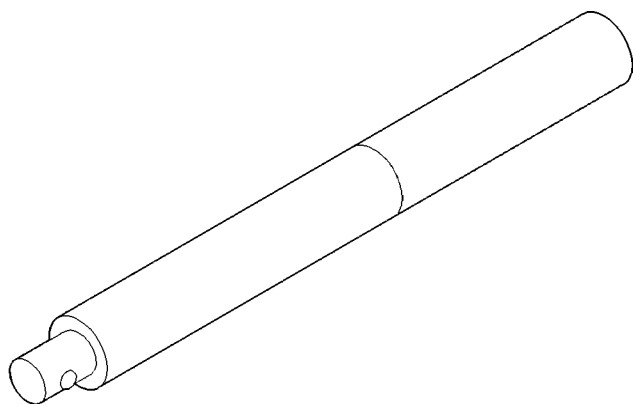
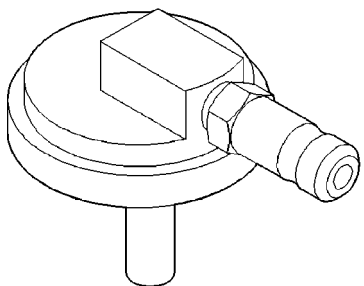
DESCRIPTION	N-m	Ft. Lbs.	In. Lbs.
Brake Pedal Support Bolt	24	17	—
Brake Pedal Pivot Nut	31	23	—
Brake Pedal Bracket Adjustable pedals	28	21	250
Brake Pedal Bracket To Dash	12	9	105
Brake Booster Mounting Nuts	39	29	—
Master Cylinder Mounting Nuts	25	18	—
Master Cylinder Primary Brake Line	16	—	144
Master Cylinder Secondary Brake Line	16	—	144
Front Caliper Slide Pins	72	53	—
Front Caliper Anchor Bolts	103	76	—
Front Caliper Brake Hose Banjo Bolt	31	23	—
Front Caliper Bleed Screw	10	—	88
Rear Caliper Slide Pins	35	26	—
Rear Caliper Anchor Bolts	103	76	—
Rear Caliper Brake Hose Banjo Bolt	31	23	—
Rear Caliper Bleed Screw	16	—	144



## BRAKES - BASE (Continued)

## SPECIAL TOOLS

## BASE BRAKES

*Installer Caliper Dust Boot 8280**Handle C-4171**Adapter Pressure Bleeder 6921*

## BRAKE FLUID LEVEL SWITCH

## REMOVAL

- (1) Remove the wire connector from the fluid level sensor.
- (2) From the same side of the master cylinder reservoir release the sensor locking tabs with a small screw driver.
- (3) Pull the sensor out of the reservoir from the connector side of the sensor.

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Install the sensor with a new o-ring into the reservoir until the locking tabs are engaged.
- (2) Install the wire connector to the fluid level sensor.

## RED BRAKE WARN INDICATOR SWITCH

## DESCRIPTION

A red warning lamp is used for the service brake portion of the hydraulic system. The lamp is located in the instrument cluster.

## OPERATION

The lamp is turned on momentarily when the ignition switch is turn to the on position. This is a self test to verify the lamp is operational.

The red warning light alerts the driver if the fluid level is low or the parking brakes are applied. A red warning lamp with an amber warning lamp may indicate a electronic brake distribution fault.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - RED BRAKE WARNING LAMP

The red warning lamp illuminates when the parking brake is applied or when the fluid level in the master cylinder is low. It will also illuminate at start up as part of a bulb check.

If the light comes on, first verify that the parking brakes are fully released. Then check pedal action and fluid level. If a problem is confirmed, inspect the brake hydraulic system for leaks.

A red warning lamp with a amber warning lamp may indicate a electronic brake distribution fault.

## ADJUSTABLE PEDAL SWITCH

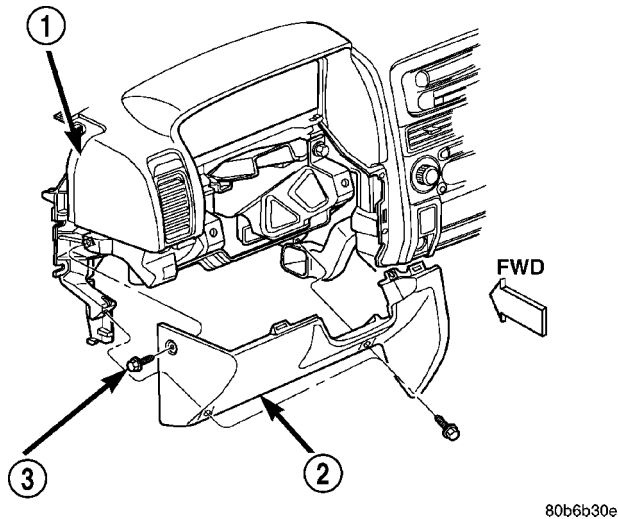
## REMOVAL

- (1) Remove the steering column opening cover (Fig. 2)(Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/STEERING COLUMN OPENING COVER - REMOVAL).
- (2) Disconnect the electrical connector from the adjustable pedal switch.
- (3) Remove the switch from the steering column opening cover by squeezing the retaining clips together and pushing the switch outwards (Fig. 3).

## INSTALLATION

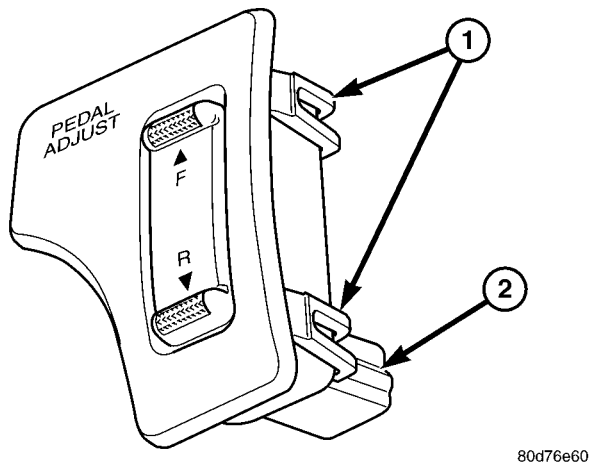
- (1) Install the switch to the steering column opening cover by pushing the switch inwards seating the

## ADJUSTABLE PEDAL SWITCH (Continued)



**Fig. 2 STEERING COLUMN OPENING COVER REMOVAL/INSTALL**

- 1 - INSTRUMENT PANEL TOP PAD
- 2 - STEERING COLUMN OPENING COVER
- 3 - SCREW (3)



**Fig. 3 ADJUSTABLE PEDAL SWITCH**

- 1 - RETAINING CLIPS
- 2 - ELECTRICAL CONNECTION

retaining clips to the steering column opening cover (Fig. 3).

(2) Reconnect the electrical connector to the adjustable pedal switch.

(3) Install the steering column opening cover (Fig. 2)(Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/STEERING COLUMN OPENING COVER - INSTALLATION).

## BRAKE LINES

### DESCRIPTION

Flexible rubber hose is used at both front brakes, rear brakes and at the rear axle junction block. Double walled steel tubing is used. Double inverted style and ISO style flares are used on the brake lines.

### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - BRAKE HOSES AND LINES

Flexible rubber hose is used at both front and rear brakes and at the rear axle junction block. Inspect the hoses whenever the brake system is serviced, at every engine oil change, or whenever the vehicle is in for service.

Inspect the hoses for surface cracking, scuffing, or worn spots. Replace any brake hose immediately if the fabric casing of the hose is exposed due to cracks or abrasions.

Also check brake hose installation. Faulty installation can result in kinked, twisted hoses, or contact with the wheels and tires or other chassis components. All of these conditions can lead to scuffing, cracking and eventual failure.

The steel brake lines should be inspected periodically for evidence of corrosion, twists, kinks, leaks, or other damage. Heavily corroded lines will eventually rust through causing leaks. In any case, corroded or damaged brake lines should be replaced.

Factory replacement brake lines and hoses are recommended to ensure quality, correct length and superior fatigue life. Care should be taken to make sure that brake line and hose mating surfaces are clean and free from nicks and burrs. Also remember that right and left brake hoses are not interchangeable.

Use new copper gaskets at all caliper connections. Be sure brake line connections are properly made (not cross threaded) and tightened to recommended torque.

## STANDARD PROCEDURE

### STANDARD PROCEDURE - DOUBLE INVERTED FLARING

A preformed metal brake tube is recommended and preferred for all repairs. However, double-wall steel tube can be used for emergency repair when factory replacement parts are not readily available.

Special bending tools are needed to avoid kinking or twisting of metal brake tubes. Special flaring tools are needed to make a double inverted flare or ISO flare.

- (1) Cut off damaged tube with Tubing Cutter.

## BRAKE LINES (Continued)

(2) Ream cut edges of tubing to ensure proper flare.

(3) Install replacement tube nut on the tube.

(4) Insert tube in flaring tool.

(5) Place gauge form over the end of the tube.

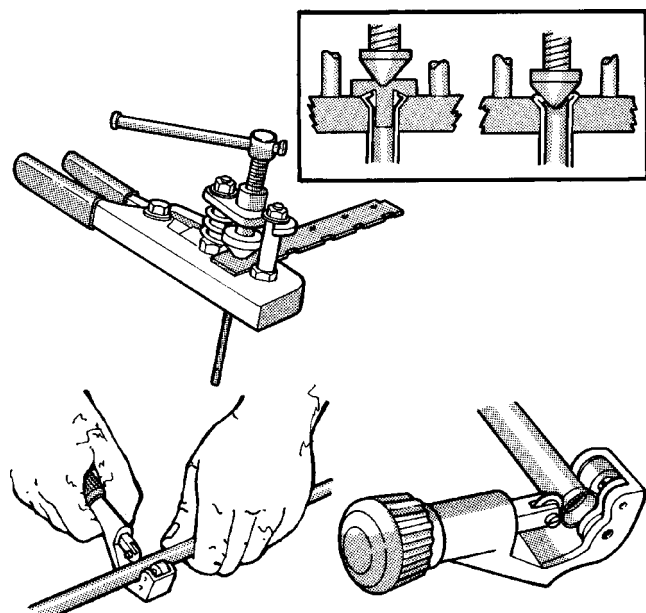
(6) Push tubing through flaring tool jaws until tube contacts recessed notch in gauge that matches tube diameter.

(7) Tighten the tool bar on the tube

(8) Insert plug on gauge in the tube. Then swing compression disc over gauge and center tapered flaring screw in recess of compression disc (Fig. 4).

(9) Tighten tool handle until plug gauge is squarely seated on jaws of flaring tool. This will start the inverted flare.

(10) Remove the plug gauge and complete the inverted flare.



**Fig. 4 Inverted**

### STANDARD PROCEDURE - ISO FLARING

A preformed metal brake tube is recommended and preferred for all repairs. However, double-wall steel tube can be used for emergency repair when factory replacement parts are not readily available.

Special bending tools are needed to avoid kinking or twisting of metal brake tubes. Special flaring tools are needed to make a double inverted flare or ISO flare.

To make a ISO flare use Snap-On® Flaring Tool TFM-428 or equivalent.

(1) Cut off damaged tube with Tubing Cutter.

(2) Remove any burrs from the inside of the tube.

(3) Install tube nut on the tube.

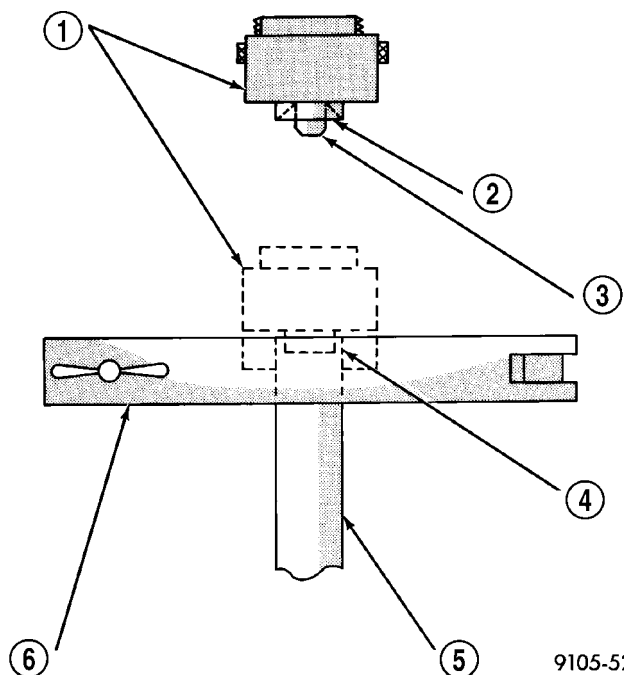
(4) Position the tube in the flaring tool flush with the top of the tool bar (Fig. 5). Then tighten the tool bar on the tube.

(5) Install the correct size adaptor on the flaring tool yoke screw.

(6) Lubricate the adaptor.

(7) Align the adaptor and yoke screw over the tube (Fig. 5).

(8) Turn the yoke screw in until the adaptor is squarely seated on the tool bar.



**Fig. 5 ISO Flaring**

- 1 - ADAPTER
- 2 - LUBRICATE HERE
- 3 - PILOT
- 4 - FLUSH WITH BAR
- 5 - TUBING
- 6 - BAR ASSEMBLY

## BRAKE PADS / SHOES

### DESCRIPTION

#### DESCRIPTION - FRONT DISC BRAKE PADS

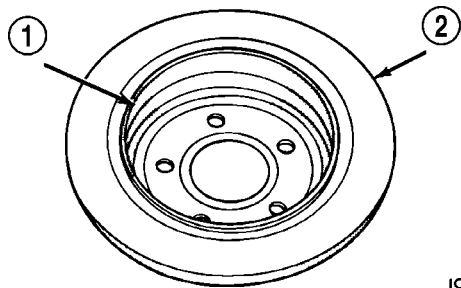
The calipers are twin piston type. The calipers are free to slide laterally on the anchor, this allows continuous compensation for lining wear.

#### DESCRIPTION - REAR DISC BRAKE PADS

The rear disc brakes consist of single piston floating-type calipers and solid rotors. The rear caliper is mounted on an anchor attached to an adapter attached the rear axle tube flange. The anchors are secured to the adapters with mounting bolts. The disc brake rotor splash shield is part of the adaptor.

## BRAKE PADS / SHOES (Continued)

The disc brake rotor has a built in brake drum used for the parking brakes (Fig. 6). The parking brake shoes are mounted to the adaptor.



J9405-114

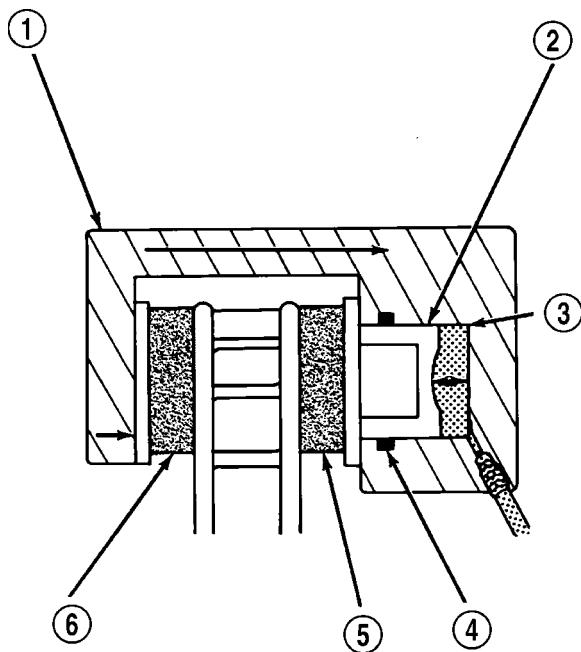
**Fig. 6 Rear Disc Brake Rotor**

- 1 - PARKING BRAKE DRUM SURFACE  
2 - REAR DISC BRAKE ROTOR

## OPERATION

## OPERATION - FRONT DISC BRAKE PADS

When the brakes are applied fluid pressure is exerted against the caliper pistons. The fluid pressure is exerted equally and in all directions. This means pressure exerted against the caliper pistons and within the caliper bores will be equal (Fig. 7).



J9405-102

**Fig. 7 Brake Caliper Operation**

- 1 - CALIPER  
2 - PISTON  
3 - PISTON BORE  
4 - SEAL  
5 - INBOARD SHOE  
6 - OUTBOARD SHOE

Fluid pressure applied to the pistons is transmitted directly to the inboard brake pad. This forces the

pad lining against the inner surface of the disc brake rotor. At the same time, fluid pressure within the piston bores forces the caliper to slide inward on the slide pins. This action brings the outboard brake pad lining into contact with the outer surface of the disc brake rotor.

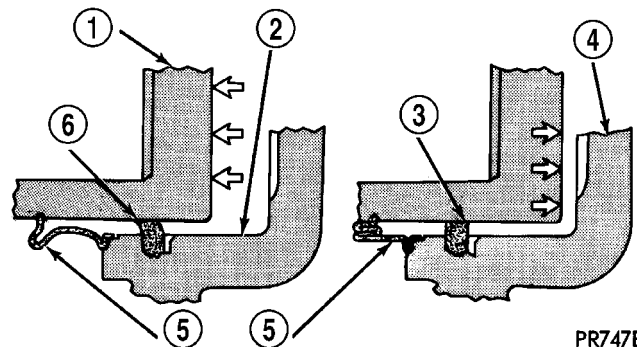
Fluid pressure acting simultaneously on the pistons and caliper to produces a strong clamping action. When sufficient force is applied, friction will stop the rotors from turning and bring the vehicle to a stop.

Application and release of the brake pedal generates only a very slight movement of the caliper and pistons. Upon release of the pedal, the caliper and pistons return to a rest position. The brake pads do not retract an appreciable distance from the rotor. In fact, clearance is usually at, or close to zero. The reasons for this are to keep road debris from getting between the rotor and lining and in wiping the rotor surface clear each revolution.

The caliper piston seals control the amount of piston extension needed to compensate for normal lining wear.

During brake application, the seals are deflected outward by fluid pressure and piston movement (Fig. 8). When the brakes (and fluid pressure) are released, the seals relax and retract the pistons.

The front outboard brake pads have wear indicators.



PR747B

**Fig. 8 Lining Wear Compensation By Piston Seal**

- 1 - PISTON  
2 - CYLINDER BORE  
3 - PISTON SEAL BRAKE PRESSURE OFF  
4 - CALIPER HOUSING  
5 - DUST BOOT  
6 - PISTON SEAL BRAKE PRESSURE ON

## OPERATION - REAR DISC BRAKE PADS

When the brakes are applied fluid pressure is exerted against the caliper pistons. The fluid pressure is exerted equally and in all directions. This means pressure exerted against the caliper pistons and within the caliper bores will be equal (Fig. 7).

Fluid pressure applied to the pistons is transmitted directly to the inboard brake pad. This forces the

## BRAKE PADS / SHOES (Continued)

pad lining against the inner surface of the disc brake rotor. At the same time, fluid pressure within the piston bores forces the caliper to slide inward on the slide pins. This action brings the outboard brake pad lining into contact with the outer surface of the disc brake rotor.

Fluid pressure acting simultaneously on the pistons and caliper produces a strong clamping action. When sufficient force is applied, friction will stop the rotors from turning and bring the vehicle to a stop.

Application and release of the brake pedal generates only a very slight movement of the caliper and pistons. Upon release of the pedal, the caliper and pistons return to a rest position. The brake pads do not retract an appreciable distance from the rotor. In fact, clearance is usually at, or close to zero. The reasons for this are to keep road debris from getting between the rotor and lining and in wiping the rotor surface clear each revolution.

The caliper piston seals control the amount of piston extension needed to compensate for normal lining wear.

During brake application, the seals are deflected outward by fluid pressure and piston movement (Fig. 8). When the brakes (and fluid pressure) are released, the seals relax and retract the pistons.

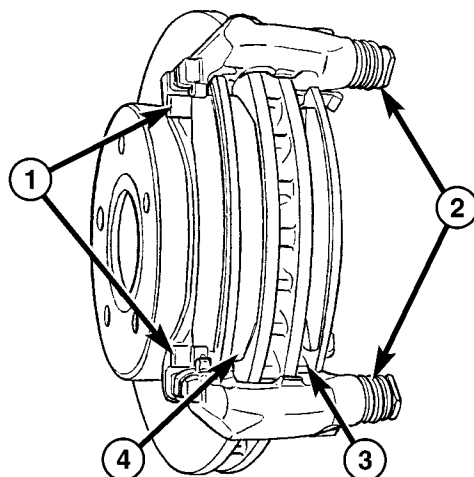
## REMOVAL

## REMOVAL- FRONT DISC BRAKE SHOES

- (1) Raise and support vehicle.
- (2) Remove wheel and tire assembly.
- (3) Drain small amount of fluid from master cylinder brake reservoir with **clean** suction gun.
- (4) Remove the caliper slide pin bolts and remove the caliper off the caliper adapter.
- (5) Secure caliper to nearby suspension part with wire. **Do not allow brake hose to support caliper weight.**
- (6) Remove the inboard and outboard brake pads from the caliper adapter (Fig. 9).
- (7) Remove the anti-rattle clips from the brake caliper adapter (Fig. 9).

## REMOVAL - REAR DISC BRAKE PADS

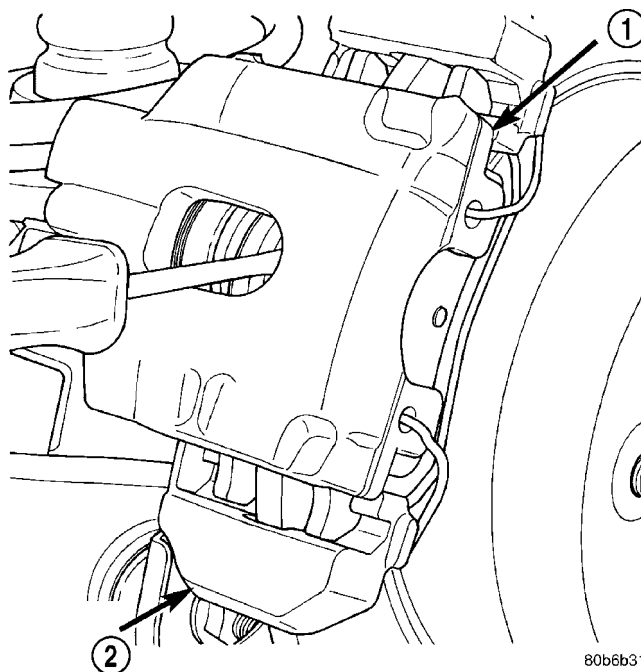
- (1) Raise and support vehicle.
- (2) Remove rear wheel and tire assembly.
- (3) Drain small amount of fluid from master cylinder brake reservoir with a **clean** suction gun.
- (4) Bottom caliper pistons into the caliper by prying the caliper over (Fig. 10).
- (5) Remove the caliper support spring by prying the spring out of the caliper (Fig. 11).



80f4cdtd

**Fig. 9 BRAKE PADS REMOVE/INSTALL**

- 1 - ANTI-RATTLE CLIPS
- 2 - CALIPER SLIDES
- 3 - INBOARD PAD
- 4 - OUTBOARD PAD



80b6b313

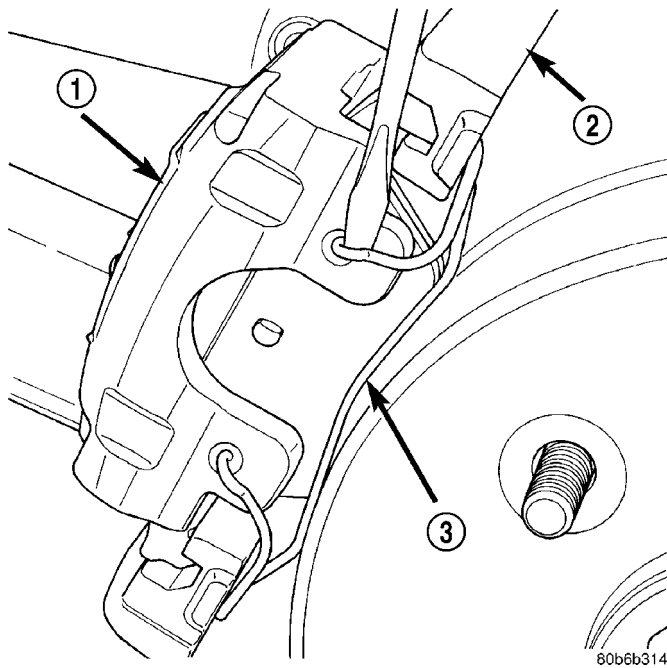
**Fig. 10 Bottoming Caliper Piston**

- 1 - CALIPER
- 2 - CALIPER ANCHOR

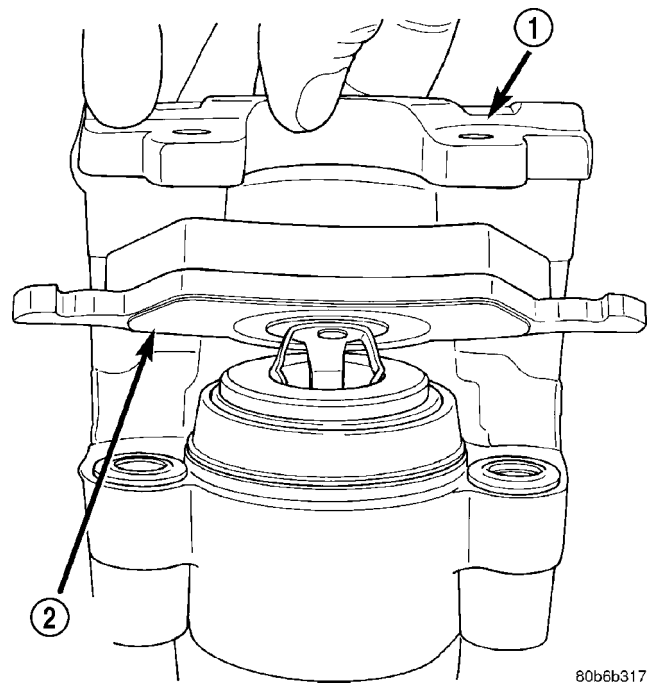
- (6) Remove the caliper slide pin bushing caps and remove the slide pins (Fig. 12).
- (7) Remove caliper from the anchor.
- (8) Secure caliper to nearby suspension part with wire. **Do not allow brake hose to support caliper weight.**
- (9) Remove the inboard brake pad from the caliper (Fig. 13).



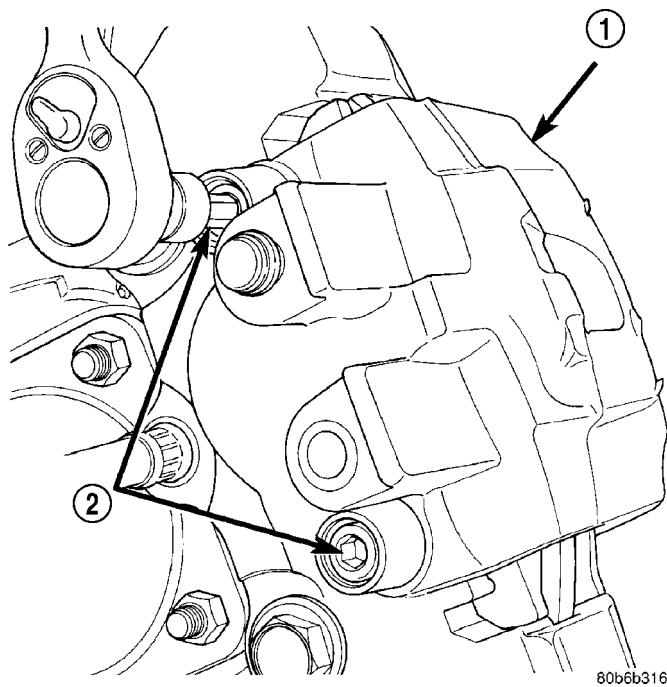
## BRAKE PADS / SHOES (Continued)

**Fig. 11 Caliper Support Spring**

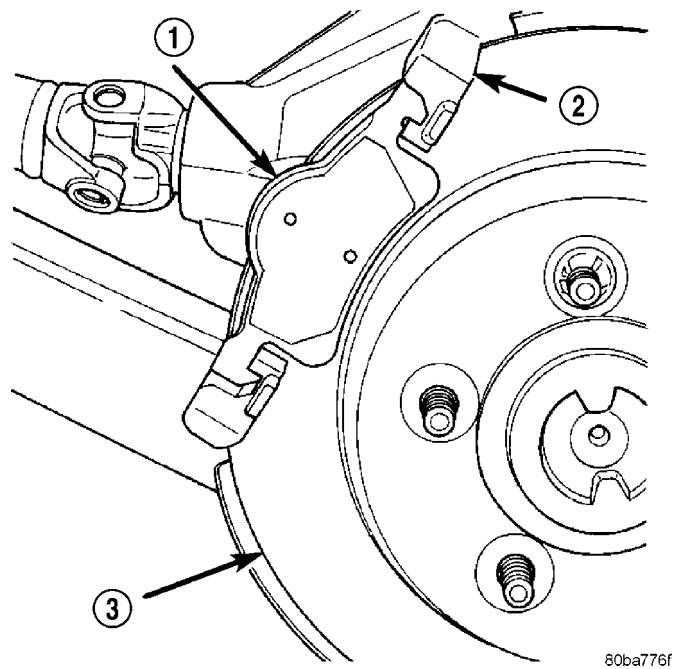
- 1 - CALIPER  
2 - ANCHOR  
3 - SUPPORT SPRING

**Fig. 13 Inboard Brake pad**

- 1 - CALIPER  
2 - INBOARD SHOE

**Fig. 12 Caliper Slide Pins**

- 1 - CALIPER  
2 - SLIDE PINS

**Fig. 14 Outboard Brake pad**

- 1 - OUTBOARD BRAKE SHOE  
2 - CALIPER ANCHOR  
3 - ROTOR

(10) Remove outboard brake pad (Fig. 14) from the caliper anchor.



## BRAKE PADS / SHOES (Continued)

## INSTALLATION

## INSTALLATION - FRONT DISC BRAKE SHOES

(1) Remove and clean all rust and debris from the anti-rattle clip mounting surfaces on the brake caliper adapter.

(2) Install new anti-rattle clips into the caliper adapter.

(3) Install the inboard and outboard brake pads onto the caliper adapter (Fig. 9).

(4) Install caliper on the caliper adapter.

(5) Install the caliper slide pin bolts and tighten to 72 N·m (53 ft. lbs.).

(6) Install wheel and tire assembly.

(7) Remove support and lower vehicle.

(8) Pump brake pedal until caliper pistons and brake pads are seated and a firm brake pedal is obtained.

(9) Fill brake fluid.

## INSTALLATION - REAR DISC BRAKE PADS

(1) Install the inboard brake pad onto the caliper (Fig. 13).

(2) Install the outboard brake pad onto the caliper anchor (Fig. 14).

(3) Lubricate the slide pins and slide pin bushings with Dow Corning® grease G807 or the grease provided with the brake pads.

(4) Install caliper on the anchor.

(5) Install the caliper slide pin and tighten to 29-41 N·m (21-30 ft. lbs.).

(6) Install the caliper slide pin bushing caps.

(7) Install the caliper support spring in the top end of the caliper and under the anchor. Then install other end into the lower caliper hole. Hold the spring into the caliper hole with your thumb while prying the end of the spring out and down under the anchor with a screw drive.

(8) Install wheel and tire assembly.

(9) Remove support and lower vehicle.

(10) Pump brake pedal until caliper piston and brake pads are seated and a firm brake pedal is obtained.

(11) Fill brake fluid level if necessary.

## DISC BRAKE CALIPERS

## REMOVAL

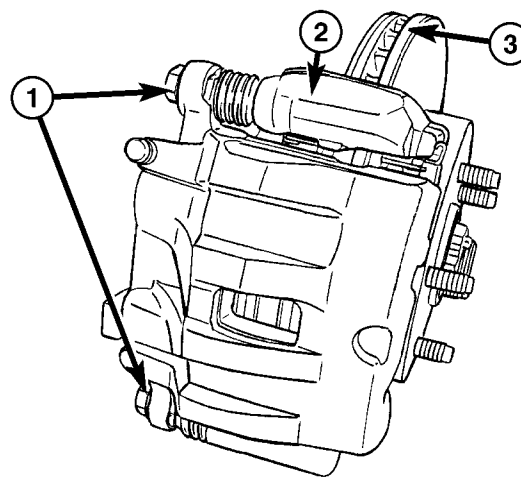
## REMOVAL - FRONT DISC BRAKE CALIPER

(1) Raise and support vehicle.

(2) Remove front wheel and tire assembly.

(3) Drain small amount of fluid from master cylinder brake reservoir with **clean** suction gun.

(4) Bottom caliper pistons into the caliper by prying the caliper over (Fig. 15).



8014d277

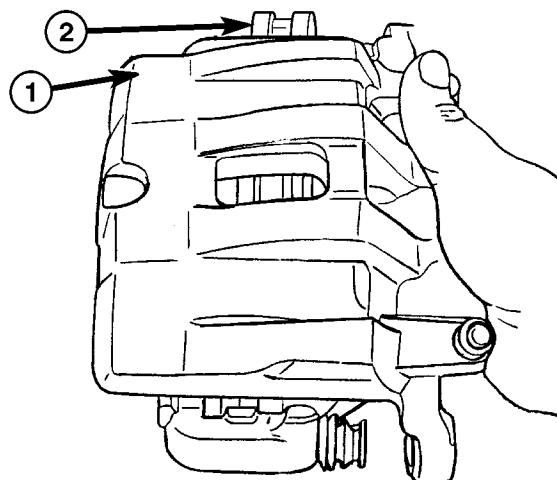
Fig. 15 CALIPER MOUNTED

- 1 - CALIPER SLIDE BOLTS
- 2 - CALIPER ADAPTER
- 3 - ROTOR

(5) Remove brake hose banjo bolt and gasket washers. Discard gasket washers.

(6) Remove the caliper slide bolts.

(7) Remove the caliper from the adapter (Fig. 16).



8014d25d

Fig. 16 CALIPER REMOVE/INSTALL

- 1 - CALIPER
- 2 - ROTOR

## REMOVAL - REAR DISC BRAKE CALIPER

(1) Raise and support vehicle.

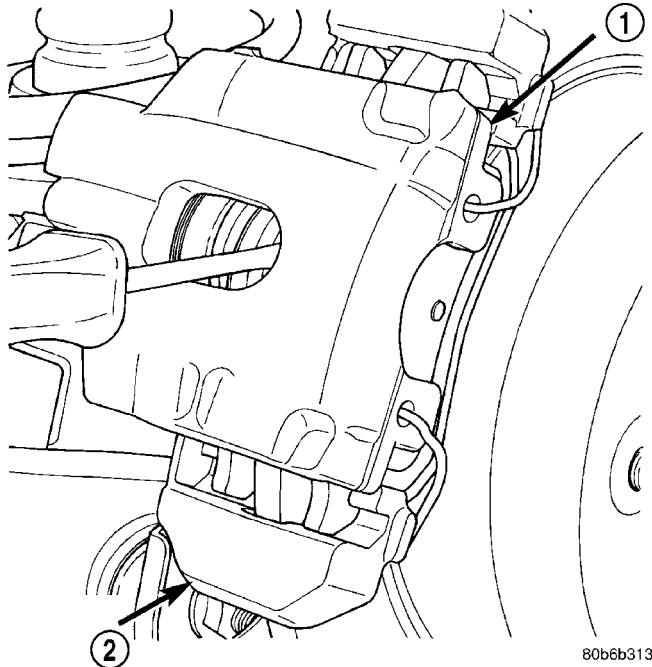
(2) Remove rear wheel and tire assembly.

(3) Drain small amount of fluid from master cylinder brake reservoir with a **clean** suction gun.

(4) Bottom caliper pistons into the caliper by prying the caliper over (Fig. 17).

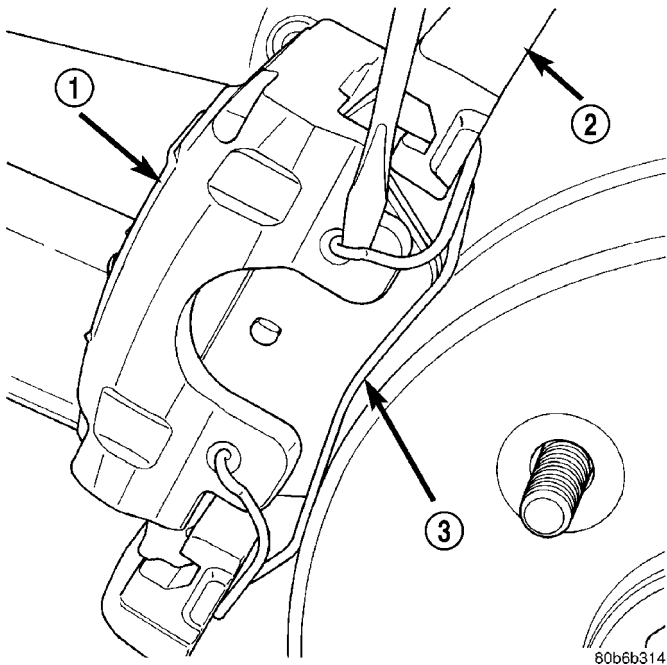
(5) Remove brake hose banjo bolt and discard gasket washers.

## DISC BRAKE CALIPERS (Continued)

**Fig. 17 Bottoming Caliper Piston**

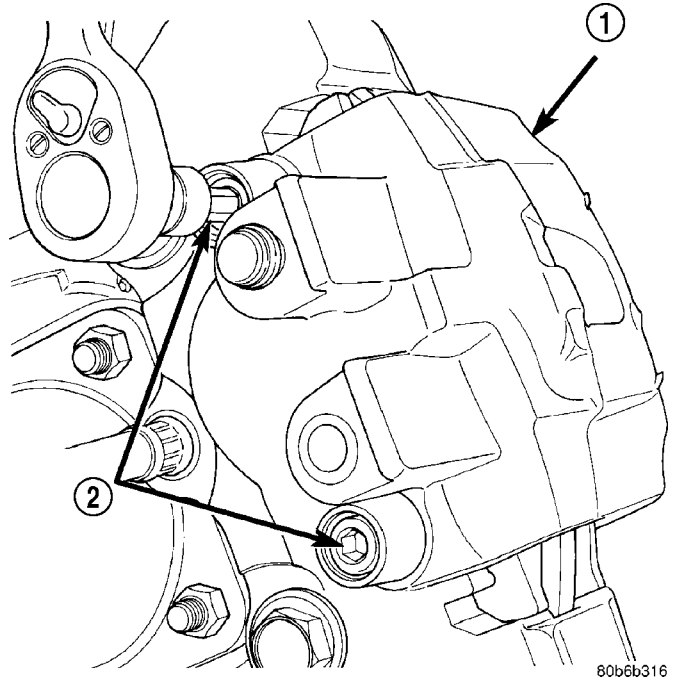
- 1 - CALIPER  
2 - CALIPER ANCHOR

(6) Remove the caliper support spring by prying the spring out of the caliper (Fig. 18).

**Fig. 18 Caliper Support Spring**

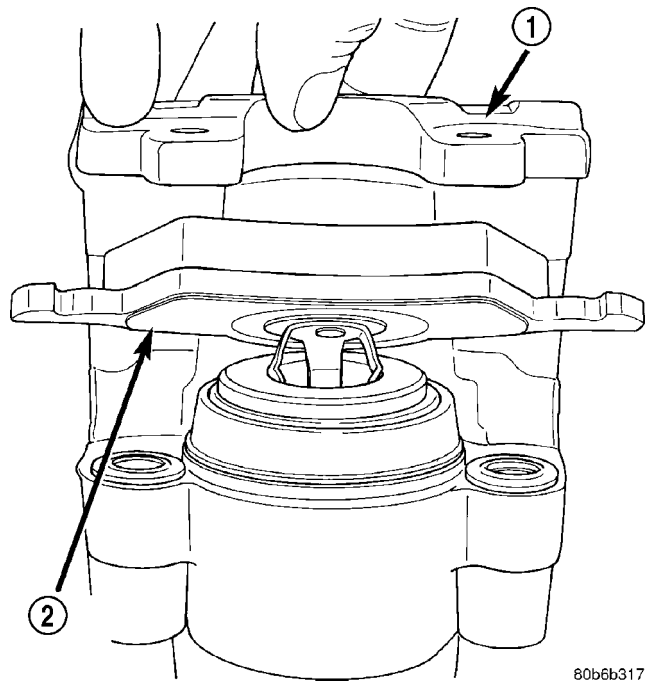
- 1 - CALIPER  
2 - ANCHOR  
3 - SUPPORT SPRING

(7) Remove the caliper slide pin bushing caps and remove the slide pins (Fig. 19).

**Fig. 19 Caliper Slide Pins**

- 1 - CALIPER  
2 - SLIDE PINS

(8) Remove caliper from the anchor.  
(9) Remove the inboard brake shoe (Fig. 20).

**Fig. 20 Inboard Brake Shoe**

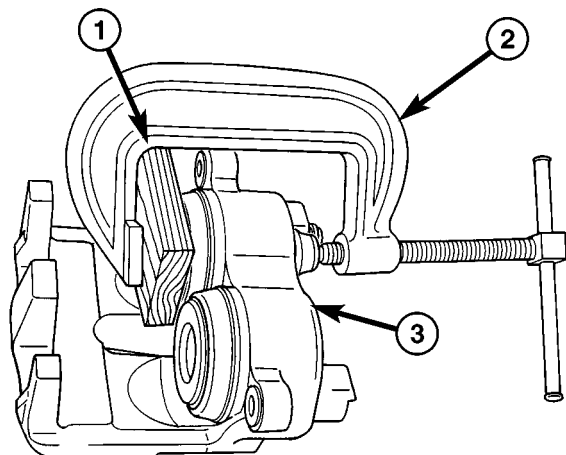
- 1 - CALIPER  
2 - INBOARD SHOE

## DISC BRAKE CALIPERS (Continued)

## DISASSEMBLY

## DISASSEMBLY - FRONT DISC BRAKE CALIPER

- (1) Drain the brake fluid from caliper.
- (2) C-clamp a block of wood over one piston (Fig. 21).

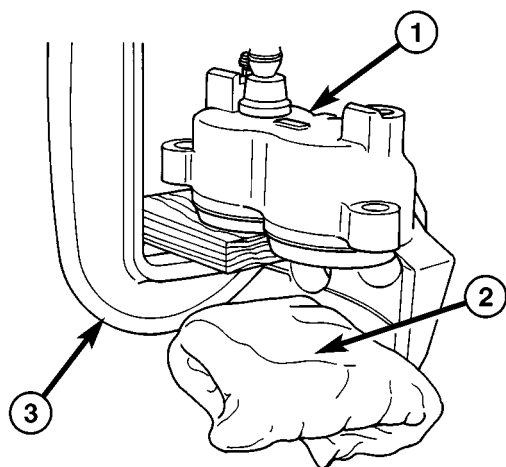


808c0358

**Fig. 21 C-CLAMP ONE PISTON**

- 1 - BLOCK OF WOOD
- 2 - C-CLAMP
- 3 - CALIPER

(3) Take another piece of wood and pad it with one-inch thickness of shop towels. Place this piece in the outboard shoe side of the caliper in front of the other piston. This will cushion and protect caliper piston during removal (Fig. 22).



808c035a

**Fig. 22 PROTECT CALIPER PISTON**

- 1 - CALIPER
- 2 - PADDED BLOCK OF WOOD
- 3 - C-CLAMP

(4) To remove the caliper piston direct **short bursts of low pressure air** with a blow gun

through the caliper brake hose port. Use only enough air pressure to ease the piston out.

**CAUTION:** Do not blow the piston out of the bore with sustained air pressure. This could result in a cracked piston.

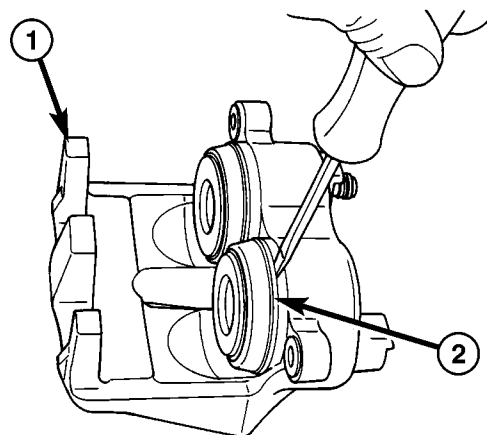
**WARNING:** NEVER ATTEMPT TO CATCH THE PISTON AS IT LEAVES THE BORE. THIS COULD RESULT IN PERSONAL INJURY.

(5) Remove the C-clamp and block of wood from the caliper and clamp it over the dust boot of the first piston removed. This will seal the empty piston bore.

(6) Move the padded piece of wood in front of the other piston.

(7) Remove the second piston using the same procedure with **short bursts of low pressure air**.

(8) Remove piston dust boots with a suitable pry tool (Fig. 23) and discard.



808c035c

**Fig. 23 Piston Dust Boot Removal**

- 1 - CALIPER
- 2 - PISTON DUST BOOT

(9) Remove piston seals from caliper (Fig. 24) and discard.

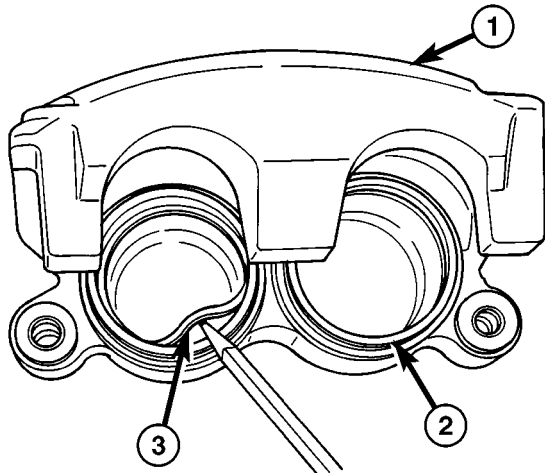
**CAUTION:** Do not scratch piston bore while removing the seals.

(10) Remove caliper bleed screw.

## DISASSEMBLY - REAR DISC BRAKE CALIPER

- (1) Drain brake fluid out of caliper.
- (2) Take a piece of wood and pad it with one-inch thickness of shop towels. Place this piece in the outboard shoe side of the caliper in front of the piston. This will cushion and protect caliper piston during removal (Fig. 25).

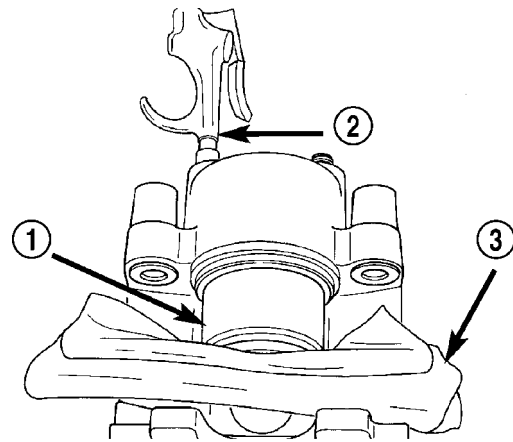
## DISC BRAKE CALIPERS (Continued)



808c035e

**Fig. 24 Piston Seal**

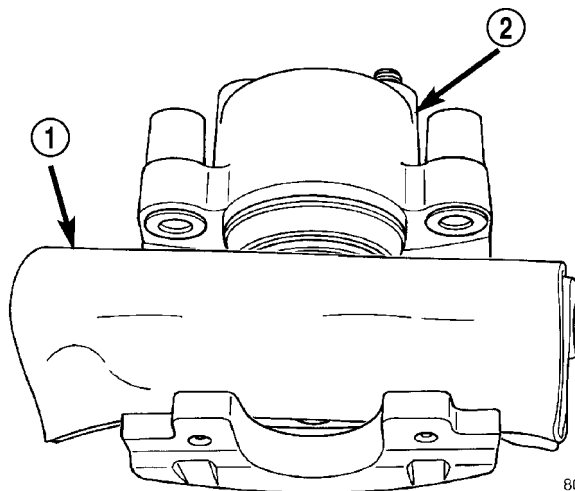
- 1 - CALIPER
- 2 - PISTON BORE
- 3 - PISTON SEAL



80b4fa5a

**Fig. 26 Caliper Piston Removal**

- 1 - CALIPER PISTON
- 2 - AIR GUN
- 3 - PADDING MATERIAL



80b4fa59

**Fig. 25 Padding Caliper Interior**

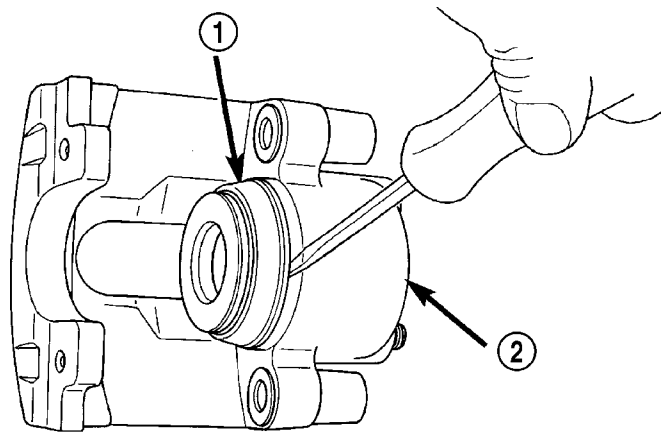
- 1 - SHOP TOWELS OR CLOTHS
- 2 - CALIPER

(3) To remove caliper piston direct **short bursts of low pressure air** with a blow gun through the caliper brake hose port (Fig. 26). Use only enough air pressure to ease the piston out.

**CAUTION:** Do not blow the piston out of the bore with sustained air pressure. This could result in a cracked piston.

**WARNING:** NEVER ATTEMPT TO CATCH THE PISTON AS IT LEAVES THE BORE. THIS MAY RESULT IN PERSONAL INJURY.

(4) Remove caliper piston dust boot with a suitable pry tool (Fig. 27) and discard.



80b4fa5b

**Fig. 27 Caliper Piston Dust**

- 1 - PISTON DUST BOOT
- 2 - CALIPER

(5) Remove piston seal from the caliper (Fig. 28) and discard.

**CAUTION:** Do not scratch the piston bore while removing the seal.

- (6) Remove caliper slide pin bushings (Fig. 29).
- (7) Remove caliper bleed screw.

**CLEANING - DISC BRAKE CALIPER**

Clean the caliper components with clean brake fluid or brake clean only. Wipe the caliper and piston dry with lint free towels or use low pressure compressed air.

**CAUTION:** Do not use gasoline, kerosene, paint thinner, or similar solvents. These products may leave a residue that could damage the piston and seal.

## DISC BRAKE CALIPERS (Continued)

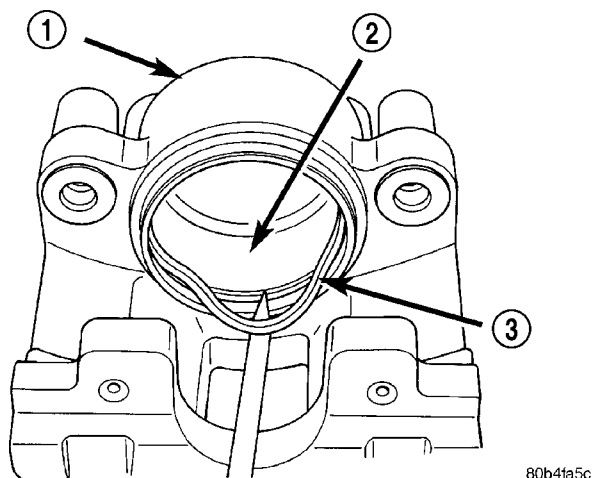


Fig. 28 Piston Seal Removal

- 1 - CALIPER  
2 - PISTON BORE  
3 - PISTON SEAL

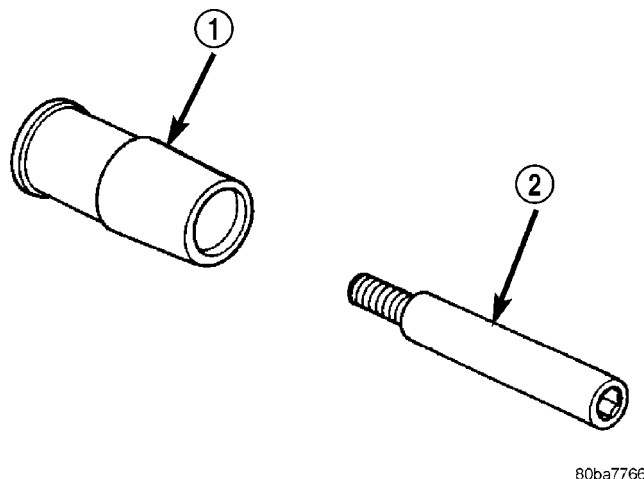


Fig. 29 Slide Pin And Bushing

- 1 - BUSHING  
2 - CALIPER SLIDE PIN

## INSPECTION - DISC BRAKE CALIPER

The piston is made from a phenolic resin (plastic material) and should be smooth and clean.

The piston must be replaced if cracked or scored. Do not attempt to restore a scored piston surface by sanding or polishing.

**CAUTION:** If the caliper piston is replaced, install the same type of piston in the caliper. Never interchange phenolic resin and steel caliper pistons. The pistons, seals, seal grooves, caliper bore and piston tolerances are different.

The bore can be **lightly** polished with a brake hone to remove very minor surface imperfections (Fig. 30). The caliper should be replaced if the bore is severely corroded, rusted, scored, or if polishing

would increase bore diameter more than 0.025 mm (0.001 inch).

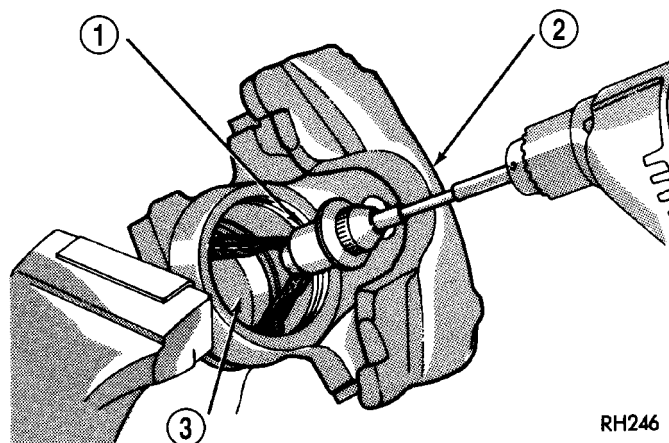


Fig. 30 Polishing Piston Bore

- 1 - SPECIAL HONE  
2 - CALIPER  
3 - PISTON BORE

## ASSEMBLY

## ASSEMBLY - FRONT DISC BRAKE CALIPER

**CAUTION:** Dirt, oil, and solvents can damage caliper seals. Insure assembly area is clean and dry.

(1) Lubricate caliper pistons, piston seals and piston bores with clean brake fluid.

(2) Install new piston seals into seal groove with finger (Fig. 31).

**NOTE:** Verify seal is fully seated and not twisted.

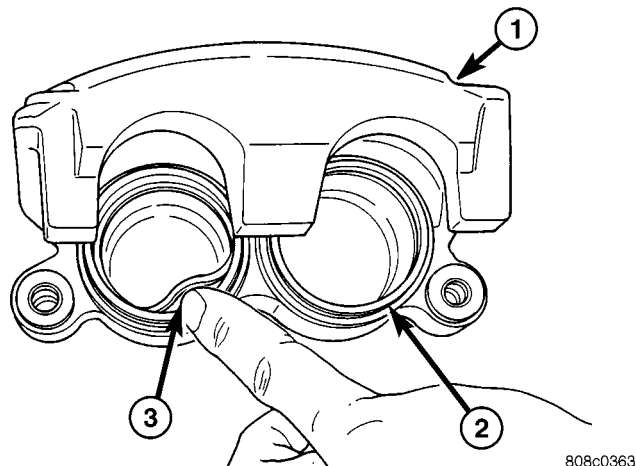


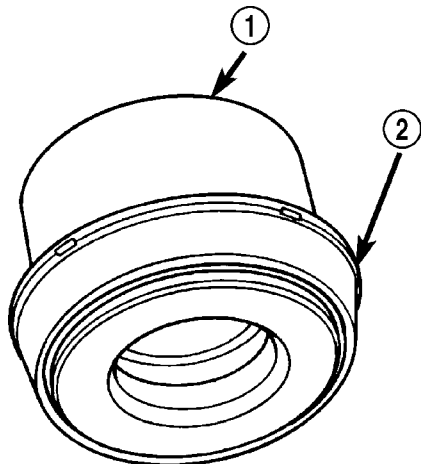
Fig. 31 PISTON SEAL

- 1 - CALIPER  
2 - PISTON BORE  
3 - PISTON SEAL



## DISC BRAKE CALIPERS (Continued)

(3) Install new dust boot on caliper piston and seat boot lip into piston groove (Fig. 32).



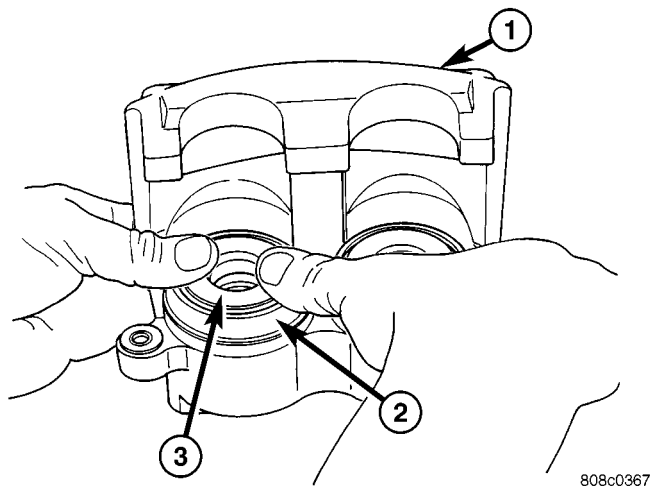
80b4fa62

**Fig. 32 Dust Boot On Piston**

- 1 - PISTON  
2 - DUST BOOT

(4) Stretch boot rearward to straighten boot folds, then move boot forward until folds snap into place.

(5) Install piston into caliper bore and press piston down to the bottom of the caliper bore by hand or with hammer handle (Fig. 33).



808c0367

**Fig. 33 CALIPER PISTON**

- 1 - CALIPER  
2 - DUST BOOT  
3 - PISTON

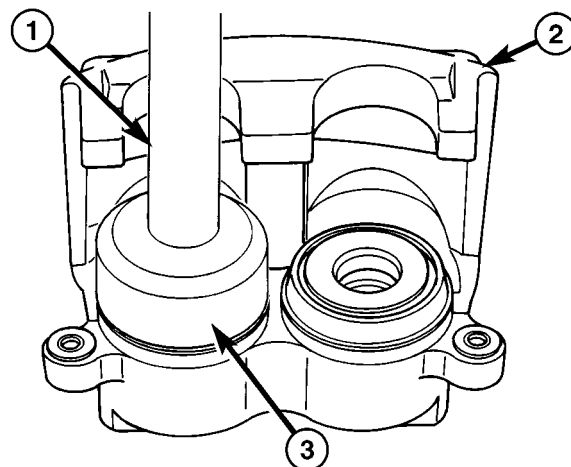
(6) Seat dust boot in caliper (Fig. 34) with Installer 8280 and Handle C-4171.

(7) Install the second piston and dust boot.

(8) Install caliper bleed screw.

## ASSEMBLY - REAR DISC BRAKE CALIPER

**CAUTION:** Dirt, oil, and solvents can damage caliper seals. Insure assembly area is clean and dry.



808c0369

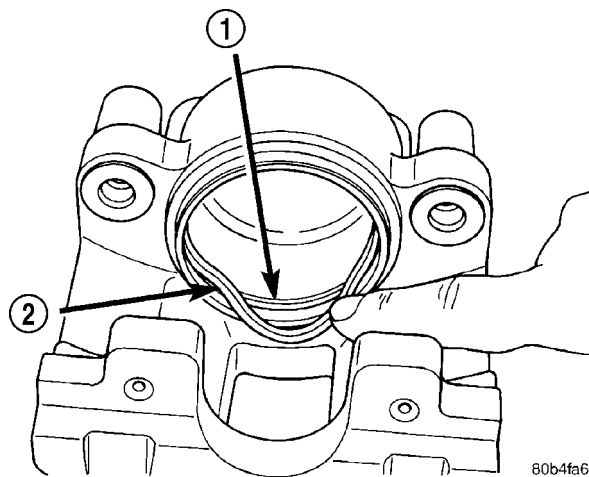
**Fig. 34 SEATING DUST BOOT**

- 1 - HANDLE  
2 - CALIPER  
3 - DUST BOOT INSTALLER

(1) Lubricate caliper piston, piston seal and piston bore with clean brake fluid.

(2) Install new piston seal into seal groove with finger (Fig. 35).

**NOTE:** Verify seal is fully seated and not twisted.



80b4fa61

**Fig. 35 Piston Seal Installation**

- 1 - SEAL GROOVE  
2 - PISTON SEAL

(3) Install new dust boot on caliper piston and seat boot lip into piston groove (Fig. 36).

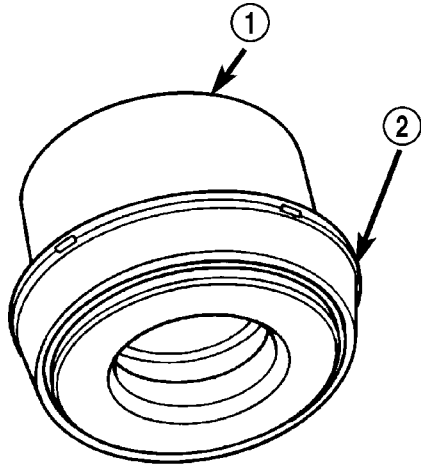
(4) Stretch boot rearward to straighten boot folds, then move boot forward until folds snap into place.

(5) Install piston into caliper bore and press piston down to the bottom of the caliper bore by hand or with hammer handle (Fig. 37).

(6) Seat dust boot in caliper with Installer 8280 and Handle C-4171 (Fig. 38).



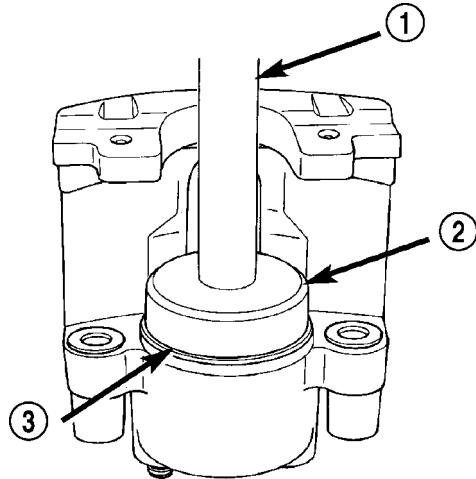
## DISC BRAKE CALIPERS (Continued)



80b4fa62

**Fig. 36 Dust Boot On Piston**

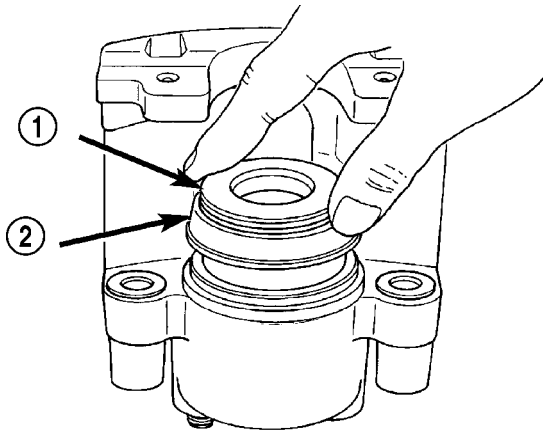
- 1 - PISTON  
2 - DUST BOOT



80b4fa64

**Fig. 38 Piston Dust Boot Installation**

- 1 - HANDLE  
2 - INSTALLER  
3 - DUST BOOT



80b4fa63

**Fig. 37 Caliper Piston Installation**

- 1 - PISTON  
2 - BOOT

(7) Install caliper slide pin bushings into the caliper (Fig. 39).

(8) Install caliper bleed screw.

## INSTALLATION

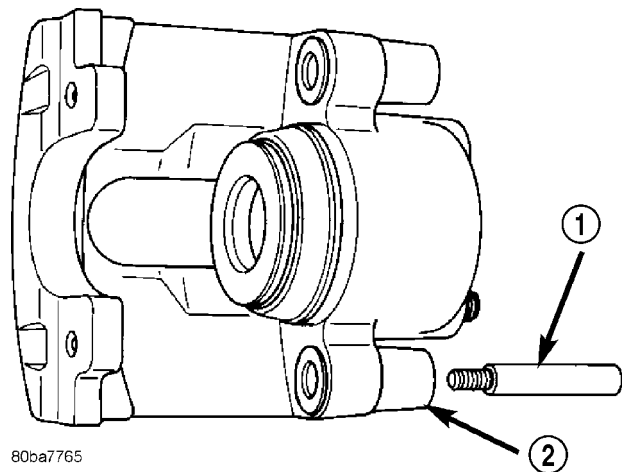
**INSTALLATION - FRONT DISC BRAKE CALIPER**

(1) Caliper slide pins should be free from debris and lightly lubricated..

(2) Install the caliper on the adapter (Fig. 40).

(3) Install the caliper slide pin bolts and tighten to 72 N·m (53 ft. lbs.).

(4) Gently lift one end of the slide pin boot to equalize air pressure, then release the boot and verify that the boot is fully covering the slide pin.



80ba7765

**Fig. 39 Slide Pin And Bushing**

- 1 - CALIPER SLIDE PIN  
2 - BUSHING

(5) Install brake hose to caliper with **new gasket washers** and tighten banjo bolt to 31 N·m (23 ft. lbs.).

**CAUTION:** Verify brake hose is not twisted or kinked before tightening banjo bolt.

(6) Fill and bleed brake system.

(7) Install wheel and tire assemblies.

(8) Remove supports and lower vehicle.

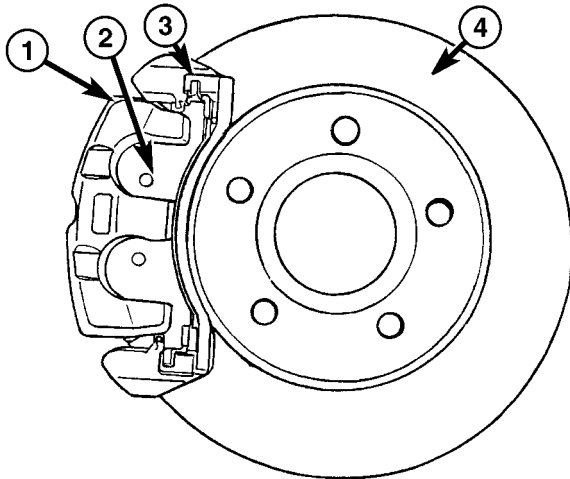
(9) Verify brake fluid level.

**INSTALLATION - REAR DISC BRAKE CALIPER**

(1) Install the inboard brake shoe (Fig. 20).

(2) Lubricate the slide pins and slide pin bushings with Dow Corning® grease G807 or the grease provided with the caliper.

## DISC BRAKE CALIPERS (Continued)



80f4d221

**Fig. 40 CALIPER INSTALLED**

- 1 - CALIPER
- 2 - BRAKE PAD
- 3 - CALIPER ADAPTER
- 4 - ROTOR

- (3) Install the caliper on the anchor.
- (4) Install the caliper slide pin and tighten to 35 N·m (26 ft. lbs.).
- (5) Install the caliper slide pin caps.
- (6) Install the caliper support spring in the top end of the caliper and under the anchor. Then install other end into the lower caliper hole. Hold the spring into the caliper hole with your thumb while prying the end of the spring out and down under the anchor with a screw drive.

**CAUTION:** Verify brake hose is not twisted or kinked before tightening fitting bolt.

- (7) Install brake hose to caliper with a **new** gasket washers and tighten banjo bolt to 31 N·m (23 ft. lbs.).
- (8) Fill and bleed brake system.
- (9) Install wheel and tire assemblies.
- (10) Remove supports and lower vehicle.

## FLUID

### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - BRAKE FLUID CONTAMINATION

Indications of fluid contamination are swollen or deteriorated rubber parts.

Swollen rubber parts indicate the presence of petroleum in the brake fluid.

To test for contamination, put a small amount of drained brake fluid in clear glass jar. If fluid separates into layers, there is mineral oil or other fluid contamination of the brake fluid.

If brake fluid is contaminated, drain and thoroughly flush system. Replace master cylinder with

reservoir, caliper seals, HCU and all hydraulic fluid hoses.

## SPECIFICATIONS

### BRAKE FLUID

The brake fluid used in this vehicle must conform to DOT 3 specifications and SAE J1703 standards. No other type of brake fluid is recommended or approved for usage in the vehicle brake system. Use only Mopar brake fluid or an equivalent from a tightly sealed container.

**CAUTION:** Never use reclaimed brake fluid or fluid from an container which has been left open. An open container of brake fluid will absorb moisture from the air and contaminate the fluid.

**CAUTION:** Never use any type of a petroleum-based fluid in the brake hydraulic system. Use of such type fluids will result in seal damage of the vehicle brake hydraulic system causing a failure of the vehicle brake system. Petroleum based fluids would be items such as engine oil, transmission fluid, power steering fluid, etc.

## FLUID RESERVOIR

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove reservoir cap and remove fluid with a **clean** suction gun.
- (2) Remove the wire connector from the brake fluid level sensor.
- (3) Insert the tool (Fig. 41) provided with the reservoir to release the reservoir retaining tabs.
- (4) Pull the reservoir straight up out of the cylinder.
- (5) Remove and discard grommets from the cylinder body.

### INSTALLATION

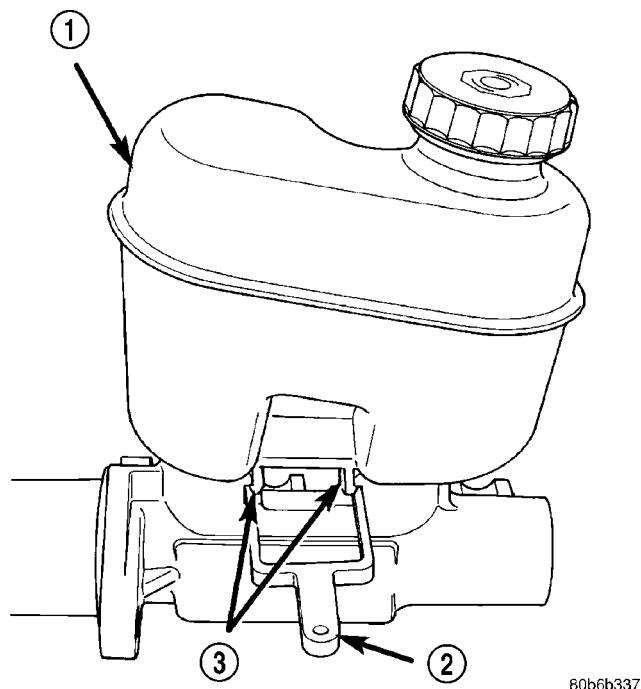
- (1) Lubricate new grommets with clean brake fluid. Install new grommets into the cylinder body.

**CAUTION:** Do not use tools to install the grommets. Tools may cut, or tear the grommets. Install the grommets using finger pressure only.

- (2) Start reservoir in grommets then press the reservoir straight down to seat the reservoir into the cylinder grommets.

**CAUTION:** Do not rock the reservoir during installation.

## FLUID RESERVOIR (Continued)



80b6b337

**Fig. 41 Release Tool**

- 1 - RESERVOIR  
2 - RELEASE TOOL  
3 - RETAINING TABS

- (3) Verify retaining tabs are seated.  
(4) Install the wire connector to the brake fluid level sensor.  
(5) Fill master cylinder.

## MASTER CYLINDER

### DESCRIPTION

The master cylinder body is made of aluminum and contains a primary and secondary piston assembly. The cylinder body including the piston assemblies are not serviceable. If diagnosis indicates an internal problem with the cylinder body, it must be replaced as an assembly. The master cylinder has a removable reservoir and fluid level indicator. The reservoir, reservoir grommets, reservoir cap and fluid level switch are the only replaceable parts on the master cylinder.

### OPERATION

The master cylinder bore contains a primary and secondary piston. The primary piston supplies hydraulic pressure to the front brakes. The secondary piston supplies hydraulic pressure to the rear brakes. The master cylinder reservoir stores reserve brake fluid for the hydraulic brake circuits.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - MASTER CYLINDER/POWER BOOSTER

**NOTE:** Inspect and repair any external fluid leaks before performing test.

- (1) Start engine and check booster vacuum hose connections. A hissing noise indicates vacuum leak. Correct any vacuum leak before proceeding.
- (2) Stop engine and shift transmission into Neutral.
- (3) Pump brake pedal until all vacuum reserve in booster is depleted.
- (4) Press and hold brake pedal under light foot pressure. The pedal should hold firm, if the pedal falls away the master cylinder or HCU may be faulty (internal leakage).
- (5) Start engine and note pedal action. It should fall away slightly under light foot pressure then hold firm. If no pedal action is discernible, power booster, vacuum supply, or vacuum check valve is faulty. Proceed to the POWER BOOSTER VACUUM TEST.
- (6) If the POWER BOOSTER VACUUM TEST passes, rebuild booster vacuum reserve as follows: Release brake pedal. Increase engine speed to 1500 rpm, close the throttle and turn off the engine.
- (7) Wait a minimum of 90 seconds and try brake action again. Booster should provide two or more vacuum assisted pedal applications. If vacuum assist is not provided, some component of the booster is faulty.

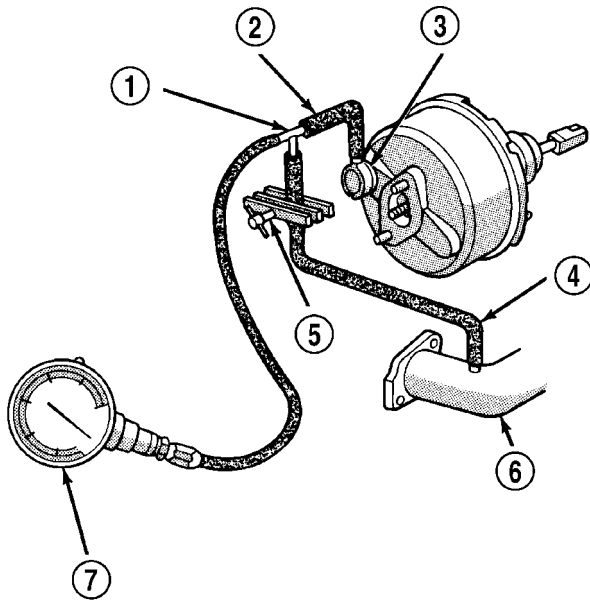
### POWER BOOSTER VACUUM TEST

- (1) Connect vacuum gauge to booster check valve with short length of hose and T-fitting (Fig. 42).
- (2) Start and run engine at curb idle speed for one minute.
- (3) Observe the vacuum supply. If vacuum supply is not adequate, repair vacuum supply.
- (4) Clamp hose shut between vacuum source and check valve.
- (5) Stop engine and observe vacuum gauge.
- (6) If vacuum drops more than one inch HG (33 millibars) within 15 seconds, booster diaphragm, check valve or check valve seal/grommet is faulty.

### POWER BOOSTER CHECK VALVE TEST

- (1) Disconnect vacuum hose from check valve.
- (2) Remove check valve and valve seal from booster.
- (3) Use a hand operated vacuum pump for test.
- (4) Apply 51-67 kPa (15-20 in.) vacuum at large end of check valve (Fig. 43).
- (5) Vacuum should hold steady. If gauge on pump indicates vacuum loss the check valve and seal should be replaced.

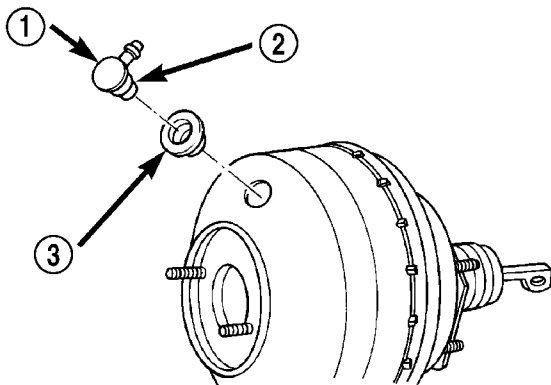
## MASTER CYLINDER (Continued)



J9005-81

**Fig. 42 Typical Booster Vacuum Test Connections**

- 1 - TEE FITTING
- 2 - SHORT CONNECTING HOSE
- 3 - CHECK VALVE
- 4 - CHECK VALVE HOSE
- 5 - CLAMP TOOL
- 6 - INTAKE MANIFOLD
- 7 - VACUUM GAUGE



8031e866

**Fig. 43 Vacuum Check Valve And Seal**

- 1 - BOOSTER CHECK VALVE
- 2 - APPLY TEST VACUUM HERE
- 3 - VALVE SEAL

**STANDARD PROCEDURE - MASTER CYLINDER BLEEDING PROCEDURE**

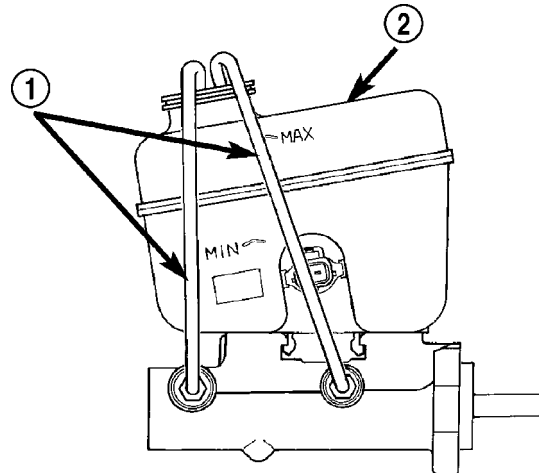
A new master cylinder should be bled before installation on the vehicle. Required bleeding tools include bleed tubes and a wood dowel to stroke the pistons. Bleed tubes can be fabricated from brake line.

- (1) Mount master cylinder in vise with brass jaws.

(2) Attach bleed tubes to cylinder outlet ports. Then position each tube end into the bottom of the reservoir (Fig. 44).

- (3) Fill reservoir with fresh brake fluid.

(4) Press cylinder pistons inward with wood dowel. Then release pistons and allow them to return under spring pressure. Continue bleeding operations until air bubbles are no longer visible in fluid.



80ba7769

**Fig. 44 Master Cylinder Bleeding**

- 1 - BLEEDING TUBES
- 2 - RESERVOIR

**REMOVAL**

(1) Remove the wire connector from the brake fluid level sensor.

- (2) Remove brake lines from master cylinder.

(3) Remove nuts that attach master cylinder to booster studs (Fig. 45).

- (4) Remove master cylinder from booster.

**INSTALLATION**

**NOTE:** Bleed new master cylinder on bench before installation, refer to **Service Procedures**.

(1) Have an assistant depress the brake pedal while guiding the master cylinder on the booster rod and mounting studs.

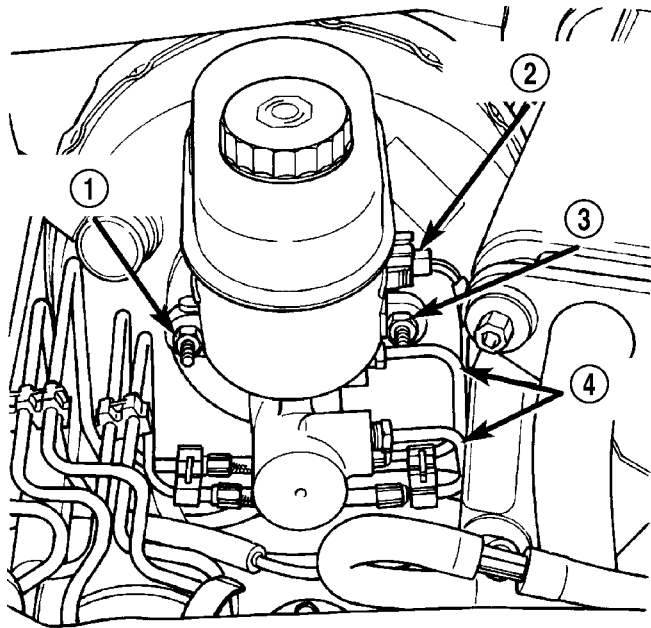
**CAUTION:** Do not depress brake pedal too hard and ensure the booster rod is in the master cylinder piston or booster/master cylinder damage will occur.

- (2) Install master cylinder mounting nuts and tighten nuts to 25 N·m (18 lb. lbs.).

**NOTE:** Use original or factory replacement nuts only.

- (3) Install brake lines and tighten to 16 N·m (144 in. lbs.).

## MASTER CYLINDER (Continued)



80b89851

**Fig. 45 Master Cylinder Mounting**

- 1 - MOUNTING NUT
- 2 - SENSOR CONNECTOR
- 3 - MOUNTING NUT
- 4 - BRAKE LINES

- (4) Install fluid level sensor connector.
- (5) Fill and bleed brake system.

## PEDAL

## DESCRIPTION

**DESCRIPTION - STANDARD PEDAL**

A suspended-type brake pedal is used, the pedal pivots on a shaft mounted in the pedal support bracket. The bracket is attached to the dash panel.

The brake pedal assembly and pedal pad are the only serviceable component.

**DESCRIPTION - ADJUSTABLE PEDALS**

The Adjustable Pedals System (APS) is designed to enable the fore and aft repositioning of the brake and accelerator pedals. This results in improved ergonomics in relation to the steering wheel for taller and shorter drivers. Being able to adjust the pedal positions also allows the driver to set steering wheel tilt and seat position to the most comfortable position. The position of the brake and accelerator pedals can be adjusted without compromising safety or comfort in actuating the pedals. Repositioning the pedals does not change the effort required for actuation.

Change of pedal position is accomplished by means of a motor driven screw. Operating the adjustable

pedal switch activates the pedal drive motor. The pedal drive motor turns a screw that changes the position of the brake and accelerator pedals. The pedal can be moved rearward (closer to the driver) or forward (away from driver). The brake pedal is moved on its drive screw to a position where the driver feels most comfortable (Fig. 46).

The accelerator pedal is moved at the same time and the same distance as the brake pedal. The accelerator pedal adjustment screw is turned by a flexible shaft slaved off the brake adjustment screw.

Neither the pedal drive motor nor drive mechanism are subject to the mechanical stress of brake or accelerator application.

- **SYSTEM FEATURES:**

- **Range of Adjustment:** The pedals may be adjusted up to 3 in. (75 mm)
- **Pedal Adjustment Speed:** 0.5 in./sec (12.5 mm/sec)
- **Pedal Adjustment Inhibitors:** Pedal adjustment is inhibited when the vehicle is in reverse or when cruise control is activated.
- **Memory:** An optional memory feature is available. This allows storing of one or two preferred pedal positions in the Adjustable Pedal Module (APM). A preferred position can be stored and recalled using the door-mounted switches. A stored pedal position can be recalled (but not stored) using the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE).
- **Adjustable Pedal Feedback Message:** The Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) will display a message when the APS is disabled. ie: "Adjustable Pedal Disabled - Cruise Control Engaged" or "Adjustable Pedal Disabled - Vehicle in Reverse".
- **Damage Prevention:** Foot pressure or debris can stall pedal adjustment. In order to avoid damage to system components during pedal adjustment, the APM will monitor pedal position sensor voltage. If the APM does not detect expected voltage change within 1.5 seconds, it will cut power to the adjustable pedal motor.

**OPERATION**

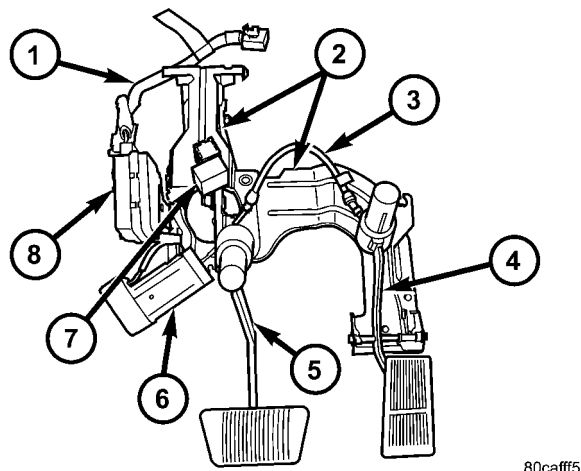
The brake pedal is attached to the booster push rod. When the pedal is depressed, the primary booster push rod is depressed which moves the booster secondary rod. The booster secondary rod depresses the master cylinder piston.

**REMOVAL****REMOVAL - NON-ADJUSTABLE PEDAL**

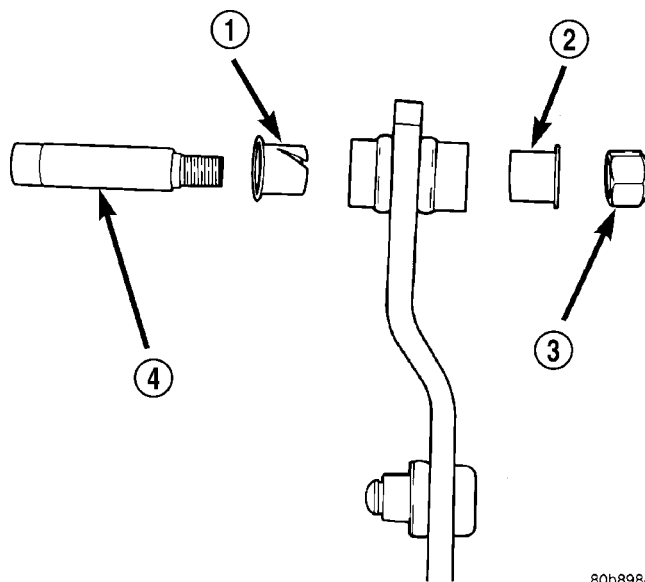
- (1) Remove retainer clip that holds booster to pedal pin (Fig. 47).



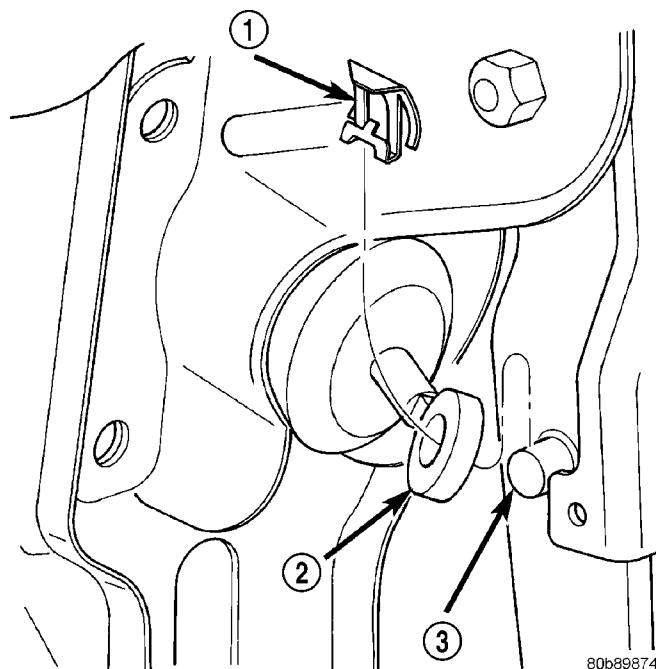
## PEDAL (Continued)

**Fig. 46 ADJUSTABLE PEDALS ASSEMBLY**

- 1 - HARNESS
- 2 - ADJUSTABLE PEDAL BRACKET
- 3 - CABLE
- 4 - ACCELERATOR PEDAL
- 5 - BRAKE PEDAL
- 6 - ADJUSTABLE PEDAL MOTOR
- 7 - BRAKE LIGHT SWITCH
- 8 - ADJUSTABLE PEDALS MODULE

**Fig. 48 Pedal Bushings**

- 1 - BUSHING
- 2 - BUSHING
- 3 - SHAFT NUT
- 4 - PEDAL SHAFT

**Fig. 47 Push Rod Retainer Clip**

- 1 - RETAINER CLIP
- 2 - PUSH ROD
- 3 - PEDAL PIN

- (2) Remove nut from pedal shaft.
- (3) Slide pedal shaft out and remove brake pedal.
- (4) Remove pedal bushings (Fig. 48) if they are to be replaced.

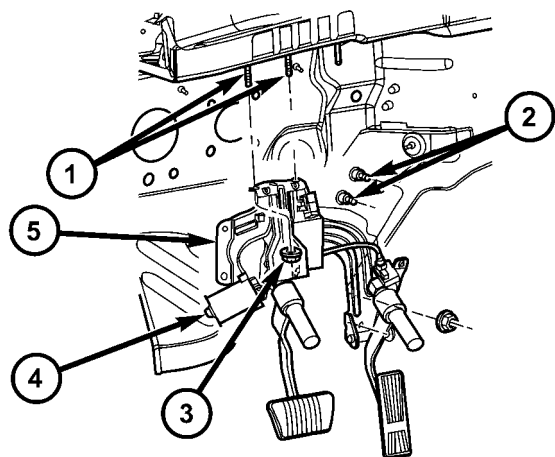
**REMOVAL - ADJUSTABLE PEDALS**

**NOTE:** If possible put the pedals in the full forward position.

- (1) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (2) Remove the cluster bezel (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/CLUSTER BEZEL - REMOVAL).
- (3) Remove the steering column opening cover (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/STEERING COLUMN OPENING COVER - REMOVAL).
- (4) Disconnect the module electrical connector.
- (5) Remove the brake light switch.
- (6) Disconnect the booster rod clip (Fig. 47).
- (7) Disconnect the accelerator cable from the pedal.
- (8) Lock the steering wheel into place.
- (9) Remove the lower steering shaft pinch bolt (Fig. 50).
- (10) Separate the lower shaft coupler and push forward (Fig. 50).
- (11) Remove the two pedal bracket upper nuts (Fig. 49).
- (12) Remove the brake booster nuts (Fig. 50).
- (13) Remove the accelerator pedal nuts (Fig. 51).
- (14) Remove the ICU mounting bracket nuts and bolts and move the ICU and booster forward this will allow enough clearance to remove the adjustable pedal bracket from over the booster push rod.
- (15) Remove the pedal from the vehicle (Fig. 50).
- (16) Transfer the module if needed.



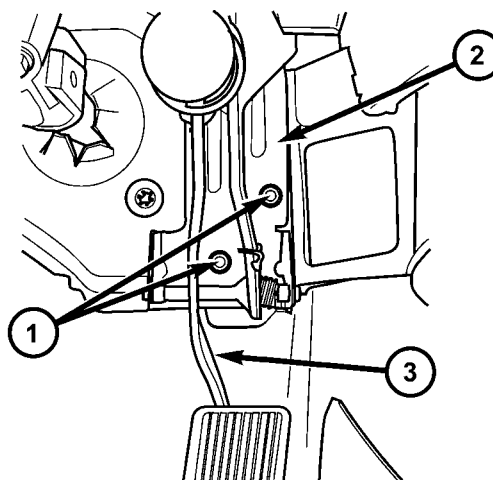
## PEDAL (Continued)



80cb054b

**Fig. 49 UPPER MOUNTING NUTS**

- 1 - UPPER MOUNTING STUDS
- 2 - ACCELERATOR MOUNTING STUDS
- 3 - UPPER MOUNTING NUT
- 4 - MOTOR
- 5 - ADJUSTABLE PEDAL BRACKET



80caffc1

**Fig. 51 ACCELERATOR MOUNTING BRACKET**

- 1 - ACCELERATOR MOUNTING NUTS
- 2 - ADJUSTABLE PEDALS BRACKET
- 3 - ACCELERATOR PEDAL

**NOTE:** Pedal shaft nut should not be reused.

(5) Install booster push rod on pedal pin and install retainer clip on pedal pin.

(6) Check and adjust stop lamp switch if necessary.

**INSTALLATION - ADJUSTABLE PEDALS**

(1) Install the pedal to the vehicle (Fig. 50).

(2) Reposition the ICU and booster, Install the ICU mounting bracket nuts and bolts.

(3) Install the brake booster nuts. Tighten to 28 N·m ( 21 ft. lbs.). (Fig. 50).

(4) Install the pedal bracket upper nuts. Tighten to 12 N·m ( 9 ft. lbs.). (Fig. 50).

(5) Install the accelerator pedal nuts. Tighten to 28 N·m ( 21 ft. lbs.). (Fig. 51).

(6) Install the lower steering shaft coupler over the shaft (Fig. 50).

(7) Install the lower steering shaft pinch bolt (Fig. 50).

(8) Unlock the steering wheel.

(9) Reconnect the accelerator cable to the pedal (Fig. 50).

(10) Reconnect the booster rod clip (Fig. 50).

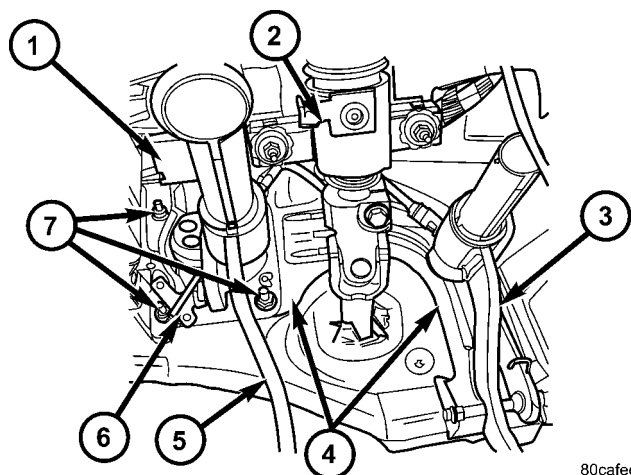
(11) Install the brake light switch.

(12) Reconnect the module electrical connector.

(13) Install the steering column opening cover (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/STEERING COLUMN OPENING COVER - INSTALLATION).

(14) Install the cluster bezel (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/CLUSTER BEZEL - INSTALLATION).

(15) Reconnect the negative battery cable.



80cafee6

**Fig. 50 ADJUSTABLE PEDAL BRACKET**

- 1 - BRAKE LIGHT SWITCH
- 2 - STEERING COLUMN
- 3 - ACCELERATOR PEDAL
- 4 - ADJUSTABLE PEDALS MOUNTING BRACKET
- 5 - BRAKE PEDAL
- 6 - MOTOR MOUNTING BRACKET
- 7 - BRAKE BOOSTER MOUNTING NUTS

**INSTALLATION****INSTALLATION - NON-ADJUSTABLE PEDAL**

(1) Lubricate bushings, pedal shaft and pedal pin with Mopar multi-mileage grease.

(2) Install bushings into pedal.

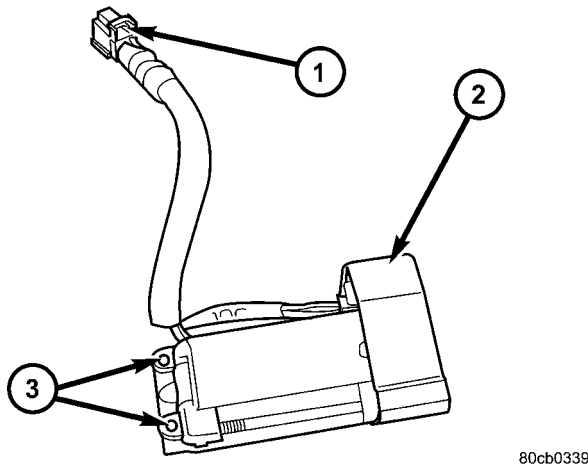
(3) Position pedal in bracket and install pedal shaft in support and through pedal.

(4) Install new nut on pedal shaft and tighten to 27 N·m (20 ft. lbs.).

## PEDAL MOTOR

### REMOVAL

- (1) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (2) Remove the cluster bezel (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/CLUSTER BEZEL - REMOVAL).
- (3) Remove the steering column opening cover (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/STEERING COLUMN OPENING COVER - REMOVAL).
- (4) Remove the two mounting screws (Fig. 52).
- (5) Disconnect the electrical connector (Fig. 52).
- (6) Remove the adjustable pedal motor (Fig. 52).



**Fig. 52 ADJUSTABLE PEDALS MOTOR**

- 1 - ELECTRICAL CONNECTOR  
2 - PEDALS MOTOR  
3 - MOUNTING SCREWS HOLES

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Install the adjustable pedal motor (Fig. 52).
- (2) Reconnect the electrical connector (Fig. 52).
- (3) Install the two mounting screws (Fig. 52).
- (4) Install the steering column opening cover (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/STEERING COLUMN OPENING COVER - INSTALLATION).
- (5) Install the cluster bezel (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/CLUSTER BEZEL - INSTALLATION).
- (6) Reconnect the negative battery cable.

## POWER BRAKE BOOSTER

### DESCRIPTION

The booster assembly consists of a housing divided into separate chambers by two internal diaphragms. The outer edge of each diaphragm is attached to the booster housing.

Two push rods are used in the booster. The primary push rod connects the booster to the brake pedal. The secondary push rod connects the booster to the master cylinder to stroke the cylinder pistons.

### OPERATION

The atmospheric inlet valve is opened and closed by the primary push rod. Booster vacuum supply is through a hose attached to an intake manifold fitting at one end and to the booster check valve at the other. The vacuum check valve in the booster housing is a one-way device that prevents vacuum leak back.

Power assist is generated by utilizing the pressure differential between normal atmospheric pressure and a vacuum. The vacuum needed for booster operation is taken directly from the engine intake manifold. The entry point for atmospheric pressure is through a filter and inlet valve at the rear of the housing (Fig. 53).

The chamber areas forward of the booster diaphragms are exposed to vacuum from the intake manifold. The chamber areas to the rear of the diaphragms, are exposed to normal atmospheric pressure of 101.3 kilopascals (14.7 pounds/square in.).

Brake pedal application causes the primary push rod to open the atmospheric inlet valve. This exposes the area behind the diaphragms to atmospheric pressure. The resulting pressure differential provides the extra apply force for power assist.

The booster check valve, check valve grommet and booster seals are serviceable.

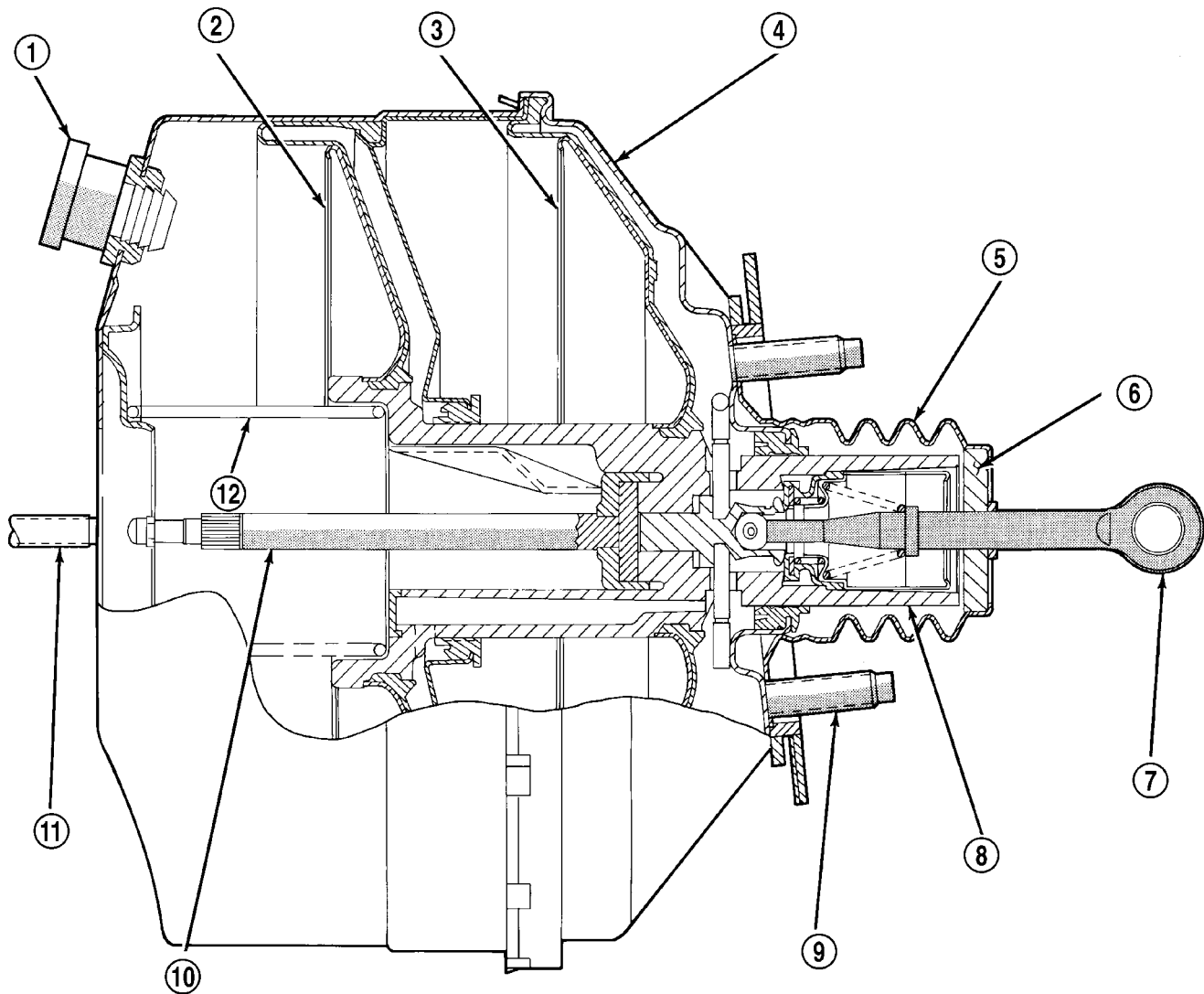
### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove the master cylinder.
- (2) Disconnect vacuum hose at booster check valve.
- (3) Remove retainer clip (Fig. 54) that holds booster push rod on pedal pin. Then slide push rod off pin.
- (4) Remove four nuts (Fig. 55) that attach booster to dash panel.
- (5) In engine compartment, slide booster forward, tilt it upward slightly, and remove it from engine compartment.

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Check condition of grommet that secures check valve in booster. Replace grommet if cut, torn, or loose.
- (2) Install new booster dash seal.
- (3) Align and position booster on engine compartment side of dash panel.
- (4) Inside passenger compartment:
  - (a) Lubricate pedal pin Mopar multi-mileage grease.

## POWER BRAKE BOOSTER (Continued)



J9505-58

**Fig. 53 Power Brake Booster—Typical**

- 1 - VACUUM CHECK VALVE
- 2 - FRONT DIAPHRAGM
- 3 - REAR DIAPHRAGM
- 4 - HOUSING
- 5 - SEAL
- 6 - AIR FILTER

- 7 - PRIMARY PUSH ROD (TO BRAKE PEDAL)
- 8 - ATMOSPHERIC INLET VALVE ASSEMBLY
- 9 - BOOSTER MOUNTING STUDS (4)
- 10 - SECONDARY PUSH ROD (TO MASTER CYLINDER)
- 11 - MASTER CYLINDER MOUNTING STUD (2)
- 12 - SPRING

(b) Install booster attaching nuts on studs. Tighten attaching nuts to 39 N·m (29 ft. lbs.).

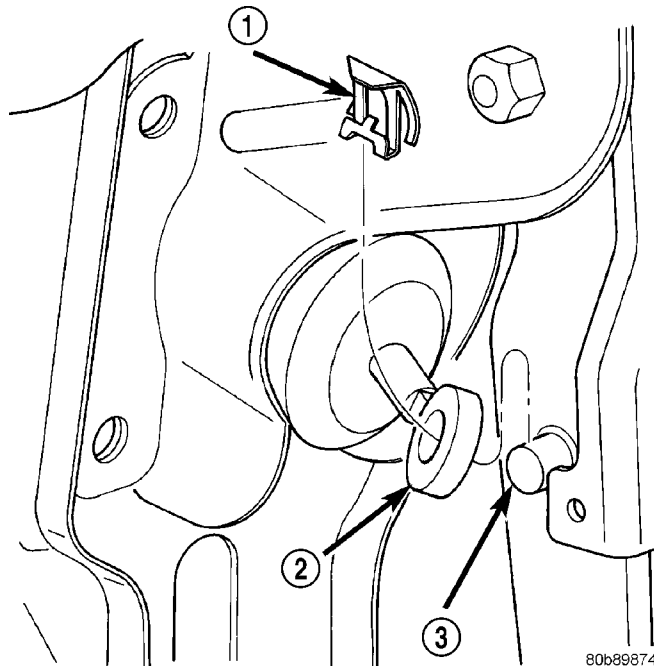
(c) Slide booster push rod on pedal pin. Then secure rod to pin with retainer clip.

(5) In engine compartment, attach vacuum hose to booster check valve.

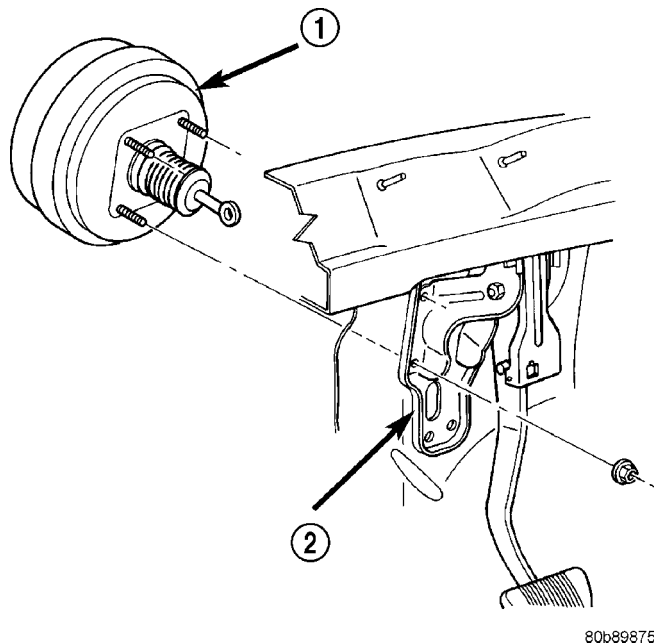
(6) Install the master cylinder with new gasket and nuts.

**CAUTION:** The master cylinder installation procedure must be performed as written or damage to the booster/master cylinder may occur.

## POWER BRAKE BOOSTER (Continued)

**Fig. 54 Retainer Clip**

- 1 - RETAINER CLIP
- 2 - PUSH ROD
- 3 - PEDAL PIN

**Fig. 55 Power Brake Booster Mounting**

- 1 - BOOSTER
- 2 - DASH PANEL

(7) Fill and bleed brake system.

## ROTORS

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - FRONT DISC BRAKE ROTOR

## ROTOR MINIMUM THICKNESS

Rotor minimum usable thickness is 24.5 mm (0.964 in.). Do not resurface a rotor if machining would cause thickness to fall below this limit.

Measure rotor thickness at the center of the brake shoe contact surface. Replace the rotor if worn below minimum thickness, or if refinishing would reduce thickness below the allowable minimum.

## FRONT ROTOR THICKNESS VARIATION

Variations in rotor thickness will cause pedal pulsation, noise and shudder.

Measure rotor thickness a minimum of six points around the rotor face. Position the micrometer approximately 19 mm (3/4 in.) from the rotor outer circumference for each measurement (Fig. 56).

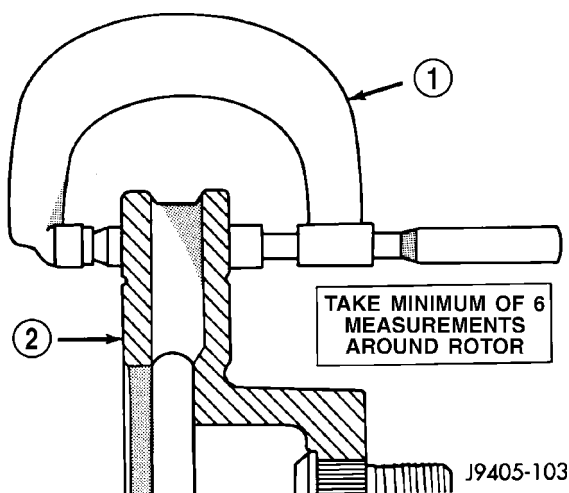
Thickness should not vary by more than 0.0127 mm (0.0005 in.) from point to point on the rotor. Refinish or replace the rotor if necessary.

**NOTE:** A hub mounted on-vehicle lathe is recommended. This type of lathe trues the rotor to the vehicles hub/bearing.

**CAUTION:** For vehicles equipped with the Quadra-Drive System, consisting of the NV-247 or NV-147 transfer case and a Vari-Lok differential in the front and rear axles, the following steps must be done prior to the use of a hub mounted on-vehicle brake lathe. Disconnect the driveshaft (Refer to 3 - DIFFERENTIAL & DRIVELINE/PROPELLER SHAFT/PROPELLER SHAFT - REMOVAL) from the respective axle on which the brake rotors are being machined. Remove both brake calipers (Refer to 5 - BRAKES/HYDRAULIC/MECHANICAL/DISC BRAKE CALIPERS - REMOVAL) and install two lug nuts on each rotor to keep the rotor true and tight to the hub/bearing while disc brake rotor machining is in process. These steps will prevent unnecessary loads to the hub mounted on-vehicle lathe and speed machining times. Install a thread lock material to the driveshaft attaching bolts when reinstalling (Refer to 3 - DIFFERENTIAL & DRIVELINE/PROPELLER SHAFT/PROPELLER SHAFT - INSTALLATION).

## ROTORS (Continued)

Front rotors and hub/bearings are matched mounted for minimum lateral runout. Before removing the rotor, mark the rotor and hub/bearing to maintain original orientation.



**Fig. 56 Measuring Rotor Thickness Variation**

- 1 - MICROMETER  
2 - ROTOR

### FRONT ROTOR LATERAL RUNOUT

Check rotor lateral runout whenever pedal pulsation, or rapid, uneven brake lining wear has occurred.

The rotor must be securely clamped to the hub to ensure an accurate runout measurement. Secure the rotor with a minimum of 3 lug nuts and large diameter flat washers on each stud.

Use a dial indicator to check lateral runout (Fig. 57).

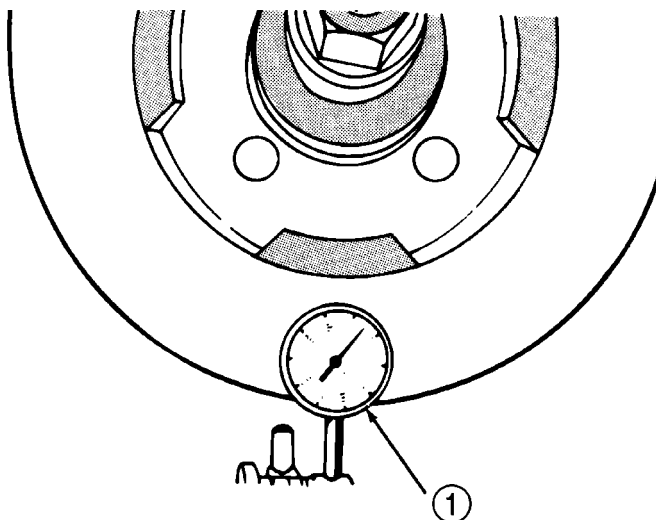
Maximum allowable rotor lateral runout is 0.05 mm (0.002 in.).

### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - REAR DISC BRAKE ROTOR

#### ROTOR MINIMUM THICKNESS

Minimum usable thickness of the rear disc brake rotor is 8.5 mm (0.335 in.). The thickness specification is located on the center section of the rotor.

Never resurface a rotor if machining would cause thickness to fall below this limit.



J8905-68

**Fig. 57 Checking Rotor Lateral Runout**

- 1 - DIAL INDICATOR

Measure rotor thickness at the center of the brake shoe contact surface. Replace the rotor if worn below minimum thickness, or if refinishing would reduce thickness below the allowable minimum.

### REAR ROTOR THICKNESS VARIATION

Variations in rotor thickness will cause pedal pulsation, noise and shudder.

Measure rotor thickness at a minimum of six points around the rotor face. Position the micrometer approximately 19 mm (3/4 in.) from the rotor outer circumference for each measurement (Fig. 56).

Thickness should not vary by more than 0.0127 mm (0.0005 in.) from point to point on the rotor. Refinish or replace the rotor if necessary.

### REAR ROTOR LATERAL RUNOUT

Check rotor lateral runout whenever diagnosis indicates pedal pulsation and rapid, uneven brake lining wear.

The rotor must be securely clamped to the hub to ensure an accurate runout measurement. Secure the rotor with the wheel nuts and 4 or 5 large diameter flat washers on each stud.

Use a dial indicator to check lateral runout (Fig. 57). Maximum allowable lateral runout is 0.76 mm (0.003 in.).



## ROTORS (Continued)

STANDARD PROCEDURE - DISC BRAKE  
ROTOR MACHINING

**CAUTION:** For vehicles equipped with the Quadra-Drive System, consisting of the NV-247 or NV-147 transfer case and a Vari-Lok differential in the front and rear axles, the following steps must be done prior to the use of a hub mounted on-vehicle brake lathe. Disconnect the driveshaft (Refer to 3 - DIFFERENTIAL & DRIVELINE/PROPELLER SHAFT/PROPELLER SHAFT - REMOVAL) from the respective axle on which the brake rotors are being machined. Remove both brake calipers (Refer to 5 - BRAKES/HYDRAULIC/MECHANICAL/DISC BRAKE CALIPERS - REMOVAL) and install two lug nuts on each rotor to keep the rotor true and tight to the hub/bearing while disc brake rotor machining is in process. These steps will prevent unnecessary loads to the hub mounted on-vehicle lathe and speed machining times. Install a thread lock material to the driveshaft attaching bolts when reinstalling (Refer to 3 - DIFFERENTIAL & DRIVELINE/PROPELLER SHAFT/PROPELLER SHAFT - INSTALLATION).

**NOTE:** A hub mounted on-vehicle lathe is recommended. This type of lathe trues the rotor to the vehicles hub/bearing.

The disc brake rotor can be machined if scored or worn. The lathe must machine both sides of the rotor simultaneously with dual cutter heads. The rotor mounting surface must be clean before placing on the lathe. Equipment capable of machining only one side at a time may produce a tapered rotor.

**CAUTION:** Brake rotors that do not meet minimum thickness specifications before or after machining must be replaced.

## REMOVAL

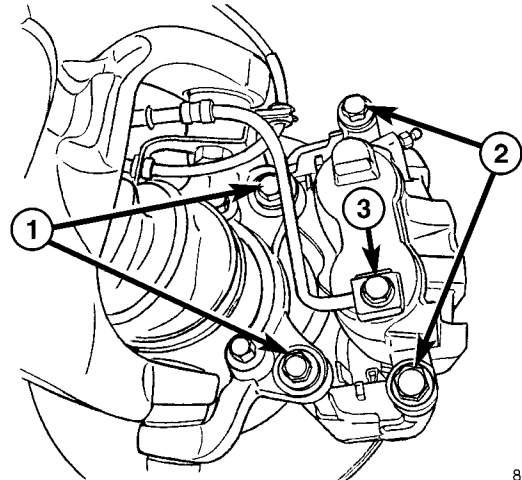
## REMOVAL - FRONT DISC BRAKE ROTOR

**NOTE:** Front rotors and hub/bearings are matched mounted for minimum lateral runout. Before removing the rotor, mark the rotor and hub/bearing to maintain original orientation.

- (1) Raise and support the vehicle.
- (2) Remove wheel and tire assembly.
- (3) Remove the caliper (Fig. 58),(Refer to 5 - BRAKES/HYDRAULIC/MECHANICAL/DISC BRAKE CALIPERS - REMOVAL).

(4) Secure caliper anchor assembly to nearby suspension part with a wire. **Do not allow brake hose to support caliper weight.**

(5) Remove the caliper adapter mounting bolts (Fig. 58) and remove the caliper adapter from the steering knuckle.



8014d040

**Fig. 58 CALIPER & ADAPTER MOUNTING**

- 1 - CALIPER ADAPTER MOUNTING BOLTS
- 2 - CALIPER MOUNTING BOLTS
- 3 - BANJO BOLT

(6) Mark the rotor and hub/bearing to maintain original orientation. Remove retainers securing rotor to hub studs.

(7) Remove rotor from hub/bearing.

## REMOVAL - REAR DISC BRAKE ROTOR

- (1) Raise and support the vehicle.
- (2) Remove wheel and tire assembly.
- (3) Remove the caliper anchor bolts (Fig. 59).
- (4) Remove caliper and anchor as an assembly.
- (5) Secure caliper anchor assembly to nearby suspension part with wire. **Do not allow brake hose to support caliper weight.**
- (6) Remove retainers securing rotor to axle studs.
- (7) Remove rotor off axle studs.

## INSTALLATION

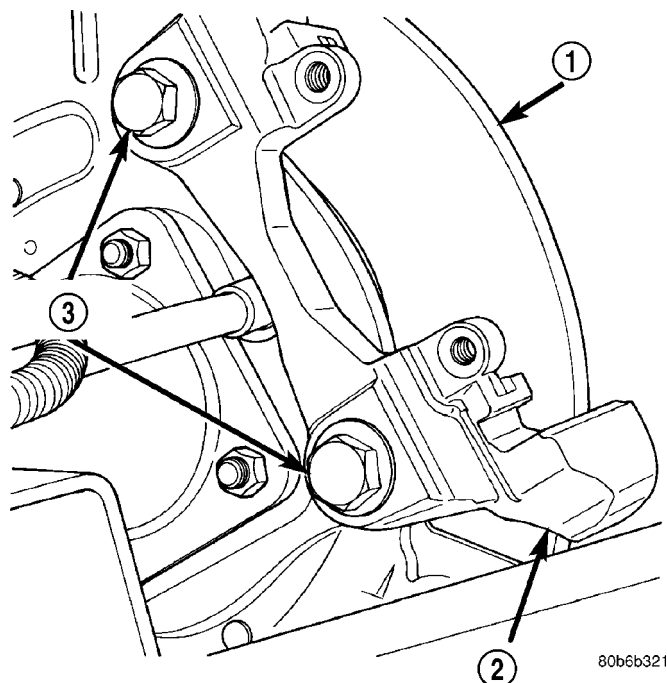
## INSTALLATION - FRONT DISC BRAKE ROTOR

**NOTE:** If a new rotor is installed it must be match mounted to the hub/bearing.

- (1) Install the rotor on hub studs in its original location.
- (2) Install the caliper adapter on the knuckle. Install adapter bolts and tighten to 90-115 N·m (66-85 ft. lbs.).



## ROTORS (Continued)

**Fig. 59 Caliper Anchor Bolts**

- 1 - ROTOR  
2 - ANCHOR  
3 - ANCHOR BOLTS

(3) Install the caliper (Refer to 5 - BRAKES/HYDRAULIC/MECHANICAL/DISC BRAKE CALIPERS - INSTALLATION).

(4) Install wheel and tire assembly.

(5) Remove support and lower the vehicle.

(6) Pump brake pedal to seat caliper pistons and brake pads. Do not move vehicle until firm brake pedal is obtained.

**INSTALLATION - REAR DISC BRAKE ROTOR**

- (1) Install rotor on axle studs.
- (2) Install the caliper anchor assembly.
- (3) Install anchor bolts and tighten to 90-115 N·m (66-85 ft. lbs.).
- (4) Install wheel and tire assembly.
- (5) Remove support and lower the vehicle.
- (6) Pump brake pedal until caliper pistons and brake shoes are seated.

**DISC BRAKE CALIPER ADAPTER****REMOVAL**

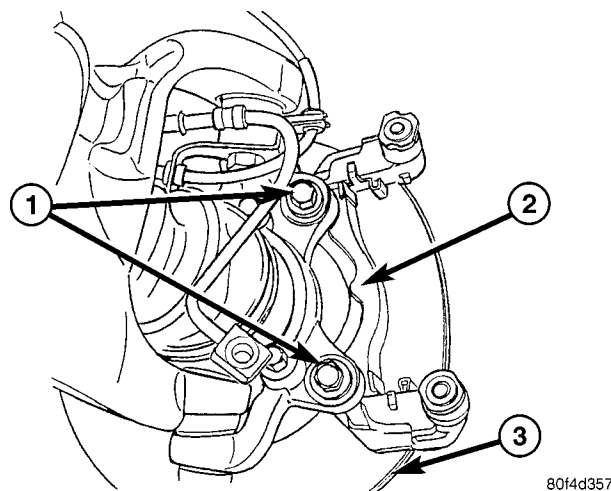
- (1) Raise and support the vehicle.
- (2) Remove the front wheel and tire assembly.
- (3) Remove the caliper (Refer to 5 - BRAKES/HYDRAULIC/MECHANICAL/DISC BRAKE CALIPERS - REMOVAL).

(4) Remove the disc brake caliper from the adapter.

**CAUTION:** Never allow the disc brake caliper to hang from the brake hose. Damage to the brake hose will result. Provide a suitable support to hang the caliper securely.

(5) Remove the inboard and outboard brake pads. (Refer to 5 - BRAKES/HYDRAULIC/MECHANICAL/BRAKE PADS/SHOES - REMOVAL).

(6) Remove the caliper adapter mounting bolts (Fig. 60).

**Fig. 60 CALIPER ADAPTER MOUNTING**

- 1 - CALIPER ADAPTER MOUNTING BOLTS  
2 - CALIPER ADAPTER  
3 - ROTOR

**INSTALLATION**

(1) Install the caliper adapter mounting bolts. Tighten the mounting bolts to 103 N·m (76 ft.lbs).

(2) Install the inboard and outboard pads. (Refer to 5 - BRAKES/HYDRAULIC/MECHANICAL/BRAKE PADS/SHOES - INSTALLATION).

(3) Install the caliper (Refer to 5 - BRAKES/HYDRAULIC/MECHANICAL/DISC BRAKE CALIPERS - INSTALLATION).

(4) Install the tire and wheel assembly. (Refer to 22 - TIRES/WHEELS/WHEELS - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

**PARKING BRAKE****OPERATION**

The parking brakes operated by a automatic tensioner mechanism built into the hand lever and cable system. The front cable is connected to the hand lever and the equalizer. The rear cables attached to the equalizer and the parking brake shoe actuator.

## PARKING BRAKE (Continued)

A set of drum type brake shoes are used for parking brakes. The shoes are mounted to the rear disc brake adaptor. The parking brake drum is integrated into the rear disc brake rotor.

Parking brake cable adjustment is controlled by an automatic tensioner mechanism. The only adjustment if necessary is to the park brake shoes if the linings are worn.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - PARKING BRAKE

**NOTE:** Parking brake adjustment is controlled by an automatic cable tensioner and does not require adjustment. The only adjustment that may be necessary would be to the park brake shoes if they are worn.

The parking brake switch is in circuit with the red warning lamp in the dash. The switch will cause the lamp to illuminate only when the parking brakes are applied. If the lamp remains on after parking brake release, the switch or wires are faulty.

If the red lamp comes on a fault has occurred in the front or rear brake hydraulic system.

If the red warning lamp and yellow warning lamp come on, the electronic brake distribution may be at fault.

In most cases, the actual cause of an improperly functioning parking brake (too loose/too tight/won't hold), can be traced to a parking brake component.

**NOTE:** The leading cause of improper parking brake operation, is excessive clearance between the parking brake shoes and the shoe braking surface. Excessive clearance is a result of lining and/or drum wear, drum surface machined oversize.

Excessive parking brake lever travel (sometimes described as a loose lever or too loose condition), is the result of worn brake shoes, improper brake shoe adjustment, or improperly assembled brake parts.

A too loose condition can also be caused by inoperative or improperly assembled parking brake shoe parts.

A condition where the parking brakes do not hold, will most probably be due to a wheel brake component.

Items to look for when diagnosing a parking brake problem, are:

- Brake shoe wear
- Drum surface (in rear rotor) machined oversize
- Front cable not secured to lever
- Rear cable not attached to actuator
- Rear cable seized
- Parking brake lever not seated
- Parking brake lever bind

## CABLES

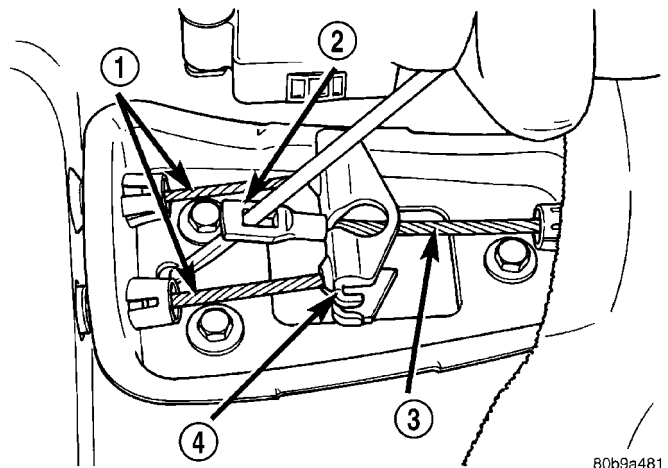
### REMOVAL

#### REMOVAL - FRONT PARKING BRAKE CABLE

(1) Remove center console,(Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/FLOOR CONSOLE - REMOVAL).

(2) Lift up rear seat and carpet covering the parking brake cables.

(3) Place a screw driver through the front cable eyelet (Fig. 61) and pry back on the front cable.



**Fig. 61 Front Cable Eyelet**

- 1 - REAR CABLES
- 2 - FRONT CABLE EYELET
- 3 - FRONT CABLE
- 4 - EQUALIZER

(4) Have an assistant pry down the lock out spring through the hole in the side of the park brake lever (Fig. 62) with a small screw driver. Then slowly release the front cable.

**NOTE:** Their should be slack in the cable if the lock out spring is engaged.

(5) Disengage front cable end from the equalizer (Fig. 63).

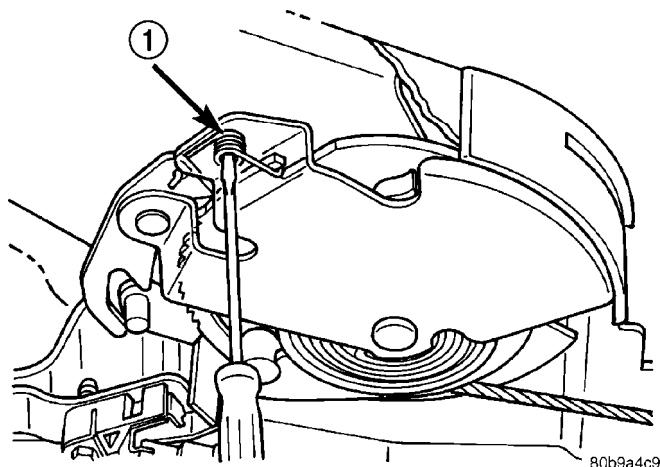
(6) Disengage front cable end from the parking brake lever.

(7) Remove the front carpet,(Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/CARPETS AND FLOOR MATS - REMOVAL).

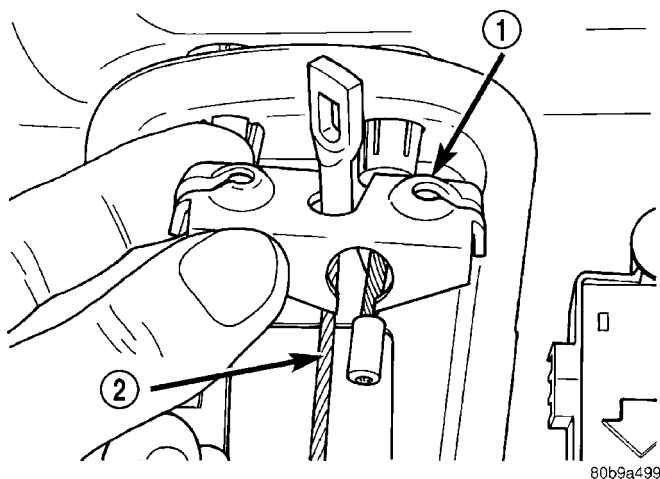
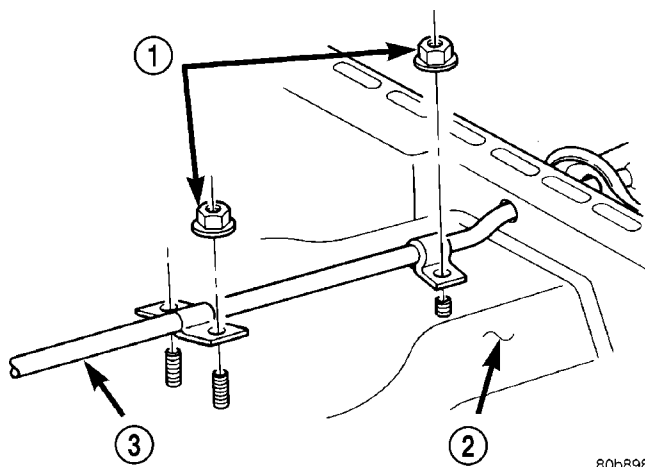
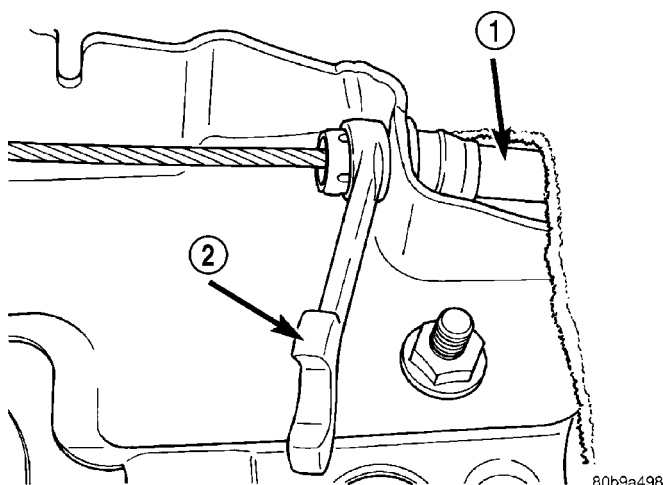
(8) Remove front cable retainer nuts (Fig. 64) from the floor pan.

(9) Compress the cable retainers with a 13 mm wrench (Fig. 65). Remove the cable from parking brake lever bracket and equalizer bracket.

## CABLES (Continued)

**Fig. 62 Lock Out Spring**

1 - LOCK OUT SPRING

**Fig. 63 Cable Equalizer**1 - EQUALIZER  
2 - FRONT CABLE**Fig. 64 Front Parking Brake Cable**1 - RETAINER NUT  
2 - FLOOR PAN  
3 - FRONT CABLE**Fig. 65 Brake Lever Bracket**1 - FRONT CABLE  
2 - WRENCH**REMOVAL - REAR PARKING BRAKE CABLES**

(1) Remove center console, (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/FLOOR CONSOLE - REMOVAL).

(2) Lift up rear seat and carpet covering the parking brake cables.

(3) Place a screw driver through the front cable eyelet (Fig. 66) and pry back on the front cable.

(4) Have an assistant pry down the lock out spring through the hole in the side of the park brake lever (Fig. 67) with a small screw driver. Then slowly release the front cable.

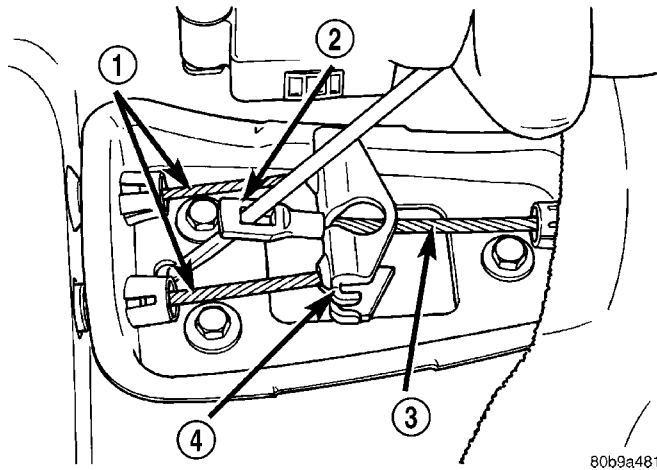
**NOTE:** Their should be slack in the cable if the lock out spring is engaged.

(5) Disengage rear cables ends from the equalizer.

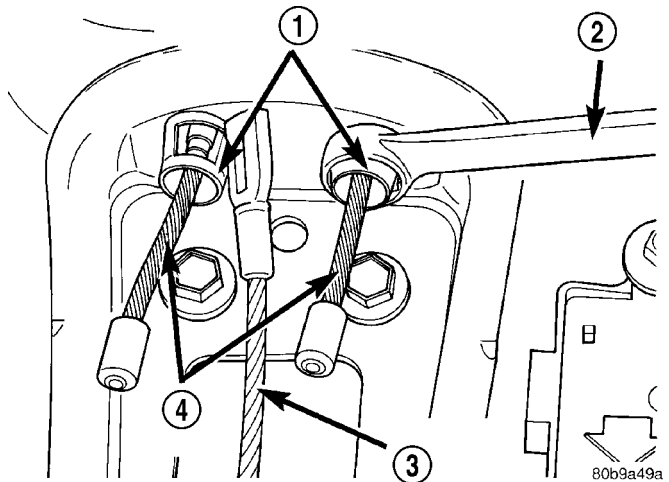
(6) Compress the cable retainers with a 13 mm wrench (Fig. 68) and remove the cable from equalizer bracket.

- (7) Raise and support the vehicle.
- (8) Remove the wheel and tire assemblies.
- (9) Remove the brake calipers, caliper anchors and rotors.
- (10) Remove the ABS sensor wiring harness (Fig. 69) from the rear brake cables.
- (11) Remove the cable retainer bolts (Fig. 69) from the rear spring pads.
- (12) Pull the cables out of the upper suspension arm brackets.
- (13) Push the cable in and lift up the end of cable with a small screw driver to disengage the cable from the parking brake actuator (Fig. 70).
- (14) Remove the cable from the vehicle.

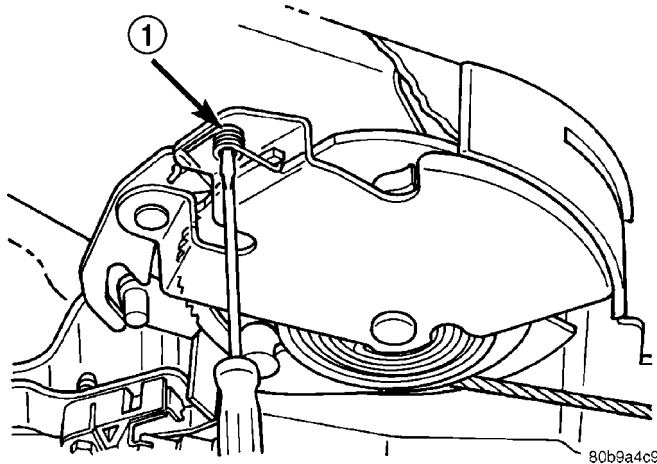
## CABLES (Continued)

**Fig. 66 Front Cable Eyelet**

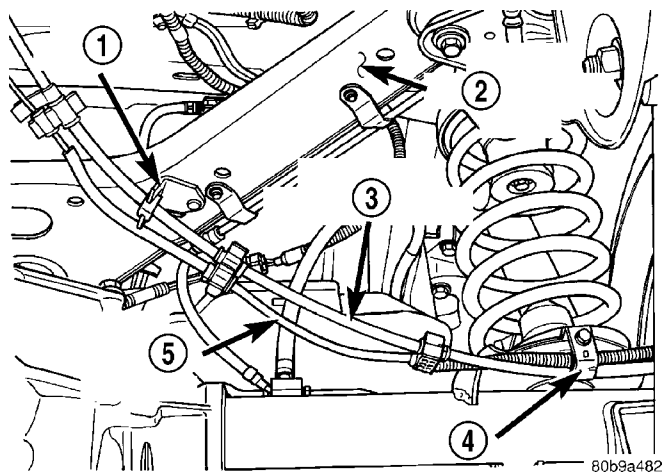
- 1 - REAR CABLES
- 2 - FRONT CABLE EYELET
- 3 - FRONT CABLE
- 4 - EQUALIZER

**Fig. 68 Cable Retainers**

- 1 - CABLE RETAINER
- 2 - WRENCH
- 3 - FRONT CABLE
- 4 - REAR CABLES

**Fig. 67 Lock Out Spring**

- 1 - LOCK OUT SPRING

**Fig. 69 Left Rear Parking Brake Cable**

- 1 - CABLE BRACKET
- 2 - UPPER SUSPENSION ARM
- 3 - PARKING BRAKE CABLE
- 4 - CABLE RETAINER
- 5 - ABS SENSOR WIRING

**INSTALLATION****INSTALLATION - FRONT PARKING BRAKE CABLE**

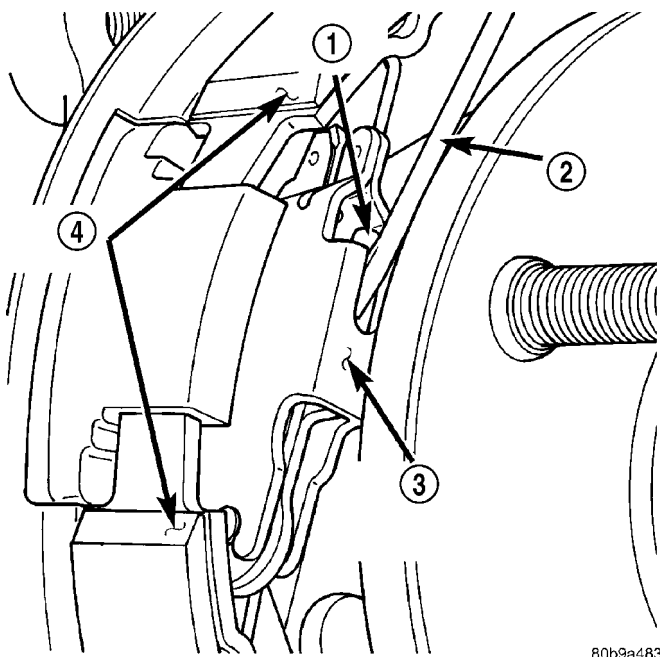
- (1) Install the cable into the parking brake lever bracket and equalizer bracket.
- (2) Install the front cable to the floor pan and install retainer nuts.
- (3) Engage the front cable ends to the parking brake lever and equalizer.
- (4) Install the front carpet, (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/CARPETS AND FLOOR MATS - INSTALLATION).
- (5) Pull on the lever to release the lock out spring.
- (6) Install the center console, (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/FLOOR CONSOLE - INSTALLATION).
- (7) Fold down the rear carpet cover and rear seat.

**INSTALLATION - REAR PARKING BRAKE CABLES**

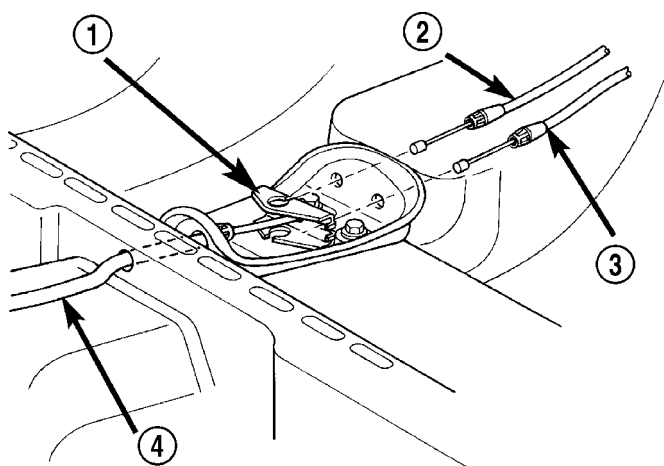
- (1) Install the cables through the caliper anchor mount. Then push the end of cable strand in to engage the cable end to the parking brake actuator.
- (2) Feed the other end of the cables through the body and into the equalizer bracket (Fig. 71).
- (3) Push the cables into the upper suspension arm brackets.
- (4) Install the cable retainer bolts to the rear spring pads.
- (5) Install the ABS sensor wiring harness to the rear brake cables.



## CABLES (Continued)

**Fig. 70 Parking Brake**

- 1 - CABLE END
- 2 - SCREW DRIVER
- 3 - PARKING BRAKE ACTUATOR
- 4 - BRAKE SHOES

**Fig. 71 Equalizer Bracket**

- 1 - EQUALIZER
- 2 - RIGHT REAR CABLE
- 3 - LEFT REAR CABLE
- 4 - FRONT CABLE

(6) Install the rotors, caliper anchors and brake calipers.

(7) Install the wheel and tire assemblies.

(8) Remove support and lower the vehicle.

(9) Engage the cable ends into the parking brake equalizer.

(10) Pull on the lever to release the lock out spring.

(11) Install center console, (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/FLOOR CONSOLE - INSTALLATION).

(12) Fold down the rear carpet cover and rear seat.

(13) Verify parking brake operation.

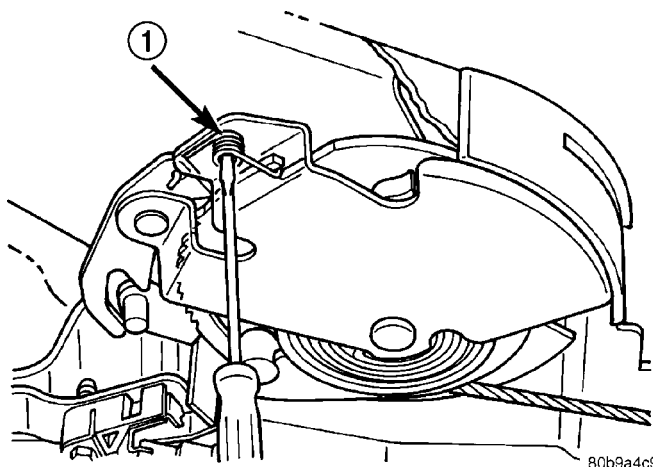
## LEVER

## REMOVAL

(1) Remove the center console, (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/FLOOR CONSOLE - REMOVAL).

(2) Have an assistant pry down the lock out spring through the hole in the side of the park brake lever (Fig. 72) with a small screw driver. Then slowly release the front cable.

**NOTE:** There should be slack in the cable if the lock out spring is engaged.

**Fig. 72 Lock Out Spring**

- 1 - LOCK OUT SPRING

(3) Disconnect the parking brake switch wiring connector.

(4) Disengage the front cable end from the parking brake lever.

(5) Compress the cable retainer with a 13 mm wrench (Fig. 73) and remove the cable from the parking brake lever bracket.

(6) Remove the four park brake lever mounting nuts and two console bracket nuts (Fig. 74).

(7) Lift the lever assembly off the mounting studs and pull the front cable out of the lever bracket.

## INSTALLATION

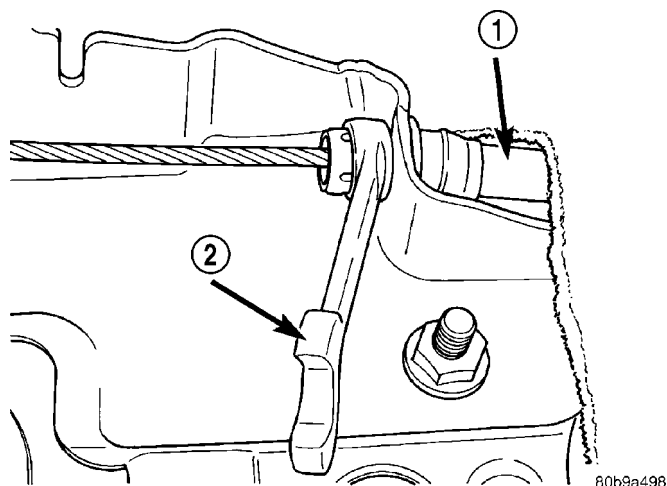
(1) Install the lever assembly on the mounting studs while feeding the front cable into the lever bracket.

(2) Install the parking brake lever mounting nuts.

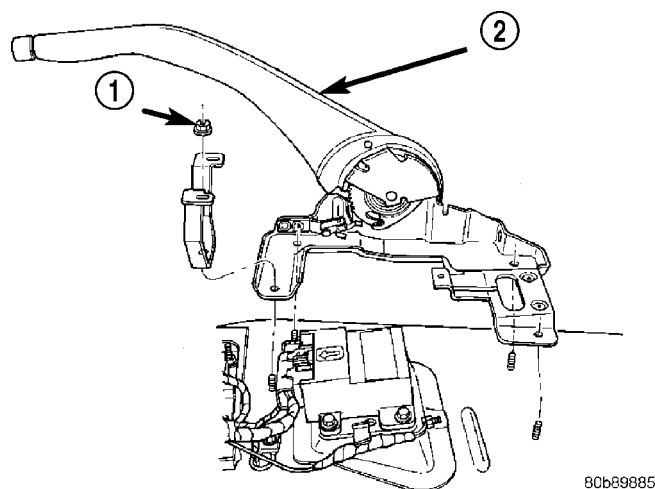
(3) Install the console bracket (Fig. 74) and mounting nuts.

(4) Engage the front cable end to the lever.

## LEVER (Continued)

**Fig. 73 Parking Brake Lever Bracket**

- 1 - FRONT CABLE  
2 - WRENCH

**Fig. 74 Parking Brake Lever Mounting**

- 1 - MOUNTING NUT  
2 - PARK BRAKE LEVER

(5) Connect the parking brake switch wire connector.

(6) Cut the shipping lock out tie strap and remove the strap.

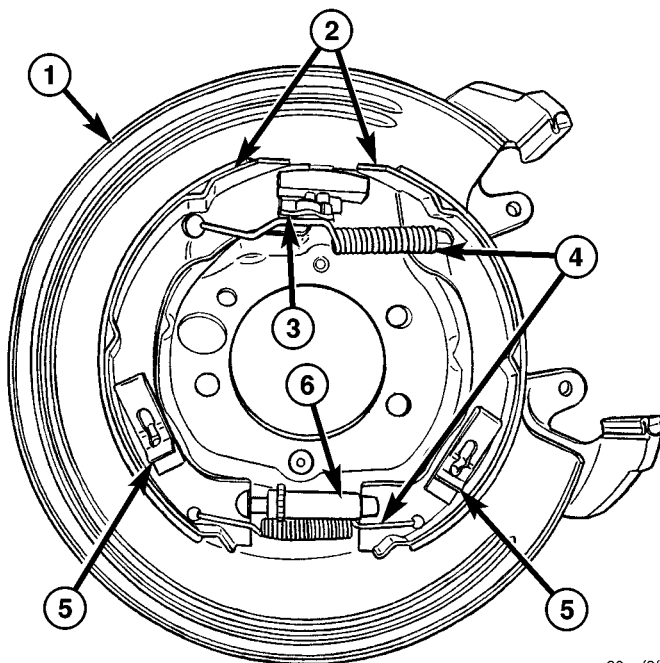
(7) Check the operation of the parking brake lever and cable.

(8) Install the center console, (Refer to 23 - BODY/ INTERIOR/FLOOR CONSOLE - INSTALLATION).

## SHOES

## DESCRIPTION

Drum in hat park brakes are dual shoe, internal expanding units with an automatic self adjusting mechanism (Fig. 75).

**Fig. 75 BRAKE SHOES**

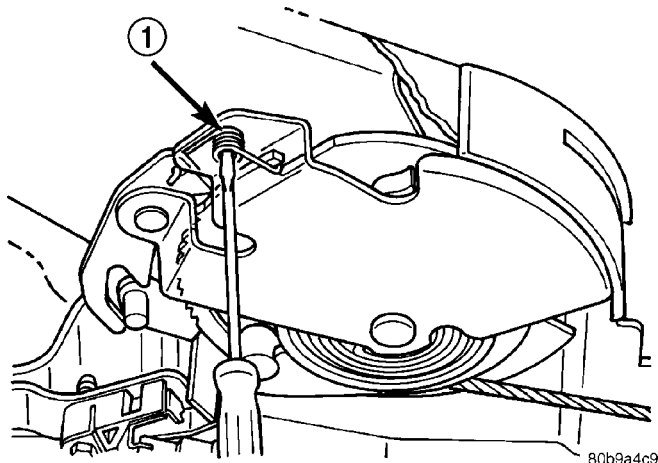
- 1 - SUPPORT PLATE  
2 - PARK BRAKE SHOES  
3 - EQUALIZER  
4 - SPRINGS  
5 - HOLD DOWN CLIPS  
6 - ADJUSTER

## OPERATION

When the parking brake pedal is depressed the brake cable pulls the brake shoes outward against the brake drum. When the brake pedal is released the return springs attached to the brake shoes pull the shoes back to there original position.

## REMOVAL

- (1) Lock out park brake lever (Fig. 76).

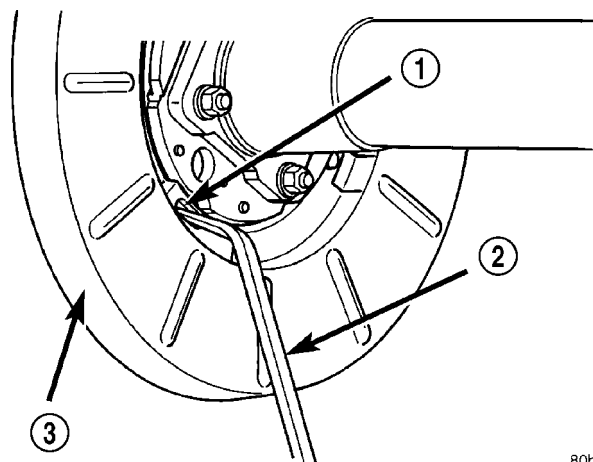
**Fig. 76 Lock Out Spring**

- 1 - LOCK OUT SPRING



## SHOES (Continued)

- (2) Raise vehicle.
- (3) Remove rear wheel and tire assembly.
- (4) Remove caliper and anchor as an assembly.
- (5) Remove rubber access plug from back of rear disc brake splash shield.
- (6) If necessary retract parking brake shoes with brake adjuster tool (Fig. 77). Position tool at top of star wheel and rotate wheel.

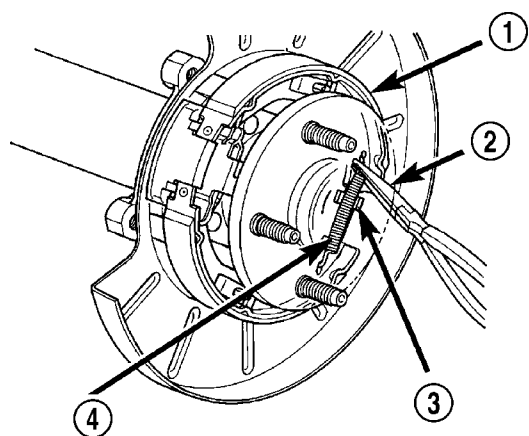


80b8987a

**Fig. 77 Retracting Parking Brake Shoes**

- 1 - ACCESS HOLE
- 2 - BRAKE ADJUSTING TOOL
- 3 - SPLASH SHIELD

- (7) Remove rotor from axle hub flange.
- (8) Remove the lower shoe to shoe spring/adjuster spring with needle nose pliers (Fig. 78).

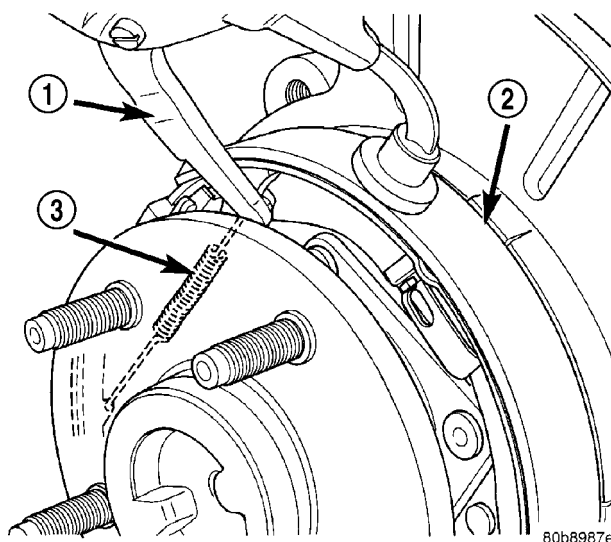


80b8987b

**Fig. 78 Lower Spring**

- 1 - REAR SHOE
- 2 - NEEDLENOSE PLIERS
- 3 - ADJUSTER SCREW
- 4 - LOWER SPRING

- (9) Remove the upper shoe to shoe spring/return spring with brake pliers (Fig. 79).

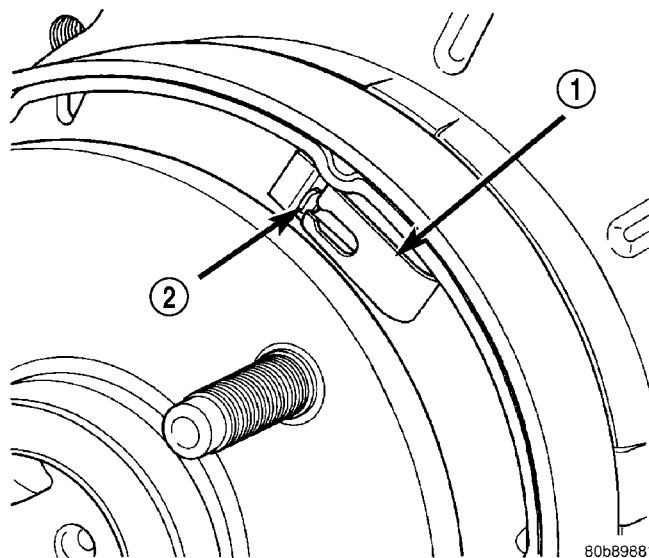


80b8987e

**Fig. 79 Upper Spring**

- 1 - BRAKE PLIERS
- 2 - REAR SHOE
- 3 - UPPER SPRING

- (10) Remove shoe hold-down clips and pins (Fig. 80). Clip is held in place by pin which fits in clip notch. To remove clip, first push clip ends together and slide clip until head of pin clears narrow part of notch. Then remove clip and pin.



80b89881

**Fig. 80 Hold-Down Clip And Pin**

- 1 - HOLD-DOWN CLIP
- 2 - HOLD-DOWN PIN

- (11) Remove shoes and adjuster.

**CLEANING - REAR DRUM IN HAT BRAKE**

Clean the individual brake components, including the support plate exterior, with a water dampened cloth or with brake cleaner. Do not use any other cleaning agents. Remove light rust and scale from

## SHOES (Continued)

the brake shoe contact pads on the support plate with fine sandpaper.

**INSPECTION - REAR DRUM IN HAT BRAKE**

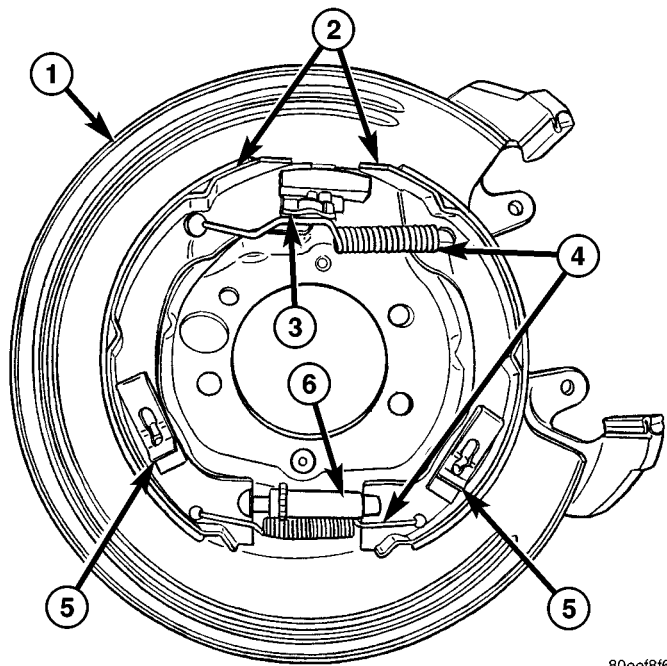
As a general rule, riveted brake shoes should be replaced when worn to within 0.78 mm (1/32 in.) of the rivet heads. Bonded lining should be replaced when worn to a thickness of 1.6 mm (1/16 in.).

Examine the lining contact pattern to determine if the shoes are bent or the drum is tapered. The lining should exhibit contact across its entire width. Shoes exhibiting contact only on one side should be replaced and the drum checked for runout or taper (Fig. 81).

Inspect the adjuster screw assembly. Replace the assembly if the star wheel or threads are damaged, or the components are severely rusted or corroded (Fig. 81).

Discard the brake springs and retainer components if worn, distorted or collapsed. Also replace the springs if a brake drag condition had occurred. Overheating will distort and weaken the springs.

Inspect the brake shoe contact pads on the support plate, replace the support plate if any of the pads are worn or rusted through. Also replace the plate if it is bent or distorted (Fig. 81).



80eef8f6

**Fig. 81 BRAKE SHOES**

- 1 - SUPPORT PLATE
- 2 - PARK BRAKE SHOES
- 3 - EQUALIZER
- 4 - SPRINGS
- 5 - HOLD DOWN CLIPS
- 6 - ADJUSTER

**INSTALLATION**

(1) Install shoes on splash shield with hold down clips and pins. Be sure shoes are properly engaged in the park brake actuator.

(2) Lubricate and install adjuster screw assembly. Be sure notched ends of screw assembly are properly seated on shoes and that star wheel is aligned with access hole in shield.

(3) Install lower shoe to shoe spring/adjuster spring. Needle nose pliers can be used to connect spring to each shoe.

(4) Install the upper shoe to shoe spring/return spring with brake pliers (Fig. 78).

(5) Install rotor and caliper anchor assembly.

(6) Install anchor bolts and tighten to 90-115 N·m (66-85 ft. lbs.).

(7) Actuate park brake lever to unlock the park brake system.

(8) Adjust the parking brake shoes (Fig. 77).

(9) Install wheel and tire assembly.

(10) Lower vehicle and verify correct parking brake operation.

**ADJUSTMENTS****ADJUSTMENT - REAR DRUM IN HAT PARK BRAKE (ROTOR REMOVED)**

Under normal circumstances, the only time adjustment is required is when the shoes are replaced, removed for access to other parts, or when one or both rotors are replaced.

Adjustment can be made with a standard brake gauge or with adjusting tool. Adjustment is performed with the complete brake assembly installed on the backing plate.

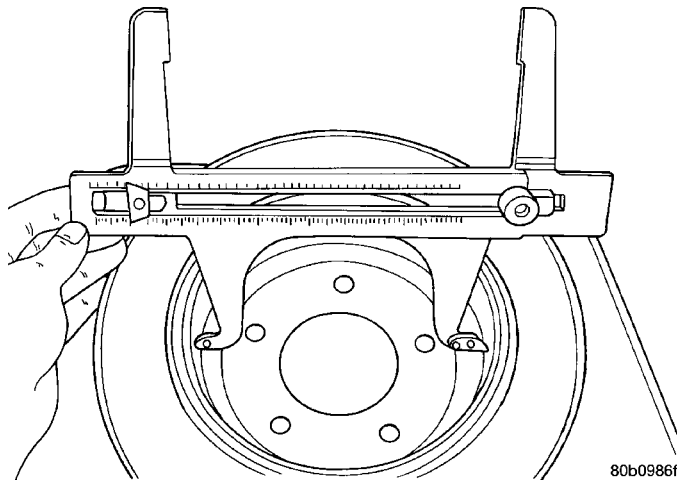
**CAUTION:** Before adjusting the park brake shoes be sure that the park brake pedal is in the fully released position. If park brake pedal is not in the fully released position, the park brake shoes can not be accurately adjusted.

- (1) Raise vehicle.
- (2) Remove tire and wheel.
- (3) Remove disc brake caliper from caliper adapter (Refer to 5 - BRAKES/HYDRAULIC/MECHANICAL/DISC BRAKE CALIPERS - REMOVAL).
- (4) Remove rotor from the axle shaft (Refer to 5 - BRAKES/HYDRAULIC/MECHANICAL/ROTORS - REMOVAL).

**NOTE:** When measuring the brake drum diameter, the diameter should be measured in the center of the area in which the park brake shoes contact the surface of the brake drum.

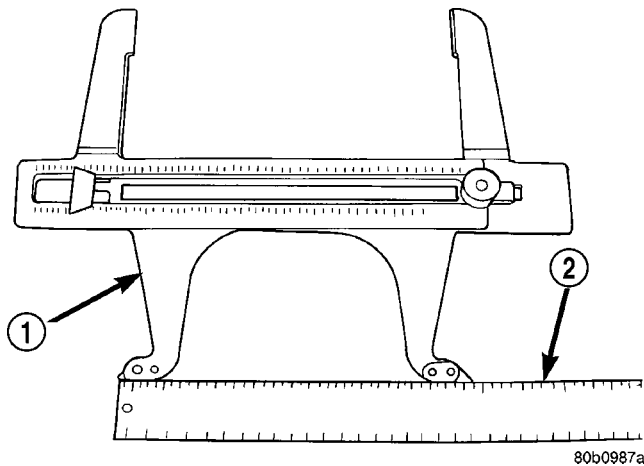
## SHOES (Continued)

(5) Using Brake Shoe Gauge, Special Tool C-3919, or equivalent, **accurately** measure the inside diameter of the park brake drum portion of the rotor (Fig. 82).



**Fig. 82 MEASURING PARK BRAKE DRUM DIAMETER**

(6) Using a ruler that reads in 64th of an inch, accurately read the measurement of the inside diameter of the park brake drum from the special tool (Fig. 83).

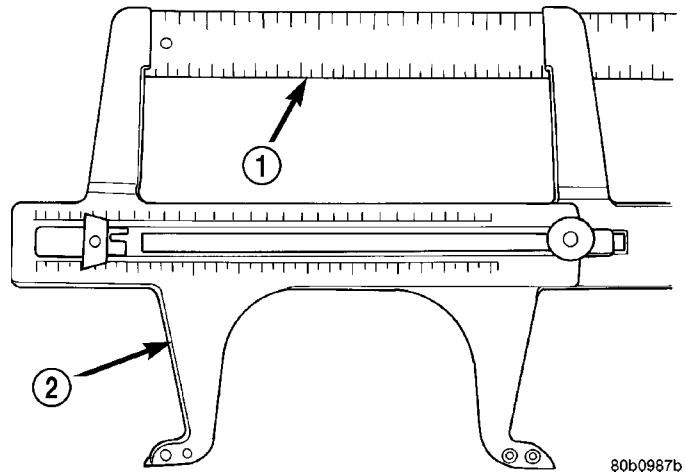


**Fig. 83 READING PARK BRAKE DRUM DIAMETER**

1 - SPECIAL TOOL C-3919  
2 - RULER

(7) Reduce the inside diameter measurement of the brake drum that was taken using Special Tool C-3919 by 1/64 of an inch. Reset Gauge, Brake Shoe, Special Tool C-3919 or the equivalent used, so that the outside measurement jaws are set to the reduced measurement (Fig. 84).

(8) Place Gauge, Brake Shoe, Special Tool C-3919, or equivalent over the park brake shoes. The special tool must be located diagonally across at the top of



**Fig. 84 SETTING GAUGE TO PARK BRAKE SHOE MEASUREMENT**

1 - RULER  
2 - SPECIAL TOOL C-3919

one shoe and bottom of opposite shoe (widest point) of the park brake shoes.

(9) Using the star wheel adjuster, adjust the park brake shoes until the lining on the park brake shoes just touches the jaws on the special tool.

(10) Repeat step 8 above and measure shoes in both directions.

(11) Install brake rotor on the axleshaft (Refer to 5 - BRAKES/HYDRAULIC/MECHANICAL/ROTORS - INSTALLATION).

(12) Rotate rotor to verify that the park brake shoes are not dragging on the brake drum. If park brake shoes are dragging, remove rotor and back off star wheel adjuster one notch and recheck for brake shoe drag against drum. Continue with the previous step until brake shoes are not dragging on brake drum.

(13) Install disc brake caliper on caliper adapter (Refer to 5 - BRAKES/HYDRAULIC/MECHANICAL/DISC BRAKE CALIPERS - INSTALLATION).

(14) Install wheel and tire.

(15) Tighten the wheel mounting nuts in the proper sequence until all nuts are torqued to half the specified torque. Then repeat the tightening sequence to the full specified torque of 129 N·m (95 ft. lbs.).

(16) Lower vehicle.

**CAUTION:** Before moving vehicle, pump brake pedal several times to ensure the vehicle has a firm enough pedal to stop the vehicle.

## SHOES (Continued)

**NOTE:** After parking brake lining replacement, it is recommended that the parking brake system be conditioned prior to use. This is done by making one stop from 25 mph on dry pavement or concrete using light to moderate force on the parking brake hand lever.

(17) Road test the vehicle to ensure proper function of the vehicle's brake system.

**ADJUSTMENT - WITH ADJUSTING TOOL**

Adjustment can be made with a standard brake gauge or with adjusting tool. Adjustment is performed with the complete brake assembly installed on the backing plate.

- (1) Be sure parking brake lever is fully released.
- (2) Raise vehicle so rear wheels can be rotated freely.
- (3) Remove plug from each access hole in brake support plates.
- (4) Loosen parking brake cable adjustment nut until there is slack in front cable.
- (5) Insert adjusting tool through support plate access hole and engage tool in teeth of adjusting screw star wheel (Fig. 85).

(6) Rotate adjuster screw star wheel (move tool handle upward) until slight drag can be felt when wheel is rotated.

(7) Push and hold adjuster lever away from star wheel with thin screwdriver.

(8) Back off adjuster screw star wheel until brake drag is eliminated.

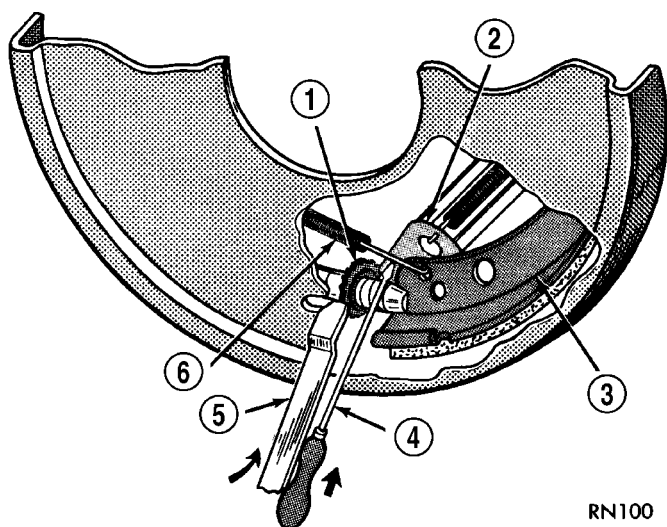
(9) Repeat adjustment at opposite wheel. Be sure adjustment is equal at both wheels.

(10) Install support plate access hole plugs.

(11) Adjust parking brake cable and lower vehicle.

(12) Depress park brake lever and make sure park brakes hold the vehicle stationary.

(13) Release park brake lever.



RN100

**Fig. 85 Brake Adjustment**

- 1 - STAR WHEEL
- 2 - LEVER
- 3 - BRAKE SHOE WEB
- 4 - SCREWDRIVER
- 5 - ADJUSTING TOOL
- 6 - ADJUSTER SPRING

## BRAKES - ABS

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>BRAKES - ABS</b>		REMOVAL .....	44
DESCRIPTION .....	42	INSTALLATION .....	44
OPERATION .....	42	<b>G-SENSOR</b>	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - ANTILOCK		DESCRIPTION .....	45
BRAKES .....	43	<b>REAR WHEEL SPEED SENSOR</b>	
STANDARD PROCEDURE - BLEEDING ABS		DESCRIPTION .....	45
BRAKE SYSTEM .....	43	OPERATION .....	45
SPECIFICATIONS		REMOVAL .....	45
TORQUE CHART .....	43	INSTALLATION .....	45
<b>ELECTRIC BRAKE</b>		<b>HCU (HYDRAULIC CONTROL UNIT)</b>	
DESCRIPTION .....	44	DESCRIPTION .....	46
OPERATION .....	44	OPERATION .....	46
<b>FRONT WHEEL SPEED SENSOR</b>		REMOVAL .....	47
DESCRIPTION .....	44	INSTALLATION .....	47
OPERATION .....	44		

## BRAKES - ABS

## DESCRIPTION

The purpose of the antilock system is to prevent wheel lockup during periods of high wheel slip. Preventing lockup helps maintain vehicle braking action and steering control.

The hydraulic system is a three channel design. The front brakes are controlled individually and the rear brakes in tandem.

The ABS electrical system is separate from other vehicle electrical circuits. A separate controller operates the system.

## OPERATION

The antilock CAB activates the system whenever sensor signals indicate periods of high wheel slip. High wheel slip can be described as the point where wheel rotation begins approaching 20 to 30 percent of actual vehicle speed during braking. Periods of high wheel slip occur when brake stops involve high pedal pressure and rate of vehicle deceleration.

Battery voltage is supplied to the CAB ignition terminal when the ignition switch is turned to Run position. The CAB performs a system initialization procedure at this point. Initialization consists of a static and dynamic self check of system electrical components.

The static check occurs after the ignition switch is turned to Run position. The dynamic check occurs when vehicle road speed reaches approximately 30 kph (18 mph). During the dynamic check, the CAB

briefly cycles the pump and solenoids to verify operation.

If an ABS component exhibits a fault during initialization, the CAB illuminates the amber warning light and registers a fault code in the microprocessor memory.

## ANTILOCK BRAKING

The antilock system prevents lockup during high slip conditions by modulating fluid apply pressure to the wheel brake units.

Brake fluid apply pressure is modulated according to wheel speed, degree of slip and rate of deceleration. A sensor at each wheel converts wheel speed into electrical signals. These signals are transmitted to the CAB for processing and determination of wheel slip and deceleration rate.

The ABS system has three fluid pressure control channels. The front brakes are controlled separately and the rear brakes in tandem. A speed sensor input signal indicating a high slip condition activates the CAB antilock program.

Two solenoid valves are used in each antilock control channel. The valves are all located within the HCU valve body and work in pairs to either increase, hold, or decrease apply pressure as needed in the individual control channels.

The solenoid valves are not static during antilock braking. They are cycled continuously to modulate pressure. Solenoid cycle time in antilock mode can be measured in milliseconds.



## BRAKES - ABS (Continued)

**DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - ANTILOCK BRAKES**

The ABS brake system performs several self-tests every time the ignition switch is turned on and the vehicle is driven. The CAB monitors the systems input and output circuits to verify the system is operating correctly. If the on board diagnostic system senses that a circuit is malfunctioning the system will set a trouble code in its memory.

**NOTE:** An audible noise may be heard during the self-test. This noise should be considered normal.

**NOTE:** The MDS or DRB III scan tool is used to diagnose the ABS system. For additional information refer to the Electrical section. For test procedures refer to the Chassis Diagnostic Manual.

**STANDARD PROCEDURE - BLEEDING ABS BRAKE SYSTEM**

ABS system bleeding requires conventional bleeding methods plus use of the DRB scan tool. The procedure involves performing a base brake bleeding, followed by use of the scan tool to cycle and bleed the HCU pump and solenoids. A second base brake bleeding procedure is then required to remove any air remaining in the system.

(1) Perform base brake bleeding. (Refer to 5 - BRAKES - STANDARD PROCEDURE) OR (Refer to 5 - BRAKES - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

(2) Connect scan tool to the Data Link Connector.

(3) Select ANTILOCK BRAKES, followed by MISCELLANEOUS, then ABS BRAKES. Follow the instructions displayed. When scan tool displays TEST COMPLETE, disconnect scan tool and proceed.

(4) Perform base brake bleeding a second time. (Refer to 5 - BRAKES - STANDARD PROCEDURE) OR (Refer to 5 - BRAKES - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

(5) Top off master cylinder fluid level and verify proper brake operation before moving vehicle.

**SPECIFICATIONS****TORQUE CHART***TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS*

DESCRIPTION	N-m	Ft. Lbs.	In. Lbs.
G-Sensor Bolt	5.6	—	50
Hydraulic Control Unit/Controller Antilock Brakes Mounting Bolts	12	9	125
Hydraulic Control Unit/Controller Antilock Brakes Brake Lines	16	—	144
Hydraulic Control Unit/Controller Antilock Brakes CAB Screws	1.8	—	16
Wheel Speed Sensors Front Sensor Bolt	12-14	—	106-124
Wheel Speed Sensors Rear Sensor Bolt	12-14	—	106-124



## ELECTRIC BRAKE

### DESCRIPTION

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) functions like a rear proportioning valve. The EBD system uses the ABS system to control the slip of the rear wheels in partial braking range. The braking force of the rear wheels is controlled electronically by using the inlet and outlet valves located in the HCU.

### OPERATION

Upon entry into EBD the inlet valve for the rear brake circuit is switched on so that the fluid supply from the master cylinder is shut off. In order to decrease the rear brake pressure the outlet valve for the rear brake circuit is pulsed. This allows fluid to enter the low pressure accumulator (LPA) in the HCU resulting in a drop in fluid pressure to the rear brakes. In order to increase the rear brake pressure the outlet valve is switched off and the inlet valve is pulsed. This increases the pressure to the rear brakes. This will continue until the required slip difference is obtained. At the end of EBD braking (no brake application) the fluid in the LPA drains back to the master cylinder by switching on the outlet valve and draining through the inlet valve check valve. At the same time the inlet valve is switched on to prevent a hydraulic short circuit in case of another brake application.

The EBD will remain functional during many ABS fault modes. If the red and amber warning lamps are illuminated the EBD may have a fault.

## FRONT WHEEL SPEED SENSOR

### DESCRIPTION

A wheel speed sensor is used at each wheel. The front sensors are mounted to the steering knuckles. The rear sensors are mounted at the outboard end of the axle. Tone wheels are mounted to the outboard ends of the front and rear axle shafts. The gear type tone wheel serves as the trigger mechanism for each sensor.

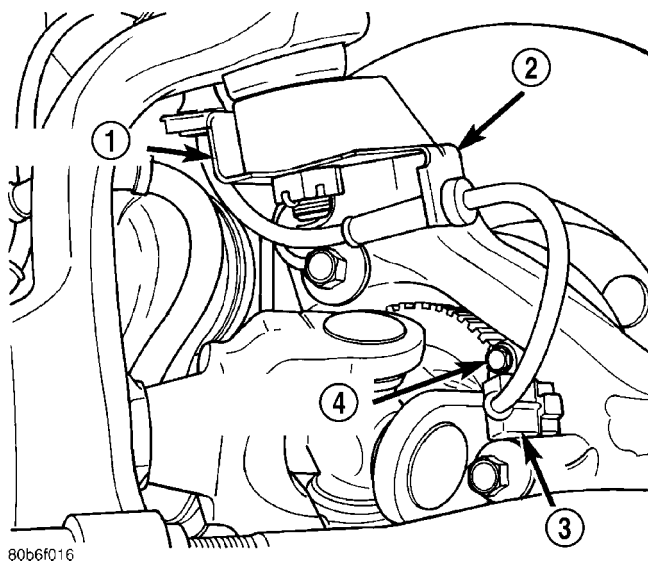
### OPERATION

The sensors convert wheel speed into a small digital signal. The CAB sends 12 volts to the sensors. The sensor has an internal magneto resistance bridge that alters the voltage and amperage of the signal circuit. This voltage and amperage is changed by magnetic induction when the toothed tone wheel passes the wheel speed sensor. This digital signal is

sent to the CAB. The CAB measures the voltage and amperage of the digital signal for each wheel.

### REMOVAL

- (1) Raise and support the vehicle.
- (2) Remove the front wheel sensor mounting bolt (Fig. 1).



**Fig. 1 Sensor Location**

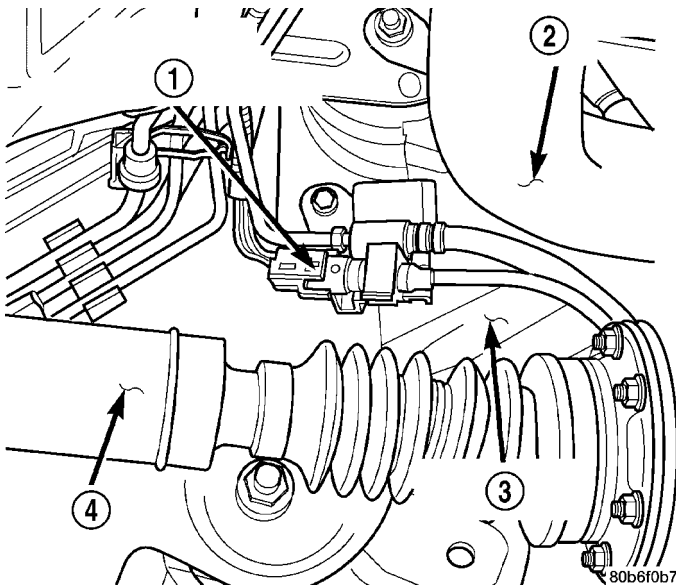
- 1 - BRACKET
- 2 - BRACKET
- 3 - WHEEL SPEED SENSOR
- 4 - MOUNTING BOLT

- (3) Remove the sensor from the steering knuckle.
- (4) Disengage the sensor wire from the brackets (Fig. 1) on the steering knuckle.
- (5) Disconnect the sensor from the sensor harness (Fig. 2) and (Fig. 3).
- (6) Remove the sensor and wire.

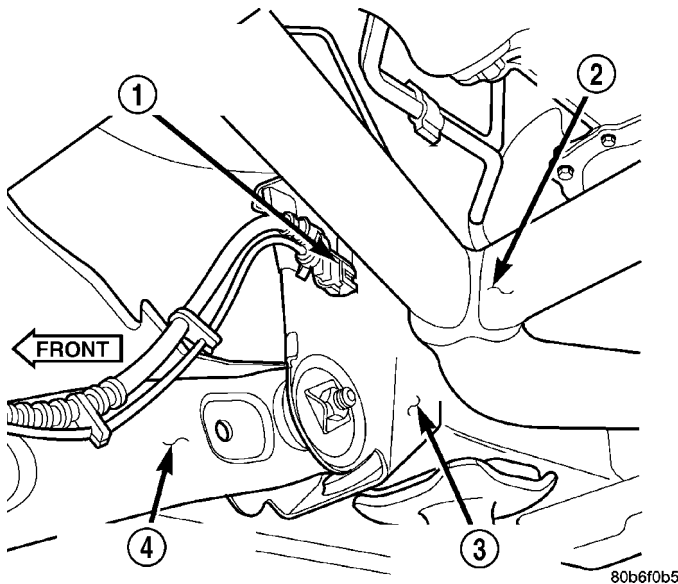
### INSTALLATION

- (1) Install the sensor on the steering knuckle.
- (2) Apply Mopar Lock N' Seal or Loctite® 242 to the sensor mounting bolt. Use new sensor bolt if original bolt is worn or damaged.
- (3) Install the sensor mounting bolt and tighten bolt to 12-14 N·m (106-124 in. lbs.).
- (4) Engage the grommets on the sensor wire to the steering knuckle brackets.
- (5) Connect the sensor wire to the harness connector.
- (6) Check the sensor wire routing. Be sure the wire is clear of all chassis components and is not twisted or kinked at any spot.

## FRONT WHEEL SPEED SENSOR (Continued)

**Fig. 2 Left Sensor Connector**

- 1 - LEFT FRONT WHEEL SPEED SENSOR CONNECTOR
- 2 - ENGINE EXHAUST PIPE
- 3 - LEFT FRONT FRAME RAIL
- 4 - FRONT DRIVESHAFT

**Fig. 3 Right Sensor Connector**

- 1 - RIGHT FRONT WHEEL SPEED SENSOR CONNECTOR
- 2 - ENGINE EXHAUST Y-PIPE
- 3 - RIGHT FRONT FRAME RAIL
- 4 - RIGHT LOWER SUSPENSION ARM

(7) Remove the support and lower vehicle.

## G-SENSOR

## DESCRIPTION

The G-sensor is located inside the ABS controller. The sensor is not a separate serviceable part from the controller.

## REAR WHEEL SPEED SENSOR

## DESCRIPTION

A wheel speed sensor is used at each wheel. The front sensors are mounted to the steering knuckles. The rear sensors are mounted at the outboard end of the axle. Tone wheels are mounted to the outboard ends of the front and rear axle shafts. The gear type tone wheel serves as the trigger mechanism for each sensor.

## OPERATION

The sensors convert wheel speed into a small digital signal. The CAB sends 12 volts to the sensors. The sensor has an internal magneto resistance bridge that alters the voltage and amperage of the signal circuit. This voltage and amperage is changed by magnetic induction when the toothed tone wheel passes the wheel speed sensor. This digital signal is sent to the CAB. The CAB measures the voltage and amperage of the digital signal for each wheel.

## REMOVAL

(1) Raise and fold the rear seat forward. Then move the carpeting aside for access to the rear sensor connectors.

(2) Disconnect the rear sensor wire at the harness connectors (Fig. 4).

(3) Push the sensor wires and grommets through the floorpan holes.

(4) Raise and support the vehicle.

(5) Disengage the sensor wire from the axle and the chassis brackets and from the brake line retainers.

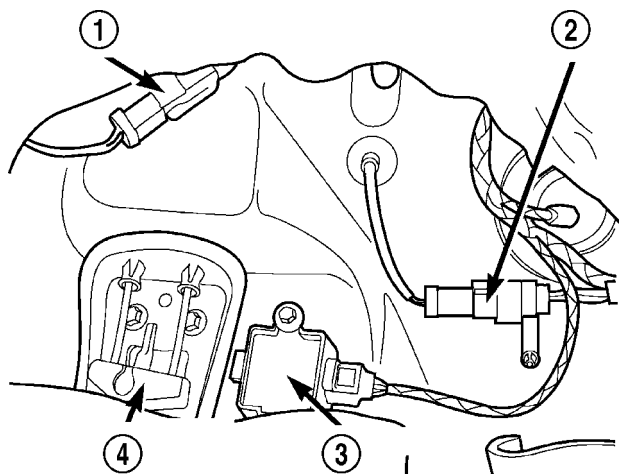
(6) Remove the sensor mounting bolt from the rear brake backing plate. (Fig. 5).

(7) Remove the sensor from the backing plate.

## INSTALLATION

(1) Insert the sensor through the backing plate (Fig. 6).

## REAR WHEEL SPEED SENSOR (Continued)

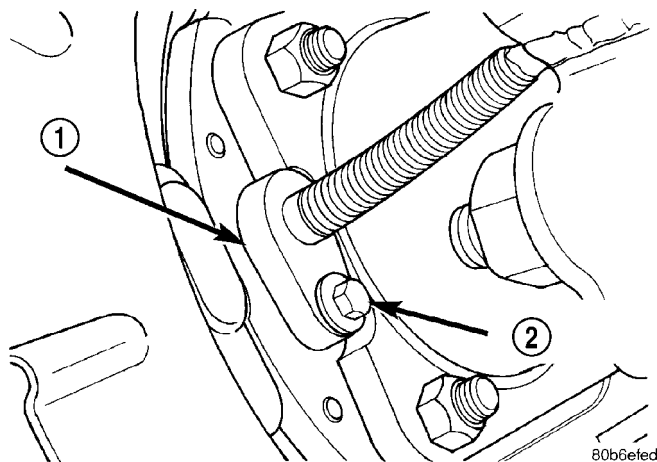


NOTE: LOCATED UNDER REAR SEAT CARPET

80b6f0b8

**Fig. 4 Rear Sensor Connector**

- 1 - RIGHT REAR WHEEL SPEED SENSOR CONNECTOR
- 2 - LEFT REAR WHEEL SPEED SENSOR CONNECTOR
- 3 - G-SWITCH SENSOR
- 4 - PARKING BRAKE CABLES



**Fig. 5 Sensor Mounting Bolt**

- 1 - WHEEL SPEED SENSOR
- 2 - MOUNTING BOLT

(2) Apply Mopar Lock N' Seal or Loctite 242® to the original sensor bolt. Use a new bolt if the original is worn or damaged.

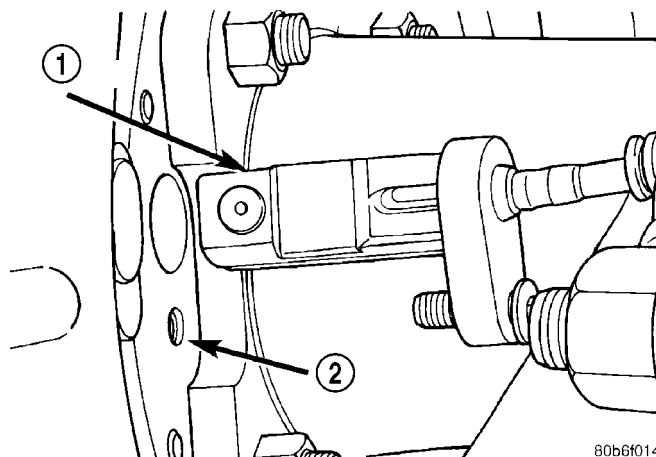
(3) Tighten the sensor bolt to 12-14 N·m (106-124 in. lbs.).

(4) Secure the sensor wire in the brackets and the retainers on the rear brake lines. Verify that the sensor wire is secure and clear of the rotating components.

(5) Route the sensor wires to the rear seat area.

(6) Feed the sensor wires through floorpan access hole and seat the sensor grommets into the floorpan.

(7) Remove the support and lower the vehicle.



80b6f014

**Fig. 6 Wheel Speed Sensor**

- 1 - WHEEL SPEED SENSOR
- 2 - BACKING PLATE

(8) Fold the rear seat and carpet forward for access to the sensor wires and connectors.

(9) Connect the sensor wires to the harness connectors.

(10) Reposition the carpet and fold the rear seat down.

## HCU (HYDRAULIC CONTROL UNIT)

### DESCRIPTION

The HCU consists of a valve body, pump motor, and wire harness.

### OPERATION

Accumulators in the valve body store extra fluid released to the system for ABS mode operation. The pump is used to clear the accumulator of brake fluid and is operated by a DC type motor. The motor is controlled by the CAB.

The valves modulate brake pressure during antilock braking and are controlled by the CAB.

The HCU provides three channel pressure control to the front and rear brakes. One channel controls the rear wheel brakes in tandem. The two remaining channels control the front wheel brakes individually.

During antilock braking, the solenoid valves are opened and closed as needed. The valves are not static. They are cycled rapidly and continuously to modulate pressure and control wheel slip and deceleration.

During normal braking, the HCU solenoid valves and pump are not activated. The master cylinder and power booster operate the same as a vehicle without an ABS brake system.

## HCU (HYDRAULIC CONTROL UNIT) (Continued)

During antilock braking, solenoid valve pressure modulation occurs in three stages, pressure increase, pressure hold, and pressure decrease. The valves are all contained in the valve body portion of the HCU.

**PRESSURE DECREASE**

The outlet valve is opened and the inlet valve is closed during the pressure decrease cycle.

A pressure decrease cycle is initiated when speed sensor signals indicate high wheel slip at one or more wheels. At this point, the CAB closes the inlet then opens the outlet valve, which also opens the return circuit to the accumulators. Fluid pressure is allowed to bleed off (decrease) as needed to prevent wheel lock.

Once the period of high wheel slip has ended, the CAB closes the outlet valve and begins a pressure increase or hold cycle as needed.

**PRESSURE HOLD**

Both solenoid valves are closed in the pressure hold cycle. Fluid apply pressure in the control channel is maintained at a constant rate. The CAB maintains the hold cycle until sensor inputs indicate a pressure change is necessary.

**PRESSURE INCREASE**

The inlet valve is open and the outlet valve is closed during the pressure increase cycle. The pressure increase cycle is used to counteract unequal wheel speeds. This cycle controls re-application of fluid apply pressure due to changing road surfaces or wheel speed.

**REMOVAL**

(1) Remove the negative battery cable from the battery.

(2) Remove the air cleaner housing,(Refer to 9 - ENGINE/AIR INTAKE SYSTEM/AIR CLEANER HOUSING - REMOVAL).

(3) Pull the CAB harness connector release up and remove connector (Fig. 7).

(4) Remove the brake lines from the HCU.

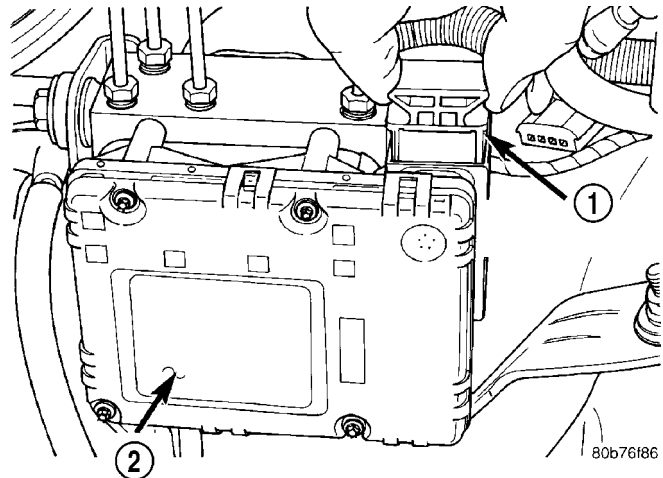
(5) Remove the HCU/CAB side mounting bolt and the two rear mounting bolts. (Fig. 8).

(6) Remove the HCU/CAB assembly from the vehicle.

**INSTALLATION**

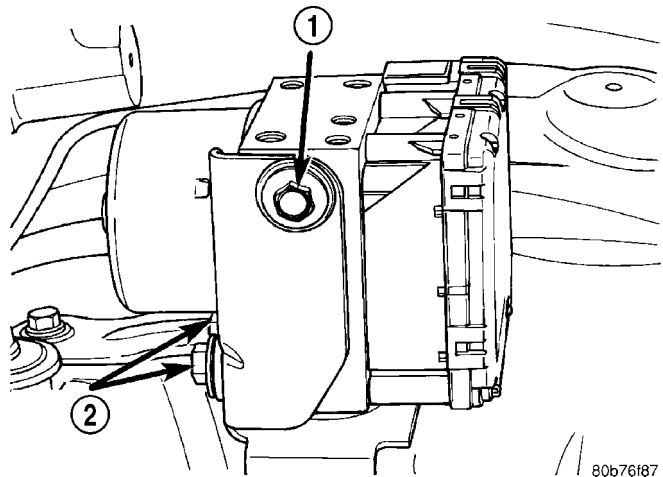
**NOTE:** If the CAB is being replaced with a new CAB is must be reprogrammed with the use of a DRB III.

(1) Install HCU/CAB assembly into the mounting bracket and tighten mounting bolts to 12 N·m (9 ft. lbs.).



**Fig. 7 CAB Connector Release**

- 1 - CONNECTOR RELEASE  
2 - CAB



**Fig. 8 HCU/CAB Assembly**

- 1 - SIDE MOUNTING BOLT  
2 - REAR MOUNTING BOLTS

(2) Install the brake lines to the HCU and tighten to 16 N·m (12 ft. lbs.).

(3) Install CAB harness connector and push down connector release.

(4) Install air cleaner housing,(Refer to 9 - ENGINE/AIR INTAKE SYSTEM/AIR CLEANER HOUSING - INSTALLATION).

(5) Install negative battery cable to the battery.

(6) Bleed base and ABS brake systems,(Refer to 5 - BRAKES - STANDARD PROCEDURE) OR (Refer to 5 - BRAKES - STANDARD PROCEDURE).



# COOLING

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page	page
<b>COOLING</b>		
DESCRIPTION		
DESCRIPTION - COOLING SYSTEM 4.7L ENGINE . . . . .	1	
DESCRIPTION - COOLING SYSTEM ROUTING - 4.7L ENGINE . . . . .	1	
DESCRIPTION - COOLING SYSTEM 4.0L ENGINE . . . . .	2	
DESCRIPTION — COOLING SYSTEM ROUTING 4.0L ENGINE . . . . .	2	
DESCRIPTION - HOSE CLAMPS . . . . .	2	
OPERATION		
OPERATION - COOLING SYSTEM . . . . .	3	
OPERATION - HOSE CLAMPS . . . . .	3	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING		
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - ON-BOARD DIAGNOSTICS (OBD) . . . . .	4	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - PRELIMINARY CHECKS . . . . .	4	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - COOLING SYSTEM DIAGNOSIS CHART . . . . .	5	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - COOLING SYSTEM LEAKS . . . . .	11	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - COOLING SYSTEM DEAERATION . . . . .		13
STANDARD PROCEDURE		
STANDARD PROCEDURE - DRAINING COOLING SYSTEM - 4.7L ENGINE . . . . .		13
STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFILLING COOLING SYSTEM 4.7L ENGINE . . . . .		13
STANDARD PROCEDURE - DRAINING COOLING SYSTEM - 4.0L ENGINE . . . . .		14
STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFILLING COOLING SYSTEM - 4.0L ENGINE . . . . .		14
STANDARD PROCEDURE - ADDING ADDITIONAL COOLANT . . . . .		14
STANDARD PROCEDURE - COOLING SYSTEM - REVERSE FLUSHING . . . . .		15
SPECIFICATIONS		
TORQUE . . . . .		15
SPECIAL TOOLS		
COOLING . . . . .		16
<b>ACCESSORY DRIVE</b> . . . . .		17
<b>ENGINE</b> . . . . .		23
<b>TRANSMISSION</b> . . . . .		54

## COOLING

### DESCRIPTION

#### DESCRIPTION - COOLING SYSTEM 4.7L ENGINE

The cooling system consists of the following items:

- Hydraulic cooling fan and fan drive assembly
- Radiator
- Power steering oil cooler
- Radiator pressure cap

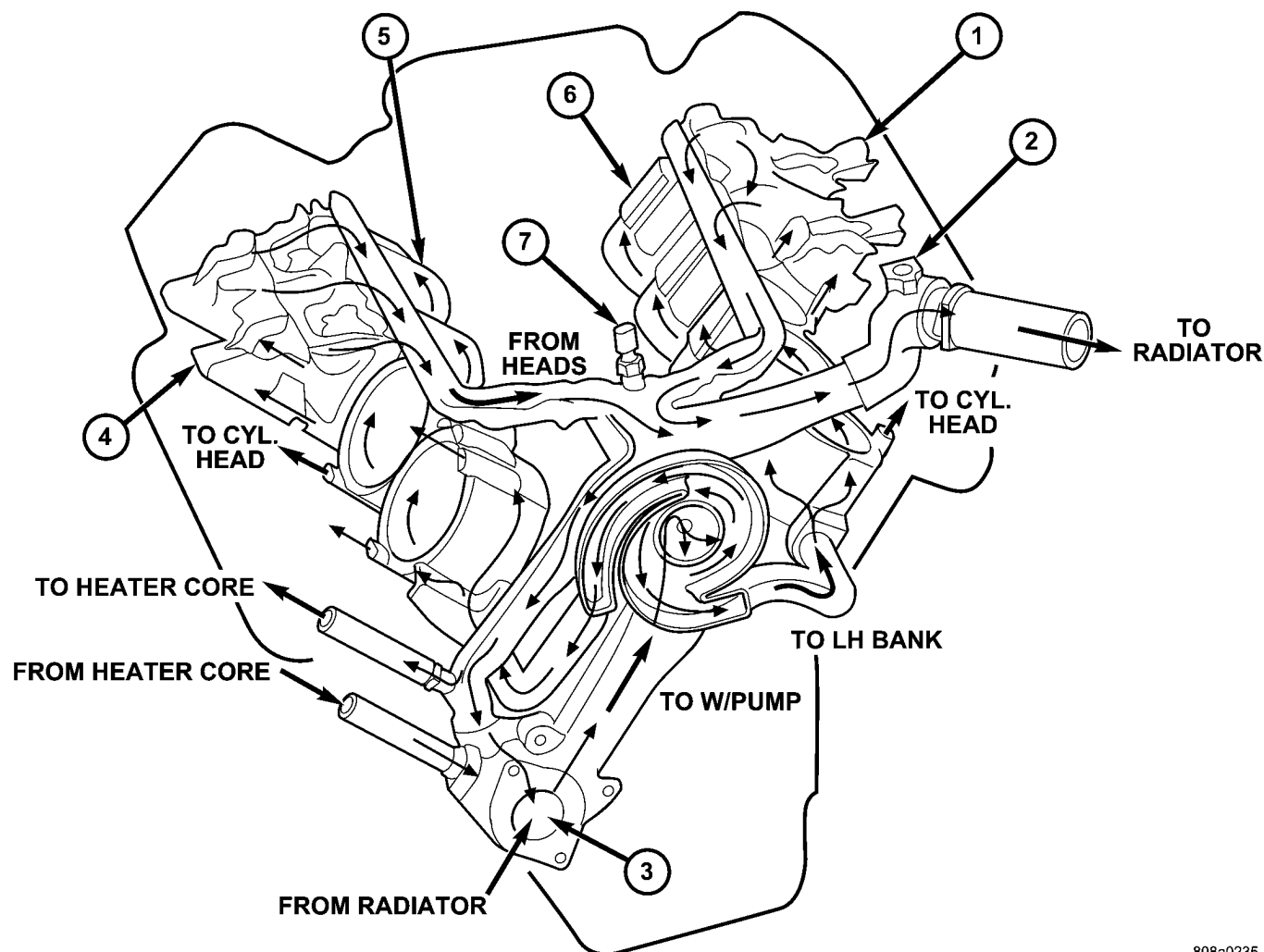
- Thermostat
- Coolant reserve/overflow system
- Transmission oil cooler (if equipped with an automatic transmission)
  - Coolant
  - Water pump
  - Hoses and hose clamps

#### DESCRIPTION - COOLING SYSTEM ROUTING - 4.7L ENGINE

For cooling system routing refer to (Fig. 1).



## COOLING (Continued)



808a0235

**Fig. 1 Engine Cooling System - 4.7L Engine**

1 - LH CYL. HEAD  
 2 - AIR BLEED  
 3 - THERMOSTAT LOCATION  
 4 - RH CYL. HEAD

5 - RH BANK CYL. BLOCK  
 6 - LH BANK CYL. BLOCK  
 7 - COOLANT TEMP. SENSOR

**DESCRIPTION - COOLING SYSTEM 4.0L ENGINE**

The cooling system consists of:

- A radiator
- Mechanical Cooling Fan
- Thermal viscous fan drive-Low disengaged
- Fan shroud (Fig. 2)
- Radiator pressure cap
- Thermostat
- Coolant reserve/overflow system
- Transmission oil cooler (if equipped with an automatic transmission)
  - Coolant
  - Water pump
  - Hoses and hose clamps
  - Accessory drive belt

**DESCRIPTION — COOLING SYSTEM ROUTING 4.0L ENGINE**

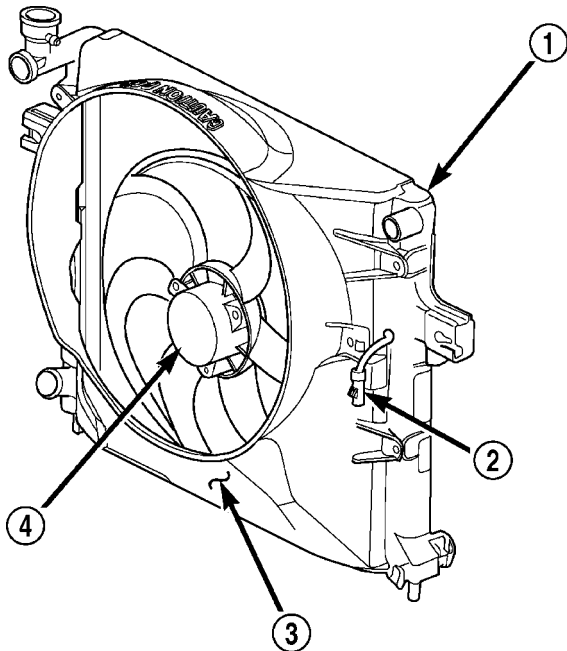
For cooling system routing refer to (Fig. 3).

**DESCRIPTION - HOSE CLAMPS**

The cooling system utilizes both worm drive and spring type hose clamps. If a spring type clamp replacement is necessary, replace with the original Mopar® equipment spring type clamp.

**CAUTION:** A number or letter is stamped into the tongue of constant tension clamps. If replacement is necessary, use only a original equipment clamp with matching number or letter (Fig. 4).

## COOLING (Continued)



80b8991e

**Fig. 2 Cooling Module with Electric Fan**

- 1 - RADIATOR
- 2 - ELECTRIC COOLING FAN CONNECTOR
- 3 - FAN SHROUD
- 4 - ELECTRIC COOLING FAN

## OPERATION

### OPERATION - COOLING SYSTEM

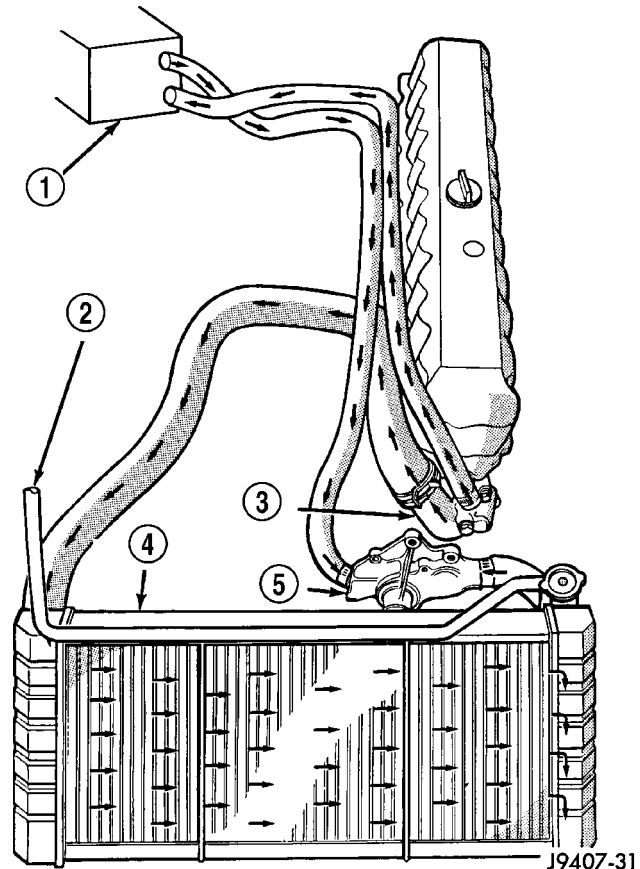
The cooling system regulates engine operating temperature. It allows the engine to reach normal operating temperature as quickly as possible. It also maintains normal operating temperature and prevents overheating.

The cooling system also provides a means of heating the passenger compartment and cooling the automatic transmission fluid (if equipped). The cooling system is pressurized and uses a centrifugal water pump to circulate coolant throughout the system.

### OPERATION - HOSE CLAMPS

The worm type hose clamp uses a specified torque value to maintain proper tension on a hose connection.

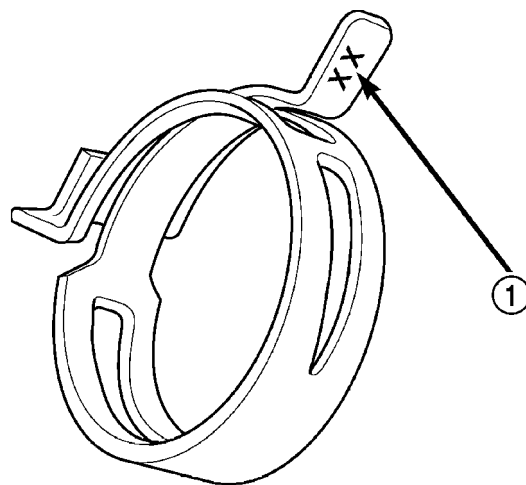
The spring type hose clamp applies constant tension on a hose connection. To remove a spring type hose clamp, only use constant tension clamp pliers designed to compress the hose clamp.



J9407-31

**Fig. 3 Engine Cooling System - 4.0L Engine - Typical**

- 1 - HEATER CORE
- 2 - TO COOLANT RESERVE/OVERFLOW TANK
- 3 - THERMOSTAT HOUSING
- 4 - RADIATOR
- 5 - WATER PUMP



80b76ee

**Fig. 4 Spring Clamp Size Location**

- 1 - SPRING CLAMP SIZE LOCATION

## COOLING (Continued)

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - ON-BOARD  
DIAGNOSTICS (OBD)

## COOLING SYSTEM RELATED DIAGNOSTICS

The powertrain control module (PCM) has been programmed to monitor certain cooling system components:

- If the engine has remained cool for too long a period, such as with a stuck open thermostat, a Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) can be set.
- If an open or shorted condition has developed in the relay circuit controlling the electric radiator fan or fan control solenoid circuit controlling the hydraulic fan, a Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) can be set.

If the problem is sensed in a monitored circuit often enough to indicated an actual problem, a DTC is stored. The DTC will be stored in the PCM memory for eventual display to the service technician. (Refer to 25 - EMISSIONS CONTROL - DESCRIPTION).

## ACCESSING DIAGNOSTIC TROUBLE CODES

To read DTC's and to obtain cooling system data, (Refer to 25 - EMISSIONS CONTROL - DESCRIPTION).

## ERASING TROUBLE CODES

After the problem has been repaired, use the DRB III® scan tool to erase a DTC. Refer to the appropriate Powertrain Diagnostic Procedures service information for operation of the DRB III® scan tool.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - PRELIMINARY  
CHECKS

## ENGINE COOLING SYSTEM OVERHEATING

Establish what driving conditions caused the complaint. Abnormal loads on the cooling system such as the following may be the cause:

- Prolonged idle
- Very high ambient temperature

- Slight tail wind at idle
- Slow traffic
- Traffic jams
- High speed
- Steep grades

Driving techniques that avoid overheating are:

- Idle with A/C off when temperature gauge is at end of normal range.
- Increase engine speed for more air flow is recommended.

## (1) TRAILER TOWING:

Consult Trailer Towing section of owners manual. Do not exceed limits.

(2) AIR CONDITIONING; ADD-ON OR AFTER  
MARKET:

A maximum cooling package should have been ordered with vehicle if add-on or after market A/C is installed. If not, maximum cooling system components should be installed for model involved per manufacturer's specifications.

## (3) RECENT SERVICE OR ACCIDENT REPAIR:

Determine if any recent service has been performed on vehicle that may effect cooling system. This may be:

- Engine adjustments (incorrect timing)
- Slipping engine accessory drive belt(s)
- Brakes (possibly dragging)
- Changed parts. Incorrect water pump, or pump rotating in wrong direction due to belt not correctly routed
- Reconditioned radiator or cooling system refilling (possibly under filled or air trapped in system).

**NOTE:** If investigation reveals none of the previous items as a cause for an engine overheating complaint, refer to following Cooling System Diagnosis charts.

These charts are to be used as a quick-reference only. Refer to the group text for information.

## COOLING (Continued)

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - COOLING SYSTEM DIAGNOSIS CHART

COOLING SYSTEM DIAGNOSIS CHART

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
TEMPERATURE GAUGE READS LOW	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Has a Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) been set indicating a stuck open thermostat?</li> <li>2. Is the temperature sending unit connected?</li> <li>3. Is the temperature gauge operating OK?</li> <li>4. Coolant level low in cold ambient temperatures accompanied with poor heater performance.</li> <li>5. Improper operation of internal heater doors or heater controls.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Refer to (Refer to 25 - EMISSIONS CONTROL - DESCRIPTION) for On-Board Diagnostics and DTC information. Replace thermostat if necessary.</li> <li>2. Check the temperature sensor connector. (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ENGINE/ENGINE COOLANT TEMP SENSOR - DESCRIPTION). Repair connector if necessary.</li> <li>3. Check gauge operation. Repair as necessary.</li> <li>4. Check coolant level in the coolant reserve/overflow tank and the radiator. Inspect system for leaks. Repair leaks as necessary.</li> <li>5. Inspect heater and repair as necessary. (Refer to 24 - HEATING &amp; AIR CONDITIONING - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING)</li> </ol>
TEMPERATURE GAUGE READS HIGH OR THE COOLANT LAMP ILLUMINATES. COOLANT MAY OR MAY NOT BE LOST OR LEAKING FROM THE COOLING SYSTEM	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Trailer is being towed, a steep hill is being climbed, vehicle is operated in slow moving traffic, or engine is being idled with very high ambient (outside) temperatures and the air conditioning is on. Higher altitudes could aggravate these conditions.</li> <li>2. Is the temperature gauge reading correctly?</li> <li>3. Is the temperature warning illuminating unnecessarily?</li> <li>4. Coolant low in coolant reserve/overflow tank and radiator?</li> <li>5. Pressure cap not installed tightly. If cap is loose, boiling point of coolant will be lowered. Also refer to the following Step 6.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. This may be a temporary condition and repair is not necessary. Turn off the air conditioning and attempt to drive the vehicle without any of the previous conditions. Observe the temperature gauge. The gauge should return to the normal range. If the gauge does not return to the normal range, determine the cause for overheating and repair.</li> <li>2. Check gauge. (Refer to Group 8J - INSTRUMENT CLUSTER). Repair as necessary.</li> <li>3. Check warning lamp operation. (Refer to Group 8J - INSTRUMENT CLUSTER). Repair as necessary.</li> <li>4. Check for coolant leaks and repair as necessary. (Refer to 7 - COOLING - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING).</li> <li>5. Tighten cap</li> </ol>

## COOLING (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
	6. Poor seals at the radiator cap.	6. (a) Check condition of cap and cap seals. (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ENGINE/RADIATOR PRESSURE CAP - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). (b) Check condition of radiator filler neck. If neck is bent or damaged, replace radiator.
	7. Coolant level low in radiator but not in coolant reserve/overflow tank. This means the radiator is not drawing coolant from the coolant reserve/overflow tank as the engine cools	7. (a) Check condition of radiator cap and cap seals. (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ENGINE/RADIATOR PRESSURE CAP - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). (b) Check condition of radiator filler neck. If neck is bent or damaged, replace radiator. (c) Check condition of the hose from the radiator to the coolant tank. It should fit tight at both ends without any kinks or tears. Replace hose if necessary. (d) Check coolant reserve/overflow tank and tanks hoses for blockage. Repair as necessary.
	8. Incorrect coolant concentration	8. Check coolant. (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ENGINE/COOLANT - DESCRIPTION) for correct coolant/water mixture ratio.
	9. Coolant not flowing through system	9. Check for coolant flow at radiator filler neck with some coolant removed, engine warm and thermostat open. Coolant should be observed flowing through radiator. If flow is not observed, determine area of obstruction and repair as necessary.
	10. Radiator or A/C condenser fins are dirty or clogged.	10. Remove insects and debris. (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ENGINE/RADIATOR - CLEANING).
	11. Radiator core is corroded or plugged.	11. Have radiator re-cored or replaced.
	12. Aftermarket A/C installed without proper radiator.	12. Install proper radiator.
	13. Fuel or ignition system problems.	13. Refer to FUEL and /or IGNITION CONTROL for diagnosis.
	14. Dragging brakes.	14. Check and correct as necessary. (Refer to 5 - BRAKES - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING) for correct procedures.
	15. Bug screen or cardboard is being used, reducing airflow.	15. Remove bug screen or cardboard.

## COOLING (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
	16. Thermostat partially or completely shut.	16. Check thermostat operation and replaces necessary. (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ENGINE/ENGINE COOLANT THERMOSTAT - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING).
	17. Viscous fan drive not operating properly.	17. Check fan drive operation and replace as necessary. (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ENGINE/FAN DRIVE VISCOUS CLUTCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING).
	18. Cylinder head gasket leaking.	18. Check for cylinder head gasket leaks. (Refer to 7 - COOLING - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). For repair, (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ CYLINDER HEAD - REMOVAL).
	19. Heater core leaking.	19. Check heater core for leaks. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING/ HEATER CORE - REMOVAL). Repair as necessary.
	20. Hydraulic fan speed too low or inoperative.	20. Check for DTC code. Check fan operation speeds. Refer to fan speed operation table. Low power steering pump output. Refer to power steering pump diagnosis - 4.7L engine.



## COOLING (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
TEMPERATURE GAUGE READING IS INCONSISTENT (FLUCTUATES, CYCLES OR IS ERRATIC)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. During cold weather operation, with the heater blower in the high position, the gauge reading may drop slightly.</li> <li>2. Temperature gauge or engine mounted gauge sensor defective or shorted. Also, corroded or loose wiring in this circuit.</li> <li>3. Gauge reading rises when vehicle is brought to a stop after heavy use (engine still running)</li> <li>4. Gauge reading high after re-starting a warmed up (hot) engine.</li> <li>5. Coolant level low in radiator (air will build up in the cooling system causing the thermostat to open late).</li> <li>6. Cylinder head gasket leaking allowing exhaust gas to enter cooling system causing a thermostat to open late.</li> <li>7. Water pump impeller loose on shaft.</li> <li>8. Loose accessory drive belt. (water pump slipping)</li> <li>9. Air leak on the suction side of the water pump allows air to build up in cooling system causing thermostat to open late.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. A normal condition. No correction is necessary.</li> <li>2. Check operation of gauge and repair if necessary. Refer to Group 8J, Instrument cluster.</li> <li>3. A normal condition. No correction is necessary. Gauge should return to normal range after vehicle is driven.</li> <li>4. A normal condition. No correction is necessary. The gauge should return to normal range after a few minutes of engine operation.</li> <li>5. Check and correct coolant leaks. (Refer to 7 - COOLING - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING).</li> <li>6. (a) Check for cylinder head gasket leaks. (Refer to 7 - COOLING - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). (b) Check for coolant in the engine oil. Inspect for white steam emitting from the exhaust system. Repair as necessary.</li> <li>7. Check water pump and replace as necessary. (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ENGINE/WATER PUMP - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING).</li> <li>8. (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). Check and correct as necessary.</li> <li>9. Locate leak and repair as necessary.</li> </ol>
PRESSURE CAP IS BLOWING OFF STEAM AND/OR COOLANT TO COOLANT TANK. TEMPERATURE GAUGE READING MAY BE ABOVE NORMAL BUT NOT HIGH. COOLANT LEVEL MAY BE HIGH IN COOLANT RESERVE/OVERFLOW TANK	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Pressure relief valve in radiator cap is defective.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check condition of radiator cap and cap seals. (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ENGINE/RADIATOR PRESSURE CAP - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). Replace cap as necessary.</li> </ol>

## COOLING (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
COOLANT LOSS TO THE GROUND WITHOUT PRESSURE CAP BLOWOFF. GAUGE READING HIGH OR HOT	1. Coolant leaks in radiator, cooling system hoses, water pump or engine.	1. Pressure test and repair as necessary. (Refer to 7 - COOLING - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING).
DETONATION OR PRE-IGNITION (NOT CAUSED BY IGNITION SYSTEM). GAUGE MAY OR MAY NOT BE READING HIGH	1. Engine overheating.  2. Freeze point of coolant not correct. Mixture is too rich or too lean.	1. Check reason for overheating and repair as necessary.  2. Check coolant concentration. (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ENGINE/COOLANT - DESCRIPTION) and adjust ratio as required.
HOSE OR HOSES COLLAPSE WHILE ENGINE IS RUNNING	1. Vacuum created in cooling system on engine cool-down is not being relieved through coolant reserve/overflow system.	1. (a) Radiator cap relief valve stuck. (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ENGINE/RADIATOR PRESSURE CAP - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). Replace if necessary  (b) Hose between coolant reserve/overflow tank and radiator is kinked. Repair as necessary.  (c) Vent at coolant reserve/overflow tank is plugged. Clean vent and repair as necessary.  (d) Reserve/overflow tank is internally blocked or plugged. Check for blockage and repair as necessary.
NOISY VISCOUS FAN/DRIVE	1. Fan blades loose - 4.0L.  2. Fan blades striking a surrounding object.  3. Air obstructions at radiator or air conditioning condenser.  4. Thermal viscous fan drive has defective bearing - 4.0L	1. Replace fan blade assembly. (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ENGINE/RADIATOR FAN - REMOVAL)  2. Locate point of fan blade contact and repair as necessary.  3. Remove obstructions and/or clean debris or insects from radiator or A/C condenser.  4. Replace fan drive. Bearing is not serviceable. (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ENGINE/RADIATOR FAN - REMOVAL).

## COOLING (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
INADEQUATE HEATER PERFORMANCE.	<p>1. Thermostat failed in open position</p> <p>2. Has a Diagnostic trouble Code (DTC) been set?</p> <p>3. Coolant level low</p> <p>4. Obstructions in heater hose/ fittings</p> <p>5. Heater hose kinked</p> <p>6. Water pump is not pumping water to/through the heater core. When the engine is fully warmed up, both heater hoses should be hot to the touch. If only one of the hoses is hot, the water pump may not be operating correctly or the heater core may be plugged. Accessory drive belt may be slipping causing poor water pump operation.</p>	<p>1. Check thermostat operation and replaces necessary (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ENGINE/ENGINE COOLANT THERMOSTAT - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING)</p> <p>2. (Refer to 25 - EMISSIONS CONTROL - DESCRIPTION) for correct procedures and replace thermostat if necessary</p> <p>3. (Refer to 7 - COOLING - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING).</p> <p>4. Remove heater hoses at both ends and check for obstructions</p> <p>5. Locate kinked area and repair as necessary</p> <p>6. (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ENGINE/ WATER PUMP - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). If a slipping belt is detected, (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - REMOVAL). If heater core obstruction is detected, (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE) for cooling system reverse flushing.</p>
STEAM IS COMING FROM THE FRONT OF VEHICLE NEAR THE GRILL AREA WHEN WEATHER IS WET, ENGINE IS WARMED UP AND RUNNING, AND VEHICLE IS STATIONARY. TEMPERATURE GAUGE IS IN NORMAL RANGE	<p>1. During wet weather, moisture (snow, ice or rain condensation) on the radiator will evaporate when the thermostat opens. This opening allows heated water into the radiator. When the moisture contacts the hot radiator, steam may be emitted. This usually occurs in cold weather with no fan or airflow to blow it away.</p>	<p>1. Occasional steam emitting from this area is normal. No repair is necessary.</p>
COOLANT COLOR	<p>1. Coolant color is not necessarily an indication of adequate corrosion or temperature protection. Do not rely on coolant color for determining condition of coolant.</p>	<p>1. (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ENGINE/ COOLANT - DESCRIPTION) for coolant concentration information. Adjust coolant mixture as necessary.</p>
COOLANT LEVEL CHANGES IN COOLANT RESERVE/OVERFLOW TANK. TEMPERATURE GAUGE IS IN NORMAL RANGE	<p>1. Level changes are to be expected as coolant volume fluctuates with engine temperature. If the level in the tank was between the FULL and ADD marks at normal operating temperature, the level should return to within that range after operation at elevated temperatures.</p>	<p>1. A normal condition. No repair is necessary.</p>

## COOLING (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
FAN RUNS ALL THE TIME	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Fan control sensors inoperative.</li> <li>2. Fan control solenoid stuck "on".</li> <li>3. Fan control solenoid harness damaged.</li> <li>4. Transmission temperature too high.</li> <li>5. Engine coolant temperature too high.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check for DTC's. Verify sensor readings.</li> <li>2. Check fan operation speeds. Refer to fan speed operation table.</li> <li>3. Check for DTC 1499. Repair as required.</li> <li>4. Check for transmission over temp. DTC.</li> <li>5. (a) Check coolant level. Correct level as required. (b) Thermostat stuck. Replace thermostat. (c) Water pump failed. Replace water pump. (d) Coolant flow restricted. Clean radiator. (e) Air flow over radiator obstructed. Remove obstruction.</li> </ol>

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - COOLING SYSTEM LEAKS

### ULTRAVIOLET LIGHT METHOD

A leak detection additive is available through the parts department that can be added to cooling system. The additive is highly visible under ultraviolet light (black light). Pour one ounce of additive into cooling system. Place heater control unit in HEAT position. Start and operate engine until radiator upper hose is warm to touch. Aim the commercially available black light tool at components to be checked. If leaks are present, black light will cause additive to glow a bright green color.

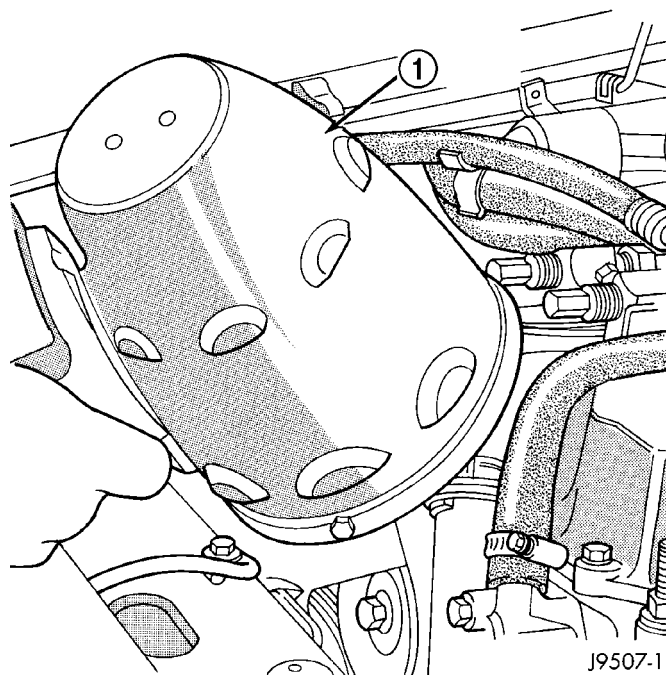
The black light can be used in conjunction with a pressure tester to determine if any external leaks exist (Fig. 5).

### PRESSURE TESTER METHOD

The engine should be at normal operating temperature. Recheck the system cold if cause of coolant loss is not located during the warm engine examination.

**WARNING: HOT, PRESSURIZED COOLANT CAN CAUSE INJURY BY SCALDING.**

Carefully remove radiator pressure cap from filler neck and check coolant level. Push down on cap to disengage it from stop tabs. Wipe inside of filler neck and examine lower inside sealing seat for nicks, cracks, paint, dirt and solder residue. Inspect radia-



**Fig. 5 Leak Detection Using Black Light - Typical**

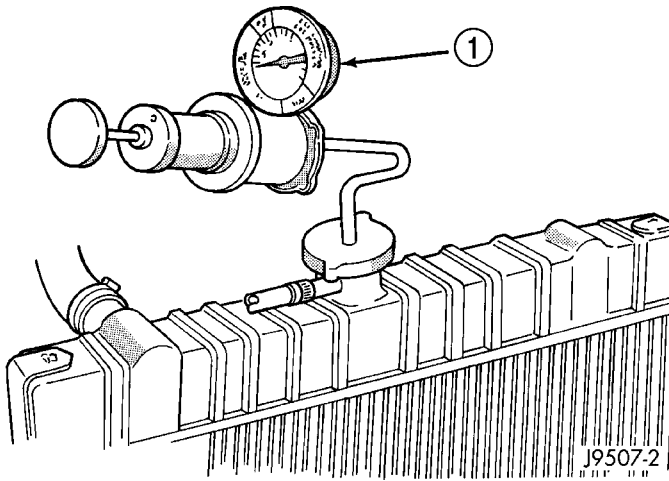
1 - TYPICAL BLACK LIGHT TOOL

tor-to- reserve/overflow tank hose for internal obstructions. Insert a wire through the hose to be sure it is not obstructed.

Inspect cams on outside of filler neck. If cams are damaged, seating of pressure cap valve and tester seal will be affected.

## COOLING (Continued)

Attach pressure tester (7700 or an equivalent) to radiator filler neck (Fig. 6).



**Fig. 6 Pressure Testing Cooling System — Typical**

1 - TYPICAL COOLING SYSTEM PRESSURE TESTER

Operate tester pump to apply 103.4 kPa (15 psi) pressure to system. If hoses enlarge excessively or bulges while testing, replace as necessary. Observe gauge pointer and determine condition of cooling system according to following criteria:

**Holds Steady:** If pointer remains steady for two minutes, serious coolant leaks are not present in system. However, there could be an internal leak that does not appear with normal system test pressure. If it is certain that coolant is being lost and leaks cannot be detected, inspect for interior leakage or perform Internal Leakage Test.

**Drops Slowly:** Indicates a small leak or seepage is occurring. Examine all connections for seepage or slight leakage with a flashlight. Inspect radiator, hoses, gasket edges and heater. Seal small leak holes with a Sealer Lubricant (or equivalent). Repair leak holes and inspect system again with pressure applied.

**Drops Quickly:** Indicates that serious leakage is occurring. Examine system for external leakage. If leaks are not visible, inspect for internal leakage. Large radiator leak holes should be repaired by a reputable radiator repair shop.

### INTERNAL LEAKAGE INSPECTION

Remove engine oil pan drain plug and drain a small amount of engine oil. If coolant is present in the pan, it will drain first because it is heavier than oil. An alternative method is to operate engine for a short period to churn the oil. After this is done, remove engine dipstick and inspect for water globules. Also inspect transmission dipstick for water globules and transmission fluid cooler for leakage.

**WARNING: WITH RADIATOR PRESSURE TESTER TOOL INSTALLED ON RADIATOR, DO NOT ALLOW PRESSURE TO EXCEED 110 KPA (20 PSI). PRESSURE WILL BUILD UP QUICKLY IF A COMBUSTION LEAK IS PRESENT. TO RELEASE PRESSURE, ROCK TESTER FROM SIDE TO SIDE. WHEN REMOVING TESTER, DO NOT TURN TESTER MORE THAN 1/2 TURN IF SYSTEM IS UNDER PRESSURE.**

Operate engine without pressure cap on radiator until thermostat opens. Attach a Pressure Tester to filler neck. If pressure builds up quickly it indicates a combustion leak exists. This is usually the result of a cylinder head gasket leak or crack in engine. Repair as necessary.

If there is not an immediate pressure increase, pump the Pressure Tester. Do this until indicated pressure is within system range of 110 kPa (16 psi). Fluctuation of gauge pointer indicates compression or combustion leakage into cooling system.

Because the vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter, **do not** remove spark plug cables or short out cylinders to isolate compression leak.

If the needle on dial of pressure tester does not fluctuate, race engine a few times to check for an abnormal amount of coolant or steam. This would be emitting from exhaust pipe. Coolant or steam from exhaust pipe may indicate a faulty cylinder head gasket, cracked engine cylinder block or cylinder head.

A convenient check for exhaust gas leakage into cooling system is provided by a commercially available Block Leak Check tool. Follow manufacturers instructions when using this product.

### COMBUSTION LEAKAGE TEST - WITHOUT PRESSURE TESTER

DO NOT WASTE reusable coolant. If solution is clean, drain coolant into a clean container for reuse.

**WARNING: DO NOT REMOVE CYLINDER BLOCK DRAIN PLUGS OR LOOSEN RADIATOR DRAIN- COCK WITH SYSTEM HOT AND UNDER PRESSURE. SERIOUS BURNS FROM COOLANT CAN OCCUR.**

Drain sufficient coolant to allow thermostat removal. (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ENGINE/ENGINE COOLANT THERMOSTAT - REMOVAL). Remove accessory drive belt (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - REMOVAL).

Add coolant to radiator to bring level to within 6.3 mm (1/4 in) of top of thermostat housing.

**CAUTION: Avoid overheating. Do not operate engine for an excessive period of time. Open drain-cock immediately after test to eliminate boil over.**



## COOLING (Continued)

Start engine and accelerate rapidly three times, to approximately 3000 rpm while observing coolant. If internal engine combustion gases are leaking into cooling system, bubbles will appear in coolant. If bubbles do not appear, internal combustion gas leakage is not present.

**DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - COOLING SYSTEM DEAIRATION**

As the engine operates, any air trapped in cooling system gathers under the radiator cap. The next time the engine is operated, thermal expansion of coolant will push any trapped air past radiator cap into the coolant reserve/overflow tank. Here it escapes to the atmosphere into the tank. When the engine cools down the coolant, it will be drawn from the reserve/overflow tank into the radiator to replace any removed air.

**STANDARD PROCEDURE****STANDARD PROCEDURE - DRAINING COOLING SYSTEM - 4.7L ENGINE**

**WARNING: DO NOT REMOVE THE CYLINDER BLOCK DRAIN PLUGS (Fig. 7) OR LOOSEN THE RADIATOR DRAINCOCK WITH SYSTEM HOT AND UNDER PRESSURE. SERIOUS BURNS FROM COOLANT CAN OCCUR.**

(1) DO NOT remove radiator cap first. With engine cold, raise vehicle on a hoist and locate radiator draincock.

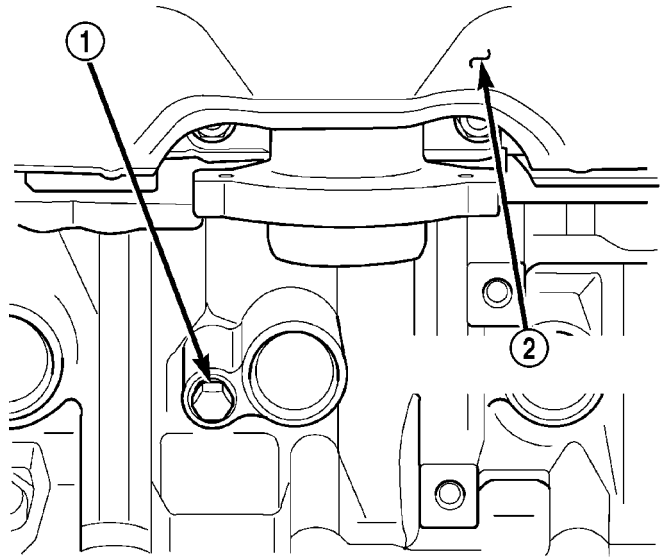
**NOTE:** Radiator draincock is located on the left/lower side of radiator facing to rear of vehicle.

(2) Attach one end of a hose to the draincock. Put the other end into a clean container. Open draincock and drain coolant from radiator. This will empty the coolant reserve/overflow tank. The coolant does not have to be removed from the tank unless the system is being refilled with a fresh mixture. When tank is empty, remove radiator cap and continue draining cooling system.

**STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFILLING COOLING SYSTEM 4.7L ENGINE**

(1) Tighten the radiator draincock and the cylinder block drain plug(s) (if removed).

**CAUTION:** Failure to purge air from the cooling system can result in an overheating condition and severe engine damage.

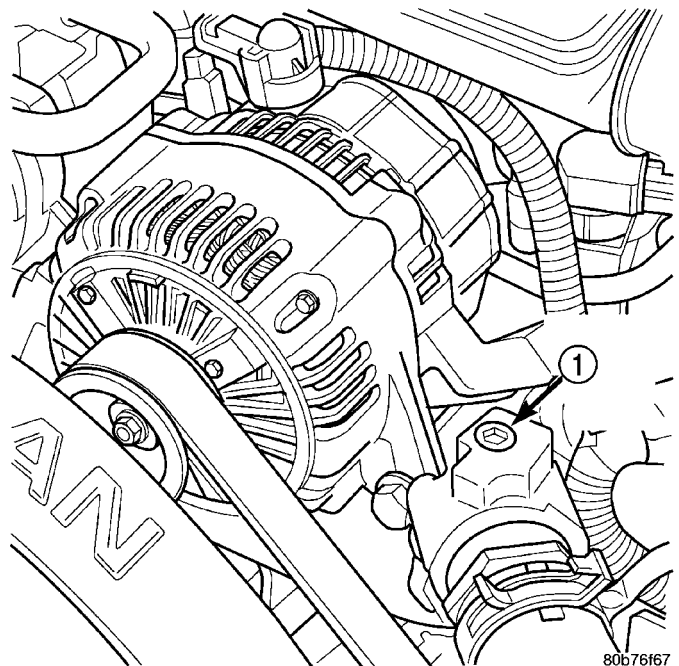


80b8990c

**Fig. 7 Drain Plug - 4.7L Engine**

- 1 - CYLINDER BLOCK DRAIN PLUG  
2 - EXHAUST MANIFOLD AND HEAT SHIELD

(2) Remove the cooling system bleed plug from the radiator upper hose inlet housing. (Fig. 8) Fill system using a 50/50 mixture of ethylene-glycol antifreeze and low mineral content water, until coolant begins coming out of the cooling system bleed hole. Install the cooling system bleed plug. Fill radiator to top and install radiator cap. Add sufficient coolant to the reserve/overflow tank to raise level to FULL mark.



80b76167

**Fig. 8 Cooling System Bleed Plug - 4.7L**

- 1 - COOLING SYSTEM BLEED PLUG



## COOLING (Continued)

(3) With heater control unit in the HEAT position, operate engine with radiator cap in place.

(4) After engine has reached normal operating temperature, shut engine off and allow it to cool. When engine is cooling down, coolant will be drawn into the radiator from the reserve/overflow tank.

(5) Add coolant to reserve/overflow tank as necessary. **Only add coolant to the reserve/overflow tank when the engine is cold. Coolant level in a warm engine will be higher due to thermal expansion.** To purge the cooling system of all air, this heat up/cool down cycle (adding coolant to cold engine) must be performed three times. Add necessary coolant to raise tank level to the FULL mark after each cool down period.

### STANDARD PROCEDURE - DRAINING COOLING SYSTEM - 4.0L ENGINE

**WARNING: DO NOT REMOVE THE CYLINDER BLOCK DRAIN PLUGS OR LOOSEN THE RADIATOR DRAINCOCK WITH SYSTEM HOT AND UNDER PRESSURE. SERIOUS BURNS FROM COOLANT CAN OCCUR.**

(1) DO NOT remove radiator cap first. With engine cold, raise vehicle on a hoist and locate radiator draincock.

**NOTE:** Radiator draincock is located on the right/lower side of radiator facing to rear of vehicle.

(2) Attach one end of a hose to the draincock. Put the other end into a clean container. Open draincock and drain coolant from radiator. This will empty the coolant reserve/overflow tank. The coolant does not have to be removed from the tank unless the system is being refilled with a fresh mixture. When tank is empty, remove radiator cap and continue draining cooling system.

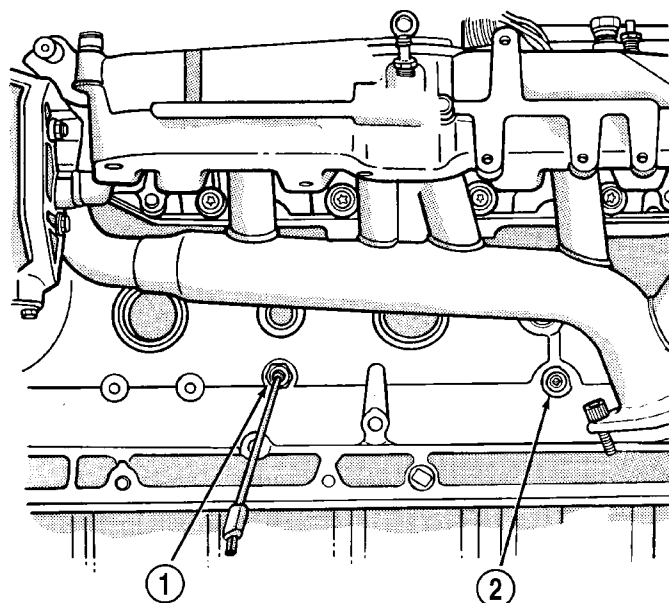
To drain the engine of coolant, remove the cylinder block drain plug located on the side of cylinder block (Fig. 9).

### STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFILLING COOLING SYSTEM - 4.0L ENGINE

(1) Tighten the radiator draincock and the cylinder block drain plug(s) (if removed).

(2) Fill system using a 50/50 mixture of ethylene-glycol antifreeze and low mineral content water. Fill radiator to top and install radiator cap. Add sufficient coolant to the reserve/overflow tank to raise level to FULL mark.

(3) With heater control unit in the HEAT position, operate engine with radiator cap in place.



J9107-65

**Fig. 9 Drain Plug – 4.0L Engine**

- 1 - COOLANT TEMPERATURE SENSOR  
2 - BLOCK DRAIN PLUG

(4) After engine has reached normal operating temperature, shut engine off and allow it to cool. When engine is cooling down, coolant will be drawn into the radiator from the reserve/overflow tank.

(5) Add coolant to reserve/overflow tank as necessary. **Only add coolant to the reserve/overflow tank when the engine is cold. Coolant level in a warm engine will be higher due to thermal expansion.** To purge the cooling system of all air, this heat up/cool down cycle (adding coolant to cold engine) must be performed three times. Add necessary coolant to raise tank level to the FULL mark after each cool down period.

### STANDARD PROCEDURE - ADDING ADDITIONAL COOLANT

The use of aluminum cylinder blocks, cylinder heads and water pumps requires special corrosion protection. Only Mopar® Antifreeze/Coolant, 5 Year/100,000 Mile Formula (glycol base coolant with corrosion inhibitors called HOAT, for Hybrid Organic Additive Technology) is recommended. This coolant offers the best engine cooling without corrosion when mixed with 50% distilled water to obtain a freeze point of -37°C (-35°F). If it loses color or becomes contaminated, drain, flush, and replace with fresh properly mixed coolant solution.

**CAUTION:** Do not use coolant additives that are claimed to improve engine cooling.

## COOLING (Continued)

**STANDARD PROCEDURE - COOLING SYSTEM - REVERSE FLUSHING**

**CAUTION:** The cooling system normally operates at 97-124 kPa (14-18 psi) pressure. Exceeding this pressure may damage the radiator or hoses.

Reverse flushing of the cooling system is the forcing of water through the cooling system. This is done using air pressure in the opposite direction of normal coolant flow. It is usually only necessary with very dirty systems with evidence of partial plugging.

**CHEMICAL CLEANING**

If visual inspection indicates the formation of sludge or scaly deposits, use a radiator cleaner (Mopar Radiator Kleen or equivalent) before flushing. This will soften scale and other deposits and aid the flushing operation.

**CAUTION:** Be sure instructions on the container are followed.

**REVERSE FLUSHING RADIATOR**

Disconnect the radiator hoses from the radiator fittings. Attach a section of radiator hose to the radiator bottom outlet fitting and insert the flushing gun. Connect a water supply hose and air supply hose to the flushing gun.

**CAUTION:** The cooling system normally operates at 97-124 kPa (14-18 psi) pressure. Exceeding this pressure may damage the radiator or hoses.

Allow the radiator to fill with water. When radiator is filled, apply air in short blasts allowing radiator to refill between blasts. Continue this reverse flushing until clean water flows out through rear of radiator cooling tube passages. For more information, refer to operating instructions supplied with flushing equipment. Have radiator cleaned more extensively by a radiator repair shop.

**REVERSE FLUSHING ENGINE**

Drain the cooling system (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE). Remove the thermostat housing and thermostat. Install the thermostat housing. Disconnect the radiator upper hose from the radiator and attach the flushing gun to the hose. Disconnect the radiator lower hose from the water pump. Attach a lead away hose to the water pump inlet fitting.

**CAUTION:** Be sure that the heater control valve is closed (heat off). This is done to prevent coolant

flow with scale and other deposits from entering the heater core.

Connect the water supply hose and air supply hose to the flushing gun. Allow the engine to fill with water. When the engine is filled, apply air in short blasts, allowing the system to fill between air blasts. Continue until clean water flows through the lead away hose. For more information, refer to operating instructions supplied with flushing equipment.

Remove the lead away hose, flushing gun, water supply hose and air supply hose. Remove the thermostat housing (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ENGINE/ENGINE COOLANT THERMOSTAT - REMOVAL). Install the thermostat and housing with a replacement gasket (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ENGINE/ENGINE COOLANT THERMOSTAT - INSTALLATION). Connect the radiator hoses. Refill the cooling system with the correct antifreeze/water mixture (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

**SPECIFICATIONS****TORQUE**

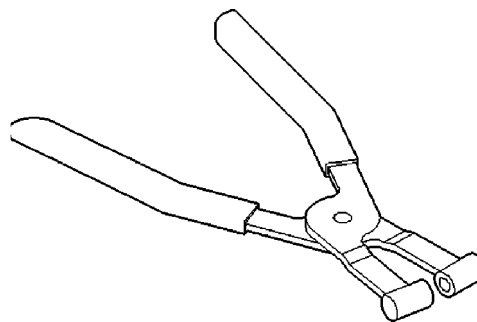
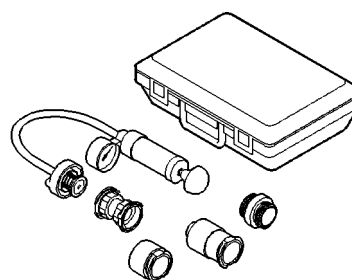
DESCRIPTION	N-m	Ft. Lbs.	In. Lbs.
Automatic Belt Tensioner to Mounting Bracket Bolt			
4.0L	28	—	250
4.7L	41	30	—
Automatic Belt Tensioner Pulley Bolt			
(4.7L)	61	45	—
Block Heater Bolt			
4.0L	4	—	32
4.7L	2	—	17
Fan Blade Assembly to Viscous Drive Bolts			
4.0L	23	—	200
Generator Mounting Bolts 4.0L	57	42	—
Radiator Upper Isolator to Crossmember Nuts	3	—	20
Radiator Upper Isolator to Radiator Nuts	4	—	36
Radiator Brace Bolts	10	—	90
Thermostat Housing Bolts			
4.0L	22	16	—

## COOLING (Continued)

DESCRIPTION	N·m	Ft. Lbs.	In. Lbs.
4.7L	13	—	115
Upper Radiator Crossmember to Body Bolts	10	—	90
Water Pump Bolts			
4.0L	23	17	—
4.7L	58	43	—
Water Pump Pulley to Water Pump Bolts			
4.0L	28	—	250
High Pressure Inlet Hose to Hydraulic Fan Drive (1/2 inch Fitting)	49	36	—
High Pressure Outlet Hose to Steering Gear (3/8 inch Fitting)	29	21.5	—
Fan Shroud to Radiator Mounting Bolts	6	—	50

## SPECIAL TOOLS

## COOLING

**Pliers 6094****Pressure Tester 7700-A**

## ACCESSORY DRIVE

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page	page
<b>BELT TENSIONERS</b>		
REMOVAL		REMOVAL
REMOVAL - 4.7L ENGINE ..... 17		REMOVAL - 4.0L ENGINE ..... 20
REMOVAL - 4.0L ENGINE ..... 17		REMOVAL - 4.7L ENGINE ..... 20
INSTALLATION		INSTALLATION
INSTALLATION - 4.7L ENGINE ..... 18		INSTALLATION - 4.0L ENGINE ..... 21
INSTALLATION - 4.0L ENGINE ..... 18		INSTALLATION - 4.7L ENGINE ..... 21
<b>DRIVE BELTS</b>		
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - SERPENTINE		
DRIVE BELT ..... 18		

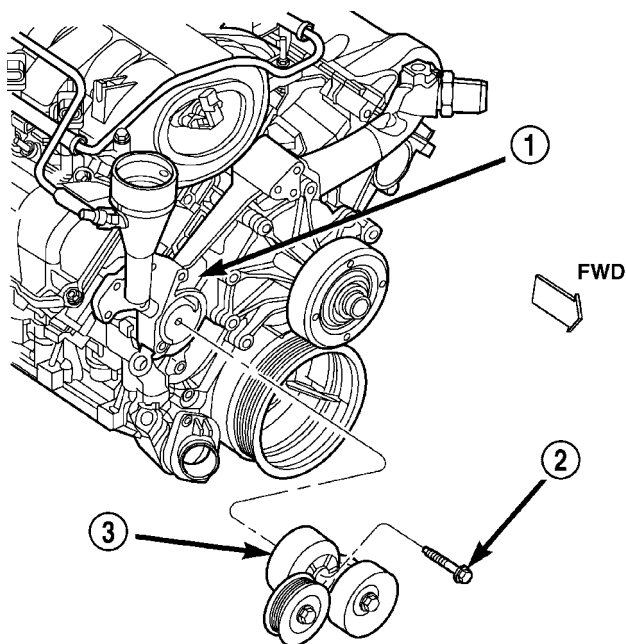
## BELT TENSIONERS

## REMOVAL

## REMOVAL - 4.7L ENGINE

(1) Remove accessory drive belt (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - REMOVAL).

(2) Remove tensioner assembly from engine front cover (Fig. 1).



80b898fb

**Fig. 1 Automatic Belt Tensioner**

- 1 - TIMING CHAIN COVER  
 2 - BOLT TORQUE TO 41 N·m (30 FT LBS)  
 3 - AUTOMATIC BELT TENSIONER

**WARNING: BECAUSE OF HIGH SPRING TENSION, DO NOT ATTEMPT TO DISASSEMBLE AUTOMATIC TENSIONER. UNIT IS SERVICED AS AN ASSEMBLY (EXCEPT FOR PULLEY ON TENSIONER).**

(3) Remove pulley bolt. Remove pulley from tensioner.

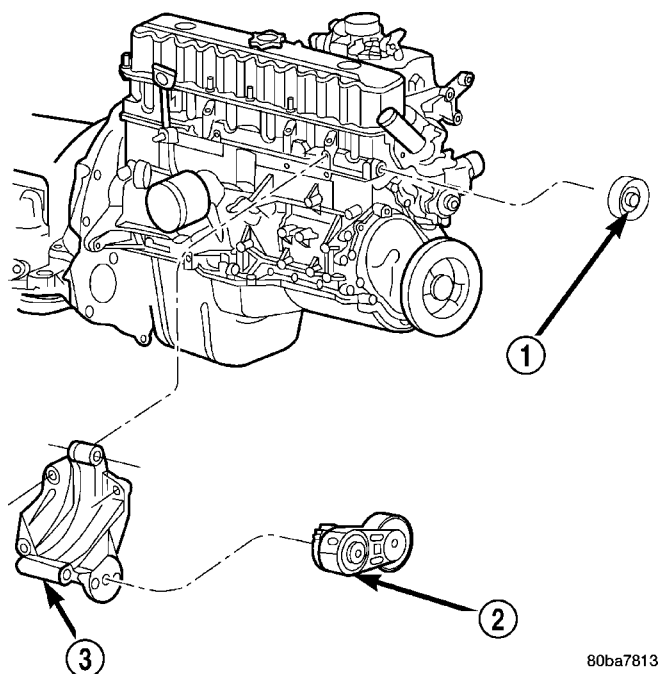
## REMOVAL - 4.0L ENGINE

(1) Remove accessory drive belt (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - REMOVAL).

(2) Remove tensioner assembly from mounting bracket (Fig. 2).

**WARNING: BECAUSE OF HIGH SPRING TENSION, DO NOT ATTEMPT TO DISASSEMBLE AUTOMATIC TENSIONER. UNIT IS SERVICED AS AN ASSEMBLY.**

## BELT TENSIONERS (Continued)



80ba7813

**Fig. 2 Automatic Belt Tensioner**

- 1 - IDLER PULLEY TIGHTEN TO 47 N·m (35 FT. LBS.)  
 2 - AUTOMATIC BELT TENSIONER  
 3 - GENERATOR MOUNTING BRACKET

## INSTALLATION

**INSTALLATION - 4.7L ENGINE**

(1) Install pulley and pulley bolt to tensioner. Tighten bolt to 61 N·m (45 ft. lbs.) torque.

(2) An indexing slot is located on back of tensioner. Align this slot to the head of the bolt on the front cover. Install the mounting bolt. Tighten bolt to 41 N·m (30 ft. lbs.).

(3) Install drive belt (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - INSTALLATION).

(4) Check belt indexing marks (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - INSTALLATION).

**INSTALLATION - 4.0L ENGINE**

(1) Install tensioner assembly to mounting bracket, align the two dowels on the tensioner with the mounting bracket and hand start the bolt. Tighten bolt to 28 N·m (250 in. lbs.).

**CAUTION:** To prevent damage to coil case, coil mounting bolts must be torqued.

(2) Install drive belt. (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - INSTALLATION).

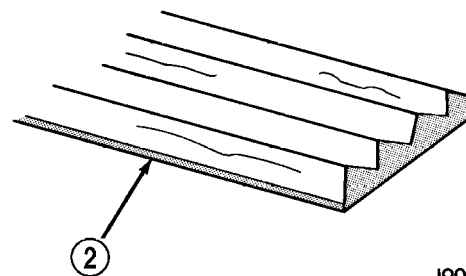
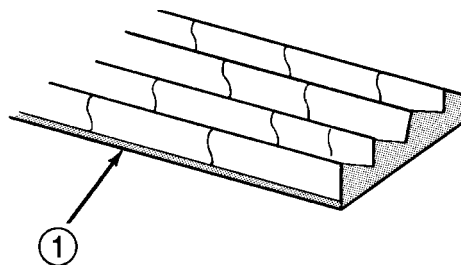
(3) Check belt indexing marks (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - INSTALLATION).

## DRIVE BELTS

**DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - SERPENTINE DRIVE BELT**

When diagnosing serpentine drive belts, small cracks that run across ribbed surface of belt from rib to rib (Fig. 3), are considered normal. These are not a reason to replace belt. However, cracks running along a rib (not across) are **not** normal. Any belt with cracks running along a rib must be replaced (Fig. 3). Also replace belt if it has excessive wear, frayed cords or severe glazing.

Refer to SERPENTINE DRIVE BELT DIAGNOSIS CHART for further belt diagnosis.



J9007-44

**Fig. 3 Serpentine Accessory Drive Belt Wear Patterns**

- 1 - NORMAL CRACKS BELT OK  
 2 - NOT NORMAL CRACKS REPLACE BELT

## DRIVE BELTS (Continued)

## SERPENTINE DRIVE BELT DIAGNOSIS CHART

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
RIB CHUNKING (ONE OR MORE RIBS HAS SEPARATED FROM BELT BODY)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Foreign objects imbedded in pulley grooves.</li> <li>2. Installation damage.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Remove foreign objects from pulley grooves. Replace belt.</li> <li>2. Replace belt.</li> </ol>
RIB OR BELT WEAR	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Pulley(s) misaligned.</li> <li>2. Abrasive environment.</li> <li>3. Rusted pulley(s).</li> <li>4. Sharp or jagged pulley groove tips.</li> <li>5. Rubber deteriorated.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Align pulley(s).</li> <li>2. Clean pulley(s). Replace belt if necessary.</li> <li>3. Clean rust from pulley(s).</li> <li>4. Replace pulley.</li> <li>5. Replace belt.</li> </ol>
LONGITUDINAL BELT CRACKING (CRACKS BETWEEN TWO RIBS)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Belt has mistracked from pulley groove.</li> <li>2. Pulley groove tip has worn away rubber to tensile member.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Replace belt.</li> <li>2. Replace belt.</li> </ol>
BELT SLIPS	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Belt slipping because of insufficient tension.</li> <li>2. Belt routed incorrectly</li> <li>3. Incorrect belt.</li> <li>4. Belt or pulley subjected to substance (belt dressing, oil ethylene glycol) that has reduced friction.</li> <li>5. Driven component bearing failure.</li> <li>6. Belt glazed and hardened from heat and excessive slippage.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Replace automatic belt tensioner.</li> <li>2. Verify belt routing.</li> <li>3. Replace belt.</li> <li>4. Replace belt and clean pulleys.</li> <li>5. Replace faulty component bearing.</li> <li>6. Replace belt.</li> </ol>
"GROOVE JUMPING" (BELT DOES NOT MAINTAIN CORRECT POSITION ON PULLEY)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Belt tension either too high or too low.</li> <li>2. Belt routed incorrectly.</li> <li>3. Incorrect belt.</li> <li>4. Pulley(s) not within design tolerance.</li> <li>5. Foreign object(s) in grooves.</li> <li>6. Pulley misalignment.</li> <li>7. Belt cord line is broken.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Replace automatic belt tensioner.</li> <li>2. Verify belt routing.</li> <li>3. Replace belt.</li> <li>4. Replace pulley(s).</li> <li>5. Remove foreign objects from grooves.</li> <li>6. Check and replace.</li> <li>7. Replace belt.</li> </ol>



## DRIVE BELTS (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
BELT BROKEN (NOTE: IDENTIFY AND CORRECT PROBLEM BEFORE NEW BELT IS INSTALLED)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Excessive tension.</li> <li>Incorrect belt.</li> <li>Tensile member damaged during belt installation.</li> <li>Severe misalignment.</li> <li>Bracket, pulley, or bearing failure.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Replace belt and automatic belt tensioner.</li> <li>Replace belt.</li> <li>Replace belt.</li> <li>Check and replace.</li> <li>Replace defective component and belt.</li> </ol>
NOISE (OBJECTIONABLE SQUEAL, SQUEAK, OR RUMBLE IS HEARD OR FELT WHILE DRIVE BELT IS IN OPERATION)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Belt slippage.</li> <li>Bearing noise.</li> <li>Belt misalignment.</li> <li>Belt-to-pulley mismatch.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Replace belt or automatic belt tensioner.</li> <li>Locate and repair.</li> <li>Replace belt.</li> <li>Install correct belt.</li> </ol>

## REMOVAL

## REMOVAL - 4.0L ENGINE

**NOTE:** The belt routing schematics are published from the latest information available at the time of publication. If anything differs between these schematics and the Belt Routing Label, use the schematics on Belt Routing Label. This label is located in the engine compartment.

**CAUTION:** DO NOT LET TENSIONER ARM SNAP BACK TO THE FREEARM POSITION, SEVERE DAMAGE MAY OCCUR TO THE TENSIONER.

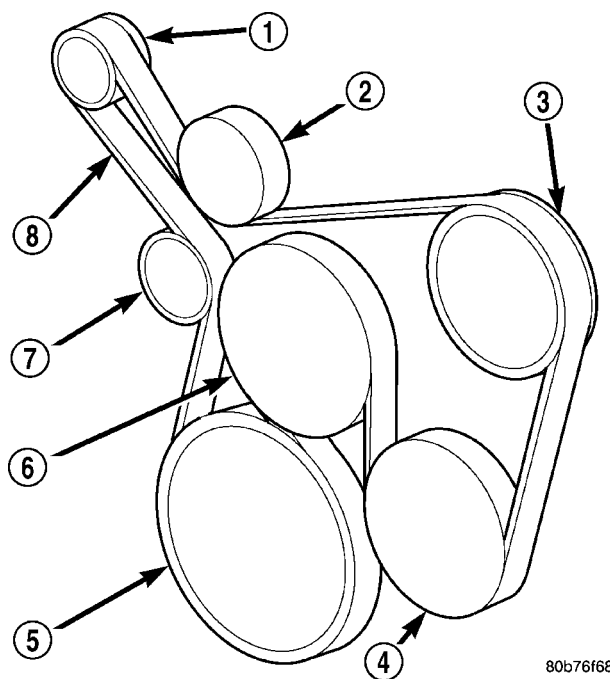
Belt tension is not adjustable. Belt adjustment is maintained by an automatic ( spring load ) belt tensioner.

- (1) Disconnect negative battery cable from battery.
- (2) Rotate belt tensioner until it contacts its stop. Remove belt, then slowly rotate the tensioner into the freearm position. (Fig. 4).

## REMOVAL - 4.7L ENGINE

**NOTE:** The belt routing schematics are published from the latest information available at the time of publication. If anything differs between these schematics and the Belt Routing Label, use the schematics on Belt Routing Label. This label is located in the engine compartment.

**CAUTION:** DO NOT LET TENSIONER ARM SNAP BACK TO THE FREEARM POSITION, SEVERE DAMAGE MAY OCCUR TO THE TENSIONER.



80b76f68

**Fig. 4 Belt Routing - 4.0L**

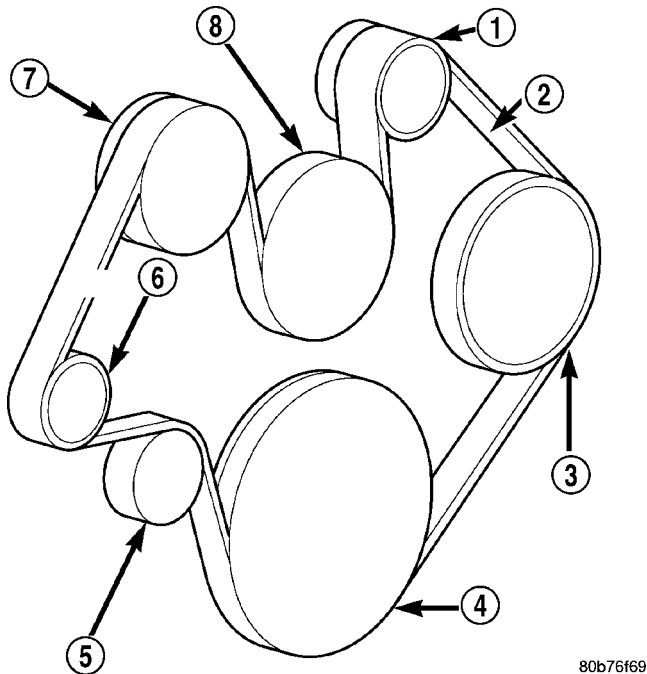
- 1 - GENERATOR
- 2 - IDLER
- 3 - POWER STEERING
- 4 - A/C
- 5 - CRANKSHAFT
- 6 - WATER PUMP
- 7 - TENSIONER
- 8 - ACCESSORY DRIVE BELT

Belt tension is not adjustable. Belt adjustment is maintained by an automatic ( spring load ) belt tensioner.

- (1) Disconnect negative battery cable from battery.

## DRIVE BELTS (Continued)

(2) Rotate belt tensioner until it contacts its stop. Remove belt, then slowly rotate the tensioner into the freearm position. (Fig. 5).



**Fig. 5 Belt Routing - 4.7L**

- 1 - GENERATOR PULLEY
- 2 - ACCESSORY DRIVE BELT
- 3 - POWER STEERING PUMP PULLEY
- 4 - CRANKSHAFT PULLEY
- 5 - IDLER PULLEY
- 6 - TENSIONER
- 7 - A/C COMPRESSOR PULLEY
- 8 - WATER PUMP PULLEY

80b76f69

## INSTALLATION

## INSTALLATION - 4.0L ENGINE

**NOTE:** The belt routing schematics are published from the latest information available at the time of publication. If anything differs between these schematics and the Belt Routing Label, use the schematics on Belt Routing Label. This label is located in the engine compartment.

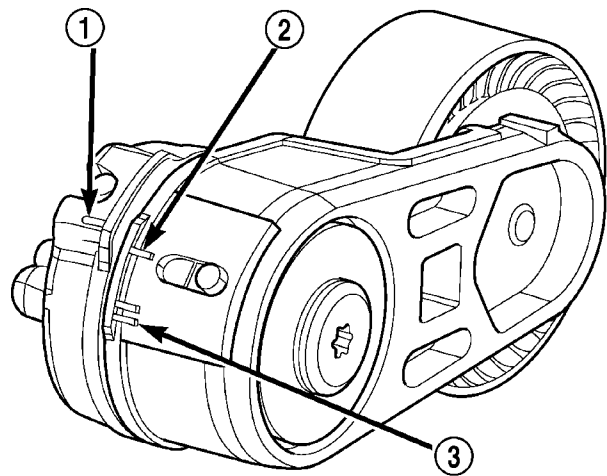
Belt tension is not adjustable. Belt adjustment is maintained by an automatic (spring load) belt tensioner.

- (1) Check condition of all pulleys.

**CAUTION:** When installing the serpentine accessory drive belt, the belt **MUST** be routed correctly. If not, the engine may overheat due to the water pump rotating in the wrong direction (Fig. 4).

(2) Install new belt (Fig. 4). Route the belt around all pulleys except the idler pulley. Rotate the tensioner arm until it contacts its stop position. Route the belt around the idler and slowly let the tensioner rotate into the belt. Make sure the belt is seated onto all pulleys.

(3) With the drive belt installed, inspect the belt wear indicator (Fig. 6). On 4.0L Engines, the indicator mark must be between the minimum and maximum marks. If the measurement exceeds this specification replace the serpentine accessory drive belt.



80bc4d20

**Fig. 6 Accessory Drive Belt Wear Indicator**

- 1 - INDICATOR MARK
- 2 - MINIMUM TENSION MARK
- 3 - MAXIMUM TENSION MARK

## INSTALLATION - 4.7L ENGINE

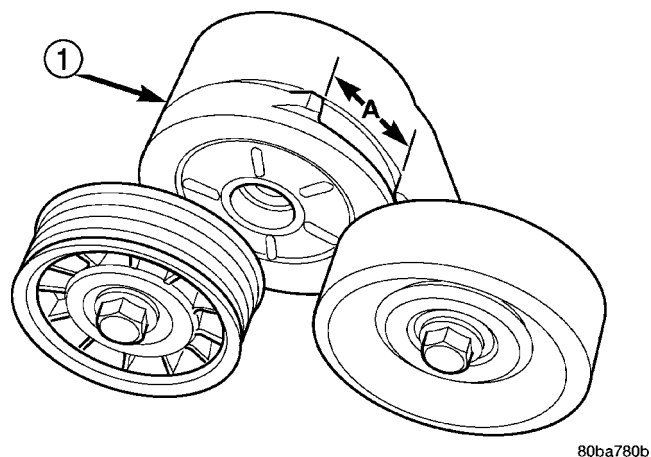
**NOTE:** The belt routing schematics are published from the latest information available at the time of publication. If anything differs between these schematics and the Belt Routing Label, use the schematics on Belt Routing Label. This label is located in the engine compartment.

Belt tension is not adjustable. Belt adjustment is maintained by an automatic ( spring load ) belt tensioner.

- (1) Check condition of all pulleys.
- (2) Install new belt (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - INSTALLATION). Route the belt around all pulleys except the idler pulley. Rotate the tensioner arm until it contacts its stop position. Route the belt around the idler and slowly let the tensioner rotate into the belt. Make sure the belt is seated onto all pulleys.

## DRIVE BELTS (Continued)

(3) With the drive belt installed, inspect the belt wear indicator (Fig. 7). On 4.7L Engines the gap between the tang and the housing stop ( measurement A ) must not exceed 24 mm (.94 inches).



**Fig. 7 Accessory Drive Belt Wear Indicator**

1 - AUTOMATIC TENSIONER ASSEMBLY

## ENGINE

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>COOLANT</b>		<b>REMOVAL</b>	
DESCRIPTION		REMOVAL - 4.0L ENGINE	36
DESCRIPTION - ENGINE COOLANT	24	REMOVAL - 4.7L ENGINE	37
DESCRIPTION - HOAT COOLANT	24	<b>INSTALLATION</b>	
OPERATION	25	INSTALLATION - 4.0L ENGINE	37
<b>COOLANT LEVEL SENSOR</b>		INSTALLATION - 4.7L ENGINE	37
REMOVAL	25	<b>FAN DRIVE VISCOUS CLUTCH - 4.0L</b>	
INSTALLATION	25	DESCRIPTION	38
<b>COOLANT RECOVERY CONTAINER</b>		OPERATION	39
DESCRIPTION	26	DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - VISCOUS FAN	
REMOVAL	26	DRIVE	39
INSTALLATION	26	<b>PWM FAN CONTROL MODULE - 4.0L</b>	
<b>RADIATOR FAN</b>		DESCRIPTION	39
DESCRIPTION	27	OPERATION	39
OPERATION	27	REMOVAL	40
REMOVAL		INSTALLATION	40
REMOVAL - 4.7L	28	<b>RADIATOR</b>	
REMOVAL - 4.0L	29	DESCRIPTION	41
CLEANING	30	REMOVAL	
INSPECTION	30	REMOVAL - 4.7L	41
INSTALLATION		REMOVAL - 4.0L	42
INSTALLATION - 4.7L	31	CLEANING	44
INSTALLATION - 4.0L	31	INSPECTION	44
<b>ENGINE BLOCK HEATER</b>		INSTALLATION	
DESCRIPTION - 4.0L ENGINE	31	INSTALLATION - 4.7L	44
OPERATION	32	INSTALLATION - 4.0L	45
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING—ENGINE BLOCK		<b>RADIATOR FAN MOTOR</b>	
HEATER	32	DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING—ELECTRIC	
REMOVAL		COOLING FAN	45
REMOVAL - 4.7L ENGINE	32	<b>WATER PUMP - 4.7L</b>	
REMOVAL - 4.0L ENGINE	32	DESCRIPTION	
INSTALLATION		DESCRIPTION - WATER PUMP - 4.7L	45
INSTALLATION - 4.7L ENGINE	33	DESCRIPTION - WATER PUMP BYPASS	46
INSTALLATION - 4.0L ENGINE	34	<b>OPERATION</b>	
<b>ENGINE COOLANT TEMP SENSOR</b>		OPERATION - WATER PUMP	46
DESCRIPTION	34	OPERATION - WATER PUMP BYPASS	46
OPERATION	34	DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - WATER PUMP	47
REMOVAL		REMOVAL	47
REMOVAL - 4.0L ENGINE	34	CLEANING	47
REMOVAL - 4.7L ENGINE	34	INSPECTION	47
INSTALLATION		INSTALLATION	47
INSTALLATION - 4.0L ENGINE	35	<b>WATER PUMP - 4.0L</b>	
INSTALLATION—4.7L ENGINE	35	DESCRIPTION	48
<b>ENGINE COOLANT THERMOSTAT</b>		REMOVAL	48
DESCRIPTION		CLEANING	49
DESCRIPTION - 4.7L ENGINE	35	INSPECTION	50
DESCRIPTION - 4.0L ENGINE	35	INSTALLATION	50
OPERATION	36	<b>RADIATOR PRESSURE CAP</b>	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - THERMOSTAT	36	DESCRIPTION	51

OPERATION .....	51
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - RADIATOR	
PRESSURE CAP .....	51
CLEANING .....	52
INSPECTION .....	52
WATER PUMP INLET TUBE	
REMOVAL .....	52

INSTALLATION .....	52
RADIATOR FAN SOLENOID	
REMOVAL .....	52
INSTALLATION .....	53

## COOLANT

### DESCRIPTION

#### DESCRIPTION - ENGINE COOLANT

##### ETHYLENE-GLYCOL MIXTURES

**CAUTION:** Richer antifreeze mixtures cannot be measured with normal field equipment and can cause problems associated with 100 percent ethylene-glycol.

The required ethylene-glycol (antifreeze) and water mixture depends upon the climate and vehicle operating conditions. The recommended mixture of 50/50 ethylene-glycol and water will provide protection against freezing to -37° C (-35° F). The antifreeze concentration **must always** be a minimum of 44 percent, year-round in all climates. **If percentage is lower than 44 percent, engine parts may be eroded by cavitation, and cooling system components may be severely damaged by corrosion.** Maximum protection against freezing is provided with a 68 percent antifreeze concentration, which prevents freezing down to -67.7° C (-90° F). A higher percentage will freeze at a warmer temperature. Also, a higher percentage of antifreeze can cause the engine to overheat because the specific heat of antifreeze is lower than that of water.

Use of 100 percent ethylene-glycol will cause formation of additive deposits in the system, as the corrosion inhibitive additives in ethylene-glycol require the presence of water to dissolve. The deposits act as insulation, causing temperatures to rise to as high as 149° C (300° F). This temperature is hot enough to melt plastic and soften solder. The increased temperature can result in engine detonation. In addition, 100 percent ethylene-glycol freezes at 22° C (-8° F).

##### PROPYLENE-GLYCOL MIXTURES

It's overall effective temperature range is smaller than that of ethylene-glycol. The freeze point of 50/50 propylene-glycol and water is -32° C (-26° F). 5° C higher than ethylene-glycol's freeze point. The boiling point (protection against summer boil-over) of propylene-glycol is 125° C (257° F) at 96.5 kPa (14 psi), compared to 128° C (263° F) for ethylene-glycol. Use

of propylene-glycol can result in boil-over or freeze-up on a cooling system designed for ethylene-glycol. Propylene glycol also has poorer heat transfer characteristics than ethylene glycol. This can increase cylinder head temperatures under certain conditions.

Propylene-glycol/ethylene-glycol Mixtures can cause the destabilization of various corrosion inhibitors, causing damage to the various cooling system components. Also, once ethylene-glycol and propylene-glycol based coolants are mixed in the vehicle, conventional methods of determining freeze point will not be accurate. Both the refractive index and specific gravity differ between ethylene glycol and propylene glycol.

#### DESCRIPTION - HOAT COOLANT

**WARNING: ANTIFREEZE IS AN ETHYLENE-GLYCOL BASE COOLANT AND IS HARMFUL IF SWALLOWED OR INHALED. IF SWALLOWED, DRINK TWO GLASSES OF WATER AND INDUCE VOMITING. IF INHALED, MOVE TO FRESH AIR AREA. SEEK MEDICAL ATTENTION IMMEDIATELY. DO NOT STORE IN OPEN OR UNMARKED CONTAINERS. WASH SKIN AND CLOTHING THOROUGHLY AFTER COMING IN CONTACT WITH ETHYLENE-GLYCOL. KEEP OUT OF REACH OF CHILDREN. DISPOSE OF GLYCOL BASE COOLANT PROPERLY, CONTACT YOUR DEALER OR GOVERNMENT AGENCY FOR LOCATION OF COLLECTION CENTER IN YOUR AREA. DO NOT OPEN A COOLING SYSTEM WHEN THE ENGINE IS AT OPERATING TEMPERATURE OR HOT UNDER PRESSURE, PERSONAL INJURY CAN RESULT. AVOID RADIATOR COOLING FAN WHEN ENGINE COMPARTMENT RELATED SERVICE IS PERFORMED, PERSONAL INJURY CAN RESULT.**

**CAUTION:** Use of Propylene-Glycol based coolants is not recommended, as they provide less freeze protection and less corrosion protection.

The cooling system is designed around the coolant. The coolant must accept heat from engine metal, in the cylinder head area near the exhaust valves and engine block. Then coolant carries the heat to the radiator where the tube/fin radiator can transfer the heat to the air.

The use of aluminum cylinder blocks, cylinder heads, and water pumps requires special corrosion

## COOLANT (Continued)

protection. Mopar® Antifreeze/Coolant, 5 Year/100,000 Mile Formula (MS-9769), or the equivalent ethylene-glycol base coolant with organic corrosion inhibitors (called HOAT, for Hybrid Organic Additive Technology) is recommended. This coolant offers the best engine cooling without corrosion when mixed with 50% ethylene-glycol and 50% distilled water to obtain a freeze point of -37°C (-35°F). If it loses color or becomes contaminated, drain, flush, and replace with fresh properly mixed coolant solution.

**CAUTION:** Mopar® Antifreeze/Coolant, 5 Year/100,000 Mile Formula (MS-9769) may not be mixed with any other type of antifreeze. Mixing of coolants other than specified (non-HOAT or other HOAT), may result in engine damage that may not be covered under the new vehicle warranty, and decreased corrosion protection.

## COOLANT PERFORMANCE

The required ethylene-glycol (antifreeze) and water mixture depends upon climate and vehicle operating conditions. The coolant performance of various mixtures follows:

**Pure Water-**Water can absorb more heat than a mixture of water and ethylene-glycol. This is for purpose of heat transfer only. Water also freezes at a higher temperature and allows corrosion.

**100 percent Ethylene-Glycol-**The corrosion inhibiting additives in ethylene-glycol need the presence of water to dissolve. Without water, additives form deposits in system. These act as insulation causing temperature to rise to as high as 149°C (300°F). This temperature is hot enough to melt plastic and soften solder. The increased temperature can result in engine detonation. In addition, 100 percent ethylene-glycol freezes at -22°C (-8°F).

**50/50 Ethylene-Glycol and Water-**Is the recommended mixture, it provides protection against freezing to -37°C (-34°F). The antifreeze concentration **must always** be a minimum of 44 percent, year-round in all climates. If percentage is lower, engine parts may be eroded by cavitation. Maximum protection against freezing is provided with a 68 percent antifreeze concentration, which prevents freezing down to -67.7°C (-90°F). A higher percentage will freeze at a warmer temperature. Also, a higher percentage of antifreeze can cause the engine to overheat because specific heat of antifreeze is lower than that of water.

**CAUTION:** Richer antifreeze mixtures cannot be measured with normal field equipment and can cause problems associated with 100 percent ethylene-glycol.

## COOLANT SELECTION AND ADDITIVES

The use of aluminum cylinder blocks, cylinder heads and water pumps requires special corrosion protection. Only Mopar® Antifreeze/Coolant, 5 Year/100,000 Mile Formula (glycol base coolant with corrosion inhibitors called HOAT, for Hybrid Organic Additive Technology) is recommended. This coolant offers the best engine cooling without corrosion when mixed with 50% distilled water to obtain a freeze point of -37°C (-35°F). If it loses color or becomes contaminated, drain, flush, and replace with fresh properly mixed coolant solution.

**CAUTION:** Do not use coolant additives that are claimed to improve engine cooling.

## OPERATION

Coolant flows through the engine block absorbing the heat from the engine, then flows to the radiator where the cooling fins in the radiator transfers the heat from the coolant to the atmosphere. During cold weather the ethylene-glycol or propylene-glycol coolant prevents water present in the cooling system from freezing within temperatures indicated by mixture ratio of coolant to water.

## COOLANT LEVEL SENSOR

### REMOVAL

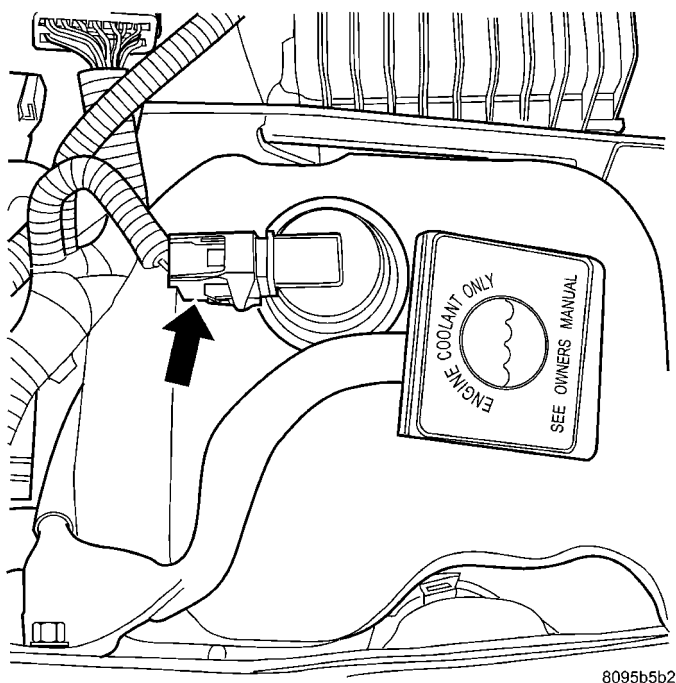
- (1) Open Hood.
- (2) Disconnect electrical connector from coolant level sensor.
- (3) Pull coolant level sensor out of coolant recovery pressure container.

### INSTALLATION

**NOTE:** Make sure the coolant level sensor fully seats into the rubber grommet. Failure to do so may cause inaccurate coolant level readings and leaks.

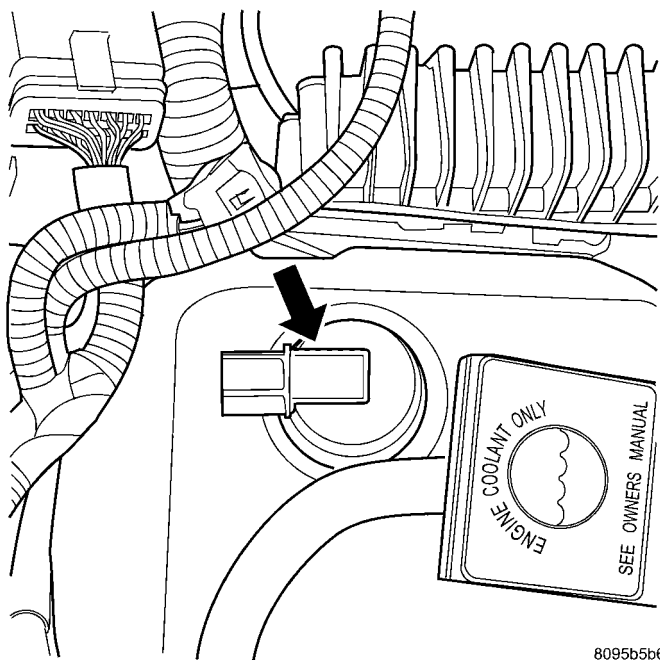


## COOLANT LEVEL SENSOR (Continued)



8095b5b2

**Fig. 1 COOLANT LEVEL SENSOR ELECTRICAL CONNECTOR**



8095b5b6

**Fig. 2 COOLANT LEVEL SENSOR REMOVAL/INSTALLATION**

- (1) Position sensor into the coolant recovery pressure container (Fig. 1).
- (2) Connect the coolant level sensor electrical connector (Fig. 2).
- (3) Close hood.

## COOLANT RECOVERY CONTAINER

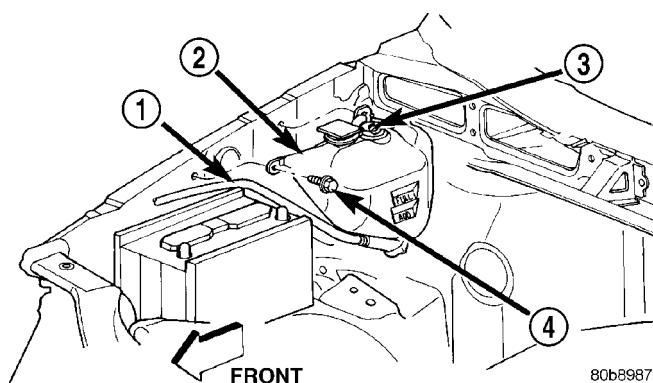
## DESCRIPTION

This system works along with the radiator pressure cap. This is done by using thermal expansion and contraction of the coolant to keep the coolant free of trapped air. It provides:

- A volume for coolant expansion and contraction.
- A convenient and safe method for checking/adjusting coolant level at atmospheric pressure. This is done without removing the radiator pressure cap.
- Some reserve coolant to the radiator to cover minor leaks and evaporation or boiling losses.

As the engine cools, a vacuum is formed in the cooling system of both the radiator and engine. Coolant will then be drawn from the coolant tank and returned to a proper level in the radiator.

The coolant reservoir/overflow system has a radiator mounted pressurized cap, an overflow tube and a plastic coolant reservoir/overflow tank (Fig. 3) mounted to the right inner fender.



80b8987c

**Fig. 3 Coolant Reservoir/Overflow Tank**

- 1 - COOLANT OVERFLOW HOSE
- 2 - COOLANT RESERVOIR/OVERFLOW TANK
- 3 - COOLANT LEVEL SENSOR
- 4 - BOLT

## REMOVAL

- (1) Disconnect the coolant level sensor connector.
- (2) Disconnect the coolant overflow hose.
- (3) Remove two mounting screws (Fig. 3).
- (4) Remove the coolant reservoir/overflow tank.

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Position the coolant reservoir/overflow tank in the vehicle.
- (2) Install two mounting screws.
- (3) Connect the coolant level sensor connector
- (4) Install the coolant overflow hose.

## RADIATOR FAN

### DESCRIPTION

**4.0L ENGINE** The radiator cooling fan used on the 4.0L engine is an hybrid fan design. The hybrid fan system consist of a low speed viscous driven mechanical fan and a electrical fan (Fig. 6)

**4.7L ENGINE** The 4.7L hydraulic cooling fan is integral to the fan shroud and is located between the radiator and the engine (Fig. 4).

The power steering pump supplies the hydraulic fluid and pressure to rotate the cooling fan blade, while the electrical part of the fan is controlled by the JTEC.

The hydraulic fan drive (motor) consists of the three major following components:

- Steering flow control valve
- Fan control valve
- Two stage G-rotor hydraulic drive

The hydraulic fan and drive is not serviceable. Therefore any failure of the fan blade, hydraulic fan drive or fan shroud requires replacement of the fan module because the fan blade and hydraulic fan drive are matched and balanced as a system and servicing either separately would disrupt this balance.

For hydraulic fluid routing information refer to (Fig. 5).

**CAUTION:** Do not attempt to service the hydraulic cooling fan or fan drive separately replace the cooling module as an assembly. Failure to do so may cause severe damage to the hydraulic cooling fan assembly.

### OPERATION

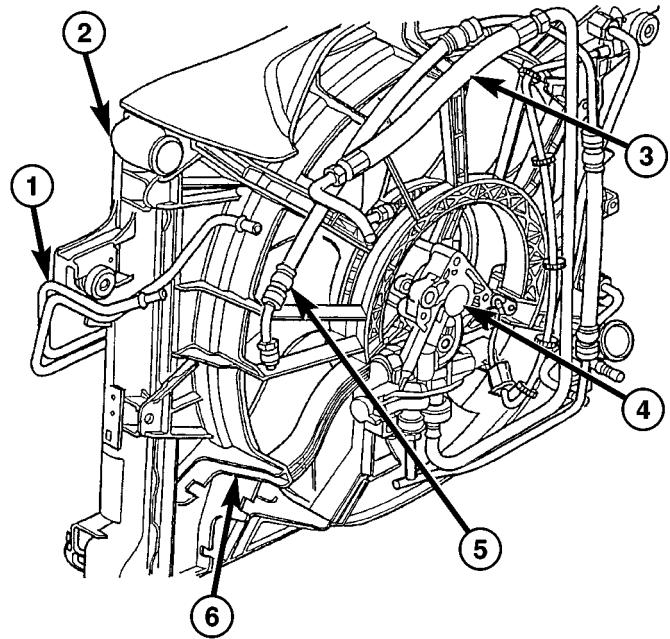
The hydraulic radiator cooling fan used on the 4.7L engine replaces both the electric fan and the engine driven mechanical fan. This provides 4.7L equipped vehicles with heavy trailer towing capability while at the same time reducing unnecessary power drain on both the engine and the vehicles electrical system.

### HYDRAULIC FAN STRATEGY

The hydraulic radiator cooling fan is controlled by the JTEC. A PWM (Pulse With Modulated) signal from the JTEC controls the fan speed. There are four inputs to the JTEC that determine what speed percentage of fan is required by the vehicle. These inputs are:

- Engine Coolant Temperature
- Transmission Oil Temperature
- Battery Temperature
- A/C System Pressure

By monitoring these four parameters, the JTEC can determine if cooling airflow is required. If airflow



8095f2ca

**Fig. 4 HYDRAULIC RADIATOR COOLING FAN AND FAN DRIVE - 4.7L**

- 1 - POWER STEERING FLUID COOLER
- 2 - RADIATOR
- 3 - HIGH PRESSURE LINE FROM STEERING GEAR PUMP TO HYDRAULIC FAN MOTOR
- 4 - HYDRAULIC FAN MOTOR
- 5 - HIGH PRESSURE LINE FROM HYDRAULIC FAN MOTOR TO STEERING GEAR
- 6 - FAN SHROUD

is required, the JTEC will slowly ramp up (speed up) the fan speed until the parameter(s) are under control. Once the temperature or pressure is reduced to within operating parameters the fan will ramp up, ramp down, or hold its speed to maintain the temperature / pressure requirements.

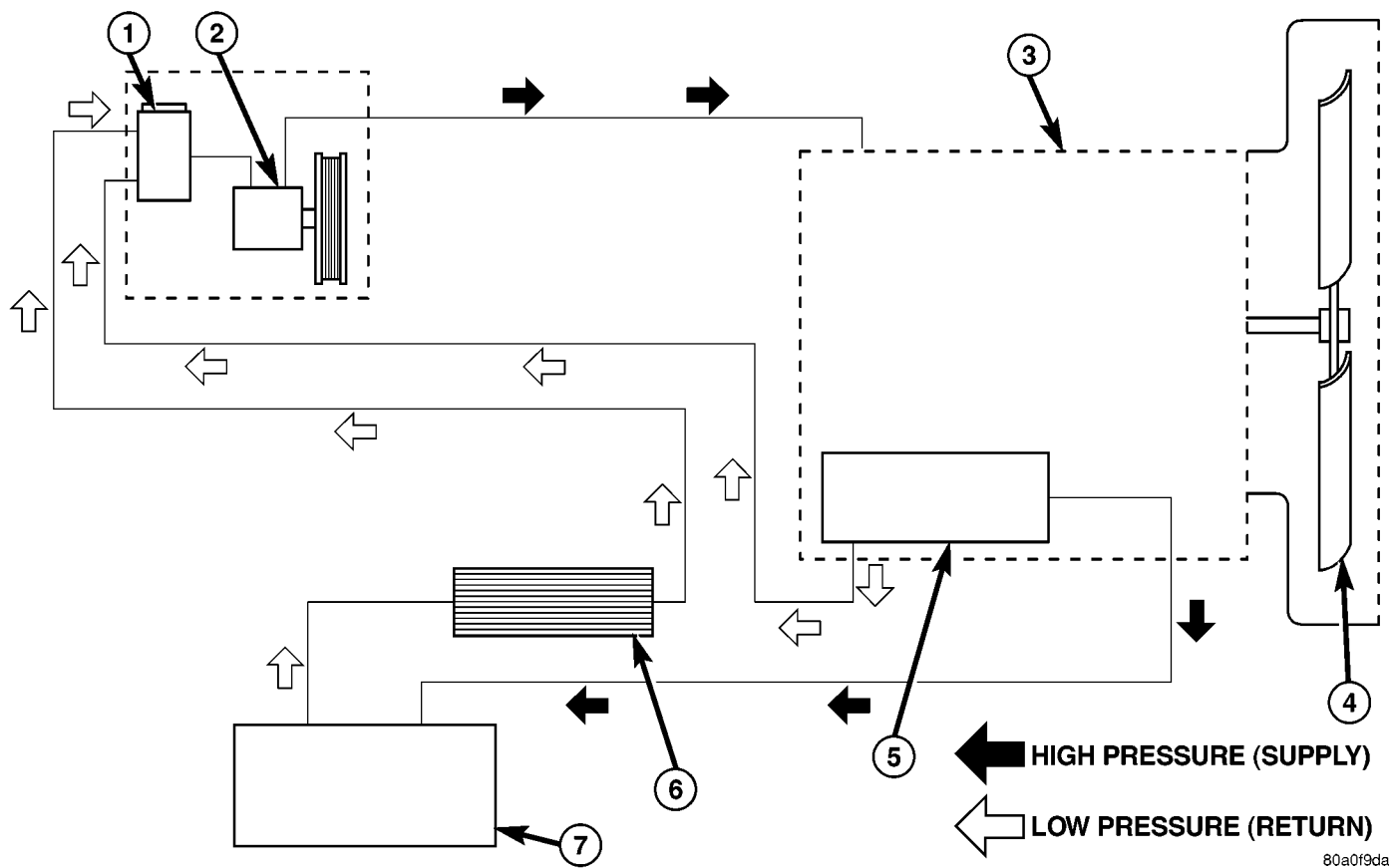
**NOTE:** Even if the JTEC is not requesting fan on operation the fan blade will usually spin between 100 and 500 RPM when the vehicle is at idle. This is due to a controlled minimum oil flow requirement through the fan drive motor.

### ACTIVATING THE HYDRAULIC FAN WITH THE DRB III®

Under the Engine Systems test heading, there is a subheading. "Hydraulic fan solenoid test", that has the selections, on/off. Activating the fan with the DRB III® will run the fan at 100% duty cycle, which will help troubleshoot any system problems, and also help with the deaeration procedure.

**NOTE:** Engine must be running to activate the fan with the DRB III.

## RADIATOR FAN (Continued)

**Fig. 5 HYDRAULIC FAN FLUID FLOW CIRCUIT**

- 1 - POWER STEERING RESERVOIR
- 2 - POWER STEERING PUMP
- 3 - HYDRAULIC FAN DRIVE ASSEMBLY
- 4 - FAN BLADE

- 5 - HYDRAULIC FAN CONTROL SOLENOID
- 6 - POWER STEERING OIL COOLER
- 7 - STEERING GEAR

**RADIATOR COOLING FAN HYDRAULIC FLUID PATH**

Hydraulic fluid is pumped through the power steering pump, from the pump the fluid travels through a high pressure delivery line to the fan drive motor. As fluid is diverted through the G-rotors, rotational motion is created as fluid moves from the high-pressure (inlet) side of the motor to the low-pressure (outlet) side. Fluid exiting the drive motor is divided into two paths. Path one continues through a high pressure delivery line to the vehicle's steering gear to provide steering assist, and path two sends fluid back to the power steering pump through a low pressure line. Fluid exits the steering gear under low pressure and travels through a low pressure line to the power steering fluid cooler to be cooled before being returned back to the power steering fluid reservoir (Fig. 5).

**NOTE:** There is a steering flow control valve located in the fan drive motor. This valve operates like the flow control valve found in the typical power steering pump. Because of the design of the valve steering

assist can not be effected by the radiator cooling fan even during fan drive failure.

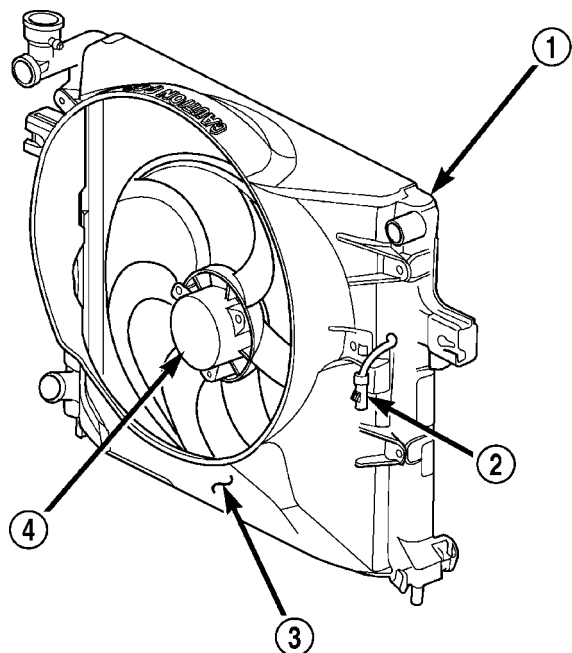
**REMOVAL****REMOVAL - 4.7L**

- (1) Raise vehicle on hoist.
- (2) Drain cooling system. (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE)

**NOTE:** The hydraulic fan drive is driven by the power steering pump. When removing lines or hoses from fan drive assembly use a drain pan to catch any power steering fluid that may exit the fan drive or the lines and hoses.

**NOTE:** When ever the high pressure line fittings are removed from the hydraulic fan drive the O-rings must be replaced.

## RADIATOR FAN (Continued)



80b8991e

**Fig. 6 Radiator Cooling Fan - 4.0L**

- 1 - RADIATOR
- 2 - ELECTRIC COOLING FAN CONNECTOR
- 3 - FAN SHROUD
- 4 - ELECTRIC COOLING FAN

(3) Disconnect two high pressure lines at hydraulic fan drive (Fig. 7). Remove and discard o-rings from line fittings.

(4) Disconnect low pressure return hose at hydraulic fan drive (Fig. 7).

**NOTE:** The lower mounting bolts can only be accessed from under vehicle.

(5) Remove two lower mounting bolts from the shroud (Fig. 9).

(6) Lower vehicle.

(7) Disconnect the electrical connector for the fan control solenoid.

(8) Disconnect the radiator upper hose at the radiator and position out of the way.

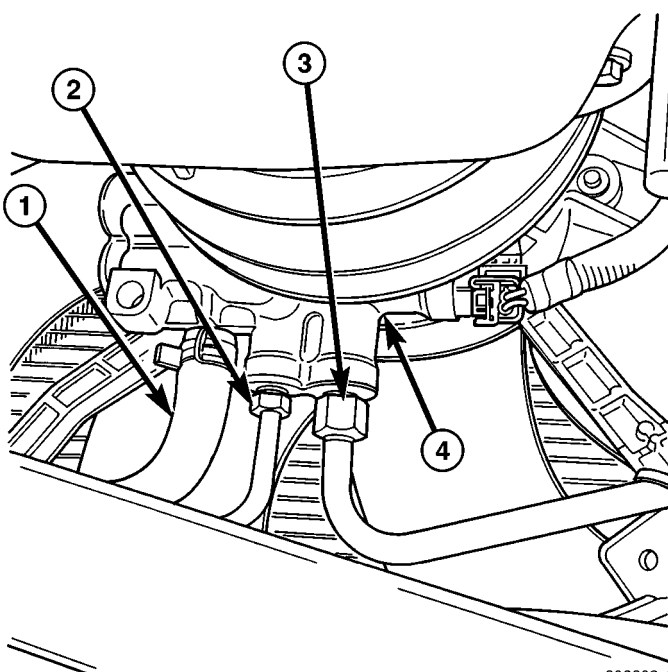
(9) Disconnect the power steering gear outlet hose and fluid return hose at the cooler (Fig. 8).

(10) Remove two upper mounting bolts from the shroud (Fig. 9).

(11) Remove the shroud and fan drive from vehicle.

**REMOVAL - 4.0L**

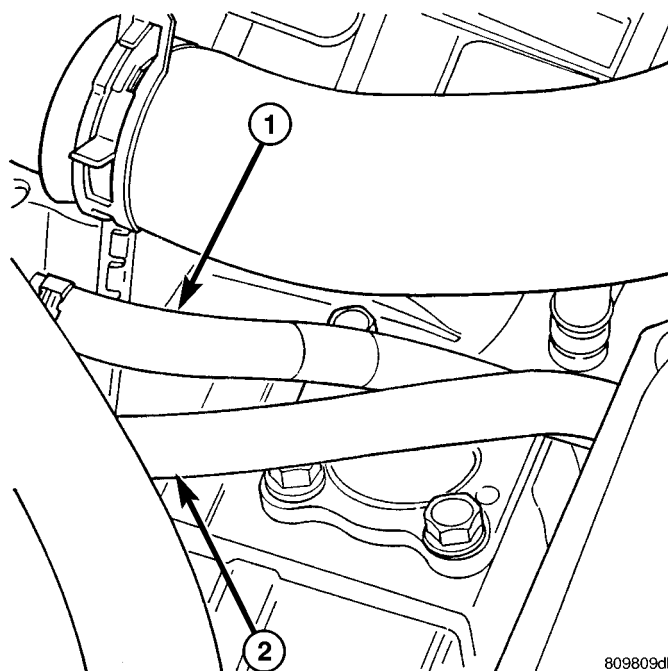
- (1) Disconnect negative battery cable from battery.



809809c5

**Fig. 7 HYDRAULIC LINES/HOSES AND ELECTRICAL CONNECTOR**

- 1 - LOW PRESSURE RETURN HOSE
- 2 - HIGH PRESSURE LINE (OUTLET)
- 3 - HIGH PRESSURE LINE (INLET)
- 4 - HYDRAULIC FAN DRIVE



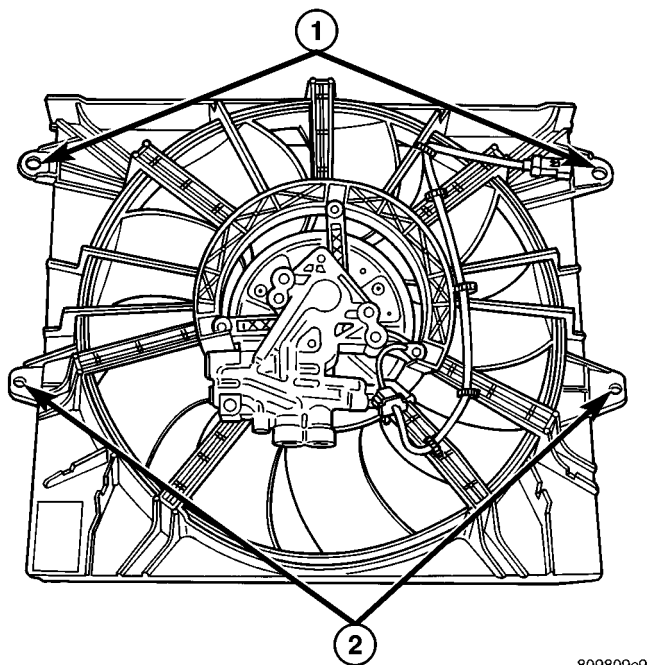
809809db

**Fig. 8 POWER STEERING GEAR OUTLET AND RETURN HOSES**

- 1 - POWER STEERING COOLER RETURN HOSE
- 2 - POWER STEERING COOLER SUPPLY HOSE



## RADIATOR FAN (Continued)

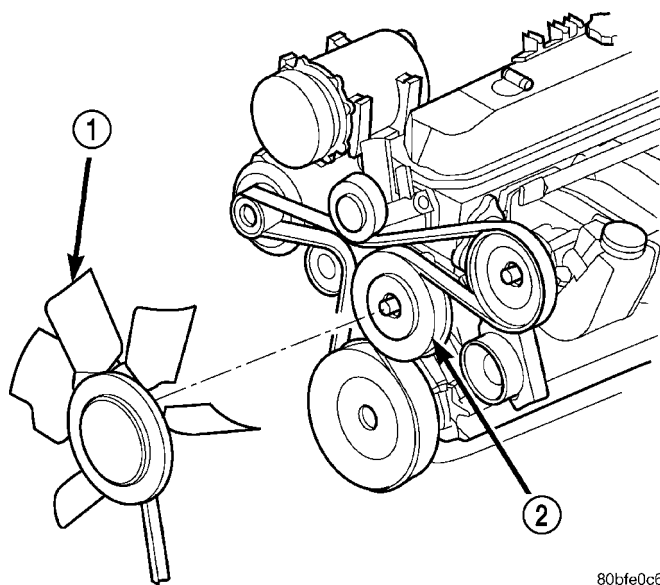


809809c9

**Fig. 9 FAN SHROUD MOUNTING BOLT LOCATIONS**

- 1 - FAN SHROUD UPPER MOUNTING BOLT LOCATIONS  
2 - FAN SHROUD LOWER MOUNTING BOLT LOCATIONS

(2) The thermal viscous fan drive/fan blade assembly is attached (threaded) to water pump hub shaft. Remove fan blade/viscous fan drive assembly from water pump by turning mounting nut counterclockwise as viewed from front (Fig. 10). Threads on viscous fan drive are **RIGHT HAND**.



80bfe0c6

**Fig. 10 Water Pump Mounted Fan Drive - 4.0L Engine**

- 1 - FAN AND FAN DRIVE  
2 - WATER PUMP PULLEY

(3) Do not attempt to remove fan/viscous fan drive assembly from vehicle at this time.

(4) Do not unbolt fan blade assembly from viscous fan drive at this time.

(5) Remove fan shroud-to-upper crossmember nuts.

(6) Remove fan shroud and fan blade/viscous fan drive assembly as a complete unit from vehicle.

(7) After removing fan blade/viscous fan drive assembly, **do not** place viscous fan drive in horizontal position. If stored horizontally, silicone fluid in the viscous fan drive could drain into its bearing assembly and contaminate lubricant.

**CAUTION:** Do not remove water pump pulley-to-water pump bolts. This pulley is under belt tension.

(8) Remove four bolts securing fan blade assembly to viscous fan drive.

**CLEANING**

Clean the fan blades using a mild soap and water. Do not use an abrasive to clean the blades.

**INSPECTION**

**WARNING:** DO NOT ATTEMPT TO BEND OR STRAIGHTEN FAN BLADES IF FAN IS NOT WITHIN SPECIFICATIONS.

**CAUTION:** If fan blade assembly is replaced because of mechanical damage, water pump and viscous fan drive should also be inspected. These components could have been damaged due to excessive vibration.

(1) Remove fan blade assembly from viscous fan drive unit (four bolts).

(2) Lay fan on a flat surface with leading edge facing down. With tip of blade touching flat surface, replace fan if clearance between opposite blade and surface is greater than 2.0 mm (.090 inch). Rocking motion of opposite blades should not exceed 2.0 mm (.090 inch). Test all blades in this manner.

(3) Inspect fan assembly for cracks, bends, loose rivets or broken welds. Replace fan if any damage is found.

## RADIATOR FAN (Continued)

## INSTALLATION

## INSTALLATION - 4.7L

**CAUTION:** There is an external ground wire connected to the hydraulic fan drive located at the electrical connector on the fan assembly. This ground **MUST** remain connected at all times. Failure to ensure ground wire is connected when engine is operating can cause severe damage to the JTEC module.

- (1) Position fan drive and shroud in vehicle.
- (2) Install fan shroud upper mounting bolts. Do not tighten at this time.
- (3) Install radiator upper hose onto radiator.
- (4) Connect power steering cooler hoses.
- (5) Raise vehicle on hoist.
- (6) Install fan shroud lower mounting bolts. Tighten to 6 N·m (50 in. lbs.).

**NOTE:** When ever the high pressure line fittings are removed from the hydraulic fan drive the o-rings located on the fittings must be replaced.

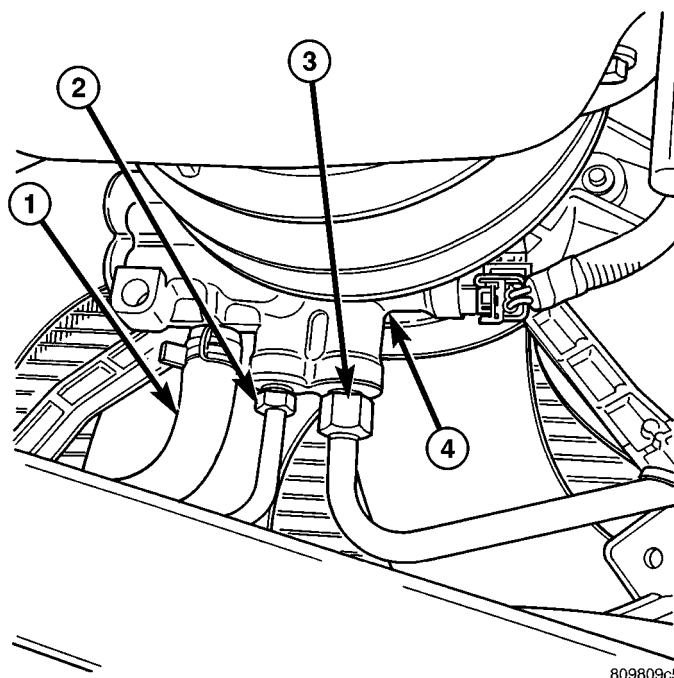
- (7) Lubricate the o-rings on the fittings with power steering fluid then connect inlet and outlet high pressure lines to fan drive (Fig. 11). Tighten inlet line to 49 N·m (36 ft. lbs.) tighten outlet line to 29 N·m (21.5 ft. lbs.).
- (8) Connect low pressure return hose to fan drive (Fig. 11).
- (9) Lower vehicle.
- (10) Install radiator upper hose.
- (11) Connect electrical connector for hydraulic fan control solenoid.
- (12) Tighten fan shroud upper mounting bolts to 6 N·m (50 in. lbs.).
- (13) Refill cooling system (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

**CAUTION:** Do not run engine with power steering fluid below the full mark in the reservoir. Severe damage to the hydraulic cooling fan or the engine can occur.

- (14) Refill power steering fluid reservoir and bleed air from steering system (Refer to 19 - STEERING/ PUMP - STANDARD PROCEDURE).
- (15) Run engine and check for leaks.

## INSTALLATION - 4.0L

- (1) Assemble fan blade to viscous fan drive. Tighten mounting bolts to 27 N·m (20 ft. lbs.) torque.
- (2) Thread the fan and fan drive onto the water pump pulley.



**Fig. 11 HYDRAULIC LINES/HOSES AND ELECTRICAL CONNECTOR**

- 1 - LOW PRESSURE RETURN HOSE
- 2 - HIGH PRESSURE LINE (OUTLET)
- 3 - HIGH PRESSURE LINE (INLET)
- 4 - HYDRAULIC FAN DRIVE

**CAUTION:** When installing a serpentine accessory drive belt, the belt **MUST** be routed correctly. If not, the engine may overheat due to the water pump rotating in the wrong direction. (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - REMOVAL) for correct belt routing.

## ENGINE BLOCK HEATER

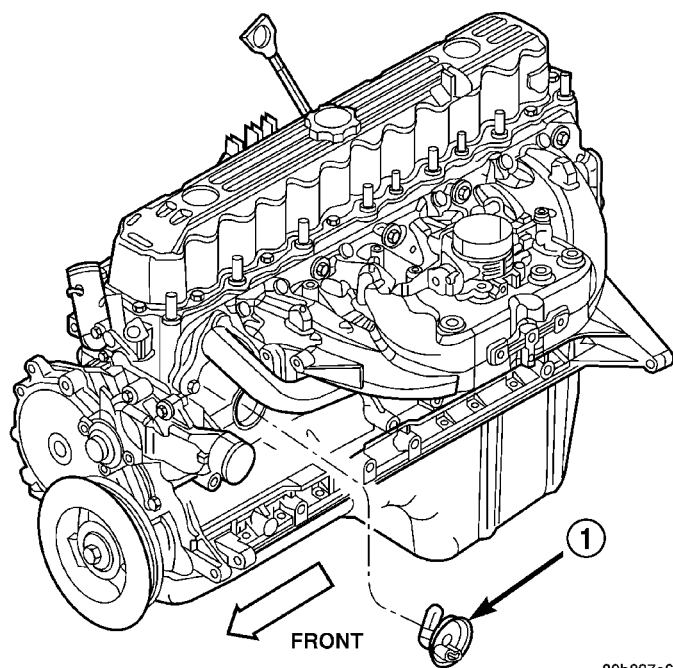
## DESCRIPTION - 4.0L ENGINE

**WARNING:** DO NOT OPERATE ENGINE UNLESS BLOCK HEATER CORD HAS BEEN DISCONNECTED FROM POWER SOURCE AND SECURED IN PLACE. THE POWER CORD MUST BE SECURED IN ITS RETAINING CLIPS AND ROUTED AWAY FROM EXHAUST MANIFOLDS AND MOVING PARTS.

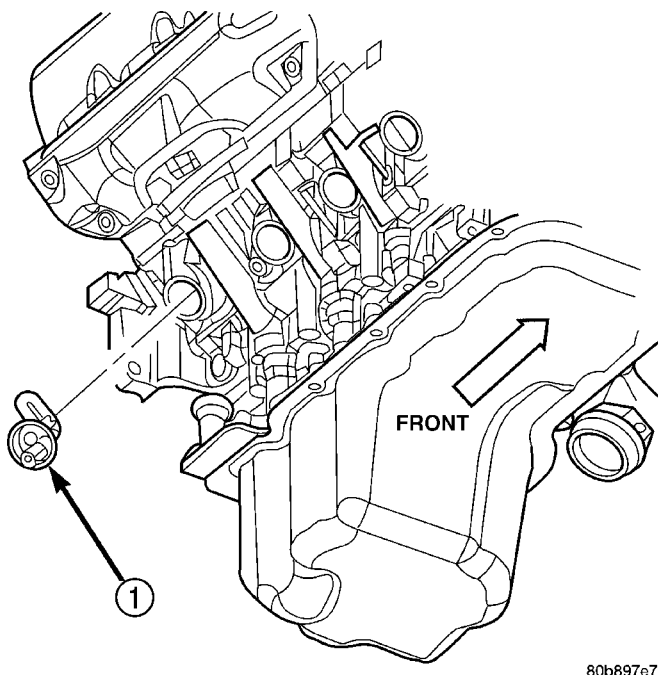
An optional engine block heater (Fig. 12) or (Fig. 13) is available with all models. The heater is equipped with a power cord. The cord is attached to an engine compartment component with tie-straps. The heater warms the engine providing easier engine starting and faster warm-up in low temperatures. The heater is mounted in a core hole of the engine cylinder block in place of a freeze plug with the heating element immersed in engine coolant.



## ENGINE BLOCK HEATER (Continued)

**Fig. 12 Block Heater**

1 - ENGINE BLOCK HEATER

**Fig. 13 Engine Block Heater - 4.7L**

1 - ENGINE BLOCK HEATER

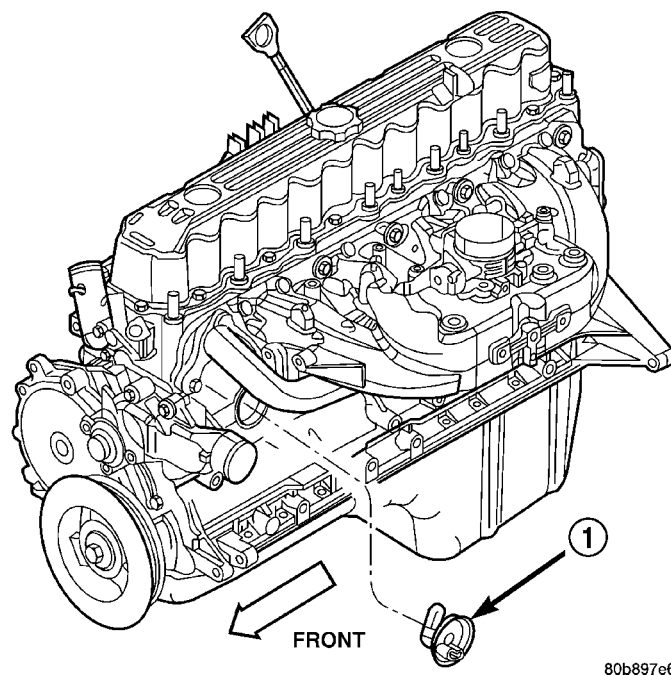
**OPERATION**

Connecting the power cord to a grounded 110-120 volt AC electrical outlet with a grounded, three wire extension cord activates the heating element warming the engine coolant.

**DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING—ENGINE BLOCK HEATER**

If the unit does not operate (Fig. 14) (Fig. 15) or (Fig. 15), possible causes can be either the power cord or the heater element. Test the power cord for continuity with a 110-volt voltmeter or 110-volt test light. Test heater element continuity with an ohmmeter or a 12-volt test light.

**CAUTION:** To prevent damage, the power cord must be secured in it's retainer clips and away from any components that may cause abrasion or damage, such as linkages, exhaust components, etc.

**Fig. 14 Engine Block Heater - 4.0L Engine**

1 - ENGINE BLOCK HEATER

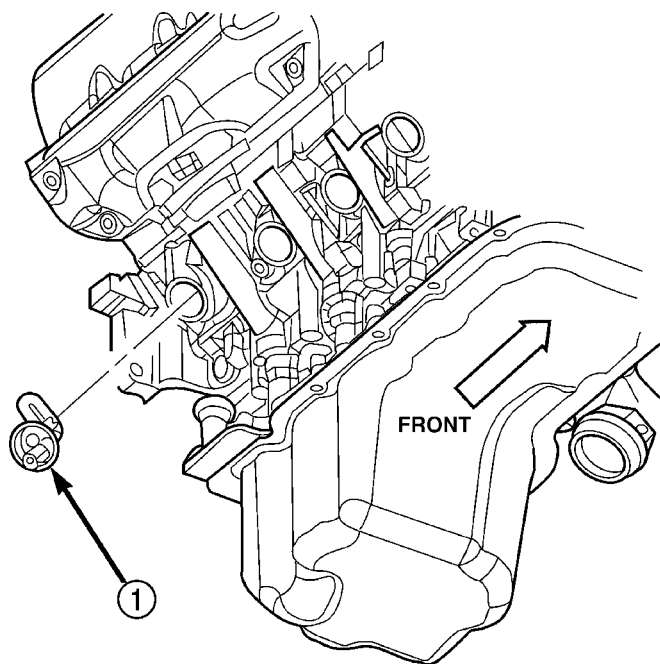
**REMOVAL****REMOVAL - 4.7L ENGINE**

- (1) Disconnect negative battery cable from battery.
- (2) Drain coolant from radiator (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).
- (3) Raise vehicle.
- (4) Remove engine cylinder block drain plug(s) located on the sides of cylinder block above the oil pan rail (Fig. 16).
- (5) Remove power cord from block heater.
- (6) Loosen screw at center of block heater. Remove heater assembly (Fig. 17).

**REMOVAL - 4.0L ENGINE**

- (1) Disconnect negative battery cable from battery.
- (2) Drain coolant from radiator (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

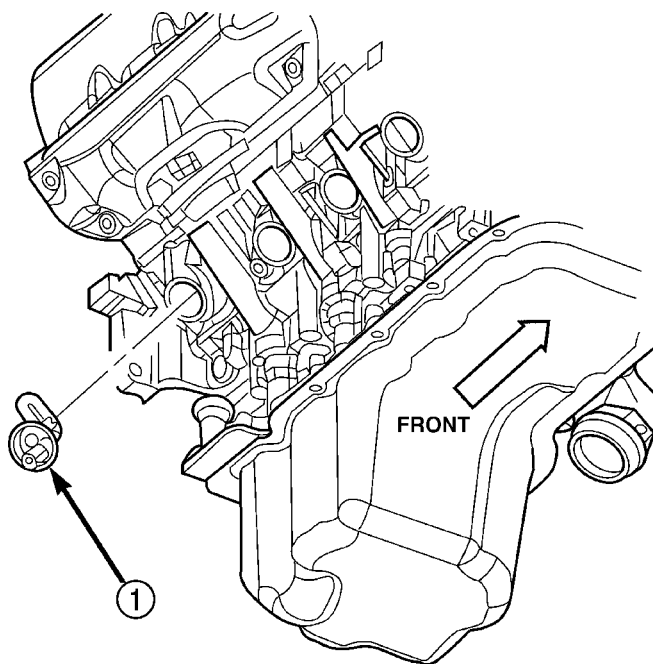
## ENGINE BLOCK HEATER (Continued)



80b897e7

**Fig. 15 Engine Block Heater - 4.7L Engine**

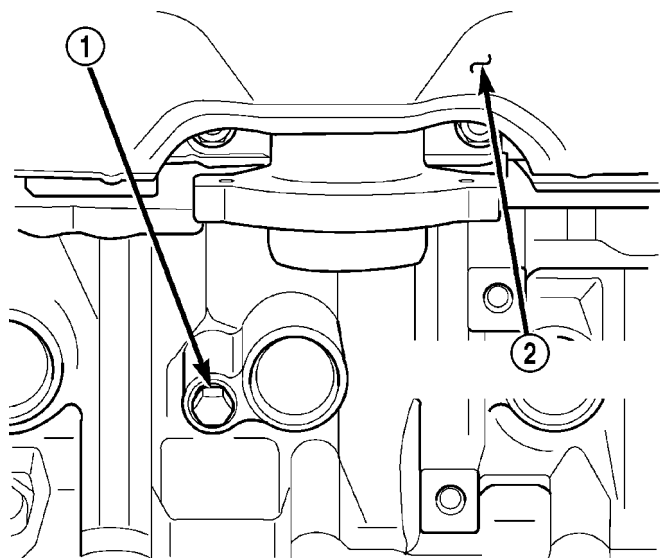
1 - ENGINE BLOCK HEATER



80b897e7

**Fig. 17 Engine Block Heater - 4.7L**

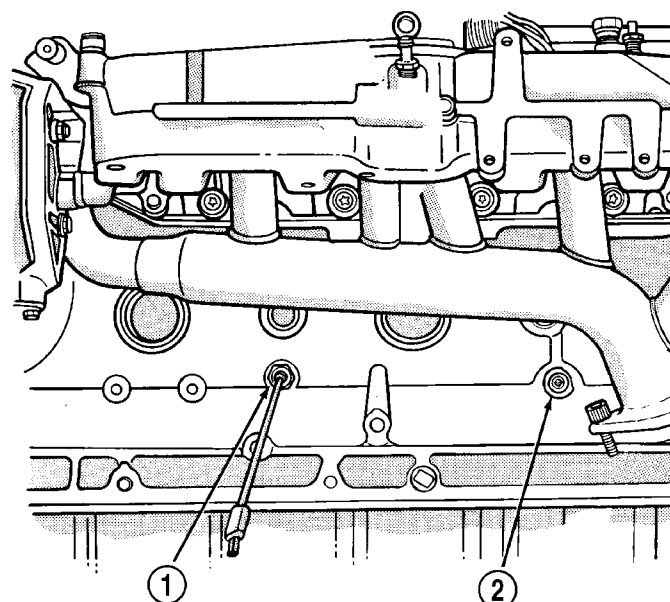
1 - ENGINE BLOCK HEATER



80b8990c

**Fig. 16 Drain Plug - 4.7L Engine**

1 - CYLINDER BLOCK DRAIN PLUG  
2 - EXHAUST MANIFOLD AND HEAT SHIELD



J9107-65

**Fig. 18 Drain Plug**

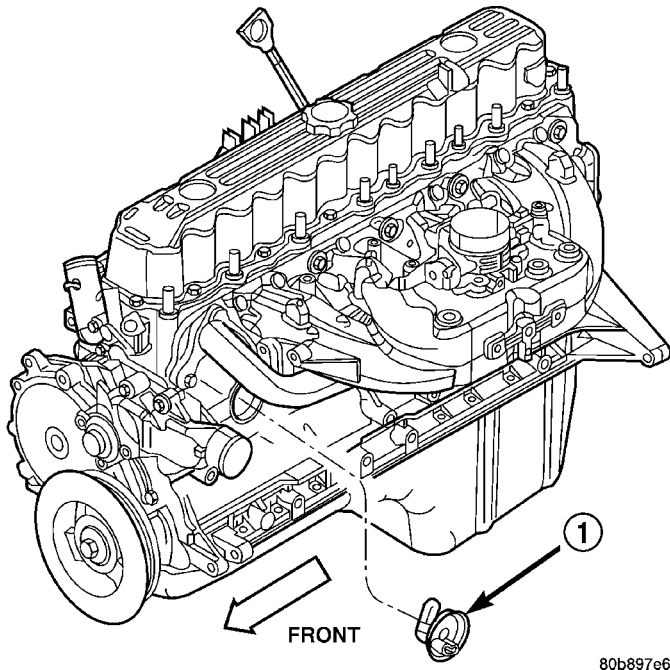
1 - COOLANT TEMPERATURE SENSOR  
2 - BLOCK DRAIN PLUG

- (3) Raise vehicle.
- (4) Remove engine cylinder block drain plug(s) located on the sides of cylinder block above the oil pan rail (Fig. 18).
- (5) Remove power cord from block heater.
- (6) Loosen screw at center of block heater. Remove heater assembly (Fig. 19).

**INSTALLATION****INSTALLATION - 4.7L ENGINE**

- (1) Thoroughly clean cylinder block core hole and block heater seat.
- (2) Insert block heater assembly with element loop pointing at twelve o'clock (Fig. 17).

## ENGINE BLOCK HEATER (Continued)

**Fig. 19 Engine Block Heater**

1 - ENGINE BLOCK HEATER

(3) With block heater fully seated, tighten center screw to 2 N·m (17 in. lbs.) torque.

(4) Refill cooling system (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

(5) Start and warm the engine. Check for leaks.

**INSTALLATION - 4.0L ENGINE**

(1) Thoroughly clean cylinder block core hole and block heater seat.

(2) Insert block heater assembly with element loop pointing at twelve o'clock (Fig. 19).

(3) With block heater fully seated, tighten center screw to 2 N·m (17 in. lbs.) torque.

(4) Refill cooling system (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

(5) Start and warm the engine. Check for leaks.

**ENGINE COOLANT TEMP SENSOR****DESCRIPTION**

The Engine Coolant Temperature (ECT) sensor is used to sense engine coolant temperature. The sensor protrudes into an engine water jacket.

The ECT sensor is a two-wire Negative Thermal Coefficient (NTC) sensor. Meaning, as engine coolant temperature increases, resistance (voltage) in the sensor decreases. As temperature decreases, resistance (voltage) in the sensor increases.

**OPERATION**

At key-on, the Powertrain Control Module (PCM) sends out a regulated 5 volt signal to the ECT sensor. The PCM then monitors the signal as it passes through the ECT sensor to the sensor ground (sensor return).

When the engine is cold, the PCM will operate in Open Loop cycle. It will demand slightly richer air-fuel mixtures and higher idle speeds. This is done until normal operating temperatures are reached.

The PCM uses inputs from the ECT sensor for the following calculations:

- for engine coolant temperature gauge operation through CCD or PCI (J1850) communications
- Injector pulse-width
- Spark-advance curves
- ASD relay shut-down times
- Idle Air Control (IAC) motor key-on steps
- Pulse-width prime-shot during cranking
- O2 sensor closed loop times
- Purge solenoid on/off times
- EGR solenoid on/off times (if equipped)
- Leak Detection Pump operation (if equipped)
- Radiator fan relay on/off times (if equipped)
- Target idle speed

**REMOVAL****REMOVAL - 4.0L ENGINE**

**WARNING: HOT, PRESSURIZED COOLANT CAN CAUSE INJURY BY SCALDING. COOLING SYSTEM MUST BE PARTIALLY DRAINED BEFORE REMOVING THE ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE (ECT) SENSOR. REFER TO GROUP 7, COOLING.**

(1) Partially drain cooling system. (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

(2) Disconnect electrical connector from ECT sensor (Fig. 20).

(3) Remove sensor from thermostat housing.

**REMOVAL - 4.7L ENGINE**

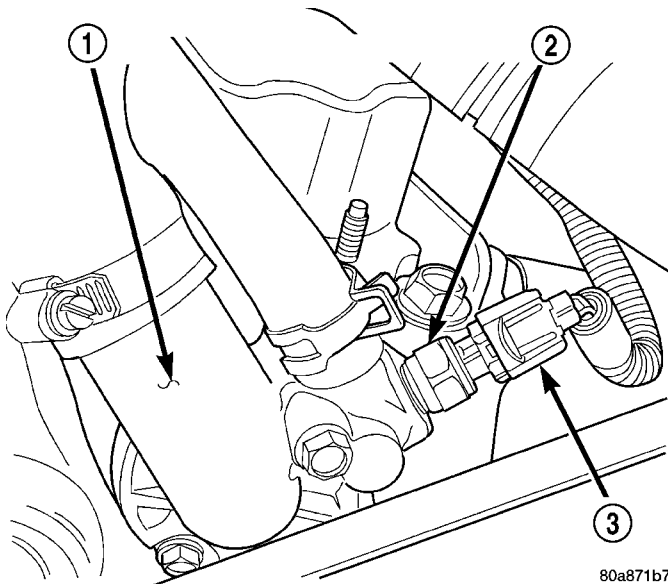
**WARNING: HOT, PRESSURIZED COOLANT CAN CAUSE INJURY BY SCALDING. COOLING SYSTEM MUST BE PARTIALLY DRAINED BEFORE REMOVING THE ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE (ECT) SENSOR. REFER TO GROUP 7, COOLING.**

The ECT sensor is located near the front of the intake manifold (Fig. 21).

(1) Partially drain cooling system. (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

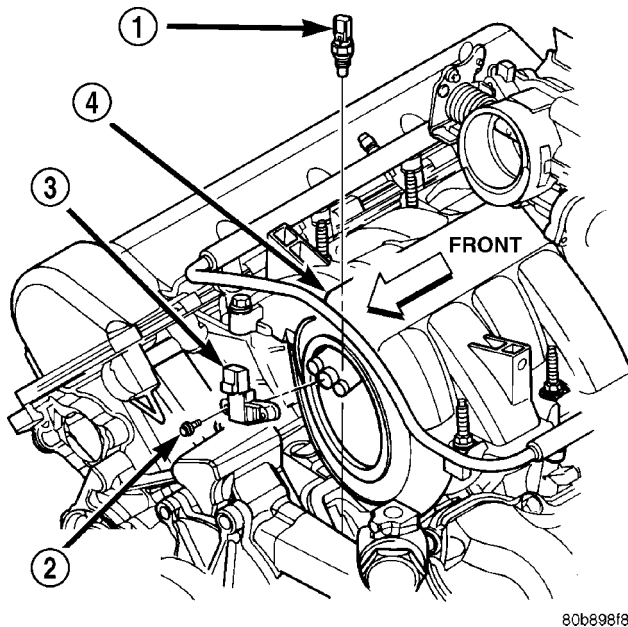
(2) Disconnect electrical connector from ECT sensor.

## ENGINE COOLANT TEMP SENSOR (Continued)

**Fig. 20 Engine Coolant Temperature Sensor**

- 1 - THERMOSTAT HOUSING
- 2 - ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE SENSOR
- 3 - ELECTRICAL CONNECTOR

(3) Remove sensor from intake manifold.

**Fig. 21 Engine Coolant Temperature Sensor**

- 1 - ECT SENSOR
- 2 - MOUNTING BOLTS (2)
- 3 - MAP SENSOR
- 4 - INTAKE MANIFOLD

## INSTALLATION

## INSTALLATION - 4.0L ENGINE

- (1) Install sensor.
- (2) Tighten to 11 N·m (8 ft. lbs.) torque.
- (3) Connect electrical connector to sensor.
- (4) Replace any lost engine coolant. (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

## INSTALLATION—4.7L ENGINE

- (1) Install sensor.
- (2) Tighten to 11 N·m (8 ft. lbs.) torque.
- (3) Connect electrical connector to sensor.
- (4) Replace any lost engine coolant. (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

## ENGINE COOLANT THERMOSTAT

## DESCRIPTION

## DESCRIPTION - 4.7L ENGINE

**CAUTION:** Do not operate an engine without a thermostat, except for servicing or testing.

A pellet-type thermostat controls the operating temperature of the engine by controlling the amount of coolant flow to the radiator. On all engines the thermostat is closed below 195°F (90°C). Above this temperature, coolant is allowed to flow to the radiator. This provides quick engine warm up and overall temperature control (Fig. 22).

The same thermostat is used for winter and summer seasons. An engine should not be operated without a thermostat, except for servicing or testing. Operating without a thermostat causes other problems. These are: longer engine warmup time, unreliable warmup performance, increased exhaust emissions and crankcase condensation. This condensation can result in sludge formation.

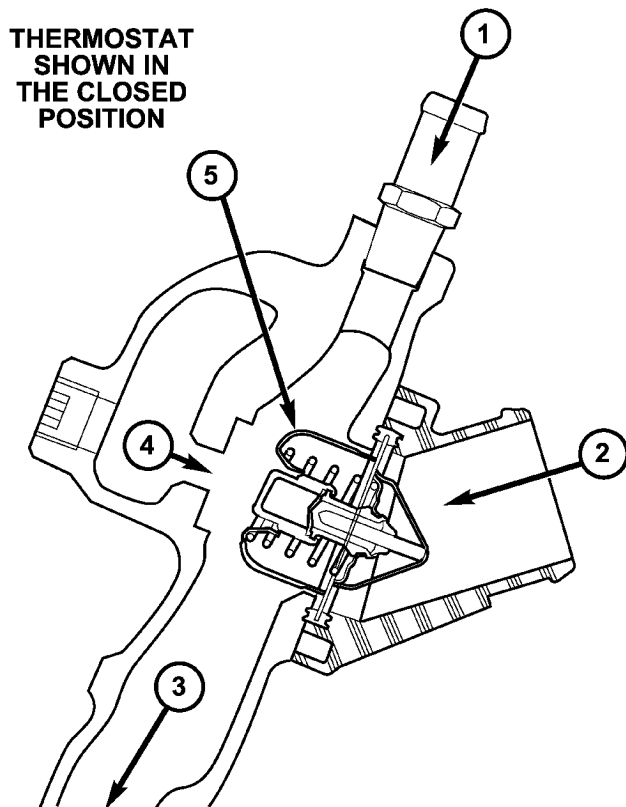
## DESCRIPTION - 4.0L ENGINE

**CAUTION:** Do not operate an engine without a thermostat, except for servicing or testing.

A pellet-type thermostat controls the operating temperature of the engine by controlling the amount of coolant flow to the radiator. On all engines the thermostat is closed below 195°F (90°C). Above this temperature, coolant is allowed to flow to the radiator. This provides quick engine warm up and overall temperature control. (Fig. 23).



## ENGINE COOLANT THERMOSTAT (Continued)

**Fig. 22 Thermostat**

- 1 - FROM HEATER
- 2 - FROM RADIATOR
- 3 - TO WATER PUMP
- 4 - ENGINE BYPASS
- 5 - THERMOSTAT

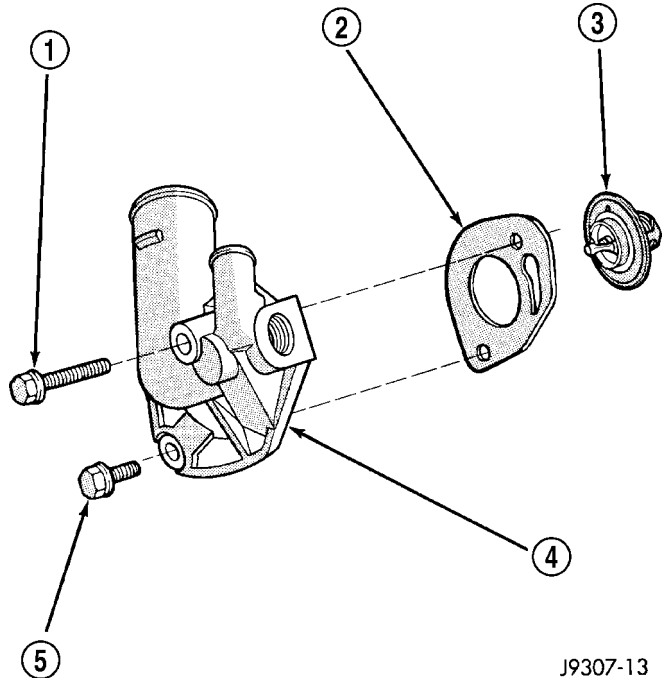
The same thermostat is used for winter and summer seasons. An engine should not be operated without a thermostat, except for servicing or testing. Operating without a thermostat causes other problems. These are: longer engine warmup time, unreliable warmup performance, increased exhaust emissions and crankcase condensation. This condensation can result in sludge formation.

**OPERATION**

The wax pellet is located in a sealed container at the spring end of the thermostat. When heated, the pellet expands, overcoming closing spring tension and water pump pressure to force the valve to open.

**DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - THERMOSTAT****ON-BOARD DIAGNOSTICS**

All models are equipped with On-Board Diagnostics for certain cooling system components. If the powertrain control module (PCM) detects low engine coolant temperature, it will record a Diagnostic Trou-

**Fig. 23 Thermostat and Housing**

- 1 - LONG BOLT
- 2 - GASKET
- 3 - THERMOSTAT
- 4 - THERMOSTAT HOUSING
- 5 - SHORT BOLT

ble Code (DTC). For other DTC numbers, (Refer to 25 - EMISSIONS CONTROL - DESCRIPTION).

The DTC can also be accessed through the DRB scan tool.

**REMOVAL****REMOVAL - 4.0L ENGINE**

**WARNING: DO NOT LOOSEN THE RADIATOR DRAINCOCK WITH THE SYSTEM HOT AND PRESSURIZED. SERIOUS BURNS FROM THE COOLANT CAN OCCUR.**

Do not waste reusable coolant. If the solution is clean, drain the coolant into a clean container for reuse.

(1) Drain the coolant from the radiator until the level is below the thermostat housing (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

**WARNING: CONSTANT TENSION HOSE CLAMPS ARE USED ON MOST COOLING SYSTEM HOSES. WHEN REMOVING OR INSTALLING, USE ONLY TOOLS DESIGNED FOR SERVICING THIS TYPE OF CLAMP, SUCH AS SPECIAL CLAMP TOOL (NUMBER 6094) (Fig. 51). ALWAYS WEAR SAFETY GLASSES WHEN SERVICING CONSTANT TENSION CLAMPS.**

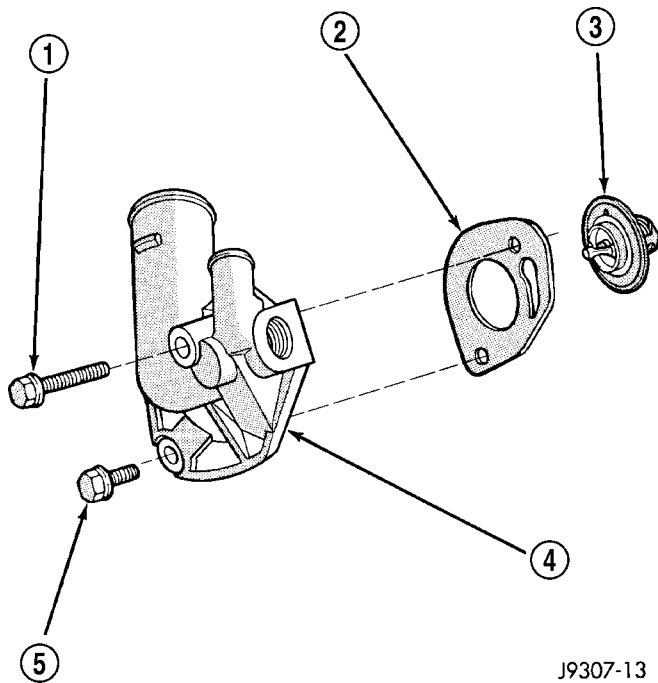
## ENGINE COOLANT THERMOSTAT (Continued)

**CAUTION:** A number or letter is stamped into the tongue of constant tension clamps. If replacement is necessary, use only an original equipment clamp with matching number or letter.

(2) Remove radiator upper hose and heater hose at thermostat housing.

(3) Disconnect wiring connector at engine coolant temperature sensor.

(4) Remove thermostat housing mounting bolts, thermostat housing, gasket and thermostat (Fig. 24). Discard old gasket.



**Fig. 24 Thermostat**

- 1 - LONG BOLT
- 2 - GASKET
- 3 - THERMOSTAT
- 4 - THERMOSTAT HOUSING
- 5 - SHORT BOLT

(5) Clean the gasket mating surfaces.

## REMOVAL - 4.7L ENGINE

**WARNING:** DO NOT LOOSEN RADIATOR DRAINCOCK WITH SYSTEM HOT AND PRESSURIZED. SERIOUS BURNS FROM COOLANT CAN OCCUR.

Do not waste reusable coolant. If solution is clean, drain coolant into a clean container for reuse.

If thermostat is being replaced, be sure that replacement is specified thermostat for vehicle model and engine type.

(1) Disconnect negative battery cable at battery.

(2) Drain cooling system (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

(3) Raise vehicle on hoist.

(4) Remove splash shield.

(5) Remove lower radiator hose clamp and lower radiator hose at thermostat housing.

(6) Remove thermostat housing mounting bolts, thermostat housing and thermostat (Fig. 25).

## INSTALLATION

## INSTALLATION - 4.0L ENGINE

(1) Install the replacement thermostat so that the pellet, which is encircled by a coil spring, faces the engine. All thermostats are marked on the outer flange to indicate the proper installed position.

(a) Observe the recess groove in the engine cylinder head (Fig. 26).

(b) Position thermostat in groove with arrow and air bleed hole on outer flange pointing up.

(2) Install replacement gasket and thermostat housing.

**CAUTION:** Tightening the thermostat housing unevenly or with the thermostat out of its recess, may result in a cracked housing.

(3) Tighten the housing bolts to 22 N·m (16 ft. lbs.) torque.

(4) Install hoses to thermostat housing.

(5) Install electrical connector to coolant temperature sensor.

(6) Be sure that the radiator draincock is tightly closed. Fill the cooling system to the correct level with the required coolant mixture (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

(7) Start and warm the engine. Check for leaks.

## INSTALLATION - 4.7L ENGINE

(1) Clean mating areas of timing chain cover and thermostat housing.

(2) Install thermostat (spring side down) into recessed machined groove on timing chain cover (Fig. 25).

(3) Position thermostat housing on timing chain cover.

(4) Install two housing-to-timing chain cover bolts. Tighten bolts to 13 N·m (115 in. lbs.) torque.

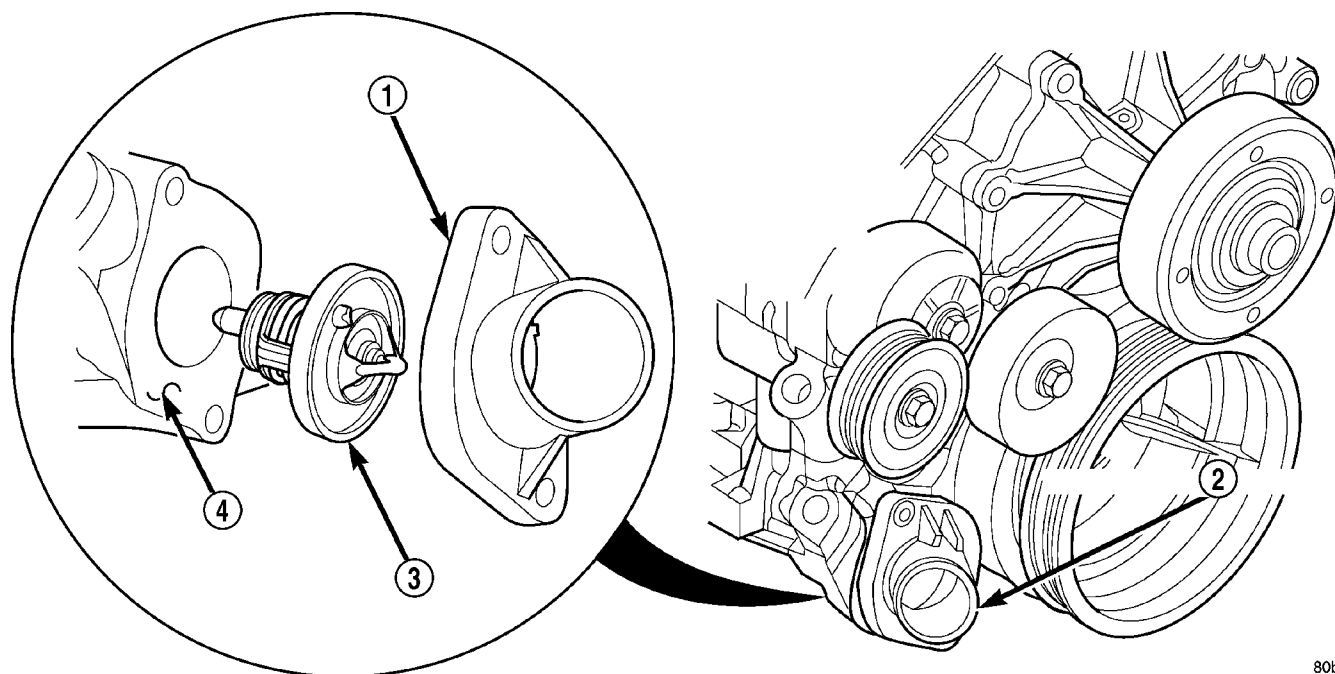
**CAUTION:** Housing must be tightened evenly and thermostat must be centered into recessed groove in timing chain cover. If not, it may result in a cracked housing, damaged timing chain cover threads or coolant leaks.

(5) Install lower radiator hose on thermostat housing.

(6) Install splash shield.



## ENGINE COOLANT THERMOSTAT (Continued)

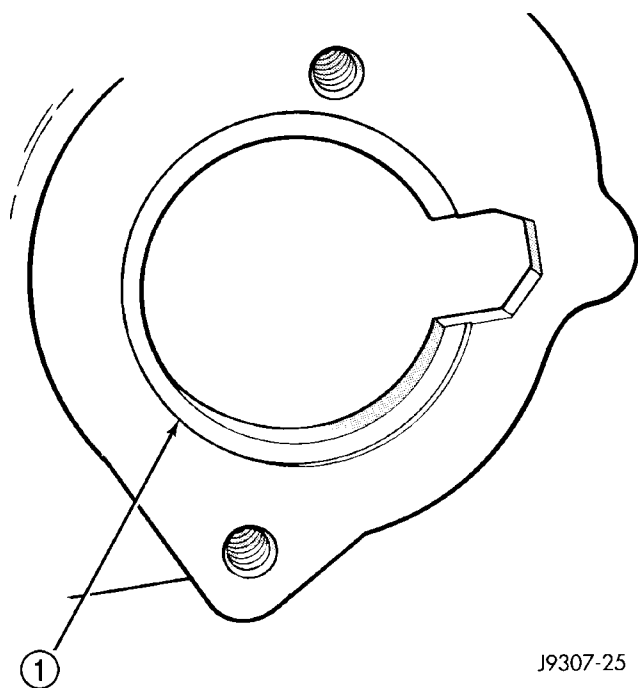


80b3b198

**Fig. 25 Thermostat and Thermostat Housing**

1 - THERMOSTAT HOUSING  
2 - THERMOSTAT LOCATION

3 - THERMOSTAT AND GASKET  
4 - TIMING CHAIN COVER



J9307-25

**Fig. 26 Thermostat Recess**

1 - GROOVE

- (7) Lower vehicle.  
(8) Fill cooling system (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).  
(9) Connect negative battery cable to battery.  
(10) Start and warm the engine. Check for leaks.

## FAN DRIVE VISCOUS CLUTCH - 4.0L

### DESCRIPTION

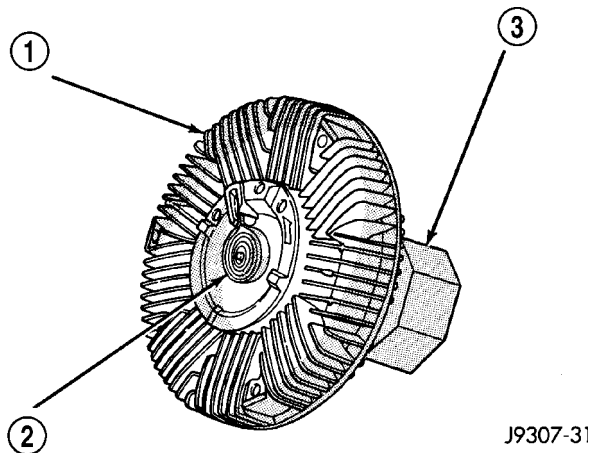
**CAUTION:** Engines equipped with serpentine drive belts have reverse rotating fans and viscous fan drives. They are marked with the word **REVERSE** to designate their usage. Installation of the wrong fan or viscous fan drive can result in engine overheating.

**CAUTION:** If the viscous fan drive is replaced because of mechanical damage, the cooling fan blades should also be inspected. Inspect for fatigue cracks, loose blades, or loose rivets that could have resulted from excessive vibration. Replace fan blade assembly if any of these conditions are found. Also inspect water pump bearing and shaft assembly for any related damage due to a viscous fan drive malfunction.

The thermal viscous fan drive (Fig. 27) is a silicone-fluid-filled coupling used to connect the fan blades to the water pump shaft. The coupling allows the fan to be driven in a normal manner. This is done at low engine speeds while limiting the top speed of the fan to a predetermined maximum level at higher engine speeds.

## FAN DRIVE VISCOUS CLUTCH - 4.0L (Continued)

An electrical cooling fan located in the fan shroud aids in low speed cooling. It is designed to augment the viscous fan. However, it does not replace the viscous fan.



J9307-31

**Fig. 27 Viscous Fan Drive**

- 1 - VISCOUS FAN DRIVE
- 2 - THERMOSTATIC SPRING
- 3 - MOUNTING NUT TO WATER PUMP HUB

## OPERATION

A thermostatic bimetallic spring coil is located on the front face of the viscous fan drive unit (Fig. 27). This spring coil reacts to the temperature of the radiator discharge air. It engages the viscous fan drive for higher fan speed if the air temperature from the radiator rises above a certain point. Until additional engine cooling is necessary, **the fan will remain at a reduced rpm regardless of engine speed. Normally less than three hundred (300) rpm.**

Only when sufficient heat is present, will the viscous fan drive engage. This is when the air flowing through the radiator core causes a reaction to the bimetallic coil. It then increases fan speed to provide the necessary additional engine cooling.

Once the engine has cooled, the radiator discharge temperature will drop. The bimetallic coil again reacts and the fan speed is reduced to the previous disengaged speed.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - VISCOUS FAN DRIVE

If the fan assembly free-wheels without drag (the fan blades will revolve more than five turns when spun by hand), replace the fan drive. This spin test must be performed when the engine is cool.

For the following test, the cooling system must be in good condition. It also will ensure against excessively high coolant temperature.

**WARNING: BE SURE THAT THERE IS ADEQUATE FAN BLADE CLEARANCE BEFORE DRILLING.**

(1) Drill a 3.18-mm (1/8-in) diameter hole in the top center of the fan shroud.

(2) Obtain a dial thermometer with an 8 inch stem (or equivalent). It should have a range of -18° - 105°C (0° - 220° F). Insert thermometer through the hole in the shroud. Be sure that there is adequate clearance from the fan blades.

(3) Connect a tachometer and an engine ignition timing light (timing light is to be used as a strobe light).

(4) Block the air flow through the radiator. Secure a sheet of plastic in front of the radiator (or air conditioner condenser). Use tape at the top to secure the plastic and be sure that the air flow is blocked.

(5) Be sure that the air conditioner (if equipped) is turned off.

**WARNING: USE EXTREME CAUTION WHEN THE ENGINE IS OPERATING. DO NOT STAND IN A DIRECT LINE WITH THE FAN. DO NOT PUT YOUR HANDS NEAR THE PULLEYS, BELTS OR FAN. DO NOT WEAR LOOSE CLOTHING.**

(6) Start the engine and operate at 2400 rpm. Within ten minutes the air temperature (indicated on the dial thermometer) should be up to 93° C (200° F). Fan drive **engagement** should have started to occur at between 91° - 96° C (195° - 205° F). Engagement is distinguishable by a definite **increase** in fan flow noise (roaring). The timing light also will indicate an increase in the speed of the fan.

(7) When the air temperature reaches 93° C (200° F), remove the plastic sheet. Fan drive **disengagement** should have started to occur at between 62° - 85° C (145° - 185° F). A definite **decrease** of fan flow noise (roaring) should be noticed. If not, replace the defective viscous fan drive unit.

## PWM FAN CONTROL MODULE - 4.0L

### DESCRIPTION

The pulse width modulated (PWM) radiator cooling fan relay is located behind the front bumper fascia below the right headlamp.

### OPERATION

The PWM relay is used to control the speed of the electric radiator cooling fan. It allows for multiple fan speeds. This allows for improved fan noise and A/C performance, better engine cooling, and additional vehicle power.

PWM relay operation is controlled by the Powertrain Control Module (PCM). To operate the PWM relay, the PCM looks at inputs from:

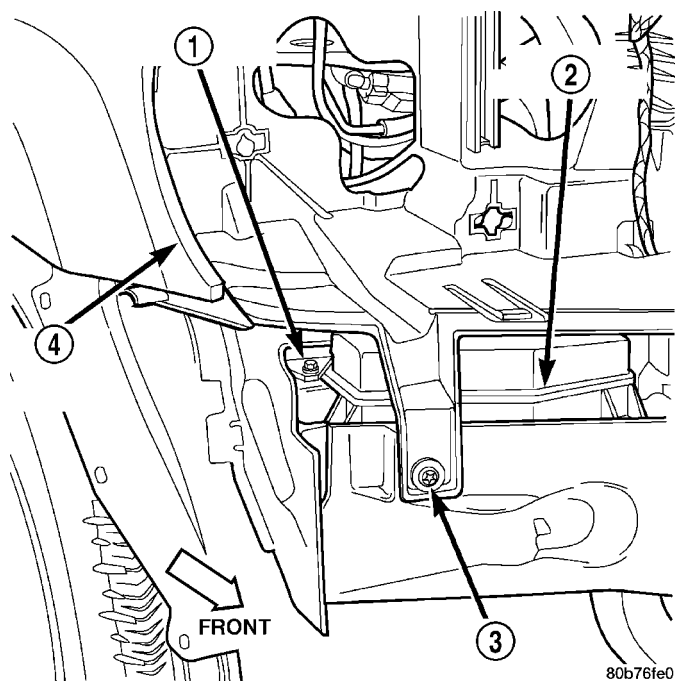
## PWM FAN CONTROL MODULE - 4.0L (Continued)

- Engine coolant temperature
- Ambient temperature from the body controller
- Vehicle speed
- Transmission oil temperature
- A/C switch position (A/C request)

**REMOVAL**

The Pulse Width Modulated (PWM) cooling fan relay is located below the right headlamp behind the bumper fascia (Fig. 28).

- (1) Remove front bumper and grill assembly.
- (2) Remove 1 support bolt near front of reservoir (Fig. 28).
- (3) Remove 2 reservoir mounting bolts.
- (4) Remove reservoir from vehicle to gain access to vacuum hose (Fig. 29). Disconnect vacuum hose from reservoir fitting at rear of reservoir.
- (5) Disconnect electrical connector at relay (Fig. 30).
- (6) Remove 2 relay mounting bolts (Fig. 30) and remove relay.

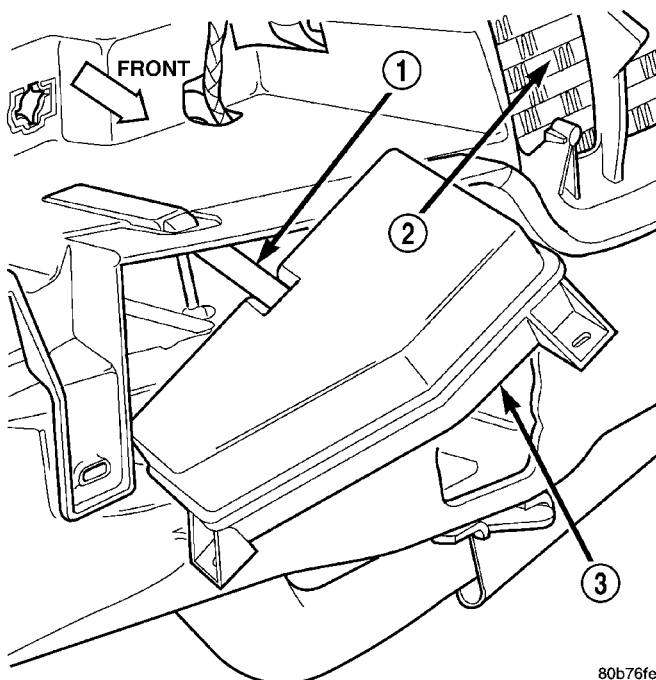


**Fig. 28 Radiator Cooling Fan Relay Location**

- 1 - RADIATOR FAN RELAY
- 2 - VACUUM RESERVOIR
- 3 - BOLT
- 4 - RIGHT FRONT FENDER

**INSTALLATION**

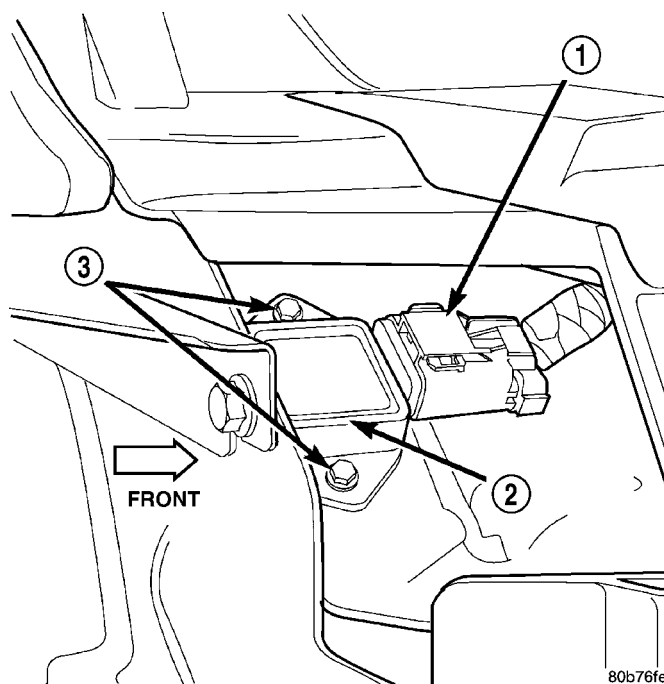
- (1) Position relay to body and install 2 bolts. Tighten bolts to 3 N·m (25 in. lbs.) torque.
- (2) Connect electrical connector to relay.
- (3) Connect vacuum hose to reservoir.
- (4) Install reservoir and tighten 2 bolts to 3 N·m (25 in. lbs.) torque.



80b76fe1

**Fig. 29 Vacuum Reservoir Removal/Installation**

- 1 - VACUUM HOSE
- 2 - RADIATOR
- 3 - VACUUM RESERVOIR



80b76fe2

**Fig. 30 Radiator Cooling Fan Relay Removal/Installation**

- 1 - ELECTRICAL CONNECTOR
- 2 - RADIATOR FAN RELAY
- 3 - MOUNTING BOLTS (2)

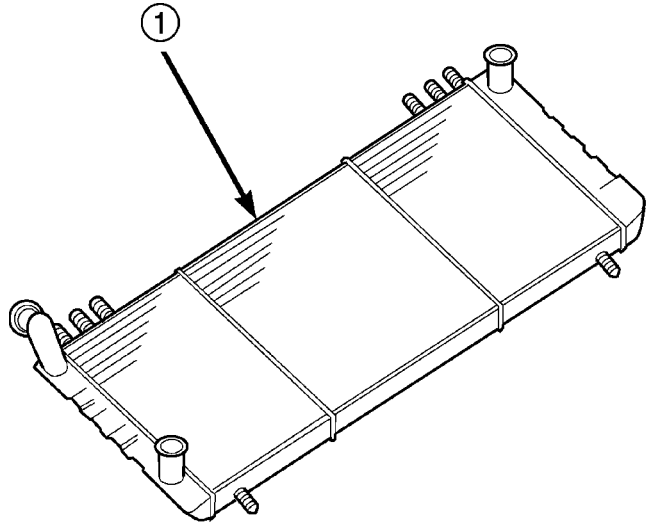
- (5) Install front bumper and grill assembly.

## RADIATOR

### DESCRIPTION

All vehicles are equipped with a cross flow type radiator with plastic side tanks (Fig. 31).

Plastic tanks, while stronger than brass, are subject to damage by impact, such as from tools or wrenches. Handle radiator with care.



80be469f

**Fig. 31 Cross Flow Radiator - Typical**

1 - RADIATOR

### REMOVAL

#### REMOVAL - 4.7L

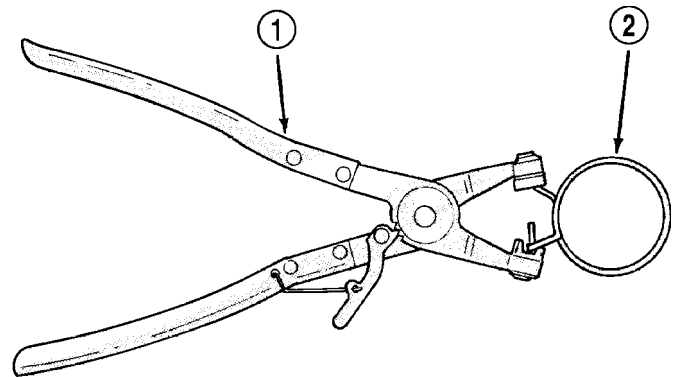
**WARNING: DO NOT REMOVE THE CYLINDER BLOCK DRAIN PLUGS OR LOOSEN THE RADIATOR DRAINCOCK WITH THE SYSTEM HOT AND UNDER PRESSURE. SERIOUS BURNS FROM COOLANT CAN OCCUR. REFER TO COOLING SYSTEM DRAINING.**

Do not waste reusable coolant. If the solution is clean, drain the coolant into a clean container for reuse.

**WARNING: CONSTANT TENSION HOSE CLAMPS ARE USED ON MOST COOLING SYSTEM HOSES. WHEN REMOVING OR INSTALLING, USE ONLY TOOLS DESIGNED FOR SERVICING THIS TYPE OF CLAMP, SUCH AS SPECIAL CLAMP TOOL (NUMBER 6094) (Fig. 32). ALWAYS WEAR SAFETY GLASSES WHEN SERVICING CONSTANT TENSION CLAMPS.**

**CAUTION: A number or letter is stamped into the tongue of constant tension clamps (Fig. 33). If**

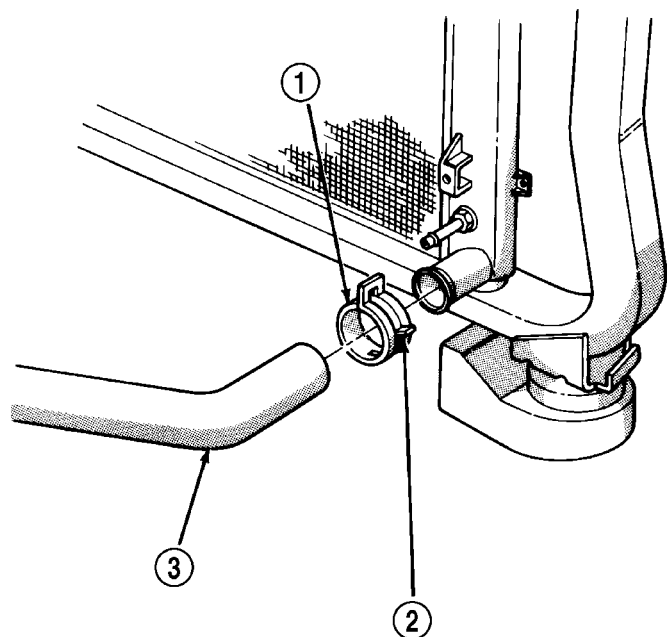
**replacement is necessary, use only an original equipment clamp with matching number or letter.**



J9207-36

**Fig. 32 Hose Clamp Tool - Typical**

1 - HOSE CLAMP TOOL 6094  
2 - HOSE CLAMP



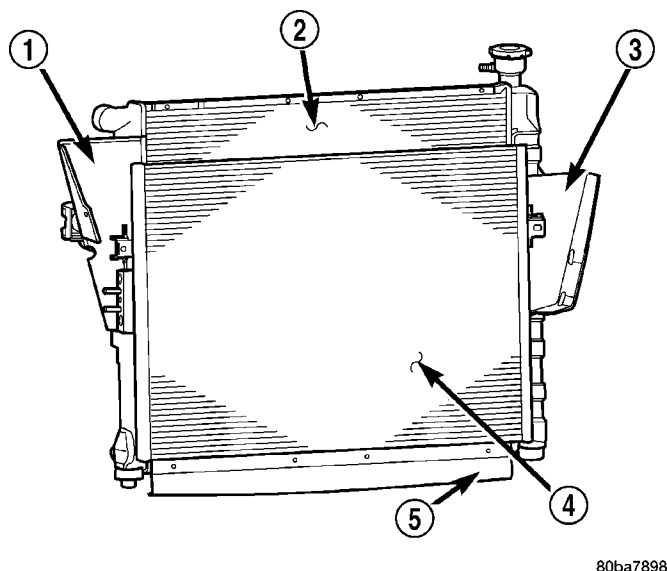
J9407-39

**Fig. 33 Clamp Number/Letter Location - Typical**

1 - TYPICAL CONSTANT TENSION HOSE CLAMP  
2 - CLAMP NUMBER/LETTER LOCATION  
3 - TYPICAL HOSE

**CAUTION: When removing the radiator or A/C condenser for any reason, note the location of all radiator-to-body and radiator-to-A/C condenser rubber air seals (Fig. 34). These are used at the top, bottom and sides of the radiator and A/C condenser. To prevent overheating, these seals must be installed to their original positions.**

## RADIATOR (Continued)



80ba7898

**Fig. 34 Air Seals - Typical**

- 1 - AIR DAM
- 2 - RADIATOR
- 3 - AIR DAM
- 4 - A/C CONDENSER
- 5 - AIR SEAL

(1) Disconnect the negative battery cable at battery.

(2) Drain coolant from radiator (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

(3) Remove the front grill (Refer to 23 - BODY/EXTERIOR/GRILLE - REMOVAL).

(4) Remove two radiator mounting bolts.

(5) Disconnect both transmission cooler lines from radiator.

(6) Disconnect electrical connector for the fan control solenoid.

(7) Disconnect the power steering cooler line from cooler and filter.

(8) Disconnect the radiator upper and lower hoses.

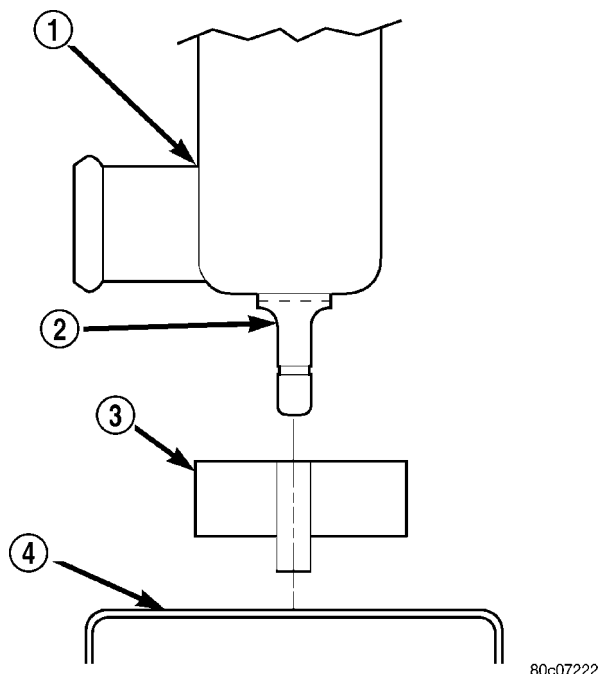
(9) Disconnect the overflow hose from radiator.

(10) Remove the air inlet duct at the grill.

(11) The lower part of radiator is equipped with two alignment dowel pins (Fig. 35). They are located on the bottom of radiator tank and fit into rubber grommets. These rubber grommets are pressed into the radiator lower crossmember.

**WARNING: THE AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED) IS UNDER A CONSTANT PRESSURE EVEN WITH THE ENGINE OFF. REFER TO REFRIGERANT WARNINGS IN, HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING BEFORE HANDLING ANY AIR CONDITIONING COMPONENT.**

**NOTE:** The radiator and radiator cooling fan can be removed as an assembly. It is not necessary to



80c07222

**Fig. 35 Radiator Alignment Dowels - Typical**

- 1 - RADIATOR
- 2 - ALIGNMENT DOWEL
- 3 - RADIATOR LOWER ISOLATOR
- 4 - RADIATOR LOWER CROSSMEMBER

**remove the cooling fan before removing or installing the radiator.**

(12) Disconnect the two high pressure fluid lines at the hydraulic fan drive.

(13) Disconnect the low pressure return hose at the hydraulic fan drive.

(14) Gently lift up and remove radiator from vehicle. Be careful not to scrape the radiator fins against any other component. Also be careful not to disturb the air conditioning condenser (if equipped).

**REMOVAL - 4.0L**

**WARNING: DO NOT REMOVE THE CYLINDER BLOCK DRAIN PLUGS OR LOOSEN THE RADIATOR DRAINCOCK WITH THE SYSTEM HOT AND UNDER PRESSURE. SERIOUS BURNS FROM COOLANT CAN OCCUR. REFER TO COOLING SYSTEM DRAINING.**

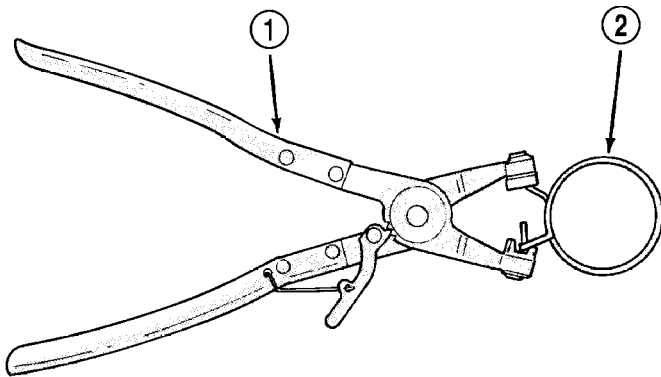
Do not waste reusable coolant. If the solution is clean, drain the coolant into a clean container for reuse.



## RADIATOR (Continued)

**WARNING: CONSTANT TENSION HOSE CLAMPS ARE USED ON MOST COOLING SYSTEM HOSES. WHEN REMOVING OR INSTALLING, USE ONLY TOOLS DESIGNED FOR SERVICING THIS TYPE OF CLAMP, SUCH AS SPECIAL CLAMP TOOL (NUMBER 6094) (Fig. 36). SNAP-ON CLAMP TOOL (NUMBER HPC-20) MAY BE USED FOR LARGER CLAMPS. ALWAYS WEAR SAFETY GLASSES WHEN SERVICING CONSTANT TENSION CLAMPS.**

**CAUTION: A number or letter is stamped into the tongue of constant tension clamps (Fig. 37). If replacement is necessary, use only an original equipment clamp with matching number or letter.**



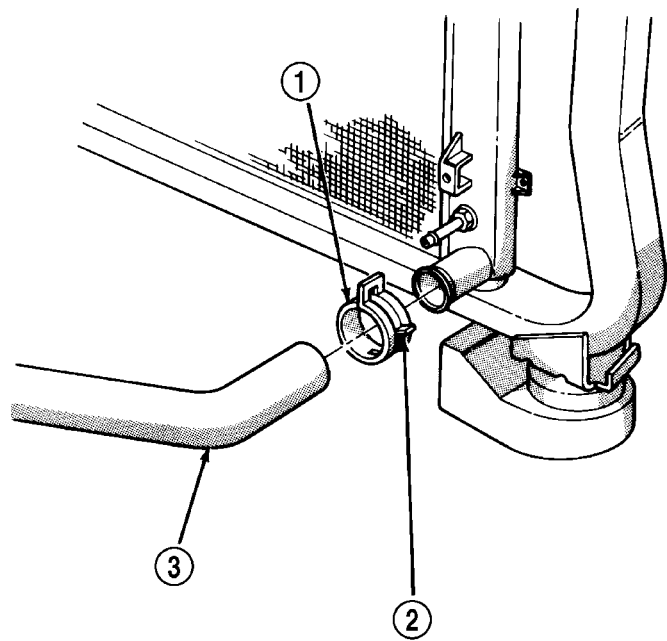
J9207-36

**Fig. 36 Hose Clamp Tool**

- 1 - HOSE CLAMP TOOL 6094
- 2 - HOSE CLAMP

**CAUTION: When removing the radiator or A/C condenser for any reason, note the location of all radiator-to-body and radiator-to-A/C condenser rubber air seals (Fig. 38). These are used at the top, bottom and sides of the radiator and A/C condenser. To prevent overheating, these seals must be installed to their original positions.**

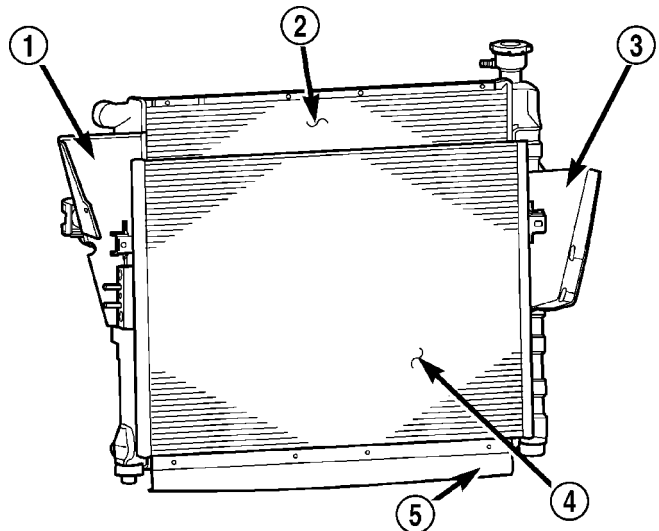
- (1) Disconnect the negative battery cable at battery.
- (2) Drain coolant from radiator (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).
- (3) Do not attempt to remove fan/viscous fan drive assembly from vehicle at this time.
- (4) Remove the front grill (Refer to 23 - BODY/EXTERIOR/GRILLE - REMOVAL).
- (5) Remove two radiator mounting bolts (Fig. 40).
- (6) Disconnect both transmission cooler lines from radiator.
- (7) Disconnect electric fan connector, then disconnect connector harness from shroud (Fig. 40).



J9407-39

**Fig. 37 Clamp Number/Letter Location**

- 1 - TYPICAL CONSTANT TENSION HOSE CLAMP
- 2 - CLAMP NUMBER/LETTER LOCATION
- 3 - TYPICAL HOSE



80ba7898

**Fig. 38 Air Seals - Typical**

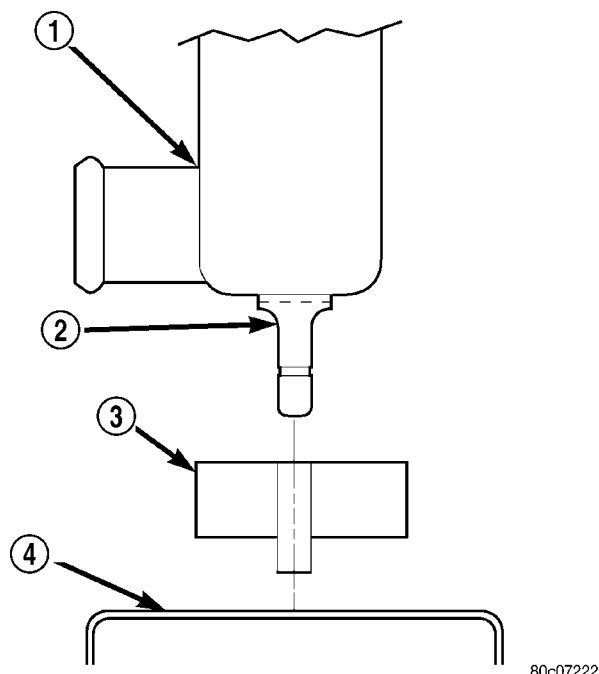
- 1 - AIR DAM
- 2 - RADIATOR
- 3 - AIR DAM
- 4 - A/C CONDENSER
- 5 - AIR SEAL

- (8) Disconnect the radiator upper and lower hoses (Fig. 40).
- (9) Disconnect the overflow hose from radiator (Fig. 40).
- (10) Remove the air inlet duct at the grill.



## RADIATOR (Continued)

(11) The lower part of radiator is equipped with two alignment dowel pins (Fig. 39). They are located on the bottom of radiator tank and fit into rubber grommets. These rubber grommets are pressed into the radiator lower crossmember.



**Fig. 39 Radiator Alignment Dowels**

- 1 - RADIATOR
- 2 - ALIGNMENT DOWEL
- 3 - RADIATOR LOWER ISOLATOR
- 4 - RADIATOR LOWER CROSSMEMBER

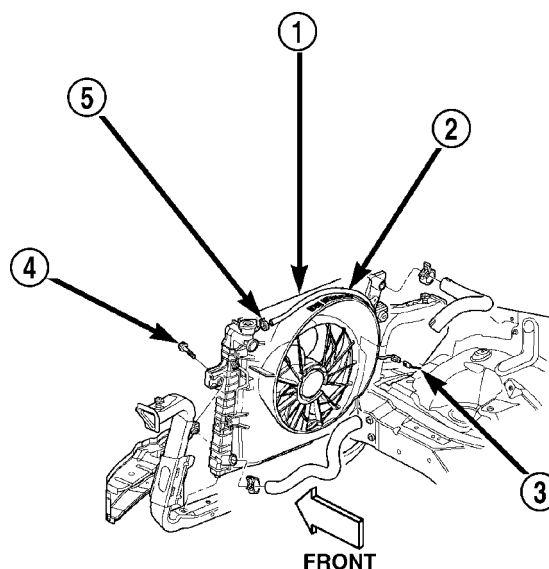
**WARNING: THE AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED) IS UNDER A CONSTANT PRESSURE EVEN WITH THE ENGINE OFF. REFER TO REFRIGERANT WARNINGS IN GROUP 24, HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING BEFORE HANDLING ANY AIR CONDITIONING COMPONENT.**

(12) If equipped with an auxiliary automatic transmission oil cooler, use caution when removing radiator. The oil cooler lines are routed through a rubber air seal on the right side of radiator. Do not cut or tear this seal.

(13) Gently lift up and remove radiator from vehicle. Be careful not to scrape the radiator fins against any other component. Also be careful not to disturb the air conditioning condenser (if equipped).

## CLEANING

Clean radiator fins With the engine cold, apply cold water and compressed air to the back (engine side) of the radiator to flush the radiator and/or A/C condenser of debris.



80b898de

**Fig. 40 Radiator, Shroud and Electric Fan - 4.0L Engine**

- 1 - RADIATOR/SHROUD/FAN ASSEMBLY
- 2 - OVER FLOW HOSE
- 3 - ELECTRIC FAN CONNECTOR
- 4 - RADIATOR MOUNTING BOLT(S)
- 5 - CLAMP

## INSPECTION

The radiator cooling fins should be checked for damage or deterioration. Inspect cooling fins to make sure they are not bent or crushed, these areas result in reduced heat exchange causing the cooling system to operate at higher temperatures. Inspect the plastic end tanks for cracks, damage or leaks.

Inspect the radiator neck for damage or distortion.

## INSTALLATION

### INSTALLATION - 4.7L

**CAUTION:** Before installing the radiator or A/C condenser, be sure the radiator-to-body and radiator-to-A/C condenser rubber air seals (Fig. 34) are properly fastened to their original positions. These are used at the top, bottom and sides of the radiator and A/C condenser. To prevent overheating, these seals must be installed to their original positions.

(1) Equipped with air conditioning: Gently lower the radiator and fan shroud into the vehicle. Guide the two radiator alignment dowels through the holes in the rubber air seals first and then through the A/C support brackets (Fig. 35). Continue to guide the alignment dowels into the rubber grommets located

## RADIATOR (Continued)

in lower radiator crossmember. The holes in the L-shaped brackets (located on bottom of A/C condenser) must be positioned between bottom of rubber air seals and top of rubber grommets.

(2) Connect the radiator upper and lower hoses and hose clamps to radiator.

**CAUTION: The tangs on the hose clamps must be positioned straight down.**

(3) Install coolant reserve/overflow tank hose at radiator.

(4) Connect both transmission cooler lines at the radiator.

(5) Install both radiator mounting bolts.

(6) Install air inlet duct at grill.

(7) Attach electric connector for hydraulic fan control solenoid.

(8) Install the grill (Refer to 23 - BODY/EXTERIOR/GRILLE - INSTALLATION).

(9) Connect the two high pressure lines to the hydraulic fan drive. Tighten ½ in. pressure line fitting to 49 N·m (36 ft. lbs.) and the 3/8 in. pressure line fitting to 29 N·m (21.5 ft. lbs.).

(10) Connect the low pressure hose to the hydraulic fan drive. Position the spring clamp.

(11) Connect the power steering filter hoses to the filter. Install new hose clamps.

(12) Rotate the fan blades (by hand) and check for interference at fan shroud.

(13) Refill cooling system (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

(14) Refill the power steering reservoir and bleed air from system (Refer to 19 - STEERING/PUMP - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

(15) Connect battery cable at battery.

(16) Start and warm engine. Check for leaks.

## INSTALLATION - 4.0L

**CAUTION: Before installing the radiator or A/C condenser, be sure the radiator-to-body and radiator-to-A/C condenser rubber air seals (Fig. 34) are properly fastened to their original positions. These are used at the top, bottom and sides of the radiator and A/C condenser. To prevent overheating, these seals must be installed to their original positions.**

(1) Equipped with air conditioning: Gently lower the radiator into the vehicle. Guide the two radiator alignment dowels through the holes in the rubber air seals first and then through the A/C support brackets (Fig. 35). Continue to guide the alignment dowels into the rubber grommets located in lower radiator crossmember. The holes in the L-shaped brackets (located on bottom of A/C condenser) must be posi-

tioned between bottom of rubber air seals and top of rubber grommets.

(2) Connect the radiator upper and lower hoses and hose clamps to radiator.

**CAUTION: The tangs on the hose clamps must be positioned straight down.**

(3) Install coolant reserve/overflow tank hose at radiator (Fig. 40).

(4) Connect both transmission cooler lines at the radiator.

(5) Install both radiator mounting bolts.

(6) Install air inlet duct at grill.

(7) Attach electric fan harness to shroud, then connect harness to connector (Fig. 40).

(8) Install the grill (Refer to 23 - BODY/EXTERIOR/GRILLE - INSTALLATION).

(9) Install the fan/viscous fan drive assembly to the water pump.

(10) Rotate the fan blades (by hand) and check for interference at fan shroud.

(11) Be sure of at least 25 mm (1.0 inch) between tips of fan blades and fan shroud.

(12) Fill cooling system (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

(13) Connect battery cable at battery.

(14) Start and warm engine. Check for leaks.

## RADIATOR FAN MOTOR

### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING—ELECTRIC COOLING FAN

The powertrain control module (PCM) will enter a diagnostic trouble code (DTC) in memory if it detects a problem in the auxiliary cooling fan relay or circuit. (Refer to 25 - EMISSIONS CONTROL - DESCRIPTION).

If the electric cooling fan is inoperative, check the 15A fuse in the junction block and the 40A fuse in the Power Distribution Center (PDC) with a 12 volt test lamp or DVOM. Refer to the inside of the PDC cover for the exact location of the fuse. If fuses are okay, refer to ELECTRICAL SCHEMATICS for the cooling fan and relay circuit schematic.

## WATER PUMP - 4.7L

### DESCRIPTION

#### DESCRIPTION - WATER PUMP - 4.7L

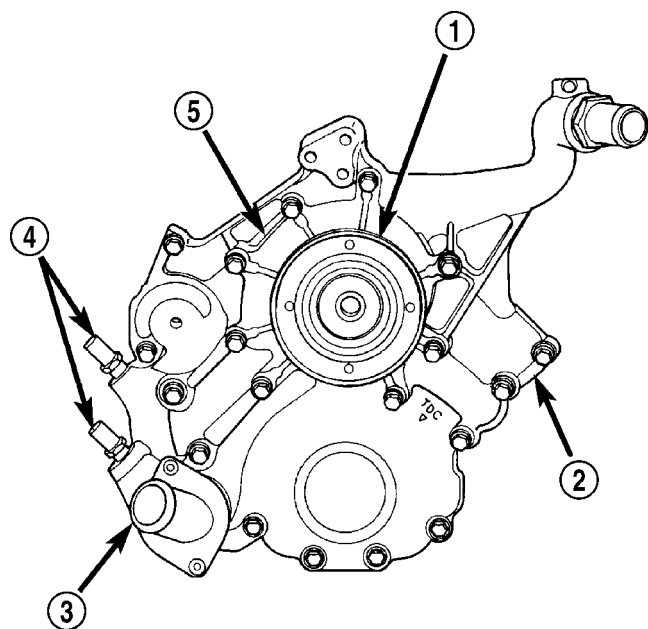
A centrifugal water pump circulates coolant through the water jackets, passages, intake manifold, radiator core, cooling system hoses and heater core.

## WATER PUMP - 4.7L (Continued)

The pump is driven from the engine crankshaft by a single serpentine drive belt.

The water pump impeller is pressed onto the rear of a shaft that rotates in bearings pressed into the housing. The housing has two small holes to allow seepage to escape. The water pump seals are lubricated by the antifreeze in the coolant mixture. No additional lubrication is necessary.

Both heater hoses are connected to fittings on the timing chain front cover. The water pump is also mounted directly to the timing chain cover and is equipped with a non serviceable integral pulley (Fig. 41).



80b89884

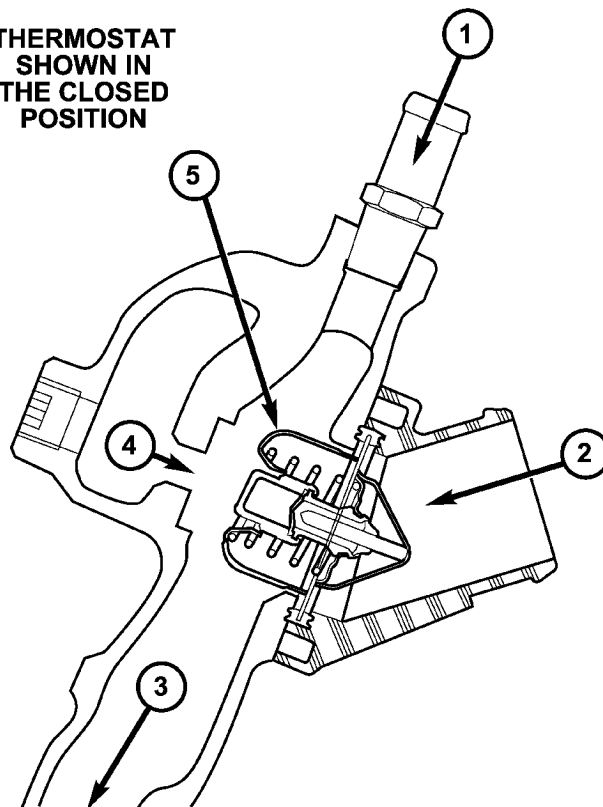
**Fig. 41 Water Pump and Timing Chain Cover - 4.7L**

- 1 - INTEGRAL WATER PUMP PULLEY
- 2 - TIMING CHAIN COVER
- 3 - THERMOSTAT HOUSING
- 4 - HEATER HOSE FITTINGS
- 5 - WATER PUMP

## DESCRIPTION - WATER PUMP BYPASS

The 4.7L engine uses an internal water/coolant bypass system. The design uses galleries in the timing chain cover to circulate coolant during engine warm-up preventing the coolant from flowing through the radiator. The thermostat uses a stub shaft located at the rear of the thermostat (Fig. 42) to control flow through the bypass gallery.

### THERMOSTAT SHOWN IN THE CLOSED POSITION



808a025e

**Fig. 42 Water/Coolant Bypass Flow and Thermostat**

- 1 - FROM HEATER
- 2 - FROM RADIATOR
- 3 - TO WATER PUMP
- 4 - ENGINE BYPASS
- 5 - THERMOSTAT

## OPERATION

### OPERATION - WATER PUMP

A centrifugal water pump circulates coolant through the water jackets, passages, intake manifold, radiator core, cooling system hoses and heater core, this coolant absorbs the heat generated when the engine is running. The pump is driven by the engine crankshaft via a drive belt.

### OPERATION - WATER PUMP BYPASS

When the thermostat is in the closed position the bypass gallery is not obstructed allowing 100% flow. When the thermostat is in the open position the pill partially covers the bypass hole, reducing the amount of bypass flow. This design allows the coolant to reach operating temperature quickly when cold, while adding extra cooling during normal temperature operation.

## WATER PUMP - 4.7L (Continued)

**DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - WATER PUMP****LOOSE IMPELLER - 4.0L and 4.7L**

**NOTE:** Due to the design of the 4.0L and 4.7L engine water pumps, testing the pump for a loose impeller must be done by verifying coolant flow in the radiator. To accomplish this refer to the following procedure.

DO NOT WASTE reusable coolant. If solution is clean, drain coolant into a clean container for reuse.

(1) Drain coolant until the first row of cores is visible in the radiator (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE) 4.7L Engine or (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE) 4.0L Engine.

(2) Leaving the radiator cap off, start the engine. Run engine until thermostat opens.

(3) While looking into the radiator through the radiator fill neck, raise engine rpm to 2000 RPM. Observe the flow of coolant from the first row of cores.

(4) If there is no flow or very little flow visible, replace the water pump.

**INSPECTING FOR INLET RESTRICTIONS**

Inadequate heater performance may be caused by a metal casting restriction in the heater hose inlet.

DO NOT WASTE reusable coolant. If solution is clean, drain the coolant into a clean container for reuse.

**WARNING: DO NOT LOOSEN THE RADIATOR DRAINCOCK WITH THE SYSTEM HOT AND UNDER PRESSURE. SERIOUS BURNS FROM THE COOLANT CAN OCCUR.**

(1) Drain sufficient coolant from the radiator to decrease the level below the heater hose inlet. On 4.7L engines this requires complete draining.

(2) Remove the heater hose.

(3) Inspect the inlet for metal casting flash or other restrictions.

**NOTE:** On 4.0L engines remove the pump from the engine before removing restriction to prevent contamination of the coolant with debris. On 4.7L engine remove the fitting from the timing chain cover, If the restriction is in the timing chain cover, remove the timing chain cover.

**REMOVAL**

The water pump on 4.7L engines is bolted directly to the engine timing chain case/cover.

A gasket is used as a seal between the water pump and timing chain case/cover.

The water pump can be removed without discharging the air conditioning system (if equipped).

(1) Disconnect negative battery cable from battery.

(2) Drain cooling system (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE). Do not waste reusable coolant. If solution is clean, drain coolant into a clean container for reuse.

**WARNING: CONSTANT TENSION HOSE CLAMPS ARE USED ON MOST COOLING SYSTEM HOSES. WHEN REMOVING OR INSTALLING, USE ONLY TOOLS DESIGNED FOR SERVICING THIS TYPE OF CLAMP, SUCH AS SPECIAL CLAMP TOOL (NUMBER 6094). SNAP-ON CLAMP TOOL (NUMBER HPC-20) MAY BE USED FOR LARGER CLAMPS. ALWAYS WEAR SAFETY GLASSES WHEN SERVICING CONSTANT TENSION CLAMPS.**

**CAUTION:** A number or letter is stamped into the tongue of constant tension clamps. If replacement is necessary, use only an original equipment clamp with matching number or letter.

(3) Remove accessory drive belt (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - REMOVAL).

(4) Remove lower radiator hose clamp and remove lower hose at water pump.

(5) Remove seven water pump mounting bolts and one stud bolt.

**CAUTION:** Do not pry water pump at timing chain case/cover. The machined surfaces may be damaged resulting in leaks.

(6) Remove water pump and gasket. Discard gasket.

**CLEANING**

Clean the gasket mating surface. Use caution not to damage the gasket sealing surface.

**INSPECTION**

Inspect the water pump assembly for cracks in the housing, Water leaks from shaft seal, Loose or rough turning bearing or Impeller rubbing either the pump body or timing chain case/cover.

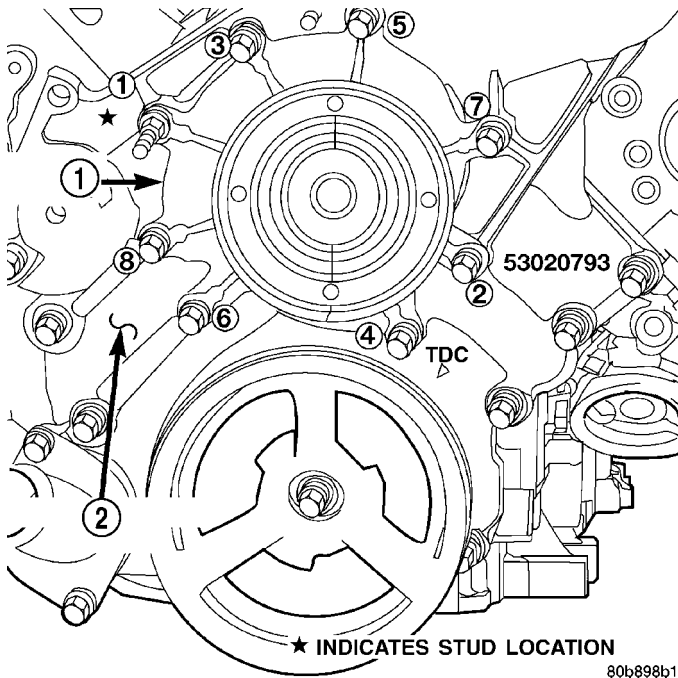
**INSTALLATION**

(1) Clean gasket mating surfaces.

(2) Using a new gasket, position water pump and install mounting bolts as shown. (Fig. 43). Tighten water pump mounting bolts to 58 N·m (43 ft. lbs.) torque.



## WATER PUMP - 4.7L (Continued)

**Fig. 43 Water Pump Installation**

- 1 - WATER PUMP  
2 - TIMING CHAIN COVER

(3) Spin water pump to be sure that pump impeller does not rub against timing chain case/cover.

(4) Connect radiator lower hose to water pump.

(5) Install accessory drive belt (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - INSTALLATION).

**CAUTION:** When installing the serpentine accessory drive belt, belt must be routed correctly. If not, engine may overheat due to water pump rotating in wrong direction.

(6) Refill cooling system (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

(7) Connect negative battery cable.

(8) Start and warm the engine. Check for leaks.

## WATER PUMP - 4.0L

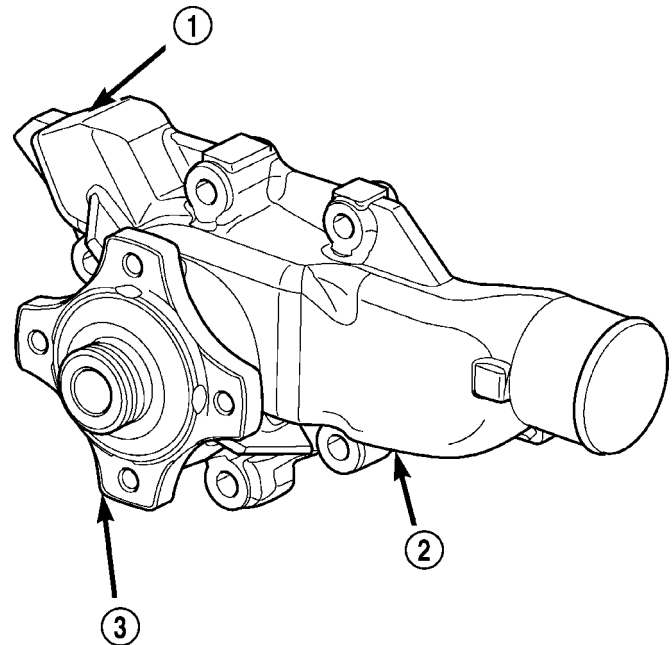
## DESCRIPTION

**CAUTION:** All 4.0L engines are equipped with a reverse (counterclockwise) rotating water pump and thermal viscous fan drive assembly. REVERSE is stamped or imprinted on the cover of the viscous fan drive and inner side of the fan. The letter R is stamped into the back of the water pump impeller. Engines from previous model years, depending upon application, may have been equipped with a forward (clockwise) rotating water pump. Installa-

tion of the wrong water pump or viscous fan drive will cause engine over heating.

A centrifugal water pump circulates coolant through the water jackets, passages, intake manifold, radiator core, cooling system hoses and heater core. The pump is driven from the engine crankshaft by a single serpentine drive belt.

The water pump impeller is pressed onto the rear of a shaft that rotates in bearings pressed into the housing. The housing has two small holes to allow seepage to escape. The water pump seals are lubricated by the antifreeze in the coolant mixture. No additional lubrication is necessary (Fig. 44).

**Fig. 44 Water Pump**

- 1 - HEATER HOSE FITTING BORE  
2 - WATER PUMP  
3 - WATER PUMP HUB

## REMOVAL

**CAUTION:** If the water pump is replaced because of mechanical damage, the fan blades and viscous fan drive should also be inspected. These components could have been damaged due to excessive vibration.

The water pump impeller is pressed on the rear of the pump shaft and bearing assembly. The water pump is serviced only as a complete assembly.

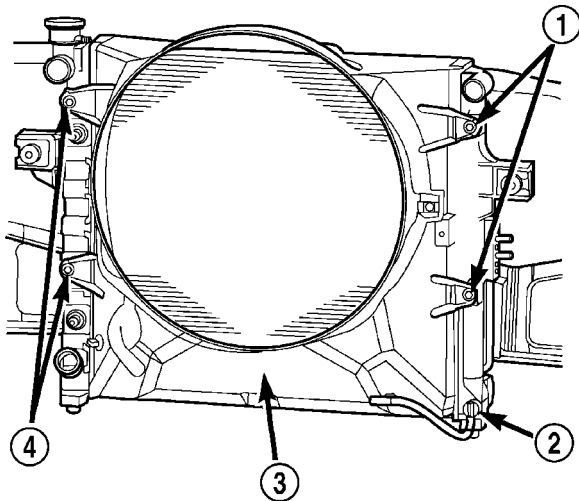
**NOTE:** The water pump can be replaced without discharging the A/C system.

## WATER PUMP - 4.0L (Continued)

**WARNING: DO NOT REMOVE THE BLOCK DRAIN PLUG(S) OR LOOSEN RADIATOR DRAINCOCK WITH THE SYSTEM HOT AND UNDER PRESSURE. SERIOUS BURNS FROM COOLANT CAN OCCUR.**

DO NOT WASTE reusable coolant. If the solution is clean, drain coolant into a clean container for reuse.

- (1) Disconnect negative battery cable at battery.
- (2) Drain the cooling system (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).
- (3) The thermal viscous fan drive is attached (threaded) to the water pump hub shaft. Remove fan/viscous fan drive assembly from water pump by turning mounting nut counterclockwise as viewed from front. Threads on viscous fan drive are **RIGHT HAND**. Do not attempt to remove fan/viscous fan drive assembly from vehicle at this time.
- (4) If water pump is being replaced, do not unbolt fan blade assembly from thermal viscous fan drive.
- (5) Remove fan shroud-to-radiator nuts (Fig. 45). Do not attempt to remove fan shroud at this time.



**Fig. 45 Fan Shroud Mounting**

- 1 - SHROUD FASTENERS
- 2 - DRAIN COCK
- 3 - RADIATOR FAN SHROUD
- 4 - SHROUD FASTENERS

(6) Remove fan shroud and fan blade/viscous fan drive assembly from vehicle as a complete unit.

(7) After removing fan blade/viscous fan drive assembly, **do not** place thermal viscous fan drive in horizontal position. If stored horizontally, silicone fluid in viscous fan drive could drain into its bearing assembly and contaminate lubricant.

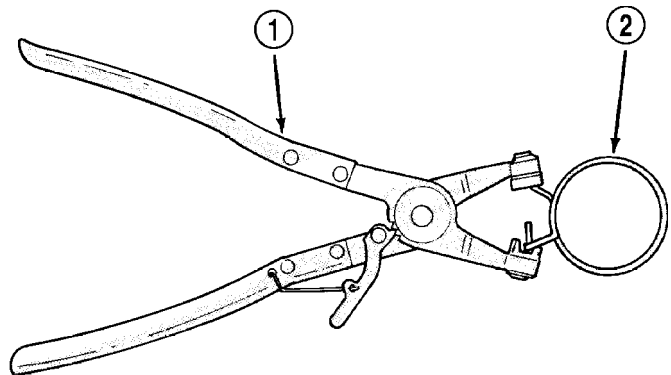
Loosen but do not remove the water pump pulley mounting bolts.

Remove accessory drive belt (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - REMOVAL).

Remove the water pump pulley.

(8) Remove the idler pulley (located over the water pump).

**WARNING: CONSTANT TENSION HOSE CLAMPS ARE USED ON MOST COOLING SYSTEM HOSES. WHEN REMOVING OR INSTALLING, USE ONLY TOOLS DESIGNED FOR SERVICING THIS TYPE OF CLAMP, SUCH AS SPECIAL CLAMP TOOL (NUMBER 6094) (Fig. 46). ALWAYS WEAR SAFETY GLASSES WHEN SERVICING CONSTANT TENSION CLAMPS.**



J9207-36

**Fig. 46 Hose Clamp Tool - Typical**

- 1 - HOSE CLAMP TOOL 6094
- 2 - HOSE CLAMP

**CAUTION: A number or letter is stamped into the tongue of constant tension clamps (Fig. 47). If replacement is necessary, use only an original equipment clamp with matching number or letter.**

(9) Remove lower radiator hose from water pump. Remove heater hose from water pump fitting.

(10) Remove the five pump mounting bolts (Fig. 48) and remove pump from vehicle. Discard old gasket. Note that one of the five bolts is longer than the other bolts.

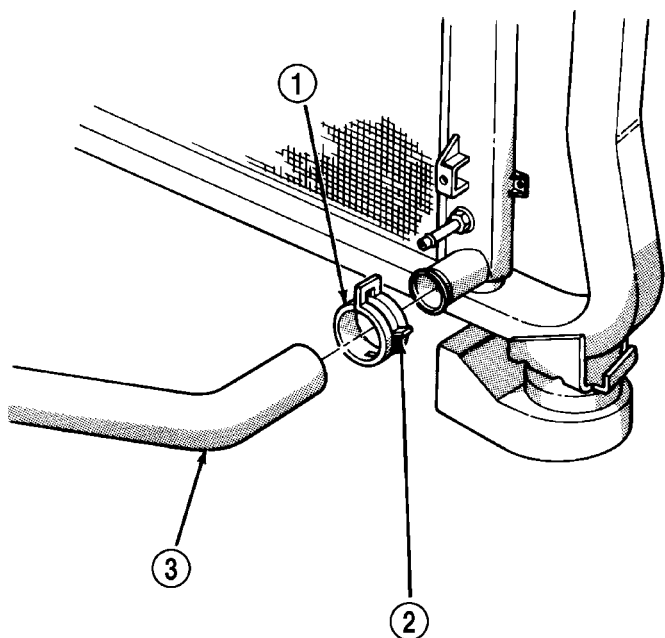
(11) If pump is to be replaced, the heater hose fitting must be removed. Note position of fitting before removal.

## CLEANING

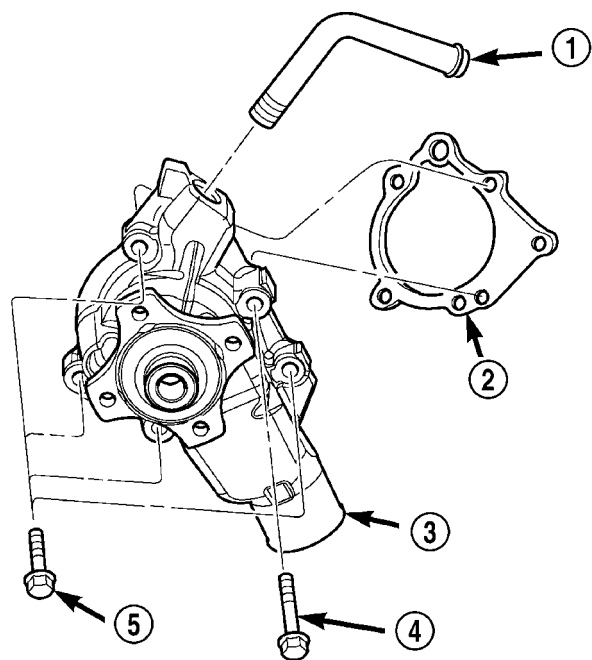
Clean the gasket mating surface. Use caution not to damage the gasket sealing surface.



## WATER PUMP - 4.0L (Continued)

**Fig. 47 Clamp - Typical**

- 1 - TYPICAL CONSTANT TENSION HOSE CLAMP  
 2 - CLAMP NUMBER/LETTER LOCATION  
 3 - TYPICAL HOSE

**Fig. 48 Water Pump Remove/Install - Typical**

- 1 - HEATER HOSE FITTING  
 2 - PUMP GASKET  
 3 - WATER PUMP  
 4 - LONG BOLT  
 5 - BOLTS (4) SHORT

**INSPECTION**

Inspect the water pump assembly for cracks in the housing, Water leaks from shaft seal, Loose or rough turning bearing or Impeller rubbing either the pump body or timing chain case/cover.

**INSTALLATION**

**CAUTION:** If the water pump is replaced because of mechanical damage, the fan blades and viscous fan drive should also be inspected. These components could have been damaged due to excessive vibration.

(1) If pump is being replaced, install the heater hose fitting to the pump. Use a sealant on the fitting such as Mopar® Thread Sealant With Teflon. Refer to the directions on the package.

(2) Clean the gasket mating surfaces. If the original pump is used, remove any deposits or other foreign material. Inspect the cylinder block and water pump mating surfaces for erosion or damage from cavitation.

(3) Install the gasket and water pump. The silicone bead on the gasket should be facing the water pump. Also, the gasket is installed dry. Tighten mounting bolts to 30 N·m (22 ft. lbs.) torque. Rotate the shaft by hand to be sure it turns freely.

(4) Connect the radiator and heater hoses to the water pump.

(5) Position water pump pulley to water pump hub. Tighten bolts 28 N·m (250 in. lbs.).

Install the idler pulley. Tighten the bolt 47 N·m (35 ft. lbs.).

**CAUTION:** When installing the serpentine engine accessory drive belt, the belt **MUST** be routed correctly. If not, the engine may overheat due to the water pump rotating in the wrong direction. Refer to the Belt Removal and Installation in this group for appropriate belt routing. You may also refer to the Belt Routing Label in the vehicle engine compartment.

Install accessory drive belt (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - INSTALLATION).

(6) Install fan blade and viscous fan drive onto water pump.

(7) Fill cooling system with coolant and check for leaks. (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

(8) Connect battery cable to battery.

(9) Start and warm the engine. Check for leaks.

## RADIATOR PRESSURE CAP

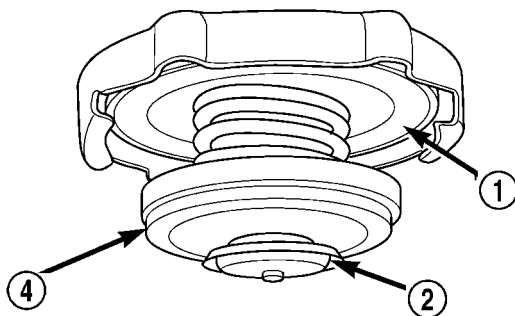
### DESCRIPTION

All radiators are equipped with a pressure cap (Fig. 49). This cap releases pressure at some point within a range of 124-145 kPa (18-21 psi). The pressure relief point (in pounds) is engraved on top of the cap.

The cooling system will operate at pressures slightly above atmospheric pressure. This results in a higher coolant boiling point allowing increased radiator cooling capacity. The cap contains a spring-loaded pressure relief valve. This valve opens when system pressure reaches the release range of 124-145 kPa (18-21 psi).

A rubber gasket seals the radiator filler neck. This is done to maintain vacuum during coolant cool-down and to prevent leakage when system is under pressure.

#### CROSS-SECTIONAL VIEW



#### TOP VIEW



**Fig. 49 Radiator Pressure Cap - Typical**

- 1 - FILLER NECK SEAL
- 2 - VACUUM VENT VALVE
- 3 - PRESSURE RATING
- 4 - PRESSURE VALVE

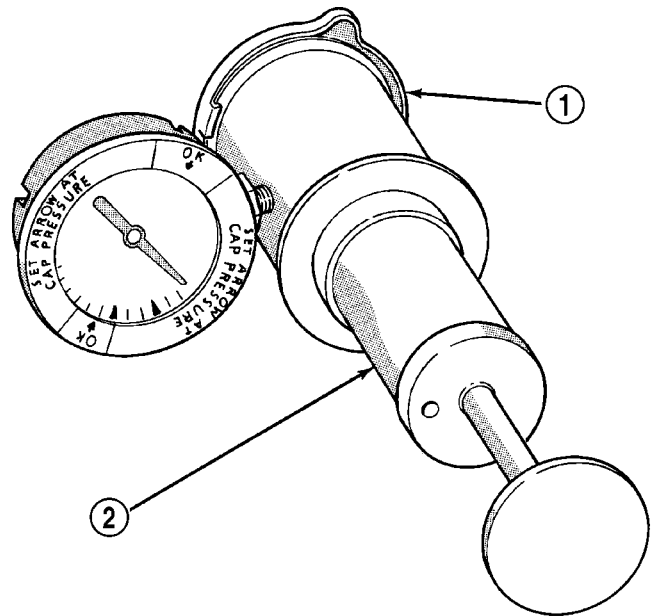
### OPERATION

A vent valve in the center of the cap will remain shut as long as the cooling system is pressurized. As

the coolant cools, it contracts and creates a vacuum in cooling system. This causes the vacuum valve to open and coolant in reserve/overflow tank to be drawn through connecting hose into radiator. If the vacuum valve is stuck shut, or overflow hose is kinked, radiator hoses will collapse on cool-down.

### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - RADIATOR PRESSURE CAP

Remove cap from radiator. Be sure that sealing surfaces are clean. Moisten rubber gasket with water and install the cap on pressure tester (tool 7700 or an equivalent) (Fig. 50).



J9507-3

**Fig. 50 Pressure Testing Radiator Pressure Cap - Typical**

- 1 - PRESSURE CAP
- 2 - TYPICAL COOLING SYSTEM PRESSURE TESTER

Operate the tester pump and observe the gauge pointer at its highest point. The cap release pressure should be 124 to 145 kPa (18 to 21 psi). The cap is satisfactory when the pressure holds steady. It is also good if it holds pressure within the 124 to 145 kPa (18 to 21 psi) range for 30 seconds or more. If the pointer drops quickly, replace the cap.

**CAUTION:** Radiator pressure testing tools are very sensitive to small air leaks, which will not cause cooling system problems. A pressure cap that does not have a history of coolant loss should not be replaced just because it leaks slowly when tested with this tool. Add water to tool. Turn tool upside down and recheck pressure cap to confirm that cap needs replacement.

80bc4e65

## RADIATOR PRESSURE CAP (Continued)

## CLEANING

Clean the radiator pressure cap using a mild soap and water only.

## INSPECTION

Visually inspect the pressure valve gasket on the cap. Replace cap if the gasket is swollen, torn or worn. Inspect the area around radiator filler neck for white deposits that indicate a leaking cap.

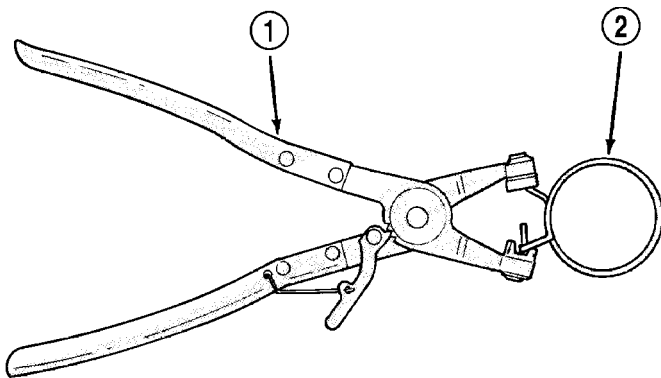
## WATER PUMP INLET TUBE

## REMOVAL

**WARNING: CONSTANT TENSION HOSE CLAMPS ARE USED ON MOST COOLING SYSTEM HOSES. WHEN REMOVING OR INSTALLING, USE ONLY TOOLS DESIGNED FOR SERVICING THIS TYPE OF CLAMP, SUCH AS SPECIAL CLAMP TOOL (NUMBER 6094) (Fig. 51). ALWAYS WEAR SAFETY GLASSES WHEN SERVICING CONSTANT TENSION CLAMPS.**

**CAUTION: A number or letter is stamped into the tongue of constant tension clamps (Fig. 52). If replacement is necessary, use only an original equipment clamp with matching number or letter.**

- (1) Partially drain cooling system .
- (2) Do not waste reusable coolant. If solution is clean, drain coolant into a clean container for reuse.

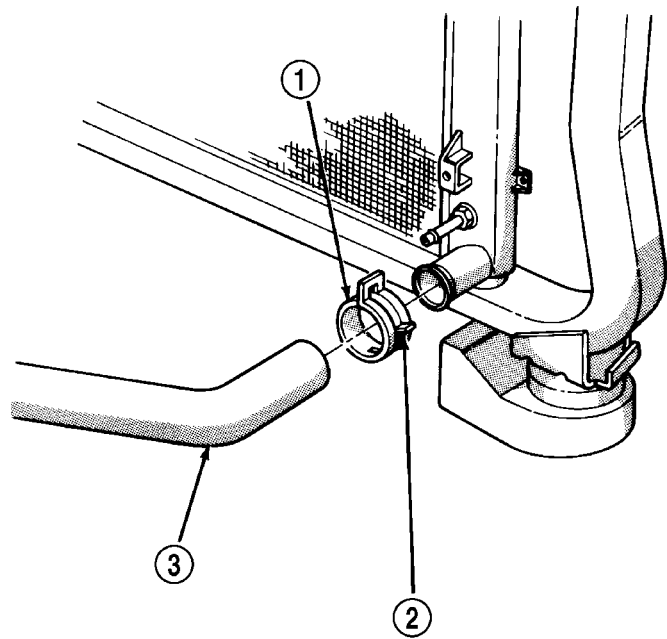


J9207-36

**Fig. 51 Hose Clamp Tool - Typical**

- 1 - HOSE CLAMP TOOL 6094
- 2 - HOSE CLAMP

- (3) Loosen both bypass hose clamps (Fig. 51) and position to center of hose. Remove hose from vehicle.



J9407-39

**Fig. 52 Clamp Number/Letter Location**

- 1 - TYPICAL CONSTANT TENSION HOSE CLAMP
- 2 - CLAMP NUMBER/LETTER LOCATION
- 3 - TYPICAL HOSE

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Position bypass hose clamps (Fig. 51) to center of hose.
- (2) Install bypass hose to engine.
- (3) Secure both hose clamps (Fig. 51).
- (4) Refill cooling system .
- (5) Start and warm the engine. Check for leaks.

## RADIATOR FAN SOLENOID

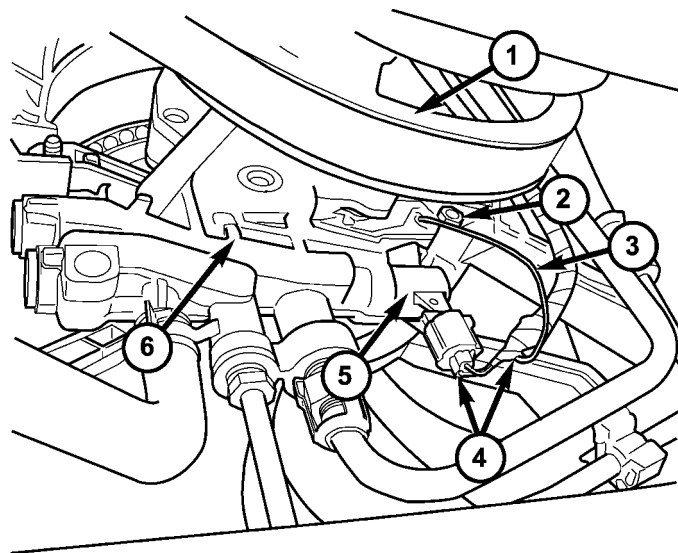
## REMOVAL

**NOTE: If the solenoid removal and replacement steps are performed quickly, then only a small amount of steering fluid will drip from the radiator fan solenoid opening. The small amount of leakage should not require prior fluid removal from the power steering reservoir.**

- (1) Disconnect the battery negative cable.
- (2) Raise and support the vehicle.
- (3) Disconnect the radiator fan solenoid connector (Fig. 53).
- (4) Clean the area around the radiator fan solenoid of any debris.

## RADIATOR FAN SOLENOID (Continued)

(5) While holding the solenoid body, use Torx® T40 to remove the radiator fan solenoid.



810acadd

**Fig. 53 Radiator Fan Solenoid**

- 1 - CRANKSHAFT PULLEY
- 2 - GROUND WIRE NUT
- 3 - GROUND WIRE
- 4 - HYDRAULIC FAN SOLENOID CONNECTOR
- 5 - RADIATOR FAN SOLENOID
- 6 - HYDRAULIC FAN MODULE

## INSTALLATION

**CAUTION:** If for any reason the hydraulic fan module ground wire is removed from the hydraulic fan module, reconnect the ground wire and tighten-mounting nut to 10 N·m (89 in. lbs.). Failure to ensure the ground wire is properly connected could result in an electrostatic discharge that could damage the PCM.

(1) Make sure that the two o-rings are in place. Notice that the armature of the solenoid can rotate within the body of the solenoid.

(2) Install the radiator fan solenoid into the hydraulic fan module (Fig. 53).

(3) While holding the solenoid body, using a Torx® T40 tighten the radiator fan solenoid to 16.2 N·m (143 in. lbs.).

(4) Connect the radiator fan solenoid connector.

(5) Lower the vehicle

(6) Connect the negative batter cable.

(7) Check the power steering fluid level, fils as necessary.

TRANSMISSION

TABLE OF CONTENTS

page

TRANS COOLER	
DESCRIPTION .....	54

TRANS COOLER

DESCRIPTION

An internal high capacity/high efficiency cooler is used on all vehicles these coolers are an oil-to-coolant type which consists of plates mounted in the radiator

outlet tank (Fig. 31). Because the internal oil cooler is so efficient, no auxiliary oil cooler is offered The cooler is not servicable seperatly from the radiator.

# AUDIO/VIDEO

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>AUDIO</b>		<b>OPERATION</b>	15
DESCRIPTION	2	DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - QUARTER	
OPERATION	2	GLASS INTEGRAL ANTENNA - EXPORT	15
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - AUDIO	2	<b>RADIO</b>	
SPECIAL TOOLS		DESCRIPTION	15
AUDIO SYSTEMS	5	OPERATION	15
<b>AMPLIFIER</b>		DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - RADIO	15
DESCRIPTION	5	REMOVAL	16
OPERATION	5	INSTALLATION	17
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - AMPLIFIER	5	<b>RADIO NOISE SUPPRESSION GROUND STRAP</b>	
REMOVAL	5	DESCRIPTION	17
INSTALLATION	6	REMOVAL	
<b>ANTENNA BODY &amp; CABLE</b>		REMOVAL - ENGINE-TO-BODY GROUND	
DESCRIPTION	6	STRAP	18
OPERATION	6	REMOVAL - EXHAUST-TO-BODY GROUND	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - ANTENNA BODY		STRAP	18
AND CABLE	6	INSTALLATION	
REMOVAL	8	INSTALLATION - ENGINE TO BODY	
INSTALLATION	9	GROUND STRAP	18
<b>ANTENNA - NAVIGATION RADIO</b>		INSTALLATION - EXHAUST-TO-BODY	
REMOVAL	9	GROUND STRAP	19
INSTALLATION	9	<b>REMOTE SWITCHES</b>	
<b>ANTENNA MODULE - EXPORT</b>		DESCRIPTION	19
DESCRIPTION	10	OPERATION	19
OPERATION	10	DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - REMOTE	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - ANTENNA		SWITCHES	19
MODULE - EXPORT	10	REMOVAL	20
REMOVAL	10	INSTALLATION	21
INSTALLATION	11	<b>SPEAKER</b>	
<b>CD CHANGER</b>		DESCRIPTION	21
DESCRIPTION	11	OPERATION	21
OPERATION	11	DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - SPEAKER	22
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - CD CHANGER	12	REMOVAL	
REMOVAL	13	REAR DOOR SPEAKER	23
INSTALLATION	13	INSTRUMENT PANEL SPEAKER	24
<b>INSTRUMENT PANEL ANTENNA CABLE</b>		FRONT DOOR SPEAKER	24
REMOVAL	14	INSTALLATION	
INSTALLATION	14	INSTALLATION - REAR DOOR SPEAKER	24
<b>QUARTER GLASS INTEGRAL ANTENNA - EXPORT</b>		INSTALLATION - INSTRUMENT PANEL	
DESCRIPTION	15	SPEAKER	24
		INSTALLATION - FRONT DOOR SPEAKER	25



## AUDIO

### DESCRIPTION

An audio system is standard factory-installed equipment on this model. Several combinations of radio receivers and speaker systems are offered as optional equipment on this model. The audio system uses an ignition switched control of battery current so that the system will only operate when the ignition switch is in the On or Accessory positions.

A optional navigation radio (RB1) is available on this vehicle. With this system, the operator has the option of choosing a street address, point of interest, trip itinerary and other features outlined in the operator's manual.

A Compact Disc (CD) changer with a ten disc magazine, remote radio switches with six functions mounted to the backs of the steering wheel spokes, and a memory system that automatically stores and recalls up to twenty radio station presets (ten AM and ten FM) and the last station listened to for two drivers are optional factory-installed equipment on this model. Refer to Electrical, Power Seats for more information on the memory system.

The audio system includes the following components:

- Antenna
- Compact disc changer
- Power amplifier (with premium speaker system only)
- Radio noise suppression components
- Radio receiver
- Remote radio switches
- Speakers

Certain functions and features of the audio system rely upon resources shared with other electronic modules in the vehicle over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network. The PCI data bus network allows the sharing of sensor information. This helps to reduce wire harness complexity, internal controller hardware, and component sensor current loads. At the same time, this system provides increased reliability, enhanced diagnostics, and allows the addition of many new feature capabilities. For diagnosis of these electronic modules or of the PCI data bus network, the use of a DRB III® scan tool and the proper Diagnostic Procedures manual are recommended.

### OPERATION

The audio system components are designed to provide audio entertainment and information through the reception, tuning and amplification of locally broadcast radio signals in both the Amplitude Modulating (AM) and Frequency Modulating (FM) commercial frequency ranges.

The optional navigation radio system receives GPS signals from up to eight satellites to display the position and direction of the vehicle. Map information is supplied through a DVD-ROM. An electronic gyro-sensor and the vehicle's speed sensor enable the system to display the present vehicle position even in locations where GPS signals may be blocked.

When a destination is selected, the navigation system uses information from the map to quickly calculate a route. As the vehicle is driven along the chosen route, the operator is guided with pictorial displays and voice prompts. For complete operating instructions, refer to the manual included with the vehicle.

The audio system components operate on battery current received through a fuse in the Junction Block (JB) on a fused ignition switch output (run-acc) circuit so that the system will only operate when the ignition switch is in the On or Accessory positions.

On vehicles that are equipped with the optional remote radio switches, the BCM receives hard wired resistor multiplexed inputs from the remote radio switches. The programming in the BCM allows it to process those inputs and send the proper messages to the radio receiver over the PCI data bus to control the radio volume up or down, station seek up or down, preset station advance, and mode advance functions.

On vehicles equipped with the optional memory system, when the DDM receives a Driver 1 or Driver 2 memory recall input from the memory switch on the driver side front door trim panel or a memory recall message from the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) receiver in the PDM, the DDM sends a memory recall message back to the radio receiver over the PCI data bus to recall the radio station presets and last station listened to information.

See the owner's manual in the vehicle glove box for more information on the features, use and operation of each of the available audio systems.

### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - AUDIO

**Any diagnosis of the Audio system should begin with the use of the DRB III® diagnostic tool. For information on the use of the DRB III®, refer to the appropriate Diagnostic Service Manual.**

Refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, details of wire harness routing and retention, connector pin-out information and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

## AUDIO (Continued)

**WARNING: DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, SIDE AIRBAG, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYS-**

**TEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

## AUDIO SYSTEM DIAGNOSIS

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
NO AUDIO	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Fuse faulty.</li> <li>2. Radio connector faulty.</li> <li>3. Wiring faulty.</li> <li>4. Radio ground faulty.</li> <li>5. Radio faulty.</li> <li>6. Speakers faulty.</li> <li>7. Amplifier faulty (if equipped).</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check radio fuse in Junction Block (JB) and Ignition-Off Draw (IOD) fuse in Power Distribution Center (PDC). Replace fuses, if required.</li> <li>2. Check for loose or corroded radio connector. Repair, if required.</li> <li>3. Check for battery voltage at radio connector. Repair wiring, if required.</li> <li>4. Check for continuity between radio chassis and a known good ground. There should be continuity. Repair ground, if required.</li> <li>5. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/AUDIO/RADIO - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING).</li> <li>6. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/AUDIO/SPEAKER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING).</li> <li>7. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/AUDIO/AMPLIFIER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING).</li> </ol>
NO RADIO DISPLAY	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Fuse faulty.</li> <li>2. Radio connector faulty.</li> <li>3. Wiring faulty.</li> <li>4. Radio ground faulty.</li> <li>5. Radio faulty.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check radio fuse in Junction Block (JB) and Ignition-Off Draw (IOD) fuse in Power Distribution Center (PDC). Replace fuses, if required.</li> <li>2. Check for loose or corroded radio connector. Repair, if required.</li> <li>3. Check for battery voltage at radio connector. Repair wiring, if required.</li> <li>4. Check for continuity between radio chassis and a known good ground. There should be continuity. Repair ground, if required.</li> <li>5. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/AUDIO/RADIO - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING).</li> </ol>

## AUDIO (Continued)

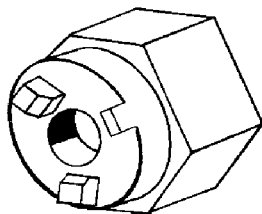
CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
CLOCK WILL NOT KEEP SET TIME	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Fuse faulty.</li> <li>2. Radio connector faulty.</li> <li>3. Wiring faulty.</li> <li>4. Radio ground faulty.</li> <li>5. Radio faulty.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check Ignition-Off Draw (IOD) fuse in the Power Distribution Center (PDC). Replace fuse, if required.</li> <li>2. Check for loose or corroded radio connector. Repair, if required.</li> <li>3. Check for battery voltage at radio connector. Repair wiring, if required.</li> <li>4. Check for continuity between radio chassis and a known good ground. There should be continuity. Repair ground, if required.</li> <li>5. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/AUDIO/RADIO - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING).</li> </ol>
POOR RADIO RECEPTION	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Antenna faulty.</li> <li>2. Radio ground faulty.</li> <li>3. Radio noise suppression faulty.</li> <li>4. Radio faulty.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/AUDIO/ANTENNA BODY &amp; CABLE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING).</li> <li>2. Check for continuity between radio chassis and a known good ground. There should be continuity. Repair ground, if required.</li> <li>3. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/AUDIO/RADIO NOISE SUPPRESSION - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING).</li> <li>4. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/AUDIO/RADIO - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING).</li> </ol>
NO/POOR TAPE OPERATION	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Faulty tape.</li> <li>2. Foreign objects behind tape door.</li> <li>3. Dirty cassette tape head.</li> <li>4. Faulty tape deck.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Insert known good tape and test operation.</li> <li>2. Remove foreign objects and test operation.</li> <li>3. Clean head with Mopar Cassette Head Cleaner.</li> <li>4. Exchange or replace radio, if required.</li> </ol>
NO COMPACT DISC OPERATION, OR CD SKIPPING SOUND	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Faulty CD.</li> <li>2. Foreign material on CD.</li> <li>3. Condensation on CD or optics.</li> <li>4. Faulty CD player.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Insert known good CD and test operation.</li> <li>2. Clean CD and test operation.</li> <li>3. Allow temperature of vehicle interior to stabilize and test operation.</li> <li>4. Exchange or replace radio, if required.</li> </ol>
NO COMPACT DISC CHANGER OPERATION, OR CD SKIPPING SOUND	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Faulty CD.</li> <li>2. Foreign material on CD.</li> <li>3. Condensation on CD or optics.</li> <li>4. CD changer connector faulty.</li> <li>5. Wiring faulty.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Insert known good CD and test operation.</li> <li>2. Clean CD and test operation.</li> <li>3. Allow temperature of vehicle interior to stabilize and test operation.</li> <li>4. Check for loose or corroded CD changer connections. Repair, if required.</li> <li>5. Refer to Compact Disc Changer in the Diagnosis and Testing section of this group.</li> </ol>

## AUDIO (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
	6. PCI data bus faulty.	6. Use DRB scan tool and the Diagnostic Procedures manual to test PCI data bus. Repair, if required.
	7. CD changer faulty.	7. Refer to Compact Disc Changer in the Diagnosis and Testing section of this group.

## SPECIAL TOOLS

## AUDIO SYSTEMS

*Antenna Nut Wrench C-4816*

## AMPLIFIER

## DESCRIPTION

Models equipped with the Infinity premium speaker package have a separate power amplifier unit. This power amplifier is rated at 180 watts output. The power amplifier unit is mounted to the rear floor panel under the passenger side rear seat cushion. The power amplifier unit can be accessed for service by unlatching and tilting the passenger side rear seat cushion forward.

The power amplifier unit should be checked if there is no sound output noted from the speakers. For diagnosis of the power amplifier, (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/AUDIO/SPEAKER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). The power amplifier cannot be repaired or adjusted and, if faulty or damaged, the unit must be replaced.

## OPERATION

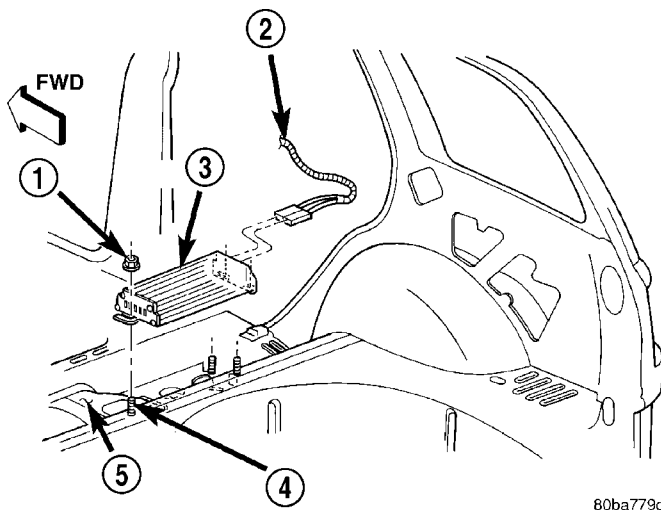
The power amplifier is energized by a fused 12 volt output from the radio receiver whenever the radio is turned on. The power amplifier receives the sound signal inputs for four speaker channels from the radio receiver, then sends the amplified speaker outputs for each of those channels to the six Infinity speakers. For complete circuit diagrams, refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, details of wire harness routing and retention, connector pin-out information and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - AMPLIFIER

The power amplifier unit should be checked if there is no sound output noted from the speakers. For diagnosis of the power amplifier, (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/AUDIO/SPEAKER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). For complete circuit diagrams, refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, details of wire harness routing and retention, connector pin-out information and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

## REMOVAL

- (1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.
- (2) Unlatch and lift the right rear seat cushion to the upright position.
- (3) Disconnect the two right body wire harness connectors from the amplifier (Fig. 1).



80ba779c

**Fig. 1 Power Amplifier Remove/Install**

- 1 - NUT (3)
- 2 - RIGHT BODY WIRE HARNESS
- 3 - AMPLIFIER
- 4 - STUD (3)
- 5 - RIGHT REAR FLOOR PANEL

- (4) Remove the three mounting nuts.
- (5) Remove the power amplifier.

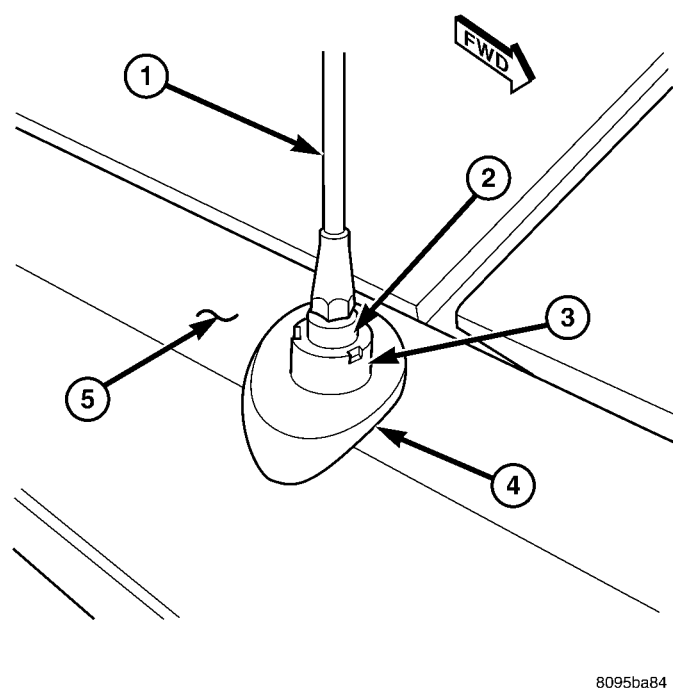
## AMPLIFIER (Continued)

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Position the power amplifier onto the three floor panel studs.
- (2) Install the mounting nuts. Tighten the nuts to 11.8 N·m (105 in. lbs.).
- (3) Reconnect the two right body wire harness connectors.
- (4) Lower the right rear seat cushion to the floor panel.
- (5) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

## ANTENNA BODY &amp; CABLE

## DESCRIPTION



8095ba84

Fig. 2 Antenna Body and Cable

- 1 - MAST
- 2 - BODY & CABLE
- 3 - CAP NUT
- 4 - ADAPTER
- 5 - RIGHT FRONT FENDER

The antenna body and cable is secured below the fender panel by the antenna cap nut through a mounting hole in the of the right front fender (Fig. 2). The primary coaxial antenna cable is then routed beneath the fender sheet metal and through a entry hole in the right cowl side panel into the interior of the vehicle. Inside the vehicle, the primary coaxial cable is connected to a secondary instrument panel antenna coaxial cable with an in-line connector that is located behind the right kick panel. The secondary

coaxial cable is then routed behind the instrument panel to the back of the radio.

## OPERATION

The antenna body and cable connects the antenna mast to the radio. The radio antenna is an electromagnetic circuit component used to capture radio frequency signals that are broadcast by local commercial radio stations in both the Amplitude Modulating (AM) and Frequency Modulating (FM) frequency ranges. These electromagnetic radio frequency signals induce small electrical modulations into the antenna as they move past the mast. The antenna body transfers the weak electromagnetic radio waves induced into the rigid antenna mast into the center conductor of the flexible primary antenna coaxial cable. The braided outer shield of the antenna coaxial cable is grounded through both the antenna body and the radio chassis, effectively shielding the radio waves as they are conducted to the radio. The radio then tunes and amplifies the weak radio signals into stronger electrical signals in order to operate the audio system speakers.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - ANTENNA BODY AND CABLE

The following four tests are used to diagnose the antenna with an ohmmeter:

- **Test 1** - Mast to ground test
- **Test 2** - Tip-of-mast to tip-of-conductor test
- **Test 3** - Body ground to battery ground test
- **Test 4** - Body ground to antenna coaxial cable shield test.

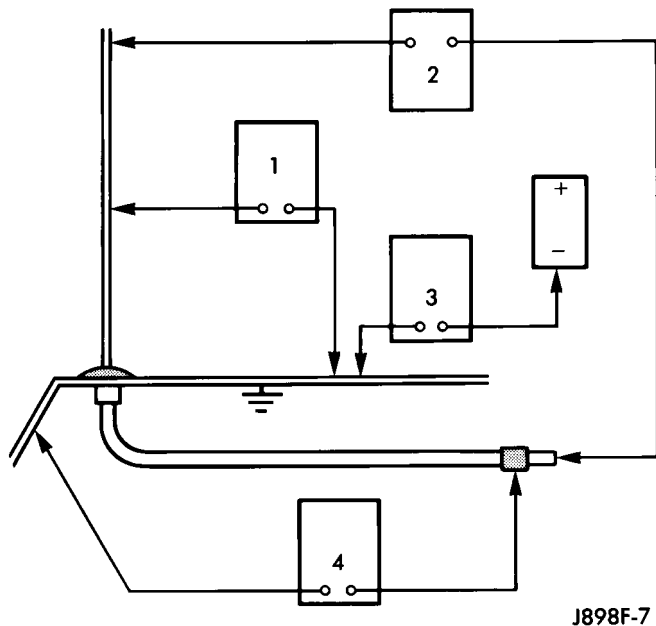
**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

The ohmmeter test lead connections for each test are shown in the illustration (Fig. 3).



## ANTENNA BODY &amp; CABLE (Continued)

**NOTE:** This model has a two-piece antenna coaxial cable. Tests 2 and 4 must be conducted in two steps to isolate an antenna cable problem. First, test the primary antenna cable (integral to the antenna body and cable) from the coaxial cable connector under the right end of the instrument panel near the right cowl side inner panel to the antenna body. Then, test the secondary antenna cable (instrument panel antenna cable) from the coaxial cable connector under the right end of the instrument panel near the right cowl side inner panel to the coaxial cable connector at the radio.



J898F-7

**Fig. 3 Antenna Tests - Typical**

**NOTE:** Use extreme caution when checking continuity of center conductor to avoid damage.

### TEST 1

Test 1 determines if the antenna mast is insulated from ground. Proceed as follows:

(1) Disconnect and isolate the antenna coaxial cable connector under the right end of the instrument panel near the right cowl side inner panel.

(2) Touch one ohmmeter test lead to the tip of the antenna mast. Touch the other test lead to the antenna cap nut. Check the ohmmeter reading for continuity.

(3) There should be no continuity. If OK, go to Test 2. If not OK, replace the faulty antenna body and cable.

### TEST 2

Test 2 checks the antenna conductor components for an open circuit. This test should be performed first on the entire antenna circuit, from the antenna

mast to the center conductor of the coaxial cable connector at the radio. If an open circuit is detected, each of the three antenna conductor components (antenna mast, antenna body and primary cable unit, instrument panel antenna secondary cable) should be isolated and tested individually to locate the exact component that is the source of the open circuit. To begin this test, proceed as follows:

(1) Disconnect the instrument panel (secondary) antenna cable coaxial connector from the back of the radio.

(2) Touch one ohmmeter test lead to the tip of the antenna mast. Touch the other test lead to the center conductor pin of the instrument panel antenna cable coaxial connector for the radio. Check the ohmmeter reading for continuity.

(3) There should be continuity. The ohmmeter should register only a fraction of an ohm resistance. High or infinite resistance indicates a damaged or open antenna conductor. If OK, go to Test 3. If not OK, isolate and test each of the individual antenna conductor components. Replace only the faulty antenna conductor component.

### TEST 3

Test 3 checks the condition of the vehicle body ground connection. To begin this test, proceed as follows:

(1) This test must be performed with the battery positive cable disconnected from the battery. Disconnect and isolate both battery cables, negative cable first.

(2) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

(3) Touch one ohmmeter test lead to a good clean ground point on the vehicle fender. Touch the other test lead to the battery negative terminal post. Check the ohmmeter reading for continuity.

(4) There should be continuity. The ohmmeter should register less than one ohm resistance. High or infinite resistance indicates a loose, corroded, or damaged connection between the battery negative terminal and the vehicle body. If OK, go to Test 4. If not OK, check the battery negative cable connection to the vehicle body and the radio noise suppression ground strap connections to the engine and the vehicle body for being loose or corroded. Clean or tighten these connections as required.

### TEST 4

Test 4 checks the condition of the connection between the antenna coaxial cable shield and the vehicle body ground as follows:

(1) Disconnect and isolate the antenna coaxial cable connector under the right end of the instrument panel near the right cowl side inner panel.



## ANTENNA BODY &amp; CABLE (Continued)

(2) Touch one ohmmeter test lead to a good clean ground point on the vehicle fender. Touch the other test lead to the outer crimp on the antenna coaxial cable connector under the right end of the instrument panel near the right cowl side inner panel. Check the ohmmeter reading for continuity.

(3) There should be continuity. The ohmmeter should register less than one ohm resistance. High or infinite resistance indicates a loose, corroded, or damaged connection between the antenna body and the vehicle body or between the antenna body and the antenna coaxial cable shield. If not OK, clean the antenna body to fender mating surfaces and tighten the antenna cap nut to specifications.

(4) Check the resistance again with an ohmmeter. If the resistance is still more than one ohm, replace the faulty antenna body and cable.

## REMOVAL

**WARNING: DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, SIDE AIRBAG, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

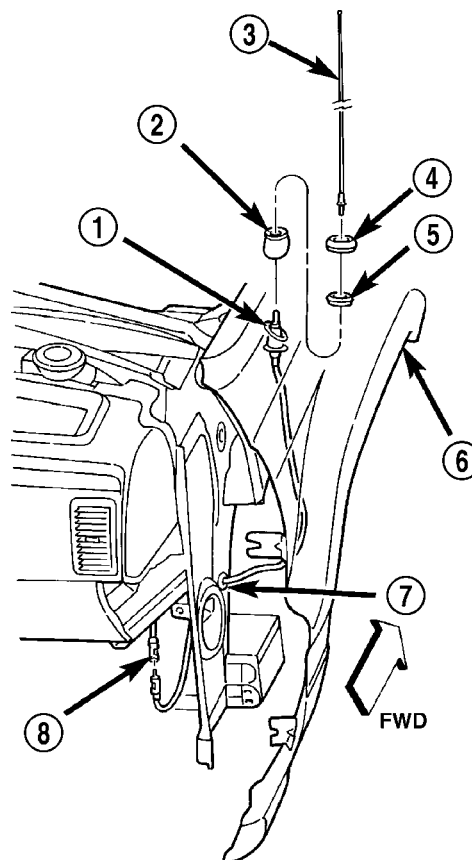
(2) Remove the scuff plate from the right front door sill. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/DOOR SILL SCUFF PLATE - REMOVAL) for the procedures.

(3) Remove the trim panel from the right inner cowl side. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/COWL TRIM - REMOVAL) for the procedures.

(4) Reach under the passenger side of the instrument panel near the right cowl side inner panel to disconnect the antenna coaxial cable connector by pulling it apart while twisting the metal connector halves (Fig. 4). Do not pull on the cable.

(5) Remove the lower rear half of the inner liner from the right front fender wheel house. (Refer to 23 - BODY/EXTERIOR/FRONT FENDER - REMOVAL) for the procedures.

(6) Reach through the rear of the right front fender wheel house opening to access and unseat the antenna lead grommet from the hole in the right cowl side outer panel.



80ba77be

**Fig. 4 Antenna Base and Lead Remove/Install**

- 1 - BASE AND LEAD
- 2 - ESCUTCHEON
- 3 - MAST
- 4 - SHROUD
- 5 - CAP NUT
- 6 - RIGHT FRONT FENDER
- 7 - GROMMET
- 8 - CONNECTOR

(7) Pull the antenna lead coaxial cable and connector out of the passenger compartment and into the right front fender wheel house through the hole in the right cowl side outer panel.

(8) Unscrew the antenna mast from the antenna base (Fig. 5).

(9) Remove the plastic shroud from the antenna base cap nut.

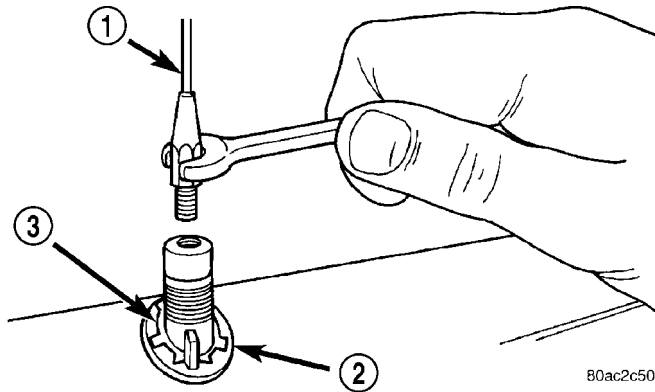
(10) Remove the antenna base cap nut using an antenna nut wrench (Special Tool C-4816) (Fig. 6).

(11) Remove the antenna escutcheon from the antenna base on the top of the right front fender.

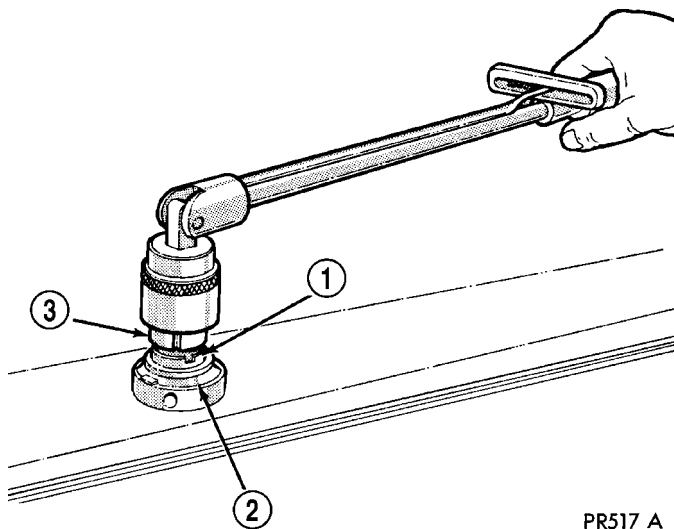
(12) Lower the antenna base from the mounting hole in the top of the right front fender.

(13) Remove the antenna base and lead from the rear of the right front fender wheel house opening.

## ANTENNA BODY &amp; CABLE (Continued)

**Fig. 5 Antenna Mast Remove/Install - Typical**

- 1 - ANTENNA MAST  
2 - ADAPTER  
3 - CAP NUT

**Fig. 6 Antenna Base Cap Nut Remove/Install - Typical**

- 1 - CAP NUT  
2 - ANTENNA ADAPTER  
3 - TOOL

**INSTALLATION**

- (1) Position the antenna base and lead into the rear of the right front fender wheel house opening.
- (2) Insert the antenna base into the mounting hole in the top of the right front fender.
- (3) Install the antenna escutcheon onto the antenna base on the top of the right front fender.
- (4) Install and tighten the antenna base cap nut using an antenna nut wrench (Special Tool C-4816). Tighten the cap nut to 6.8 N·m (60 in. lbs.).

(5) Install the plastic shroud onto the antenna base cap nut.

(6) Using a wrench, install and tighten the antenna mast onto the antenna base. Tighten the antenna mast to 3.3 N·m (30 in. lbs.). **Ensure that the antenna mast is fully seated on antenna base and that there is no gap between the mast and base.**

(7) Reach through the rear of the right front fender wheel house opening to access and insert the antenna lead coaxial cable and connector into the passenger compartment through the hole in the right cowl side outer panel.

(8) From the right front fender wheel house, seat the antenna lead grommet into the hole in the right cowl side outer panel.

(9) Install the lower rear half of the inner liner into the right front fender wheel house.

(10) Reach under the passenger side of the instrument panel near the right cowl side inner panel to reconnect the antenna coaxial cable connector halves.

(11) Install the trim panel onto the right inner cowl side.

(12) Install the scuff plate onto the right front door sill.

(13) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

**ANTENNA - NAVIGATION RADIO****REMOVAL**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Remove the radio (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/AUDIO/RADIO - REMOVAL).

(3) Remove the instrument cluster (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - REMOVAL).

(4) Remove the navigation radio antenna.

**INSTALLATION**

(1) Install antenna to instrument panel.

(2) Install instrument cluster (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - INSTALLATION).

(3) Install radio (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/AUDIO/RADIO - INSTALLATION).

(4) Connect battery negative cable.

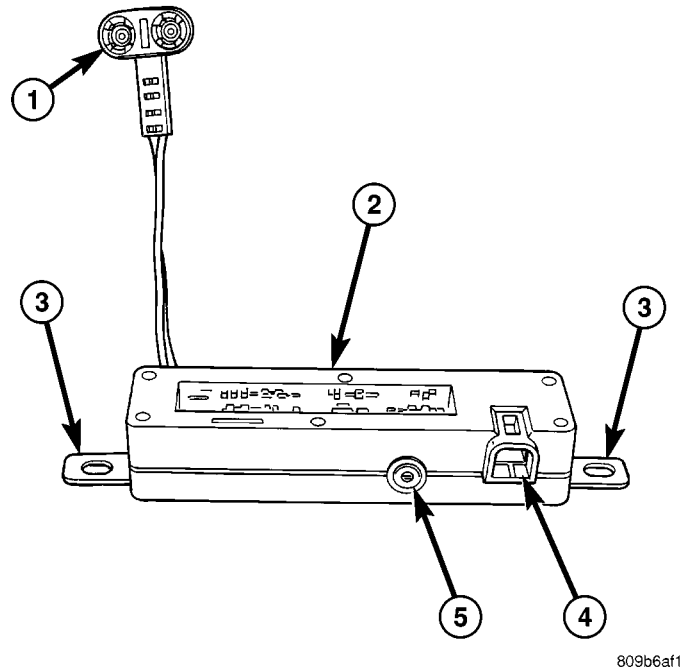
## ANTENNA MODULE - EXPORT

### DESCRIPTION

The antenna module (Fig. 7) is an electromagnetic circuit component designed to capture and enhance RF (Radio Frequency) signals in both the AM and FM broadcast bands. The antenna module is mounted to the right rear roof rail under the headliner. The modules mounting brackets also double as the ground circuit. The module has a two wire electrical connector that connects to the electric backlite integral radio antenna, located on the right rear quarter glass, a connector for the radio coax cable and a connector for battery voltage.

### OPERATION

The antenna module receives both AM and FM radio signals supplied by the side window integral radio antenna system and selectively amplifies them while at the same time avoiding unusable or unwanted signals. The amplified signal is then sent through the body length coax cable to the radio input.



**Fig. 7 ANTENNA MODULE**

- 1 - ANTENNA LEAD CONNECTOR
- 2 - ANTENNA MODULE
- 3 - ANTENNA MODULE MOUNT/GROUND BRACKETS
- 4 - BATTERY SUPPLY CONNECTION POINT
- 5 - COAX CONNECTION POINT

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - ANTENNA MODULE - EXPORT

### ANTENNA MODULE DIAGNOSIS TABLE

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
NO AM RECEPTION, WEAK FM RECEPTION	1. Antenna module to antenna connector open or disconnected.  2. Coax open or disconnected.  3. No battery power at antenna module.	1. Repair open, reconnect antenna module connector to glass mounted antenna.  2. Repair open, reconnect coax.  3. Check fuse. if okay, repair open in battery voltage circuit.
NO AM OR FM RECEPTION	1. Coax disconnected at radio.  2. Coax shorted to ground.	1. Reconnect coax.  2. Repair or Replace coax
WEAK OR NO AM/FM RECEPTION	1. Antenna Module faulty.	1. Substitute known good module. If reception improves, Antenna Module was faulty.

### REMOVAL

(1) Remove the headliner. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/HEADLINER - REMOVAL)

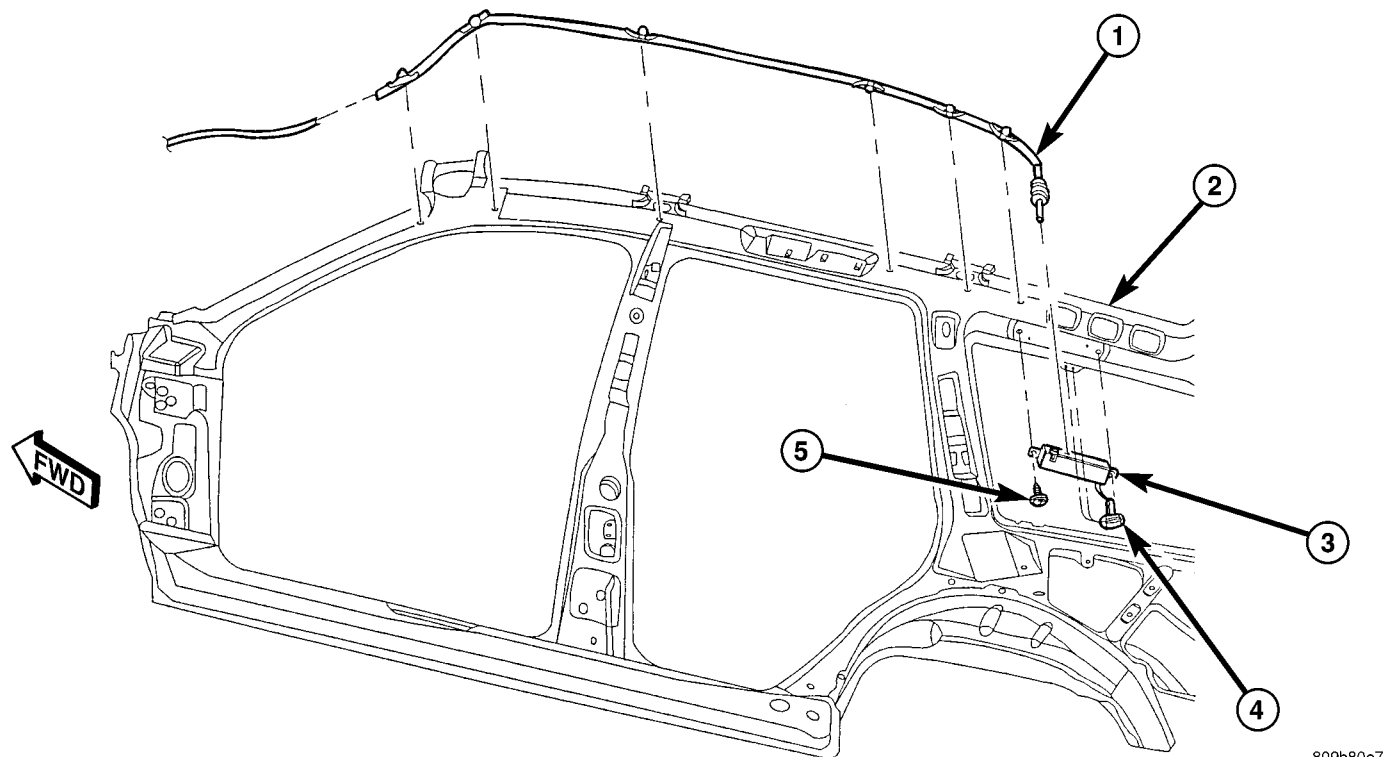
(2) Disconnect the battery power lead connector from the antenna module.

(3) Disconnect the antenna module connector from the integral antenna (Fig. 8).

(4) Remove the mounting screws and the antenna module.

(5) Disconnect the coax lead from the antenna module.

## ANTENNA MODULE - EXPORT (Continued)



809b80e7

**Fig. 8 ANTENNA MODULE**

- 1 - COAX  
2 - RIGHT SIDE ROOF RAIL  
3 - ANTENNA MODULE

- 4 - ANTENNA MODULE TO ANTENNA CONNECTOR  
5 - SCREW (2)

**INSTALLATION**

- (1) Plug coax into antenna module.
- (2) Position antenna module onto right side upper roof rail and install screws. Tighten the screws to 8 N·m (71 in. lbs.).
- (3) Connect antenna module lead to the integral antenna.
- (4) Connect battery power supply lead to antenna module.
- (5) Install headliner. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/HEADLINER - INSTALLATION)

**CD CHANGER****DESCRIPTION**

A factory-installed Compact Disc (CD) changer featuring a ten-CD magazine is an available option on this model when it is also equipped with the premium speaker package and a radio receiver including the CD controls feature. The CD changer is mounted in the cargo area of the passenger compartment on the right rear quarter panel.

The CD changer is connected to a take out from the right body wire harness and receives both ground and radio-switched battery current through the radio

receiver. The controls on the radio receiver operate the CD changer through messages sent over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network. The two-channel audio outputs of the CD changer are hard wired back to the radio receiver, which then outputs the signal through four channels to the power amplifier. For diagnosis of the messaging functions of the radio receiver and the CD changer, or of the PCI data bus, a DRB scan tool and the proper Diagnostic Procedures manual are required.

The CD changer can only be serviced by an authorized radio repair station. See the latest Warranty Policies and Procedures manual for a current listing of authorized radio repair stations.

**OPERATION**

The CD changer will only operate when the ignition switch is in the On or Accessory positions, and the radio is turned on. For more information on the features, loading procedures and radio control functions for the operation of the CD changer, see the owner's manual in the vehicle glove box.

## CD CHANGER (Continued)

**DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - CD CHANGER**

Following are tests that will help to diagnose the hard wired components and circuits of the Compact Disc (CD) changer unit. However, these tests may not prove conclusive in the diagnosis of this unit. In order to obtain conclusive testing of the CD changer unit, the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network, the CD changer unit, the radio receiver unit and any other electronic modules that provide inputs to, or receive outputs from the audio system must be checked.

**Any diagnosis of the Audio system should begin with the use of the DRB III® diagnostic tool. For information on the use of the DRB III®, refer to the appropriate Diagnostic Service Manual.**

Refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, details of wire harness routing and retention, connector pin-out information and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

**WARNING: DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, SIDE AIRBAG, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

**COMPACT DISC CHANGER INOPERATIVE**

(1) Turn the ignition switch to the On position. Turn the radio receiver on and check its operation. If OK, go to Step 2. If not OK, (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/AUDIO/RADIO - OPERATION).

(2) Turn the ignition switch to the Off position. Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Disconnect the right body wire harness connector from the CD changer connector receptacle. Check for continuity between the power ground (Z17) circuit of the right body wire harness connector for the CD changer and a good ground. There should be continuity. If OK, go to Step 3. If not OK, repair the open power ground circuit to the radio receiver as required.

(3) Reconnect the battery negative cable. Check for battery voltage at the B(+) circuit cavity of the right

body wire harness connector for the CD changer. If OK, go to Step 4. If not OK, go to Step 5.

(4) Turn the ignition switch to the On position. Check for battery voltage at the ignition switch output circuit cavity of the right body wire harness connector for the CD changer. If OK, use a DRB scan tool and the proper Diagnostic Procedures manual for further diagnosis. If not OK, go to Step 6.

(5) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Remove the radio receiver from the instrument panel. Disconnect the 10 pin cable connector from the radio receiver, but do not disconnect the other wire harness connectors. Reconnect the battery negative cable. Check for battery voltage at the B(+) circuit cavity of the 10 pin connector receptacle on the radio receiver. If OK, repair the open B(+) circuit to the CD changer as required. If not OK, check for a shorted B(+) circuit to the CD changer and repair as required, then replace the faulty radio receiver.

(6) Turn the ignition switch to the Off position. Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Remove the radio receiver from the instrument panel. Disconnect the 10 pin cable connector from the radio receiver, but do not disconnect the other wire harness connectors. Reconnect the battery negative cable. Turn the ignition switch to the On position. Check for battery voltage at the ignition switch output circuit cavity of the 10 pin connector receptacle on the radio receiver. If OK, repair the open ignition switch output circuit to the CD changer as required. If not OK, check for a shorted ignition switch output circuit to the CD changer and repair as required, then replace the faulty radio receiver.

**NO SOUND OR ONLY ONE CHANNEL SOUND FROM CD CHANGER**

(1) Turn the ignition switch to the On position. Turn the radio receiver on and check its audio output operation. If OK, go to Step 2. If not OK, (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/AUDIO/SPEAKER - OPERATION).

(2) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Disconnect the right body wire harness connector from the CD changer connector receptacle. Remove the radio receiver from the instrument panel. Disconnect the 10 pin cable connector from the radio receiver. Check for continuity between the audio ground (Z4) circuit cavity of the right body wire harness connector for the CD changer and a good ground. There should be no continuity. If OK, go to Step 3. If not OK, repair the shorted audio ground (Z4) circuit as required.

(3) Check for continuity between the audio ground (Z4) circuit cavity of the right body wire harness connector for the CD changer and the audio ground (Z4) circuit pin of the 10 pin cable connector for the radio receiver. There should be continuity. If OK, go to



## CD CHANGER (Continued)

Step 4. If not OK, repair the open audio ground (Z4) circuit as required.

(4) Check for continuity between the audio out right circuit cavity of the right body wire harness connector for the CD changer and a good ground. There should be no continuity. If OK, go to Step 5. If not OK, repair the shorted audio out right circuit as required.

(5) Check for continuity between the audio out right circuit cavity of the right body wire harness connector for the CD changer and the audio out right circuit pin of the 10 pin cable connector for the radio receiver. There should be continuity. If OK, go to Step 6. If not OK, repair the open audio out right circuit as required.

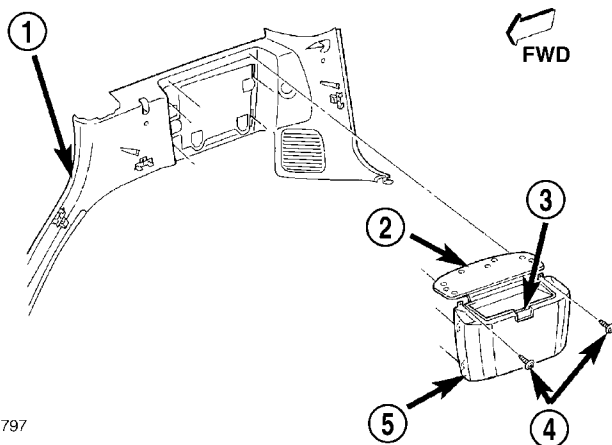
(6) Check for continuity between the audio out left circuit cavity of the right body wire harness connector for the CD changer and a good ground. There should be no continuity. If OK, go to Step 7. If not OK, repair the shorted audio out left circuit as required.

(7) Check for continuity between the audio out left circuit cavity of the right body wire harness connector for the CD changer and the audio out left circuit pin of the 10 pin cable connector for the radio receiver. There should be continuity. If OK, replace the faulty CD changer. If not OK, repair the open audio out left circuit as required.

## REMOVAL

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Release the latch and open the lid of the compact disc changer storage bin on the right side quarter trim panel (Fig. 9).



**Fig. 9 Compact Disc Changer Storage Bin Remove/Install**

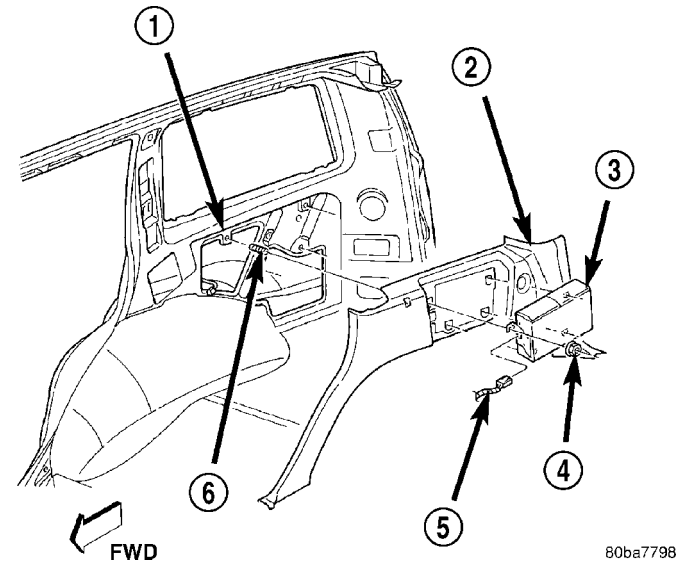
- 1 - RIGHT SIDE QUARTER TRIM PANEL
- 2 - LID
- 3 - LATCH
- 4 - SCREW (2)
- 5 - CD CHANGER STORAGE BIN

(3) Remove the two mounting screws.

(4) Grasp the bottom of the compact disc changer storage bin firmly with both hands and lift it upwards.

(5) Remove the compact disc changer storage bin from the right side quarter trim panel.

(6) Disconnect the right body wire harness connector from compact disc changer (Fig. 10).



**Fig. 10 Compact Disc Changer Remove/Install**

- 1 - RIGHT SIDE QUARTER INNER PANEL
- 2 - RIGHT SIDE QUARTER TRIM PANEL
- 3 - COMPACT DISC CHANGER
- 4 - NUT (4)
- 5 - RIGHT BODY WIRE HARNESS
- 6 - STUD (4)

(7) Remove the four mounting nuts.

(8) Remove the compact disc changer from the right side quarter inner panel.

## INSTALLATION

(1) Position the compact disc changer onto the four studs.

(2) Install the four mounting nuts. Tighten the nuts to 12 N·m (105 in. lbs.).

(3) Reconnect the right body wire harness connector.

(4) Position the compact disc changer storage bin onto the right side quarter trim panel.

(5) Using both hands push the compact disc changer storage bin firmly and evenly toward the right side quarter trim panel far enough to engage the hooks on the bin with the slots in the panel.

(6) Using both hands push the compact disc changer storage bin firmly and evenly downward far enough to align the screw holes in the bin with the mounting holes in the right side quarter trim panel.



## CD CHANGER (Continued)

(7) Install the two screws that secure the top of the compact disc changer storage bin. Tighten the screws to 1.7 N·m (15 in. lbs.).

(8) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

## INSTRUMENT PANEL ANTENNA CABLE

### REMOVAL

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, REFER TO ELECTRICAL, RESTRAINTS BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Remove the scuff plate from the right front door sill. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/DOOR SILL SCUFF PLATE - REMOVAL) for the procedures.

(3) Remove the trim panel from the right inner cowl side. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/COWL TRIM - REMOVAL) for the procedures.

(4) Reach under the passenger side of the instrument panel near the right cowl side inner panel to disconnect the antenna coaxial cable connector by pulling it apart while twisting the metal connector halves. Do not pull on the cable.

(5) Disengage the antenna cable retainer from the mounting hole in the wire harness mounting tab under the passenger side end of the instrument panel.

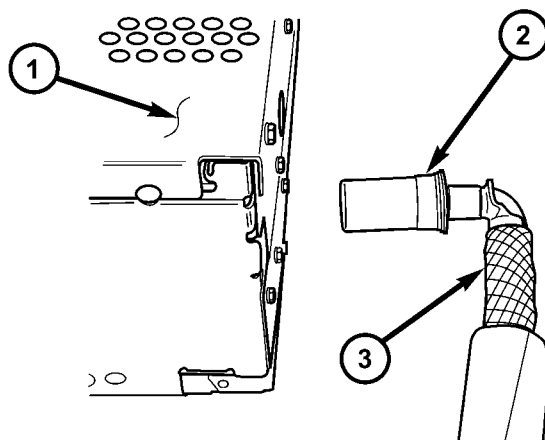
(6) Remove the radio receiver from the instrument panel. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/AUDIO/RADIO - REMOVAL) for the procedures.

**CAUTION: Pulling the antenna cable straight out of the radio without pulling on the locking antenna connector could damage the cable or radio.**

(7) Disconnect the antenna cable by pulling the locking antenna connector away from the radio (Fig. 11)

(8) Remove the passenger side airbag module from the instrument panel. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS/PASSENGER AIRBAG - REMOVAL) for the procedures.

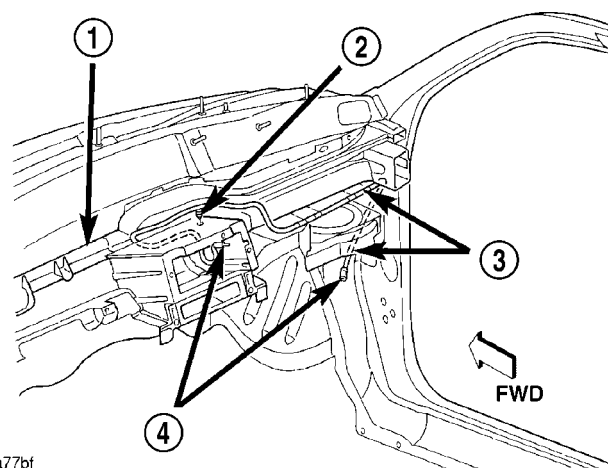
(9) Disengage the antenna cable retainer from the mounting hole in the top of the radio mount on the instrument panel structural duct (Fig. 12).



80c910dd

**Fig. 11 ANTENNA TO RADIO**

- 1 - INSTRUMENT PANEL
- 2 - SCREW (4)
- 3 - RADIO RECEIVER



80ba77bf

**Fig. 12 Instrument Panel Antenna Cable Routing**

- 1 - INSTRUMENT PANEL STRUCTURAL DUCT
- 2 - RETAINER
- 3 - COAXIAL CABLE
- 4 - COAXIAL CABLE CONNECTORS

(10) Disengage the antenna cable from the locator tabs on the top of the instrument panel structural duct above the glove box opening.

(11) Remove the antenna cable from the instrument panel.

### INSTALLATION

(1) Position the antenna cable onto the instrument panel.

(2) Engage the antenna cable with the locator tabs on the top of the instrument panel structural duct above the glove box opening.

(3) Engage the antenna cable retainer into the mounting hole in the top of the radio mount on the instrument panel structural duct.

## INSTRUMENT PANEL ANTENNA CABLE (Continued)

(4) Install the passenger side airbag module onto the instrument panel. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS/PASSENGER AIRBAG - INSTALLATION) for the procedures.

(5) Install the radio receiver onto the instrument panel. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/AUDIO/RADIO - INSTALLATION) for the procedures.

(6) Engage the antenna cable retainer into the mounting hole in the wire harness mounting tab under the passenger side end of the instrument panel.

(7) Reach under the passenger side of the instrument panel near the right cowl side inner panel to reconnect the antenna coaxial cable connector halves.

(8) Install the trim panel onto the right inner cowl side. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/COWL TRIM - INSTALLATION) for the procedures.

(9) Install the scuff plate onto the right front door sill. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/DOOR SILL SCUFF PLATE - INSTALLATION) for the procedures.

(10) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

## QUARTER GLASS INTEGRAL ANTENNA - EXPORT

### DESCRIPTION

The integral radio antenna element is bonded to the right rear quarter glass and is replaced with the glass assembly only.

### OPERATION

The integral antenna receives RF (Radio Frequencies) and sends them to the antenna module for amplification.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - QUARTER GLASS INTEGRAL ANTENNA - EXPORT

For complete circuit diagrams, refer to the Appropriate Wiring Information. To detect breaks in the integral antenna elements, the following procedure is required:

(1) Disconnect the antenna module connector from the antenna.

(2) Using an Ohmmeter, place one test lead on the left hand terminal. Place the other test lead on the end of the conductor. Trace down the path to the end of the conductors. There should be continuity to each end of this conductive trace.

(3) Place one test lead on the right hand terminal. Place the other test lead on the end of the conductor. Trace down the path to the end of the conductors. There should be continuity to each end of this conductive trace.

(4) While keeping the Ohmmeter lead on the left hand terminal, place the other lead on the right hand terminal. There should be an open circuit with no continuity between the terminals.

(5) A break in the antenna grid can be repaired using a Mopar Rear Window Defogger Repair Kit (Part Number 4267922) or equivalent. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/WINDOW DEFOGGER/REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER GRID - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

## RADIO

### DESCRIPTION

Available factory-installed radio receivers for this model include:

- AM/FM/CD with CD changer control feature (RBK sales code)
- AM/FM/cassette/CD/graphic equalizer with CD changer control feature (RBP sales code)
- AM/FM/DVD with GPS navigation (RB1 sales code)

All factory-installed radio receivers can communicate on the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network. All factory-installed receivers are stereo Electronically Tuned Radios (ETR) and include an electronic digital clock function.

These radio receivers can only be serviced by an authorized radio repair station. See the latest Warranty Policies and Procedures manual for a current listing of authorized radio repair stations.

### OPERATION

The radio receiver operates on ignition switched battery current that is available only when the ignition switch is in the On or Accessory positions. The electronic digital clock function of the radio operates on fused battery current supplied through the IOD fuse, regardless of the ignition switch position.

For more information on the features, setting procedures, and control functions for each of the available factory-installed radio receivers, refer to the owner's manual. For complete circuit diagrams, refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, details of wire harness routing and retention, connector pin-out information and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - RADIO

**Any diagnosis of the Audio system should begin with the use of the DRB III® diagnostic tool. For information on the use of the DRB**

## RADIO (Continued)

**III®, refer to the appropriate Diagnostic Service Manual.**

If the vehicle is equipped with the optional remote radio switches located on the steering wheel and the problem being diagnosed is related to one of the symptoms listed below, be certain to check the remote radio switches and circuits. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/AUDIO/REMOTE SWITCHES - OPERATION).

- Stations changing with no remote radio switch input
- Radio memory presets not working properly
- Volume changes with no remote radio switch input
- Remote radio switch buttons taking on other functions
- CD player skipping tracks
- Mode (AM, FM, CD, CD changer) changes with no remote radio switch input
- Remote radio switch inoperative.

For complete circuit diagrams, refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, details of wire harness routing and retention, connector pin-out information and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

**WARNING: DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, SIDE AIRBAG, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

**CAUTION:** The speaker output of the radio receiver is a "floating ground" system. Do not allow any speaker lead to short to ground, as damage to the radio receiver may result.

(1) Check the fused B(+) fuse in the junction block. If OK, go to Step 2. If not OK, repair the shorted circuit or component as required and replace the faulty fuse.

(2) Check for battery voltage at the fused B(+) fuse in the junction block. If OK, go to Step 3. If not OK, repair the open fused B(+) circuit to the Power Distribution Center (PDC) fuse as required.

(3) Check the fused ignition switch output (acc/run) fuse in the junction block. If OK, go to Step 4. If not OK, repair the shorted circuit or component as required and replace the faulty fuse(s).

(4) Turn the ignition switch to the On position. Check for battery voltage at the fused ignition switch output (acc/run) fuse in the junction block. If OK, go to Step 5. If not OK, repair the open fused ignition switch output (acc/run) circuit to the ignition switch as required.

(5) Turn the ignition switch to the Off position. Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Remove the radio receiver from the instrument panel, but do not disconnect the wire harness connectors. Check for continuity between the radio receiver chassis and a good ground. There should be continuity. If OK, go to Step 6. If not OK, repair the open ground circuit to ground as required.

(6) Test the radio receiver antenna. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/AUDIO/ANTENNA BODY & CABLE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). If OK, go to Step 7. If not OK, replace the faulty antenna or coaxial cable as required.

(7) Connect the battery negative cable. Turn the ignition switch to the On position. Check for battery voltage at the fused ignition switch output (acc/run) circuit cavity of the 22 pin radio wire harness connector. If OK, go to Step 8. If not OK, repair the open fused ignition switch output (acc/run) circuit to the junction block fuse as required.

(8) Turn the ignition switch to the Off position. Check for battery voltage at the fused B(+) circuit cavity of the 22 pin radio wire harness connector. If OK, replace the faulty radio receiver. If not OK, repair the open fused B(+) circuit to the junction block fuse as required.

**REMOVAL**

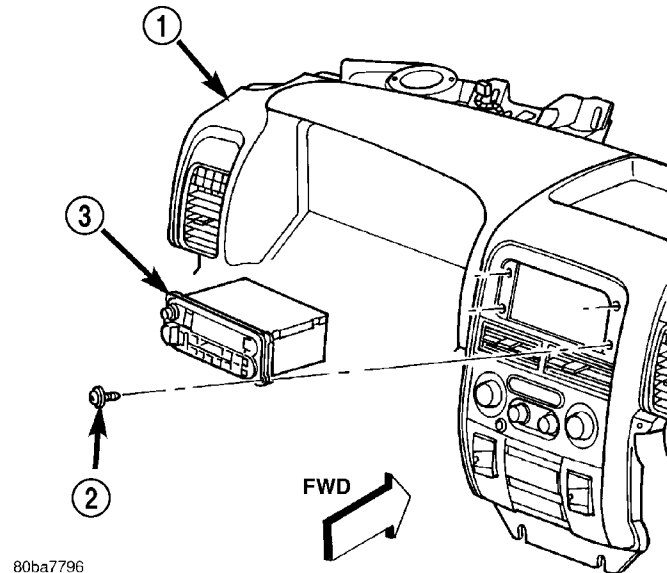
**WARNING: DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, SIDE AIRBAG, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

## RADIO (Continued)

(2) Remove the center upper bezel from the instrument panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL - REMOVAL).

(3) Remove the four screws that secure the radio receiver to the instrument panel (Fig. 13).



80ba7796

**Fig. 13 Radio Remove/Install**

- 1 - INSTRUMENT PANEL
- 2 - SCREW (4)
- 3 - RADIO RECEIVER

(4) Disconnect the instrument panel wire harness connector from the radio receiver.

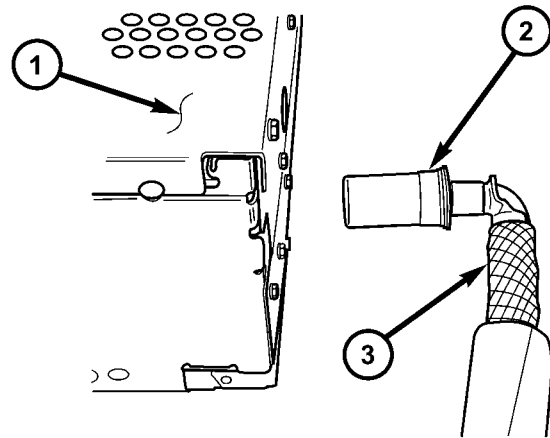
**CAUTION:** Pulling the antenna cable straight out of the radio without pulling on the locking antenna connector could damage the cable or radio.

(5) Disconnect the antenna cable by pulling the locking antenna connector away from the radio (Fig. 14).

(6) Remove the radio receiver from the instrument panel.

## INSTALLATION

**WARNING:** DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, SIDE AIRBAG, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIR-



80c910dd

**Fig. 14 ANTENNA TO RADIO**

- 1 - RADIO
- 2 - LOCKING ANTENNA CONNECTOR
- 3 - INSTRUMENT PANEL ANTENNA CABLE

## BAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.

(1) Position the radio receiver to the instrument panel.

(2) Reconnect the instrument panel wire harness connectors and the antenna coaxial cable connector to the receptacles on the rear of the radio receiver.

(3) Install the four mounting screws. Tighten the screws to 2.2 N·m (20 in. lbs.).

(4) Install the center upper bezel onto the instrument panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL - INSTALLATION) for the procedures.

(5) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

## RADIO NOISE SUPPRESSION GROUND STRAP

### DESCRIPTION

Radio Frequency Interference (RFI) and Electro-Magnetic Interference (EMI) noise suppression is accomplished primarily through circuitry internal to the radio receivers. These internal suppression devices are only serviced as part of the radio receiver.

External suppression devices that are used on this vehicle to control RFI or EMI noise include the following:

- Radio antenna base ground
- Radio receiver chassis ground wire or strap
- Engine-to-body ground strap(s)
- Exhaust system-to-body and transmission ground strap (4.7L engines only)
- Resistor-type spark plugs
- Radio suppression-type secondary ignition wiring.



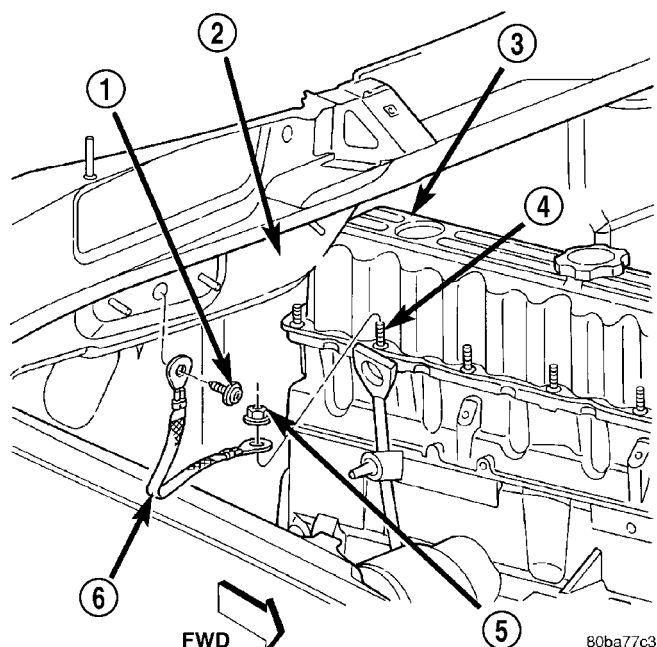
## RADIO NOISE SUPPRESSION GROUND STRAP (Continued)

For more information on the spark plugs and secondary ignition components, refer to Ignition System in Ignition System.

## REMOVAL

## REMOVAL - ENGINE-TO-BODY GROUND STRAP

(1) Remove the screw that secures the engine-to-body ground strap eyelet to the lower plenum panel (Fig. 15) or (Fig. 16).



**Fig. 15 Engine-To-Body Ground Strap Remove/Install - 4.0L Engine**

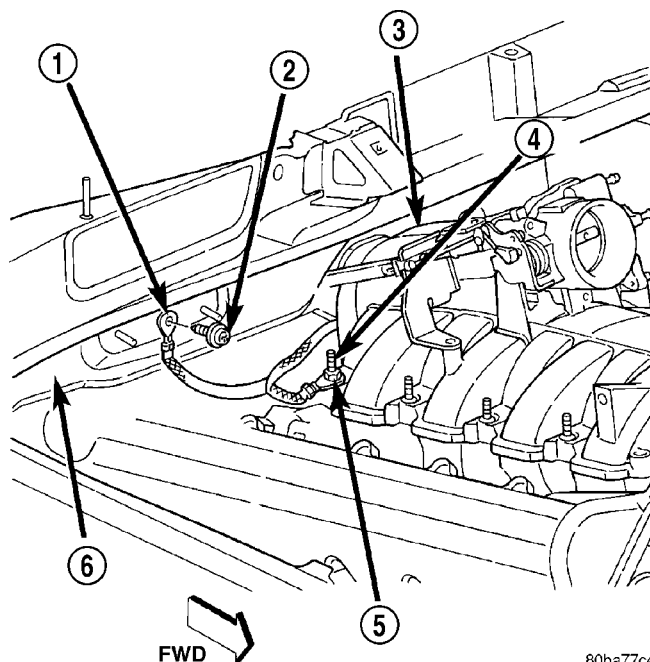
- 1 - SCREW
- 2 - LOWER PLENUM PANEL
- 3 - ENGINE
- 4 - STUD
- 5 - NUT
- 6 - GROUND STRAP

(2) On models with a 4.0L engine, remove the nut that secures the engine-to-body ground strap eyelet to the stud on the right rear side of the engine cylinder head.

(3) On models with a 4.7L engine, remove the two nuts that secure the engine-to-body ground strap eyelets to the studs on the right and left rear sides of the engine intake manifold.

(4) Remove the engine-to-body ground strap eyelet(s) from the stud(s) on the engine.

(5) Remove the engine-to-body ground strap from the engine compartment.



**Fig. 16 Engine-To-Body Ground Strap Remove/Install - 4.7L Engine**

- 1 - GROUND STRAP
- 2 - SCREW
- 3 - ENGINE
- 4 - STUD (2)
- 5 - NUT (2)
- 6 - LOWER PLENUM PANEL

## REMOVAL - EXHAUST-TO-BODY GROUND STRAP

- (1) Raise and support vehicle.
- (2) Remove fasteners from exhaust, crossmember and transmission/transfer case.
- (3) Remove the ground strap.

## INSTALLATION

## INSTALLATION - ENGINE TO BODY GROUND STRAP

(1) Position the engine-to-body ground strap into the engine compartment.

(2) Install the engine-to-body ground strap eyelet(s) onto the stud(s) on the engine.

(3) On models with a 4.0L engine, install and tighten the nut that secures the engine-to-body ground strap eyelet to the stud on the right rear side of the engine cylinder head. Tighten the nut to 5.6 N·m (50 in. lbs.).

(4) On models with a 4.7L engine, install and tighten the two nuts that secure the engine-to-body ground strap eyelets to the studs on the right and left rear sides of the engine intake manifold. Tighten the nuts to 11.3 N·m (100 in. lbs.).



## RADIO NOISE SUPPRESSION GROUND STRAP (Continued)

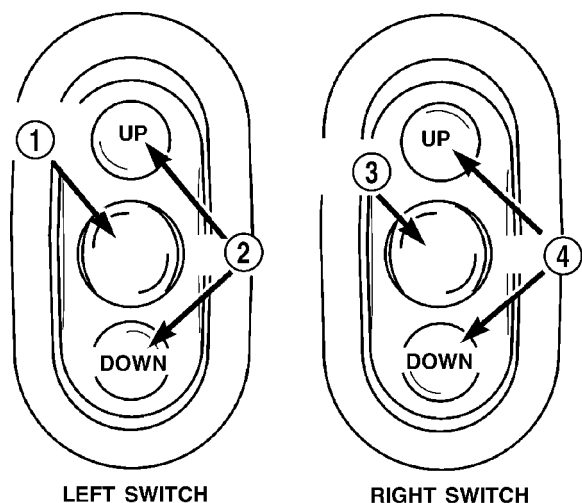
(5) Install and tighten the screw that secures the engine-to-body ground strap eyelet to the lower plenum panel. Tighten the screw to 4.5 N·m (40 in. lbs.).

**INSTALLATION - EXHAUST-TO-BODY GROUND STRAP**

- (1) Install the ground strap to the exhaust, cross-member and transmission/transfer case.
- (2) Install the fasteners.
- (3) Lower the vehicle.

**REMOTE SWITCHES****DESCRIPTION**

Remote radio control switches are included on models equipped with the optional leather-wrapped steering wheel. The two rocker-type switch units (Fig. 17) are mounted in the upper spoke covers of the rear (instrument panel side) steering wheel trim cover. The switch unit on the left side is the seek switch and has seek up, seek down, and preset station advance switch functions. The switch unit on the right side is the volume control switch and has volume up, volume down, and mode advance switch functions.



80ba7791

**Fig. 17 Remote Radio Switches**

- 1 - PRESET ADVANCE
- 2 - SEEK
- 3 - MODE ADVANCE
- 4 - VOLUME

The two remote radio switch units share a common steering wheel wire harness with the vehicle speed control switches. The steering wheel wire harness is connected to the instrument panel wire harness through the clockspring. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS/CLOCKSPRING - DESCRIPTION) for more information on this component.

For complete circuit diagrams, refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, details of wire harness routing and retention, connector pin-out information and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

**OPERATION**

The six switches in the two remote radio switch units are normally open, resistor multiplexed momentary switches that are hard wired to the Body Control Module (BCM) through the clockspring. The BCM sends a five volt reference signal to both switch units on one circuit, and senses the status of all of the switches by reading the voltage drop on a second circuit.

When the BCM senses an input (voltage drop) from any one of the remote radio switches, it sends the proper switch status messages on the Programmable Communication Interface (PCI) data bus network to the radio receiver. The electronic circuitry within the radio receiver is programmed to respond to these remote radio switch status messages by adjusting the radio settings as requested. For diagnosis of the BCM or the PCI data bus, the use of a DRB scan tool and the proper Diagnostic Procedures manual are recommended.

For more information on the features and control functions for each of the remote radio switches, see the owner's manual in the vehicle glove box.

**DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - REMOTE SWITCHES**

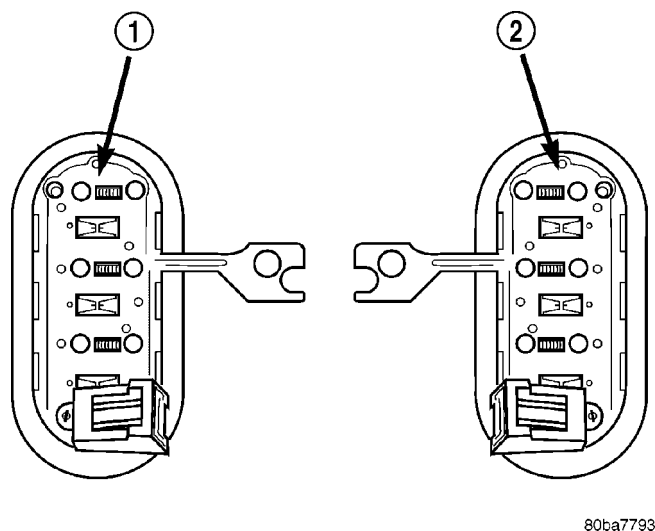
**Any diagnosis of the Audio system should begin with the use of the DRB III® diagnostic tool. For information on the use of the DRB III®, refer to the appropriate Diagnostic Service Manual.**

For complete circuit diagrams, refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, details of wire harness routing and retention, connector pin-out information and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

## REMOTE SWITCHES (Continued)

**WARNING: DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, SIDE AIRBAG, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Remove the remote radio switch(es) (Fig. 18) from the steering wheel.



80ba7793

**Fig. 18 Remote Radio Switches**

1 - BLACK (LEFT) SWITCH  
2 - WHITE (RIGHT) SWITCH

(2) Use an ohmmeter to check the switch resistances as shown in the Remote Radio Switch Test chart. If the remote radio switch resistances check OK, go to Step 3. If not OK, replace the faulty switch.

Remote Radio Switch Test		
Switch	Switch Position	Resistance
Right (White)	Volume Up	1.210 Kilohms
Right (White)	Volume Down	3.010 Kilohms
Right (White)	Mode Advance	0.0511 Kilohms

Remote Radio Switch Test		
Switch	Switch Position	Resistance
Left (Black)	Seek Up	0.261 Kilohms
Left (Black)	Seek Down	0.681 Kilohms
Left (Black)	Pre-Set Station Advance	0.162 Kilohms

(3) Reconnect the battery negative cable. Turn the ignition switch to the On position. Check for 5 volts at the radio control mux circuit cavities of the steering wheel wire harness connectors for both remote radio switches. If OK, go to Step 4. If not OK, repair the open or shorted radio control mux circuit to the Body Control Module (BCM) as required.

(4) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Disconnect the 22-way instrument panel wire harness connector from the BCM. Check for continuity between the remote radio switch ground circuit cavities of the steering wheel wire harness connectors for both remote radio switches and a good ground. There should be no continuity. If OK, go to Step 5. If not OK, repair the shorted remote radio switch ground circuit to the BCM as required.

(5) Check for continuity between the remote radio switch ground circuit cavities of the steering wheel wire harness connectors for both remote radio switches and the 22-way instrument panel wire harness connector for the BCM. There should be continuity. If OK, refer to the proper Diagnostic Procedures manual to test the BCM and the PCI data bus. If not OK, repair the open remote radio switch ground circuit as required.

## REMOVAL

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, REFER TO ELECTRICAL, RESTRAINTS BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

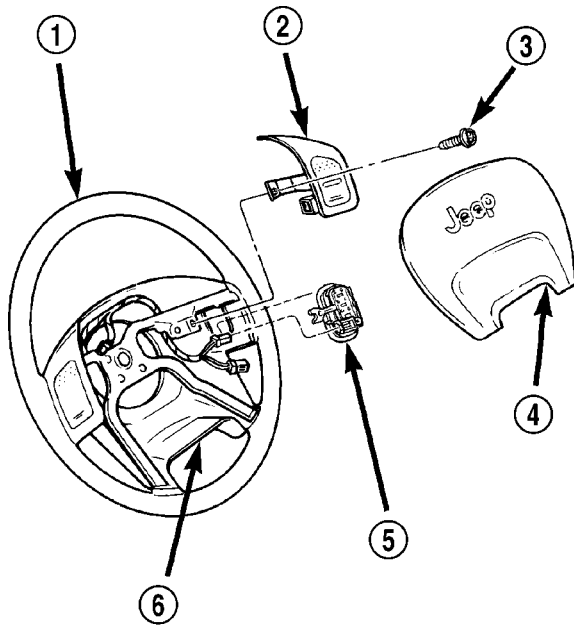
(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Remove the driver side airbag from the steering wheel. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS/ DRIVER AIRBAG - REMOVAL) for the procedures.

(3) Remove the speed control switch located on the same side of the steering wheel as the remote radio switch that is being serviced. Refer to Electrical, Speed Control for the procedures.

## REMOTE SWITCHES (Continued)

(4) Disconnect the steering wheel wire harness connector from the connector receptacle of the remote radio switch (Fig. 19).



80ba7794

**Fig. 19 Remote Radio Switches Remove/Install**

- 1 - STEERING WHEEL
- 2 - SPEED CONTROL SWITCH
- 3 - SCREW
- 4 - DRIVER SIDE AIRBAG MODULE
- 5 - REMOTE RADIO SWITCH
- 6 - REAR TRIM COVER

(5) From the inside of the steering wheel rear trim cover, press firmly and evenly outward on the back of the switch.

(6) From the outside of the steering wheel rear trim cover, remove the remote radio switch from the trim cover mounting hole.

## INSTALLATION

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, REFER TO ELECTRICAL, RESTRAINTS BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Position the remote radio switch to the mounting hole on the outside of the steering wheel rear trim cover. Be certain that the connector receptacle is oriented toward the bottom of the switch and pointed toward the center of the steering wheel.

(2) Press firmly and evenly on the remote radio switch until each of the switch snap features is fully

engaged in the mounting hole of the steering wheel rear trim cover.

(3) Reconnect the steering wheel wire harness connector to the connector receptacle of the remote radio switch.

(4) Install the speed control switch onto the steering wheel. Refer to Electrical, Speed Control for the procedures.

(5) Install the driver side airbag onto the steering wheel. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS/DRIVER AIRBAG - INSTALLATION) for the procedures.

(6) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

## SPEAKER

## DESCRIPTION

## STANDARD

The standard equipment speaker system includes speakers in six locations. One 6.4 centimeter (2.50 inch) diameter tweeter is installed on each end of the instrument panel top pad. One 15.2 by 22.9 centimeter (6 by 9 inch) full-range speaker is located in each front door. There is also one full-range 16.5 centimeter (6.5 inch) diameter full-range speaker located in each rear door.

## PREMIUM

The optional premium speaker system features six Infinity model speakers in six locations. Each of the standard speakers is replaced with Infinity model speakers. One 6.4 centimeter (2.50 inch) diameter Infinity tweeter is installed on each end of the instrument panel top pad. One 15.2 by 22.9 centimeter (6 by 9 inch) Infinity woofer is located in each front door. There is also one full-range 16.5 centimeter (6.5 inch) diameter Infinity full-range speaker located in each rear door. The premium speaker system also includes an additional Infinity power amplifier. The total available power of the premium speaker system is about 180 watts.

## OPERATION

## STANDARD

Each of the two tweeters and four full-range speakers used in the standard speaker system is driven by the amplifier that is integral to the factory-installed radio receiver. For complete circuit diagrams, refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, details of wire harness routing and retention, connector pin-out information

## SPEAKER (Continued)

and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

**PREMIUM**

The six Infinity speakers used in the premium speaker system are all driven by the radio receiver through an Infinity power amplifier. For complete circuit diagrams, refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, details of wire harness routing and retention, connector pin-out information and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

**DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - SPEAKER**

**Any diagnosis of the Audio system should begin with the use of the DRB III® diagnostic tool. For information on the use of the DRB III®, refer to the appropriate Diagnostic Service Manual.**

Refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, details of wire harness routing and retention, connector pin-out information and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

**WARNING: DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, SIDE AIRBAG, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

**CAUTION: The speaker output of the radio is a "floating ground" system. Do not allow any speaker lead to short to ground, as damage to the radio may result.**

(1) Turn the ignition switch to the On position. Turn the radio receiver on. Adjust the balance and fader controls to check the performance of each individual speaker. Note the speaker locations that are not performing correctly. Go to Step 2.

(2) Turn the radio receiver off. Turn the ignition switch to the Off position. Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Remove the radio receiver

from the instrument panel. If the vehicle is equipped with the Infinity speaker package, also disconnect the wire harness connectors at the power amplifier. Check both the speaker feed (+) circuit and return (-) circuit cavities for the inoperative speaker location(s) at the radio receiver wire harness connectors for continuity to ground. In each case, there should be no continuity. If OK, go to Step 3. If not OK, repair the shorted speaker feed (+) and/or return (-) circuit(s) to the speaker as required.

(3) If the vehicle is equipped with the Infinity speaker package, go to Step 6. If the vehicle is equipped with the standard speaker system, check the resistance between the speaker feed (+) circuit and return (-) circuit cavities of the radio receiver wire harness connectors for the inoperative speaker location(s). The meter should read between 2 and 3 ohms (speaker resistance). If OK, go to Step 4. If not OK, go to Step 5.

(4) Install a known good radio receiver. Connect the battery negative cable. Turn the ignition switch to the On position. Turn on the radio receiver and test the speaker operation. If OK, replace the faulty radio receiver. If not OK, turn the radio receiver off, turn the ignition switch to the Off position, disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable, remove the test radio receiver, and go to Step 5.

(5) Disconnect the wire harness connector at the inoperative speaker. Check for continuity between the speaker feed (+) circuit cavities of the radio receiver wire harness connector and the speaker wire harness connector. Repeat the check between the speaker return (-) circuit cavities of the radio receiver wire harness connector and the speaker wire harness connector. In each case, there should be continuity. If OK, replace the faulty speaker. If not OK, repair the open speaker feed (+) and/or return (-) circuit(s) as required.

(6) For each inoperative speaker location, check for continuity between the speaker feed (+) circuit cavities of the radio receiver wire harness connectors and the power amplifier wire harness connectors. Repeat the check for each inoperative speaker location between the speaker return (-) circuit cavities of the radio receiver wire harness connectors and the power amplifier wire harness connectors. In each case, there should be continuity. If OK, go to Step 7. If not OK, repair the open speaker feed (+) and/or return (-) circuit(s) as required.

(7) Check for continuity between the two ground circuit cavities of the power amplifier wire harness connector and a good ground. There should be continuity. If OK, go to Step 8. If not OK, repair the open ground circuit(s) to ground as required.

(8) Check the fused B(+) fuse for the power amplifier in the junction block. If OK, go to Step 9. If not



## SPEAKER (Continued)

OK, repair the shorted circuit or component as required and replace the faulty fuse.

(9) Install the radio receiver. Connect the battery negative cable. Check for battery voltage at the fused B(+) fuse for the power amplifier in the junction block. If OK, go to Step 10. If not OK, repair the open fused B(+) circuit to the Power Distribution Center (PDC) fuse as required.

(10) Check for battery voltage at the two fused B(+) circuit cavities of the power amplifier wire harness connector. If OK, go to Step 11. If not OK, repair the open fused B(+) circuit(s) to the power amplifier fuse in the junction block as required.

(11) Turn the ignition switch to the On position. Turn the radio receiver on. Check for battery voltage at the enable signal to amplifier circuit cavity of the power amplifier wire harness connector. If OK, go to Step 12. If not OK, repair the open enable signal to amplifier circuit to the radio receiver as required.

(12) Turn the radio receiver off. Turn the ignition switch to the Off position. Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. For each inoperative speaker location, check both the amplified feed (+) circuit and the amplified return (-) circuit cavities of the power amplifier wire harness connectors for continuity to ground. In each case there should be no continuity. If OK, go to Step 13. If not OK, repair the shorted amplified feed (+) and/or amplified return (-) circuit(s) to the speaker as required.

(13) For each inoperative speaker location, check the resistance between the amplified feed (+) circuit and the amplified return (-) circuit cavities of the power amplifier wire harness connectors. The meter should read between 2 and 3 ohms (speaker resistance). If OK, replace the faulty power amplifier. If not OK, go to Step 14.

(14) Disconnect the speaker wire harness connector at the inoperative speaker. Check for continuity between the amplified feed (+) circuit cavities of the speaker wire harness connector and the power amplifier wire harness connector. Repeat the check between the amplified return (-) circuit cavities of the speaker wire harness connector and the power amplifier wire harness connector. In each case there should be continuity. If OK, replace the faulty speaker. If not OK, repair the open amplified feed (+) and/or amplified return (-) circuit(s) as required.

## REMOVAL

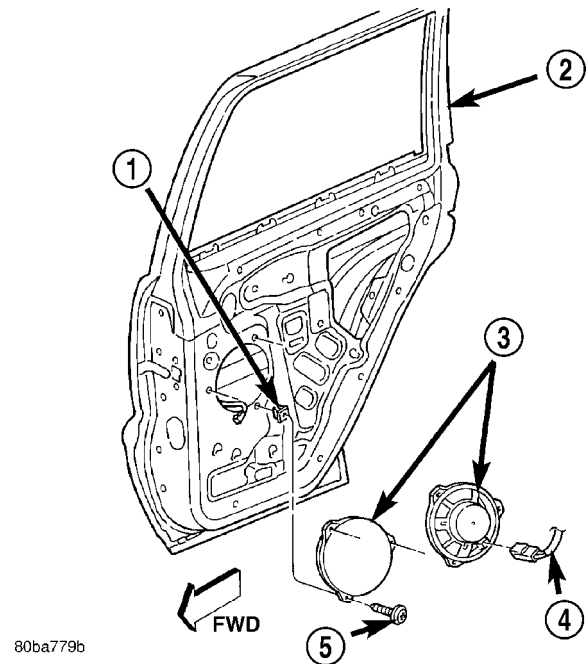
## REAR DOOR SPEAKER

## REMOVAL

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Remove the trim panel from the rear door. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOORS - REAR/TRIM PANEL - REMOVAL) for the procedures.

(3) Remove the three screws that secure the speaker to the rear door inner panel (Fig. 20).



**Fig. 20 Rear Door Speaker Remove/Install**

- 1 - PLASTIC NUT (3)
- 2 - REAR DOOR
- 3 - REAR DOOR SPEAKER
- 4 - REAR DOOR WIRE HARNESS
- 5 - SCREW (3)

(4) Disconnect the rear door wire harness connector from the speaker connector receptacle.

(5) Remove the speaker from the rear door inner panel.



## SPEAKER (Continued)

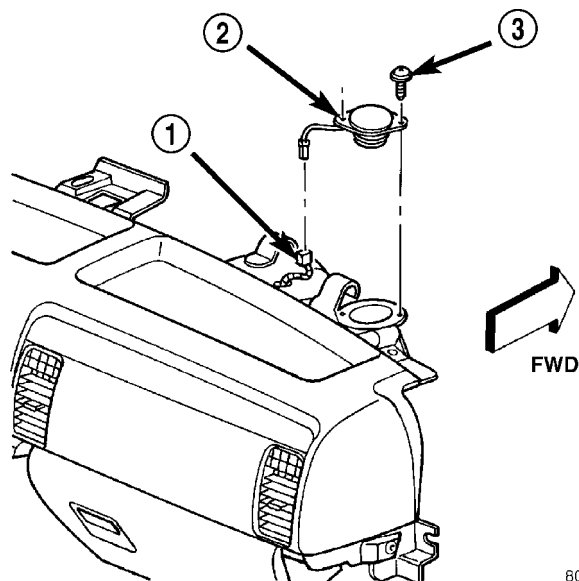
## INSTRUMENT PANEL SPEAKER

## REMOVAL

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Remove the top cover from the instrument panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/INSTRUMENT PANEL TOP COVER - REMOVAL).

(3) Disconnect the instrument panel wire harness connector from the speaker wire harness connector (Fig. 21).



80ba7799

**Fig. 21 Instrument Panel Speaker Remove/Install**

- 1 - INSTRUMENT PANEL WIRE HARNESS
- 2 - INSTRUMENT PANEL SPEAKER
- 3 - SCREW (2)

(4) Remove the two screws that secure the speaker to the top of the instrument panel.

(5) Remove the speaker from the top of instrument panel.

## FRONT DOOR SPEAKER

## REMOVAL

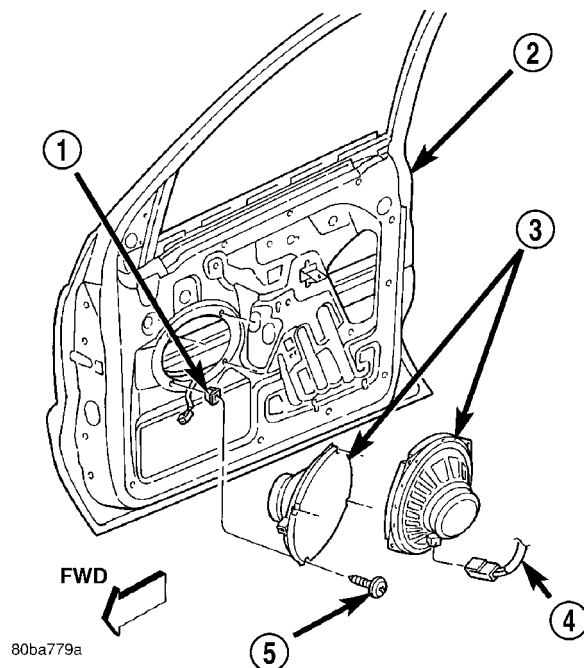
(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Remove the trim panel from the front door. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/TRIM PANEL - REMOVAL) for the procedures.

(3) Remove the four screws that secure the speaker to the front door inner panel (Fig. 22).

(4) Disconnect the front door wire harness connector from the speaker connector receptacle.

(5) Remove the speaker from the front door inner panel.



80ba779a

**Fig. 22 Front Door Speaker Remove/Install**

- 1 - PLASTIC NUT (4)
- 2 - FRONT DOOR
- 3 - FRONT DOOR SPEAKER
- 4 - FRONT DOOR WIRE HARNESS
- 5 - SCREW (4)

## INSTALLATION

## INSTALLATION - REAR DOOR SPEAKER

(1) Position the speaker to the rear door inner panel.

(2) Reconnect the rear door wire harness connector to the speaker connector receptacle.

(3) Position the speaker onto the rear door inner panel.

(4) Install and tighten the three screws that secure the speaker to the rear door inner panel. Tighten the screws to 2.2 N·m (20 in. lbs.).

(5) Install the trim panel onto the rear door. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOORS - REAR/TRIM PANEL - INSTALLATION) for the procedures.

(6) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

## INSTALLATION - INSTRUMENT PANEL SPEAKER

(1) Position the speaker onto the top of the instrument panel.

(2) Install and tighten the two screws that secure the speaker to the top of the instrument panel. Tighten the screws to 2.2 N·m (20 in. lbs.).

(3) Reconnect the instrument panel wire harness connector to the speaker wire harness connector.

(4) Install the top cover onto the instrument panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/IN-

## SPEAKER (Continued)

STRUMENT PANEL TOP COVER - INSTALLATION for the procedures.

- (5) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

**INSTALLATION - FRONT DOOR SPEAKER**

- (1) Position the speaker to the front door inner panel.

- (2) Reconnect the front door wire harness connector to the speaker connector receptacle.

- (3) Position the speaker onto the front door inner door panel.

- (4) Install and tighten the four screws that secure the speaker to the front door inner panel. Tighten the screws to 2.2 N·m (20 in. lbs.).

- (5) Install the trim panel onto the front door. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/TRIM PANEL - INSTALLATION) for the procedures.

- (6) Reconnect the battery negative cable.



# CHIME/BUZZER

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page	page
<b>CHIME WARNING SYSTEM</b>		
DESCRIPTION .....	1	
OPERATION .....	1	
<b>DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - CHIME WARNING SYSTEM</b> .....		2

## CHIME WARNING SYSTEM

### DESCRIPTION

The chime warning system uses a single chime tone generator that is integral to the Body Control Module (BCM) to provide an audible indication of vehicle conditions that may require the attention of the vehicle operator (Fig. 1). The chime warning system includes the following major components:

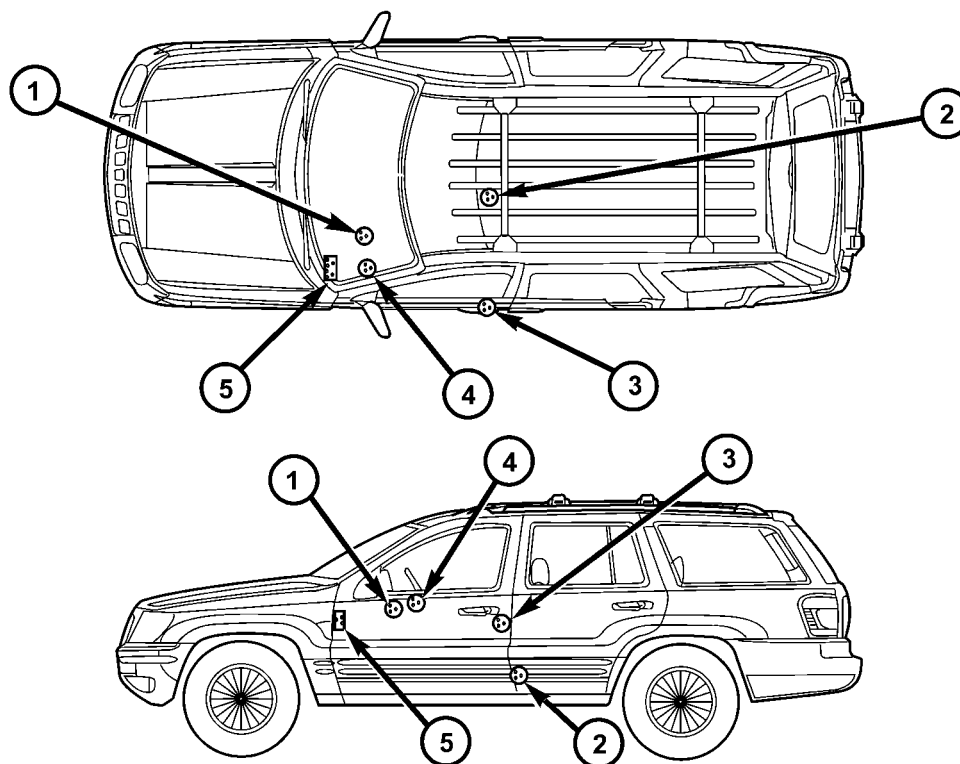
- Body Control Module
- Door Ajar Switch
- Headlamp Switch
- Ignition Switch
- Seat Belt Switch

Hard wired circuitry connects many of the chime warning system components to each other through the electrical system of the vehicle.

If the BCM or the chime tone generator are damaged or faulty, the BCM unit must be replaced.

### OPERATION

The chime warning system components operate on battery voltage received through the Ignition-Off Draw (IOD) fuse in the Power Distribution Center (PDC) on a non-switched B(+) circuit so that the system may operate regardless of the ignition switch position.



**Fig. 1 Chime Warning System**

- 1 - IGNITION SWITCH
- 2 - SEAT BELT SWITCH
- 3 - DOOR AJAR SWITCH

- 4 - HEADLAMP SWITCH
- 5 - BODY CONTROL MODULE

## CHIME WARNING SYSTEM (Continued)

The chime warning system provides an audible indication to the vehicle operator under the following conditions:

- **Fasten Seat Belt Warning** - The Body Control Module (BCM) chime tone generator will generate repetitive chimes to announce that an input from the seat belt switch indicates the driver side front seat belt is not fastened. Unless the driver side front seat belt is fastened, the chimes will continue to sound for a duration of about six seconds each time the ignition switch is turned to the On position or until the driver side front seat belt is fastened.

- **Head/Park Lights-On Warning** - The BCM chime tone generator will generate repetitive chimes at a fast rate to announce that a Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus driver door ajar message, along with hard wired inputs from the headlamp switch indicate that the exterior lamps are turned On with the driver side front door opened. The chime will continue to sound until the exterior lamps are turned Off, the driver side front door is closed, or the ignition switch is turned to the On position.

- **Key-In-Ignition Warning** - The BCM chime tone generator will generate repetitive chimes at a fast rate to announce that a PCI data bus driver door ajar message received from the Driver Door Module (DDM), along with hard wired inputs from the key-in-ignition warning switch indicate that the key is in the ignition cylinder with the driver side front door opened and the ignition switch in the Off position. The chime will continue to sound until the key is removed from the ignition lock cylinder, the driver side front door is closed, or the ignition switch is turned to the On position.

- **Overspeed Warning** - The BCM chime tone generator will generate repetitive chimes at a slow rate to announce that a PCI data bus vehicle speed message received from the Powertrain Control Module (PCM) indicates that the vehicle speed is above 120 kilometers-per-hour (75 miles-per-hour). The chimes will continue to sound until the vehicle speed is below 120 kilometers-per-hour (75 miles-per-hour). This feature is only enabled on a BCM that has been programmed with a Middle East Gulf Coast Country (GCC) country code.

- **Tactile Beep Support** - The BCM chime tone generator will generate a single beep each time a PCI data bus tactile beep request message is received from the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or the Sentry Key Immobilizer Module

(SKIM). This beep provides an audible confirmation that an EVIC button was completely depressed, or that the optional Sentry Key Immobilizer System (SKIS) is in the "Customer Learn" mode.

- **Warning Beep Support** - The BCM chime tone generator will generate a short series of beeps each time a PCI data bus warning beep request message is received from the EVIC or the Electro-Mechanical Instrument Cluster (EMIC). These beeps provide an audible alert to the vehicle operator, of certain visual warning indications displayed by the EVIC and/or the EMIC.

The BCM provides chime service for all available features in the chime warning system. The BCM relies upon message inputs received from other modules over the PCI data bus network to provide chime service for all of the remaining chime warning system features.

The internal programming of the BCM determines the priority of each chime tone request input that is received, as well as the rate and duration of each chime tone that is to be generated.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - CHIME WARNING SYSTEM

Refer to the appropriate wiring information. Conventional diagnostic methods may not prove conclusive in the diagnosis of the instrument cluster or the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network. The most reliable, efficient and accurate means to diagnose the BCM and the PCI data bus network inputs for the chime warning system requires the use of a DRBIII® scan tool and the appropriate diagnostic information.

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**



## CHIME WARNING SYSTEM (Continued)

CHIME WARNING SYSTEM DIAGNOSIS		
CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
NO SEAT BELT WARNING CHIME WITH SEAT BELT UNBUCKLED, BUT OTHER CHIME FEATURES OK	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Seat belt switch ground circuit open.</li> <li>2. Seat belt switch sense circuit open.</li> <li>3. Faulty seat belt switch.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check for continuity between the ground circuit of the wire harness connector for the seat belt switch and a good ground. Repair the ground circuit, if required.</li> <li>2. Check for continuity between the seat belt switch sense circuit of the wire harness connector for the seat belt switch and the body wire harness junction block connector. Repair the seat belt switch sense circuit, if required.</li> <li>3. Check for continuity between the ground circuit and the seat belt switch sense circuit of the seat belt switch pigtail wire connector. There should be continuity with the seat belt unbuckled. Replace the faulty seat belt, if required.</li> </ol>
SEAT BELT WARNING CHIME WITH SEAT BELT BUCKLED	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Seat belt switch sense circuit shorted.</li> <li>2. Faulty seat belt switch.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. With the wire harness connector for the seat belt switch and the body wire harness junction block connector disconnected, there should be no continuity between the seat belt switch sense circuit and a good ground. Repair the seat belt switch sense circuit, if required.</li> <li>2. Check for continuity between the ground circuit and the seat belt switch sense circuit of the seat belt switch pigtail wire connector. There should be no continuity with the seat belt buckled. Replace the faulty seat belt, if required.</li> </ol>
NO KEY-IN IGNITION OR HEADLAMPS-ON WARNING CHIME WITH DRIVER SIDE FRONT DOOR OPEN	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Faulty door ajar switch or circuits.</li> <li>2. Faulty headlamp switch (left multi-function switch) or circuits.</li> <li>3. Key-in ignition switch sense circuit open.</li> <li>4. Faulty ignition switch.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check that interior lights illuminate with driver door open. If not OK, repair the interior lighting system as required.</li> <li>2. Check for proper exterior lighting operation. If not OK, repair the exterior lighting system as required.</li> <li>2. Check for continuity between the key-in ignition switch sense circuit of the instrument panel wire harness connector for the ignition switch and the body wire harness connector for the junction block. Repair the key-in ignition switch sense circuit, if required.</li> <li>3. Check for continuity between the two terminals in the ignition switch connector. There should be continuity with a key in the ignition lock cylinder. Replace the faulty ignition switch, if required.</li> </ol>

## CHIME WARNING SYSTEM (Continued)

CHIME WARNING SYSTEM DIAGNOSIS		
CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
CHIME SOUNDS WITH DRIVER SIDE FRONT DOOR OPEN	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Key-in ignition switch sense circuit shorted.</li><li>2. Faulty ignition switch.</li></ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Disconnect the instrument panel wire harness connector for the ignition switch and the body wire harness connector for the junction block. There should be no continuity between the key-in ignition switch sense circuit of the instrument panel wire harness connector for the ignition switch and a good ground. Repair the key-in ignition switch sense circuit, if required.</li><li>2. Check for continuity between the two terminals in the ignition switch connector. There should be no continuity with the key removed from the ignition lock cylinder. Replace the faulty ignition switch, if required.</li></ol>
NO CHIMES AT ALL TIMES	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Faulty Body Control Module (BCM).</li></ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Use a DRBIII® scan tool and refer to the appropriate diagnostic information. Replace the faulty BCM, if required</li></ol>

# ELECTRONIC CONTROL MODULES

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page	page
<b>ELECTRONIC CONTROL MODULES</b>		
STANDARD PROCEDURE - PCM/SKIM PROGRAMMING .....	1	
<b>ADJUSTABLE PEDALS MODULE</b>		
REMOVAL .....	2	
INSTALLATION .....	3	
<b>BODY CONTROL MODULE</b>		
DESCRIPTION .....	3	
OPERATION .....	3	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - BODY CONTROL MODULE .....	4	
REMOVAL .....	5	
INSTALLATION .....	5	
<b>COMMUNICATION</b>		
DESCRIPTION .....	6	
OPERATION .....	6	
<b>CONTROLLER ANTILOCK BRAKE</b>		
DESCRIPTION .....	6	
OPERATION .....	6	
REMOVAL .....	7	
INSTALLATION .....	7	
<b>DATA LINK CONNECTOR</b>		
DESCRIPTION - DATA LINK CONNECTOR .....	7	
OPERATION - DATA LINK CONNECTOR .....	7	
<b>DOOR MODULE</b>		
DESCRIPTION .....	7	
OPERATION .....	9	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - DOOR MODULE ..	10	
REMOVAL .....	10	
INSTALLATION .....	10	
<b>MEMORY HEATED SEAT/MIRROR MODULE</b>		
DESCRIPTION .....	10	
OPERATION .....	11	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - MEMORY HEATED SEAT/MIRROR MODULE .....	11	
REMOVAL .....	11	
INSTALLATION .....	11	
<b>POWERTRAIN CONTROL MODULE</b>		
DESCRIPTION		
DESCRIPTION - PCM .....	12	
MODES OF OPERATION .....	12	
DESCRIPTION - 5 VOLT SUPPLIES .....	15	
DESCRIPTION - IGNITION CIRCUIT SENSE ..	15	
DESCRIPTION - POWER GROUNDS .....	15	
DESCRIPTION - SENSOR RETURN .....	15	
OPERATION		
OPERATION - PCM .....	15	
OPERATION - 5 VOLT SUPPLIES .....	16	
OPERATION - IGNITION CIRCUIT SENSE ...	16	
REMOVAL .....	16	
INSTALLATION .....	17	
<b>SENTRY KEY IMMOBILIZER MODULE</b>		
DESCRIPTION .....	17	
OPERATION .....	17	
REMOVAL .....	19	
INSTALLATION .....	19	
<b>TRANSMISSION CONTROL MODULE</b>		
DESCRIPTION .....	20	
OPERATION .....	20	
STANDARD PROCEDURE		
STANDARD PROCEDURE - TCM QUICK LEARN .....	23	
STANDARD PROCEDURE - DRIVE LEARN ..	23	

## ELECTRONIC CONTROL MODULES

### STANDARD PROCEDURE - PCM/SKIM PROGRAMMING

**NOTE:** Before replacing the PCM, be sure to check the related component/circuit integrity for failures not detected due to a double fault in the circuit. Most PCM failures are caused by internal component failures (i.e. relays and solenoids) and shorted circuits (i.e. pull-ups, drivers, and switched circuits). These failures are difficult to detect when a double fault has occurred and only one DTC has been set.

When a PCM (JTEC) and the SKIM are replaced at the same time, perform the following steps in order:

- (1) Program the new PCM (JTEC).
- (2) Program the new SKIM.
- (3) Replace all ignition keys and program them to the new SKIM.

### PROGRAMMING THE PCM (JTEC)

The SKIS Secret Key is an ID code that is unique to each SKIM. This code is programmed and stored in the SKIM, the PCM, and the ignition key transponder chip(s). When replacing the PCM, it is necessary to program the secret key into the new PCM using the DRBIII® scan tool. Perform the following steps to program the secret key into the PCM.

## ELECTRONIC CONTROL MODULES (Continued)

- (1) Turn the ignition switch to the On position (transmission in Park/Neutral).
- (2) Use the DRBIII® and select THEFT ALARM, SKIM, then MISCELLANEOUS.
- (3) Select PCM REPLACED (GAS ENGINE).
- (4) Enter secured access mode by entering the vehicle four-digit PIN.
- (5) Select ENTER to update PCM VIN.

**NOTE:** If three attempts are made to enter secure access mode using an incorrect PIN, secured access mode will be locked out for one hour. To exit this lockout mode, turn the ignition switch to the ON position for one hour, then enter the correct PIN. (Ensure all accessories are turned off. Also monitor the battery state and connect a battery charger if necessary).

- (6) Press ENTER to transfer the secret key (the SKIM will send the secret key to the PCM).
- (7) Press Page Back to get to the Select System menu and select ENGINE, MISCELLANEOUS, and SRI MEMORY CHECK.
- (8) The DRBIII® will ask, "Is odometer reading between XX and XX?" Select the YES or NO button on the DRBIII®. If NO is selected, the DRBIII® will read, "Enter Odometer Reading (From I.P. odometer)". Enter the odometer reading from the instrument cluster and press ENTER.

**PROGRAMMING THE SKIM**

- (1) Turn the ignition switch to the On position (transmission in Park/Neutral).
- (2) Use the DRBIII® and select THEFT ALARM, SKIM, then MISCELLANEOUS.
- (3) Select PCM REPLACED (GAS ENGINE).
- (4) Program the vehicle four-digit PIN into SKIM.
- (5) Select COUNTRY CODE and enter the correct country.

**NOTE:** Be sure to enter the correct country code. If the incorrect country code is programmed into SKIM, it cannot be changed and the SKIM must be replaced.

- (6) Select YES to update VIN (the SKIM will learn the VIN from the PCM).
- (7) Press ENTER to transfer the secret key (the PCM will send the secret key to the SKIM).
- (8) Program ignition keys to the SKIM.

**NOTE:** If the PCM and the SKIM are replaced at the same time, all vehicle ignition keys will need to be replaced and programmed to the new SKIM.

**PROGRAMMING IGNITION KEYS TO THE SKIM**

- (1) Turn the ignition switch to the On position (transmission in Park/Neutral).
- (2) Use the DRBIII® and select THEFT ALARM, SKIM, then MISCELLANEOUS.
- (3) Select PROGRAM IGNITION KEY'S.
- (4) Enter secured access mode by entering the vehicle four-digit PIN.

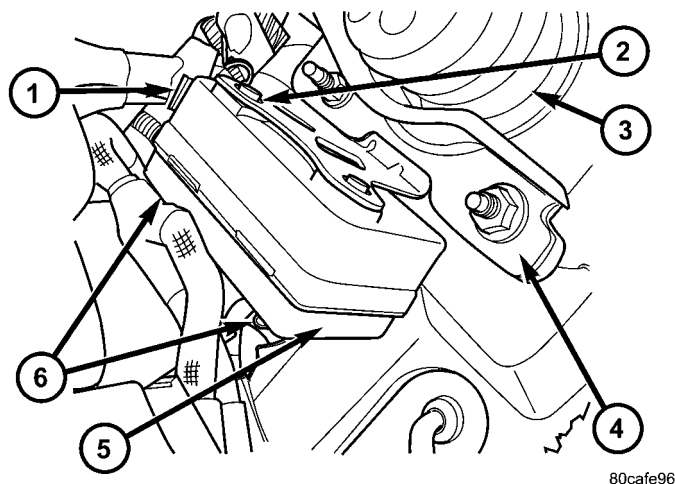
**NOTE:** A maximum of eight keys can be learned to each SKIM. Once a key is learned to a SKIM it (the key) cannot be transferred to another vehicle.

- (5) Obtain ignition keys to be programmed from the customer (8 keys maximum).
  - (6) Using the DRBIII®, erase all ignition keys by selecting MISCELLANEOUS, and ERASE ALL CURRENT IGN. KEYS.
  - (7) Program all of the ignition keys.
- If ignition key programming is unsuccessful, the DRBIII® will display one of the following messages:
- **Programming Not Attempted** - The DRBIII® attempts to read the programmed key status and there are no keys programmed into SKIM memory.
  - **Programming Key Failed (Possible Used Key From Wrong Vehicle)** - SKIM is unable to program an ignition key transponder due to one of the following:
    - The ignition key transponder is faulty.
    - The ignition key transponder is or has been already programmed to another vehicle.
  - **8 Keys Already Learned, Programming Not Done** - The SKIM transponder ID memory is full.
  - **Learned Key In Ignition** - The ID for the ignition key transponder currently in the ignition lock cylinder is already programmed in SKIM memory.

**ADJUSTABLE PEDALS MODULE****REMOVAL**

- (1) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (2) Remove the cluster bezel (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/CLUSTER BEZEL - REMOVAL).
- (3) Remove the steering column opening cover (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/STEERING COLUMN OPENING COVER - REMOVAL).
- (4) Remove the adjustable pedal motor for accessibility. (Refer to 5 - BRAKES/HYDRAULIC/MECHANICAL/PEDAL - REMOVAL).
- (5) Remove the two mounting clips from the module (Fig. 1).
- (6) Disconnect the electrical connector.
- (7) Remove the adjustable pedal module.

## ADJUSTABLE PEDALS MODULE (Continued)

**Fig. 1 ADJUSTABLE PEDALS MODULE**

- 1 - ELECTRICAL CONNECTOR
- 2 - MODULE MOUNTING BRACKET
- 3 - BRAKE BOOSTER
- 4 - ADJUSTABLE PEDALS MOUNTING BRACKET
- 5 - ADJUSTABLE PEDALS CONTROL MODULE
- 6 - HOLD DOWN CLIPS

**INSTALLATION**

(1) Install the module on the mounting pins in the vehicle.

(2) Reconnect the electrical connector.

(3) Install the two mounting clips for the module (Fig. 1).

(4) Install the adjustable pedal motor. (Refer to 5 - BRAKES/HYDRAULIC/MECHANICAL/PEDAL - INSTALLATION).

(5) Install the steering column opening cover (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/STEERING COLUMN OPENING COVER - INSTALLATION).

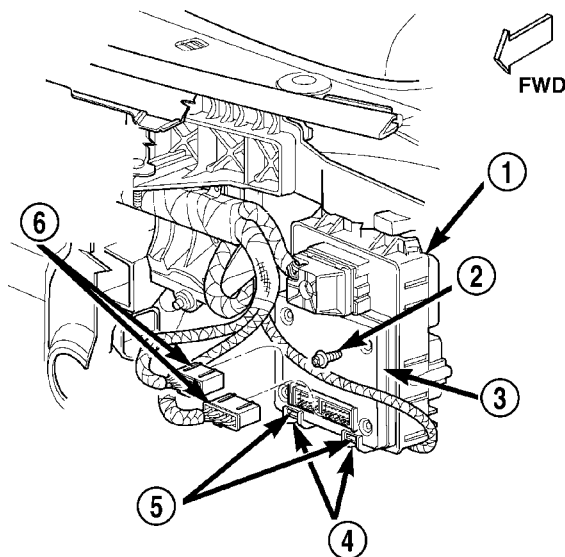
(6) Install the cluster bezel (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/CLUSTER BEZEL - INSTALLATION).

(7) Reconnect the negative battery cable.

**BODY CONTROL MODULE****DESCRIPTION**

A Body Control Module (BCM) is concealed below the driver side end of the instrument panel (Fig. 2).

The BCM utilizes integrated circuitry and information carried on the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network along with many hard wired inputs to monitor many sensor and switch inputs throughout the vehicle. In response to those inputs, the internal circuitry and programming of the BCM allow it to control and integrate many electronic functions and features of the vehicle through both hard wired outputs and the transmis-

**Fig. 2 Body Control Module**

- 1 - JUNCTION BLOCK
- 2 - SCREWS (4)
- 3 - BODY CONTROL MODULE
- 4 - FUSE COVER LOCATOR CHANNELS
- 5 - FUSE COVER MOUNTING SLOTS
- 6 - INSTRUMENT PANEL WIRE HARNESS CONNECTORS

sion of electronic message outputs to other electronic modules in the vehicle over the PCI data bus. The electronic functions and features that the BCM supports or controls include the following:

The BCM for this model is serviced only as a complete unit. Many of the electronic features in the vehicle controlled or supported by the BCM are programmable using either the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) user interface, or the DRBIII® scan tool. In addition, the BCM software is Flash compatible, which means it can be reprogrammed using Flash reprogramming procedures. A BCM can only be repaired by or replaced through an authorized electronic warranty repair station. Refer to the latest version of the Warranty Policies and Procedures manual for a current listing of authorized electronic repair stations.

**OPERATION**

The Body Control Module (BCM) is designed to control and integrate many of the electronic features and functions of the vehicle. The microprocessor-based BCM hardware and software monitors many hard wired switch and sensor inputs as well as those resources it shares with other electronic modules in the vehicle through its communication over the PCI data bus network. The internal programming of the BCM microprocessor allows the BCM to determine the tasks it needs to perform and their priorities. The BCM programming then performs those tasks and provides features through both PCI data bus commu-



## BODY CONTROL MODULE (Continued)

nication with other electronic modules and hard wired outputs to a number of relays. These relays provide the BCM with the ability to control numerous high current accessory systems in the vehicle.

The BCM circuitry operates on battery current received through fuses in the Junction Block (JB) on a non-switched fused B(+) circuit, a fused ignition switch output (start-run) circuit, and a fused ignition switch output (run-accessory) circuit. This arrangement allows the BCM to provide some features regardless of the ignition switch position. The BCM circuitry is grounded through the chassis beneath the center console.

The BCM monitors its own internal circuitry as well as many of its input and output circuits, and will store a Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) in electronic memory for any failure it detects. These DTCs can be retrieved and diagnosed using a DRBIII® scan tool. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

**HARD WIRED INPUTS**

The hard wired inputs to the BCM include the following:

- A/C switch signal
- Ambient temperature sensor signal
- Body control module flash enable
- Coolant level switch sense
- Door ajar switch sense (two circuits - one left rear, and one right rear)
- Driver seat heater switch mux
- Fog lamp switch sense
- Fused B(+)
- Fused ignition switch output (run-acc)
- Fused ignition switch output (st-run)
- Ground (five circuits - two Z1, and three Z2)
- Hazard switch sense
- Headlamp switch mux
- High beam switch sense
- Hood ajar switch sense (export)
- Key-in ignition switch sense
- Liftgate ajar switch sense
- Liftgate courtesy disable
- Liftgate flip-up ajar switch sense
- Panel lamps dimmer signal
- Park lamp relay output
- Passenger seat heater switch mux
- PCI bus
- Radio control mux
- Rear window defogger switch sense
- Seat belt switch sense
- Ultralight sensor signal
- Washer fluid switch sense
- Washer pump switch sense
- Windshield wiper switch mux
- Wiper park switch sense

**MESSAGING**

The BCM uses the following messages received from other electronic modules over the PCI data bus:

- Accessory Delay Control (DDM/PDM)
- Battery Temperature (PCM)
- Chime Request (EMIC, EVIC, SKIM)
- Cylinder Lock Switch Status (DDM)
- Door Ajar Status/Front Doors (DDM/PDM)
- Door Lock Status (DDM/PDM)
- Engine Model (PCM)
- Engine RPM (PCM)
- Engine Temperature (PCM)
- English/Metric Default (EMIC)
- Fuel Tank Level (PCM)
- Fuel Used/Injector Pulses (PCM)
- Panic Control (PDM)
- Programmable Features Preferences/Audible & Optical Chirps/Headlamp Delay (EVIC)
- RKE Status (PDM)
- Vehicle Identification Number (PCM)
- Vehicle Speed (PCM)

The BCM provides the following messages to other electronic modules over the PCI data bus:

- A/C Switch Status (PCM)
- Ambient Temperature Data (AZC/EVIC/PCM)
- Average/Instantaneous Fuel Economy (EVIC)
- Country Code (EMIC)
- Courtesy Lamp Status (DDM/PDM)
- Distance To Empty (EVIC)
- Elapsed Ignition On Timer (EVIC)
- English/Metric Status (EMIC)
- Front & Rear Door Ajar Status (EVIC)
- Front & Rear Fog Lamp Status (EMIC)
- Heated Seat Switch Status (HSM/MHSM)
- High Beam Status (EMIC)
- Ignition Off Timer (EVIC)
- Ignition Switch Position (DDM/PDM)
- Key-In Ignition Status (DDM/PDM)
- Low Beam Status (EMIC)
- Panel Lamp Status (AZC/EMIC/Radio)
- Rear Window Defogger Relay Status (DDM/PDM)
- Remote Radio Switch Status (Radio)
- Seatbelt Status (EMIC/MHSM/MSM)

**DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - BODY CONTROL MODULE**

The hard wired inputs to and outputs from the Body Control Module (BCM) may be diagnosed and tested using conventional diagnostic tools and procedures. Refer to the appropriate wiring information.

Conventional diagnostic methods may not prove conclusive in the diagnosis of the BCM. In order to obtain conclusive testing of the BCM, the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network and all of the electronic modules that provide

## BODY CONTROL MODULE (Continued)

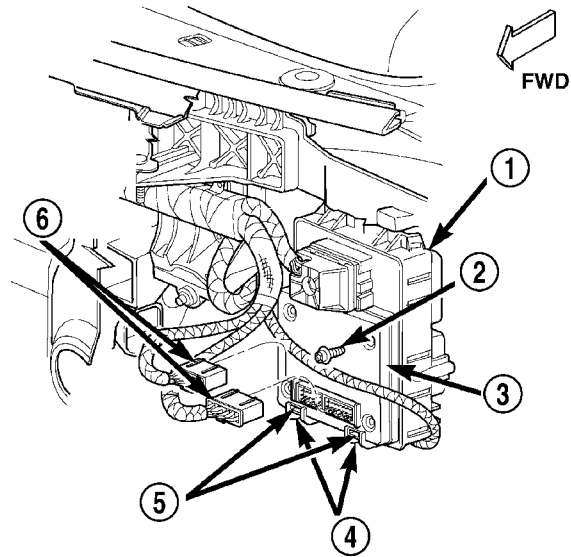
inputs to or receive outputs from the BCM must also be checked. The most reliable, efficient, and accurate means to diagnose the BCM, the PCI data bus network, and the electronic modules that provide inputs to or receive outputs from the BCM requires the use of a DRBIII® scan tool and the appropriate diagnostic information. The DRBIII® scan tool can provide confirmation that the PCI data bus network is functional, that all of the modules are sending and receiving the proper messages over the PCI data bus, and that the BCM is receiving the proper hard wired inputs and responding with the proper hard wired outputs needed to perform its many functions.

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

## REMOVAL

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

- (1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.
- (2) Remove the instrument panel fuse cover. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/POWER DISTRIBUTION/FUSE COVER - REMOVAL).
- (3) Access and disconnect the instrument panel wire harness connectors from the BCM (Fig. 3).
- (4) Remove the mounting screws (Torx T-20) that secure the BCM to the JB.



80b76f92

**Fig. 3 Body Control Module Remove/Install**

- 1 - JUNCTION BLOCK
- 2 - SCREWS (4)
- 3 - BODY CONTROL MODULE
- 4 - FUSE COVER LOCATOR CHANNELS
- 5 - FUSE COVER MOUNTING SLOTS
- 6 - INSTRUMENT PANEL WIRE HARNESS CONNECTORS

(5) Pull the BCM straight out towards the dash panel far enough to disconnect the integral BCM to JB connector.

(6) Remove the BCM.

## INSTALLATION

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

- (1) Position the Body Control Module (BCM) to its mounting location (Fig. 3).
- (2) Align the terminal pins of the BCM connector with the connector on the JB.
- (3) Engage the BCM integral connector into the JB.
- (4) Install the four screws. Tighten the screws to 2.2 N·m (20 in. lbs.).

## BODY CONTROL MODULE (Continued)

(5) Connect the two instrument panel wire harness connectors to the BCM.

(6) Reinstall the instrument panel fuse cover to the bottom of the BCM and JB unit. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/POWER DISTRIBUTION/FUSE COVER - INSTALLATION).

(7) Connect the battery negative cable.

## COMMUNICATION

## DESCRIPTION

The Programmable Communication Interface (PCI) data bus system is a single wire multiplex system used for vehicle communications. Multiplexing is a system that enables the transmission of several messages over a single channel or circuit.

Many of the control modules in a vehicle require information from the same sensing device. Multiplexing reduces wire harness complexity, sensor current loads and controller hardware because each sensing device is connected to only one controller, which reads and distributes the sensor information to the other controllers over the data bus. Also, because each controller on the data bus can access the controller sensor inputs to every other controller on the data bus, more function and feature capabilities are possible.

A multiplex system allows the information flowing between controllers to be monitored using a diagnostic scan tool. This system allows a control module to broadcast message data out onto the bus where all other control modules can read the messages that are being sent. When a module reads a message on the data bus that it requires, it relays that message to its microprocessor. Each module ignores the messages on the data bus that it doesn't recognize.

## OPERATION

Data exchange between modules is achieved by serial transmission of encoded data over a single wire broadcast network. The PCI data bus messages are carried over the bus in the form of Variable Pulse Width Modulated (VPWM) signals. The PCI data bus speed is an average 10.4 Kilo-bits per second (Kbps).

The voltage network used to transmit messages requires biasing and termination. Each module on the PCI data bus system provides its own biasing and termination. Each module (also referred to as a node) terminates the bus through a terminating resistor and a terminating capacitor. The Powertrain Control Module (PCM) is the only dominant node for the PCI data bus system.

The PCI bus uses low and high voltage levels to generate signals. The voltage on the bus varies between zero and seven and one-half volts. The low and high voltage levels are generated by means of

variable-pulse width modulation to form signals of varying length.

When a module is transmitting on the bus, it is reading the bus at the same time to ensure message integrity.

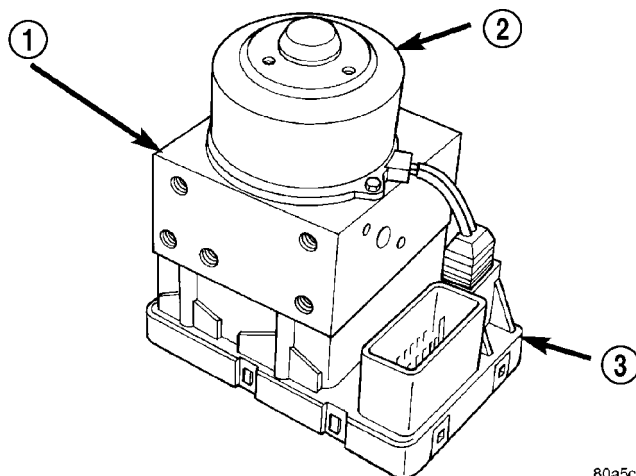
Each module is capable of transmitting and receiving data simultaneously.

The PCI data bus can be monitored using the DRBIII® scan tool. It is possible for the bus to pass all DRBIII® tests and still be faulty if the voltage parameters are all within the specified range and false messages are being sent.

## CONTROLLER ANTILOCK BRAKE

## DESCRIPTION

The Controller Antilock Brake (CAB) is mounted to the Hydraulic Control Unit (HCU) and operates the ABS system (Fig. 4).



80a5c102

**Fig. 4 Controller Antilock Brakes**

- 1 - HCU
- 2 - MOTOR
- 3 - CAB

## OPERATION

The CAB voltage is supplied by the ignition switch in the RUN position. The CAB contains dual microprocessors. A logic block in each microprocessor receives identical sensor signals. These signals are processed and compared simultaneously. The CAB contains a self check program that illuminates the ABS warning light when a system fault is detected. Faults are stored in a diagnostic program memory and are accessible with the DRBIII® scan tool. ABS faults remain in memory until cleared, or until after the vehicle is started approximately 50 times. Stored faults are **not** erased if the battery is disconnected. (Fig. 4)

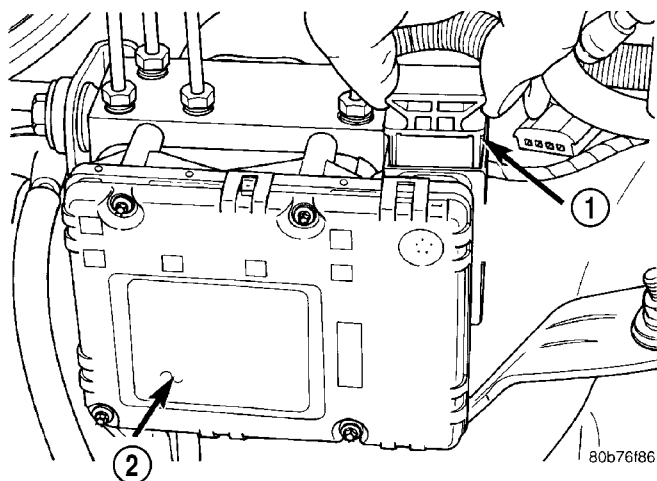
## CONTROLLER ANTILOCK BRAKE (Continued)

**REMOVAL**

(1) Remove negative battery cable from the battery.

(2) Remove air cleaner housing.(Refer to 9 - ENGINE/AIR INTAKE SYSTEM/AIR CLEANER HOUSING - REMOVAL) OR (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/AIR INTAKE SYSTEM/AIR CLEANER HOUSING - REMOVAL).

(3) Release CAB harness connector and remove connector (Fig. 5).

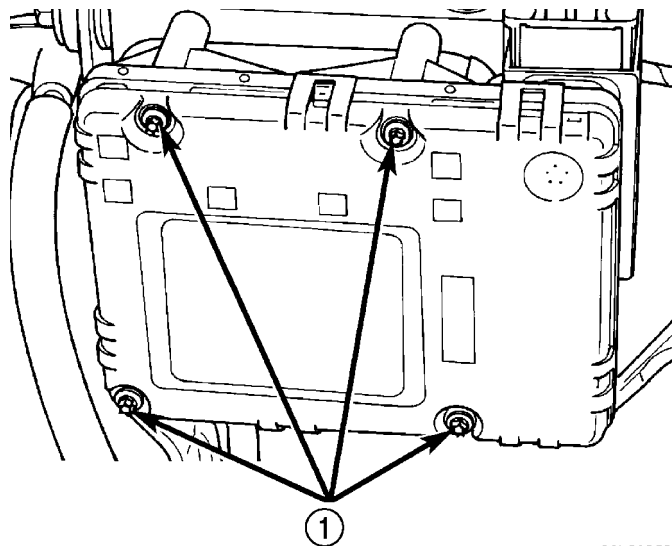


**Fig. 5 CAB Connector Release**

1 - CONNECTOR RELEASE  
2 - CAB

(4) Remove pump motor connector.

(5) Remove CAB mounting bolts (Fig. 6) and remove the CAB from the HCU.



**Fig. 6 CAB Mounting Bolts**

1 - MOUNTING BOLTS

**INSTALLATION**

**NOTE:** If the CAB is being replaced with a new CAB is must be reprogrammed with the use of a DRB III.

(1) Install the CAB onto the HCU and tighten mounting bolts to 1.8 N·m (16 in. lbs.).

(2) Install pump motor connector.

(3) Install CAB harness connector and push down connector release.

(4) Install air cleaner housing.(Refer to 9 - ENGINE/AIR INTAKE SYSTEM/AIR CLEANER HOUSING - INSTALLATION) OR (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/AIR INTAKE SYSTEM/AIR CLEANER HOUSING - INSTALLATION).

(5) Install negative battery cable to the battery.

**DATA LINK CONNECTOR****DESCRIPTION - DATA LINK CONNECTOR**

The data link connector (DLC) is located at the lower edge of the instrument panel near the steering column.

**OPERATION - DATA LINK CONNECTOR**

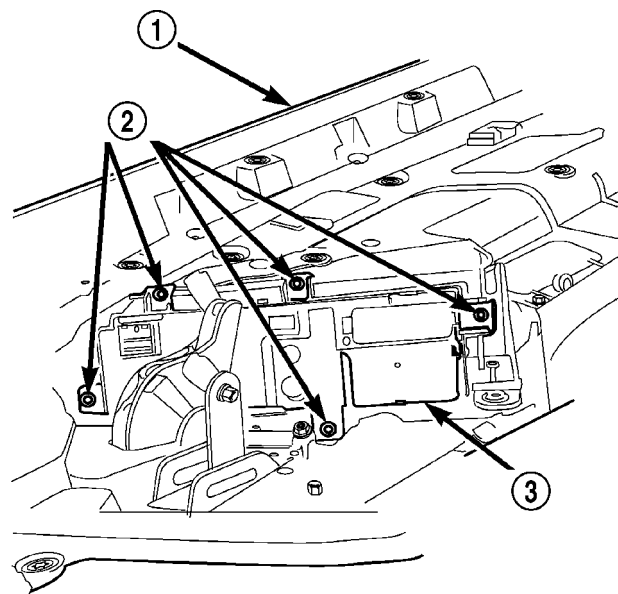
The 16-way DLC links the DRBIII® scan tool or the Mopar Diagnostic System (MDS) with the Powertrain Control Module (PCM).

**DOOR MODULE****DESCRIPTION**

A door module is concealed behind the trim panel of each front door (Fig. 7).The module on the driver side is referred to as the Driver Door Module (DDM), while the module on the passenger side is the Passenger Door Module (PDM). Each door module houses both the front power lock and power window switches. In addition to the power window and power lock switches for its own door, the DDM also houses individual switches for each passenger door power window, a power window lockout switch, the power mirror switch, and the power foldaway mirror switch for export vehicles.



## DOOR MODULE (Continued)



80ba7a4a

**Fig. 7 Door Module**

- 1 - FRONT DOOR TRIM PANEL
- 2 - SCREW (5)
- 3 - DOOR MODULE

The DDM and PDM each utilize integrated circuitry and information carried on the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network along with many hard wired inputs to monitor many sensor and switch inputs throughout the vehicle. The PDM also receives inputs through an integral Radio Frequency (RF) Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) receiver. The DDM and PDM control and integrate many functions and features of the vehicle through both hard wired outputs and messages over the PCI data bus. The functions and features that the door modules support or control include the following:

- **Automatic Door Lock** - The two door modules provide an automatic door lock feature which locks the doors when the vehicle is moving. This is a programmable feature.
- **Automatic Door Unlock On Exit** - The two door modules provide an automatic door unlock on exit feature. This feature will unlock all the doors if they were locked via the automatic door lock feature after the vehicle has stopped moving and the driver door is opened. This is a programmable feature via the EVIC.
- **Customer Programmable Features** - Each door module provides support for certain customer programmable features that are monitored on the PCI bus.
- **Cylinder Lock Switch Status** - The DDM monitors and transmits the status of the cylinder lock switch on the driver side front door lock cylinder.

- **Door Courtesy Lamp Control** - Each door module provides control of its own optional front door-mounted courtesy lamp.

- **Door Lock Inhibit** - Each door module provides a door lock inhibit feature which prevents the doors from being locked with a power lock switch if the key was left in the ignition and a front door is open.

- **Express-Down Window** - The DDM provides an express-down feature for the driver side front door window only.

- **Extended Window Operation** - Both door modules provide an extended power window operation feature that allows operation of the power windows for 45 seconds following ignition Off or until a front door is opened.

- **Front Door Ajar Switch Status** - Each door module monitors and transmits the status of its own front door ajar switch.

- **Heated Mirrors** - Each door module provides control for its own optional heated outside rear view mirror.

- **Illuminated Entry** - Each door module supports an illuminated entry feature through its own optional front door-mounted courtesy lamp.

- **Memory Mirrors** - Each door module provides control for its own optional memory outside rear view mirror.

- **Memory Switch** - The DDM monitors the status of the optional memory switch and controls the illumination of the memory switch "set" Light Emitting Diode (LED) indicator and illumination lamps.

- **Memory System** - The DDM transmits memory set and recall messages based upon inputs from the memory switch. If the optional RKE linked to memory feature is enabled, the DDM will also transmit memory recall messages based upon memory requests received from the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) system in the PDM. Certain memory system features are programmable.

- **Power Foldaway Mirrors - Export Only** - Each door module provides support for the optional power foldaway outside mirrors. The DDM also houses the control switch for this system.

- **Power Lock Control** - The DDM provides control for the driver side front door power lock motor, while the PDM provides control for the power lock motors of the three remaining doors and the liftgate.

- **Power Lock Switch Status** - Each door module monitors and transmits the status of its own integral power lock switch.

- **Power Window Control** - Each door module provides control for both the front and rear door power window motors and the rear door power window switches on the same side of the vehicle.



## DOOR MODULE (Continued)

• **Power Window Switch Status** - The DDM monitors and transmits the status of its integral passenger side front and rear power window switches.

• **Remote Keyless Entry** - The PDM monitors and transmits the status of the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) system and provides support for the RKE Lock (with the optional horn chirp and park lamp flash features), Unlock with the optional RKE unlock, and Panic Mode functions. The optional RKE features are programmable.

• **Switch Illumination** - Each door module provides control of the power window and power lock switch illumination for the front and rear doors on the same side of the vehicle. The DDM provides control of the power mirror switch illumination.

• **Window Lockout** - The DDM monitors and transmits the status of its integral window lockout switch to provide the power window lockout feature and coordinate power window switch knob illumination.

The door modules are serviced only as complete units. Many of the features in the vehicle controlled or supported by the door modules are programmable using either the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) user interface, or the DRBIII® scan tool. If a door module is damaged or faulty, the entire door module unit must be replaced.

## OPERATION

The microprocessor-based DDM and PDM hardware and software monitors integral and hard wired external switch inputs as well as those resources it shares with other electronic modules in the vehicle through its communication over the PCI data bus network. The internal programming and all of these inputs allow the DDM or PDM microprocessor to determine the tasks it needs to perform and their priorities, as well as both the standard and optional features that it should provide.

The DDM and PDM are powered by a fused battery circuit so that they can operate regardless of the ignition switch position. The DDM and PDM circuitry is grounded to the chassis beneath the front seat.

The DDM and PDM can be diagnosed using a DRBIII® scan tool. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

## HARD WIRED INPUTS

The hard wired inputs to the door modules include the following:

- Door ajar switch sense
- Driver door key cylinder switch sense (DDM)
- Fused B(+)
- Ground
- Memory switch mux (DDM)

- Mirror horizontal position signal
- Mirror vertical position signal
- PCI bus

## HARD WIRED OUTPUTS

The hard wired outputs of the door modules include the following:

- Courtesy lamp driver
- Courtesy lamp ground
- Diagnostic out (DDM)
- Door/liftgate lock driver
- Door/liftgate unlock driver
- Door switch illumination (rear power window)
- Front window driver (down)
- Front window driver (up)
- Memory set indicator driver (DDM)
- Memory switch return (DDM)
- Mirror common driver
- Mirror heater ground
- Mirror heater 12V supply
- Rear window driver (down)
- Rear window driver (up)
- Mirror horizontal driver
- Mirror sensor ground
- Mirror vertical driver
- PCI bus
- Switch illumination driver (memory - DDM)

## MESSAGING

The door modules use the following messages received from other electronic modules over the PCI data bus:

- Accessory Delay Control (PDM)
- Courtesy Lamp Status (BCM)
- Door Ajar Status/Rear Doors (BCM)
- Door Lock Status (DDM/PDM)
- Ignition Switch Position (BCM)
- Key-In Ignition Status (BCM)
- Programmable Features Preferences/Auto Lock/

Auto Unlock/RKE Unlock Sequence/RKE Link to Memory (EVIC)

- Memory Recall (DDM)
- Rear Window Defogger Relay Status (BCM)
- Vehicle Speed (PCM)

The door modules provide the following messages to other electronic modules over the PCI data bus:

- Cylinder Lock Switch Status (BCM)
- Door Ajar Status/Front Doors (BCM/DDM/PDM)
- Door Lock Status (DDM/PDM)
- Memory Recall (PDM/MHSM/MSM/Radio)
- Memory Set Switch Status (PDM/MHSM/MSM/

Radio)

- Panic Control (BCM)
- Power Window Switch Status (PDM)
- RKE Status (BCM/DDM)
- Window Lockout Switch Status (PDM)

## DOOR MODULE (Continued)

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - DOOR MODULE

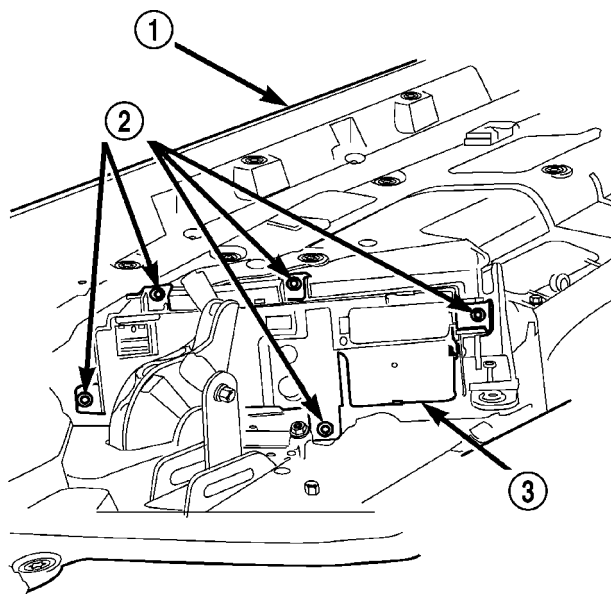
**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

The hard wired inputs to and outputs from the Driver Door Module (DDM) or the Passenger Door Module (PDM) may be diagnosed and tested using conventional diagnostic tools and procedures. It is suggested that the proper operation of the inoperative power window motor, power door lock motor, power liftgate lock motor, power mirror motors, or heated mirror grid be confirmed using jumper wires to bypass the door module. If the inoperative component operates when the door module is bypassed, check the circuits between the component and the door module, as well as the fused B(+) and ground circuits of the door module for shorts or opens.

These conventional diagnostic methods may not prove conclusive in the diagnosis of the DDM or the PDM. In order to obtain conclusive testing of these modules, the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network and all of the modules that provide inputs to or receive outputs from the door modules must also be checked. The most reliable, efficient, and accurate means to diagnose the DDM, the PDM, the PCI data bus network, and the modules that provide inputs to or receive outputs from the door modules requires the use of a DRBIII® scan tool and the appropriate diagnostic information.

## REMOVAL

- (1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.
- (2) Remove the trim panel from the front door. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/TRIM PANEL - REMOVAL).
- (3) Remove the door module from the back of the front door trim panel (Fig. 8).
- (4) Remove the door module from the front door trim panel.



80ba7a4a

**Fig. 8 Door Module Remove/Install**

- 1 - FRONT DOOR TRIM PANEL
- 2 - SCREW (5)
- 3 - DOOR MODULE

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Position the door module onto the front door trim panel.
- (2) Install the door module to the back of the front door trim panel (Fig. 8). Tighten the screws to 2.2 N·m (20 in. lbs.).
- (3) Reinstall the trim panel onto the front door. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/TRIM PANEL - INSTALLATION).
- (4) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

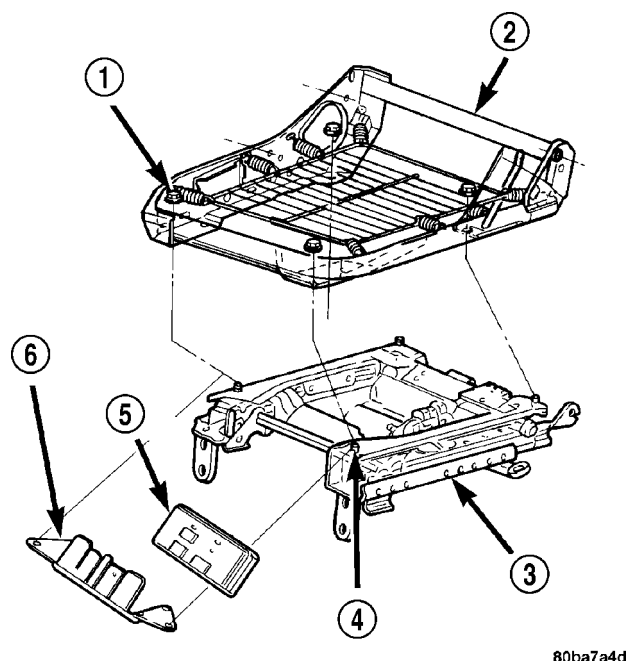
MEMORY HEATED SEAT/  
MIRROR MODULE

## DESCRIPTION

There are two different modules that can be used in the optional heated seat system. The Heated Seat Module (HSM) is used on vehicles that are not equipped with the optional Memory System. The Memory Heated Seat Module (MHSM) is used on vehicles that are equipped with the optional Memory System and the optional heated seat system. Refer to **Memory System** in Power Seat Systems for more information on the memory system option.

The module is mounted on a bracket that is located between the power seat track and the seat cushion frame (Fig. 9). The HSM or MHSM is used to control the heated seat system functions for both front seats. The HSM or MHSM contains a central processing unit that communicates with other modules on the

## MEMORY HEATED SEAT/MIRROR MODULE (Continued)



80ba7a4d

**Fig. 9 Heated Seat Module Remove/Install**

- 1 - NUT (4)
- 2 - SEAT CUSHION FRAME
- 3 - POWER SEAT TRACK
- 4 - STUD (4)
- 5 - MODULE
- 6 - BRACKET

Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network.

For diagnosis of the HSM, MHSM or the PCI data bus, a DRBIII® scan tool and the proper Diagnostic Procedures manual are recommended. The HSM or MHSM cannot be repaired and, if faulty or damaged, it must be replaced.

**OPERATION**

The MSM receives hard wired inputs from the power seat switch and the potentiometers on each of the driver side power seat motors. The MSM receives messages over the PCI data bus from the Driver Door Module (DDM) (memory switch status), the Powertrain Control Module (PCM) (vehicle speed status), and the Body Control Module (seat belt switch status). The MSM will prevent the seat memory recall function from being initiated if the driver side seat belt is buckled, if the transmission gear selector lever is not in the Park or Neutral positions, or if the vehicle is moving.

**DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - MEMORY HEATED SEAT/MIRROR MODULE**

Visually inspect the related wiring harness connectors. Look for broken, bent, pushed out, or corroded terminals. If any of the above conditions are present, repair as necessary. If not proceed as follows:

(1) Using a voltmeter and Wiring schematic, verify proper voltage at the heated seat module. If OK go to Step 2, If not OK check fuses and repair the open or shorted voltage supply circuit as required.

(2) Using a ohmmeter and Wiring schematic, verify proper ground connections at the heated seat module. If OK go to Step 3, If not OK repair the open or shorted ground circuit as required.

(3) Test the appropriate Heated Seat switch. Refer to the procedure in Heated Seat System. If OK go to Step 4, If not OK replace the heated seat switch and re-test system.

(4) Test the appropriate Heated Seat Element. Refer to the procedure in Heated Seat System. If OK go to Step 5, If not OK replace the heated seat element and re-test system.

(5) Test the appropriate Heated Seat Sensor. Refer to the procedure in Heated Seat System. If OK, Use a DRBIII® scan tool and the proper Diagnostic Procedures Manual to test the system. If not OK replace the heated seat sensor and re-test system.

For complete circuit diagrams, refer to **Wiring Diagrams**.

**REMOVAL**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Remove the driver side front bucket seat from the power seat track unit. Refer to **Bucket Seat Track Adjuster** in Body for the procedure.

(3) Lift the heated seat module off of the power seat track and disconnect the power seat wire harness connectors (Fig. 10).

(4) Remove the module from the bracket.

**INSTALLATION**

(1) Install the MHSM, HSM into the bracket.

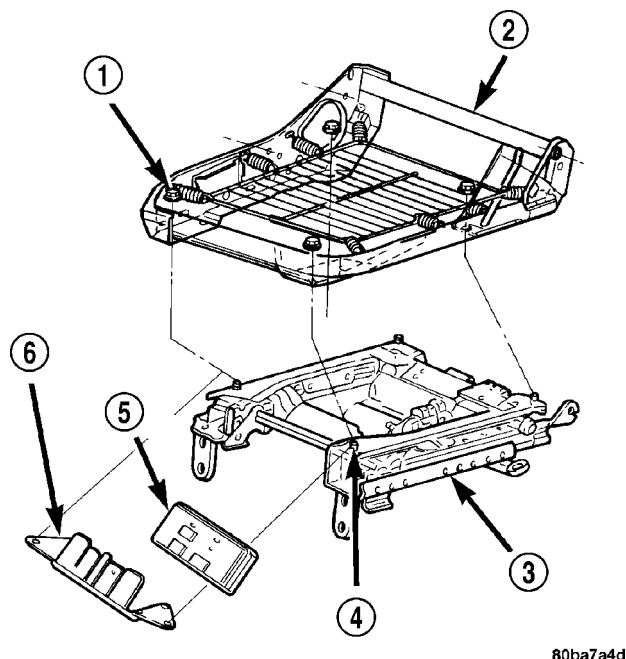
(2) Position the heated seat module and mounting bracket onto the power seat track.

(3) Reconnect the power seat wiring harness connectors to the heated seat module.

(4) Install the driver side front bucket seat onto the power seat track unit (Refer to 23 - BODY/SEATS/SEAT TRACK ADJUSTER - INSTALLATION).

(5) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

## MEMORY HEATED SEAT/MIRROR MODULE (Continued)

**Fig. 10 Heated Seat Module Remove/Install**

- 1 - NUT (4)
- 2 - SEAT CUSHION FRAME
- 3 - POWER SEAT TRACK
- 4 - STUD (4)
- 5 - MODULE
- 6 - BRACKET

**NOTE:** If the vehicle is equipped with the optional Memory System, following installation, it will be necessary to initialize the Memory Heated Seat Module (MHSM). In order to function properly, the MHSM must "learn" the sensor values of each of the power seat motor position transducers in each of the adjuster hard stop positions. This is done by performing the "Reset Guard Band" procedure using a DRBIII® scan tool and the proper Diagnostic Procedures manual.

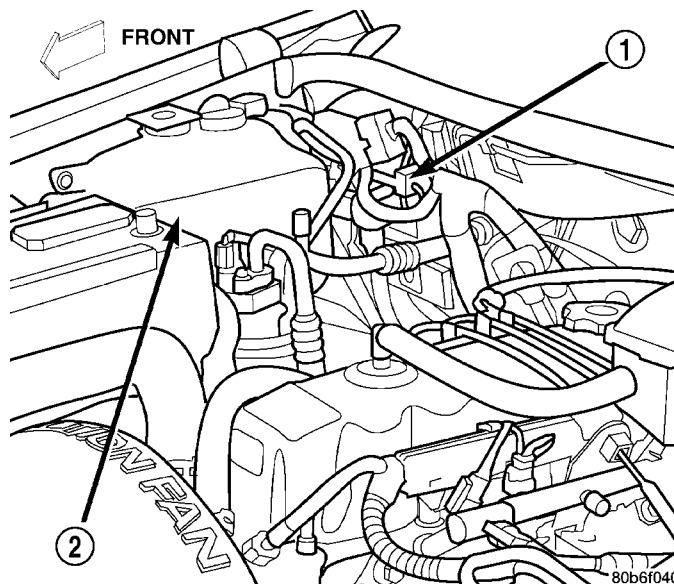
**WARNING:** THE "RESET GUARD BAND" PROCEDURE WILL CAUSE THE DRIVER SIDE FRONT SEAT TO AUTOMATICALLY ADJUST TO EACH OF ITS TRAVEL LIMITS. BE CERTAIN THAT NO ONE IS SEATED IN THE VEHICLE AND THAT THERE IS NOTHING IN THE VEHICLE THAT WILL OBSTRUCT SEAT MOVEMENT. FAILURE TO OBSERVE THIS WARNING COULD RESULT IN PERSONAL INJURIES AND/OR VEHICLE DAMAGE.

## POWERTRAIN CONTROL MODULE

## DESCRIPTION

## DESCRIPTION - PCM

The Powertrain Control Module (PCM) is located in the engine compartment (Fig. 11). The PCM is referred to as JTEC.

**Fig. 11 PCM Location**

- 1 - PCM
- 2 - COOLANT TANK

## MODES OF OPERATION

As input signals to the Powertrain Control Module (PCM) change, the PCM adjusts its response to the output devices. For example, the PCM must calculate different injector pulse width and ignition timing for idle than it does for wide open throttle (WOT).

The PCM will operate in two different modes:

**Open Loop and Closed Loop.**

During Open Loop modes, the PCM receives input signals and responds only according to preset PCM programming. Input from the oxygen (O2S) sensors is not monitored during Open Loop modes.

During Closed Loop modes, the PCM will monitor the oxygen (O2S) sensors input. This input indicates to the PCM whether or not the calculated injector pulse width results in the ideal air-fuel ratio. This ratio is 14.7 parts air-to-1 part fuel. By monitoring the exhaust oxygen content through the O2S sensor, the PCM can fine tune the injector pulse width. This is done to achieve optimum fuel economy combined with low emission engine performance.



## POWERTRAIN CONTROL MODULE (Continued)

The fuel injection system has the following modes of operation:

- Ignition switch ON
- Engine start-up (crank)
- Engine warm-up
- Idle
- Cruise
- Acceleration
- Deceleration
- Wide open throttle (WOT)
- Ignition switch OFF

The ignition switch On, engine start-up (crank), engine warm-up, acceleration, deceleration and wide open throttle modes are Open Loop modes. The idle and cruise modes, (with the engine at operating temperature) are Closed Loop modes.

**IGNITION SWITCH (KEY-ON) MODE**

This is an Open Loop mode. When the fuel system is activated by the ignition switch, the following actions occur:

- The PCM pre-positions the idle air control (IAC) motor.
- The PCM determines atmospheric air pressure from the MAP sensor input to determine basic fuel strategy.
- The PCM monitors the engine coolant temperature sensor input. The PCM modifies fuel strategy based on this input.
- Intake manifold air temperature sensor input is monitored.
- Throttle position sensor (TPS) is monitored.
- The auto shutdown (ASD) relay is energized by the PCM for approximately three seconds.
- The fuel pump is energized through the fuel pump relay by the PCM. The fuel pump will operate for approximately three seconds unless the engine is operating or the starter motor is engaged.
- The O2S sensor heater element is energized via the O2S relays. The O2S sensor input is not used by the PCM to calibrate air-fuel ratio during this mode of operation.

**ENGINE START-UP MODE**

This is an Open Loop mode. The following actions occur when the starter motor is engaged.

The PCM receives inputs from:

- Battery voltage
- Engine coolant temperature sensor
- Crankshaft position sensor
- Intake manifold air temperature sensor
- Manifold absolute pressure (MAP) sensor
- Throttle position sensor (TPS)
- Starter motor relay
- Camshaft position sensor signal

The PCM monitors the crankshaft position sensor. If the PCM does not receive a crankshaft position sensor signal within approximately 3 seconds of cranking the engine, it will shut down the fuel injection system.

The fuel pump is activated by the PCM through the fuel pump relay.

Voltage is applied to the fuel injectors with the ASD relay via the PCM. The PCM will then control the injection sequence and injector pulse width by turning the ground circuit to each individual injector on and off.

The PCM determines the proper ignition timing according to input received from the crankshaft position sensor.

**ENGINE WARM-UP MODE**

This is an Open Loop mode. During engine warm-up, the PCM receives inputs from:

- Battery voltage
- Crankshaft position sensor
- Engine coolant temperature sensor
- Intake manifold air temperature sensor
- Manifold absolute pressure (MAP) sensor
- Throttle position sensor (TPS)
- Camshaft position sensor signal
- Park/neutral switch (gear indicator signal—auto. trans. only)

- Air conditioning select signal (if equipped)
- Air conditioning request signal (if equipped)

Based on these inputs the following occurs:

• Voltage is applied to the fuel injectors with the ASD relay via the PCM. The PCM will then control the injection sequence and injector pulse width by turning the ground circuit to each individual injector on and off.

• The PCM adjusts engine idle speed through the idle air control (IAC) motor and adjusts ignition timing.

• The PCM operates the A/C compressor clutch through the clutch relay. This is done if A/C has been selected by the vehicle operator and requested by the A/C thermostat.

• When engine has reached operating temperature, the PCM will begin monitoring O2S sensor input. The system will then leave the warm-up mode and go into closed loop operation.

**IDLE MODE**

When the engine is at operating temperature, this is a Closed Loop mode. At idle speed, the PCM receives inputs from:

- Air conditioning select signal (if equipped)
- Air conditioning request signal (if equipped)
- Battery voltage
- Crankshaft position sensor



## POWERTRAIN CONTROL MODULE (Continued)

- Engine coolant temperature sensor
- Intake manifold air temperature sensor
- Manifold absolute pressure (MAP) sensor
- Throttle position sensor (TPS)
- Camshaft position sensor signal
- Battery voltage
- Park/neutral switch (gear indicator signal—auto.

trans. only)

- Oxygen sensors

Based on these inputs, the following occurs:

- Voltage is applied to the fuel injectors with the ASD relay via the PCM. The PCM will then control injection sequence and injector pulse width by turning the ground circuit to each individual injector on and off.

- The PCM monitors the O<sub>2</sub>S sensor input and adjusts air-fuel ratio by varying injector pulse width. It also adjusts engine idle speed through the idle air control (IAC) motor.

- The PCM adjusts ignition timing by increasing and decreasing spark advance.

- The PCM operates the A/C compressor clutch through the clutch relay. This happens if A/C has been selected by the vehicle operator and requested by the A/C thermostat.

## CRUISE MODE

When the engine is at operating temperature, this is a Closed Loop mode. At cruising speed, the PCM receives inputs from:

- Air conditioning select signal (if equipped)
- Air conditioning request signal (if equipped)
- Battery voltage
- Engine coolant temperature sensor
- Crankshaft position sensor
- Intake manifold air temperature sensor
- Manifold absolute pressure (MAP) sensor
- Throttle position sensor (TPS)
- Camshaft position sensor signal
- Park/neutral switch (gear indicator signal—auto.

trans. only)

- Oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>S) sensors

Based on these inputs, the following occurs:

- Voltage is applied to the fuel injectors with the ASD relay via the PCM. The PCM will then adjust the injector pulse width by turning the ground circuit to each individual injector on and off.

- The PCM monitors the O<sub>2</sub>S sensor input and adjusts air-fuel ratio. It also adjusts engine idle speed through the idle air control (IAC) motor.

- The PCM adjusts ignition timing by turning the ground path to the coil on and off.

- The PCM operates the A/C compressor clutch through the clutch relay. This happens if A/C has been selected by the vehicle operator and requested by the A/C thermostat.

## ACCELERATION MODE

This is an Open Loop mode. The PCM recognizes an abrupt increase in throttle position or MAP pressure as a demand for increased engine output and vehicle acceleration. The PCM increases injector pulse width in response to increased throttle opening.

## DECELERATION MODE

When the engine is at operating temperature, this is an Open Loop mode. During hard deceleration, the PCM receives the following inputs.

- Air conditioning select signal (if equipped)
- Air conditioning request signal (if equipped)
- Battery voltage
- Engine coolant temperature sensor
- Crankshaft position sensor
- Intake manifold air temperature sensor
- Manifold absolute pressure (MAP) sensor
- Throttle position sensor (TPS)
- Camshaft position sensor signal
- Park/neutral switch (gear indicator signal—auto.

trans. only)

- Vehicle speed

If the vehicle is under hard deceleration with the proper rpm and closed throttle conditions, the PCM will ignore the oxygen sensor input signal. The PCM will enter a fuel cut-off strategy in which it will not supply a ground to the injectors. If a hard deceleration does not exist, the PCM will determine the proper injector pulse width and continue injection.

Based on the above inputs, the PCM will adjust engine idle speed through the idle air control (IAC) motor.

The PCM adjusts ignition timing by turning the ground path to the coil on and off.

## WIDE OPEN THROTTLE MODE

This is an Open Loop mode. During wide open throttle operation, the PCM receives the following inputs.

- Battery voltage
- Crankshaft position sensor
- Engine coolant temperature sensor
- Intake manifold air temperature sensor
- Manifold absolute pressure (MAP) sensor
- Throttle position sensor (TPS)
- Camshaft position sensor signal

During wide open throttle conditions, the following occurs:

- Voltage is applied to the fuel injectors with the ASD relay via the PCM. The PCM will then control the injection sequence and injector pulse width by turning the ground circuit to each individual injector on and off. The PCM ignores the oxygen sensor input signal and provides a predetermined amount of addi-

## POWERTRAIN CONTROL MODULE (Continued)

tional fuel. This is done by adjusting injector pulse width.

- The PCM adjusts ignition timing by turning the ground path to the coil on and off.

**IGNITION SWITCH OFF MODE**

When ignition switch is turned to OFF position, the PCM stops operating the injectors, ignition coil, ASD relay and fuel pump relay.

**DESCRIPTION - 5 VOLT SUPPLIES**

Two different Powertrain Control Module (PCM) five volt supply circuits are used; primary and secondary.

**DESCRIPTION - IGNITION CIRCUIT SENSE**

This circuit ties the ignition switch to the Powertrain Control Module (PCM).

**DESCRIPTION - POWER GROUNDS**

The Powertrain Control Module (PCM) has 2 main grounds. Both of these grounds are referred to as power grounds. All of the high-current, noisy, electrical devices are connected to these grounds as well as all of the sensor returns. The sensor return comes into the sensor return circuit, passes through noise suppression, and is then connected to the power ground.

The power ground is used to control ground circuits for the following PCM loads:

- Generator field winding
- Fuel injectors
- Ignition coil(s)
- Certain relays/solenoids
- Certain sensors

**DESCRIPTION - SENSOR RETURN**

The Sensor Return circuits are internal to the Powertrain Control Module (PCM).

Sensor Return provides a low-noise ground reference for all engine control system sensors. Refer to Power Grounds for more information.

**OPERATION****OPERATION - PCM**

(1) Also refer to Modes of Operation.

The PCM operates the fuel system. The PCM is a pre-programmed, triple microprocessor digital computer. It regulates ignition timing, air-fuel ratio, emission control devices, charging system, certain transmission features, speed control, air conditioning compressor clutch engagement and idle speed. The PCM can adapt its programming to meet changing operating conditions.

The PCM receives input signals from various switches and sensors. Based on these inputs, the PCM regulates various engine and vehicle operations through different system components. These components are referred to as Powertrain Control Module (PCM) Outputs. The sensors and switches that provide inputs to the PCM are considered Powertrain Control Module (PCM) Inputs.

The PCM adjusts ignition timing based upon inputs it receives from sensors that react to: engine rpm, manifold absolute pressure, engine coolant temperature, throttle position, transmission gear selection (automatic transmission), vehicle speed and the brake switch.

The PCM adjusts idle speed based on inputs it receives from sensors that react to: throttle position, vehicle speed, transmission gear selection, engine coolant temperature and from inputs it receives from the air conditioning clutch switch and brake switch.

Based on inputs that it receives, the PCM adjusts ignition coil dwell. The PCM also adjusts the generator charge rate through control of the generator field and provides speed control operation.

**NOTE: PCM Inputs:**

- A/C request
- Auto shutdown (ASD) sense
- Battery temperature
- Battery voltage
- Brake switch
- J1850 bus circuits
- Camshaft position sensor signal
- Crankshaft position sensor
- Data link connections for DRB scan tool
- Engine coolant temperature sensor
- Five volts (primary)
- Five volts (secondary)
- Fuel level
- Generator (battery voltage) output
- Ignition circuit sense (ignition switch in on/off/crank/run position)
  - Intake manifold air temperature sensor
  - Leak detection pump (switch) sense (if equipped)
  - Manifold absolute pressure (MAP) sensor
  - Oil pressure
  - Overdrive/override switch
  - Oxygen sensors
  - Park/neutral switch (auto. trans. only)
  - Power ground
  - Sensor return
  - Signal ground
  - Speed control multiplexed single wire input
  - Throttle position sensor
  - Transmission governor pressure sensor
  - Transmission temperature sensor
  - Vehicle speed (from ABS module)

## POWERTRAIN CONTROL MODULE (Continued)

**NOTE: PCM Outputs:**

- A/C clutch relay
- Auto shutdown (ASD) relay
- J1850 (+/-) circuits for: speedometer, voltmeter, fuel gauge, oil pressure gauge/lamp, engine temp. gauge and speed control warn. lamp
- Data link connection for DRBIII® scan tool
- EGR valve control solenoid (if equipped)
- EVAP canister purge solenoid
- Fuel injectors
- Fuel pump relay
- Generator field driver (-)
- Generator field driver (+)
- Generator lamp (if equipped)
- Idle air control (IAC) motor
- Ignition coil
- Leak detection pump
- Malfunction indicator lamp (Check engine lamp). Driven through J1850 circuits.
- Overdrive indicator lamp (if equipped). Driven through J1850 circuits.
- Oxygen sensor heater relays (if equipped).
- Radiator cooling fan relay (pulse width modulated)
- Speed control source
- Speed control vacuum solenoid
- Speed control vent solenoid
- Tachometer (if equipped). Driven through J1850 circuits.
- Transmission convertor clutch circuit
- Transmission 3-4 shift solenoid
- Transmission relay
- Transmission temperature lamp (if equipped)
- Transmission variable force solenoid

**OPERATION - 5 VOLT SUPPLIES**

Primary 5-volt supply:

- supplies the required 5 volt power source to the Crankshaft Position (CKP) sensor.
- supplies the required 5 volt power source to the Camshaft Position (CMP) sensor.
- supplies a reference voltage for the Manifold Absolute Pressure (MAP) sensor.
- supplies a reference voltage for the Throttle Position Sensor (TPS) sensor.

Secondary 5-volt supply:

- supplies the required 5 volt power source to the oil pressure sensor.
- supplies the required 5 volt power source for the Vehicle Speed Sensor (VSS) (if equipped).
- supplies the 5 volt power source to the transmission pressure sensor (if equipped with an RE automatic transmission).

**OPERATION - IGNITION CIRCUIT SENSE**

The ignition circuit sense input tells the PCM the ignition switch has energized the ignition circuit.

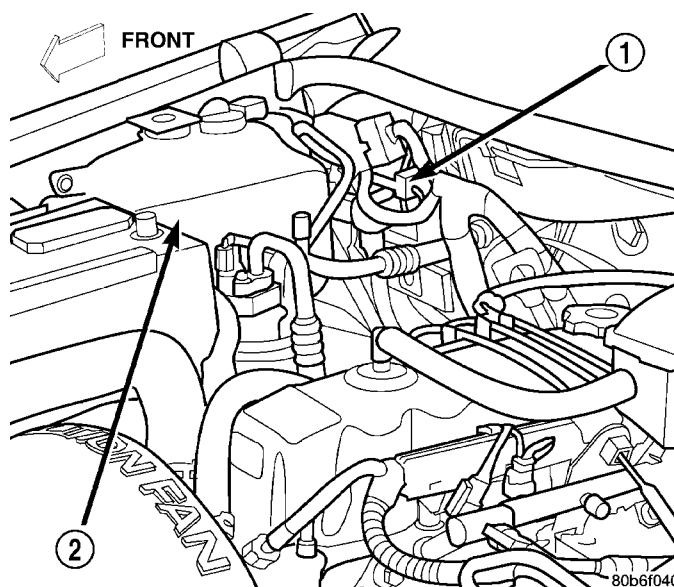
Battery voltage is also supplied to the PCM through the ignition switch when the ignition is in the RUN or START position. This is referred to as the "ignition sense" circuit and is used to "wake up" the PCM.

**REMOVAL**

**USE THE DRBIII® SCAN TOOL TO REPROGRAM THE NEW POWERTRAIN CONTROL MODULE (PCM) WITH THE VEHICLES ORIGINAL IDENTIFICATION NUMBER (VIN) AND THE VEHICLES ORIGINAL MILEAGE. IF THIS STEP IS NOT DONE, A DIAGNOSTIC TROUBLE CODE (DTC) MAY BE SET.**

The PCM is located on the cowl panel in right/rear side of engine compartment (Fig. 12).

The PCM is located on the cowl panel in right/rear side of engine compartment (Fig. 12).



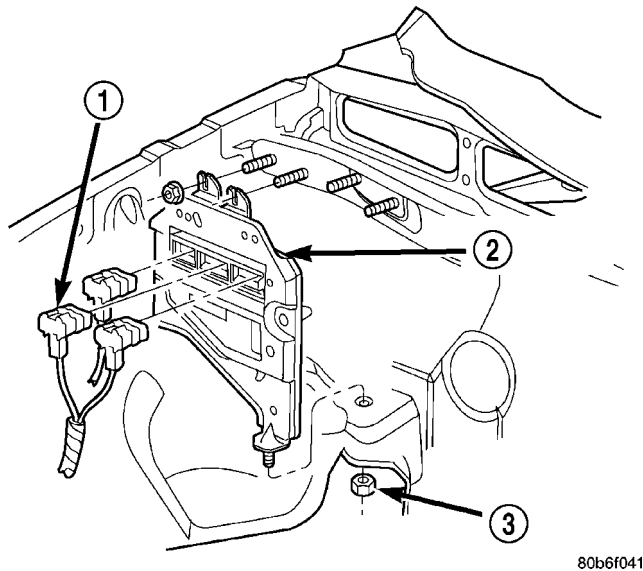
**Fig. 12 Powertrain Control Module (PCM) Location**

- 1 - PCM  
2 - COOLANT TANK

To avoid possible voltage spike damage to PCM, ignition key must be off, and negative battery cable must be disconnected before unplugging PCM connectors.

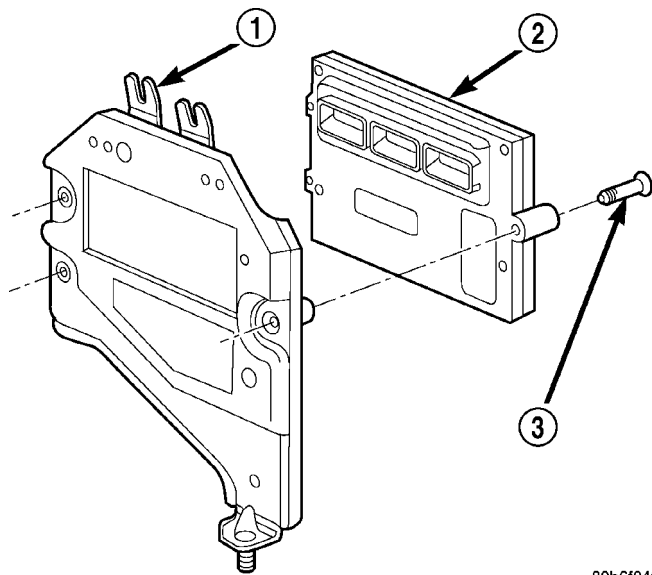
- (1) Disconnect negative battery cable at battery.
- (2) If equipped, remove Transmission Control Module (TCM).
- (3) Remove coolant reserve/overflow tank.
- (4) Remove cover over electrical connectors. Cover snaps onto PCM.
- (5) Carefully unplug three 32-way connectors at PCM.

## POWERTRAIN CONTROL MODULE (Continued)



**Fig. 13 Powertrain Control Module (PCM) 32-Way Connectors**

- 1 - 3 32-WAY CONNECTORS
- 2 - PCM/BACKET ASSEMBLY
- 3 - BRACKET NUTS (3)



**Fig. 14 Powertrain Control Module (PCM) Mounting Bracket**

- 1 - PCM BRACKET
- 2 - PCM
- 3 - PCM-TO-BRACKET SCREWS (3)

(6) Remove three PCM bracket-to-body mounting nuts (Fig. 13).

(7) Remove PCM/PCM bracket assembly from vehicle.

(8) Remove 3 PCM-to-PCM bracket bolts (screws) (Fig. 14).

## INSTALLATION

**USE THE DRBIII® SCAN TOOL TO REPROGRAM THE NEW POWERTRAIN CONTROL MODULE (PCM) WITH THE VEHICLES ORIGINAL IDENTIFICATION NUMBER (VIN) AND THE VEHICLES ORIGINAL MILEAGE. IF THIS STEP IS NOT DONE, A DIAGNOSTIC TROUBLE CODE (DTC) MAY BE SET.**

The PCM is located on the cowl panel in right/rear side of engine compartment (Fig. 12).

(1) Check pins in three 32-way electrical connectors for damage. Repair as necessary.

(2) Install PCM to its mounting bracket. Tighten three mounting bolts to 3 N·m (25 in. lbs.) torque.

(3) Install PCM/PCM bracket to body. Install 3 nuts and tighten 9 N·m (80 in. lbs.) torque.

(4) Install three 32-way connectors.

(5) Install cover over electrical connectors. Cover snaps onto PCM.

(6) Install coolant reserve/overflow tank.

(7) If equipped, install Transmission Control Module (TCM).

(8) Connect negative cable to battery.

(9) Use the DRBIII® scan tool to reprogram new PCM with vehicles original Identification Number (VIN) and original vehicle mileage.

## SENTRY KEY IMMOBILIZER MODULE

## DESCRIPTION

The Sentry Key Immobilizer Module (SKIM) is the primary component of the Sentry Key Immobilizer System (SKIS) (Fig. 15). The SKIM is located in the steering column, below the ignition lock cylinder housing. The SKIM has an integral halo-like antenna ring that extends from one side.

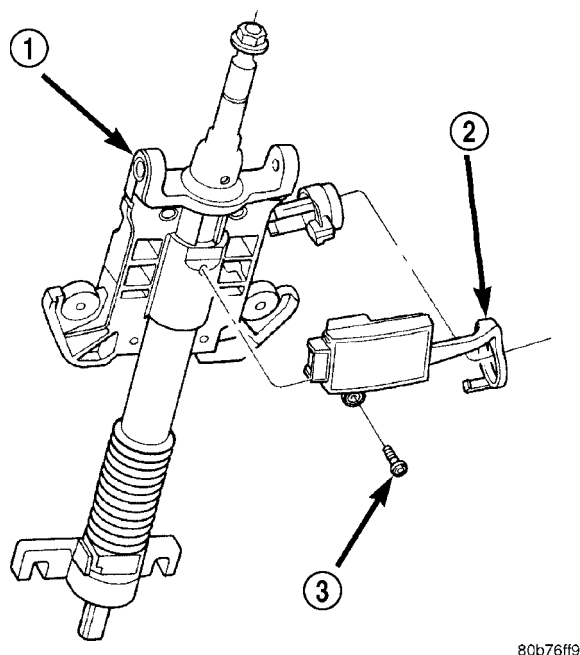
The SKIM cannot be adjusted or repaired. If faulty or damaged, the entire SKIM unit must be replaced.

## OPERATION

The Sentry Key Immobilizer Module (SKIM) contains a Radio Frequency (RF) transceiver and a microprocessor. The SKIM transmits RF signals to, and receives RF signals from the Sentry Key transponder through a tuned antenna ring integral to the SKIM housing. If this antenna ring is not mounted properly around the ignition lock cylinder housing, communication problems between the SKIM and the transponder may arise. These communication problems will result in Sentry Key transponder-related faults. The SKIM also communicates over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus with the Powertrain Control Module (PCM), the Elec-



## SENTRY KEY IMMOBILIZER MODULE (Continued)



**Fig. 15 Sentry Key Immobilizer Module**

- 1 - STEERING COLUMN
- 2 - SKIM
- 3 - MOUNTING SCREW

troMechanical Instrument Cluster (EMIC), the Body Control Module (BCM), and/or the DRBIII® scan tool.

The SKIM retains in memory the ID numbers of any Sentry Key transponder that is programmed into it. A maximum of eight transponders can be programmed into the SKIM. For added system security, each SKIM is programmed with a unique Secret Key code. This code is stored in memory, sent over the PCI data bus to the PCM, and is encoded to the transponder of every Sentry Key that is programmed into the SKIM. Another security code, called a PIN, is used to gain access to the SKIM Secured Access Mode. The Secured Access Mode is required during service to perform the SKIS initialization and Sentry Key transponder programming procedures. The SKIM also stores the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) in its memory, which it learns through a PCI data bus message from the PCM during SKIS initialization.

In the event that a SKIM replacement is required, the Secret Key code can be transferred to the new SKIM from the PCM using the DRBIII® scan tool and the SKIS replacement procedure. Proper completion of the SKIS initialization will allow the existing Sentry Keys to be programmed into the new SKIM so that new keys will not be required. In the event that the original Secret Key code cannot be recovered, SKIM replacement will also require new Sentry Keys. The DRBIII® scan tool will alert the technician during the SKIS replacement procedure if new Sentry Keys are required.

When the ignition switch is turned to the On position, the SKIM transmits an RF signal to the transponder in the ignition key. The SKIM then waits for an RF signal response from the transponder. If the response received identifies the key as valid, the SKIM sends a valid key message to the PCM over the PCI data bus. If the response received identifies the key as invalid, or if no response is received from the key transponder, the SKIM sends an invalid key message to the PCM. The PCM will enable or disable engine operation based upon the status of the SKIM messages. It is important to note that the default condition in the PCM is an invalid key; therefore, if no message is received from the SKIM by the PCM, the engine will be disabled and the vehicle immobilized after two seconds of running.

The SKIM also sends indicator light status messages to the EMIC over the PCI data bus to tell the EMIC how to operate the SKIS indicator. This indicator light status message tells the EMIC to turn the indicator on for about three seconds each time the ignition switch is turned to the On position as a bulb test. After completion of the bulb test, the SKIM sends indicator light status messages to the EMIC to turn the indicator off, turn the indicator on, or to flash the indicator on and off. If the SKIS indicator lamp flashes or stays on solid after the bulb test, it signifies a SKIS fault. If the SKIM detects a system malfunction and/or the SKIS has become inoperative, the SKIS indicator will stay on solid. If the SKIM detects an invalid key or if a key transponder-related fault exists, the SKIS indicator will flash. If the vehicle is equipped with the Customer Learn transponder programming feature, the SKIM will also send messages to the EMIC to flash the SKIS indicator lamp, and to the BCM to generate a single audible chime tone whenever the Customer Learn programming mode is being utilized. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/VEHICLE THEFT SECURITY - STANDARD PROCEDURE - SENTRY KEY TRANSPONDER PROGRAMMING).

The SKIS performs a self-test each time the ignition switch is turned to the On position, and will store fault information in the form of Diagnostic Trouble Codes (DTC's) in SKIM memory if a system malfunction is detected. The SKIM can be diagnosed, and any stored DTC's can be retrieved using a DRBIII® scan tool. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

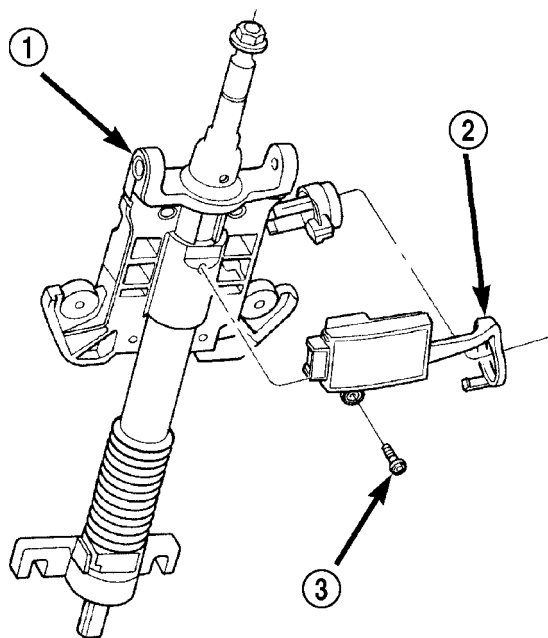


## SENTRY KEY IMMOBILIZER MODULE (Continued)

**REMOVAL**

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

- (1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.
- (2) Remove the steering column opening cover from the instrument panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/STEERING COLUMN OPENING COVER - REMOVAL).
- (3) Disconnect the instrument panel wire harness connector from the SKIM connector.
- (4) Remove the screw that secures the SKIM to the bottom of the steering column housing (Fig. 16).



80b76ff9

**Fig. 16**

- (5) Disengage the antenna ring of the SKIM from around the ignition lock cylinder housing.
- (6) Remove the SKIM from the steering column.

**INSTALLATION**

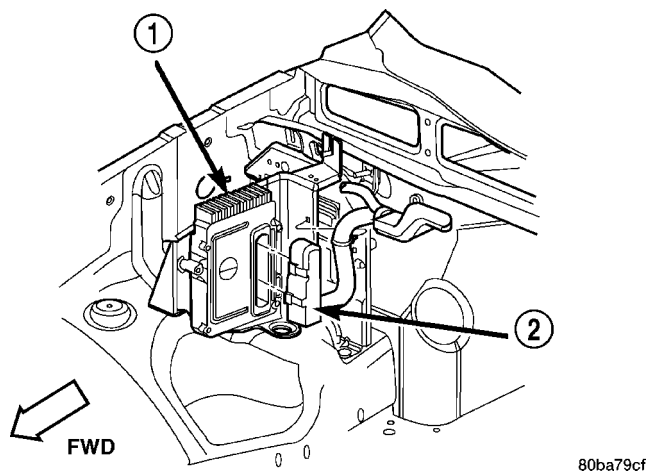
**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

- (1) Position the SKIM to the underside of the steering column (Fig. 16).
- (2) Engage the antenna ring of the SKIM around the ignition lock cylinder housing.
- (3) Install and tighten the screw that secures the SKIM to the bottom of the steering column housing. Tighten the screw to 3.4 N·m (30 in lbs.).
- (4) Reconnect the instrument panel wire harness connector to the SKIM connector.
- (5) Reinstall the steering column opening cover onto the instrument panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/STEERING COLUMN OPENING COVER - INSTALLATION).
- (6) Reconnect the battery negative cable.
- (7) Perform the SKIS Replacement procedure using the DRBIII®.
- (8) Perform the SKIS Initialization Procedure using the DRBIII®.

## TRANSMISSION CONTROL MODULE

### DESCRIPTION

The Transmission Control Module (TCM) is located in the engine compartment on the right (passenger) side and is mounted to the inner fender (Fig. 17).



**Fig. 17 Transmission Control Module Location**

- 1 - TRANSMISSION CONTROL MODULE (TCM)  
2 - 60-WAY CONNECTOR

### OPERATION

The Transmission Control Module (TCM) controls all electronic operations of the transmission. The TCM receives information regarding vehicle operation from both direct and indirect inputs, and selects the operational mode of the transmission. Direct inputs are hardwired to, and used specifically by the TCM. Indirect inputs originate from other components/modules, and are shared with the TCM via the vehicle communication bus.

Some examples of **direct inputs** to the TCM are:

- Battery (B+) voltage
- Ignition "ON" voltage
- Transmission Control Relay (Switched B+)
- Throttle Position Sensor
- Crankshaft Position Sensor
- Transmission Range Sensor
- Pressure Switches
- Transmission Temperature Sensor
- Input Shaft Speed Sensor
- Output Shaft Speed Sensor
- Line Pressure Sensor

Some examples of **indirect inputs** to the TCM are:

- Engine/Body Identification
- Manifold Pressure
- Target Idle
- Torque Reduction Confirmation
- Engine Coolant Temperature
- Ambient/Battery Temperature
- DRB® Scan Tool Communication

Based on the information received from these various inputs, the TCM determines the appropriate shift schedule and shift points, depending on the present operating conditions and driver demand. This is possible through the control of various direct and indirect outputs.

Some examples of TCM **direct outputs** are:

- Transmission Control Relay
- Solenoids
- Torque Reduction Request

Some examples of TCM **indirect outputs** are:

- Transmission Temperature (to PCM)
- PRNDL Position (to BCM)

In addition to monitoring inputs and controlling outputs, the TCM has other important responsibilities and functions:

- Storing and maintaining Clutch Volume Indexes (CVI)
- Storing and selecting appropriate Shift Schedules
- System self-diagnostics
- Diagnostic capabilities (with DRB® scan tool)

**NOTE:** If the TCM has been replaced, the "Quick Learn Procedure" must be performed. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/ELECTRONIC CONTROL MODULES/TRANSMISSION CONTROL MODULE - STANDARD PROCEDURE)

### BATTERY FEED

A fused, direct battery feed to the TCM is used for continuous power. This battery voltage is necessary to retain adaptive learn values in the TCM's RAM (Random Access Memory). When the battery (B+) is disconnected, this memory is lost. When the battery (B+) is restored, this memory loss is detected by the TCM and a Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) is set.

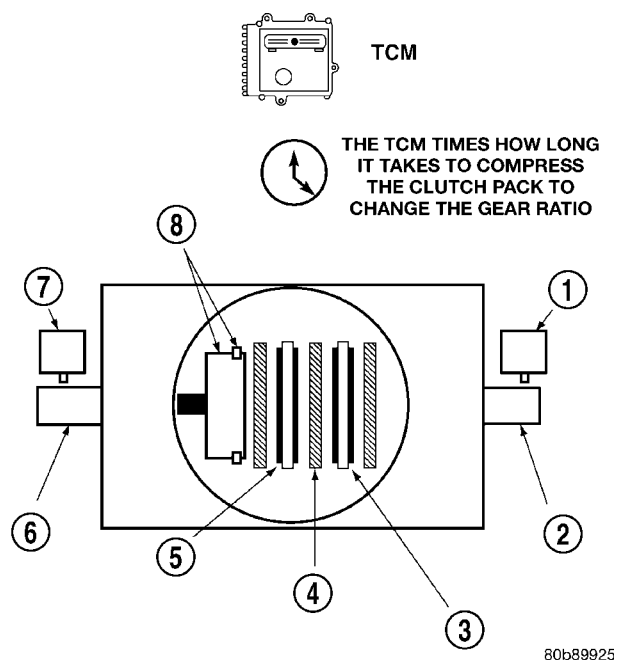
## TRANSMISSION CONTROL MODULE (Continued)

**CLUTCH VOLUME INDEXES (CVI)**

An important function of the TCM is to monitor Clutch Volume Indexes (CVI). CVIs represent the volume of fluid needed to compress a clutch pack.

The TCM monitors gear ratio changes by monitoring the Input and Output Speed Sensors. The Input, or Turbine Speed Sensor sends an electrical signal to the TCM that represents input shaft rpm. The Output Speed Sensor provides the TCM with output shaft speed information.

By comparing the two inputs, the TCM can determine transmission gear position. This is important to the CVI calculation because the TCM determines CVIs by monitoring how long it takes for a gear change to occur (Fig. 18).



**Fig. 18 Example of CVI Calculation**

- 1 - OUTPUT SPEED SENSOR
- 2 - OUTPUT SHAFT
- 3 - CLUTCH PACK
- 4 - SEPARATOR PLATE
- 5 - FRICTION DISCS
- 6 - INPUT SHAFT
- 7 - INPUT SPEED SENSOR
- 8 - PISTON AND SEAL

Gear ratios can be determined by using the DRBIII® Scan Tool and reading the Input/Output Speed Sensor values in the "Monitors" display. Gear ratio can be obtained by dividing the Input Speed Sensor value by the Output Speed Sensor value.

The gear ratio changes as clutches are applied and released. By monitoring the length of time it takes for the gear ratio to change following a shift request, the TCM can determine the volume of fluid used to apply or release a friction element.

The volume of transmission fluid needed to apply the friction elements are continuously updated for adaptive controls. As friction material wears, the volume of fluid need to apply the element increases.

Certain mechanical failures within the input clutch assembly can cause inadequate or out-of-range element volumes. Also, defective Input/Output Speed Sensors and wiring can cause these conditions. The following chart identifies the appropriate clutch volumes and when they are monitored/updated:

CLUTCH VOLUMES		
Clutch	When Updated	Proper Clutch Volume
L/R	2-1 or 3-1 downshift	45 to 134
2C	3-2 kickdown shift	25 to 85
OD	2-3 upshift	30 to 100
4C	3-4 upshift	30 to 85
UD	4-3 kickdown shift	25 to 100

**SHIFT SCHEDULES**

As mentioned earlier, the TCM has programming that allows it to select a variety of shift schedules. Shift schedule selection is dependent on the following:

- Shift lever position
- Throttle position
- Engine load
- Fluid temperature
- Software level

As driving conditions change, the TCM appropriately adjusts the shift schedule. Refer to the following chart to determine the appropriate operation expected, depending on driving conditions.

## TRANSMISSION CONTROL MODULE (Continued)

Schedule	Condition	Expected Operation
<b>Extreme Cold</b>	Oil temperature below -16° F	-Park, Reverse, Neutral and 1st and 3rd gear only in D position, 2nd gear only in Manual 2 or L -No EMCC
<b>Super Cold</b>	Oil temperature between -12° F and 10° F	- Delayed 2-3 upshift - Delayed 3-4 upshift - Early 4-3 coastdown shift - High speed 4-2, 3-2, 2-1 kickdown shifts are prevented -Shifts at high throttle openings will be early. - No EMCC
<b>Cold</b>	Oil temperature between 10° F and 36° F	-Shift schedule is the same as Super Cold except that the 2-3 upshifts are not delayed.
<b>Warm</b>	Oil temperature between 40° F and 80° F	- Normal operation (upshift, kickdowns, and coastdowns) - No EMCC
<b>Hot</b>	Oil temperature between 80° F and 240° F	- Normal operation (upshift, kickdowns, and coastdowns) - Normal EMCC operation
<b>Overheat</b>	Oil temperature above 240° F or engine coolant temperature above 244° F	- Delayed 2-3 upshift - Delayed 3-4 upshift - 3rd gear FEMCC from 30-48 mph - 3rd gear PEMCC above 35 mph - Above 25 mph the torque converter will not unlock unless the throttle is closed or if a wide open throttle 2nd PEMCC to 1 kickdown is made

## TRANSMISSION CONTROL MODULE (Continued)

## STANDARD PROCEDURE

## STANDARD PROCEDURE - TCM QUICK LEARN

The quick learn procedure requires the use of the DRBIII® scan tool.

This program allows the electronic transmission system to recalibrate itself. This will provide the proper transmission operation. The quick learn procedure should be performed if any of the following procedures are performed:

- Transmission Assembly Replacement
- Transmission Control Module Replacement
- Solenoid Pack Replacement
- Clutch Plate and/or Seal Replacement
- Valve Body Replacement or Recondition

To perform the Quick Learn Procedure, the following conditions must be met:

- The brakes must be applied
- The engine speed must be above 500 rpm
- The throttle angle (TPS) must be less than 3 degrees
- The shift lever position must stay in PARK until prompted to shift to overdrive
- The shift lever position must stay in overdrive after the Shift to Overdrive prompt until the DRB® indicates the procedure is complete
- The calculated oil temperature must be above 60° and below 200°

## STANDARD PROCEDURE - DRIVE LEARN

When a transmission is repaired and a Quick Learn procedure has been performed on the Transmission Control Module (TCM), the following Drive Learn procedure can be performed to fine tune any shifts which are particularly objectionable.

**NOTE:** It is not necessary to perform the complete Drive Learn procedure every time the TCM is Quick Learned. Perform only the portions which target the objectionable shift.

## LEARN A SMOOTH 1ST NEUTRAL TO DRIVE SHIFT

Perform this procedure only if the complaint is for a delayed or harsh shift the first time the transmission is put into gear after the vehicle is allowed to set with the engine not running for at least 10 minutes. Use the following steps to have the TCM learn the 1st N-D UD CVI.

**NOTE:** The transmission oil temperature must be between 80 - 110°F (27 - 43°C).

- (1) Start the engine only when the engine and ignition have been off for at least ten (10) minutes.
- (2) With the vehicle at a stop and the service brake applied, record the 1st N-D UD CVI while per-

forming a Neutral to Drive shift. The 1st N-D UD CVI accounts for air entrapment in the UD clutch that may occur after the engine has been off for a period of time.

- (3) Repeat Step 1 and Step 2 until the recorded 1st N-D UD CVI value stabilizes.

**NOTE:** It is important that this procedure be performed when the transmission temperature is between 80 - 110°F (27 - 43°C). If this procedure takes too long to complete fully for the allowed transmission oil temperature, the vehicle may be returned to the customer with an explanation that the shift will improve daily during normal vehicle usage. The TCM also learns at higher oil temperatures, but these values (line pressure correction values) are not available for viewing on the DRB® III.

## LEARN A SMOOTH NEUTRAL TO DRIVE GARAGE SHIFT

Perform this procedure if the complaint is for a delayed or harsh shift when the transmission is put into gear after the vehicle has had its first shift. Use the following steps to have the TCM learn the Norm N-D UD CVI.

**NOTE:** The transmission oil temperature must be between 80 - 110°F (27 - 43°C) to learn the UD CVI. Additional learning occurs at temperatures as low as 0°F and as high as 200°F. This procedure may be performed at any temperature that experiences poor shift quality. Although the UD CVI may not change, shift quality should improve.

- (1) Start the vehicle engine and shift to drive.
- (2) Move the vehicle forward to a speed of at least 16 km/h (10 MPH) and come to a stop. This ensures no air is present in the UD hydraulic circuit.
- (3) Perform repeated N-D shifts at a stop while pausing in Neutral for at least 2-3 seconds and monitor Norm N-D UD CVI volume until the value stabilizes. The value will change during the N-D shift. This is normal since the UD value is different for the N-D shift then the normal value shown which is used for 4-3 coastdown and kickdowns. Perform repeated shifts in this temperature range until the Norm N-D UD CVI value stabilizes and the N-D shifts become smooth.

## LEARN THE 1ST 2-3 SHIFT AFTER A RESTART OR SHIFT TO REVERSE

Use the following steps to have the TCM learn the 1st 2-3 shift OD CVI.



## TRANSMISSION CONTROL MODULE (Continued)

**NOTE: The transmission oil temperature must be above 80°F (27°C).**

(1) With the vehicle engine running, select reverse gear for over 2 seconds.

(2) Shift the transmission to Drive and accelerate the vehicle from a stop at a steady 15 degree throttle opening and perform a 2-3 shift while noting the 1st 2-3 OD CVI.

(3) Repeat Step 1 and Step 2 until the 1st 2-3 upshift becomes smooth and the 1st 2-3 OD CVI stabilizes.

**LEARN A SMOOTH 2-3 AND 3-4 UPSHIFT**

**NOTE: The transmission oil temperature must be above 110°F (43°C).**

Use the following steps to have the TCM learn the OD and 4C CVI's.

(1) Accelerate the vehicle from a stop at a steady 15 degree throttle opening and perform multiple 1-2, 2-3, and 3-4 upshifts. The 2nd 2-3 shift following a restart or shift to reverse will be shown during the shift as a value between the 1st 2-3 OD CVI and the normal OD CVI. Updates to the normal OD CVI will occur after the 2nd shift into 3rd gear, following a restart or shift to reverse.

(2) Repeat Step 1 until the 2-3 and 3-4 shifts become smooth and the OD and 4C CVI become stable.

**LEARN A SMOOTH 4-3 COASTDOWN AND PART THROTTLE 4-3 KICKDOWN**

**NOTE: The transmission oil temperature must be above 110°F (43°C).**

Use the following steps to have the TCM learn the UD shift volume.

(1) At a vehicle speed between 64-97 km/h (40-60 MPH), perform repeated 4-3 kickdown shifts.

(2) Repeat Step 1 until the UD volume becomes somewhat stable and the shift becomes smooth.

**LEARN A SMOOTH 1-2 UPSHIFT AND 3-2 KICKDOWN**

Use the following steps to have the TCM learn the 2C shift volume.

**NOTE: The transmission oil temperature must be above 110°F (43°C).**

(1) With a vehicle speed below 48 km/h (30 MPH) and the transmission in 3rd gear, perform multiple 3-2 kickdowns.

(2) Repeat Step 1 until the 3-2 kickdowns become smooth and the 2C CVI becomes stable.

**LEARN A SMOOTH MANUAL 2-1 PULLDOWN SHIFT AS WELL AS A NEUTRAL TO REVERSE SHIFT**

**NOTE: The transmission oil temperature must be above 110°F (43°C).**

Use the following steps to have the TCM learn the LR volume.

(1) With the vehicle speed around 40-48 km/h (25-30 MPH) in Manual 2nd, perform manual pull-downs to Low or 1st gear at closed throttle.

(2) Repeat Step 1 until the LR CVI becomes stable and the manual 2-1 becomes smooth.

**LEARN A SMOOTH NEUTRAL TO REVERSE SHIFT**

**NOTE: The transmission oil temperature must be above 110°F (43°C).**

(1) With the vehicle at a stop, perform Neutral to Reverse shifts until the shift is smooth. An unlearned Neutral to Reverse shift may be harsh or exhibit a double bump.

(2) If any of the shifts are still not smooth after the clutch volume stabilizes, an internal transmission problem may be present.

**LEARN A SMOOTH 4-5 UPSHIFT**

**NOTE: The transmission oil temperature must be above 110°F (43°C).**

Use the following steps to have the TCM learn the Alt 2C CVI.

(1) Accelerate the vehicle through 88 km/h (55mph) at a steady 10-15 degree throttle opening and perform multiple 4-5 upshifts.

(2) Repeat Step 1 until the 4-5 shift become smooth and the Alt 2C CVI become stable. There is a separate 2C volume used and learned for 4-5 shifts, 2CA. It is independent of the 2C CVI learned on 3-2 kickdowns.

## ENGINE SYSTEMS

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
BATTERY SYSTEM .....	1	STARTING .....	30
CHARGING .....	25		

## BATTERY SYSTEM

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>BATTERY SYSTEM</b>		<b>STANDARD PROCEDURE - CHECKING</b>	
DESCRIPTION .....	2	BATTERY ELECTROLYTE LEVEL .....	14
OPERATION .....	2	REMOVAL .....	15
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - BATTERY		INSTALLATION .....	15
SYSTEM .....	2	<b>BATTERY HOLDDOWN</b>	
CLEANING .....	5	DESCRIPTION .....	16
INSPECTION .....	6	OPERATION .....	16
SPECIFICATIONS .....	6	REMOVAL .....	17
SPECIAL TOOLS		INSTALLATION .....	17
BATTERY SYSTEM SPECIAL TOOLS .....	7	<b>BATTERY CABLE</b>	
<b>BATTERY</b>		DESCRIPTION .....	18
DESCRIPTION .....	7	OPERATION .....	18
OPERATION .....	8	DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - BATTERY	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - BATTERY .....	8	CABLES .....	19
STANDARD PROCEDURE		REMOVAL .....	20
STANDARD PROCEDURE - BATTERY		INSTALLATION .....	21
CHARGING .....	9	<b>BATTERY TRAY</b>	
STANDARD PROCEDURE - USING MICRO		DESCRIPTION .....	22
420 BATTERY TESTER .....	10	OPERATION .....	22
STANDARD PROCEDURE - BUILT-IN		REMOVAL	
INDICATOR TEST .....	11	REMOVAL - GAS ENGINE .....	22
STANDARD PROCEDURE - OPEN-CIRCUIT		REMOVAL .....	23
VOLTAGE TEST .....	12	INSTALLATION	
STANDARD PROCEDURE - IGNITION-OFF		INSTALLATION - GAS ENGINE .....	23
DRAW TEST .....	13	INSTALLATION .....	23

## BATTERY SYSTEM

### DESCRIPTION

A single 12-volt battery is standard factory-installed equipment on this model. All of the components of the battery system are located within the engine compartment of the vehicle. The battery system for this vehicle covers the following related components, which are covered in further detail later in this section of the service manual:

- **Battery** - The storage battery provides a reliable means of storing a renewable source of electrical energy within the vehicle.
- **Battery Cables** - The battery cables connect the battery terminal posts to the vehicle electrical system.
- **Battery Holddown** - The battery holddown hardware secures the battery in the battery tray in the engine compartment.
- **Battery Tray** - The battery tray provides a secure mounting location in the vehicle for the battery and an anchor point for the battery holddown hardware.

For battery system maintenance schedules and jump starting procedure, see the owner's manual in the vehicle glove box. Optionally, refer to the Lubrication and Maintenance section of this manual for the recommended battery maintenance schedules and for the proper battery jump starting procedure. While battery charging can be considered a maintenance procedure, the battery charging procedures and related information are located later in this section of this service manual. This was done because the battery must be fully-charged before any battery system diagnosis or testing procedures can be performed.

### OPERATION

The battery system is designed to provide a safe, efficient, reliable and mobile means of delivering and storing electrical energy. This electrical energy is required to operate the engine starting system, as well as to operate many of the other vehicle accessory systems for limited durations while the engine and/or the charging system are not operating. The battery system is also designed to provide a reserve of electrical energy to supplement the charging system for short durations while the engine is running and the electrical current demands of the vehicle exceed the output of the charging system. In addition to delivering, and storing electrical energy for the

vehicle, the battery system serves as a capacitor and voltage stabilizer for the vehicle electrical system. It absorbs most abnormal or transient voltages caused by the switching of any of the electrical components or circuits in the vehicle.

### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - BATTERY SYSTEM

The battery, starting, and charging systems in the vehicle operate with one another and must be tested as a complete system. In order for the engine to start and the battery to maintain its charge properly, all of the components that are used in these systems must perform within specifications. It is important that the battery, starting, and charging systems be thoroughly tested and inspected any time a battery needs to be charged or replaced. The cause of abnormal battery discharge, overcharging or early battery failure must be diagnosed and corrected before a battery is replaced and before a vehicle is returned to service. The service information for these systems has been separated within this service manual to make it easier to locate the specific information you are seeking. However, when attempting to diagnose any of these systems, it is important that you keep their interdependency in mind.

The diagnostic procedures used for the battery, starting, and charging systems include the most basic conventional diagnostic methods, to the more sophisticated On-Board Diagnostics (OBD) built into the Powertrain Control Module (PCM). Use of an induction-type milliampere ammeter, a volt/ohmmeter, a battery charger, a carbon pile rheostat (load tester) and a 12-volt test lamp may be required. All OBD-sensed systems are monitored by the PCM. Each monitored circuit is assigned a Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC). The PCM will store a DTC in electronic memory for any failure it detects. Refer to Charging System for the proper charging system on-board diagnostic test procedures.

### MICRO 420 ELECTRICAL SYSTEM TESTER

The Micro 420 automotive battery tester is designed to help the dealership technicians diagnose a defective battery. Follow the instruction manual supplied with the tester to properly diagnose a vehicle. If the instruction manual is not available refer to the standard procedure in this section, which includes the directions for using the Micro 420 electrical system tester.

## BATTERY SYSTEM (Continued)

BATTERY SYSTEM DIAGNOSIS		
CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
THE BATTERY SEEMS WEAK OR DEAD WHEN ATTEMPTING TO START THE ENGINE.	1. The electrical system ignition-off draw is excessive.	1. Refer to the IGNITION-OFF DRAW TEST Standard Procedure for the proper test procedures. Repair the excessive ignition-off draw, as required.
	2. The charging system is faulty.	2. Determine if the charging system is performing to specifications. Refer to Charging System for additional charging system diagnosis and testing procedures. Repair the faulty charging system, as required.
	3. The battery is discharged.	3. Determine the battery state-of-charge using the Micro 420 battery tester. Refer to the Standard Procedures in this section for additional test procedures. Charge the faulty battery, as required.
	4. The battery terminal connections are loose or corroded.	4. Refer to Battery Cables for the proper battery cable diagnosis and testing procedures. Clean and tighten the battery terminal connections, as required.
	5. The battery has an incorrect size or rating for this vehicle.	5. Refer to Battery System Specifications for the proper size and rating. Replace an incorrect battery, as required.
	6. The battery is faulty.	6. Determine the battery cranking capacity using the Micro 420 battery tester. Refer to the Standard Procedures in this section for additional test procedures. Replace the faulty battery, as required.
	7. The starting system is faulty.	7. Determine if the starting system is performing to specifications. Refer to Starting System for the proper starting system diagnosis and testing procedures. Repair the faulty starting system, as required.
	8. The battery is physically damaged.	8. Inspect the battery for loose terminal posts or a cracked and leaking case. Replace the damaged battery, as required.

## BATTERY SYSTEM (Continued)

BATTERY SYSTEM DIAGNOSIS		
CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
THE BATTERY STATE OF CHARGE CANNOT BE MAINTAINED.	1. The battery has an incorrect size or rating for this vehicle.	1. Refer to Battery System Specifications for the proper specifications. Replace an incorrect battery, as required.
	2. The battery terminal connections are loose or corroded.	2. Refer to Battery Cable for the proper cable diagnosis and testing procedures. Clean and tighten the battery terminal connections, as required.
	3. The electrical system ignition-off draw is excessive.	3. Refer to the IGNITION-OFF DRAW TEST Standard Procedure for the proper test procedures. Repair the faulty electrical system, as required.
	4. The battery is faulty.	4. Test the battery using the Micro 420 battery tester. Refer to Standard Procedures for additional test procedures. Replace the faulty battery, as required.
	5. The starting system is faulty.	5. Determine if the starting system is performing to specifications. Refer to Starting System for the proper starting system diagnosis and testing procedures. Repair the faulty starting system, as required.
	6. The charging system is faulty.	6. Determine if the charging system is performing to specifications using the Micro 420 battery. Refer to Charging System for additional charging system diagnosis and testing procedures. Repair the faulty charging system, as required.
	7. Electrical loads exceed the output of the charging system.	7. Inspect the vehicle for aftermarket electrical equipment which might cause excessive electrical loads.
	8. Slow driving or prolonged idling with high-amperage draw systems in use.	8. Advise the vehicle operator, as required.
THE BATTERY WILL NOT ACCEPT A CHARGE.	1. The battery is faulty.	1. Test the battery using the Micro 420 battery tester. Charge or replace the faulty battery, as required.

**ABNORMAL BATTERY DISCHARGING**

Any of the following conditions can result in abnormal battery discharging:

1. A faulty or incorrect charging system component. Refer to Charging System for additional charging system diagnosis and testing procedures.

2. A faulty or incorrect battery. Use Micro 420 battery tester and refer to Battery System for additional battery diagnosis and testing procedures.

3. A faulty circuit or component causing excessive ignition-off draw.

4. Electrical loads that exceed the output of the charging system. This can be due to equipment

installed after manufacture, or repeated short trip use.

5. A faulty or incorrect starting system component. Refer to Starting System for the proper starting system diagnosis and testing procedures.

6. Corroded or loose battery posts and/or terminal clamps.

7. Slow driving speeds (heavy traffic conditions) or prolonged idling, with high-amperage draw systems in use.

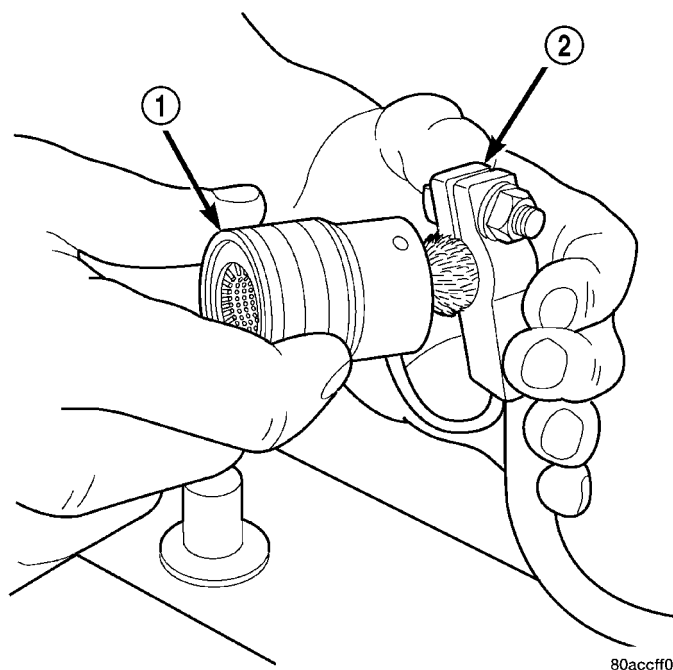


## BATTERY SYSTEM (Continued)

## CLEANING

The following information details the recommended cleaning procedures for the battery and related components. In addition to the maintenance schedules found in this service manual and the owner's manual, it is recommended that these procedures be performed any time the battery or related components must be removed for vehicle service.

(1) Clean the battery cable terminal clamps of all corrosion. Remove any corrosion using a wire brush or a post and terminal cleaning tool, and a sodium bicarbonate (baking soda) and warm water cleaning solution (Fig. 1).



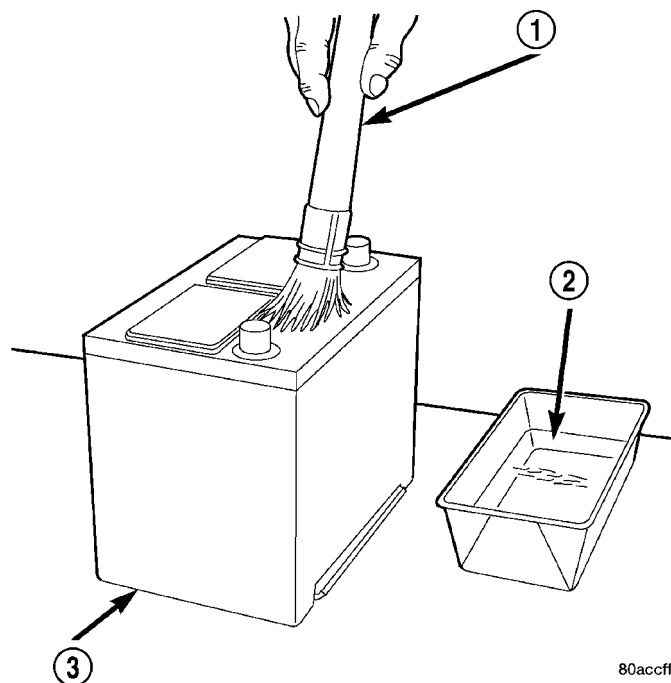
80accff0

**Fig. 1 Clean Battery Cable Terminal Clamp - Typical**

- 1 - TERMINAL BRUSH
- 2 - BATTERY CABLE

(2) Clean the battery tray and battery holddown hardware of all corrosion. Remove any corrosion using a wire brush and a sodium bicarbonate (baking soda) and warm water cleaning solution. Paint any exposed bare metal.

(3) If the removed battery is to be reinstalled, clean the outside of the battery case and the top cover with a sodium bicarbonate (baking soda) and warm water cleaning solution using a stiff bristle parts cleaning brush to remove any acid film (Fig. 2). Rinse the battery with clean water. Ensure that the cleaning solution does not enter the battery cells through the vent holes. If the battery is being replaced, refer to Battery System Specifications for the factory-installed battery specifications. Confirm that the replacement battery is the correct size and has the correct ratings for the vehicle.

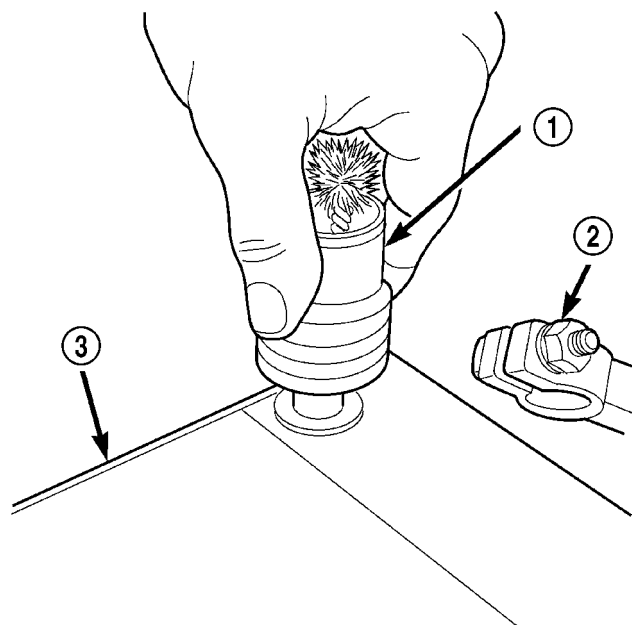


80accff1

**Fig. 2 Battery Cleaning - Typical**

- 1 - CLEANING BRUSH
- 2 - WARM WATER AND BAKING SODA SOLUTION
- 3 - BATTERY

(4) Clean any corrosion from the battery terminal posts with a wire brush or a post and terminal cleaner, and a sodium bicarbonate (baking soda) and warm water cleaning solution (Fig. 3).



80accff2

**Fig. 3 Clean Battery Terminal Post - Typical**

- 1 - TERMINAL BRUSH
- 2 - BATTERY CABLE
- 3 - BATTERY

BATTERY SYSTEM (Continued)

INSPECTION

The following information details the recommended inspection procedures for the battery and related components. In addition to the maintenance schedules found in this service manual and the owner's manual, it is recommended that these procedures be performed any time the battery or related components must be removed for vehicle service.

- (1) Inspect the battery cable terminal clamps for damage. Replace any battery cable that has a damaged or deformed terminal clamp.
- (2) Inspect the battery tray and battery holddown hardware for damage. Replace any damaged parts.
- (3) Slide the thermal guard off of the battery case. Inspect the battery case for cracks or other damage that could result in electrolyte leaks. Also, check the battery terminal posts for looseness. Batteries with damaged cases or loose terminal posts must be replaced.
- (4) Inspect the battery built-in test indicator sight glass for an indication of the battery condition. If the battery is discharged, charge as required. Refer to Standard Procedures for the proper battery built-in indicator test procedures. Also refer to Standard Procedures for the proper battery charging procedures.

SPECIFICATIONS

The battery Group Size number, the Cold Cranking Amperage (CCA) rating, and the Reserve Capacity (RC) rating or Ampere-Hours (AH) rating can be found on the original equipment battery label. Be certain that a replacement battery has the correct

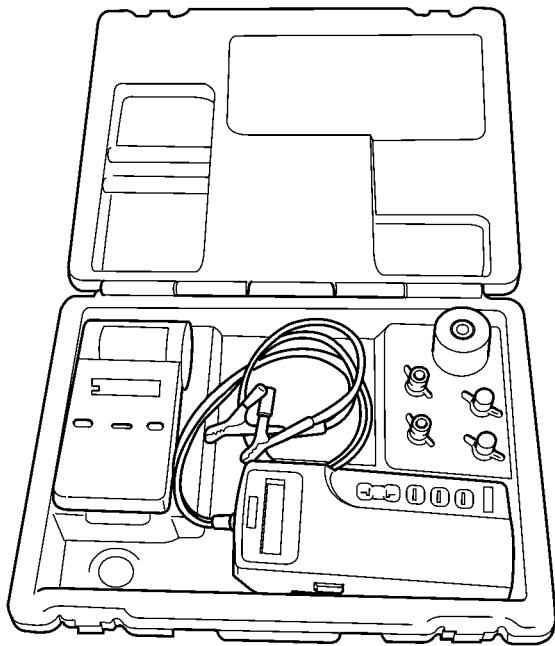
- Group Size number, as well as CCA, and RC or AH ratings that equal or exceed the original equipment specification for the vehicle being serviced. Battery sizes and ratings are discussed in more detail below.
- **Group Size** - The outside dimensions and terminal placement of the battery conform to standards established by the Battery Council International (BCI). Each battery is assigned a BCI Group Size number to help identify a correctly-sized replacement.
  - **Cold Cranking Amperage** - The Cold Cranking Amperage (CCA) rating specifies how much current (in amperes) the battery can deliver for thirty seconds at -18° C (0° F). Terminal voltage must not fall below 7.2 volts during or after the thirty second discharge period. The CCA required is generally higher as engine displacement increases, depending also upon the starter current draw requirements.
  - **Reserve Capacity** - The Reserve Capacity (RC) rating specifies the time (in minutes) it takes for battery terminal voltage to fall below 10.5 volts, at a discharge rate of 25 amperes. RC is determined with the battery fully-charged at 26.7° C (80° F). This rating estimates how long the battery might last after a charging system failure, under minimum electrical load.
  - **Ampere-Hours** - The Ampere-Hours (AH) rating specifies the current (in amperes) that a battery can deliver steadily for twenty hours, with the voltage in the battery not falling below 10.5 volts. This rating is also sometimes identified as the twenty-hour discharge rating.

BATTERY CLASSIFICATIONS & RATINGS					
Part Number	BCI Group Size Classification	Cold Cranking Amperage	Reserve Capacity	Ampere - Hours	Load Test Amperage
56041113	65	625	120 Minutes	69	300

## BATTERY SYSTEM (Continued)

## SPECIAL TOOLS

## BATTERY SYSTEM SPECIAL TOOLS

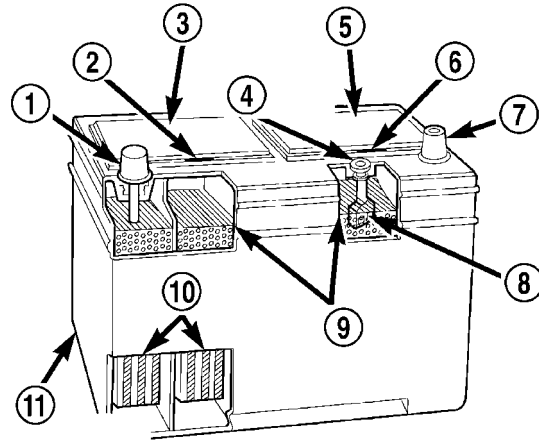
*Micro 420 Battery Tester*

## BATTERY

## DESCRIPTION

A large capacity, low-maintenance storage battery (Fig. 4) is standard factory-installed equipment on this model. Male post type terminals made of a soft lead material protrude from the top of the molded plastic battery case to provide the means for connecting the battery to the vehicle electrical system. The battery positive terminal post is visibly larger in diameter than the negative terminal post, for easy identification. The letters **POS** and **NEG** are also molded into the top of the battery case adjacent to their respective positive and negative terminal posts for additional identification confirmation. Refer to **Battery Cables** in the index of this service manual for the location of more information on the battery cables that connect the battery to the vehicle electrical system.

This battery is designed to provide a safe, efficient and reliable means of storing electrical energy in a chemical form. This means of energy storage allows the battery to produce the electrical energy required to operate the engine starting system, as well as to operate many of the other vehicle accessory systems for limited durations while the engine and/or the charging system are not operating. The battery is made up of six individual cells that are connected in

*Fig. 4 Maintenance-Free Battery - Domestic*

- 1 - POSITIVE POST
- 2 - VENT
- 3 - CELL CAP
- 4 - TEST INDICATOR
- 5 - CELL CAP
- 6 - VENT
- 7 - NEGATIVE POST
- 8 - GREEN BALL
- 9 - ELECTROLYTE LEVEL
- 10 - PLATE GROUPS
- 11 - LOW-MAINTENANCE BATTERY

series. Each cell contains positively charged plate groups that are connected with lead straps to the positive terminal post, and negatively charged plate groups that are connected with lead straps to the negative terminal post. Each plate consists of a stiff mesh framework or grid coated with lead dioxide (positive plate) or sponge lead (negative plate). Insulators or plate separators made of a non-conductive material are inserted between the positive and negative plates to prevent them from contacting or shorting against one another. These dissimilar metal plates are submerged in a sulfuric acid and water solution called an electrolyte.

Some factory-installed batteries have a built-in test indicator (hydrometer). The color visible in the sight glass of the indicator will reveal the battery condition. For more information on the use of the built-in test indicator, refer to **Standard Procedures**. **The factory-installed low-maintenance battery has removable battery cell caps.** Distilled water can be added to this battery. The battery is not sealed and has vent holes in the cell caps. The chemical composition of the metal coated plates within the low-maintenance battery reduces battery gassing and water loss, at normal charge and discharge rates. Therefore, the battery should not require additional water in normal service. If the electrolyte level in this battery does become low, distilled water must be added. However, rapid loss of electrolyte can be caused by an overcharging condition. Be certain to

## BATTERY (Continued)

diagnose the charging system after replenishing the water in the battery for a low electrolyte condition and before returning the vehicle to service. Refer to **Charging System** for additional information.

For battery maintenance schedules and jump starting procedures, see the owner's manual in the vehicle glove box. Optionally, refer to **Maintenance Schedules** and **Jump Starting, Towing and Hoisting** in the index of this service manual for the location of the recommended battery maintenance schedules and the proper battery jump starting procedures. While battery charging can be considered a maintenance procedure, the battery charging procedures and information are located in the service procedures section of this service manual. This was done because the battery must be fully-charged before any battery diagnosis or testing procedures can be performed. Refer to **Standard Procedures** in the index of this service manual for the location of the proper battery charging procedures.

## OPERATION

The battery is designed to store electrical energy in a chemical form. When an electrical load is applied to the terminals of the battery, an electrochemical reaction occurs. This reaction causes the battery to discharge electrical current from its terminals. As the battery discharges, a gradual chemical change takes place within each cell. The sulfuric acid in the electrolyte combines with the plate materials, causing both plates to slowly change to lead sulfate. At the same time, oxygen from the positive plate material combines with hydrogen from the sulfuric acid, causing the electrolyte to become mainly water. The chemical changes within the battery are caused by the movement of excess or free electrons between the positive and negative plate groups. This movement of electrons produces a flow of electrical current through the load device attached to the battery terminals.

As the plate materials become more similar chemically, and the electrolyte becomes less acid, the voltage potential of each cell is reduced. However, by charging the battery with a voltage higher than that of the battery itself, the battery discharging process is reversed. Charging the battery gradually changes the sulfated lead plates back into sponge lead and lead dioxide, and the water back into sulfuric acid. This action restores the difference in the electron charges deposited on the plates, and the voltage potential of the battery cells. For a battery to remain useful, it must be able to produce high-amperage current over an extended period. A battery must also be able to accept a charge, so that its voltage potential may be restored.

The battery is vented to release excess hydrogen gas that is created when the battery is being charged or discharged. However, even with these vents, hydrogen gas can collect in or around the battery. If hydrogen gas is exposed to flame or sparks, it may ignite. If the electrolyte level is low, the battery may arc internally and explode. If the battery is equipped with removable cell caps, add distilled water whenever the electrolyte level is below the top of the plates. If the battery cell caps cannot be removed, the battery must be replaced if the electrolyte level becomes low.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - BATTERY

The battery must be completely charged and the terminals should be properly cleaned and inspected before diagnostic procedures are performed. Refer to Battery System Cleaning for the proper cleaning procedures, and Battery System Inspection for the proper battery inspection procedures. Refer to Standard Procedures for the proper battery charging procedures.

### MICRO 420 BATTERY TESTER

The Micro 420 automotive battery tester is designed to help the dealership technicians diagnose the cause of a defective battery. Follow the instruction manual supplied with the tester to properly diagnose a vehicle. If the instruction manual is not available refer to the standard procedure in this section, which includes the directions for using the Micro 420 battery tester.

**WARNING: IF THE BATTERY SHOWS SIGNS OF FREEZING, LEAKING OR LOOSE POSTS, DO NOT TEST, ASSIST-BOOST, OR CHARGE. THE BATTERY MAY ARC INTERNALLY AND EXPLODE. PERSONAL INJURY AND/OR VEHICLE DAMAGE MAY RESULT.**

**WARNING: EXPLOSIVE HYDROGEN GAS FORMS IN AND AROUND THE BATTERY. DO NOT SMOKE, USE FLAME, OR CREATE SPARKS NEAR THE BATTERY. PERSONAL INJURY AND/OR VEHICLE DAMAGE MAY RESULT.**

**WARNING: THE BATTERY CONTAINS SULFURIC ACID, WHICH IS POISONOUS AND CAUSTIC. AVOID CONTACT WITH THE SKIN, EYES, OR CLOTHING. IN THE EVENT OF CONTACT, FLUSH WITH WATER AND CALL A PHYSICIAN IMMEDIATELY. KEEP OUT OF THE REACH OF CHILDREN.**

A battery that will not accept a charge is faulty, and must be replaced. Further testing is not required. A fully-charged battery must be load tested



## BATTERY (Continued)

to determine its cranking capacity. A battery that is fully-charged, but does not pass the load test, is faulty and must be replaced.

**NOTE:** Completely discharged batteries may take several hours to accept a charge. Refer to Standard Procedures for the proper battery charging procedures.

## STANDARD PROCEDURE

### STANDARD PROCEDURE - BATTERY CHARGING

Battery charging is the means by which the battery can be restored to its full voltage potential. A battery is fully-charged when:

- Micro 420 electrical system tester indicates battery is OK.
- All of the battery cells are gassing freely during battery charging.
- Three hydrometer tests, taken at one-hour intervals, indicate no increase in the temperature-corrected specific gravity of the battery electrolyte.
- Open-circuit voltage of the battery is 12.4 volts or above.

**WARNING: NEVER EXCEED TWENTY AMPERES WHEN CHARGING A COLD (-1° C [30° F] OR LOWER) BATTERY. THE BATTERY MAY ARC INTERNALLY AND EXPLODE. PERSONAL INJURY AND/OR VEHICLE DAMAGE MAY RESULT.**

**WARNING: IF THE BATTERY SHOWS SIGNS OF FREEZING, LEAKING, LOOSE POSTS, DO NOT TEST, ASSIST-BOOST, OR CHARGE. THE BATTERY MAY ARC INTERNALLY AND EXPLODE. PERSONAL INJURY AND/OR VEHICLE DAMAGE MAY RESULT.**

**WARNING: EXPLOSIVE HYDROGEN GAS FORMS IN AND AROUND THE BATTERY. DO NOT SMOKE, USE FLAME, OR CREATE SPARKS NEAR THE BATTERY. PERSONAL INJURY AND/OR VEHICLE DAMAGE MAY RESULT.**

**WARNING: THE BATTERY CONTAINS SULFURIC ACID, WHICH IS POISONOUS AND CAUSTIC. AVOID CONTACT WITH THE SKIN, EYES, OR CLOTHING. IN THE EVENT OF CONTACT, FLUSH WITH WATER AND CALL A PHYSICIAN IMMEDIATELY. KEEP OUT OF THE REACH OF CHILDREN.**

**WARNING: IF THE BATTERY IS EQUIPPED WITH REMOVABLE CELL CAPS, BE CERTAIN THAT EACH OF THE CELL CAPS IS IN PLACE AND TIGHT BEFORE THE BATTERY IS RETURNED TO SERVICE. PERSONAL INJURY AND/OR VEHICLE DAMAGE MAY RESULT FROM LOOSE OR MISSING CELL CAPS.**

**CAUTION:** Always disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable before charging a battery. Do not exceed sixteen volts while charging a battery. Damage to the vehicle electrical system components may result.

**CAUTION:** Battery electrolyte will bubble inside the battery case during normal battery charging. Electrolyte boiling or being discharged from the battery vents indicates a battery overcharging condition. Immediately reduce the charging rate or turn off the charger to evaluate the battery condition. Damage to the battery may result from overcharging.

**CAUTION:** The battery should not be hot to the touch. If the battery feels hot to the touch, turn off the charger and let the battery cool before continuing the charging operation. Damage to the battery may result.

After the battery has been charged to 12.4 volts or greater, perform a load test to determine the battery cranking capacity. Refer to Standard Procedures for the proper battery load test procedures. If the battery will endure a load test, return the battery to service. If the battery will not endure a load test, it is faulty and must be replaced.

Clean and inspect the battery hold downs, tray, terminals, posts, and top before completing battery service. Refer to Battery System Cleaning for the proper battery system cleaning procedures, and Battery System Inspection for the proper battery system inspection procedures.

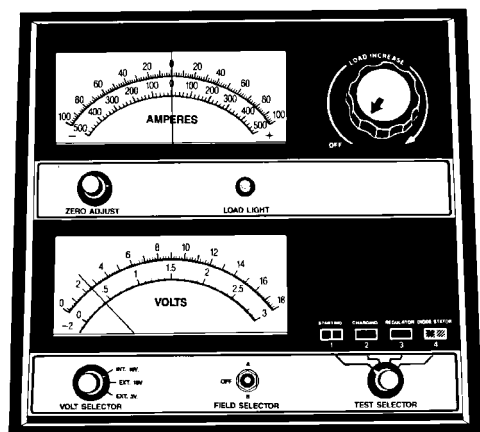
### CHARGING A COMPLETELY DISCHARGED BATTERY

The following procedure should be used to recharge a completely discharged battery. Unless this procedure is properly followed, a good battery may be needlessly replaced.

(1) Measure the voltage at the battery posts with a voltmeter, accurate to 1/10 (0.10) volt (Fig. 5). If the reading is below ten volts, the battery charging current will be low. It could take some time before the battery accepts a current greater than a few milliamperes. Such low current may not be detectable on the ammeters built into many battery chargers.



## BATTERY (Continued)



898A-12

**Fig. 5 Voltmeter - Typical**

(2) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Connect the battery charger leads. Some battery chargers are equipped with polarity-sensing circuitry. This circuitry protects the battery charger and the battery from being damaged if they are improperly connected. If the battery state-of-charge is too low for the polarity-sensing circuitry to detect, the battery charger will not operate. This makes it appear that the battery will not accept charging current. See the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the battery charger for details on how to bypass the polarity-sensing circuitry.

(3) Battery chargers vary in the amount of voltage and current they provide. The amount of time required for a battery to accept measurable charging current at various voltages is shown in the Charge Rate Table. If the charging current is still not measurable at the end of the charging time, the battery is faulty and must be replaced. If the charging current is measurable during the charging time, the battery may be good and the charging should be completed in the normal manner.

CHARGE RATE TABLE	
Voltage	Hours
16.0 volts maximum	up to 4 hours
14.0 to 15.9 volts	up to 8 hours
13.9 volts or less	up to 16 hours

**CHARGING TIME REQUIRED**

The time required to charge a battery will vary, depending upon the following factors:

- **Battery Capacity** - A completely discharged heavy-duty battery requires twice the charging time of a small capacity battery.

- **Temperature** - A longer time will be needed to charge a battery at -18° C (0° F) than at 27° C (80° F). When a fast battery charger is connected to a cold battery, the current accepted by the battery will be

very low at first. As the battery warms, it will accept a higher charging current rate (amperage).

- **Charger Capacity** - A battery charger that supplies only five amperes will require a longer charging time. A battery charger that supplies twenty amperes or more will require a shorter charging time.

- **State-Of-Charge** - A completely discharged battery requires more charging time than a partially discharged battery. Electrolyte is nearly pure water in a completely discharged battery. At first, the charging current (amperage) will be low. As the battery charges, the specific gravity of the electrolyte will gradually rise.

The Battery Charging Time Table gives an indication of the time required to charge a typical battery at room temperature based upon the battery state-of-charge and the charger capacity.

BATTERY CHARGING TIME TABLE			
Charging Amperage	5 Amps	10 Amps	20 Amps
Open Circuit Voltage	Hours Charging @ 21° C (70° F)		
12.25 to 12.49	6 hours	3 hours	1.5 hours
12.00 to 12.24	10 hours	5 hours	2.5 hours
10.00 to 11.99	14 hours	7 hours	3.5 hours
Below 10.00	18 hours	9 hours	4.5 hours

**STANDARD PROCEDURE - USING MICRO 420 BATTERY TESTER**

Always use the Micro 420 Instruction Manual that was supplied with the tester as a reference. If the Instruction Manual is not available the following procedure can be used:

**WARNING: ALWAYS WEAR APPROPRIATE EYE PROTECTION AND USE EXTREME CAUTION WHEN WORKING WITH BATTERIES.**

**BATTERY TESTING**

(1) If testing the battery OUT-OF-VEHICLE, clean the battery terminals with a wire brush before testing. If the battery is equipped with side post terminals, install and tighten the supplied lead terminal stud adapters. Do not use steel bolts. Failure to properly install the stud adapters, or using stud adapters that are dirty or worn-out may result in false test readings.

## BATTERY (Continued)

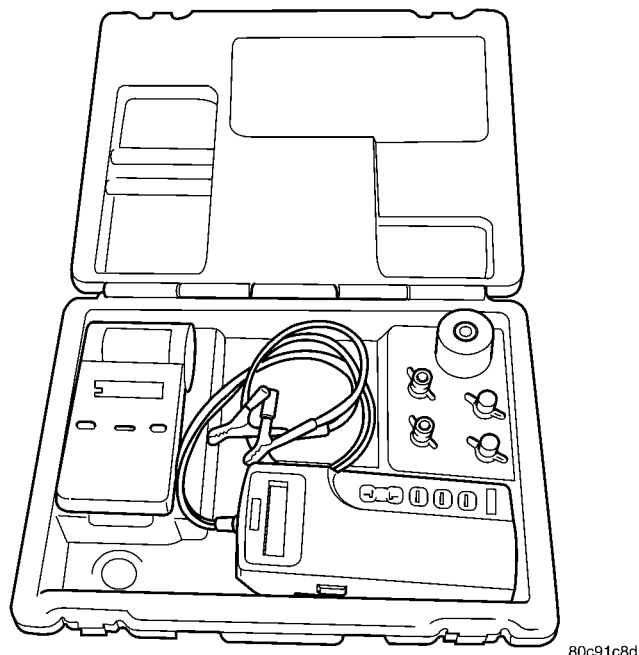


Fig. 6 Micro 420 Battery Tester

(2) If testing the battery IN-THE-VEHICLE, make certain all of the vehicle accessory loads are OFF, including the ignition. **The preferred test position is at the battery terminal.** If the battery is not accessible, you may test using both the positive and negative jumper posts. Select TESTING AT JUMPER POST when connecting to that location.

(3) Connect the tester (Fig. 6) to the battery or jumper posts, the red clamp to positive (+) and the black clamp to negative (-).

**NOTE:** Multiple batteries connected in parallel must have the ground cable disconnected to perform a battery test. Failure to disconnect may result in false battery test readings.

(4) Using the ARROW key select **in** or **out** of vehicle testing and press ENTER to make a selection.

(5) If not selected, choose the Cold Cranking Amp (CCA) battery rating. Or select the appropriate battery rating for your area (see menu). The tester will then run its self programmed test of the battery and display the results. Refer to the test result table noted below.

**CAUTION:** If REPLACE BATTERY is the result of the test, this may mean a poor connection between the vehicle's cables and battery exists. After disconnecting the vehicle's battery cables from the battery, retest the battery using the OUT-OF-VEHICLE test before replacing.

(6) While viewing the battery test result, press the CODE button and the tester will prompt you for the

last 4 digits of the VIN. Use the UP/DOWN arrow buttons to scroll to the correct character; then press ENTER to select and move to the next digit. Then press the ENTER button to view the SERVICE CODE. Pressing the CODE button a second time will return you to the test results.

BATTERY TEST RESULTS	
GOOD BATTERY	Return to service
GOOD - RECHARGE	Fully charge battery and return to service
CHARGE & RETEST	Fully charge battery and retest battery
REPLACE BATTERY	Replace the battery and retest complete system
BAD-CELL REPLACE	Replace the battery and retest complete system

**NOTE:** The SERVICE CODE is required on every warranty claim submitted for battery replacement.

## STANDARD PROCEDURE - BUILT-IN INDICATOR TEST

An indicator (hydrometer) built into the top of the battery case provides visual information for battery testing (Fig. 7). Like a hydrometer, the built-in indicator measures the specific gravity of the battery electrolyte. The specific gravity of the electrolyte reveals the battery state-of-charge; however, it will not reveal the cranking capacity of the battery. A load test must be performed to determine the battery cranking capacity. Refer to Standard Procedures for the proper battery load test procedures.

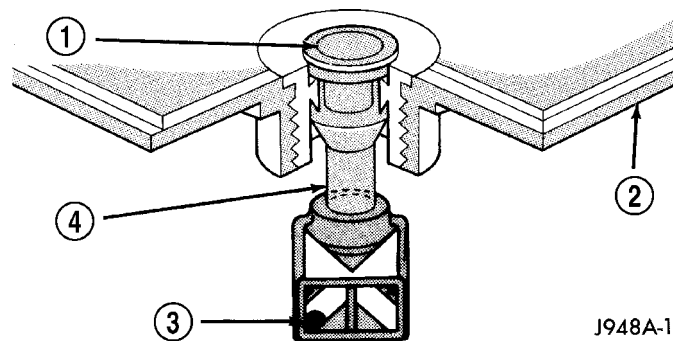


Fig. 7 Built-In Indicator

- 1 - SIGHT GLASS
- 2 - BATTERY TOP
- 3 - GREEN BALL
- 4 - PLASTIC ROD

Before testing, visually inspect the battery for any damage (a cracked case or cover, loose posts, etc.) that would cause the battery to be faulty. In order to

## BATTERY (Continued)

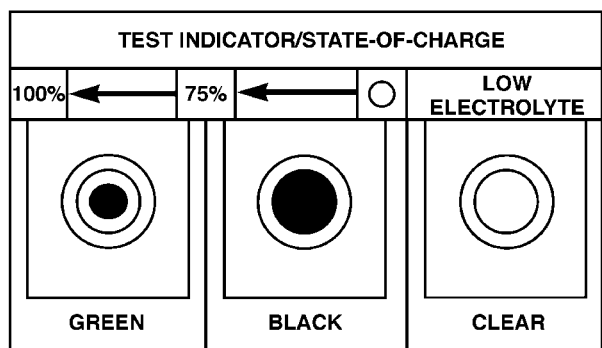
obtain correct indications from the built-in indicator, it is important that the battery be level and have a clean sight glass. Additional light may be required to view the indicator. **Do not use open flame as a source of additional light.**

To read the built-in indicator, look into the sight glass and note the color of the indication (Fig. 8). The battery condition that each color indicates is described in the following list:

- **Green** - Indicates 75% to 100% battery state-of-charge. The battery is adequately charged for further testing or return to service. If the starter will not crank for a minimum of fifteen seconds with a fully-charged battery, the battery must be load tested. Refer to Standard Procedures for the proper battery load test procedures.

- **Black or Dark** - Indicates 0% to 75% battery state-of-charge. The battery is inadequately charged and must be charged until a green indication is visible in the sight glass (12.4 volts or more), before the battery is tested further or returned to service. Refer to Standard Procedures for the proper battery charging procedures. Also refer to Diagnosis and Testing for more information on the possible causes of the discharged battery condition.

- **Clear or Bright** - Indicates a low battery electrolyte level. The electrolyte level in the battery is below the built-in indicator. A maintenance-free battery with non-removable cell caps must be replaced if the electrolyte level is low. Water must be added to a low-maintenance battery with removable cell caps before it is charged. Refer to Standard Procedures for the proper battery filling procedures. A low electrolyte level may be caused by an overcharging condition. Refer to Charging System for the proper charging system diagnosis and testing procedures.



80a72333

Fig. 8 Built-In Indicator Sight Glass Chart

## STANDARD PROCEDURE - OPEN-CIRCUIT VOLTAGE TEST

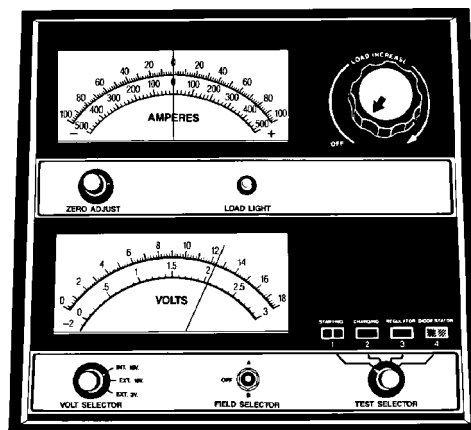
A battery open-circuit voltage (no load) test will show the approximate state-of-charge of a battery. This test can be used in place of the hydrometer test when a hydrometer is not available, or for maintenance-free batteries with non-removable cell caps.

Before proceeding with this test, completely charge the battery (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/BATTERY SYSTEM/BATTERY - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

(1) Before measuring the open-circuit voltage, the surface charge must be removed from the battery. Turn on the headlamps for fifteen seconds, then allow up to five minutes for the battery voltage to stabilize.

(2) Disconnect and isolate both battery cables, negative cable first.

(3) Using a voltmeter connected to the battery posts (see the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the voltmeter), measure the open-circuit voltage (Fig. 9).



898A-7

Fig. 9 Testing Open-Circuit Voltage - Typical

See the Open-Circuit Voltage Table. This voltage reading will indicate the battery state-of-charge, but will not reveal its cranking capacity. If a battery has an open-circuit voltage reading of 12.4 volts or greater, it may be load tested to reveal its cranking capacity (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/BATTERY SYSTEM/BATTERY - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

OPEN CIRCUIT VOLTAGE TABLE	
Open Circuit Voltage	Charge Percentage
11.7 volts or less	0%
12.0 volts	25%
12.2 volts	50%
12.4 volts	75%
12.6 volts or more	100%

## BATTERY (Continued)

**STANDARD PROCEDURE - IGNITION-OFF  
DRAW TEST**

The term Ignition-Off Draw (IOD) identifies a normal condition where power is being drained from the battery with the ignition switch in the Off position. A normal vehicle electrical system will draw from five to thirty-five milliamperes (0.005 to 0.035 ampere) with the ignition switch in the Off position, and all non-ignition controlled circuits in proper working order. Up to thirty-five milliamperes are needed to enable the memory functions for the Powertrain Control Module (PCM), digital clock, electronically tuned radio, and other modules which may vary with the vehicle equipment.

A vehicle that has not been operated for approximately twenty days, may discharge the battery to an inadequate level. When a vehicle will not be used for twenty days or more (stored), remove the IOD fuse from the Power Distribution Center (PDC). This will reduce battery discharging.

Excessive IOD can be caused by:

- Electrical items left on.
- Faulty or improperly adjusted switches.
- Faulty or shorted electronic modules and components.
- An internally shorted generator.
- Intermittent shorts in the wiring.

If the IOD is over thirty-five milliamperes, the problem must be found and corrected before replacing a battery. In most cases, the battery can be charged and returned to service after the excessive IOD condition has been corrected.

(1) Verify that all electrical accessories are off. Turn off all lamps, remove the ignition key, and close all doors. If the vehicle is equipped with an illuminated entry system or an electronically tuned radio, allow the electronic timer function of these systems to automatically shut off (time out). This may take up to three minutes. See the Electronic Module Ignition-Off Draw Table for more information.

ELECTRONIC MODULE IGNITION-OFF DRAW (IOD) TABLE			
Module	Time Out? (If Yes, Interval And Wake-Up Input)	IOD	IOD After Time Out
Radio	No	1 to 3 milliamperes	N/A
Audio Power Amplifier	No	up to 1 milliampere	N/A
Body Control Module (BCM)	No	5.90 milliamperes (max.)	N/A
Powertrain Control Module (PCM)	No	0.95 milliampere	N/A
Transmission Control Module (TCM) 4.7L w/45RFE	YES (20 minutes, ignition on)	130 milliamperes	0.64 milliampere
ElectroMechanical Instrument Cluster (EMIC)	No	0.44 milliampere	N/A
Combination Flasher	No	0.08 milliampere	N/A



## BATTERY (Continued)

(2) Determine that the underhood lamp is operating properly, then disconnect the lamp wire harness connector or remove the lamp bulb.

(3) Disconnect the battery negative cable.

(4) Set an electronic digital multi-meter to its highest amperage scale. Connect the multi-meter between the disconnected battery negative cable terminal clamp and the battery negative terminal post. Make sure that the doors remain closed so that the illuminated entry system is not activated. The multi-meter amperage reading may remain high for up to three minutes, or may not give any reading at all while set in the highest amperage scale, depending upon the electrical equipment in the vehicle. The multi-meter leads must be securely clamped to the battery negative cable terminal clamp and the battery negative terminal post. If continuity between the battery negative terminal post and the negative cable terminal clamp is lost during any part of the IOD test, the electronic timer function will be activated and all of the tests will have to be repeated.

(5) After about three minutes, the high-amperage IOD reading on the multi-meter should become very low or nonexistent, depending upon the electrical equipment in the vehicle. If the amperage reading remains high, remove and replace each fuse or circuit breaker in the Power Distribution Center (PDC) and then in the Junction Block (JB), one at a time until the amperage reading becomes very low, or nonexistent. Refer to the appropriate wiring information in this service manual for complete PDC and JB fuse, circuit breaker, and circuit identification. This will isolate each circuit and identify the circuit that is the source of the high-amperage IOD. If the amperage reading remains high after removing and replacing each fuse and circuit breaker, disconnect the wire harness from the generator. If the amperage reading now becomes very low or nonexistent, refer to Charging System for the proper charging system diagnosis and testing procedures. After the high-amperage IOD has been corrected, switch the multi-meter to progressively lower amperage scales and, if necessary, repeat the fuse and circuit breaker remove-and-replace process to identify and correct all sources of excessive IOD. It is now safe to select the lowest milliamperage scale of the multi-meter to check the low-amperage IOD.

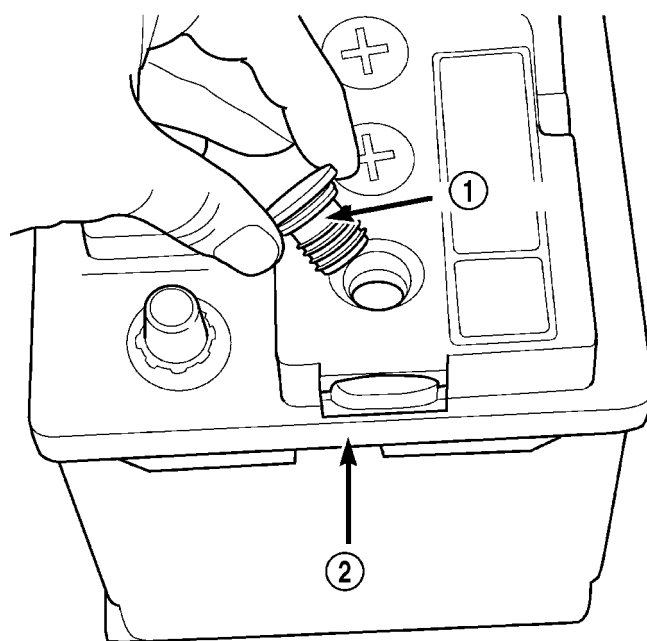
**CAUTION:** Do not open any doors, or turn on any electrical accessories with the lowest milliamperage scale selected, or the multi-meter may be damaged.

(6) Observe the multi-meter reading. The low-amperage IOD should not exceed thirty-five milliamperes (0.035 ampere). If the current draw exceeds thirty-five milliamperes, isolate each circuit using the fuse and circuit breaker remove-and-replace process in Step 5. The multi-meter reading will drop to within the acceptable limit when the source of the excessive current draw is disconnected. Repair this circuit as required; whether a wiring short, incorrect switch adjustment, or a component failure is at fault.

### STANDARD PROCEDURE - CHECKING BATTERY ELECTROLYTE LEVEL

The following procedure can be used to check the battery electrolyte level.

(1) Remove the battery cell caps (Fig. 10).



80b76fd0

**Fig. 10 Battery Caps - Export Battery**

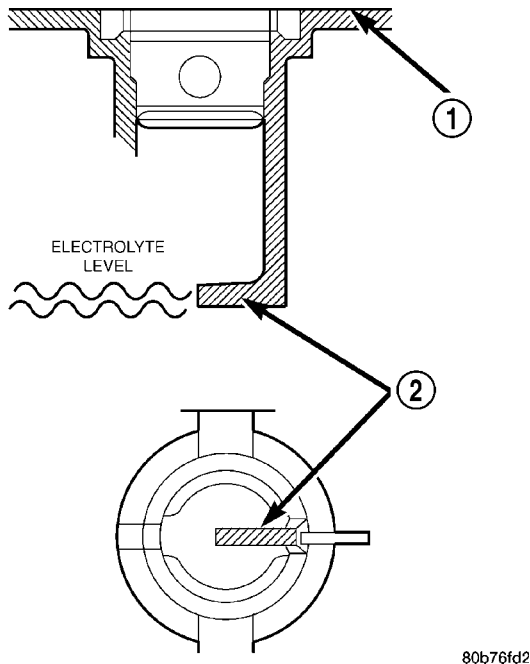
- 1 - BATTERY CAP
- 2 - BATTERY

(2) Look through the battery cap holes to determine the level of the electrolyte in the battery (Fig. 11). The electrolyte should be approximately 1 centimeter above the battery plates or until the hook inside the battery cap holes is covered.

(3) Add only distilled water until the electrolyte level is approx. one centimeter above the plates.



## BATTERY (Continued)



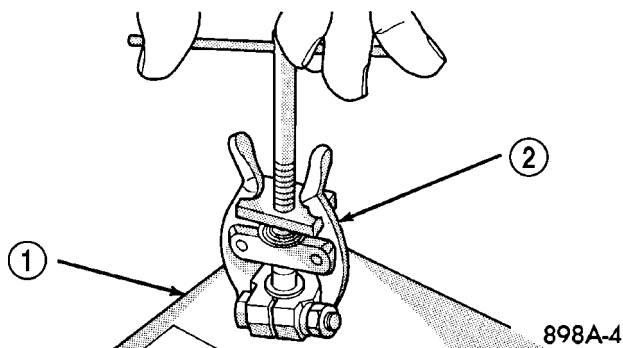
80b76fd2

**Fig. 11 Hook Inside Battery Cap Holes - Export Battery**

- 1 - BATTERY SURFACE COVER  
2 - HOOK

## REMOVAL

- (1) Turn the ignition switch to the Off position. Be certain that all electrical accessories are turned off.
- (2) Loosen the battery negative cable terminal clamp pinch-bolt hex nut.
- (3) Disconnect the battery negative cable terminal clamp from the battery negative terminal post. If necessary, use a battery terminal puller to remove the terminal clamp from the battery post (Fig. 12).



898A-4

**Fig. 12 Remove Battery Cable Terminal Clamp - Typical**

- 1 - BATTERY  
2 - BATTERY TERMINAL PULLER

- (4) Loosen the battery positive cable terminal clamp pinch-bolt hex nut.
- (5) Disconnect the battery positive cable terminal clamp from the battery positive terminal post. If nec-

essary, use a battery terminal puller to remove the terminal clamp from the battery post.

- (6) If the vehicle is equipped with a diesel engine, disconnect the battery vent tube from the battery by pulling straight out.

- (7) Remove the battery hold down from the battery. Refer to Battery Hold Down in this section for the procedure.

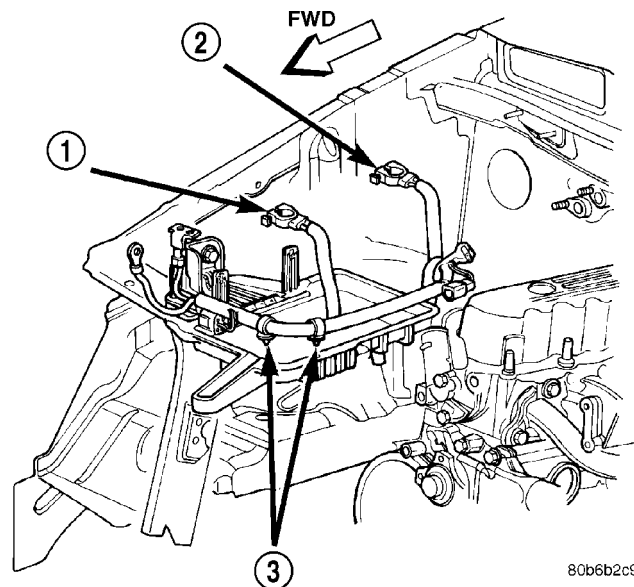
**WARNING: WEAR A SUITABLE PAIR OF RUBBER GLOVES (NOT THE HOUSEHOLD TYPE) WHEN REMOVING A BATTERY BY HAND. SAFETY GLASSES SHOULD ALSO BE WORN. IF THE BATTERY IS CRACKED OR LEAKING, THE ELECTROLYTE CAN BURN THE SKIN AND EYES.**

- (8) Remove the battery from the battery tray.

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Clean and inspect the battery. Refer to the procedures in this section.

- (2) Position the battery onto the battery tray as a unit. Ensure that the battery positive and negative terminal posts are correctly positioned. The battery cable terminal clamps must reach the correct battery terminal post without stretching the cables (Fig. 13) or (Fig. 14).



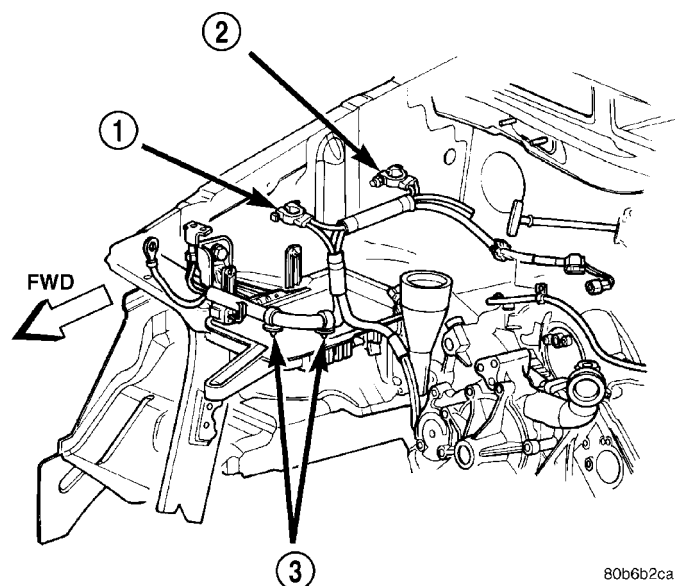
80b6b2c9

**Fig. 13 Battery Cables - 4.0L Engine**

- 1 - BATTERY POSITIVE CABLE  
2 - BATTERY NEGATIVE CABLE  
3 - CLIPS

- (3) Reinstall the battery hold downs onto the battery. Refer to Battery Hold Down in this section.

## BATTERY (Continued)



80b6b2ca

**Fig. 14 Battery Cables - 4.7L Engine**

- 1 - BATTERY POSITIVE CABLE
- 2 - BATTERY NEGATIVE CABLE
- 3 - CLIPS

**CAUTION:** Be certain that the battery cable terminal clamps are connected to the correct battery terminal posts. Reverse battery polarity may damage electrical components of the vehicle.

(4) If the vehicle is equipped with a diesel engine, connect the battery vent tube on the battery by pushing straight in.

(5) Clean the battery cable terminal clamps and the battery terminal posts.

(6) Reconnect the battery positive cable terminal clamp to the battery positive terminal post. Tighten the terminal clamp pinch-bolt hex nut to 6.8 N·m (60 in. lbs.).

(7) Reconnect the battery negative cable terminal clamp to the battery negative terminal post. Tighten the terminal clamp pinch-bolt hex nut to 6.8 N·m (60 in. lbs.).

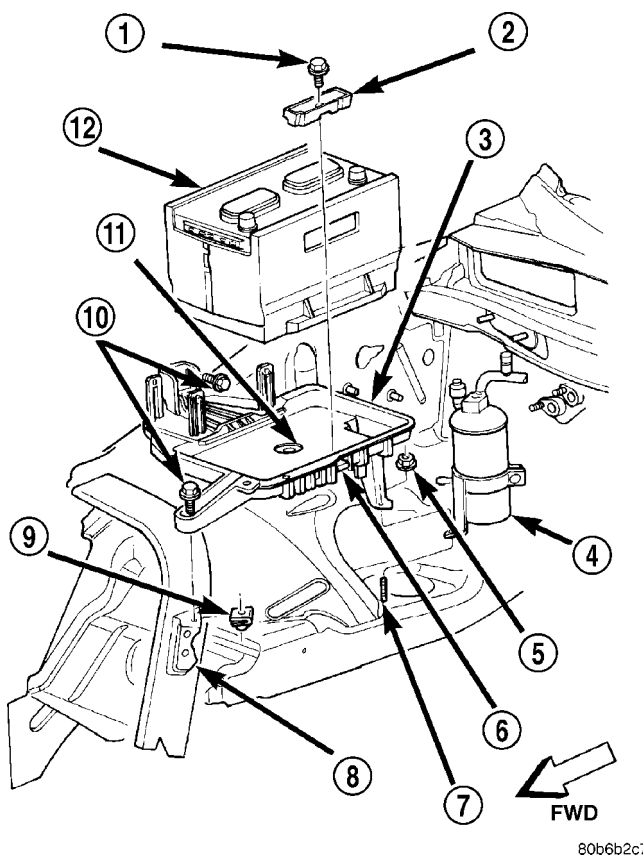
(8) Apply a thin coating of petroleum jelly or chassis grease to the exposed surfaces of the battery cable terminal clamps and the battery terminal posts.

## BATTERY HOLDDOWN

### DESCRIPTION

The battery hold down hardware consists of (Fig. 15) a molded plastic lip that is integral to the out-board edge of the battery tray and support unit, a molded plastic hold down bracket, a single hex screw with a coned washer and a U-nut.

When installing a battery into the battery tray, be certain that the hold down hardware is properly



80b6b2c7

**Fig. 15 Battery Hold Downs**

- 1 - SCREW
- 2 - HOLD DOWN BRACKET
- 3 - BATTERY SUPPORT
- 4 - ACCUMULATOR
- 5 - NUT
- 6 - U-NUT
- 7 - STUD
- 8 - RADIATOR SUPPORT BRACKET
- 9 - U-NUT
- 10 - SCREW
- 11 - BATTERY TEMPERATURE SENSOR
- 12 - BATTERY

installed and that the fasteners are tightened to the proper specifications. Improper hold down fastener tightness, whether too loose or too tight, can result in damage to the battery, the vehicle or both.

### OPERATION

The battery holddown secures the battery in the battery tray. This holddown is designed to prevent battery movement during the most extreme vehicle operation conditions. Periodic removal and lubrication of the battery holddown hardware is recommended to prevent hardware seizure at a later date.

**CAUTION:** Never operate a vehicle without a battery holddown device properly installed. Damage to the vehicle, components and battery could result.

## BATTERY HOLDDOWN (Continued)

**REMOVAL**

All of the battery hold down hardware can be serviced without removal of the battery or the battery tray and support unit.

(1) Turn the ignition switch to the Off position. Be certain that all electrical accessories are turned off.

(2) Loosen the battery negative cable terminal clamp pinch-bolt hex nut.

(3) Disconnect the battery negative cable terminal clamp from the battery negative terminal post. If necessary, use a battery terminal puller to remove the terminal clamp from the battery post.

(4) Remove the screw with washer that secures the battery hold down bracket to the U-nut on the inboard side of the battery tray and support unit (Fig. 16).

(5) Remove the battery hold down bracket from the battery tray and support unit.

**INSTALLATION**

All of the battery hold down hardware can be serviced without removal of the battery or the battery tray and support unit.

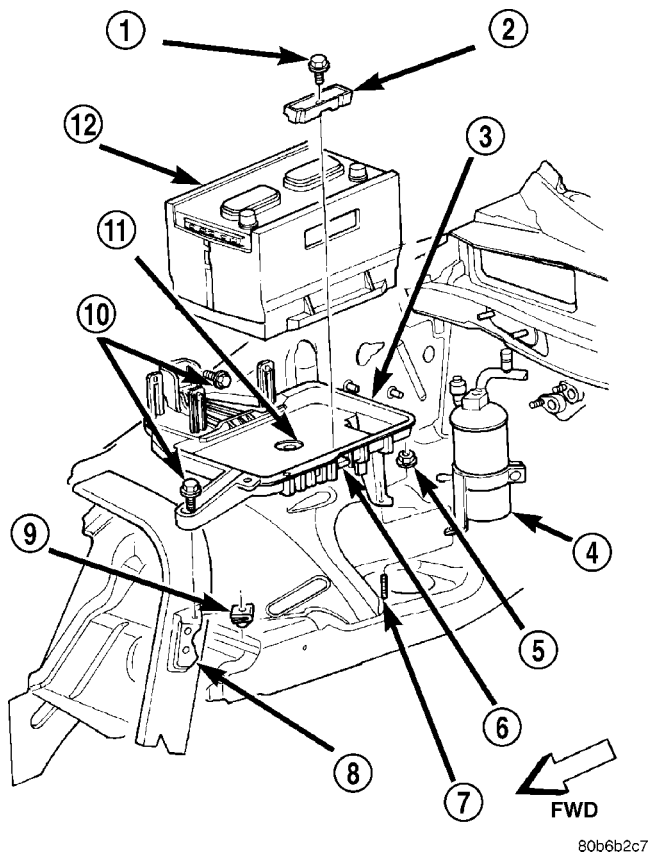
(1) Clean and inspect the battery hold down hardware. Refer to the procedures in this section of the service manual.

(2) Be certain that the battery is properly positioned in the battery tray and support unit. The ledge on the outboard side of the battery case must be engaged under the lip on the outboard side of the battery tray and support unit.

(3) Position the battery hold down bracket over the ledge on the inboard side of the battery case in the battery tray and support unit. Be certain that the ledge on the bottom of the hold down bracket is oriented towards the inboard side of the battery case. Proper hold down bracket orientation may also be determined by noting the direction of the arrow-like formations of the molded reinforcing ribs on the top of the hold down bracket. These arrows should be pointed towards the battery.

(4) Install and tighten the screw that secures the battery hold down bracket to the U-nut on the inboard side of the battery tray and support unit. Tighten the screw to 3.4 N·m (30 in. lbs.).

(5) Reconnect the battery negative cable terminal clamp to the battery negative terminal post. Tighten the terminal clamp pinch-bolt hex nut to 8.4 N·m (75 in. lbs.).

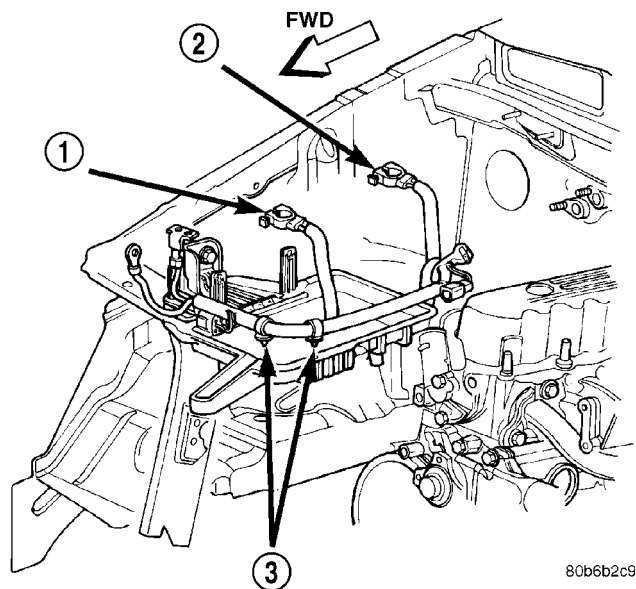


**Fig. 16 Battery Hold Downs Remove/Install**

- 1 - SCREW
- 2 - HOLD DOWN BRACKET
- 3 - BATTERY SUPPORT
- 4 - ACCUMULATOR
- 5 - NUT
- 6 - U-NUT
- 7 - STUD
- 8 - RADIATOR SUPPORT BRACKET
- 9 - U-NUT
- 10 - SCREW
- 11 - BATTERY TEMPERATURE SENSOR
- 12 - BATTERY

## BATTERY CABLE

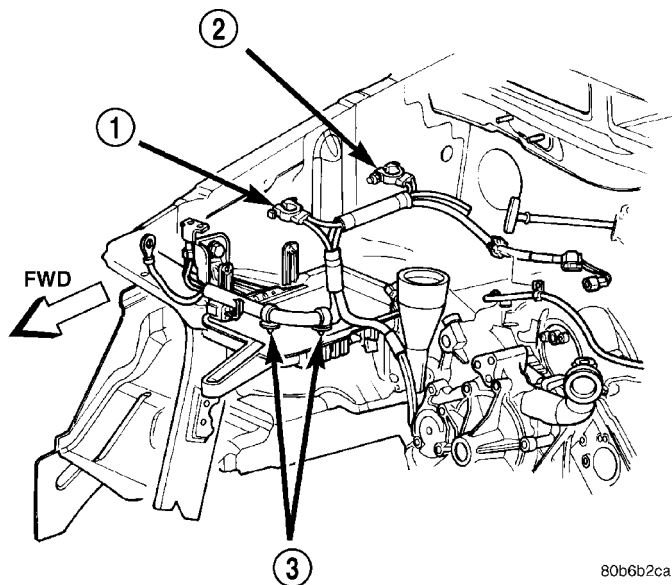
## DESCRIPTION



80b6b2c9

**Fig. 17 Battery Cables - 4.0L Engine**

- 1 - BATTERY POSITIVE CABLE
- 2 - BATTERY NEGATIVE CABLE
- 3 - CLIPS



80b6b2ca

**Fig. 18 Battery Cables - 4.7L Engine**

- 1 - BATTERY POSITIVE CABLE
- 2 - BATTERY NEGATIVE CABLE
- 3 - CLIPS

The battery cables (Fig. 17) or (Fig. 18) are large gauge, stranded copper wires sheathed within a heavy plastic or synthetic rubber insulating jacket. The wire used in the battery cables combines excellent flexibility and reliability with high electrical cur-

rent carrying capacity. Refer to **Wiring Diagrams** for battery cable wire gauge information.

A clamping type female battery terminal made of soft lead is die cast onto one end of the battery cable wire. A square headed pinch-bolt and hex nut are installed at the open end of the female battery terminal clamp. Large eyelet type terminals are crimped onto the opposite end of the battery cable wire and then solder-dipped. The battery positive cable wires have a red insulating jacket to provide visual identification and feature a larger female battery terminal clamp to allow connection to the larger battery positive terminal post. The battery negative cable wires have a black insulating jacket and a smaller female battery terminal clamp.

The battery cables cannot be repaired and, if damaged or faulty they must be replaced. Both the battery positive and negative cables are available for service replacement only as a unit with the battery wire harness, which may include portions of the wiring circuits for the generator and other components on some models. Refer to **Wiring Diagrams** for more information on the various wiring circuits included in the battery wire harness for the vehicle being serviced.

## OPERATION

The battery cables connect the battery terminal posts to the vehicle electrical system. These cables also provide a path back to the battery for electrical current generated by the charging system for restoring the voltage potential of the battery. The female battery terminal clamps on the ends of the battery cable wires provide a strong and reliable connection of the battery cable to the battery terminal posts. The terminal pinch bolts allow the female terminal clamps to be tightened around the male terminal posts on the top of the battery. The eyelet terminals secured to the opposite ends of the battery cable wires from the female battery terminal clamps provide secure and reliable connection of the battery cables to the vehicle electrical system.

The battery positive cable terminal clamp is die cast onto the ends of two wires. One wire has an eyelet terminal that connects the battery positive cable to the B(+) terminal stud of the Power Distribution Center (PDC), and the other wire has an eyelet terminal that connects the battery positive cable to the B(+) terminal stud of the engine starter motor solenoid. The battery negative cable terminal clamp is also die cast onto the ends of two wires. One wire has an eyelet terminal that connects the battery negative cable to the vehicle powertrain through a stud on the right side of the engine cylinder block. The other wire has an eyelet terminal that connects the battery negative cable to the vehicle body through a



## BATTERY CABLE (Continued)

ground screw on the right front fender inner shield, near the battery.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - BATTERY CABLES

A voltage drop test will determine if there is excessive resistance in the battery cable terminal connections or the battery cable. If excessive resistance is found in the battery cable connections, the connection point should be disassembled, cleaned of all corrosion or foreign material, then reassembled. Following reassembly, check the voltage drop for the battery cable connection and the battery cable again to confirm repair.

When performing the voltage drop test, it is important to remember that the voltage drop is giving an indication of the resistance between the two points at which the voltmeter probes are attached. **EXAMPLE:** When testing the resistance of the battery positive cable, touch the voltmeter leads to the battery positive cable terminal clamp and to the battery positive cable eyelet terminal at the starter solenoid B(+) terminal stud. If you probe the battery positive terminal post and the battery positive cable eyelet terminal at the starter solenoid B(+) terminal stud, you are reading the combined voltage drop in the battery positive cable terminal clamp-to-terminal post connection and the battery positive cable.

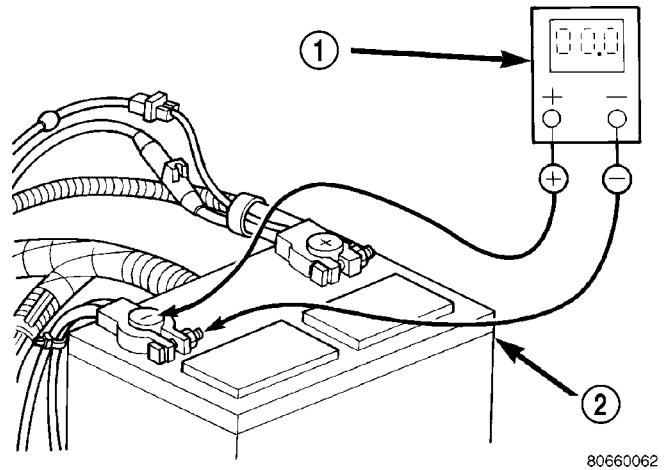
## VOLTAGE DROP TEST

The following operation will require a voltmeter accurate to 1/10 (0.10) volt. Before performing this test, be certain that the following procedures are accomplished:

- The battery is fully-charged and load tested. Refer to Standard Procedures for the proper battery charging and load test procedures.
- Fully engage the parking brake.
- If the vehicle is equipped with an automatic transmission, place the gearshift selector lever in the Park position. If the vehicle is equipped with a manual transmission, place the gearshift selector lever in the Neutral position and block the clutch pedal in the fully depressed position.
- Verify that all lamps and accessories are turned off.
- To prevent the engine from starting, remove the Automatic Shut Down (ASD) relay. The ASD relay is located in the Power Distribution Center (PDC), in the engine compartment. See the fuse and relay layout label affixed to the underside of the PDC cover for ASD relay identification and location.

(1) Connect the positive lead of the voltmeter to the battery negative terminal post. Connect the negative lead of the voltmeter to the battery negative cable terminal clamp (Fig. 19). Rotate and hold the ignition switch in the Start position. Observe the

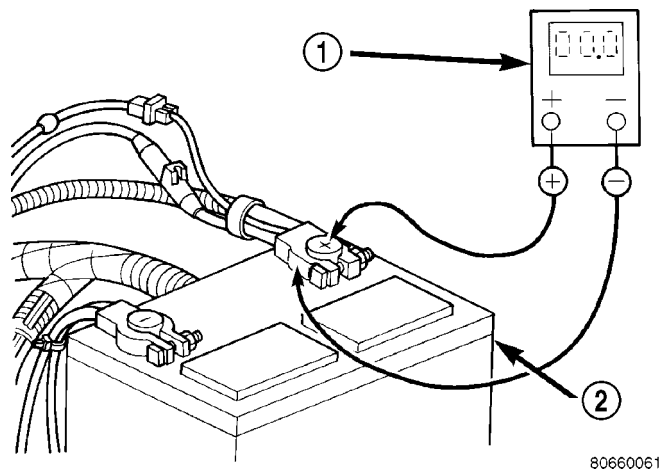
voltmeter. If voltage is detected, correct the poor connection between the battery negative cable terminal clamp and the battery negative terminal post.



**Fig. 19 TEST BATTERY NEGATIVE CONNECTION RESISTANCE - TYPICAL**

1 - VOLTmeter  
2 - BATTERY

(2) Connect the positive lead of the voltmeter to the battery positive terminal post. Connect the negative lead of the voltmeter to the battery positive cable terminal clamp (Fig. 20). Rotate and hold the ignition switch in the Start position. Observe the voltmeter. If voltage is detected, correct the poor connection between the battery positive cable terminal clamp and the battery positive terminal post.



**Fig. 20 TEST BATTERY POSITIVE CONNECTION RESISTANCE - TYPICAL**

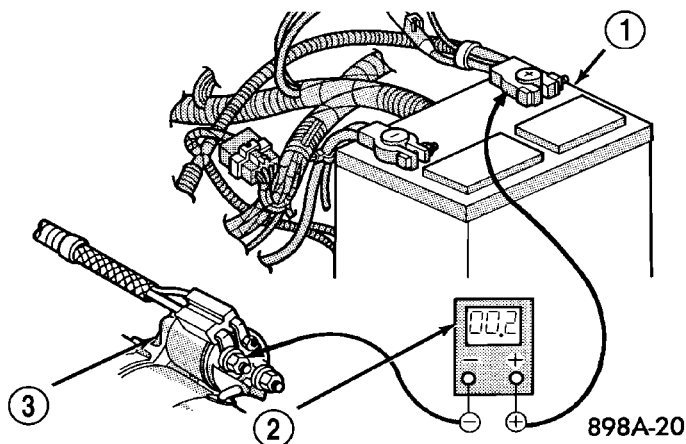
1 - VOLTmeter  
2 - BATTERY

(3) Connect the voltmeter to measure between the battery positive cable terminal clamp and the starter solenoid B(+) terminal stud (Fig. 21). Rotate and hold the ignition switch in the Start position. Observe the



## BATTERY CABLE (Continued)

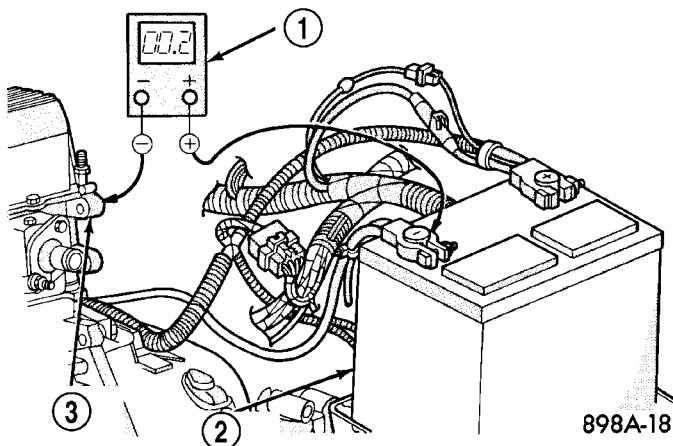
voltmeter. If the reading is above 0.2 volt, clean and tighten the battery positive cable eyelet terminal connection at the starter solenoid B(+) terminal stud. Repeat the test. If the reading is still above 0.2 volt, replace the faulty battery positive cable.



**Fig. 21 TEST BATTERY POSITIVE CABLE RESISTANCE - TYPICAL**

- 1 - BATTERY
- 2 - VOLTMETER
- 3 - STARTER MOTOR

(4) Connect the voltmeter to measure between the battery negative cable terminal clamp and a good clean ground on the engine block (Fig. 22). Rotate and hold the ignition switch in the Start position. Observe the voltmeter. If the reading is above 0.2 volt, clean and tighten the battery negative cable eyelet terminal connection to the engine block. Repeat the test. If the reading is still above 0.2 volt, replace the faulty battery negative cable.



**Fig. 22 TEST GROUND CIRCUIT RESISTANCE - TYPICAL**

- 1 - VOLTMETER
- 2 - BATTERY
- 3 - ENGINE GROUND

## REMOVAL

Both the battery negative cable and the battery positive cable are serviced in the battery wire harness. If either battery cable is damaged or faulty, the battery wire harness unit must be replaced.

(1) Turn the ignition switch to the Off position. Be certain that all electrical accessories are turned off.

(2) Loosen the battery negative cable terminal clamp pinch-bolt hex nut.

(3) Disconnect the battery negative cable terminal clamp from the battery negative terminal post. If necessary, use a battery terminal puller to remove the terminal clamp from the battery post.

(4) Loosen the battery positive cable terminal clamp pinch-bolt hex nut.

(5) Disconnect the battery positive cable terminal clamp from the battery positive terminal post. If necessary, use a battery terminal puller to remove the terminal clamp from the battery post.

(6) Unlatch and open the cover on the Power Distribution Center (PDC).

(7) Remove the two nuts that secure the battery positive cable and generator output cable eyelet terminal to the B(+) terminal studs in the PDC.

(8) Remove the battery positive cable and generator output cable eyelet terminal from the B(+) terminal studs in the PDC.

(9) Disconnect the battery wire harness connector from the right headlamp and dash wire harness connector located near the front of the battery.

(10) Remove the screw that secures the battery negative cable eyelet terminal to the inner fender shield near the front of the battery.

(11) On models with the 4.7L engine, remove the nut that secures the battery harness clip to the stud on the right side of the intake manifold and remove the clip from the stud.

(12) Unlatch and remove the cover from the generator output terminal stud housing on the back of the generator.

(13) Remove the nut that secures the generator output cable eyelet terminal to the generator output terminal stud.

(14) Remove the generator output cable eyelet terminal from the generator output terminal stud.

(15) Disconnect the battery wire harness connector from the generator field terminal connector receptacle on the back of the generator.

(16) Remove the screw that secures the battery negative cable ground eyelet terminal to the right side of the engine block.

(17) Remove the nut that secures the battery positive cable eyelet terminal to the B(+) terminal stud on the starter solenoid.

## BATTERY CABLE (Continued)

(18) Remove the battery positive cable eyelet terminal from the B(+) terminal stud on the starter solenoid.

(19) Disconnect the battery wire harness connector from the connector receptacle on the starter solenoid.

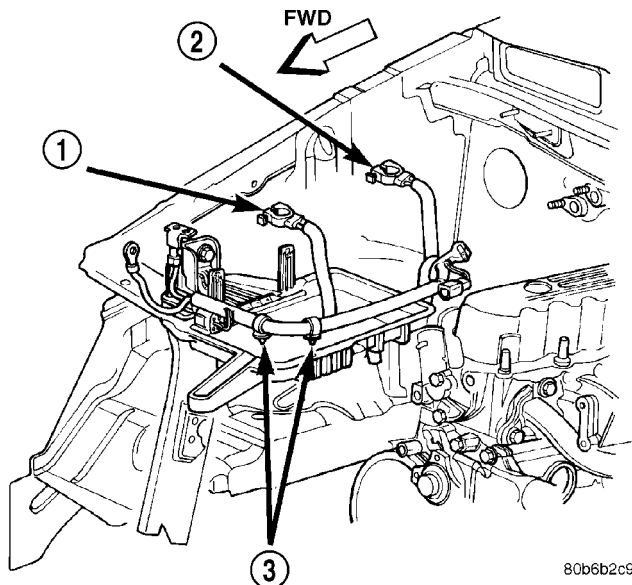
(20) Remove the battery wire harness from the engine compartment.

## INSTALLATION

Both the battery negative cable and the battery positive cable are serviced in the battery wire harness. If either battery cable is damaged or faulty, the battery wire harness unit must be replaced.

(1) Clean and inspect the battery cable terminal clamps and the battery terminal posts.

(2) Position the battery wire harness into the engine compartment (Fig. 23) or (Fig. 24).



**Fig. 23 Battery Cables - 4.0L Engine**

- 1 - BATTERY POSITIVE CABLE
- 2 - BATTERY NEGATIVE CABLE
- 3 - CLIPS

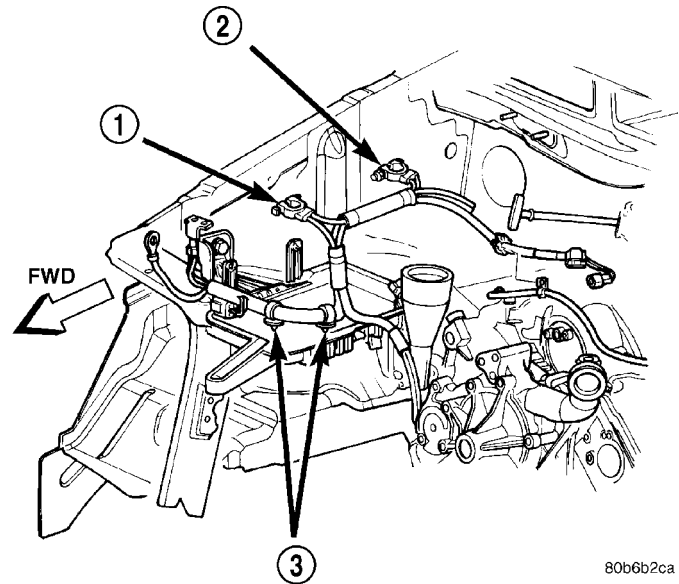
(3) Reconnect the battery wire harness connector to the connector receptacle on the starter solenoid.

(4) Install the battery positive cable eyelet terminal onto the B(+) terminal stud on the starter solenoid.

(5) Install and tighten the nut that secures the battery positive cable eyelet terminal to the B(+) terminal stud on the starter solenoid. Tighten the nut to 11.3 N·m (100 in. lbs.).

(6) Install and tighten the screw that secures the battery negative cable ground eyelet terminal to the right side of the engine block. Tighten the screw to 10.2 N·m (90 in. lbs.) for 4.0L engines, or 13.0 N·m (115 in. lbs.) for 4.7L engines.

(7) Reconnect the battery wire harness connector to the generator field terminal connector receptacle on the back of the generator.



**Fig. 24 Battery Cables - 4.7L Engine**

- 1 - BATTERY POSITIVE CABLE
- 2 - BATTERY NEGATIVE CABLE
- 3 - CLIPS

(8) Install the generator output cable eyelet terminal onto the generator output terminal stud.

(9) Install and tighten the nut that secures the generator output cable eyelet terminal to the generator output terminal stud. Tighten the nut to 10.7 N·m (95 in. lbs.).

(10) Position the cover for the generator output terminal stud housing onto the back of the generator and snap it into place.

(11) On models with the 4.7L engine, install the battery harness clip onto the stud on the right side of the intake manifold, then install and tighten the nut that secures the clip to the stud. Tighten the nut to 11.3 N·m (100 in. lbs.).

(12) Install and tighten the screw that secures the battery negative cable eyelet terminal to the inner fender shield near the front of the battery. Tighten the screw to 28.2 N·m (250 in. lbs.).

(13) Reconnect the battery wire harness connector to the right headlamp and dash wire harness connector located near the front of the battery.

(14) Install the battery positive cable and generator output cable eyelet terminal onto the PDC B(+) terminal studs.

(15) Install and tighten the two nuts that secure the battery positive cable and generator output cable eyelet terminal to the PDC B(+) terminal studs. Tighten the nuts to 11.3 N·m (100 in. lbs.).

(16) Close and latch the PDC cover.

(17) Reconnect the battery positive cable terminal clamp to the battery positive terminal post. Tighten the terminal clamp pinch-bolt hex nut to 6.8 N·m (60 in. lbs.).

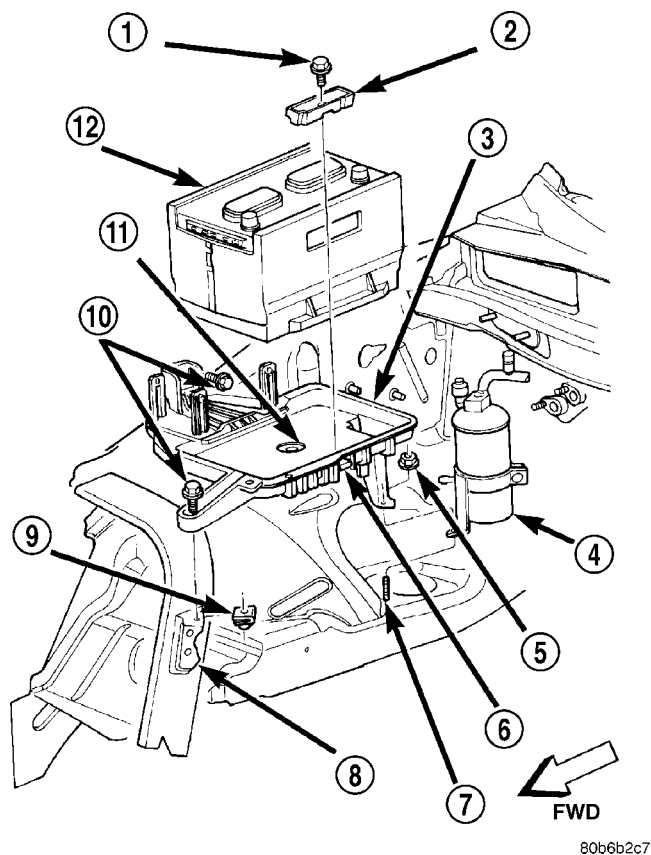
## BATTERY CABLE (Continued)

(18) Reconnect the battery negative cable terminal clamp to the battery negative terminal post. Tighten the terminal clamp pinch-bolt hex nut to 6.8 N·m (60 in. lbs.).

(19) Apply a thin coating of petroleum jelly or chassis grease to the exposed surfaces of the battery cable terminal clamps and the battery terminal posts.

## BATTERY TRAY

## DESCRIPTION



**Fig. 25 Battery Tray and Support**

- 1 - SCREW
- 2 - HOLD DOWN BRACKET
- 3 - BATTERY SUPPORT
- 4 - ACCUMULATOR
- 5 - NUT
- 6 - U-NUT
- 7 - STUD
- 8 - RADIATOR SUPPORT BRACKET
- 9 - U-NUT
- 10 - SCREW
- 11 - BATTERY TEMPERATURE SENSOR
- 12 - BATTERY

The battery is mounted in a molded plastic battery tray and support unit (Fig. 25) located in the right front corner of the engine compartment. The battery tray and support unit is secured at the rear with a nut to a stud on the front wheelhouse inner panel, at

the outboard side with a screw to the side cowl reinforcement panel, and at the front with a screw through a U-nut on a bracket of the radiator support.

The battery tray and support unit also includes three upright stanchions that are molded into the outboard side of the unit. These stanchions support the Power Distribution Center (PDC). Refer to **Power Distribution Center** in the Power Distribution section of this service manual for more information on the PDC.

A hole in the bottom of the battery tray is fitted with a battery temperature sensor. Refer to **Battery Temperature Sensor** in the Charging section of this service manual for more information on the battery temperature sensor. Refer to **Battery Hold Down** in this section of the service manual for more information on the battery hold down hardware.

## OPERATION

The battery tray provides a secure mounting location and supports the battery. On some vehicles, the battery tray also provides the anchor point/s for the battery holddown hardware. The battery tray and the battery holddown hardware combine to secure and stabilize the battery in the engine compartment, which prevents battery movement during vehicle operation. Unrestrained battery movement during vehicle operation could result in damage to the vehicle, the battery, or both.

## REMOVAL

## REMOVAL - GAS ENGINE

(1) Remove the battery from the battery tray (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/BATTERY SYSTEM/BATTERY - REMOVAL).

(2) Remove the Power Distribution Center (PDC) from the stanchions on the outboard side of the battery tray and support unit. Refer to **Power Distribution Center** in the Power Distribution section of this service manual for PDC removal procedure.

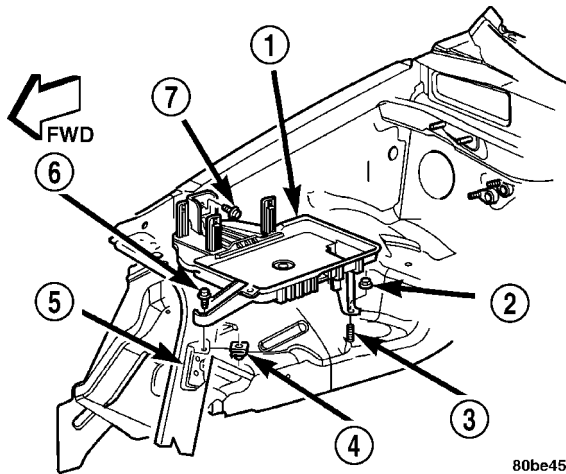
(3) Remove the one screw that secures the front of the battery tray and support unit to the bracket on the right side of the radiator support (Fig. 26).

(4) Remove the one screw that secures the outboard side of the battery tray and support unit to the right fender side cowl reinforcement.

(5) Remove the one nut that secures the rear of the battery tray and support unit to the stud on the right fender front wheelhouse inner panel.

(6) Remove the battery temperature sensor from the battery tray. Refer to **Battery Temperature Sensor** in the Charging section of this service manual for battery temperature sensor removal procedure.

## BATTERY TRAY (Continued)



**Fig. 26 Battery Tray and Support Remove/Install**

- 1 - BATTERY TRAY AND SUPPORT
- 2 - NUT (1)
- 3 - STUD
- 4 - U-NUT (1)
- 5 - RADIATOR SUPPORT BRACKET
- 6 - SCREW (1)
- 7 - SCREW (1)

(7) Remove the battery tray and support unit from the right front corner of the engine compartment.

## REMOVAL

- (1) Disconnect the battery negative cable terminal clamp from the battery negative terminal.
- (2) If the vehicle is left hand drive (LHD) remove the accelerator cable from the retaining clip that is mounted to the battery hold down bracket.
- (3) Remove the reusable plastic tie wrap, used to secure the battery cable, from the battery handle. Save the tie wrap later installation.
- (4) Disconnect the battery vent tube from the battery.
- (5) Remove the battery hold down bracket and screw. Remove the battery from the vehicle.
- (6) Depress the clips used to secure the Power Distribution Center (PDC) to the battery tray. Remove the PDC from the battery tray.
- (7) Remove the two small screws used to hold the battery cable harness to the battery tray. Remove the harness bracket from the battery tray.
- (8) Remove the attaching screw (6 mm) and large flat washer used to secure the power steering reservoir to the radiator support.
- (9) Remove the two attaching screws (6 mm) used to secure the bottom and side of the battery tray to the vehicle inner fender.
- (10) Remove the rear lower attaching nut (6 mm) from its stud. The nut is used to secure the rear leg of the battery tray to the inner fender. Note that there is a flat washer located on the stud and

between the leg of the battery tray and the inner fender.

(11) While holding the power steering reservoir up and out of the way, remove the attaching nut (8 mm) used to secure the front leg of the battery tray to the radiator support. Use a long extension with flexible socket to gain the necessary access.

(12) With the battery tray loose, carefully disconnect and remove the battery temperature sensor from the battery tray. Refer to the charging section for detailed procedure.

(13) Remove the battery tray.

## INSTALLATION

### INSTALLATION - GAS ENGINE

- (1) Clean and inspect the battery tray and support unit. Refer to the procedures in this section of the service manual.
- (2) Install the battery temperature sensor onto the battery tray. Refer to **Battery Temperature Sensor** in the Charging section of this service manual for battery temperature sensor installation procedure.
- (3) Position the battery tray and support unit into the right front corner of the engine compartment. Be certain that no hoses or wire harnesses are trapped or pinched by the installation of the tray.
- (4) Install and tighten the one nut that secures the rear of the battery tray and support unit to the stud on the right fender front wheelhouse inner panel. Tighten the nut to 7.3 N·m (65 in. lbs.).
- (5) Install and tighten the one screw that secures the outboard side of the battery tray and support unit to the right fender side cowl reinforcement. Tighten the screw to 8.1 N·m (72 in. lbs.).
- (6) Install and tighten the one screw that secures the front of the battery tray and support unit to the bracket on the right side of the radiator support. Tighten the screw to 8.1 N·m (72 in. lbs.).
- (7) Install the Power Distribution Center (PDC) onto the stanchions on the outboard side of the battery tray and support unit. Refer to **Power Distribution Center** in the Power Distribution section of this service manual for PDC installation procedure.
- (8) Install the battery onto the battery tray (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/BATTERY SYSTEM/BATTERY - INSTALLATION).

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Install the battery temperature sensor in the new battery tray.
- (2) Install the new battery tray to vehicle. **MAKE SURE** the flat washer is properly positioned between the battery tray rear leg and the inner fender.



## BATTERY TRAY (Continued)

(3) Install the two attaching screws (6 mm) used to secure the bottom and side of the battery tray to the vehicle inner fender. Tighten screws to 7.4 Nm (65 in. lbs.).

(4) Install the attaching nut (6 mm) used to secure the battery tray rear leg. Tighten nut to 7.4 Nm (65 in. lbs.).

(5) Install the attaching nut (8 mm) used to secure the front leg of the battery tray. Tighten nut to 7.4 Nm (65 in. lbs.).

(6) Properly seat the power steering reservoir. Secure the reservoir by installing the large flat washer and attaching screw. Tighten nut to 6.8 Nm (60 in. lbs.).

(7) Install the two small screws used to hold the battery cable harness bracket to the battery tray. Tighten screws to 1.6 Nm (14 in. lbs.).

(8) Install the battery and the battery hold down bracket. Make sure the battery is fully seated. Install the hold down screw and tighten screw to 4 Nm (35 in. lbs.).

(9) On LHD vehicles only, install the accelerator cable into the clip at the battery hold down bracket.

(10) Install the battery positive cable terminal clamp to the battery positive terminal.

(11) Install the battery negative cable terminal clamp to the battery negative terminal.



# CHARGING

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>CHARGING</b>		OPERATION .....	27
DESCRIPTION .....	25	REMOVAL .....	27
OPERATION .....	25	INSTALLATION .....	27
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - CHARGING		<b>GENERATOR</b>	
SYSTEM .....	25	DESCRIPTION .....	28
SPECIFICATIONS		OPERATION .....	28
GENERATOR RATINGS - GAS POWERED ..	26	REMOVAL .....	28
TORQUE - GAS POWERED .....	26	INSTALLATION .....	29
SPECIAL TOOLS .....	27	<b>VOLTAGE REGULATOR</b>	
<b>BATTERY TEMPERATURE SENSOR</b>		DESCRIPTION .....	29
DESCRIPTION .....	27	OPERATION .....	29

## CHARGING

### DESCRIPTION

The charging system consists of:

- Generator
- Electronic Voltage Regulator (EVR) circuitry within the Powertrain Control Module (PCM)
- Ignition switch
- Battery (refer to 8, Battery for information)
- Battery temperature sensor
- Generator Lamp (if equipped)
- Check Gauges Lamp (if equipped)
- Voltmeter (refer to 8, Instrument Cluster for information)
- Wiring harness and connections (refer to 8, Wiring for information)

### OPERATION

The charging system is turned on and off with the ignition switch. The system is on when the engine is running and the ASD relay is energized. When the ASD relay is on, voltage is supplied to the ASD relay sense circuit at the PCM. This voltage is connected through the PCM and supplied to one of the generator field terminals (Gen. Source +) at the back of the generator.

The amount of DC current produced by the generator is controlled by the EVR (field control) circuitry contained within the PCM. This circuitry is connected in series with the second rotor field terminal and ground.

A battery temperature sensor, located in the battery tray housing, is used to sense battery temperature. This temperature data, along with data from monitored line voltage, is used by the PCM to vary the battery charging rate. This is done by cycling the

ground path to control the strength of the rotor magnetic field. The PCM then compensates and regulates generator current output accordingly.

All vehicles are equipped with On-Board Diagnostics (OBD). All OBD-sensed systems, including EVR (field control) circuitry, are monitored by the PCM. Each monitored circuit is assigned a Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC). The PCM will store a DTC in electronic memory for certain failures it detects. Refer to Diagnostic Trouble Codes in; Powertrain Control Module; Electronic Control Modules for more DTC information.

The Check Gauges Lamp (if equipped) monitors: **charging system voltage**, engine coolant temperature and engine oil pressure. If an extreme condition is indicated, the lamp will be illuminated. This is done as reminder to check the three gauges. The signal to activate the lamp is sent via the CCD bus circuits. The lamp is located on the instrument panel. Refer to 8, Instrument Cluster for additional information.

### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - CHARGING SYSTEM

The following procedures may be used to diagnose the charging system if:

- the check gauges lamp (if equipped) is illuminated with the engine running
- the voltmeter (if equipped) does not register properly
- an undercharged or overcharged battery condition occurs.

Remember that an undercharged battery is often caused by:

- accessories being left on with the engine not running

## CHARGING (Continued)

- a faulty or improperly adjusted switch that allows a lamp to stay on. Refer to Ignition-Off Draw Test in 8, Battery for more information.

## INSPECTION

The Powertrain Control Module (PCM) monitors critical input and output circuits of the charging system, making sure they are operational. A Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) is assigned to each input and output circuit monitored by the On-Board Diagnostic (OBD) system. Some charging system circuits are checked continuously, and some are checked only under certain conditions.

Refer to Diagnostic Trouble Codes in; Powertrain Control Module; Electronic Control Modules for more DTC information. This will include a complete list of DTC's including DTC's for the charging system.

To perform a complete test of the charging system, refer to the appropriate Powertrain Diagnostic Procedures service manual and the DRB® scan tool. Perform the following inspections before attaching the scan tool.

(1) Inspect the battery condition. Refer to 8, Battery for procedures.

(2) Inspect condition of battery cable terminals, battery posts, connections at engine block, starter solenoid and relay. They should be clean and tight. Repair as required.

(3) Inspect all fuses in both the fuseblock and Power Distribution Center (PDC) for tightness in receptacles. They should be properly installed and tight. Repair or replace as required.

(4) Inspect generator mounting bolts for tightness. Replace or tighten bolts if required. Refer to the Generator Removal/Installation section of this group for torque specifications.

(5) Inspect generator drive belt condition and tension. Tighten or replace belt as required. Refer to Belt Tension Specifications in 7, Cooling System.

(6) Inspect automatic belt tensioner (if equipped). Refer to 7, Cooling System for information.

(7) Inspect generator electrical connections at generator field, battery output, and ground terminal (if equipped). Also check generator ground wire connection at engine (if equipped). They should all be clean and tight. Repair as required.

## SPECIFICATIONS

## GENERATOR RATINGS - GAS POWERED

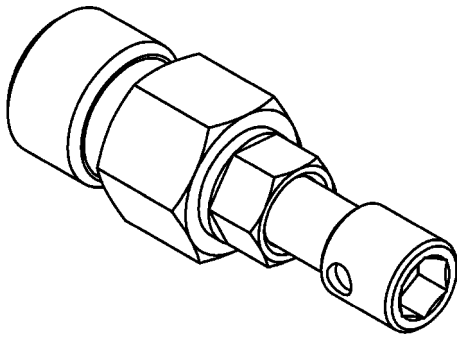
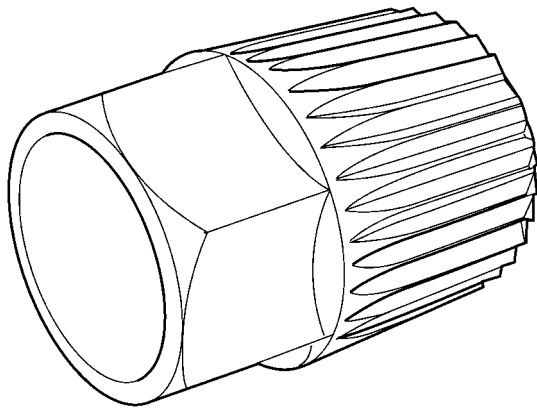
TYPE	PART NUMBER	RATED SAE AMPS	ENGINES	MINIMUM TEST AMPS
BOSCH	56041322	136	4.0L 6-Cylinder	100
DENSO	56041324	136	4.7L V-8	100

## TORQUE - GAS POWERED

DESCRIPTION	N-m	Ft. Lbs.	In. Lbs.
Generator Mounting Bolts-4.0L	55	41	
Generator Vertical Mounting Bolt-4.7L	40	29	
Generator (long) Horizontal Mounting Bolt-4.7L	55	41	
Generator (short) Horizontal Mounting Bolt-4.7L	55	41	
Generator B+ Terminal Nut	11		95

## CHARGING (Continued)

## SPECIAL TOOLS

**GENERATOR DECOUPLER TOOL #8433**

80cb8152

**GENERATOR DECOUPLER TOOL #8823**

## BATTERY TEMPERATURE SENSOR

## DESCRIPTION

The Battery Temperature Sensor (BTS) is attached to the battery tray located under the battery.

## OPERATION

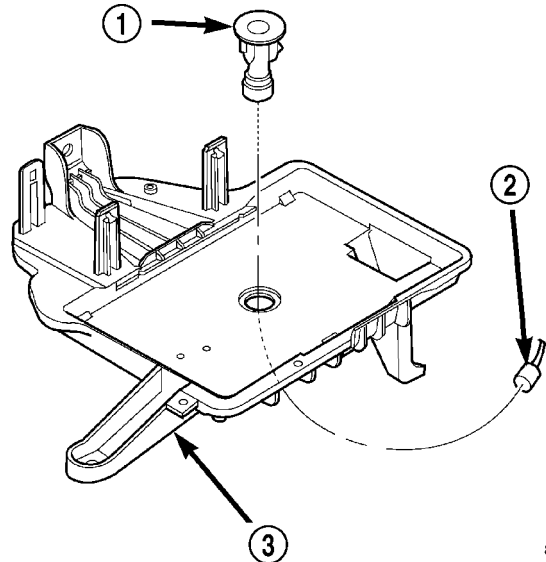
The BTS is used to determine the battery temperature and control battery charging rate. This temperature data, along with data from monitored line voltage, is used by the PCM to vary the battery charging rate. System voltage will be higher at colder temperatures and is gradually reduced at warmer temperatures.

The PCM sends 5 volts to the sensor and is grounded through the sensor return line. As temperature increases, resistance in the sensor decreases and the detection voltage at the PCM increases.

The BTS is also used for OBD II diagnostics. Certain faults and OBD II monitors are either enabled or disabled, depending upon BTS input (for example, disable purge and enable Leak Detection Pump (LDP) and O<sub>2</sub> sensor heater tests). Most OBD II monitors are disabled below 20 degrees F.

## REMOVAL

The battery temperature sensor is located under the vehicle battery (Fig. 1) and is attached to a mounting hole on the battery tray.



80b6f036

**Fig. 1 Battery Temperature Sensor Location**

- 1 - BATTERY TEMPERATURE SENSOR
- 2 - ENGINE WIRE HARNESS
- 3 - BATTERY TRAY

The battery temperature sensor is located under the vehicle battery (Fig. 1) and is attached to a mounting hole on the battery tray.

- (1) Remove battery. Refer to Group 8A, Battery for procedures.
- (2) Remove battery tray.
- (3) Pull sensor up from battery tray and disconnect engine wire harness.
- (4) Remove sensor from battery tray.

## INSTALLATION

The battery temperature sensor is located under the vehicle battery (Fig. 1) and is attached to a mounting hole on the battery tray.

- (1) Position sensor into mounting hole and attach wiring harness.
- (2) Press sensor into top of battery tray.
- (3) Install battery. Refer to Group 8A, Battery for procedures.

## GENERATOR

### DESCRIPTION

The generator is belt-driven by the engine using a serpentine type drive belt. It is serviced only as a complete assembly. If the generator fails for any reason, the entire assembly must be replaced.

### OPERATION

As the energized rotor begins to rotate within the generator, the spinning magnetic field induces a current into the windings of the stator coil. Once the generator begins producing sufficient current, it also provides the current needed to energize the rotor.

The Y type stator winding connections deliver the induced AC current to 3 positive and 3 negative diodes for rectification. From the diodes, rectified DC current is delivered to the vehicle electrical system through the generator battery terminal.

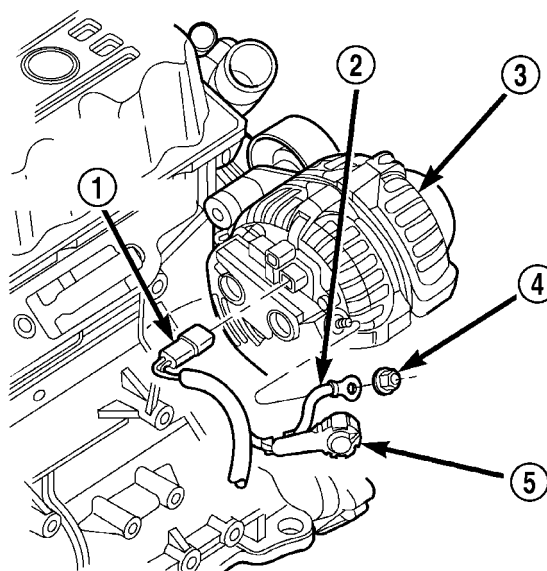
Although the generators appear the same externally, different generators with different output ratings are used on this vehicle. Be certain that the replacement generator has the same output rating and part number as the original unit. Refer to Generator Ratings in the Specifications section at the back of this group for amperage ratings and part numbers.

Noise emitting from the generator may be caused by: worn, loose or defective bearings; a loose or defective drive pulley; incorrect, worn, damaged or misadjusted fan drive belt; loose mounting bolts; a misaligned drive pulley or a defective stator or diode.

### REMOVAL

**WARNING: DISCONNECT NEGATIVE CABLE FROM BATTERY BEFORE REMOVING BATTERY OUTPUT WIRE (B+ WIRE) FROM GENERATOR. FAILURE TO DO SO CAN RESULT IN INJURY OR DAMAGE TO ELECTRICAL SYSTEM.**

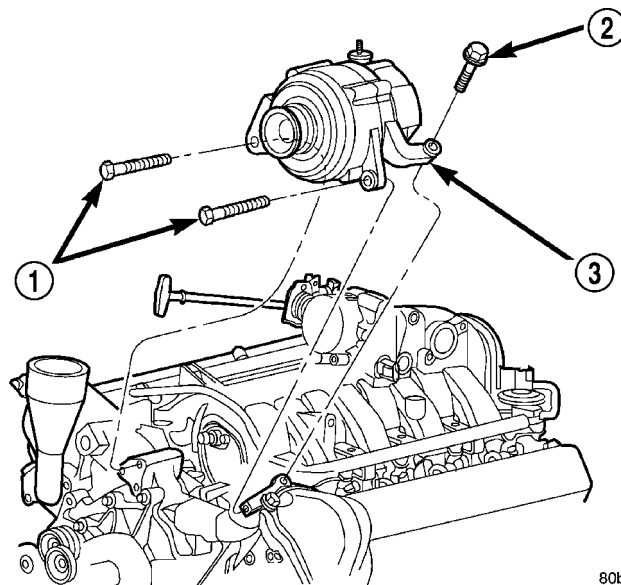
- (1) Disconnect negative battery cable at battery.
- (2) Remove generator drive belt. Refer to Cooling System for procedure.
- (3) Unsnap cable protector cover from B+ mounting stud (Fig. 2).
- (4) Disconnect (unsnap) 2-wire field connector at rear of generator (Fig. 2).
- (5) Remove generator mounting bolts (Fig. 3) or (Fig. 4).
- (6) Remove generator from vehicle.



80b6f038

**Fig. 2 Generator B+ Cable and Field Wire Connections (Typical—4.0L Engine Shown)**

- 1 - FIELD WIRE CONNECTOR
- 2 - B+ CABLE
- 3 - GENERATOR
- 4 - B+ CABLE MOUNTING NUT
- 5 - CABLE PROTECTOR

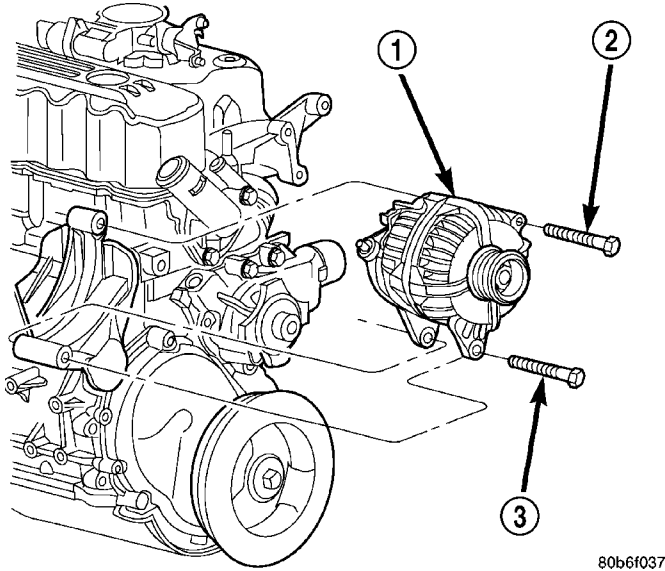


80b6f039

**Fig. 3 Remove/Install Generator—4.7L V-8 Engine**

- 1 - LOWER BOLTS
- 2 - REAR BOLT
- 3 - GENERATOR

## GENERATOR (Continued)



**Fig. 4 Remove/Install Generator—4.0L 6-Cylinder Engine**

- 1 - GENERATOR  
2 - UPPER BOLT  
3 - LOWER BOLT

**INSTALLATION**

(1) Position generator to engine and install mounting bolts.

- (2) Tighten generator mounting bolts as follows:
- Vertical mounting bolt 4.7L engine. Refer to Torque Specifications.
  - Long horizontal mounting bolt 4.7L engine. Refer to Torque Specifications.
  - Short horizontal mounting bolt 4.7L engine. Refer to Torque Specifications.
  - Generator mounting bolts 4.0L engine. Refer to Torque Specifications.
  - B+ terminal nut. Refer to Torque Specifications.
- (3) Snap 2-wire field connector into rear of generator.
- (4) Snap cable protector cover to B+ mounting stud.

**CAUTION:** Never force a belt over a pulley rim using a screwdriver. The synthetic fiber of the belt can be damaged.

**CAUTION:** When installing a serpentine accessory drive belt, the belt **MUST** be routed correctly. The water pump will be rotating in the wrong direction if the belt is installed incorrectly, causing the engine to overheat. Refer to belt routing label in engine compartment, or refer to Belt Schematics in 7, Cooling System.

(5) Install generator drive belt. Refer to 7, Cooling System for procedure.

(6) Install negative battery cable to battery.

**VOLTAGE REGULATOR****DESCRIPTION**

The Electronic Voltage Regulator (EVR) is not a separate component. It is actually a voltage regulating circuit located within the Powertrain Control Module (PCM). The EVR is not serviced separately. If replacement is necessary, the PCM must be replaced.

**OPERATION**

The amount of DC current produced by the generator is controlled by EVR circuitry contained within the PCM. This circuitry is connected in series with the generator's second rotor field terminal and its ground.

Voltage is regulated by cycling the ground path to control the strength of the rotor magnetic field. The EVR circuitry monitors system line voltage (B+) and battery temperature (refer to Battery Temperature Sensor for more information). It then determines a target charging voltage. If sensed battery voltage is 0.5 volts or lower than the target voltage, the PCM grounds the field winding until sensed battery voltage is 0.5 volts above target voltage. A circuit in the PCM cycles the ground side of the generator field up to 100 times per second (100Hz), but has the capability to ground the field control wire 100% of the time (full field) to achieve the target voltage. If the charging rate cannot be monitored (limp-in), a duty cycle of 25% is used by the PCM in order to have some generator output. Also refer to Charging System Operation for additional information.



# STARTING

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>STARTING</b>		DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - STARTER	
DESCRIPTION .....	30	MOTOR .....	37
OPERATION .....	31	REMOVAL .....	38
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - STARTING		INSTALLATION .....	39
SYSTEM .....	31	<b>STARTER MOTOR RELAY</b>	
SPECIFICATIONS		DESCRIPTION .....	39
TORQUE - STARTER .....	36	OPERATION .....	39
STARTER MOTOR - GAS POWERED .....	36	DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - STARTER RELAY .....	39
<b>STARTER MOTOR</b>		REMOVAL .....	40
DESCRIPTION .....	36	INSTALLATION .....	40
OPERATION .....	37		

## STARTING

### DESCRIPTION

An electrically operated engine starting system is standard factory-installed equipment on this model. The starting system is designed to provide the vehicle operator with a convenient, efficient and reliable means of cranking and starting the internal combustion engine used to power the vehicle and all of its accessory systems from within the safe and secure confines of the passenger compartment. See the owner's manual in the vehicle glove box for more information and instructions on the recommended use and operation of the factory-installed starting system.

The starting system consists of the following components:

- Battery
- Starter relay
- Starter motor (including an integral starter solenoid)
- Ignition switch
- Park/neutral position switch
- Wire harnesses and connections (including the battery cables).

This group provides complete service information for the starter motor and the starter relay. Complete service information for the other starting system components can be located as follows:

- Refer to **Battery** in the proper section of Group 8A - Battery for complete service information for the battery.
- Refer to **Ignition Switch and Key Lock Cylinder** in the proper section of Group 8D - Ignition System for complete service information for the ignition switch.

- Refer to **Park/Neutral Position Switch** in the proper section of Group 21 - Transmission for complete service information for the park/neutral position switch.

- Refer to the proper section of **Group 8W - Wiring Diagrams** for complete service information and circuit diagrams for the starting system wiring components.

Group 8A covers the Battery, Group 8B covers the Starting Systems, and Group 8C covers the Charging System. We have separated these systems to make it easier to locate the information you are seeking within this Service Manual. However, when attempting to diagnose any of these systems, it is important that you keep their interdependency in mind.

The battery, starting, and charging systems in the vehicle operate with one another, and must be tested as a complete system. In order for the vehicle to start and charge properly, all of the components that are used in these systems must perform within specifications.

The diagnostic procedures used in each of these groups include the most basic conventional diagnostic methods, to the more sophisticated On-Board Diagnostics (OBD) built into the Powertrain Control Module (PCM). Use of an induction-type milliamperere ammeter, volt/ohmmeter, battery charger, carbon pile rheostat (load tester), and 12-volt test lamp may be required.

All OBD-sensed systems are monitored by the PCM. Each monitored circuit is assigned a Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC). The PCM will store a DTC in electronic memory for any failure it detects. Refer to **On-Board Diagnostic Test For Charging System** in the Diagnosis and Testing section of Group 8C - Charging System for more information.

## STARTING (Continued)

**OPERATION**

The starting system components form two separate circuits. A high-amperage feed circuit that feeds the starter motor between 150 and 350 amperes, and a low-amperage control circuit that operates on less than 20 amperes. The high-amperage feed circuit components include the battery, the battery cables, the contact disc portion of the starter solenoid, and the starter motor. The low-amperage control circuit components include the ignition switch, the park/neutral position switch, the starter relay, the electromagnetic windings of the starter solenoid, and the connecting wire harness components.

Battery voltage is supplied through the low-amperage control circuit to the coil battery terminal of the starter relay when the ignition switch is turned to the momentary Start position. The park/neutral position switch is installed in series between the starter relay coil ground terminal and ground. This normally open switch prevents the starter relay from being energized and the starter motor from operating unless the automatic transmission gear selector is in the Neutral or Park positions.

When the starter relay coil is energized, the normally open relay contacts close. The relay contacts connect the relay common feed terminal to the relay normally open terminal. The closed relay contacts energize the starter solenoid coil windings.

The energized solenoid pull-in coil pulls in the solenoid plunger. The solenoid plunger pulls the shift lever in the starter motor. This engages the starter overrunning clutch and pinion gear with the starter ring gear on the automatic transmission torque converter drive plate.

As the solenoid plunger reaches the end of its travel, the solenoid contact disc completes the high-amperage starter feed circuit and energizes the solenoid plunger hold-in coil. Current now flows between the solenoid battery terminal and the starter motor, energizing the starter.

Once the engine starts, the overrunning clutch protects the starter motor from damage by allowing the starter pinion gear to spin faster than the pinion

shaft. When the driver releases the ignition switch to the On position, the starter relay coil is de-energized. This causes the relay contacts to open. When the relay contacts open, the starter solenoid plunger hold-in coil is de-energized.

When the solenoid plunger hold-in coil is de-energized, the solenoid plunger return spring returns the plunger to its relaxed position. This causes the contact disc to open the starter feed circuit, and the shift lever to disengage the overrunning clutch and pinion gear from the starter ring gear.

**DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - STARTING SYSTEM**

The battery, starting, and charging systems operate with one another, and must be tested as a complete system. In order for the vehicle to start and charge properly, all of the components involved in these systems must perform within specifications.

Group 8A covers the Battery, Group 8B covers the Starting Systems, and Group 8C covers the Charging System. We have separated these systems to make it easier to locate the information you are seeking within this Service Manual. However, when attempting to diagnose any of these systems, it is important that you keep their interdependency in mind.

The diagnostic procedures used in these groups include the most basic conventional diagnostic methods, to the more sophisticated On-Board Diagnostics (OBD) built into the Powertrain Control Module (PCM). Use of an induction-type milliampere ammeter, volt/ohmmeter, battery charger, carbon pile rheostat (load tester), and 12-volt test lamp may be required.

All OBD-sensed systems are monitored by the PCM. Each monitored circuit is assigned a Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC). The PCM will store a DTC in electronic memory for any failure it detects. Refer to **On-Board Diagnostic Test For Charging System** in the Diagnosis and Testing section of Group 8C - Charging System for more information.

## STARTING (Continued)

Starting System Diagnosis		
CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSE	CORRECTION
STARTER FAILS TO OPERATE.	1. Battery discharged or faulty.	1. Refer to Battery in the Diagnosis and Testing section of Group 8A - Battery. Charge or replace the battery, if required.
	2. Starting circuit wiring faulty.	2. Refer to Starting System in Group 8W - Wiring Diagrams. Test and repair the starter feed and/or control circuits, if required.
	3. Starter relay faulty.	3. Refer to Starter Relay in the Diagnosis and Testing section of this group. Replace the starter relay, if required.
	4. Ignition switch faulty.	4. Refer to Ignition Switch and Key Lock Cylinder in the Diagnosis and Testing section of Group 8D - Ignition System. Replace the ignition switch, if required.
	5. Park/Neutral position switch faulty or misadjusted.	5. Refer to Park/Neutral Position Switch in the Diagnosis and Testing section of Group 21 - Transmission. Replace the park/neutral position switch, if required.
	6. Starter solenoid faulty.	6. Refer to Starter Motor in the Diagnosis and Testing section of this group. Replace the starter motor assembly, if required.
	7. Starter motor faulty.	7. If all other starting system components and circuits test OK, replace the starter motor assembly.
STARTER ENGAGES, FAILS TO TURN ENGINE.	1. Battery discharged or faulty.	1. Refer to Battery in the Diagnosis and Testing section of Group 8A - Battery. Charge or replace the battery, if required.
	2. Starting circuit wiring faulty.	2. Refer to Starting System in Group 8W - Wiring Diagrams. Test and repair the starter feed and/or control circuits, if required.
	3. Starter motor faulty.	3. If all other starting system components and circuits test OK, replace the starter motor assembly.
	4. Engine seized.	4. Refer to Engine Diagnosis in the Diagnosis and Testing section of Group 9 - Engine.
STARTER ENGAGES, SPINS OUT BEFORE ENGINE STARTS.	1. Starter ring gear faulty.	1. Refer to Starter Motor in the Removal and Installation section of this group. Remove the starter motor to inspect the starter ring gear. Replace the starter ring gear, if required.
	2. Starter motor faulty.	2. If all other starting system components and circuits test OK, replace the starter motor assembly.
STARTER DOES NOT DISENGAGE.	1. Starter motor improperly installed.	1. Refer to Starter Motor in the Removal and Installation section of this group. Tighten the starter mounting hardware to the correct tightness specifications.
	2. Starter relay faulty.	2. Refer to Starter Relay in the Diagnosis and Testing section of this group. Replace the starter relay, if required.
	3. Ignition switch faulty.	3. Refer to Ignition Switch and Key Lock Cylinder in the Diagnosis and Testing section of Group 8D - Ignition System. Replace the ignition switch, if required.
	4. Starter motor faulty.	4. If all other starting system components and circuits test OK, replace the starter motor assembly.

## STARTING (Continued)

## INSPECTION

For complete circuit diagrams, refer to **Starting System** in the Contents of Group 8W - Wiring Diagrams. Before removing any unit from the starting system for repair or diagnosis, perform the following inspections:

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIR-BAGS, REFER TO GROUP 8M - PASSIVE RESTRAINT SYSTEMS BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIR-BAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

- **Battery** - Visually inspect the battery for indications of physical damage and loose or corroded cable connections. Determine the state-of-charge and cranking capacity of the battery. Charge or replace the battery, if required. Refer to **Battery** in the proper section of Group 8A - Battery for complete service information for the battery.

- **Ignition Switch** - Visually inspect the ignition switch for indications of physical damage and loose or corroded wire harness connections. Refer to **Ignition Switch and Key Lock Cylinder** in the proper section of Group 8D - Ignition System for complete service information for the ignition switch.

- **Park/Neutral Position Switch** - Visually inspect the park/neutral position switch for indications of physical damage and loose or corroded wire harness connections. Refer to **Park/Neutral Position Switch** in the proper section of Group 21 - Transmission for complete service information for the park/neutral position switch.

- **Starter Relay** - Visually inspect the starter relay for indications of physical damage and loose or corroded wire harness connections.

- **Starter Motor** - Visually inspect the starter motor for indications of physical damage and loose or corroded wire harness connections.

- **Starter Solenoid** - Visually inspect the starter solenoid for indications of physical damage and loose or corroded wire harness connections.

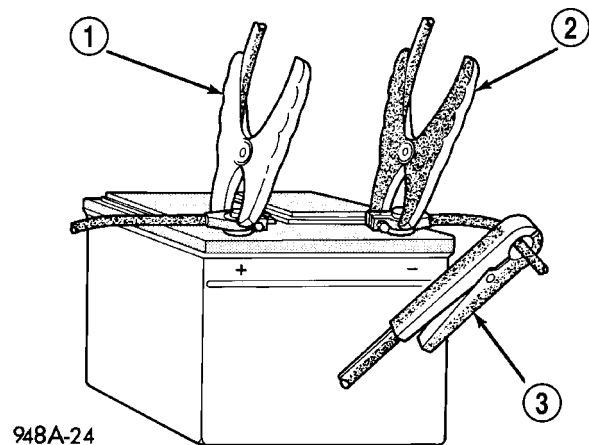
- **Wiring** - Visually inspect the wire harnesses for damage. Repair or replace any faulty wiring, as required. Refer to the proper section of **Group 8W - Wiring Diagrams** for complete service information and circuit diagrams for the starting system wiring components.

## TESTING

## COLD CRANKING TEST

For complete circuit diagrams, refer to **Starting System** in the Contents of Group 8W - Wiring Diagrams. The battery must be fully-charged and load-tested before proceeding. Refer to **Battery** in the Diagnosis and Testing section of Group 8A - Battery for the procedures.

(1) Connect a suitable volt-ampere tester to the battery terminals (Fig. 1). See the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the volt-ampere tester being used.



**Fig. 1 Volts-Amps Tester Connections - Typical**

- 1 - POSITIVE CLAMP
- 2 - NEGATIVE CLAMP
- 3 - INDUCTION AMMETER CLAMP

(2) Fully engage the parking brake.

(3) Place the automatic transmission gearshift selector lever in the Park position.

(4) Verify that all lamps and accessories are turned off.

(5) To prevent the engine from starting, remove the Automatic ShutDown (ASD) relay. The ASD relay is located in the Power Distribution Center (PDC), in the engine compartment. Refer to the fuse and relay layout label affixed to the underside of the PDC cover for ASD relay identification and location.

(6) Rotate and hold the ignition switch in the Start position. Note the cranking voltage and current (amperage) draw readings shown on the volt-ampere tester.

(a) If the voltage reads below 9.6 volts, refer to **Starter Motor** in the Diagnosis and Testing section of this group. If the starter motor is OK, refer to **Engine Diagnosis** in the Diagnosis and Testing section of Group 9 - Engine for further testing of the engine. If the starter motor is not OK, replace the faulty starter motor.



## STARTING (Continued)

(b) If the voltage reads above 9.6 volts and the current (amperage) draw reads below specifications, refer to **Feed Circuit Test** in this section.

(c) If the voltage reads 12.5 volts or greater and the starter motor does not turn, refer to **Control Circuit Testing** in this section.

(d) If the voltage reads 12.5 volts or greater and the starter motor turns very slowly, refer to **Feed Circuit Test** in this section.

**NOTE:** A cold engine will increase the starter current (amperage) draw reading, and reduce the battery voltage reading.

## FEED CIRCUIT TEST

The starter feed circuit test (voltage drop method) will determine if there is excessive resistance in the high-amperage feed circuit. For complete circuit diagrams, refer to **Starting System** in the Contents of Group 8W - Wiring Diagrams.

When performing these tests, it is important to remember that the voltage drop is giving an indication of the resistance between the two points at which the voltmeter probes are attached.

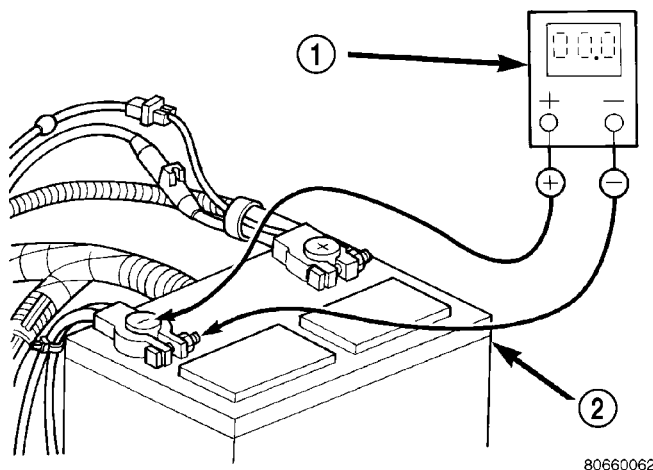
**Example:** When testing the resistance of the battery positive cable, touch the voltmeter leads to the battery positive cable clamp and the cable connector at the starter solenoid. If you probe the battery positive terminal post and the cable connector at the starter solenoid, you are reading the combined voltage drop in the battery positive cable clamp-to-terminal post connection and the battery positive cable.

The following operation will require a voltmeter accurate to 1/10 (0.10) volt. Before performing the tests, be certain that the following procedures are accomplished:

- Battery is fully-charged and load-tested. Refer to **Battery** in the Diagnosis and Testing section of Group 8A - Battery for the procedures.
- Fully engage the parking brake.
- Place the automatic transmission gearshift selector lever in the Park position.
- Verify that all lamps and accessories are turned off.
- To prevent the engine from starting, remove the Automatic ShutDown (ASD) relay. The ASD relay is located in the Power Distribution Center (PDC), in the engine compartment. Refer to the fuse and relay layout label affixed to the underside of the PDC cover for ASD relay identification and location.

(1) Connect the positive lead of the voltmeter to the battery negative terminal post. Connect the negative lead of the voltmeter to the battery negative cable clamp (Fig. 2). Rotate and hold the ignition switch in the Start position. Observe the voltmeter. If

voltage is detected, correct the poor contact between the cable clamp and the terminal post.

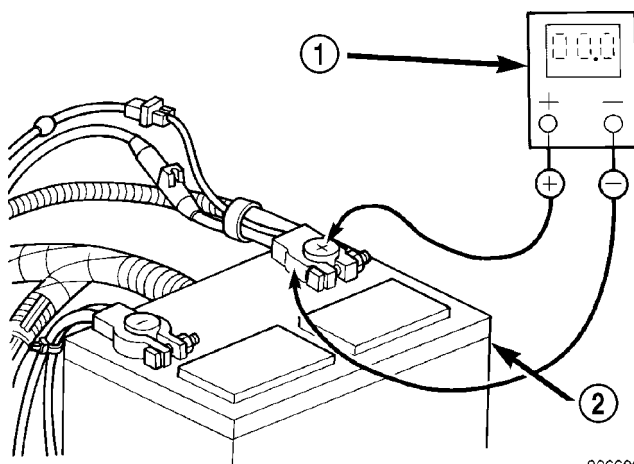


80660062

**Fig. 2 Test Battery Negative Connection Resistance - Typical**

1 - VOLTMETER  
2 - BATTERY

(2) Connect the positive lead of the voltmeter to the battery positive terminal post. Connect the negative lead of the voltmeter to the battery positive cable clamp (Fig. 3). Rotate and hold the ignition switch in the Start position. Observe the voltmeter. If voltage is detected, correct the poor contact between the cable clamp and the terminal post.



80660061

**Fig. 3 Test Battery Positive Connection Resistance - Typical**

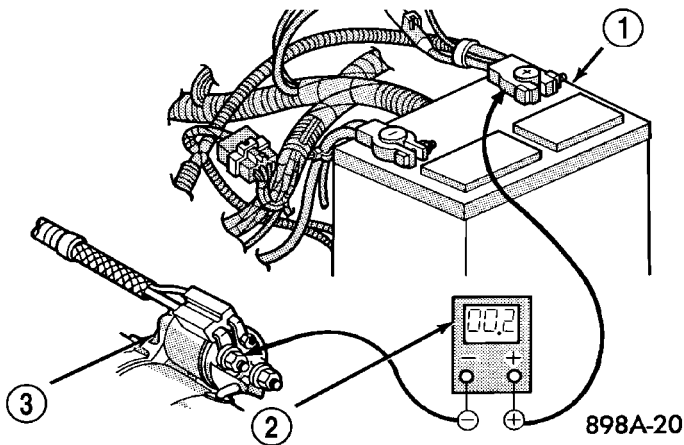
1 - VOLTMETER  
2 - BATTERY

(3) Connect the voltmeter to measure between the battery positive terminal post and the starter solenoid battery terminal stud (Fig. 4). Rotate and hold the ignition switch in the Start position. Observe the voltmeter. If the reading is above 0.2 volt, clean and tighten the battery cable connection at the solenoid.



## STARTING (Continued)

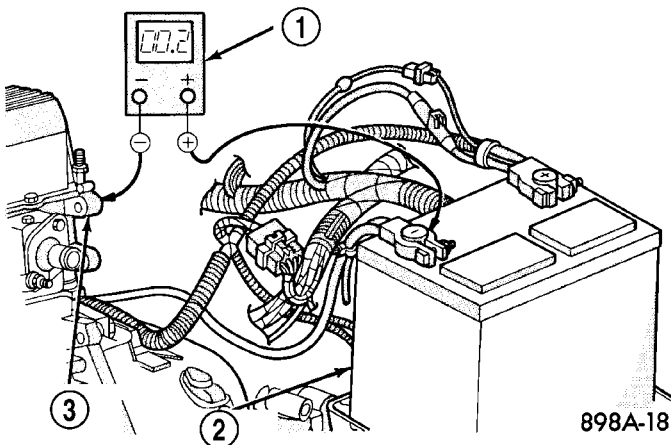
Repeat the test. If the reading is still above 0.2 volt, replace the faulty battery positive cable.



**Fig. 4 Test Battery Positive Cable Resistance - Typical**

- 1 - BATTERY  
2 - VOLTMETER  
3 - STARTER MOTOR

(4) Connect the voltmeter to measure between the battery negative terminal post and a good clean ground on the engine block (Fig. 5). Rotate and hold the ignition switch in the Start position. Observe the voltmeter. If the reading is above 0.2 volt, clean and tighten the battery negative cable attachment on the engine block. Repeat the test. If the reading is still above 0.2 volt, replace the faulty battery negative cable.

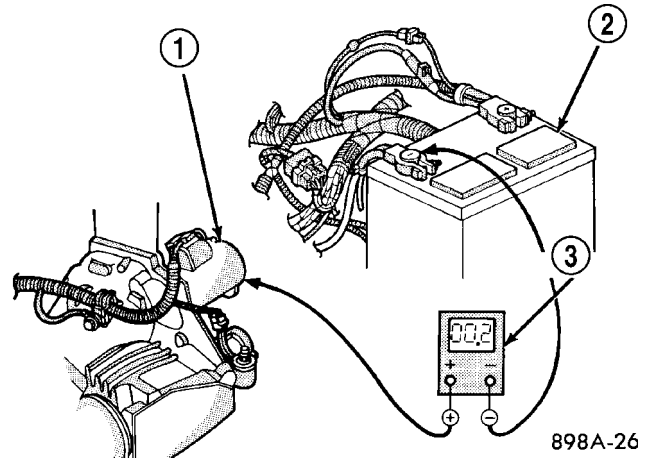


**Fig. 5 Test Ground Circuit**

- 1 - VOLTMETER  
2 - BATTERY  
3 - ENGINE GROUND

(5) Connect the positive lead of the voltmeter to the starter housing. Connect the negative lead of the

voltmeter to the battery negative terminal post (Fig. 6). Rotate and hold the ignition switch in the Start position. Observe the voltmeter. If the reading is above 0.2 volt, correct the poor starter to engine block ground contact.



**Fig. 6 Test Starter Ground - Typical**

- 1 - STARTER MOTOR  
2 - BATTERY  
3 - VOLTMETER

If the resistance tests detect no feed circuit problems, refer to **Starter Motor** in the Diagnosis and Testing section of this group.

## CONTROL CIRCUIT TESTING

The starter control circuit components should be tested in the order in which they are listed, as follows:

- **Starter Relay** - Refer to **Starter Relay** in the Diagnosis and Testing section of this group for the procedures.
- **Starter Solenoid** - Refer to **Starter Motor** in the Diagnosis and Testing section of this group for the procedures.
- **Ignition Switch** - Refer to **Ignition Switch and Key Lock Cylinder** in the Diagnosis and Testing section of Group 8D - Ignition System for the procedures.
- **Park/Neutral Position Switch** - Refer to **Park/Neutral Position Switch** in the Diagnosis and Testing section of Group 21 - Transmission for the procedures.
- **Wire harnesses and connections** - Refer to **Starting System** in the Contents of Group 8W - Wiring Diagrams for complete circuit diagrams.

## STARTING (Continued)

## SPECIFICATIONS

## TORQUE - STARTER

DESCRIPTION	N-m	Ft. Lbs.	In. Lbs.
Stater Motor (B+) Terminal (Diesel)	27	20	
Stater Motor (B+) Terminal (Except Diesel)	11.3		100
Starter Motor Retaining Bolts (Diesel)	27	20	
Starter Motor Retaining Bolt (Forward Facing 4.0L)	41	30	
Starter Motor Retaining Bolt (Forward Facing 4.7L)	54	40	
Starter Motor Retaining Bolt (Rearward Facing 4.7L)	54	40	

## STARTER MOTOR - GAS POWERED

Starter Motor and Solenoid	
Manufacturer	Mitsubishi
Engine Application	4.0L/4.7L
Power Rating	1.4 Kilowatt (1.9 Horsepower)
Voltage	12 Volts
Number of Fields	4
Number of Poles	4
Number of Brushes	4
Drive Type	Planetary Gear Reduction
Free Running Test Voltage	11.2 Volts
Free Running Test Maximum Amperage Draw	90 Amperes
Free Running Test Minimum Speed	2400 rpm
Solenoid Closing Maximum Voltage Required	7.8 Volts
*Cranking Amperage Draw Test	160 Amperes
*Test at operating temperature. Cold engine, tight (new) engine, or heavy oil will increase starter amperage draw.	

## STARTER MOTOR

## DESCRIPTION

The starter motors used for both the 4.0L and the 4.7L engines available in this model are very similar, but are not interchangeable. Both starter motors are mounted with two screws to the automatic transmission torque converter housing and are located on the right side of the engine.

Each of these starter motors incorporates several of the same features to create a reliable, efficient,

compact, lightweight and powerful unit. The electric motors of both starters feature four electromagnetic field coils wound around four pole shoes, and four brushes contact the motor commutator. Both starter motors are rated at 1.4 kilowatts (about 1.9 horsepower) output at 12 volts.

Both of these starter motors are serviced only as a unit with their starter solenoids, and cannot be repaired. If either component is faulty or damaged, the entire starter motor and starter solenoid unit must be replaced.

## STARTER MOTOR (Continued)

## OPERATION

These starter motors are equipped with a planetary gear reduction (intermediate transmission) system. The planetary gear reduction system consists of a gear that is integral to the output end of the electric motor armature shaft that is in continual engagement with a larger gear that is splined to the input end of the starter pinion gear shaft. This feature makes it possible to reduce the dimensions of the starter. At the same time, it allows higher armature rotational speed and delivers increased torque through the starter pinion gear to the starter ring gear.

The starter motors for both engines are activated by an integral heavy duty starter solenoid switch mounted to the overrunning clutch housing. This electromechanical switch connects and disconnects the feed of battery voltage to the starter motor and actuates a shift fork that engages and disengages the starter pinion gear with the starter ring gear.

Both starter motors use an overrunning clutch and starter pinion gear unit to engage and drive a starter ring gear that is integral to the torque converter drive plate mounted on the rear crankshaft flange.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - STARTER MOTOR

Correct starter motor operation can be confirmed by performing the following free running bench test. This test can only be performed with the starter motor removed from the vehicle. Refer to **Starting System** in the Specifications section of this group for the starter motor specifications.

(1) Remove the starter motor from the vehicle. Refer to **Starter Motor** in the Removal and Installation section of this group for the procedures.

(2) Mount the starter motor securely in a soft-jawed bench vise. The vise jaws should be clamped on the mounting flange of the starter motor. Never clamp on the starter motor by the field frame.

(3) Connect a suitable volt-ampere tester and a 12-volt battery to the starter motor in series, and set the ammeter to the 100 ampere scale. See the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the volt-ampere tester being used.

(4) Install a jumper wire from the solenoid terminal to the solenoid battery terminal. The starter motor should operate. If the starter motor fails to operate, replace the faulty starter motor assembly.

(5) Adjust the carbon pile load of the tester to obtain the free running test voltage. Refer to **Starting System** in the Specifications section of this group for the starter motor free running test voltage specifications.

(6) Note the reading on the ammeter and compare this reading to the free running test maximum amperage draw. Refer to **Starting System** in the

Specifications section of this group for the starter motor free running test maximum amperage draw specifications.

(7) If the ammeter reading exceeds the maximum amperage draw specification, replace the faulty starter motor assembly.

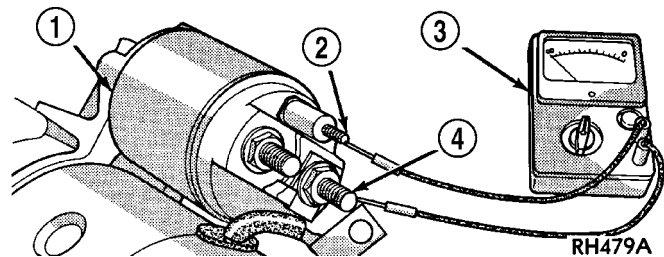
## STARTER SOLENOID

This test can only be performed with the starter motor removed from the vehicle.

(1) Remove the starter motor from the vehicle. Refer to **Starter Motor** in the Removal and Installation section of this group for the procedures.

(2) Disconnect the wire from the solenoid field coil terminal.

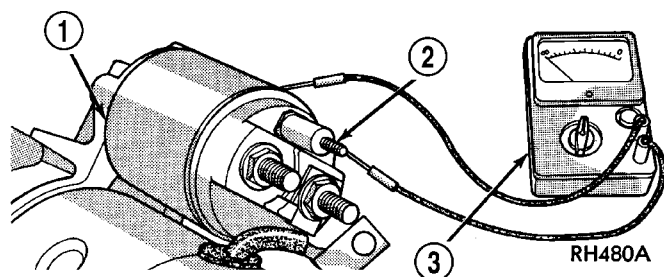
(3) Check for continuity between the solenoid terminal and the solenoid field coil terminal with a continuity tester (Fig. 7). There should be continuity. If OK, go to Step 4. If not OK, replace the faulty starter motor assembly.



**Fig. 7 Continuity Test Between Solenoid Terminal and Field Coil Terminal - Typical**

- 1 - SOLENOID
- 2 - SOLENOID TERMINAL
- 3 - OHMMETER
- 4 - FIELD COIL TERMINAL

(4) Check for continuity between the solenoid terminal and the solenoid case (Fig. 8). There should be continuity. If not OK, replace the faulty starter motor assembly.



**Fig. 8 Continuity Test Between Solenoid Terminal**

- 1 - SOLENOID
- 2 - SOLENOID TERMINAL
- 3 - OHMMETER

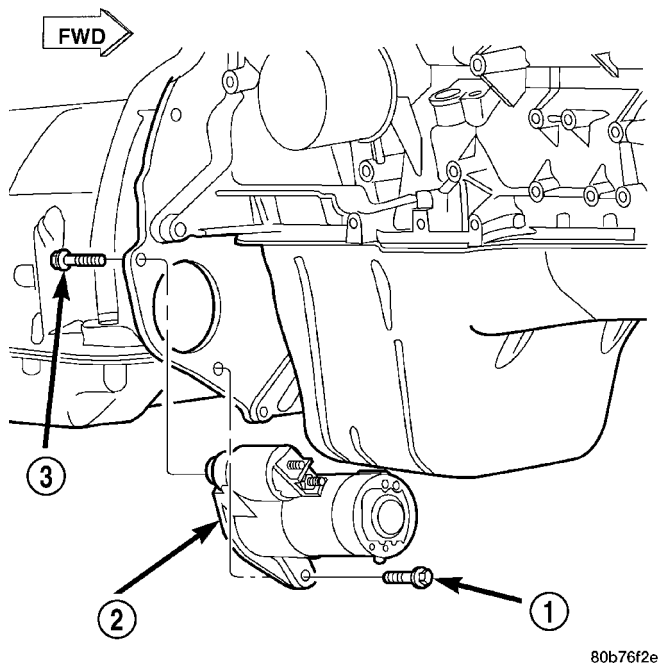
## STARTER MOTOR (Continued)

## REMOVAL

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Raise and support the vehicle.

(3) Remove the lower (forward facing) mounting screw securing the starter motor to the automatic transmission torque converter housing (Fig. 9) or (Fig. 10).



80b76f2e

**Fig. 9 Starter Motor Remove/Install - 4.0L Engine**

- 1 - SCREW
- 2 - STARTER MOTOR
- 3 - SCREW

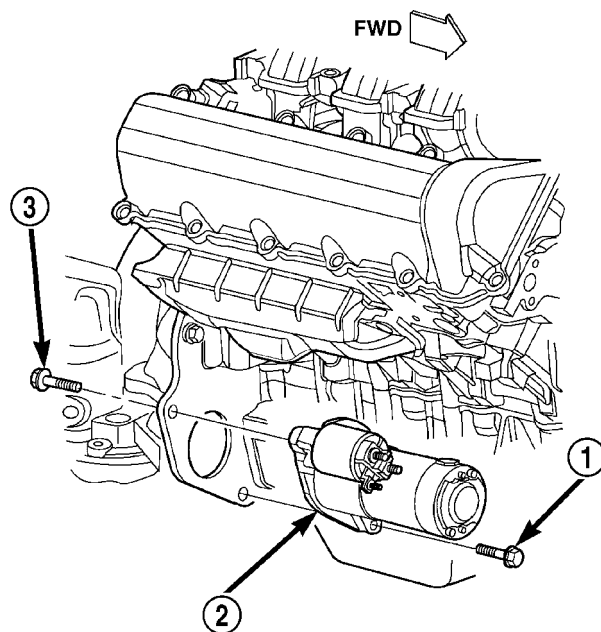
(4) While supporting the starter motor with one hand, use the other hand to remove the upper (rear facing) mounting screw securing the starter motor to the automatic transmission torque converter housing.

(5) Lower the starter motor from the front of the automatic transmission torque converter housing far enough to access and remove the nut that secures the battery cable eyelet to the solenoid battery terminal (Fig. 11) or (Fig. 12). Always support the starter motor during this process, do not let the starter motor hang from the wire harness.

(6) Remove the battery cable eyelet from the solenoid battery terminal. Always support the starter motor during this process, do not let the starter motor hang from the wire harness.

(7) Disconnect the solenoid terminal wire harness connector from the connector receptacle on the starter solenoid. Always support the starter motor during this process, do not let the starter motor hang from the wire harness.

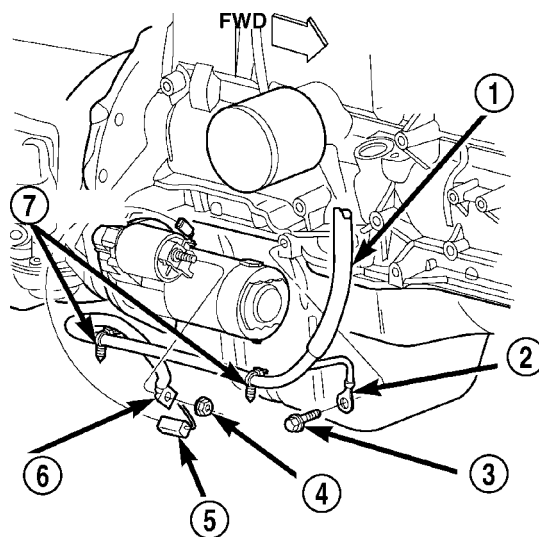
(8) Remove the starter motor from the engine compartment.



80b76f2f

**Fig. 10 Starter Motor Remove/Install - 4.7L Engine**

- 1 - SCREW
- 2 - STARTER MOTOR
- 3 - SCREW



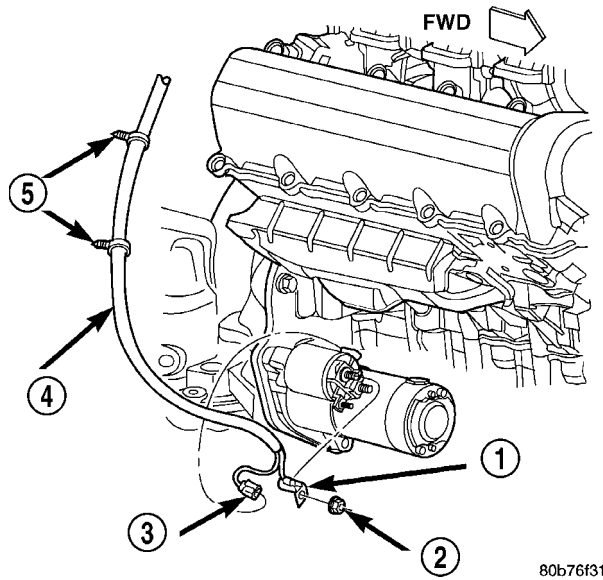
80b76f30

**Fig. 11 Starter Wire Harness Remove/Install - 4.0L Engine**

- 1 - BATTERY, STARTER AND GENERATOR WIRE HARNESS
- 2 - GROUND EYELET
- 3 - SCREW
- 4 - NUT
- 5 - SOLENOID TERMINAL CONNECTOR
- 6 - SOLENOID BATTERY TERMINAL EYELET
- 7 - RETAINERS



## STARTER MOTOR (Continued)



**Fig. 12 Starter Wire Harness Remove/Install - 4.7L Engine**

- 1 - SOLENOID BATTERY TERMINAL EYELET
- 2 - NUT
- 3 - SOLENOID TERMINAL CONNECTOR
- 4 - BATTERY STARTER AND GENERATOR WIRE HARNESS
- 5 - RETAINERS

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Position the starter motor in the engine compartment.
- (2) Reconnect the solenoid terminal wire harness connector to the connector receptacle on the starter solenoid. Always support the starter motor during this process, do not let the starter motor hang from the wire harness.
- (3) Install the battery cable eyelet onto the solenoid battery terminal. Always support the starter motor during this process, do not let the starter motor hang from the wire harness.
- (4) Install and tighten the nut that secures the battery cable eyelet to the solenoid battery terminal. Tighten the nut to 11.3 N·m (100 in. lbs.). Always support the starter motor during this process, do not let the starter motor hang from the wire harness.
- (5) Position the starter motor to the front of the automatic transmission torque converter housing and loosely install both the upper and lower mounting screws.
- (6) Tighten the lower (forward facing) starter motor mounting screw. On 4.0L engines, tighten the screw to 41 N·m (30 ft. lbs.). On 4.7L engines, tighten the screw to 54 N·m (40 ft. lbs.).
- (7) Tighten the upper (rearward facing) starter motor mounting screw. Tighten the screw to 54 N·m (40 ft. lbs.).
- (8) Lower the vehicle.
- (9) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

## STARTER MOTOR RELAY

### DESCRIPTION

The starter relay is an electromechanical device that switches battery current to the pull-in coil of the starter solenoid when the ignition switch is turned to the Start position. The starter relay is located in the Power Distribution Center (PDC), in the engine compartment. See the fuse and relay layout label affixed to the inside surface of the PDC cover for starter relay identification and location.

The starter relay is a International Standards Organization (ISO) micro-relay. Relays conforming to the ISO specifications have common physical dimensions, current capacities, terminal patterns, and terminal functions. The ISO micro-relay terminal functions are the same as a conventional ISO relay. However, the ISO micro-relay terminal pattern (or footprint) is different, the current capacity is lower, and the physical dimensions are smaller than those of the conventional ISO relay.

The starter relay cannot be repaired or adjusted and, if faulty or damaged, it must be replaced.

### OPERATION

The ISO relay consists of an electromagnetic coil, a resistor or diode, and three (two fixed and one movable) electrical contacts. The movable (common feed) relay contact is held against one of the fixed contacts (normally closed) by spring pressure. When the electromagnetic coil is energized, it draws the movable contact away from the normally closed fixed contact, and holds it against the other (normally open) fixed contact.

When the electromagnetic coil is de-energized, spring pressure returns the movable contact to the normally closed position. The resistor or diode is connected in parallel with the electromagnetic coil in the relay, and helps to dissipate voltage spikes that are produced when the coil is de-energized.

### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - STARTER RELAY

The starter relay (Fig. 13) is located in the Power Distribution Center (PDC), in the engine compartment. Refer to the fuse and relay layout label affixed to the underside of the PDC cover for starter relay identification and location. For complete circuit diagrams, refer to **Starting System** in the Contents of Group 8W - Wiring Diagrams.

(1) Remove the starter relay from the PDC. Refer to **Starter Relay** in the Removal and Installation section of this group for the procedures.

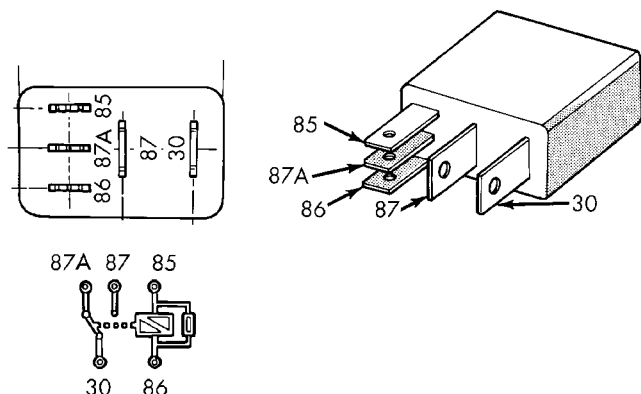
(2) A relay in the de-energized position should have continuity between terminals 87A and 30, and no continuity between terminals 87 and 30. If OK, go to Step 3. If not OK, replace the faulty relay.



## STARTER MOTOR RELAY (Continued)

(3) Resistance between terminals 85 and 86 (electromagnet) should be  $75 \pm 5$  ohms. If OK, go to Step 4. If not OK, replace the faulty relay.

(4) Connect a battery to terminals 85 and 86. There should now be continuity between terminals 30 and 87, and no continuity between terminals 87A and 30. If OK, perform the Relay Circuit Test that follows. If not OK, replace the faulty relay.



**Fig. 13 Starter Relay**

30 - COMMON FEED  
85 - COIL GROUND  
86 - COIL BATTERY  
87 - NORMALLY OPEN  
87A - NORMALLY CLOSED

## RELAY CIRCUIT TEST

(1) The relay common feed terminal cavity (30) is connected to battery voltage and should be hot at all times. If OK, go to Step 2. If not OK, repair the open circuit to the fuse in the PDC as required.

(2) The relay normally closed terminal (87A) is connected to terminal 30 in the de-energized position, but is not used for this application. Go to Step 3.

(3) The relay normally open terminal (87) is connected to the common feed terminal (30) in the energized position. This terminal supplies battery voltage to the starter solenoid field coils. There should be continuity between the cavity for relay terminal 87 and the starter solenoid terminal at all times. If OK, go to Step 4. If not OK, repair the open circuit to the starter solenoid as required.

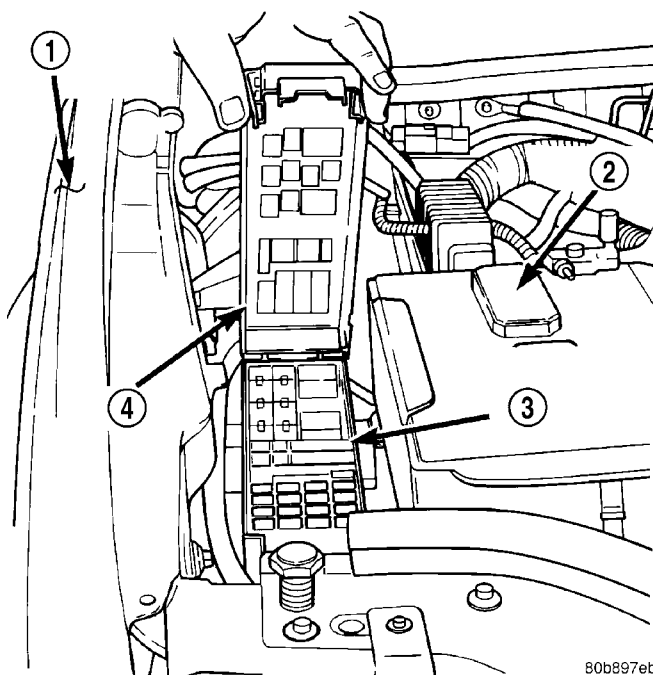
(4) The coil battery terminal (86) is connected to the electromagnet in the relay. It is energized when the ignition switch is held in the Start position. Check for battery voltage at the cavity for relay terminal 86 with the ignition switch in the Start position, and no voltage when the ignition switch is released to the On position. If OK, go to Step 5. If not OK, check for an open or short circuit to the ignition switch and repair, if required. If the circuit to the ignition switch is OK, refer to **Ignition Switch and Key Lock Cylinder** in the Diagnosis and Testing section of Group 8D - Ignition System for testing of the ignition switch.

(5) The coil ground terminal (85) is connected to the electromagnet in the relay. It is grounded through the park/neutral position switch only when the gearshift selector lever is in the Park or Neutral positions. Check for continuity to ground at the cavity for relay terminal 85. If not OK, check for an open or short circuit to the park/neutral position switch and repair, if required. If the circuit to the park/neutral position switch is OK, refer to **Park/Neutral Position Switch** in the Diagnosis and Testing section of Group 21 - Transmission for testing of the park/neutral position switch.

## REMOVAL

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Remove the cover from the Power Distribution Center (PDC) (Fig. 14).



**Fig. 14 Power Distribution Center**

1 - RIGHT FENDER  
2 - BATTERY  
3 - POWER DISTRIBUTION CENTER  
4 - COVER

(3) See the fuse and relay layout label affixed to the underside of the PDC cover for starter relay identification and location.

(4) Remove the starter relay from the PDC.

## INSTALLATION

(1) See the fuse and relay layout label affixed to the underside of the PDC cover for the proper starter relay location.

(2) Position the starter relay in the proper receptacle in the PDC.

## STARTER MOTOR RELAY (Continued)

(3) Align the starter relay terminals with the terminal cavities in the PDC receptacle.

(4) Push down firmly on the starter relay until the terminals are fully seated in the terminal cavities in the PDC receptacle.

(5) Install the cover onto the PDC.

(6) Reconnect the battery negative cable.



HEATED SYSTEMS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
HEATED GLASS .....	1	HEATED SEAT SYSTEM .....	9
HEATED MIRRORS .....	8		

HEATED GLASS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>HEATED GLASS</b>		OPERATION .....	5
DESCRIPTION - REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER ...	1	DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - REAR WINDOW	
OPERATION - REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER ....	2	DEFOGGER RELAY .....	5
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - REAR WINDOW		REMOVAL .....	6
DEFOGGER SYSTEM .....	2	INSTALLATION .....	6
<b>REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER GRID</b>		<b>REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER SWITCH</b>	
DESCRIPTION .....	3	DESCRIPTION .....	6
OPERATION .....	3	OPERATION .....	7
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - REAR WINDOW		DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - REAR WINDOW	
DEFOGGER GRID .....	3	DEFOGGER SWITCH .....	7
STANDARD PROCEDURE - REAR GLASS		REMOVAL .....	7
HEATING GRID REPAIR .....	4		
<b>REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER RELAY</b>			
DESCRIPTION .....	5		

HEATED GLASS

DESCRIPTION - REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER

An electrically heated rear window defogger is standard factory-installed equipment on this model. Electrically heated outside rear view mirrors are available factory-installed optional equipment. When the rear window defogger system is turned on, electric heater grids on the liftgate flip-up glass and behind both outside rear view mirror glasses are energized. These electric heater grids produce heat to help clear the rear window glass and the outside rear view mirrors of ice, snow, or fog. The rear window defogger system control circuit uses ignition switched battery current, so the system will only operate when the ignition switch is in the On position.

This group covers the following components of the rear window defogger system:

- Rear glass heating grid
- Rear window defogger relay

- Rear window defogger switch.

Certain functions and features of the rear window defogger system rely upon resources shared with other electronic modules in the vehicle over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network. The PCI data bus network allows the sharing of sensor information. This helps to reduce wire harness complexity, internal controller hardware, and component sensor current loads. At the same time, this system provides increased reliability, enhanced diagnostics, and allows the addition of many new feature capabilities. For diagnosis of these electronic modules or of the PCI data bus network, use a DRBIII® scan tool and (Refer to Appropriate Diagnostic Information).

The other electronic modules that may affect proper system operation are:

- **Body Control Module (BCM)** - Refer to Electronic Control Modules for more information.
- **Driver Door Module (DDM)** - Refer to Electronic Control Modules for more information.

## HEATED GLASS (Continued)

• **Passenger Door Module (PDM)** - Refer to Electronic Control Modules for more information.

**OPERATION - REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER**

The rear window defogger system is controlled by a momentary switch that is integral to the a/c heater control located in the center stack area of the instrument panel. A Light-Emitting Diode (LED) in the switch button will light to indicate when the rear window defogger system is turned on. The BCM, which contains the rear window defogger system timer and control logic, monitors the status of the defogger switch through a hard-wired input. The BCM then sends control outputs through a hard wired circuit to energize or de-energize the defogger relay.

The electrically heated outside rear view mirror heating grids are also controlled by the rear window defogger switch. When the BCM receives an input from the switch, it sends a defogger switch status message to the DDM and the PDM over the PCI data bus. The DDM and PDM respond to the defogger switch status messages by energizing or de-energizing the battery current feed to their respective outside rear view mirror heating grids.

The rear window defogger system will be automatically turned off after a programmed time interval of about ten minutes. After the initial time interval has expired, if the defogger switch is turned on again during the same ignition cycle, the defogger system will automatically turn off after about five minutes. The defogger system will automatically shut off if the ignition switch is turned to the Off position, or it can be turned off manually by depressing the rear window defogger switch again.

See the owner's manual in the vehicle glove box for more information on the features, use and operation of the rear window defogger system.

**DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER SYSTEM**

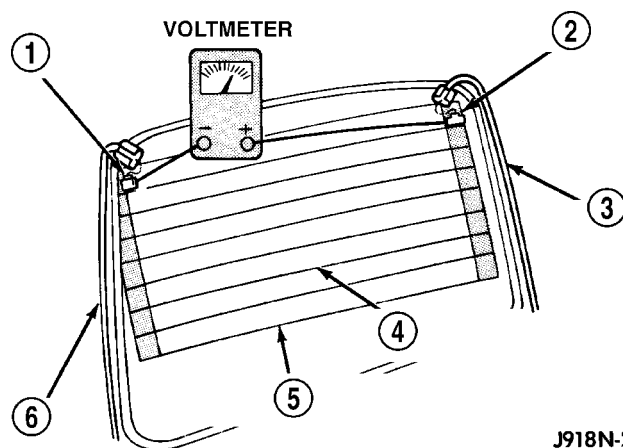
**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN AN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

For complete circuit diagrams, (Refer to Appropriate Wiring Information). The operation of the electrically heated rear window defogger system can be confirmed in one of the following manners:

1. Turn the ignition switch to the On position. While monitoring the instrument panel voltmeter, depress the rear window defogger switch to the On position. When the rear window defogger switch is turned On, a distinct voltmeter needle deflection should be noted.

2. Turn the ignition switch to the On position. Depress the rear window defogger switch to the On position. The rear window defogger operation can be checked by feeling the rear window or outside rear view mirror glass. A distinct difference in temperature between the grid lines and the adjacent clear glass or the mirror glass can be detected within three to four minutes of operation.

3. Using a 12-volt DC voltmeter, contact the rear glass heating grid terminal A (right side) with the negative lead, and terminal B (left side) with the positive lead (Fig. 1). The voltmeter should read battery voltage.



J918N-2

**Fig. 1 REAR WINDOW GLASS GRID TEST**

- 1 - TERMINAL "A"
- 2 - TERMINAL "B"
- 3 - FEED WIRE
- 4 - MID-POINT "C" (TYPICAL)
- 5 - HEATED REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER GRID
- 6 - GROUND WIRE

The above checks will confirm rear window defogger system operation. Illumination of the rear window defogger switch LED indicator means that there is battery current available at the output of the rear window defogger relay, but does not confirm that battery current is reaching the rear glass heating grid lines.

If the rear window defogger system does not operate, the problem should be isolated in the following manner:

(1) Confirm that the ignition switch is in the On position.



## HEATED GLASS (Continued)

(2) Ensure that the rear glass heating grid feed and ground terminals are connected to the glass. Confirm that the ground wire has continuity to ground.

(3) Check the fused B(+) fuse in the Power Distribution Center (PDC). The fuse must be tight in its receptacles and all electrical connections must be secure.

When the above steps have been completed and the rear glass heating grid is still inoperative, one or more of the following is faulty:

- Rear window defogger switch
- Rear window defogger relay
- Body Control Module (BCM)
- Rear window grid lines (all grid lines would have to be broken or one of the feed wires disconnected for the entire system to be inoperative).

When the above steps have been completed and the heated mirror glass heating grid is still inoperative, one or more of the following is faulty:

- Body Control Module (BCM)
- Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus
- Driver Door Module (DDM) or Passenger Door Module (PDM)
- Outside rear view mirror heating grids.

If turning the rear window defogger system on produces a severe voltmeter deflection, check for a short circuit between the rear window defogger relay output and the rear glass heating grid.

## REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER GRID

### DESCRIPTION

The electrically heated rear window glass is standard equipment on this model. The liftgate flip-up glass has two electrically conductive vertical bus bars and a series of horizontal grid lines made of a silver-ceramic material, which is baked on and bonded to the inside surface of the glass. These grid lines and the bus bars comprise a parallel electrical circuit. A spade type terminal near the top of each bus bar accept the connectors from the two coiled liftgate wire harness take outs.

The grid lines and bus bars are highly resistant to abrasion. However, it is possible for an open circuit to occur in an individual grid line, resulting in no current flow through the line. The grid lines can be damaged or scraped off with sharp instruments. Care should be taken when cleaning the glass or removing foreign materials, decals, or stickers from the glass. Normal glass cleaning solvents or hot water used with rags or toweling is recommended.

A repair kit is available to repair the grid lines and bus bars, or to reinstall the heated glass terminals. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/HEATED GLASS/REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER GRID - STANDARD PROCEDURE)

### OPERATION

The rear glass heating grid is energized and de-energized by the rear window defogger relay. The Body Control Module (BCM) monitors the rear window defogger switch. When the BCM receives an input from the switch, it energizes or de-energizes the rear window defogger relay through a hard wired control output. The rear defogger relay switches fused battery current to the rear window grid lines through the bus bars. The grid lines heat the rear window glass to clear the surface of ice, snow or fog. Protection for the rear glass heating grid circuit is provided by a fuse in the Power Distribution Center (PDC).

### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER GRID

For complete circuit diagrams, (Refer to Appropriate Wiring Information). To detect breaks in the rear glass heating grid lines, the following procedure is required:

(1) Turn the ignition switch to the On position. Turn the rear window defogger system on. The rear window defogger switch LED indicator should light. If OK, go to Step 2. If not OK, (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/HEATED GLASS/REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER RELAY - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING).

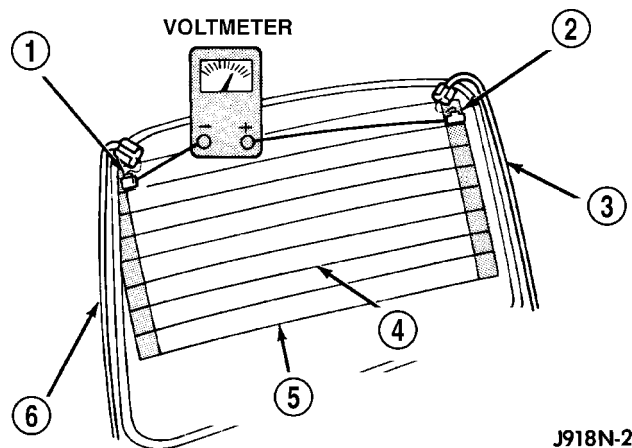
(2) Using a 12-volt DC voltmeter, contact the rear glass heating grid vertical bus bar on the right side of the vehicle with the negative lead. With the positive lead, contact the rear glass heating grid vertical bus bar on the left side of the vehicle. The voltmeter should read battery voltage. If OK, go to Step 3. If not OK, repair the open rear window defogger relay output circuit to the rear window defogger relay as required.

(3) With the positive voltmeter lead still contacting the rear glass heating grid vertical bus bar on the left side of the vehicle, move the negative lead of the voltmeter to a good body ground point. The voltage reading should not change. If OK, go to Step 4. If not OK, repair the ground circuit to ground as required.

(4) Connect the negative lead of the voltmeter to the right side bus bar and touch each grid line at midpoint C with the positive lead (Fig. 2). A reading of approximately six volts indicates a line is good. A reading of zero volts indicates a break in the grid line between midpoint C and the left side rear glass heating grid bus bar. A reading of ten to fourteen volts indicates a break between midpoint C and the right side rear heating grid bus bar. Move the posi-

## REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER GRID (Continued)

tive lead on the grid line towards the break and the voltage reading will change as soon as the break is crossed.



**Fig. 2 REAR WINDOW GLASS GRID TEST**

- 1 - TERMINAL "A"
- 2 - TERMINAL "B"
- 3 - FEED WIRE
- 4 - MID-POINT "C" (TYPICAL)
- 5 - HEATED REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER GRID
- 6 - GROUND WIRE

## STANDARD PROCEDURE - REAR GLASS HEATING GRID REPAIR

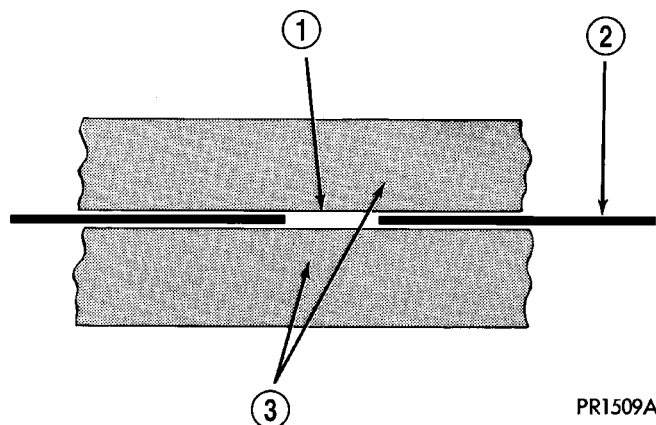
Repair of the rear glass heating grid lines, bus bars, and terminals can be accomplished using a Mopar Rear Window Defogger Repair Kit (Part Number 4267922) or equivalent.

**WARNING: MATERIALS CONTAINED IN THE REPAIR KIT MAY CAUSE SKIN OR EYE IRRITATION. THE KIT CONTAINS EPOXY RESIN AND AMINE TYPE HARDENER, WHICH ARE HARMFUL IF SWALLOWED. AVOID CONTACT WITH THE SKIN AND EYES. FOR SKIN CONTACT, WASH THE AFFECTED AREAS WITH SOAP AND WATER. FOR CONTACT WITH THE EYES, FLUSH WITH PLENTY OF WATER. DO NOT TAKE INTERNALLY. IF TAKEN INTERNALLY, INDUCE VOMITING AND CALL A PHYSICIAN IMMEDIATELY. USE WITH ADEQUATE VENTILATION. DO NOT USE NEAR FIRE OR FLAME. CONTAINS FLAMMABLE SOLVENTS. KEEP OUT OF THE REACH OF CHILDREN.**

(1) Mask the repair area on the inside of the rear glass so that the conductive epoxy can be applied neatly. Extend the epoxy application onto the rear glass heating grid bus bar or grid line on each side of the break (Fig. 3).

(2) Follow the instructions in the repair kit for preparing the damaged area.

(3) Remove the package separator clamp and mix the two conductive epoxy components thoroughly



PR1509A

**Fig. 3 GRID LINE REPAIR**

- 1 - BREAK
- 2 - GRID LINE
- 3 - MASKING TAPE

within the packaging. Fold the package in half and cut the center corner to dispense the epoxy.

(4) For rear glass heating grid line repairs, mask the area to be repaired with masking tape or a template.

(5) Apply the epoxy through the slit in the masking tape or template. Overlap both ends of the break by at least 19 millimeters (0.75 inch).

(6) For a rear glass heating grid terminal replacement, mask the adjacent areas so the epoxy can be extended onto the adjacent grid line as well as onto the bus bar. Apply a thin layer of epoxy to the area where the terminal was previously fastened and onto the adjacent grid line.

(7) Apply a thin layer of conductive epoxy to the terminal and place it in the proper location on the rear glass heating grid bus bar. To prevent the terminal from moving while the epoxy is curing, it must be wedged or clamped.

(8) Carefully remove the masking tape or template.

**CAUTION: Do not allow the glass surface to exceed 204° C (400° F) or the glass may fracture.**

(9) Allow the epoxy to cure for 24 hours at room temperature, or use a heat gun with a 260° to 371° C (500° to 700° F) range for fifteen minutes. Hold the heat gun approximately 25.4 centimeters (10 inches) from the repair.

(10) After the conductive epoxy is properly cured, remove the wedge or clamp from the terminal. Do not attach the wire harness connectors until the curing process is complete.

(11) Check the operation of the rear glass heating grid.

## REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER RELAY

### DESCRIPTION

The rear window defogger relay is an electromechanical device that switches fused battery current to the rear glass heating grid and the Light-Emitting Diode (LED) indicator of the rear window defogger switch, when the Body Control Module (BCM) rear window defogger timer and logic circuitry grounds the relay coil. The rear window defogger relay is located in the junction block, under the left end of the instrument panel in the passenger compartment.

The rear window defogger relay is a International Standards Organization (ISO) relay. Relays conforming to the ISO specifications have common physical dimensions, current capacities, terminal patterns, and terminal functions.

The rear window defogger relay cannot be repaired or adjusted and, if faulty or damaged, it must be replaced.

### OPERATION

The ISO relay consists of an electromagnetic coil, a resistor or diode, and three (two fixed and one movable) electrical contacts. The movable (common feed) relay contact is held against one of the fixed contacts (normally closed) by spring pressure. When the electromagnetic coil is energized, it draws the movable contact away from the normally closed fixed contact, and holds it against the other (normally open) fixed contact.

When the electromagnetic coil is de-energized, spring pressure returns the movable contact to the normally closed position. The resistor or diode is connected in parallel with the electromagnetic coil in the relay, and helps to dissipate voltage spikes that are produced when the coil is de-energized.

### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER RELAY

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN AN ACCIDENTAL**

### AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.

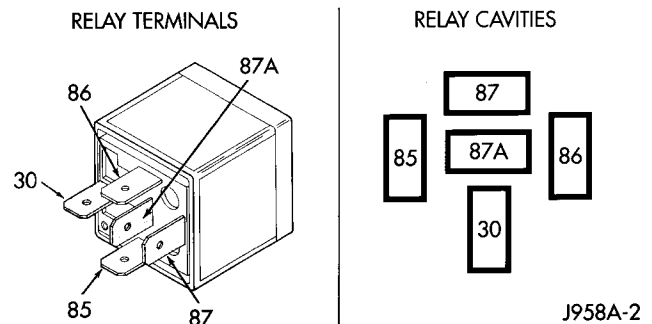
### RELAY TEST

The rear window defogger relay (Fig. 4) is located in the junction block, under the left end of the instrument panel in the passenger compartment. Remove the rear window defogger relay from the junction block to perform the following tests:

(1) A relay in the de-energized position should have continuity between terminals 87A and 30, and no continuity between terminals 87 and 30. If OK, go to Step 2. If not OK, replace the faulty relay.

(2) Resistance between terminals 85 and 86 (electromagnet) should be  $75 \pm 10$  ohms. If OK, go to Step 3. If not OK, replace the faulty relay.

(3) Connect a battery to terminals 85 and 86. There should now be continuity between terminals 30 and 87, and no continuity between terminals 87A and 30. If OK, refer to the **Relay Circuit Test**. If not OK, replace the faulty relay.



**Fig. 4 REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER RELAY**

30 - COMMON FEED  
85 - COIL GROUND  
86- COIL BATTERY  
87- NORMALLY OPEN  
87A- NORMALLY CLOSED

### RELAY CIRCUIT TEST

(1) The relay common feed terminal cavity (30) is connected to battery voltage and should be hot at all times. If OK, go to Step 2. If not OK, repair the open fused B(+) circuit to the Power Distribution Center (PDC) fuse as required.

(2) The relay normally closed terminal (87A) is connected to terminal 30 in the de-energized position, but is not used for this application. Go to Step 3.

(3) The relay normally open terminal (87) is connected to the common feed terminal (30) in the energized position. This terminal supplies battery voltage to the rear glass heating grid and to the fuse in the

## REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER RELAY (Continued)

junction block that feeds the rear window defogger switch LED indicator. There should be continuity between the cavity for relay terminal 87 and the rear glass heating grid and the rear window defogger switch LED indicator at all times. If OK, go to Step 4. If not OK, repair the open rear window defogger relay output circuit as required.

(4) The coil battery terminal (86) is connected to the electromagnet in the relay. It is connected to battery voltage and should be hot at all times. Check for battery voltage at the cavity for relay terminal 86. If OK, go to Step 5. If not OK, repair the open fused B(+) circuit to the PDC fuse as required.

(5) The coil ground terminal (85) is connected to the electromagnet in the relay. This terminal is provided with ground by the Body Control Module (BCM) rear window defogger timer and logic circuitry to energize the defogger relay. There should be continuity to the rear window defogger relay control circuit cavity of the 22-way instrument panel wire harness connector for the BCM. If OK, use a DRB scan tool and refer to the Appropriate Diagnostic Information to test the BCM. If not OK, repair the open rear window defogger relay control circuit as required.

## REMOVAL

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN AN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

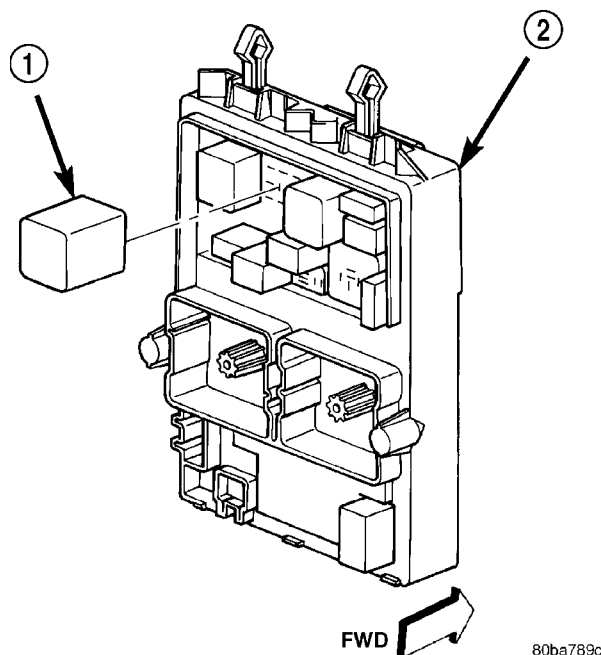
(2) Remove the steering column opening cover from the instrument panel. Refer to Instrument Panel System for the procedures.

(3) The rear window defogger relay is located on the right side of the combination flasher in the junction block (Fig. 5).

(4) Remove the rear window defogger relay from the junction block.

## INSTALLATION

(1) Position the rear window defogger relay in the proper receptacle in the junction block.



**Fig. 5 JUNCTION BLOCK**

- 1 - COMBINATION FLASHER  
2 - JUNCTION BLOCK

(2) Align the rear window defogger relay terminals with the terminal cavities in the junction block receptacle.

(3) Push in firmly on the rear window defogger relay until the terminals are fully seated in the terminal cavities in the junction block receptacle.

(4) Install the steering column opening cover onto the instrument panel. Refer to Instrument Panel System for the procedures.

(5) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

## REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER SWITCH

## DESCRIPTION

The rear window defogger switch is integral to the a/c heater control, which is located in the instrument panel center stack below the radio receiver. This momentary switch provides a hard wired ground signal to the Body Control Module (BCM) each time it is depressed. A Light Emitting Diode (LED) in the push button for the rear window defogger switch illuminates to indicate when the rear window defogger system is turned on.

The rear window defogger switch and the rear window defogger switch LED indicator cannot be repaired and, if faulty or damaged, the entire a/c heater control must be replaced. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/CONTROLS/A/C HEATER CONTROL - REMOVAL)



## REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER SWITCH (Continued)

**OPERATION**

When the rear window defogger switch push button is depressed, it momentarily closes the rear window defogger switch sense circuit for the BCM to ground. The BCM monitors the rear window defogger switch sense circuit. Each time the BCM rear window defogger timer and logic circuitry sees another input from the switch, it toggles a control output to the rear window defogger relay. Energizing the rear window defogger relay provides electrical current to the rear window defogger grid and to the LED indicator in the switch, which lights to indicate when the defogger system is turned on. A dedicated fuse in the junction block protects the rear window defogger relay output circuit to the LED indicator.

**DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER SWITCH**

For complete circuit diagrams, refer to the Appropriate Wiring Information.

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN AN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Remove the a/c heater control from the instrument panel and disconnect the 11-way (manual temperature control) or 16-way (automatic zone control) instrument panel wire harness connector from the a/c heater control receptacle.

(2) Check for continuity between the ground circuit cavity of the 11-way or 16-way instrument panel wire harness connector for the a/c heater control and a good ground. There should be continuity. If OK, go to Step 3. If not OK, repair the open ground circuit to ground as required.

(3) Connect two jumper wires to the a/c heater control 11-way or 16-way connector receptacle. Connect one jumper from the ground circuit terminal in the 11-way or 16-way a/c heater control connector receptacle to a good ground. Connect the other jumper from the fused rear window defogger relay output circuit terminal of the 11-way or 16-way connector receptacle to a 12-volt battery feed. The rear

window defogger switch LED indicator should light. If OK, go to Step 4. If not OK, replace the faulty a/c heater control.

(4) Check for continuity between the ground circuit and rear window defogger switch sense circuit terminals of the 11-way or 16-way a/c heater control connector receptacle. There should be momentary continuity as the rear window defogger switch push button is depressed, and then no continuity. If OK, go to Step 5. If not OK, replace the faulty a/c heater control.

(5) Disconnect the 22-way instrument panel wire harness connector from the Body Control Module (BCM) connector receptacle. Check for continuity between the rear window defogger switch sense circuit cavity of the 11-way or 16-way instrument panel wire harness connector for the a/c heater control and a good ground. There should be no continuity. If OK, go to Step 6. If not OK, repair the shorted rear window defogger switch sense circuit as required.

(6) Check for continuity between the rear window defogger switch sense circuit cavities of the 11-way or 16-way instrument panel wire harness connector for the a/c heater control and the 22-way instrument panel wire harness connector for the BCM. There should be continuity. If OK, refer to (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/HEATED GLASS/REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER RELAY - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING).

**REMOVAL**

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN AN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/CONTROLS/A/C HEATER CONTROL - REMOVAL)



HEATED MIRRORS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>HEATED MIRRORS</b>		<b>DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - HEATED</b>	
DESCRIPTION .....	8	MIRRORS .....	8
OPERATION .....	8		

HEATED MIRRORS

DESCRIPTION

Electrically heated outside rear view mirrors are optional equipment on this model. These mirrors feature an electric heating grid located behind the mirror glass of each power operated outside rear view mirror. These heating grids consist of a single resistor wire routed in a grid-like pattern and captured between two thin sheets of plastic. When electrical current is passed through the resistor wire, it produces enough heat energy to clear the outside mirror glass of ice, snow or fog. Battery current is directed to the outside mirror heating grid only when the rear window defogger switch is in the On position.

If the outside mirror heating grids and the rear window heating grid are all inoperative, (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/HEATED GLASS - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER SYSTEM). If the outside mirror heating grids are inoperative, but the rear window heating grid is operating as designed, (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/HEATED MIRRORS - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING)

The heating grid behind each outside mirror glass cannot be repaired and, if faulty or damaged, the entire power mirror unit must be replaced. Refer to Power Mirrors for the procedures.

OPERATION

The outside mirror heating grids are energized and de-energized by the Driver Door Module (DDM) and the Passenger Door Module (PDM) based upon the rear window defogger switch status. The Body Control Module (BCM) monitors the rear window defogger switch. When the BCM receives an input from the switch, it sends a defogger switch status message to the DDM and the PDM over the Programmable Communications Interface data bus. The DDM and PDM respond to the defogger switch status messages by energizing or de-energizing the battery current feed to their respective outside rear view mirror heating grids.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - HEATED MIRRORS

For circuit descriptions and diagrams, (Refer to Appropriate Wiring Information).

(1) If both mirror heaters are inoperative, check for proper operation of the Rear Window Defogger System. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/HEATED GLASS - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER SYSTEM). If Rear Window Defogger System operates correctly, or if only one mirror heater is inoperative, go to Step 2.

(2) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Remove the front door trim panel on the side of the inoperative mirror heater. Go to Step 3.

(3) Disconnect the door wire harness connector from the door module connector receptacle. Check for continuity between the mirror heater 12 volt supply, and the mirror heater ground. There should be continuity. If OK, go to Step 4. If not OK, check for continuity of the individual circuits between the power mirror and the door module, and of the mirror heater grid right at the power mirror.

(4) Use a DRB III® and (Refer to Appropriate Diagnostic Information) to test the door module and the PCI data bus.

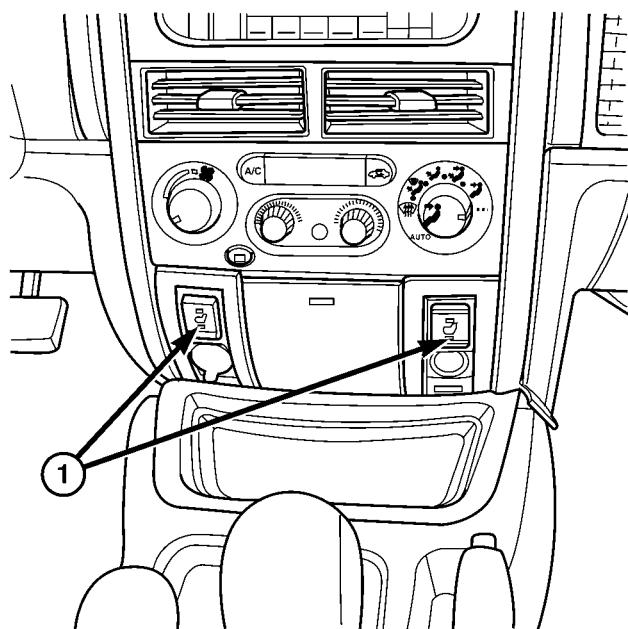
# HEATED SEAT SYSTEM

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>HEATED SEAT SYSTEM</b>		<b>HEATED SEAT SENSOR</b>	
DESCRIPTION .....	9	DESCRIPTION .....	15
OPERATION .....	10	DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - HEATED SEAT	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - HEATED SEAT		SENSOR .....	15
SYSTEM .....	10	REMOVAL .....	15
<b>DRIVER HEATED SEAT SWITCH</b>		<b>PASSENGER HEATED SEAT SWITCH</b>	
DESCRIPTION .....	11	DESCRIPTION .....	15
OPERATION .....	11	OPERATION .....	16
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - DRIVER HEATED		DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - PASSENGER	
SEAT SWITCH .....	11	HEATED SEAT SWITCH .....	16
REMOVAL .....	13	REMOVAL .....	17
INSTALLATION .....	13	INSTALLATION .....	17
<b>HEATED SEAT ELEMENT</b>		<b>MEMORY HEATED SEAT/MIRROR MODULE</b>	
DESCRIPTION .....	13	DESCRIPTION .....	17
OPERATION .....	13	OPERATION .....	18
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - HEATED SEAT		DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - MEMORY	
ELEMENTS .....	14	HEATED SEAT/MIRROR MODULE .....	18
REMOVAL .....	14	REMOVAL .....	18
INSTALLATION .....	14	INSTALLATION .....	19

## HEATED SEAT SYSTEM

### DESCRIPTION



8095066f

**Fig. 1 HEATED SEAT SWITCHES**

1 - HEATED SEAT SWITCHES

Individually controlled driver and passenger side electrically heated front seats are available factory-installed optional equipment on this model, when it is also equipped with the power seat option. The heated seat system allows both the driver and the front seat passenger the option to select one of two seat heating ranges, Low or High, or to turn the individual seat heaters Off using the heated seat switches located in the center lower bezel near the bottom of the instrument panel center stack (Fig. 1). The heated seat switch circuit operates on ignition switched battery current supplied through a fuse in the junction block, only when the ignition switch is in the On position.

The heated seat system consists of the following components :

- Heated seat elements
- Heated seat sensors
- Heated seat module (or memory heated seat module)
- Heated seat switches.

The heated seat system also relies upon resources shared with other electronic modules in the vehicle over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network. The PCI data bus network allows the sharing of sensor information. This helps to reduce wire harness complexity, internal controller hardware, and component sensor current loads. At the same time, this system provides increased reli-

## HEATED SEAT SYSTEM (Continued)

ability, enhanced diagnostics, and allows the addition of many new feature capabilities. For diagnosis of these electronic modules or of the PCI data bus network, the use of a DRB® scan tool and the proper Diagnostic Procedures manual are recommended.

The electronic modules that may affect heated seat system operation are as follows:

- **Body Control Module (BCM)** - Refer to **Body Control Module** in Electronic Control Modules for more information.

- **Heated Seat Module (HSM)** - Refer to **Heated Seat Module** in Electronic Control Modules for more information.

- **Memory Heated Seat Module (MHSM)** - If the vehicle is equipped with the Memory System, refer to **Memory Seat Module** in Electronic Control Modules for more information.

Refer to **Power Seats Premium I/III** in the Contents of Wiring Diagrams for complete circuit diagrams. Following are general descriptions of the major components in the heated seat system.

## OPERATION

The heated seat system will only operate when the ignition switch is in the On position, and the surface temperature at the front seat heating element sensors is below the designed temperature set points of the system. The heated seat system will not operate in ambient temperatures greater than about 41° C (105° F). The front seat heating elements and sensors are hard wired to the Heated Seat Module (HSM) or the Memory Heated Seat Module (MHSM).

The heated seat switches are hard wired to the Body Control Module (BCM). The BCM monitors the heated seat switch inputs, then sends heated seat switch status messages to the HSM or MHSM over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus. The HSM or MHSM contains the control logic for the heated seat system. The HSM or MHSM responds to the heated seat switch status messages, ignition switch status messages, and the front seat heating element sensor inputs by controlling the output to the front seat heating elements through integral solid-state relays.

When a seat heater is turned on, the sensor located on the seat cushion electric heater element provides the HSM or MHSM with an input indicating the surface temperature of the seat cushion. If the surface temperature input is below the temperature set point for the selected Low or High heated seat switch position, the HSM or MHSM energizes the integral solid-state relay, which supplies battery current to the heating elements in the seat cushion and back. When the sensor input indicates the correct temperature set point has been achieved, the HSM or MHSM de-energizes the solid-state relay. The HSM

or MHSM will continue to cycle the solid-state relay as needed to maintain the temperature set point.

The HSM or MHSM and the seat heater elements operate on non-switched battery current supplied through the power seat circuit breaker in the junction block. However, the HSM or MHSM will automatically turn off the heating elements if it detects an open or short in the sensor circuit, a short or open in the heating element circuit causing an excessive current draw, or when the ignition switch is turned to the Off position.

See the owner's manual in the vehicle glove box for more information on the features, use and operation of the heated seat system.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - HEATED SEAT SYSTEM

Following are tests that will help to diagnose the components and circuits that are hard wired inputs or outputs of the heated seat system. However, these tests may not prove conclusive in the diagnosis of this system. In order to obtain conclusive testing of the heated seat system, the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network and all of the electronic modules that provide inputs to, or receive outputs from the heated seat system components must be checked.

The most reliable, efficient, and accurate means to diagnose the heated seat system requires the use of a DRB scan tool and the proper Diagnostic Procedures manual. The DRB® scan tool can provide confirmation that the PCI data bus is functional, that all of the electronic modules are sending and receiving the proper messages on the PCI data bus, and that the Heated Seat Module (HSM) or Memory Heated Seat Module (MHSM) is receiving the proper hard wired inputs and relaying the proper hard wired outputs to perform its heated seat system functions.

For complete circuit diagrams, refer to **Wiring Diagrams**.

**NOTE: DO NOT ATTEMPT TO SWAP MEMORY OR NON-MEMORY HEATED SEAT MODULES FROM ONE VEHICLE TO ANOTHER. MOST OF THESE MODULES ARE VEHICLE FEATURE SPECIFIC AND THEREFORE NOT INTERCHANGEABLE. ALWAYS USE THE CORRECT PART NUMBERED MODULE WHEN DIAGNOSING OR REPLACING A MODULE.**

## HEATED SEAT SYSTEM (Continued)

**WARNING:** REFER TO THE RESTRAINTS SECTION OF THIS MANUAL BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIR-BAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.

**PRELIMINARY TEST**

Before testing the individual components in the heated seat system, check the following:

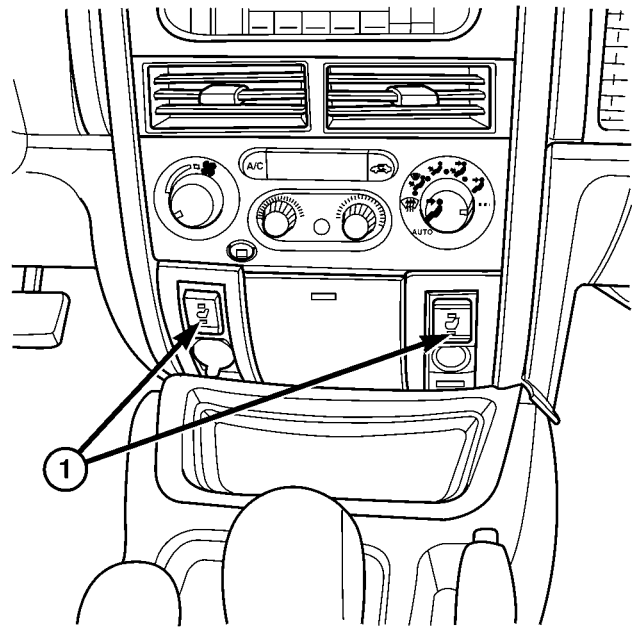
- If the heated seat switch LED indicators do not light with the ignition switch in the On position and the heated seat switch in the Low or High position, check the fused ignition switch output (run) fuse in the junction block. If OK, refer to **Heated Seat Switch Diagnosis and Testing** in this section. If not OK, repair the shorted circuit or component as required and replace the faulty fuse.
- If the heated seat switch LED indicators light, but the heating elements do not heat, check the power seat circuit breaker in the junction block. If OK, refer to **Heated Seat Element Diagnosis and Testing** in this section of the manual. If not OK, replace the faulty power seat circuit breaker.

## DRIVER HEATED SEAT SWITCH

**DESCRIPTION**

The heated seat switches are mounted in the instrument panel center lower bezel (Fig. 2), which is located near the bottom of the instrument panel center stack. The two three-position rocker-type switches, one switch for each front seat, provide a resistor multiplexed signal to the Body Control Module (BCM) through separate hard wired circuits. Each switch has an Off, Low, and High position so that both the driver and the front seat passenger can select a preferred seat heating mode. Each switch has two Light-Emitting Diodes (LED), one each for the Low position and the High position, which light to indicate that the heater for the seat that the switch controls is turned on. Each switch is also back lit by a replaceable incandescent bulb.

The heated seat switches and their LEDs cannot be repaired. If either switch or LED is faulty or damaged, the entire switch unit must be replaced. The incandescent switch illumination bulb and bulb holder units are available for service replacement.



80950661

**Fig. 2 HEATED SEAT SWITCHES**

1 - HEATED SEAT SWITCHES

**OPERATION**

There are three positions that can be selected with each of the heated seat switches: Off, Low, or High. When the top of the switch rocker is fully depressed, the High position is selected and the high position LED indicator illuminates. When the bottom of the switch rocker is fully depressed, the Low position is selected and the low position LED indicator illuminates. When the switch rocker is moved to its neutral position, Off is selected and both LED indicators are extinguished.

Both switches provide separate resistor multiplexed hard wire inputs to the BCM to indicate the selected switch position. The BCM monitors the switch inputs and sends heated seat switch status messages to the Heated Seat Module (HSM) or the Memory Heated Seat Module (MHSM) over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus. The HSM or MHSM responds to the heated seat switch status messages by controlling the output to the seat heater elements of the selected seat. The Low heat position set point is about 36° C (97° F), and the High heat position set point is about 41° C (105° F).

**DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - DRIVER HEATED SEAT SWITCH**

For complete circuit diagrams, refer to **Wiring Diagrams**.



## DRIVER HEATED SEAT SWITCH (Continued)

**WARNING: REFER TO THE RESTRAINTS SECTION OF THIS MANUAL BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIR-BAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Check the fused ignition switch output (run) fuse in the junction block. If OK, go to Step 2. If not OK, repair the shorted circuit or component as required and replace the faulty fuse.

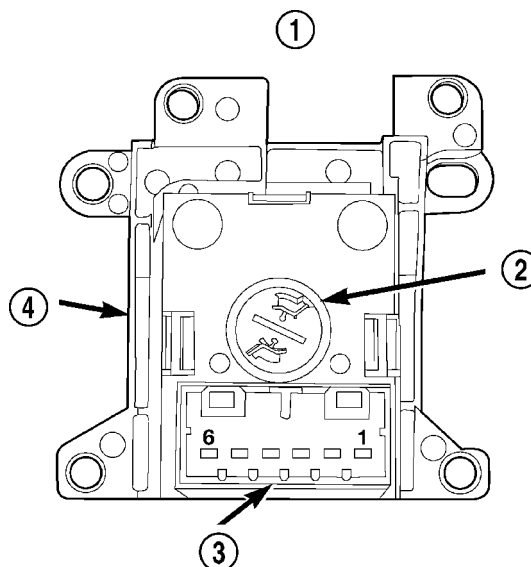
(2) Turn the ignition switch to the On position. Check for battery voltage at the fused ignition switch output (run) fuse in the junction block. If OK, go to Step 3. If not OK, repair the open fused ignition switch output (run) circuit to the ignition switch as required.

(3) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Remove the lower center bezel from the instrument panel and disconnect the instrument panel wire harness connectors from both heated seat switch connector receptacles. Check for continuity between the ground circuit cavity of the instrument panel wire harness connector for the inoperative heated seat switch(es) and a good ground. There should be continuity. If OK, go to Step 4. If not OK, repair the open ground circuit to ground as required.

(4) Reconnect the battery negative cable. Turn the ignition switch to the On position. Check for battery voltage at the fused ignition switch output (run) circuit cavity of the instrument panel wire harness connector for the inoperative heated seat switch(es). If OK, turn the ignition switch to the Off position, disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable, and go to Step 5. If not OK, repair the open fused ignition switch output (run) circuit to the junction block fuse as required.

(5) Test the heated seat switch(es) (Fig. 3) as shown in the Heated Seat Switch Test chart. If OK, go to Step 6. If not OK, replace the faulty heated seat switch(es).

HEATED SEAT SWITCH TEST		
SWITCH POSITION	RESISTANCE BETWEEN	RESISTANCE (OHMS)
Off	Pin 1 & 6	55
Low	Pin 1 & 6	1430
High	Pin 1 & 6	365
All resistance values are $\pm 5\%$ .		



80b8986d

**Fig. 3 Rear of Heated Seat Switch**

- 1 - LEFT SHOWN (RIGHT TYPICAL)
- 2 - ILLUMINATION LAMP
- 3 - CONNECTOR RECEPTACLE
- 4 - HEATED SEAT SWITCH

(6) Disconnect the 22-way instrument panel wire harness connector from the Body Control Module (BCM) connector receptacle. Check for continuity between the seat heater switch sensor ground circuit cavity of the instrument panel wire harness connector for the inoperative heated seat switch(es) and a good ground. There should be no continuity. If OK, go to Step 7. If not OK, repair the shorted seat heater switch sensor ground circuit as required.

(7) Check for continuity between the seat heater switch sensor ground circuit cavities of the instrument panel wire harness connector for the inoperative heated seat switch(es) and the 22-way instrument panel wire harness connector for the BCM. There should be continuity. If OK, go to Step 8. If not OK, repair the open seat heater switch sensor ground circuit as required.

(8) Check for continuity between the seat heater switch mux circuit cavity of the instrument panel wire harness connector for the inoperative heated seat switch and a good ground. There should be no continuity. If OK, go to Step 9. If not OK, repair the shorted seat heater switch mux circuit as required.

(9) Check for continuity between the seat heater switch mux circuit cavity of the instrument panel wire harness connector for the inoperative heated seat switch and the 22-way instrument panel wire harness connector for the BCM. There should be continuity. If OK, use a DRB® scan tool and the proper Diagnostic Procedures manual to test the BCM. If not OK, repair the open seat heater switch mux circuit as required.



## DRIVER HEATED SEAT SWITCH (Continued)

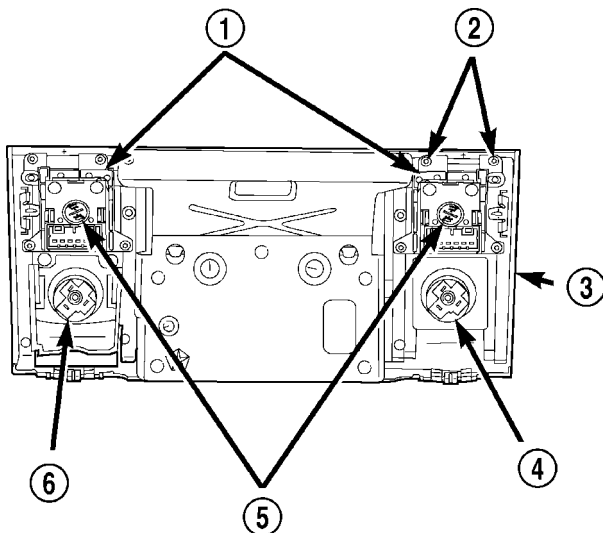
## REMOVAL

**WARNING: REFER TO THE RESTRAINTS SECTION OF THIS MANUAL BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIR-BAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Remove the center lower bezel from the instrument panel. Refer to **Instrument Panel Center Lower Bezel** in the Body section of this manual for the procedure.

(3) Remove the four screws that secure the heated seat switch to the back of the instrument panel center lower bezel (Fig. 4).



80b8986c

**Fig. 4 Heated Seat Switch Remove/Install**

- 1 - HEATED SEAT SWITCHES
- 2 - SCREWS (4)
- 3 - CENTER LOWER BEZEL
- 4 - CIGAR LIGHTER
- 5 - ILLUMINATION LAMPS
- 6 - POWER OUTLET

(4) Remove the heated seat switch from the back of the instrument panel center lower bezel.

## INSTALLATION

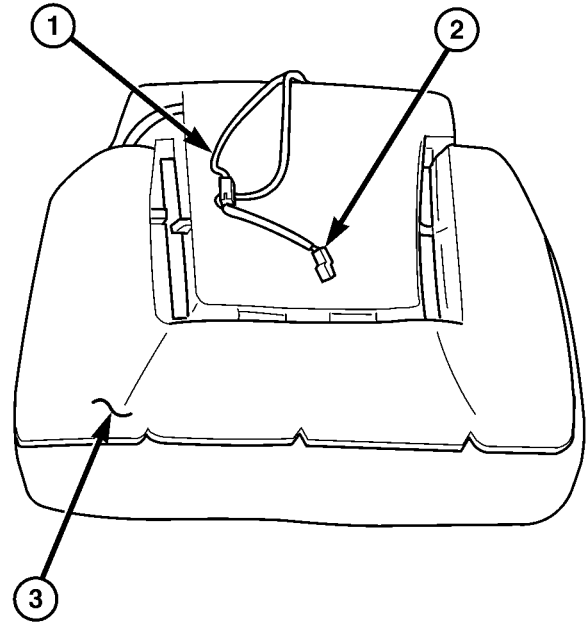
(1) Position the heated seat switch onto the back of the instrument panel center lower bezel.

(2) Install and tighten the four screws that secure the heated seat switch to the back of the instrument panel center lower bezel. Tighten the screws to 1.5 N·m (13 in. lbs.).

(3) Install the center lower bezel onto the instrument panel. Refer to **Instrument Panel Center Lower Bezel** in the Body section of this manual for the procedure.

(4) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

## HEATED SEAT ELEMENT DESCRIPTION



80c91d10

**Fig. 5 HEATING ELEMENT INSTALLED**

- 1 - SEAT BACK WIRE HARNESS
- 2 - HEATED SEAT WIRE HARNESS CONNECTOR
- 3 - HEATED SEAT CUSHION ELEMENT

The heated seat system includes two seat heating elements in each front seat, one for the seat cushion (Fig. 5) and the other for the seat back. One type of heated seat element is offered. All models use two resistor wire heating elements for each seat that are connected in series with the Heated Seat Module (HSM).

The seat heating elements are glued to the seat and seat back cushions. The heated seat elements can be replaced if faulty or damaged, service replacement seat or seat back elements are available. Refer to the procedure in this section for detailed instructions.

## OPERATION

The heated seat elements resist the flow of electrical current. When battery current is passed through the elements, the energy lost by the resistance of the elements to the current flow is released in the form

## HEATED SEAT ELEMENT (Continued)

of heat. The temperature sensor is a NTC thermistor. When the temperature of the seat cushion cover rises, the resistance of the sensor decreases. The HSM or MHSM supplies a five-volt current to one side of each sensor, and monitors the voltage drop through the sensor on a return circuit. The MSM or MHSM uses this temperature sensor input to monitor the temperature of the seat, and regulates the current flow to the seat heating elements accordingly.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - HEATED SEAT ELEMENTS

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. The power seat wire harness connectors for the seat cushion and seat back heating elements are secured to a bracket located under the rear edge of the seat cushion frame. Refer to **Wiring** for complete circuit schematics and connector locations.

(2) Disconnect the Heated Seat Module (HSM) or Memory Heated Seat Module (MHSM) C2 connector. Check for continuity between the SEAT HEATER B(+) DRIVER circuit cavity of the C2 connector and the seat cushion frame. There should be NO continuity. If OK, go to Step 3. If not OK, repair the shorted seat heater B(+) driver circuit as required.

**NOTE:** When checking heated seat elements for continuity, be certain to move the heating element being checked. Moving the element, such as sitting in the seat will eliminate the possibility of an intermittent open in the element which would only be evident if the element was in a certain position. Failure to check the element in various positions could result in an incomplete test.

(3) Check for continuity between the SEAT HEATER B(+) DRIVER circuit cavity of the C2 connector and the ground circuit cavity. There should be continuity at all times (even upon moving or sitting in the seat). If OK, proceed with testing the other components in the heated seat system. If not OK, replace the open heating element. Refer to the procedure in this section of the manual.

## REMOVAL

(1) Disconnect and isolate the negative battery cable.

(2) Remove the appropriate seat cushion or seat back trim cover. Refer to the Body section of the service manual for the procedures.

(3) Disconnect the inoperative heated seat cushion or seat back element electrical connectors.

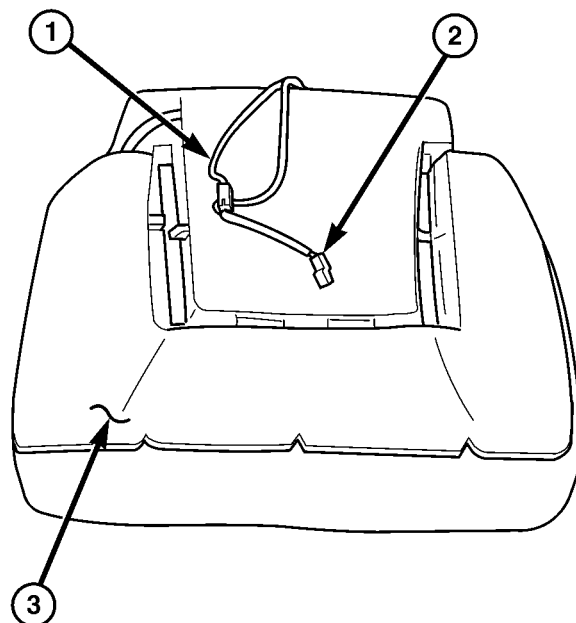
(4) Gently peel-off defective heater element from foam cushion.

## INSTALLATION

(1) Peel off the adhesive backing on the back of the replacement heating element and install on cushion pad in the same location as the original (Fig. 6).

**CAUTION:** During the installation of the replacement heating element, be very careful not to fold or crease the element assembly. Folds or creases will cause premature failure.

(2) Connect the new heating element electrical connectors (Fig. 6).



80c91d10

**Fig. 6 HEATING ELEMENT INSTALLED**

- 1 - SEAT BACK WIRE HARNESS
- 2 - HEATED SEAT WIRE HARNESS CONNECTOR
- 3 - HEATED SEAT CUSHION ELEMENT

(3) Connect the negative battery cable.  
(4) Verify heated seat system operation.  
(5) Install the appropriate seat cushion or seat back trim cover. Make certain the seat wire harness is correctly routed through the seat and seat back. The excess wire between the cushion and back elements should be securely tucked between the rear of the cushion foam and the rear carpet flap of the trim cover.

## HEATED SEAT SENSOR

### DESCRIPTION

The heated seat temperature sensor is a Negative Temperature Coefficient (NTC) thermistor. One temperature sensor is used for each seat. This temperature sensor is located in the seat cushion heating element on all models.

The heated seat temperature sensor cannot be repaired or adjusted and must be replaced if defective. The heated seat cushion element must be replaced if the temperature sensor is defective. Refer to the procedure in this section of the service manual.

### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - HEATED SEAT SENSOR

For complete circuit diagrams, refer to **Wiring Diagrams**.

(1) Disconnect the Heated Seat Module (HSM) or Memory Heated Seat Module (MHSM) C1 connector. Check for continuity between the SEAT SENSOR 5V SUPPLY circuit cavity and the seat cushion frame. There should be **NO** continuity. If OK, go to Step 2. If not OK, repair the shorted seat sensor 5V supply circuit as required.

(2) Check for continuity between the SEAT SENSOR 5V SUPPLY circuit cavity of the 4-way power seat wire harness connector and the C1 connector for the HSM or MHSM. There should be continuity. If OK, go to Step 3. If not OK, repair the open seat sensor 5V supply circuit as required.

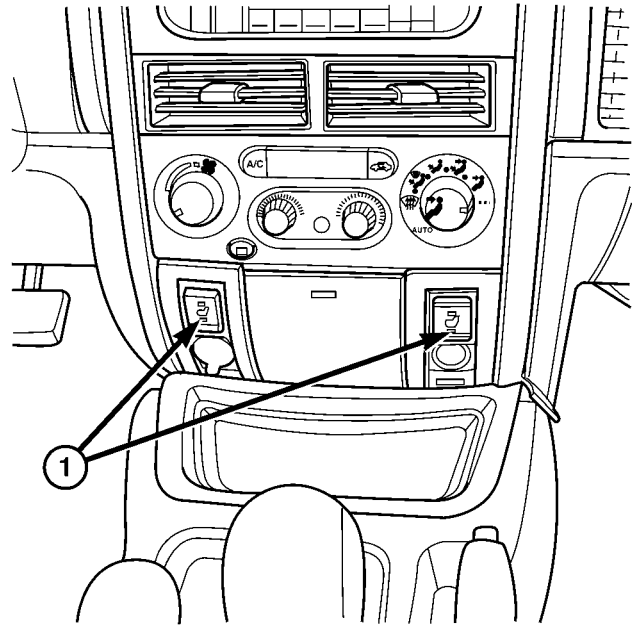
(3) Connect the module electrical connector. Turn system ON, using a voltmeter, backprobe the HSM or MHSM C1 connector on the SEAT TEMPERATURE SENSOR INPUT circuit cavity. Voltage should be present (2-4 volts). If OK, proceed with testing the other components in the heated seat system. If not OK, refer to Heated Seat Module Diagnosis and Testing in the electronic control modules section of this manual.

### REMOVAL

(1) For heated seat sensor replacement procedure (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/HEATED SEATS/HEATED SEAT ELEMENT - REMOVAL).

## PASSENGER HEATED SEAT SWITCH

### DESCRIPTION



8095066f

**Fig. 7 HEATED SEAT SWITCHES**

1 - HEATED SEAT SWITCHES

The heated seat switches are mounted in the instrument panel center lower bezel (Fig. 7), which is located near the bottom of the instrument panel center stack. The two three-position rocker-type switches, one switch for each front seat, provide a resistor multiplexed signal to the Body Control Module (BCM) through separate hard wired circuits. Each switch has an Off, Low, and High position so that both the driver and the front seat passenger can select a preferred seat heating mode. Each switch has two Light-Emitting Diodes (LED), one each for the Low position and the High position, which light to indicate that the heater for the seat that the switch controls is turned on. Each switch is also back lit by a replaceable incandescent bulb.

The heated seat switches and their LEDs cannot be repaired. If either switch or LED is faulty or damaged, the entire switch unit must be replaced. The incandescent switch illumination bulb and bulb holder units are available for service replacement.

## PASSENGER HEATED SEAT SWITCH (Continued)

## OPERATION

There are three positions that can be selected with each of the heated seat switches: Off, Low, or High. When the top of the switch rocker is fully depressed, the High position is selected and the high position LED indicator illuminates. When the bottom of the switch rocker is fully depressed, the Low position is selected and the low position LED indicator illuminates. When the switch rocker is moved to its neutral position, Off is selected and both LED indicators are extinguished.

Both switches provide separate resistor multiplexed hard wire inputs to the BCM to indicate the selected switch position. The BCM monitors the switch inputs and sends heated seat switch status messages to the Heated Seat Module (HSM) or the Memory Heated Seat Module (MHSM) over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus. The HSM or MHSM responds to the heated seat switch status messages by controlling the output to the seat heater elements of the selected seat. The Low heat position set point is about 36° C (97° F), and the High heat position set point is about 41° C (105° F).

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - PASSENGER HEATED SEAT SWITCH

For complete circuit diagrams, refer to **Wiring Diagrams**.

**WARNING: REFER TO THE RESTRAINTS SECTION OF THIS MANUAL BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIR-BAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Check the fused ignition switch output (run) fuse in the junction block. If OK, go to Step 2. If not OK, repair the shorted circuit or component as required and replace the faulty fuse.

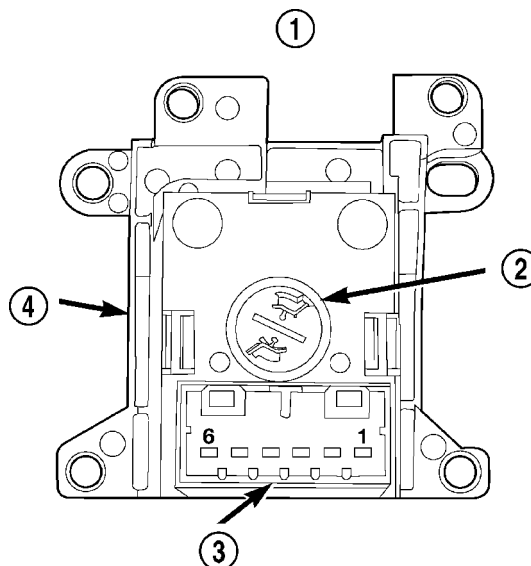
(2) Turn the ignition switch to the On position. Check for battery voltage at the fused ignition switch output (run) fuse in the junction block. If OK, go to Step 3. If not OK, repair the open fused ignition switch output (run) circuit to the ignition switch as required.

(3) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Remove the lower center bezel from the instrument panel and disconnect the instrument panel wire harness connectors from both heated seat switch connector receptacles. Check for continuity between the ground circuit cavity of the instrument panel wire harness connector for the inoperative heated seat

switch(es) and a good ground. There should be continuity. If OK, go to Step 4. If not OK, repair the open ground circuit to ground as required.

(4) Reconnect the battery negative cable. Turn the ignition switch to the On position. Check for battery voltage at the fused ignition switch output (run) circuit cavity of the instrument panel wire harness connector for the inoperative heated seat switch(es). If OK, turn the ignition switch to the Off position, disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable, and go to Step 5. If not OK, repair the open fused ignition switch output (run) circuit to the junction block fuse as required.

(5) Test the heated seat switch(es) (Fig. 8) as shown in the Heated Seat Switch Test chart. If OK, go to Step 6. If not OK, replace the faulty heated seat switch(es).



80b8986d

**Fig. 8 Rear of Heated Seat Switch**

- 1 - LEFT SHOWN (RIGHT TYPICAL)
- 2 - ILLUMINATION LAMP
- 3 - CONNECTOR RECEPTACLE
- 4 - HEATED SEAT SWITCH

HEATED SEAT SWITCH TEST		
SWITCH POSITION	RESISTANCE BETWEEN	RESISTANCE (OHMS)
Off	Pin 1 & 6	55
Low	Pin 1 & 6	1430
High	Pin 1 & 6	365
All resistance values are $\pm 5\%$ .		

(6) Disconnect the 22-way instrument panel wire harness connector from the Body Control Module (BCM) connector receptacle. Check for continuity between the seat heater switch sensor ground circuit cavity of the instrument panel wire harness connector for the inoperative heated seat switch(es) and a



## PASSENGER HEATED SEAT SWITCH (Continued)

good ground. There should be no continuity. If OK, go to Step 7. If not OK, repair the shorted seat heater switch sensor ground circuit as required.

(7) Check for continuity between the seat heater switch sensor ground circuit cavities of the instrument panel wire harness connector for the in operative heated seat switch(es) and the 22-way instrument panel wire harness connector for the BCM. There should be continuity. If OK, go to Step 8. If not OK, repair the open seat heater switch sensor ground circuit as required.

(8) Check for continuity between the seat heater switch mux circuit cavity of the instrument panel wire harness connector for the inoperative heated seat switch and a good ground. There should be no continuity. If OK, go to Step 9. If not OK, repair the shorted seat heater switch mux circuit as required.

(9) Check for continuity between the seat heater switch mux circuit cavity of the instrument panel wire harness connector for the inoperative heated seat switch and the 22-way instrument panel wire harness connector for the BCM. There should be continuity. If OK, use a DRB® scan tool and the proper Diagnostic Procedures manual to test the BCM. If not OK, repair the open seat heater switch mux circuit as required.

## REMOVAL

**WARNING: REFER TO THE RESTRAINTS SECTION OF THIS MANUAL BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIR-BAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Remove the center lower bezel from the instrument panel. Refer to **Instrument Panel Center Lower Bezel** in the Body section of this manual for the procedure.

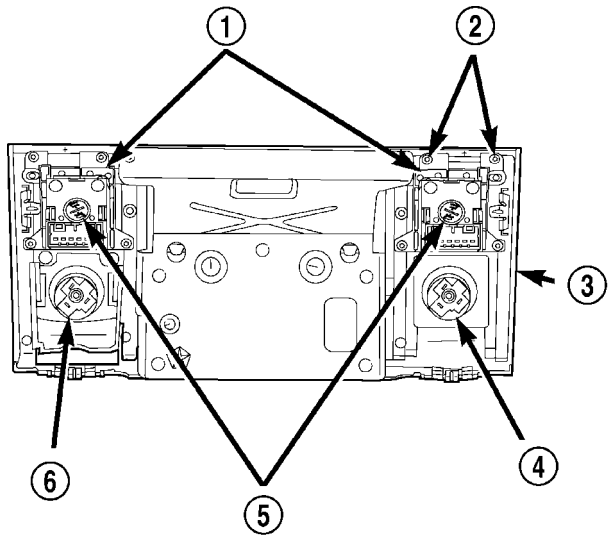
(3) Remove the four screws that secure the heated seat switch to the back of the instrument panel center lower bezel (Fig. 9).

(4) Remove the heated seat switch from the back of the instrument panel center lower bezel.

## INSTALLATION

(1) Position the heated seat switch onto the back of the instrument panel center lower bezel.

(2) Install and tighten the four screws that secure the heated seat switch to the back of the instrument panel center lower bezel. Tighten the screws to 1.5 N·m (13 in. lbs.).



80b8986c

**Fig. 9 Heated Seat Switch Remove/Install**

- 1 - HEATED SEAT SWITCHES
- 2 - SCREWS (4)
- 3 - CENTER LOWER BEZEL
- 4 - CIGAR LIGHTER
- 5 - ILLUMINATION LAMPS
- 6 - POWER OUTLET

(3) Install the center lower bezel onto the instrument panel. Refer to **Instrument Panel Center Lower Bezel** in the Body section of this manual for the procedure.

(4) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

MEMORY HEATED SEAT/  
MIRROR MODULE

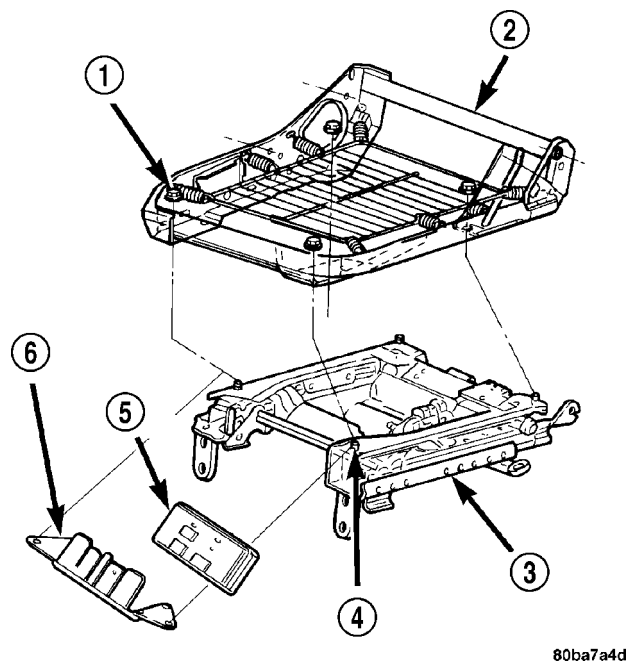
## DESCRIPTION

There are two different modules that can be used in the optional heated seat system. The Heated Seat Module (HSM) is used on vehicles that are not equipped with the optional Memory System. The Memory Heated Seat Module (MHSM) is used on vehicles that are equipped with the optional Memory System and the optional heated seat system. Refer to **Memory System** in Power Seat Systems for more information on the memory system option.

The module is mounted on a bracket that is located between the power seat track and the seat cushion frame (Fig. 10). The HSM or MHSM is used to control the heated seat system functions for both front seats. The HSM or MHSM contains a central processing unit that communicates with other modules on the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network.



## MEMORY HEATED SEAT/MIRROR MODULE (Continued)

**Fig. 10 Heated Seat Module Remove/Install**

- 1 - NUT (4)
- 2 - SEAT CUSHION FRAME
- 3 - POWER SEAT TRACK
- 4 - STUD (4)
- 5 - MODULE
- 6 - BRACKET

For diagnosis of the HSM, MHSM or the PCI data bus, a DRBIII® scan tool and the proper Diagnostic Procedures manual are recommended. The HSM or MHSM cannot be repaired and, if faulty or damaged, it must be replaced.

**OPERATION**

The MSM receives hard wired inputs from the power seat switch and the potentiometers on each of the driver side power seat motors. The MSM receives messages over the PCI data bus from the Driver Door Module (DDM) (memory switch status), the Powertrain Control Module (PCM) (vehicle speed status), and the Body Control Module (seat belt switch status). The MSM will prevent the seat memory recall function from being initiated if the driver side seat belt is buckled, if the transmission gear selector lever is not in the Park or Neutral positions, or if the vehicle is moving.

**DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - MEMORY HEATED SEAT/MIRROR MODULE**

Visually inspect the related wiring harness connectors. Look for broken, bent, pushed out, or corroded terminals. If any of the above conditions are present, repair as necessary. If not proceed as follows:

(1) Using a voltmeter and Wiring schematic, verify proper voltage at the heated seat module. If OK go to Step 2, If not OK check fuses and repair the open or shorted voltage supply circuit as required.

(2) Using a ohmmeter and Wiring schematic, verify proper ground connections at the heated seat module. If OK go to Step 3, If not OK repair the open or shorted ground circuit as required.

(3) Test the appropriate Heated Seat switch. Refer to the procedure in Heated Seat System. If OK go to Step 4, If not OK replace the heated seat switch and re-test system.

(4) Test the appropriate Heated Seat Element. Refer to the procedure in Heated Seat System. If OK go to Step 5, If not OK replace the heated seat element and re-test system.

(5) Test the appropriate Heated Seat Sensor. Refer to the procedure in Heated Seat System. If OK, Use a DRBIII® scan tool and the proper Diagnostic Procedures Manual to test the system. If not OK replace the heated seat sensor and re-test system.

For complete circuit diagrams, refer to **Wiring Diagrams**.

**REMOVAL**

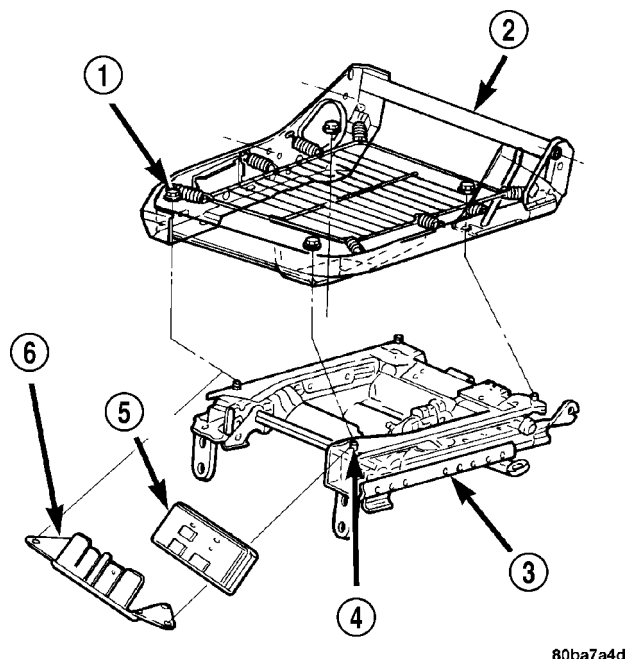
(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Remove the driver side front bucket seat from the power seat track unit. Refer to **Bucket Seat Track Adjuster** in Body for the procedure.

(3) Lift the heated seat module off of the power seat track and disconnect the power seat wire harness connectors (Fig. 11).

(4) Remove the module from the bracket.

## MEMORY HEATED SEAT/MIRROR MODULE (Continued)



80ba7a4d

**Fig. 11 Heated Seat Module Remove/Install**

- 1 - NUT (4)
- 2 - SEAT CUSHION FRAME
- 3 - POWER SEAT TRACK
- 4 - STUD (4)
- 5 - MODULE
- 6 - BRACKET

**INSTALLATION**

- (1) Install the MHSM,HSM into the bracket.
- (2) Position the heated seat module and mounting bracket onto the power seat track.

(3) Reconnect the power seat wiring harness connectors to the heated seat module.

(4) Install the driver side front bucket seat onto the power seat track unit (Refer to 23 - BODY/SEATS/SEAT TRACK ADJUSTER - INSTALLATION).

(5) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

**NOTE:** If the vehicle is equipped with the optional Memory System, following installation, it will be necessary to initialize the Memory Heated Seat Module (MHSM). In order to function properly, the MHSM must "learn" the sensor values of each of the power seat motor position transducers in each of the adjuster hard stop positions. This is done by performing the "Reset Guard Band" procedure using a DRBIII® scan tool and the proper Diagnostic Procedures manual.

**WARNING:** THE "RESET GUARD BAND" PROCEDURE WILL CAUSE THE DRIVER SIDE FRONT SEAT TO AUTOMATICALLY ADJUST TO EACH OF ITS TRAVEL LIMITS. BE CERTAIN THAT NO ONE IS SEATED IN THE VEHICLE AND THAT THERE IS NOTHING IN THE VEHICLE THAT WILL OBSTRUCT SEAT MOVEMENT. FAILURE TO OBSERVE THIS WARNING COULD RESULT IN PERSONAL INJURIES AND/OR VEHICLE DAMAGE.



# HORN

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>HORN SYSTEM</b>		OPERATION .....	4
DESCRIPTION .....	1	DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - HORN RELAY ....	4
OPERATION .....	2	REMOVAL .....	5
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - HORN SYSTEM ...	2	INSTALLATION .....	5
<b>HORN</b>		<b>HORN SWITCH</b>	
DESCRIPTION .....	3	DESCRIPTION .....	5
OPERATION .....	3	OPERATION .....	6
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - HORN .....	3	DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - HORN SWITCH ...	6
REMOVAL .....	3	REMOVAL .....	6
INSTALLATION .....	4	INSTALLATION .....	7
<b>HORN RELAY</b>			
DESCRIPTION .....	4		

## HORN SYSTEM

### DESCRIPTION

A dual-note electric horn system is standard equipment on this model. The standard equipment horn system features one low-note horn unit and one high-note horn unit. The horn system allows the vehicle operator to provide an audible warning of the presence or approach of the vehicle to pedestrians and the drivers of other vehicles in near proximity. The horn system uses a non-switched source of battery current so that the system will remain functional, regardless of the ignition switch position.

The horn system can also be activated by the Body Control Module (BCM). The BCM is programmed to activate the horns in order to provide the following features:

- Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) system lock request audible verification (except export)
- RKE system panic mode audible alert
- Vehicle Theft Security System (VTSS) audible alarm.

This vehicle also offers several customer programmable features, which allows the selection of several optional electronic features to suit individual preferences. Refer to Overhead Console for more information on the customer programmable feature options. Customer programmable feature options affecting the horn system include:

- **Sound Horn on Lock** - Allows the option of having the horn sound a short chirp as an audible verification that the RKE system received a valid Lock request from the RKE transmitter, or having no audible verification.

The horn system includes the following components:

- Clockspring
- Horns
- Horn relay
- Horn switch

Certain functions and features of the horn system rely upon resources shared with other electronic modules in the vehicle over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network. The PCI data bus network allows the sharing of sensor information. This helps to reduce wire harness complexity, internal controller hardware, and component sensor current loads. At the same time, this system provides increased reliability, enhanced diagnostics, and allows the addition of many new feature capabilities. For diagnosis of these electronic modules or of the PCI data bus network, the use of a DRB scan tool and the proper Diagnostic Procedures manual are recommended.

The other electronic modules that may affect horn system operation are as follows:

- **Body Control Module (BCM)** (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/ELECTRONIC CONTROL MODULES/BODY CONTROL/CENTRAL TIMER MODULE - DESCRIPTION) for more information.

- **Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)** (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/OVERHEAD CONSOLE/ELECTRONIC VEHICLE INFO CENTER - DESCRIPTION) for more information.

(Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS/CLOCK-SPRING - DESCRIPTION) for more information on this component. Refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, details of wire harness routing and retention,

## HORN SYSTEM (Continued)

connector pin-out information and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds. Following are general descriptions of the remaining major components in the horn system.

**OPERATION**

The horn system is activated by a horn switch concealed beneath the driver side airbag module trim cover in the center of the steering wheel. Depressing the center of the driver side airbag module trim cover closes the horn switch. Closing the horn switch activates the horn relay. The activated horn relay then switches the battery current needed to energize the horns.

The BCM can also activate the horn system by energizing the horn relay through a single hard wired output circuit. The BCM energizes and de-energizes the horn relay in response to internal programming as well as message inputs received over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network. The BCM can energize the horn relay for a single chirp (RKE lock request), or for extended operation (RKE panic mode and VTSS alarm mode).

Refer to the owner's manual in the vehicle glove box for more information on the features, use and operation of the horn system.

**DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - HORN SYSTEM**

In most cases, any problem involving continually sounding horns can be quickly alleviated by removing the horn relay from the Power Distribution Center (PDC). Refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, further details on wire harness routing and retention, as well as pin-out and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

*HORN SYSTEM DIAGNOSIS*

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
BOTH HORNS INOPERATIVE	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Faulty fuse.</li> <li>2. Faulty horn relay.</li> <li>3. Faulty horn switch.</li> <li>4. Faulty horns.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the fuses in the Power Distribution Center (PDC) and the Junction Block (JB). Replace the fuse and repair the shorted circuit or component, if required.</li> <li>2. Refer to Horn Relay for the proper horn relay diagnosis and testing procedures. Replace the horn relay or repair the open horn relay circuit, if required.</li> <li>3. Refer to Horn Switch for the proper horn switch diagnosis and testing procedures. Replace the horn switch or repair the open horn switch circuit, if required.</li> <li>4. Refer to Horn for the proper horn diagnosis and testing procedures. Replace the horns or repair the open horn circuit, if required.</li> </ol>
ONE HORN INOPERATIVE	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Faulty horn.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Refer to Horn for the proper horn diagnosis and testing procedures. Replace the horn or repair the open horn circuit, if required.</li> </ol>



## HORN SYSTEM (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
HORN SOUNDS CONTINUOUSLY	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Faulty horn relay.</li> <li>2. Faulty horn switch.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Refer to Horn Relay for the proper horn relay diagnosis and testing procedures. Replace the horn relay or repair the shorted horn relay control circuit, if required.</li> <li>2. Refer to Horn Switch for the proper horn switch diagnosis and testing procedures. Replace the horn switch or repair the shorted horn switch circuit, if required.</li> </ol>

## HORN

## DESCRIPTION

The dual electromagnetic diaphragm-type horns are standard equipment on this model. Both horns are secured to a mounting bracket. The mounting bracket is secured with a screw to the back side of the right extension of the radiator closure assembly, just ahead of the right front wheel house and below the front wheel house extension. The two horns are connected in parallel. Each horn is grounded through its wire harness connector and circuit to an eyelet secured to the right inner fender shield near the battery, and receives battery feed through the closed contacts of the horn relay.

The horns cannot be repaired or adjusted and, if faulty or damaged, they must be individually replaced.

## OPERATION

Within the two halves of the molded plastic horn housing are a flexible diaphragm, a plunger, an electromagnetic coil and a set of contact points. The diaphragm is secured in suspension around its perimeter by the mating surfaces of the horn housing. The plunger is secured to the center of the diaphragm and extends into the center of the electromagnet. The contact points control the current flow through the electromagnet.

When the horn is energized, electrical current flows through the closed contact points to the electromagnet. The resulting electromagnetic field draws the plunger and diaphragm toward it until that movement mechanically opens the contact points. When the contact points open, the electromagnetic field collapses allowing the plunger and diaphragm to return to their relaxed positions and closing the contact points again. This cycle continues repeating at a very rapid rate producing the vibration and movement of air that creates the sound that is directed through the horn outlet.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - HORN

Refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, details of wire harness routing and retention, connector pin-out information and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

(1) Disconnect the wire harness connector(s) from the horn connector receptacle(s). Measure the resistance between the ground circuit cavity of the horn(s) wire harness connector(s) and a good ground. There should be no measurable resistance. If OK, go to Step 2. If not OK, repair the open ground circuit to ground as required.

(2) Check for battery voltage at the horn relay output circuit cavity of the horn(s) wire harness connector(s). There should be zero volts. If OK, go to Step 3. If not OK, repair the shorted horn relay output circuit or replace the faulty horn relay as required.

(3) Depress the horn switch. There should now be battery voltage at the horn relay output circuit cavity of the horn(s) wire harness connector(s). If OK, replace the faulty horns. If not OK, repair the open horn relay output circuit to the horn relay as required.

## REMOVAL

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

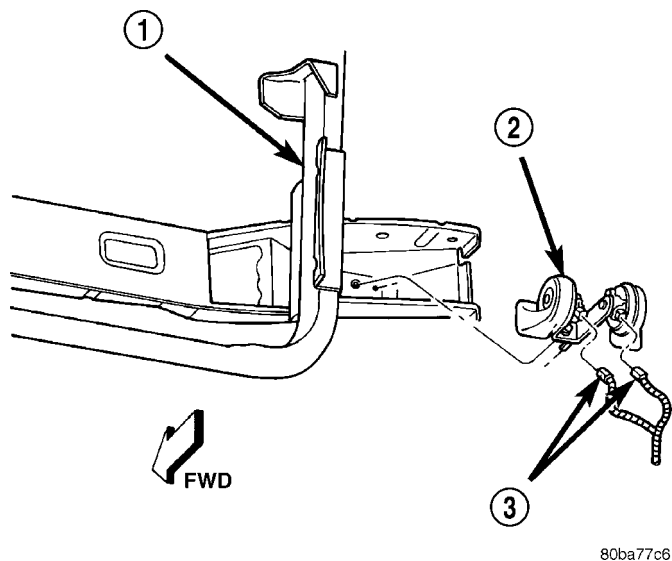
(2) Raise and support the vehicle.

(3) Remove the lower front half of the inner liner from the right front fender wheel house. (Refer to 23 - BODY/EXTERIOR/FRONT FENDER - REMOVAL).

(4) Reach through the front of the right front fender wheel house opening to access and disconnect the two right headlamp and dash wire harness connectors from the horn connector receptacles (Fig. 1). Be certain to disengage the connector lock tabs before disconnecting them from the horn connector receptacles.

(5) Remove the screw that secures the horn mounting bracket to the right extension of the radiator closure assembly.

## HORN (Continued)

**Fig. 1 Horns Remove/Install**

- 1 - RADIATOR CLOSURE ASSEMBLY  
 2 - HORNS AND MOUNTING BRACKET  
 3 - RIGHT HEADLAMP AND DASH WIRE HARNESS CONNECTORS

(6) Remove both horns and the mounting bracket from the right extension of the radiator closure assembly as a unit.

**INSTALLATION**

(1) Position both horns and the mounting bracket onto the right extension of the radiator closure assembly as a unit.

(2) Install and tighten the screw that secures the horn mounting bracket to the right extension of the radiator closure assembly. Tighten the screw to 11.3 N·m (100 in. lbs.).

(3) Reconnect the two right headlamp and dash wire harness connectors to the horn connector receptacles. Be certain to engage the connector lock tabs after reconnecting them to the horn connector receptacles.

(4) Install the lower front half of the inner liner to the right front fender wheel house. (Refer to 23 - BODY/EXTERIOR/FRONT FENDER - INSTALLATION) for the procedure.

(5) Lower the vehicle.

(6) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

**HORN RELAY****DESCRIPTION**

The horn relay is an electromechanical device that switches battery current to the horn when the horn switch grounds the relay coil. The horn relay is located in the Power Distribution Center (PDC) in the engine compartment. If a problem is encountered

with a continuously sounding horn, it can usually be quickly resolved by removing the horn relay from the PDC until further diagnosis is completed. See the fuse and relay layout label affixed to the inside surface of the PDC cover for horn relay identification and location.

The horn relay is a International Standards Organization (ISO) micro-relay. Relays conforming to the ISO specifications have common physical dimensions, current capacities, terminal patterns, and terminal functions. The ISO micro-relay terminal functions are the same as a conventional ISO relay. However, the ISO micro-relay terminal pattern (or footprint) is different, the current capacity is lower, and the physical dimensions are smaller than those of the conventional ISO relay.

The horn relay cannot be repaired or adjusted and, if faulty or damaged, it must be replaced.

**OPERATION**

The ISO relay consists of an electromagnetic coil, a resistor or diode, and three (two fixed and one movable) electrical contacts. The movable (common feed) relay contact is held against one of the fixed contacts (normally closed) by spring pressure. When the electromagnetic coil is energized, it draws the movable contact away from the normally closed fixed contact, and holds it against the other (normally open) fixed contact.

When the electromagnetic coil is de-energized, spring pressure returns the movable contact to the normally closed position. The resistor or diode is connected in parallel with the electromagnetic coil in the relay, and helps to dissipate voltage spikes that are produced when the coil is de-energized.

**DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - HORN RELAY**

The horn relay (Fig. 2) is located in the Power Distribution Center (PDC) between the battery and the right inner fender shield on the passenger side of the engine compartment. If a problem is encountered with a continuously sounding horn, it can usually be quickly resolved by removing the horn relay from the PDC until further diagnosis is completed. See the fuse and relay layout label affixed to the inside surface of the PDC cover for horn relay identification and location. For complete circuit diagrams, refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, details of wire harness routing and retention, connector pin-out information and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

## HORN RELAY (Continued)

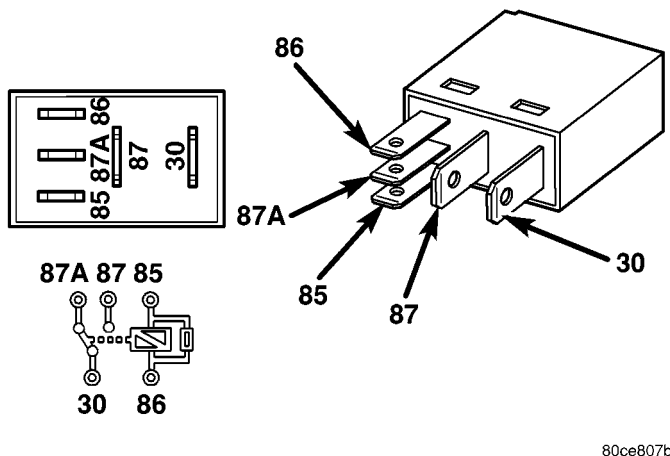
**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIR-BAGS, REFER TO ELECTRICAL, RESTRAINTS BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Remove the horn relay from the PDC. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/HORN/HORN RELAY - REMOVAL) for the procedures.

(2) A relay in the de-energized position should have continuity between terminals 87A and 30, and no continuity between terminals 87 and 30. If OK, go to Step 3. If not OK, replace the faulty relay.

(3) Resistance between terminals 85 and 86 (electromagnet) should be  $75 \pm 5$  ohms. If OK, go to Step 4. If not OK, replace the faulty relay.

(4) Connect a battery to terminals 85 and 86. There should now be continuity between terminals 30 and 87, and no continuity between terminals 87A and 30. If OK, perform the Relay Circuit Test that follows. If not OK, replace the faulty relay.

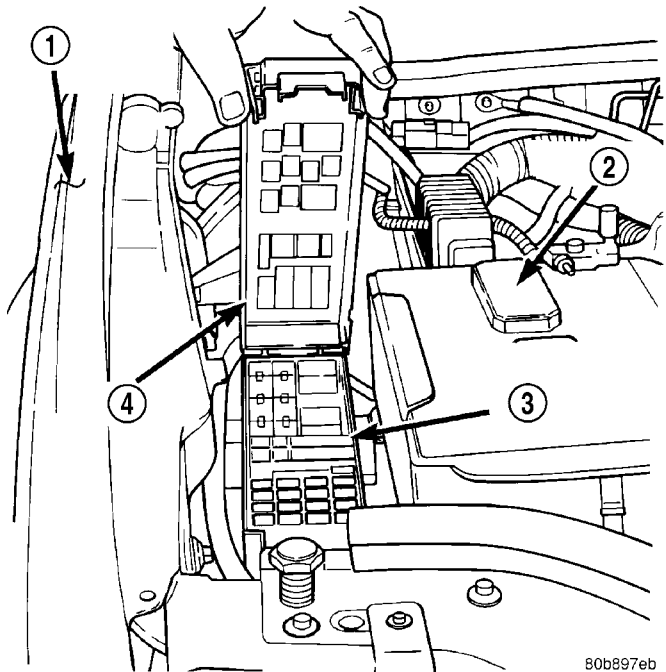


**Fig. 2 Horn Relay**

30 - COMMON FEED  
85 - COIL GROUND  
86 - COIL BATTERY  
87 - NORMALLY OPEN  
87A - NORMALLY CLOSED

## REMOVAL

- (1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.
- (2) Remove the cover from the Power Distribution Center (PDC) (Fig. 3).
- (3) See the fuse and relay layout label affixed to the underside of the PDC cover for horn relay identification and location.
- (4) Remove the horn relay from the PDC.



**Fig. 3 Power Distribution Center**

- 1 - RIGHT FENDER
- 2 - BATTERY
- 3 - POWER DISTRIBUTION CENTER
- 4 - COVER

## INSTALLATION

- (1) See the fuse and relay layout label affixed to the underside of the PDC cover for the proper horn relay location.
- (2) Position the horn relay in the proper receptacle in the PDC.
- (3) Align the horn relay terminals with the terminal cavities in the PDC receptacle.
- (4) Push down firmly on the horn relay until the terminals are fully seated in the terminal cavities in the PDC receptacle.
- (5) Install the cover onto the PDC.
- (6) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

## HORN SWITCH

### DESCRIPTION

A center-blow, normally open, resistive membrane-type horn switch is secured in a plastic tray that is inserted in a pocket sewn on the front of the driver side airbag retainer strap. The horn switch is concealed behind the driver side airbag trim cover in the center of the steering wheel. The switch consists of two plastic membranes, one that is flat and one that is slightly convex. These two membranes are secured to each other around the perimeter. Inside the switch, the centers of the facing surfaces of these membranes each has a grid made with an electrically

## HORN SWITCH (Continued)

conductive material applied to it. One of the grids is connected to a circuit that provides it with continuity to ground at all times. The grid of the other membrane is connected to the horn relay control circuit.

The steering wheel and steering column must be properly grounded in order for the horn switch to function properly. The horn switch and plastic tray are serviced as a unit. If the horn switch is damaged or faulty, or if the driver side airbag is deployed, the horn switch and tray must be replaced as a unit.

**OPERATION**

When the center area of the driver side airbag trim cover is depressed, the electrically conductive grids on the facing surfaces of the horn switch membranes contact each other, closing the switch circuit. The completed horn switch circuit provides a ground for the control coil side of the horn relay, which activates the relay. When the horn switch is released, the resistive tension of the convex membrane separates the two electrically conductive grids and opens the switch circuit.

**DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - HORN SWITCH**

For complete circuit diagrams, refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, details of wire harness routing and retention, connector pin-out information and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, REFER TO ELECTRICAL, RESTRAINTS BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Remove the steering column opening cover from the instrument panel.

(2) Check for continuity between the metal steering column jacket and a good ground. There should be continuity. If OK, go to Step 3. If not OK, refer to Steering, Column for proper installation of the steering column.

(3) Remove the driver side airbag module from the steering wheel. Disconnect the horn switch wire harness connectors from the driver side airbag module.

(4) Remove the horn relay from the Power Distribution Center (PDC). Check for continuity between the steering column half of the horn switch feed wire harness connector and a good ground. There should be no continuity. If OK, go to Step 5. If not OK,

repair the shorted horn relay control circuit to the horn relay in the PDC as required.

(5) Check for continuity between the steering column half of the horn switch feed wire harness connector and the horn relay control circuit cavity for the horn relay in the PDC. There should be continuity. If OK, go to Step 6. If not OK, repair the open horn relay control circuit to the horn relay in the PDC as required.

(6) Check for continuity between the horn switch feed wire and the horn switch ground wire on the driver side airbag module. There should be no continuity. If OK, go to Step 7. If not OK, replace the faulty horn switch.

(7) Depress the center of the driver side airbag module trim cover and check for continuity between the horn switch feed wire and the horn switch ground wire on the driver side airbag module. There should now be continuity. If not OK, replace the faulty horn switch.

**REMOVAL****WARNING:**

• **ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, REFER TO ELECTRICAL, RESTRAINTS BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

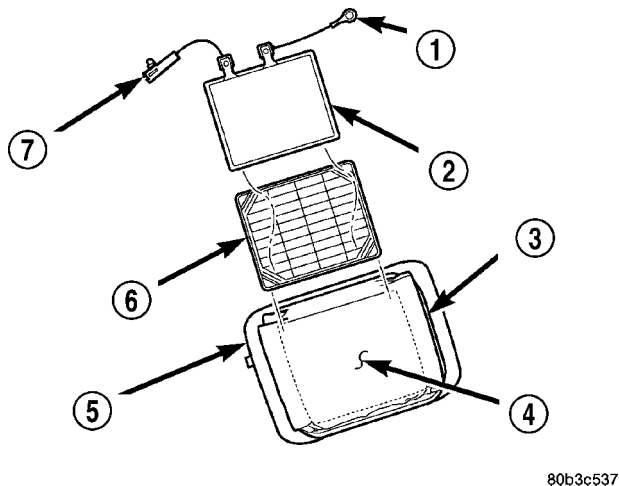
• **THE HORN SWITCH IS INTEGRAL TO THE DRIVER SIDE AIRBAG MODULE. SERVICE OF THIS COMPONENT SHOULD BE PERFORMED ONLY BY CHRYSLER-TRAINED AND AUTHORIZED DEALER SERVICE TECHNICIANS. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS OR TO FOLLOW THE PROPER PROCEDURES COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL, INCOMPLETE, OR IMPROPER AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE OCCUPANT INJURIES.**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Remove the trim cover from the driver side airbag (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS/ DRIVER AIRBAG - REMOVAL) for the procedure.

(3) Remove the horn switch and tray as a unit from the pouch on the retaining strap of the driver side airbag module (Fig. 4).

## HORN SWITCH (Continued)

**Fig. 4 Horn Switch Remove/Install**

- 1 - HORN SWITCH GROUND WIRE EYELET
- 2 - HORN SWITCH
- 3 - AIRBAG RETAINING STRAP
- 4 - POUCH
- 5 - DRIVER SIDE AIRBAG MODULE (TRIM COVER REMOVED)
- 6 - TRAY
- 7 - HORN SWITCH FEED WIRE CONNECTOR

**INSTALLATION****WARNING:**

- ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, REFER TO ELECTRICAL, RESTRAINTS BEFORE

ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.

- THE HORN SWITCH IS INTEGRAL TO THE DRIVER SIDE AIRBAG. SERVICE OF THIS COMPONENT SHOULD BE PERFORMED ONLY BY CHRYSLER-TRAINED AND AUTHORIZED DEALER SERVICE TECHNICIANS. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS OR TO FOLLOW THE PROPER PROCEDURES COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL, INCOMPLETE, OR IMPROPER AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE OCCUPANT INJURIES.

(1) Install the horn switch and tray as a unit into the pouch on the retaining strap of the driver side airbag. Be certain that the tray is facing the airbag module, that the horn switch is facing the trim cover, that the horn switch feed wire is on the left, and that the horn switch ground wire is on the right.

(2) Install the trim cover onto the driver side airbag (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS/DRIVER AIRBAG - INSTALLATION) for the procedure.

(3) Connect the battery negative cable.





# IGNITION CONTROL

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>IGNITION CONTROL - 4.0L/4.7L</b>		<b>INSTALLATION</b>	
DESCRIPTION .....	1	INSTALLATION - 4.0L .....	8
OPERATION .....	1	INSTALLATION - 4.7L .....	9
SPECIFICATIONS		<b>COIL RAIL</b>	
ENGINE FIRING ORDER - 4.0L 6-CYLINDER		DESCRIPTION .....	9
ENGINE .....	2	OPERATION .....	10
ENGINE FIRING ORDER—4.7L V-8 ENGINE ..	2	REMOVAL .....	10
IGNITION COIL RESISTANCE - 4.0L ENGINE ..	2	INSTALLATION .....	10
IGNITION COIL RESISTANCE—4.7L V-8		<b>IGNITION COIL</b>	
ENGINE .....	2	DESCRIPTION .....	11
IGNITION TIMING .....	3	OPERATION .....	12
SPARK PLUGS .....	3	REMOVAL .....	12
TORQUE - IGNITION SYSTEM .....	3	INSTALLATION .....	12
<b>AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY</b>		<b>IGNITION COIL CAPACITOR</b>	
DESCRIPTION - PCM OUTPUT .....	4	DESCRIPTION .....	13
OPERATION		OPERATION .....	13
OPERATION - PCM OUTPUT .....	4	REMOVAL .....	13
OPERATION - ASD SENSE - PCM INPUT ....	4	INSTALLATION .....	13
REMOVAL .....	4	<b>KNOCK SENSOR</b>	
INSTALLATION .....	4	DESCRIPTION .....	13
<b>CAMSHAFT POSITION SENSOR</b>		OPERATION .....	13
DESCRIPTION		REMOVAL .....	14
DESCRIPTION - 4.0L .....	5	INSTALLATION .....	15
DESCRIPTION - 4.7L .....	5	<b>SPARK PLUG</b>	
OPERATION		DESCRIPTION .....	15
OPERATION - 4.0L .....	6	DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - SPARK PLUG	
OPERATION - 4.7L .....	6	CONDITIONS .....	16
REMOVAL		REMOVAL .....	18
REMOVAL - 4.0L .....	6	CLEANING .....	18
REMOVAL - 4.7L .....	8	INSTALLATION .....	18

## IGNITION CONTROL - 4.0L/ 4.7L

### DESCRIPTION

Two different ignition systems are used. One type of system is for the 4.0L 6-cylinder engine. The other is for the 4.7L V-8 engine.

### OPERATION

The 4.0L 6-cylinder engine uses a one-piece coil rail containing three independent coils. Although cylinder firing order is the same as 4.0L engines of previous years, spark plug firing is not. The 3 coils dual-fire the spark plugs on cylinders 1-6, 2-5 and/or 3-4. When one cylinder is being fired (on compression stroke), the spark to the opposite cylinder is being wasted (on exhaust stroke). The one-piece coil bolts

directly to the cylinder head. Rubber boots seal the secondary terminal ends of the coils to the top of all 6 spark plugs. One electrical connector (located at the rear end of the coil rail) is used for all three coils.

The 4.7L V-8 engine uses 8 dedicated and individually fired coil for each spark plug. Each coil is mounted directly to the top of each spark plug. A separate electrical connector is used for each coil.

Because of coil design, spark plug cables (secondary cables) are not used on either engine. A **distributor is not used** with either the 4.0L or 4.7L engines.

The ignition system is controlled by the powertrain control module (PCM) on all engines.

The ignition system consists of:

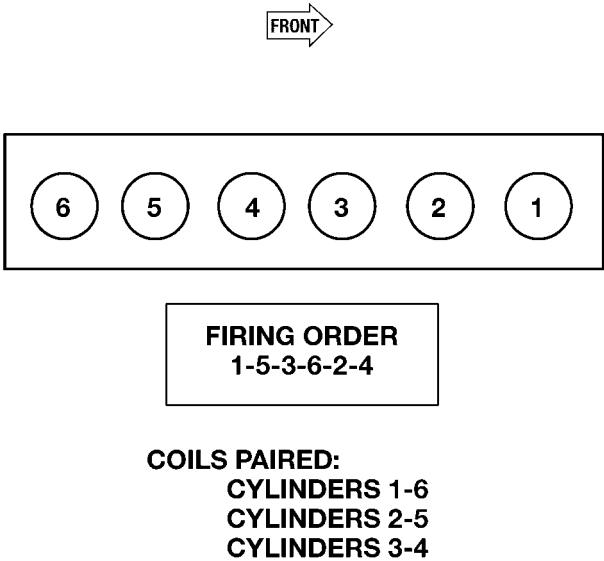
- Spark Plugs
- Ignition Coil(s)
- Powertrain Control Module (PCM)

IGNITION CONTROL - 4.0L/4.7L (Continued)

- Crankshaft Position Sensor
- Camshaft Position Sensor
- The MAP, TPS, IAC and ECT also have an effect on the control of the ignition system.

SPECIFICATIONS

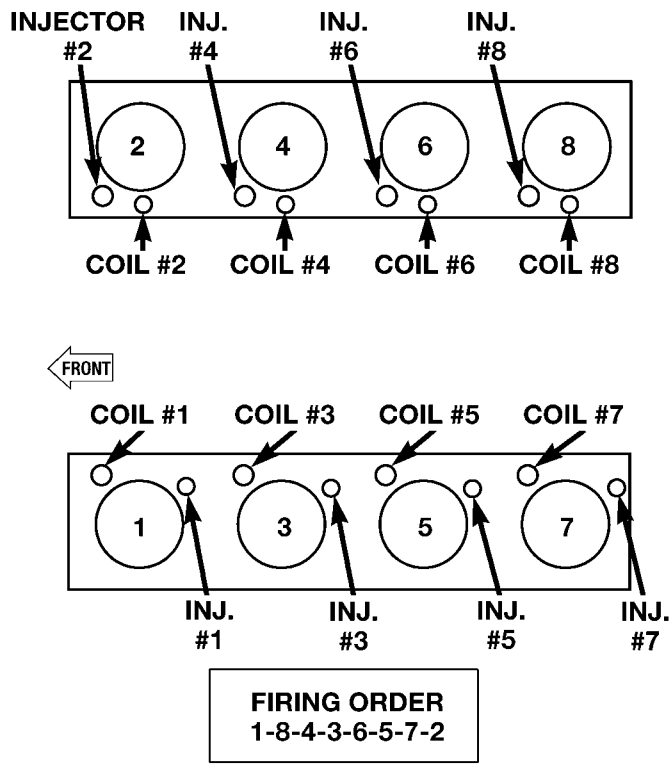
ENGINE FIRING ORDER - 4.0L 6-CYLINDER ENGINE



**FIRING ORDER - 4.0L**

80b6f045

ENGINE FIRING ORDER—4.7L V-8 ENGINE



80b6f043

IGNITION COIL RESISTANCE - 4.0L ENGINE

PRIMARY RESISTANCE 21-27°C (70-80°F)
0.71 - 0.88 Ohms

IGNITION COIL RESISTANCE—4.7L V-8 ENGINE

PRIMARY RESISTANCE 21-27°C (70-80°F)	SECONDARY RESISTANCE 21-27°C (70-80°F)
0.6 - 0.9 Ohms	6,000 - 9,000 Ohms

## IGNITION CONTROL - 4.0L/4.7L (Continued)

**IGNITION TIMING**

All ignition timing functions are controlled by the Powertrain Control Module (PCM). Mechanical adjustments are not needed and can't be made.

On the 4.0L 6-cylinder engine, do not attempt to rotate the oil pump drive to adjust timing. This adjustment is used for fuel synchronization after camshaft position sensor replacement.

**SPARK PLUGS**

ENGINE	PLUG TYPE	ELECTRODE GAP
4.0L 6-CYL.	ZFR5N (NGK #)	1.00 mm (.040 in.)
4.7L V-8 (Exc. HO)	RC12MCC4	1.01 mm (.040 in.)
4.7L V-8 High Output (HO)	RC7PYCB4	1.01 mm (.040 in.)

**TORQUE - IGNITION SYSTEM**

DESCRIPTION	N-m	Ft. Lbs.	In. Lbs.
Crankshaft Position Sensor Bolts - 4.0L Engine	7	-	60
Crankshaft Position Sensor Bolt - 4.7L V-8 Engine	28	21	-
Camshaft Position Sensor-to-base bolts - 4.0L Engine	2	-	15
Camshaft Position Sensor Bolt - 4.7L V-8 Engine	12	-	106
Oil Pump Drive Hold-down Bolt - 4.0L Engine	23	17	-
Ignition Coil Rail Mounting Bolts - 4.0L Engine	29	-	250
Ignition Coil Mounting Nut - 4.7L V-8 Engine	8	-	70
* Knock Sensor Bolt - 4.7L HO V-8 Engine	*20	*15	-
Spark Plugs - 4.0L Engine	30	22	-
Spark Plugs - 4.7L V-8 Engine	24 - 30	18 - 22	-
* Do not apply any sealant, thread-locker or adhesive to bolts. Poor sensor performance may result. Refer to Removal / Installation for additional information.			

## AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY

### DESCRIPTION - PCM OUTPUT

The 5-pin, 12-volt, Automatic Shutdown (ASD) relay is located in the Power Distribution Center (PDC). Refer to label on PDC cover for relay location.

### OPERATION

#### OPERATION - PCM OUTPUT

The ASD relay supplies battery voltage (12+ volts) to the fuel injectors and ignition coil(s). With certain emissions packages it also supplies 12-volts to the oxygen sensor heating elements.

The ground circuit for the coil within the ASD relay is controlled by the Powertrain Control Module (PCM). The PCM operates the ASD relay by switching its ground circuit on and off.

The ASD relay will be shut-down, meaning the 12-volt power supply to the ASD relay will be de-activated by the PCM if:

- the ignition key is left in the ON position. This is if the engine has not been running for approximately 1.8 seconds.
- there is a crankshaft position sensor signal to the PCM that is lower than pre-determined values.

#### OPERATION - ASD SENSE - PCM INPUT

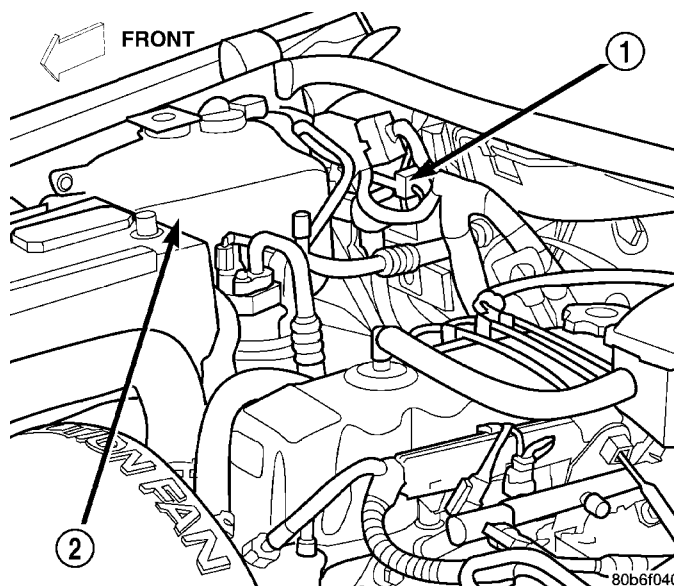
A 12 volt signal at this input indicates to the PCM that the ASD has been activated. The relay is used to connect the oxygen sensor heater element, ignition coil and fuel injectors to 12 volt + power supply.

This input is used only to sense that the ASD relay is energized. If the Powertrain Control Module (PCM) does not see 12 volts at this input when the ASD should be activated, it will set a Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC).

### REMOVAL

The ASD relay is located in the Power Distribution Center (PDC) (Fig. 1). Refer to label on PDC cover for relay location.

- (1) Remove PDC cover.
- (2) Remove relay from PDC.
- (3) Check condition of relay terminals and PDC connector terminals for damage or corrosion. Repair if necessary before installing relay.
- (4) Check for pin height (pin height should be the same for all terminals within the PDC connector). Repair if necessary before installing relay.



**Fig. 1 Power Distribution Center (PDC) Location**

- 1 - PCM  
2 - COOLANT TANK

### INSTALLATION

The ASD relay is located in the Power Distribution Center (PDC) (Fig. 1). Refer to label on PDC cover for relay location.

- (1) Install relay to PDC.
- (2) Install cover to PDC.

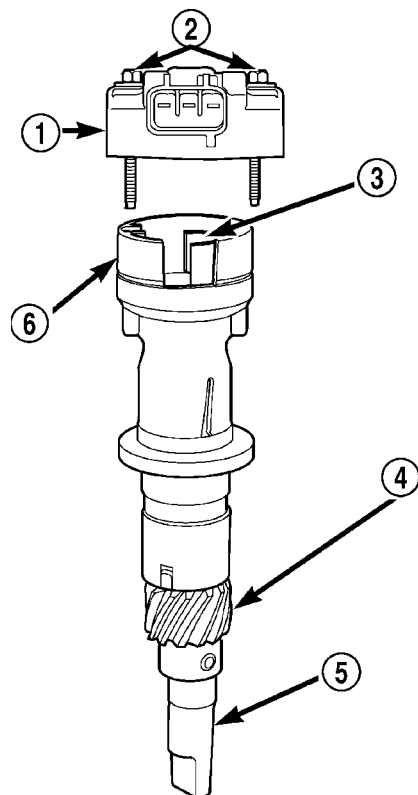


## CAMSHAFT POSITION SENSOR

### DESCRIPTION

#### DESCRIPTION - 4.0L

The Camshaft Position Sensor (CMP) on the 4.0L 6-cylinder engine is bolted to the top of the oil pump drive shaft assembly (Fig. 2). The sensor and drive shaft assembly is located on the right side of the engine near the oil filter (Fig. 3).



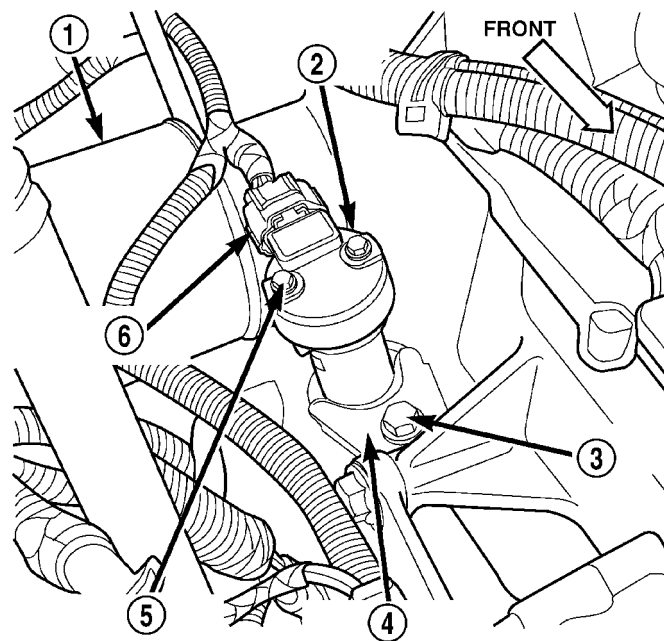
80b76ff3

**Fig. 2 CMP and Oil Pump Drive Shaft—4.0L Engine**

- 1 - CAMSHAFT POSITION SENSOR
- 2 - MOUNTING BOLTS (2)
- 3 - PULSE RING
- 4 - DRIVE GEAR (TO CAMSHAFT)
- 5 - OIL PUMP DRIVESHAFT
- 6 - SENSOR BASE (OIL PUMP DRIVESHAFT ASSEMBLY)

#### DESCRIPTION - 4.7L

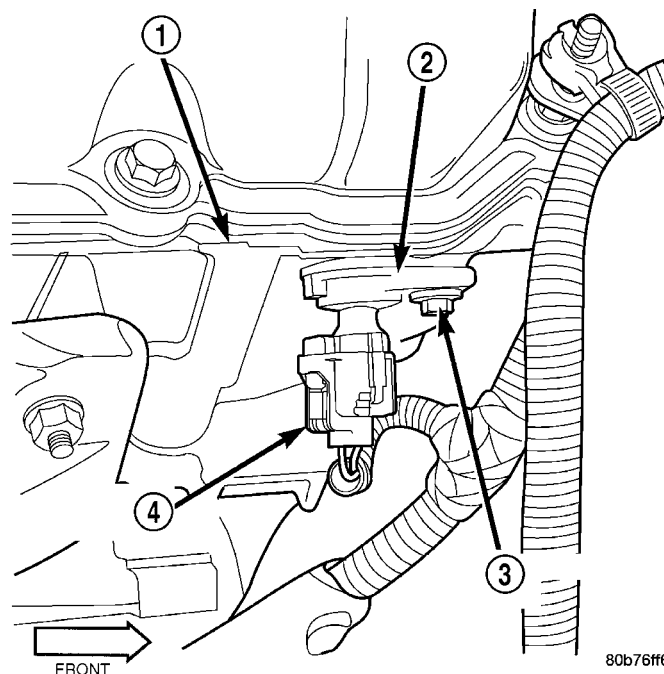
The Camshaft Position Sensor (CMP) on the 4.7L V-8 engine is bolted to the front/top of the right cylinder head (Fig. 4).



80b76ff4

**Fig. 3 CMP Location—4.0L Engine**

- 1 - OIL FILTER
- 2 - CAMSHAFT POSITION SENSOR
- 3 - CLAMP BOLT
- 4 - HOLD-DOWN CLAMP
- 5 - MOUNTING BOLTS (2)
- 6 - ELEC. CONNECTOR



80b76ff6

**Fig. 4 CMP Location—4.7L Engine**

- 1 - RIGHT CYLINDER HEAD
- 2 - CAMSHAFT POSITION SENSOR
- 3 - MOUNTING BOLT
- 4 - ELEC. CONNECTOR

## CAMSHAFT POSITION SENSOR (Continued)

## OPERATION

## OPERATION - 4.0L

The CMP sensor contains a hall effect device called a sync signal generator to generate a fuel sync signal. This sync signal generator detects a rotating pulse ring (shutter) on the oil pump drive shaft (Fig. 2). The pulse ring rotates 180 degrees through the sync signal generator. Its signal is used in conjunction with the crankshaft position sensor to differentiate between fuel injection and spark events. It is also used to synchronize the fuel injectors with their respective cylinders.

When the leading edge of the pulse ring (shutter) enters the sync signal generator, the following occurs: The interruption of magnetic field causes the voltage to switch high resulting in a sync signal of approximately 5 volts.

When the trailing edge of the pulse ring (shutter) leaves the sync signal generator, the following occurs: The change of the magnetic field causes the sync signal voltage to switch low to 0 volts.

## OPERATION - 4.7L

The CMP sensor contains a hall effect device called a sync signal generator to generate a fuel sync signal. This sync signal generator detects notches located on a tonewheel. The tonewheel is located at the front of the camshaft for the right cylinder head (Fig. 5). As the

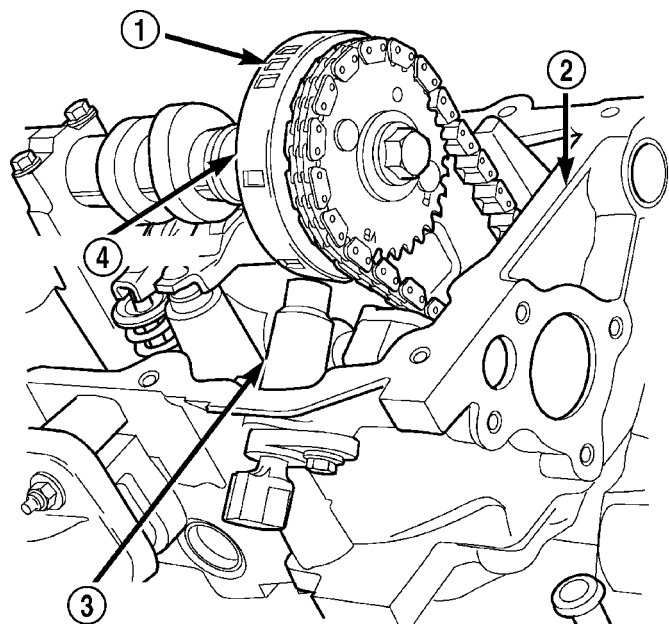
tonewheel rotates, the notches pass through the sync signal generator. The pattern of the notches (viewed counter-clockwise from front of engine) is: 1 notch, 2 notches, 3 notches, 3 notches, 2 notches 1 notch, 3 notches and 1 notch. The signal from the CMP sensor is used in conjunction with the crankshaft position sensor to differentiate between fuel injection and spark events. It is also used to synchronize the fuel injectors with their respective cylinders.

## REMOVAL

## REMOVAL - 4.0L

The Camshaft Position Sensor (CMP) on the 4.0L 6-cylinder engine is bolted to the top of the oil pump drive shaft assembly (Fig. 6). The sensor and drive shaft assembly is located on the right side of the engine near the oil filter (Fig. 7).

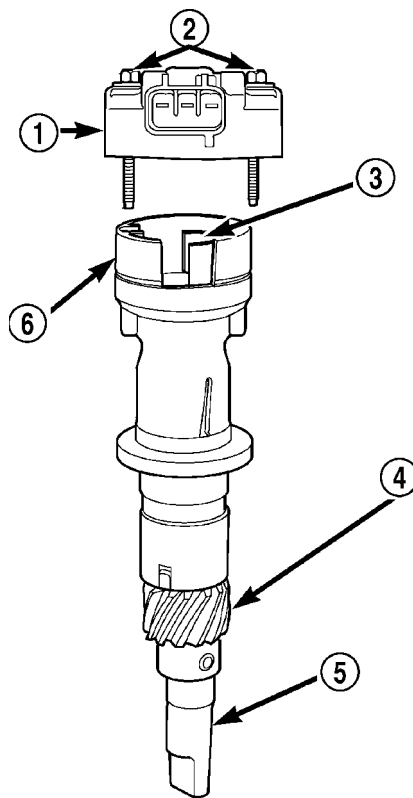
The rotational position of oil pump drive determines fuel synchronization only. It does not determine ignition timing.



80b76ff7

**Fig. 5 CMP Sensor and Tonewheel—4.7L Engine**

- 1 - NOTCHES
- 2 - RIGHT CYLINDER HEAD
- 3 - CAMSHAFT POSITION SENSOR
- 4 - TONEWHEEL



80b76ff3

**Fig. 6 CMP and Oil Pump Drive Shaft - 4.0L Engine**

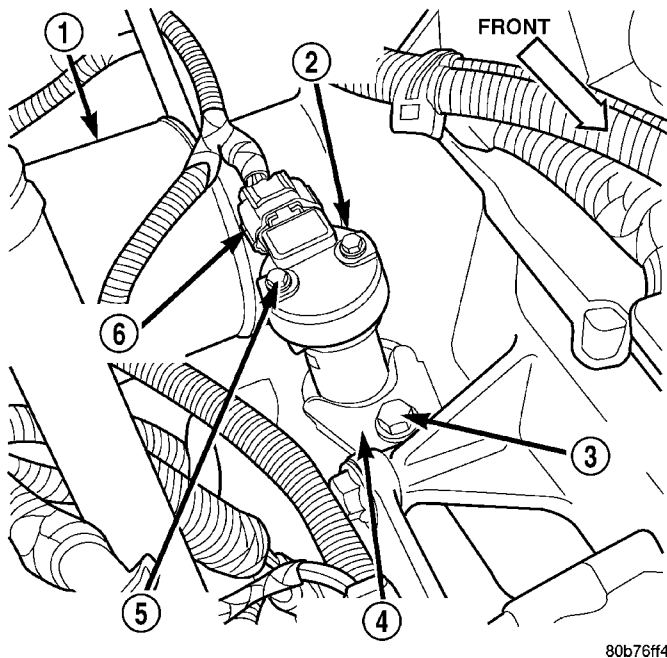
- 1 - CAMSHAFT POSITION SENSOR
- 2 - MOUNTING BOLTS (2)
- 3 - PULSE RING
- 4 - DRIVE GEAR (TO CAMSHAFT)
- 5 - OIL PUMP DRIVESHAFT
- 6 - SENSOR BASE (OIL PUMP DRIVESHAFT ASSEMBLY)

## CAMSHAFT POSITION SENSOR (Continued)

**NOTE:** Do not attempt to rotate the oil pump drive to modify ignition timing.

**Two different procedures** are used for removal and installation. The first procedure will detail removal and installation of the sensor only. The second procedure will detail removal and installation of the sensor and oil pump drive shaft assembly. The second procedure is to be used if the engine has been disassembled.

An internal oil seal is used in the drive shaft housing that prevents engine oil at the bottom of the sensor. The seal is not serviceable.



**Fig. 7 CMP Location - 4.0L Engine**

- 1 - OIL FILTER
- 2 - CAMSHAFT POSITION SENSOR
- 3 - CLAMP BOLT
- 4 - HOLD-DOWN CLAMP
- 5 - MOUNTING BOLTS (2)
- 6 - ELEC. CONNECTOR

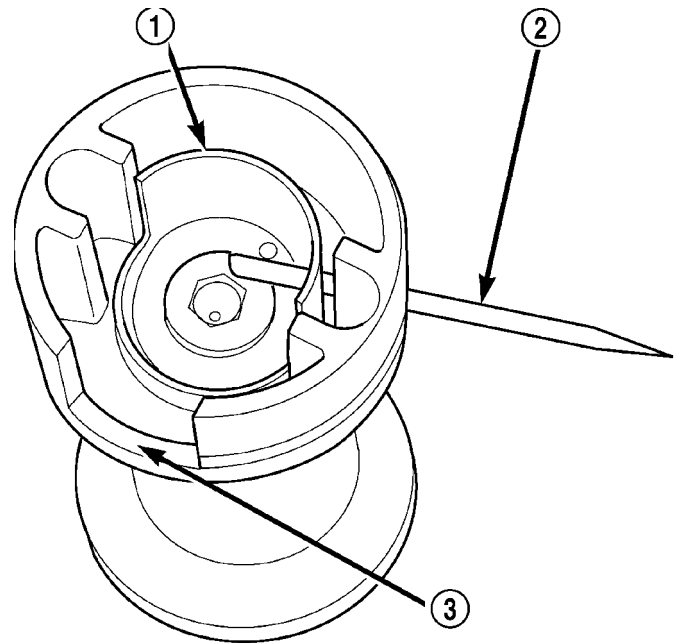
## SENSOR ONLY - 4.0L

- (1) Disconnect electrical connector at CMP sensor (Fig. 7).
- (2) Remove 2 sensor mounting bolts (Fig. 6) or (Fig. 7).
- (3) Remove sensor from oil pump drive.

## OIL PUMP DRIVE AND SENSOR - 4.0L

**If the CMP and oil pump drive are to be removed and installed, do not allow engine crankshaft or camshaft to rotate. CMP sensor relationship will be lost.**

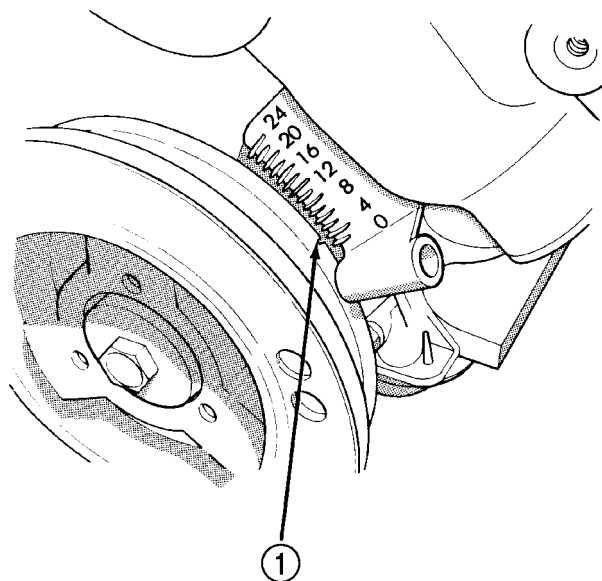
- (1) Disconnect electrical connector at CMP sensor (Fig. 7).



80b76ff5

**Fig. 8 CMP Pulse Ring Alignment - 4.0L Engine**

- 1 - PULSE RING (SHUTTER)
- 2 - TOOTHPICK
- 3 - SENSOR BASE (OIL PUMP DRIVESHAFT ASSEMBLY)



J898D-14

**Fig. 9 Align Timing Marks - 4.0L Engine**

- 1 - CRANKSHAFT VIBRATION DAMPER TIMING MARK
- (2) Remove 2 sensor mounting bolts (Fig. 6) or (Fig. 7).
  - (3) Remove sensor from oil pump drive.
  - (4) Before proceeding to next step, mark and note rotational position of oil pump drive in relationship

## CAMSHAFT POSITION SENSOR (Continued)

to engine block. After installation, the CMP sensor should face rear of engine 0°.

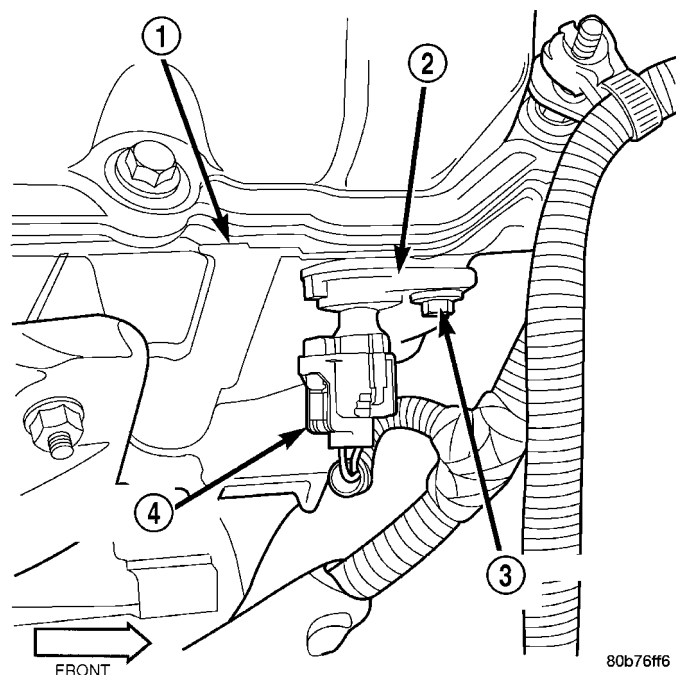
(5) Remove hold-down bolt and clamp (Fig. 7).

(6) While pulling assembly from engine, note direction and position of pulse ring (Fig. 6). After removal, look down into top of oil pump and note direction and position of slot at top of oil pump gear.

(7) Remove and discard old oil pump drive-to-engine block gasket.

## REMOVAL - 4.7L

The Camshaft Position Sensor (CMP) on the 4.7L V-8 engine is bolted to the front/top of the right cylinder head (Fig. 10).



**Fig. 10 CMP Location—4.7L Engine**

- 1 - RIGHT CYLINDER HEAD
- 2 - CAMSHAFT POSITION SENSOR
- 3 - MOUNTING BOLT
- 4 - ELEC. CONNECTOR

It is easier to remove/install sensor from under vehicle.

- (1) Raise and support vehicle.
- (2) Disconnect electrical connector at CMP sensor (Fig. 10).
- (3) Remove sensor mounting bolt (Fig. 10).
- (4) Carefully twist sensor from cylinder head.

**Some 4.7L engines are equipped with a sensor spacer shim. If equipped, this shim will be located at sensor bolt hole between cylinder head and sensor mounting tang (TSB W08-18-00). Save this shim for sensor installation.**

- (5) Check condition of sensor o-ring.

## INSTALLATION

## INSTALLATION - 4.0L

## SENSOR ONLY - 4.0L

The Camshaft Position Sensor (CMP) on the 4.0L 6-cylinder engine is bolted to the top of the oil pump drive shaft assembly (Fig. 6). The sensor and drive shaft assembly is located on the right side of the engine near the oil filter (Fig. 7).

- (1) Install sensor to oil pump drive.
- (2) Install 2 sensor mounting bolts and tighten to 2 N·m (15 in. lbs.) torque.
- (3) Connect electrical connector to CMP sensor.

## OIL PUMP DRIVE AND SENSOR - 4.0L

(1) Clean oil pump drive mounting hole area of engine block.

(2) Install new oil pump drive-to-engine block gasket.

(3) Temporarily install a toothpick or similar tool through access hole at side of oil pump drive housing. Align toothpick into mating hole on pulse ring (Fig. 8).

(4) Install oil pump drive into engine while aligning into slot on oil pump. Rotate oil pump drive back to its original position and install hold-down clamp and bolt. Finger tighten bolt. Do not do a final tightening of bolt at this time.

(5) If engine crankshaft or camshaft has been rotated, such as during engine tear-down, CMP sensor relationship must be reestablished.

(a) Remove ignition coil rail assembly. Refer to Ignition Coil Removal/Installation.

(b) Remove cylinder number 1 spark plug.

(c) Hold a finger over the open spark plug hole. Rotate engine at vibration dampener bolt until compression (pressure) is felt.

(d) Slowly continue to rotate engine. Do this until timing index mark on vibration damper pulley aligns with top dead center (TDC) mark (0 degree) on timing degree scale (Fig. 9). Always rotate engine in direction of normal rotation. Do not rotate engine backward to align timing marks.

(e) Install oil pump drive into engine while aligning into slot on oil pump. If pump drive will not drop down flush to engine block, the oil pump slot is not aligned. Remove oil pump drive and align slot in oil pump to shaft at bottom of drive. Install into engine. Rotate oil pump drive back to its original position and install hold-down clamp and bolt. Finger tighten bolt. Do not do a final tightening of bolt at this time.

(f) Remove toothpick from housing.

(6) Install sensor to oil pump drive. After installation, the CMP sensor should face rear of engine 0°.



## CAMSHAFT POSITION SENSOR (Continued)

(7) Install 2 sensor mounting bolts and tighten to 2 N·m (15 in. lbs.) torque.

(8) Connect electrical connector to CMP sensor.

(9) If removed, install spark plug and ignition coil rail.

To verify correct rotational position of oil pump drive, the DRB scan tool must be used.

**WARNING: WHEN PERFORMING THE FOLLOWING TEST, THE ENGINE WILL BE RUNNING. BE CAREFUL NOT TO STAND IN LINE WITH THE FAN BLADES OR FAN BELT. DO NOT WEAR LOOSE CLOTHING.**

(10) Connect DRB scan tool to data link connector. The data link connector is located in passenger compartment, below and to left of steering column.

(11) Gain access to SET SYNC screen on DRB.

(12) Follow directions on DRB screen and start engine. Bring to operating temperature (engine must be in "closed loop" mode).

(13) With engine running at **idle speed**, the words **IN RANGE** should appear on screen along with 0°. This indicates correct position of oil pump drive.

(14) If a plus (+) or a minus (-) is displayed next to degree number, and/or the degree displayed is not zero, loosen but do not remove hold-down clamp bolt. Rotate oil pump drive until **IN RANGE** appears on screen. Continue to rotate oil pump drive until achieving as close to 0° as possible.

The degree scale on SET SYNC screen of DRB is referring to fuel synchronization only. **It is not referring to ignition timing.** Because of this, do not attempt to adjust ignition timing using this method. Rotating oil pump drive will have no effect on ignition timing. All ignition timing values are controlled by powertrain control module (PCM).

(15) Tighten hold-down clamp bolt to 23 N·m (17 ft. lbs.) torque.

## INSTALLATION - 4.7L

The Camshaft Position Sensor (CMP) on the 4.7L V-8 engine is bolted to the front/top of the right cylinder head (Fig. 10).

(1) Clean out machined hole in cylinder head.

(2) Apply a small amount of engine oil to sensor o-ring.

(3) Install sensor into cylinder head with a slight rocking action. Do not twist sensor into position as damage to o-ring may result.

**CAUTION: Before tightening sensor mounting bolt, be sure sensor is completely flush to cylinder head. If sensor is not flush, damage to sensor mounting tang may result.**

(4) Install mounting bolt and tighten to 12 N·m (106 in. lbs.) torque.

(5) Connect electrical connector to sensor.

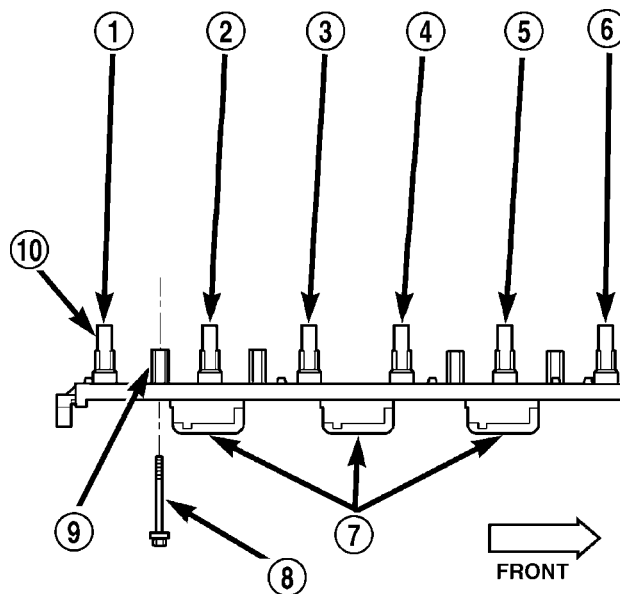
(6) Lower vehicle.

## COIL RAIL

## DESCRIPTION

A one-piece coil rail assembly containing three individual coils is used on the 4.0L 6-cylinder engine (Fig. 11). The coil rail must be replaced as one assembly. The bottom of the coil is equipped with 6 individual rubber boots (Fig. 11) to seal the 6 spark plugs to the coil. Inside each rubber boot is a spring. The spring is used for a mechanical contact between the coil and the top of the spark plug. These rubber boots and springs are a permanent part of the coil and are not serviced separately.

(1) The coil is bolted directly to the cylinder head (Fig. 12). One electrical connector (located at rear of coil) is used for all three coils.



80be45c1

**Fig. 11 Ignition Coil Assembly—4.0L 6-Cylinder Engine**

- 1 - CYL. #6
- 2 - CYL. #5
- 3 - CYL. #4
- 4 - CYL. #3
- 5 - CYL. #2
- 6 - CYL. #1
- 7 - COILS (3)
- 8 - MOUNTING BOLTS (4)
- 9 - BOLT BASES (4)
- 10 - RUBBER BOOTS (6)



## COIL RAIL (Continued)

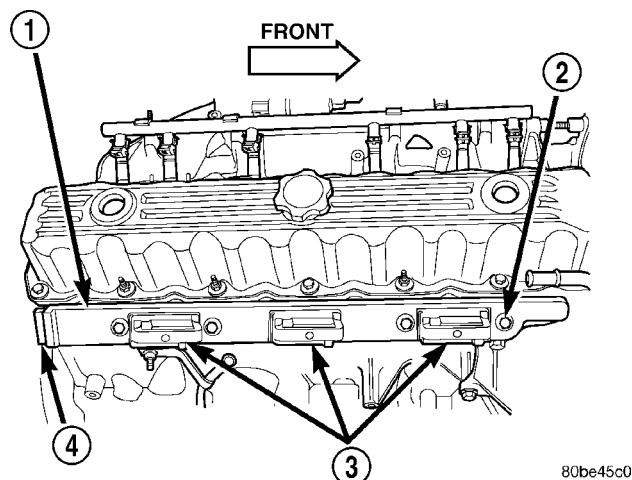


Fig. 12 Coil Location—4.0L Engine

- 1 - COIL RAIL
- 2 - COIL MOUNTING BOLTS (4)
- 3 - COIL
- 4 - COIL ELECTRICAL CONNECTION

## OPERATION

Although cylinder firing order is the same as 4.0L Jeep engines of previous years, spark plug firing is not. The 3 coils dual-fire the spark plugs on cylinders 1-6, 2-5 and/or 3-4. When one cylinder is being fired (on compression stroke), the spark to the opposite cylinder is being wasted (on exhaust stroke).

Battery voltage is supplied to the three ignition coils from the ASD relay. The Powertrain Control Module (PCM) opens and closes the ignition coil ground circuit for ignition coil operation.

**Base ignition timing is not adjustable.** By controlling the coil ground circuit, the PCM is able to set the base timing and adjust the ignition timing advance. This is done to meet changing engine operating conditions.

The ignition coil is not oil filled. The windings are embedded in an epoxy compound. This provides heat and vibration resistance that allows the ignition coil to be mounted on the engine.

Because of coil design, spark plug cables (secondary cables) are not used. The cables are integral within the coil rail.

## REMOVAL

A one-piece coil rail assembly containing three individual coils is used on the 4.0L engine (Fig. 13). The coil rail must be replaced as one assembly. The bottom of the coil is equipped with 6 individual rubber boots (Fig. 13) to seal the 6 spark plugs to the coil. Inside each rubber boot is a spring. The spring is used for an electrical contact between the coil and the top of the spark plug. These rubber boots and springs are a permanent part of the coil and are not serviced separately.

- (1) Disconnect negative battery cable at battery.
- (2) The coil is bolted directly to the cylinder head. Remove 4 coil mounting bolts (Fig. 14).

(3) Carefully pry up coil assembly from spark plugs. Do this by prying alternately at each end of coil until rubber boots have disengaged from all spark plugs. If boots will not release from spark plugs, use a commercially available spark plug boot removal tool. Twist and loosen a few boots from a few spark plugs to help remove coil.

(4) After coil has cleared spark plugs, position coil for access to primary electrical connector. Disconnect connector from coil by pushing slide tab outwards to right side of vehicle (Fig. 15). After slide tab has been positioned outwards, push in on secondary release lock (Fig. 15) on side of connector and pull connector from coil.

- (5) Remove coil from vehicle.

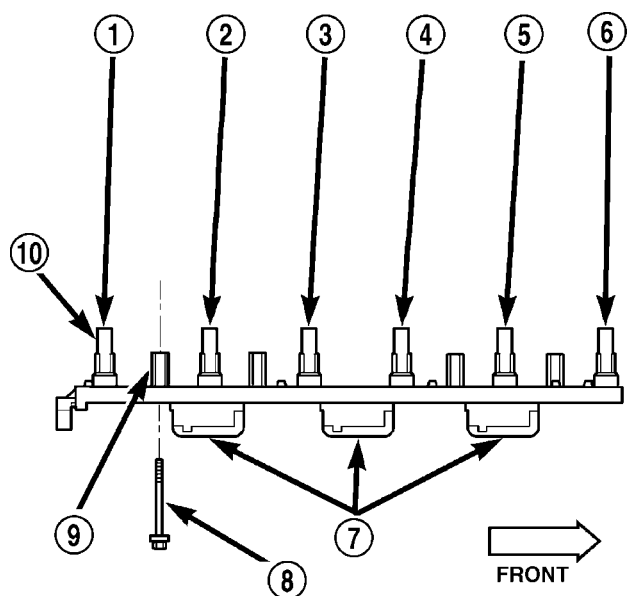


Fig. 13 Ignition Coil Assembly—4.0L 6-Cylinder Engine

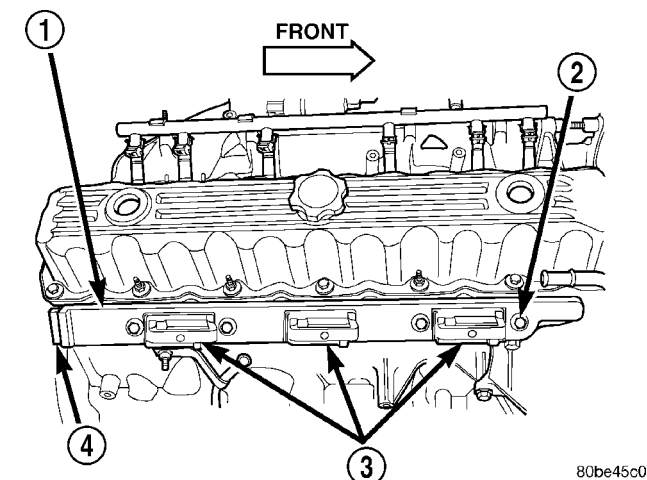
- 1 - CYL. #6
- 2 - CYL. #5
- 3 - CYL. #4
- 4 - CYL. #3
- 5 - CYL. #2
- 6 - CYL. #1
- 7 - COILS (3)
- 8 - MOUNTING BOLTS (4)
- 9 - BOLT BASES (4)
- 10 - RUBBER BOOTS (6)

## INSTALLATION

(1) Connect engine harness connector to coil by snapping into position. Move slide tab towards engine (Fig. 15) for a positive lock.

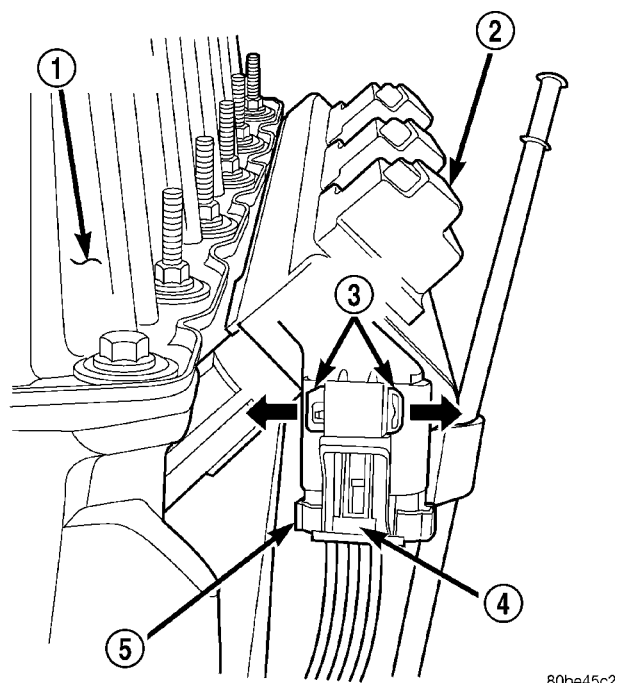
(2) Position ignition coil rubber boots to all spark plugs. Push down on coil assembly until bolt bases have contacted cylinder head

## COIL RAIL (Continued)



**Fig. 14 Ignition Coil Rail Location—4.0L 6-Cylinder Engine**

- 1 - COIL RAIL
- 2 - COIL MOUNTING BOLTS (4)
- 3 - COIL
- 4 - COIL ELECTRICAL CONNECTION



**Fig. 15 Ignition Coil Electrical Connector—4.0L 6-Cylinder Engine**

- 1 - REAR OF VALVE COVER
- 2 - COIL RAIL
- 3 - SLIDE TAB
- 4 - RELEASE LOCK
- 5 - COIL CONNECTOR

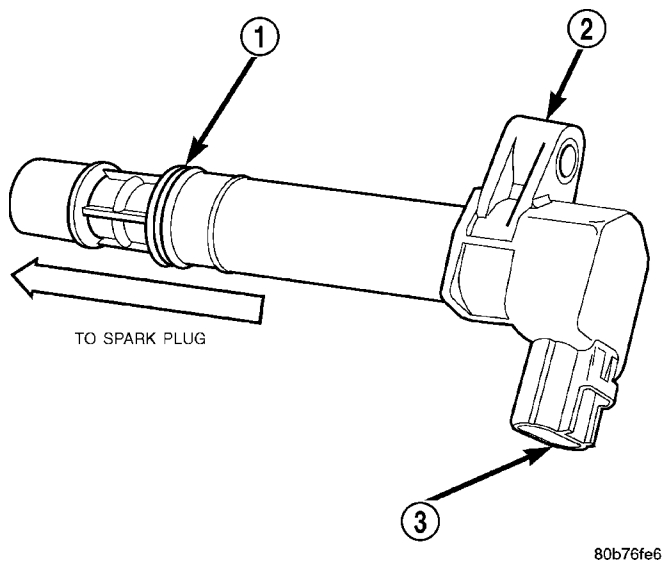
(3) Install 4 coil mounting bolts. Loosely tighten 4 bolts just enough to allow bolt bases to contact cylinder head. Do a final tightening of each bolt in steps down to 29 N·m (250 in. lbs.) torque. Do not apply full torque to any bolt first.

(4) Connect negative battery cable to battery.

## IGNITION COIL

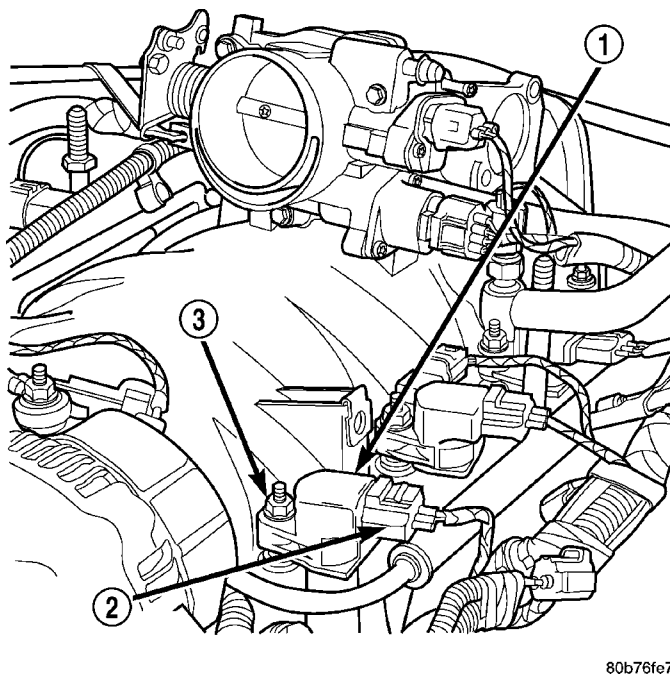
## DESCRIPTION

The 4.7L V-8 engine uses 8 dedicated, and individually fired coil (Fig. 16) for each spark plug. Each coil is mounted directly to the top of each spark plug (Fig. 17).



**Fig. 16 Ignition Coil—4.7L Engine**

- 1 - O-RING
- 2 - IGNITION COIL
- 3 - ELECTRICAL CONNECTOR



**Fig. 17 Ignition Coil Location—4.7L Engine**

- 1 - IGNITION COIL
- 2 - COIL ELECTRICAL CONNECTOR
- 3 - COIL MOUNTING STUD/NUT

## IGNITION COIL (Continued)

## OPERATION

Battery voltage is supplied to the 8 ignition coils from the ASD relay. The Powertrain Control Module (PCM) opens and closes each ignition coil ground circuit at a determined time for ignition coil operation.

**Base ignition timing is not adjustable.** By controlling the coil ground circuit, the PCM is able to set the base timing and adjust the ignition timing advance. This is done to meet changing engine operating conditions.

The ignition coil is not oil filled. The windings are embedded in an epoxy compound. This provides heat and vibration resistance that allows the ignition coil to be mounted on the engine.

Because of coil design, spark plug cables (secondary cables) are not used.

## REMOVAL

An individual ignition coil is used for each spark plug (Fig. 18). The coil fits into machined holes in the cylinder head. A mounting stud/nut secures each coil to the top of the intake manifold (Fig. 19). The bottom of the coil is equipped with a rubber boot to seal the spark plug to the coil. Inside each rubber boot is a spring. The spring is used for a mechanical contact between the coil and the top of the spark plug. These rubber boots and springs are a permanent part of the coil and are not serviced separately. An o-ring (Fig. 18) is used to seal the coil at the opening into the cylinder head.

(1) Depending on which coil is being removed, the throttle body air intake tube or intake box may need to be removed to gain access to coil.

(2) Disconnect electrical connector (Fig. 19) from coil by pushing downward on release lock on top of connector and pull connector from coil.

(3) Clean area at base of coil with compressed air before removal.

(4) Remove coil mounting nut from mounting stud (Fig. 19).

(5) Carefully pull up coil from cylinder head opening with a slight twisting action.

(6) Remove coil from vehicle.

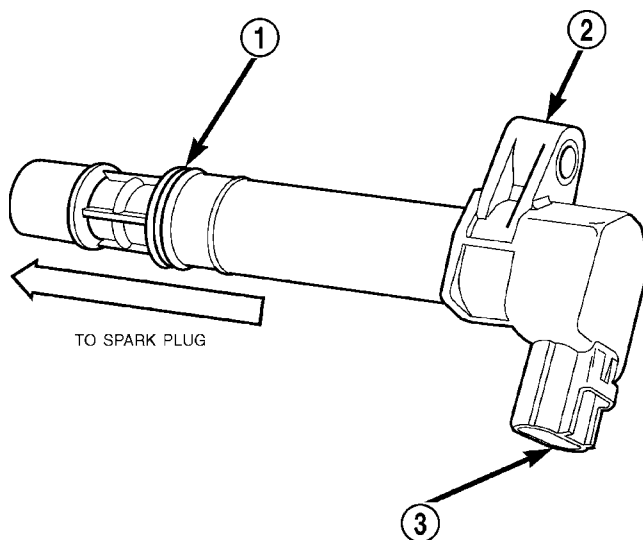
## INSTALLATION

(1) Using compressed air, blow out any dirt or contaminants from around top of spark plug.

(2) Check condition of coil o-ring and replace as necessary. To aid in coil installation, apply silicone to coil o-ring.

(3) Position ignition coil into cylinder head opening and push onto spark plug. Do this while guiding coil base over mounting stud.

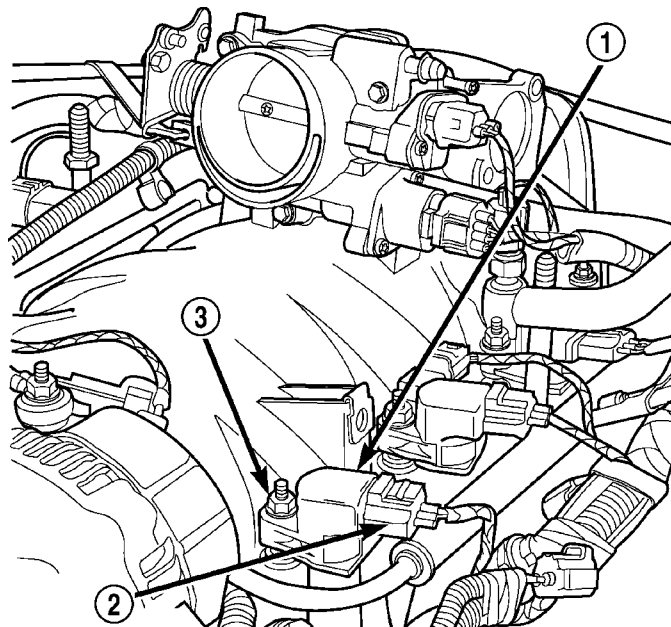
(4) Install mounting stud nut and tighten to 8 N·m (70 in. lbs.) torque.



80b76fe6

Fig. 18 Ignition Coil—4.7L V-8

- 1 - O-RING
- 2 - IGNITION COIL
- 3 - ELECTRICAL CONNECTOR



80b76fe7

Fig. 19 Ignition Coil

- 1 - IGNITION COIL
- 2 - COIL ELECTRICAL CONNECTOR
- 3 - COIL MOUNTING STUD/NUT

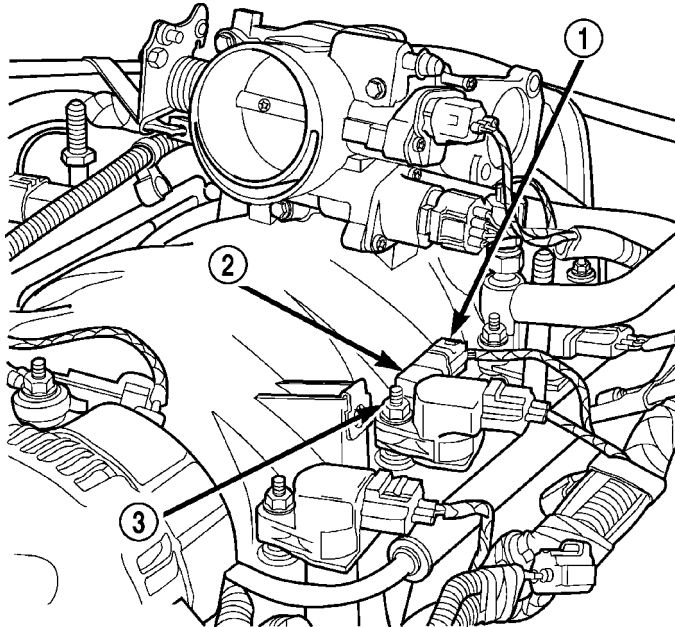
(5) Connect electrical connector to coil by snapping into position.

(6) If necessary, install throttle body air tube or box.

## IGNITION COIL CAPACITOR

### DESCRIPTION

Two coil capacitors are used. One of them is located near the center of, and on the left side of the intake manifold (Fig. 20). The other capacitor is located near the center of, and on the right side of the intake manifold.



80be45c7

**Fig. 20 Coil Capacitor (Left Side Shown)**

- 1 - ELECTRICAL CONNECTOR
- 2 - COIL CAPACITOR
- 3 - MOUNTING NUT

### OPERATION

The 2 coil capacitors are used to prevent high-voltage spikes from interfering with the operation of certain powertrain sensors. They are also used to help prevent radio interference.

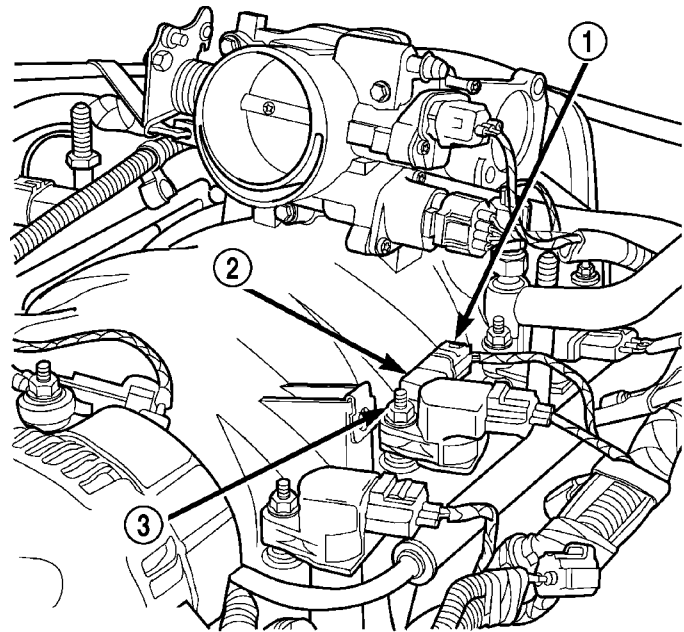
### REMOVAL

Two coil capacitors are used. One of them is located near the center of, and on the left side of the intake manifold (Fig. 21). The other capacitor is located near the center of, and on the right side of the intake manifold.

- (1) Disconnect electrical connector at coil capacitor (Fig. 21).
- (2) Remove mounting nut.
- (3) Remove capacitor from mounting stud.

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Position capacitor to manifold mounting stud.
- (2) Install nut and tighten to 8 N·m (70 in. lbs.) torque.



80be45c7

**Fig. 21 Coil Capacitor (Left Side Shown)**

- 1 - ELECTRICAL CONNECTOR
- 2 - COIL CAPACITOR
- 3 - MOUNTING NUT

(3) Connect electrical connector to capacitor (Fig. 21).

## KNOCK SENSOR

### DESCRIPTION

#### 4.7L High-Output Engine

The 2 knock sensors are bolted into the cylinder block under the intake manifold.

### OPERATION

#### 4.7L High-Output Engine

Two knock sensors are used on the 4.7L V-8 engine if equipped with the high-output package; one for each cylinder bank. When the knock sensor detects a knock in one of the cylinders on the corresponding bank, it sends an input signal to the Powertrain Control Module (PCM). In response, the PCM retards ignition timing for all cylinders by a scheduled amount.

Knock sensors contain a piezoelectric material which constantly vibrates and sends an input voltage (signal) to the PCM while the engine operates. As the intensity of the crystal's vibration increases, the knock sensor output voltage also increases.

The voltage signal produced by the knock sensor increases with the amplitude of vibration. The PCM



## KNOCK SENSOR (Continued)

receives the knock sensor voltage signal as an input. If the signal rises above a predetermined level, the PCM will store that value in memory and retard ignition timing to reduce engine knock. If the knock sensor voltage exceeds a preset value, the PCM retards ignition timing for all cylinders. It is not a selective cylinder retard.

The PCM ignores knock sensor input during engine idle conditions. Once the engine speed exceeds a specified value, knock retard is allowed.

Knock retard uses its own short term and long term memory program.

Long term memory stores previous detonation information in its battery-backed RAM. The maximum authority that long term memory has over timing retard can be calibrated.

Short term memory is allowed to retard timing up to a preset amount under all operating conditions (as long as rpm is above the minimum rpm) except at Wide Open Throttle (WOT). The PCM, using short term memory, can respond quickly to retard timing when engine knock is detected. Short term memory is lost any time the ignition key is turned off.

**NOTE:** Over or under tightening the sensor mounting bolts will affect knock sensor performance, possibly causing improper spark control. Always use the specified torque when installing the knock sensors.

## REMOVAL

## 4.7L High-Output Engine Only

The 2 knock sensors are bolted into the cylinder block under the intake manifold (Fig. 22).

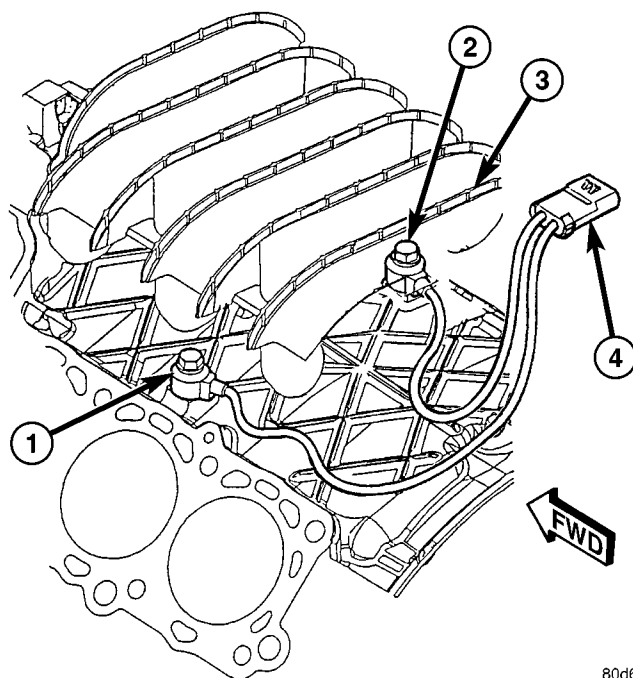
**NOTE:** The left sensor is identified by an identification tag (LEFT). It is also identified by a larger bolt head. The Powertrain Control Module (PCM) must have and know the correct sensor left/right positions. Do not mix the sensor locations.

(1) Disconnect knock sensor dual pigtail harness connector from engine wiring harness connector. This connection is made near the right/rear of intake manifold (Fig. 23).

(2) Remove intake manifold. Refer to Engine section.

(3) Remove sensor mounting bolts (Fig. 22). Note foam strip on bolt threads. This foam is used only to retain the bolts to sensors for plant assembly. It is not used as a sealant. Do not apply any adhesive, sealant or thread locking compound to these bolts.

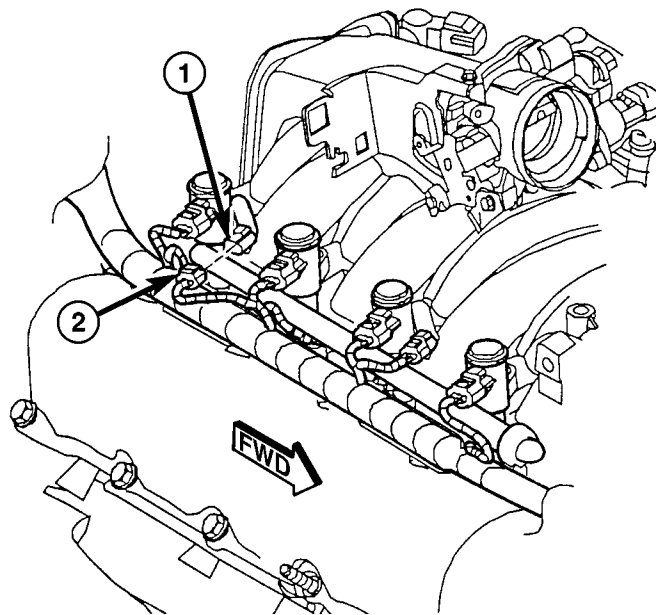
(4) Remove sensors from engine.



80d664c5

**Fig. 22 KNOCK SENSOR LOCATION - 4.7L H.O.**

- 1 - KNOCK SENSORS (2)
- 2 - MOUNTING BOLTS
- 3 - INTAKE MANIFOLD (CUTAWAY)
- 4 - PIGTAIL CONNECTOR



80d664cf

**Fig. 23 KNOCK SENSOR ELEC. CONNECTOR - 4.7L H.O.**

- 1 - KNOCK SENSOR PIGTAIL HARNESS CONNECTOR
- 2 - ENGINE WIRING HARNESS



## KNOCK SENSOR (Continued)

## INSTALLATION

## 4.7L High-Output Engine Only

**NOTE:** The left sensor is identified by an identification tag (LEFT). It is also identified by a larger bolt head. The Powertrain Control Module (PCM) must have and know the correct sensor left/right positions. Do not mix the sensor locations.

- (1) Thoroughly clean knock sensor mounting holes.
- (2) Install sensors (Fig. 22) into cylinder block.

**NOTE:** Over or under tightening the sensor mounting bolts will affect knock sensor performance, possibly causing improper spark control. Always use the specified torque when installing the knock sensors. The torque for the knock sensor bolt is relatively light for an 8mm bolt.

**NOTE:** Note foam strip on bolt threads. This foam is used only to retain the bolts to sensors for plant assembly. It is not used as a sealant. Do not apply any adhesive, sealant or thread locking compound to these bolts.

- (3) Install and tighten mounting bolts. **Bolt torque is critical.** Refer to torque specification.
- (4) Install intake manifold. Refer to Engine section.
- (5) Connect knock sensor pigtail wiring harness to engine wiring harness near right / rear of intake manifold (Fig. 23).

## SPARK PLUG

## DESCRIPTION

Both the 4.0L 6-cylinder and the 4.7L V-8 engine use resistor type spark plugs. Standard 4.7L V-8 engines are equipped with "fired in suppressor seal" type spark plugs using a copper core ground electrode. High-Output (H.O.) 4.7L V-8 engines are equipped with unique plugs using a platinum rivet located on the tip of the center electrode.

Because of the use of an aluminum cylinder head on the 4.7L engine, spark plug torque is very critical.

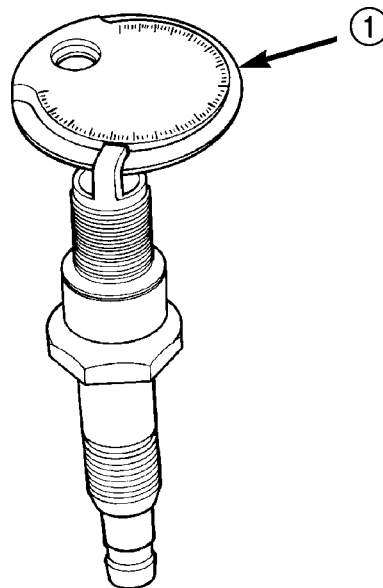
To prevent possible pre-ignition and/or mechanical engine damage, the correct type/heat range/number spark plug must be used. **Do not substitute any other spark plug on the 4.7L H.O. engine. Serious engine damage may occur.**

Plugs on both engines have resistance values ranging from 6,000 to 20,000 ohms (when checked with at least a 1000 volt spark plug tester). **Do not use an ohmmeter to check the resistance values of the spark plugs. Inaccurate readings will result.** Remove the spark plugs and examine them for burned electrodes and fouled, cracked or broken porcelain insulators. Keep plugs arranged in the order in which they were removed from the engine. A single plug displaying an abnormal condition indicates that a problem exists in the corresponding cylinder. Replace spark plugs at the intervals recommended in Group O, Lubrication and Maintenance.

**EXCEPT 4.7L H.O. ENGINE :** Spark plugs that have low mileage may be cleaned and reused if not otherwise defective, carbon or oil fouled. Also refer to Spark Plug Conditions. **4.7L H.O. ENGINE :** Never clean spark plugs on the 4.7L H.O. engine. Damage to the platinum rivet will result.

**CAUTION: EXCEPT 4.7L H.O. ENGINE :** Never use a motorized wire wheel brush to clean the spark plugs. Metallic deposits will remain on the spark plug insulator and will cause plug misfire.

**H.O. Gap Adjustment:** If equipped with the 4.7L H.O. engine, do not use a wire-type gapping tool as damage to the platinum rivet on the center electrode may occur. Use a tapered-type gauge (Fig. 24).



803f5851

**Fig. 24 PLUG GAP - 4.7L H.O.**

1 - TAPER GAUGE

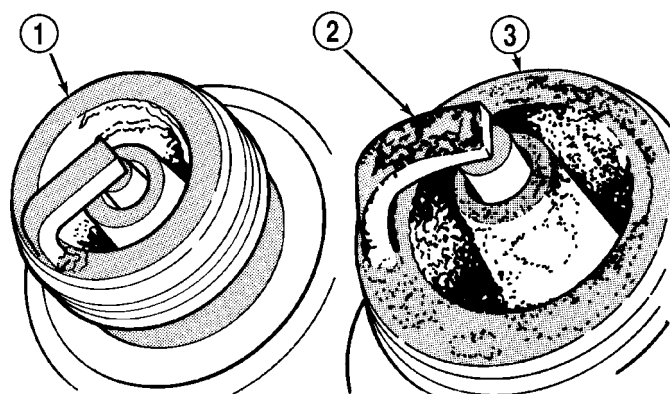
## SPARK PLUG (Continued)

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - SPARK PLUG CONDITIONS

## NORMAL OPERATING

The few deposits present on the spark plug will probably be light tan or slightly gray in color. This is evident with most grades of commercial gasoline (Fig. 25). There will not be evidence of electrode burning. Gap growth will not average more than approximately 0.025 mm (.001 in) per 3200 km (2000 miles) of operation.

Spark plugs **except platinum tipped** that have normal wear can usually be cleaned, have the electrodes filed, have the gap set and then be installed.



J908D-15

**Fig. 25 NORMAL OPERATION AND COLD (CARBON) FOULING**

- 1 - NORMAL
- 2 - DRY BLACK DEPOSITS
- 3 - COLD (CARBON) FOULING

Some fuel refiners in several areas of the United States have introduced a manganese additive (MMT) for unleaded fuel. During combustion, fuel with MMT causes the entire tip of the spark plug to be coated with a rust colored deposit. This rust color can be misdiagnosed as being caused by coolant in the combustion chamber. Spark plug performance may be affected by MMT deposits.

## COLD FOULING/CARBON FOULING

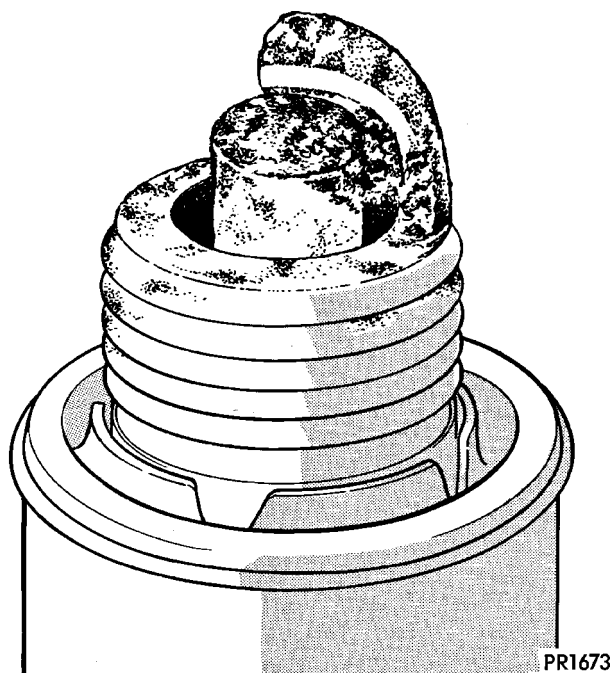
Cold fouling is sometimes referred to as carbon fouling. The deposits that cause cold fouling are basically carbon (Fig. 25). A dry, black deposit on one or two plugs in a set may be caused by sticking valves or defective spark plug cables. Cold (carbon) fouling of the entire set of spark plugs may be caused by a clogged air cleaner element or repeated short operating times (short trips).

## WET FOULING OR GAS FOULING

A spark plug coated with excessive wet fuel or oil is wet fouled. In older engines, worn piston rings, leaking valve guide seals or excessive cylinder wear can cause wet fouling. In new or recently overhauled engines, wet fouling may occur before break-in (normal oil control) is achieved. This condition can usually be resolved by cleaning and reinstalling the fouled plugs.

## OIL OR ASH ENCRUSTED

If one or more spark plugs are oil or oil ash encrusted (Fig. 26), evaluate engine condition for the cause of oil entry into that particular combustion chamber.



PR1673

**Fig. 26 OIL OR ASH ENCRUSTED**

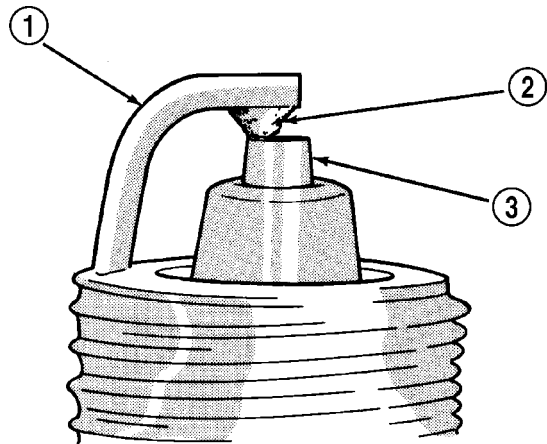
## ELECTRODE GAP BRIDGING

Electrode gap bridging may be traced to loose deposits in the combustion chamber. These deposits accumulate on the spark plugs during continuous stop-and-go driving. When the engine is suddenly subjected to a high torque load, deposits partially liquefy and bridge the gap between electrodes (Fig. 27). This short circuits the electrodes. Spark plugs with electrode gap bridging can be cleaned using standard procedures.

## SCAVENGER DEPOSITS

Fuel scavenger deposits may be either white or yellow (Fig. 28). They may appear to be harmful, but this is a normal condition caused by chemical additives in certain fuels. These additives are designed to change the chemical nature of deposits and decrease

## SPARK PLUG (Continued)

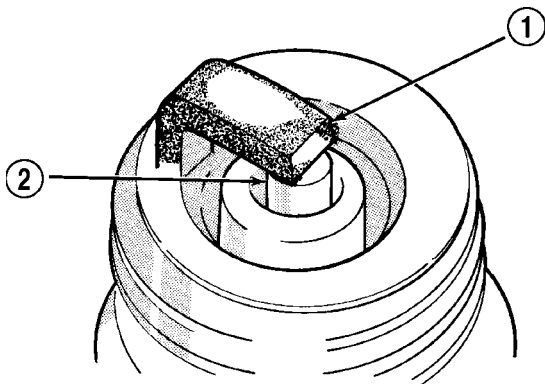


J908D-11

**Fig. 27 ELECTRODE GAP BRIDGING**

- 1 - GROUND ELECTRODE
- 2 - DEPOSITS
- 3 - CENTER ELECTRODE

spark plug misfire tendencies. Notice that accumulation on the ground electrode and shell area may be heavy, but the deposits are easily removed. Spark plugs with scavenger deposits can be considered normal in condition and can be cleaned using standard procedures.



J908D-12

**Fig. 28 SCAVENGER DEPOSITS**

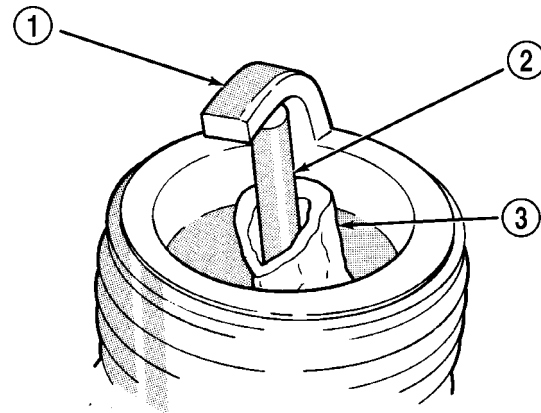
- 1 - GROUND ELECTRODE COVERED WITH WHITE OR YELLOW DEPOSITS
- 2 - CENTER ELECTRODE

**CHIPPED ELECTRODE INSULATOR**

A chipped electrode insulator usually results from bending the center electrode while adjusting the spark plug electrode gap. Under certain conditions, severe detonation can also separate the insulator from the center electrode (Fig. 29). Spark plugs with this condition must be replaced.

**PRE-IGNITION DAMAGE**

Pre-ignition damage is usually caused by excessive combustion chamber temperature. The center elec-



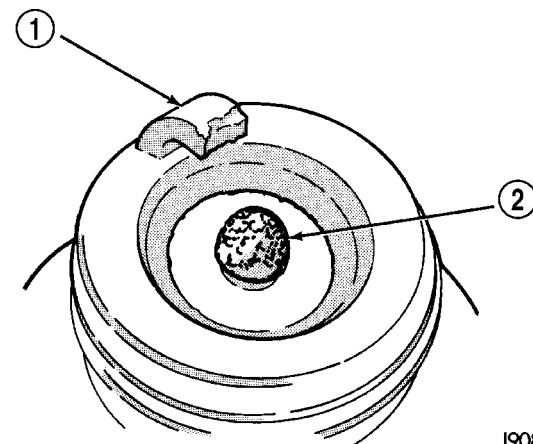
J908D-13

**Fig. 29 CHIPPED ELECTRODE INSULATOR**

- 1 - GROUND ELECTRODE
- 2 - CENTER ELECTRODE
- 3 - CHIPPED INSULATOR

trode dissolves first and the ground electrode dissolves somewhat latter (Fig. 30). Insulators appear relatively deposit free. Determine if the spark plug has the correct heat range rating for the engine. Determine if ignition timing is over advanced or if other operating conditions are causing engine overheating. (The heat range rating refers to the operating temperature of a particular type spark plug. Spark plugs are designed to operate within specific temperature ranges. This depends upon the thickness and length of the center electrodes porcelain insulator.)

**CAUTION:** If the engine is equipped with copper core ground electrode, or platinum tipped spark plugs, they must be replaced with the same type/number spark plug as the original. If another spark plug is substituted, pre-ignition will result.



J908D-14

**Fig. 30 PRE-IGNITION DAMAGE**

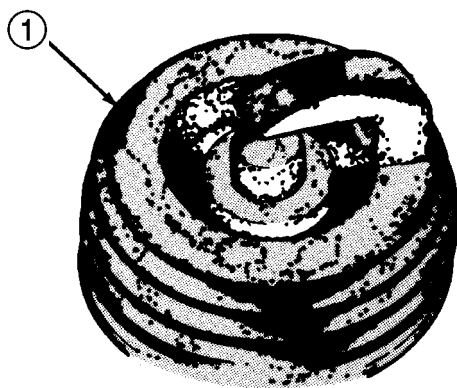
- 1 - GROUND ELECTRODE STARTING TO DISSOLVE
- 2 - CENTER ELECTRODE DISSOLVED

## SPARK PLUG (Continued)

## SPARK PLUG OVERHEATING

Overheating is indicated by a white or gray center electrode insulator that also appears blistered (Fig. 31). The increase in electrode gap will be considerably in excess of 0.001 inch per 2000 miles of operation. This suggests that a plug with a cooler heat range rating should be used. Over advanced ignition timing, detonation and cooling system malfunctions can also cause spark plug overheating.

**CAUTION:** If the engine is equipped with copper core ground electrode, or platinum tipped spark plugs, they must be replaced with the same type/number spark plug as the original. If another spark plug is substituted, pre-ignition will result.



J908D-16

**Fig. 31 SPARK PLUG OVERHEATING**

1 - BLISTERED WHITE OR GRAY COLORED INSULATOR

## REMOVAL

**CAUTION:** If equipped with a 4.7L H.O. (High-Output) engine, never substitute the original platinum tipped spark plug with a different part number. Serious engine damage may result.

On the 4.0L 6-cylinder engine, the spark plugs are located below the coil rail assembly. On the 4.7L V-8 engine, each individual spark plug is located under each ignition coil.

(1) 4.0L 6-Cylinder Engine: Prior to removing spark plug, spray compressed air around spark plug hole and area around spark plug. This will help prevent foreign material from entering combustion chamber.

(2) 4.7L V-8 Engine: Prior to removing spark plug, spray compressed air around base of ignition coil at cylinder head. This will help prevent foreign material from entering combustion chamber.

(3) On the 4.0L engine the coil rail assembly must be removed to gain access to any/all spark plug. Refer to Ignition Coil Removal/Installation. On the 4.7L V-8 engine each individual ignition coil must be

removed to gain access to each spark plug. Refer to Ignition Coil Removal/Installation.

(4) Remove spark plug from cylinder head using a quality socket with a rubber or foam insert. If equipped with a 4.7L V-8 engine, also check condition of coil o-ring and replace as necessary.

(5) Inspect spark plug condition. Refer to Spark Plug Conditions.

## CLEANING

**Except 4.7L H.O. Engine:** The plugs may be cleaned using commercially available spark plug cleaning equipment. After cleaning, file center electrode flat with a small point file or jewelers file before adjusting gap.

**CAUTION:** Never use a motorized wire wheel brush to clean spark plugs. Metallic deposits will remain on spark plug insulator and will cause plug misfire.

**4.7L H.O. Engine:** Never clean spark plugs on the 4.7L H.O. engine. Damage to the platinum rivet on the center electrode will result.

## INSTALLATION

**CAUTION:** The standard 4.7L V-8 engine is equipped with copper core ground electrode spark plugs. They must be replaced with the same type/number spark plug as the original. If another spark plug is substituted, pre-ignition will result.

**CAUTION:** If equipped with a 4.7L H.O. (High-Output) engine, never substitute the original platinum tipped spark plug with a different type/part number. Serious engine damage may result.

Special care should be taken when installing spark plugs into cylinder head spark plug wells. Be sure plugs do not drop into plug wells as ground straps may be bent resulting in a change in plug gap, or electrodes can be damaged.

Always tighten spark plugs to specified torque. Over tightening can cause distortion resulting in a change in spark plug gap or a cracked porcelain insulator.

(1) Start spark plug into cylinder head by hand to avoid cross threading.

(2) 4.0L 6-Cylinder Engine: Tighten spark plugs to 35-41 N·m (26-30 ft. lbs.) torque.

(3) 4.7L V-8 Engine: Tighten spark plugs to 27 N·m (20 ft. lbs.) torque.

(4) 4.7L V-8 Engine: Before installing coil(s), check condition of coil o-ring and replace as necessary. To aid in coil installation, apply silicone to coil o-ring.

(5) Install ignition coil(s). Refer to Ignition Coil Removal/Installation.



# INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

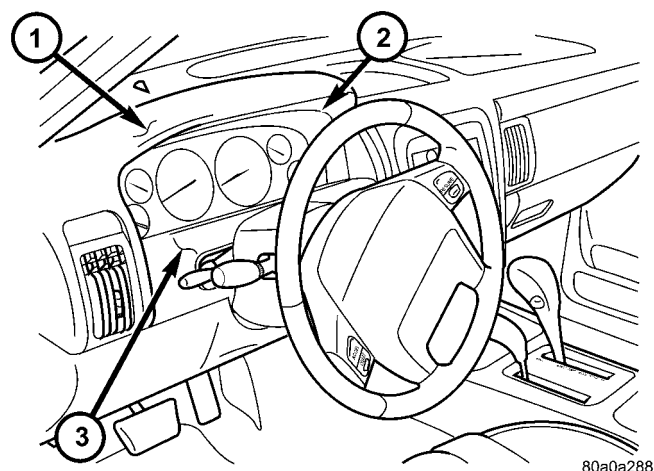
## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>INSTRUMENT CLUSTER</b>		<b>OPERATION</b>	24
DESCRIPTION	2	<b>ODOMETER</b>	
OPERATION	4	DESCRIPTION	25
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - INSTRUMENT		OPERATION	25
CLUSTER	8	<b>OIL PRESSURE GAUGE</b>	
REMOVAL	10	DESCRIPTION	26
DISASSEMBLY	10	OPERATION	26
ASSEMBLY	12	<b>OVERDRIVE OFF INDICATOR</b>	
INSTALLATION	13	DESCRIPTION	27
<b>ABS INDICATOR</b>		OPERATION	27
DESCRIPTION	14	<b>REAR FOG LAMP INDICATOR</b>	
OPERATION	14	DESCRIPTION	28
<b>AIRBAG INDICATOR</b>		OPERATION	28
DESCRIPTION	14	<b>SEATBELT INDICATOR</b>	
OPERATION	15	DESCRIPTION	29
<b>BRAKE/PARK BRAKE INDICATOR</b>		OPERATION	29
DESCRIPTION	15	<b>SHIFT INDICATOR (TRANSFER CASE)</b>	
OPERATION	15	DESCRIPTION	29
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - BRAKE		OPERATION	30
INDICATOR	16	<b>SKIS INDICATOR</b>	
<b>CHECK GAUGES INDICATOR</b>		DESCRIPTION	30
DESCRIPTION	17	OPERATION	30
OPERATION	17	<b>SPEEDOMETER</b>	
<b>COOLANT LOW INDICATOR</b>		DESCRIPTION	31
DESCRIPTION	18	OPERATION	31
OPERATION	18	<b>TACHOMETER</b>	
<b>CRUISE INDICATOR</b>		DESCRIPTION	32
DESCRIPTION	19	OPERATION	32
OPERATION	19	<b>TRANS TEMP INDICATOR</b>	
<b>ENGINE TEMPERATURE GAUGE</b>		DESCRIPTION	33
DESCRIPTION	20	OPERATION	33
OPERATION	20	<b>TURN SIGNAL INDICATOR</b>	
<b>FRONT FOG LAMP INDICATOR</b>		DESCRIPTION	34
DESCRIPTION	21	OPERATION	34
OPERATION	21	DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - TURN SIGNAL	
<b>FUEL GAUGE</b>		INDICATOR	34
DESCRIPTION	21	<b>VOLTAGE GAUGE</b>	
OPERATION	22	DESCRIPTION	35
<b>HIGH BEAM INDICATOR</b>		OPERATION	35
DESCRIPTION	22	<b>WAIT-TO-START INDICATOR</b>	
OPERATION	23	DESCRIPTION	36
<b>LOW FUEL INDICATOR</b>		OPERATION	36
DESCRIPTION	23	<b>WATER-IN-FUEL INDICATOR</b>	
OPERATION	23	DESCRIPTION	36
<b>MALFUNCTION INDICATOR LAMP (MIL)</b>		OPERATION	37
DESCRIPTION	24		



## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

## DESCRIPTION



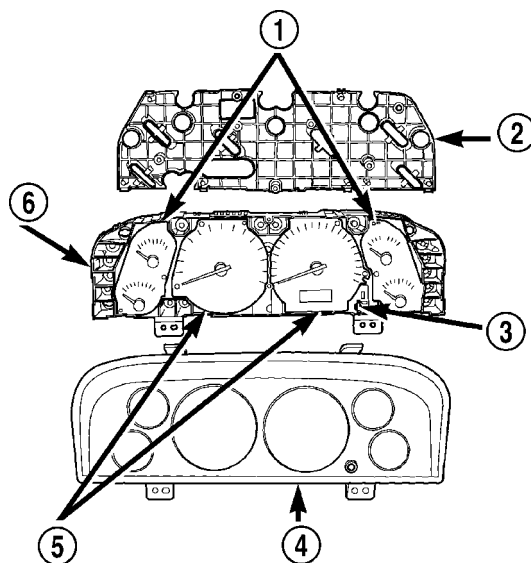
80a0a288

**Fig. 1 Instrument Cluster**

- 1 - INSTRUMENT PANEL TOP PAD HOOD FORMATION
- 2 - INSTRUMENT CLUSTER
- 3 - CLUSTER BEZEL

The instrument cluster for this model is an ElectroMechanical Instrument Cluster (EMIC) that is located in the instrument panel above the steering column opening, directly in front of the driver (Fig. 1). The remainder of the EMIC, including the mounts and the electrical connections, are concealed within the instrument panel behind the cluster bezel. Besides analog gauges and indicators, the EMIC module incorporates a blue-green digital Vacuum Fluorescent Display (VFD) unit for displaying odometer/trip odometer information, some warning or reminder indications and certain diagnostic information.

The EMIC gauges and indicators are visible through a dedicated hooded opening in the instrument panel top pad and are protected by an integral clear plastic cluster lens (Fig. 2). Just behind and integral to the cluster lens is the cluster hood and an integral cluster mask, which are constructed of molded black plastic. Two cluster masks are used; a base version features a black matte face and no trim ring around the perimeter of each gauge opening, while a premium version features a black matte face and a raised trim ring around the perimeter of each gauge opening. The cluster hood serves as a visor and shields the face of the cluster from ambient light and reflections to reduce glare, while the cluster mask serves to separate and define the individual gauges of the EMIC. A black plastic odometer/trip odometer switch button protrudes through dedicated holes in the cluster mask and the cluster lens near the lower edge of the cluster just to the right of the



80b6b318

**Fig. 2 Instrument Cluster Components**

- 1 - MINOR GAUGE SETS
- 2 - REAR COVER
- 3 - TRIP ODOMETER RESET BUTTON
- 4 - LENS, HOOD & MASK
- 5 - MAJOR GAUGES
- 6 - CLUSTER HOUSING

speedometer. The molded plastic EMIC lens, hood and mask unit has four integral mounting tabs, two extending downward vertically from the lower edge of the unit and two extending horizontally rearward from the upper surface of the hood. The two lower mounting tabs are used to secure the EMIC to the molded plastic instrument panel cluster carrier with two screws, while the two upper tabs are secured to the underside of the hood formation of the instrument panel top pad with two screws.

The rear of the cluster housing and the EMIC electronic circuitry are protected by a molded plastic rear cover. The rear cover is secured to the cluster housing with seven screws, while the cluster lens, hood, and mask unit is secured to the cluster housing with several integral plastic latch features. The rear cover includes clearance holes for service access to each of the incandescent bulb and bulb holder units installed on the cluster circuit board for general illumination lighting and for the cluster connector receptacle. The single connector receptacle on the back of the cluster electronic circuit board connects the EMIC to the vehicle electrical system through a single dedicated take out and connector of the instrument panel wire harness.

Sandwiched between the rear cover and the lens, hood and mask unit is the cluster housing. The molded plastic cluster housing serves as the carrier for the cluster circuit board and circuitry, the cluster connector receptacle, the gauges, a Light Emitting

## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER (Continued)

Diode (LED) for many of the cluster indicators, the VFD unit, the cluster overlay, the gauge pointers, the odometer/trip odometer switch and the switch button. The premium cluster housing also includes an electro-luminescent lamp for general cluster illumination.

The cluster mask features two large round openings near its center through which the two major gauges are visible, and two smaller round openings stacked at the outboard side of each of the large openings through which the four minor gauges are visible. The cluster mask incorporates the cluster overlay. The cluster overlay and the dial faces of the gauges are laminated plastic units. The dark, visible, outer surface of the cluster overlay and the gauge dial faces are marked with all of the gauge graduations, but this layer is also translucent. The darkness of this outer layer prevents the cluster from appearing too cluttered or busy by concealing the cluster indicators that are not illuminated, while the translucence of this layer allows those indicators and icons that are illuminated to be readily visible.

The underlying layer of these overlays is opaque and allows light from the various indicators and illumination lamps behind it to be visible through the outer layer of the overlays only through predetermined cutouts. A rectangular opening in the gauge dial face overlay at the base of the speedometer has a smoked clear lens through which the illuminated VFD unit can be viewed. On the base instrument clusters the graphics, increments, and numerals on the gauge faces are also translucent and illuminated from behind, while the orange gauge pointers are illuminated internally. On the premium instrument clusters the graphics, increments, numerals and gauge needles are opaque while the remainder of the gauge faces are translucent and illuminated from behind by the electro-luminescent lamp.

Twelve versions of the EMIC module are offered on this model, two base and ten premium. These versions accommodate all of the variations of optional equipment and regulatory requirements for the various markets in which the vehicle will be offered. The microprocessor-based EMIC utilizes integrated circuitry and information carried on the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network along with several hard wired analog and multiplexed inputs to monitor sensors and switches throughout the vehicle. In response to those inputs, the internal circuitry and programming of the EMIC allow it to control and integrate many electronic functions and features of the vehicle through both hard wired outputs and the transmission of electronic message outputs to other electronic modules in the vehicle over the PCI data bus. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/ELECTRONIC CONTROL MOD-

ULES/COMMUNICATION - DESCRIPTION - PCI BUS).

The EMIC houses six analog gauges and has provisions for up to twenty indicators (Fig. 3). The EMIC includes the following analog gauges:

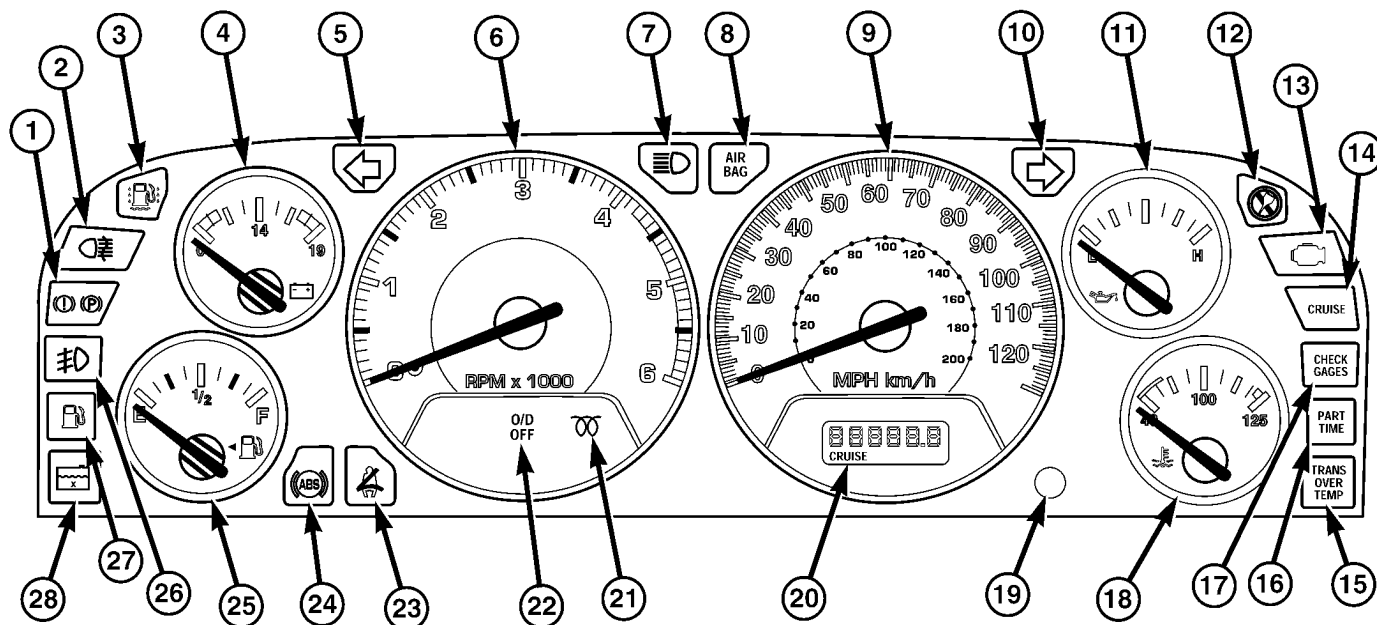
- **Coolant Temperature Gauge**
- **Fuel Gauge**
- **Oil Pressure Gauge**
- **Speedometer**
- **Tachometer**
- **Voltage Gauge**

Some of the EMIC indicators are automatically configured when the EMIC is connected to the vehicle electrical system for compatibility with certain optional equipment or equipment required for regulatory purposes in certain markets. While each EMIC may have provisions for indicators to support every available option, the configurable indicators will not be functional in a vehicle that does not have the equipment that an indicator supports. The EMIC includes provisions for the following indicators (Fig. 3):

- **Airbag Indicator (with Airbags only)**
- **Antilock Brake System (ABS) Indicator**
- **Brake Indicator**
- **Check Gauges Indicator**
- **Coolant Low Indicator (with Diesel Engine only)**
- **Cruise Indicator (early production only)**
- **Four-Wheel Drive Part Time Indicator (with Selec-Trac Transfer Case only)**
- **Front Fog Lamp Indicator (with Front Fog Lamps only)**
- **High Beam Indicator**
- **Low Fuel Indicator**
- **Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)**
- **Overdrive-Off Indicator (except Diesel Engine)**
- **Rear Fog Lamp Indicator (with Rear Fog Lamps only)**
- **Seatbelt Indicator**
- **Sentry Key Immobilizer System (SKIS) Indicator**
- **Transmission Overtemp Indicator (except Diesel Engine)**
- **Turn Signal (Right and Left) Indicators**
- **Wait-To-Start Indicator (with Diesel Engine only)**
- **Water-In-Fuel Indicator (with Diesel Engine only)**

Many indicators in the EMIC are illuminated by a dedicated Light Emitting Diode (LED) that is soldered onto the EMIC electronic circuit board. The LED units are not available for service replacement and, if damaged or faulty, the entire EMIC must be replaced. Base cluster illumination is accomplished

## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER (Continued)



810f7b6a

**Fig. 3 Gauges & Indicators**

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1 - BRAKE INDICATOR                      | 15 - TRANSMISSION OVERTEMP INDICATOR   |
| 2 - REAR FOG LAMP INDICATOR              | 16 - PART TIME 4WD INDICATOR   |
| 3 - WATER-IN-FUEL INDICATOR              | 17 - CHECK GAUGES INDICATOR  |
| 4 - VOLTAGE GAUGE                        | 18 - ENGINE TEMPERATURE GAUGE  |
| 5 - LEFT TURN INDICATOR                  | 19 - ODOMETER/TRIP ODOMETER SWITCH BUTTON  |
| 6 - TACHOMETER                           | 20 - VACUUM FLUORESCENT DISPLAY (INCLUDES ODOMETER/TRIP ODOMETER & LATE VERSION ONLY HAS CRUISE INDICATOR) |
| 7 - HIGH BEAM INDICATOR                  | 21 - WAIT-TO-START INDICATOR   |
| 8 - AIRBAG INDICATOR                     | 22 - OVERDRIVE-OFF INDICATOR   |
| 9 - SPEEDOMETER                          | 23 - SEATBELT INDICATOR  |
| 10 - RIGHT TURN INDICATOR                | 24 - ABS INDICATOR   |
| 11 - OIL PRESSURE GAUGE                  | 25 - FUEL GAUGE  |
| 12 - SKIS INDICATOR                      | 26 - FRONT FOG LAMP INDICATOR  |
| 13 - MALFUNCTION INDICATOR LAMP (MIL)    | 27 - LOW FUEL INDICATOR  |
| 14 - CRUISE INDICATOR (EARLY PRODUCTION) | 28 - COOLANT LOW INDICATOR   |

by dimmable incandescent back lighting, which illuminates the gauges for visibility when the exterior lighting is turned on. Each of the incandescent bulbs is secured by an integral bulb holder to the electronic circuit board from the back of the cluster housing.

Hard wired circuitry connects the EMIC to the electrical system of the vehicle. These hard wired circuits are integral to several wire harnesses, which are routed throughout the vehicle and retained by many different methods. These circuits may be connected to each other, to the vehicle electrical system and to the EMIC through the use of a combination of soldered splices, splice block connectors, and many different types of wire harness terminal connectors and insulators. Refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, further details on wire harness routing and reten-

tion, as well as pin-out and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

The EMIC modules for this model are serviced only as complete units. The EMIC module cannot be adjusted or repaired. If a gauge, an LED indicator, the VFD unit, the electronic circuit board, the circuit board hardware, the cluster overlay, the electro-luminescent lamp (premium model only) or the EMIC housing are damaged or faulty, the entire EMIC module must be replaced. The cluster lens, hood and mask unit and the individual incandescent lamp bulbs with holders are available for individual service replacement.

## OPERATION

The ElectroMechanical Instrument Cluster (EMIC) is designed to allow the vehicle operator to monitor the conditions of many of the vehicle components and operating systems. The gauges and indicators in the

## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER (Continued)

EMIC provide valuable information about the various standard and optional powertrains, fuel and emissions systems, cooling systems, lighting systems, safety systems and many other convenience items. The EMIC is installed in the instrument panel so that all of these monitors can be easily viewed by the vehicle operator when driving, while still allowing relative ease of access for service. The microprocessor-based EMIC hardware and software uses various inputs to control the gauges and indicators visible on the face of the cluster. Some of these inputs are hard wired, but most are in the form of electronic messages that are transmitted by other electronic modules over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/ELECTRONIC CONTROL MODULES/COMMUNICATION - OPERATION).

The EMIC microprocessor smooths the input data using algorithms to provide gauge readings that are accurate, stable and responsive to operating conditions. These algorithms are designed to provide gauge readings during normal operation that are consistent with customer expectations. However, when abnormal conditions exist, such as high coolant temperature, the algorithm can drive the gauge pointer to an extreme position and the microprocessor turns on the Check Gauges indicator and sends an electronic chime request message to the Body Control Module (BCM) over the PCI data bus to provide distinct visual and audible indications of a problem to the vehicle operator.

The EMIC circuitry operates on battery current received through fused B(+) fuses in the Power Distribution Center (PDC) and the Junction Block (JB) on a non-switched fused B(+) circuit, and on battery current received through a fused ignition switch output (run-start) fuse in the JB on a fused ignition switch output (run-start) circuit. This arrangement allows the EMIC to provide some features regardless of the ignition switch position, while other features will operate only with the ignition switch in the On or Start positions. The EMIC circuitry is grounded through two separate ground circuits of the instrument panel wire harness. These ground circuits receive a path to ground through take outs of the instrument panel wire harness with eyelet terminal connectors that are secured by a nut to a ground stud located on the floor panel transmission tunnel beneath the center floor console, just forward of the Airbag Control Module (ACM).

The EMIC also has a self-diagnostic actuator test capability, which will test each of the PCI bus message-controlled functions of the cluster by lighting the appropriate indicators (except the airbag indicator), sweeping the gauge needles across the gauge faces from their minimum to their maximum read-

ings, and stepping the odometer display sequentially from all zeros through all nines. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). The self-diagnostic actuator test can be initialized manually or by using a DRBIII® scan tool. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information. See the owner's manual in the vehicle glove box for more information on the features, use and operation of the EMIC.

## GAUGES

All gauges receive battery current through the EMIC circuitry when the ignition switch is in the On or Start positions. With the ignition switch in the Off position battery current is not supplied to any gauges, and the EMIC circuitry is programmed to move all of the gauge needles back to the low end of their respective scales. Therefore, the gauges do not accurately indicate any vehicle condition unless the ignition switch is in the On or Start positions.

All of the EMIC gauges are air core magnetic units. Two fixed electromagnetic coils are located within each gauge. These coils are wrapped at right angles to each other around a movable permanent magnet. The movable magnet is suspended within the coils on one end of a pivot shaft, while the gauge needle is attached to the other end of the shaft. One of the coils has a fixed current flowing through it to maintain a constant magnetic field strength. Current flow through the second coil changes, which causes changes in its magnetic field strength. The current flowing through the second coil is changed by the EMIC circuitry in response to messages received over the PCI data bus. The gauge needle moves as the movable permanent magnet aligns itself to the changing magnetic fields created around it by the electromagnets.

The gauges are diagnosed using the EMIC self-diagnostic actuator test. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). Proper testing of the PCI data bus and the electronic data bus message inputs to the EMIC that control each gauge requires the use of a DRBIII® scan tool. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information. Specific operation details for each gauge may be found elsewhere in this service information.

## VACUUM-FLUORESCENT DISPLAY

The Vacuum-Fluorescent Display (VFD) unit is soldered to the EMIC electronic circuit board. The display is active with the ignition switch in the On or Start positions, and inactive when the ignition switch is in any other position. The illumination intensity of the VFD unit is controlled by the EMIC circuitry based upon electronic dimming level messages



## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER (Continued)

received from the BCM over the PCI data bus, and is synchronized with the illumination intensity of other VFD units in the vehicle. The BCM provides dimming level messages based upon internal programming and inputs it receives from the circuitry of the left (lighting) multi-function switch on the steering column based upon the settings of the control knob and control ring on the control stalk that have been selected by the vehicle operator.

During normal operation, the EMIC VFD unit has several display capabilities including odometer, trip odometer, cruise indicator (late production versions only) and some warning or reminder indications. An odometer/trip odometer switch on the EMIC circuit board is used to control some of the display modes. This switch is actuated manually by depressing the odometer/trip odometer switch button that extends through the lower edge of the cluster lens, just right of the speedometer. Actuating this switch momentarily with the ignition switch in the On position will toggle the VFD between the odometer and trip odometer modes. Depressing the switch button for about two seconds while the VFD is in the trip odometer mode will reset the trip odometer value to zero. Holding this switch depressed while turning the ignition switch from the Off position to the On position will initiate the EMIC self-diagnostic actuator test. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information for additional details on this VFD function. The EMIC microprocessor remembers which display mode is active when the ignition switch is turned to the Off position, and returns the VFD display to that mode when the ignition switch is turned On again.

The VFD unit is diagnosed using the EMIC self-diagnostic actuator test. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). Proper testing of the PCI data bus and the electronic data bus message inputs to the EMIC that control some of the VFD functions requires the use of a DRBIII® scan tool. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information. Specific operation details for the odometer, the trip odometer, and the various indicator functions of the VFD may be found elsewhere in this service information.

## INDICATORS

Indicators are located in various positions within the EMIC and are all connected to the EMIC electronic circuit board. The turn signal indicators are hard wired. The brake indicator is controlled by PCI data bus messages from the Controller Antilock Brake (CAB) as well as by hard wired park brake switch and brake fluid level switch inputs to the EMIC. The Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) is normally controlled by PCI data bus messages from the Powertrain Control Module (PCM); however, if the

EMIC loses PCI data bus communication, the EMIC circuitry will automatically turn the MIL on until PCI data bus communication is restored. The EMIC uses PCI data bus messages from the Airbag Control Module (ACM), the BCM, the PCM, the CAB, the Sentry Key Immobilizer Module (SKIM), and the Transmission Control Module (TCM) to control all of the remaining indicators.

The various EMIC indicators are controlled by different strategies; some receive fused ignition switch output from the EMIC circuitry and have a switched ground, others are grounded through the EMIC circuitry and have a switched battery feed, while still others are completely controlled by the EMIC microprocessor based upon various hard wired and electronic message inputs. Some indicators are illuminated at a fixed intensity, while the illumination intensity of others is synchronized with that of the EMIC general illumination lamps.

In addition, certain indicators in this instrument cluster are automatically configured or self-configured. This feature allows the configurable indicators to be enabled by the EMIC circuitry for compatibility with certain optional equipment. The automatically configured or self-configured indicators remain latent in each EMIC at all times and will be active only when the EMIC receives the appropriate PCI message or hard wired inputs for the optional system or equipment.

The hard wired indicator inputs are diagnosed using conventional diagnostic methods. However, the EMIC circuitry and PCI bus message controlled indicators are diagnosed using the EMIC self-diagnostic actuator test. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). Proper testing of the PCI data bus and the electronic message inputs to the EMIC that control an indicator require the use of a DRBIII® scan tool. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information. Specific details of the operation for each indicator may be found elsewhere in this service information.

## CLUSTER ILLUMINATION

Two types of general cluster illumination are available in this model. Base versions of the EMIC have several incandescent illumination lamps, while premium versions of the EMIC have a single electro-luminescent lamp. Both types of lamps provide cluster back lighting whenever the exterior lighting is turned On with the control knob on the left (lighting) multi-function switch control stalk. The illumination intensity of these lamps is adjusted by the EMIC microprocessor based upon electronic dimming level messages received from the Body Control Module (BCM) over the PCI data bus. The BCM provides electronic dimming level messages to the EMIC



## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER (Continued)

based upon internal programming and inputs it receives when the control ring on the left (lighting) multi-function switch control stalk is rotated (down to dim, up to brighten) to one of six available minor detent positions.

The incandescent illumination lamps receive battery current at all times, while the ground for these lamps is controlled by a 12-volt Pulse Width Modulated (PWM) output of the EMIC electronic circuitry. The illumination intensity of these bulbs and of the electronic Vacuum-Fluorescent Display (VFD) unit are controlled by the instrument cluster microprocessor based upon dimming level messages received from the Body Control Module (BCM) over the PCI data bus. The BCM uses inputs from the headlamp and panel dimmer switches within the left (lighting) multi-function switch control stalk and internal programming to decide what dimming level message is required. The BCM then sends the proper dimming level messages to the EMIC over the PCI data bus.

The electro-luminescent lamp unit consists of layers of phosphor, carbon, idium tin oxide, and dielectric applied by a silk-screen process between two polyester membranes and includes a short pigtail wire and connector. The lamp pigtail wire is connected to a connector receptacle on the EMIC circuit board through a small clearance hole in the cluster housing rear cover. The EMIC electronic circuitry also uses a PWM strategy to control the illumination intensity of this lamp; however, the EMIC powers this lamp with an Alternating Current (AC) rated at 80 volts rms (root mean squared) and 415 Hertz, which excites the phosphor particles causing them to luminesce.

The BCM also has several hard wired panel lamp driver outputs and sends the proper panel lamps dimming level messages over the PCI data bus to coordinate the illumination intensity of all of the instrument panel lighting and the VFD units of other electronic modules on the PCI data bus. Vehicles equipped with the Auto Headlamps option have an automatic parade mode. In this mode, the BCM uses an input from the auto headlamp light sensor to determine the ambient light levels. If the BCM decides that the exterior lighting is turned on in the daylight, it overrides the selected panel dimmer switch signal by sending a message over the PCI data bus to illuminate all VFD units at full (daytime) intensity for improved visibility when driving during the day with the exterior lighting turned on. The automatic parade mode has no effect on the incandescent bulb illumination intensity.

The hard wired cluster illumination circuits between the left (lighting) multi-function switch and the BCM may be diagnosed using conventional diagnostic tools and methods. The electro-luminescent

lamp is diagnosed using the EMIC self-diagnostic actuator test. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). However, proper testing of the EMIC and the electronic dimming level messages sent by the BCM over the PCI data bus requires the use of a DRBIII® scan tool. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

## CHIME SERVICE

The EMIC is programmed to request chime service from the Body Control Module (BCM) when certain indicators are illuminated. The EMIC chime request for illumination of the low fuel indicator is a customer programmable feature. When the programmed conditions are met, the EMIC generates an electronic chime request message and sends it over the PCI data bus to the BCM. Upon receiving the proper chime request, the BCM activates an integral chime tone generator to provide the audible chime tone to the vehicle operator. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/CHIME WARNING SYSTEM - OPERATION). Proper testing of the PCI data bus and the electronic chime request message outputs from the EMIC requires the use of a DRBIII® scan tool. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

## INPUT AND OUTPUT CIRCUITS

## HARD WIRED INPUTS

The hard wired inputs to the EMIC include the following:

- **Body Control Module Flash Enable**
- **Fused B(+)**
- **Fused Ignition Switch Output (Run-Start)**
- **Left Turn Signal**
- **Red Brake Warning Indicator Driver**
- **Right Turn Signal**

Refer to the appropriate wiring information for additional details.

## GROUNDS

The EMIC receives a ground path through the following hard wired circuits:

- **Ground (Two Circuits)**

Refer to the appropriate wiring information for additional details.

## COMMUNICATION

The EMIC has provisions for the following communication circuits:

- **PCI Data Bus**

Refer to the appropriate wiring information for additional details.

## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER (Continued)

**DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - INSTRUMENT CLUSTER**

If all of the instrument cluster gauges and/or indicators are inoperative, refer to PRELIMINARY DIAGNOSIS. If an individual gauge or Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus message-controlled indicator is inoperative, refer to ACTUATOR TEST. If an individual hard wired indicator is inoperative, refer to the diagnosis and testing information for that specific indicator. If the base instrument cluster incandescent illumination lighting is inoperative, refer to CLUSTER ILLUMINATION DIAGNOSIS. If the premium instrument cluster electro-luminescent illumination lighting is inoperative, refer to ACTUATOR TEST. Refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, details of wire harness routing and retention, connector pin-out information and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

**NOTE:** Occasionally, a condition may be encountered where the gauge pointer for the speedometer or the tachometer becomes caught on the wrong side of the pointer stop. To correct this condition, the technician should use a DRBIII® scan tool and the appropriate diagnostic information to perform the instrument cluster self-diagnostic actuator test procedure. When performed, the actuator test procedure will automatically return the pointer to the correct side of the pointer stop.

**PRELIMINARY DIAGNOSIS**

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, DRIVER AIRBAG, PASSENGER AIRBAG, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE IMPACT SENSOR, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH THE PREMIUM INSTRUMENT CLUSTER, THE CLUSTER CIRCUITRY PROVIDES AN ALTERNATING CURRENT TO SUPPLY POWER TO THE ELECTRO-LUMINESCENT ILLUMINATION LAMP THROUGH A PIGTAIL WIRE AND CONNECTOR THAT IS ACCESSIBLE AT THE BACK OF THE CLUSTER HOUSING. USE PROPER PRECAUTIONS WHEN HANDLING THIS UNIT DURING DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE TO AVOID ELECTRICAL SHOCK AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Check the fused B(+) fuse (Fuse 17 - 10 ampere) in the Junction Block (JB). If OK, go to Step 2. If not OK, repair the shorted circuit or component as required and replace the faulty fuse.

(2) Check for battery voltage at the fused B(+) fuse (Fuse 17 - 10 ampere) in the JB. If OK, go to Step 3. If not OK, repair the open fused B(+) circuit between the JB and the Power Distribution Center (PDC) as required.

(3) Check the fused ignition switch output (run-start) fuse (Fuse 22 - 10 ampere) in the JB. If OK, go to Step 4. If not OK, repair the shorted circuit or component as required and replace the faulty fuse.

(4) Turn the ignition switch to the On position. Check for battery voltage at the fused ignition switch output (run-start) fuse (Fuse 22 - 10 ampere) in the JB. If OK, go to Step 5. If not OK, repair the open fused ignition switch output (run-start) circuit between the JB and the ignition switch as required.

(5) Turn the ignition switch to the Off position. Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Remove the instrument cluster. Reconnect the battery negative cable. Check for battery voltage at the fused B(+) circuit cavity of the instrument panel wire harness connector for the instrument cluster. If OK, go to Step 6. If not OK, repair the open fused B(+) circuit between the instrument cluster and the JB as required.

(6) Turn the ignition switch to the On position. Check for battery voltage at the fused ignition switch output (run-start) circuit cavity of the instrument panel wire harness connector for the instrument cluster. If OK, go to Step 7. If not OK, repair the open fused ignition switch output (run-start) circuit between the instrument cluster and the JB as required.

(7) Turn the ignition switch to the Off position. Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Check for continuity between each of the ground circuit cavities of the instrument panel wire harness connector for the instrument cluster and a good ground. There should be continuity. If OK, refer to the ACTUATOR TEST. If not OK, repair the open ground circuit(s) between the instrument cluster and ground (G200) as required.

## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER (Continued)

## ACTUATOR TEST

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, DRIVER AIRBAG, PASSENGER AIRBAG, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE IMPACT SENSOR, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH THE PREMIUM INSTRUMENT CLUSTER, THE CLUSTER CIRCUITRY PROVIDES AN ALTERNATING CURRENT TO SUPPLY POWER TO THE ELECTRO-LUMINESCENT ILLUMINATION LAMP THROUGH A PIGTAIL WIRE AND CONNECTOR THAT IS ACCESSIBLE AT THE BACK OF THE CLUSTER HOUSING. USE PROPER PRECAUTIONS WHEN HANDLING THIS UNIT DURING DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE TO AVOID ELECTRICAL SHOCK AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

The instrument cluster actuator test will put the instrument cluster into its self-diagnostic mode. In this mode the instrument cluster can perform a self-diagnostic test that will confirm that the instrument cluster circuitry, the gauges, the PCI data bus message controlled indicators, and the electro-luminescent illumination lamp (if equipped) are capable of operating as designed. During the actuator test the instrument cluster circuitry will sweep each of the gauge needles across the gauge faces, illuminate each of the segments in the Vacuum-Fluorescent Display (VFD), turn all of the PCI data bus message-controlled indicators on and off again, and turn the electro-luminescent illumination lamp (if equipped) on and off again.

Successful completion of the actuator test will confirm that the instrument cluster is operational. However, there may still be a problem with the PCI data bus, the Powertrain Control Module, the Airbag Control Module (ACM), the Body Control Module (BCM), the Controller Anti-lock Brake (CAB), the Sentry Key Immobilizer Module (SKIM), or the inputs to one of these electronic control modules. Use a DRBIII® scan

tool to diagnose these components. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

If an individual indicator lamp or the electro-luminescent illumination lamp do not illuminate during the actuator test, the instrument cluster should be removed. However, check that the incandescent lamp bulb is not faulty, that the bulb holder is properly installed on the instrument cluster electronic circuit board, or that the electro-luminescent lamp pigtail wire connector is properly connected to the instrument cluster electronic circuit board before considering instrument cluster replacement. If the bulb and bulb holder, or the electro-luminescent lamp connection check OK, replace the faulty instrument cluster unit.

(1) Begin the test with the ignition switch in the Off position.

(2) Depress the odometer/trip odometer switch button.

(3) While still holding the odometer/trip odometer switch button depressed, turn the ignition switch to the On position, but do not start the engine.

(4) Release the odometer/trip odometer switch button.

(5) The instrument cluster will automatically begin the actuator test sequence, as follows:

(a) The cluster will turn on, then off again each of the PCI data bus message controlled indicators (except Airbag) to confirm the functionality of the indicator and the cluster control circuitry:

(b) The cluster will sweep the needles for each of the gauges from minimum to maximum and back to minimum to confirm the functionality of the gauge and the cluster control circuitry:

(c) Only on models with a premium version of the cluster, the cluster will illuminate the electro-luminescent lamp and turn it off again to confirm the functionality of the lamp and the cluster control circuitry.

(d) The cluster will sequentially step the odometer/trip odometer VFD display from all zeros (000000) through all nines (999999) to confirm the functionality of all VFD segments and their control circuitry, then display the software version number, followed by "DONE".

(6) The actuator test is now completed. The instrument cluster will automatically exit the self-diagnostic mode and return to normal operation at the completion of the test, if the ignition switch is turned to the Off position during the test, or if a vehicle speed message indicating that the vehicle is moving is received from the PCM over the PCI data bus during the test.

(7) Go back to Step 1 to repeat the test, if required.



## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER (Continued)

## CLUSTER ILLUMINATION DIAGNOSIS

On models equipped with a base version of the instrument cluster, the EMIC has several incandescent illumination lamps that are illuminated whenever the exterior lighting is turned On. If the problem being diagnosed is a single inoperative illumination lamp, be certain that the bulb and bulb holder unit are properly installed in the instrument cluster electronic circuit board. If no installation problems are found replace the faulty bulb and bulb holder unit. If all of the cluster illumination lamps are inoperative, the most reliable, efficient, and accurate means to diagnose the cluster illumination function of the instrument cluster requires the use of a DRBIII® scan tool. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

## REMOVAL

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, DRIVER AIRBAG, PASSENGER AIRBAG, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE IMPACT SENSOR, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH THE PREMIUM INSTRUMENT CLUSTER, THE CLUSTER CIRCUITRY PROVIDES AN ALTERNATING CURRENT TO SUPPLY POWER TO THE ELECTRO-LUMINESCENT ILLUMINATION LAMP THROUGH A PIGTAIL WIRE AND CONNECTOR THAT IS ACCESSIBLE AT THE BACK OF THE CLUSTER HOUSING. USE PROPER PRECAUTIONS WHEN HANDLING THIS UNIT DURING DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE TO AVOID ELECTRICAL SHOCK AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

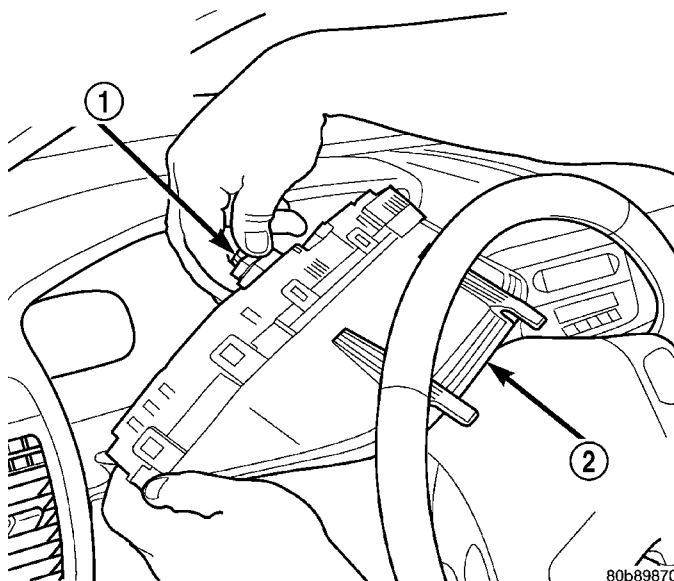
(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Remove the cluster bezel from the instrument panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/CLUSTER BEZEL - REMOVAL).

(3) Remove the two screws that secure the upper mounting tabs of the instrument cluster to the underside of the instrument cluster hood formation of the instrument panel top pad.

(4) Remove the two screws that secure the lower mounting tabs of the instrument cluster to the instrument panel structural duct.

(5) Pull the upper mounting tabs of the instrument cluster downward, then pull the instrument cluster rearward far enough to access the instrument panel wire harness connector for the instrument cluster (Fig. 4).



**Fig. 4 Instrument Cluster Remove/Install**

- 1 - INSTRUMENT PANEL WIRE HARNESS CONNECTOR
- 2 - INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

(6) Disconnect the instrument panel wire harness connector for the instrument cluster from the connector receptacle on the back of the instrument cluster housing.

(7) Remove the instrument cluster from the instrument panel.

## DISASSEMBLY

Some of the components for the instrument cluster used in this vehicle are serviced individually. The serviced components include: the incandescent instrument cluster indicator and illumination lamp bulbs (including the integral bulb holders), the cluster lens, hood and mask unit, and the cluster housing rear cover. Following are the procedures for disassembling these components from the instrument cluster unit.

## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER (Continued)

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, DRIVER AIRBAG, PASSENGER AIRBAG, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE IMPACT SENSOR, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH THE PREMIUM INSTRUMENT CLUSTER, THE CLUSTER CIRCUITRY PROVIDES AN ALTERNATING CURRENT TO SUPPLY POWER TO THE ELECTRO-LUMINESCENT ILLUMINATION LAMP THROUGH A PIGTAIL WIRE AND CONNECTOR THAT IS ACCESSIBLE AT THE BACK OF THE CLUSTER HOUSING. USE PROPER PRECAUTIONS WHEN HANDLING THIS UNIT DURING DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE TO AVOID ELECTRICAL SHOCK AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

## CLUSTER BULB

This procedure applies to each of the incandescent cluster illumination lamp or indicator bulb and bulb holder units. However, the illumination lamps and the indicators use different bulb and bulb holder unit sizes. They must never be interchanged. Be certain that any bulb holder removed from the electronic circuit board is reinstalled in the correct position.

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

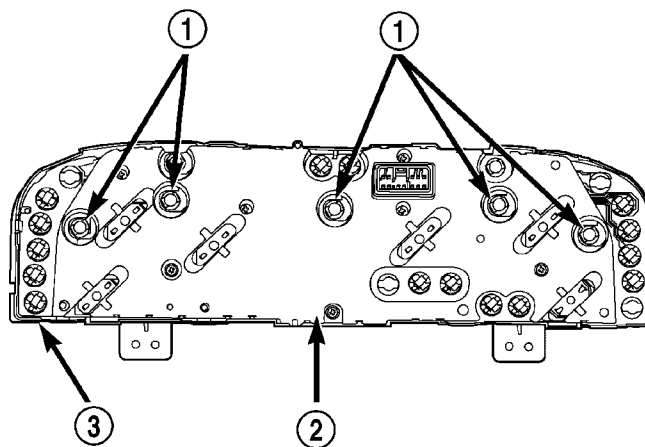
(2) Remove the instrument cluster from the instrument panel. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - REMOVAL).

(3) Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise about sixty degrees on the cluster electronic circuit board (Fig. 5).

(4) Pull the bulb and bulb holder straight back to remove it from the bulb mounting hole in the cluster electronic circuit board.

## CLUSTER LENS, HOOD AND MASK

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.



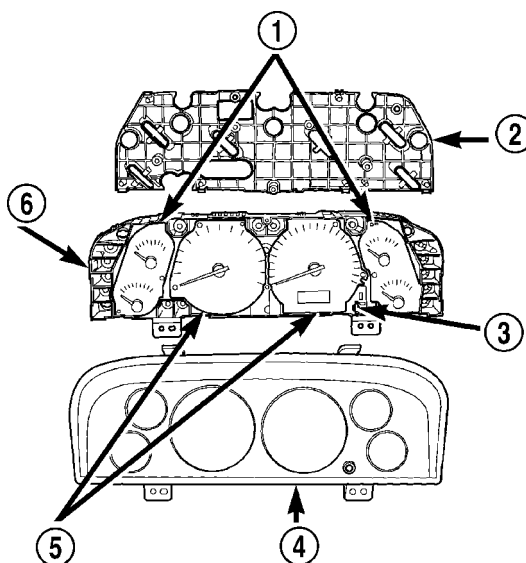
80b6b319

**Fig. 5 Cluster Bulb Locations - Typical**

- 1 - ILLUMINATION LAMP BULBS AND HOLDERS (5)
- 2 - CLUSTER HOUSING REAR COVER
- 3 - CLUSTER HOUSING

(2) Remove the instrument cluster from the instrument panel. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - REMOVAL).

(3) Work around the perimeter of the cluster housing to disengage each of the eight latches that secure the cluster lens, hood and mask unit to the cluster housing (Fig. 6).



80b6b318

**Fig. 6 Instrument Cluster Components**

- 1 - MINOR GAUGE SETS
- 2 - REAR COVER
- 3 - TRIP ODOMETER RESET BUTTON
- 4 - LENS, HOOD & MASK
- 5 - MAJOR GAUGES
- 6 - CLUSTER HOUSING



## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER (Continued)

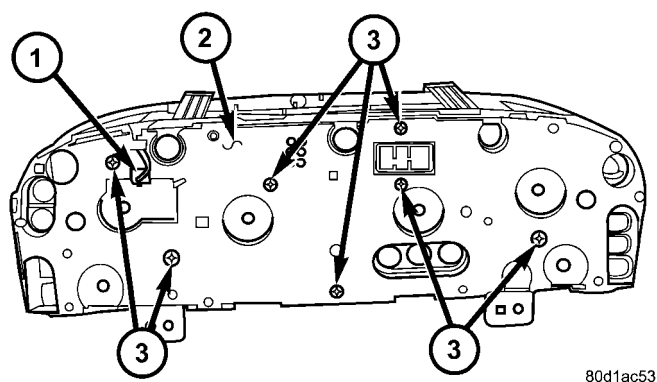
(4) Gently pull the cluster lens, hood and mask unit away from the cluster housing.

## CLUSTER HOUSING REAR COVER

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Remove the instrument cluster from the instrument panel. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - REMOVAL).

(3) On models with a premium cluster only, disconnect the electro-luminescent illumination lamp pigtail wire connector from the receptacle on the cluster electronic circuit board and disengage the pigtail wire from the integral routing clip on the rear cover (Fig. 7).



80d1ac53

**Fig. 7 Cluster Housing Rear Cover Screws**

- 1 - ELECTRO-LUMINESCENT LAMP PIGTAIL WIRE CONNECTOR  
 2 - REAR COVER  
 3 - SCREW (7)

(4) Remove the seven screws that secure the rear cover to the back of the cluster housing.

(5) Disengage the eight latch features (four on top, four on the bottom) that secure the upper and lower edges of the rear cover to the top and bottom of the cluster housing.

(6) Remove the rear cover from the back of the cluster housing.

## ASSEMBLY

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, DRIVER AIRBAG, PASSENGER AIRBAG, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE IMPACT SENSOR, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE**

**SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH THE PREMIUM INSTRUMENT CLUSTER, THE CLUSTER CIRCUITRY PROVIDES AN ALTERNATING CURRENT TO SUPPLY POWER TO THE ELECTRO-LUMINESCENT ILLUMINATION LAMP THROUGH A PIGTAIL WIRE AND CONNECTOR THAT IS ACCESSIBLE AT THE BACK OF THE CLUSTER HOUSING. USE PROPER PRECAUTIONS WHEN HANDLING THIS UNIT DURING DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE TO AVOID ELECTRICAL SHOCK AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

## CLUSTER BULB

This procedure applies to each of the incandescent cluster illumination lamp or indicator bulb and bulb holder units. However, the illumination lamps and the indicators use different bulb and bulb holder unit sizes. They must never be interchanged.

**CAUTION: Be certain that any bulb and bulb holder unit removed from the cluster electronic circuit board is reinstalled in the correct position. Always use the correct bulb size and type for replacement. An incorrect bulb size or type may overheat and cause damage to the instrument cluster, the electronic circuit board and/or the gauges.**

(1) Insert the bulb and bulb holder straight into the correct bulb mounting hole in the cluster electronic circuit board (Fig. 5).

(2) With the bulb holder fully seated against the cluster electronic circuit board, turn the bulb holder clockwise about sixty degrees to lock it into place.

(3) Reinstall the instrument cluster onto the instrument panel. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - INSTALLATION).

(4) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

## CLUSTER LENS, HOOD AND MASK

(1) Position the cluster lens, hood and mask unit over the face of the instrument cluster (Fig. 6). Be certain that the odometer/trip odometer switch button is inserted through the proper clearance holes in the mask and the lens.

(2) Press firmly and evenly on the cluster lens, hood and mask unit to install it onto the cluster housing.

(3) Work around the perimeter of the cluster housing to be certain that each of the eight latches that secure the cluster lens, hood and mask unit to the cluster housing is fully engaged.

## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER (Continued)

(4) Reinstall the instrument cluster into the instrument panel. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - INSTALLATION).

(5) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

## CLUSTER HOUSING REAR COVER

(1) Position the rear cover onto the back of the cluster housing (Fig. 7).

(2) Press firmly and evenly on the rear cover until each of the eight latches (four on top, four on the bottom) that secure the upper and lower edges of the rear cover to the top and bottom of the cluster housing are fully engaged.

(3) Install and tighten the seven screws that secure the rear cover to the back of the cluster housing. Tighten the screws to 2 N·m (20 in. lbs.).

(4) On models with a premium cluster only, reconnect the electro-luminescent illumination lamp pigtail wire connector to the receptacle on the cluster electronic circuit board and engage the pigtail wire under the integral routing clip on the rear cover.

(5) Reinstall the instrument cluster onto the instrument panel. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - INSTALLATION).

(6) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

## INSTALLATION

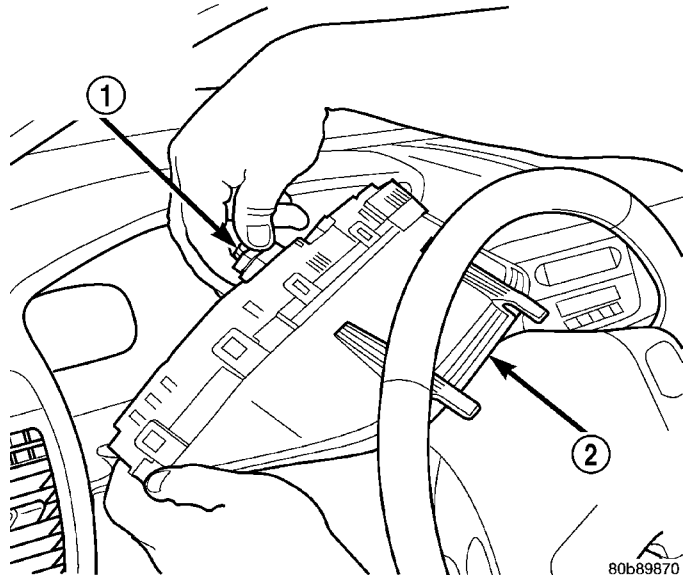
**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, DRIVER AIRBAG, PASSENGER AIRBAG, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE IMPACT SENSOR, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH THE PREMIUM INSTRUMENT CLUSTER, THE CLUSTER CIRCUITRY PROVIDES AN ALTERNATING CURRENT TO SUPPLY POWER TO THE ELECTRO-LUMINESCENT ILLUMINATION LAMP THROUGH A PIGTAIL WIRE AND CONNECTOR THAT IS ACCESSIBLE AT THE BACK OF THE CLUSTER HOUSING. USE PROPER PRECAUTIONS WHEN HANDLING THIS UNIT DURING DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE TO AVOID**

**ELECTRICAL SHOCK AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Position the instrument cluster to the instrument panel.

(2) Reconnect the instrument panel wire harness connector to the connector receptacle on the back of the instrument cluster housing (Fig. 8).



**Fig. 8 Instrument Cluster Remove/Install**

- 1 - INSTRUMENT PANEL WIRE HARNESS CONNECTOR  
2 - INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

(3) Position the lower mounting tabs of the instrument cluster to the mounting holes on the instrument panel structural duct, then tilt the top of the instrument cluster forward until the upper mounting tabs are positioned to the mounting holes on the underside of the instrument cluster hood formation of the instrument panel top pad.

(4) Install and tighten the two screws that secure the upper mounting tabs of the instrument cluster to the underside of the instrument cluster hood formation of the instrument panel top pad. Tighten the screws to 2.2 N·m (20 in. lbs.).

(5) Install and tighten the two screws that secure the lower mounting tabs of the instrument cluster to the instrument panel structural duct. Tighten the screws to 2.2 N·m (20 in. lbs.).

(6) Reinstall the cluster bezel onto the instrument panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/CLUSTER BEZEL - INSTALLATION).

(7) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

## ABS INDICATOR

### DESCRIPTION

An Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) indicator is standard equipment on all instrument clusters. The ABS indicator is located on the lower left edge of the instrument cluster, to the left of the tachometer. The ABS indicator consists of the International Control and Display Symbol icon for "Failure of Anti-lock Braking System" imprinted on an amber lens. The lens is located behind a cutout in the opaque layer of the instrument cluster overlay. The dark outer layer of the overlay prevents the indicator from being clearly visible when it is not illuminated. The icon appears silhouetted against an amber field through the translucent outer layer of the overlay when the indicator is illuminated from behind by a replaceable incandescent bulb and bulb holder unit located on the instrument cluster electronic circuit board. The ABS indicator lens is serviced as a unit with the instrument cluster lens, hood and mask unit.

### OPERATION

The ABS indicator gives an indication to the vehicle operator when the ABS system is faulty or inoperative. This indicator is controlled by a transistor on the instrument cluster circuit board based upon cluster programming and electronic messages received by the cluster from the Controller Anti-lock Brake (CAB) over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus. The ABS indicator bulb is completely controlled by the instrument cluster logic circuit, and that logic will only allow this indicator to operate when the instrument cluster receives a battery current input on the fused ignition switch output (run-start) circuit. Therefore, the indicator will always be off when the ignition switch is in any position except On or Start. The bulb only illuminates when it is provided a path to ground by the instrument cluster transistor. The instrument cluster will turn on the ABS indicator for the following reasons:

- **Bulb Test** - Each time the ignition switch is turned to the On position the ABS indicator is illuminated for about three seconds as a bulb test.
- **ABS Lamp-On Message** - Each time the cluster receives a lamp-on message from the CAB, the ABS indicator will be illuminated. The indicator remains illuminated until the cluster receives a lamp-off message from the CAB, or until the ignition switch is turned to the Off position, whichever occurs first.
- **Communication Error** - If the cluster receives no lamp-on or lamp-off messages from the CAB for six consecutive seconds, the ABS indicator is illuminated. The indicator remains illuminated until the cluster receives a valid message from the CAB, or

until the ignition switch is turned to the Off position, whichever occurs first.

- **Actuator Test** - Each time the instrument cluster is put through the actuator test, the ABS indicator will be turned on for the duration of the test to confirm the functionality of the bulb and the cluster control circuitry.

- **ABS Diagnostic Test** - The ABS indicator is blinked on and off by lamp-on and lamp-off messages from the CAB during the performance of the ABS diagnostic tests.

The CAB continually monitors the ABS circuits and sensors to decide whether the system is in good operating condition. The CAB then sends the proper lamp-on or lamp-off messages to the instrument cluster. If the ABS indicator fails to light during the bulb test, replace the bulb with a known good unit. If the CAB sends a lamp-on message after the bulb test, it indicates that the CAB has detected a system malfunction and/or that the ABS system has become inoperative. The CAB will store a Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) for any malfunction it detects. Each time the ABS indicator fails to light due to an open or short in the cluster ABS indicator circuit or bulb, the cluster sends a message notifying the CAB of the condition, then the instrument cluster and the CAB will each store a DTC. For proper diagnosis of the anti-lock brake system, the CAB, the PCI data bus, or the electronic message inputs to the instrument cluster that control the ABS indicator, a DRBIII® scan tool is required. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

## AIRBAG INDICATOR

### DESCRIPTION

An airbag indicator is standard equipment on all instrument clusters. However, the instrument cluster is programmed to automatically enable this indicator only on vehicles equipped with the airbag system, which is not available in some markets. The airbag indicator is located on the upper edge of the instrument cluster, between the speedometer and the tachometer. The airbag indicator consists of the words "AIR BAG" imprinted on a red lens. The lens is located behind a cutout in the opaque layer of the instrument cluster overlay. The dark outer layer of the overlay prevents the indicator from being clearly visible when it is not illuminated. The "AIR BAG" text appears silhouetted against a red field through the translucent outer layer of the overlay when the indicator is illuminated from behind by a Light Emitting Diode (LED), which is soldered onto the instrument cluster electronic circuit board. The airbag



## AIRBAG INDICATOR (Continued)

indicator lens is serviced as a unit with the instrument cluster lens, hood and mask unit.

### OPERATION

The airbag indicator gives an indication to the vehicle operator when the airbag system is faulty or inoperative. The airbag indicator is controlled by a transistor on the instrument cluster circuit board based upon cluster programming and electronic messages received by the cluster from the Airbag Control Module (ACM) over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus. The airbag indicator Light Emitting Diode (LED) is completely controlled by the instrument cluster logic circuit, and that logic will only allow this indicator to operate when the instrument cluster receives a battery current input on the fused ignition switch output (run-start) circuit. Therefore, the indicator will always be off when the ignition switch is in any position except On or Start. The LED only illuminates when it is switched to ground by the instrument cluster transistor. The instrument cluster will turn on the airbag indicator for the following reasons:

- **Bulb Test** - Each time the ignition switch is turned to the On position the airbag indicator is illuminated for about six seconds. The entire six second bulb test is a function of the ACM.
- **ACM Lamp-On Message** - Each time the cluster receives a lamp-on message from the ACM, the airbag indicator will be illuminated. The indicator remains illuminated for about twelve seconds or until the cluster receives a lamp-off message from the ACM, whichever is longer.
- **Communication Error** - If the cluster receives no airbag messages for six consecutive seconds, the airbag indicator is illuminated. The indicator remains illuminated until the cluster receives a single lamp-off message from the ACM.
- **Actuator Test** - Each time the cluster is put through the actuator test, the airbag indicator will be turned on, then off again during the bulb check portion of the test to confirm the functionality of the LED and the cluster control circuitry. The actuator test illumination of the airbag indicator is also a function of the ACM.

The ACM continually monitors the airbag system circuits and sensors to decide whether the system is in good operating condition. The ACM then sends the proper lamp-on or lamp-off messages to the instrument cluster. If the ACM sends a lamp-on message after the bulb test, it indicates that the ACM has detected a system malfunction and/or that the airbags may not deploy when required, or may deploy when not required. The ACM will store a Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) for any malfunction it detects. Each time the airbag indicator fails to illuminate due

to an open or short in the cluster airbag indicator circuit, the cluster sends a message notifying the ACM of the condition, then the instrument cluster and the ACM will each store a DTC. For proper diagnosis of the airbag system, the ACM, the PCI data bus, or the electronic message inputs to the instrument cluster that control the airbag indicator, a DRBIII® scan tool is required. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

## BRAKE/PARK BRAKE INDICATOR

### DESCRIPTION

A brake indicator is standard equipment on all instrument clusters. The brake indicator is located near the left edge of the instrument cluster, to the left of the tachometer. There are two versions of the brake indicator. The version used depends upon the market for which the vehicle is manufactured. The version used for vehicles manufactured for the United States market consists of the word "BRAKE" imprinted on a red lens. The version for all other markets has two International Control and Display Symbol icons imprinted on the red lens; one is the icon for "Brake Failure", and the other is the icon for "Parking Brake". In either case, the lens is located behind a cutout in the opaque layer of the instrument cluster overlay. The dark outer layer of the overlay prevents the indicator from being clearly visible when it is not illuminated. The "BRAKE" text or the two icons appear silhouetted against a red field through the translucent outer layer of the overlay when the indicator is illuminated from behind by a Light Emitting Diode (LED), which is soldered onto the instrument cluster electronic circuit board. The brake indicator lens is serviced as a unit with the instrument cluster lens, hood and mask unit.

### OPERATION

The brake indicator gives an indication to the vehicle operator when the parking brake is applied, when there are certain brake hydraulic system malfunctions as indicated by a low brake hydraulic fluid level condition, or when certain faults are detected in the Anti-lock Brake System (ABS). This indicator is controlled by a transistor on the instrument cluster circuit board based upon cluster programming, electronic messages received by the cluster from the Controller Anti-lock Brake (CAB) over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus, and a hard wired input to the cluster from the park brake switch. The brake indicator Light Emitting Diode (LED) is completely controlled by the instrument cluster logic circuit, and that logic will only

## BRAKE/PARK BRAKE INDICATOR (Continued)

allow this indicator to operate when the instrument cluster receives a battery current input on the fused ignition switch output (run-start) circuit. Therefore, the LED will always be off when the ignition switch is in any position except On or Start. The LED only illuminates when it is provided a path to ground by the instrument cluster transistor. The instrument cluster will turn on the brake indicator for the following reasons:

- **Bulb Test** - Each time the ignition switch is turned to the On position the brake indicator is illuminated by the instrument cluster for about three seconds as a bulb test.

- **Brake Lamp-On Message** - Each time the cluster receives a lamp-on message from the CAB, the brake indicator will be illuminated. The indicator remains illuminated until the cluster receives a lamp-off message from the CAB, or until the ignition switch is turned to the Off position, whichever occurs first.

- **Park Brake Switch Input** - Each time the cluster detects ground on the park brake switch sense circuit (park brake switch closed = park brake applied or not fully released) while the ignition switch is in the On position, the brake indicator is illuminated. The indicator remains illuminated until the park brake switch sense input to the cluster is an open circuit (park brake switch open = park brake fully released), or until the ignition switch is turned to the Off position, whichever occurs first.

- **Communication Error** - If the cluster receives no lamp-on or lamp-off messages from the CAB for six consecutive seconds, the brake indicator is illuminated. The indicator remains illuminated until the cluster receives a single valid lamp-off message from the CAB.

- **Actuator Test** - Each time the instrument cluster is put through the actuator test, the brake indicator will be turned on for the duration of the test to confirm the functionality of the LED and the cluster control circuitry.

The park brake switch on the park brake lever mechanism provides a hard wired ground input to the instrument cluster circuitry through the red brake warning indicator driver circuit whenever the park brake is applied or not fully released. The CAB continually monitors the ABS system circuits and sensors, including the brake fluid level switch on the brake master cylinder reservoir, to decide whether the system is in good operating condition. The CAB then sends the proper lamp-on or lamp-off messages to the instrument cluster. If the CAB sends a lamp-on message after the bulb test, it indicates that the CAB has detected a brake hydraulic system malfunction and/or that the ABS system has become

inoperative. The CAB will store a Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) for any malfunction it detects.

For further diagnosis of the brake indicator or the instrument cluster circuitry that controls the LED, (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). The park brake switch input to the instrument cluster may be diagnosed using conventional diagnostic tools and methods. For proper diagnosis of the brake fluid level switch input to the CAB, the ABS, the CAB, the PCI data bus, or the electronic message inputs to the instrument cluster that control the brake indicator, a DRBIII® scan tool is required. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - BRAKE INDICATOR

The diagnosis found here addresses an inoperative brake indicator condition. If there are problems with several indicators in the instrument cluster, (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). If the brake indicator stays on with the ignition switch in the On position and the park brake released, or comes on while driving, the brake system must be diagnosed and repaired prior to performing the following tests. (Refer to 5 - BRAKES - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). If no brake system problem is found, the following procedures will help to locate a shorted or open circuit, or a faulty park brake switch input. Refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, details of wire harness routing and retention, connector pin-out information and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, DRIVER AIRBAG, PASSENGER AIRBAG, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE IMPACT SENSOR, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**



## BRAKE/PARK BRAKE INDICATOR (Continued)

## INDICATOR ILLUMINATES DURING BULB TEST, BUT DOES NOT WHEN PARK BRAKE APPLIED

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Disconnect the instrument panel wire harness connector for the park brake switch from the switch terminal. Apply the parking brake. Check for continuity between the park brake switch terminal and a good ground. There should be continuity. If OK, go to Step 2. If not OK, replace the faulty park brake switch.

(2) Disconnect the instrument panel wire harness connector for the instrument cluster from the cluster connector receptacle. Check for continuity between the red brake warning indicator driver circuit cavities of the instrument panel wire harness connector for the park brake switch and the instrument panel wire harness connector for the instrument cluster. There should be continuity. If not OK, repair the open red brake warning indicator driver circuit between the park brake switch and the instrument cluster as required.

## INDICATOR REMAINS ILLUMINATED - BRAKE SYSTEM CHECKS OK

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Disconnect the instrument panel wire harness connector for the park brake switch from the park brake switch terminal. Check for continuity between the terminal of the park brake switch and a good ground. There should be no continuity with the park brake released, and continuity with the park brake applied. If OK, go to Step 2. If not OK, replace the faulty park brake switch.

(2) Disconnect the instrument panel wire harness connector for the instrument cluster from the cluster connector receptacle. Check for continuity between the red brake warning indicator driver circuit cavity of the instrument panel wire harness connector for the park brake switch and a good ground. There should be no continuity. If not OK, repair the shorted red brake warning indicator driver circuit between the park brake switch and the instrument cluster as required.

## CHECK GAUGES INDICATOR

## DESCRIPTION

A check gauges indicator is standard equipment on all instrument clusters. The check gauges indicator is located on the right edge of the instrument cluster, to the right of the speedometer. The check gauges indicator consists of the words "CHECK GAGES" imprinted on a red lens. The lens is located behind a cutout in the opaque layer of the instrument cluster overlay. The dark outer layer of the overlay prevents the indicator from being clearly visible when it is not

illuminated. The "CHECK GAGES" text appears silhouetted against a red field through the translucent outer layer of the overlay when the indicator is illuminated from behind by a Light Emitting Diode (LED), which is soldered onto the instrument cluster electronic circuit board. The check gauges indicator lens is serviced as a unit with the instrument cluster lens, hood and mask unit.

## OPERATION

The check gauges indicator gives an indication to the vehicle operator when certain instrument cluster gauge readings reflect a condition requiring immediate attention. This indicator is controlled by a transistor on the instrument cluster circuit board based upon cluster programming and electronic messages received by the cluster from the Powertrain Control Module (PCM) over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus. The check gauges indicator Light Emitting Diode (LED) is completely controlled by the instrument cluster logic circuit, and that logic will only allow this indicator to operate when the instrument cluster receives a battery current input on the fused ignition switch output (run-start) circuit. Therefore, the LED will always be off when the ignition switch is in any position except On or Start. The LED only illuminates when it is provided a path to ground by the instrument cluster transistor. The instrument cluster will turn on the check gauges indicator for the following reasons:

- **Bulb Test** - Each time the ignition switch is turned to the On position the check gauges indicator is illuminated for about three seconds as a bulb test.

- **Engine Temperature High/Critical Message** - Each time the cluster receives a message from the PCM indicating the engine coolant temperature is high or critical [above about 127° C (261° F) for gasoline engines except Gulf Coast Country (GCC), 129° C (264° F) for GCC gasoline engines, and 118° C (244° F) for diesel engines], the check gauges indicator will be illuminated. The indicator remains illuminated until the cluster receives a message indicating the engine coolant temperature is not high or critical [below about 125° C (255° F) or below for all gasoline engines, or 115° C (239° F) for all diesel engines].

- **Engine Oil Pressure Low Message** - Each time the cluster receives a message from the PCM indicating the engine oil pressure is about 0.28 kg/cm<sup>2</sup> or lower (about 4 psi or lower), the check gauges indicator will be illuminated. The indicator remains illuminated until the cluster receives a message from the PCM indicating that the engine oil pressure is about 0.56 kg/cm<sup>2</sup> or higher (about 8 psi or higher). The cluster will only turn the indicator on in response to an engine oil pressure low message if the engine speed is 300 rpm or greater.

## CHECK GAUGES INDICATOR (Continued)

- **System Voltage Low (Charge Fail) Message**

- Each time the cluster receives a message from the PCM indicating the electrical system voltage is about 11.0 volts or lower (charge fail condition), the check gauges indicator will be illuminated. The indicator remains illuminated until the cluster receives a message from the PCM indicating the electrical system voltage is greater than about 11.0 volts (but less than 16.0 volts), or until the ignition switch is turned to the Off position, whichever occurs first.

- **System Voltage High Message** - Each time the cluster receives a message from the PCM indicating the electrical system voltage is greater than about 16.0 volts, the check gauges indicator will be illuminated. The indicator remains illuminated until the cluster receives a message from the PCM indicating the electrical system voltage is less than about 16.0 volts (but greater than about 11.0 volts), or until the ignition switch is turned to the Off position, whichever occurs first.

- **Actuator Test** - Each time the cluster is put through the actuator test, the check gauges indicator will be turned on for the duration of the test to confirm the functionality of the LED and the cluster control circuitry.

The PCM continually monitors the engine temperature, oil pressure, and electrical system voltage, then sends the proper messages to the instrument cluster. For further diagnosis of the check gauges indicator or the instrument cluster circuitry that controls the indicator, (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). For proper diagnosis of the PCM, the PCI data bus, or the electronic message inputs to the instrument cluster that control the check gauges indicator, a DRBIII® scan tool is required. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

## COOLANT LOW INDICATOR

### DESCRIPTION

A coolant low indicator is only found in the instrument clusters of vehicles equipped with an optional diesel engine. The coolant low indicator should not be confused with the coolant level low indication provided by the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) of vehicles equipped with a gasoline engine, although they do perform the same function. The coolant low indicator is located in the lower left corner of the instrument cluster, to the left of the tachometer. The coolant low indicator consists of an International Control and Display Symbol icon for "Low Engine Coolant" imprinted on an amber lens. The lens is located behind a cutout in the opaque layer of the instrument cluster overlay. The dark

outer layer of the overlay prevents the indicator from being clearly visible when it is not illuminated. The icon appears silhouetted against an amber field through the translucent outer layer of the overlay when the indicator is illuminated from behind by a replaceable incandescent bulb and bulb holder unit located on the instrument cluster electronic circuit board. When the exterior lighting is turned On, the illumination intensity of the coolant low indicator is dimmable, which is adjusted along with the cluster illumination lighting using the panel lamps dimmer control ring on the control stalk of the left multi-function switch. The coolant low indicator lens is serviced as a unit with the instrument cluster lens, hood and mask unit.

### OPERATION

The coolant low indicator gives an indication to the vehicle operator when the diesel engine coolant level is low. This indicator is controlled by a transistor on the instrument cluster circuit board based upon cluster programming and electronic messages received by the cluster from the Body Control Module (BCM) over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus. The coolant low indicator bulb is completely controlled by the instrument cluster logic circuit, and that logic will only allow this indicator to operate when the instrument cluster receives a battery current input on the fused ignition switch output (run-start) circuit. Therefore, the bulb will always be off when the ignition switch is in any position except On or Start. The bulb only illuminates when it is provided a path to ground by the instrument cluster transistor. The instrument cluster will turn on the coolant low indicator for the following reasons:

- **Bulb Test** - Each time the ignition switch is turned to the On position the coolant low indicator is illuminated for about three seconds as a bulb test.

- **Coolant Low Lamp-On Message** - Each time the cluster receives a coolant low lamp-on message from the BCM indicating the engine coolant is below the minimum level in the coolant reservoir, the coolant low indicator will be illuminated. The indicator remains illuminated until the cluster receives a coolant low lamp-off message from the BCM indicating that the engine coolant level is above the minimum level, or until the ignition switch is turned to the Off position, whichever occurs first.

- **Actuator Test** - Each time the cluster is put through the actuator test, the coolant low indicator will be turned on for the duration of the test to confirm the functionality of the bulb and the cluster control circuitry.

The BCM continually monitors the input from the coolant level switch, then sends the proper coolant

## COOLANT LOW INDICATOR (Continued)

low indicator lamp-on and lamp-off messages to the instrument cluster. If the coolant low indicator fails to light during the bulb test, replace the bulb with a known good unit. For further diagnosis of the coolant low indicator or the instrument cluster circuitry that controls the indicator, (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). For proper diagnosis of the coolant level switch, the BCM, the PCI data bus, or the electronic message inputs to the instrument cluster that control the coolant low indicator, a DRBIII® scan tool is required. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

## CRUISE INDICATOR

## DESCRIPTION

A cruise indicator is standard equipment on all instrument clusters. However, on vehicles not equipped with the optional speed control system, this indicator is electronically disabled. The cruise indicator is located on the right edge of the instrument cluster, to the right of the speedometer for early production versions. The cruise indicator is located in the odometer/trip odometer Vacuum Fluorescent Display (VFD) unit for late production versions.

For early production, the cruise indicator consists of the word "CRUISE" imprinted on a blue/green lens. The lens is located behind a cutout in the opaque layer of the instrument cluster overlay. The dark outer layer of the overlay prevents the indicator from being clearly visible when it is not illuminated. The "CRUISE" text appears silhouetted against a blue/green field through the translucent outer layer of the overlay when the indicator is illuminated from behind by a replaceable bulb and bulb holder unit located on the instrument cluster electronic circuit board. When the exterior lighting is turned On, the illumination intensity of the cruise indicator is dimmable, which is adjusted along with the cluster illumination lighting using the panel lamps dimmer control ring on the control stalk of the left multi-function switch. The cruise indicator lens is serviced as a unit with the instrument cluster lens, hood and mask unit.

For late production, the cruise indicator consists of the word "CRUISE", which appears in the lower portion of the VFD. The VFD is soldered onto the cluster electronic circuit board and is visible through a window with a smoked clear lens located on the lower edge of the speedometer gauge dial face of the cluster overlay. The dark lens over the VFD prevents the indicator from being clearly visible when it is not illuminated. The word "CRUISE" appears in a blue/green color and at the same lighting level as the

odometer/trip odometer information when the indicator is illuminated by the instrument cluster electronic circuit board. The cruise indicator is serviced as a unit with the VFD in the instrument cluster.

## OPERATION

The cruise indicator gives an indication to the vehicle operator when the speed control system is turned On, regardless of whether the speed control is engaged. This indicator is controlled by the microprocessor on the instrument cluster circuit board based upon cluster programming and electronic messages received by the cluster from the Powertrain Control Module (PCM) over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus. The cruise indicator is completely controlled by the instrument cluster logic circuit, and that logic will only allow this indicator to operate when the instrument cluster receives a battery current input on the fused ignition switch output (run-start) circuit. Therefore, the indicator will always be off when the ignition switch is in any position except On or Start. The indicator only illuminates when it is commanded to do so by the instrument cluster microprocessor. The instrument cluster will turn on the cruise indicator for the following reasons:

- **Cruise Lamp-On Message** - Each time the cluster receives a cruise lamp-on message from the PCM indicating the speed control system has been turned On, the cruise indicator is illuminated. The indicator remains illuminated until the cluster receives a cruise lamp-off message from the PCM or until the ignition switch is turned to the Off position, whichever occurs first.

- **Actuator Test** - Each time the cluster is put through the actuator test, the cruise indicator will be turned on for the duration of the test to confirm the functionality of the bulb and the cluster control circuitry.

The PCM continually monitors the speed control switches to determine the proper outputs to the speed control servo. The PCM then sends the proper cruise indicator lamp-on and lamp-off messages to the instrument cluster. If the early production version cruise indicator fails to light during the actuator test, replace the bulb with a known good unit. For further diagnosis of the early or late production version of the cruise indicator or the instrument cluster circuitry that controls the indicator, (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). For proper diagnosis of the speed control switches, the PCM, the PCI data bus, or the electronic message inputs to the instrument cluster that control the cruise indicator, a DRBIII® scan tool is required. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.



## ENGINE TEMPERATURE GAUGE

### DESCRIPTION

An engine coolant temperature gauge is standard equipment on all instrument clusters. The engine coolant temperature gauge is located in the lower right corner of the instrument cluster, to the right of the speedometer. The engine coolant temperature gauge consists of a movable gauge needle or pointer controlled by the instrument cluster circuitry and a fixed 90 degree scale on the gauge dial face that reads left-to-right from 40° C to 125° C, or from 100° F to 260° F, depending upon the market for which the vehicle is manufactured. An International Control and Display Symbol icon for "Engine Coolant Temperature" is located on the gauge dial face directly below the left end of the gauge scale.

The engine coolant temperature gauge graphics are either white, gray and orange against a black gauge dial face (base cluster) or black, gray and red against a taupe gauge dial face (premium cluster), making them clearly visible within the instrument cluster in daylight. When illuminated from behind by the panel lamps dimmer controlled cluster illumination lighting with the exterior lamps turned On, the base cluster white gauge graphics appear blue-green and the orange graphics still appear orange, while the premium cluster taupe gauge dial face appears blue-green with the black graphics silhouetted against the illuminated background and the red graphics still appear red. The gray gauge graphics for both versions of the cluster are not illuminated. The orange gauge needle in the base cluster gauge is internally illuminated, while the black gauge needle in the premium cluster gauge is not.

Base cluster gauge illumination is provided by replaceable incandescent bulb and bulb holder units located on the instrument cluster electronic circuit board. Premium cluster gauge illumination is provided by an integral electro-luminescent lamp that is serviced as a unit with the instrument cluster. The engine coolant temperature gauge is serviced as a unit with the instrument cluster.

### OPERATION

The engine coolant temperature gauge gives an indication to the vehicle operator of the engine coolant temperature. This gauge is controlled by the instrument cluster circuit board based upon cluster programming and electronic messages received by the cluster from the Powertrain Control Module (PCM) over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus. The engine coolant temperature gauge is an air core magnetic unit that is com-

pletely controlled by the instrument cluster electronic circuit board. The cluster is programmed to move the gauge needle back to the low end of the scale after the ignition switch is turned to the Off position. The instrument cluster circuitry controls the gauge needle position and provides the following features:

- **Engine Temperature Normal Message** - Each time the cluster receives a message from the PCM indicating the engine coolant temperature is within the normal operating range [up to about 124° C (255° F) for gasoline engines, or about 115° C (239° F) for diesel engines], the gauge needle is moved to the actual relative temperature position of the gauge scale.

- **Engine Temperature High Message** - Each time the cluster receives a message from the PCM indicating the engine coolant temperature is high [above about 127° C (260° F) for gasoline engines except Gulf Coast Country (GCC), 129° C (264° F) for GCC gasoline engines, or 118° C (244° F) for diesel engines], the gauge needle is moved into the center of the red warning zone on the gauge scale.

- **Engine Temperature Critical Message** - Each time the cluster receives a message from the PCM indicating the engine coolant temperature is critical [above about 132° C (269° F) for gasoline engines, or 126° C (259° F) for diesel engines], the gauge needle is moved to the high end of the red warning zone on the gauge scale.

- **Communication Error** - If the cluster fails to receive an engine temperature message, it will hold the gauge needle at the last indication for about twelve seconds or until the ignition switch is turned to the Off position, whichever occurs first. After twelve seconds, the cluster will move the gauge needle to the low end of the gauge scale.

- **Actuator Test** - Each time the cluster is put through the actuator test, the engine coolant temperature gauge needle will be swept across the entire gauge scale and back in order to confirm the functionality of the gauge and the cluster control circuitry.

The PCM continually monitors the engine coolant temperature sensor to determine the engine operating temperature. The PCM then sends the proper engine coolant temperature messages to the instrument cluster. For further diagnosis of the engine coolant temperature gauge or the instrument cluster circuitry that controls the gauge, (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). If the instrument cluster moves the engine coolant temperature gauge needle to indicate a high or critical engine temperature, it may indicate that the engine or the engine cooling system requires service. For proper diagnosis of the engine coolant temperature sensor, the PCM, the PCI data bus, or

## ENGINE TEMPERATURE GAUGE (Continued)

the electronic message inputs to the instrument cluster that control the engine coolant temperature gauge, a DRBIII® scan tool is required. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

## FRONT FOG LAMP INDICATOR

## DESCRIPTION

A front fog lamp indicator is optional equipment on vehicles equipped with base versions of the instrument cluster, and standard equipment on vehicles equipped with premium versions of the instrument cluster. The front fog lamp indicator is located on the left edge of the instrument cluster, to the left of the tachometer. The front fog lamp indicator consists of an International Control and Display Symbol icon for "Front Fog Light" imprinted on a green lens. The lens is located behind a cutout in the opaque layer of the instrument cluster overlay. The dark outer layer of the overlay prevents the indicator from being clearly visible when it is not illuminated. The icon appears silhouetted against a green field through the translucent outer layer of the overlay when the indicator is illuminated from behind by a replaceable incandescent bulb and bulb holder unit located on the instrument cluster electronic circuit board. When the exterior lighting is turned On, the illumination intensity of the front fog lamp indicator is dimmable, which is adjusted along with the cluster illumination lighting using the panel lamps dimmer control ring on the control stalk of the left multi-function switch. The front fog lamp indicator lens is serviced as a unit with the instrument cluster lens, hood and mask unit.

## OPERATION

The front fog lamp indicator gives an indication to the vehicle operator whenever the front fog lamps are illuminated. This indicator is controlled by a transistor on the instrument cluster circuit board based upon cluster programming and electronic messages received by the cluster from the Body Control Module (BCM) over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus. The front fog lamp indicator bulb is completely controlled by the instrument cluster logic circuit, and that logic will allow this indicator to operate whenever the instrument cluster receives a battery current input on the fused B(+) circuit. Therefore, the bulb can be illuminated regardless of the ignition switch position. The bulb only illuminates when it is provided a path to ground by the instrument cluster transistor. The instrument cluster will turn on the front fog lamp indicator for the following reasons:

- **Front Fog Lamp-On Message** - Each time the cluster receives a front fog lamp-on message from the BCM indicating the front fog lamps are turned On, the front fog lamp indicator will be illuminated. The indicator remains illuminated until the cluster receives a front fog lamp-off message from the BCM.

- **Actuator Test** - Each time the cluster is put through the actuator test, the front fog lamp indicator will be turned on for the duration of the test to confirm the functionality of the bulb and the cluster control circuitry.

The BCM continually monitors the exterior lighting (left multi-function) switch to determine the proper outputs to the front fog lamp relay. The BCM then sends the proper front fog lamp indicator lamp-on and lamp-off messages to the instrument cluster. If the front fog lamp indicator fails to light during the actuator test, replace the bulb with a known good unit. For further diagnosis of the front fog lamp indicator or the instrument cluster circuitry that controls the indicator, (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). For proper diagnosis of the front fog lamp system, the BCM, the PCI data bus, or the electronic message inputs to the instrument cluster that control the front fog lamp indicator, a DRBIII® scan tool is required. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

## FUEL GAUGE

## DESCRIPTION

A fuel gauge is standard equipment on all instrument clusters. The fuel gauge is located in the lower left corner of the instrument cluster, to the left of the tachometer. The fuel gauge consists of a movable gauge needle or pointer controlled by the instrument cluster circuitry and a fixed 90 degree scale on the gauge dial face that reads left-to-right from "E" (or Empty) to "F" (or Full). An International Control and Display Symbol icon for "Fuel" is located on the gauge dial face, directly below the right end of the gauge scale. An arrowhead pointed to the left side of the vehicle is imprinted on the gauge dial face next to the "Fuel" icon to provide the driver with a reminder as to the location of the fuel filler access.

The fuel gauge graphics are either white, gray and orange against a black gauge dial face (base cluster) or black and gray against a taupe gauge dial face (premium cluster), making them clearly visible within the instrument cluster in daylight. When illuminated from behind by the panel lamps dimmer controlled cluster illumination lighting with the exterior lamps turned On, the base cluster white gauge graphics appear blue-green and the orange graphics



## FUEL GAUGE (Continued)

still appear orange, while the premium cluster taupe gauge dial face appears blue-green with the black graphics silhouetted against the illuminated background. The gray gauge graphics for both versions of the cluster are not illuminated. The orange gauge needle in the base cluster gauge is internally illuminated, while the black gauge needle in the premium cluster gauge is not.

Base cluster gauge illumination is provided by replaceable incandescent bulb and bulb holder units located on the instrument cluster electronic circuit board. Premium cluster gauge illumination is provided by an integral electro-luminescent lamp that is serviced as a unit with the instrument cluster. The fuel gauge is serviced as a unit with the instrument cluster.

## OPERATION

The fuel gauge gives an indication to the vehicle operator of the level of fuel in the fuel tank. This gauge is controlled by the instrument cluster circuit board based upon cluster programming and electronic messages received by the cluster from the Powertrain Control Module (PCM) over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus. The fuel gauge is an air core magnetic unit that receives battery current on the instrument cluster electronic circuit board through the fused ignition switch output (run-start) circuit whenever the ignition switch is in the On or Start positions. The cluster is programmed to move the gauge needle back to the low end of the scale after the ignition switch is turned to the Off position. The instrument cluster circuitry controls the gauge needle position and provides the following features:

- **Percent Tank Full Message** - Each time the cluster receives a message from the PCM indicating the percent tank full, the cluster moves the gauge needle to the proper relative position on the gauge scale. The PCM applies an algorithm to the input from the fuel tank sending unit to dampen gauge needle movement against the negative effect that fuel sloshing within the fuel tank can have on accurate inputs to the PCM.

- **Less Than 15 Percent Tank Full Message** - Each time the cluster receives messages from the PCM indicating the percent tank full is less than 15, the gauge needle is moved to below the one-eighth position on the gauge scale and the low fuel indicator is illuminated. The low fuel indicator remains illuminated until the cluster receives messages from the PCM indicating that the percent tank full is greater than 15 (one-eighth), or until the ignition switch is turned to the Off position, whichever occurs first.

- **Less Than Empty Percent Tank Full Message** - Each time the cluster receives a message from

the PCM indicating the percent tank full is less than empty, the gauge needle is moved to the far left (low) end of the gauge scale and the low fuel indicator is illuminated immediately. This message would indicate that the fuel tank sending unit input to the PCM is a short circuit.

- **More Than Full Percent Tank Full Message** - Each time the cluster receives a message from the PCM indicating the percent tank full is more than full, the gauge needle is moved to the far left (low) end of the gauge scale and the low fuel indicator is illuminated immediately. This message would indicate that the fuel tank sending unit input to the PCM is an open circuit.

- **Communication Error** - If the cluster fails to receive a percent tank full message, it will hold the gauge needle at the last indication for about twelve seconds or until the ignition switch is turned to the Off position, whichever occurs first. After twelve seconds, the cluster will move the gauge needle to the low end of the gauge scale.

- **Actuator Test** - Each time the cluster is put through the actuator test, the fuel gauge needle will be swept across the entire gauge scale and back in order to confirm the functionality of the gauge and the cluster control circuitry.

The PCM continually monitors the fuel tank sending unit input to determine the level of fuel in the fuel tank. The PCM then applies an algorithm to the input and sends the proper percent tank full messages to the instrument cluster. For further diagnosis of the fuel gauge or the instrument cluster circuitry that controls the gauge, (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). For proper diagnosis of the fuel tank sending unit, the PCM, the PCI data bus, or the electronic message inputs to the instrument cluster that control the fuel gauge, a DRBIII® scan tool is required. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

## HIGH BEAM INDICATOR

## DESCRIPTION

A high beam indicator is standard equipment on all instrument clusters. The high beam indicator is located near the upper edge of the instrument cluster, between the tachometer and the speedometer. The high beam indicator consists of an International Control and Display Symbol icon for "High Beam" imprinted on a blue lens. The lens is located behind a cutout in the opaque layer of the instrument cluster overlay. The dark outer layer of the overlay prevents the indicator from being clearly visible when it is not illuminated. The icon appears silhouetted against a

## HIGH BEAM INDICATOR (Continued)

blue field through the translucent outer layer of the overlay when the indicator is illuminated from behind by a replaceable incandescent bulb and bulb holder unit located on the instrument cluster electronic circuit board. When the exterior lighting is turned On, the illumination intensity of the high beam indicator is dimmable, which is adjusted along with the cluster illumination lighting using the panel lamps dimmer control ring on the control stalk of the left multi-function switch. The high beam indicator lens is serviced as a unit with the instrument cluster lens, hood and mask unit.

## OPERATION

The high beam indicator gives an indication to the vehicle operator whenever the headlamp high beams are illuminated. This indicator is controlled by a transistor on the instrument cluster electronic circuit board based upon cluster programming and electronic messages received by the cluster from the Body Control Module (BCM) over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus. The high beam indicator bulb is completely controlled by the instrument cluster logic circuit, and that logic will allow this indicator to operate whenever the instrument cluster receives a battery current input on the fused B(+) circuit. Therefore, the bulb can be illuminated regardless of the ignition switch position. The bulb only illuminates when it is provided a path to ground by the instrument cluster transistor. The instrument cluster will turn on the high beam indicator for the following reasons:

- **High Beam Headlamps-On Message** - Each time the cluster receives a high beam headlamps-on message from the BCM indicating the headlamp high beams are turned On, the high beam indicator will be illuminated. The indicator remains illuminated until the cluster receives a high beam headlamps-off message from the BCM.

- **Actuator Test** - Each time the cluster is put through the actuator test, the high beam indicator will be turned on for the duration of the test to confirm the functionality of the bulb and the cluster control circuitry.

The BCM continually monitors the exterior lighting (left multi-function) switch to determine the proper outputs to the headlamp low beam and high beam relays. The BCM then sends the proper high beam indicator lamp-on and lamp-off messages to the instrument cluster. If the high beam indicator fails to light during the actuator test, replace the bulb with a known good unit. For further diagnosis of the high beam indicator or the instrument cluster circuitry that controls the indicator, (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). For proper diagnosis of the headlamp

system, the BCM, the PCI data bus, or the electronic message inputs to the instrument cluster that control the high beam indicator, a DRBIII® scan tool is required. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

## LOW FUEL INDICATOR

## DESCRIPTION

A low fuel indicator is standard equipment on all instrument clusters. The low fuel indicator is located near the left edge of the instrument cluster, to the left of the tachometer. The low fuel indicator consists of an International Control and Display Symbol icon for "Fuel" imprinted on an amber lens. The lens is located behind a cutout in the opaque layer of the instrument cluster overlay. The dark outer layer of the overlay prevents the icon from being clearly visible when the indicator is not illuminated. The icon appears silhouetted against an amber field through the translucent outer layer of the overlay when the indicator is illuminated from behind by a replaceable incandescent bulb and bulb holder unit located on the instrument cluster electronic circuit board. When the exterior lighting is turned On, the illumination intensity of the low fuel indicator is dimmable, which is adjusted along with the cluster illumination lighting using the panel lamps dimmer control ring on the control stalk of the left multi-function switch. The low fuel indicator lens is serviced as a unit with the instrument cluster lens, hood and mask unit.

## OPERATION

The low fuel indicator gives an indication to the vehicle operator when the level of fuel in the fuel tank becomes low. This indicator is controlled by a transistor on the instrument cluster circuit board based upon cluster programming and electronic messages received by the cluster from the Powertrain Control Module (PCM) over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus. The low fuel indicator bulb is completely controlled by the instrument cluster logic circuit, and that logic will only allow this indicator to operate when the instrument cluster receives a battery current input on the fused ignition switch output (run-start) circuit. Therefore, the bulb will always be off when the ignition switch is in any position except On or Start. The bulb only illuminates when it is switched to ground by the instrument cluster transistor. The instrument cluster will turn on the low fuel indicator for the following reasons:

- **Bulb Test** - Each time the ignition switch is turned to the On position the low fuel indicator is illuminated for about three seconds as a bulb test.

## LOW FUEL INDICATOR (Continued)

- **Less Than 15 Percent Tank Full Message** -

Each time the cluster receives messages from the PCM indicating that the percent tank full is less than 15, the low fuel indicator is illuminated. The indicator remains illuminated until the cluster receives messages from the PCM indicating that the percent tank full has increased to greater than 15. The PCM applies an algorithm to the input from the fuel tank sending unit to dampen the illumination of the low fuel indicator against the negative effect that fuel sloshing within the fuel tank can have on accurate inputs to the PCM.

- **Less Than Empty Percent Tank Full Message** - Each time the cluster receives a message from the PCM indicating the percent tank full is less than empty, the low fuel indicator is illuminated immediately. This message would indicate that the fuel tank sending unit input to the PCM is a short circuit.

- **More Than Full Percent Tank Full Message** - Each time the cluster receives a message from the PCM indicating the percent tank full is more than full, the low fuel indicator is illuminated immediately. This message would indicate that the fuel tank sending unit input to the PCM is an open circuit.

- **Communication Error** - If the cluster fails to receive a percent tank full message for more than about twelve seconds, the cluster control circuitry will illuminate the low fuel indicator until a new percent tank full message is received, or until the ignition switch is turned to the Off position, whichever occurs first.

- **Actuator Test** - Each time the cluster is put through the actuator test, the low fuel indicator will be turned on for the duration of the test to confirm the functionality of the bulb and the cluster control circuitry.

The PCM continually monitors the fuel tank sending unit input to determine the level of fuel in the fuel tank. The PCM then applies an algorithm to the input and sends the proper percent tank full messages to the instrument cluster. If the low fuel indicator fails to light during the bulb test, replace the bulb with a known good unit. For further diagnosis of the low fuel indicator or the instrument cluster circuitry that controls the indicator, (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). For proper diagnosis of the fuel tank sending unit, the PCM, the PCI data bus, or the electronic message inputs to the instrument cluster that control the low fuel indicator, a DRBIII® scan tool is required. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

## MALFUNCTION INDICATOR LAMP (MIL)

## DESCRIPTION

A Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) is standard equipment on all instrument clusters. The MIL is located near the right edge of the instrument cluster, to the right of the speedometer. The MIL consists of an International Control and Display Symbol icon for "Engine" imprinted on an amber lens. The lens is located behind a cutout in the opaque layer of the instrument cluster overlay. The dark outer layer of the overlay prevents the indicator from being clearly visible when it is not illuminated. The icon appears silhouetted against an amber field through the translucent outer layer of the overlay when the indicator is illuminated from behind by a replaceable incandescent bulb and bulb holder unit located on the instrument cluster electronic circuit board. The MIL lens is serviced as a unit with the instrument cluster lens, hood and mask unit.

## OPERATION

The Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) gives an indication to the vehicle operator when the Powertrain Control Module (PCM) has recorded a Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) for an On-Board Diagnostics II (OBDII) emissions-related circuit or component malfunction. The MIL is controlled by a transistor on the instrument cluster circuit board based upon cluster programming and electronic messages received by the cluster from the PCM over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus. The MIL bulb is completely controlled by the instrument cluster logic circuit, and that logic will only allow this indicator to operate when the instrument cluster receives a battery current input on the fused ignition switch output (run-start) circuit. Therefore, the bulb will always be off when the ignition switch is in any position except On or Start. The bulb only illuminates when it is provided a path to ground by the instrument cluster transistor. The instrument cluster will turn on the MIL for the following reasons:

- **Bulb Test** - Each time the ignition switch is turned to the On position the MIL is illuminated for about three seconds as a bulb test.

- **MIL Lamp-On Message** - Each time the cluster receives a MIL lamp-on message from the PCM, the indicator will be illuminated. The indicator can be flashed on and off, or illuminated solid, as dictated by the PCM message. For some DTC's, if a problem does not recur, the PCM will send a lamp-off message automatically. Other DTC's may require that a fault be repaired and the PCM be reset before a lamp-off message will be sent. For more informa-

## MALFUNCTION INDICATOR LAMP (MIL) (Continued)

tion on the PCM and the DTC set and reset parameters, (Refer to 25 - EMISSIONS CONTROL - OPERATION).

- **Communication Error** - If the cluster receives no lamp-on or lamp-off messages from the PCM for twenty consecutive seconds, the MIL is illuminated by the instrument cluster. The indicator remains controlled and illuminated by the cluster until a valid lamp-on or lamp-off message is received from the PCM.

- **Actuator Test** - Each time the cluster is put through the actuator test, the MIL will be turned on for the duration of the test to confirm the functionality of the bulb and the cluster control circuitry.

The PCM continually monitors the fuel and emissions system circuits and sensors to decide whether the system is in good operating condition. The PCM then sends the proper lamp-on or lamp-off messages to the instrument cluster. If the MIL fails to light during the bulb test, replace the bulb with a known good unit. For further diagnosis of the MIL or the instrument cluster circuitry that controls the indicator, (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). If the instrument cluster turns on the MIL after the bulb test, it may indicate that a malfunction has occurred and that the fuel and emissions systems may require service. For proper diagnosis of the fuel and emissions systems, the PCM, the PCI data bus, or the electronic message inputs to the instrument cluster that control the MIL, a DRBIII® scan tool is required. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

## ODOMETER

### DESCRIPTION

An odometer and trip odometer are standard equipment in all instrument clusters. The odometer and trip odometer information are displayed in a common electronic, blue-green Vacuum-Fluorescent Display (VFD). The VFD is soldered onto the cluster electronic circuit board and is visible through a window with a smoked clear lens located in the lower edge of the speedometer dial face in the instrument cluster. The dark lens over the VFD prevents it from being clearly visible when it is not illuminated. However, the odometer and trip odometer information are not displayed simultaneously. The trip odometer reset switch on the instrument cluster circuit board toggles the display between odometer and trip odometer modes by depressing the odometer/trip odometer switch button that extends through the lower edge of the cluster lens, just right of the speedometer.

All odometer and trip odometer distance information is stored in the instrument cluster memory. This information can be increased when the proper inputs are provided to the instrument cluster, but the information cannot be decreased. The odometer can display values up to 999,999 kilometers (999,999 miles). The odometer latches at these values, and will not roll over to zero. The trip odometer can display values up to 999.9 kilometers (999.9 miles) before it rolls over to zero. The odometer display does not have a decimal point and will not show values less than a full unit (kilometer or mile), while the trip odometer display does have a decimal point and will show tenths of a unit (kilometer or mile). The unit of measure for the odometer and trip odometer display is not shown in the VFD. The unit of measure for the instrument cluster odometer/trip odometer is selected at the time that it is manufactured, and cannot be changed. If the instrument cluster has a kilometers-per-hour primary speedometer scale, the odometer/trip odometer registers kilometers; and if the cluster features a miles-per-hour primary speedometer scale, the odometer/trip odometer registers miles.

During daylight hours (exterior lamps Off) the VFD is illuminated at full brightness for clear visibility. At night (exterior lamps are On) the VFD is illuminated at full brightness for clear visibility. At night (exterior lamps are On) the VFD lighting level is adjusted with the other cluster illumination lamps using the panel lamps dimmer control ring on the control stalk of the left multi-function switch. The instrument cluster converts an electronic dimming level message received from the Body Control Module (BCM) over the Programmable Communication Interface (PCI) data bus to a digital dimming level signal for controlling the lighting level of the VFD. However, a "Parade" mode position of the panel lamps dimmer control ring allows the VFD to be illuminated at full brightness if the exterior lamps are turned On during daylight hours.

The VFD, the trip odometer switch, and the trip odometer switch button are serviced as a unit with the instrument cluster.

### OPERATION

The odometer and trip odometer give an indication to the vehicle operator of the distance the vehicle has traveled. This indicator is controlled by the instrument cluster circuitry based upon cluster programming and electronic messages received by the cluster from the Powertrain Control Module (PCM) over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus. The odometer and trip odometer information is displayed by the instrument cluster Vacuum Fluorescent Display (VFD). The VFD will only display odometer or trip odometer information after the ignition



## ODOMETER (Continued)

switch is turned to the On or Start positions, and will display the last previously selected odometer or trip odometer information when the ignition switch is turned to the On or Start positions. The instrument cluster circuitry controls the VFD and provides the following features:

- **Odometer/Trip Odometer Display Toggling** - Actuating the trip odometer reset switch button momentarily with the VFD illuminated will toggle the display between the odometer and trip odometer information. Each time the VFD is illuminated with the ignition switch in the On or Start positions, the display will automatically return to the last mode selected (odometer or trip odometer).

- **Trip Odometer Reset** - When the trip odometer reset switch button is pressed and held for longer than about two seconds with the ignition switch in the On or Start positions, the trip odometer will be reset to 0.0 kilometers (miles). The VFD must be displaying the trip odometer information in order for the trip odometer information to be reset.

- **Communication Error** - If the cluster fails to receive a distance message during normal operation, it will hold and display the last data received until the ignition switch is turned to the Off position. If the cluster does not receive a distance message within one second after the ignition switch is turned to the On position, it will display the last distance message stored in the cluster memory. If it is determined that the distance information stored in the cluster memory is corrupt, it will display "-----" in the VFD. If the cluster is unable to display distance information due to an error internal to the cluster, the VFD display will be blank.

- **Actuator Test** - Each time the cluster is put through the actuator test, the VFD will step sequentially through a display of "000000" through "999999", then display the cluster software version number to confirm the functionality of each of the VFD segments and the cluster control circuitry.

The PCM continually monitors the vehicle speed pulse information received from the vehicle speed sensor, then sends the proper distance messages to the instrument cluster. For further diagnosis of the odometer/trip odometer or the instrument cluster circuitry that controls these functions, (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). For proper diagnosis of the vehicle speed sensor, the PCM, the PCI data bus, or the electronic message inputs to the instrument cluster that control the odometer/trip odometer, a DRBIII® scan tool is required. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

## OIL PRESSURE GAUGE

## DESCRIPTION

An oil pressure gauge is standard equipment on all instrument clusters. The oil pressure gauge is located in the upper right corner of the instrument cluster, to the right of the speedometer. The oil pressure gauge consists of a movable gauge needle or pointer controlled by the instrument cluster circuitry and a fixed 90 degree scale on the gauge dial face that reads left-to-right from "L" (or Low) to "H" (or High). An International Control and Display Symbol icon for "Engine Oil" is located on the gauge dial face, directly below the left end of the gauge scale.

The oil pressure gauge graphics are either white, gray and orange against a black gauge dial face (base cluster) or black and gray against a taupe gauge dial face (premium cluster), making them clearly visible within the instrument cluster in daylight. When illuminated from behind by the panel lamps dimmer controlled cluster illumination lighting with the exterior lamps turned On, the base cluster white gauge graphics appear blue-green and the orange graphics still appear orange, while the premium cluster taupe gauge dial face appears blue-green with the black graphics silhouetted against the illuminated background. The gray gauge graphics for both versions of the cluster are not illuminated. The orange gauge needle in the base cluster gauge is internally illuminated, while the black gauge needle in the premium cluster gauge is not.

Base cluster gauge illumination is provided by replaceable incandescent bulb and bulb holder units located on the instrument cluster electronic circuit board. Premium cluster gauge illumination is provided by an integral electro-luminescent lamp that is serviced as a unit with the instrument cluster. The oil pressure gauge is serviced as a unit with the instrument cluster.

## OPERATION

The oil pressure gauge gives an indication to the vehicle operator of the engine oil pressure. This gauge is controlled by the instrument cluster circuit board based upon cluster programming and electronic messages received by the cluster from the Powertrain Control Module (PCM) over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus. The oil pressure gauge is an air core magnetic unit that receives battery current on the instrument cluster electronic circuit board through the fused ignition switch output (run-start) circuit whenever the ignition switch is in the On or Start positions. The cluster is programmed to move the gauge needle back to the low end of the scale after the ignition switch is turned to the Off position. The instrument cluster



## OIL PRESSURE GAUGE (Continued)

circuitry controls the gauge needle position and provides the following features:

- **Engine Oil Pressure Message** - Each time the cluster receives a message from the PCM indicating the engine oil pressure is within the normal operating range [above 0.28 kg/cm<sup>2</sup> (above 4 psi)], the gauge needle is moved to the proper relative pressure position of the gauge scale.

- **Engine Oil Pressure Low Message** - Each time the cluster receives a message from the PCM indicating the engine oil pressure is below about 0.28 kg/cm<sup>2</sup> (4 psi), the gauge needle is moved to the far left end of the gauge scale, the check gauges indicator is illuminated, and a single chime tone is generated. The gauge needle remains at the left end of the gauge scale and the check gauges indicator remains illuminated until the cluster receives a message from the PCM indicating that the engine oil pressure is above about 0.56 kg/cm<sup>2</sup> (8 psi), or until the ignition switch is turned to the Off position, whichever occurs first. The cluster will only turn the check gauges indicator on in response to an engine oil pressure low message if the ignition switch is in the On position and the engine speed message is 300 rpm or greater.

- **Communication Error** - If the cluster fails to receive an engine oil pressure message, it will hold the gauge needle at the last indication for about twelve seconds or until the ignition switch is turned to the Off position, whichever occurs first. After twelve seconds, the cluster will move the gauge needle to the left end of the gauge scale.

- **Actuator Test** - Each time the cluster is put through the actuator test, the oil pressure gauge needle will be swept across the entire gauge scale and back in order to confirm the functionality of the gauge and the cluster control circuitry.

The PCM continually monitors the engine oil pressure sensor to determine the engine oil pressure. The PCM then sends the proper engine oil pressure messages to the instrument cluster. For further diagnosis of the oil pressure gauge or the instrument cluster circuitry that controls the gauge, (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). If the instrument cluster turns on the check gauges indicator due to a low oil pressure gauge reading, it may indicate that the engine or the engine oiling system requires service. For proper diagnosis of the engine oil pressure sensor, the PCM, the PCI data bus, or the electronic message inputs to the instrument cluster that control the oil pressure gauge, a DRBIII® scan tool is required. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

## OVERDRIVE OFF INDICATOR

## DESCRIPTION

An overdrive off indicator is standard equipment on all gasoline engine instrument clusters. The overdrive off indicator is located in the lower edge of the tachometer gauge dial face in the instrument cluster. The overdrive off indicator consists of the words "O/D OFF" imprinted on an amber lens. The lens is located behind a cutout in the opaque layer of the tachometer gauge dial face overlay. The dark outer layer of the overlay prevents the indicator from being clearly visible when it is not illuminated. The words "O/D OFF" appear silhouetted against an amber field through the translucent outer layer of the gauge dial face overlay when the indicator is illuminated from behind by a replaceable incandescent bulb and bulb holder unit located on the instrument cluster electronic circuit board. When the exterior lighting is turned On, the illumination intensity of the overdrive off indicator is dimmable, which is adjusted along with the cluster illumination lighting using the panel lamps dimmer control ring on the control stalk of the left multi-function switch. The overdrive off indicator lens is serviced as a unit with the instrument cluster.

## OPERATION

The overdrive off indicator gives an indication to the vehicle operator when the Off position of the overdrive off switch has been selected, disabling the electronically controlled overdrive feature of the automatic transmission. This indicator is controlled by a transistor on the instrument cluster circuit board based upon cluster programming and electronic messages received by the cluster over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus. These messages are sent by the Powertrain Control Module (PCM) or by the Transmission Control Module (TCM), depending upon the model of the automatic transmission. The overdrive off indicator bulb is completely controlled by the instrument cluster logic circuit, and that logic will only allow this indicator to operate when the instrument cluster receives a battery current input on the fused ignition switch output (run-start) circuit. Therefore, the bulb will always be off when the ignition switch is in any position except On or Start. The bulb only illuminates when it is provided a path to ground by the instrument cluster transistor. The instrument cluster will turn on the overdrive off indicator for the following reasons:

- **Bulb Test** - Each time the ignition switch is turned to the On position the overdrive off indicator is illuminated for about three seconds as a bulb test.

- **Overdrive Off Lamp-On Message** - Each time the cluster receives an overdrive off lamp-on message

## OVERDRIVE OFF INDICATOR (Continued)

from the PCM or TCM indicating that the Off position of the overdrive off switch has been selected, the overdrive off indicator will be illuminated. The indicator remains illuminated until the cluster receives an overdrive off lamp-off message from the PCM or TCM, or until the ignition switch is turned to the Off position, whichever occurs first.

- **Actuator Test** - Each time the cluster is put through the actuator test, the overdrive off indicator will be turned on for the duration of the test to confirm the functionality of the bulb and the cluster control circuitry.

The PCM or TCM continually monitors the overdrive off switch to determine the proper outputs to the automatic transmission. The PCM or TCM then sends the proper overdrive off indicator lamp-on or lamp-off messages to the instrument cluster. If the overdrive off indicator fails to light during the bulb test, replace the bulb with a known good unit. For further diagnosis of the overdrive off indicator or the instrument cluster circuitry that controls the indicator, (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). For proper diagnosis of the overdrive control system, the PCM, the TCM, the PCI data bus, or the electronic message inputs to the instrument cluster that control the overdrive off indicator, a DRBIII® scan tool is required. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

## REAR FOG LAMP INDICATOR

## DESCRIPTION

A rear fog lamp indicator is standard equipment on all instrument clusters. However, on vehicles not equipped with optional rear fog lamps, which are available only in certain international markets where they are required, this indicator is electronically disabled. The rear fog lamp indicator is located on the left edge of the instrument cluster, to the left of the tachometer. The rear fog lamp indicator consists of an International Control and Display Symbol icon for "Rear Fog Light" imprinted on an amber lens. The lens is located behind a cutout in the opaque layer of the instrument cluster overlay. The dark outer layer of the overlay prevents the indicator from being clearly visible when it is not illuminated. The icon appears silhouetted against an amber field through the translucent outer layer of the overlay when the indicator is illuminated from behind by a replaceable incandescent bulb and bulb holder unit located on the instrument cluster electronic circuit board. When the exterior lighting is turned On, the illumination intensity of the rear fog lamp indicator is dimmable, which is adjusted along with the cluster illumination

lighting using the panel lamps dimmer control ring on the control stalk of the left multi-function switch. The rear fog lamp indicator lens is serviced as a unit with the instrument cluster lens, hood and mask unit.

## OPERATION

The rear fog lamp indicator gives an indication to the vehicle operator whenever the rear fog lamps are illuminated. This indicator is controlled by a transistor on the instrument cluster circuit board based upon cluster programming and electronic messages received by the cluster from the Body Control Module (BCM) over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus. The rear fog lamp indicator bulb is completely controlled by the instrument cluster logic circuit, and that logic will allow this indicator to operate whenever the instrument cluster receives a battery current input on the fused B(+) circuit. Therefore, the bulb can be illuminated regardless of the ignition switch position. The bulb only illuminates when it is provided a path to ground by the instrument cluster transistor. The instrument cluster will turn on the rear fog lamp indicator for the following reasons:

- **Rear Fog Lamp-On Message** - Each time the cluster receives a rear fog lamp-on message from the BCM indicating the rear fog lamps are turned On, the rear fog lamp indicator will be illuminated. The indicator remains illuminated until the cluster receives a rear fog lamp-off message from the BCM.

- **Actuator Test** - Each time the cluster is put through the actuator test, the rear fog lamp indicator will be turned on for the duration of the test to confirm the functionality of the bulb and the cluster control circuitry.

The BCM continually monitors the exterior lighting (left multi-function) switch to determine the proper outputs to the rear fog lamp relay. The BCM then sends the proper rear fog lamp indicator lamp-on and lamp-off messages to the instrument cluster. If the rear fog lamp indicator fails to light during the actuator test, replace the bulb with a known good unit. For further diagnosis of the rear fog lamp indicator or the instrument cluster circuitry that controls the indicator, (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). For proper diagnosis of the rear fog lamp system, the BCM, the PCI data bus, or the electronic message inputs to the instrument cluster that control the rear fog lamp indicator, a DRBIII® scan tool is required. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

## SEATBELT INDICATOR

### DESCRIPTION

A seatbelt indicator is standard equipment on all instrument clusters. The seatbelt indicator is located near the lower edge of the instrument cluster, to the left of the tachometer. The seatbelt indicator consists of an International Control and Display Symbol icon for "Seat Belt" imprinted on a red lens. The lens is located behind a cutout in the opaque layer of the instrument cluster overlay. The dark outer layer of the overlay prevents the icon from being clearly visible when the indicator is not illuminated. The icon appears silhouetted against a red field through the translucent outer layer of the overlay when it is illuminated from behind by a Light Emitting Diode (LED), which is soldered onto the instrument cluster electronic circuit board. The seatbelt indicator lens is serviced as a unit with the instrument cluster lens, hood and mask unit.

### OPERATION

The seatbelt indicator gives an indication to the vehicle operator of the status of the driver side front seatbelt. This indicator is controlled by a transistor on the instrument cluster circuit board based upon cluster programming. On models equipped with airbags the indicator is also controlled by electronic messages received by the cluster from the Airbag Control Module (ACM) over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus. The seatbelt indicator Light Emitting Diode (LED) is completely controlled by the instrument cluster logic circuit, and that logic will only allow this indicator to operate when the instrument cluster receives a battery current input on the fused ignition switch output (run-start) circuit. Therefore, the LED will always be off when the ignition switch is in any position except On or Start. The LED only illuminates when it is provided a path to ground by the instrument cluster transistor. The instrument cluster will turn on the seatbelt indicator for the following reasons:

- **Seatbelt Reminder Function** - Each time the cluster receives a battery current input on the fused ignition switch output (run-start) circuit, the indicator will be illuminated as a seatbelt reminder for about six seconds, or until the ignition switch is turned to the Off position, whichever occurs first. This reminder function will occur regardless of the status of the electronic seat belt lamp-on or lamp-off messages received by the cluster from the ACM.

- **Seat Belt Lamp-On Message** - On models equipped with airbags, following the seatbelt reminder function, each time the cluster receives a seat belt lamp-on message from the ACM indicating the driver side front seat belt is not fastened with

the ignition switch in the Start or On positions, the seatbelt indicator will be illuminated. The indicator remains illuminated until the cluster receives a seat belt lamp-off message from the ACM, or until the ignition switch is turned to the Off position, whichever occurs first.

- **Actuator Test** - Each time the cluster is put through the actuator test, the seatbelt indicator will be turned on for the duration of the test to confirm the functionality of the LED and the cluster control circuitry.

The instrument cluster continually monitors the status of the ignition switch through the hard wired fused ignition switch output (run-start) circuit to determine when to provide the seatbelt reminder function. On models equipped with airbags, the ACM continually monitors the status of both front seat belt switches to determine the proper airbag system response to a vehicle frontal impact. The ACM then sends the proper seatbelt indicator lamp-on and lamp-off messages to the instrument cluster based upon the status of the driver side front seat belt switch input. For further diagnosis of the seatbelt indicator or the instrument cluster circuitry that controls the indicator, (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). For proper diagnosis of the seatbelt switches, the ACM, the PCI data bus, or the electronic message inputs to the instrument cluster that control the seatbelt indicator, a DRBIII® scan tool is required. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

## SHIFT INDICATOR (TRANSFER CASE)

### DESCRIPTION

A part time indicator is standard equipment on all instrument clusters. However, on vehicles not equipped with the standard equipment Selec-Trac four-wheel drive system, this indicator is electronically disabled. The part time indicator is located near the right edge of the instrument cluster, to the right of the speedometer. The part time indicator consists of the words "PART TIME" imprinted on an amber lens. The lens is located behind a cutout in the opaque layer of the instrument cluster overlay. The dark outer layer of the overlay prevents the indicator from being clearly visible when it is not illuminated. The words "PART TIME" appear silhouetted against an amber field through the translucent outer layer of the overlay when the indicator is illuminated from behind by a replaceable incandescent bulb and bulb holder unit located on the instrument cluster electronic circuit board. The part time indicator lens is



## SHIFT INDICATOR (TRANSFER CASE) (Continued)

serviced as a unit with the instrument cluster lens, hood and mask unit.

**OPERATION**

The part time indicator gives an indication to the vehicle operator whenever a part time operating mode of the four-wheel drive transfer case is selected. On vehicles with the Selec-Trac four-wheel drive system, the part time indicator illuminates when the transfer case is engaged in the "4 X 4 Part Time" or "4 Lo" positions. This indicator is controlled by a transistor on the instrument cluster electronic circuit board based upon cluster programming and electronic messages received by the cluster from the Powertrain Control Module (PCM) over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus. The part time indicator bulb is completely controlled by the instrument cluster logic circuit, and that logic will only allow this indicator to operate when the instrument cluster receives a battery current input on the fused ignition switch output (run-start) circuit. Therefore, the bulb will always be off when the ignition switch is in any position except On or Start. The bulb only illuminates when it is provided a path to ground by the instrument cluster transistor. The instrument cluster will turn on the part time indicator for the following reasons:

- **Part Time Lamp-On Message** - Each time the cluster receives a part time lamp-on message from the PCM indicating that a part time position of the four-wheel drive transfer case has been selected, the part time indicator will be illuminated. The indicator remains illuminated until the cluster receives a part time lamp-off message from the PCM or until the ignition switch is turned to the Off position, whichever occurs first.

- **Actuator Test** - Each time the cluster is put through the actuator test, the part time indicator will be turned on for the duration of the test to confirm the functionality of the bulb and the cluster control circuitry.

The PCM continually monitors the transfer case switch to determine the driveline operating mode. The PCM then sends the proper part time lamp-on and lamp-off messages to the instrument cluster. If the part time indicator fails to light during the actuator test, replace the bulb with a known good unit. For further diagnosis of the part time indicator or the instrument cluster circuitry that controls the indicator, (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). For proper diagnosis of the transfer case switch, the PCM, the PCI data bus, or the electronic message inputs to the instrument cluster that control the part time indicator, a DRBIII® scan tool is required. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

**SKIS INDICATOR****DESCRIPTION**

A Sentry Key Immobilizer System (SKIS) indicator is standard equipment on all instrument clusters. However, on vehicles not equipped with the optional SKIS, this indicator is electronically disabled. The SKIS indicator is located in the upper right corner of the instrument cluster, to the right of the speedometer. The SKIS indicator consists of an icon that represents a key that is circled and crossed-out imprinted on an amber lens. The lens is located behind a cutout in the opaque layer of the instrument cluster overlay. The dark outer layer of the overlay prevents the indicator from being clearly visible when it is not illuminated. The icon appears silhouetted against an amber field through the translucent outer layer of the overlay when it is illuminated from behind by an incandescent bulb and bulb holder unit located on the instrument cluster electronic circuit board. The SKIS indicator lens is serviced as a unit with the instrument cluster lens, hood and mask unit.

**OPERATION**

The Sentry Key Immobilizer System (SKIS) indicator gives an indication to the vehicle operator of the status of the SKIS. This indicator is controlled by a transistor on the instrument cluster circuit board based upon cluster programming and electronic messages received by the cluster from the Sentry Key Immobilizer Module (SKIM) over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus. The SKIS indicator bulb is completely controlled by the instrument cluster logic circuit, and that logic will only allow this indicator to operate when the instrument cluster receives a battery current input on the fused ignition switch output (run-start) circuit. Therefore, the bulb will always be off when the ignition switch is in any position except On or Start. The bulb only illuminates when it is switched to ground by the instrument cluster transistor. The instrument cluster will turn on the SKIS indicator for the following reasons:

- **Bulb Test** - Each time the ignition switch is turned to the On position, the SKIM tells the cluster to illuminate the SKIS indicator for about three seconds as a bulb test.

- **SKIS Lamp-On Message** - Each time the cluster receives a SKIS lamp-on message from the SKIM, the SKIS indicator will be illuminated. The indicator can be flashed on and off, or illuminated solid, as dictated by the SKIM message. For more information on the SKIS and the SKIS indicator control parameters, (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/VEHICLE THEFT SECURITY - OPERATION). The indicator remains illumi-

## SKIS INDICATOR (Continued)

nated until the cluster receives a SKIS lamp-off message from the SKIM or until the ignition switch is turned to the Off position, whichever occurs first.

- **Communication Error** - If the cluster receives no SKIS lamp-on or lamp-off messages from the SKIM for twenty consecutive seconds, the SKIS indicator is illuminated by the instrument cluster. The indicator remains controlled and illuminated by the cluster until a valid SKIS lamp-on or lamp-off message is received from the SKIM.

- **Actuator Test** - Each time the cluster is put through the actuator test, the SKIS indicator will be turned on for the duration of the test to confirm the functionality of the bulb and the cluster control circuitry.

The SKIM performs a self-test each time the ignition switch is turned to the On position to decide whether the system is in good operating condition and whether a valid key is present in the ignition lock cylinder. The SKIM then sends the proper SKIS lamp-on or lamp-off messages to the instrument cluster. If the SKIS indicator fails to light during the bulb test, replace the bulb with a known good unit. For further diagnosis of the SKIS indicator or the instrument cluster circuitry that controls the indicator, (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). If the instrument cluster flashes the SKIS indicator upon ignition On, or turns on the SKIS indicator solid after the bulb test, it indicates that a SKIS malfunction has occurred or that the SKIS is inoperative. For proper diagnosis of the SKIS, the PCI data bus, or the electronic message inputs to the instrument cluster that control the SKIS indicator, a DRBIII® scan tool is required. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

## SPEEDOMETER

### DESCRIPTION

A speedometer is standard equipment on all instrument clusters. The speedometer is located next to the tachometer, just to the right of center in the instrument cluster. The speedometer consists of a movable gauge needle or pointer controlled by the instrument cluster circuitry, and a fixed 255 degree primary scale on the gauge dial face that reads left-to-right either from "0" to "120" mph, from "0" to "140" mph, from "0" to "220" km/h, or from "0" to "230" km/h, depending upon the vehicle equipment and the market for which the vehicle is manufactured. Most versions also have a secondary inner scale on the gauge dial face that provides the equivalent opposite measurement units from the primary scale. Text appearing in the center of the gauge dial face just beneath

the hub of the speedometer needle abbreviates the unit of measure for the primary scale (i.e.: MPH or km/h). On models with a secondary scale, the abbreviation for that scale follows the abbreviation for the primary scale.

The speedometer graphics are either white, gray and orange against a black gauge dial face (base cluster) or black and gray against a taupe gauge dial face (premium cluster), making them clearly visible within the instrument cluster in daylight. When illuminated from behind by the panel lamps dimmer controlled cluster illumination lighting with the exterior lamps turned On, the base cluster white gauge graphics appear blue-green and the orange graphics still appear orange, while the premium cluster taupe gauge dial face appears blue-green with the black graphics silhouetted against the illuminated background. The gray gauge graphics for both versions of the cluster are not illuminated. The orange gauge needle in the base cluster gauge is internally illuminated, while the black gauge needle in the premium cluster gauge is not.

Base cluster gauge illumination is provided by replaceable incandescent bulb and bulb holder units located on the instrument cluster electronic circuit board. Premium cluster gauge illumination is provided by an integral electro-luminescent lamp that is serviced as a unit with the instrument cluster. The speedometer is serviced as a unit with the instrument cluster.

### OPERATION

The speedometer gives an indication to the vehicle operator of the vehicle road speed. This gauge is controlled by the instrument cluster circuit board based upon cluster programming and electronic messages received by the cluster from the Powertrain Control Module (PCM) over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus. The speedometer is an air core magnetic unit that receives battery current on the instrument cluster electronic circuit board through the fused ignition switch output (run-start) circuit whenever the ignition switch is in the On or Start positions. The cluster is programmed to move the gauge needle back to the low end of the scale after the ignition switch is turned to the Off position. The instrument cluster circuitry controls the gauge needle position and provides the following features:

- **Vehicle Speed Message** - Each time the cluster receives a vehicle speed message from the PCM it will calculate the correct vehicle speed reading and position the gauge needle at that speed position on the gauge scale. The cluster will receive a new vehicle speed message and reposition the gauge pointer accordingly about every 86 milliseconds. The gauge needle will continue to be positioned at the actual



## SPEEDOMETER (Continued)

vehicle speed position on the gauge scale until the ignition switch is turned to the Off position.

- **Communication Error** - If the cluster fails to receive a speedometer message, it will hold the gauge needle at the last indication for about six seconds, or until the ignition switch is turned to the Off position, whichever occurs first. After six seconds, the gauge needle will return to the left end of the gauge scale.

- **Actuator Test** - Each time the cluster is put through the actuator test, the speedometer needle will be swept across the entire gauge scale and back in order to confirm the functionality of the gauge and the cluster control circuitry.

The PCM continually monitors the vehicle speed information received from the Controller Anti-lock Brake (CAB) to determine the vehicle road speed, then sends the proper vehicle speed messages to the instrument cluster. For further diagnosis of the speedometer or the instrument cluster circuitry that controls the gauge, (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). For proper diagnosis of the CAB, the PCM, the PCI data bus, or the electronic message inputs to the instrument cluster that control the speedometer, a DRBIII® scan tool is required. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

## TACHOMETER

## DESCRIPTION

A tachometer is standard equipment on all instrument clusters. The tachometer is located to the left of the speedometer, just to the left of center in the instrument cluster. The tachometer consists of a movable gauge needle or pointer controlled by the instrument cluster circuitry and a fixed 255 degree scale on the gauge dial face that reads left-to-right from "0" to "7" for gasoline engines, or from "0" to "6" for diesel engines. The text "X 1000" (base cluster) or "RPM X 1000" (premium cluster) imprinted on the gauge dial face directly below the hub of the tachometer needle identifies that each number on the tachometer scale is to be multiplied by 1000 rpm. The gasoline engine tachometer has a red zone beginning at 5800 rpm, while the red zone for the diesel engine tachometer begins at 4200 rpm. The tachometer for the diesel engine also includes text located in the center of the gauge dial face just above the hub of the tachometer needle that specifies the diesel fuel requirement.

The tachometer graphics are either white, gray and orange against a black gauge dial face (base cluster) or black, gray and red against a taupe gauge dial face (premium cluster), making them clearly visible within the instrument cluster in daylight. When

illuminated from behind by the panel lamps dimmer controlled cluster illumination lighting with the exterior lamps turned On, the base cluster white gauge graphics appear blue-green and the orange graphics still appear orange, while the premium cluster taupe gauge dial face appears blue-green with the black graphics silhouetted against the illuminated background and the red graphics still appear red. The gray gauge graphics for both versions of the cluster are not illuminated. The orange gauge needle in the base cluster gauge is internally illuminated, while the black gauge needle in the premium cluster gauge is not.

Base cluster gauge illumination is provided by replaceable incandescent bulb and bulb holder units located on the instrument cluster electronic circuit board. Premium cluster gauge illumination is provided by an integral electro-luminescent lamp that is serviced as a unit with the instrument cluster. The tachometer is serviced as a unit with the instrument cluster.

## OPERATION

The tachometer gives an indication to the vehicle operator of the engine speed. This gauge is controlled by the instrument cluster electronic circuit board based upon cluster programming and electronic messages received by the cluster from the Powertrain Control Module (PCM) over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus. The tachometer is an air core magnetic unit that receives battery current on the instrument cluster electronic circuit board through the fused ignition switch output (run-start) circuit whenever the ignition switch is in the On or Start positions. The cluster is programmed to move the gauge needle back to the low end of the scale after the ignition switch is turned to the Off position. The instrument cluster circuitry controls the gauge needle position and provides the following features:

- **Engine Speed Message** - Each time the cluster receives an engine speed message from the PCM it will calculate the correct engine speed reading and position the gauge needle at that relative speed position on the gauge scale. The cluster will receive a new engine speed message and reposition the gauge pointer accordingly about every 86 milliseconds. The gauge needle will continue to be positioned at the relative engine speed position on the gauge scale until the engine stops running, or until the ignition switch is turned to the Off position, whichever occurs first.

- **Communication Error** - If the cluster fails to receive an engine speed message, it will hold the gauge needle at the last indication for about six seconds, or until the ignition switch is turned to the Off position, whichever occurs first. After six seconds, the

## TACHOMETER (Continued)

gauge needle will return to the left end of the gauge scale.

- **Actuator Test** - Each time the cluster is put through the actuator test, the tachometer needle will be swept across the entire gauge scale and back in order to confirm the functionality of the gauge and the cluster control circuitry.

The PCM continually monitors the crankshaft position sensor to determine the engine speed. The PCM then sends the proper engine speed messages to the instrument cluster. For further diagnosis of the tachometer or the instrument cluster circuitry that controls the gauge, (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). For proper diagnosis of the crankshaft position sensor, the PCM, the PCI data bus, or the electronic message inputs to the instrument cluster that control the tachometer, a DRBIII® scan tool is required. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

## TRANS TEMP INDICATOR

## DESCRIPTION

A transmission over-temperature indicator is standard equipment on all gasoline engine instrument clusters. The transmission over-temperature indicator is located near the lower right corner of the instrument cluster, to the right of the speedometer. The transmission over-temperature indicator consists of the words "TRANS OVER TEMP" imprinted on an amber lens. The lens is located behind a cutout in the opaque layer of the instrument cluster overlay. The dark outer layer of the overlay prevents the indicator from being clearly visible when it is not illuminated. The words "TRANS OVER TEMP" appear silhouetted against an amber field through the translucent outer layer of the overlay when the indicator is illuminated from behind by a replaceable incandescent bulb and bulb holder unit located on the instrument cluster electronic circuit board. The transmission over-temperature indicator lens is serviced as a unit with the instrument cluster lens, hood and mask unit.

## OPERATION

The transmission over-temperature indicator gives an indication to the vehicle operator when the transmission fluid temperature is excessive, which may lead to accelerated transmission component wear or failure. This indicator is controlled by a transistor on the instrument cluster circuit board based upon cluster programming and electronic messages received by the cluster over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus. These messages are sent by the Powertrain Control Module (PCM) or by the

Transmission Control Module (TCM), depending upon the model of the automatic transmission. The transmission over-temperature indicator bulb is completely controlled by the instrument cluster logic circuit, and that logic will only allow this indicator to operate when the instrument cluster receives a battery current input on the fused ignition switch output (run-start) circuit. Therefore, the bulb will always be off when the ignition switch is in any position except On or Start. The bulb only illuminates when it is provided a path to ground by the instrument cluster transistor. The instrument cluster will turn on the transmission over-temperature indicator for the following reasons:

- **Bulb Test** - Each time the ignition switch is turned to the On position the transmission over-temperature indicator is illuminated for about three seconds as a bulb test.

- **Trans Over-Temp Lamp-On Message** - Each time the cluster receives a trans over-temp lamp-on message from the PCM or TCM indicating that the transmission fluid temperature is 135° C (275° F) or higher, the indicator will be illuminated. The indicator remains illuminated until the cluster receives a trans over-temp lamp-off message from the PCM or TCM, or until the ignition switch is turned to the Off position, whichever occurs first.

- **Actuator Test** - Each time the cluster is put through the actuator test, the transmission over-temperature indicator will be turned on for the duration of the test to confirm the functionality of the bulb and the cluster control circuitry.

The PCM or TCM continually monitors the transmission temperature sensor to determine the transmission operating condition. The PCM or TCM then sends the proper trans over-temp lamp-on or lamp-off messages to the instrument cluster. If the instrument cluster turns on the transmission over-temperature indicator due to a high transmission oil temperature condition, it may indicate that the transmission or the transmission cooling system are being overloaded or that they require service. If the transmission over-temperature indicator fails to light during the bulb test, replace the bulb with a known good unit. For further diagnosis of the transmission over-temperature indicator or the instrument cluster circuitry that controls the indicator, (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). For proper diagnosis of the transmission temperature sensor, the PCM, the TCM, the PCI data bus, or the electronic message inputs to the instrument cluster that control the transmission over-temperature indicator, a DRBIII® scan tool is required. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

## TURN SIGNAL INDICATOR

### DESCRIPTION

Two turn signal indicators, one right and one left, are standard equipment on all instrument clusters. The turn signal indicators are located near the upper edge of the instrument cluster, the left one is left of the tachometer, and the right one is right of the speedometer. Each turn signal indicator consists of an International Control and Display Symbol icon for "Turn Warning" imprinted on a green lens. Each lens is located behind a dedicated cutout in the opaque layer of the instrument cluster overlay. The dark outer layer of the overlay prevents these icons from being clearly visible when they are not illuminated. The icons appear silhouetted against a green field through the translucent outer layer of the overlay when the indicator is illuminated from behind by a replaceable incandescent bulb and bulb holder unit located on the instrument cluster electronic circuit board. The turn signal indicator lenses are serviced as a unit with the instrument cluster lens, hood and mask unit.

### OPERATION

The turn signal indicators give an indication to the vehicle operator that the turn signal (left or right indicator flashing) or hazard warning (both left and right indicators flashing) have been selected and are operating. These indicators are controlled by two individual hard wired inputs from the combination flasher circuitry to the instrument cluster electronic circuit board. Each turn signal indicator bulb is grounded on the instrument cluster electronic circuit board at all times. Therefore, each bulb can be illuminated regardless of the ignition switch position. Each bulb only illuminates when it is provided with battery current by the combination flasher in the Junction Block (JB). The turn signal indicators will be illuminated for the following reasons:

- **Turn Signal-On Input** - Each time a turn signal indicator bulb receives battery current pulses from the turn signal circuitry of the combination flasher, the requested turn signal lamps and turn signal indicator will be flashed on and off. The selected turn signal lamps and turn signal indicator will continue to flash on and off until the combination flasher stops feeding them battery current pulses, or until the ignition switch is turned to the Off position, whichever occurs first.

- **Hazard Warning-On Input** - Each time the turn signal indicator bulbs receive battery current pulses from the hazard warning circuitry of the combination flasher, all turn signal lamps and both turn signal indicators will be flashed on and off. All turn signal lamps and both turn signal indicators will con-

tinue to flash on and off until the combination flasher stops feeding them battery current pulses, regardless of the ignition switch position.

The turn signal indicators are connected in parallel with the other turn signal circuits. This arrangement allows the turn signal indicators to remain functional, regardless of the condition of the other circuits in the turn signal and hazard warning systems. The combination flasher outputs to the instrument cluster turn signal indicator inputs may be diagnosed using conventional diagnostic tools and methods. For more information on the turn signal and hazard warning system, (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/LAMPS/LIGHTING - EXTERIOR - OPERATION - TURN SIGNAL & HAZARD WARNING SYSTEM).

### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - TURN SIGNAL INDICATOR

The diagnosis found here addresses an inoperative turn signal indicator condition. If the problem being diagnosed is related to inoperative turn signal or hazard warning lamps, be certain to repair the turn signal and hazard warning system before attempting to diagnose or repair the turn signal indicators. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/LAMPS/LIGHTING - EXTERIOR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - TURN SIGNAL & HAZARD WARNING SYSTEM). If no turn signal and hazard warning system problem is found, the following procedure will help locate an open in the turn signal indicator circuit. Refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, details of wire harness routing and retention, connector pin-out information and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, DRIVER AIRBAG, PASSENGER AIRBAG, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE IMPACT SENSOR, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**



## TURN SIGNAL INDICATOR (Continued)

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Remove the instrument cluster from the instrument panel and disconnect the instrument panel wire harness for the instrument cluster from the cluster connector receptacle.

(2) Reconnect the battery negative cable. Activate the hazard warning system by moving the hazard warning switch button to the On position. Check for battery voltage at the inoperative (right or left) turn signal circuit cavity of the instrument panel wire harness connector for the instrument cluster. There should be a switching (on and off) battery voltage signal present. If OK, replace the faulty (right or left) turn signal indicator bulb. If not OK, repair the open (right or left) turn signal circuit between the instrument cluster and the combination flasher in the Junction Block (JB) as required.

## VOLTAGE GAUGE

### DESCRIPTION

A voltage gauge is standard equipment on all instrument clusters. The voltage gauge is located in the upper left corner of the instrument cluster, to the left of the tachometer. The voltage gauge consists of a movable gauge needle or pointer controlled by the instrument cluster circuitry and a fixed 90 degree scale on the gauge dial face that reads left-to-right from "9" volts to "19" volts. An International Control and Display Symbol icon for "Battery Charging Condition" is located on the gauge dial face, directly below the right end of the gauge scale.

The voltage gauge graphics are either white, gray and orange against a black gauge dial face (base cluster) or black, gray and red against a taupe gauge dial face (premium cluster), making them clearly visible within the instrument cluster in daylight. When illuminated from behind by the panel lamps dimmer controlled cluster illumination lighting with the exterior lamps turned On, the base cluster white gauge graphics appear blue-green and the orange graphics still appear orange, while the premium cluster taupe gauge dial face appears blue-green with the black graphics silhouetted against the illuminated background and the red graphics still appear red. The gray gauge graphics for both versions of the cluster are not illuminated. The orange gauge needle in the base cluster gauge is internally illuminated, while the black gauge needle in the premium cluster gauge is not.

Base cluster gauge illumination is provided by replaceable incandescent bulb and bulb holder units located on the instrument cluster electronic circuit board. Premium cluster gauge illumination is provided by an integral electro-luminescent lamp that is

served as a unit with the instrument cluster. The voltage gauge is serviced as a unit with the instrument cluster.

### OPERATION

The voltage gauge gives an indication to the vehicle operator of the electrical system voltage. This gauge is controlled by the instrument cluster circuit board based upon cluster programming and electronic messages received by the cluster from the Powertrain Control Module (PCM) over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus. The voltage gauge is an air core magnetic unit that receives battery current on the instrument cluster electronic circuit board through the fused ignition switch output (run-start) circuit whenever the ignition switch is in the On or Start positions. The cluster is programmed to move the gauge needle back to the left end of the scale after the ignition switch is turned to the Off position. The instrument cluster circuitry controls the gauge needle position and provides the following features:

- **System Voltage Message** - Each time the cluster receives a system voltage message from the PCM indicating the system voltage is between about 11 volts and about 16 volts, the gauge needle is moved to the relative voltage position on the gauge scale.

- **System Voltage Low (Charge Fail) Message** - Each time the cluster receives a message from the PCM indicating the system voltage is less than about 11 volts (charge fail condition), the gauge needle is moved to the relative voltage position in the red zone of the gauge scale and the check gauges indicator is illuminated. The gauge needle remains in the red zone and the check gauges indicator remains illuminated until the cluster receives a message from the PCM indicating the system voltage is greater than above about 11 volts (but less than about 16 volts), or until the ignition switch is turned to the Off position, whichever occurs first.

- **System Voltage High Message** - Each time the cluster receives a message from the PCM indicating the electrical system voltage is greater than about 16 volts, the gauge needle is moved to the relative voltage position in the red zone of the gauge scale and the check gauges indicator is illuminated. The gauge needle remains in the red zone and the check gauges indicator remains illuminated until the cluster receives a message from the PCM indicating the electrical system voltage is less than about 16 volts (but greater than about 11 volts), or until the ignition switch is turned to the Off position, whichever occurs first.

- **Communication Error** - If the cluster fails to receive a system voltage message, it will hold the gauge needle at the last indication for about twelve

## VOLTAGE GAUGE (Continued)

seconds, or until the ignition switch is turned to the Off position, whichever occurs first. After twelve seconds, the cluster will move the gauge needle to the far left end of the gauge scale.

- **Actuator Test** - Each time the cluster is put through the actuator test, the voltage gauge needle will be swept across the entire gauge scale and back to confirm the functionality of the gauge and the cluster control circuitry.

The PCM continually monitors the system voltage to control the generator output. The PCM then sends the proper system voltage messages to the instrument cluster. For further diagnosis of the voltage gauge or the instrument cluster circuitry that controls the gauge, (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). If the instrument cluster turns on the check gauges indicator due to a charge fail or voltage high condition, it may indicate that the charging system requires service. For proper diagnosis of the charging system, the PCM, the PCI data bus, or the electronic message inputs to the instrument cluster that control the voltage gauge, a DRBIII® scan tool is required. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

## WAIT-TO-START INDICATOR

## DESCRIPTION

A wait-to-start indicator is only found in the instrument clusters of vehicles equipped with an optional diesel engine. The wait-to-start indicator is located near the lower edge of the tachometer gauge dial face, to the right of center. The wait-to-start indicator consists of an International Control and Display Symbol icon for "Diesel Preheat" imprinted on an amber lens. The lens is located behind a cutout in the opaque layer of the tachometer gauge dial face overlay. The dark outer layer of the gauge dial face overlay prevents the icon from being clearly visible when the indicator is not illuminated. The icon appears silhouetted against an amber field through the translucent outer layer of the gauge dial face overlay when the indicator is illuminated from behind by a replaceable incandescent bulb and bulb holder unit located on the instrument cluster electronic circuit board. The wait-to-start indicator lens is serviced as a unit with the instrument cluster.

## OPERATION

The wait-to-start indicator gives an indication to the vehicle operator when the diesel engine glow plugs are energized in their preheat operating mode. This indicator is controlled by a transistor on the instrument cluster circuit board based upon cluster programming and electronic messages received by

the cluster from the Powertrain Control Module (PCM) over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus. The wait-to-start indicator bulb is completely controlled by the instrument cluster logic circuit, and that logic will only allow this indicator to operate when the instrument cluster receives a battery current input on the fused ignition switch output (run-start) circuit. Therefore, the bulb will always be off when the ignition switch is in any position except On or Start. The bulb only illuminates when it is provided a path to ground by the instrument cluster transistor. The instrument cluster will turn on the wait-to-start indicator for the following reasons:

- **Wait-To-Start Lamp-On Message** - Each time the cluster receives a wait-to-start lamp-on message from the PCM indicating that the glow plugs are not properly heated for efficient and reliable engine starting, the wait-to-start indicator will be illuminated. The indicator remains illuminated until the cluster receives a wait-to-start lamp-off message, until the PCM detects the engine is running or until the ignition switch is turned to the Off position, whichever occurs first.

- **Actuator Test** - Each time the cluster is put through the actuator test, the wait-to-start indicator will be turned on for the duration of the test to confirm the functionality of the bulb and the cluster control circuitry.

The PCM continually monitors the ambient temperature and the glow plug pre-heater circuits to determine how long the glow plugs must be heated in the pre-heat operating mode. The PCM then sends the proper wait-to-start lamp-on and lamp-off messages to the instrument cluster. If the wait-to-start indicator fails to light during the actuator test, replace the bulb with a known good unit. For further diagnosis of the wait-to-start indicator or the instrument cluster circuitry that controls the indicator, (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). For proper diagnosis of the glow plug pre-heater control circuits, the PCM, the PCI data bus, or the electronic message inputs to the instrument cluster that control the wait-to-start indicator, a DRBIII® scan tool is required. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

## WATER-IN-FUEL INDICATOR

## DESCRIPTION

A water-in-fuel indicator is only found in the instrument clusters for vehicles equipped with an optional diesel engine. The water-in-fuel indicator is located near the left edge of the instrument cluster,



## WATER-IN-FUEL INDICATOR (Continued)

to the left of the tachometer. The water-in-fuel indicator consists of an International Control and Display Symbol icon for "Water In Fuel" imprinted on a red lens. The lens is located behind a cutout in the opaque layer of the instrument cluster overlay. The dark outer layer of the overlay prevents the icon from being clearly visible when the indicator is not illuminated. The icon appears silhouetted against a red field through the translucent outer layer of the overlay when the indicator is illuminated from behind by a Light Emitting Diode (LED), which is soldered onto the instrument cluster electronic circuit board. The water-in-fuel indicator lens is serviced as a unit with the instrument cluster lens, hood and mask unit.

**OPERATION**

The water-in-fuel indicator gives an indication to the vehicle operator when there is excessive water in the fuel system. This indicator is controlled by a transistor on the instrument cluster circuit board based upon cluster programming and electronic messages received by the cluster from the Powertrain Control Module (PCM) over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus. The water-in-fuel indicator Light Emitting Diode (LED) is completely controlled by the instrument cluster logic circuit, and that logic will only allow this indicator to operate when the instrument cluster receives a battery current input on the fused ignition switch output (run-start) circuit. Therefore, the LED will always be off when the ignition switch is in any position except On or Start. The LED only illuminates when it is provided a path to ground by the instru-

ment cluster transistor. The instrument cluster will turn on the water-in-fuel indicator for the following reasons:

- **Bulb Test** - Each time the ignition switch is turned to the On position the water-in-fuel indicator is illuminated for about three seconds as a bulb test.
- **Water-In-Fuel Lamp-On Message** - Each time the cluster receives a water-in-fuel lamp-on message from the PCM indicating there is excessive water in the diesel fuel system, the water-in-fuel indicator will be illuminated. The indicator remains illuminated until the cluster receives a water-in-fuel lamp-off message, or until the ignition switch is turned to the Off position, whichever occurs first.
- **Actuator Test** - Each time the cluster is put through the actuator test, the water-in-fuel indicator will be turned on for the duration of the test to confirm the functionality of the LED and the cluster control circuitry.

The PCM continually monitors the water-in-fuel sensor to determine whether there is excessive water in the diesel fuel. The PCM then sends the proper water-in-fuel lamp-on and lamp-off messages to the instrument cluster. For further diagnosis of the water-in-fuel indicator or the instrument cluster circuitry that controls the indicator, (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). For proper diagnosis of the water-in-fuel sensor, the PCM, the PCI data bus, or the electronic message inputs to the instrument cluster that control the water-in-fuel indicator, a DRBIII® scan tool is required. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.



# LAMPS

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page	page
LAMPS/LIGHTING - EXTERIOR .....	1	LAMPS/LIGHTING - INTERIOR..... 38

## LAMPS/LIGHTING - EXTERIOR

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page	page
<b>LAMPS/LIGHTING - EXTERIOR</b>		
DESCRIPTION		
DESCRIPTION - TURN SIGNAL & HAZARD WARNING SYSTEM.....	2	
DESCRIPTION .....	3	
OPERATION		
OPERATION - TURN SIGNAL & HAZARD WARNING SYSTEM.....	3	
OPERATION .....	3	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING		
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - HEADLAMP LEVELING SYSTEM .....	4	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - TURN SIGNAL & HAZARD WARNING SYSTEMS .....	4	
STANDARD PROCEDURE - INTERNATIONAL HEADLAMP ALIGNMENT .....	5	
SPECIFICATIONS		
EXPORT BULB APPLICATION .....	7	
<b>AUTO HEADLAMP SENSOR</b>		
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - AUTO HEADLAMP SENSOR (AHL) .....	7	
REMOVAL .....	7	
INSTALLATION .....	7	
<b>BRAKE LAMP SWITCH</b>		
DESCRIPTION .....	7	
OPERATION .....	7	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING — BRAKE LAMP SWITCH .....	7	
REMOVAL .....	8	
INSTALLATION .....	8	
ADJUSTMENTS		
ADJUSTMENT .....	8	
<b>CENTER HIGH MOUNTED STOP LAMP</b>		
REMOVAL		
REMOVAL - BULB .....	9	
REMOVAL - CHMSL .....	9	
INSTALLATION		
INSTALLATION - BULB .....	9	
INSTALLATION - CHMSL .....	9	
<b>COMBINATION FLASHER</b>		
DESCRIPTION .....	10	
OPERATION .....	10	
REMOVAL .....	12	
INSTALLATION .....	12	
<b>DAYTIME RUNNING LAMP MODULE</b>		
DESCRIPTION .....	12	
OPERATION .....	12	
REMOVAL .....	12	
INSTALLATION .....	12	
<b>FOG LAMP</b>		
REMOVAL .....	12	
INSTALLATION .....	13	
<b>FOG LAMP UNIT</b>		
REMOVAL .....	13	
INSTALLATION .....	13	
ADJUSTMENTS		
FOG LAMP ADJUSTMENT .....	13	
<b>FRONT POSITION LAMP</b>		
DESCRIPTION .....	14	
OPERATION .....	14	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING .....	14	
REMOVAL .....	15	
INSTALLATION .....	15	
<b>HEADLAMP</b>		
DESCRIPTION .....	15	
OPERATION .....	15	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING		
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING — HEADLAMP SYSTEM .....	16	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING — HEADLAMP ..	19	
REMOVAL - BULB .....	19	
INSTALLATION - BULB .....	19	

**HEADLAMP LEVELING MOTOR**

DESCRIPTION .....	19
OPERATION .....	19
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING .....	20

**HEADLAMP LEVELING SWITCH**

DESCRIPTION .....	20
OPERATION .....	20
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING .....	20
REMOVAL .....	21
INSTALLATION .....	21

**HEADLAMP SWITCH**

DESCRIPTION .....	22
OPERATION .....	22
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING — HEADLAMP SWITCH .....	22

**HEADLAMP UNIT**

REMOVAL .....	22
INSTALLATION .....	23
ADJUSTMENTS .....	23

**LICENSE PLATE LAMP**

REMOVAL	
REMOVAL - BULB .....	25
REMOVAL - LAMP .....	25
INSTALLATION	
INSTALLATION - BULB .....	25
INSTALLATION - LAMP .....	25

**LICENSE PLATE LAMP UNIT**

REMOVAL .....	25
INSTALLATION .....	25

**LEFT MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH**

DESCRIPTION .....	26
OPERATION .....	26
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - LEFT MULTI - FUNCTION SWITCH .....	27
REMOVAL	
REMOVAL - LEFT MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH .....	29
REMOVAL - MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH MOUNTING HOUSING .....	29
INSTALLATION	
INSTALLATION - LEFT MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH .....	30

**INSTALLATION - MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH**

MOUNTING HOUSING .....	31
------------------------	----

**PARK/TURN SIGNAL LAMP**

REMOVAL - BULBS .....	32
INSTALLATION - BULBS .....	32

**REAR FOG LAMP SWITCH**

DESCRIPTION .....	32
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING .....	32
REMOVAL .....	32

**REAR FOG LAMP**

DESCRIPTION .....	33
OPERATION .....	33
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING .....	33
REMOVAL .....	33
INSTALLATION .....	33

**SIDE REPEATER LAMP**

DESCRIPTION .....	34
OPERATION .....	34
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING .....	34
REMOVAL - LAMP .....	35

**TAIL LAMP**

DESCRIPTION .....	35
OPERATION .....	35
REMOVAL	
REMOVAL - BULBS .....	35
REMOVAL - LAMP .....	35
INSTALLATION	
INSTALLATION - BULBS .....	35
INSTALLATION - LAMP .....	36

**TURN SIGNAL CANCEL CAM**

DESCRIPTION .....	36
OPERATION .....	36

**UNDERHOOD LAMP**

REMOVAL	
REMOVAL - BULB .....	36
REMOVAL - LAMP .....	36
INSTALLATION	
INSTALLATION - BULB .....	36
INSTALLATION - LAMP .....	37

**LAMPS/LIGHTING - EXTERIOR****DESCRIPTION****DESCRIPTION - TURN SIGNAL & HAZARD WARNING SYSTEM**

The turn signal and hazard warning system includes the following major components, which are described in further detail elsewhere in this service information:

- Combination Flasher
- Front Side Marker Lamps
- Hazard Warning Switch

- Turn Signal Cancel Cam
- Turn Signal Indicators
- Turn Signal Lamps
- Turn Signal Switch

The turn signal and hazard warning systems also provide the following features:

- **Flash Lights with Lock** - This customer programmable feature flashes the hazard warning lamps to provide optical verification that the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System has received a valid Lock or Unlock request from an RKE transmitter. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/POWER LOCKS - DESCRIPTION - REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY SYSTEM).

## LAMPS/LIGHTING - EXTERIOR (Continued)

- **Panic Mode Optical Alert** - This feature flashes the hazard warning lamps to provide an optical alert when the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System panic mode is activated by depressing the Panic button on an RKE transmitter. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/POWER LOCKS - DESCRIPTION - REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY SYSTEM).

- **Turn Signal On Warning** - This feature provides the vehicle operator with both visual and audible reminders when a turn signal has been left turned on for an extended period. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/OVERHEAD CONSOLE/ELECTRONIC VEHICLE INFO CENTER - DESCRIPTION).

- **Vehicle Theft Security System (VTSS) Optical Alarm** - This feature flashes the hazard warning lamps to provide an optical alarm when the VTSS is armed and activated by an unauthorized entry into the vehicle. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/VEHICLE THEFT SECURITY - DESCRIPTION - VEHICLE THEFT SECURITY SYSTEM).

**DESCRIPTION**

Some vehicles are equipped with a remote headlamp leveling system. This system allows the driver to adjust the headlamp beam pattern from the interior of the vehicle to compensate for passenger or cargo load. Only the vertical axis of the headlamp beam can be adjusted.

A headlamp leveling switch is located on the instrument panel and controls the headlamp leveling motors/modules found on the headlamp modules. Leveling switch has four settings 0-3, 0 being the lowest, 3 being the highest headlight beam vertical setting.

When performing a headlamp beam pattern alignment on a vehicle equipped with headlamp leveling, be certain the headlamp leveling switch is in the "0" position before starting. Failure to do so will result in and incorrect headlamp alignment.

**OPERATION****OPERATION - TURN SIGNAL & HAZARD WARNING SYSTEM**

The turn signal system operates on battery current received on a fused ignition switch output (run) circuit so that the turn signals will only operate with the ignition switch in the On position. The hazard warning system operates on non-switched battery current received on a fused B(+) circuit so that the hazard warning remains operational regardless of the ignition switch position. When the turn signal system is activated, the circuitry of the turn signal switch and the combination flasher will cause the selected (right or left) turn signal indicator, front

park/turn signal lamp, front side marker lamp and rear tail/stop/turn signal lamp to flash on and off. When the hazard warning system is activated, the circuitry of the hazard warning switch and the combination flasher will cause both the right side and the left side turn signal indicators, front park/turn signal lamps, front side marker lamps and rear tail/stop/turn signal lamps to flash on and off.

The Body Control Module (BCM) can also activate the hazard warning system lamps by energizing the combination flasher through a single hard wired connection to the hazard warning switch sense circuit. The BCM grounds the circuit to energize and de-energize the combination flasher in response to message inputs received over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network. The BCM can energize the combination flasher when the VTSS is requested.

Vehicles equipped with the optional Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) use turn signal status messages received from the Electro-Mechanical Instrument Cluster (EMIC) and distance messages received from the Powertrain Control Module (PCM) over the PCI data bus to determine when the Turn Signal On warning should be activated. The EMIC receives hard wired inputs from the combination flasher to operate the turn signal indicators, then sends the proper turn signal status message to the EVIC. If a turn signal is left on for more than about 1.6 kilometers (1 mile) of driving distance, the EVIC will display a visual "Turn Signal On" message and will send a request to the BCM over the PCI data bus to notify the vehicle operator.

During both the turn signal and the hazard warning operation, if the exterior lamps are turned Off, the front park/turn signal lamps and the front side marker lamps will flash in unison. If the exterior lamps are turned On, the front park/turn signal lamps and the front side marker lamps will flash alternately. Refer to the owner's manual.

**OPERATION**

Upon moving the headlamp leveling switch control knob, voltage is adjusted at the headlamp leveling switch (rheostat). This signals the headlamp leveling motors to move and adjust the vertical headlamp beam pattern accordingly. The headlamps must be "on" in order for the leveling system to function. Refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, details of wire harness routing and retention, connector pin-out information and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.



## LAMPS/LIGHTING - EXTERIOR (Continued)

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - HEADLAMP LEVELING SYSTEM

The following test is designed to diagnosis a faulty headlamp leveling system. Refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, details of wire harness routing and retention, connector pin-out information and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

**NOTE: Battery must be completely charged (12v) prior to testing. It may also be necessary to install battery charger on the vehicles electrical system when performing this test. Refer to Battery for detailed information.**

(1) Rotate the headlamp switch (low beam) to the "ON" position.

(2) Disconnect the headlamp wire harness jumper electrical connector. This connector can be accessed by opening the bulb access panel, found in the appropriate front wheel well splash shield.

(3) Check PIN #1 for battery voltage, if not present trace circuit until open or short is found. Refer to Wiring Diagrams for complete schematic.

(4) Check PIN #2 for ground, if not present trace circuit until open or short is found. Refer to Wiring Diagrams for complete schematic.

(5) Check PIN #3 for headlamp leveling sense voltage (2.83 – 8.60v), if not present trace circuit until open or short is found. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/LAMPS/LIGHTING - EXTERIOR/HEADLAMP LEVELING SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING) for additional information.

(6) If no open or short is found and headlamp leveling system is still inoperative, replace the headlamp leveling motor. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/LAMPS/LIGHTING - EXTERIOR/HEADLAMP LEVELING MOTOR - DESCRIPTION).

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - TURN SIGNAL &amp; HAZARD WARNING SYSTEMS

When diagnosing the turn signal and hazard warning circuits, remember that high generator output can burn out bulbs rapidly and repeatedly. If this is a concern on the vehicle being diagnosed, test the charging system as required.

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISO-**

**LATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Turn the ignition switch to the On position. Actuate the turn signal switch or the hazard warning switch. Observe the turn signal indicator lamp(s) in the instrument cluster. If the flash rate is very high, check for a turn signal bulb that is not lit or is very dimly lit. Repair the circuits to that lamp or replace the faulty bulb, as required. If the turn signal indicator(s) fail to light, go to Step 2.

(2) Turn the ignition switch to the Off position. Check the ignition run fuse and the flasher fuse in the Junction Block (JB). If OK, go to Step 3. If not OK, repair the shorted circuit or component as required and replace the faulty fuse(s).

(3) Check for battery voltage at the flasher fuse in the JB. If OK, go to Step 4. If not OK, repair the open fused B(+) circuit between the JB and the Power Distribution Center (PDC).

(4) Turn the ignition switch to the On position. Check for battery voltage at the ignition run fuse in the JB. If OK, go to Step 5. If not OK, repair the open fused ignition switch output (run) circuit between the JB and the ignition switch.

(5) Turn the ignition switch to the Off position. Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Remove the combination flasher from the JB and replace it with a known good unit. Reconnect the battery negative cable. Test the operation of the turn signal and hazard warning systems. If OK, discard the faulty combination flasher. If not OK, remove the test flasher and go to Step 6.

(6) Turn the ignition switch to the On position. Check for battery voltage at the fused ignition switch output (run) circuit cavity in the JB for the combination flasher. If OK, go to Step 7. If not OK, repair the open fused ignition switch output (run) circuit between the combination flasher and the ignition run fuse in the JB.

(7) Turn the ignition switch to the Off position. Check for battery voltage at the B(+) circuit of the JB for the combination flasher. If OK, go to Step 8. If not OK, repair the open B(+) circuit between the combination flasher and the flasher fuse in the JB.

(8) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Disconnect the instrument panel wire harness connector for the turn signal and hazard warning switches from the multi-function switch connector. Check for continuity between the ground circuit of

## LAMPS/LIGHTING - EXTERIOR (Continued)

the instrument panel wire harness connector for the left multi-function switch and a good ground. There should be continuity. If OK, go to Step 9. If not OK, repair the open ground circuit.

(9) Check for continuity between the hazard switch sense circuit of the instrument panel wire harness connector for the multi-function switch and a good ground. There should be no continuity. If OK, go to Step 10. If not OK, repair the shorted hazard switch sense circuit between the multi-function switch and the combination flasher.

(10) Check for continuity between the hazard switch sense circuit of the JB for the combination flasher and the instrument panel wire harness connector for the multi-function switch. There should be continuity. If OK, go to Step 11. If not OK, repair the open hazard switch sense circuit between the multi-function switch and the combination flasher.

(11) Check for continuity between the turn switch sense circuit of the instrument panel wire harness connector for the multi-function switch and a good ground. There should be no continuity. If OK, go to Step 12. If not OK, repair the shorted left turn switch sense circuit between the multi-function switch and the combination flasher.

(12) Check for continuity between the left turn switch sense circuit of the JB for the combination flasher and the instrument panel wire harness connector for the multi-function switch. There should be continuity. If OK, go to Step 13. If not OK, repair the open left turn switch sense circuit between the multi-function switch and the combination flasher.

(13) Check for continuity between the right turn switch sense circuit of the instrument panel wire harness connector for the left multi-function switch and a good ground. There should be no continuity. If OK, go to Step 14. If not OK, repair the shorted right turn switch sense circuit between the left multi-function switch and the combination flasher.

(14) Check for continuity between the right turn switch sense circuit of the JB for the combination flasher and the instrument panel wire harness connector for the multi-function switch. There should be continuity. If OK, test the left multi-function switch. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/LAMPS/LIGHTING - EXTERIOR/LEFT MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). If not OK, repair the open right turn switch sense circuit between the multi-function switch and the combination flasher as required.

**STANDARD PROCEDURE - INTERNATIONAL HEADLAMP ALIGNMENT****VEHICLE PREPARATION FOR HEADLAMP ALIGNMENT**

(1) Verify the headlamp switch is in the low beam setting.

(2) If the vehicle is equipped with a headlamp leveling system, be certain the headlamp leveling switch is in the "0" position.

(3) Correct defective components that could hinder proper headlamp alignment.

(4) Verify proper tire inflation.

(5) Clean headlamp lenses.

(6) Verify that luggage area is loaded as the vehicle is routinely used.

(7) Fuel tank should be FULL. Add 2.94 kg (6.5 lbs.) of weight over the fuel tank for each estimated gallon of missing fuel.

**ALIGNMENT SCREEN PREPARATION FOR HEADLAMP ALIGNMENT**

(1) Position vehicle on a level surface perpendicular to a flat wall 10 meters (32.8 ft) away from front of headlamp lens (Fig. 1).

(2) If necessary, tape a line on the floor 10 meters (32.8 ft) away from and parallel to the wall.

(3) Place 75 kg in the drivers seat to simulate the ride height of the vehicle when driven.

(4) Measure from the floor up 1.27 meters (5 ft) and tape a line on the wall at the centerline of the vehicle (Fig. 1). Sight along the centerline of the vehicle (from rear of vehicle forward) to verify accuracy of the line placement.

(5) Rock vehicle side-to-side three times to allow suspension to stabilize.

(6) Jounce front suspension three times by pushing downward on front bumper and releasing.

(7) Measure the distance from the center of headlamp lens to the floor. Transfer measurement to the alignment screen (with tape). Use this line for up/down adjustment reference.

(8) Place a tape line 130 mm (5.12 in.) below and parallel to the center of headlamp line (Fig. 1).

(9) Measure distance from the centerline of the vehicle to the center of each headlamp being aligned. Transfer measurements to screen (with tape) to each side of vehicle centerline. Use these lines for left/right adjustment reference.

## LAMPS/LIGHTING - EXTERIOR (Continued)

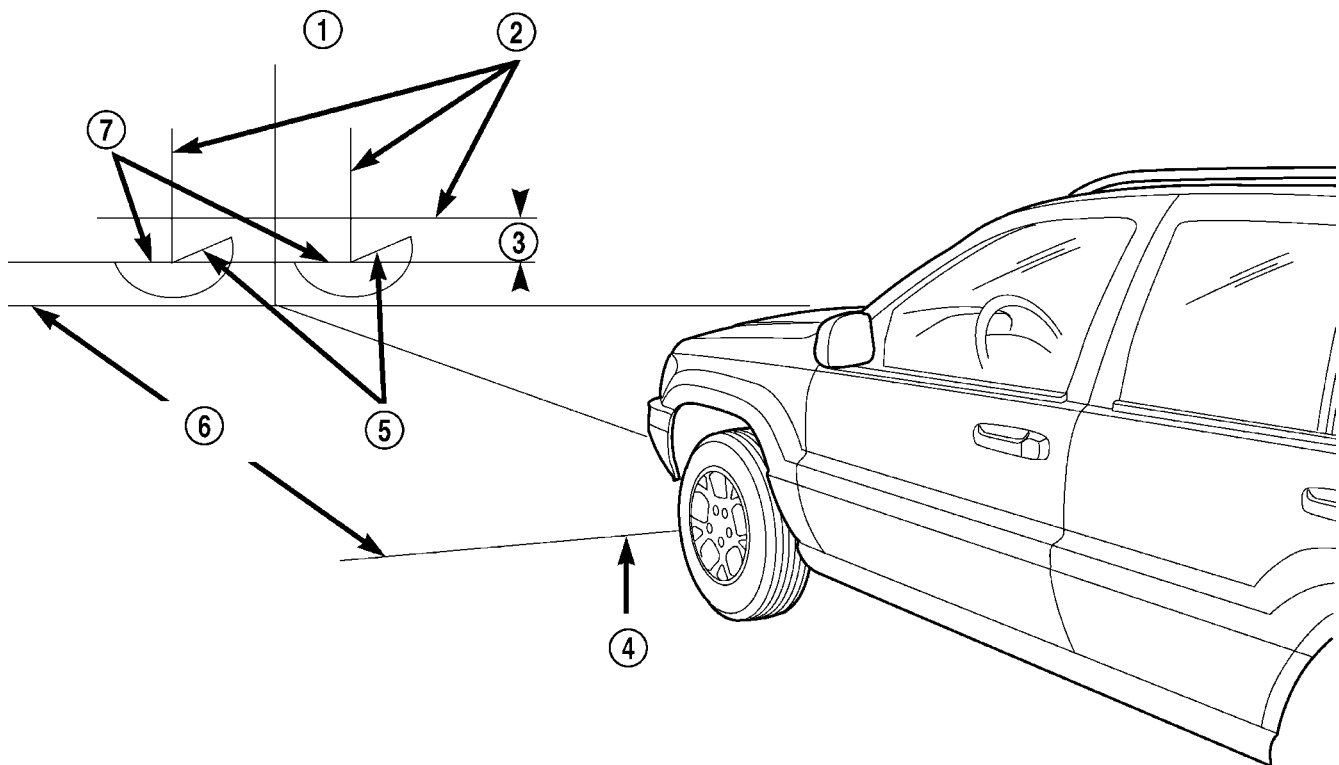
**HEADLAMP ALIGNMENT ADJUSTMENT**

To adjust headlamp alignment, rotate alignment screws to achieve the specified low beam hot spot pattern.

A properly aimed low beam headlamp will project a high intensity light pattern on the screen with the horizontal cut-off line aligned with the tape line 130 mm (5.12 in.) below the headlamp centerline. The intersection of the horizontal and 15 degree cut-off lines in the projected pattern should align to the intersection of the headlamp centerline vertical tape line and the tape line 130 mm (5.12 in.) below the headlamp horizontal centerline.

**NOTE:** The vehicles low beam headlamps must be "ON" during the headlamp alignment procedure. The high beam pattern will be correct when the low beams are aligned properly.

**NOTE:** The headlamp leveling switch must be in the "0" position. Failure to do so will result in improperly adjusted headlamps.



80c06d09

**Fig. 1 HEADLAMP ALIGNMENT SCREEN- BUX**

- 1 - CENTER OF VEHICLE
- 2 - CENTER OF HEADLAMPS
- 3 - 130 mm
- 4 - FRONT OF HEADLAMP

- 5 - 15° CUT-OFF LINE
- 6 - 10 METERS
- 7 - HORIZONTAL CUT-OFF LINE

## LAMPS/LIGHTING - EXTERIOR (Continued)

## SPECIFICATIONS

## EXPORT BULB APPLICATION

LAMP	BULB TYPE
HEADLAMP	H4
FRONT POSITION	T4W
FRONT TURN SIGNAL	P27/7W
SIDE REPEATER	W3W
LICENSE PLATE	W5W
REAR TAIL AND STOP	P27/7W
REAR TURN SIGNAL	P27/7W
BACK-UP	P27/7W
REAR FOG	P27/7W
UNDERHOOD	W5W
UNDERHOOD RETRACTABLE	105
CENTER HIGH MOUNTED STOP LAMP	W16W

## AUTO HEADLAMP SENSOR

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - AUTO HEADLAMP SENSOR (AHL)

The auto headlamp sensor needs real sunlight to properly register the light level. When auto headlamps are enabled indoors, the headlamps may be turned on. The sensor is located in the center of the defroster grille at the base of the windshield. There are no faults set in the Body Control Module (BCM) for a inoperative or missing AHL Sensor. Symptom of a missing sensor or unconnected sensor would be that the Headlamps and Parklamps turn on when the vehicle is started and there is a high level of ambient light present (ie. daytime). Auto headlamps should not function in the presence of daylight.

## REMOVAL

- (1) Remove the instrument panel top cover. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/INSTRUMENT PANEL TOP COVER - REMOVAL) for service procedures.
- (2) Remove the screw attaching auto headlamp sensor to instrument panel (Fig. 2).
- (3) Disengage the harness connector from auto headlamp sensor.
- (4) Separate the auto headlamp sensor from instrument panel.

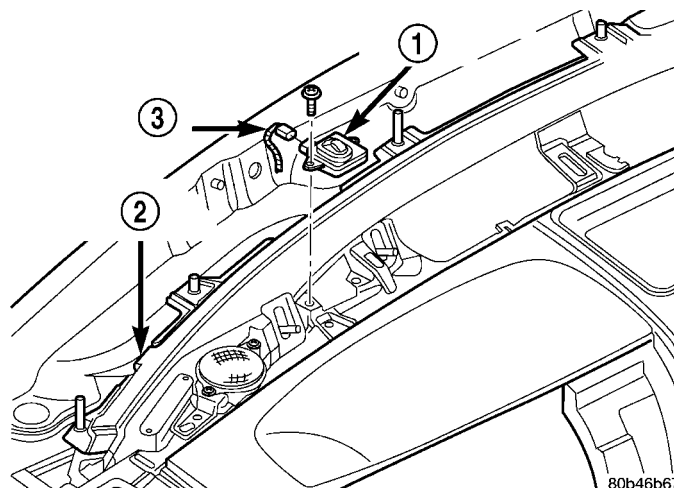


Fig. 2 Auto Headlamp Sensor

- 1 - AUTO HEADLAMP SENSOR  
2 - I/P ASSEMBLY  
3 - CONNECTOR

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Position the auto headlamp sensor on instrument panel.
- (2) Engage the harness connector to auto headlamp sensor.
- (3) Install the screw attaching auto headlamp sensor to instrument panel.
- (4) Install the instrument panel top cover. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/INSTRUMENT PANEL TOP COVER - INSTALLATION) for service procedures.

## BRAKE LAMP SWITCH

## DESCRIPTION

The brake lamp switch is mounted on a bracket attached to the brake pedal support. The switch is adjustable.

## OPERATION

The brake lamp switch is used for the brake lamp, speed control and brake sensor circuits.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING — BRAKE LAMP SWITCH

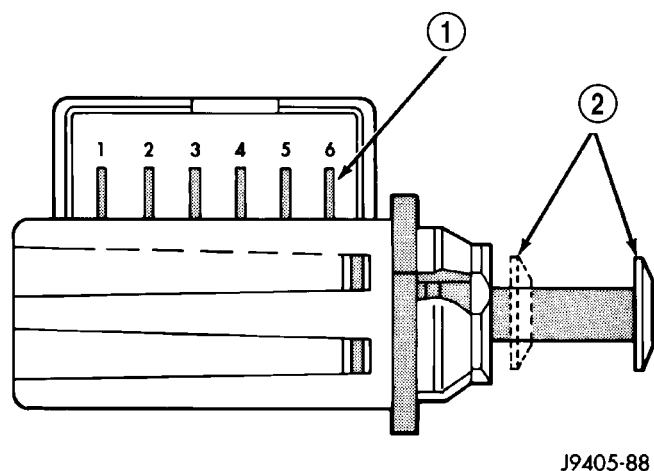
Brake lamp switch operation can be tested with an ohmmeter. The ohmmeter is used to check continuity between the pin terminals at different plunger positions (Fig. 3).

## SWITCH CIRCUIT IDENTIFICATION

- Terminals 1 and 2: brake sensor circuit
- Terminals 3 and 4: speed control circuit
- Terminals 5 and 6: brake lamp circuit



## BRAKE LAMP SWITCH (Continued)

**Fig. 3 Brake Lamp Switch Terminal Identification**

- 1 - TERMINAL PINS  
2 - PLUNGER TEST POSITIONS

**SWITCH CONTINUITY TEST**

**NOTE:** Disconnect switch harness before testing continuity.

With the switch plunger retracted, attach the test leads to terminal pins 1 and 2. Replace switch if meter indicates no continuity.

With the switch plunger retracted, attach the test leads to terminal pins 3 and 4. Replace switch if meter indicates no continuity.

With the switch plunger extended, attach the test leads to terminal pins 5 and 6. Replace switch if meter indicates no continuity.

**REMOVAL**

(1) Remove the steering column cover and lower trim panel.

(2) Press the brake pedal downward to fully applied position.

(3) Rotate the switch approximately 30° in counterclockwise direction to unlock the switch retainer. Pull switch rearward and out of bracket.

(4) Disconnect switch harness and remove switch from vehicle (Fig. 4).

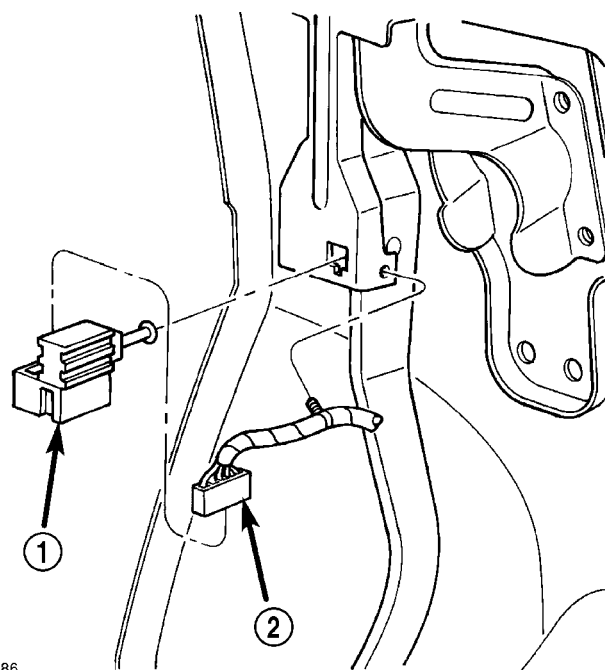
**INSTALLATION**

(1) Pull the switch plunger all the way out to fully extended position.

(2) Connect the harness wires to switch.

(3) Press and hold brake pedal in applied position.

(4) Install the switch as follows: Align the tab on the switch with the notch in the switch bracket. Insert the switch in the bracket and turn it clockwise about 30° to lock it in place.



80c07186

**Fig. 4 Brake Lamp**

- 1 - SWITCH  
2 - HARNESS CONNECTOR

(5) Release the brake pedal. Then pull the pedal lightly rearward. The pedal will set the plunger to the correct position as the pedal pushes the plunger into switch body. The switch will make ratcheting sound as it self adjusts.

**CAUTION:** Booster damage may occur if the pedal pull exceeds 20 lbs.

**ADJUSTMENTS****ADJUSTMENT**

(1) Press and hold brake pedal in applied position.

(2) Pull switch plunger all the way out to fully extended position.

(3) Release brake pedal. Then pull pedal lightly rearward. Pedal will set plunger to correct position as pedal pushes plunger into switch body. Switch will make ratcheting sound as it self adjusts.

**CAUTION:** Booster damage may occur if the pedal pull exceeds 20 lbs.

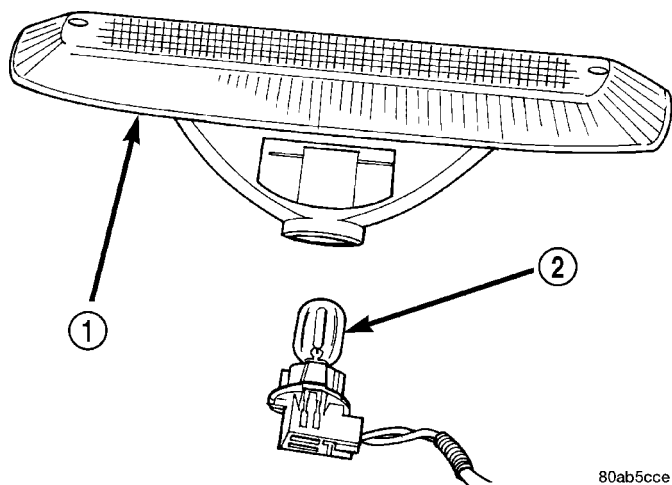


## CENTER HIGH MOUNTED STOP LAMP

### REMOVAL

#### REMOVAL - BULB

- (1) Remove the screws attaching the lamp housing to the liftgate.
- (2) Rotate the bulb socket 1/4 turn and remove it from the housing (Fig. 5).
- (3) Remove the bulb from the socket.



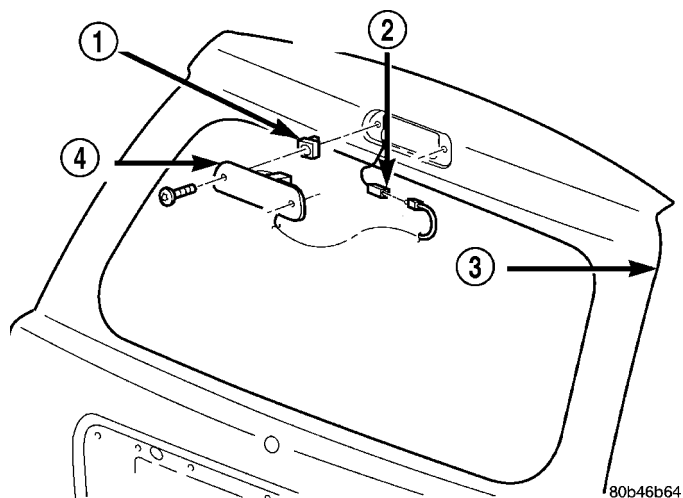
**Fig. 5 CHMSL Bulb**

- 1 - CHMSL  
2 - CHMSL BULB

#### REMOVAL - CHMSL

- (1) Remove the screws attaching CHMSL to the liftgate (Fig. 6).
- (2) Disconnect the wire harness connector.

- (3) Separate the CHMSL from the vehicle.



**Fig. 6 Center High Mounted Stop lamp**

- 1 - PUSH-IN NUT  
2 - CONNECTOR  
3 - LIFTGATE  
4 - CHMSL

### INSTALLATION

#### INSTALLATION - BULB

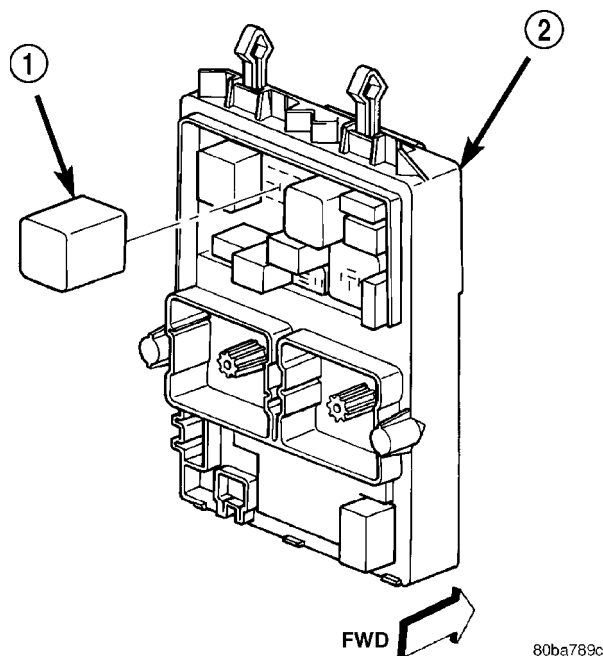
- (1) Push the bulb into the socket.
- (2) Position the socket in lamp and rotate 1/4 turn.
- (3) Install the screws attaching the lamp housing to liftgate.

#### INSTALLATION - CHMSL

- (1) Connect the wire harness connector.
- (2) Position the CHMSL on liftgate.
- (3) Install the screws attaching the CHMSL to the liftgate.

## COMBINATION FLASHER

## DESCRIPTION

**Fig. 7 Combination Flasher**

- 1 - COMBINATION FLASHER  
2 - JUNCTION BLOCK

The combination flasher is located in the Junction Block (JB) (Fig. 7). The JB is located underneath the driver side of the instrument panel outboard of the steering column. The combination flasher is a smart relay that functions as both the turn signal system and the hazard warning system flasher. The combination flasher contains active electronic Integrated Circuitry (IC) elements. This flasher is designed to handle the current flow requirements of the factory-installed lighting. If supplemental lighting is added to the turn signal lamp circuits, such as when towing a trailer with lights, the combination flasher will automatically try to compensate to keep the flash rate the same.

The combination flasher has nine blade-type terminals that connect it to the vehicle electrical system. Refer to the appropriate wiring information.

Because of the active electronic elements within the combination flasher, it cannot be tested with conventional automotive electrical test equipment. If the combination flasher is believed to be faulty, test the turn signal system and hazard warning system circuits. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/LAMPS/LIGHTING - EXTERIOR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - TURN SIGNAL & HAZARD WARNING SYSTEM). The combination flasher cannot be repaired or adjusted and, if faulty or damaged, it must be replaced.

## OPERATION

The combination flasher controls the following inputs and outputs: B(+), fused ignition switch output, left turn switch sense, right turn switch sense, hazard switch sense, left front turn signal circuit, right front turn signal circuit, left rear turn signal circuit and right rear turn signal circuit. Constant battery voltage is supplied to the flasher so that it can perform the hazard warning function, and ignition switched battery voltage is supplied for the turn signal function. However, when the flasher is idle no current is drawn through the module. The unit does not become active until it is provided a signal ground from the turn signal switch, hazard warning switch or the Body Control Module (BCM).

The IC within the combination flasher (Fig. 8) contains the logic that controls the flasher operation and the flash rate. When a bulb is burnt out, or when a circuit for a lamp is open, the turn signal flash rate will increase. However, an open lamp circuit or burnt out bulb does not change the hazard warning flash rate.

COMBINATION FLASHER (Continued)

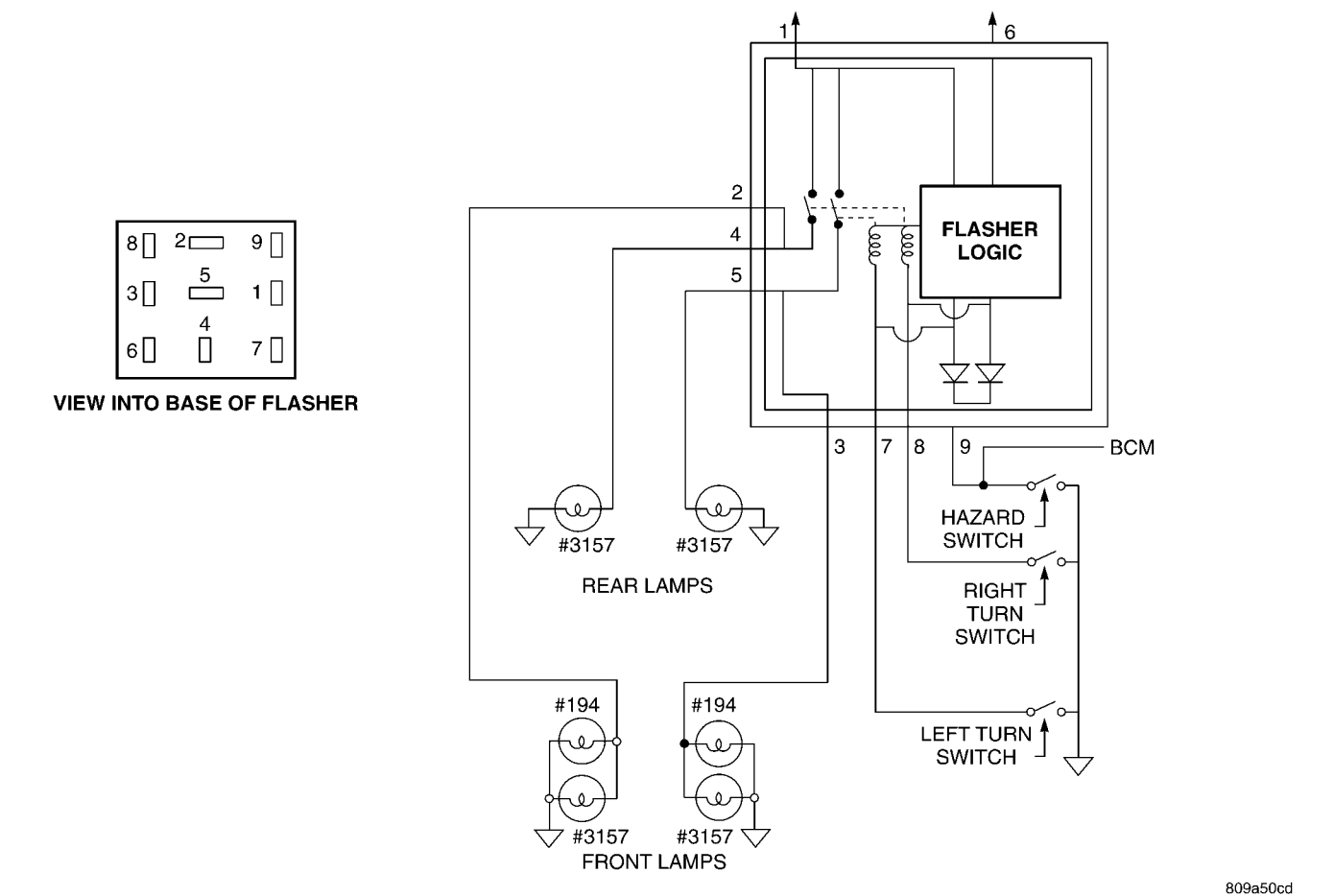


Fig. 8 Combination Flasher

COMBINATION FLASHER CIRCUITS		
CAVITY	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	L25	Fused B(+)
2	L61	Left Front Turn Signal
3	L60	Right Front Turn Signal
4	L63	Left Rear Turn Signal
5	L62	Right Rear Turn Signal
6	F22	Fused Ignition Switch Output
7	L305	Left Turn Switch Sense
8	L302	Right Turn Switch Sense
9	L91	Hazard Switch Sense

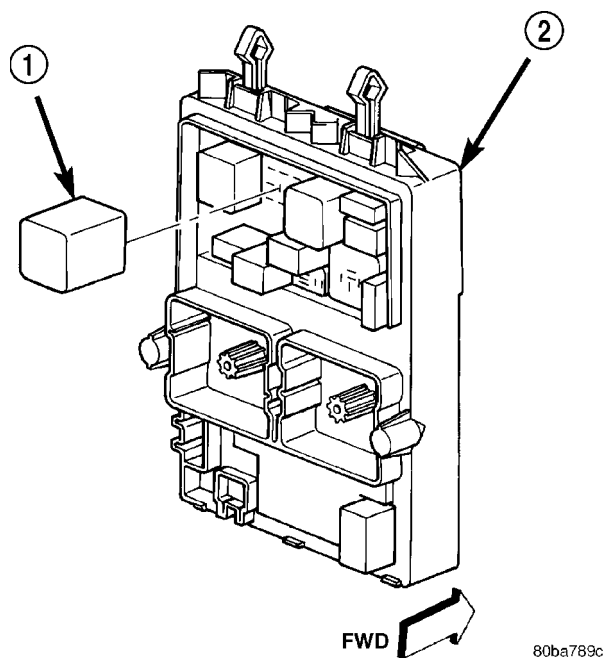
Turn signal inputs that actuate the combination flasher are low current grounds, each drawing a maximum of 300 milliamperes. The hazard warning signal input is a low current ground drawing a maximum of 600 milliamperes.

## COMBINATION FLASHER (Continued)

## REMOVAL

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

- (1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.
- (2) Remove the steering column cover. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/STEERING COLUMN OPENING COVER - REMOVAL).
- (3) Remove the combination flasher from the Junction Block (JB) (Fig. 9).



**Fig. 9 Combination Flasher**

- 1 - COMBINATION FLASHER  
2 - JUNCTION BLOCK

## INSTALLATION

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISO-**

**LATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

- (1) Align the terminals of the combination flasher with the terminal cavities in the JB. (Fig. 9)
- (2) Push in firmly and evenly on the combination flasher until the terminals are fully seated.
- (3) Reinstall the steering column opening cover. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/STEERING COLUMN OPENING COVER - INSTALLATION).
- (4) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

## DAYTIME RUNNING LAMP MODULE

## DESCRIPTION

The Daytime Running Lights (Headlamps) System is installed on vehicles manufactured for sale in Canada only. A separate module, mounted in the junction block under the dash, controls the DRL.

## OPERATION

The headlamps are illuminated at a reduced intensity when the engine is running, headlamp switch off, and the parking brake released.

## REMOVAL

- (1) Lower the junction block. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/POWER DISTRIBUTION/JUNCTION BLOCK - REMOVAL) for service procedures.
- (2) Remove the module from the junction block.

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Position the module in the junction block and press to secure.
- (2) Install the junction block. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/POWER DISTRIBUTION/JUNCTION BLOCK - INSTALLATION) for service procedures.

## FOG LAMP

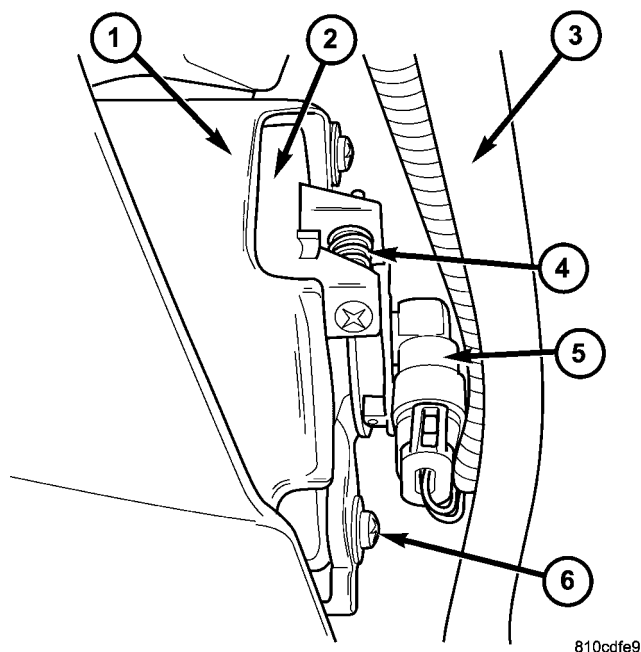
## REMOVAL

- (1) Access the rear of the fog lamp assembly by removing the inner fender well to lower front fascia push pins.
- (2) Disconnect the fog lamp harness connector.

## FOG LAMP (Continued)

(3) Rotate the bulb socket 1/4 turn counterclockwise.

(4) Remove the bulb socket from lamp (Fig. 10)



**Fig. 10 FOG LAMP ASSEMBLY**

- 1 - LOWER FRONT FASCIA
- 2 - FOG LAMP ASSEMBLY
- 3 - INNER FENDER WELL
- 4 - FOG LAMP ADJUSTMENT SCREW
- 5 - BULB
- 6 - RETAINING SCREW

## INSTALLATION

**CAUTION:** Do not touch the bulb glass with fingers or other oily surfaces. Reduced bulb life will result.

- (1) Position the bulb socket in fog lamp (Fig. 10).
- (2) Rotate the bulb socket 1/4 turn clockwise (Fig. 10).
- (3) Connect the fog lamp harness connector (Fig. 10).
- (4) Align the inner fender well with the lower front fascia and install the push pins.

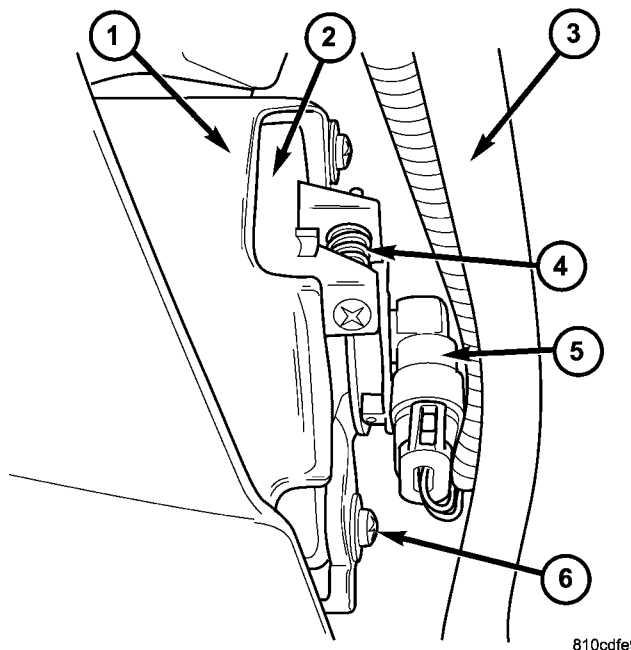
## FOG LAMP UNIT

## REMOVAL

- (1) Access the rear of the fog lamp assembly by removing the inner fender well to lower front fascia push pins.
- (2) Disengage the fog lamp electrical connector (Fig. 11).

(3) Grasp the fog lamp bulb socket and rotate the socket a quarter turn counterclockwise to release the bulb socket from the housing (Fig. 11).

(4) Remove the fog lamp housing screws and remove the fog lamp through the front of the lower fascia (Fig. 11)



**Fig. 11 FOG LAMP ASSEMBLY**

- 1 - LOWER FRONT FASCIA
- 2 - FOG LAMP ASSEMBLY
- 3 - INNER FENDER WELL
- 4 - FOG LAMP ADJUSTMENT SCREW
- 5 - BULB
- 6 - RETAINING SCREW

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Position the fog lamp in the lower fascia.
- (2) Install the screws attaching fog lamp to fascia (Fig. 11).
- (3) Engage the fog lamp electrical connector (Fig. 11).
- (4) Align the fog lamp, if necessary (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/LAMPS/LIGHTING - EXTERIOR/FOG LAMP UNIT - ADJUSTMENTS).
- (5) Align the inner wheel well with the lower front fascia and install push pins.

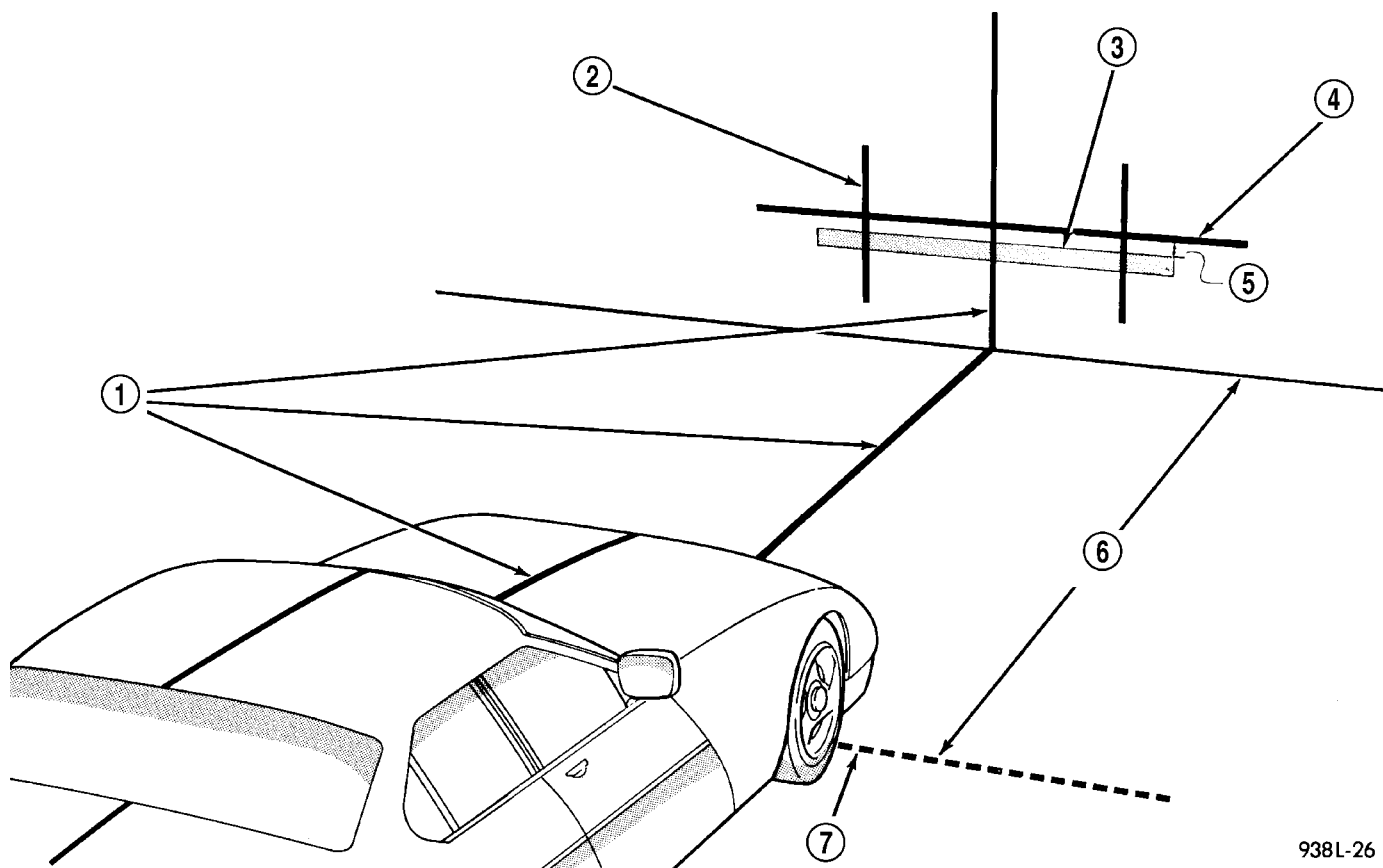
## ADJUSTMENTS

## FOG LAMP ADJUSTMENT

Prepare an alignment screen. A properly aligned fog lamp will project a pattern on the alignment screen 100 mm (4 in.) below the fog lamp centerline and straight ahead (Fig. 12).



## FOG LAMP UNIT (Continued)



938L-26

**Fig. 12 Fog Lamp Alignment—Typical**

- 1 - VEHICLE CENTERLINE
- 2 - CENTER OF VEHICLE TO CENTER OF FOG LAMP LENS
- 3 - HIGH-INTENSITY AREA
- 4 - FLOOR TO CENTER OF FOG LAMP LENS

- 5 - 100 mm (4 in.)
- 6 - 7.62 METERS (25 FEET)
- 7 - FRONT OF FOG LAMP

Rotate the adjustment screw to adjust beam height (Fig. 11).

## FRONT POSITION LAMP

### DESCRIPTION

Some vehicles are equipped with front position lamps. One front position lamp is incorporated into each of the headlamps (Fig. 13). These lamps utilize a clear lens and clear bulb. The front position lamp is built in to the headlamp and therefore doesn't require its own lamp housing.

### OPERATION

The front position lamps are turned on or off with the headlamp switch. These lamps function in the same way that the parking lamps do on other market built vehicles (U.S., Canada). Refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, details of wire harness routing

and retention, connector pin-out information and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

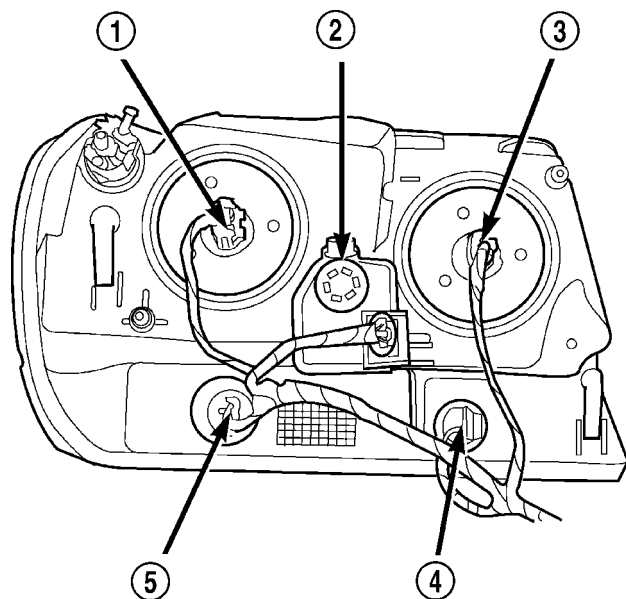
### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING

The following test is designed to diagnosis a faulty front position lamp. Refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, details of wire harness routing and retention, connector pin-out information and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

**NOTE:** Battery must be completely charged (12v) prior to testing. It may also be necessary to install battery charger on the vehicles electrical system when performing this test. Refer to the Battery section of the service manual for detailed information.

- (1) Remove the front position lamp bulb and check for burned out condition, replace bulb if necessary.

## FRONT POSITION LAMP (Continued)



80bc4e82

**Fig. 13 FRONT POSITION LAMP LOCATION**

- 1 - LOW BEAM HEADLAMP
- 2 - HEADLAMP LEVELING MOTOR
- 3 - HIGH BEAM HEADLAMP
- 4 - TURN SIGNAL LAMP
- 5 - FRONT POSITION LAMP

(2) If bulb appears OK, reinstall the bulb in its socket and rotate the left side multi-function switch one detent position and check for lamp operation. If lamp is still inoperative proceed to step #3.

(3) Remove lamp bulb and check for proper power (12v) and ground connections in lamp socket. If power and / or ground connections are not present, trace wire until open or short is found.

**REMOVAL**

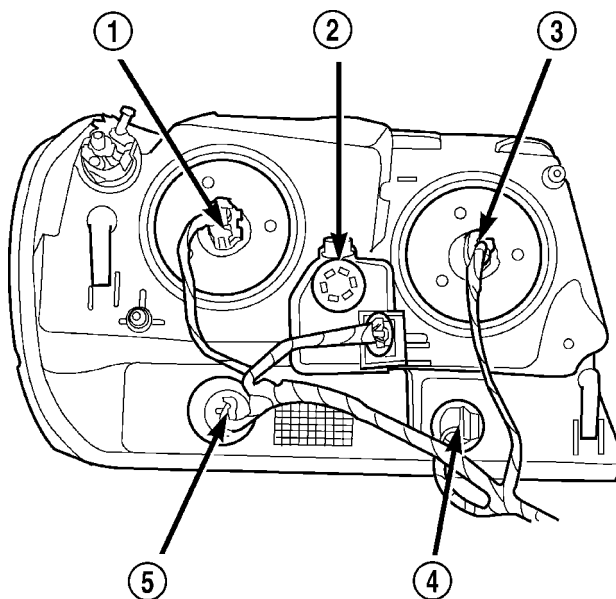
(1) Remove the appropriate headlamp from the vehicle. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/LAMPS/LIGHTING - EXTERIOR/HEADLAMP UNIT - REMOVAL).

(2) Rotate the front position lamp socket counter-clockwise and pull straight from the headlamp assembly (Fig. 14).

(3) Pull the front position lamp bulb straight from its socket.

**INSTALLATION**

(1) Install the front position lamp bulb in its socket.



80bc4e82

**Fig. 14 FRONT POSITION LAMP LOCATION**

- 1 - LOW BEAM HEADLAMP
- 2 - HEADLAMP LEVELING MOTOR
- 3 - HIGH BEAM HEADLAMP
- 4 - TURN SIGNAL LAMP
- 5 - FRONT POSITION LAMP

(2) Verify lamp operation.

(3) Install the front position lamp socket in the headlamp.

(4) Install the headlamp in the vehicle. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/LAMPS/LIGHTING - EXTERIOR/HEADLAMP UNIT - INSTALLATION).

**HEADLAMP****DESCRIPTION**

The headlamps are modular in design. The headlamp module contains five bulbs; a dual filament headlamp low beam bulb, a single filament high beam bulb, two turnsignal/park bulbs, and a side marker bulb.

**OPERATION**

All headlamp, turnsignal, park lamp, and high beam operations are controlled by the left multifunction switch. Exterior lamps and bulbs are serviceable separately.

## HEADLAMP (Continued)

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING — HEADLAMP SYSTEM

## HEADLAMPS

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
HEADLAMPS ARE DIM WITH ENGINE IDLING OR IGNITION TURNED OFF	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Loose or corroded battery cables.</li> <li>2. Loose or worn generator drive belt.</li> <li>3. Charging system output too low.</li> <li>4. Battery has insufficient charge.</li> <li>5. Battery is sulfated or shorted.</li> <li>6. Poor lighting circuit Z1-ground.</li> <li>7. Both headlamp bulbs defective.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Clean and secure battery cable clamps and posts.</li> <li>2. Adjust or replace generator drive belt.</li> <li>3. Test and repair charging system, refer to Electrical, Charging</li> <li>4. Test battery state-of -charge, refer to Electrical, Battery System.</li> <li>5. Load test battery, refer to Electrical,Battery System.</li> <li>6. Test for voltage drop across Z1-ground locations, refer to Electrical, Wiring Digram Information.</li> <li>7. Replace both headlamp bulbs.</li> </ol>
HEADLAMP BULBS BURN OUT FREQUENTLY	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Charging system output too high.</li> <li>2. Loose or corroded terminals or splices in circuit.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Test and repair charging system, refer to Electrical, Charging.</li> <li>2. Inspect and repair all connectors and splices, refer to Electrical, Wiring Information.</li> </ol>
HEADLAMPS ARE DIM WITH ENGINE RUNNING ABOVE IDLE*	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Charging system output too low.</li> <li>2. Poor lighting circuit Z1-ground.</li> <li>3. High resistance in headlamp circuit.</li> <li>4. Both headlamp bulbs defective.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Test and repair charging system, refer to Electrical, Wiring Information.</li> <li>2. Test for voltage drop across Z1-ground locations, refer to Electrical, Wiring Information.</li> <li>3. Test amperage draw of headlamp circuit.</li> <li>4. Replace both headlamp bulbs.</li> </ol>
HEADLAMPS FLASH RANDOMLY	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Poor lighting circuit Z1-ground.</li> <li>2. High resistance in headlamp circuit.</li> <li>3. Loose or corroded terminals or splices in circuit.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Test for voltage drop across Z1-ground locations, refer to Electrical, Wiring Information.</li> <li>2. Test amperage draw of headlamp circuit. Should not exceed 30 amps.</li> <li>3. Inspect and repair all connectors and splices, refer to Electrical, Wiring Information.</li> </ol>

## HEADLAMP (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
HEADLAMPS DO NOT ILLUMINATE	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. No voltage to headlamps.</li> <li>2. No Z1-ground at headlamps.</li> <li>3. Faulty headlamp switch.</li> <li>4. Blown fuse for headlamps.</li> <li>5. Broken connector terminal or wire splice in headlamp circuit.</li> <li>6. Both headlamp bulbs defective.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Repair open headlamp circuit, refer to Electrical, Wiring Information.</li> <li>2. Repair circuit ground, refer to Electrical, Wiring Information.</li> <li>3. Refer to BCM diagnostics.</li> <li>4. Replace fuse refer to Electrical, Wiring Information.</li> <li>5. Repair connector terminal or wire splice.</li> <li>6. Replace both headlamp bulbs.</li> </ol>
*Canada vehicles must have lamps ON.		

## FOG LAMP

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
FOG LAMPS ARE DIM WITH ENGINE IDLING OR IGNITION TURNED OFF.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Loose or corroded battery cables.</li> <li>2. Loose or worn generator drive belt.</li> <li>3. Charging system output too low.</li> <li>4. Battery has insufficient charge.</li> <li>5. Battery is sulfated or shorted.</li> <li>6. Poor lighting circuit Z1-ground.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Clean and secure battery cable clamps and posts.</li> <li>2. Adjust or replace generator drive belt.</li> <li>3. Test and repair charging system. Refer to Electrical, Charging,</li> <li>4. Test battery state-of -charge. Refer to Electrical, Battery System.</li> <li>5. Load test battery. Refer to Electrical, Battery System.</li> <li>6. Test for voltage drop across Z1-ground locations. Refer to Electrical, Wiring Information.</li> </ol>
FOG LAMP BULBS BURN OUT FREQUENTLY	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Charging system output too high.</li> <li>2. Loose or corroded terminals or splices in circuit.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Test and repair charging system. Refer to Electrical, Charging.</li> <li>2. Inspect and repair all connectors and splices. Refer to Electrical, Wiring Information.</li> </ol>
FOG LAMPS ARE DIM WITH ENGINE RUNNING ABOVE IDLE	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Charging system output too low.</li> <li>2. Poor lighting circuit Z1-ground.</li> <li>3. High resistance in fog lamp circuit.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Test and repair charging system. Refer to Electrical, Charging.</li> <li>2. Test for voltage drop across Z1-ground locations. Refer to Electrical, Wiring Information.</li> <li>3. Test amperage draw of fog lamp circuit.</li> </ol>

## HEADLAMP (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
FOG LAMPS FLASH RANDOMLY	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Poor lighting circuit Z1-ground.</li> <li>2. High resistance in fog lamp circuit.</li> <li>3. Faulty multifunction switch.</li> <li>4. Loose or corroded terminals or splices in circuit.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Test for voltage drop across Z1-ground locations. Refer to Electrical, Wiring Information.</li> <li>2. Test amperage draw of fog lamp circuit.</li> <li>3. Refer to Electrical, Electronic Control Modules.</li> <li>4. Inspect and repair all connectors and splices. Refer to Electrical, Wiring Information.</li> </ol>
FOG LAMPS DO NOT ILLUMINATE	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Blown fuse for fog lamp.</li> <li>2. No Z1-ground at fog lamps.</li> <li>3. Faulty multifunction switch.</li> <li>4. Broken connector terminal or wire splice in fog lamp circuit.</li> <li>5. Defective or burned out bulb.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Replace fuse. Refer to Electrical, Wiring Information.</li> <li>2. Repair circuit ground. Refer to Electrical, Wiring Information.</li> <li>3. Refer to Electrical, Wiring Information.</li> <li>4. Repair connector terminal or wire splice.</li> <li>5. Replace bulb.</li> </ol>

## DAYTIME RUNNING LAMP

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS DO NOT WORK	1. Poor connection at DRL module.	1. Secure connector on DRL module.
	2. Parking brake engaged.	2. Disengage parking brake.
	3. Parking brake circuit shorted to ground.	3. Check cluster telltale, refer to Group 8W.
	4. Headlamp circuit shorted to ground.	4. Refer to Group 8W.
	5. Defective DRL relay.	5. Replace DRL relay.
	6. Body controller not programmed with Canadian country code.	6. Check country code.
	7. DRL relay is missing.	7. Install DRL relay.
	8. Blown fuse for DRL.	8. Replace fuse refer to Electrical, Wiring Information.
Clicking or chattering when DRL is on.	1. Mechanical relay is installed in the junction block.	1. Ensure that the DRL relay is installed in the proper socket in junction block, and that no mechanical relay exists in the low beam socket.



## HEADLAMP (Continued)

### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING — HEADLAMP

**WARNING: EYE PROTECTION SHOULD BE USED WHEN SERVICING GLASS COMPONENTS. PERSONAL INJURY CAN RESULT.**

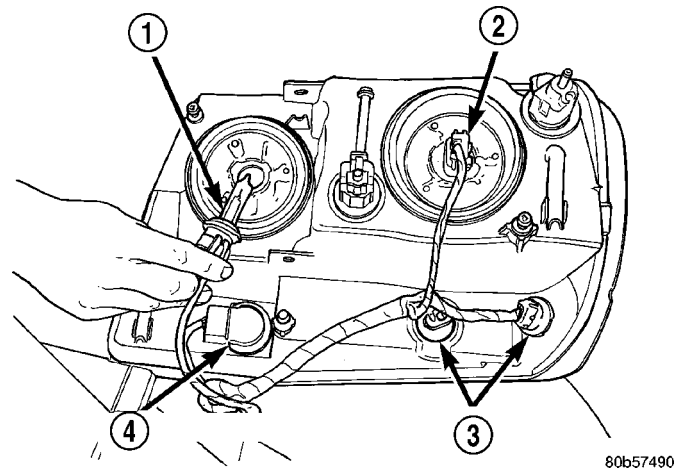
**CAUTION:** Do not touch the glass of halogen bulbs with fingers or other possibly oily surface, reduced bulb life will result. Do not use bulbs other than those indicated in the Bulb Application table. Damage to lamp and/or Daytime Running Lamp Module can result. Do not use fuses, circuit breakers or relays having greater amperage value than indicated on the fuse panel or in the Owners Manual.

Each vehicle is equipped with various lamp assemblies. A good power feed and ground are necessary for proper lighting operation. Grounding is provided by the lamp socket when it comes in contact with the metal body, or through a separate ground wire.

When changing lamp bulbs check the socket for corrosion. If corrosion is present, clean it with a wire brush and coat the inside of the socket lightly with Mopar Multi-Purpose Grease or equivalent.

### REMOVAL - BULB

- (1) Remove the headlamp.
- (2) Turn the bulb socket one quarter turn counter clockwise.
- (3) Remove the socket from lamp (Fig. 15).
- (4) Remove the bulb from socket.



**Fig. 15 Headlamp Bulb**

- 1 - HIGH BEAM BULB
- 2 - LOW BEAM BULB
- 3 - MARKER BULB
- 4 - PARK/TURN SIGNAL BULB

### INSTALLATION - BULB

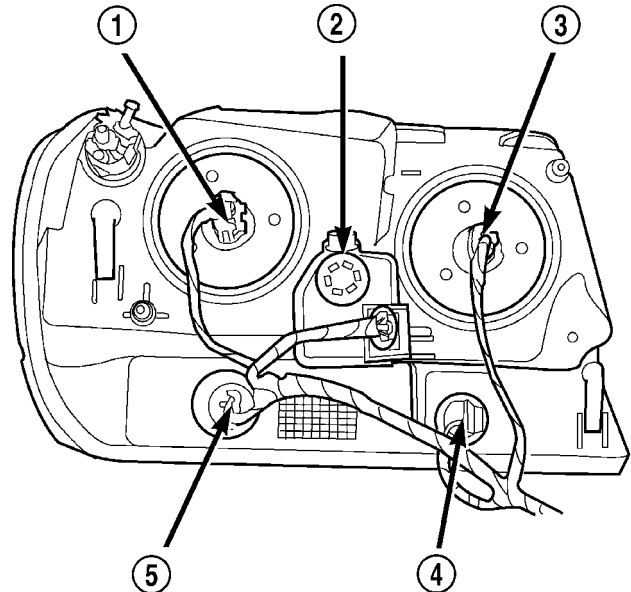
**CAUTION:** Do not touch the bulb glass with fingers or other oily surfaces. Reduced bulb life will result.

- (1) Position the bulb into socket and push into place.

- (2) Position the bulb socket in headlamp and turn the bulb socket one quarter turn clockwise.
- (3) Install the headlamp.

## HEADLAMP LEVELING MOTOR

### DESCRIPTION



80bc4e82

**Fig. 16 HEADLAMP LEVELING MOTOR LOCATION**

- 1 - LOW BEAM HEADLAMP
- 2 - HEADLAMP LEVELING MOTOR
- 3 - HIGH BEAM HEADLAMP
- 4 - TURN SIGNAL LAMP
- 5 - FRONT POSITION LAMP

Vehicles equipped with the remote headlamp leveling system, utilize headlamp leveling motors. Two leveling motors are used per vehicle, one for each headlamp (Fig. 16). These leveling motors are attached to the rear of the headlamps. They can be described as a small semi-square shaped module with a electrical connector attached to one side. Due to vehicle design these motors can only be accessed by removing the headlamp from the vehicle. The headlamp leveling motors cannot be serviced separately from the headlamp module. If a motor is found to be faulty the entire headlamp assembly must be replaced.

### OPERATION

The headlamp leveling motors move the headlamp and beam pattern according to the signal received from the headlamp leveling switch. With the vehicles headlamps " ON " a signal voltage is sent from the headlamp leveling switch and received at each of the headlamp leveling motors. This signal voltage (typically 2 – 9 volts) tells the headlamp leveling motors where to position the headlamps.

## HEADLAMP LEVELING MOTOR (Continued)

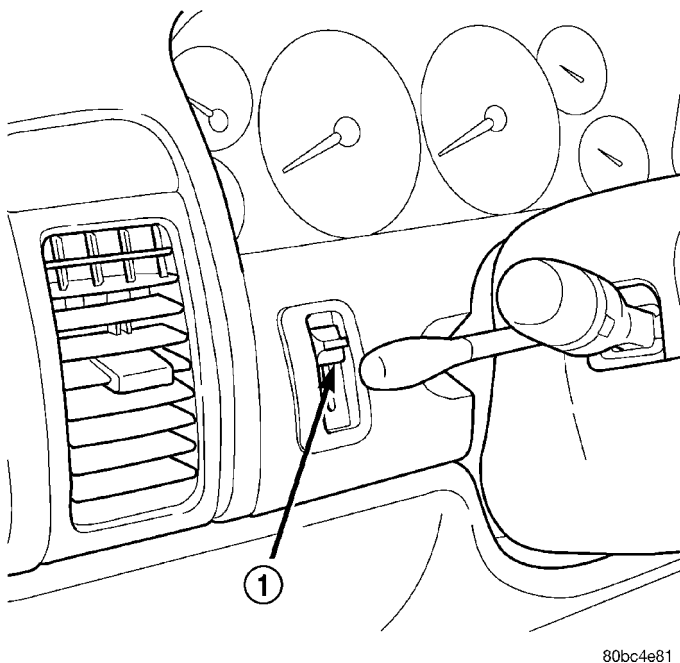
## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING

## HEADLAMP LEVELING MOTOR DIAGNOSIS

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
ONE MOTOR DOES NOT OPERATE	1. Poor electrical connection at motor.	1. Check for proper electrical connection at motor.
	2. No voltage at motor.	2. Repair no voltage condition. Refer to Wiring Diagrams.
	3. No ground at motor.	3. Repair no ground condition. Refer to Wiring Diagrams.
	4. Defective motor.	4. Replace leveling motor.
BOTH MOTORS DO NOT OPERATE	1. No voltage at or from headlamp leveling switch.	1. Repair no voltage condition. Check for proper headlamp leveling switch operation.
	2. No voltage at leveling motors.	2. Repair no voltage condition. Refer to Wiring Diagrams.
	3. No ground at leveling motors.	Repair no ground condition. Refer to Wiring Diagrams.
	4. Both motors defective.	4. Replace both motors.

## HEADLAMP LEVELING SWITCH

## DESCRIPTION



80bc4e81

**Fig. 17 HEADLAMP LEVELING SWITCH LOCATION**

1 - HEADLAMP LEVELING SWITCH

Vehicles equipped with the remote headlamp leveling system use a headlamp leveling switch. This

switch is located under the instrument cluster on the I.P. (Fig. 17). The headlamp leveling switch is the primary controller of the headlamp leveling system. The leveling switch has four settings 0-3, 0 being the lowest, 3 being the highest headlight beam vertical setting.

## OPERATION

With the movement of the headlamp leveling switch control knob, voltage is adjusted at the headlamp leveling switch (rheostat). This signals the headlamp leveling motors (headlamp module mounted) to adjust the vertical headlamp beam pattern accordingly. Headlamps must be "on" in order for the leveling system to function. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/LAMPS/LIGHTING - EXTERIOR - DESCRIPTION) for more information.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING

The following test is designed to diagnose a possible faulty headlamp leveling switch. Refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, details of wire harness routing and retention, connector pin-out information and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

(1) Disconnect and isolate the negative battery cable.

(2) Remove the headlamp leveling switch from the instrument panel. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/

## HEADLAMP LEVELING SWITCH (Continued)

## LAMPS/LIGHTING - EXTERIOR/HEADLAMP LEVELING SWITCH - REMOVAL).

(3) Disconnect the headlamp leveling switch electrical connector.

(4) Using an Ohm meter and the table below, check the resistance between switch connector pins 1&2.

(5) If the test results are **not** as indicated in the table below, replace the switch. If test results **are** as indicated below, the switch is OK at this time.

HEADLAMP LEVELING SWITCH	
SWITCH POSITION	RESISTANCE BETWEEN PINS 1&2
0	0.752Ω
1	0.564Ω
2	348.8Ω
3	249.2Ω

## REMOVAL

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, REFER TO ELECTRICAL, RESTRAINTS BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the negative battery cable.

(2) Remove the instrument panel cluster bezel. Using a trim stick or another suitable wide flat-bladed tool, gently pry bezel away from the instrument panel to free the four snap clip retainers (Fig. 18).

(3) Pull the cluster bezel away from the instrument panel far enough to disconnect the wiring harness from the headlamp leveling switch. Disconnect the headlamp leveling switch electrical connector (Fig. 19).

(4) Depress the switch retaining tabs (Fig. 19) and remove the switch from the cluster bezel.

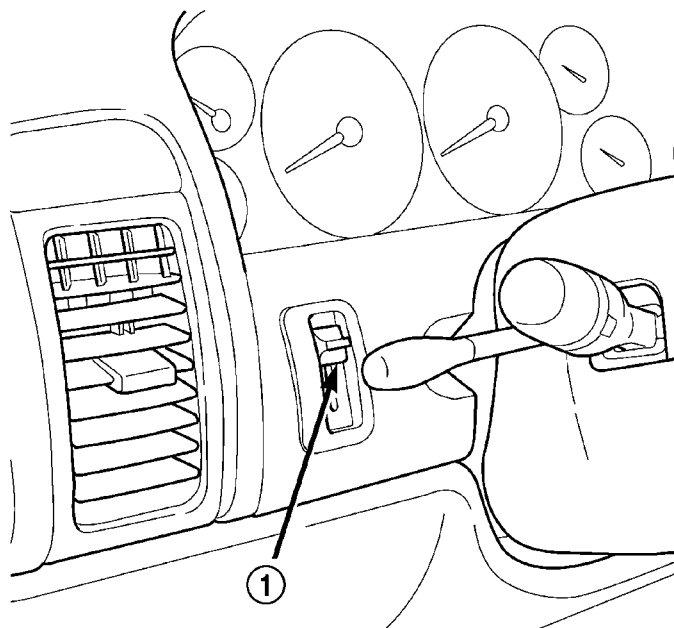
## INSTALLATION

(1) Install the instrument panel cluster bezel to the instrument panel. Be certain headlamp leveling switch electrical harness is feed through the corresponding hole in cluster bezel.

(2) Connect the headlamp leveling switch.

(3) Verify switch / system operation.

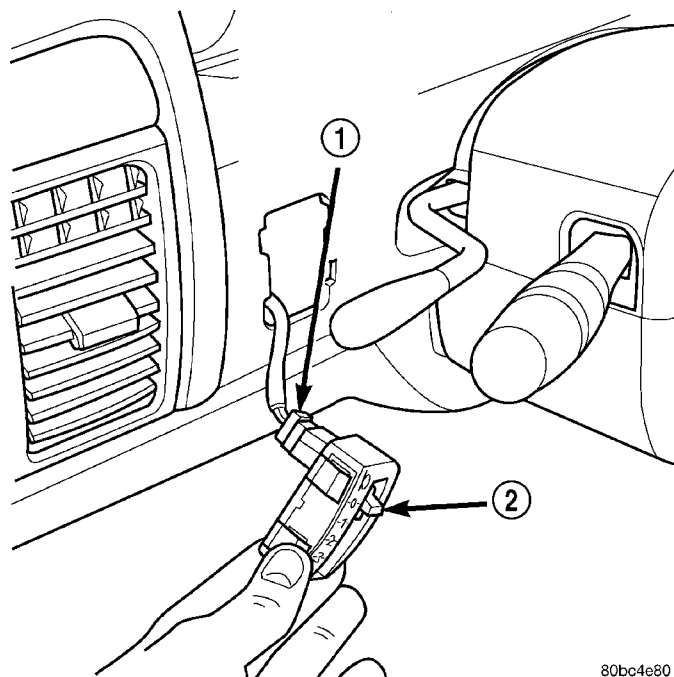
(4) Install the headlamp leveling switch in the instrument panel cluster bezel by gently pushing straight in.



80bc4e81

Fig. 18 HEADLAMP LEVELING SWITCH LOCATION

1 - HEADLAMP LEVELING SWITCH



80bc4e80

Fig. 19 HEADLAMP LEVELING SWITCH

1 - HEADLAMP LEVELING SWITCH ELECTRICAL CONNECTOR  
2 - HEADLAMP LEVELING CONTROL SWITCH

(5) Connect the negative battery cable.

## HEADLAMP SWITCH

### DESCRIPTION

The headlamp switch is part of the left multi-function switch. A knob on the end of the multi-function switch control stalk controls all of the exterior lighting switch functions. The exterior lighting switch is hard wired to the Body Control Module (BCM).

The exterior lighting switch cannot be adjusted or repaired and, if faulty or damaged, the entire left multi-function switch unit must be replaced. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/LAMPS/LIGHTING - EXTERIOR/TURN SIGNAL/HAZARD SWITCH - REMOVAL) for the service procedures. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/ELECTRONIC CONTROL MODULES/BODY CONTROL/CENTRAL TIMER MODUL - DESCRIPTION) for more information on this component.

### OPERATION

The exterior lighting switch uses a hard wired five volt reference circuit from the BCM, resistor multiplexing and a hard wired switch output circuit to provide the BCM with a zero to five volt signal that indicates the status of all of the exterior lighting switch settings. The BCM then uses control outputs to energize the headlamp and park lamp relays that activate the exterior lighting circuits.

The BCM monitors the exterior lighting switch status, then sends the proper switch status messages to other modules over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network. The exterior lighting switch status is also used by the BCM as an input for chime warning system operation.

### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING — HEADLAMP SWITCH

Before testing the headlamp switch, turn on the exterior lighting and open the driver side front door. If the exterior lamps of the vehicle operate, but there is no chime warning issued with the driver side front door open, (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/LAMPS/LIGHTING - INTERIOR/DOOR AJAR SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). If the exterior lamps of the vehicle are inoperative, but the chime warning is issued, (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/LAMPS/LIGHTING - EXTERIOR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING).

If the exterior lamps and the chime warning are both inoperative, test the left multi-function switch. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/LAMPS/LIGHTING - EXTERIOR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). If the multi-function switch tests OK, proceed as follows. The following tests will help to locate a short or open in the hard wired circuits between the multi-function switch and the Body Control Module (BCM). For

complete circuit diagrams, refer to the appropriate wiring information.

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIR-BAGS, REFER TO ELECTRICAL, RESTRAINTS BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Disconnect the instrument panel wire harness connector from the left multi-function switch connector. Disconnect the instrument panel wire harness connector from the Body Control Module (BCM). Check for continuity between the headlamp switch mux circuit of the instrument panel wire harness connector for the multi-function switch and a good ground. There should be no continuity. If OK, go to Step 2. If not OK, repair the shorted headlamp switch mux circuit.

(2) Check for continuity between the headlamp switch mux circuit of the instrument panel wire harness connector for the multi-function switch and the instrument panel wire harness connector for the BCM. There should be continuity. If OK, go to Step 3. If not OK, repair the open headlamp switch mux circuit.

(3) Check for continuity between the headlamp switch return circuit of the instrument panel wire harness connector for the multi-function switch and a good ground. There should be no continuity. If OK, go to Step 4. If not OK, repair the shorted headlamp switch return circuit.

(4) Check for continuity between the headlamp switch return circuit of the instrument panel wire harness connector for the multi-function switch and the instrument panel wire harness connector for the BCM. There should be continuity. If OK, use a DRBIII® scan tool and the proper Diagnostic Procedures manual to test the BCM. If not OK, repair the open headlamp switch return circuit.

## HEADLAMP UNIT

### REMOVAL

(1) Remove the jack screw attaching the top of headlamp to the headlamp mounting module (Fig. 20).

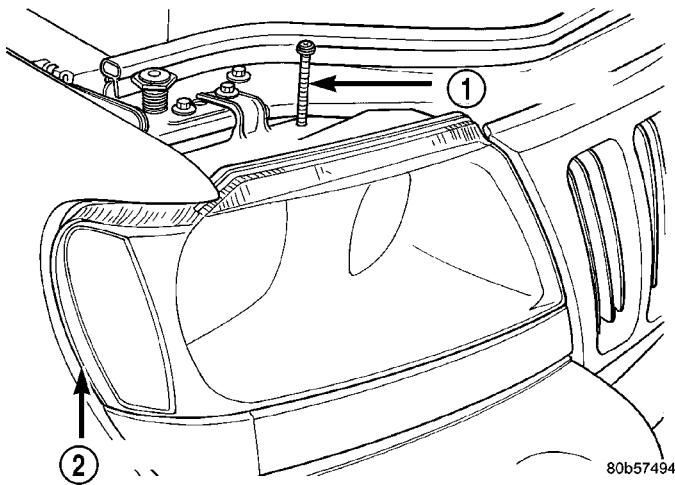
(2) Grasp upper inboard and lower outboard corners of headlamp (Fig. 21) and pull headlamp outward.

(3) Remove all of the bulb sockets from headlamp module.



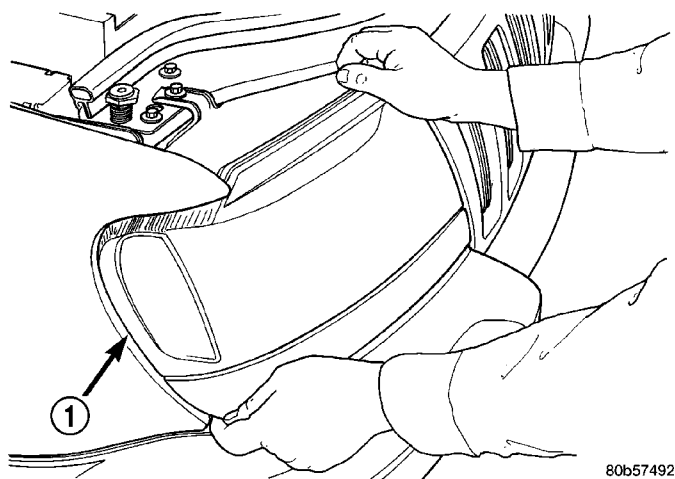
## HEADLAMP UNIT (Continued)

- (4) Separate the headlamp from vehicle.



**Fig. 20 Headlamp Jackscrew**

1 - JACKSCREW  
2 - HEADLAMP



**Fig. 21 Headlamp Removal**

1 - HEADLAMP

## INSTALLATION

**CAUTION:** Do not touch the bulb glass with fingers or other oily surfaces. Reduced bulb life will result.

- (1) Install all of the bulb sockets in headlamp module.
- (2) Position the headlamp on the vehicle and align the ball studs with the sockets.
- (3) Push the headlamp inward to secure the ball studs with the sockets.
- (4) Install the jack screw attaching the top of headlamp to the headlamp mounting module.

## ADJUSTMENTS

## VEHICLE PREPARATION FOR LAMP ALIGNMENT

- (1) Verify headlamp dimmer switch and high beam indicator operation.
- (2) Correct defective components that could hinder proper lamp alignment.
- (3) Verify proper tire inflation.
- (4) Clean lamp lenses.
- (5) Verify that luggage area is not heavily loaded.
- (6) Fuel tank should be FULL. Add 2.94 kg (6.5 lbs.) of weight over the fuel tank for each estimated gallon of missing fuel.

## LAMP ALIGNMENT SCREEN PREPARATION

- (1) Position vehicle on a level surface perpendicular to a flat wall 7.62 meters (25 ft) away from front of headlamp lens (Fig. 22).
- (2) If necessary, tape a line on the floor 7.62 meters (25 ft) away from and parallel to the wall.
- (3) Measure from the floor up 1.27 meters (5 ft) and tape a line on the wall at the centerline of the vehicle. Sight along the centerline of the vehicle (from rear of vehicle forward) to verify accuracy of the line placement.
- (4) Rock vehicle side-to-side three times to allow suspension to stabilize.
- (5) Jounce front suspension three times by pushing downward on front bumper and releasing.
- (6) Measure the distance from the center of headlamp lens to the floor. Transfer measurement to the alignment screen (with tape). Use this line for up/down adjustment reference.
- (7) Measure distance from the centerline of the vehicle to the center of each headlamp being aligned. Transfer measurements to screen (with tape) to each side of vehicle centerline. Use these lines for left/right adjustment reference.

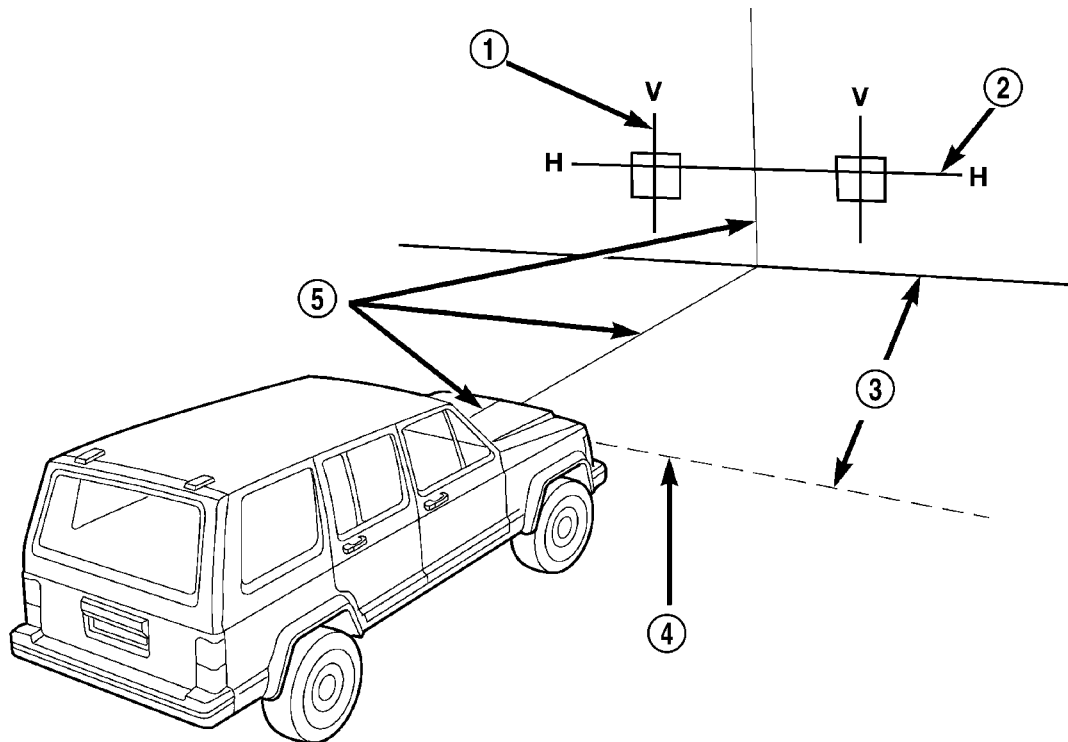
## HEADLAMP ADJUSTMENT

A properly aimed low beam will project the top edge of the beam intensity pattern on the screen from 25 mm (1 in.) above to 75 mm (3 in.) below headlamp centerline. The side-to-side left edge of the beam intensity pattern should be from 50 mm (2 in.) left to 50 mm (2 in.) right of headlamp centerline (Fig. 23).

- (1) Clean front of the headlamps.
- (2) Place headlamps on LOW beam.
- (3) Cover front of the headlamp that is not being adjusted.
- (4) Turn adjustment screw (Fig. 24) and (Fig. 25) until the top edge of the beam intensity pattern is positioned within 25 mm (1 in.) above or 75 mm (3 in.) below the headlamp horizontal centerline.



## HEADLAMP UNIT (Continued)



80a624c0

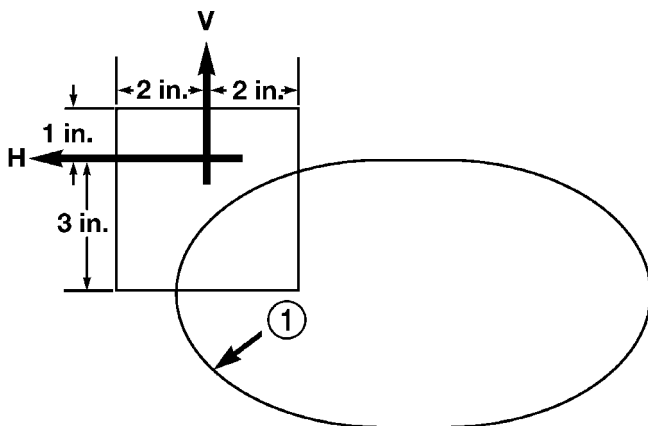
**Fig. 22 Headlamp Alignment Screen—Typical**

1 - CENTER OF VEHICLE TO CENTER OF HEADLAMP LENS  
 2 - FLOOR TO CENTER OF HEADLAMP LENS  
 3 - 7.62 METERS (25 FEET)

4 - FRONT OF HEADLAMP  
 5 - VEHICLE CENTERLINE

(5) Cover front of the headlamp and adjust the other headlamp beam as instructed below.

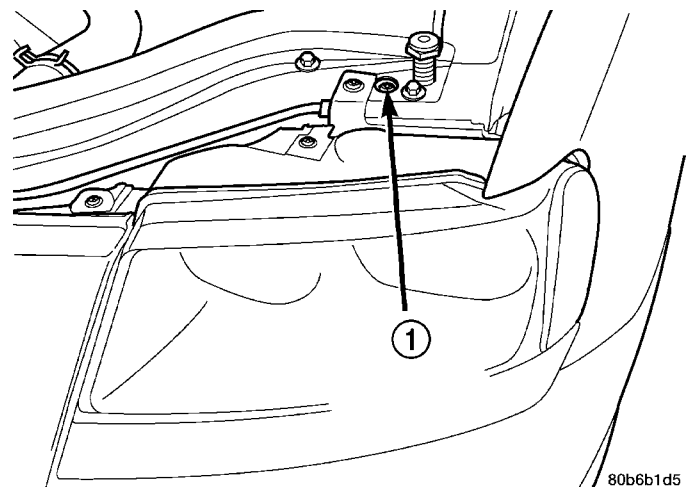
(6) Rotate the adjustment screw until the top edge of the beam intensity pattern is positioned within 25 mm (1 in.) above or 75 mm (3 in.) below the headlamp horizontal centerline.



80b6b3aa

**Fig. 23 Low Beam Pattern**

1 - LOW BEAM INTENSITY PATTERN (ISO-CANDELA CURVE)

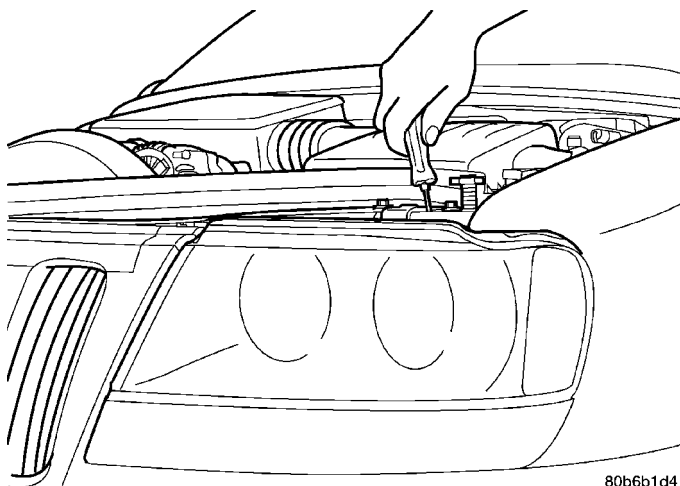


80b6b1d5

**Fig. 24 Headlamp Beam Adjustment Screw**

1 - ADJUSTMENT SCREW LOCATION

## HEADLAMP UNIT (Continued)



80b6b1d4

**Fig. 25 Headlamp Beam Adjustment**

## LICENSE PLATE LAMP

## REMOVAL

## REMOVAL - BULB

- (1) Remove lamp assembly from liftgate lamp module.
- (2) Rotate bulb socket counterclockwise to disconnect bulb socket from lamp.
- (3) Remove bulb from socket.

## REMOVAL - LAMP

- (1) Remove the screws attaching lamp assembly to liftgate. (Fig. 26).
- (2) Pull the lamp assembly away from the sheet-metal at extreme outboard edges to disengage the push pins.
- (3) Separate lamp assembly harness wiring connector.
- (4) Remove lamp.

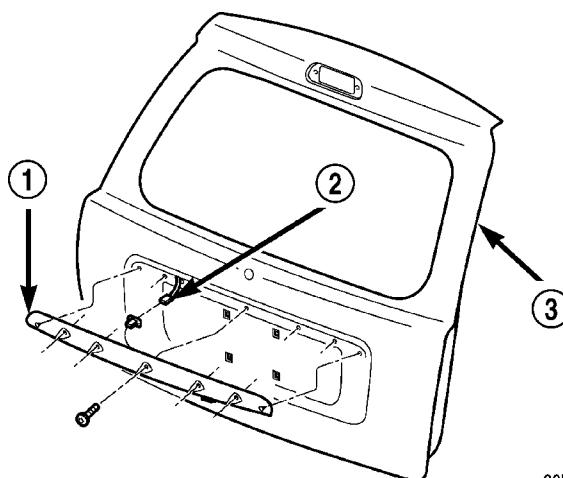
## INSTALLATION

## INSTALLATION - BULB

- (1) Install bulb in socket.
- (2) Install socket and bulb assembly in lamp housing.
- (3) Install lamp assembly in liftgate lamp module.

## INSTALLATION - LAMP

- (1) Connect bulb harness to lamp assembly.
- (2) Position lamp assembly on liftgate and press outboard fasteners in place.
- (3) Install screws in lamp assembly.



80b46b65

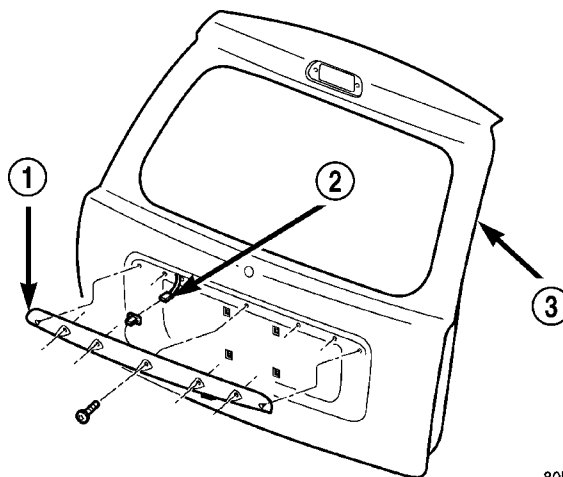
**Fig. 26 License Plate Lamp Housing**

- 1 - LICENSE PLATE LAMP
- 2 - CONNECTOR
- 3 - LIFTGATE

## LICENSE PLATE LAMP UNIT

## REMOVAL

- (1) Remove the screws retaining the lamp housing/trim panel to the liftgate (Fig. 27).
- (2) Disconnect the wire harness for the license plate lamps and the flip up glass switch, if equipped.
- (3) Remove the license plate lamps and the flip up glass switch, if equipped.
- (4) Remove the license plate lamp housing.



80b46b65

**Fig. 27 License Plate Lamp Housing**

- 1 - LICENSE PLATE LAMP
- 2 - CONNECTOR
- 3 - LIFTGATE

## INSTALLATION

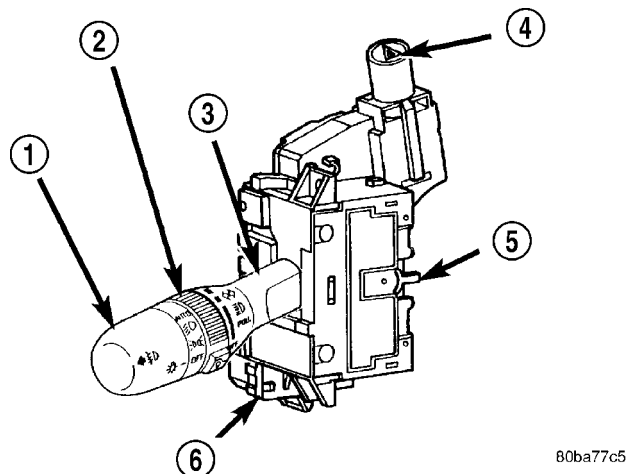
- (1) Install the license plate lamps, and the flip up glass switch, if equipped.
- (2) Connect the wire harnesses for the license plate lamps and the flip up glass switch.

## LICENSE PLATE LAMP UNIT (Continued)

(3) Install the lamp housing/trim panel on the lift-gate.

## LEFT MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH

## DESCRIPTION



**Fig. 28 Left (Lighting) Multi-Function Switch**

- 1 - EXTERIOR LIGHTING CONTROL
- 2 - INTERIOR LIGHTING CONTROL
- 3 - CONTROL STALK
- 4 - HAZARD WARNING BUTTON
- 5 - CANCEL ACTUATOR
- 6 - LEFT (LIGHTING) MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH

The left multi-function switch, its mounting provisions, and its electrical connections are all concealed beneath the steering column shrouds, just below the steering wheel (Fig. 28).

A single connector with eleven terminal pins is located on the back of the switch housing and connects the switch to the vehicle electrical system. The left multi-function switch supports the following exterior lighting functions:

- Auto Headlamps
- Front Fog Lamps
- Hazard Warning Control
- Headlamps
- Headlamp Beam Selection
- Headlamp Optical Horn
- Park Lamps
- Rear Fog Lamps
- Turn Signal Control

The left multi-function switch also supports the following interior lighting functions:

- Panel Lamps Dimming
- Interior Lamps Defeat
- Interior Lamps On
- Parade Mode

The left multi-function switch cannot be adjusted or repaired. If any function of the switch is faulty, or if the switch is damaged, the entire switch unit must be replaced.

## OPERATION

The left multi-function switch uses a combination of resistor multiplexed and conventionally switched outputs to control the many functions and features it provides using a minimal number of hard wired circuits. The switch is grounded to the chassis beneath the center floor console, just forward of the Airbag Control Module (ACM). Following are descriptions of how the left multi-function switch operates to control the many exterior lighting functions and features it provides:

- **Auto Headlamps** - The automatic headlamps feature is provided by the Body Control Module (BCM), which monitors an input from a photodiode sensor located on the top of the instrument panel to detect ambient light levels whenever the ignition switch is in the On position. Based upon the multiplexed input from the left multi-function switch and the input of the photodiode sensor, the BCM controls outputs to the park lamp and headlamp relays to illuminate or extinguish all exterior lighting.

- **Front Fog Lamps** - The Body Control Module (BCM) monitors the left multi-function switch then, based upon that switched ground input, controls an output to the front fog lamp relay to illuminate or extinguish the front fog lamps.

- **Hazard Warning Control** - The hazard warning push button is pressed down to activate the hazard warning system, and pressed down again to turn the system off. The left multi-function switch provides a ground to the hazard warning sense input of the combination flasher to control activation of the hazard warning lamps.

- **Headlamps** - The Body Control Module (BCM) monitors the left multi-function switch then, based upon that multiplexed input, controls an output to the headlamp low or high beam relays to illuminate or extinguish the headlamps.

- **Headlamp Beam Selection** - The Body Control Module (BCM) monitors the left multi-function switch then, based upon that switched ground input, controls an output to the headlamp low or high beam relays to activate the selected headlamp beam.

- **Headlamp Optical Horn** - The Body Control Module (BCM) monitors the left multi-function switch then, based upon that switched ground input, controls an output to the headlamp high beam relay to activate the headlamp high beams.

- **Park Lamps** - The Body Control Module (BCM) monitors the left multi-function switch then, based upon that multiplexed input, controls an output to

## LEFT MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH (Continued)

the park lamp relay to illuminate or extinguish the parking lamps.

- **Rear Fog Lamps** - The Body Control Module (BCM) monitors the left multi-function switch then, based upon that multiplexed input, controls an output to the rear fog lamp relay to illuminate or extinguish the rear fog lamps.

- **Turn Signal Control** - The left multi-function switch control stalk actuates the turn signal switch. The Body Control Module (BCM) monitors the left multi-function switch then, based upon that multiplexed input, provides a variable voltage output to control the lighting of the turn signals.

Following are descriptions of the how the left multi-function switch operates to control the many interior lighting functions and features it provides:

- **Panel Lamps Dimming** - The Body Control Module (BCM) monitors the left multi-function switch then, based upon that multiplexed input, provides a variable voltage output through several panel lamps driver circuits to control the lighting of many incandescent panel lamps. The BCM also sends panel lamps dimming messages over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus to other modules to control Display lighting levels in those modules.

- **Interior Lamps Defeat** - The Body Control Module (BCM) monitors the left multi-function switch then, based upon that multiplexed input, internally disables the function the BCM normally provides to control the illumination of the interior lamps.

- **Interior Lamps On** - The Body Control Module (BCM) monitors the left multi-function switch then, based upon that multiplexed input, provides a control output to activate all of the interior lamp circuits.

- **Parade Mode** - The Body Control Module (BCM) monitors the left multi-function switch then, based upon that multiplexed input, provides a voltage output through several panel lamps driver circuits to control the lighting of many incandescent panel lamps. The BCM also sends panel lamps dimming messages over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus to other modules on the bus to control lighting levels in those modules.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - LEFT MULTI - FUNCTION SWITCH

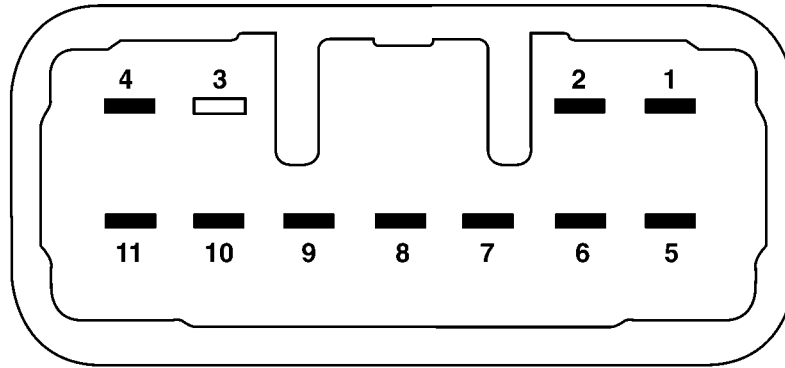
Refer to the appropriate wiring information.

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

- (1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Disconnect the instrument panel wire harness connector from the multi-function switch connector.

- (2) Using an ohmmeter, perform the continuity and resistance tests at the terminals in the multi-function switch connector as shown in the Left Multi-Function Switch Test chart (Fig. 29).

## LEFT MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH (Continued)



809a45b5

**Fig. 29 Left Multi -Function Switch Test**

LEFT (LIGHTING) MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH			
TURN SIGNAL AND HAZARD WARNING SWITCH TESTS			
SWITCH POSITION		CONTINUITY BETWEEN	
TURN	HAZARD		
Neutral	Off	No Related Continuity	
Left	Off	Pins 2 & 8	
Right	Off	Pins 2 & 7	
Neutral	On	Pins 2 & 9	
EXTERIOR LIGHTING SWITCH TESTS			
SWITCH POSITION	CONTINUITY BETWEEN	RESISTANCE BETWEEN	RESISTANCE RANGE (OHMS)
Off	-	Pins 4 & 11	3743 - 3824
Park Lamps On	-	Pins 4 & 11	901 - 926
Head Lamps On	-	Pins 4 & 11	345 - 358
Auto Headlamps On	-	Pins 4 & 11	74 - 81
Fog Lamps	Pins 1 & 4	-	-
Optical Horn	Pins 2 & 5	-	-
High Beam	Pins 2 & 6	-	-
INTERIOR LIGHTING SWITCH TESTS			
Dome Lamp Disable On	-	Pins 4 & 10	63 - 70
Panel Lamps Dimming Position 1	-	Pins 4 & 10	198 - 208
Dimming Position 2	-	Pins 4 & 10	551 - 569
Dimming Position 3	-	Pins 4 & 10	905 - 929
Dimming Position 4	-	Pins 4 & 10	1258 - 1290
Dimming Position 5	-	Pins 4 & 10	1611 - 1651
Dimming Position 6	-	Pins 4 & 10	1965 - 2011
Parade Mode On	-	Pins 4 & 10	3534 - 3611
Dome Lamp Enable On	-	Pins 4 & 10	7811 - 7974



## LEFT MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH (Continued)

(3) If the multi-function switch fails any of the continuity or resistance tests, replace the switch.

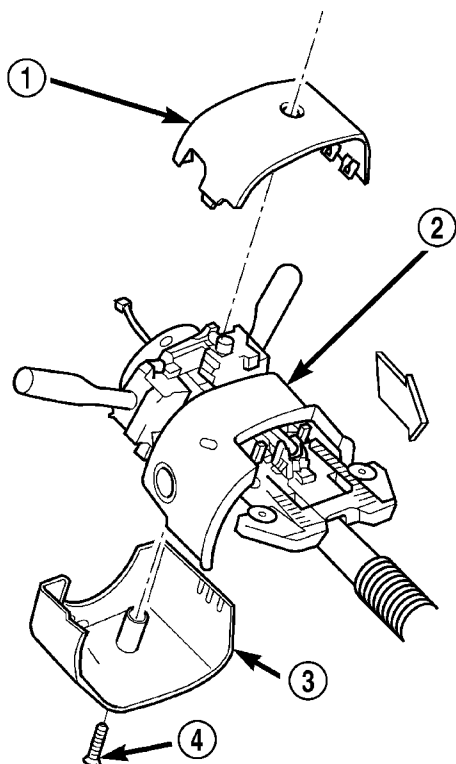
## REMOVAL

## REMOVAL - LEFT MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Remove the lower tilting steering column shroud (Fig. 30).



80b04f0f

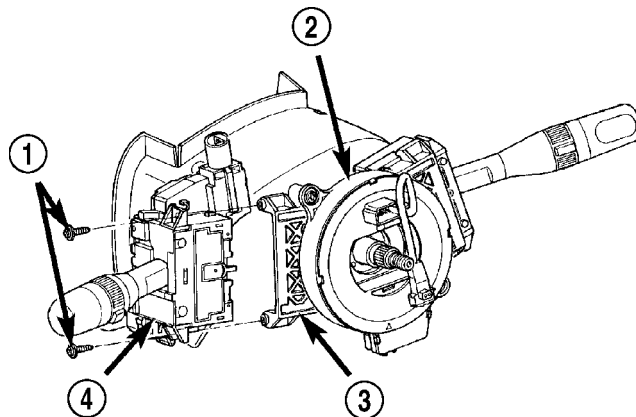
**Fig. 30 Steering Column Shrouds Remove/Install**

- 1 - UPPER TILTING COLUMN SHROUD
- 2 - FIXED COLUMN SHROUD
- 3 - LOWER TILTING COLUMN SHROUD
- 4 - SCREW

(3) Unsnap the two halves of the steering column shroud, and remove.

(4) Disconnect the instrument panel wire harness connector from the switch connector.

(5) Remove the screws that secure the left multi-function switch to the housing (Fig. 31).



80ba77c7

**Fig. 31 Left Multi-Function Switch Remove/Install**

- 1 - SCREW (2)
- 2 - STEERING COLUMN
- 3 - MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH MOUNTING HOUSING
- 4 - LEFT MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH

(6) Remove the left multi-function switch.

## REMOVAL - MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH MOUNTING HOUSING

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

**NOTE:** Before starting this procedure, be certain to turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position.

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

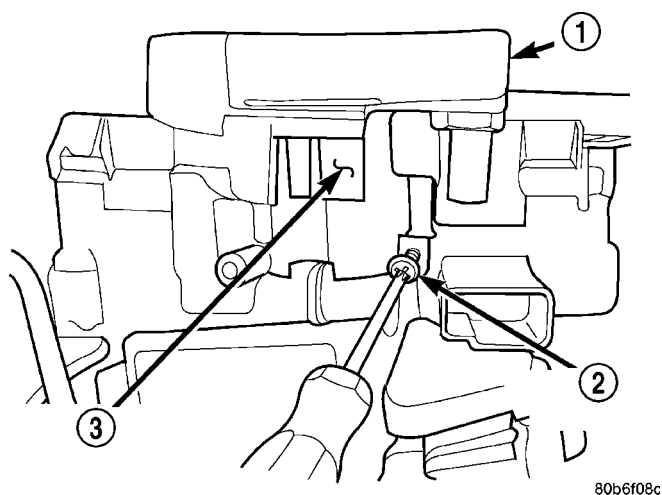
(2) Remove the clockspring from the multi-function switch mounting housing. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS/CLOCKSPRING - REMOVAL).

## LEFT MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH (Continued)

(3) Remove the left multi-function switch from the multi-function switch mounting housing. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/LAMPS/LIGHTING - EXTERIOR/LEFT MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH - REMOVAL - LEFT MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH).

(4) Remove the right multi-function switch from the multi-function switch mounting housing. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/WIPERS/WASHERS/RIGHT MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH - REMOVAL).

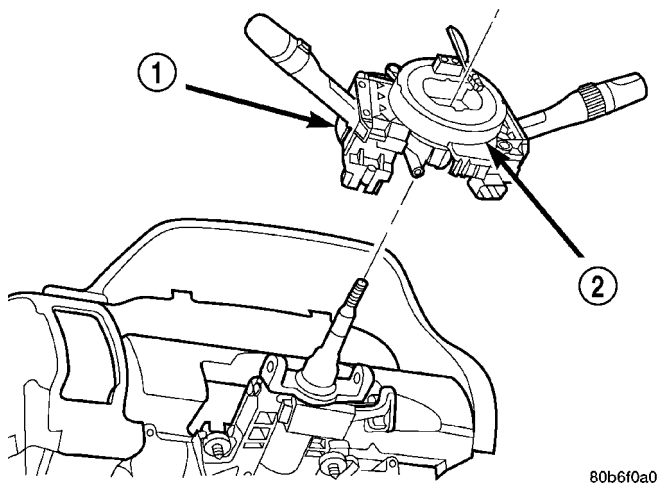
(5) Remove the screw that secures the multi-function switch mounting housing to the steering column housing (Fig. 32).



**Fig. 32 Multi-Function Switch Mounting Housing Screw Remove/Install**

- 1 - CLOCK SPRING
- 2 - SCREW
- 3 - MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH MOUNTING HOUSING

(6) Remove the multi-function switch mounting housing (Fig. 33).



**Fig. 33 Multi-Function Switch Mounting Housing Remove/install**

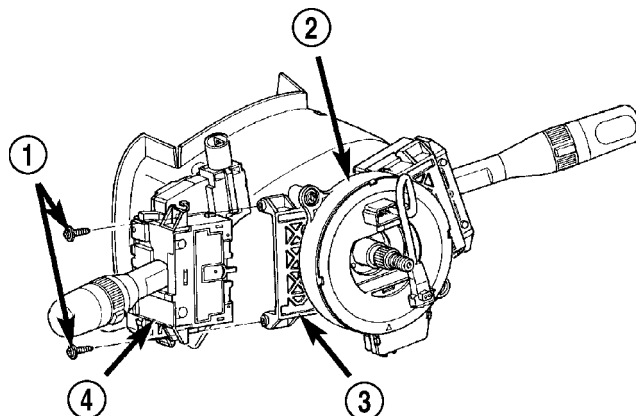
- 1 - MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH ASSEMBLY
- 2 - CLOCKSPrING

## INSTALLATION

## INSTALLATION - LEFT MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Position the left multi-function switch onto the housing (Fig. 34).



**Fig. 34 Left Multi-Function Switch Remove/Install**

- 1 - SCREW (2)
- 2 - STEERING COLUMN
- 3 - MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH MOUNTING HOUSING
- 4 - LEFT MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH

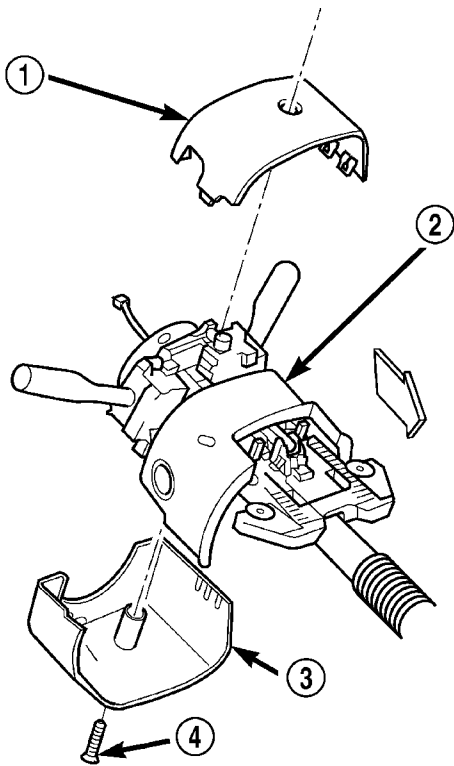
(2) Install and tighten the screws that secure the left multi-function switch housing. Tighten the screws to 2.5 N·m (22 in. lbs.).

(3) Reconnect the instrument panel wire harness connector to the switch connector.

(4) Position the lower tilting steering column shroud to the underside of the steering column (Fig. 35).

(5) Install and tighten the screw that secures the lower steering column shroud housing. Tighten the screw to 1.9 N·m (17 in. lbs.).

## LEFT MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH (Continued)



80b04f0f

**Fig. 35 Steering Column Shrouds Remove/Install**

- 1 - UPPER TILTING COLUMN SHROUD
- 2 - FIXED COLUMN SHROUD
- 3 - LOWER TILTING COLUMN SHROUD
- 4 - SCREW

(6) Align the upper tilting steering column shroud to the lower shroud and snap the two shroud halves together.

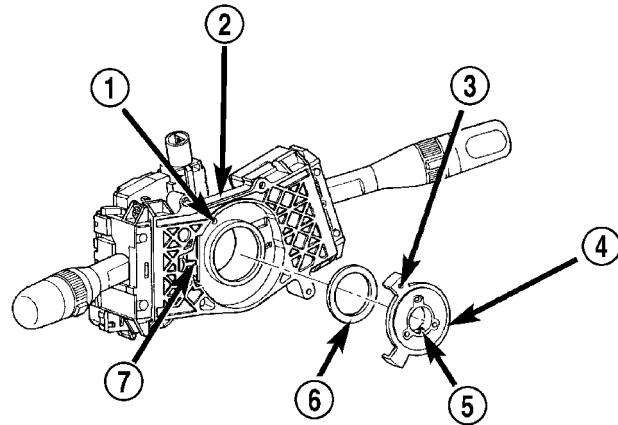
(7) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

## INSTALLATION - MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH MOUNTING HOUSING

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

**NOTE: Before starting this procedure, be certain that the front wheels are still in the straight-ahead position.**

(1) Rotate the turn signal cancel cam in the multi-function switch housing until the alignment hole in the one cam lobe is aligned with the alignment hole in the back of the housing. The oblong hole in the hub of the cam should now be at the top, and the locating tab in the hub of the cam should be at the bottom (Fig. 36).



80ba77cb

**Fig. 36 Turn Signal Cancel Cam Alignment**

- 1 - ALIGNMENT HOLE
- 2 - MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH MOUNTING HOUSING
- 3 - ALIGNMENT HOLE
- 4 - TURN SIGNAL CANCEL CAM
- 5 - LOCATING TAB
- 6 - WASHER
- 7 - TURN SIGNAL SWITCH CANCEL ACTUATOR

(2) Position the multi-function switch housing onto the top of the steering column. The locating tab in the hub of the turn signal cancel cam must be engaged with the alignment groove in the bottom of the upper steering column shaft.

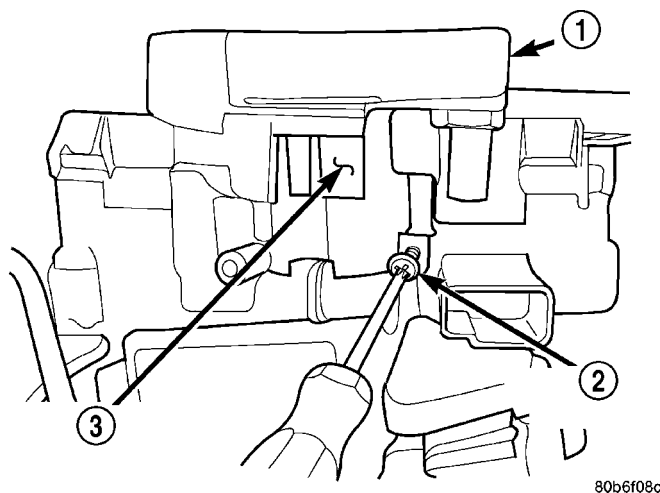
(3) Install and tighten the screw that secures the multi-function switch housing to the top of the column housing (Fig. 37). Tighten the screw to 1.9 N·m (17 in. lbs.).

(4) Reinstall the right multi-function switch onto the multi-function switch housing. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/WIPERS/WASHERS/RIGHT MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH - INSTALLATION).

(5) Reinstall the left multi-function switch onto the multi-function switch housing. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/LAMPS/LIGHTING - EXTERIOR/LEFT MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH - INSTALLATION - LEFT MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH).

(6) Reinstall the clockspring onto the multi-function switch housing. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS/CLOCKSPRING - INSTALLATION).

## LEFT MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH (Continued)



80b6f08c

**Fig. 37 Multi-Function Switch Mounting Housing Screw Remove/Install**

- 1 - CLOCK SPRING
- 2 - SCREW
- 3 - MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH MOUNTING HOUSING

(7) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

## PARK/TURN SIGNAL LAMP

## REMOVAL - BULBS

- (1) Remove the headlamp module.
- (2) Rotate the turn signal bulb socket 1/4 turn counter clockwise.
- (3) Remove the bulb socket from module.
- (4) Remove the bulb from socket.

## INSTALLATION - BULBS

- (1) Press the bulb into socket.
- (2) Position the bulb socket in module.
- (3) Rotate the turn signal bulb socket 1/4 turn clockwise.
- (4) Install the headlamp module.

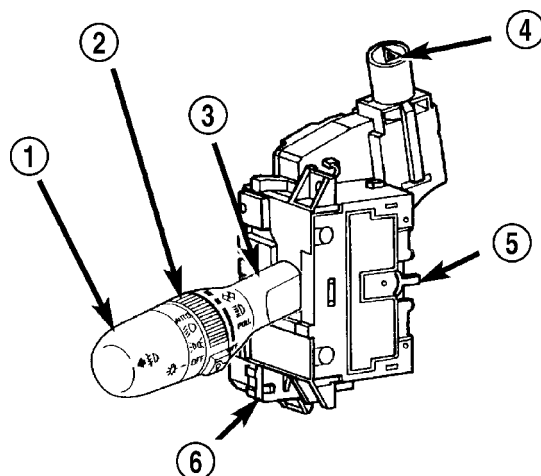
## REAR FOG LAMP SWITCH

## DESCRIPTION

Vehicles equipped with rear fog lamps utilize a rear fog lamp switch (Fig. 38). This switch is integrated into the multi-function switch. The rear fog lamp switch is the primary controller of the rear fog lamps.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING

The following test is designed to diagnosis a faulty rear fog lamp. Refer to the appropriate wiring infor-



80ba77c5

**Fig. 38 REAR FOG LAMP / MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH**

- 1 - EXTERIOR LIGHTING CONTROL
- 2 - INTERIOR LIGHTING CONTROL
- 3 - CONTROL STALK
- 4 - HAZARD WARNING BUTTON
- 5 - CANCEL ACTUATOR
- 6 - MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH ASSEMBLY

mation. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, further details on wire harness routing and retention, as well as pin-out and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

**NOTE: Battery must be completely charged (12v) prior to testing. It may also be necessary to install a battery charger on the vehicles electrical system when performing this test. Refer to Battery for detailed information.**

(1) Remove the rear fog lamp bulb and check for burned out condition, replace bulb if necessary.

(2) If bulb appears OK, reinstall the bulb in its socket and rotate the ignition switch to the "ON" position. Turn the rear fog lamp "ON" and check for lamp operation. If lamp is still inoperative, proceed to step #3.

(3) Remove lamp bulb and check for proper power (12v) and ground connections in lamp socket. If power and/or ground connections are not present, trace wire until open or short is found.

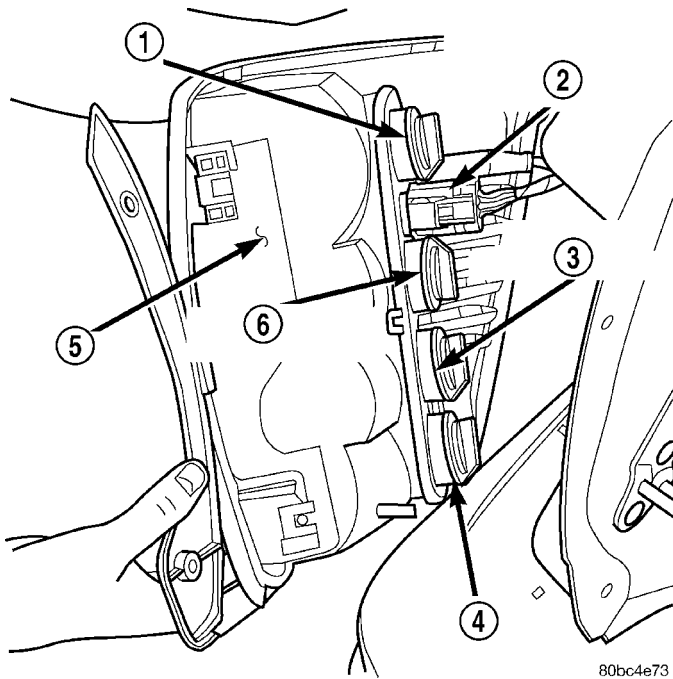
## REMOVAL

The rear fog lamp switch is incorporated into the multi-function switch. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/LAMPS/LIGHTING - EXTERIOR/TURN SIGNAL/HAZARD SWITCH - REMOVAL).



## REAR FOG LAMP

### DESCRIPTION



**Fig. 39 TAIL LAMP BULB LOCATIONS**

- 1 - TAIL LAMP
- 2 - TAIL LAMP ASSEMBLY ELECTRICAL CONNECTOR
- 3 - BACK-UP LAMP
- 4 - REAR FOG LAMP
- 5 - TAIL LAMP ASSEMBLY
- 6 - TURN SIGNAL LAMP

Some vehicles are equipped with rear fog lamps. These lamps can be found in the rear of the vehicle, integrated into the rear tail lamp assembly (Fig. 39). Rear fog lamps utilize a red lens and clear bulb.

Rear fog lamps are standard equipment in certain parts of the world where excessive fog is experienced on a regular basis.

### OPERATION

The rear fog lamps are turned on and off with the rear fog lamp switch. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/LAMPS/LIGHTING - EXTERIOR/FOG LAMP SWITCH - OPERATION). Refer to Wiring Diagrams for a complete system schematic.

### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING

The following test is designed to diagnosis a faulty rear fog lamp. Refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, details of wire harness routing and retention, connector pin-out information and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

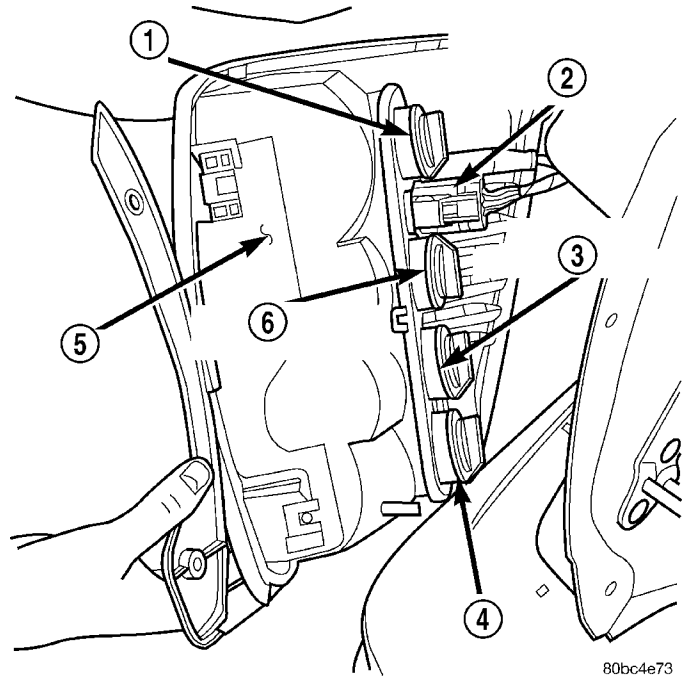
(1) Remove the rear fog lamp bulb and check for burned out condition, replace bulb if necessary.

(2) If bulb appears OK, reinstall the bulb in its socket and rotate the ignition switch to the "ON" position. Turn the rear fog lamp "ON" and check for lamp operation. If lamp is still inoperative proceed to step #3.

(3) Remove lamp bulb and check for proper power (12v) and ground connections in lamp socket. If power and / or ground connections are not present, trace wire until open or short is found.

### REMOVAL

- (1) Open vehicle liftgate
- (2) Remove the taillamp assembly (Fig. 40). (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/LAMPS/LIGHTING - EXTERIOR/TAI LAMP - REMOVAL).



**Fig. 40 TAIL LAMP BULB LOCATIONS**

- 1 - TAIL LAMP SOCKET
- 2 - TAIL LAMP ELECTRICAL CONNECTOR
- 3 - BACK-UP LAMP
- 4 - REAR FOG LAMP
- 5 - TAIL LAMP ASSEMBLY
- 6 - TURN SIGNAL LAMP

(3) Rotate the lamp sockets one-third turn and pull from lamp housing (Fig. 41).

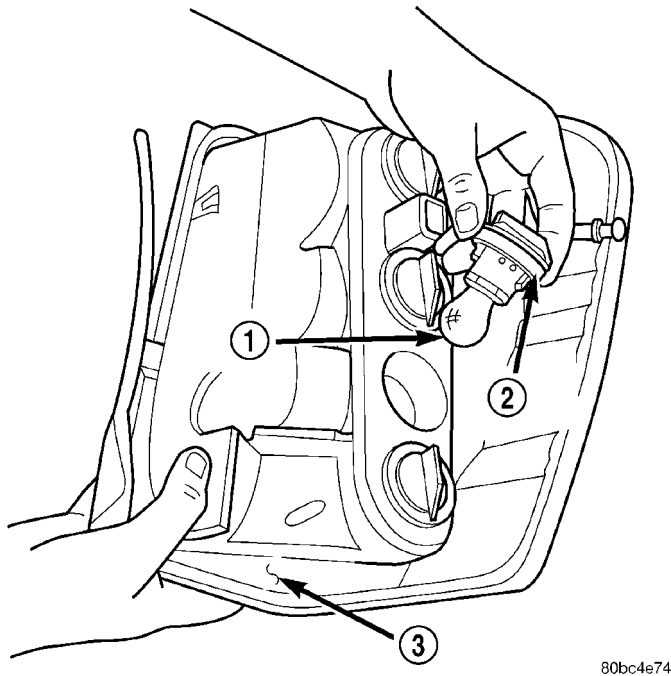
(4) Pull the rear fog lamp bulb straight from its socket (Fig. 42).

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Install the lamp bulb and socket in the lamp housing (Fig. 41).
- (2) Verify lamp operation.



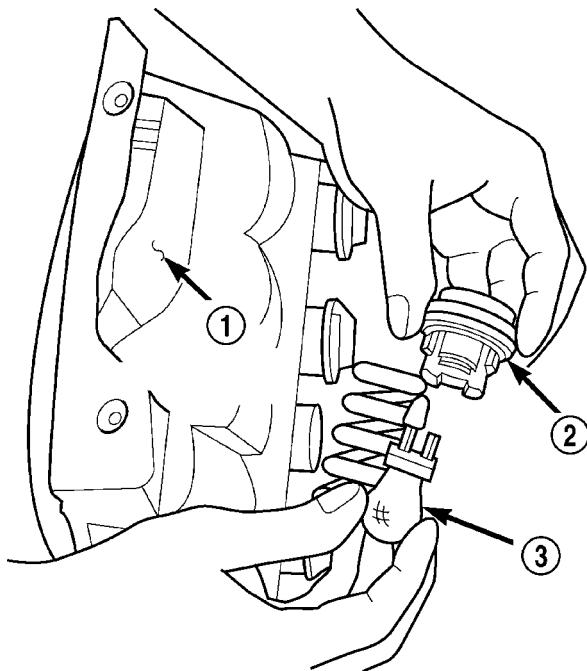
## REAR FOG LAMP (Continued)



80bc4e74

**Fig. 41 TAIL LAMP SOCKET REMOVAL - TYPICAL**

- 1 - LAMP BULB
- 2 - LAMP SOCKET
- 3 - TAIL LAMP ASSEMBLY



80bc4e75

**Fig. 42 TAIL LAMP BULB REMOVAL**

- 1 - TAIL LAMP ASSEMBLY
- 2 - LAMP SOCKET
- 3 - LAMP BULB

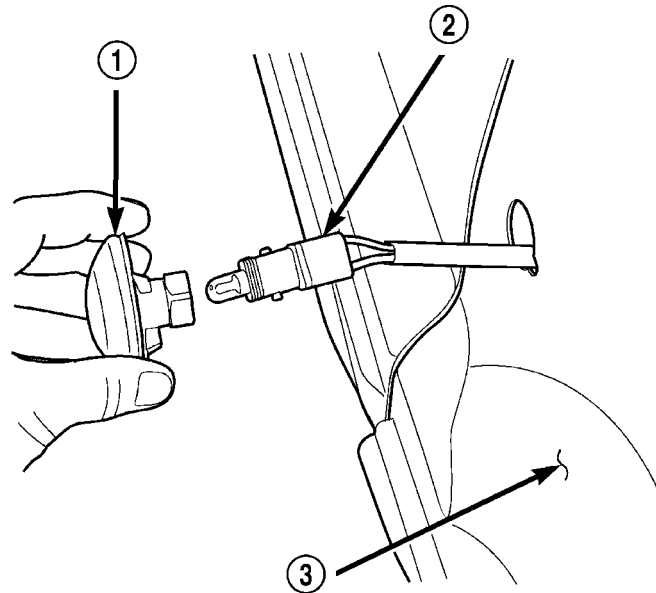
(3) Position the lamp housing and install the retaining screws.

(4) Close the vehicle liftgate

## SIDE REPEATER LAMP

## DESCRIPTION

Some vehicles are equipped with side turn signal repeater lamps (Fig. 43). One side repeater lamp can be found on each side of the vehicle just above the front wheel. The side repeater lamp utilizes an amber colored housing and clear bulb.



80bc4e61

**Fig. 43 SIDE TURN SIGNAL REPEATER LAMP**

- 1 - SIDE REPEATER LAMP HOUSING
- 2 - BULB SOCKET
- 3 - FRONT FENDER

## OPERATION

The side turn signal repeater lamps are turned on or off with the front and rear turn signal lamps. Therefore these lamps are controlled by the steering column mounted multi-function switch. Refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, details of wire harness routing and retention, connector pin-out information and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING

The following test is designed to diagnosis a faulty side repeater lamp. Refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, details of wire harness routing and retention, connector pin-out information and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

## SIDE REPEATER LAMP (Continued)

(1) Remove the side repeater lamp bulb and check for burned out condition, replace bulb if necessary.

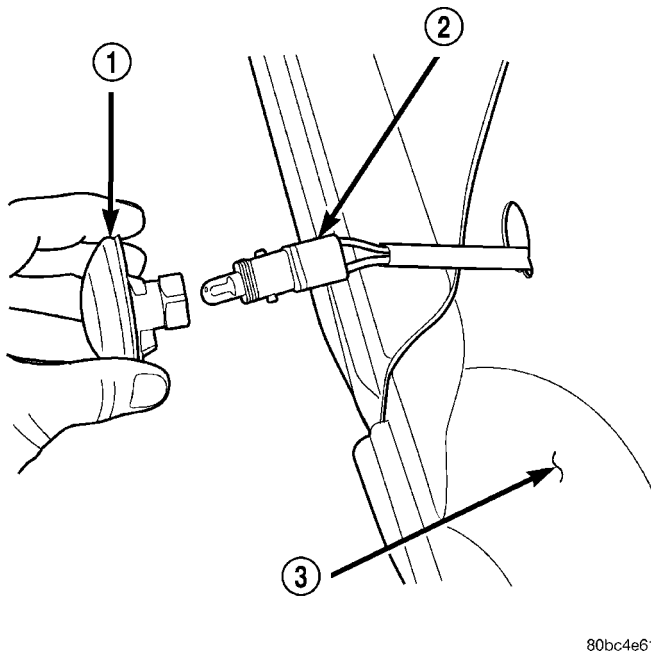
(2) If bulb appears OK, reinstall the bulb in its socket and rotate the ignition switch to the "ON" position. Turn the appropriate turn signal lamp "ON" and check for lamp operation. If lamp is still inoperative proceed to step #3.

(3) Remove lamp bulb and check for proper power (12v) and ground connections in lamp socket. If power and / or ground connections are not present, trace wire until open or short is found.

## REMOVAL - LAMP

(1) Working in the appropriate front wheel well, remove the rear-most fasteners from the front wheel-house liner.

(2) Reach up behind the side repeater lamp and depress the two lamp housing retaining tabs. Remove the lamp housing from the fender opening (Fig. 44).



**Fig. 44 SIDE TURN SIGNAL REPEATER LAMP**

- 1 - SIDE REPEATER LAMP HOUSING
- 2 - BULB SOCKET
- 3 - FRONT FENDER

(3) Rotate the side repeater lamp housing counter-clockwise and remove the lamp socket from the lamp housing (Fig. 44).

## TAIL LAMP

## DESCRIPTION

The taillamp module contains a housing, lens, and three bulbs. A dual filament bulb is used for tail and stop functions. A single filament bulb is used for turn

signal operations. A separate bulb is used for back-up illumination.

## OPERATION

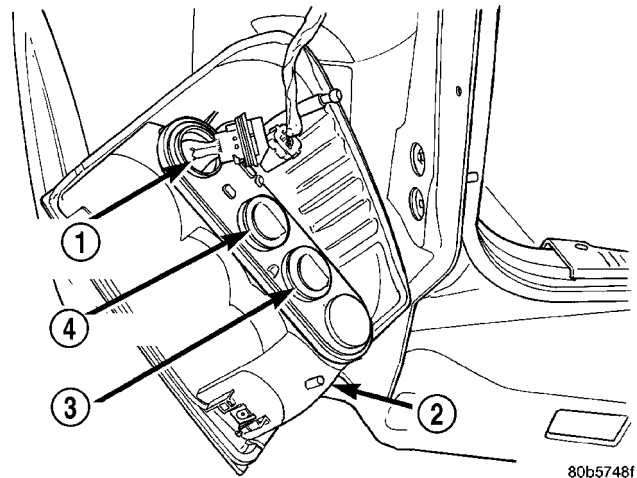
All exterior lighting function are controlled by the multifunction switch. Stop lamp functions are controlled by the stoplamp switch. The back-up lamps are controlled by the back-up lamp switch.

## REMOVAL

## REMOVAL - BULBS

The brake, turn signal, back-up, and side marker lamp bulbs are incorporated into the tail lamp.

- (1) Remove the tail lamp.
- (2) Rotate the bulb socket counterclockwise.
- (3) Separate the socket from the lamp
- (4) Remove the bulb from the socket (Fig. 45).



**Fig. 45 Tail Lamp Bulbs**

- 1 - TAIL/STOP BULB
- 2 - TAIL LAMP
- 3 - BACK-UP BULB
- 4 - TURN SIGNAL BULB

## REMOVAL - LAMP

The brake, turn signal, back-up, and side marker lamps are incorporated in the tail lamp.

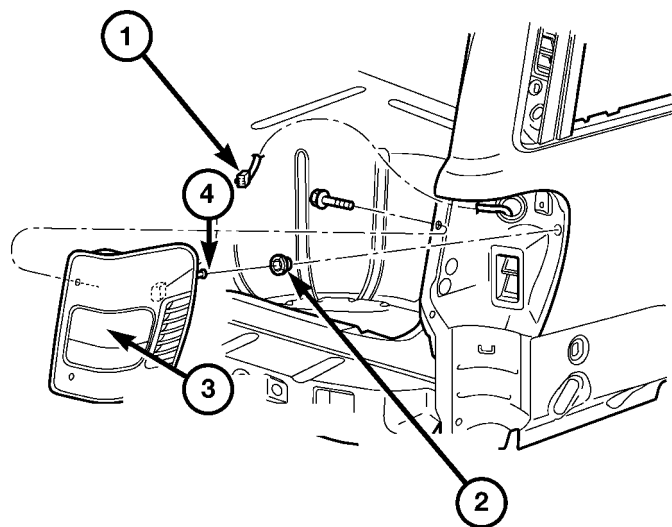
- (1) Remove the screws attaching the lamp to body (Fig. 46).
- (2) Disengage the lamp from the alignment pin.
- (3) Disconnect lamp wire harness connector.
- (4) Separate lamp from vehicle.

## INSTALLATION

## INSTALLATION - BULBS

- (1) Position the bulb in socket and push into place.
- (2) Position the bulb socket in the lamp and rotate clockwise.

## TAIL LAMP (Continued)



808c1def

**Fig. 46 Tail Lamp**

- 1 - CONNECTOR
- 2 - RETAINER
- 3 - TAILLAMP (STOP, TURN, BACK-UP, SIDE MARKER)
- 4 - PIN

(3) Install the lamp.

**INSTALLATION - LAMP**

The brake, turn signal, back-up, and side marker lamps are incorporated in the tail lamp.

- (1) Position the lamp.
- (2) Connect the lamp wire harness connector.
- (3) Align the pin with the retainer and press the lamp inward to engage.
- (4) Install the screws attaching the lamp to body.

**TURN SIGNAL CANCEL CAM****DESCRIPTION**

The turn signal cancel cam is concealed within the multi-function switch housing below the steering wheel and the clockspring mechanism. The turn signal cancel cam consists of a disc unit with two integral lobes. The upper lobe of the cam has an alignment hole that is used to align it with another hole in the back of the multi-function switch mounting housing. The upper surface of the turn signal cancel cam features three holes, two round and one oblong. These holes engage and key the cancel cam to three matching pins in the hub of the clockspring mechanism. The hub of the clockspring and the turn signal cancel cam rotate with the steering wheel. The centered clockspring housing is then secured to the

multi-function switch mounting housing over the top of the turn signal cancel cam.

The turn signal cancel cam is serviced as a assembly with the multi-function switch housing. The turn signal cancel cam cannot be repaired and, if faulty or damaged, the multi-function switch mounting housing unit must be replaced. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/LAMPS/LIGHTING - EXTERIOR/LEFT MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH - REMOVAL - MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH MOUNTING HOUSING).

**OPERATION**

The turn signal cancel cam has two lobes. When the turn signals are activated by moving the left multi-function switch control stalk to a detent position, a turn signal cancel actuator is extended from the inside surface of the multi-function switch housing toward the center of the steering column and the turn signal cancel cam. When the steering wheel is rotated during a turning maneuver, one of the two turn signal cancel cam lobes will contact the turn signal cancel actuator. The cancel actuator latches against the cancel cam rotation in the direction opposite that which is signaled.

**UNDERHOOD LAMP****REMOVAL****REMOVAL - BULB**

- (1) Insert a small flat blade in access slot between the lamp base and lamp lens.
- (2) Lift the lamp lens upward and remove the lamp lens (Fig. 47).
- (3) Depress bulb terminal inward (Fig. 48) to release bulb.

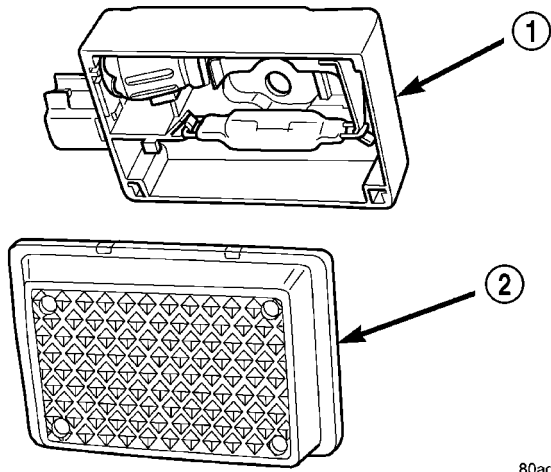
**REMOVAL - LAMP**

- (1) Disconnect the wire harness connector from lamp.
- (2) Remove the screw attaching underhood lamp to inner hood panel (Fig. 49).
- (3) Remove the underhood lamp from the vehicle.

**INSTALLATION****INSTALLATION - BULB**

- (1) Engage the replacement bulb wire loop to terminal closest to lamp base wire connector.
- (2) Depress the opposite terminal inward and engage the remaining bulb wire loop.
- (3) Position the lamp lens on the lamp base and press into place.

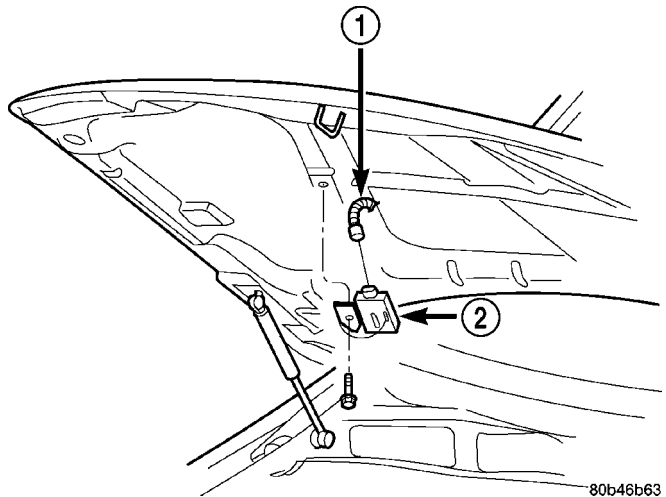
## UNDERHOOD LAMP (Continued)



80ad847e

**Fig. 47 Underhood Lamp Lens**

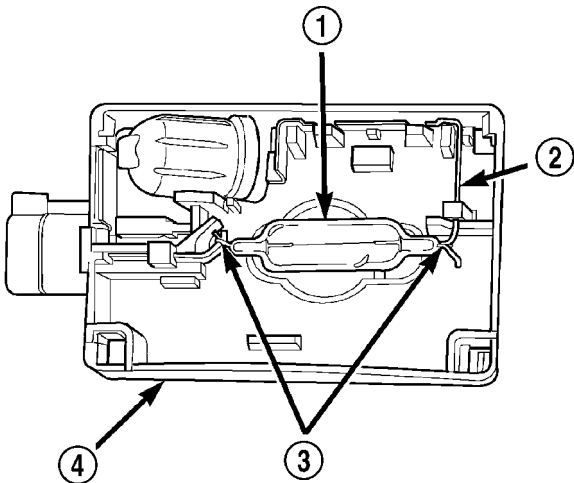
- 1 - LAMP  
2 - LAMP LENS



80b46b63

**Fig. 49 Underhood Lamp**

- 1 - CONNECTOR  
2 - UNDERHOOD LAMP



80add414

**Fig. 48 Underhood Lamp Bulb**

- 1 - BULB  
2 - DEPRESS TERMINAL INWARD  
3 - BULB WIRE LOOP  
4 - LAMP BASE

**INSTALLATION - LAMP**

- (1) Position the underhood lamp on the hood inner panel.
- (2) Install the screw attaching the lamp base to the inner hood panel.
- (3) Install the lamp housing and press into place.
- (4) Connect the wire harness connector.

## LAMPS/LIGHTING - INTERIOR

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>LAMPS/LIGHTING - INTERIOR</b>		DESCRIPTION - LIFTGATE AJAR SWITCH	40
SPECIFICATIONS		OPERATION	
BULB APPLICATION	38	OPERATION - DOOR AJAR SWITCH	40
<b>COURTESY LAMP</b>		OPERATION - FLIP UP GLASS AJAR SWITCH	40
REMOVAL		OPERATION - LIFTGATE AJAR SWITCH	40
REMOVAL - BULB	39	DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - DOOR AJAR SWITCH	40
REMOVAL - LAMP	39	<b>GLOVE BOX LAMP/SWITCH</b>	
INSTALLATION		REMOVAL	41
INSTALLATION - BULB	39	INSTALLATION	41
INSTALLATION - LAMP	39	<b>READING LAMP</b>	
<b>DOME LAMP</b>		DESCRIPTION	42
REMOVAL		OPERATION	42
REMOVAL - BULB	39	REMOVAL	42
REMOVAL - LAMP	39	INSTALLATION	42
INSTALLATION		<b>TRANS RANGE INDICATOR ILLUMINATION</b>	
INSTALLATION - BULB	39	DESCRIPTION	42
INSTALLATION - LAMP	39	<b>VANITY LAMP</b>	
<b>DOOR AJAR SWITCH</b>		REMOVAL	42
DESCRIPTION		INSTALLATION	42
DESCRIPTION - DOOR AJAR SWITCH	39		
DESCRIPTION - FLIP UP GLASS AJAR SWITCH	39		

## LAMPS/LIGHTING - INTERIOR

### SPECIFICATIONS

#### BULB APPLICATION

**CAUTION:** Do not use bulbs other than the bulbs listed in the Bulb Application Table. Damage to lamp can result.

Service procedures for most of the lamps in the instrument panel, are located in Electrical, Instrument Panel. Some components have lamps that can only be serviced by an Authorized Service Center (ASC) after the component is removed from the vehicle.

LAMP	BULB TYPE
A/C HEATER	NOT SERVICED
ASH RECEIVER	161
CLIMATE CONTROL	74
PASSENGER ASSIST HANDLE	214-2
FRONT READING	192
GLOVE COMPARTMENT	194
TELLTALE/HAZARD LAMP	74
HEATER	NOT SERVICED
OVERHEAD CONSOLE	192
RADIO	ASC
REAR CARGO	214-2
UNDER PANEL COURTESY	906
CLUSTER ILLUMINATION	103
SUNVISOR VANITY	CHRYSLER P/N 6501966



## COURTESY LAMP

### REMOVAL

#### REMOVAL - BULB

(1) Remove the door trim panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/TRIM PANEL - REMOVAL) for the service procedures.

- (2) Remove the bulb socket from the lamp.
- (3) Remove the bulb from the socket.

#### REMOVAL - LAMP

(1) Remove door trim panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/TRIM PANEL - REMOVAL) for the procedures.

- (2) Disengage the electrical connectors.
- (3) Depress the locking tabs and remove the lamp module.
- (4) Remove the bulb socket.

### INSTALLATION

#### INSTALLATION - BULB

- (1) Install the bulb in the socket.
- (2) Install the bulb socket in the lamp.
- (3) Install the door trim panel.

#### INSTALLATION - LAMP

- (1) Install the bulb socket into the lamp module.
- (2) Align the lamp module with the door trim panel.
- (3) Snap the lamp module into place.
- (4) Install the door panel.

## DOME LAMP

### REMOVAL

#### REMOVAL - BULB

- (1) Rotate the the grab handle down.
- (2) Remove the screws retaining the grab handle/dome lens.
- (3) Remove the grab handle/lens from the module.
- (4) Remove the bulb from the lamp terminals.

#### REMOVAL - LAMP

It will be necessary to partially remove the headliner to remove the bulb socket.

- (1) Remove the screws holding the grab handle/lens assembly to the headliner and roof panel.

(2) Lower the headliner as needed. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/HEADLINER - REMOVAL) for the service procedure.

(3) Separate the lamp socket from the headliner and roof panel.

- (4) Disconnect the wire connector.

### INSTALLATION

#### INSTALLATION - BULB

- (1) Insert the bulb into the lamp terminals.
- (2) Position the grab handle/lens on the lamp module.
- (3) Install the screws retaining the grab handle/lens to the lamp module.

#### INSTALLATION - LAMP

- (1) Position the lamp socket on the headliner and roof panel.
- (2) Connect the wire harness.
- (3) Install the headliner.
- (4) Position the grab handle/lens on the lamp module.
- (5) Install the screws retaining the grab handle/lens into the lamp socket.

## DOOR AJAR SWITCH

### DESCRIPTION

#### DESCRIPTION - DOOR AJAR SWITCH

The door ajar switches are integral to the door latch mechanism. The front door ajar switches are actuated by the front door latch mechanisms, and are hard wired between a body ground and the Driver Door Module (DDM) or the Passenger Door Module (PDM). The rear door ajar switches are actuated by the rear door latch mechanisms, and are hard wired between a body ground and the Body Control Module (BCM) through the rear door and body wire harnesses.

The door ajar switches cannot be adjusted or repaired and, if faulty or damaged, the door latch unit must be replaced. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/LATCH - REMOVAL) or (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOORS - REAR/LATCH - REMOVAL) for the service procedures. For complete circuit diagrams, refer to the appropriate wiring information.

#### DESCRIPTION - FLIP UP GLASS AJAR SWITCH

The liftgate flip-up glass ajar switch is integral to the liftgate flip-up glass latch mechanism. The liftgate flip-up glass ajar switch is actuated by the liftgate flip-up glass latch mechanism, and is hard

## DOOR AJAR SWITCH (Continued)

wired between a body ground, the Body Control Module (BCM) and the rear wiper motor module through the liftgate and body wire harnesses.

The liftgate flip-up glass ajar switch cannot be adjusted or repaired and, if faulty or damaged, the liftgate flip-up glass latch unit must be replaced. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DECKLID/HATCH/LIFTGATE/TAILGATE/FLIP-UP GLASS LATCH - REMOVAL) for the service procedures. For complete circuit diagrams, refer to the appropriate wiring information.

## DESCRIPTION - LIFTGATE AJAR SWITCH

The two liftgate ajar switches are integral to the two liftgate latch mechanisms. The two liftgate ajar switches are actuated by the liftgate latch mechanisms, and are hard wired with each other between a body ground and the Body Control Module (BCM) through the liftgate and body wire harnesses.

The liftgate ajar switches cannot be adjusted or repaired and, if faulty or damaged, the liftgate latch unit must be replaced. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DECKLID/HATCH/LIFTGATE/TAILGATE/LATCH - REMOVAL) for the service procedures. For complete circuit diagrams, refer to the appropriate wiring information.

## OPERATION

## OPERATION - DOOR AJAR SWITCH

The front door ajar switches close a path to ground for the DDM or the PDM when a front door is opened, and opens the ground path when a front door is closed. The rear door ajar switches close a path to ground for the BCM when a rear door is opened, and opens the ground path when a rear door is closed. The DDM, PDM, or BCM read the switch status then send the proper switch status messages to other modules over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network. The door ajar switch status message is used by the BCM as an input for Vehicle Theft Security System (VTSS) operation.

## OPERATION - FLIP UP GLASS AJAR SWITCH

The liftgate flip-up glass ajar switch can close a path to ground for the BCM and the rear wiper motor module when the liftgate flip-up glass is opened, and opens the ground path when the liftgate flip-up glass is closed. The rear wiper motor module uses the liftgate flip-up glass ajar switch input to control the rear wiper operation, and will park the rear wiper blade if this input indicates that the liftgate flip-up glass is ajar. The BCM reads the switch status then sends the proper switch status message to other modules over the Programmable Communi-

cations Interface (PCI) data bus network. The liftgate flip-up glass ajar switch status message is used by the BCM as an input for Vehicle Theft Security System (VTSS) operation.

## OPERATION - LIFTGATE AJAR SWITCH

Each of the liftgate ajar switches can close a path to ground for the BCM when the liftgate is opened, and opens the ground path when the liftgate is closed. The BCM reads the switch status then sends the proper switch status message to other modules over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network. The liftgate ajar switch status message is used by the BCM as an input for Vehicle Theft Security System (VTSS) operation.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - DOOR AJAR SWITCH

**The following diagnosis and testing is only for the chime functions. For interior lamp diagnosis, refer to the appropriate wiring information.** The driver door ajar switch is hard wired to the Driver Door Module (DDM). The DDM communicates the switch status to the other modules in the vehicle on the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network. The following test will diagnose a faulty driver door ajar switch and circuits. For complete circuit diagrams, refer to the appropriate wiring information.

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, REFER TO ELECTRICAL, RESTRAINTS BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Check that the interior lighting switch on the control stalk of the left multi-function switch is not in the dome lamp disable position. Open the driver side front door and note whether the interior lamps light. They should light. If OK, refer to Key-In Ignition Switch in the Diagnosis and Testing section of this group for further diagnosis of the chime warning system. If not OK, go to Step 2.

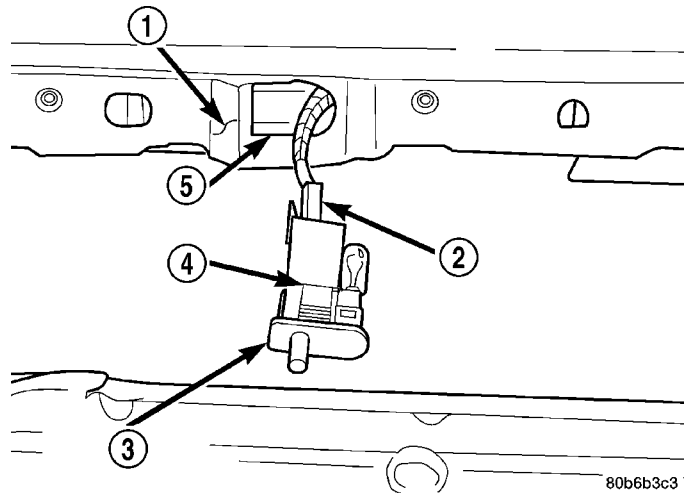
(2) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Remove the trim panel from the driver front door and disconnect the 4-way door wire harness connector from the front door latch connector. Check for continuity between the ground circuit of the 4-way door wire harness connector and a good ground. There should be continuity. If OK, go to Step 3. If not OK, repair the ground circuit.

## DOOR AJAR SWITCH (Continued)

(3) Disconnect the door wire harness connector from the Driver Door Module (DDM) connector. Check for continuity between the driver door ajar switch sense circuit of the door wire harness connector for the DDM and a good ground. There should be no continuity. If OK, go to Step 4. If not OK, repair the shorted driver door ajar switch sense circuit.

(4) Check for continuity between the driver door ajar switch sense circuit of the door wire harness connector for the DDM and the 4-way door wire harness connector for the front door latch. There should be continuity. If OK, go to Step 5. If not OK, repair the open driver door ajar switch sense circuit.

(5) Check for continuity between the ground circuit terminal and the driver door ajar switch sense circuit terminal of the front door latch connector. There should be continuity with the driver side front door open, and no continuity with the door closed. If OK, use a DRBIII® scan tool and the proper Diagnostic Procedures manual to test the operation of the PCI data bus and the DDM. If not OK, replace the faulty driver side front door latch unit.



**Fig. 1 Glove Box Lamp and Switch Remove/Install**

- 1 - GLOVE BOX OPENING UPPER REINFORCEMENT
- 2 - WIRE HARNESS CONNECTOR
- 3 - GLOVE BOX LAMP & SWITCH
- 4 - LATCH
- 5 - MOUNTING HOLE

## GLOVE BOX LAMP/SWITCH

## REMOVAL

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, REFER TO ELECTRICAL, RESTRAINTS BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Roll down the glove box from the instrument panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/GLOVE BOX - REMOVAL) for the procedures.

(3) Remove the lower right center bezel from the instrument panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL - REMOVAL) for the procedures.

(4) Reach through the glove box opening and depress the retaining latches on the top and bottom of the glove box lamp and switch housing.

(5) While holding the retaining latches depressed, push the glove box lamp and switch out through the mounting hole (Fig. 1).

(6) Disconnect the instrument panel wire harness connector from the glove box lamp and switch connector.

(7) Remove the glove box lamp and switch.

## INSTALLATION

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, REFER TO ELECTRICAL, RESTRAINTS BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Position the glove box lamp and switch to the instrument panel.

(2) Reconnect the instrument panel wire harness connector to the glove box lamp and switch connector.

(3) Align the glove box lamp and switch housing with the mounting hole in the instrument panel glove box opening upper reinforcement.

(4) Push the glove box lamp and switch into the mounting hole until the retaining latches are fully engaged.

(5) Install the lower right center bezel onto the instrument panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL - INSTALLATION) for the procedures.

(6) Roll the glove box back up into the instrument panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/GLOVE BOX - INSTALLATION) for the procedures.

(7) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

## READING LAMP

### DESCRIPTION

The overhead console in this vehicle is equipped with two individual reading and courtesy lamps. Each lamp has its own switch, bulb, reflector and lens; but both lamps share a common lamp housing within the overhead console.

The overhead console reading and courtesy lamps operate on battery current that is provided at all times, regardless of the ignition switch position. The ground feed for the lamps is switched through the integral reading and courtesy lamp switches or through the door jamb switches.

The reading and courtesy lamp lenses and the lamp housing and reflector unit are serviced only as a unit with the overhead console housing. The reading and courtesy lamp switches, bulb holders and wiring are only available as part of the overhead console wire harness.

For service of the reading and courtesy lamp bulbs, (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/LAMPS/LIGHTING - INTERIOR/READING LAMP - REMOVAL). For diagnosis of the reading and courtesy lamps, refer to the appropriate wiring information.

### OPERATION

All reading and courtesy lamps located in the overhead console are activated by the door jamb switches. When all of the doors are closed, these lamps can be individually activated by depressing the corresponding lens. When any door is open, depressing the lamp lenses to activate the lamp switches will not turn the lamps off.

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove the overhead console.
- (2) Rotate the console until the bulb is visible (Fig. 2).
- (3) Grasp the bulb and remove from the socket.

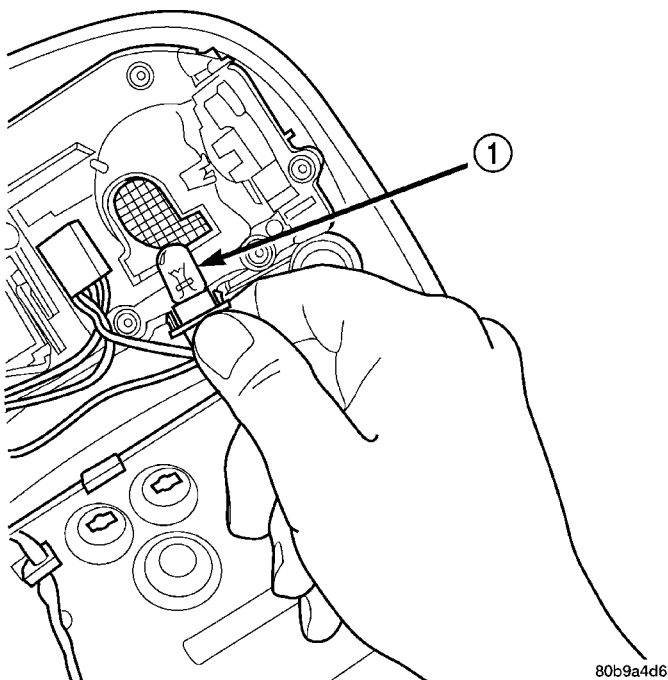
### INSTALLATION

- (1) Push the bulb into the bulb socket.
- (2) Install the console on the headliner and roof panel.
- (3) Align the screw hole and install the screw.

## TRANS RANGE INDICATOR ILLUMINATION

### DESCRIPTION

The Transmission Range Indicator Lamp, mounted on the floor console, uses electroluminescent technol-



**Fig. 2 Overhead Console Reading Lamp Bulb**

1 - BULB

ogy as the light source. This lamp requires a 120 volt AC signal that is provided by a power converter included as part of the assembly. The module is not serviceable separately. Because of a potential shock hazard, diagnostic testing of the lamp assembly should be avoided. Refer to TRANSMISSION, Range Selector Assembly Removal and Installation.

## VANITY LAMP

### REMOVAL

- (1) Fold down the visor.
- (2) Using a small flat blade, and staring at the base of the lamp assembly, carefully pry the base of the lamp from the visor.
- (3) Disconnect the vanity lamp visor and remove the lamp from the vehicle.

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Position the lamp at the visor and connect the wire connector.
- (2) Press the lamp in place.



MESSAGE SYSTEMS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>OVERHEAD CONSOLE</b>		<b>DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - ELECTRONIC</b>	
DESCRIPTION	1	VEHICLE INFORMATION CENTER	10
OPERATION	1	STANDARD PROCEDURE - TIRE PRESSURE	
STANDARD PROCEDURE		SYSTEM TEST	11
STANDARD PROCEDURE - MODULE LAMP		REMOVAL	11
REPLACEMENT	2	INSTALLATION	11
STANDARD PROCEDURE - COURTESY		<b>UNIVERSAL TRANSMITTER</b>	
LAMP REPLACEMENT	2	DESCRIPTION	12
STANDARD PROCEDURE - MODULE LENS		OPERATION	12
REPLACEMENT	2	DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - UNIVERSAL	
STANDARD PROCEDURE - ELECTRONIC		TRANSMITTER	12
VEHICLE INFORMATION CENTER		STANDARD PROCEDURE	
PROGRAMMING	2	STANDARD PROCEDURE - ERASING	
STANDARD PROCEDURE - COMPASS		TRANSMITTER CODES	12
DEMAGNETIZING	4	STANDARD PROCEDURE - SETTING	
STANDARD PROCEDURE - COMPASS		TRANSMITTER CODES	12
CALIBRATION	5	<b>AMBIENT TEMPERATURE SENSOR</b>	
STANDARD PROCEDURE - COMPASS		DESCRIPTION	13
VARIATION ADJUSTMENT	6	OPERATION	13
REMOVAL	6	DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	
INSTALLATION	7	DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - AMBIENT	
SPECIAL TOOLS		TEMPERATURE SENSOR	14
OVERHEAD CONSOLE SPECIAL TOOLS	7	DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - AMBIENT	
<b>ELECTRONIC VEHICLE INFO CENTER</b>		TEMPERATURE SENSOR CIRCUIT	14
DESCRIPTION	7	REMOVAL	14
OPERATION	9	INSTALLATION	14

OVERHEAD CONSOLE

DESCRIPTION

An overhead console is standard factory-installed equipment on this model. The overhead console includes the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) and two reading and courtesy lamps (Fig. 1). On vehicles equipped with a power sunroof option, the overhead console also houses the power sunroof switch between the two reading and courtesy lamps. The overhead console is mounted with one screw and two snap-clips to a molded plastic retainer bracket located above the headliner. The retainer bracket is secured with adhesive to the inside surface of the roof panel.

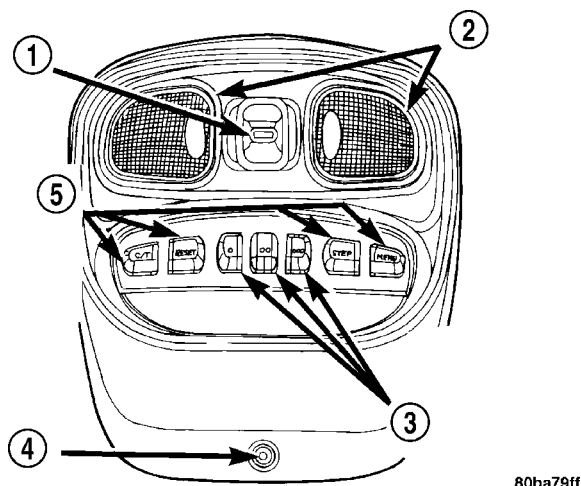
Following are general descriptions of the major components used in the overhead console. Refer to **Overhead Console** in Wiring Diagrams for complete circuit diagrams.

OPERATION

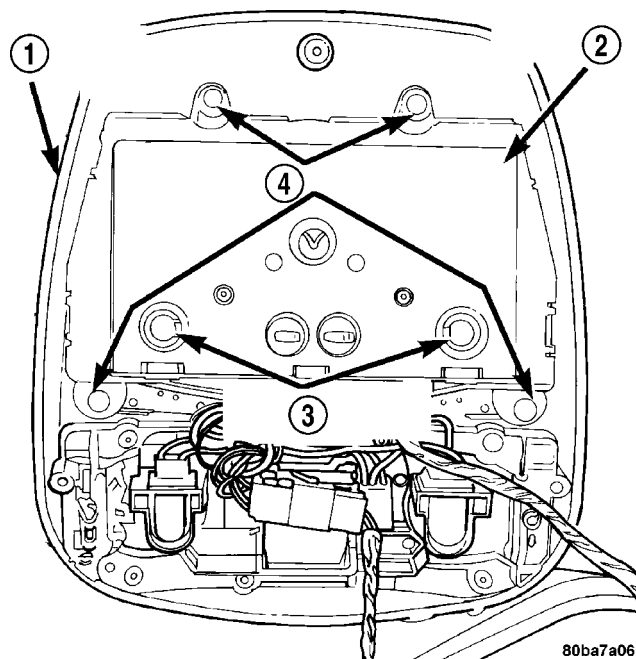
See the owner’s manual in the vehicle glove box for more information on the use and operation of the various overhead console features.



## OVERHEAD CONSOLE (Continued)

**Fig. 1 Overhead Console**

- 1 - POWER SUNROOF SWITCH (IF EQUIPPED)
- 2 - READING AND COURTESY LAMPS
- 3 - UNIVERSAL GARAGE DOOR OPENER PUSH BUTTONS (IF EQUIPPED)
- 4 - SCREW
- 5 - ELECTRONIC VEHICLE INFORMATION CENTER PUSH BUTTONS

**Fig. 2 Top of Overhead Console**

- 1 - OVERHEAD CONSOLE HOUSING
- 2 - EVIC MODULE
- 3 - ILLUMINATION LAMPS
- 4 - SCREWS (4)

## STANDARD PROCEDURE

**STANDARD PROCEDURE - MODULE LAMP REPLACEMENT**

(1) Remove the overhead console (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/OVERHEAD CONSOLE - REMOVAL).

(2) Using a flat blade screwdriver twist out socket/lamp (Fig. 2).

(3) Replace lamp(s) as necessary.

**STANDARD PROCEDURE - COURTESY LAMP REPLACEMENT**

(1) Open hood, disconnect and isolate the negative battery cable.

(2) Remove the overhead console from the headliner (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/OVERHEAD CONSOLE - REMOVAL).

(3) Remove the lamp and socket assembly from the overhead console.

(4) Remove the lamp bulb by pulling it straight out of its socket.

**STANDARD PROCEDURE - MODULE LENS REPLACEMENT**

(1) Remove the overhead console (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/OVERHEAD CONSOLE - REMOVAL).

(2) Remove the electronics module from the overhead console. Refer to the procedure in this section.

(3) Unsnap the lens from the module and replace lens as necessary.

**STANDARD PROCEDURE - ELECTRONIC VEHICLE INFORMATION CENTER PROGRAMMING****EVIC PROGRAMMING MODE**

The Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) provides the vehicle operator with a user interface, which allows the selection of several optional customer programmable electronic features to suit individual preferences. The EVIC must be placed into its programming mode in order to view or change the programmable features. To enter the EVIC programming mode and to view or change the selected programmable features options, proceed as follows:

(1) Turn the ignition switch to the On position.

(2) Depress and release the Menu push button. The first item in the programmable features menu list will appear in the EVIC display.

(3) Momentarily depress and release the Menu push button to step through the programmable features list. Each programmable feature and its currently selected option will appear on the EVIC display in the sequence shown in the Programmable Features list that follows.

(4) Momentarily depress and release the Step push button to step through the available options for the programmable feature being displayed.

(5) The option that last appears in the display with a programmable feature before exiting the pro-

## OVERHEAD CONSOLE (Continued)

gramming mode, becomes the newly selected programmable feature option.

(6) The EVIC exits the programming mode and returns to its normal operating mode when the C/T push button is depressed or when the end of the programmable features menu list is reached, whichever occurs first.

**PROGRAMMABLE FEATURES**

- **LANGUAGE?** - The options include English, Francaise, Deutsch, Italiana, or Espanol. The default is English. All EVIC display nomenclature, including the trip computer functions, warning messages and the programmable features appear in the selected language.

- **DISPLAY U.S. OR METRIC?** - The options include U.S. and M. The default is U.S. This feature toggles the trip computer temperature, fuel economy and odometer display readings between U.S. and metric units of measure. It also changes the odometer display in the instrument cluster.

- **AUTO DOOR LOCKS?** - The options include Yes and No. The default is Yes. When Yes is selected, all doors and the liftgate lock automatically when vehicle speed reaches 25 kilometers-per-hour (15 miles-per-hour). If YES is selected, a second programmable feature appears, **AUTO UNLOCK ON EXIT?** - The options again include Yes and No. The default is No. When Yes is selected, following each Auto Door Lock event all doors and the liftgate will automatically unlock when the driver door is opened, if the vehicle is stopped and the transmission gear selector is in Park or Neutral. The Auto Door Unlock event will only occur once following each Auto Door Lock event.

- **REMOTE UNLOCK** - The options include Driver Door 1st and All Doors. The default is Driver Door 1st. When Diver Door 1st is selected, only the driver door unlocks when the Unlock button of the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter is depressed once. The Unlock button of the RKE transmitter must be depressed twice to unlock all doors and the liftgate. When All Doors is selected, all doors and the liftgate unlock when the Unlock button of the RKE transmitter is depressed once.

- **REMOTE LINKED TO MEMORY?** - This programmable feature only applies to vehicles equipped with the optional memory system. The options include Yes and No. The default is No. When Yes is selected, the memory system will recall the Driver 1 or Driver 2 memory settings assigned to the RKE transmitter being used to unlock the vehicle. When No is selected, the memory system will only recall memory settings when the Driver 1 or Driver 2 push buttons of the memory switch on the driver side front door trim panel are depressed.

- **SOUND HORN ON LOCK?** - The options include Yes and No. The default is No. When Yes is selected, a short horn chirp will provide an audible confirmation when the RKE receiver recognizes a valid Lock signal from an RKE transmitter. When No is selected, no horn chirp will occur with the RKE Lock event. This feature may be selected independent of the **FLASH LIGHTS WITH LOCKS?** programmable feature.

- **FLASH LIGHTS WITH LOCKS?** - The options include Yes and No. The default is Yes. When Yes is selected, a single flash of the hazard warning lamps will provide an optical confirmation when the RKE receiver recognizes a valid Lock signal from an RKE transmitter, and two flashes of the same lamps will occur when the RKE receiver recognizes a valid Unlock signal from an RKE transmitter. When No is selected, no lamp flash will occur with the RKE Lock or Unlock event. This feature may be selected independent of the **SOUND HORN ON LOCK?** programmable feature.

- **HEADLAMP DELAY** = - The options include Off, 30 Sec, 60 Sec, and 90 Sec. The default is 90 Sec. When a time interval is selected, the headlamps will remain on for that length of time when the headlamps are turned off after the ignition is turned off, or if the Auto mode is selected on vehicles with the Auto Headlamps option. When Off is selected, the headlamp delay feature is disabled.

- **HEADLAMPS ON WITH WIPERS?** - This programmable feature only applies to vehicles equipped with the optional Auto Headlamps. The options include Yes and No. The default is No. When Yes is selected, the headlamps will turn on automatically when the windshield wipers are turned on. The headlamps will turn off when the wipers are turned off, as long as the headlamp switch is in the Auto or Off positions. When No is selected, the headlamps will only turn on if manually selected or if the Auto mode is selected and the outside ambient light levels dictate that they should be on.

- **SERVICE INTV.** = - The options include from 3200 to 12000 kilometers in 800 kilometer increments (2000 to 6000 miles in 500 mile increments). The default is 12000 kilometers (6000 miles), except diesel engine equipped vehicles which will default to 20000 kilometers (12,500 miles). The selected distance becomes the interval at which the Perform Service warning message will be displayed by the EVIC. If a new distance is selected, a second programmable feature appears, **RESET SERVICE DISTANCE?** - The options include No and Yes. The default is Yes. When Yes is selected, the accumulated distance since the last previous Perform Service warning message will be reset to zero because the service interval has been changed. When No is selected, the distance

## OVERHEAD CONSOLE (Continued)

until the next Perform Service warning message is reduced by the accumulated distance since the last previous message.

- **LOW FUEL CHIME?** - The options include Yes and No. The default is Yes. When Yes is selected, a single chime will sound as an audible alert whenever the instrument cluster low fuel warning lamp lights. The chime will sound only once per ignition cycle. When No is selected, only the low fuel warning lamp in the instrument cluster will light and no chime will sound.

- **RETRAIN TIRE SENSORS?** - This programmable feature only applies to vehicles equipped with the optional tire pressure monitoring system. The options include Yes and No. The default is No. When Yes is selected and the menu button is depressed, the EVIC will enter the training mode starting with the left front tire. A training magnet is required to retrain the tire pressure sensors.

- **EASY EXIT SEAT?** - This programmable feature only applies to vehicles equipped with the optional memory system. The options include Yes and No. The default is No. When Yes is selected, the driver seat moves rearward about 55 millimeters (two inches) or to the farthest rearward position, whichever comes first, when the key is removed from the ignition switch lock cylinder. This provides additional ease for exiting from the vehicle. The seat will automatically return to the memory system setting position when the Driver 1 or Driver 2 button of the memory switch on the door panel is depressed or, if the **REMOTE LINKED TO MEMORY** programmable feature is enabled, when the RKE Unlock button is depressed. While not automatic, an easy entry feature can be obtained by enabling the **EASY EXIT SEAT** feature and disabling the **REMOTE LINKED TO MEMORY** feature. Then the **EASY EXIT SEAT** feature will move the seat back, but the RKE unlock event will not reposition the seat. Thus, the seat remains positioned for easy entry, and the memory switch on the door panel can be depressed after entering the vehicle to return the seat to the desired memory position.

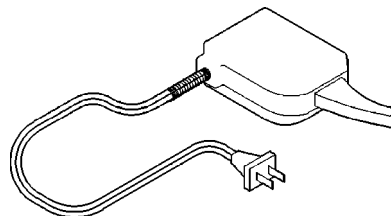
## STANDARD PROCEDURE - COMPASS DEMAGNETIZING

A degaussing tool (Special Tool 6029) is used to demagnetize, or degauss, the overhead console forward mounting screw and the roof panel above the overhead console. Equivalent units must be rated as continuous duty for 110/115 volts and 60 Hz. They must also have a field strength of over 350 gauss at 7 millimeters (0.25 inch) beyond the tip of the probe.

To demagnetize the roof panel and the overhead console forward mounting screw, proceed as follows:

(1) Be certain that the ignition switch is in the Off position, before you begin the demagnetizing procedure.

(2) Connect the degaussing tool (Fig. 3) to an electrical outlet, while keeping the tool at least 61 centimeters (2 feet) away from the compass unit.



**Fig. 3 Degaussing Tool 6029**

(3) Slowly approach the head of the overhead console forward mounting screw with the degaussing tool connected.

(4) Contact the head of the screw with the plastic coated tip of the degaussing tool for about two seconds.

(5) With the degaussing tool still energized, slowly back it away from the screw. When the tip of the tool is at least 61 centimeters (2 feet) from the screw head, disconnect the tool.

(6) Place a piece of paper approximately 22 by 28 centimeters (8.5 by 11 inches), oriented on the vehicle lengthwise from front to rear, on the center line of the roof at the windshield header (Fig. 4). The purpose of the paper is to protect the roof panel from scratches, and to define the area to be demagnetized.

(7) Connect the degaussing tool to an electrical outlet, while keeping the tool at least 61 centimeters (2 feet) away from the compass unit.

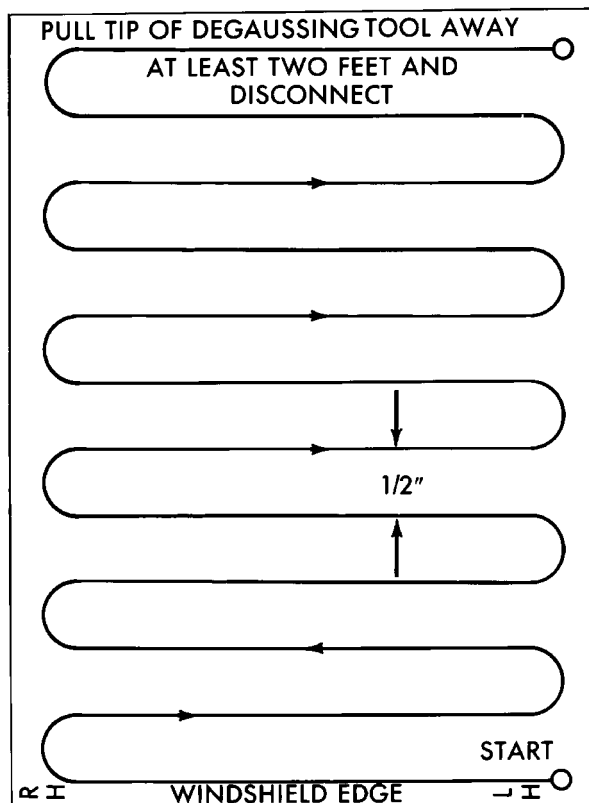
(8) Slowly approach the center line of the roof panel at the windshield header, with the degaussing tool connected.

(9) Contact the roof panel with the plastic coated tip of the degaussing tool. Be sure that the template is in place to avoid scratching the roof panel. Using a slow, back-and-forth sweeping motion, and allowing 13 millimeters (0.50 inch) between passes, move the tool at least 11 centimeters (4 inches) to each side of the roof center line, and 28 centimeters (11 inches) back from the windshield header.

(10) With the degaussing tool still energized, slowly back it away from the roof panel. When the tip of the tool is at least 61 centimeters (2 feet) from the roof panel, disconnect the tool.

(11) Calibrate the compass and adjust the compass variance (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/OVERHEAD CONSOLE - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

## OVERHEAD CONSOLE (Continued)



J908E-27

*Fig. 4 Roof Demagnetizing Pattern***STANDARD PROCEDURE - COMPASS CALIBRATION**

**CAUTION:** Do not place any external magnets, such as magnetic roof mount antennas, in the vicinity of the compass. Do not use magnetic tools when servicing the overhead console.

The electronic compass unit features a self-calibrating design, which simplifies the calibration procedure. This feature automatically updates the compass calibration while the vehicle is being driven. This allows the compass unit to compensate for small

changes in the residual magnetism that the vehicle may acquire during normal use. If the compass readings appear to be erratic or out of calibration, perform the following calibration procedure. Also, new service replacement Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) modules must have their compass calibrated using this procedure. Do not attempt to calibrate the compass near large metal objects such as other vehicles, large buildings, or bridges; or, near overhead or underground power lines.

**NOTE:** Whenever an EVIC module is replaced, the variance number must also be reset. Refer to Compass Variation Adjustment in this group.

Calibrate the compass manually as follows:

- (1) Turn the ignition switch to the On position. If the compass/temperature data is not currently being displayed, momentarily depress and release the C/T push button to reach the compass/temperature display.
- (2) Depress the Reset push button and hold the button down until "CAL" appears in the display. This takes about ten seconds, and appears about five seconds after "VARIANCE = XX" is displayed.
- (3) Release the Reset push button.
- (4) Drive the vehicle on a level surface, away from large metal objects and power lines, through one complete circle at between five and eight kilometers-per-hour (three and five miles-per-hour) in not less than 20 seconds. The "CAL" message will disappear from the display to indicate that the compass is now calibrated.

**NOTE:** If the "CAL" message remains in the display, either there is excessive magnetism near the compass, or the unit is faulty. Repeat the calibration procedure one more time.

**NOTE:** If the wrong direction is still indicated in the compass display, the area selected for calibration may be too close to a strong magnetic field. Repeat the calibration procedure in another location.



## OVERHEAD CONSOLE (Continued)

**STANDARD PROCEDURE - COMPASS  
VARIATION ADJUSTMENT**

Compass variance, also known as magnetic declination, is the difference in angle between magnetic north and true geographic north. In some geographic locations, the difference between magnetic and geographic north is great enough to cause the compass to give false readings. If this problem occurs, the compass variance setting may need to be changed.

To set the compass variance:

- (1) Using the Variance Settings map, find your geographic location and note the zone number (Fig. 5).
- (2) Turn the ignition switch to the On position. If the compass/temperature data is not currently being displayed, momentarily depress and release the C/T push button to reach the compass/temperature display.
- (3) Depress the Reset push button and hold the button down until "VARIANCE = XX" appears in the display. This takes about five seconds.
- (4) Release the Reset push button. "VARIANCE = XX" will remain in the display. "XX" equals the current variance zone setting.
- (5) Momentarily depress and release the Step push button to step through the zone numbers, until the zone number for your geographic location appears in the display.

(6) Momentarily depress and release the Reset push button to enter the displayed zone number into the EVIC module memory.

(7) Confirm that the correct directions are now indicated by the compass.

**REMOVAL**

- (1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.
- (2) Remove the screw that secures the front of the overhead console to the front of the overhead console retainer bracket.
- (3) Insert the fingertips of both hands between the headliner and the sides of the overhead console housing in the area near the reading and courtesy lamps.
- (4) Pull downward on the sides of the overhead console housing firmly and evenly to disengage the two snap clips that secure the rear of the unit from their receptacles in the overhead console retainer bracket.
- (5) Lower the overhead console from the headliner far enough to access the wire harness connectors.
- (6) Disconnect the roof wire harness connectors from the Electronic Vehicle Information Center connector receptacle, the reading and courtesy lamp wire harness connector and, if the vehicle is so equipped, from the back of the power sunroof switch.
- (7) Remove the overhead console from the headliner.

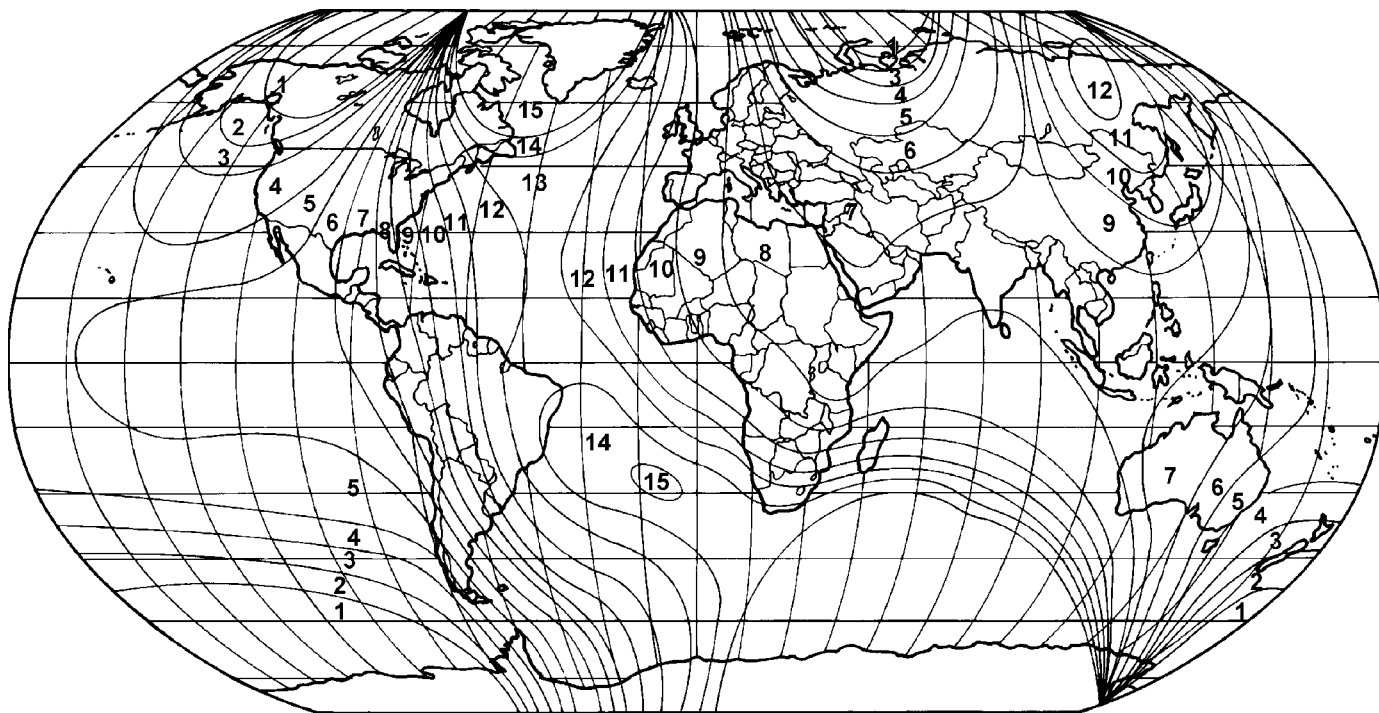


Fig. 5 Variance Settings



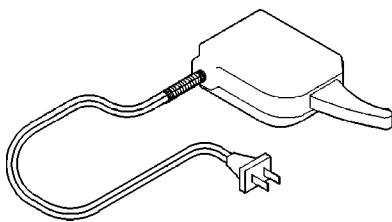
## OVERHEAD CONSOLE (Continued)

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Position the overhead console near the mounting location on the headliner.
- (2) Reconnect the roof wire harness connectors to the Electronic Vehicle Information Center connector receptacle, the reading and courtesy lamp wire harness connector and, if the vehicle is so equipped, to the back of the power sunroof switch.
- (3) Align the two snap clips on the rear of the overhead console housing with their receptacles in the overhead console retainer bracket.
- (4) Push upward firmly and evenly on the sides of the overhead console housing over both of the snap clip locations until each of the two snap clips is fully engaged with its receptacle in the overhead console retainer bracket.
- (5) Install and tighten the screw that secures the front of the overhead console housing to the overhead console retainer bracket. Tighten the screw to 1.2 N·m (10 in. lbs.).
- (6) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

## SPECIAL TOOLS

## OVERHEAD CONSOLE SPECIAL TOOLS



DEGAUSSING TOOL #6029

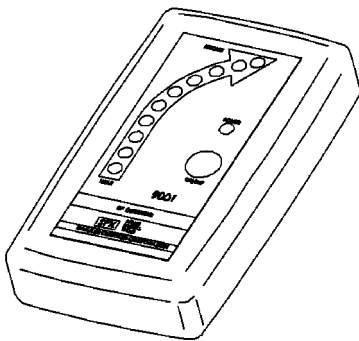


Fig. 6 RADIO FREQUENCY DETECTOR #9001

## ELECTRONIC VEHICLE INFO CENTER

## DESCRIPTION

The Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) is located in the overhead console on models

equipped with this option. Three versions of the EVIC module are available on the Grand Cherokee. These three versions are identical except that some models include an integral three-push button Universal Transmitter transceiver and/or Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPM). All three EVIC modules feature a large Vacuum Fluorescent Display (VFD) screen for displaying information, and back-lit push buttons function switches labeled C/T (compass/temperature), RESET, STEP, and MENU. The VFD screen can also display a vehicle graphic that is used for door and liftgate open indications and to show if a turn signal has been left on. The EVIC messages and displays are coordinated with warning indicators in the instrument cluster to avoid duplication.

The EVIC module contains a central processing unit and interfaces with other electronic modules in the vehicle over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network. The PCI data bus network allows the sharing of sensor information. This helps to reduce wire harness complexity, reduce internal controller hardware, and reduce component sensor current loads. At the same time, this system provides increased reliability, enhanced diagnostics, and allows the addition of many new feature capabilities.

The EVIC module includes the following display options:

- **Compass and Temperature** - provides the outside temperature and one of eight compass readings to indicate the direction the vehicle is facing.
- **Average fuel economy** - shows the average fuel economy since the last trip computer reset.
- **Distance to empty** - shows the estimated distance that can be travelled with the fuel remaining in the fuel tank. This estimated distance is computed using the average miles-per-gallon from the last 30 gallons of fuel used.
- **Trip distance** - shows the distance travelled since the last trip computer reset.
- **Elapsed time** - shows the accumulated ignition-on time since the last trip computer reset.
- **Distance to service** - shows the distance remaining until the next scheduled service interval.
- **Tire Pressure** - shows the tire pressure in each tire except the spare.
- **Tire Pressure Unavailable** - shows that there is external interference affecting the proper operation of the tire pressure monitoring system.
- **Tire Pressure Now Available** - shows that the source of external interference is no longer present and the tire pressure monitoring system is now operating normally.
- **Tire Sensor Bad/Missing** - shows that a tire pressure sensor is faulty (not transmitting) or is missing from the vehicle.

## ELECTRONIC VEHICLE INFO CENTER (Continued)

- **Spare Swap Detected** - shows that the spare tire is now installed on the vehicle and the tire pressure monitoring system recognizes the new tire as an active wheel.

- **Remove Magnet From Spare** - shows that the training magnet was left on the spare tire after training was completed.

- **Blank screen** - the EVIC compass/temperature/trip computer VFD is turned off.

The EVIC is capable of displaying the following alert messages, which are accompanied by an audible announcement consisting of a series of beeps:

- **TURN SIGNALS ON (with vehicle graphic)** - Indicates that a turn signal has remained on for about 1.6 kilometers (one mile).

- **PERFORM SERVICE** - Indicates that a customer programmable service interval distance has been reached.

- **DOOR OPEN (one or more, with vehicle graphic)** - Indicates that a door is open or not fully closed.

- **LIFTGATE OPEN (with vehicle graphic)** - Indicates that the liftgate is open or not fully closed.

- **LIFTGLASS OPEN (with vehicle graphic)** - Indicates that the liftglass is open or not fully closed.

- **COOLANT LEVEL LOW (with vehicle graphic)** - Indicates that the coolant level in the engine coolant reservoir is low.

- **XX LOW PRESSURE (with vehicle graphic)** - Indicates that the air pressure in the selected tire is low.

- **WASHER FLUID LOW (with vehicle graphic)** - Indicates that the fluid level in the washer fluid reservoir is low.

The EVIC "Menu" push button provides the vehicle operator with a user interface, which allows the selection of several optional customer programmable electronic features to suit individual preferences. Refer to **ELECTRONIC VEHICLE INFORMATION CENTER PROGRAMMING** in the Service Procedures section of this group for more information on the customer programmable feature options.

If the vehicle is equipped with the optional memory system, the EVIC will display the following memory system messages:

- **MEMORY #X POSITION SET (X = Driver 1 or Driver 2)** - This message appears in the EVIC display each time the memory system is successfully programmed. It is accompanied by an audible announcement chime tone.

- **MEMORY SYSTEM DISABLED** - The memory system is automatically disabled while the driver side seat belt is fastened and/or while the automatic transmission gear selector is in any position except Park or Neutral. This message appears in the EVIC display as a reminder when a memory switch push

button is depressed while the memory system is disabled. If the REMOTE LINKED TO MEMORY customer programmable feature has been selected, this message will also appear when the Unlock button of the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter is depressed while the memory system is disabled.

If the vehicle is equipped with the optional Universal Transmitter transceiver, the EVIC will also display messages and an icon indicating when the Universal Transmitter is being trained, which of the three transmitter buttons is transmitting, and when the transceiver is cleared.

If the vehicle is equipped with the optional **Tire Pressure Monitoring System**, the EVIC will also display messages and an icon indicating when the tire air pressure falls below or exceeds a given set-point, which of the four tires is transmitting the low/high pressure warning, and when the condition is cleared. Refer to the Tires/Wheels section of this manual for complete Tire Pressure Monitoring System description. Refer to this section of the service manual for EVIC modules function description for the Tire Pressure Monitoring.

Data input for all EVIC functions, including VFD dimming level, is received through PCI data bus messages. The EVIC module uses its internal programming and all of its data inputs to calculate and display the requested data. If the data displayed is incorrect, perform the self-diagnostic tests as described in this group. If these tests prove inconclusive, the use of a DRBIII® scan tool and the proper Diagnostic Procedures manual are recommended for further testing of the EVIC module and the PCI data bus.

The EVIC module cannot be repaired, and is available for service only as a unit. This unit includes the push button switches and the plastic housed module. If any of these components are faulty or damaged, the complete EVIC module must be replaced. The incandescent bulbs used for EVIC push button backlighting and the display lens are available for service replacement.

## ELECTRONIC VEHICLE INFORMATION CENTER CHIME

The Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) uses the chime warning system for two different kinds of support. In addition to requesting chime tones from the Body Control Module (BCM) as tactile beep support, the EVIC is programmed to send chime request messages over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus when it detects the following conditions:

- **Door Open Warning** - A door is open above a critical speed [about 16 kilometers-per-hour (10 miles-per-hour) for the driver side front door, or

## ELECTRONIC VEHICLE INFO CENTER (Continued)

about 5 kilometers-per-hour (3 miles-per-hour) for any other door].

- **Liftgate Open Warning** - The liftgate is open above a critical speed [about 5 kilometers-per-hour (3 miles-per-hour)].

- **Liftglass Open Warning** - The liftgate flip-up glass is open above a critical speed [about 5 kilometers-per-hour (3 miles-per-hour)].

- **Low Coolant Level Warning** - The coolant level in the engine coolant reservoir is low.

- **Perform Service Alert** - An audible alert that a "Perform Service" reminder message is being displayed by the EVIC.

- **Turn Signal On Warning** - A turn signal remains on for about 1.6 kilometers (one mile).

- **Washer Fluid Low Warning** - The fluid level in the washer reservoir is low.

See the owner's manual in the vehicle glove box for more information on the features, use and operation of the EVIC. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/OVERHEAD CONSOLE/ELECTRONIC VEHICLE INFO CENTER - DESCRIPTION) for more information on the EVIC.

## COMPASS

While in the compass/temperature mode, the compass will display the direction in which the vehicle is pointed using the eight major compass headings (Examples: north is N, northeast is NE). The self-calibrating compass unit requires no adjusting in normal use. The only calibration that may prove necessary is to drive the vehicle in one circle at 5 to 8 kilometers-per-hour (3 to 5 miles-per-hour), on level ground, in not less than 20 seconds. This will reorient the compass unit to its vehicle.

The compass unit also will compensate for magnetism the body of the vehicle may acquire during normal use. However, avoid placing anything magnetic directly on the roof of the vehicle. Magnetic mounts for an antenna, a repair order hat, or a funeral procession flag can exceed the compensating ability of the compass unit if placed on the roof panel. Magnetic bit drivers used on the fasteners that hold the overhead console assembly to the roof header can also affect compass operation. If the vehicle roof should become magnetized, the demagnetizing and calibration procedures found in this group may be required to restore proper compass operation.

## TEMPERATURE

The outside ambient temperature is displayed in whole degrees. The temperature display can be toggled from Fahrenheit to Celsius by selecting the desired U.S./Metric option from the customer programmable features as described in **ELECTRONIC VEHICLE INFORMATION CENTER PROGRAMMING** in the Standard Procedures section of this

group. The displayed temperature is not an instant reading of conditions, but an average temperature. It may take the temperature display several minutes to respond to a major temperature change, such as driving out of a heated garage into winter temperatures.

When the ignition switch is turned to the Off position, the last displayed temperature reading stays in the Body Control Module (BCM) unit memory. When the ignition switch is turned to the On position again, the EVIC will display the memory temperature for one minute; then update the display to the current average temperature reading within five minutes.

The temperature function is supported by an ambient temperature sensor. The sensor is mounted outside the passenger compartment near the front and center of the vehicle, and is hard wired to the Body Control Module (BCM). The BCM sends temperature status messages to the EVIC module over the PCI data bus network. The ambient temperature sensor is available as a separate service item.

## OPERATION

The EVIC has access to both non-switched and ignition switched sources of battery current so that some of its features remain operational at any time, while others may only operate with the ignition switch in the On position. When the ignition switch is turned to the On position, the EVIC module VFD will return to the last function being displayed before the ignition was turned to the Off position.

The compass/temperature display is the normal EVIC display. With the ignition switch in the On position, momentarily depressing and releasing the C/T (compass/temperature) push button switch will cause the EVIC to return to the compass/temperature/trip computer display mode from any other mode. While in the compass/temperature/trip computer display mode, momentarily depressing and releasing the Step push button will step through the available trip computer display options.

The EVIC trip computer features several functions that can be reset. The functions that can be reset are: average fuel economy, trip odometer and elapsed time. With the ignition switch in the On position and with one of the functions of the trip computer that can be reset currently displayed, depressing the Reset push button twice within three seconds will perform a global reset, and all of the trip computer information that can be reset will be reset to zero. With the ignition switch in the On position and the function that is to be reset currently displayed, depressing and releasing the Reset push button once for three seconds will perform a local reset, and only the value of the displayed function will be reset to zero. A global or local reset will only occur if the



## ELECTRONIC VEHICLE INFO CENTER (Continued)

function currently displayed is a function that can be reset. The distance to service function can also be reset using the local reset method, but it will reset back to the Service Interval distance that is set in the EVIC programmable features mode. Refer to **ELECTRONIC VEHICLE INFORMATION CENTER PROGRAMMING** in the Service Procedures section of this group for more information on setting the Service Interval.

For more information on the features, control functions and setting procedures for the EVIC module, see the owner's manual in the vehicle glove box.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - ELECTRONIC VEHICLE INFORMATION CENTER

If the problem with the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) is a temperature reading of 130° F or -40°F shown in the compass/temperature display, refer to **Ambient Temperature Sensor Diagnosis and Testing** in this group. If the problem with the EVIC is an inaccurate or scrambled display, refer to **Self-Diagnostic Test** in this group. If the problem with the EVIC is incorrect Vacuum Fluorescent Display (VFD) dimming levels, use a DRB® scan tool and the proper Diagnostic Procedures manual to test for the correct dimming message inputs being received from the Body Control Module (BCM) over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus. If the problem is a no-display condition, use the following procedures. For complete circuit diagrams, refer to **Overhead Console** in Wiring Diagrams.

(1) Check the fused B(+) fuse in the junction block. If OK, go to Step 2. If not OK, repair the shorted circuit or component as required and replace the faulty fuse.

(2) Check for battery voltage at the fused B(+) fuse in the junction block. If OK, go to Step 3. If not OK, repair the open fused B(+) circuit to the fused B(+) fuse in the PDC as required.

(3) Check the fused ignition switch output (run/start) fuse in the junction block. If OK, go to Step 4. If not OK, repair the shorted circuit or component as required and replace the faulty fuse.

(4) Turn the ignition switch to the On position. Check for battery voltage at the fused ignition switch output (run/start) fuse in the junction block. If OK, go to Step 5. If not OK, repair the open fused ignition switch output (run/start) circuit to the ignition switch as required.

(5) Turn the ignition switch to the Off position. Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Remove the overhead console. Check for continuity between the ground circuit cavity of the roof wire harness connector for the EVIC module and a good ground. There should be continuity. If OK, go to Step

6. If not OK, repair the open ground circuit to ground as required.

(6) Connect the battery negative cable. Check for battery voltage at the fused B(+) circuit cavity of the roof wire harness connector for the EVIC module. If OK, go to Step 7. If not OK, repair the open fused B(+) circuit to the fused B(+) fuse in the junction block as required.

(7) Turn the ignition switch to the On position. Check for battery voltage at the fused ignition switch output (run/start) circuit cavity of the roof wire harness connector for the EVIC module. If OK, refer to **Self-Diagnostic Test** below for further diagnosis of the EVIC module and the PCI data bus. If not OK, repair the open fused ignition switch output (run/start) circuit to the fuse in the junction block as required.

## SELF-DIAGNOSTIC TEST

A self-diagnostic test is used to determine that the EVIC module is operating properly, and that all PCI data bus messages are being received for initial operation. Initiate the self-diagnostic test as follows:

(1) With the ignition switch in the Off position, simultaneously depress and hold the C/T button and the Reset button.

(2) Turn the ignition switch to the On position.

(3) Continue to hold both buttons depressed until the EVIC software version information is displayed, then release both buttons.

(4) Following completion of these tests, the EVIC module will display one of the following messages:

a. **Pass Self Test** - Momentarily depress and release the Reset button to return to the compass/temperature/trip computer display mode. The EVIC module is working properly.

b. **Failed Self Test** - The EVIC module has an internal failure. The EVIC module is faulty and must be replaced.

c. **Not Receiving J1850 Message** - The EVIC module is not receiving proper message input through the PCI data bus. This can result from one or more faulty electronic modules in the vehicle, or from a faulty PCI data bus. The use of a DRB scan tool and the proper Diagnostic Procedures manual are required for further diagnosis.

**NOTE:** If the compass functions, but accuracy is suspect, it may be necessary to perform a variation adjustment. This procedure allows the compass unit to accommodate variations in the earth's magnetic field strength, based on geographic location. Refer to **Compass Variation Adjustment** in the **Standard Procedures** section of this group.

## ELECTRONIC VEHICLE INFO CENTER (Continued)

**NOTE:** If the compass reading displays a blank, and only "CAL" appears in the display, demagnetizing may be necessary to remove excessive residual magnetic fields from the vehicle. Refer to Compass Demagnetizing in the Standard Procedures section of this group.

## STANDARD PROCEDURE - TIRE PRESSURE SYSTEM TEST

**NOTE:** The DRB III® Scan Tool can be used to select a four or five tire pressure monitoring system.

The following test can be used to verify two functions. One, that the tire pressure sensors are transmitting properly and two, the EVIC module is receiving these transmissions accordingly.

(1) Retrain the tire sensors (Refer to 22 - TIRES/WHEELS/TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING/SENSOR - STANDARD PROCEDURE). The tire sensors must be retrained in order to set the proper transmitting time cycle (twice a minute), failure to retrain the sensors will cause a much slower transmitting time cycle (once a minute).

(2) Using the STEP button on the overhead console, scroll to the blank display, then press the RESET button for five seconds, a beep will sound indicating the start of this test. The vehicle icon and transmission counters will now be displayed, (same display as individual tire pressure except counters replace tire pressure values).

(3) Upon entering the test mode, the EVIC will clear the sensor counter and each time a sensor signal for a road tire is received, the EVIC will update the counter value (vehicle must be driven at 25 mph to transmit). The counter values should all read close to the same value ( $\pm 5$ ), except for the spare tire counter. If any of the road tires display a difference of more than five, this is a sign of a problem. Replace the appropriate tire sensor and retest the system. This test will continue until any of the overhead console buttons are pressed or the ignition is turned off.

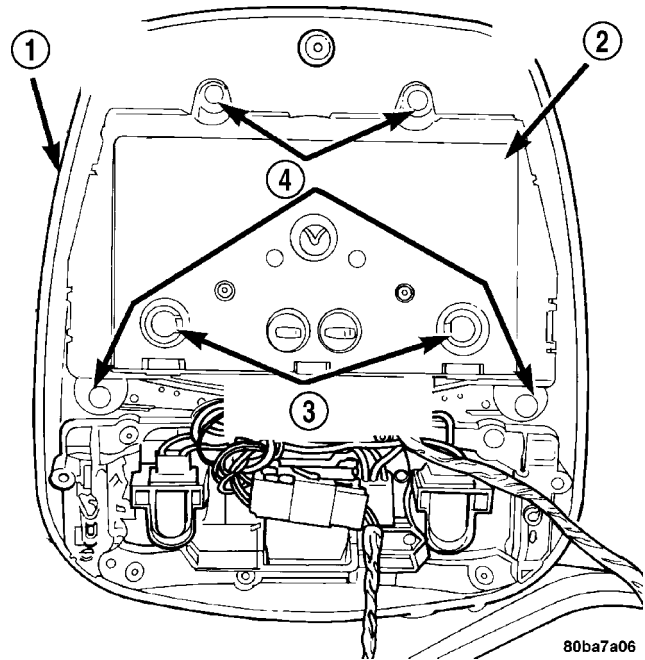
**NOTE:** Pressing the RESET button during the test will sound a beep and reset all the counter values back to zero.

## REMOVAL

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Remove the overhead console from the headliner (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/OVERHEAD CONSOLE - REMOVAL).

(3) Remove the four screws that secure the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) module to the overhead console housing (Fig. 7).



**Fig. 7 Top of Overhead Console**

- 1 - OVERHEAD CONSOLE HOUSING
- 2 - EVIC MODULE
- 3 - ILLUMINATION LAMPS
- 4 - SCREWS (4)

(4) Remove the EVIC module from the overhead console housing.

## INSTALLATION

(1) Position the EVIC module onto the overhead console housing.

(2) Install and tighten the four screws that secure the EVIC module to the overhead console housing. Tighten the screws to 0.9 N·m (8 in. lbs.).

(3) Install the overhead console onto the headliner (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/OVERHEAD CONSOLE - INSTALLATION).

(4) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

**NOTE:** If a new EVIC module has been installed, the compass will have to be calibrated and the variance set. Refer to Compass Variation Adjustment and Compass Calibration in the Service Procedures section of this group for the procedures.

**NOTE:** If the vehicle is equipped with the Tire Pressure Monitoring (TPM) System, and the overhead console electronics module is removed or replaced, the TPM system will need to be retrained. Refer to the Tires/Wheels section of this manual for the procedure.



## UNIVERSAL TRANSMITTER

### DESCRIPTION

The Grand Cherokee Limited model has a Universal Garage Door Opener (UGDO) transceiver as standard factory-installed equipment. The UGDO is optional on Laredo models. The UGDO transceiver is integral to the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC), which is located in the overhead console. The only visible component of the UGDO are the three transmitter push buttons centered between the four EVIC push buttons located just rearward of the EVIC display screen in the overhead console. The three UGDO transmitter push buttons are identified with one, two or three dots so that they be easily identified by sight.

Each of the three UGDO transmitter push buttons controls an independent radio transmitter channel. Each of these three channels can be trained to transmit a different radio frequency signal for the remote operation of garage door openers, motorized gate openers, home or office lighting, security systems or just about any other device that can be equipped with a radio receiver in the 288 to 410 MegaHertz (MHz) frequency range for remote operation. The UGDO is capable of operating systems using either rolling code or non-rolling code technology.

The EVIC module displays messages and a small house-shaped icon with one, two or three dots corresponding to the three transmitter buttons to indicate the status of the UGDO. The EVIC messages are:

- **Clearing Channels** - Indicates that all of the transmitter codes stored in the UGDO are being cleared.
- **Cleared Channels** - Indicates that all of the transmitter codes stored in the UGDO have been successfully cleared.
- **Training** - Indicates that the UGDO is in its transmitter learning mode.
- **Trained** - Indicates that the UGDO has successfully acquired a new transmitter code.
- **Did Not Train** - Indicates that UGDO failed to acquire a new transmitter code.
- **Transmit** - Indicates that a trained UGDO transmitter button has been depressed and that the UGDO is transmitting.

The UGDO cannot be repaired, and is available for service only as a unit with the EVIC module. This unit includes the push button switches and the plastic module. If any of these components are faulty or damaged, the complete EVIC module must be replaced.

### OPERATION

The universal transmitter operates on a non-switched source of battery current so the unit will

remain functional, regardless of the ignition switch position. For more information on the features, programming procedures and operation of the universal transmitter, see the owner's manual in the vehicle glove box.

### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - UNIVERSAL TRANSMITTER

If the Universal Transmitter is inoperative, but the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) is operating normally, see the owner's manual in the vehicle glove box for instructions on training the Transmitter. Retrain the Transmitter with a known good transmitter as instructed in the owner's manual and test the Transmitter operation again. If the unit is still inoperative, test the universal transmitter with Radio Frequency Detector special tool (Fig. 8). If both the Transmitter and the EVIC module are inoperative, refer to **Electronic Vehicle Information Center Diagnosis and Testing** in this group for further diagnosis. For complete circuit diagrams, refer to **Wiring Diagrams**, as described below:

- (1) Turn the Radio Frequency (RF) Detector ON. A "chirp" will sound and the green power LED will light. If the green LED does not light, replace the battery.
- (2) Hold the RF detector within one inch of the TRAINED universal transmitter and press any of the transmitters buttons.
- (3) The red signal detection LEDs will light and the tool will beep if a radio signal is detected. Repeat this test three times.

### STANDARD PROCEDURE

#### STANDARD PROCEDURE - ERASING TRANSMITTER CODES

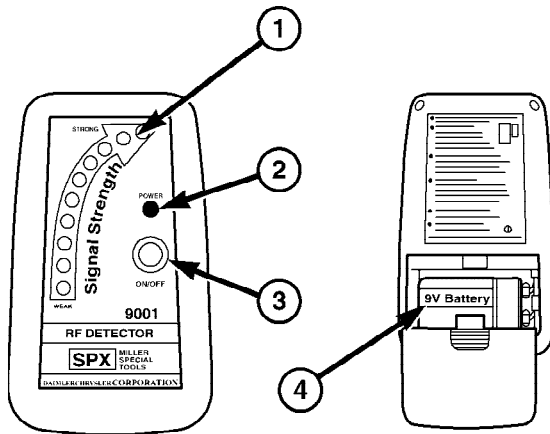
To erase the universal transmitter codes, simply hold down the two outside buttons (1 and 3) for twenty seconds.

**NOTE:** Individual channels cannot be erased. Erasing the transmitter codes will erase ALL programmed codes.

#### STANDARD PROCEDURE - SETTING TRANSMITTER CODES

- (1) Turn off the engine.
- (2) Erase the factory test codes by pressing the two outside buttons for twenty seconds.
- (3) Choose one of the three buttons to train. Place the hand-held transmitter within one inch of the universal transmitter and push the buttons on both transmitters. The display will indicate training.

## UNIVERSAL TRANSMITTER (Continued)



80f230cb

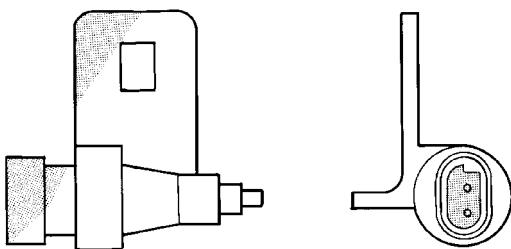
**Fig. 8 RADIO FREQUENCY DETECTOR**

- 1 - SIGNAL DETECTION LED'S
- 2 - POWER LED
- 3 - ON/OFF SWITCH
- 4 - 9V BATTERY

(4) When the universal transmitter has completed the training, the "Trained" message will be displayed and an audible beep tone will be sounded. The universal transmitter is now "trained". To train the other buttons, repeat Step 3 and Step 4. Be certain to keep the hand-held transmitter in case you need to retrain the universal transmitter.

## AMBIENT TEMPERATURE SENSOR

### DESCRIPTION



938C-10

**Fig. 9 Ambient Temperature Sensor**

Ambient air temperature is monitored by the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) through ambient temperature messages received from the

Body Control Module (BCM) over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network. The BCM receives a hard wired input from the ambient temperature sensor (Fig. 9). The ambient temperature sensor is a variable resistor mounted to a bracket that is secured with a screw to the right side of the headlamp mounting module grille opening, behind the radiator grille and in front of the engine compartment.

Refer to **Body Control Module** in Electronic Control Modules. For complete circuit diagrams, refer to the appropriate wiring information. The ambient temperature sensor cannot be adjusted or repaired and, if faulty or damaged, it must be replaced.

### OPERATION

The ambient temperature sensor is a variable resistor that operates on a five-volt reference signal sent to it by the BCM. The resistance in the sensor changes as temperature changes, changing the temperature sensor signal circuit voltage to the BCM. Based upon the resistance in the sensor, the BCM senses a specific voltage on the temperature sensor signal circuit, which it is programmed to correspond to a specific temperature. The BCM then sends the proper ambient temperature messages to the EVIC over the PCI data bus.

The temperature function is supported by the ambient temperature sensor, a wiring circuit, the Body Control Module (BCM), the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus, and a portion of the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) module. If any portion of the ambient temperature sensor circuit fails, the BCM will self-diagnose the circuit. A temperature reading of 130° F will appear in the EVIC display in place of the temperature when the sensor circuit is shorted. A temperature reading of -40° F will appear in the EVIC display in place of the temperature when the sensor circuit is open.

The ambient temperature sensor circuit can also be diagnosed by referring to **Diagnosis and Testing - Ambient Temperature Sensor**, and **Diagnosis and Testing - Ambient Temperature Sensor Circuit**. If the temperature sensor and circuit are confirmed to be OK, but the temperature display is inoperative or incorrect, refer to **Diagnosis and Testing - Electronic Vehicle Information Center** in this group. For complete circuit diagrams, refer to the appropriate wiring information.

## AMBIENT TEMPERATURE SENSOR (Continued)

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - AMBIENT TEMPERATURE SENSOR

(1) Turn the ignition switch to the Off position. Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Disconnect the ambient temperature sensor wire harness connector.

(2) Measure the resistance of the ambient temperature sensor. At  $-40^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $-40^{\circ}\text{F}$ ), the sensor resistance is 336.6 kilohms. At  $60^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $140^{\circ}\text{F}$ ), the sensor resistance is 2.49 kilohms. The sensor resistance should read between these two values. If OK, refer to **Diagnosis and Testing - Ambient Temperature Sensor Circuit** in this group. If not OK, replace the faulty ambient temperature sensor.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - AMBIENT TEMPERATURE SENSOR CIRCUIT

(1) Turn the ignition switch to the Off position. Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Disconnect the 2-way ambient temperature sensor wire harness connector and the 22-way Body Control Module (BCM) wire harness connector.

(2) Connect a jumper wire between the two terminals in the body half of the 2-way ambient temperature sensor wire harness connector.

(3) Check for continuity between the sensor return circuit and the ambient temperature sensor signal circuit cavities of the 22-way BCM wire harness connector. There should be continuity. If OK, go to Step 4. If not OK, repair the open sensor return circuit or ambient temperature sensor signal circuit to the ambient temperature sensor as required.

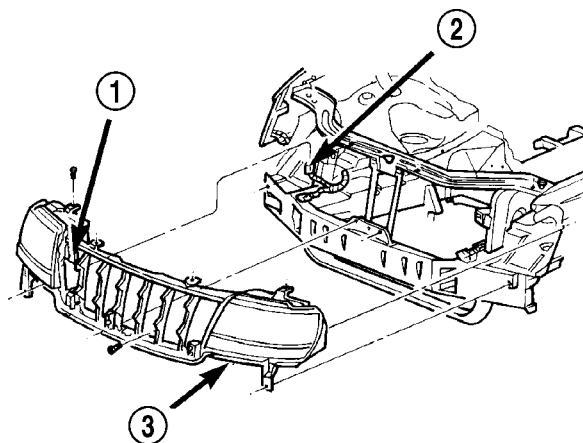
(4) Remove the jumper wire from the body half of the 2-way ambient temperature sensor wire harness connector. Check for continuity between the sensor return circuit cavity of the 22-way BCM wire harness connector and a good ground. There should be no continuity. If OK, go to Step 5. If not OK, repair the shorted sensor return circuit as required.

(5) Check for continuity between the ambient temperature sensor signal circuit cavity of the 22-way BCM wire harness connector and a good ground. There should be no continuity. If OK, refer to **Diagnosis and Testing - Electronic Vehicle Information Center** in this group. If not OK, repair the shorted ambient temperature sensor signal circuit as required.

## REMOVAL

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Locate the ambient temperature sensor, on the right side of the radiator opening in the headlamp mounting module, behind the grille (Fig. 10).



80ba7a07

**Fig. 10 AMBIENT TEMPERATURE SENSOR**

- 1 - AMBIENT TEMPERATURE SENSOR
- 2 - WIRE HARNESS CONNECTOR
- 3 - HEADLAMP MOUNTING MODULE

(3) Remove the radiator grille fascia and insert from the headlamp mounting module. Refer to Body for the procedures.

(4) Disconnect the wire harness connector from the ambient temperature sensor connector receptacle.

(5) Remove the one screw that secures the ambient temperature sensor bracket to the headlamp mounting module.

(6) Remove the ambient temperature sensor from the headlamp mounting module.

## INSTALLATION

(1) Position the ambient temperature sensor onto the headlamp mounting module.

(2) Install and tighten the one screw that secures the ambient temperature sensor bracket to the headlamp mounting module. Tighten the screw to 2.2 N·m (20 in. lbs.).

(3) Reconnect the wire harness connector to the ambient temperature sensor connector receptacle.

(4) Install the radiator grille fascia and insert onto the headlamp mounting module. Refer to the Body section of this manual for the procedures.

(5) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

POWER SYSTEMS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
POWER LOCKS .....	1	POWER SEAT SYSTEM.....	18
POWER MIRRORS .....	11	POWER WINDOWS.....	34

POWER LOCKS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>POWER LOCKS</b>		OPERATION .....	7
DESCRIPTION		<b>POWER LOCK MOTOR</b>	
DESCRIPTION - POWER LOCK SYSTEM .....	1	DESCRIPTION .....	7
DESCRIPTION - REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY		OPERATION .....	7
SYSTEM .....	2	DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - POWER LOCK	
DESCRIPTION - LIFTGATE FLIP-UP GLASS		MOTOR .....	8
POWER RELEASE SYSTEM .....	4	<b>POWER LOCK SWITCH</b>	
OPERATION		DESCRIPTION .....	8
OPERATION - POWER LOCK SYSTEM .....	4	OPERATION .....	8
OPERATION - REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY		<b>REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY MODULE</b>	
SYSTEM .....	5	DESCRIPTION .....	9
OPERATION - LIFTGATE FLIP-UP GLASS		OPERATION .....	9
POWER RELEASE SYSTEM .....	5	<b>REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY TRANSMITTER</b>	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING		DESCRIPTION .....	9
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - POWER LOCK		OPERATION .....	9
SYSTEM .....	5	DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - REMOTE	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - REMOTE		KEYLESS ENTRY TRANSMITTER .....	9
KEYLESS ENTRY SYSTEM .....	6	STANDARD PROCEDURE	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - LIFTGATE		STANDARD PROCEDURE - RKE	
FLIP-UP GLASS POWER RELEASE		TRANSMITTER PROGRAMMING.....	10
SYSTEM .....	6	STANDARD PROCEDURE - RKE	
<b>DOOR CYLINDER LOCK SWITCH</b>		TRANSMITTER BATTERIES.....	10
DESCRIPTION .....	7		

POWER LOCKS

DESCRIPTION

DESCRIPTION - POWER LOCK SYSTEM

A power operated door and liftgate lock system is standard factory-installed equipment on this model. The power lock system allows all of the doors and the liftgate to be locked or unlocked electrically by operating a switch on either front door trim panel. The power lock system receives non-switched battery feed

through a fuse in the Power Distribution Center (PDC), so that the power locks remain operational, regardless of the ignition switch position.

The power lock system for this vehicle also has a door lock inhibit feature, which prevents the power lock system from being energized with a power door lock switch if a front door is open with the key in the ignition. However, the locks can still be operated manually, with a key, energized with the RKE transmitter or by sliding the door lock lever to the appropriate position.



## POWER LOCKS (Continued)

This vehicle also offers several customer programmable features, which allows the selection of several optional electronic features to suit individual preferences. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/OVERHEAD CONSOLE/ELECTRONIC VEHICLE INFO CENTER - DESCRIPTION). Customer programmable feature options affecting the power door lock system include:

- **Auto Door Locks** - Automatically locks all of the vehicle doors and the liftgate when the vehicle reaches a speed of about 24 kilometers-per-hour (15 miles-per-hour) with 10% throttle tip-in.

- **Auto Unlock on Exit** - Automatically unlocks all of the vehicle doors and the liftgate when the driver side front door is opened, if the vehicle is stopped and the transmission gear selector is in the Park or Neutral positions. This feature is linked to the Auto Door Locks feature, and will only occur one time following each Auto Door Lock event.

The power lock system for this vehicle can also be operated remotely using the standard equipment Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) system radio frequency transmitters. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/POWER LOCKS - DESCRIPTION - REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY SYSTEM).

The components of the power lock system include:

- **Driver Door Module (DDM)**
- **Passenger Door Module (PDM)**
- **PCI Bus Messages**
- **Power Lock Motors**

Certain functions and features of the power lock system rely upon resources shared with other electronic modules in the vehicle over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network. The PCI data bus network allows the sharing of sensor information. This helps to reduce wire harness complexity, internal controller hardware, and component sensor current loads. At the same time, this system provides increased reliability, enhanced diagnostics, and allows the addition of many new feature capabilities. For proper diagnosis of these electronic modules or of the PCI data bus network, the use of a DRBIII® scan tool and the appropriate diagnostic information are required.

The other electronic modules that may affect power lock system operation are as follows:

- **Body Control Module (BCM)** - (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/ELECTRONIC CONTROL MODULES/BODY CONTROL/CENTRAL TIMER MODULE - DESCRIPTION).

- **Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)** - (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/OVERHEAD CONSOLE/ELECTRONIC VEHICLE INFO CENTER - DESCRIPTION).

- **Powertrain Control Module (PCM)** - (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/ELECTRONIC CONTROL

MODULES/POWERTRAIN CONTROL MODULE - DESCRIPTION).

Hard wired circuitry connects the power lock system components to the electrical system of the vehicle. These hard wired circuits are integral to several wire harnesses, which are routed throughout the vehicle and retained by many different methods. These circuits may be connected to each other, to the vehicle electrical system and to the power lock system components through the use of a combination of soldered splices, splice block connectors, and many different types of wire harness terminal connectors and insulators. Refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, further details on wire harness routing and retention, as well as pin-out and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

## DESCRIPTION - REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY SYSTEM

A Radio Frequency (RF) type Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) system is standard factory-installed equipment on this model. The RKE system allows the use of a remote battery-powered radio transmitter to control the power lock system. The RKE receiver operates on non-switched battery current through a fuse in the Power Distribution Center (PDC), so that the system remains operational, regardless of the ignition switch position.

In addition to Lock and Unlock buttons, the RKE transmitters are also equipped with a Panic button. If the Panic button on the RKE transmitter is depressed, the horn will sound and the exterior lights will flash on the vehicle for about three minutes, or until the Panic button is depressed a second time, if ignition is in the Off position. A vehicle speed of about 24 kilometers-per-hour (15 miles-per-hour) will also cancel the panic event.

The RKE system can also perform other functions on this vehicle. If the vehicle is equipped with the optional Vehicle Theft Security System (VTSS), the RKE transmitter will arm the VTSS when the Lock button is depressed, and disarm the VTSS when the Unlock button is depressed. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/VEHICLE THEFT SECURITY - DESCRIPTION - VEHICLE THEFT SECURITY SYSTEM). If the vehicle is equipped with the optional Memory System, each of the two numbered and color-coded RKE transmitters can be used to recall the stored driver side front seat position, both outside power rear view mirror positions, and the radio station presets for the two assigned drivers. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/POWER SEATS - DESCRIPTION - MEMORY SYSTEM).



## POWER LOCKS (Continued)

The RKE system includes two transmitters when the vehicle is shipped from the factory, but the system can retain the vehicle access codes of up to four transmitters. The transmitter codes are retained in the RKE receiver memory, even if the battery is disconnected. If an RKE transmitter is faulty or lost, new transmitter vehicle access codes can be programmed into the system using a DRBIII® scan tool and the appropriate diagnostic information.

This vehicle also offers several customer programmable features, which allows the selection of several optional electronic features to suit individual preferences. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/OVERHEAD CONSOLE/ELECTRONIC VEHICLE INFO CENTER - DESCRIPTION). Customer programmable feature options affecting the RKE system include:

- **Remote Unlock** - Allows the option of having only the driver side front door unlock when the RKE transmitter Unlock button is depressed the first time and the remaining doors and the liftgate unlock when the button is depressed a second time, or having all doors and the liftgate unlock upon the first depression of the RKE transmitter Unlock button.
- **Remote Linked to Memory** - If the vehicle is equipped with the Memory System, this feature allows the option of having the RKE transmitter Unlock button activate the recall of the stored settings, or having the recall function assigned solely to the memory switch on the driver side front door trim panel.
- **Sound Horn on Lock** - Allows the option of having the horn sound a short chirp as an audible verification that the doors have locked, or having no audible verification.
- **Flash Lights with Lock** - Allows the option of having the lights flash as an optical verification that the doors have locked, or having no optical verification.

This group covers the following components of the RKE system:

- **RKE Receiver**
- **RKE Transmitter**

Certain functions and features of the RKE system rely upon resources shared with other electronic modules in the vehicle over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network. The PCI data bus network allows the sharing of sensor information. This helps to reduce wire harness complexity, internal controller hardware, and component sensor current loads. At the same time, this system provides increased reliability, enhanced diagnostics, and allows the addition of many new feature capabilities. For diagnosis of these electronic modules or of the PCI data bus network, the use of a DRBIII® scan tool and the appropriate diagnostic information are required.

The other electronic modules that may affect RKE system operation are as follows:

- **Body Control Module (BCM)** - (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/ELECTRONIC CONTROL MODULES/BODY CONTROL/CENTRAL TIMER MODULE - DESCRIPTION).
- **Driver Door Module (DDM)** - (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/ELECTRONIC CONTROL MODULES/DOOR MODULE - DESCRIPTION).
- **Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)** - (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/OVERHEAD CONSOLE/ELECTRONIC VEHICLE INFO CENTER - DESCRIPTION).
- **Passenger Door Module (PDM)** - (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/ELECTRONIC CONTROL MODULES/DOOR MODULE - DESCRIPTION).
- **Powertrain Control Module (PCM)** - (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/ELECTRONIC CONTROL MODULES/POWERTRAIN CONTROL MODULE - DESCRIPTION).

Hard wired circuitry connects the RKE system components via the PDM to the electrical system of the vehicle. These hard wired circuits are integral to several wire harnesses, which are routed throughout the vehicle and retained by many different methods. These circuits may be connected to each other, to the vehicle electrical system and to the RKE system components through the use of a combination of soldered splices, splice block connectors, and many different types of wire harness terminal connectors and insulators. Refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, further details on wire harness routing and retention, as well as pin-out and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

## COMBINATION FLASHER

The combination flasher is a smart relay that functions as both the turn signal system and the hazard warning system flasher. The combination flasher contains active electronic Integrated Circuitry (IC) elements. This flasher can be energized by the BCM to flash all of the park/turn signal/front side marker lamps as an optical alert for the RKE panic function and, if the Flash Lights with Lock programmable feature is enabled, as an optical verification for the RKE lock event. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/LAMPS/LIGHTING - EXTERIOR/COMBINATION FLASHER - DESCRIPTION).

## HORN RELAY

The horn relay is a electromechanical device that switches battery current to the horn when the horn switch grounds the relay coil. The horn relay is located in the Power Distribution Center (PDC) in

## POWER LOCKS (Continued)

the engine compartment. This relay can be energized by the BCM to sound the horns as an audible alert for the RKE panic function and, if the Sound Horn on Lock programmable feature is enabled, as an audible verification for the RKE lock event. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/HORN/HORN RELAY - DESCRIPTION).

**LOW BEAM HEADLAMP RELAY**

The low beam headlamp relay is a electromechanical device that switches battery current to the headlamp low beams when the BCM grounds the relay coil. The low beam headlamp relay is located in the junction block in the passenger compartment. This relay can be energized by the BCM to flash the headlamp low beams as an optical alert for the RKE panic function. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/LAMPS/LIGHTING - EXTERIOR/HEADLAMP - DESCRIPTION).

**DESCRIPTION - LIFTGATE FLIP-UP GLASS POWER RELEASE SYSTEM**

A power operated liftgate flip-up glass release system is standard factory installed equipment on this model. The liftgate flip-up glass power release system allows the flip-up glass latch to be released electrically by depressing a switch located on the bottom of the liftgate license plate lamp housing unit, above the license plate on the outside of the liftgate.

The liftgate flip-up glass release system operates on non-switched battery current supplied through a fuse in the junction block so that the system remains functional, regardless of the ignition switch position. However, a limit switch that is integral to the liftgate latch actuator unit opens to prevent the flip-up glass latch from being actuated when the liftgate latch is locked.

The liftgate flip-up glass power release system includes the following components:

- **Liftgate Flip-Up Glass Limit Switch** - The liftgate flip-up glass limit switch is integral to the liftgate latch unit. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DECKLID/HATCH/LIFTGATE/TAILGATE/LATCH - REMOVAL) and (Refer to 23 - BODY/DECKLID/HATCH/LIFTGATE/TAILGATE/LATCH - INSTALLATION).

- **Liftgate Flip-Up Glass Release Motor** - The liftgate flip-up glass release motor is integral to the liftgate flip-up glass latch unit. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DECKLID/HATCH/LIFTGATE/TAILGATE/FLIP-UP GLASS LATCH - REMOVAL) and (Refer to 23 - BODY/DECKLID/HATCH/LIFTGATE/TAILGATE/FLIP-UP GLASS LATCH - INSTALLATION).

- **Liftgate Flip-Up Glass Release Switch** - The liftgate flip-up glass release switch is integral to the liftgate license plate lamp housing. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DECKLID/HATCH/LIFTGATE/TAILGATE/FLIP-UP GLASS SWITCH - REMOVAL) and (Refer

to 23 - BODY/DECKLID/HATCH/LIFTGATE/TAILGATE/FLIP-UP GLASS SWITCH - INSTALLATION).

Hard wired circuitry connects the liftgate flip-up glass power release system components to the electrical system of the vehicle. These hard wired circuits are integral to several wire harnesses, which are routed throughout the vehicle and retained by many different methods. These circuits may be connected to each other, to the vehicle electrical system and to the liftgate flip-up glass power release system components through the use of a combination of soldered splices, splice block connectors, and many different types of wire harness terminal connectors and insulators. Refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, further details on wire harness routing and retention, as well as pin-out and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

**OPERATION****OPERATION - POWER LOCK SYSTEM**

The Passenger Door Module (PDM) contains the power door lock control logic and a power lock switch. The Driver Door Module (DDM) contains a power lock switch and controls the output to the driver side front door power lock motor, while the PDM controls the output to the power lock motors for the remaining doors and the liftgate.

When the power lock switch on the DDM is used to lock or unlock the doors, the DDM sends a control output to the driver side front door power lock motor and sends lock or unlock request messages to the PDM over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus. The PDM responds to these messages by sending control outputs to the power lock motors of the remaining doors and the liftgate. When the power lock switch on the PDM is used to lock or unlock the doors, the PDM sends control outputs to the power lock motors in the passenger side front door, both rear doors and the liftgate, then sends lock or unlock request messages to the DDM over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus. The DDM responds to these messages by sending control outputs to the power lock motor of the driver side front door.

In order to support the auto door locks and unlock on exit features, if enabled, the power lock system logic in the PDM needs to know the door ajar switch status, vehicle speed, and transmission gear selector lever position. The passenger side front door ajar switch is the only hard wired input to the PDM. The PDM obtains the remaining information from messages it receives from other electronic modules over the PCI data bus network.

## POWER LOCKS (Continued)

See the owner's manual in the vehicle glove box for more information on the features, use and operation of the power lock system.

## OPERATION - REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY SYSTEM

The Passenger Door Module (PDM) contains the RKE system control logic and the RKE receiver. When the RKE receiver recognizes a Lock, Unlock or Panic message from a valid RKE transmitter, the RKE receiver provides that input to the PDM. The PDM circuitry and programming responds by sending the proper messages to the other electronic modules over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus.

When an RKE lock message is received, the doors and the liftgate lock, the interior lighting fades to off, the horn chirps (if this feature is enabled), the exterior lamps flash (if this feature is enabled) and, if the vehicle is so equipped, the Vehicle Theft Security System (VTSS) is armed. When an RKE unlock message is received, the driver side front door (or all doors and the liftgate if this feature is enabled) unlock, the interior lighting is turned on and, if the vehicle is so equipped, the VTSS is disarmed. If the vehicle is equipped with the Memory System and the RKE Linked to Memory feature is enabled, the RKE unlock message also recalls the driver seat, outside mirror and radio settings assigned to the RKE transmitter that sent the unlock signal.

When an RKE panic message is received, it causes the exterior lamps (including the headlights) to flash, and the horn to pulse for about three minutes, or until a second panic message is received. A vehicle speed of about 24 kilometers-per-hour (15 miles-per-hour) will also cancel the panic event.

See the owner's manual in the vehicle glove box for more information on the features, use and operation of the RKE system.

## OPERATION - LIFTGATE FLIP-UP GLASS POWER RELEASE SYSTEM

When the liftgate mounted flip-up glass release switch is depressed, battery current is directed to the electric release motor that is integral to the flip-up glass latch located inside the liftgate. When the release motor is energized the latch releases and the flip-up glass can be opened. A liftgate flip-up glass limit switch is integral to the liftgate latch actuator mechanism. The limit switch automatically enables or disables the liftgate flip-up glass power release circuitry, depending upon the position of the liftgate latch lock mechanism. When the liftgate latch is unlocked, the limit switch closes and battery current is available at the release switch. When the liftgate

latch is locked, the limit switch opens, and the release switch is disabled.

See the owner's manual in the vehicle glove box for more information on the features, use and operation of the liftgate flip-up glass power release system.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING

### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - POWER LOCK SYSTEM

Following are tests that will help to diagnose the hard wired components and circuits of the power lock system. However, these tests may not prove conclusive in the diagnosis of this system. In order to obtain conclusive testing of the power lock system, the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network and all of the electronic modules that provide inputs to, or receive outputs from the power lock system components must be checked.

The most reliable, efficient, and accurate means to diagnose the power lock system requires the use of a DRBIII® scan tool and the proper Diagnostic Procedures manual. The DRBIII® scan tool can provide confirmation that the PCI data bus is functional, that all of the electronic modules are sending and receiving the proper messages on the PCI data bus, and that the power lock motors are being sent the proper hard wired outputs by the door modules for them to perform their power lock system functions.

Refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, details of wire harness routing and retention, connector pin-out information and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

### PRELIMINARY DIAGNOSIS

As a preliminary diagnosis for the power lock system, note the system operation while you actuate both the Lock and Unlock functions with the power lock switches and with the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter. Then, proceed as follows:

- If the entire power lock system fails to function with either the power lock switches or the RKE transmitter, check the fused B(+) fuse in the Power Distribution Center. If the fuse is OK, proceed to diagnosis of the door modules. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/ELECTRONIC CONTROL MODULES/DOOR MODULE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING).

- If the power lock system functions with both power lock switches, but not with the RKE transmitter, proceed to diagnosis of the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) system. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/POWER LOCKS - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY SYSTEM).



## POWER LOCKS (Continued)

- If the power lock system functions with the RKE transmitter, but not with one or both power lock switches, proceed to diagnosis of the door modules. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/ELECTRONIC CONTROL MODULES/DOOR MODULE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING).

- If the driver side power lock switch operates only the driver side front door power lock motor, but all other power lock motors operate with the passenger side power lock switch or the RKE transmitter, use a DRBIII® scan tool and the appropriate diagnostic information to diagnose the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus.

- If only one power lock motor fails to operate with both power lock switches and the RKE transmitter, proceed to diagnosis of the power lock motor. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/POWER LOCKS/POWER LOCK MOTOR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING).

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY SYSTEM

Following are tests that will help to diagnose the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) system. However, these tests may not prove conclusive in the diagnosis of this system. In order to obtain conclusive testing of the RKE system, the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network and all of the electronic modules that provide inputs to, or receive outputs from the RKE system components must be checked.

The most reliable, efficient, and accurate means to diagnose the RKE system requires the use of a DRBIII® scan tool and the appropriate diagnostic information. The DRBIII® scan tool can provide confirmation that the PCI data bus is functional, that all of the electronic modules are sending and receiving the proper messages on the PCI data bus, and that the RKE receiver is being sent the proper radio frequency signals by the RKE transmitters to perform its RKE system functions.

Refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, details of wire harness routing and retention, connector pin-out information and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

## PRELIMINARY DIAGNOSIS

As a preliminary diagnosis for the RKE system, note the system operation while you perform both the Lock and Unlock functions with the power lock switches and with the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter. Then, proceed as follows:

- If the entire power lock system fails to function with either the power lock switches or the RKE transmitter, check the fused B(+) fuse in the Power

Distribution Center. If the fuse is OK, proceed to the diagnosis for the door modules. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/ELECTRONIC CONTROL MODULES/DOOR MODULE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING).

- If the power lock system functions with both power lock switches, but not with the RKE transmitter, proceed to the diagnosis for the RKE transmitter. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/POWER LOCKS/REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY TRANSMITTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING).

- If the driver side power lock switch operates only the driver side front door power lock motor, but all other power lock motors operate with the passenger side power lock switch or the RKE transmitter, use a DRBIII® scan tool and the appropriate diagnostic information to diagnose the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus.

If the problem being diagnosed involves only the Sound Horn on Lock or the Flash Lights with Locks features, be certain that these programmable features are enabled. If the features are enabled and the service horn and turn signals still operate, the Body Control Module (BCM) and the PCI data bus must be tested. For diagnosis of the BCM or the PCI data bus, the use of a DRBIII scan tool and the appropriate diagnostic information are required.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - LIFTGATE FLIP-UP GLASS POWER RELEASE SYSTEM

Refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, details of wire harness routing and retention, connector pin-out information and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

- (1) Check the fused B(+) fuse in the Junction Block (JB). If OK, go to Step 2. If not OK, repair the shorted circuit or component as required and replace the faulty fuse.

- (2) Check for battery voltage at the fused B(+) fuse in the JB. If OK, go to Step 3. If not OK, repair the open fused B(+) circuit to the Power Distribution Center (PDC) as required.

- (3) Disconnect the liftgate wire harness connector for the liftgate lock motor and flip-up glass limit switch from the motor and switch connector receptacle. Check for battery voltage at the fused B(+) circuit cavity of the liftgate wire harness connector for the liftgate lock motor and flip-up glass limit switch. If OK, go to Step 4. If not OK, repair the open fused B(+) circuit between the liftgate lock motor and flip-up glass limit switch and the JB as required.

- (4) Check for continuity between the two liftgate flip-up glass limit switch terminals. There should be continuity with the liftgate latch unlocked, and no continuity with the latch locked. If OK, go to Step 5.

## POWER LOCKS (Continued)

If not OK, replace the faulty liftgate latch actuator (brainplate) unit.

(5) Disconnect the liftgate wire harness connector for the liftgate flip-up glass release switch from the switch connector receptacle. With the liftgate latch unlocked, check for battery voltage at the liftgate flip-up glass limit switch output circuit cavity of the liftgate wire harness connector for the release switch. If OK, go to Step 6. If not OK, repair the open liftgate flip-up glass limit switch output circuit between the release switch and the limit switch as required.

(6) Check for continuity between the two terminals of the liftgate flip-up glass release switch. There should be no continuity. Depress the switch, there should now be continuity. If OK, go to Step 7. If not OK, replace the faulty liftgate flip-up glass release switch.

(7) Disconnect the liftgate wire harness connector for the liftgate flip-up glass latch motor from the motor connector receptacle. Check for continuity between the ground circuit cavity of the liftgate wire harness connector for the latch motor and a good ground. There should be continuity. If OK, go to Step 8. If not OK, repair the open ground circuit to ground as required.

(8) With the liftgate latch unlocked and the flip-up glass release switch depressed, check for battery voltage at the liftgate flip-up glass release switch output circuit cavity of the liftgate wire harness connector for the latch motor. If OK, replace the faulty liftgate flip-up glass latch unit. If not OK, repair the open liftgate flip-up glass release switch output circuit between the latch motor and the release switch as required.

## DOOR CYLINDER LOCK SWITCH

### DESCRIPTION

The driver cylinder lock switch is integral to the key lock cylinder inside the driver side front door. The driver cylinder lock switch is a resistive multiplexed switch that is hard wired between a body ground and the Driver Door Module (DDM) through the front door wire harness. It maintains a path to ground, and changes voltages through an internal resistor when the lock cylinder is rotated to the lock or unlock position.

The driver cylinder lock switch cannot be adjusted or repaired and, if faulty or damaged, the driver side front door lock cylinder unit must be replaced. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/LOCK CYLINDER - REMOVAL) and (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/LOCK CYLINDER - INSTALLATION). Refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring

information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, further details on wire harness routing and retention, as well as pin-out and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

### OPERATION

The driver cylinder lock switch is actuated by the key lock cylinder when the key is inserted in the lock cylinder and turned to the unlock position. The driver cylinder lock switch maintains a path to ground and changes voltages through an internal resistor for the DDM when the driver door key lock cylinder is in the lock or unlock position. The DDM reads the switch status through an internal pull-up, then sends the proper switch status messages to other electronic modules over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network. The driver cylinder lock switch unlock status message is used by the BCM as an input for Vehicle Theft Security System (VTSS) operation and interior lighting.

## POWER LOCK MOTOR

### DESCRIPTION

Power operated front door, rear door, and liftgate locking mechanisms are standard equipment on this model. The lock mechanisms are actuated by a reversible electric motor mounted within each door and the liftgate. The power lock motors for the doors are integral to the door latch units. The liftgate power lock motor is a separate unit secured to the latch brainplate near the center of the liftgate and operates the liftgate latch lock mechanism through a connecting linkage rod.

The power lock motors for the four doors cannot be adjusted or repaired and, if faulty or damaged, the entire door latch unit must be replaced. The liftgate power lock motor cannot be adjusted or repaired and, if faulty or damaged, the entire liftgate latch actuator (brainplate) unit must be replaced.

### OPERATION

The driver side front door power lock motor is controlled by the Driver Door Module (DDM). The remaining power door lock motors and the liftgate power lock motor are controlled by the Passenger Door Module (PDM). A positive and negative battery connection to the two motor terminals will cause the power lock motor plunger to move in one direction. Reversing the current through these same two connections will cause the power lock motor plunger to move in the opposite direction.



## POWER LOCK MOTOR (Continued)

**DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - POWER LOCK MOTOR**

Remember, the Driver Door Module (DDM) circuitry controls the output to the driver side front door power lock motor. The Passenger Door Module (PDM) circuitry controls the output to the power lock motors for the remaining doors and the liftgate. Refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, details of wire harness routing and retention, connector pin-out information and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

(1) Check each power lock motor for correct operation while moving the power lock switch to both the Lock and Unlock positions. If all of the power lock motors are inoperative, go to Step 2. If one power lock motor is inoperative, go to Step 3.

(2) If all of the power lock motors except the driver side front door are inoperative, the problem may be caused by one shorted motor. Disconnecting a shorted power lock motor from the power lock circuit will allow the good power lock motors to operate. Disconnect the wire harness connector from each PDM-controlled power lock motor, one at a time, and recheck both the lock and unlock functions by operating the power lock switch. If all of the PDM-controlled power lock motors are still inoperative after the above test, check for a short or open circuit between the power lock motors and the PDM. If disconnecting one power lock motor causes the other motors to become functional, go to Step 3 to test the power lock motor that was last disconnected.

(3) Once it is determined which power lock motor is inoperative, that motor can be tested as follows. Disconnect the door or liftgate wire harness connector from the inoperative power lock motor. Apply 12 volts to the lock and unlock driver circuit cavities of the power lock motor connector to check its operation in one direction. Reverse the polarity to check the motor operation in the opposite direction. If OK, repair the shorted or open circuits between the lock motor and the DDM or PDM as required. If not OK, replace the faulty power lock motor.

**POWER LOCK SWITCH****DESCRIPTION**

The power lock motors are controlled by a two-way momentary switch mounted on the trim panel of each front door. Each power lock switch is illuminated by a Light-Emitting Diode (LED) that is integral to the switch paddle.

The driver side front door power lock switch is integral to the Driver Door Module (DDM), and the passenger side front door power lock switch is integral to the Passenger Door Module (PDM). The power lock switches and their lamps cannot be adjusted or repaired and, if faulty or damaged, the entire DDM or PDM unit must be replaced. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/ELECTRONIC CONTROL MODULES/DOOR MODULE - DESCRIPTION).

**OPERATION**

The front door power lock switches provide a lock and unlock signal to the door module circuitry. The Driver Door Module (DDM) circuitry controls the output to the driver side front door power lock motor, while the Passenger Door Module (PDM) circuitry controls the output to the passenger side front door, both rear door and the liftgate power lock motors.

When the DDM-integrated power lock switch is actuated, the DDM circuitry sends control outputs to the driver side front door power lock motor and sends a message to the PDM over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus to control the output to the passenger side front door, both rear door and the liftgate power lock motors. When the PDM-integrated power lock switch is actuated, the PDM circuitry sends control outputs to the passenger side front door, both rear door and the liftgate power lock motors and sends a message to the DDM over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus to control the output to the driver side front door power lock motor.

Each power lock switch is illuminated by a Light-Emitting Diode (LED) when the ignition switch is turned to the On position. See the owner's manual in the vehicle glove box for more information on the features, use and operation of the power lock switches.

## REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY MODULE

### DESCRIPTION

The Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) receiver is a radio frequency unit contained within the Passenger Door Module (PDM). The PDM also contains the program logic circuitry for the RKE system. The PDM is secured with screws to the back of the trim panel inside the passenger side front door. The RKE receiver has a memory function to retain the vehicle access codes of up to four RKE transmitters. The receiver is designed to retain the transmitter codes in memory, even if the battery is disconnected.

For diagnosis of the RKE receiver, the PDM, or the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus a DRBIII® scan tool and the appropriate diagnostic information are required. The RKE receiver is only serviced as a unit with the PDM and, if faulty or damaged, the entire PDM unit must be replaced. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/ELECTRONIC CONTROL MODULES/DOOR MODULE - DESCRIPTION).

### OPERATION

The RKE receiver is energized by one of three messages from the RKE transmitter: Unlock, Lock, or Panic. The PDM circuitry responds to these messages to lock or unlock the power lock motors that it controls. The PDM circuitry also sends Lock, Unlock, and Panic messages to other electronic modules over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus. These messages will result in the Driver Door Module (DDM) locking or unlocking the driver side front door, and the other electronic modules in the vehicle responding as their programming dictates.

## REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY TRANSMITTER

### DESCRIPTION

The Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) system Radio Frequency (RF) transmitter is equipped with three buttons, labeled Lock, Unlock, and Panic. It is also equipped with a key ring and is designed to serve as a key fob. The operating range of the transmitter radio signal is up to 10 meters (30 feet) from the RKE receiver.

Each RKE transmitter has a different vehicle access code, which must be programmed into the memory of the RKE receiver in the vehicle in order to operate the RKE system. Two transmitters are provided with the vehicle, but the RKE receiver can

retain the access codes of up to four transmitters in its memory. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/POWER LOCKS/REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY TRANSMITTER - STANDARD PROCEDURE - RKE TRANSMITTER PROGRAMMING).

In addition, the RKE transmitters for vehicles equipped with the optional Memory System are color-coded. Driver 1 (Black) and Driver 2 (Grey) coincide with the buttons of the memory switch on the driver side front door trim panel. These transmitters must also have their access codes programmed into the RKE receiver so that they coincide with the "Driver 1" and "Driver 2" buttons of the memory switch. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/POWER SEATS - DESCRIPTION - MEMORY SYSTEM).

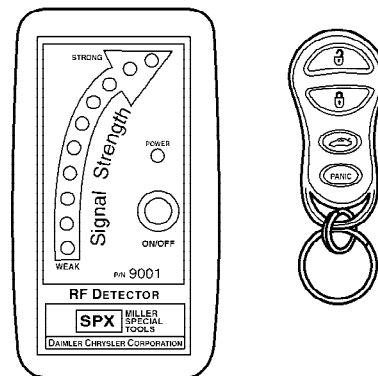
The RKE transmitter operates on two Panasonic CR2016 (or equivalent) batteries. Typical battery life is from one to two years. The RKE transmitter cannot be repaired and, if faulty or damaged, it must be replaced.

### OPERATION

See the owner's manual in the vehicle glove box for more information on the features, use and operation of the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitters.

### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY TRANSMITTER

Using special tool 9001, first test to ensure that the transmitter is functioning. Typical testing distance is 2.5 centimeters (1 inch) for Asian transmitters and 30.5 centimeters (12 inches) for all others. To test, position the transmitter as shown (Fig. 1). Press any transmitter button, then test each button individually. The tool will beep if a radio signal strength that lights five or more LED's is detected. Repeat this test three times. If transmitter fails any of the test refer to the Diagnostic Procedures manual.



80f156c6

**Fig. 1 TRANSMITTER DIAGNOSIS**

## REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY TRANSMITTER (Continued)

## STANDARD PROCEDURE

## STANDARD PROCEDURE - RKE TRANSMITTER PROGRAMMING

To program the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter access codes into the RKE receiver in the Passenger Door Module (PDM) requires the use of a DRBIII® scan tool. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

## STANDARD PROCEDURE - RKE TRANSMITTER BATTERIES

The Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter case snaps open and shut for battery access. To replace the RKE transmitter batteries:

(1) Using a trim stick or a thin coin, gently pry at the notch in the center seam of the RKE transmitter case halves near the key ring until the two halves unsnap.

(2) Lift the back half of the transmitter case off of the RKE transmitter.

(3) Remove the two batteries from the RKE transmitter.

(4) Replace the two batteries with new Panasonic CR2016, or their equivalent. Be certain that the batteries are installed with their polarity correctly oriented.

(5) Align the two RKE transmitter case halves with each other, and squeeze them firmly and evenly together until they snap back into place.

**NOTE:** The RKE system for this model uses a rolling code security strategy. This strategy requires that synchronization be maintained between the RKE transmitter and the RKE receiver. RKE transmitter battery removal or replacement can cause a loss of synchronization. If the RKE receiver fails to respond to the RKE transmitter following battery removal or replacement, depress and release the RKE transmitter Unlock button repeatedly while listening carefully for the power door locks in the vehicle to cycle. After between five and eight presses of the Unlock button, the power door locks should cycle, indicating that re-synchronization has occurred.

## POWER MIRRORS

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>POWER MIRRORS</b>		<b>POWER FOLD-AWAY MIRROR - EXPORT</b>	
DESCRIPTION .....	11	DESCRIPTION .....	14
OPERATION .....	12	OPERATION .....	14
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - POWER		DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - POWER	
MIRRORS .....	12	FOLD-AWAY MIRROR - EXPORT .....	14
<b>AUTOMATIC DAY/NIGHT MIRROR</b>		REMOVAL .....	14
DESCRIPTION		<b>POWER MIRROR SWITCH</b>	
DESCRIPTION - REAR VIEW MIRROR .....	12	DESCRIPTION .....	15
DESCRIPTION - OUTSIDE REAR VIEW		OPERATION .....	15
MIRROR .....	13	<b>SIDEVIEW MIRROR</b>	
OPERATION		DESCRIPTION .....	15
OPERATION - REAR VIEW MIRROR .....	13	OPERATION .....	15
OPERATION - OUTSIDE REAR VIEW		DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - SIDEVIEW	
MIRROR .....	13	MIRROR .....	15
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - AUTOMATIC DAY			
/ NIGHT MIRROR .....	13		

## POWER MIRRORS

## DESCRIPTION

Driver and passenger side power operated outside rear view mirrors are standard factory-installed equipment on this model. The power mirror system allows the driver to adjust both outside mirrors electrically from the driver seat position by operating a switch on the driver side front door trim panel. The power mirror system receives non-switched battery current through a fuse in the Power Distribution Center (PDC) so that the power mirrors remain operational, regardless of the ignition switch position.

The standard equipment power operated outside rear view mirrors are also equipped with the heated mirror system, which will only operate when the ignition switch is in the On position and the rear window defogger switch is turned on. When the rear window defogger switch is in the On position, electric heater grids on the rear window glass and behind both outside rear view mirror glasses are energized. These electric heater grids produce heat to help clear the rear window glass and outside rear view mirrors of ice, snow, or fog. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/HEATED MIRRORS - DESCRIPTION) for more information on this feature.

A driver side automatic dimming outside mirror that dims the mirror to reduce the glare of bright lights approaching the vehicle from behind, and a memory system that automatically positions the power mirrors for two different drivers are optional

factory-installed equipment on this model. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/POWER MIRRORS/AUTOMATIC DAY / NIGHT MIRROR - DESCRIPTION) for more information. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/POWER SEATS - DESCRIPTION) for more information.

This group covers the following components of the power mirror system:

- Power mirrors
- Power mirror switch.

Certain functions and features of the power mirror system rely upon resources shared with other electronic modules in the vehicle over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network. The PCI data bus network allows the sharing of sensor information. This helps to reduce wire harness complexity, internal controller hardware, and component sensor current loads. At the same time, this system provides increased reliability, enhanced diagnostics, and allows the addition of many new feature capabilities. For diagnosis of these electronic modules or of the PCI data bus network, the use of a DRB scan tool and the proper Diagnostic Procedures manual are recommended.

The other electronic modules that may affect power mirror system operation are as follows:

- **Body Control Module (BCM)** (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/ELECTRONIC CONTROL MODULES/BODY CONTROL/CENTRAL TIMER MODULE - DESCRIPTION) for more information.
- **Driver Door Module (DDM)** (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/ELECTRONIC CONTROL MOD-



## POWER MIRRORS (Continued)

ULES/DRIVER DOOR MODULE - DESCRIPTION) for more information.

- **Passenger Door Module (PDM)**(Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/ELECTRONIC CONTROL MODULES/DRIVER DOOR MODULE - DESCRIPTION) for more information.

Refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, details of wire harness routing and retention, connector pin-out information and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

## OPERATION

The Driver Door Module (DDM) and the Passenger Door Module (PDM) each contain the power mirror control logic for the mirror on its respective door. The DDM also houses the power mirror switch. Each door module controls the positioning of its respective outside mirror through hard wired outputs to that mirror. When the power mirror switch on the DDM is used to position the passenger side outside mirror, the DDM sends mirror positioning messages to the PDM over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus. The PDM responds to these messages by sending control outputs to move the passenger side mirror accordingly.

Both the PDM and DDM respond to the defogger switch status messages sent by the Body Control Module (BCM) over the PCI data bus to control the electric heater grids of their respective mirrors. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/HEATED MIRRORS - DESCRIPTION) for more information on this feature.

On models equipped with the optional memory system, each door module also receives a hard wired input from the two power mirror motor position potentiometers that are integral to each power mirror. Each door module then stores the Driver 1 and Driver 2 mirror position information for its respective mirror. When the DDM receives a Driver 1 or Driver 2 memory recall message from the memory switch on the driver side front door trim panel or from the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) receiver in the PDM, the DDM positions the driver side mirror and sends a memory recall message back to the PDM over the PCI data bus to position the passenger side mirror.

See the owner's manual in the vehicle glove box for more information on the features, use and operation of the power mirror system.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - POWER MIRRORS

Following are tests that will help to diagnose the hard wired components and circuits of the power mirror system. However, these tests may not prove conclusive in the diagnosis of this system. In order to

obtain conclusive testing of the power mirror system, the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network and all of the electronic modules that provide inputs to, or receive outputs from the power mirror system components must be checked.

The most reliable, efficient, and accurate means to diagnose the power mirror system requires the use of a DRB scan tool and the proper Diagnostic Procedures manual. The DRB scan tool can provide confirmation that the PCI data bus is functional, that all of the electronic modules are sending and receiving the proper messages on the PCI data bus, that the power mirror motors are being sent the proper hard wired outputs, and that the mirror position potentiometers are returning the proper outputs to the door modules for them to perform their power mirror system functions.

## AUTOMATIC DAY/NIGHT MIRROR

### DESCRIPTION

#### DESCRIPTION - REAR VIEW MIRROR

An automatic day/night mirror system is an available factory-installed option on this model. The automatic dimming inside day/night rear view mirror system is a completely self-contained unit that replaces the standard equipment inside rear view mirror. This system will automatically change the reflectance of the inside rear view mirror to protect the driver from the unwanted headlight glare of trailing vehicles while driving at night. The automatic day/night inside mirror receives ignition switched battery current through a fuse in the junction block, and will only operate when the ignition switch is in the On position.

Vehicles equipped with the automatic day/night mirror system are also available with an optional factory-installed automatic dimming outside rear view mirror for the driver side of the vehicle. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/POWER MIRRORS/SIDEVIEW MIRROR - DESCRIPTION) for more information on this option.

The automatic day/night mirror sensitivity cannot be repaired or adjusted. If any component of this unit is faulty or damaged, the entire automatic day/night inside rear view mirror unit must be replaced. Refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, details of wire harness routing and retention, connector pin-out information and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.



## AUTOMATIC DAY/NIGHT MIRROR (Continued)

**DESCRIPTION - OUTSIDE REAR VIEW MIRROR**

An automatic dimming outside rear view mirror is an available factory-installed option for the driver side of the vehicle, if the vehicle is also equipped with the automatic day/night inside rear view mirror. The automatic dimming outside mirror is completely controlled by the circuitry of the automatic day/night inside rear view mirror. The automatic dimming outside mirror will automatically change the reflectance of the driver side outside rear view mirror to protect the driver from the unwanted headlight glare of trailing vehicles while driving at night. The automatic dimming outside mirror will only operate when the ignition switch is in the On position.

The automatic dimming outside mirror sensitivity cannot be repaired or adjusted. If any component of this unit is faulty or damaged, the entire automatic dimming outside mirror unit must be replaced. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/POWER MIRRORS/SIDEVIEW MIRROR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). Refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, details of wire harness routing and retention, connector pin-out information and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

**OPERATION****OPERATION - REAR VIEW MIRROR**

The automatic day/night mirror switch allows the driver a manual control of whether the automatic dimming feature is operational. This switch is a momentary rocker-type switch located on the lower rear-facing surface of the mirror housing. When Auto is selected, a Light-Emitting Diode (LED) on the mirror housing just to the right of the switch illuminates to indicate that automatic day/night mirror is turned on. When Off is selected, the LED is turned off. The mirror also senses the backup lamp circuit, and will automatically disable its self-dimming feature whenever the transmission gear selector is in the Reverse position.

A thin layer of electrochromatic material between two pieces of conductive glass make up the face of the mirror. Two photocell sensors are used to monitor light levels and adjust the reflectance of the mirror. The ambient photocell sensor faces forward, to detect the outside light levels. The headlamp sensor is located on the mirror housing just to the left of the switch and facing rearward, to detect the light level received at the rear window side of the mirror. When the difference between the two light levels becomes too great (the light level received at the rear of the

mirror is much higher than that at the front of the mirror), the mirror begins to darken.

On models with an optional driver side automatic dimming outside mirror, the signal to control the dimming of that mirror is generated by the automatic day/night inside rear view mirror circuitry. That signal is then delivered to the driver side outside rear view mirror on a hard wired circuit.

See the owner's manual in the vehicle glove box for more information on the features, use and operation of the automatic day/night mirror system.

**OPERATION - OUTSIDE REAR VIEW MIRROR**

The automatic dimming outside mirror is operated by the same controls and circuitry as the automatic day/night mirror. When the automatic day/night mirror is turned on or off, the automatic dimming outside mirror is likewise turned on or off. Like in the automatic day/night mirror, a thin layer of electrochromatic material between two pieces of conductive glass make up the face of the automatic dimming outside mirror. However, the signal to control the dimming of the outside mirror is generated by the automatic day/night inside rear view mirror circuitry.

See the owner's manual in the vehicle glove box for more information on the features, use and operation of the automatic dimming outside mirror.

**DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - AUTOMATIC DAY / NIGHT MIRROR**

For complete circuit diagrams, refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, details of wire harness routing and retention, connector pin-out information and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

(1) Check the fused ignition switch output (run/start) fuse in the junction block. If OK, go to Step 2. If not OK, repair the shorted circuit or component as required and replace the faulty fuse.

(2) Turn the ignition switch to the On position. Check for battery voltage at the fused ignition switch output (run/start) fuse in the junction block. If OK, go to Step 3. If not OK, repair the open fused ignition switch output (run/start) circuit to the ignition switch as required.

(3) Disconnect the overhead wire harness connector from the automatic day/night mirror connector receptacle. Check for battery voltage at the fused ignition switch output (run/start) circuit cavity of the overhead wire harness connector for the automatic day/night mirror. If OK, go to Step 4. If not OK, repair the open fused ignition switch output (run/start) circuit to the fuse in the junction block as required.

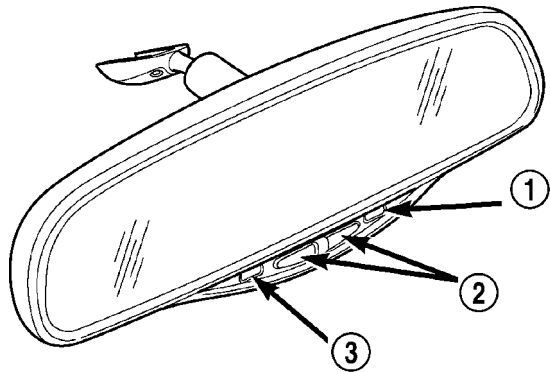
## AUTOMATIC DAY/NIGHT MIRROR (Continued)

(4) Turn the ignition switch to the Off position. Check for continuity between the ground circuit cavity of the overhead wire harness connector for the automatic day/night mirror and a good ground. There should be continuity. If OK, go to Step 5. If not OK, repair the open ground circuit to ground as required.

(5) Turn the ignition switch to the On position. Set the parking brake. Place the transmission gear selector lever in the Reverse position. Check for battery voltage at the backup lamp switch output circuit cavity of the overhead wire harness connector for the automatic day/night mirror. If OK, reconnect the overhead wire harness connector to the automatic day/night mirror connector receptacle and go to Step 6. If not OK, repair the open backup lamp switch output circuit as required.

(6) Place the transmission gear selector lever in the Neutral position. Place the automatic day/night mirror switch in the Auto (LED next to the switch is lighted) position (Fig. 1). Cover the forward facing ambient photocell sensor to keep out any ambient light.

**NOTE:** The ambient photocell sensor must be covered completely, so that no light reaches the sensor. Use a finger pressed tightly against the sensor, or cover the sensor completely with electrical tape.



80ba7a47

**Fig. 1 Automatic Day/Night Mirror**

- 1 - LED INDICATOR
- 2 - SWITCH
- 3 - HEADLAMP SENSOR

(7) Shine a light into the rearward facing headlamp photocell sensor. The automatic day/night mirror should darken. If OK, go to Step 8. If not OK, replace the faulty automatic day/night mirror unit.

(8) With the mirror darkened, place the transmission gear selector lever in the Reverse position. The automatic day/night mirror should return to its normal reflectance. If not OK, replace the faulty automatic day/night mirror unit.

## POWER FOLD-AWAY MIRROR - EXPORT

## DESCRIPTION

Some vehicles are equipped with Power Fold-Away Side View Mirrors. This feature allows both the driver and passenger side view mirrors to fold inward (retract) on demand. This feature is controlled by an additional switch located on the power mirror switch.

The fold-away side view mirror is attached to the vehicle's door in the same manner as mirrors without the fold-away option. The fold-away mirrors unique option is the internal motor which allows the mirrors to fold inward on demand. the fold-away mirror motor is not serviceable separately, and if a motor is found to be faulty the entire side view mirror must be replaced.

## OPERATION

When the mirror retract switch is depressed, both of the side view mirrors will fold inward, thus making the overall width of the vehicle the smallest possible. This can be very helpful where parking space is an absolute minimum.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - POWER FOLD-AWAY MIRROR - EXPORT

The most reliable, efficient and accurate means to diagnose the power mirror system requires the use of a DRB scan tool and the proper Diagnostic Procedures manual. The DRB scan tool can provide confirmation that the PCI data bus is functional, that all of the electronic modules are sending and receiving the proper messages on the PCI data bus, that the power mirror motors are being sent the proper hard wired outputs, and that the mirror position potentiometers are returning the proper outputs to the door modules for them to perform their power mirror system functions.

## REMOVAL

The fold-away mirror motor is not serviceable separately, and if a motor is found to be faulty the entire side view mirror must be replaced. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/POWER MIRRORS/SIDEVIEW MIRROR - REMOVAL).

## POWER MIRROR SWITCH

### DESCRIPTION

Both the right and left power outside mirrors are controlled by a single multi-function switch unit located on the driver side front door trim panel. The power mirror switch unit includes a three-position rocker selector switch and four momentary directional push button switches.

The power mirror switch unit is integral to the Driver Door Module (DDM). The power mirror switch cannot be repaired or adjusted and, if faulty or damaged, the entire DDM unit must be replaced. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/ELECTRONIC CONTROL MODULES/DRIVER DOOR MODULE - REMOVAL) for the DDM service procedures.

### OPERATION

The power mirror selector switch is moved right (right mirror control), left (left mirror control), or center to turn the power outside mirror system off. When the selector switch is in the right mirror control or left mirror control position, one of the four directional control buttons is depressed to control movement of the selected mirror up, down, right, or left. When the selector switch is in the Off position, depressing any of the directional switches will not change either mirror position.

See the owner's manual in the vehicle glove box for more information on the features, use and operation of the power mirror switches.

## SIDEVIEW MIRROR

### DESCRIPTION

Mechanically folding, power operated outside rear view mirrors are standard equipment on this model. Each power mirror housing contains two electric motors, two drive mechanisms, an electric heating grid, the mirror glass case and the mirror glass. One motor and drive controls mirror up-and-down (vertical) movement, and the other controls right-and-left (horizontal) movement. If the vehicle is equipped with the optional memory system, each mirror head also contains two position potentiometers. One position potentiometer monitors the vertical mirror motor, and the other monitors the horizontal mirror motor.

An optional driver side automatic dimming mirror is able to automatically change its reflectance level. This mirror is controlled by the circuitry of the automatic day/night inside rear view mirror. A thin layer of electrochromic material between two pieces of conductive glass make up the face of the mirror. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/POWER MIRRORS/AUTO-

MATIC DAY / NIGHT MIRROR - DESCRIPTION) for more information on this feature.

The power mirror unit cannot be repaired. Only the mirror glass and glass case are serviced separately. The replacement mirror glass is supplied with an instruction sheet that details the recommended replacement procedure. If any other component of the power mirror unit is faulty or damaged, the entire power mirror unit must be replaced.

### OPERATION

Each of the two outside power mirrors includes two reversible electric motors that are secured within the power mirror housing. Each motor moves the mirror case and glass through an integral drive unit. When a power mirror motor is supplied with battery current and ground, it moves the mirror case and glass through its drive unit in one direction. When the battery current and ground feeds to the motor are reversed, it moves the mirror case and glass in the opposite direction.

The power mirrors are equipped with a standard equipment electric heating grid that is applied to the back of each outside rear view mirror glass. When an electrical current is passed through the resistor wire of the heating grid, it warms the mirror glass. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/HEATED MIRRORS - DESCRIPTION) for more information on the operation of the heated mirrors and the rear window defogger system.

If the driver side mirror is equipped with the automatic dimming outside mirror option, two photocell sensors on the inside rear view mirror are used to monitor light levels and adjust the reflectance of both the inside and driver side outside mirrors. This change in reflectance helps to reduce the glare of headlamps approaching the vehicle from the rear. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/POWER MIRRORS/AUTOMATIC DAY / NIGHT MIRROR - OPERATION) for more information on this feature.

If the vehicle is equipped with the optional memory system, the Driver Door Module (DDM) and the Passenger Door Module (PDM) store the mirror position information as monitored through the mirror motor position potentiometers. When the memory system requests a recall of the stored mirror position, the DDM and the PDM are able to duplicate the stored mirror positions by moving the mirror motors until the potentiometer readings match the stored values.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - SIDEVIEW MIRROR

For complete circuit diagrams, refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector

SIDEVIEW MIRROR (Continued)

repair procedures, details of wire harness routing and retention, connector pin-out information and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

BOTH MIRRORS INOPERATIVE

- (1) Check the operation of the power lock switch on the driver side front door. If all of the doors lock and unlock, replace the faulty Driver Door Module (DDM). If not OK, go to Step 2.
- (2) Check the operation of the power lock switch on the passenger side front door. If all of the doors lock and unlock, replace the faulty DDM. If not OK, go to Step 3.
- (3) Check the fused B(+) fuse in the Power Distribution Center (PDC). If OK, go to Step 4. If not OK, repair the shorted circuit or component as required and replace the faulty fuse.
- (4) Check for battery voltage at the fused B(+) fuse in the PDC. If OK, go to Step 5. If not OK, repair the open fused B(+) circuit to the battery as required.
- (5) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Remove the trim panel from the driver side front door. Disconnect the 15-way door wire harness connector from the DDM connector receptacle. Check for continuity between the ground circuit cavity of the 15-way door wire harness connector for the DDM and a good ground. There should be continuity. If OK, go to Step 6. If not OK, repair the open ground circuit to ground as required.
- (6) Reconnect the battery negative cable. Check for battery voltage at the fused B(+) circuit cavity of the 15-way door wire harness connector for the DDM. If OK, replace the faulty DDM. If not OK, repair the open fused B(+) circuit to the fuse in the PDC as required.

ONE MIRROR INOPERATIVE

- (1) If the one inoperative mirror is on the passenger side, go to Step 2. If the one inoperative mirror is on the driver side, go to Step 3.
- (2) Check if the passenger front door will lock and unlock using the power lock switch on the driver side front door. If OK, go to Step 3. If not OK, go to Step 6.
- (3) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Remove the trim panel from the front door. Disconnect the 12-way mirror wire harness connector from the door wire harness connector.
- (4) Using two jumper wires, test the mirror as shown in the Mirror Test chart (Fig. 2). If the mirror tests OK, go to Step 5. If the mirror does not test OK, replace the faulty mirror.
- (5) Disconnect the 12-way door wire harness connector from the door module connector receptacle. Check all of the circuits of the door wire harness

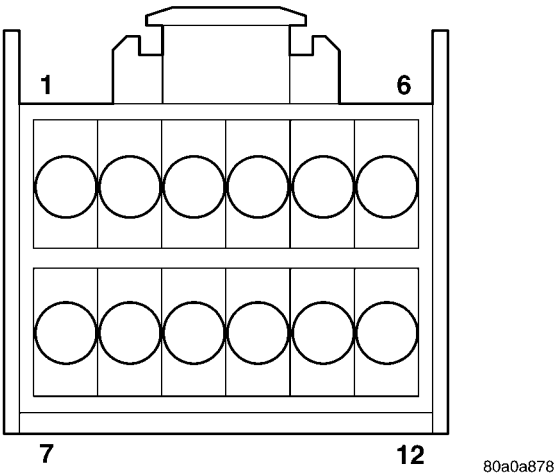


Fig. 2 Mirror Test  
POWER MIRROR TEST TABLE

APPLY 12 VOLTS TO:	APPLY GROUND TO: DRIVER SIDE	MIRROR REACTION
1	7	LEFT
7	1	RIGHT
8	7	UP
7	8	DOWN
PASSENGER SIDE		
1	7	LEFT
7	1	RIGHT
8	7	UP
7	8	DOWN

between the connector for the mirror and the connector for the door module for opens or shorts. If all of the circuits are OK, replace the faulty door module. If any of the circuits are not OK, repair the open or shorted circuit(s) as required.

- (6) Use a DRB scan tool and the proper Diagnostic Procedures manual to test and repair the faulty Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus communication between the two door modules.

NO MIRROR HEAT

- If one or both mirror heaters are inoperative, (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/HEATED MIRRORS - DESCRIPTION).
- (1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Remove the front door trim panel on the side of the inoperative mirror heater.
- (2) Disconnect the 12-way door wire harness connector from the door module connector receptacle. Check for continuity between the heater switched ground circuit cavity and the heater 12V supply circuit cavity of the 12-way door wire harness connector for the door module. There should be continuity. If OK, use a DRB scan tool and the proper Diagnostic Procedures manual to test the door module and the PCI data bus. If not OK, replace the faulty power mirror unit.



## SIDEVIEW MIRROR (Continued)

**NO MIRROR DIMMING (Driver Side Only)**

(1) Test the operation of the automatic day/night mirror. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/POWER MIRRORS/AUTOMATIC DAY / NIGHT MIRROR - OPERATION). If OK, go to Step 2. If not OK, repair the automatic day/night mirror unit as required.

(2) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Remove the driver side front door trim panel.

(3) Disconnect the door wire harness connector from the power mirror wire harness connector. Connect a voltmeter between the electrochromatic (+) and electrochromatic (-) circuit cavities of the door wire harness connector for the power mirror. Turn on the automatic day/night mirror system while observ-

ing the voltmeter. A voltmeter reading of  $1.45 \pm 0.05$  volts indicates a proper dimming signal is being received at the door wire harness connector for the power mirror. If OK, replace the faulty power mirror. If not OK, repair the shorted or open electrochromatic (+) or electrochromatic (-) circuit(s) to the automatic day/night mirror as required.

**NO MIRROR MEMORY**

For diagnosis of the memory system, the use of a DRB scan tool and the proper Diagnostic Procedures manual are recommended. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/POWER SEATS - DESCRIPTION).



## POWER SEAT SYSTEM

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page	page
<b>POWER SEAT SYSTEM</b>		
DESCRIPTION		
DESCRIPTION	18	
DESCRIPTION - MEMORY SYSTEM	19	
OPERATION		
OPERATION - POWER SEAT SYSTEM	20	
OPERATION - MEMORY SYSTEM	20	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING		
DIAGNOSIS & TESTING - POWER SEAT SYSTEM	20	
DIAGNOSIS & TESTING - MEMORY SYSTEM	20	
<b>DRIVER SEAT SWITCH</b>		
DESCRIPTION	21	
OPERATION	21	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - DRIVER SEAT SWITCH	22	
REMOVAL	23	
INSTALLATION	23	
<b>LUMBAR CONTROL SWITCH</b>		
DESCRIPTION	24	
OPERATION	24	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - POWER LUMBAR SWITCH	25	
REMOVAL	25	
INSTALLATION	26	
<b>LUMBAR MOTOR</b>		
DESCRIPTION	26	
OPERATION	26	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - POWER LUMBAR ADJUSTER	26	
<b>MEMORY SET SWITCH</b>		
DESCRIPTION	27	
OPERATION	27	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - MEMORY SWITCH	27	
REMOVAL	28	
INSTALLATION	28	
<b>PASSENGER SEAT SWITCH</b>		
DESCRIPTION	28	
OPERATION	28	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - PASSENGER SEAT SWITCH	29	
REMOVAL	30	
INSTALLATION	30	
<b>RECLINER MOTOR</b>		
DESCRIPTION	31	
OPERATION	31	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - RECLINER MOTOR	31	
<b>POWER SEAT TRACK</b>		
DESCRIPTION	32	
OPERATION	33	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - POWER SEAT TRACK	33	

## POWER SEAT SYSTEM

### DESCRIPTION

#### DESCRIPTION

Driver and passenger power front seats are an available factory-installed option for this vehicle. The power seat system option allows the driver and front seat passenger to electrically adjust their seating positions for optimum control and comfort using the power seat switches located on the outboard seat cushion side shield of each front seat. The power seat system receives battery current through a fuse in the Power Distribution Center (PDC) and a circuit breaker in the junction block so that the power seats remain operational, regardless of the ignition switch position.

Four power seat options are offered on this vehicle, depending upon the model. They are as follows:

- **Six-way power drivers seat with manual passenger seat** - This power seat package is an option on Laredo models equipped with cloth-trimmed seats and includes a six-way adjustable driver seat track with manual seat back recliners.

- **Six-way power driver and passenger seat** - This power seat package is an option on Laredo models equipped with cloth or leather-trimmed seats and includes six-way adjustable seat tracks with manual seat back recliners. Heated Seats are available on leather-trimmed seats.

- **Ten-way power drivers seat with Memory and Six-way power passenger seat** - This power seat package is standard on Limited models. This option includes a six-way adjustable seat track with power seat back recliners and power lumbar supports for the driver and six-way only for the passenger.

## POWER SEAT SYSTEM (Continued)

• **Ten-way power drivers and passenger seats with Memory** - This power seat option is standard on Overland models and optional on Limited models. This option includes a six-way adjustable seat cushion track with power seat back recliners and power lumbar supports. Heated Seats are standard with this option.

Refer to **Heated Seat System** for more information on the heated seat option. Refer to **Memory System** in the Memory System section of this group for more information on the memory system.

The power seat system includes the following components:

- Power lumbar adjuster (ten-way power seat only)
- Power lumbar switch (ten-way power seat only)
- Power seat recliner (ten-way power seat only)
- Power seat switch
- Power seat track.

Refer to **Power Seat** in Wiring Diagrams for complete circuit diagrams. Following are general descriptions of the major components in the power seat/memory seat system.

## DESCRIPTION - MEMORY SYSTEM

An electronic memory system is standard equipment on the Limited model. The memory system is able to store and recall the driver side power seat positions (including the power recliner position), and both outside power mirror positions for two drivers. For vehicles with a radio connected to the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network, the memory system is also able to store and recall up to twenty - ten AM and ten FM - radio station presets for two drivers. The memory system also will store and recall the last station listened to for each driver, even if it is not one of the twenty preset stations.

The memory system will automatically return to all of these settings when the corresponding numbered and color-coded button (Driver 1 - Black, or Driver 2 - Gray) of the memory switch on the driver side front door trim panel is depressed, or when the doors are unlocked using the corresponding numbered and color-coded (Driver 1 - Black, or Driver 2 - Gray) Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter. A customer programmable feature of the memory system allows the RKE recall of memory features to be disabled in cases where there are more than two drivers of the vehicle.

The memory system also has a customer programmable easy exit feature that will move the driver seat rearward 55 millimeters (two inches) or to the end of its travel, whichever occurs first, when the key is removed from the ignition switch lock cylinder.

A Memory Seat Module (MSM) or Memory Heated Seat Module (MHSM) are used on this model to control and integrate the many electronic functions and features included in the memory system. On vehicles equipped with the heated seat system option, the MHSM also controls the functions and features of that system.

The memory system includes the following components:

- Memory seat module (or memory heated seat module)
- Memory switch
- Position potentiometers on both outside power mirrors
- Position potentiometers on the driver side power seat track and power seat recliner motors.
- Radio receiver (if PCI data bus capable).

Certain functions and features of the memory system rely upon resources shared with other electronic modules in the vehicle over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network. The PCI data bus network allows the sharing of sensor information. This helps to reduce wire harness complexity, internal controller hardware, and component sensor current loads. At the same time, this system provides increased reliability, enhanced diagnostics, and allows the addition of many new feature capabilities. For diagnosis of these electronic modules or of the PCI data bus network, the use of a DRB® scan tool and the proper Diagnostic Procedures manual are recommended.

The other electronic modules that may affect memory system operation are as follows:

• **Body Control Module (BCM)** - Refer to **Body Control Module** in Electronic Control Modules for more information.

• **Driver Door Module (DDM)** - Refer to **Door Module** in Electronic Control Modules for more information.

• **Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)** - Refer to **Electronic Vehicle Information Center** in Overhead Console Systems for more information.

• **Passenger Door Module (PDM)** - Refer to **Door Module** in Electronic Control Modules for more information.

• **Powertrain Control Module (PCM)** - Refer to **Powertrain Control Module** in Electronic Control Modules for more information.

• **Radio Receiver** - Refer to **Radio Receiver** in Audio Systems for more information.

Refer to **Heated Seat System** for more information on this system. Refer to **Remote Keyless Entry System** in Power Lock Systems for more information on the RKE system. Refer to **Power Mirror** in Power Mirror Systems for more information on the

## POWER SEAT SYSTEM (Continued)

mirror position potentiometers. Refer to **Power Seat Track** and **Power Seat Recliner** in the Power Seat System section of this group for more information on the driver side power seat position potentiometers.

Refer to **Power Seat** in Wiring Diagrams for complete circuit diagrams. Following are general descriptions of the remaining major components in the factory-installed memory system.

## OPERATION

## OPERATION - POWER SEAT SYSTEM

The power seat system receives battery current through a 40 amp fuse in the Power Distribution Center (PDC) and a 20 amp circuit breaker in the junction block so that the power seats remain operational, regardless of the ignition switch position. See the owner's manual in the vehicle glove box for more information on the features, use and operation of the power seat system.

## OPERATION - MEMORY SYSTEM

See the owner's manual in the vehicle glove box for more information on the features, use and operation of the memory system. For diagnosis of the MSM, the PCI data bus, or the other electronic modules on the PCI data bus that provide inputs and outputs for the memory system, the use of a DRB® scan tool and the proper Diagnostic Procedures manual are recommended.

## DRIVER AND PASSENGER DOOR MODULES

The Driver Door Module (DDM) monitors the memory switch through a hard wired circuit. It also monitors the unlock messages from the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) receiver in the Passenger Door Module (PDM) sent over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus. The DDM is programmed to send memory recall messages and memory system status messages over the PCI data bus to the other electronic modules when it detects a memory recall request.

Refer to **Door Module** in Electronic Control Modules for more information on the DDM and PDM.

## ELECTRONIC VEHICLE INFORMATION CENTER

The Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) serves as the user interface for the memory system. It displays memory system status messages and provides the user with the means for enabling and disabling the many customer programmable features available on the vehicle, including those for the memory system.

See the owner's manual in the vehicle glove box for more information on the features, use and operation

of the EVIC. Refer to **Electronic Vehicle Information Center** in Overhead Console Systems for more information on the EVIC.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING

## DIAGNOSIS &amp; TESTING - POWER SEAT SYSTEM

Following are tests that will help to diagnose the hard wired components and circuits of the power seat system. However, if the vehicle is also equipped with the optional memory system, these tests may not prove conclusive in the diagnosis of the driver side power seat. In order to obtain conclusive testing of the driver side power seat with the memory system option, the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network and all of the electronic modules that provide inputs to, or receive outputs from the memory system components must be checked.

The most reliable, efficient, and accurate means to diagnose the driver side power seat with the memory system option requires the use of a DRB® scan tool and the proper Diagnostic Procedures manual. The DRB® scan tool can provide confirmation that the PCI data bus is functional, that all of the electronic modules are sending and receiving the proper messages on the PCI data bus, and that the memory system is receiving the proper hard wired inputs and relaying the proper hard wired outputs to perform its driver side power seat functions.

Before any testing of the power seat system is attempted, the battery should be fully-charged and all of the power seat system wire harness connections and pins cleaned and tightened to ensure proper circuit continuity and ground paths. For complete circuit diagrams, refer to **Power Seat** in Wiring Diagrams.

With the dome lamp on, apply the power seat switch in the direction of the failure. If the dome lamp dims, the seat may be jamming. Check under and behind the seat for binding or obstructions. If the dome lamp does not dim, proceed with testing of the individual components and circuits.

## DIAGNOSIS &amp; TESTING - MEMORY SYSTEM

Following are tests that will help to diagnose the components and circuits that provide hard wired inputs to the memory system. However, these tests may not prove conclusive in the diagnosis of this system. In order to obtain conclusive testing of the memory system, the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network and all of the electronic modules that provide inputs to, or receive outputs from the memory system components must be checked.

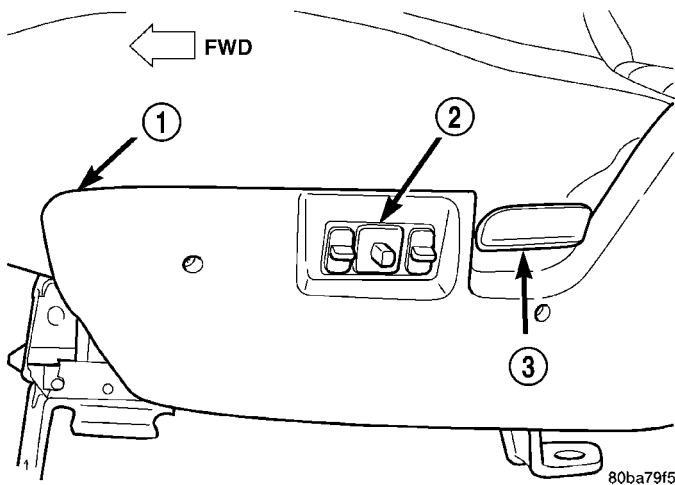
## POWER SEAT SYSTEM (Continued)

The most reliable, efficient, and accurate means to diagnose the memory system requires the use of a DRB® scan tool and the proper Diagnostic Procedures manual. The DRB® scan tool can provide confirmation that the PCI data bus is functional, that all of the electronic modules are sending and receiving the proper messages on the PCI data bus, and that the memory system is receiving the proper hard wired inputs and relaying the proper hard wired outputs to perform its functions.

## DRIVER SEAT SWITCH

## DESCRIPTION

Two different power seat switches are used on this vehicle, depending upon the optional power seat system installed in the vehicle. The six-way power seats are each equipped with a switch featuring three switch control knobs ganged together on the outboard seat cushion side shield (Fig. 1). The ten-way power seats are each equipped with a switch featuring two knobs ganged together on the outboard seat cushion side shield (Fig. 2).

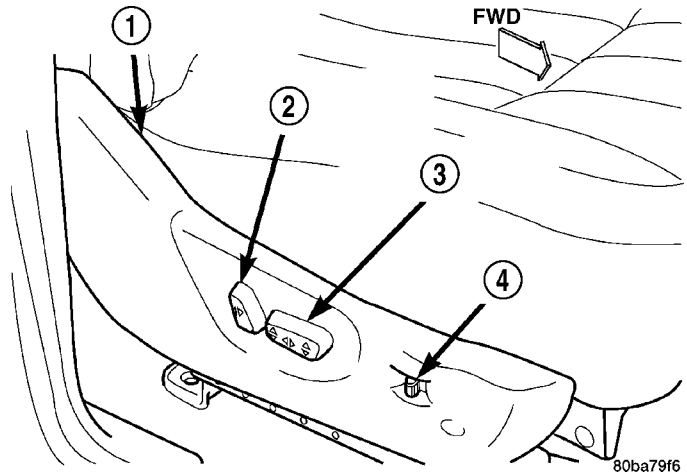


**Fig. 1 Six-Way Power Seat Switches - Typical**

- 1 - OUTBOARD SEAT CUSHION SIDE SHIELD
- 2 - POWER SEAT TRACK SWITCHES
- 3 - MECHANICAL SEAT BACK RECLINER LEVER

The switch units for both power seat types are secured to the back of the seat cushion side shield with two screws. However, the control knobs for the six-way power seat switch unit remain installed during switch unit removal and installation, while both knobs for the ten-way power seat switch unit must be removed.

The individual switches in both power seat switch units cannot be repaired. If one switch is damaged or faulty, the entire power seat switch unit must be replaced.



**Fig. 2 Ten-Way Power Seat Switches - Typical**

- 1 - OUTBOARD CUSHION SIDE SHIELD
- 2 - POWER SEAT RECLINER SWITCH
- 3 - POWER SEAT TRACK SWITCH
- 4 - POWER LUMBAR SWITCH

## OPERATION

The power seat tracks of both the six-way and the ten-way power seat systems can be adjusted in six different ways using the power seat switches. The ten-way system has the additional power seat recliner switch integral to the power seat switch and also has a separate, stand-alone switch to control the power lumbar adjuster. See the owner's manual in the vehicle glove box for more information on the power seat switch functions and the seat adjusting procedures.

When a power switch control knob or knobs are actuated, a battery feed and a ground path are applied through the switch contacts to the power seat track or recliner adjuster motor. The selected adjuster motor operates to move the seat track or recliner through its drive unit in the selected direction until the switch is released, or until the travel limit of the adjuster is reached. When the switch is moved in the opposite direction, the battery feed and ground path to the motor are reversed through the switch contacts. This causes the adjuster motor to run in the opposite direction.

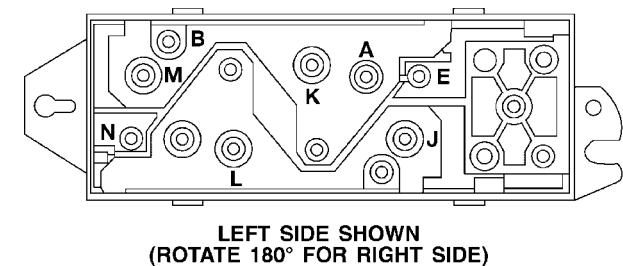
No power seat switch should be held applied in any direction after the adjuster has reached its travel limit. The power seat adjuster motors each contain a self-resetting circuit breaker to protect them from overload. However, consecutive or frequent resetting of the circuit breaker must not be allowed to continue, or the motor may be damaged.

DRIVER SEAT SWITCH (Continued)

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - DRIVER SEAT SWITCH

For complete circuit diagrams, refer to **Wiring Diagrams**.

- (1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.
- (2) Remove the power seat switch from the out-board seat cushion side shield. Refer to the procedure in this section of the manual.
- (3) Use an ohmmeter to test the continuity of the power seat switch in each switch position. See the Power Seat Switch Continuity chart (Fig. 3) or (Fig. 4). If OK, refer to **Diagnosis and Testing Power Seat Track** or **Diagnosis and Testing Power Seat Recliner** in this section. If not OK, replace the faulty power seat switch.



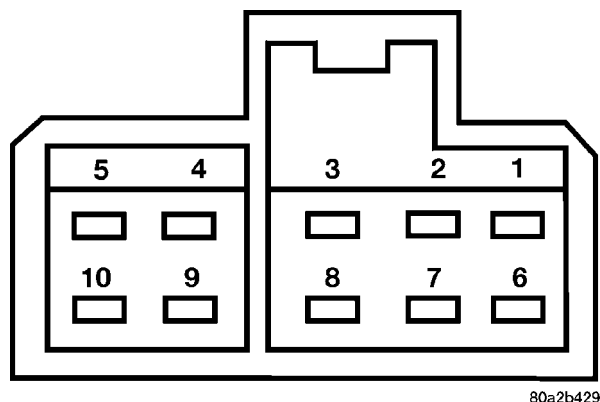
SIX-WAY POWER SEAT SWITCH TEST		
LEFT SWITCH POSITION	RIGHT SWITCH POSITION	CONTINUITY BETWEEN
OFF	OFF	B-N, B-J, B-M, B-E, B-L, B-K
VERTICAL UP	VERTICAL DOWN	A-J, A-N, B-M, B-E
VERTICAL DOWN	VERTICAL UP	A-E, A-M, B-N, B-J
HORIZONTAL FORWARD	HORIZONTAL REARWARD	A-K, B-L
FRONT TILT UP	FRONT TILT DOWN	A-J, B-E
FRONT TILT DOWN	FRONT TILT UP	A-E, B-J
REAR TILT UP	REAR TILT DOWN	A-N, B-M
REAR TILT DOWN	REAR TILT UP	A-M, B-N

80ba79fc

Fig. 3 Rear Of Six-Way Power Seat Switch



## DRIVER SEAT SWITCH (Continued)



80a2b429

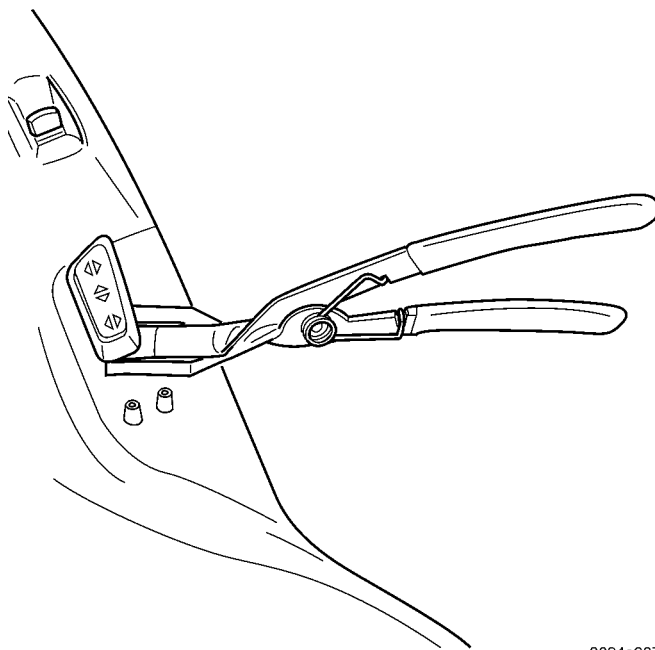
**Fig. 4 Ten-Way Power Seat Switch Connector Receptacle**

SWITCH POSITION	CONTINUITY BETWEEN PINS	
	LEFT SEAT	RIGHT SEAT
OFF	PIN 1 to 2	PIN 1 to 2
	PIN 1 to 3	PIN 1 to 3
	PIN 1 to 4	PIN 1 to 4
	PIN 1 to 6	PIN 1 to 6
	PIN 1 to 7	PIN 1 to 7
	PIN 1 to 8	PIN 1 to 8
	PIN 1 to 9	PIN 1 to 9
	PIN 1 to 10	PIN 1 to 10
FRONT RISER UP	PIN 1 to 10	PIN 1 to 7
	PIN 5 to 7	PIN 5 to 10
FRONT RISER DOWN	PIN 1 to 7	PIN 1 to 10
	PIN 5 to 10	PIN 5 to 7
CENTER SWITCH FORWARD	PIN 1 to 3	PIN 1 to 3
	PIN 5 to 6	PIN 5 to 6
CENTER SWITCH REARWARD	PIN 1 to 6	PIN 1 to 6
	PIN 3 to 5	PIN 3 to 5
REAR RISER UP	PIN 1 to 9	PIN 1 to 8
	PIN 5 to 8	PIN 5 to 9
REAR RISER DOWN	PIN 1 to 8	PIN 1 to 9
	PIN 5 to 9	PIN 5 to 8
RECLINER UP	PIN 1 to 4	PIN 1 to 4
	PIN 2 to 5	PIN 2 to 5
RECLINER DOWN	PIN 1 to 2	PIN 1 to 2
	PIN 4 to 5	PIN 4 to 5

## REMOVAL

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) On models with the ten-way power seat system only, using a push pin remover or another suitable wide flat-bladed tool, gently pry the power seat and power recliner switch knobs off of the switch stems (Fig. 5).



8094e937

**Fig. 5 Removing Switch Control Knobs - Typical**

(3) Remove the three screws that secure the outboard seat cushion side shield to the seat cushion frame.

(4) Pull the outboard seat cushion side shield away from the seat cushion frame far enough to access the power seat switch wire harness connector.

(5) Disconnect the power seat wire harness connector from the power seat switch connector receptacle.

(6) Remove the two screws that secure the power seat switch to the inside of the outboard seat cushion side shield (Fig. 6) or (Fig. 7).

(7) Remove the power seat switch from the outboard seat cushion side shield.

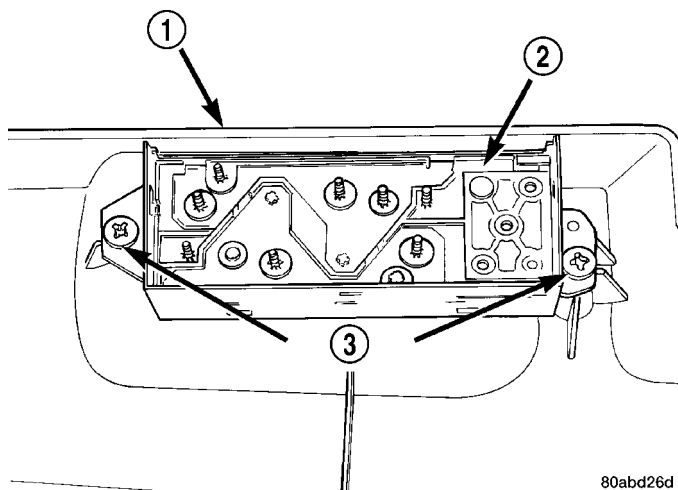
## INSTALLATION

(1) Position the power seat switch onto the outboard seat cushion side shield.

(2) Install and tighten the two screws that secure the power seat switch to the inside of the outboard seat cushion side shield. Tighten the screws to 1.5 N·m (14 in. lbs.).

(3) Reconnect the power seat wire harness connector to the power seat switch connector receptacle.

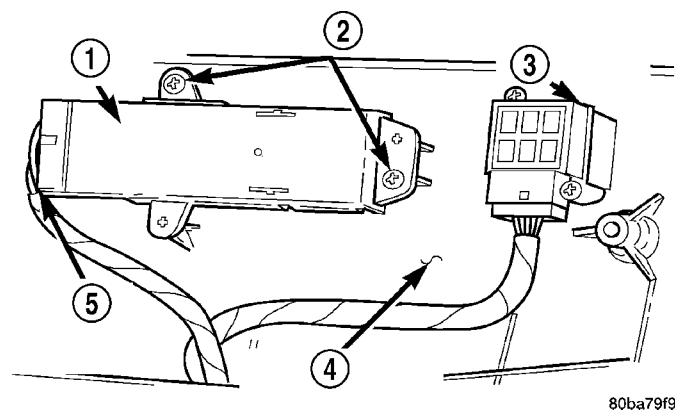
## DRIVER SEAT SWITCH (Continued)



80abd26d

**Fig. 6 Six-Way Power Seat Switches Remove/Install**

- 1 - SEAT SIDE SHIELD
- 2 - POWER SEAT SWITCH
- 3 - SCREWS



80ba79f9

**Fig. 7 Ten-Way Power Seat Switches Remove/Install**

- 1 - POWER SEAT SWITCH
- 2 - SCREWS (2)
- 3 - POWER LUMBAR SWITCH
- 4 - SEAT CUSHION SIDE SHIELD
- 5 - WIRE HARNESS CONNECTOR

(4) Position the outboard seat cushion side shield onto the seat cushion frame

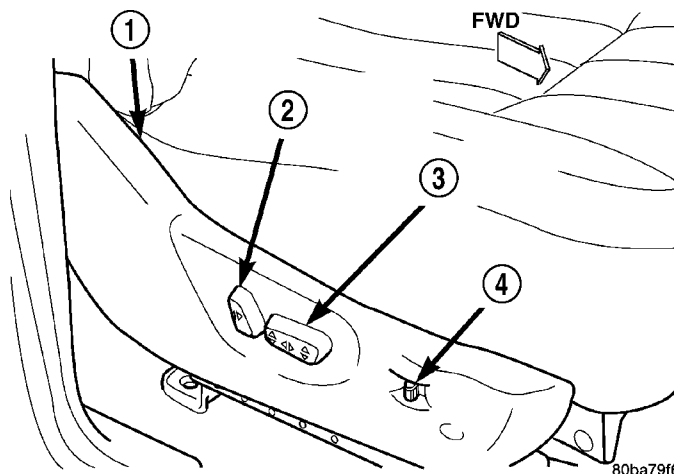
(5) Install and tighten the three screws that secure the outboard seat cushion side shield to the seat cushion frame. Tighten the screws to 1.5 N-m (14 in. lbs.).

(6) On models with the ten-way power seat system only, position the power seat and power recliner switch knobs onto the switch stems and push on them firmly and evenly until they snap into place.

(7) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

## LUMBAR CONTROL SWITCH

## DESCRIPTION



80ba79f6

**Fig. 8 Ten-Way Power Seat Switches**

- 1 - OUTBOARD CUSHION SIDE SHIELD
- 2 - POWER SEAT RECLINER SWITCH
- 3 - POWER SEAT TRACK SWITCH
- 4 - POWER LUMBAR SWITCH

The ten-way power seat option includes an electrically operated lumbar support mechanism. A single two-way momentary power lumbar switch is located on the outboard seat cushion side shield of each front seat, just forward of the other power seat switches (Fig. 8). The power lumbar switch is secured to the back of the seat cushion side shield with two screws, and the switch paddle protrudes through a hole to the outside of the shield. The switch paddle is located in a shallow depression molded into the outer surface of the seat cushion side shield that helps to shroud it from unintentional actuation when entering or leaving the vehicle.

The power lumbar switches cannot be adjusted or repaired and, if faulty or damaged, they must be replaced.

## OPERATION

When the power lumbar switch paddle is actuated, a battery feed and a ground path are applied through the switch contacts to the power lumbar adjuster motor. The motor operates to move the lumbar adjuster through its drive unit in the selected direction until the switch is released, or until the travel limit of the adjuster is reached. When the switch is moved in the opposite direction, the battery feed and ground path to the motor are reversed through the switch contacts. This causes the motor to run in the opposite direction.

The power lumbar switch should not be held applied in either direction after the adjuster has reached its travel limit. The power lumbar adjuster

## LUMBAR CONTROL SWITCH (Continued)

motor contains a self-resetting circuit breaker to protect it from overload. However, consecutive or frequent resetting of the circuit breaker must not be allowed to continue, or the motor may be damaged.

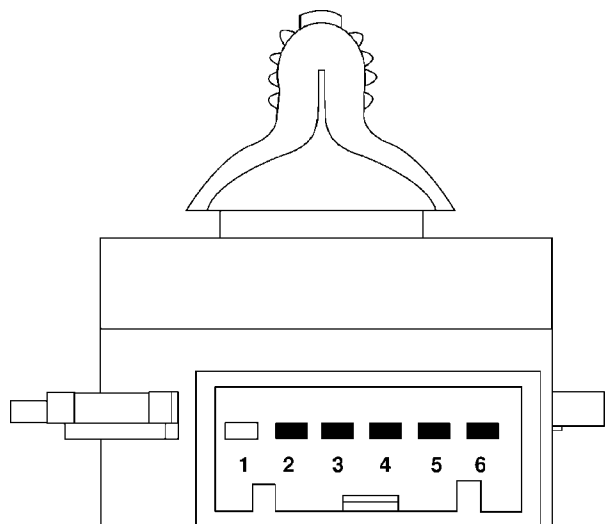
## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - POWER LUMBAR SWITCH

For complete circuit diagrams, refer to **Wiring Diagrams**.

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Remove the power lumbar switch from the outboard seat cushion side shield. Refer to the procedure in this section of the manual.

(3) Use an ohmmeter to test the continuity of the power lumbar switch in each switch position. See the Power Lumbar Switch Continuity chart (Fig. 9). If OK, refer to **Power Lumbar Adjuster Diagnosis and Testing** in this group. If not OK, replace the faulty power lumbar switch.



**Fig. 9 Power Lumbar Switch**

80ba79fb

POWER LUMBAR SWITCH		
LEFT SWITCH POSITION	RIGHT SWITCH POSITION	CONTINUITY BETWEEN
Off	Off	2-4, 3-5
Forward	Rearward	3-5, 4-6
Rearward	Forward	2-4, 3-6

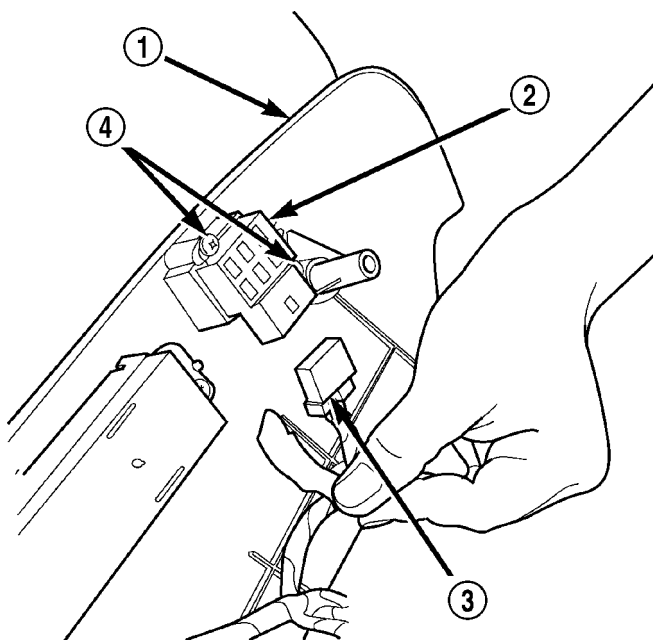
## REMOVAL

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Remove the three screws that secure the outboard seat cushion side shield to the seat cushion frame.

(3) Pull the outboard seat cushion side shield away from the seat cushion frame far enough to access the power lumbar switch wire harness connector.

(4) Disconnect the power seat wire harness connector from the power lumbar switch connector receptacle (Fig. 10).



80ba79f8

**Fig. 10 Power Lumbar Switch Remove/Install**

- 1 - OUTBOARD SEAT CUSHION SIDE SHIELD
- 2 - POWER LUMBAR SWITCH
- 3 - WIRE HARNESS CONNECTOR
- 4 - SCREWS (2)

(5) Remove the two screws that secure the power lumbar switch to the inside of the outboard seat cushion side shield.

(6) Remove the power lumbar switch from the outboard seat cushion side shield.

## LUMBAR CONTROL SWITCH (Continued)

## INSTALLATION

(1) Position the power lumbar switch onto the outboard seat cushion side shield.

(2) Install and tighten the two screws that secure the power lumbar switch to the inside of the outboard seat cushion side shield. Tighten the screws to 1.5 N·m (14 in. lbs.).

(3) Reconnect the power seat wire harness connector to the power lumbar switch connector receptacle.

(4) Position the outboard seat cushion side shield onto the seat cushion frame

(5) Install and tighten the three screws that secure the outboard seat cushion side shield to the seat cushion frame. Tighten the screws to 1.5 N·m (14 in. lbs.).

(6) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

## LUMBAR MOTOR

## DESCRIPTION

The ten-way power seat option includes an electrically operated lumbar support mechanism. The only visible evidence of this option is the separate power lumbar switch control paddle that is located on the outboard seat cushion side shield, just forward of the other power seat switch control knobs. The power lumbar adjuster and motor are concealed beneath the seat back trim cover and padding, where they are secured to a molded plastic back panel and to the seat back frame (Fig. 11).

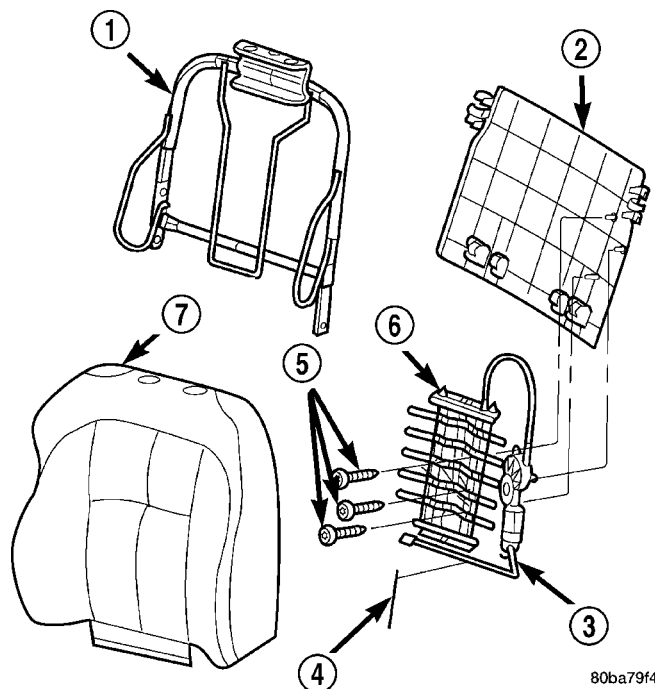
The power lumbar adjuster cannot be repaired, and is serviced only as a unit with the seat back frame. If the power lumbar adjuster or the seat back frame are damaged or faulty, the entire seat back frame unit must be replaced.

## OPERATION

The power lumbar adjuster mechanism includes a reversible electric motor that is secured to the inboard side of the seat back panel and is connected to a worm-drive gearbox. The motor and gearbox operate the lumbar adjuster mechanism in the center of the seat back by extending and retracting a cable that actuates a lever. The action of this lever compresses or relaxes a grid of flexible slats. The more this grid is compressed, the more the slats bow outward against the center of the seat back padding, providing additional lumbar support.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - POWER LUMBAR ADJUSTER

Actuate the power lumbar switch to move the power lumbar adjuster in each direction. The power lumbar adjuster should move in both directions. It should be noted that the power lumbar adjuster nor-



**Fig. 11 Power Lumbar Adjuster**

- 1 - SEAT BACK FRAME
- 2 - SEAT BACK PANEL
- 3 - LUMBAR MOTOR PIGTAIL TO SEAT WIRE HARNESS
- 4 - TIE WRAP
- 5 - SCREW (3)
- 6 - POWER LUMBAR ADJUSTER
- 7 - SEAT BACK TRIM COVER AND PADDING

80ba79f4

mally operates very quietly and exhibits little visible movement. If the power lumbar adjuster fails to operate in only one direction, move the adjuster a short distance in the opposite direction and test again to be certain that the adjuster is not at its travel limit. If the power lumbar adjuster still fails to operate in only one direction, refer to **Diagnosis and Testing Power Lumbar Switch** in this group. If the power lumbar adjuster fails to operate in either direction, perform the following tests. For complete circuit diagrams, refer to **Wiring Diagrams**.

(1) Check the power seat circuit breaker in the junction block. If OK, go to Step 2. If not OK, replace the faulty power seat circuit breaker.

(2) Check for battery voltage at the power seat circuit breaker in the junction block. If OK, go to Step 3. If not OK, repair the open fused B(+) circuit to the fuse in the Power Distribution Center as required.

(3) Remove the outboard seat cushion side shield from the seat. Disconnect the seat wire harness connector from the power lumbar switch connector receptacle. Check for battery voltage at the fused B(+) circuit cavity of the power seat wire harness connector for the power lumbar switch. If OK, go to Step 4. If not OK, repair the open fused B(+) circuit to the power seat circuit breaker in the junction block as required.

## LUMBAR MOTOR (Continued)

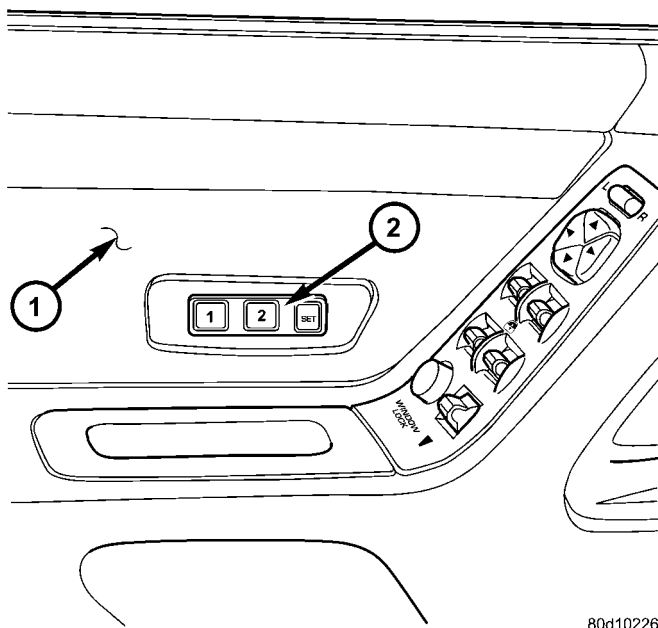
(4) Check for continuity between the ground circuit cavity of the power seat wire harness connector for the power lumbar switch and a good ground. There should be continuity. If OK, go to Step 5. If not OK, repair the open ground circuit to ground as required.

(5) Test the power lumbar switch. Refer to **Diagnosis and Testing Power Lumbar Switch** in this group. If the switch tests OK, test the circuits of the power seat wire harness between the power lumbar adjuster motor and the power lumbar switch for shorts or opens. If the circuits check OK, replace the faulty seat back frame assembly. If the circuits are not OK, repair the power seat wire harness as required.

## MEMORY SET SWITCH

## DESCRIPTION

Vehicles equipped with the memory system have a memory switch mounted to the driver side front door trim panel (Fig. 12). This switch is used to set and recall all of the memory system settings for up to two drivers. The memory switch is a resistor multiplexed unit that is hard wired to the Driver Door Module (DDM), which is also located on the driver side front door trim panel. The DDM sends out the memory system set and recall requests to the other electronic modules over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus.



**Fig. 12 WJ/WG MEMORY SELECT/SET SWITCH**

1 - DRIVER TRIM PANEL  
2 - MEMORY SWITCH

The memory switch cannot be adjusted or repaired and, if faulty or damaged, it must be replaced. For complete circuit diagrams, refer to **Wiring Diagrams**.

## OPERATION

The memory switch has three momentary switch buttons labeled Set, 1 and 2. The Driver 1 and Driver 2 buttons are back-lit with Light-Emitting Diodes (LED) for visibility, and are also color-coded to coincide with the color-coded Driver 1 and Driver 2 Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitters. The Driver 1 memory switch button and RKE transmitter are black, and the Driver 2 memory switch button and RKE transmitter are gray. The memory switch Set button also has an LED that will illuminate and flash to indicate that the memory system is in the set mode. This LED will automatically be extinguished when a set request has been successfully completed.

See the owner's manual in the vehicle glove box for more information on the features, use and operation of the memory switch. For diagnosis of the memory switch, the DDM or the PCI data bus, the use of a DRB scan tool and the proper Diagnostic Procedures manual are recommended.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - MEMORY SWITCH

For complete circuit diagrams, refer to **Wiring Diagrams**.

- (1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.
- (2) Remove the driver side front door trim panel. Refer to the Body section for the procedure.
- (3) Disconnect the memory switch wire harness connector from the driver door module connector receptacle.
- (4) Use an ohmmeter to test the resistances of the memory switch in each switch position. See the Memory Switch Test chart MEMORY SWITCH TEST. If OK, refer to **Memory System Diagnosis and Testing** in this group. If not OK, replace the faulty memory switch.

## MEMORY SWITCH TEST

MEMORY SWITCH POSITION	RESISTANCE BETWEEN	RESISTANCE RANGE (OHMS)
NEUTRAL	A&D	14000 $\pm$ 1%
MEMORY 1	A&B	4600 $\pm$ 1%
MEMORY 2	A&B	1700 $\pm$ 1%
SET	A&B	300 $\pm$ 1%



## MEMORY SET SWITCH (Continued)

## REMOVAL

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Remove the trim panel from the driver side front door. Refer to **Front Door Trim Panel** in Body for the procedure.

(3) Disconnect the memory switch wire harness connector from the driver door module connector receptacle.

(4) Remove the two screws that secure the memory switch to the back of the driver side front door trim panel.

(5) Remove the memory switch from the back of the driver side front door trim panel.

## INSTALLATION

(1) Position the memory switch onto the back of the driver side front door trim panel.

(2) Install and tighten the two screws that secure the memory switch to the back of the driver side front door trim panel. Tighten the screws to 2.2 N·m (20 in. lbs.).

(3) Reconnect the memory switch wire harness connector to the driver door module connector receptacle.

(4) Install the trim panel onto the driver side front door. Refer to **Front Door Trim Panel** in Body for the procedure.

(5) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

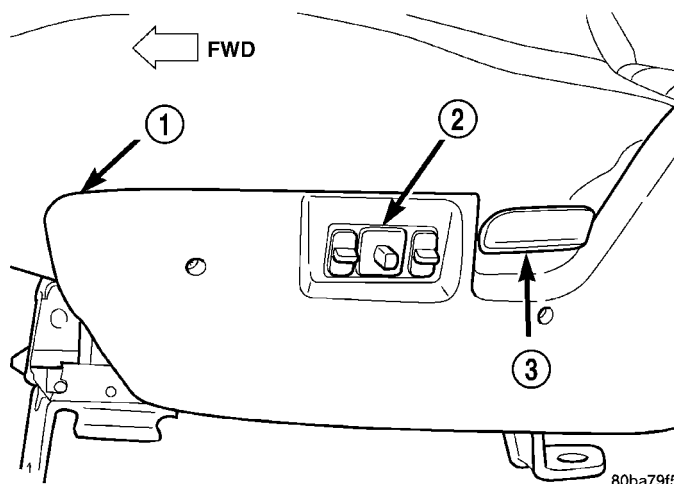
## PASSENGER SEAT SWITCH

## DESCRIPTION

Two different power seat switches are used on this vehicle, depending upon the optional power seat system installed in the vehicle. The six-way power seats are each equipped with a switch featuring three switch control knobs ganged together on the outboard seat cushion side shield (Fig. 13). The ten-way power seats are each equipped with a switch featuring two knobs ganged together on the outboard seat cushion side shield (Fig. 14).

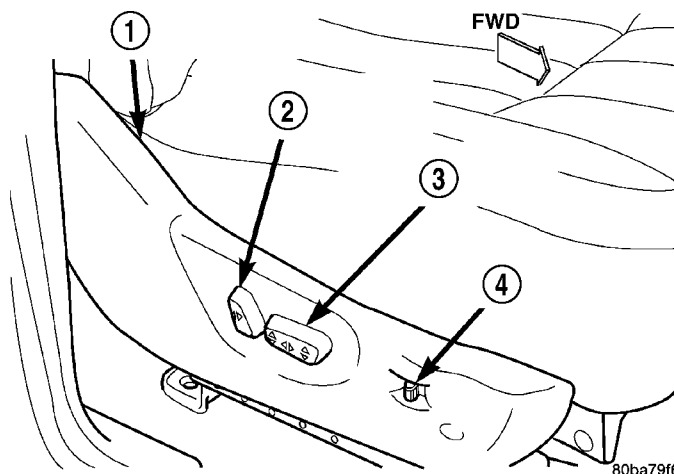
The switch units for both power seat types are secured to the back of the seat cushion side shield with two screws. However, the control knobs for the six-way power seat switch unit remain installed during switch unit removal and installation, while both knobs for the ten-way power seat switch unit must be removed.

The individual switches in both power seat switch units cannot be repaired. If one switch is damaged or faulty, the entire power seat switch unit must be replaced.



**Fig. 13 Six-Way Power Seat Switches - Typical**

- 1 - OUTBOARD SEAT CUSHION SIDE SHIELD
- 2 - POWER SEAT TRACK SWITCHES
- 3 - MECHANICAL SEAT BACK RECLINER LEVER



**Fig. 14 Ten-Way Power Seat Switches - Typical**

- 1 - OUTBOARD CUSHION SIDE SHIELD
- 2 - POWER SEAT RECLINER SWITCH
- 3 - POWER SEAT TRACK SWITCH
- 4 - POWER LUMBAR SWITCH

## OPERATION

The power seat tracks of both the six-way and the ten-way power seat systems can be adjusted in six different ways using the power seat switches. The ten-way system has the additional power seat recliner switch integral to the power seat switch and also has a separate, stand-alone switch to control the power lumbar adjuster. See the owner's manual in the vehicle glove box for more information on the power seat switch functions and the seat adjusting procedures.

## PASSENGER SEAT SWITCH (Continued)

When a power switch control knob or knobs are actuated, a battery feed and a ground path are applied through the switch contacts to the power seat track or recliner adjuster motor. The selected adjuster motor operates to move the seat track or recliner through its drive unit in the selected direction until the switch is released, or until the travel limit of the adjuster is reached. When the switch is moved in the opposite direction, the battery feed and ground path to the motor are reversed through the switch contacts. This causes the adjuster motor to run in the opposite direction.

No power seat switch should be held applied in any direction after the adjuster has reached its travel limit. The power seat adjuster motors each contain a self-resetting circuit breaker to protect them from overload. However, consecutive or frequent resetting of the circuit breaker must not be allowed to continue, or the motor may be damaged.

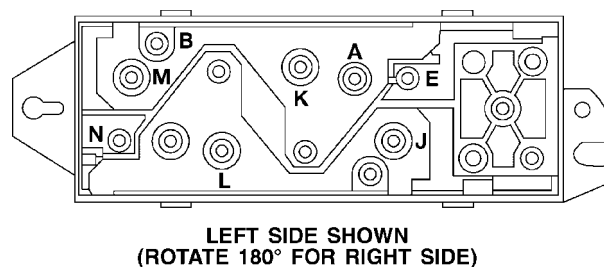
## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - PASSENGER SEAT SWITCH

For complete circuit diagrams, refer to **Wiring Diagrams**.

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Remove the power seat switch from the out-board seat cushion side shield. Refer to the procedure in this section of the manual.

(3) Use an ohmmeter to test the continuity of the power seat switch in each switch position. See the Power Seat Switch Continuity chart (Fig. 15) or (Fig. 16). If OK, refer to **Diagnosis and Testing Power Seat Track** or **Diagnosis and Testing Power Seat Recliner** in this section. If not OK, replace the faulty power seat switch.

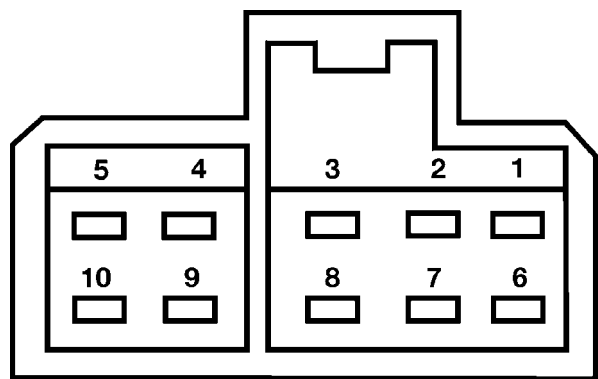


80ba79fc

Fig. 15 Rear Of Six-Way Power Seat Switch

SIX-WAY POWER SEAT SWITCH TEST		
LEFT SWITCH POSITION	RIGHT SWITCH POSITION	CONTINUITY BETWEEN
OFF	OFF	B-N, B-J, B-M, B-E, B-L, B-K
VERTICAL UP	VERTICAL DOWN	A-J, A-N, B-M, B-E
VERTICAL DOWN	VERTICAL UP	A-E, A-M, B-N, B-J
HORIZONTAL FORWARD	HORIZONTAL REARWARD	A-K, B-L
FRONT TILT UP	FRONT TILT DOWN	A-J, B-E
FRONT TILT DOWN	FRONT TILT UP	A-E, B-J
REAR TILT UP	REAR TILT DOWN	A-N, B-M
REAR TILT DOWN	REAR TILT UP	A-M, B-N

## PASSENGER SEAT SWITCH (Continued)



80a2b429

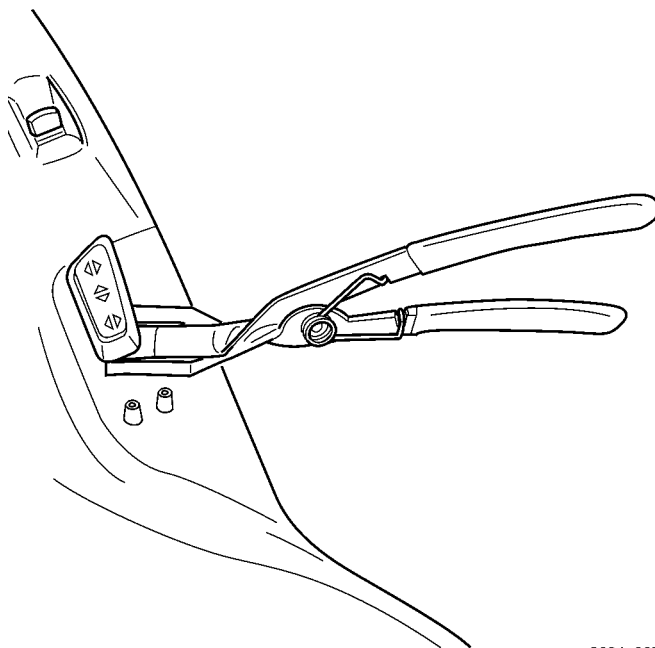
**Fig. 16 Ten-Way Power Seat Switch Connector Receptacle**

SWITCH POSITION	CONTINUITY BETWEEN PINS	
	LEFT SEAT	RIGHT SEAT
OFF	PIN 1 to 2	PIN 1 to 2
	PIN 1 to 3	PIN 1 to 3
	PIN 1 to 4	PIN 1 to 4
	PIN 1 to 6	PIN 1 to 6
	PIN 1 to 7	PIN 1 to 7
	PIN 1 to 8	PIN 1 to 8
	PIN 1 to 9	PIN 1 to 9
	PIN 1 to 10	PIN 1 to 10
FRONT RISER UP	PIN 1 to 10	PIN 1 to 7
	PIN 5 to 7	PIN 5 to 10
FRONT RISER DOWN	PIN 1 to 7	PIN 1 to 10
	PIN 5 to 10	PIN 5 to 7
CENTER SWITCH FORWARD	PIN 1 to 3	PIN 1 to 3
	PIN 5 to 6	PIN 5 to 6
CENTER SWITCH REARWARD	PIN 1 to 6	PIN 1 to 6
	PIN 3 to 5	PIN 3 to 5
REAR RISER UP	PIN 1 to 9	PIN 1 to 8
	PIN 5 to 8	PIN 5 to 9
REAR RISER DOWN	PIN 1 to 8	PIN 1 to 9
	PIN 5 to 9	PIN 5 to 8
RECLINER UP	PIN 1 to 4	PIN 1 to 4
	PIN 2 to 5	PIN 2 to 5
RECLINER DOWN	PIN 1 to 2	PIN 1 to 2
	PIN 4 to 5	PIN 4 to 5

## REMOVAL

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) On models with the ten-way power seat system only, using a push pin remover or another suitable wide flat-bladed tool, gently pry the power seat and power recliner switch knobs off of the switch stems (Fig. 17).



8094e937

**Fig. 17 Removing Switch Control Knobs - Typical**

(3) Remove the three screws that secure the outboard seat cushion side shield to the seat cushion frame.

(4) Pull the outboard seat cushion side shield away from the seat cushion frame far enough to access the power seat switch wire harness connector.

(5) Disconnect the power seat wire harness connector from the power seat switch connector receptacle.

(6) Remove the two screws that secure the power seat switch to the inside of the outboard seat cushion side shield (Fig. 18) or (Fig. 19).

(7) Remove the power seat switch from the outboard seat cushion side shield.

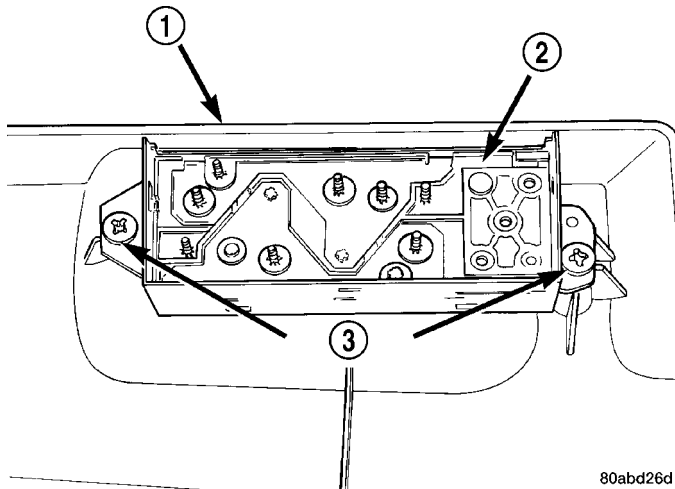
## INSTALLATION

(1) Position the power seat switch onto the outboard seat cushion side shield.

(2) Install and tighten the two screws that secure the power seat switch to the inside of the outboard seat cushion side shield. Tighten the screws to 1.5 N·m (14 in. lbs.).

(3) Reconnect the power seat wire harness connector to the power seat switch connector receptacle.

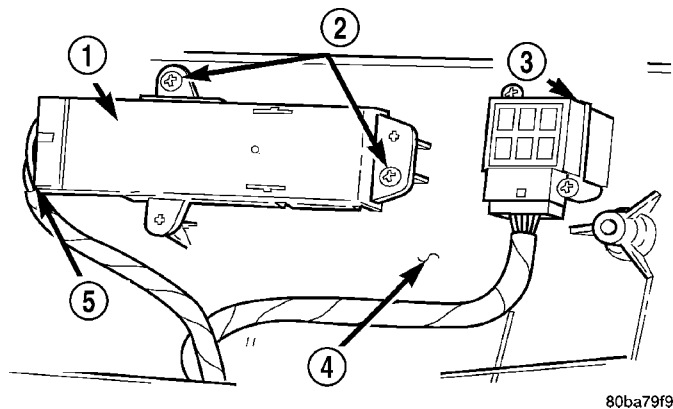
## PASSENGER SEAT SWITCH (Continued)



80abd26d

**Fig. 18 Six-Way Power Seat Switches Remove/Install**

- 1 - SEAT SIDE SHIELD
- 2 - POWER SEAT SWITCH
- 3 - SCREWS



80ba79f9

**Fig. 19 Ten-Way Power Seat Switches Remove/Install**

- 1 - POWER SEAT SWITCH
- 2 - SCREWS (2)
- 3 - POWER LUMBAR SWITCH
- 4 - SEAT CUSHION SIDE SHIELD
- 5 - WIRE HARNESS CONNECTOR

(4) Position the outboard seat cushion side shield onto the seat cushion frame

(5) Install and tighten the three screws that secure the outboard seat cushion side shield to the seat cushion frame. Tighten the screws to 1.5 N-m (14 in. lbs.).

(6) On models with the ten-way power seat system only, position the power seat and power recliner switch knobs onto the switch stems and push on them firmly and evenly until they snap into place.

(7) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

## RECLINER MOTOR

## DESCRIPTION

The ten-way power seat option includes an electrically operated seat back recliner mechanism. The only visible evidence of this option is the separate power seat recliner switch control knob that is located on the outboard seat cushion side shield, just behind the other power seat switch control knob. The power seat recliner switch is integral to the ten-way power seat switch unit, but is actuated with a separate switch knob.

The power seat recliner unit is mounted in the place of a seat hinge on the outboard side of the seat (Fig. 20). The upper hinge plate of the power seat recliner mechanism is secured with two screws to the seat back frame and is concealed beneath the seat back trim cover and padding. The lower hinge plate and the motor and drive unit of the power seat recliner mechanism is secured with two screws to the seat cushion frame, and is concealed by the outboard seat cushion side shield.

The power seat recliner cannot be repaired. If the unit is faulty or damaged, it must be replaced. Refer to **Bucket Seat Recliner** in Body for the service procedure.

## OPERATION

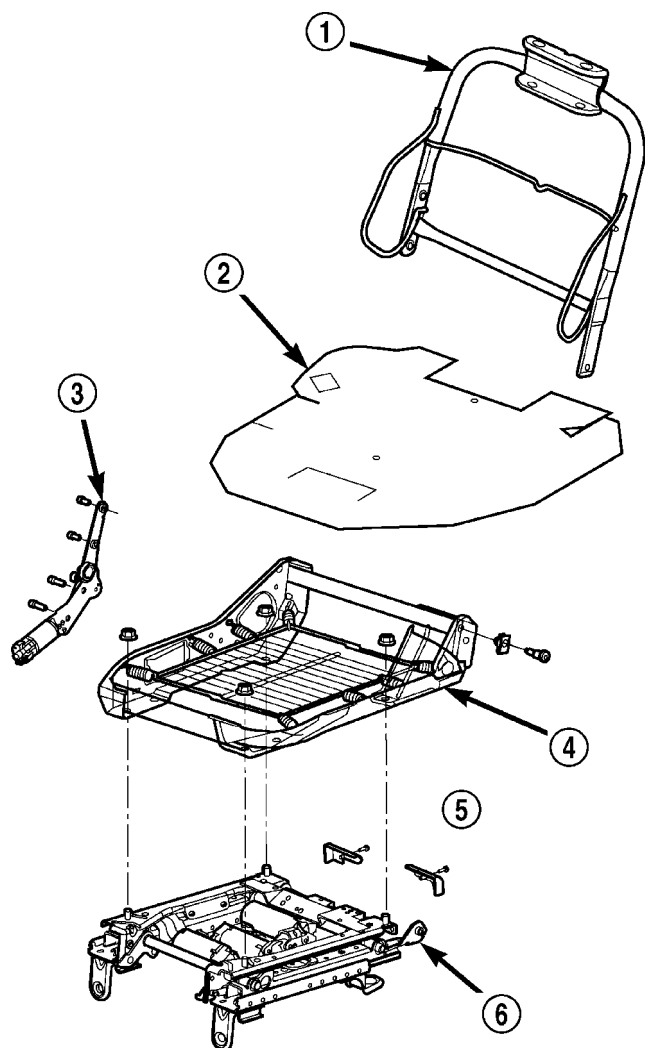
The power seat recliner includes a reversible electric motor that is secured to the lower hinge plate of the recliner unit. The motor is connected to a gearbox that moves the upper hinge plate of the power seat recliner through a screw-type drive unit. The driver side power seat recliner motor used on models equipped with the optional memory system also has a position potentiometer integral to the motor assembly, which electronically monitors the motor position.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - RECLINER MOTOR

Actuate the power seat recliner switch to move the power seat recliner adjuster in each direction. The power seat recliner adjuster should move in both directions. If the power seat recliner adjuster fails to operate in only one direction, move the adjuster a short distance in the opposite direction and test again to be certain that the adjuster is not at its travel limit. If the power seat recliner adjuster still fails to operate in only one direction, refer to **Power Seat Switch Diagnosis and Testing** in this group. If the power recliner adjuster fails to operate in either direction, perform the following tests. For complete circuit diagrams, refer to **Wiring Diagrams**.

(1) Check the power seat circuit breaker in the junction block. If OK, go to Step 2. If not OK, replace the faulty power seat circuit breaker.

## RECLINER MOTOR (Continued)



80b6f0a9

**Fig. 20 Power Seat Recliner and Track - Typical**

- 1 - SEAT BACK FRAME
- 2 - SEAT CUSHION PAD
- 3 - POWER RECLINER
- 4 - SEAT CUSHION FRAME
- 5 - SHIELD
- 6 - POWER SEAT TRACK ADJUSTER

(2) Check for battery voltage at the power seat circuit breaker in the junction block. If OK, go to Step 3. If not OK, repair the open fused B(+) circuit to the fuse in the Power Distribution Center as required.

(3) Remove the outboard seat cushion side shield from the seat. Disconnect the seat wire harness connector from the power seat switch connector receptacle. Check for battery voltage at the fused B(+) circuit cavity of the power seat wire harness connector for the power seat switch. If OK, go to Step 4. If not OK, repair the open fused B(+) circuit to the power seat circuit breaker in the junction block as required.

(4) Check for continuity between the ground circuit cavity of the power seat wire harness connector

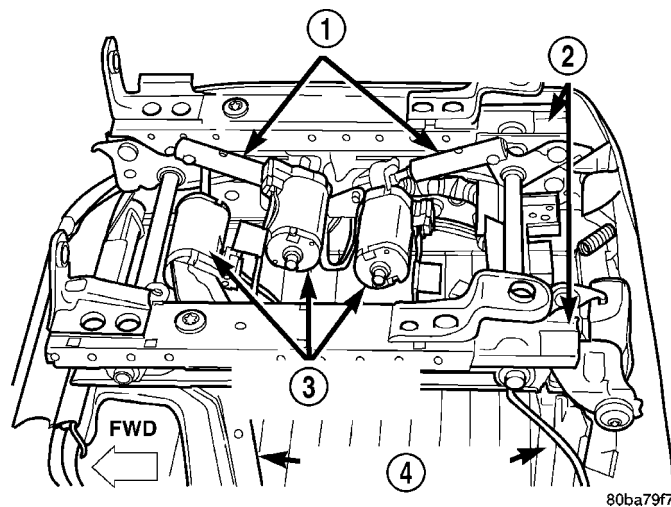
for the power seat switch and a good ground. There should be continuity. If OK, go to Step 5. If not OK, repair the open ground circuit to ground as required.

(5) Test the power seat switch. Refer to **Power Seat Switch Diagnosis and Testing** in this group. If the switch tests OK, test the circuits of the power seat wire harness between the power seat recliner adjuster motor and the power seat switch for shorts or opens. If the circuits check OK, replace the faulty power seat recliner unit. If the circuits are not OK, repair the power seat wire harness as required.

## POWER SEAT TRACK

## DESCRIPTION

Both the six-way and the ten-way power seat options include a single electrically operated power seat track unit located under each front bucket seat (Fig. 21). The power seat track unit replaces the standard equipment manual seat tracks. The lower half of the power seat track is secured at the front with two screws to the floor panel seat cross member, and at the rear with two screws to the floor panel. Four nuts secure the bottom of the seat cushion frame to four studs on the upper half of the power seat track unit.



80ba79f7

**Fig. 21 Power Seat Track - Typical**

- 1 - DRIVE UNITS
- 2 - LOWER SEAT TRACKS
- 3 - POWER SEAT MOTORS
- 4 - SEAT CUSHION FRAME

The power seat track unit cannot be repaired, and is serviced only as a complete unit. If any component in this unit is faulty or damaged, the entire power seat track unit must be replaced. Refer to **Bucket Seat Track Adjuster** in Body for the service procedure.



## POWER SEAT TRACK (Continued)

**OPERATION**

The power seat track unit includes three reversible electric motors that are secured to the upper half of the track unit. Each motor moves the seat adjuster through a combination of worm-drive gearboxes and screw-type drive units. Each of the three driver side power seat track motors used on models equipped with the optional memory system also has a position potentiometer integral to the motor assembly, which electronically monitors the motor position.

The front and rear of the seat are operated by two separate vertical adjustment motors. These motors can be operated independently of each other, tilting the entire seat assembly forward or rearward; or, they can be operated in unison by selecting the proper power seat switch functions, which will raise or lower the entire seat assembly. The third motor is the horizontal adjustment motor, which moves the seat track in the forward and rearward directions.

**DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - POWER SEAT TRACK**

Following are tests that will help to diagnose the hard wired components and circuits of the power seat system. However, if the vehicle is also equipped with the optional memory system, these tests may not prove conclusive in the diagnosis of the driver side power seat. In order to obtain conclusive testing of the driver side power seat with the memory system option, the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network and all of the electronic modules that provide inputs to, or receive outputs from the memory system components must be checked.

The most reliable, efficient, and accurate means to diagnose the driver side power seat with the memory system option requires the use of a DRB® scan tool and the proper Diagnostic Procedures manual. The DRB® scan tool can provide confirmation that the PCI data bus is functional, that all of the electronic modules are sending and receiving the proper messages on the PCI data bus, and that the memory system is receiving the proper hard wired inputs and relaying the proper hard wired outputs to perform its driver side power seat functions.

Actuate the power seat switch to move all three power seat track adjusters in each direction. The power seat track adjusters should move in each of the selected directions. If a power seat track adjuster fails to operate in only one direction, move the adjuster a short distance in the opposite direction and test again to be certain that the adjuster is not at its travel limit. If the power seat track adjuster still fails to operate in only one direction, refer to **Power Seat Switch Diagnosis and Testing** in this group. If the power seat track adjuster fails to operate in more than one direction, perform the following tests. For complete circuit diagrams, refer to **Wiring Diagrams**.

(1) Check the power seat circuit breaker in the junction block. If OK, go to Step 2. If not OK, replace the faulty power seat circuit breaker.

(2) Check for battery voltage at the power seat circuit breaker in the junction block. If OK, go to Step 3. If not OK, repair the open fused B(+) circuit to the fuse in the Power Distribution Center as required.

(3) Remove the outboard seat cushion side shield from the seat. Disconnect the seat wire harness connector from the power seat switch connector receptacle. Check for battery voltage at the fused B(+) circuit cavity of the power seat wire harness connector for the power seat switch. If OK, go to Step 4. If not OK, repair the open fused B(+) circuit to the power seat circuit breaker in the junction block as required.

(4) Check for continuity between the ground circuit cavity of the power seat wire harness connector for the power seat switch and a good ground. There should be continuity. If OK, go to Step 5. If not OK, repair the open ground circuit to ground as required.

(5) Test the power seat switch. Refer to **Power Seat Switch Diagnosis and Testing** in this group. If the switch tests OK, test the circuits of the power seat wire harness between the inoperative power seat track adjuster motor and the power seat switch for shorts or opens. If the circuits check OK, replace the faulty power seat track unit. If the circuits are not OK, repair the power seat wire harness as required.

## POWER WINDOWS

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>POWER WINDOWS</b>		REMOVAL	38
DESCRIPTION	34	INSTALLATION	39
OPERATION	35	<b>WINDOW MOTOR</b>	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - POWER		DESCRIPTION	39
WINDOWS	35	OPERATION	39
<b>POWER WINDOW SWITCH</b>		DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - WINDOW	
DESCRIPTION	37	MOTOR	39
OPERATION	37	REMOVAL	40
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - POWER		INSTALLATION	40
WINDOW SWITCH	38		

## POWER WINDOWS

### DESCRIPTION

Power operated driver side and passenger side front and rear door windows are standard factory-installed equipment on this model. The power window system allows each of the door windows to be raised or lowered electrically by operating a switch on the trim panel for that door. Additionally, the master switches on the driver side front door trim panel allow all of the windows to be operated from the driver seat position. A power window lockout switch on the driver side front door trim panel will allow the driver to disable all of the passenger door window switches.

The power window system functionally operates when the ignition switch is in the On position. However, a unique feature of this system will allow the power windows to be operated for up to forty-five seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the Off position, or until a front door is opened, whichever occurs first.

An auto-down feature allows the driver side front door window to be lowered all the way, even if the window switch is released. The driver side front door window switch must be depressed in the down direction to a second detent to begin an auto-down event. Depressing the switch again in any direction cancel the auto-down event and begin movement in the direction specified.

This group covers the following components of the power window system:

- Power window switches
- Power window motors.

Certain functions and features of the power window system rely upon resources shared with other electronic modules in the vehicle over the Program-

mable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network. The PCI data bus network allows the sharing of sensor information. This helps to reduce wire harness complexity, internal controller hardware, and component sensor current loads. At the same time, this system provides increased reliability, enhanced diagnostics, and allows the addition of many new feature capabilities. For diagnosis of these electronic modules or of the PCI data bus network, the use of a DRB scan tool and the proper Diagnostic Procedures manual are recommended.

The other electronic modules that may affect power window system operation are as follows:

- **Body Control Module (BCM)** - (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/ELECTRONIC CONTROL MODULES/BODY CONTROL/CENTRAL TIMER MODULE - DESCRIPTION) for more information.
- **Driver Door Module (DDM)** - (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/ELECTRONIC CONTROL MODULES/DRIVER DOOR MODULE - DESCRIPTION) for more information.
- **Passenger Door Module (PDM)** - (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/ELECTRONIC CONTROL MODULES/DRIVER DOOR MODULE - DESCRIPTION) for more information.

This group covers diagnosis and service of only the electrical components in the power window system. For service of mechanical components, such as the regulator, lift plate, window tracks, or glass refer to Body. Refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, details of wire harness routing and retention, connector pin-out information and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds. Following are general descriptions of the major components in the power window system.

## POWER WINDOWS (Continued)

**OPERATION**

The power window system includes the Driver Door Module (DDM) and Passenger Door Module (PDM), which are mounted in their respective front door, the rear door power window switches mounted on the rear doors, and the power window motors mounted to the window regulator in each door. The DDM houses four master power window switches, the power window lockout switch and the control logic for the driver side front and rear door power windows. The PDM houses the passenger side front door power window switch and the control logic for the passenger side front and rear door power windows.

When a master power window switch on the DDM is used to operate a passenger side power window, the DDM sends the window switch actuation message to the PDM over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus. The PDM responds to these messages by sending control outputs to move the passenger side power window motors. In addition, when the power window lockout switch in the DDM is actuated to disable power window operation, a lockout message is sent to the PDM over the PCI data bus.

The Body Control Module (BCM) also supports and controls certain features of the power window system. The BCM receives a hard wired input from the ignition switch. The programming in the BCM allows it to process the information from this input and send ignition switch status messages to the DDM and the PDM over the PCI data bus. The DDM and PDM use this information and hard wired inputs from the front door ajar switches to control the lighting of the power window switch lamps, and to control the operation of the power window after ignition-off feature.

See the owner's manual in the vehicle glove box for more information on the features, use and operation of the power window system.

**DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - POWER WINDOWS**

Following are tests that will help to diagnose the hard wired components and circuits of the power window system. However, these tests may not prove conclusive in the diagnosis of this system. In order to obtain conclusive testing of the power window system, the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network and all of the electronic modules that provide inputs to, or receive outputs from the power window system components must be checked.

The most reliable, efficient, and accurate means to diagnose the power window system requires the use of a DRB scan tool and the proper Diagnostic Procedures manual. The DRB scan tool can provide confir-

mation that the PCI data bus is functional, that all of the electronic modules are sending and receiving the proper messages on the PCI data bus, and that the power window motors are being sent the proper hard wired outputs by the door modules for them to perform their power window system functions.

For complete circuit diagrams, refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, details of wire harness routing and retention, connector pin-out information and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

**ALL WINDOWS INOPERATIVE**

(1) Check the operation of the power lock switch on the driver side front door. If all of the doors lock and unlock, but none of the power windows operate, use a DRB scan tool and the proper Diagnostic Procedures manual to check the Body Control Module (BCM), the Driver Door Module (DDM) and the PCI data bus for proper operation. If not OK, go to Step 2.

(2) Check the operation of the power lock switch on the passenger side front door. If the passenger doors lock and unlock, but the driver side front door does not, go to Step 5. If all of the power locks and power windows are inoperative from both front doors, go to Step 3.

(3) Check the fused B(+) fuse in the Power Distribution Center (PDC). If OK, go to Step 4. If not OK, repair the shorted circuit or component as required and replace the faulty fuse.

(4) Check for battery voltage at the fused B(+) fuse in the PDC. If OK, go to Step 5. If not OK, repair the open fused B(+) circuit to the battery as required.

(5) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Remove the trim panel from the driver side front door. Disconnect the 15-way door wire harness connector from the DDM connector receptacle. Check for continuity between the ground circuit cavity of the 15-way door wire harness connector for the DDM and a good ground. There should be continuity. If OK, go to Step 6. If not OK, repair the open ground circuit to ground as required.

(6) Reconnect the battery negative cable. Check for battery voltage at the fused B(+) circuit cavity of the 15-way door wire harness connector for the DDM. If OK, replace the faulty DDM. If not OK, repair the open fused B(+) circuit to the fuse in the PDC as required.

**PASSENGER SIDE FRONT AND REAR WINDOWS INOPERATIVE**

If the driver side front and rear power windows operate, but the passenger side front and rear do not,



## POWER WINDOWS (Continued)

use a DRB scan tool and the proper Diagnostic Procedures manual to check the PCI data bus for proper operation.

**ONE WINDOW INOPERATIVE**

The window glass and regulator mechanism must be free to slide up and down for the power window motor to function properly. If the window glass and regulator is not free to move up and down, the motor will overload and trip the integral circuit breaker. To determine if the window glass and regulator are free, disconnect the regulator plate from the glass. Then slide the window up and down by hand.

There is an alternate method to check if the window glass and regulator mechanism is free. Position the glass between the up and down stops. Then, shake the glass in the door. Check that the glass can be moved slightly from side to side, front to rear, and up and down. Then check that the glass is not bound tight in the tracks.

If the window glass and regulator mechanism is free, refer to **Door Module** in Electrical, Power Windows. If the glass is not free, inspect the window glass mounting and operating hardware for damage or improperly installed components. Refer to **Body** to check for proper installation or damage of the window glass mounting and operating hardware.

**DOOR MODULE**

**NOTE:** The following tests may not prove conclusive in the diagnosis of this component. The most reliable, efficient, and accurate means to diagnose this component requires the use of a DRB scan tool and the proper Diagnostic Procedures manual.

If the problem being diagnosed is a rear door window that does not operate from the rear door switch, but does operate from the master switch on the driver side front door, (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/POWER WINDOWS/POWER WINDOW SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). If the problem is a passenger side front or rear window that operates from the switch on that door, but does not operate from the master switch on the driver side front door, use a DRB scan tool and the proper Diagnostic Procedures manual to diagnose the circuitry of both door modules and the PCI data bus. For complete circuit diagrams, refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, details of wire harness routing and retention, connector pin-out information and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Remove the trim panel from the front door, but

do not disconnect the door wire harness connectors from the door module. Go to Step 2.

(2) Check the 15-way door wire harness connector for the door module to see that it is fully seated in the door module connector receptacle. If OK, go to Step 3. If not OK, properly connect the 15-way door wire harness connector for the door module to the door module connector receptacle.

(3) Disconnect the 15-way door wire harness connector from the door module connector receptacle. Check for continuity between the ground circuit cavity of the 15-way door wire harness connector for the door module and a good ground. There should be continuity. If OK, go to Step 4. If not OK, repair the open ground circuit to ground as required.

(4) Connect the battery negative cable. Check for battery voltage at the fused B(+) circuit cavity of the 15-way door wire harness connector for the door module. If OK, go to Step 5. If not OK, repair the open fused B(+) circuit to the fuse in the Power Distribution Center (PDC) as required.

(5) If the inoperative window is on a front door, go to Step 6. If the inoperative window is on a rear door go to Step 9.

(6) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Disconnect the door wire harness connector from the inoperative power window motor wire harness connector. Check for continuity between the front window driver up circuit cavity of the 15-way door wire harness connector for the door module and a good ground. Repeat the check for the front window driver down circuit. In each case there should be no continuity. If OK, go to Step 7. If not OK, repair the shorted front window driver up or down circuit as required.

(7) Check for continuity between the front window driver up circuit cavities of the 15-way door wire harness connector for the door module and the door wire harness connector for the power window motor. Repeat the check for the front window driver down circuit. In each case there should be continuity. If OK, go to Step 8. If not OK, repair the open front window driver up or down circuit as required.

(8) Reconnect the 15-way door wire harness connector back into the door module connector receptacle. Connect the battery negative cable. Connect the probes of a reversible DC digital voltmeter to the door wire harness connector for the power window motor. Observe the voltmeter while actuating the switch for that window in the up and down directions. There should be battery voltage for as long as the switch is held in both the up and down positions, and no voltage in the neutral position. If OK, (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/POWER WINDOWS/WINDOW MOTOR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). If not OK, replace the faulty door module.

## POWER WINDOWS (Continued)

(9) Check the rear door power window switch continuity. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/POWER WINDOWS/POWER WINDOW SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). If OK, go to Step 10. If not OK, replace the faulty rear door power window switch.

(10) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Reconnect the door wire harness connector to the rear door power window switch. Disconnect the door wire harness connector from the inoperative power window motor wire harness connector. Check for continuity between the rear window driver up circuit cavity of the 15-way door wire harness connector for the door module and a good ground. Repeat the check for the rear window driver down circuit. In each case there should be no continuity. If OK, go to Step 11. If not OK, repair the shorted rear window driver up or down circuit as required.

(11) Check for continuity between the rear window driver up circuit cavities of the 15-way door wire harness connector for the door module and the power window motor wire harness connector. Repeat the check for the rear window driver down circuit. In each case there should be continuity. If OK, go to Step 12. If not OK, repair the open rear window driver up or down circuit as required.

**NOTE:** The door module feeds battery current to both terminals of the rear door power window motors when the power window lockout switch is in the Unlock position, until the master window switch on the driver side front door is actuated. The door module feeds ground to both terminals of the rear door power window motor when the power window lockout switch is in the Lock position, until the master window switch on the driver side front door is actuated.

(12) Reconnect the 15-way door wire harness connector for the door module to the door module connector receptacle. Connect the battery negative cable. Check for battery voltage at each cavity in the door wire harness connector for the power window motor. Each cavity should have battery voltage when the power window switch is in the neutral position. Each cavity should also have battery voltage in one other switch position, either up or down, and zero volts with the switch in the opposite position. If OK, (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/POWER WINDOWS/WINDOW MOTOR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). If not OK, replace the faulty door module.

## POWER WINDOW SWITCH

### DESCRIPTION

The power window motors are controlled by a two-way momentary switch mounted on the trim panel of

each passenger door, and four two-way momentary switches on the driver side front door trim panel. The driver side front door trim panel also has a two-position power window lockout switch. Each power window switch, except the lockout switch, is illuminated by a Light-Emitting Diode (LED) that is integral to the switch paddle.

The front door power window switches and the power window lockout switch are integral to the Driver Door Module (DDM) and Passenger Door Module (PDM). The front door power window switches and their lamps cannot be adjusted or repaired and, if faulty or damaged, the entire DDM or PDM unit must be replaced. The rear door power window switches and their lamps cannot be adjusted or repaired but, if faulty or damaged, only the affected rear door power window switch must be replaced. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/ELECTRONIC CONTROL MODULES/DRIVER DOOR MODULE - REMOVAL).

### OPERATION

The front door power window switches provide an up or down (or lock and unlock signal in the case of the lockout switch) to the door module circuitry. The Driver Door Module (DDM) circuitry controls the output to the driver side front and rear door power window motors, and supplies electrical current as required for the stand-alone operation of the driver side rear door power window switch. The Passenger Door Module (PDM) circuitry controls the output to the passenger side front and rear door power window motors, and supplies electrical current as required for the stand-alone operation of the passenger side rear door power window switch.

When a DDM-integrated master power window switch for a passenger side window is actuated, or when the power window lockout switch is actuated to disable the passenger door power windows, the DDM circuitry sends a message to the PDM over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus to control the output to that power window motor(s).

The power window switch for the driver side front door power window has two detent positions in the Down direction. The first detent provides normal power window down operation. If this switch is depressed to the second detent, the Auto Down circuitry of the DDM is activated. The Auto-Down circuitry will automatically move the driver side front door window to its fully lowered position, even if the power window switch is released. The Auto-Down event will be automatically cancelled and the window movement will be stopped if the DDM circuitry detects a second input from the driver side front door power window switch, in either direction.



## POWER WINDOW SWITCH (Continued)

Each power window switch, except the lockout switch, is illuminated by a Light-Emitting Diode (LED) when the ignition switch is turned to the On position. However, when the lockout switch is placed in the Lock position, the LED for the locked-out front and rear passenger door power window switches is turned off.

See the owner's manual in the vehicle glove box for more information on the features, use and operation of the power window switches.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - POWER WINDOW SWITCH

The diagnosis found here applies only to the rear door power window switches. If the problem being diagnosed is an inoperative power window switch illumination lamp, but the power window switch operates as designed, replace the faulty rear door power window switch (**verify the power lockout switch is not actuated**). For complete circuit diagrams, refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, details of wire harness routing and retention, connector pin-out information and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Remove the power window switch from the rear door trim panel. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/POWER WINDOWS/POWER WINDOW SWITCH - REMOVAL).

(3) Check the rear door power window switch continuity as shown in the Rear Door Power Window Switch Continuity chart (Fig. 1). If OK, (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/POWER WINDOWS/WINDOW MOTOR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). If not OK, replace the faulty rear door power window switch.

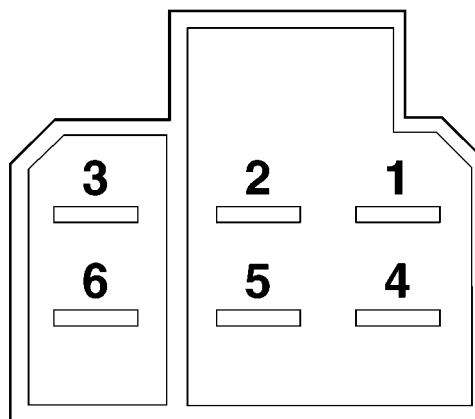
## REMOVAL

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Remove the trim panel from the rear door. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOORS - REAR/TRIM PANEL - REMOVAL) for the procedures.

(3) Using a trim stick or another suitable wide flat-bladed tool, gently pry the sides of the switch receptacle on the back of the rear door trim panel away from the perimeter of the power window switch to release the switch from the receptacle (Fig. 2).

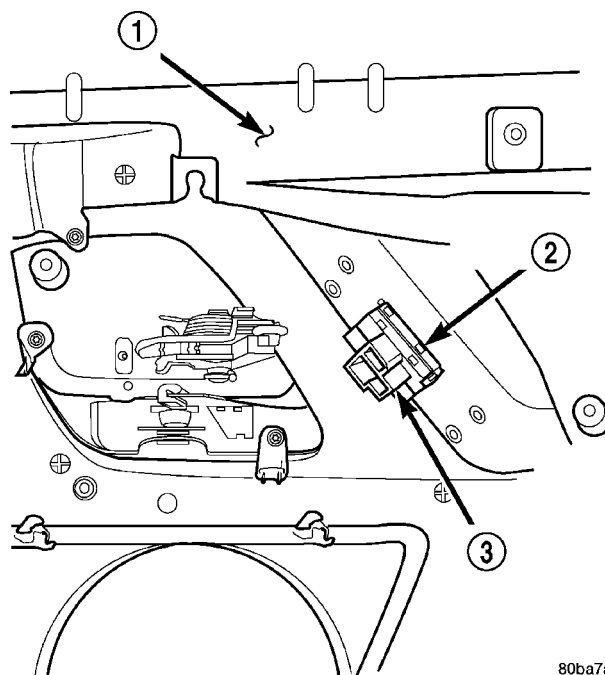
(4) Remove the power window switch from the rear door trim panel switch receptacle.



809b0d52

Fig. 1 Rear Door Power Window Switch Continuity

SWITCH POSITION	CONTINUITY BETWEEN
LED	3 AND 6
OFF	1 AND 2
OFF	4 AND 5
FORWARD	1 AND 2
FORWARD	5 AND 6
REARWARD	2 AND 6
REARWARD	4 AND 5



80ba7a49

Fig. 2 Rear Door Power Window Switch Remove/Install

- 1 - REAR DOOR TRIM PANEL
- 2 - TRIM PANEL RECEPTACLE
- 3 - POWER WINDOW SWITCH

## POWER WINDOW SWITCH (Continued)

**INSTALLATION**

- (1) Position the power window switch to the rear door trim panel switch receptacle.
- (2) Press firmly and evenly on the back of the power window switch until it snaps into rear door trim panel switch receptacle.
- (3) Install the trim panel onto the rear door. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOORS - REAR/TRIM PANEL - INSTALLATION) for the procedures.
- (4) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

**WINDOW MOTOR****DESCRIPTION**

Power operated front and rear door windows are standard equipment on this model. Each door has a permanent magnet reversible electric motor with an integral right angle gearbox mechanism that operates the window regulator. In addition, each power window motor is equipped with an integral self-resetting circuit breaker to protect the motor from overloads.

The power window motor gearbox housing is secured to the window regulator drum housing with screws. The window regulators used in all four doors are single vertical post cable-and-drum type. A molded plastic slider guided by the post is driven by the regulator cables. The slider raises and lowers the window glass through a steel lift plate attachment. Front and rear glass channels within each door guide and stabilize each end of the glass.

The power window motor and gearbox assembly cannot be repaired and, if faulty or damaged, the entire power window motor and gearbox unit must be replaced. The window regulators are available for service. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/WINDOW REGULATOR - REMOVAL) or (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOORS - REAR/WINDOW REGULATOR - REMOVAL) for the regulator service procedures.

**OPERATION**

A positive and negative battery connection to the two motor terminals will cause the power window motor to rotate in one direction. Reversing the current through these same two connections will cause the motor to rotate in the opposite direction.

When the power window motor operates, it rotates the regulator cable drum through its gearbox. The window regulator cable drum is connected through two cables to the plastic slider on the vertical post. As the cable drum rotates, it lets cable out on one side of the drum, and takes cable in on the other side of the drum. The changes in cable length move the slider up or down the vertical post, raising or lowering the window glass.

If the window regulator or window glass bind, encounter obstructions, or reach their travel limits it overloads the power window motor. The overloading condition causes the power window motor self-resetting circuit breaker to open, which stops the motor from running.

**DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - WINDOW MOTOR**

Before you proceed with this diagnosis, confirm proper switch operation. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/ELECTRONIC CONTROL MODULES/DRIVER DOOR MODULE - OPERATION) or (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/POWER WINDOWS/POWER WINDOW SWITCH - OPERATION). For complete circuit diagrams, refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, details of wire harness routing and retention, connector pin-out information and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

(1) Remove the trim panel from the door with the inoperative power window. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/TRIM PANEL - REMOVAL) or (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOORS - REAR/TRIM PANEL - REMOVAL) for the procedures.

(2) Disconnect the door wire harness connector from the power window motor wire harness connector. Apply battery current to one cavity of the power window motor wire harness connector, and apply ground to the other cavity of the connector. The power window motor should operate in one direction. Remember, if the window is in the full up or full down position, the motor will not operate in that direction by design. If OK, go to Step 3. If not OK, replace the faulty power window motor.

(3) Reverse the battery and ground connections to the two cavities of the power window motor wire harness connector. The power window motor should now operate in the other direction. Remember, if the window is in the full up or full down position, the motor will not operate in that direction by design. If OK, go to Step 4. If not OK, replace the faulty power window motor.

(4) If the power window motor operates in both directions, check the operation of the window glass and regulator mechanism through its complete up and down travel. There should be no binding or sticking of the window glass or regulator mechanism through the entire travel range. If not OK, (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/WINDOW REGULATOR - REMOVAL) or (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOORS - REAR/WINDOW REGULATOR - REMOVAL) to check for proper installation or damage of the window glass mounting and operating hardware.

## WINDOW MOTOR (Continued)

**REMOVAL**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Remove the window regulator from the door. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/WINDOW REGULATOR - REMOVAL) or (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOORS - REAR/WINDOW REGULATOR - REMOVAL) for the procedures.

(3) Place the window regulator on a suitable work surface and remove the screws that secure the power window motor to the window regulator.

(4) Remove the power window motor from the window regulator.

**INSTALLATION**

(1) Position the power window motor onto the window regulator.

(2) Install and tighten the screws that secure the power window motor to the window regulator. Tighten the screws to 9 N·m (80 in. lbs.).

(3) Install the window regulator onto the door. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/WINDOW REGULATOR - INSTALLATION) or (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOORS - REAR/WINDOW REGULATOR - INSTALLATION) for the procedures.

(4) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

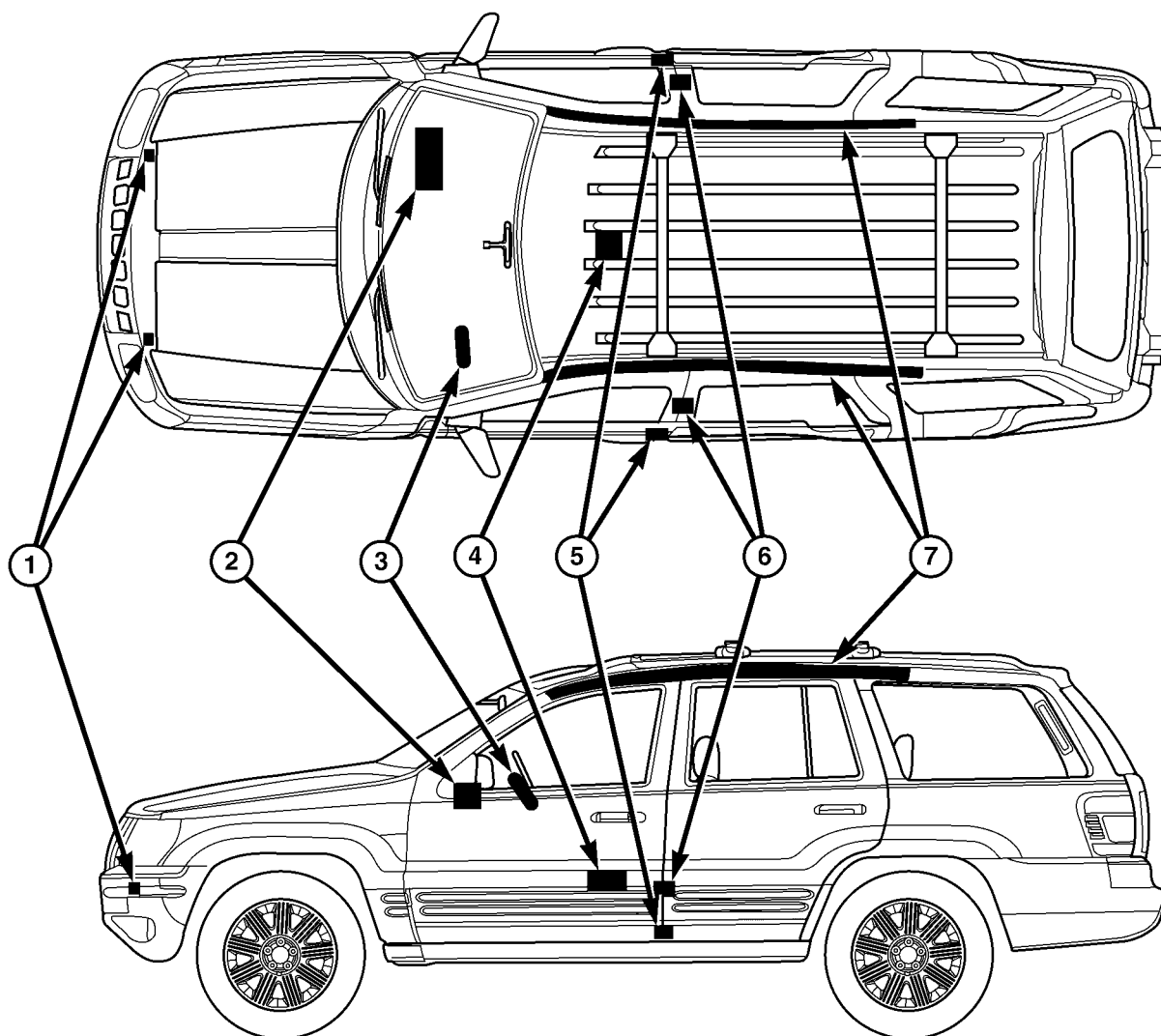
# RESTRAINTS

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>RESTRAINTS</b>		<b>INSTALLATION</b>	28
DESCRIPTION	2	<b>FRONT SEAT BELT &amp; RETRACTOR</b>	
OPERATION	4	REMOVAL	29
WARNING		INSTALLATION	31
WARNINGS - RESTRAINT SYSTEM	5	<b>FRONT SEAT BELT BUCKLE</b>	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - SUPPLEMENTAL		REMOVAL	
RESTRAINT SYSTEM	6	REMOVAL - NORTH AMERICA	32
STANDARD PROCEDURE		REMOVAL - EXCEPT NORTH AMERICA	33
STANDARD PROCEDURE - HANDLING		INSTALLATION	
NON-DEPLOYED SUPPLEMENTAL		INSTALLATION - NORTH AMERICA	33
RESTRAINTS	6	INSTALLATION - EXCEPT NORTH AMERICA	34
STANDARD PROCEDURE - SERVICE		<b>PASSENGER AIRBAG</b>	
AFTER A SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT		DESCRIPTION	35
DEPLOYMENT	7	OPERATION	35
STANDARD PROCEDURE - VERIFICATION		REMOVAL	36
TEST	9	INSTALLATION	36
<b>AIRBAG CONTROL MODULE</b>		<b>REAR CENTER SEAT BELT &amp; RETRACTOR</b>	
DESCRIPTION	10	REMOVAL	38
OPERATION	10	INSTALLATION	38
REMOVAL	11	<b>REAR OUTBOARD SEAT BELT &amp; RETRACTOR</b>	
INSTALLATION	12	REMOVAL	40
<b>CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR</b>		INSTALLATION	41
DESCRIPTION	13	<b>REAR SEAT BELT BUCKLE</b>	
OPERATION	15	REMOVAL	41
REMOVAL	15	INSTALLATION	42
INSTALLATION	15	<b>SEAT BELT SWITCH</b>	
<b>CLOCKSPRING</b>		DESCRIPTION	42
DESCRIPTION	16	OPERATION	43
OPERATION	17	<b>SEAT BELT TENSIONER</b>	
STANDARD PROCEDURE - CLOCKSPRING		DESCRIPTION	43
CENTERING	17	OPERATION	43
REMOVAL	18	<b>SEAT BELT TURNING LOOP ADJUSTER</b>	
INSTALLATION	19	REMOVAL	44
<b>DRIVER AIRBAG</b>		INSTALLATION	44
DESCRIPTION	20	<b>SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG</b>	
OPERATION	21	DESCRIPTION	45
REMOVAL	21	OPERATION	45
DISASSEMBLY	22	REMOVAL	46
ASSEMBLY	24	INSTALLATION	47
INSTALLATION	25	<b>SIDE IMPACT SENSOR</b>	
<b>FRONT IMPACT SENSOR</b>		DESCRIPTION	48
DESCRIPTION	26	OPERATION	49
OPERATION	26	REMOVAL	49
REMOVAL	26	INSTALLATION	50
INSTALLATION	27		
<b>FRONT IMPACT SENSOR &amp; BRACKET</b>			
REMOVAL	28		

## RESTRAINTS

## DESCRIPTION



81068e6f

**Fig. 1 Supplemental Restraint System**

- 1 - FRONT IMPACT SENSOR (2)
- 2 - PASSENGER AIRBAG
- 3 - DRIVER AIRBAG
- 4 - AIRBAG CONTROL MODULE

- 5 - SIDE IMPACT SENSOR (2)
- 6 - FRONT SEAT BELT TENSIONER (2)
- 7 - SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG (2)

An occupant restraint system is standard factory-installed safety equipment on this model. Available occupant restraints for this model include both active and passive types. Active restraints are those which require the vehicle occupants to take some action to employ, such as fastening a seat belt; while passive restraints require no action by the vehicle occupants to be employed (Fig. 1).

**ACTIVE RESTRAINTS**

The active restraints for this model include:

- **Front Seat Belts** - Both front seating positions are equipped with three-point seat belt systems employing a lower B-pillar mounted inertia latch-type retractor, height-adjustable upper B-pillar mounted turning loops, a fixed lower seat belt anchor secured to the lower B-pillar, and a fixed end-release



## RESTRAINTS (Continued)

seat belt buckle secured to the side of the floor panel transmission tunnel of vehicles manufactured for sale in North America, or a traveling end-release buckle secured to the inboard side of the seat cushion frame of vehicles manufactured for sale outside of North America. The driver side front seat belt buckle includes an integral Hall-effect seat belt switch that detects whether the driver side front seat belt has been fastened.

- **Rear Seat Belts** - Both outboard rear seating positions are equipped with three-point seat belt systems. The outboard seating position belts employ a lower C-pillar mounted inertia latch-type retractor, a fixed position upper C-pillar mounted turning loop, and a fixed lower seat belt anchor secured to the floor panel. The rear seat center seating position of vehicles manufactured for sale in North America has a lap belt that is anchored to the rear floor panel with the right outboard seat belt buckle. Vehicles manufactured for sale outside of North America are equipped with a three-point seat belt in the rear seat center seating position. This seat belt has an inertia latch-type retractor that is integral to the rear seat back panel, and a cable from the seat back latch locks the center belt retractor spool unless the seat back is fully latched. The rear seat center seating position belt lower anchor is secured to the rear floor panel with the right outboard seat belt buckle. All three rear seat belts have fixed end-release seat belt buckles secured to the rear floor panel, a single buckle unit on the right side and a double buckle unit on the left side.

- **Child Restraint Anchors** - Vehicles manufactured for sale in North America are equipped with two, fixed-position, child seat upper tether anchors located on the inner liftgate opening header. Vehicles manufactured for sale outside of North America are equipped with three, fixed-position, child seat upper tether anchors. Two anchors are integral to the back of the right rear seat back panel, and one is integral to the left rear seat back panel. Two lower anchors are also provided for each rear outboard seating position on all vehicles manufactured for North America. The lower anchors are integral to the lower edge of the rear seat back panels and are accessed from the front of the rear seat where the seat back meets the seat cushion.

## PASSIVE RESTRAINTS

The passive restraints available for this model include the following:

- **Dual Front Airbags** - Multistage driver and front passenger airbags are available for this model. This airbag system is a passive, inflatable, Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) and vehicles with this equipment can be readily identified by the “SRS

- AIRBAG” logo molded into the driver airbag trim cover in the center of the steering wheel and also into the passenger airbag door area of the instrument panel top pad above the glove box (Fig. 2). Vehicles with the airbag system can also be identified by the airbag indicator, which will illuminate in the instrument cluster for about seven seconds as a bulb test each time the ignition switch is turned to the On position. A pyrotechnic-type seat belt tensioner is integral to the front seat belt retractors mounted on each lower B-pillar of some models equipped with dual front airbags and manufactured for certain markets outside of North America where these tensioners are required equipment.

- **Side Curtain Airbags** - Optional side curtain airbags are available for this model when it is also equipped with dual front airbags. This airbag system is a passive, inflatable, Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) and vehicles with this equipment can be readily identified by a molded identification trim button with the “SRS - AIRBAG” logo located on the headliner above each B-pillar (Fig. 2).



8098029e

*Fig. 2 SRS Logo*

The supplemental restraint system includes the following major components, which are described in further detail elsewhere in this service information:

- **Airbag Control Module** - The Airbag Control Module (ACM) is also sometimes referred to as the Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC). The ACM is located on a mount on the floor panel transmission tunnel near the park brake release mechanism, under the center floor console.

- **Airbag Indicator** - The airbag indicator is integral to the ElectroMechanical Instrument Cluster (EMIC), which is located on the instrument panel in front of the driver.

- **Clockspring** - The clockspring is located near the top of the steering column, directly beneath the steering wheel.

## RESTRAINTS (Continued)

- **Driver Airbag** - The driver airbag is located in the center of the steering wheel, beneath the driver airbag trim cover.

- **Driver Knee Blocker** - The driver knee blocker is a structural unit secured to the back side of and integral to the instrument panel steering column opening cover.

- **Front Impact Sensor** - Two front impact sensors are used on vehicles equipped with dual front airbags, one left side and one right side. One sensor is located on a bracket on the lower inboard side of each vertical member of the radiator support.

- **Front Seat Belt Tensioner** - A seat belt tensioner is integral to each front seat belt retractor unit on vehicles equipped with airbags and manufactured for certain markets outside of North America where they are required equipment.

- **Passenger Airbag** - The passenger airbag is located on the instrument panel, beneath the instrument panel top pad and above the glove box on the passenger side of the vehicle.

- **Passenger Knee Blocker** - The passenger knee blocker is a structural reinforcement that is integral to and concealed within the glove box door.

- **Side Impact Sensor** - Two side impact sensors are used on vehicles equipped with the optional side curtain airbags, one left side and one right side. One sensor is located behind the B-pillar trim near the base of each B-pillar.

- **Side Curtain Airbag** - In vehicles equipped with this option, a side curtain airbag is located on each inside roof side rail above the headliner, and extends from the A-pillar to just beyond the C-pillar.

The ACM and the EMIC each contain a central processing unit and programming that allow them to communicate with each other using the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network. This method of communication is used by the ACM for control of the airbag indicator on all models equipped with dual front airbags. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/ELECTRONIC CONTROL MODULES/COMMUNICATION - DESCRIPTION).

Hard wired circuitry connects the supplemental restraint system components to each other through the electrical system of the vehicle. These hard wired circuits are integral to several wire harnesses, which are routed throughout the vehicle and retained by many different methods. These circuits may be connected to each other, to the vehicle electrical system, and to the supplemental restraint system components through the use of a combination of soldered splices, splice block connectors, and many different types of wire harness terminal connectors and insulators. Refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, further

details on wire harness routing and retention, as well as pin-out and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

## OPERATION

## ACTIVE RESTRAINTS

The primary passenger restraints in this or any other vehicle are the standard equipment factory-installed seat belts and child restraint anchors. Seat belts and child restraint anchors are referred to as an active restraint because the vehicle occupants are required to physically fasten and properly adjust these restraints in order to benefit from them. See the owner's manual in the vehicle glove box for more information on the features, use and operation of all of the factory-installed active restraints.

## PASSIVE RESTRAINTS

The passive restraints are referred to as a supplemental restraint system because they were designed and are intended to enhance the protection for the occupants of the vehicle **only** when used in conjunction with the seat belts. They are referred to as passive restraints because the vehicle occupants are not required to do anything to make them operate; however, the vehicle occupants must be wearing their seat belts in order to obtain the maximum safety benefit from the factory-installed supplemental restraint system.

The supplemental restraint system electrical circuits are continuously monitored and controlled by a microprocessor and software contained within the Airbag Control Module (ACM). An airbag indicator in the ElectroMechanical Instrument Cluster (EMIC) illuminates for about seven seconds as a bulb test each time the ignition switch is turned to the On or Start positions. Following the bulb test, the airbag indicator is turned on or off by the ACM to indicate the status of the supplemental restraint system. If the airbag indicator comes on at any time other than during the bulb test, it indicates that there is a problem in the supplemental restraint system electrical circuits. Such a problem may cause airbags not to deploy when required, or to deploy when not required.

Deployment of the supplemental restraints depends upon the angle and severity of an impact. Deployment is not based upon vehicle speed; rather, deployment is based upon the rate of deceleration as measured by the forces of gravity (G force) upon the impact sensors. When an impact is severe enough, the microprocessor in the ACM signals the inflator of the appropriate airbag units to deploy their airbag cushions. On vehicles so equipped, the front seat belt tensioners are provided with a deployment signal by

## RESTRAINTS (Continued)

the ACM in conjunction with the driver and passenger front airbags. During a frontal vehicle impact, the knee blockers work in concert with properly fastened and adjusted seat belts to restrain both the driver and the front seat passenger in the proper position for an airbag deployment. The knee blockers also absorb and distribute the crash energy from the driver and the front seat passenger to the structure of the instrument panel. On vehicles so equipped, the seat belt tensioner removes the slack from the front seat belts to provide further assurance that the driver and front seat passenger are properly positioned and restrained for an airbag deployment.

Typically, the vehicle occupants recall more about the events preceding and following a collision than they do of an airbag deployment itself. This is because the airbag deployment and deflation occur so rapidly. In a typical 48 kilometer-per-hour (30 mile-per-hour) barrier impact, from the moment of impact until the airbags are fully inflated takes about 40 milliseconds. Within one to two seconds from the moment of impact, the airbags are almost entirely deflated. The times cited for these events are approximations, which apply only to a barrier impact at the given speed. Actual times will vary somewhat, depending upon the vehicle speed, impact angle, severity of the impact, and the type of collision.

When the ACM monitors a problem in any of the airbag system circuits or components, including the seat belt tensioners, it stores a fault code or Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) in its memory circuit and sends an electronic message to the EMIC to turn on the airbag indicator. Proper testing of the airbag system components, the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus, the electronic message inputs to and outputs from the EMIC or the ACM, as well as the retrieval or erasure of a DTC from the ACM or EMIC requires the use of a DRBIII® scan tool. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

See the owner's manual in the vehicle glove box for more information on the features, use and operation of all of the factory-installed passive restraints.

## WARNING

## WARNINGS - RESTRAINT SYSTEM

**WARNING: DURING AND FOLLOWING ANY SEAT BELT OR CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR SERVICE, CAREFULLY INSPECT ALL SEAT BELTS, BUCKLES, MOUNTING HARDWARE, RETRACTORS, TETHER STRAPS, AND ANCHORS FOR PROPER INSTALLATION, OPERATION, OR DAMAGE. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT IS CUT, FRAYED, OR TORN. STRAIGHTEN ANY BELT THAT IS TWISTED. TIGHTEN ANY LOOSE FASTENERS. REPLACE ANY**

**BELT THAT HAS A DAMAGED OR INOPERATIVE BUCKLE OR RETRACTOR. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT HAS A BENT OR DAMAGED LATCH PLATE OR ANCHOR PLATE. REPLACE ANY CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR OR THE UNIT TO WHICH THE ANCHOR IS INTEGRAL THAT HAS BEEN BENT OR DAMAGED. NEVER ATTEMPT TO REPAIR A SEAT BELT OR CHILD RESTRAINT COMPONENT. ALWAYS REPLACE DAMAGED OR FAULTY SEAT BELT AND CHILD RESTRAINT COMPONENTS WITH THE CORRECT, NEW AND UNUSED REPLACEMENT PARTS LISTED IN THE DAIMLERCHRYSLER MOPAR PARTS CATALOG.**

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, DRIVER AIRBAG, PASSENGER AIRBAG, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, BEFORE PERFORMING ANY WELDING OPERATIONS DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE AND DISCONNECT ALL WIRE HARNESS CONNECTORS FROM THE AIRBAG CONTROL MODULE (ACM). FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND OTHER POSSIBLE DAMAGE TO THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM CIRCUITS AND COMPONENTS.**

## RESTRAINTS (Continued)

**WARNING: AN AIRBAG INFLATOR UNIT MAY CONTAIN SODIUM AZIDE AND POTASSIUM NITRATE. THESE MATERIALS ARE POISONOUS AND EXTREMELY FLAMMABLE. CONTACT WITH ACID, WATER, OR HEAVY METALS MAY PRODUCE HARMFUL AND IRRITATING GASES (SODIUM HYDROXIDE IS FORMED IN THE PRESENCE OF MOISTURE) OR COMBUSTIBLE COMPOUNDS. AN AIRBAG INFLATOR UNIT MAY ALSO CONTAIN A GAS CANISTER PRESSURIZED TO OVER 2500 PSI. DO NOT ATTEMPT TO DISMANTLE AN AIRBAG UNIT OR TAMPER WITH ITS INFLATOR. DO NOT PUNCTURE, INCINERATE, OR BRING INTO CONTACT WITH ELECTRICITY. DO NOT STORE AT TEMPERATURES EXCEEDING 93° C (200° F).**

**WARNING: WHEN HANDLING A SEAT BELT TENSIONER RETRACTOR, PROPER CARE SHOULD BE EXERCISED TO KEEP FINGERS OUT FROM UNDER THE RETRACTOR COVER AND AWAY FROM THE SEAT BELT WEBBING WHERE IT EXITS FROM THE RETRACTOR COVER.**

**WARNING: REPLACE ALL RESTRAINT SYSTEM COMPONENTS ONLY WITH PARTS SPECIFIED IN THE DAIMLERCHRYSLER MOPAR PARTS CATALOG. SUBSTITUTE PARTS MAY APPEAR INTERCHANGEABLE, BUT INTERNAL DIFFERENCES MAY RESULT IN INFERIOR OCCUPANT PROTECTION.**

**WARNING: THE FASTENERS, SCREWS, AND BOLTS ORIGINALLY USED FOR THE RESTRAINT SYSTEM COMPONENTS HAVE SPECIAL COATINGS AND ARE SPECIFICALLY DESIGNED FOR THE RESTRAINT SYSTEM. THEY MUST NEVER BE REPLACED WITH ANY SUBSTITUTES. ANY TIME A NEW FASTENER IS NEEDED, REPLACE IT WITH THE CORRECT FASTENERS PROVIDED IN THE SERVICE PACKAGE OR SPECIFIED IN THE DAIMLERCHRYSLER MOPAR PARTS CATALOG.**

**WARNING: WHEN A STEERING COLUMN HAS AN AIRBAG UNIT ATTACHED, NEVER PLACE THE COLUMN ON THE FLOOR OR ANY OTHER SURFACE WITH THE STEERING WHEEL OR AIRBAG UNIT FACE DOWN.**

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

Proper diagnosis and testing of the supplemental restraint system components, the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus, the data bus electronic message inputs to and outputs from

the ElectroMechanical Instrument Cluster (EMIC) or the Airbag Control Module (ACM), as well as the retrieval or erasure of a Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) from the ACM requires the use of a DRBIII® scan tool. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, DRIVER AIRBAG, PASSENGER AIRBAG, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

## STANDARD PROCEDURE

### STANDARD PROCEDURE - HANDLING NON-DEPLOYED SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINTS

At no time should any source of electricity be permitted near the inflator on the back of a non-deployed airbag or seat belt tensioner. When carrying a non-deployed airbag, the trim cover or airbag cushion side of the unit should be pointed away from the body to minimize injury in the event of an accidental deployment. If the airbag unit is placed on a bench or any other surface, the trim cover or airbag cushion side of the unit should be face up to minimize movement in the event of an accidental deployment. When handling a non-deployed seat belt tensioner, take proper care to keep fingers out from under the retractor cover and away from the seat belt webbing where it exits from the retractor cover. In addition, the supplemental restraint system should be disarmed whenever any steering wheel, steering column, seat belt tensioner, driver airbag, passenger airbag, front impact sensor, side impact sensor, side curtain airbag, or instrument panel components require diagnosis or service. Failure to observe this warning could result in accidental airbag deployment and possible personal injury.

All damaged, faulty or non-deployed airbags and seat belt tensioners which are replaced on vehicles are to be handled and disposed of properly. If an airbag or seat belt tensioner unit is faulty or damaged



## RESTRAINTS (Continued)

and non-deployed, refer to the Hazardous Substance Control System for proper disposal. Dispose of all non-deployed and deployed airbags and seat belt tensioners in a manner consistent with state, provincial, local and federal regulations.

### SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT STORAGE

Airbags and seat belt tensioners must be stored in their original, special container until they are used for service. Also, they must be stored in a clean, dry environment; away from sources of extreme heat, sparks, and high electrical energy. Always place or store any airbag on a surface with its trim cover or airbag cushion side facing up, to minimize movement in case of an accidental deployment.

### STANDARD PROCEDURE - SERVICE AFTER A SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT DEPLOYMENT

Any vehicle which is to be returned to use following a supplemental restraint deployment, must have the deployed restraints replaced. In addition, if the driver airbag has been deployed, the clockspring must be replaced. If the passenger airbag is deployed, the instrument panel top pad must be replaced. On vehicles so equipped, the seat belt tensioners are deployed by the same signal that deploys the driver and passenger airbags and must also be replaced if either front airbag has been deployed. If a side curtain airbag has been deployed, the complete airbag unit, the headliner, as well as the upper A, B, C and D-pillar trim must be replaced. These components are not intended for reuse and will be damaged or weakened as a result of a supplemental restraint deployment, which may or may not be obvious during a visual inspection.

The passenger airbag mounting points on the instrument panel structural duct must be closely inspected for damage, and the instrument panel assembly replaced if structural duct damage is evident. On vehicles with an optional sunroof, the sunroof drain tubes and hoses must be closely inspected following a side curtain airbag deployment. It is also critical that the mounting surfaces and/or mounting brackets for the Airbag Control Module (ACM) and the front and side impact sensors be closely inspected and restored to their original conditions following any vehicle impact damage. Because the ACM and each impact sensor are used by the supplemental restraint system to monitor or confirm the direction and severity of a vehicle impact, improper orientation or insecure fastening of these components may cause

airbags not to deploy when required, or to deploy when not required.

All other vehicle components should be closely inspected following any supplemental restraint deployment, but are to be replaced only as required by the extent of the visible damage incurred.

### AIRBAG SQUIB STATUS

Multistage airbags with multiple initiators (squibs) must be checked to determine that all squibs were used during the deployment event. The driver and passenger airbags in this model are deployed by electrical signals generated by the Airbag Control Module (ACM) through the driver or passenger squib 1 and squib 2 circuits to the two initiators in the airbag inflators. Typically, both initiators are used and all potentially hazardous chemicals are burned during an airbag deployment event. However, it is possible for only one initiator to be used due to an airbag system fault; therefore, it is always necessary to confirm that both initiators have been used in order to avoid the improper handling or disposal of potentially live pyrotechnic or hazardous materials. The following procedure should be performed using a DRBIII® scan tool to verify the status of both airbag squibs before either deployed airbag is removed from the vehicle for disposal.

**CAUTION:** Deployed front airbags having two initiators (squibs) in the airbag inflator may or may not have live pyrotechnic material within the inflator. Do not dispose of these airbags unless you are sure of complete deployment. Refer to the Hazardous Substance Control System for proper disposal procedures. Dispose of all non-deployed and deployed airbags in a manner consistent with state, provincial, local, and federal regulations.

(1) Be certain that the DRBIII® scan tool contains the latest version of the proper DRBIII® software. Connect the DRBIII® to the 16-way Data Link Connector (DLC). The DLC is located on the driver side lower edge of the instrument panel, outboard of the steering column.

(2) Turn the ignition switch to the On position.

(3) Using the DRBIII®, read and record the active (current) Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) data.

Using the active DTC information, refer to the **Airbag Squib Status** table to determine the status of both driver and/or passenger airbag squibs.



## RESTRAINTS (Continued)

AIRBAG SQUIB STATUS		
IF the Active DTC is:	Conditions	Squib Status
Driver or Passenger Squib 1 open	<b>AND</b> the stored DTC minutes for both Driver or Passenger squibs are within 15 minutes of each other	Both Squib 1 and 2 were used.
Driver or Passenger Squib 2 open		
Driver or Passenger Squib 1 open	<b>AND</b> the stored DTC minutes for Driver or Passenger Squib 2 open is GREATER than the stored DTC minutes for Driver or Passenger Squib 1 by 15 minutes or more	Squib 1 was used; Squib 2 is live.
Driver or Passenger Squib 2 open		
Driver or Passenger Squib 1 open	<b>AND</b> the stored DTC minutes for Driver or Passenger Squib 1 open is GREATER than the stored DTC minutes for Driver or Passenger Squib 2 by 15 minutes or more	Squib 1 is live; Squib 2 was used.
Driver or Passenger Squib 2 open		
Driver or Passenger Squib 1 open	<b>AND</b> Driver or Passenger Squib 2 open is NOT an active code	Squib 1 was used; Squib 2 is live.
Driver or Passenger Squib 2 open	<b>AND</b> Driver or Passenger Squib 1 open is NOT an active code	Squib 1 is live; Squib 2 was used.

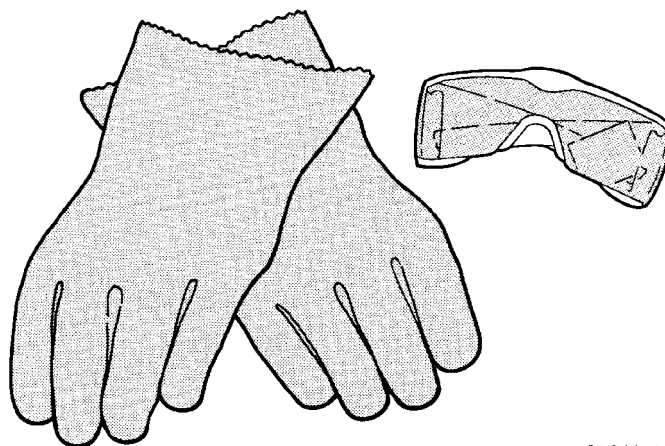
If none of the Driver or Passenger Squib 1 or 2 open are active codes, the status of the airbag squibs is unknown. In this case the airbag should be handled and disposed of as if the squibs were both live.

### CLEANUP PROCEDURE

Following a supplemental restraint deployment, the vehicle interior will contain a powdery residue. This residue consists primarily of harmless particulate by-products of the small pyrotechnic charge that initiates the propellant used to deploy a supplemental restraint. However, this residue may also contain traces of sodium hydroxide powder, a chemical by-product of the propellant material that is used to generate the inert gas that inflates the airbag. Since sodium hydroxide powder can irritate the skin, eyes, nose, or throat, be certain to wear safety glasses, rubber gloves, and a long-sleeved shirt during cleanup (Fig. 3).

**WARNING: IF YOU EXPERIENCE SKIN IRRITATION DURING CLEANUP, RUN COOL WATER OVER THE AFFECTED AREA. ALSO, IF YOU EXPERIENCE IRRITATION OF THE NOSE OR THROAT, EXIT THE VEHICLE FOR FRESH AIR UNTIL THE IRRITATION CEASES. IF IRRITATION CONTINUES, SEE A PHYSICIAN.**

(1) Begin the cleanup by using a vacuum cleaner to remove any residual powder from the vehicle interior. Clean from outside the vehicle and work your way inside, so that you avoid kneeling or sitting on a non-cleaned area.

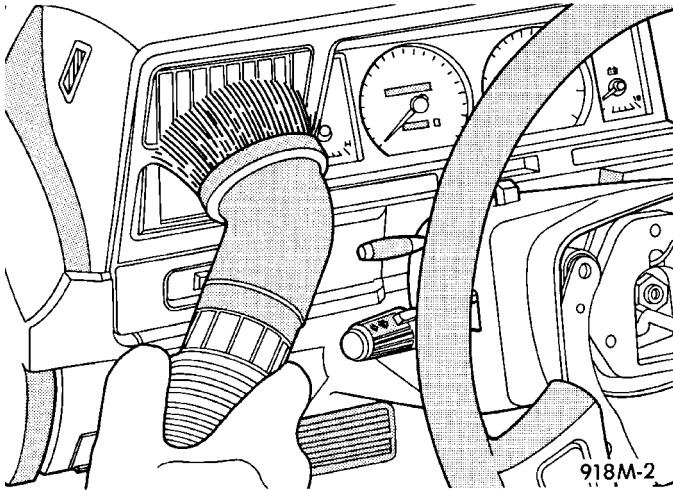


918M-4

**Fig. 3 Wear Safety Glasses and Rubber Gloves - Typical**

(2) Be certain to vacuum the heater and air conditioning outlets as well (Fig. 4). Run the heater and air conditioner blower on the lowest speed setting and vacuum any powder expelled from the outlets.

## RESTRAINTS (Continued)



**Fig. 4 Vacuum Heater and A/C Outlets - Typical**

**CAUTION:** Deployed front airbags having two initiators (squibs) in the airbag inflator may or may not have live pyrotechnic material within the inflator. Do not dispose of these airbags unless you are sure of complete deployment. Refer to AIRBAG SQUIB STATUS. All damaged, faulty, or non-deployed supplemental restraints which are replaced on vehicles are to be handled and disposed of properly. If an airbag or seat belt tensioner unit is faulty or damaged and non-deployed, refer to the Hazardous Substance Control System for proper disposal. Be certain to dispose of all non-deployed and deployed supplemental restraints in a manner consistent with state, provincial, local and federal regulations.

(3) Next, remove the deployed supplemental restraints from the vehicle. Refer to the appropriate service removal procedures.

(4) You may need to vacuum the interior of the vehicle a second time to recover all of the powder.

### STANDARD PROCEDURE - VERIFICATION TEST

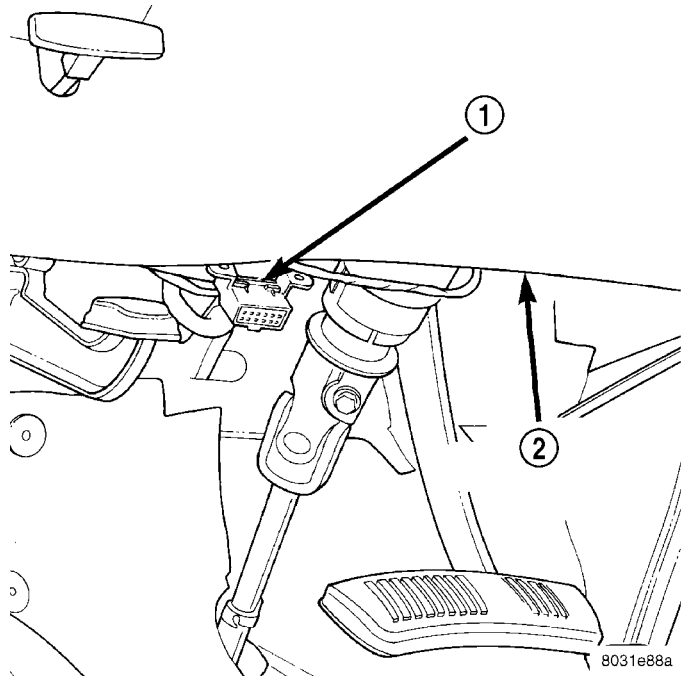
The following procedure should be performed using a DRBIII® scan tool to verify proper supplemental restraint system operation following the service or replacement of any supplemental restraint system component.

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, DRIVER AIRBAG, PASSENGER AIRBAG, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE**

**PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) During the following test, the battery negative cable remains disconnected and isolated, as it was during the supplemental restraint system component removal and installation procedures.

(2) Be certain that the DRBIII® scan tool contains the latest version of the proper DRBIII® software. Connect the DRBIII® to the 16-way Data Link Connector (DLC). The DLC is located on the driver side lower edge of the instrument panel, outboard of the steering column (Fig. 5).



**Fig. 5 16-Way Data Link Connector - Typical**

- 1 - 16-WAY DATA LINK CONNECTOR
- 2 - BOTTOM OF INSTRUMENT PANEL

(3) Turn the ignition switch to the On position and exit the vehicle with the DRBIII® scan tool.

(4) Check to be certain that nobody is in the vehicle, then reconnect the battery negative cable.

(5) Using the DRBIII®, read and record the active (current) Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) data.

(6) Next, use the DRBIII® to read and record any stored (historical) DTC data.

(7) If any DTC is found in Step 5 or Step 6, refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

(8) Use the DRBIII® to erase the stored DTC data. If any problems remain, the stored DTC data will not erase. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information to diagnose any stored DTC that will not erase.

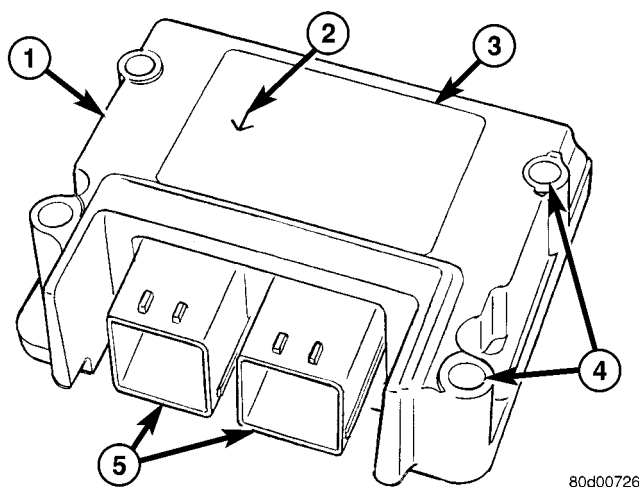
## RESTRAINTS (Continued)

If the stored DTC information is successfully erased, go to Step 9.

(9) Turn the ignition switch to the Off position for about fifteen seconds, and then back to the On position. Observe the airbag indicator in the instrument cluster. It should light for six to eight seconds, and then go out. This indicates that the supplemental restraint system is functioning normally and that the repairs are complete. If the airbag indicator fails to light, or lights and stays on, there is still an active supplemental restraint system fault or malfunction. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information to diagnose the problem.

## AIRBAG CONTROL MODULE

## DESCRIPTION



**Fig. 6 Airbag Control Module**

- 1 - AIRBAG CONTROL MODULE
- 2 - ORIENTATION ARROW
- 3 - LABEL
- 4 - MOUNTING HOLE (4)
- 5 - CONNECTOR RECEPTACLE (2)

The Airbag Control Module (ACM) is also sometimes referred to as the Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC) (Fig. 6). The ACM is concealed beneath the center floor console, where it is secured by four screws to a stamped steel mounting bracket welded onto the top of the floor panel transmission tunnel just forward of the park brake mechanism in the passenger compartment of the vehicle. Concealed within a hollow in the center of the die cast aluminum ACM housing is the electronic circuitry of the ACM which includes a microprocessor, an electronic impact sensor, an electronic safing sensor, and an energy storage capacitor. A stamped metal cover plate is secured to the bottom of the ACM housing with four screws to enclose and protect the internal electronic circuitry and components.

An arrow printed on the label on the top of the ACM housing provides a visual verification of the proper orientation of the unit, and should always be pointed toward the front of the vehicle. Two molded plastic electrical connector receptacles exit the forward side of the ACM housing. These two receptacles connect the ACM to the vehicle electrical system through a dedicated take out and connector of the instrument panel wire harness, and a dedicated take out and connector of the airbag overlay wire harness. For vehicles equipped with the optional side curtain airbags, both ACM connector receptacles are black in color and the ACM contains a second bi-directional safing sensor for the side airbags. For vehicles not equipped with the optional side curtain airbags, the ACM connector receptacles are both gray.

The impact sensor and safing sensor internal to the ACM are calibrated for the specific vehicle, and are only serviced as a unit with the ACM. The ACM cannot be repaired or adjusted and, if damaged or faulty, it must be replaced.

## OPERATION

The microprocessor in the Airbag Control Module (ACM) contains the supplemental restraint system logic circuits and controls all of the supplemental restraint system components. The ACM uses On-Board Diagnostics (OBD) and can communicate with other electronic modules in the vehicle as well as with the DRBIII® scan tool using the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network. This method of communication is used for control of the airbag indicator in the ElectroMechanical Instrument Cluster (EMIC) and for supplemental restraint system diagnosis and testing through the 16-way data link connector located on the driver side lower edge of the instrument panel. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/ELECTRONIC CONTROL MODULES/COMMUNICATION - OPERATION).

The ACM microprocessor continuously monitors all of the supplemental restraint system electrical circuits to determine the system readiness. If the ACM detects a monitored system fault, it sets an active and stored Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) and sends electronic messages to the EMIC over the PCI data bus to turn on the airbag indicator. An active fault only remains for the duration of the fault or in some cases the duration of the current ignition switch cycle, while a stored fault causes a DTC to be stored in memory by the ACM. For some DTCs, if a fault does not recur for a number of ignition cycles, the ACM will automatically erase the stored DTC. For other internal faults, the stored DTC is latched forever.

The ACM also monitors a Hall effect-type seat belt switch located in the buckle of the driver side front



## AIRBAG CONTROL MODULE (Continued)

seat belt to determine whether the seatbelt is buckled, and provides an input to the EMIC over the PCI data bus to control the seatbelt indicator operation based upon the status of the driver side front seat belt switch.

The ACM receives battery current through two circuits; on a fused ignition switch output (run) circuit through a fuse in the Junction Block (JB), and on a fused ignition switch output (start-run) circuit through a second fuse in the JB. The ACM is grounded through a ground circuit and take out of the instrument panel floor wire harness. This take out has a single eyelet terminal connector secured by a nut to a ground stud located behind the ACM mount on the floor panel transmission tunnel. These connections allow the ACM to be operational whenever the ignition switch is in the Start or On positions.

The ACM also contains an energy-storage capacitor. When the ignition switch is in the Start or On positions, this capacitor is continually being charged with enough electrical energy to deploy the supplemental restraint components for up to one second following a battery disconnect or failure. The purpose of the capacitor is to provide backup supplemental restraint system protection in case there is a loss of battery current supply to the ACM during an impact.

Two sensors are contained within the ACM, an electronic impact sensor and a safing sensor. The ACM also monitors inputs from two remote front impact sensors located on brackets on the inboard sides of the right and left vertical members of the radiator support near the front of the vehicle. The electronic impact sensors are accelerometers that sense the rate of vehicle deceleration, which provide verification of the direction and severity of an impact. On models equipped with optional side curtain airbags, the ACM also monitors inputs from two additional remote side impact sensors located near the base of both the left and right inner B-pillars to control the deployment of the side curtain airbag units.

The safing sensor is an electronic accelerometer sensor within the ACM that provides an additional logic input to the ACM microprocessor. The safing sensor is used to verify the need for a supplemental restraint deployment by detecting impact energy of a lesser magnitude than that of the primary electronic impact sensors, and must exceed a safing threshold in order for the airbags to deploy. Vehicles with the optional side curtain airbags feature a second safing sensor within the ACM to provide confirmation to the ACM of side impact forces. This second safing sensor is a bi-directional unit that detects impact forces from either side of the vehicle.

Pre-programmed decision algorithms in the ACM microprocessor determine when the deceleration rate as signaled by the impact sensors and the safing sensors indicate an impact that is severe enough to require supplemental restraint system protection and, based upon the severity of the monitored impact, determines the level of front airbag deployment force required for each front seating position. When the programmed conditions are met, the ACM sends the proper electrical signals to deploy the dual multistage front airbags at the programmed force levels and; if the vehicle is so equipped, the front seat belt tensioners and either side curtain airbag.

The hard wired inputs and outputs for the ACM may be diagnosed and tested using conventional diagnostic tools and procedures. However, conventional diagnostic methods will not prove conclusive in the diagnosis of the ACM, the PCI data bus network, or the electronic message inputs to and outputs from the ACM. The most reliable, efficient, and accurate means to diagnose the ACM, the PCI data bus network, and the electronic message inputs to and outputs from the ACM requires the use of a DRBIII® scan tool. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

## REMOVAL

Two different Airbag Control Modules (ACM) are available for this vehicle. For vehicles equipped with the optional side curtain airbags, both ACM connector receptacles are black in color and the ACM contains a second bi-directional safing sensor for the side airbags. For vehicles not equipped with the optional side curtain airbags, the ACM connector receptacles are gray.

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, DRIVER AIRBAG, PASSENGER AIRBAG, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

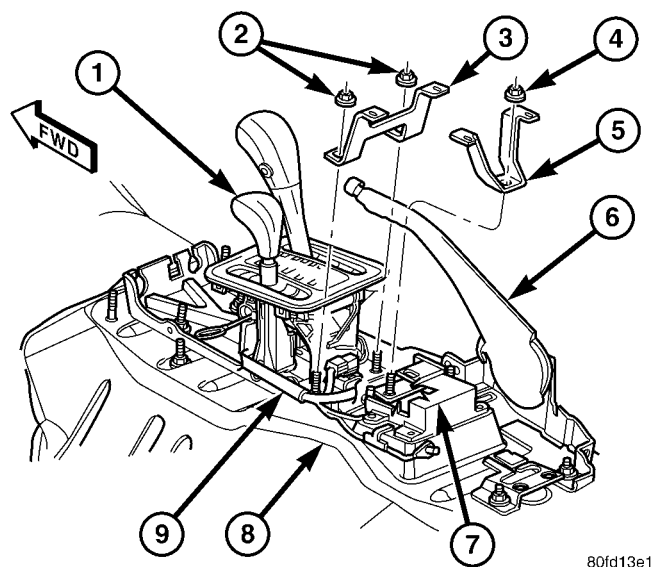
## AIRBAG CONTROL MODULE (Continued)

**WARNING: THE AIRBAG CONTROL MODULE CONTAINS THE IMPACT SENSOR, WHICH ENABLES THE SYSTEM TO DEPLOY THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINTS. NEVER STRIKE OR DROP THE AIRBAG CONTROL MODULE, AS IT CAN DAMAGE THE IMPACT SENSOR OR AFFECT ITS CALIBRATION. IF AN AIRBAG CONTROL MODULE IS ACCIDENTALLY DROPPED DURING SERVICE, THE MODULE MUST BE SCRAPPED AND REPLACED WITH A NEW UNIT. FAILURE TO OBSERVE THIS WARNING COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL, INCOMPLETE, OR IMPROPER SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE OCCUPANT INJURIES.**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Wait two minutes for the system capacitor to discharge before further service.

(2) Remove the center console from the top of the floor panel transmission tunnel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/FLOOR CONSOLE - REMOVAL).

(3) Remove the one or two nuts that secure the center console bracket to a stud or studs on the floor panel transmission tunnel just forward of the Airbag Control Module (ACM) (Fig. 7).



**Fig. 7 Center Console Bracket Remove/Install**

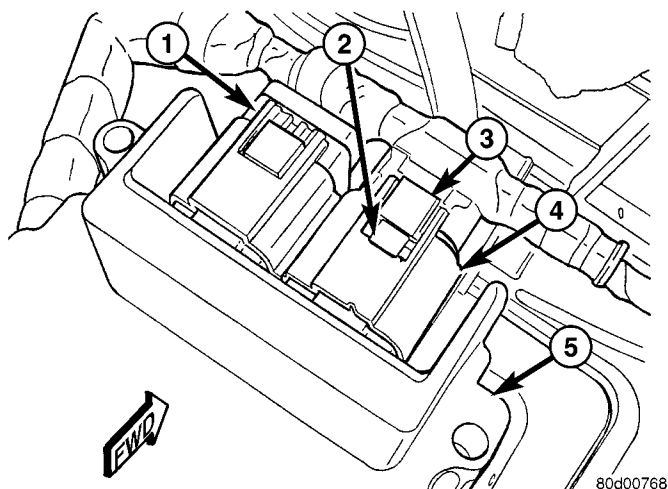
- 1 - SHIFTER
- 2 - NUT (2)
- 3 - BRACKET (EXPORT MARKET)
- 4 - NUT (1)
- 5 - BRACKET (DOMESTIC MARKET)
- 6 - PARK BRAKE LEVER
- 7 - AIRBAG CONTROL MODULE
- 8 - FLOOR PANEL TRANSMISSION TUNNEL
- 9 - INSTRUMENT PANEL WIRE HARNESS

(4) Remove the center console bracket from the one or two studs on the floor panel transmission tunnel.

(5) Disconnect the airbag overlay wire harness connector for the ACM from the ACM connector receptacle (Fig. 8). To disconnect the airbag overlay wire harness connector from the ACM:

(a) Slide the red Connector Position Assurance (CPA) lock on the top of the connector toward the front of the vehicle.

(b) Depress the forward edge of the CPA lock to release the connector latch tab and pull the connector straight away from the ACM connector receptacle.



**Fig. 8 Airbag Control Module Connector**

- 1 - INSTRUMENT PANEL WIRE HARNESS CONNECTOR
- 2 - LATCH TAB
- 3 - CPA LOCK
- 4 - AIRBAG OVERLAY WIRE HARNESS CONNECTOR
- 5 - AIRBAG CONTROL MODULE

(6) Disconnect the instrument panel wire harness connector for the ACM from the ACM connector receptacle.

(7) Remove the four screws that secure the ACM to the mount that is welded onto the top of the floor panel transmission tunnel (Fig. 9).

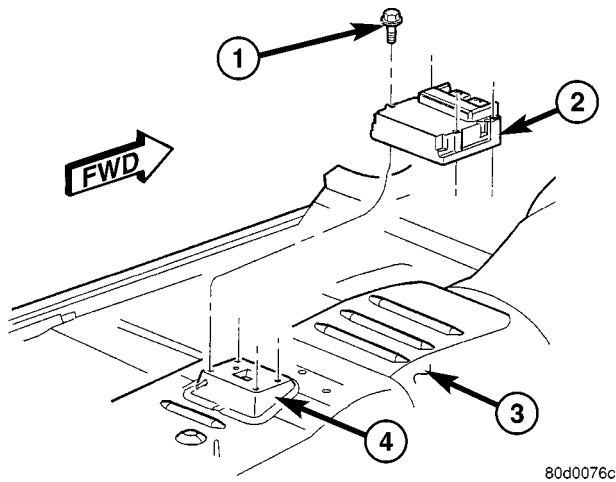
(8) Remove the ACM from the ACM mount on the top of the floor panel transmission tunnel.

## INSTALLATION

Two different Airbag Control Modules (ACM) are available for this vehicle. For vehicles equipped with the optional side curtain airbags, both ACM connector receptacles are black in color and the ACM contains a second bi-directional safing sensor for the side airbags. For vehicles not equipped with the optional side curtain airbags, the ACM connector receptacles are gray.



## AIRBAG CONTROL MODULE (Continued)

**Fig. 9 Airbag Control Module Remove/Install**

- 1 - SCREW (4)
- 2 - AIRBAG CONTROL MODULE
- 3 - FLOOR PANEL TRANSMISSION TUNNEL
- 4 - MOUNT

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, DRIVER AIRBAG, PASSENGER AIRBAG, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

**WARNING: THE AIRBAG CONTROL MODULE CONTAINS THE IMPACT SENSOR, WHICH ENABLES THE SYSTEM TO DEPLOY THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINTS. NEVER STRIKE OR DROP THE AIRBAG CONTROL MODULE, AS IT CAN DAMAGE THE IMPACT SENSOR OR AFFECT ITS CALIBRATION. IF AN AIRBAG CONTROL MODULE IS ACCIDENTALLY DROPPED DURING SERVICE, THE MODULE MUST BE SCRAPPED AND REPLACED WITH A NEW UNIT. FAILURE TO OBSERVE THIS WARNING COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL, INCOMPLETE, OR IMPROPER SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE OCCUPANT INJURIES.**

(1) Carefully position the Airbag Control Module (ACM) to the mount that is welded onto the top of

the floor panel transmission tunnel (Fig. 9). The bottom of the ACM housing is keyed. When the ACM is correctly positioned, the bottom of the housing will fit flush with the mount and the orientation arrow on the label on top of the housing will be pointed forward in the vehicle.

(2) Install and tighten the four screws that secure the ACM to the mount that is welded onto the top of the floor panel transmission tunnel. Tighten the screws to 11 N·m (95 in. lbs.).

(3) Reconnect the instrument panel wire harness connector for the ACM to the ACM connector receptacle. Be certain that the connector latch and the red CPA lock are fully engaged (Fig. 8).

(4) Reconnect the airbag overlay wire harness connector for the ACM to the ACM connector receptacle. Be certain that the connector latch and the red CPA lock are fully engaged.

(5) Reinstall the center console bracket onto the one or two studs on the floor panel transmission tunnel just forward of the ACM (Fig. 7).

(6) Install and tighten the nut or nuts that secure the center console bracket to the stud or studs on the floor panel transmission tunnel. Tighten the nuts to 28 N·m (21 ft. lbs.).

(7) Reinstall the center console onto the top of the floor panel transmission tunnel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/FLOOR CONSOLE - INSTALLATION).

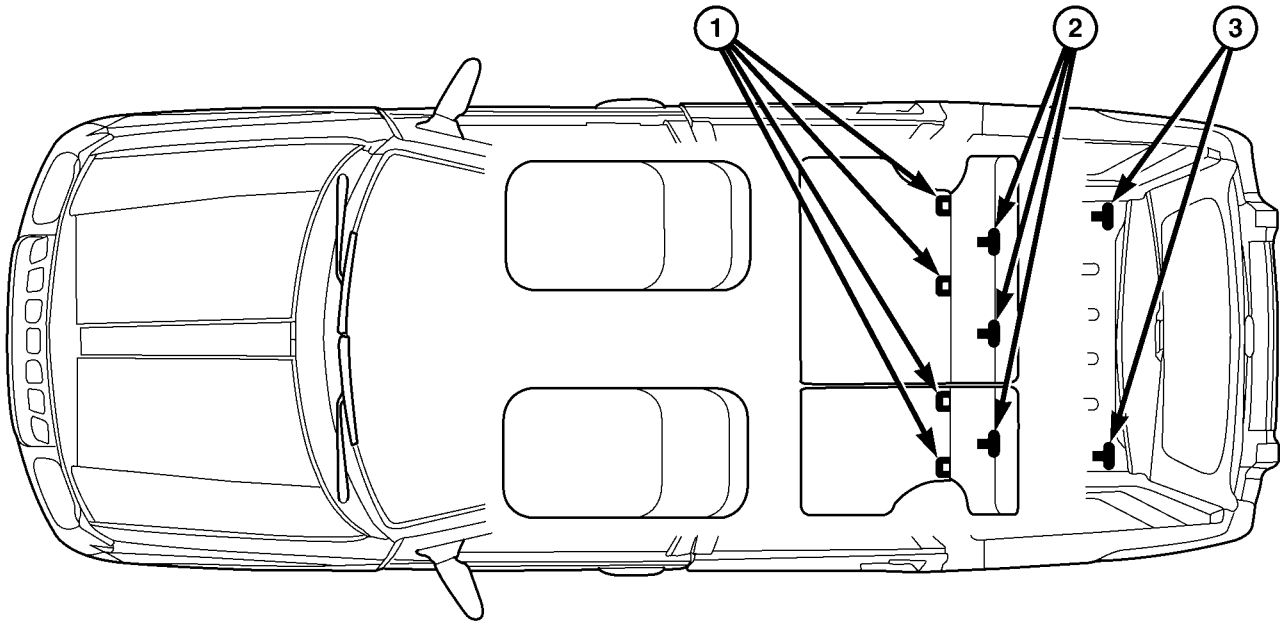
(8) Do not reconnect the battery negative cable at this time. The supplemental restraint system verification test procedure should be performed following service of any supplemental restraint system component. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS - STANDARD PROCEDURE - VERIFICATION TEST).

## CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR

### DESCRIPTION

Vehicles manufactured for sale in the North American market are equipped with a Lower Anchors and Tether for Children, or LATCH child restraint anchorage system (Fig. 10). The LATCH system provides for the installation of suitable child restraints in certain seating positions without using the standard equipment seat belt provided for that seating position. The rear seat in these models are equipped with a fixed-position child restraint upper tether anchor and child restraint lower anchors for the two outboard seating positions only. Vehicles manufactured for sale outside of North America are equipped with a fixed-position child restraint upper tether anchor for both the center and the two outboard seating positions, but does not have the child restraint lower anchors.

## CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR (Continued)



80f41d3e

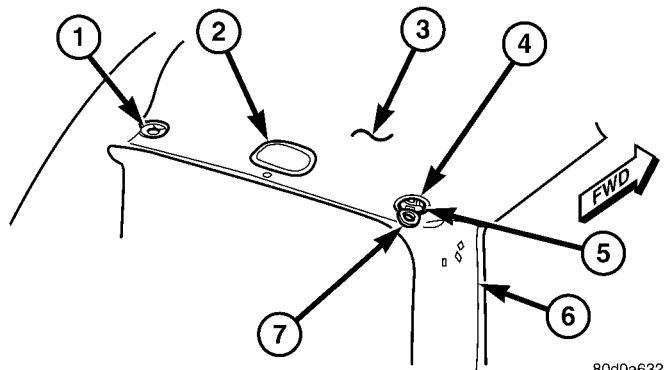
**Fig. 10 Child Restraint Anchor Locations**

1 - LOWER ANCHOR (PROVIDED FOR REAR OUTBOARD SEATING POSITIONS IN NORTH AMERICA ONLY)  
 2 - TETHER ANCHOR (3 LOCATIONS PROVIDED FOR REAR CENTER & OUTBOARD SEATING POSITIONS EXCEPT NORTH AMERICA)

3 - TETHER ANCHOR (2 LOCATIONS FOR REAR OUTBOARD SEATING POSITIONS IN NORTH AMERICA ONLY)

Vehicles manufactured for sale in North America have two stamped steel upper tether anchor brackets, one secured with a screw to each outboard end of the inner liftgate opening header at the rear of the passenger compartment (Fig. 11). These child tether anchors are concealed behind a removable molded plastic cap that snaps into a bezel located in the headliner over each anchor bracket position. The North American child seat tether anchor brackets are available for individual service replacement.

Vehicles manufactured for sale in markets outside of North America have two upper tether anchors that are integral to the back of the right rear seat back panel, and one that is integral to the left rear seat back panel (Fig. 12). These anchors are each constructed from a short piece of round steel bar stock that is securely welded into a stamped cup integral to the seat back panel. There is a separate molded plastic trim bezel located around each of the three anchors. These child restraint upper tether anchors cannot be adjusted or repaired and, if faulty or damaged, they must be replaced as a unit with their respective rear seat back panels.

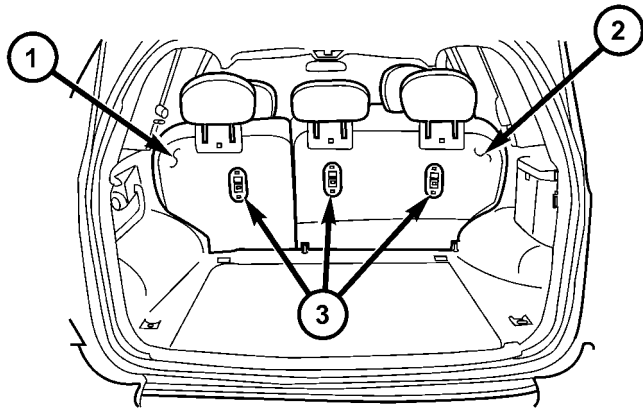


80d0a632

**Fig. 11 Child Tether Anchors - North America**

- 1 - CHILD TETHER ANCHOR (RIGHT)
- 2 - CARGO LAMP
- 3 - HEADLINER
- 4 - BEZEL
- 5 - CHILD TETHER ANCHOR BRACKET
- 6 - D-PILLAR
- 7 - CAP

## CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR (Continued)

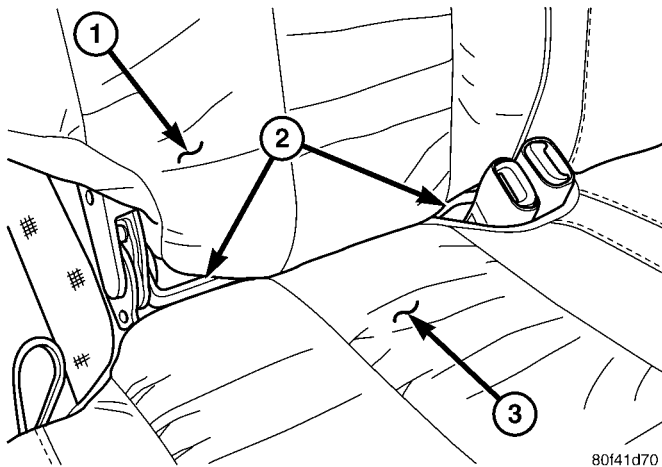


80d008c2

**Fig. 12 Child Tether Anchors - except North America**

- 1 - REAR SEAT BACK (LEFT)
- 2 - REAR SEAT BACK (RIGHT)
- 3 - CHILD TETHER ANCHOR (3)

Vehicles manufactured for sale in North America also have two lower anchors for each rear outboard seating position that are also integral to their respective rear seat back panel (Fig. 13). These anchors are constructed from round steel bar stock that is formed, then securely welded to the lower edge of the seat back panel. They are each accessed from the front of their respective seats, at each side where the seat back meets the seat cushion. These lower anchors cannot be adjusted or repaired and, if faulty or damaged, they must be replaced as a unit with their respective rear seat back panel.



80f41d70

**Fig. 13 Child Restraint Lower Anchors**

- 1 - REAR SEAT BACK
- 2 - LOWER ANCHOR (2 PER OUTBOARD REAR SEATING POSITION)
- 3 - REAR SEAT CUSHION

**OPERATION**

See the owner's manual in the vehicle glove box for more information on the proper use of all of the factory-installed child restraint anchors.

**REMOVAL**

The following service procedure applies to vehicles manufactured for sale in North America, which have removable child restraint upper tether anchor brackets that are located on the inner liftgate opening header. Vehicles manufactured for sale in markets outside of North America have upper tether anchors that are integral to, and are only serviced with the rear seat back panels.

**WARNING: DURING AND FOLLOWING ANY SEAT BELT OR CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR SERVICE, CAREFULLY INSPECT ALL SEAT BELTS, BUCKLES, MOUNTING HARDWARE, RETRACTORS, TETHER STRAPS, AND ANCHORS FOR PROPER INSTALLATION, OPERATION, OR DAMAGE. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT IS CUT, FRAYED, OR TORN. STRAIGHTEN ANY BELT THAT IS TWISTED. TIGHTEN ANY LOOSE FASTENERS. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT HAS A DAMAGED OR INOPERATIVE BUCKLE OR RETRACTOR. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT HAS A BENT OR DAMAGED LATCH PLATE OR ANCHOR PLATE. REPLACE ANY CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR OR THE UNIT TO WHICH THE ANCHOR IS INTEGRAL THAT HAS BEEN BENT OR DAMAGED. NEVER ATTEMPT TO REPAIR A SEAT BELT OR CHILD RESTRAINT COMPONENT. ALWAYS REPLACE DAMAGED OR FAULTY SEAT BELT AND CHILD RESTRAINT COMPONENTS WITH THE CORRECT, NEW AND UNUSED REPLACEMENT PARTS LISTED IN THE DAIMLERCHRYSLER MOPAR PARTS CATALOG.**

(1) Remove the cover from the upper tether anchor bezel in the headliner near the liftgate opening header.

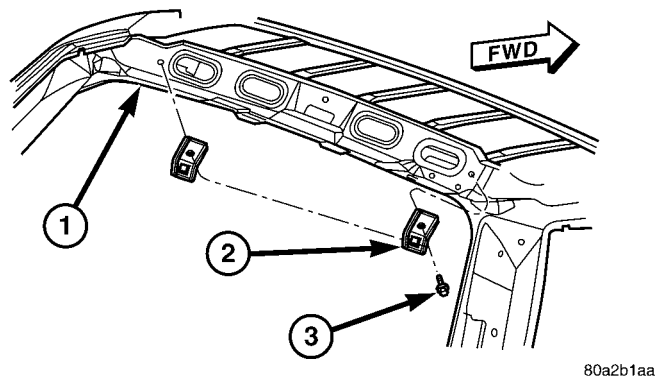
(2) Remove the screw that secures the upper tether anchor bracket to the inner liftgate opening header (Fig. 14).

(3) Remove the upper tether anchor bracket from the inner liftgate opening header.

**INSTALLATION**

The following service procedure applies to vehicles manufactured for sale in North America, which have removable child restraint upper tether anchor brackets that are located on the inner liftgate opening header. Vehicles manufactured for sale in markets outside of North America have upper tether anchors that are integral to, and are only serviced with the rear seat back panels.

## CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR (Continued)

**Fig. 14 Upper Tether Anchor Remove/Install**

- 1 - INNER LIFTGATE OPENING HEADER
- 2 - UPPER TETHER ANCHOR BRACKET
- 3 - SCREW

**WARNING:** DURING AND FOLLOWING ANY SEAT BELT OR CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR SERVICE, CAREFULLY INSPECT ALL SEAT BELTS, BUCKLES, MOUNTING HARDWARE, RETRACTORS, TETHER STRAPS, AND ANCHORS FOR PROPER INSTALLATION, OPERATION, OR DAMAGE. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT IS CUT, FRAYED, OR TORN. STRAIGHTEN ANY BELT THAT IS TWISTED. TIGHTEN ANY LOOSE FASTENERS. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT HAS A DAMAGED OR INOPERATIVE BUCKLE OR RETRACTOR. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT HAS A BENT OR DAMAGED LATCH PLATE OR ANCHOR PLATE. REPLACE ANY CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR OR THE UNIT TO WHICH THE ANCHOR IS INTEGRAL THAT HAS BEEN BENT OR DAMAGED. NEVER ATTEMPT TO REPAIR A SEAT BELT OR CHILD RESTRAINT COMPONENT. ALWAYS REPLACE DAMAGED OR FAULTY SEAT BELT AND CHILD RESTRAINT COMPONENTS WITH THE CORRECT, NEW AND UNUSED REPLACEMENT PARTS LISTED IN THE DAIMLERCHRYSLER MOPAR PARTS CATALOG.

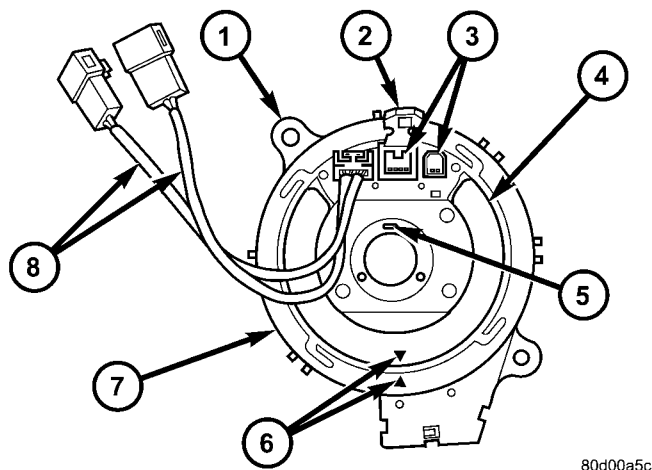
(1) Position the upper tether anchor bracket onto the inner liftgate opening header (Fig. 14).

(2) Install and tighten the screw that secures the upper tether anchor bracket to the inner liftgate opening header. Tighten the screw to 12 N·m (105 in. lbs.).

(3) Reinstall the cover into the upper tether anchor bezel in the headliner near the liftgate opening header.

## CLOCKSPRING

## DESCRIPTION

**Fig. 15 Clockspring Upper View**

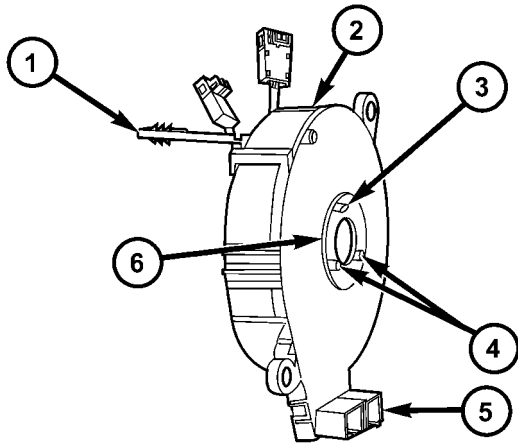
- 1 - MOUNTING EAR (2)
- 2 - LOCKING PIN
- 3 - UPPER CONNECTOR RECEPTACLE (2)
- 4 - LABEL
- 5 - OBLONG PIN
- 6 - ALIGNMENT ARROWS
- 7 - CASE
- 8 - PIGTAIL WIRE (2)

The clockspring assembly is secured with two screws to the multi-function switch mounting housing near the top of the steering column behind the steering wheel (Fig. 15). The clockspring consists of a flat, round molded plastic case with a stubby tail that hangs below the steering column (Fig. 16). The tail contains two connector receptacles that face toward the instrument panel. Within the plastic case is a spool-like molded plastic rotor with a large exposed hub. The upper surface of the rotor hub has a large center hole, two large flats, an index hole, two short pigtail wires with connectors, and two connector receptacles that face toward the steering wheel.

The lower surface of the rotor hub has three pins, two round and one oblong. These pins index the clockspring to the turn signal cancel cam unit in the multi-function switch mounting housing. Within the plastic case and wound around the rotor spool is a long ribbon-like tape that consists of several thin copper wire leads sandwiched between two thin plastic membranes. The outer end of the tape terminates at the connector receptacles that face the instrument panel, while the inner end of the tape terminates at the pigtail wires and connector receptacles on the hub of the clockspring rotor that face the steering wheel.



## CLOCKSPRING (Continued)



80d00a65

**Fig. 16 Clockspring Lower View**

- 1 - LOCKING PIN
- 2 - CASE
- 3 - OBLONG PIN
- 4 - ROUND PIN (2)
- 5 - LOWER CONNECTOR RECEPTACLE (2)
- 6 - ROTOR

Service replacement clocksprings are shipped pre-centered and with a molded plastic locking pin installed. The locking pin secures the centered clockspring rotor to the clockspring case during shipment and handling, but must be removed from the clockspring after it and the multi-function switch mounting housing are installed on the steering column. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS/CLOCKSPRING - STANDARD PROCEDURE - CLOCKSPRING CENTERING).

The clockspring cannot be repaired. If the clockspring is faulty, damaged, or if the driver airbag has been deployed, the clockspring must be replaced.

**OPERATION**

The clockspring is a mechanical electrical circuit component that is used to provide continuous electrical continuity between the fixed instrument panel wire harness and the electrical components mounted on or in the rotating steering wheel. On this model the rotating electrical components include the driver airbag, the horn switch, the speed control switches, and the remote radio switches, if the vehicle is so equipped. The clockspring case is positioned and secured to the multi-function switch mounting housing near the top of the steering column. The connector receptacles on the tail of the fixed clockspring case connect the clockspring to the vehicle electrical system through two take outs with connectors from the instrument panel wire harness.

The clockspring rotor is movable and is keyed to the hub of the steering wheel by two large flats that are molded into the rotor hub. The three pins (two round and one oblong) on the lower surface of the

clockspring rotor hub engage and index the clockspring rotor to the turn signal cancel cam. The turn signal cancel cam is integral to the multi-function switch mounting housing and is keyed to the upper steering column shaft. Two short, yellow-sleeved pig-tail wires on the upper surface of the clockspring rotor connect the clockspring to the driver airbag, while a steering wheel wire harness connects the two connector receptacles on the upper surface of the clockspring rotor to the horn switch, the two speed control switches and, if the vehicle is so equipped, to the optional remote radio switches on the steering wheel.

Like the clockspring in a timepiece, the clockspring tape has travel limits and can be damaged by being wound too tightly during full stop-to-stop steering wheel rotation. To prevent this from occurring, the clockspring is centered when it is installed on the steering column. Centering the clockspring indexes the clockspring tape to the movable steering components so that the tape can operate within its designed travel limits. However, if the clockspring is removed from the steering column or if the steering shaft is disconnected from the steering gear, the clockspring spool can change position relative to the movable steering components and must be re-centered following completion of the service or the tape may be damaged.

Service replacement clocksprings are shipped pre-centered and with a locking pin installed. This locking pin should not be removed until the clockspring has been installed on the steering column. If the locking pin is removed before the clockspring is installed on a steering column, the clockspring centering procedure must be performed. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS/CLOCKSPRING - STANDARD PROCEDURE - CLOCKSPRING CENTERING).

**STANDARD PROCEDURE - CLOCKSPRING CENTERING**

The clockspring is designed to wind and unwind when the steering wheel is rotated, but is only designed to rotate the same number of turns (about five complete rotations) as the steering wheel can be turned from stop to stop. Centering the clockspring indexes the clockspring tape to other steering components so that it can operate within its designed travel limits. The rotor of a centered clockspring can be rotated two and one-half turns in either direction from the centered position, without damaging the clockspring tape.

However, if the clockspring is removed for service or if the steering column is disconnected from the steering gear, the clockspring tape can change position relative to the other steering components. The



## CLOCKSPRING (Continued)

clockspring must then be re-centered following completion of such service or the clockspring tape may be damaged. Service replacement clocksprings are shipped pre-centered and with a molded plastic locking pin installed. This locking pin should not be removed until the clockspring has been installed on the steering column. If the locking pin is removed before the clockspring is installed on a steering column, the clockspring centering procedure must be performed.

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, DRIVER AIRBAG, PASSENGER AIRBAG, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

**NOTE: Before starting this procedure, be certain to turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position.**

(1) Place the front wheels in the straight-ahead position.

(2) Remove the clockspring from the steering column. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS/CLOCKSPRING - REMOVAL).

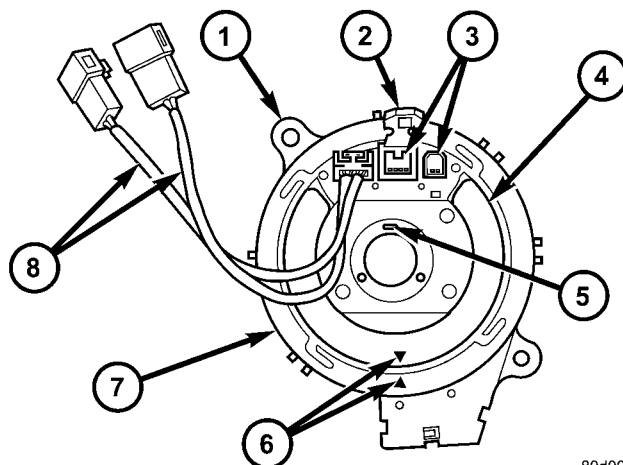
(3) Hold the clockspring case in one hand so that it is oriented as it would be when it is installed on the steering column (Fig. 17).

(4) Use your other hand to rotate the clockspring rotor clockwise to the end of its travel. **Do not apply excessive torque.**

(5) From the end of the clockwise travel, rotate the rotor about two and one-half turns counterclockwise, until the arrows on the clockspring rotor label and the clockspring case are aligned. The uppermost pin on the lower surface of the clockspring rotor should now be the oblong pin.

(6) The clockspring is now centered. Secure the clockspring rotor to the clockspring case to maintain clockspring centering until it is reinstalled on the steering column.

(7) The front wheels should still be in the straight-ahead position. Reinstall the clockspring onto the



80d00a5c

**Fig. 17 Clockspring**

- 1 - MOUNTING EAR (2)
- 2 - LOCKING PIN
- 3 - UPPER CONNECTOR RECEPTACLE (2)
- 4 - LABEL
- 5 - OBLONG PIN
- 6 - ALIGNMENT ARROWS
- 7 - CASE
- 8 - PIGTAIL WIRE (2)

steering column. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS/CLOCKSPRING - INSTALLATION).

## REMOVAL

The clockspring cannot be repaired. It must be replaced if faulty or damaged, or if the driver airbag has been deployed.

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, DRIVER AIRBAG, PASSENGER AIRBAG, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

**NOTE: Before starting this procedure, be certain to turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position.**

(1) Place the front wheels in the straight ahead position.

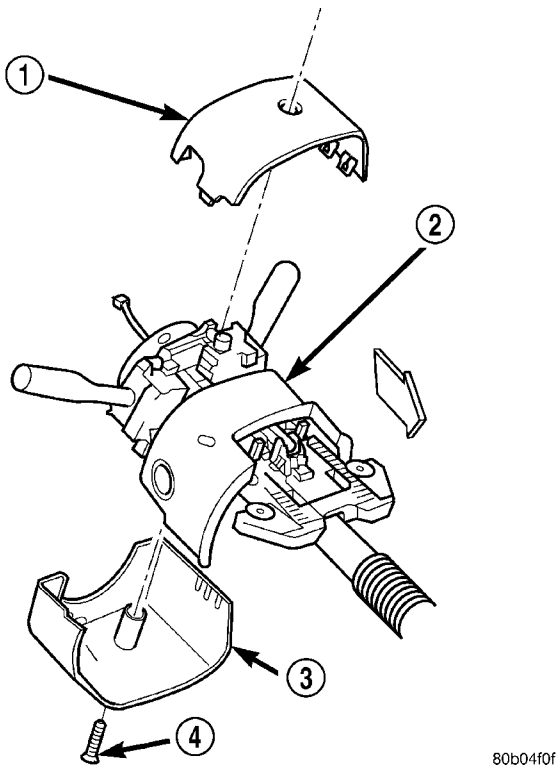
## CLOCKSPRING (Continued)

(2) Remove the driver airbag from the steering wheel. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS/DRIVER AIRBAG - REMOVAL).

(3) Disconnect the steering wheel wire harness connectors from the upper clockspring connector receptacles.

(4) Remove the steering wheel from the steering column. (Refer to 19 - STEERING/COLUMN/STEERING WHEEL - REMOVAL).

(5) From below the steering column, remove the screw that secures the lower tilting steering column shroud to the steering column multi-function switch mounting housing (Fig. 18).



**Fig. 18 Steering Column Shrouds Remove/Install**

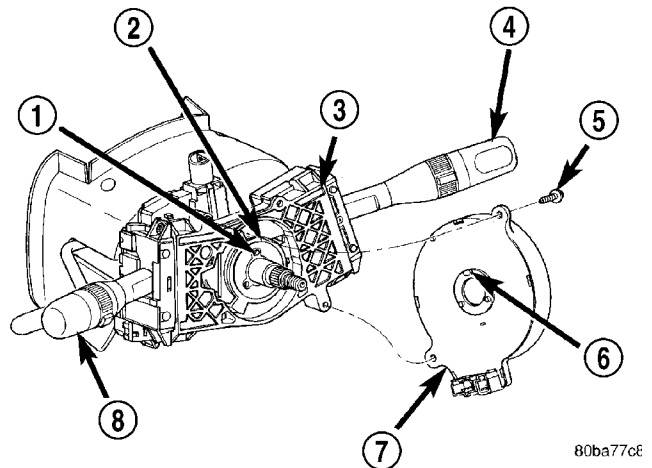
- 1 - UPPER TILTING COLUMN SHROUD
- 2 - FIXED COLUMN SHROUD
- 3 - LOWER TILTING COLUMN SHROUD
- 4 - SCREW

(6) Using hand pressure, push gently inward on both sides of the upper shroud near the parting line between the upper and lower shrouds to release the snap features that secure the two halves to each other.

(7) Remove both the upper and lower shrouds from the steering column.

(8) Disconnect the two instrument panel wire harness connectors for the clockspring from the two connector receptacles below the steering column on the back of the clockspring case.

(9) Remove the two screws that secure the clockspring case to the multi-function switch mounting housing (Fig. 19).



**Fig. 19 Clockspring Remove/Install**

- 1 - OBLONG HOLE
- 2 - TURN SIGNAL CANCEL CAM
- 3 - MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH MOUNTING HOUSING
- 4 - RIGHT MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH
- 5 - SCREW (2)
- 6 - OBLONG PIN
- 7 - CLOCKSPRING
- 8 - LEFT MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH

(10) Remove the clockspring from the multi-function switch mounting housing. The clockspring cannot be repaired. It must be replaced if faulty or damaged, or if the driver airbag has been deployed.

(11) If the removed clockspring is to be reused, be certain to secure the clockspring rotor to the clockspring case to maintain clockspring centering until it is reinstalled on the steering column. If clockspring centering is not maintained, the clockspring must be centered again before it is reinstalled. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS/CLOCKSPRING - STANDARD PROCEDURE - CLOCKSPRING CENTERING).

## INSTALLATION

The clockspring cannot be repaired. It must be replaced if faulty or damaged, or if the driver airbag has been deployed.

If the clockspring is not properly centered in relation to the steering wheel, steering shaft and steering gear, it may be damaged. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS/CLOCKSPRING - STANDARD PROCEDURE - CLOCKSPRING CENTERING). Service replacement clocksprings are shipped pre-centered and with a locking pin installed. This locking pin should not be removed until the clockspring has been installed on the steering column. If the locking pin is removed before the

## CLOCKSPRING (Continued)

clockspring is installed on a steering column, the clockspring centering procedure must be performed.

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, DRIVER AIRBAG, PASSENGER AIRBAG, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

**NOTE:** Before starting this procedure, be certain that the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position.

(1) While holding the centered clockspring rotor and case stationary in relation to each other, carefully slide the clockspring down over the steering column upper shaft.

(2) Align and seat the three pins on the lower surface of the clockspring rotor hub with the three holes in the hub of the turn signal cancel cam (Fig. 19). It should be noted that when the clockspring is properly centered the uppermost pin on the clockspring rotor hub is the oblong pin, and it will only fit in the oblong hole in the hub of the turn signal cancel cam.

(3) Align and seat the one pin and the two mounting ears on the clockspring case to their respective holes in the multi-function switch mounting housing.

(4) Install and tighten the two clockspring mounting screws. Tighten the screws to 2.5 N·m (22 in. lbs.).

(5) Reconnect the two instrument panel wire harness connectors for the clockspring to the two connector receptacles below the steering column on the back of the clockspring housing.

(6) Position the lower tilting steering column shroud onto the steering column (Fig. 18).

(7) Install and tighten the screw that secures the lower tilting steering column shroud to the multi-function switch mounting housing. Tighten the screw to 2 N·m (17 in. lbs.).

(8) Position the upper tilting column shroud onto the steering column with the hazard warning switch button inserted through the hole in the upper surface of the shroud.

(9) Align the snap features on the upper and lower shrouds and apply hand pressure to snap them together.

(10) If a new clockspring has been installed, remove the plastic locking pin that secures the clockspring rotor to the clockspring case to maintain clockspring centering.

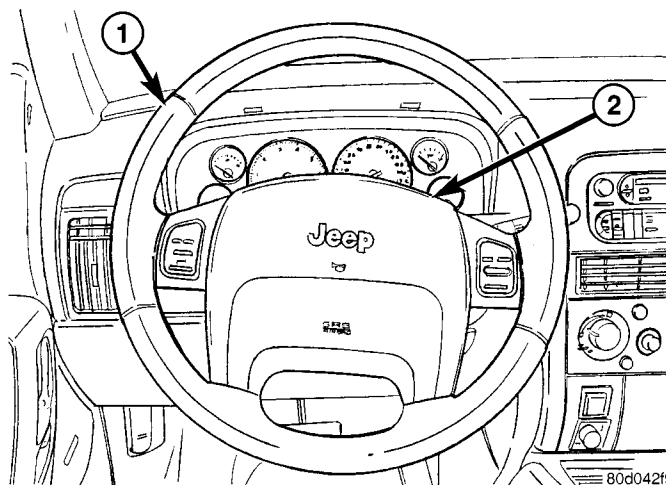
(11) Reinstall the steering wheel onto the steering column. (Refer to 19 - STEERING/COLUMN/STEERING WHEEL - INSTALLATION).

(12) Reconnect the steering wheel wire harness connectors to the upper clockspring connector receptacles.

(13) Reinstall the driver airbag onto the steering wheel. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS/DRIVER AIRBAG - INSTALLATION).

## DRIVER AIRBAG

## DESCRIPTION



**Fig. 20 Driver Airbag Trim Cover**

- 1 - STEERING WHEEL
- 2 - TRIM COVER

The injection molded, thermoplastic driver airbag protective trim cover is the most visible part of the driver airbag (Fig. 20). The driver airbag is located in the center of the steering wheel, where it is secured with two screws to the two horizontal spokes of the four-spoke steering wheel armature. A stamped, satin polished emblem with the Jeep® logo is applied to the center of the trim cover. Concealed beneath the driver airbag trim cover are the horn switch, the folded airbag cushion, the airbag cushion retainer, the airbag housing, the airbag inflator, and the retainers that secure the inflator to the airbag housing.

The airbag cushion, housing, and inflator are secured within an integral receptacle molded into the

## DRIVER AIRBAG (Continued)

back of the trim cover. Locking blocks molded into the back of the trim cover around the receptacle engage a lip formed around the perimeter of the airbag housing stamping. Two stamped metal retainers then fit over the inflator mounting studs on the back of the airbag housing and are engaged in slots within the upper and lower trim cover locking blocks, securely locking the cover into place.

The resistive membrane-type horn switch is secured within a plastic tray that is inserted in a pocket or pouch sewn onto the airbag cushion retainer strap, between the trim cover and the folded airbag cushion. The horn switch ground pigtail wire has an eyelet terminal connector that is captured on the upper right inflator mounting stud between the inflator and the upper trim cover retainer. The horn switch feed pigtail wire has a white, molded plastic insulator that is secured by an integral retainer to a mounting hole located in the upper trim cover retainer near the upper left corner on the back of the airbag housing, and is connected to the vehicle electrical system through a take out and connector of the steering wheel wire harness.

The airbag used in this model is a multistage, Next Generation-type that complies with revised federal airbag standards to deploy with less force than those used in some prior models. A radial deploying fabric airbag cushion with internal tethers is used. The airbag inflator is a dual-initiator, non-azide, pyrotechnic-type unit with four mounting studs and is secured to the stamped metal airbag housing using four hex nuts with washers. Two keyed and color-coded connector receptacles on the driver airbag inflator connect the two inflator initiators to the vehicle electrical system through two yellow-jacketed, two-wire pigtail harnesses of the clockspring. The driver airbag cannot be repaired, and must be replaced if deployed or in any way damaged. The driver airbag trim cover and the horn switch are available for individual service replacement.

## OPERATION

The multistage driver airbag is deployed by electrical signals generated by the Airbag Control Module (ACM) through the driver airbag squib 1 and squib 2 circuits to the two initiators in the airbag inflator. By using two initiators, the airbag can be deployed at multiple levels of force. The force level is controlled by the ACM to suit the monitored impact conditions by providing one of four delay intervals between the electrical signals provided to the two initiators. The longer the delay between these signals, the less forcefully the airbag will deploy.

When the ACM sends the proper electrical signals to each initiator, the electrical energy generates enough heat to initiate a small pyrotechnic charge

which, in turn ignites chemical pellets within the inflator. Once ignited, these chemical pellets burn rapidly and produce a large quantity of inert gas. The inflator is sealed to the back of the airbag housing and a diffuser in the inflator directs all of the inert gas into the airbag cushion, causing the cushion to inflate. As the cushion inflates, the driver airbag trim cover will split at predetermined breakout lines, then fold back out of the way along with the horn switch and tray unit. Following an airbag deployment, the airbag cushion quickly deflates by venting the inert gas towards the instrument panel through vent holes within the fabric used to construct the back (steering wheel side) panel of the airbag cushion.

Some of the chemicals used to create the inert gas may be considered hazardous while in their solid state before they are burned, but they are securely sealed within the airbag inflator. Typically, both initiators are used and all potentially hazardous chemicals are burned during an airbag deployment event. However, it is possible for only one initiator to be used during a deployment due to an airbag system fault; therefore, it is necessary to always confirm that both initiators have been used in order to avoid the improper disposal of potentially live pyrotechnic or hazardous materials. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS - STANDARD PROCEDURE - SERVICE AFTER A SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT DEPLOYMENT).

The inert gas that is produced when the chemicals are burned is harmless. However, a small amount of residue from the burned chemicals may cause some temporary discomfort if it contacts the skin, eyes, or breathing passages. If skin or eye irritation is noted, rinse the affected area with plenty of cool, clean water. If breathing passages are irritated, move to another area where there is plenty of clean, fresh air to breathe. If the irritation is not alleviated by these actions, contact a physician.

## REMOVAL

The following procedure is for replacement of a faulty or damaged driver airbag. If the airbag is faulty or damaged, but not deployed, review the recommended procedures for handling non-deployed supplemental restraints. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS - STANDARD PROCEDURE - HANDLING NON-DEPLOYED SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINTS). If the driver airbag has been deployed, review the recommended procedures for service after a supplemental restraint deployment before removing the airbag from the vehicle. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS - STANDARD PROCEDURE - SERVICE AFTER A SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT DEPLOYMENT).



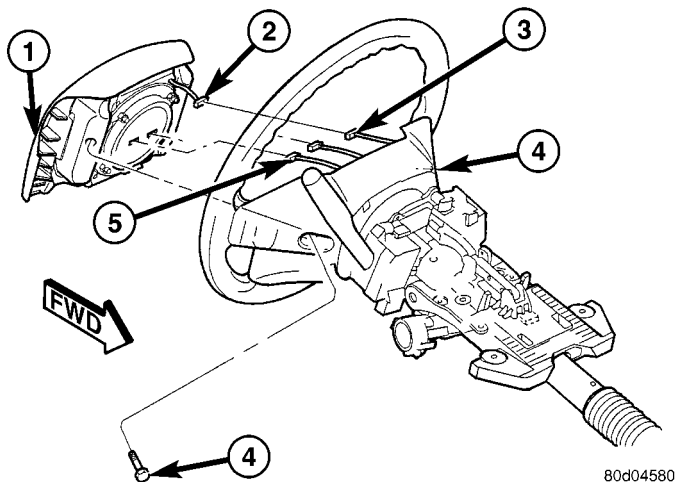
## DRIVER AIRBAG (Continued)

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, DRIVER AIRBAG, PASSENGER AIRBAG, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

**WARNING: WHEN REMOVING A DEPLOYED AIRBAG, RUBBER GLOVES, EYE PROTECTION, AND A LONG-SLEEVED SHIRT SHOULD BE WORN. THERE MAY BE DEPOSITS ON THE AIRBAG CUSHION AND OTHER INTERIOR SURFACES. IN LARGE DOSES, THESE DEPOSITS MAY CAUSE IRRITATION TO THE SKIN AND EYES.**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Wait two minutes for the system capacitor to discharge before further service.

(2) From the underside of the steering wheel, remove the two screws that secure the driver airbag to the steering wheel armature (Fig. 21).



**Fig. 21 Driver Airbag Remove/Install**

- 1 - DRIVER AIRBAG
- 2 - HORN SWITCH FEED WIRE CONNECTOR
- 3 - STEERING WHEEL WIRE HARNESS CONNECTOR
- 4 - SCREW (2)
- 5 - CLOCKSPring PIGTAIL WIRE CONNECTOR (2)

(3) Pull the driver airbag away from the steering wheel far enough to access the three electrical connections on the back of the airbag housing.

(4) Disconnect the steering wheel wire harness connector for the horn switch from the horn switch feed pigtail wire connector, which is located on the back of the driver airbag housing.

**CAUTION: Do not pull on the clockspring pigtail wires or pry on the connector insulator to disengage the connector from the driver airbag inflator connector receptacle. Improper removal of these pigtail wires and their connector insulators can result in damage to the airbag circuits or connector insulators.**

(5) The clockspring driver airbag pigtail wire connectors are secured by an integral lock to the airbag inflator connector receptacles, which are located at the back of the driver airbag housing. Firmly grasp and pull the lock straight out from the connector insulator, then pull the insulators straight out from the airbag inflator to disconnect them from the connector receptacles.

(6) Remove the driver airbag from the steering wheel.

(7) If the driver airbag has been deployed, the clockspring must be replaced. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS/CLOCKSPring - REMOVAL).

## DISASSEMBLY

The following procedures can be used to replace the driver airbag trim cover and/or to access the horn switch unit for service. If the driver airbag is faulty or deployed, the entire driver airbag, trim cover, and horn switch must be replaced as a unit.

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, DRIVER AIRBAG, PASSENGER AIRBAG, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**



## DRIVER AIRBAG (Continued)

**WARNING: THE HORN SWITCH IS INTEGRAL TO THE DRIVER AIRBAG UNIT. SERVICE OF THIS UNIT SHOULD BE PERFORMED ONLY BY DAIMLER-CHRYSLER-TRAINED AND AUTHORIZED DEALER SERVICE TECHNICIANS. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS OR TO FOLLOW THE PROPER PROCEDURES COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL, INCOMPLETE, OR IMPROPER AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE OCCUPANT INJURIES.**

**WARNING: USE EXTREME CARE TO PREVENT ANY FOREIGN MATERIAL FROM ENTERING THE DRIVER AIRBAG, OR BECOMING ENTRAPPED BETWEEN THE DRIVER AIRBAG CUSHION AND THE DRIVER AIRBAG TRIM COVER. FAILURE TO OBSERVE THIS WARNING COULD RESULT IN OCCUPANT INJURIES UPON AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT.**

**WARNING: THE DRIVER AIRBAG TRIM COVER MUST NEVER BE PAINTED. REPLACEMENT TRIM COVERS ARE SERVICED IN THE ORIGINAL COLORS. PAINT MAY CHANGE THE WAY IN WHICH THE MATERIAL OF THE TRIM COVER RESPONDS TO AN AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT. FAILURE TO OBSERVE THIS WARNING COULD RESULT IN OCCUPANT INJURIES UPON AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT.**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Wait two minutes for the system capacitor to discharge before further service.

(2) Remove the driver airbag from the steering wheel. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS/DRIVER AIRBAG - REMOVAL).

(3) Place the driver airbag on a suitable work surface with the trim cover facing down. If the trim cover will be reused, be certain to take the proper precautions to prevent the trim cover from receiving cosmetic damage during the following procedures.

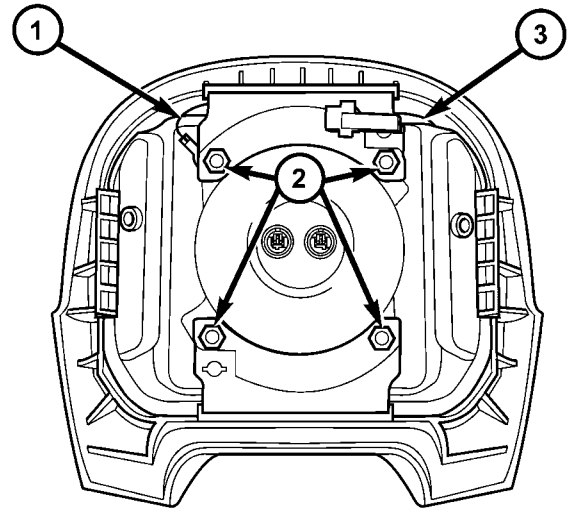
(4) Remove the four nuts that secure the upper and lower trim cover retainers to the studs on the back of the driver airbag housing (Fig. 22).

(5) Remove the upper and lower trim cover retainers from the airbag housing studs (Fig. 23).

(6) Disengage the horn switch feed pigtail wire connector retainer from the mounting hole in the upper trim cover retainer.

(7) Remove the horn switch ground pigtail wire eyelet terminal from the upper right inflator stud on the back of the driver airbag housing.

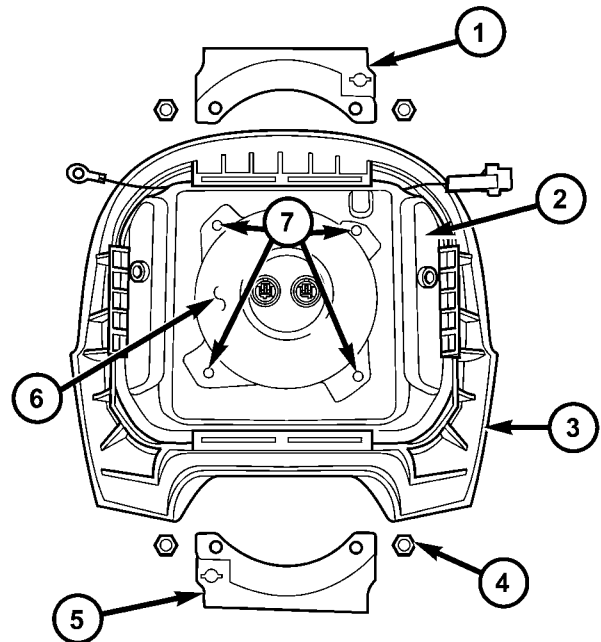
(8) Disengage the four trim cover locking blocks from the lip around the outside edge of the driver airbag housing and remove the housing from the trim cover receptacle (Fig. 24).



80d07463

**Fig. 22 Driver Airbag Trim Cover Retainer Nuts Remove/Install**

- 1 - HORN SWITCH GROUND PIGTAIL WIRE
- 2 - NUT (4)
- 3 - HORN SWITCH FEED PIGTAIL WIRE

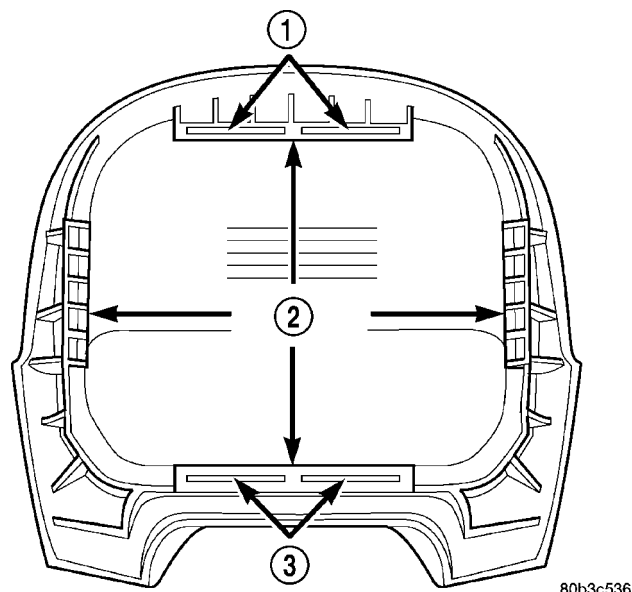


80d0746e

**Fig. 23 Driver Airbag Trim Cover**

- 1 - UPPER RETAINER
- 2 - AIRBAG HOUSING
- 3 - TRIM COVER
- 4 - NUT (4)
- 5 - LOWER RETAINER
- 6 - INFLATOR
- 7 - STUD (4)

## DRIVER AIRBAG (Continued)



**Fig. 24 Driver Airbag Trim Cover Remove/Install**

- 1 - UPPER RETAINER SLOT (2)
- 2 - LOCKING BLOCK (4)
- 3 - LOWER RETAINER SLOT (2)

## ASSEMBLY

The following procedures can be used to replace the driver airbag trim cover and/or to access the horn switch unit for service. If the driver airbag is faulty or deployed, the entire driver airbag, trim cover, and horn switch must be replaced as a unit.

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, DRIVER AIRBAG, PASSENGER AIRBAG, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

**WARNING: THE HORN SWITCH IS INTEGRAL TO THE DRIVER AIRBAG UNIT. SERVICE OF THIS UNIT SHOULD BE PERFORMED ONLY BY DAIMLER-CHRYSLER-TRAINED AND AUTHORIZED DEALER SERVICE TECHNICIANS. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS OR TO FOLLOW THE PROPER PROCEDURES COULD RESULT IN ACCI-**

**DENTAL, INCOMPLETE, OR IMPROPER AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE OCCUPANT INJURIES.**

**WARNING: USE EXTREME CARE TO PREVENT ANY FOREIGN MATERIAL FROM ENTERING THE DRIVER AIRBAG, OR BECOMING ENTRAPPED BETWEEN THE DRIVER AIRBAG CUSHION AND THE DRIVER AIRBAG TRIM COVER. FAILURE TO OBSERVE THIS WARNING COULD RESULT IN OCCUPANT INJURIES UPON AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT.**

**WARNING: THE DRIVER AIRBAG TRIM COVER MUST NEVER BE PAINTED. REPLACEMENT TRIM COVERS ARE SERVICED IN THE ORIGINAL COLORS. PAINT MAY CHANGE THE WAY IN WHICH THE MATERIAL OF THE TRIM COVER RESPONDS TO AN AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT. FAILURE TO OBSERVE THIS WARNING COULD RESULT IN OCCUPANT INJURIES UPON AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT.**

**NOTE: If the horn switch and tray have been removed from the sewn pouch in the airbag cushion retaining strap, be certain that they are properly reinstalled with the horn switch feed and ground pigtail wires properly oriented before assembling the trim cover onto the airbag housing. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/HORN/HORN SWITCH - INSTALLATION).**

(1) Place the new driver airbag trim cover on a suitable work surface with the airbag receptacle facing up. Be certain to take the proper precautions to prevent the trim cover from receiving cosmetic damage during the following procedures.

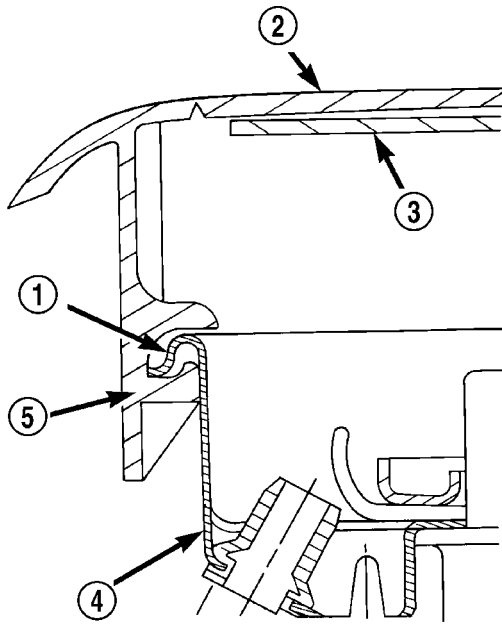
(2) Carefully position the driver airbag into the trim cover receptacle. Be certain that the horn switch feed and ground pigtail wires are not pinched between the airbag housing and the trim cover locking blocks.

(3) Engage the upper and lower trim cover locking blocks with the lip of the driver airbag housing, then engage the locking blocks on each side of the trim cover with the lip of the housing. Be certain that each of the locking blocks is fully engaged on the lip of the airbag housing (Fig. 25).

(4) Reinstall the horn switch ground pigtail wire eyelet terminal over the upper right inflator stud on the back of the driver airbag housing.

(5) Reinstall the upper and lower airbag trim cover retainers over the inflator studs on the back of the driver airbag housing. Be certain that the tabs on each retainer are engaged in the slots of the upper and lower trim cover locking blocks (Fig. 24).

## DRIVER AIRBAG (Continued)



80a0f19f

**Fig. 25 Driver Airbag Trim Cover Locking Blocks Engaged**

- 1 - LIP
- 2 - TRIM COVER
- 3 - HORN SWITCH
- 4 - AIRBAG HOUSING
- 5 - LOCKING BLOCK

(6) Install and tighten the four nuts that secure the trim cover retainers to the inflator studs on the back of the driver airbag housing. Tighten the nuts to 7 N·m (60 in. lbs.).

(7) Engage the horn switch feed pigtail wire connector retainer in the mounting hole in the upper trim cover retainer.

(8) Reinstall the driver airbag onto the steering wheel. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS/DRIVER AIRBAG - INSTALLATION).

## INSTALLATION

The following procedure is for replacement of a faulty or damaged driver airbag. If the airbag is faulty or damaged, but not deployed, review the recommended procedures for handling non-deployed supplemental restraints. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS - STANDARD PROCEDURE - HANDLING NON-DEPLOYED SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINTS). If the driver airbag has been deployed, review the recommended procedures for service after a supplemental restraint deployment before removing the airbag from the vehicle. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS - STANDARD PROCEDURE - SERVICE AFTER A SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT DEPLOYMENT).

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, DRIVER AIRBAG, PASSENGER AIRBAG, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

**WARNING: USE EXTREME CARE TO PREVENT ANY FOREIGN MATERIAL FROM ENTERING THE DRIVER AIRBAG, OR BECOMING ENTRAPPED BETWEEN THE DRIVER AIRBAG CUSHION AND THE DRIVER AIRBAG TRIM COVER. FAILURE TO OBSERVE THIS WARNING COULD RESULT IN OCCUPANT INJURIES UPON AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT.**

**WARNING: THE DRIVER AIRBAG TRIM COVER MUST NEVER BE PAINTED. REPLACEMENT AIRBAGS AND TRIM COVERS ARE SERVICED IN THE ORIGINAL COLORS. PAINT MAY CHANGE THE WAY IN WHICH THE MATERIAL OF THE TRIM COVER RESPONDS TO AN AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT. FAILURE TO OBSERVE THIS WARNING COULD RESULT IN OCCUPANT INJURIES UPON AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT.**

(1) Position the driver airbag close enough to the steering wheel to reconnect the three electrical connections on the back of the airbag housing.

(2) When installing the driver airbag, reconnect the two clockspring driver airbag pigtail wire connectors to the airbag inflator connector receptacles by pressing straight in on the connectors (Fig. 21), then pushing the locks straight into the connectors. You can be certain that the connector is fully engaged by listening carefully for a distinct, audible click as the connector latches snap into place.

(3) Reconnect the steering wheel wire harness connector for the horn switch to the horn switch feed pigtail wire connector, which is located at the back of the driver airbag housing.

(4) Carefully position the driver airbag in the steering wheel. Be certain that the clockspring pigtail wires and steering wheel wire harness in the steering wheel hub area are not pinched between the driver airbag and the steering wheel armature.

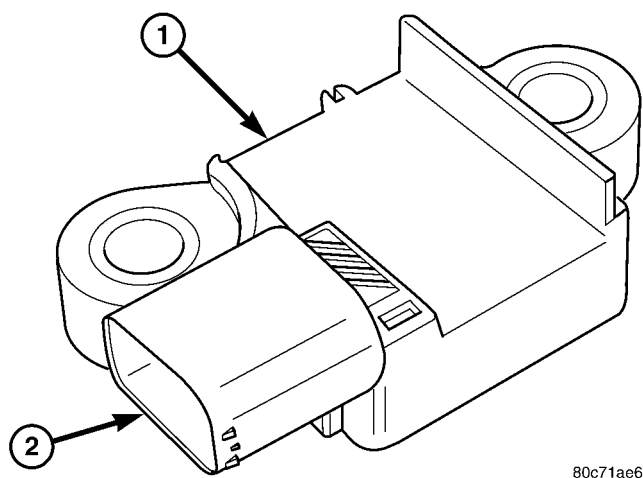
## DRIVER AIRBAG (Continued)

(5) From the underside of the steering wheel, install and tighten the two screws that secure the driver airbag to the steering wheel armature. Tighten the screws to 10 N·m (90 in. lbs.).

(6) Do not reconnect the battery negative cable at this time. The supplemental restraint system verification test procedure should be performed following service of any supplemental restraint system component. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS - STANDARD PROCEDURE - VERIFICATION TEST).

## FRONT IMPACT SENSOR

## DESCRIPTION



**Fig. 26 Front Impact Sensor**

- 1 - SENSOR
- 2 - CONNECTOR RECEPTACLE

Two front impact sensors are used on this model, one each for the left and right sides of the vehicle (Fig. 26). These sensors are mounted remotely from the impact sensor that is internal to the Airbag Control Module (ACM). The right and left front and side impact sensors are identical in construction and calibration with the exception of the right-hand and left-hand die cast aluminum mounting brackets to which each front impact sensor is secured with two screws. The front impact sensor brackets are secured with three screws to the front and inboard sides of the right and left vertical members of the radiator support within the engine compartment.

The impact sensor housing has an integral connector receptacle and two integral mounting ears, each with a metal sleeve to provide crush protection. A cavity in the center of the molded black plastic impact sensor housing contains the electronic circuitry of the sensor which includes an electronic communication chip and an electronic impact sensor. Potting material fills the cavity to seal and protect the internal electronic circuitry and components. The

front impact sensors are each connected to the vehicle electrical system through a dedicated take out and connector of the right or left headlamp and dash wire harnesses.

The front impact sensors cannot be repaired or adjusted and, if damaged or faulty, they must be replaced. If a front impact sensor is faulty, only the sensor needs to be replaced. If the sensor or the sensor mounting bracket is damaged or faulty, or if proper tightening torque of the screws that secure the sensor to the bracket cannot be achieved, the sensor and bracket unit must be replaced.

## OPERATION

The front impact sensors are electronic accelerometers that sense the rate of vehicle deceleration, which provides verification of the direction and severity of an impact. Each sensor also contains an electronic communication chip that allows the unit to communicate the sensor status as well as sensor fault information to the microprocessor in the Airbag Control Module (ACM). The ACM microprocessor continuously monitors all of the passive restraint system electrical circuits to determine the system readiness. If the ACM detects a monitored system fault, it sets a Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) and controls the airbag indicator operation accordingly.

The impact sensors each receive battery current and ground through dedicated left and right sensor plus and minus circuits from the ACM. The impact sensors and the ACM communicate by modulating the voltage in the sensor plus circuit. The hard wired circuits between the front impact sensors and the ACM may be diagnosed and tested using conventional diagnostic tools and procedures. However, conventional diagnostic methods will not prove conclusive in the diagnosis of the ACM or the impact sensors. The most reliable, efficient, and accurate means to diagnose the impact sensors, the ACM, and the electronic message communication between the sensors and the ACM requires the use of a DRBIII® scan tool. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

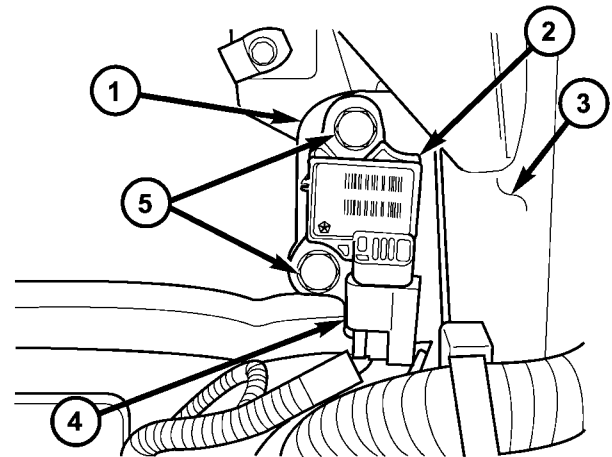
## REMOVAL

The front and side impact sensors are interchangeable except that the front impact sensors are serviced with a right or left mounting bracket, while the side impact sensors use no mounting bracket. If a front impact sensor is faulty, but not damaged, the sensor may be removed from the sensor mounting bracket and replaced with a side impact sensor. If the front impact sensor or the sensor mounting bracket are damaged in any way, or if proper tightening torque of the screws that secure the sensor to the bracket cannot be achieved, the front impact sensor and bracket must be replaced as a unit.



## FRONT IMPACT SENSOR (Continued)

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, DRIVER AIRBAG, PASSENGER AIRBAG, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**



80d3f43c

**Fig. 27 Front Impact Sensor Remove/Install (Right Side Shown, Left Side Similar)**

- 1 - BRACKET
- 2 - IMPACT SENSOR
- 3 - RADIATOR SUPPORT
- 4 - WIRE HARNESS CONNECTOR
- 5 - SCREW (2)

the screws that secure the sensor to the bracket cannot be achieved, the front impact sensor and bracket must be replaced as a unit.

**WARNING: THE FRONT IMPACT SENSOR ENABLES THE SYSTEM TO DEPLOY THE FRONT SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINTS. NEVER STRIKE OR DROP THE FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, AS IT CAN DAMAGE THE IMPACT SENSOR OR AFFECT ITS CALIBRATION. IF AN IMPACT SENSOR IS ACCIDENTALLY DROPPED DURING SERVICE, THE SENSOR MUST BE SCRAPPED AND REPLACED WITH A NEW UNIT. FAILURE TO OBSERVE THIS WARNING COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL, INCOMPLETE, OR IMPROPER FRONT SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE OCCUPANT INJURIES.**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Wait two minutes for the system capacitor to discharge before further service.

(2) From the engine compartment, disconnect the right or left headlamp and dash wire harness connector for the front impact sensor from the sensor connector receptacle (Fig. 27).

(3) From the engine compartment, remove the two screws that secure the right or left front impact sensor to the sensor mounting bracket on the right or left radiator support vertical member.

(4) Remove the front impact sensor from the sensor mounting bracket.

## INSTALLATION

The front and side impact sensors are interchangeable except that the front impact sensors are serviced with a right or left mounting bracket, while the side impact sensors use no mounting bracket. If a front impact sensor is faulty, but not damaged, the sensor may be removed from the sensor mounting bracket and replaced with a side impact sensor. If the front impact sensor or the sensor mounting bracket are damaged in any way, or if proper tightening torque of

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, DRIVER AIRBAG, PASSENGER AIRBAG, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**



## FRONT IMPACT SENSOR (Continued)

**WARNING: THE FRONT IMPACT SENSOR ENABLES THE SYSTEM TO DEPLOY THE FRONT SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINTS. NEVER STRIKE OR DROP THE FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, AS IT CAN DAMAGE THE IMPACT SENSOR OR AFFECT ITS CALIBRATION. IF AN IMPACT SENSOR IS ACCIDENTALLY DROPPED DURING SERVICE, THE SENSOR MUST BE SCRAPPED AND REPLACED WITH A NEW UNIT. FAILURE TO OBSERVE THIS WARNING COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL, INCOMPLETE, OR IMPROPER FRONT SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE OCCUPANT INJURIES.**

(1) Position the right or left front impact sensor to the sensor mounting bracket on the right or left radiator support vertical member in the engine compartment (Fig. 27).

(2) Install and tighten the two screws that secure the right or left front impact sensor to the sensor mounting bracket. Tighten the screws to 10 N·m (85 in. lbs.).

(3) Reconnect the right or left headlamp and dash wire harness connector for the front impact sensor to the sensor connector receptacle.

(4) Do not reconnect the battery negative cable at this time. The supplemental restraint system verification test procedure should be performed following service of any supplemental restraint system component. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS - STANDARD PROCEDURE - VERIFICATION TEST).

## FRONT IMPACT SENSOR & BRACKET

### REMOVAL

The front and side impact sensors are interchangeable except that the front impact sensors are serviced with a right or left mounting bracket, while the side impact sensors use no mounting bracket. If a front impact sensor is faulty, but not damaged, the sensor may be removed from the sensor mounting bracket and replaced with a side impact sensor. If the front impact sensor or the sensor mounting bracket are damaged in any way, or if proper tightening torque of the screws that secure the sensor to the bracket cannot be achieved, the front impact sensor and bracket must be replaced as a unit.

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, DRIVER AIRBAG, PASSENGER AIRBAG, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE IMPACT SENSOR,**

**SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

**WARNING: THE FRONT IMPACT SENSOR ENABLES THE SYSTEM TO DEPLOY THE FRONT SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINTS. NEVER STRIKE OR DROP THE FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, AS IT CAN DAMAGE THE IMPACT SENSOR OR AFFECT ITS CALIBRATION. IF AN IMPACT SENSOR IS ACCIDENTALLY DROPPED DURING SERVICE, THE SENSOR MUST BE SCRAPPED AND REPLACED WITH A NEW UNIT. FAILURE TO OBSERVE THIS WARNING COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL, INCOMPLETE, OR IMPROPER FRONT SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE OCCUPANT INJURIES.**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Wait two minutes for the system capacitor to discharge before further service.

(2) Remove the headlamp mounting module from the front of the vehicle. (Refer to 23 - BODY/EXTERIOR/HEADLAMP MOUNTING MODULE - REMOVAL).

(3) Disconnect the right or left headlamp and dash wire harness connector for the front impact sensor from the sensor connector receptacle.

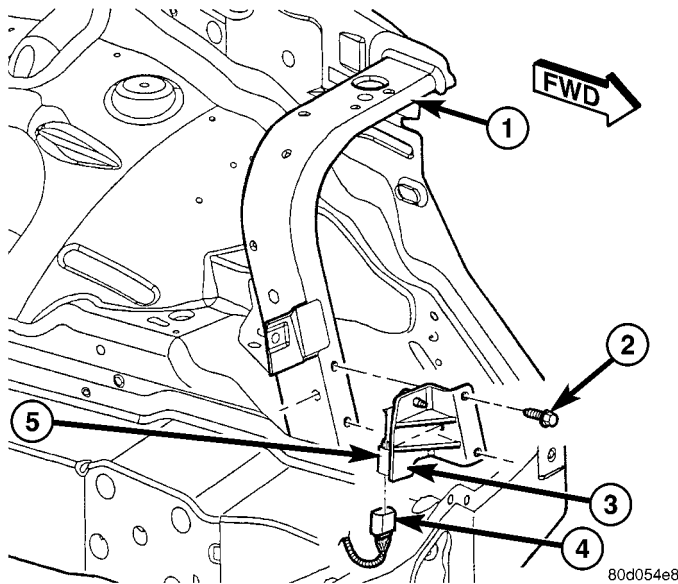
(4) Remove the three screws that secure the right or left front impact sensor and bracket unit to the right or left radiator support vertical member (Fig. 28).

(5) Remove the right or left front impact sensor and bracket unit from the front of the vehicle.

### INSTALLATION

The front and side impact sensors are interchangeable except that the front impact sensors are serviced with a right or left mounting bracket, while the side impact sensors use no mounting bracket. If a front impact sensor is faulty, but not damaged, the sensor may be removed from the sensor mounting bracket and replaced with a side impact sensor. If the front impact sensor or the sensor mounting bracket are damaged in any way, or if proper tightening torque of the screws that secure the sensor to the bracket cannot be achieved, the front impact sensor and bracket must be replaced as a unit.

## FRONT IMPACT SENSOR &amp; BRACKET (Continued)

**Fig. 28 Front Impact Sensor & B Remove/Install**

- 1 - RADIATOR SUPPORT
- 2 - SCREW (3)
- 3 - BRACKET
- 4 - WIRE HARNESS CONNECTOR
- 5 - IMPACT SENSOR

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, DRIVER AIRBAG, PASSENGER AIRBAG, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

**WARNING: THE FRONT IMPACT SENSOR ENABLES THE SYSTEM TO DEPLOY THE FRONT SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINTS. NEVER STRIKE OR DROP THE FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, AS IT CAN DAMAGE THE IMPACT SENSOR OR AFFECT ITS CALIBRATION. IF AN IMPACT SENSOR IS ACCIDENTALLY DROPPED DURING SERVICE, THE SENSOR MUST BE SCRAPPED AND REPLACED WITH A NEW UNIT. FAILURE TO OBSERVE THIS WARNING COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL, INCOMPLETE, OR IMPROPER FRONT SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE OCCUPANT INJURIES.**

(1) Position the right or left front impact sensor and bracket unit to the front of the vehicle (Fig. 28).

(2) Position the right or left front impact sensor and bracket unit to the right or left radiator support vertical member.

(3) Loosely install the three screws that secure the right or left front impact sensor and bracket unit right or left radiator support vertical member.

(4) For the right impact sensor and bracket unit, the tightening sequence for the three screws that secure it to the right radiator support vertical member is from top to bottom. For the left impact sensor and bracket unit, the tightening sequence for the three screws that secure it to the left radiator support vertical member is from bottom to top. Tighten the screws to 12 N·m (105 in. lbs.).

(5) Reconnect the right or left headlamp and dash wire harness connector for the front impact sensor to the sensor connector receptacle.

(6) Reinstall the headlamp mounting module to the front of the vehicle. (Refer to 23 - BODY/EXTERIOR/HEADLAMP MOUNTING MODULE - INSTALLATION).

(7) Do not reconnect the battery negative cable at this time. The supplemental restraint system verification test procedure should be performed following service of any supplemental restraint system component. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS - STANDARD PROCEDURE - VERIFICATION TEST).

## FRONT SEAT BELT & RETRACTOR

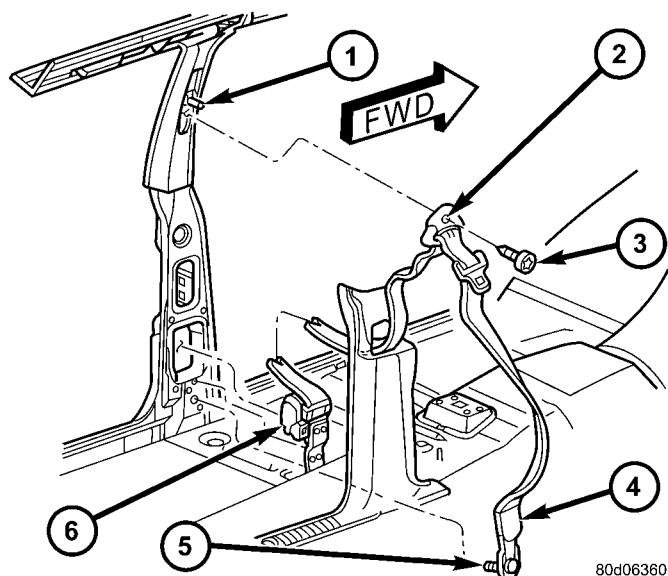
### REMOVAL

The following procedure is for replacement of a faulty or damaged seat belt and retractor unit. On some vehicles manufactured for certain markets outside of North America, the seat belt retractor includes a seat belt tensioner. If a front seat belt or retractor equipped with a seat belt tensioner is faulty or damaged, but the seat belt tensioner is not deployed, review the recommended procedures for handling non-deployed supplemental restraints. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS - STANDARD PROCEDURE - HANDLING NON-DEPLOYED SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINTS). If the seat belt tensioner has been deployed, review the recommended procedures for service after a supplemental restraint deployment before removing the unit from the vehicle. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS - STANDARD PROCEDURE - SERVICE AFTER A SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT DEPLOYMENT).

## FRONT SEAT BELT &amp; RETRACTOR (Continued)

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, DRIVER AIRBAG, PASSENGER AIRBAG, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

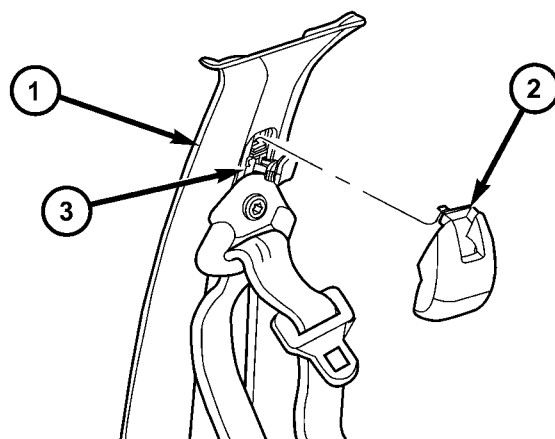
**WARNING: DURING AND FOLLOWING ANY SEAT BELT OR CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR SERVICE, CAREFULLY INSPECT ALL SEAT BELTS, BUCKLES, MOUNTING HARDWARE, RETRACTORS, TETHER STRAPS, AND ANCHORS FOR PROPER INSTALLATION, OPERATION, OR DAMAGE. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT IS CUT, FRAYED, OR TORN. STRAIGHTEN ANY BELT THAT IS TWISTED. TIGHTEN ANY LOOSE FASTENERS. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT HAS A DAMAGED OR INOPERATIVE BUCKLE OR RETRACTOR. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT HAS A BENT OR DAMAGED LATCH PLATE OR ANCHOR PLATE. REPLACE ANY CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR OR THE UNIT TO WHICH THE ANCHOR IS INTEGRAL THAT HAS BEEN BENT OR DAMAGED. NEVER ATTEMPT TO REPAIR A SEAT BELT OR CHILD RESTRAINT COMPONENT. ALWAYS REPLACE DAMAGED OR FAULTY SEAT BELT AND CHILD RESTRAINT COMPONENTS WITH THE CORRECT, NEW AND UNUSED REPLACEMENT PARTS LISTED IN THE DAIMLERCHRYSLER MOPAR PARTS CATALOG.**



80d06380

**Fig. 29 Front Seat Belt & Retractor Remove/Install**

- 1 - ADJUSTER
- 2 - TURNING LOOP
- 3 - SCREW
- 4 - LOWER ANCHOR
- 5 - SCREW
- 6 - RETRACTOR



80d06382

**Fig. 30 Turning Loop Cover Remove/Install**

- 1 - PILLAR
- 2 - TRIM COVER
- 3 - ADJUSTER

(1) Adjust the front seat to its most forward position for easiest access to the front seat belt lower anchor and the B-pillar trim.

(2) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(3) Lift the front seat belt lower anchor cover far enough to access the screw that secures it to the lower B-pillar (Fig. 29).

(4) Remove the screw that secures the lower anchor to the B-pillar.

(5) Using a trim stick or another suitable wide flat-bladed tool, gently pry the top of the turning loop trim cover to unsnap it from the height adjuster and access the screw that secures the front seat belt turning loop to the adjuster on the upper B-pillar (Fig. 30).

(6) Remove the screw that secures the seat belt turning loop to the height adjuster on the upper B-pillar.

(7) Remove the seat belt turning loop from the height adjuster.

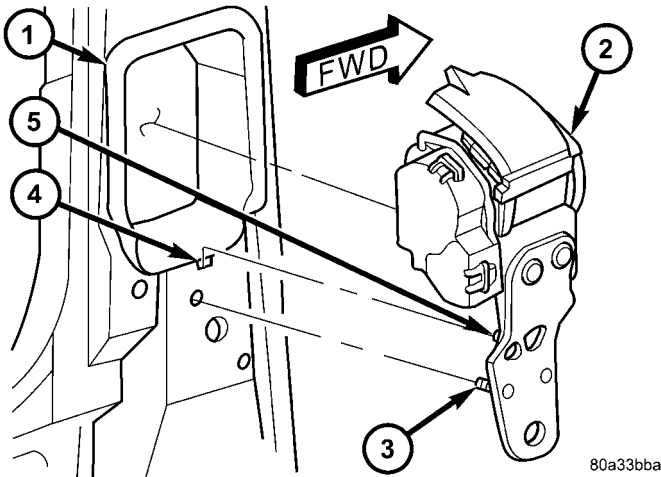
(8) Remove the trim from the lower B-pillar. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/B-PILLAR LOWER TRIM - REMOVAL).

## FRONT SEAT BELT &amp; RETRACTOR (Continued)

(9) Pull the front seat belt turning loop and lower anchor through the access hole in the lower B-pillar trim.

(10) On vehicles so equipped, disconnect the seat belt tensioner pigtail wire connector from the body wire harness connector.

(11) Remove the plastic push-in fastener that secures the retractor to the lower B-pillar (Fig. 31).



**Fig. 31 Front Retractor**

- 1 - NOT APPLICABLE
- 2 - RETRACTOR
- 3 - PLASTIC FASTENER
- 4 - SLOT
- 5 - LOCATOR TAB

(12) Disengage the retractor locator tab from the slot in the B-pillar.

(13) Remove the front seat belt and retractor from the B-pillar as a unit.

## INSTALLATION

The following procedure is for replacement of a faulty or damaged seat belt and retractor unit. On some vehicles manufactured for certain markets outside of North America, the seat belt retractor includes a seat belt tensioner. If a front seat belt or retractor equipped with a seat belt tensioner is faulty or damaged, but the seat belt tensioner is not deployed, review the recommended procedures for handling non-deployed supplemental restraints. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS - STANDARD PROCEDURE - HANDLING NON-DEPLOYED SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINTS). If the seat belt tensioner has been deployed, review the recommended procedures for service after a supplemental restraint deployment before removing the unit from the vehicle. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS - STANDARD PROCEDURE - SERVICE AFTER A SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT DEPLOYMENT).

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, DRIVER AIRBAG, PASSENGER AIRBAG, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

**WARNING: DURING AND FOLLOWING ANY SEAT BELT OR CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR SERVICE, CAREFULLY INSPECT ALL SEAT BELTS, BUCKLES, MOUNTING HARDWARE, RETRACTORS, TETHER STRAPS, AND ANCHORS FOR PROPER INSTALLATION, OPERATION, OR DAMAGE. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT IS CUT, FRAYED, OR TORN. STRAIGHTEN ANY BELT THAT IS TWISTED. TIGHTEN ANY LOOSE FASTENERS. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT HAS A DAMAGED OR INOPERATIVE BUCKLE OR RETRACTOR. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT HAS A BENT OR DAMAGED LATCH PLATE OR ANCHOR PLATE. REPLACE ANY CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR OR THE UNIT TO WHICH THE ANCHOR IS INTEGRAL THAT HAS BEEN BENT OR DAMAGED. NEVER ATTEMPT TO REPAIR A SEAT BELT OR CHILD RESTRAINT COMPONENT. ALWAYS REPLACE DAMAGED OR FAULTY SEAT BELT AND CHILD RESTRAINT COMPONENTS WITH THE CORRECT, NEW AND UNUSED REPLACEMENT PARTS LISTED IN THE DAIMLERCHRYSLER MOPAR PARTS CATALOG.**

(1) Position the front seat belt and retractor to the B-pillar as a unit. Be certain to engage the retractor locator tab in the slot in the lower B-pillar (Fig. 31).

(2) Using hand pressure, install the plastic push-in fastener that secures the retractor to the lower B-pillar.

(3) On vehicles so equipped, reconnect the seat belt tensioner pigtail wire connector to the body wire harness connector.

(4) Push the seat belt lower anchor and turning loop through the access hole in the lower B-pillar trim (Fig. 29).

(5) Reinstall the trim onto the lower B-pillar. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/B-PILLAR LOWER TRIM - INSTALLATION).



## FRONT SEAT BELT &amp; RETRACTOR (Continued)

(6) Position the seat belt turning loop onto the height adjuster on the upper B-pillar.

(7) Install and tighten the screw that secures the seat belt turning loop to the height adjuster. Tighten the screw to 37 N·m (27 ft. lbs.).

(8) Using hand pressure, press the top of the turning loop trim cover to snap it onto the height adjuster and cover the screw that secures the front seat belt turning loop to the adjuster on the upper B-pillar (Fig. 30).

(9) Position the front seat belt lower anchor to the lower B-pillar.

(10) Install and tighten the screw that secures the seat belt lower anchor to the B-pillar. Tighten the screw to 37 N·m (27 ft. lbs.).

(11) Pull down the cover over the front seat belt lower anchor far enough to conceal the screw.

(12) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

## FRONT SEAT BELT BUCKLE

## REMOVAL

## REMOVAL - NORTH AMERICA

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, DRIVER AIRBAG, PASSENGER AIRBAG, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

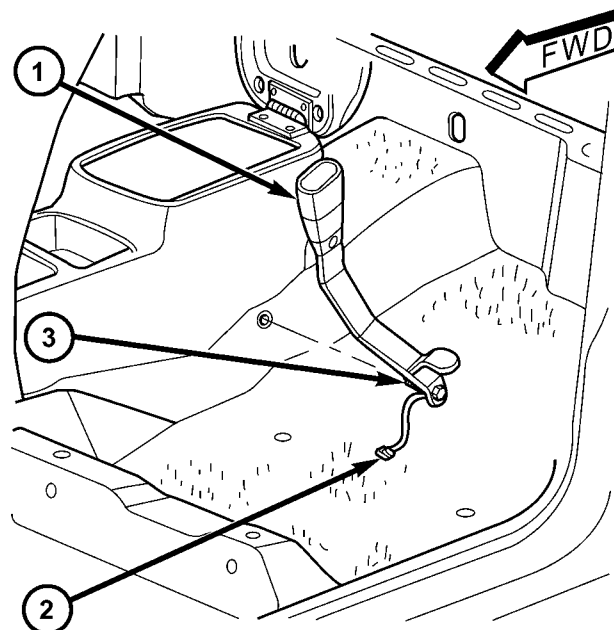
**WARNING: DURING AND FOLLOWING ANY SEAT BELT OR CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR SERVICE, CAREFULLY INSPECT ALL SEAT BELTS, BUCKLES, MOUNTING HARDWARE, RETRACTORS, TETHER STRAPS, AND ANCHORS FOR PROPER INSTALLATION, OPERATION, OR DAMAGE. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT IS CUT, FRAYED, OR TORN. STRAIGHTEN ANY BELT THAT IS TWISTED. TIGHTEN ANY LOOSE FASTENERS. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT HAS A DAMAGED OR INOPERATIVE BUCKLE OR RETRACTOR. REPLACE ANY BELT**

**THAT HAS A BENT OR DAMAGED LATCH PLATE OR ANCHOR PLATE. REPLACE ANY CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR OR THE UNIT TO WHICH THE ANCHOR IS INTEGRAL THAT HAS BEEN BENT OR DAMAGED. NEVER ATTEMPT TO REPAIR A SEAT BELT OR CHILD RESTRAINT COMPONENT. ALWAYS REPLACE DAMAGED OR FAULTY SEAT BELT AND CHILD RESTRAINT COMPONENTS WITH THE CORRECT, NEW AND UNUSED REPLACEMENT PARTS LISTED IN THE DAIMLERCHRYSLER MOPAR PARTS CATALOG.**

(1) Move the front seat to its most forward position for easiest access to the front seat belt buckle lower anchor screw.

(2) On the driver side only, disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Wait two minutes for the system capacitor to discharge before further service.

(3) On the driver side only, disconnect the seat belt switch pigtail wire connector from the body wire harness connector for the seat belt switch with manual seats, or from the power seat wire harness connector for the seat belt switch with power seats (Fig. 32).



80a34ab8

**Fig. 32 Front Seat Belt Buckle - North America**

- 1 - FRONT SEAT BELT BUCKLE
- 2 - SEAT BELT SWITCH PIGTAIL WIRE
- 3 - SCREW

(4) Remove the screw that secures the front seat belt buckle lower anchor to the side of the floor panel transmission tunnel.

(5) Remove the front seat belt buckle from the floor panel transmission tunnel.



## FRONT SEAT BELT BUCKLE (Continued)

## REMOVAL - EXCEPT NORTH AMERICA

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, DRIVER AIRBAG, PASSENGER AIRBAG, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

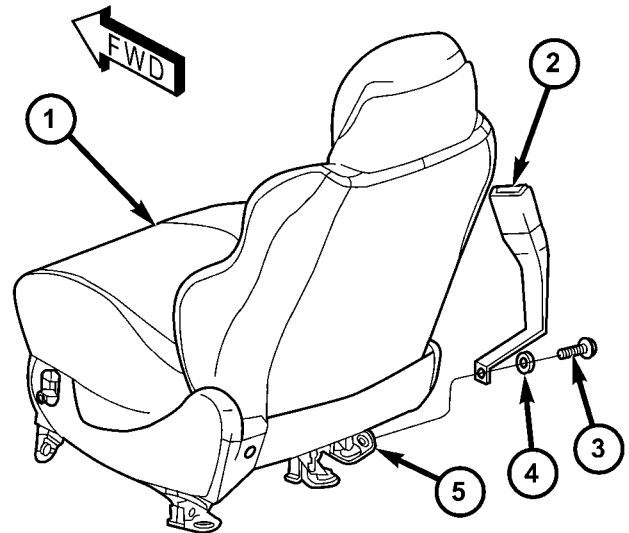
**WARNING: DURING AND FOLLOWING ANY SEAT BELT OR CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR SERVICE, CAREFULLY INSPECT ALL SEAT BELTS, BUCKLES, MOUNTING HARDWARE, RETRACTORS, TETHER STRAPS, AND ANCHORS FOR PROPER INSTALLATION, OPERATION, OR DAMAGE. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT IS CUT, FRAYED, OR TORN. STRAIGHTEN ANY BELT THAT IS TWISTED. TIGHTEN ANY LOOSE FASTENERS. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT HAS A DAMAGED OR INOPERATIVE BUCKLE OR RETRACTOR. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT HAS A BENT OR DAMAGED LATCH PLATE OR ANCHOR PLATE. REPLACE ANY CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR OR THE UNIT TO WHICH THE ANCHOR IS INTEGRAL THAT HAS BEEN BENT OR DAMAGED. NEVER ATTEMPT TO REPAIR A SEAT BELT OR CHILD RESTRAINT COMPONENT. ALWAYS REPLACE DAMAGED OR FAULTY SEAT BELT AND CHILD RESTRAINT COMPONENTS WITH THE CORRECT, NEW AND UNUSED REPLACEMENT PARTS LISTED IN THE DAIMLERCHRYSLER MOPAR PARTS CATALOG.**

(1) Move the front seat to its most rearward position for easiest access to the front seat belt buckle lower anchor screw.

(2) On the driver side only, disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Wait two minutes for the system capacitor to discharge before further service.

(3) On the driver side only, disconnect the seat belt switch pigtail wire connector from the body wire harness connector for the seat belt switch with manual seats, or from the power seat wire harness connector for the seat belt switch with power seats.

(4) Remove the screw that secures the front seat belt buckle lower anchor to the inboard side of the seat cushion frame (Fig. 33).



80fcbf63

**Fig. 33 Front Seat Belt Buckle - except North America**

- 1 - FRONT SEAT
- 2 - FRONT SEAT BELT BUCKLE
- 3 - SCREW (1)
- 4 - SPACER (1)
- 5 - INBOARD SEAT CUSHION FRAME

(5) Remove the front seat belt buckle and the spacer from the inboard seat cushion frame.

## INSTALLATION

## INSTALLATION - NORTH AMERICA

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, DRIVER AIRBAG, PASSENGER AIRBAG, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

## FRONT SEAT BELT BUCKLE (Continued)

**WARNING:** DURING AND FOLLOWING ANY SEAT BELT OR CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR SERVICE, CAREFULLY INSPECT ALL SEAT BELTS, BUCKLES, MOUNTING HARDWARE, RETRACTORS, TETHER STRAPS, AND ANCHORS FOR PROPER INSTALLATION, OPERATION, OR DAMAGE. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT IS CUT, FRAYED, OR TORN. STRAIGHTEN ANY BELT THAT IS TWISTED. TIGHTEN ANY LOOSE FASTENERS. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT HAS A DAMAGED OR INOPERATIVE BUCKLE OR RETRACTOR. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT HAS A BENT OR DAMAGED LATCH PLATE OR ANCHOR PLATE. REPLACE ANY CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR OR THE UNIT TO WHICH THE ANCHOR IS INTEGRAL THAT HAS BEEN BENT OR DAMAGED. NEVER ATTEMPT TO REPAIR A SEAT BELT OR CHILD RESTRAINT COMPONENT. ALWAYS REPLACE DAMAGED OR FAULTY SEAT BELT AND CHILD RESTRAINT COMPONENTS WITH THE CORRECT, NEW AND UNUSED REPLACEMENT PARTS LISTED IN THE DAIMLERCHRYSLER MOPAR PARTS CATALOG.

(1) Position the front seat belt buckle to the side of the floor panel transmission tunnel (Fig. 32).

(2) Install and tighten the screw that secures the front seat belt buckle lower anchor to the side of the floor panel transmission tunnel. Tighten the screw to 43 N·m (32 ft. lbs.).

(3) On the driver side only, reconnect the seat belt switch pigtail wire connector to the body wire harness connector for the seat belt switch with manual seats, or to the power seat wire harness connector for the seat belt switch with power seats.

(4) On the driver side only, do not reconnect the battery negative cable at this time. The supplemental restraint system verification test procedure should be performed following service of any supplemental restraint system component. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS - STANDARD PROCEDURE - VERIFICATION TEST).

**INSTALLATION - EXCEPT NORTH AMERICA**

**WARNING:** ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, DRIVER AIRBAG, PASSENGER AIRBAG, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCON-

NECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.

**WARNING:** DURING AND FOLLOWING ANY SEAT BELT OR CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR SERVICE, CAREFULLY INSPECT ALL SEAT BELTS, BUCKLES, MOUNTING HARDWARE, RETRACTORS, TETHER STRAPS, AND ANCHORS FOR PROPER INSTALLATION, OPERATION, OR DAMAGE. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT IS CUT, FRAYED, OR TORN. STRAIGHTEN ANY BELT THAT IS TWISTED. TIGHTEN ANY LOOSE FASTENERS. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT HAS A DAMAGED OR INOPERATIVE BUCKLE OR RETRACTOR. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT HAS A BENT OR DAMAGED LATCH PLATE OR ANCHOR PLATE. REPLACE ANY CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR OR THE UNIT TO WHICH THE ANCHOR IS INTEGRAL THAT HAS BEEN BENT OR DAMAGED. NEVER ATTEMPT TO REPAIR A SEAT BELT OR CHILD RESTRAINT COMPONENT. ALWAYS REPLACE DAMAGED OR FAULTY SEAT BELT AND CHILD RESTRAINT COMPONENTS WITH THE CORRECT, NEW AND UNUSED REPLACEMENT PARTS LISTED IN THE DAIMLERCHRYSLER MOPAR PARTS CATALOG.

(1) Position the front seat belt buckle and spacer to the inboard side of the seat cushion frame (Fig. 33).

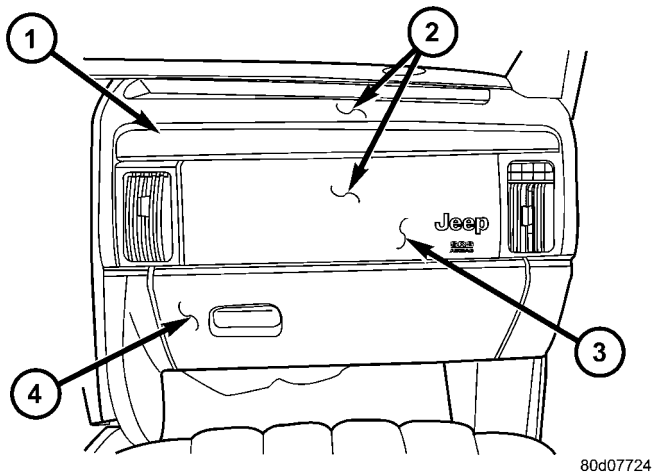
(2) Install and tighten the screw that secures the front seat belt buckle lower anchor to the inboard side of the seat cushion frame. Tighten the screw to 27 N·m (20 ft. lbs.).

(3) On the driver side only, reconnect the seat belt switch pigtail wire connector to the body wire harness connector for the seat belt switch with manual seats, or to the power seat wire harness connector for the seat belt switch with power seats.

(4) On the driver side only, do not reconnect the battery negative cable at this time. The supplemental restraint system verification test procedure should be performed following service of any supplemental restraint system component. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS - STANDARD PROCEDURE - VERIFICATION TEST).

## PASSENGER AIRBAG

### DESCRIPTION



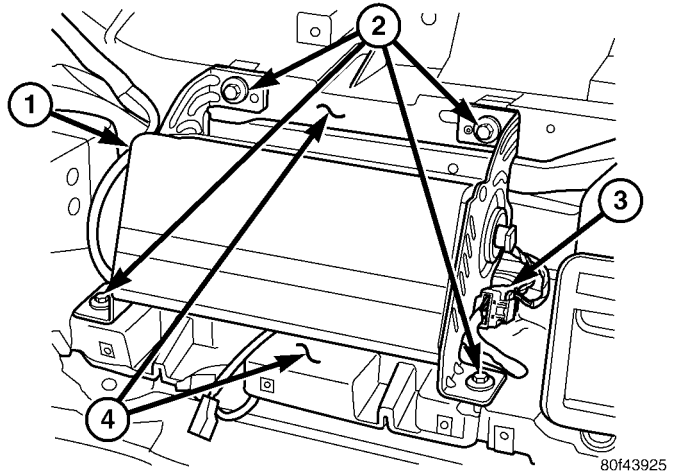
**Fig. 34 Passenger Airbag Door**

- 1 - BEZEL
- 2 - TOP PAD
- 3 - PASSENGER AIRBAG DOOR
- 4 - GLOVE BOX DOOR

The rearward facing surface of the instrument panel top pad above the glove box is the most visible part of the passenger airbag (Fig. 34). The passenger airbag door is concealed behind the instrument panel top pad and above the glove box opening on the instrument panel in front of the front seat passenger seating position. The stamped steel passenger airbag door is secured on the back of the instrument panel top pad armature between the two passenger side panel outlets. A stamped metal reinforcement is secured to the instrument panel top pad armature near the upper edge of the passenger airbag door opening, and helps to define a predetermined hinge line beneath the decorative cover of the top pad. The instrument panel passenger side bezel is secured to the top of the airbag door from behind with four screws.

Located behind the passenger airbag door is the passenger airbag unit (Fig. 35). The passenger airbag unit is secured by two screws on each side to the instrument panel structural duct. A short four-wire pigtail harness with a keyed, yellow connector insulator connects the two inflator initiators to the vehicle electrical system through a dedicated take out and connector of the instrument panel wire harness.

The passenger airbag unit used in this model is a multistage, Next Generation-type that complies with revised federal airbag standards to deploy with less force than those used in some prior models. The passenger airbag unit consists of an extruded aluminum housing, two stamped steel end brackets, a molded



**Fig. 35 Passenger Airbag**

- 1 - PASSENGER AIRBAG
- 2 - SCREW (4)
- 3 - PIGTAIL WIRE CONNECTOR
- 4 - STRUCTURAL DUCT

plastic inner airbag cushion cover, the rectangular fabric airbag cushion, and the airbag inflator. The airbag housing contains the airbag inflator, while the inner cover contains the folded airbag cushion. The inner cover completely encloses the airbag cushion and is permanently retained to the housing. The airbag cushion is constructed of a coated nylon fabric. The airbag inflator is a dual-initiator, hybrid-type unit that is secured to and sealed within the airbag housing.

The passenger airbag cannot be repaired, and must be replaced if deployed, faulty, or in any way damaged. The passenger airbag door is serviced only as a unit with the instrument panel top pad. If the passenger airbag is deployed, the instrument panel top pad must also be replaced. If inspection reveals that the passenger airbag mounting points on the instrument panel structural duct have been cracked or damaged by the deployment event, the instrument panel structural duct assembly must also be replaced.

### OPERATION

The multistage passenger airbag is deployed by electrical signals generated by the Airbag Control Module (ACM) through the passenger airbag squib 1 and squib 2 circuits to the two initiators in the airbag inflator. By using two initiators, the airbag can be deployed at multiple levels of force. The force level is controlled by the ACM to suit the monitored impact conditions by providing one of four delay intervals between the electrical signals provided to the two initiators. The longer the delay between these signals, the less forcefully the airbag will deploy.

## PASSENGER AIRBAG (Continued)

The hybrid-type inflator assembly includes a small canister of highly compressed gas. When the ACM sends the proper electrical signal to the airbag initiator, the initiator generates enough heat to ignite chemical pellets within the inflator. Once ignited, these chemical pellets burn rapidly and produce the pressure necessary to rupture a containment disk in the pressurized gas canister. The inflator and gas canister are sealed to the airbag cushion so that all of the released inert gas is directed into the airbag cushion, causing the cushion to inflate. As the cushion inflates, the passenger airbag door will bend back the instrument panel top pad at the predetermined hinge line, then fold back over the top of the instrument panel and out of the way. Following a passenger airbag deployment, the airbag cushion quickly deflates by venting the inert gas through vent holes within the fabric used to construct the sides of the airbag cushion.

Typically, both initiators are used during an airbag deployment event. However, it is possible for only one initiator to be used during a deployment due to an airbag system fault; therefore, it is necessary to always confirm that both initiators have been used in order to avoid the improper disposal of potentially live pyrotechnic materials. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS - STANDARD PROCEDURE - SERVICE AFTER A SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT DEPLOYMENT).

**REMOVAL**

The following procedure is for replacement of a faulty or damaged passenger airbag. If the airbag is faulty or damaged, but not deployed, review the recommended procedures for handling non-deployed supplemental restraints. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS - STANDARD PROCEDURE - HANDLING NON-DEPLOYED SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINTS). If the passenger airbag has been deployed, review the recommended procedures for service after a supplemental restraint deployment before removing the airbag from the vehicle. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS - STANDARD PROCEDURE - SERVICE AFTER A SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT DEPLOYMENT).

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, DRIVER AIRBAG, PASSENGER AIRBAG, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR**

**THE SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

**WARNING: WHEN REMOVING A DEPLOYED AIRBAG, RUBBER GLOVES, EYE PROTECTION, AND A LONG-SLEEVED SHIRT SHOULD BE WORN. THERE MAY BE DEPOSITS ON THE AIRBAG UNIT AND OTHER INTERIOR SURFACES. IN LARGE DOSES, THESE DEPOSITS MAY CAUSE IRRITATION TO THE SKIN AND EYES.**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Wait two minutes for the system capacitor to discharge before further service.

(2) Remove the top pad from the instrument panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/INSTRUMENT PANEL TOP PAD - REMOVAL).

(3) Disconnect the passenger airbag pigtail wire connector from the instrument panel wire harness connector for the airbag. This connector is secured to the outside of the outboard airbag unit end bracket. To disconnect the connector:

(a) Slide the red Connector Position Assurance (CPA) lock on the top of the connector toward the side of the connector.

(b) Depress the connector latch tab and pull the two halves of the connector straight away from each other.

(4) Remove the two screws that secure the two airbag end bracket front mounting tabs to the top of the instrument panel structural duct (Fig. 36).

(5) Remove the two screws that secure the two airbag end bracket rear mounting tabs to the rear of the structural duct, just above the instrument panel upper glove box opening reinforcement.

(6) Remove the passenger airbag from the instrument panel structural duct as a unit.

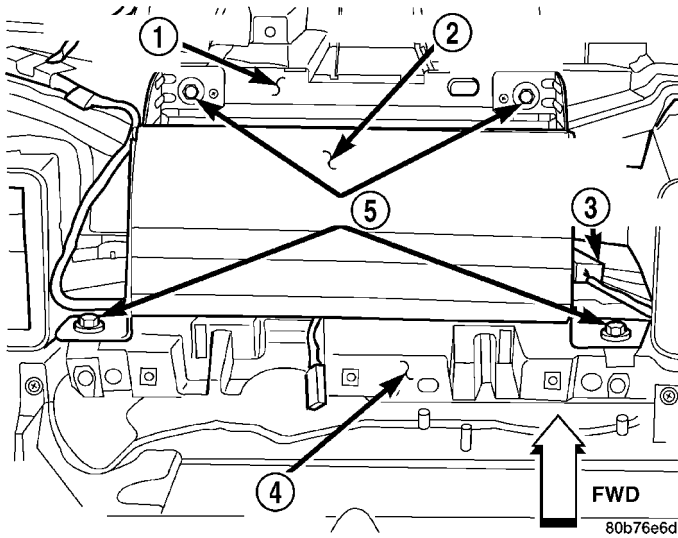
(7) If the passenger airbag has been deployed, carefully inspect the airbag mounting points on the instrument panel structural duct. If the airbag mounting points have been damaged or deformed, the instrument panel structural duct must be replaced. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/INSTRUMENT PANEL STRUCTURAL DUCT - REMOVAL).

**INSTALLATION**

The following procedure is for replacement of a faulty or damaged passenger airbag. If the airbag is faulty or damaged, but not deployed, review the recommended procedures for handling non-deployed supplemental restraints. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/



## PASSENGER AIRBAG (Continued)



**Fig. 36 Passenger Airbag Module Remove/Install**

- 1 - STRUCTURAL DUCT
- 2 - PASSENGER AIRBAG
- 3 - WIRE HARNESS CONNECTOR
- 4 - STRUCTURAL DUCT
- 5 - SCREW (4)

RESTRAINTS - STANDARD PROCEDURE - HANDLING NON-DEPLOYED SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINTS). If the passenger airbag has been deployed, review the recommended procedures for service after a supplemental restraint deployment before removing the airbag from the vehicle. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS - STANDARD PROCEDURE - SERVICE AFTER A SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT DEPLOYMENT).

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, DRIVER AIRBAG, PASSENGER AIRBAG, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

**WARNING: WHEN REMOVING A DEPLOYED AIRBAG, RUBBER GLOVES, EYE PROTECTION, AND A LONG-SLEEVED SHIRT SHOULD BE WORN. THERE MAY BE DEPOSITS ON THE AIRBAG UNIT AND**

**OTHER INTERIOR SURFACES. IN LARGE DOSES, THESE DEPOSITS MAY CAUSE IRRITATION TO THE SKIN AND EYES.**

**WARNING: USE EXTREME CARE TO PREVENT ANY FOREIGN MATERIAL FROM ENTERING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG, OR BECOMING ENTRAPPED BETWEEN THE PASSENGER AIRBAG CUSHION AND THE INSTRUMENT PANEL TOP PAD. FAILURE TO OBSERVE THIS WARNING COULD RESULT IN OCCUPANT INJURIES UPON AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT.**

**WARNING: THE INSTRUMENT PANEL TOP PAD MUST NEVER BE PAINTED. REPLACEMENT TOP PADS ARE SERVICED IN THE ORIGINAL COLORS. PAINT MAY CHANGE THE WAY IN WHICH THE MATERIAL OF THE TOP PAD RESPONDS TO AN AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT. FAILURE TO OBSERVE THIS WARNING COULD RESULT IN OCCUPANT INJURIES UPON AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT.**

**WARNING: USE EXTREME CARE TO PREVENT ANY FOREIGN MATERIAL FROM ENTERING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG, OR BECOMING ENTRAPPED BETWEEN THE PASSENGER AIRBAG CUSHION AND THE PASSENGER AIRBAG DOOR PROVISION OF THE INSTRUMENT PANEL TOP PAD. FAILURE TO OBSERVE THIS WARNING COULD RESULT IN OCCUPANT INJURIES UPON AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT.**

(1) Carefully position the passenger airbag unit onto the instrument panel structural duct (Fig. 36).

(2) Install and tighten the four screws that secure the passenger airbag to the instrument panel structural duct. Tighten the screws to 12 N·m (105 in. lbs.).

(3) Reconnect the passenger airbag pigtail wire connector to the instrument panel wire harness connector for the airbag. This connector is secured to the outside of the outboard airbag unit end bracket. Be certain that the latch on the connector and the red Connector Position Assurance (CPA) lock are each fully engaged.

(4) Reinstall the top pad onto the instrument panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/INSTRUMENT PANEL TOP PAD - INSTALLATION).

(5) Do not reconnect the battery negative cable at this time. The supplemental restraint system verification test procedure should be performed following service of any supplemental restraint system component. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS - STANDARD PROCEDURE - VERIFICATION TEST).



## REAR CENTER SEAT BELT & RETRACTOR

### REMOVAL

This procedure applies to vehicles manufactured for sale in markets outside of North America, which are equipped with a three-point seat belt and retractor unit for the rear center seating position. Vehicles manufactured for North America have a lap belt provided in the rear center seating position. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS/REAR SEAT LAP BELT/BUCKLE - REMOVAL).

**WARNING: DURING AND FOLLOWING ANY SEAT BELT OR CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR SERVICE, CAREFULLY INSPECT ALL SEAT BELTS, BUCKLES, MOUNTING HARDWARE, RETRACTORS, TETHER STRAPS, AND ANCHORS FOR PROPER INSTALLATION, OPERATION, OR DAMAGE. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT IS CUT, FRAYED, OR TORN. STRAIGHTEN ANY BELT THAT IS TWISTED. TIGHTEN ANY LOOSE FASTENERS. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT HAS A DAMAGED OR INOPERATIVE BUCKLE OR RETRACTOR. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT HAS A BENT OR DAMAGED LATCH PLATE OR ANCHOR PLATE. REPLACE ANY CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR OR THE UNIT TO WHICH THE ANCHOR IS INTEGRAL THAT HAS BEEN BENT OR DAMAGED. NEVER ATTEMPT TO REPAIR A SEAT BELT OR CHILD RESTRAINT COMPONENT. ALWAYS REPLACE DAMAGED OR FAULTY SEAT BELT AND CHILD RESTRAINT COMPONENTS WITH THE CORRECT, NEW AND UNUSED REPLACEMENT PARTS LISTED IN THE DAIMLERCHRYSLER MOPAR PARTS CATALOG.**

(1) Unlatch and fold the right rear seat cushion forward.

(2) Remove the screw that secures the rear center seat belt lower anchor to the right rear seat belt buckle unit bracket on the rear floor panel (Fig. 37).

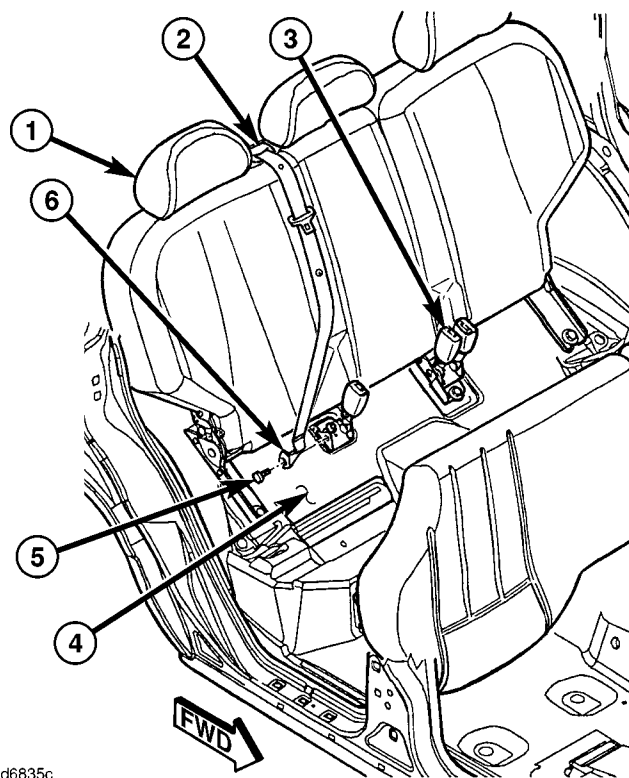
(3) Unlatch and fold the right rear seat back forward and separate the cargo area carpet from the base of the seat back panel.

(4) Remove the right rear seat back panel from the vehicle. (Refer to 23 - BODY/SEATS/SEAT BACK - REAR - REMOVAL).

(5) Remove the two screws that secure the belt web guide to the top of the right rear seat back panel.

(6) Remove the trim from the right rear seat back. (Refer to 23 - BODY/SEATS/SEAT BACK COVER - REAR - REMOVAL).

(7) Route the rear seat belt lower anchor and belt web guide through the top of the seat back panel.



80d6835c

**Fig. 37 Rear Center Seat Belt Lower Anchor Remove/Install**

- 1 - REAR SEAT BACK
- 2 - REAR CENTER SEAT BELT & RETRACTOR
- 3 - RIGHT REAR SEAT BELT BUCKLE UNIT
- 4 - REAR FLOOR PANEL
- 5 - SCREW (1)
- 6 - LOWER ANCHOR

(8) Disengage the seat back latch cable fitting from the cable support on the retractor, which is a light snap fit (Fig. 38).

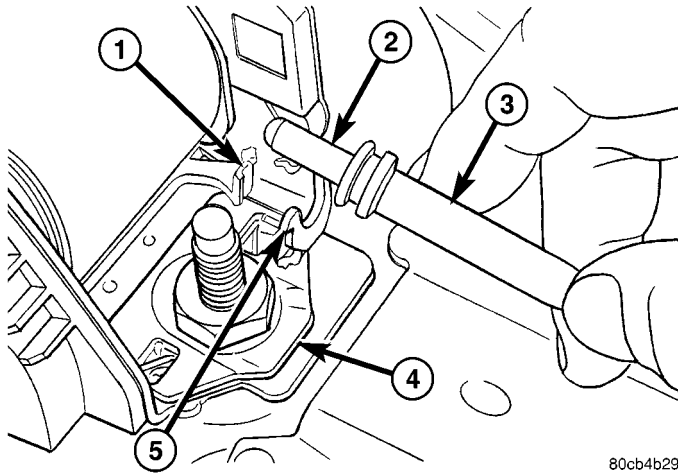
(9) Remove the screw that secures the retractor to the rear seat back panel (Fig. 39).

(10) Remove the rear center seat belt and retractor unit from the seat back panel.

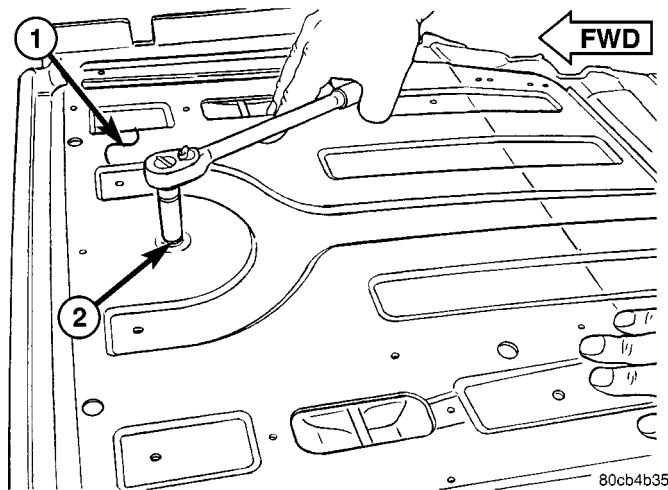
### INSTALLATION

This procedure applies to vehicles manufactured for sale in markets outside of North America, which are equipped with a three-point seat belt and retractor unit for the rear center seating position. Vehicles manufactured for North America have a lap belt provided in the rear center seating position. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS/REAR SEAT LAP BELT/BUCKLE - INSTALLATION).

## REAR CENTER SEAT BELT &amp; RETRACTOR (Continued)

**Fig. 38 Seat Back Latch Cable Disengage/Engage**

- 1 - LEVER
- 2 - PLUNGER
- 3 - LATCH CABLE FITTING
- 4 - REAR CENTER RETRACTOR
- 5 - SUPPORT

**Fig. 39 Rear Center Retractor Remove/Install**

- 1 - REAR SEAT BACK PANEL
- 2 - SCREW (1)

**ANCHOR IS INTEGRAL THAT HAS BEEN BENT OR DAMAGED. NEVER ATTEMPT TO REPAIR A SEAT BELT OR CHILD RESTRAINT COMPONENT. ALWAYS REPLACE DAMAGED OR FAULTY SEAT BELT AND CHILD RESTRAINT COMPONENTS WITH THE CORRECT, NEW AND UNUSED REPLACEMENT PARTS LISTED IN THE DAIMLERCHRYSLER MOPAR PARTS CATALOG.**

(1) Position the rear center seat belt and retractor unit onto the seat back panel.

(2) Install and tighten the screw that secures the retractor to the rear seat back panel (Fig. 39). Tighten the screw to 43 N·m (32 ft. lbs.).

(3) Position the seat back latch cable plunger against the retractor latch lever, then engage the cable fitting into the cable support on the retractor, which is a light snap fit (Fig. 38).

(4) Route the rear seat belt lower anchor and belt web guide through the top of the seat back panel.

(5) Reinstall the trim onto the right rear seat back. (Refer to 23 - BODY/SEATS/SEAT BACK COVER - REAR - INSTALLATION).

(6) Install and tighten the two screws that secure the belt web guide to the top of the right rear seat back panel. Tighten the screws to 2 N·m (20 in. lbs.).

(7) Reinstall the right rear seat back panel into the vehicle. (Refer to 23 - BODY/SEATS/SEAT BACK - REAR - INSTALLATION).

(8) Restore the cargo area carpet to the base of the seat back panel and unfold the right rear seat back to its upright position.

(9) Position the rear center seat belt lower anchor to the right rear seat belt buckle unit bracket on the rear floor panel (Fig. 37).

(10) Install and tighten the screw that secures the rear center seat belt lower anchor to the right rear seat belt buckle unit bracket on the rear floor panel. Tighten the screw to 43 N·m (32 ft. lbs.).

(11) Fold and latch the right rear seat cushion in its normal seating position.

**WARNING: DURING AND FOLLOWING ANY SEAT BELT OR CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR SERVICE, CAREFULLY INSPECT ALL SEAT BELTS, BUCKLES, MOUNTING HARDWARE, RETRACTORS, TETHER STRAPS, AND ANCHORS FOR PROPER INSTALLATION, OPERATION, OR DAMAGE. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT IS CUT, FRAYED, OR TORN. STRAIGHTEN ANY BELT THAT IS TWISTED. TIGHTEN ANY LOOSE FASTENERS. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT HAS A DAMAGED OR INOPERATIVE BUCKLE OR RETRACTOR. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT HAS A BENT OR DAMAGED LATCH PLATE OR ANCHOR PLATE. REPLACE ANY CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR OR THE UNIT TO WHICH THE**

## REAR OUTBOARD SEAT BELT & RETRACTOR

### REMOVAL

**WARNING: DURING AND FOLLOWING ANY SEAT BELT OR CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR SERVICE, CAREFULLY INSPECT ALL SEAT BELTS, BUCKLES, MOUNTING HARDWARE, RETRACTORS, TETHER STRAPS, AND ANCHORS FOR PROPER INSTALLATION, OPERATION, OR DAMAGE. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT IS CUT, FRAYED, OR TORN. STRAIGHTEN ANY BELT THAT IS TWISTED. TIGHTEN ANY LOOSE FASTENERS. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT HAS A DAMAGED OR INOPERATIVE BUCKLE OR RETRACTOR. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT HAS A BENT OR DAMAGED LATCH PLATE OR ANCHOR PLATE. REPLACE ANY CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR OR THE UNIT TO WHICH THE ANCHOR IS INTEGRAL THAT HAS BEEN BENT OR DAMAGED. NEVER ATTEMPT TO REPAIR A SEAT BELT OR CHILD RESTRAINT COMPONENT. ALWAYS REPLACE DAMAGED OR FAULTY SEAT BELT AND CHILD RESTRAINT COMPONENTS WITH THE CORRECT, NEW AND UNUSED REPLACEMENT PARTS LISTED IN THE DAIMLERCHRYSLER MOPAR PARTS CATALOG.**

(1) Disengage the rear seat cushion latch by pulling upward on the release strap.

(2) Fold the rear seat cushion forward against the back of the front bucket seat.

(3) Remove the screw that secures the rear outboard seat belt lower anchor to the rear floor panel (Fig. 40).

(4) Remove the lower anchor from the rear floor panel.

(5) Remove the trim from the quarter inner panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/QUARTER TRIM PANEL - REMOVAL).

(6) Remove the trim from the upper C-pillar. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/C-PILLAR TRIM - REMOVAL).

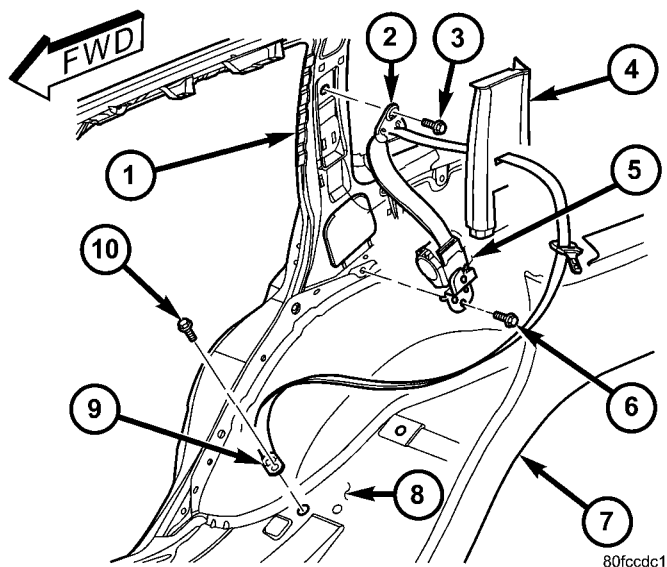
(7) Remove the screw that secures the seat belt turning loop to the upper C-pillar.

(8) Remove the seat belt turning loop from the upper C-pillar.

(9) Remove the screw that secures the retractor to the mounting tab on the inner and outer rear wheelhouse flange.

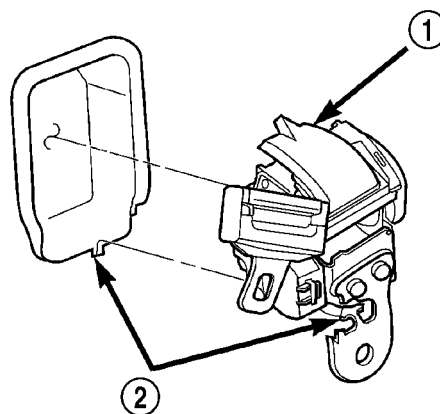
(10) Disengage the retractor locator tab from the slot in the lower C-pillar (Fig. 41).

(11) Remove the rear outboard seat belt and retractor from the lower C-pillar as a unit.



**Fig. 40 Rear Outboard Seat Belt & Retractor Remove/Install**

- 1 - C-PILLAR
- 2 - TURNING LOOP
- 3 - SCREW
- 4 - UPPER C-PILLAR TRIM
- 5 - RETRACTOR
- 6 - SCREW
- 7 - QUARTER TRIM PANEL
- 8 - REAR FLOOR PANEL
- 9 - LOWER ANCHOR
- 10 - SCREW



**Fig. 41 Rear Outboard Retractor**

- 1 - RETRACTOR
- 2 - SLOT/LOCATOR TAB

## REAR OUTBOARD SEAT BELT &amp; RETRACTOR (Continued)

## INSTALLATION

**WARNING: DURING AND FOLLOWING ANY SEAT BELT OR CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR SERVICE, CAREFULLY INSPECT ALL SEAT BELTS, BUCKLES, MOUNTING HARDWARE, RETRACTORS, TETHER STRAPS, AND ANCHORS FOR PROPER INSTALLATION, OPERATION, OR DAMAGE. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT IS CUT, FRAYED, OR TORN. STRAIGHTEN ANY BELT THAT IS TWISTED. TIGHTEN ANY LOOSE FASTENERS. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT HAS A DAMAGED OR INOPERATIVE BUCKLE OR RETRACTOR. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT HAS A BENT OR DAMAGED LATCH PLATE OR ANCHOR PLATE. REPLACE ANY CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR OR THE UNIT TO WHICH THE ANCHOR IS INTEGRAL THAT HAS BEEN BENT OR DAMAGED. NEVER ATTEMPT TO REPAIR A SEAT BELT OR CHILD RESTRAINT COMPONENT. ALWAYS REPLACE DAMAGED OR FAULTY SEAT BELT AND CHILD RESTRAINT COMPONENTS WITH THE CORRECT, NEW AND UNUSED REPLACEMENT PARTS LISTED IN THE DAIMLERCHRYSLER MOPAR PARTS CATALOG.**

(1) Position the retractor in the lower C-pillar and be certain that the retractor locator tab is engaged in the slot in the lower C-pillar below the retractor (Fig. 41).

(2) Install and tighten the screw that secures the retractor bracket to the mounting tab on the inner and outer rear wheelhouse flange (Fig. 40). Tighten the screw to 43 N·m (32 ft. lbs.).

(3) Position the seat belt turning loop to the upper C-pillar.

(4) Install and tighten the screw that secures the seat belt turning loop to the upper C-pillar. Tighten the screw to 43 N·m (32 ft. lbs.).

(5) Reinstall the trim onto the upper C-pillar. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/C-PILLAR TRIM - INSTALLATION).

(6) Reinstall the trim onto the quarter inner panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/QUARTER TRIM PANEL - INSTALLATION).

(7) Position the rear outboard seat belt lower anchor to the rear floor panel.

(8) Install and tighten the screw that secures the rear outboard seat belt lower anchor to the rear floor panel. Tighten the screw to 43 N·m (32 ft. lbs.).

(9) Fold the rear seat cushion back into the seating position.

## REAR SEAT BELT BUCKLE

## REMOVAL

This procedure applies to the rear seat buckle units for all vehicles. Vehicles manufactured for North America also have a lap belt provided in the rear center seating position, which is integral to the right rear buckle unit. Vehicles manufactured for sale in markets outside of North America are equipped with a three-point seat belt and retractor unit for the rear center seating position. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS/REAR CENTER SEAT BELT & RETRACTOR - REMOVAL).

**WARNING: DURING AND FOLLOWING ANY SEAT BELT OR CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR SERVICE, CAREFULLY INSPECT ALL SEAT BELTS, BUCKLES, MOUNTING HARDWARE, RETRACTORS, TETHER STRAPS, AND ANCHORS FOR PROPER INSTALLATION, OPERATION, OR DAMAGE. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT IS CUT, FRAYED, OR TORN. STRAIGHTEN ANY BELT THAT IS TWISTED. TIGHTEN ANY LOOSE FASTENERS. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT HAS A DAMAGED OR INOPERATIVE BUCKLE OR RETRACTOR. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT HAS A BENT OR DAMAGED LATCH PLATE OR ANCHOR PLATE. REPLACE ANY CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR OR THE UNIT TO WHICH THE ANCHOR IS INTEGRAL THAT HAS BEEN BENT OR DAMAGED. NEVER ATTEMPT TO REPAIR A SEAT BELT OR CHILD RESTRAINT COMPONENT. ALWAYS REPLACE DAMAGED OR FAULTY SEAT BELT AND CHILD RESTRAINT COMPONENTS WITH THE CORRECT, NEW AND UNUSED REPLACEMENT PARTS LISTED IN THE DAIMLERCHRYSLER MOPAR PARTS CATALOG.**

(1) Disengage the rear seat cushion latch by pulling upward on the release strap.

(2) Fold the rear seat cushion forward against the back of the front bucket seat.

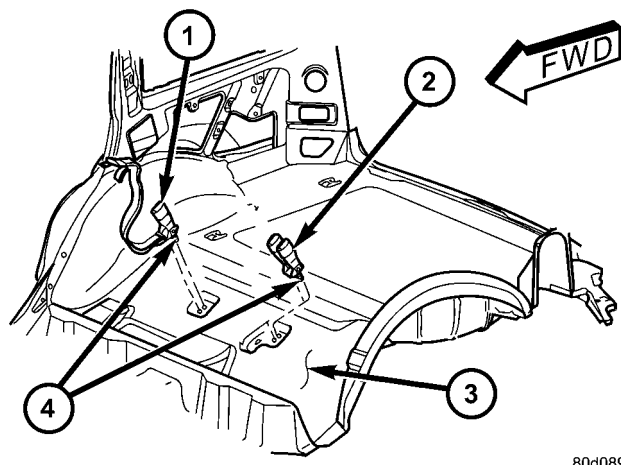
(3) Remove the screw that secures the anchor plate of the rear seat lap belt/buckle unit (right side) or buckle/buckle unit (left side) to the rear floor panel (Fig. 42).

**NOTE: Vehicles equipped with a three-point center seat belt have the center seat belt lower anchor secured to the right buckle anchor plate with a screw instead of the center lap belt. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS/REAR CENTER SEAT BELT & RETRACTOR - REMOVAL).**

(4) Remove the rear seat lap belt/buckle unit (right side) or buckle/buckle unit (left side) from the rear floor panel.



## REAR SEAT BELT BUCKLE (Continued)



80d089a2

**Fig. 42 Rear Seat Lap Belt/Buckle**

- 1 - REAR SEAT LAP BELT/BUCKLE UNIT
- 2 - REAR SEAT BUCKLE/BUCKLE UNIT
- 3 - REAR FLOOR PANEL
- 4 - SCREW

**INSTALLATION**

This procedure applies to the rear seat buckle units for all vehicles. Vehicles manufactured for North America also have a lap belt provided in the rear center seating position, which is integral to the right rear buckle unit. Vehicles manufactured for sale in markets outside of North America are equipped with a three-point seat belt and retractor unit for the rear center seating position. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS/REAR CENTER SEAT BELT & RETRACTOR - INSTALLATION).

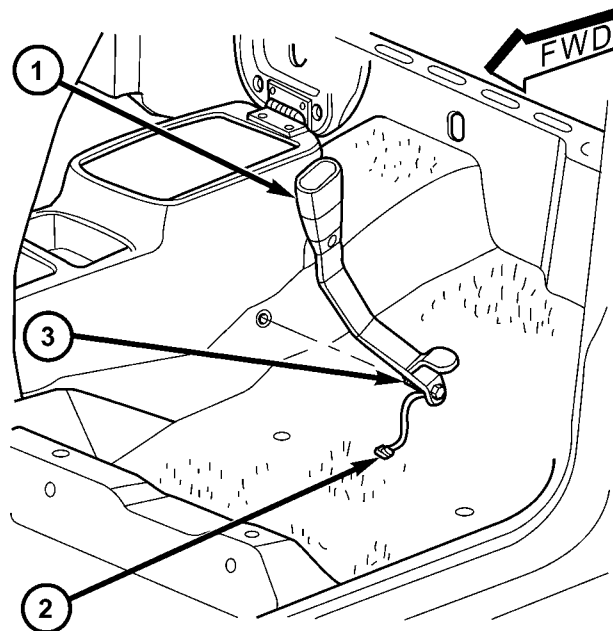
**WARNING: DURING AND FOLLOWING ANY SEAT BELT OR CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR SERVICE, CAREFULLY INSPECT ALL SEAT BELTS, BUCKLES, MOUNTING HARDWARE, RETRACTORS, TETHER STRAPS, AND ANCHORS FOR PROPER INSTALLATION, OPERATION, OR DAMAGE. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT IS CUT, FRAYED, OR TORN. STRAIGHTEN ANY BELT THAT IS TWISTED. TIGHTEN ANY LOOSE FASTENERS. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT HAS A DAMAGED OR INOPERATIVE BUCKLE OR RETRACTOR. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT HAS A BENT OR DAMAGED LATCH PLATE OR ANCHOR PLATE. REPLACE ANY CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR OR THE UNIT TO WHICH THE ANCHOR IS INTEGRAL THAT HAS BEEN BENT OR DAMAGED. NEVER ATTEMPT TO REPAIR A SEAT BELT OR CHILD RESTRAINT COMPONENT. ALWAYS REPLACE DAMAGED OR FAULTY SEAT BELT AND CHILD RESTRAINT COMPONENTS WITH THE CORRECT, NEW AND UNUSED REPLACEMENT PARTS LISTED IN THE DAIMLERCHRYSLER MOPAR PARTS CATALOG.**

(1) Position the rear seat lap belt/buckle unit (right side) or buckle/buckle unit (left side) onto the rear floor panel (Fig. 42). Be certain the locator tab on the anchor plate is installed in the locator hole near the mounting hole in the rear floor panel.

(2) Install and tighten the screw that secures the anchor plate of the rear seat lap belt/buckle unit (right side) or buckle/buckle unit (left side) to the rear floor panel. Tighten the screw to 43 N·m (32 ft. lbs.).

**NOTE: Vehicles equipped with a three-point center seat belt have the center seat belt lower anchor secured to the right buckle anchor plate with a screw instead of the center lap belt. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS/REAR CENTER SEAT BELT & RETRACTOR - INSTALLATION).**

(3) Fold the rear seat cushion back into the seating position.

**SEAT BELT SWITCH****DESCRIPTION**

80a34ab8

**Fig. 43 Front Seat Belt Buckle**

- 1 - FRONT SEAT BELT BUCKLE
- 2 - SEAT BELT SWITCH PIGTAIL WIRE
- 3 - SCREW

The seat belt switch for this model is actually a Hall Effect-type sensor. This sensor consists of a fixed-position, Hall Effect Integrated Circuit (IC) chip and a small permanent magnet that is integral to the driver side front seat belt buckle. The driver side



## SEAT BELT SWITCH (Continued)

front seat belt buckle is located on a stamped steel stanchion within a molded plastic scabbard and secured with a screw to the floor panel transmission tunnel on the inboard side of the driver side front seat cushion (Fig. 43). The seat belt switch is connected to the vehicle electrical system through a two-lead pigtail wire and connector on the driver side front seat belt buckle-half, which is connected to a wire harness connector and take out of the body wire harness on vehicles with manual seat adjusters, or to a connector and take out of the power seat wire harness on vehicles with power seat adjusters. A radio noise suppression capacitor is connected in parallel with the IC where the two pigtail wire leads connect to the IC pins.

The seat belt switch cannot be adjusted or repaired and, if faulty or damaged, the entire driver side front seat belt buckle-half unit must be replaced.

## OPERATION

The seat belt switch is designed to provide a status signal to the seat belt switch sense input of the Airbag Control Module (ACM) indicating whether the driver side front seat belt is fastened. The ACM uses the seat belt switch input to determine the status of the driver side front seat belt. The ACM then sends electronic messages to the ElectroMechanical Instrument Cluster (EMIC) to control the seat belt indicator based upon the status of the seat belt switch input.

A spring-loaded slide with a small window-like opening is integral to the buckle latch mechanism. When a seat belt tip-half is inserted and latched into the seat belt buckle, the slide is pushed downward and the window of the slide exposes the Hall Effect Integrated Circuit (IC) chip within the buckle. The field of the permanent magnet induces a current within the chip. The chip provides this induced current as an output to the ACM, which monitors the current to determine the status of the driver side front seat belt. When the seat belt is unbuckled, the spring-loaded slide moves upward and shields the IC from the field of the permanent magnet, causing the output current from the seat belt switch to be reduced.

The seat belt switch receives a supply current from the ACM, and the ACM senses the status of the driver side front seat belt through its pigtail wire connection to the airbag overlay wire harness. The ACM also monitors the condition of the seat belt switch circuit and will illuminate the airbag indicator in the EMIC then store a Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) for any fault that is detected in the seat belt switch circuit. For proper diagnosis of the seat belt switch, a DRBIII® scan tool is required. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

## SEAT BELT TENSIONER

### DESCRIPTION

On vehicles manufactured for certain markets outside of North America where this equipment is required, seat belt tensioners supplement the dual front airbags for this model. The seat belt tensioners are integral to the front seat belt retractor units, which are secured to the inner B-pillar on the right and left sides of the vehicle. The retractor is concealed beneath the molded plastic inner B-pillar trim. The seat belt tensioner consists primarily of a sprocket/pinion, a steel tube, a cast metal housing, numerous steel balls, a stamped metal ball trap, a torsion bar, a small pyrotechnically activated gas generator, and a short pigtail wire. All of these components are located on one side of the retractor spool on the outside of the retractor housing except for the torsion bar, which serves as the spindle upon which the retractor spool rides. The seat belt tensioners are controlled by the Airbag Control Module (ACM) and are connected to the vehicle electrical system through a dedicated take out of the body wire harness by a keyed and latching yellow molded plastic connector insulator to ensure a secure connection.

The seat belt tensioners cannot be repaired and, if faulty or damaged, the entire front seat belt and retractor unit must be replaced. If the front airbags have been deployed, the seat belt tensioners have also been deployed. The seat belt tensioners are not intended for reuse and must be replaced following any front airbag deployment. A growling or grinding sound while attempting to operate the seat belt retractor is a sure indication that the seat belt tensioner has been deployed and requires replacement. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS/FRONT SEAT BELT & RETRACTOR - REMOVAL).

### OPERATION

The seat belt tensioners are deployed in conjunction with the front airbags by a signal generated by the Airbag Control Module (ACM) through the driver or passenger seat belt tensioner line 1 and line 2 (or squib) circuits. When the ACM sends the proper electrical signal to the tensioners, the electrical energy generates enough heat to initiate a small pyrotechnic gas generator. The gas generator is installed in one end of a steel tube that contains numerous steel balls. As the gas expands, it pushes the steel balls through the tube into a cast metal housing, where a ball guide directs the balls into engagement with the teeth of a sprocket that is geared to one end of the retractor spool. As the balls drive past the sprocket, the sprocket turns and drives the seat belt retractor spool causing the slack to be removed from the front seat belts. The ball trap captures the balls as they leave the sprocket and are expelled from the housing.

## SEAT BELT TENSIONER (Continued)

Removing excess slack from the front seat belts not only keeps the occupants properly positioned for an airbag deployment following a frontal impact of the vehicle, but also helps to reduce injuries that the occupant might experience in these situations as a result of harmful contact with the steering wheel, steering column, instrument panel and/or windshield. Also, the seat belt tensioner torsion bar that the retractor spool rides upon is designed to deform in order to control the loading being applied to the occupants by the seat belts during a frontal impact, further reducing the potential for occupant injuries.

The ACM monitors the condition of the seat belt tensioners through circuit resistance, and will illuminate the airbag indicator in the ElectroMechanical Instrument Cluster (EMIC) and store a Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) for any fault that is detected. For proper diagnosis of the seat belt tensioners, a DRBIII® scan tool is required. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

## SEAT BELT TURNING LOOP ADJUSTER

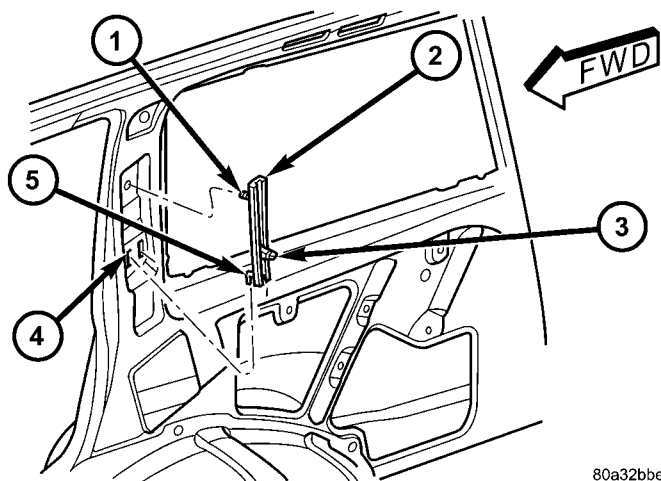
## REMOVAL

**WARNING: DURING AND FOLLOWING ANY SEAT BELT OR CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR SERVICE, CAREFULLY INSPECT ALL SEAT BELTS, BUCKLES, MOUNTING HARDWARE, RETRACTORS, TETHER STRAPS, AND ANCHORS FOR PROPER INSTALLATION, OPERATION, OR DAMAGE. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT IS CUT, FRAYED, OR TORN. STRAIGHTEN ANY BELT THAT IS TWISTED. TIGHTEN ANY LOOSE FASTENERS. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT HAS A DAMAGED OR INOPERATIVE BUCKLE OR RETRACTOR. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT HAS A BENT OR DAMAGED LATCH PLATE OR ANCHOR PLATE. REPLACE ANY CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR OR THE UNIT TO WHICH THE ANCHOR IS INTEGRAL THAT HAS BEEN BENT OR DAMAGED. NEVER ATTEMPT TO REPAIR A SEAT BELT OR CHILD RESTRAINT COMPONENT. ALWAYS REPLACE DAMAGED OR FAULTY SEAT BELT AND CHILD RESTRAINT COMPONENTS WITH THE CORRECT, NEW AND UNUSED REPLACEMENT PARTS LISTED IN THE DAIMLERCHRYSLER MOPAR PARTS CATALOG.**

(1) Remove the turning loop from the front seat belt turning loop adjuster. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS/FRONT SEAT BELT & RETRACTOR - REMOVAL).

(2) Remove the trim from the upper B-pillar. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/B-PILLAR UPPER TRIM - REMOVAL).

(3) Remove the screw that secures the upper end of the turning loop adjuster to the upper B-pillar (Fig. 44).



**Fig. 44 Seat Belt Turning Loop Adjuster - Typical**

- 1 - SCREW (1)
- 2 - ADJUSTER
- 3 - LEVER
- 4 - SLOTS (2)
- 5 - HOOKS (2)

(4) Pull the upper end of the turning loop adjuster away from the B-pillar far enough to disengage the hooks on the lower end of the adjuster from the slots in the pillar.

(5) Remove the turning loop adjuster from the upper B-pillar.

## INSTALLATION

**WARNING: DURING AND FOLLOWING ANY SEAT BELT OR CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR SERVICE, CAREFULLY INSPECT ALL SEAT BELTS, BUCKLES, MOUNTING HARDWARE, RETRACTORS, TETHER STRAPS, AND ANCHORS FOR PROPER INSTALLATION, OPERATION, OR DAMAGE. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT IS CUT, FRAYED, OR TORN. STRAIGHTEN ANY BELT THAT IS TWISTED. TIGHTEN ANY LOOSE FASTENERS. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT HAS A DAMAGED OR INOPERATIVE BUCKLE OR RETRACTOR. REPLACE ANY BELT THAT HAS A BENT OR DAMAGED LATCH PLATE OR ANCHOR PLATE. REPLACE ANY CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR OR THE UNIT TO WHICH THE ANCHOR IS INTEGRAL THAT HAS BEEN BENT OR DAMAGED. NEVER ATTEMPT TO REPAIR A SEAT BELT OR CHILD RESTRAINT COMPONENT. ALWAYS REPLACE DAMAGED OR FAULTY SEAT BELT AND CHILD RESTRAINT COMPONENTS WITH THE CORRECT, NEW AND UNUSED REPLACEMENT PARTS LISTED IN THE DAIMLERCHRYSLER MOPAR PARTS CATALOG.**

## SEAT BELT TURNING LOOP ADJUSTER (Continued)

- (1) Position the turning loop adjuster to the upper B-pillar.
- (2) Engage the hooks on the lower end of the adjuster into the slots in the upper B-pillar (Fig. 44).
- (3) Tilt the upper end of the turning loop adjuster into position against the B-pillar.
- (4) Install and tighten the screw that secures the upper end of the front or rear height adjuster to the B-pillar. Tighten the screw to 43 N·m (32 ft. lbs.).
- (5) Reinstall the trim onto the upper B-pillar. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/B-PILLAR UPPER TRIM - INSTALLATION).
- (6) Reinstall the front seat belt turning loop to the adjuster. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS/FRONT SEAT BELT & RETRACTOR - INSTALLATION).

## SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG

## DESCRIPTION



8098029e

*Fig. 45 SRS Logo*

Optional side curtain airbags are available for this model when it is also equipped with dual front airbags. These airbags are passive, inflatable, Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) components, and vehicles with this equipment can be readily identified by a molded identification trim button with the "SRS - AIRBAG" logo located on the headliner above each B-pillar (Fig. 45). This system is designed to reduce injuries to the vehicle occupants in the event of a side impact collision.

Vehicles equipped with side curtain airbags have two individually controlled curtain airbag units. These airbag units are concealed and mounted above the headliner where they are each secured to one of the roof side rails (Fig. 46). Each folded airbag cushion is contained within a long extruded plastic channel that extends along the roof rail from the A-pillar at the front of the vehicle to just behind the C-pillar

at the rear of the vehicle. One tether extends down the A-pillar from the front of the airbag cushion, and a second tether extends to the roof rail above the D-pillar. The ends of these tethers are secured to slots in the sheet metal with metal hooks retained by plastic anchor clips.

The hybrid-type inflator for each airbag is secured to the roof rail at the rear of the airbag unit between the C-pillar and the D-pillar, and is connected to the airbag cushion by a long tubular manifold. The inflator bracket and the extruded airbag cushion channel are secured with both plastic push-in fasteners and screws to the roof rail. A short pigtail wire and connector connect the airbag inflator to a dedicated take out and connector of the body wire harness near the top of the D-pillar.

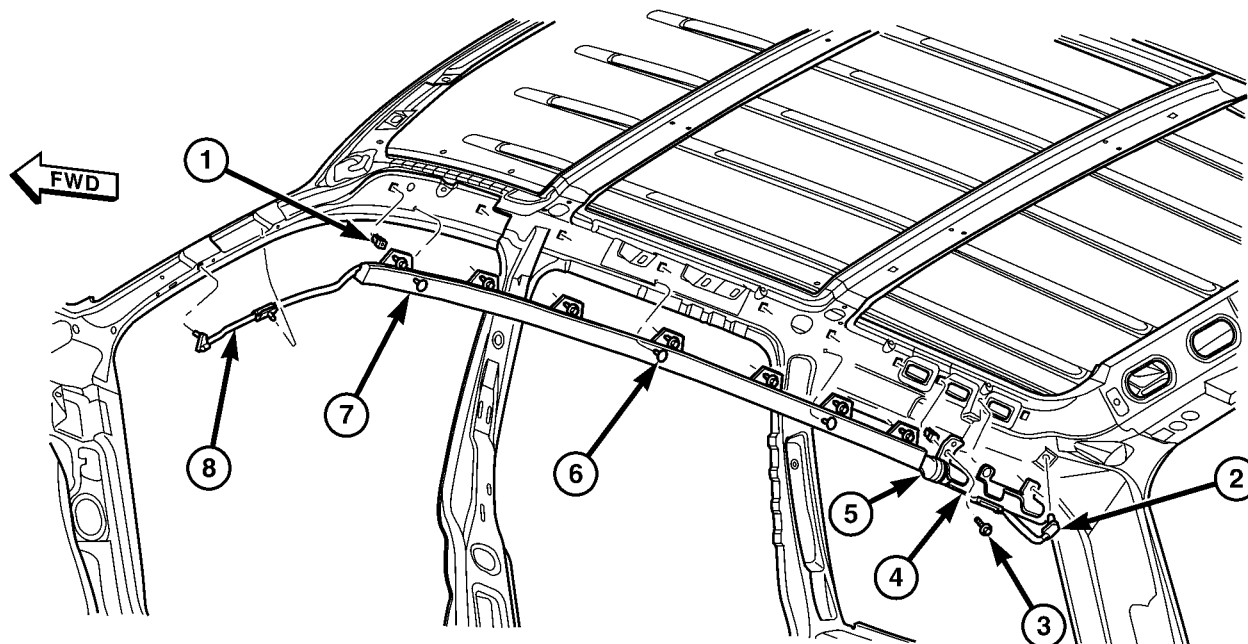
The side curtain airbag unit cannot be adjusted or repaired and must be replaced if deployed, faulty, or in any way damaged. Once a side curtain airbag has been deployed, the complete airbag unit, the headliner, the upper A, B, and C-pillar trim, and all other visibly damaged components must be replaced.

## OPERATION

Each side curtain airbag is deployed individually by an electrical signal generated by the Airbag Control Module (ACM) to which it is connected through left or right curtain airbag line 1 and line 2 (or squib) circuits. The hybrid-type inflator assembly for each airbag contains a small canister of highly compressed inert gas. When the ACM sends the proper electrical signal to the airbag inflator, the electrical energy creates enough heat to ignite chemical pellets within the inflator. Once ignited, these chemicals burn rapidly and produce the pressure necessary to rupture a containment disk in the inert gas canister. The inflator and inert gas canister are sealed and connected to a tubular manifold so that all of the released gas is directed into the folded side curtain airbag cushion, causing the cushion to inflate.

As the airbag cushion inflates it will drop down from the roof rail between the edge of the headliner and the side glass/body pillars to form a curtain-like cushion to protect the vehicle occupants during a side impact collision. The front and rear tethers keep the side curtain bag taut, thus ensuring that the bag will deploy in the proper position. Following the airbag deployment, the airbag cushion quickly deflates by venting the inert gas through the loose weave of the cushion fabric, and the deflated cushion hangs down loosely from the roof rail.

## SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG (Continued)



80d0a980

**Fig. 46 Side Curtain Airbag**

- 1 - NUT (9)
- 2 - REAR TETHER
- 3 - SCREW (9)
- 4 - INFLATOR

- 5 - MANIFOLD
- 6 - PUSH-IN FASTENER (4)
- 7 - CHANNEL
- 8 - FRONT TETHER

**REMOVAL**

The following procedure is for replacement of a faulty or damaged side curtain airbag. If the airbag is faulty or damaged, but not deployed, review the recommended procedures for handling non-deployed supplemental restraints. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS - STANDARD PROCEDURE - HANDLING NON-DEPLOYED SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINTS). If the side curtain airbag has been deployed, review the recommended procedures for service after a supplemental restraint deployment before removing the airbag from the vehicle. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS - STANDARD PROCEDURE - SERVICE AFTER A SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT DEPLOYMENT).

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, DRIVER AIRBAG, PASSENGER AIRBAG, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE.**

**THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

**WARNING: WHEN REMOVING A DEPLOYED AIRBAG, RUBBER GLOVES, EYE PROTECTION, AND A LONG-SLEEVED SHIRT SHOULD BE WORN. THERE MAY BE DEPOSITS ON THE AIRBAG UNIT AND OTHER INTERIOR SURFACES. IN LARGE DOSES, THESE DEPOSITS MAY CAUSE IRRITATION TO THE SKIN AND EYES.**

**WARNING: USE EXTREME CARE TO PREVENT ANY FOREIGN MATERIAL FROM ENTERING THE SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, OR BECOMING ENTRAPPED BETWEEN THE SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG CUSHION AND THE HEADLINER. FAILURE TO OBSERVE THIS WARNING COULD RESULT IN OCCUPANT INJURIES UPON AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT.**

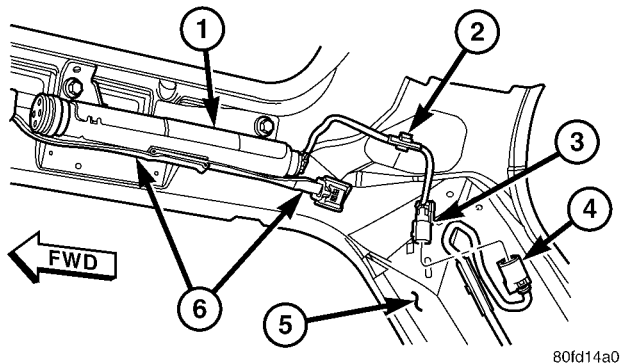
(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Wait two minutes for the system capacitor to discharge before further service.

(2) Remove the headliner from the vehicle. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/HEADLINER - REMOVAL).



## SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG (Continued)

(3) Disconnect the side curtain airbag inflator pigtail wire from the body wire harness connector for the inflator on the upper D-pillar (Fig. 47).



**Fig. 47 Side Curtain Airbag Inflator**

- 1 - INFLATOR
- 2 - CLIP
- 3 - PIGTAIL WIRE CONNECTOR
- 4 - BODY WIRE HARNESS
- 5 - D-PILLAR
- 6 - REAR TETHER

(4) Disengage the side curtain airbag rear tether hook and plastic retainer clip from the slot in the roof rail near the D-pillar.

(5) Disengage the side curtain airbag front tether hook and plastic retainer clip from the slot in the lower A-pillar (Fig. 48).

(6) Disengage the side curtain airbag front tether plastic retainer from the hole in the upper A-pillar.

(7) Remove the nine screws that secure the side curtain airbag channel and inflator mounting bracket to the spring nuts in the roof side rail.

(8) Grasp the extruded plastic channel of the side curtain airbag firmly and pull it straight away from the body far enough to disengage all three plastic push-in fasteners that secure it to the locating holes in the roof side rail.

(9) Grasp the inflator of the side curtain airbag firmly and pull it straight away from the body far enough to disengage the push-in fastener that secures it to the locating hole in the roof side rail.

(10) Remove the side curtain airbag from the vehicle as a unit.

## INSTALLATION

The following procedure is for replacement of a faulty or damaged side curtain airbag. If the airbag is faulty or damaged, but not deployed, review the recommended procedures for handling non-deployed supplemental restraints. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS - STANDARD PROCEDURE - HANDLING NON-DEPLOYED SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINTS). If the side curtain airbag has been deployed, review the recommended procedures for

service after a supplemental restraint deployment before removing the airbag from the vehicle. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS - STANDARD PROCEDURE - SERVICE AFTER A SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT DEPLOYMENT).

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, DRIVER AIRBAG, PASSENGER AIRBAG, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

**WARNING: WHEN REMOVING A DEPLOYED AIRBAG, RUBBER GLOVES, EYE PROTECTION, AND A LONG-SLEEVED SHIRT SHOULD BE WORN. THERE MAY BE DEPOSITS ON THE AIRBAG UNIT AND OTHER INTERIOR SURFACES. IN LARGE DOSES, THESE DEPOSITS MAY CAUSE IRRITATION TO THE SKIN AND EYES.**

**WARNING: USE EXTREME CARE TO PREVENT ANY FOREIGN MATERIAL FROM ENTERING THE SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, OR BECOMING ENTRAPPED BETWEEN THE SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG CUSHION AND THE HEADLINER. FAILURE TO OBSERVE THIS WARNING COULD RESULT IN OCCUPANT INJURIES UPON AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT.**

(1) Position the side curtain airbag into the vehicle as a unit.

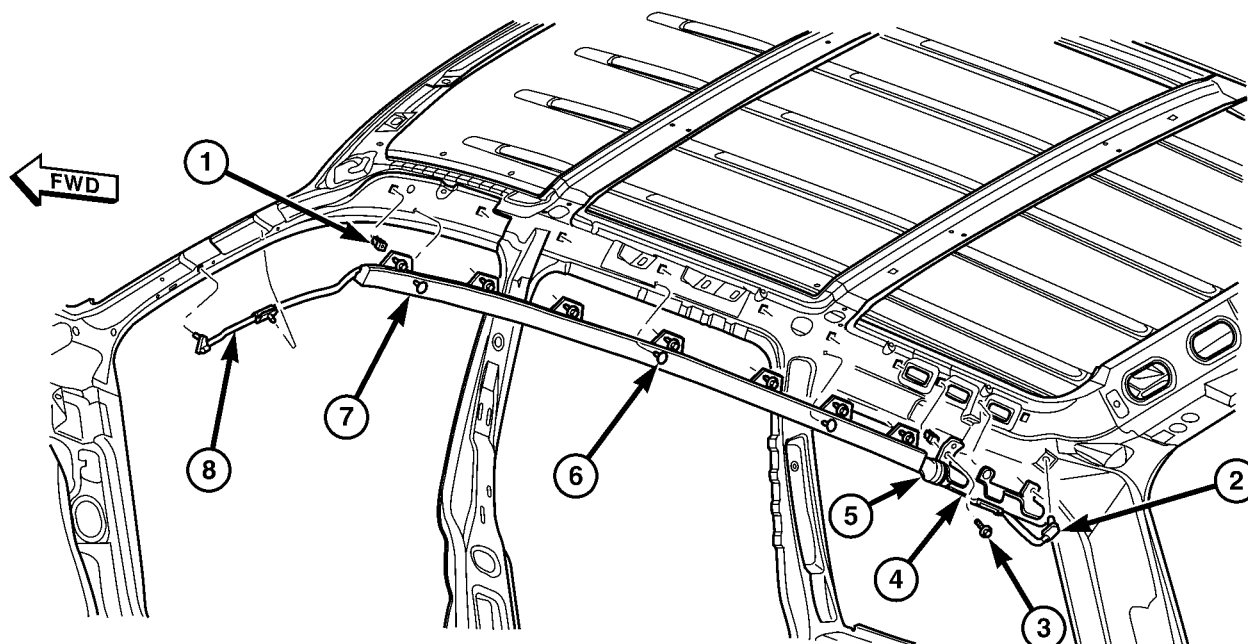
(2) Align the push-in fastener that secures the inflator of the side curtain airbag to the locating hole in the roof side rail and, using hand pressure, push firmly on the retainer until it is fully seated (Fig. 48).

(3) Align the three push-in fasteners that secure the extruded plastic channel of the side curtain airbag to the locating holes in the roof side rail and, using hand pressure, push firmly on each retainer until it is fully seated.

(4) Install and tighten the nine screws that secure the side curtain airbag channel and inflator mounting bracket to the spring nuts in the roof side rail. Tighten the screws to 6 N·m (50 in. lbs.).



## SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG (Continued)



80d0a980

**Fig. 48 Side Curtain Airbag Remove/Install**

- 1 - NUT (9)
- 2 - REAR TETHER
- 3 - SCREW (9)
- 4 - INFLATOR

- 5 - MANIFOLD
- 6 - PUSH-IN FASTENER (4)
- 7 - CHANNEL
- 8 - FRONT TETHER

(5) Align the side curtain airbag front tether plastic retainer with the hole in the upper A-pillar and, using hand pressure, push firmly on the retainer until it is fully seated.

(6) Engage the side curtain airbag front tether hook and plastic retainer clip into the slot in the lower A-pillar.

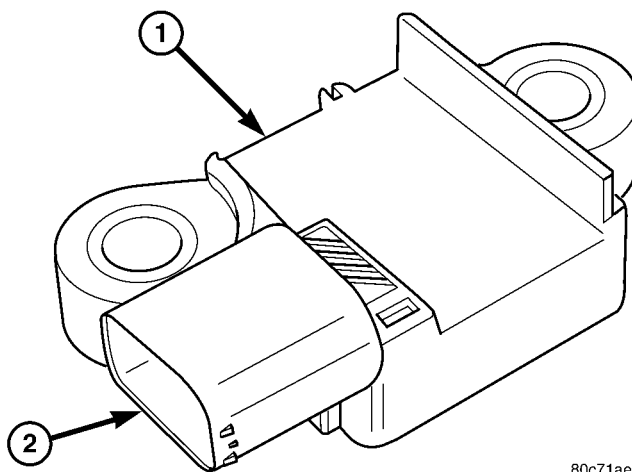
(7) Engage the side curtain airbag rear tether hook and plastic retainer clip into the slot in the roof rail near the D-pillar (Fig. 47).

(8) Reconnect the side curtain airbag inflator pigtail wire connector to the body wire harness connector for the inflator on the upper D-pillar.

(9) Reinstall the headliner into the vehicle. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/HEADLINER - INSTALLATION).

(10) Do not reconnect the battery negative cable at this time. The supplemental restraint system verification test procedure should be performed following service of any supplemental restraint system component. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS - STANDARD PROCEDURE - VERIFICATION TEST).

## SIDE IMPACT SENSOR DESCRIPTION



80c71ae6

**Fig. 49 Side Impact Sensor**

- 1 - SENSOR
- 2 - CONNECTOR RECEPTACLE

On vehicles equipped with the optional side curtain airbags, two side impact sensors are used, one each for the left and right sides of the vehicle (Fig. 49). These sensors are mounted remotely from the bi-directional safing sensor that is internal to the Airbag

## SIDE IMPACT SENSOR (Continued)

Control Module (ACM). The side and front impact sensors are identical in construction and calibration with the exception of the right-hand and left-hand die cast aluminum mounting brackets to which each front impact sensor is secured with two screws. The side impact sensors are secured with two screws to the base of the right and left B-pillars just below the front seat belt retractors and behind the lower B-pillar trim within the passenger compartment.

The impact sensor housing has an integral connector receptacle and two integral mounting ears, each with a metal sleeve to provide crush protection. A cavity in the center of the molded black plastic impact sensor housing contains the electronic circuitry of the sensor which includes an electronic communication chip and an electronic impact sensor. Potting material fills the cavity to seal and protect the internal electronic circuitry and components. The side impact sensors are each connected to the vehicle electrical system through a dedicated take out and connector of the airbag overlay wire harness.

The side impact sensors cannot be repaired or adjusted and, if damaged or faulty, they must be replaced.

## OPERATION

The side impact sensors are electronic accelerometers that sense the rate of vehicle deceleration, which provides verification of the direction and severity of an impact. Each sensor also contains an electronic communication chip that allows the unit to communicate the sensor status as well as sensor fault information to the microprocessor in the Airbag Control Module (ACM). The ACM microprocessor continuously monitors all of the passive restraint system electrical circuits to determine the system readiness. If the ACM detects a monitored system fault, it sets a Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) and controls the airbag indicator operation accordingly.

The impact sensors each receive battery current and ground through dedicated left and right sensor plus and minus circuits from the ACM. The impact sensors and the ACM communicate by modulating the voltage in the sensor plus circuit. The hard wired circuits between the side impact sensors and the ACM may be diagnosed and tested using conventional diagnostic tools and procedures. However, conventional diagnostic methods will not prove conclusive in the diagnosis of the ACM or the impact sensors. The most reliable, efficient, and accurate means to diagnose the impact sensors, the ACM, and the electronic message communication between the sensors and the ACM requires the use of a DRBIII® scan tool. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

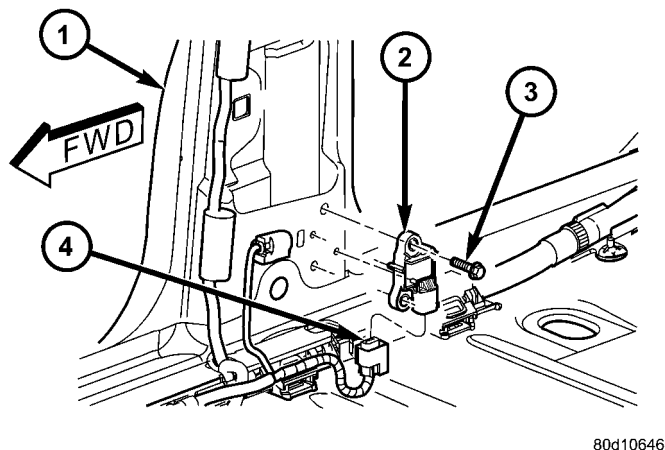
## REMOVAL

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, DRIVER AIRBAG, PASSENGER AIRBAG, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

**WARNING: THE SIDE IMPACT SENSOR ENABLES THE SYSTEM TO DEPLOY THE SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG. NEVER STRIKE OR DROP THE SIDE IMPACT SENSOR, AS IT CAN DAMAGE THE IMPACT SENSOR OR AFFECT ITS CALIBRATION. IF AN IMPACT SENSOR IS ACCIDENTALLY DROPPED DURING SERVICE, THE SENSOR MUST BE SCRAPPED AND REPLACED WITH A NEW UNIT. FAILURE TO OBSERVE THIS WARNING COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL, INCOMPLETE, OR IMPROPER SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE OCCUPANT INJURIES.**

- (1) Adjust the front seat to its most forward position for easiest access to the lower B-pillar trim.
- (2) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Wait two minutes for the system capacitor to discharge before further service.
- (3) Remove the trim from the lower right or left B-pillar. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/B-PILLAR LOWER TRIM - REMOVAL).
- (4) Disconnect the airbag overlay wire harness connector for the right or left side impact sensor from the sensor connector receptacle (Fig. 50).
- (5) Remove the two screws that secure the right or left side impact sensor to the B-pillar.
- (6) Remove the side impact sensor from the B-pillar.

## SIDE IMPACT SENSOR (Continued)



**Fig. 50 Side Impact Sensor Remove/Install**

- 1 - B-PILLAR
- 2 - SIDE IMPACT SENSOR
- 3 - SCREW (2)
- 4 - WIRE HARNESS CONNECTOR

## INSTALLATION

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, DRIVER AIRBAG, PASSENGER AIRBAG, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE**

**SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

**WARNING: THE SIDE IMPACT SENSOR ENABLES THE SYSTEM TO DEPLOY THE SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG. NEVER STRIKE OR DROP THE SIDE IMPACT SENSOR, AS IT CAN DAMAGE THE IMPACT SENSOR OR AFFECT ITS CALIBRATION. IF AN IMPACT SENSOR IS ACCIDENTALLY DROPPED DURING SERVICE, THE SENSOR MUST BE SCRAPPED AND REPLACED WITH A NEW UNIT. FAILURE TO OBSERVE THIS WARNING COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL, INCOMPLETE, OR IMPROPER SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE OCCUPANT INJURIES.**

(1) Position the right or left side impact sensor onto the B-pillar (Fig. 50).

(2) Install and tighten the two screws that secure the right or left side impact sensor to the B-pillar. Tighten the screws to 12 N·m (105 in. lbs.).

(3) Reconnect the airbag overlay wire harness connector for the right or left side impact sensor to the sensor connector receptacle.

(4) Reinstall the trim onto the lower right or left B-pillar. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/B-PILLAR LOWER TRIM - INSTALLATION).

(5) Do not reconnect the battery negative cable at this time. The supplemental restraint system verification test procedure should be performed following service of any supplemental restraint system component. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS - STANDARD PROCEDURE - VERIFICATION TEST).

# SPEED CONTROL

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>SPEED CONTROL</b>		<b>OPERATION</b> .....	5
DESCRIPTION .....	1	<b>REMOVAL</b> .....	5
OPERATION .....	1	<b>INSTALLATION</b> .....	6
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - ROAD TEST .....	2	<b>SWITCH</b>	
SPECIFICATIONS		DESCRIPTION .....	6
TORQUE - SPEED CONTROL .....	2	OPERATION .....	6
<b>CABLE</b>		REMOVAL .....	7
DESCRIPTION .....	3	INSTALLATION .....	7
OPERATION .....	3	<b>VACUUM RESERVOIR</b>	
REMOVAL		DESCRIPTION .....	7
REMOVAL - 4.0L .....	3	OPERATION .....	7
REMOVAL - 4.7L .....	3	DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - VACUUM	
INSTALLATION		RESERVOIR .....	8
INSTALLATION - 4.0L .....	3	REMOVAL .....	8
INSTALLATION - 4.7L .....	3	INSTALLATION .....	8
<b>SERVO</b>			
DESCRIPTION .....	5		

## SPEED CONTROL

### DESCRIPTION

The speed control system is electronically controlled and vacuum operated. Electronic control of the speed control system is integrated into the Powertrain Control Module (PCM). The controls consist of two steering wheel mounted switches. The switches are labeled: ON/OFF, RES/ACCEL, SET, COAST, and CANCEL.

The system is designed to operate at speeds above 30 mph (50 km/h).

**WARNING: THE USE OF SPEED CONTROL IS NOT RECOMMENDED WHEN DRIVING CONDITIONS DO NOT PERMIT MAINTAINING A CONSTANT SPEED, SUCH AS IN HEAVY TRAFFIC OR ON ROADS THAT ARE WINDING, ICY, SNOW COVERED, OR SLIPPERY.**

### OPERATION

When speed control is selected by depressing the ON switch, the PCM allows a set speed to be stored in PCM RAM for speed control. To store a set speed, depress the SET switch while the vehicle is moving at a speed between 35 and 85 mph. In order for the speed control to engage, the brakes cannot be applied, nor can the gear selector be indicating the transmission is in Park or Neutral.

The speed control can be disengaged manually by:

- Stepping on the brake pedal
- Depressing the OFF switch
- Depressing the CANCEL switch.
- Depressing the clutch pedal (if equipped).

**NOTE: Depressing the OFF switch or turning off the ignition switch will erase the set speed stored in the PCM.**

For added safety, the speed control system is programmed to disengage for any of the following conditions:

- An indication of Park or Neutral
- A rapid increase rpm (indicates that the clutch has been disengaged)
- Excessive engine rpm (indicates that the transmission may be in a low gear)
- The speed signal increases at a rate of 10 mph per second (indicates that the coefficient of friction between the road surface and tires is extremely low)
- The speed signal decreases at a rate of 10 mph per second (indicates that the vehicle may have decelerated at an extremely high rate)

Once the speed control has been disengaged, depressing the RES/ACCEL switch (when speed is greater than 30 mph) restores the vehicle to the target speed that was stored in the PCM.

While the speed control is engaged, the driver can increase the vehicle speed by depressing the RES/ACCEL switch. The new target speed is stored in the



## SPEED CONTROL (Continued)

PCM when the RES/ACCEL is released. The PCM also has a "tap-up" feature in which vehicle speed increases at a rate of approximately 2 mph for each momentary switch activation of the RES/ACCEL switch.

A "tap down" feature is used to decelerate without disengaging the speed control system. To decelerate from an existing recorded target speed, momentarily depress the COAST switch. For each switch activation, speed will be lowered approximately 1 mph.

## OVERSHOOT/UNDERSHOOT

If the vehicle operator repeatedly presses and releases the SET button with their foot off of the accelerator (referred to as a "lift foot set"), the vehicle may accelerate and exceed the desired set speed by up to 5 mph (8 km/h). It may also decelerate to less than the desired set speed, before finally achieving the desired set speed.

The Speed Control System has an adaptive strategy that compensates for vehicle-to-vehicle variations in speed control cable lengths. When the speed control is set with the vehicle operators foot off of the accelerator pedal, the speed control thinks there is excessive speed control cable slack and adapts accordingly. If the "lift foot sets" are continually used, a speed control overshoot/undershoot condition will develop.

To "unlearn" the overshoot/undershoot condition, the vehicle operator has to press and release the set button while maintaining the desired set speed using the accelerator pedal (not decelerating or accelerating), and then turning the cruise control switch to the OFF position (or press the CANCEL button if equipped) after waiting 10 seconds. This procedure must be performed approximately 10–15 times to completely unlearn the overshoot/undershoot condition.

## SPECIFICATIONS

## TORQUE - SPEED CONTROL

DESCRIPTION	N-m	Ft. Lbs.	In. Lbs.
Servo Mounting Bracket-to-Servo Nuts	8.5		75
Servo Mounting Bracket-to-Body Nuts	28 ± 6		250 ± 50
Switch Module Mounting Screws	.6-1		6-9
Vacuum Reservoir Mounting Bolts	3		25

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - ROAD TEST

Perform a vehicle road test to verify reports of speed control system malfunction. The road test should include attention to the speedometer. Speedometer operation should be smooth and without flutter at all speeds.

Flutter in the speedometer indicates a problem which might cause surging in the speed control system. The cause of any speedometer problems should be corrected before proceeding. Refer to Group 8J, Instrument Cluster for speedometer diagnosis.

If a road test verifies a system problem and the speedometer operates properly, check for:

- A Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC). If a DTC exists, conduct tests per the Powertrain Diagnostic Procedures service manual.
- A misadjusted brake (stop) lamp switch. This could also cause an intermittent problem.
- Loose, damaged or corroded electrical connections at the servo. Corrosion should be removed from electrical terminals and a light coating of Mopar MultiPurpose Grease, or equivalent, applied.
- Leaking vacuum reservoir.
- Loose or leaking vacuum hoses or connections.
- Defective one-way vacuum check valve.
- Secure attachment of both ends of the speed control servo cable.
- Smooth operation of throttle linkage and throttle body air valve.
- Failed speed control servo. Do the servo vacuum test.

**CAUTION:** When test probing for voltage or continuity at electrical connectors, care must be taken not to damage connector, terminals or seals. If these components are damaged, intermittent or complete system failure may occur.



## CABLE

### DESCRIPTION

The speed control servo cable is connected between the speed control vacuum servo diaphragm and the throttle body control linkage.

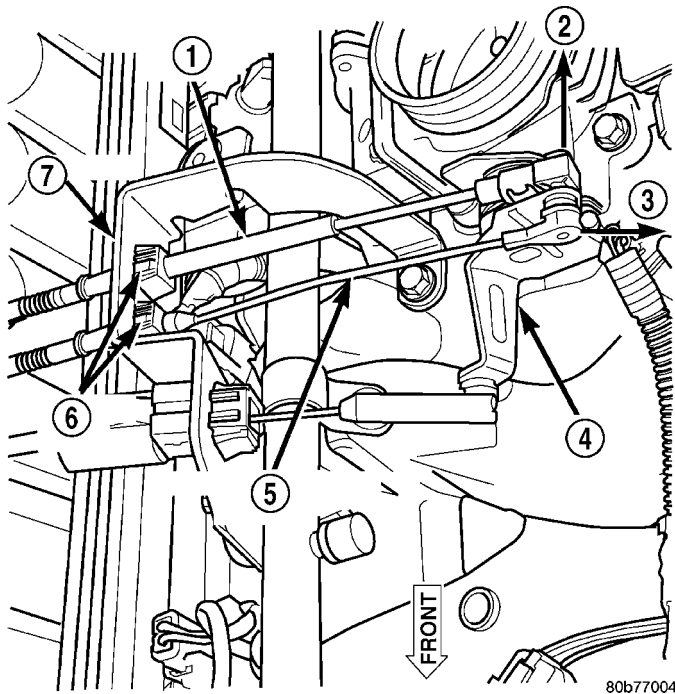
### OPERATION

This cable causes the throttle control linkage to open or close the throttle valve in response to movement of the vacuum servo diaphragm.

### REMOVAL

#### REMOVAL - 4.0L

- (1) Disconnect negative battery cable at battery.
- (2) Remove air box housing from throttle body.
- (3) Using finger pressure only, remove speed control cable connector at throttle body bellcrank pin by pushing connector off bellcrank pin towards drivers side of vehicle (Fig. 1). **DO NOT try to pull connector off perpendicular to the bellcrank pin. Connector will be broken.**



**Fig. 1 Speed Control Cable at Bell Crank—4.0L Engine**

- 1 - ACCELERATOR CABLE
- 2 - OFF
- 3 - OFF
- 4 - THROTTLE BODY BELLCRANK
- 5 - SPEED CONTROL CABLE
- 6 - RELEASE TABS
- 7 - BRACKET

- (4) Remove cable from cable guide at top of valve cover.

- (5) Squeeze 2 release tabs (Fig. 1) on sides of cable at bracket and push cable out of bracket.

- (6) Remove servo cable from servo. Refer to Speed Control Servo Removal/Installation.

#### REMOVAL - 4.7L

- (1) Disconnect negative battery cable at battery.
- (2) Remove air box housing from throttle body.

The accelerator cable must be partially removed to gain access to speed control cable.

- (3) Using finger pressure only, disconnect accelerator cable connector at throttle body bellcrank pin by pushing connector off bellcrank pin towards front of vehicle (Fig. 2). **DO NOT try to pull connector off perpendicular to the bellcrank pin. Connector will be broken.**

- (4) Lift accelerator cable from top of cable cam (Fig. 2).

- (5) Press tab (Fig. 3) to release plastic cable mount from bracket. **Press on tab only enough to release cable from bracket. If tab is pressed too much, it will be broken.** Slide plastic mount (Fig. 3) towards passenger side of vehicle to remove cable from bracket.

- (6) Using finger pressure only, disconnect speed control cable connector at throttle body bellcrank pin by pushing connector off bellcrank pin towards front of vehicle (Fig. 2). **DO NOT try to pull connector off perpendicular to the bellcrank pin. Connector will be broken.**

- (7) Slide speed control cable plastic mount towards passenger side of vehicle to remove cable from bracket (Fig. 4).

- (8) Remove servo cable from servo. Refer to Speed Control Servo Removal/Installation.

### INSTALLATION

#### INSTALLATION - 4.0L

- (1) Install end of cable to speed control servo. Refer to Speed Control Servo Removal/Installation.

- (2) Install cable into mounting bracket (snaps in).

- (3) Install speed control cable connector at throttle body bellcrank pin (snaps on).

- (4) Connect negative battery cable at battery.

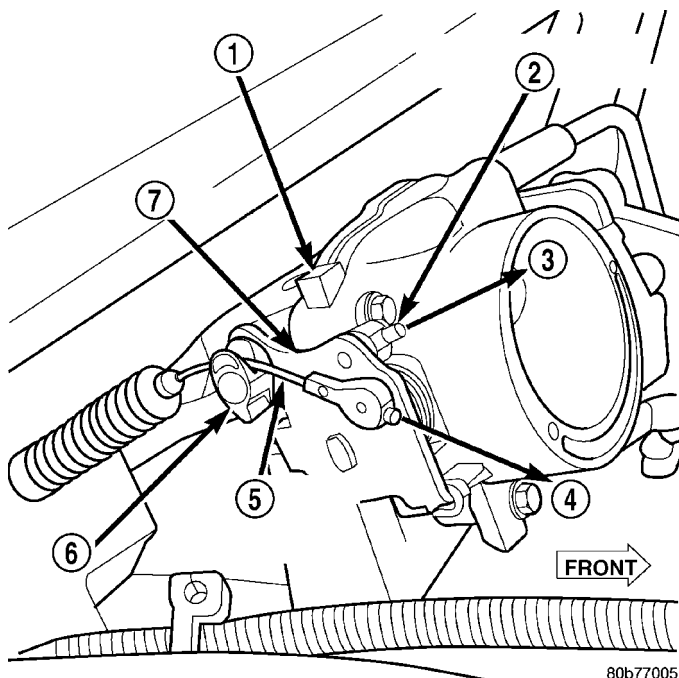
- (5) Before starting engine, operate accelerator pedal to check for any binding.

#### INSTALLATION - 4.7L

- (1) Install end of cable to speed control servo. Refer to Speed Control Servo Removal/Installation.

- (2) Slide speed control cable plastic mount into bracket.

## CABLE (Continued)



**Fig. 2 Cable Connectors at Bell Crank—4.7L V-8 Engine**

- 1 - THROTTLE BODY
- 2 - SPEED CONTROL CABLE CONNECTOR
- 3 - OFF
- 4 - OFF
- 5 - ACCELERATOR CABLE CONNECTOR
- 6 - CABLE CAM
- 7 - BELLCRANK

(3) Install speed control cable connector onto throttle body bellcrank pin (snaps on).

(4) Slide accelerator cable plastic mount into bracket. Continue sliding until tab (Fig. 3) is aligned to hole in mounting bracket.

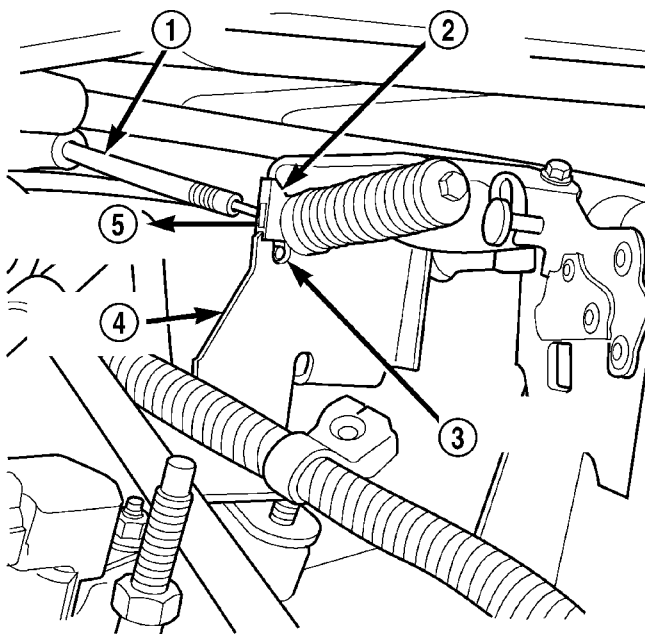
(5) Route accelerator cable over top of cable cam (Fig. 2).

(6) Install accelerator cable connector onto throttle body bellcrank pin (snaps on).

(7) Install air box housing to throttle body.

(8) Connect negative battery cable at battery.

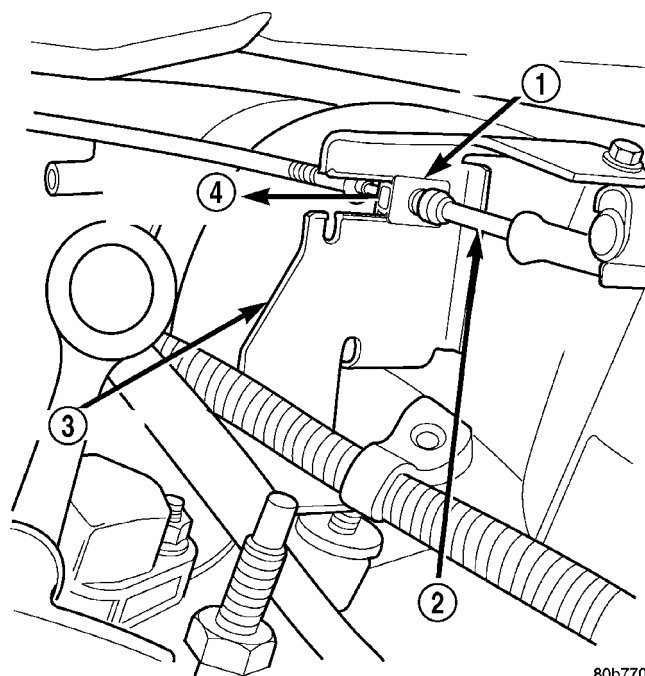
(9) Before starting engine, operate accelerator pedal to check for any binding.



80b77006

**Fig. 3 Accelerator Cable Release Tab—4.7L V-8 Engine**

- 1 - ACCELERATOR CABLE
- 2 - PLASTIC CABLE MOUNT
- 3 - PRESS TAB FOR REMOVAL
- 4 - CABLE BRACKET
- 5 - SLIDE FOR REMOVAL



80b77007

**Fig. 4 Speed Control Cable at Bracket—4.7L V-8 Engine**

- 1 - PLASTIC CABLE MOUNT
- 2 - SPEED CONTROL CABLE
- 3 - BRACKET
- 4 - SLIDE FOR REMOVAL

## SERVO

### DESCRIPTION

The servo unit consists of a solenoid valve body, and a vacuum chamber. The solenoid valve body contains three solenoids:

- Vacuum
- Vent
- Dump

The vacuum chamber contains a diaphragm with a cable attached to control the throttle linkage.

### OPERATION

The Powertrain Control Module (PCM) controls the solenoid valve body. The solenoid valve body controls the application and release of vacuum to the diaphragm of the vacuum servo. The servo unit cannot be repaired and is serviced only as a complete assembly.

Power is supplied to the servo's by the PCM through the brake switch. The PCM controls the ground path for the vacuum and vent solenoids.

The dump solenoid is energized anytime it receives power. If power to the dump solenoid is interrupted, the solenoid dumps vacuum in the servo. This provides a safety backup to the vent and vacuum solenoids.

The vacuum and vent solenoids must be grounded at the PCM to operate. When the PCM grounds the vacuum servo solenoid, the solenoid allows vacuum to enter the servo and pull open the throttle plate using the cable. When the PCM breaks the ground, the solenoid closes and no more vacuum is allowed to enter the servo. The PCM also operates the vent solenoid via ground. The vent solenoid opens and closes a passage to bleed or hold vacuum in the servo as required.

The PCM duty cycles the vacuum and vent solenoids to maintain the set speed, or to accelerate and decelerate the vehicle. To increase throttle opening, the PCM grounds the vacuum and vent solenoids. To decrease throttle opening, the PCM removes the grounds from the vacuum and vent solenoids. When the brake is released, if vehicle speed exceeds 30 mph to resume, 35 mph to set, and the RES/ACCEL switch has been depressed, ground for the vent and vacuum circuits is restored.

### REMOVAL

The speed control servo is attached to a bracket. The bracket and servo assembly are located below the battery tray.

- (1) Disconnect negative battery cable at battery.
- (2) Disconnect positive battery cable at battery.

(3) Remove air cleaner housing at top of throttle body and disconnect servo cable at throttle body. Refer to Servo Cable Removal/Installation.

(4) Remove battery from battery tray.

(5) Disconnect wiring at battery tray.

(6) Disconnect positive battery cable at Power Distribution Center (PDC).

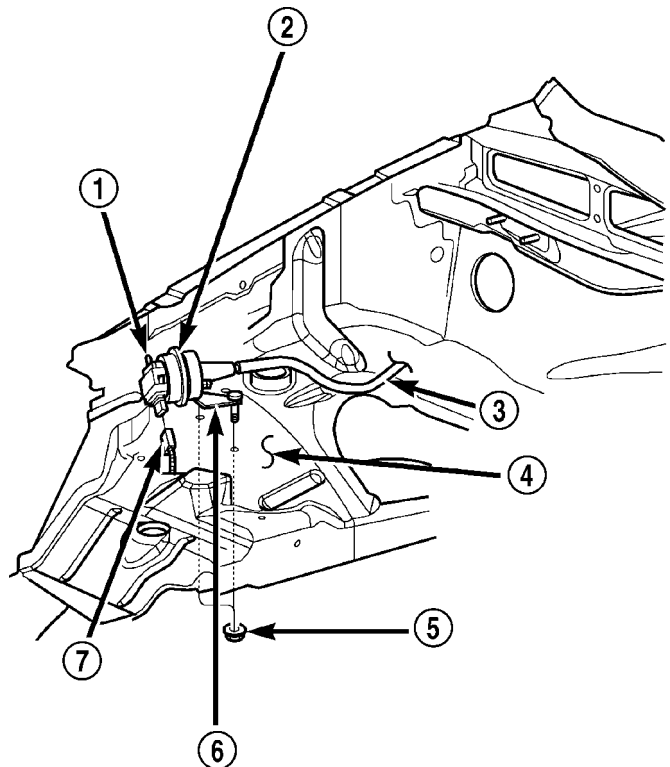
(7) Loosen PDC at battery tray.

(8) Remove 4 battery tray bolts. One of these bolts attaches to speed control bracket flange that supports battery tray. While removing battery tray, disconnect battery temperature sensor electrical connector at sensor.

(9) Disconnect vacuum line at servo vacuum hose fitting (Fig. 5).

(10) Disconnect electrical connector at servo (Fig. 5).

If servo and mounting bracket are being removed as one assembly, remove two mounting nuts (Fig. 5). These are located above right-front tire. Remove inner fender clips and pry inner fender back slightly to gain access to mounting nuts.



80677003

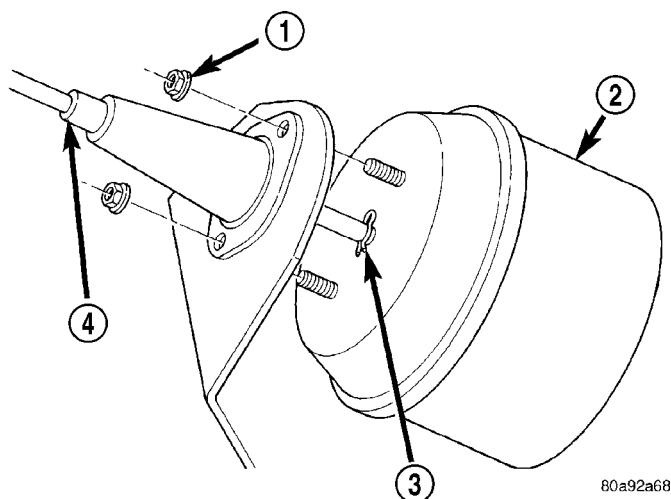
**Fig. 5 Speed Control**

- 1 - VACUUM HOSE FITTING
- 2 - SPEED CONTROL SERVO
- 3 - SERVO CABLE
- 4 - RIGHT INNER FENDER
- 5 - SERVO MOUNTING NUTS (2)
- 6 - SERVO MOUNTING BRACKET
- 7 - ELEC. CONNECTOR

## SERVO (Continued)

(11) If servo is being removed from its mounting bracket, remove 2 mounting nuts holding servo cable sleeve to bracket (Fig. 6).

(12) Pull speed control cable sleeve and servo away from servo mounting bracket to expose cable retaining clip (Fig. 6) and remove clip. Note: The servo mounting bracket displayed in (Fig. 6) is a typical bracket and may/may not be applicable to this model vehicle.



**Fig. 6 Servo Cable Clip Remove/Install—Typical**

- 1 - SERVO MOUNTING NUTS (2)
- 2 - SERVO
- 3 - CABLE RETAINING CLIP
- 4 - SERVO CABLE AND SLEEVE

(13) Remove servo from mounting bracket or, remove servo and mounting bracket as one assembly.

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Position servo to mounting bracket.
- (2) Align hole in cable connector with hole in servo pin. Install cable-to-servo retaining clip.
- (3) Insert servo mounting studs through holes in servo mounting bracket.
- (4) Install servo cable mounting nuts (Fig. 6) and tighten to 8.5 N·m (75 in. lbs.) torque. If servo and bracket is being installed as one assembly, install 2 mounting nuts (Fig. 5) and tighten to 28 N·m ±6 N·m (250 in. lbs. ±50 in. lbs.) torque.
- (5) Connect vacuum line at servo.
- (6) Connect electrical connector at servo.
- (7) Connect servo cable to throttle body. Refer to Servo Cable Removal/Installation.
- (8) Install battery tray and battery temperature sensor.
- (9) Connect wiring to battery tray.
- (10) Install battery to battery tray.
- (11) Connect positive battery cable to Power Distribution Center (PDC).
- (12) Connect positive battery cable to battery.

(13) Connect negative battery cable to battery.

(14) Before starting engine, operate accelerator pedal to check for any binding.

## SWITCH

## DESCRIPTION

There are two separate switch pods that operate the speed control system. The steering-wheel-mounted switches use multiplexed circuits to provide inputs to the PCM for ON, OFF, RESUME, ACCELERATE, SET, DECEL and CANCEL modes. Refer to the owner's manual for more information on speed control switch functions and setting procedures.

The individual switches cannot be repaired. If one switch fails, the entire switch module must be replaced.

## OPERATION

When speed control is selected by depressing the ON, OFF switch, the PCM allows a set speed to be stored in its RAM for speed control. To store a set speed, depress the SET switch while the vehicle is moving at a speed between approximately 35 and 85 mph. In order for the speed control to engage, the brakes cannot be applied, nor can the gear selector be indicating the transmission is in Park or Neutral.

The speed control can be disengaged manually by:

- Stepping on the brake pedal
- Depressing the OFF switch
- Depressing the CANCEL switch.

The speed control can be disengaged also by any of the following conditions:

- An indication of Park or Neutral
- The VSS signal increases at a rate of 10 mph per second (indicates that the co-efficient of friction between the road surface and tires is extremely low)
- Depressing the clutch pedal.
- Excessive engine rpm (indicates that the transmission may be in a low gear)
- The VSS signal decreases at a rate of 10 mph per second (indicates that the vehicle may have decelerated at an extremely high rate)
- If the actual speed is not within 20 mph of the set speed

The previous disengagement conditions are programmed for added safety.

Once the speed control has been disengaged, depressing the ACCEL switch restores the vehicle to the target speed that was stored in the PCM's RAM.

**NOTE: Depressing the OFF switch will erase the set speed stored in the PCM's RAM.**

If, while the speed control is engaged, the driver wishes to increase vehicle speed, the PCM is pro-



## SWITCH (Continued)

grammed for an acceleration feature. With the ACCEL switch held closed, the vehicle accelerates slowly to the desired speed. The new target speed is stored in the PCM's RAM when the ACCEL switch is released. The PCM also has a "tap-up" feature in which vehicle speed increases at a rate of approximately 2 mph for each momentary switch activation of the ACCEL switch.

The PCM also provides a means to decelerate without disengaging speed control. To decelerate from an existing recorded target speed, depress and hold the COAST switch until the desired speed is reached. Then release the switch. The ON, OFF switch operates two components: the PCM's ON, OFF input, and the battery voltage to the brake switch, which powers the speed control servo.

## Multiplexing

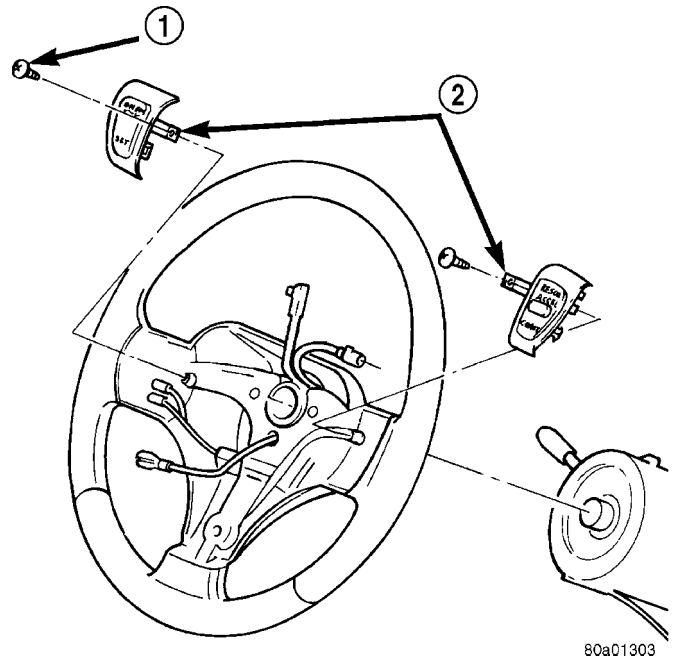
The PCM sends out 5 volts through a fixed resistor and monitors the voltage change between the fixed resistor and the switches. If none of the switches are depressed, the PCM will measure 5 volts at the sensor point (open circuit). If a switch with no resistor is closed, the PCM will measure 0 volts (grounded circuit). Now, if a resistor is added to a switch, then the PCM will measure some voltage proportional to the size of the resistor. By adding a different resistor to each switch, the PCM will see a different voltage depending on which switch is pushed.

Another resistor has been added to the 'at rest circuit' causing the PCM to never see 5 volts. This was done for diagnostic purposes. If the switch circuit should open (bad connection), then the PCM will see the 5 volts and know the circuit is bad. The PCM will then set an open circuit fault.

## REMOVAL

**WARNING: BEFORE BEGINNING ANY AIRBAG SYSTEM COMPONENT REMOVAL OR INSTALLATION, REMOVE AND ISOLATE THE NEGATIVE (-) CABLE FROM THE BATTERY. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE FURTHER SYSTEM SERVICE. FAILURE TO DO THIS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE INJURY.**

- (1) Disconnect and isolate negative battery cable.
- (2) Remove airbag module. Refer to Group 8M, Passive Restraint Systems.
- (3) Remove electrical connector at switch.
- (4) Remove switch-to-steering wheel mounting screw (Fig. 7).
- (5) Remove switch.



**Fig. 7 Speed Control Switches**

- 1 - MOUNTING SCREW
- 2 - SPEED CONTROL SWITCHES

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Install switch and mounting screw.
- (2) Tighten screw to 1.5 N·m (15 in. lbs.) torque.
- (3) Install electrical connector to switch.
- (4) Install airbag module. Refer to Group 8M, Passive Restraint Systems.
- (5) Connect negative battery cable.

## VACUUM RESERVOIR

## DESCRIPTION

The vacuum reservoir is a plastic storage tank connected to an engine vacuum source by vacuum lines.

## OPERATION

The vacuum reservoir is used to supply the vacuum needed to maintain proper speed control operation when engine vacuum drops, such as in climbing a grade while driving. A one-way check valve is used in the vacuum line between the reservoir and the vacuum source. This check valve is used to trap engine vacuum in the reservoir. On certain vehicle applications, this reservoir is shared with the heating/air-conditioning system. The vacuum reservoir cannot be repaired and must be replaced if faulty.



## VACUUM RESERVOIR (Continued)

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - VACUUM RESERVOIR

(1) Disconnect vacuum hose at speed control servo and install a vacuum gauge into the disconnected hose.

(2) Start engine and observe gauge at idle. Vacuum gauge should read at least ten inches of mercury.

(3) If vacuum is less than ten inches of mercury, determine source of leak. Check vacuum line to engine for leaks. Also check actual engine intake manifold vacuum. If manifold vacuum does not meet this requirement, check for poor engine performance and repair as necessary.

(4) If vacuum line to engine is not leaking, check for leak at vacuum reservoir. To locate and gain access to reservoir, refer to Vacuum Reservoir Removal/Installation in this group. Disconnect vacuum line at reservoir and connect a hand-operated vacuum pump to reservoir fitting. Apply vacuum. Reservoir vacuum should not bleed off. If vacuum is being lost, replace reservoir.

(5) Verify operation of one-way check valve and check it for leaks.

(a) Locate one-way check valve. The valve is located in vacuum line between vacuum reservoir and engine vacuum source. Disconnect vacuum hoses (lines) at each end of valve.

(b) Connect a hand-operated vacuum pump to reservoir end of check valve. Apply vacuum. Vacuum should not bleed off. If vacuum is being lost, replace one-way check valve.

(c) Connect a hand-operated vacuum pump to vacuum source end of check valve. Apply vacuum. Vacuum should flow through valve. If vacuum is not flowing, replace one-way check valve. Seal the fitting at opposite end of valve with a finger and apply vacuum. If vacuum will not hold, diaphragm within check valve has ruptured. Replace valve.

## REMOVAL

The vacuum reservoir is located in the right/front corner of the vehicle behind the front bumper fascia (Fig. 8).

(1) Remove front bumper and grill assembly.

(2) Remove 1 support bolt near front of reservoir (Fig. 8).

(3) Remove 2 reservoir mounting bolts.

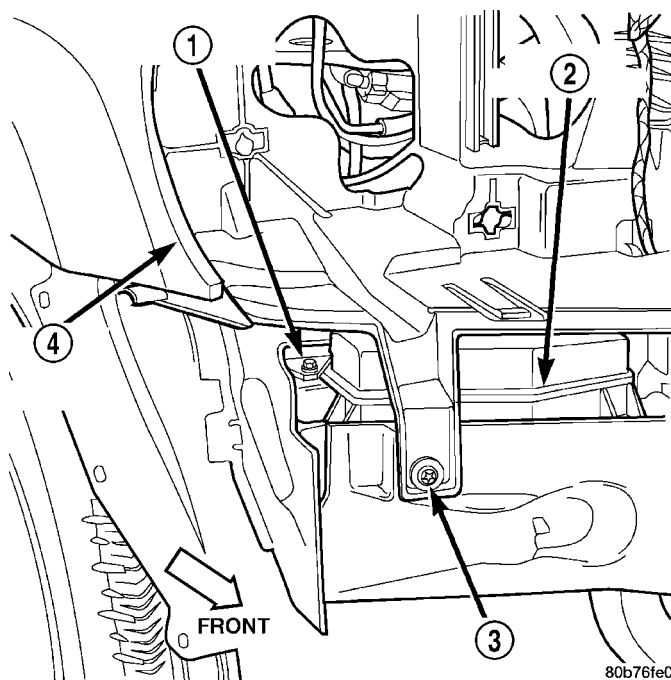
(4) Remove reservoir from vehicle to gain access to vacuum hose (Fig. 9). Disconnect vacuum hose from reservoir fitting at rear of reservoir.

## INSTALLATION

The vacuum reservoir is located in the right/front corner of the vehicle behind the front bumper fascia (Fig. 8).

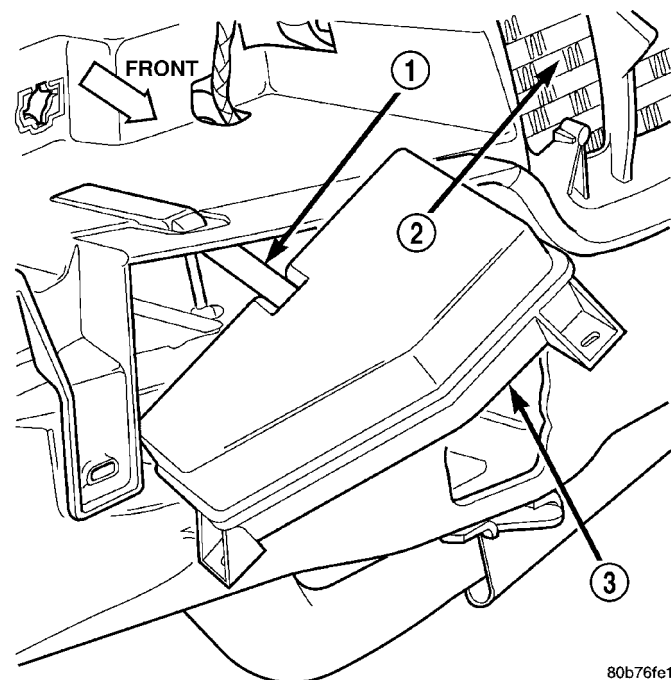
(1) Connect vacuum hose to reservoir.

(2) Install reservoir and tighten 2 bolts to 3 N·m (25 in. lbs.) torque.



**Fig. 8 Vacuum Reservoir Location**

- 1 - RADIATOR FAN RELAY
- 2 - VACUUM RESERVOIR
- 3 - BOLT
- 4 - RIGHT FRONT FENDER



**Fig. 9 Vacuum Reservoir Removal/Installation**

- 1 - VACUUM HOSE
- 2 - RADIATOR
- 3 - VACUUM RESERVOIR

(3) Install front bumper and grill assembly.

# VEHICLE THEFT SECURITY

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page	page
<b>VEHICLE THEFT SECURITY</b>		
DESCRIPTION		
DESCRIPTION - VEHICLE THEFT SECURITY SYSTEM . . . . .	1	
DESCRIPTION - SENTRY KEY IMMOBILIZER SYSTEM . . . . .	2	
OPERATION		
OPERATION - VEHICLE THEFT SECURITY SYSTEM . . . . .	2	
OPERATION - SENTRY KEY IMMOBILIZER SYSTEM . . . . .	4	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING		
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - VEHICLE THEFT SECURITY SYSTEM . . . . .	4	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - SENTRY KEY IMMOBILIZER SYSTEM . . . . .	4	
STANDARD PROCEDURE		
STANDARD PROCEDURE - SKIS INITIALIZATION . . . . .	6	
STANDARD PROCEDURE - SENTRY KEY TRANSPONDER PROGRAMMING . . . . .	6	
<b>DOOR CYLINDER LOCK SWITCH</b>		
DESCRIPTION . . . . .	7	
OPERATION . . . . .	8	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - DOOR CYLINDER LOCK SWITCH . . . . .	8	
REMOVAL . . . . .	8	
INSTALLATION . . . . .	8	
<b>HOOD AJAR SWITCH</b>		
DESCRIPTION . . . . .	9	
OPERATION . . . . .	9	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - HOOD AJAR SWITCH . . . . .	9	
REMOVAL		
REMOVAL - HOOD AJAR SWITCH BRACKET . . . . .	10	
REMOVAL - HOOD AJAR SWITCH STRIKER . . . . .	10	
INSTALLATION		
INSTALLATION - HOOD AJAR SWITCH BRACKET . . . . .	10	
INSTALLATION - HOOD AJAR SWITCH STRIKER . . . . .	10	
<b>INTRUSION TRANSCIEVER MODULE</b>		
DESCRIPTION . . . . .	11	
OPERATION . . . . .	11	
REMOVAL . . . . .	12	
INSTALLATION . . . . .	12	
<b>SIREN</b>		
DESCRIPTION . . . . .	13	
OPERATION . . . . .	13	
REMOVAL . . . . .	13	
INSTALLATION . . . . .	14	
<b>SKIS INDICATOR LAMP</b>		
DESCRIPTION . . . . .	14	
OPERATION . . . . .	14	
<b>TRANSPONDER KEY</b>		
DESCRIPTION . . . . .	15	
OPERATION . . . . .	15	
<b>VTSS INDICATOR</b>		
DESCRIPTION . . . . .	15	
OPERATION . . . . .	15	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - VTSS INDICATOR . . . . .	16	

## VEHICLE THEFT SECURITY

### DESCRIPTION

#### DESCRIPTION - VEHICLE THEFT SECURITY SYSTEM

The Vehicle Theft Security System (VTSS) is designed to provide perimeter protection against unauthorized vehicle use or tampering by monitoring the vehicle doors, the liftgate, the liftgate flip-up glass, the ignition system and, only on vehicles built for sale in certain international markets where it is required equipment, the hood. If unauthorized vehicle use or

tampering is detected, the system responds by pulsing the horn and flashing the exterior lamps. In many markets the VTSS also includes the Sentry Key Immobilizer System (SKIS), which provides passive vehicle protection by preventing the engine from operating unless a valid electronically encoded key is detected in the ignition lock cylinder. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/VEHICLE THEFT SECURITY - DESCRIPTION - SENTRY KEY IMMOBILIZER SYSTEM).

The VTSS includes the following major components, which are described in further detail elsewhere in this service manual:

- Body Control Module (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/ELECTRONIC CONTROL MODULES/BODY CONTROL/CENTRAL TIMER MODULE - DESCRIPTION).

## VEHICLE THEFT SECURITY (Continued)

- Combination Flasher (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/LAMPS/LIGHTING - EXTERIOR/COMBINATION FLASHER - DESCRIPTION).

- Door Ajar Switch (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/LAMPS/LIGHTING - INTERIOR/DOOR AJAR SWITCH - DESCRIPTION - DOOR AJAR SWITCH).

- Driver Cylinder Lock Switch (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/POWER LOCKS/DOOR CYLINDER LOCK/UNLOCK SWITCH - DESCRIPTION).

- Hood Ajar Switch (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/VEHICLE THEFT SECURITY/HOOD AJAR SWITCH - DESCRIPTION).

- Horn Relay (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/HORN/HORN RELAY - DESCRIPTION).

- Liftgate Ajar Switch (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/LAMPS/LIGHTING - INTERIOR/DOOR AJAR SWITCH - DESCRIPTION - LIFTGATE AJAR SWITCH).

- Liftgate Flip-Up Glass Ajar Switch (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/LAMPS/LIGHTING - INTERIOR/DOOR AJAR SWITCH - DESCRIPTION - LIFTGATE FLIP-UP GLASS AJAR SWITCH).

- Low Beam Headlamp Relay

- VTSS Indicator (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/VEHICLE THEFT SECURITY/VTSS INDICATOR - DESCRIPTION).

Certain functions and features of the VTSS rely upon resources shared with or controlled by other modules in the vehicle over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network. The other modules that may affect VTSS operation are:

- Driver Door Module (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/ELECTRONIC CONTROL MODULES/DOOR MODULE - DESCRIPTION).

- Passenger Door Module (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/ELECTRONIC CONTROL MODULES/DOOR MODULE - DESCRIPTION).

## DESCRIPTION - SENTRY KEY IMMOBILIZER SYSTEM

Vehicles equipped with the Sentry Key Immobilizer System (SKIS) can be identified by the presence of an amber SKIS indicator in the instrument cluster that will illuminate for about three seconds each time the ignition switch is turned to the On position, or by a gray molded rubber cap on the head of the ignition key. Models not equipped with SKIS still have a SKIS indicator in the cluster, but it will not illuminate. Also, models not equipped with the SKIS have a black molded rubber cap on the head of the ignition key.

The SKIS includes the following major components, which are described in further detail elsewhere in this service manual:

- Powertrain Control Module
- Sentry Key Immobilizer Module

- Sentry Key Transponder
- SKIS Indicator

Except for the Sentry Key transponders, which rely upon Radio Frequency (RF) communication, hard wired circuitry connects the SKIS components to the electrical system of the vehicle. Refer to the appropriate wiring information.

## OPERATION

### OPERATION - VEHICLE THEFT SECURITY SYSTEM

The Vehicle Theft Security System (VTSS) is divided into two basic subsystems: Vehicle Theft Alarm (VTA) and Sentry Key Immobilizer System (SKIS). The following are paragraphs that briefly describe the operation of each of those two subsystems.

A Body Control Module (BCM) is used to control and integrate many of the functions and features included in the Vehicle Theft Security System (VTSS). In the VTSS, the BCM receives inputs indicating the status of the door ajar switches, the driver cylinder lock switch, the ignition switch, the liftgate ajar switches, the liftgate flip-up glass ajar switch, the power lock switches and, in vehicles so equipped, the hood ajar switch. The programming in the BCM allows it to process the information from all of these inputs and send control outputs to energize or de-energize the combination flasher, the horn relay (except vehicles with the premium version of the VTA), and the VTSS indicator. In addition, in vehicles built for certain markets where premium versions of the VTA is required, the BCM also exchanges messages with the Intrusion Transceiver Module (ITM) over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network to provide the features found in this version of the VTA. The control of these inputs and outputs are what constitute all of the features of the VTSS. Following is information on the operation of each of the VTSS features.

#### ENABLING

The BCM must have the VTSS function enabled in order for the VTSS to perform as designed. The logic in the BCM keeps its VTSS function dormant until it is enabled using a DRBIII® scan tool. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

#### PRE-ARMING

The VTA has a pre-arming sequence. Pre-arming occurs when a door, the tailgate, or the flip-up glass is open when the vehicle is locked using a power lock switch, or when the "Lock" button on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter is depressed. The

## VEHICLE THEFT SECURITY (Continued)

powerlock switch will not initiate the pre-arming sequence if the key is in the ignition switch. When the VTA is pre-armed, the arming sequence is delayed until all of the doors, the tailgate and the flip-up glass are closed.

**ARMING**

Passive arming of the VTSS occurs when the vehicle is exited with the key removed from the ignition switch, the headlamps are turned off, and the doors are locked while they are open using the power lock switch. The power lock switch will not function if the key is in the ignition switch or the headlamps are turned on with the driver side front door open. The VTSS will not arm if the driver side front door is locked using the key in the lock cylinder or using the mechanical lock button. Active arming of the VTSS occurs when the "Lock" button on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter is depressed to lock the vehicle, even if the doors and/or the liftgate are open when the RKE transmitter Lock button is depressed. However, the VTSS arming will not be complete until all of the doors, the liftgate and the liftgate flip-up glass are closed. On vehicles equipped with the hood ajar switch, VTSS arming will complete if the hood is open, but the underhood area will not be protected unless the hood is closed when the VTSS is armed.

Following successful passive or active VTSS arming, the VTSS indicator on the top of the instrument panel will flash rapidly for about sixteen seconds after the illuminated entry system times out. This indicates that VTSS arming is in progress. Once the sixteen second arming function is successfully completed, the indicator will flash at a slower rate, indicating that the VTSS is armed.

**DISARMING**

Passive disarming of the VTSS occurs when the vehicle is unlocked using the key to unlock the driver side front door. Active disarming of the VTSS occurs when the vehicle is unlocked by depressing the "Unlock" button of the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter. Once the alarm has been activated, either disarming method will also deactivate the alarm. Depressing the "Panic" button on the RKE transmitter will also disarm the VTSS, but the horn will continue to pulse and the exterior lamps will continue to flash for about three minutes as part of the Panic feature function. The Panic feature is overridden if the "Panic" button is depressed a second time, or if a vehicle speed of about 24 kilometers-per-hour (15 miles-per-hour) is attained.

**POWER-UP MODE**

When the armed VTSS senses that the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, it enters its power-up mode. In the power-up mode the alarm system

remains armed following a battery failure or disconnect. If the VTSS was armed prior to a battery disconnect or failure, the technician or vehicle operator will have to actively or passively disarm the alarm system after the battery is reconnected. The power-up mode will also apply if the battery goes dead while the system is armed, and battery jump-starting is then attempted. The VTSS will be armed until it is actively or passively disarmed. If the VTSS is in the disarmed mode prior to a battery disconnect or failure, it will remain disarmed after the battery is reconnected or replaced, or if jump-starting is attempted.

**ALARM**

The VTA alarm output varies by the version of the VTA with which the vehicle is equipped. In all cases, the alarm provides both visual and audible outputs; however, the time intervals of these outputs vary by the requirements of the market for which the vehicle is manufactured. In all cases, the visual output will be a flashing of the exterior lamps. For vehicles equipped with North American or the base version of the VTA, the audible output will be the pulsing of the horn. For vehicles with the premium version of the VTA, the audible output will be the cycling of the siren. The inputs that will trigger the alarm include the door ajar switch, the flip-up glass ajar switch, and in vehicles built for certain markets where they are required, the hood ajar switch and the Intrusion Transceiver Module (ITM).

**TAMPER ALERT**

The VTSS tamper alert feature will sound the horn (or the alarm siren for the premium version) three times upon VTA disarming, if the alarm was triggered and has since timed-out (about eighteen minutes). This feature alerts the vehicle operator that the VTA alarm was activated while the vehicle was unattended.

**INTRUSION ALARM**

The Intrusion Alarm is an exclusive feature of the premium version of the VTA, which is only available in certain markets, where it is required. When the VTA is armed, a motion sensor in the Intrusion Transceiver Module (ITM) monitors the interior of the vehicle for movement. If motion is detected, the ITM sends a message to the BCM over the PCI bus to invoke the visual alarm feature, and sends a message to the alarm siren over a dedicated serial bus to invoke the audible alarm feature. The motion detection feature of the ITM can be disabled by depressing the "Lock" button on the RKE transmitter three times or cycling the key in the driver door cylinder from the center to lock position within fifteen seconds during VTA arming, while the security indicator is



## VEHICLE THEFT SECURITY (Continued)

still flashing rapidly. The VTA provides a single short siren “chirp” as an audible conformation that the motion detect disable request has been received. The ITM must be electronically enabled in order for the intrusion alarm to perform as designed. The intrusion alarm function of the ITM is enabled on vehicles equipped with this option at the factory, but a service replacement ITM must be configured and enabled by the dealer using the DRBIII® scan tool. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

**OPERATION - SENTRY KEY IMMOBILIZER SYSTEM**

The Sentry Key Immobilizer System (SKIS) is designed to provide passive protection against unauthorized vehicle use by disabling the engine after about two seconds of running, whenever any method other than a valid Sentry Key is used to start the vehicle. The SKIS is considered a passive protection system because it is always active when the ignition system is energized and does not require any customer intervention. The SKIS uses Radio Frequency (RF) communication to obtain confirmation that the key in the ignition switch is a valid key for operating the vehicle. The microprocessor-based SKIS hardware and software also uses messages to communicate with other modules in the vehicle over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/ELECTRONIC CONTROL MODULES/COMMUNICATION - OPERATION).

Pre-programmed Sentry Key transponders are provided with the vehicle from the factory. Each Sentry Key Immobilizer Module (SKIM) will recognize a maximum of eight Sentry Keys. If the customer would like additional keys other than those provided with the vehicle, they may be purchased from any authorized dealer. These additional keys must be programmed to the SKIM in the vehicle in order for the system to recognize them as valid keys. This can be done by the dealer using a DRBIII® scan tool or, if Customer Learn programming is an available SKIS feature in the market where the vehicle was purchased, the customer can program the additional keys, as long as at least two valid Sentry Keys are already available. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/VEHICLE THEFT SECURITY - STANDARD PROCEDURE - TRANSPONDER PROGRAMMING).

The SKIS performs a self-test each time the ignition switch is turned to the On position, and will store fault information in the form of Diagnostic Trouble Codes (DTC's) if a system malfunction is detected. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

**DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING****DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - VEHICLE THEFT SECURITY SYSTEM**

The VTSS-related hard wired inputs to and outputs from the Body Control Module (BCM), the Driver Door Module (DDM), or the Passenger Door Module (PDM) may be diagnosed and tested using conventional diagnostic tools and procedures. Refer to the appropriate wiring information.

However, conventional diagnostic methods may not prove conclusive in the diagnosis of the BCM, the DDM, the PDM, or the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network. In order to obtain conclusive testing of the VTSS, the BCM, the DDM, the PDM, and the PCI data bus network must also be checked. The most reliable, efficient, and accurate means to diagnose the VTSS requires the use of a DRBIII® scan tool and the appropriate diagnostic information.

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

**DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - SENTRY KEY IMMOBILIZER SYSTEM**

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**



## VEHICLE THEFT SECURITY (Continued)

SENTRY KEY IMMOBILIZER SYSTEM DIAGNOSIS		
CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
SKIS INDICATOR FAILS TO LIGHT DURING BULB TEST	1. Bulb faulty.  2. Fuse faulty.  3. Ground path faulty.  4. Battery feed faulty.  5. Ignition feed faulty.	1. Perform the instrument cluster actuator test. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - ACTUATOR TEST). Replace the faulty bulb, if required.  2. Check the SKIM fused B(+) fuse and the fused ignition switch output (st-run) fuse in the JB. Replace fuses, if required.  3. Check for continuity to ground at the connector for the SKIM. Repair wiring, if required.  4. Check for battery current at the connector for the SKIM. Repair wiring, if required.  5. Check for battery current at the connector for the SKIM with the ignition switch in the On position. Repair wiring, if required.
SKIS INDICATOR FLASHES FOLLOWING BULB TEST	1. Invalid key in ignition switch lock cylinder.  2. Key-related fault.	1. Replace the key with a known valid key.  2. Use a DRBIII® scan tool and the appropriate diagnostic information for further diagnosis.
SKIS INDICATOR LIGHTS SOLID FOLLOWING BULB TEST	1. SKIS system malfunction/ fault detected.  2. SKIS system inoperative.	1. Use a DRBIII® scan tool and the appropriate diagnostic information for further diagnosis.  2. Use a DRBIII® scan tool and the appropriate diagnostic information for further diagnosis.

**SKIS INDICATOR FAILS TO LIGHT DURING BULB TEST**

If the Sentry Key Immobilizer System (SKIS) indicator in the instrument cluster fails to illuminate for about three seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the On position (bulb test), perform the instrument cluster actuator test. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - ACTUATOR TEST). If the bulb fails to operate during the actuator test, replace the bulb. If the SKIS indicator still fails to light during the bulb test, a wiring problem resulting in the loss of battery current or ground to the Sentry Key Immobilizer Module (SKIM) should be suspected, and the following procedure should be used for diagnosis. Refer to the appropriate wiring information.

**NOTE:** The following tests may not prove conclusive in the diagnosis of this system. The most reliable, efficient, and accurate means to diagnose the Sentry Key Immobilizer System requires the use of a DRBIII® scan tool. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

(1) Check the fused B(+) fuse in the Junction Block (JB). If OK, go to Step 2. If not OK, repair the shorted circuit or component and replace the faulty fuse.

(2) Check for battery voltage at the fused B(+) fuse in the JB. If OK, go to Step 3. If not OK, repair the open B(+) circuit between the JB fuse and the Power Distribution Center (PDC).

(3) Check the fused ignition switch output (st-run) fuse in the JB. If OK, go to Step 4. If not OK, repair the shorted circuit or component and replace the faulty fuse.

(4) Turn the ignition switch to the On position. Check for battery voltage at the fused ignition switch output (st-run) fuse in the JB. If OK, go to Step 5. If not OK, repair the open fused ignition switch output (st-run) circuit between the JB fuse and the ignition switch as required.

(5) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Disconnect the instrument panel wire harness connector for the Sentry Key Immobilizer Module (SKIM) from the SKIM connector. Check for continuity between the ground circuit of the instrument panel wire harness connector for the SKIM and a

## VEHICLE THEFT SECURITY (Continued)

good ground. There should be continuity. If OK, go to Step 6. If not OK, repair the open ground circuit.

(6) Reconnect the battery negative cable. Check for battery voltage at the fused B(+) circuit cavity of the instrument panel wire harness connector for the SKIM. If OK, go to Step 7. If not OK, repair the open fused B(+) circuit between the SKIM and the JB fuse.

(7) Turn the ignition switch to the On position. Check for battery voltage at the fused ignition switch output (st-run) circuit of the instrument panel wire harness connector for the SKIM. If OK, refer to the appropriate diagnostic information and use a DRBIII® scan tool to complete the diagnosis of the SKIS. If not OK, repair the open fused ignition switch output (st-run) circuit between the SKIM and the JB fuse.

## SKIS INDICATOR FLASHES OR LIGHTS SOLID FOLLOWING BULB TEST

A SKIS indicator that flashes following a successful bulb test indicates that an invalid key has been detected, or that a key-related fault has been set. A SKIS indicator that lights solid following a successful bulb test indicates that the SKIM has detected a system malfunction or that the SKIS is inoperative. In either case, fault information will be stored in the SKIM memory. For retrieval of this fault information and further diagnosis of the SKIS, the PCI data bus, the SKIM message outputs to the instrument cluster, the SKIM message outputs to the Body Control Module (BCM), or the message inputs and outputs between the SKIM and the Powertrain Control Module (PCM), a DRBIII® scan tool and the appropriate diagnostic information are required. Following are preliminary troubleshooting guidelines to be followed during diagnosis using a DRBIII® scan tool:

(1) Using the DRBIII® scan tool, read and record the faults as they exist in the SKIM when you first begin your diagnosis of the vehicle. It is important to document these faults because the SKIM does not differentiate between historical and active faults. If this problem turns out to be an intermittent condition, this information may become invaluable to your diagnosis.

(2) Using the DRBIII® scan tool, erase all of the faults from the SKIM.

(3) Cycle the ignition switch to the Off position, then back to the On position.

(4) Using the DRBIII® scan tool, read any faults that are now present in the SKIM. These are the active faults.

(5) Using this active fault information, refer to the proper procedure in the appropriate diagnostic information for the additional specific diagnostic steps.

## STANDARD PROCEDURE

STANDARD PROCEDURE - SKIS  
INITIALIZATION

The Sentry Key Immobilizer System (SKIS) must be initialized following a Sentry Key Immobilizer Module (SKIM) replacement. SKIS initialization requires the use of a DRBIII® scan tool. Initialization will also require that you have access to the unique four-digit PIN code that was assigned to the original SKIM. The PIN code **must** be used to enter the Secured Access Mode in the SKIM. This PIN number may be obtained from the vehicle owner, from the original vehicle invoice, or from the DaimlerChrysler Customer Center. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/ELECTRONIC CONTROL MODULES - STANDARD PROCEDURE - PCM/SKIM PROGRAMMING).

**NOTE:** If a Powertrain Control Module (PCM) is replaced on a vehicle equipped with the Sentry Key Immobilizer System (SKIS), the unique Secret Key data must be transferred from the Sentry Key Immobilizer Module (SKIM) to the new PCM using the PCM replacement procedure. This procedure also requires the use of a DRBIII® scan tool and the unique four-digit PIN code to enter the Secured Access Mode in the SKIM. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information for the proper PCM replacement procedures.

STANDARD PROCEDURE - SENTRY KEY  
TRANSPONDER PROGRAMMING

All Sentry Keys included with the vehicle are pre-programmed to work with the Sentry Key Immobilizer System (SKIS) when it is shipped from the factory. The Sentry Key Immobilizer Module (SKIM) can be programmed to recognize up to a total of eight Sentry Keys. When programming a blank Sentry Key transponder, the key must first be cut to match the ignition switch lock cylinder for which it will be used. Once the additional key has been cut, the SKIM must be programmed to recognize it as a valid key. There are two possible methods to program the SKIM to recognize a new or additional valid key, the Secured Access Method and the Customer Learn Method. Following are the details of these two programming methods.

## SECURED ACCESS METHOD

The Secured Access method applies to all vehicles. This method requires the use of a DRBIII® scan tool. This method will also require that you have access to the unique four-digit PIN code that was assigned to the original SKIM. The PIN code **must** be used to enter the Secured Access Mode in the SKIM. This

## VEHICLE THEFT SECURITY (Continued)

PIN number may be obtained from the vehicle owner, from the original vehicle invoice, or from the DaimlerChrysler Customer Center. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information for the proper Secured Access method programming procedures.

## CUSTOMER LEARN METHOD

The Customer Learn feature is only available on domestic vehicles, or those vehicles which have a U.S. country code designator. This programming method also requires access to at least two valid Sentry Keys. If two valid Sentry Keys are not available, or if the vehicle does not have a U.S. country code designator, the Secured Access Method **must** be used to program new or additional valid keys to the SKIM. The Customer Learn programming method procedures are as follows:

(1) Obtain the blank Sentry Key(s) that are to be programmed as valid keys for the vehicle. Cut the blank key(s) to match the ignition switch lock cylinder mechanical key codes.

(2) Insert one of the two valid Sentry Keys into the ignition switch and turn the ignition switch to the On position.

(3) After the ignition switch has been in the On position for longer than three seconds, but no more than fifteen seconds, cycle the ignition switch back to the Off position. Replace the first valid Sentry Key in the ignition switch lock cylinder with the second valid Sentry Key and turn the ignition switch back to the On position. The second valid Sentry Key must be inserted in the lock cylinder within fifteen seconds of removing the first valid key.

(4) About ten seconds after the completion of Step 3, the SKIS indicator in the instrument cluster will start to flash and a single audible chime tone will sound to indicate that the system has entered the Customer Learn programming mode.

(5) Within sixty seconds of entering the Customer Learn programming mode, turn the ignition switch to the Off position, replace the valid Sentry Key with a blank Sentry Key transponder, and turn the ignition switch back to the On position.

(6) About ten seconds after the completion of Step 5, a single audible chime tone will sound and the SKIS indicator will stop flashing, stay on solid for three seconds, then turn off to indicate that the blank Sentry Key has been successfully programmed. The SKIS will immediately exit the Customer Learn programming mode and the vehicle may now be started using the newly programmed valid Sentry Key.

Each of these steps must be repeated and completed in their entirety for each additional Sentry Key that is to be programmed. If the above steps are not completed in the given sequence, or within the

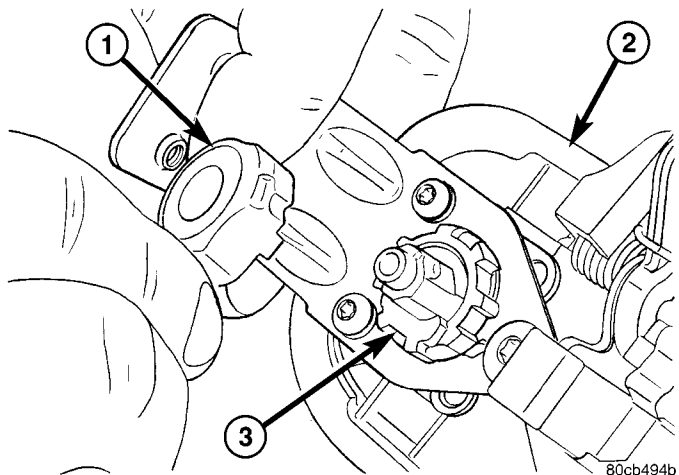
allotted time, the SKIS will exit the Customer Learn programming mode and the programming will be unsuccessful. The SKIS will also automatically exit the Customer Learn programming mode if it sees a non-blank Sentry Key transponder when it should see a blank, if it has already programmed eight (8) valid Sentry Keys, or if the ignition switch is turned to the Off position for more than about fifty seconds.

**NOTE:** If an attempt is made to start the vehicle while in the Customer Learn mode (SKIS indicator flashing), the SKIS will respond as though the vehicle were being started with an invalid key. In other words, the engine will stall after about two seconds of operation. No faults will be set.

**NOTE:** Once a Sentry Key has been programmed as a valid key to a vehicle, it cannot be programmed as a valid key for use on any other vehicle.

## DOOR CYLINDER LOCK SWITCH

## DESCRIPTION



**Fig. 1 DOOR CYLINDER LOCK SWITCH**

- 1 - SWITCH
- 2 - OUTSIDE DOOR HANDLE
- 3 - DOOR LOCK CYLINDER

Vehicles manufactured for North American markets that are equipped with the optional Vehicle Theft Security System (VTSS) have a door cylinder lock switch secured to the back of the key lock cylinder inside the drivers front door (Fig. 1). The door cylinder lock switch is a resistor multiplexed momentary switch that is hard wired in series between the door lock switch ground and right or left cylinder lock switch mux circuits of the Drivers Door Module

## DOOR CYLINDER LOCK SWITCH (Continued)

(DDM) through the front door wire harness. The door cylinder lock switches are driven by the key lock cylinders and contain two internal resistors. One resistor value is used for the Lock position, and one for the Unlock position.

The door cylinder lock switches cannot be adjusted or repaired and, if faulty or damaged, they must be replaced.

## OPERATION

The door cylinder lock switches are actuated by the key lock cylinder when the key is inserted in the lock cylinder and turned to the lock or unlock positions. The door cylinder lock switch close a circuit between the door lock switch ground circuit and the left or right cylinder lock switch mux circuits through one of two internal resistors for the Driver Door Module (DDM) when either front door key lock cylinder is in the Lock, or Unlock positions. The DDM reads the switch status through an internal pull-up, then uses this information as an input for the Vehicle Theft Security System (VTSS) operation.

The door cylinder lock switches and circuits can be diagnosed using conventional diagnostic tools and methods.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - DOOR CYLINDER LOCK SWITCH

Refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, further details on wire harness routing and retention, as well as pin-out and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

(1) Disconnect the door cylinder lock switch pigtail wire connector from the door wire harness connector.

(2) Using a ohmmeter, check the switch resistance checks between the two terminals in the door cylinder lock switch pigtail wire connector. Actuate the switch by rotating the key in the door lock cylinder to test for the proper resistance values in each of the two switch positions, as shown in the Door Cylinder Lock Switch Test table.

DOOR CYLINDER LOCK SWITCH TEST		
Switch Position		Resistance (±10%)
Left Side	Right Side	
Lock (Clockwise)	Unlock (Counterclockwise)	473 Ohms
Unlock (Counterclockwise)	Lock (Clockwise)	1.994 Kilohms

(3) If a door cylinder lock switch fails either of the resistance tests, replace the faulty switch.

## REMOVAL

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Remove the outside door handle unit from the outer door panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/EXTERIOR HANDLE - REMOVAL).

(3) Remove the retainer clip from the pin on the back of the door lock cylinder (Fig. 2).

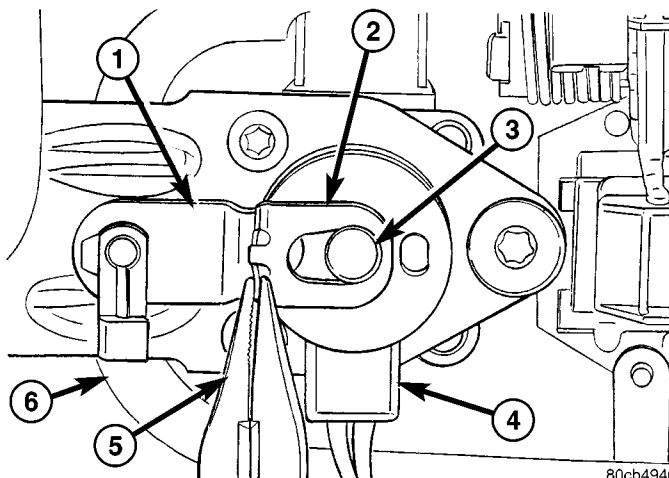


Fig. 2 LOCK CYLINDER LEVER RETAINER RE

- 1 - LEVER
- 2 - RETAINER
- 3 - LOCK CYLINDER
- 4 - SWITCH
- 5 - PLIERS
- 6 - OUTSIDE DOOR HANDLE

(4) Remove the lock lever from the pin on the back of the door lock cylinder.

(5) Remove the door cylinder lock switch from the back of the lock cylinder.

## INSTALLATION

(1) Position the door cylinder lock switch onto the back of the lock cylinder with its pigtail wire harness oriented toward the bottom (Fig. 2).

(2) Position the lock lever onto the pin on the back of the door lock cylinder with the lever oriented toward the rear.

(3) Install the retainer clip onto the pin on the back of the door lock cylinder. Be certain that the center tab of the retainer is engaged in the retention hole on the lock lever.

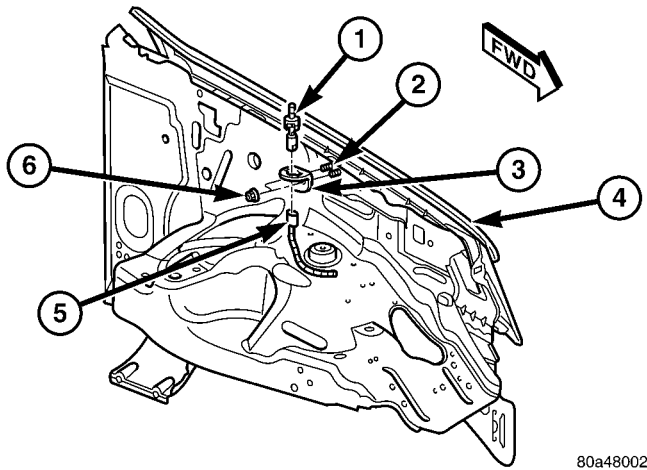
(4) Reinstall the outside door handle unit onto the outer door panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/EXTERIOR HANDLE - INSTALLATION).

(5) Reconnect the battery negative cable.



## HOOD AJAR SWITCH

### DESCRIPTION



80a48002

**Fig. 3 Hood Ajar Switch**

- 1 - SWITCH
- 2 - STUD (2)
- 3 - BRACKET
- 4 - FENDER
- 5 - CONNECTOR
- 6 - NUT (2)

The hood ajar switch is a self-adjusting, normally closed, single pole, double throw momentary switch that is used only on vehicles built for sale in certain international markets where it is required equipment (Fig. 3). The mounting bracket is fastened to the left inner fender. A molded plastic striker with three integral retainers is secured to the underside of the hood panel inner reinforcement to actuate the switch plunger as the hood panel is closed. The switch receives a path to ground through the left inner fender shield in the engine compartment.

The hood ajar switch adjusts itself as the striker pushes the switch body down through the switch when the hood panel is closed after the initial installation. This self-adjustment feature is only functional the first time the hood is closed following installation. If the switch requires adjustment following the initial installation, the switch must be replaced.

### OPERATION

The normally closed hood ajar switch is normally held open when the hood panel is closed and latched. When the hood is opened, the switch plunger extends from the switch body and the switch contacts are closed. The hood ajar switch is connected in series between ground and the hood ajar switch sense input of the Body Control Module (BCM). The BCM uses an internal resistor pull up to monitor the state of the hood ajar switch contacts. The hood ajar switch

can be diagnosed using conventional diagnostic tools and methods.

### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - HOOD AJAR SWITCH

The diagnosis found here addresses an inoperative hood ajar switch. If the problem being diagnosed is related to hood ajar switch accuracy, be certain to confirm that the problem is not an improperly adjusted hood ajar switch. If no hood ajar switch adjustment problem is found, the following procedure will help to locate a short or open in the hood ajar switch circuit. Refer to the appropriate wiring information.

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Disconnect the hood ajar switch. Check for continuity between the harness ground circuit a good ground. There should be continuity. If OK, go to Step 2. If not OK, repair the open ground circuit to ground.

(2) Check for continuity between the two terminals of the hood ajar switch. There should be continuity with the switch plunger extended, and no continuity with the switch plunger depressed. If OK, go to Step 3. If not OK, replace the faulty hood ajar switch.

(3) Disconnect the instrument panel wire harness connector from the Body Control Module (BCM). Check for continuity between the hood ajar switch sense circuit of the hood ajar switch and a good ground. There should be no continuity. If OK, go to Step 4. If not OK, repair the shorted hood ajar switch sense circuit between the hood ajar switch and the BCM.

(4) Check for continuity between the hood ajar switch sense circuit and the instrument panel wire harness connector for the BCM. There should be continuity. If OK, proceed to diagnosis of the Vehicle Theft Security System (VTSS). (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/VEHICLE THEFT SECURITY - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). If not OK, repair the open hood



## HOOD AJAR SWITCH (Continued)

ajar switch sense circuit between the hood ajar switch and the BCM.

## REMOVAL

## REMOVAL - HOOD AJAR SWITCH

- (1) Open the hood.
- (2) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.
- (3) Squeeze the two switch latch tabs together and pull the switch upward (Fig. 3)
- (4) Disconnect the wiring harness connector.
- (5) Remove the hood ajar switch from the mounting bracket.

## REMOVAL - HOOD AJAR SWITCH BRACKET

- (1) Remove the hood ajar switch from the mounting bracket. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/VEHICLE THEFT SECURITY/HOOD AJAR SWITCH - REMOVAL).
- (2) Remove the two nuts that secure the hood ajar switch bracket to the left inner fender (Fig. 3)
- (3) Remove the hood ajar switch bracket from the studs on the left inner fender.

## REMOVAL - HOOD AJAR SWITCH STRIKER

- (1) Open the hood.
- (2) Using a trim stick or another suitable wide flat-blade tool, gently raise the hood ajar switch striker away from the inner hood panel reinforcement, and remove. (Fig. 4).

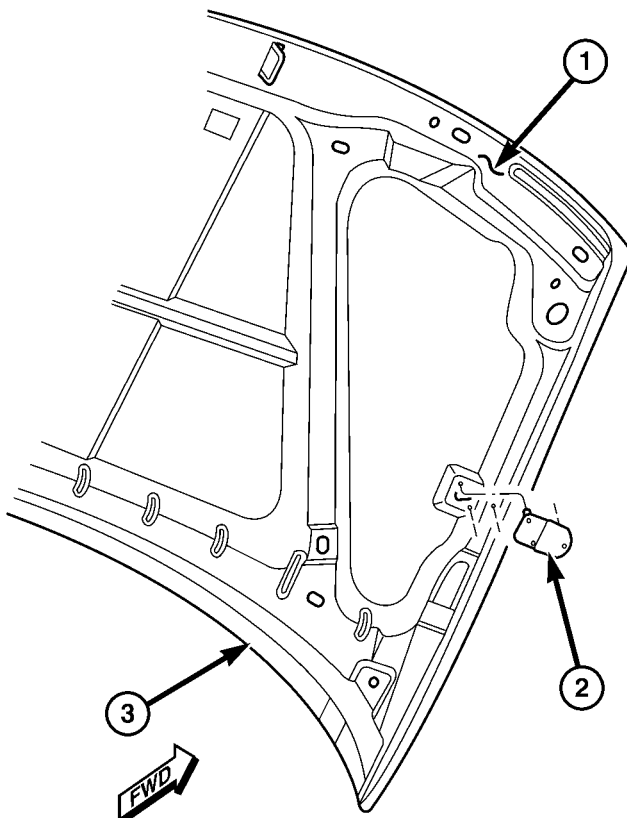
## INSTALLATION

## INSTALLATION - HOOD AJAR SWITCH

- (1) Position the hood ajar switch into the hole in the mounting bracket (Fig. 3)
- (2) Reconnect the wiring harness connector.
- (3) Press the switch downward into the mounting bracket until the latch tabs lock it into place.
- (4) Reconnect the battery negative cable.
- (5) Close and latch the hood.

## INSTALLATION - HOOD AJAR SWITCH BRACKET

- (1) Position the hood ajar switch bracket onto the studs on the left inner fender (Fig. 3)
- (2) Install and tighten the two nuts. Tighten the nuts to 11.8 N·m (105 in. lbs.).



80a4800f

Fig. 4 Hood Ajar Switch Striker

- 1 - REINFORCEMENT
- 2 - STRIKER
- 3 - HOOD

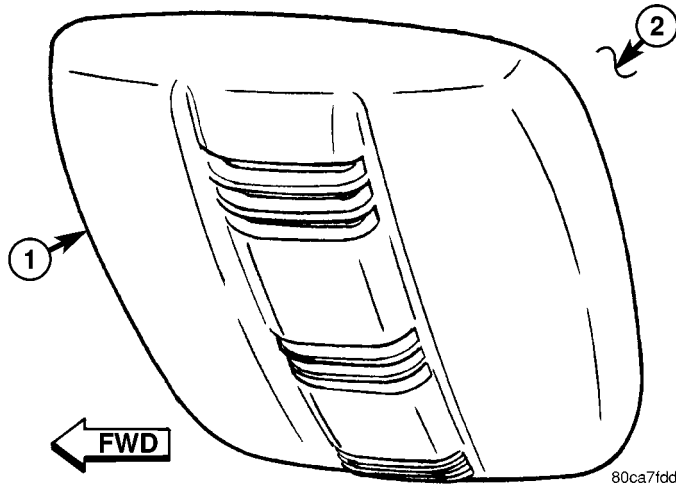
- (3) Reinstall the hood ajar switch into the mounting bracket. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/VEHICLE THEFT SECURITY/HOOD AJAR SWITCH - INSTALLATION).

## INSTALLATION - HOOD AJAR SWITCH STRIKER

- (1) Align the three integral retainers of the hood ajar switch striker with their mounting holes in the inner hood panel reinforcement (Fig. 4).
- (2) Using hand pressure, firmly press the hood ajar switch striker against the inner hood panel reinforcement until all of the striker retainers are fully engaged in their mounting holes.
- (3) Close and latch the hood.

# INTRUSION TRANSCIEVER MODULE

## DESCRIPTION



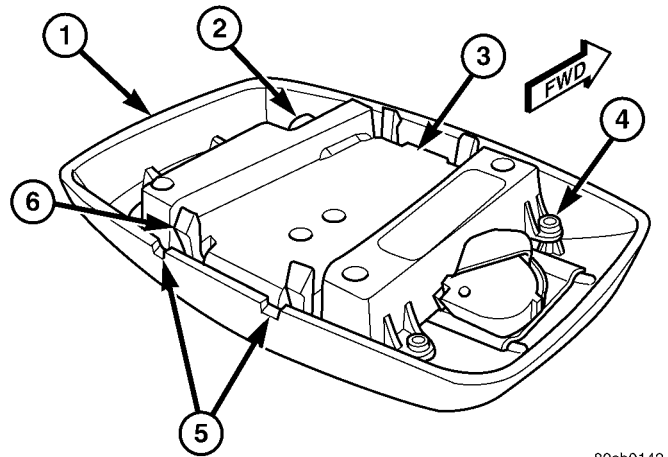
**Fig. 5 INTRUSION TRANSCIEVER MODULE**

- 1 - ITM  
2 - HEADLINER

An Intrusion Transceiver Module (ITM) is part of the premium version of the Vehicle Theft Alarm (VTA) in the Vehicle Theft Security System (VTSS) (Fig. 5). The premium version of the VTA is only available in vehicles built for certain markets, where the additional features offered by this system are required. The ITM is located in the passenger compartment. This unit is designed to provide interior motion detection, and serve as an interface between the Body Control Module (BCM) and the alarm siren module.

The ITM is concealed beneath a dedicated molded plastic trim cover that approximates the size and shape of a typical dome lamp housing. However, rather than a lens, the ITM features three sets of louvered openings. One set of louvered openings is located at each outboard end of the center rib, while the third set is centered. Each of the louvered openings is covered on the inside by a sight shield that extends the length of the center rib. The module is secured to a mounting bracket above the headliner (Fig. 6).

Concealed within the housing is the circuitry of the ITM which includes a microprocessor, and an ultrasonic receive transducer. Both the transmit transducer on the right side of the module and the receive transducer on the ITM circuit board are aimed through two small round holes in the sight shield of the trim cover. The ITM is connected to the vehicle electrical system by a take out and connector of the



80cb0142

**Fig. 6 INTRUSION TRANSCIEVER MODULE**

- 1 - TRIM COVER  
2 - CONNECTOR RECEPTACLE  
3 - HOUSING  
4 - SCREW (4)  
5 - SERVICE HOLE (2)  
6 - LATCH FEATURE (4)

overhead wire harness that is integral to the headliner.

The ITM unit cannot be adjusted or repaired and, if faulty or damaged, it must be replaced. The ITM is serviced as a unit with the trim cover.

## OPERATION

The microprocessor in the Intrusion Transceiver Module (ITM) contains the motion sensor logic circuits and controls all of the features of the premium version of the Vehicle Theft Alarm (VTA). The ITM uses On-Board Diagnostics (OBD) and can communicate with other modules in the vehicle as well as with the DRBIII® scan tool using the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network. This method of communication is used by the ITM to communicate with the Body Control Module (BCM) and for diagnosis and testing. The ITM also communicates with the alarm siren over a dedicated serial bus circuit.

The ITM microprocessor continuously monitors inputs from its on-board motion sensor as well as inputs from the BCM and the alarm siren module. The ITM motion sensor transmits ultrasonic signals into the vehicle cabin through a transmit transducer, then listens to the returning signals as the bounce off of objects in the vehicle interior. If an object is moving in the interior, a detection circuit in the ITM senses this movement through the modulation of the returning ultrasonic signals that occurs due to the Doppler effect. The motion detect function of the ITM can be disabled by depressing the "Lock" button on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter three times within fifteen seconds, while the security indi-

## INTRUSION TRANSCEIVER MODULE (Continued)

cator is still flashing rapidly or by cycling the key in the driver door cylinder from the center to the lock position. The ITM will signal the alarm siren module to provide a single siren "chirp" as an audible confirmation that the motion sensor function has been disabled.

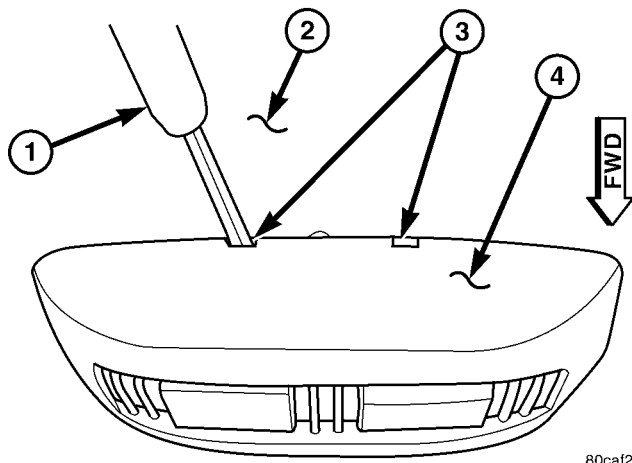
If movement is detected, the ITM sends a message to the BCM over the PCI data bus to flash the exterior lighting and send a message to the alarm siren module over a dedicated serial bus line to sound the siren. When the BCM detects a breach in the perimeter protection through a door, tailgate, flip-up glass, or hood ajar switch input, it sends a message to the ITM and the ITM sends a message to the BCM over the PCI data bus to flash the exterior lighting and send a message to the alarm siren module over a dedicated serial bus line to sound the siren. The ITM also monitors inputs from the alarm siren module for siren battery or siren input/output circuit tamper alerts, and siren battery condition alerts, then sets active and stored Diagnostic Trouble Codes (DTC) for any monitored system faults it detects. An active fault only remains for the current ignition switch cycle, while a stored fault causes a DTC to be stored in memory by the ITM. If a fault does not reoccur for fifty ignition cycles, the ITM will automatically erase the stored DTC.

The ITM is connected to the vehicle electrical system through the overhead wire harness. The ITM receives battery voltage on a B(+) circuit through a fuse in the Junction Block (JB), and is grounded to the chassis at G303. These connections allow the ITM to remain operational, regardless of the ignition switch position. The hard wired inputs and outputs for the ITM may be diagnosed and tested using conventional diagnostic tools and procedures. However, conventional diagnostic methods will not prove conclusive in the diagnosis of the ITM, the PCI data bus network, or the electronic message inputs to and outputs from the ITM. The most reliable, efficient, and accurate means to diagnose the ITM, the PCI data bus network, and the message inputs to and outputs from the ITM requires the use of a DRBIII® scan tool. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

## REMOVAL

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) While pulling downward lightly on the rear corner of the Intrusion Transceiver Module (ITM) trim cover, insert a small thin-bladed screwdriver through each of the service holes on the rear edge of the trim cover to release the two integral rear latch features of the module from the mounting bracket above the headliner (Fig. 7).



80caf20c

**Fig. 7 INTRUSION TRANSCEIVER MODULE REMOVE**

- 1 - SMALL SCREWDRIVER
- 2 - HEADLINER
- 3 - SERVICE HOLES
- 4 - ITM

(3) Pull the ITM trim cover rearward far enough to disengage the two front latch features of the module from the mounting bracket above the headliner.

(4) Pull the ITM and trim cover down from the headliner far enough to access and disconnect the overhead wire harness connector for the ITM from the module connector.

(5) Remove the ITM from the headliner.

## INSTALLATION

(1) Position the Intrusion Transceiver Module (ITM) to the headliner.

(2) Reconnect the overhead wire harness connector for the ITM to the module connector.

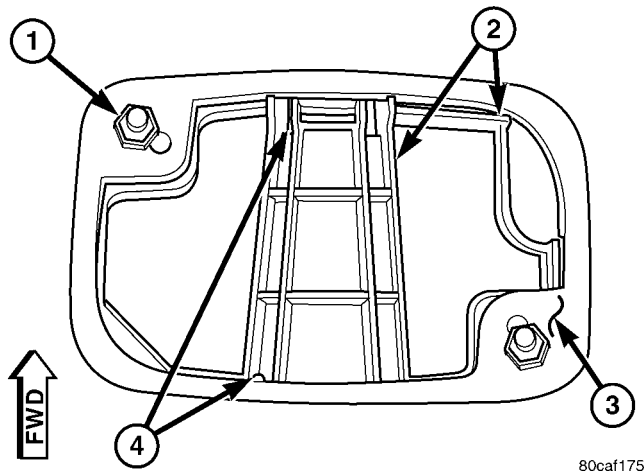
(3) Align the two front latch features of the ITM with the two front latch receptacles of the mounting bracket above the headliner (Fig. 8).

(4) Push the ITM trim cover forward far enough to insert the two rear latch features of the module into the two rear latch receptacles of the mounting bracket above the headliner.

(5) Push upward firmly and evenly on the rear edge of the ITM trim cover until the two rear latch features of the module are engaged and latched in the mounting bracket above the headliner.

(6) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

## INTRUSION TRANSCIEVER MODULE (Continued)



**Fig. 8 INTRUSION TRANSCIEVER MODULE  
RETAINER RING**

- 1 - STAMPED NUT (2)
- 2 - MOUNTING BRACKET
- 3 - HEADLINER
- 4 - LATCH RECEPTACLES (4)

**NOTE:** If the Intrusion Transceiver Module (ITM) has been replaced with a new unit, the new ITM **MUST** be initialized before the Vehicle Theft Security System can operate as designed. The use of a DRBIII® scan tool is required to initialize the ITM. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

## SIREN

### DESCRIPTION

An alarm siren module is part of the premium version of the Vehicle Theft Alarm (VTA) in the Vehicle Theft Security System (VTSS) (Fig. 9). The premium version of the VTA is only available in vehicles built for certain markets, where the additional features offered by this system are required. The alarm siren module is located in the right front frame rail. This unit is designed to provide the audible alert requirements for the premium VTA.

The alarm siren module consists of microprocessor, the siren, and a nickel metal hydride backup battery. All of the alarm module components are protected and sealed within the housing.

The alarm siren module cannot be repaired or adjusted and, if faulty or damaged, it must be replaced.

### OPERATION

The microprocessor within the alarm siren module provides the siren unit features and functions based upon internal programming and arm and disarm messages received from the Intrusion Transceiver

Module (ITM) over a dedicated serial bus communication circuit. The alarm siren module will self-detect problems with its internal and external power supply and communication circuits, then send messages indicating the problem to the ITM upon receiving a request from the ITM. The ITM will store a Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) for a detected alarm siren module fault that can be retrieved with the DRBIII® scan tool over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus.

When the premium version of the Vehicle Theft Alarm (VTA) is armed, the alarm siren module continuously monitors inputs from the ITM for messages to sound its siren and enters its auto-detect mode. While in the auto-detect mode, if the alarm siren module detects that its power supply or communication circuits are being tampered with or have been sabotaged, it will sound an alarm and continue to operate through its on-board backup battery. If the alarm siren module is in its disarmed mode when its power supply or communication circuits are interrupted, the siren will not sound. The alarm module will also notify the ITM when the backup battery requires charging, and the ITM will send a message that will allow the backup battery to be charged through the battery voltage and ground circuits to the alarm module only when the ignition switch is in the On position and the engine is running. This will prevent the charging of the alarm backup battery from depleting the charge in the main vehicle battery while the vehicle is not being operated.

The alarm siren module receives battery voltage through a fuse in the Power Distribution Center (PDC), and is grounded to the chassis. These connections allow the alarm siren module to remain operational, regardless of the ignition switch position. The hard wired inputs and outputs for the alarm siren module may be diagnosed and tested using conventional diagnostic tools and procedures. However, conventional diagnostic methods will not prove conclusive in the diagnosis of the internal circuitry or the backup battery of the alarm siren module, the ITM, the serial bus communication line, or the message inputs to and outputs from the alarm siren module. The most reliable, efficient, and accurate means to diagnose the alarm siren module, the ITM, the serial bus communication line, and the electronic message inputs to and outputs from the alarm siren module requires the use of a DRBIII® scan tool. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

### REMOVAL

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Disconnect the alarm siren module wiring harness connector. (Fig. 9).



## SIREN (Continued)

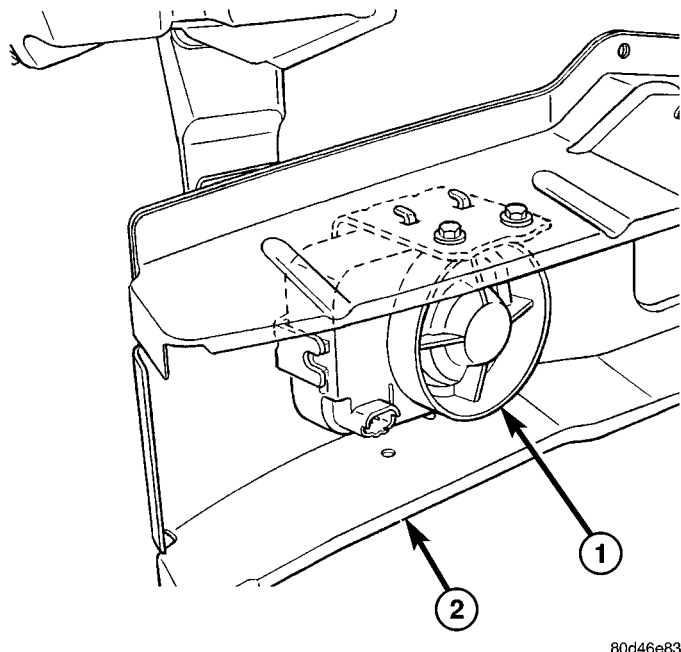


Fig. 9 Siren Remove/Install

1 - SIREN  
2 - FRAME

- (3) Remove the screws that secure the alarm siren module to the left frame rail.
- (4) Remove the alarm siren module.

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Position the alarm siren module on to the left frame rail. (Fig. 9).
- (2) Install and tighten the screws that secure the alarm siren module to the frame rail. Tighten the screws to 6 N·m (50 in. lbs.).
- (3) Reconnect the alarm siren module wiring harness connector.
- (4) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

**NOTE:** If the alarm siren module has been replaced with a new unit, the new unit **MUST** be configured in the Intrusion Transceiver Module (ITM) before the Vehicle Theft Security System can operate as designed. The use of a DRBIII® scan tool is required to configure the alarm siren module settings in the ITM. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

## SKIS INDICATOR LAMP

## DESCRIPTION

A Sentry Key Immobilizer System (SKIS) indicator lamp is standard equipment on all instrument clus-

ters, but is only functional on vehicles equipped with the optional SKIS. The amber SKIS indicator lamp is located to the right of the oil pressure gauge.

## OPERATION

The Sentry Key Immobilizer System (SKIS) indicator lamp gives an indication to the vehicle operator of the status of the SKIS. This lamp is controlled by a transistor on the instrument cluster circuit board based upon messages received by the cluster from the Sentry Key Immobilizer Module (SKIM) over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus. The SKIS indicator lamp bulb receives battery current on the instrument cluster circuit board through the fused ignition switch output (st-run) circuit whenever the ignition switch is in the On or Start positions. The lamp bulb only illuminates when it is provided a path to ground by the instrument cluster transistor. The instrument cluster will turn on the SKIS indicator lamp for the following reasons:

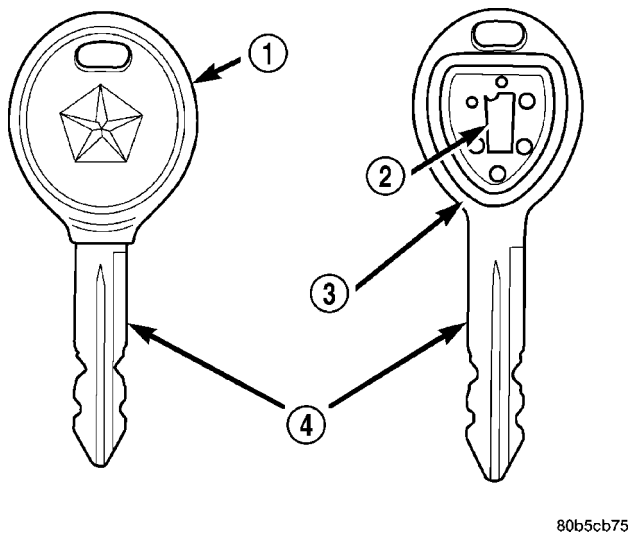
- **Bulb Test** - Each time the ignition switch is turned to the On position, the SKIM tells the cluster to illuminate the lamp for about three seconds.
- **SKIS Lamp-On Message** - Each time the cluster receives a SKIS lamp-on message from the SKIM, the lamp will be illuminated. The lamp can be flashed on and off, or illuminated solid, as dictated by the message from the SKIM. For more information on the SKIS and the SKIS lamp control parameters, (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/VEHICLE THEFT SECURITY - OPERATION - SENTRY KEY IMMOBILIZER SYSTEM). The lamp remains illuminated until the cluster receives a lamp-off message from the SKIM or until the ignition switch is turned to the Off position, whichever occurs first.
- **Actuator Test** - Each time the cluster is put through the actuator test, the lamp will be turned on for the duration of the test to confirm the functionality of the lamp and the cluster.

The SKIM performs a self-test each time the ignition switch is turned to the On position to decide whether the system is in good operating condition. The SKIM then sends a message to the instrument cluster. If the SKIS indicator lamp fails to light during the bulb test, replace the bulb. For further diagnosis of the SKIS indicator lamp or the instrument cluster circuitry that controls the lamp, (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). If the instrument cluster turns on the SKIS indicator lamp after the bulb test, either solid or flashing, it indicates that a SKIS malfunction has occurred or that the SKIS is inoperative. For proper diagnosis of the SKIS, the PCI data bus, or the message inputs to the instrument cluster that control the SKIS indicator lamp, a DRBIII® scan tool and the appropriate diagnostic information are required.



## TRANSPONDER KEY

### DESCRIPTION



80b5cb75

**Fig. 10 Sentry Key Immobilizer Transponder**

- 1 - MOLDED CAP
- 2 - TRANSPONDER CHIP
- 3 - MOLDED CAP REMOVED
- 4 - TRANSPONDER KEY

Each ignition key used in the Sentry Key Immobilizer System (SKIS) has an integral transponder chip (Fig. 10). Ignition keys with this feature can be readily identified by a gray rubber cap molded onto the head of the key, while conventional ignition keys have a black molded rubber cap. The transponder chip is concealed beneath the molded rubber cap, where it is molded into the head of the metal key. Each new Sentry Key has a unique transponder identification code permanently programmed into it by the manufacturer. The Sentry Key transponder if faulty or damaged, must be replaced.

### OPERATION

When the ignition switch is turned to the On position, the Sentry Key Immobilizer Module (SKIM) communicates through its antenna with the Sentry Key transponder using a Radio Frequency (RF) signal. The SKIM then waits for a RF response from the transponder through the same antenna. The Sentry Key transponder chip is within the range of the SKIM transceiver antenna ring when it is inserted into the ignition lock cylinder. The SKIM determines whether a valid key is present in the ignition lock cylinder based upon the response from the transponder. If a valid key is detected, that fact is communicated by the SKIM to the Powertrain Control Module (PCM) over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus, and the PCM allows the engine to continue running. If the PCM receives an

invalid key message, or receives no message from the SKIM over the PCI data bus, the engine will be disabled after about two seconds of operation. The ElectroMechanical Instrument Cluster (EMIC) will also respond to the invalid key message on the PCI data bus by flashing the SKIS indicator on and off.

Each Sentry Key has a unique transponder identification code permanently programmed into it by the manufacturer. Likewise, the SKIM has a unique Secret Key code programmed into it by the manufacturer. When a Sentry Key is programmed into the memory of the SKIM, the SKIM stores the transponder identification code from the Sentry Key, and the Sentry Key learns the Secret Key code from the SKIM. Once the Sentry Key learns the Secret Key code of the SKIM, it is permanently stored in the memory of the transponder. Therefore, once a Sentry Key has been programmed to a particular vehicle, it cannot be used on any other vehicle. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/VEHICLE THEFT SECURITY - STANDARD PROCEDURE - TRANSPONDER PROGRAMMING).

## VTSS INDICATOR

### DESCRIPTION

The Vehicle Theft Security System (VTSS) indicator consists of a red Light-Emitting Diode that is mounted and integral to the automatic headlamp light sensor photo diode unit, which is located on the top of the instrument panel. The remainder of the housing including the mount and the electrical connection are concealed beneath the instrument panel top cover.

The VTSS indicator cannot be adjusted or repaired the entire automatic headlamp light sensor/VTSS indicator must be replaced. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/LAMPS/LIGHTING - EXTERIOR/AUTO HEADLAMP SENSOR - REMOVAL).

### OPERATION

The Vehicle Theft Security System (VTSS) indicator gives a visible indication of the VTSS arming status. One side of Light-Emitting Diode (LED) in the VTSS indicator is connected to unswitched battery current through a fused B(+) circuit and a fuse in the Junction Block (JB). The other side of the LED is hard wired to the Body Control Module (BCM), which controls the operation of the VTSS indicator by pulling this side of the LED circuit to ground. When the VTSS arming is in progress, the BCM will flash the LED rapidly on and off for about fifteen seconds. When the VTSS has been successfully armed, the BCM will flash the LED on and off continually at a much slower rate until the VTSS has been disarmed.

## VTSS INDICATOR (Continued)

The VTSS indicator can be diagnosed using conventional diagnostic tools and methods.

**DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - VTSS INDICATOR**

The diagnosis found here addresses an inoperative Vehicle Theft Security System (VTSS) indicator condition. If the problem being diagnosed is related to indicator accuracy, be certain to confirm that the problem is with the indicator and not with an inoperative VTSS. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/VEHICLE THEFT SECURITY - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - VEHICLE THEFT SECURITY SYSTEM). If no VTSS problem is found, the following procedure will help to locate a short or open in the VTSS indicator control circuit. Refer to the appropriate wiring information.

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Check the fused B(+) fuse in the Junction Block (JB). If OK, go to Step 2. If not OK, repair the shorted circuit or component and replace the faulty fuse.

(2) Check for battery voltage at the fused B(+) fuse in the JB. If OK, go to Step 3. If not OK, repair the open fused B(+) circuit between the JB and the Power Distribution Center (PDC).

(3) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Disconnect the instrument panel wire harness connector for the automatic headlamp light sensor/VTSS indicator from the automatic headlamp light sensor/VTSS indicator pigtail wire connector. Reconnect the battery negative cable. Check for battery voltage at the fused B(+) circuit cavity of the instrument panel wire harness connector for the automatic headlamp light sensor/VTSS indicator. If OK, go to Step 4. If not OK, repair the open fused B(+) circuit between the VTSS indicator and the JB.

(4) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Disconnect the instrument panel wire harness connector for the JB from the JB connector receptacle. Check for continuity between the VTSS indicator driver circuit cavity of the instrument panel wire harness connector for the automatic headlamp light sensor/VTSS indicator and a good ground. There should be no continuity. If OK, go to Step 5. If not OK, repair the shorted VTSS indicator driver circuit between the VTSS indicator and the JB.

(5) Check for continuity between the VTSS indicator driver circuit of the instrument panel wire harness connector for the automatic headlamp light sensor/VTSS indicator and the instrument panel wire harness connector for the JB. There should be continuity. If OK, replace the faulty VTSS indicator. If not OK, repair the open VTSS indicator driver circuit between the VTSS indicator and the JB.

# WIPERS/WASHERS

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
FRONT WIPERS/WASHERS .....	1	REAR WIPERS/WASHERS .....	34

## FRONT WIPERS/WASHERS

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>FRONT WIPERS/WASHERS</b>		<b>FRONT WIPER MODULE</b>	
DESCRIPTION .....	2	DESCRIPTION .....	17
OPERATION .....	4	OPERATION .....	18
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - FRONT WIPER & WASHER SYSTEM .....	6	REMOVAL .....	18
CLEANING - FRONT WIPER & WASHER SYSTEM .....	9	INSTALLATION .....	18
INSPECTION - FRONT WIPER & WASHER SYSTEM .....	9	<b>RAIN SENSOR MODULE</b>	
<b>FRONT CHECK VALVE</b>		DESCRIPTION .....	19
DESCRIPTION .....	10	OPERATION .....	19
OPERATION .....	11	REMOVAL .....	20
REMOVAL .....	11	INSTALLATION .....	21
INSTALLATION .....	11	<b>RIGHT MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH</b>	
<b>FRONT WASHER HOSES/TUBES</b>		DESCRIPTION .....	21
DESCRIPTION .....	12	OPERATION .....	22
OPERATION .....	12	DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - RIGHT MULTI- FUNCTION SWITCH .....	23
<b>FRONT WASHER NOZZLE</b>		REMOVAL .....	25
DESCRIPTION .....	12	INSTALLATION .....	25
OPERATION .....	12	<b>WASHER FLUID LEVEL SWITCH</b>	
REMOVAL .....	12	DESCRIPTION .....	26
INSTALLATION .....	13	OPERATION .....	26
<b>FRONT WASHER PUMP/MOTOR</b>		REMOVAL .....	27
DESCRIPTION .....	13	INSTALLATION .....	27
OPERATION .....	13	<b>WASHER RESERVOIR</b>	
REMOVAL .....	14	DESCRIPTION .....	28
INSTALLATION .....	14	OPERATION .....	28
<b>FRONT WIPER ARM</b>		REMOVAL .....	28
DESCRIPTION .....	14	INSTALLATION .....	29
OPERATION .....	15	<b>WIPER HIGH/LOW RELAY</b>	
REMOVAL .....	15	DESCRIPTION .....	30
INSTALLATION .....	16	OPERATION .....	30
<b>FRONT WIPER BLADE</b>		DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - WIPER HIGH/ LOW RELAY .....	31
DESCRIPTION .....	16	REMOVAL .....	31
OPERATION .....	16	INSTALLATION .....	31
REMOVAL .....	17	<b>WIPER ON/OFF RELAY</b>	
INSTALLATION .....	17	DESCRIPTION .....	32
		OPERATION .....	32

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - WIPER ON/OFF RELAY .....	32
---	----

REMOVAL .....	33
INSTALLATION .....	33

## FRONT WIPERS/WASHERS

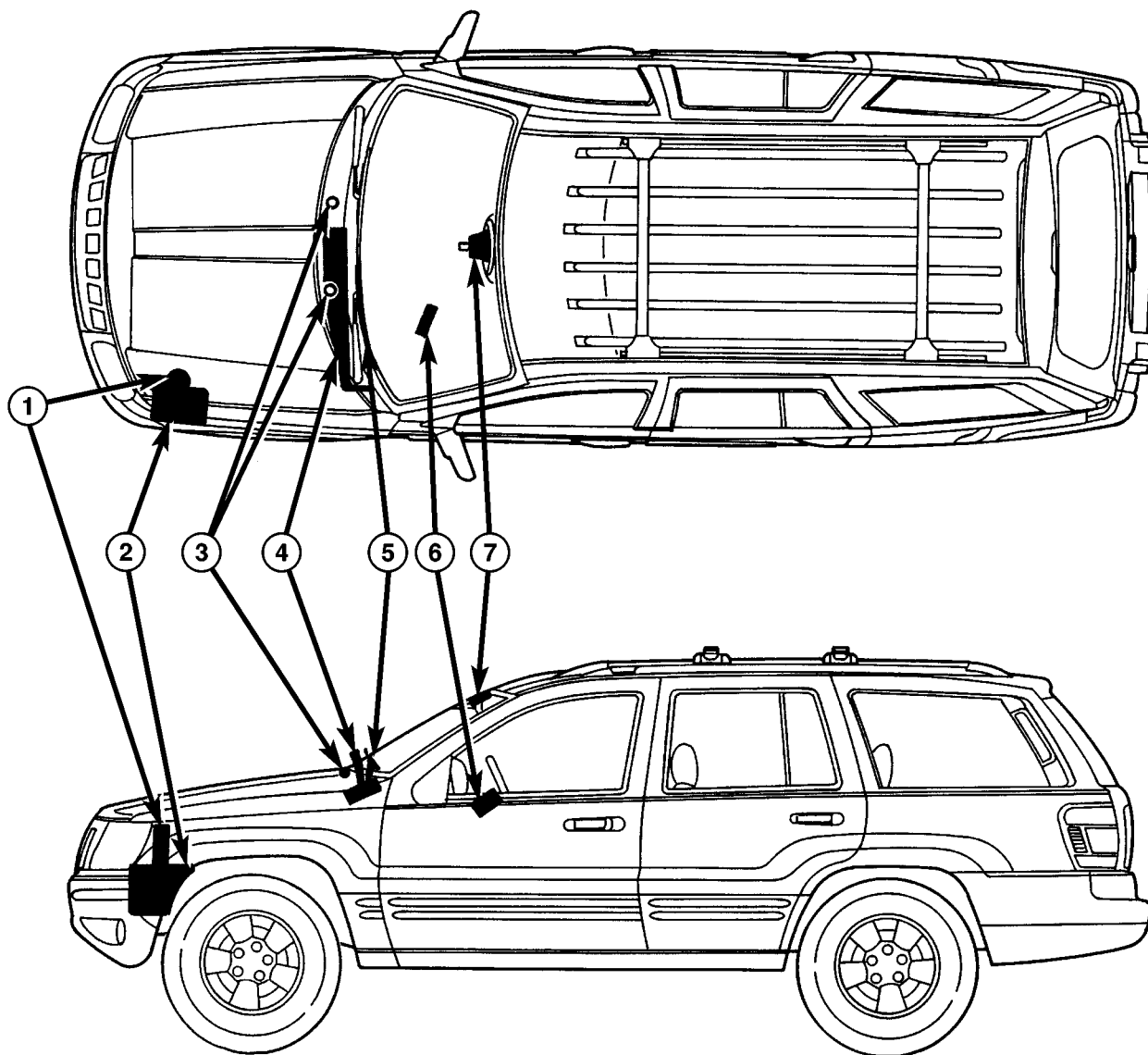
### DESCRIPTION

An electrically operated intermittent front wiper and washer system is standard factory-installed safety equipment on this model (Fig. 1). The front wiper and washer system includes the following major components, which are described in further detail elsewhere in this service information:

- **Body Control Module** - The Body Control Module (BCM) is located on the Junction Block (JB)

under the driver side outboard end of the instrument panel. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/ELECTRONIC CONTROL MODULES/BODY CONTROL MODULE - DESCRIPTION).

- **Front Check Valve** - The front washer system check valve is integral to the wye fitting located in the washer plumbing between the cowl plenum washer hose and the front washer nozzles, and is concealed beneath the cowl plenum cover/grille panel at the base of the windshield.



80d11c3d

**Fig. 1 Front Wiper & Washer System**

- 1 - WASHER RESEVOIR FILLER TUBE
- 2 - WASHER RESERVOIR, PUMP/MOTOR, FLUID LEVEL SWITCH
- 3 - WASHER NOZZLE (2)
- 4 - WIPER MODULE

- 5 - WIPER ARM & BLADE (2)
- 6 - RIGHT (WIPER) MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH RIGHT
- 7 - RAIN SENSOR MODULE

## FRONT WIPERS/WASHERS (Continued)

- **Front Washer Nozzle** - Two fluidic front washer nozzles are secured with integral snap features to dedicated openings in the cowl plenum cover/grille panel located near the base of the windshield.

- **Front Washer Plumbing** - The plumbing for the front washer system consists of rubber hoses and molded plastic fittings. The plumbing is routed along the left side of the engine compartment from the washer reservoir, and through the dash panel into the cowl plenum beneath the cowl plenum cover/grille panel to the front washer nozzle fittings.

- **Front Washer Pump/Motor** - The front washer pump/motor unit is located in a dedicated hole on the lower outboard side of the washer reservoir, behind the inner fender liner ahead of the left front wheel. The front washer pump is located ahead of and below the rear washer pump.

- **Front Wiper Arm** - The two front wiper arms are secured with nuts to the threaded studs on the ends of the two wiper pivot shafts, which extend through the cowl plenum cover/grille panel located near the base of the windshield.

- **Front Wiper Blade** - The two front wiper blades are secured to the two front wiper arms with an integral latch, and are parked on the glass near the bottom of the windshield when the front wiper system is not in operation.

- **Front Wiper Module** - The front wiper pivot shafts are the only visible components of the front wiper module. The remainder of the module is concealed within the cowl plenum beneath the cowl plenum cover/grille panel. The front wiper module includes the wiper module bracket, four rubber-isolated wiper module mounts, the front wiper motor, the wiper motor crank arm, the two wiper drive links, and the two front wiper pivots.

- **Rain Sensor Module** - Models equipped with the optional automatic wiper feature have a Rain Sensor Module (RSM) located behind a trim cover on a bracket bonded to the inside surface of the windshield glass, just above the inside rear view mirror mounting button.

- **Right Multi-Function Switch** - The right (wiper) multi-function switch is secured to the right side of the multi-function switch mounting housing near the top of the steering column, just below the steering wheel. Only the control stalk for the right multi-function switch is visible, while the remainder of the switch is concealed beneath the steering column shrouds. The right multi-function switch contains all of the switches and control circuitry for both the front and rear wiper and washer systems.

- **Washer Fluid Level Switch** - The washer fluid level switch is located in a dedicated hole near the center of the forward facing surface of the washer

reservoir, behind the left front wheel house splash shield.

- **Washer Reservoir** - The washer reservoir is concealed between the left inner fender shield and the left outer fender panel, behind the inner fender liner and ahead of the left front wheel. The washer reservoir filler neck is the only visible portion of the reservoir, and it is accessed from the left front corner of the engine compartment.

- **Wiper High-Low Relay** - The wiper high-low relay is an International Standards Organization (ISO) micro relay located in the Power Distribution Center (PDC) in the engine compartment near the battery.

- **Wiper On-Off Relay** - The wiper on-off relay is an International Standards Organization (ISO) micro relay located in the Power Distribution Center (PDC) in the engine compartment near the battery.

Hard wired circuitry connects the front wiper and washer system components to the electrical system of the vehicle. These hard wired circuits are integral to several wire harnesses, which are routed throughout the vehicle and retained by many different methods. These circuits may be connected to each other, to the vehicle electrical system and to the front wiper and washer system components through the use of a combination of soldered splices, splice block connectors, and many different types of wire harness terminal connectors and insulators. Refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, further details on wire harness routing and retention, as well as pin-out and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

## OPERATING MODES

The components of the front wiper and washer system are designed to work in concert to provide the following operating modes:

- **Automatic Wipe Mode** - In models equipped with the optional automatic wiper feature, the internal circuitry of both the right (wiper) multi-function switch, the rain sensor module, and the BCM work in concert to provide an automatic wiper mode with five sensitivity selections. When selected, this switch position will automatically operate the front wipers at the programmed speed and intervals to maintain visibility through the windshield glass.

- **Continuous Wipe Mode** - The control knob on the control stalk of the right (wiper) multi-function switch has two continuous wipe positions, Low and High. When selected, these switch positions will cause the two-speed front wiper motor to operate in a continuous low or high speed cycle.



## FRONT WIPERS/WASHERS (Continued)

- **Headlamps On With Wipers Mode** - The BCM provides an automatic headlamps on with wipers feature for models equipped with the optional automatic headlamps. This is a customer programmable feature. If this feature is enabled, the headlamps will turn on automatically whenever the windshield wipers are turned on; and, if the headlamps were turned on automatically when the wipers were turned on, they will also turn off automatically when the wipers are turned off. If this feature is enabled in models equipped with the optional automatic wiper feature, when the automatic wiper mode is selected the headlamps will turn on automatically only after the wipers complete three automatic wipe cycles within about thirty seconds, and they will turn off automatically after three minutes elapse without any automatic wipe cycles. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/OVERHEAD CONSOLE - STANDARD PROCEDURE - ELECTRONIC VEHICLE INFORMATION CENTER PROGRAMMING).

- **Mist Wipe Mode** - The control stalk of the right (wiper) multi-function switch has a momentary Mist position. When selected, this switch position will operate the front wipers in a low speed continuous cycle for as long as the switch is held closed, then will complete the current wipe cycle and park the front wiper blades near the base of the windshield when the switch is released.

- **Speed Sensitive Intermittent Wipe Mode** - Except on models equipped with the optional automatic wiper system, the internal circuitry of both the right (wiper) multi-function switch and the BCM work in concert to provide an intermittent wipe mode with five delay interval selections. When this mode is selected, the BCM automatically adjusts each of the five manually selected delay intervals between complete wipe cycles to compensate for vehicle speed.

- **Washer Mode** - When the momentary front wash position of the control stalk for the right (wiper) multi-function switch is selected with the front wiper system operating in a continuous wipe mode, washer fluid will be dispensed onto the windshield glass through the washer nozzles for as long as the washer switch is held closed. When the front washer switch is actuated with the front wiper system operating in an intermittent wipe mode, washer fluid is still dispensed until the switch is released; however, the front wipers will operate in a low speed continuous cycle from the time the washer switch is closed until several wipe cycles after the switch is released, before returning to the selected intermittent wipe mode.

- **Wipe-After-Wash Mode** - When the momentary front wash position of the control stalk for the right (wiper) multi-function switch is selected with the front wiper system turned Off, the internal circuitry

of the BCM provides a wipe-after-wash feature. When selected, this feature will operate the front washer pump/motor and the front wipers for as long as the front washer switch is held closed, then provide several additional wipe cycles after the switch is released before parking the front wiper blades near the base of the windshield.

## OPERATION

The front wiper and washer system is designed to provide the vehicle operator with a convenient, safe, and reliable means of maintaining visibility through the windshield glass. The various components of this system are designed to convert electrical energy produced by the vehicle electrical system into the mechanical action of the wiper blades to wipe the outside surface of the glass, as well as into the hydraulic action of the washer system to apply washer fluid stored in an on-board reservoir to the area of the glass to be wiped. When combined, these components provide the means to effectively maintain clear visibility for the vehicle operator by removing excess accumulations of rain, snow, bugs, mud, or other minor debris from the outside windshield glass surface that might be encountered while driving the vehicle under numerous types of inclement operating conditions.

The vehicle operator initiates all front wiper and washer system functions with the control stalk of the right (wiper) multi-function switch that extends from the right side of the steering column, just below the steering wheel. Rotating the control knob on the end of the control stalk selects the Off, Delay (on models not equipped with the optional automatic wiper system), Auto (on models equipped with the optional automatic wiper system), Low, or High front wiper system operating modes. In the Delay mode, the control knob also allows the vehicle operator to select from one of five intermittent wipe Delay intervals. In the Auto mode, the control knob also allows the vehicle operator to select from one of five automatic wiper sensitivity levels. Pulling the right control stalk downwards actuates the momentary front wiper system Mist mode switch, while pulling the right control stalk towards the steering wheel actuates the momentary front washer system switch. The right multi-function switch provides hard wired resistor multiplexed inputs to the Body Control Module (BCM) for all of the front wiper system functions, as well as separate hard wired sense inputs to the BCM for the high speed continuous wipe and front washer system functions.

The front wiper and washer system will only operate when the ignition switch is in the Accessory or On positions. Battery current is directed from a B(+) fuse in the Power Distribution Center (PDC) to the

## FRONT WIPERS/WASHERS (Continued)

wiper and washer system circuit breaker in the Junction Block (JB) through a fused ignition switch output (run-acc) circuit. The automatic resetting circuit breaker then provides battery current through a fused ignition switch output (run-acc) circuit to the wiper on/off relay, and the park switch within the front wiper motor. A separate fuse in the JB provides battery current through another fused ignition switch output (run-acc) circuit to the right multi-function switch. The right multi-function switch circuitry uses this battery feed to directly control the operation of the front washer pump/motor unit. The BCM uses low side drivers to control front wiper system operation by energizing or de-energizing the wiper high/low and wiper on/off relays.

The hard wired circuits and components of the front wiper and washer system may be diagnosed and tested using conventional diagnostic tools and procedures. However, conventional diagnostic methods may not prove conclusive in the diagnosis of the Body Control Module (BCM), or the inputs to or outputs from the BCM that control the front wiper and washer system operating modes. The most reliable, efficient, and accurate means to diagnose the BCM, or the BCM inputs and outputs related to the various front wiper and washer system operating modes requires the use of a DRBIII® scan tool. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

**OPERATING MODES**

Following are paragraphs that briefly describe the operation of each of the front wiper and washer system operating modes.

**CONTINUOUS WIPE MODE**

When the Low position of the control knob on the control stalk of the right (wiper) multi-function switch is selected, the Body Control Module (BCM) energizes the wiper on/off relay. This directs battery current through the normally open contacts of the energized wiper on/off relay and the normally closed contacts of the de-energized wiper high/low relay to the low speed brush of the front wiper motor, causing the front wipers to cycle at low speed. When the High position of the control knob is selected, the BCM energizes both the wiper on/off relay and the wiper high/low relay. This directs battery current through the normally open contacts of the energized wiper on/off relay and the normally open contacts of the energized wiper high/low relay to the high speed brush of the front wiper motor, causing the front wipers to cycle at high speed.

When the Off position of the control knob is selected, the BCM de-energizes both the wiper on/off and wiper high/low relays, then one of two events will occur. The event that will occur depends upon

the position of the wiper blades on the windshield at the moment that the control knob Off position is selected. If the wiper blades are in the down position on the windshield when the Off position is selected, the park switch that is integral to the front wiper motor is closed to ground and the wiper motor ceases to operate.

If the wiper blades are not in the down position on the windshield at the moment the Off position is selected, the park switch is closed to battery current from the fused ignition switch output (run-acc) circuit of the front wiper motor. The park switch directs this battery current to the low speed brush of the wiper motor through the wiper park switch sense circuit and the normally closed contacts of the de-energized wiper on/off and wiper high/low relays. This causes the wiper motor to continue running at low speed until the wiper blades are in the down position on the windshield and the park switch is again closed to ground.

**INTERMITTENT WIPE MODE**

On models not equipped with the optional automatic wiper system, when the control knob on the control stalk of the right (wiper) multi-function switch is moved to one of the five Delay interval positions, the BCM electronic intermittent wipe logic circuit responds by calculating the correct length of time between wiper sweeps based upon the selected delay interval input. The BCM monitors the changing state of the wiper motor park switch through a hard wired front wiper park switch sense circuit input. This input allows the BCM to determine the proper intervals at which to energize and de-energize the wiper on/off relay to operate the front wiper motor intermittently for one low speed cycle at a time.

The BCM logic is also programmed to provide an immediate wipe cycle and begin a new delay interval timing cycle each time a shorter delay interval is selected, and to add the remaining delay timing interval to the new delay interval timing before the next wipe cycle occurs each time a longer delay interval is selected. The intermittent wipe mode delay times are speed sensitive. The BCM monitors vehicle speed messages received from the Powertrain Control Module (PCM) over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network in order to provide the speed sensitive delay intervals. Above about sixteen kilometers-per-hour (ten miles-per-hour) the delay is driver adjustable from about one-half second to about eighteen seconds. Below about sixteen kilometers-per-hour (ten miles-per-hour) the delay times are doubled, from about one second to about thirty-six seconds.

## FRONT WIPERS/WASHERS (Continued)

**AUTOMATIC WIPE MODE**

On models equipped with the optional automatic wiper system, when the control knob on the control stalk of the right (wiper) multi-function switch is moved to one of the five Auto sensitivity positions, the BCM sends an electronic message to the Rain Sensor Module (RSM) over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network indicating the selected position. The RSM monitors an area within the wipe pattern of the windshield glass for the accumulation of moisture. Based upon internal programming and the selected sensitivity level, when sufficient moisture has accumulated the RSM sends the appropriate electronic wipe command messages to the BCM over the PCI data bus and the BCM operates the front wiper system accordingly.

As the sensitivity level is set higher, the RSM is more sensitive to moisture accumulation and will send wipe commands more frequently. The BCM logic is also programmed to provide an immediate wipe cycle each time the control knob on the control stalk of the right multi-function switch is moved from a non-automatic wipe position to one of the five Auto sensitivity positions, and another immediate wipe cycle each time the control knob is moved from a lower Auto sensitivity position to a higher Auto sensitivity position.

**MIST WIPE MODE**

When the control stalk of the right (wiper) multi-function switch is moved to the momentary Mist position, the BCM energizes the wiper on/off relay for as long as the Mist switch is held closed, then de-energizes the relay when the state of the Mist switch input changes to open. The BCM can operate the front wiper motor in this mode for only one low speed cycle at a time, or for an indefinite number of sequential low speed cycles, depending upon how long the Mist switch is held closed.

**WASH MODE**

When the control stalk of the right (wiper) multi-function switch is moved to the momentary front Wash position while the control knob is in the Low or High positions, the circuitry within the switch directs battery current to the front washer pump/motor unit. This will cause the front washer pump/motor unit to be energized for as long as the front Wash switch is held closed, and to de-energize when the front Wash switch is released.

When the control stalk of the right (wiper) multi-function switch is moved to the momentary front Wash position while the control knob is in one of the Delay interval or Auto sensitivity positions, the front washer pump/motor operation is the same. However, the BCM energizes the wiper on/off relay to override

the selected delay interval or auto sensitivity level and operate the front wiper motor in a continuous low speed mode for as long as the front Wash switch is held closed, then de-energizes the relay and reverts to the selected delay mode interval or auto sensitivity level several wipe cycles after the front Wash switch is released. The BCM detects the front Wash switch state through a hard wired washer pump motor switch output circuit input from the right multi-function switch.

**WIPE-AFTER-WASH MODE**

When the control stalk of the right (wiper) multi-function switch is moved to the momentary front Wash position while the control knob is in the Off position, the BCM detects that switch state through a hard wired washer pump motor switch output circuit input from the right multi-function switch. The BCM responds to this input by energizing the wiper on/off relay for as long as the Wash switch is held closed, then de-energizes the relay several wipe cycles after the front Wash switch is released. The BCM monitors the changing state of the wiper motor park switch through a hard wired front wiper park switch sense circuit input. This input allows the BCM to count the number of wipe cycles that occur after the front Wash switch state changes to open, and to determine the proper interval at which to de-energize the wiper on/off relay to complete the wipe-after-wash mode cycle.

**DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - FRONT WIPER & WASHER SYSTEM****WIPER SYSTEM**

If the front wiper motor operates, but the wipers do not move on the windshield, replace the faulty front wiper module. If the wipers operate, but chatter, lift, or do not clear the glass, clean and inspect the wiper system components as required. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/FRONT WIPERS/WASHERS - CLEANING) and (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/FRONT WIPERS/WASHERS - INSPECTION). Refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, details of wire harness routing and retention, connector pin-out information and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

The hard wired circuits and components of the front wiper and washer system may be diagnosed and tested using conventional diagnostic tools and procedures. However, conventional diagnostic methods may not prove conclusive in the diagnosis of the Body Control Module (BCM), the Rain Sensor Module (RSM), the Powertrain Control Module (PCM), or



## FRONT WIPERS/WASHERS (Continued)

the inputs to or outputs from these modules that control the various front wiper and washer system operating modes. The most reliable, efficient, and accurate means to diagnose the BCM, the RSM, the PCM or the BCM inputs and outputs related to the various front wiper and washer system operating modes requires the use of a DRBIII® scan tool. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, DRIVER AIRBAG, PASSENGER AIRBAG, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE IMPACT SENSOR, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

## AUTOMATIC WIPER ONLY - FALSE WIPES

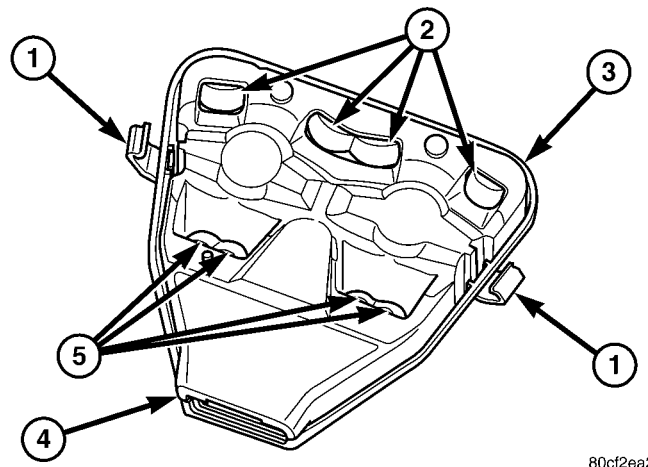
False wipes are unnecessary wipes that occur when the control knob of the right multi-function switch is in one of the five Auto sensitivity positions and no rain or moisture is apparent within the wipe pattern on the windshield glass. Because this system is designed to operate whenever it detects moisture, if the switch is in one of the Auto sensitivity positions any road spray, bug splatters, or mist from passing cars or trucks may occasionally cause the wipers to cycle. Also, the system will perform an initialization wipe each time the ignition switch is turned to the On position while one of the Auto positions is still selected. These are normal characteristics of this system and are not false wipes.

False wipes generally are the result of foreign material or flaws that interfere with the system optics. The optics for this system allow the Rain Sensor Module (RSM) to precisely transmit several Infra-Red (IR) light beams and precisely monitor the intensity of these beams on the outer surface of the windshield glass to determine the presence of moisture. The sensitivity of this system is such that anything that distorts the focus or intensity of the IR light beams or affects the ability of the photo diodes within the RSM to see and accurately measure these light beams can result in the RSM logic misinterpreting the resulting input data as moisture on the windshield. The optics for this system include the lenses

of the RSM, the lenses of the RSM bracket, the adhesive layer that bonds the RSM bracket to the inside of the windshield, and the windshield glass.

The following procedure should only be used if false wipe occurrences are frequent and persistent. Perform diagnosis of the front wiper system, the right multi-function switch, and the RSM using a DRBIII® scan tool and the appropriate diagnostic procedures before performing the following:

(1) Remove the RSM trim cover. Confirm that the spring clips of the RSM are fully engaged in their slots on each outboard edge of the RSM bracket on the inside of the windshield glass (Fig. 2). If OK, go to Step 2. If not OK, press the spring clips inward until they snap over the bracket and are fully engaged in their slots.



80cf2ea2

**Fig. 2 Rain Sensor Module**

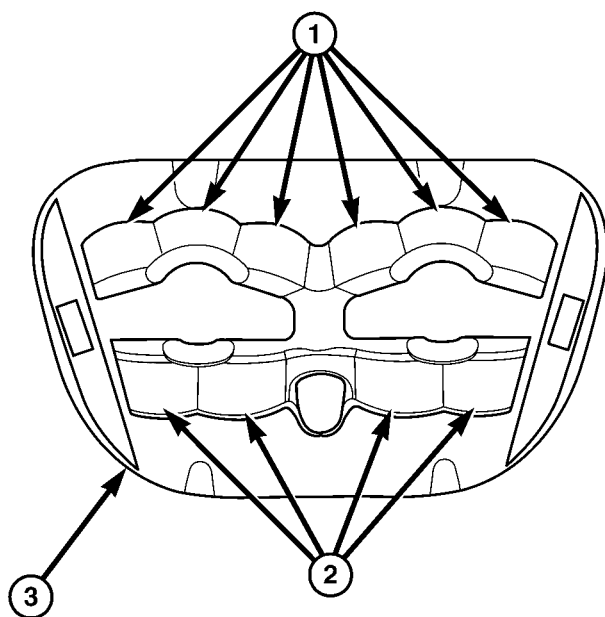
- 1 - SPRING CLIP (2)
- 2 - INFRARED LENS (4)
- 3 - HOUSING
- 4 - CONNECTOR RECEPTACLE
- 5 - PHOTOCELL LENS (4)

(2) Remove the RSM from the RSM bracket. Inspect the RSM lenses and the RSM bracket lenses for contamination (Fig. 3). If OK, go to Step 3. If not OK, clean any foreign material from each of these lenses using rubbing alcohol and a lint-free cloth.

(3) Carefully inspect the RSM for any physical damage, including scratches on the RSM lenses. If OK, go to Step 4. If not OK, replace the damaged RSM.

**NOTE: The Rain Sensor Module (RSM) bracket is serviced as a unit with the windshield glass. If either the bracket or the glass is faulty or damaged, the entire RSM bracket and windshield glass unit must be replaced.**

## FRONT WIPERS/WASHERS (Continued)



80e4c57e

**Fig. 3 RSM Bracket Inspection**

- 1 - INFRARED LENS (6)  
 2 - PHOTOCELL LENS (4)  
 3 - RSM BRACKET

(4) Carefully inspect the RSM bracket for any physical damage, including scratches on the RSM bracket lenses. If OK, go to Step 5. If not OK, replace the damaged RSM bracket and windshield as a unit.

(5) Carefully inspect the outer surface of the windshield glass for physical damage, including scratches, cracks or chips in the vicinity of the RSM bracket lenses. **Scratches, cracks or chips in the windshield glass outside the area of the RSM bracket lenses will not cause false wipes.** If OK, go to Step 6. If not OK, replace the damaged windshield.

(6) From the outside of the windshield glass, carefully inspect the adhesive layer between the windshield glass and the RSM bracket for any large voids. If an adhesive void greater than about 8 millimeters (0.31 inch) is observed, replace the faulty RSM bracket and windshield unit.

**WASHER SYSTEM**

The diagnosis found here addresses an electrically inoperative front washer system. If the front washer pump/motor operates, but no washer fluid is emitted from the front washer nozzles, be certain to check the fluid level in the reservoir. Also clean and inspect the front washer system components as required. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/FRONT WIPERS/WASHERS - CLEANING) and (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/FRONT WIPERS/WASHERS - INSPECTION). Refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring

information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, details of wire harness routing and retention, connector pin-out information and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, DRIVER AIRBAG, PASSENGER AIRBAG, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE IMPACT SENSOR, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Turn the ignition switch to the On position. Turn the control knob on the control stalk of the right (wiper) multi-function switch to the Low or High wiper position. Check whether the front wiper system is operating. If OK, go to Step 2. If not OK, test and repair the front wiper system before continuing with these tests. Refer to WIPER SYSTEM

(2) Turn the control knob on the control stalk of the right (wiper) multi-function switch to the Off position. Pull the control stalk of the right (wiper) multi-function switch toward the steering wheel to close the front washer switch. The front washer pump should operate and the front wipers should operate for about three sweep cycles after the switch is released before they park. If the front wipers are OK, but the front washers are not, go to Step 3. If the front washers are OK, but the front wipers are not, go to Step 5.

(3) Turn the ignition switch to the Off position. Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Disconnect the left headlamp and dash wire harness connector for the front washer pump/motor from the pump/motor connector receptacle. Check for continuity between the ground circuit cavity of the left headlamp and dash wire harness connector for the front washer pump/motor and a good ground. There should be continuity. If OK, go to Step 4. If not OK, repair the open ground circuit to ground (G106) as required.

(4) Reconnect the battery negative cable. Turn the ignition switch to the On position. While pulling the control stalk of the right (wiper) multi-function switch toward the steering wheel to close the front washer switch, check for battery voltage at the



## FRONT WIPERS/WASHERS (Continued)

washer pump switch sense circuit cavity of the left headlamp and dash wire harness connector for the front washer pump/motor unit. If OK, replace the faulty front washer pump/motor. If not OK, repair the open washer pump switch sense circuit between the right (wiper) multi-function switch and the front washer pump/motor unit as required.

(5) Turn the ignition switch to the Off position. Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Disconnect the instrument panel wire harness connector (Connector C2) for the Body Control Module (BCM) from the BCM connector receptacle. Reconnect the battery negative cable. Turn the ignition switch to the On position. While pulling the control stalk of the right (wiper) multi-function switch toward the steering wheel to close the front washer switch, check for battery voltage at the washer pump switch sense circuit cavity of the instrument panel wire harness connector (Connector C2) for the BCM. If OK, use a DRBIII® scan tool to diagnose the BCM. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information. If not OK, repair the open washer pump switch sense circuit between the right (wiper) multi-function switch and the BCM as required.

## CLEANING - FRONT WIPER & WASHER SYSTEM

### WIPER SYSTEM

The squeegees of wiper blades exposed to the elements for a long time tend to lose their wiping effectiveness. Periodic cleaning of the squeegees is suggested to remove any deposits of salt or road film. The wiper blades, arms, and windshield glass should only be cleaned using a sponge or soft cloth and windshield washer fluid, a mild detergent, or a non-abrasive cleaner. If the wiper blades continue to leave streaks, smears, hazing, or beading on the glass after thorough cleaning of the squeegees and the glass, the entire wiper blade assembly must be replaced.

**CAUTION: Protect the rubber squeegees of the wiper blades from any petroleum-based cleaners, solvents, or contaminants. These products can rapidly deteriorate the rubber squeegees.**

### WASHER SYSTEM

If the washer system is contaminated with foreign material, drain the washer reservoir by removing the front washer pump/motor from the reservoir. Clean foreign material from the inside of the front washer pump/motor inlet filter screen and the washer reservoir using clean washer fluid, a mild detergent, or a non-abrasive cleaner. Flush foreign material from the

washer system plumbing by first disconnecting the washer hoses from the washer nozzles, then running the washer pump/motor to run clean washer fluid or water through the system. Plugged or restricted washer nozzles should be carefully back-flushed using compressed air. If the washer nozzle obstruction cannot be cleared, replace the washer nozzle.

**CAUTION: Never introduce petroleum-based cleaners, solvents, or contaminants into the washer system. These products can rapidly deteriorate the rubber seals and hoses of the washer system, as well as the rubber squeegees of the wiper blades.**

**CAUTION: Never use compressed air to flush the washer system plumbing. Compressed air pressures are too great for the washer system plumbing components and will result in further system damage. Never use sharp instruments to clear a plugged washer nozzle or damage to the nozzle orifice and improper nozzle spray patterns will result.**

## INSPECTION - FRONT WIPER & WASHER SYSTEM

### WIPER SYSTEM

The front wiper blades and wiper arms should be inspected periodically, not just when wiper performance problems are experienced. This inspection should include the following points:

(1) Inspect the wiper arms for any indications of damage, or contamination. If the wiper arms are contaminated with any foreign material, clean them as required. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/FRONT WIPERS/WASHERS - CLEANING). If a wiper arm is damaged or corrosion is evident, replace the wiper arm with a new unit. Do not attempt to repair a wiper arm that is damaged or corroded.

(2) Carefully lift the wiper blade off of the glass. Note the action of the wiper arm hinge. The wiper arm should pivot freely at the hinge, but with no lateral looseness evident. If there is any binding evident in the wiper arm hinge, or there is evident lateral play in the wiper arm hinge, replace the wiper arm.

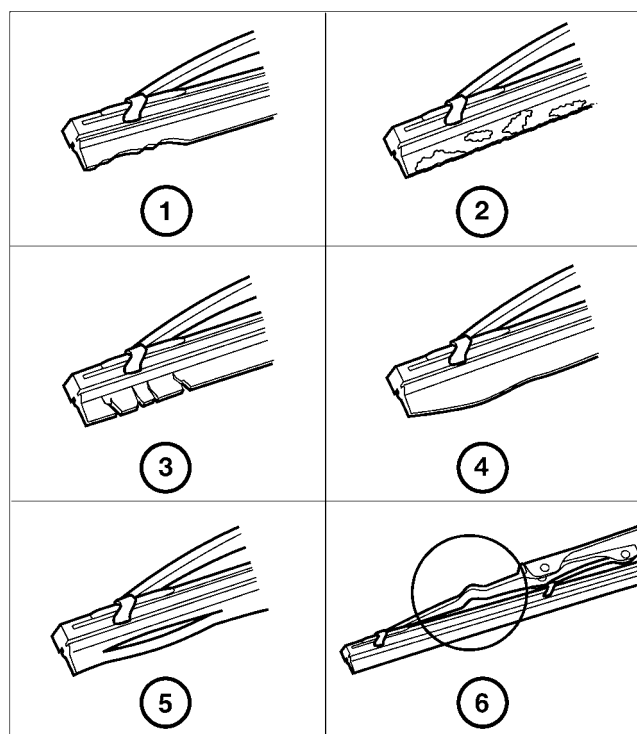
**CAUTION: Do not allow the wiper arm to spring back against the glass without the wiper blade in place or the glass may be damaged.**

(3) Once proper hinge action of the wiper arm is confirmed, check the hinge for proper spring tension. Remove the wiper blade from the wiper arm. Either place a small postal scale between the blade end of the wiper arm and the glass, or carefully lift the blade end of the arm away from the glass using a

## FRONT WIPERS/WASHERS (Continued)

small fish scale. Compare the scale readings between the right and left wiper arms. Replace a wiper arm if it has comparatively lower spring tension, as evidenced by a lower scale reading.

(4) Inspect the wiper blades and squeegees for any indications of damage, contamination, or rubber deterioration (Fig. 4). If the wiper blades or squeegees are contaminated with any foreign material, clean them and the glass as required. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/FRONT WIPERS/WASHERS - CLEANING). After cleaning the wiper blade and the glass, if the wiper blade still fails to clear the glass without smearing, streaking, chattering, hazing, or beading, replace the wiper blade. Also, if a wiper blade is damaged or the squeegee rubber is damaged or deteriorated, replace the wiper blade with a new unit. Do not attempt to repair a wiper blade that is damaged.



809ac961

**Fig. 4 Wiper Blade Inspection**

- 1 - WORN OR UNEVEN EDGES
- 2 - ROAD FILM OR FOREIGN MATERIAL DEPOSITS
- 3 - HARD, BRITTLE, OR CRACKED
- 4 - DEFORMED OR FATIGUED
- 5 - SPLIT
- 6 - DAMAGED SUPPORT COMPONENTS

## WASHER SYSTEM

The washer system components should be inspected periodically, not just when washer performance problems are experienced. This inspection should include the following points:

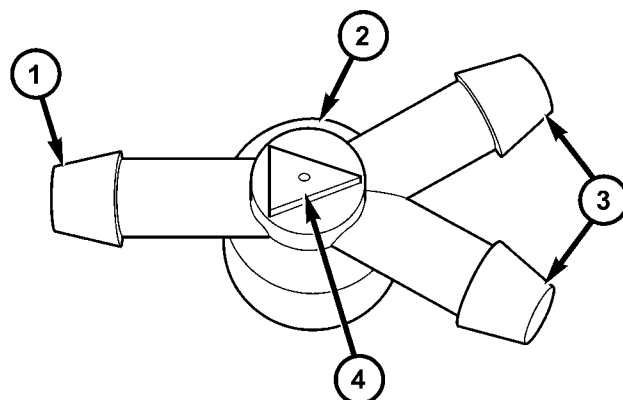
(1) Check for ice or other foreign material in the washer reservoir. If contaminated, clean and flush

the washer system. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/FRONT WIPERS/WASHERS - CLEANING).

(2) Inspect the washer plumbing for pinched, leaking, deteriorated, or incorrectly routed hoses and damaged or disconnected hose fittings. Replace damaged or deteriorated hoses and hose fittings. Leaking washer hoses can sometimes be repaired by cutting the hose at the leak and splicing it back together using an in-line connector fitting. Similarly, sections of deteriorated hose can be cut out and replaced by splicing in new sections of hose using in-line connector fittings. Whenever routing a washer hose or a wire harness containing a washer hose, it must be routed away from hot, sharp, or moving parts. Also, sharp bends that might pinch the washer hose must be avoided.

## FRONT CHECK VALVE

### DESCRIPTION



80ca39b9

**Fig. 5 Front Check Valve**

- 1 - INLET NIPPLE
- 2 - FRONT CHECK VALVE
- 3 - OUTLET NIPPLE (2)
- 4 - FLOW DIRECTION ARROW

A single front washer system check valve is standard equipment on this model, and is installed in the front washer system plumbing (Fig. 5). The front check valve is integral to the front washer nozzle plumbing wye fitting located in the cowl plenum area beneath the cowl plenum cover/grille panel near the base of the windshield. The check valve consists of a molded plastic body with a raised arrowhead molded into its center section that indicates the direction of the flow through the valve, and three barbed hose nipples formed in a wye configuration on the outside circumference of the center section of the valve body. The front check valve cannot be adjusted or repaired and, if faulty or damaged, it must be replaced.

## FRONT CHECK VALVE (Continued)

## OPERATION

The front check valve provides more than one function in this application. It serves as a wye connector fitting between the cowl grille panel and washer nozzle sections of the front washer supply hose. It prevents washer fluid from draining out of the front washer supply hoses back to the washer reservoir. This drain-back would result in a lengthy delay when the front washer switch is actuated until washer fluid was dispensed through the front washer nozzles, because the washer pump would have to refill the front washer plumbing from the reservoir to the nozzles. Such a drain-back condition could also result in water, dirt, or other outside contaminants being siphoned into the washer system through the washer nozzle orifice. This water could subsequently freeze and plug the nozzle, while other contaminants could interfere with proper nozzle operation and cause improper nozzle spray patterns. In addition, the check valve prevents washer fluid from siphoning through the washer nozzles after the washer system is turned Off.

When the washer pump pressurizes and pumps washer fluid from the reservoir through the washer plumbing, the fluid pressure unseats a diaphragm from over a sump well within the valve by overriding the spring pressure applied to it by a piston (Fig. 6). With the diaphragm unseated, washer fluid is allowed to flow toward the two washer nozzles. When the washer pump stops operating, the spring pressure on the piston seats the diaphragm over the sump well in the valve and fluid flow in either direction within the washer plumbing is prevented. The check valve cannot be adjusted or repaired and, if faulty or damaged, it must be replaced.

## REMOVAL

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Remove both front wiper arms from the wiper pivots. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/FRONT WIPERS/WASHERS/FRONT WIPER ARMS - REMOVAL).

(3) Remove the cowl plenum cover/grille panel from over the cowl plenum (Fig. 7). (Refer to 23 - BODY/EXTERIOR/COWL GRILLE - REMOVAL).

(4) From the underside of the cowl plenum cover/grille panel, disconnect the cowl plenum and washer nozzle hoses from the three barbed nipples of the front check valve

(5) Remove the front check valve from the underside of the cowl plenum cover/grille panel.

## INSTALLATION

(1) Position the front check valve to the underside of the cowl plenum cover/grille panel. Be certain that the flow direction arrow molded into the front check

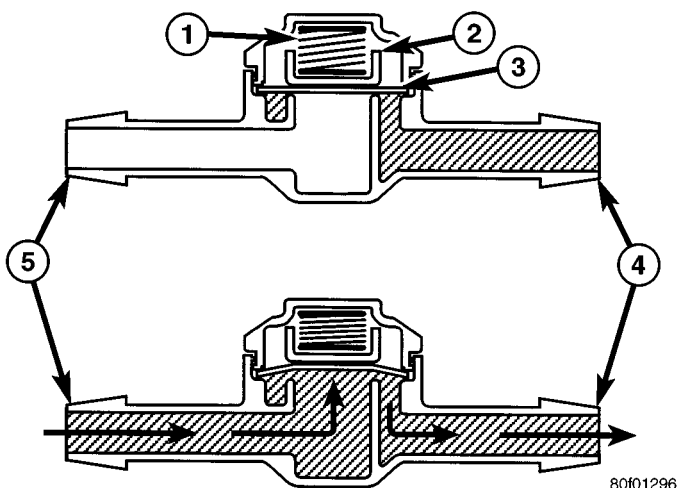


Fig. 6 Front Check Valve

- 1 - SPRING
- 2 - PISTON
- 3 - DIAPHRAGM
- 4 - TO WASHER NOZZLE
- 5 - FROM WASHER PUMP

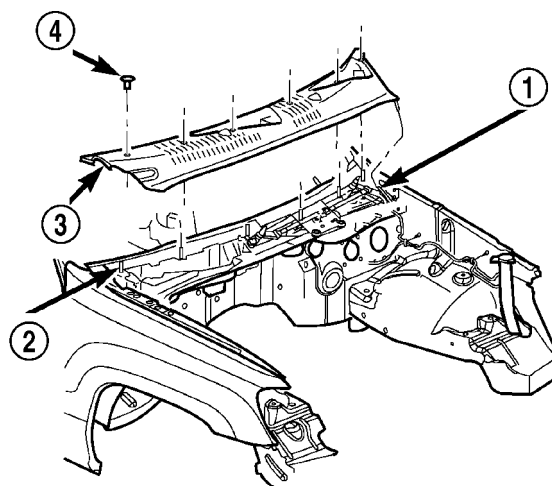


Fig. 7 Cowl Grille Cover Remove/Install

- 1 - WASHER HOSE CONNECTION
- 2 - STUDS (6)
- 3 - COWL GRILLE COVER
- 4 - PLASTIC NUT (6)

valve body is oriented towards the front washer nozzles.

(2) From the underside of the cowl plenum cover/grille panel, reconnect the cowl plenum and washer nozzle hoses to the three barbed nipples of the front check valve.

(3) Reinstall the washer hoses for the front washer nozzles into their routing clips on the underside of the cowl plenum cover/grille panel.

(4) Reinstall the cowl plenum cover/grille panel over the cowl plenum (Fig. 7). (Refer to 23 - BODY/EXTERIOR/COWL GRILLE - INSTALLATION).

## FRONT CHECK VALVE (Continued)

(5) Reinstall both front wiper arms onto the wiper pivots. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/FRONT WIPERS/WASHERS/FRONT WIPER ARMS - INSTALLATION).

(6) Close and latch the hood.

FRONT WASHER HOSES/  
TUBES

## DESCRIPTION

The front washer plumbing consists of a small diameter rubber hose that is routed from the barbed outlet nipple of the front washer pump/motor on the washer reservoir and along the reservoir filler neck into the engine compartment. Within the engine compartment, a molded plastic in-line fitting with barbed nipples joins the washer hose to another section of hose that is routed along side the left headlamp and dash wire harness to the cowl plenum area. The engine compartment washer hose passes from the engine compartment into the cowl plenum area through a dedicated hole with a rubber grommet near the left end of the cowl plenum panel.

A molded plastic elbow fitting with barbed nipples joins the engine compartment hose to the cowl plenum cover/grille panel hose. The cowl plenum cover/grille panel washer hose is routed through routing clips on the underside of the panel and connected to the inlet of the molded plastic wye fitting that includes the integral front check valve. The cowl grille cover hose is connected to one nipple on the wye fitting and the two washer nozzle hoses are connected to the other two wye fitting nipples. The washer nozzle hoses are then routed along the underside of the cowl plenum cover/grille panel to the two front washer nozzles.

Washer hose is available for service only as roll stock, which must then be cut to length. The molded plastic washer hose fittings cannot be repaired. If these fittings are faulty or damaged, they must be replaced.

## OPERATION

Washer fluid in the washer reservoir is pressurized and fed by the front washer pump/motor through the front washer system plumbing and fittings to the two front washer nozzles. Whenever routing the washer hose or a wire harness containing a washer hose, it must be routed away from hot, sharp, or moving parts; and, sharp bends that might pinch the hose must be avoided.

## FRONT WASHER NOZZLE

## DESCRIPTION

The two front washer nozzles have integral snap features that secure them in dedicated holes in the cowl plenum cover/grille panel located near the base of the windshield. The domed upper surface of the washer nozzle is visible on the top of the plenum cover/grille panel, and the nozzle orifice is oriented towards the windshield glass. The washer plumbing fittings for the washer nozzles are concealed beneath the cowl plenum cover/grille panel. These fluidic washer nozzles are constructed of molded plastic. The cowl plenum cover/grille panel must be removed from the vehicle to access the nozzles for service. The washer nozzles cannot be adjusted or repaired. If faulty or damaged, they must be replaced.

## OPERATION

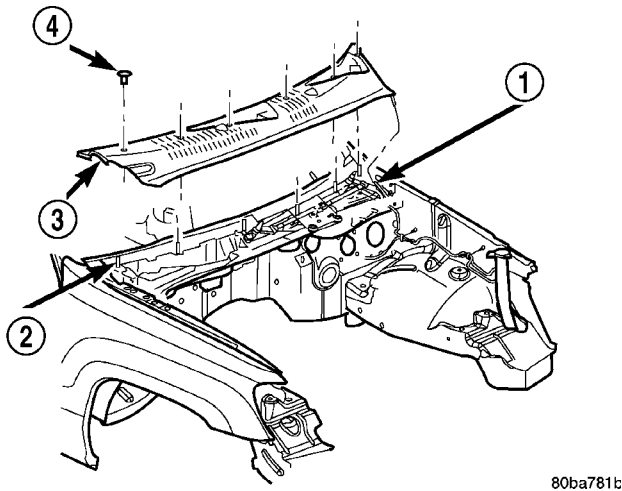
The two front washer nozzles are designed to dispense washer fluid into the wiper pattern area on the outside of the windshield glass. Pressurized washer fluid is fed to each nozzle from the washer reservoir by the front washer pump/motor through a single hose, which is attached to a barbed nipple on each front washer nozzle below the cowl plenum cover/grille panel. A fluidic matrix within the washer nozzle causes the pressurized washer fluid to be emitted from the nozzle orifice as an oscillating stream to more effectively cover a larger area of the glass to be cleaned.

## REMOVAL

- (1) Unlatch and open the hood.
- (2) Remove both front wiper arms from the wiper pivots. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/FRONT WIPERS/WASHERS/FRONT WIPER ARMS - REMOVAL).
- (3) Remove the cowl plenum cover/grille panel from over the cowl plenum (Fig. 8). (Refer to 23 - BODY/EXTERIOR/COWL GRILLE - REMOVAL).
- (4) From the underside of the cowl plenum cover/grille panel, disconnect the washer nozzle hose from the barbed nipple of the front washer nozzle.
- (5) From the underside of the cowl plenum cover/grille panel, release the integral snap features of the front washer nozzle and push the nozzle out through the mounting hole toward the top side of the cowl plenum cover/grille panel.
- (6) Remove the front washer nozzle from the top of the cowl plenum cover/grille panel.



## FRONT WASHER NOZZLE (Continued)

**Fig. 8 Cowl Grille Cover Remove/Install**

- 1 - WASHER HOSE CONNECTION
- 2 - STUDS (6)
- 3 - COWL GRILLE COVER
- 4 - PLASTIC NUT (6)

**INSTALLATION**

(1) From the top of the cowl plenum cover/grille panel, position the nipple end of the front washer nozzle through the mounting hole and engage the anti-rotation tab of the nipple into the anti-rotation notch in the mounting hole.

(2) Push firmly and evenly on the top of the front washer nozzle until the integral snap features lock into place on the underside of the cowl plenum cover/grille panel.

(3) From the underside of the cowl grille cover, reconnect the washer hose to the barbed nipple of the front washer nozzle.

(4) Reinstall the washer hose for the front washer nozzle into its routing clips on the underside of the cowl plenum cover/grille panel.

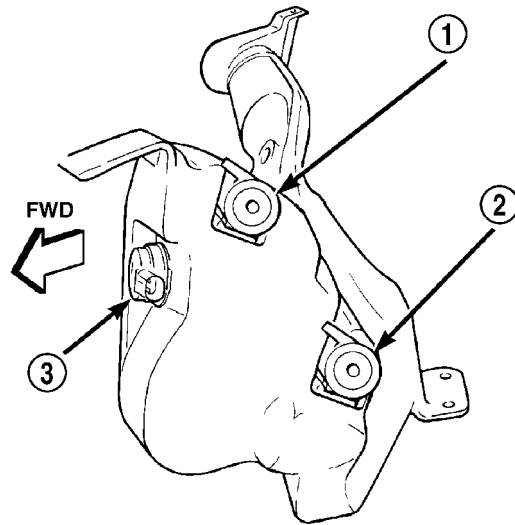
(5) Reinstall the cowl plenum cover/grille panel over the cowl plenum (Fig. 8). (Refer to 23 - BODY/EXTERIOR/COWL GRILLE - INSTALLATION).

(6) Reinstall both front wiper arms onto the wiper pivots. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/FRONT WIPERS/WASHERS/FRONT WIPER ARM - INSTALLATION).

(7) Close and latch the hood.

**FRONT WASHER PUMP/MOTOR****DESCRIPTION**

The front washer pump/motor unit is located on the outboard side and near the front of the washer reservoir, between the left front inner and outer fender panels (Fig. 9). A small permanently lubricated and sealed electric motor is coupled to the

**Fig. 9 Washer Pumps (Viewed from Bottom of Reservoir)**

- 1 - REAR WASHER PUMP/MOTOR
- 2 - FRONT WASHER PUMP/MOTOR
- 3 - WASHER FLUID LEVEL SWITCH

rotor-type washer pump. A seal flange with a large barbed inlet nipple on the pump housing passes through a rubber grommet seal installed in one of two dedicated mounting holes near the bottom of the washer reservoir. The front washer pump/motor unit is always mounted in the lower pump mounting hole of the reservoir.

A smaller barbed outlet nipple on the pump housing connects the unit to the front washer hose. The washer pump/motor unit is retained on the reservoir by the interference fit between the barbed pump inlet nipple and the grommet seal, which is a light press fit. An integral electrical connector receptacle on the top of the motor housing connects the unit to the vehicle electrical system through a dedicated take out and connector of the left headlamp and dash wire harness. The front washer pump/motor unit cannot be repaired. If faulty or damaged, the entire washer pump/motor unit must be replaced.

**OPERATION**

The front washer pump/motor unit is connected to the vehicle electrical system through a single take out and two-cavity connector of the left headlamp and dash wire harness. The washer pump/motor is grounded at all times through another take out of the left headlamp and dash wire harness with a single eyelet terminal connector that is secured under a ground screw to the top of the left inner fender shield in the engine compartment. The front washer pump/motor receives battery current on a fused ignition switch output (run-acc) circuit through the closed contacts of the momentary front washer switch cir-



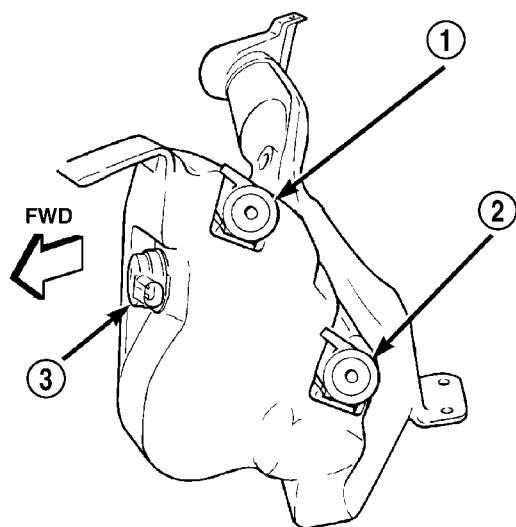
## FRONT WASHER PUMP/MOTOR (Continued)

cuity within the right multi-function switch only when the switch control stalk is pulled towards the steering wheel.

Washer fluid is gravity-fed from the washer reservoir to the inlet side of the washer pump housing. When the pump motor is energized, the rotor-type pump impeller rotates. When the pump impeller rotates, pressurized washer fluid is forced out of the pump outlet nipple, through the front washer plumbing and the front washer nozzles onto the windshield glass. The front washer pump/motor unit may be diagnosed using conventional diagnostic tools and methods.

**REMOVAL**

- (1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.
- (2) Raise and support the vehicle.
- (3) Remove the liner from the left front fender wheel house.
- (4) Disconnect the left headlamp and dash wire harness connector for the front washer pump/motor from the motor connector receptacle on the top of the motor housing (Fig. 10).



80ba7a00

**Fig. 10 Washer Pumps (Viewed from Bottom of Reservoir)**

- 1 - REAR WASHER PUMP/MOTOR  
2 - FRONT WASHER PUMP/MOTOR  
3 - WASHER FLUID LEVEL SWITCH

(5) Disconnect the washer hose from the barbed outlet nipple of the front washer pump/motor and allow the washer fluid to drain into a clean container for reuse.

(6) Using a trim stick or another suitable wide flat-bladed tool, gently pry the barbed inlet nipple of the washer pump out of the rubber grommet seal in

the reservoir. Care must be taken not to damage the reservoir.

(7) Remove the rubber grommet seal from the washer pump mounting hole in the washer reservoir and discard.

**INSTALLATION**

(1) Install a new rubber grommet seal into the washer pump mounting hole in the washer reservoir. Always use a new rubber grommet seal on the reservoir.

(2) Position the barbed inlet nipple of the washer pump to the rubber grommet seal in the reservoir (Fig. 10).

(3) Press firmly and evenly on the washer pump until the barbed inlet nipple is fully seated in the rubber grommet seal in the washer reservoir mounting hole.

(4) Reconnect the washer hose to the barbed outlet nipple of the washer pump.

(5) Reconnect the left headlamp and dash wire harness connector for the front washer pump/motor unit to the motor connector receptacle on the top of the motor housing.

(6) Reinstall the liner into the left front fender wheel house.

(7) Lower the vehicle.

(8) Refill the washer reservoir with the washer fluid drained from the reservoir during the removal procedure.

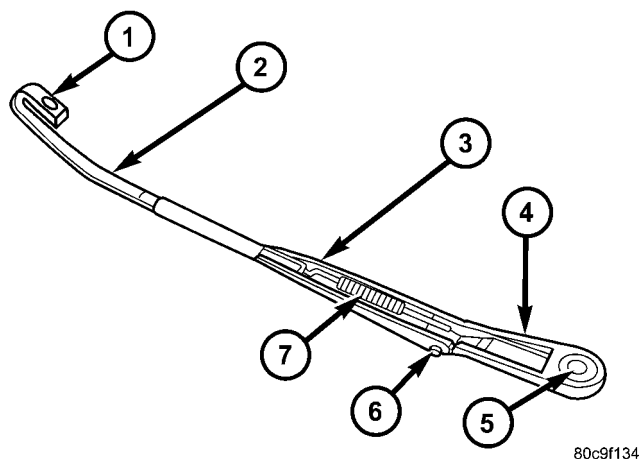
(9) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

**FRONT WIPER ARM****DESCRIPTION**

The front wiper arms are the rigid members located between the wiper pivots that protrude from the cowl plenum cover/grille panel near the base of the windshield and the wiper blades on the windshield glass (Fig. 11). These wiper arms feature an over-center hinge that allows easy access to the windshield glass for cleaning. The wiper arm has a die cast metal pivot end with a large tapered mounting hole at one end. A molded black plastic cap fits over the wiper arm retaining nut to conceal the nut and this mounting hole following wiper arm installation.

The wide end of a tapered, stamped steel channel hinges on and is secured with a hinge pin to the blade end of the wiper arm pivot end. One end of a long, rigid, stamped steel strap, with a small hole near its pivot end, is riveted and crimped within the narrow end of the stamped steel channel. The tip of the wiper blade end of this strap is bent back under itself to form a small hook. Concealed within the

## FRONT WIPER ARM (Continued)

**Fig. 11 Front Wiper Arm - Typical**

- 1 - HOOK
- 2 - STRAP
- 3 - CHANNEL
- 4 - PIVOT END
- 5 - PIVOT HOLE
- 6 - HINGE PIN
- 7 - TENSION SPRING

stamped steel channel, one end of a long spring is engaged with a wire hook on the underside of the die cast pivot end, while the other end of the spring is hooked through the small hole in the steel strap. The entire wiper arm has a satin black finish applied to all of its visible surfaces.

A wiper arm cannot be adjusted or repaired. If damaged or faulty, the entire wiper arm unit must be replaced.

**OPERATION**

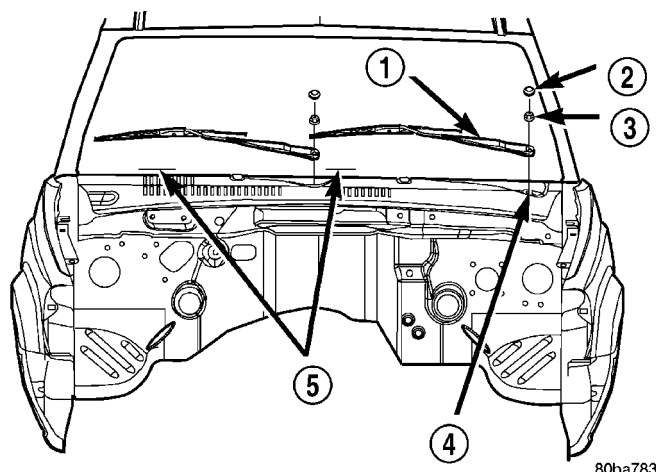
The front wiper arms are designed to mechanically transmit the motion from the wiper pivots to the wiper blades. The wiper arm must be properly indexed to the wiper pivot in order to maintain the proper wiper blade travel on the glass. The tapered mounting hole in the wiper arm pivot end interlocks with the serrations on the tapered outer circumference of the wiper pivot shaft, allowing positive engagement and finite adjustment of this connection. The mounting nut locks the wiper arm to the threaded stud of the wiper pivot shaft. The spring-loaded wiper arm hinge controls the down-force applied through the tip of the wiper arm to the wiper blade on the glass. The hook formation on the tip of the wiper arm provides a cradle for securing and latching the wiper blade pivot block to the wiper arm.

**REMOVAL**

(1) Lift the front wiper arm to its over-center position to hold the wiper blade off of the glass and

relieve the spring tension on the wiper arm to wiper pivot shaft connection.

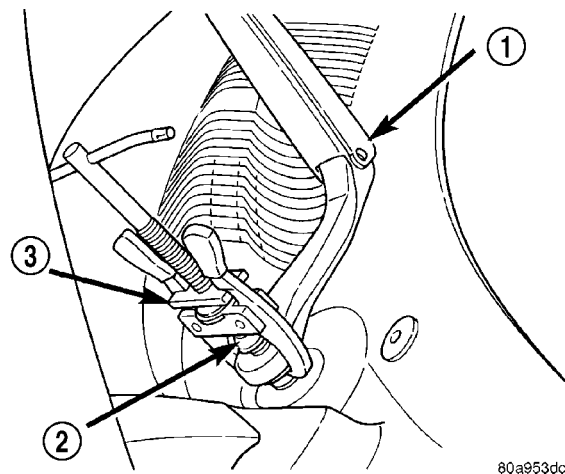
(2) Carefully pry the plastic nut cap off of the pivot end of the wiper arm (Fig. 12).

**Fig. 12 Front Wiper Arm Remove/Install**

- 1 - FRONT WIPER BLADE & ARM (2)
- 2 - CAP (2)
- 3 - NUT (2)
- 4 - PIVOT SHAFT (2)
- 5 - ALIGNMENT LINE (2)

(3) Remove the nut that secures the wiper arm to the wiper pivot shaft.

(4) If necessary, use a suitable battery terminal puller to disengage the wiper arm from the wiper pivot shaft (Fig. 13).

**Fig. 13 Wiper Arm Puller - Typical**

- 1 - WIPER ARM
- 2 - WIPER PIVOT SHAFT
- 3 - BATTERY TERMINAL PULLER

(5) Remove the front wiper arm pivot end from the wiper pivot shaft.

## FRONT WIPER ARM (Continued)

## INSTALLATION

**NOTE:** Be certain that the wiper motor is in the park position before attempting to install the front wiper arms. Turn the ignition switch to the On position and move the right (wiper) multi-function switch control knob to its Off position. If the wiper pivots move, wait until they stop moving, then turn the ignition switch back to the Off position. The wiper motor is now in its park position.

(1) The front wiper arms must be indexed to the wiper pivot shafts with the wiper motor in the park position to be properly installed. Position the front wiper arm pivot ends onto the wiper pivot shafts so that the lower edge of the blade is aligned with the wiper alignment lines located in the lower edge of the windshield glass (Fig. 12).

(2) Once the wiper blade is aligned, lift the wiper arm away from the windshield slightly to relieve the spring tension on the pivot end and push the pivot hole on the end of the wiper arm down firmly and evenly over the wiper pivot shaft.

(3) Install and tighten the nut that secures the wiper arm to the wiper pivot shaft. Tighten the nut to 24 N·m (18 ft. lbs.).

(4) Wet the windshield glass, then operate the front wipers. Turn the front wipers Off, then check for the correct wiper arm position and readjust as required.

(5) Reinstall the plastic nut cap onto the wiper arm pivot nut.

## FRONT WIPER BLADE

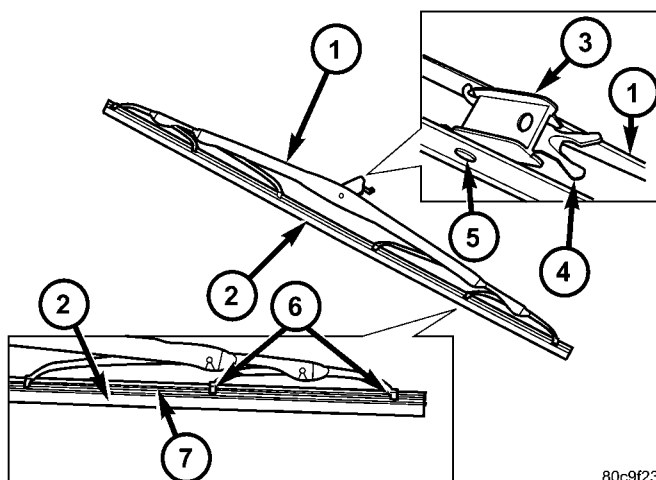
## DESCRIPTION

Each front wiper blade is secured by an integral latching pivot block to the hook formation on the tip of the front wiper arms, and rests on the glass near the base of the windshield when the wipers are not in operation (Fig. 14). The wiper blade consists of the following components:

- **Superstructure** - The superstructure includes several stamped steel bridges and links with claw formations that grip the wiper blade element. Also included in this unit is the latching, molded plastic pivot block that secures the superstructure to the wiper arm. All of the metal components of the wiper blade have a satin black finish applied.

- **Element** - The wiper element or squeegee is the resilient rubber member of the wiper blade that contacts the glass.

- **Flexor** - The flexor is a rigid metal component running along the length of each side of the wiper



80c9f231

**Fig. 14 Front Wiper Blade - Typical**

- 1 - SUPERSTRUCTURE
- 2 - ELEMENT
- 3 - PIVOT BLOCK
- 4 - RELEASE TAB
- 5 - PIVOT PIN
- 6 - CLAWS
- 7 - FLEXOR

element where it is gripped by the claws of the superstructure.

All Grand Cherokee models have two 52.50 centimeter (20.67 inch) long windshield wiper blades with non-replaceable rubber elements (squeegees). The wiper blades cannot be adjusted or repaired. If faulty, worn, or damaged the entire wiper blade unit must be replaced.

## OPERATION

The front wiper blades are moved back and forth across the glass by the front wiper arms when the wipers are being operated. The wiper blade superstructure is the flexible frame that grips the wiper blade element and evenly distributes the force of the spring-loaded wiper arm along the length of the element. The combination of the wiper arm force and the flexibility of the superstructure makes the element conform to and maintain proper contact with the glass, even as the blade is moved over the varied curvature that may be encountered across the glass surface. The wiper element flexor provides the claws of the blade superstructure with a rigid, yet flexible component on the element which can be gripped. The rubber element is designed to be stiff enough to maintain an even cleaning edge as it is drawn across the glass, yet resilient enough to conform to the glass surface and flip from one cleaning edge to the other each time the wiper blade changes directions.

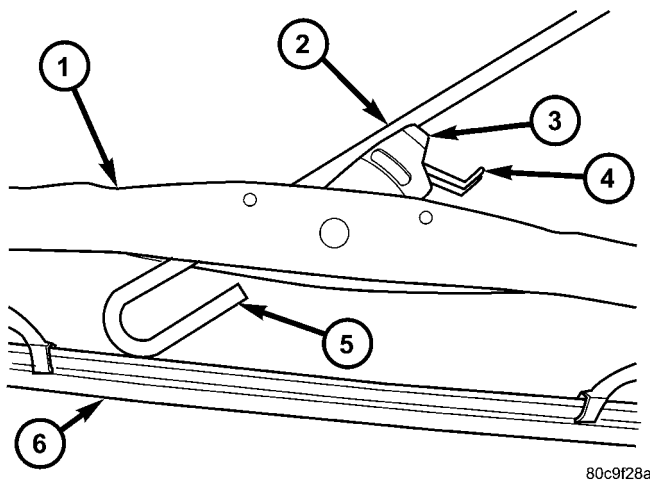
## FRONT WIPER BLADE (Continued)

## REMOVAL

**NOTE:** The notched end of the wiper element flexor should always be oriented towards the end of the wiper blade that is nearest to the wiper pivot.

(1) Lift the front wiper arm to raise the wiper blade and element off of the glass, until the wiper arm hinge is in its over-center position.

(2) To remove the wiper blade from the wiper arm, depress the pivot block latch release tab under the tip of the arm and slide the blade away from the tip towards the pivot end of the arm far enough to disengage the pivot block from the hook formation on the end of the arm (Fig. 15).



80c9f28a

**Fig. 15 Front Wiper Blade Remove/Install - Typical**

- 1 - SUPERSTRUCTURE
- 2 - WIPER ARM
- 3 - PIVOT BLOCK
- 4 - RELEASE TAB
- 5 - HOOK
- 6 - ELEMENT

(3) Extract the hook formation on the tip of the wiper arm from the opening in the wiper blade superstructure just ahead of the wiper blade pivot block/latch unit.

**CAUTION:** Do not allow the wiper arm to spring back against the glass without the wiper blade in place or the glass may be damaged.

(4) Gently lower the tip of the wiper arm onto the glass.

## INSTALLATION

**NOTE:** The notched end of the wiper element flexor should always be oriented towards the end of the wiper blade that is nearest to the wiper pivot.

(1) Lift the front wiper arm off of the windshield glass, until the wiper arm hinge is in its over-center position.

(2) Position the front wiper blade near the hook formation on the tip of the arm with the notched end of the wiper element flexor oriented towards the end of the wiper arm that is nearest to the wiper pivot.

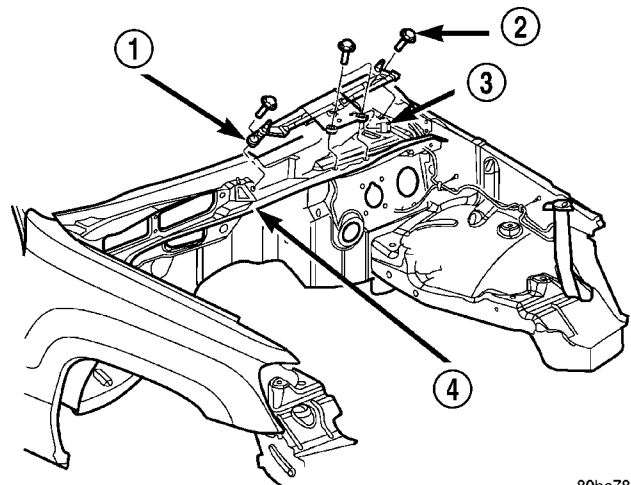
(3) Insert the hook formation on the tip of the wiper arm through the opening in the wiper blade superstructure ahead of the wiper blade pivot block/latch unit far enough to engage the pivot block with the hook (Fig. 15).

(4) Slide the wiper blade pivot block/latch up into the hook formation on the tip of the wiper arm until the latch release tab snaps into its locked position. Latch engagement will be accompanied by an audible click.

(5) Gently lower the wiper blade onto the glass.

## FRONT WIPER MODULE

## DESCRIPTION



80ba781e

**Fig. 16 Front Wiper Module**

- 1 - FRONT WIPER MODULE
- 2 - SCREW (4)
- 3 - WIRE HARNESS CONNECTOR
- 4 - LOWER COWL PLENUM PANEL

The front wiper module bracket is secured with four screws through four rubber insulators to the cowl plenum panel beneath the cowl plenum cover/grille panel (Fig. 16). The ends of the wiper pivot shafts that protrude through dedicated openings in the cowl plenum cover/grille panel to drive the wiper arms and blades are the only visible components of the front wiper module. The front wiper module consists of the following major components:

- **Bracket** - The front wiper module bracket consists of a long tubular steel main member that has a stamped pivot bracket formation near each end



## FRONT WIPER MODULE (Continued)

where the two wiper pivots are secured. A stamped steel mounting plate for the wiper motor is secured with welds near the center of the main member.

- **Crank Arm** - The front wiper motor crank arm is a stamped steel unit with a slotted hole on the driven end that is secured to the wiper motor output shaft with a nut, and a ball stud secured to the drive end.

- **Linkage** - Two stamped steel drive links connect the wiper motor crank arm to the wiper pivot lever arms. The right side drive link has a plastic socket-type bushing on each end. The left side drive link has a plastic socket-type bushing on one end, and a plastic sleeve-type bushing on the other end. The socket-type bushing on one end of each drive link is snap-fit over the ball stud on the lever arm of its respective pivot. The left side drive link sleeve-type bushing end is then fit over the motor crank arm ball stud, and the other socket-type bushing of the right side drive link is snap-fit over the exposed end of the wiper motor crank arm ball stud.

- **Motor** - The front wiper motor is secured with three screws to the motor mounting plate near the center of the wiper module bracket. The wiper motor output shaft passes through a hole in the module bracket, where a nut secures the wiper motor crank arm to the motor output shaft. The two-speed permanent magnet wiper motor features an integral transmission, an internal park switch, and an internal automatic resetting circuit breaker.

- **Pivots** - The two front wiper pivots are secured to the ends of the wiper module bracket. The lever arms that extend from the bottom of the pivot shafts each have a ball stud on their end. The upper end of each pivot shaft where the wiper arms will be fastened each is tapered and serrated with a threaded stud formation at the tip.

The front wiper module cannot be adjusted or repaired. If any component of the module is faulty or damaged, the entire front wiper module unit must be replaced. The reinforcement bracket and stud plate are available for individual service replacement.

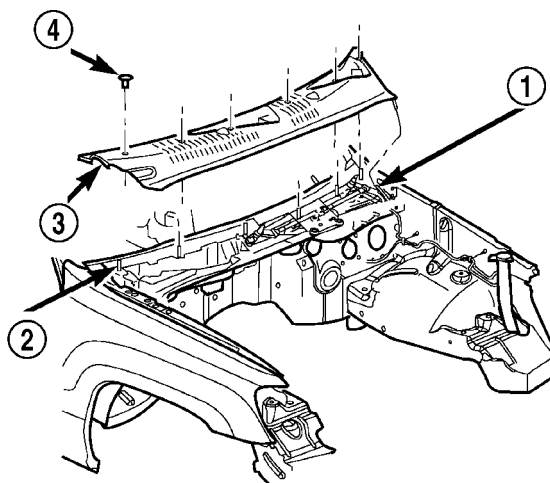
## OPERATION

The front wiper module operation is controlled by the battery current inputs received by the wiper motor from the wiper on/off and wiper high/low relays. The wiper motor speed is controlled by current flow to either the low speed or the high speed set of brushes. The park switch is a single pole, single throw, momentary switch within the wiper motor that is mechanically actuated by the wiper motor transmission components. The park switch alternately closes the wiper park switch sense circuit to ground or to battery current, depending upon the position of the wipers on the glass. This feature

allows the motor to complete its current wipe cycle after the wiper system has been turned Off, and to park the wiper blades in the lowest portion of the wipe pattern. The automatic resetting circuit breaker protects the motor from overloads. The wiper motor crank arm, the two wiper linkage members, and the two wiper pivots mechanically convert the rotary output of the wiper motor to the back and forth wiping motion of the wiper arms and blades on the glass.

## REMOVAL

- (1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.
- (2) Remove both front wiper arms from the wiper pivots. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/FRONT WIPERS/WASHERS/FRONT WIPER ARMS - REMOVAL).
- (3) Unlatch and open the hood.
- (4) Remove the cowl plenum cover/grille panel from over the cowl plenum (Fig. 17). (Refer to 23 - BODY/EXTERIOR/COWL GRILLE - REMOVAL).



80ba781c

**Fig. 17 Cowl Grille Cover Remove/Install**

- 1 - WASHER HOSE CONNECTION
- 2 - STUDS (6)
- 3 - COWL GRILLE COVER
- 4 - PLASTIC NUT (6)

- (5) Remove the four screws that secure the front wiper module to the cowl plenum panel (Fig. 18).

- (6) Lift the left end of the front wiper module far enough to access the front wiper motor wire harness connector.

- (7) Disconnect the left headlamp and dash wire harness connector for the front wiper motor from the motor pigtail wire connector.

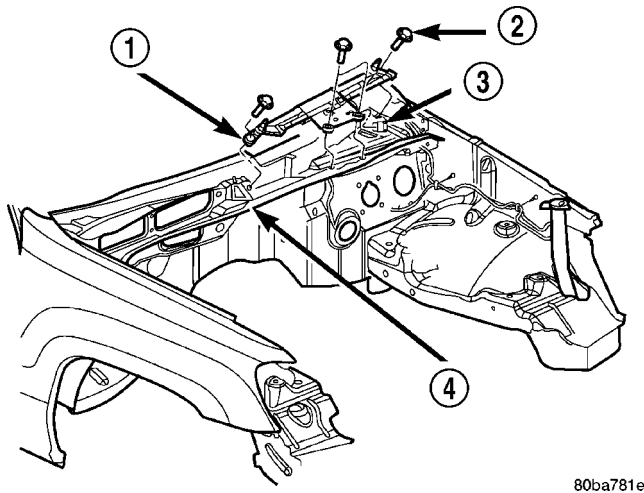
- (8) Remove the front wiper module from the cowl plenum as a unit.

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Position the front wiper module to the cowl plenum as a unit (Fig. 18).



## FRONT WIPER MODULE (Continued)



80ba781e

**Fig. 18 Front Wiper Module Remove/Install**

- 1 - FRONT WIPER MODULE
- 2 - SCREW (4)
- 3 - WIRE HARNESS CONNECTOR
- 4 - LOWER COWL PLENUM PANEL

(2) Lift the left end of the front wiper module far enough to access the front wiper motor wire harness connector.

(3) Reconnect the left headlamp and dash wire harness connector for the front wiper motor to the motor pigtail wire connector.

(4) Loosely install one of the front wiper module mounting screws to the mounting hole near the pivot on the right end of the module to locate the module in the plenum.

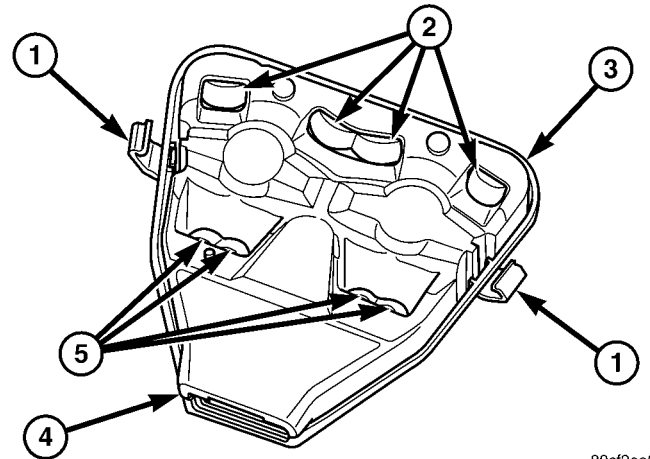
(5) Working from left to right, install and tighten the four screws that secure the front wiper module to the cowl plenum panel. Tighten the screws to 8 N·m (72 in. lbs.).

(6) Reinstall the cowl plenum cover/grille panel over the cowl plenum (Fig. 17). (Refer to 23 - BODY/EXTERIOR/COWL GRILLE - INSTALLATION).

(7) Reinstall both front wiper arms onto the wiper pivots. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/FRONT WIPERS/WASHERS/FRONT WIPER ARMS - INSTALLATION).

(8) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

(9) Close and latch the hood.



80cf2ea2

**Fig. 19 Rain Sensor Module**

- 1 - SPRING CLIP (2)
- 2 - INFRARED LENS (4)
- 3 - HOUSING
- 4 - CONNECTOR RECEPTACLE
- 5 - PHOTOCELL LENS (4)

housing of the RSM has a rectangular opening located on the upper end of the housing for the module connector receptacle, which contains four terminal pins. These terminal pins connect the rain sensor to the vehicle electrical system through a dedicated take out and connector of the overhead wire harness that extends from above the headliner. Five openings on the windshield side of the RSM housing are fitted with eight convex clear plastic lenses. A metal spring clip on each side of the housing near the bottom secures the RSM to a plastic mounting bracket that is bonded to the windshield glass. Concealed within the RSM housing is the electronic circuitry of the module, which includes four InfraRed (IR) diodes, two photocells, and a microprocessor.

The RSM software is Flash compatible, which means it can be reprogrammed using Flash reprogramming procedures. However, if any of the hardware of the RSM is damaged or faulty, the entire module must be replaced. The RSM bracket is serviced as a unit with the windshield glass. If the bracket is faulty, damaged, or separated from the windshield glass, the windshield unit must be replaced.

## RAIN SENSOR MODULE

### DESCRIPTION

The Rain Sensor Module (RSM) is the primary component of the automatic wiper system (Fig. 19). The RSM is located on the inside of the windshield, between the rear view mirror mounting button and the windshield header and is concealed behind a molded plastic trim cover that snaps over the module housing. The triangular-shaped molded black plastic

### OPERATION

The microprocessor-based Rain Sensor Module (RSM) senses moisture in the wipe pattern on the outside of the windshield glass and sends wipe commands to the Body Control Module (BCM). Four InfraRed (IR) diodes within the RSM generate IR light beams that are aimed by four of the convex optical lenses near the base of the module through the windshield glass. Four additional convex optical

## RAIN SENSOR MODULE (Continued)

lenses near the top of the RSM are focused on the IR light beams on the outside of the windshield glass and allow the two photocells within the module to sense changes in the intensity of these IR light beams. When sufficient moisture accumulates within the wipe pattern of the windshield glass, the RSM detects a change in the monitored IR light beam intensity.

The internal programming of the RSM then sends the appropriate electronic wipe command messages to the BCM over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus. The BCM responds by activating or deactivating the front wiper system. The BCM also sends electronic sensitivity level messages to the RSM over the PCI data bus based upon the driver-selected sensitivity setting of the control knob on the control stalk of the right (wiper) multi-function switch. The higher the selected sensitivity setting the more sensitive the RSM is to the accumulated moisture on the windshield glass, and the more frequently the RSM will send wipe commands to the BCM to operate the front wiper system.

The RSM operates on battery current received through a fuse in the Junction Block (JB) on a fused B(+) circuit. This circuit is switched by the power accessory (sunroof) delay relay in the JB so that the RSM will operate whenever the relay is energized by the BCM. The RSM receives ground at all times through a take out of the left body wire harness with an eyelet terminal that is secured by a ground screw to the front seat crossmember on the floor panel under the left front seat. It is important to note that the default condition for the wiper system is automatic wipers Off; therefore, if no message is received from the RSM by the BCM for more than about five seconds, the automatic wipers will be disabled and the BCM will default the front wiper system operation to the low speed continuous wipe mode.

The RSM ground and battery current inputs may be diagnosed using conventional diagnostic tools and methods. However, conventional diagnostic methods may not prove conclusive in the diagnosis of the RSM internal circuitry, the BCM, the PCI data bus network, or the electronic messages received and transmitted by the RSM over the PCI data bus. The most reliable, efficient, and accurate means to diagnose the RSM requires the use of a DRBIII® scan tool. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

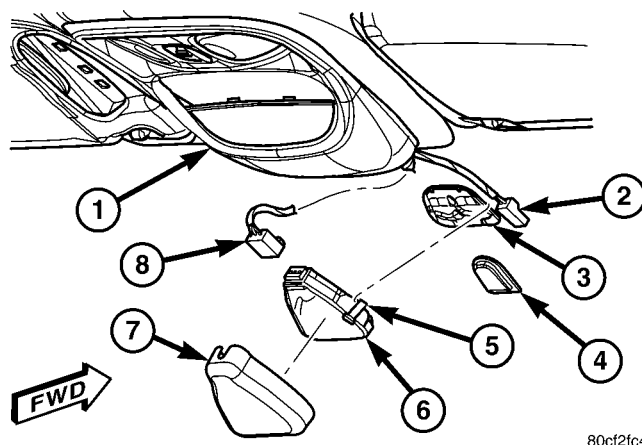
## REMOVAL

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, DRIVER AIRBAG, PASSENGER AIRBAG, SEAT BELT TENSIONER,**

**SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE IMPACT SENSOR, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Adjust the inside rear view mirror on the windshield downward far enough to access the lower edge of the Rain Sensor Module (RSM) trim cover (Fig. 20).



**Fig. 20 Rain Sensor Module Remove/Install**

- 1 - OVERHEAD CONSOLE
- 2 - REAR VIEW MIRROR CONNECTOR
- 3 - BRACKET
- 4 - REAR VIEW MIRROR BUTTON
- 5 - SPRING CLIP (2)
- 6 - RAIN SENSOR MODULE
- 7 - TRIM COVER
- 8 - WIRE HARNESS CONNECTOR

(3) Using a small thin-bladed screwdriver inserted into the notch at the bottom of trim cover, gently pry the trim cover away from the windshield glass until it unsnaps from the RSM.

(4) Using a small thin-bladed screwdriver, gently pry the spring clips on each side of the RSM away from the bracket on the windshield.

(5) Pull the RSM away from the bracket on the windshield far enough to access and disconnect the overhead wire harness connector for the module from the module connector receptacle.

(6) Remove the RSM from above the inside rear view mirror.

## RAIN SENSOR MODULE (Continued)

## INSTALLATION

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, DRIVER AIRBAG, PASSENGER AIRBAG, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE IMPACT SENSOR, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Position the Rain Sensor Module (RSM) above the inside rear view mirror (Fig. 20).

(2) Reconnect the overhead wire harness connector for the RSM to the module connector receptacle.

(3) Position the RSM to the bracket on the windshield above the inside rear view mirror.

(4) Using hand pressure, press the spring clips on each side of the RSM until they snap over the bracket on the windshield.

**NOTE:** The spring clips on the RSM will become deformed after numerous (about ten) removal and installation cycles. If the spring clips become deformed, the RSM must be replaced with a new unit.

(5) Align and engage the top of the trim cover over the top of the RSM.

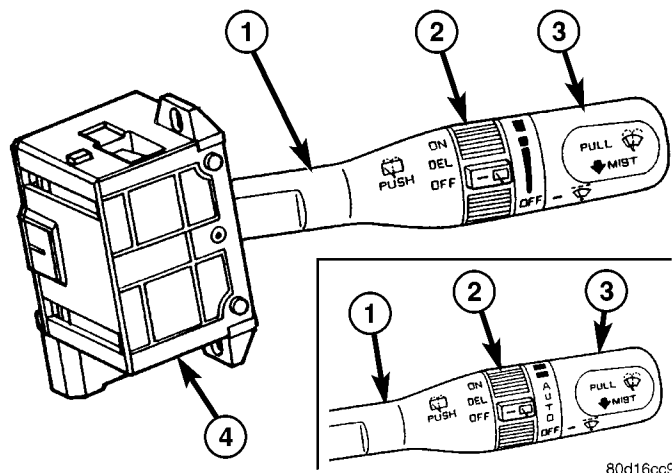
(6) Using hand pressure, press the bottom of the trim cover toward the windshield glass until it snaps over the bottom of the RSM.

(7) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

## RIGHT MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH

## DESCRIPTION

The right (wiper) multi-function switch is secured to the right side of the multi-function switch mounting housing at the top of the steering column, just below the steering wheel (Fig. 21). The only visible component of the right multi-function switch is the control stalk that extends through a dedicated opening in the right side of the steering column shrouds. The remainder of the right multi-function switch is



80d16cc9

**Fig. 21 Right (Wiper) Multi-Function Switch**

- 1 - CONTROL STALK
- 2 - REAR WIPER CONTROL SLEEVE
- 3 - FRONT WIPER CONTROL KNOB
- 4 - RIGHT (WIPER) MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH

concealed beneath the steering column shrouds. The switch housing and its control stalk are constructed of molded black plastic. A single connector receptacle containing up to ten terminal pins is located on the back of the switch housing and connects the switch to the vehicle electrical system through a take out and connector of the instrument panel wire harness. The switch is secured to the multi-function switch mounting housing near the top of the steering column by two screws.

There are two versions of the right multi-function switch: one to support the standard equipment speed sensitive intermittent front wiper system, and a second to support the optional front automatic wiper system. Each version of the right multi-function switch control stalk has both white nomenclature and International Control and Display Symbol icons applied to it, which clearly identify its many functions. The control stalk has a control knob on its end with a flattened face to allow it to be easily rotated. Just below the control knob is a knurled control sleeve. The right multi-function switch is the primary control for the front and rear wiper and washer systems, and contains switches and circuitry to provide signals to the Body Control Module (BCM) and the rear wiper module.

The right (wiper) multi-function switch cannot be adjusted or repaired. If any function of the switch is faulty, or if the switch is damaged, the entire switch unit must be replaced.

## RIGHT MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH (Continued)

The right (wiper) multi-function switch supports the following functions and features:

- **Automatic Front Wipe Mode** - On models equipped with the optional automatic wiper system, the internal circuitry and hardware of the right (wiper) multi-function switch control knob provide an automatic front wipe mode with five sensitivity positions.

- **Continuous Front Wipe Modes** - The internal circuitry and hardware of the right (wiper) multi-function switch control knob provide two continuous front wipe switch positions, low speed or high speed.

- **Continuous Rear Wipe Mode** - The internal circuitry and hardware of the right (wiper) multi-function switch control sleeve provides one continuous rear wipe switch position.

- **Front Washer Mode** - The internal circuitry and hardware of the right (wiper) multi-function switch control stalk provide front washer system operation.

- **Front Wipe-After-Wash Mode** - The internal circuitry and hardware of the right (wiper) multi-function switch control stalk provide a wipe-after-wash mode.

- **Front Wiper Mist Mode** - The internal circuitry and hardware of the right (wiper) multi-function switch control stalk provide a front wiper system mist mode.

- **Intermittent Front Wipe Mode** - The internal circuitry and hardware of the right (wiper) multi-function switch control knob provide an intermittent front wipe mode with five delay interval positions, except on models equipped with the optional automatic wiper system.

- **Intermittent Rear Wipe Mode** - The internal circuitry and hardware of the right (wiper) multi-function switch control ring provide one fixed interval intermittent rear wipe mode switch position.

- **Rear Washer Mode** - The internal circuitry and hardware of the right (wiper) multi-function switch control stalk provide rear washer system operation.

## OPERATION

The right (wiper) multi-function switch uses a combination of resistor multiplexed and conventionally switched outputs to control the many functions and features it provides. The switch receives battery current on a fused ignition switch output (run-acc) circuit from a fuse in the Junction Block (JB) whenever the ignition switch is in the On or Accessory positions, and receives ground from the Body Control Module (BCM) on a windshield wiper switch return circuit. The right (wiper) multi-function switch may be diagnosed using conventional diagnostic tools and methods.

Following are descriptions of how the right (wiper) multi-function switch control stalk operates to control the functions and features it provides:

- **Automatic Wipe Mode** - On models equipped with the optional automatic wiper system, the control knob on the end of the right (wiper) multi-function switch control stalk is rotated to one of five minor intermediate detents to select the desired automatic wipe sensitivity level. The control knob is rotated rearward (counterclockwise) to reduce the sensitivity (increase the interval between wipes), or forward (clockwise) to increase the sensitivity (decrease the interval between wipes). The right (wiper) multi-function switch provides a resistor multiplexed output to the Body Control Module (BCM) on a windshield wiper switch mux circuit. The BCM responds by sending an electronic message to the Rain Sensor Module (RSM) over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus indicating the selected sensitivity level, and by operating the front wiper system based upon electronic wipe commands received from the RSM over the PCI data bus.

- **Continuous Front Wipe Modes** - The control knob on the end of the right (wiper) multi-function switch control stalk is rotated to an intermediate detent that is one detent rearward (counterclockwise) from the full forward (clockwise) detent to select the low speed continuous front wiper mode, or to its full forward (clockwise) detent to select the high speed continuous front wiper mode. For the low speed mode, the multi-function switch provides a resistor multiplexed output to the Body Control Module (BCM) on a windshield wiper switch mux circuit, and the BCM responds by energizing the wiper on/off relay in the Power Distribution Center (PDC) for the front low speed continuous wipe mode. For the high speed mode, the multi-function switch provides the same resistor multiplexed output to the BCM on the windshield wiper switch mux circuit as the low speed mode, but also provides a ground output to the BCM on a wiper high control circuit. The BCM responds to these inputs by energizing the wiper on/off relay and the wiper high/low relay in the PDC for the front high speed continuous wipe mode.

- **Continuous Rear Wipe Mode** - The control ring on the right (wiper) multi-function switch control stalk is rotated to the most forward (clockwise) detent to select the continuous rear wiper mode. The multi-function switch provides a battery current output to the rear wiper motor on a rear wiper motor control circuit to signal the rear wiper module to operate the rear wiper motor in the continuous wipe mode.



## RIGHT MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH (Continued)

- **Front Washer Mode** - The control stalk of the right (wiper) multi-function switch is pulled toward the steering wheel to momentarily activate the front washer pump/motor in the front washer mode. The front washer pump will continue to operate in the front washer mode until the control stalk is released. The right (wiper) multi-function switch provides a battery current output on a washer pump motor switch output circuit to energize the front washer pump in the front washer mode.

- **Front Wiper Mist Mode** - The control stalk of the right (wiper) multi-function switch is pushed towards the floor to momentarily activate the front wiper motor in the mist mode. The front wiper motor will continue to operate in the mist mode until the control stalk is released. The right (wiper) multi-function switch provides a resistor multiplexed output to the Body Control Module (BCM) on a windshield wiper switch mux circuit, and the BCM responds by energizing the wiper on/off relay in the Power Distribution Center (PDC) to operate the front wiper motor momentarily at low speed to provide the front wiper mist mode.

- **Intermittent Front Wipe Mode** - On models not equipped with the optional automatic wiper system, the control knob on the end of the right (wiper) multi-function switch control stalk is rotated to one of five minor intermediate detents to select the desired intermittent front wipe delay interval. The control knob is rotated rearward (counterclockwise) to increase the delay, or forward (clockwise) to decrease the delay. The right (wiper) multi-function switch provides a resistor multiplexed output to the Body Control Module (BCM) on a windshield wiper switch mux circuit. The BCM responds by monitoring electronic vehicle speed messages received from the Powertrain Control Module (PCM) over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus, then energizing the wiper on/off relay in the Power Distribution Center (PDC) to operate the front wiper motor at the proper delay intervals.

- **Intermittent Rear Wipe Mode** - The control ring on the right (wiper) multi-function switch control stalk is rotated to the center detent to select the intermittent rear wiper mode. The right (wiper) multi-function switch provides a battery current output to the rear wiper motor on a rear wiper motor delay control circuit to signal the rear wiper module to operate the rear wiper in the intermittent wipe mode.

- **Rear Washer Mode** - The right (wiper) multi-function switch control stalk is pushed forward toward the instrument panel to a momentary posi-

tions to activate the rear washer pump/motor in the rear washer mode. The rear washer pump will continue to operate in the rear washer mode until the control stalk is released. The right (wiper) multi-function switch provides battery current on a rear washer pump motor control circuit to energize the rear washer pump in the rear washer mode.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - RIGHT MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH

Be certain to perform the diagnosis for the front wiper system, front washer system, rear wiper system, and/or rear washer system before testing the right multi-function switch. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/Front WIPERS/WASHERS - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING) or (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/REAR WIPERS/WASHERS - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). Refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, details of wire harness routing and retention, connector pin-out information and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, DRIVER AIRBAG, PASSENGER AIRBAG, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE IMPACT SENSOR, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

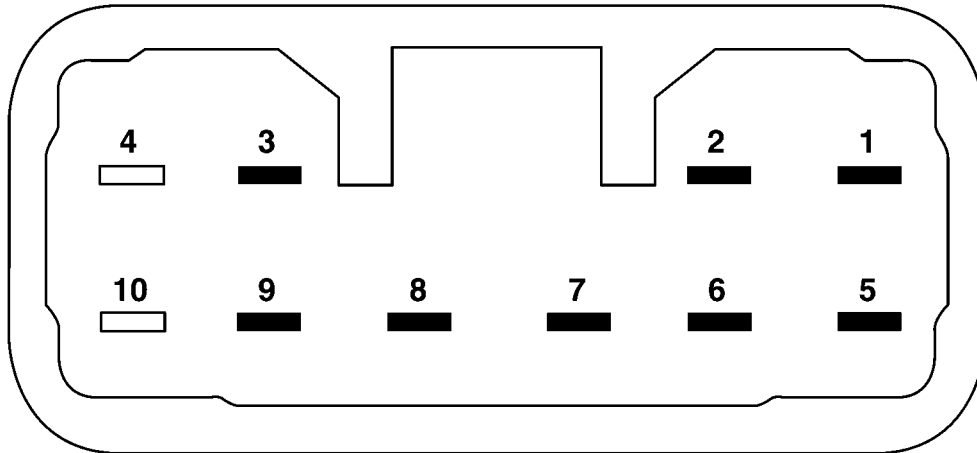
- (1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

- (2) Remove the right multi-function switch from the steering column and disconnect the instrument panel wire harness connector for the switch from the switch connector receptacle.

- (3) Using an ohmmeter, check the right multi-function switch continuity and resistances at the switch terminals as shown in the Right Multi-Function Switch test chart (Fig. 22).



## RIGHT MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH (Continued)



809c1075

**Fig. 22 Right Multi-Function Switch Tests**

RIGHT (WIPER) MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH			
FRONT WIPER/WASHER SWITCH TESTS			
SWITCH POSITION	CONTINUITY BETWEEN	RESISTANCE BETWEEN	RESISTANCE RANGE (OHMS)
Off	-	Pins 7 & 8	4286-4379
Intermittent Wipe or Sensitivity Position 1	-	Pins 7 & 8	1445-1480
Intermittent Wipe or Sensitivity Position 2	-	Pins 7 & 8	847-870
Intermittent Wipe or Sensitivity Position 3	-	Pins 7 & 8	556-573
Intermittent Wipe or Sensitivity Position 4	-	Pins 7 & 8	367-380
Intermittent Wipe or Sensitivity Position 5	-	Pins 7 & 8	218-229
Low Speed	-	Pins 7 & 8	99-106
High Speed	Pins 7 & 9	Pins 7 & 8	99-106
Mist	-	Pins 7 & 8	49-56
Wash	Pins 1 & 3	-	-
REAR WIPER/WASHER SWITCH TESTS			
SWITCH POSITION	CONTINUITY BETWEEN	RESISTANCE BETWEEN	RESISTANCE BETWEEN
Off	-	-	-
Delay	Pins 1 & 6	-	-
On	Pins 1 & 5	-	-
Wash	Pins 1 & 5 & 6 & 2	-	-

(4) If the right multi-function switch fails any of the continuity or resistance tests, replace the faulty right multi-function switch as required.

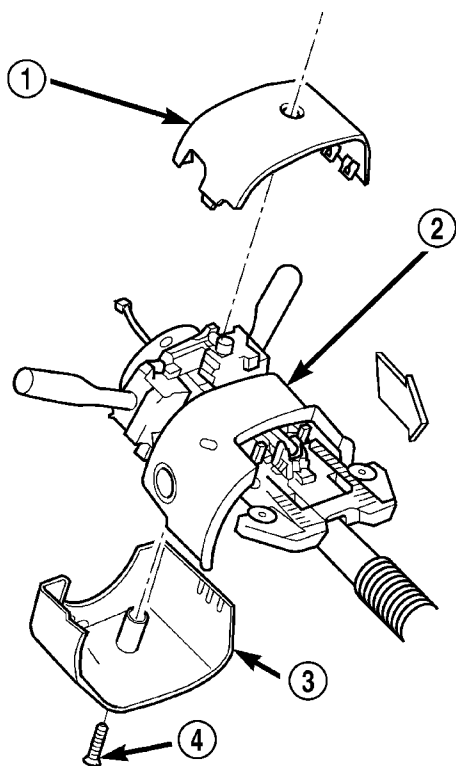
## RIGHT MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH (Continued)

## REMOVAL

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, DRIVER AIRBAG, PASSENGER AIRBAG, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE IMPACT SENSOR, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) From below the steering column, remove the screw that secures the lower tilting steering column shroud to the steering column multi-function switch mounting housing (Fig. 23).



**Fig. 23 Steering Column Shrouds Remove/Install**

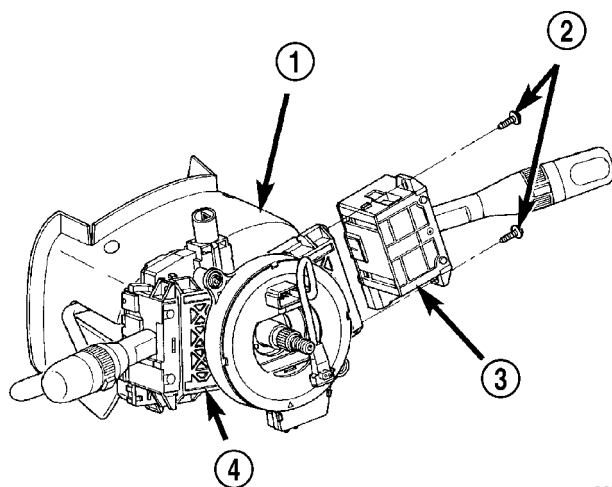
- 1 - UPPER TILTING COLUMN SHROUD
- 2 - FIXED COLUMN SHROUD
- 3 - LOWER TILTING COLUMN SHROUD
- 4 - SCREW

(3) Using hand pressure, push gently inward on both sides of the upper shroud near the parting line between the upper and lower shrouds to release the snap features that secure the two halves to each other.

(4) Remove both the upper and lower shrouds from the steering column.

(5) Disconnect the instrument panel wire harness connector for the right multi-function switch from the switch connector receptacle.

(6) Remove the two screws that secure the right multi-function switch to the multi-function switch mounting housing (Fig. 24).



80ba77ce

**Fig. 24 Right Multi-Function Switch Remove/Install**

- 1 - STEERING COLUMN
- 2 - SCREWS (2)
- 3 - RIGHT MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH
- 4 - MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH MOUNTING HOUSING

(7) Remove the right multi-function switch from the multi-function switch mounting housing.

## INSTALLATION

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, DRIVER AIRBAG, PASSENGER AIRBAG, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE IMPACT SENSOR, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

## RIGHT MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH (Continued)

(1) Position the right multi-function switch onto the multi-function switch mounting housing (Fig. 24).

(2) Install and tighten the two screws that secure the right multi-function switch to the multi-function switch mounting housing. Tighten the screws to 2.5 N·m (22 in. lbs.).

(3) Reconnect the instrument panel wire harness connector for the right multi-function switch to the switch connector receptacle.

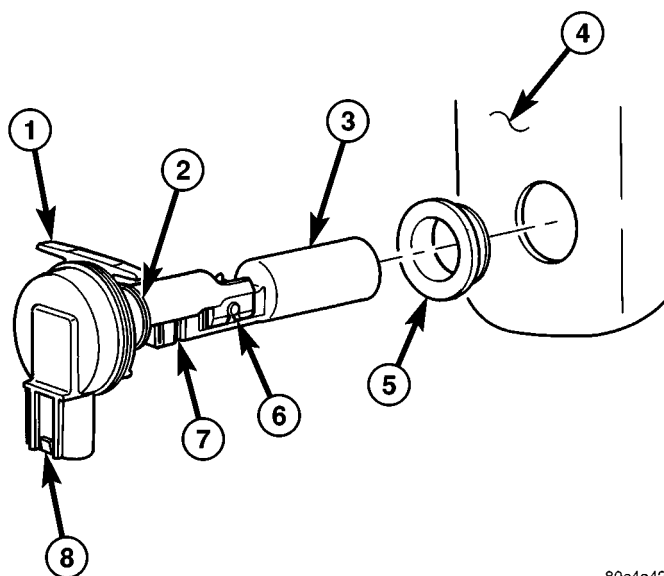
(4) Position the lower tilting steering column shroud to the underside of the steering column (Fig. 23).

(5) Install and tighten the screw that secures the lower tilting steering column shroud to the multi-function switch mounting housing. Tighten the screw to 2 N·m (17 in. lbs.).

(6) Position the upper tilting column shroud over the steering column with the hazard warning switch button inserted through the hole in the upper surface of the shroud.

(7) Align the snap features on the upper and lower shrouds and apply hand pressure to snap them together.

(8) Reconnect the battery negative cable.



80c4a42b

**Fig. 25 Washer Fluid Level Switch**

- 1 - MOUNTING FLANGE
- 2 - BARBED NIPPLE
- 3 - FLOAT
- 4 - RESERVOIR
- 5 - GROMMET SEAL
- 6 - PIVOT
- 7 - MAGNET
- 8 - CONNECTOR RECEPTACLE

## WASHER FLUID LEVEL SWITCH

### DESCRIPTION

The washer fluid level switch is a single pole, single throw reed-type switch mounted at the front of the sump area near the bottom of the washer reservoir, forward of the two washer pump/motors (Fig. 25). Only the molded plastic switch mounting flange and the integral connector receptacle are visible when the switch is installed in the reservoir. A short nipple formation extends from the inner surface of the switch mounting flange, and a barb on the nipple near the switch mounting flange is pressed through a rubber grommet seal installed in the mounting hole of the reservoir. A small, molded plastic float has two pivot pins near its center that are snapped into two receptacles near the ends of two stanchions that extend toward the float from the switch nipple formation. A small magnet is secured within the end of the float nearest the switch nipple formation, and a reed switch is concealed within the nipple. A diagnostic resistor is connected between the two switch terminals within the switch mounting flange. The washer fluid level switch cannot be adjusted or repaired. If faulty or damaged, the switch must be replaced.

### OPERATION

The washer fluid level switch uses a pivoting, oblong float to monitor the level of the washer fluid in the washer reservoir. The float contains a small magnet. When the float pivots, the proximity of this magnet to a stationary reed switch within the nipple formation of the switch changes. When the fluid level in the washer reservoir is at or above the float level, the float moves to a vertical position, the influence of the float magnetic field is removed from the reed switch, and the normally open reed switch contacts open. When the fluid level in the washer reservoir falls below the level of the pivoting float, the float moves to a horizontal position, the influence of the float magnetic field is applied to the reed switch, and the contacts of the normally open reed switch close.

The washer fluid level switch is connected to the vehicle electrical system through a dedicated take out and connector of the left headlamp and dash wire harness. The switch receives a five volt reference signal from the Body Control Module (BCM) through the washer fluid switch output circuit. The switch is grounded at all times through another take out of the left headlamp and dash wire harness with a single eyelet terminal connector that is secured under a ground screw near the top of the left front fender inner shield in the engine compartment.

When the switch closes, the BCM senses the voltage change on the circuit. The BCM is programmed

## WASHER FLUID LEVEL SWITCH (Continued)

to send low washer fluid messages to the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus. The EVIC is programmed to respond to this message by displaying the Washer Fluid Low warning and sending a chime request message back to the BCM over the PCI data bus. Then the BCM generates an audible chime tone warning.

A diagnostic resistor within the washer fluid level switch allows the BCM to monitor and diagnose this circuit. The BCM will store a Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) for any fault that it detects. For retrieval of this fault information and further diagnosis of the washer fluid level switch, the BCM, the EVIC, the PCI data bus, the BCM electronic message outputs to the EVIC that control the Low Washer Fluid indicator, or the EVIC electronic message outputs to the BCM that control chime service, a DRBIII® scan tool is required. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

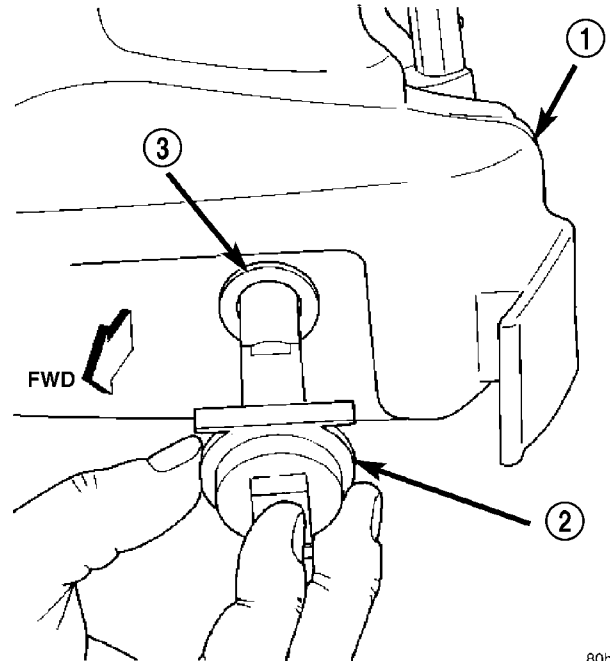
**REMOVAL**

The washer fluid level switch can be removed from the washer reservoir without removing the reservoir from the vehicle.

- (1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.
- (2) Remove the one screw that secures the washer reservoir filler neck to the left inner fender shield.
- (3) Raise and support the vehicle.
- (4) Remove the liner from the left front fender wheel house.
- (5) Disconnect the washer hose from the barbed outlet nipple of the rearmost (front) washer pump/motor unit and allow the washer fluid to drain into a clean container for reuse.
- (6) Remove the two screws that secure the inboard mounting flange of the washer reservoir to the left inner wheel house.
- (7) Pull the bottom of the washer reservoir rearward far enough to access the left headlamp and dash wire harness connector for the washer fluid level switch on the front of the reservoir.
- (8) Disconnect the left headlamp and dash wire harness connector for the washer fluid level switch from the switch connector receptacle.

**NOTE:** The pivoting float of the washer fluid level switch must be in a horizontal position within the reservoir in order to be removed. With the reservoir empty and in an upright position, the pivoting float will orient itself to the horizontal position when the switch connector receptacle is pointed straight downwards.

(9) Using a trim stick or another suitable wide flat-bladed tool, gently pry the barbed nipple of the washer fluid level switch out of the rubber grommet seal on the front of the reservoir sump (Fig. 26). Care must be taken not to damage the reservoir.



80ba79f2

**Fig. 26 Washer Fluid Level Switch Remove/Install**

- 1 - WASHER RESERVOIR
- 2 - WASHER FLUID LEVEL SWITCH
- 3 - GROMMET SEAL

(10) Remove the washer fluid level switch from the washer reservoir.

(11) Remove the rubber grommet seal from the washer fluid level switch mounting hole in the washer reservoir and discard.

**INSTALLATION**

- (1) Install a new rubber grommet seal into the washer fluid level switch mounting hole in the washer reservoir. Always use a new rubber grommet seal on the reservoir.
- (2) Insert the float of the washer fluid level switch through the rubber grommet seal and into the washer reservoir (Fig. 26). The connector receptacle of the washer fluid level switch should be pointed downward.
- (3) Using hand pressure, press firmly and evenly on the washer fluid level switch mounting flange until the barbed nipple is fully seated in the rubber grommet seal in the washer reservoir mounting hole.
- (4) Reconnect the left headlamp and dash wire harness connector for the washer fluid level switch to the switch connector receptacle.
- (5) Reconnect the washer hose to the barbed outlet nipple of the front washer pump/motor unit.

## WASHER FLUID LEVEL SWITCH (Continued)

(6) Install and tighten the two screws that secure the inboard mounting flange of the washer reservoir to the left inner wheel house. Tighten the screws to 7.4 N·m (66 in. lbs.).

(7) Reinstall the liner into the left front fender wheel house.

(8) Lower the vehicle.

(9) Install and tighten the one screw that secures the washer reservoir filler neck to the left inner fender shield. Tighten the screw to 7.4 N·m (66 in. lbs.).

(10) Fill the washer reservoir with the washer fluid drained from the reservoir during the removal procedure.

(11) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

which extends through a hole in the left front wheel house extension panel into the engine compartment. A bright yellow plastic filler cap with a rubber seal and an International Control and Display Symbol icon for "Windshield Washer" and the text "Washer Fluid Only" molded into it snaps over the open end of the filler neck. The cap hinges on and is secured to a molded-in hook formation on the rear of the reservoir filler neck.

There are separate, dedicated mounting holes on the outboard side of the reservoir provided for the front and rear washer/pump motor units, and another dedicated mounting hole on the front of the reservoir for the washer fluid level switch. The inboard side of the washer reservoir has an integral flange that is secured to the inside of the left front fender wheel house by two screws, while an integral molded tab engages a slot in the left front fender inner shield to support the outboard side of the reservoir. Another screw secures the reservoir filler neck to the left front fender inner shield near the front of the engine compartment. The left front fender wheel house inner liner must be removed to access the washer reservoir for service.

The washer reservoir cannot be repaired and, if faulty or damaged, it must be replaced. The washer reservoir, the grommet seals for the washer pump/motor units and the washer fluid level switch, and the filler cap are each available for individual service replacement.

## OPERATION

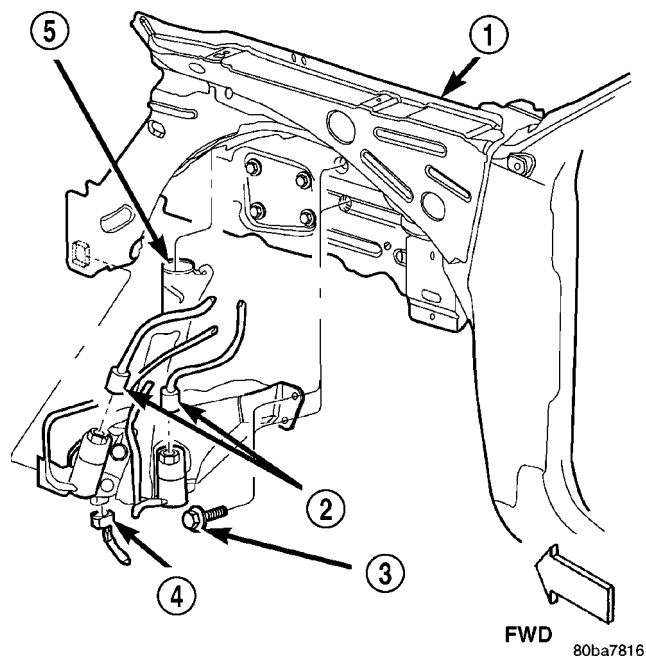
The washer fluid reservoir provides a secure, on-vehicle storage location for a large reserve of washer fluid for operation of the front and rear washer systems. The washer reservoir filler neck provides a clearly marked and readily accessible point from which to add washer fluid to the reservoir. The front and rear washer/pump motor units are located in a sump area near the front of the reservoir to be certain that washer fluid will be available to the pumps as the fluid level in the reservoir becomes depleted. The front washer pump/motor unit is mounted in the lowest position in the sump so that the front washers will operate even after the rear washer system will no longer operate. The washer fluid level switch is mounted just above the sump area of the reservoir so that there will be adequate warning to the vehicle operator that the washer fluid level is low, before the washer system will no longer operate.

## REMOVAL

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

## WASHER RESERVOIR

## DESCRIPTION



**Fig. 27 Washer Reservoir**

- 1 - LEFT FENDER INNER SHIELD
- 2 - SCREW (2)
- 3 - WASHER PUMP WIRE HARNESS CONNECTORS
- 4 - WASHER FLUID LEVEL SWITCH WIRE HARNESS CONNECTOR
- 5 - WASHER RESERVOIR

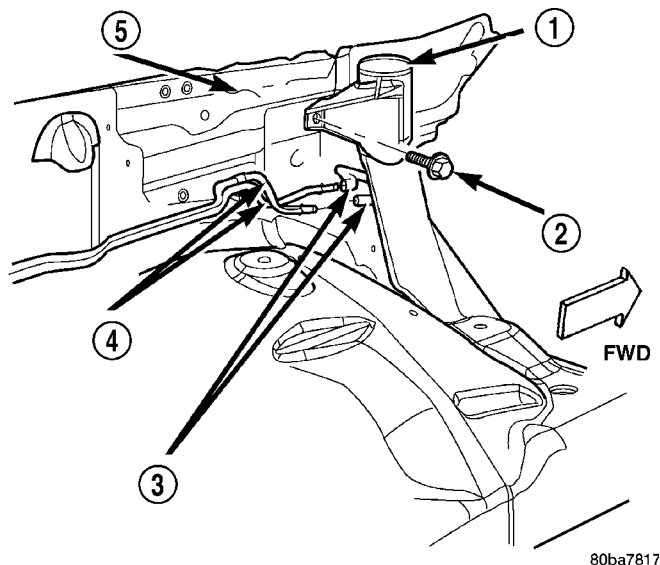
A single washer fluid reservoir is used for both the front and rear washer systems (Fig. 27). The molded plastic washer fluid reservoir is mounted on the outboard side of the left front frame rail in front of the left front wheel between the inner and outer fender panels, where it is concealed by the front inner fender liner. The only visible component of the washer reservoir is the filler neck and cap unit,



## WASHER RESERVOIR (Continued)

(2) Remove the air cleaner housing from the top of the left front fender wheel house. (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/AIR INTAKE SYSTEM/AIR CLEANER HOUSING - REMOVAL).

(3) Disconnect the two washer reservoir washer hoses from the two engine compartment washer hoses at the inline connectors located on the top of the left front fender wheel house (Fig. 28).



**Fig. 28 Washer Reservoir Filler Neck Mounting**

- 1 - WASHER RESERVOIR
- 2 - SCREW
- 3 - WASHER HOSES FROM PUMPS
- 4 - WASHER HOSES TO NOZZLES
- 5 - LEFT FENDER INNER SHIELD

(4) Open the washer reservoir filler cap and unsnap the filler cap hinge from the hook on the filler neck.

(5) Remove the one screw that secures the washer reservoir filler neck to the left inner fender shield.

(6) Raise and support the vehicle.

(7) Remove the liner from the left front fender wheel house.

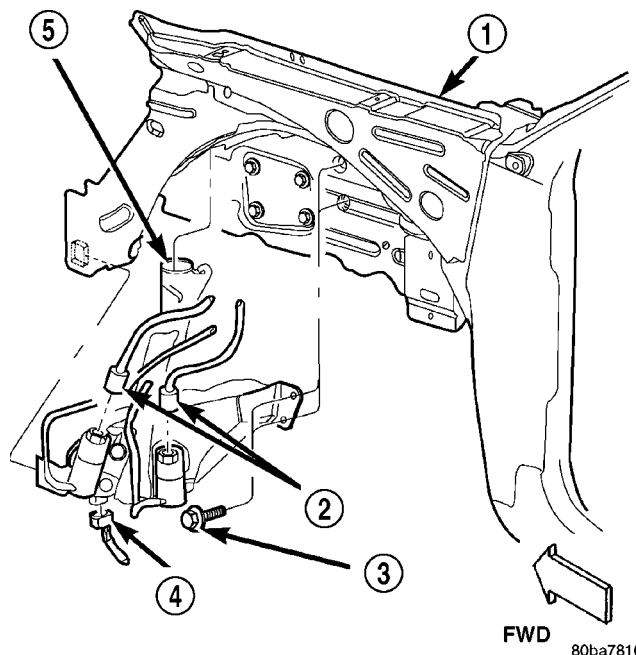
(8) Disconnect the left headlamp and dash wire harness connectors for the two washer pump/motor units from the pump/motor connector receptacles (Fig. 29).

(9) Remove the two screws that secure the inboard mounting flange of the washer reservoir to the left front inner wheel house.

(10) Pull the bottom of the washer reservoir rearward far enough to access the left headlamp and dash wire harness connector for the washer fluid level switch on the front of the reservoir.

(11) Disconnect the left headlamp and dash wire harness connector for the washer fluid level switch from the switch connector receptacle.

(12) Pull the bottom of the washer reservoir rearward far enough to disengage the outboard mounting



**Fig. 29 Washer Reservoir**

- 1 - LEFT FENDER INNER SHIELD
- 2 - SCREW (2)
- 3 - WASHER PUMP WIRE HARNESS CONNECTORS
- 4 - WASHER FLUID LEVEL SWITCH WIRE HARNESS CONNECTOR
- 5 - WASHER RESERVOIR

tab from the mounting slot on the left front inner fender shield.

(13) Rotate the washer reservoir far enough so that the inboard mounting flange clears the front suspension components, then lower the reservoir far enough to disengage the filler neck from the hole in the left front wheel house extension.

(14) Remove the washer reservoir from the left front fender wheel house.

## INSTALLATION

(1) Position the washer reservoir into the left front fender wheel house.

(2) Raise the washer reservoir filler neck through the hole in the left front fender wheelhouse extension into the engine compartment and rotate the reservoir as needed to orient the inboard mounting flange over the top of the front suspension components.

(3) Pull the bottom of the washer reservoir rearward far enough to engage the outboard mounting tab with the mounting slot in the left front inner fender shield (Fig. 29).

(4) Pull the bottom of the washer reservoir rearward far enough to access the washer fluid level switch connector receptacle on the front of the reservoir.

(5) Reconnect the left headlamp and dash wire harness connector for the washer fluid level switch to the switch connector receptacle.

## WASHER RESERVOIR (Continued)

(6) Install and tighten the two screws that secure the inboard mounting flange of the washer reservoir to the left inner wheel house. Tighten the screws to 7.4 N·m (66 in. lbs.).

(7) Reconnect the left headlamp and dash wire harness connectors for the two washer pump/motor units to the pump/motor unit connector receptacles.

(8) Reinstall the liner into the left front fender wheel house.

(9) Lower the vehicle.

(10) Install and tighten the one screw that secures the washer reservoir filler neck to the left inner fender shield (Fig. 28). Tighten the screw to 7.4 N·m (66 in. lbs.).

(11) Reinstall the washer reservoir filler cap hinge onto the hook on the filler neck and close the cap.

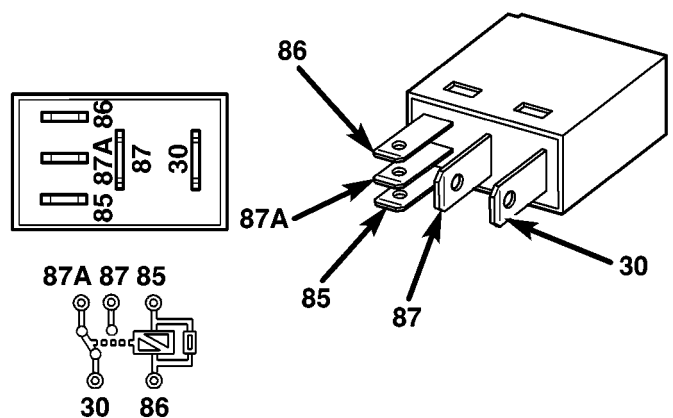
(12) Reconnect the two washer reservoir washer hoses to the two engine compartment washer hoses at the inline connectors located on the top of the left front fender wheel house.

(13) Reinstall the air cleaner housing onto the top of the left front fender wheel house. (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/AIR INTAKE SYSTEM/AIR CLEANER HOUSING - INSTALLATION).

(14) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

## WIPER HIGH/LOW RELAY

## DESCRIPTION



80ce807b

**Fig. 30 ISO Micro Relay**

- 30 - COMMON FEED
- 85 - COIL GROUND
- 86 - COIL BATTERY
- 87 - NORMALLY OPEN
- 87A - NORMALLY CLOSED

The wiper high/low relay is located in the Power Distribution Center (PDC) in the engine compartment near the battery. The wiper high/low relay is a conventional International Standards Organization

(ISO) micro relay (Fig. 30). Relays conforming to the ISO specifications have common physical dimensions, current capacities, terminal patterns, and terminal functions. The relay is contained within a small, rectangular, molded plastic housing and is connected to all of the required inputs and outputs by five integral male spade-type terminals that extend from the bottom of the relay base.

The wiper high/low relay cannot be adjusted or repaired and, if faulty or damaged, the unit must be replaced.

## OPERATION

The wiper high/low relay is an electromechanical switch that uses a low current input from the Body Control Module (BCM) to control a high current output to the front wiper motor. The movable common feed contact point is held against the fixed normally closed contact point by spring pressure. When the relay coil is energized, an electromagnetic field is produced by the coil windings. This electromagnetic field draws the movable relay contact point away from the fixed normally closed contact point, and holds it against the fixed normally open contact point. When the relay coil is de-energized, spring pressure returns the movable contact point back against the fixed normally closed contact point. A resistor is connected in parallel with the relay coil in the relay, and helps to dissipate voltage spikes and electromagnetic interference that can be generated as the electromagnetic field of the relay coil collapses.

The wiper high/low relay terminals are connected to the vehicle electrical system through a connector receptacle in the Power Distribution Center (PDC). The inputs and outputs of the wiper high/low relay include:

- **Common Feed Terminal** - The common feed terminal (30) is connected to the output of the wiper on/off relay at all times through the wiper on/off relay output circuit.

- **Coil Ground Terminal** - The coil ground terminal (85) is connected to a control output of the Body Control Module (BCM) through a front wiper high/low relay control circuit. The BCM controls front wiper motor operation by controlling a ground path through this circuit.

- **Coil Battery Terminal** - The coil battery terminal (86) receives battery current at all times from a circuit breaker in the Junction Block (JB) through a fused ignition switch output (run-acc) circuit.

- **Normally Open Terminal** - The normally open terminal (87) is connected to the high speed brush of the front wiper motor through a front wiper high/low relay high speed output circuit, and is connected to the high speed brush whenever the relay is energized.

## WIPER HIGH/LOW RELAY (Continued)

• **Normally Closed Terminal** - The normally closed terminal (87A) is connected to the low speed brush of the front wiper motor through a front wiper high/low relay low speed output circuit, and is connected to the low speed brush whenever the relay is de-energized.

The wiper high/low relay can be diagnosed using conventional diagnostic tools and methods.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - WIPER HIGH/LOW RELAY

The wiper high/low relay (Fig. 31) is located in the Power Distribution Center (PDC) in the engine compartment near the battery. Refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, details of wire harness routing and retention, connector pin-out information and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

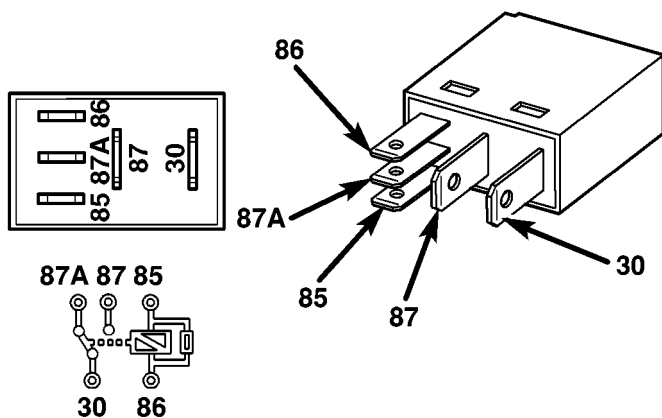


Fig. 31 ISO Micro Relay

30 - COMMON FEED  
85 - COIL GROUND  
86 - COIL BATTERY  
87 - NORMALLY OPEN  
87A - NORMALLY CLOSED

(1) Remove the wiper high/low relay from the PDC. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/WIPERS/WASHERS/WIPER HIGH/LOW RELAY - REMOVAL).

(2) A relay in the de-energized position should have continuity between terminals 87A and 30, and no continuity between terminals 87 and 30. If OK, go to Step 3. If not OK, replace the faulty relay.

(3) Resistance between terminals 85 and 86 (electromagnet) should be  $75 \pm 8$  ohms. If OK, go to Step 4. If not OK, replace the faulty relay.

(4) Connect a battery to terminals 85 and 86. There should now be continuity between terminals 30 and 87, and no continuity between terminals 87A and 30. If OK, reinstall the relay and use a DRBIII®

scan tool to perform further testing. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

## REMOVAL

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Remove the cover from the Power Distribution Center (PDC) (Fig. 32).

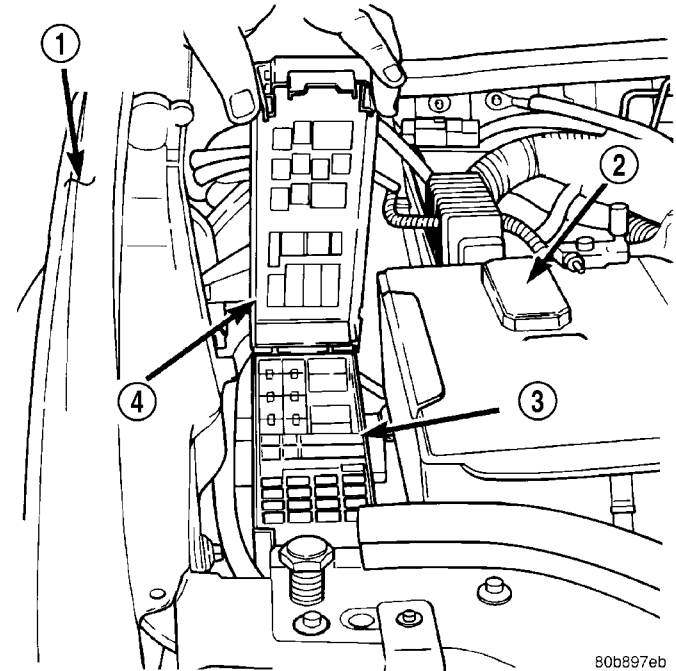


Fig. 32 Power Distribution Center

1 - RIGHT FENDER  
2 - BATTERY  
3 - POWER DISTRIBUTION CENTER  
4 - COVER

(3) See the fuse and relay layout label affixed to the underside of the PDC cover for wiper high/low relay identification and location.

(4) Remove the wiper high/low relay by grasping it firmly and pulling it straight out from the receptacle in the PDC.

## INSTALLATION

(1) See the fuse and relay layout label affixed to the underside of the PDC cover for the proper wiper high/low relay location (Fig. 32).

(2) Position the wiper high/low relay in the proper receptacle in the PDC.

(3) Align the wiper high/low relay terminals with the terminal cavities in the PDC receptacle.

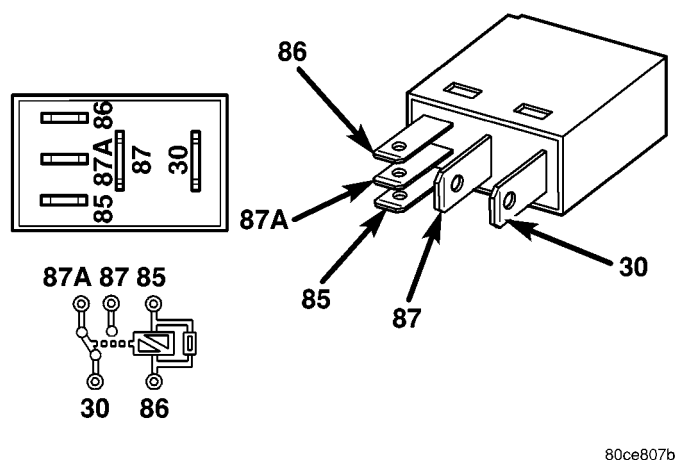
(4) Push firmly and evenly on the top of the wiper high/low relay until the terminals are fully seated in the terminal cavities in the PDC receptacle.

(5) Reinstall the cover onto the PDC.

(6) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

## WIPER ON/OFF RELAY

### DESCRIPTION



**Fig. 33 ISO Micro Relay**

30 - COMMON FEED  
85 - COIL GROUND  
86 - COIL BATTERY  
87 - NORMALLY OPEN  
87A - NORMALLY CLOSED

The wiper on/off relay is located in the Power Distribution Center (PDC) in the engine compartment near the battery. The wiper on/off relay is a conventional International Standards Organization (ISO) micro relay (Fig. 33). Relays conforming to the ISO specifications have common physical dimensions, current capacities, terminal patterns, and terminal functions. The relay is contained within a small, rectangular, molded plastic housing and is connected to all of the required inputs and outputs by five integral male spade-type terminals that extend from the bottom of the relay base.

The wiper on/off relay cannot be adjusted or repaired and, if faulty or damaged, the unit must be replaced.

### OPERATION

The wiper on/off relay is an electromechanical switch that uses a low current input from the Body Control Module (BCM) to control a high current output to the front wiper motor. The movable common feed contact point is held against the fixed normally closed contact point by spring pressure. When the relay coil is energized, an electromagnetic field is produced by the coil windings. This electromagnetic field draws the movable relay contact point away from the fixed normally closed contact point, and holds it against the fixed normally open contact point. When the relay coil is de-energized, spring pressure returns the movable contact point back

against the fixed normally closed contact point. A resistor is connected in parallel with the relay coil in the relay, and helps to dissipate voltage spikes and electromagnetic interference that can be generated as the electromagnetic field of the relay coil collapses.

The wiper on/off relay terminals are connected to the vehicle electrical system through a connector receptacle in the Power Distribution Center (PDC). The inputs and outputs of the wiper on/off relay include:

- **Common Feed Terminal** - The common feed terminal (30) is connected to the common feed terminal of the wiper high/low relay at all times through the wiper on/off relay output circuit.

- **Coil Ground Terminal** - The coil ground terminal (85) is connected to a control output of the Body Control Module (BCM) through a front wiper on/off relay control circuit. The BCM controls front wiper motor operation by controlling a ground path through this circuit.

- **Coil Battery Terminal** - The coil battery terminal (86) receives battery current at all times from a circuit breaker in the Junction Block (JB) through a fused ignition switch output (run-acc) circuit.

- **Normally Open Terminal** - The normally open terminal (87) receives battery current at all times from a circuit breaker in the Junction Block (JB) through a fused ignition switch output (run-acc) circuit, and provides battery current to the front wiper on/off relay output circuit whenever the relay is energized.

- **Normally Closed Terminal** - The normally closed terminal (87A) is connected to the wiper park switch in the front wiper motor through the front wiper park switch sense circuit, and is connected to the wiper park switch whenever the relay is de-energized.

The wiper on/off relay can be diagnosed using conventional diagnostic tools and methods.

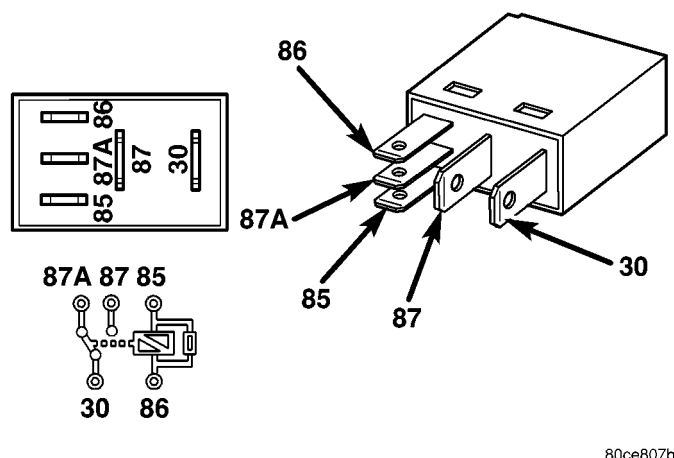
### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - WIPER ON/OFF RELAY

The wiper on/off relay (Fig. 34) is located in the Power Distribution Center (PDC) in the engine compartment near the battery. Refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, details of wire harness routing and retention, connector pin-out information and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

- (1) Remove the wiper on/off relay from the PDC. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/WIPERS/WASHERS/WIPER ON/OFF RELAY - REMOVAL).



## WIPER ON/OFF RELAY (Continued)

**Fig. 34 ISO Micro Relay**

30 - COMMON FEED  
 85 - COIL GROUND  
 86 - COIL BATTERY  
 87 - NORMALLY OPEN  
 87A - NORMALLY CLOSED

(2) A relay in the de-energized position should have continuity between terminals 87A and 30, and no continuity between terminals 87 and 30. If OK, go to Step 3. If not OK, replace the faulty relay.

(3) Resistance between terminals 85 and 86 (electromagnet) should be  $75 \pm 8$  ohms. If OK, go to Step 4. If not OK, replace the faulty relay.

(4) Connect a battery to terminals 85 and 86. There should now be continuity between terminals 30 and 87, and no continuity between terminals 87A and 30. If OK, reinstall the relay and use a DRBIII® scan tool to perform further testing. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

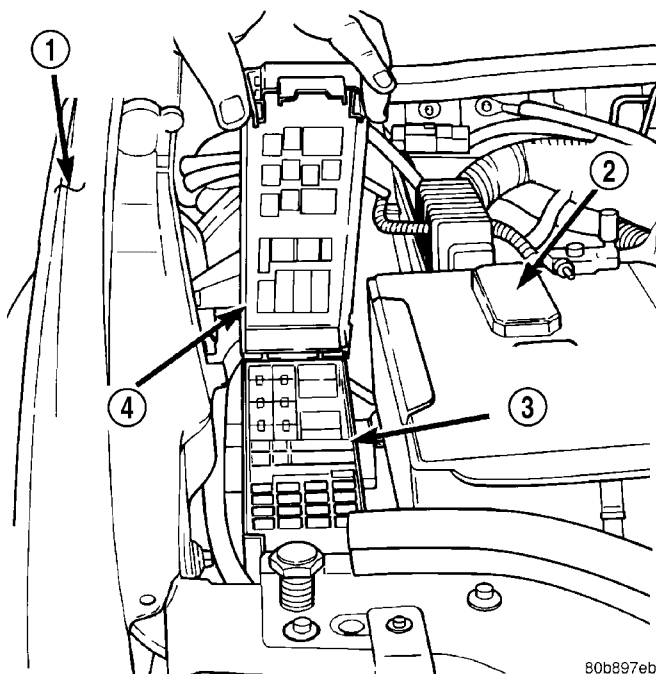
**REMOVAL**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Remove the cover from the Power Distribution Center (PDC) (Fig. 35).

(3) See the fuse and relay layout label affixed to the underside of the PDC cover for wiper on/off relay identification and location.

(4) Remove the wiper on/off relay by grasping it firmly and pulling it straight out from the receptacle in the PDC.

**Fig. 35 Power Distribution Center**

1 - RIGHT FENDER  
 2 - BATTERY  
 3 - POWER DISTRIBUTION CENTER  
 4 - COVER

**INSTALLATION**

(1) See the fuse and relay layout label affixed to the underside of the PDC cover for the proper wiper on/off relay location (Fig. 35).

(2) Position the wiper on/off relay in the proper receptacle in the PDC.

(3) Align the wiper on/off relay terminals with the terminal cavities in the PDC receptacle.

(4) Push firmly and evenly on the top of the wiper on/off relay until the terminals are fully seated in the terminal cavities in the PDC receptacle.

(5) Reinstall the cover onto the PDC.

(6) Reconnect the battery negative cable.



## REAR WIPERS/WASHERS

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>REAR WIPERS/WASHERS</b>		<b>REMOVAL</b>	43
DESCRIPTION	34	<b>INSTALLATION</b>	43
OPERATION	36	<b>REAR WIPER ARM</b>	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - REAR WIPER & WASHER SYSTEM	37	DESCRIPTION	44
CLEANING - REAR WIPER & WASHER SYSTEM	39	OPERATION	44
INSPECTION - REAR WIPER & WASHER SYSTEM	39	REMOVAL	44
<b>REAR WASHER HOSES/TUBES</b>		<b>INSTALLATION</b>	45
DESCRIPTION	40	<b>REAR WIPER BLADE</b>	
OPERATION	41	DESCRIPTION	46
<b>REAR WASHER NOZZLE</b>		OPERATION	46
DESCRIPTION	41	REMOVAL	46
OPERATION	41	<b>INSTALLATION</b>	47
REMOVAL	42	<b>REAR WIPER MODULE</b>	
INSTALLATION	42	DESCRIPTION	47
<b>REAR WASHER PUMP/MOTOR</b>		OPERATION	47
DESCRIPTION	42	REMOVAL	48
OPERATION	43	<b>INSTALLATION</b>	49
		<b>WIPER ARM PARK RAMP</b>	
		REMOVAL	49
		<b>INSTALLATION</b>	49

## REAR WIPERS/WASHERS

### DESCRIPTION

An electrically operated fixed interval intermittent rear wiper and washer system is standard factory-installed equipment on this model (Fig. 1). The rear wiper and washer system includes the following major components, which are described in further detail elsewhere in this service information:

- **Rear Washer Nozzle** - The rear washer nozzle is secured by a snap fit into a mounting hole in the liftgate outer panel above the liftgate glass. The rear washer nozzle includes an integral rear check valve.

- **Rear Washer Plumbing** - The plumbing for the rear washer system consists of rubber hoses and molded plastic fittings. The plumbing is routed along the left side of the engine compartment from the washer reservoir, through the dash into the passenger compartment, up the left cowl side and A-pillar to the headliner, and above the headliner to the rear roof header. The plumbing is then routed through grommets in the rear roof header and the liftgate inner panel to the fitting for the rear washer nozzle.

- **Rear Washer Pump/Motor** - The rear washer pump/motor unit is located in a dedicated hole on the lower outboard side of the washer reservoir, ahead of the left front wheel housing. The rear washer pump

mounting hole is located higher on the reservoir than the front washer pump mounting hole.

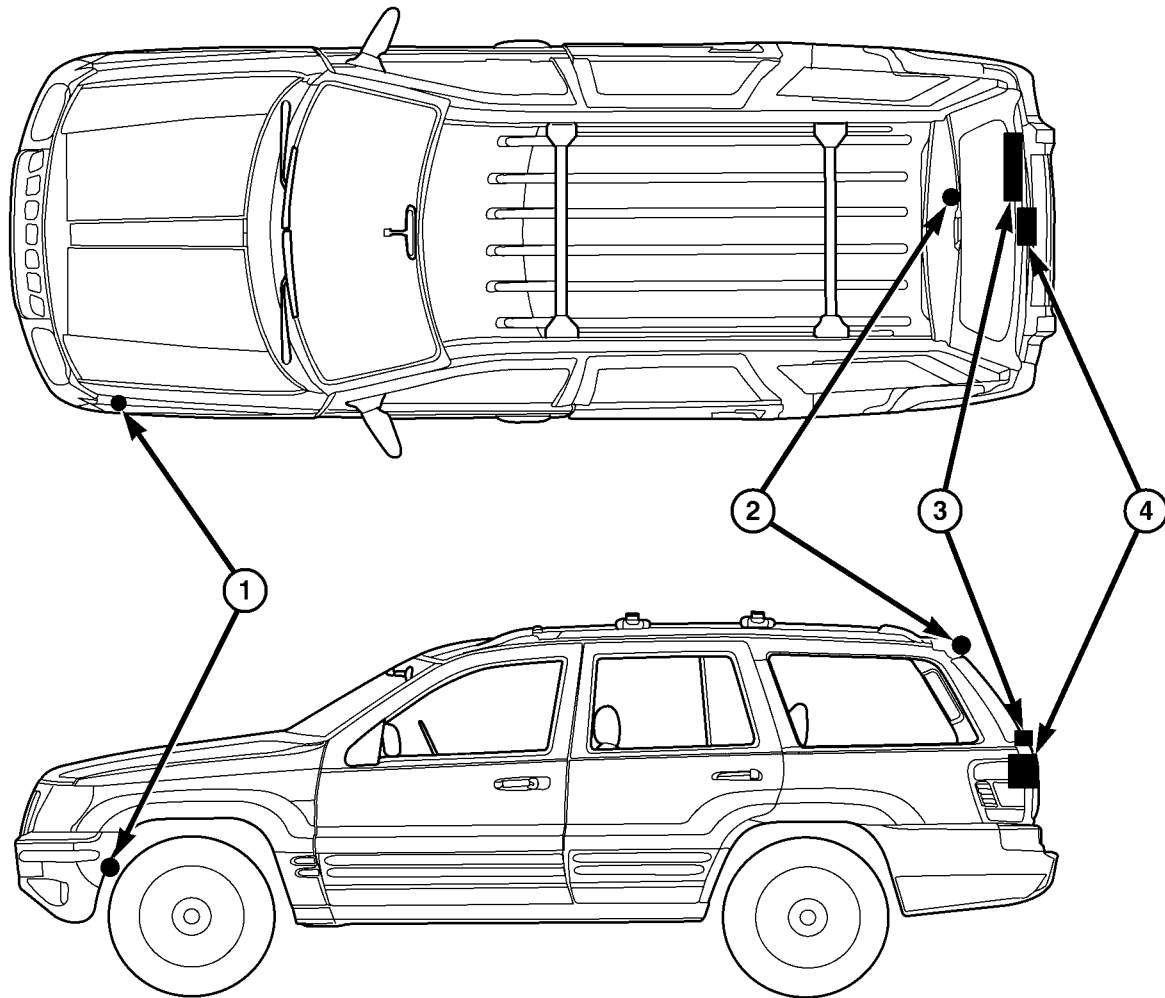
- **Rear Wiper Arm** - The single rear wiper arm is secured by a nut directly to the rear wiper motor output shaft, which extends through the center of the liftgate outer panel near the base of the liftgate flip-up glass.

- **Rear Wiper Arm Park Ramp** - The molded rubber rear wiper arm park ramp is secured with a screw to the liftgate outer panel to the right of the rear wiper motor output shaft bezel. When the rear wiper system is not in operation, the rear wiper arm is parked off of the flip-up glass on this ramp so that it will not interfere with or be damaged by the flip-up glass operation.

- **Rear Wiper Blade** - The single rear wiper blade is secured to the rear wiper arm with an integral latch, and is parked off of the liftgate flip-up glass when the rear wiper system is not in operation.

- **Rear Wiper Module** - The rear wiper motor output shaft is the only visible component of the rear wiper module. The remainder of the module is concealed within the liftgate beneath the liftgate flip-up glass opening. The rear wiper module includes the module bracket, the rear wiper motor, and the rear wiper electronic control circuitry.

## REAR WIPERS/WASHERS (Continued)



80f3f383

**Fig. 1 Rear Wiper & Washer System**

1 - REAR WASHER PUMP/MOTOR  
2 - REAR WASHER NOZZLE

3 - REAR WIPER ARM, BLADE, & PARK RAMP  
4 - REAR WIPER MODULE

- **Right Multi-Function Switch** - The right (wiper) multi-function switch is secured to the right side of the multi-function switch mounting housing near the top of the steering column, just below the steering wheel. Only the control stalk for the right multi-function switch is visible. The remainder of the switch is concealed beneath the steering column shrouds. The right multi-function switch control stalk is dedicated to providing all of the driver controls for both the front and rear wiper and washer systems.

- **Washer Reservoir** - The rear washer system shares a single reservoir with the front washer system, but has its own dedicated washer pump/motor and plumbing. The washer reservoir is concealed between the left inner fender shield and the left outer fender panel, behind the inner fender liner and ahead of the left front wheel. The washer reservoir filler neck is the only visible portion of the reservoir,

and it is accessed from the left front corner of the engine compartment.

Hard wired circuitry connects the rear wiper and washer system components to the electrical system of the vehicle. These hard wired circuits are integral to several wire harnesses, which are routed throughout the vehicle and retained by many different methods. These circuits may be connected to each other, to the vehicle electrical system and to the rear wiper and washer system components through the use of a combination of soldered splices, splice block connectors, and many different types of wire harness terminal connectors and insulators. Refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, further details on wire harness routing and retention, as well as pin-out and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

## REAR WIPERS/WASHERS (Continued)

## OPERATING MODES

The components of the rear wiper and washer system are designed to work in concert to provide the following operating modes:

- **Continuous Wipe Mode** - When the right multi-function switch control sleeve is moved to the On position, the rear wiper will be operated at a fixed speed, continual wipe cycle until the switch sleeve is moved to the Delay or Off positions, until the ignition switch is turned to the Off position, or until the liftgate flip-up glass is ajar.

- **Intermittent Wipe Mode** - When the right multi-function switch control sleeve is moved to the Delay position, the rear wiper will be operated in a fixed interval, intermittent wipe cycle until the switch sleeve is moved to the On or Off positions, until the ignition switch is turned to the Off position, until the liftgate flip-up glass is ajar, or until the right multi-function switch control stalk is pushed forward to activate the rear washer system. The intermittent wipe mode delay time has a fixed delay interval of about five to eight seconds between sweeps.

- **Washer Mode** - When the right multi-function switch control stalk is pushed forward to activate the rear washer system, washer fluid will be dispensed from the washer reservoir onto the liftgate glass through the rear washer nozzle and the rear wiper will operate in a fixed cycle (not intermittent) for as long as the rear washer pump/motor unit remains energized.

- **Wipe-After-Wash Mode** - When the right multi-function switch control stalk is released from the momentary Wash position, the wipe-after-wash feature will continue to operate the rear wiper at a fixed cycle for about three additional wiper sweeps before returning to the previously selected mode.

## OPERATION

The rear wiper and washer system is intended to provide the vehicle operator with a convenient, safe, and reliable means of maintaining visibility through the liftgate flip-up glass. The various components of this system are designed to convert electrical energy produced by the vehicle electrical system into the mechanical action of the wiper blade to wipe the outside surface of the glass, as well as into the hydraulic action of the washer system to apply washer fluid stored in an on-board reservoir to the area of the glass to be wiped. When combined, these components provide the means to effectively maintain clear visibility for the vehicle operator by removing excess accumulations of rain, snow, bugs, mud, or other minor debris from the outside liftgate flip-up glass surface that might be encountered while driving the

vehicle under numerous types of inclement operating conditions.

The vehicle operator initiates all rear wiper and washer system functions with the control stalk of the right multi-function switch that extends from the right side of the steering column, just below the steering wheel. Rotating the control sleeve on the control stalk to a detent position selects the rear wiper system operating mode. Moving the switch control stalk forward actuates the momentary rear washer system switch. The right multi-function switch provides hard wired outputs to the rear wiper module and the rear washer pump/motor unit for all rear wiper and washer system functions.

The rear wiper and washer system will only operate when the ignition switch is in the Accessory or On positions, and the liftgate flip-up glass ajar switch is closed. When the ignition switch is in the Accessory or On positions, battery current from a fuse in the Junction Block (JB) is provided to the right multi-function switch through a fused ignition switch output (run-acc) circuit. The internal circuitry of the right (wiper) control stalk of the right multi-function switch then provides battery current signals through a rear wiper motor control circuit and a rear wiper motor delay control circuit to the rear wiper module. The multi-function switch circuitry also uses this battery current input to directly control the operation of the rear washer pump/motor unit.

A separate fuse in the JB provides battery current to the electronic control circuitry of the rear wiper module through a fused B(+) circuit. The rear wiper module uses this fused B(+) input to park the rear wiper blade off of the liftgate flip-up glass if the ignition switch is turned to the Off position while the rear wiper is operating, or if the ignition switch is turned to the Off position before the rear wiper blade has parked. However, if the ignition switch is turned to the Off position while the rear wiper is operating, then turned back On, the rear wiper switch must be cycled to the Off position and back to the On or Delay position before the rear wiper will operate again. In addition, the rear wiper module receives an input from the liftgate flip-up glass ajar switch on a liftgate flip-up ajar switch sense circuit, which prevents the rear wiper from operating when the flip-up glass is not closed or fully latched.

The hard wired circuits and components of the rear wiper and washer system may be diagnosed and tested using conventional diagnostic tools and procedures.

## OPERATING MODES

Following are paragraphs that briefly describe the operation of each of the rear wiper and washer system operating modes.

## REAR WIPERS/WASHERS (Continued)

## CONTINUOUS WIPE MODE

When the On position of the control sleeve on the right (wiper) multi-function switch control stalk is selected, the multi-function switch circuitry directs a battery current signal to the rear wiper module through the rear wiper motor control circuit, causing the rear wiper to cycle continuously at a fixed speed.

## INTERMITTENT WIPE MODE

When the Delay position of the control sleeve on the right (wiper) multi-function switch control stalk is selected, the multi-function switch circuitry directs a battery current signal to the rear wiper module through the rear wiper motor delay control circuit, causing the rear wiper to cycle intermittently at a fixed delay interval.

## WASH MODE

When the control stalk of the right (wiper) multi-function switch is moved to the momentary Wash position, the multi-function switch circuitry directs battery current to the rear washer pump/motor unit through the rear washer pump motor control circuit, and battery current signals are also provided to the rear wiper module on both the rear wiper motor control circuit and the rear wiper motor delay control circuit. This will cause the rear washer pump/motor unit to be energized and the rear wiper to cycle continuously at a fixed speed for as long as the rear Wash switch is held closed.

## WIPE-AFTER-WASH MODE

When the control stalk of the right (wiper) multi-function switch is released from the momentary Wash position, the rear washer pump/motor is de-energized, but the circuitry within the rear wiper module will provide several additional wipe cycles to complete the wipe-after-wash mode cycle.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - REAR WIPER &amp; WASHER SYSTEM

## WIPER SYSTEM

The diagnosis found here addresses an electrically inoperative rear wiper system. If the rear wiper motor operates, but the wiper does not move on the liftgate flip-up glass, inspect the mechanical connection between the rear wiper arm and the rear wiper motor output shaft. If OK, replace the faulty rear wiper module. If the wiper operates, but chatters, lifts, or does not clear the glass, clean and inspect the rear wiper system components as required. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/REAR WIPERS/WASHERS - INSPECTION) and (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/REAR WIPERS/WASHERS - CLEANING). Refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring infor-

mation includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, details of wire harness routing and retention, connector pin-out information and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIR-BAGS, DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, DRIVER AIRBAG, PASSENGER AIRBAG, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE IMPACT SENSOR, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Check that the interior lighting switch on the control stalk of the left (lighting) multi-function switch is not in the dome lamp disable position. With all four doors and the liftgate closed, open the liftgate flip-up glass. The interior lamps should light. If not, depress the cargo lamp lens to actuate the cargo lamp defeat switch and the interior lamps should light. Close all four doors, the liftgate and the liftgate flip-up glass. Note whether the interior lamps remain lighted. They should turn off after about thirty seconds. If OK, go to Step 2. If not OK, go to Step 9.

(2) Check the fused B(+) fuse (Fuse 8 - 15 ampere) in the Junction Block (JB). If OK, go to Step 3. If not OK, repair the shorted circuit or component as required and replace the faulty fuse.

(3) Check for battery voltage at the fused B(+) fuse (Fuse 8 - 15 ampere) in the JB. If OK, go to Step 4. If not OK, repair the open fused B(+) circuit between the JB and the Power Distribution Center (PDC) as required.

(4) Check the fused ignition switch output (run-acc) fuse (Fuse 29 - 10 ampere) in the JB. If OK, go to Step 5. If not OK, repair the shorted circuit or component as required and replace the faulty fuse.

(5) Turn the ignition switch to the On position. Check for battery voltage at the fused ignition switch output (run-acc) fuse (Fuse 29 - 10 ampere) in the JB. If OK, turn the ignition switch to the Off position and go to Step 6. If not OK, repair the open fused ignition switch output (run-acc) circuit between the JB and the ignition switch as required.



## REAR WIPERS/WASHERS (Continued)

(6) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Disconnect the instrument panel wire harness connector for the right multi-function switch from the switch connector receptacle. Reconnect the battery negative cable. Turn the ignition switch to the On position. Check for battery voltage at the fused ignition switch output (run-acc) circuit cavity of the instrument panel wire harness connector for the right multi-function switch. If OK, go to Step 7. If not OK, repair the open fused ignition switch output (run-acc) circuit between the right multi-function switch and the JB as required.

(7) Turn the ignition switch to the Off position. Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Test the right multi-function switch. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/FRONT WIPERS/WASHERS/RIGHT MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). If the right multi-function switch tests OK, reconnect the instrument panel wire harness connector for the right multi-function switch to the switch connector receptacle and go to Step 8. If the right multi-function switch does not test OK, replace the faulty switch.

(8) Remove the liftgate inner trim panel. Disconnect the liftgate wire harness connector for the rear wiper module from the module connector receptacle. Check for continuity between the ground circuit cavity of the liftgate wire harness connector for the rear wiper module and a good ground. There should be continuity. If OK, go to Step 9. If not OK, repair the open ground circuit to ground (G301) as required.

(9) Check for continuity between the liftgate flip-up glass ajar switch sense circuit cavity of the liftgate wire harness connector for the rear wiper module and a good ground. There should be continuity with the liftgate flip-up glass open, and no continuity with the liftgate flip-up glass closed. If OK, go to Step 10. If not OK, repair the liftgate flip-up glass ajar circuit as required.

(10) Reconnect the battery negative cable. Check for battery voltage at the fused B(+) circuit cavity of the liftgate wire harness connector for the rear wiper module. If OK, go to Step 11. If not OK, repair the open fused B(+) circuit between the rear wiper module and the JB as required.

(11) Turn the ignition switch to the On position. Turn the right multi-function switch control sleeve to the Delay position. Check for battery voltage at the rear washer switch output circuit cavity of the liftgate wire harness connector for the rear wiper module. If OK, go to Step 12. If not OK, repair the open rear washer switch output circuit between the rear wiper module and the right multi-function switch as required.

(12) Turn the right multi-function switch control sleeve to the On position. Check for battery voltage

at the rear wiper motor control circuit cavity of the liftgate wire harness connector for the rear wiper module. If OK, replace the faulty rear wiper module. If not OK, repair the open rear wiper motor control circuit between the rear wiper module and the right multi-function switch as required.

**WASHER SYSTEM**

The diagnosis found here addresses an electrically inoperative rear washer system. If the rear washer pump/motor operates, but no washer fluid is emitted from the rear washer nozzle, be certain to check the fluid level in the reservoir. Also inspect the rear washer system components as required. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/REAR WIPERS/WASHERS - INSPECTION). Refer to the appropriate wiring information. The wiring information includes wiring diagrams, proper wire and connector repair procedures, details of wire harness routing and retention, connector pin-out information and location views for the various wire harness connectors, splices and grounds.

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, DRIVER AIRBAG, PASSENGER AIRBAG, SEAT BELT TENSIONER, SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, FRONT IMPACT SENSOR, SIDE IMPACT SENSOR, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Turn the ignition switch to the On position. Turn the right multi-function switch control sleeve to the On position. Check whether the rear wiper system is operating. If OK, go to Step 2. If not OK, test and repair the rear wiper system before continuing with these tests. Refer to WIPER SYSTEM.

(2) Turn the ignition switch to the Off position. Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Disconnect the left headlamp and dash wire harness connector for the rear washer pump/motor unit from the pump/motor unit connector receptacle. Check for continuity between the ground circuit cavity of the left headlamp and dash wire harness connector for the rear washer pump/motor unit and a good ground. There should be continuity. If OK, go to Step 3. If not OK, repair the open ground circuit to ground (G106) as required.



## REAR WIPERS/WASHERS (Continued)

(3) Reconnect the battery negative cable. Turn the ignition switch to the On position. Push the right multi-function switch control stalk toward the instrument panel to actuate the rear washer switch. With the rear washer switch actuated, check for battery voltage at the rear washer switch output circuit cavity of the left headlamp and dash wire harness connector for the rear washer pump/motor unit. If OK, replace the faulty rear washer pump/motor unit. If not OK, repair the open rear washer switch output circuit between the rear washer pump/motor unit and the right multi-function switch as required.

## CLEANING - REAR WIPER & WASHER SYSTEM

### WIPER SYSTEM

The squeegee of a wiper blade exposed to the elements for a long time tends to lose its wiping effectiveness. Periodic cleaning of the squeegee is suggested to remove any deposits of salt or road film. The wiper blade, arm, and liftgate flip-up glass should only be cleaned using a sponge or soft cloth and windshield washer fluid, a mild detergent, or a non-abrasive cleaner. If the wiper blade continues to leave streaks, smears, hazing, or beading on the glass after thorough cleaning of the squeegees and the glass, the entire wiper blade assembly must be replaced.

**CAUTION:** Protect the rubber squeegee of the wiper blade from any petroleum-based cleaners, solvents, or contaminants. These products can rapidly deteriorate the rubber squeegee.

### WASHER SYSTEM

If the washer system is contaminated with foreign material, drain the washer reservoir by removing the rear washer pump/motor from the reservoir. Clean foreign material from the inside of the rear washer pump/motor inlet filter screen and the washer reservoir using clean washer fluid, a mild detergent, or a non-abrasive cleaner. Flush foreign material from the washer system plumbing by first disconnecting the washer hose from the washer nozzle, then running the rear washer pump/motor to run clean washer fluid or water through the system. A plugged or restricted washer nozzle should be carefully back-flushed using compressed air. If the washer nozzle obstruction cannot be cleared, replace the washer nozzle.

**CAUTION:** Never introduce petroleum-based cleaners, solvents, or contaminants into the washer system. These products can rapidly deteriorate the rubber seals and hoses of the washer system, as well as the rubber squeegee of the wiper blade.

**CAUTION:** Never use compressed air to flush the washer system plumbing. Compressed air pressures are too great for the washer system plumbing components and will result in further system damage. Never use sharp instruments to clear a plugged washer nozzle or damage to the nozzle orifice and improper nozzle spray patterns will result.

## INSPECTION - REAR WIPER & WASHER SYSTEM

### WIPER SYSTEM

The rear wiper blade and wiper arm should be inspected periodically, not just when wiper performance problems are experienced. This inspection should include the following points:

(1) Inspect the wiper arm for any indications of damage, or contamination. If the wiper arm is contaminated with any foreign material, clean as required. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/REAR WIPERS/WASHERS - CLEANING). If a wiper arm is damaged or corrosion is evident, replace the wiper arm with a new unit. Do not attempt to repair a wiper arm that is damaged or corroded.

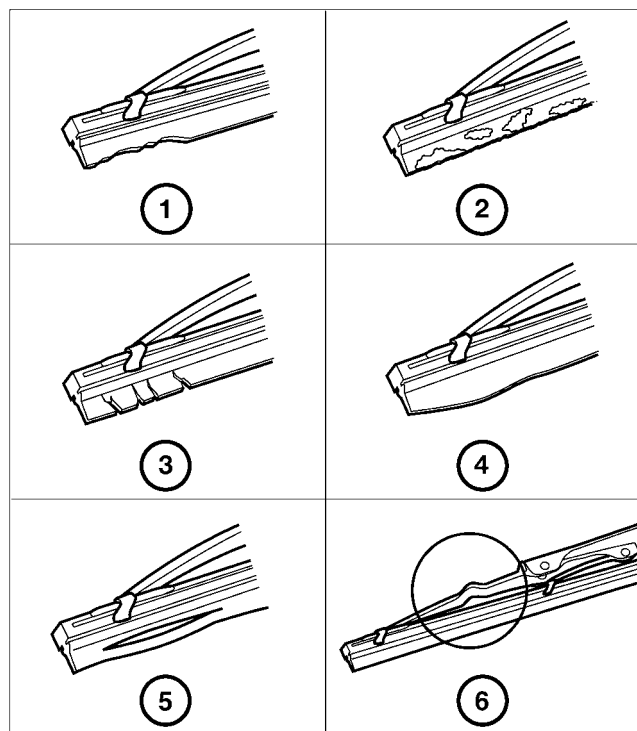
(2) Carefully lift the wiper arm off of the park ramp. Note the action of the wiper arm hinge. The wiper arm should pivot freely at the hinge, but with no lateral looseness evident. If there is any binding evident in the wiper arm hinge, or there is evident lateral play in the wiper arm hinge, replace the wiper arm.

**CAUTION:** Do not allow the wiper arm to spring back against the glass without the wiper blade in place or the glass may be damaged.

(3) Once proper hinge action of the wiper arm is confirmed, check the hinge for proper spring tension. The spring tension of the wiper arm should be sufficient to cause the rubber squeegee to conform to the curvature of the glass. Replace a wiper arm if it has low or no spring tension.

(4) Inspect the wiper blade and squeegee for any indications of damage, contamination, or rubber deterioration (Fig. 2). If the wiper blade or squeegee is contaminated with any foreign material, clean them and the glass as required. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/REAR WIPERS/WASHERS - CLEANING). If after cleaning the wiper blade and the glass, the wiper blade fails to clear the glass without smearing, streaking, chattering, hazing, or beading, replace the wiper blade. Also, if a wiper blade is damaged or if the squeegee rubber is damaged or deteriorated, replace the wiper blade with a new unit. Do not attempt to repair a wiper blade that is damaged.

## REAR WIPERS/WASHERS (Continued)



809ac961

**Fig. 2 Wiper Blade Inspection**

- 1 - WORN OR UNEVEN EDGES
- 2 - ROAD FILM OR FOREIGN MATERIAL DEPOSITS
- 3 - HARD, BRITTLE, OR CRACKED
- 4 - DEFORMED OR FATIGUED
- 5 - SPLIT
- 6 - DAMAGED SUPPORT COMPONENTS

**WASHER SYSTEM**

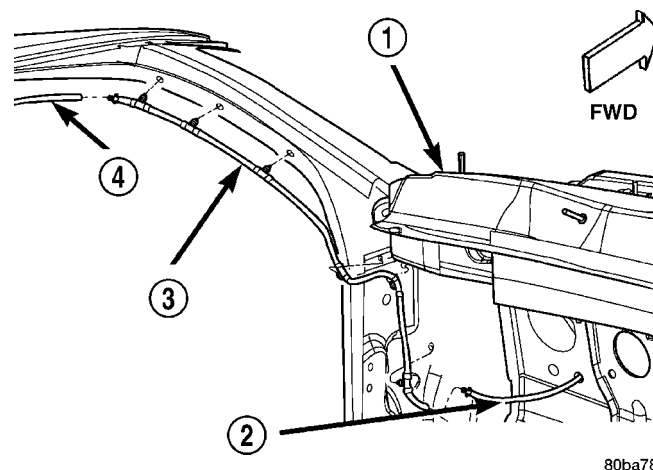
The washer system components should be inspected periodically, not just when washer performance problems are experienced. This inspection should include the following points:

(1) Check for ice or other foreign material in the washer reservoir. If contaminated, clean and flush the washer system. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/REAR WIPERS/WASHERS - CLEANING).

(2) Inspect the washer plumbing for pinched, leaking, deteriorated, or incorrectly routed hoses and damaged or disconnected hose fittings. Replace damaged or deteriorated hoses and hose fittings. Leaking washer hoses can sometimes be repaired by cutting the hose at the leak and splicing it back together using an in-line connector fitting. Similarly, sections of deteriorated hose can be cut out and replaced by splicing in new sections of hose using in-line connector fittings. Whenever routing a washer hose or a wire harness containing a washer hose, it must be routed away from hot, sharp, or moving parts. Also, sharp bends that might pinch the washer hose must be avoided.

## REAR WASHER HOSES/TUBES

### DESCRIPTION



80ba7815

**Fig. 3 Rear Washer Plumbing**

- 1 - UPPER COWL PLENUM PANEL
- 2 - WASHER HOSE FROM ENGINE COMPARTMENT
- 3 - A-PILLAR WASHER HOSE
- 4 - HEADLINER WASHER HOSE

The rear washer plumbing consists of small diameter rubber hoses and molded plastic in-line connector fittings (Fig. 3). The washer reservoir hose is connected to the barbed outlet nipple of the rear washer pump/motor unit below the left front wheel house extension and routed up the washer reservoir filler neck to the engine compartment. Just rearward of the washer reservoir filler neck in the engine compartment, an in-line connector with barbed nipples joins the reservoir hose to the engine compartment hose. The engine compartment hose is routed along the top of the left front fender wheel house to the dash panel. The engine compartment hose passes through a hole with a rubber grommet in the dash panel into the passenger compartment.

Below the instrument panel in the passenger compartment near the left cowl side inner panel, another in-line connector joins the engine compartment hose to the A-pillar hose. The A-pillar hose is routed up the left A-pillar to the headliner. At the headliner, an in-line connector joins the A-pillar hose to the headliner hose. The headliner hose is routed above the headliner and along the left roof side rail to the rear of the vehicle. At the rear of the vehicle, the headliner hose is routed above the headliner and along the upper liftgate opening panel toward the right side of the vehicle. The headliner hose then passes through a hole with a rubber grommet in the upper liftgate opening panel and through another hole with a rubber grommet into the upper inner liftgate panel to the rear washer nozzle.

## REAR WASHER HOSES/TUBES (Continued)

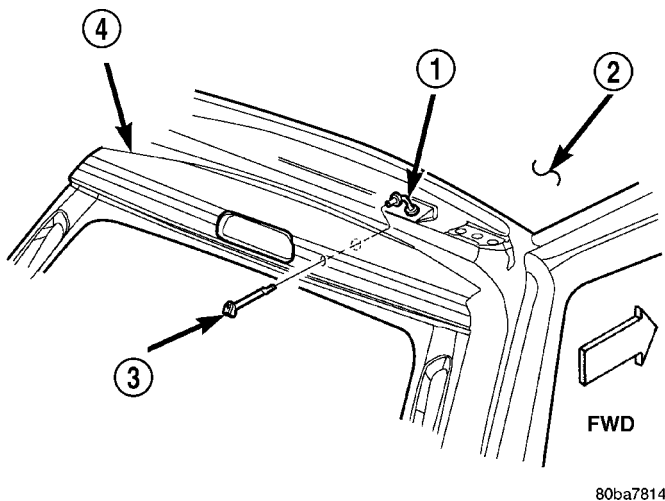
Washer hose is available for service only as roll stock, which must then be cut to length. The headliner washer hose is integral to the headliner unit and, if faulty or damaged, the headliner unit must be replaced. The molded plastic washer hose fittings cannot be repaired. If these fittings are faulty or damaged, they must be replaced.

## OPERATION

Washer fluid in the washer reservoir is pressurized and fed by the rear washer pump/motor through the rear washer system plumbing and fittings to the rear washer nozzle on the liftgate outer panel above the liftgate flip-up glass. Whenever routing the washer hose or a wire harness containing a washer hose, it must be routed away from hot, sharp, or moving parts; and, sharp bends that might pinch the hose must be avoided.

## REAR WASHER NOZZLE

## DESCRIPTION



**Fig. 4 Rear Washer Nozzle**

- 1 - HEADLINER WASHER HOSE
- 2 - ROOF PANEL
- 3 - REAR WASHER NOZZLE
- 4 - LIFTGATE

The rear washer nozzle is a fluidic type unit constructed of molded plastic that includes an integral check valve (Fig. 4). The nozzle is secured by a snap fit in a dedicated mounting hole located in the outer liftgate panel above the liftgate flip-up glass. A rubber gasket on the back of the nozzle seals the nozzle to the liftgate panel opening. The back of the nozzle includes an integral alignment feature, an integral tab, and an integral latch feature, an integral check valve, and the washer plumbing nipple which are all

concealed between the liftgate outer and inner panels.

Within the rear nozzle body, a small check ball is held against an integral valve seat at the inlet end of the nozzle by a small coiled spring. The rear washer nozzle and check valve unit cannot be adjusted or repaired. If faulty or damaged, the entire nozzle and check valve unit must be replaced.

## OPERATION

The rear washer nozzle is designed to dispense washer fluid into the wiper pattern area on the outside of the liftgate flip-up glass. Pressurized washer fluid is fed to the nozzle from the washer reservoir by the rear washer pump/motor through a single hose, which is attached to a barbed nipple on the back of the rear washer nozzle. A fluidic matrix within the washer nozzle causes the pressurized washer fluid to be emitted from the nozzle orifice as an oscillating stream to more effectively cover a larger area of the glass to be cleaned.

The integral rear nozzle check valve provides more than one function in this application. It prevents washer fluid from draining out of the rear washer supply hoses back to the washer reservoir. This drain-back would result in a lengthy delay from when the rear washer switch is actuated until washer fluid was dispensed through the rear washer nozzle, because the rear washer pump would have to refill the rear washer plumbing from the reservoir to the nozzle. Such a drain-back condition could also result in water, dirt, or other outside contaminants being siphoned into the washer system through the washer nozzle orifice. This water could subsequently freeze and plug the nozzle, while other contaminants could interfere with proper nozzle operation and cause improper nozzle spray patterns. In addition, the rear check valve prevents washer fluid from siphoning out through the rear washer nozzle after the rear washer system is turned Off.

When the rear washer pump pressurizes and pumps washer fluid from the reservoir through the rear washer plumbing, the fluid pressure unseats a check ball from a seat within the valve by overriding the pressure applied to the ball within the valve by a small coiled spring. With the check ball unseated, washer fluid is allowed to flow toward the rear washer nozzle. When the rear washer pump stops operating, the spring pressure on the check ball seats the ball in the valve and fluid flow in either direction within the rear washer plumbing is prevented. The rear washer nozzle and check valve unit cannot be adjusted or repaired and, if faulty or damaged, it must be replaced.

## REAR WASHER NOZZLE (Continued)

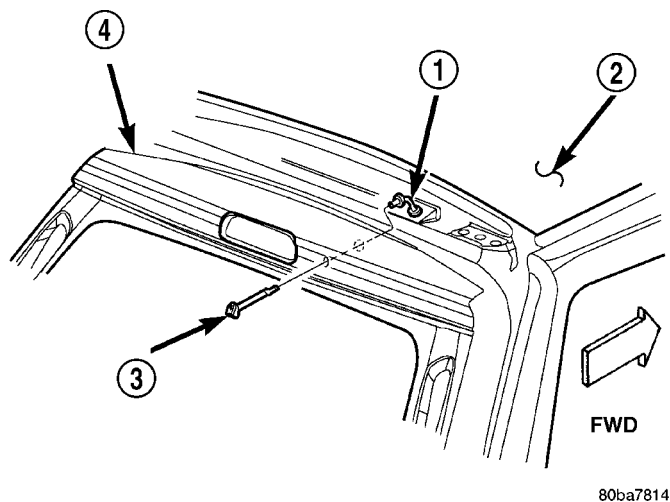
## REMOVAL

The rear washer system check valve is integral to the rear washer nozzle.

**NOTE:** The rear washer nozzle latch feature is a one time component, and will be damaged if the nozzle is removed from its mounting hole for service. If removed from its mounting hole for any reason, the rear washer nozzle must be replaced with a new unit.

(1) Using a trim stick or another suitable wide flat-bladed tool, gently pry the bottom of the rear washer nozzle away from the liftgate outer panel until the latch features that secure it in the mounting hole of the panel unsnap.

(2) Pull the rear washer nozzle out from the liftgate outer panel far enough to access the washer supply hose (Fig. 5).



80ba7814

**Fig. 5 Rear Washer Nozzle Remove/Install**

- 1 - HEADLINER WASHER HOSE
- 2 - ROOF PANEL
- 3 - REAR WASHER NOZZLE
- 4 - LIFTGATE

(3) Disconnect the washer supply hose from the barbed nipple of the rear washer nozzle.

(4) Discard the rear washer nozzle.

## INSTALLATION

**NOTE:** The rear washer nozzle latch feature is a one time component, and will be damaged if the nozzle is removed from its mounting hole for service. If removed from its mounting hole for any reason, the rear washer nozzle must be replaced with a new unit.

(1) Position the new rear washer nozzle to the liftgate outer panel (Fig. 5).

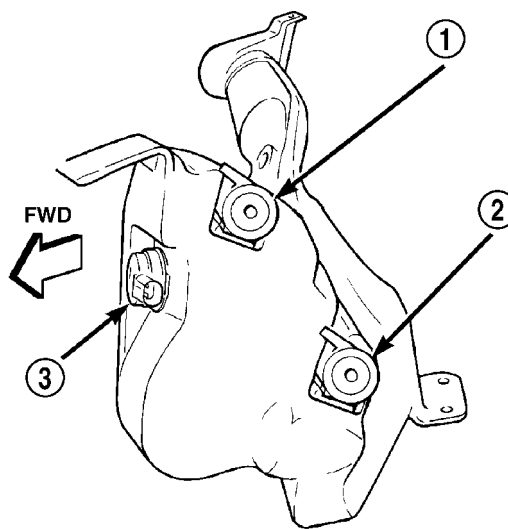
(2) Reconnect the washer supply hose to the barbed nipple of the rear washer nozzle.

(3) Insert the rear washer nozzle supply hose and nipple into the mounting hole in the liftgate outer panel.

(4) Using hand pressure, press firmly and evenly on the hood of the rear washer nozzle until the latch features snap into place behind the sheet metal of the liftgate outer panel mounting hole.

## REAR WASHER PUMP/MOTOR

## DESCRIPTION



80ba7a00

**Fig. 6 Washer Pumps (Viewed from Bottom of Reservoir)**

- 1 - REAR WASHER PUMP/MOTOR
- 2 - FRONT WASHER PUMP/MOTOR
- 3 - WASHER FLUID LEVEL SWITCH

The rear washer pump/motor unit is located on the outboard side and near the rear of the washer reservoir, between the left front inner and outer fender panels (Fig. 6). A small permanently lubricated and sealed electric motor is coupled to the rotor-type washer pump. A seal flange with a large barbed inlet nipple on the pump housing passes through a rubber grommet seal installed in one of two dedicated mounting holes near the bottom of the washer reservoir. The rear washer pump/motor unit is always mounted in the higher pump mounting hole of the reservoir.

A smaller barbed outlet nipple on the pump housing connects the unit to the rear washer hose. The washer pump/motor unit is retained on the reservoir by the interference fit between the barbed pump inlet nipple and the grommet seal, which is a light press fit. An integral electrical connector receptacle on the



## REAR WASHER PUMP/MOTOR (Continued)

top of the motor housing connects the unit to the vehicle electrical system through a dedicated take out and connector of the left headlamp and dash wire harness. The rear washer pump/motor unit cannot be repaired. If faulty or damaged, the entire washer pump/motor unit must be replaced.

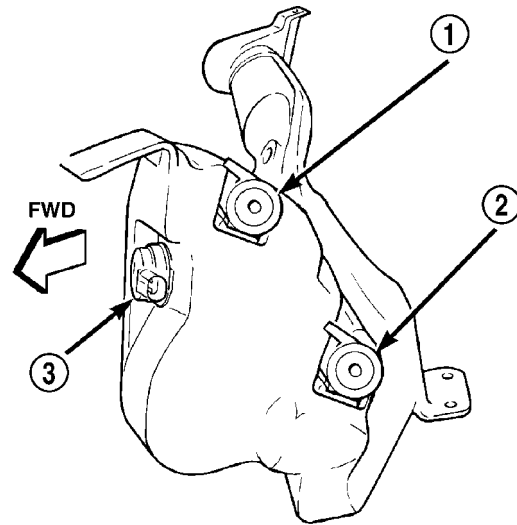
## OPERATION

The rear washer pump/motor unit is connected to the vehicle electrical system through a single take out and two-cavity connector of the left headlamp and dash wire harness. The washer pump/motor is grounded at all times through another take out of the left headlamp and dash wire harness with a single eyelet terminal connector that is secured under a ground screw to the top of the left inner fender shield in the engine compartment. The rear washer pump/motor receives battery current on a fused ignition switch output (run-acc) circuit through the closed contacts of the momentary rear washer switch circuitry within the right multi-function switch only when the switch control stalk is pushed towards the instrument panel.

Washer fluid is gravity-fed from the washer reservoir to the inlet side of the washer pump. When the pump motor is energized, the rotor-type pump impeller rotates. When the pump impeller rotates, pressurized washer fluid is forced out of the pump outlet nipple, through the rear washer plumbing, and the rear washer nozzle onto the liftgate flip-up glass. The front washer pump/motor unit may be diagnosed using conventional diagnostic tools and methods.

## REMOVAL

- (1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.
- (2) Raise and support the vehicle.
- (3) Remove the liner from the left front fender wheel house.
- (4) Disconnect the left headlamp and dash wire harness connector for the rear washer pump/motor from the motor connector receptacle on the top of the motor housing (Fig. 7).
- (5) Disconnect the washer hose from the barbed outlet nipple of the rear washer pump/motor and allow the washer fluid to drain into a clean container for reuse.
- (6) Using a trim stick or another suitable wide flat-bladed tool, gently pry the barbed inlet nipple of the washer pump out of the rubber grommet seal in the reservoir. Care must be taken not to damage the reservoir.
- (7) Remove the rubber grommet seal from the washer pump mounting hole in the washer reservoir and discard.



80ba7a00

**Fig. 7 Washer Pumps (Viewed from Bottom of Reservoir)**

- 1 - REAR WASHER PUMP/MOTOR
- 2 - FRONT WASHER PUMP/MOTOR
- 3 - WASHER FLUID LEVEL SWITCH

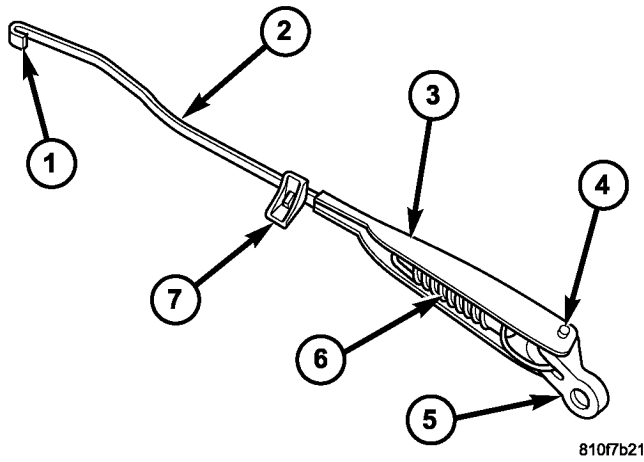
## INSTALLATION

- (1) Install a new rubber grommet seal into the washer pump mounting hole in the washer reservoir. Always use a new rubber grommet seal on the reservoir.
- (2) Position the barbed inlet nipple of the washer pump to the rubber grommet seal in the reservoir (Fig. 7).
- (3) Press firmly and evenly on the washer pump until the barbed inlet nipple is fully seated in the rubber grommet seal in the washer reservoir mounting hole.
- (4) Reconnect the washer hose to the barbed outlet nipple of the washer pump.
- (5) Reconnect the left headlamp and dash wire harness connector for the rear washer pump/motor unit to the motor connector receptacle on the top of the motor housing.
- (6) Reinstall the liner into the left front fender wheel house.
- (7) Lower the vehicle.
- (8) Refill the washer reservoir with the washer fluid drained from the reservoir during the removal procedure.
- (9) Reconnect the battery negative cable.



## REAR WIPER ARM

### DESCRIPTION



**Fig. 8 Rear Wiper Arm**

- 1 - HOOK
- 2 - STRAP
- 3 - CHANNEL
- 4 - HINGE PIN
- 5 - PIVOT END
- 6 - TENSION SPRING
- 7 - SUPPORT

The rear wiper arm is the rigid member located between the rear wiper motor output shaft that protrudes from the outer liftgate panel near the base of the liftgate flip-up glass opening and the rear wiper blade (Fig. 8). This wiper arm features an over-center hinge that allows easy access to the liftgate and liftgate flip-up glass for cleaning. The wiper arm has a die cast metal pivot end with a large tapered mounting hole at one end. A molded black plastic cap fits over the wiper arm retaining nut to conceal the nut and this mounting hole following wiper arm installation.

The wide end of a tapered, stamped steel channel is secured with a hinge pin to the pivot end of the wiper arm. One end of a long, rigid, stamped steel strap, with a small hole near its pivot end, is riveted and crimped within the narrow end of the stamped steel channel. The tip of the wiper blade end of this strap is bent back under itself to form a small hook. Concealed within the stamped steel channel, one end of a long spring is engaged with a wire hook on the underside of the die cast pivot end, while the other end of the spring is hooked through the small hole in the steel strap. A molded plastic wiper arm support is snapped onto the wiper arm strap where it exits the channel. The entire wiper arm has a satin black finish applied to all of its visible surfaces.

A wiper arm cannot be adjusted or repaired. If damaged or faulty, the entire wiper arm unit must be replaced.

### OPERATION

The rear wiper arm is designed to mechanically transmit the motion from the rear wiper motor output shaft to the rear wiper blade. The wiper arm must be properly indexed to the motor output shaft in order to maintain the proper wiper blade travel on the glass. The wiper arm support is designed to lift and support the rear wiper arm and blade off of the glass when the rear wiper blade is parked. This support and the park ramp on the liftgate outer panel below the glass also provide an alignment reference to ensure accurate rear wiper arm and blade installation.

The tapered hole in the wiper arm pivot end interlocks with the serrations on the outer circumference of the tapered motor output shaft, allowing positive engagement and finite adjustment of this connection. A hex nut secures the wiper arm pivot end to the threads on the rear wiper motor output shaft and the plastic nut cap snaps over this connection for a neat appearance. The spring-loaded wiper arm hinge controls the down-force applied through the tip of the wiper arm to the wiper blade on the glass. The hook formation on the tip of the wiper arm provides a cradle for securing and latching the wiper blade pivot block to the wiper arm.

### REMOVAL

(1) Carefully pry the plastic nut cap off of the nut on the rear wiper motor output shaft end of the wiper arm (Fig. 9).

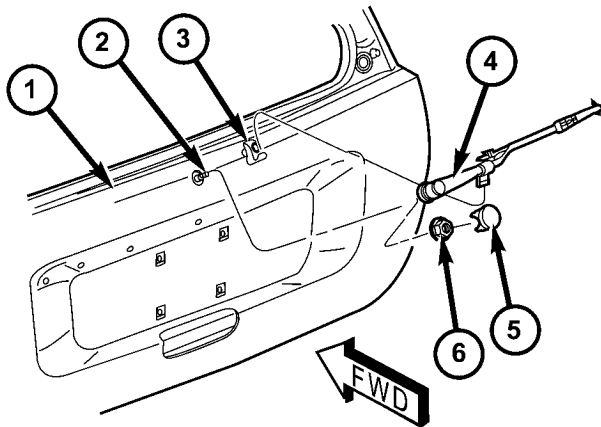
(2) Remove the nut that secures the rear wiper arm to the rear wiper motor output shaft.

(3) Lift the rear wiper arm far enough to engage the over-center arm hinge in its upright position to hold the wiper blade off of the liftgate.

(4) If necessary, use a battery terminal puller to disengage the wiper arm from the rear wiper motor output shaft splines (Fig. 10).

(5) Remove the rear wiper arm pivot end from the motor output shaft.

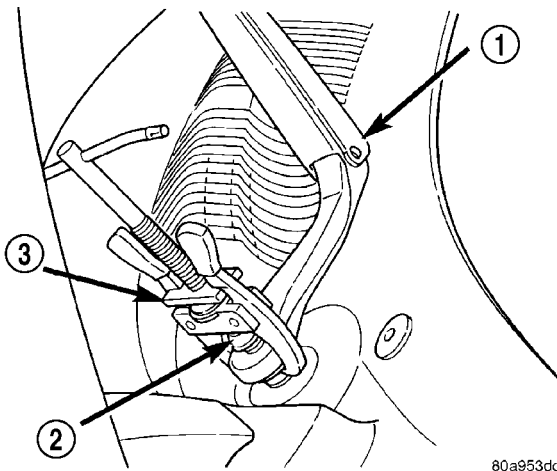
## REAR WIPER ARM (Continued)



810f19d6

**Fig. 9 Rear Wiper Arm Remove/Install**

- 1 - LIFTGATE
- 2 - REAR WIPER MOTOR OUTPUT SHAFT
- 3 - PARK RAMP
- 4 - REAR WIPER ARM
- 5 - CAP
- 6 - NUT



80a953dc

**Fig. 10 Wiper Arm Puller - Typical**

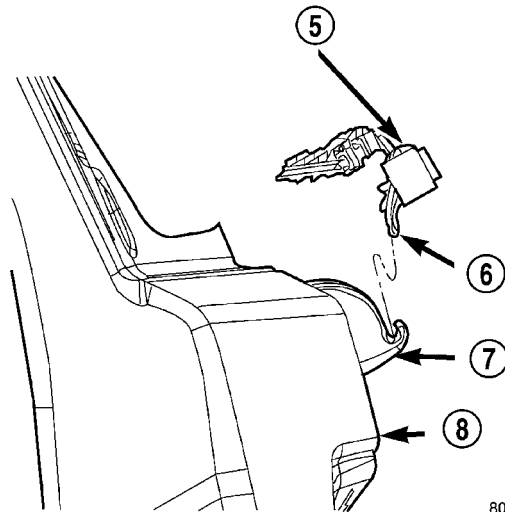
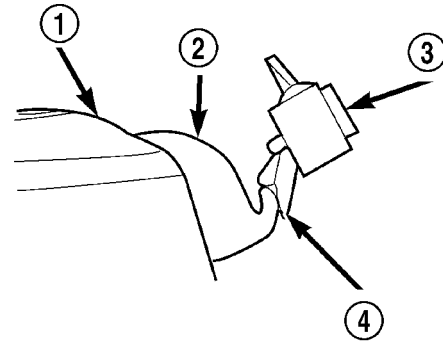
- 1 - WIPER ARM
- 2 - WIPER PIVOT SHAFT
- 3 - BATTERY TERMINAL PULLER

## INSTALLATION

**NOTE:** Always install the wiper arm and blade with the wiper motor in the Park position.

(1) The rear wiper arm must be indexed to the motor output shaft with the rear wiper motor in the park position to be properly installed. Place the wiper arm onto the liftgate with the wiper arm support positioned on the park ramp and the tapered mounting hole on the pivot end of the arm positioned over the rear wiper motor output shaft.

(2) Position the tab on the back of the rear wiper arm support on the liftgate park ramp in the Installation Position (Fig. 11).



80ba781a

**Fig. 11 Rear Wiper Arm Installation**

- 1 - LIFTGATE
- 2 - PARK RAMP
- 3 - REAR WIPER ARM
- 4 - INSTALLATION POSITION
- 5 - REAR WIPER ARM AND BLADE
- 6 - PARK POSITION
- 7 - PARK RAMP
- 8 - LIFTGATE

(3) With the wiper arm in the Installation Position, push the tapered mounting hole on the pivot end of the wiper arm down over the rear wiper motor output shaft.

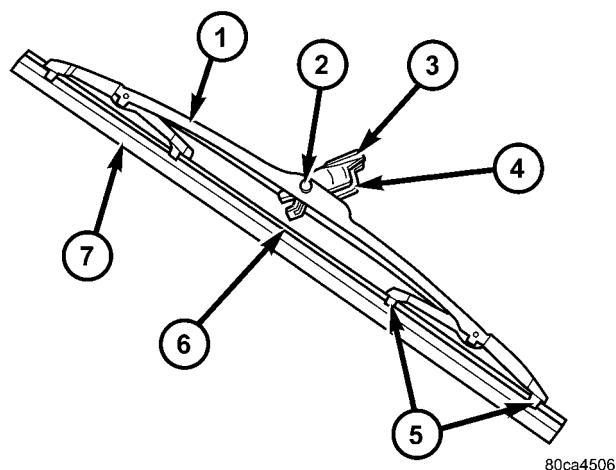
(4) Install and tighten the nut that secures the rear wiper arm to the rear wiper motor output shaft. Tighten the nut to 18 N·m (13 ft. lbs.).

(5) Reinstall the plastic nut cap over the nut on the rear wiper motor output shaft end of the rear wiper arm.

(6) Lift the rear wiper arm support away from the park ramp, then place the wiper arm support in the park ramp in the Park Position (Fig. 11).

## REAR WIPER BLADE

### DESCRIPTION



**Fig. 12 Rear Wiper Blade - Typical**

- 1 - SUPERSTRUCTURE
- 2 - PIVOT PIN
- 3 - LATCH RELEASE
- 4 - PIVOT BLOCK
- 5 - CLAW
- 6 - FLEXOR
- 7 - ELEMENT

The rear wiper blade is secured by an integral latching pivot block to the hook formation on the tip of the rear wiper arm, and rests off the glass on a park ramp on the liftgate near the base of the liftgate flip-up glass opening when the wiper is not in operation (Fig. 12). The rear wiper blade consists of the following components:

- **Superstructure** - The superstructure includes a stamped steel bridge and plastic links with claw formations that grip the wiper blade element. Also included in this unit is the latching, molded plastic pivot block that secures the superstructure to the wiper arm. All of the metal components of the wiper blade have a satin black finish applied.

- **Element** - The wiper element or squeegee is the resilient rubber member of the wiper blade that contacts the glass.

- **Flexor** - The flexor is a rigid metal component running along the length of each side of the wiper element where it is gripped by the claws of the superstructure.

All Grand Cherokee models have a single 31.00 centimeter (12.20 inch) rear wiper blade with a non-replaceable rubber element (squeegee). The wiper blade cannot be adjusted or repaired. If faulty, worn, or damaged the entire wiper blade unit must be replaced.

### OPERATION

The rear wiper blade is moved back and forth across the glass by the wiper arm when the rear wiper system is in operation. The wiper blade superstructure is the flexible frame that grips the wiper blade element and evenly distributes the force of the spring-loaded wiper arm along the length of the element. The combination of the wiper arm force and the flexibility of the superstructure makes the element conform to and maintain proper contact with the glass, even as the blade is moved over the varied curvature found across the glass surface.

The wiper element flexor provides the claws of the blade superstructure with a rigid, yet flexible component on the element which can be gripped. The rubber element is designed to be stiff enough to maintain an even cleaning edge as it is drawn across the glass, but resilient enough to conform to the glass surface and flip from one cleaning edge to the other each time the wiper blade changes directions.

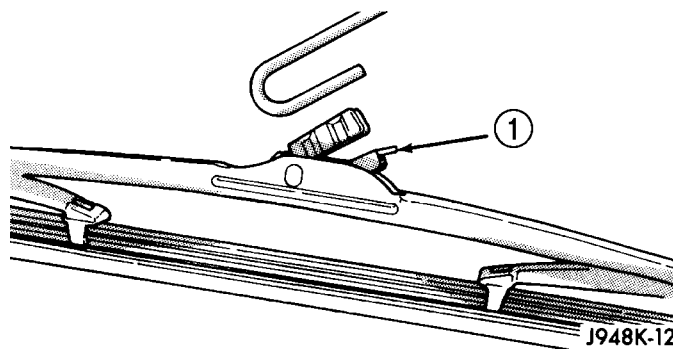
### REMOVAL

**NOTE:** The notched end of the wiper element flexor should always be oriented towards the end of the wiper blade that is nearest to the rear wiper motor output shaft.

(1) Disengage the rear wiper arm support from the rubber rear wiper arm park ramp on the right side of the liftgate just below the liftgate flip-up glass.

(2) Lift the rear wiper arm to engage the arm hinge in its over-center position with the wiper blade and element off of the liftgate and the glass.

(3) To remove the wiper blade from the wiper arm, push the pivot block latch release tab under the tip of the arm and slide the blade away from the tip towards the rear wiper motor output shaft end of the arm (Fig. 13).



**Fig. 13 Wiper Blade Remove/Install - Typical**

- 1 - PIVOT BLOCK LATCH RELEASE TAB

## REAR WIPER BLADE (Continued)

(4) Slide the rear wiper blade away from the tip of the arm towards the pivot end of the arm far enough to disengage the pivot block from the hook formation on the end of the arm.

(5) Extract the hook formation on the tip of the wiper arm from the opening in the wiper blade superstructure ahead of the wiper blade pivot block/latch unit.

**CAUTION:** Do not allow the wiper arm to spring back against the liftgate or the glass without the wiper blade in place or they may be damaged.

(6) Gently lower the wiper arm and place the arm support in the park ramp.

## INSTALLATION

**NOTE:** The notched end of the wiper element flexor should always be oriented towards the end of the wiper blade that is nearest to the rear wiper motor output shaft.

(1) Lift the rear wiper arm off of the liftgate park ramp.

(2) Position the rear wiper blade near the hook formation on the tip of the arm with the notched end of the wiper element flexor oriented towards the end of the wiper arm that is nearest to the rear wiper motor output shaft.

(3) Insert the hook formation on the tip of the wiper arm through the opening in the wiper blade superstructure ahead of the wiper blade pivot block/latch unit far enough to engage the pivot block with the hook (Fig. 13).

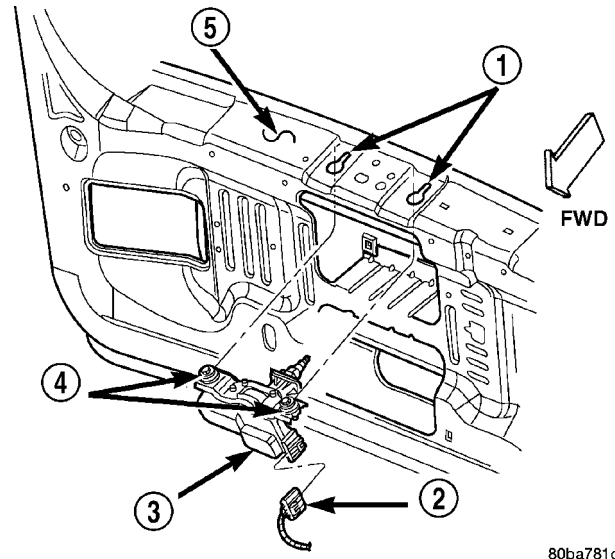
(4) Slide the wiper blade pivot block/latch up into the hook formation on the tip of the wiper arm until the latch release tab snaps into its locked position.

(5) Gently lower the wiper arm and place the arm support on the park ramp.

## REAR WIPER MODULE

### DESCRIPTION

The rear wiper module is concealed within the liftgate, below the liftgate flip-up glass and behind the liftgate inner trim panel (Fig. 14). The end of the motor output shaft that protrudes through the liftgate outer panel to drive the rear wiper arm and blade is the only visible component of the rear wiper module. A rubber gasket, a bezel, and a nut secure and seal the motor output shaft to the liftgate outer panel. A molded plastic nut cover snaps onto the bezel to conceal the nut and improve appearance. An integral connector receptacle connects the rear wiper module to the vehicle electrical system through a



80ba781c

**Fig. 14 Rear Wiper Module**

- 1 - KEYED SLOTS
- 2 - LIFTGATE WIRE HARNESS CONNECTOR
- 3 - REAR WIPER MODULE
- 4 - NUT (2)
- 5 - LIFTGATE INNER PANEL

dedicated take out and connector of the liftgate wire harness. The rear wiper module consists of the following major components:

- **Bracket** - The rear wiper module bracket consists of a stamped steel mounting plate for the wiper motor that is secured with screws through two rubber insulators to the liftgate inner panel.

- **Electronic Controls** - The rear wiper module electronic controls include the rear wiper system electronic logic and rear wiper motor electronic controls. The electronic controls for the motor include an electronic speed control that speeds the wiper blade near the center of the glass, but slows the wiper blade during directional reversals at each end of the wipe pattern and during wiper blade off-the-glass parking for quieter operation.

- **Motor** - The permanent magnet rear wiper motor is secured with screws to the rear wiper module bracket. The wiper motor includes an integral transmission, and the motor output shaft.

The rear wiper module cannot be adjusted or repaired. If any component of the module is faulty or damaged, the entire rear wiper module unit must be replaced. The motor output shaft gasket, bezel, nut, and nut cover are available for individual service replacement.

### OPERATION

The rear wiper module receives non-switched battery current through a fuse in the Junction Block (JB) on a fused B(+) circuit and is connected to ground at all times. The rear wiper module operation



## REAR WIPER MODULE (Continued)

is controlled by the vehicle operator through battery current signal inputs received by the rear wiper module electronic controls from the rear wiper switch circuitry of the right (wiper) multi-function switch on the steering column. The module also receives an external control input from the liftgate flip-up glass ajar switch circuit. If the rear wiper module senses that the flip-up glass is ajar, it will not allow the rear wiper motor to operate.

The rear wiper module electronic control logic uses these inputs, its internal inputs, and its programming to provide a continuous wipe mode, an intermittent wipe mode, a wipe-after-wash mode, and off-the-glass wiper blade parking. The wiper blade cycling is controlled by the internal electronic controls of the module. The module controls current flow to the wiper motor brushes and provides an electronic speed control that speeds the wiper blade near the center of the glass, but slows the wiper blade during directional reversals at each end of the wipe pattern and during wiper blade off-the-glass parking for quieter operation.

The wiper motor transmission converts the rotary output of the wiper motor to the back and forth wiping motion of the rear wiper arm and blade on the liftgate flip-up glass. The rear wiper module may be diagnosed using conventional diagnostic tools and methods.

## REMOVAL

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Remove the rear wiper arm from the rear wiper motor output shaft. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/REAR WIPERS/WASHERS/REAR WIPER ARM - REMOVAL).

(3) Using door trim panel removal tool, gently pry at the base of the nut cover where it meets the wiper motor output shaft bezel and gasket on the outer liftgate panel to unsnap it from the bezel (Fig. 15). **Be certain to take proper precautions to protect the outer liftgate panel and its paint finish from damage during this procedure.**

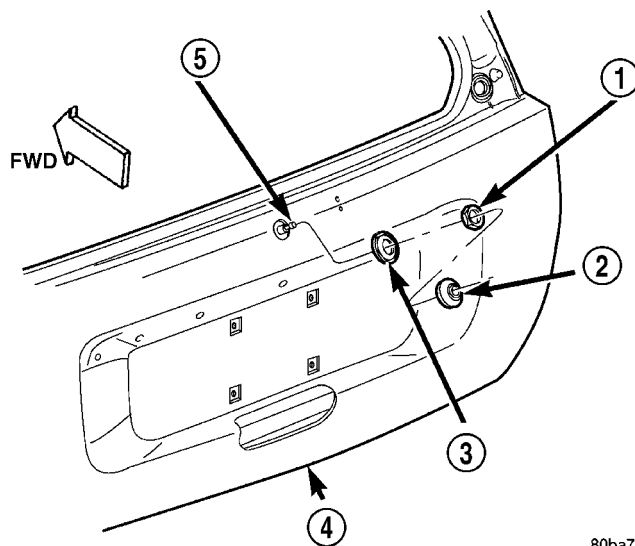
(4) Remove the nut that secures the rear wiper motor output shaft to the outer liftgate panel.

(5) Remove the bezel and gasket from the rear wiper motor output shaft.

(6) Remove the trim panel from the liftgate inner panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DECKLID/HATCH/LIFTGATE/TAILOUT/TRIM PANEL - REMOVAL).

(7) Disconnect the liftgate wire harness connector for the rear wiper module from the module connector receptacle (Fig. 16).

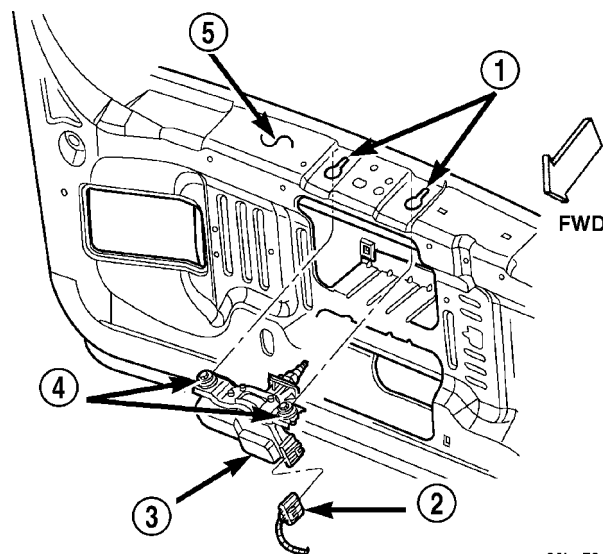
(8) Loosen the two nuts that secure the rear wiper module mounting bracket to the top of the lower flip-up glass opening of the liftgate inner panel.



80ba7818

**Fig. 15 Rear Wiper Motor Output Shaft Remove/Install**

- 1 - NUT
- 2 - NUT COVER
- 3 - BEZEL AND GASKET
- 4 - LIFTGATE OUTER PANEL
- 5 - REAR WIPER MOTOR OUTPUT SHAFT



80ba781c

**Fig. 16 Rear Wiper Module Remove/Install**

- 1 - KEYED SLOTS
- 2 - LIFTGATE WIRE HARNESS CONNECTOR
- 3 - REAR WIPER MODULE
- 4 - NUT (2)
- 5 - LIFTGATE INNER PANEL

(9) Slide the rear wiper module and mounting bracket forward far enough to disengage the mounting nuts from the keyed slots in the top of the lower flip-up glass opening of the liftgate inner panel.

(10) Remove the rear wiper module and mounting bracket from the liftgate as a unit.



## REAR WIPER MODULE (Continued)

**INSTALLATION**

(1) Position the rear wiper module and bracket into the liftgate as a unit (Fig. 16).

(2) Insert the rear wiper motor output shaft through the hole in the liftgate outer panel and engage the two mounting nuts into the keyed slots in the top of the lower flip-up glass opening of the liftgate inner panel.

(3) From the outside of the liftgate, center the rear wiper motor output shaft in the liftgate outer panel clearance hole and install the gasket and bezel over the centered shaft (Fig. 15).

(4) Install and tighten the nut that secures the rear wiper motor output shaft to the outer liftgate panel. Tighten the nut to 5 N·m (43 in. lbs.).

(5) From the inside of the liftgate, install and tighten the two nuts that secure the rear wiper module mounting bracket to the top of the lower flip-up glass opening of the liftgate inner panel. Tighten the nuts to 5 N·m (47 in. lbs.).

(6) Reconnect the liftgate wire harness connector for the rear wiper module to the module connector receptacle.

(7) Reinstall the trim panel onto the liftgate inner panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DECKLID/HATCH/LIFTGATE/TAILGATE/TRIM PANEL - INSTALLATION).

(8) From the outside of the liftgate, press the nut cover firmly and evenly over the rear wiper motor output shaft bezel using hand pressure until it snaps into place.

(9) Reinstall the rear wiper arm onto the rear wiper motor output shaft. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/REAR WIPERS/WASHERS/REAR WIPER ARM - INSTALLATION).

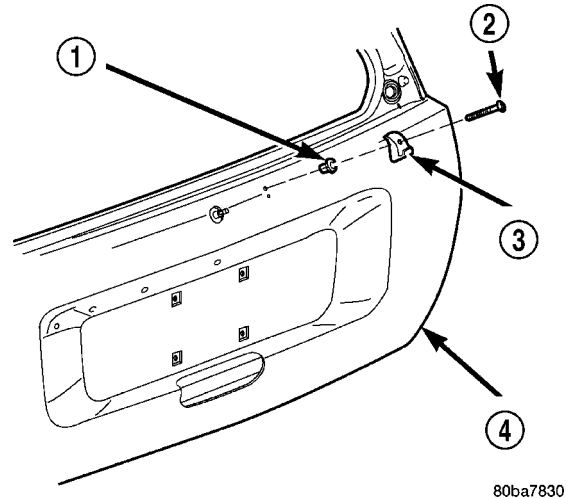
(10) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

**WIPER ARM PARK RAMP****REMOVAL**

(1) Disengage the rear wiper arm support from the wiper arm park ramp on the right side of the liftgate just below the liftgate flip-up glass.

(2) Lift the wiper arm and blade away from the liftgate until the wiper arm hinge is in its over-center position.

(3) Remove the screw that secures the wiper arm park ramp to the liftgate outer panel (Fig. 17).



**Fig. 17 Wiper Arm Park Ramp Remove/Install**

- 1 - RIVET NUT
- 2 - SCREW
- 3 - PARK RAMP
- 4 - LIFTGATE

(4) Remove the wiper arm park ramp from the liftgate outer panel.

**INSTALLATION**

(1) Position the wiper arm park ramp onto the liftgate outer panel (Fig. 17).

(2) Install and tighten the screw that secures the wiper arm park ramp to the liftgate outer panel. Tighten the screw to 7 N·m (60 in. lbs.).

(3) Lower the rear wiper arm and blade and place the wiper arm support onto the wiper arm park ramp.



# WIRING

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
WIRING DIAGRAM INFORMATION.....	8W-01-1	AUDIO SYSTEM .....	8W-47-1
COMPONENT INDEX.....	8W-02-1	REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER.....	8W-48-1
POWER DISTRIBUTION .....	8W-10-1	OVERHEAD CONSOLE.....	8W-49-1
JUNCTION BLOCK.....	8W-12-1	FRONT LIGHTING .....	8W-50-1
GROUND DISTRIBUTION .....	8W-15-1	REAR LIGHTING .....	8W-51-1
BUS COMMUNICATIONS .....	8W-18-1	TURN SIGNALS.....	8W-52-1
CHARGING SYSTEM.....	8W-20-1	WIPERS.....	8W-53-1
STARTING SYSTEM .....	8W-21-1	TRAILER TOW.....	8W-54-1
FUEL/IGNITION SYSTEM .....	8W-30-1	POWER WINDOWS.....	8W-60-1
TRANSMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM .....	8W-31-1	POWER DOOR LOCKS .....	8W-61-1
VEHICLE SPEED CONTROL .....	8W-33-1	POWER MIRRORS .....	8W-62-1
ANTILOCK BRAKES.....	8W-35-1	POWER SEATS .....	8W-63-1
VEHICLE THEFT SECURITY SYSTEM.....	8W-39-1	POWER SUNROOF .....	8W-64-1
INSTRUMENT CLUSTER.....	8W-40-1	SPLICE INFORMATION .....	8W-70-1
HORN/CIGAR LIGHTER/POWER OUTLET ..	8W-41-1	CONNECTOR PIN-OUTS .....	8W-80-1
AIR CONDITIONING-HEATER .....	8W-42-1	CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE	
AIRBAG SYSTEM .....	8W-43-1	LOCATION .....	8W-91-1
INTERIOR LIGHTING.....	8W-44-1	POWER DISTRIBUTION .....	8W-97-1
BODY CONTROL MODULE .....	8W-45-1		



## 8W-01 WIRING DIAGRAM INFORMATION

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>WIRING DIAGRAM INFORMATION</b>			
DESCRIPTION		STANDARD PROCEDURE - TESTING FOR A	
DESCRIPTION - HOW TO USE WIRING		SHORT TO GROUND . . . . .	9
DIAGRAMS . . . . .	1	STANDARD PROCEDURE - TESTING FOR A	
DESCRIPTION - CIRCUIT INFORMATION . . . .	5	SHORT TO GROUND ON FUSES	
DESCRIPTION - CIRCUIT FUNCTIONS . . . . .	6	POWERING SEVERAL LOADS . . . . .	10
DESCRIPTION - SECTION IDENTIFICATION		STANDARD PROCEDURE - TESTING FOR A	
AND INFORMATION . . . . .	6	VOLTAGE DROP . . . . .	10
DESCRIPTION - CONNECTOR, GROUND		SPECIAL TOOLS	
AND SPLICE INFORMATION . . . . .	7	WIRING/TERMINAL . . . . .	10
WARNING		<b>CONNECTOR</b>	
WARNINGS - GENERAL . . . . .	7	REMOVAL . . . . .	11
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - WIRING		INSTALLATION . . . . .	11
HARNESS . . . . .	7	<b>DIODE</b>	
STANDARD PROCEDURE		REMOVAL . . . . .	14
STANDARD PROCEDURE -		INSTALLATION . . . . .	14
ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)		<b>TERMINAL</b>	
SENSITIVE DEVICES . . . . .	8	REMOVAL . . . . .	14
STANDARD PROCEDURE - TESTING OF		INSTALLATION . . . . .	14
VOLTAGE POTENTIAL . . . . .	9	<b>WIRE</b>	
STANDARD PROCEDURE - TESTING FOR		STANDARD PROCEDURE - WIRE SPLICING . .	15
CONTINUITY . . . . .	9		

WIRING DIAGRAM  
INFORMATION

## DESCRIPTION

DESCRIPTION - HOW TO USE WIRING  
DIAGRAMS

DaimlerChrysler Corporation wiring diagrams are designed to provide information regarding the vehicle wiring content. In order to effectively use the wiring diagrams to diagnose and repair DaimlerChrysler Corporation vehicles, it is important to understand all of their features and characteristics.

Diagrams are arranged such that the power (B+) side of the circuit is placed near the top of the page, and the ground (B-) side of the circuit is placed near the bottom of the page (Fig. 1).

All switches, components, and modules are shown in the at rest position with the doors closed and the key removed from the ignition (Fig. 2).

Components are shown two ways. A solid line around a component indicates that the component is complete. A dashed line around the component indicates that the component is being shown is not complete. Incomplete components have a reference number to indicate the page where the component is shown complete.

It is important to realize that no attempt is made on the diagrams to represent components and wiring as they appear on the vehicle. For example, a short piece of wire is treated the same as a long one. In addition, switches and other components are shown as simply as possible, with regard to function only.

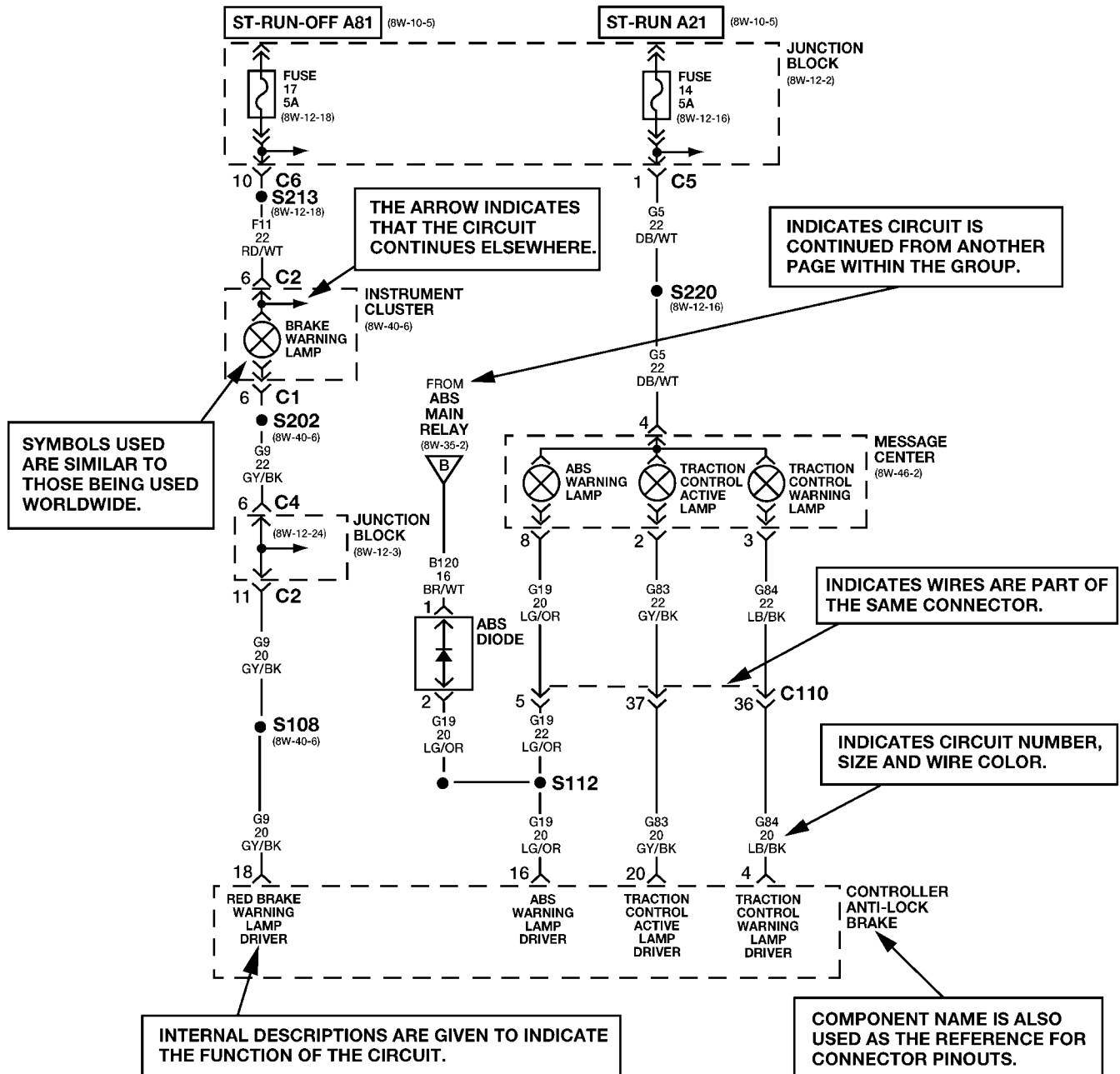
## SYMBOLS

International symbols are used throughout the wiring diagrams. These symbols are consistent with those being used around the world (Fig. 3).



## WIRING DIAGRAM INFORMATION (Continued)

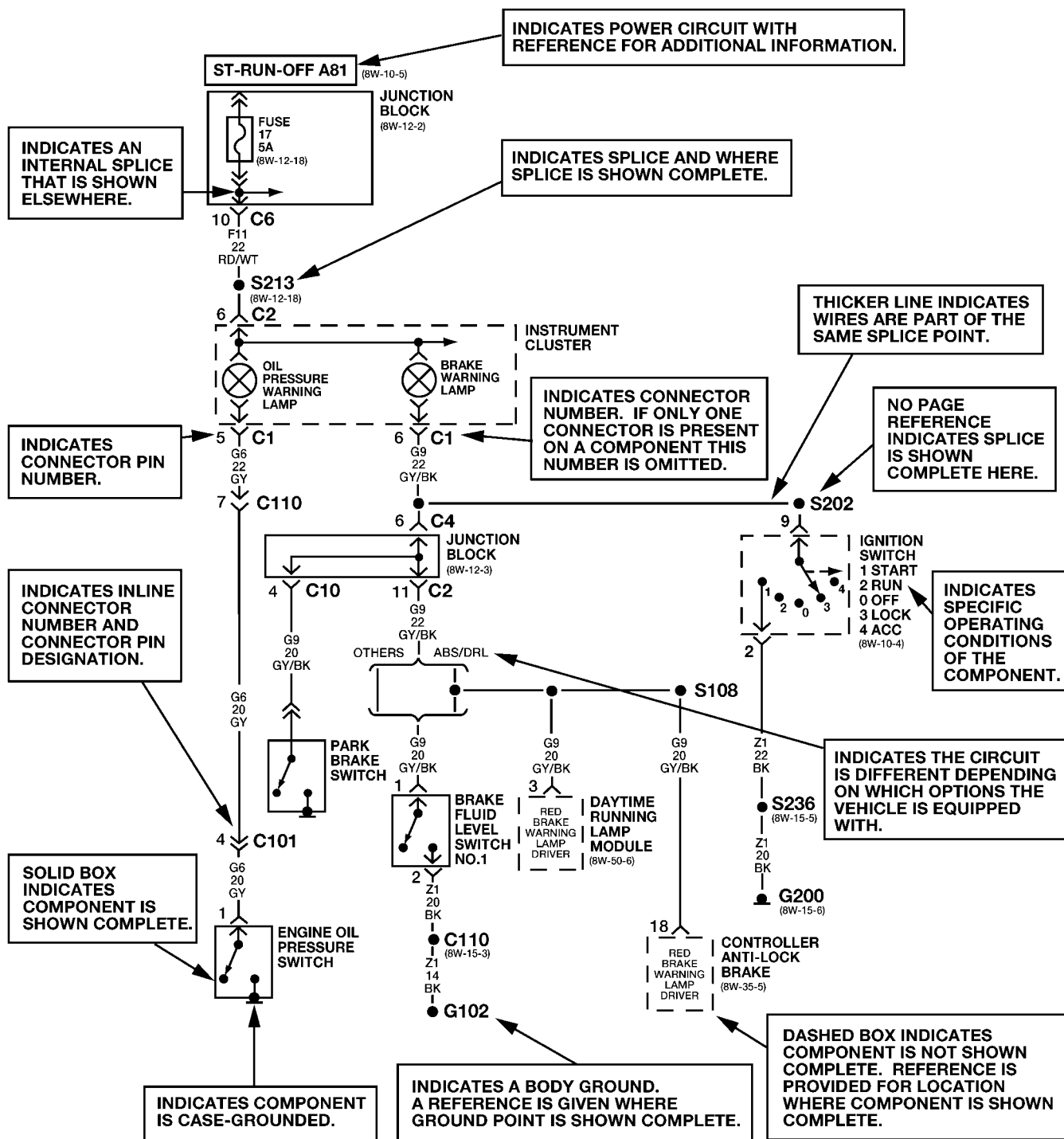
DIAGRAMS ARE ARRANGED WITH THE POWER B+ SIDE OF THE CIRCUIT NEAR THE TOP OF THE PAGE, AND THE GROUND SIDE OF THE CIRCUIT NEAR THE BOTTOM OF THE PAGE.



The System shown here is an **EXAMPLE ONLY**. It does not represent the actual circuit shown in the **WIRING DIAGRAM SECTION**.

Fig. 1 WIRING DIAGRAM EXAMPLE 1

## WIRING DIAGRAM INFORMATION (Continued)



The System shown here is an **EXAMPLE ONLY**. It does not represent the actual circuit shown in the **WIRING DIAGRAM SECTION**.

Fig. 2 WIRING DIAGRAM EXAMPLE 2

## WIRING DIAGRAM INFORMATION (Continued)


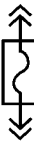
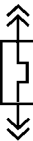




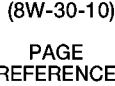
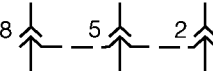
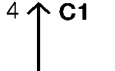
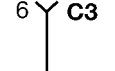

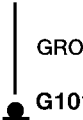



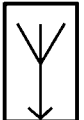
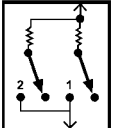


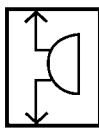
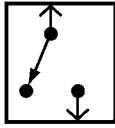
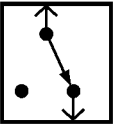

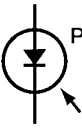


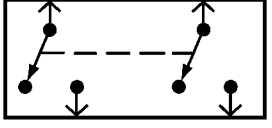
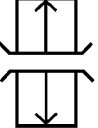


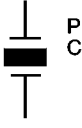
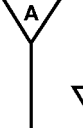





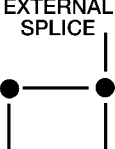
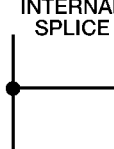
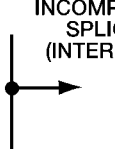
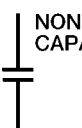
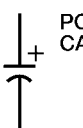
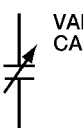




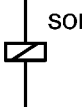
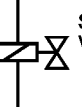
 FUSIBLE LINK  FUSE  CIRCUIT BREAKER OR PTC PROTECTION DEVICE	 BATTERY  IN-LINE CONNECTORS
 BATT A0 HOT BAR  CHOICE BRACKET  (8W-30-10) PAGE REFERENCE	 MULTIPLE CONNECTOR  MALE CONNECTOR  FEMALE CONNECTOR
 CLOCKSPRING  GROUND G101  SCREW TERMINAL	 SINGLE FILAMENT LAMP  DUAL FILAMENT LAMP  ANTENNA
 RESISTIVE MULTIPLEX SWITCH	 NPN TRANSISTOR  PNP TRANSISTOR  TONE GENERATOR
 OPEN SWITCH  CLOSED SWITCH	 LED  PHOTODIODE  DIODE  ZENER DIODE
 GANGED SWITCH  SLIDING DOOR CONTACT	 OXYGEN SENSOR  GAUGE  PIEZOELECTRIC CELL
 WIRE ORIGIN & DESTINATION SHOWN WITHIN CELL  WIRE DESTINATION SHOWN IN ANOTHER CELL	 RESISTOR  POTENTIOMETER  VARIABLE RESISTOR OR THERMISTOR  HEATER ELEMENT
 EXTERNAL SPLICE S350  INTERNAL SPLICE  INCOMPLETE SPLICE (INTERNAL)	 NON-POLARIZED CAPACITOR  POLARIZED CAPACITOR  VARIABLE CAPACITOR
 ONE SPEED MOTOR  TWO SPEED MOTOR  REVERSIBLE MOTOR	 COIL  SOLENOID  SOLENOID VALVE

Fig. 3 WIRING DIAGRAM SYMBOLS

WIRING DIAGRAM INFORMATION (Continued)

TERMINOLOGY

This is a list of terms and definitions used in the wiring diagrams.

- LHD . . . . . Left Hand Drive Vehicles
- RHD . . . . . Right Hand Drive Vehicles
- ATX . . Automatic Transmissions-Front Wheel Drive
- MTX . . Manual Transmissions-Front Wheel Drive
- AT . . . Automatic Transmissions-Rear Wheel Drive
- MT . . . Manual Transmissions-Rear Wheel Drive
- SOHC . . . . . Single Over Head Cam Engine
- DOHC . . . . . Double Over Head Cam Engine
- Built-Up-Export . . . . . Vehicles Built For Sale In  
Markets Other Than North America
- Except Built-Up-Export . Vehicles Built For Sale In  
North America

DESCRIPTION - CIRCUIT INFORMATION

Each wire shown in the diagrams contains a code which identifies the main circuit, part of the main circuit, gage of wire, and color (Fig. 4).

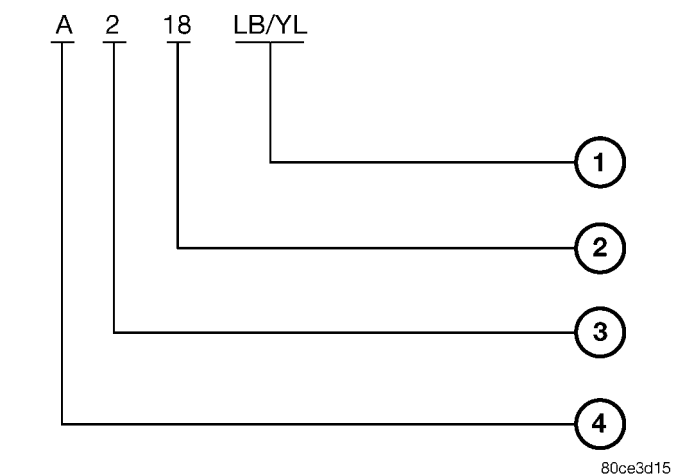


Fig. 4 WIRE CODE IDENTIFICATION

- 1 - COLOR OF WIRE (LIGHT BLUE WITH YELLOW TRACER)
- 2 - GAGE OF WIRE (18 GAGE)
- 3 - PART OF MAIN CIRCUIT (VARIES DEPENDING ON EQUIPMENT)
- 4 - MAIN CIRCUIT IDENTIFICATION

WIRE COLOR CODE CHART

COLOR CODE	COLOR
BL	BLUE
BK	BLACK
BR	BROWN
DB	DARK BLUE
DG	DARK GREEN
GY	GRAY
LB	LIGHT BLUE
LG	LIGHT GREEN
OR	ORANGE
PK	PINK
RD	RED
TN	TAN
VT	VIOLET
WT	WHITE
YL	YELLOW
*	WITH TRACER

## WIRING DIAGRAM INFORMATION (Continued)

**DESCRIPTION - CIRCUIT FUNCTIONS**

All circuits in the diagrams use an alpha/numeric code to identify the wire and it's function. To identify which circuit code applies to a system, refer to the Circuit Identification Code Chart. This chart shows the main circuits only and does not show the secondary codes that may apply to some models.

*CIRCUIT IDENTIFICATION CODE CHART*

CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
A	BATTERY FEED
B	BRAKE CONTROLS
C	CLIMATE CONTROLS
D	DIAGNOSTIC CIRCUITS
E	DIMMING ILLUMINATION CIRCUITS
F	FUSED CIRCUITS
G	MONITORING CIRCUITS (GAUGES)
H	OPEN
I	NOT USED
J	OPEN
K	POWERTRAIN CONTROL MODULE
L	EXTERIOR LIGHTING
M	INTERIOR LIGHTING
N	NOT USED
O	NOT USED
P	POWER OPTION (BATTERY FEED)
Q	POWER OPTIONS (IGNITION FEED)
R	PASSIVE RESTRAINT
S	SUSPENSION/STEERING
T	TRANSMISSION/TRANSAXLE/TRANSFER CASE
U	OPEN
V	SPEED CONTROL, WIPER/WASHER
W	OPEN
X	AUDIO SYSTEMS
Y	OPEN
Z	GROUND

**DESCRIPTION - SECTION IDENTIFICATION AND INFORMATION**

The wiring diagrams are grouped into individual sections. If a component is most likely found in a particular group, it will be shown complete (all wires, connectors, and pins) within that group. For example, the Auto Shutdown Relay is most likely to be found in Group 30, so it is shown there complete. It can, however, be shown partially in another group if it contains some associated wiring.

Splice diagrams in Section 8W-70 show the entire splice and provide references to other sections the splices serves. Section 8W-70 only contains splice diagrams that are not shown in their entirety somewhere else in the wiring diagrams.

Section 8W-80 shows each connector and the circuits involved with that connector. The connectors are identified using the name/number on the diagram pages.

*WIRING SECTION CHART*

GROUP	TOPIC
8W-01 thru 8W-09	General information and Diagram Overview
8W-10 thru 8W-19	Main Sources of Power and Vehicle Grounding
8W-20 thru 8W-29	Starting and Charging
8W-30 thru 8W-39	Powertrain/Drivetrain Systems
8W-40 thru 8W-49	Body Electrical items and A/C
8W-50 thru 8W-59	Exterior Lighting, Wipers and Trailer Tow
8W-60 thru 8W-69	Power Accessories
8W-70	Splice Information
8W-80	Connector Pin Outs
8W-91	Connector, Ground and Splice Locations



## WIRING DIAGRAM INFORMATION (Continued)

**DESCRIPTION - CONNECTOR, GROUND AND SPLICE INFORMATION**

**CAUTION:** Not all connectors are serviced. Some connectors are serviced only with a harness. A typical example might be the Supplemental Restraint System connectors. Always check parts availability before attempting a repair.

**IDENTIFICATION**

In-line connectors are identified by a number, as follows:

- In-line connectors located in the engine compartment are C100 series numbers
- In-line connectors located in the Instrument Panel area are C200 series numbers.
- In-line connectors located in the body are C300 series numbers.
- Jumper harness connectors are C400 series numbers.
- Grounds and ground connectors are identified with a "G" and follow the same series numbering as the in-line connectors.
- Splices are identified with an "S" and follow the same series numbering as the in-line connectors.
- Component connectors are identified by the component name instead of a number. Multiple connectors on a component use a C1, C2, etc. identifier.

**LOCATIONS**

Section 8W-91 contains connector/ground/splice location illustrations. The illustrations contain the connector name (or number)/ground number/splice number and component identification. Connector/ground/splice location charts in section 8W-91 reference the figure numbers of the illustrations.

The abbreviation T/O is used in the component location section to indicate a point in which the wiring harness branches out to a component. The abbreviation N/S means Not Shown in the illustrations

**WARNING****WARNINGS - GENERAL**

**WARNINGS** provide information to prevent personal injury and vehicle damage. Below is a list of general warnings that should be followed any time a vehicle is being serviced.

**WARNING: ALWAYS WEAR SAFETY GLASSES FOR EYE PROTECTION.**

**WARNING: USE SAFETY STANDS ANYTIME A PROCEDURE REQUIRES BEING UNDER A VEHICLE.**

**WARNING: BE SURE THAT THE IGNITION SWITCH ALWAYS IS IN THE OFF POSITION, UNLESS THE PROCEDURE REQUIRES IT TO BE ON.**

**WARNING: SET THE PARKING BRAKE WHEN WORKING ON ANY VEHICLE. AN AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION SHOULD BE IN PARK. A MANUAL TRANSMISSION SHOULD BE IN NEUTRAL.**

**WARNING: OPERATE THE ENGINE ONLY IN A WELL-VENTILATED AREA.**

**WARNING: KEEP AWAY FROM MOVING PARTS WHEN THE ENGINE IS RUNNING, ESPECIALLY THE FAN AND BELTS.**

**WARNING: TO PREVENT SERIOUS BURNS, AVOID CONTACT WITH HOT PARTS SUCH AS THE RADIATOR, EXHAUST MANIFOLD(S), TAIL PIPE, CATALYTIC CONVERTER AND MUFFLER.**

**WARNING: DO NOT ALLOW FLAME OR SPARKS NEAR THE BATTERY. GASES ARE ALWAYS PRESENT IN AND AROUND THE BATTERY.**

**WARNING: ALWAYS REMOVE RINGS, WATCHES, LOOSE HANGING JEWELRY AND AVOID LOOSE CLOTHING.**

**DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - WIRING HARNESS****TROUBLESHOOTING TOOLS**

When diagnosing a problem in an electrical circuit there are several common tools necessary. These tools are listed and explained below.

- Jumper Wire - This is a test wire used to connect two points of a circuit. It can be used to bypass an open in a circuit.

**WARNING: NEVER USE A JUMPER WIRE ACROSS A LOAD, SUCH AS A MOTOR, CONNECTED BETWEEN A BATTERY FEED AND GROUND.**

- Voltmeter - Used to check for voltage on a circuit. Always connect the black lead to a known good ground and the red lead to the positive side of the circuit.

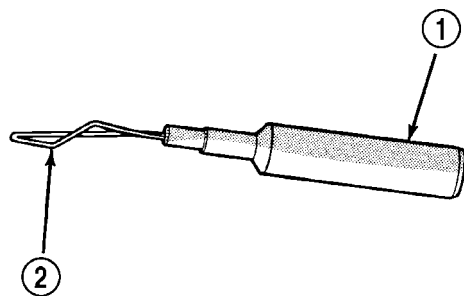
**CAUTION:** Most of the electrical components used in today's vehicles are Solid State. When checking voltages in these circuits, use a meter with a 10 - megohm or greater impedance rating.

## WIRING DIAGRAM INFORMATION (Continued)

- Ohmmeter - Used to check the resistance between two points of a circuit. Low or no resistance in a circuit means good continuity.

**CAUTION:** Most of the electrical components used in today's vehicles are Solid State. When checking resistance in these circuits use a meter with a 10 - megohm or greater impedance rating. In addition, make sure the power is disconnected from the circuit. Circuits that are powered up by the vehicle's electrical system can cause damage to the equipment and provide false readings.

- Probing Tools - These tools are used for probing terminals in connectors (Fig. 5). Select the proper size tool from Special Tool Package 6807, and insert it into the terminal being tested. Use the other end of the tool to insert the meter probe.



**Fig. 5 PROBING TOOL**

948W-233

- 1 - SPECIAL TOOL 6801  
2 - PROBING END

### INTERMITTENT AND POOR CONNECTIONS

Most intermittent electrical problems are caused by faulty electrical connections or wiring. It is also possible for a sticking component or relay to cause a problem. Before condemning a component or wiring assembly, check the following items.

- Connectors are fully seated
- Spread terminals, or terminal push out
- Terminals in the wiring assembly are fully seated into the connector/component and locked into position
- Dirt or corrosion on the terminals. Any amount of corrosion or dirt could cause an intermittent problem
- Damaged connector/component casing exposing the item to dirt or moisture
- Wire insulation that has rubbed through causing a short to ground
- Some or all of the wiring strands broken inside of the insulation
- Wiring broken inside of the insulation

### TROUBLESHOOTING WIRING PROBLEMS

When troubleshooting wiring problems there are six steps which can aid in the procedure. The steps are listed and explained below. Always check for non-

factory items added to the vehicle before doing any diagnosis. If the vehicle is equipped with these items, disconnect them to verify these add-on items are not the cause of the problem.

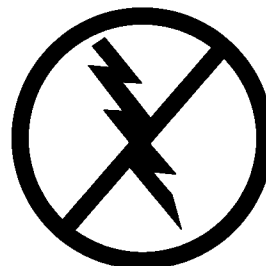
- (1) Verify the problem.
- (2) Verify any related symptoms. Do this by performing operational checks on components that are in the same circuit. Refer to the wiring diagrams.
- (3) Analyze the symptoms. Use the wiring diagrams to determine what the circuit is doing, where the problem most likely is occurring and where the diagnosis will continue.
- (4) Isolate the problem area.
- (5) Repair the problem area.
- (6) Verify the proper operation. For this step, check for proper operation of all items on the repaired circuit. Refer to the wiring diagrams.

## STANDARD PROCEDURE

### STANDARD PROCEDURE - ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) SENSITIVE DEVICES

All ESD sensitive components are solid state and a symbol (Fig. 6) is used to indicate this. When handling any component with this symbol, comply with the following procedures to reduce the possibility of electrostatic charge build up on the body and inadvertent discharge into the component. If it is not known whether the part is ESD sensitive, assume that it is.

- (1) Always touch a known good ground before handling the part. This should be repeated while handling the part and more frequently after sliding across a seat, sitting down from a standing position, or walking a distance.
- (2) Avoid touching electrical terminals of the part, unless instructed to do so by a written procedure.
- (3) When using a voltmeter, be sure to connect the ground lead first.
- (4) Do not remove the part from its protective packing until it is time to install the part.
- (5) Before removing the part from its package, ground the package to a known good ground on the vehicle.



**Fig. 6 ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE SYMBOL**

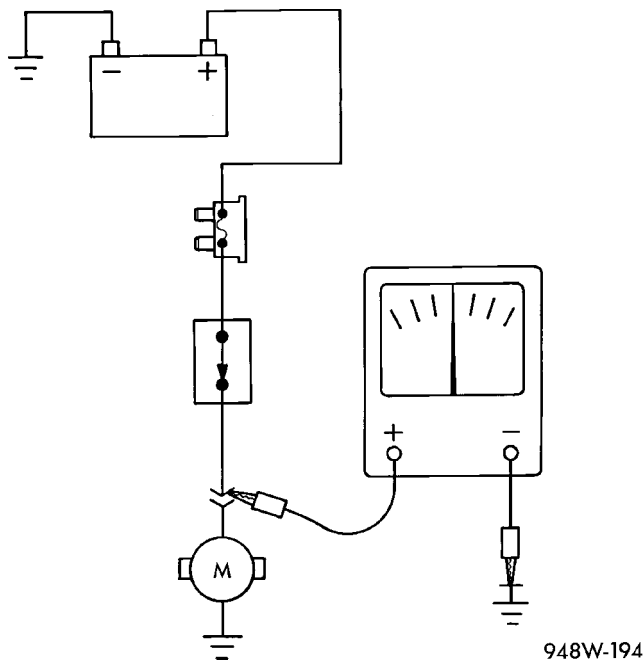
80ce3d47

## WIRING DIAGRAM INFORMATION (Continued)

**STANDARD PROCEDURE - TESTING OF VOLTAGE POTENTIAL**

(1) Connect the ground lead of a voltmeter to a known good ground (Fig. 7).

(2) Connect the other lead of the voltmeter to the selected test point. The vehicle ignition may need to be turned ON to check voltage. Refer to the appropriate test procedure.



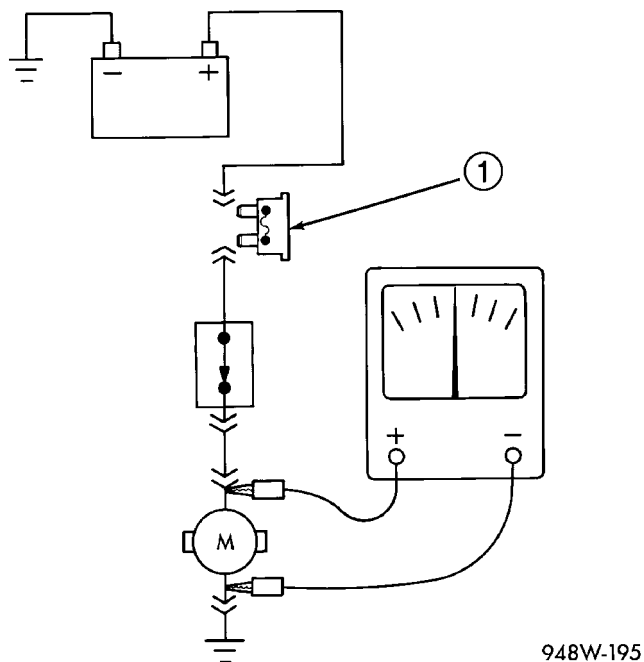
**Fig. 7 TESTING FOR VOLTAGE POTENTIAL**

**STANDARD PROCEDURE - TESTING FOR CONTINUITY**

(1) Remove the fuse for the circuit being checked or, disconnect the battery.

(2) Connect one lead of the ohmmeter to one side of the circuit being tested (Fig. 8).

(3) Connect the other lead to the other end of the circuit being tested. Low or no resistance means good continuity.



**Fig. 8 TESTING FOR CONTINUITY**

1 - FUSE REMOVED FROM CIRCUIT

**STANDARD PROCEDURE - TESTING FOR A SHORT TO GROUND**

(1) Remove the fuse and disconnect all items involved with the fuse.

(2) Connect a test light or a voltmeter across the terminals of the fuse.

(3) Starting at the fuse block, wiggle the wiring harness about six to eight inches apart and watch the voltmeter/test lamp.

(4) If the voltmeter registers voltage or the test lamp glows, there is a short to ground in that general area of the wiring harness.

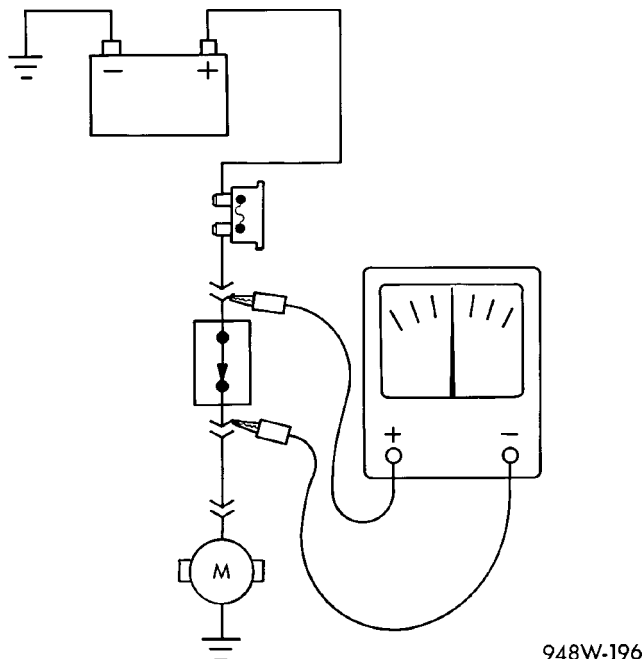
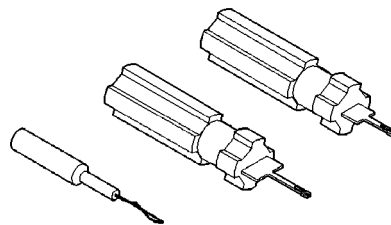
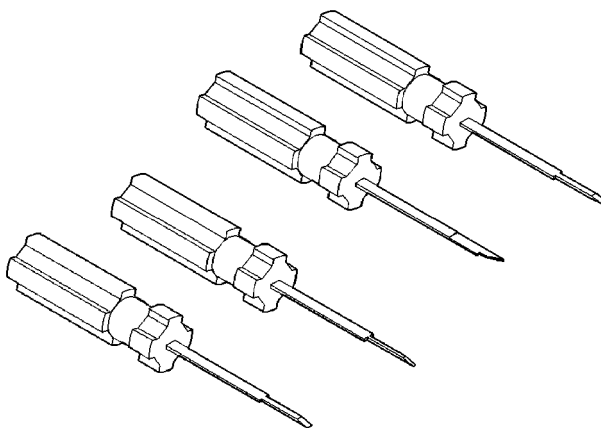
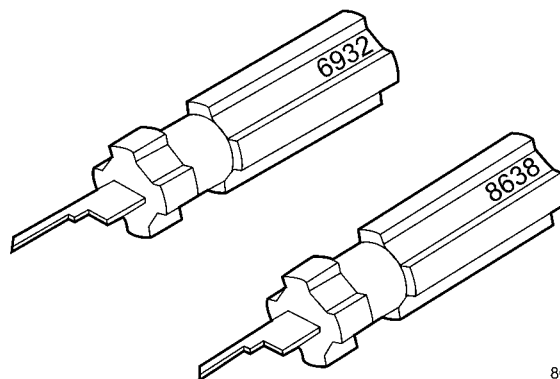
## WIRING DIAGRAM INFORMATION (Continued)

**STANDARD PROCEDURE - TESTING FOR A SHORT TO GROUND ON FUSES POWERING SEVERAL LOADS**

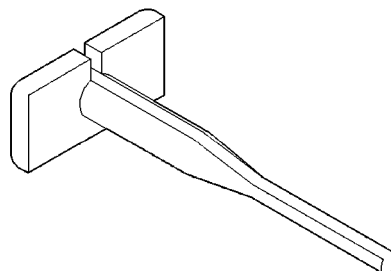
- (1) Refer to the wiring diagrams and disconnect or isolate all items on the suspected fused circuits.
- (2) Replace the blown fuse.
- (3) Supply power to the fuse by turning ON the ignition switch or re-connecting the battery.
- (4) Start connecting or energizing the items in the fuse circuit one at a time. When the fuse blows the circuit with the short to ground has been isolated.

**STANDARD PROCEDURE - TESTING FOR A VOLTAGE DROP**

- (1) Connect the positive lead of the voltmeter to the side of the circuit closest to the battery (Fig. 9).
- (2) Connect the other lead of the voltmeter to the other side of the switch, component or circuit.
- (3) Operate the item.
- (4) The voltmeter will show the difference in voltage between the two points.

**Fig. 9 TESTING FOR VOLTAGE DROP****SPECIAL TOOLS****WIRING/TERMINAL****PROBING TOOL PACKAGE 6807****TERMINAL PICK TOOL SET 6680**

8091c8da

**TERMINAL REMOVING TOOLS 6932 AND 8638****TERMINAL REMOVING TOOL 6934**

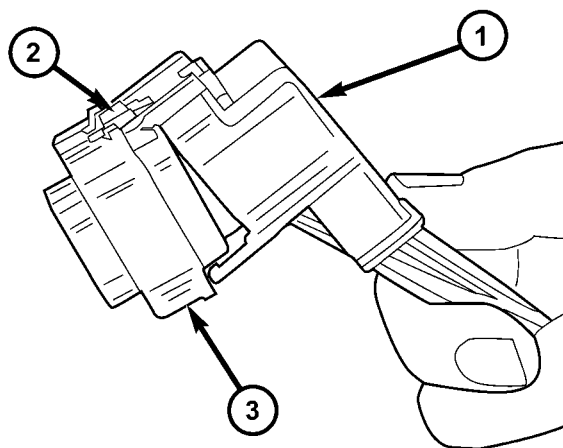
## CONNECTOR

### REMOVAL

- (1) Disconnect battery.
- (2) Release Connector Lock (Fig. 10).
- (3) Disconnect the connector being repaired from its mating half/component.
- (4) Remove the dress cover (if applicable) (Fig. 10).
- (5) Release the Secondary Terminal Lock, if required (Fig. 11).
- (6) Position the connector locking finger away from the terminal using the proper special tool. Pull on the wire to remove the terminal from the connector (Fig. 12).

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Insert the removed terminal in the same cavity on the repair connector.
- (2) Repeat steps for each terminal in the connector, being sure that all wires are inserted into the proper cavities. For additional connector pin-out identification, refer to the wiring diagrams.
- (3) When the connector is re-assembled, the secondary terminal lock must be placed in the locked position to prevent terminal push out.



80c97bac

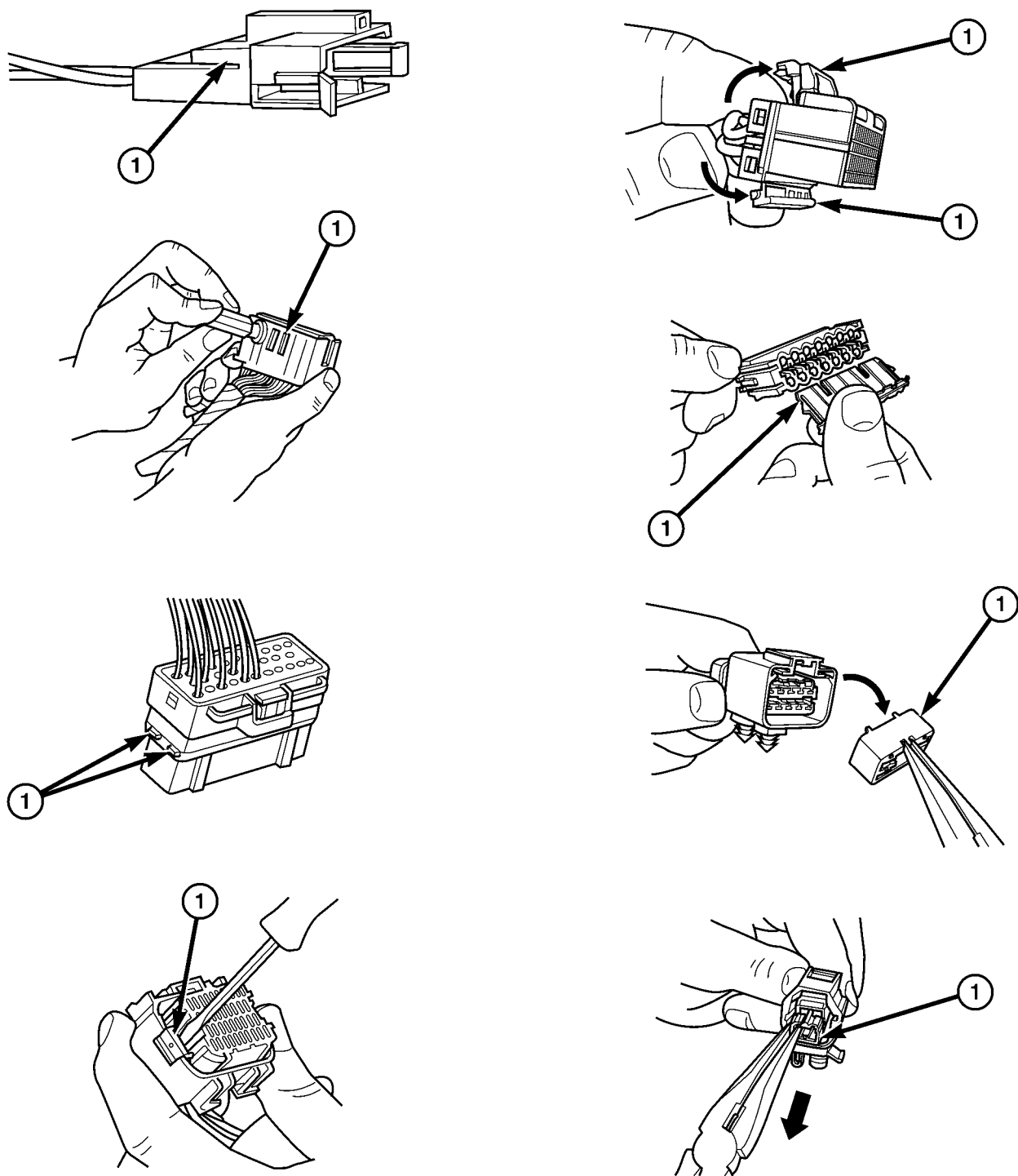
**Fig. 10 REMOVAL OF DRESS COVER**

- 1 - DRESS COVER
- 2 - CONNECTOR LOCK
- 3 - CONNECTOR

- (4) Replace dress cover (if applicable).
- (5) Connect connector to its mating half/component.
- (6) Connect battery and test all affected systems.



## CONNECTOR (Continued)

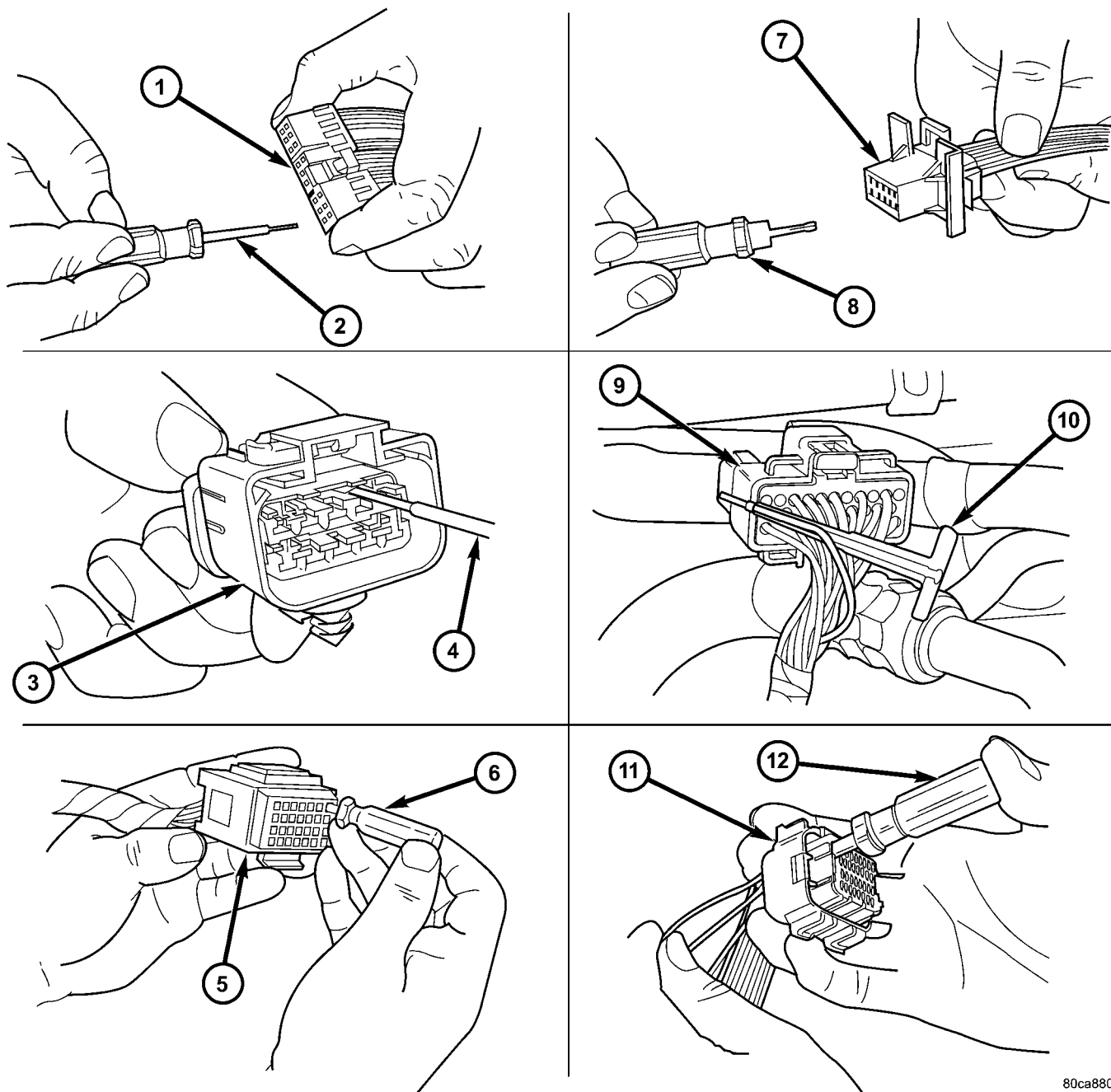


80ca8802

**Fig. 11 EXAMPLES OF CONNECTOR SECONDARY TERMINAL LOCKS**

1 - Secondary Terminal Lock

## CONNECTOR (Continued)



80ca8809

**Fig. 12 TERMINAL REMOVAL**

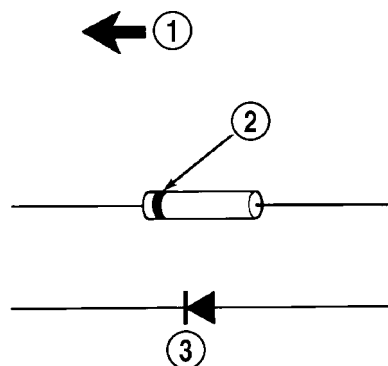
- 1 - TYPICAL CONNECTOR
- 2 - PICK FROM SPECIAL TOOL KIT 6680
- 3 - APEX CONNECTOR
- 4 - PICK FROM SPECIAL TOOL KIT 6680
- 5 - AUGAT CONNECTOR
- 6 - SPECIAL TOOL 6932

- 7 - MOLEX CONNECTOR
- 8 - SPECIAL TOOL 6742
- 9 - THOMAS AND BETTS CONNECTOR
- 10 - SPECIAL TOOL 6934
- 11 - TYCO CONNECTOR
- 12 - SPECIAL TOOL 8638

## DIODE

### REMOVAL

- (1) Disconnect the battery.
- (2) Locate the diode in the harness, and remove the protective covering.
- (3) Remove the diode from the harness, pay attention to the current flow direction (Fig. 13).



948W-197

**Fig. 13 DIODE IDENTIFICATION**

- 1 - CURRENT FLOW  
 2 - BAND AROUND DIODE INDICATES CURRENT FLOW  
 3 - DIODE AS SHOWN IN THE DIAGRAMS

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Remove the insulation from the wires in the harness. Only remove enough insulation to solder in the new diode.
- (2) Install the new diode in the harness, making sure current flow is correct. If necessary, refer to the appropriate wiring diagram for current flow (Fig. 13).
- (3) Solder the connection together using rosin core type solder only. **Do not use acid core solder.**
- (4) Tape the diode to the harness using electrical tape. Make sure the diode is completely sealed from the elements.
- (5) Re-connect the battery and test affected systems.

## TERMINAL

### REMOVAL

- (1) Follow steps for removing terminals described in the connector removal section.
- (2) Cut the wire 6 inches from the back of the connector.

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Select a wire from the terminal repair kit that best matches the color and gage of the wire being repaired.
- (2) Cut the repair wire to the proper length and remove one-half (1/2) inch of insulation.
- (3) Splice the repair wire to the wire harness (see wire splicing procedure).
- (4) Insert the repaired wire into the connector.
- (5) Install the connector locking wedge, if required, and reconnect the connector to its mating half/component.
- (6) Re-tape the wire harness starting at 1-1/2 inches behind the connector and 2 inches past the repair.
- (7) Connect battery and test all affected systems.

## WIRE

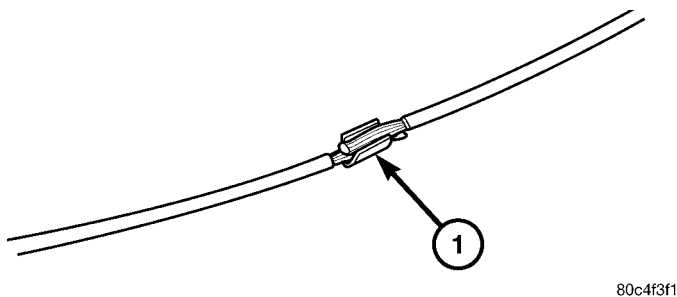
### STANDARD PROCEDURE - WIRE SPLICING

When splicing a wire, it is important that the correct gage be used as shown in the wiring diagrams.

(1) Remove one-half (1/2) inch of insulation from each wire that needs to be spliced.

(2) Place a piece of adhesive lined heat shrink tubing on one side of the wire. Make sure the tubing will be long enough to cover and seal the entire repair area.

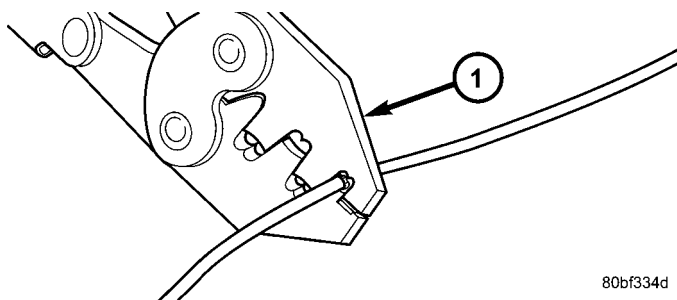
(3) Place the strands of wire overlapping each other inside of the splice clip (Fig. 14).



**Fig. 14 SPLICE BAND**

1 - SPLICE BAND

(4) Using crimping tool, Mopar p/n 05019912AA, crimp the splice clip and wires together (Fig. 15).

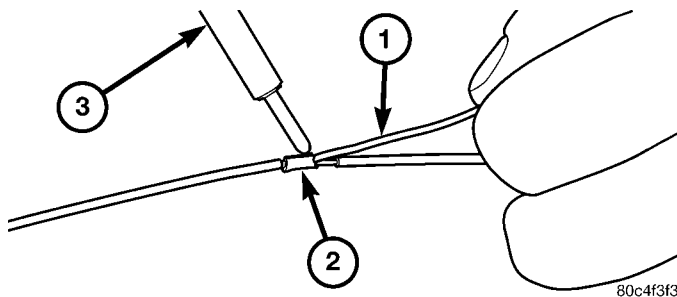


**Fig. 15 CRIMPING TOOL**

1 - CRIMPING TOOL

(5) Solder the connection together using rosin core type solder only (Fig. 16).

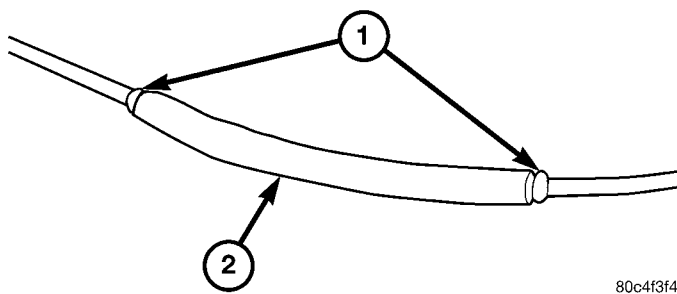
**CAUTION: DO NOT USE ACID CORE SOLDER.**



**Fig. 16 SOLDER SPLICE**

1 - SOLDER  
2 - SPLICE BAND  
3 - SOLDERING IRON

(6) Center the heat shrink tubing over the joint and heat using a heat gun. Heat the joint until the tubing is tightly sealed and sealant comes out of both ends of the tubing (Fig. 17).



**Fig. 17 HEAT SHRINK TUBE**

1 - SEALANT  
2 - HEAT SHRINK TUBE





## 8W-02 COMPONENT INDEX

<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>	<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
A/C Compressor Clutch Relay . . . . .	8W-42	Engine Control Module . . . . .	8W-30
A/C Compressor Clutch . . . . .	8W-42	Engine Coolant Temperature Sensor . . . . .	8W-30
A/C Pressure Transducer . . . . .	8W-42	Engine Oil Pressure Sensor . . . . .	8W-30
Accelerator Pedal Position Sensor . . . . .	8W-30	Engine Oil Pressure Switch . . . . .	8W-30
Accessory Delay Relay . . . . .	8W-64	Engine Starter Motor Relay . . . . .	8W-21
Adjustable Pedals Module . . . . .	8W-30	Engine Starter Motor . . . . .	8W-21
Adjustable Pedals Motor/Sensor Assembly . . . . .	8W-30	EVAP Temp Sensor . . . . .	8W-45
Adjustable Pedals Switch . . . . .	8W-30	EVAP/Purge Solenoid . . . . .	8W-30
Airbag Control Module . . . . .	8W-43	Fog Lamp Relay . . . . .	8W-50
Airbag Squibs . . . . .	8W-43	Fog Lamps . . . . .	8W-50
Ambient Temperature Sensor . . . . .	8W-45	Front Door Courtesy Lamps . . . . .	8W-44
Antenna Module . . . . .	8W-47	Fuel Injectors . . . . .	8W-30
Antenna . . . . .	8W-47	Fuel Pressure Sensor . . . . .	8W-30
Auto Shut Down Relay . . . . .	8W-30	Fuel Pressure Solenoid . . . . .	8W-30
Automatic Day/Night Mirror . . . . .	8W-49	Fuel Pump Module . . . . .	8W-30
Automatic Headlamp Light Sensor/VTSS LED . . . . .	8W-39	Fuel Pump Relay . . . . .	8W-30
Automatic Zone Control Module . . . . .	8W-42	Fuel Tank Module . . . . .	8W-30
Back-Up Lamp Relay . . . . .	8W-51	Fuses . . . . .	8W-10
Battery Temperature Sensor . . . . .	8W-30	Fusible Link . . . . .	8W-20
Battery . . . . .	8W-20	Generator . . . . .	8W-20
Blend Door Motor/Actuators . . . . .	8W-42	Glove Box Lamp . . . . .	8W-44
Blower Motor Controller . . . . .	8W-42	Glow Plug Relays . . . . .	8W-30
Blower Motor Resistor Block . . . . .	8W-42	Glow Plugs . . . . .	8W-30
Blower Motor . . . . .	8W-42	Grounds . . . . .	8W-15
Body Control Module . . . . .	8W-45	Headlamp Leveling Motors . . . . .	8W-50
Boost Pressure Sensor . . . . .	8W-30	Headlamp Leveling Switch . . . . .	8W-50
Brake Lamp Switch . . . . .	8W-33	Headlamps . . . . .	8W-50
Camshaft Position Sensor . . . . .	8W-30	Heated Seat Backs . . . . .	8W-63
Capacitors . . . . .	8W-30	Heated Seat Cushions . . . . .	8W-63
Cargo Lamp . . . . .	8W-44	Heated Seat Switches . . . . .	8W-63
Center High Mounted Stop Lamp . . . . .	8W-51	High Beam Relay . . . . .	8W-50
Cigar Lighter Relay . . . . .	8W-41	High Speed Radiator Fan Relay . . . . .	8W-42
Cigar Lighter . . . . .	8W-41	Hood Ajar Switch . . . . .	8W-39
Circuit Breakers . . . . .	8W-12, 54	Horn Relay . . . . .	8W-41
Clockspring . . . . .	8W-33, 41, 43, 47	Horn Switch . . . . .	8W-41
Coil On Plugs . . . . .	8W-30	Horns . . . . .	8W-41
Coil Rail . . . . .	8W-30	Hydraulic Cooling Module . . . . .	8W-42
Combination Flasher . . . . .	8W-52	Idle Air Control Motor . . . . .	8W-30
Compact Disc Changer . . . . .	8W-47	Ignition Switch . . . . .	8W-10
Controller Antilock Brake . . . . .	8W-35	Impact Sensors . . . . .	8W-43
Coolant Level Sensor . . . . .	8W-45	Input Speed Sensor . . . . .	8W-31
Courtesy Lamps . . . . .	8W-44	Instrument Cluster . . . . .	8W-40
Crankcase Heater . . . . .	8W-30	Intake Air Temperature Sensor . . . . .	8W-30
Crankshaft Position Sensor . . . . .	8W-30	Intake Port Swirl Actuator . . . . .	8W-30
Cylinder Lock Switches . . . . .	8W-61	Intrusion Transceiver Module . . . . .	8W-49
Data Link Connector . . . . .	8W-18	Junction Block . . . . .	8W-12
Door Handle Courtesy Lamps . . . . .	8W-44	Knock Sensor . . . . .	8W-30
Door Lock Motor/Ajar Switches . . . . .	8W-61	Lamp Assemblies . . . . .	8W-51, 52
Door Modules . . . . .	8W-60, 61, 62, 63	Leak Detection Pump . . . . .	8W-30
EGR Solenoid . . . . .	8W-30	License Lamps . . . . .	8W-51
Electronic Speed Control Servo . . . . .	8W-33	Liftgate Ajar Switches . . . . .	8W-61
		Liftgate Flip-Up Ajar Switch . . . . .	8W-61

<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
Liftgate Flip-Up Push Button Switch . . . . .	8W-61
Liftgate Flip-Up Release Solenoid . . . . .	8W-61
Liftgate Power Lock Motor . . . . .	8W-61
Line Pressure Sensor . . . . .	8W-31
Low Beam Relay . . . . .	8W-50
Low Beam/Daytime Running Lamp Relay . . . . .	8W-50
Low Speed Radiator Fan Relay . . . . .	8W-42
Lumbar Motors . . . . .	8W-63
Lumbar Switches . . . . .	8W-63
Manifold Absolute Pressure Sensor . . . . .	8W-30
Manual Temperature Control . . . . .	8W-42
Mass Air Flow Sensor . . . . .	8W-30
Memory Set Switch . . . . .	8W-62, 63
Mode Door Motor/Actuator . . . . .	8W-42
Multi-Function Switches . . . . .	8W-50, 53
Output Speed Sensor . . . . .	8W-31
Overhead Map/Courtesy Lamp . . . . .	8W-44
Oxygen Sensor Downstream Relay . . . . .	8W-30
Oxygen Sensors . . . . .	8W-30
Park Brake Switch . . . . .	8W-40
Park Lamp Relay . . . . .	8W-50
Park Lamps . . . . .	8W-50
Park/Neutral Position Switch . . . . .	8W-31
Park/Turn Signal Lamps . . . . .	8W-50
Power Amplifier . . . . .	8W-47
Power Distribution Center . . . . .	8W-10
Power Mirrors . . . . .	8W-62
Power Outlet . . . . .	8W-41
Power Seat Front Riser Motor Sensors . . . . .	8W-63
Power Seat Front Riser Motors . . . . .	8W-63
Power Seat Horizontal Motor Sensors . . . . .	8W-63
Power Seat Horizontal Motors . . . . .	8W-63
Power Seat Rear Riser Motor Sensors . . . . .	8W-63
Power Seat Rear Riser Motors . . . . .	8W-63
Power Seat Recliner Motor Sensors . . . . .	8W-63
Power Seat Recliner Motors . . . . .	8W-63
Power Seat Switches . . . . .	8W-63
Power Window Motors . . . . .	8W-60
Power Window Switches . . . . .	8W-60
Powertrain Control Module . . . . .	8W-30
Radiator Fan Motor . . . . .	8W-42
Radio . . . . .	8W-47
Rain Sensor . . . . .	8W-49
Rear Fog Lamp Relay . . . . .	8W-51
Rear Window Defogger Relay . . . . .	8W-48

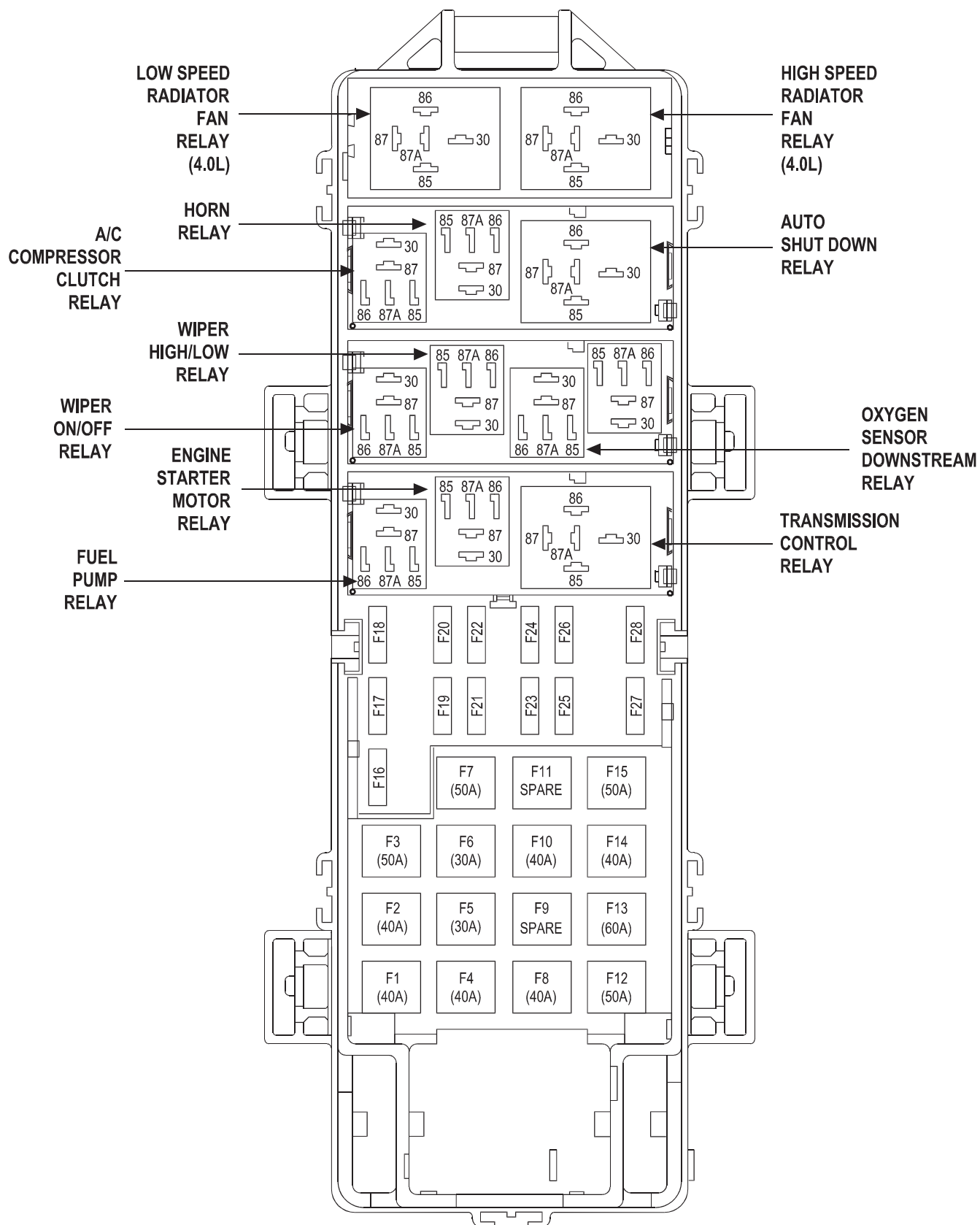
<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
Rear Window Defogger . . . . .	8W-48
Recirculation Door Motor/Actuator . . . . .	8W-42
Red Brake Warning Indicator Switch . . . . .	8W-35
Remote Keyless Module . . . . .	8W-39
Remote Radio Switches . . . . .	8W-47
Seat Belt Switches . . . . .	8W-43
Seat Belt Tensioners . . . . .	8W-43
Seat Module . . . . .	8W-63
Sentry Key Immobilizer Module . . . . .	8W-39
Shifter Assembly . . . . .	8W-31
Side Impact Sensors . . . . .	8W-43
Side Marker Lamps . . . . .	8W-50
Side Repeater Lamps . . . . .	8W-52
Siren . . . . .	8W-49
Speakers . . . . .	8W-47
Speed Control Switches . . . . .	8W-33
Splices . . . . .	8W-70
Sunroof Control Module . . . . .	8W-64
Sunroof Motor . . . . .	8W-64
Sunroof Switch . . . . .	8W-64
Temperature Valve Actuator . . . . .	8W-42
Throttle Position Sensor . . . . .	8W-30
Trailer Tow Circuit Breaker . . . . .	8W-54
Trailer Tow Connector . . . . .	8W-54
Trailer Tow Left Turn Relay . . . . .	8W-54
Trailer Tow Right Turn Relay . . . . .	8W-54
Transfer Case Position Sensor . . . . .	8W-31
Transmission Control Module . . . . .	8W-31
Transmission Control Relay . . . . .	8W-31
Transmission Solenoid Assembly . . . . .	8W-31
Transmission Solenoid . . . . .	8W-31
Transmission Solenoid/TRS Assembly . . . . .	8W-31
Turn Signal Lamps . . . . .	8W-52
Vehicle Information Center . . . . .	8W-49
Viscous/Cabin Heater Relay . . . . .	8W-30
Viscous/Cabin Heater . . . . .	8W-30
Visor/Vanity Lamps . . . . .	8W-44
Washer Fluid Level Switch . . . . .	8W-53
Washer Pumps . . . . .	8W-53
Wastegate Solenoid . . . . .	8W-30
Water In Fuel Sensor . . . . .	8W-30
Wheel Speed Sensors . . . . .	8W-35
Wiper High/Low Relay . . . . .	8W-53
Wiper Motor . . . . .	8W-53

## 8W-10 POWER DISTRIBUTION

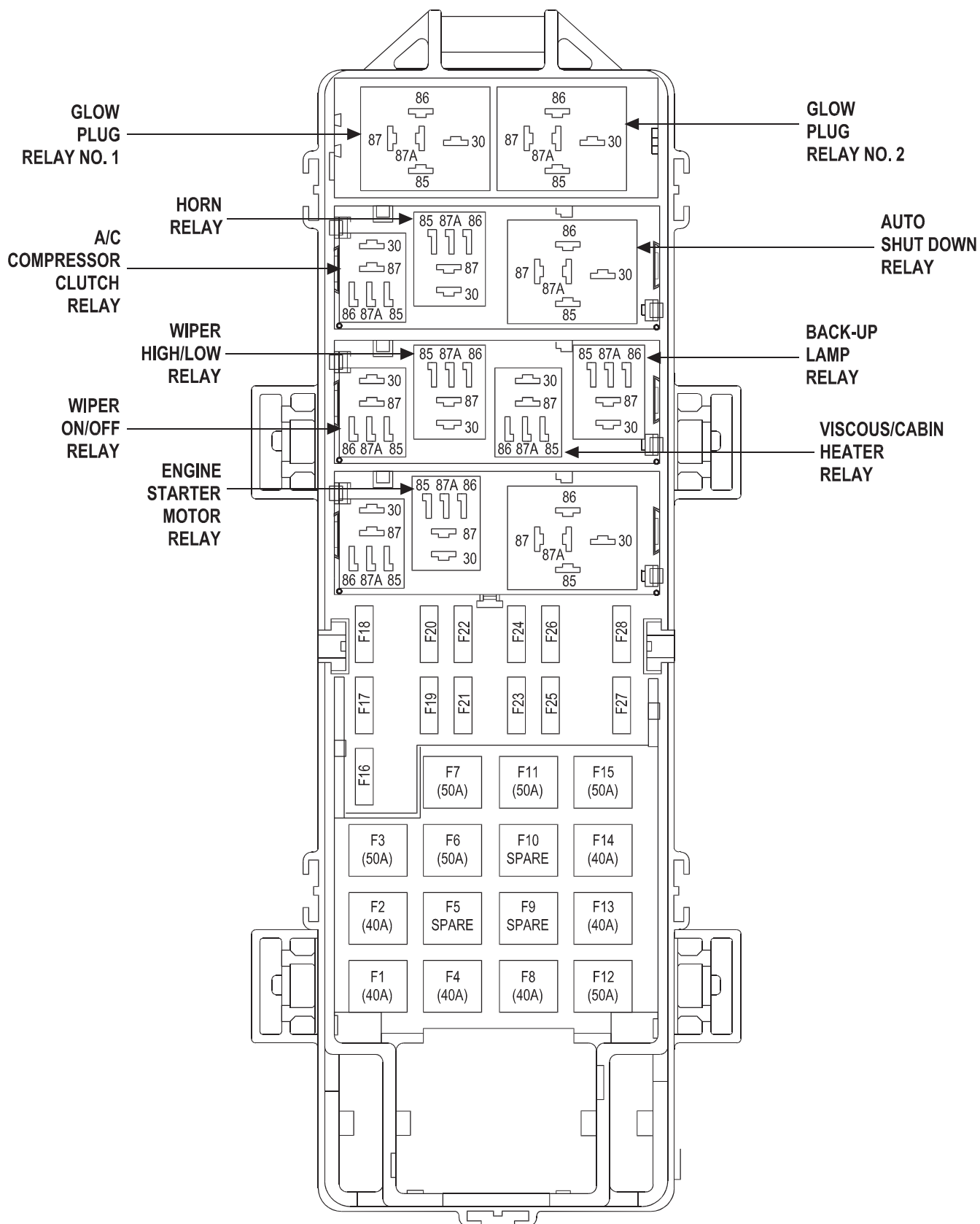
Component	Page
A/C Compressor Clutch	8W-10-37
A/C Compressor Clutch Relay	8W-10-14, 15, 29, 31, 37
Accessory Delay Relay	8W-10-28
Auto Shut Down Relay	8W-10-12, 15, 20, 23, 29
Battery	8W-10-12, 13
Blower Motor	8W-10-12, 13, 16
Blower Motor Controller	8W-10-12, 13, 16
Body Control Module	8W-10-32, 34
Camshaft Position Sensor	8W-10-30
Capacitor	8W-10-20, 23
Capacitor No. 1	8W-10-27
Capacitor No. 2	8W-10-27
Cigar Lighter Relay	8W-10-16
Circuit Breaker No. 1	8W-10-34
Circuit Breaker No. 2	8W-10-28
Coil On Plug No. 1	8W-10-27
Coil On Plug No. 2	8W-10-27
Coil On Plug No. 3	8W-10-27
Coil On Plug No. 4	8W-10-27
Coil On Plug No. 5	8W-10-27
Coil On Plug No. 6	8W-10-27
Coil On Plug No. 7	8W-10-27
Coil On Plug No. 8	8W-10-27
Coil Rail	8W-10-20, 23
Controller Antilock Brake	8W-10-12, 13, 14, 15, 18, 19, 37
Crankcase Heater	8W-10-30
EGR Solenoid	8W-10-30
Engine Control Module	8W-10-15, 29, 30, 36
Engine Starter Motor	8W-10-32
Engine Starter Motor Relay	8W-10-32
Fog Lamp Relay	8W-10-28
Fuel Injector No. 1	8W-10-26
Fuel Injector No. 2	8W-10-26
Fuel Injector No. 3	8W-10-26
Fuel Injector No. 4	8W-10-26
Fuel Injector No. 5	8W-10-26
Fuel Injector No. 6	8W-10-26
Fuel Injector No. 7	8W-10-26
Fuel Injector No. 8	8W-10-26
Fuel Pressure Solenoid	8W-10-30
Fuel Pump Module	8W-10-37
Fuel Pump Relay	8W-10-14, 37
Fuse 1	8W-10-12, 13, 16
Fuse 2	8W-10-12, 13, 16
Fuse 3	8W-10-12, 13, 17
Fuse 4	8W-10-12, 13, 18, 19
Fuse 5	8W-10-12, 18, 35
Fuse 6	8W-10-12, 13, 17, 19, 20, 23
Fuse 7	8W-10-12, 13, 28, 35
Fuse 8	8W-10-12, 13, 32, 25
Fuse 9	8W-10-35
Fuse 10	8W-10-12, 21, 24, 35
Fuse 11	8W-10-13, 16, 19
Fuse 12	8W-10-12, 13, 15, 34, 35
Fuse 13	8W-10-13, 15, 29
Fuse 14	8W-10-12, 14, 15, 17, 32
Fuse 15	8W-10-12, 14, 15, 17, 35
Fuse 16	8W-10-17, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 29
Fuse 17	8W-10-17

Component	Page
Fuse 18	8W-10-14, 15, 35, 36
Fuse 19	8W-10-14, 20, 23, 33
Fuse 20	8W-10-33
Fuse 21	8W-10-14, 15, 34, 37
Fuse 22	8W-10-15, 34, 36
Fuse 23	8W-10-15, 28, 29
Fuse 24	8W-10-14, 28, 37
Fuse 25	8W-10-14, 15, 28, 37
Fuse 26	8W-10-16, 20, 23, 29
Fuse 27	8W-10-14, 15, 28, 36
Fuse 28	8W-10-18, 34
Fuse 29	8W-10-34
Fuse 30	8W-10-34
Fuse 31	8W-10-33
Fuse 32	8W-10-34
Fuse 33	8W-10-33
Fusible Link	8W-10-12, 13
G200	8W-10-32
Generator	8W-10-12, 13, 30
Glow Plug No. 1	8W-10-19
Glow Plug No. 2	8W-10-19
Glow Plug No. 3	8W-10-19
Glow Plug No. 4	8W-10-19
Glow Plug No. 5	8W-10-19
Glow Plug Relay No. 1	8W-10-13, 19, 31
Glow Plug Relay No. 2	8W-10-13, 19, 31
High Beam Relay	8W-10-17
High Speed Radiator Fan Relay	8W-10-21, 24
Horn No. 1	8W-10-36
Horn No. 2	8W-10-36
Horn Relay	8W-10-14, 15, 36
Hydraulic Cooling Module	8W-10-21, 25, 31
Ignition Switch	8W-10-12, 15, 32, 33, 34
Intake Port Swirl Actuator	8W-10-30
Junction Block	8W-10-12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 28, 33, 34, 35
Low Beam Relay	8W-10-17
Low Beam/Daytime Running Lamp Relay	8W-10-17
Low Speed Radiator Fan Relay	8W-10-21, 24
Mass Air Flow Sensor	8W-10-30
Oxygen Sensor 1/1 Upstream	8W-10-21, 22, 24, 25
Oxygen Sensor 1/2 Downstream	8W-10-21, 22, 24, 25
Oxygen Sensor 2/1 Upstream	8W-10-22, 24, 25
Oxygen Sensor 2/2 Downstream	8W-10-22, 25
Oxygen Sensor Downstream Relay	8W-10-21, 22, 24, 25
Park Lamp Relay	8W-10-17
Power Distribution Center	8W-10-2, 3, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 28, 29, 32, 35, 36, 37
Rear Power Outlet	8W-10-14, 15, 28, 36
Rear Window Defogger Relay	8W-10-16
Transmission Control Module	8W-10-12, 18
Transmission Control Relay	8W-10-12, 18
Transmission Solenoid	8W-10-18
Transmission Solenoid/TRS Assembly	8W-10-18
Viscous/Cabin Heater	8W-10-29
Viscous/Cabin Heater Relay	8W-10-15, 29, 31
Wastegate Solenoid	8W-10-31
Water In Fuel Sensor	8W-10-30

## POWER DISTRIBUTION CENTER



POWER DISTRIBUTION CENTER





FUSES  
(GAS)

FUSE NO.	AMPS	FUSED CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	40A	C1 12DG	FUSED B(+)
2	40A	A149 12RD/TN	FUSED B(+)
3	50A	A145 10WT/RD	FUSED B(+)
4	40A	A10 12RD/DG	FUSED B(+)
5	30A	A30 14RD/WT	FUSED B(+)
		A30 14RD/WT ◇◇	
6	30A	A14 14RD/DG	FUSED B(+)
7	50A	A147 10RD/GY	FUSED B(+)
8	40A	A1 12RD	FUSED B(+)
9	-	-	-
10	40A	A16 12GY ◇	FUSED B(+)
11	-	-	-
12	50A	A146 10OR/WT	FUSED B(+)
13	-	-	-
14	40A	A2 12PK/BK	FUSED B(+)
15	50A	A148 10PK/WT	FUSED B(+)
16	15A	F142 18OR/DG	FUSED AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT
		F142 18OR/DG ◇◇	
17	-	-	-
18	15A	F62 18RD	FUSED B(+)
		F62 18RD	
19	10A	A7 14RD/BK	FUSED B(+)
20	-	-	-
21	15A	A17 18RD/BK	FUSED B(+)
22	-	-	-
23	-	-	-
24	20A	A62 16VT/LB ●	FUSED B(+)
24	20A	A62 16VT/WT ●●	FUSED B(+)
25	20A	A20 12RD/DB	FUSED B(+)
26	15A	F42 18DG/LG	FUSED AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT
		F42 18DG/LG	
27	20A	A148 16LG/RD	FUSED B(+)
28	15A	T15 18YL/BR ◇	FUSED TRANSMISSION CONTROL RELAY OUTPUT

◇ 4.0L      ● LHD  
 ◇◇ 4.7L      ●● RHD

FUSES  
(DIESEL)

FUSE NO.	AMPS	FUSED CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	40A	C1 12DG	FUSED B(+)
2	40A	A149 12RD/TN	FUSED B(+)
3	50A	A145 10WT/RD	FUSED B(+)
4	40A	A10 12RD/DG	FUSED B(+)
5	-	-	-
6	50A	A105 10DB/RD	FUSED B(+)
7	50A	A147 10RD/GY	FUSED B(+)
8	40A	A1 12RD	FUSED B(+)
9	-	-	-
10	-	-	-
11	50A	A110 10VT/RD	FUSED B(+)
12	50A	A146 10OR/WT	FUSED B(+)
13	40A	A14 14RD/WT	FUSED B(+)
		A14 14RD/WT	
14	40A	A2 12PK/BK	FUSED B(+)
15	50A	A148 10PK/WT	FUSED B(+)
16	20A	F15 18DB/WT	FUSED AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT
		F15 18DB/WT	
17	-	-	-
18	15A	F62 18RD	FUSED B(+)
		F62 18RD	
19	-	-	-
20	-	-	-
21	15A	A17 14RD/BK	FUSED B(+)
22	10A	F300 18RD/BK	FUSED B(+)
23	15A	A80 18RD/LG	FUSED B(+)
24	-	-	-
25	20A	A20 12RD/DB	FUSED B(+)
26	20A	F142 14OR/DG	FUSED AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT
27	20A	A148 16LG/RD	FUSED B(+)
28	-	-	-

## RELAYS

A/C  
COMPRESSOR  
CLUTCH  
RELAY  
(DIESEL)

CAVITY	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
30	A17 14RD/BK	FUSED B(+)
85	C13 18DB/OR	A/C COMPRESSOR CLUTCH RELAY CONTROL
86	F15 18DB/WT	FUSED AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT
	F15 18DB/WT	FUSED AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT
87	C2 18DB/BK	A/C COMPRESSOR CLUTCH RELAY OUTPUT
87A	-	-

A/C  
COMPRESSOR  
CLUTCH  
RELAY  
(GAS)

CAVITY	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
30	A17 18RD/BK	FUSED B(+)
85	C13 18DB/OR •	A/C CLUTCH RELAY CONTROL
85	C13 20DB/OR ••	A/C CLUTCH RELAY CONTROL
86	F12 18DB/WT	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-START)
87	C2 18DB/YL	A/C CLUTCH RELAY OUTPUT
87A	-	-

AUTO  
SHUT DOWN  
RELAY  
(DIESEL)

CAVITY	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
30	A14 14RD/WT	FUSED B(+)
85	K51 18DB/YL	AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY CONTROL
86	A14 14RD/WT	FUSED B(+)
87	A142 14DG/OR	AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT
	A142 14DG/OR	AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT
87A	-	-

- LHD
- RHD

**AUTO  
SHUT DOWN  
RELAY  
(GAS)**

CAVITY	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
30	A14 14RD/DG	FUSED B(+)
85	K51 18DB/YL	AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY CONTROL
86	F991 18OR/DB ◇	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-START)
	F991 20OR/DB ◇◇	
86	F991 20OR/DB ●●	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-START)
	F991 20OR/DB ●●	
87	A142 14DG/OR	AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT
87A	-	-

**BACK-UP  
LAMP  
RELAY  
(DIESEL)**

CAVITY	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
30	F22 18WT/PK	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN)
85	F22 18WT/PK	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN)
	F22 18WT/PK	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN)
86	T2 18TN/BK	BACK-UP LAMP RELAY CONTROL
87	L1 18VT/BK	BACK-UP LAMP FEED
87A	-	-

**ENGINE  
STARTER  
MOTOR  
RELAY  
(DIESEL)**

CAVITY	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
30	A1 12RD	FUSED B(+)
85	T752 18DG/OR	ENGINE STARTER MOTOR RELAY CONTROL
86	F45 18YL/RD	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (START)
87	T40 12BR	ENGINE STARTER MOTOR RELAY OUTPUT
87A	-	-

●● RHD  
◇ 4.0L LHD  
◇◇ EXCEPT 4.0L LHD

ENGINE  
STARTER  
MOTOR  
RELAY  
(GAS)

CAVITY	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
30	A1 12RD	FUSED B(+)
85	T41 18BK/WT	PARK/NEUTRAL POSITION SWITCH SENSE (T41)
	T41 18BK/WT ●●	PARK/NEUTRAL POSITION SWITCH SENSE (T41)
86	F45 18YL/RD *	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (START)
	F45 18YL/RD ◇◇	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (START)
86	F45 20YL/RD **	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (START)
87	T40 12LG	ENGINE STARTER MOTOR RELAY OUTPUT
87A	-	-

FUEL  
PUMP  
RELAY  
(GAS)

CAVITY	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
30	A62 16VT/LB ●	FUSED B(+)
30	A62 16VT/WT ●●	FUSED B(+)
85	K31 18BR	FUEL PUMP RELAY CONTROL
86	F991 20OR/DB	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-START)
	F991 20OR/DB ●●	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-START)
	F991 18OR/DB ●	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-START)
87	A141 16DG/WT ●	FUEL PUMP RELAY OUTPUT
87	A141 16DG/BK ●●	FUEL PUMP RELAY OUTPUT
87A	-	-

GLOW PLUG  
RELAY NO. 1  
(DIESEL)

CAVITY	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
30	A105 10DB/RD	FUSED B(+)
85	K152 18WT	GLOW PLUG RELAY NO. 1 CONTROL
86	F15 18DB/WT	FUSED AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT
	F15 18DB/WT	FUSED AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT
87	K154 10GY	GLOW PLUG RELAY NO. 1 OUTPUT
87A	-	-

- LHD
- RHD
- \* EXCEPT 4.0L RHD
- \*\* 4.0L RHD
- ◇◇ 4.7L



**GLOW PLUG  
RELAY NO. 2  
(DIESEL)**

CAVITY	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
30	A110 10VT/RD	FUSED B(+)
85	K236 18GY/PK	GLOW PLUG RELAY NO. 2 CONTROL
86	F15 18DB/WT	FUSED AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT
	F15 18DB/WT	
87	K254 10GY/YL	GLOW PLUG RELAY NO. 2 OUTPUT
87A	-	-

**HIGH  
SPEED  
RADIATOR  
FAN RELAY  
(4.0L)**

CAVITY	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	-	-
2	A16 12GY	FUSED B(+)
3	-	-
4	C27 18PK/DB	HIGH SPEED RADIATOR FAN RELAY CONTROL
5	-	-
6	F22 20WT/PK	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN)
7	-	-
8	C25 12YL	HIGH SPEED RADIATOR FAN RELAY OUTPUT
9	-	-

**HORN  
RELAY**

CAVITY	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
30	F62 18RD	FUSED B(+)
85	X3 20BK/RD	HORN RELAY CONTROL
86	F62 18RD	FUSED B(+)
87	X2 18DG/RD	HORN RELAY OUTPUT
	X2 18DG/RD ▽	HORN RELAY OUTPUT
87A	-	-

**LOW  
SPEED  
RADIATOR  
FAN RELAY  
(4.0L)**

CAVITY	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
30	A16 12GY	FUSED B(+)
85	C24 18DB/PK	LOW SPEED RADIATOR FAN RELAY CONTROL
86	F22 20WT/PK	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN)
87	C23 12DG	LOW SPEED RADIATOR FAN RELAY OUTPUT
87A	-	-

**OXYGEN  
SENSOR  
DOWNSTREAM  
RELAY  
(GAS)**

CAVITY	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
30	F142 18OR/DG	FUSED AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT
	F142 18OR/DG	FUSED AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT
85	K512 18RD/YL	OXYGEN SENSOR DOWNSTREAM RELAY CONTROL
86	F142 18OR/DG	FUSED AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT
	F142 18OR/DG	FUSED AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT
87	K200 18VT/OR ##	OXYGEN SENSOR DOWNSTREAM RELAY OUTPUT
87	K200 18BR/WT #	OXYGEN SENSOR DOWNSTREAM RELAY OUTPUT
87A	-	-

**TRANSMISSION  
CONTROL  
RELAY  
(GAS)**

CAVITY	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
30	A30 14RD/WT	FUSED B(+)
85	K125 18WT/DB ◇	GENERATOR SOURCE
85	Z307 18BK ◇◇	GROUND
86	K30 20PK/YL ●	TRANSMISSION CONTROL RELAY CONTROL
86	K30 20PK ●●	TRANSMISSION CONTROL RELAY CONTROL
87	T16 14RD	TRANSMISSION CONTROL RELAY OUTPUT
87A	-	-

● LHD    ◇ 4.0L    # 4.7L RHD  
 ●● RHD    ◇◇ 4.7L    ## EXCEPT 4.7L RHD

**VISCOUS/  
CABIN  
HEATER  
RELAY  
(DIESEL)**

CAVITY	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
30	A80 18RD/LG	FUSED B(+)
85	K132 18BR/BK	VISCOUS/CABIN HEATER RELAY CONTROL
86	F15 18DB/WT	FUSED AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT
	F15 18DB/WT	FUSED AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT
87	A82 18PK/LG	VISCOUS/CABIN HEATER RELAY OUTPUT
87A	-	-

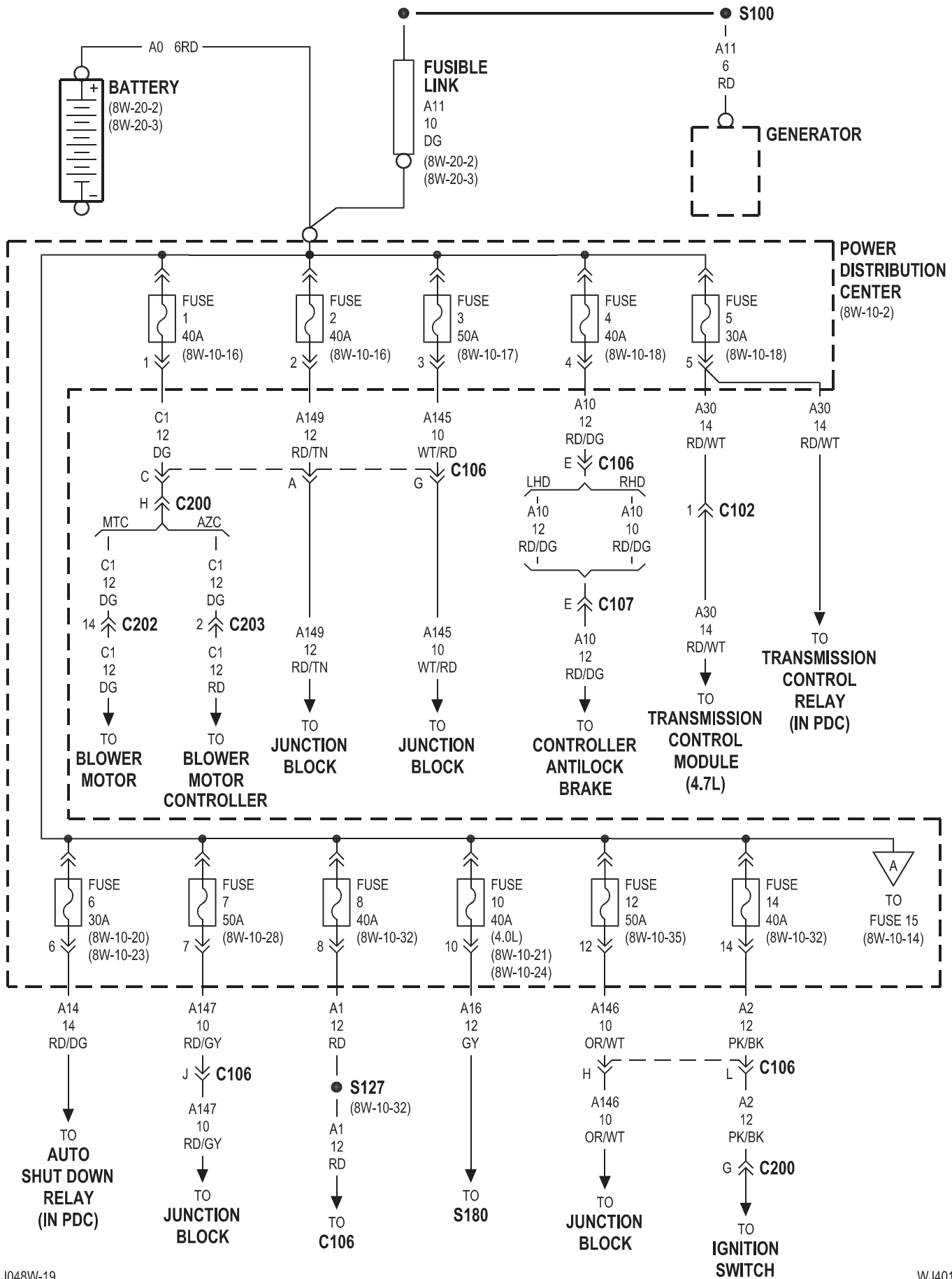
**WIPER  
HIGH/LOW  
RELAY**

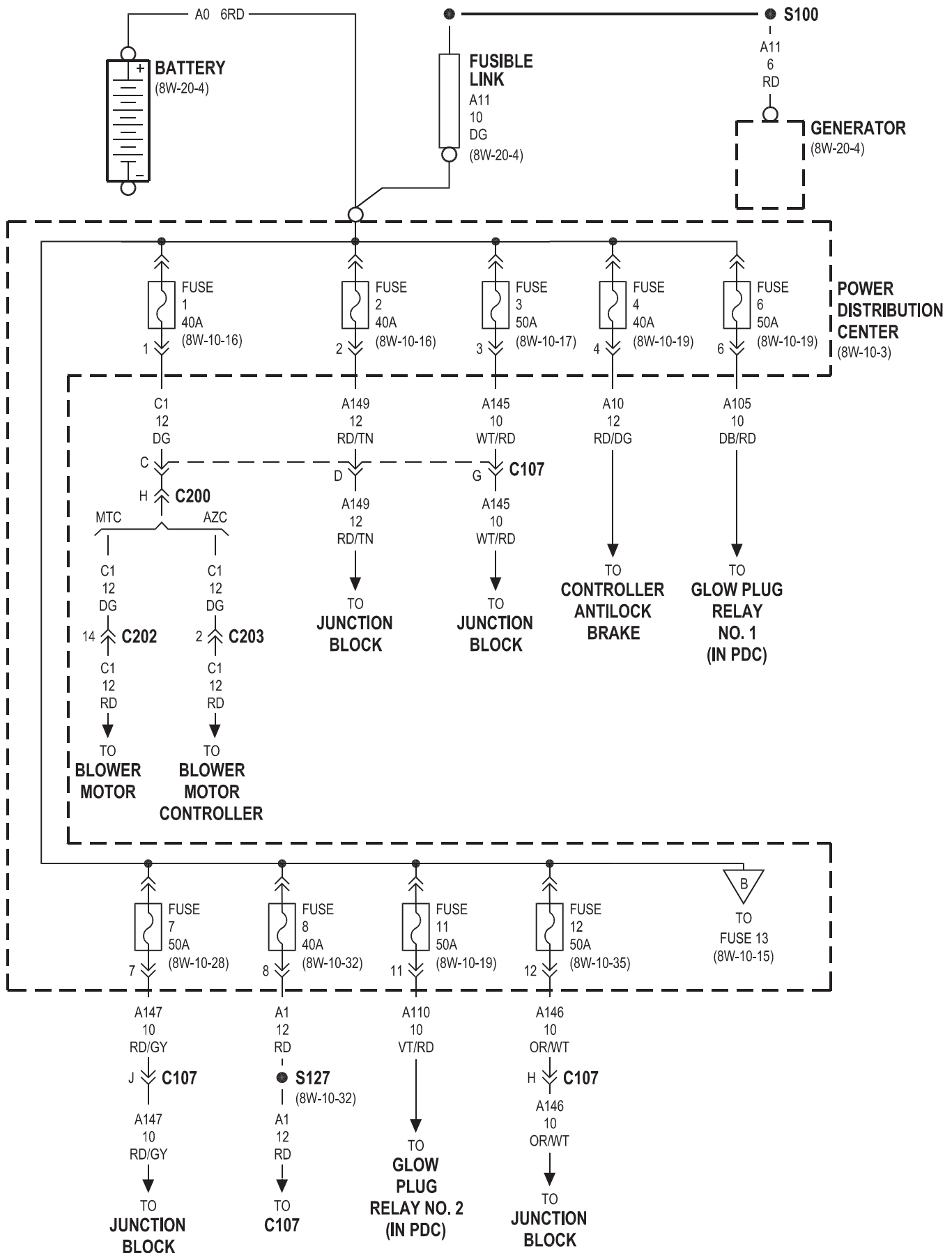
CAVITY	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
30	V60 16YL/DG ▽	WIPER ON/OFF RELAY OUTPUT
30	V60 16TN/RD ▽ ▽	WIPER ON/OFF RELAY OUTPUT
85	V16 20VT	WIPER HIGH/LOW RELAY CONTROL
86	V6 16DB	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-ACC)
	V6 16DB ▽ ▽	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-ACC)
87	V4 16RD/YL	WIPER HIGH/LOW RELAY HIGH SPEED OUTPUT
87A	V3 16BR/WT	WIPER HIGH/LOW RELAY LOW SPEED OUTPUT

**WIPER  
ON/OFF  
RELAY**

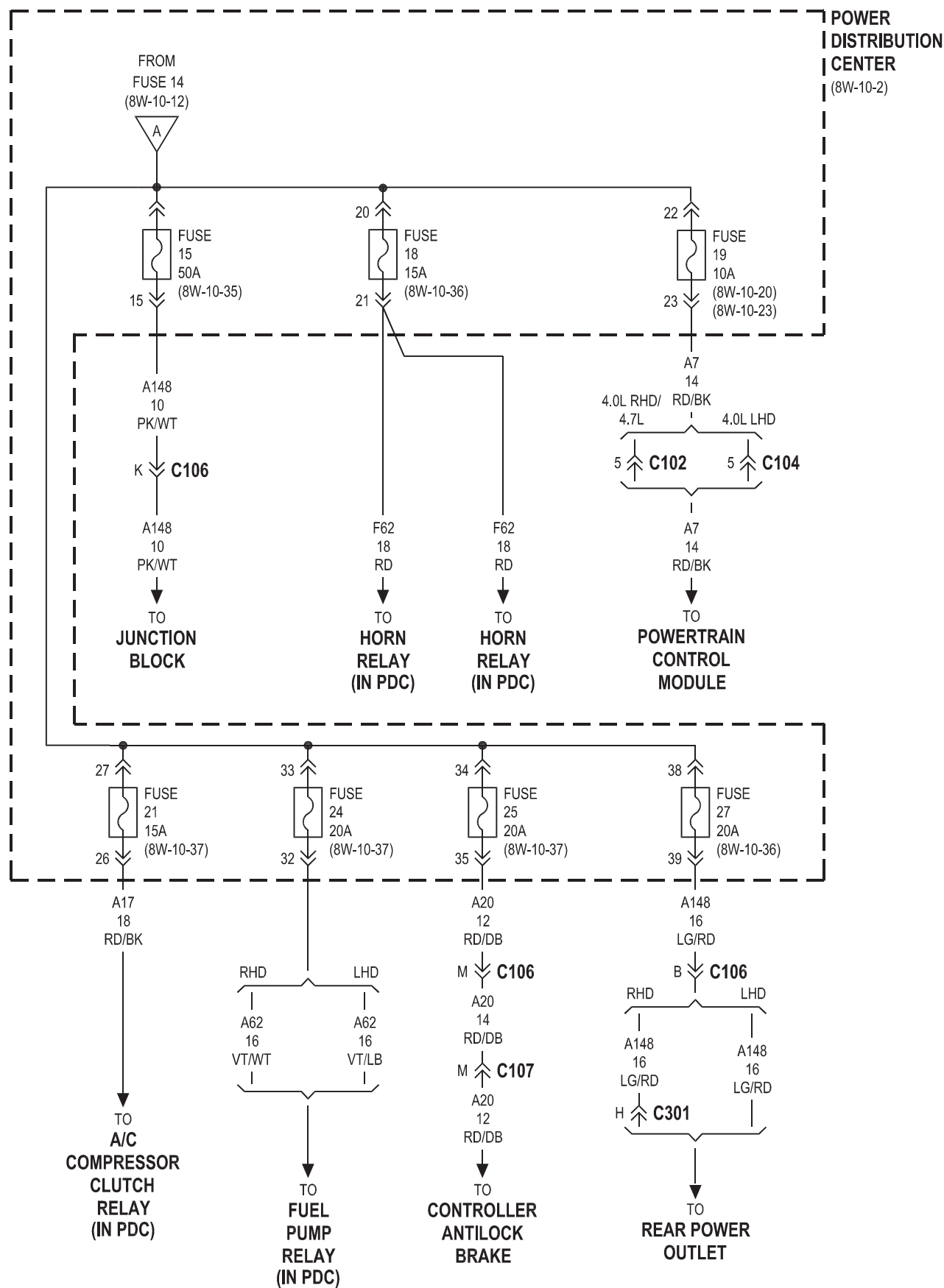
CAVITY	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
30	V60 16YL/DG ▽	WIPER ON/OFF RELAY OUTPUT
30	V60 16TN/RD ▽ ▽	WIPER ON/OFF RELAY OUTPUT
85	V14 20RD/VT	WIPER ON/OFF RELAY CONTROL
86	V6 16DB	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-ACC)
	V6 16DB	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-ACC)
87	V6 16DB	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-ACC)
	V6 16DB	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-ACC)
87A	V55 16TN/RD	WIPER PARK SWITCH SENSE
	V55 16TN/RD ▽ ▽	WIPER PARK SWITCH SENSE

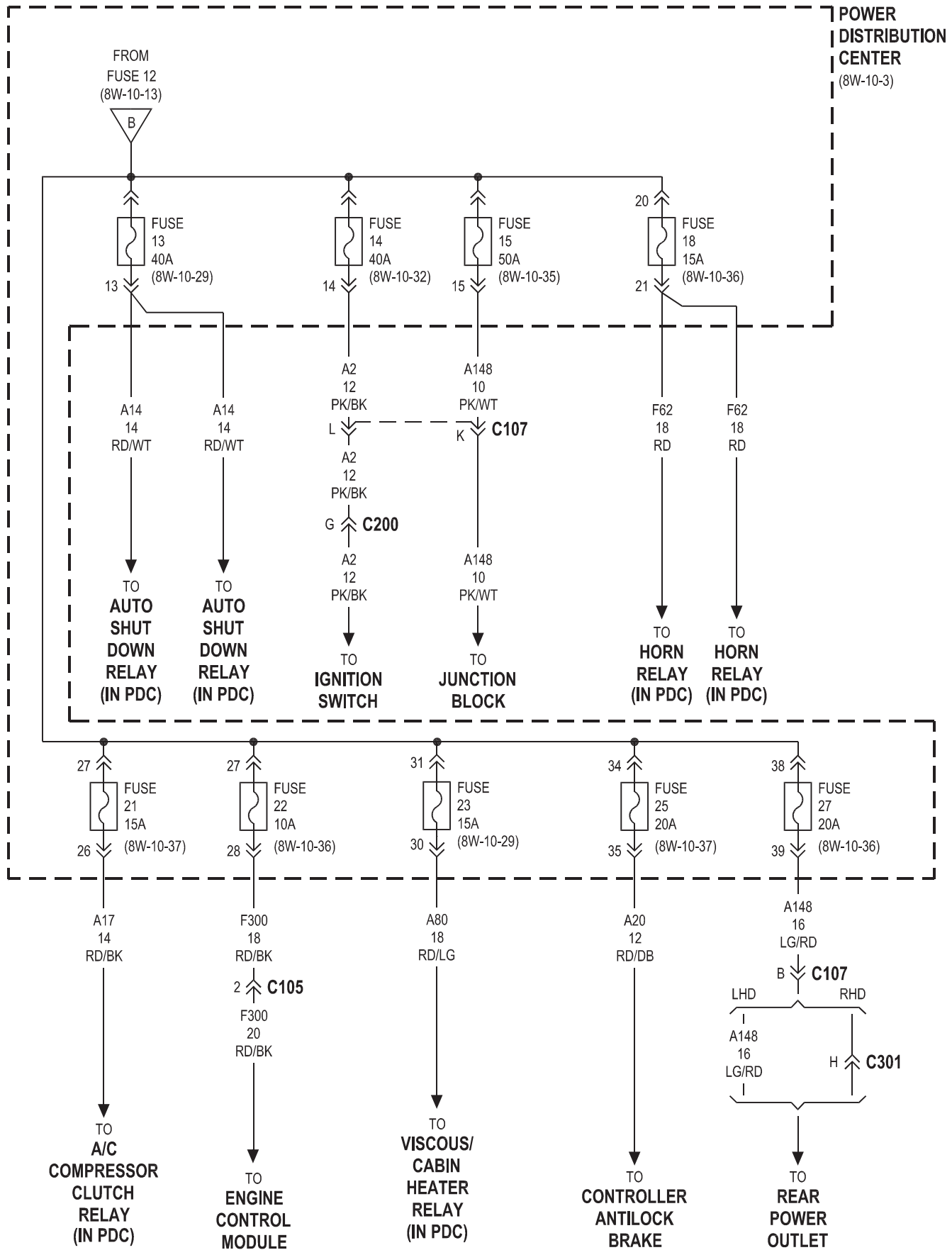
▽ GAS  
▽ ▽ DIESEL



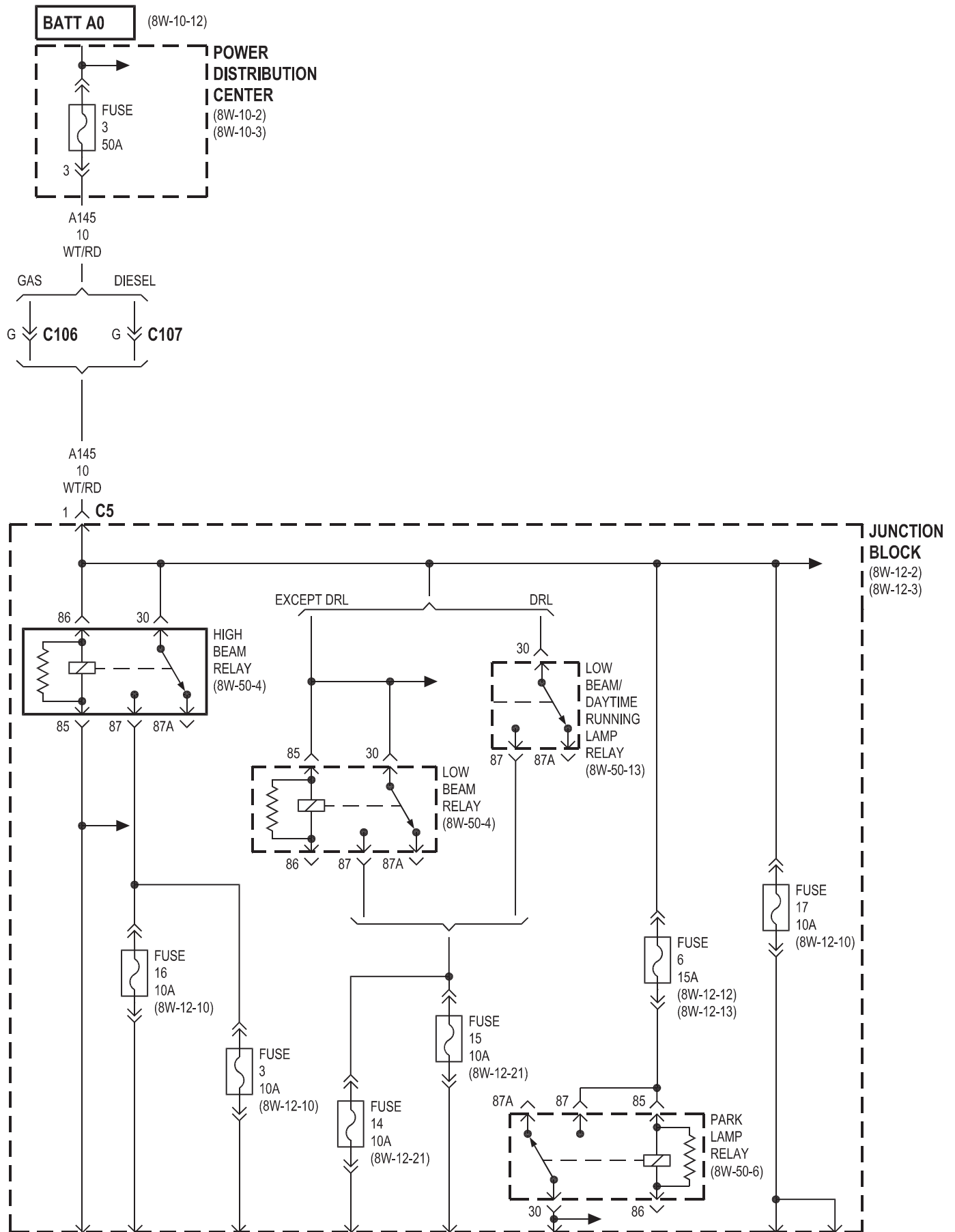


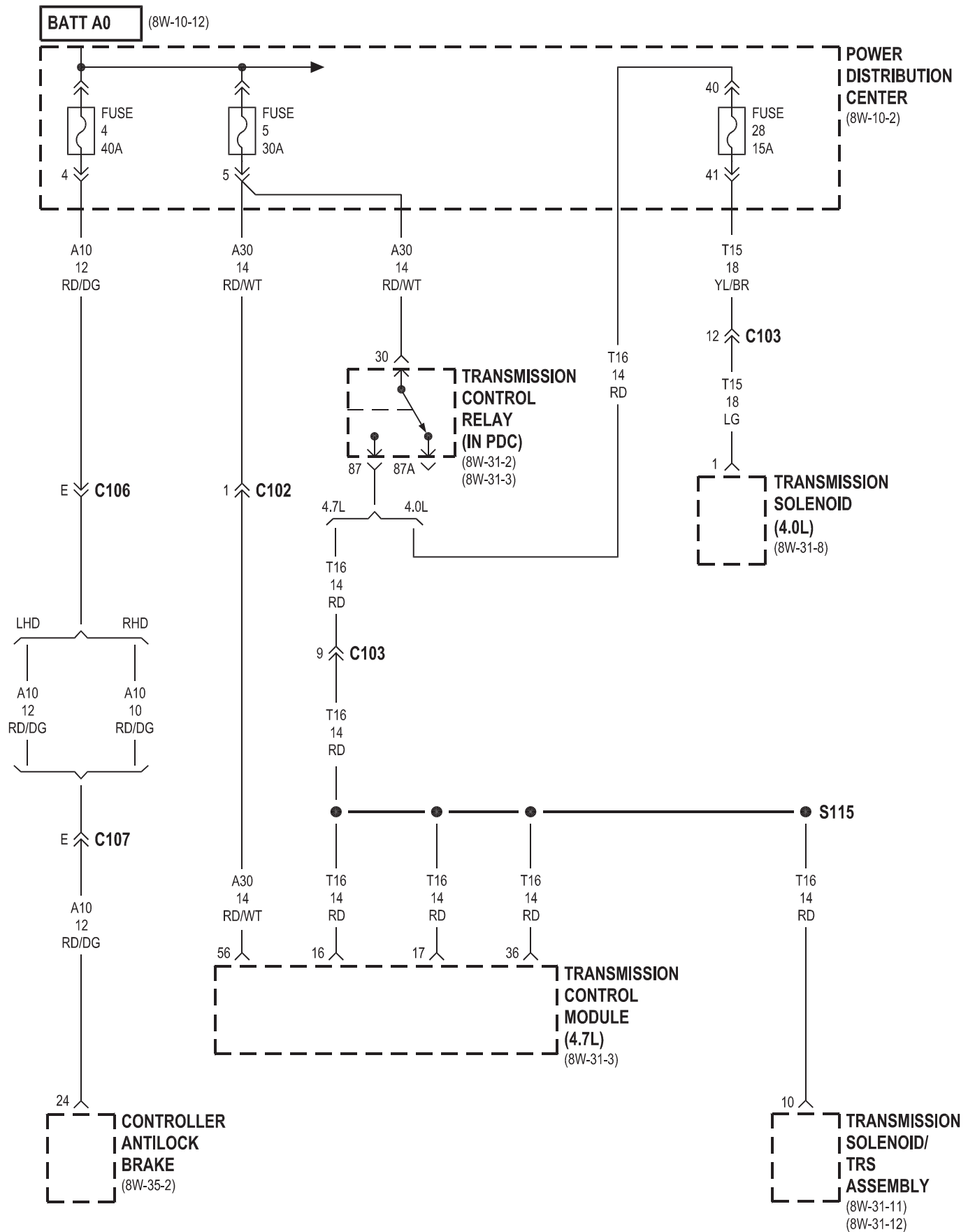




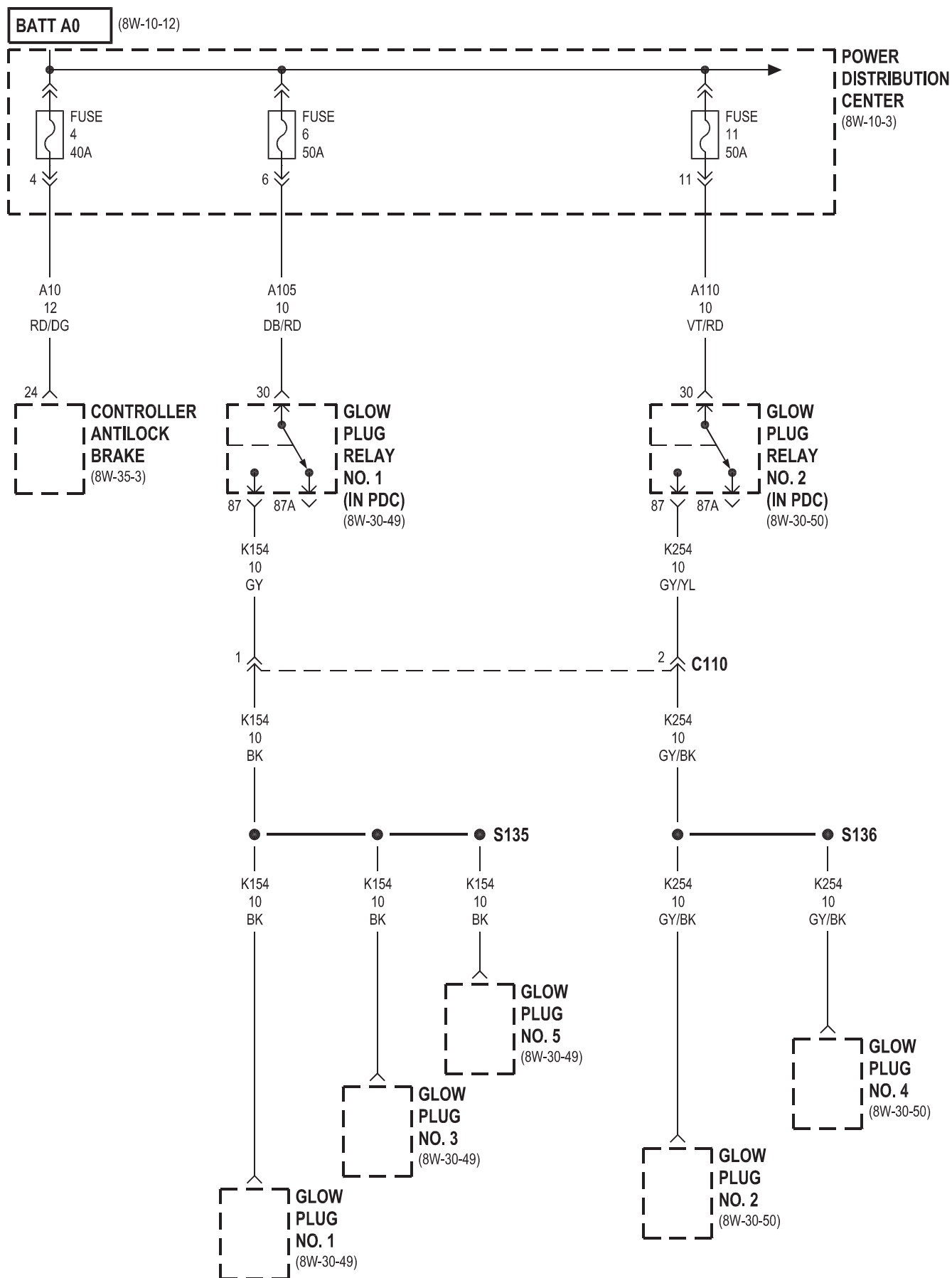


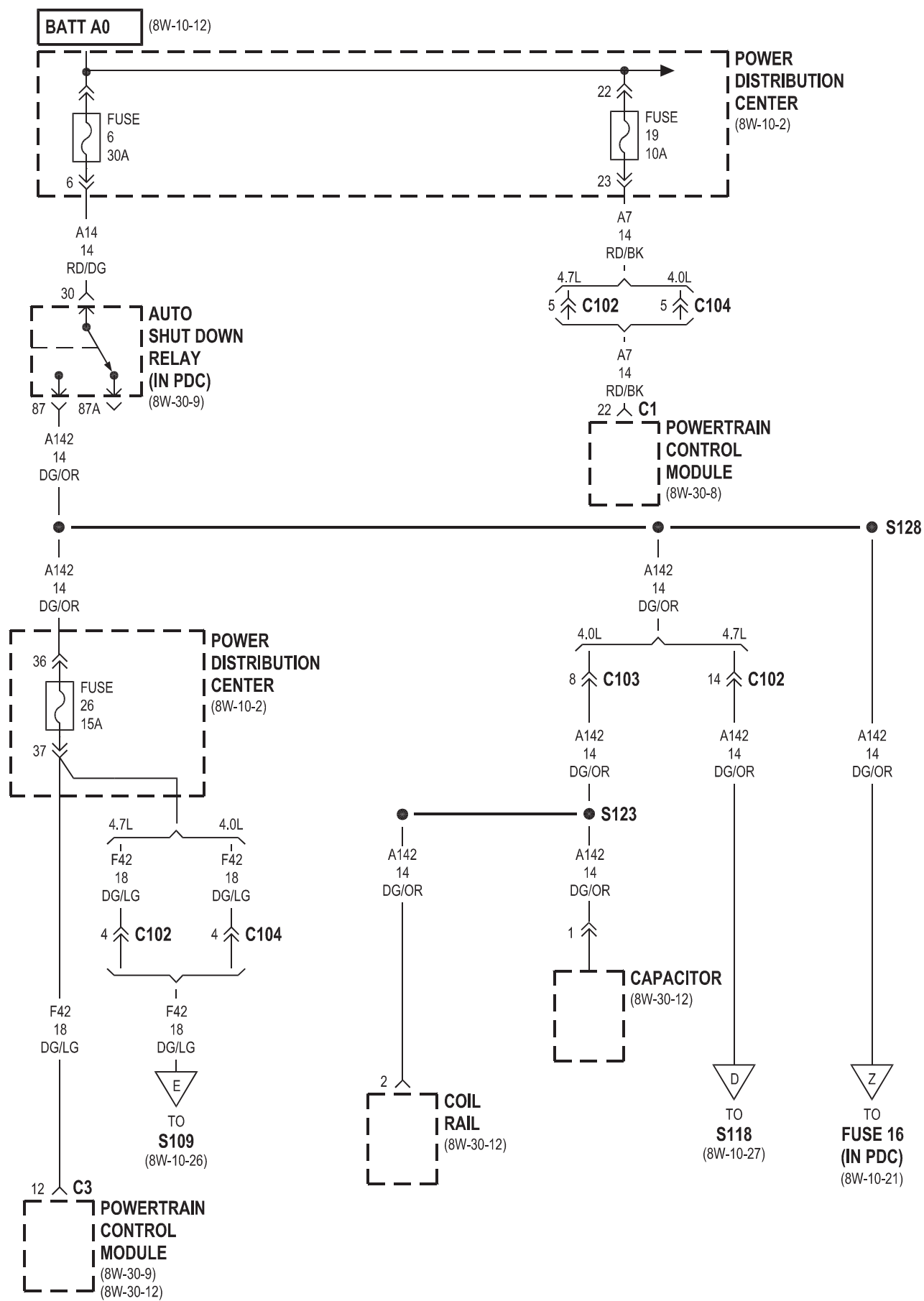


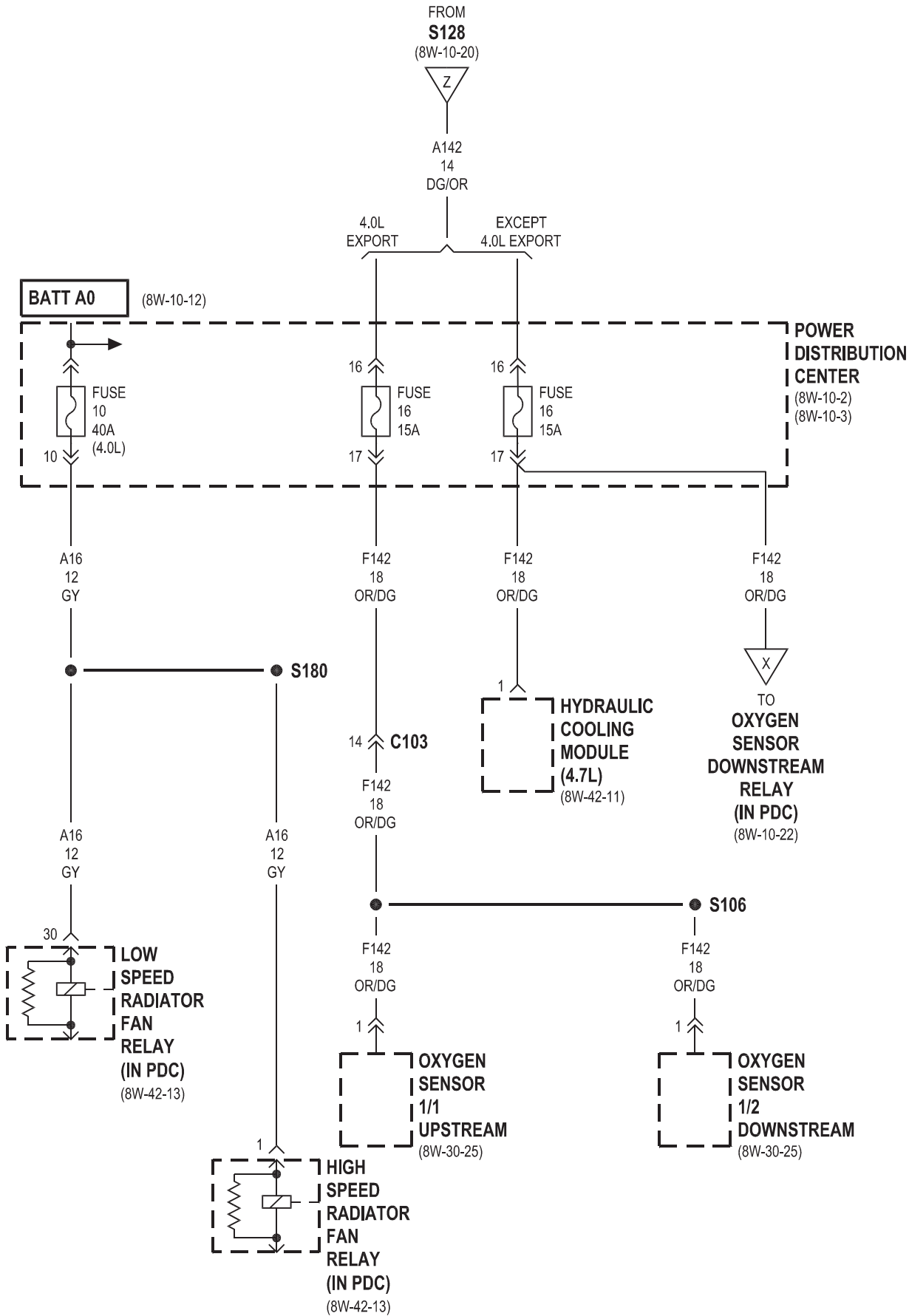


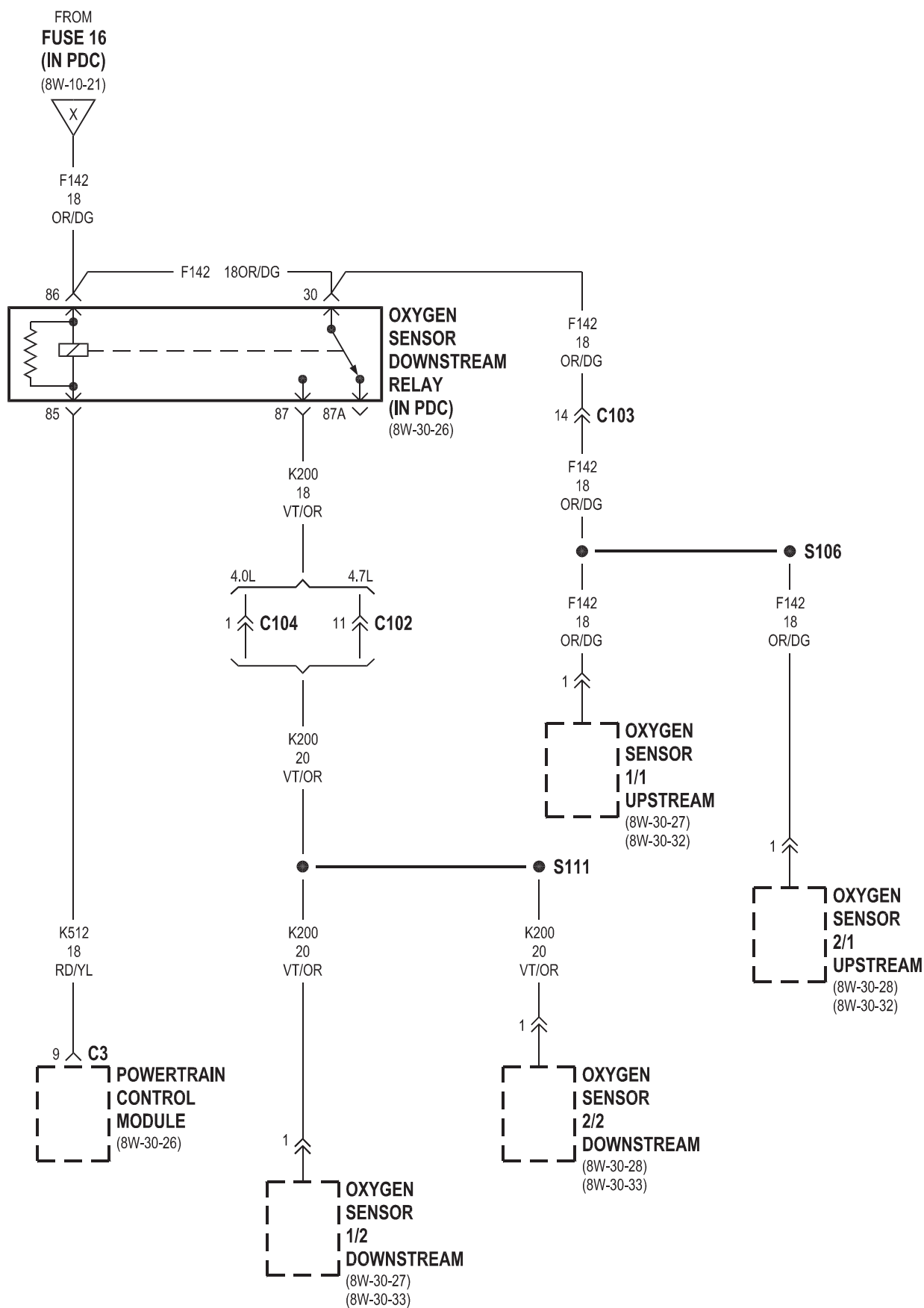






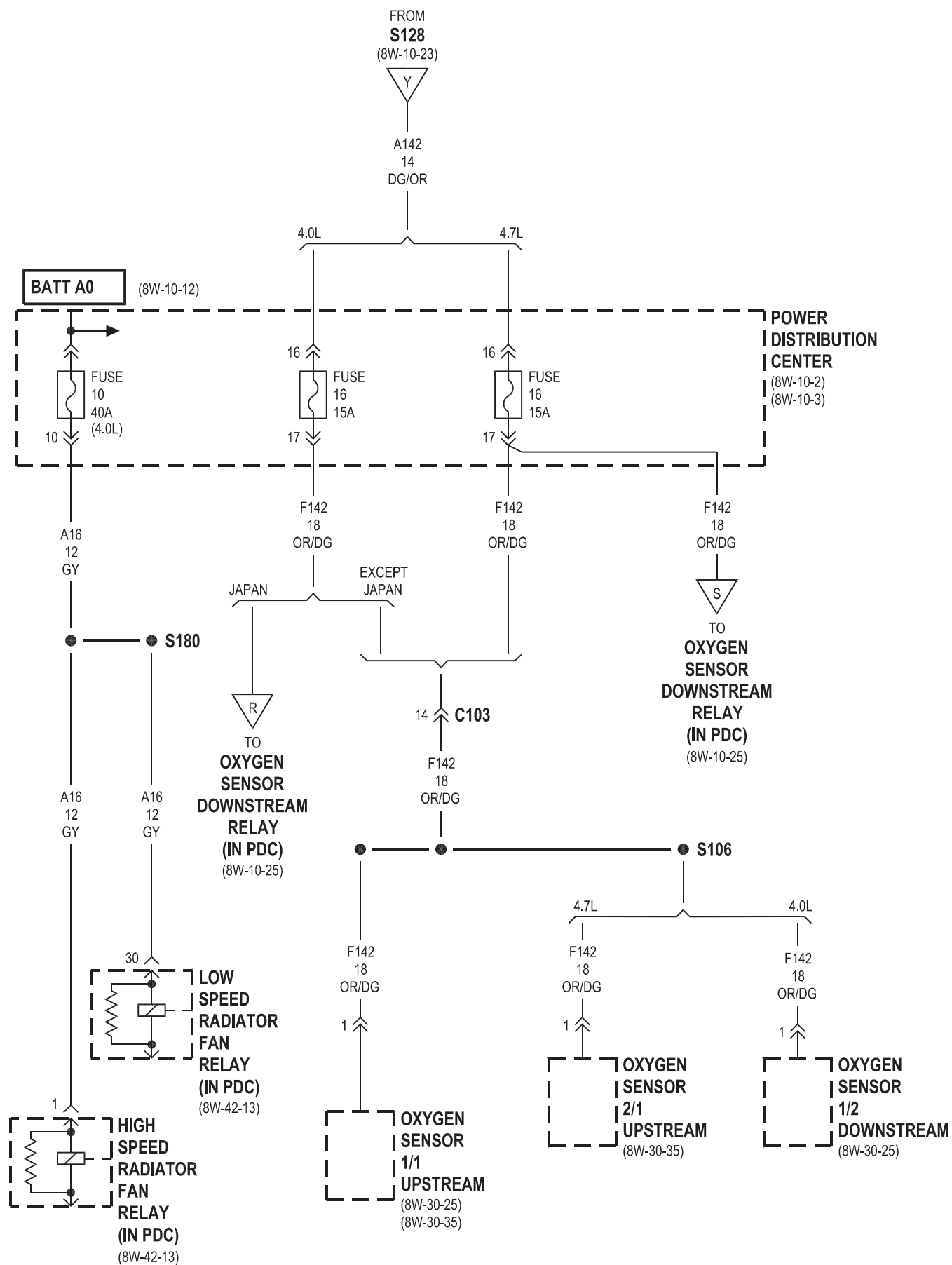


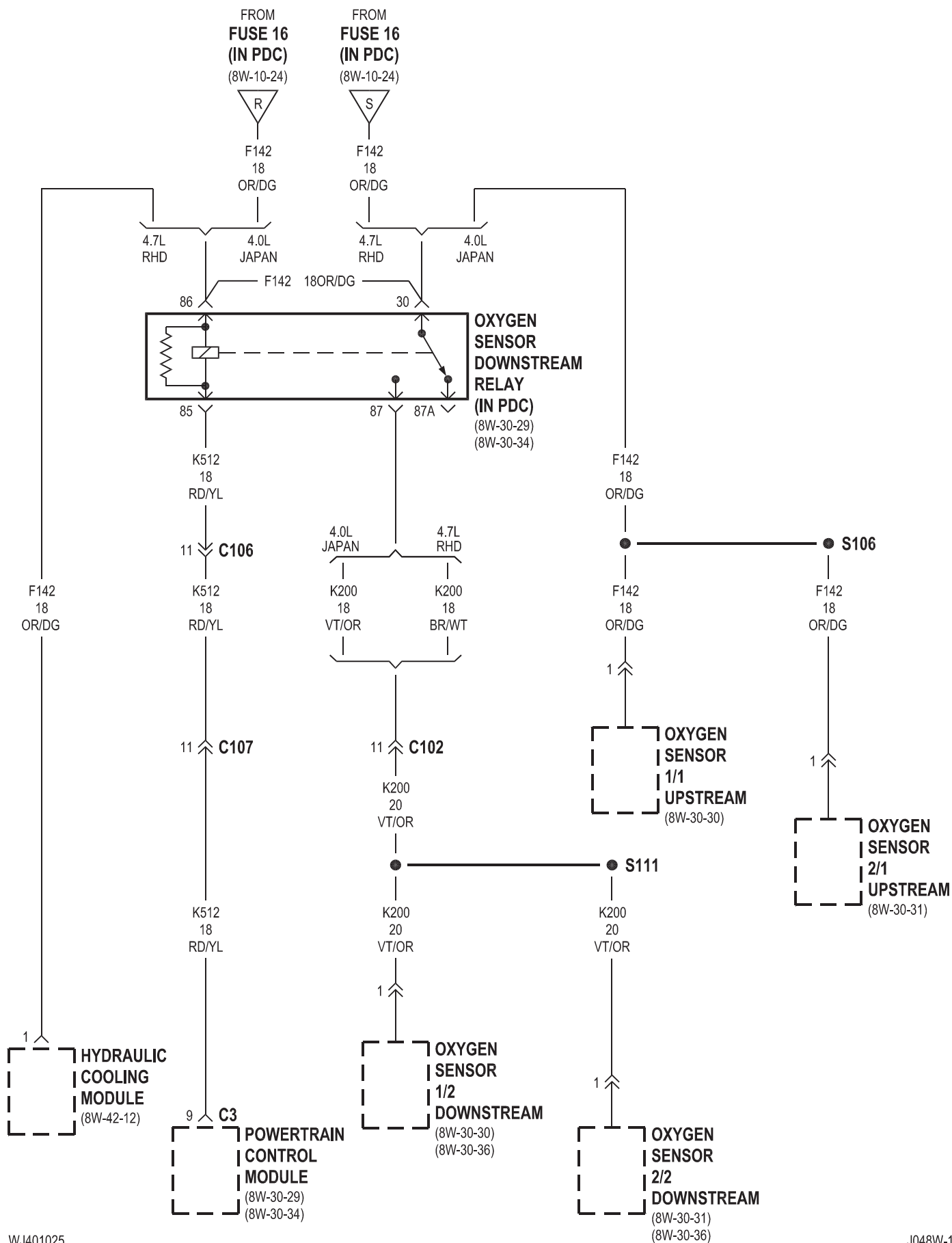


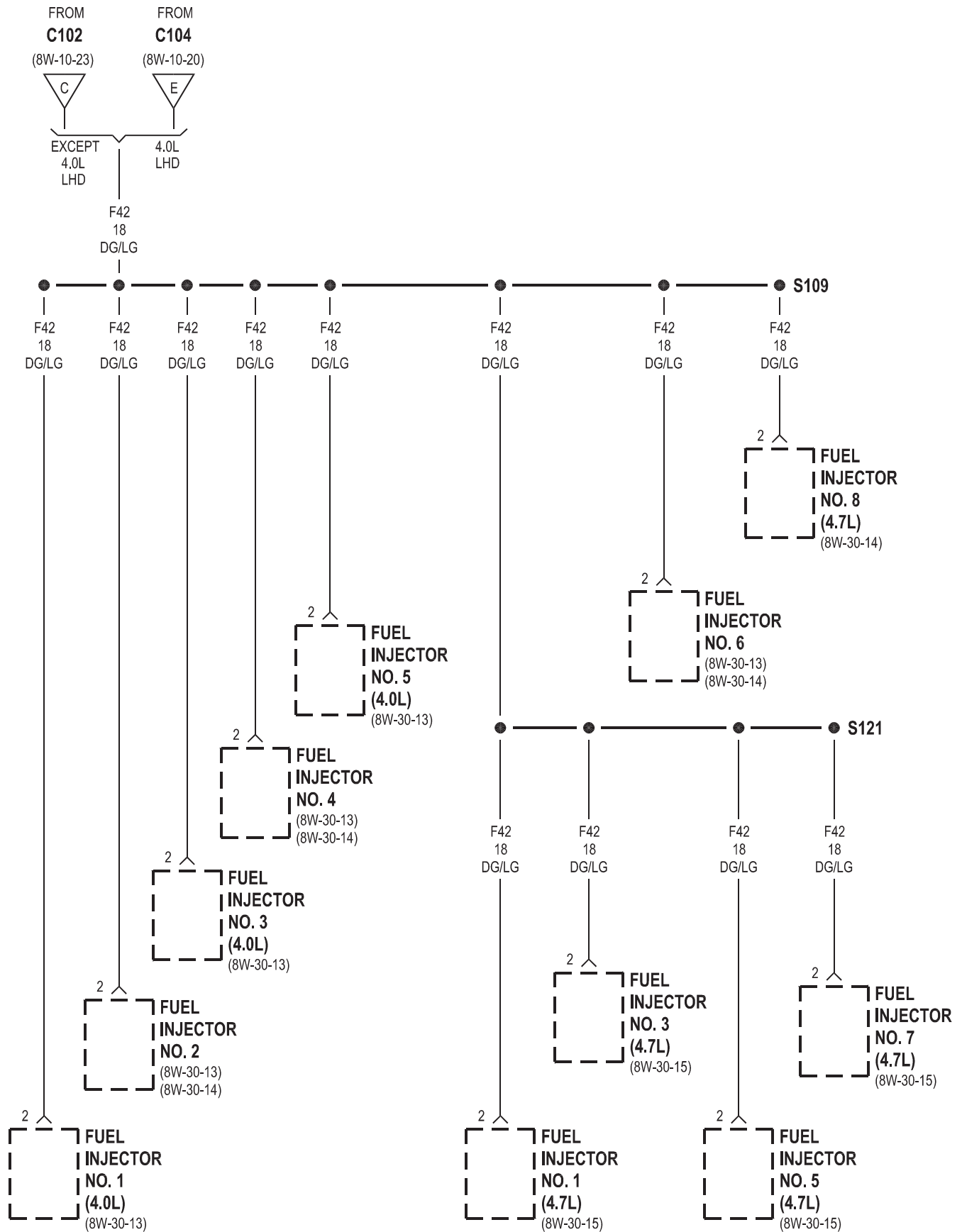


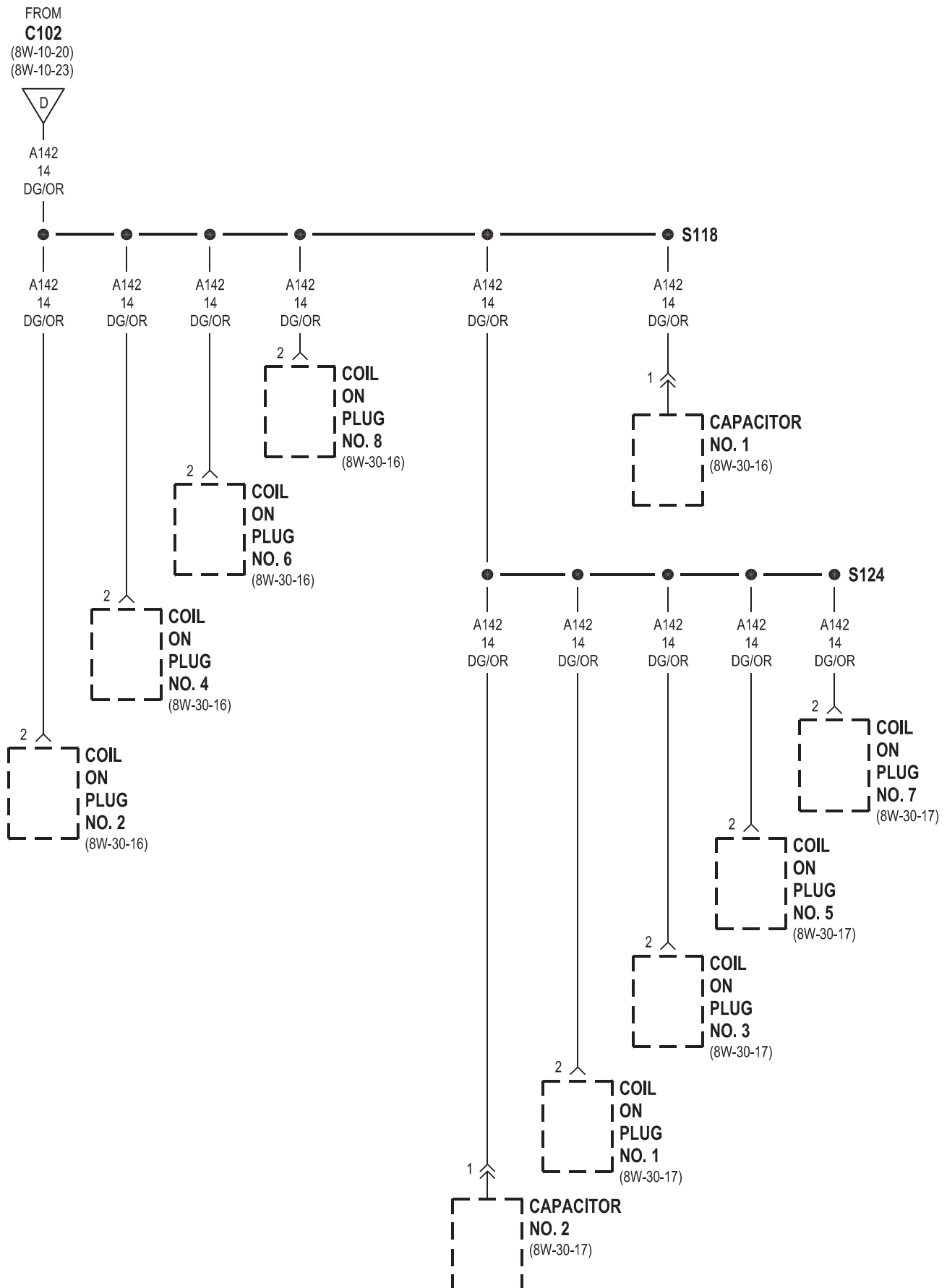


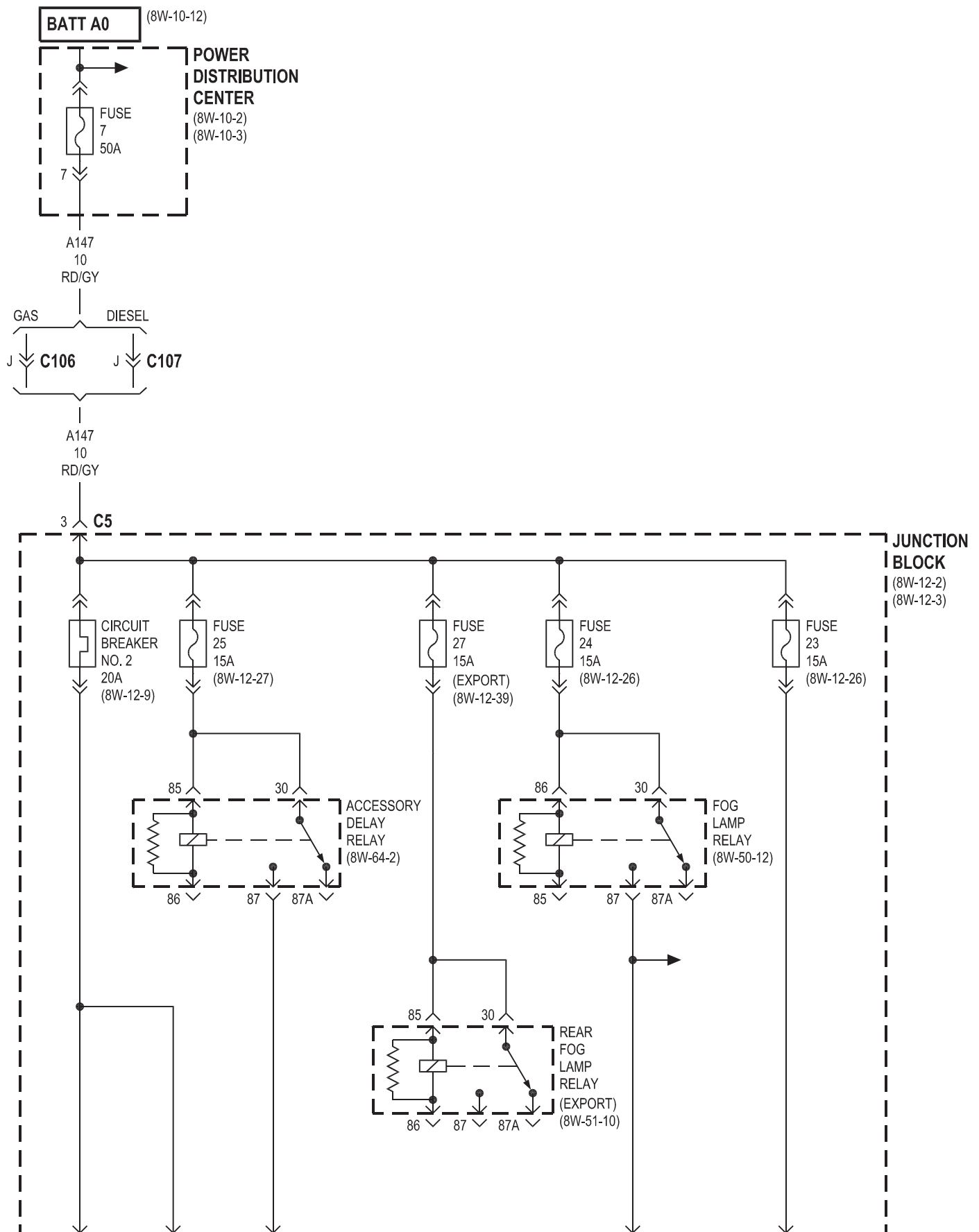






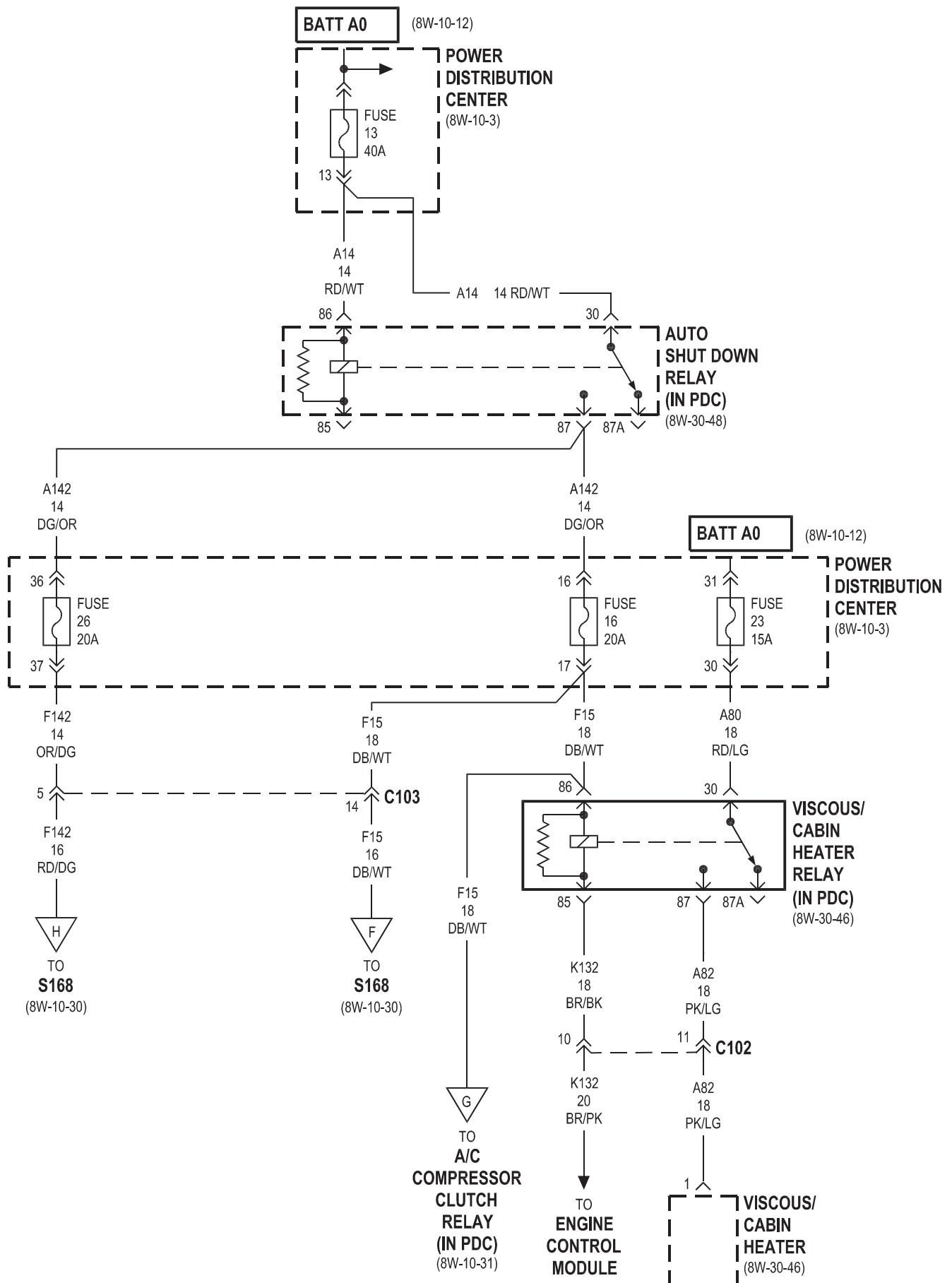


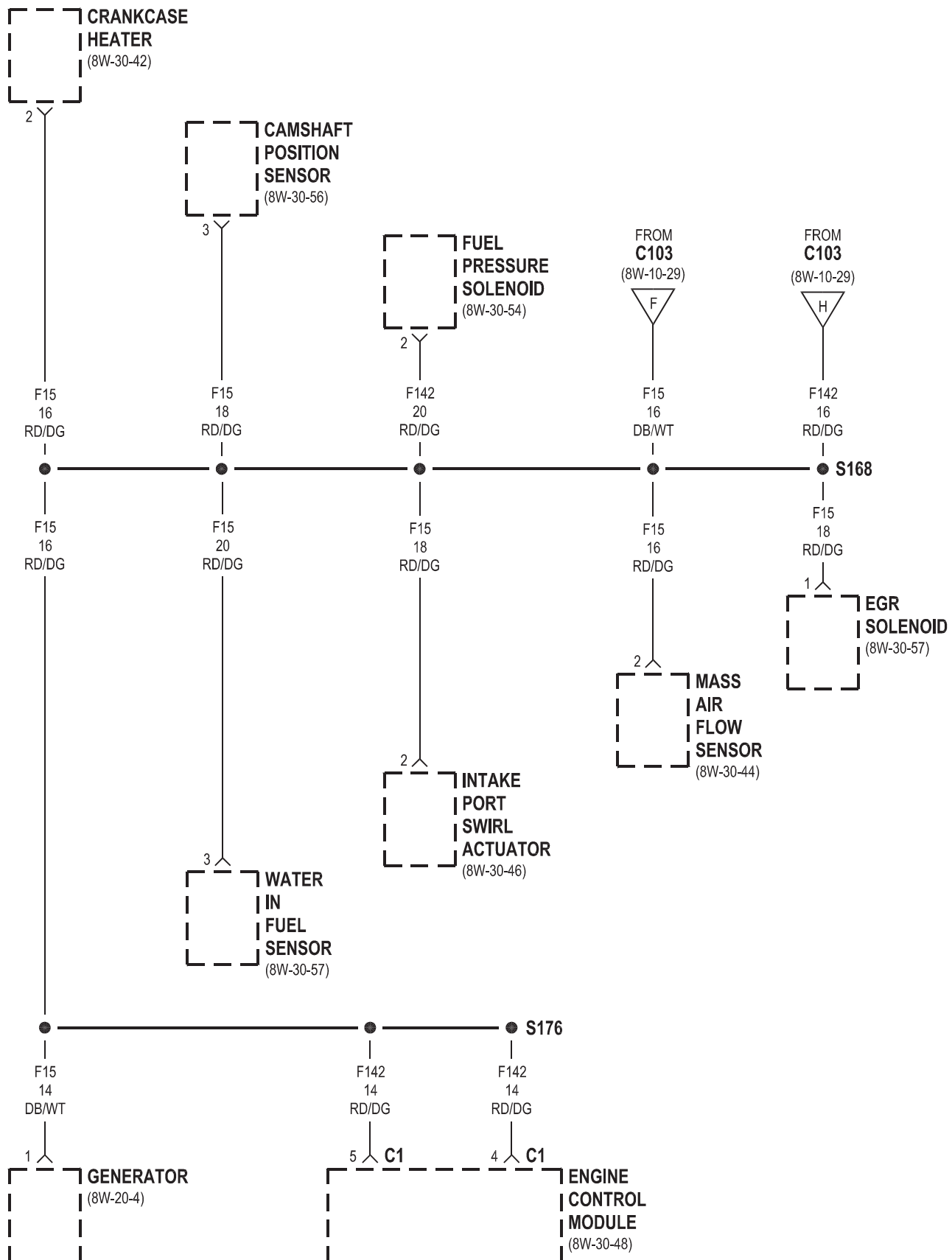


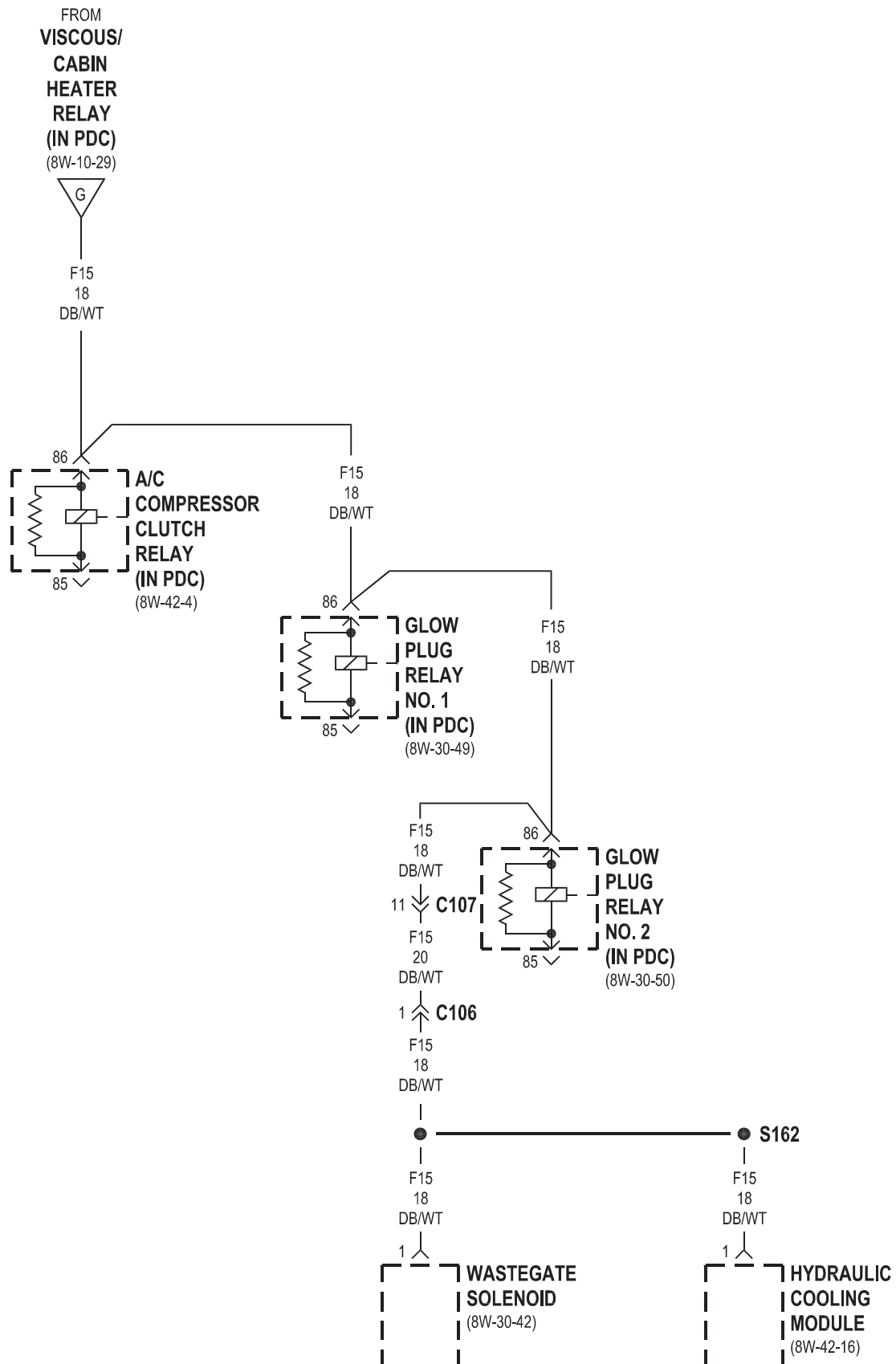


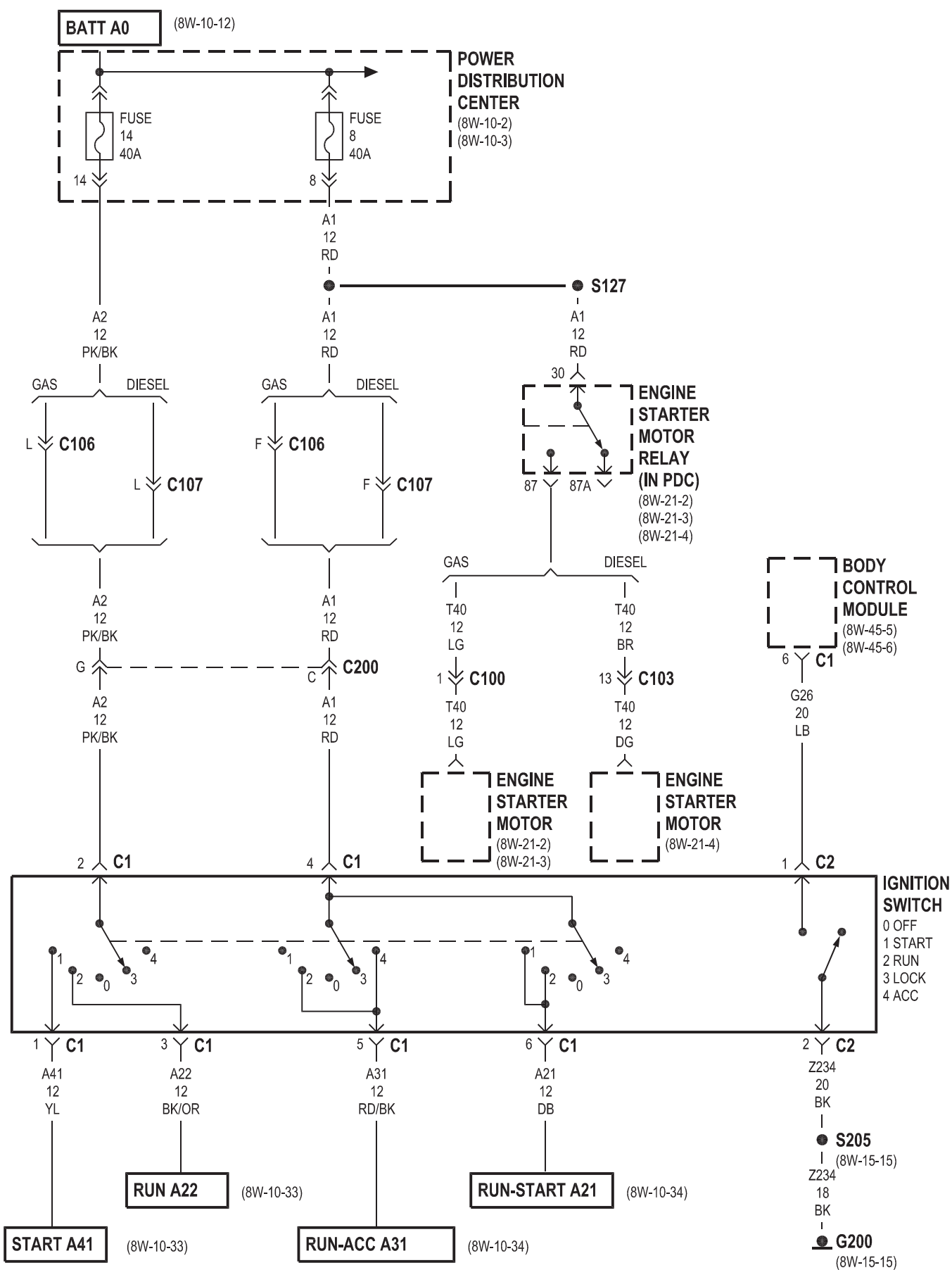


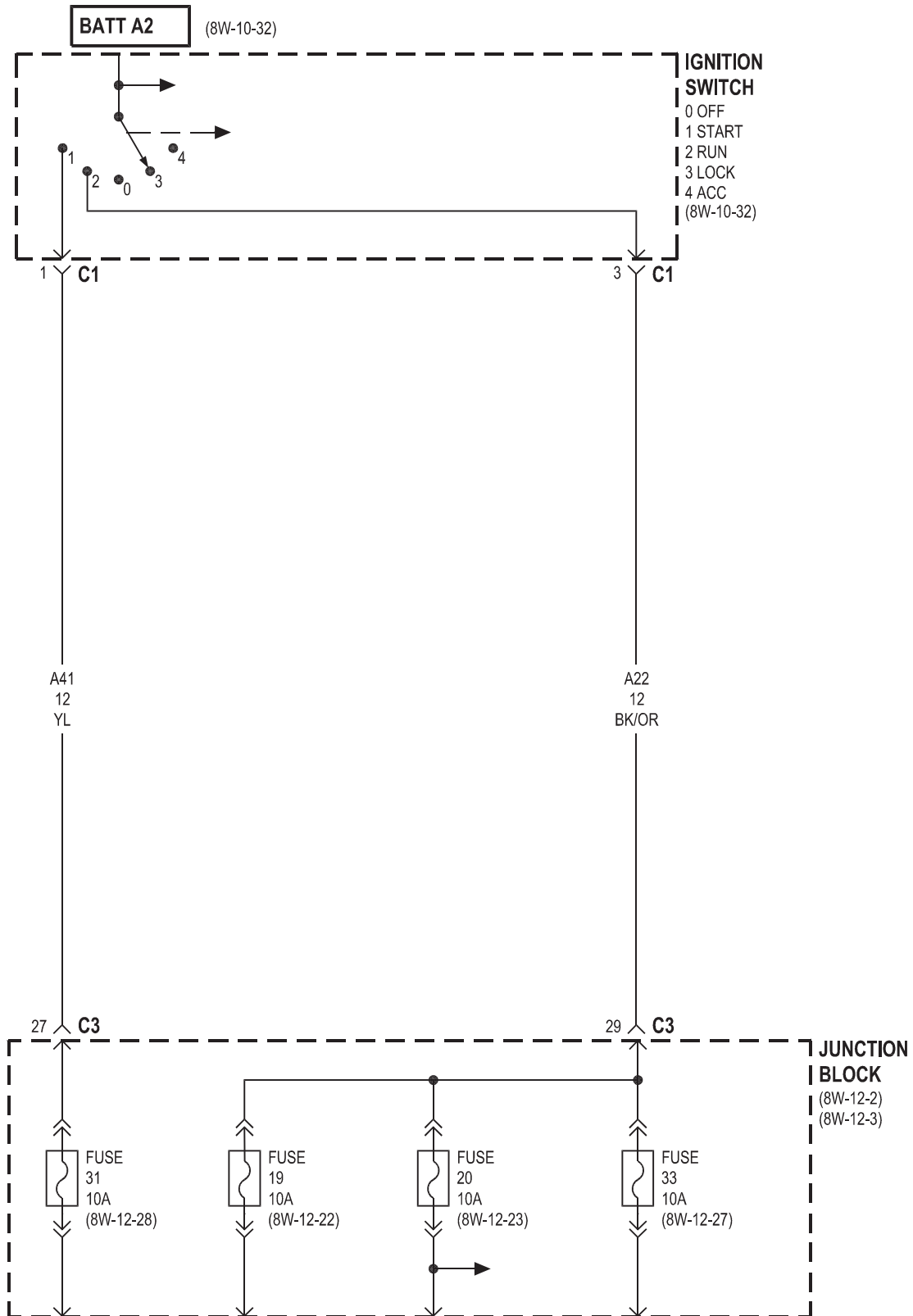
## DIESEL



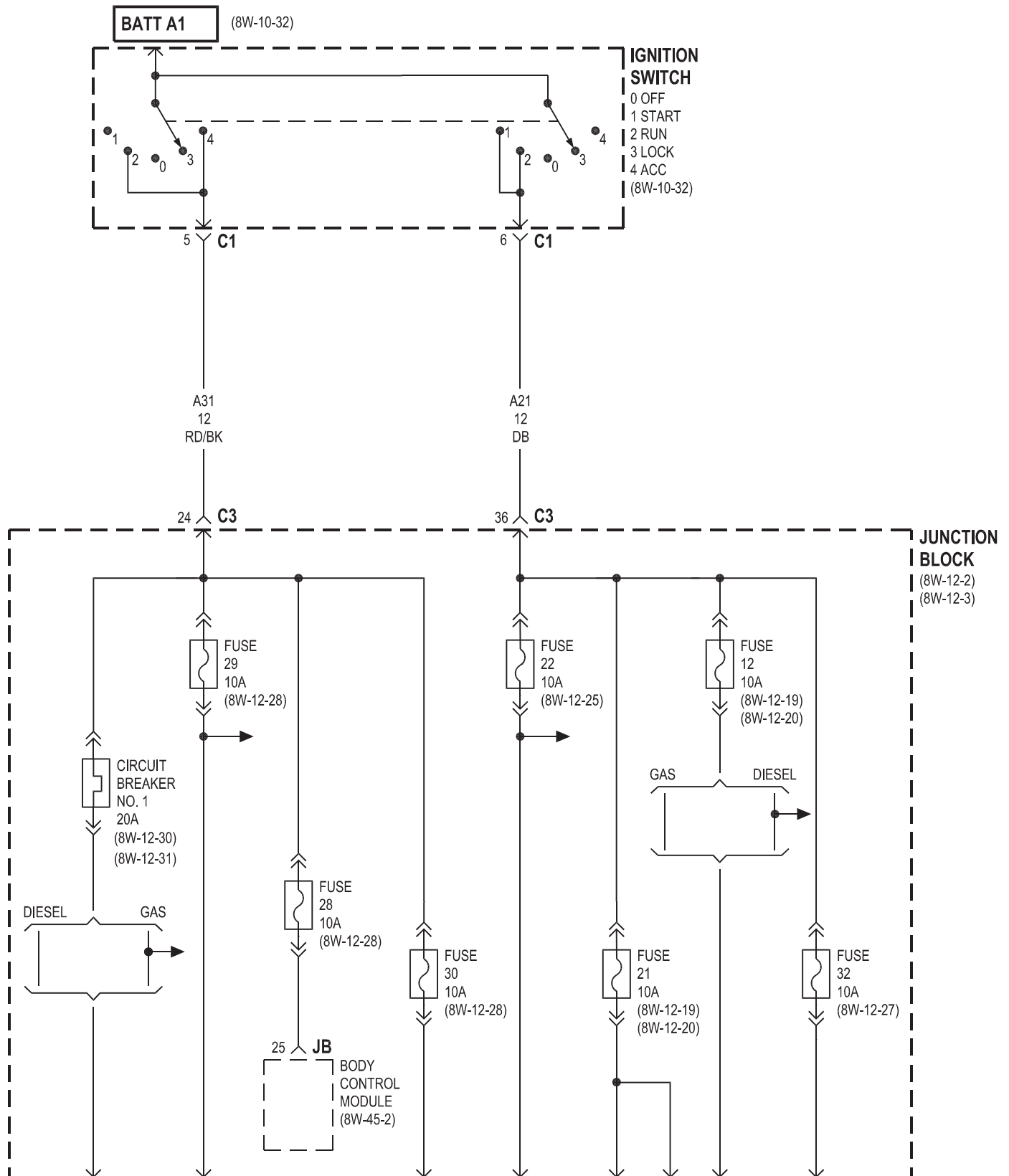


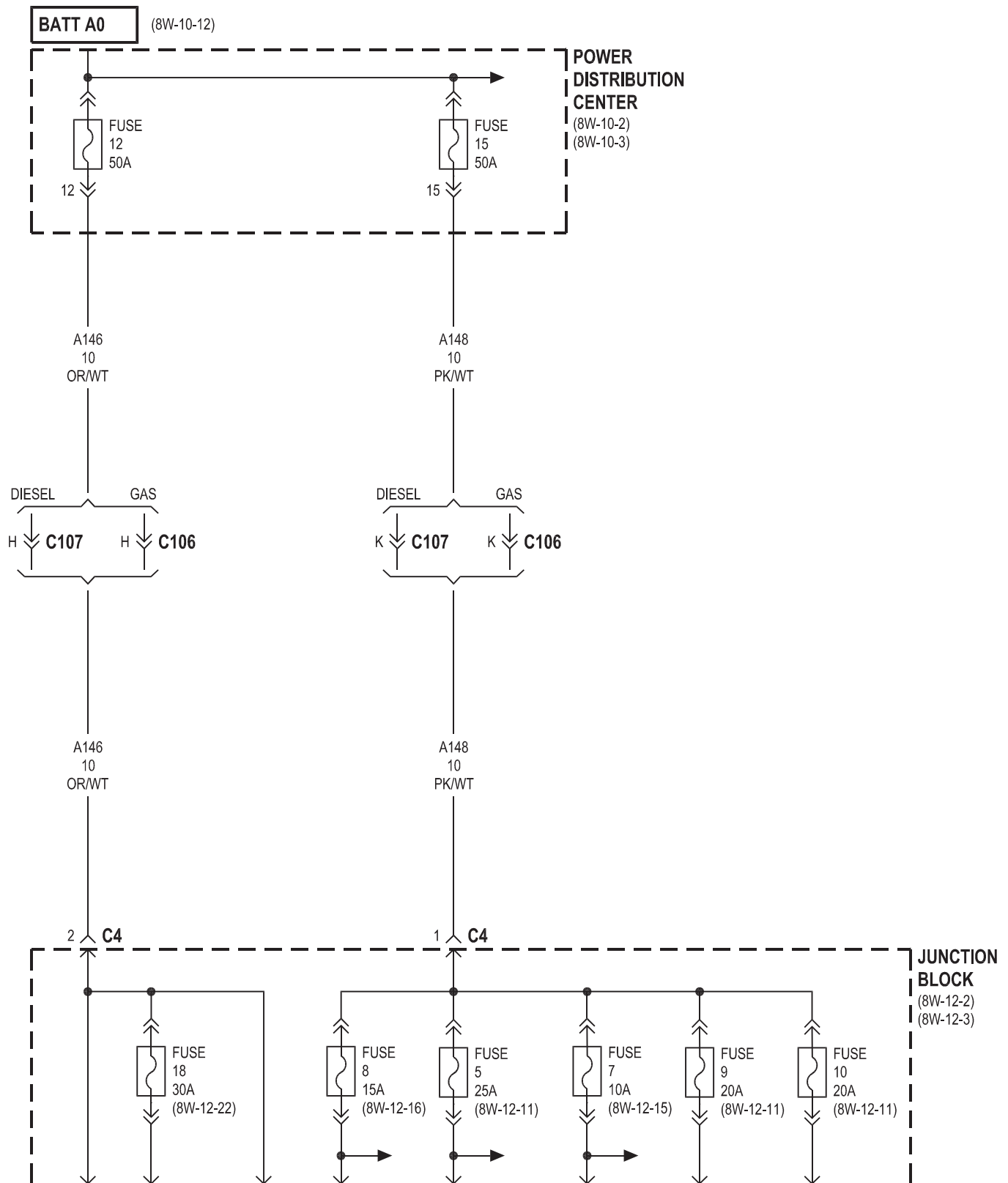


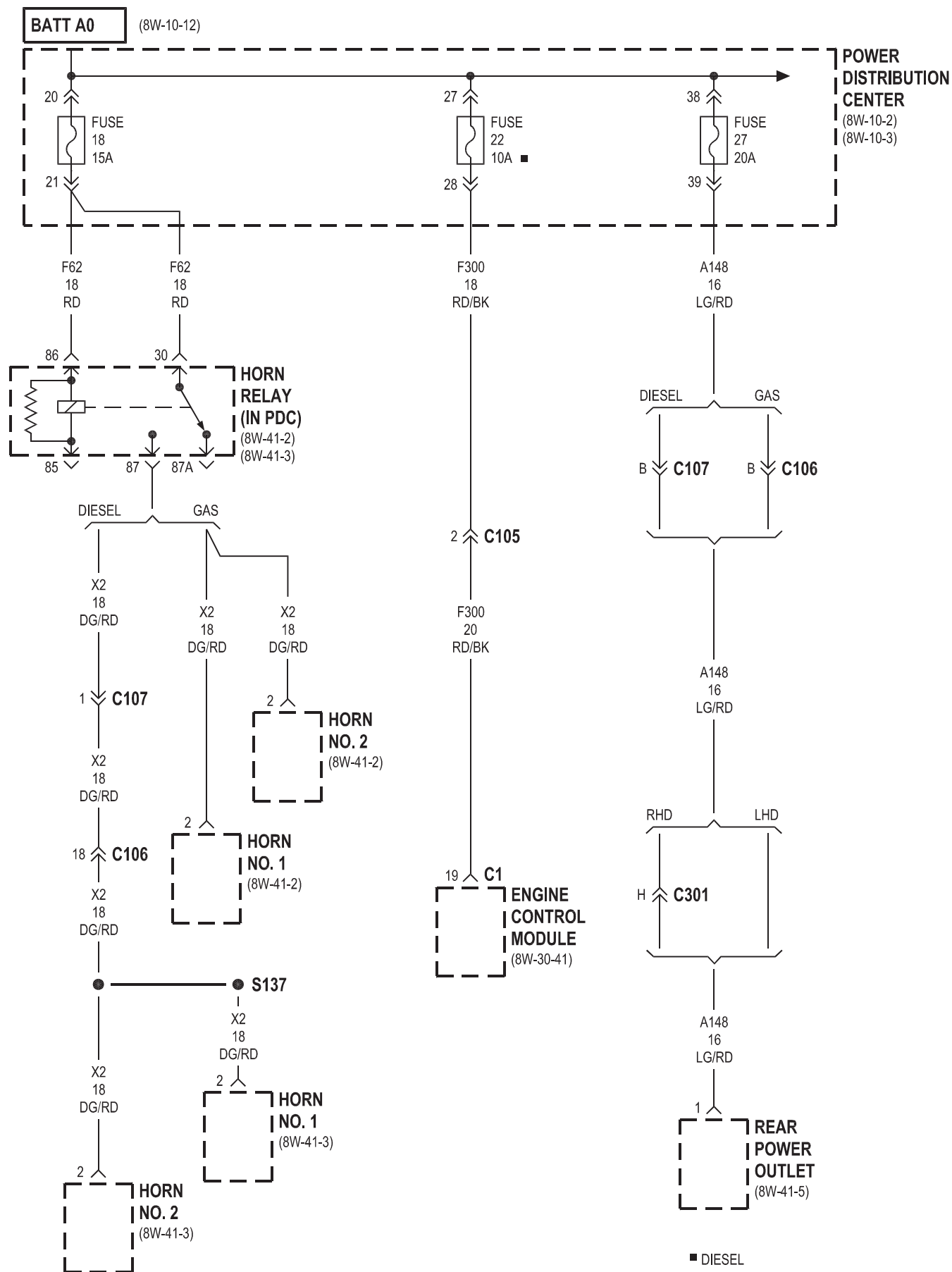


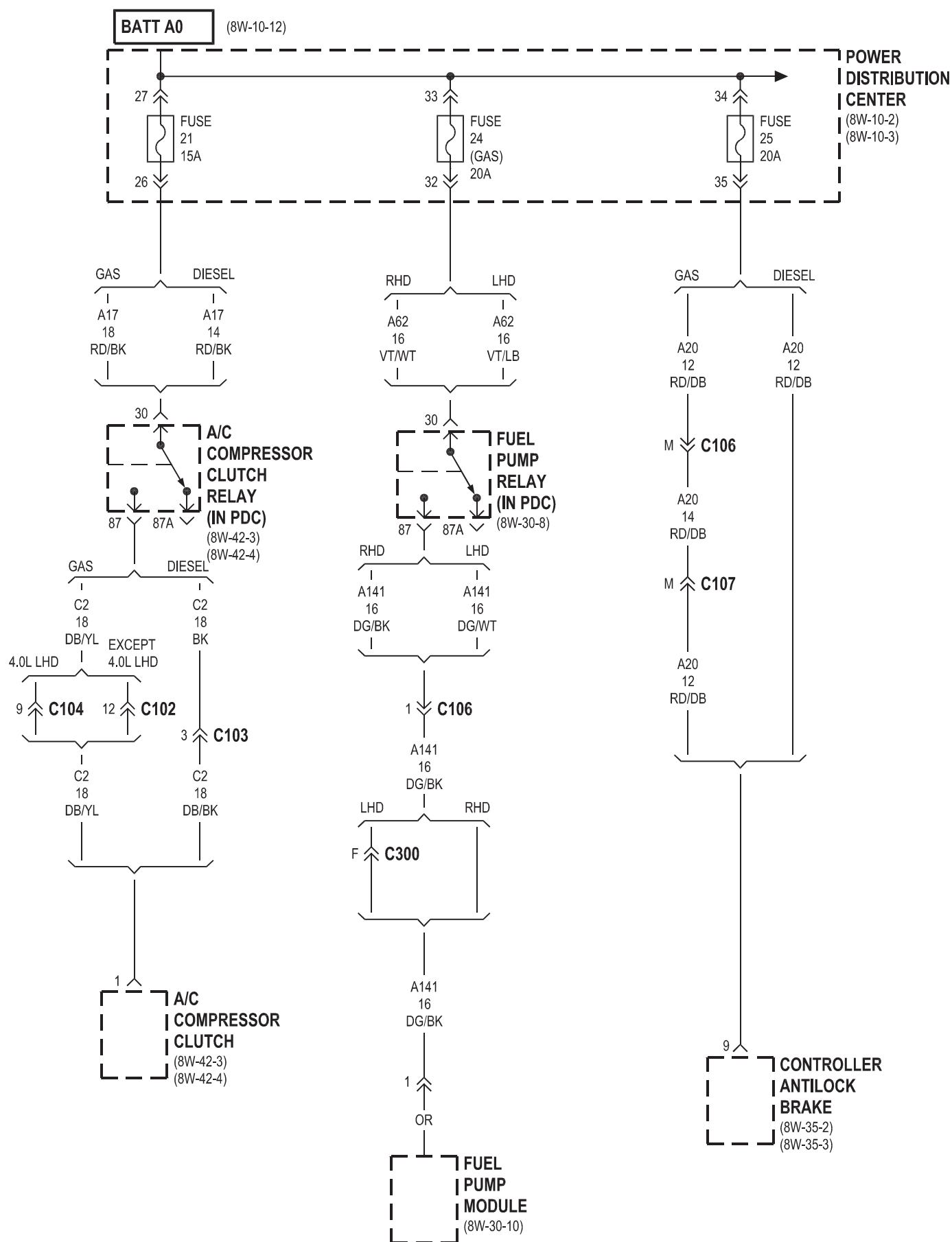










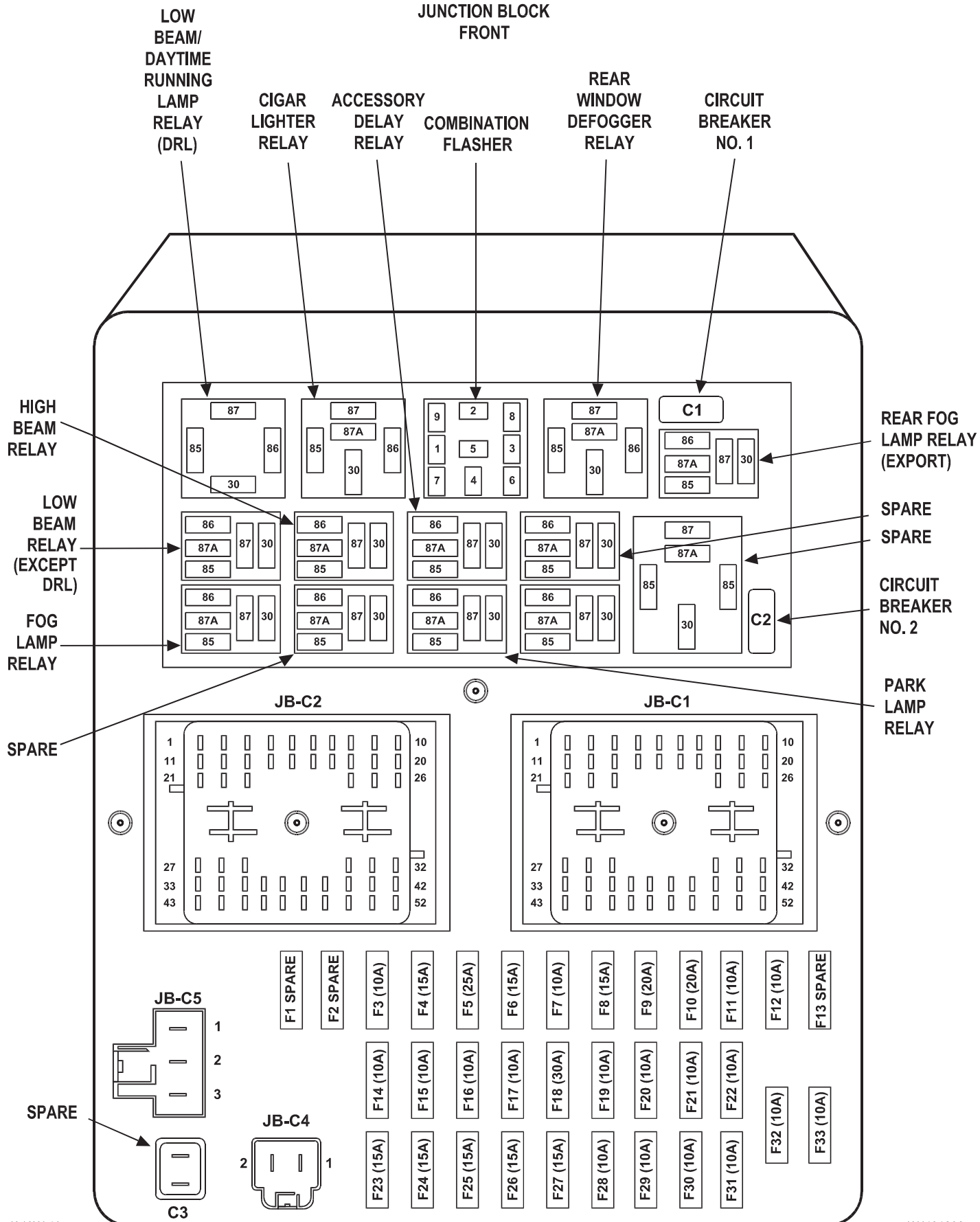




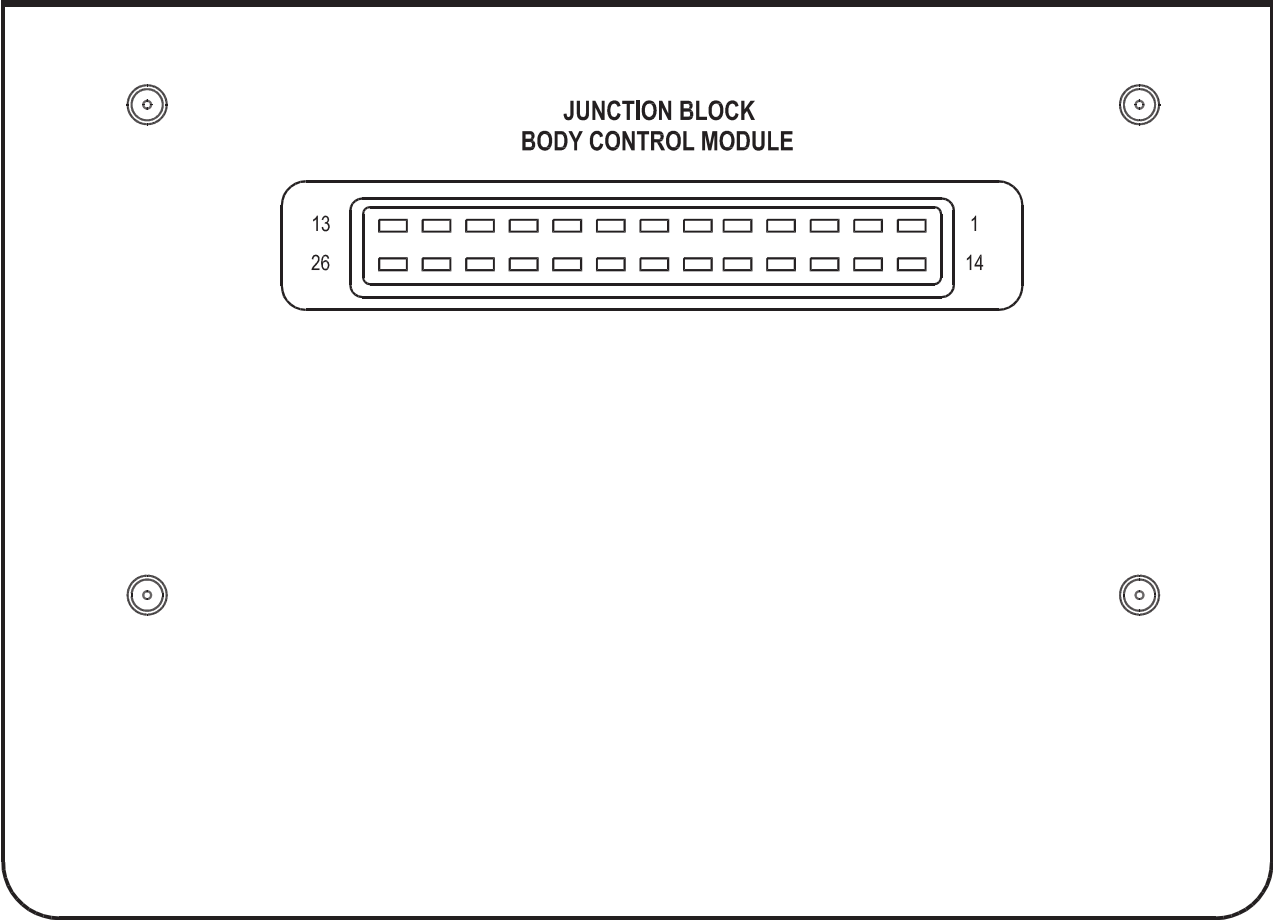
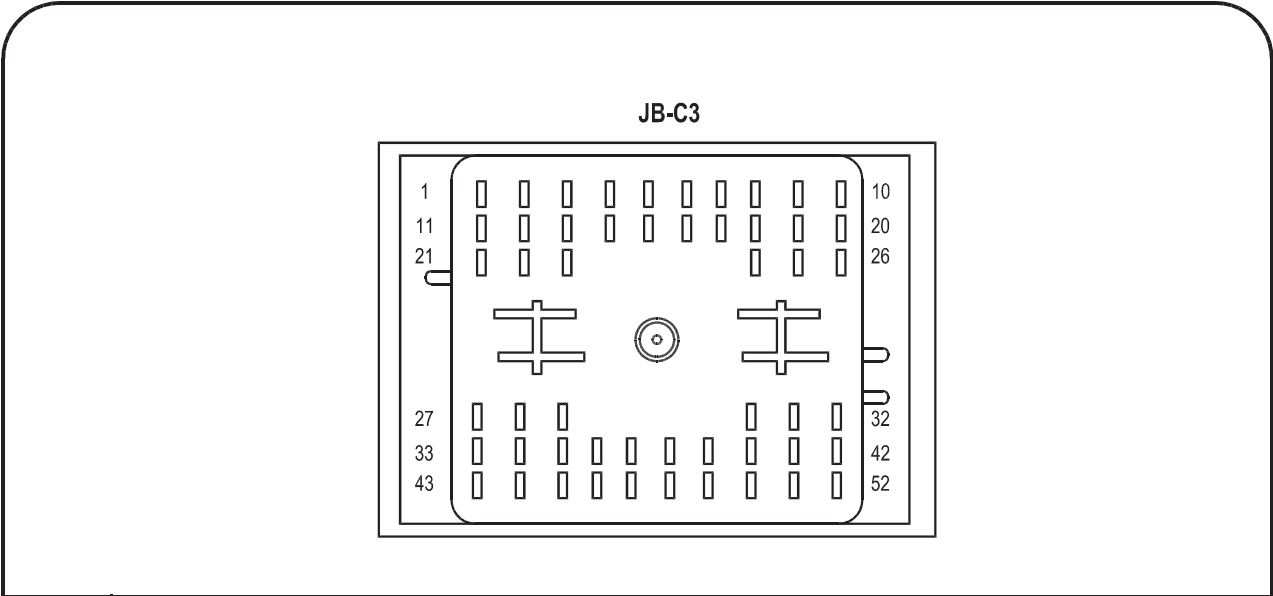


## 8W-12 JUNCTION BLOCK

Component	Page	Component	Page
A/C Compressor Clutch Relay . . . . .	8W-12-19	Left Courtesy Lamp . . . . .	8W-12-16
Accessory Delay Relay . . . . .	8W-12-27	Left Door Handle Courtesy Lamp . . . . .	8W-12-17, 26, 32
Adjustable Pedals Module . . . . .	8W-12-11	Left Fog Lamp . . . . .	8W-12-26
Airbag Control Module . . . . .	8W-12-27	Left Front Park Lamp . . . . .	8W-12-14
Auto Shut Down Relay . . . . .	8W-12-19	Left Front Park/Turn Signal Lamp . . . . .	8W-12-14, 36
Automatic Day/Night Mirror . . . . .	8W-12-25	Left Front Side Marker Lamp . . . . .	8W-12-14, 36
Automatic Headlamp Light Sensor/VTSS Led . . . . .	8W-12-15	Left Front Turn Signal Lamp . . . . .	8W-12-36
Automatic Zone Control Module . . . . .	8W-12-15, 18, 23	Left Headlamp Leveling Motor . . . . .	8W-12-14
Back-Up Lamp Relay . . . . .	8W-12-23	Left High Beam Headlamp . . . . .	8W-12-10
Body Control Module . . . . .	8W-12-10, 12, 13, 15, 18, 21, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 38, 39	Left Liftgate Ajar Switch . . . . .	8W-12-32
Brake Lamp Switch . . . . .	8W-12-26	Left Low Beam Headlamp . . . . .	8W-12-21
Cargo Lamp . . . . .	8W-12-17, 26, 29	Left Multi-Function Switch . . . . .	8W-12-10, 38
Cigar Lighter . . . . .	8W-12-18	Left Rear Door Lock Motor/Ajar Switch . . . . .	8W-12-29
Cigar Lighter Relay . . . . .	8W-12-18, 28	Left Rear Lamp Assembly . . . . .	8W-12-12, 13, 29, 39
Circuit Breaker No. 1 . . . . .	8W-12-30, 31	Left Side Repeater Lamp . . . . .	8W-12-34, 35
Circuit Breaker No. 2 . . . . .	8W-12-9	Left Visor/Vanity Lamp . . . . .	8W-12-17, 32
Clockspring . . . . .	8W-12-33	License Lamp No. 1 . . . . .	8W-12-12, 13
Combination Flasher . . . . .	8W-12-10, 23, 29, 34, 35, 38	License Lamp No. 2 . . . . .	8W-12-12, 13
Controller Antilock Brake . . . . .	8W-12-22	Liftgate Flip-Up Ajar Switch . . . . .	8W-12-32
Data Link Connector . . . . .	8W-12-10	Liftgate Flip-Up Push Button Switch . . . . .	8W-12-17
Driver Door Module . . . . .	8W-12-37	Liftgate Power Lock Motor . . . . .	8W-12-17
Driver Heated Seat Switch . . . . .	8W-12-23	Low Beam Relay . . . . .	8W-12-21
Driver Lumbar Switch . . . . .	8W-12-9	Low Beam/Daytime Running Lamp Relay . . . . .	8W-12-21
Driver Power Seat Switch . . . . .	8W-12-9	Low Speed Radiator Fan Relay . . . . .	8W-12-24
Engine Control Module . . . . .	8W-12-20	Manual Temperature Control . . . . .	8W-12-18, 23
Engine Starter Motor Relay . . . . .	8W-12-28	Overhead Map/Courtesy Lamp . . . . .	8W-12-17, 26, 32
EVAP/Purge Solenoid . . . . .	8W-12-19	Park Lamp Relay . . . . .	8W-12-12, 13
Fog Lamp Relay . . . . .	8W-12-26	Park/Neutral Position Switch . . . . .	8W-12-24
Front Power Outlet . . . . .	8W-12-11	Passenger Door Module . . . . .	8W-12-37
Front Wiper Motor . . . . .	8W-12-30	Passenger Heated Seat Switch . . . . .	8W-12-23
Front Wiper Motor . . . . .	8W-12-31	Passenger Lumbar Switch . . . . .	8W-12-9
Fuel Pump Relay . . . . .	8W-12-19	Passenger Power Seat Switch . . . . .	8W-12-9
Fuse 2 . . . . .	8W-12-18	Power Amplifier . . . . .	8W-12-11
Fuse 3 . . . . .	8W-12-10, 21	Power Distribution Center . . . . .	8W-12-10, 11, 15, 18, 21, 22, 33, 37
Fuse 4 . . . . .	8W-12-10	Powertrain Control Module . . . . .	8W-12-19, 24
Fuse 5 . . . . .	8W-12-11	Radio . . . . .	8W-12-11, 28
Fuse 6 . . . . .	8W-12-12, 13	Rain Sensor . . . . .	8W-12-27
Fuse 7 . . . . .	8W-12-9, 15	Rear Fog Lamp . . . . .	8W-12-39
Fuse 8 . . . . .	8W-12-16	Rear Window Defogger . . . . .	8W-12-18
Fuse 9 . . . . .	8W-12-11	Rear Window Defogger Relay . . . . .	8W-12-18
Fuse 10 . . . . .	8W-12-11	Rear Wiper Motor . . . . .	8W-12-17, 32
Fuse 11 . . . . .	8W-12-18	Remote Keyless Module . . . . .	8W-12-15
Fuse 12 . . . . .	8W-12-19, 20, 22, 37	Right Courtesy Lamp . . . . .	8W-12-16
Fuse 14 . . . . .	8W-12-21	Right Door Handle Courtesy Lamp . . . . .	8W-12-17, 26, 32
Fuse 15 . . . . .	8W-12-11, 15, 21	Right Fog Lamp . . . . .	8W-12-26
Fuse 16 . . . . .	8W-12-10	Right Front Park Lamp . . . . .	8W-12-14
Fuse 17 . . . . .	8W-12-10	Right Front Park/Turn Signal Lamp . . . . .	8W-12-14, 36
Fuse 18 . . . . .	8W-12-22, 33	Right Front Side Marker Lamp . . . . .	8W-12-14, 36
Fuse 19 . . . . .	8W-12-22	Right Front Turn Signal Lamp . . . . .	8W-12-36
Fuse 20 . . . . .	8W-12-23	Right Headlamp Leveling Motor . . . . .	8W-12-14
Fuse 21 . . . . .	8W-12-19, 20	Right High Beam Headlamp . . . . .	8W-12-10
Fuse 22 . . . . .	8W-12-25	Right Liftgate Ajar Switch . . . . .	8W-12-32
Fuse 23 . . . . .	8W-12-26	Right Low Beam Headlamp . . . . .	8W-12-21
Fuse 24 . . . . .	8W-12-26	Right Multi-Function Switch . . . . .	8W-12-28
Fuse 25 . . . . .	8W-12-27	Right Rear Lamp Assembly . . . . .	8W-12-12, 13, 34, 35, 39
Fuse 26 . . . . .	8W-12-18	Right Side Repeater Lamp . . . . .	8W-12-34, 35
Fuse 27 . . . . .	8W-12-39	Right Visor/Vanity Lamp . . . . .	8W-12-17, 32
Fuse 28 . . . . .	8W-12-28	Seat Module . . . . .	8W-12-9
Fuse 29 . . . . .	8W-12-28	Sentry Key Immobilizer Module . . . . .	8W-12-15, 25
Fuse 30 . . . . .	8W-12-28	Shifter Assembly . . . . .	8W-12-19, 20
Fuse 31 . . . . .	8W-12-28	Siren . . . . .	8W-12-15
Fuse 32 . . . . .	8W-12-27	Sunroof Control Module . . . . .	8W-12-27
Fuse 33 . . . . .	8W-12-27	Temperature Valve Actuator . . . . .	8W-12-23
G200 . . . . .	8W-12-38	Trailer Tow Circuit Breaker . . . . .	8W-12-18
Glove Box Lamp . . . . .	8W-12-16	Trailer Tow Connector . . . . .	8W-12-12
Headlamp Leveling Switch . . . . .	8W-12-12, 13	Trailer Tow Left Turn Relay . . . . .	8W-12-22, 29
High Beam Relay . . . . .	8W-12-10	Trailer Tow Right Turn Relay . . . . .	8W-12-22, 34, 35
High Speed Radiator Fan Relay . . . . .	8W-12-24	Transmission Control Module . . . . .	8W-12-19, 28
Horn Relay . . . . .	8W-12-33	Transmission Solenoid/TRS Assembly . . . . .	8W-12-23
Horn Switch . . . . .	8W-12-33	Vehicle Information Center . . . . .	8W-12-17, 25
Instrument Cluster . . . . .	8W-12-10, 25, 34, 35	Wiper High/Low Relay . . . . .	8W-12-30, 31
Intrusion Transceiver Module . . . . .	8W-12-17	Wiper On/Off Relay . . . . .	8W-12-30, 31
Junction Block . . . . .	8W-12-2, 3, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 37, 38, 39		

JUNCTION BLOCK  
FRONT

JUNCTION BLOCK  
BACK



## FUSES

FUSE NO.	AMPS	FUSED CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	-	-	-
2	-	-	-
3	10A	L33 18RD	FUSED HIGH BEAM RELAY OUTPUT
4	15A	INTERNAL	FUSED B(+)
5	25A	INTERNAL	FUSED B(+)
6	15A	INTERNAL	FUSED B(+)
7	10A	INTERNAL	FUSED B(+)
8	15A	INTERNAL	FUSED B(+)
9	20A	INTERNAL	FUSED B(+)
10 *	20A	F72 16RD/YL	FUSED B(+)
11	10A	C15 12BK/WT	FUSED REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER RELAY OUTPUT
12	10A	F991 20OR/DB	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-START)
13	-	-	-
14	10A	L43 18VT	FUSED LOW BEAM RELAY OUTPUT
15	10A	L44 18VT/RD	FUSED LOW BEAM RELAY OUTPUT
16	10A	L34 18RD/OR	FUSED HIGH BEAM RELAY OUTPUT
17	10A	INTERNAL	FUSED B(+)
18	30A	F9 20RD/BK	FUSED B(+)
19	10A	F20 18DB/PK	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN)
20	10A	INTERNAL	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN)
21	10A	INTERNAL	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-START)
22	10A	INTERNAL	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-START)
23	15A	F32 20PK/DB	FUSED B(+)
24	15A	INTERNAL	FUSED B(+)
25	15A	INTERNAL	FUSED B(+)
26	15A	F30 18RD	FUSED CIGAR LIGHTER RELAY OUTPUT
27 •	15A	INTERNAL	FUSED B(+)
28	10A	INTERNAL	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-ACC)
29	10A	INTERNAL	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-ACC)
30	10A	X12 20WT/RD	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-ACC)
31	10A	F45 20YL/RD	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (START)
32	10A	F14 18LG/YL	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-START)
33	10A	F23 18DB/YL	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN)

• EXPORT  
\* EXCEPT EXPORT

### CIRCUIT BREAKERS

C.B.	AMPS	FUSED CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	20A	V6 16DB	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-ACC)
2	20A	INTERNAL	FUSED B(+)
3	-	-	-

### JUNCTION BLOCK BODY CONTROL MODULE

CAVITY	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	L308	PARK LAMP RELAY CONTROL
2	L26	FOG LAMP RELAY CONTROL
3	Q29	ACCESSORY DELAY RELAY CONTROL
4	L307	LOW BEAM RELAY CONTROL
5	G5	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-START)
6	X3	HORN RELAY CONTROL
7	V16	WIPER HIGH/LOW RELAY CONTROL
8	G80	LIFTGATE FLIP-UP AJAR SWITCH SENSE
9	L309	HIGH BEAM RELAY CONTROL
10	L91	HAZARD SWITCH SENSE
11	C80	REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER RELAY CONTROL
12	Z132	GROUND
13 ▲▲	L96	REAR FOG LAMP RELAY CONTROL
14	L7	PARK LAMP RELAY OUTPUT
15	Z234	GROUND
16	M2	COURTESY LAMP DRIVER
17	-	-
18	-	-
19	M20	COURTESY LAMP LOAD SHED
20	V55	WIPER PARK SWITCH SENSE
21	G78	LIFTGATE AJAR SWITCH SENSE
22	-	-
23	G77	LEFT REAR DOOR AJAR SWITCH SENSE
24	G73	LIFTGATE COURTESY DISABLE
25	V23	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-ACC)
26	M1	FUSED B(+)

▲▲ EXPORT



**ACCESSORY  
DELAY  
RELAY**

CAVITY	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
30	INTERNAL	FUSED B(+)
85	INTERNAL	FUSED B(+)
86	INTERNAL	ACCESSORY DELAY RELAY CONTROL
87	Q30 16TN	ACCESSORY DELAY RELAY OUTPUT
87A	-	-

**CIGAR  
LIGHTER  
RELAY**

CAVITY	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
30	INTERNAL	FUSED B(+)
85	INTERNAL	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-ACC)
86	INTERNAL	GROUND
87	INTERNAL	CIGAR LIGHTER RELAY OUTPUT
87A	-	-

**COMBINATION  
FLASHER**

CAVITY	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	INTERNAL	FUSED B(+)
2	INTERNAL	LEFT TURN SIGNAL
3	INTERNAL	RIGHT TURN SIGNAL
4	L63 18DG/RD	LEFT TURN SIGNAL
5	L62 18BR/RD	RIGHT TURN SIGNAL
6	INTERNAL	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN)
7	L305 18LB/WT	LEFT TURN SWITCH SENSE
8	L302 20LB/YL	RIGHT TURN SWITCH SENSE
9	INTERNAL	HAZARD SWITCH SENSE
10	-	-

**FOG  
LAMP  
RELAY**

CAVITY	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
30	INTERNAL	FUSED B(+)
85	INTERNAL	FOG LAMP RELAY CONTROL
86	INTERNAL	FUSED B(+)
87	INTERNAL	FOG LAMP RELAY OUTPUT
87A	-	-

**HIGH  
BEAM  
RELAY**

CAVITY	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
30	INTERNAL	FUSED B(+)
85	INTERNAL	HIGH BEAM RELAY CONTROL
86	INTERNAL	FUSED B(+)
87	INTERNAL	HIGH BEAM RELAY OUTPUT
87A	-	-

**LOW  
BEAM/  
DAYTIME  
RUNNING  
LAMP  
RELAY  
(DRL)**

CAVITY	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
30	INTERNAL	FUSED B(+)
85	INTERNAL	GROUND
86	INTERNAL	LOW BEAM RELAY CONTROL
87	INTERNAL	LOW BEAM RELAY OUTPUT
87A	-	-

**LOW  
BEAM  
RELAY  
(EXCEPT DRL)**

CAVITY	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
30	INTERNAL	FUSED B(+)
85	INTERNAL	FUSED B(+)
86	INTERNAL	LOW BEAM RELAY CONTROL
87	INTERNAL	LOW BEAM RELAY OUTPUT
87A	-	-

**PARK  
LAMP  
RELAY**

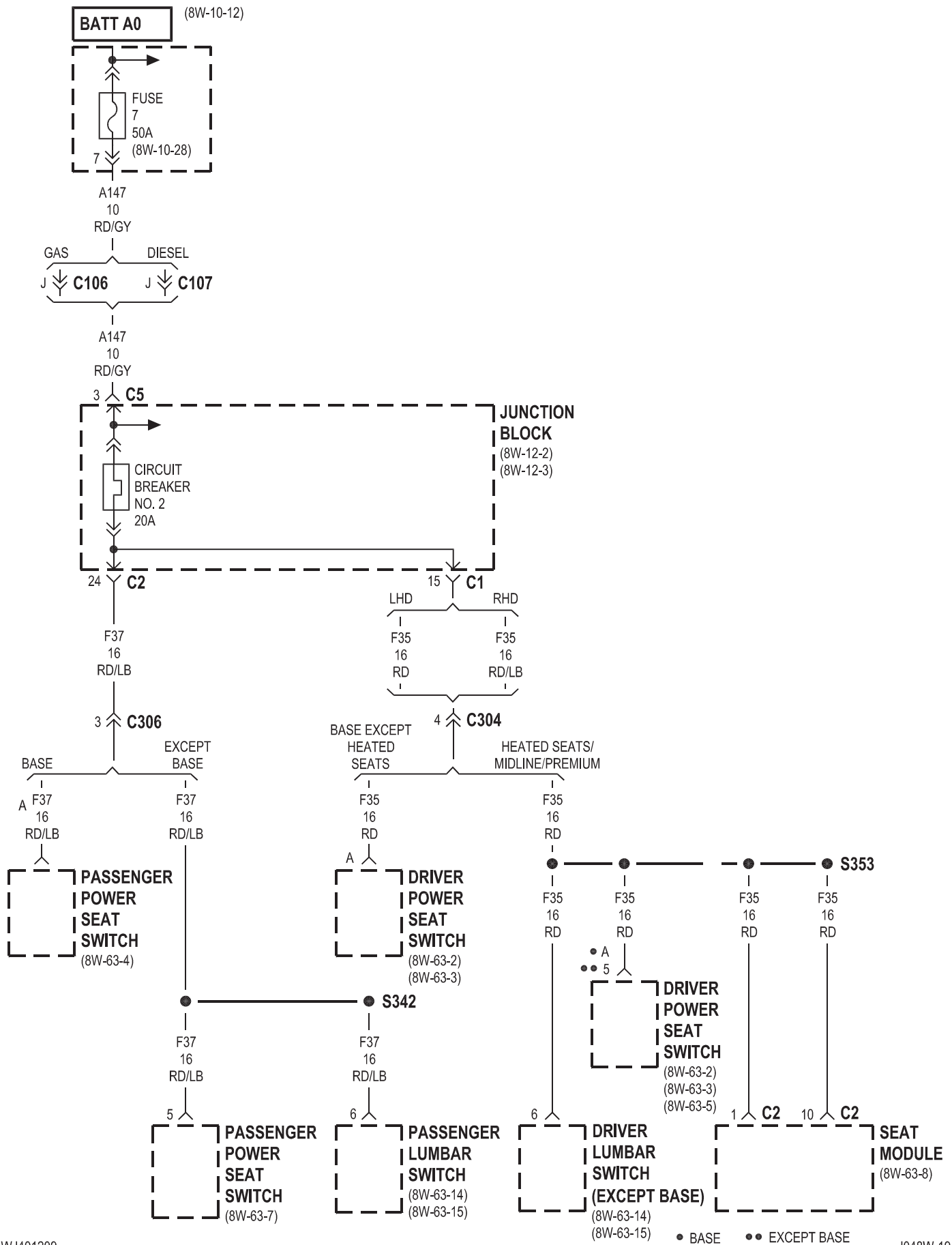
CAVITY	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
30	INTERNAL	PARK LAMP RELAY OUTPUT
85	INTERNAL	FUSED B(+)
86	INTERNAL	PARK LAMP RELAY CONTROL
87	INTERNAL	FUSED B(+)
87A	INTERNAL	GROUND

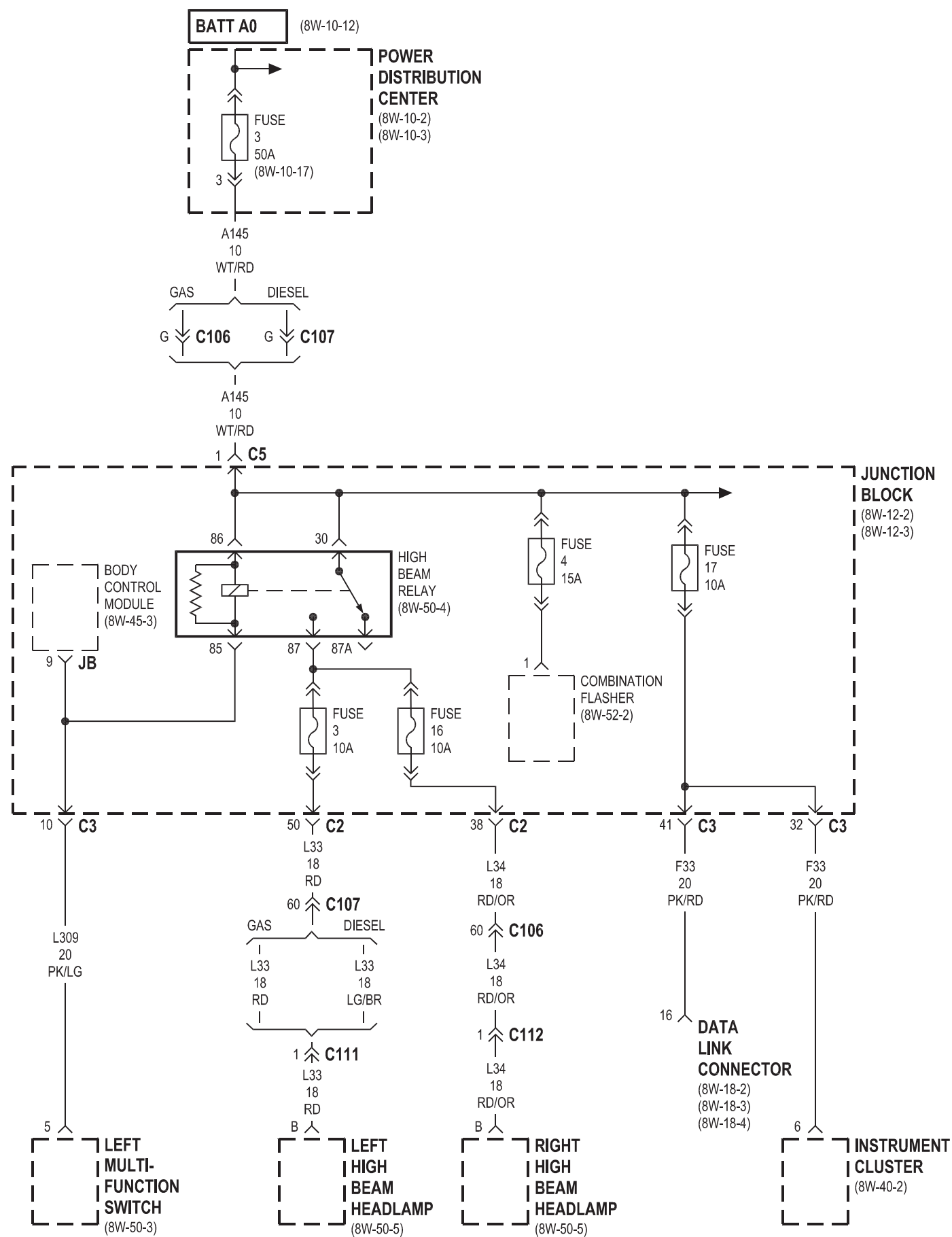
**REAR  
FOG  
LAMP  
RELAY  
(EXPORT)**

CAVITY	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
30	INTERNAL	FUSED B(+)
85	INTERNAL	FUSED B(+)
86	INTERNAL	REAR FOG LAMP RELAY CONTROL
87	L95 18DG/YL	REAR FOG LAMP RELAY OUTPUT
87A	-	-

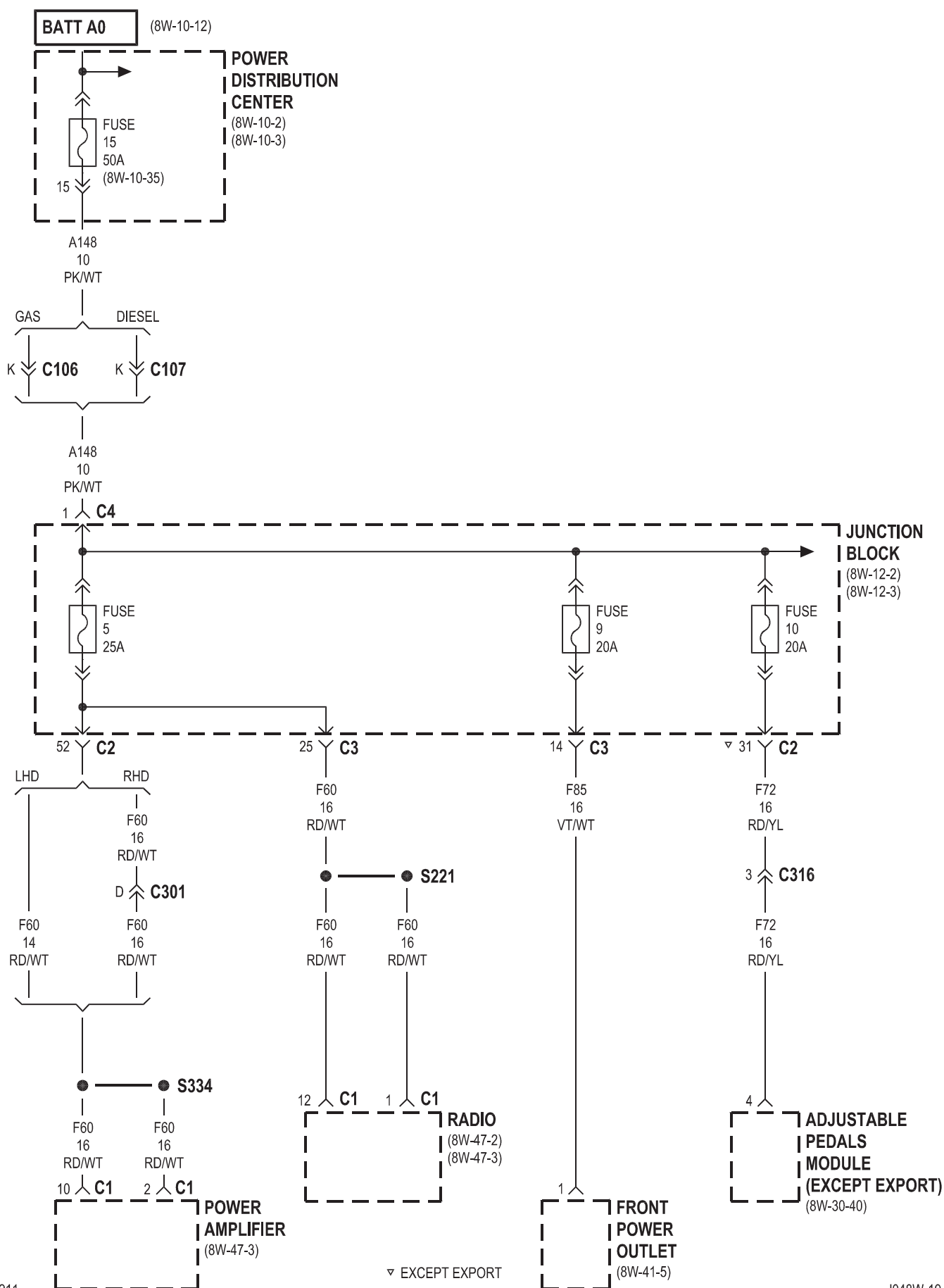
**REAR  
WINDOW  
DEFOGGER  
RELAY**

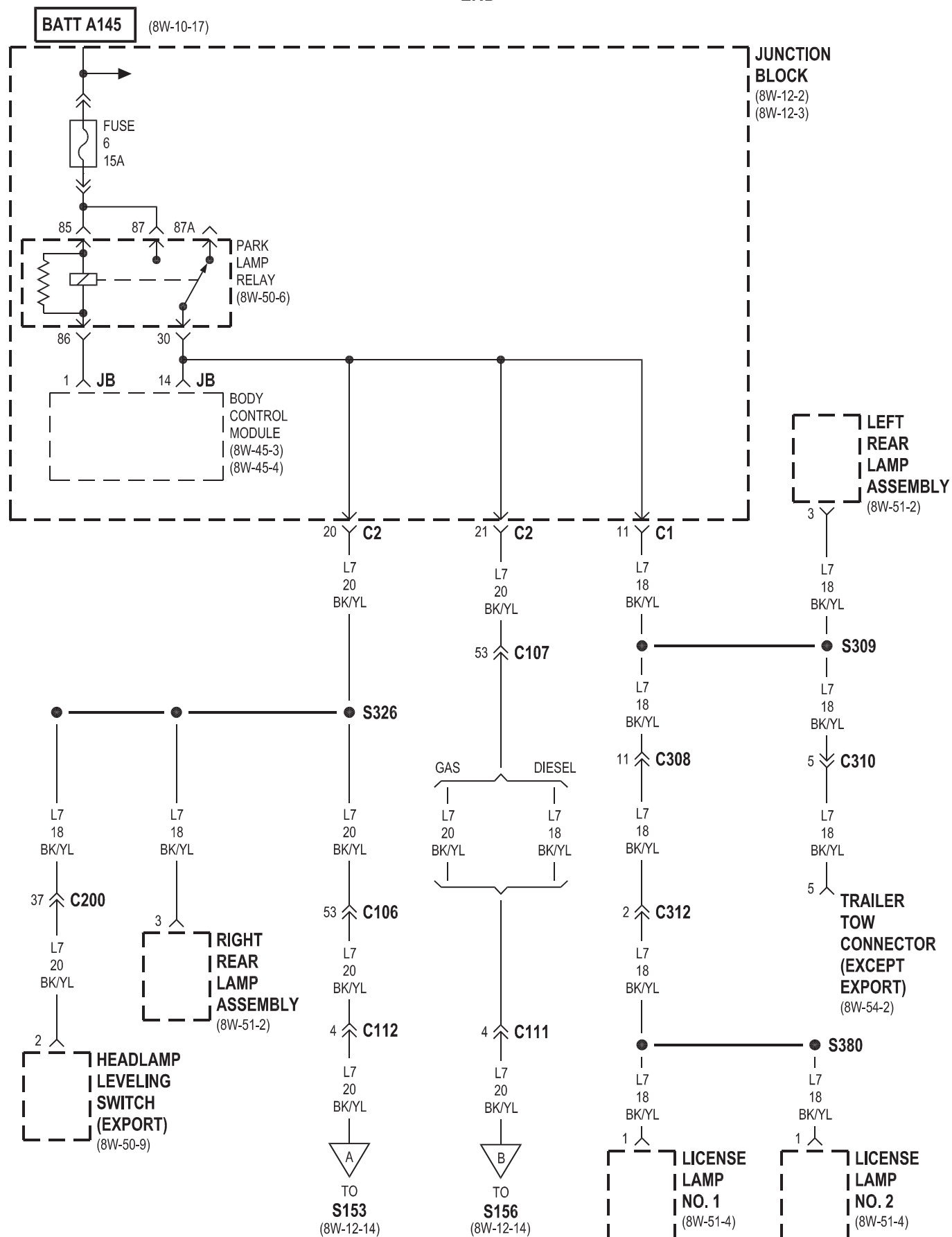
CAVITY	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
30	INTERNAL	FUSED B(+)
85	INTERNAL	FUSED B(+)
86	INTERNAL	REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER RELAY CONTROL
87	INTERNAL	REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER RELAY OUTPUT
87A	-	-

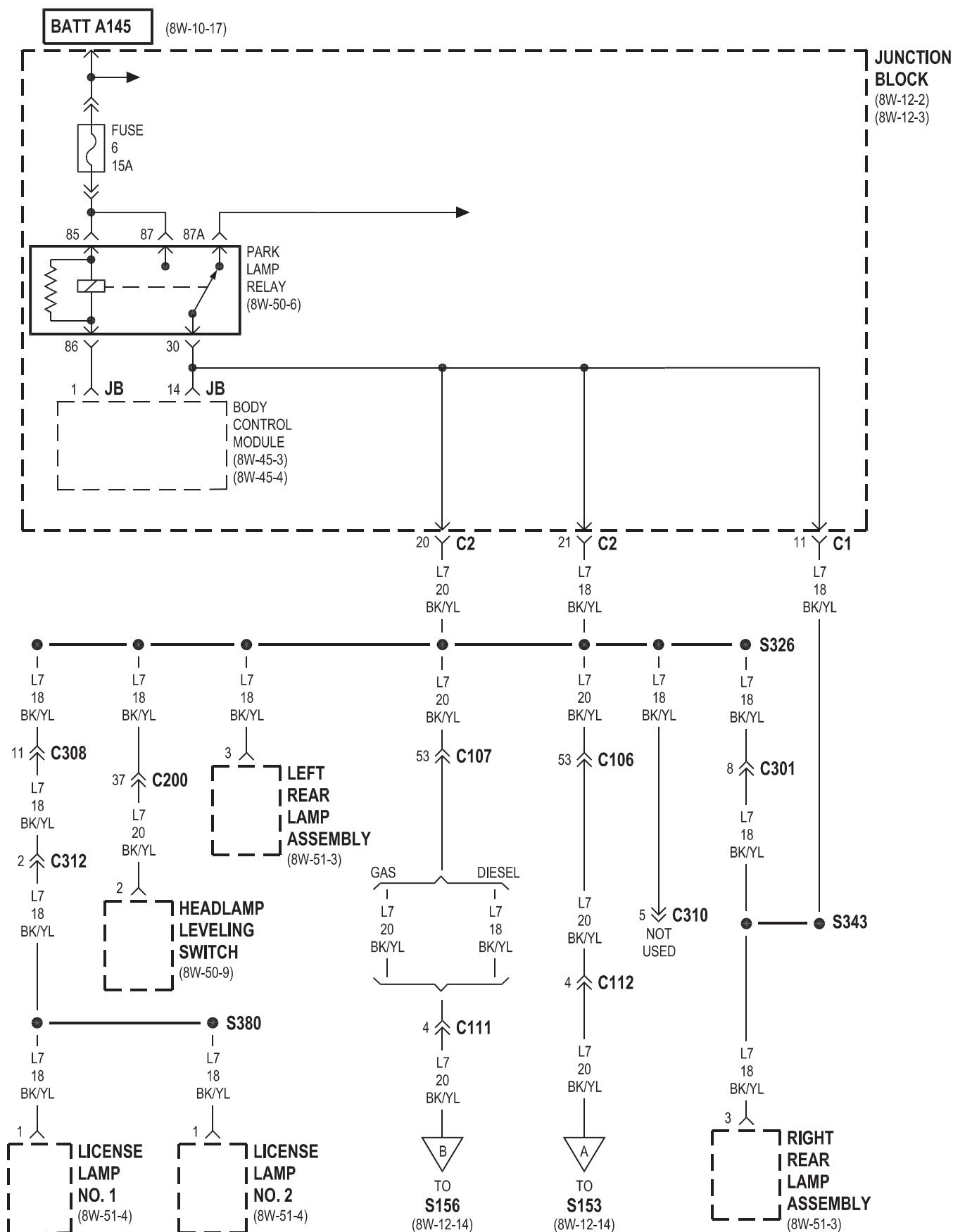


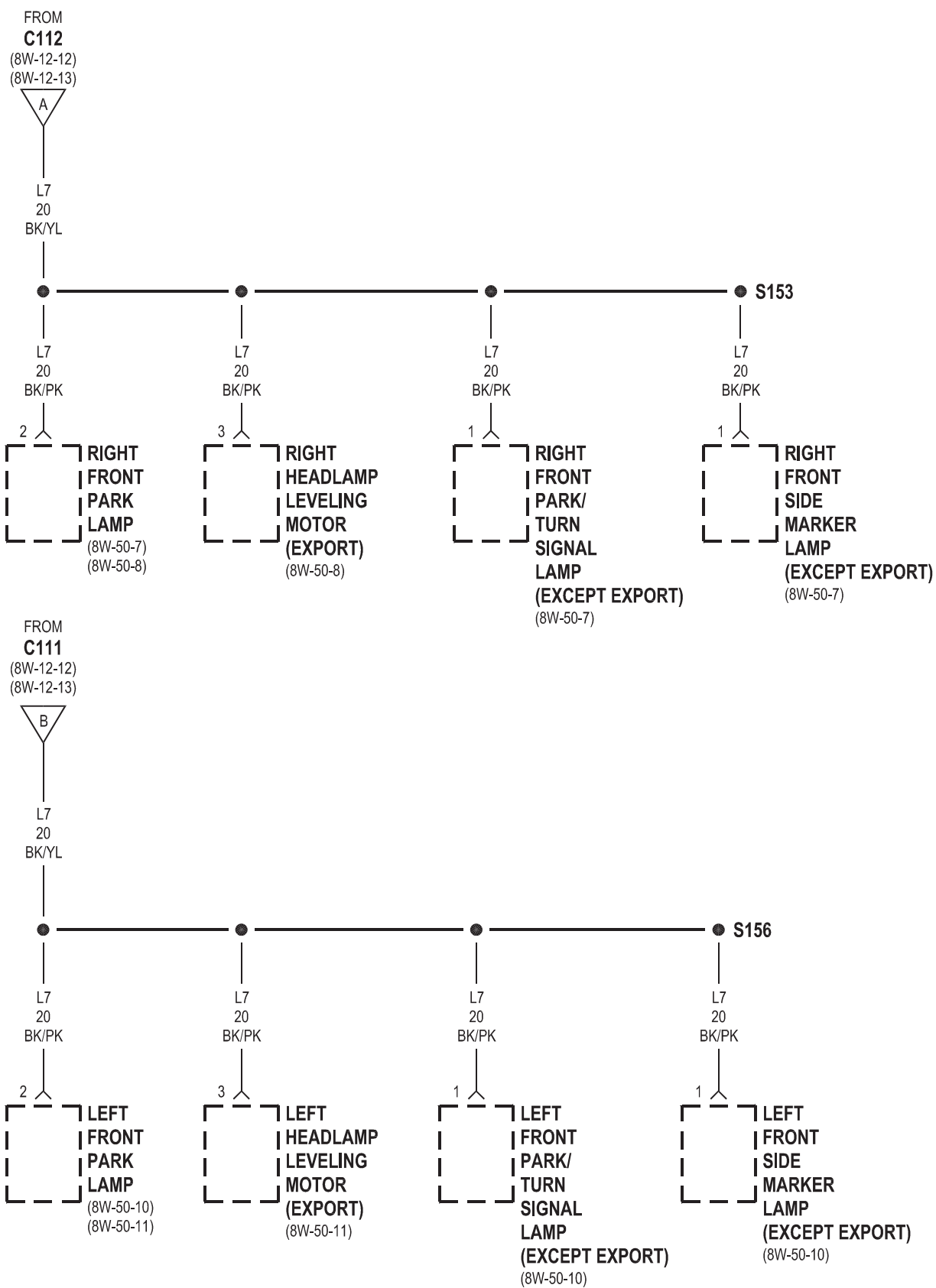


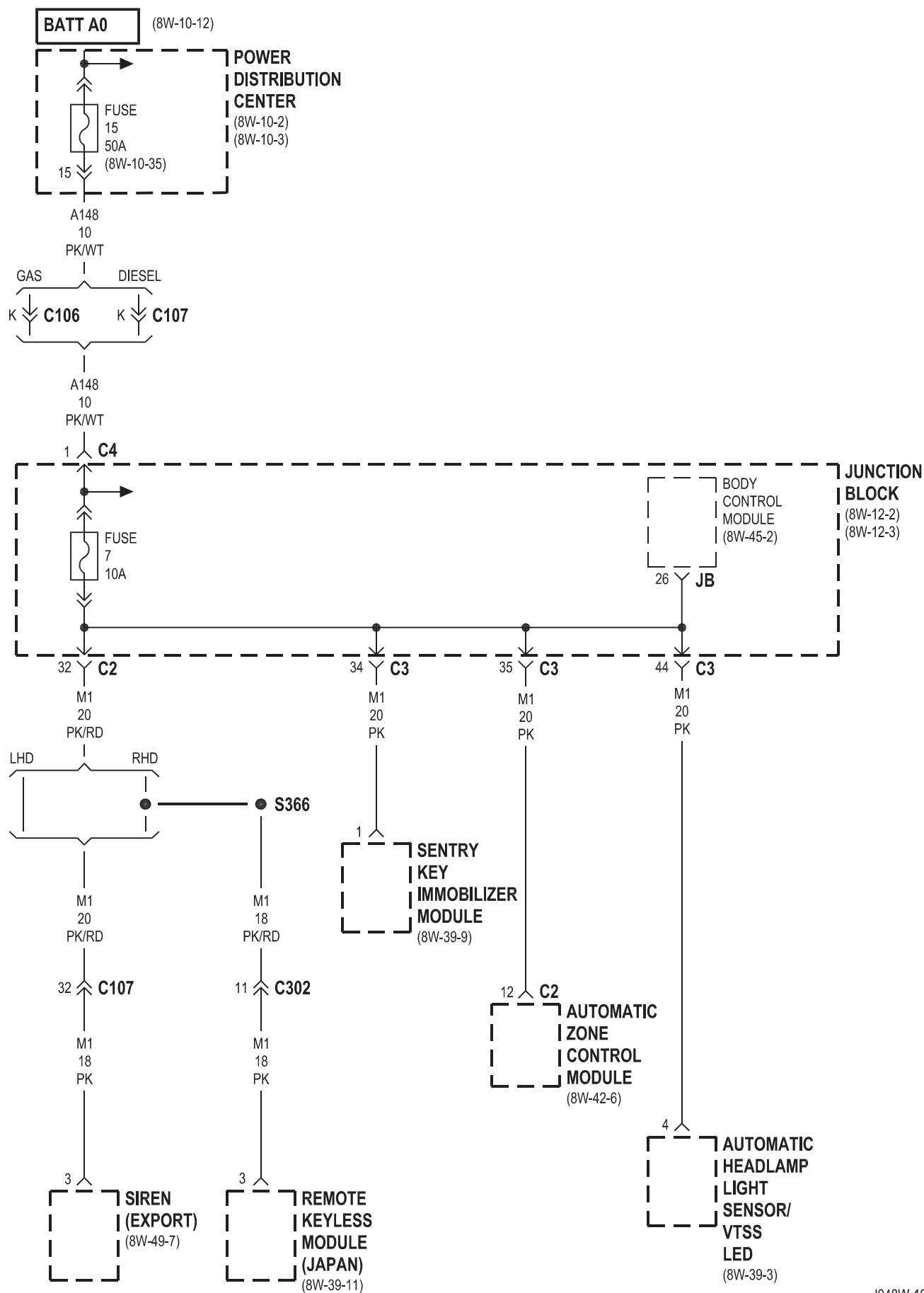




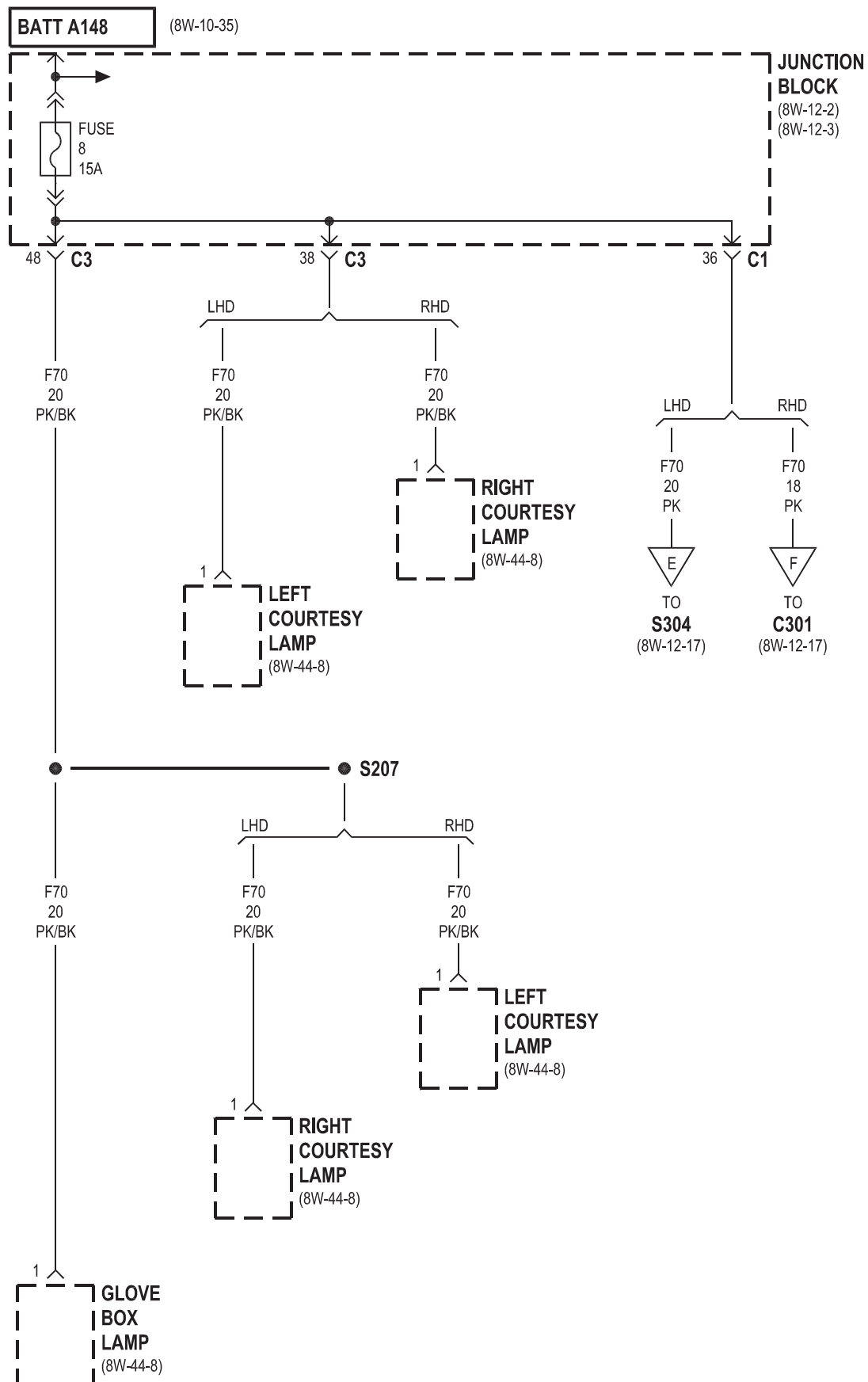


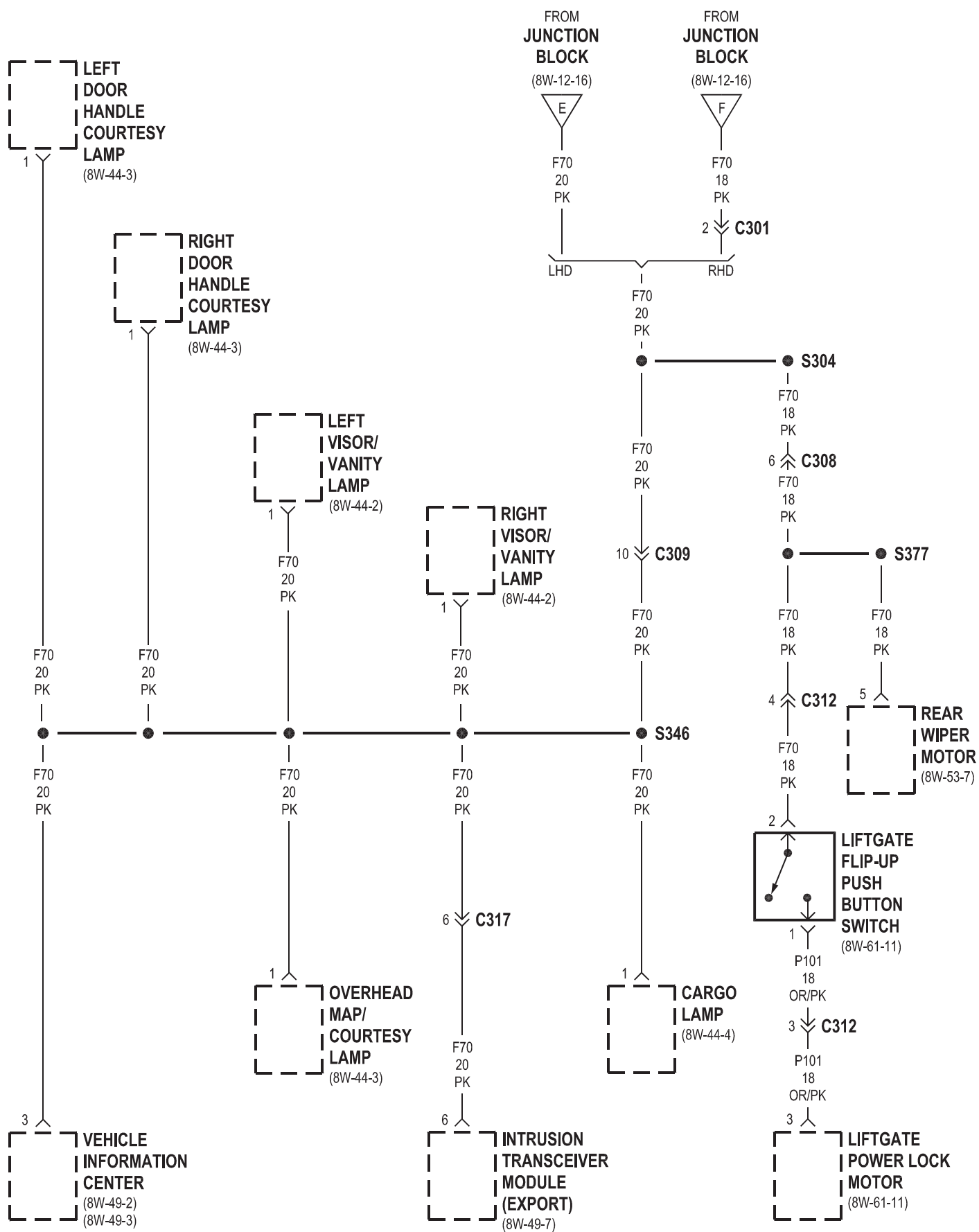


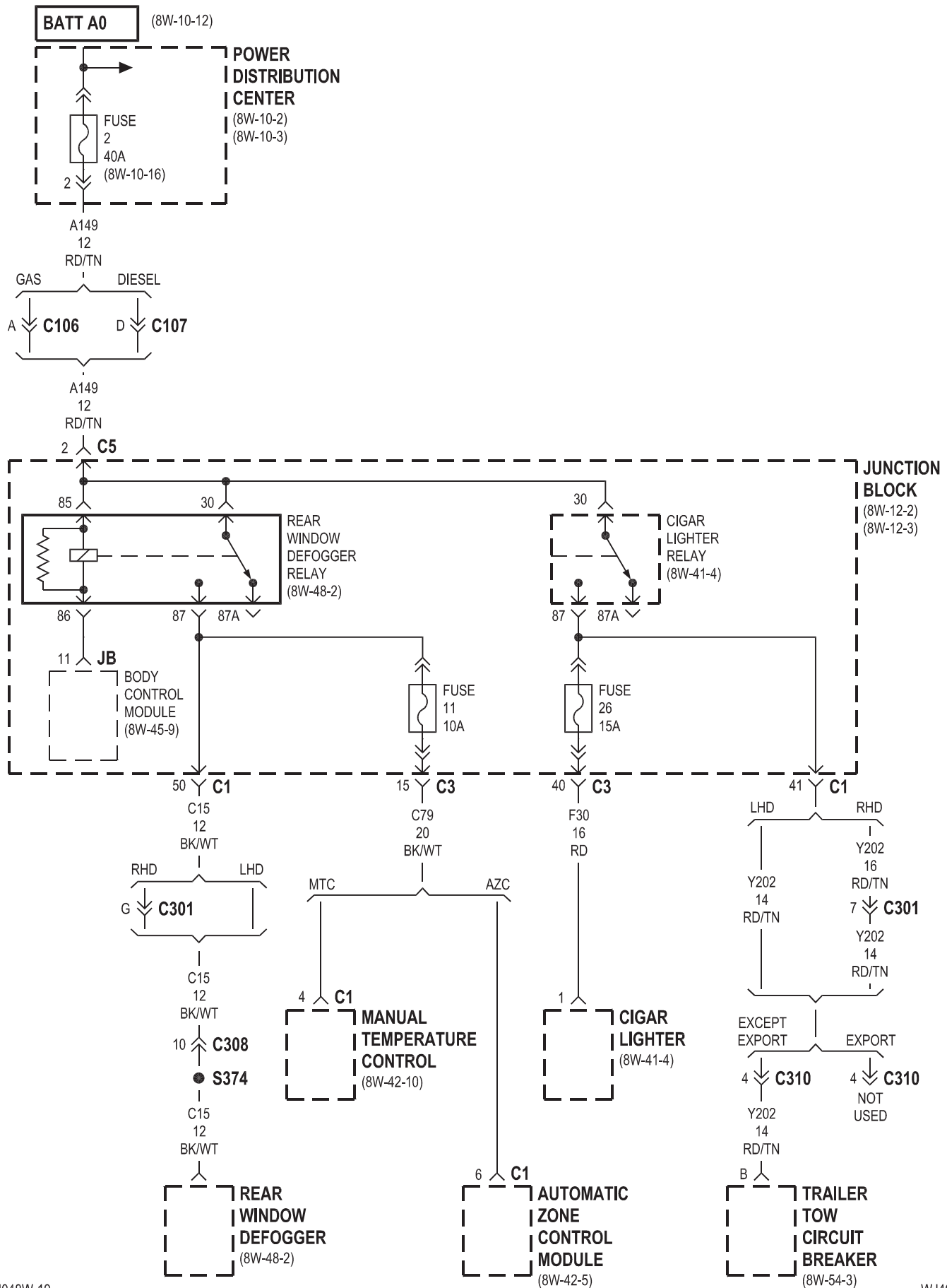


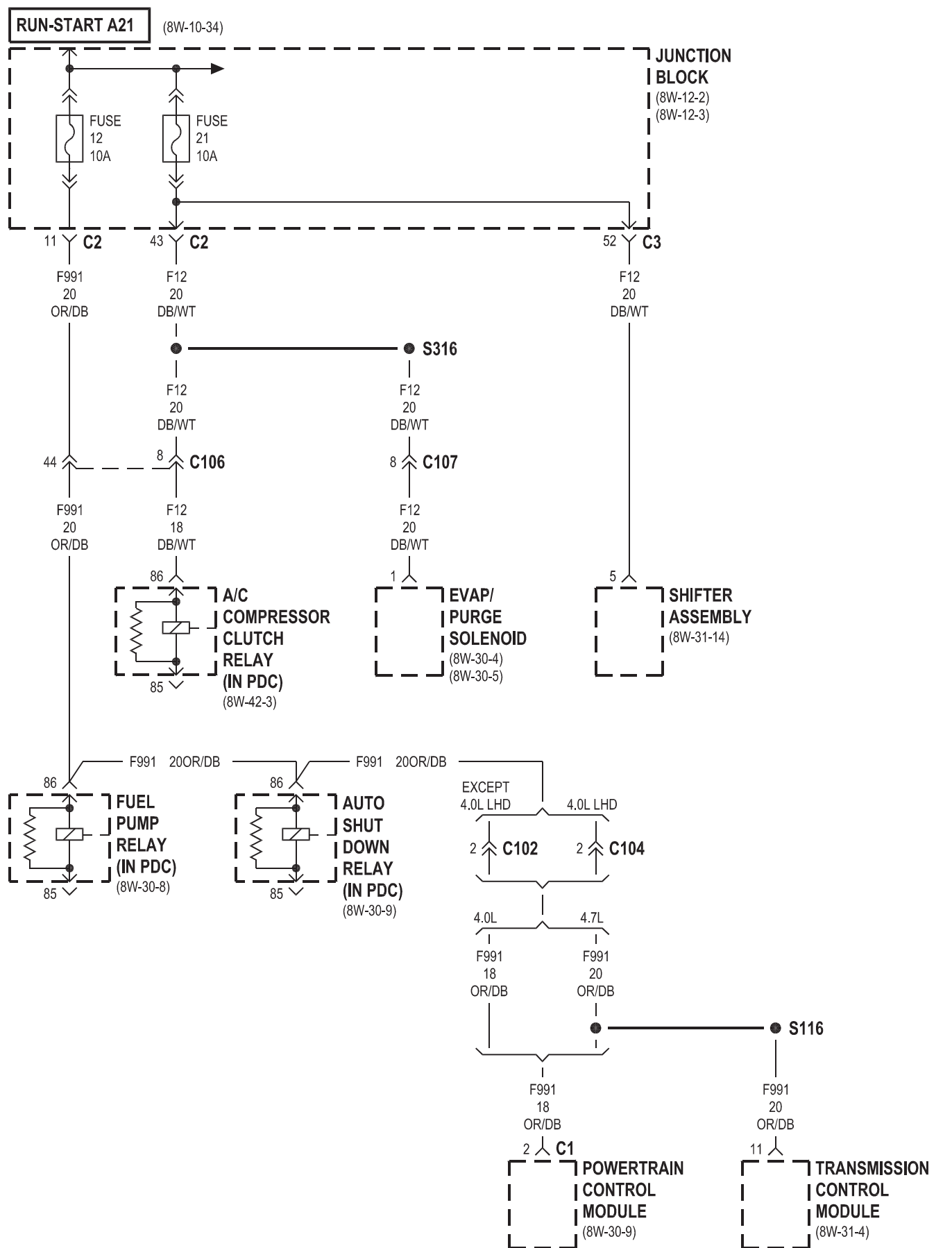


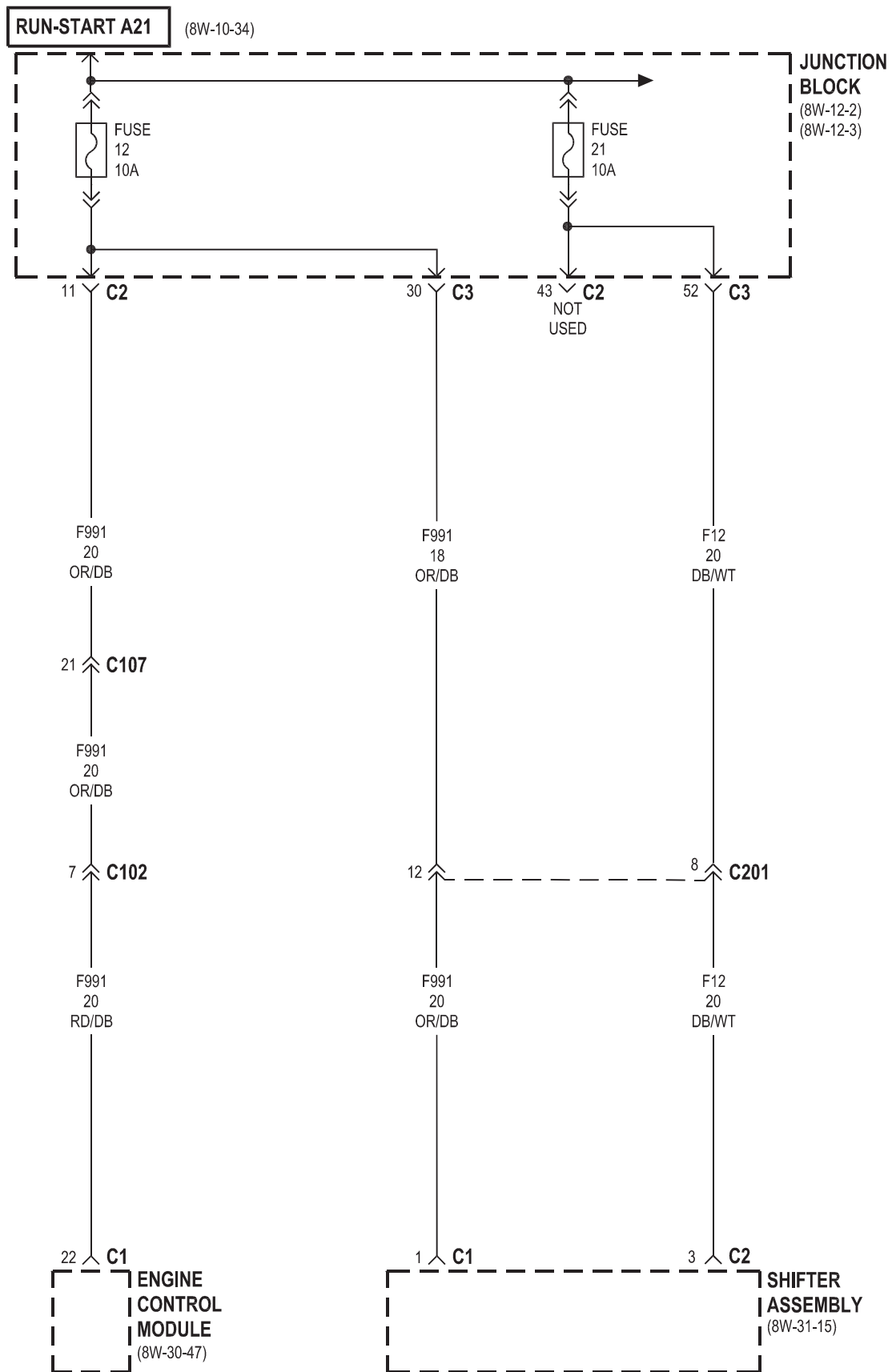




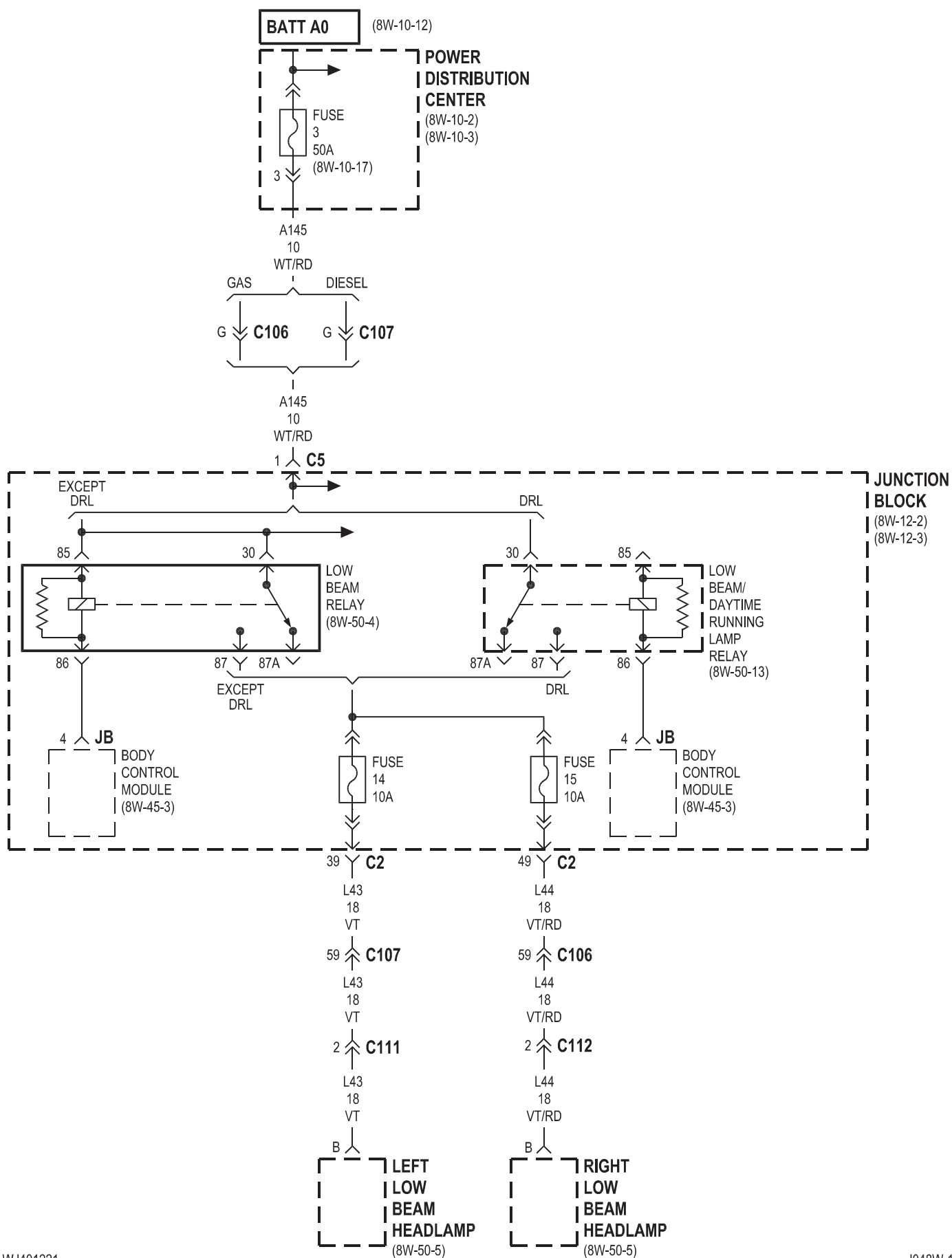


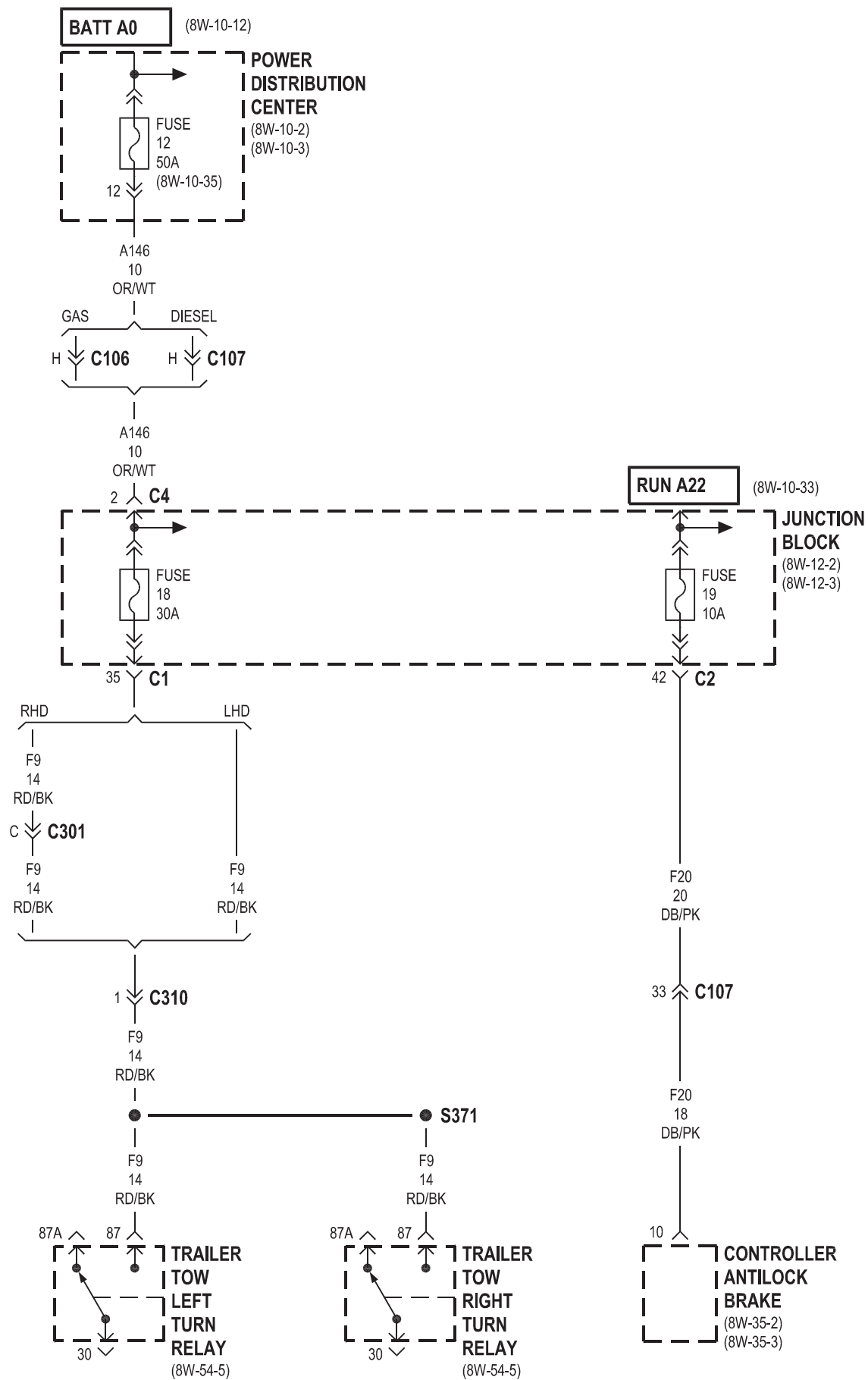


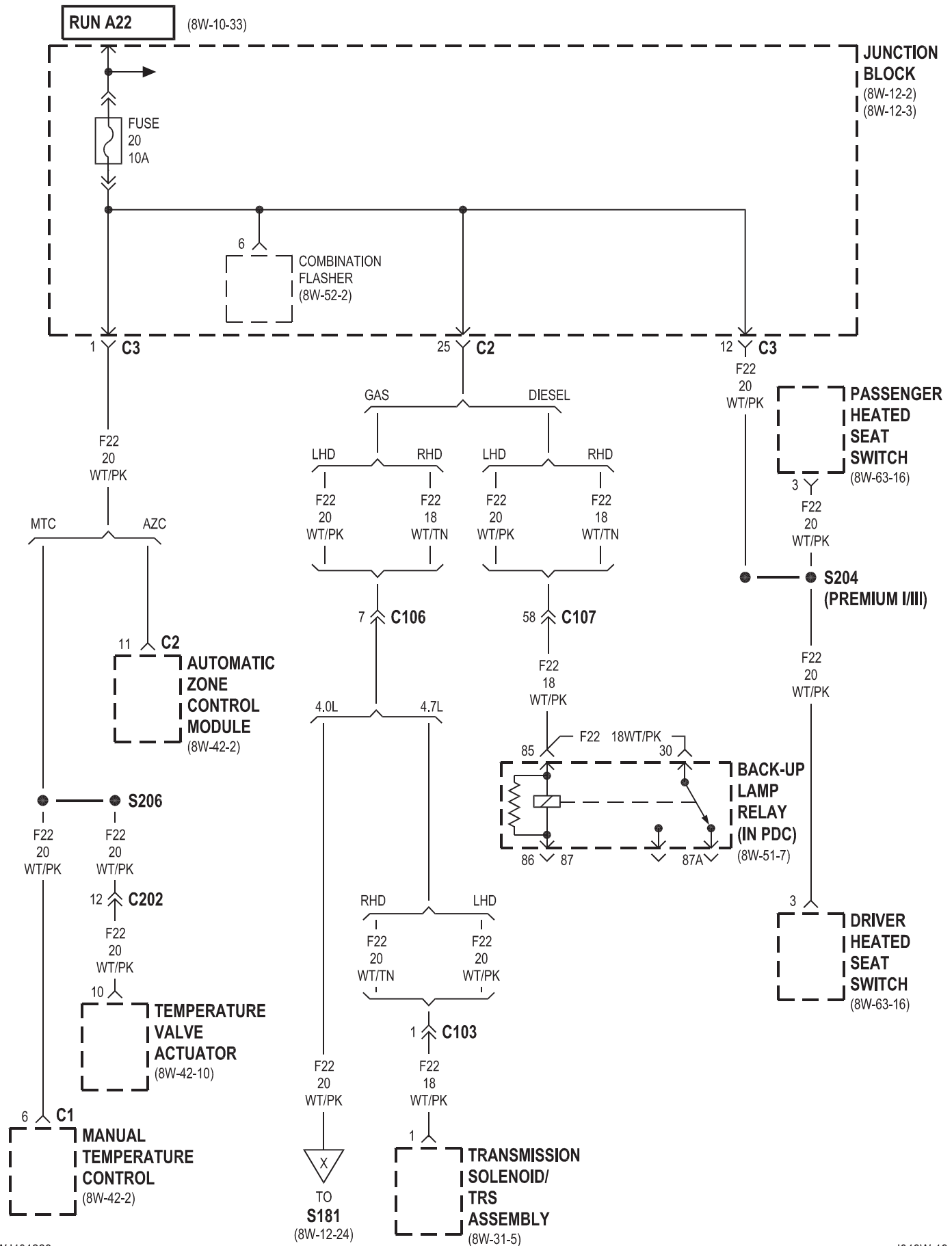


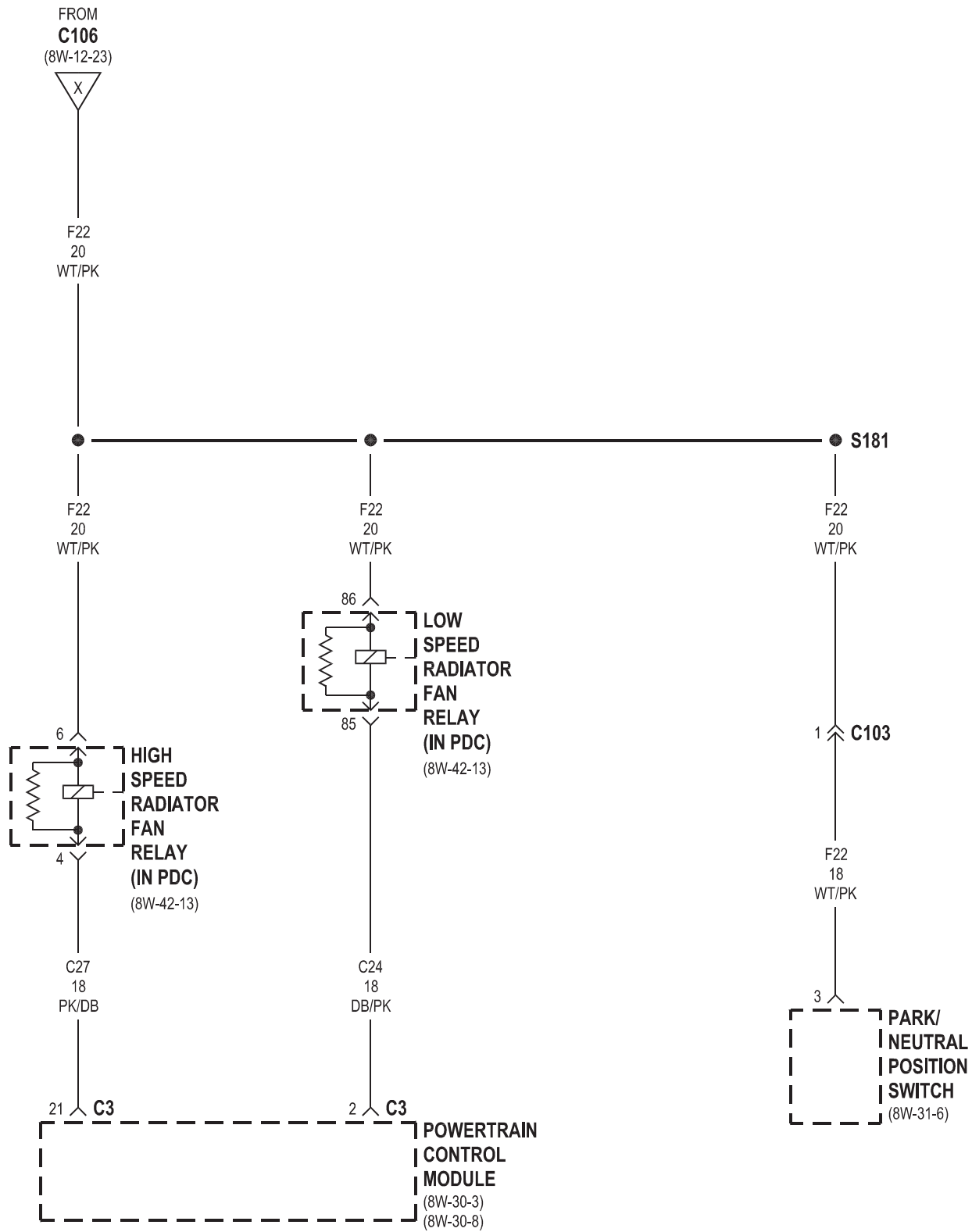


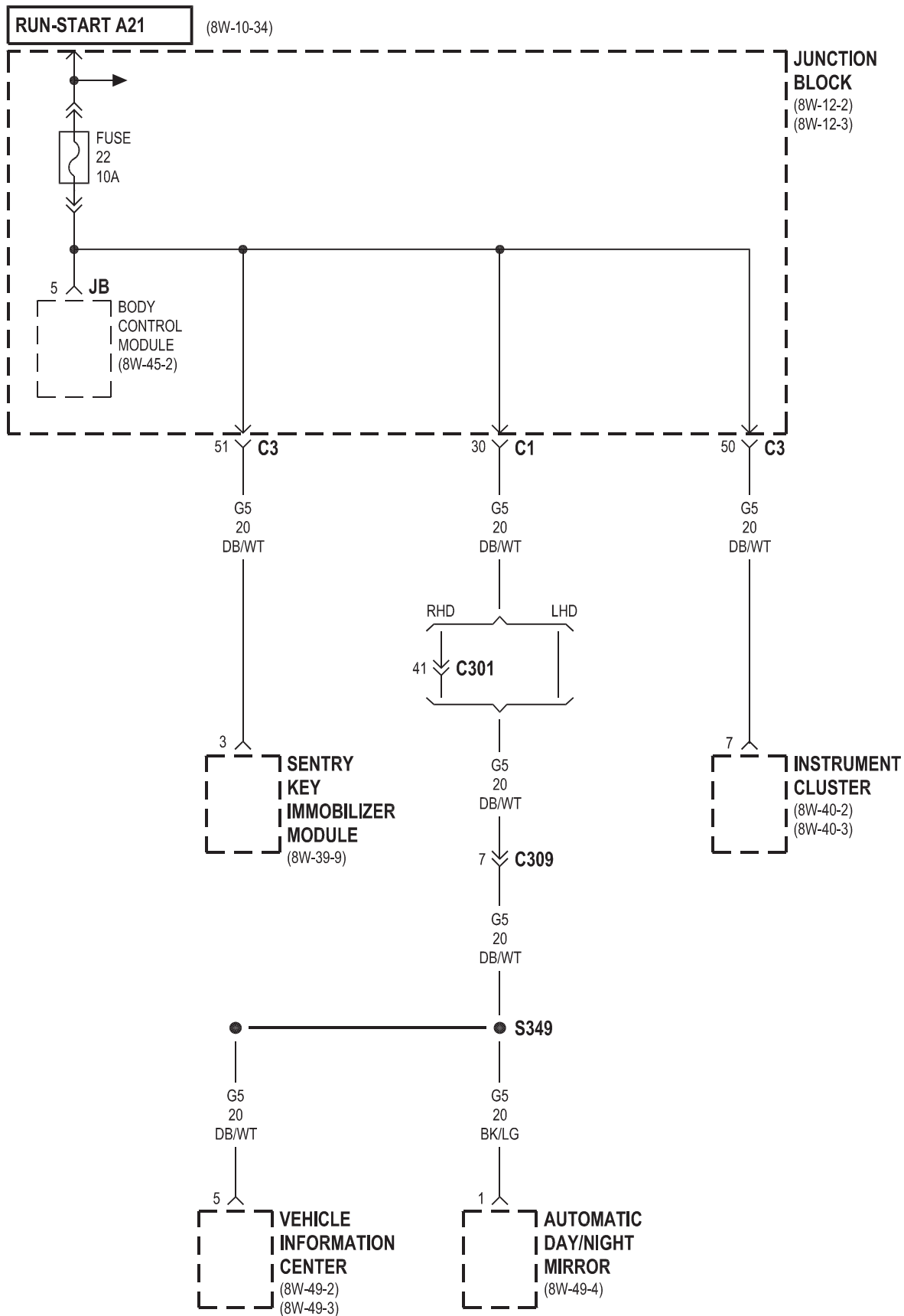




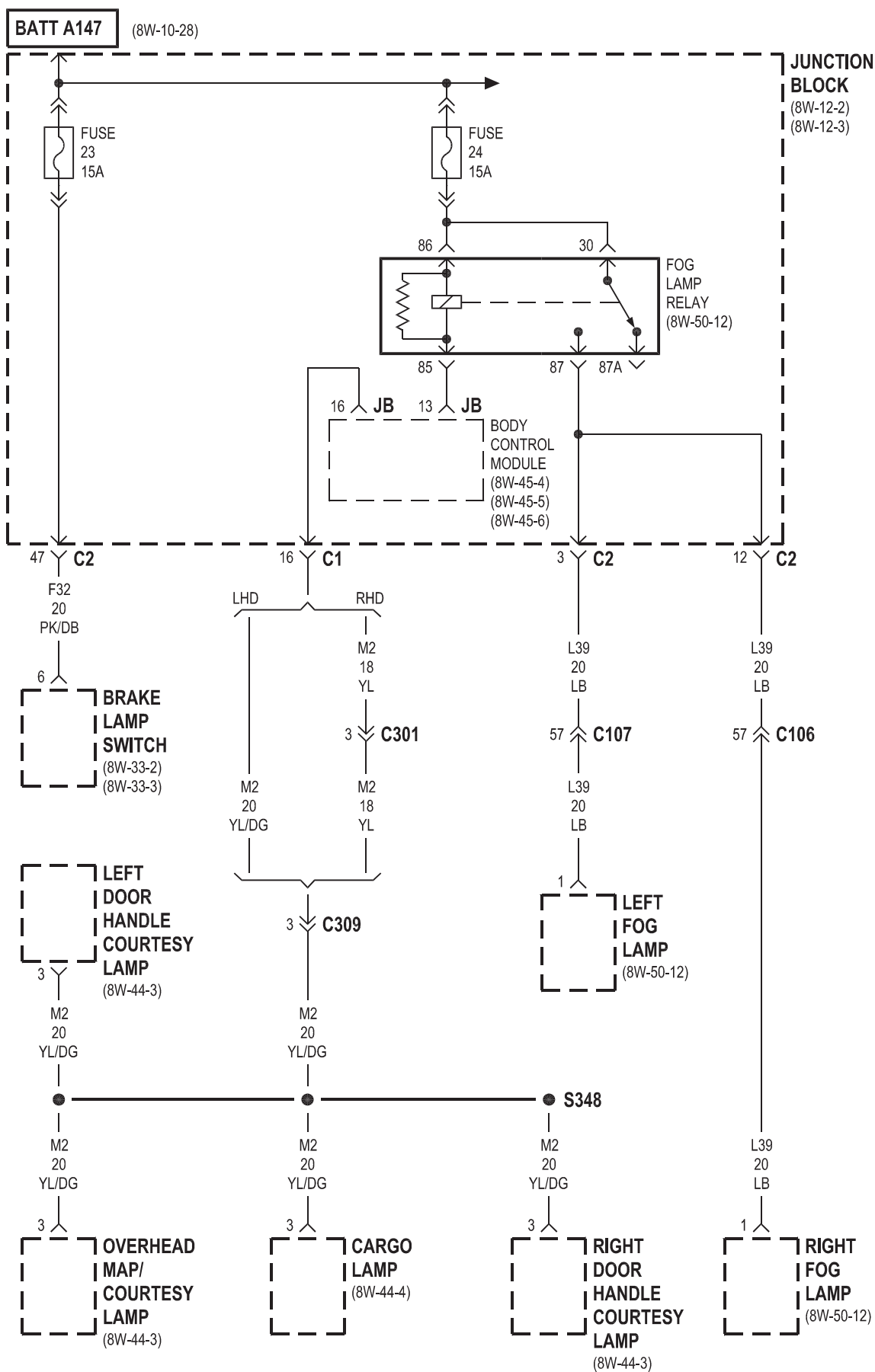


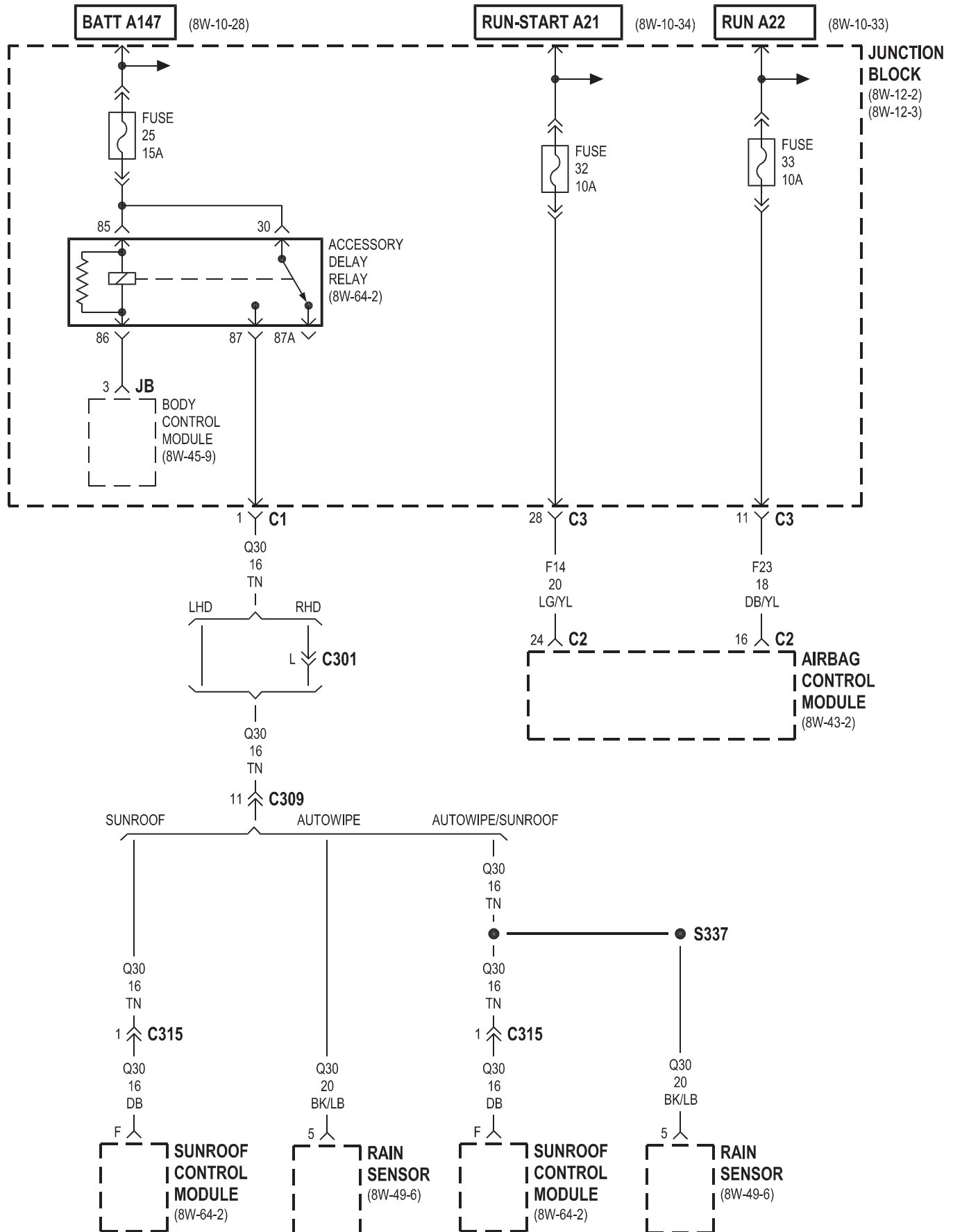


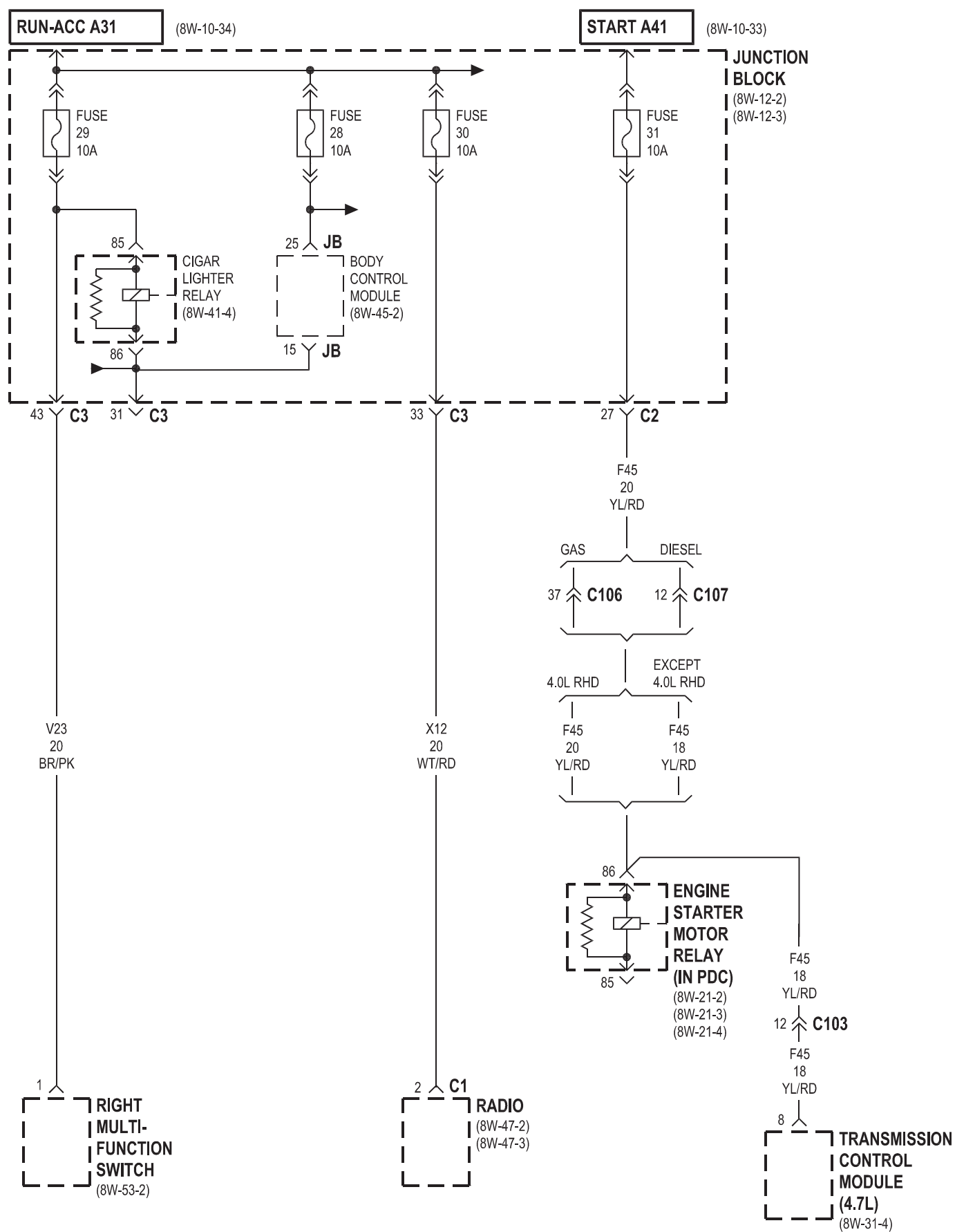


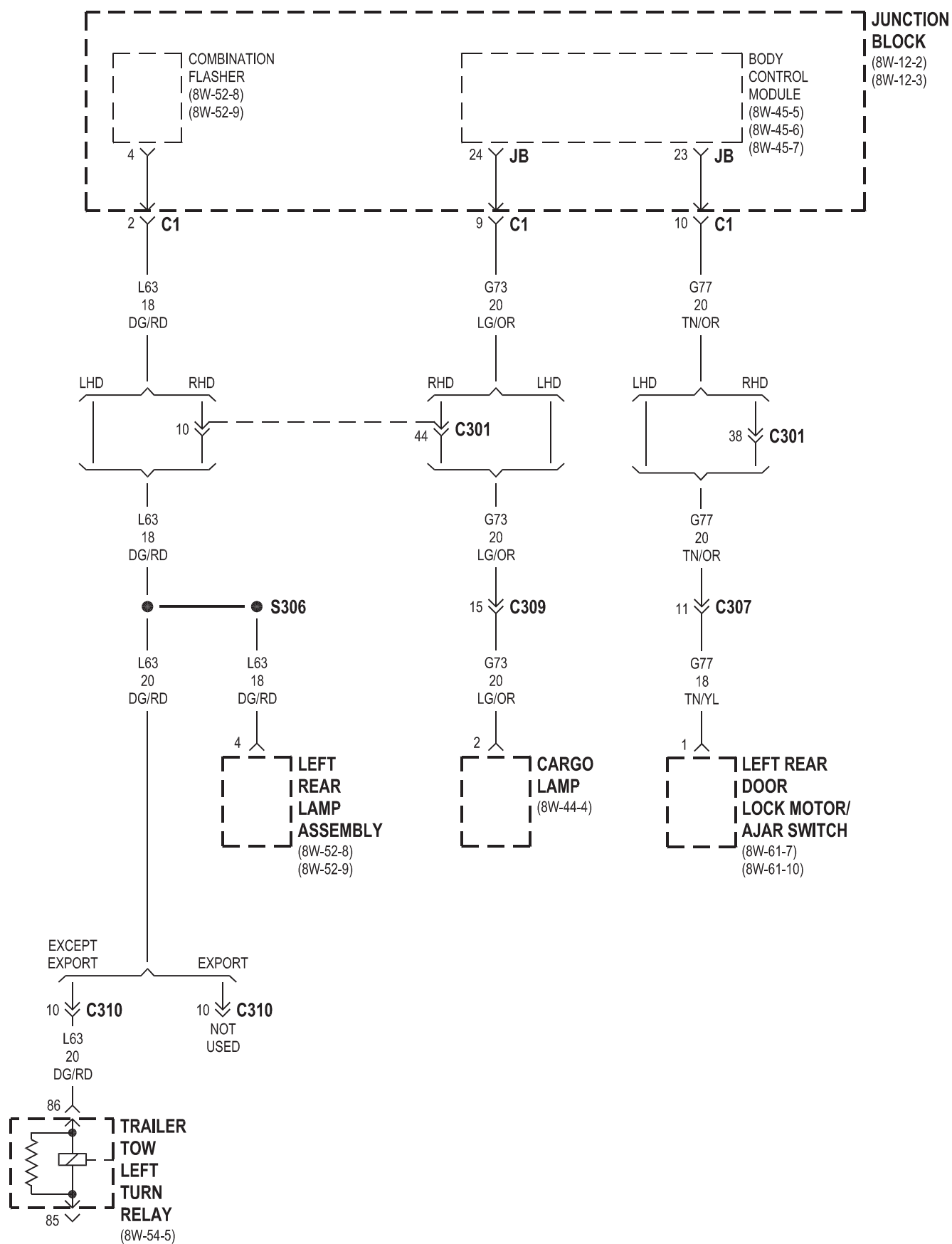


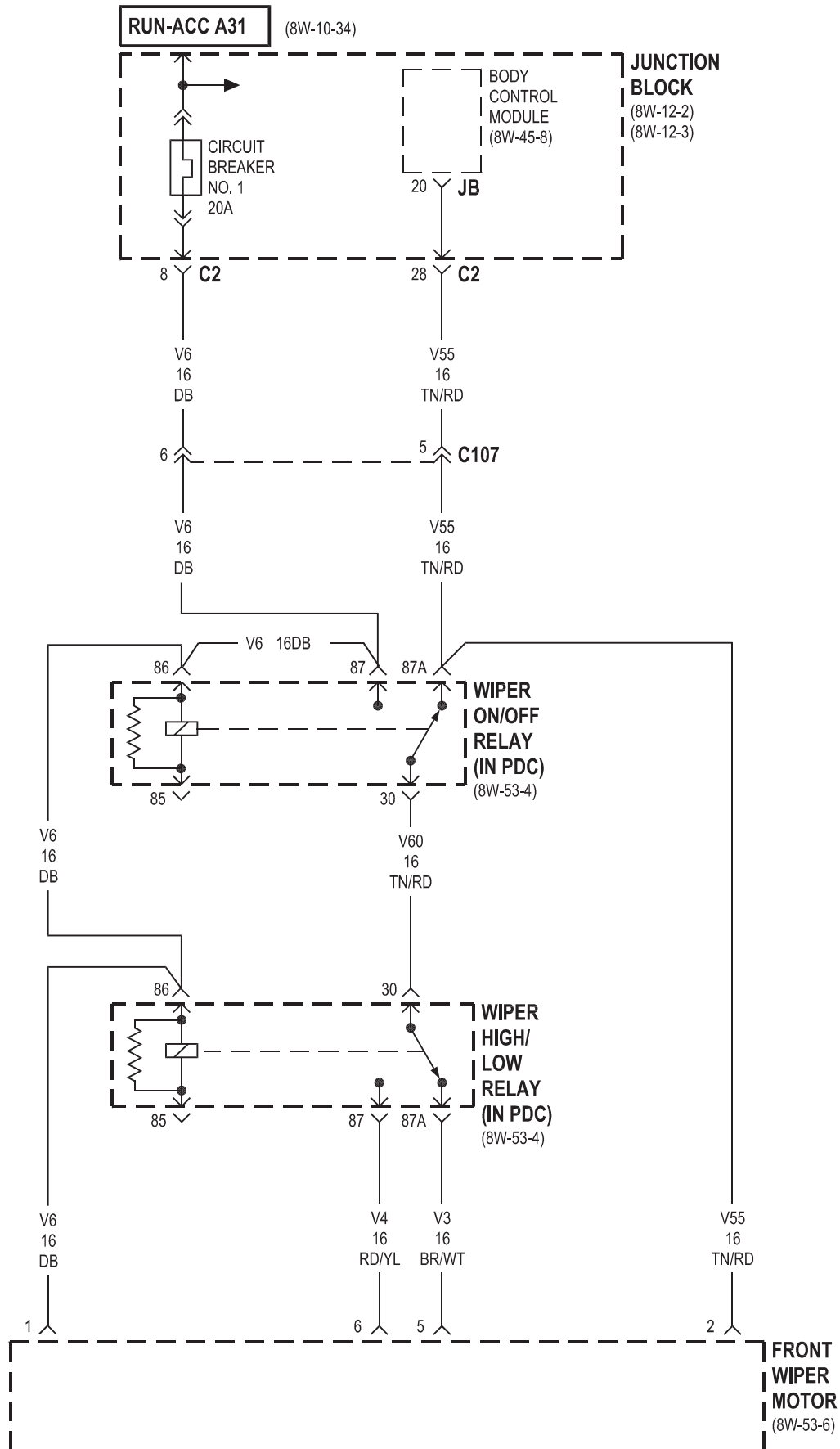




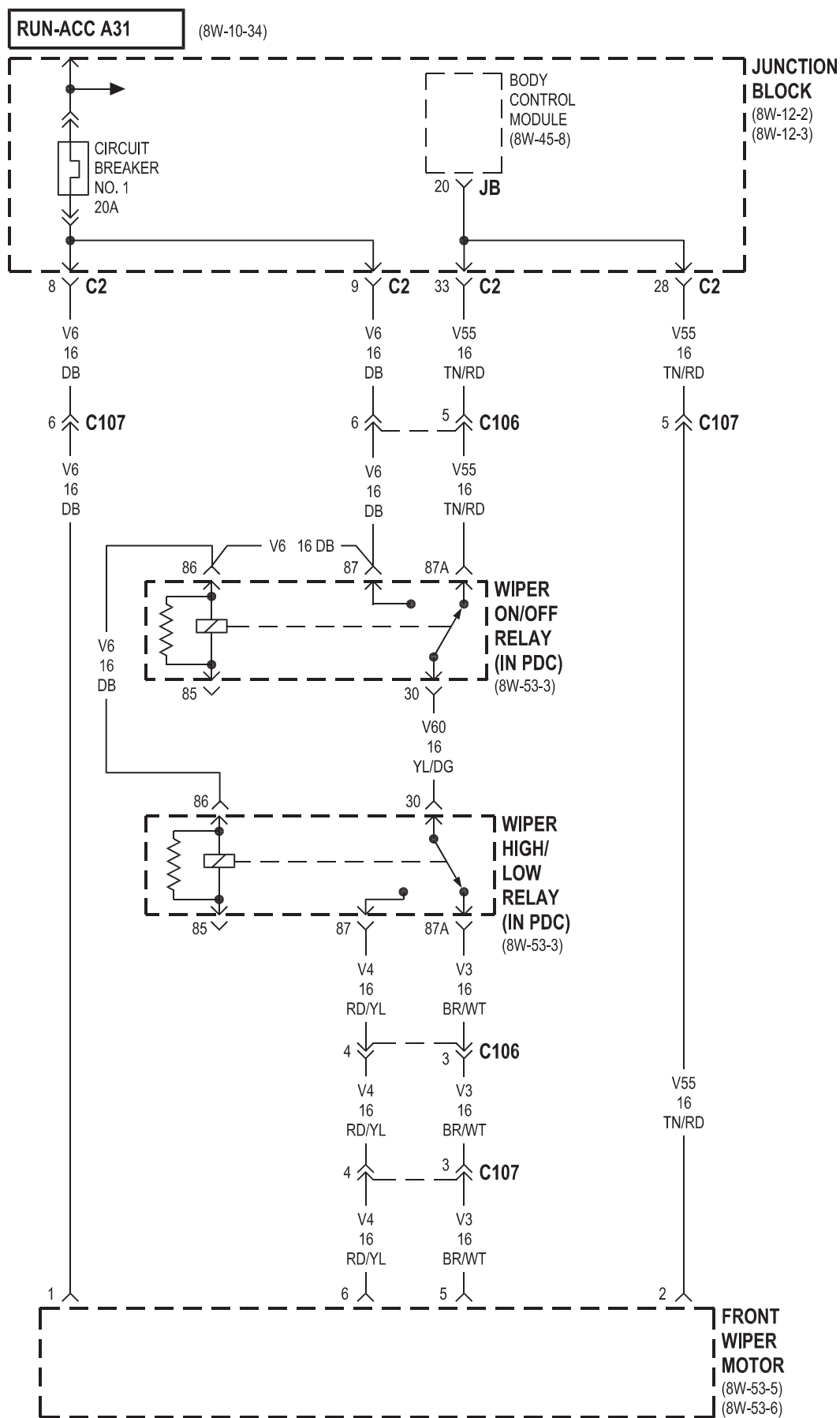


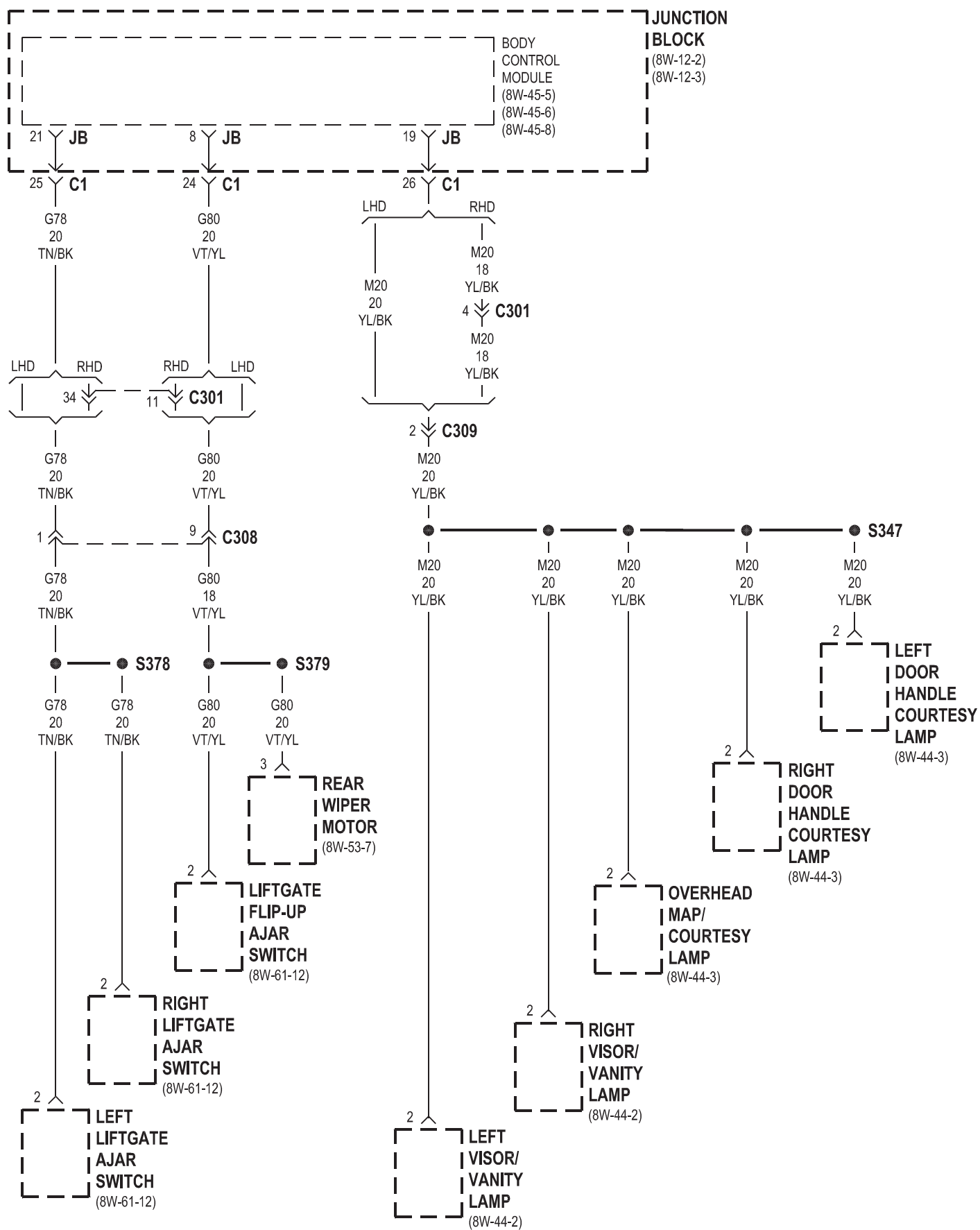


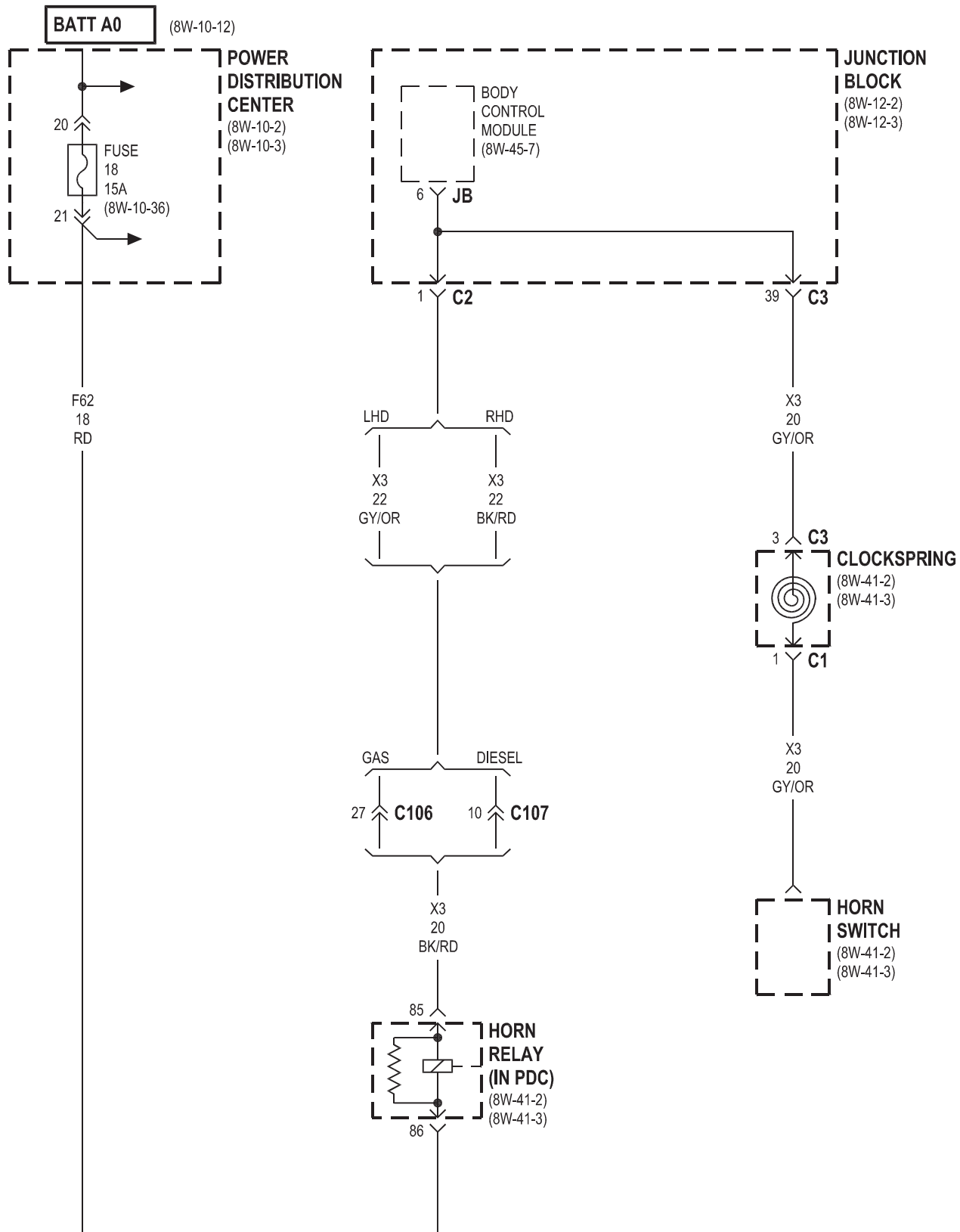




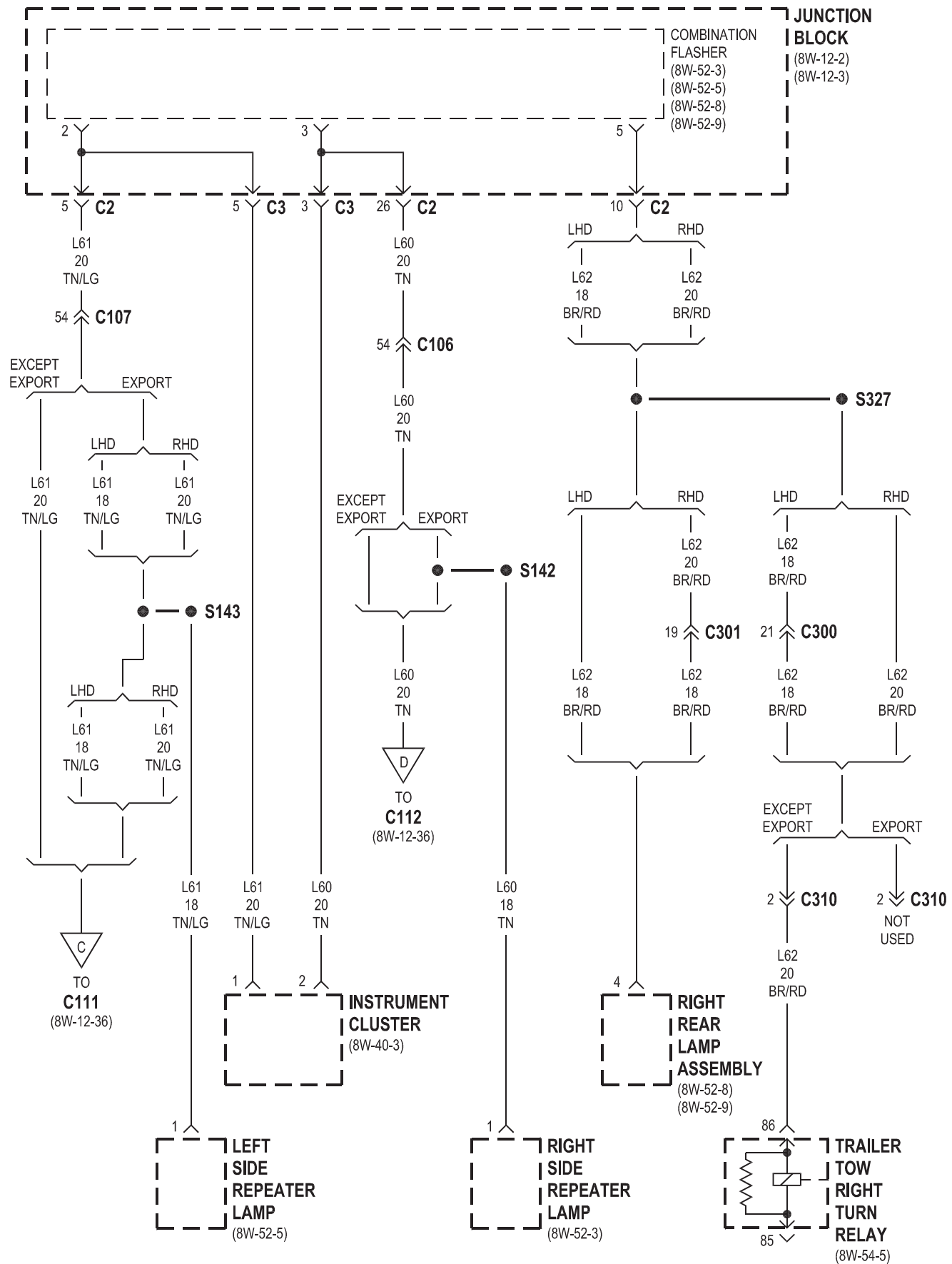


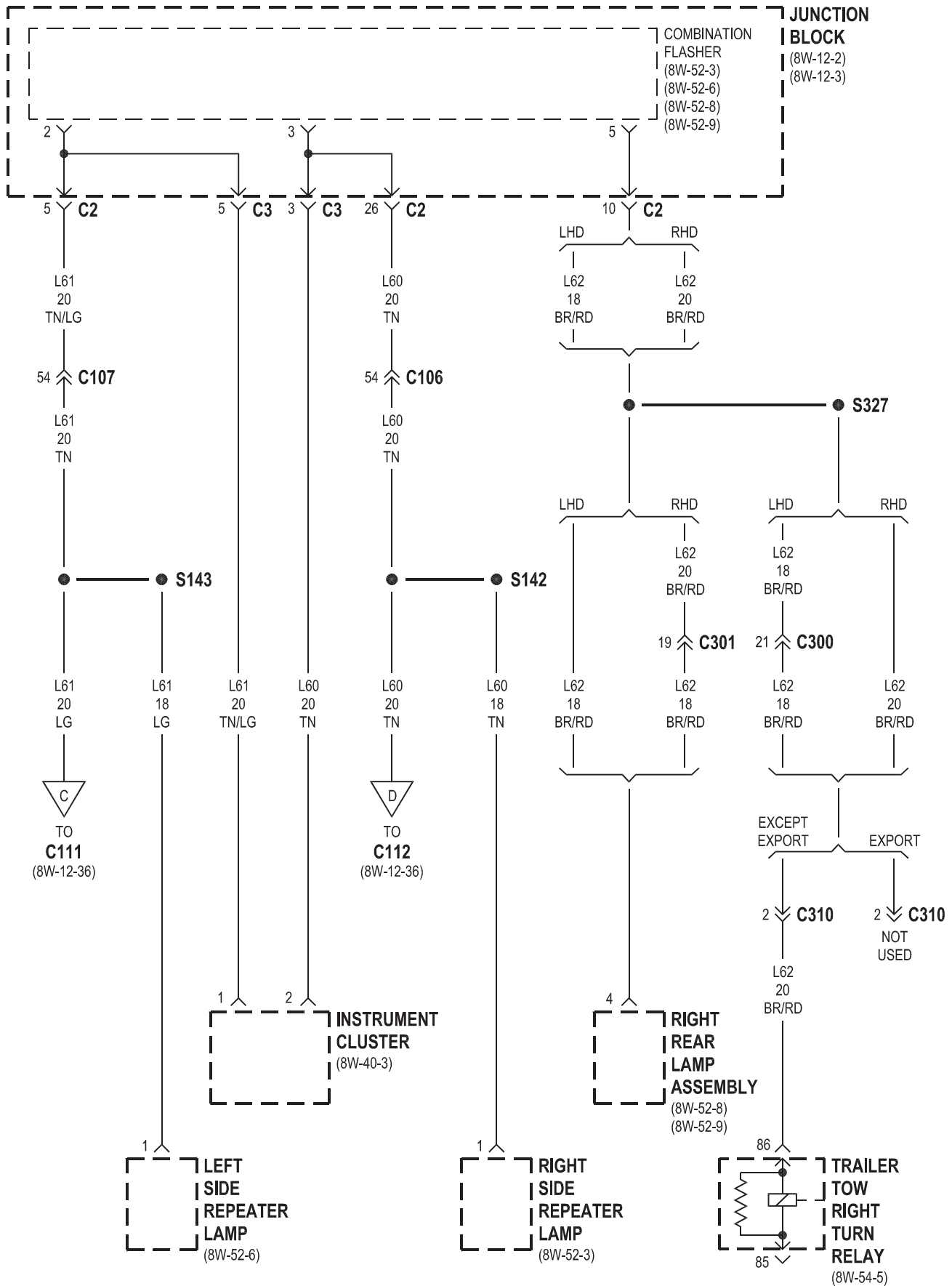




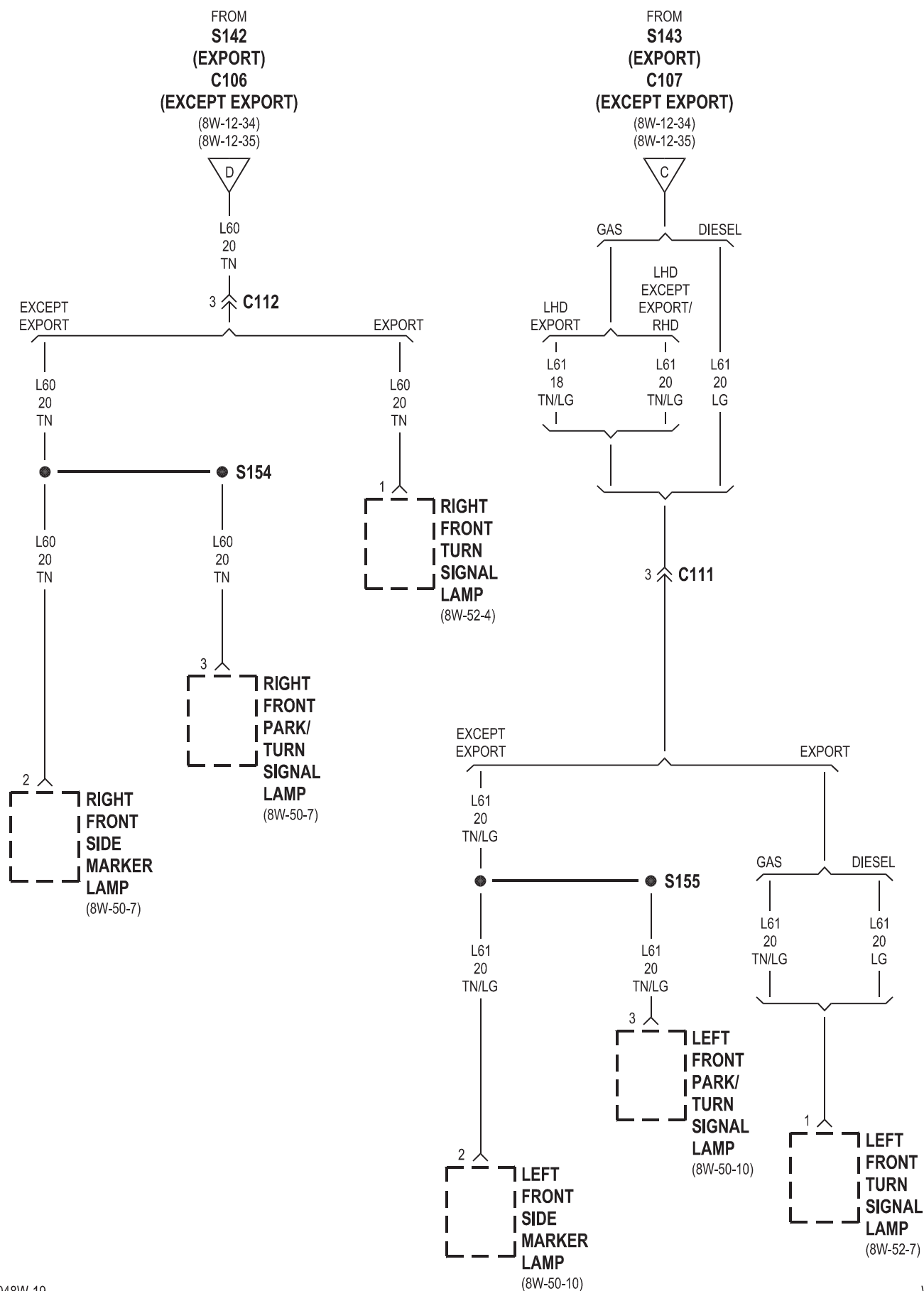


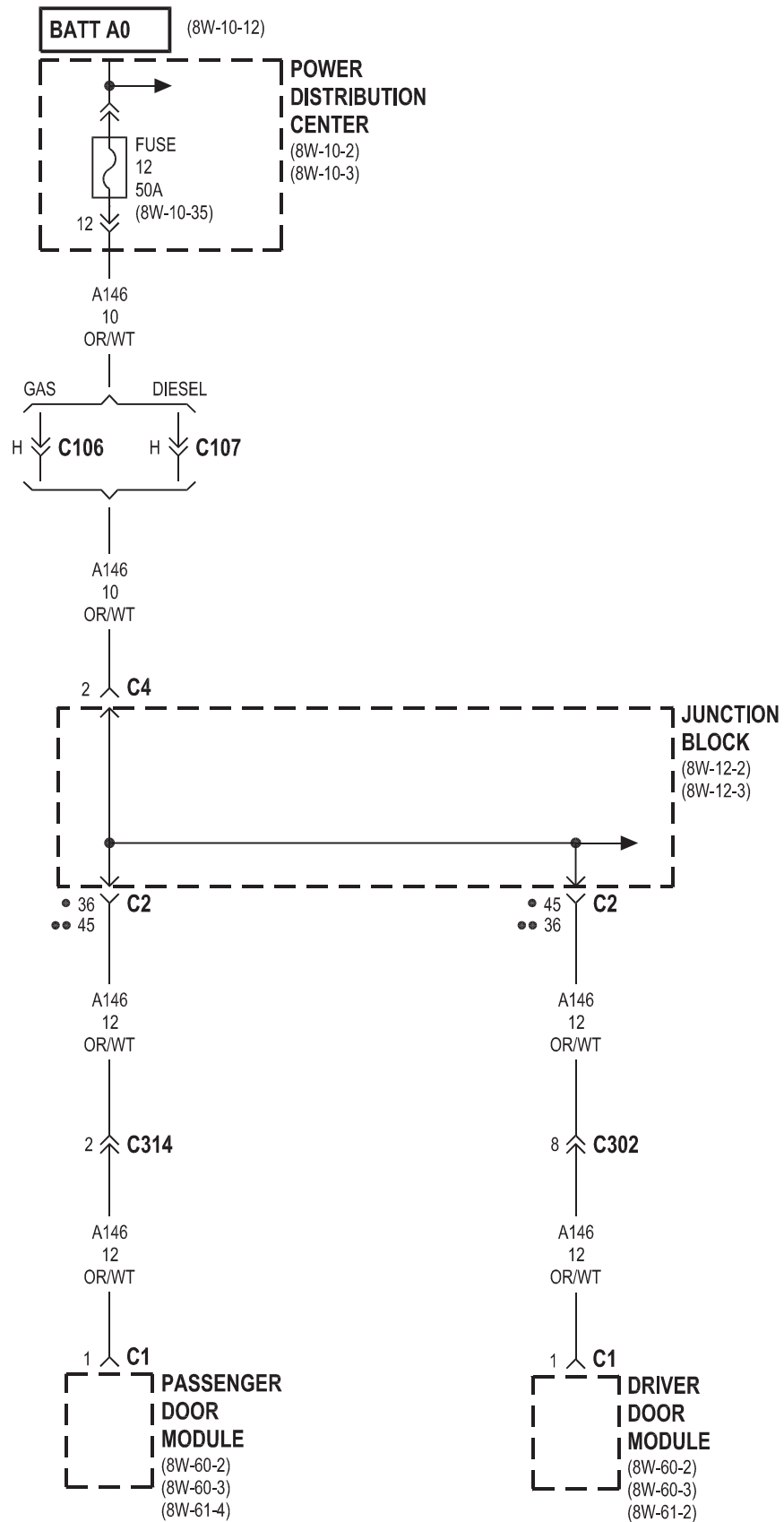
## GAS

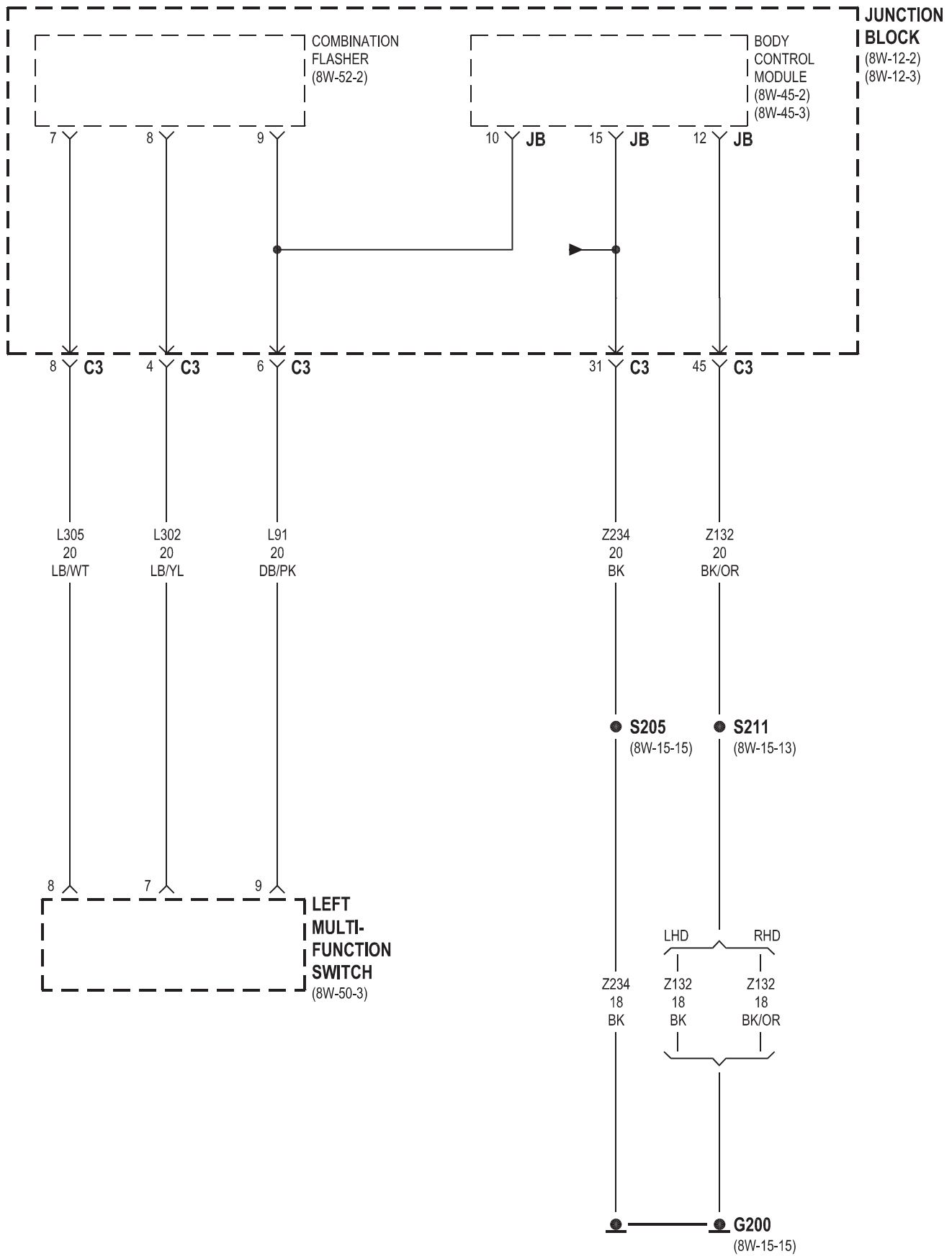


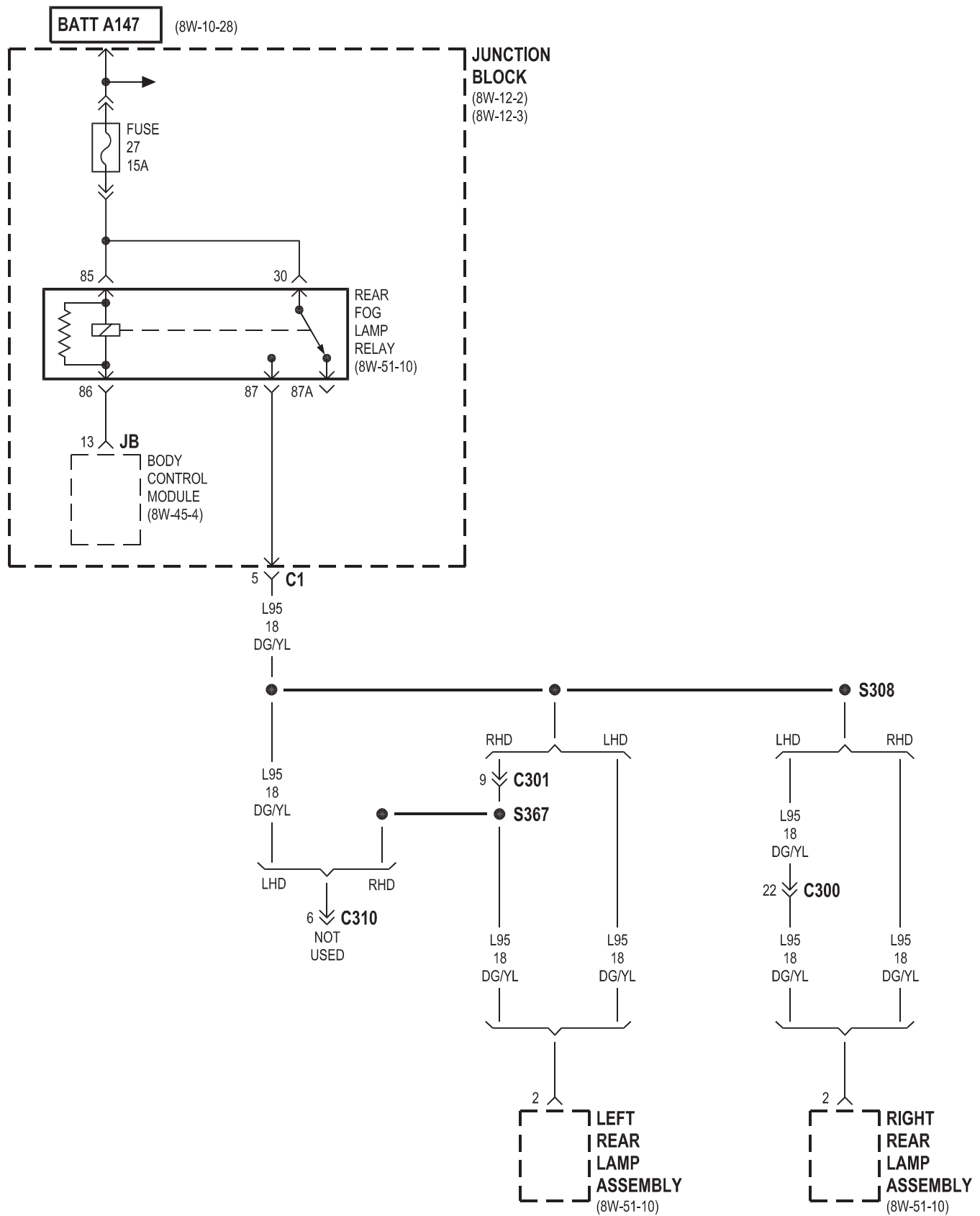












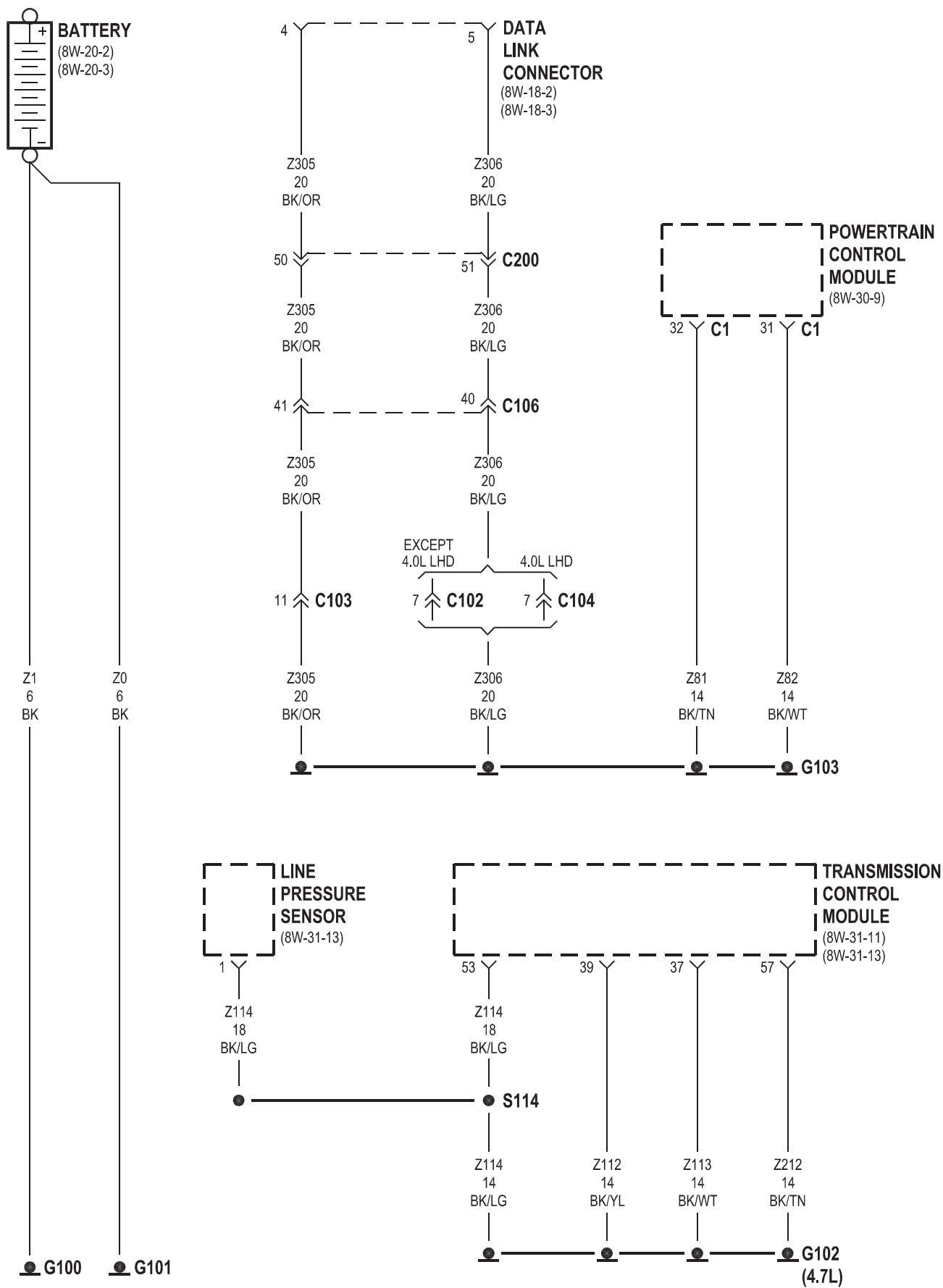


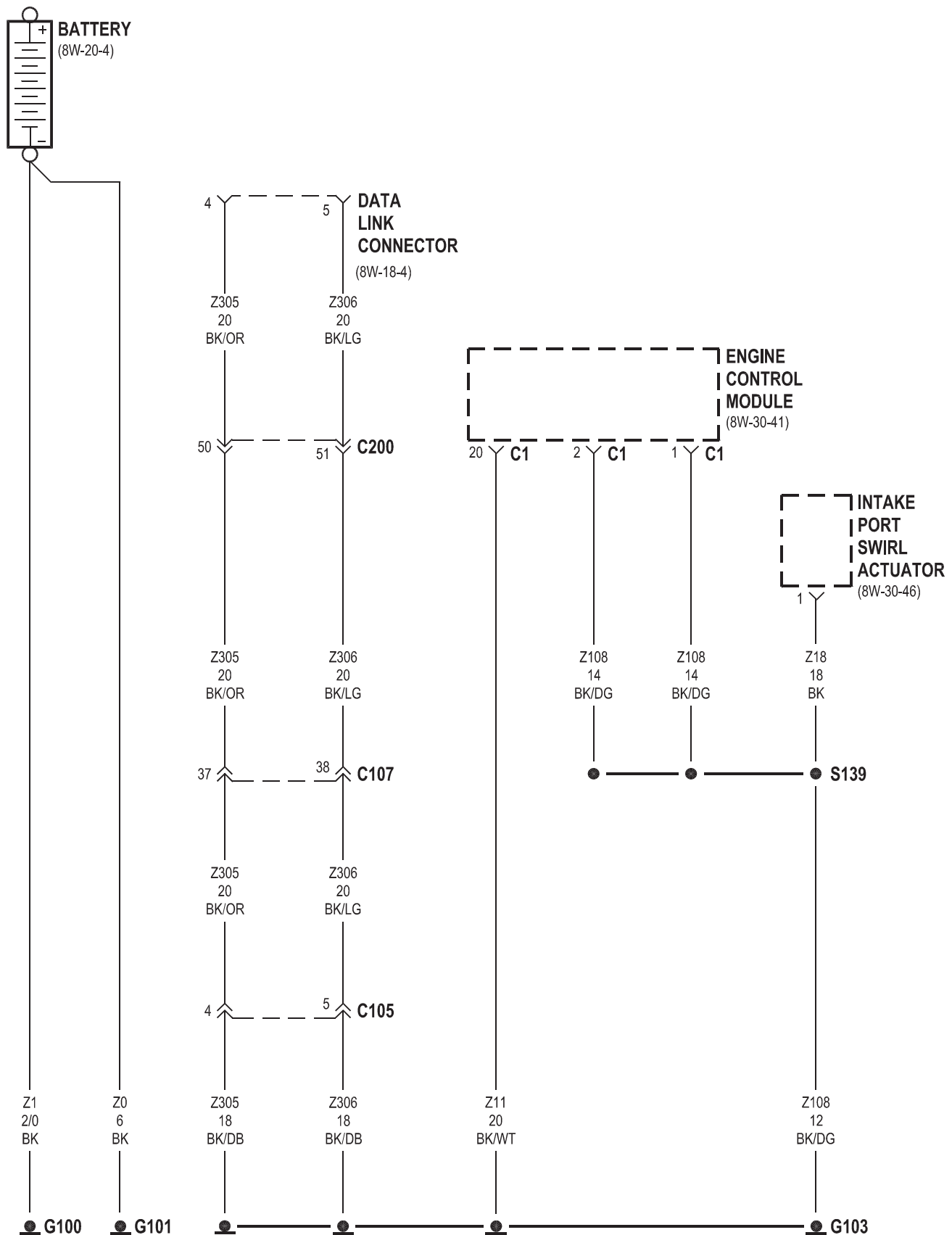


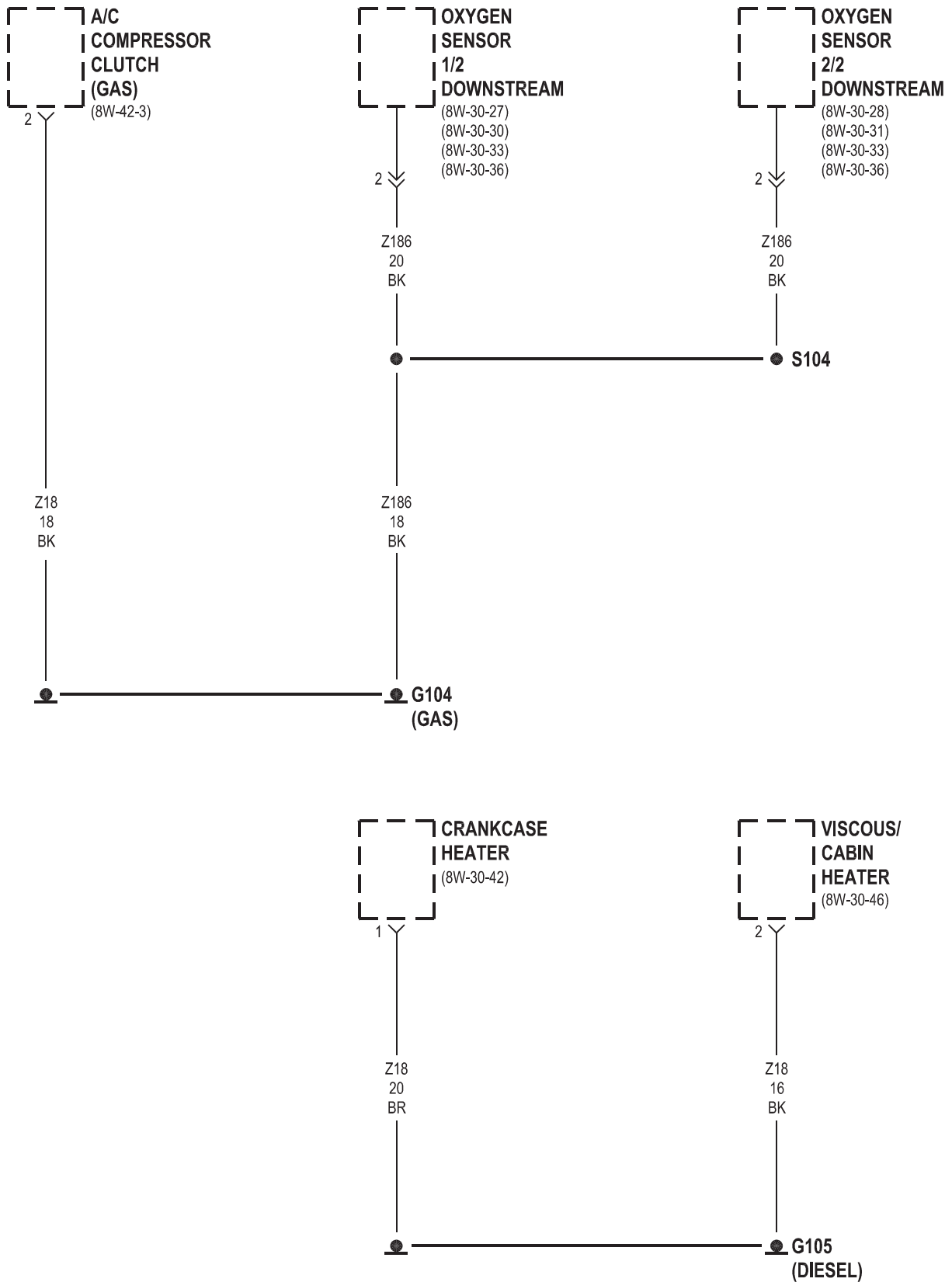
## 8W-15 GROUND DISTRIBUTION

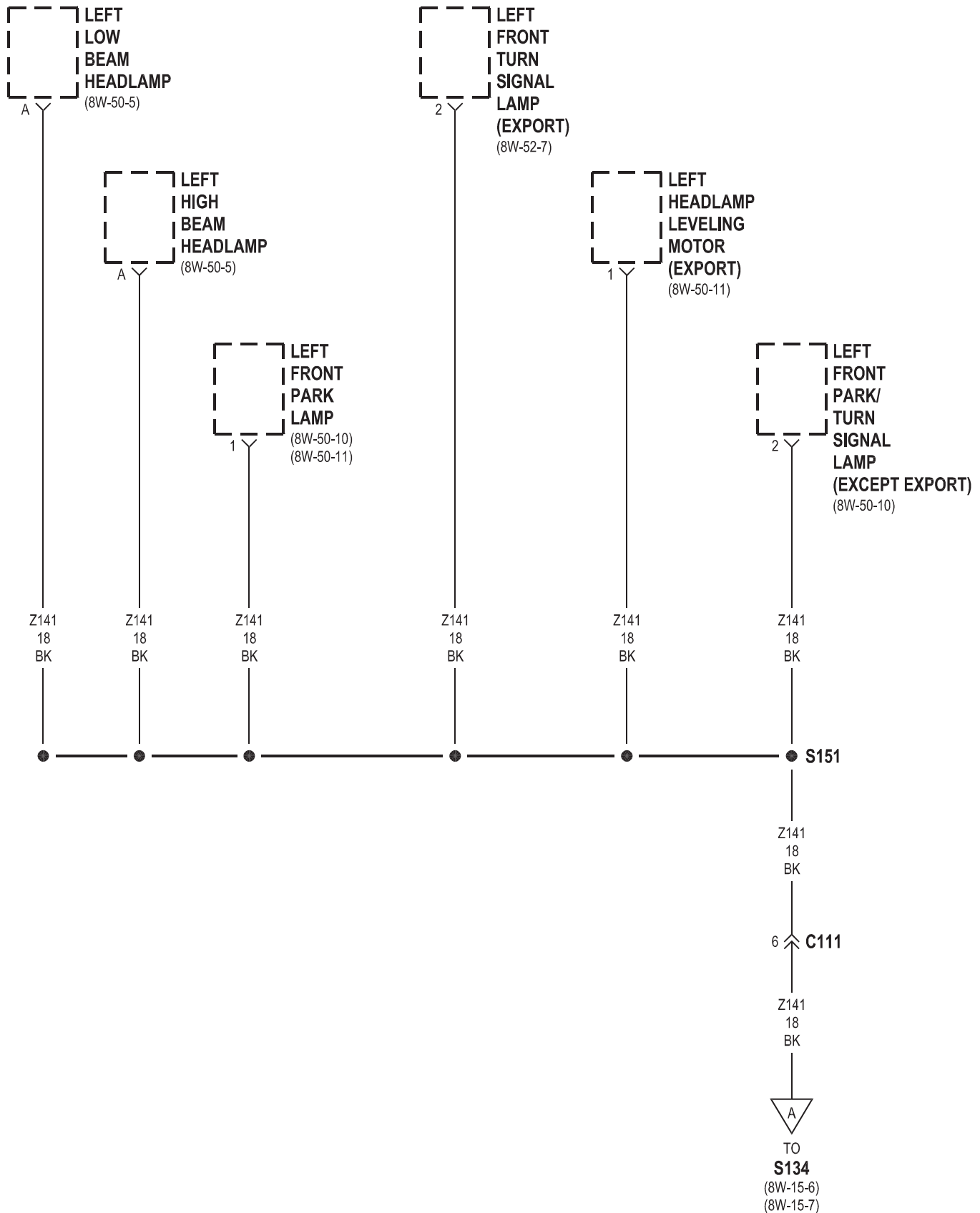
<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
A/C Compressor Clutch . . . . .	8W-15-4
Adjustable Pedals Module . . . . .	8W-15-17, 21
Airbag Control Module . . . . .	8W-15-16
Automatic Day/Night Mirror . . . . .	8W-15-19
Automatic Zone Control Module . . . . .	8W-15-15
Battery . . . . .	8W-15-2, 3
Blower Motor Controller . . . . .	8W-15-15
Body Control Module . . . . .	8W-15-12, 13, 15
Brake Lamp Switch . . . . .	8W-15-17, 22
Center High Mounted Stop Lamp . . . . .	8W-15-20
Cigar Lighter . . . . .	8W-15-14
Cigar Lighter Relay . . . . .	8W-15-12
Controller Antilock Brake . . . . .	8W-15-12
Coolant Level Sensor . . . . .	8W-15-9, 10, 11
Crankcase Heater . . . . .	8W-15-4
Data Link Connector . . . . .	8W-15-2, 3
Driver Cylinder Lock Switch . . . . .	8W-15-16
Driver Door Lock Motor/Ajar Switch . . . . .	8W-15-16
Driver Door Module . . . . .	8W-15-16
Driver Heated Seat Switch . . . . .	8W-15-14
Driver Lumbar Switch . . . . .	8W-15-18, 21
Driver Power Seat Switch . . . . .	8W-15-18, 21
Driver Rear Power Window Switch . . . . .	8W-15-18, 21
Electronic Speed Control Servo . . . . .	8W-15-9, 10
Engine Control Module . . . . .	8W-15-3
Front Power Outlet . . . . .	8W-15-14
Front Washer Pump . . . . .	8W-15-6, 7
Front Wiper Motor . . . . .	8W-15-6, 7
Fuel Pump Module . . . . .	8W-15-19
G100 . . . . .	8W-15-2, 3
G101 . . . . .	8W-15-2, 3
G102 . . . . .	8W-15-2
G103 . . . . .	8W-15-2, 3
G104 . . . . .	8W-15-4
G105 . . . . .	8W-15-4
G106 . . . . .	8W-15-6, 7
G107 . . . . .	8W-15-12
G108 . . . . .	8W-15-9, 10, 11
G200 . . . . .	8W-15-13, 14, 15
G201 . . . . .	8W-15-16
G300 . . . . .	8W-15-16, 17, 18
G301 . . . . .	8W-15-19, 21, 22
Headlamp Leveling Switch . . . . .	8W-15-15
Hood Ajar Switch . . . . .	8W-15-6, 7
Horn No. 1 . . . . .	8W-15-9, 10, 11
Horn No. 2 . . . . .	8W-15-9, 10, 11
Hydraulic Cooling Module . . . . .	8W-15-9, 10, 11
Ignition Switch . . . . .	8W-15-15
Instrument Cluster . . . . .	8W-15-13, 14
Intake Port Swirl Actuator . . . . .	8W-15-3
Intrusion Transceiver Module . . . . .	8W-15-21, 22
Junction Block . . . . .	8W-15-12, 13, 15
Left Fog Lamp . . . . .	8W-15-6, 7
Left Front Park Lamp . . . . .	8W-15-5
Left Front Park/Turn Signal Lamp . . . . .	8W-15-5
Left Front Turn Signal Lamp . . . . .	8W-15-5
Left Headlamp Leveling Motor . . . . .	8W-15-5
Left High Beam Headlamp . . . . .	8W-15-5

<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
Left Liftgate Ajar Switch . . . . .	8W-15-10
Left Low Beam Headlamp . . . . .	8W-15-5
Left Multi-Function Switch . . . . .	8W-15-15
Left Rear Door Lock Motor/Ajar Switch . . . . .	8W-15-21, 22
Left Rear Lamp Assembly . . . . .	8W-15-19
Left Side Repeater Lamp . . . . .	8W-15-6, 7
License Lamp No. 1 . . . . .	8W-15-20
License Lamp No. 2 . . . . .	8W-15-20
Liftgate Flip-Up Ajar Switch . . . . .	8W-15-20
Liftgate Flip-Up Release Solenoid . . . . .	8W-15-20
Line Pressure Sensor . . . . .	8W-15-2
Low Beam/Daytime Running Lamp Relay . . . . .	8W-15-12
Manual Temperature Control . . . . .	8W-15-13, 15
Oxygen Sensor 1/2 Downstream . . . . .	8W-15-4
Oxygen Sensor 2/2 Downstream . . . . .	8W-15-4
Park Lamp Relay . . . . .	8W-15-12
Passenger Door Lock Motor/Ajar Switch . . . . .	8W-15-16
Passenger Door Module . . . . .	8W-15-16
Passenger Heated Seat Switch . . . . .	8W-15-14
Passenger Lumbar Switch . . . . .	8W-15-17, 22
Passenger Power Seat Switch . . . . .	8W-15-17, 22
Passenger Rear Power Window Switch . . . . .	8W-15-16, 22
Power Amplifier . . . . .	8W-15-17, 18
Powertrain Control Module . . . . .	8W-15-2
Radiator Fan Motor . . . . .	8W-15-9, 10
Radio . . . . .	8W-15-17, 18
Rain Sensor . . . . .	8W-15-21, 22
Rear Power Outlet . . . . .	8W-15-17, 18
Rear Washer Pump . . . . .	8W-15-6, 7
Rear Window Defogger . . . . .	8W-15-20
Rear Wiper Motor . . . . .	8W-15-20
Remote Keyless Module . . . . .	8W-15-16
Right Fog Lamp . . . . .	8W-15-9, 10, 11
Right Front Park Lamp . . . . .	8W-15-8
Right Front Park/Turn Signal Lamp . . . . .	8W-15-8
Right Front Turn Signal Lamp . . . . .	8W-15-8
Right Headlamp Leveling Motor . . . . .	8W-15-8
Right High Beam Headlamp . . . . .	8W-15-8
Right Liftgate Ajar Switch . . . . .	8W-15-20
Right Low Beam Headlamp . . . . .	8W-15-8
Right Rear Door Lock Motor/Ajar Switch . . . . .	8W-15-16, 18
Right Rear Lamp Assembly . . . . .	8W-15-17, 18
Right Side Repeater Lamp . . . . .	8W-15-9, 10, 11
Seat Module . . . . .	8W-15-18, 21
Sentry Key Immobilizer Module . . . . .	8W-15-13
Shifter Assembly . . . . .	8W-15-14, 15
Siren . . . . .	8W-15-6, 7
Sunroof Control Module . . . . .	8W-15-19
Sunroof Motor . . . . .	8W-15-19
Sunroof Switch . . . . .	8W-15-19
Temperature Valve Actuator . . . . .	8W-15-13
Trailer Tow Connector . . . . .	8W-15-19
Transmission Control Module . . . . .	8W-15-2
Transmission Control Relay . . . . .	8W-15-9, 10
Vehicle Information Center . . . . .	8W-15-21, 22
Viscous/Cabin Heater . . . . .	8W-15-4
Washer Fluid Level Switch . . . . .	8W-15-6, 7

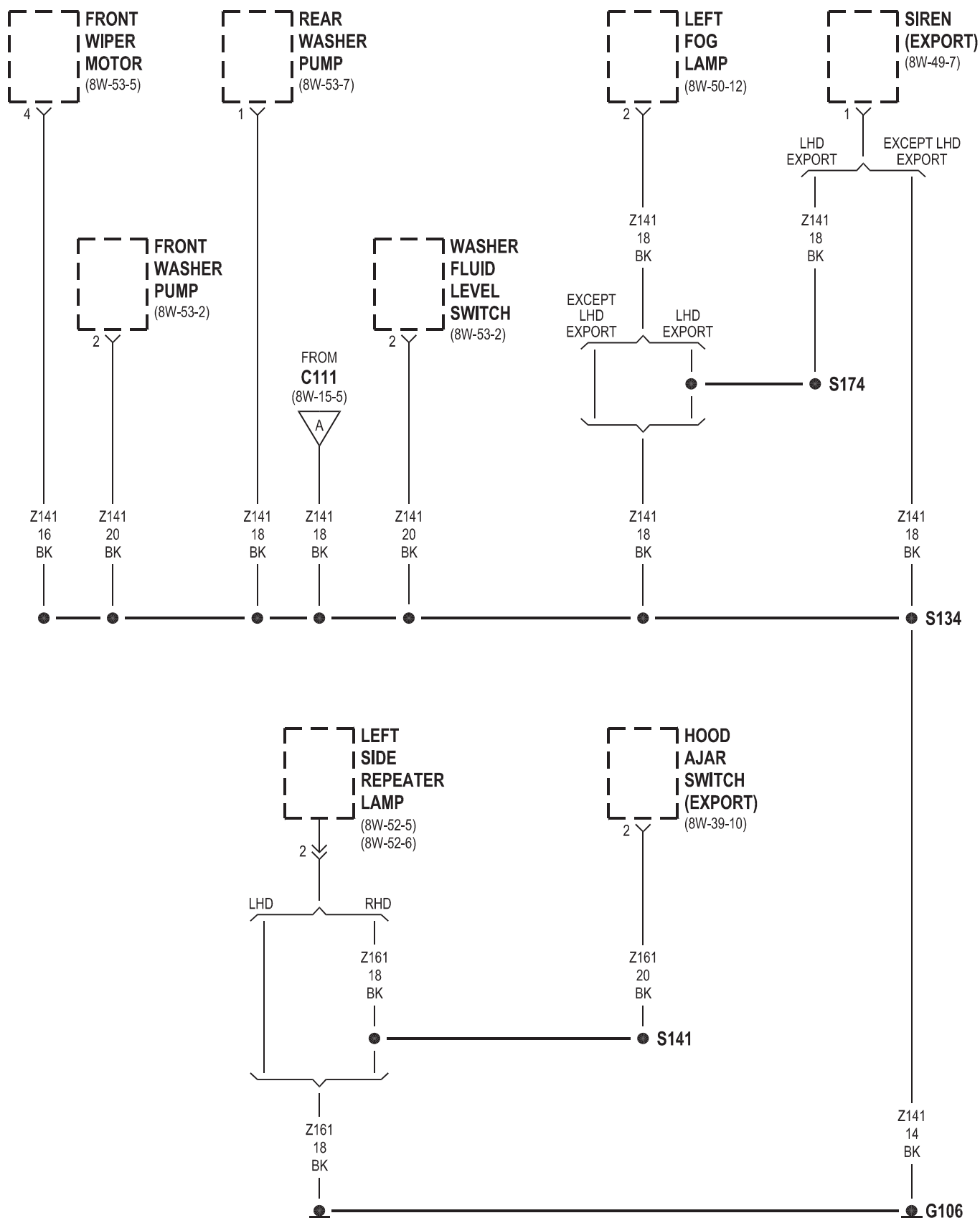




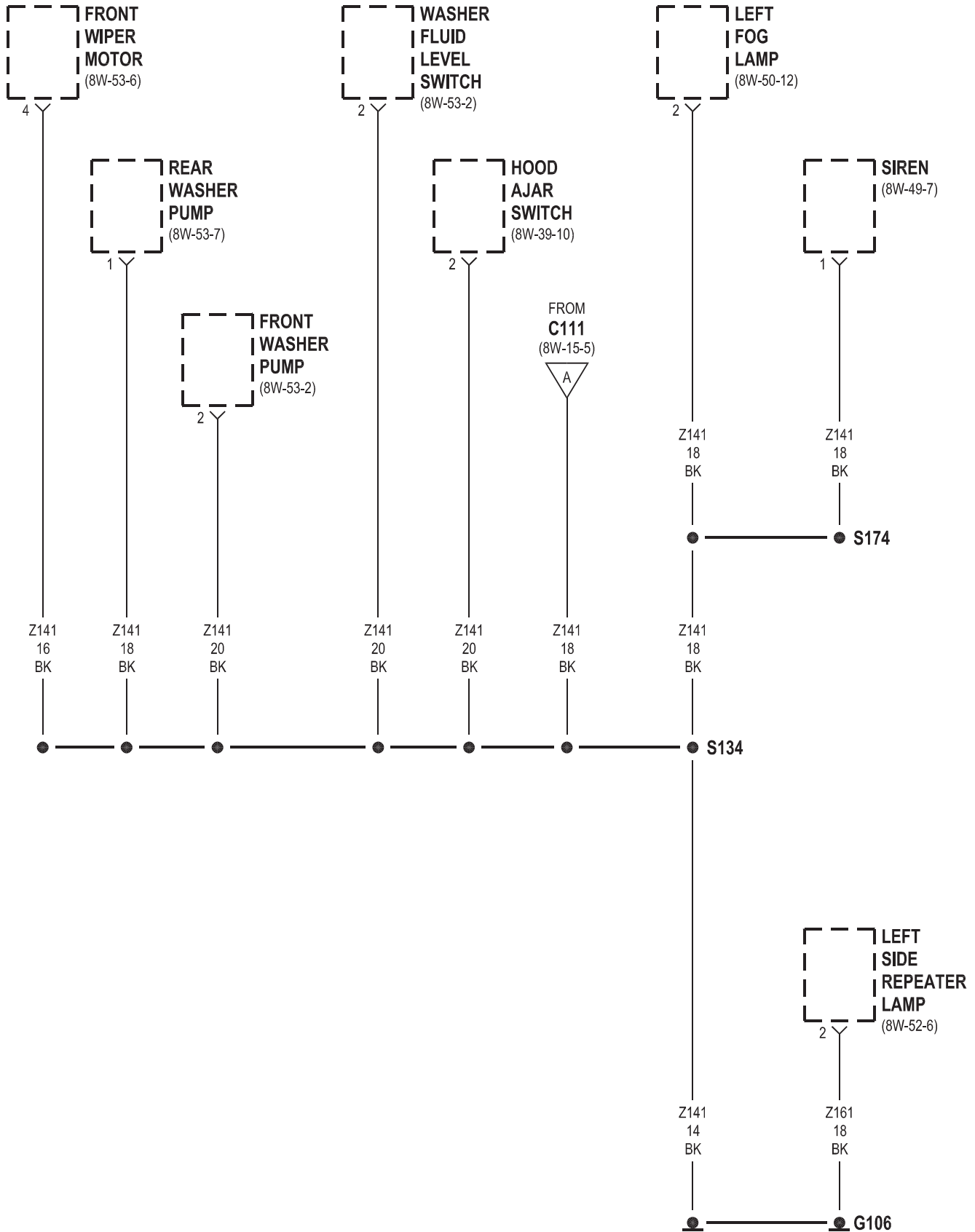


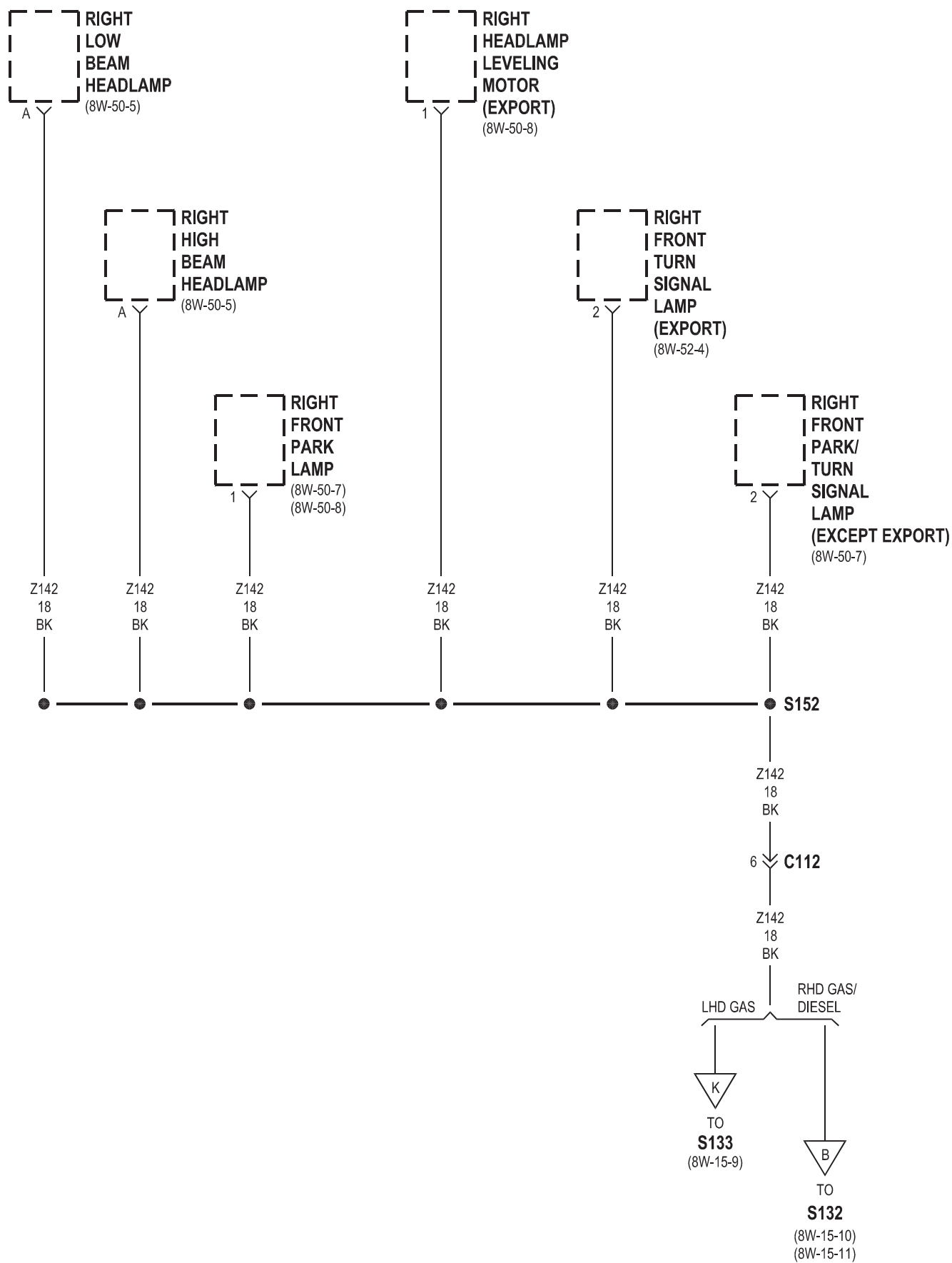


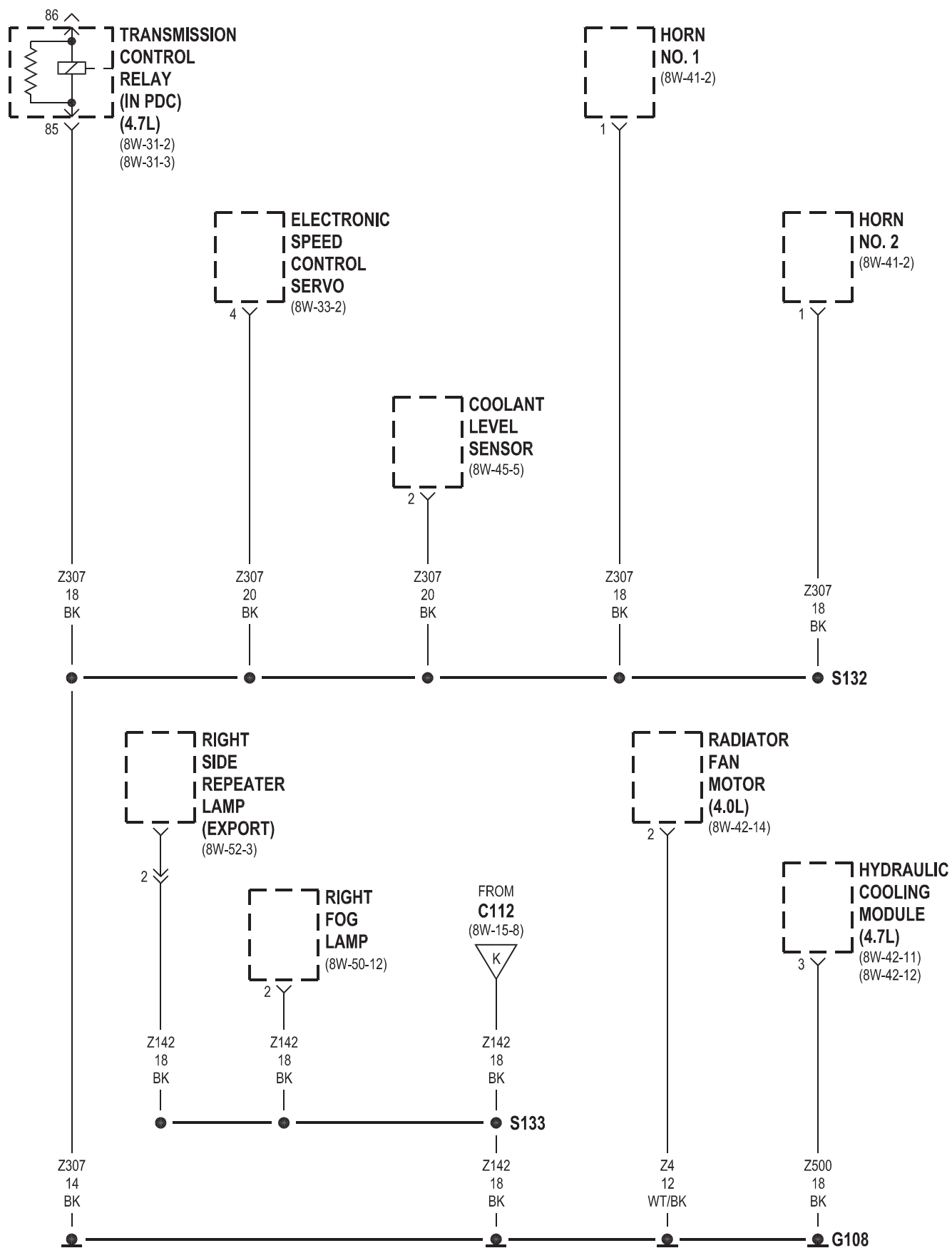


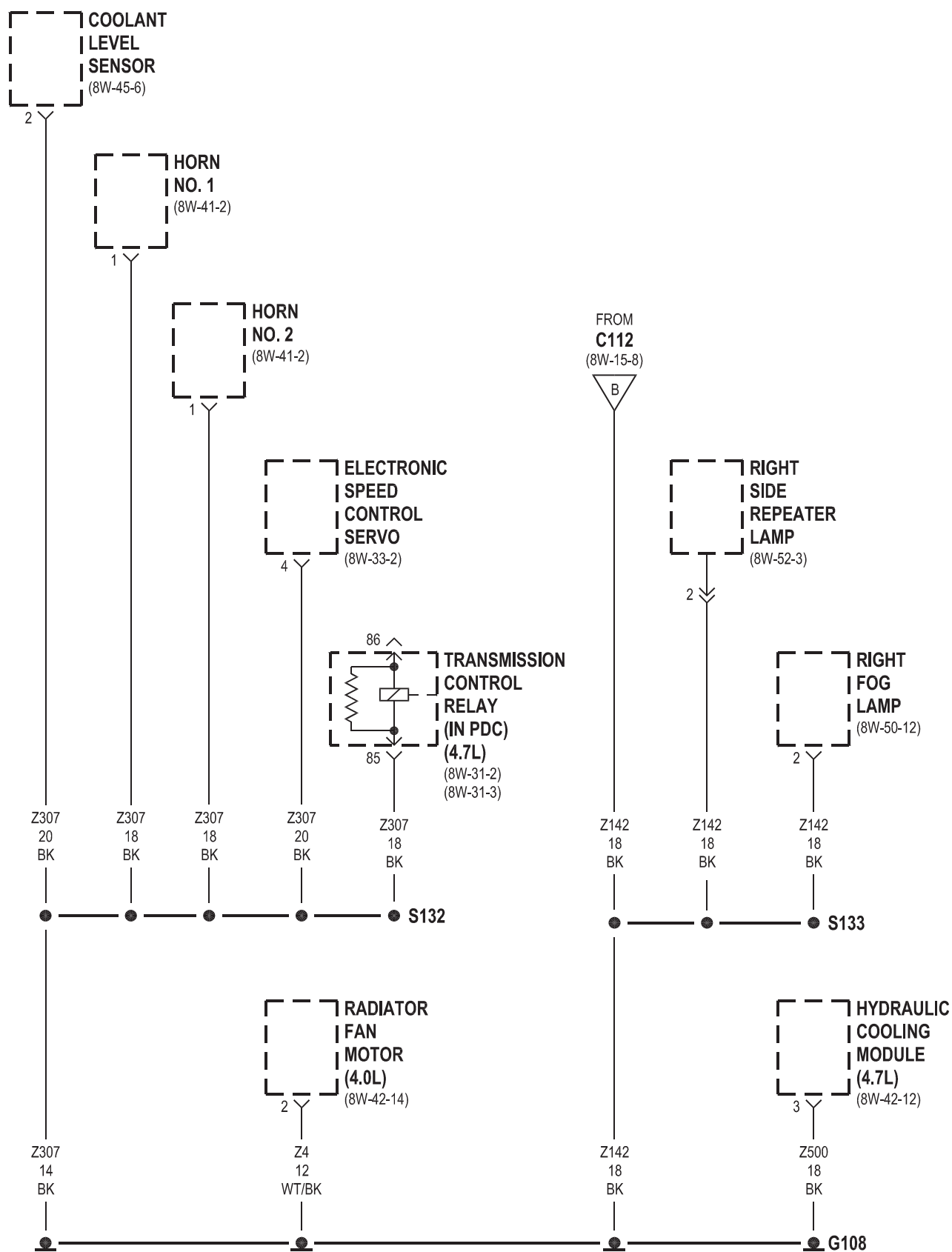


**WJ** **8W-15 GROUND DISTRIBUTION** **8W - 15 - 7**  
**DIESEL**

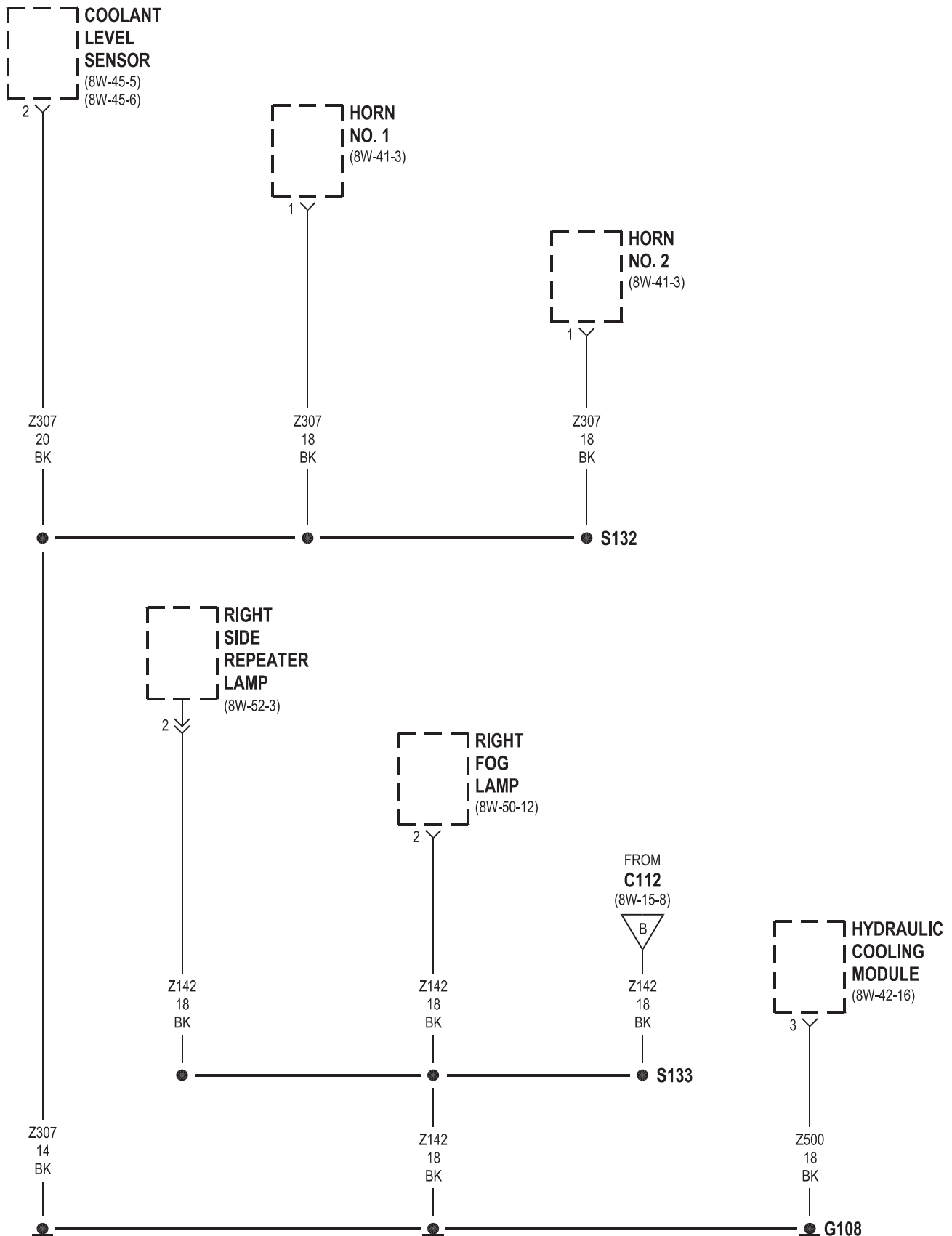


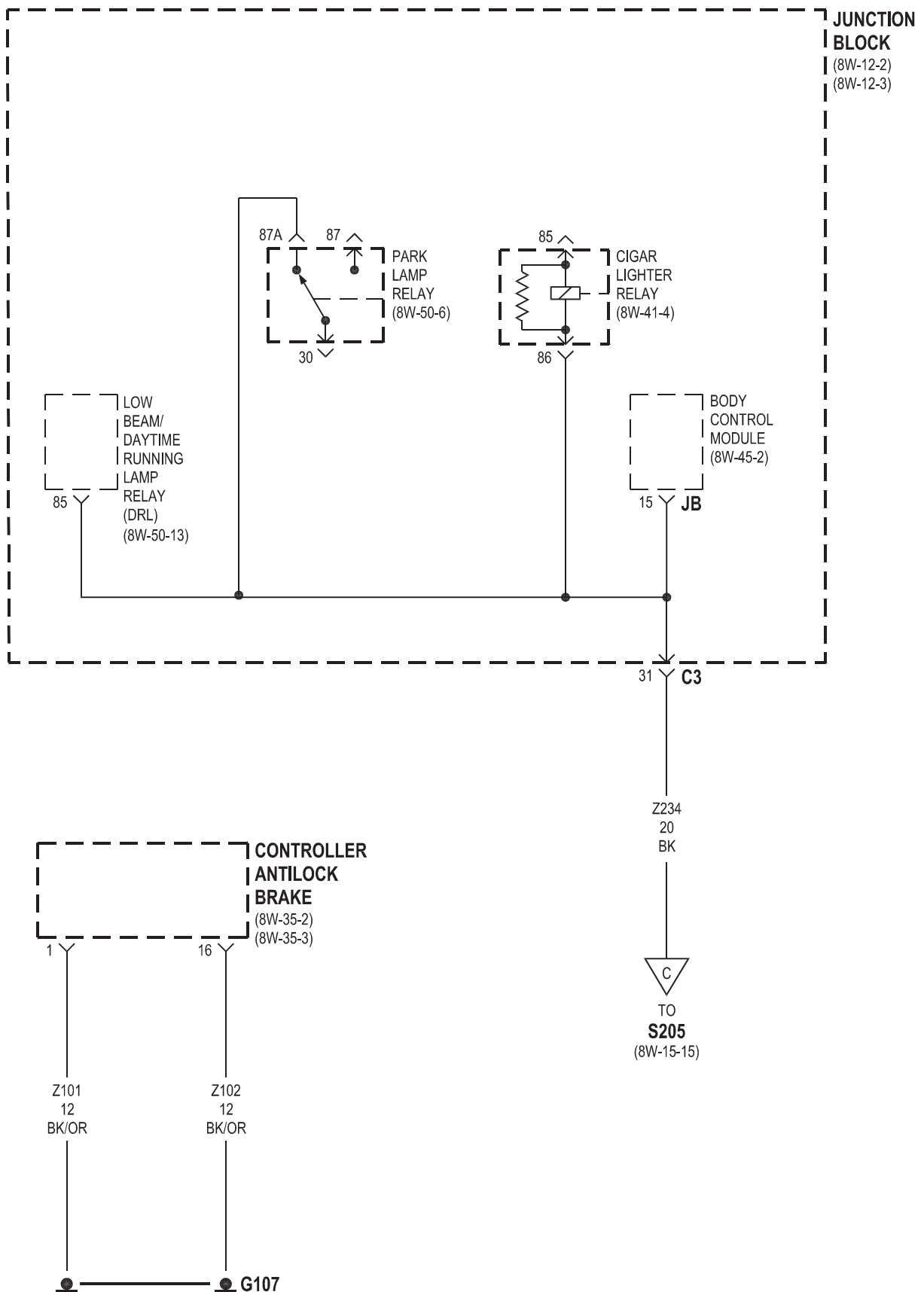


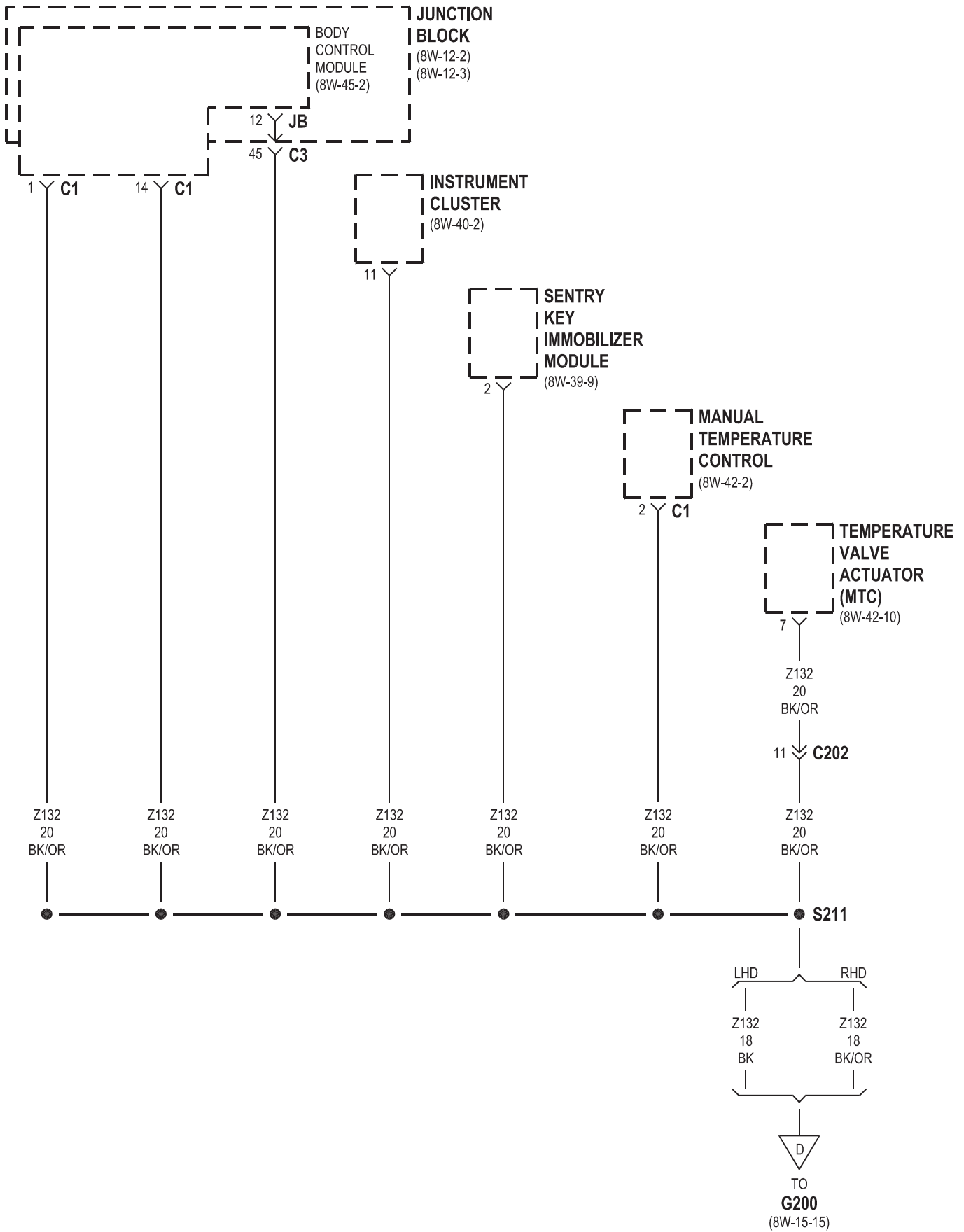


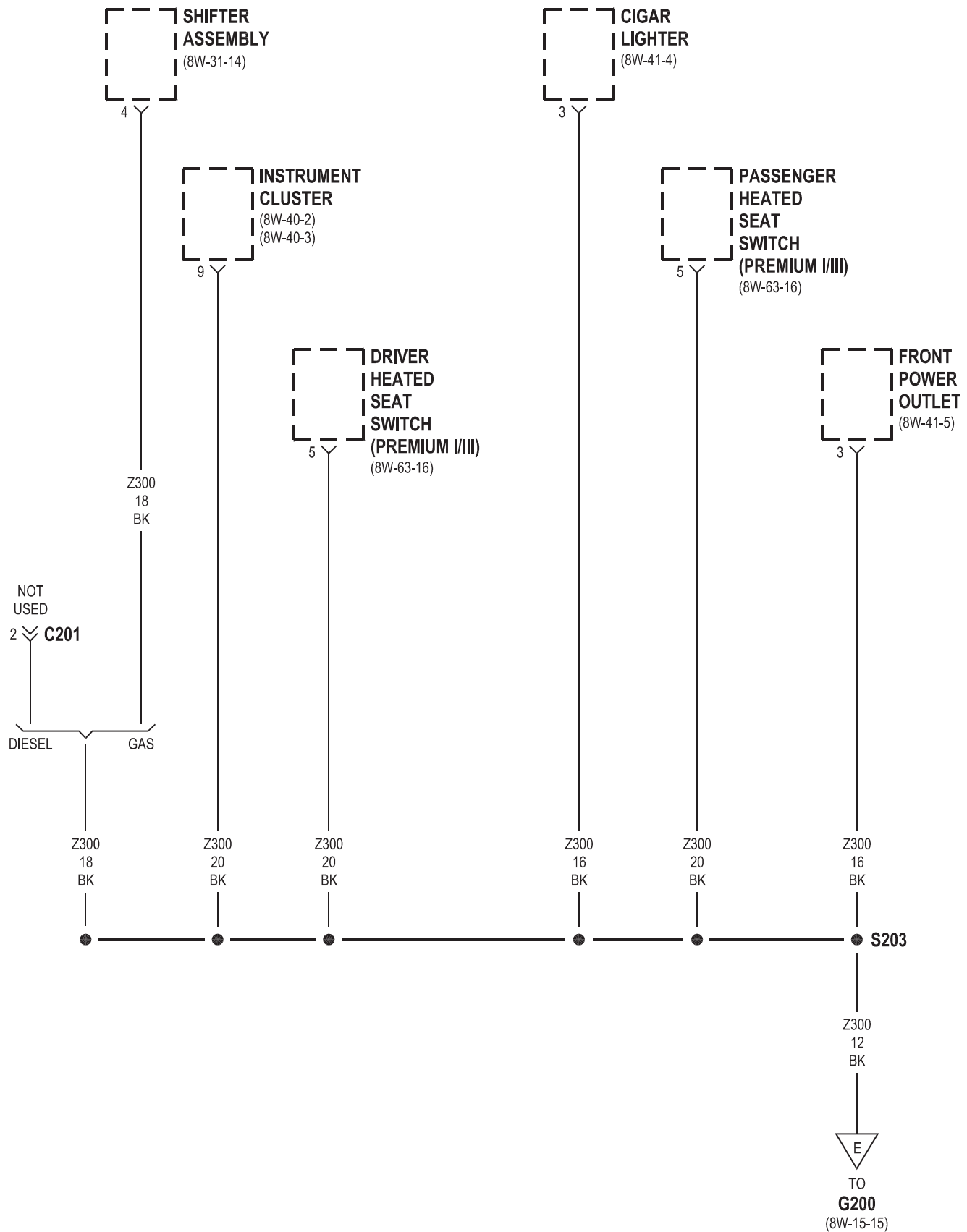


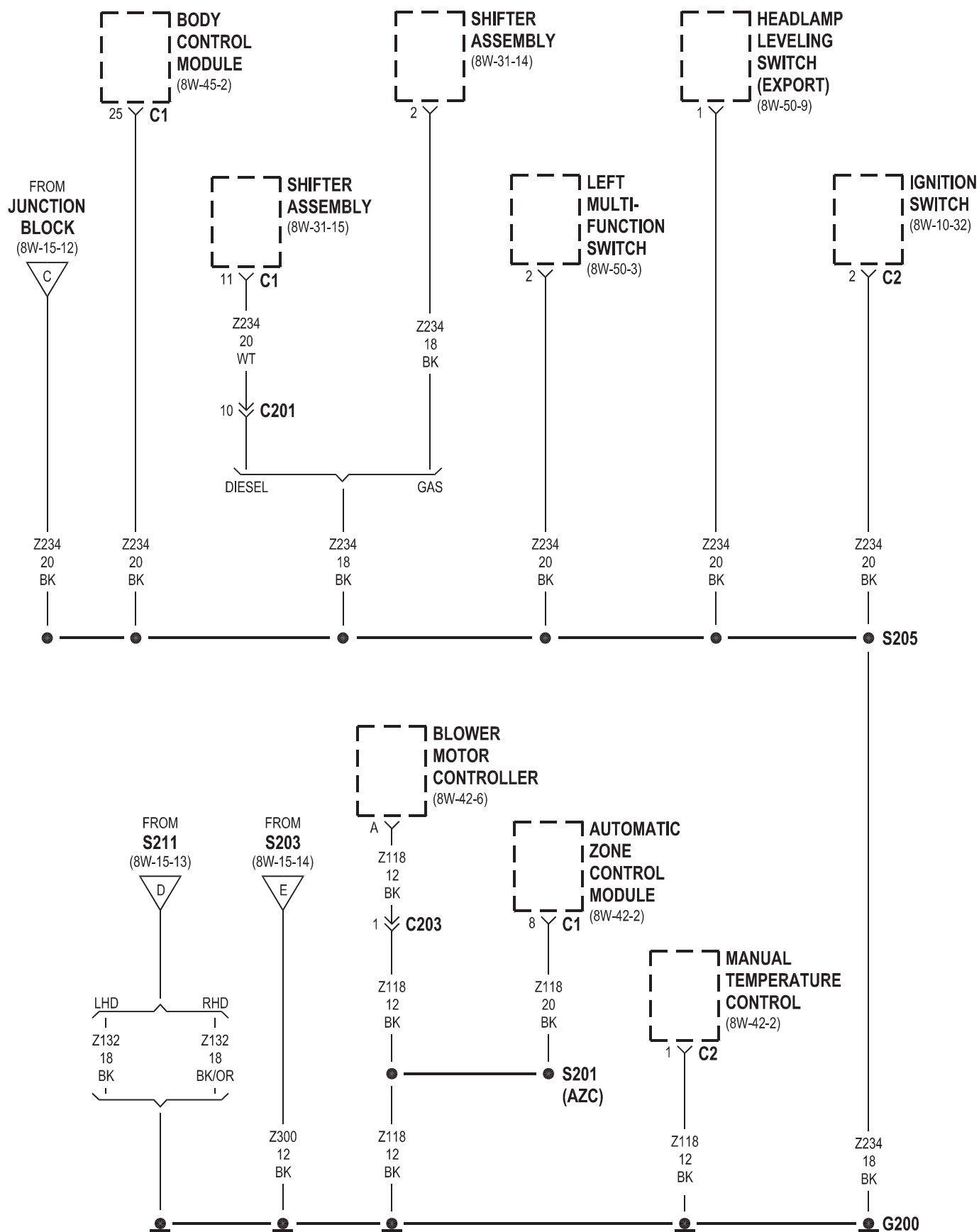




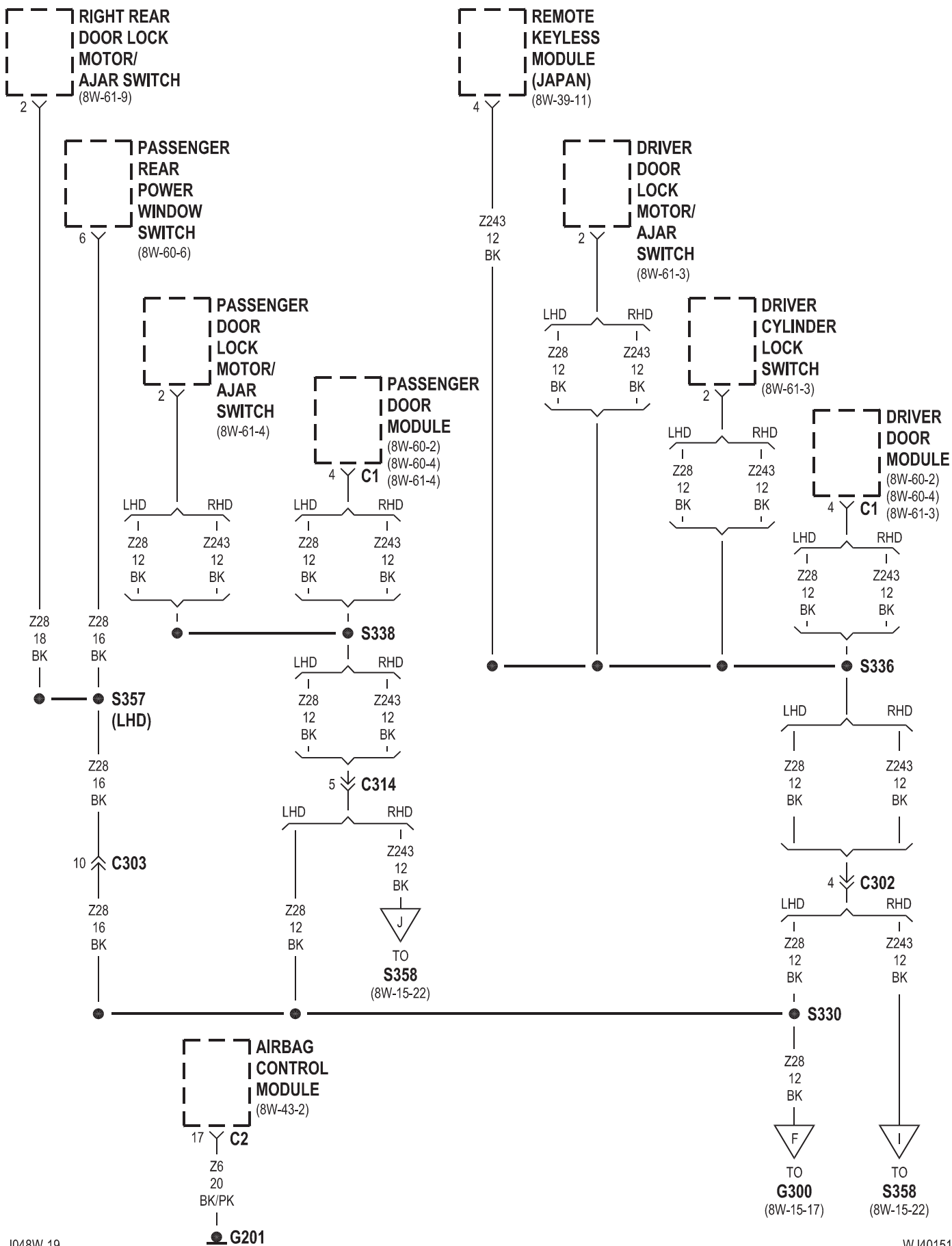


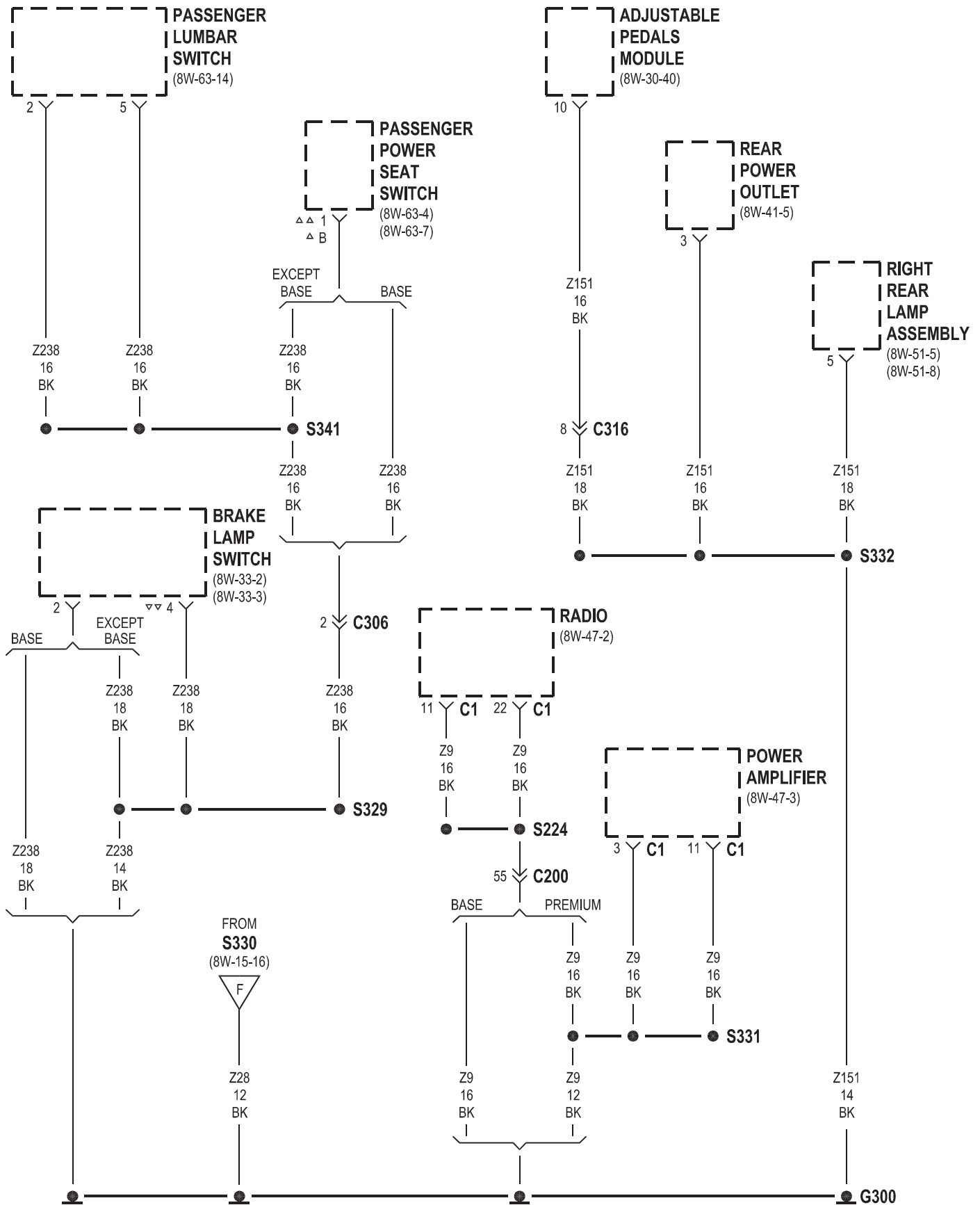


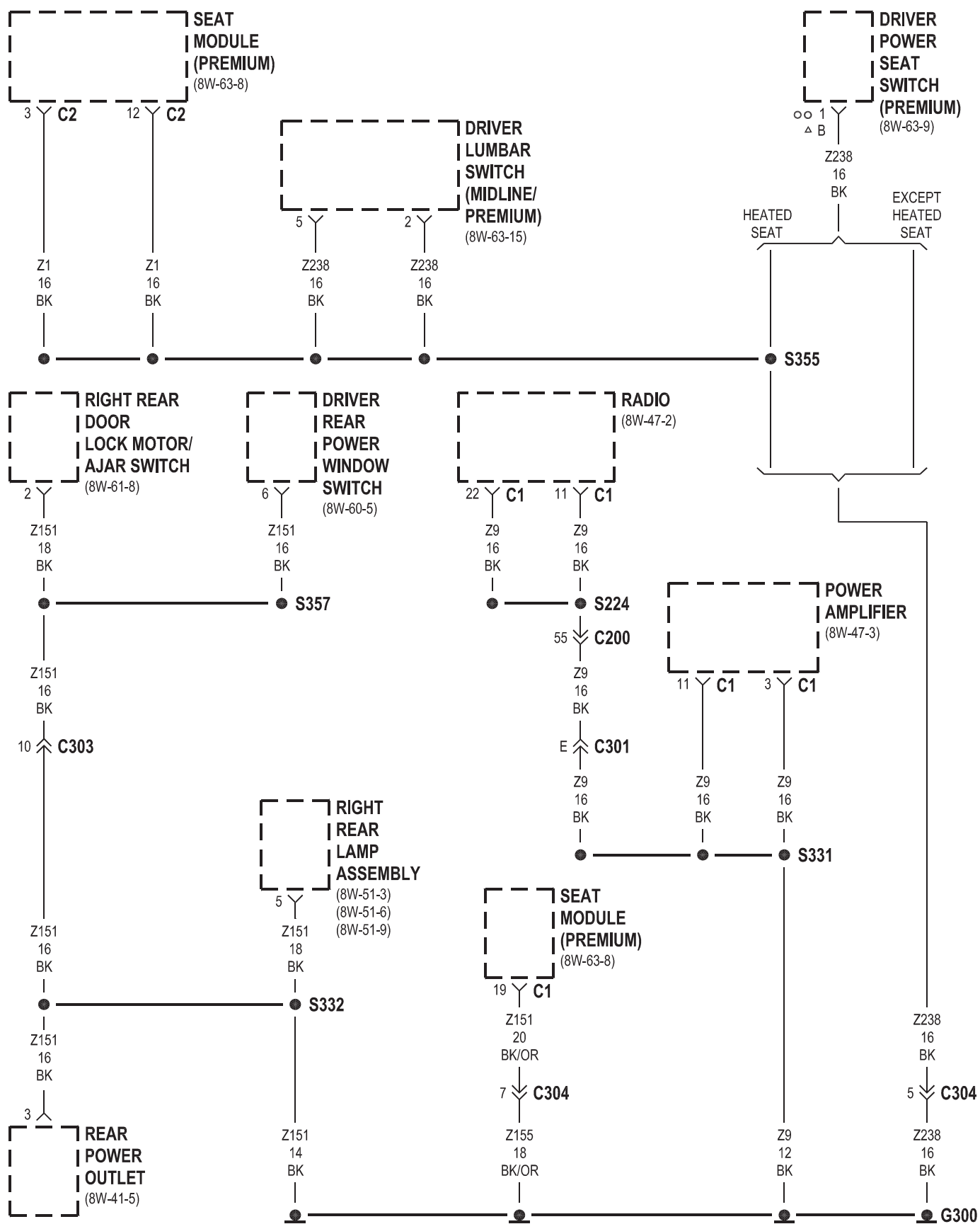






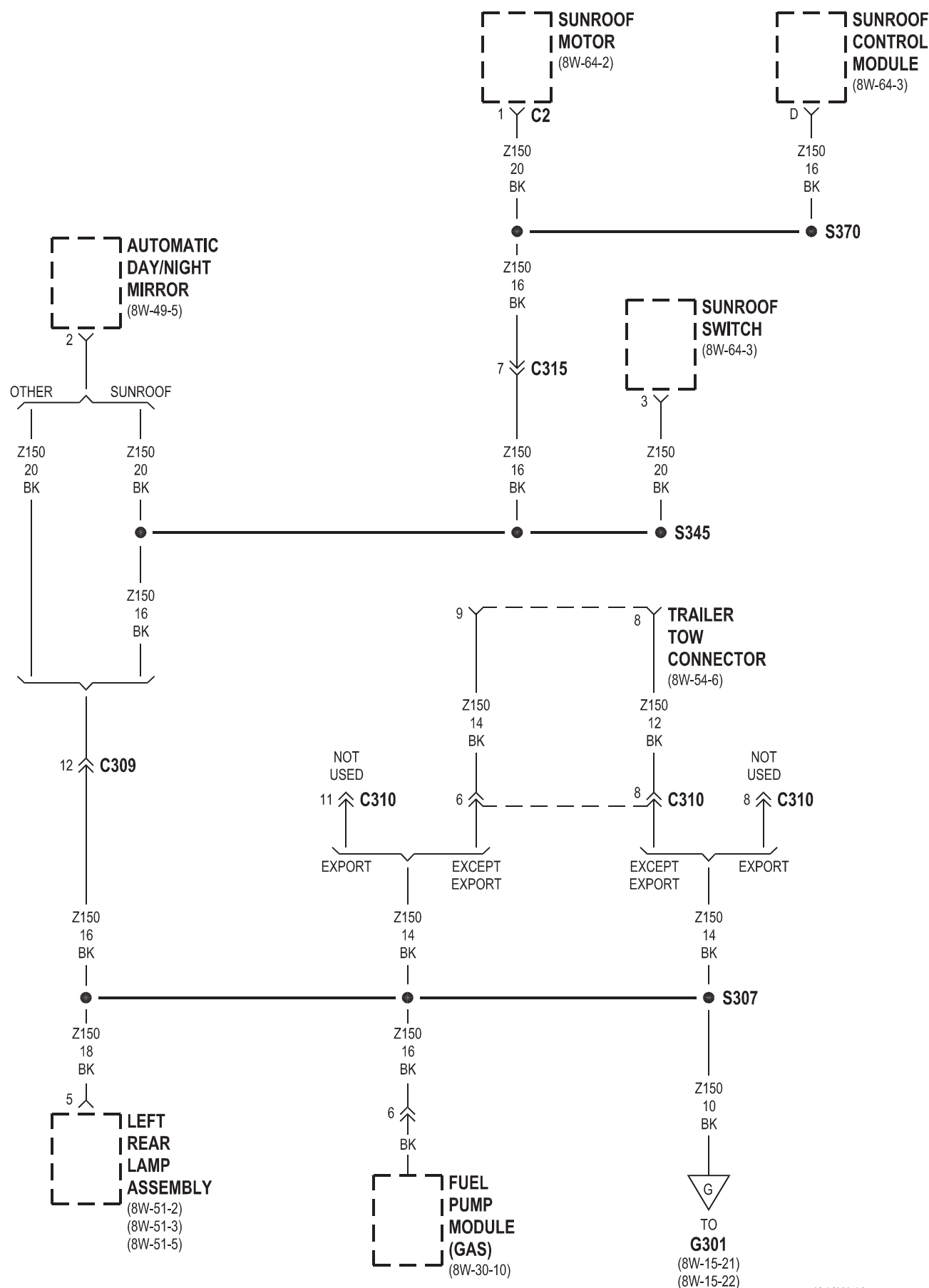


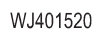




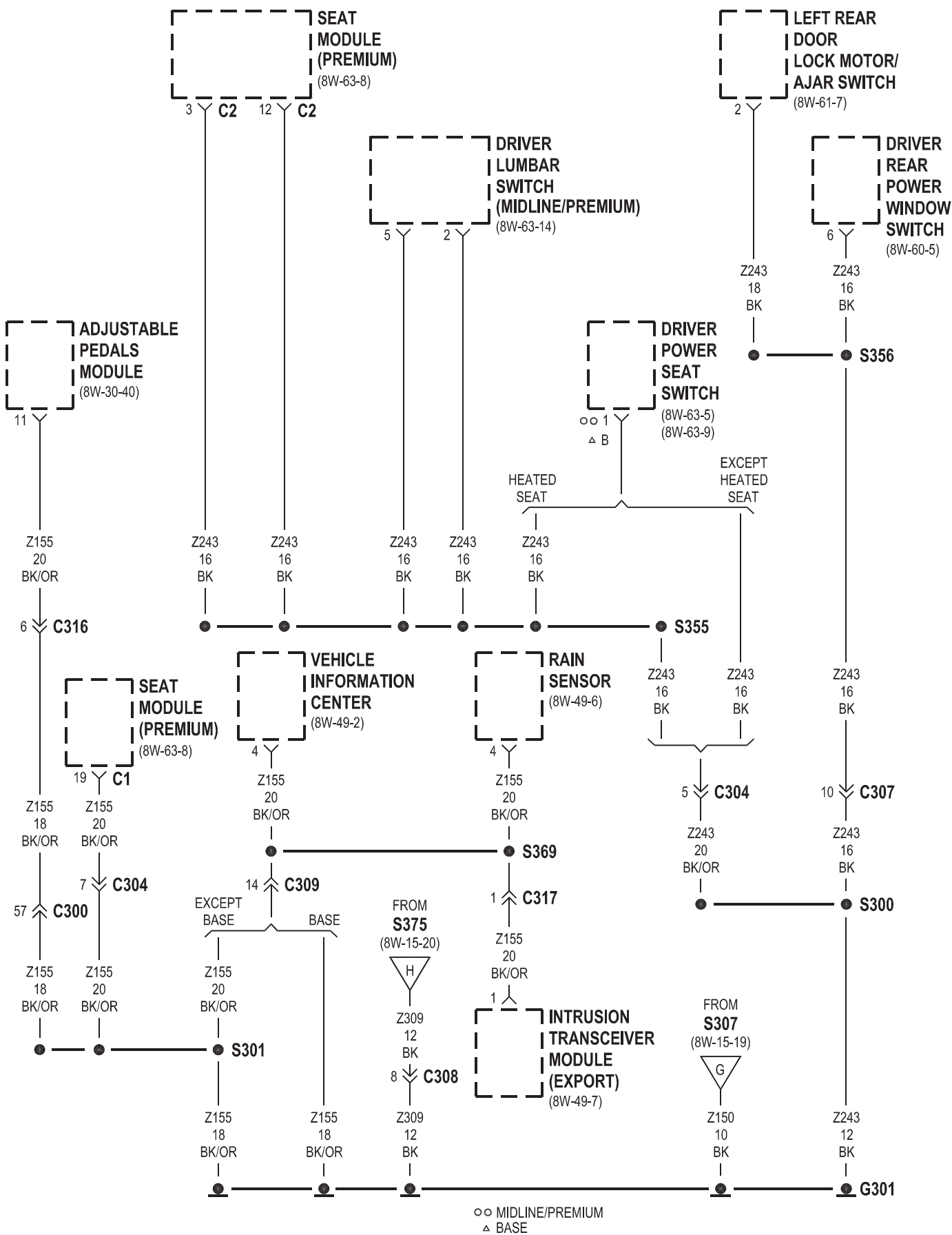
△ BASE

○○ PREMIUM

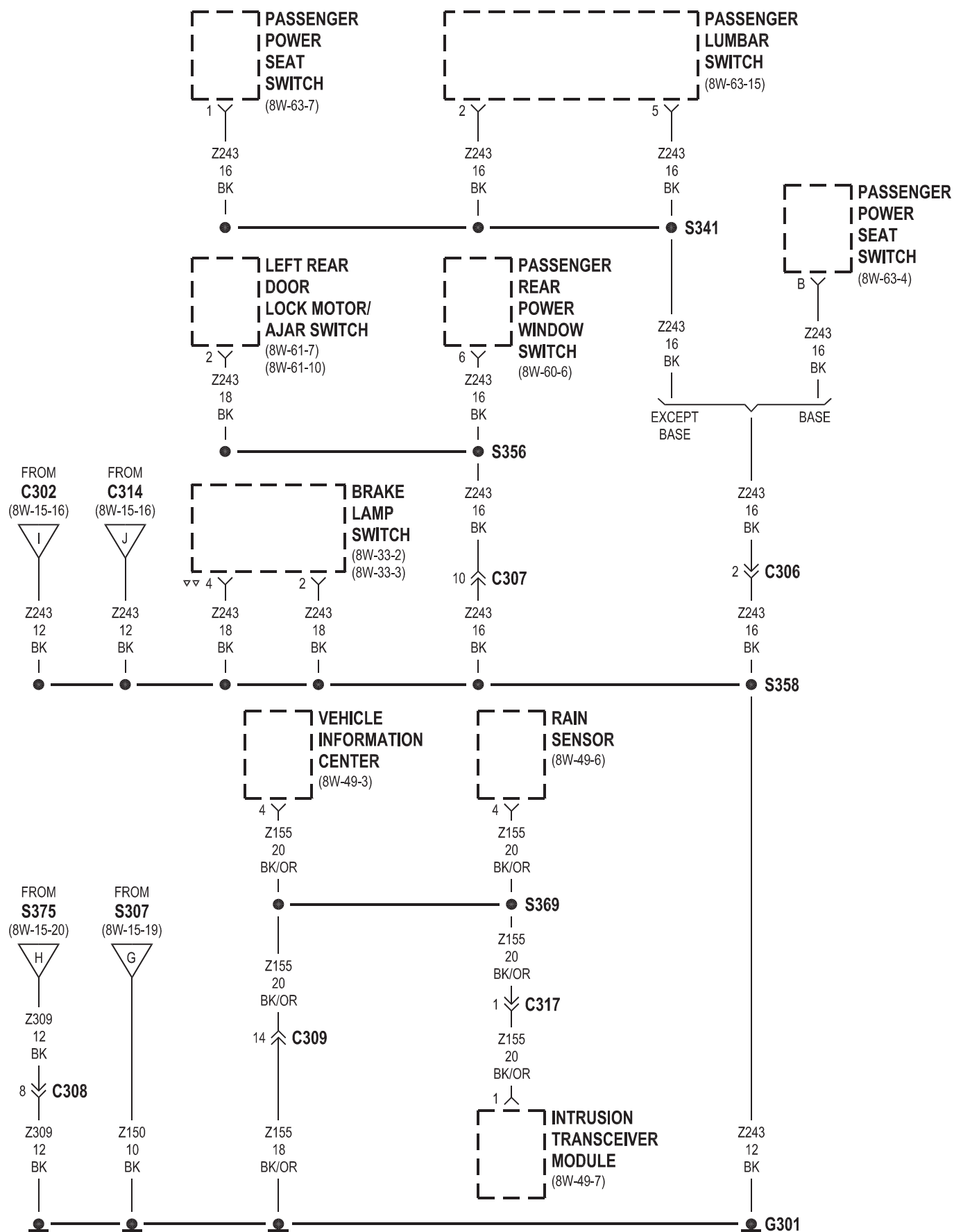






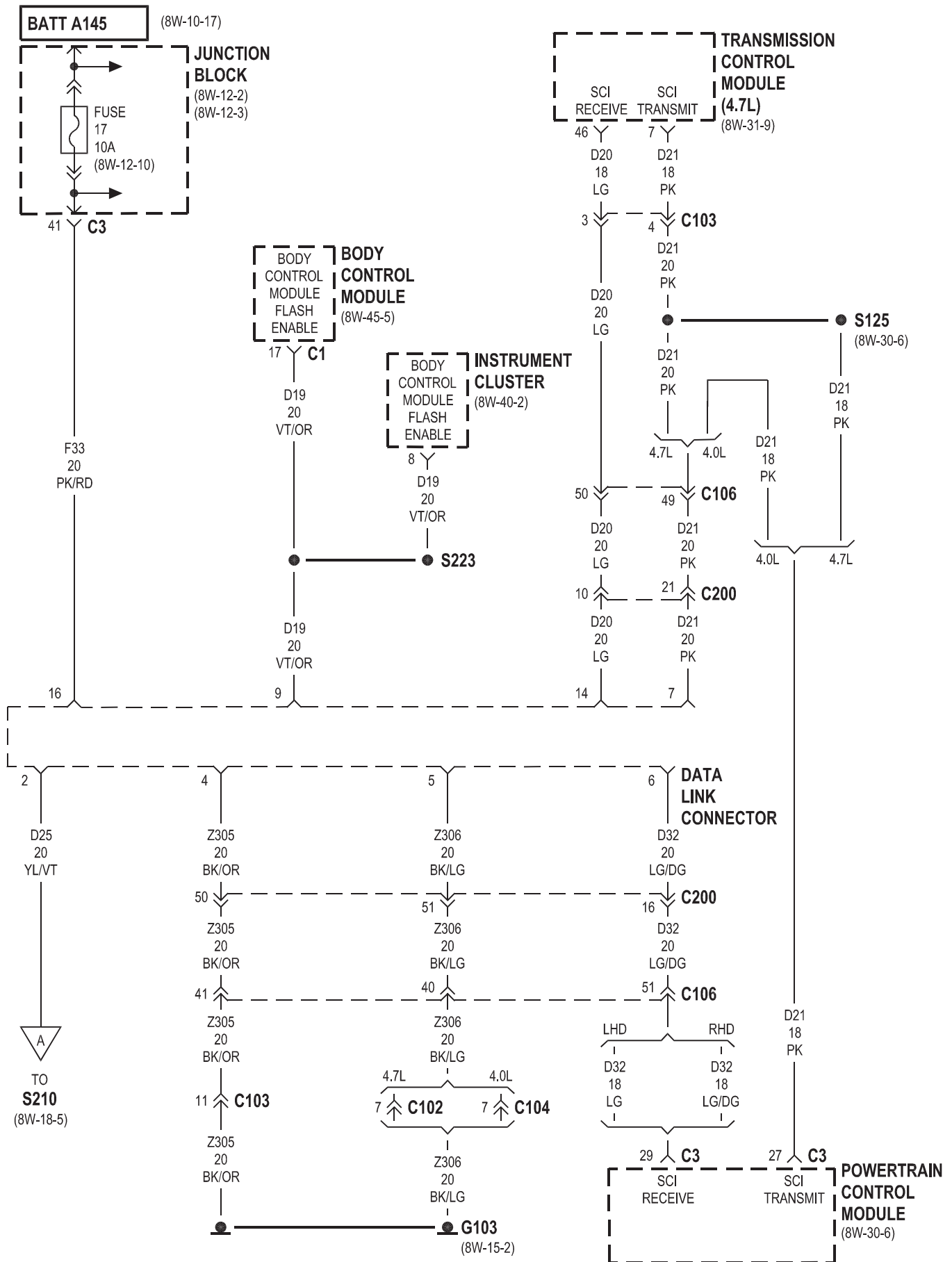


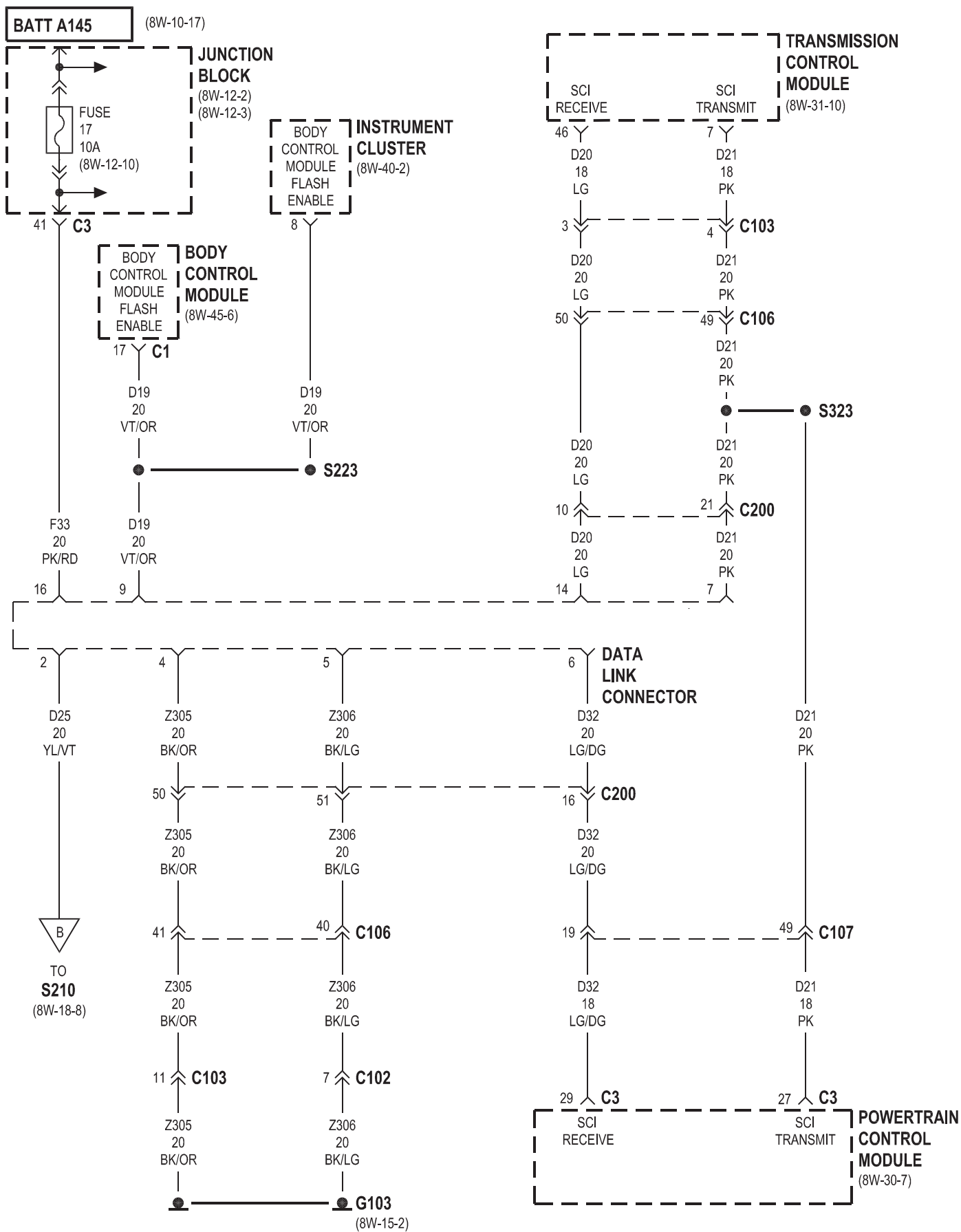
## RHD



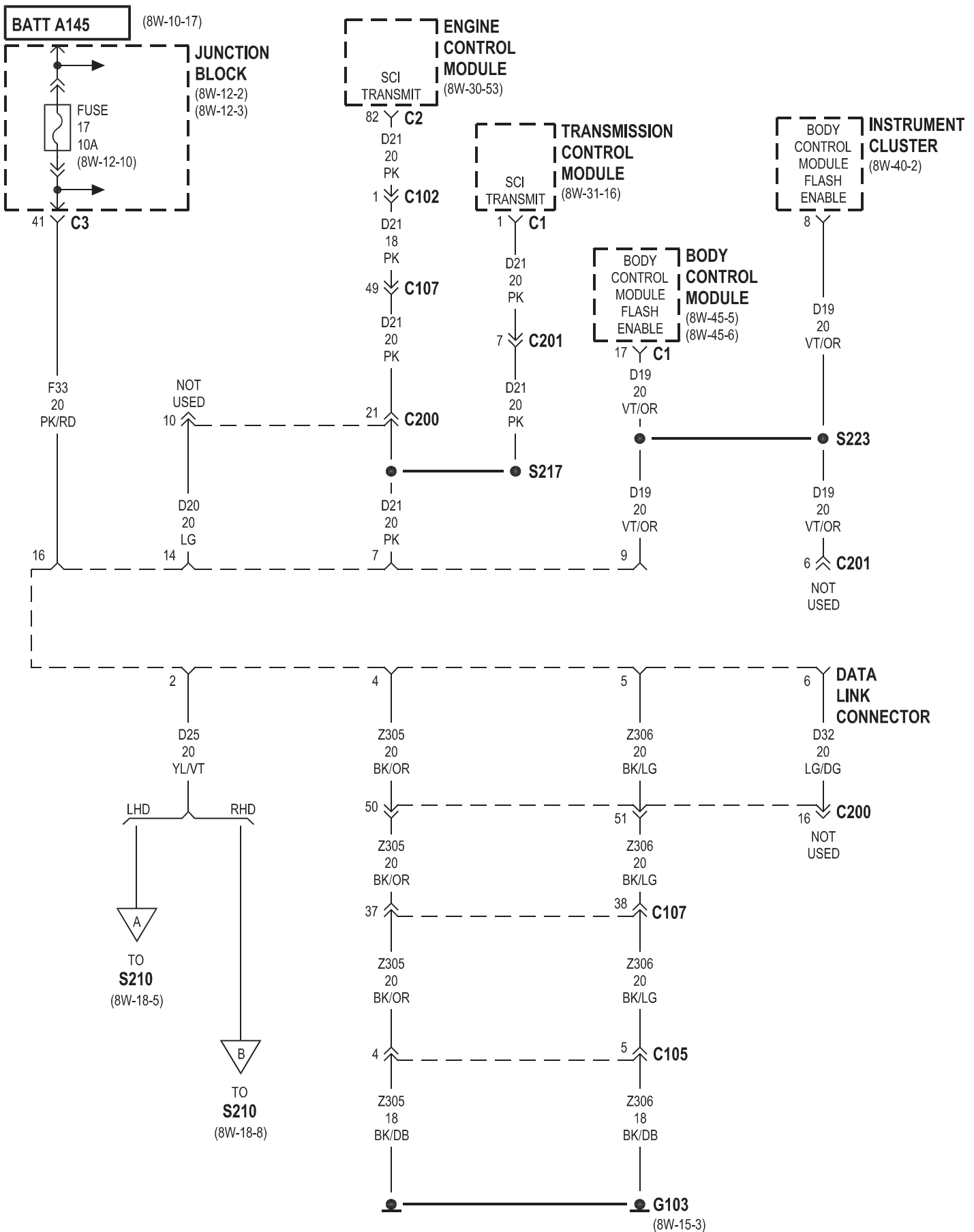
## 8W-18 BUS COMMUNICATIONS

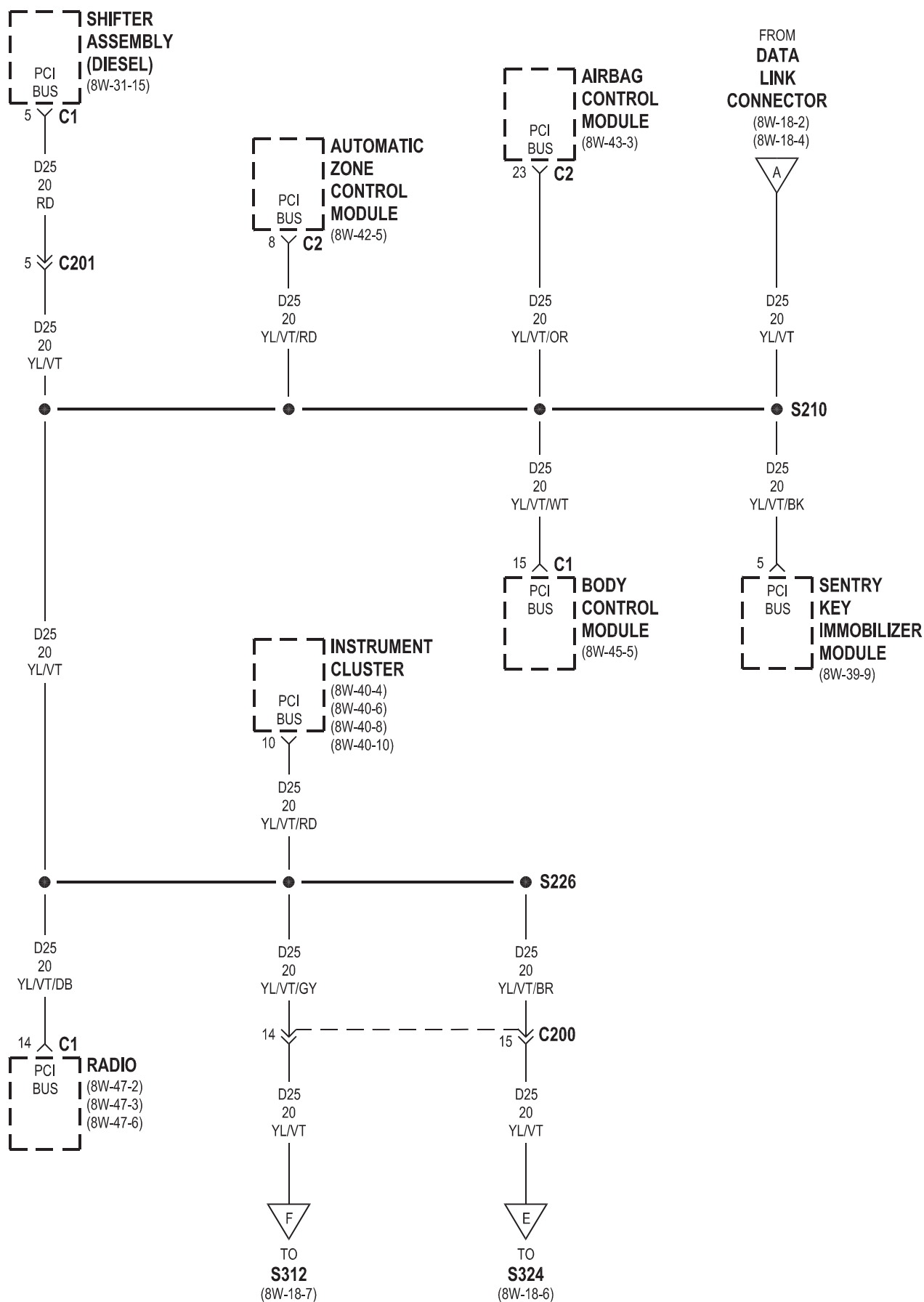
<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>	<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
Adjustable Pedals Module . . . . .	8W-18-7	Intrusion Transceiver Module . . . . .	8W-18-7, 10
Airbag Control Module . . . . .	8W-18-5, 8	Junction Block . . . . .	8W-18-2, 3, 4
Automatic Zone Control Module . . . . .	8W-18-5, 8	Passenger Door Module . . . . .	8W-18-6, 10
Body Control Module . . . . .	8W-18-2, 3, 4, 5, 8	Power Amplifier . . . . .	8W-18-6, 9
Compact Disc Changer . . . . .	8W-18-6, 9	Powertrain Control Module . . . . .	8W-18-2, 3, 6, 9
Controller Antilock Brake . . . . .	8W-18-6, 7, 9	Radio . . . . .	8W-18-5, 8
Data Link Connector . . . . .	8W-18-2, 3, 4, 5, 8	Rain Sensor . . . . .	8W-18-7, 10
Driver Door Module . . . . .	8W-18-7, 9	Seat Module . . . . .	8W-18-7, 9
Engine Control Module . . . . .	8W-18-4, 6, 9	Sentry Key Immobilizer Module . . . . .	8W-18-5, 8
Fuse 17 . . . . .	8W-18-2, 3, 4	Shifter Assembly . . . . .	8W-18-5, 8
G103 . . . . .	8W-18-2, 3, 4	Transmission Control Module . . . . .	8W-18-2, 3, 4, 6, 10
Instrument Cluster . . . . .	8W-18-2, 3, 4, 5, 8	Vehicle Information Center . . . . .	8W-18-7, 10

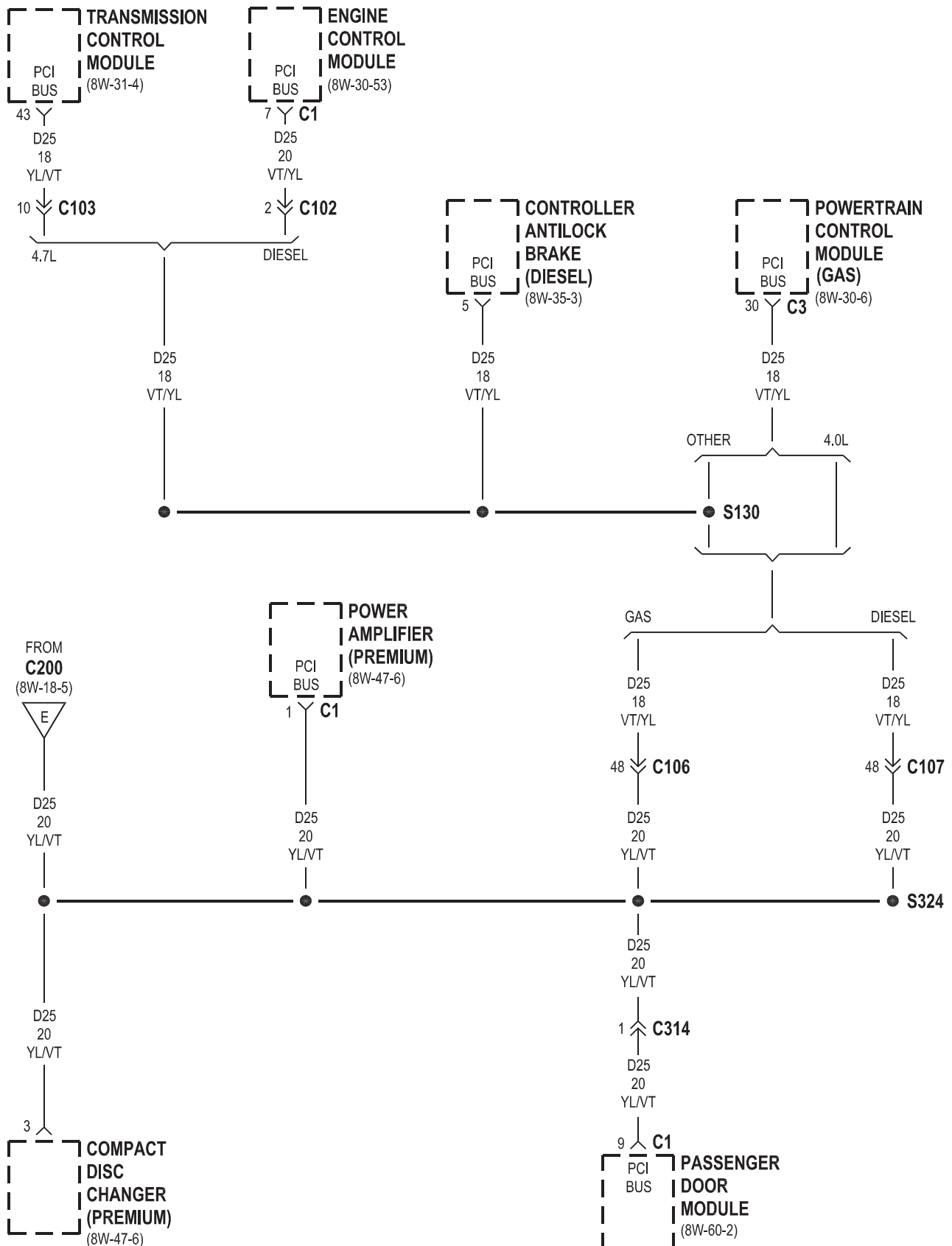


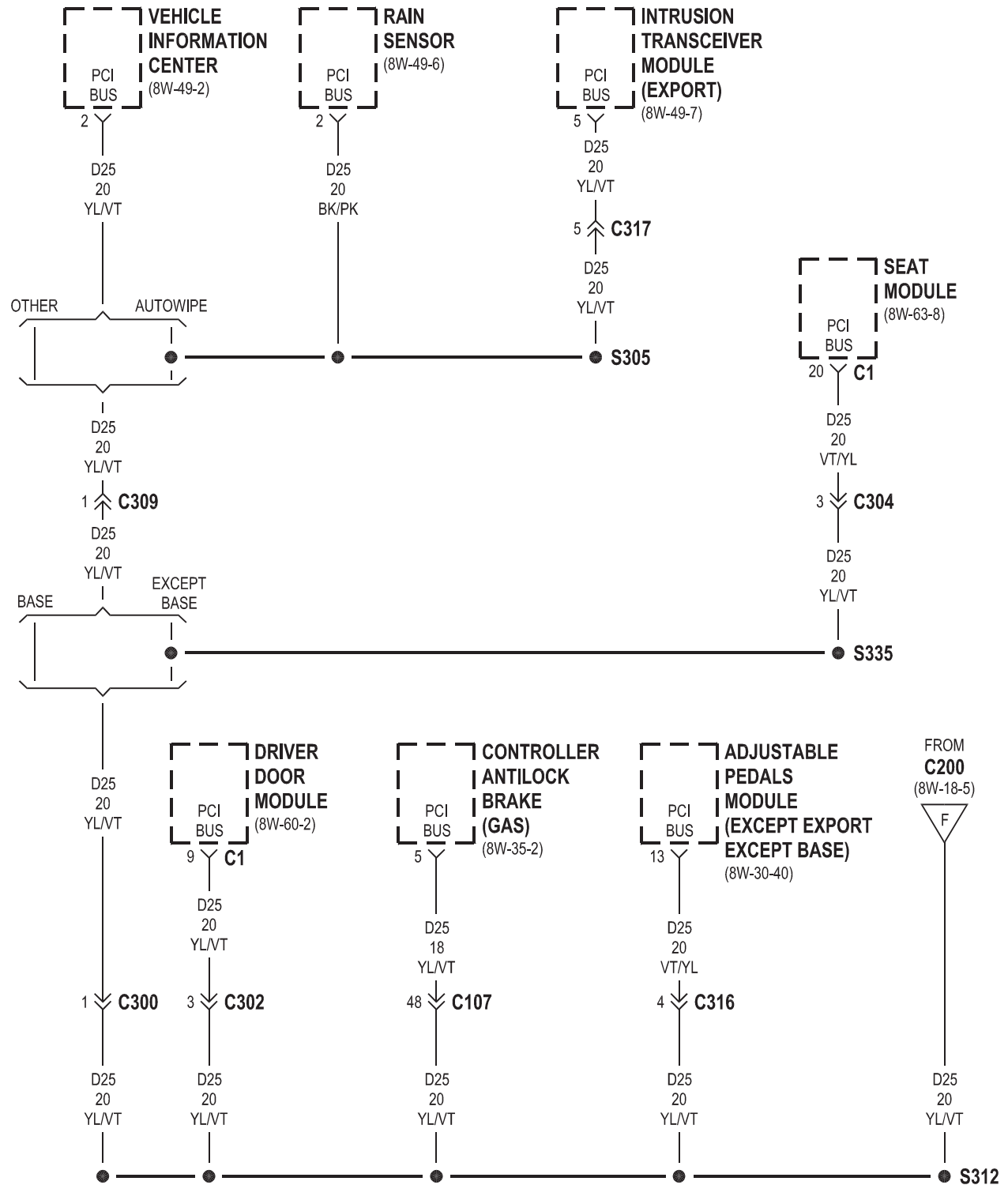


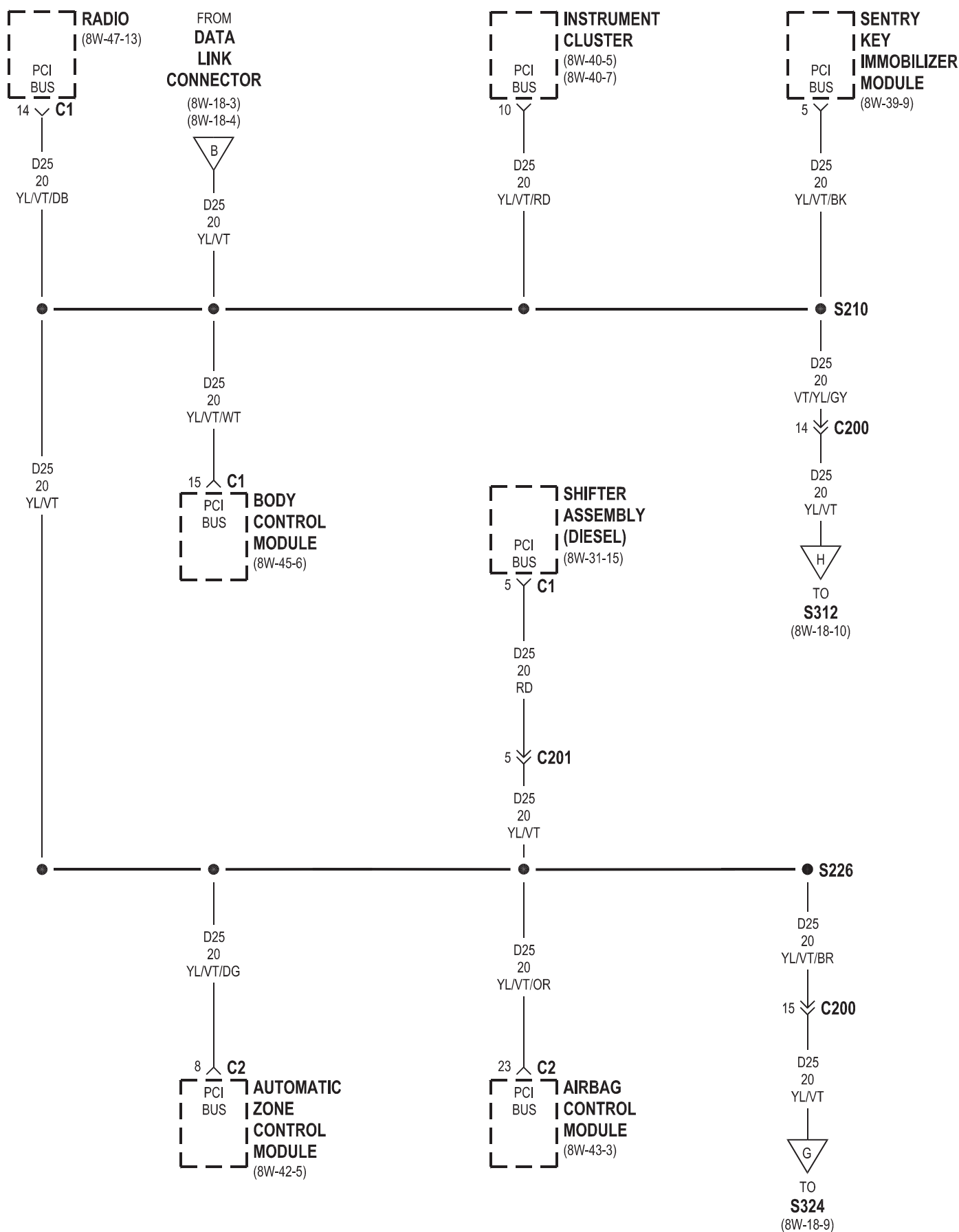




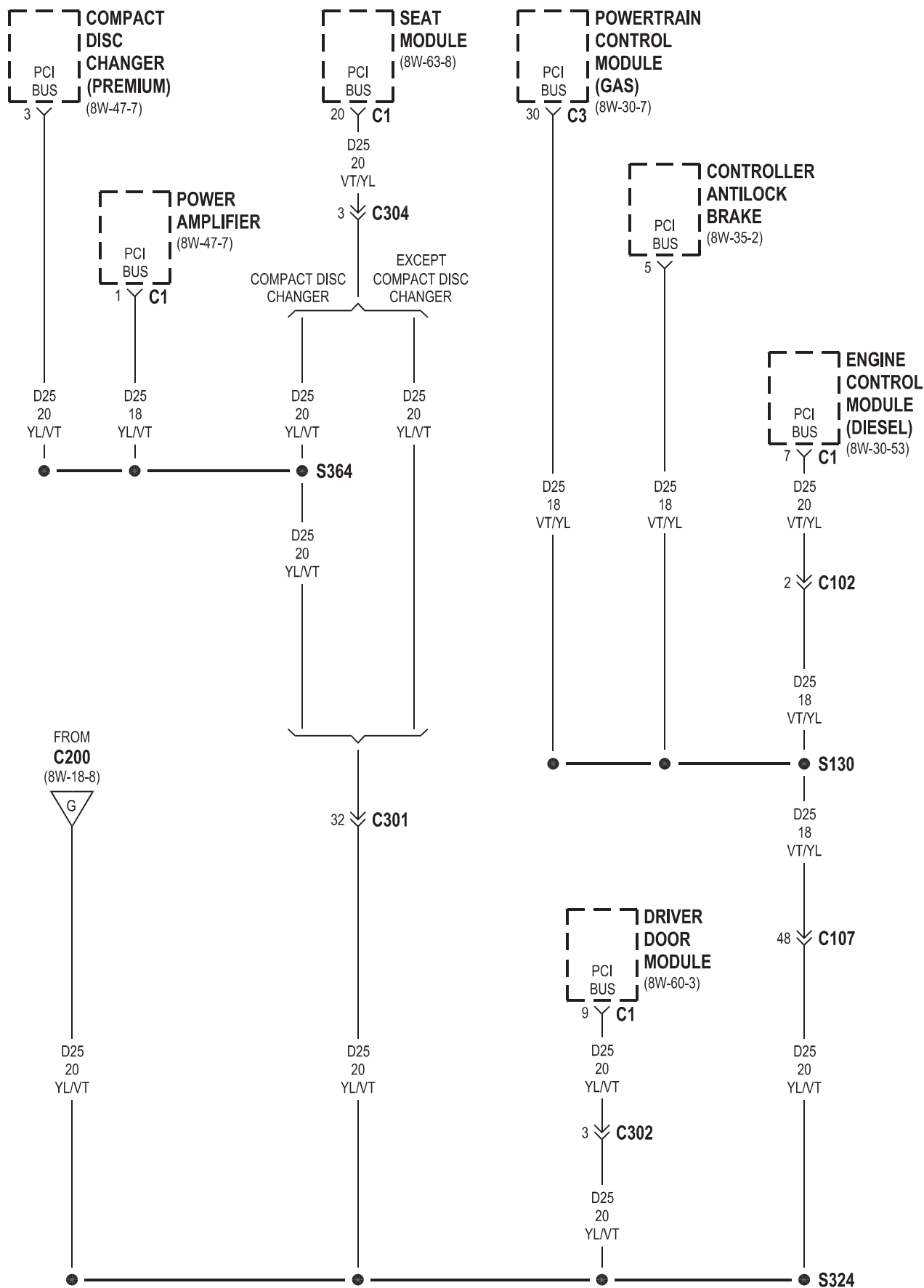


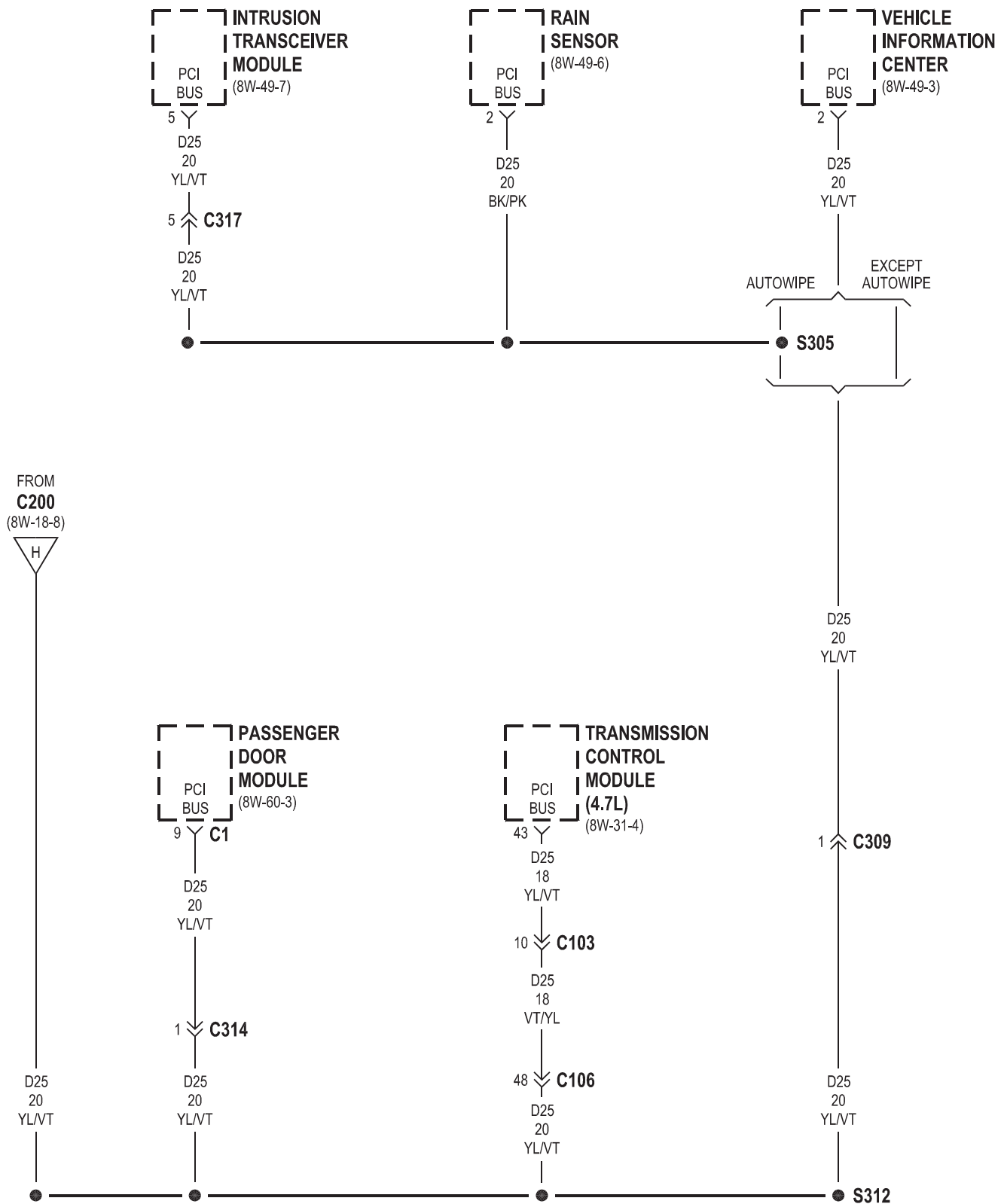






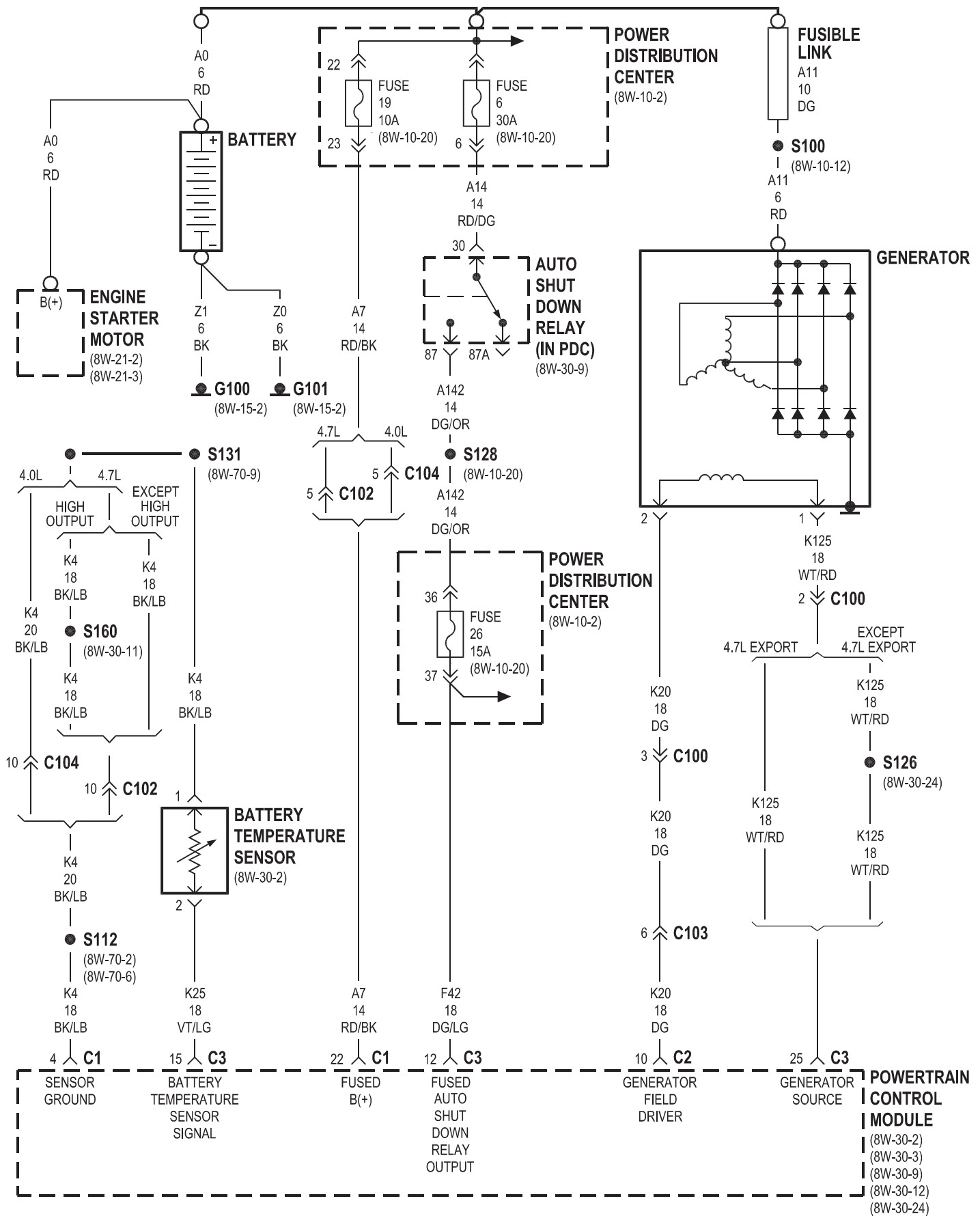


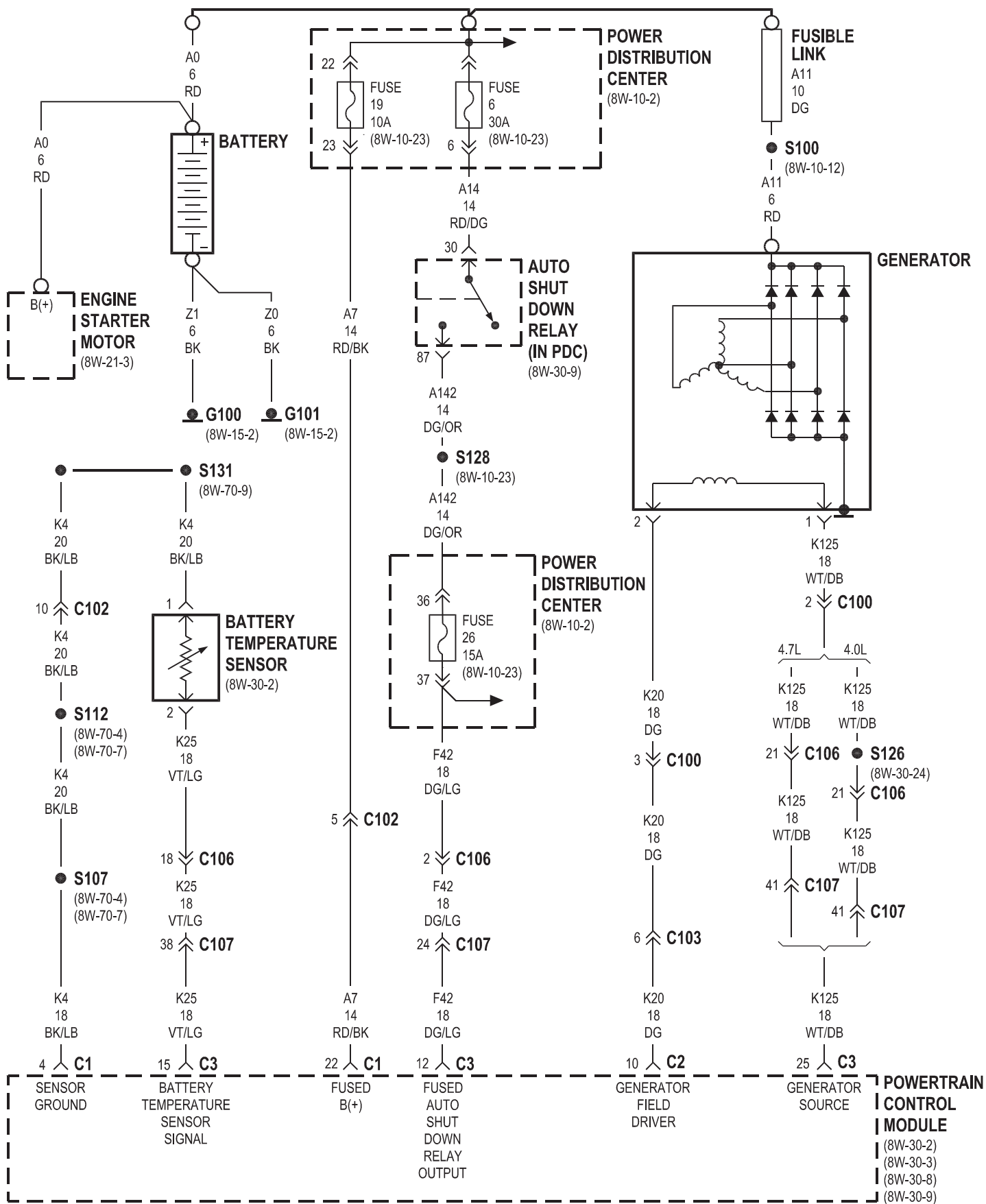




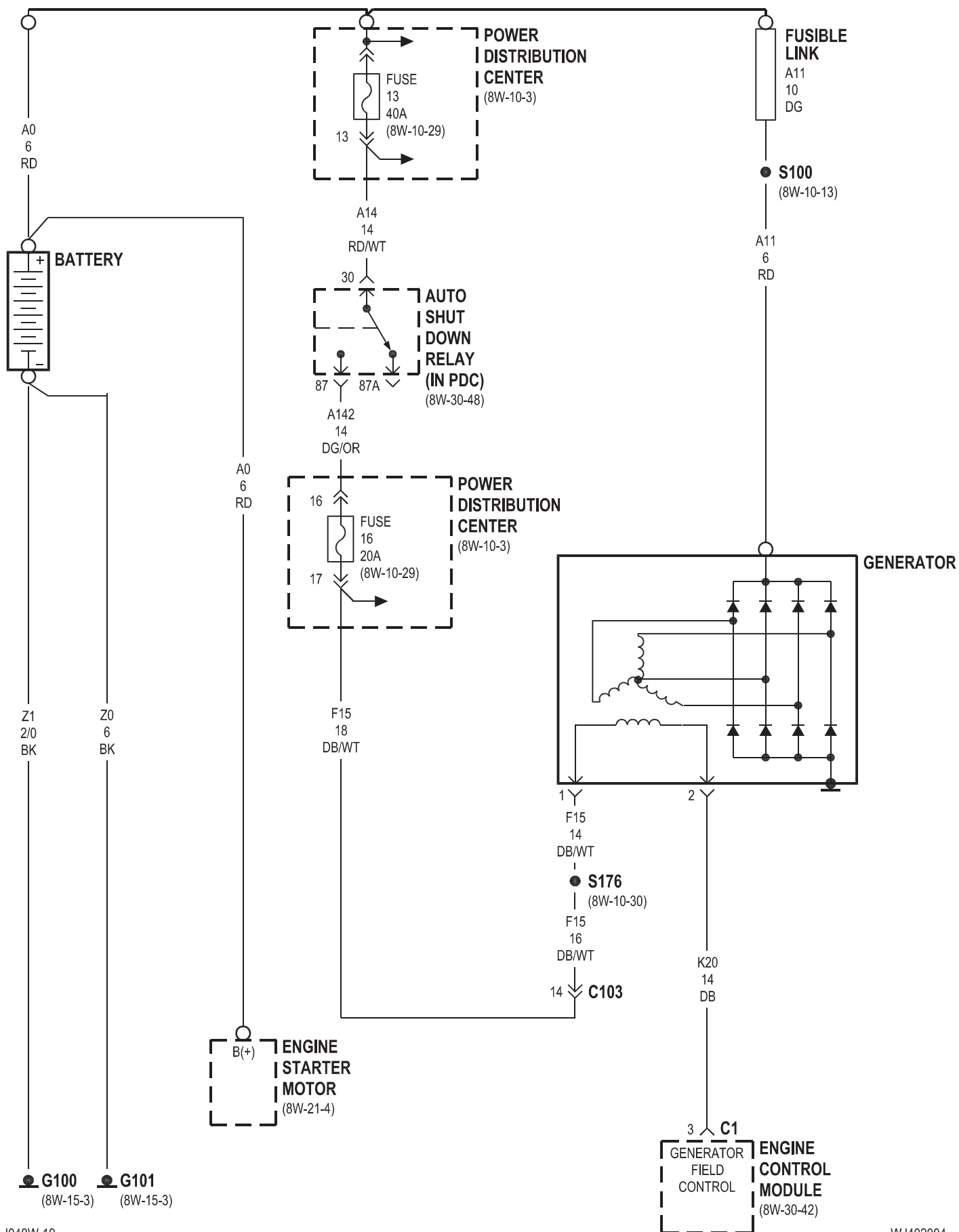
8W-20 CHARGING SYSTEM

Component	Page	Component	Page
Auto Shut Down Relay . . . . .	8W-20-2, 3, 4	Fuse 26 . . . . .	8W-20-2, 3
Battery . . . . .	8W-20-2, 3, 4	Fusible Link . . . . .	8W-20-2, 3, 4
Battery Temperature Sensor . . . . .	8W-20-2, 3	G100 . . . . .	8W-20-2, 3, 4
Engine Control Module . . . . .	8W-20-4	G101 . . . . .	8W-20-2, 3, 4
Engine Starter Motor . . . . .	8W-20-2, 3, 4	Generator . . . . .	8W-20-2, 3, 4
Fuse 6 . . . . .	8W-20-2, 3	Power Distribution Center . . . . .	8W-20-2, 3, 4
Fuse 13 . . . . .	8W-20-4	Powertrain Control Module . . . . .	8W-20-2, 3
Fuse 16 . . . . .	8W-20-4		
Fuse 19 . . . . .	8W-20-2, 3		



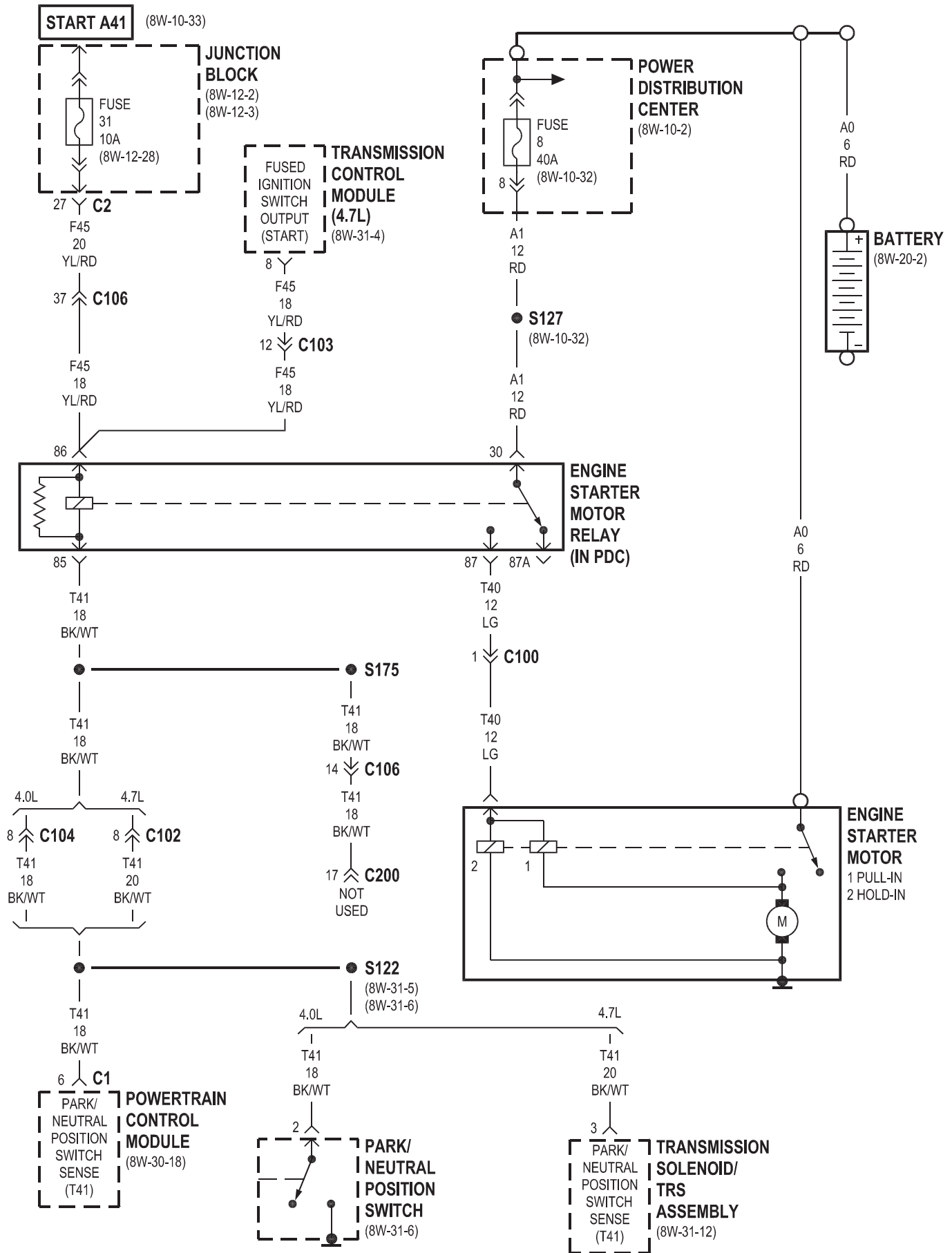


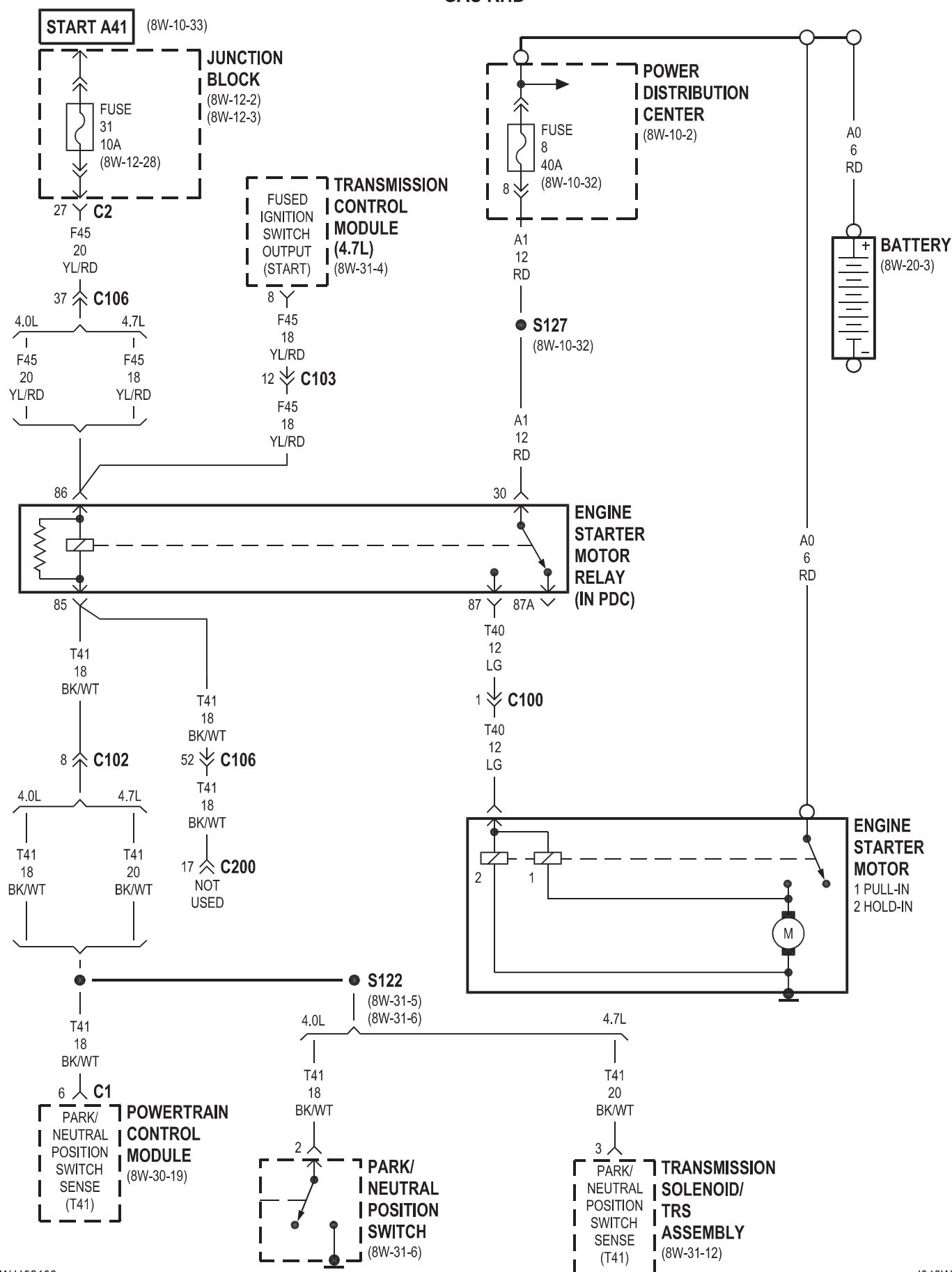


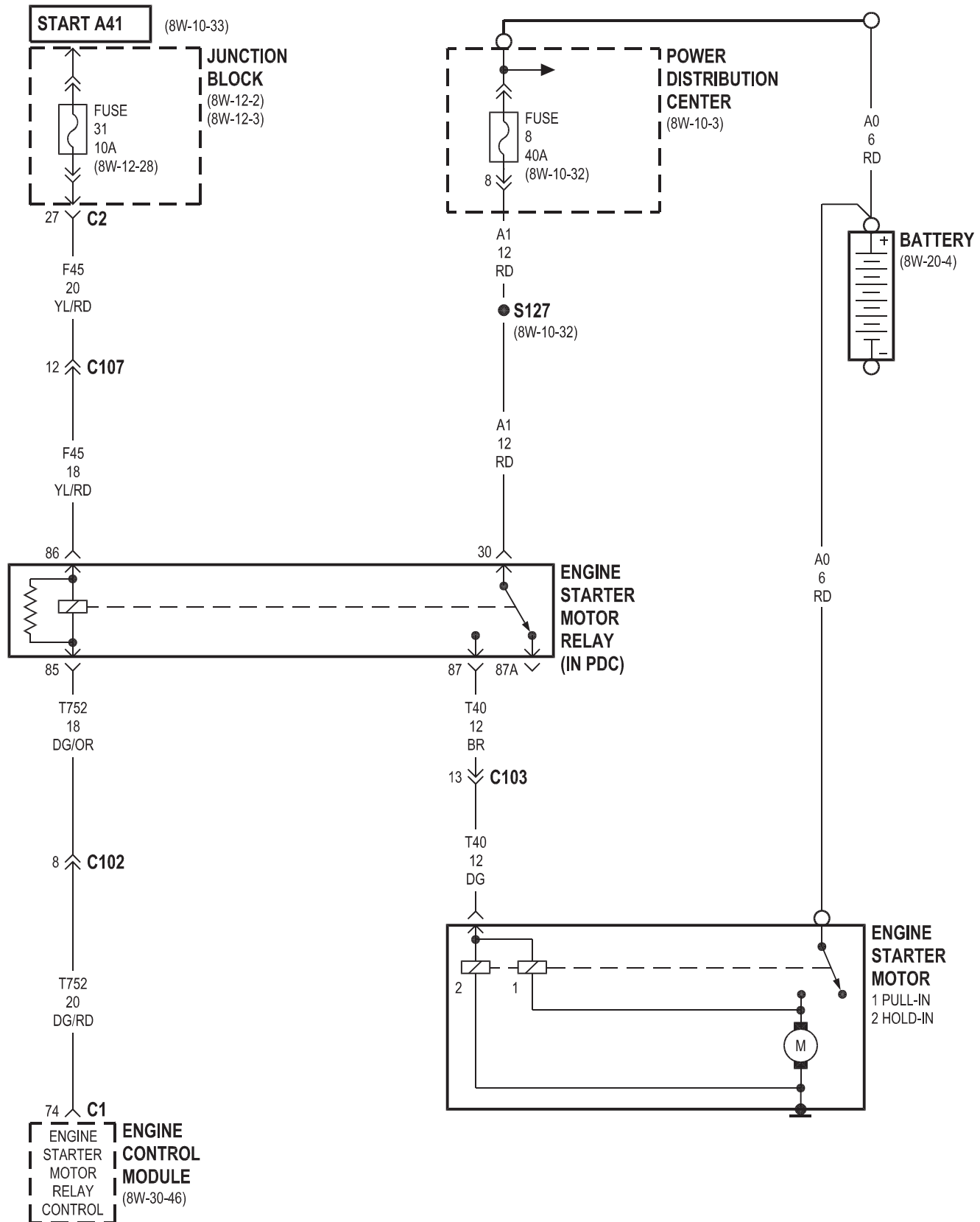


## 8W-21 STARTING SYSTEM

<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>	<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
Battery . . . . .	8W-21-2, 3, 4	Junction Block . . . . .	8W-21-2, 3, 4
Engine Control Module . . . . .	8W-21-4	Park/Neutral Position Switch . . . . .	8W-21-2, 3
Engine Starter Motor . . . . .	8W-21-2, 3, 4	Power Distribution Center . . . . .	8W-21-2, 3, 4
Engine Starter Motor Relay . . . . .	8W-21-2, 3, 4	Powertrain Control Module . . . . .	8W-21-2, 3
Fuse 8 . . . . .	8W-21-2, 3, 4	Transmission Control Module . . . . .	8W-21-2, 3
Fuse 31 . . . . .	8W-21-2, 3, 4	Transmission Solenoid/TRS Assembly . .	8W-21-2, 3





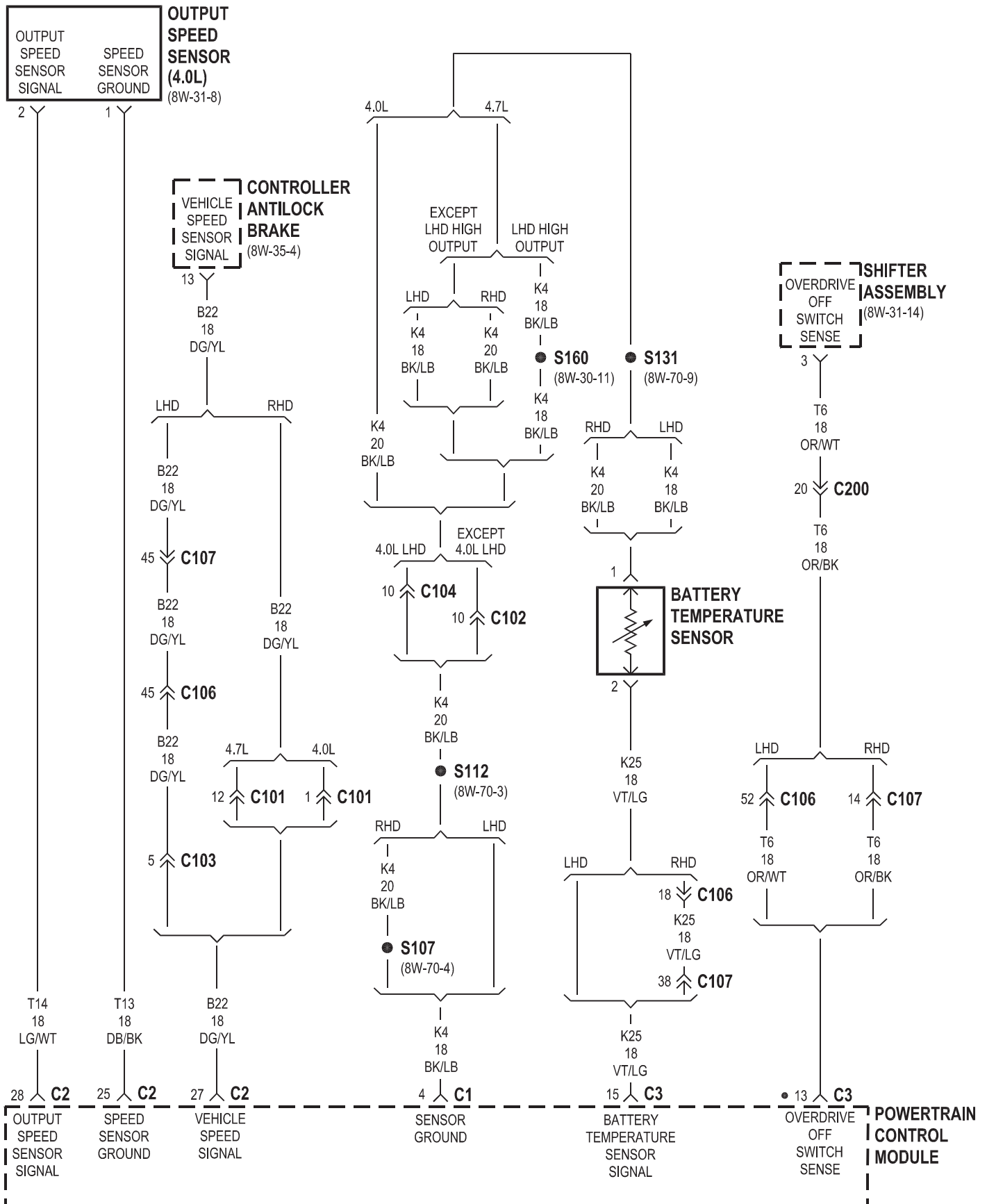


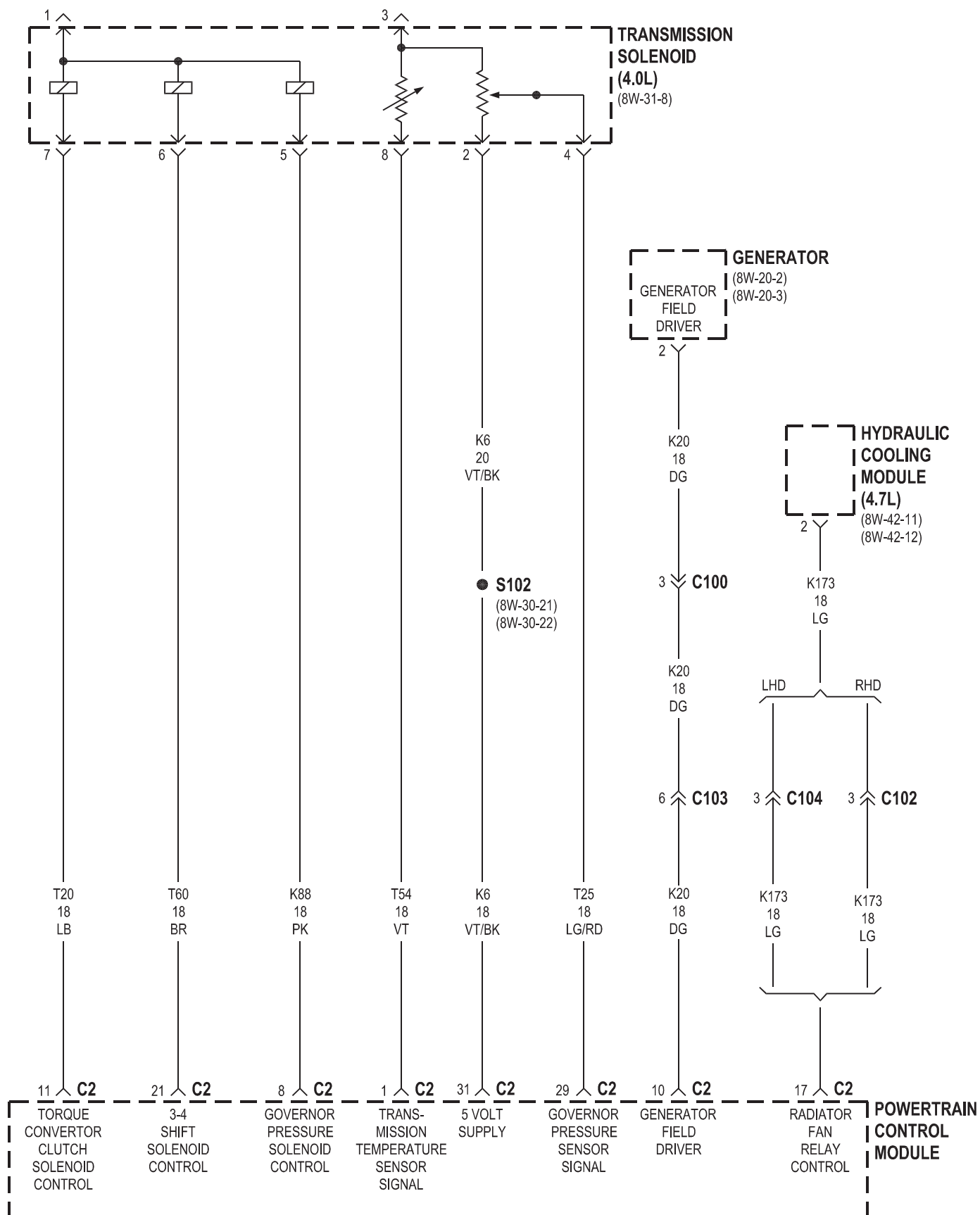


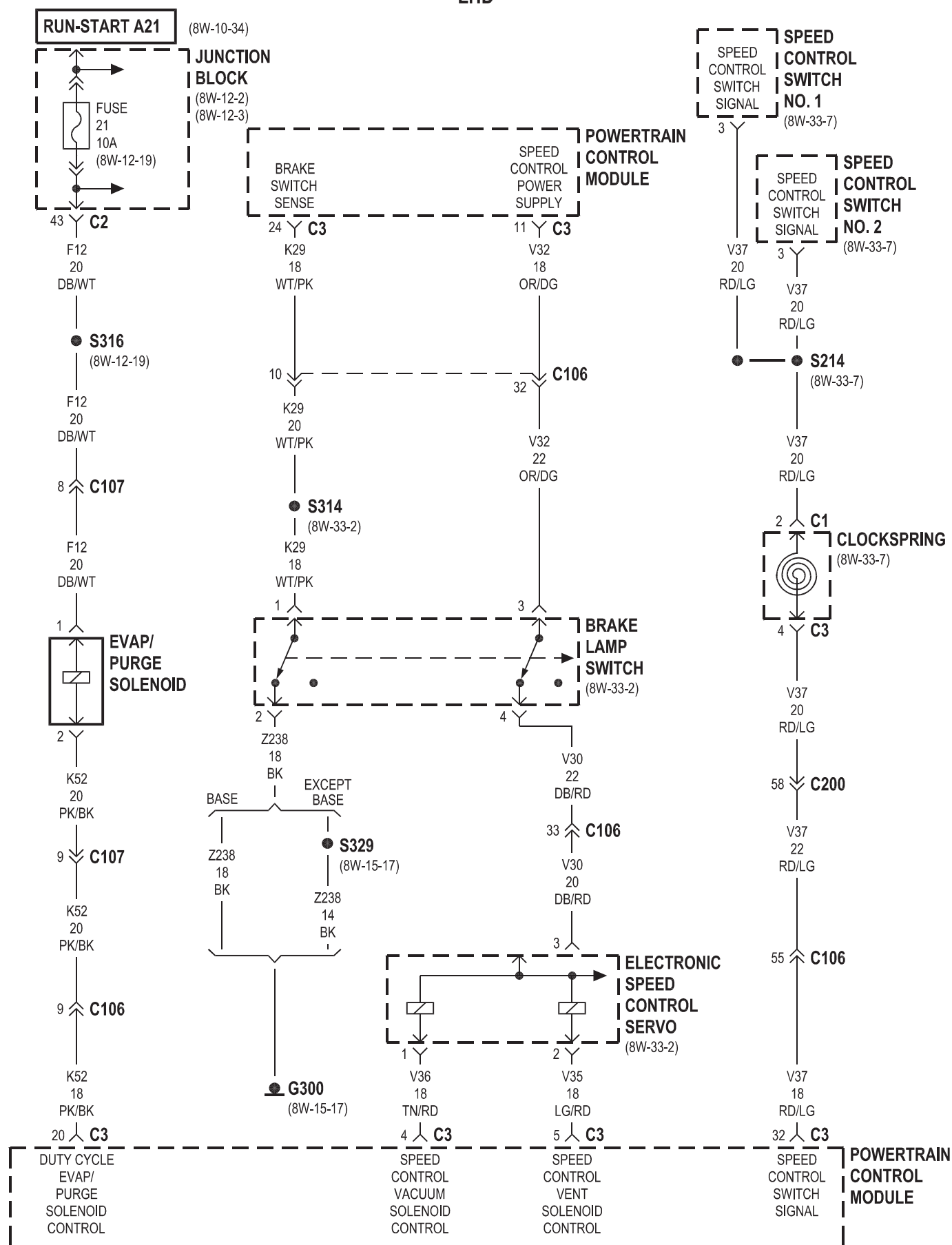
## 8W-30 FUEL/IGNITION SYSTEM

<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
A/C Compressor Clutch Relay . . .	8W-30-24, 42, 46, 48, 49
A/C Pressure Transducer . . .	8W-30-21, 22, 37, 38, 49, 52
Accelerator Pedal Position Sensor . . . . .	8W-30-44, 55
Adjustable Pedals Module . . . . .	8W-30-40
Adjustable Pedals Motor/Sensor Assembly . . . .	8W-30-40
Adjustable Pedals Switch . . . . .	8W-30-40
Auto Shut Down	
Relay . . .	8W-30-8, 9, 12, 25, 29, 26, 34, 42, 46, 48, 56
Battery Temperature Sensor . . . . .	8W-30-2, 11, 57
Body Control Module . . . . .	8W-30-53
Boost Pressure Sensor . . . . .	8W-30-52
Brake Lamp Switch . . . . .	8W-30-4, 5, 45, 58, 39
Camshaft Position Sensor . . . . .	8W-30-18, 19, 20, 56
Capacitor . . . . .	8W-30-12
Capacitor No. 1 . . . . .	8W-30-16
Capacitor No. 2 . . . . .	8W-30-17
Clockspring . . . . .	8W-30-4, 5, 45
Coil On Plug No. 1 . . . . .	8W-30-17
Coil On Plug No. 2 . . . . .	8W-30-16
Coil On Plug No. 3 . . . . .	8W-30-17
Coil On Plug No. 4 . . . . .	8W-30-16
Coil On Plug No. 5 . . . . .	8W-30-17
Coil On Plug No. 6 . . . . .	8W-30-16
Coil On Plug No. 7 . . . . .	8W-30-17
Coil On Plug No. 8 . . . . .	8W-30-16
Coil Rail . . . . .	8W-30-12
Controller Antilock Brake . . . . .	8W-30-2, 43, 58
Crankcase Heater . . . . .	8W-30-42
Crankshaft Position Sensor . . . . .	8W-30-18, 19, 20, 56
Data Link Connector . . . . .	8W-30-6, 7, 40, 53
EGR Solenoid . . . . .	8W-30-57
Electronic Speed Control Servo . . . . .	8W-30-4, 5
Engine Control Module . . . . .	8W-30-41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58
Engine Coolant Temperature	
Sensor . . . . .	8W-30-21, 22, 23, 54
Engine Oil Pressure Sensor . . . . .	8W-30-52
Engine Oil Pressure Switch . . . . .	8W-30-21, 22, 23
Engine Starter Motor Relay . . . . .	8W-30-18, 19, 46
EVAP/Purge Solenoid . . . . .	8W-30-4, 5, 51
Fuel Injector No. 1 . . . . .	8W-30-13, 15
Fuel Injector No. 2 . . . . .	8W-30-13, 14, 51
Fuel Injector No. 3 . . . . .	8W-30-13, 15, 51
Fuel Injector No. 4 . . . . .	8W-30-13, 14, 51
Fuel Injector No. 5 . . . . .	8W-30-13, 15, 51
Fuel Injector No. 6 . . . . .	8W-30-13, 14
Fuel Injector No. 7 . . . . .	8W-30-15
Fuel Injector No. 8 . . . . .	8W-30-14
Fuel Pressure Sensor . . . . .	8W-30-44
Fuel Pressure Solenoid . . . . .	8W-30-54
Fuel Pump Module . . . . .	8W-30-10
Fuel Pump Relay . . . . .	8W-30-8, 10
Fuel Tank Module . . . . .	8W-30-52
Fuse 6 . . . . .	8W-30-9, 49
Fuse 10 . . . . .	8W-30-40
Fuse 11 . . . . .	8W-30-50
Fuse 12 . . . . .	8W-30-8, 47
Fuse 13 . . . . .	8W-30-48
Fuse 16 . . . . .	8W-30-25, 29, 26, 34, 42, 44, 46, 48, 56
Fuse 19 . . . . .	8W-30-8
Fuse 21 . . . . .	8W-30-4, 5, 39

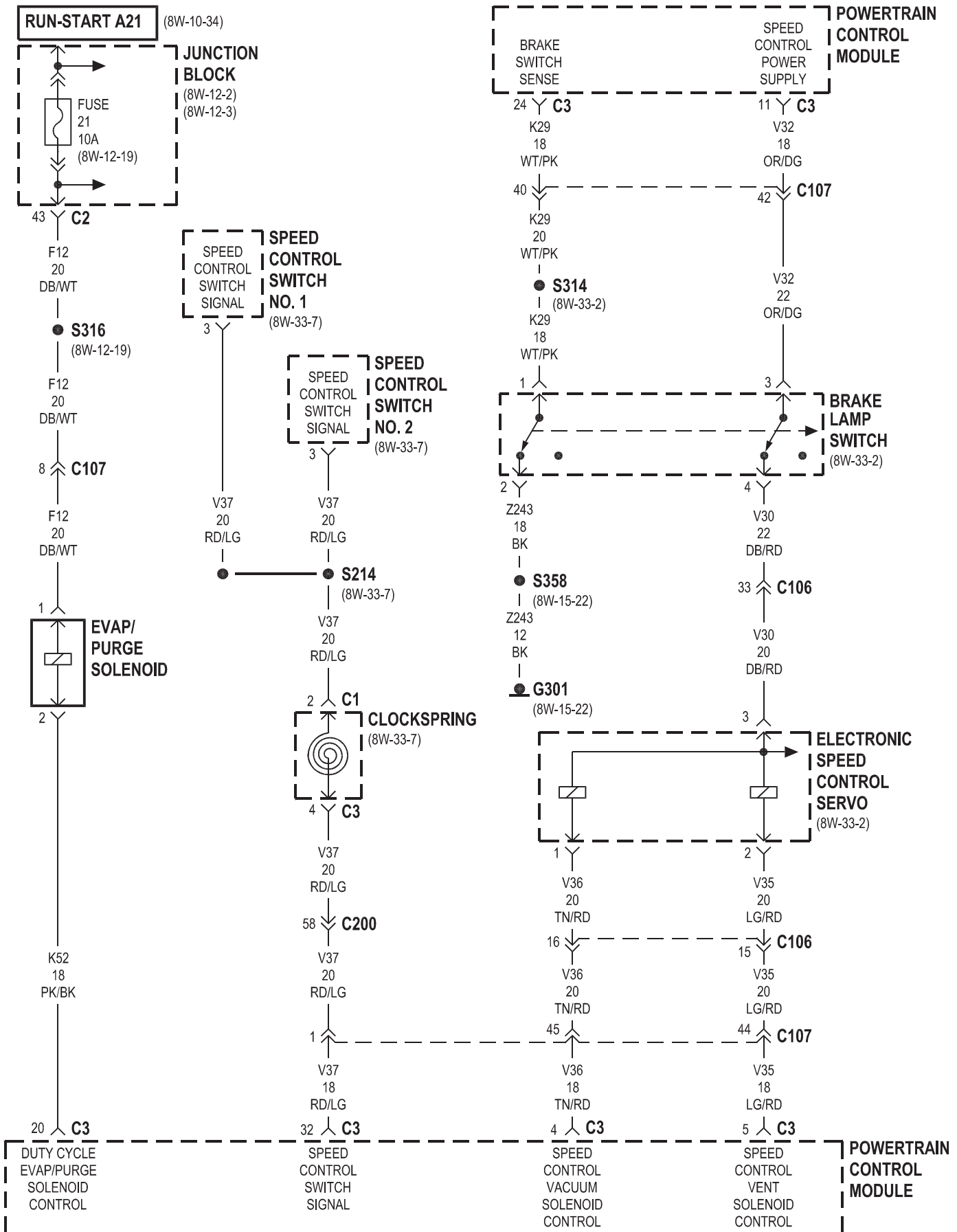
<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
Fuse 22 . . . . .	8W-30-41
Fuse 23 . . . . .	8W-30-46
Fuse 24 . . . . .	8W-30-8
Fuse 26 . . . . .	8W-30-9, 12, 48, 54
Fuse 31 . . . . .	8W-30-46
G103 . . . . .	8W-30-9, 41, 46, 53
G104 . . . . .	8W-30-27, 28, 30, 31, 33, 36
G105 . . . . .	8W-30-42, 46
G108 . . . . .	8W-30-24
G123 . . . . .	8W-30-57
G300 . . . . .	8W-30-4, 40
G301 . . . . .	8W-30-5, 10, 40, 58
Generator . . . . .	8W-30-3, 24, 42
Glow Plug No. 1 . . . . .	8W-30-49
Glow Plug No. 2 . . . . .	8W-30-50
Glow Plug No. 3 . . . . .	8W-30-49
Glow Plug No. 4 . . . . .	8W-30-50
Glow Plug No. 5 . . . . .	8W-30-49
Glow Plug Relay No. 1 . . . . .	8W-30-42, 49, 50
Glow Plug Relay No. 2 . . . . .	8W-30-42, 49, 50
High Speed Radiator Fan Relay . . . . .	8W-30-8
Hydraulic Cooling Module . . .	8W-30-3, 24, 26, 37, 38, 50
Idle Air Control Motor . . . . .	8W-30-20
Intake Air Temperature Sensor . . . .	8W-30-21, 22, 23, 45
Intake Port Swirl Actuator . . . . .	8W-30-46
Junction Block . . . . .	8W-30-4, 5, 8, 9, 39, 40, 46, 47
Knock Sensor . . . . .	8W-30-11
Leak Detection Pump . . . . .	8W-30-24
Low Speed Radiator Fan Relay . . . . .	8W-30-8
Manifold Absolute Pressure Sensor .	8W-30-20, 21, 22, 23
Mass Air Flow Sensor . . . . .	8W-30-44
Output Speed Sensor . . . . .	8W-30-2
Oxygen Sensor 1/1 Upstream . . .	8W-30-25, 30, 27, 32, 35
Oxygen Sensor 1/2 Downstream .	8W-30-25, 30, 27, 33, 36
Oxygen Sensor 2/1 Upstream . . . .	8W-30-28, 31, 32, 35
Oxygen Sensor 2/2 Downstream . . .	8W-30-28, 31, 33, 36
Oxygen Sensor Downstream	
Relay . . . . .	8W-30-26, 29, 30, 31, 34
Park/Neutral Position Switch . . . . .	8W-30-40
Power Distribution	
Center . . . . .	8W-30-8, 9, 12, 25, 26, 29, 34, 41, 42, 44, 46, 48, 49, 50, 54, 56
Powertrain Control Module . . .	8W-30-2, 3, 5, 6, 7, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39
Shifter Assembly . . . . .	8W-30-2, 39, 47
Speed Control Switch No. 1 . . . . .	8W-30-4, 5, 45
Speed Control Switch No. 2 . . . . .	8W-30-4, 5, 45
Throttle Position Sensor . . . . .	8W-30-20
Transfer Case Position Sensor . . . . .	8W-30-9, 58
Transmission Control	
Module . . . . .	8W-30-6, 7, 20, 24, 39, 43, 47
Transmission Control Relay . . . . .	8W-30-24
Transmission Solenoid . . . . .	8W-30-3, 21, 22
Transmission Solenoid/TRS Assembly . . . . .	8W-30-40
Viscous/Cabin Heater . . . . .	8W-30-46
Viscous/Cabin Heater Relay . . . . .	8W-30-42, 46, 48, 49
Wastegate Solenoid . . . . .	8W-30-42
Water In Fuel Sensor . . . . .	8W-30-57



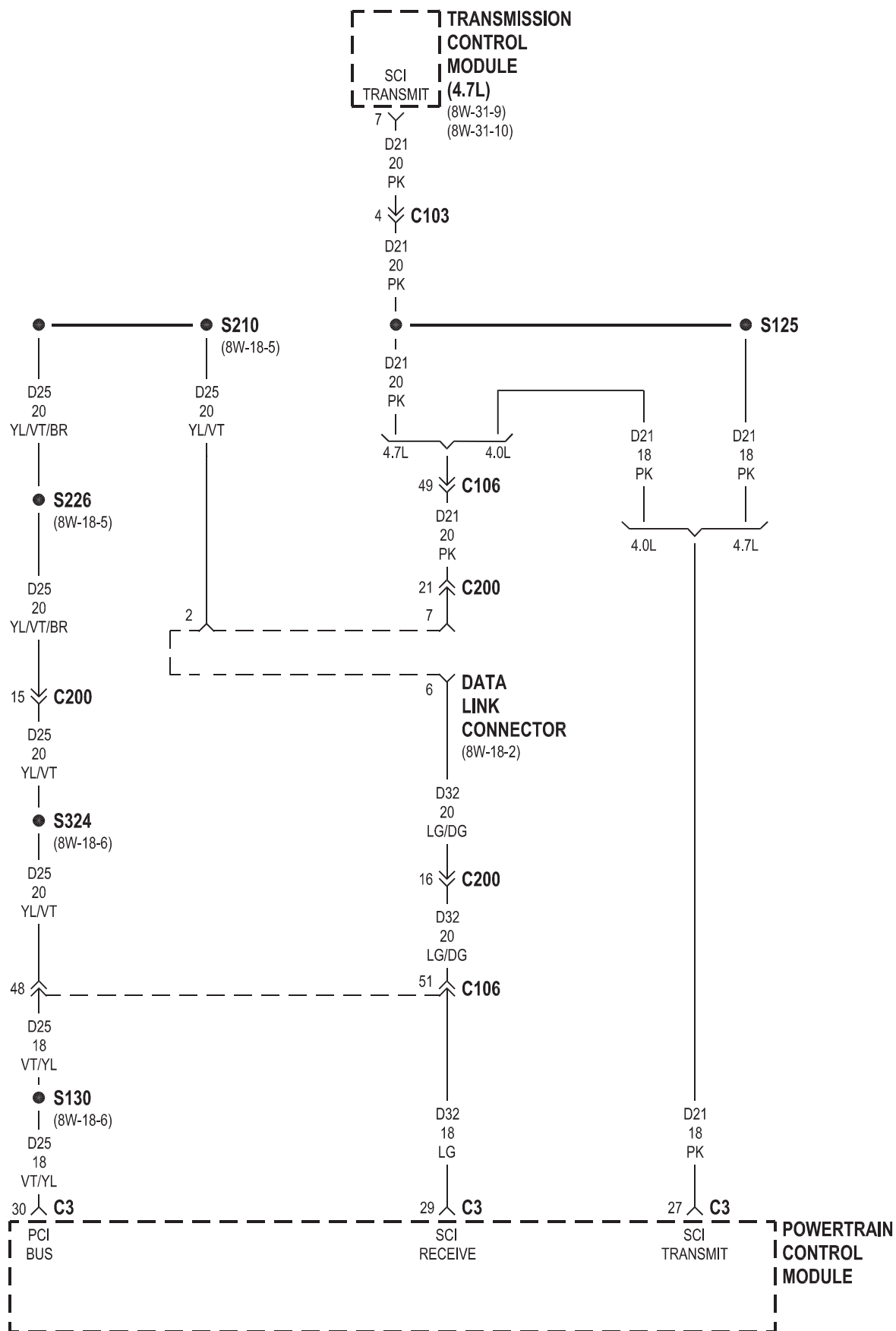




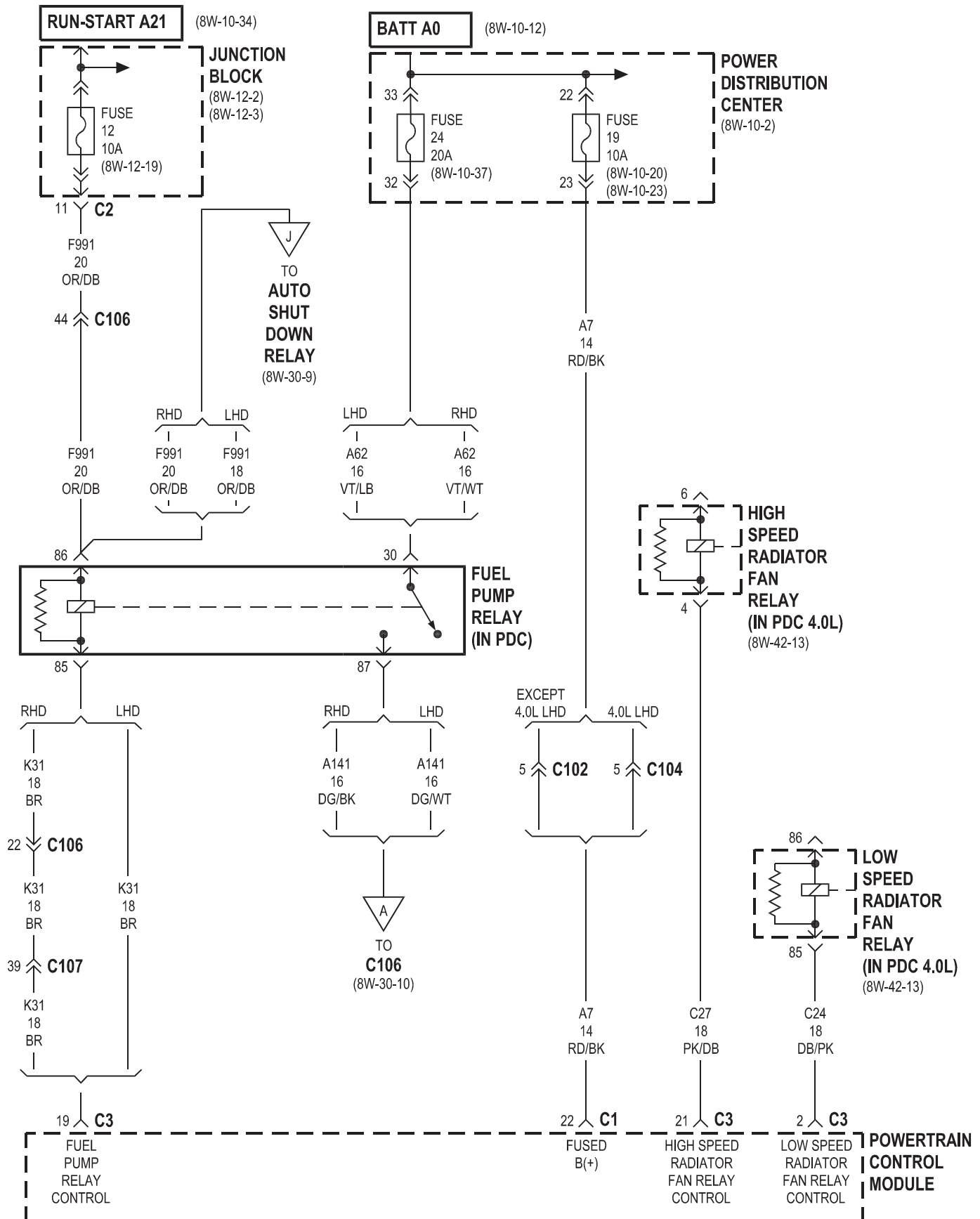
## RHD GAS

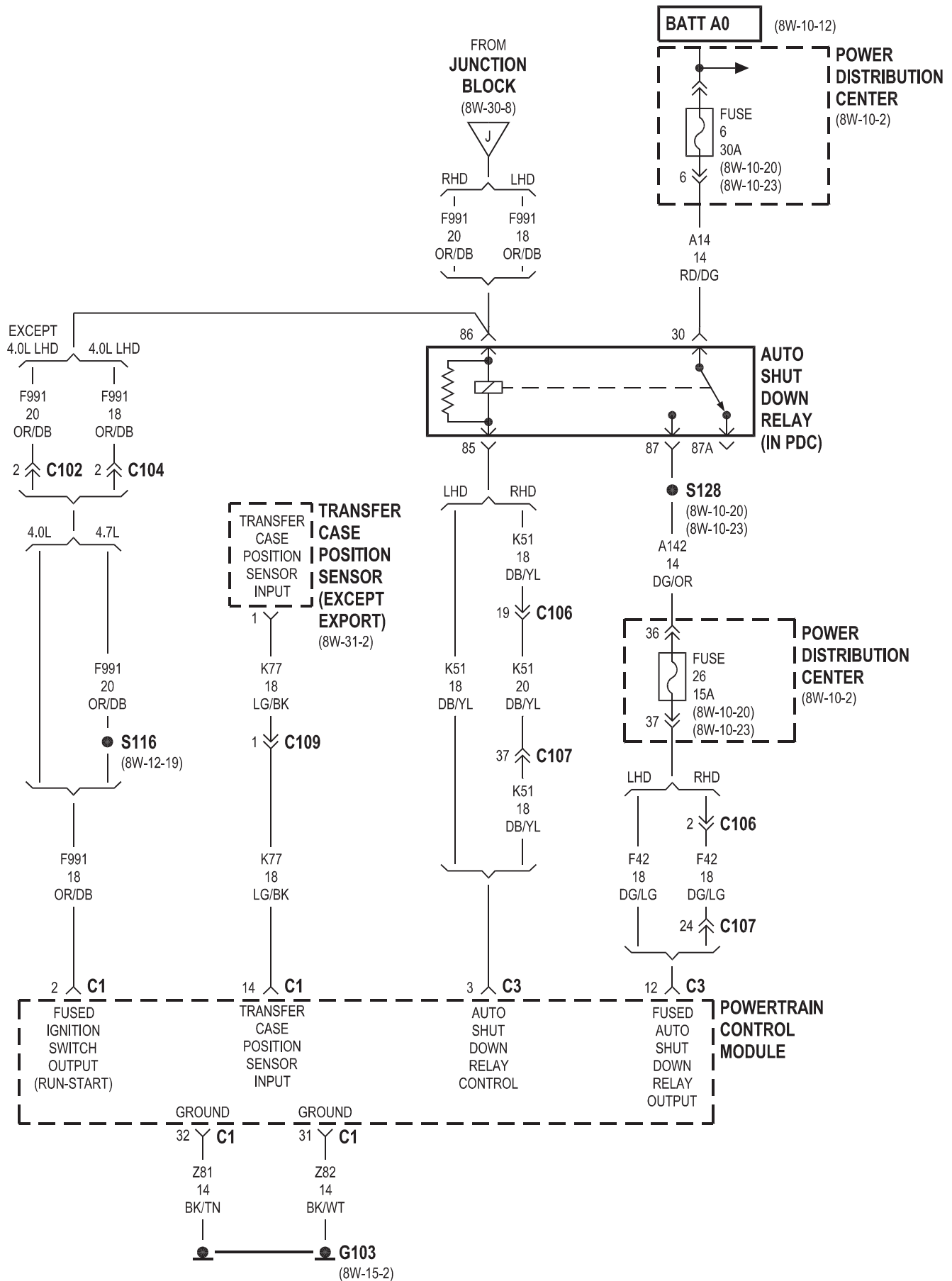




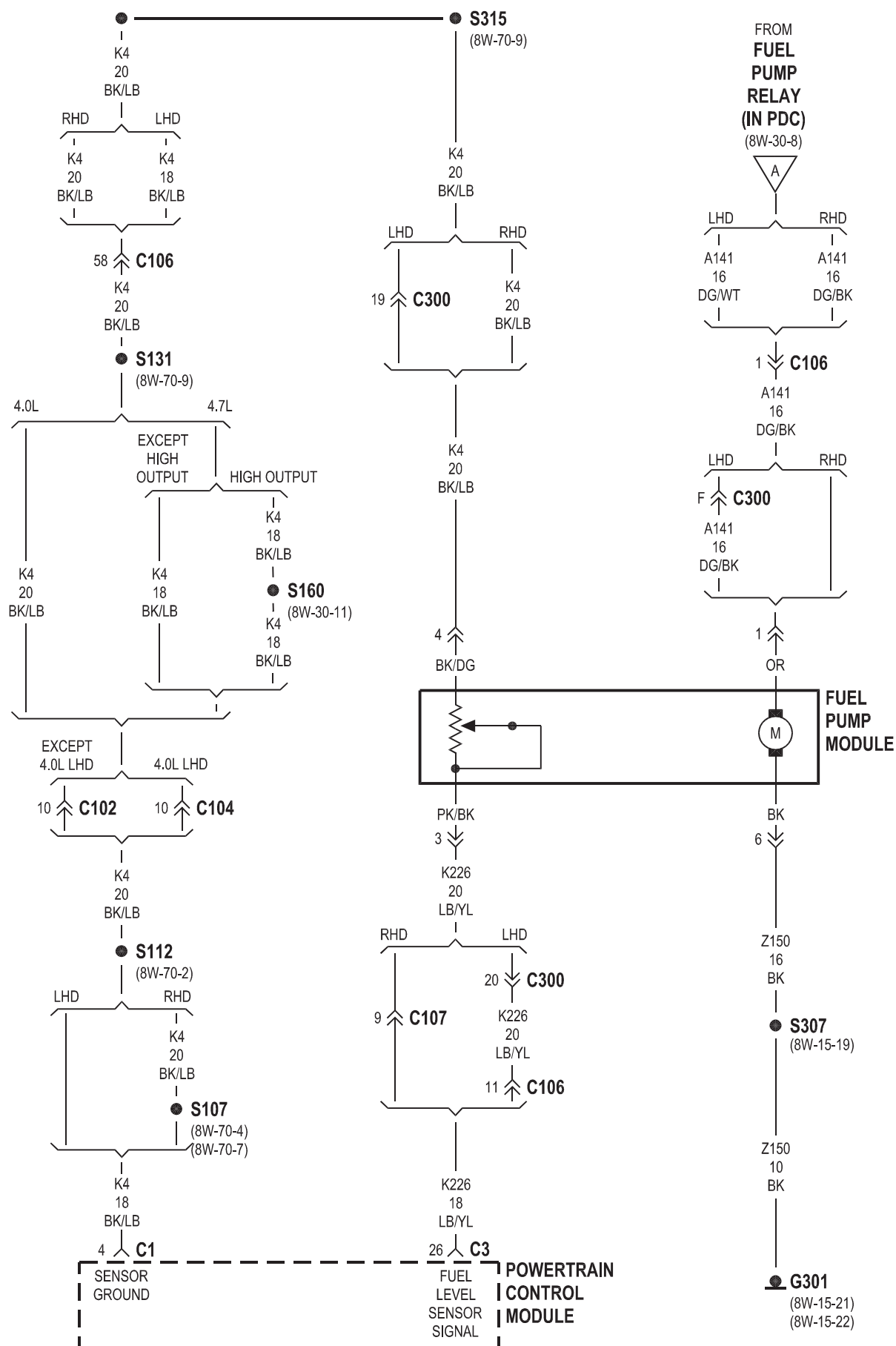




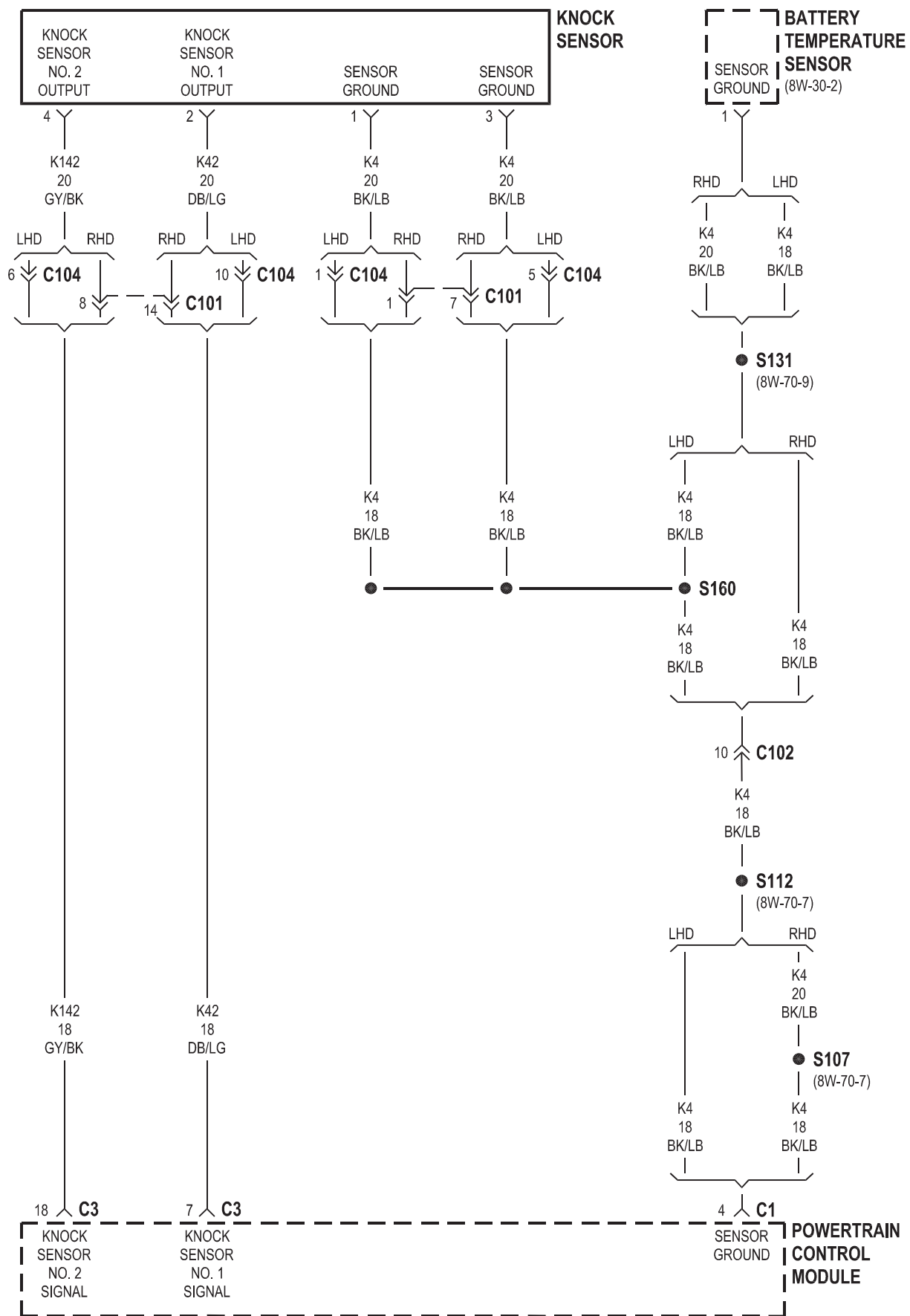


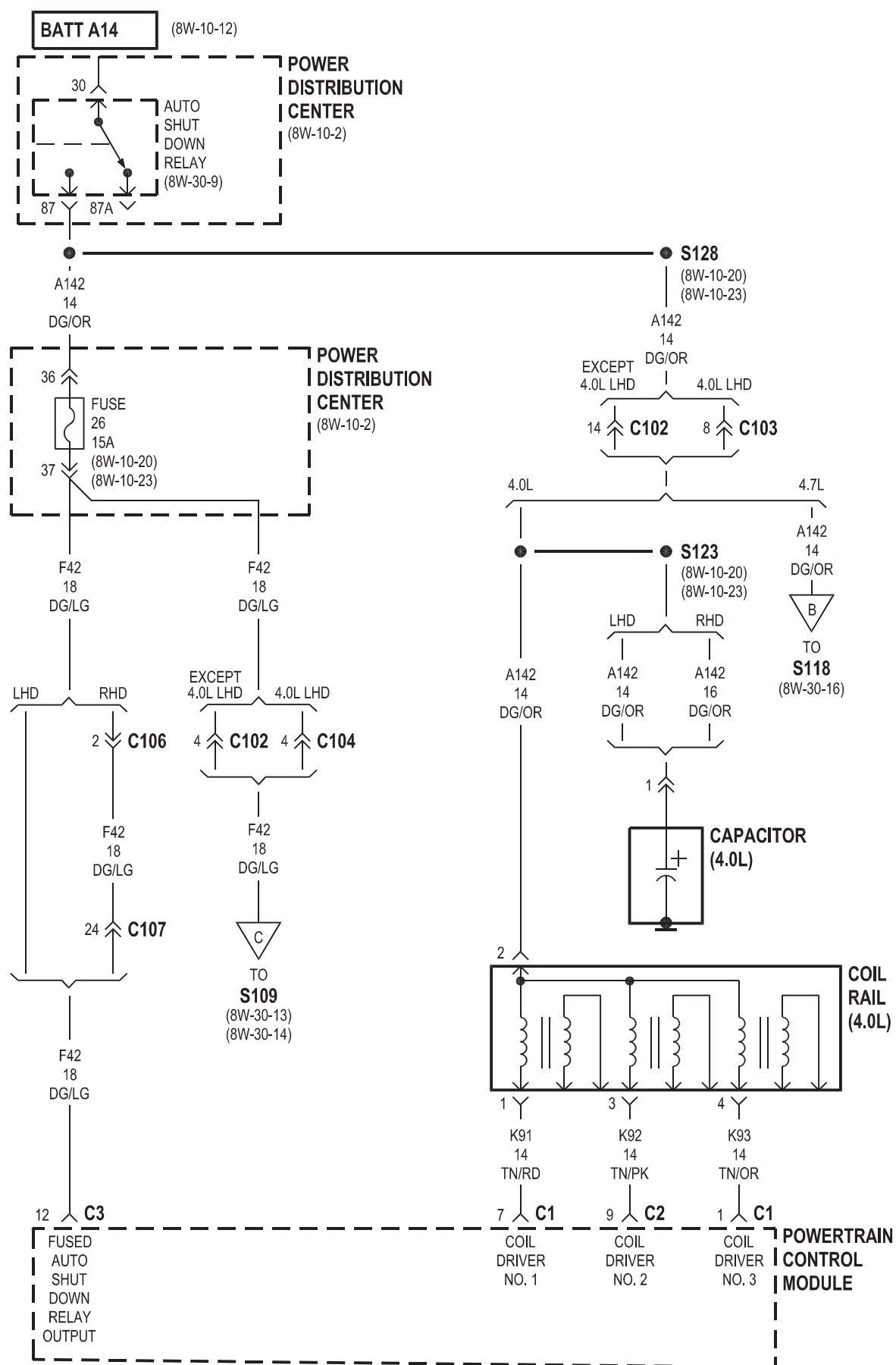


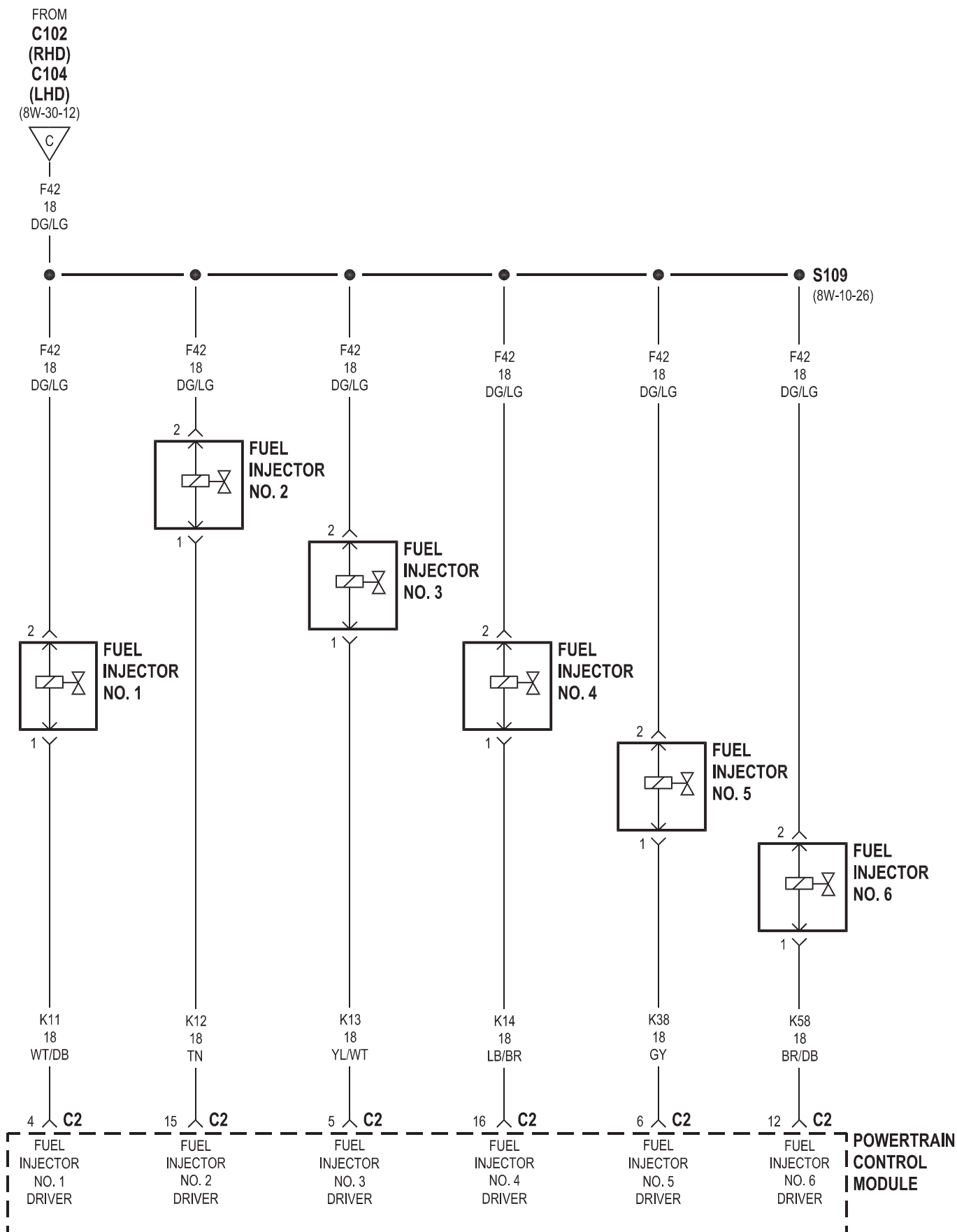
## GAS

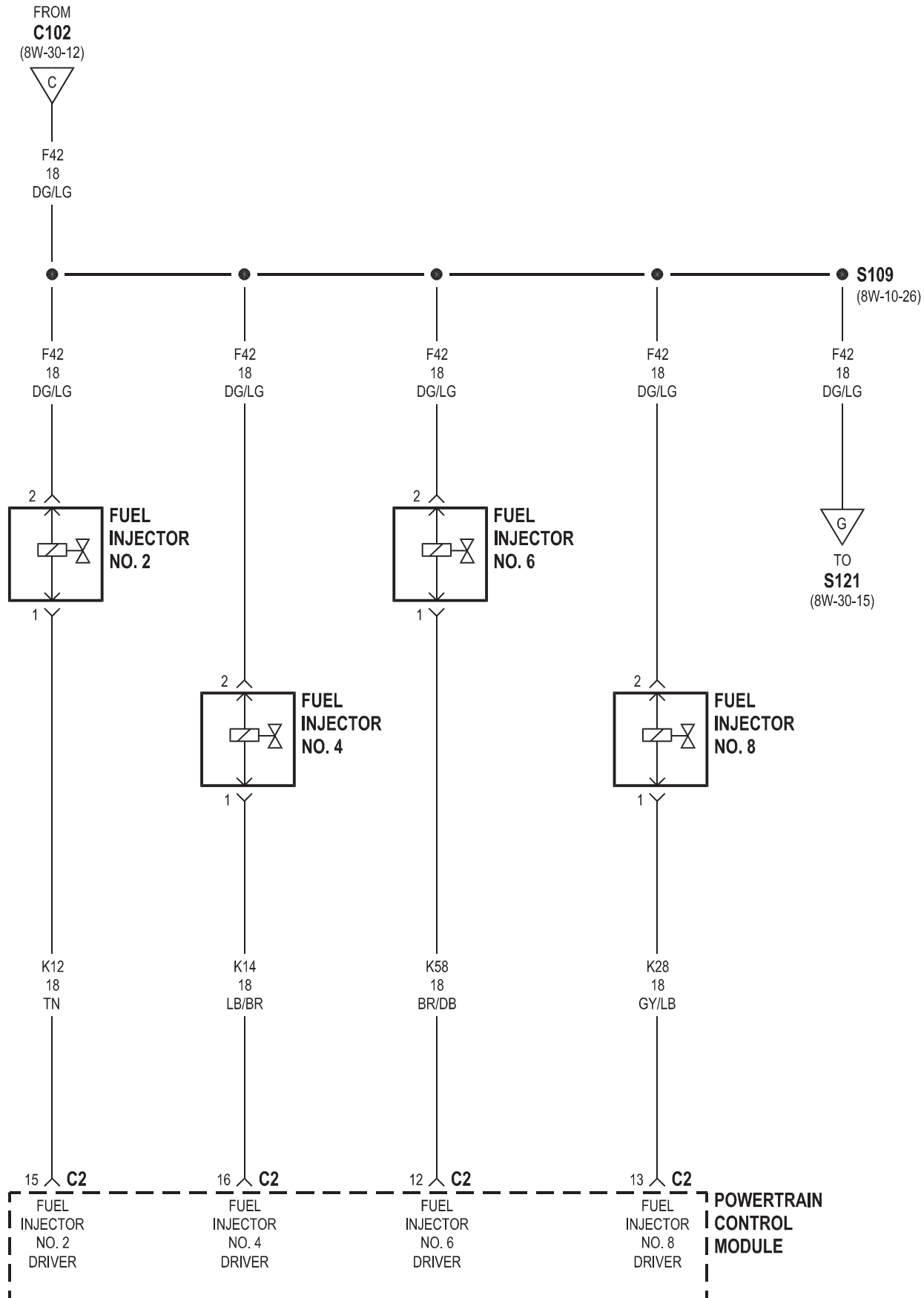


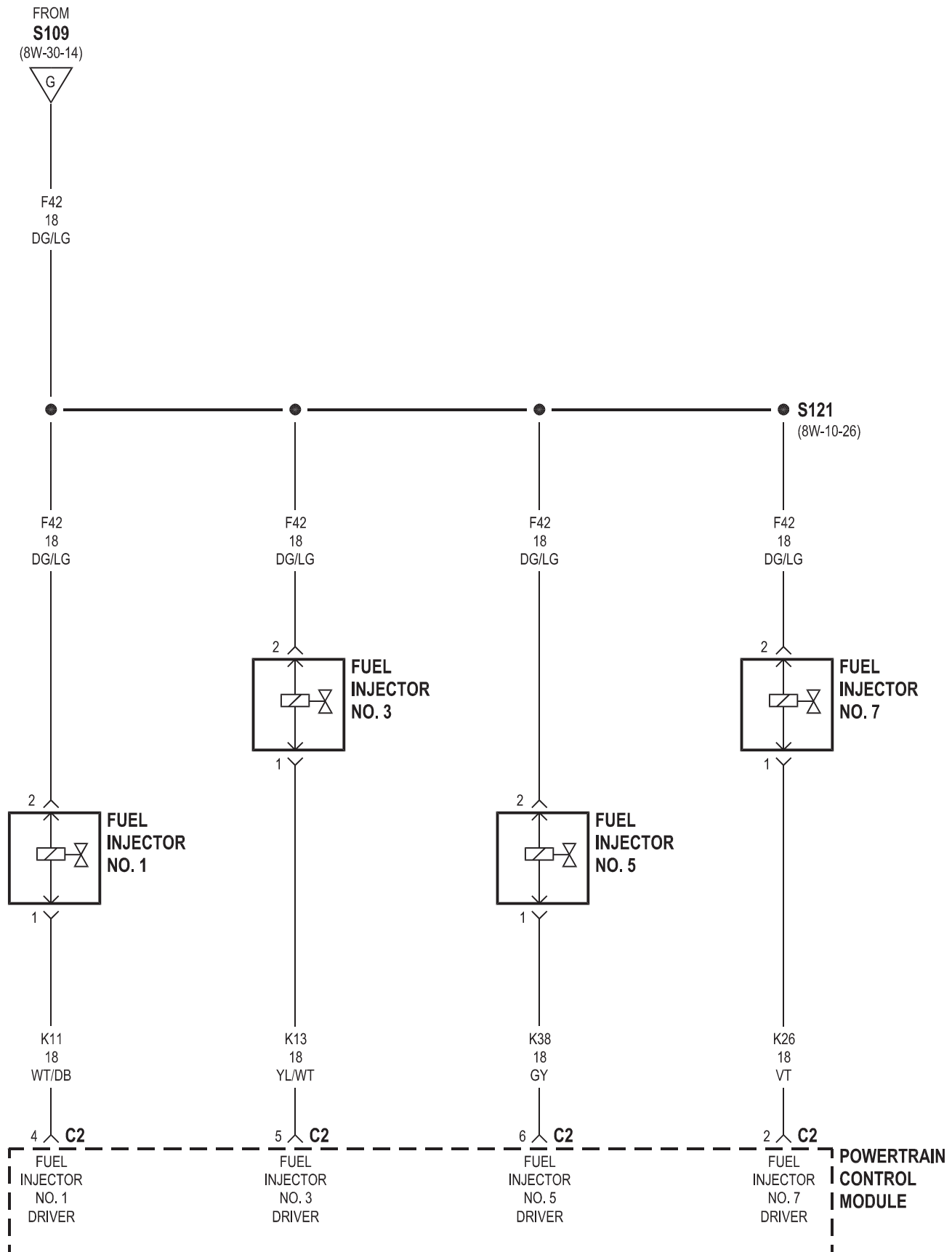




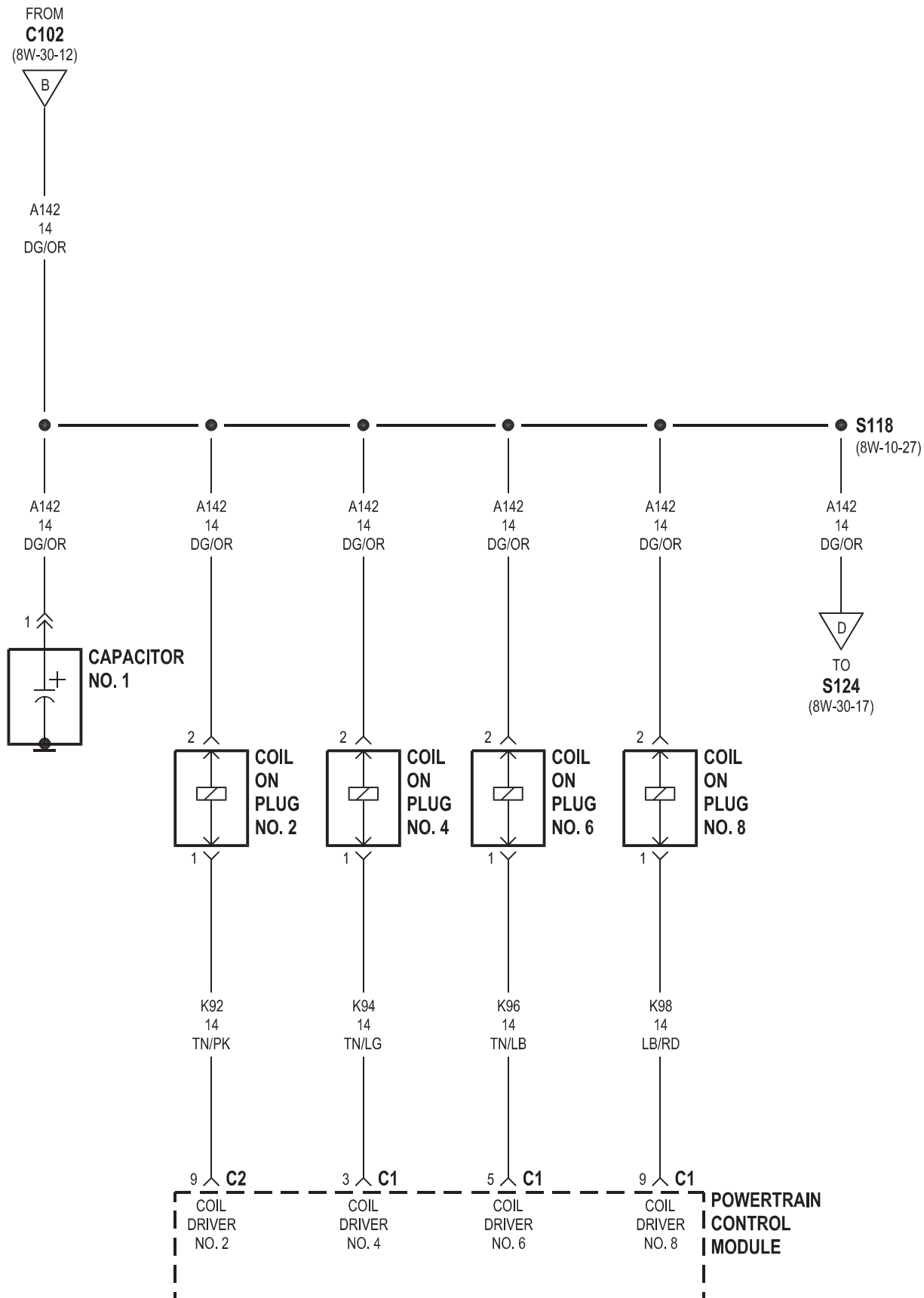


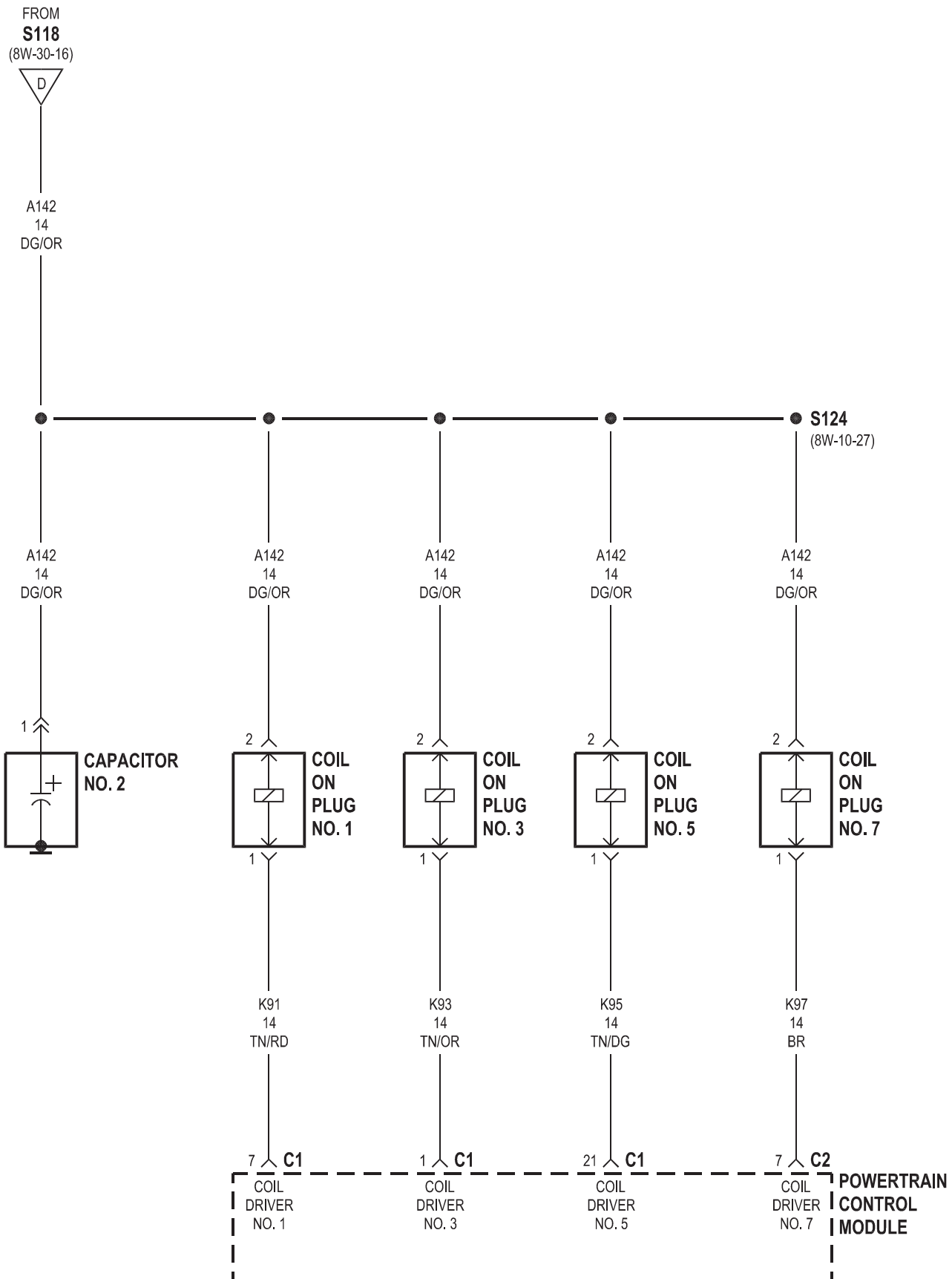


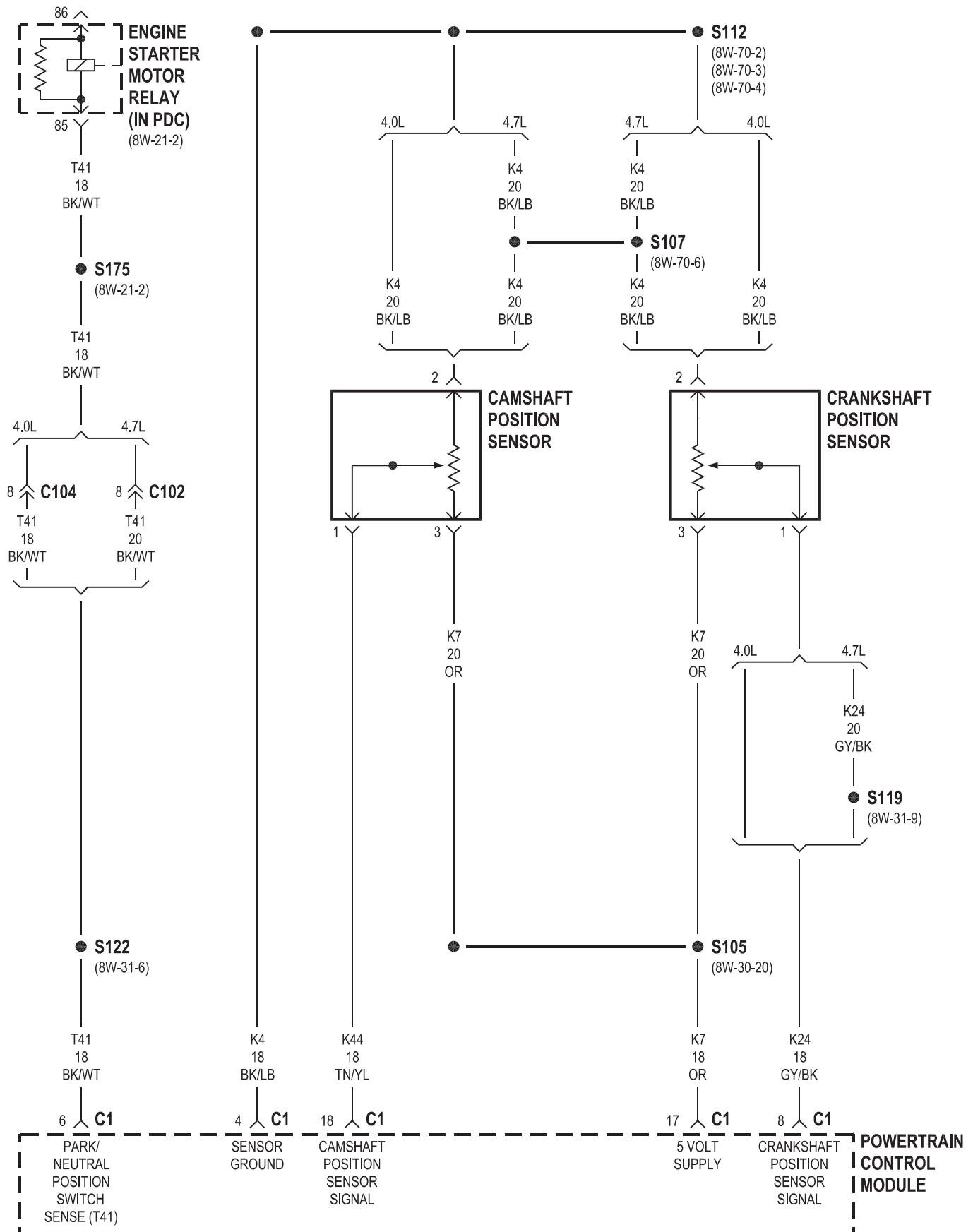


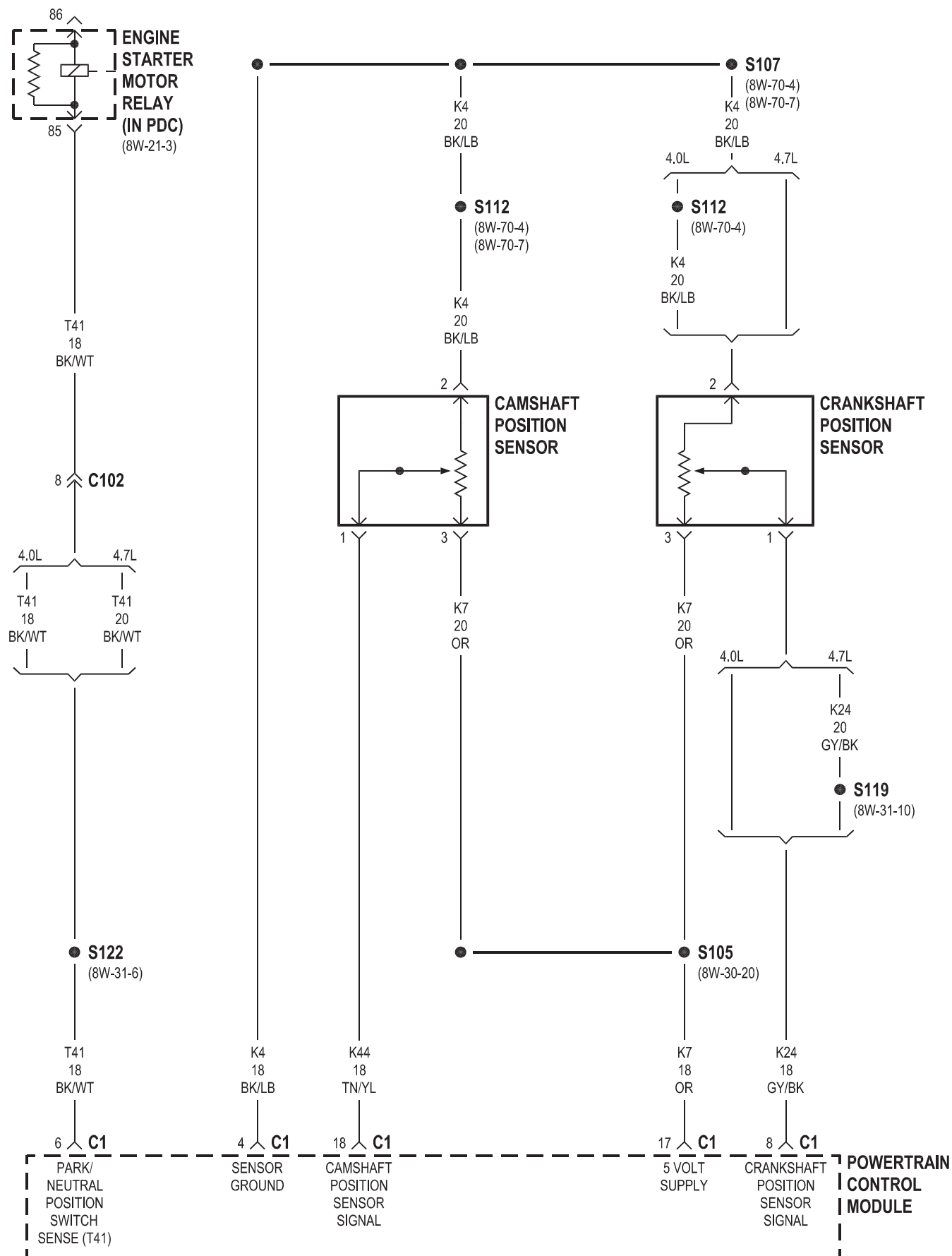


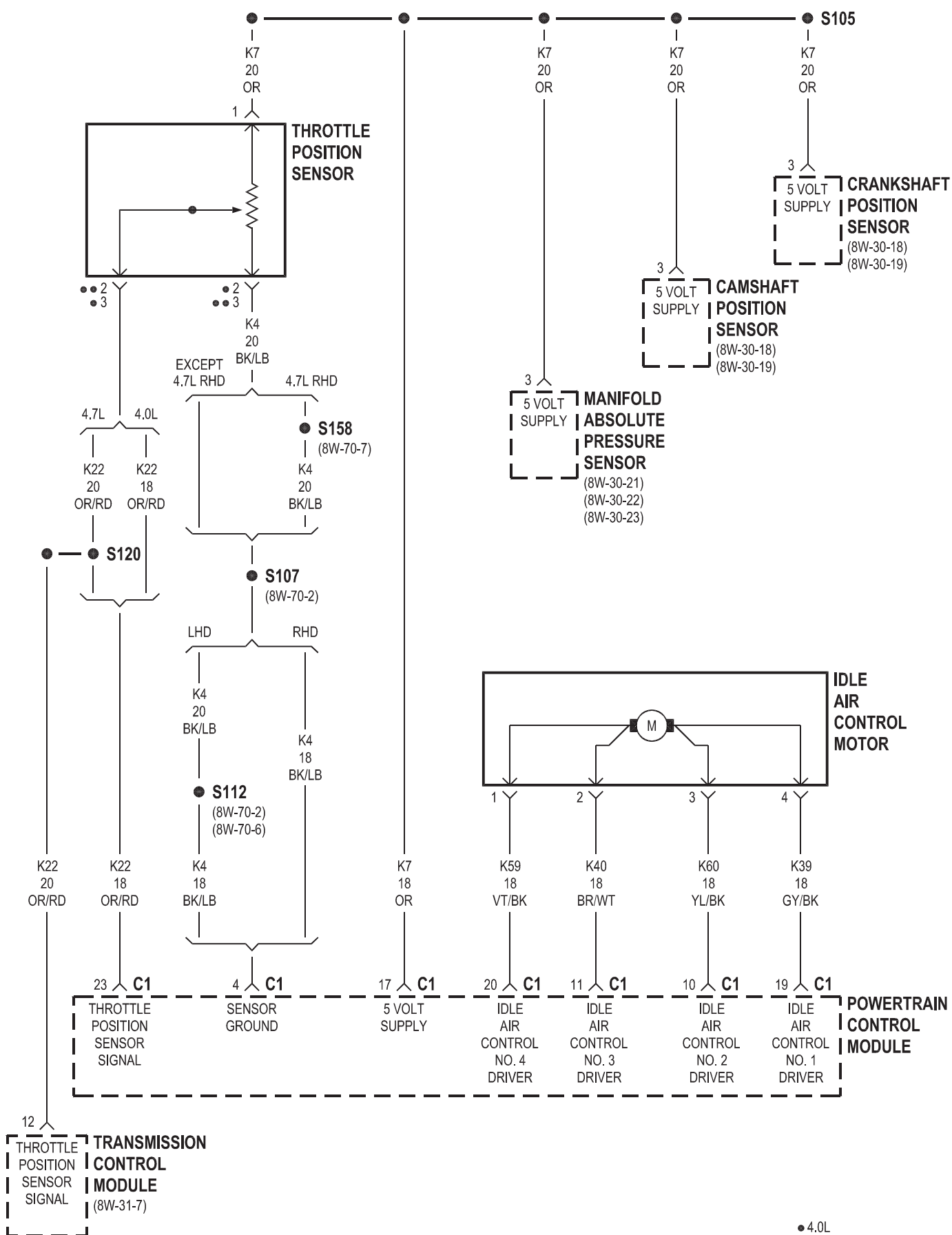




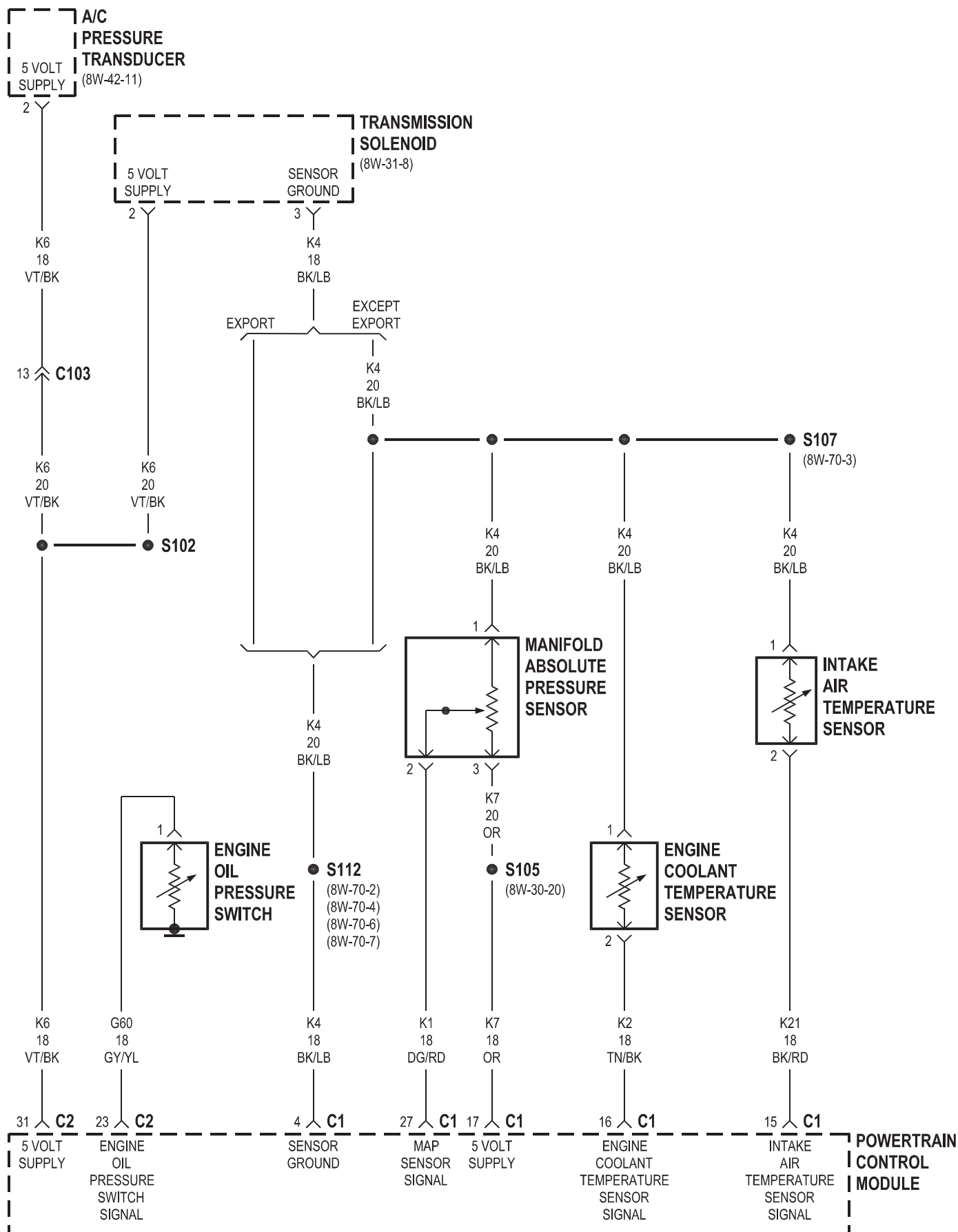


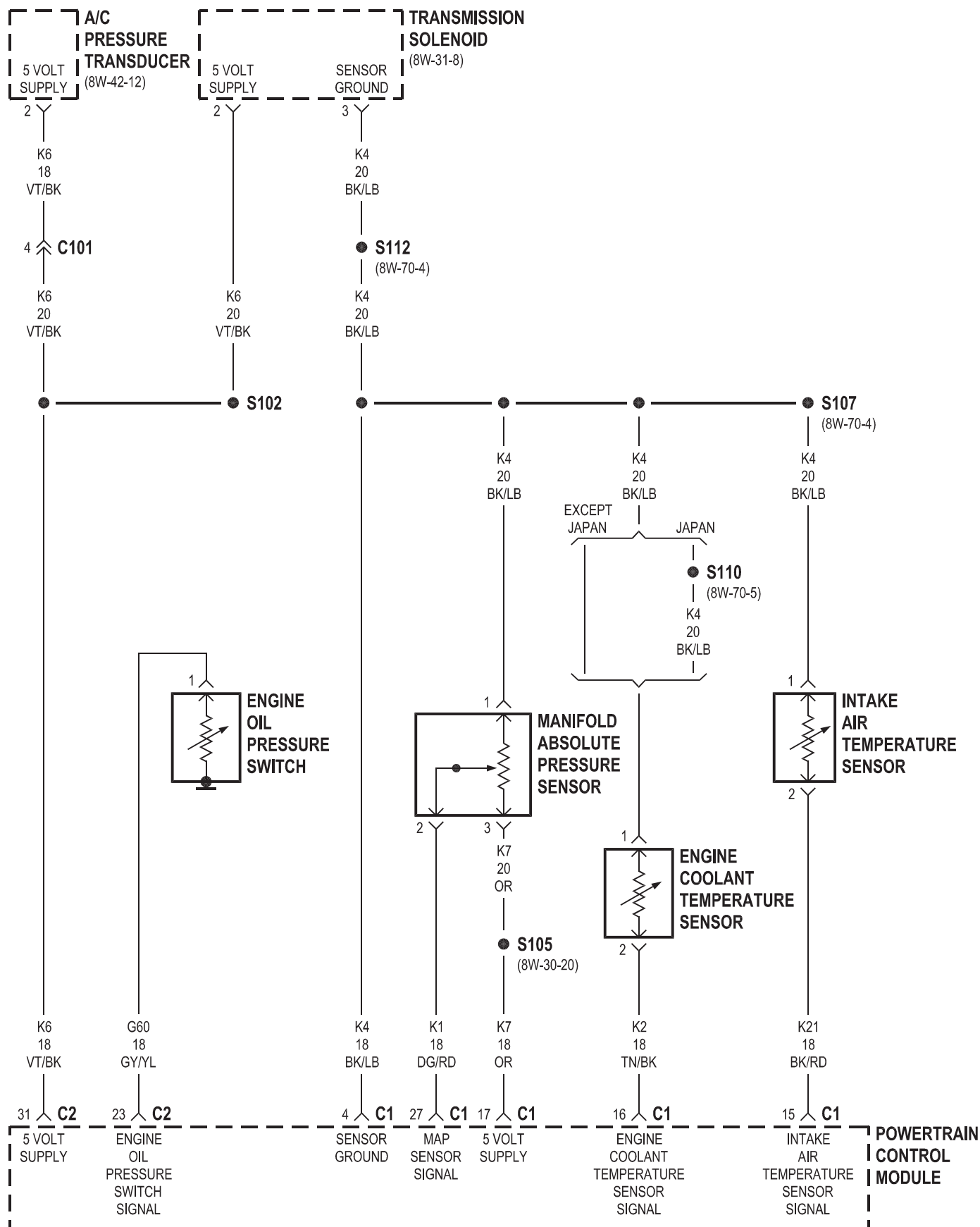


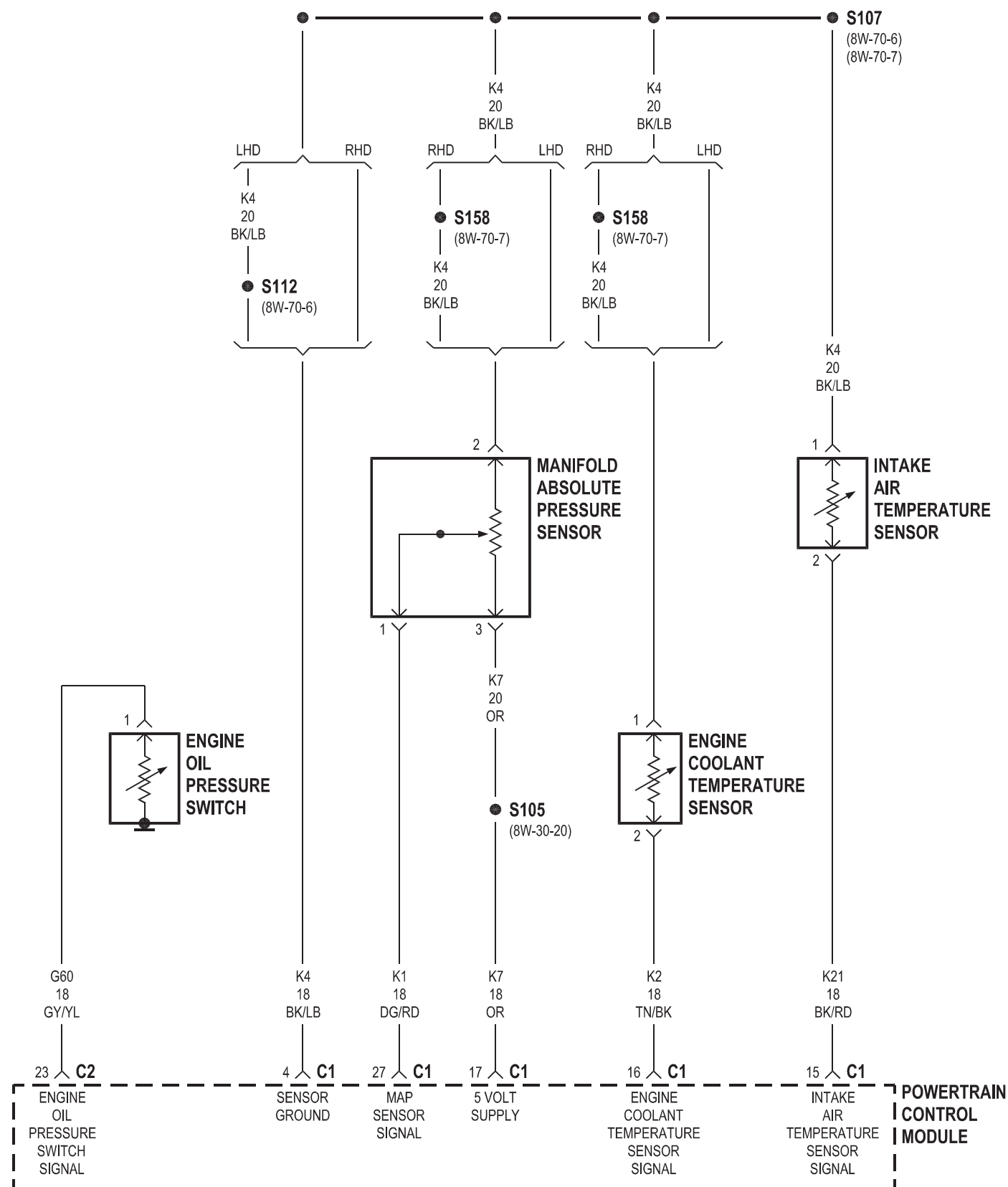


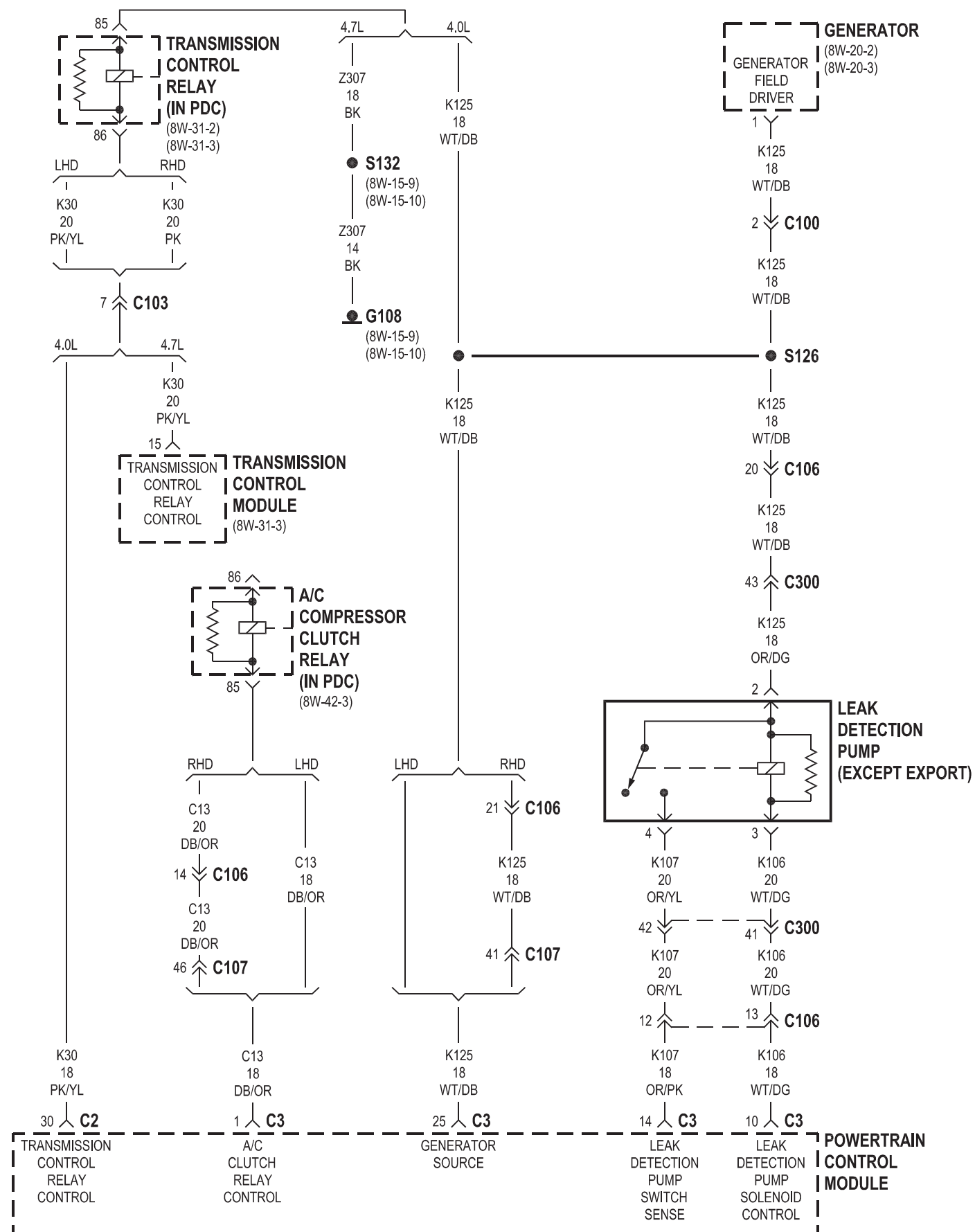






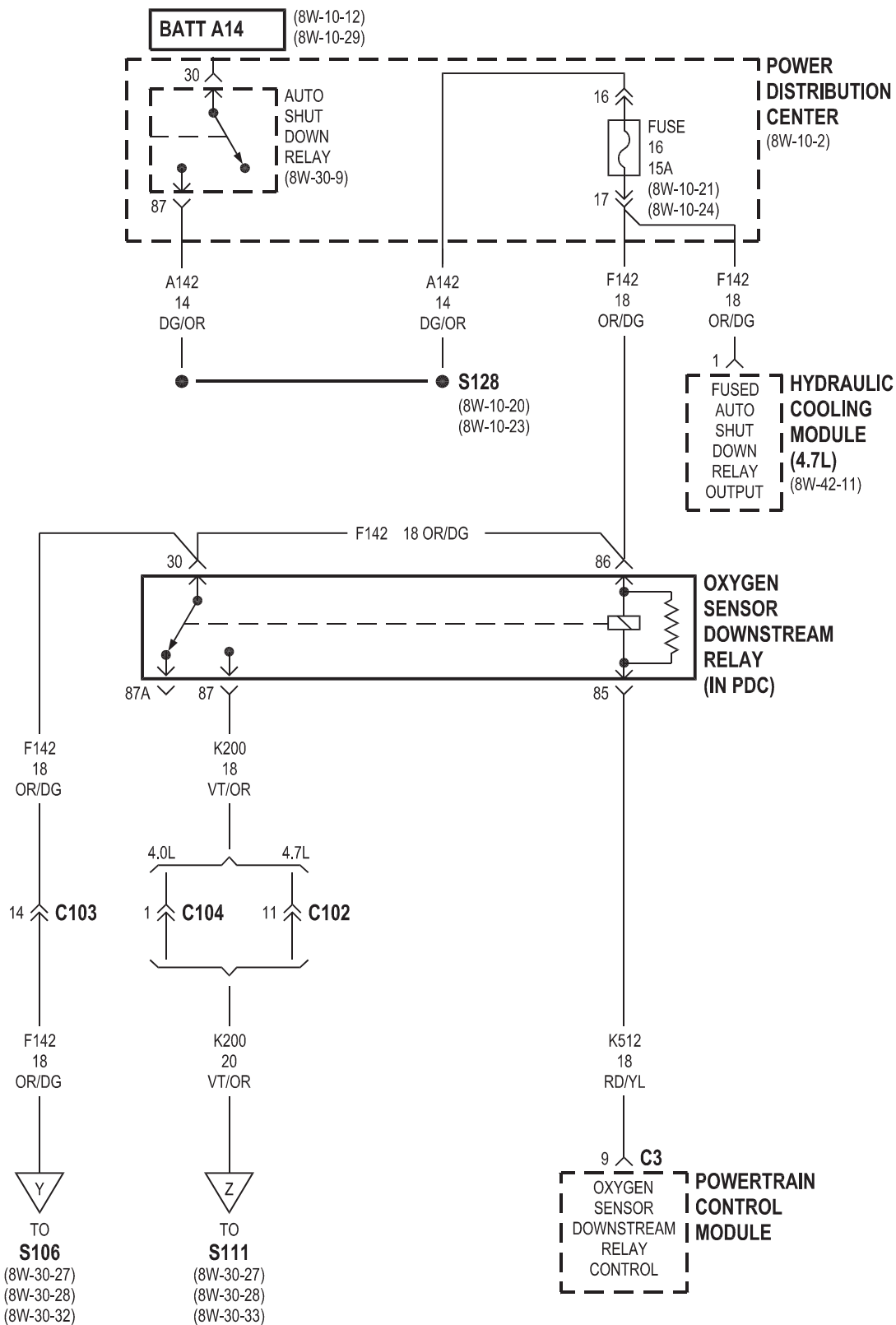


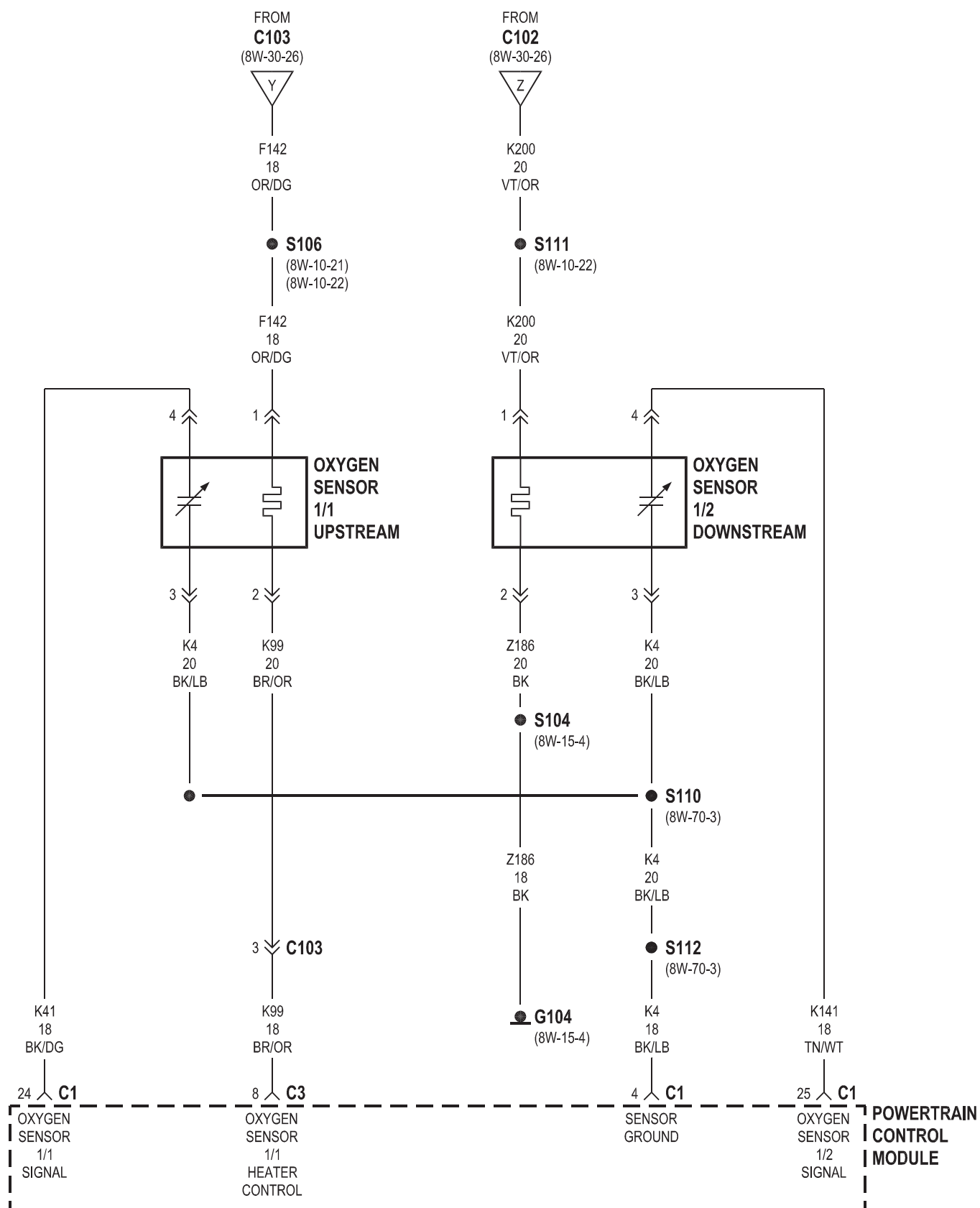


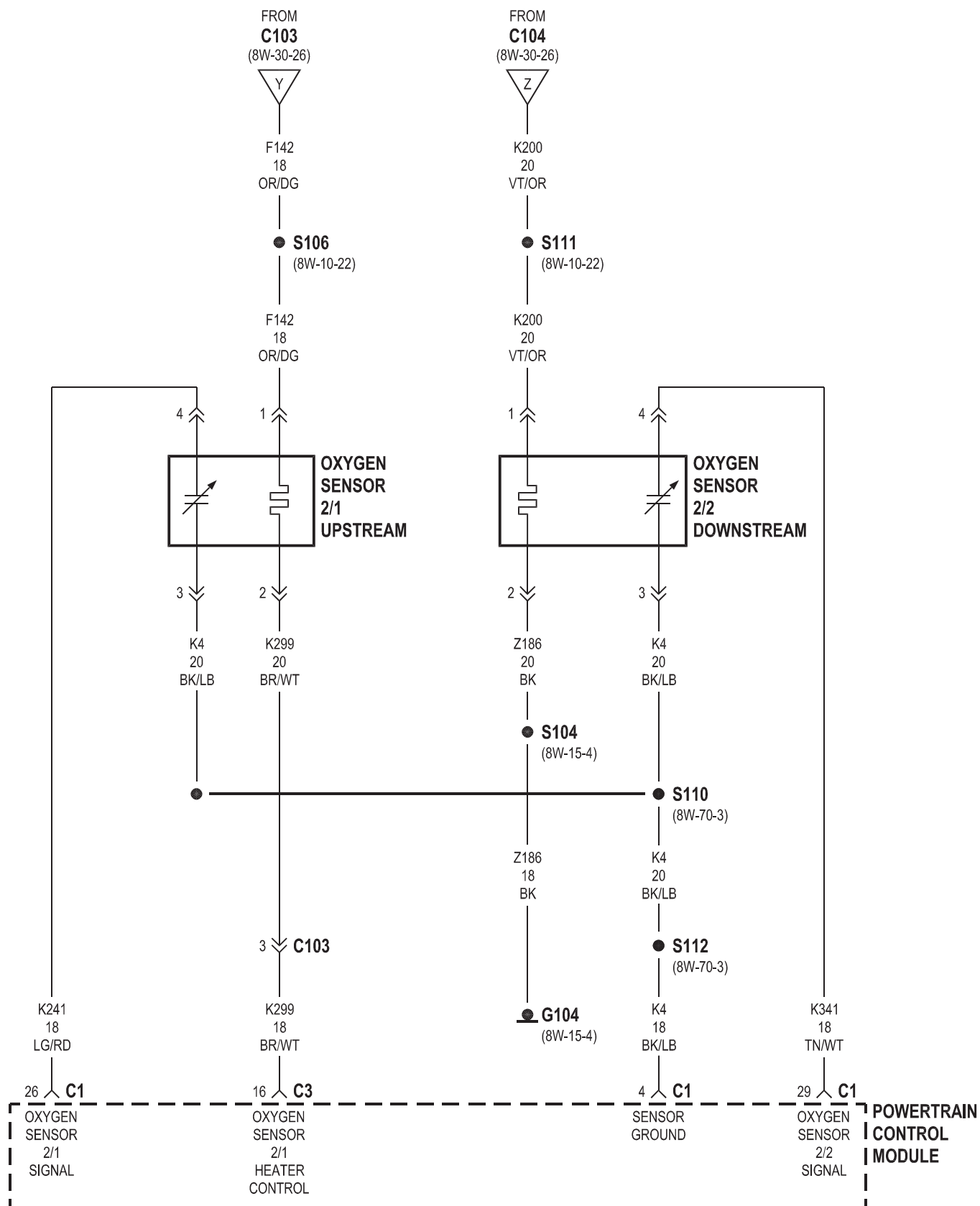


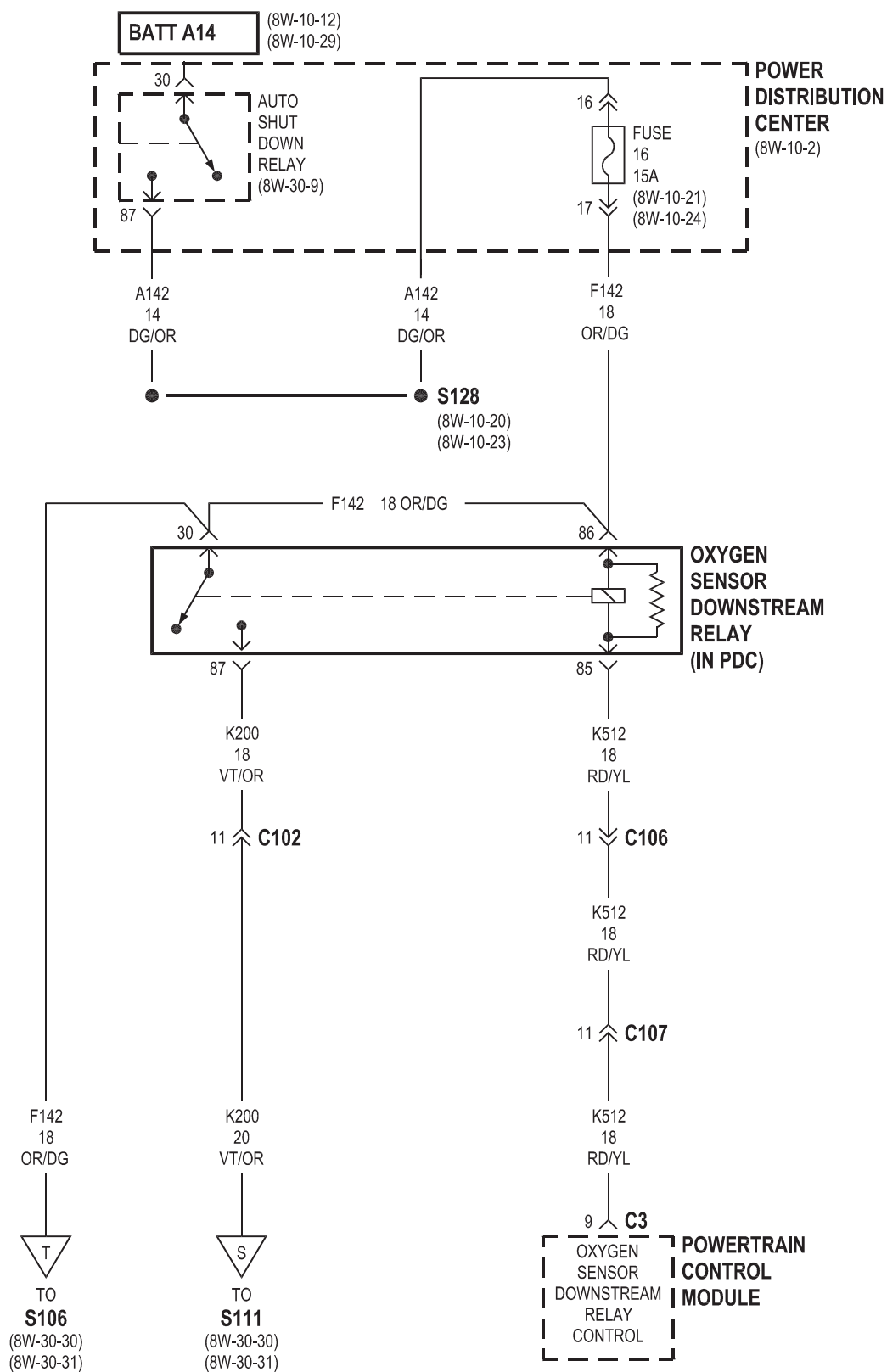


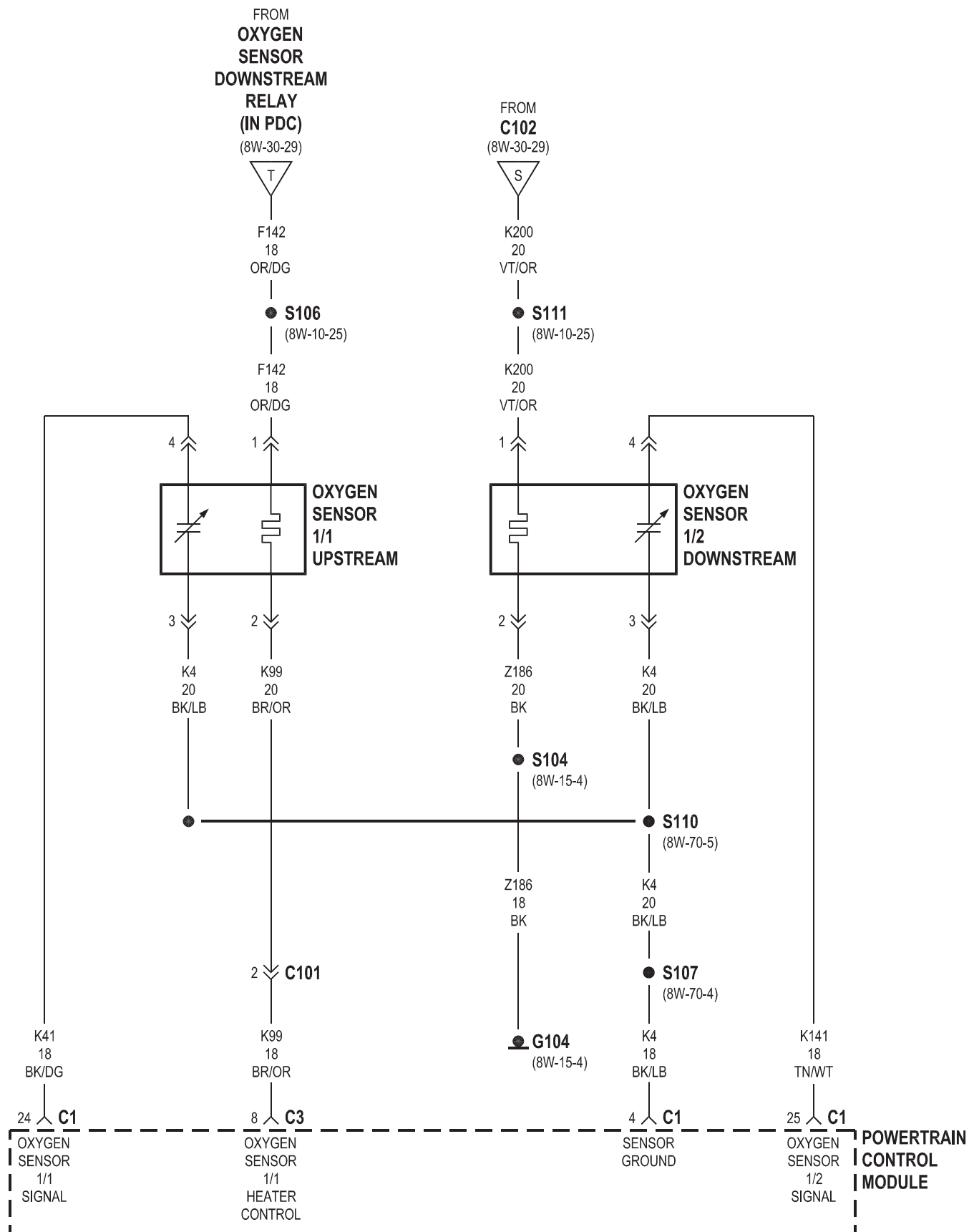




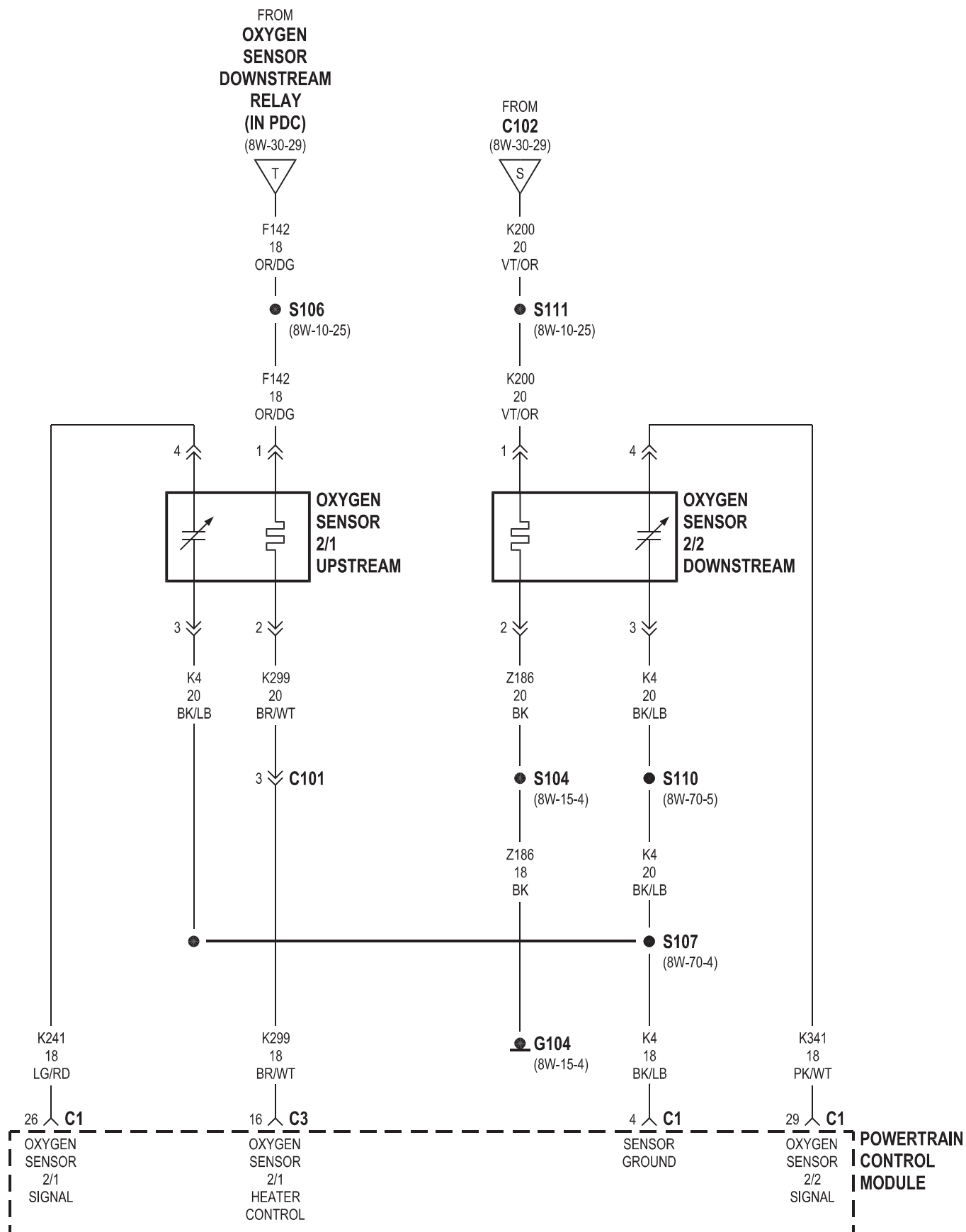




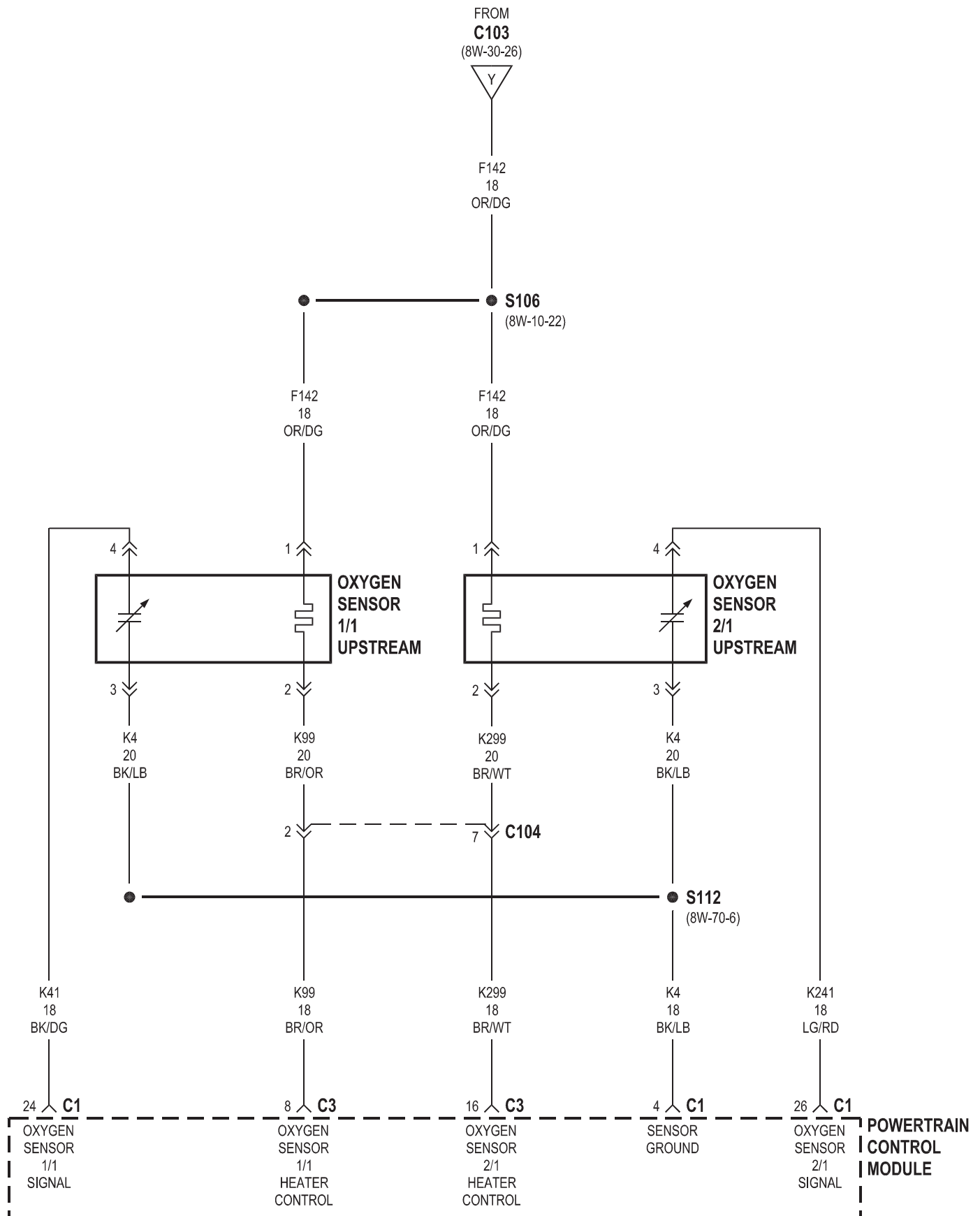


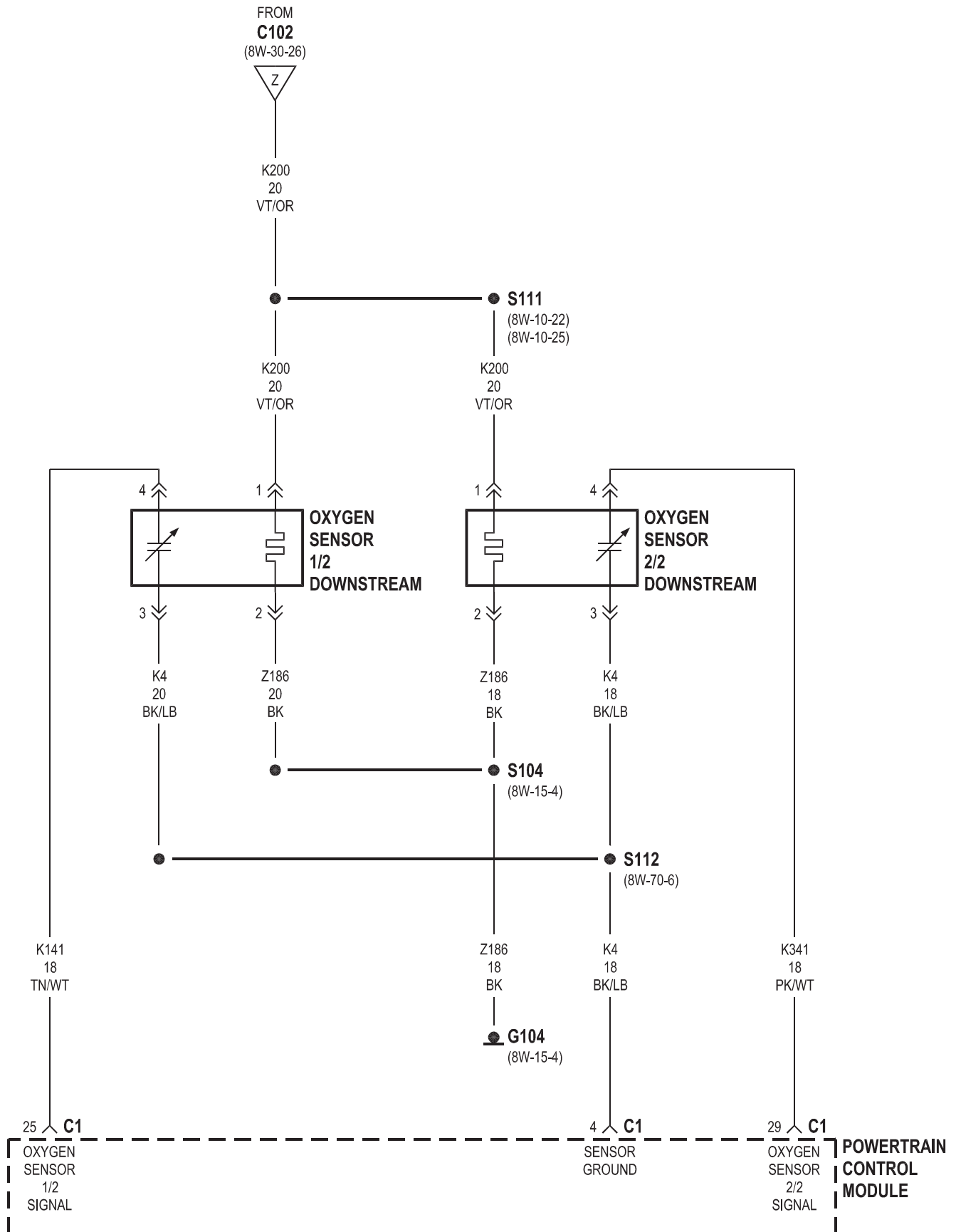


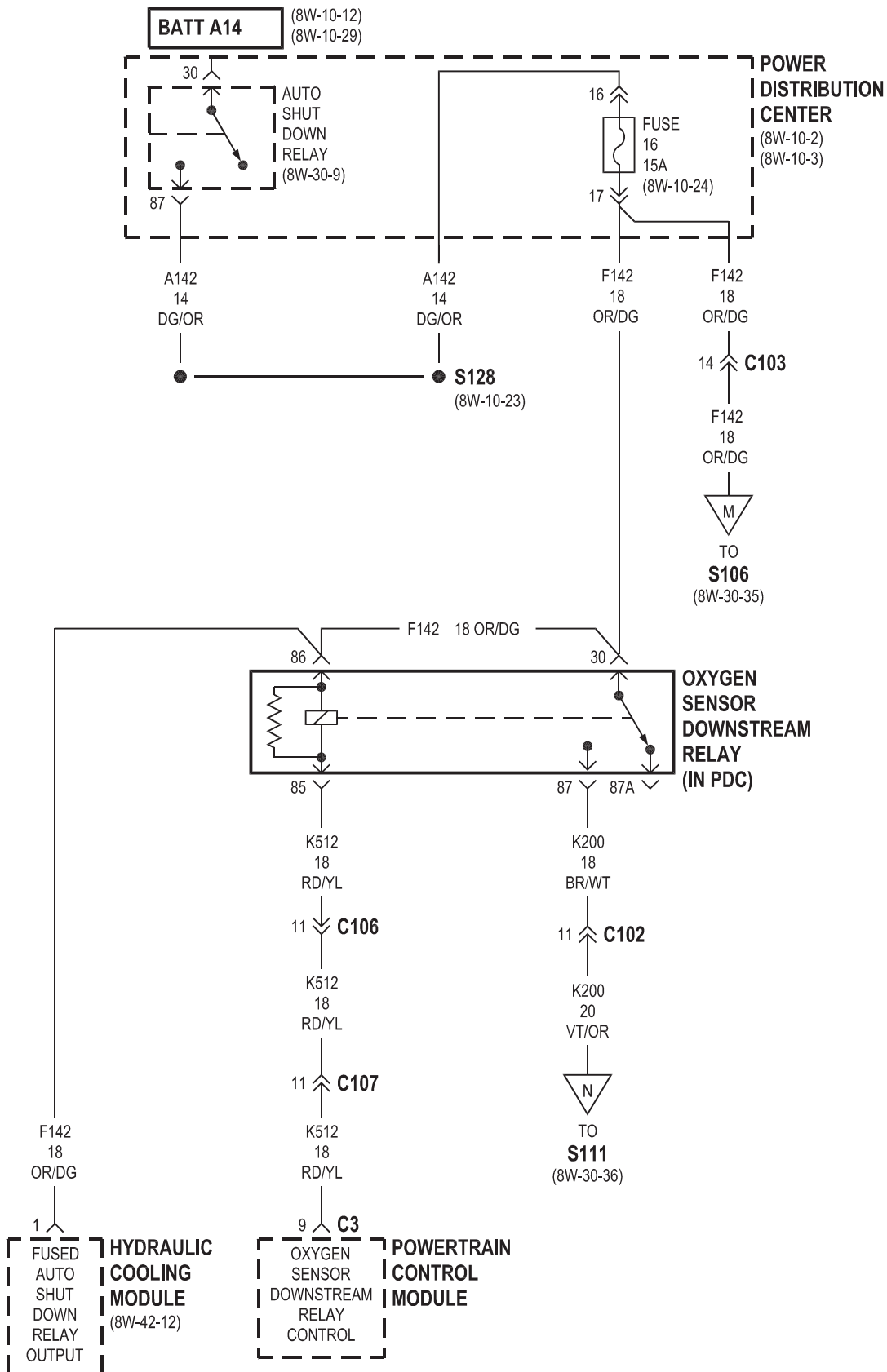


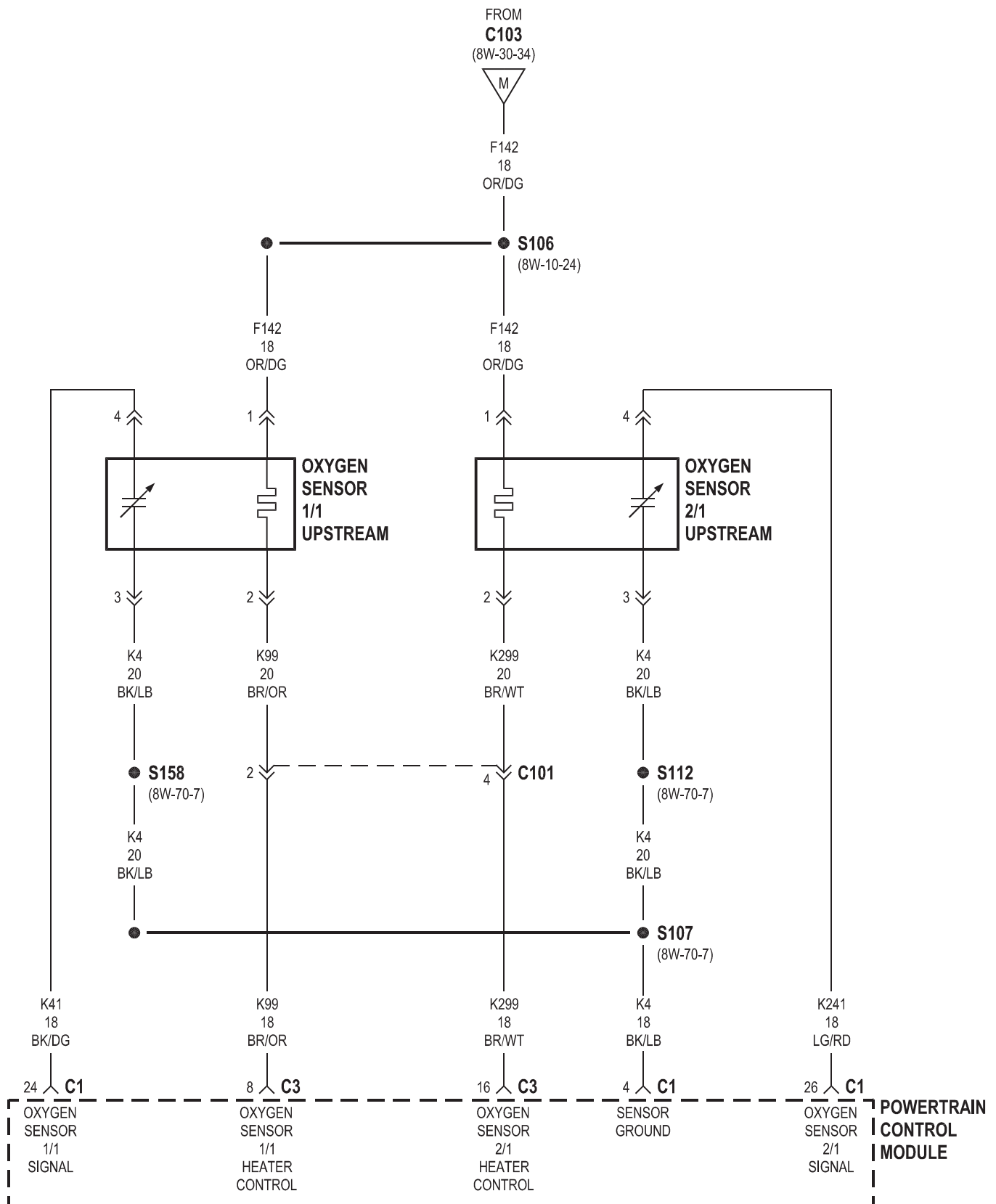


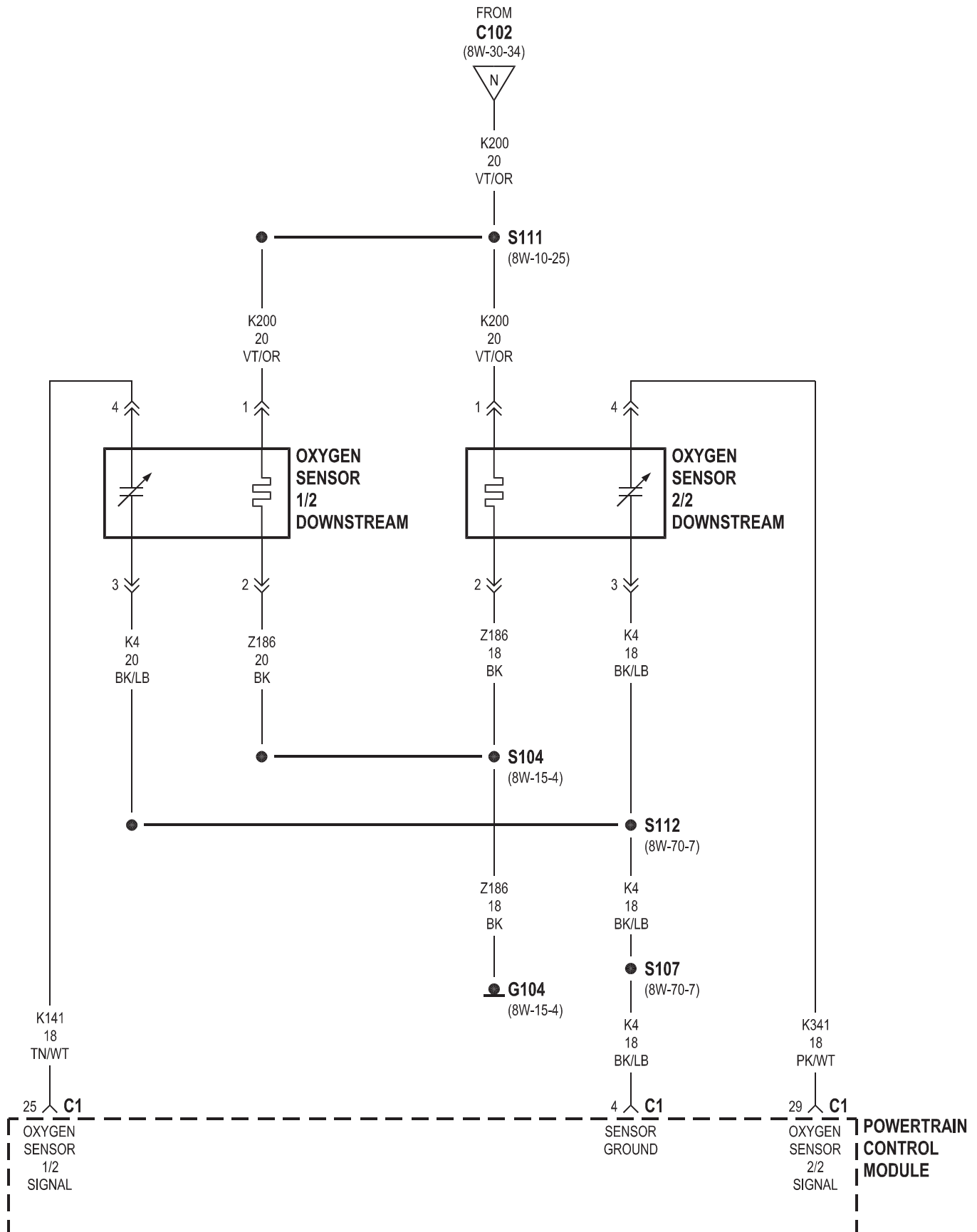
## 4.7L LHD





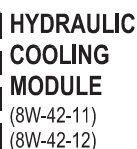




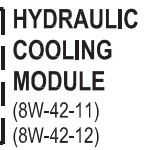


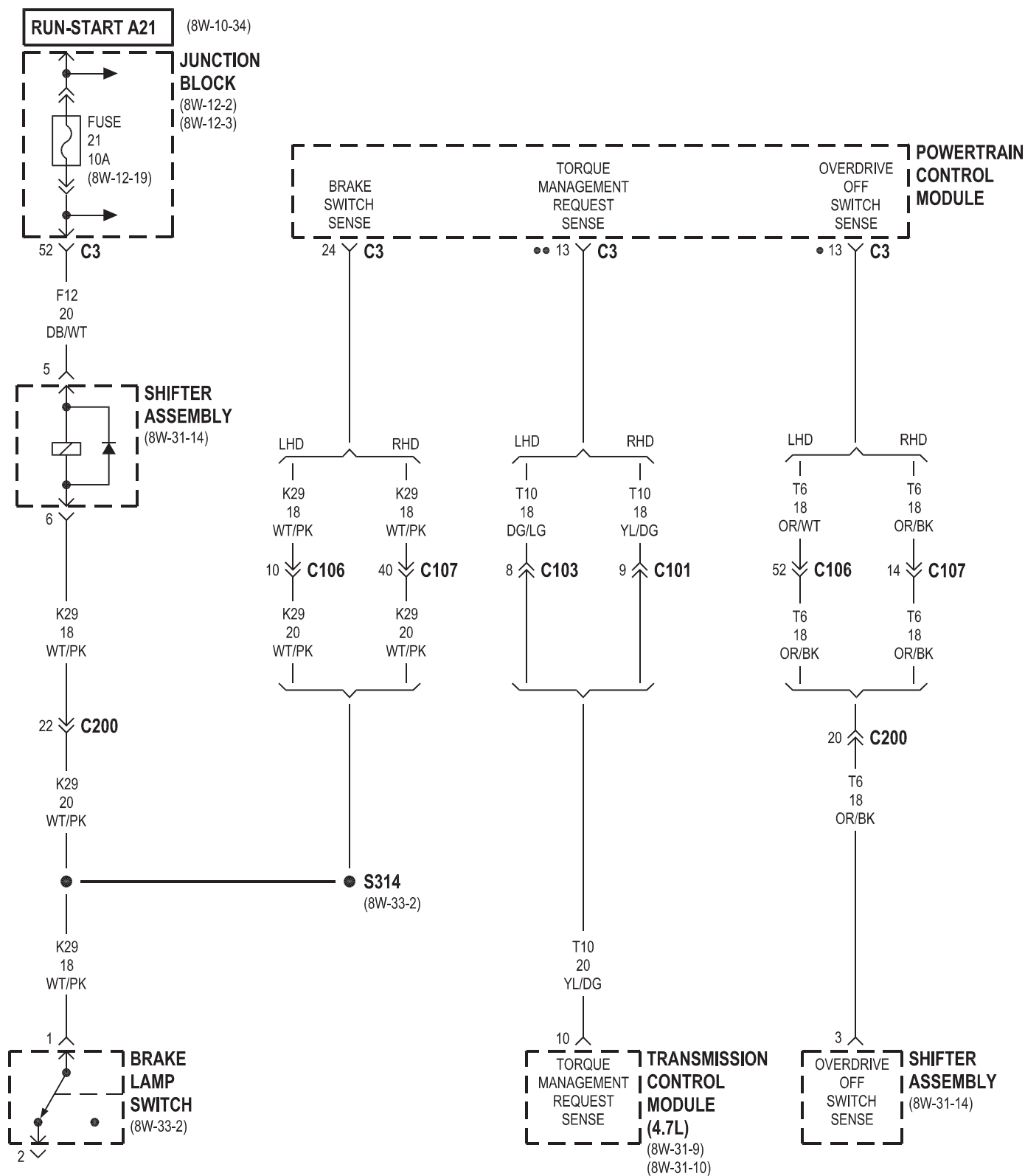


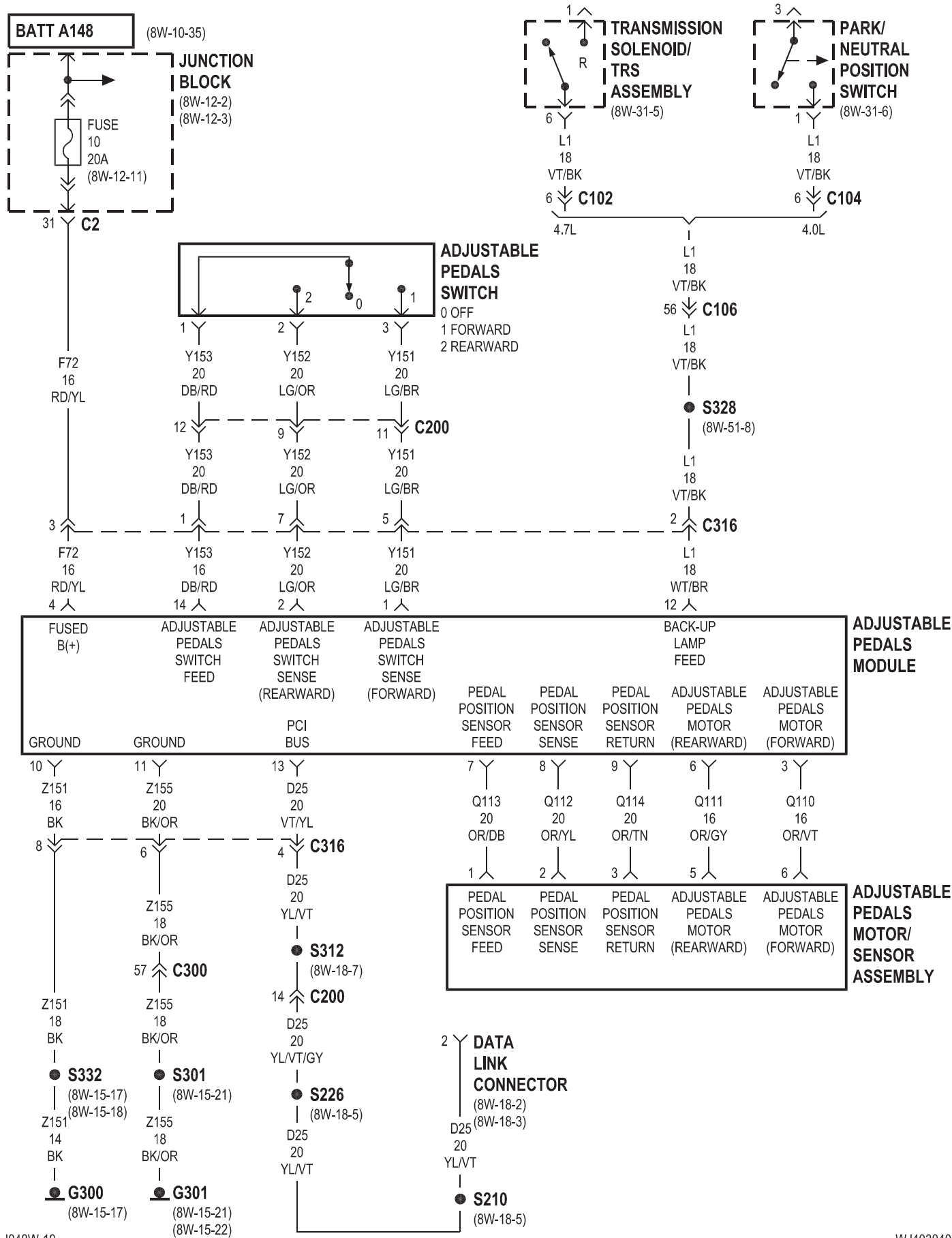
**A/C  
PRESSURE  
TRANSDUCER**  
(8W-42-11)  
(8W-42-12)

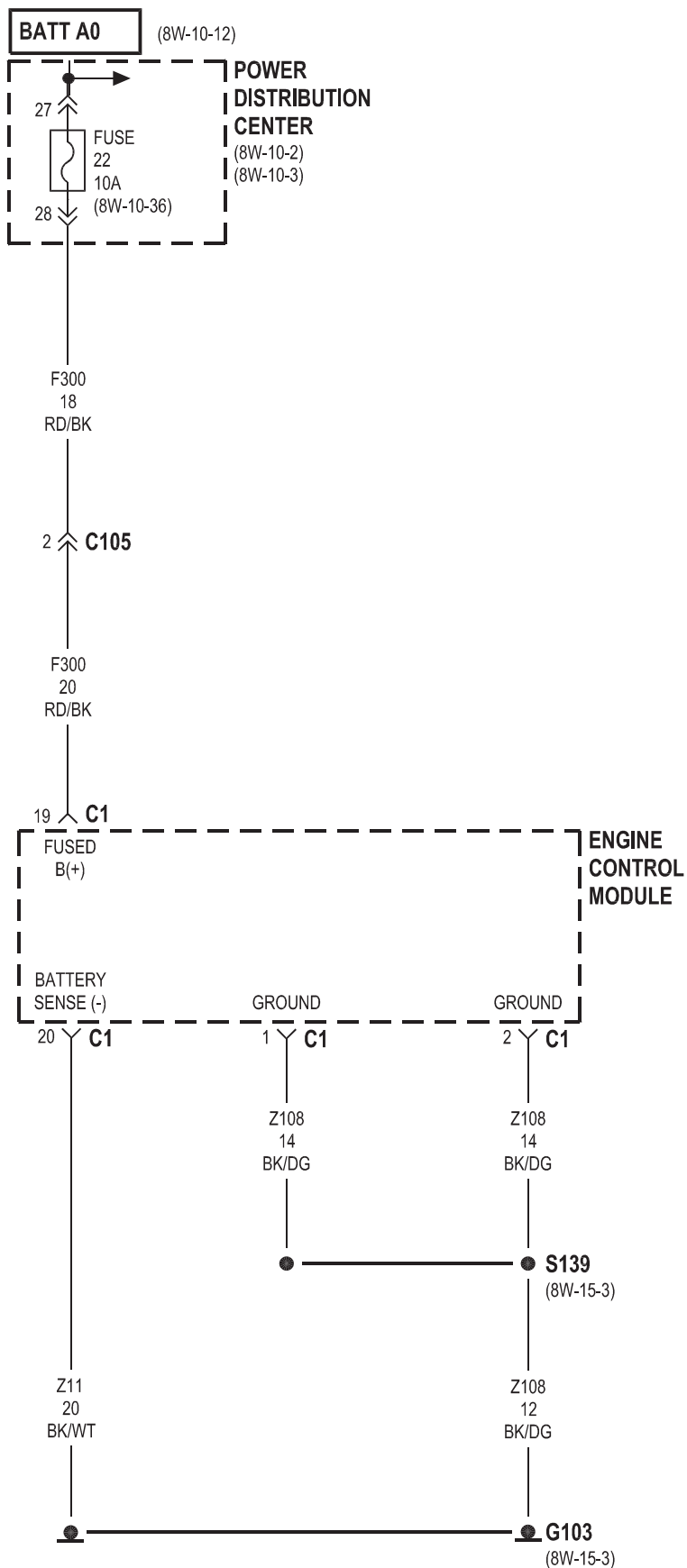


**A/C  
PRESSURE  
TRANSDUCER**  
(8W-42-11)  
(8W-42-12)

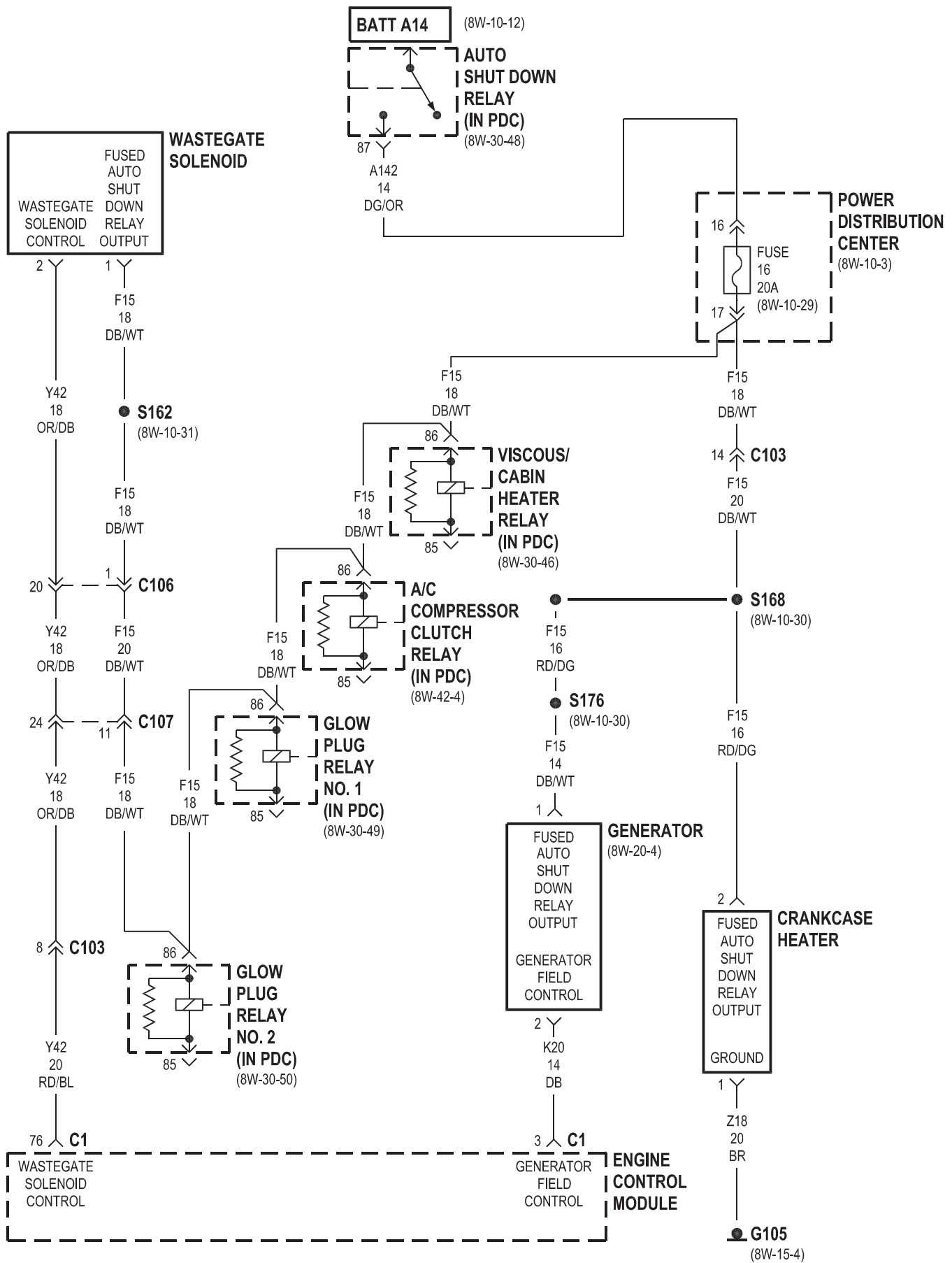




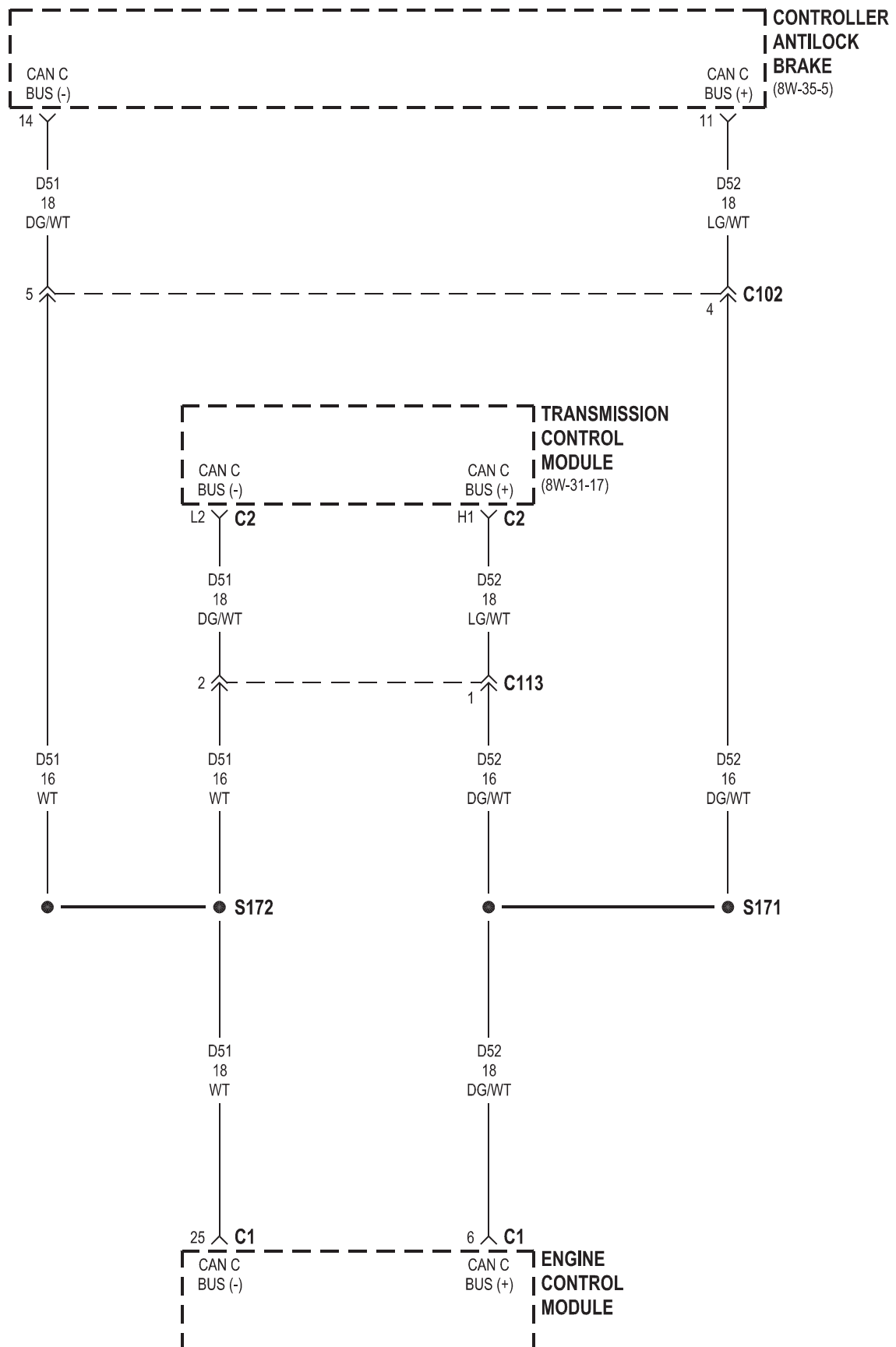


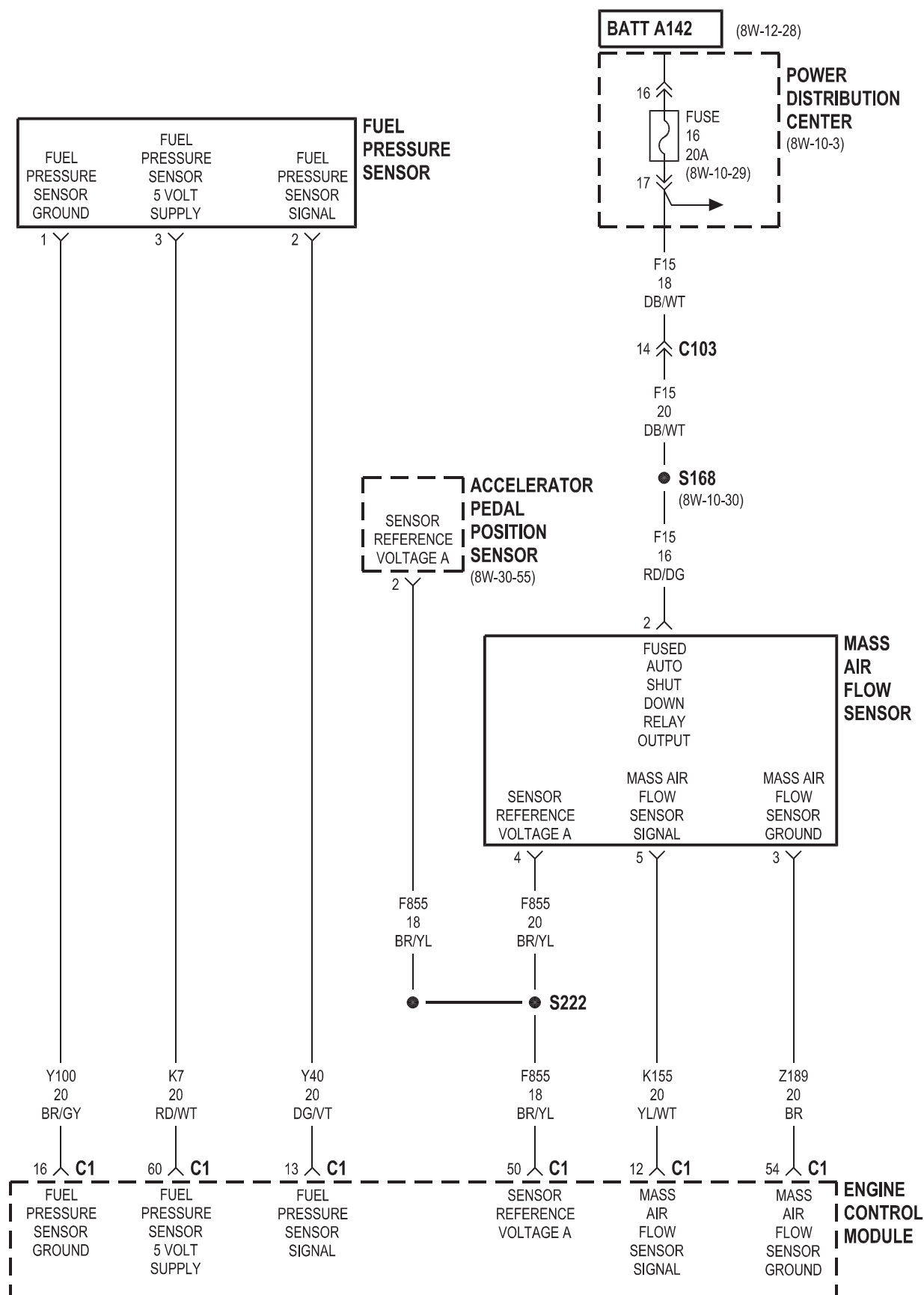


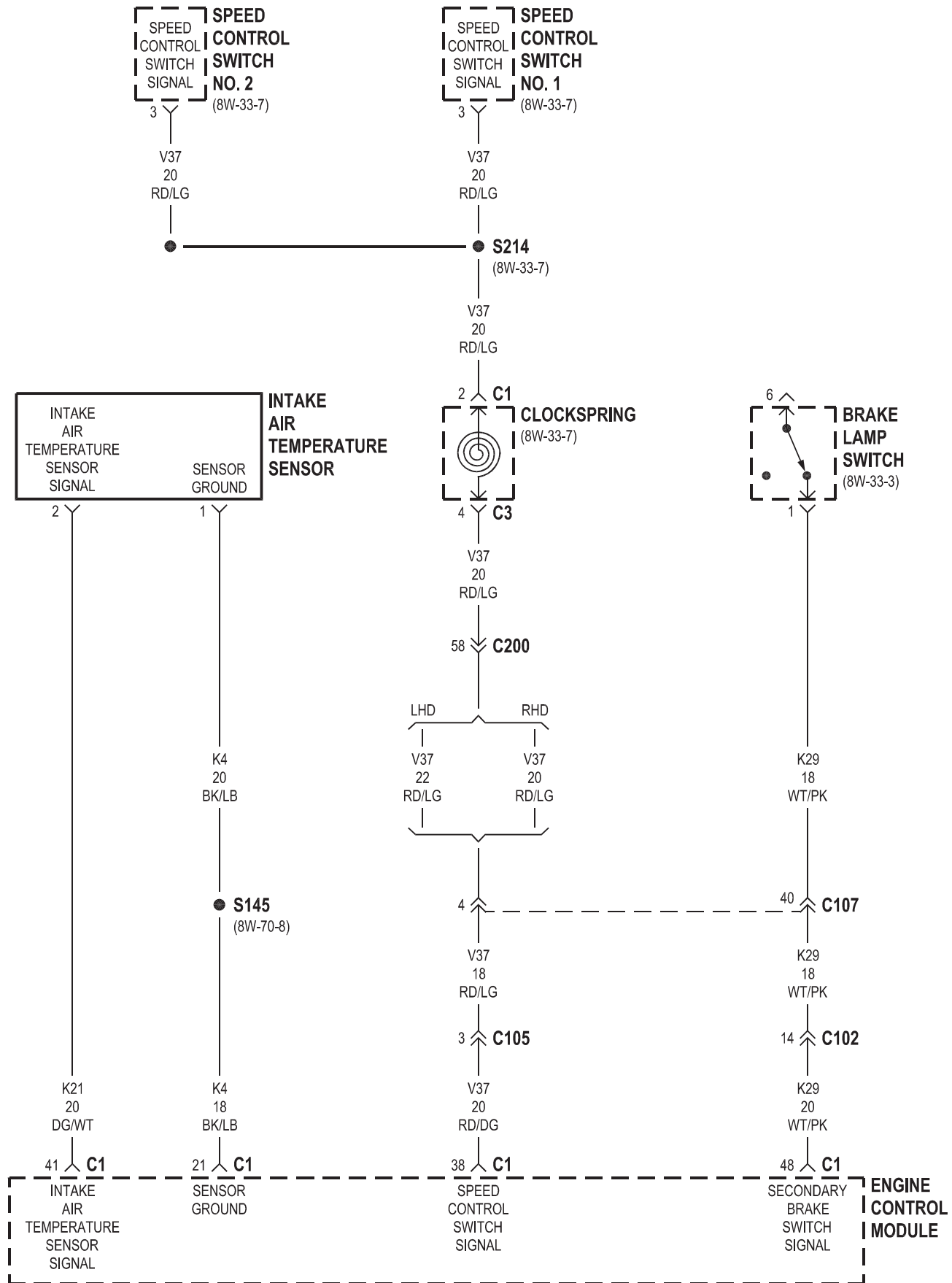
## DIESEL

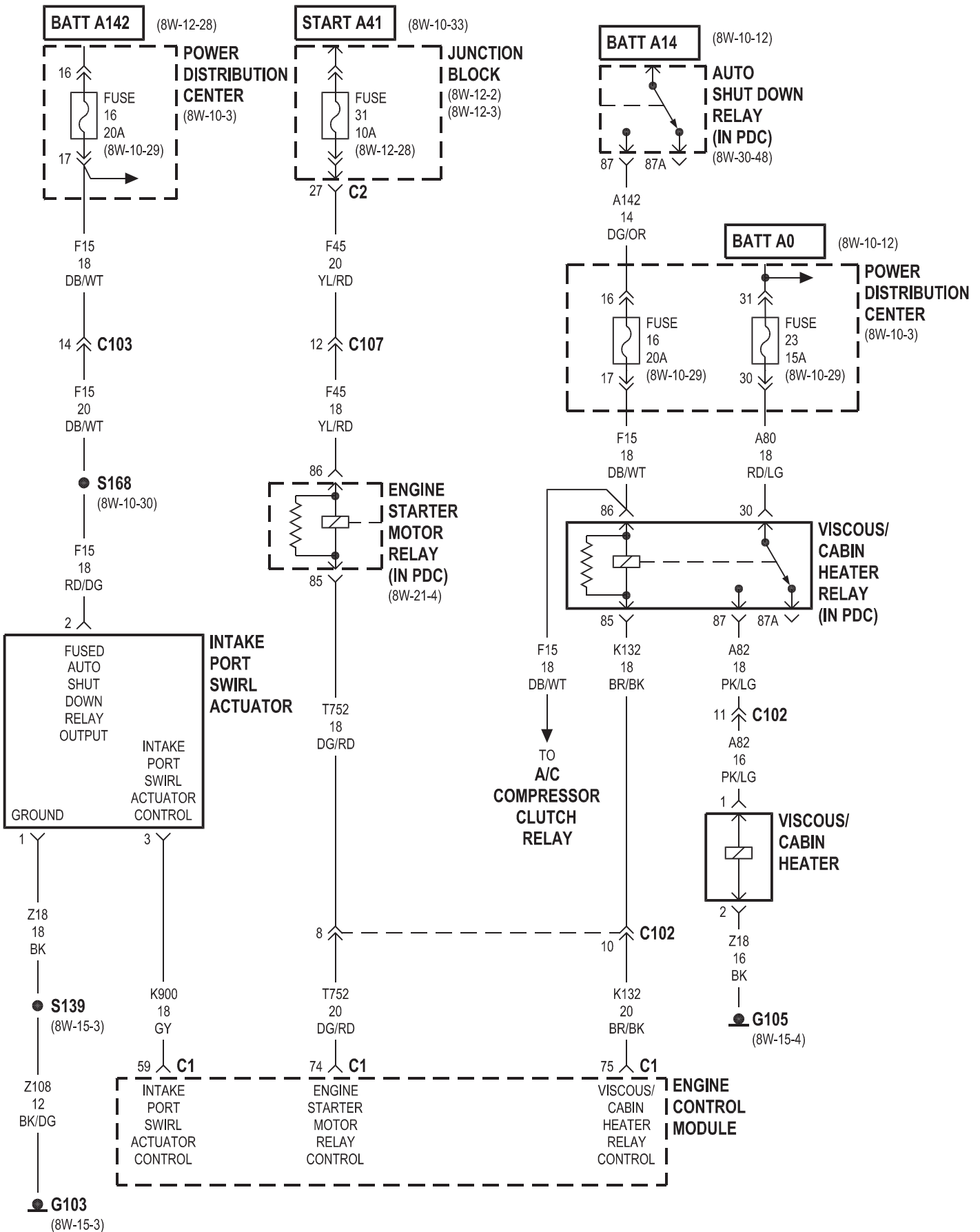


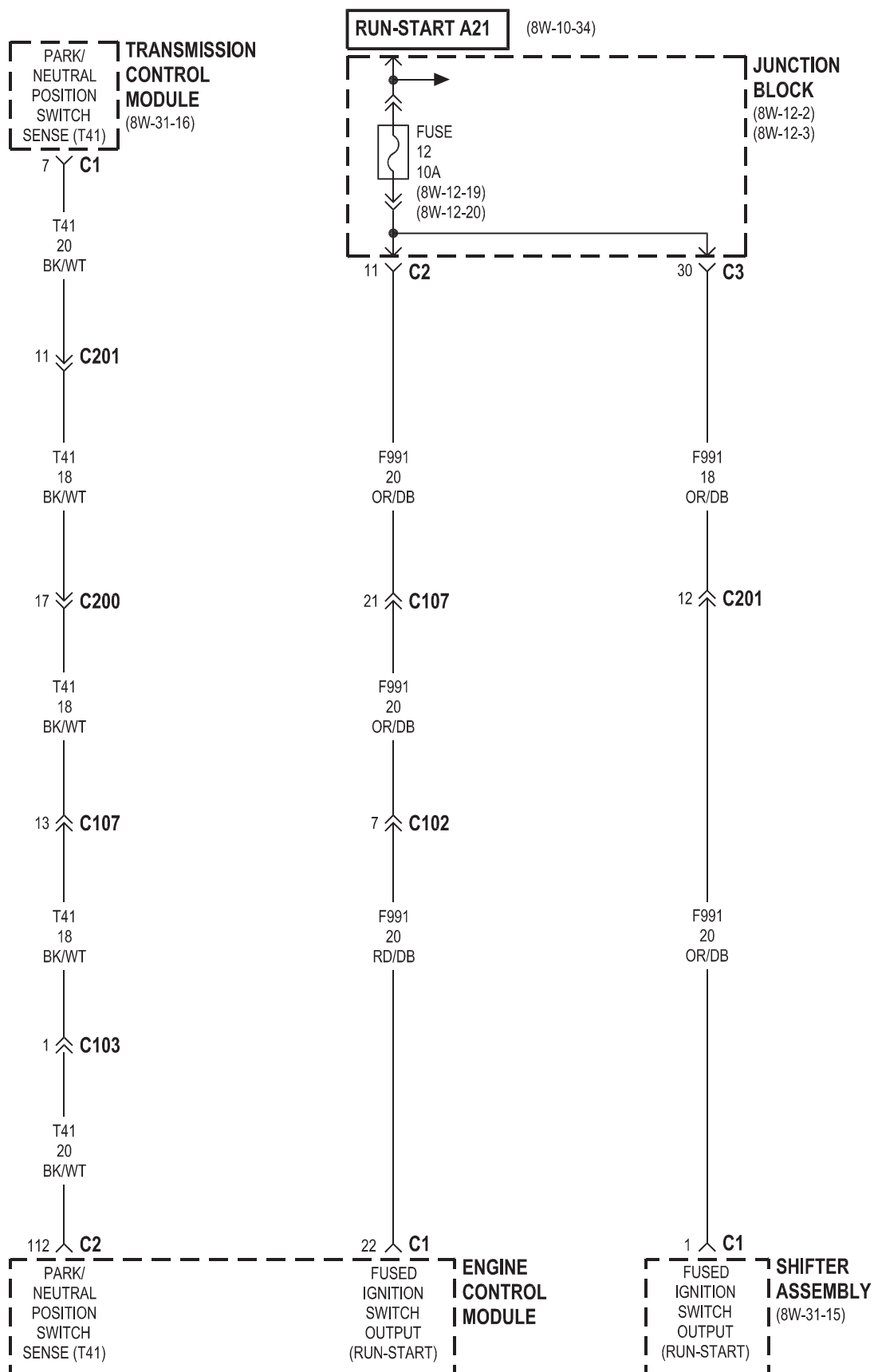


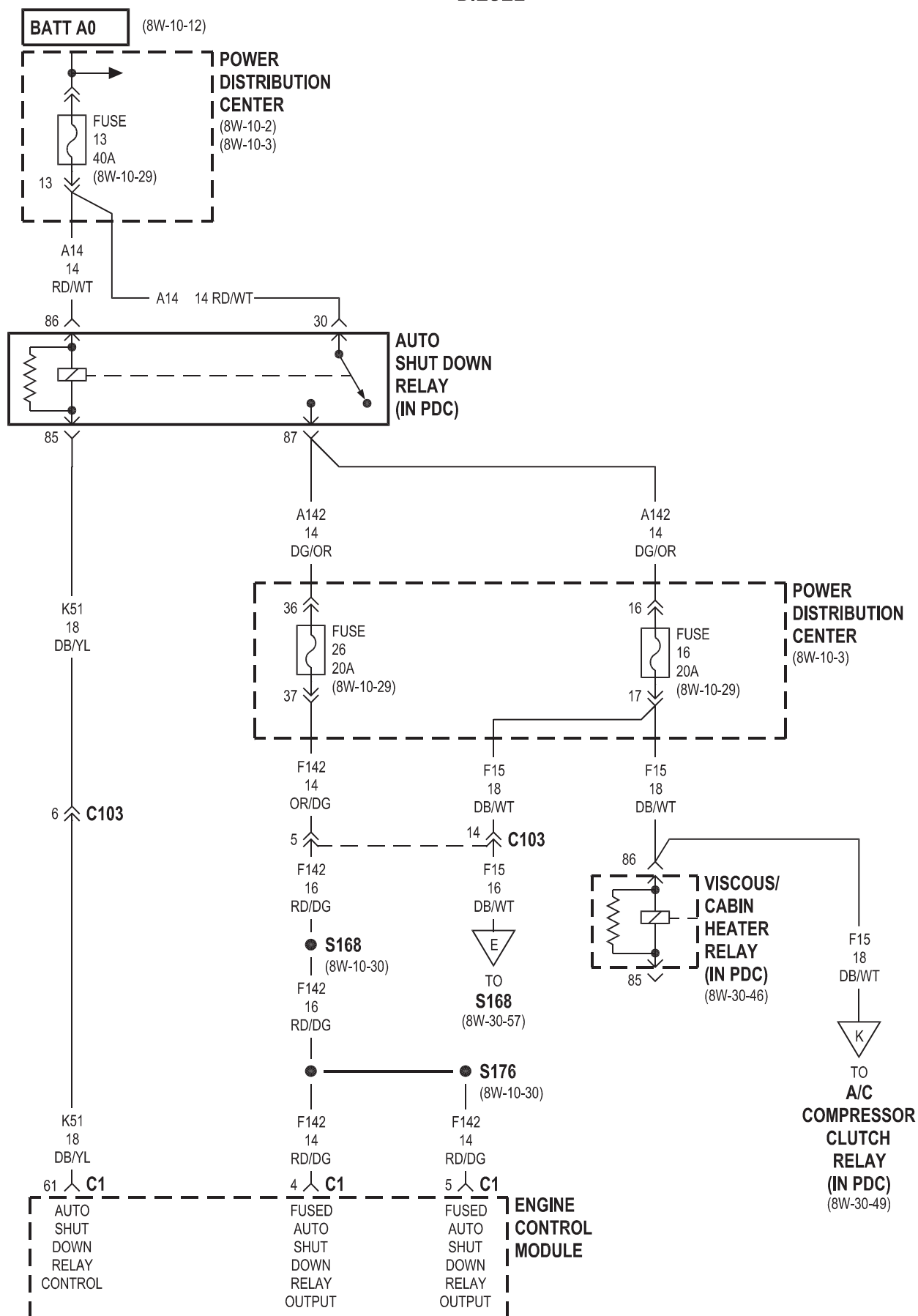








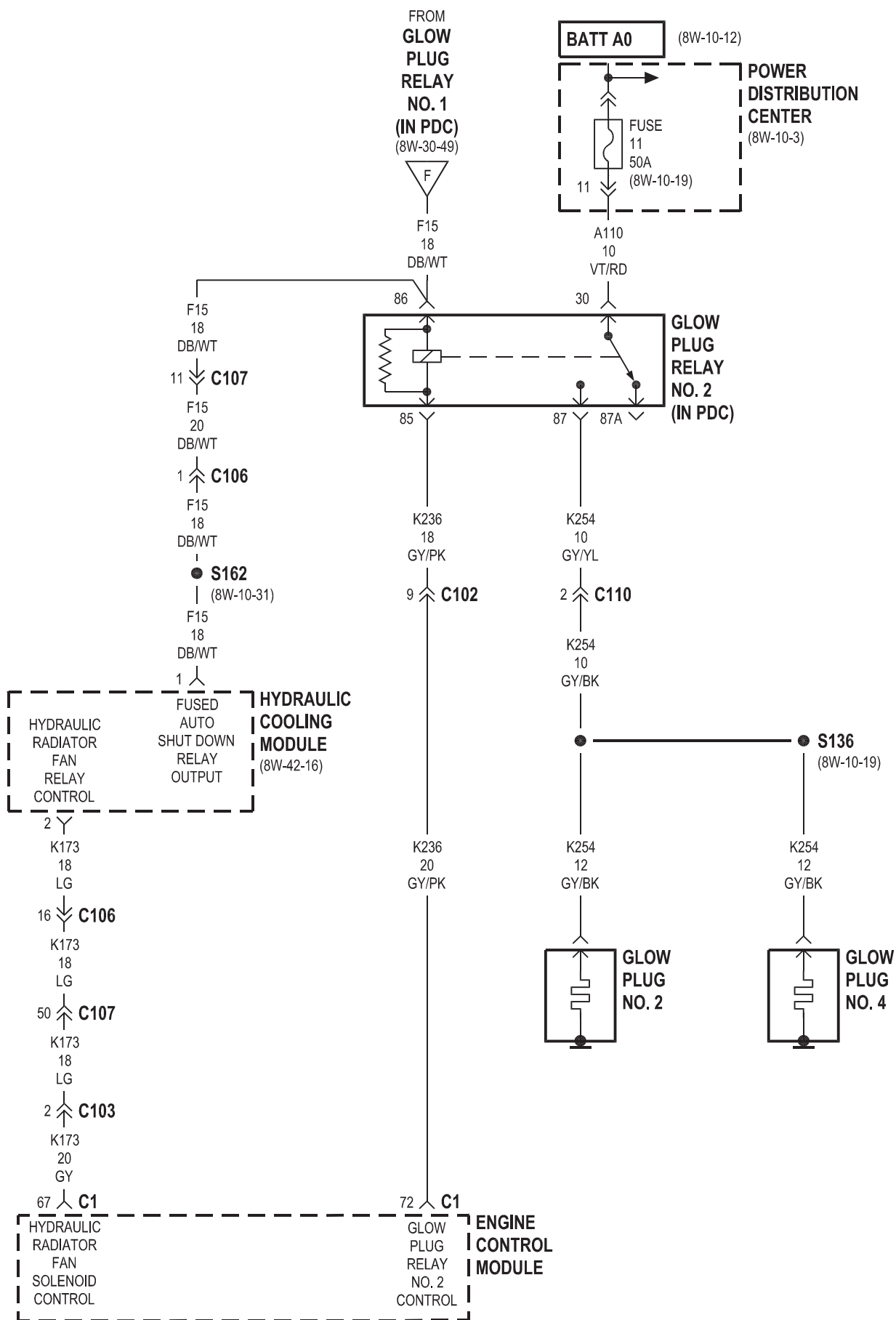


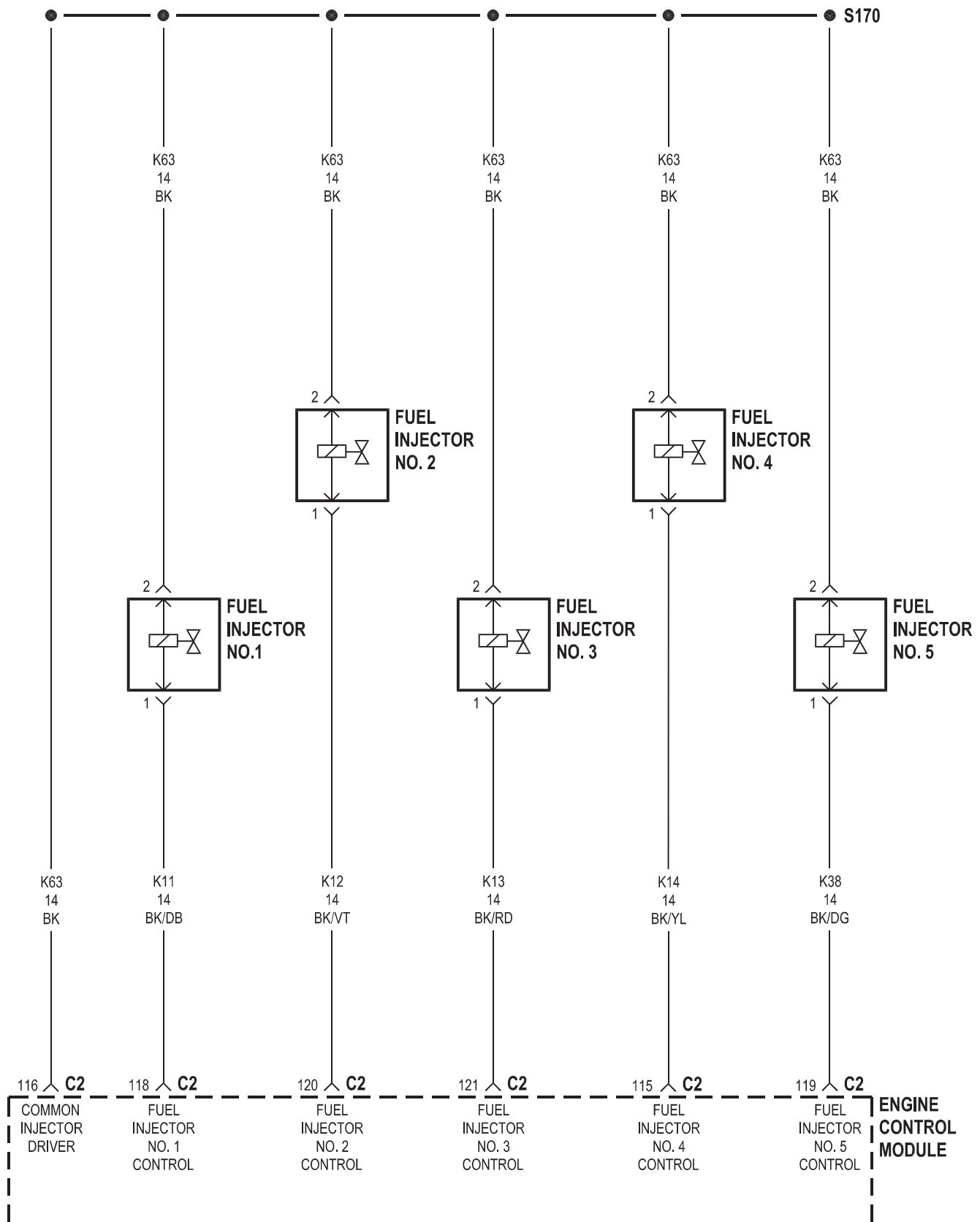


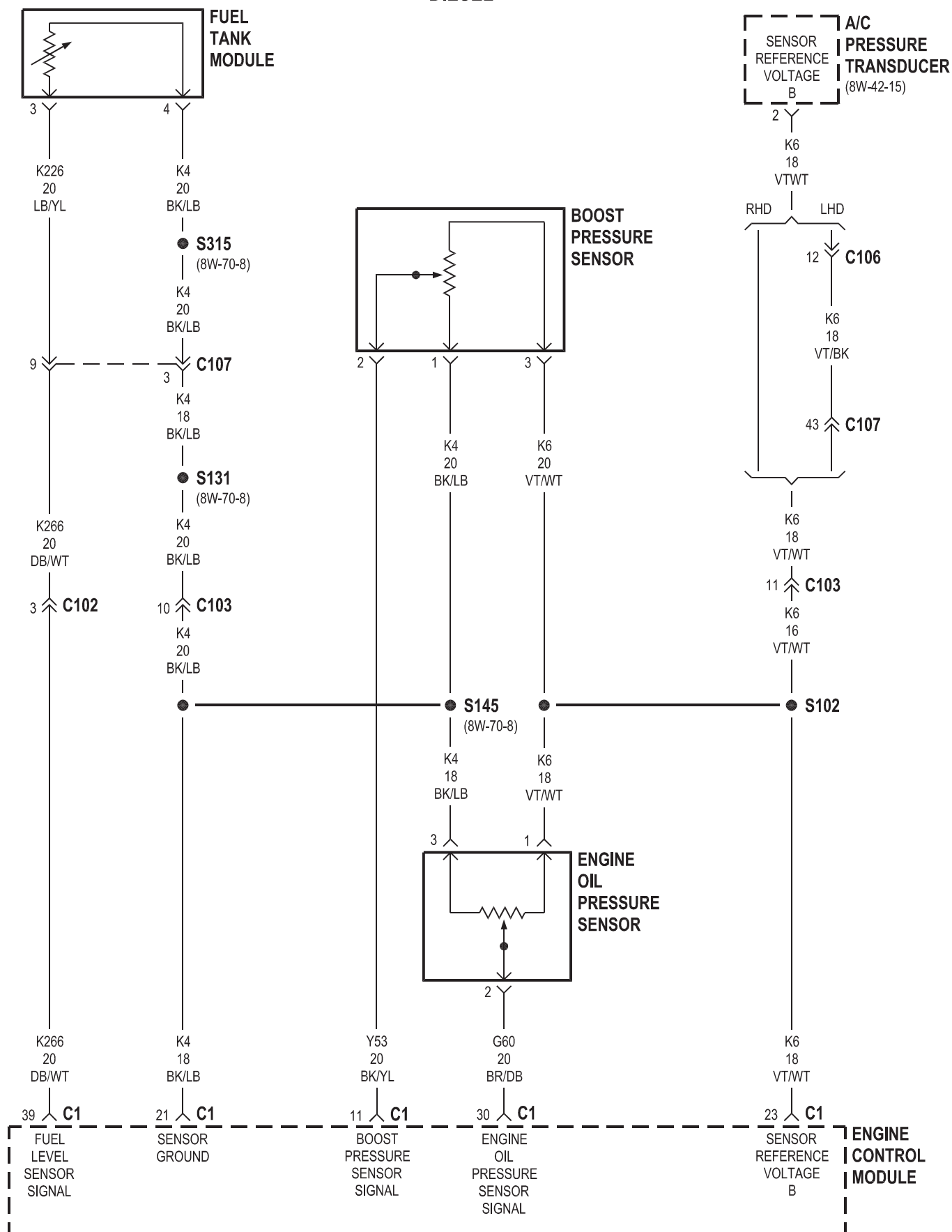


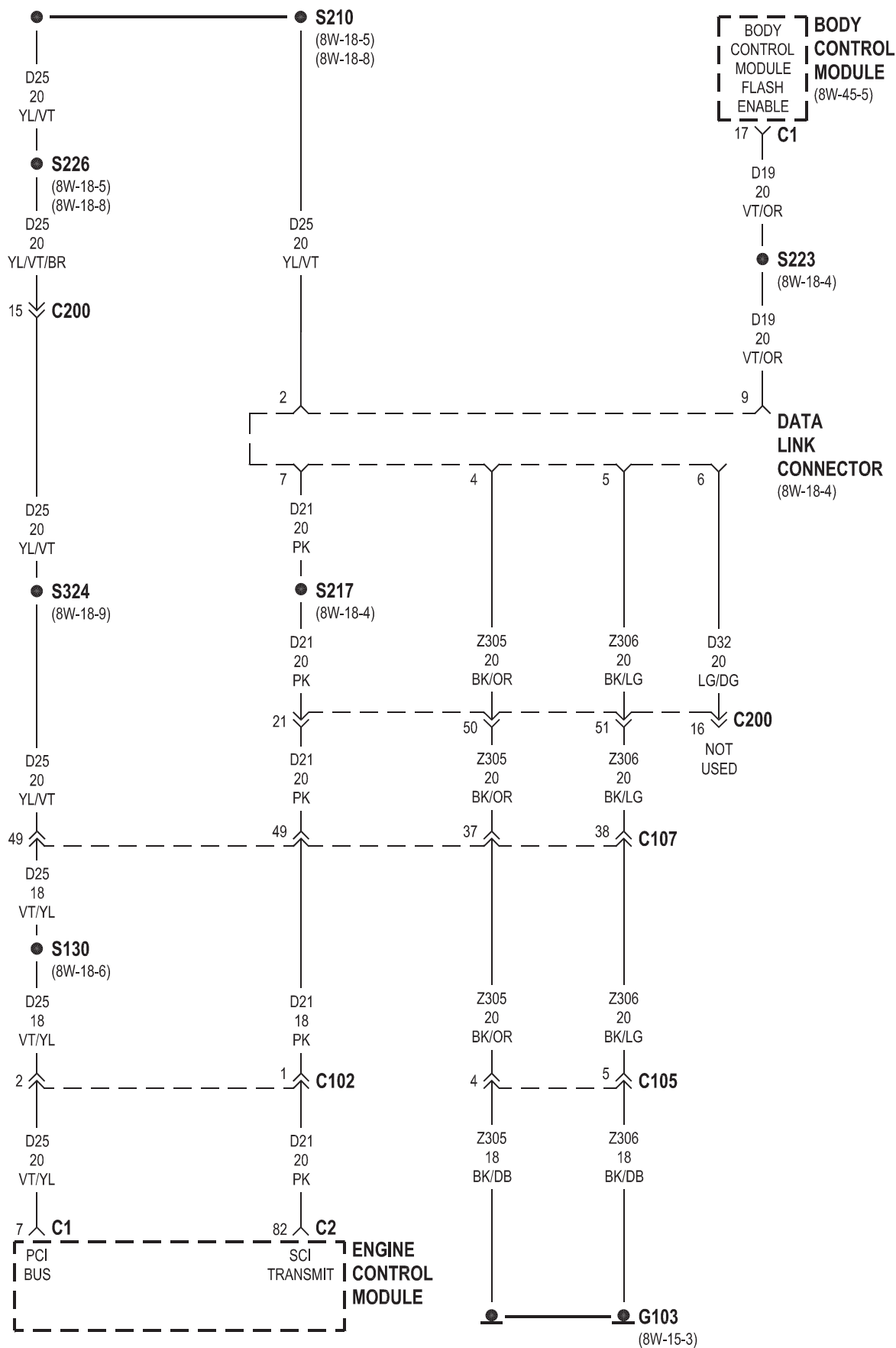


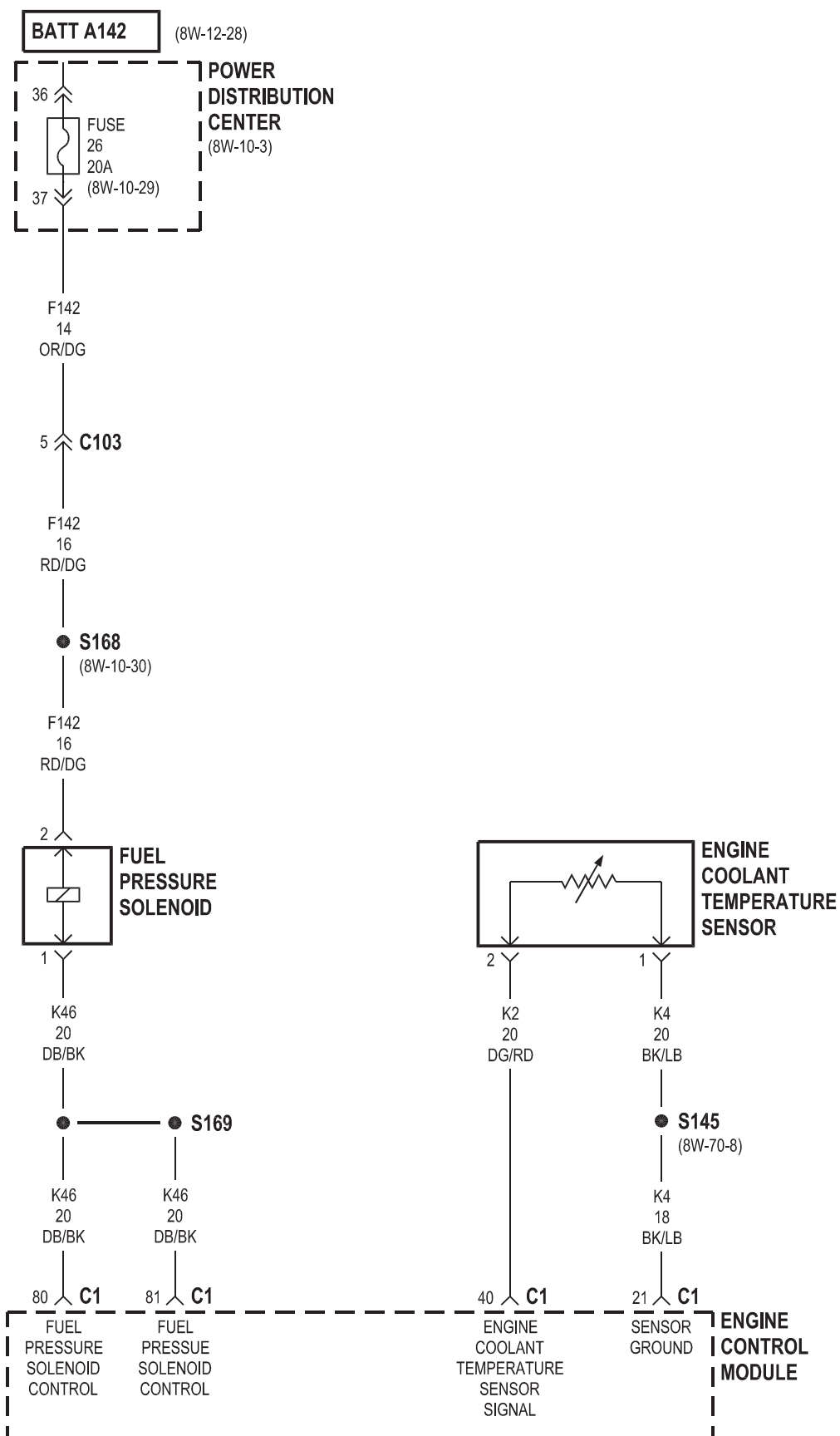
## DIESEL



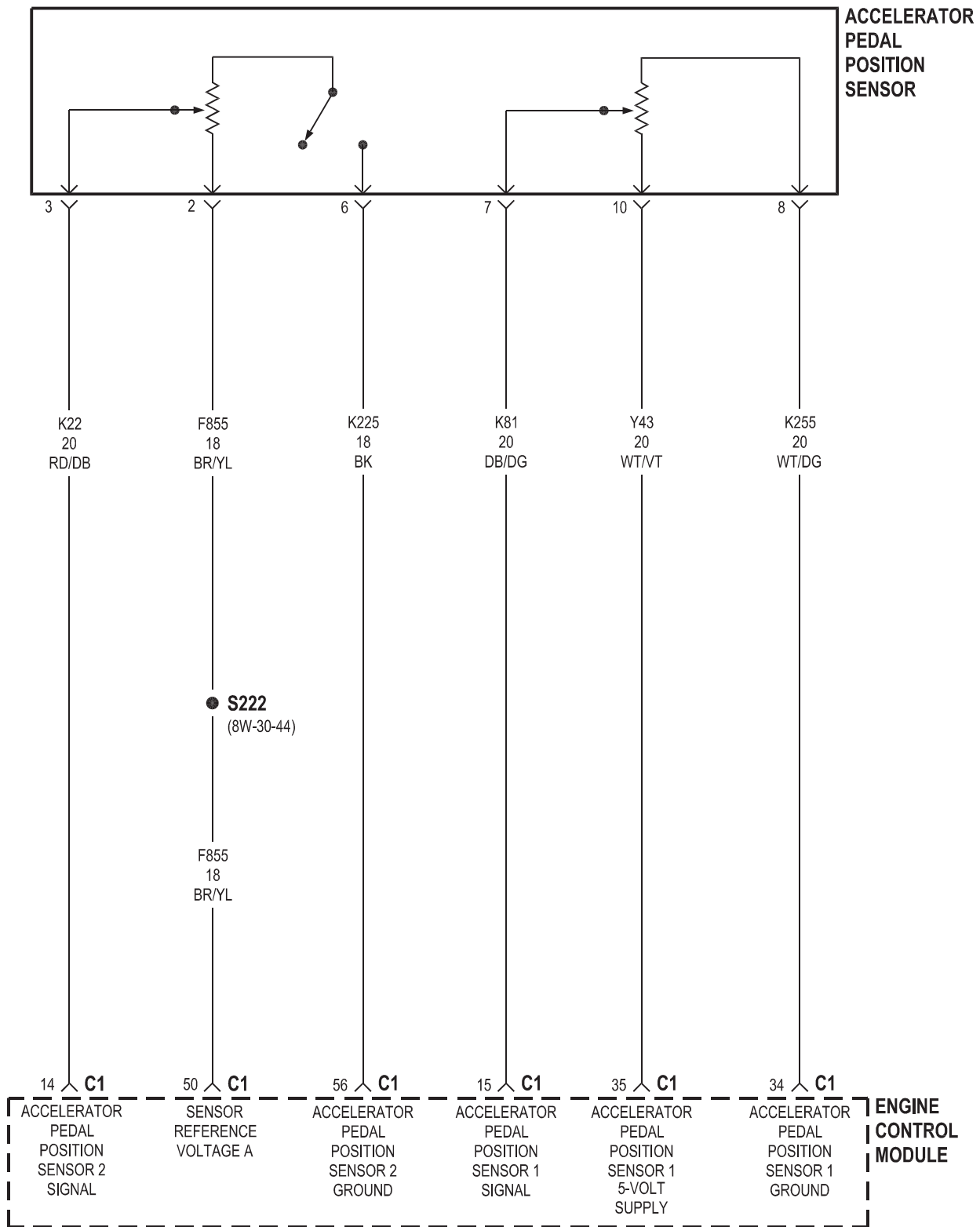


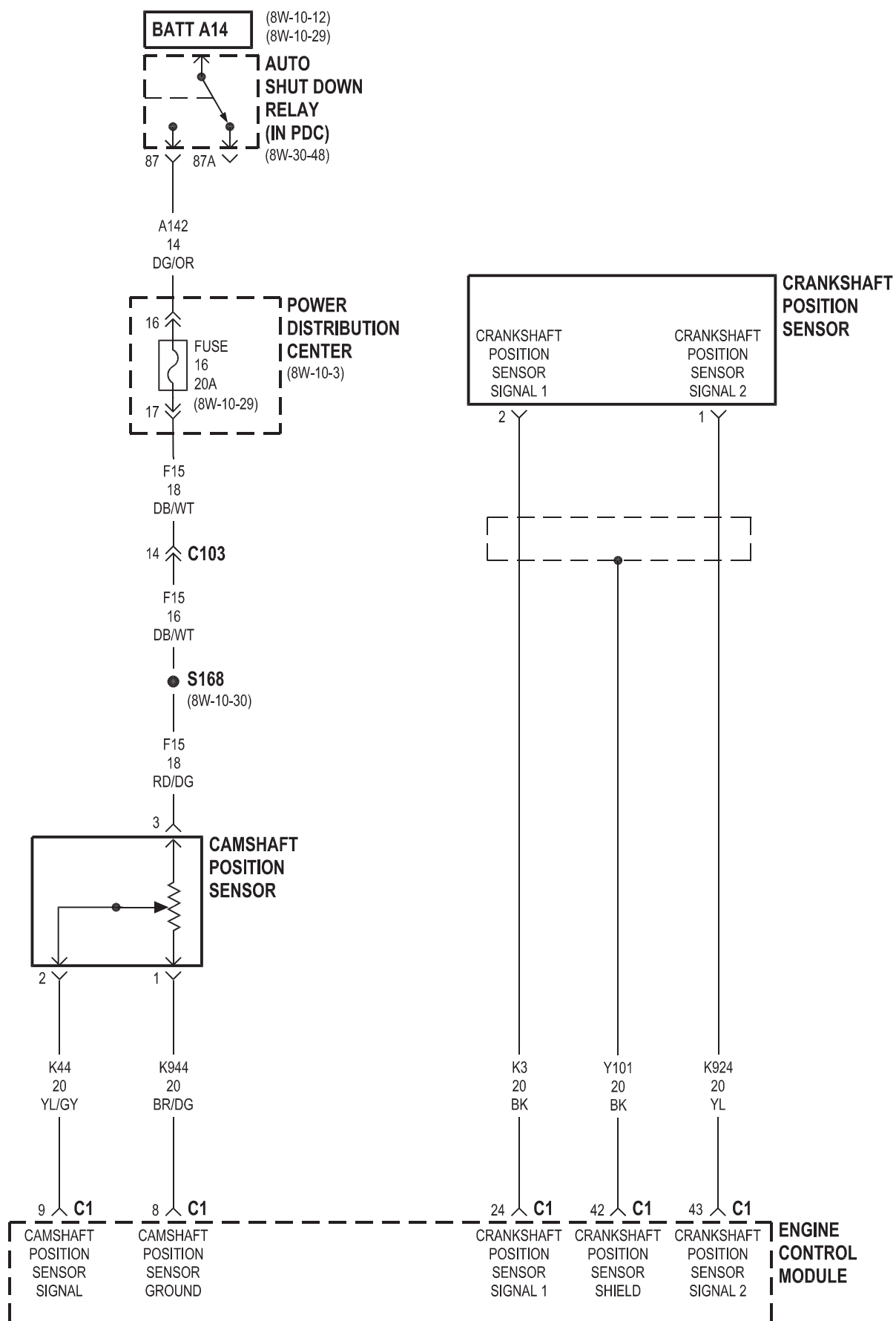


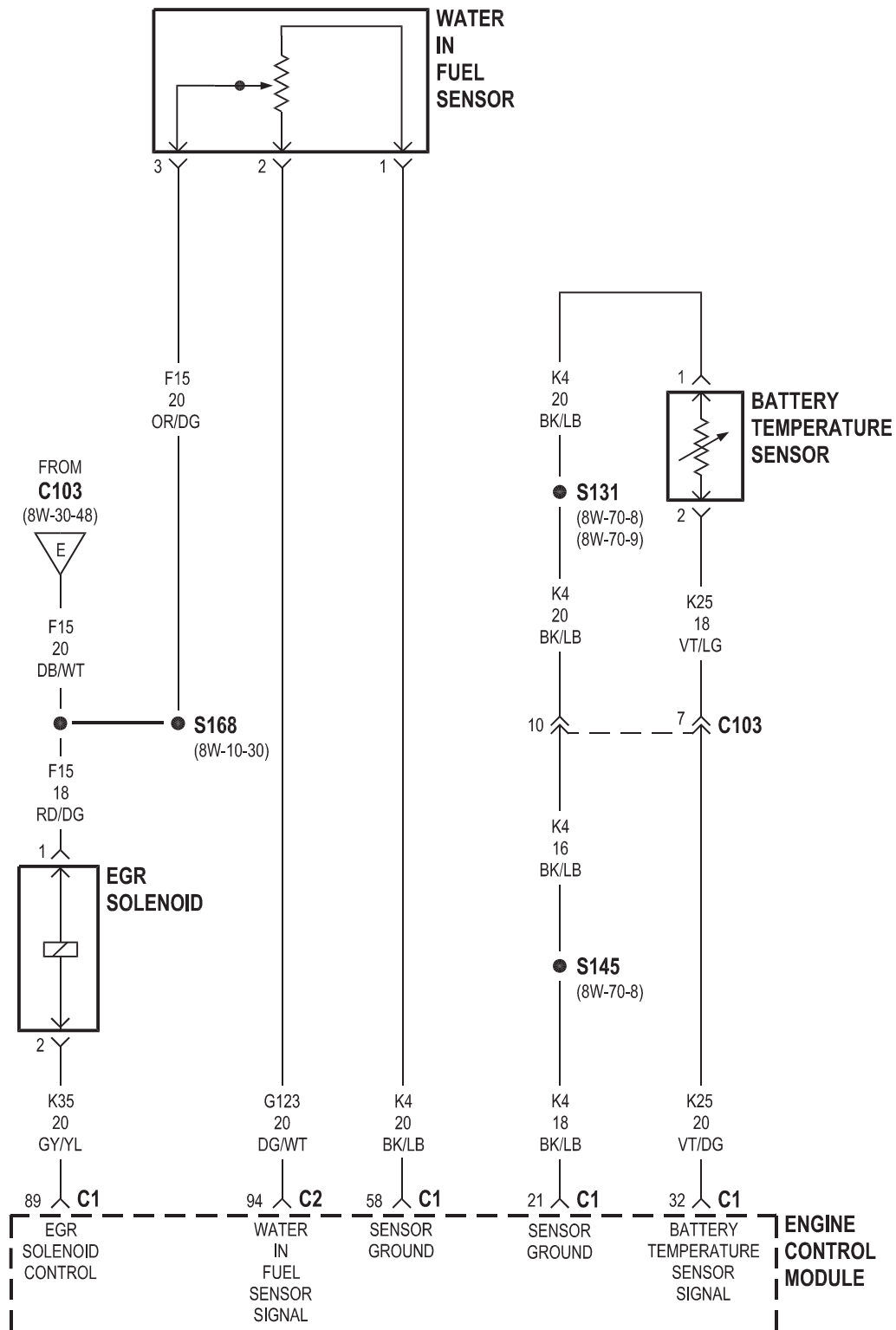


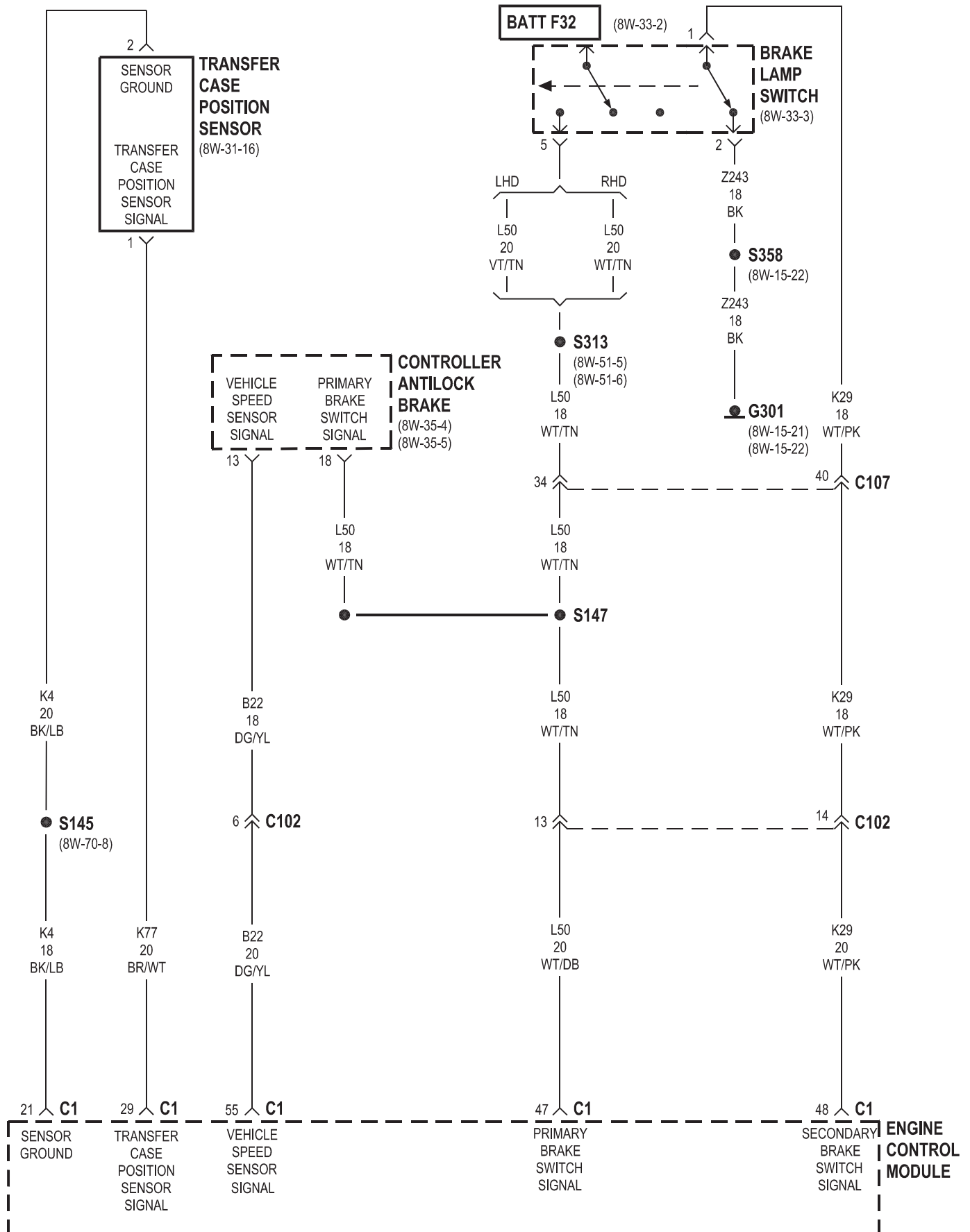










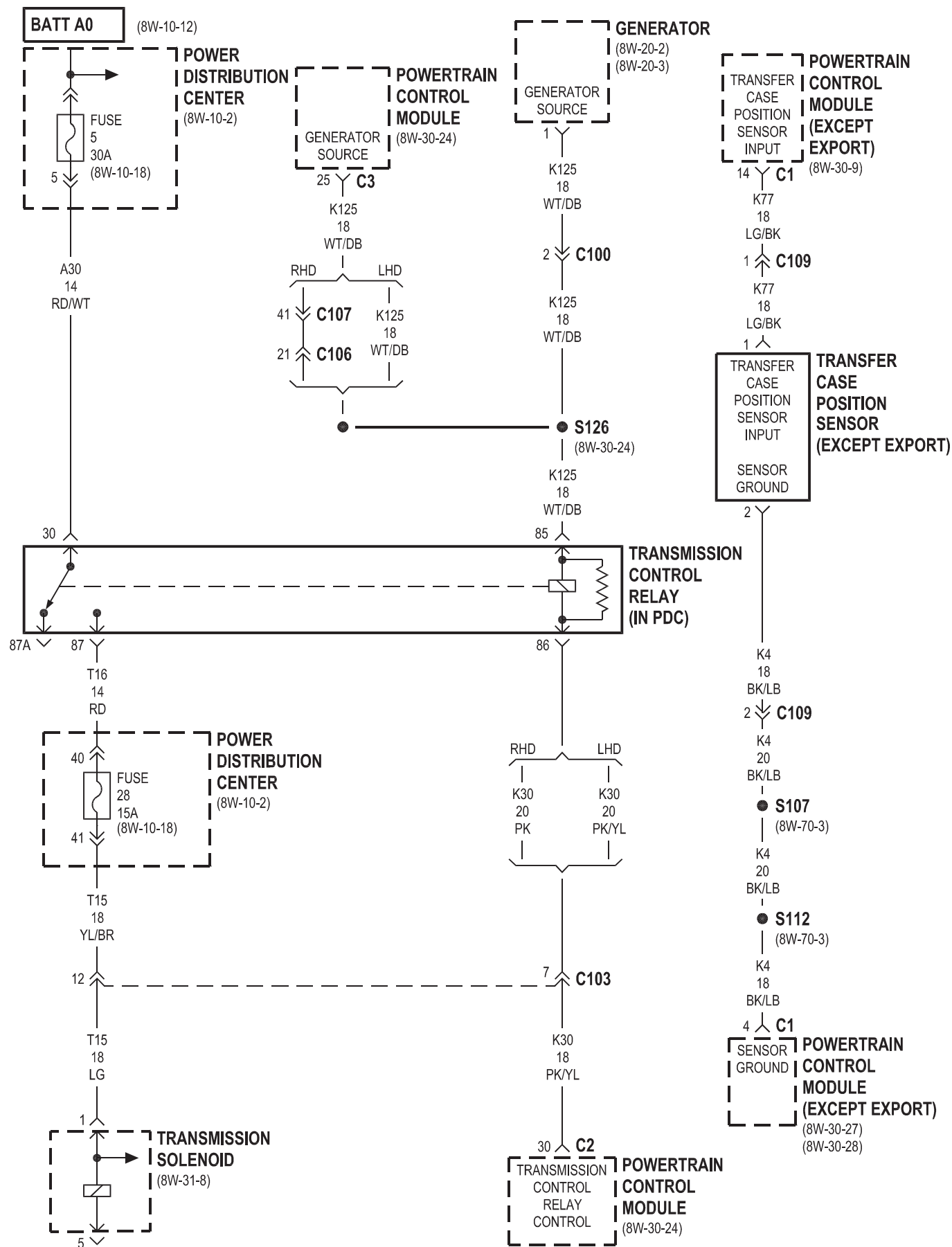


## 8W-31 TRANSMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

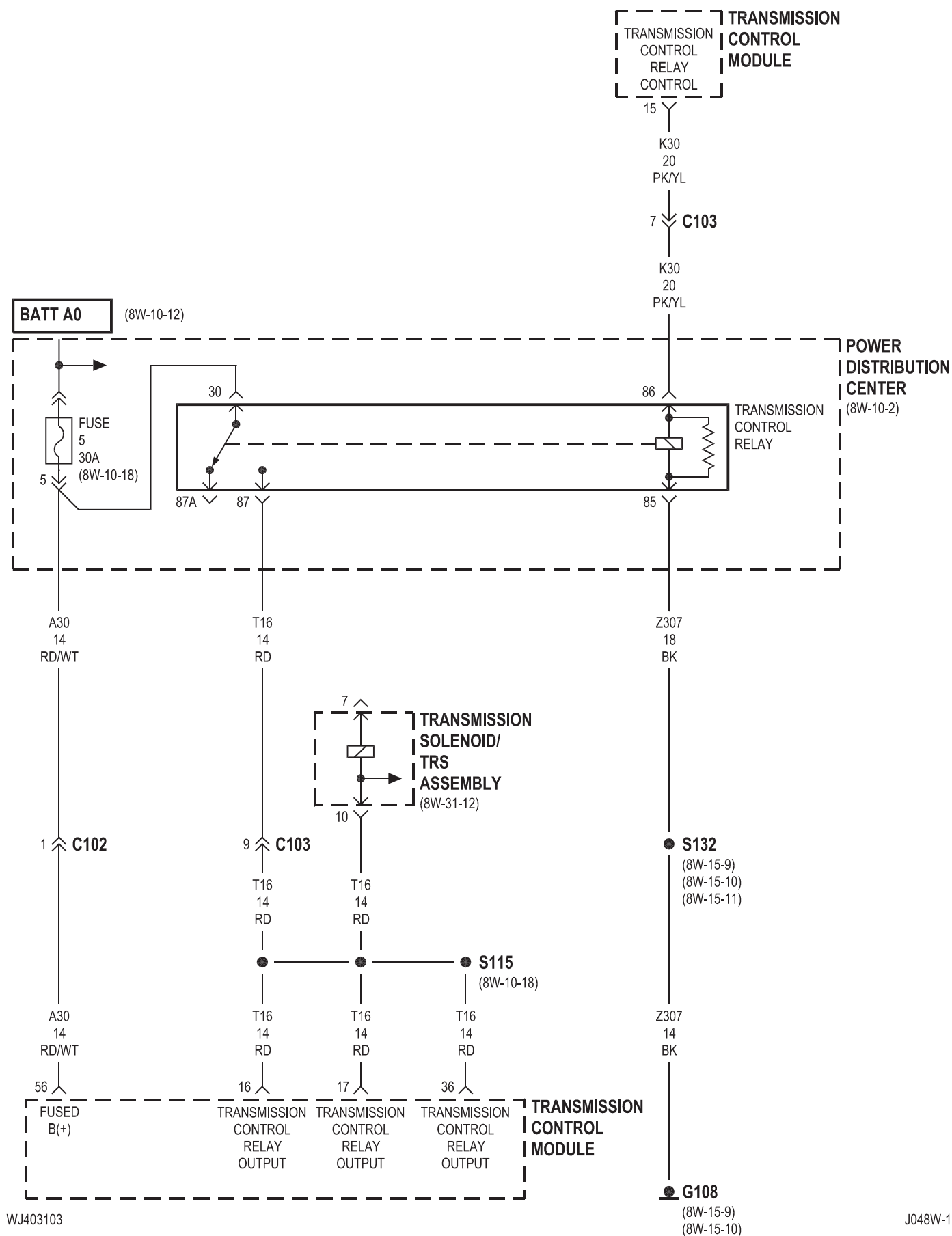
<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
Auto Shut Down Relay . . . . .	8W-31-4
Back-Up Lamp Relay . . . . .	8W-31-15
Body Control Module . . . . .	8W-31-14
Brake Lamp Switch . . . . .	8W-31-14, 15
Controller Antilock Brake . . . . .	8W-31-17
Crankshaft Position Sensor . . . . .	8W-31-9, 10
Data Link Connector . . . . .	8W-31-4, 9, 10, 15, 16
Engine Control Module . . . . .	8W-31-16, 17
Engine Starter Motor Relay . . . . .	8W-31-4, 5, 6, 12
Fuel Pump Relay . . . . .	8W-31-4
Fuse 5 . . . . .	8W-31-2, 3
Fuse 12 . . . . .	8W-31-4, 15
Fuse 20 . . . . .	8W-31-5, 6
Fuse 21 . . . . .	8W-31-14, 15
Fuse 28 . . . . .	8W-31-2, 8
Fuse 31 . . . . .	8W-31-4
G102 . . . . .	8W-31-11, 13
G108 . . . . .	8W-31-3
G200 . . . . .	8W-31-14, 15
Generator . . . . .	8W-31-2
Input Speed Sensor . . . . .	8W-31-13

<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
Junction Block . . . . .	8W-31-4, 5, 6, 14, 15
Left Rear Lamp Assembly . . . . .	8W-31-5, 6
Line Pressure Sensor . . . . .	8W-31-13
Output Speed Sensor . . . . .	8W-31-8, 13
Park/Neutral Position Switch . . . . .	8W-31-6
Power Distribution Center . . . . .	8W-31-2, 3, 8
Powertrain Control Module . . . . .	8W-31-2, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 14
Right Rear Lamp Assembly . . . . .	8W-31-5, 6
Shifter Assembly . . . . .	8W-31-14, 15, 16
Throttle Position Sensor . . . . .	8W-31-7
Transfer Case Position Sensor . . . . .	8W-31-2, 16
Transmission Control Module . . . . .	8W-31-3, 4, 7, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 16, 17, 18
Transmission Control Relay . . . . .	8W-31-2, 3, 8, 11, 12
Transmission Solenoid . . . . .	8W-31-2, 8
Transmission Solenoid Assembly . . . . .	8W-31-18
Transmission Solenoid/TRS Assembly . . . . .	8W-31-3, 5, 11, 12, 13

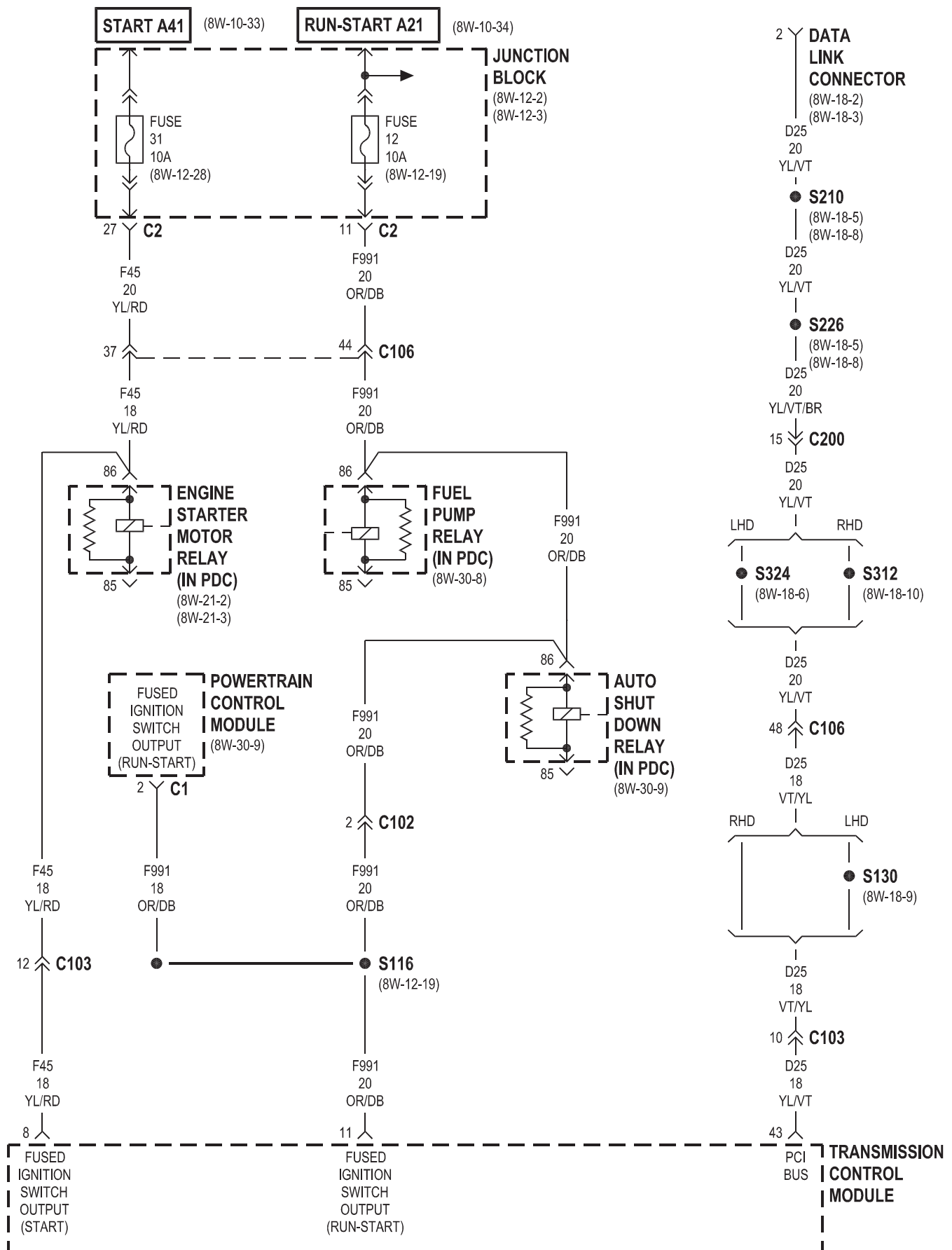
4.0L

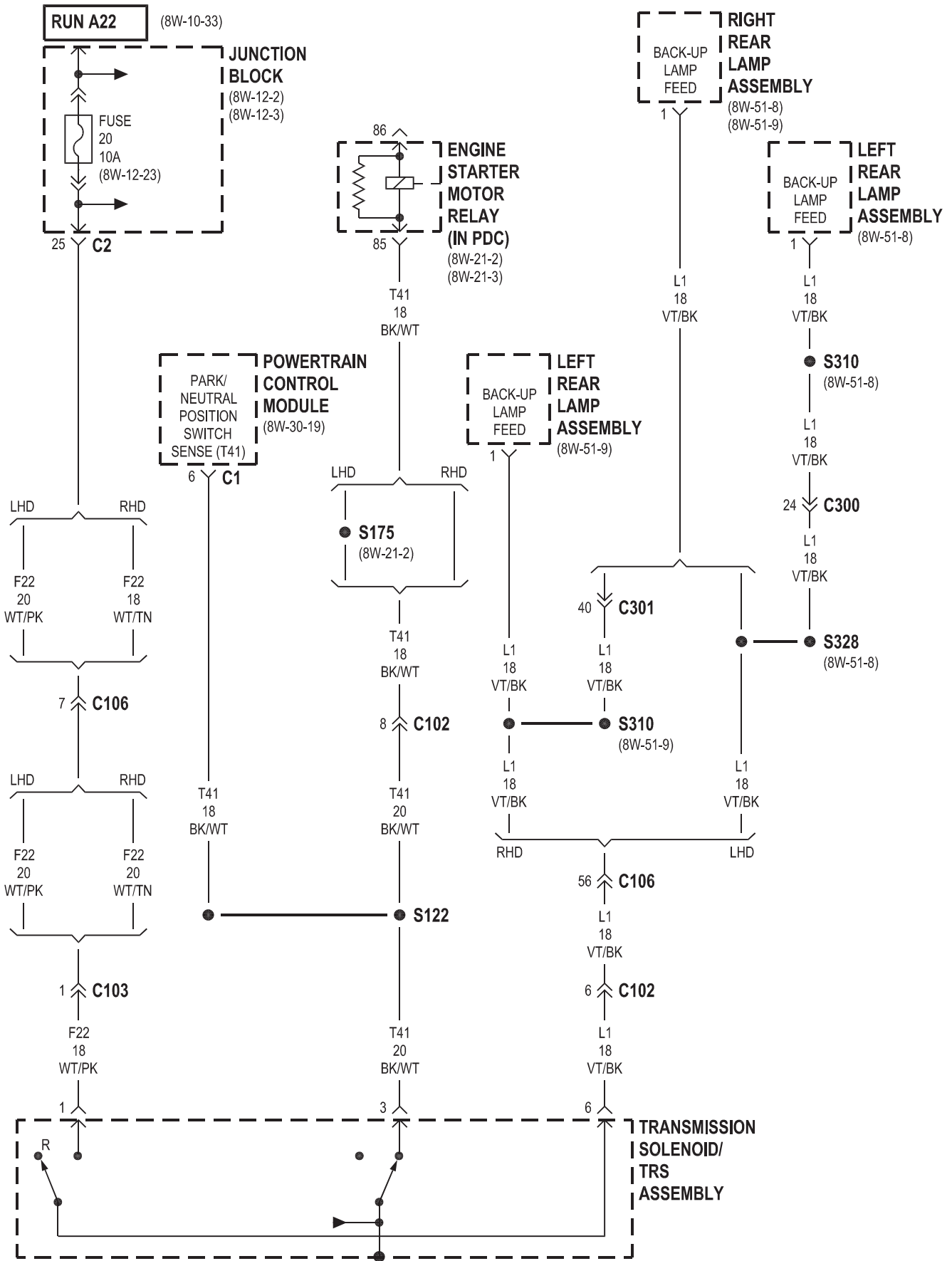




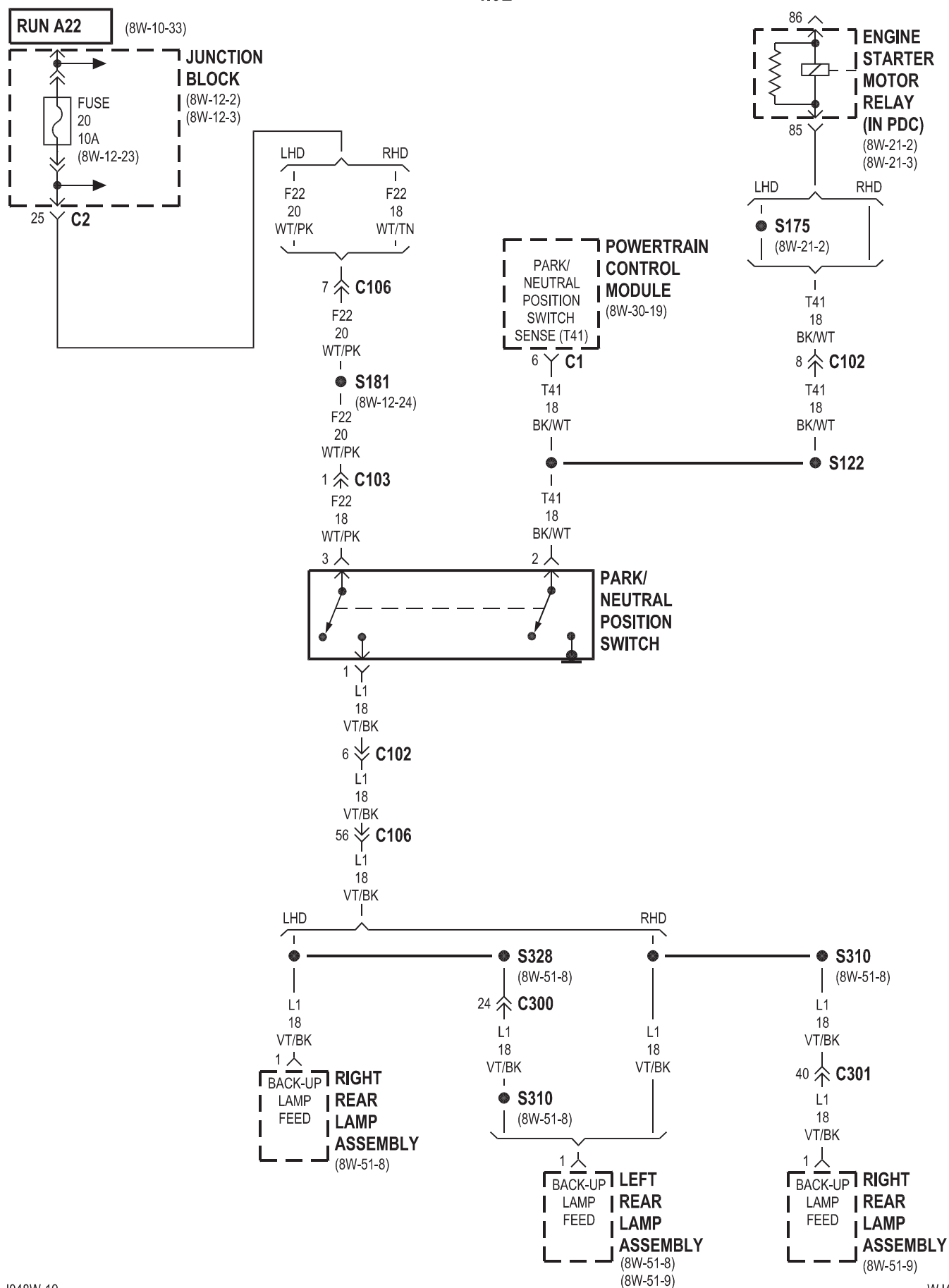


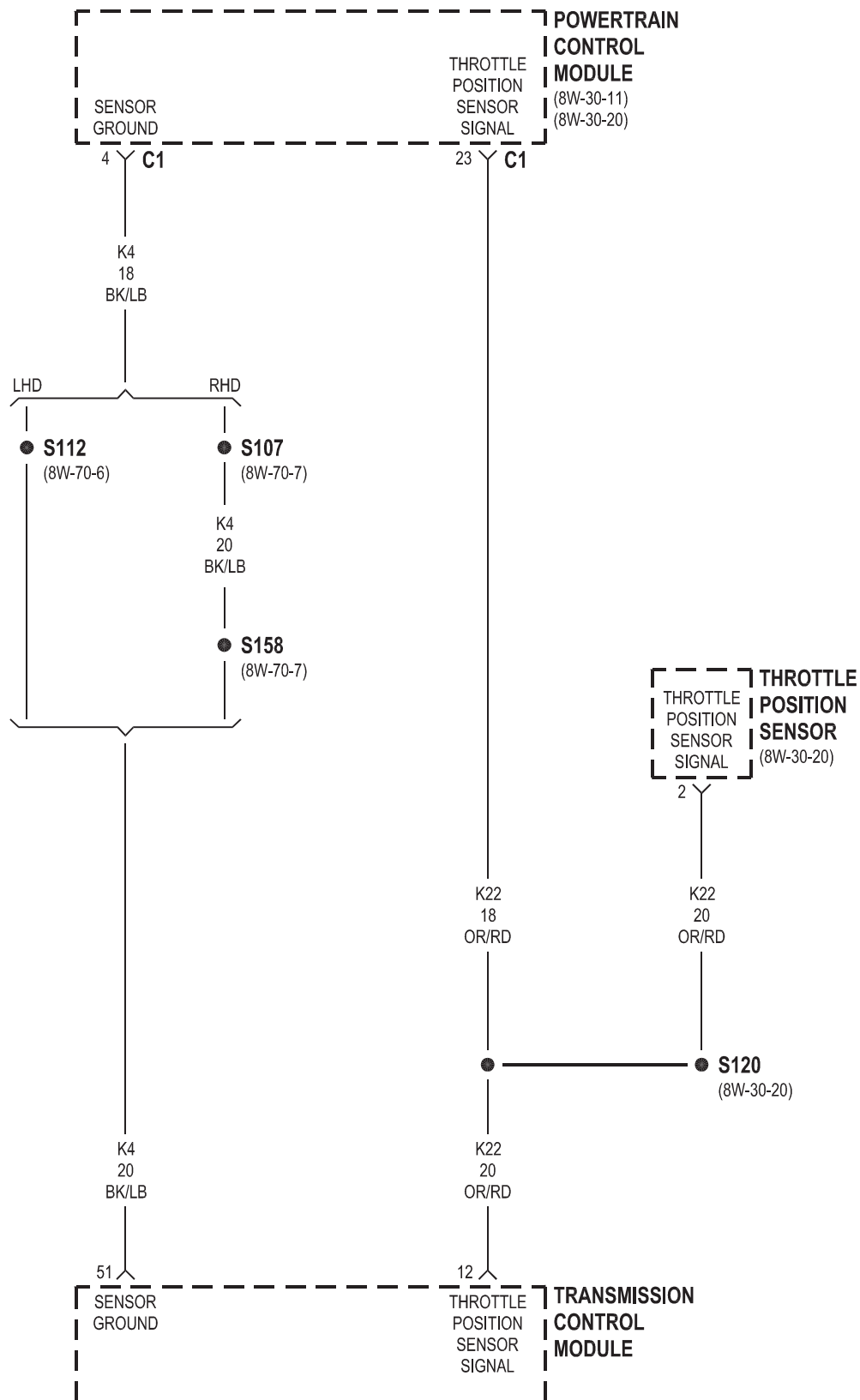
#### 4.7L



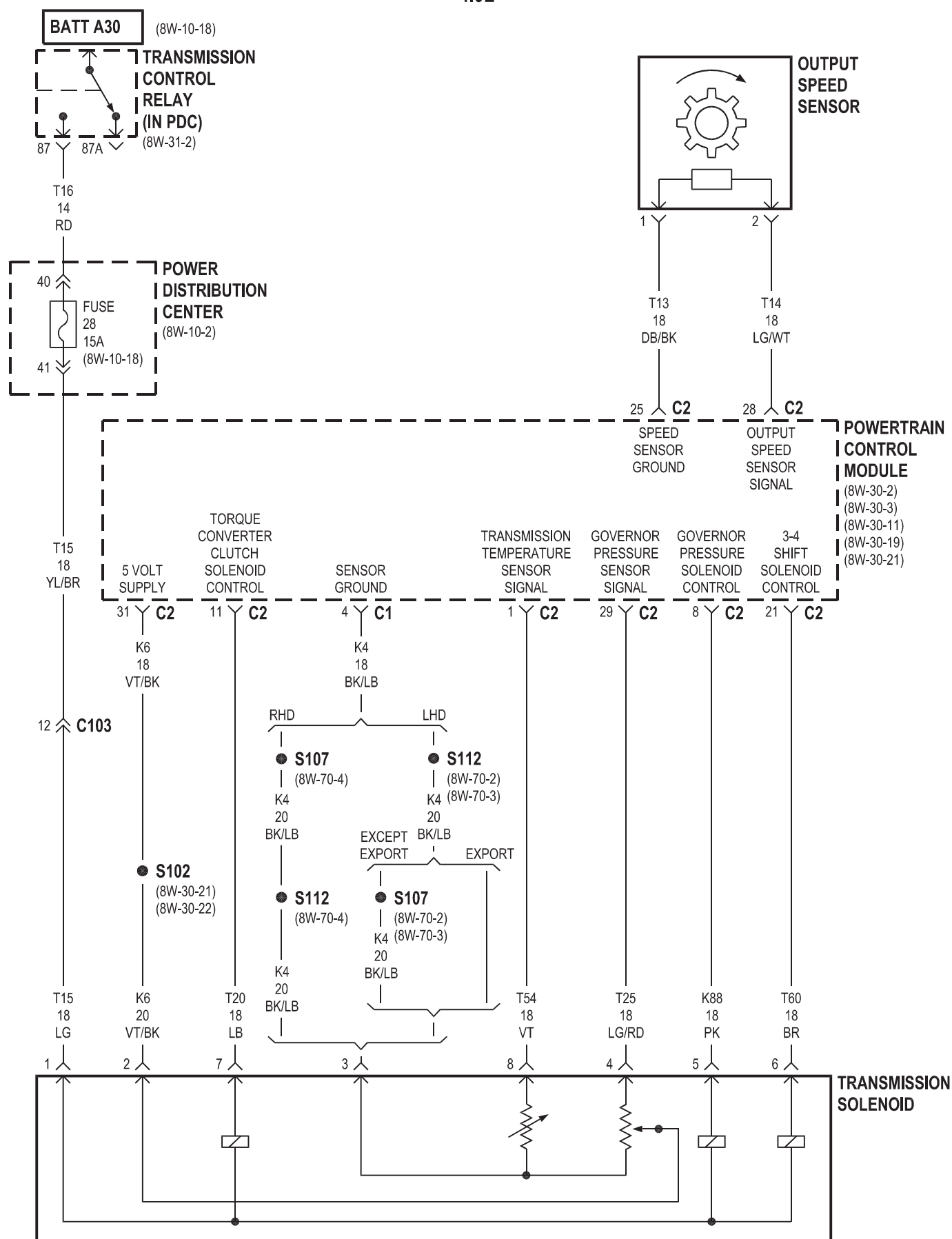


4.0L

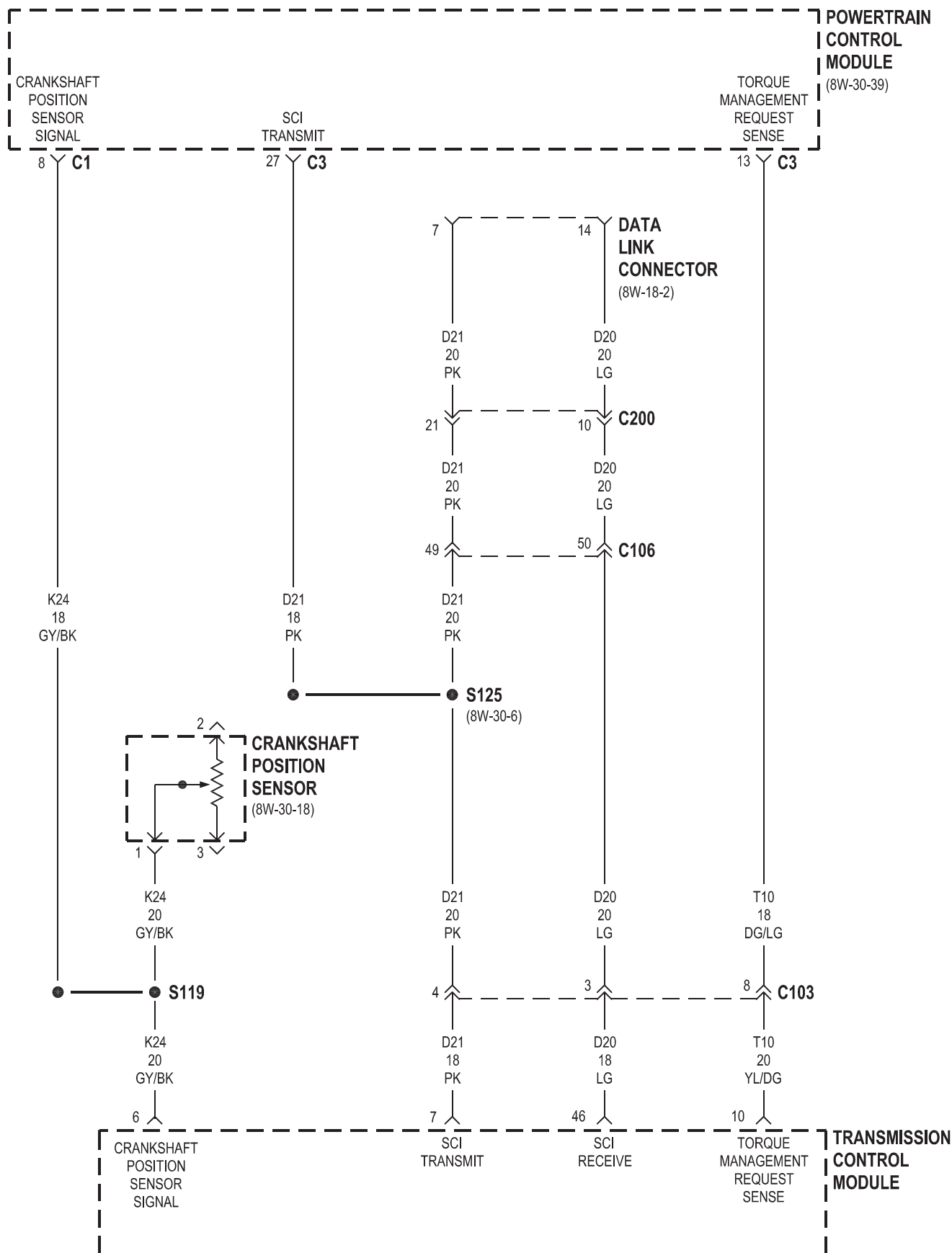




4.0L

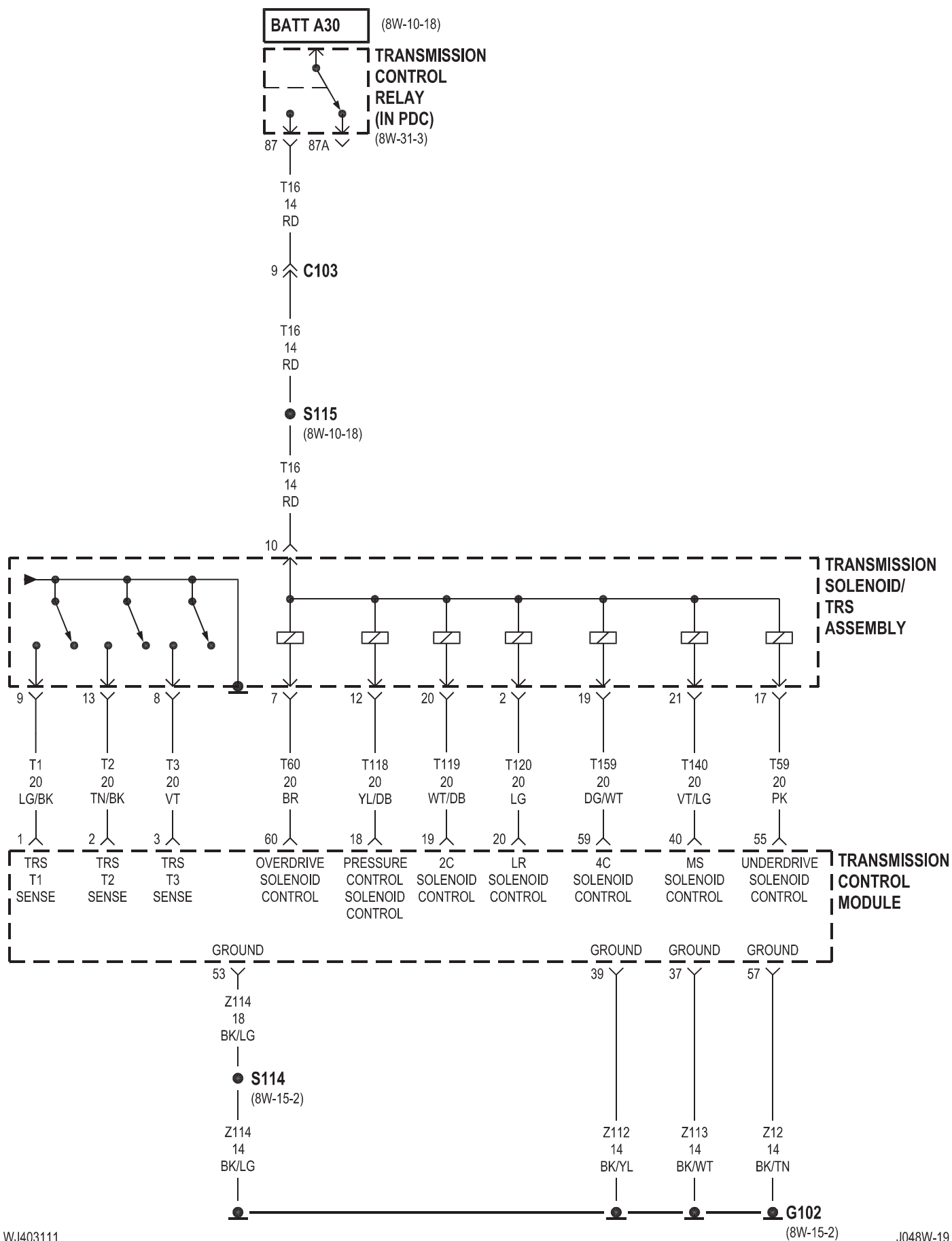




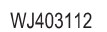


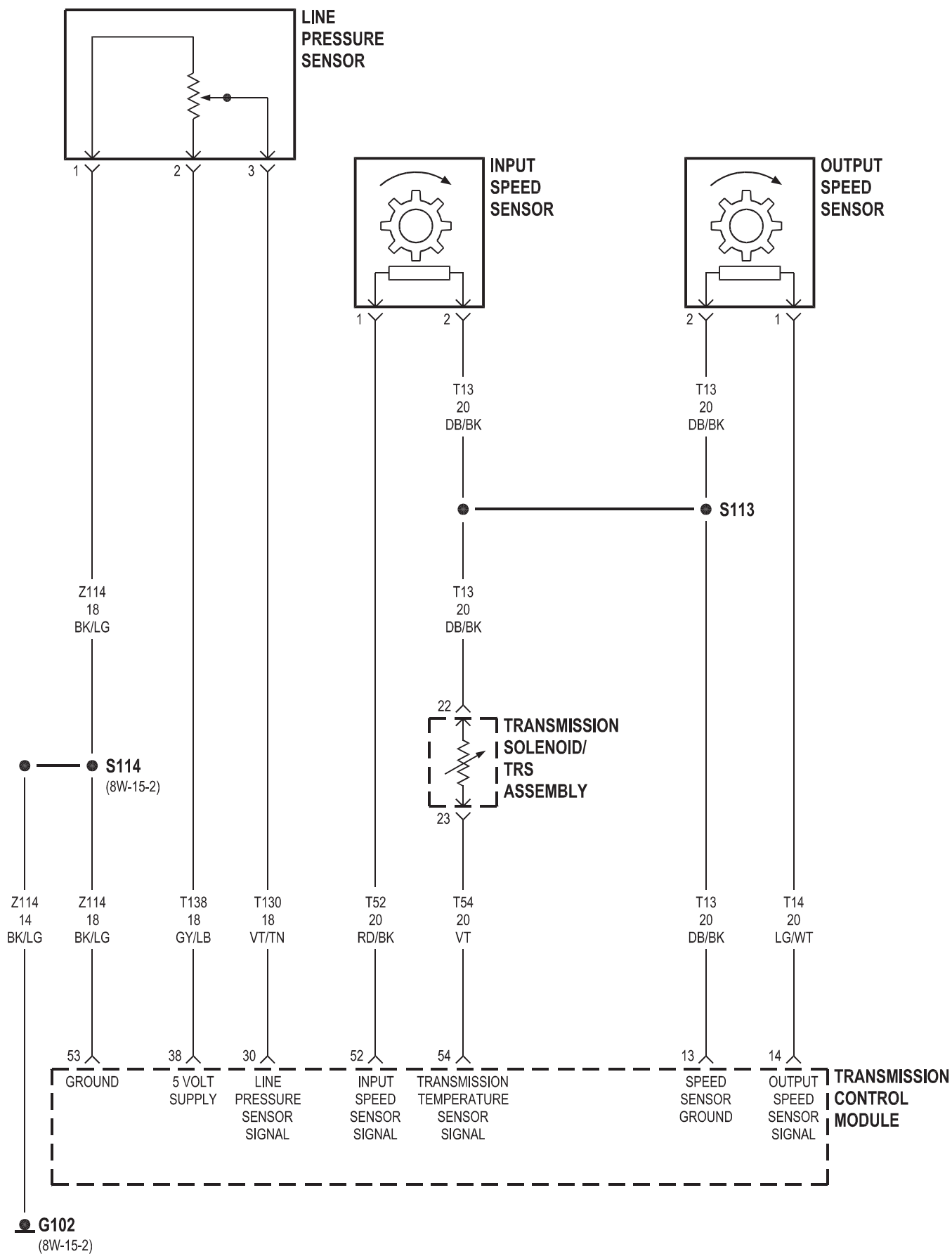
## WJ

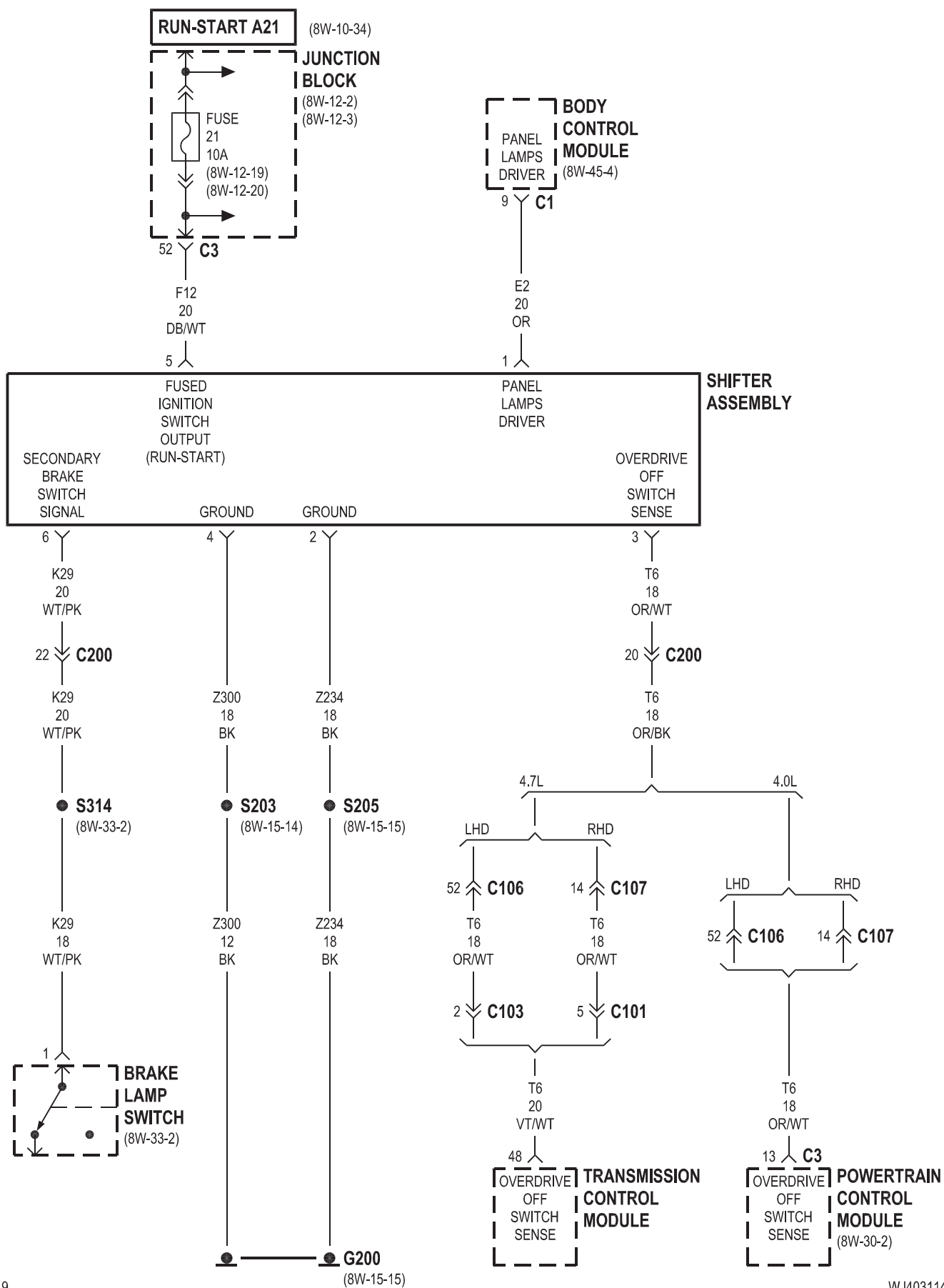




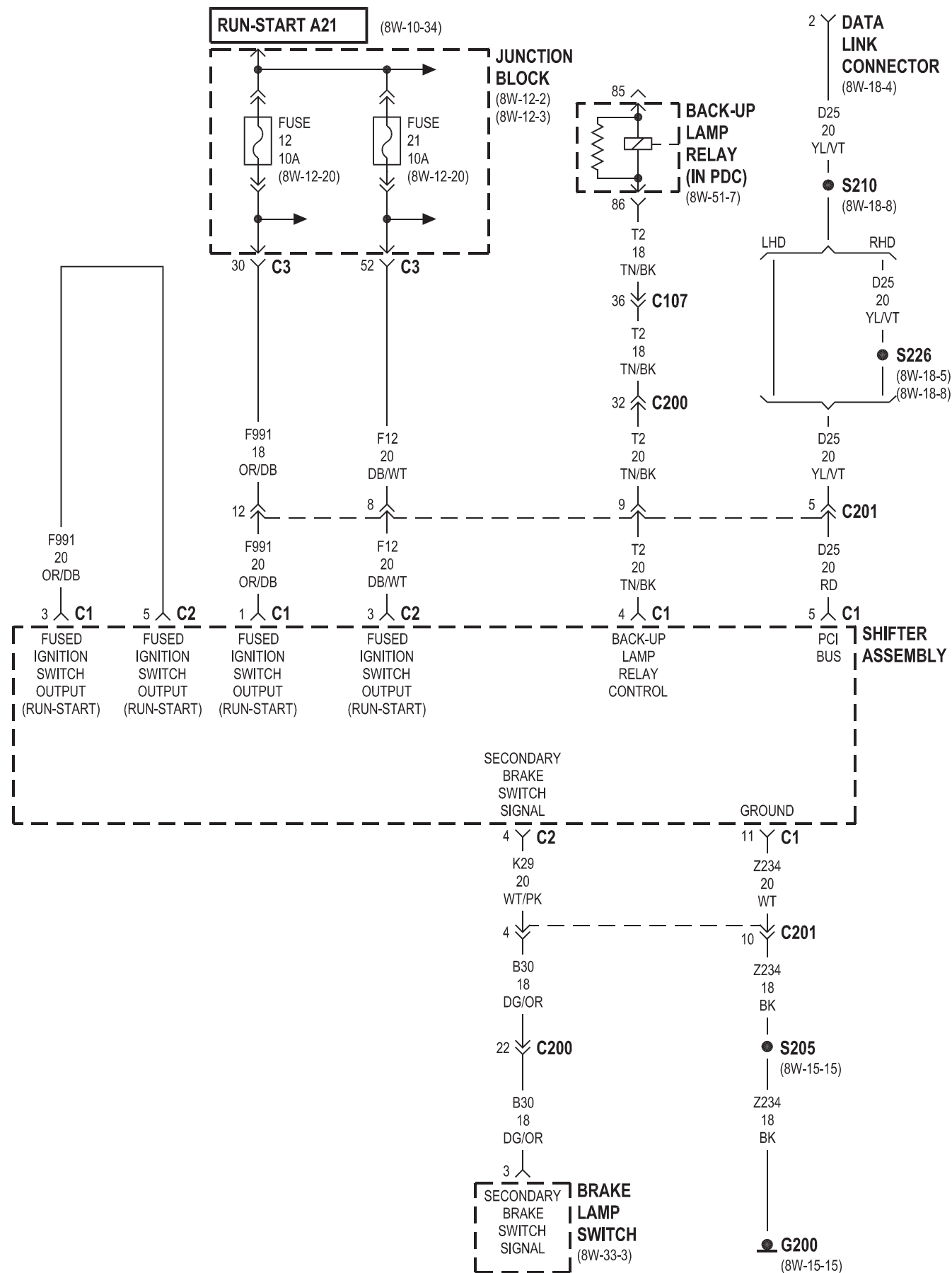
**ENGINE  
STARTER  
MOTOR  
RELAY  
(IN PDC)**  
(8W-21-2)  
(8W-21-3)

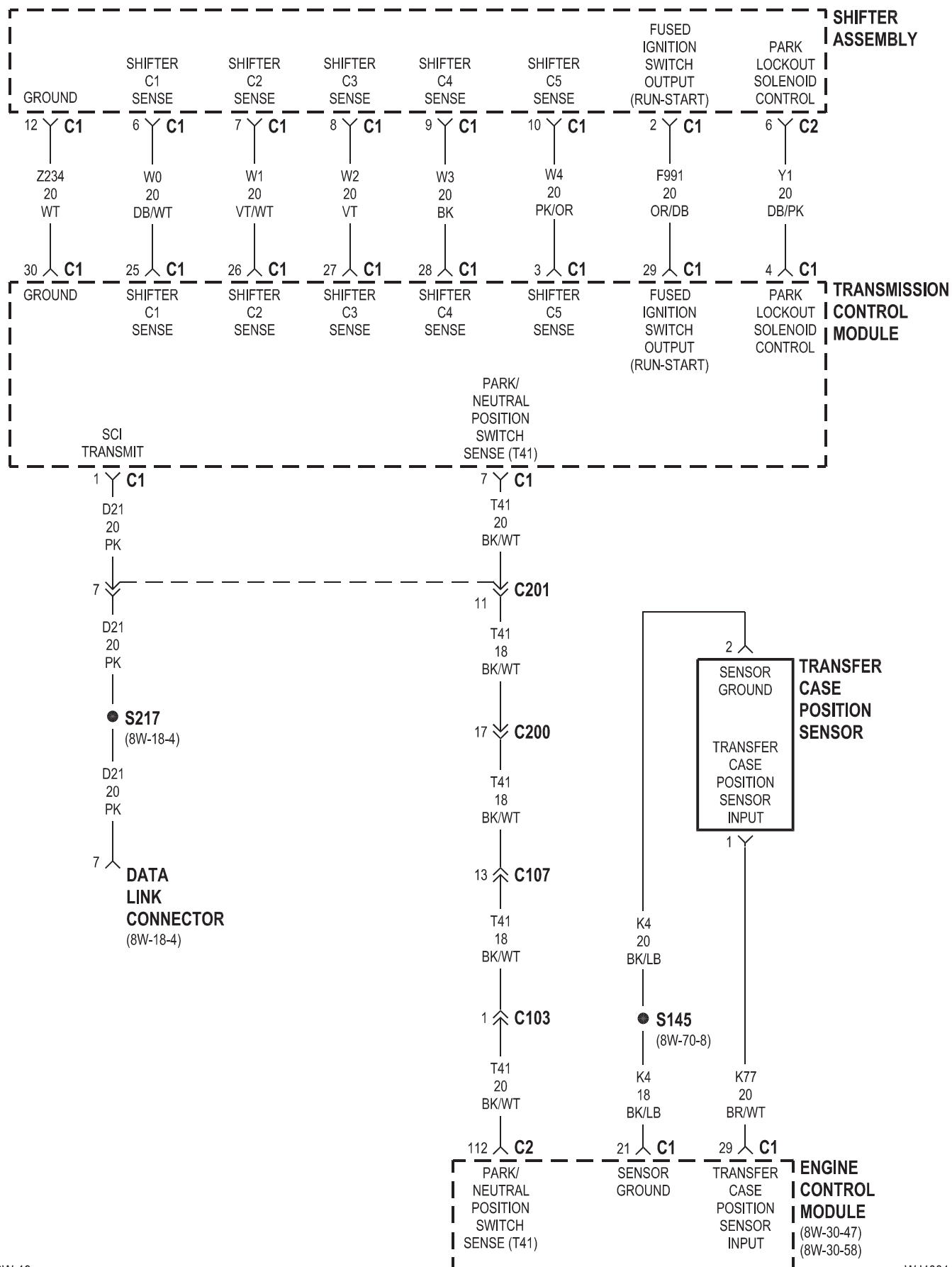


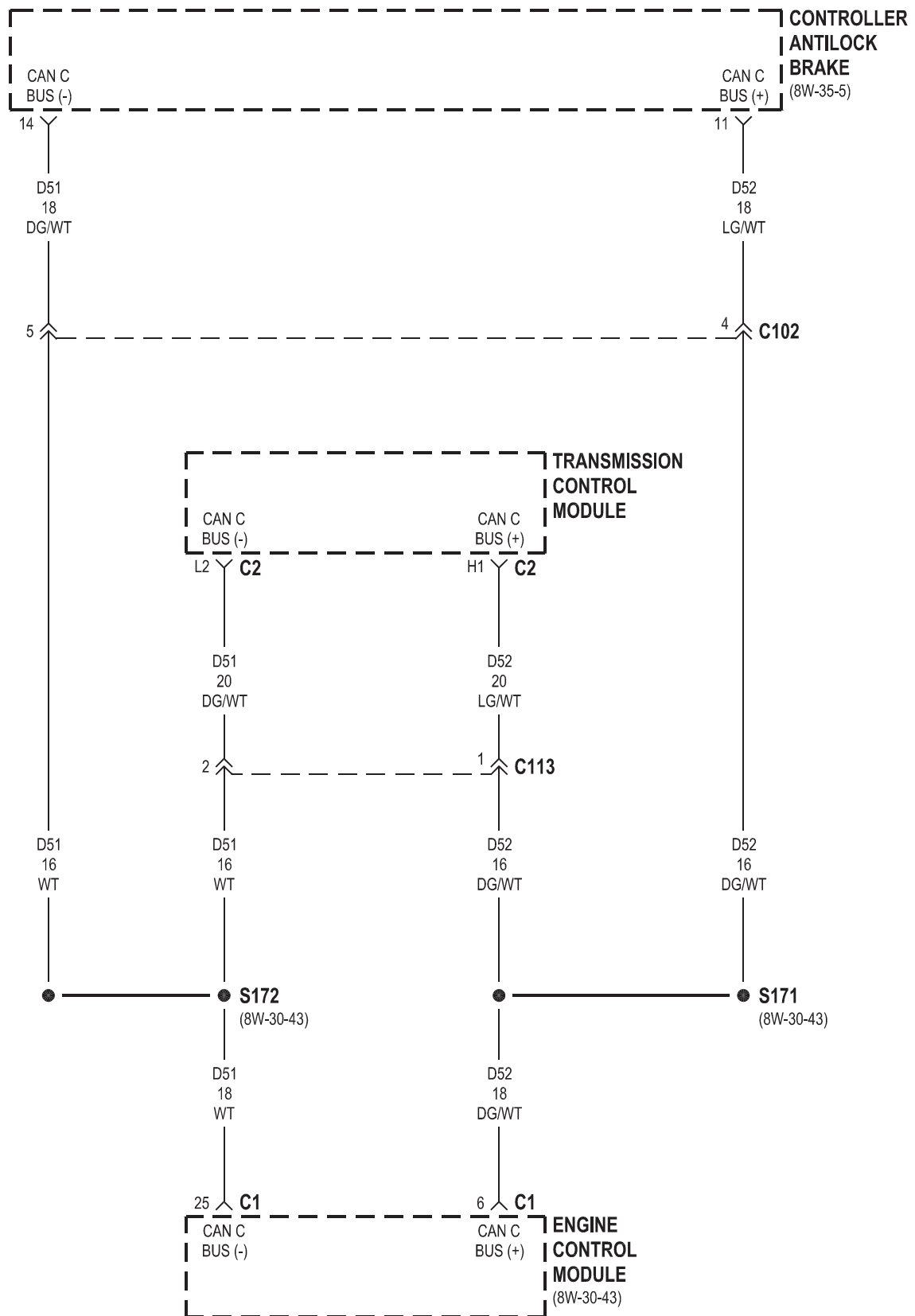


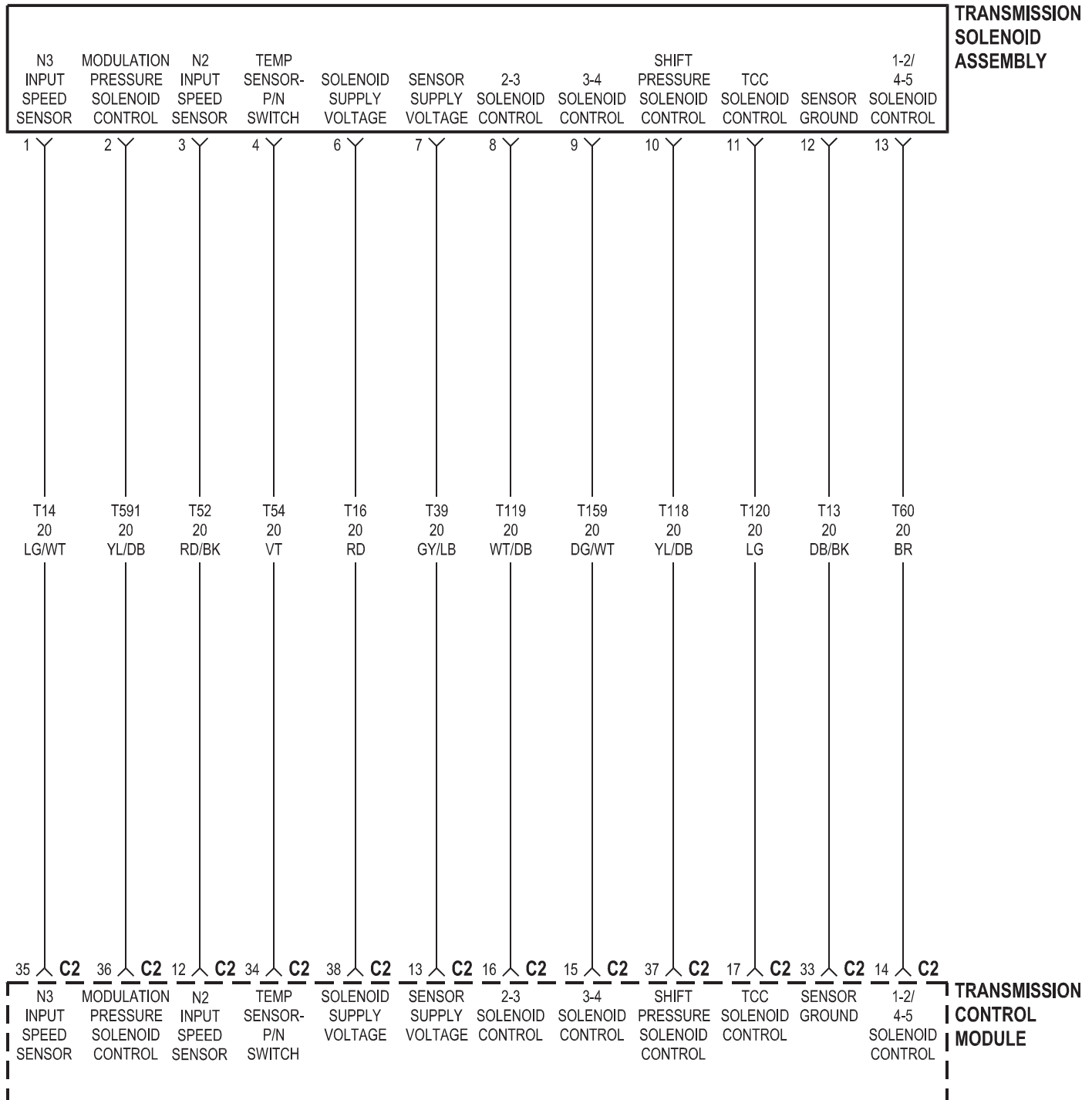








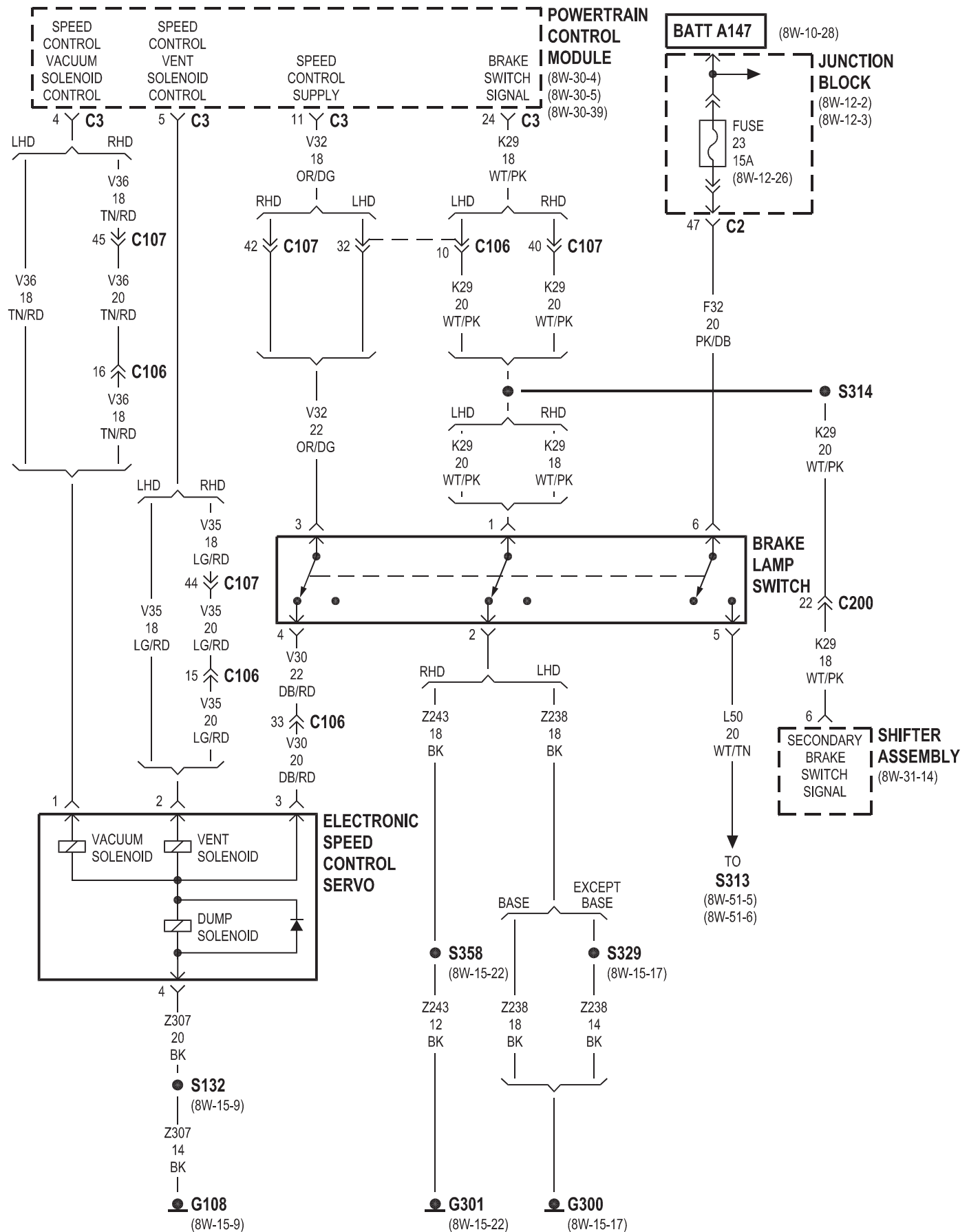




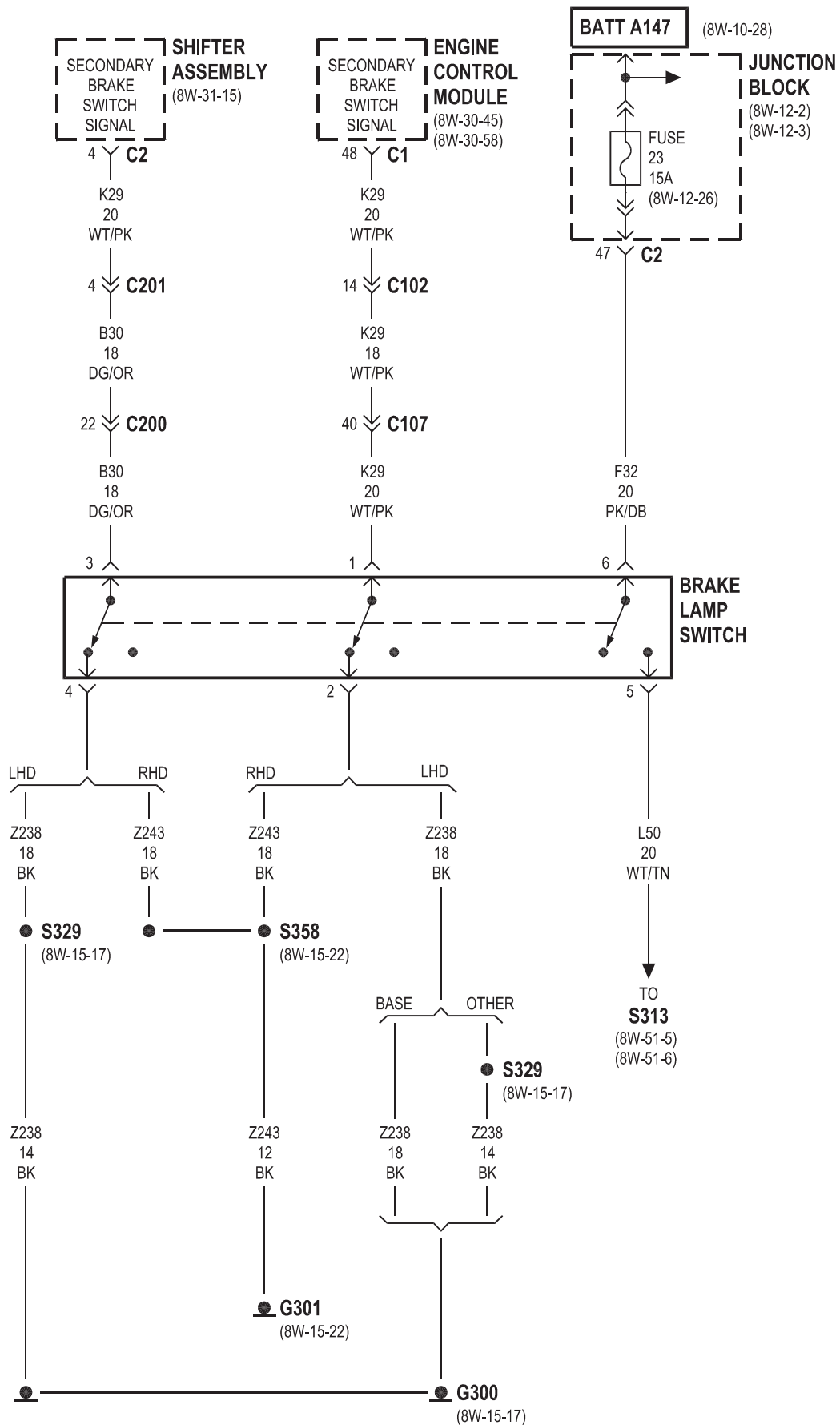
## 8W-33 VEHICLE SPEED CONTROL

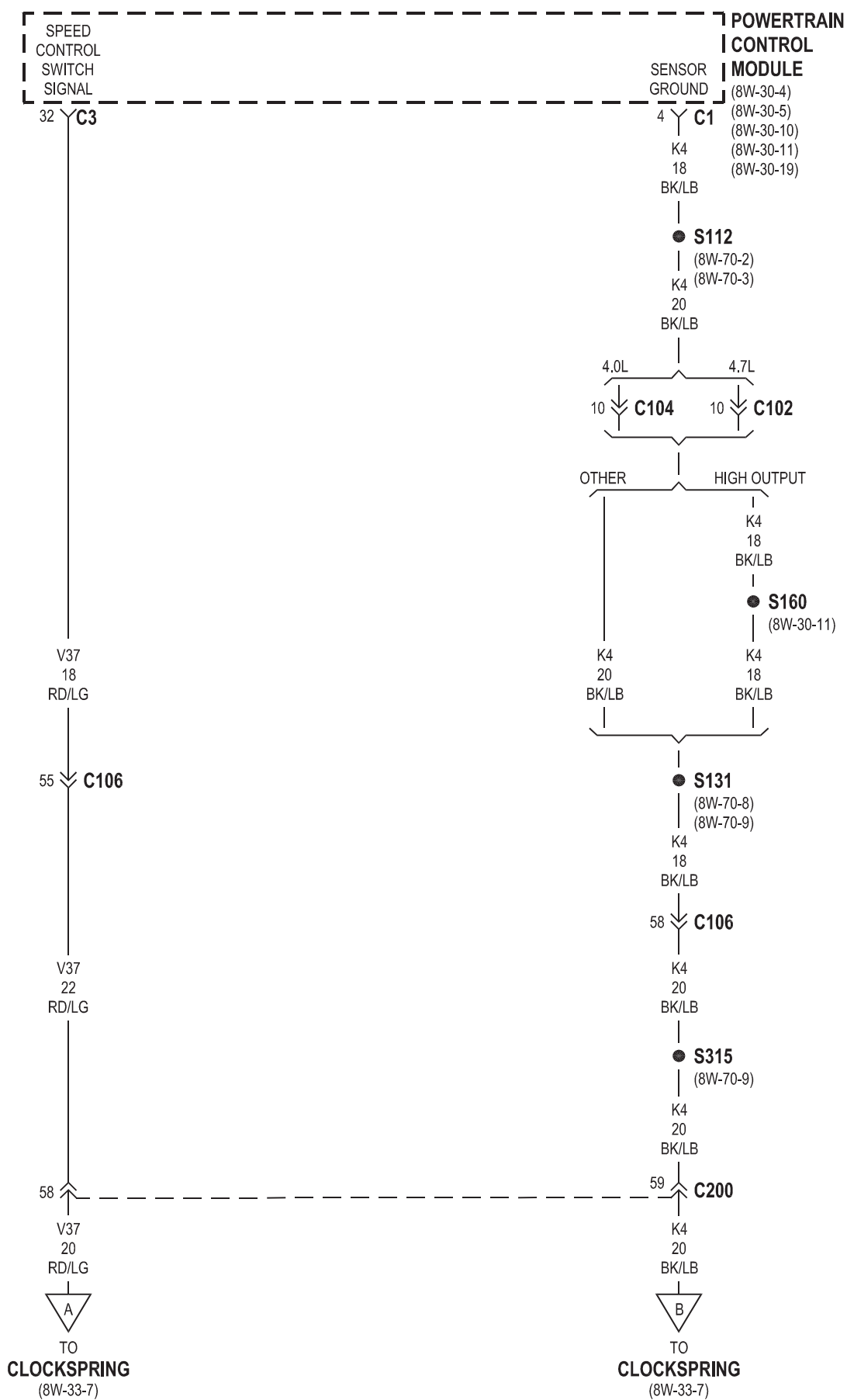
<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
Brake Lamp Switch . . . . .	8W-33-2, 3
Clockspring . . . . .	8W-33-4, 5, 6, 7
Electronic Speed Control Servo . . . . .	8W-33-2
Engine Control Module . . . . .	8W-33-3, 6
Fuse 23 . . . . .	8W-33-2, 3
G108 . . . . .	8W-33-2
G300 . . . . .	8W-33-2, 3

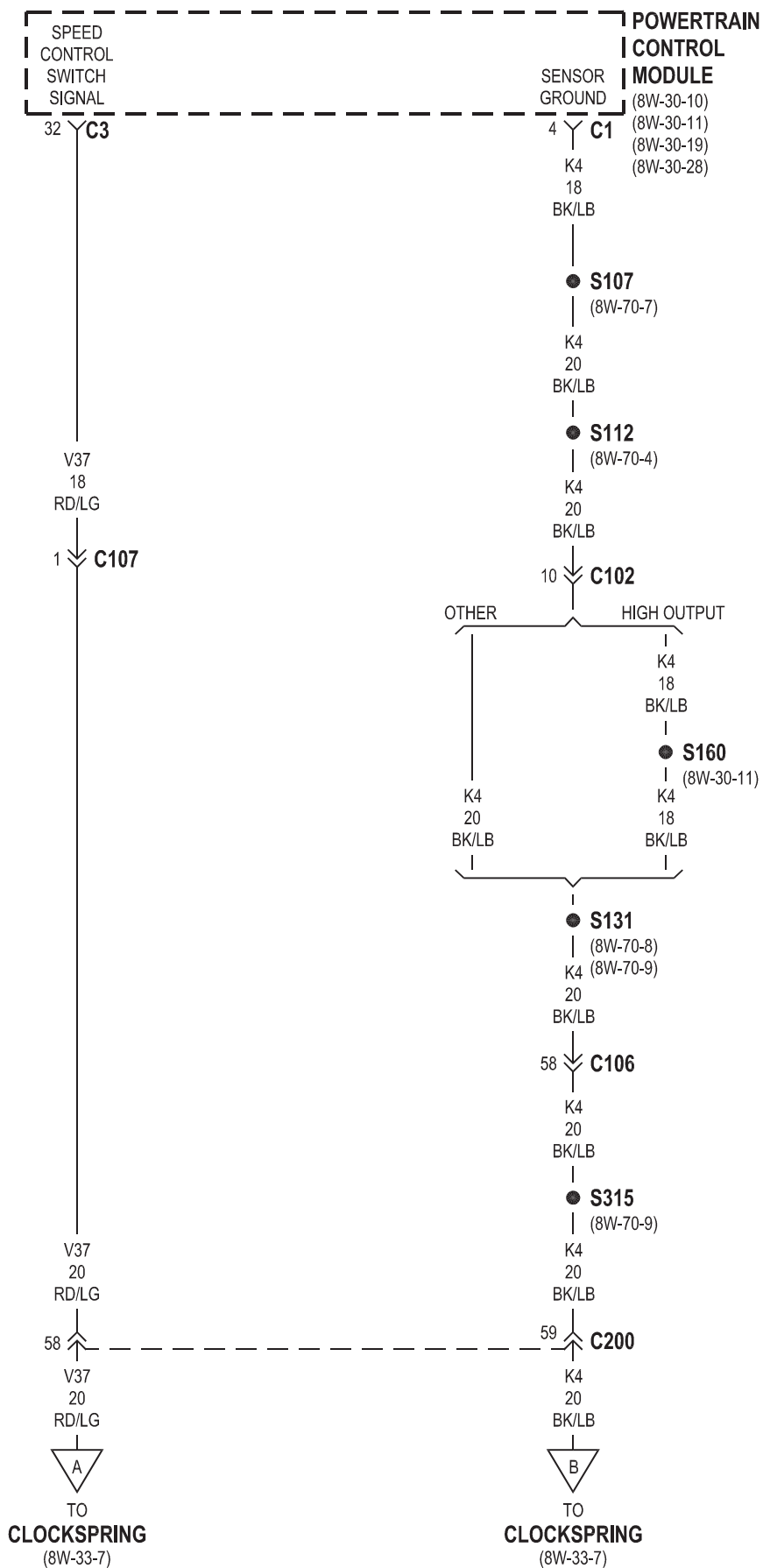
<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
G301 . . . . .	8W-33-2, 3
Junction Block . . . . .	8W-33-2, 3
Powertrain Control Module . . . . .	8W-33-2, 4, 5
Shifter Assembly . . . . .	8W-33-2, 3
Speed Control Switch No. 1 . . . . .	8W-33-7
Speed Control Switch No. 2 . . . . .	8W-33-7

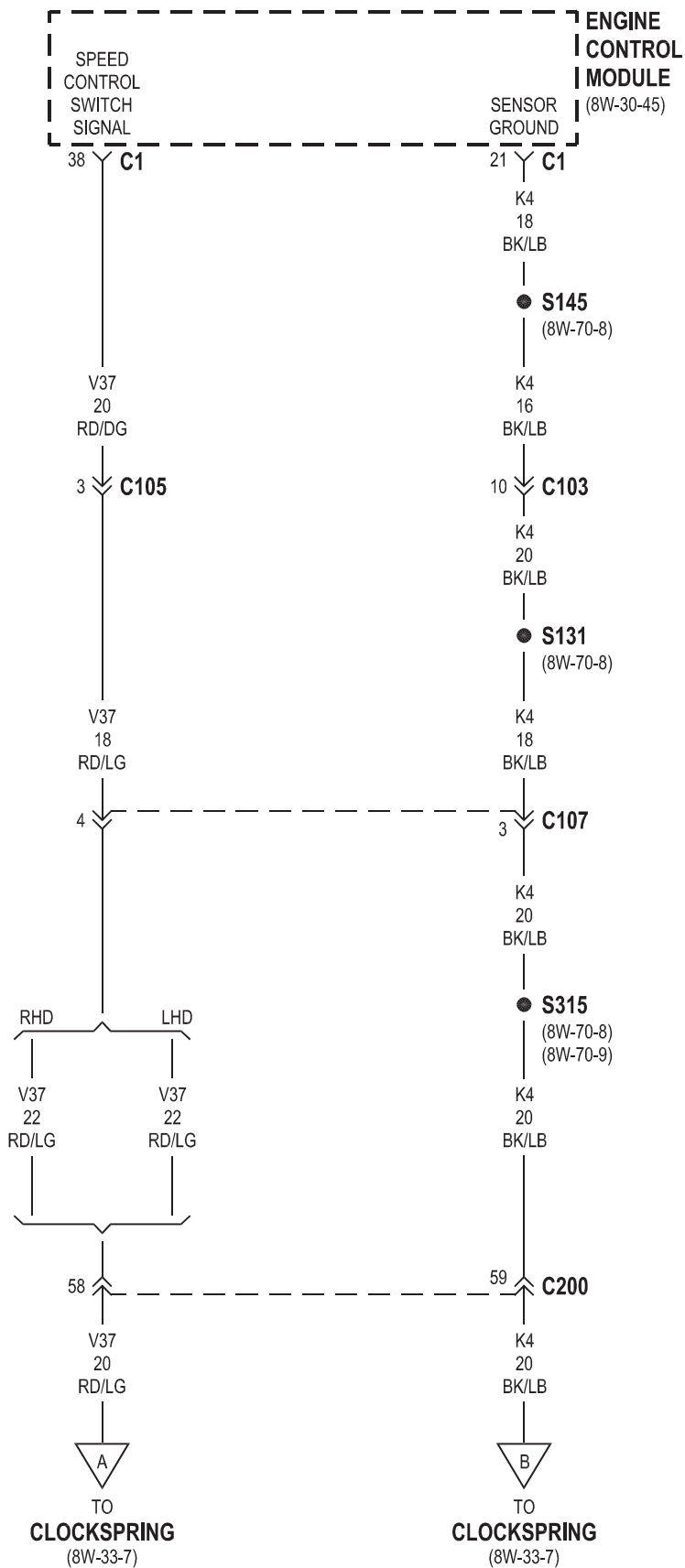


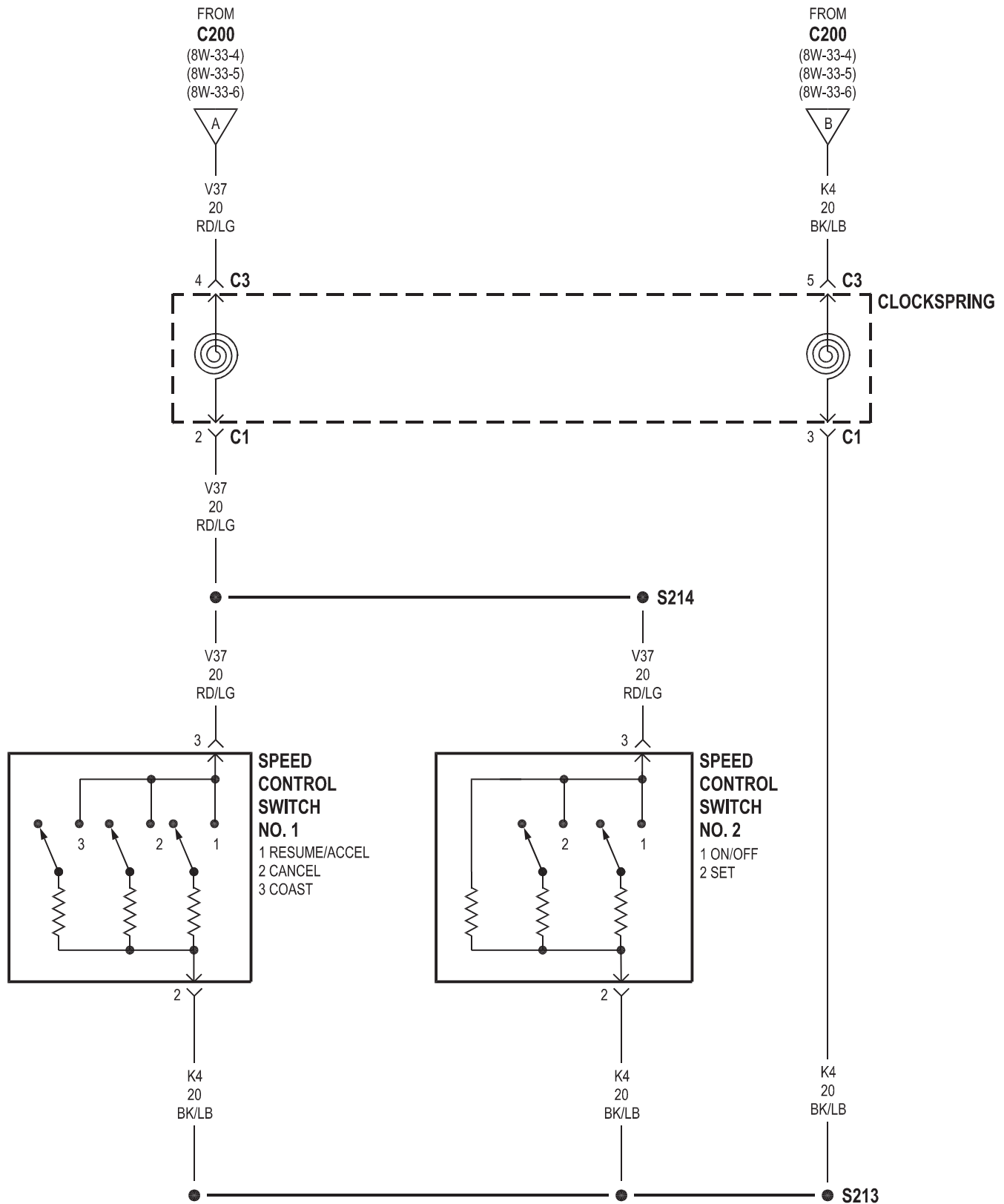












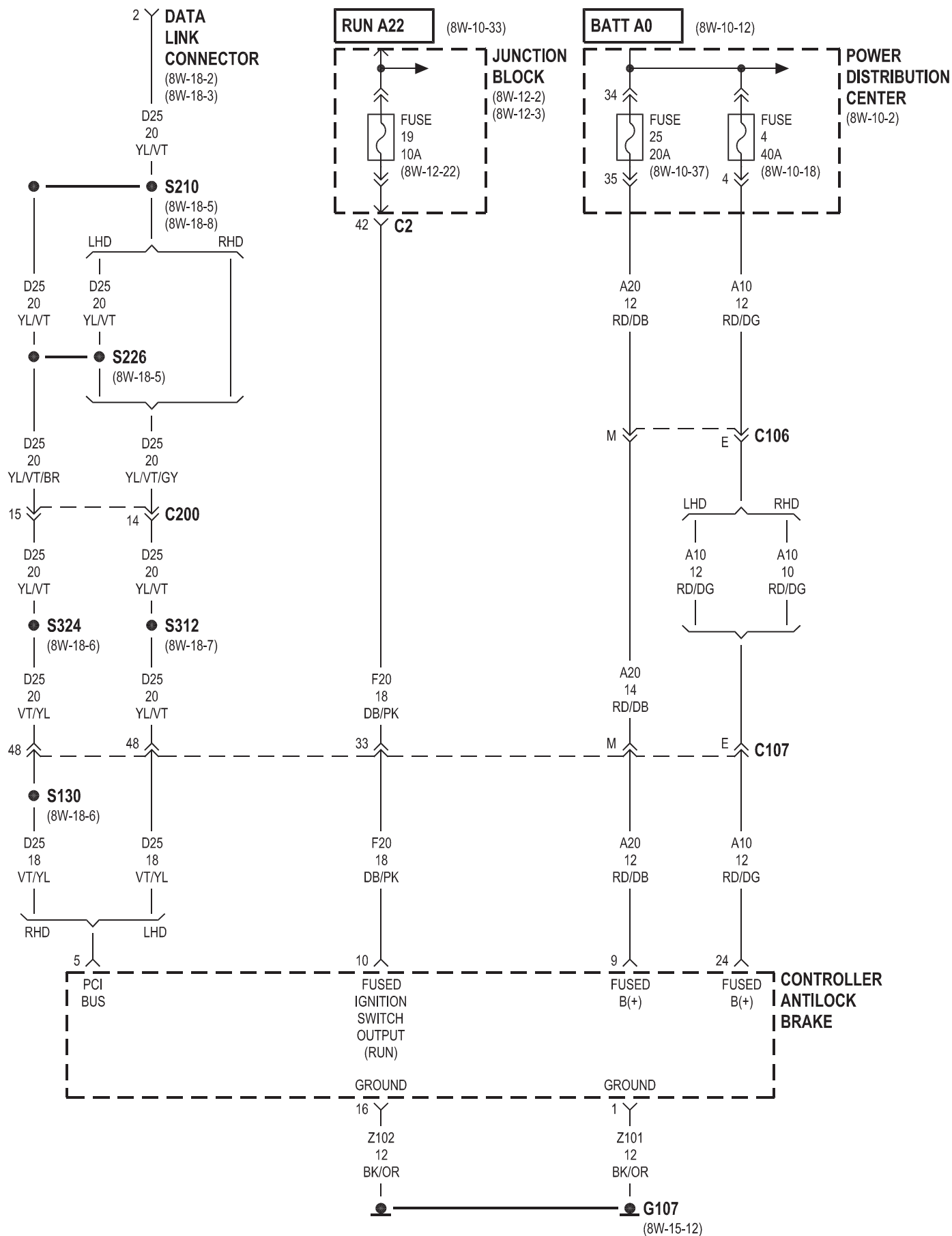


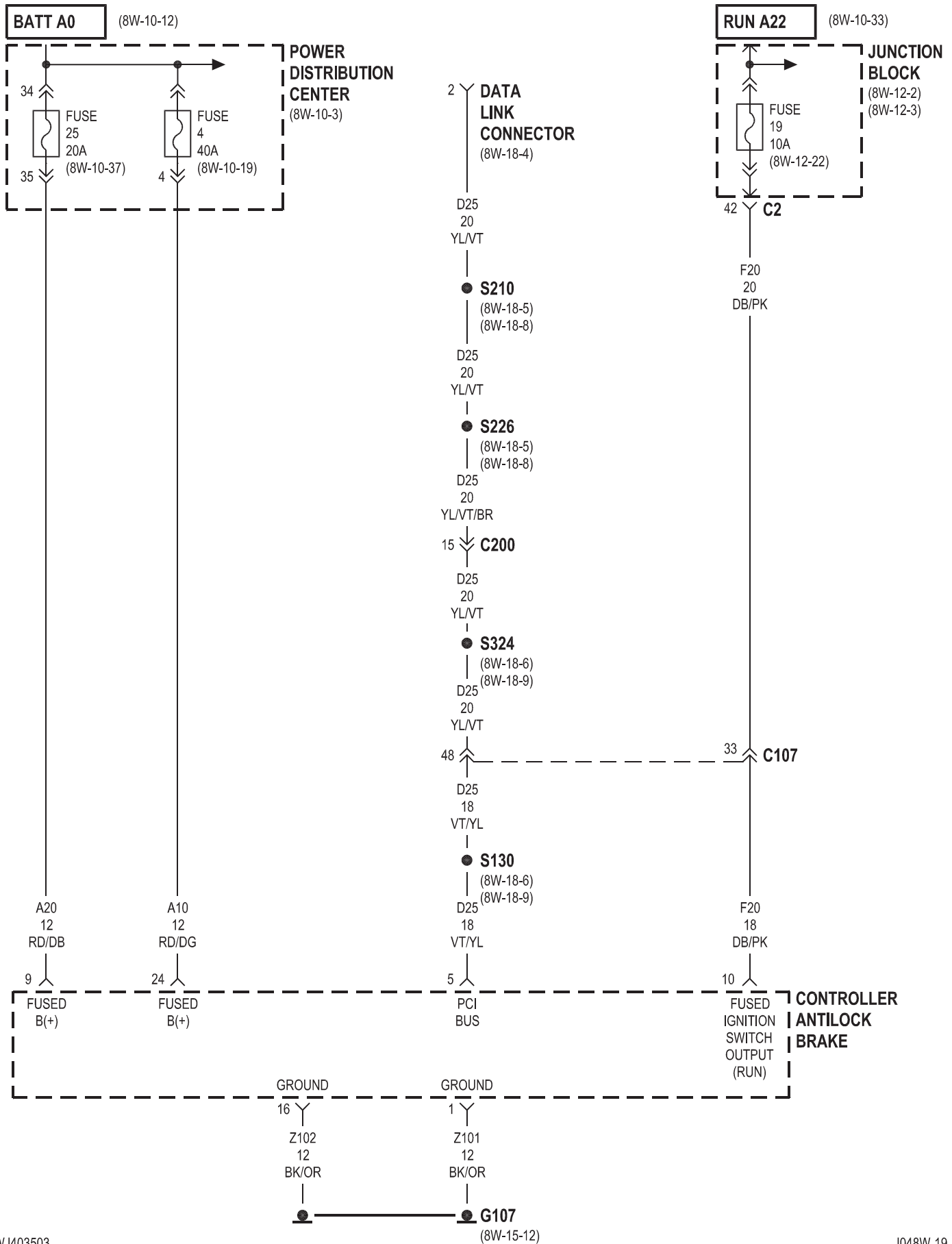


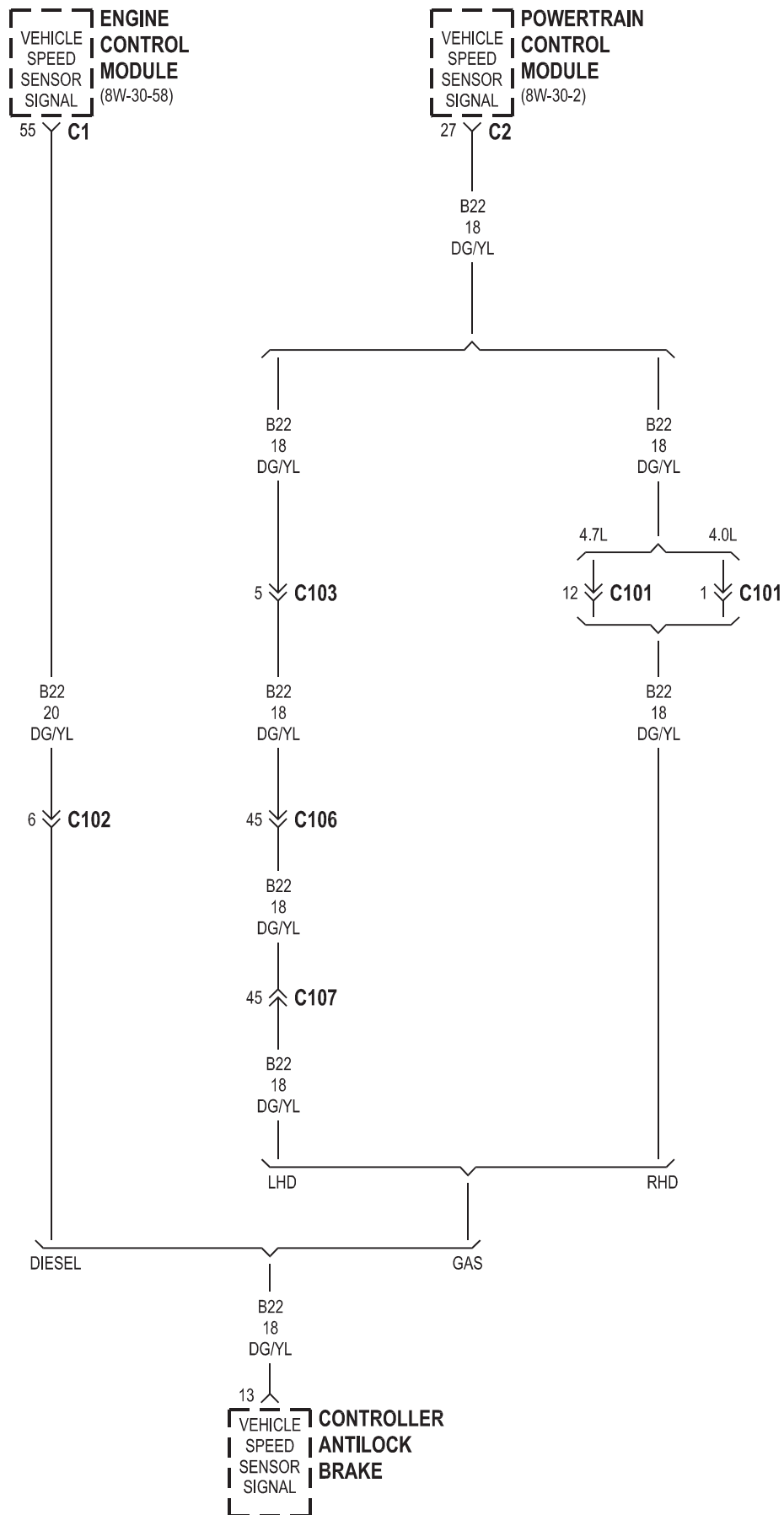
## 8W-35 ANTILOCK BRAKES

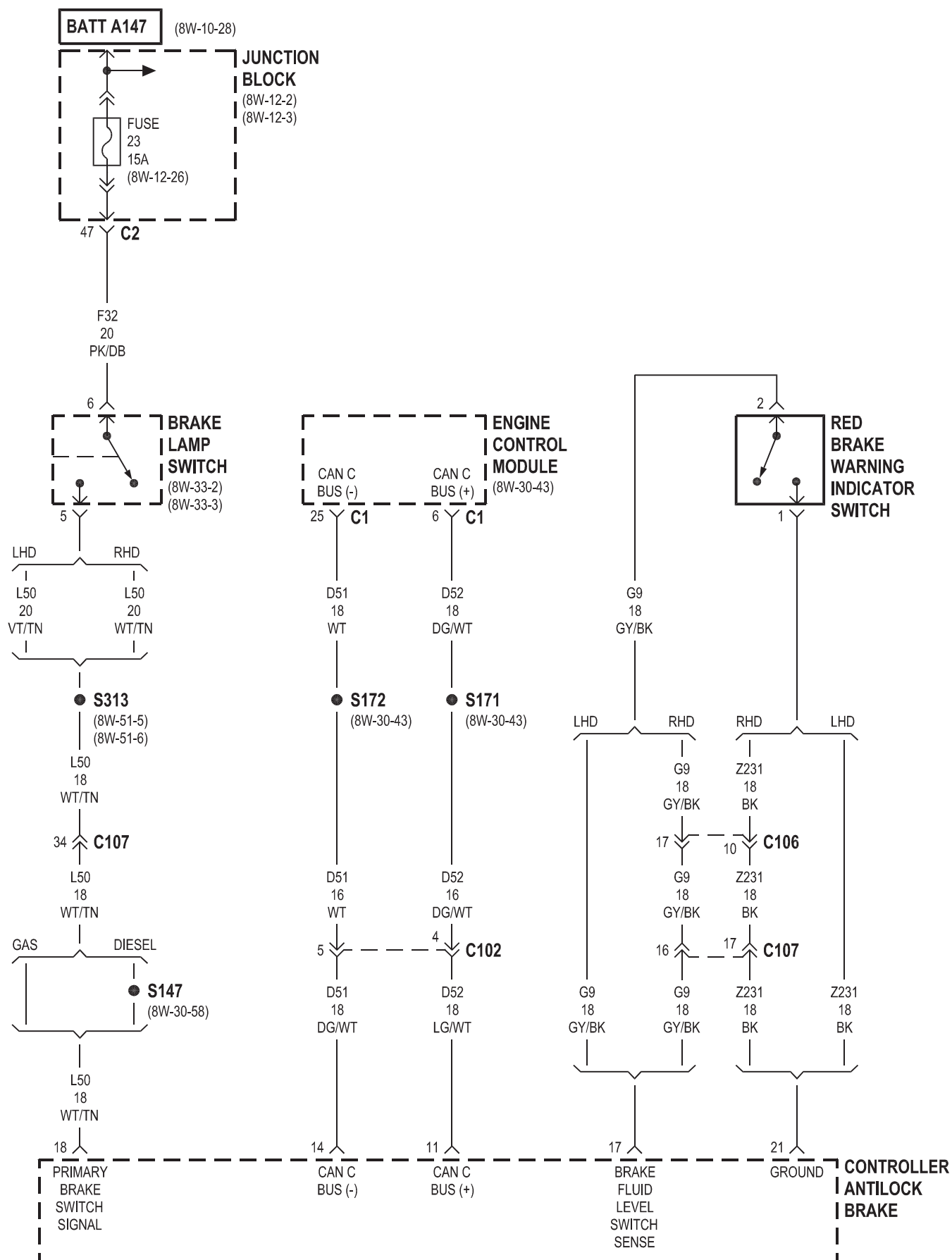
<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
Brake Lamp Switch . . . . .	8W-35-5
Controller Antilock Brake . . . . .	8W-35-2, 3, 4, 5, 6
Data Link Connector . . . . .	8W-35-2, 3
Engine Control Module . . . . .	8W-35-4, 5
Fuse 4 . . . . .	8W-35-2, 3
Fuse 19 . . . . .	8W-35-2, 3
Fuse 23 . . . . .	8W-35-5
Fuse 25 . . . . .	8W-35-2, 3
G107 . . . . .	8W-35-2, 3

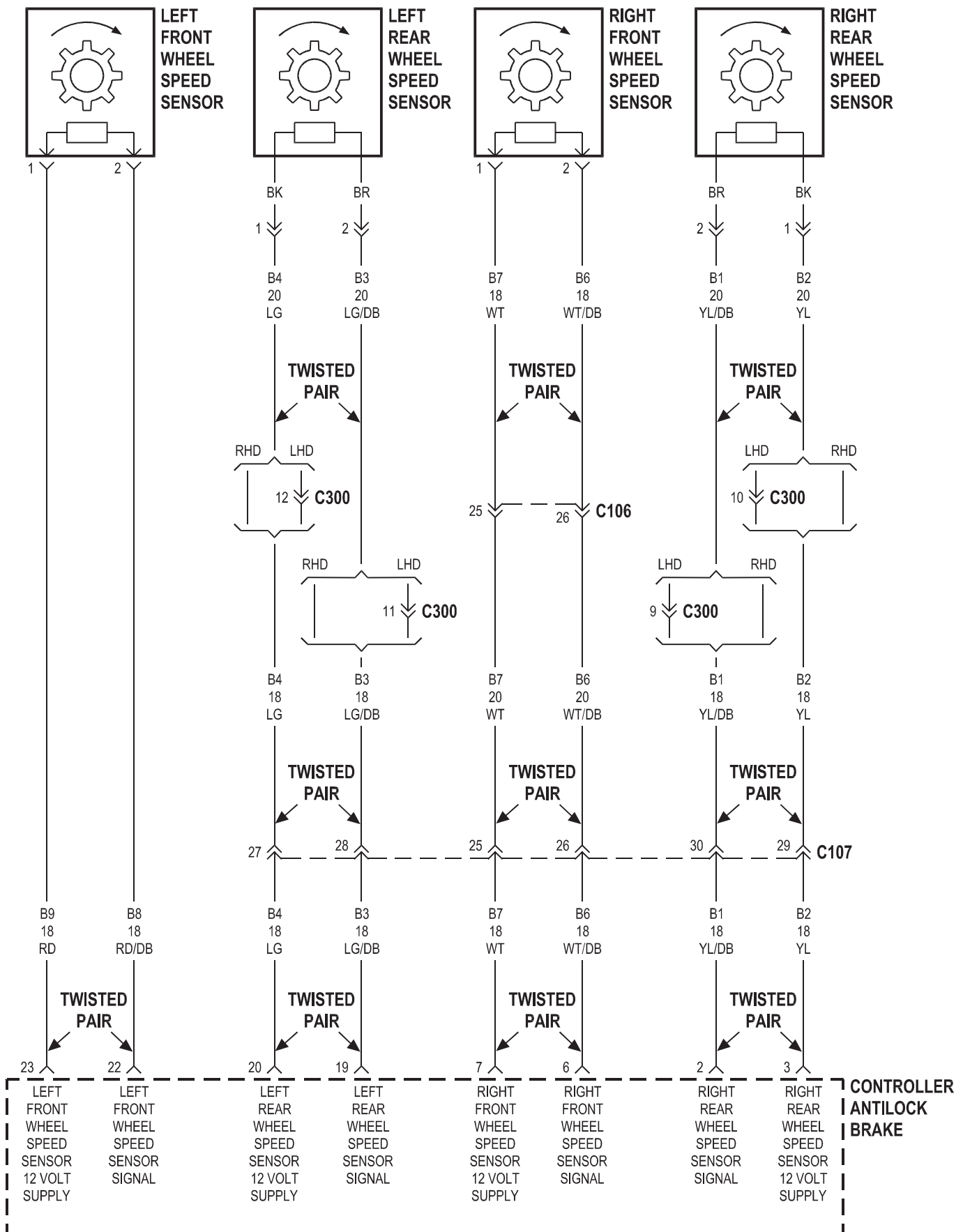
<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
Junction Block . . . . .	8W-35-2, 3, 5
Left Front Wheel Speed Sensor . . . . .	8W-35-6
Left Rear Wheel Speed Sensor . . . . .	8W-35-6
Power Distribution Center . . . . .	8W-35-2, 3
Powertrain Control Module . . . . .	8W-35-4
Red Brake Warning Indicator Switch . . . . .	8W-35-5
Right Front Wheel Speed Sensor . . . . .	8W-35-6
Right Rear Wheel Speed Sensor . . . . .	8W-35-6









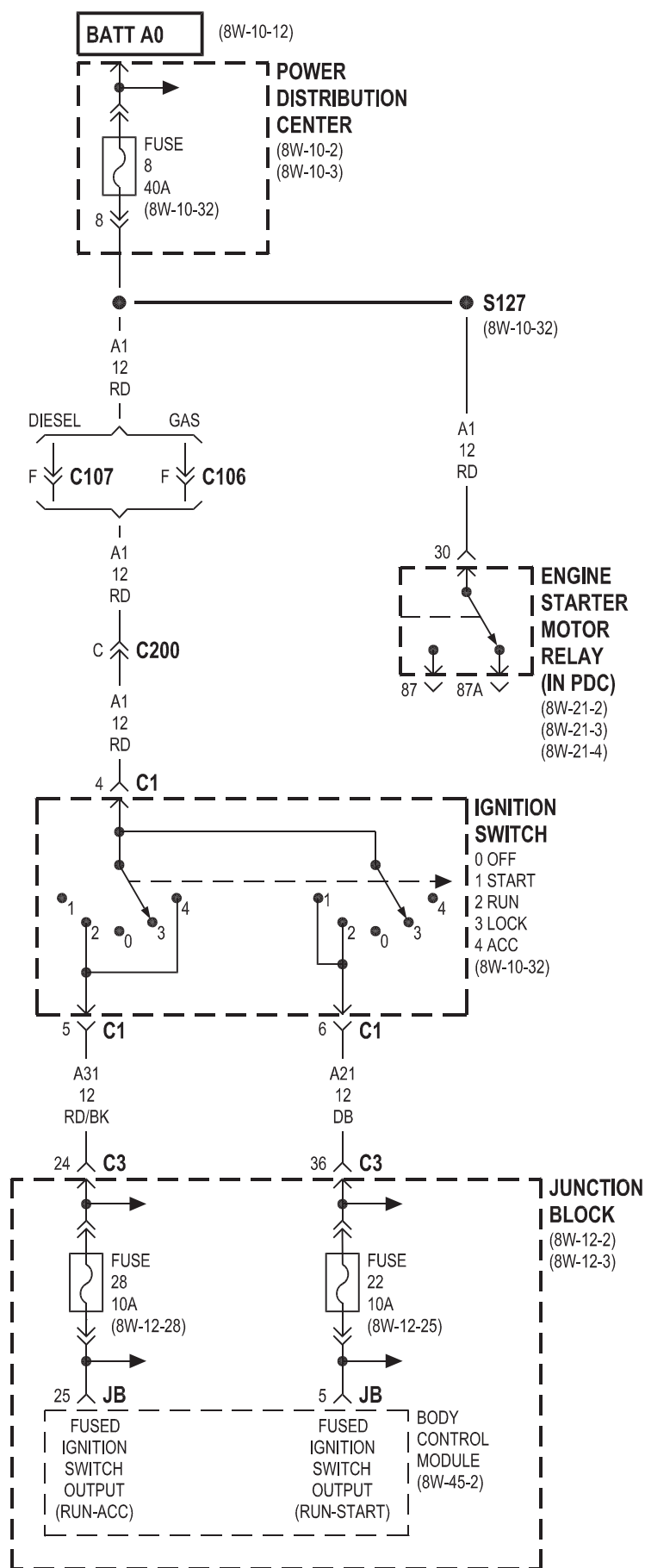


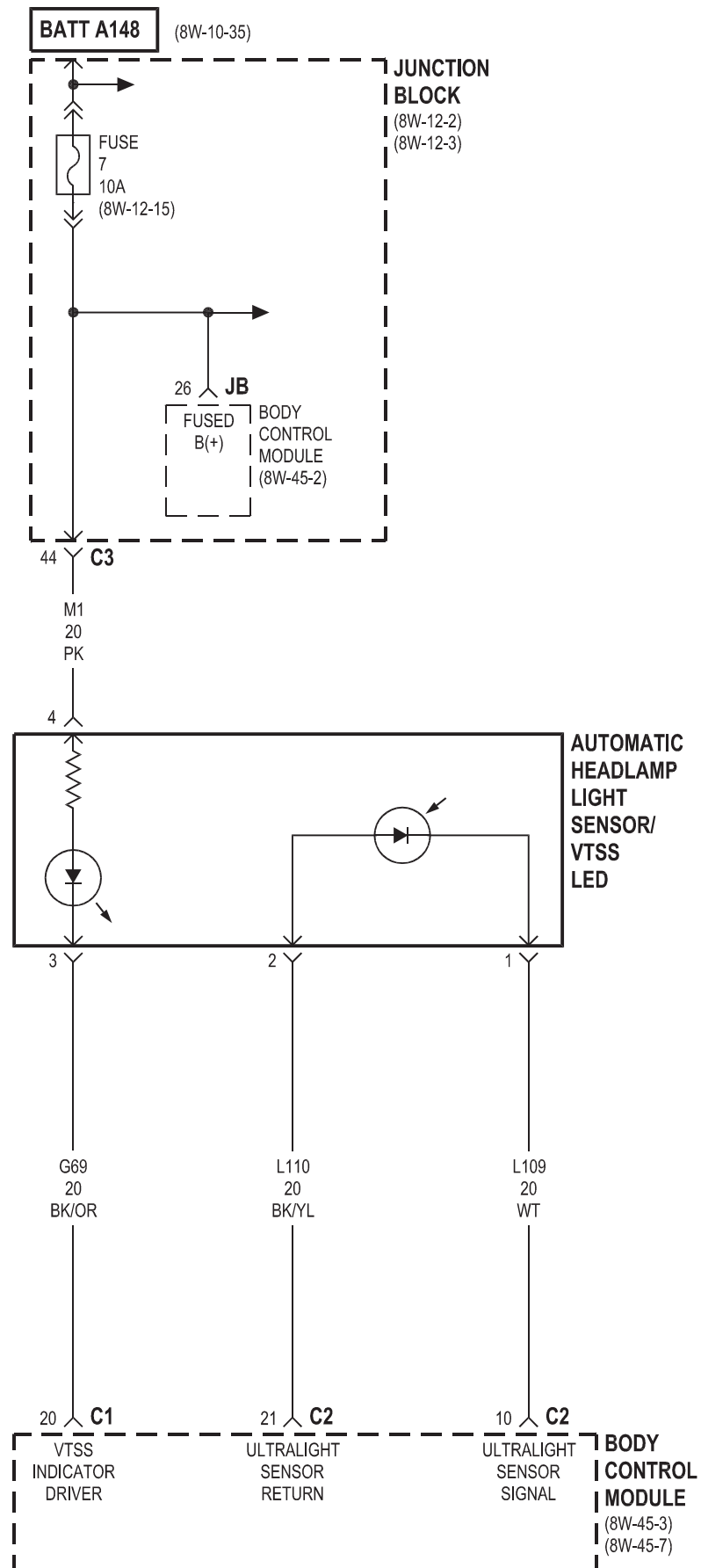


## 8W-39 VEHICLE THEFT SECURITY SYSTEM

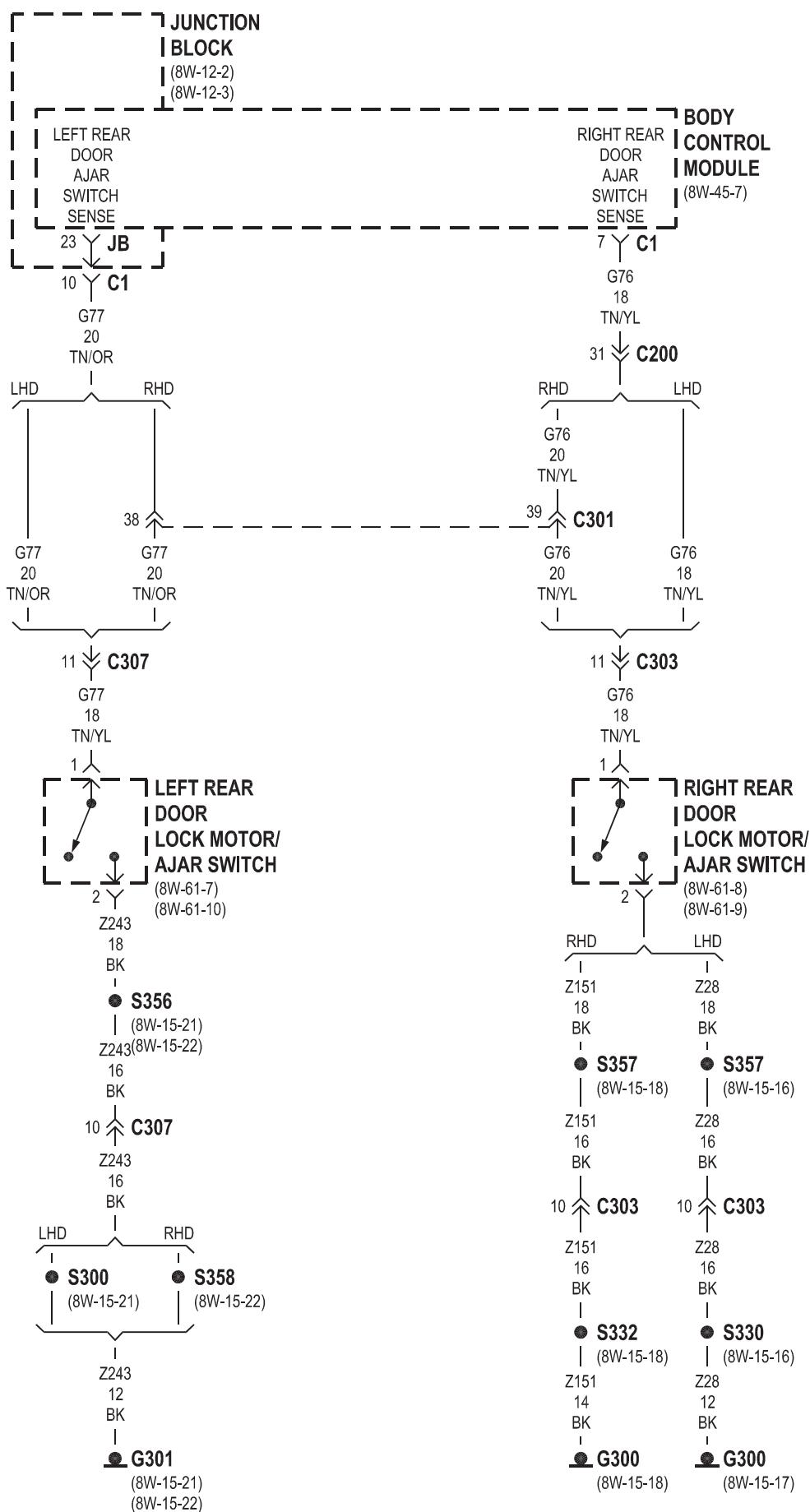
<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
Automatic Headlamp Light Sensor/VTSS	
Led . . . . .	8W-39-3
Body Control Module . . .	8W-39-2, 3, 4, 5, 7, 8, 9, 10
Clockspring . . . . .	8W-39-7, 8
Data Link Connector . . . . .	8W-39-9
Driver Cylinder Lock Switch . . . . .	8W-39-6
Driver Door Lock Motor/Ajar Switch . . . . .	8W-39-6
Driver Door Module . . . . .	8W-39-6, 11
Engine Starter Motor Relay . . . . .	8W-39-2
Fuse 7 . . . . .	8W-39-3, 9, 11
Fuse 8 . . . . .	8W-39-2
Fuse 18 . . . . .	8W-39-7, 8
Fuse 22 . . . . .	8W-39-2, 9
Fuse 28 . . . . .	8W-39-2
G106 . . . . .	8W-39-10
G108 . . . . .	8W-39-7, 8
G200 . . . . .	8W-39-9
G300 . . . . .	8W-39-5, 6
G301 . . . . .	8W-39-4, 5, 6, 11

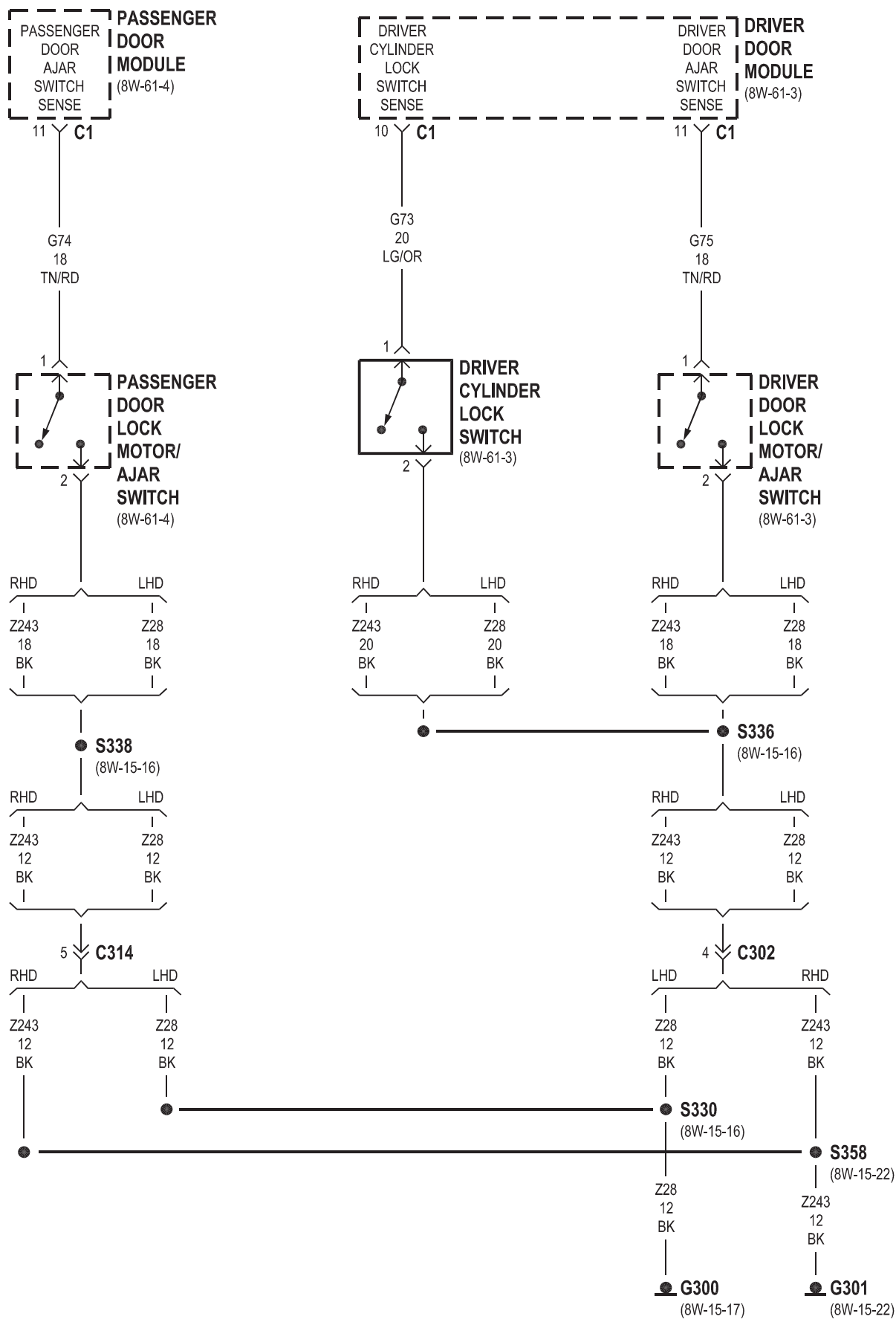
<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
Hood Ajar Switch . . . . .	8W-39-10
Horn No. 1 . . . . .	8W-39-7, 8
Horn No. 2 . . . . .	8W-39-7, 8
Horn Relay . . . . .	8W-39-7, 8
Horn Switch . . . . .	8W-39-7, 8
Ignition Switch . . . . .	8W-39-2
Junction Block . . . . .	8W-39-2, 3, 4, 5, 7, 8, 9, 11
Left Liftgate Ajar Switch . . . . .	8W-39-4
Left Rear Door Lock Motor/Ajar Switch . . .	8W-39-5
Liftgate Flip-Up Ajar Switch . . . . .	8W-39-4
Passenger Door Lock Motor/Ajar Switch . .	8W-39-6
Passenger Door Module . . . . .	8W-39-6
Power Distribution Center . . . . .	8W-39-2, 7, 8
Remote Keyless Module . . . . .	8W-39-11
Right Liftgate Ajar Switch . . . . .	8W-39-4
Right Rear Door Lock Motor/Ajar Switch . .	8W-39-5
Sentry Key Immobilizer Module . . . . .	8W-39-9



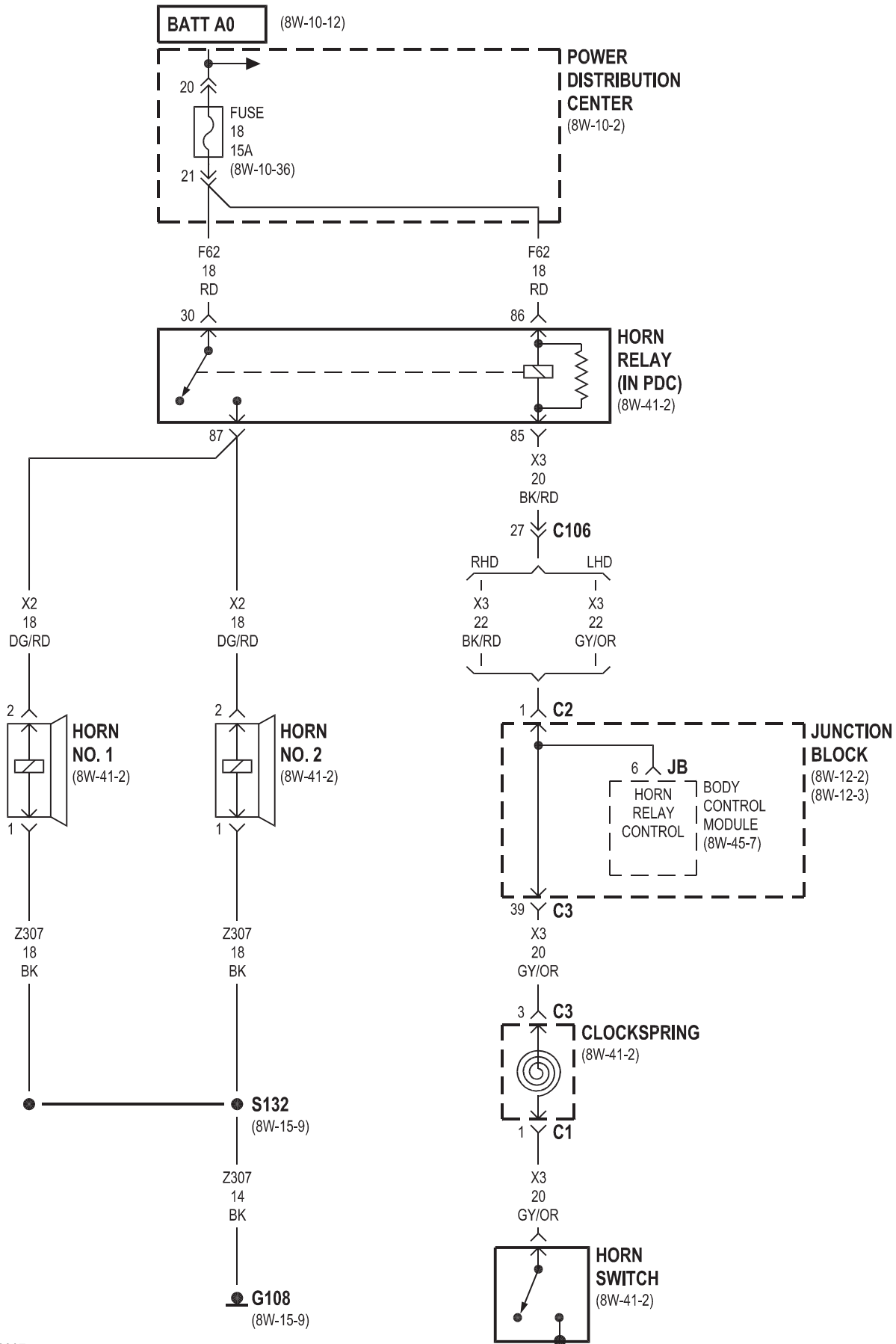


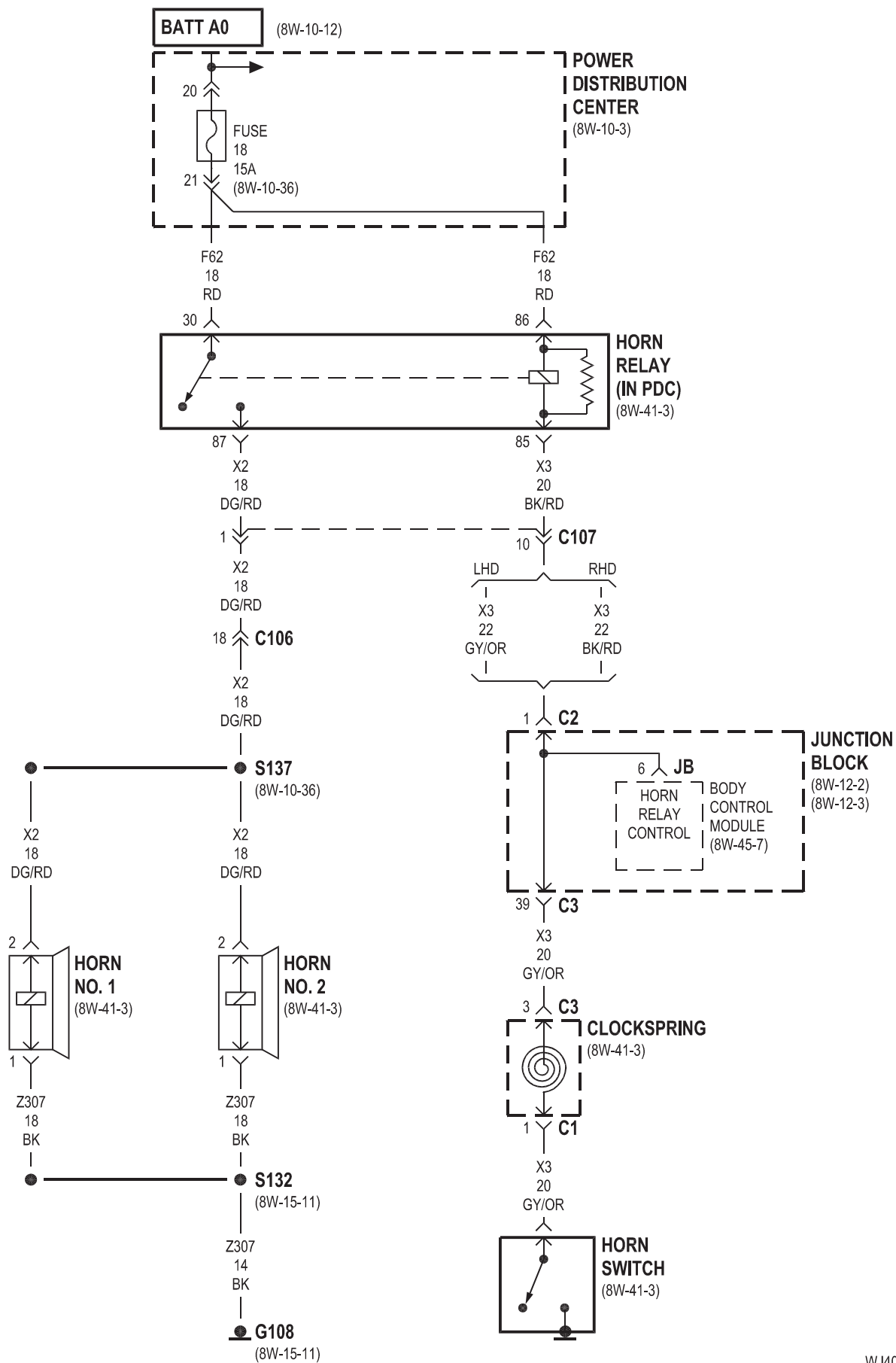


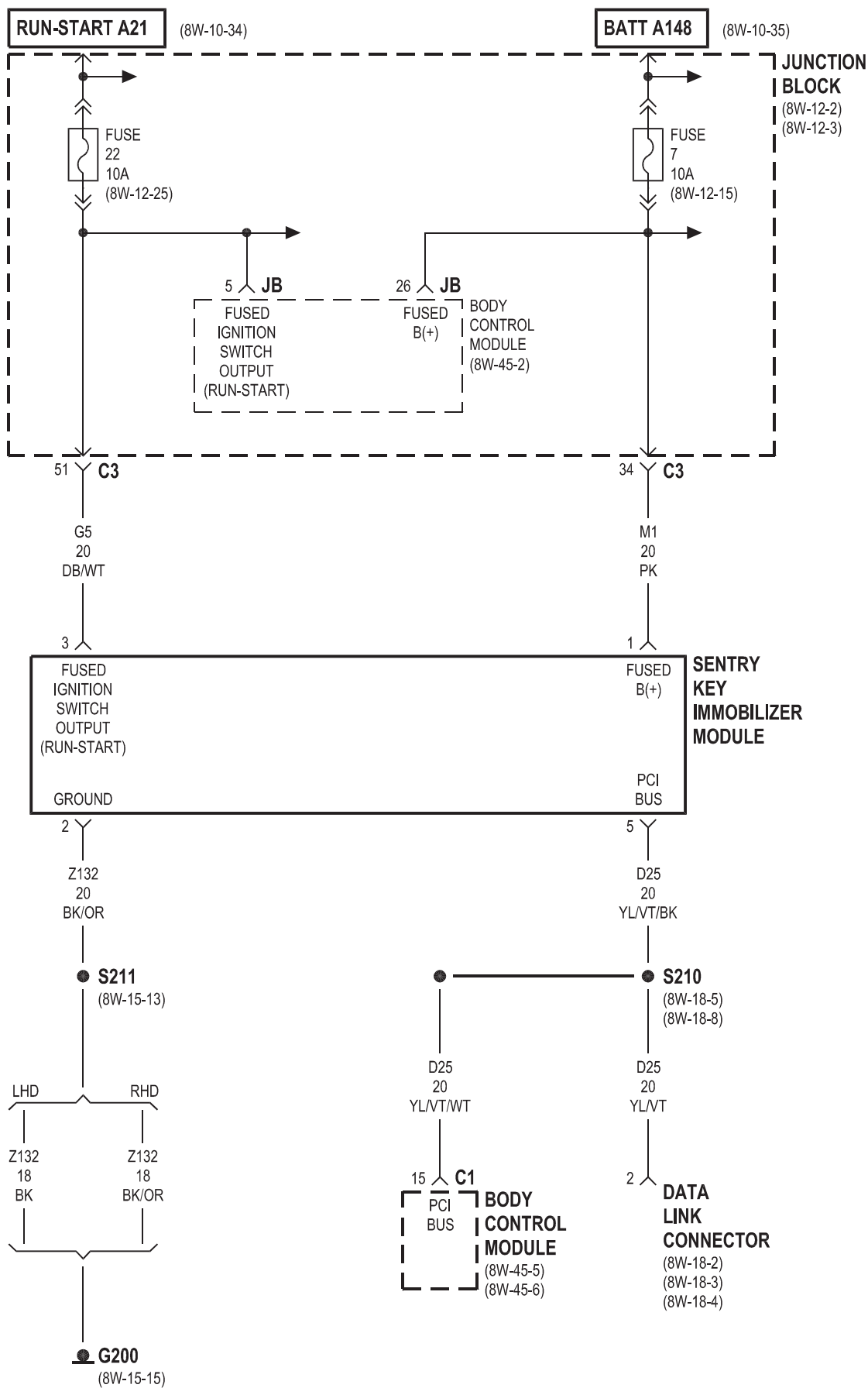


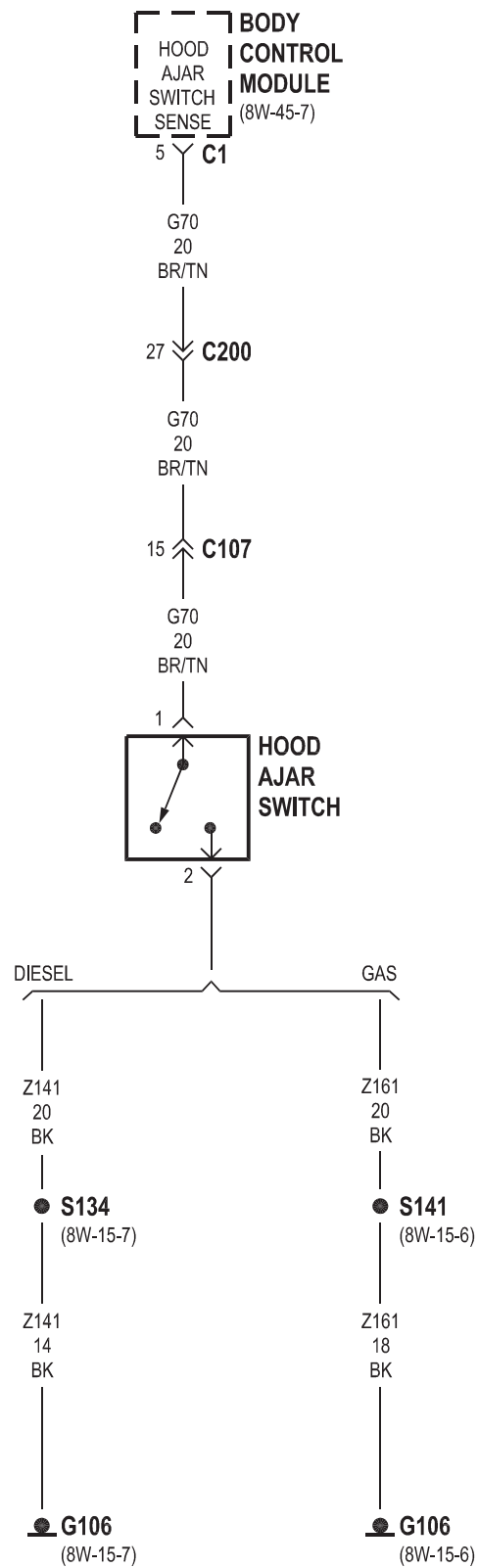














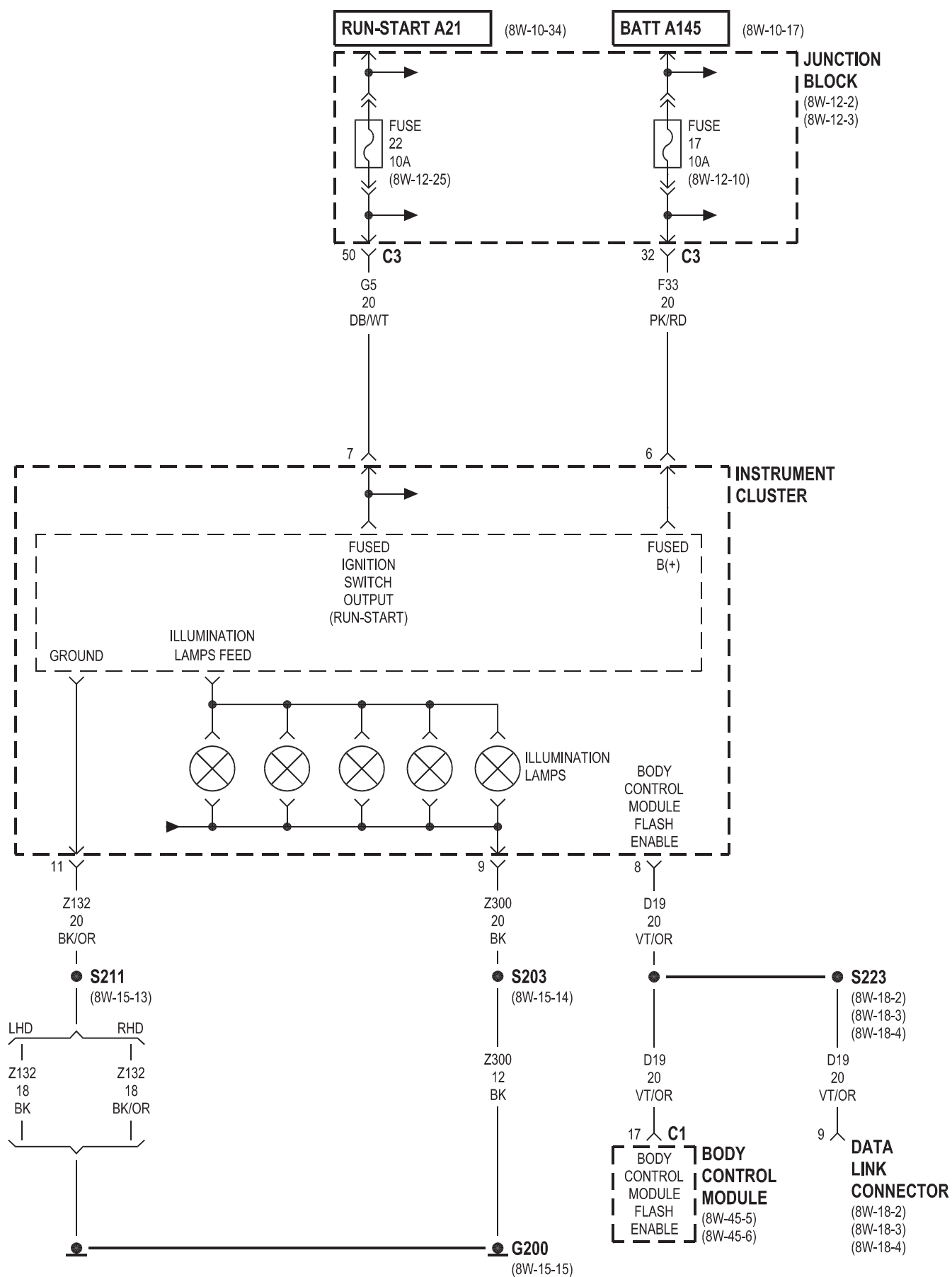


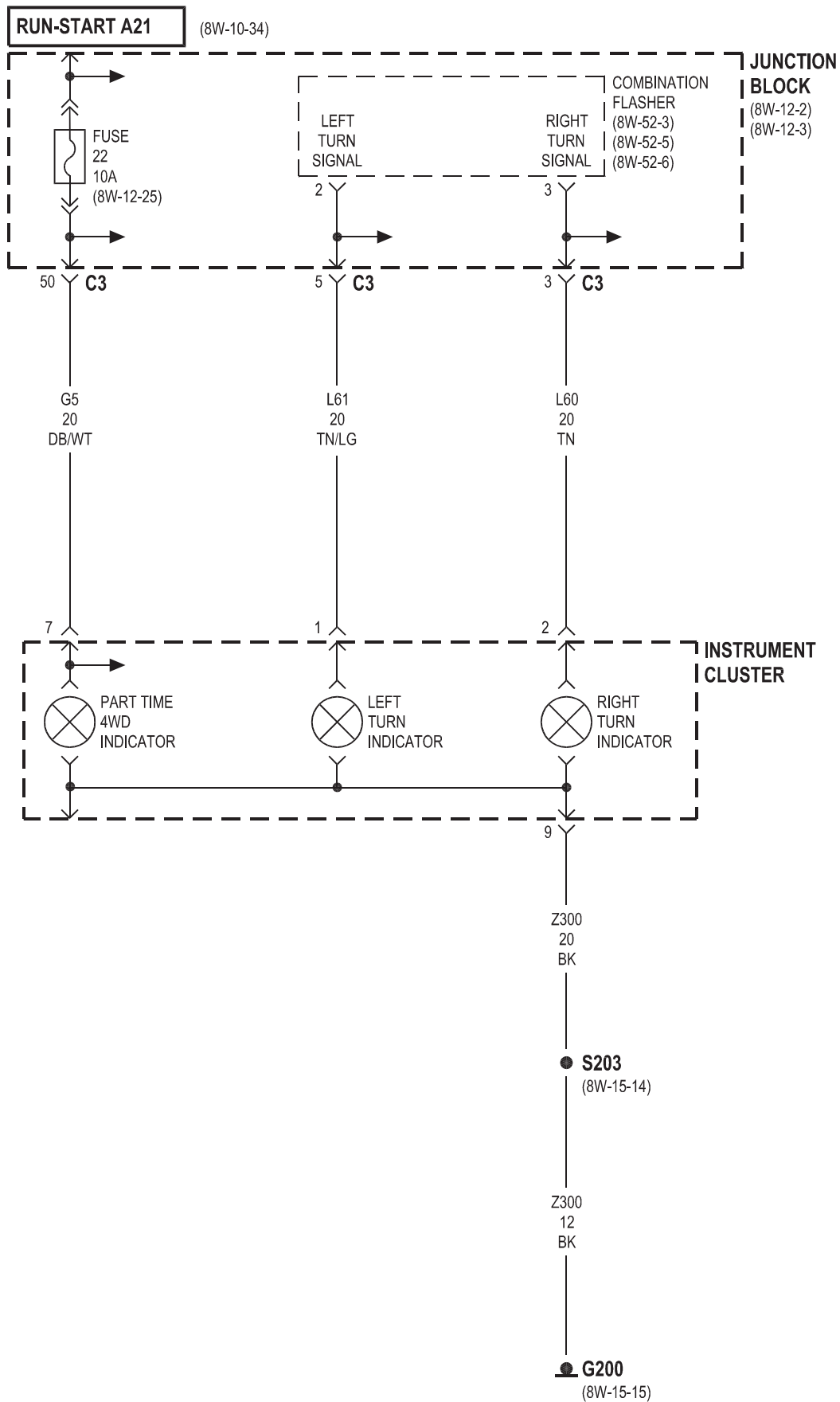


## 8W-40 INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

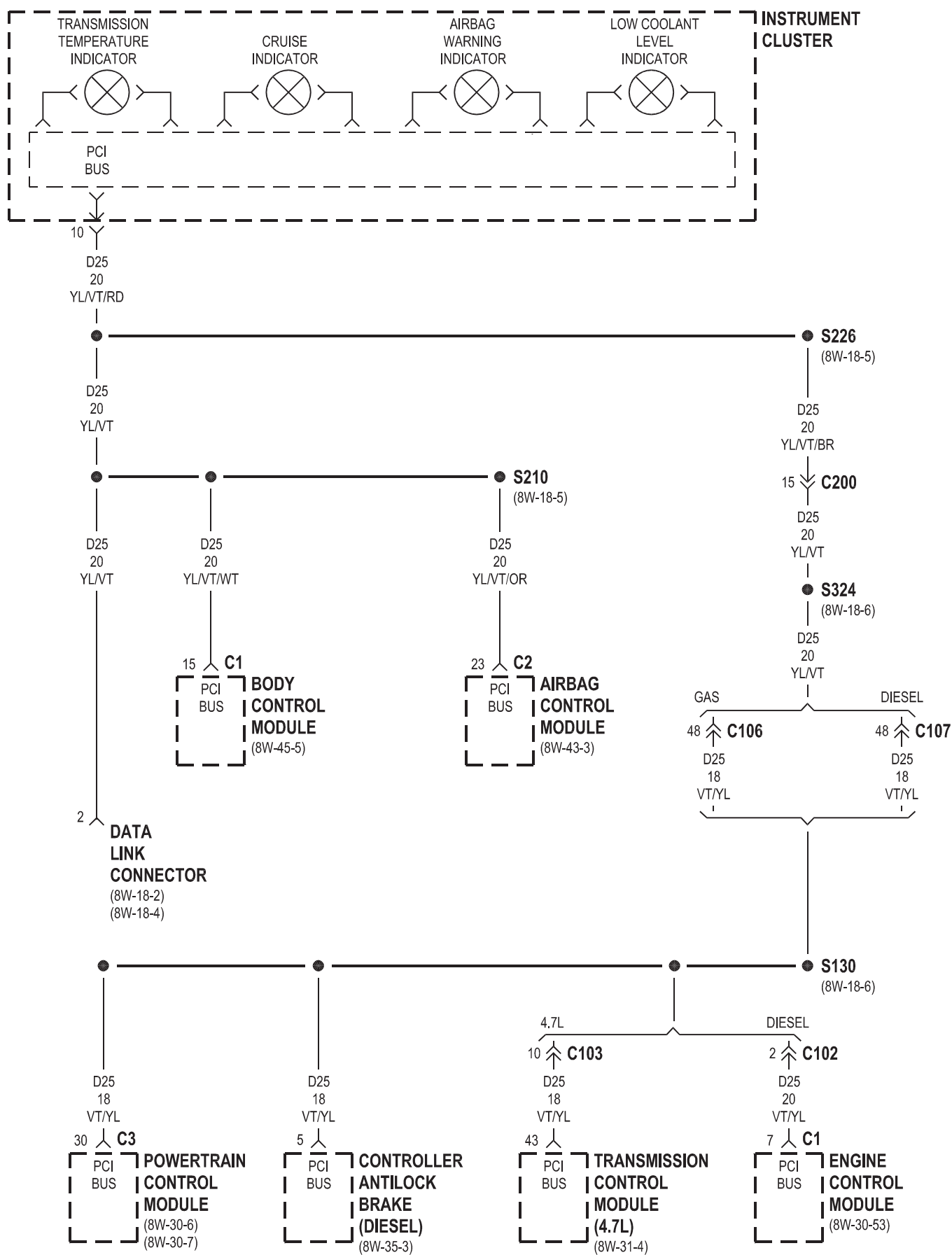
<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
Airbag Control Module . . . . .	8W-40-4, 5
Body Control Module . . . . .	8W-40-2, 4, 5, 6, 7, 10
Combination Flasher . . . . .	8W-40-3
Controller Antilock Brake . . . . .	8W-40-4, 5, 6, 7, 9
Data Link Connector . . . . .	8W-40-2, 4, 5
Engine Control Module . . . . .	8W-40-4, 5, 9, 10
Fuse 17 . . . . .	8W-40-2
Fuse 22 . . . . .	8W-40-2, 3

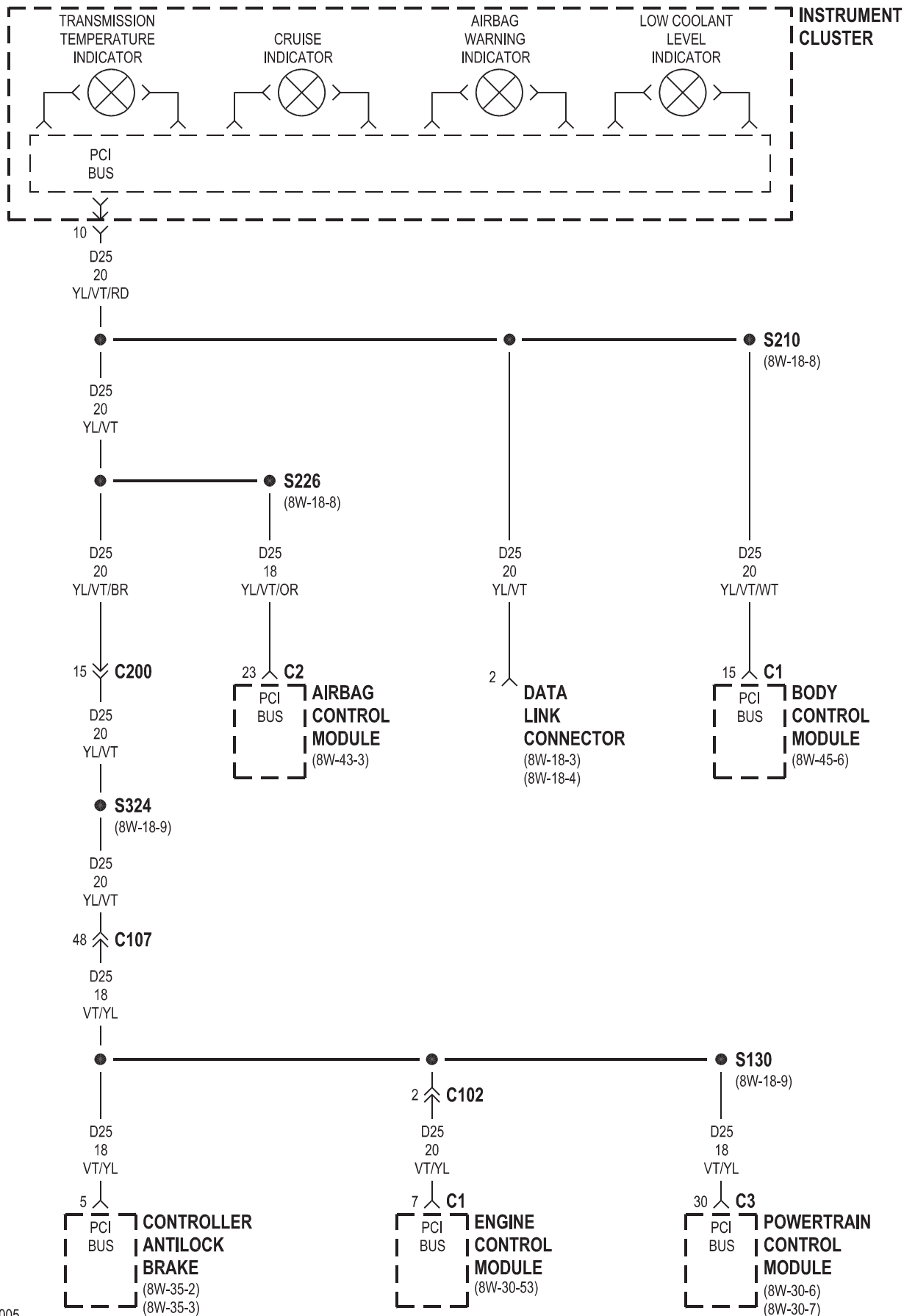
<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
G200 . . . . .	8W-40-2, 3
Instrument Cluster . . . . .	8W-40-2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10
Junction Block . . . . .	8W-40-2, 3
Park Brake Switch . . . . .	8W-40-6, 7
Powertrain Control Module . . . . .	8W-40-4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 10
Transmission Control Module . . . . .	8W-40-4
Vehicle Information Center . . . . .	8W-40-7



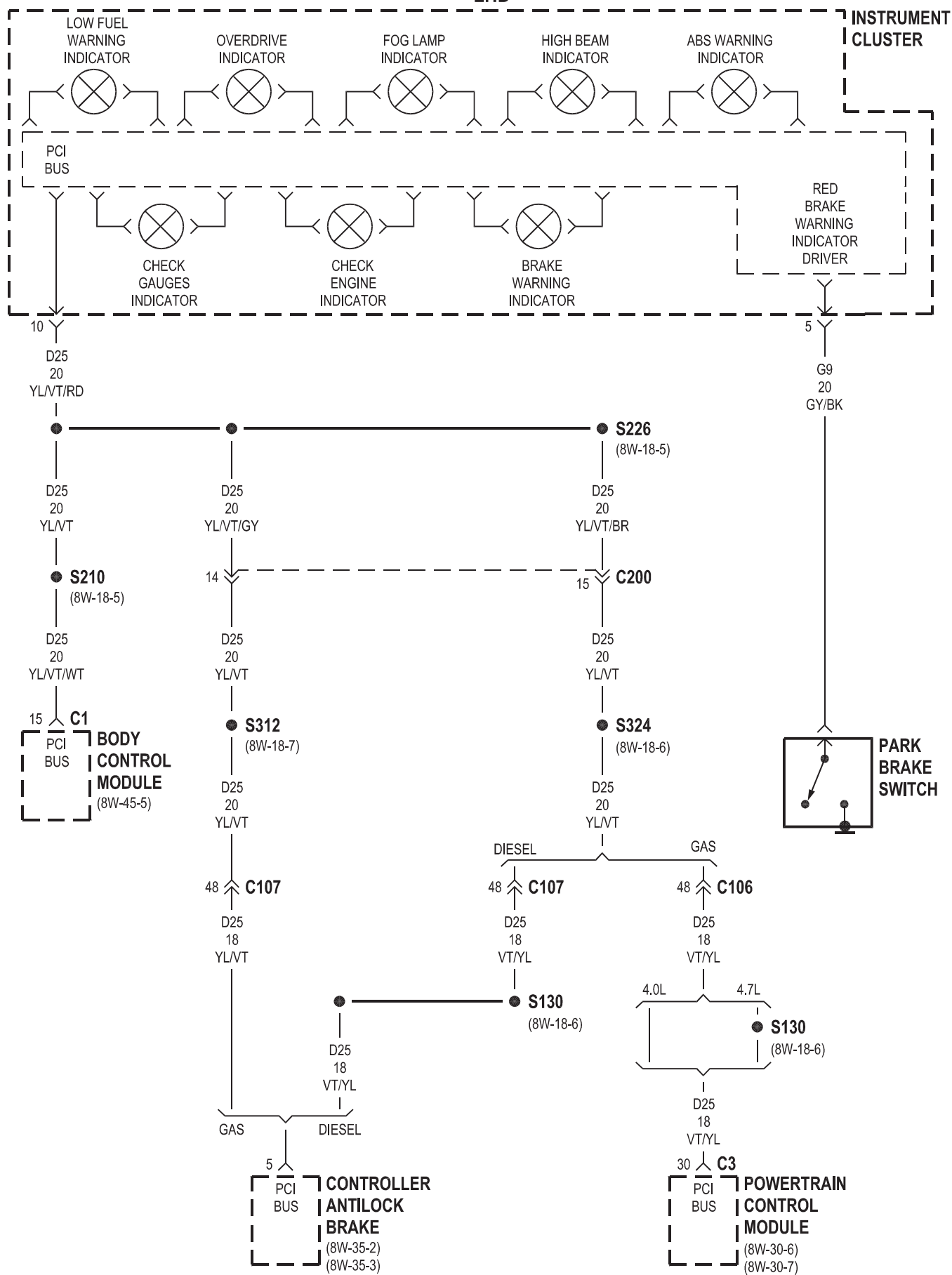


## LHD

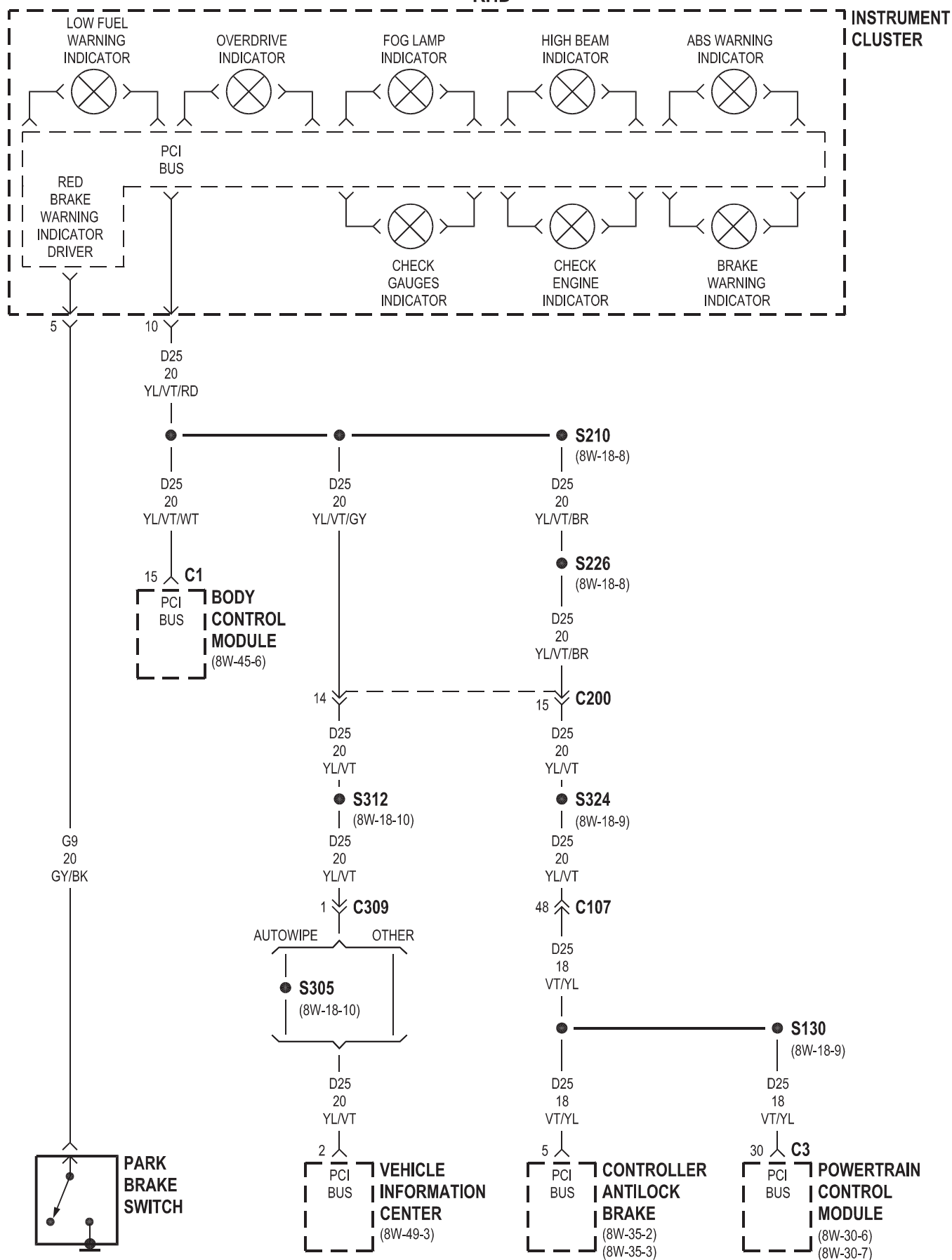


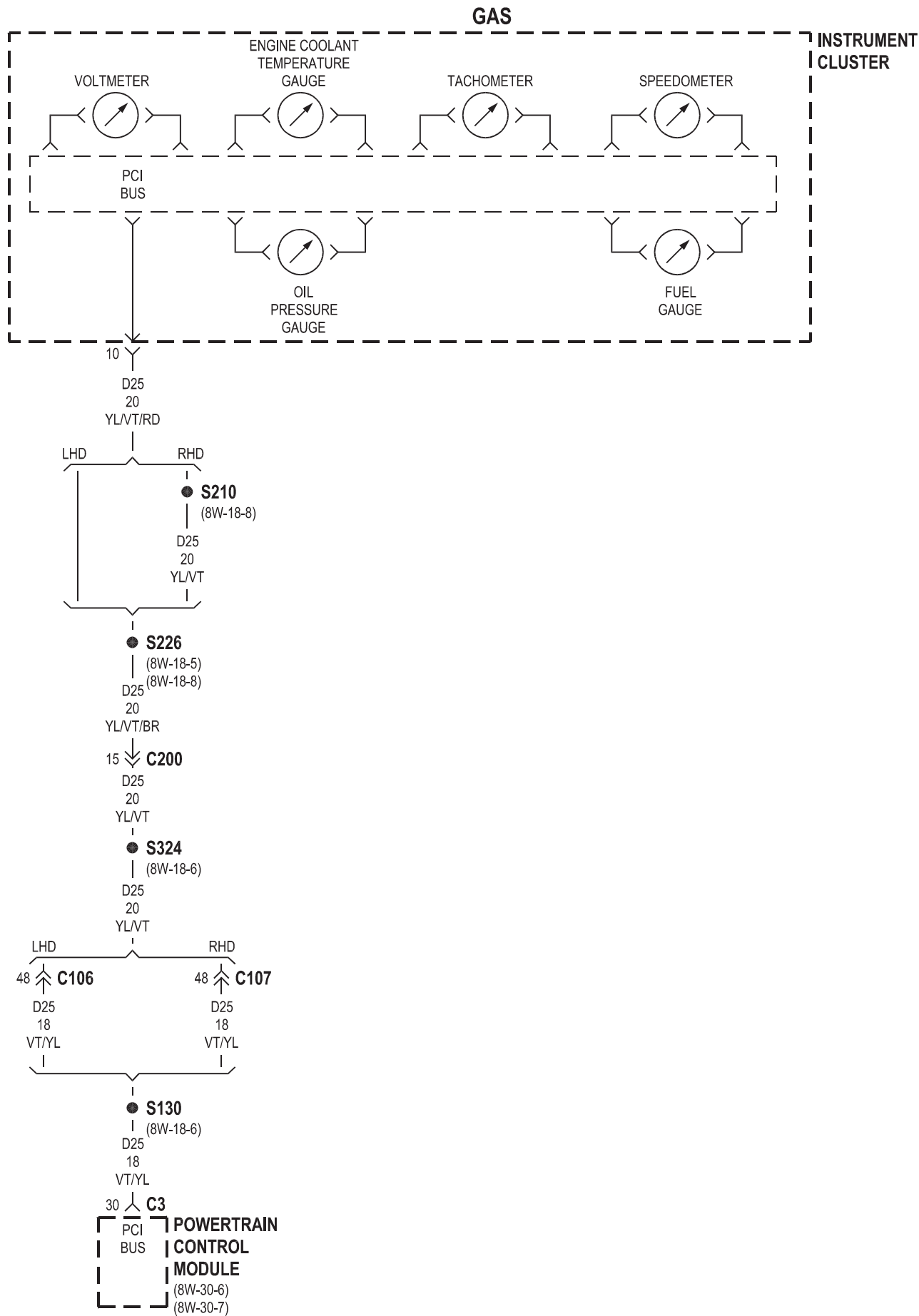


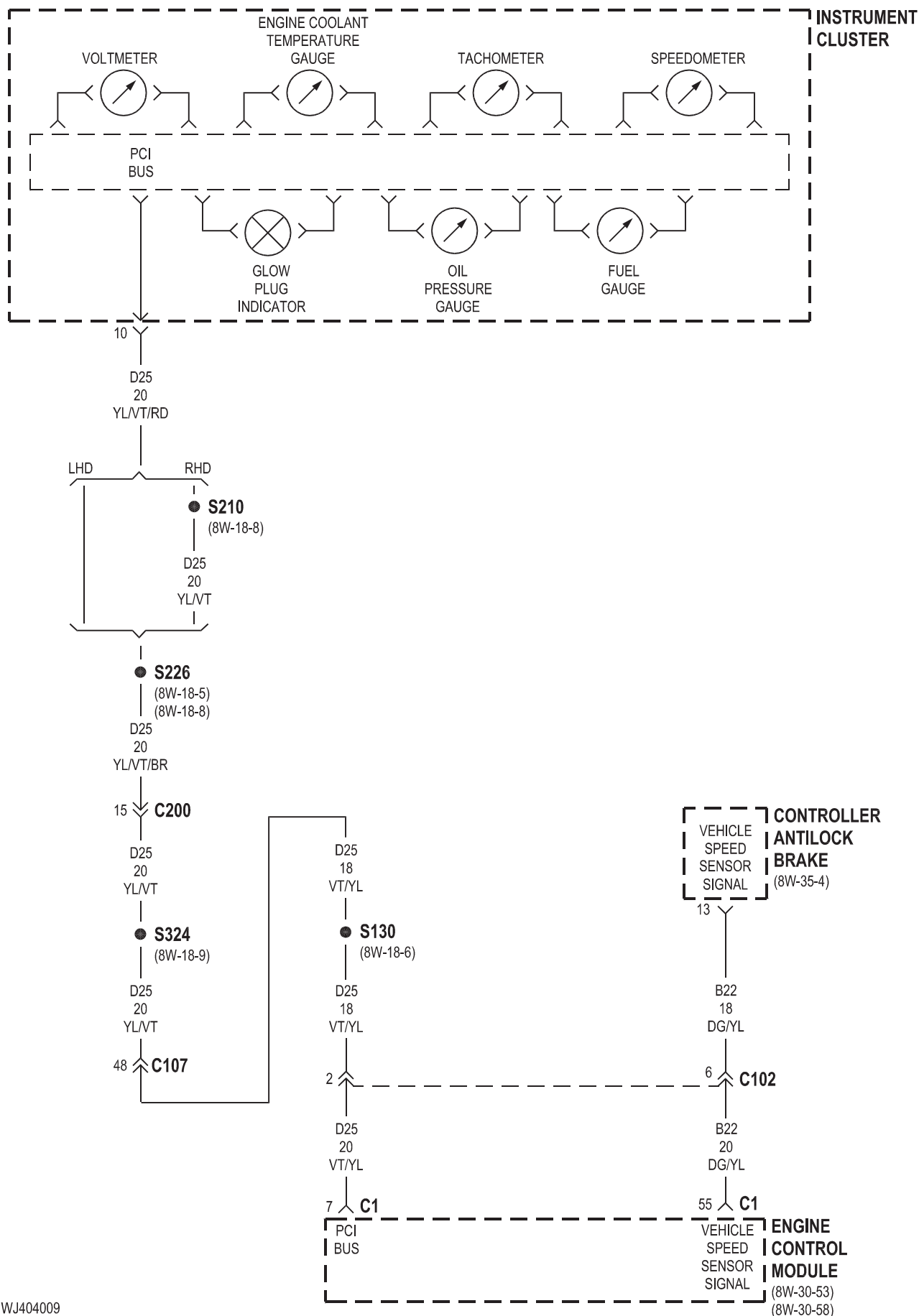
LHD

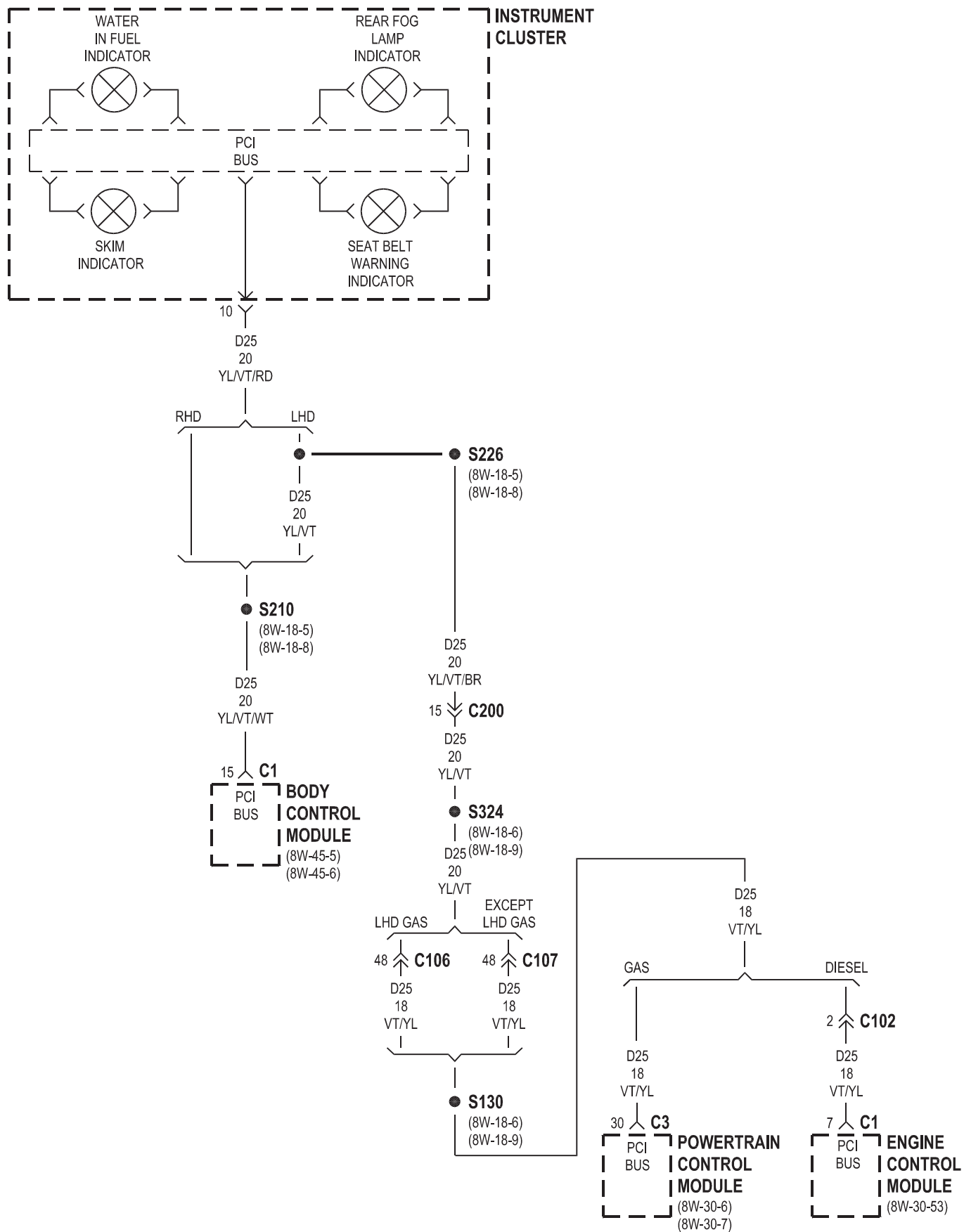








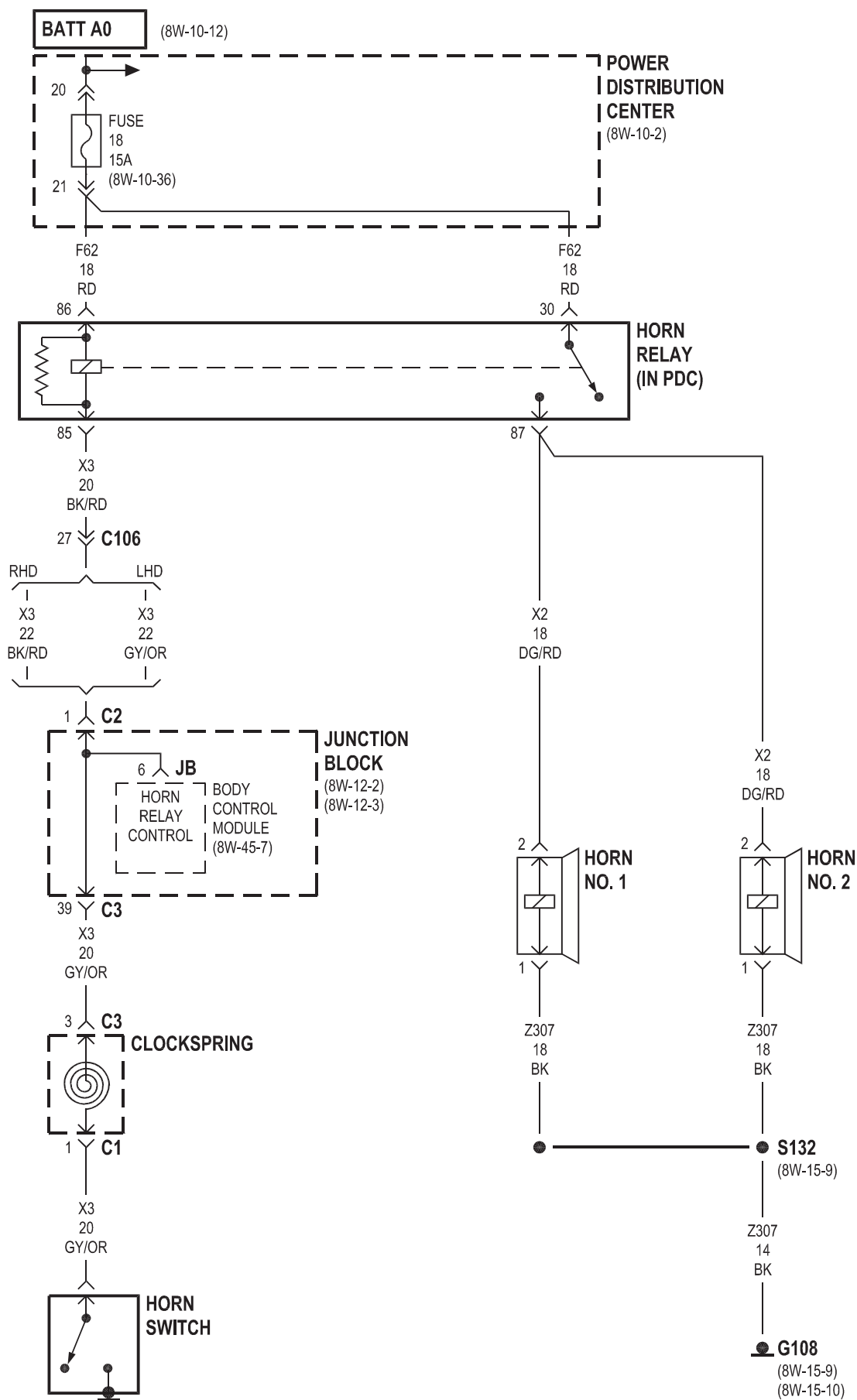




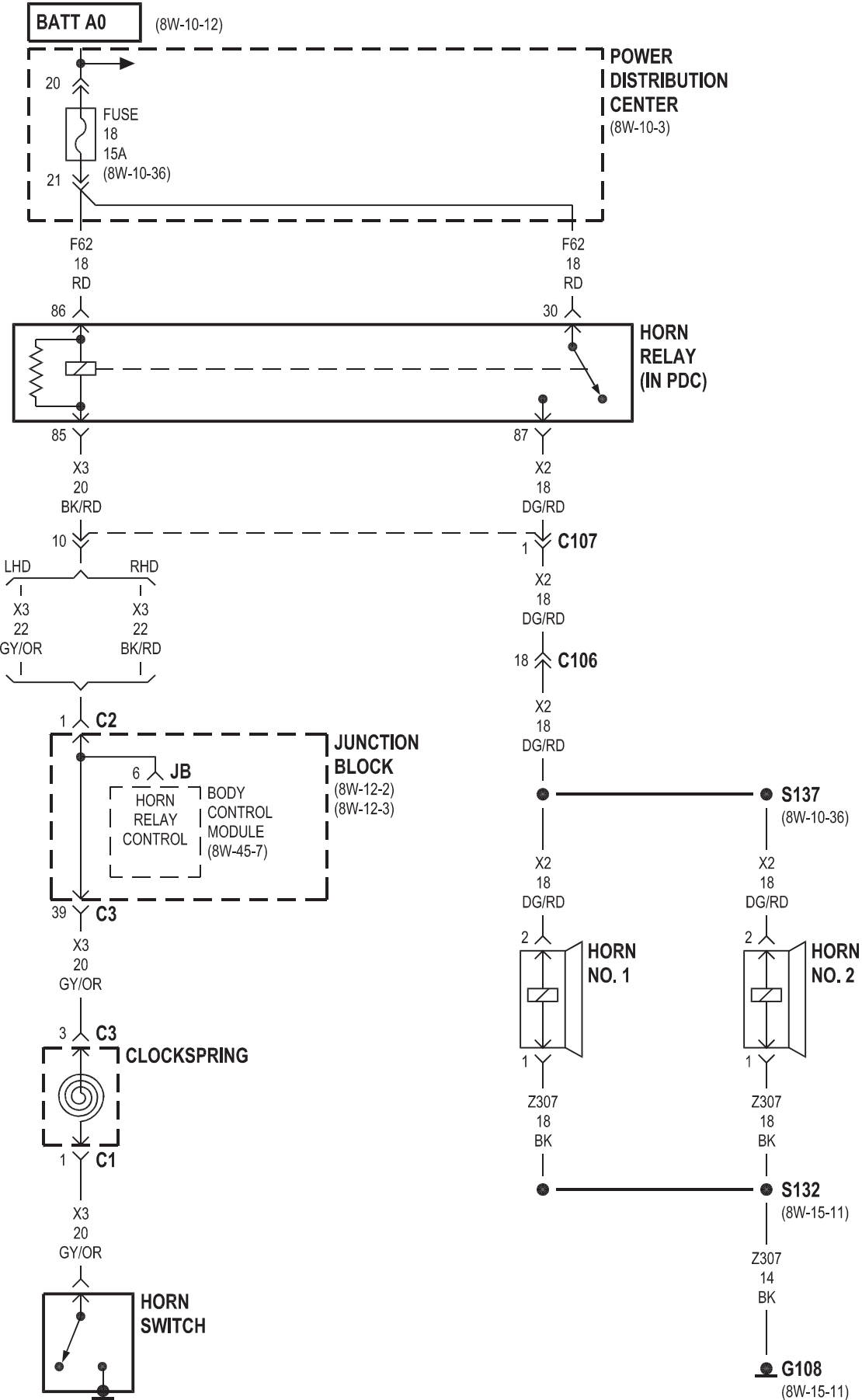
## 8W-41 HORN/CIGAR LIGHTER/POWER OUTLET

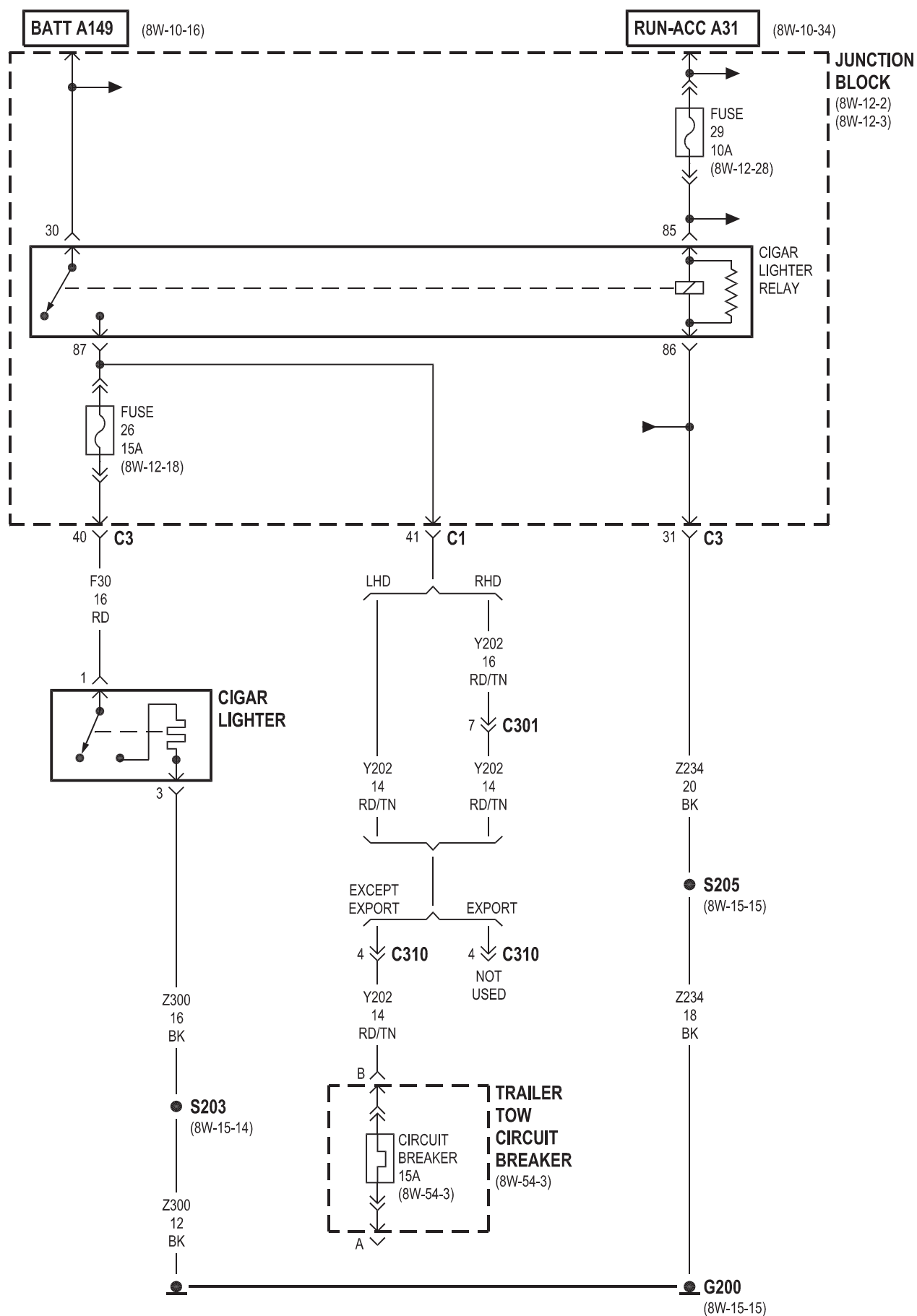
<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
Body Control Module . . . . .	8W-41-2, 3
Cigar Lighter . . . . .	8W-41-4
Cigar Lighter Relay . . . . .	8W-41-4
Circuit Breaker . . . . .	8W-41-4
Clockspring . . . . .	8W-41-2, 3
Front Power Outlet . . . . .	8W-41-5
Fuse 9 . . . . .	8W-41-5
Fuse 18 . . . . .	8W-41-2, 3
Fuse 26 . . . . .	8W-41-4
Fuse 27 . . . . .	8W-41-5
Fuse 29 . . . . .	8W-41-4

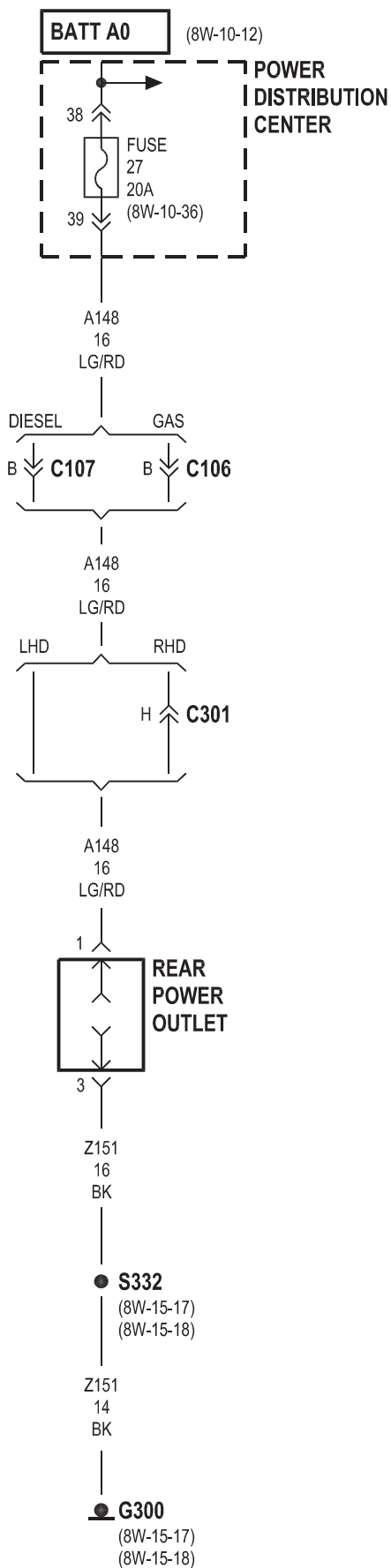
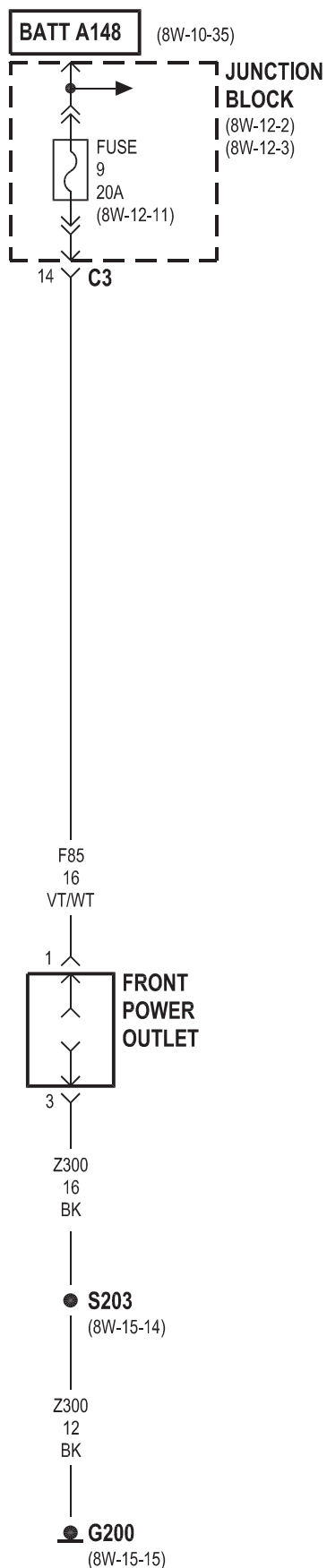
<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
G108 . . . . .	8W-41-2, 3
G200 . . . . .	8W-41-4, 5
G300 . . . . .	8W-41-5
Horn No. 1 . . . . .	8W-41-2, 3
Horn No. 2 . . . . .	8W-41-2, 3
Horn Relay . . . . .	8W-41-2, 3
Horn Switch . . . . .	8W-41-2, 3
Junction Block . . . . .	8W-41-2, 3, 4, 5
Power Distribution Center . . . . .	8W-41-2, 3, 5
Rear Power Outlet . . . . .	8W-41-5
Trailer Tow Circuit Breaker . . . . .	8W-41-4









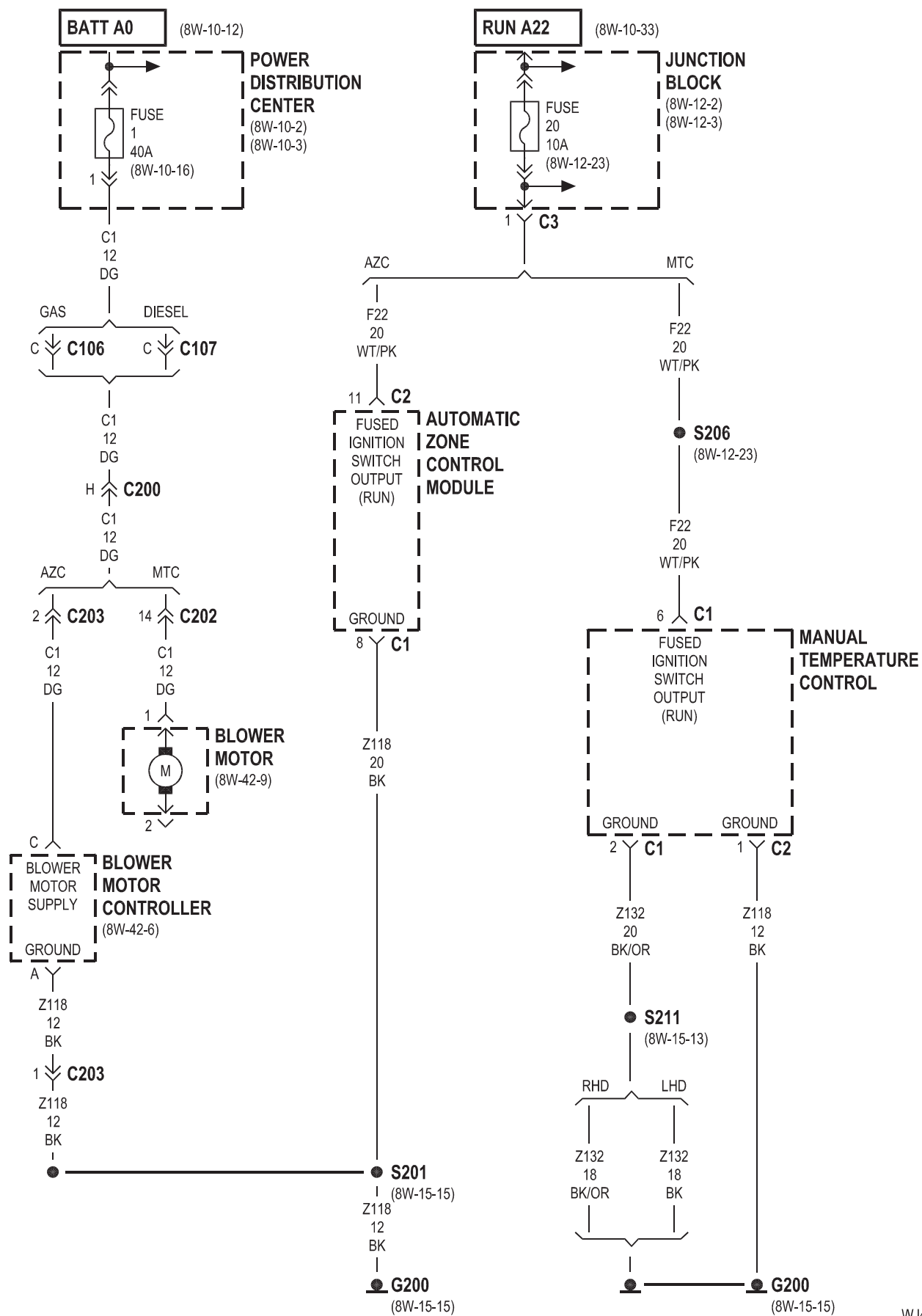




## 8W-42 AIR CONDITIONING-HEATER

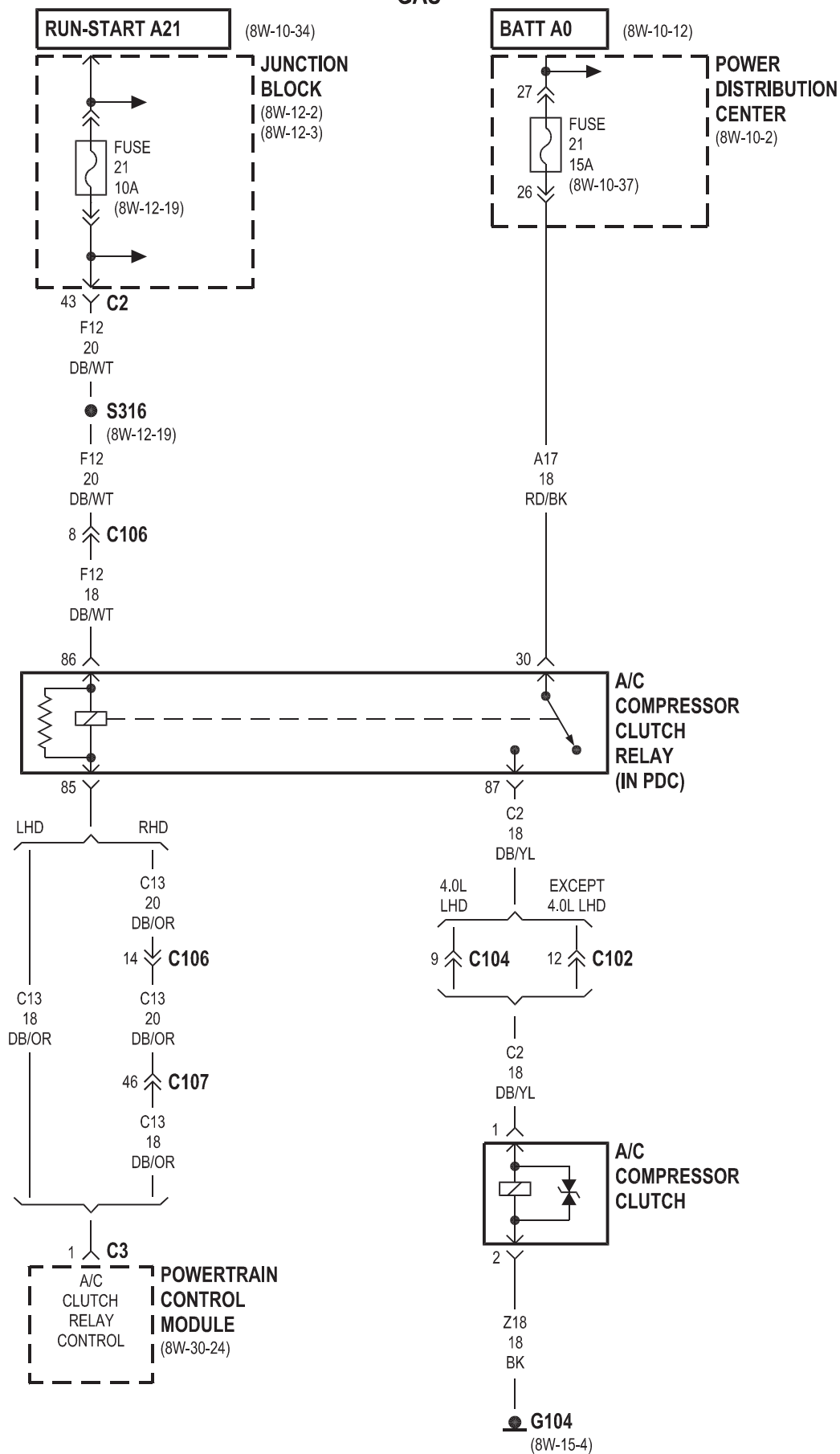
<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
A/C Compressor Clutch . . . . .	8W-42-3, 4
A/C Compressor Clutch Relay . . . . .	8W-42-3, 4
A/C Pressure Transducer . . . . .	8W-42-11, 12, 15
Auto Shut Down Relay . . . . .	8W-42-4, 11, 12
Automatic Zone Control Module . . . . .	8W-42-2, 5, 6, 7, 8
Blower Motor . . . . .	8W-42-2, 6, 9
Blower Motor Controller . . . . .	8W-42-2, 6
Blower Motor Resistor Block . . . . .	8W-42-9
Body Control Module . . . . .	8W-42-5, 6, 9, 10
Data Link Connector . . . . .	8W-42-5
Driver Blend Door Motor/Actuator . . . . .	8W-42-7, 8
Engine Control Module . . . . .	8W-42-4, 15, 16
Fuse 1 . . . . .	8W-42-2, 6, 9
Fuse 7 . . . . .	8W-42-6
Fuse 10 . . . . .	8W-42-13
Fuse 11 . . . . .	8W-42-5, 10
Fuse 16 . . . . .	8W-42-4, 11, 12
Fuse 20 . . . . .	8W-42-2, 10
Fuse 21 . . . . .	8W-42-3, 4
G104 . . . . .	8W-42-3
G108 . . . . .	8W-42-11, 12, 14, 16

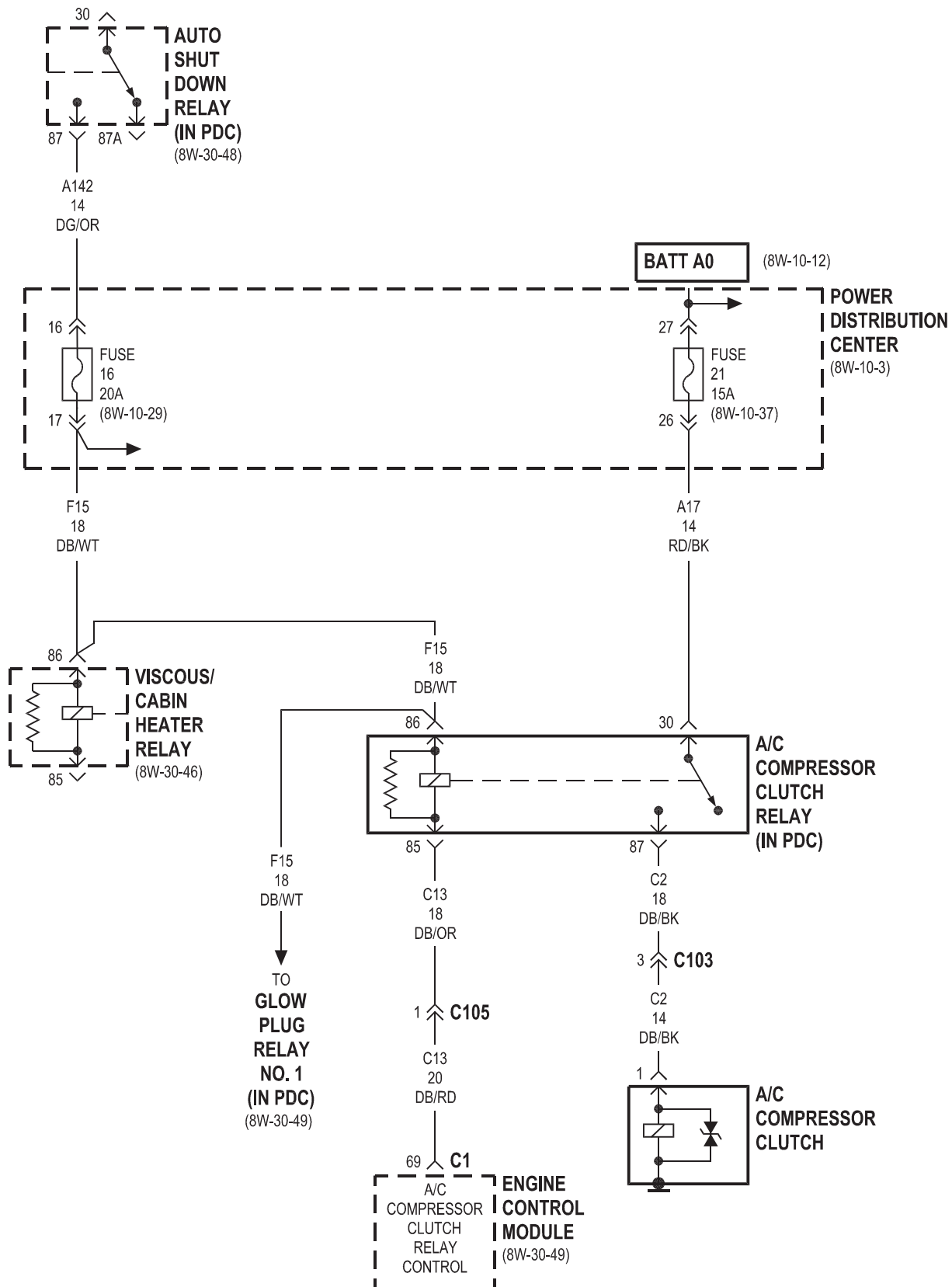
<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
G200 . . . . .	8W-42-2, 6, 10
Glow Plug Relay No. 1 . . . . .	8W-42-4, 16
Glow Plug Relay No. 2 . . . . .	8W-42-16
High Speed Radiator Fan Relay . . . . .	8W-42-13, 14
Hydraulic Cooling Module . . . . .	8W-42-11, 12, 16
Junction Block . . . . .	8W-42-2, 3, 5, 6, 10
Low Speed Radiator Fan Relay . . . . .	8W-42-13, 14
Manual Temperature Control . . . . .	8W-42-2, 9, 10
Mode Door Motor/Actuator . . . . .	8W-42-7, 8
Oxygen Sensor Downstream Relay . . . . .	8W-42-12
Passenger Blend Door Motor/Actuator . . . . .	8W-42-7, 8
Power Distribution	
Center . . . . .	8W-42-2, 3, 4, 6, 9, 11, 12, 13
Powertrain Control Module . . . . .	8W-42-3, 11, 12, 13
Radiator Fan Motor . . . . .	8W-42-13, 14
Rear Window Defogger . . . . .	8W-42-5, 10
Rear Window Defogger Relay . . . . .	8W-42-5, 10
Recirculation Door Motor/Actuator . . . . .	8W-42-7, 8
Temperature Valve Actuator . . . . .	8W-42-10
Viscous/Cabin Heater Relay . . . . .	8W-42-4

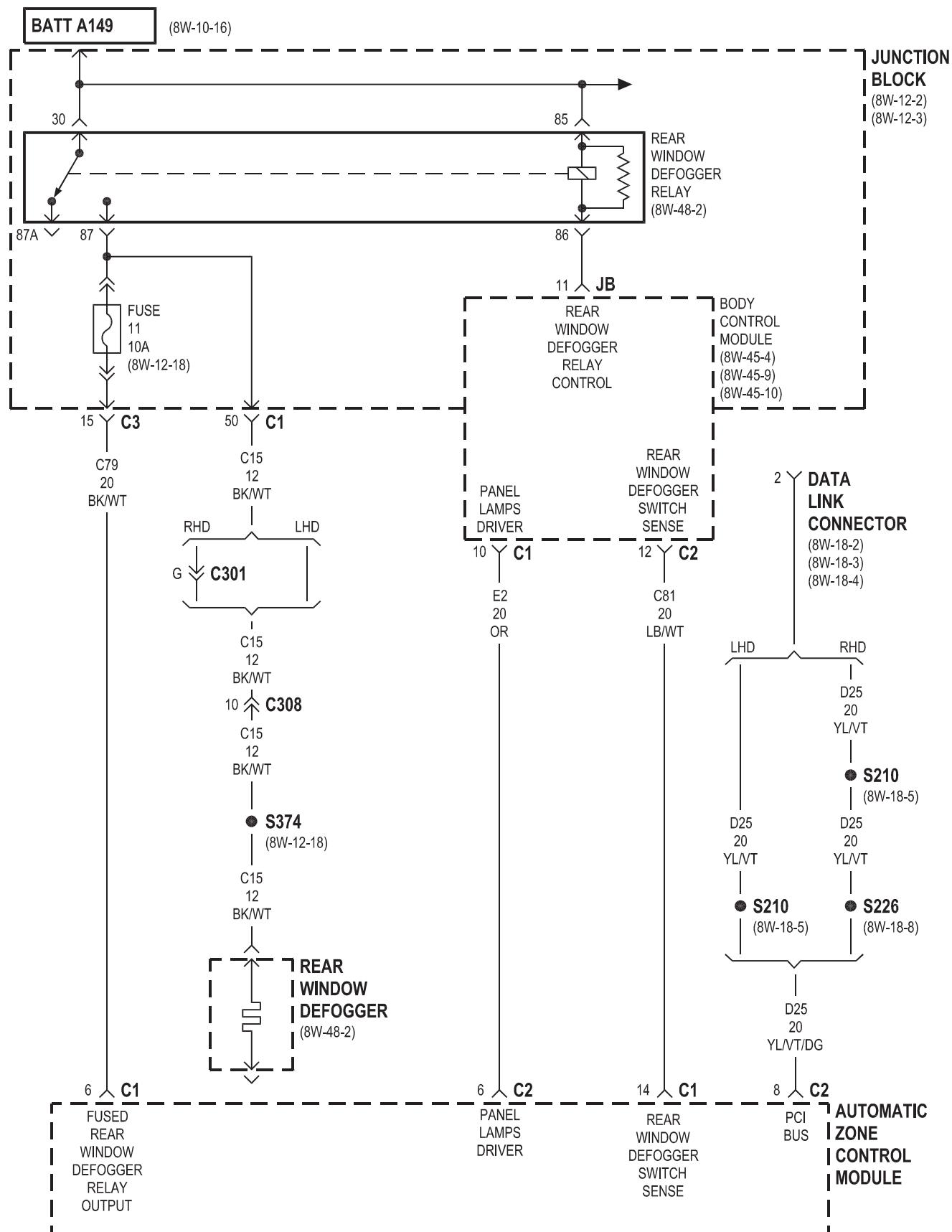




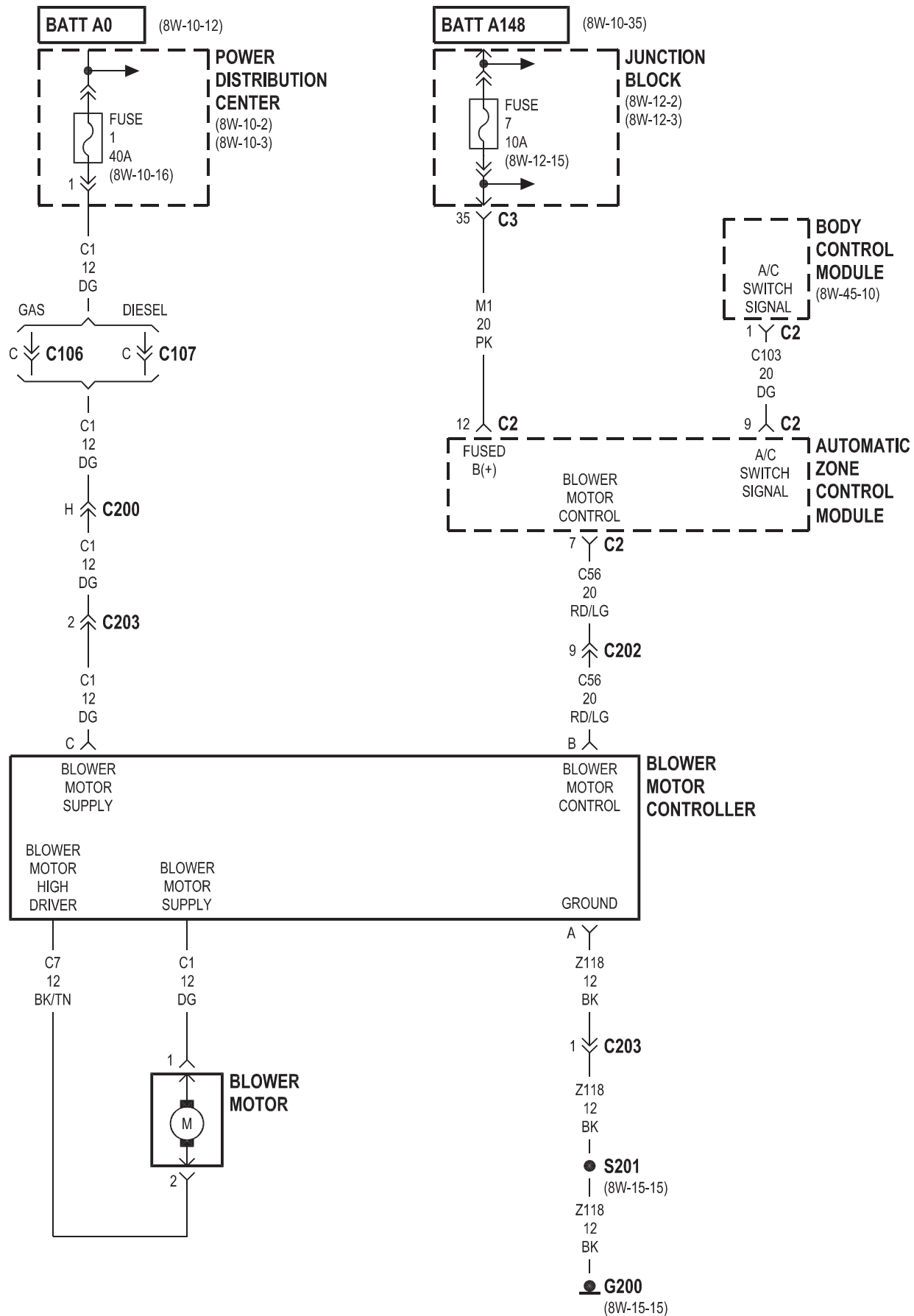
## GAS

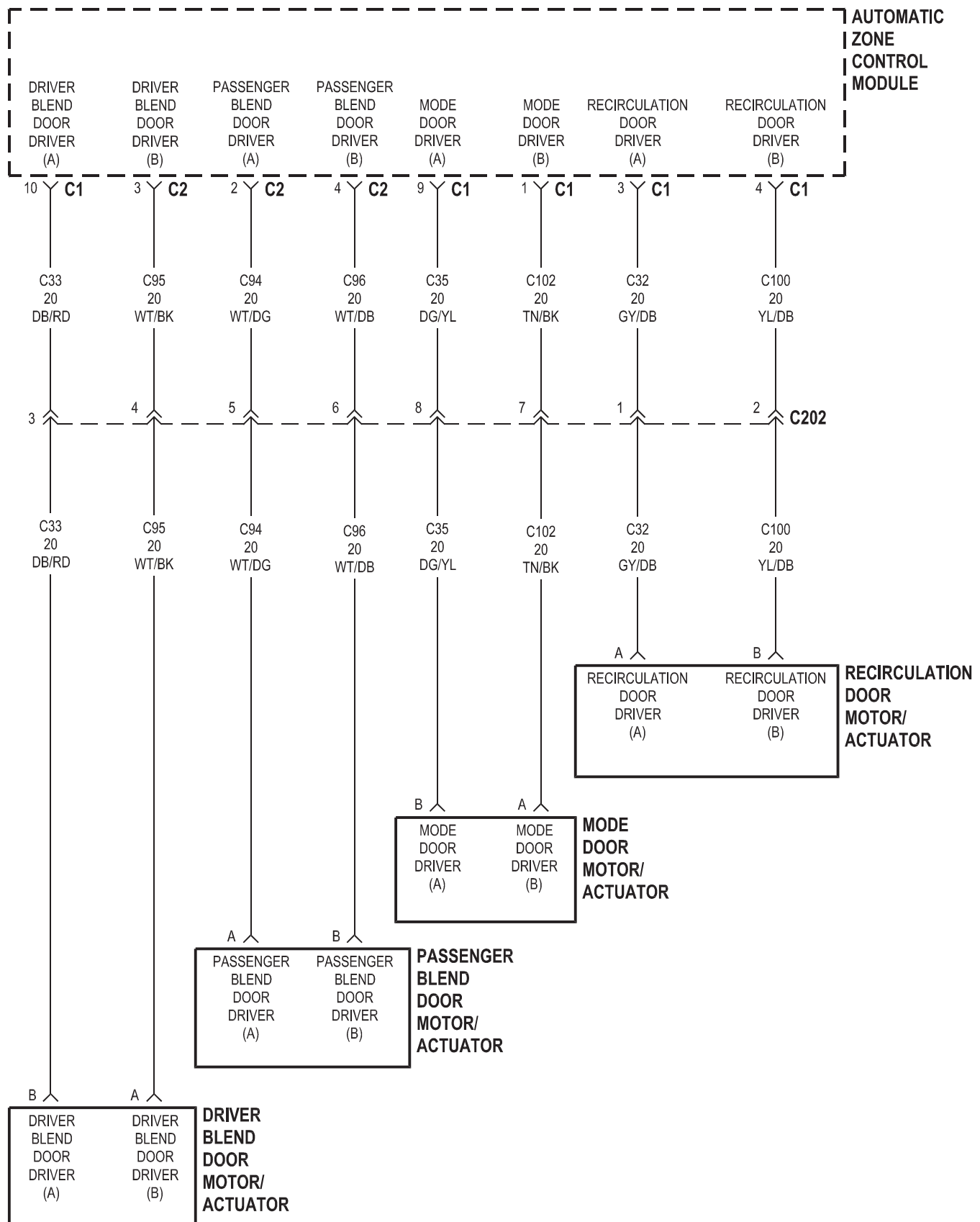


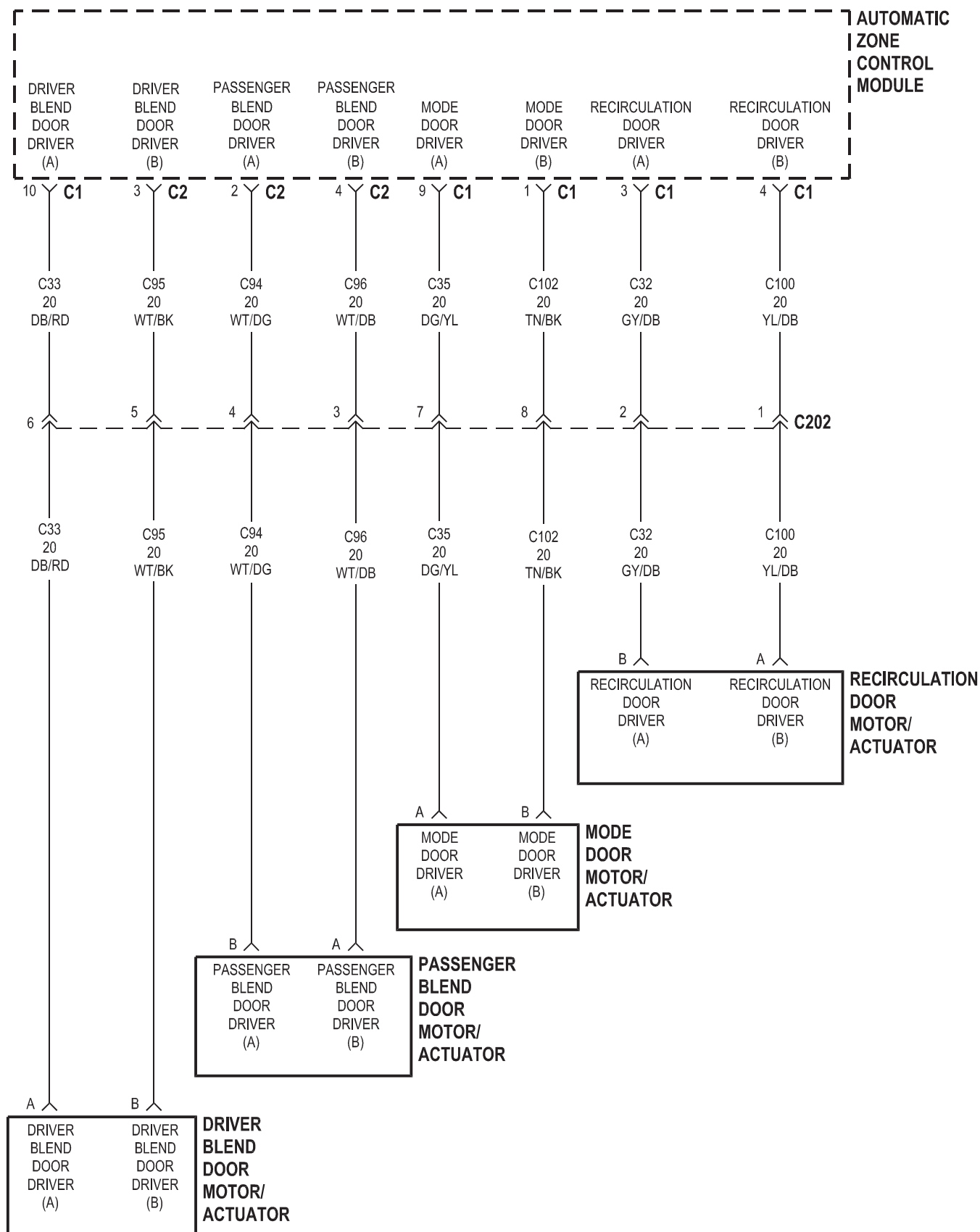




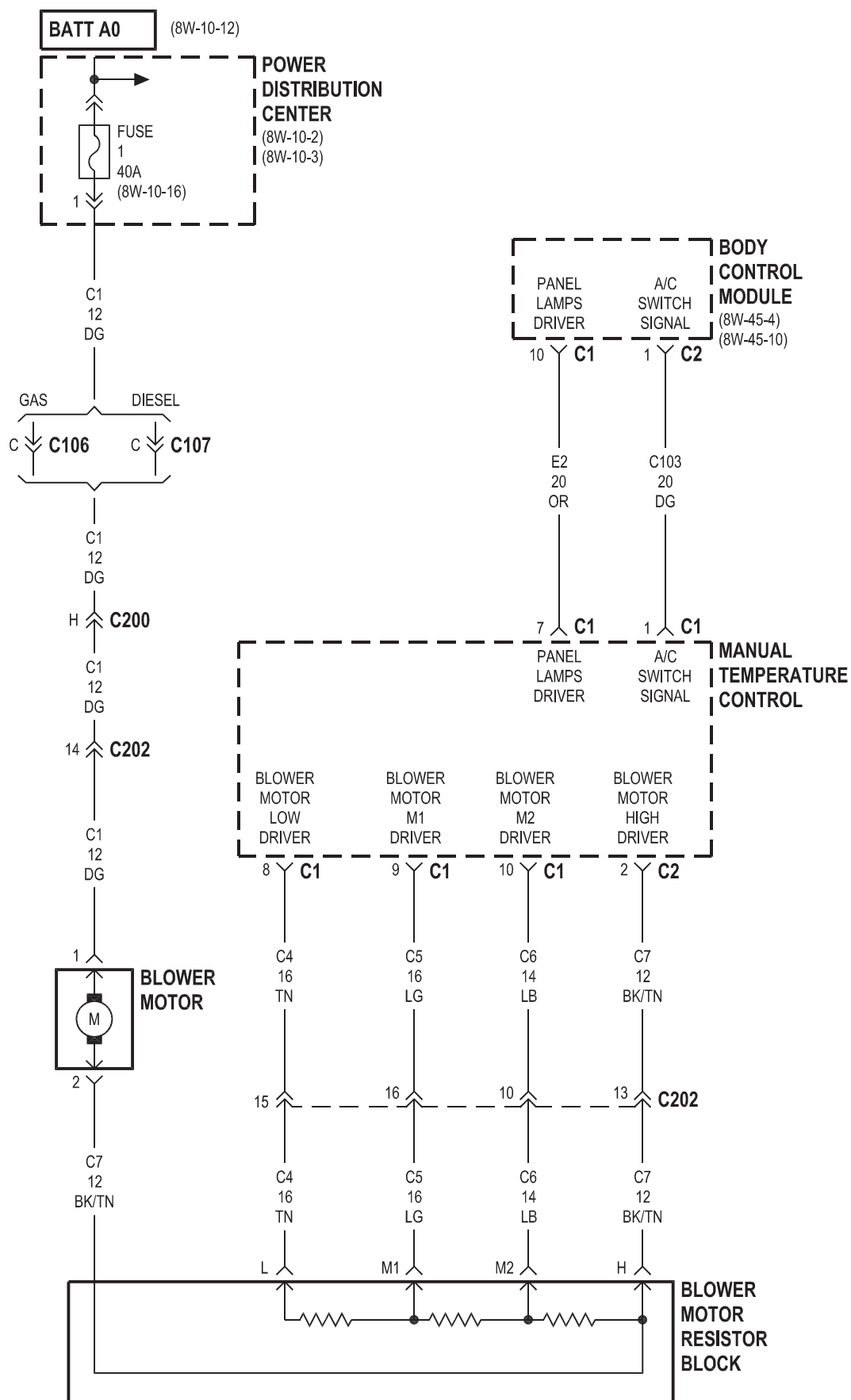
## AZC

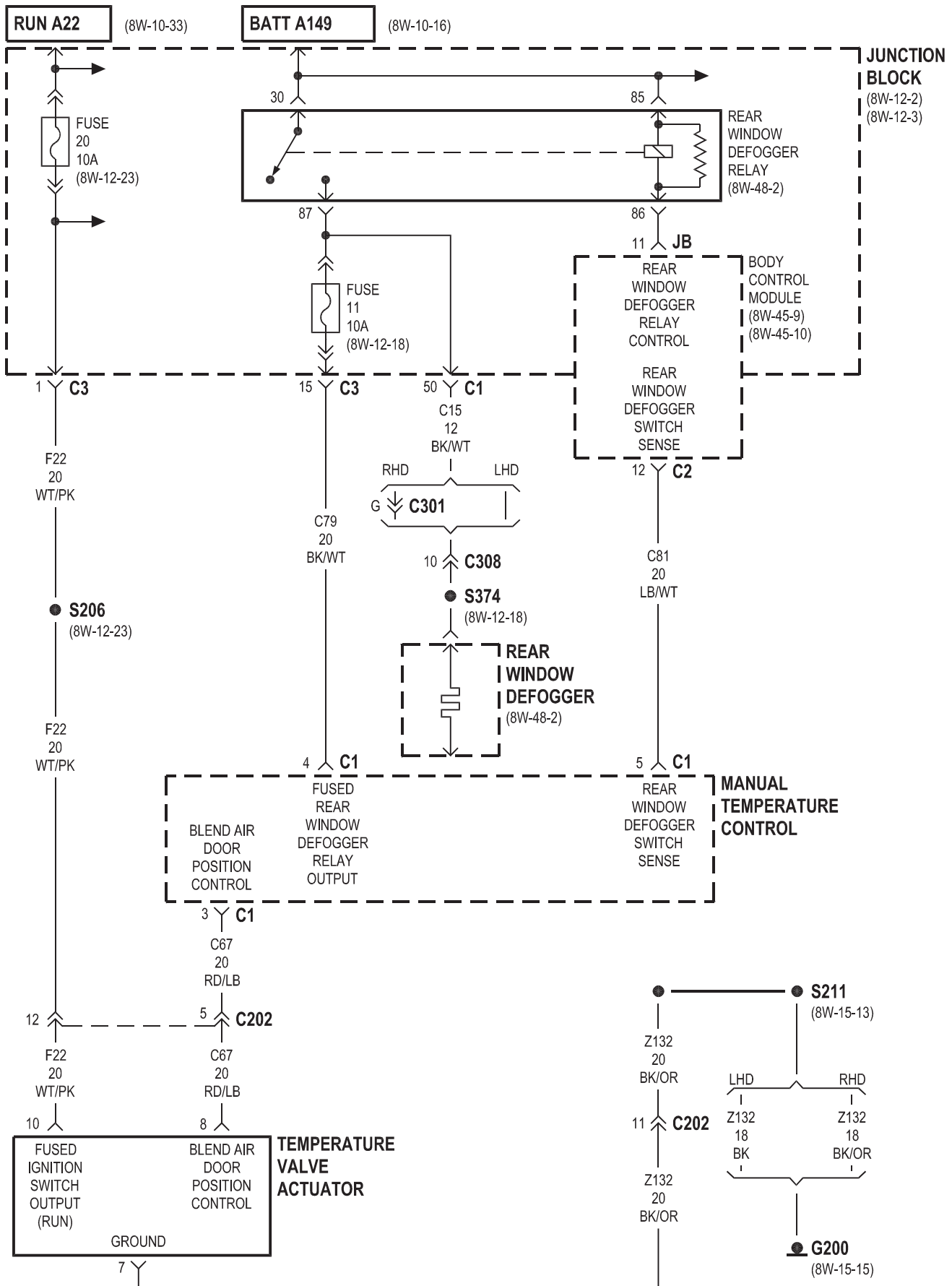


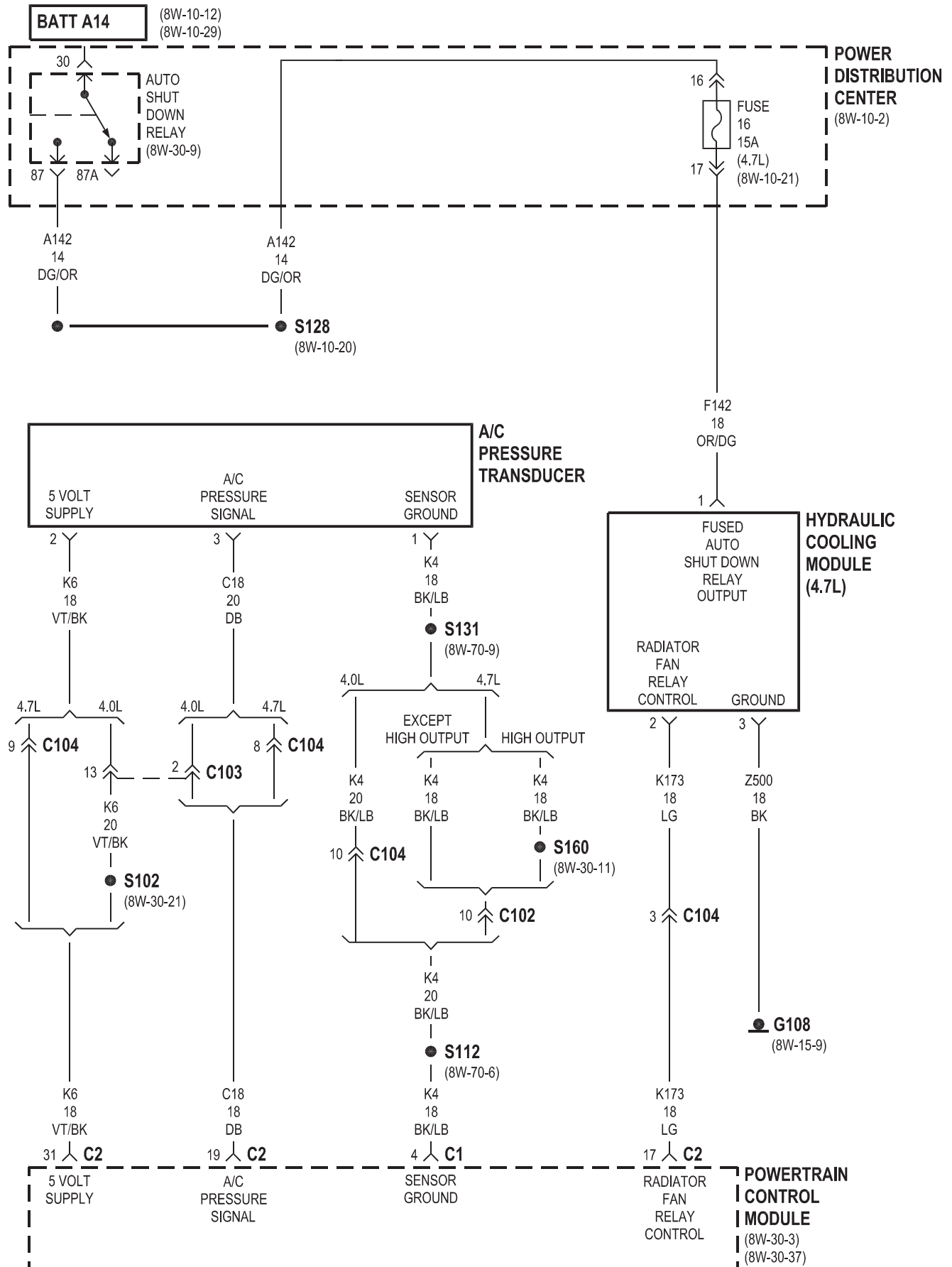


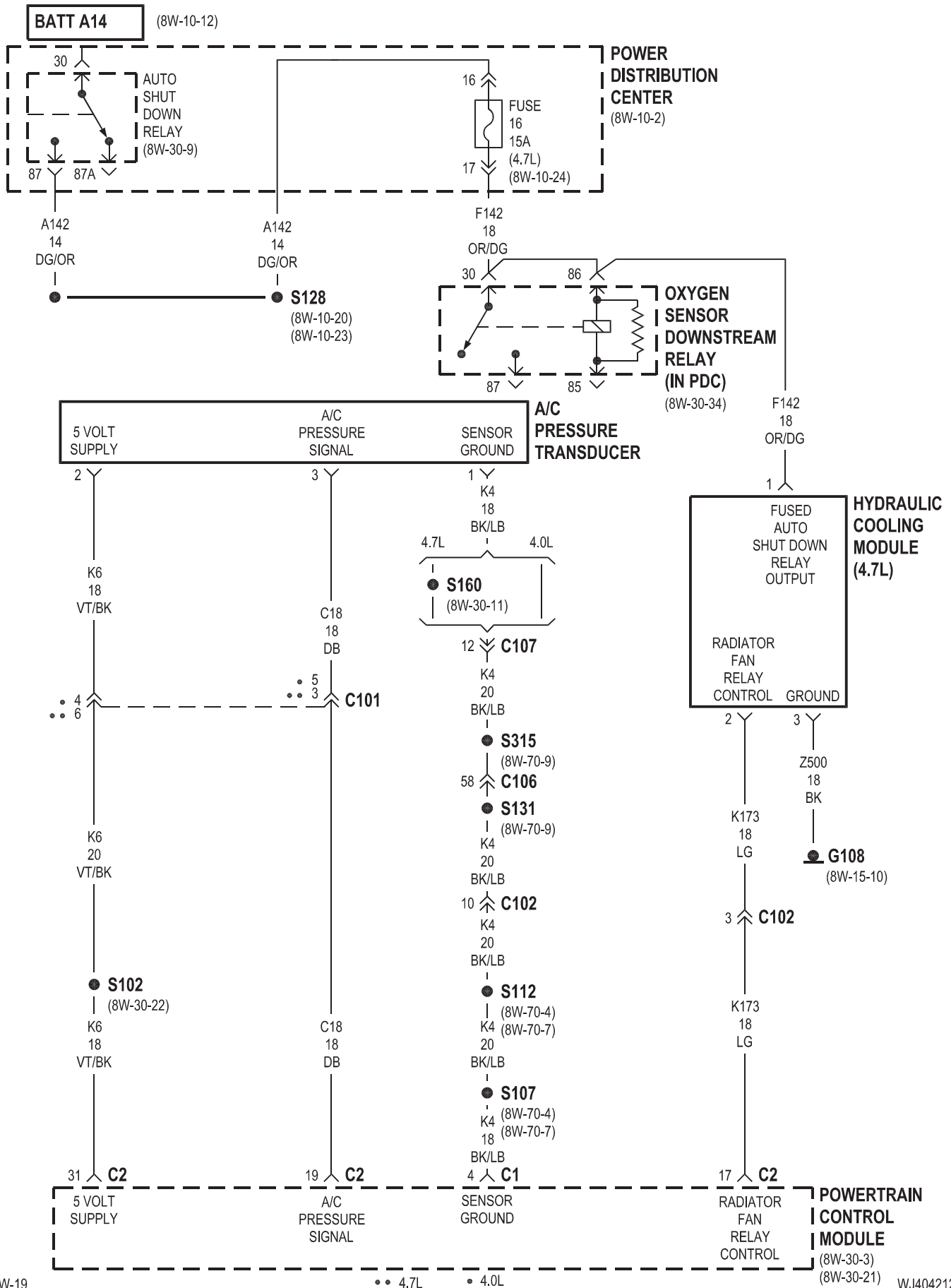


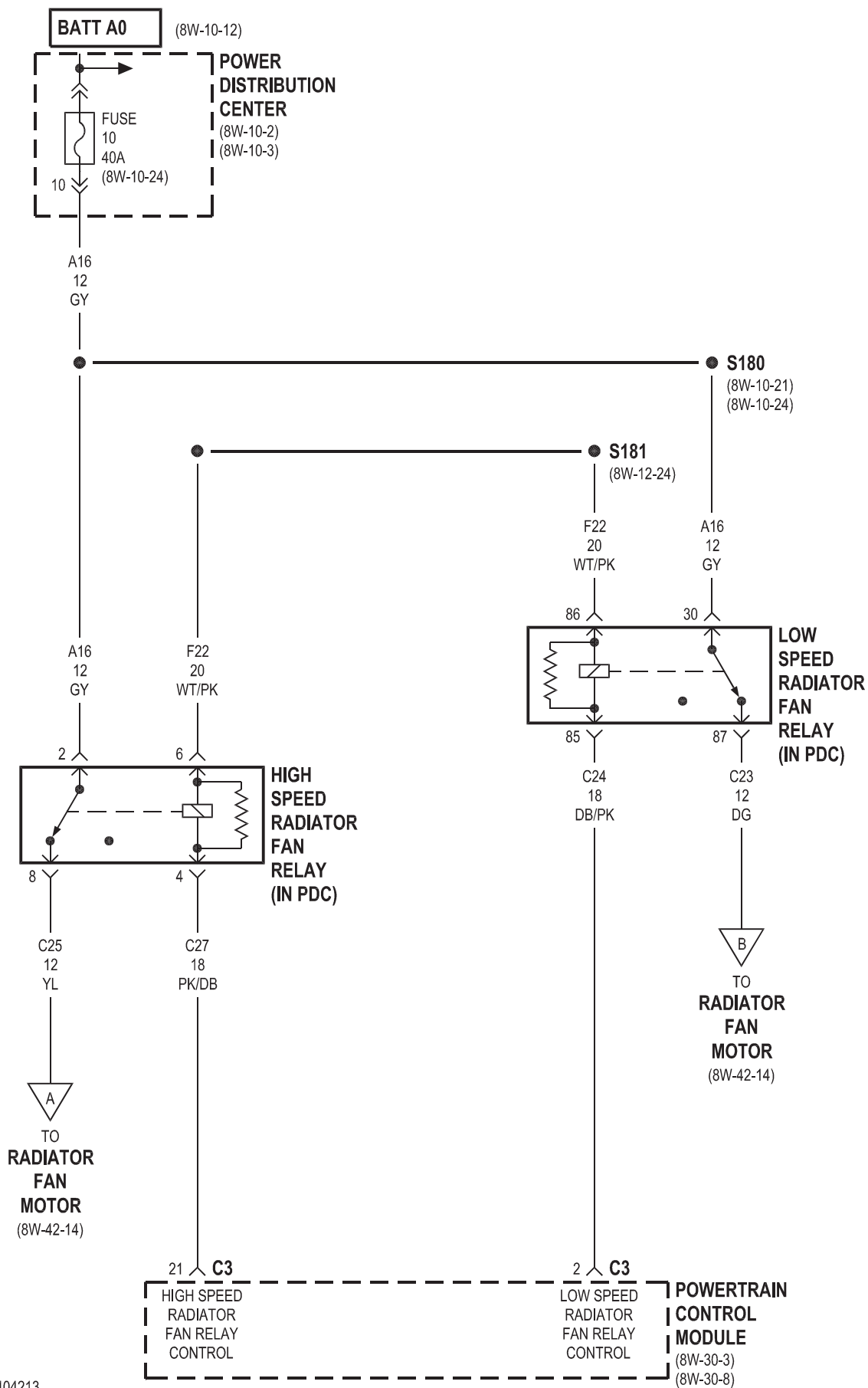


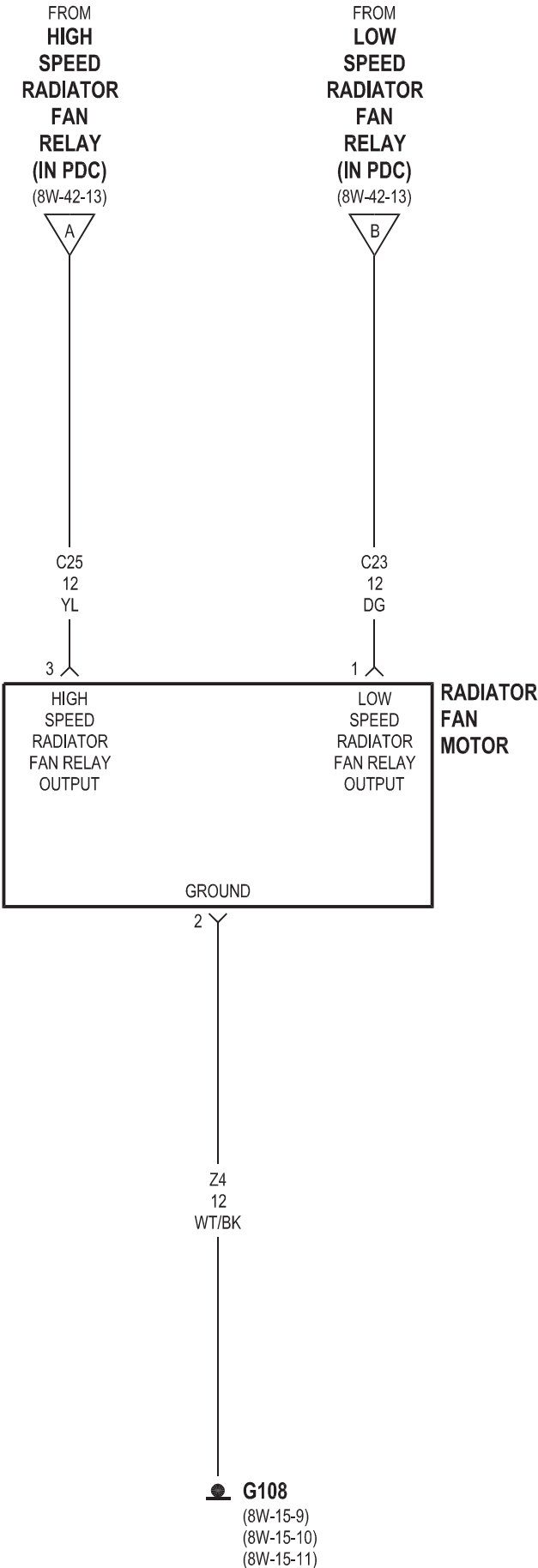




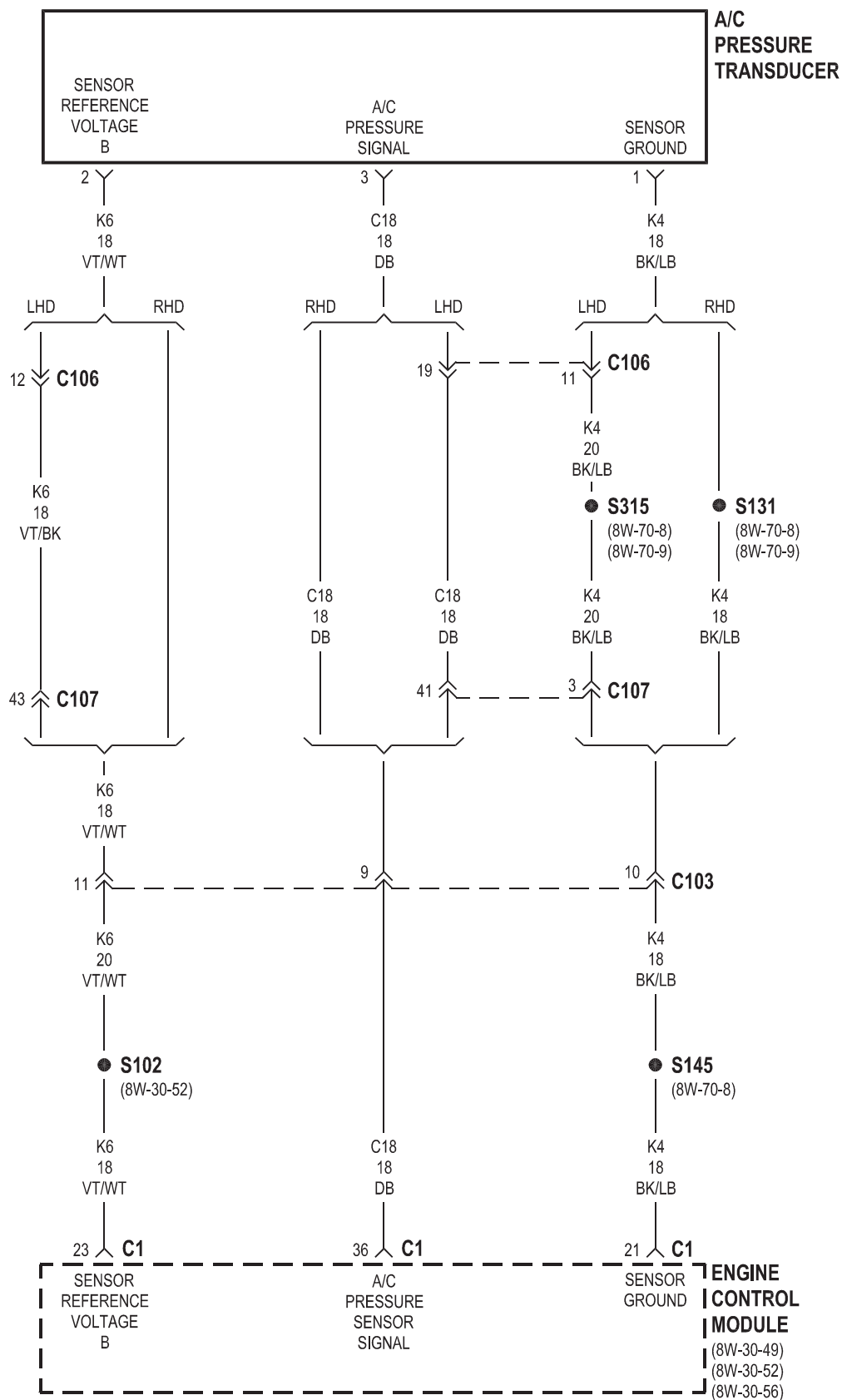


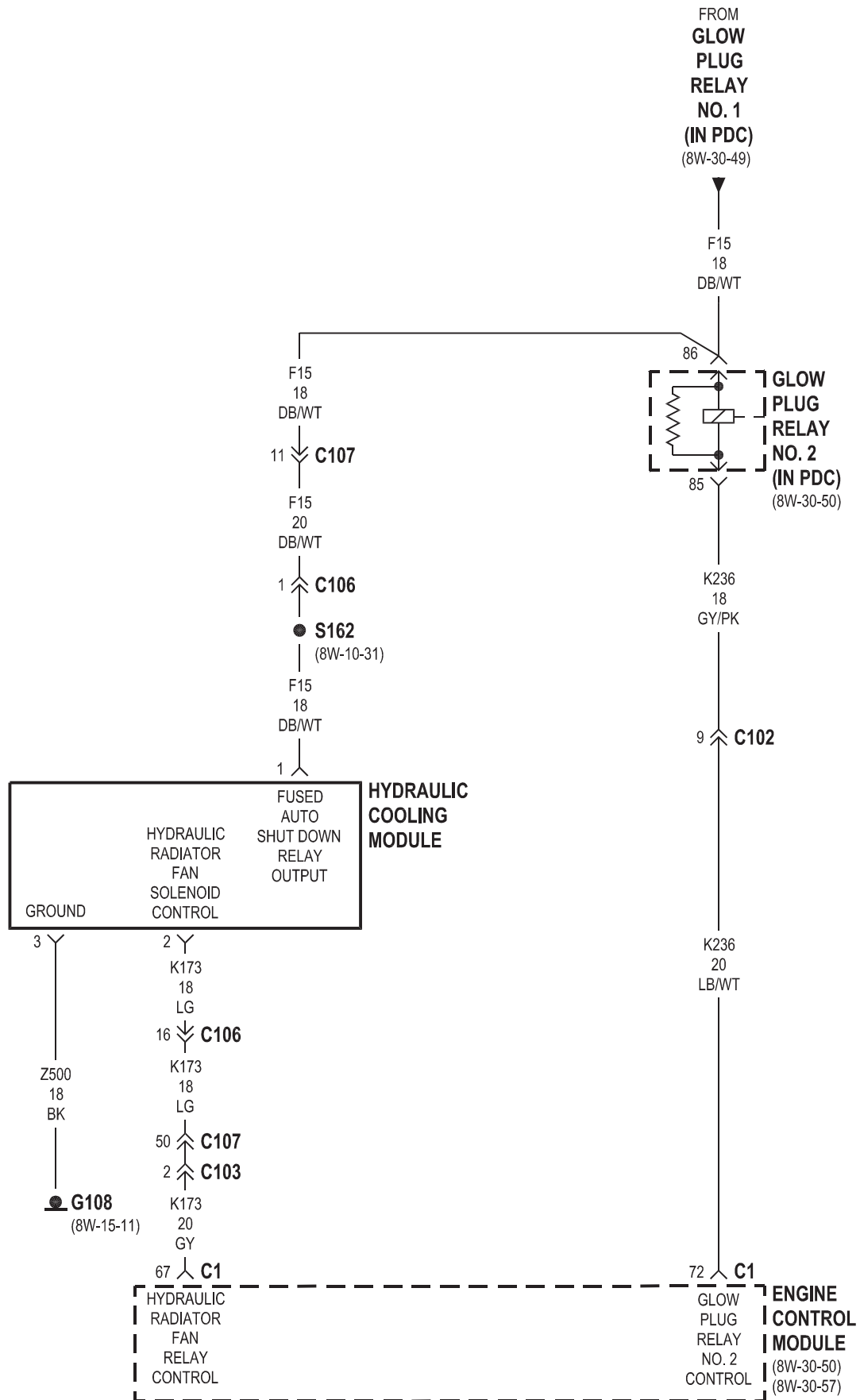






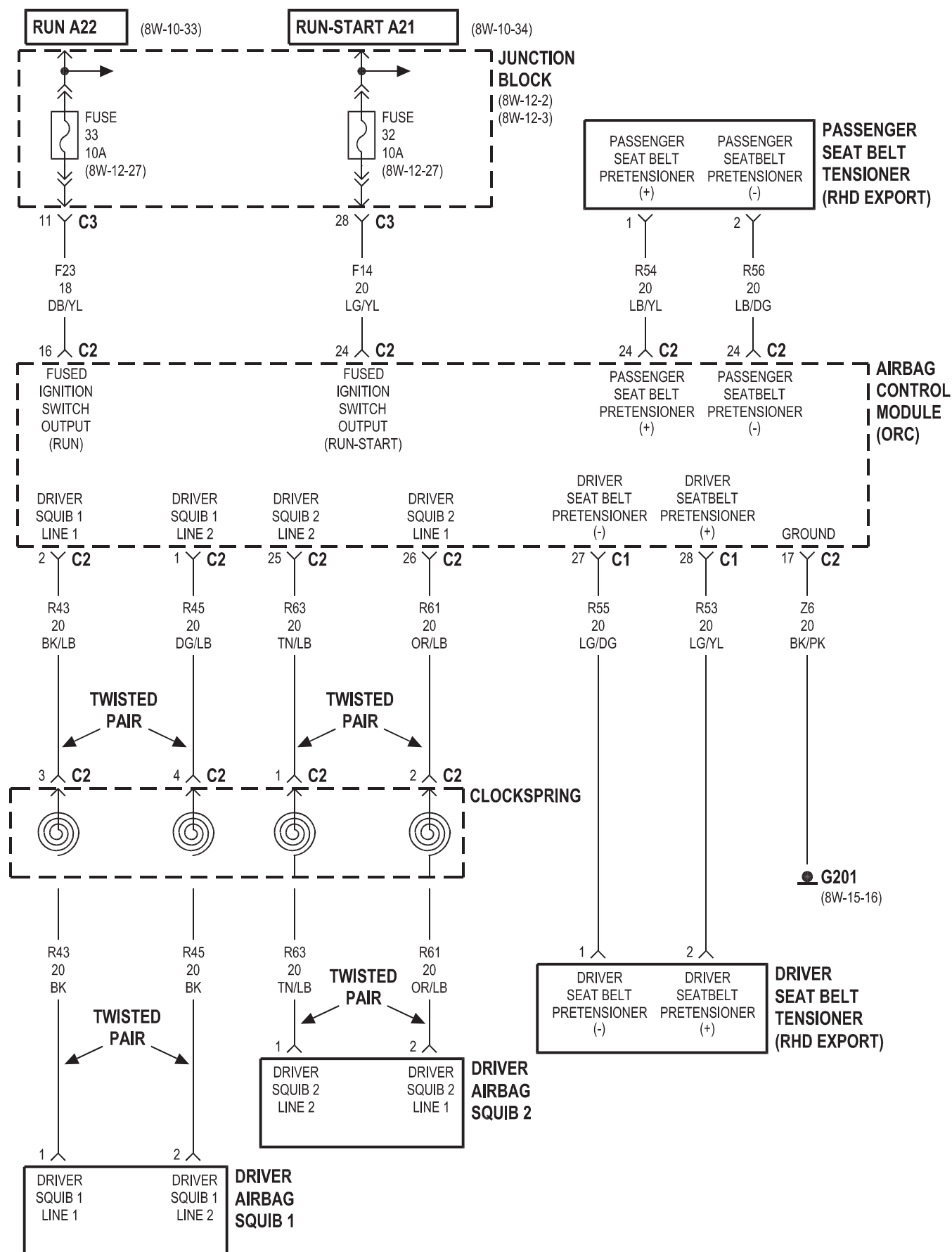


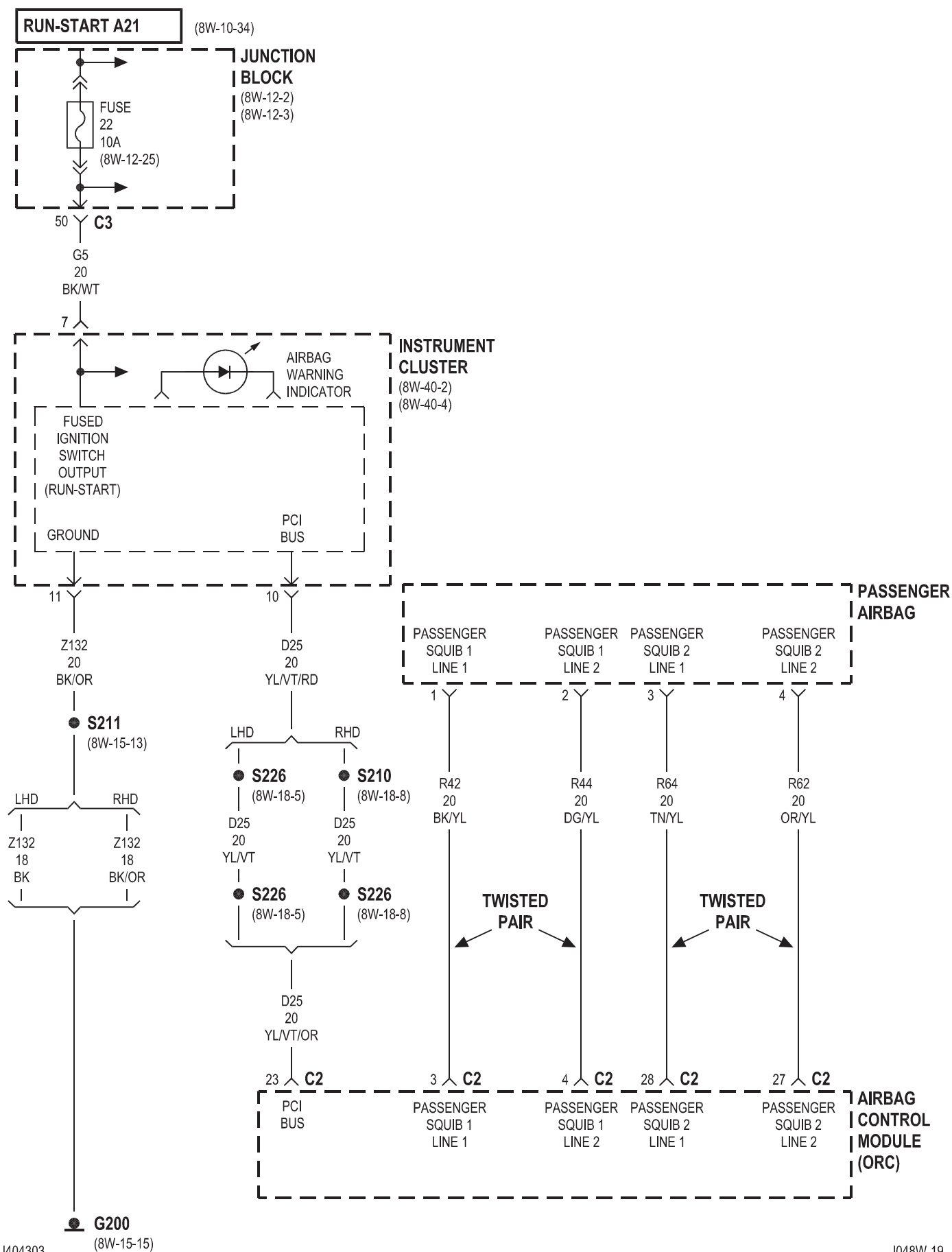


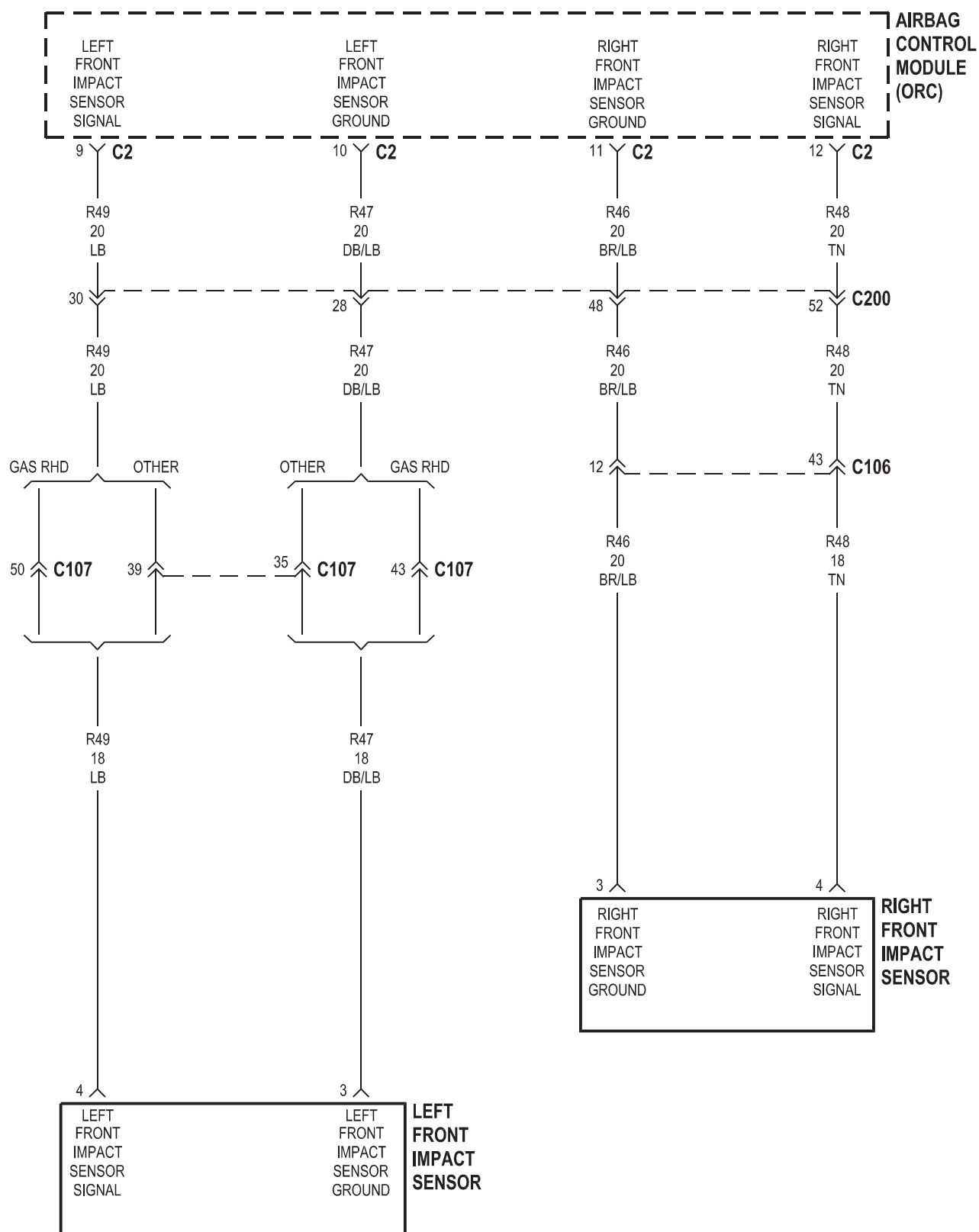


## 8W-43 AIRBAG SYSTEM

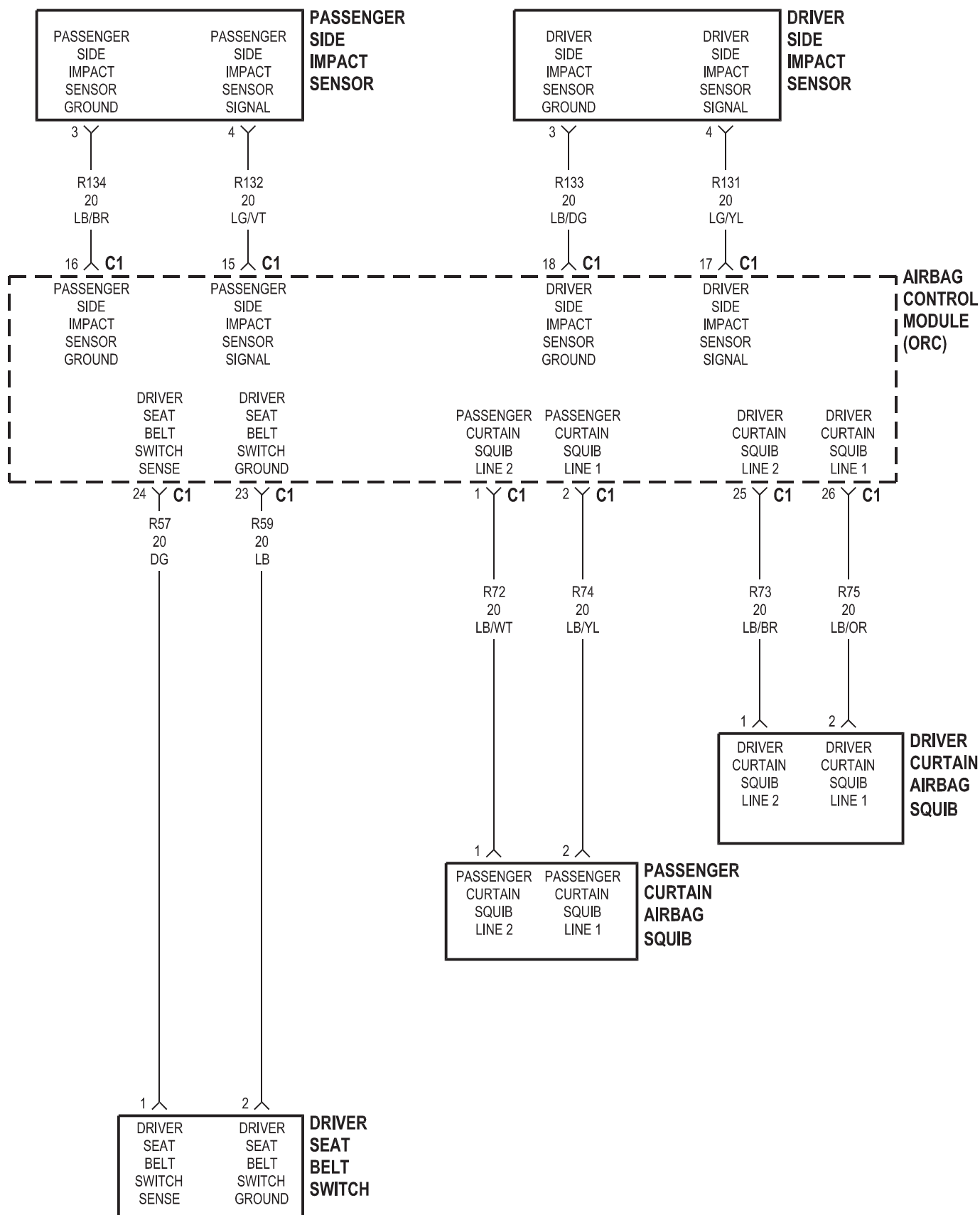
<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>	<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
Airbag Control Module . . . . .	8W-43-2, 3, 4, 5	G200 . . . . .	8W-43-3
Clockspring . . . . .	8W-43-2	G201 . . . . .	8W-43-2
Driver Airbag Squib 1 . . . . .	8W-43-2	Instrument Cluster . . . . .	8W-43-3
Driver Airbag Squib 2 . . . . .	8W-43-2	Junction Block . . . . .	8W-43-2, 3
Driver Curtain Airbag Squib . . . . .	8W-43-5	Left Front Impact Sensor . . . . .	8W-43-4
Driver Seat Belt Switch . . . . .	8W-43-5	Passenger Airbag . . . . .	8W-43-3
Driver Seat Belt Tensioner . . . . .	8W-43-2	Passenger Curtain Airbag Squib . . . . .	8W-43-5
Driver Side Impact Sensor . . . . .	8W-43-5	Passenger Seat Belt Tensioner . . . . .	8W-43-2
Fuse 22 . . . . .	8W-43-3	Passenger Side Impact Sensor . . . . .	8W-43-5
Fuse 32 . . . . .	8W-43-2	Right Front Impact Sensor . . . . .	8W-43-4
Fuse 33 . . . . .	8W-43-2		









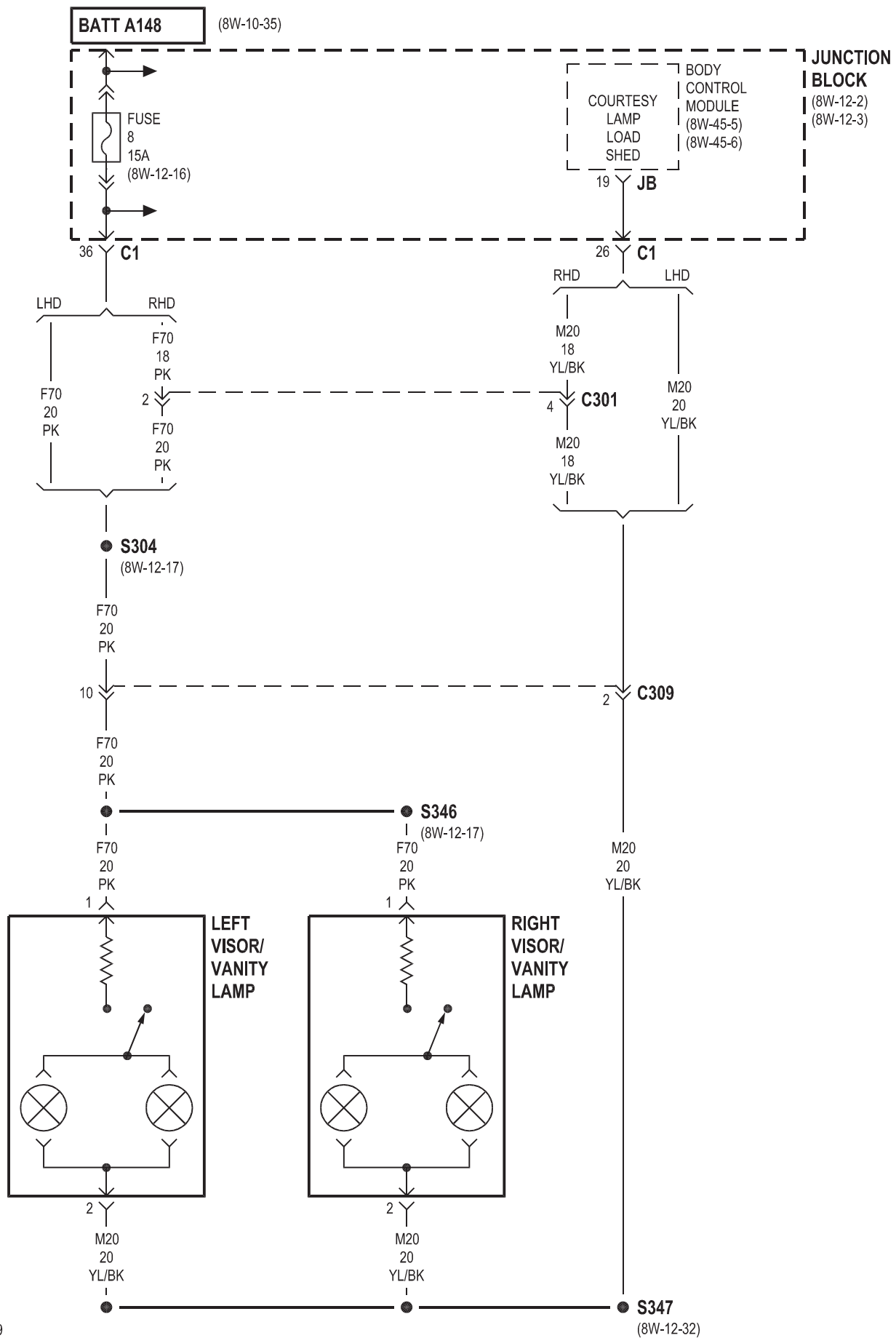




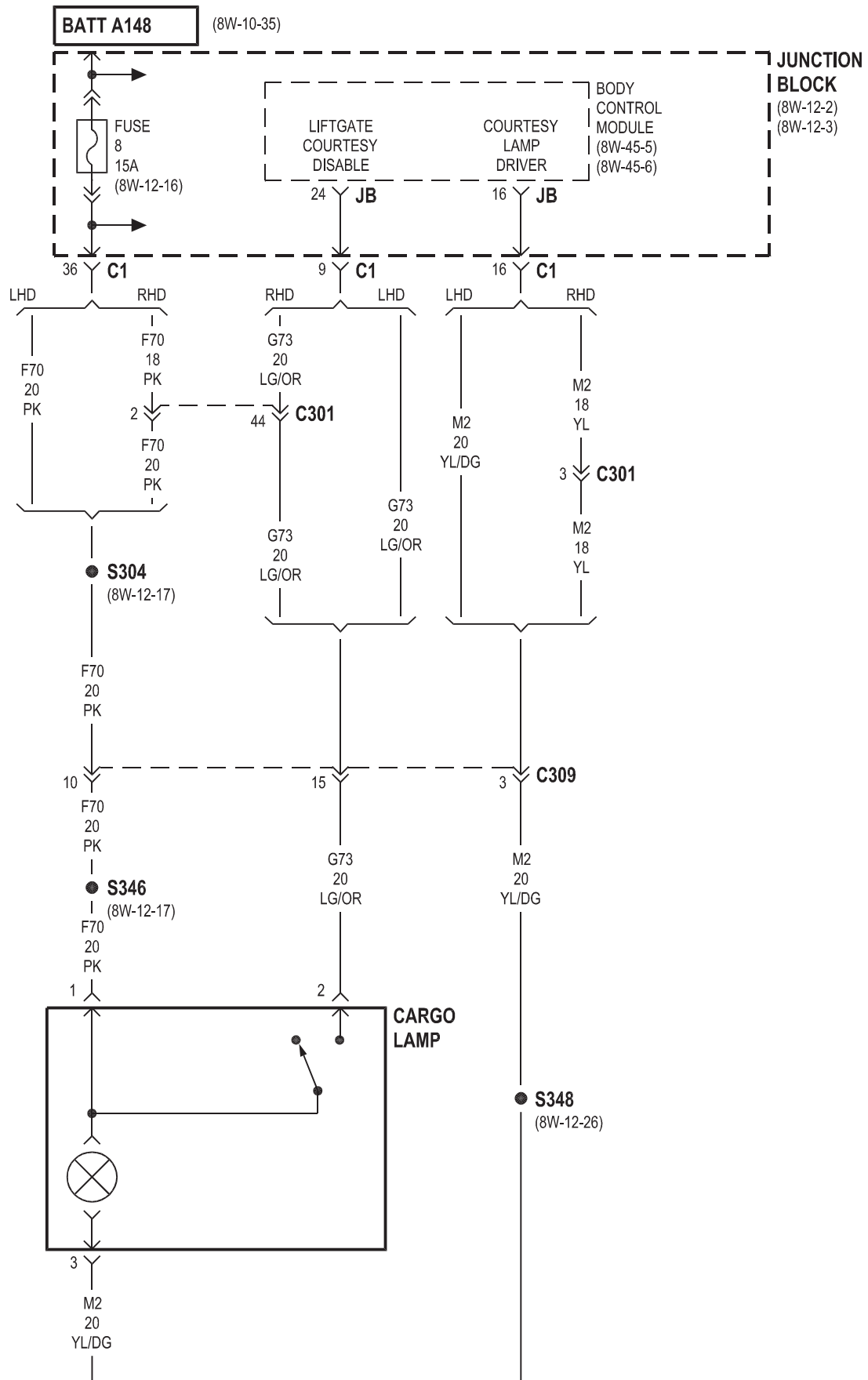
## 8W-44 INTERIOR LIGHTING

<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
Automatic Zone Control Module . . . . .	8W-44-10
Body Control Module . . . . .	8W-44-2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 8, 10
Cargo Lamp . . . . .	8W-44-4
Driver Door Lock Motor/Ajar Switch . . . . .	8W-44-7
Driver Door Module . . . . .	8W-44-7, 9
Driver Front Door Courtesy Lamp . . . . .	8W-44-9
Driver Heated Seat Switch . . . . .	8W-44-10
Fuse 8 . . . . .	8W-44-2, 3, 4, 8
G200 . . . . .	8W-44-10
G300 . . . . .	8W-44-6, 7
G301 . . . . .	8W-44-5, 6, 7
Glove Box Lamp . . . . .	8W-44-8
Junction Block . . . . .	8W-44-2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 8
Left Courtesy Lamp . . . . .	8W-44-8
Left Door Handle Courtesy Lamp . . . . .	8W-44-3
Left Liftgate Ajar Switch . . . . .	8W-44-5
Left Multi-Function Switch . . . . .	8W-44-10

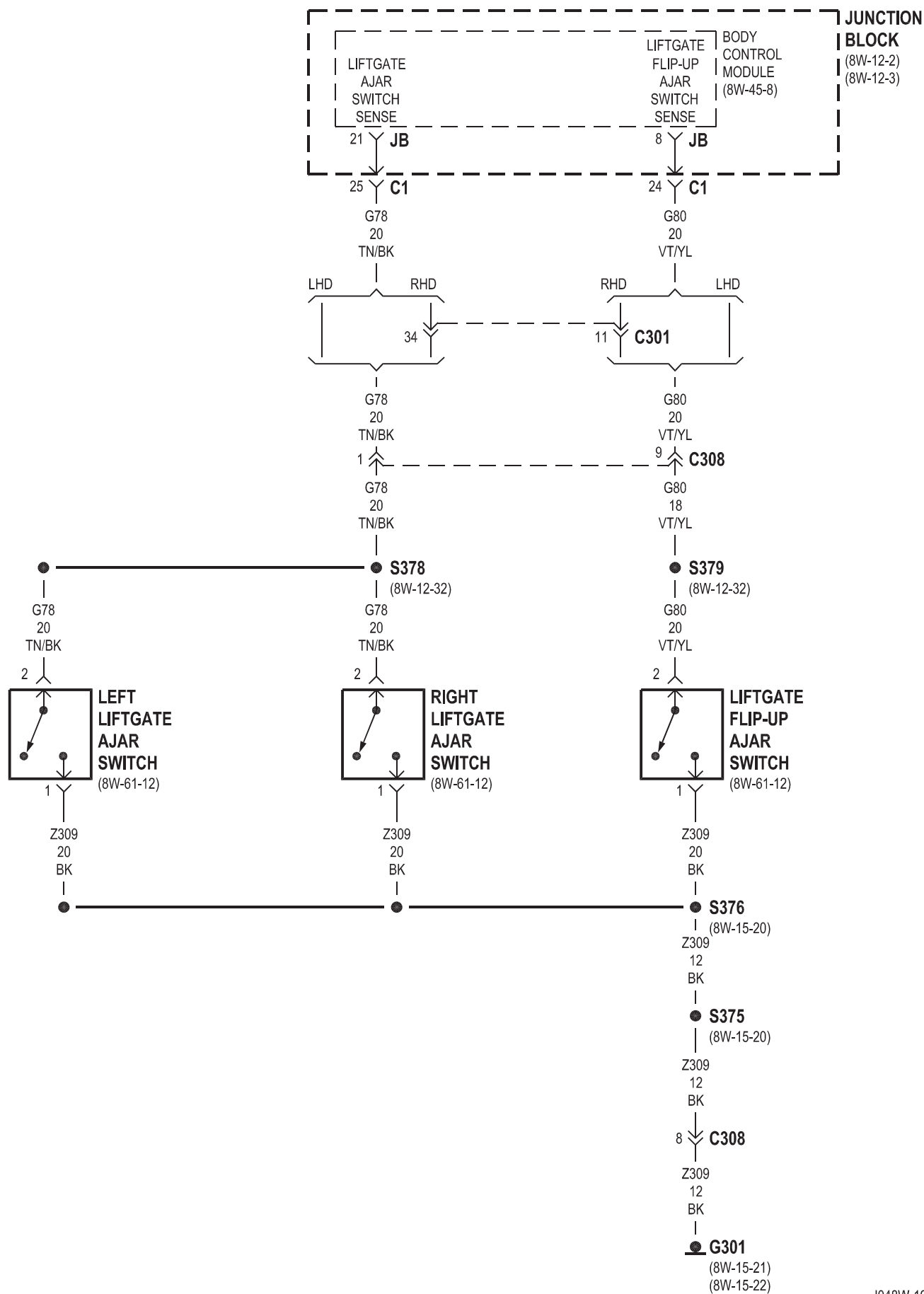
<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
Left Rear Door Lock Motor/Ajar Switch . . .	8W-44-6
Left Visor/Vanity Lamp . . . . .	8W-44-2
Liftgate Flip-Up Ajar Switch . . . . .	8W-44-5
Manual Temperature Control . . . . .	8W-44-10
Overhead Map/Courtesy Lamp . . . . .	8W-44-3
Passenger Door Lock Motor/Ajar Switch . .	8W-44-7
Passenger Door Module . . . . .	8W-44-7, 9
Passenger Front Door Courtesy Lamp . . .	8W-44-9
Passenger Heated Seat Switch . . . . .	8W-44-10
Radio . . . . .	8W-44-10
Right Courtesy Lamp . . . . .	8W-44-8
Right Door Handle Courtesy Lamp . . . . .	8W-44-3
Right Liftgate Ajar Switch . . . . .	8W-44-5
Right Rear Door Lock Motor/Ajar Switch . .	8W-44-6
Right Visor/Vanity Lamp . . . . .	8W-44-2
Shifter Assembly . . . . .	8W-44-10

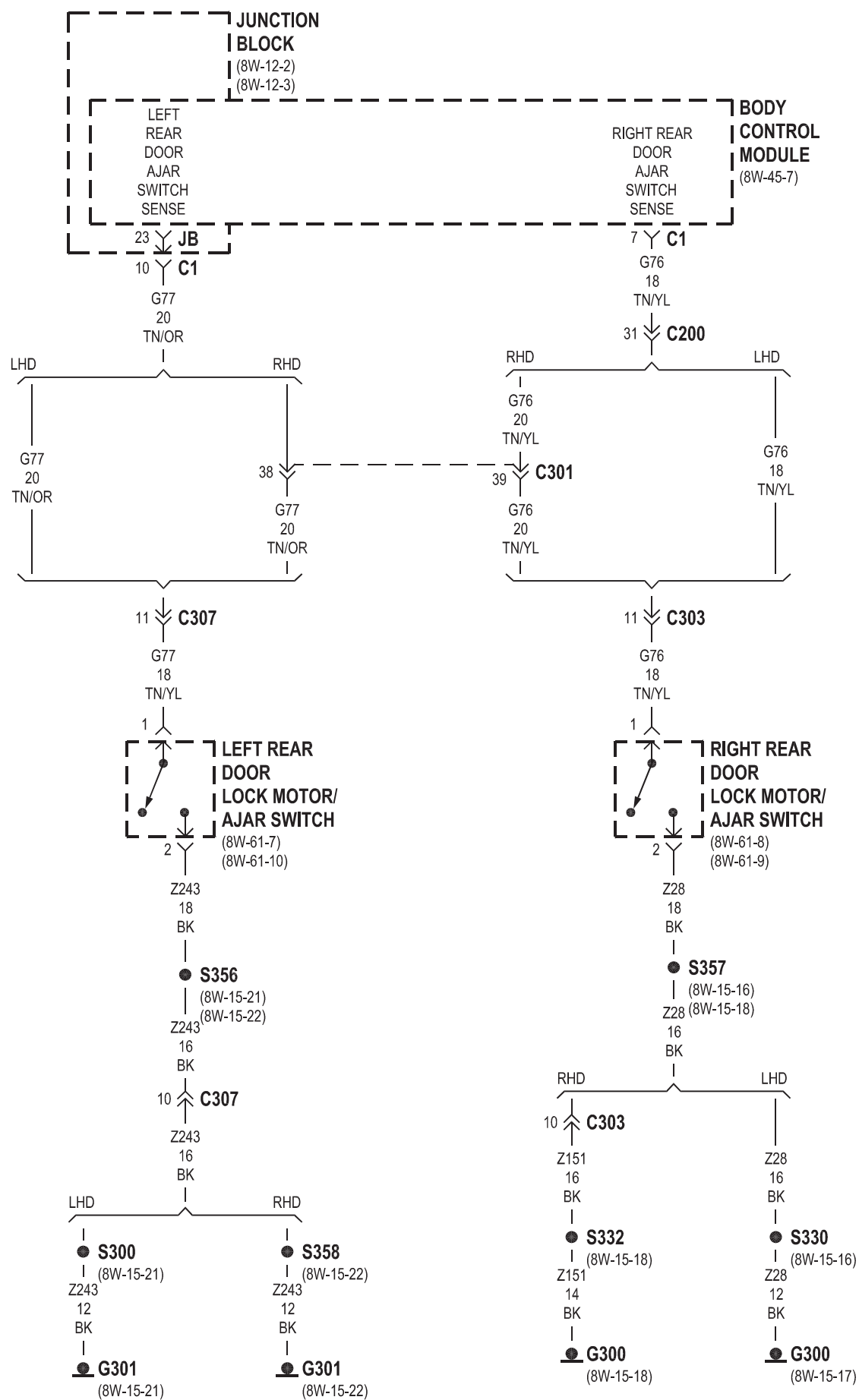


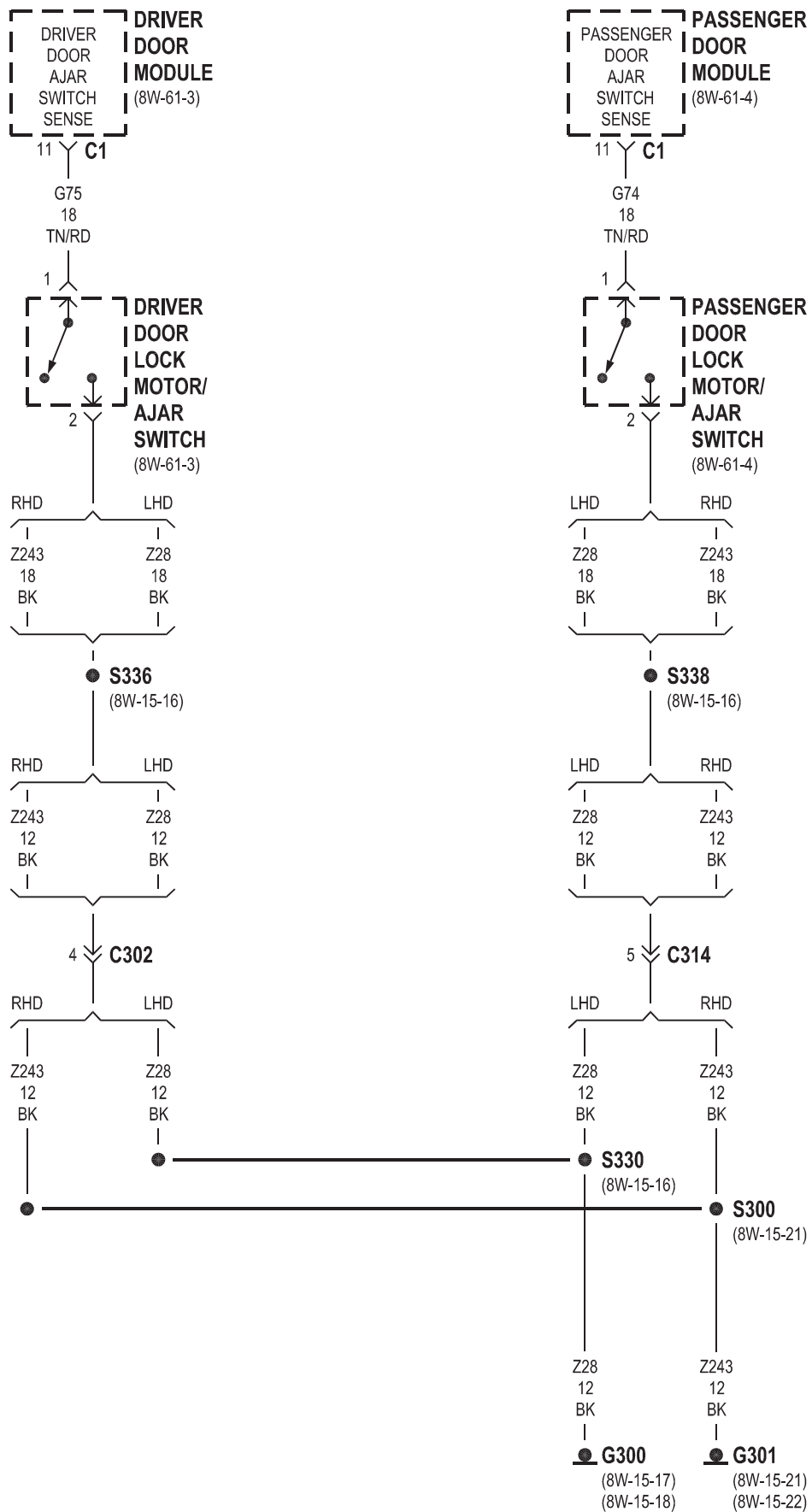


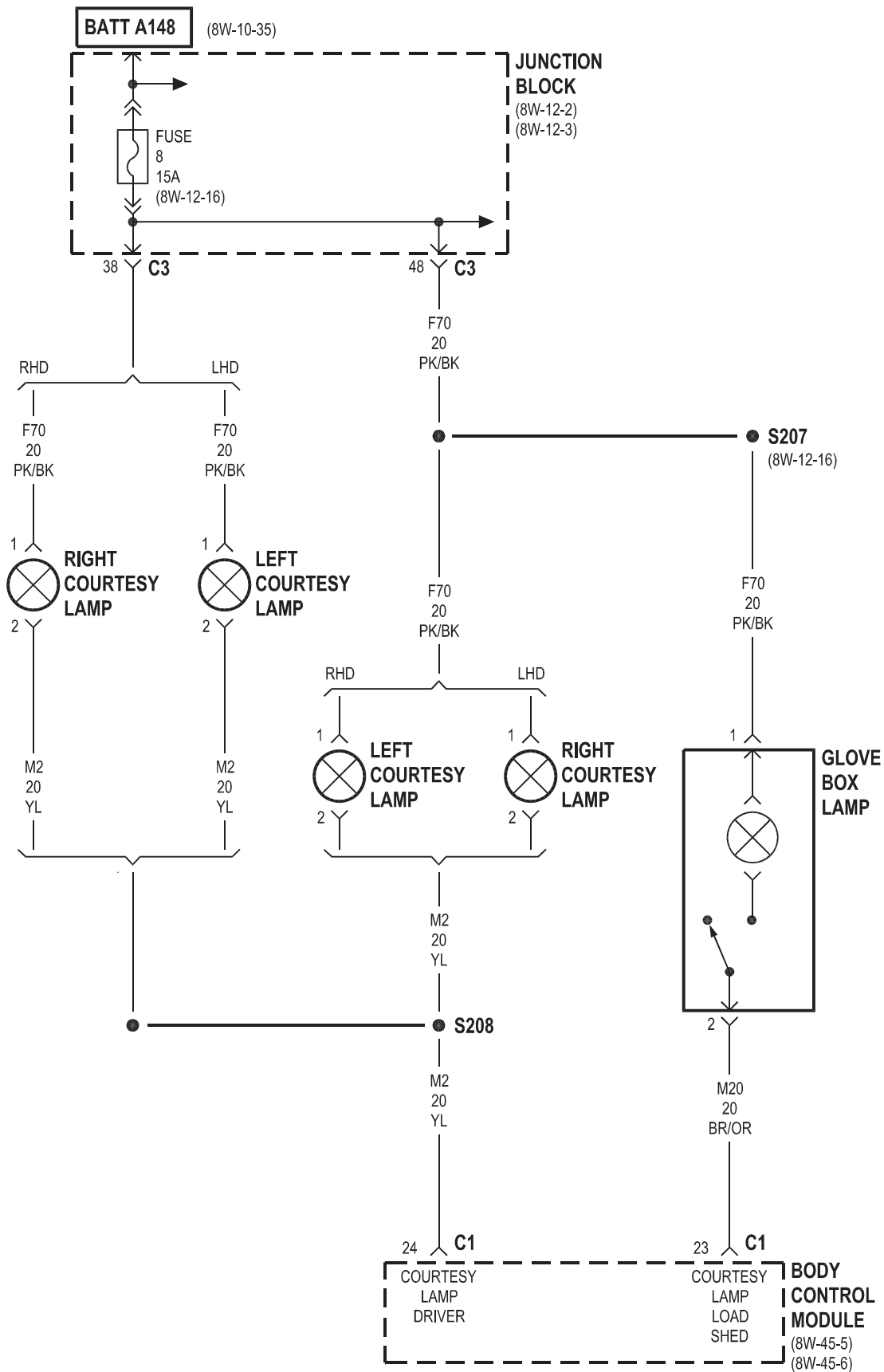


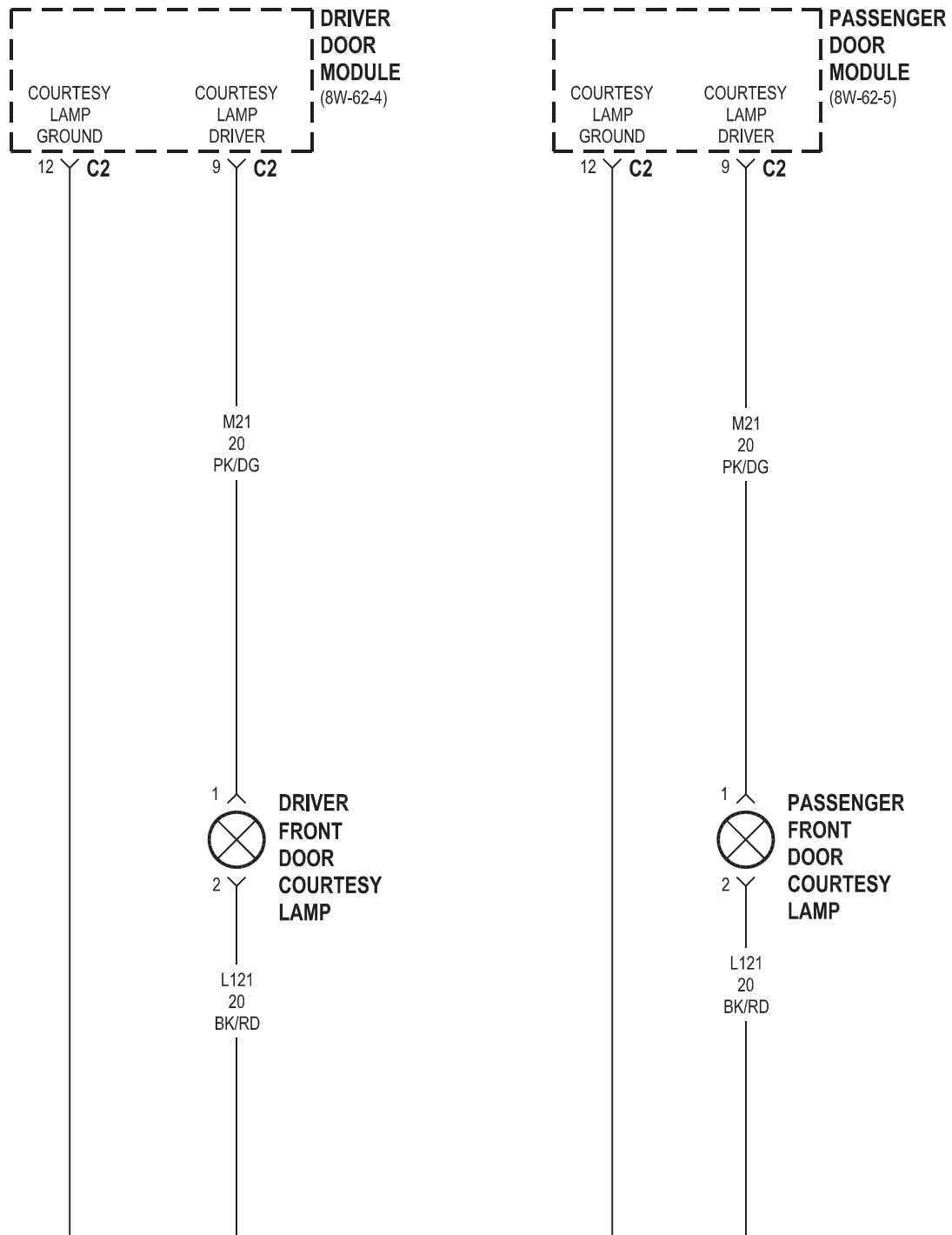


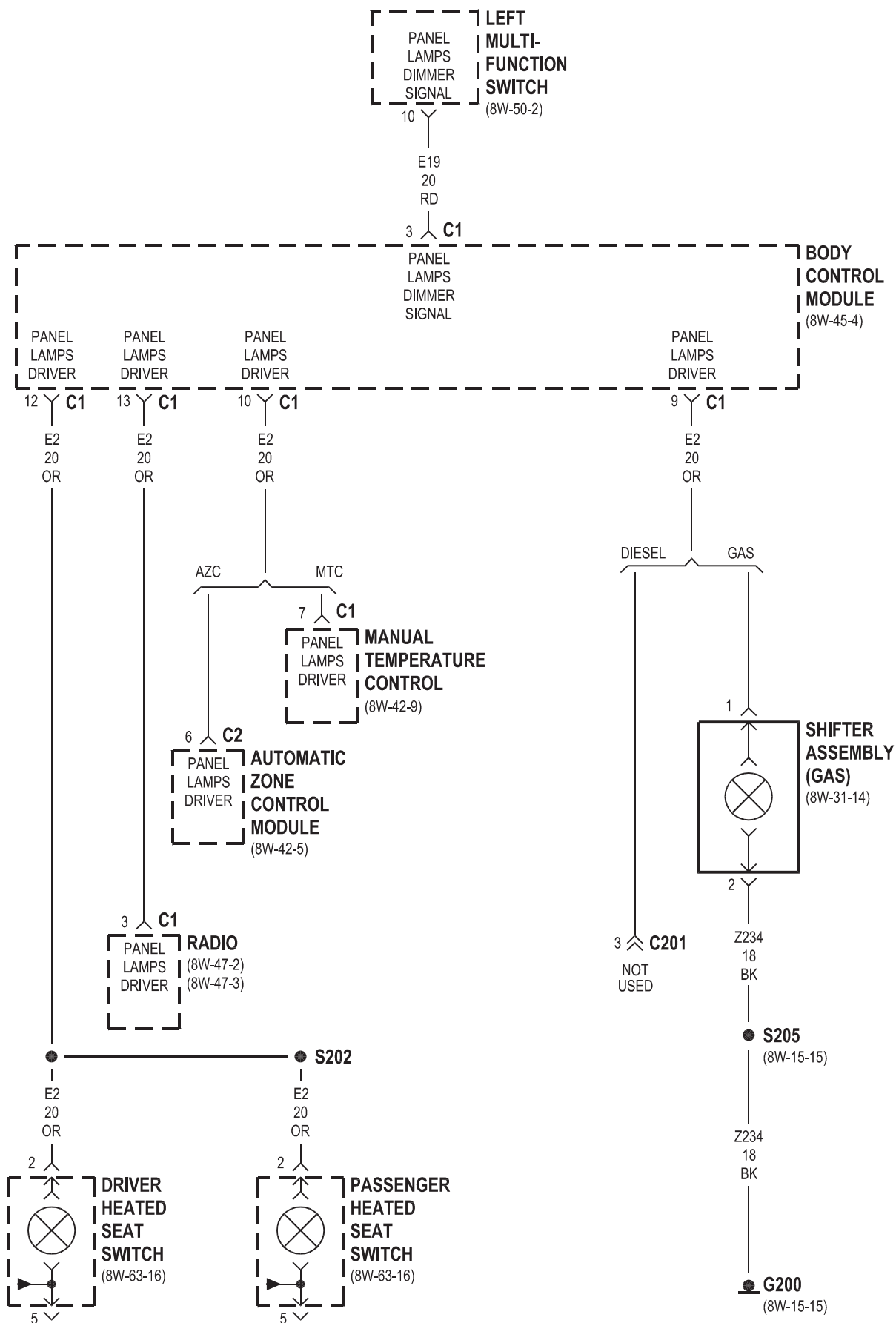










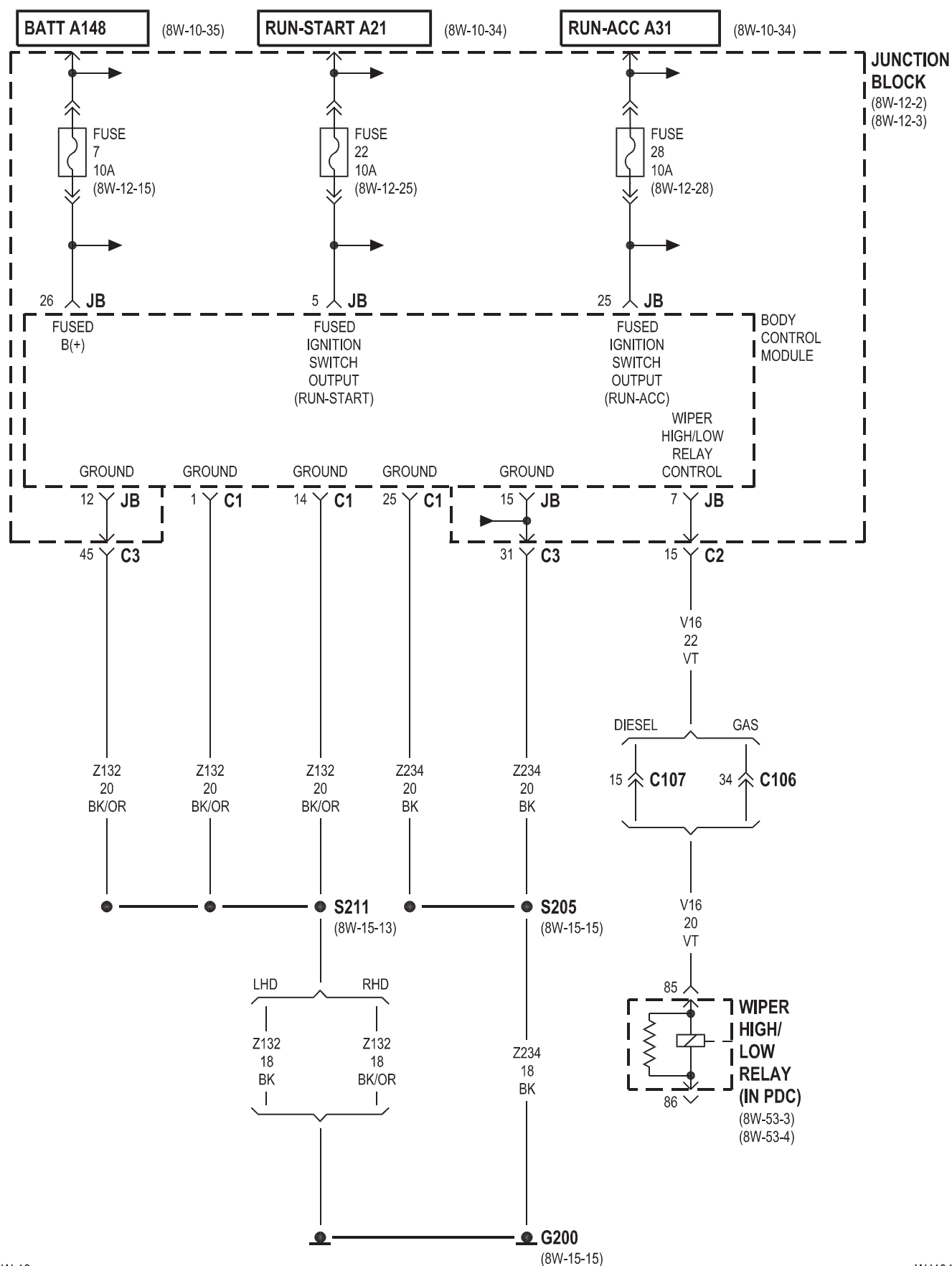


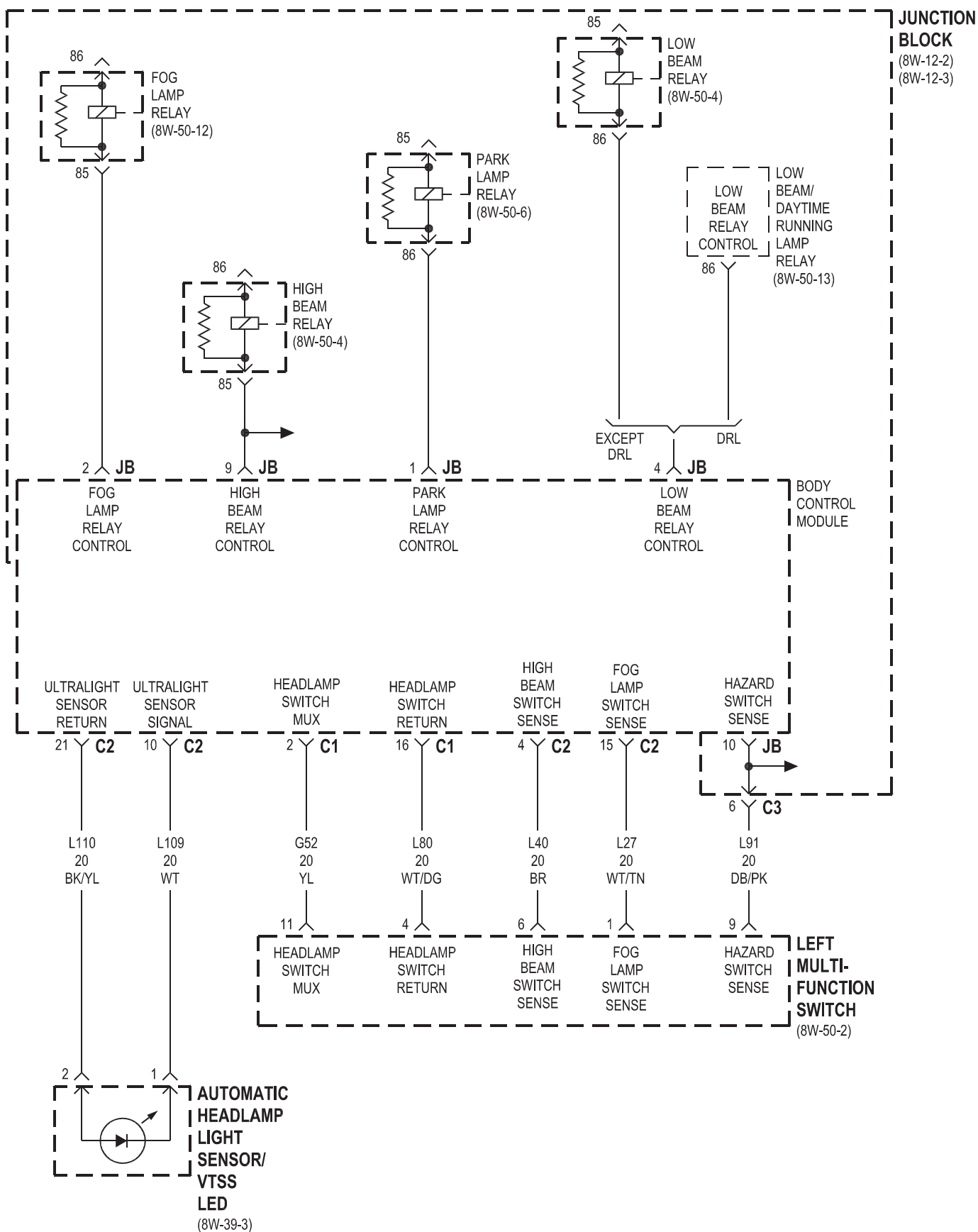


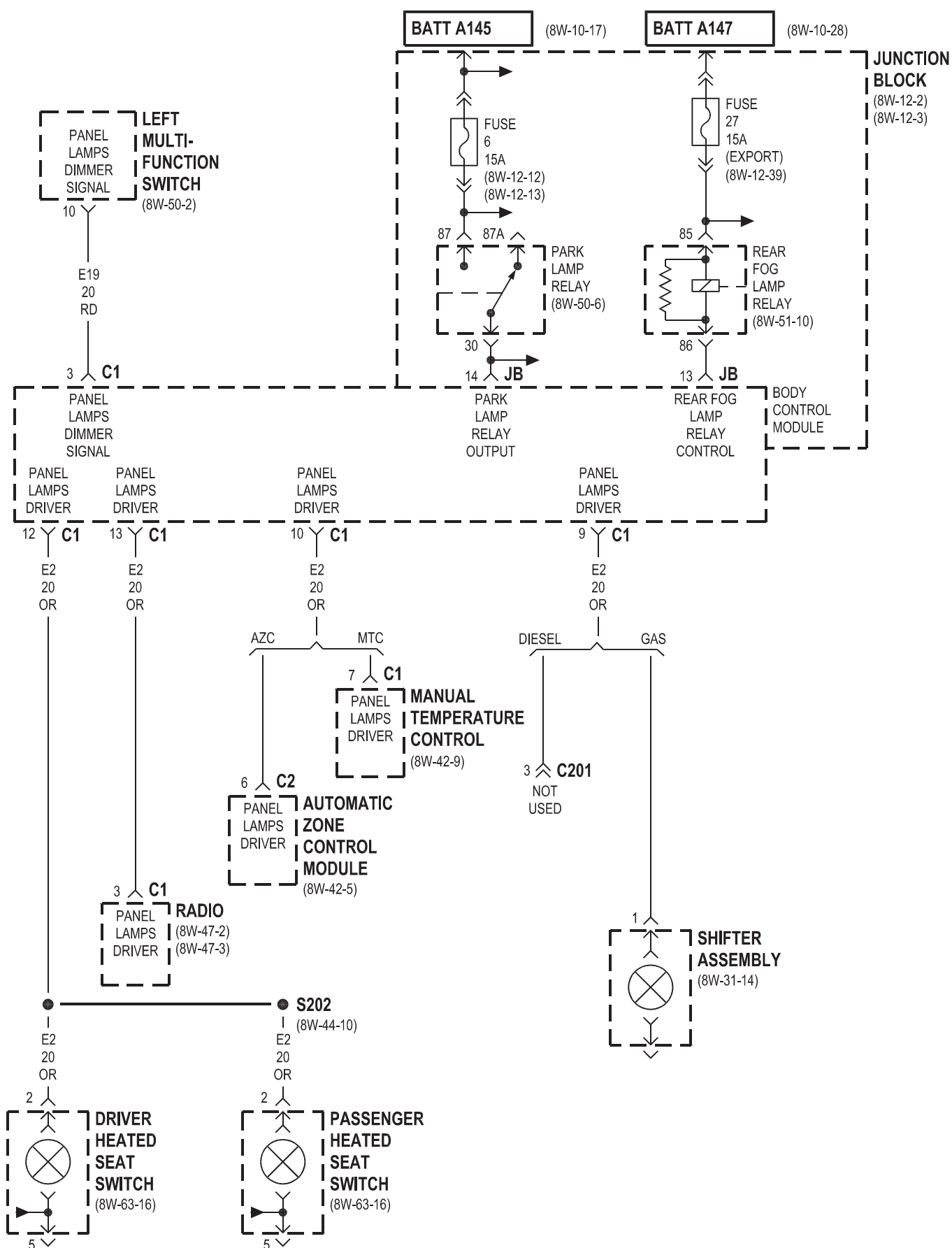
## 8W-45 BODY CONTROL MODULE

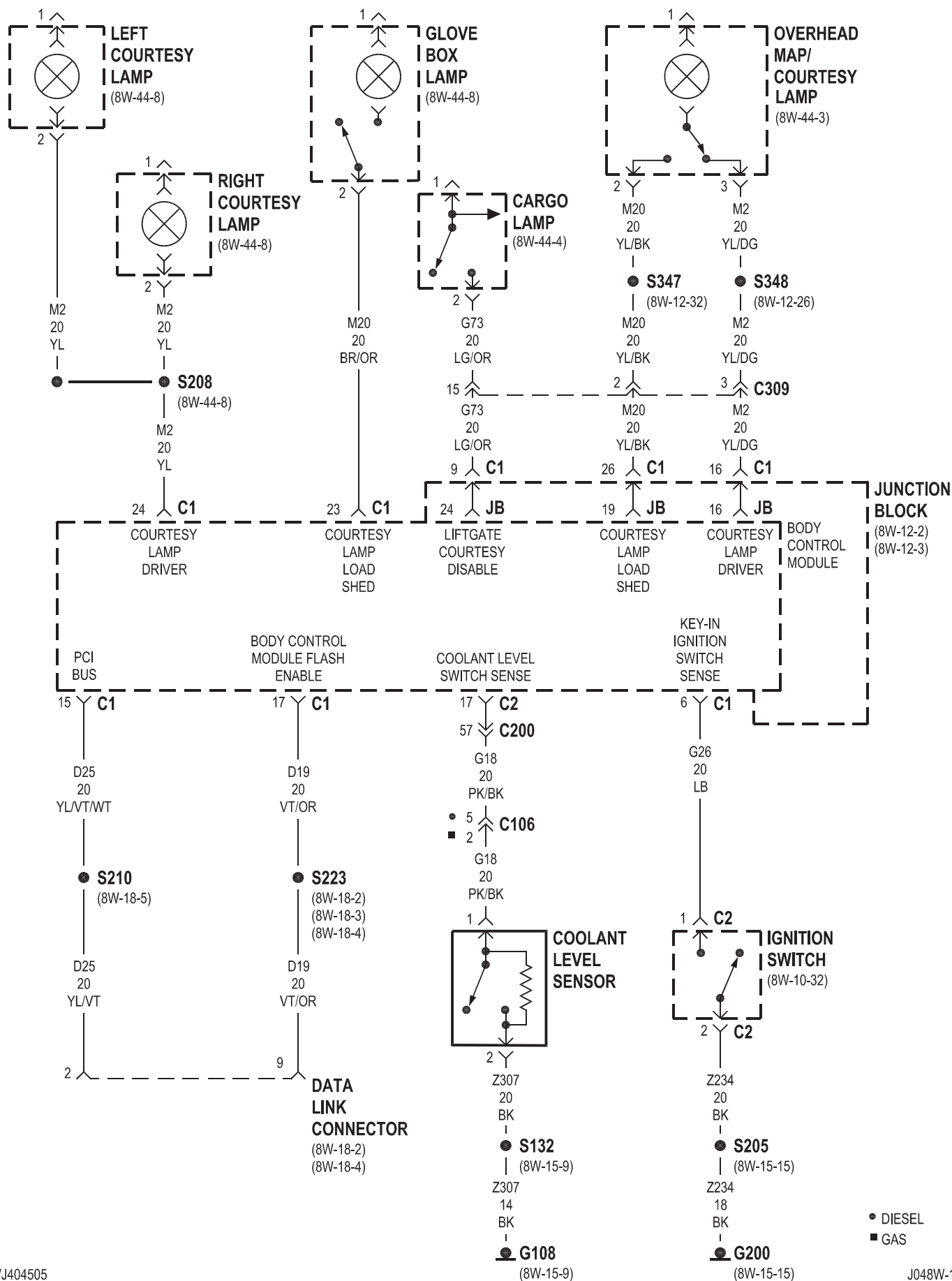
<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
Accessory Delay Relay . . . . .	8W-45-9
Ambient Temperature Sensor . . . . .	8W-45-7
Automatic Headlamp Light Sensor/VTSS Led . . . . .	8W-45-3, 7
Automatic Zone Control Module . . . . .	8W-45-4, 10
Body Control Module . . . . .	8W-45-2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10
Cargo Lamp . . . . .	8W-45-5, 6
Clockspring . . . . .	8W-45-9
Coolant Level Sensor . . . . .	8W-45-5, 6
Data Link Connector . . . . .	8W-45-5, 6
Driver Heated Seat Switch . . . . .	8W-45-4, 10
EVAP Temp Sensor . . . . .	8W-45-7
Fog Lamp Relay . . . . .	8W-45-3
Front Washer Pump . . . . .	8W-45-8
Front Wiper Motor . . . . .	8W-45-8
Fuse 6 . . . . .	8W-45-4
Fuse 7 . . . . .	8W-45-2
Fuse 22 . . . . .	8W-45-2
Fuse 25 . . . . .	8W-45-9
Fuse 27 . . . . .	8W-45-4
Fuse 28 . . . . .	8W-45-2
G108 . . . . .	8W-45-5, 6
G200 . . . . .	8W-45-2, 5, 6
Glove Box Lamp . . . . .	8W-45-5, 6
High Beam Relay . . . . .	8W-45-3
Hood Ajar Switch . . . . .	8W-45-7
Horn Relay . . . . .	8W-45-7
Ignition Switch . . . . .	8W-45-5, 6

<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
Junction Block . . . . .	8W-45-2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9
Left Courtesy Lamp . . . . .	8W-45-5, 6
Left Liftgate Ajar Switch . . . . .	8W-45-8
Left Multi-Function Switch . . . . .	8W-45-3, 4
Left Rear Door Lock Motor/Ajar Switch . . .	8W-45-7
Left Remote Radio Switch . . . . .	8W-45-9
Liftgate Flip-Up Ajar Switch . . . . .	8W-45-8
Low Beam Relay . . . . .	8W-45-3
Low Beam/Daytime Running Lamp Relay . . . . .	8W-45-3
Manual Temperature Control . . . . .	8W-45-4, 10
Overhead Map/Courtesy Lamp . . . . .	8W-45-5, 6
Park Lamp Relay . . . . .	8W-45-3, 4
Passenger Heated Seat Switch . . . . .	8W-45-10
Passenger Heated Seat Switch . . . . .	8W-45-4
Radio . . . . .	8W-45-4
Rear Fog Lamp Relay . . . . .	8W-45-4
Rear Window Defogger Relay . . . . .	8W-45-9
Rear Wiper Motor . . . . .	8W-45-8
Right Courtesy Lamp . . . . .	8W-45-5, 6
Right Liftgate Ajar Switch . . . . .	8W-45-8
Right Multi-Function Switch . . . . .	8W-45-8
Right Rear Door Lock Motor/Ajar Switch . .	8W-45-7
Right Remote Radio Switch . . . . .	8W-45-9
Shifter Assembly . . . . .	8W-45-4
Washer Fluid Level Switch . . . . .	8W-45-8
Wiper High/Low Relay . . . . .	8W-45-2
Wiper On/Off Relay . . . . .	8W-45-8

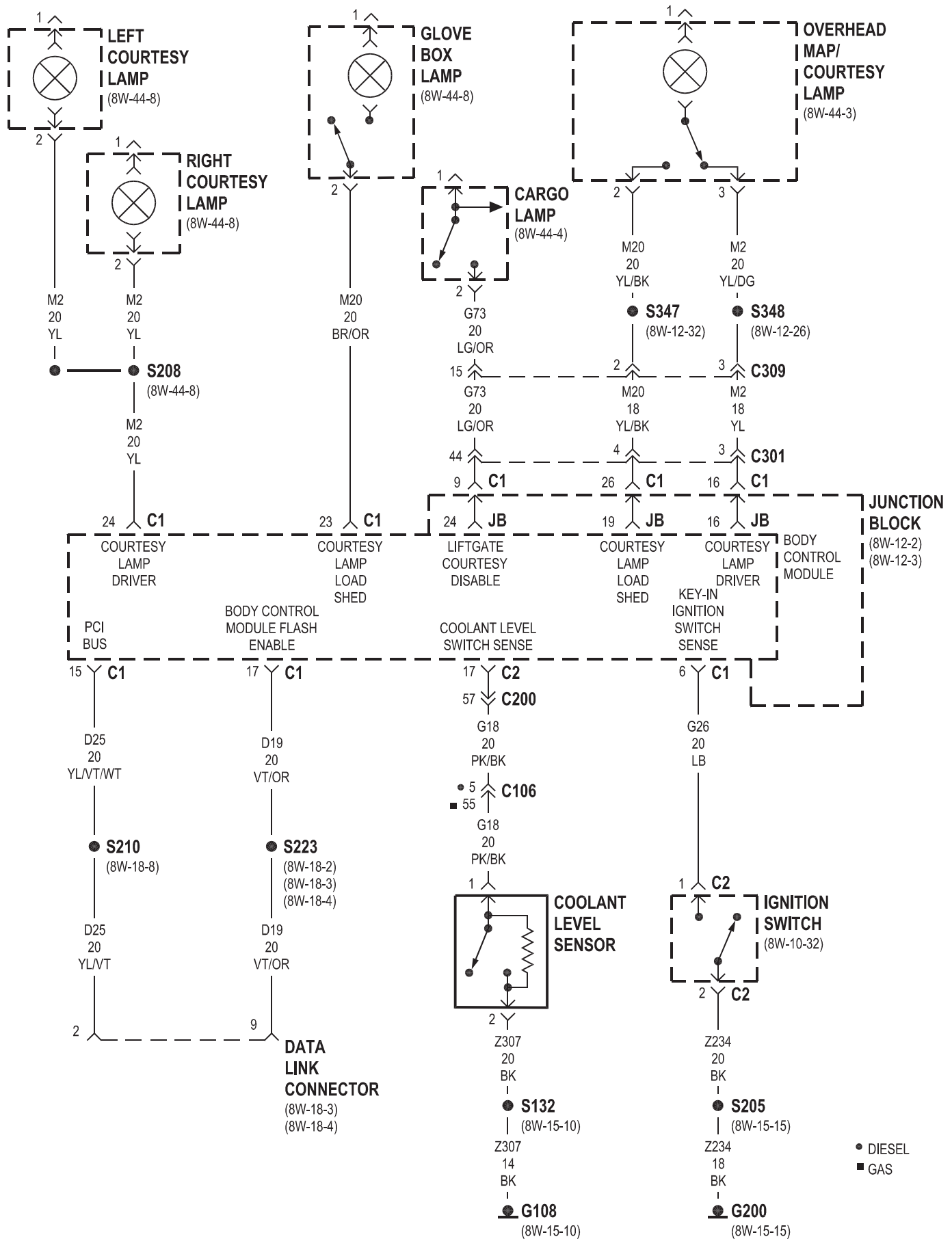






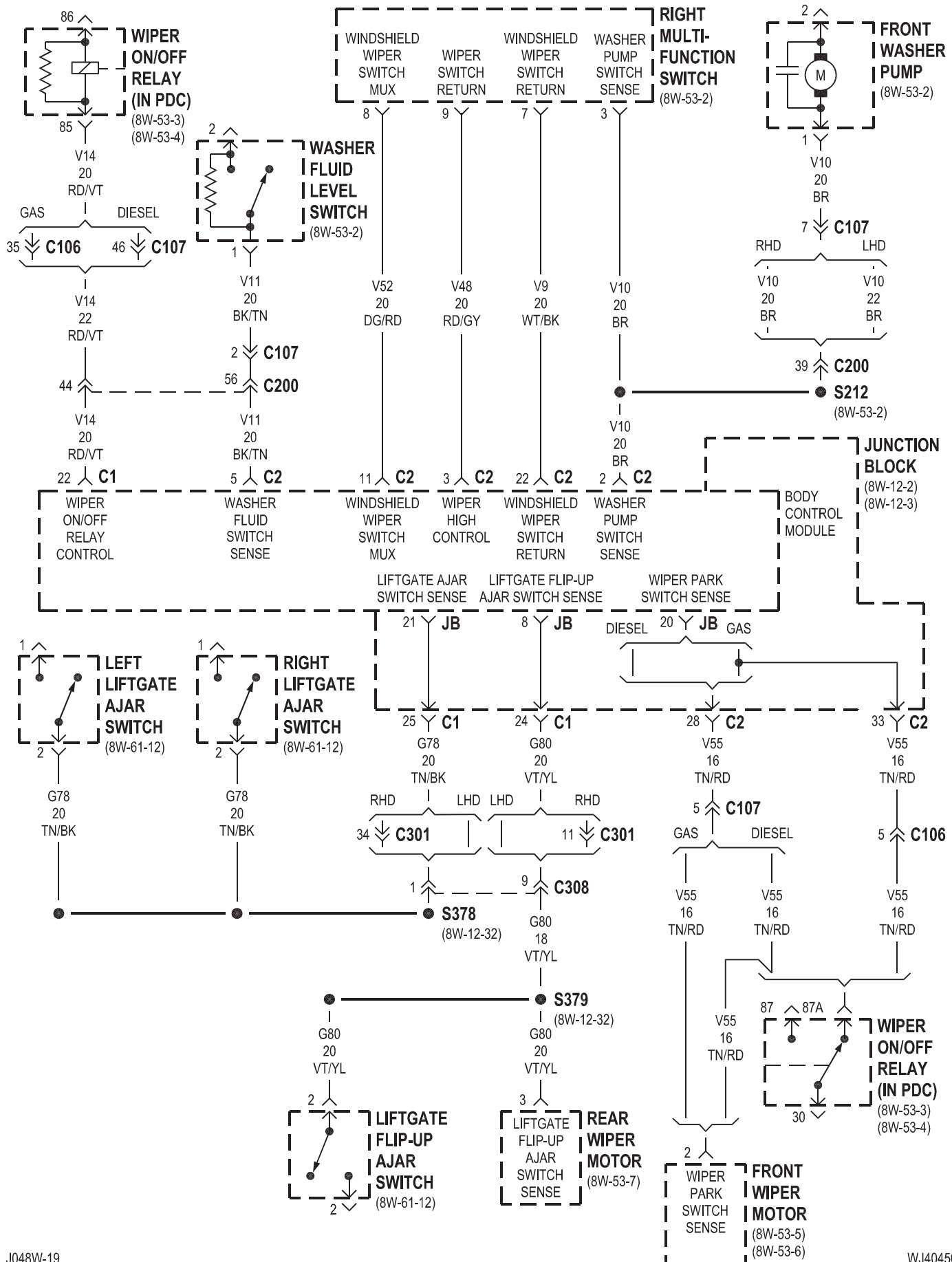


RHD

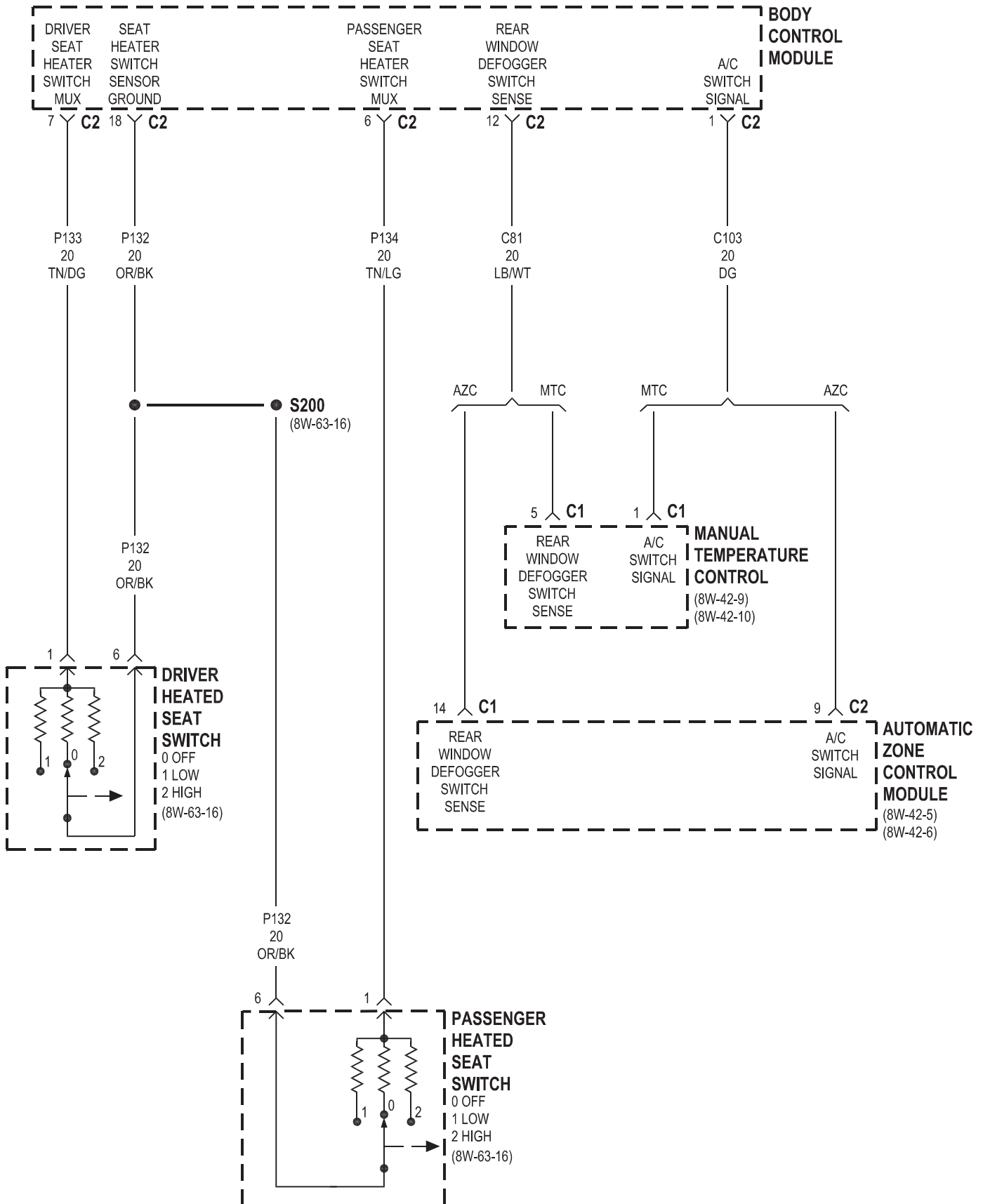








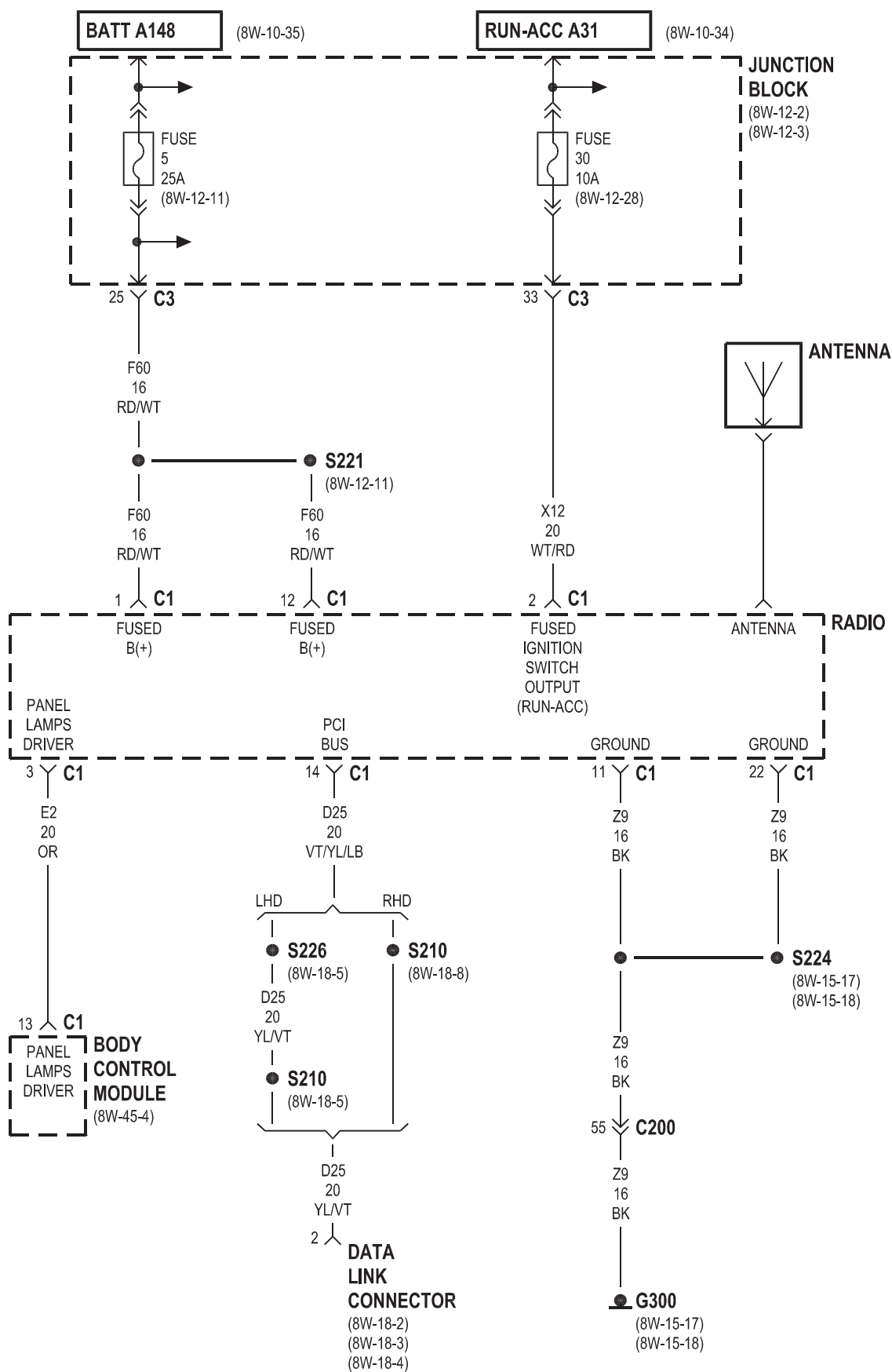




## 8W-47 AUDIO SYSTEM

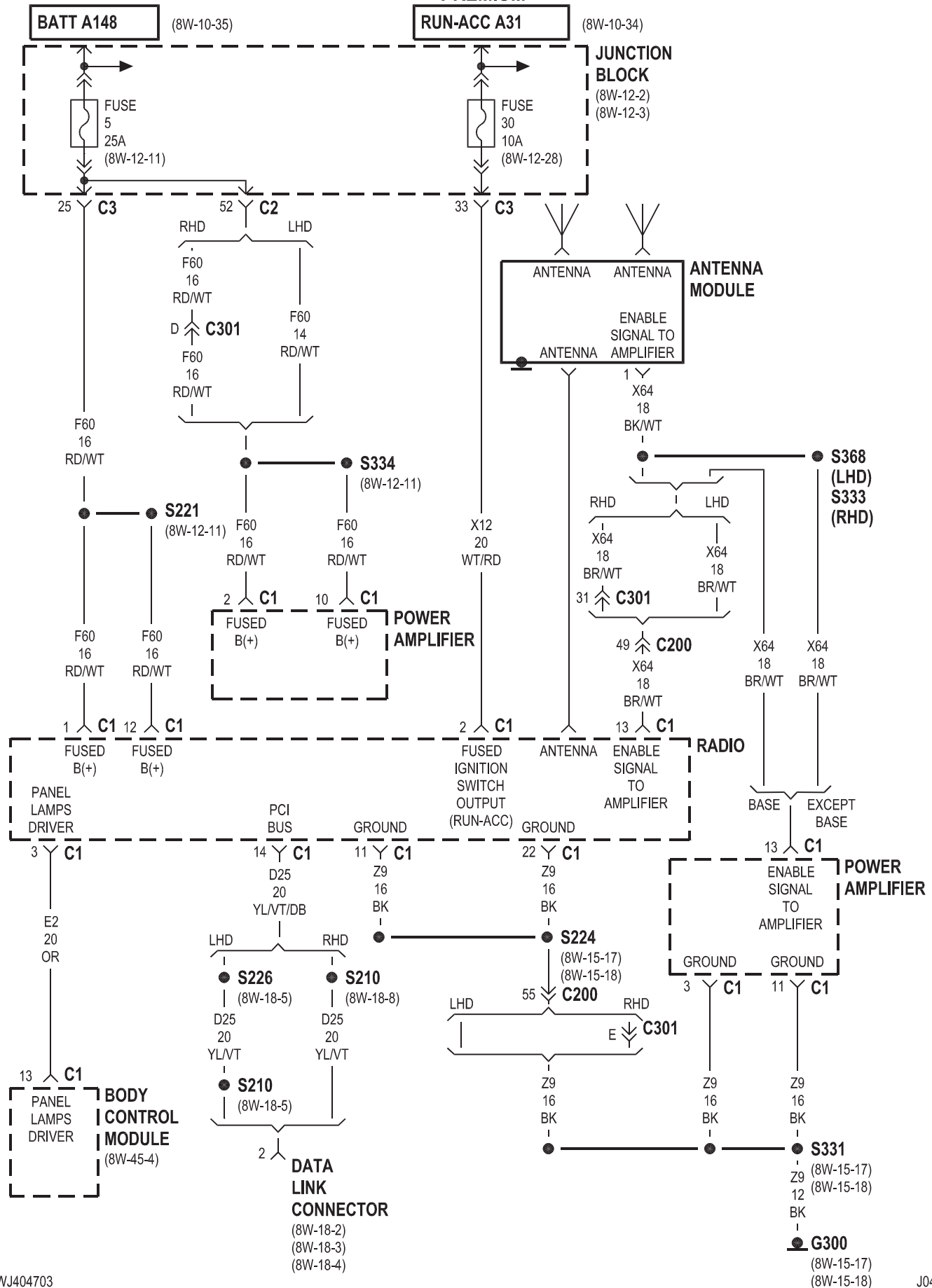
<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
Antenna . . . . .	8W-47-2
Antenna Module . . . . .	8W-47-3
Body Control Module . . . . .	8W-47-2, 3, 13
Clockspring . . . . .	8W-47-13
Compact Disc Changer . . . . .	8W-47-6, 7
Data Link Connector . . . . .	8W-47-2, 3, 6, 7
Fuse 5 . . . . .	8W-47-2, 3
Fuse 30 . . . . .	8W-47-2, 3
G300 . . . . .	8W-47-2, 3
Junction Block . . . . .	8W-47-2, 3

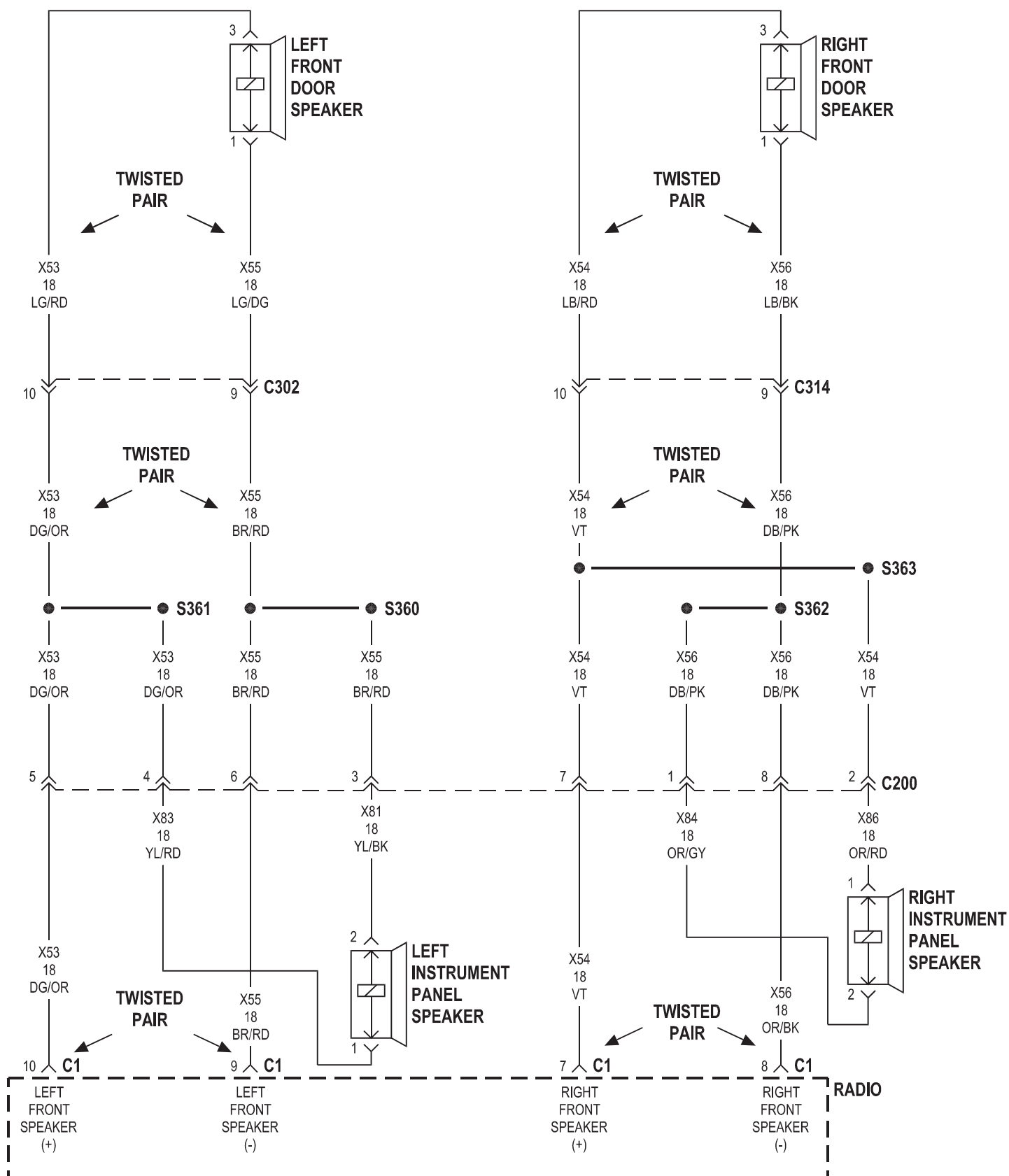
<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
Left Front Door Speaker . . . . .	8W-47-4, 10, 11
Left Instrument Panel Speaker . . . . .	8W-47-4, 12
Left Rear Door Speaker . . . . .	8W-47-5, 10, 11
Left Remote Radio Switch . . . . .	8W-47-13
Power Amplifier . . . . .	8W-47-3, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12
Radio . . . . .	8W-47-2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 13
Right Front Door Speaker . . . . .	8W-47-4, 10, 11
Right Instrument Panel Speaker . . . . .	8W-47-4, 12
Right Rear Door Speaker . . . . .	8W-47-5, 10, 11
Right Remote Radio Switch . . . . .	8W-47-13

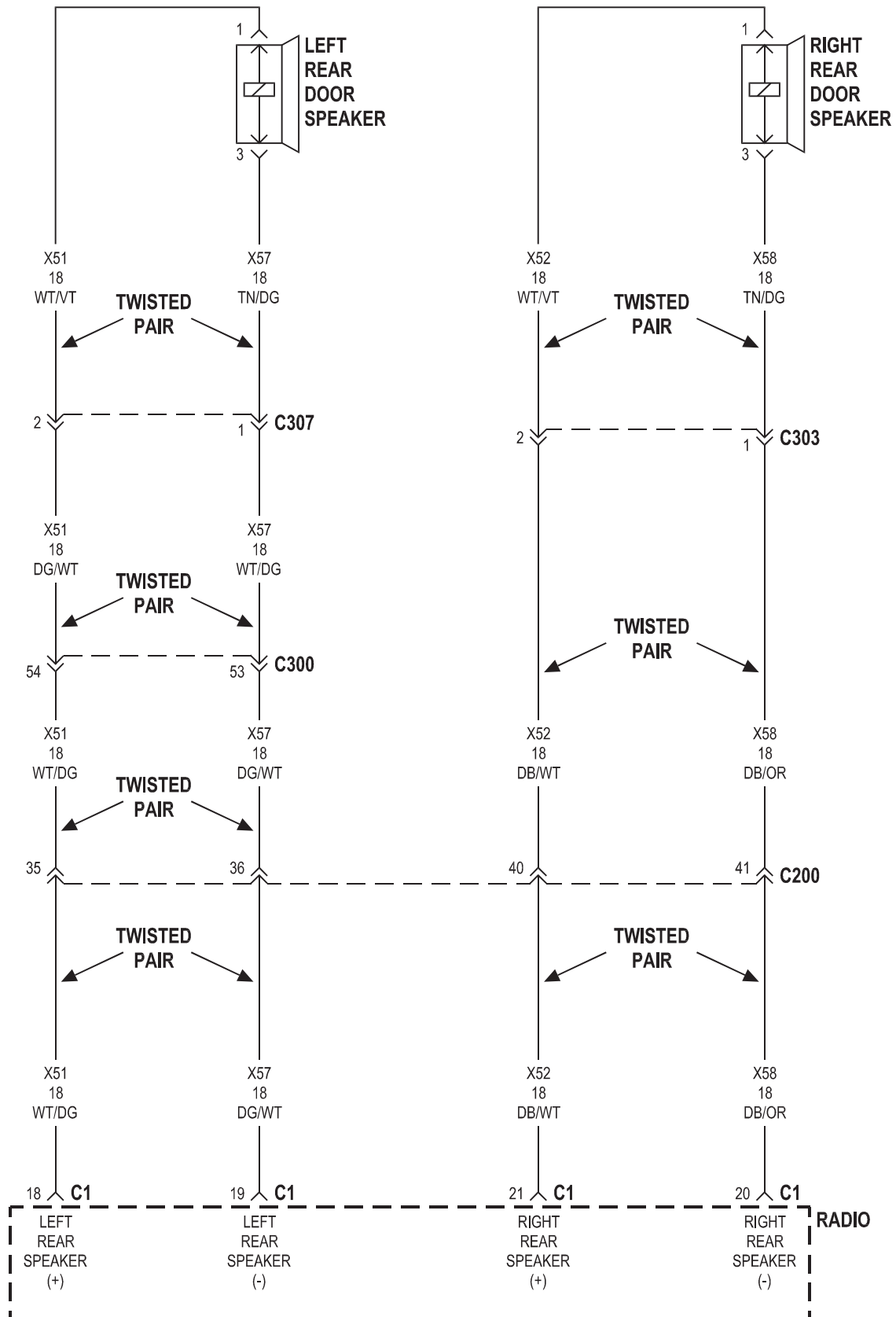


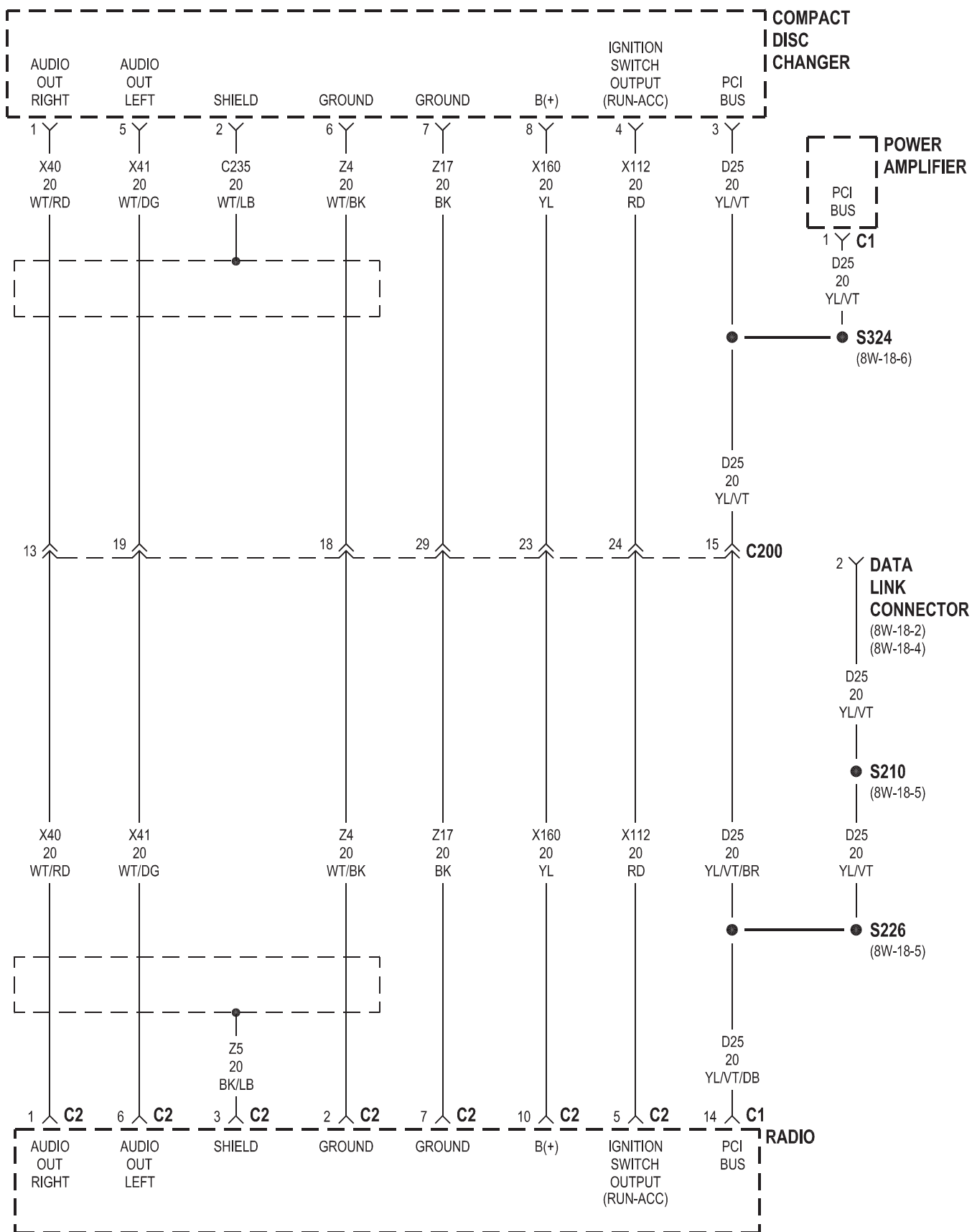


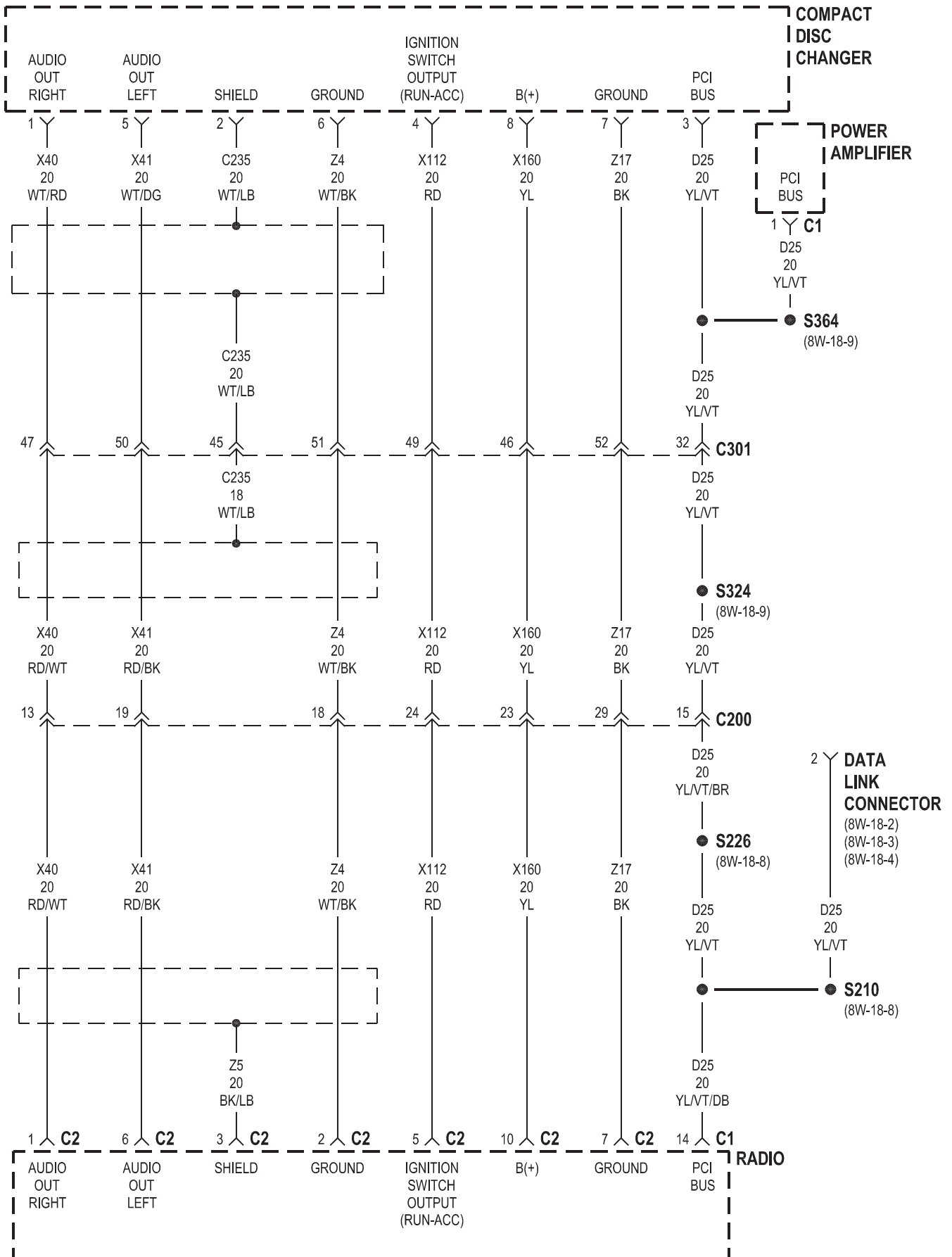
## PREMIUM

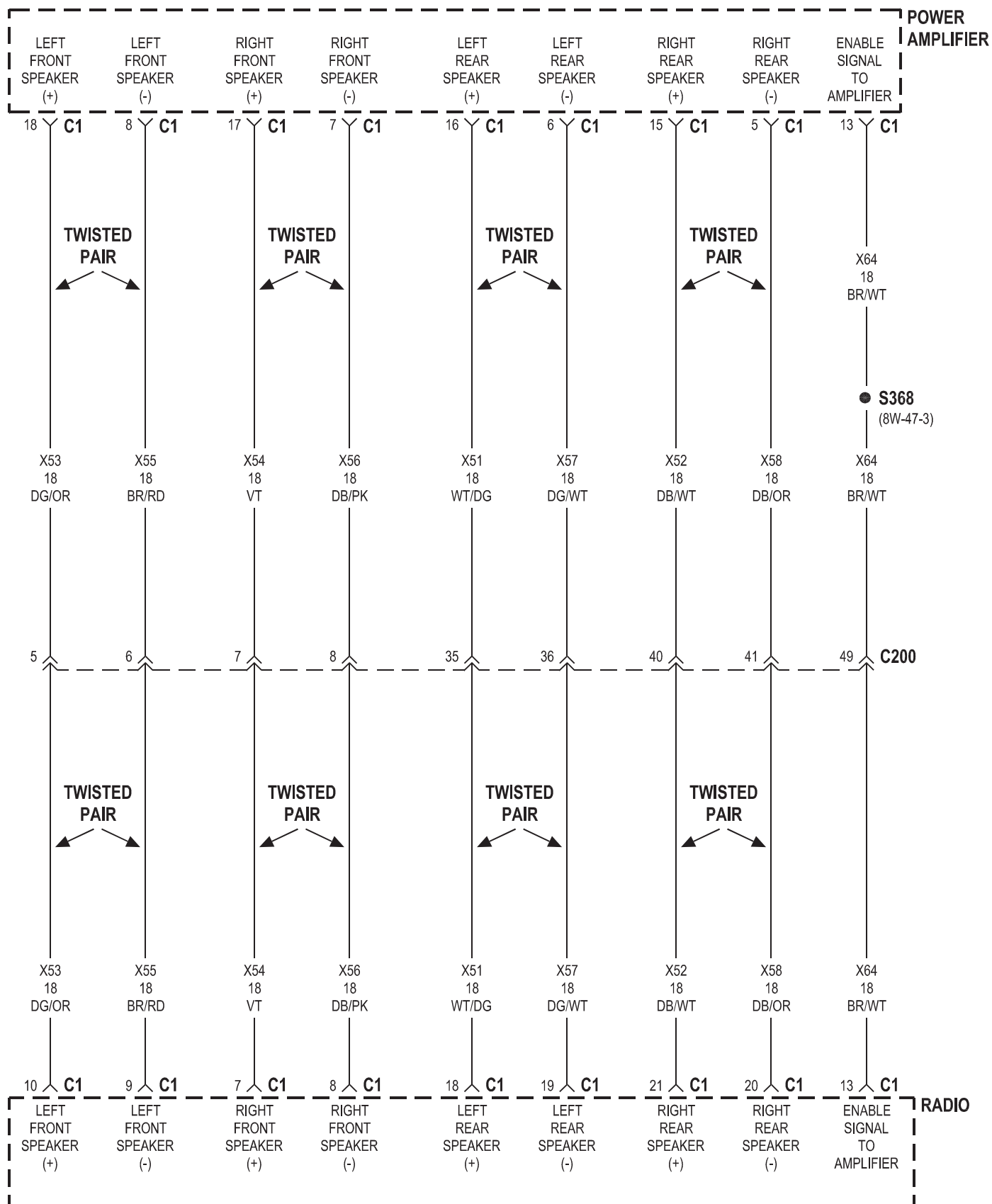




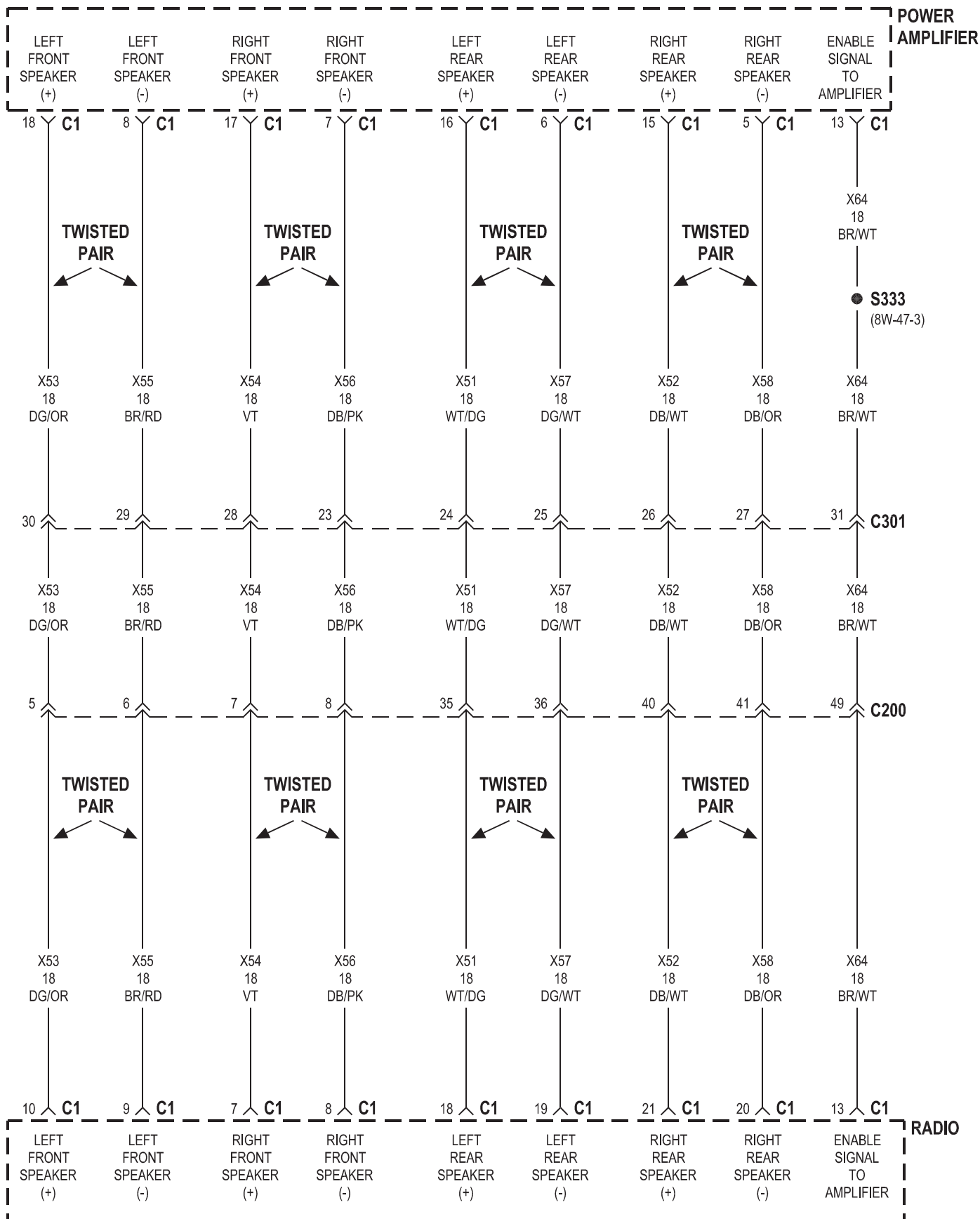


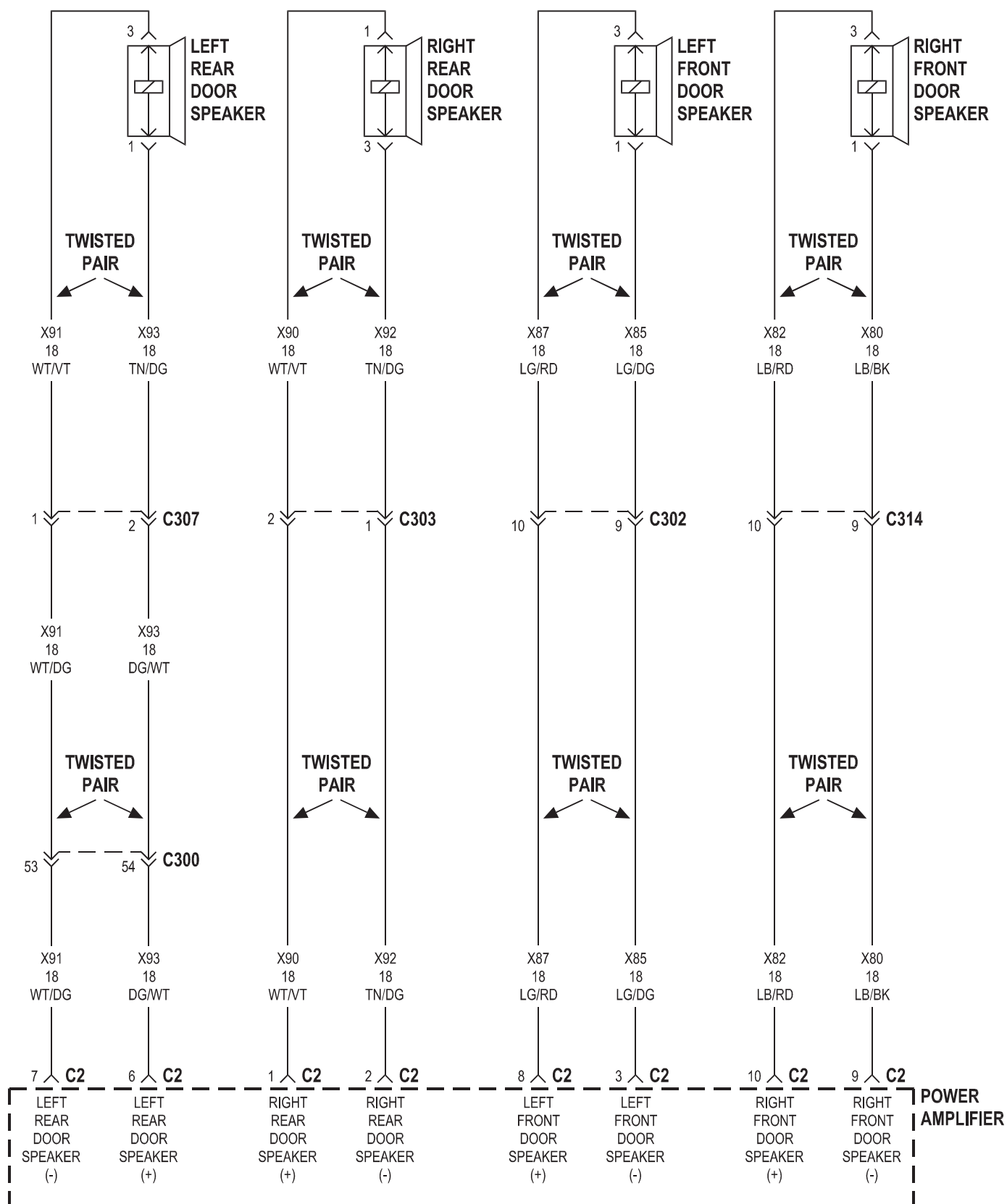


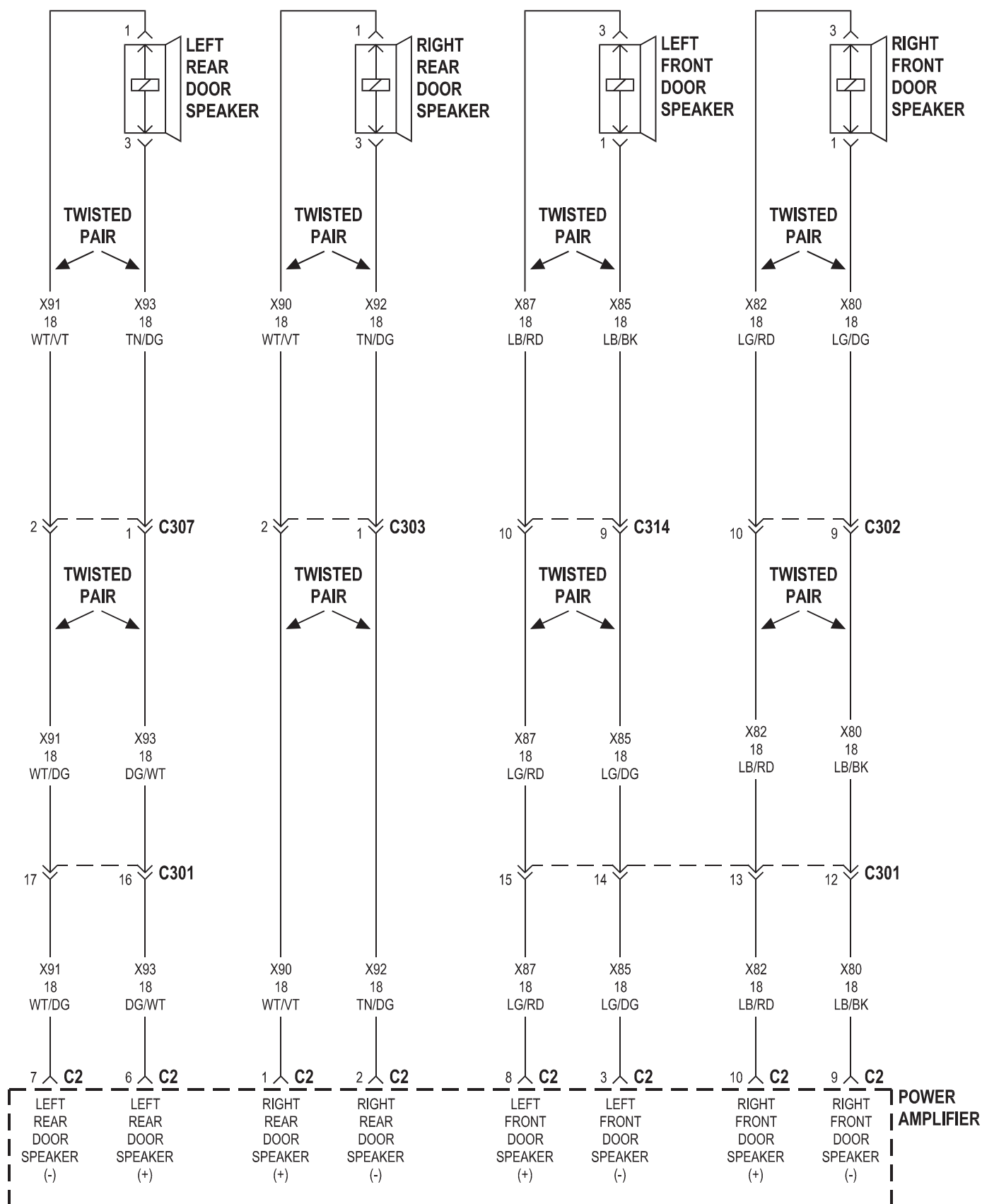


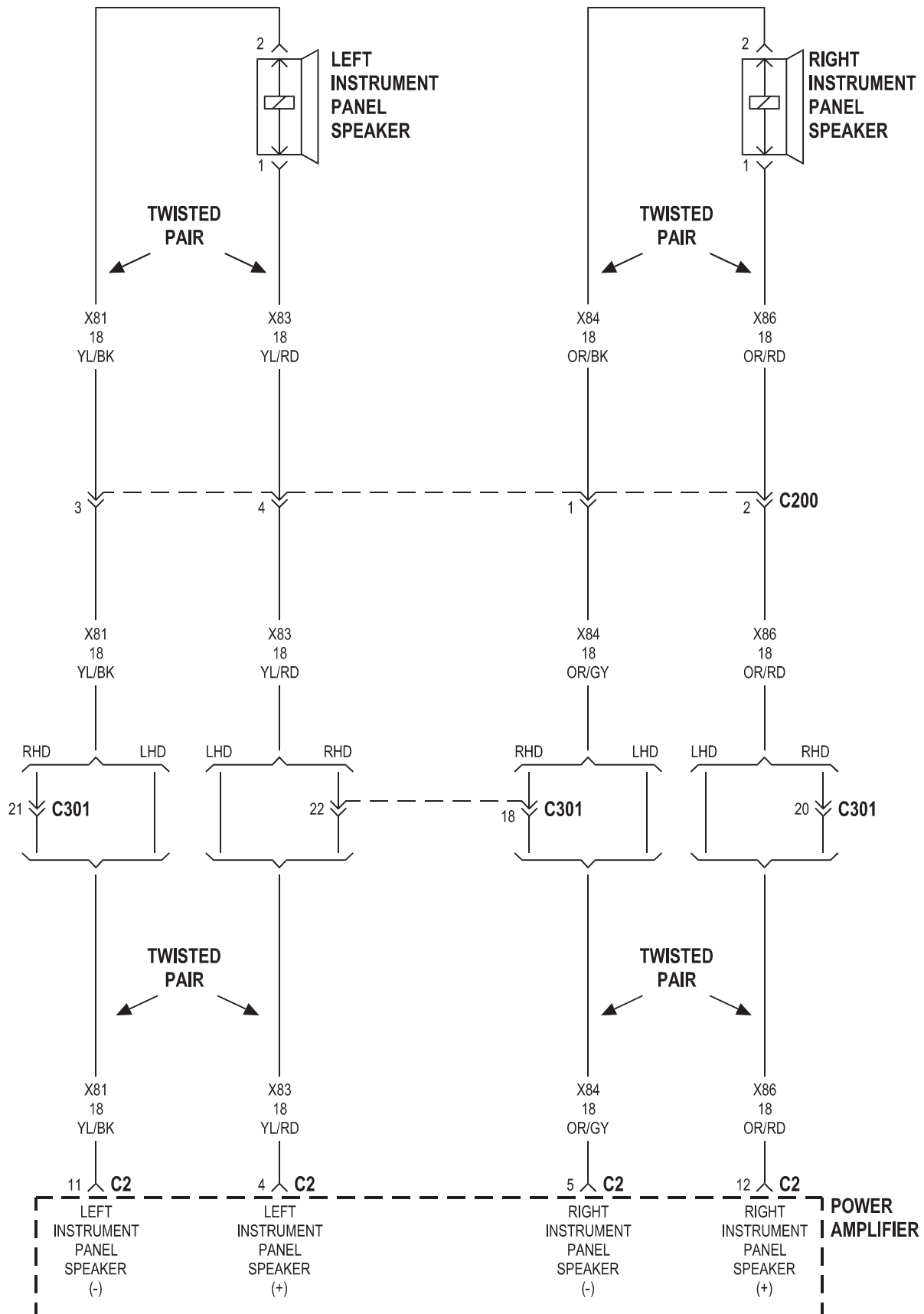


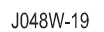










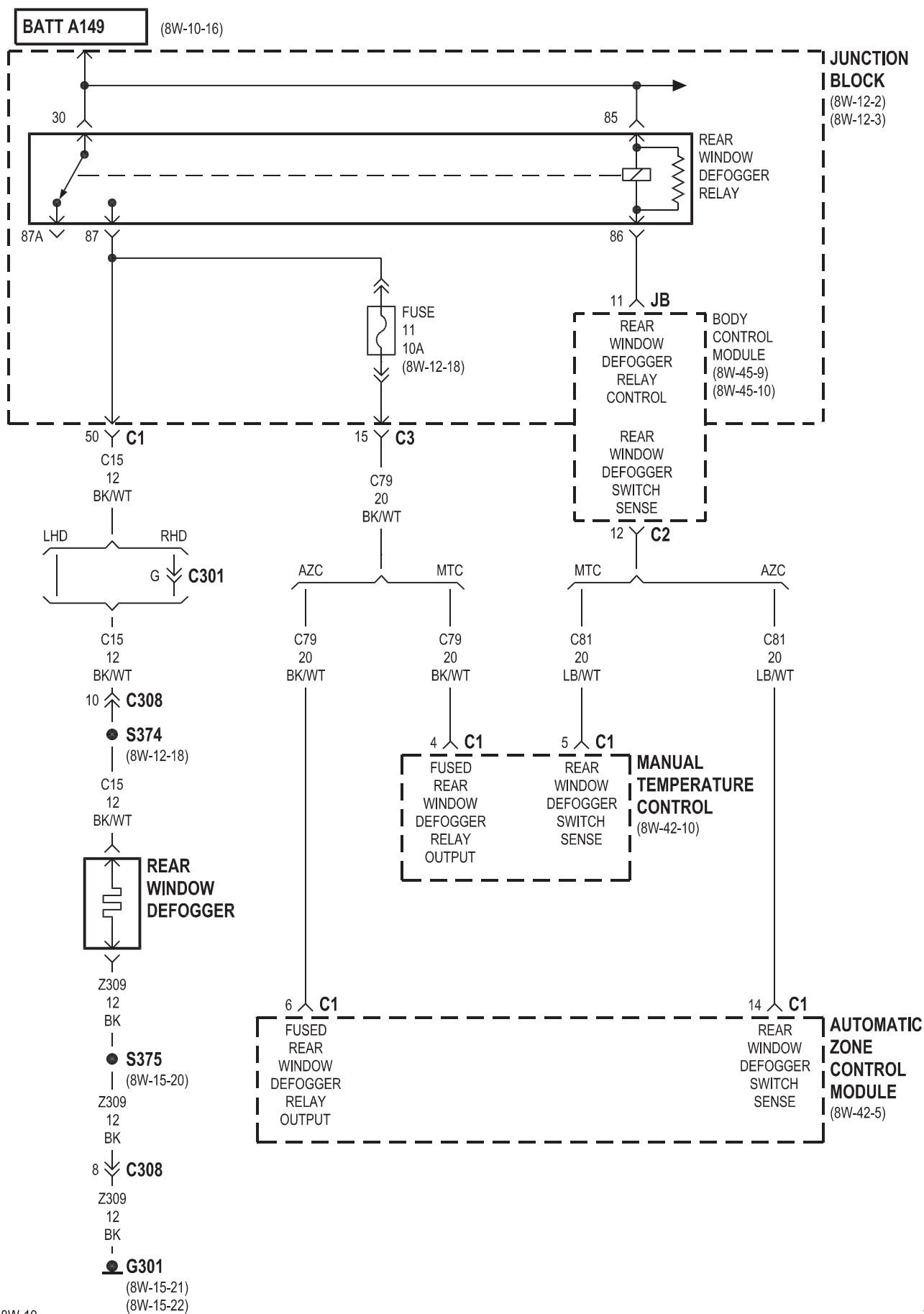






8W-48 REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER

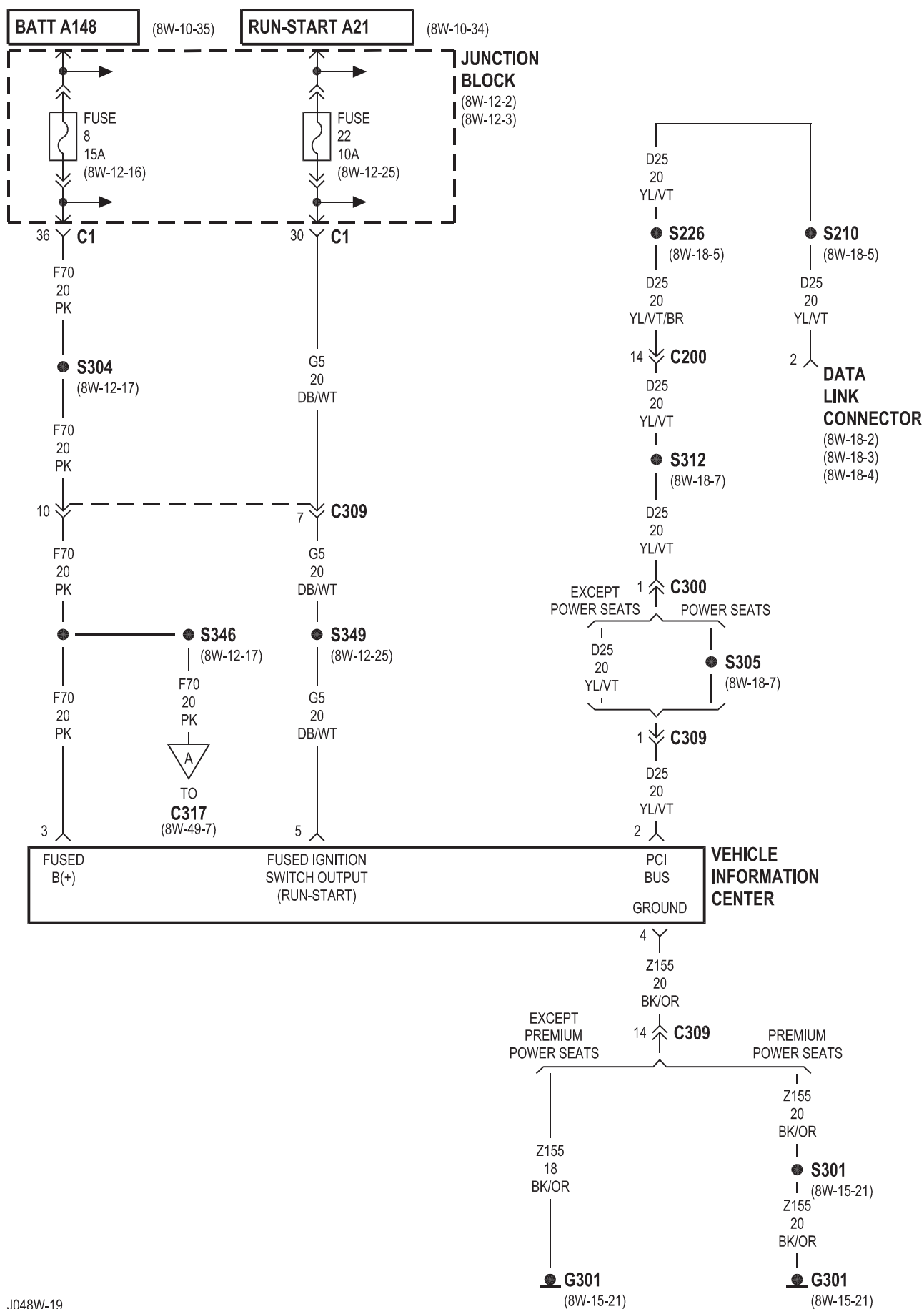
Component	Page	Component	Page
Automatic Zone Control Module . . . . .	8W-48-2	Junction Block . . . . .	8W-48-2
Body Control Module . . . . .	8W-48-2	Manual Temperature Control . . . . .	8W-48-2
Fuse 11 . . . . .	8W-48-2	Rear Window Defogger . . . . .	8W-48-2
G301 . . . . .	8W-48-2	Rear Window Defogger Relay . . . . .	8W-48-2

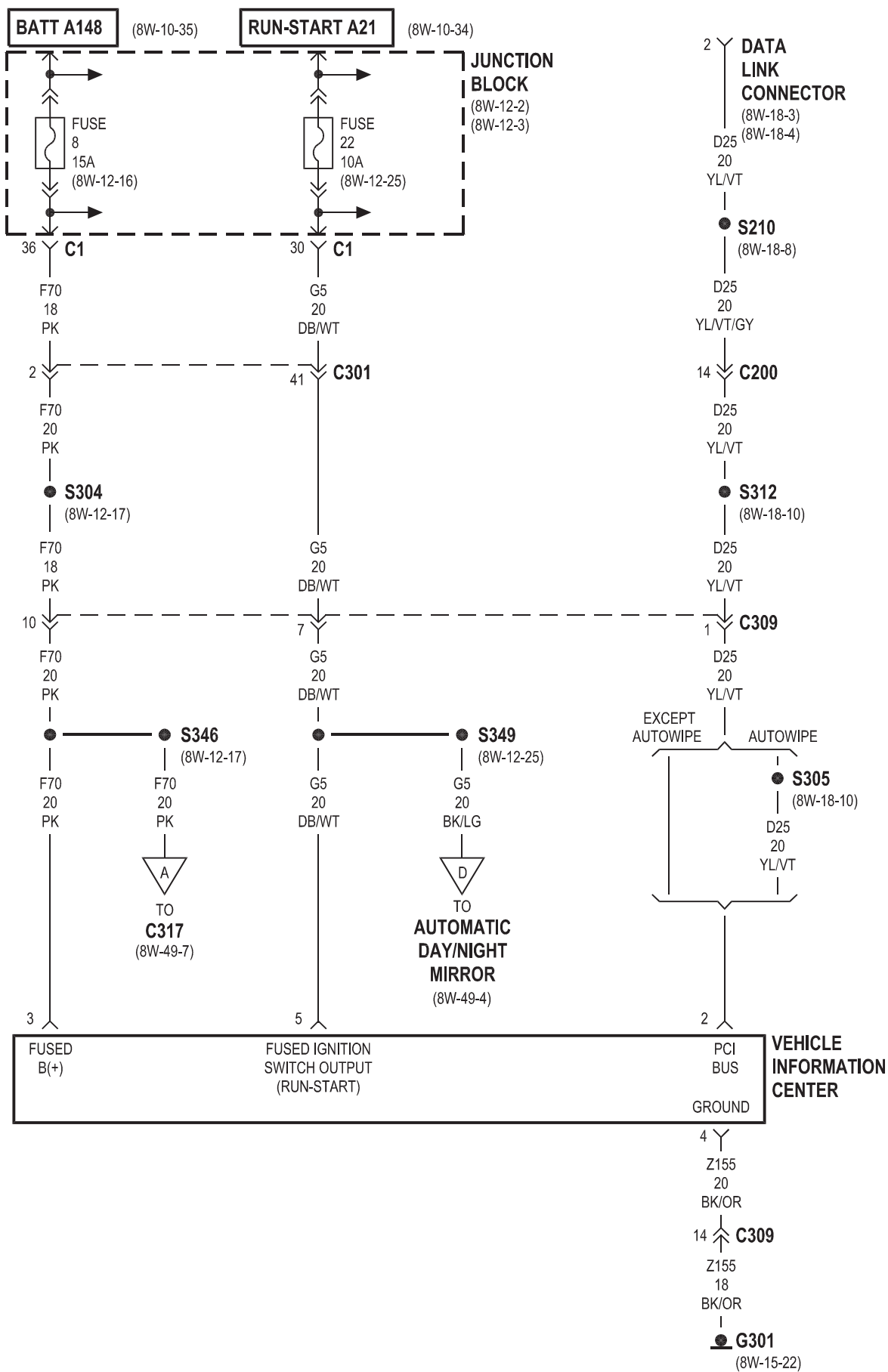


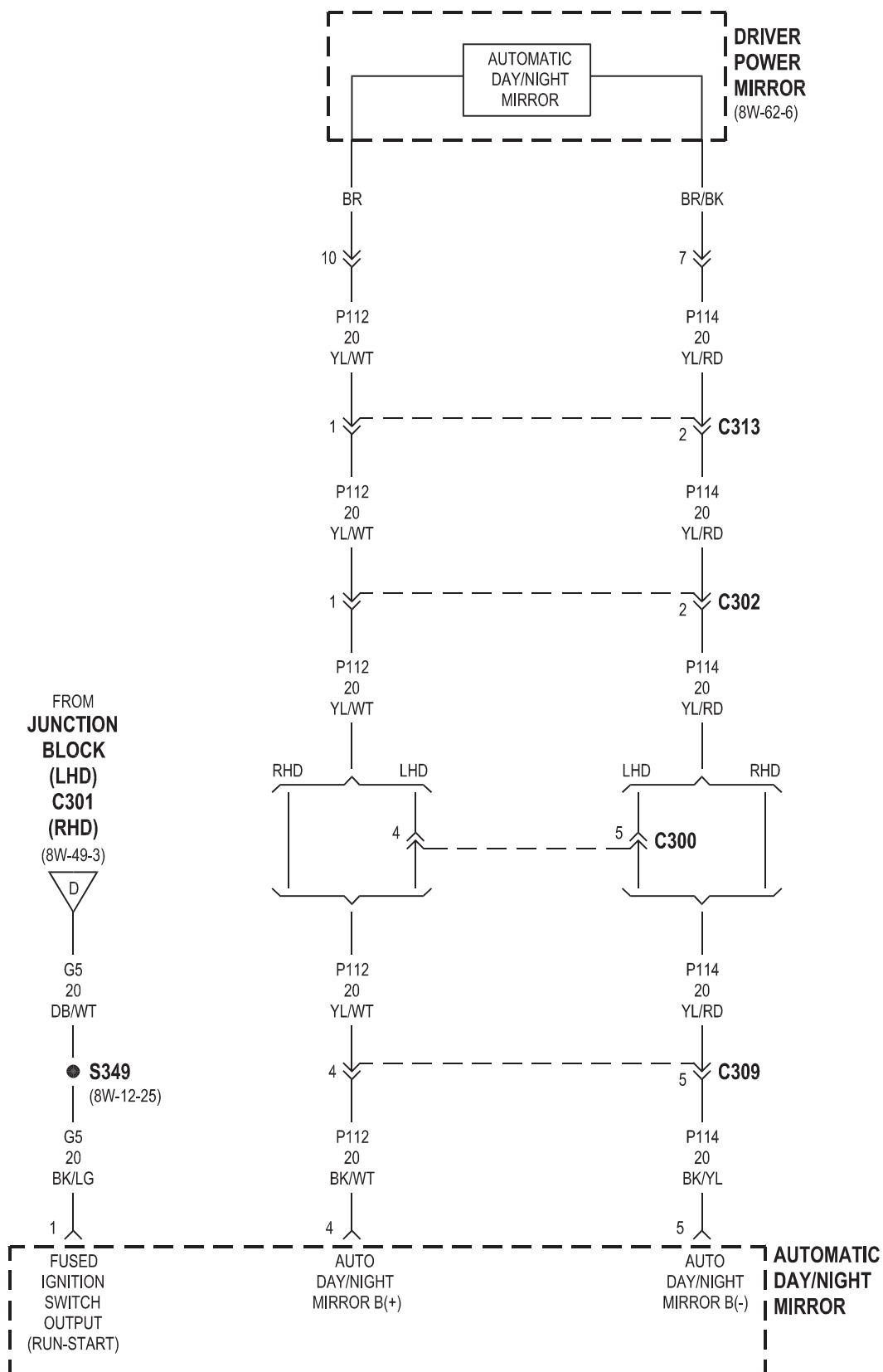
## 8W-49 OVERHEAD CONSOLE

<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
Accessory Delay Relay . . . . .	8W-49-6
Automatic Day/Night Mirror . . . . .	8W-49-3, 4, 5
Back-Up Lamp Relay . . . . .	8W-49-5
Data Link Connector . . . . .	8W-49-2, 3, 6
Driver Power Mirror . . . . .	8W-49-4
Fuse 7 . . . . .	8W-49-7
Fuse 8 . . . . .	8W-49-2, 3
Fuse 22 . . . . .	8W-49-2, 3
Fuse 25 . . . . .	8W-49-6
G106 . . . . .	8W-49-7

<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
G301 . . . . .	8W-49-2, 3, 5, 6
Intrusion Transceiver Module . . . . .	8W-49-7
Junction Block . . . . .	8W-49-2, 3, 4, 6, 7
Left Rear Lamp Assembly . . . . .	8W-49-5
Park/Neutral Position Switch . . . . .	8W-49-5
Rain Sensor . . . . .	8W-49-6
Siren . . . . .	8W-49-7
Transmission Solenoid/TRS Assembly . . . .	8W-49-5
Vehicle Information Center . . . . .	8W-49-2, 3

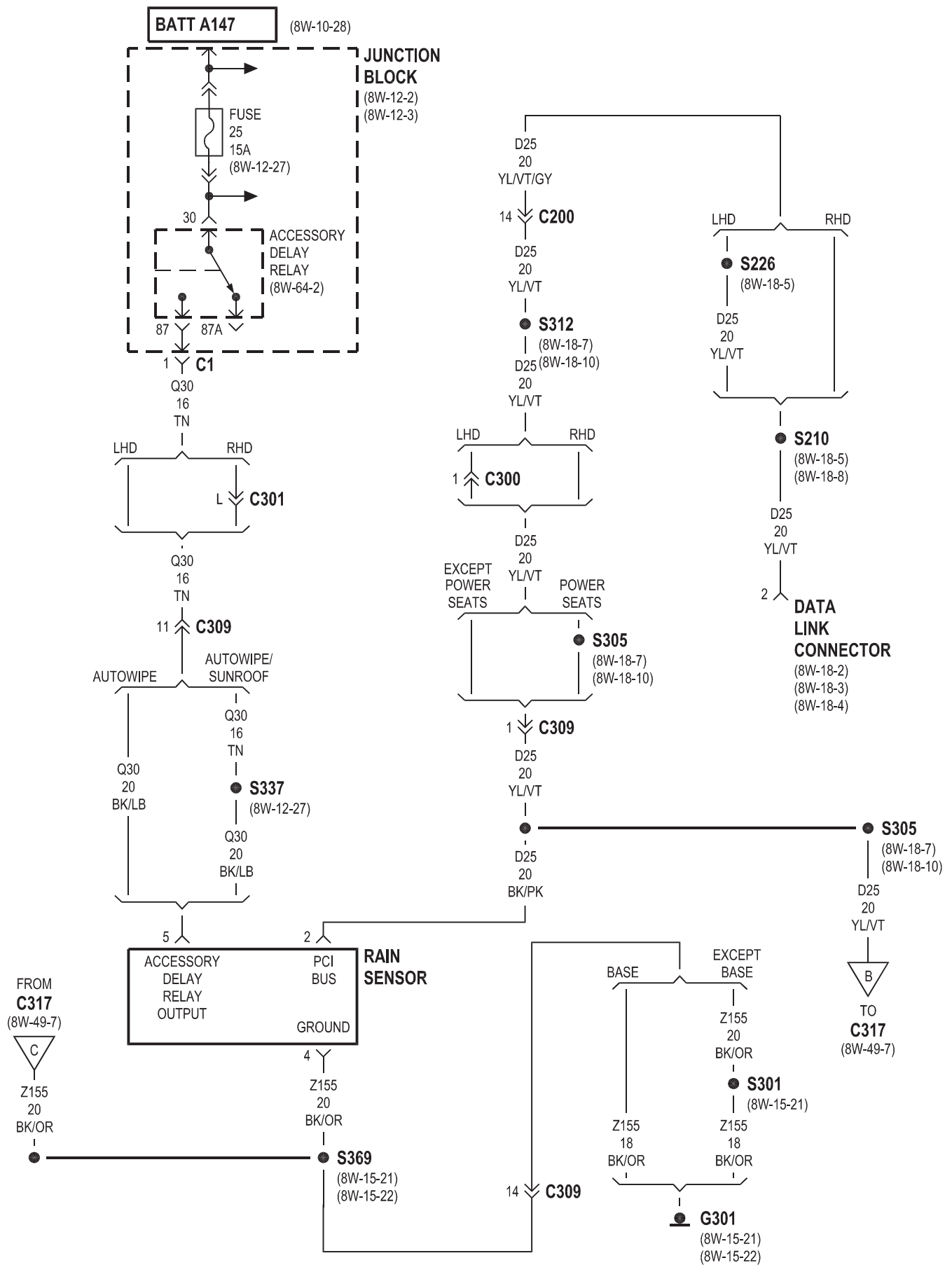


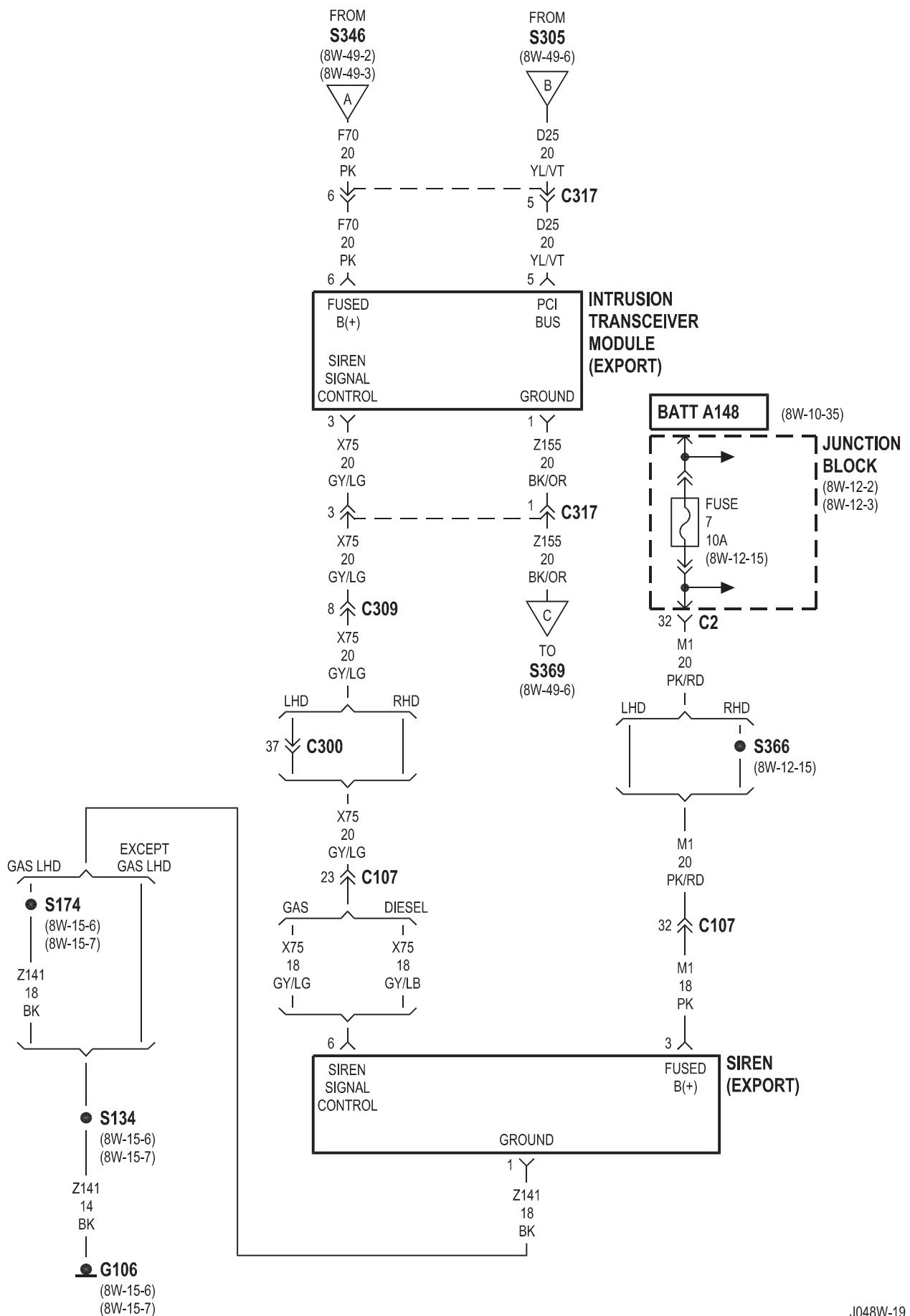










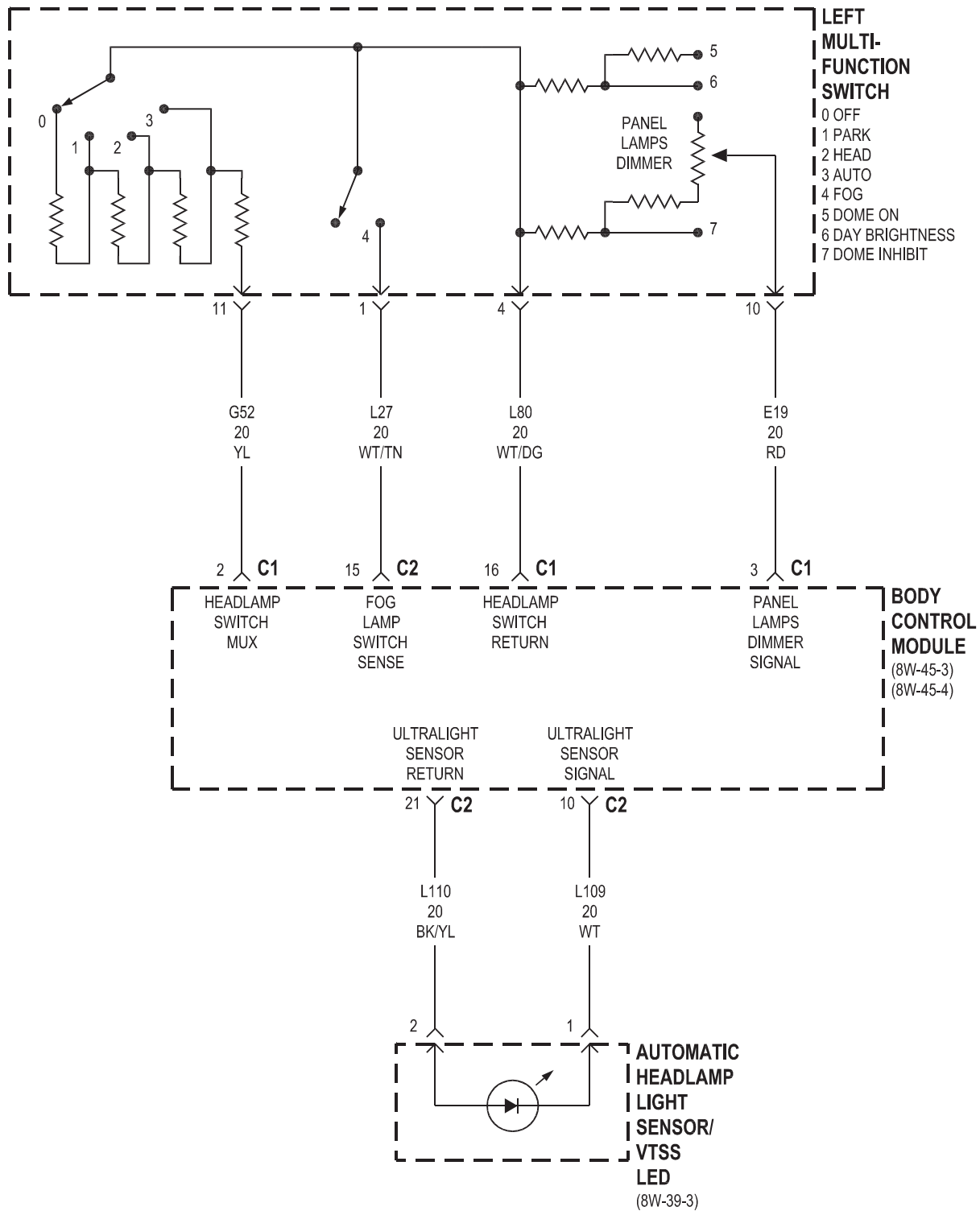




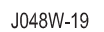
## 8W-50 FRONT LIGHTING

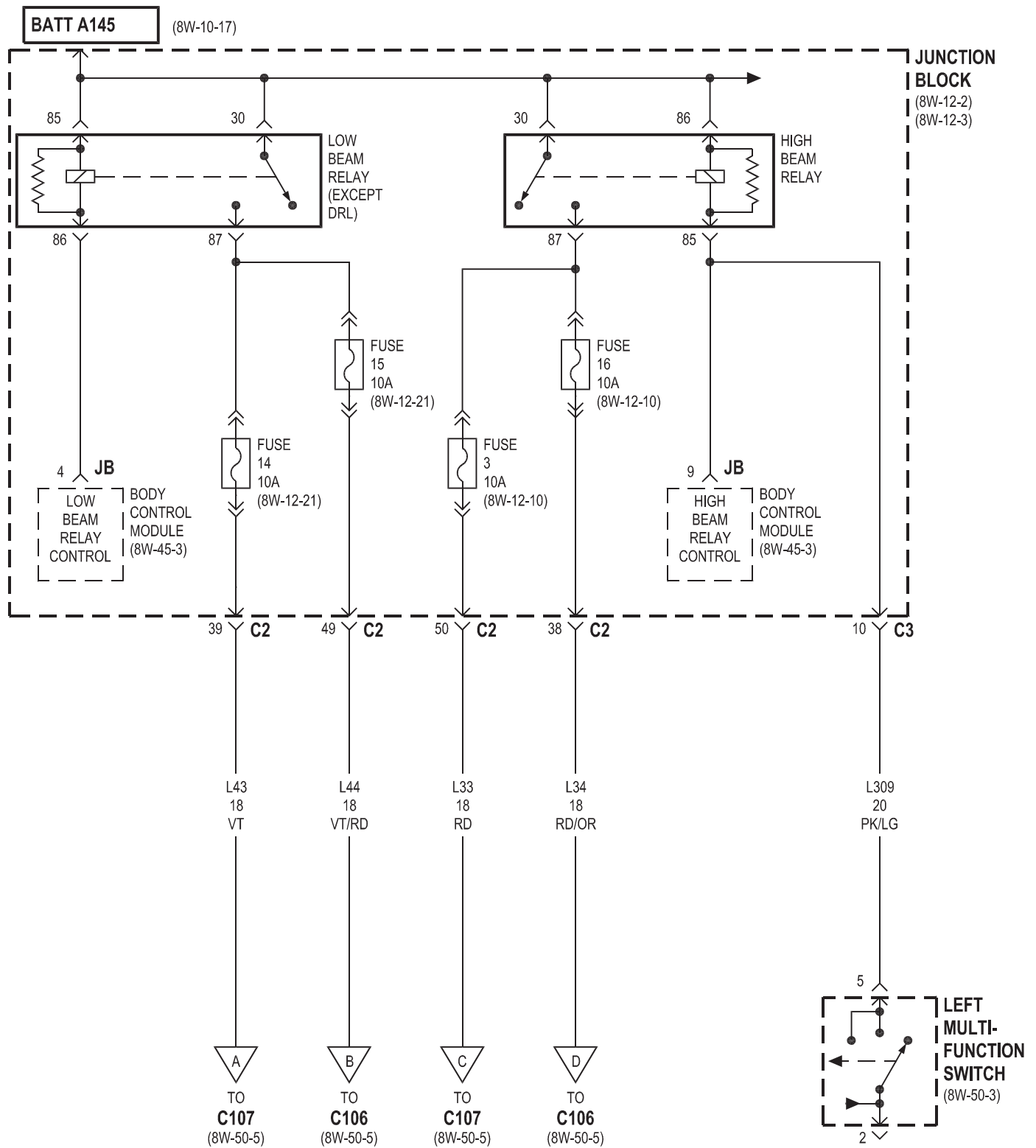
<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
Automatic Headlamp Light Sensor/VTSS	
Led . . . . .	8W-50-2
Body Control Module . . . . .	8W-50-2, 3, 4, 6, 12, 13
Combination Flasher . . . . .	8W-50-3, 6
Fog Lamp Relay . . . . .	8W-50-12
Fuse 3 . . . . .	8W-50-4
Fuse 6 . . . . .	8W-50-6
Fuse 14 . . . . .	8W-50-4, 13
Fuse 15 . . . . .	8W-50-4, 13
Fuse 16 . . . . .	8W-50-4
Fuse 24 . . . . .	8W-50-12
G106 . . . . .	8W-50-5, 10, 11, 12, 13
G108 . . . . .	8W-50-5, 7, 8, 12, 13
G200 . . . . .	8W-50-3, 6, 9, 13
Headlamp Leveling Switch . . . . .	8W-50-9
High Beam Relay . . . . .	8W-50-3, 4
Junction Block . . 8W-50-3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 10, 11, 12, 13	
Left Fog Lamp . . . . .	8W-50-12
Left Front Park Lamp . . . . .	8W-50-10, 11
Left Front Park/Turn Signal Lamp . . . . .	8W-50-10
Left Front Side Marker Lamp . . . . .	8W-50-10

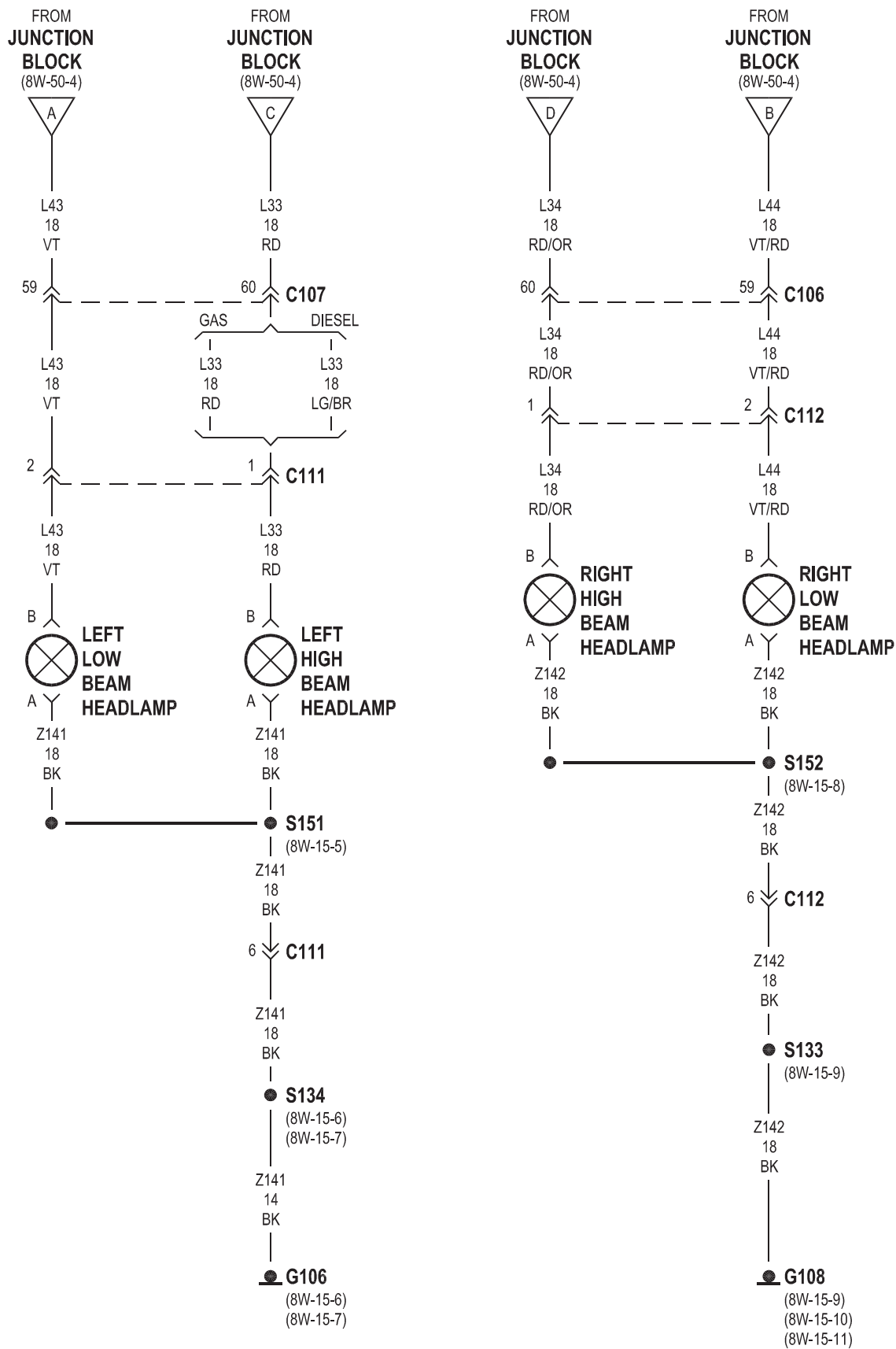
<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
Left Front Turn Signal Lamp . . . . .	8W-50-11
Left Headlamp Leveling Motor . . . . .	8W-50-11
Left High Beam Headlamp . . . . .	8W-50-5
Left Low Beam Headlamp . . . . .	8W-50-5, 13
Left Multi-Function Switch . . . . .	8W-50-2, 3, 4
Left Side Repeater Lamp . . . . .	8W-50-11
Low Beam Relay . . . . .	8W-50-4
Low Beam/Daytime Running Lamp	
Relay . . . . .	8W-50-13
Park Lamp Relay . . . . .	8W-50-6
Right Fog Lamp . . . . .	8W-50-12
Right Front Park Lamp . . . . .	8W-50-7, 8
Right Front Park/Turn Signal Lamp . . . . .	8W-50-7
Right Front Side Marker Lamp . . . . .	8W-50-7
Right Front Turn Signal Lamp . . . . .	8W-50-8
Right Headlamp Leveling Motor . . . . .	8W-50-8
Right High Beam Headlamp . . . . .	8W-50-5
Right Low Beam Headlamp . . . . .	8W-50-5, 13
Right Rear Lamp Assembly . . . . .	8W-50-7, 8
Right Side Repeater Lamp . . . . .	8W-50-8

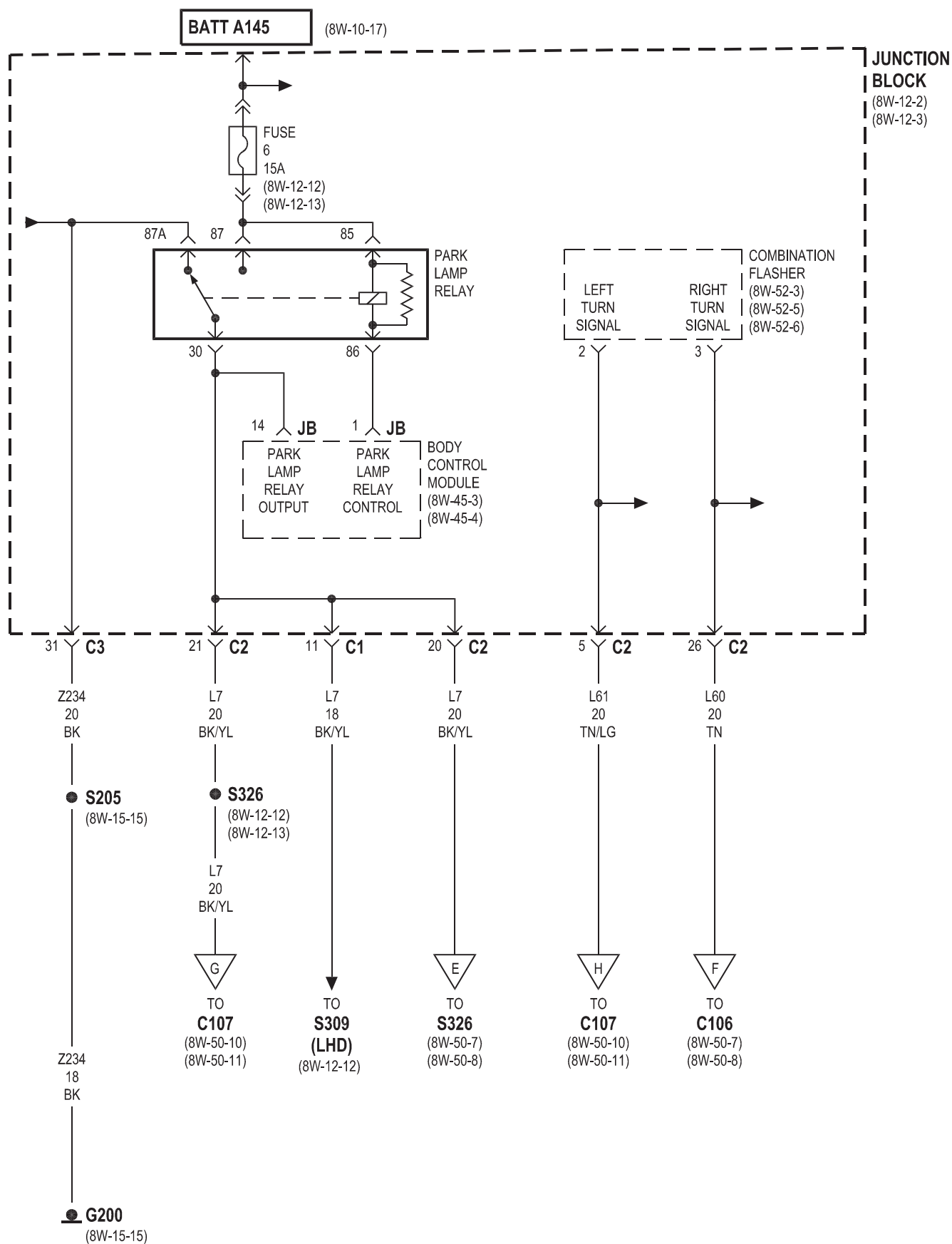


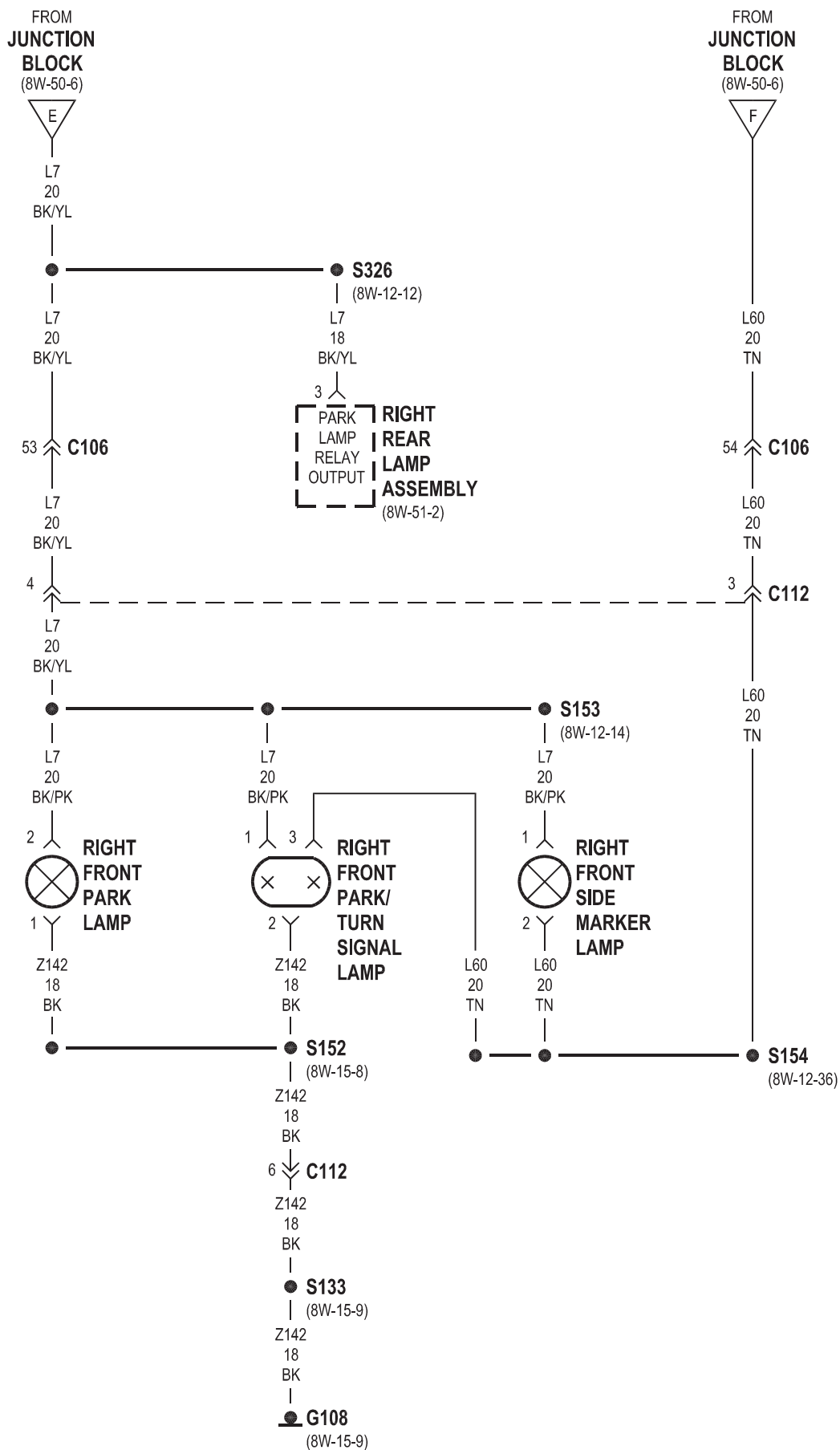


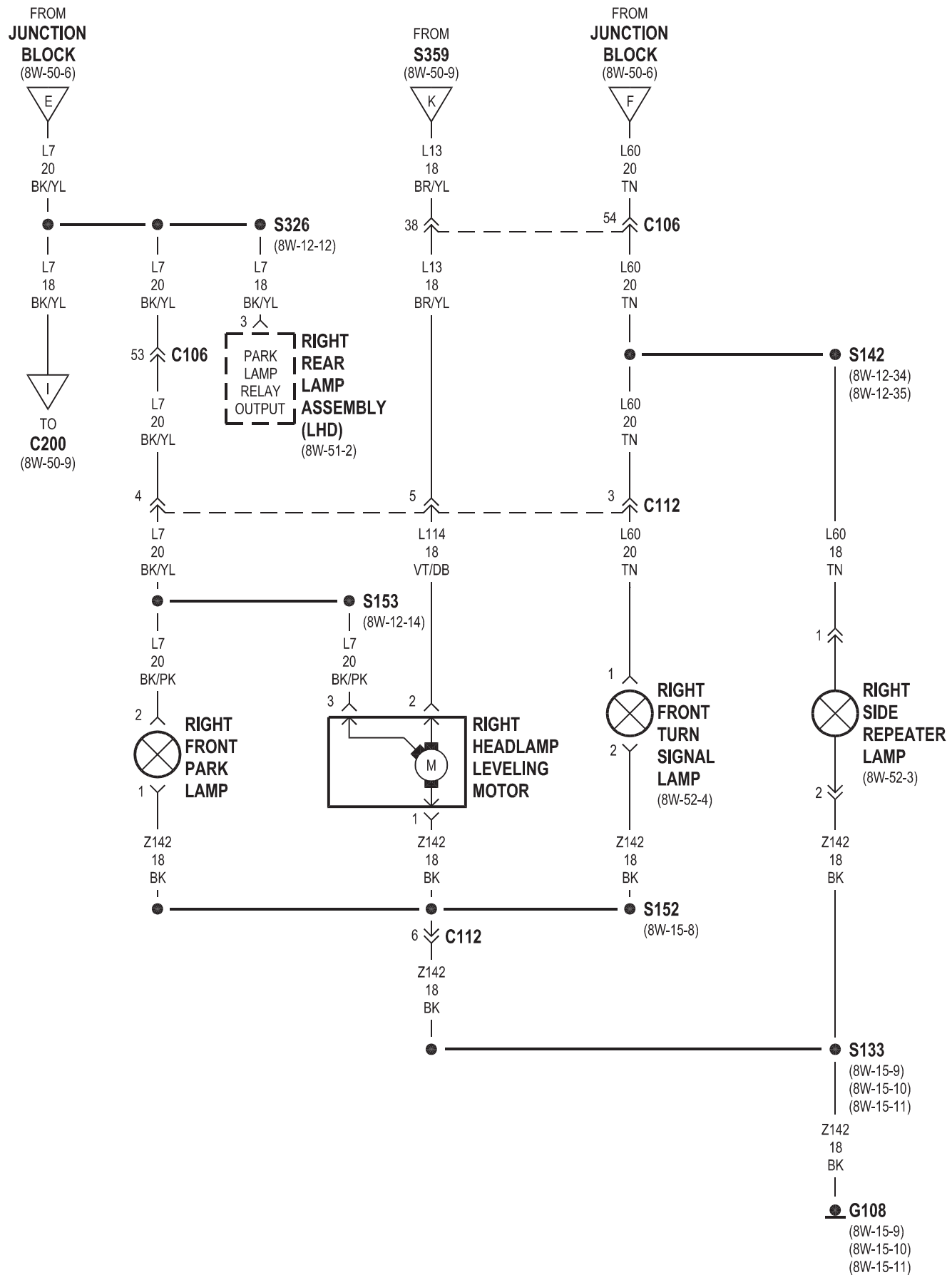




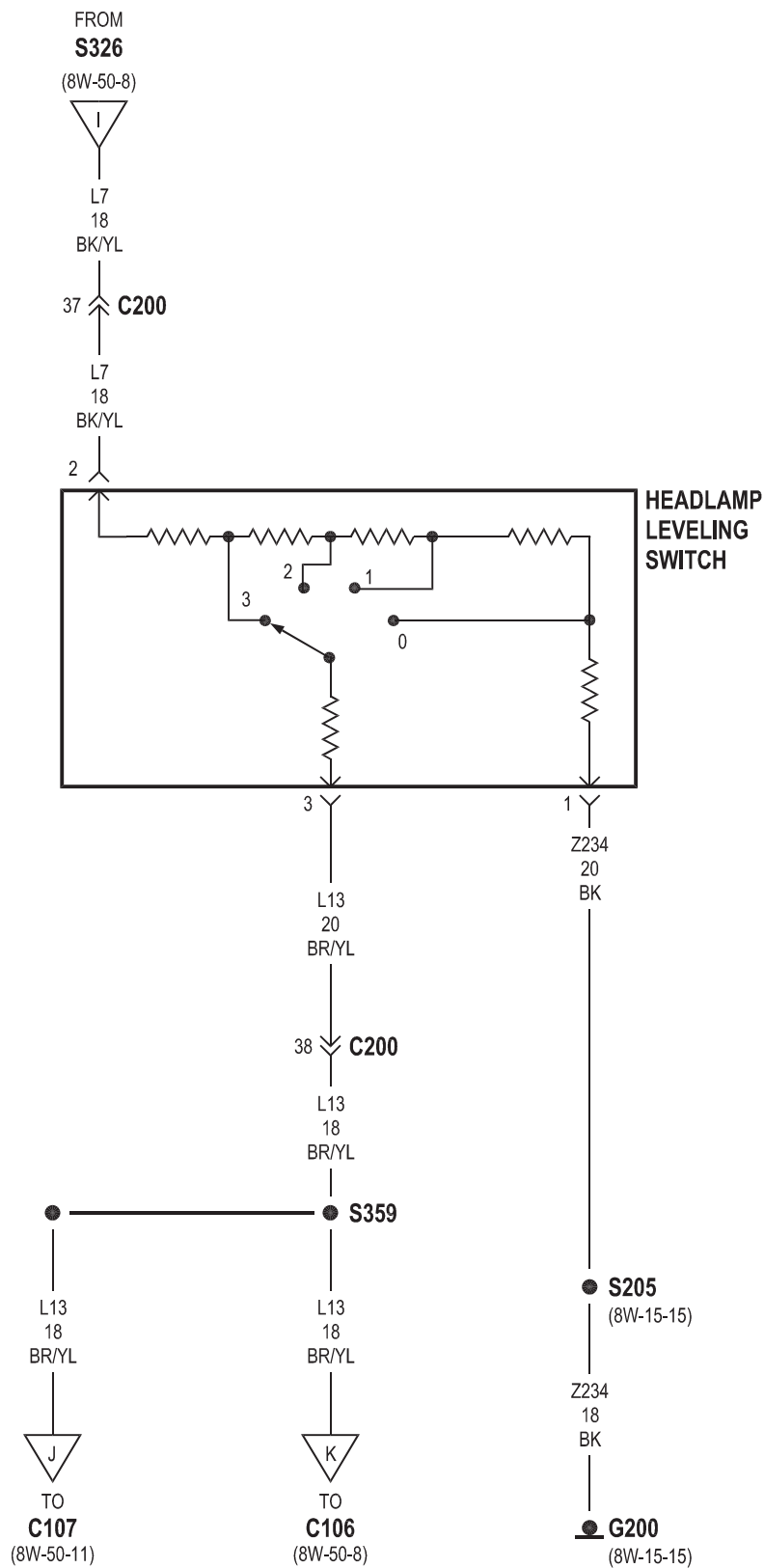


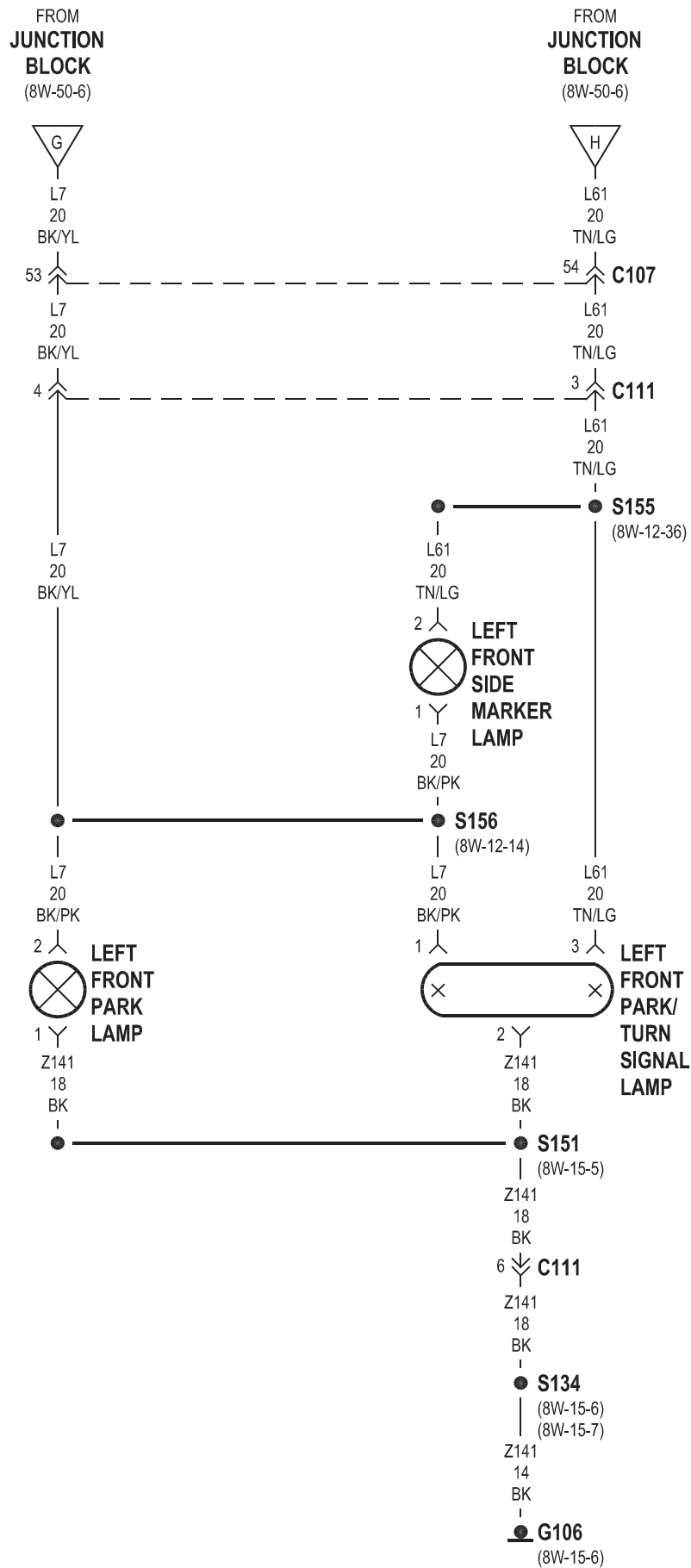


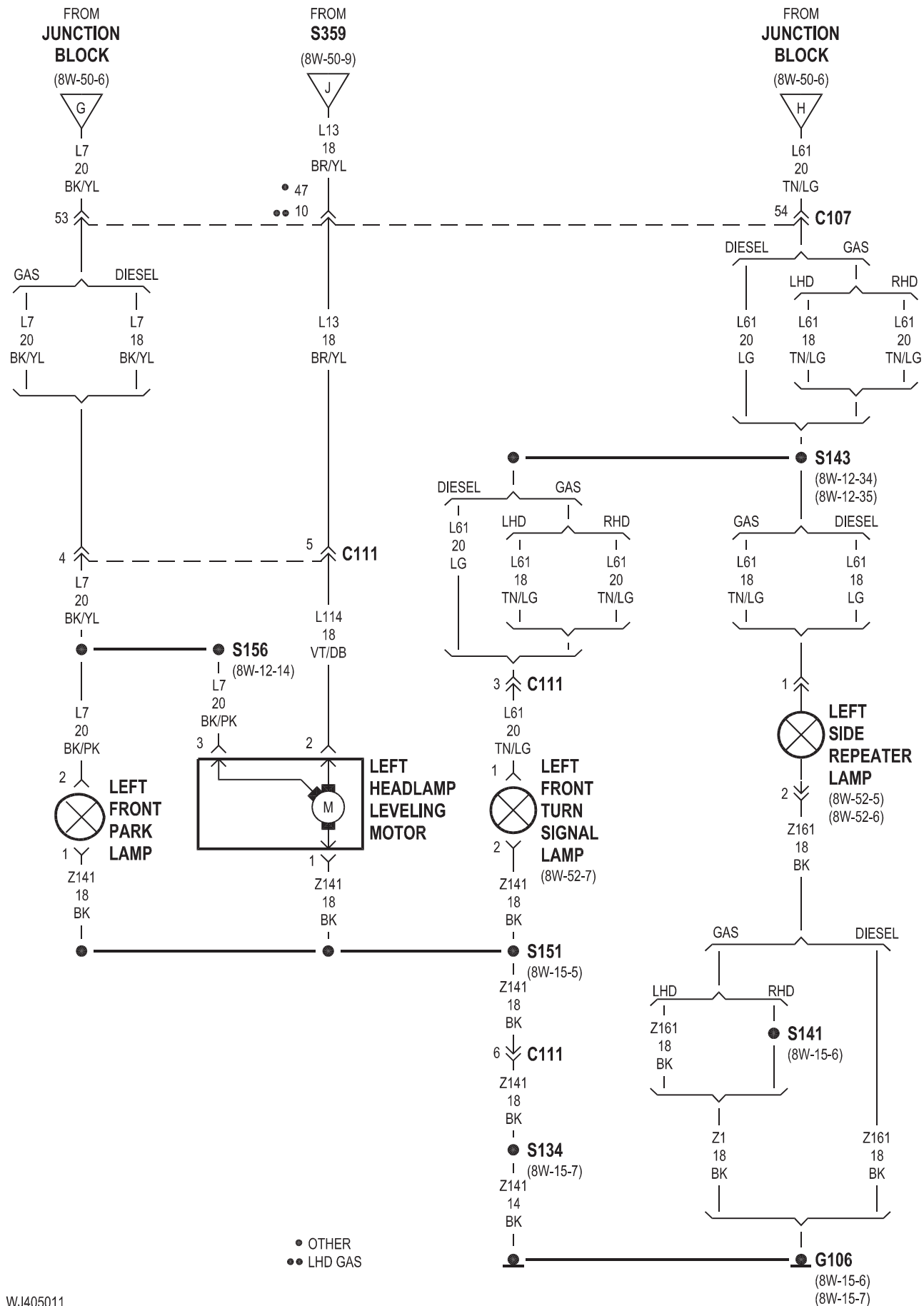


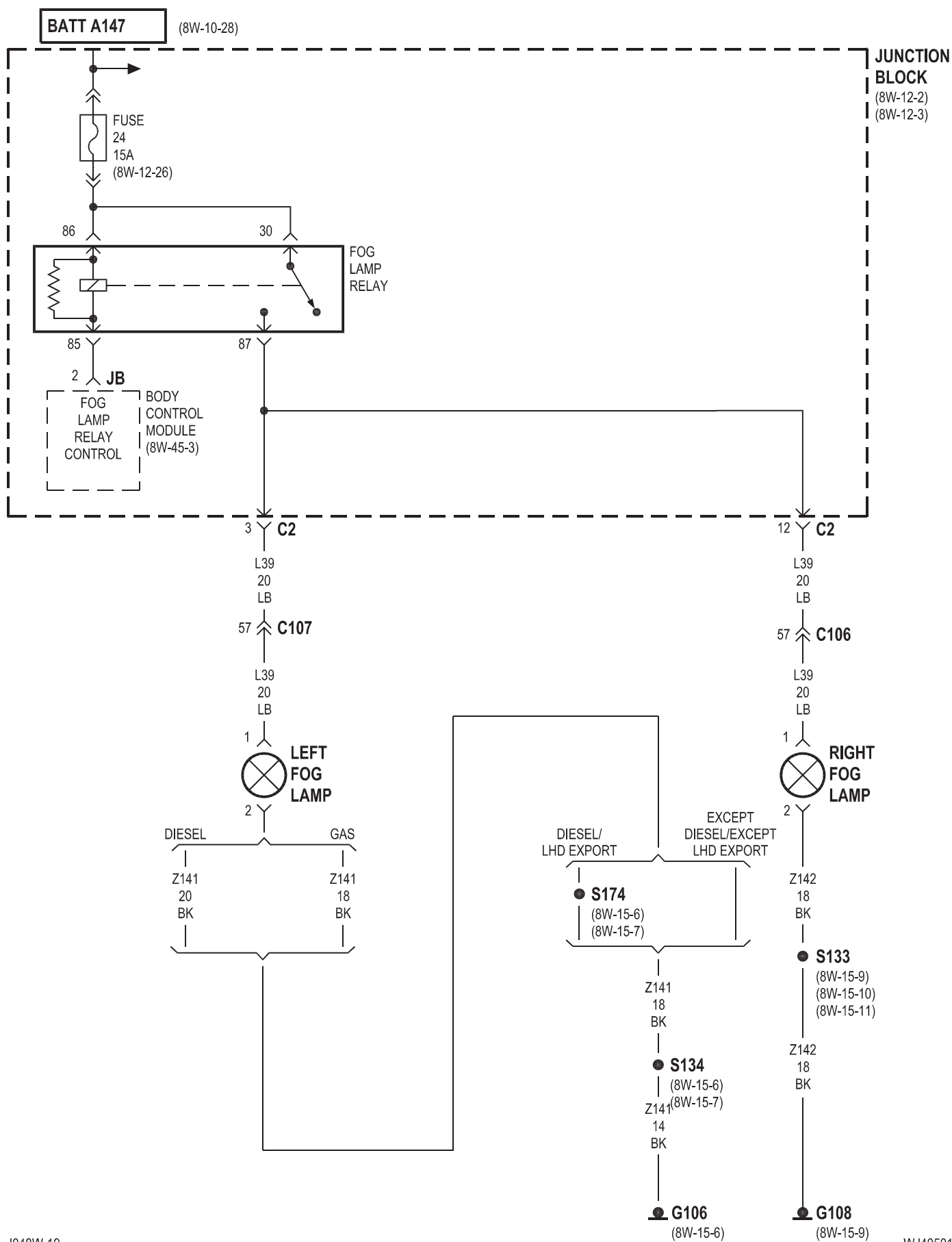


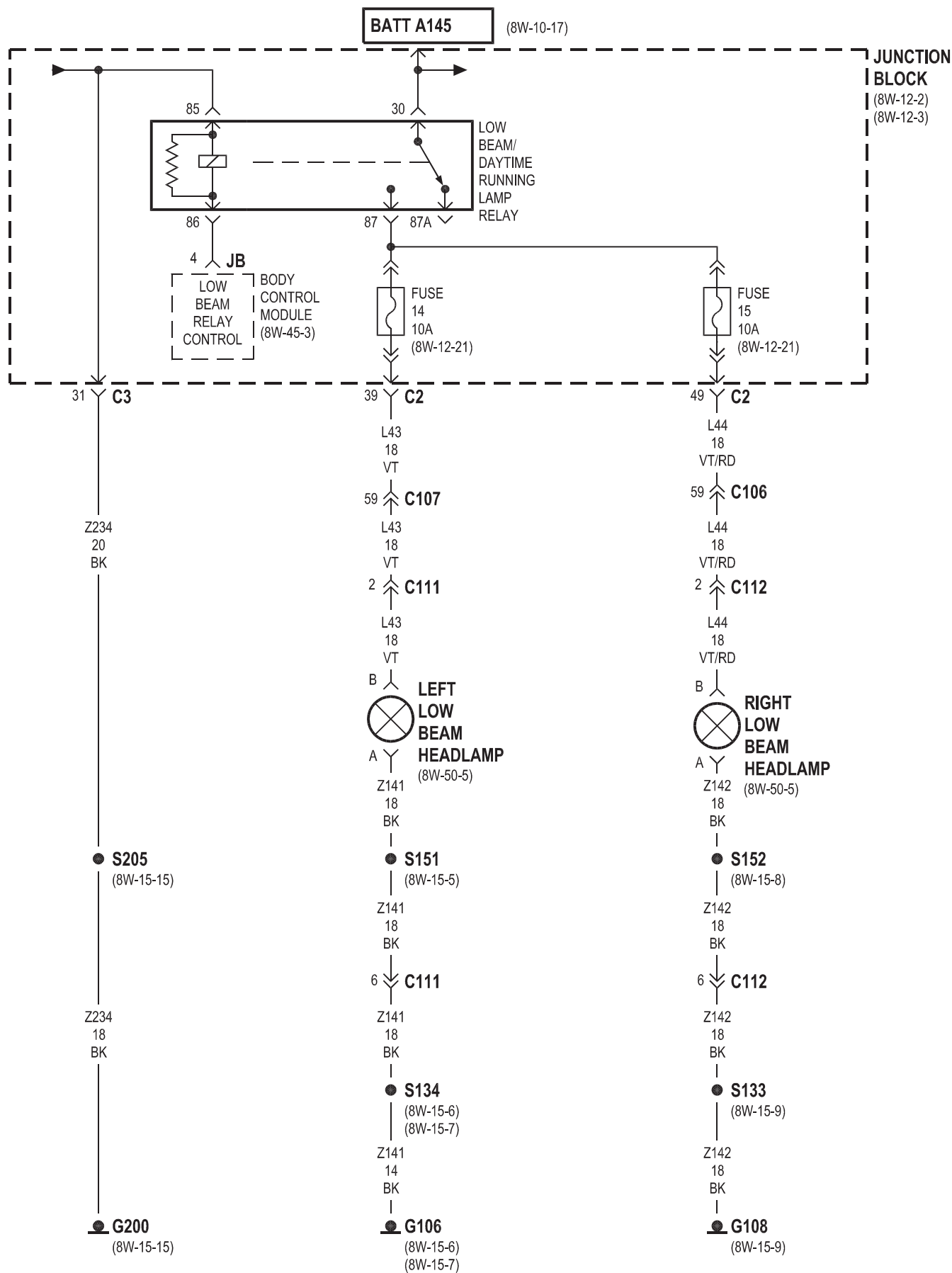










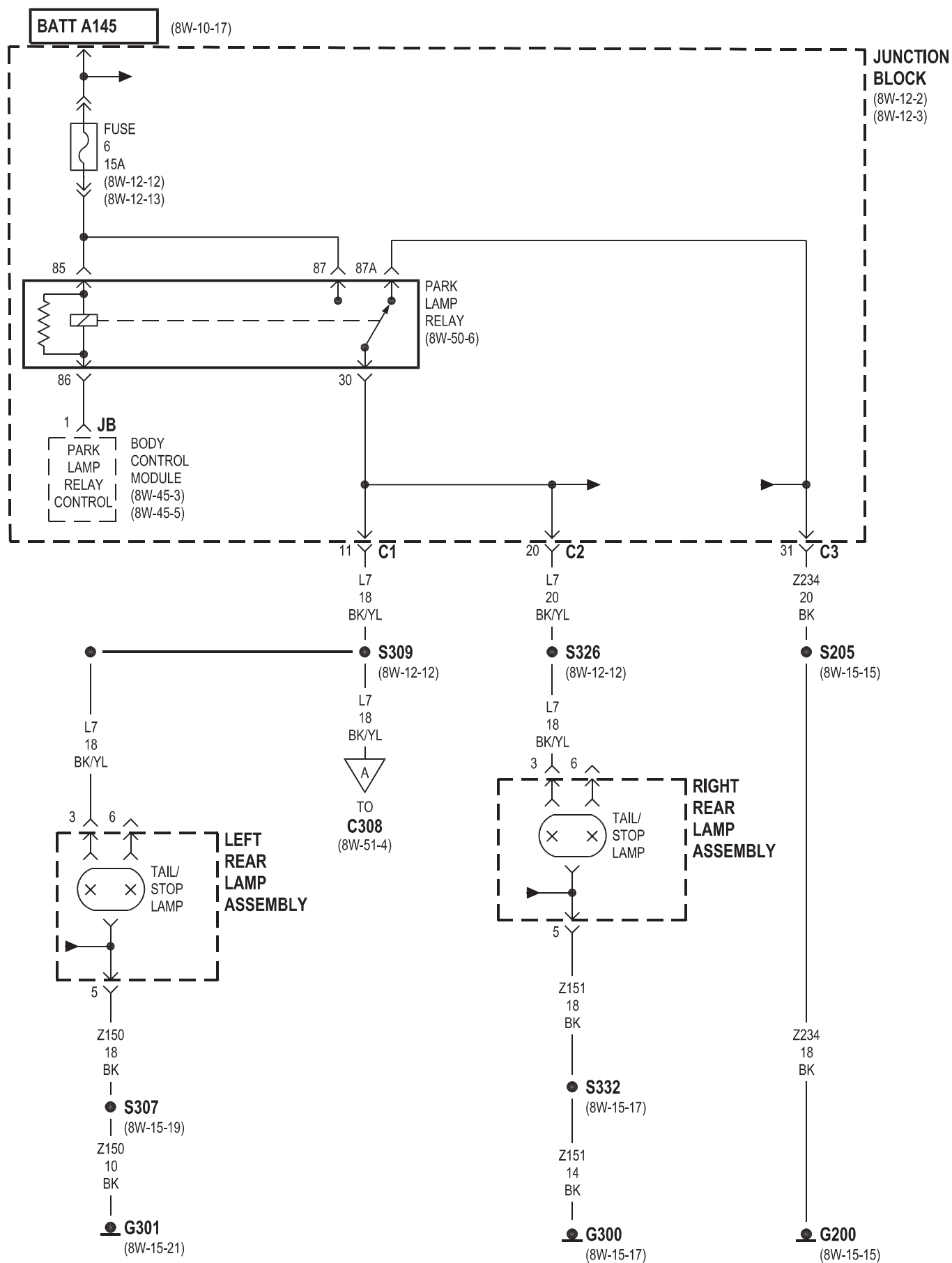


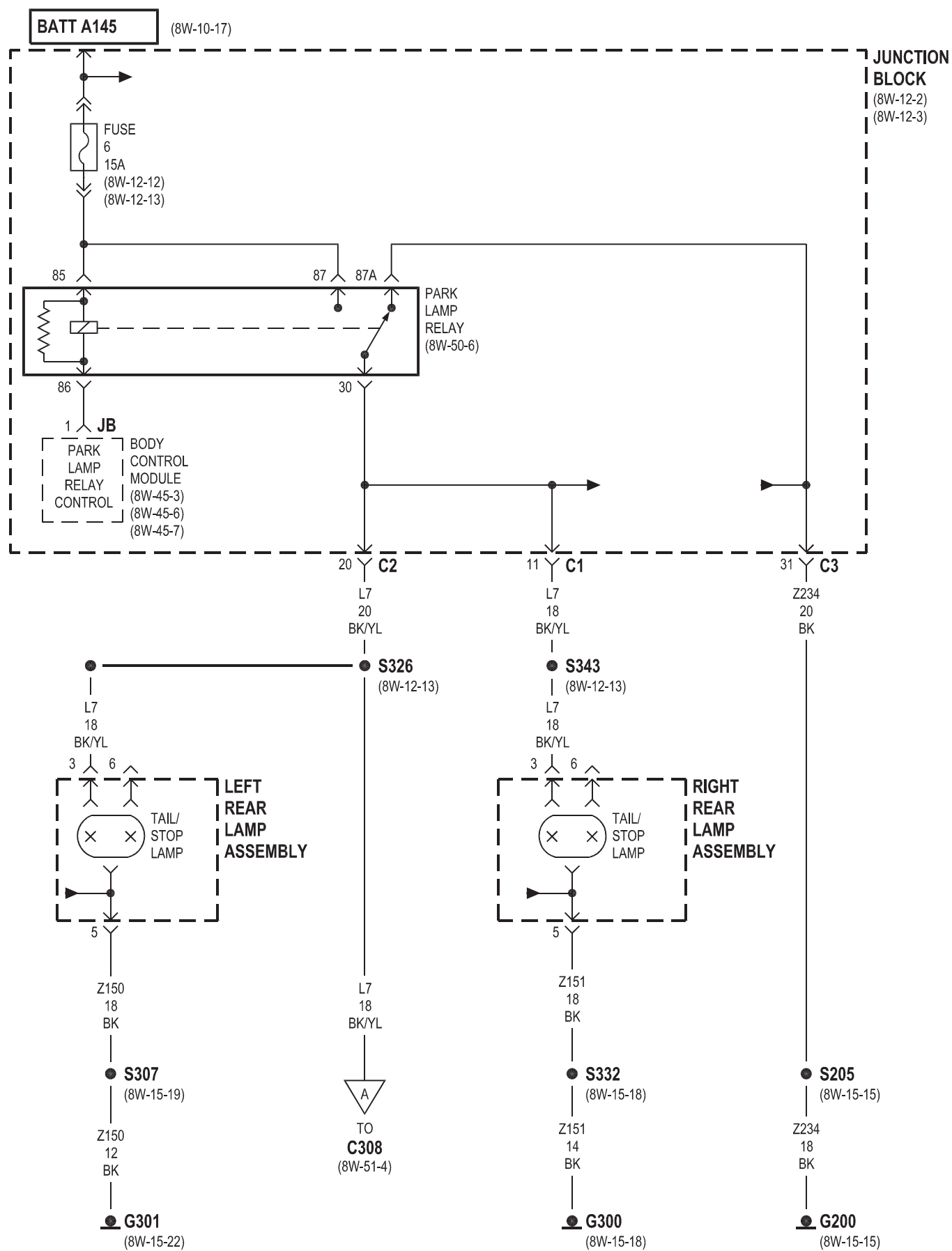


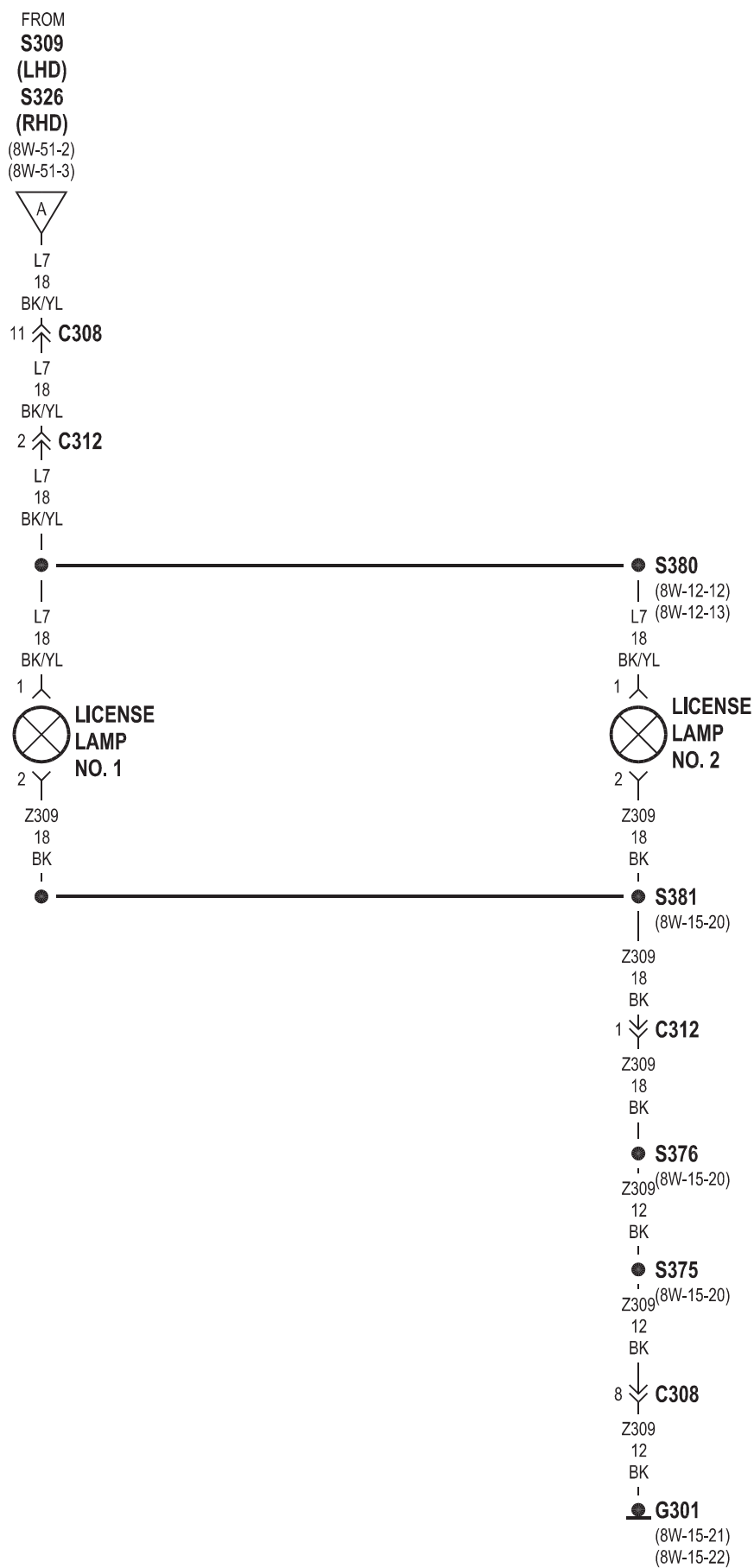


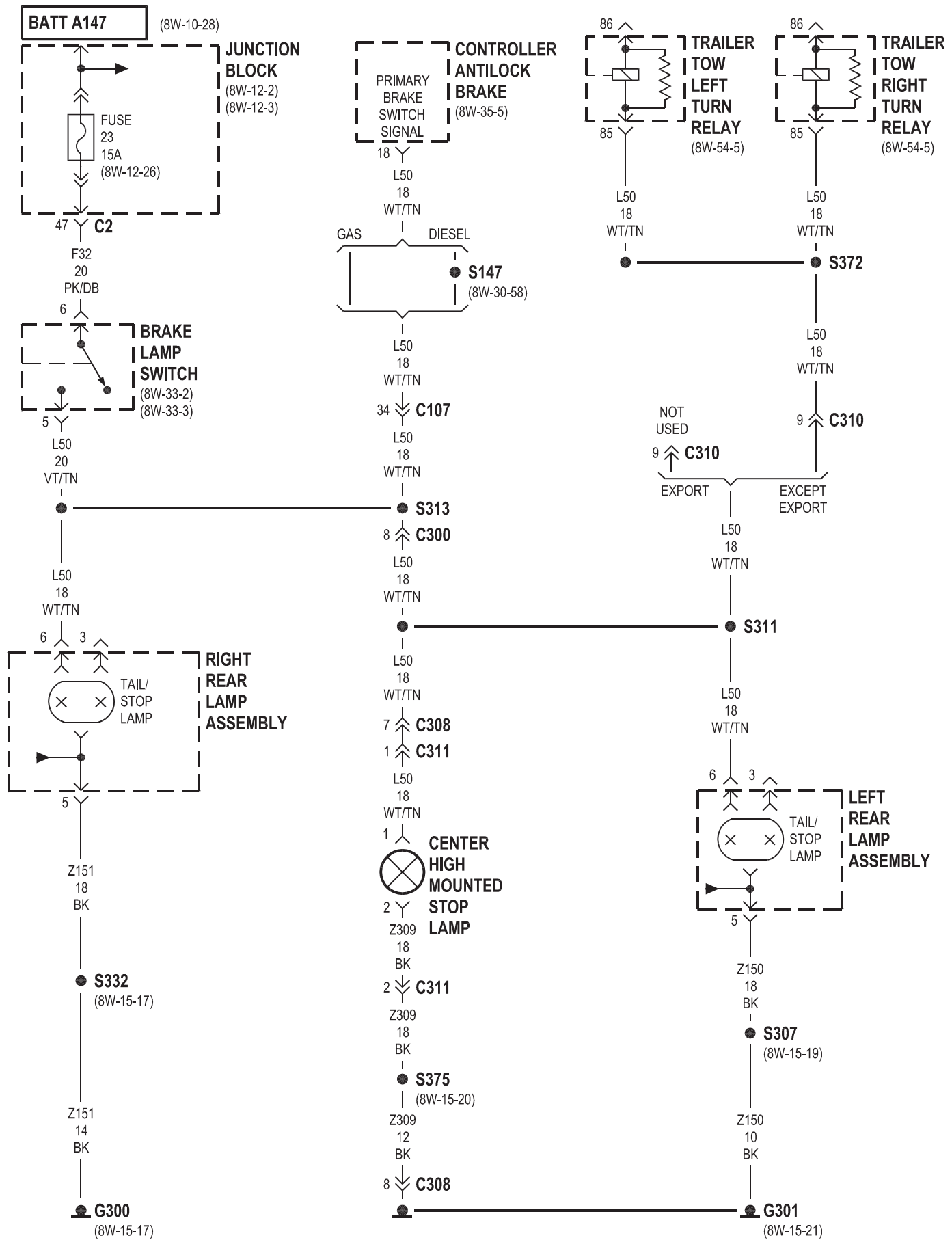
## 8W-51 REAR LIGHTING

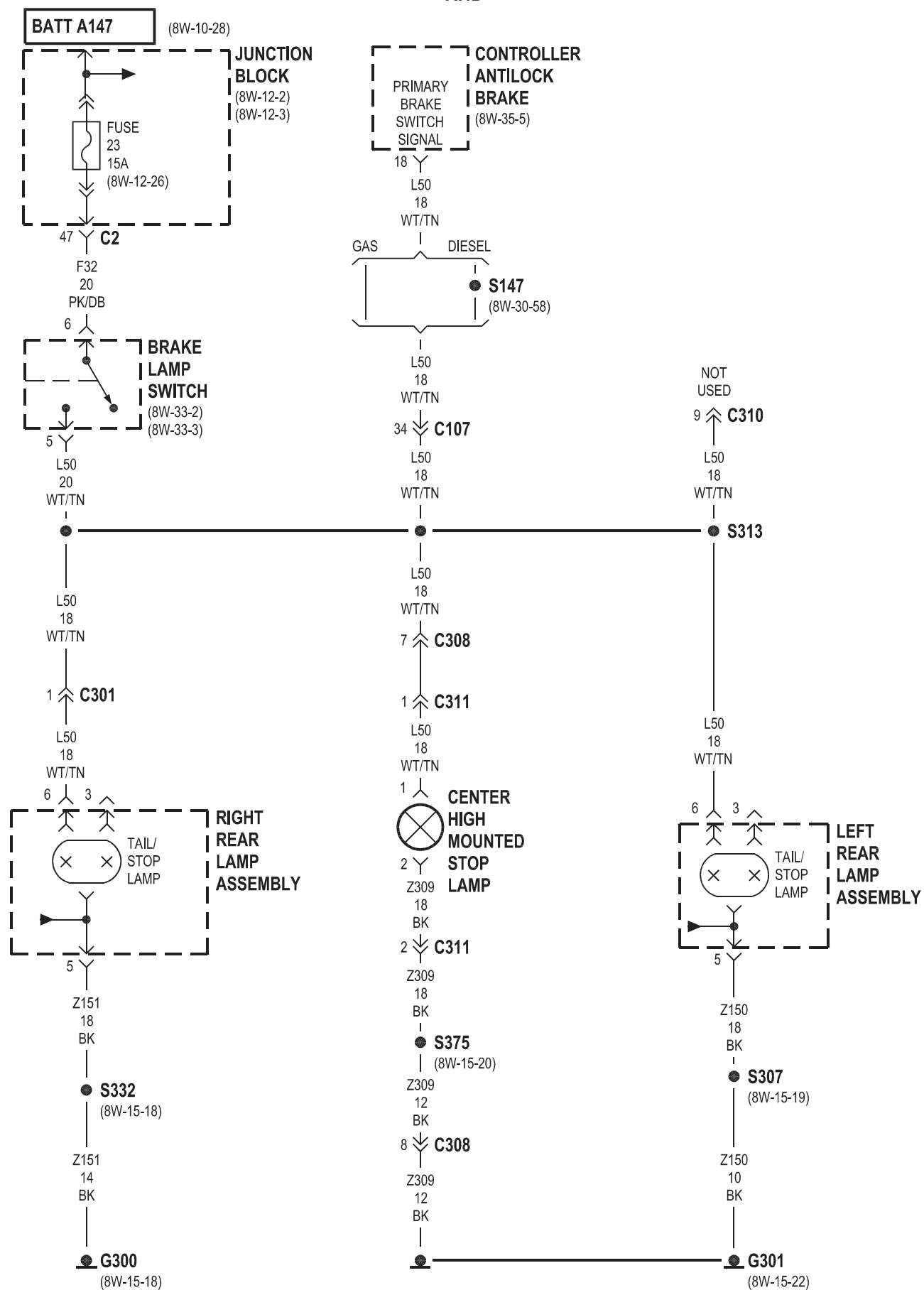
<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>	<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
Adjustable Pedals Module . . . . .	8W-51-8	Left Rear Lamp	
Automatic Day/Night Mirror . . . . .	8W-51-8, 9	Assembly . . . . .	8W-51-2, 3, 5, 6, 8, 9, 10
Back-Up Lamp Relay . . . . .	8W-51-7	License Lamp No. 1 . . . . .	8W-51-4
Body Control Module . . . . .	8W-51-2, 3, 10	License Lamp No. 2 . . . . .	8W-51-4
Brake Lamp Switch . . . . .	8W-51-5, 6	Park Lamp Relay . . . . .	8W-51-2, 3
Center High Mounted Stop Lamp . . . . .	8W-51-5, 6	Park/Neutral Position Switch . . . . .	8W-51-8, 9
Controller Antilock Brake . . . . .	8W-51-5, 6	Rear Fog Lamp Relay . . . . .	8W-51-10
Fuse 6 . . . . .	8W-51-2, 3	Right Rear Lamp	
Fuse 20 . . . . .	8W-51-7	Assembly . . . . .	8W-51-2, 3, 5, 6, 8, 9, 10
Fuse 23 . . . . .	8W-51-5, 6	Shifter Assembly . . . . .	8W-51-7
Fuse 27 . . . . .	8W-51-10	Trailer Tow Connector . . . . .	8W-51-8
G200 . . . . .	8W-51-2, 3	Trailer Tow Left Turn Relay . . . . .	8W-51-5
G300 . . . . .	8W-51-2, 3, 5, 6, 8, 9, 10	Trailer Tow Right Turn Relay . . . . .	8W-51-5
G301 . . . . .	8W-51-2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 8, 9, 10	Transmission Solenoid/TRS Assembly . .	8W-51-8, 9
Junction Block . . . . .	8W-51-2, 3, 5, 6, 7, 10		



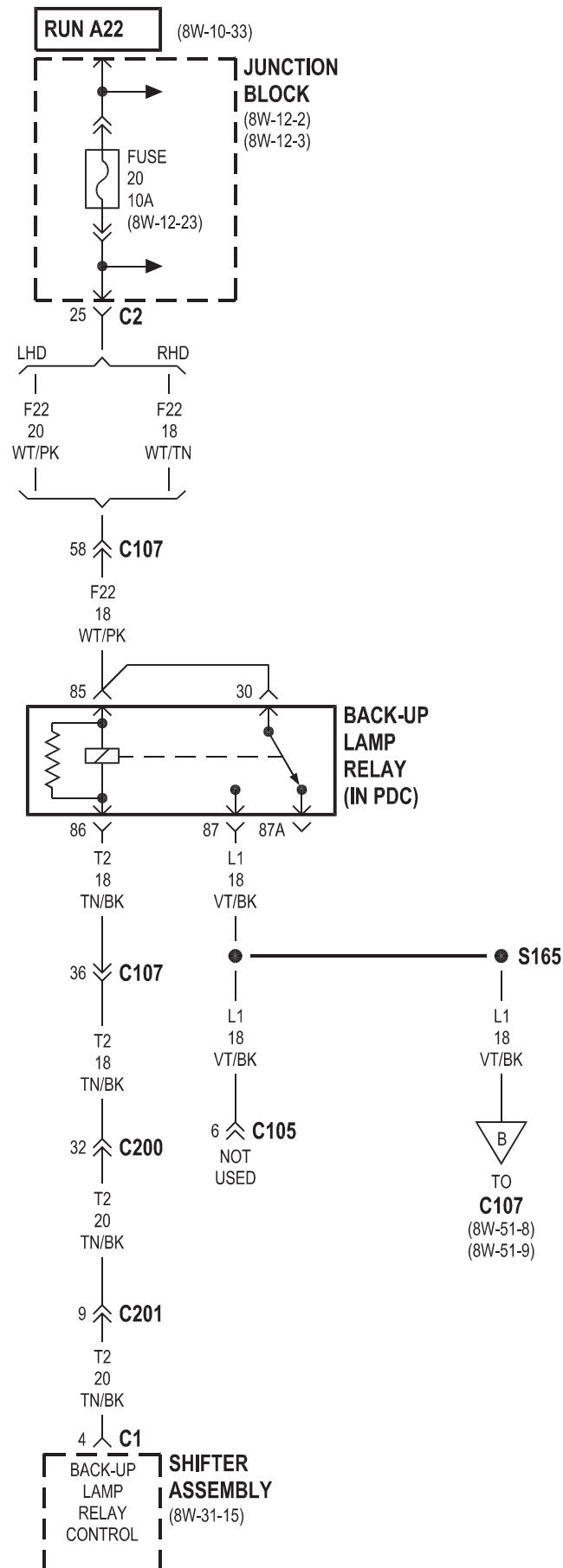






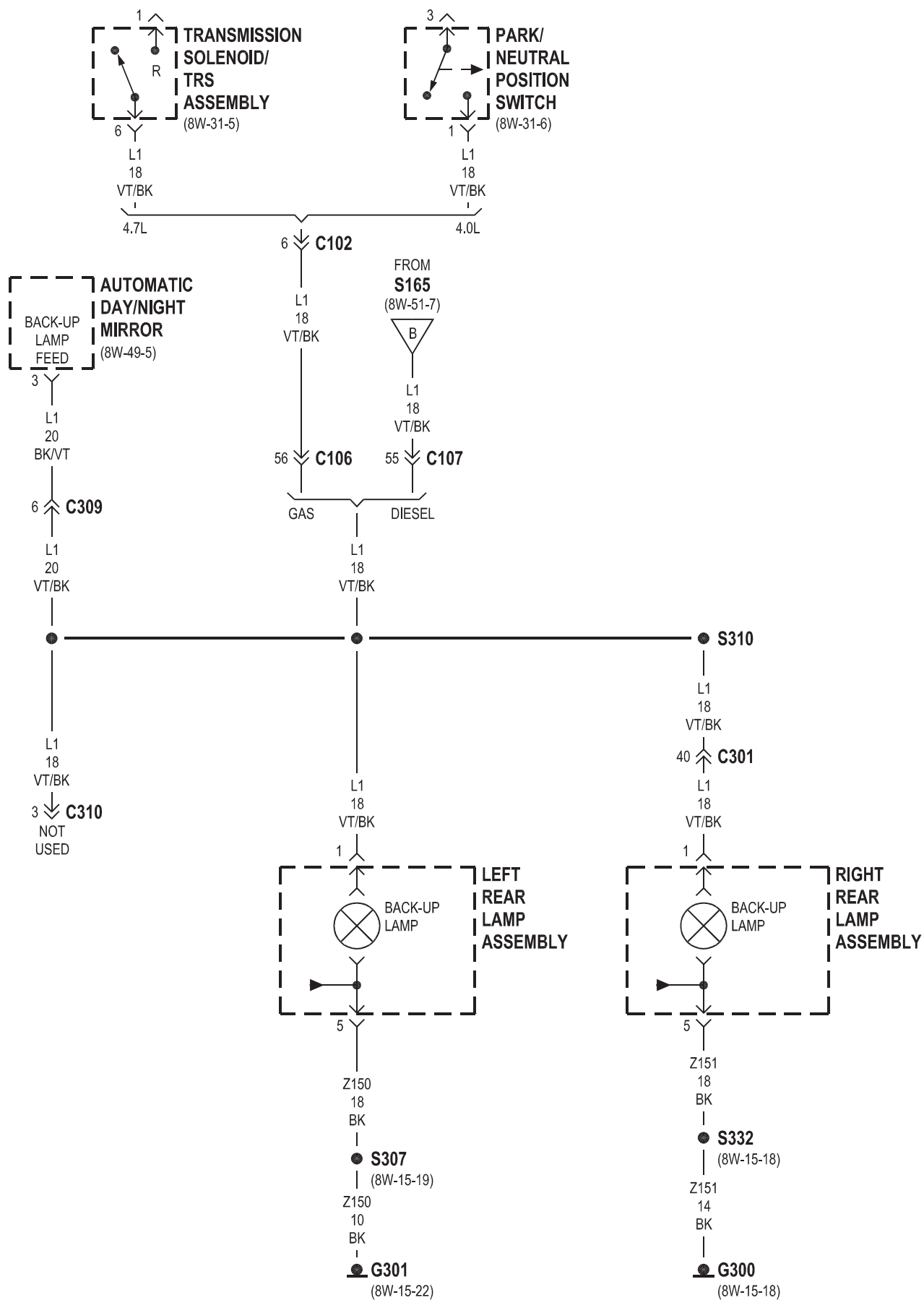


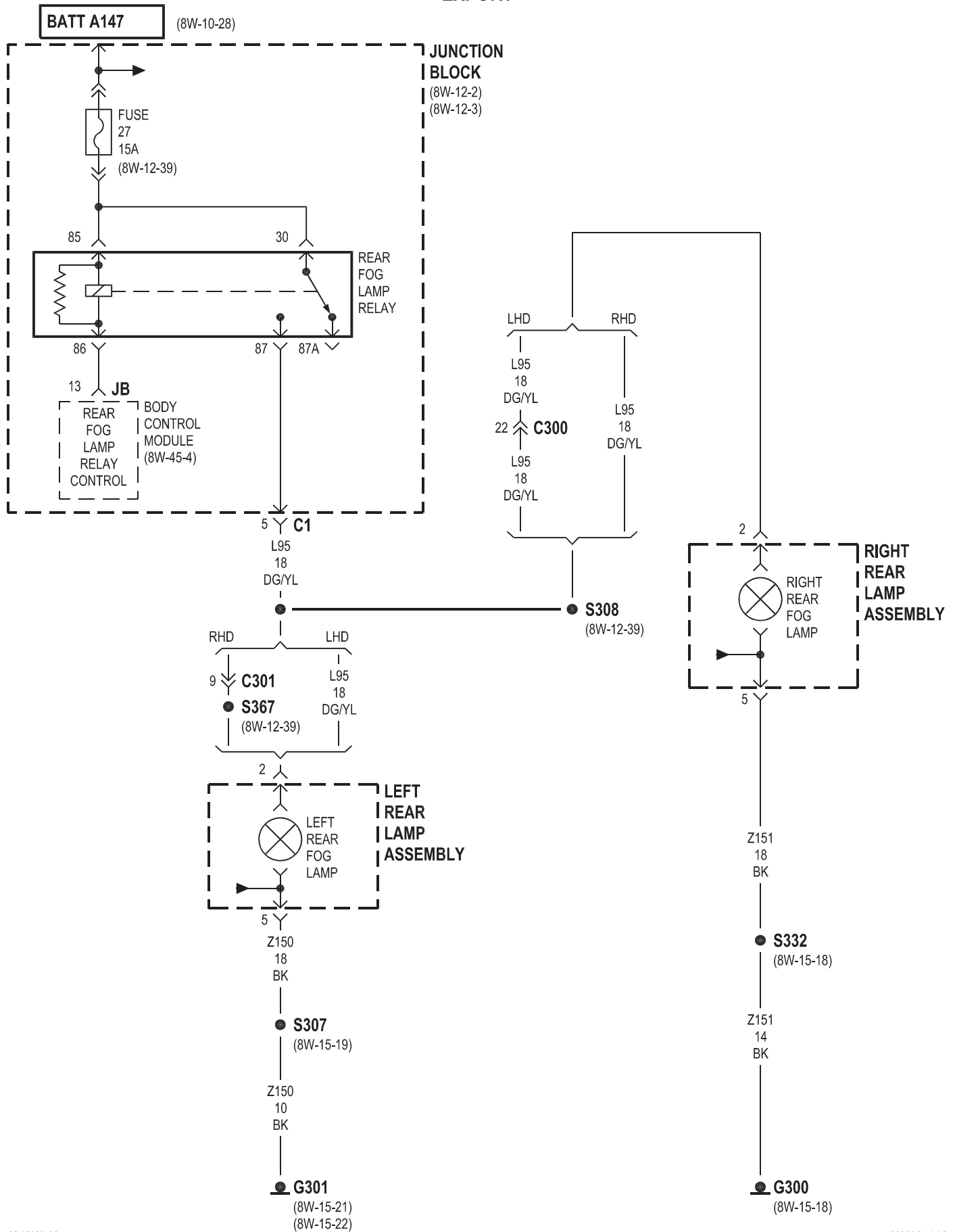




—

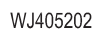






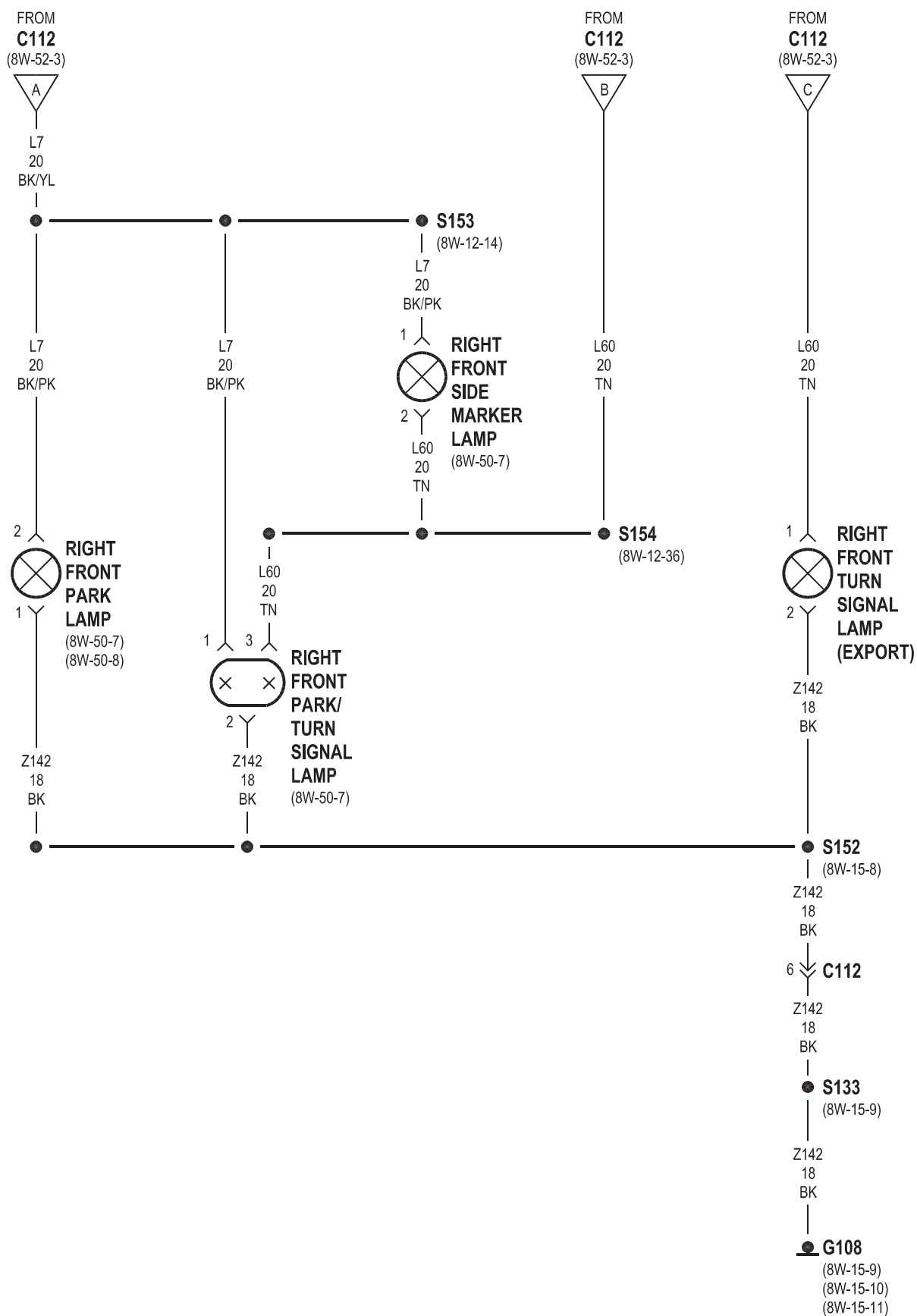
## 8W-52 TURN SIGNALS

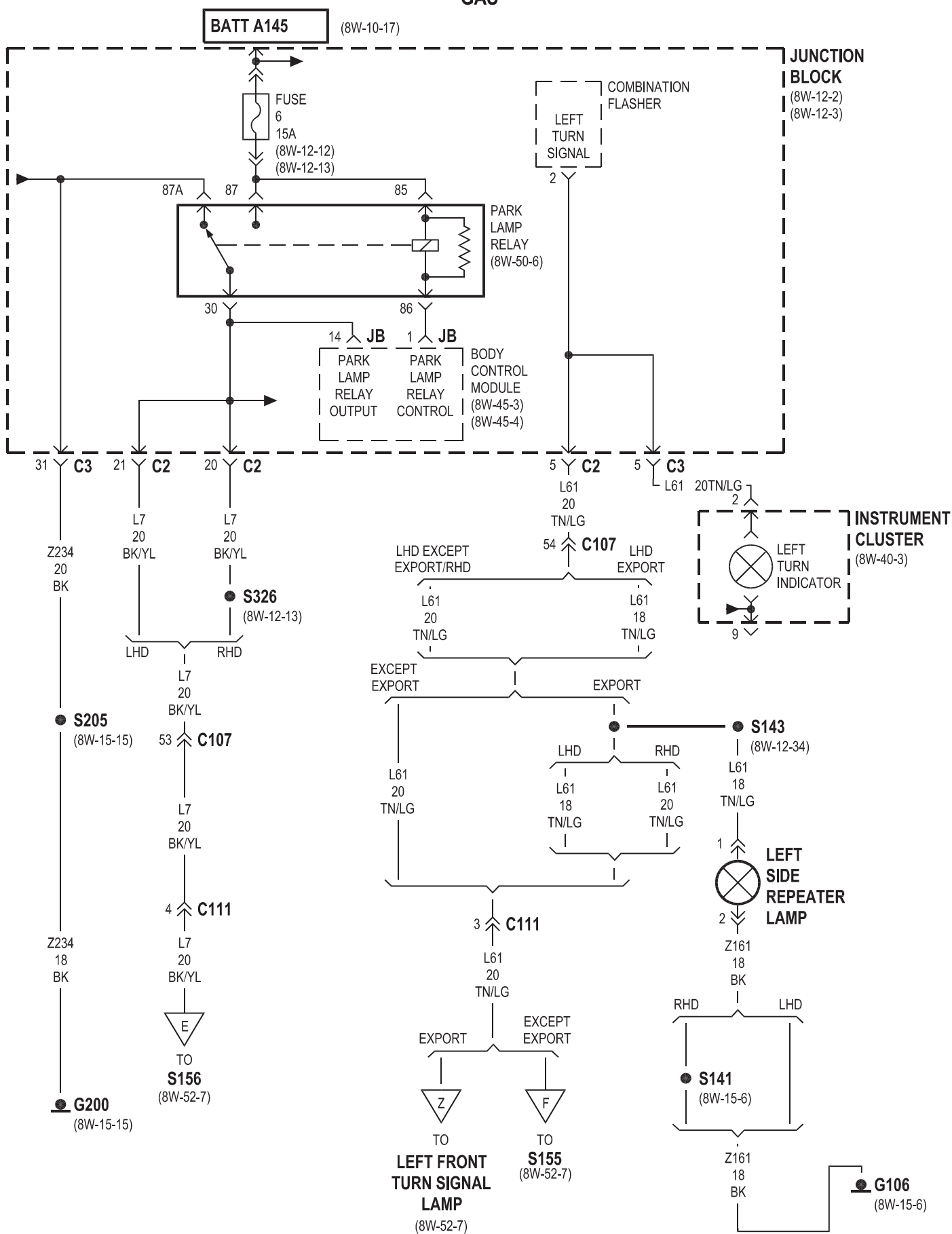
<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>	<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
Body Control Module . . . . .	8W-52-3, 5, 6	Left Front Side Marker Lamp . . . . .	8W-52-7
Combination Flasher . . . . .	8W-52-2, 3, 5, 6, 8, 9	Left Front Turn Signal Lamp . . . . .	8W-52-5, 6, 7
Fuse 4 . . . . .	8W-52-2	Left Multi-Function Switch . . . . .	8W-52-2
Fuse 6 . . . . .	8W-52-3, 5, 6	Left Rear Lamp Assembly . . . . .	8W-52-8, 9
Fuse 20 . . . . .	8W-52-2	Left Side Repeater Lamp . . . . .	8W-52-5, 6
G106 . . . . .	8W-52-5, 6, 7	Park Lamp Relay . . . . .	8W-52-3, 5, 6
G108 . . . . .	8W-52-3, 4	Right Front Park Lamp . . . . .	8W-52-4
G200 . . . . .	8W-52-2, 3, 5, 6	Right Front Park/Turn Signal Lamp . . . . .	8W-52-4
G300 . . . . .	8W-52-8, 9	Right Front Side Marker Lamp . . . . .	8W-52-4
G301 . . . . .	8W-52-8, 9	Right Front Turn Signal Lamp . . . . .	8W-52-3, 4
Instrument Cluster . . . . .	8W-52-3, 5, 6	Right Rear Lamp Assembly . . . . .	8W-52-3, 8, 9
Junction Block . . . . .	8W-52-2, 3, 5, 6, 8, 9	Right Side Repeater Lamp . . . . .	8W-52-3
Left Front Park Lamp . . . . .	8W-52-7	Trailer Tow Left Turn Relay . . . . .	8W-52-8
Left Front Park/Turn Signal Lamp . . . . .	8W-52-7	Trailer Tow Right Turn Relay . . . . .	8W-52-8

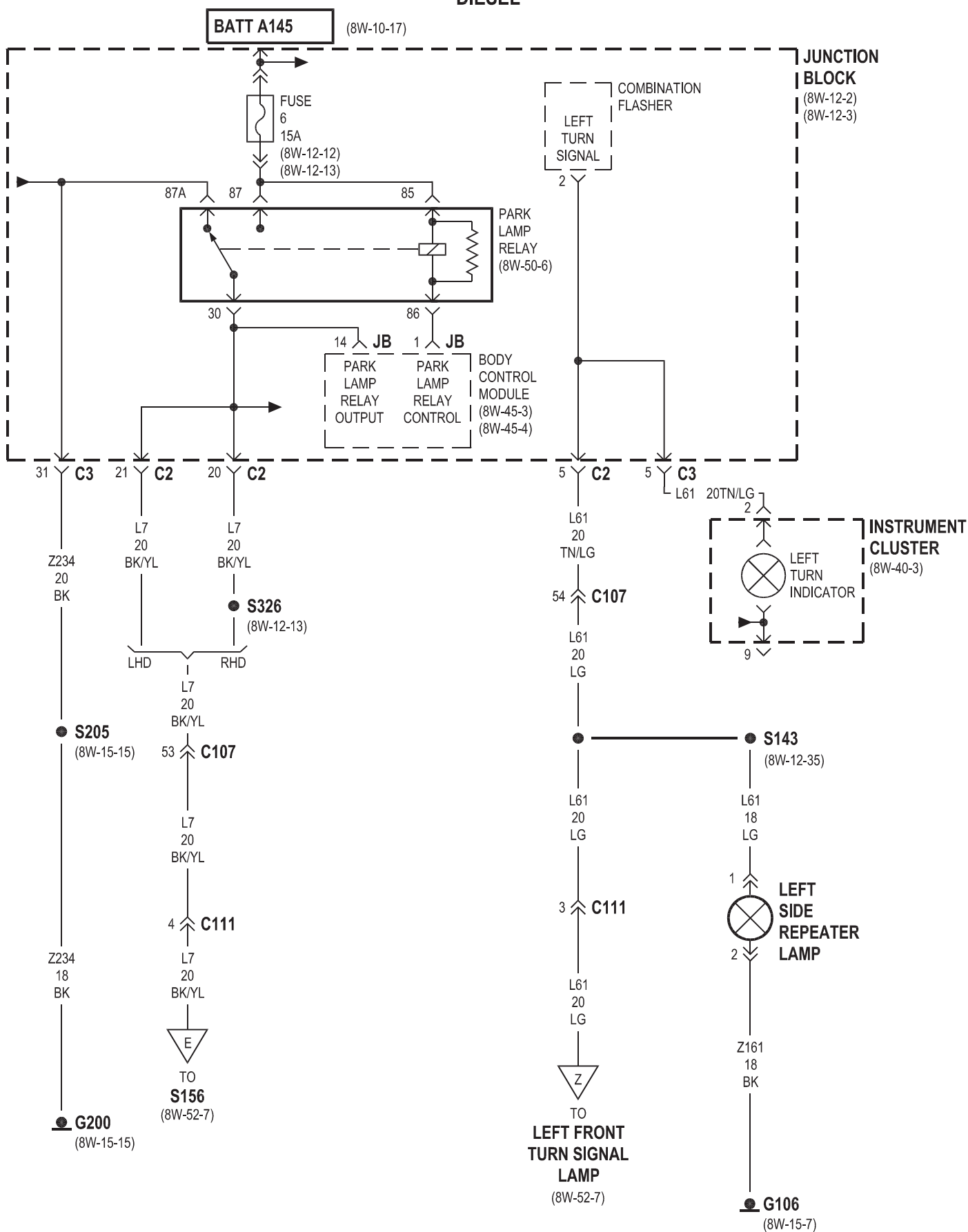


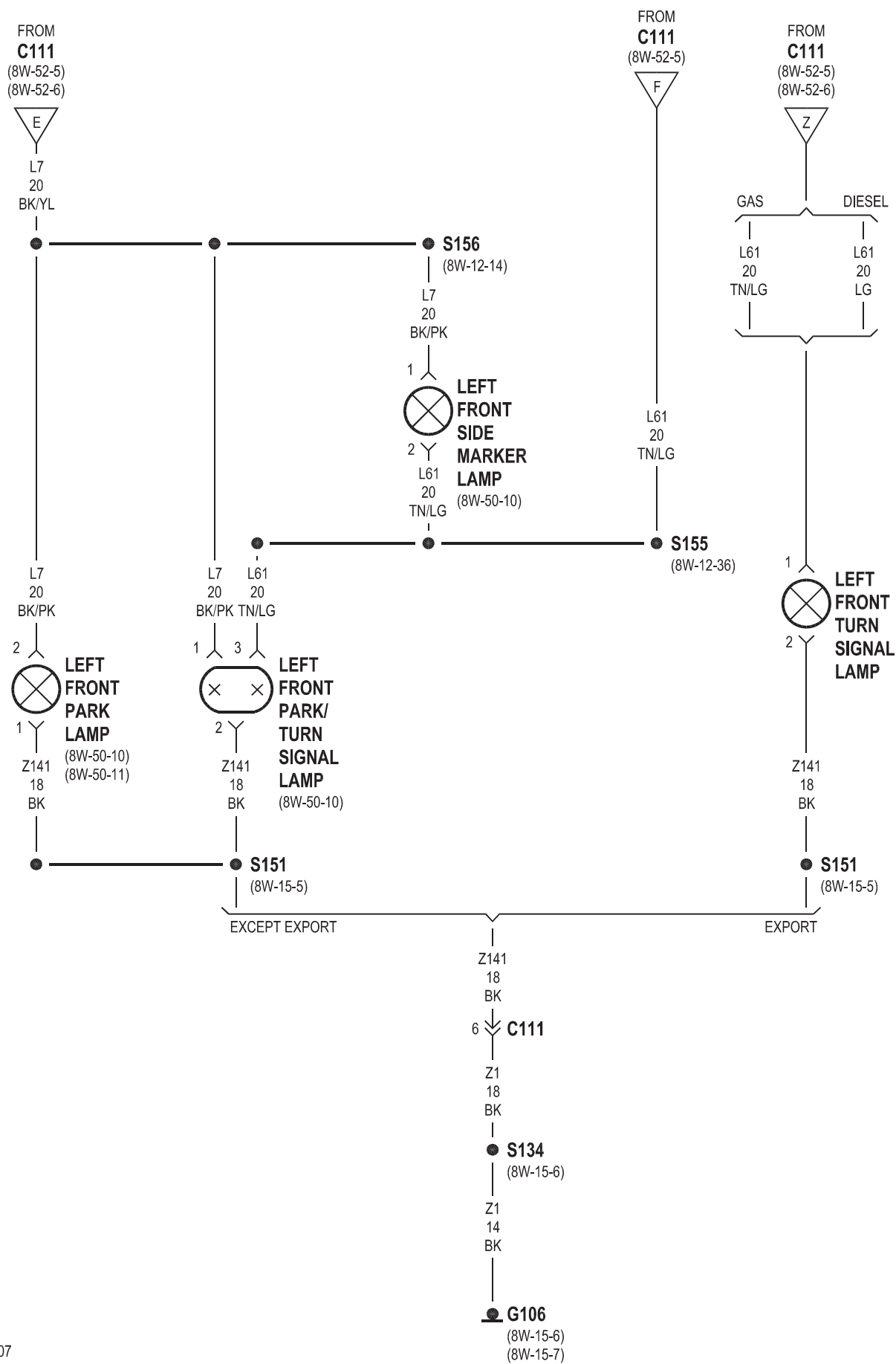


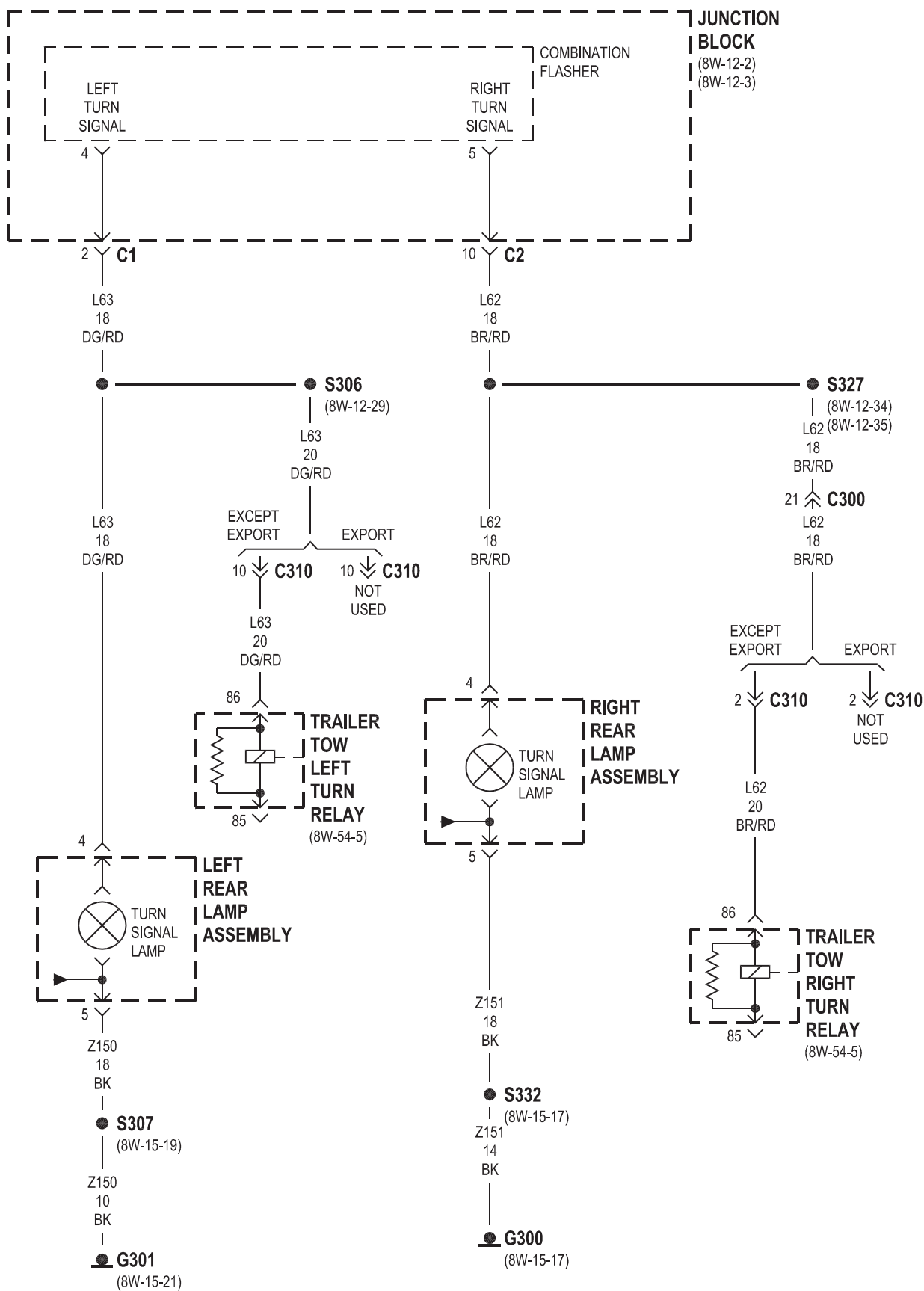






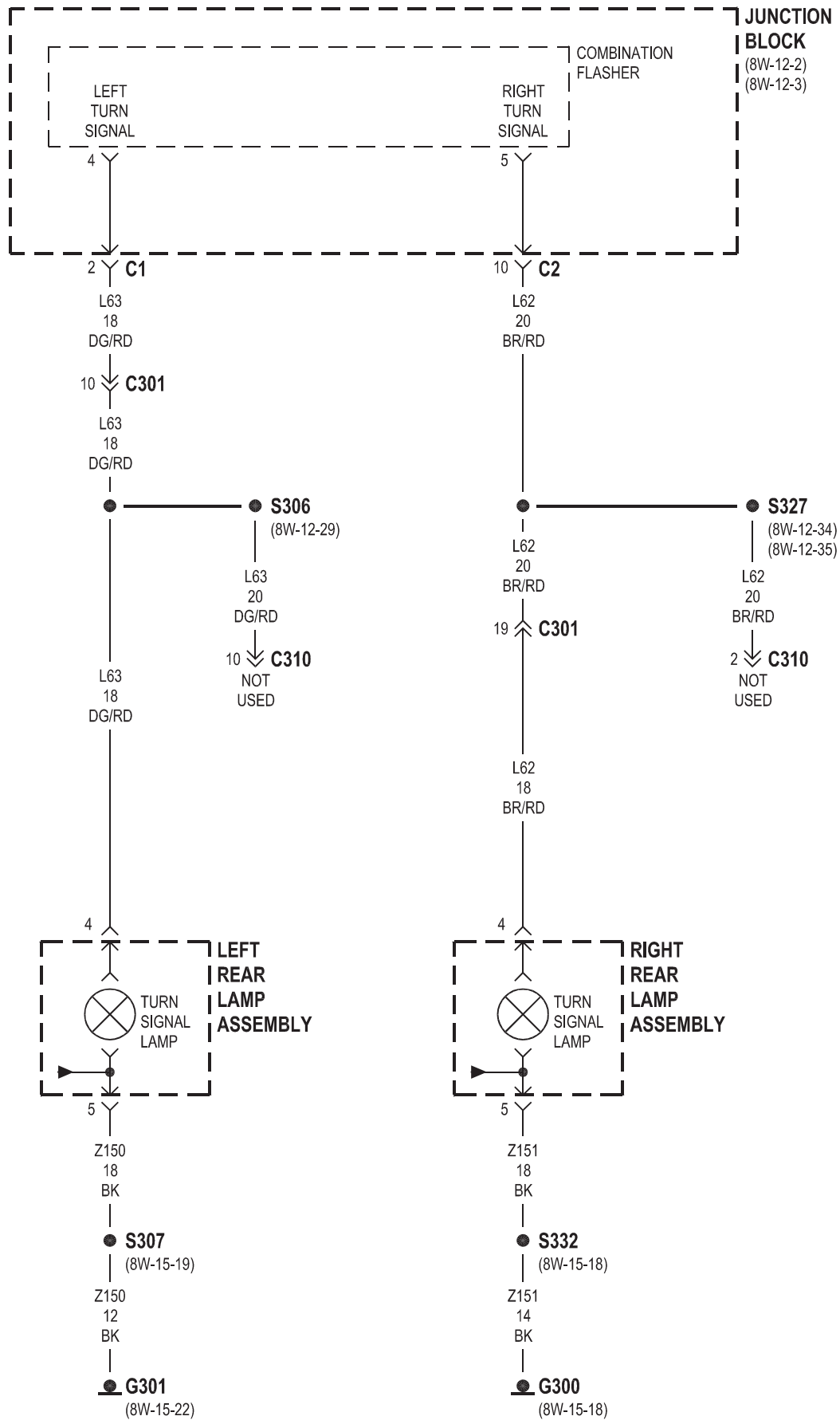








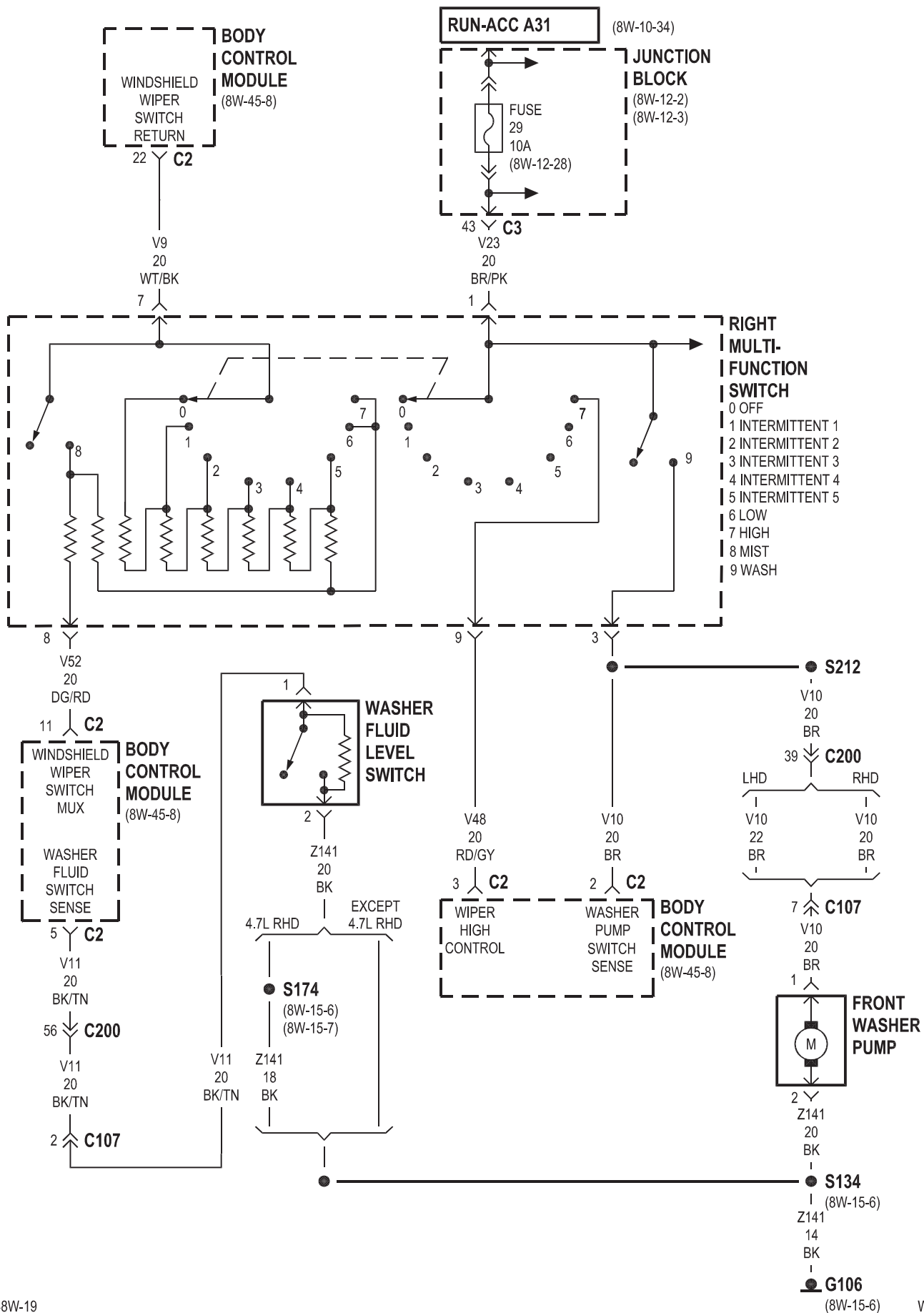
## RHD

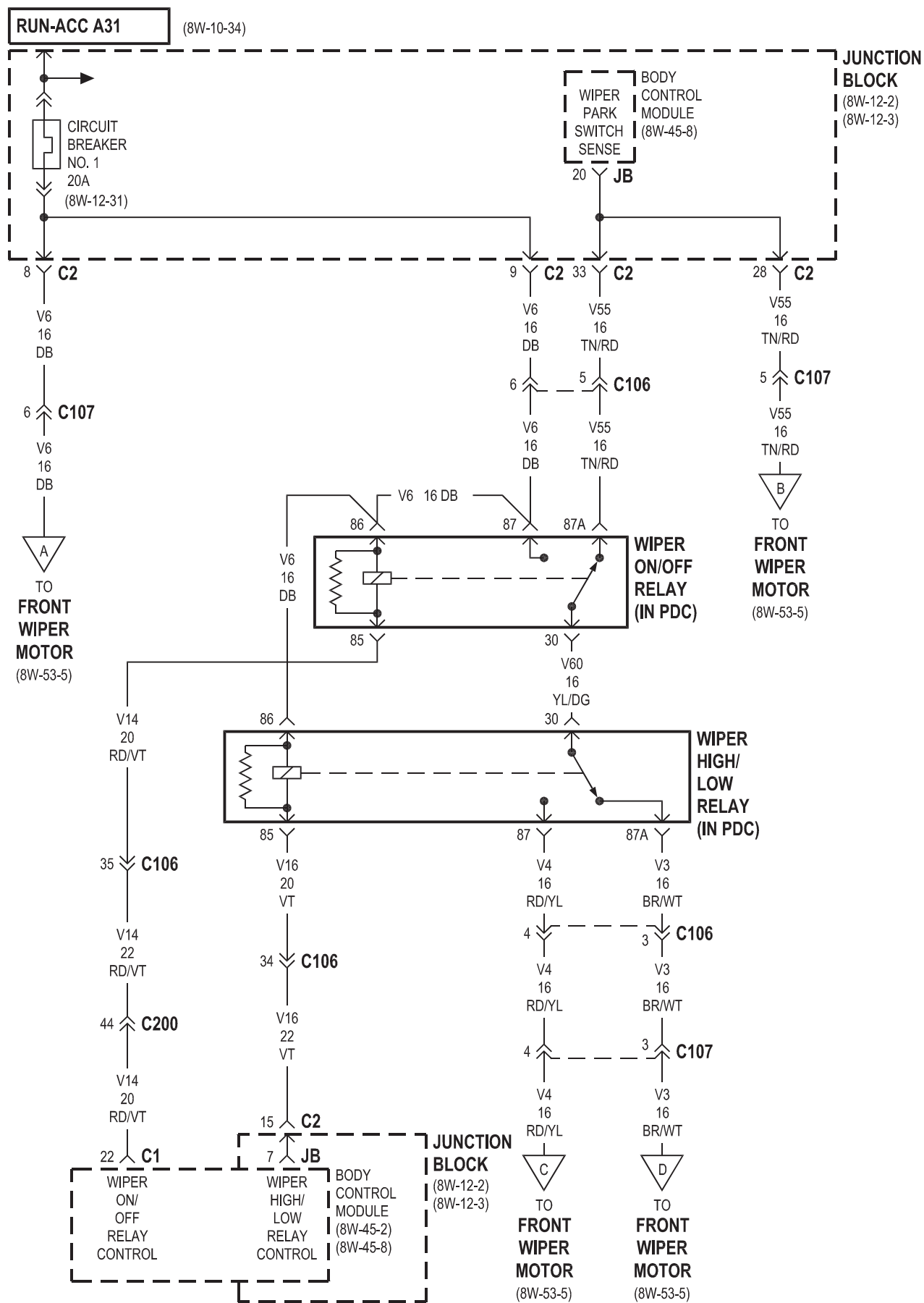


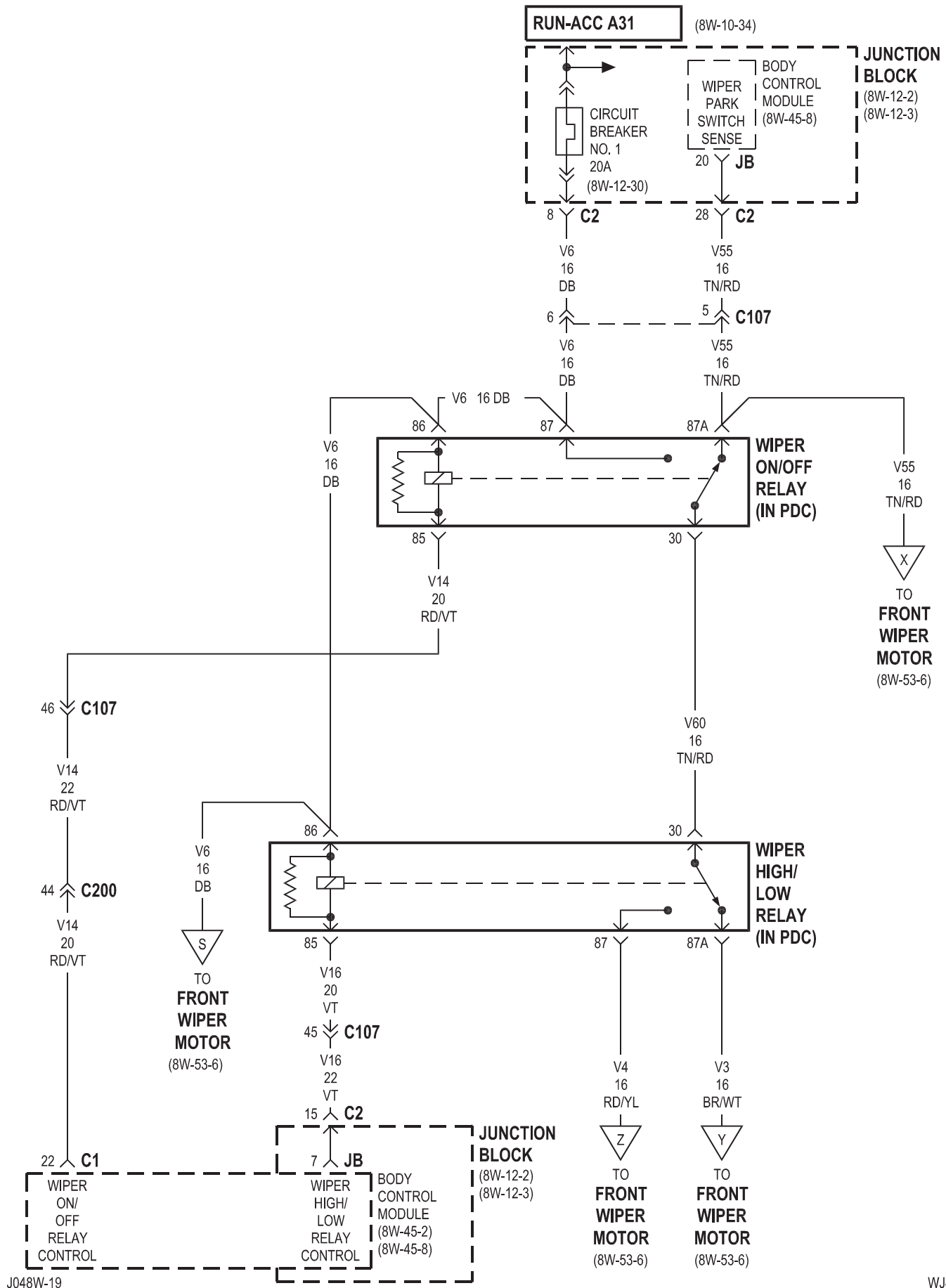


## 8W-53 WIPERS

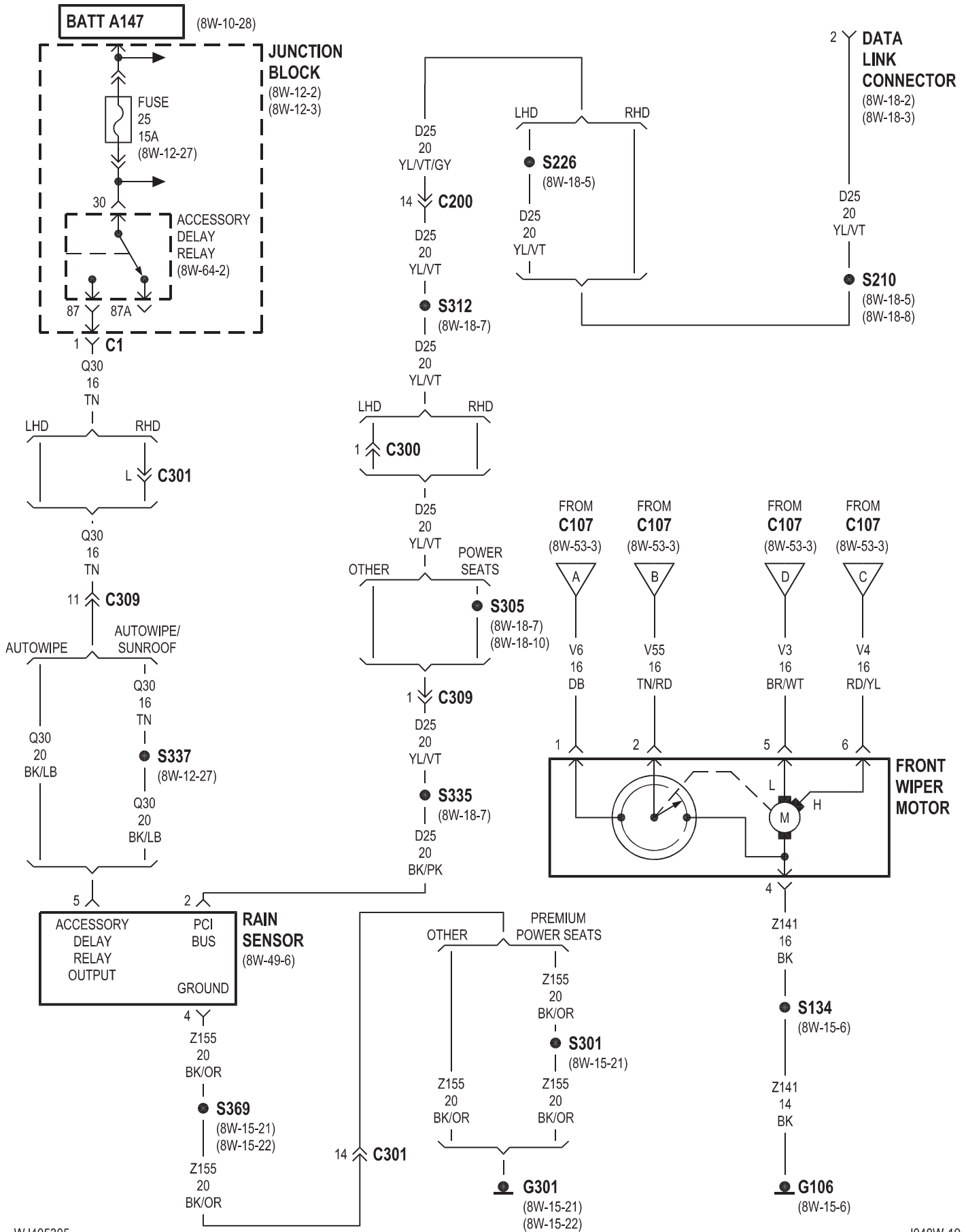
<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>	<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
Accessory Delay Relay . . . . .	8W-53-5, 6	G301 . . . . .	8W-53-5, 6, 7
Body Control Module . . . . .	8W-53-2, 3, 4, 7	Junction Block . . . . .	8W-53-2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7
Circuit Breaker No. 1 . . . . .	8W-53-3, 4	Liftgate Flip-Up Ajar Switch . . . . .	8W-53-7
Data Link Connector . . . . .	8W-53-5, 6	Rain Sensor . . . . .	8W-53-5, 6
Front Washer Pump . . . . .	8W-53-2	Rear Washer Pump . . . . .	8W-53-7
Front Wiper Motor . . . . .	8W-53-3, 4, 5, 6	Rear Wiper Motor . . . . .	8W-53-7
Fuse 8 . . . . .	8W-53-7	Right Multi-Function Switch . . . . .	8W-53-2, 7
Fuse 25 . . . . .	8W-53-5, 6	Washer Fluid Level Switch . . . . .	8W-53-2
Fuse 29 . . . . .	8W-53-2	Wiper High/Low Relay . . . . .	8W-53-3, 4, 6
G106 . . . . .	8W-53-2, 5, 6, 7	Wiper On/Off Relay . . . . .	8W-53-3, 4, 6

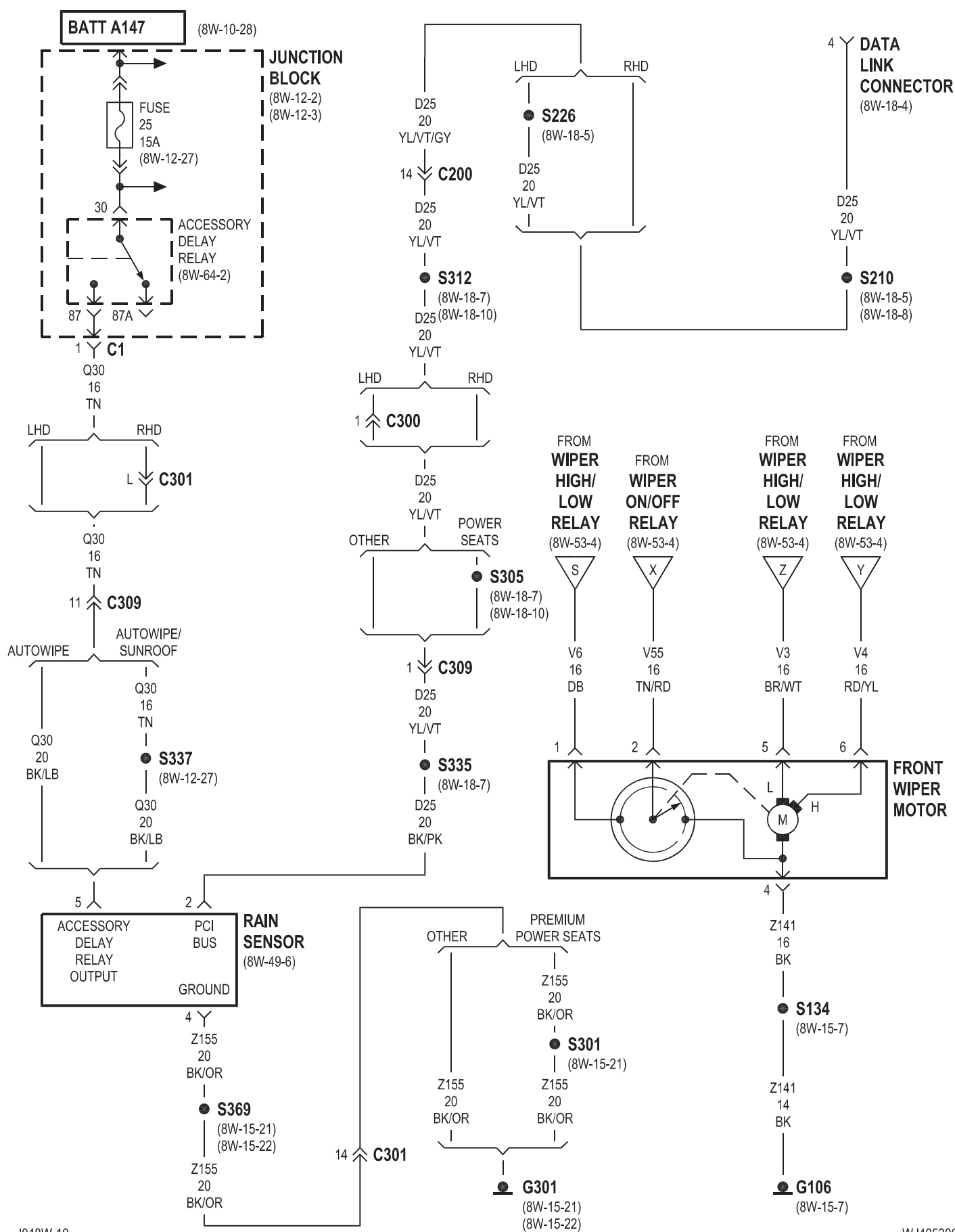










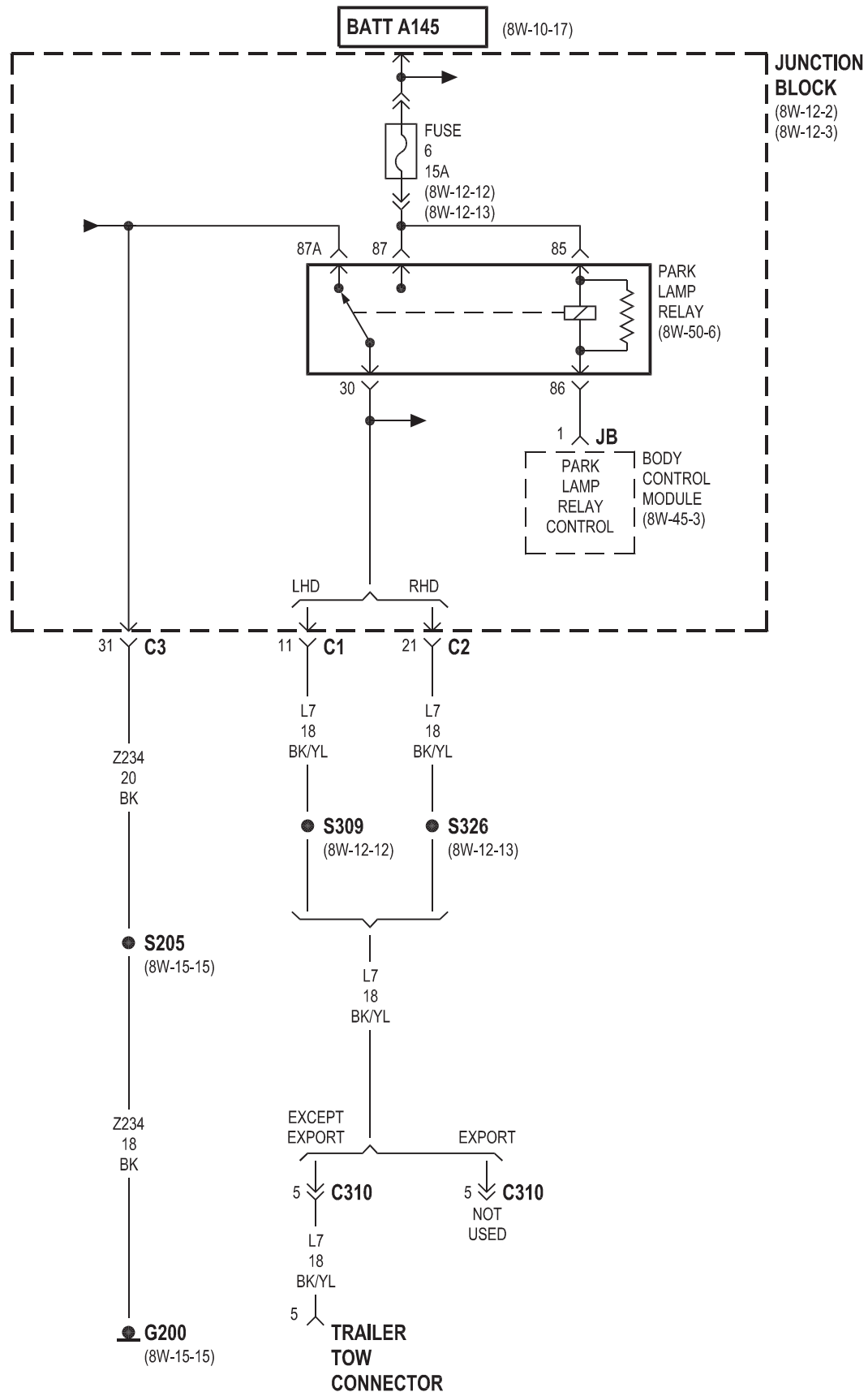




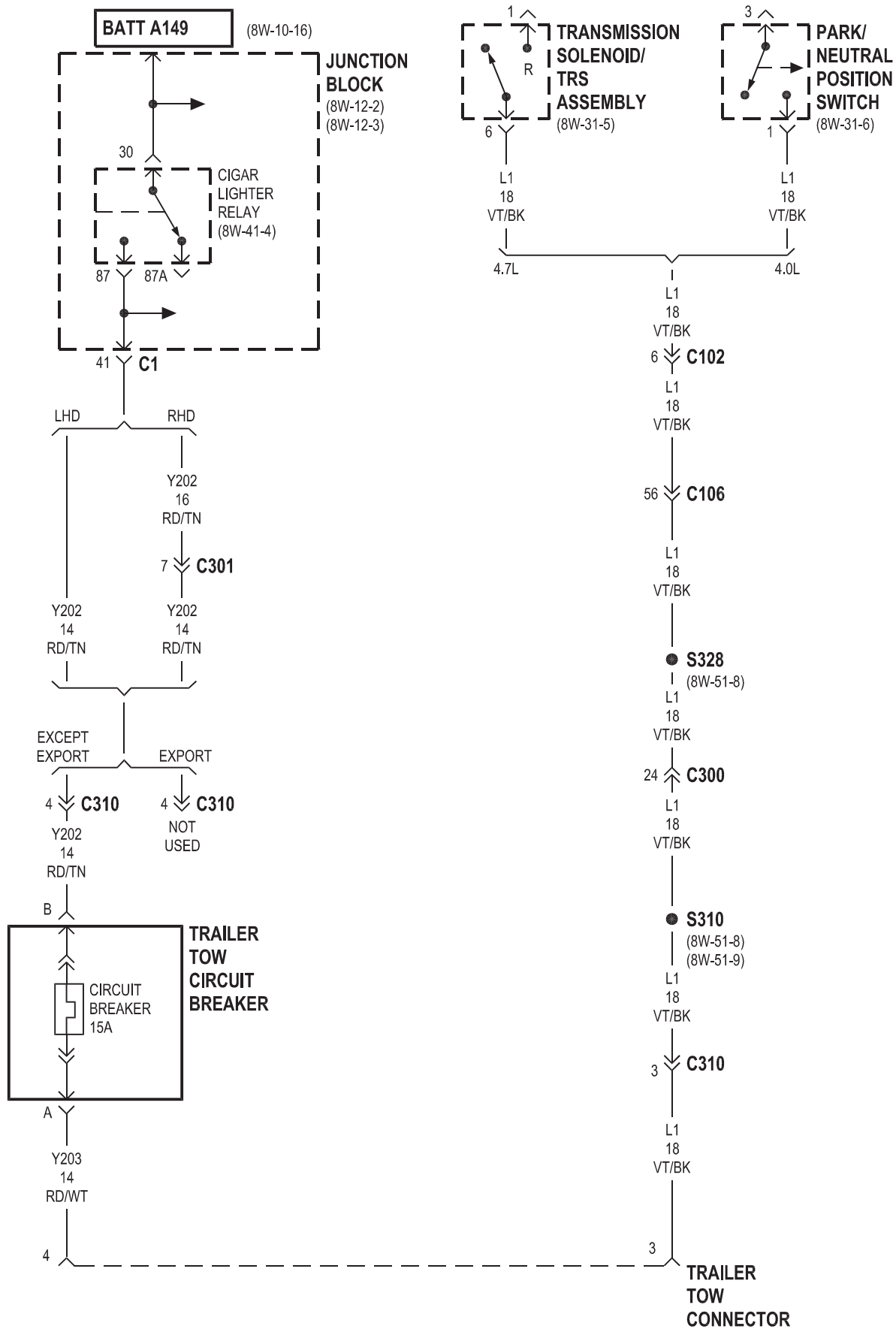


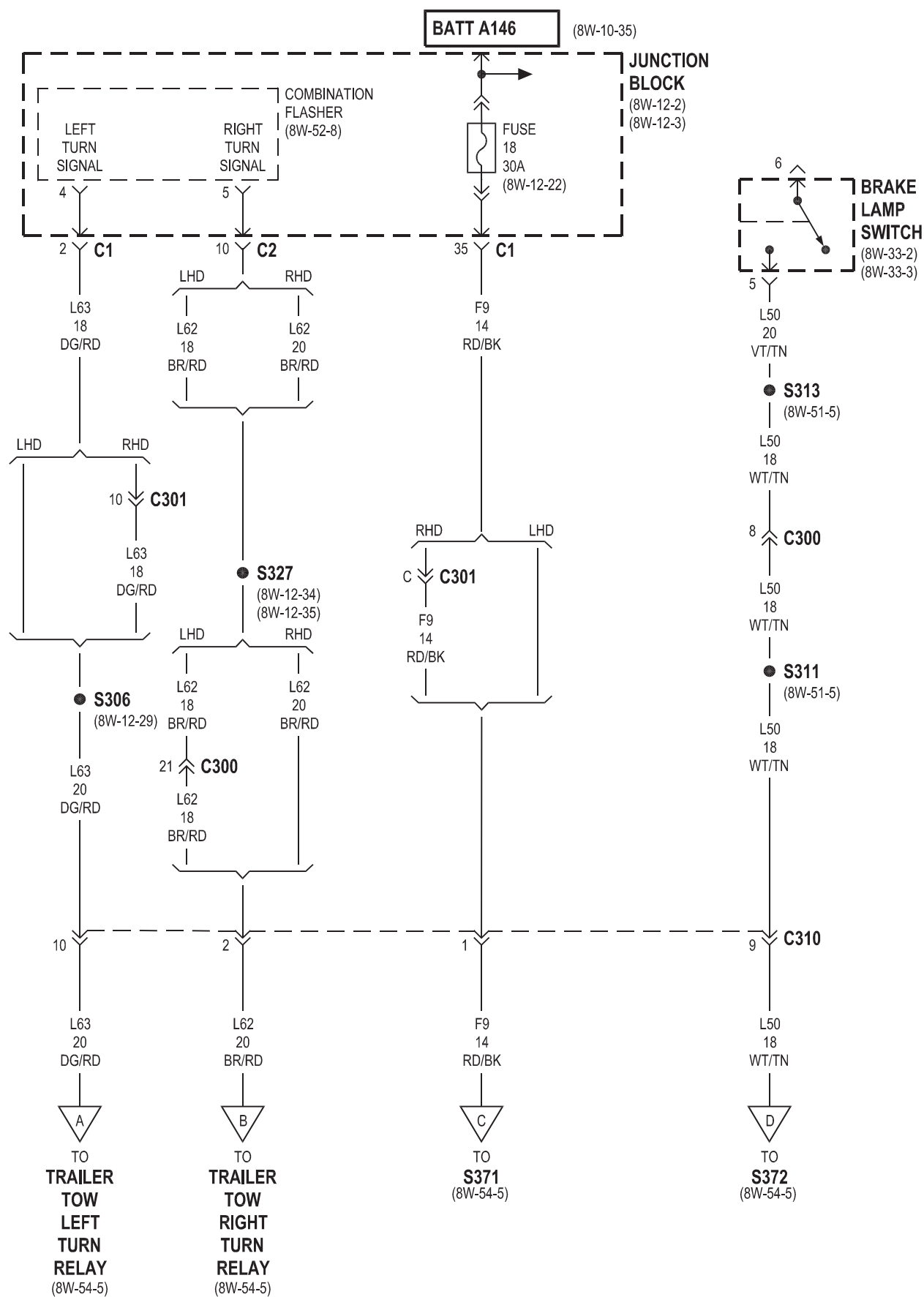
## 8W-54 TRAILER TOW

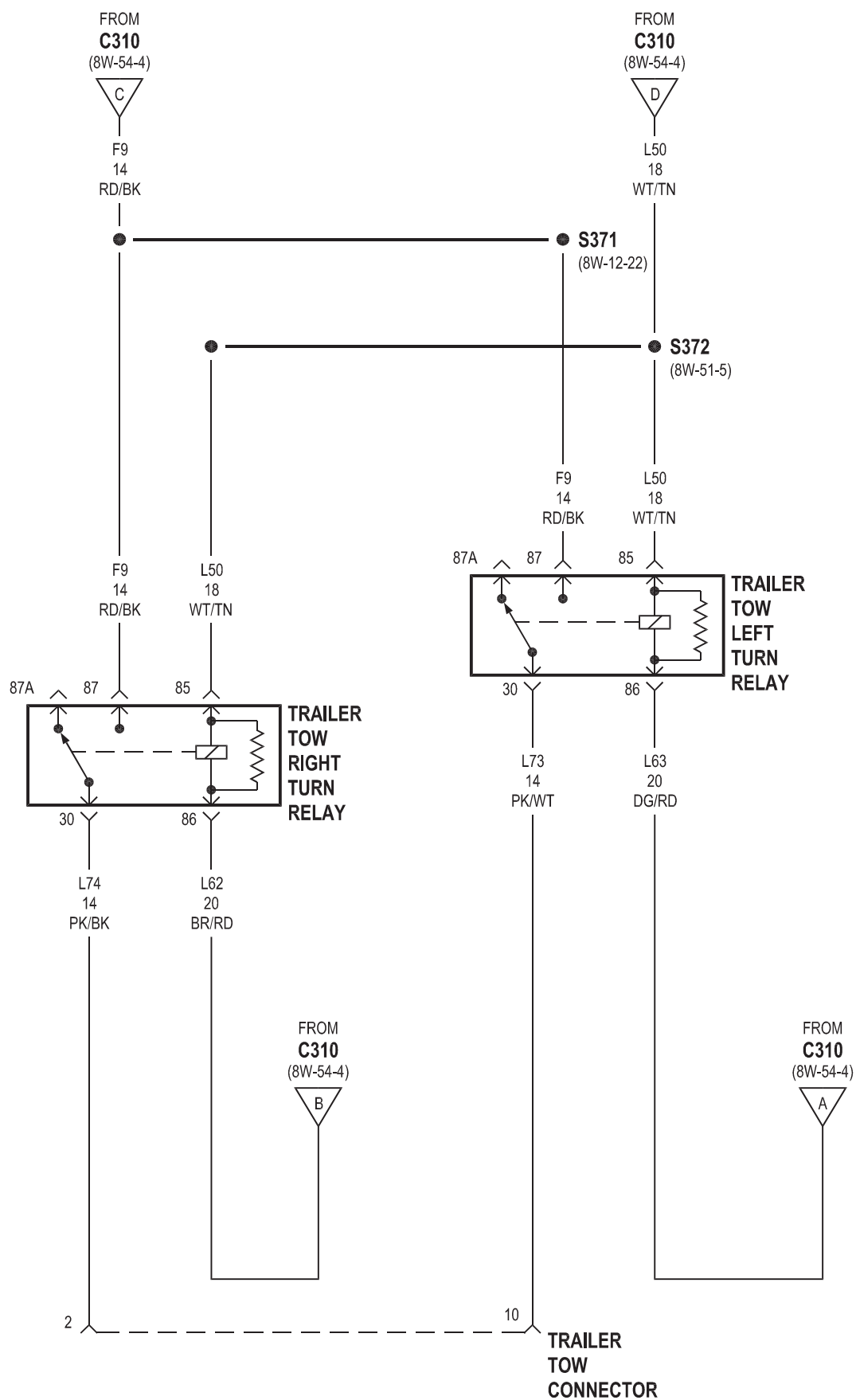
<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>	<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
Body Control Module . . . . .	8W-54-2	Junction Block . . . . .	8W-54-2, 3, 4
Brake Lamp Switch . . . . .	8W-54-4	Park Lamp Relay . . . . .	8W-54-2
Cigar Lighter Relay . . . . .	8W-54-3	Park/Neutral Position Switch . . . . .	8W-54-3
Circuit Breaker . . . . .	8W-54-3	Trailer Tow Circuit Breaker . . . . .	8W-54-3
Combination Flasher . . . . .	8W-54-4	Trailer Tow Connector . . . . .	8W-54-2, 3, 5, 6
Fuse 6 . . . . .	8W-54-2	Trailer Tow Left Turn Relay . . . . .	8W-54-4, 5
Fuse 18 . . . . .	8W-54-4	Trailer Tow Right Turn Relay . . . . .	8W-54-4, 5
G200 . . . . .	8W-54-2	Transmission Solenoid/TRS Assembly . . . .	8W-54-3
G301 . . . . .	8W-54-6		

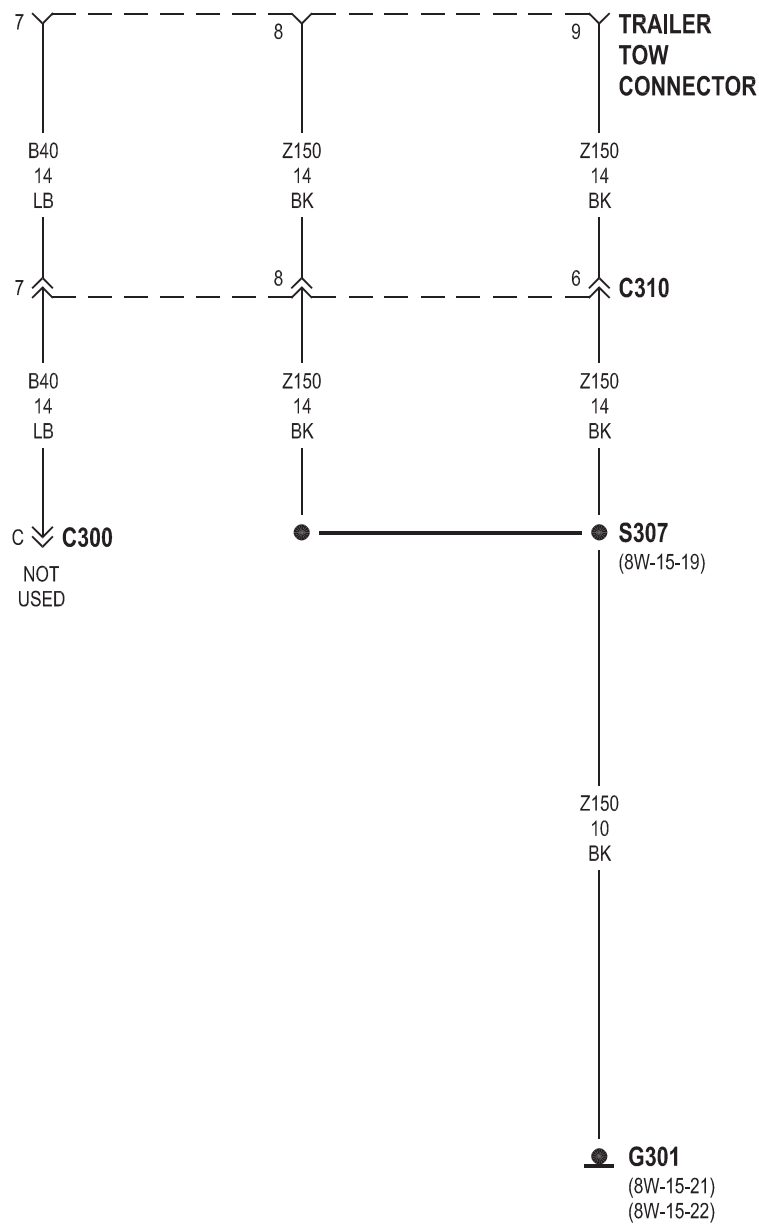










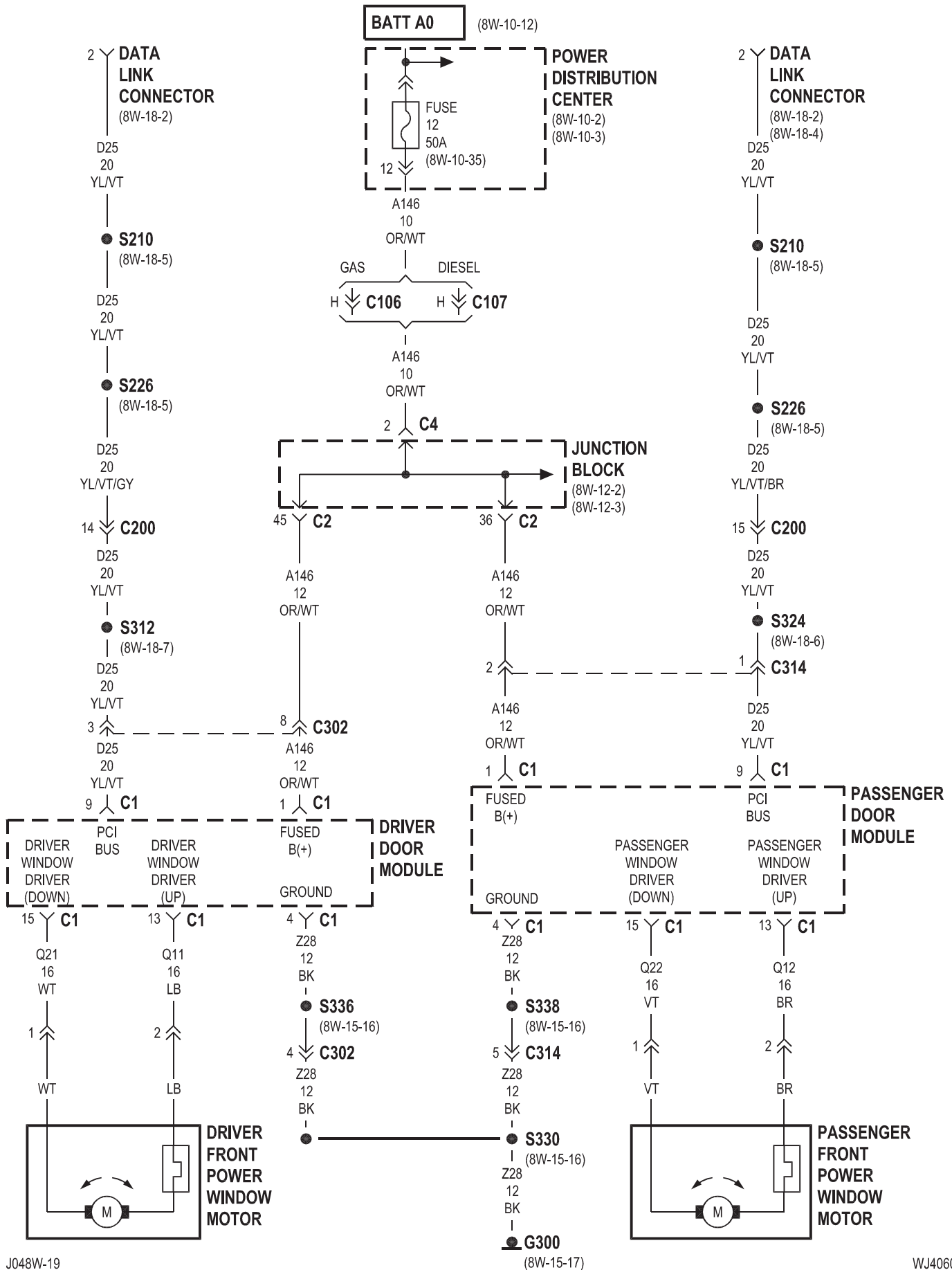


## 8W-60 POWER WINDOWS

<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
Data Link Connector . . . . .	8W-60-2, 3
Driver Door Module . . . . .	8W-60-2, 3, 4, 5
Driver Front Power Window Motor . . . .	8W-60-2, 3
Driver Rear Power Window Motor . . . . .	8W-60-5
Driver Rear Power Window Switch . . . . .	8W-60-5
Fuse 12 . . . . .	8W-60-2, 3
G300 . . . . .	8W-60-2, 4, 5, 6

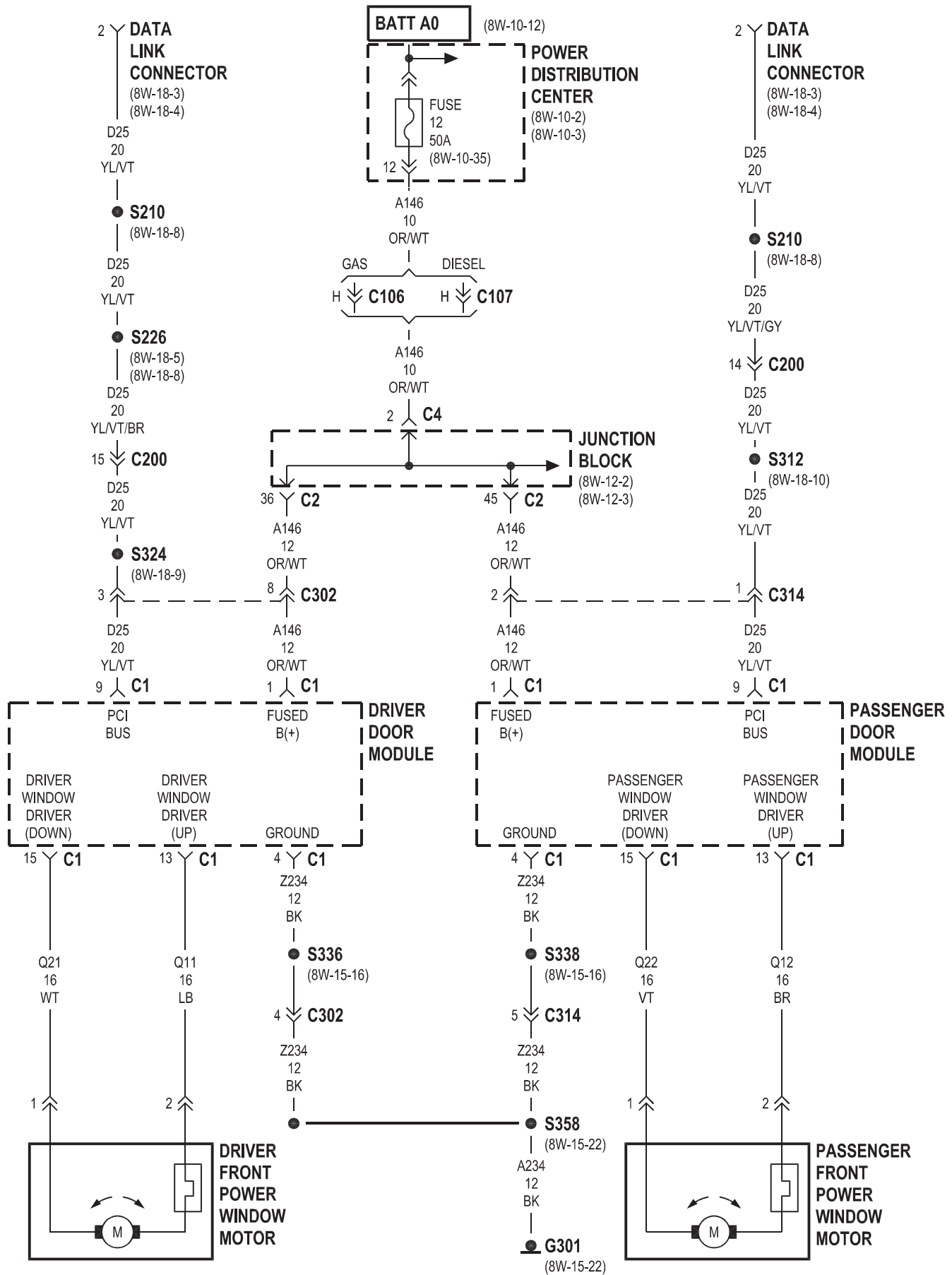
<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
G301 . . . . .	8W-60-3, 4, 5, 6
Junction Block . . . . .	8W-60-2, 3, 4
Passenger Door Module . . . . .	8W-60-2, 3, 4, 6
Passenger Front Power Window Motor . .	8W-60-2, 3
Passenger Rear Power Window Motor . . . .	8W-60-6
Passenger Rear Power Window Switch . . . .	8W-60-6
Power Distribution Center . . . . .	8W-60-2, 3

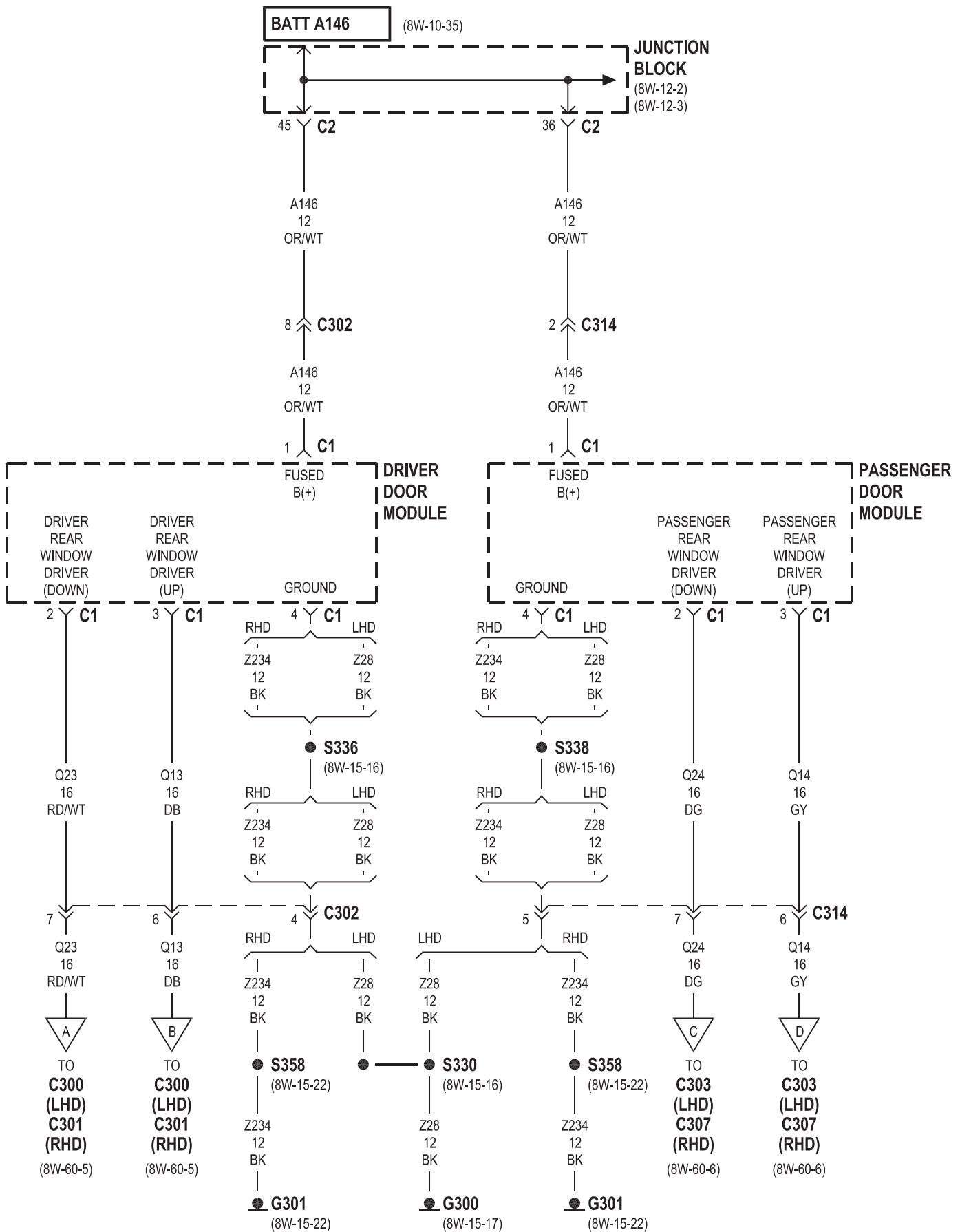
## LHD

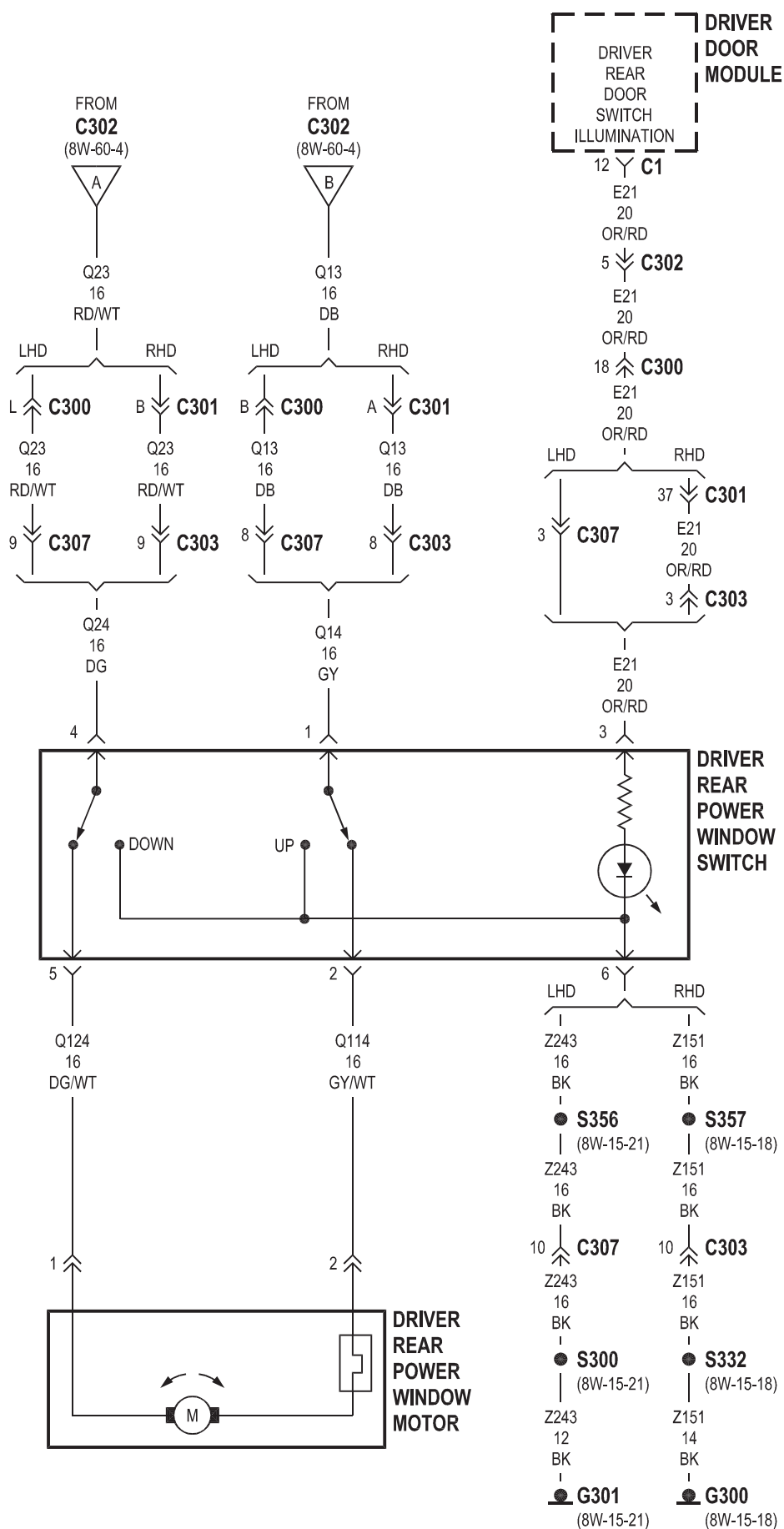


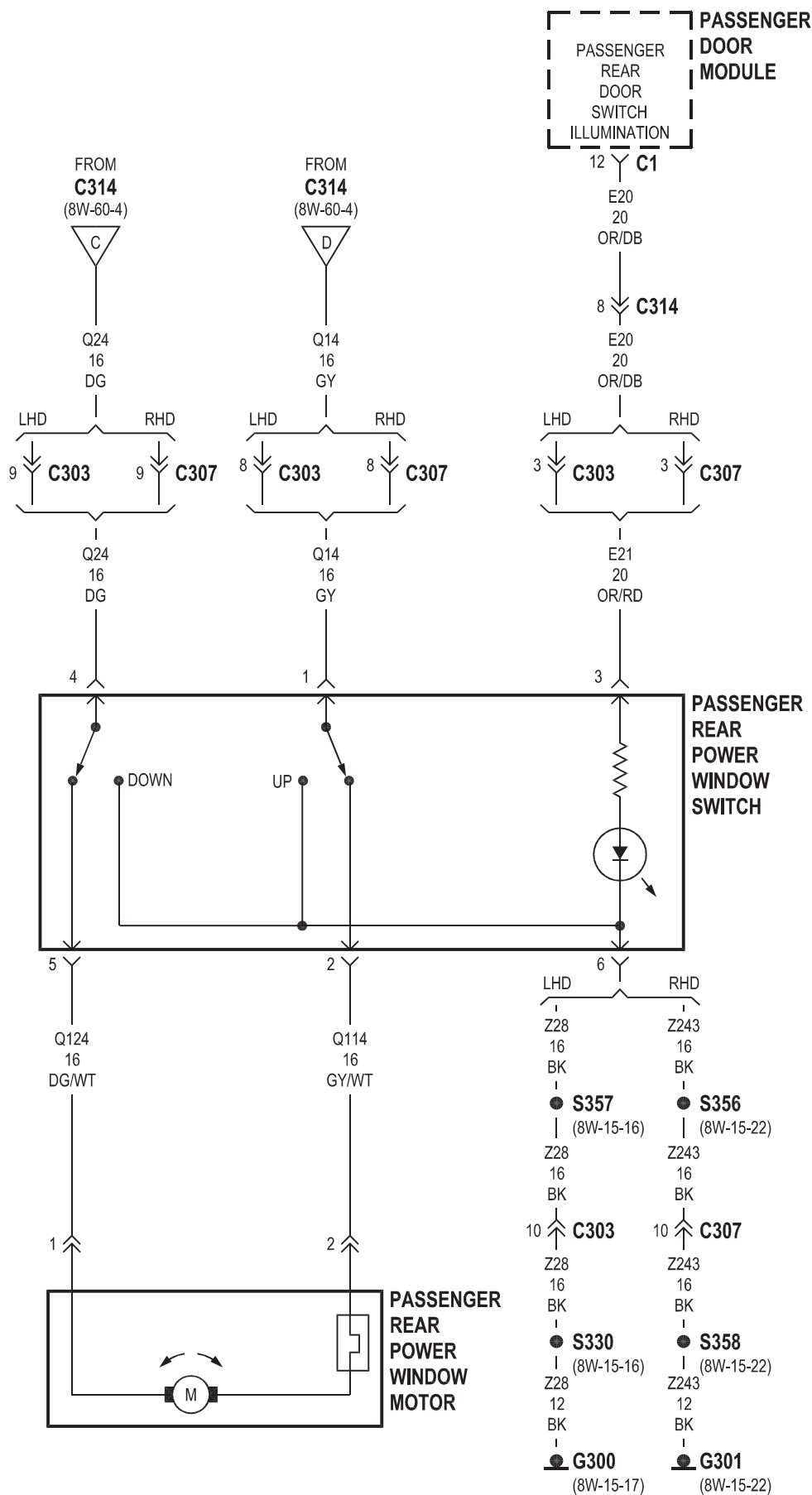


RHD





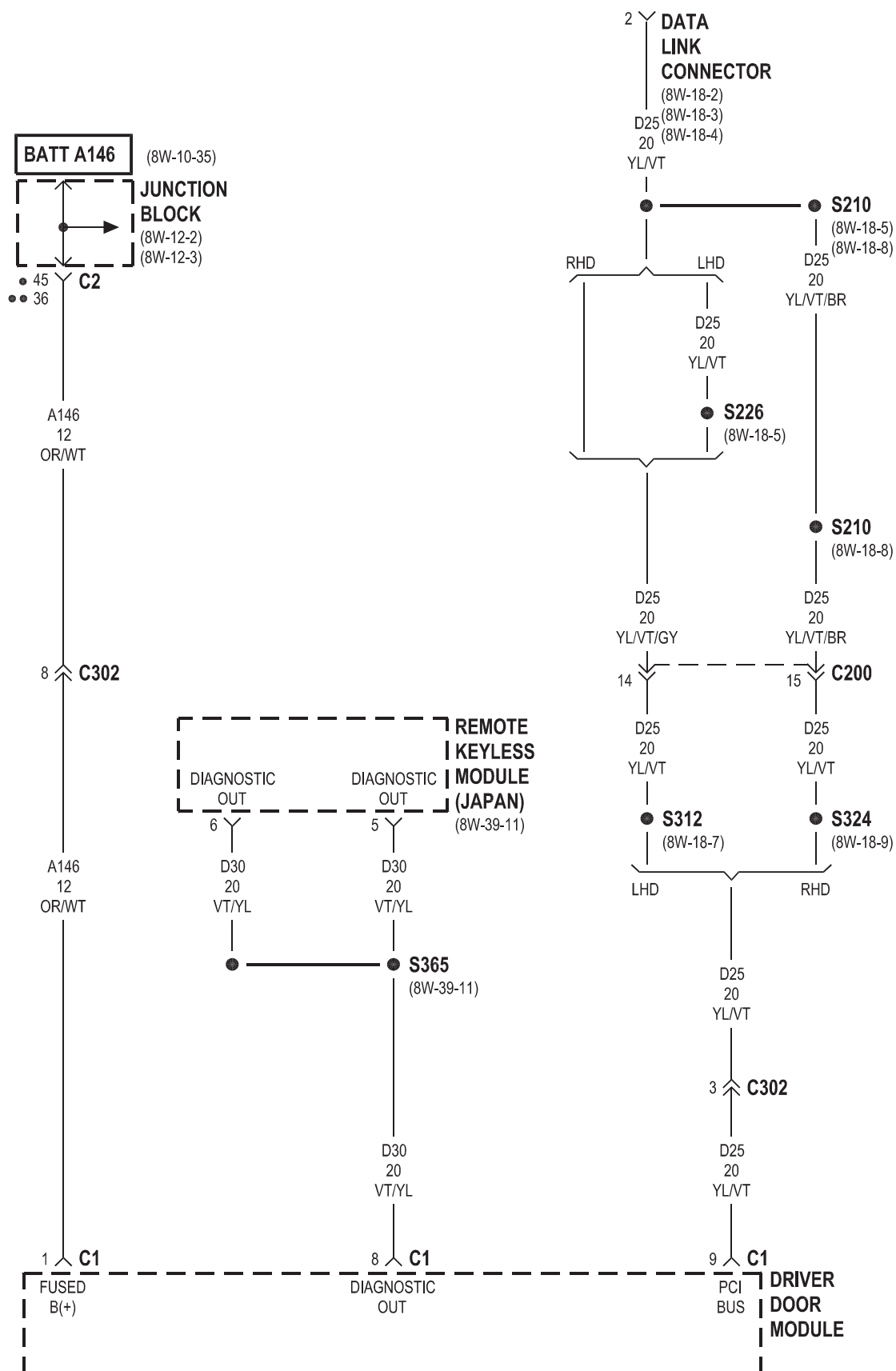




## 8W-61 POWER DOOR LOCKS

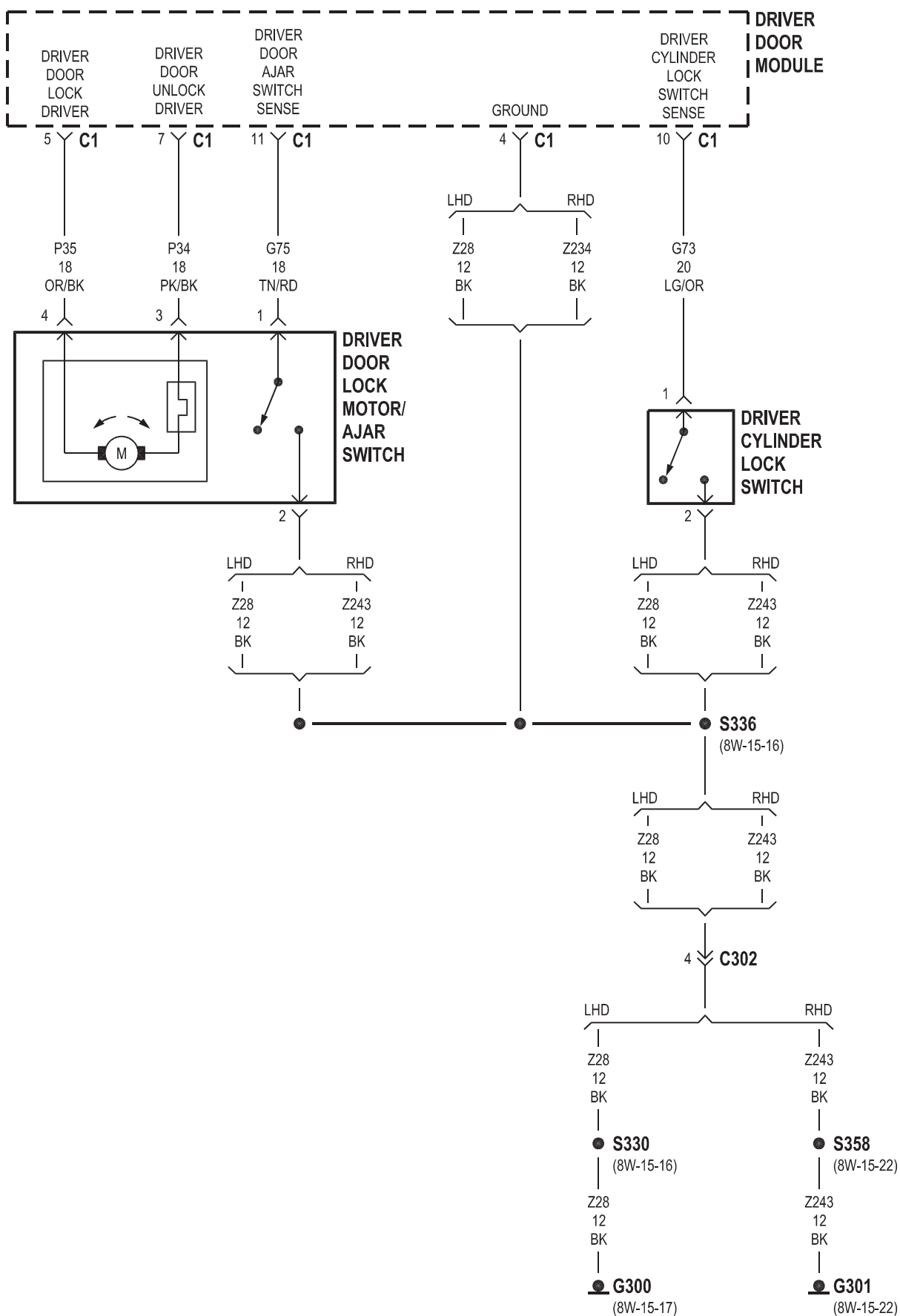
<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
Body Control Module . . . . .	8W-61-7, 8, 9, 10, 12
Data Link Connector . . . . .	8W-61-2, 4
Driver Cylinder Lock Switch . . . . .	8W-61-3
Driver Door Lock Motor/Ajar Switch . . . . .	8W-61-3
Driver Door Module . . . . .	8W-61-2, 3
Fuse 8 . . . . .	8W-61-11
G300 . . . . .	8W-61-3, 4, 8, 9
G301 . . . . .	8W-61-3, 4, 7, 10, 11, 12
Junction Block . . . . .	8W-61-2, 4, 7, 10, 11, 12
Left Liftgate Ajar Switch . . . . .	8W-61-12
Left Rear Door Lock Motor/Ajar Switch . . . . .	8W-61-5, 6, 7, 10
Liftgate Flip-Up Ajar Switch . . . . .	8W-61-12

<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
Liftgate Flip-Up Push Button Switch . . . . .	8W-61-11
Liftgate Flip-Up Release Solenoid . . . . .	8W-61-11
Liftgate Power Lock Motor . . . . .	8W-61-5, 6, 11
Passenger Door Lock Motor/Ajar Switch . . . . .	8W-61-4, 5, 6
Passenger Door Module . . . . .	8W-61-4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 10, 11
Rear Wiper Motor . . . . .	8W-61-12
Remote Keyless Module . . . . .	8W-61-2
Right Liftgate Ajar Switch . . . . .	8W-61-12
Right Rear Door Lock Motor/Ajar Switch . . . . .	8W-61-5, 6, 8, 9
Sentry Key Immobilizer Module . . . . .	8W-61-4



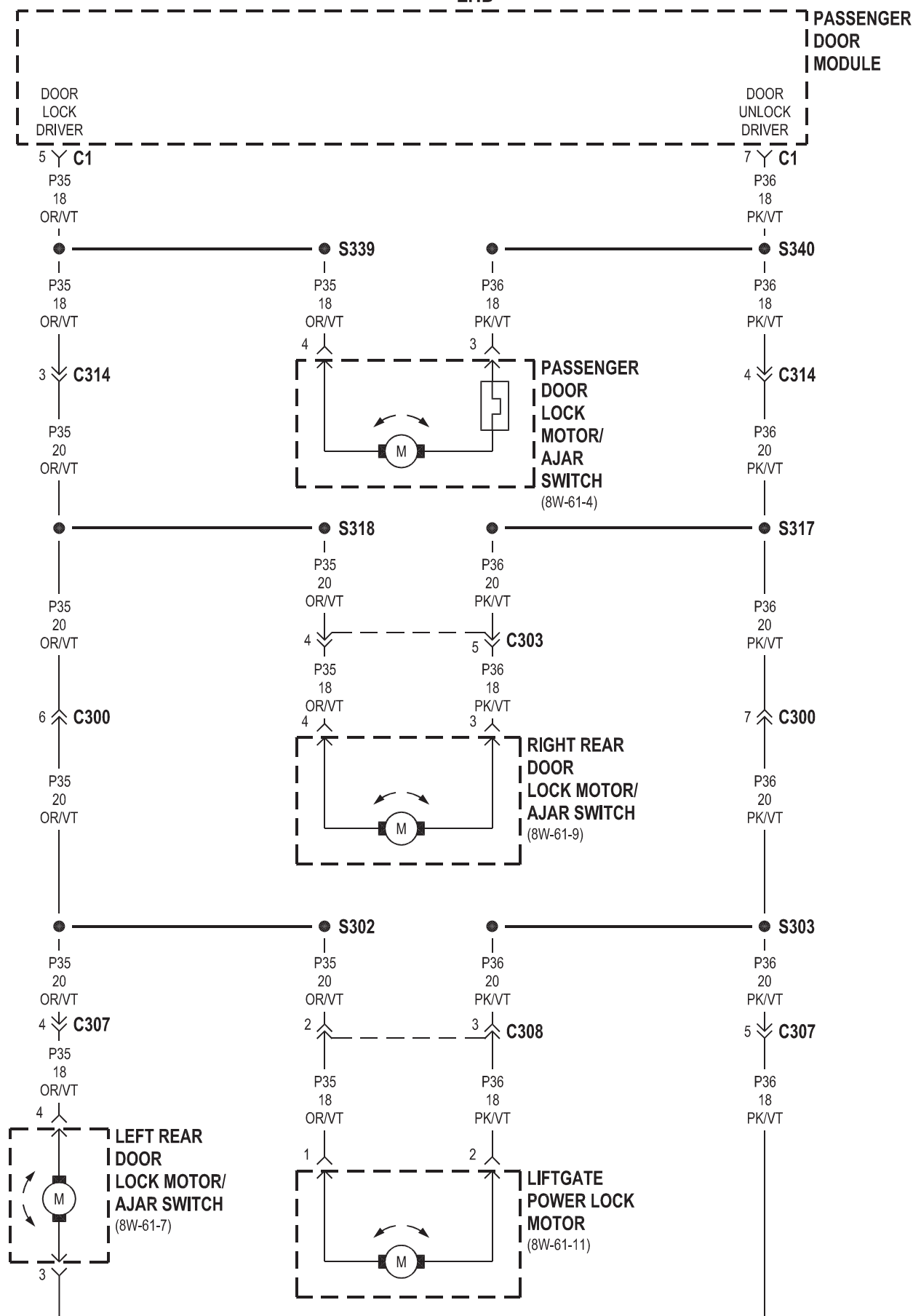
• LHD  
•• RHD



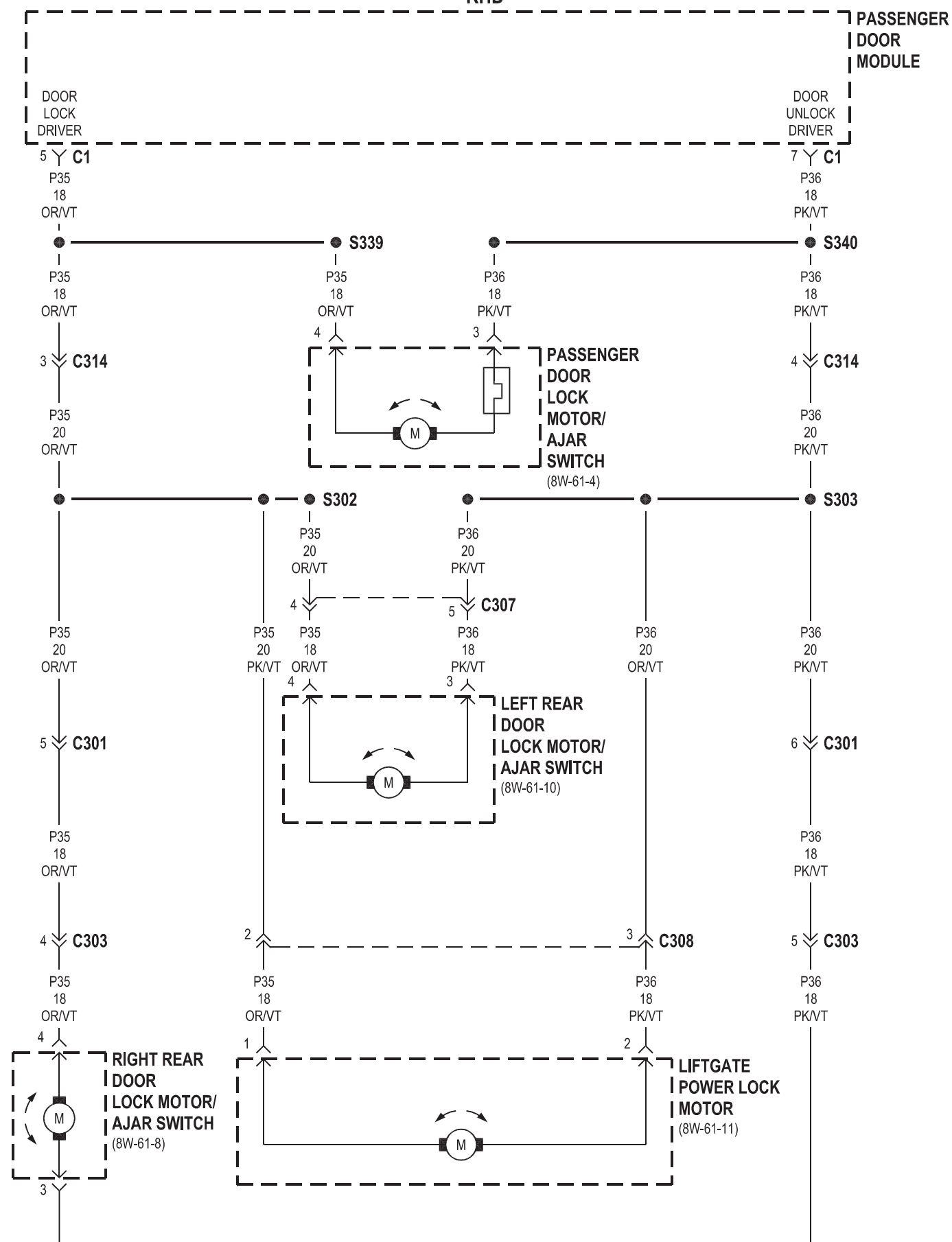


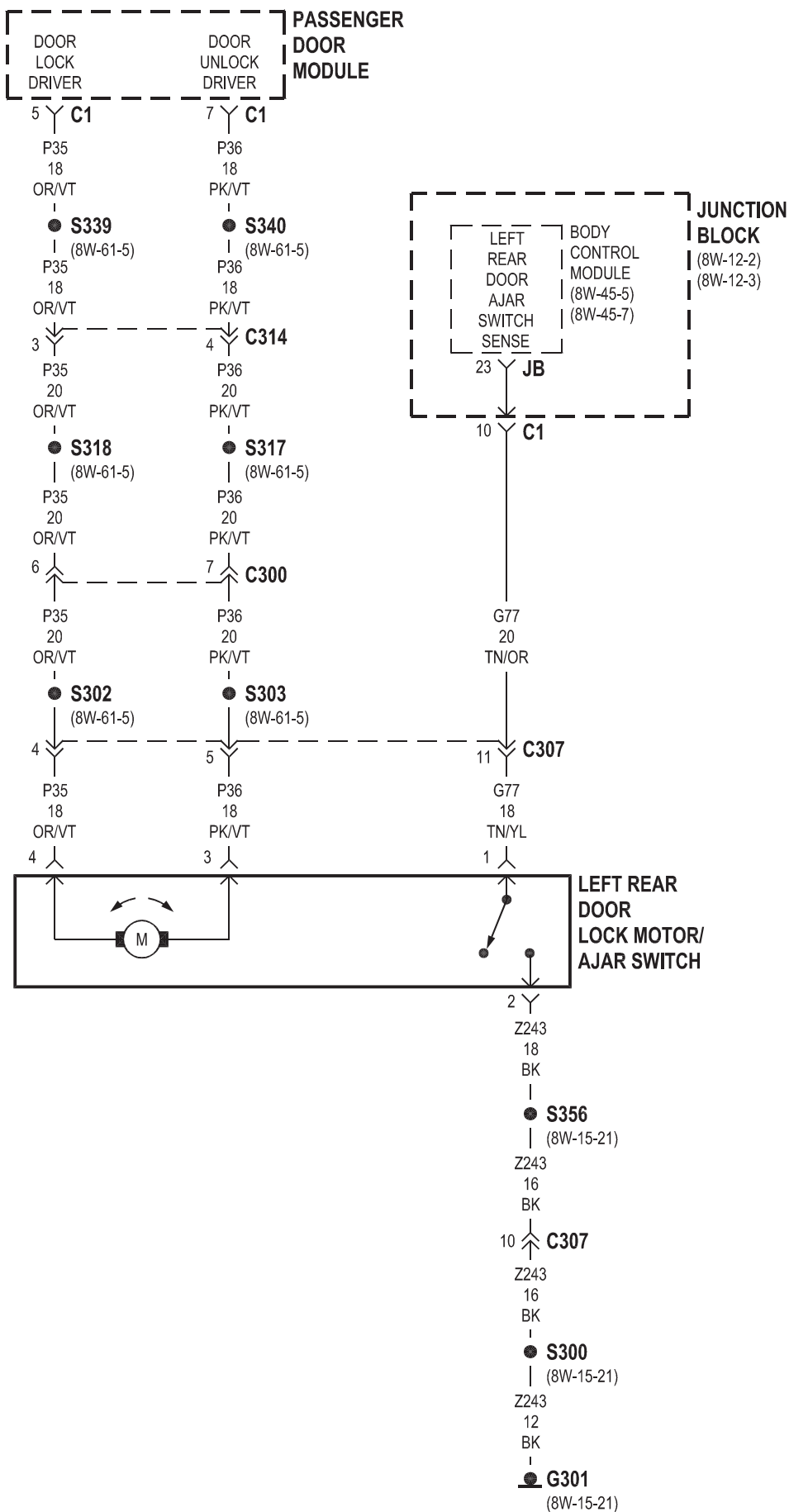


LHD

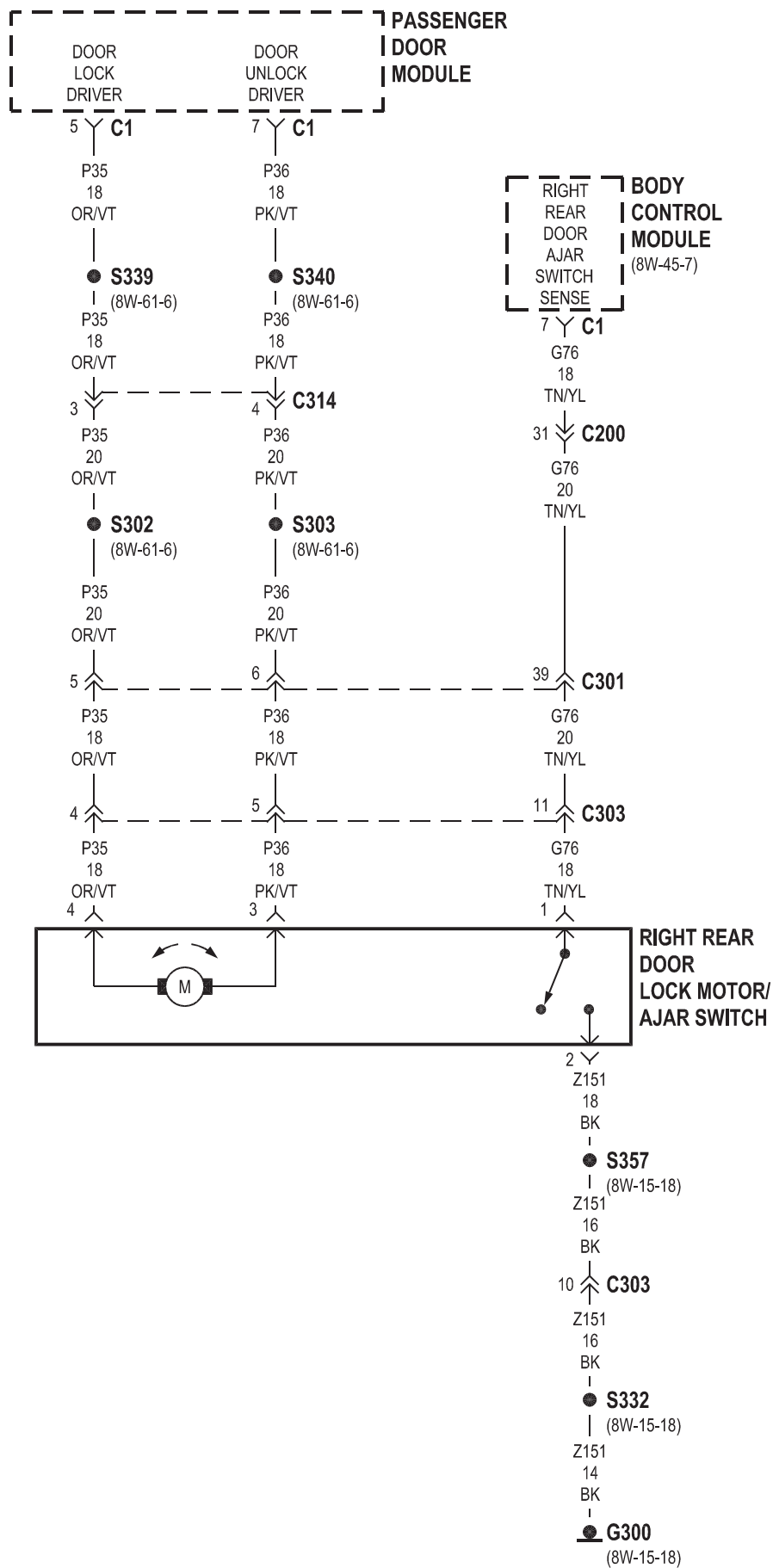


RHD



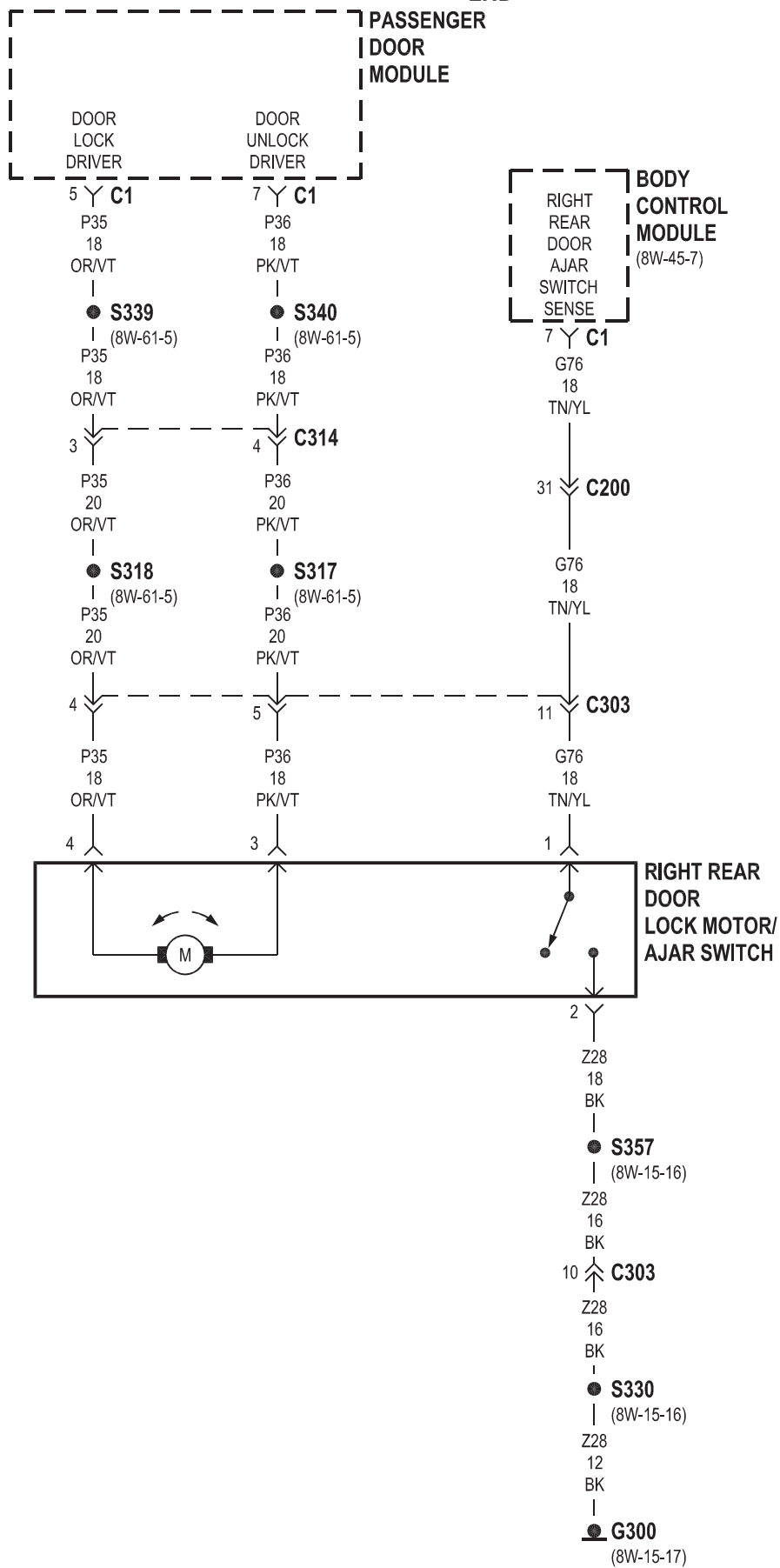


## RHD

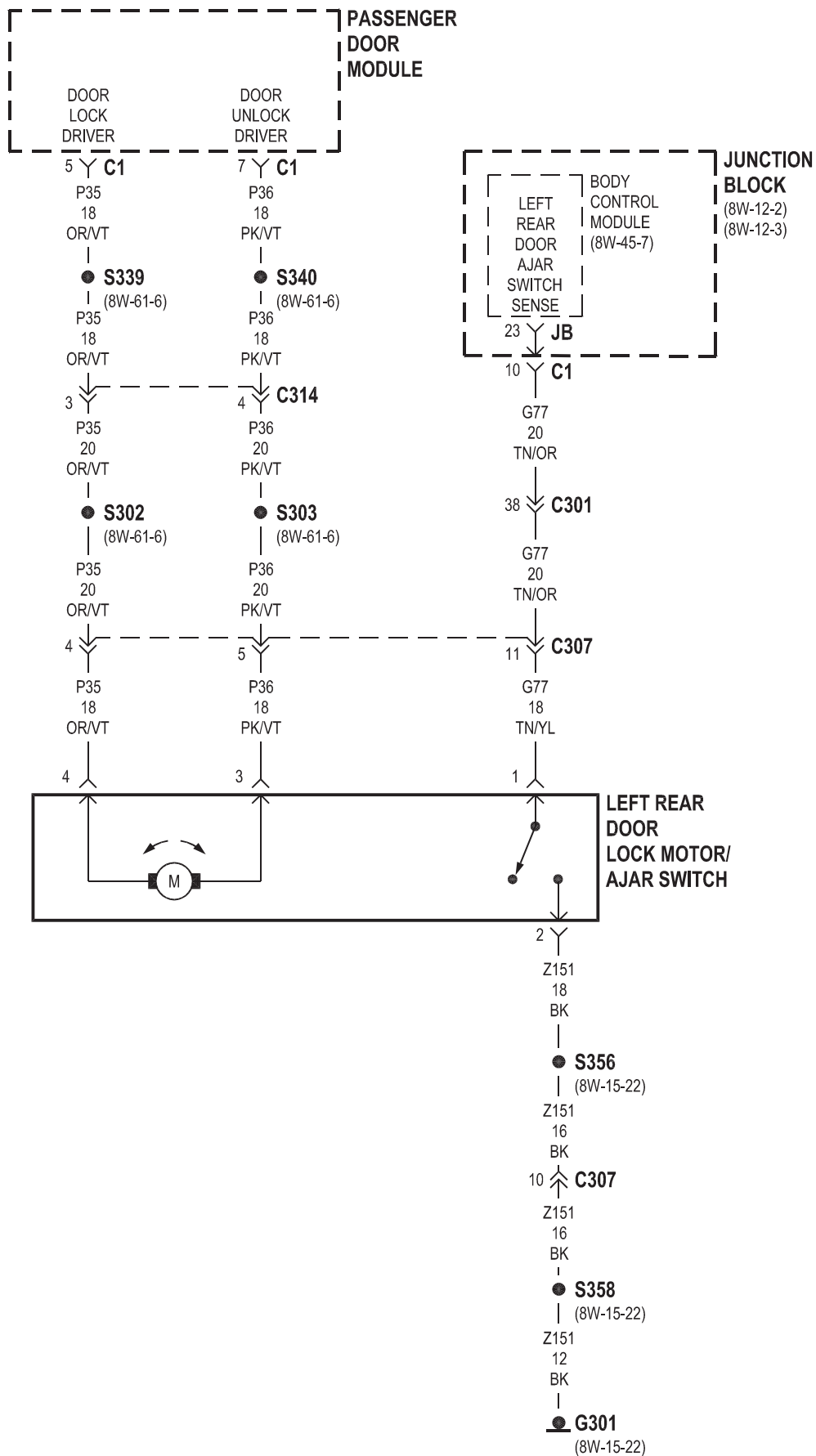


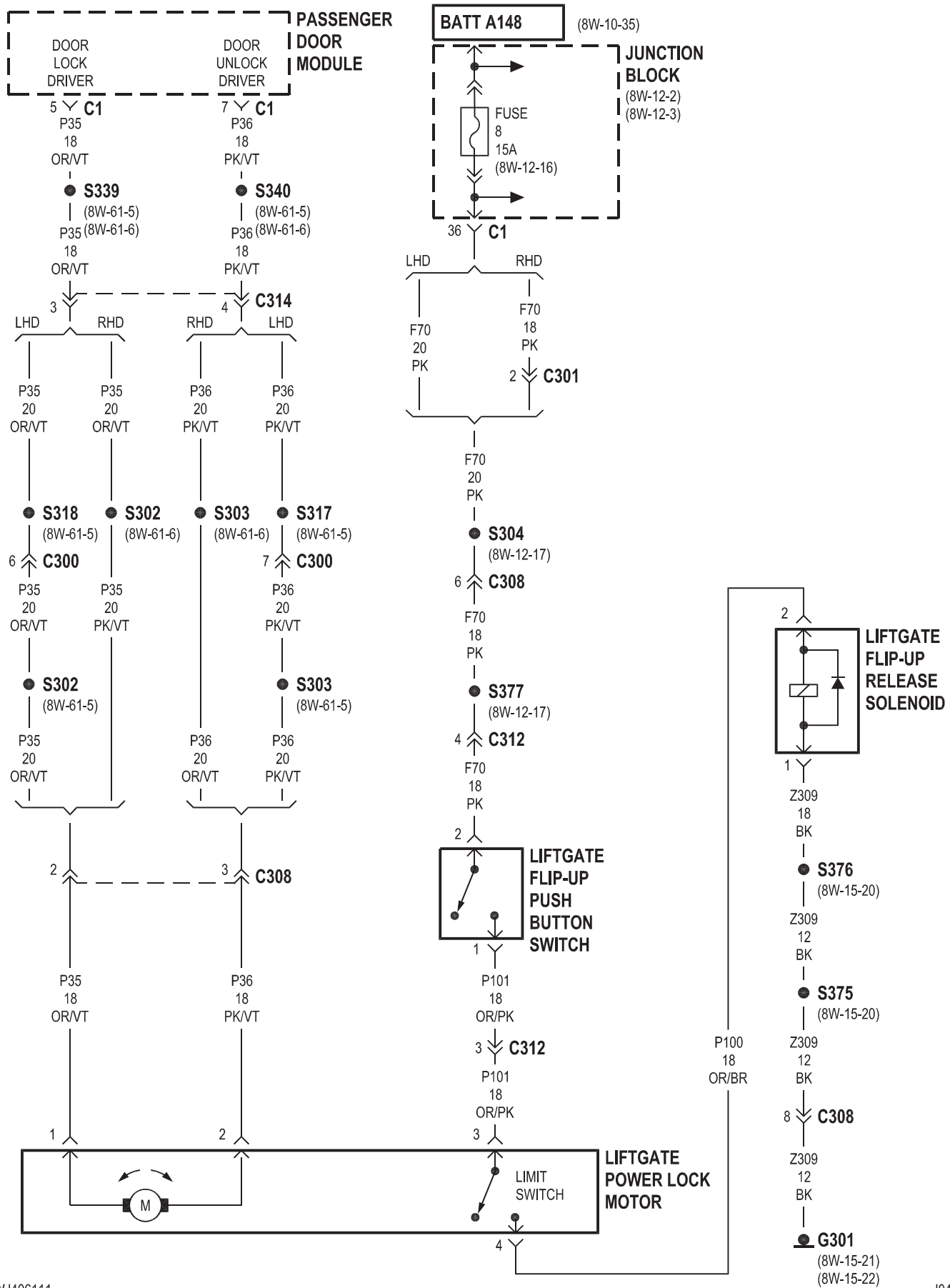


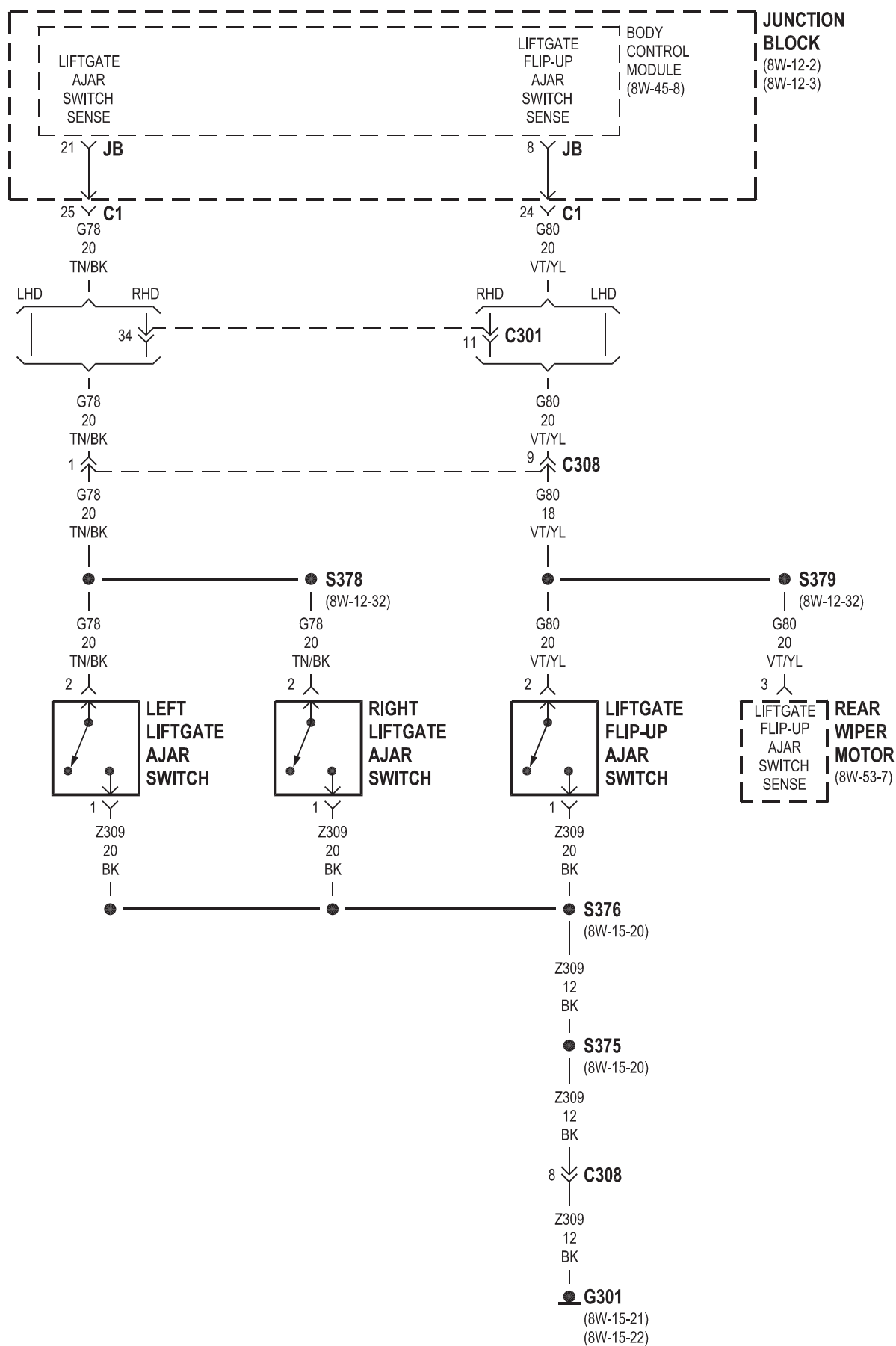
LHD



## RHD



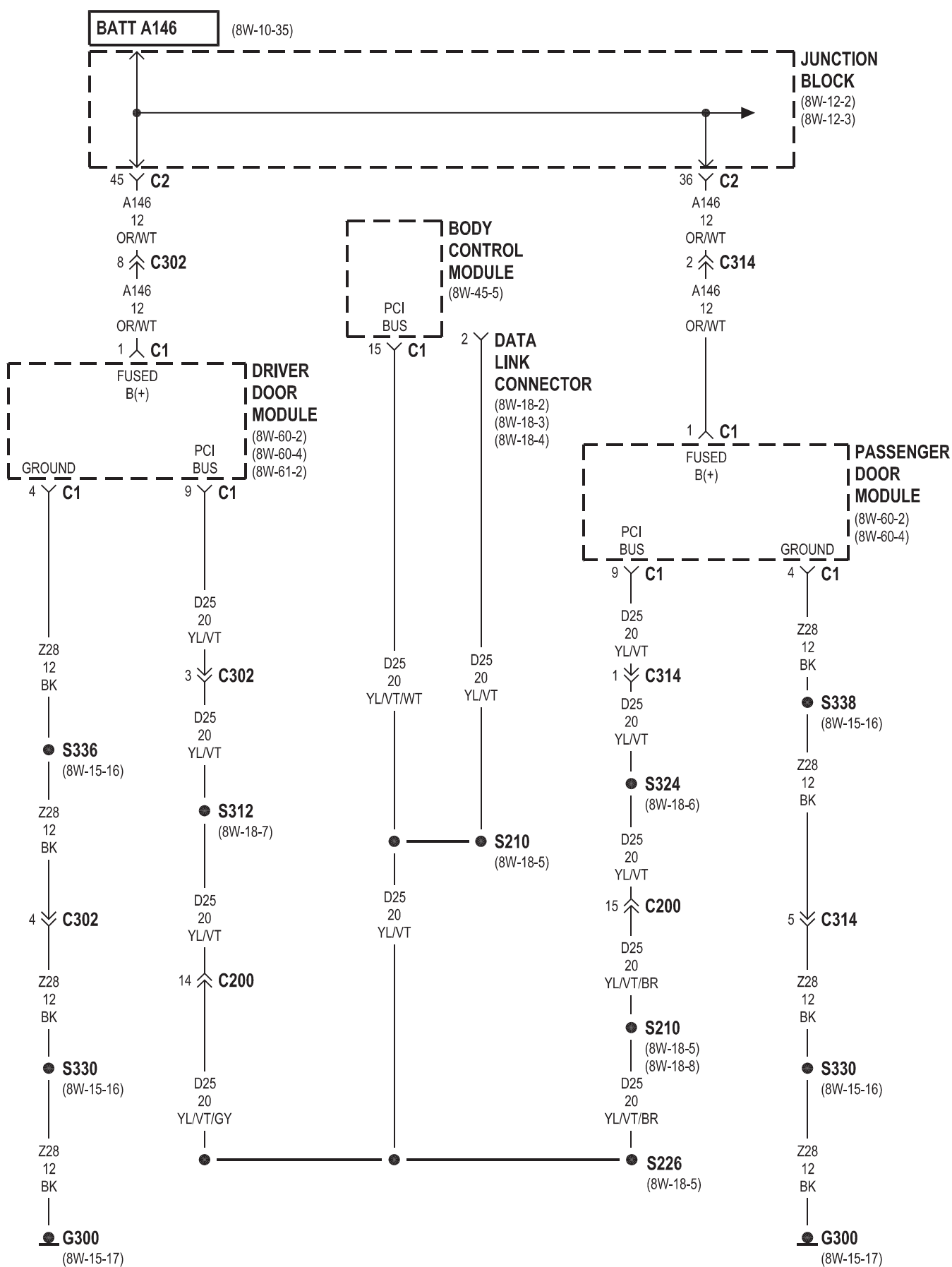


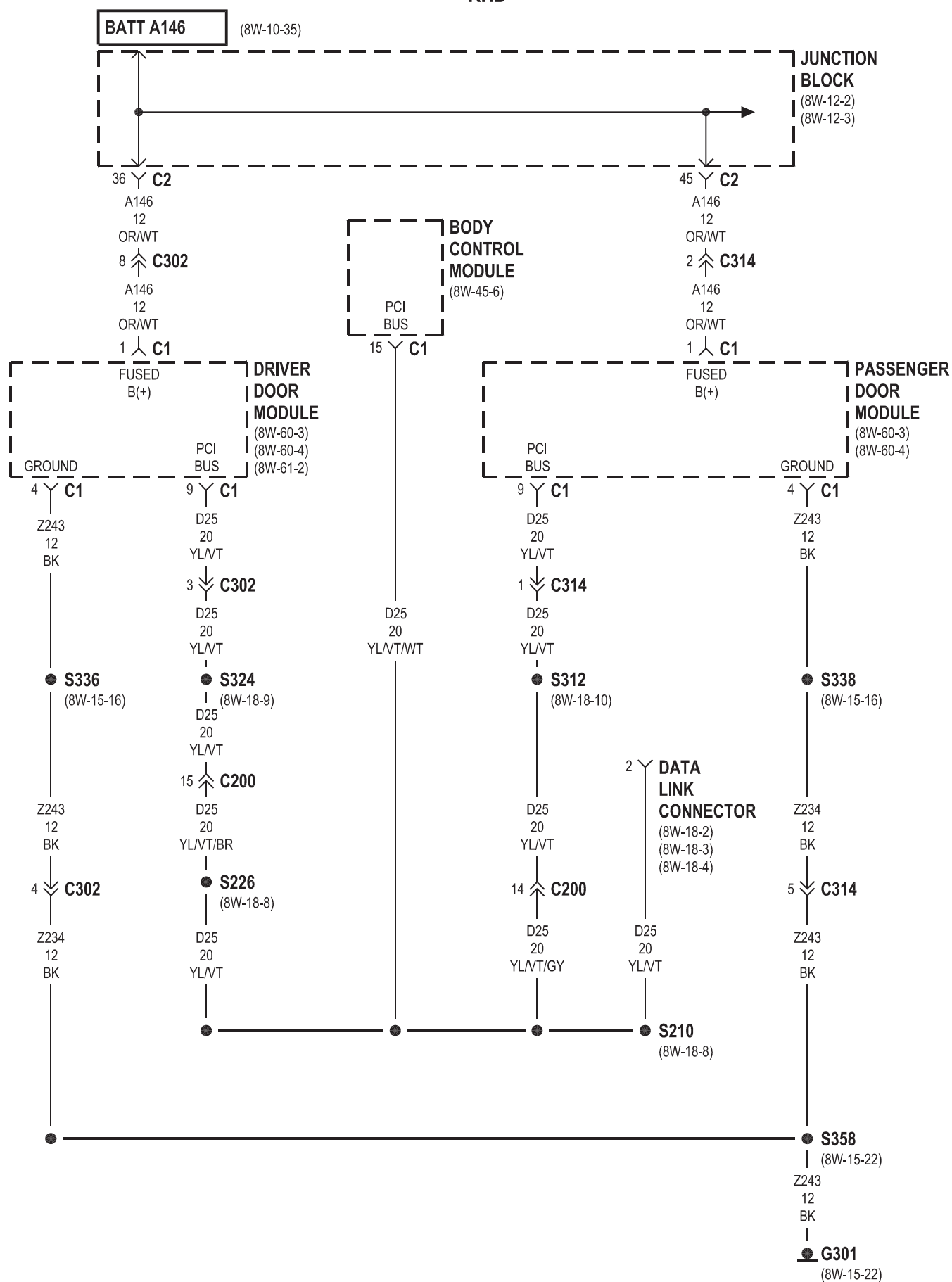


## 8W-62 POWER MIRRORS

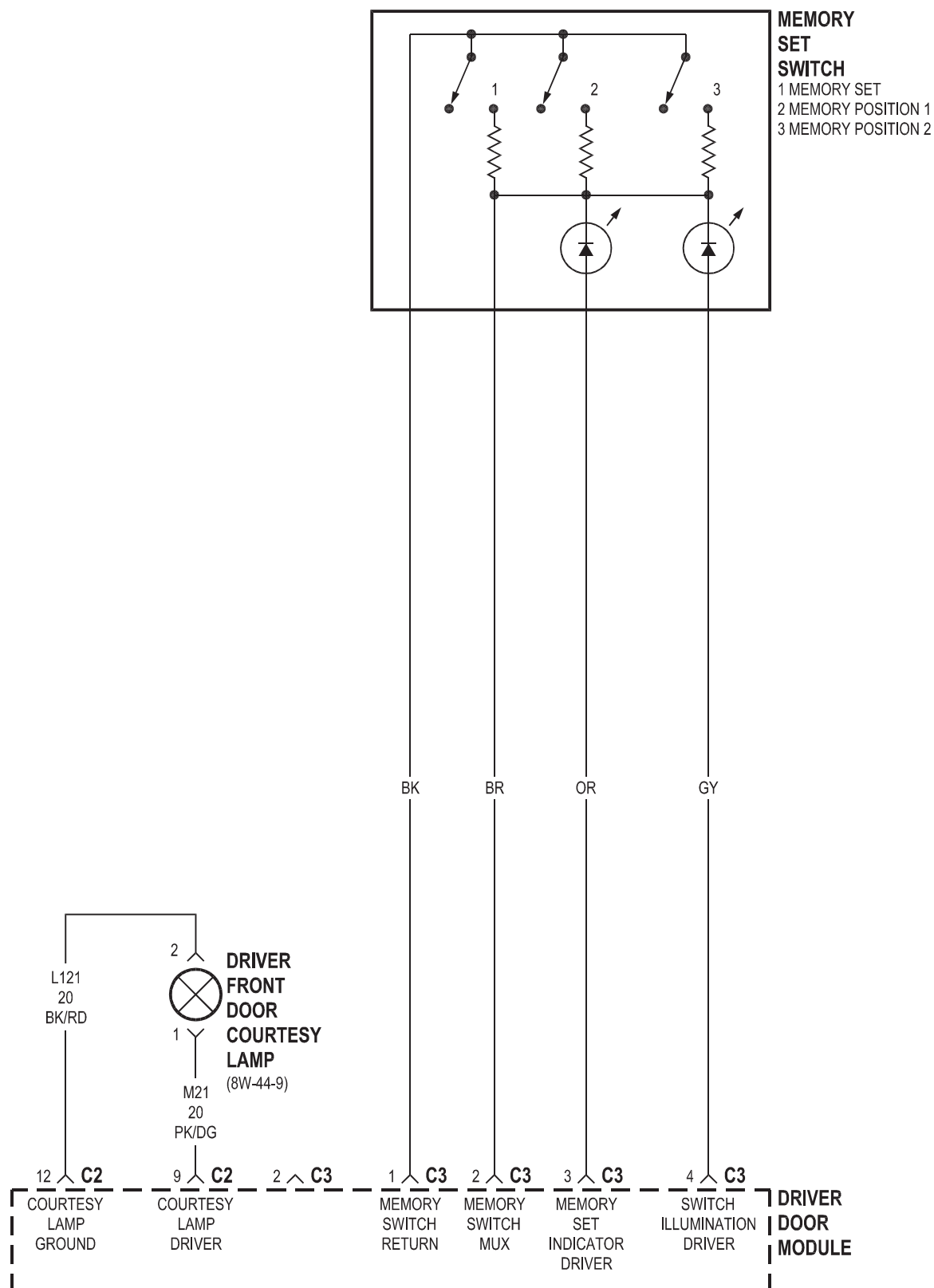
<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
Automatic Day/Night Mirror . . . . .	8W-62-6
Body Control Module . . . . .	8W-62-2, 3
Data Link Connector . . . . .	8W-62-2, 3
Driver Door Module . . . . .	8W-62-2, 3, 4, 6
Driver Front Door Courtesy Lamp . . . . .	8W-62-4
Driver Power Mirror . . . . .	8W-62-6
G300 . . . . .	8W-62-2

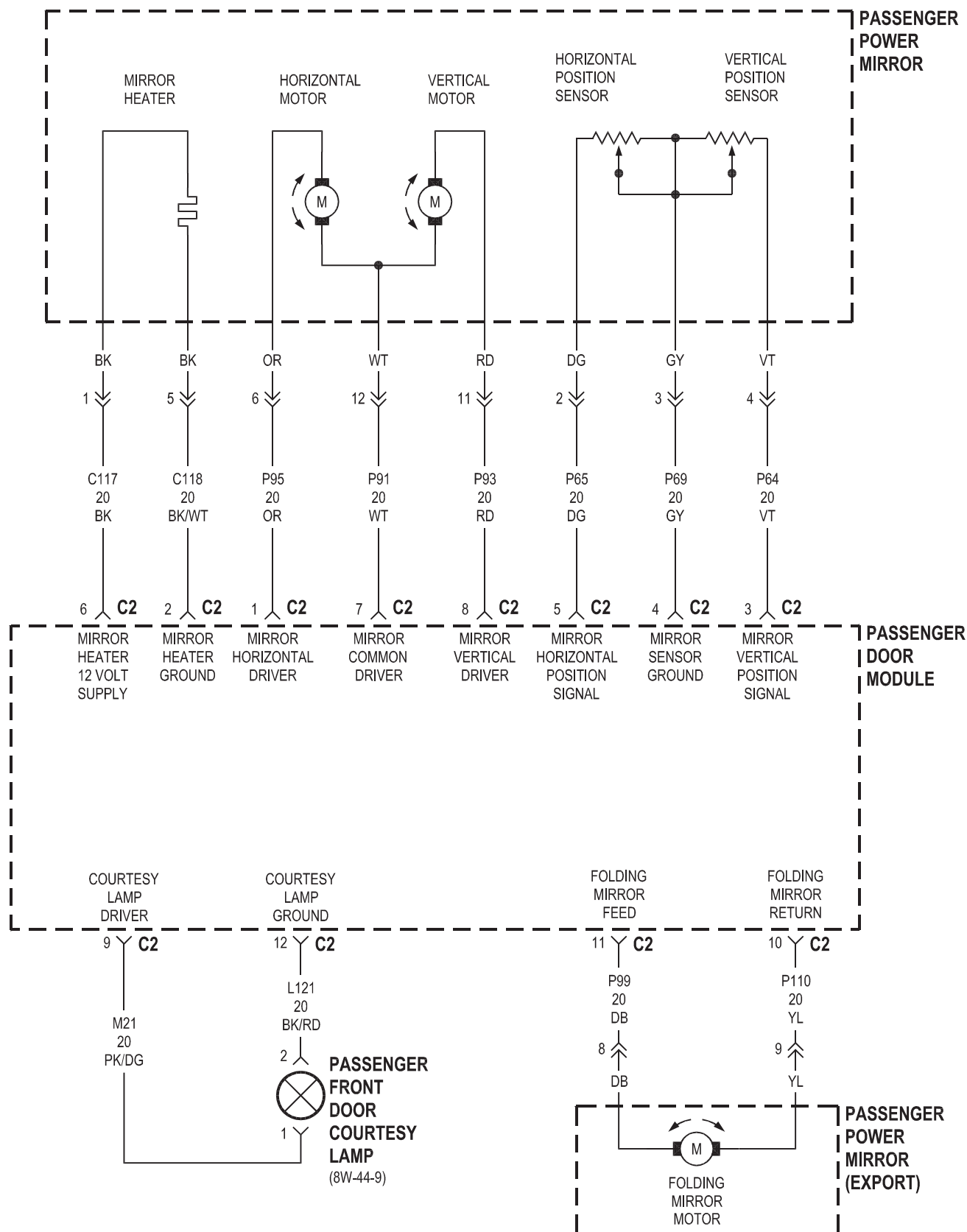
<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
G301 . . . . .	8W-62-3
Junction Block . . . . .	8W-62-2, 3
Memory Set Switch . . . . .	8W-62-4
Passenger Door Module . . . . .	8W-62-2, 3, 5
Passenger Front Door Courtesy Lamp . . . .	8W-62-5
Passenger Power Mirror . . . . .	8W-62-5

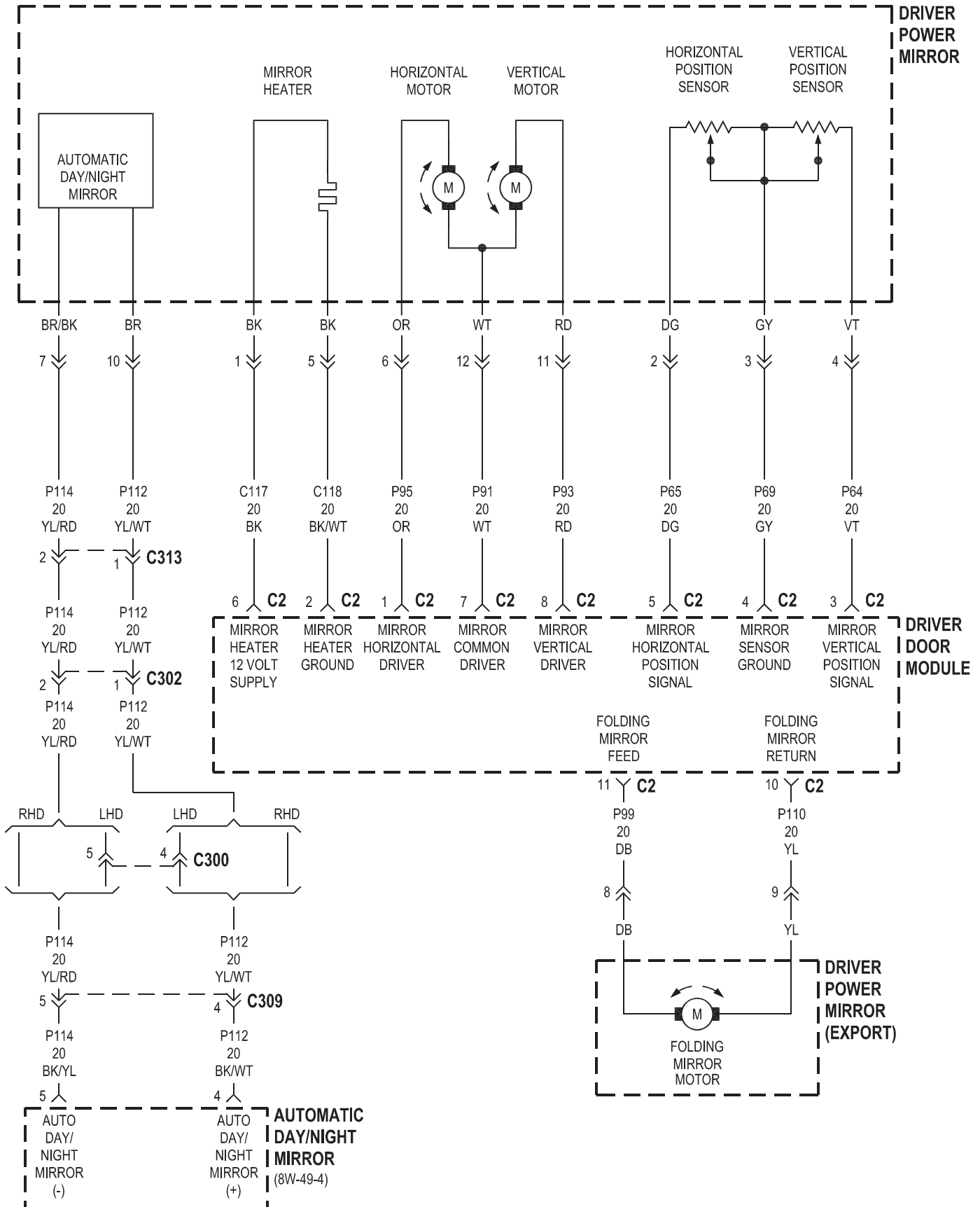








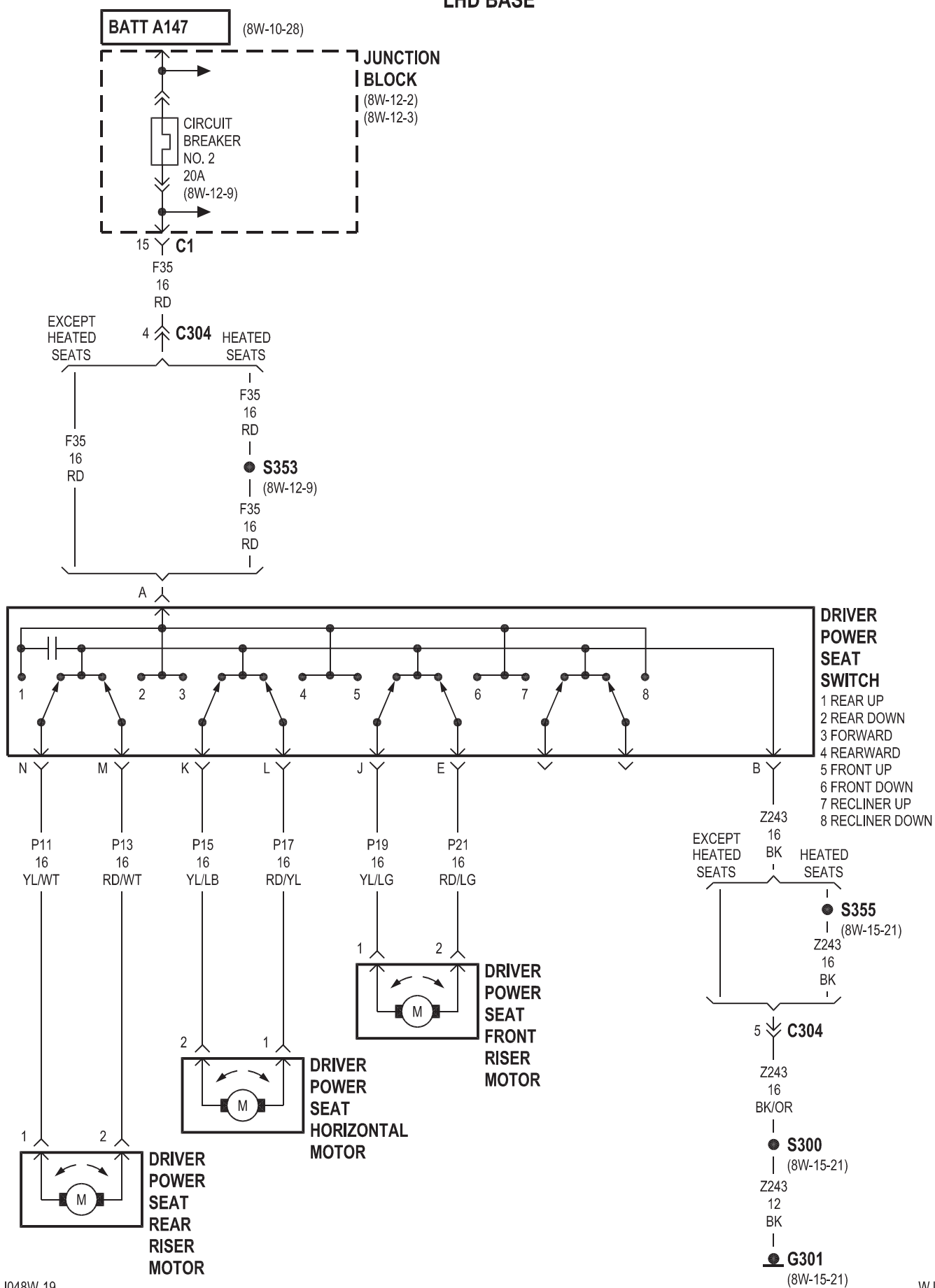


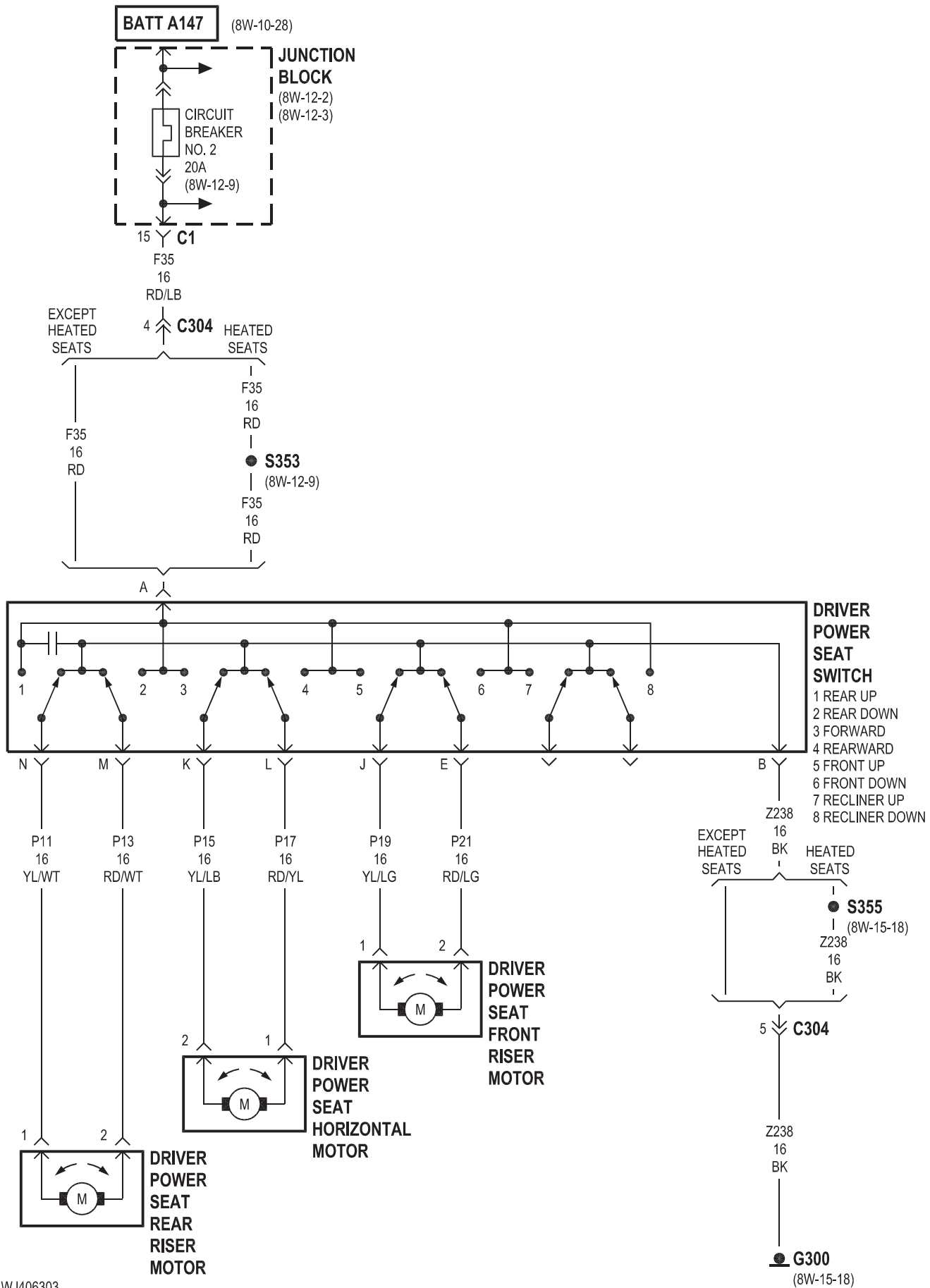


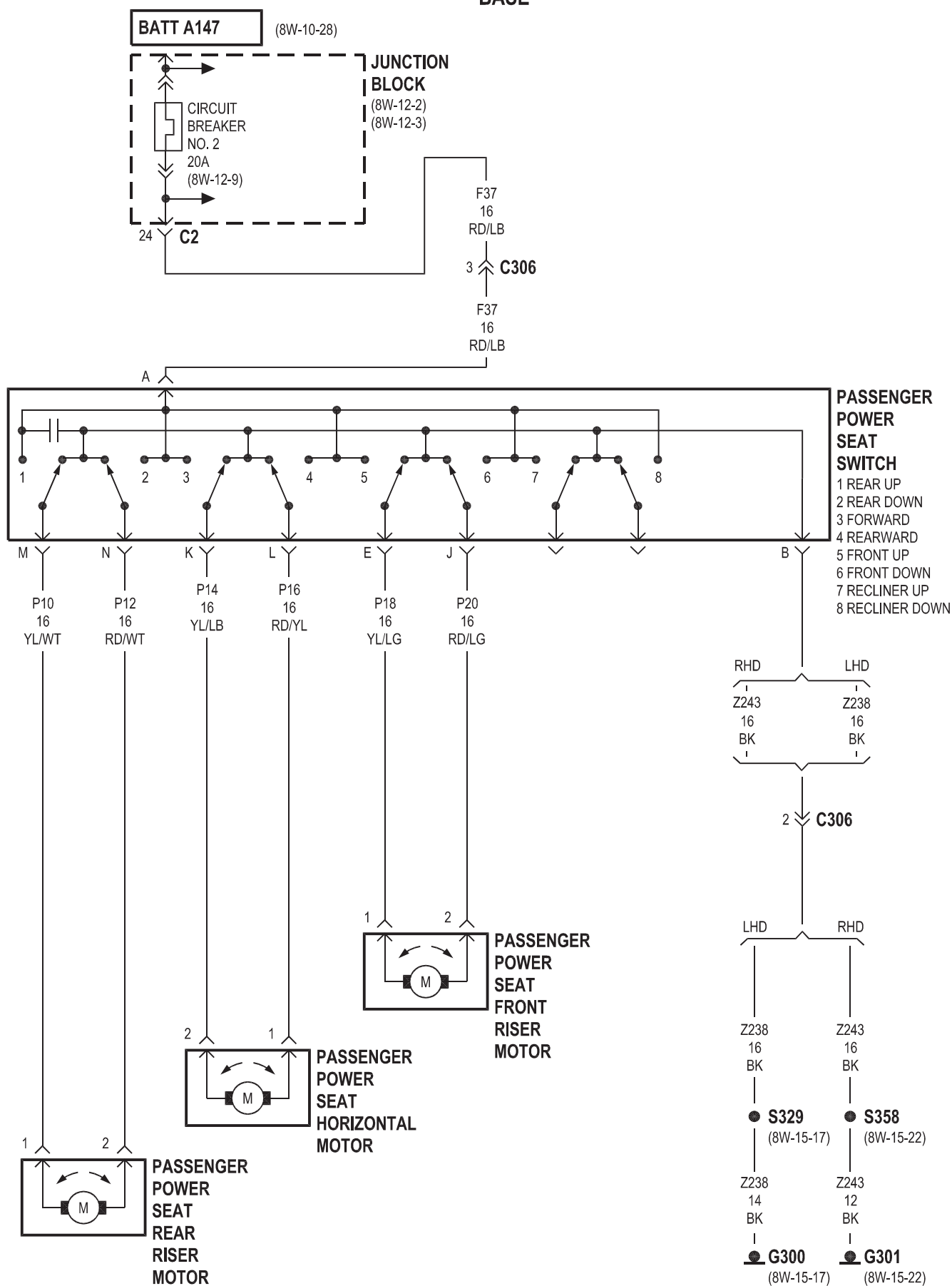
## 8W-63 POWER SEATS

<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
Body Control Module . . . . .	8W-63-16
Circuit Breaker No. 2 . . . . .	8W-63-2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 14, 15
Driver Door Module . . . . .	8W-63-8
Driver Heated Seat Back . . . . .	8W-63-10, 11
Driver Heated Seat Cushion . . . . .	8W-63-10, 11
Driver Heated Seat Switch . . . . .	8W-63-16
Driver Lumbar Motor . . . . .	8W-63-14, 15
Driver Lumbar Switch . . . . .	8W-63-14, 15
Driver Power Seat Front	
Riser Motor . . . . .	8W-63-2, 3, 5, 6, 9
Driver Power Seat Front Riser Motor	
Sensor . . . . .	8W-63-12
Driver Power Seat Horizontal	
Motor . . . . .	8W-63-2, 3, 5, 6, 9
Driver Power Seat Horizontal	
Motor Sensor . . . . .	8W-63-12, 13
Driver Power Seat Rear	
Riser Motor . . . . .	8W-63-2, 3, 5, 6, 9
Driver Power Seat Rear	
Riser Motor Sensor . . . . .	8W-63-12
Driver Power Seat Recliner Motor . . . . .	8W-63-9
Driver Power Seat Recliner Motor	
Sensor . . . . .	8W-63-12, 13

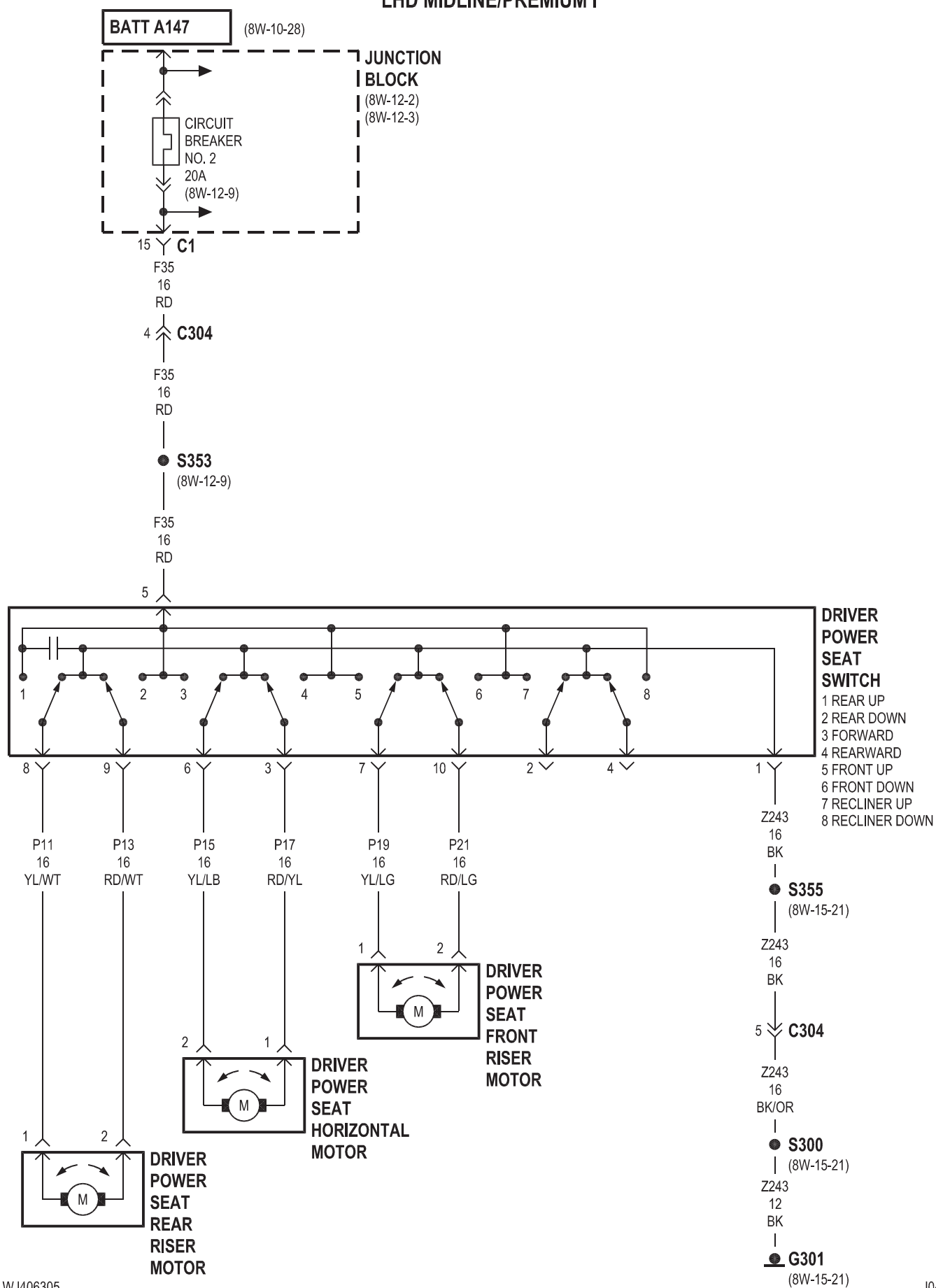
<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
Driver Power Seat Switch . . . . .	8W-63-2
Driver Power Seat Switch . . . . .	8W-63-3, 5, 6, 9
Fuse 20 . . . . .	8W-63-16
G200 . . . . .	8W-63-16
G300 . . . . .	8W-63-3, 4, 6, 7, 8, 9, 14, 15
G301 . . . . .	8W-63-2, 4, 5, 7, 8, 9, 14, 15
Junction Block . . . . .	8W-63-2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 14, 15, 16
Memory Set Switch . . . . .	8W-63-8
Passenger Heated Seat Back . . . . .	8W-63-10, 11
Passenger Heated Seat Cushion . . . . .	8W-63-10, 11
Passenger Heated Seat Switch . . . . .	8W-63-16
Passenger Lumbar Motor . . . . .	8W-63-14, 15
Passenger Lumbar Switch . . . . .	8W-63-14, 15
Passenger Power Seat Front	
Riser Motor . . . . .	8W-63-4, 7
Passenger Power Seat Horizontal	
Motor . . . . .	8W-63-4, 7
Passenger Power Seat Rear Riser	
Motor . . . . .	8W-63-4, 7
Passenger Power Seat Recliner Motor . . . . .	8W-63-7
Passenger Power Seat Switch . . . . .	8W-63-4, 7
Seat Module . . . . .	8W-63-8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13

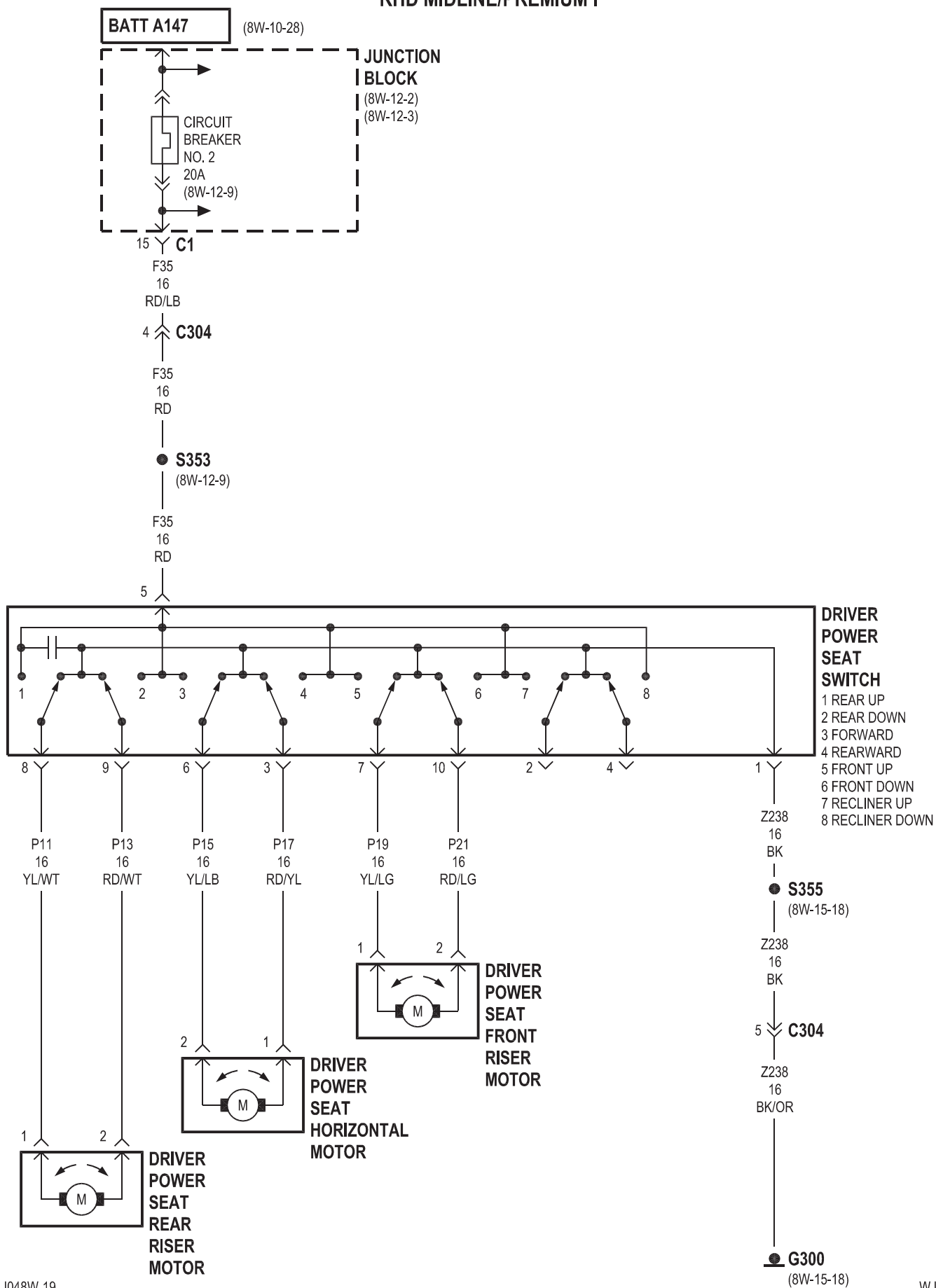


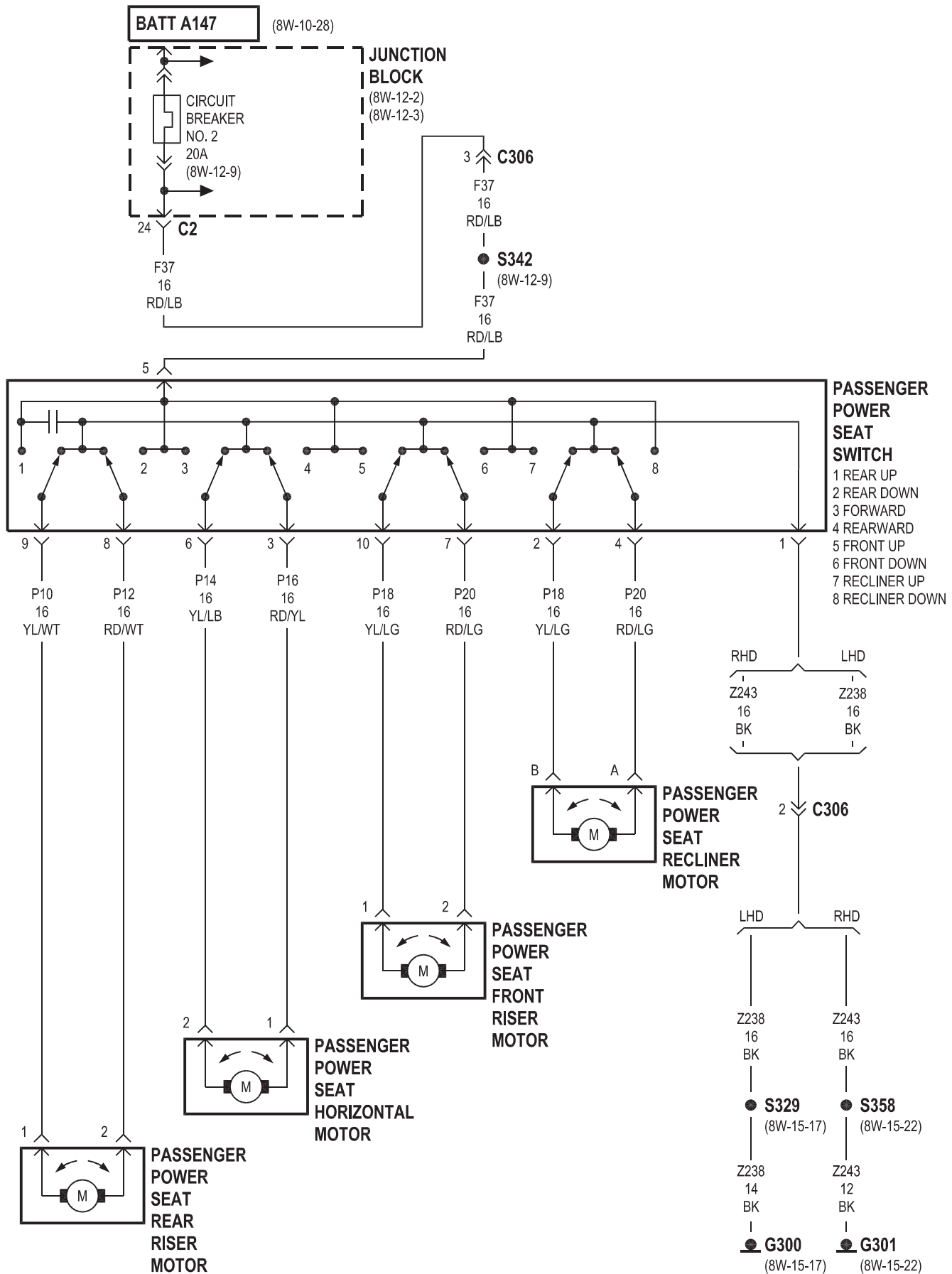


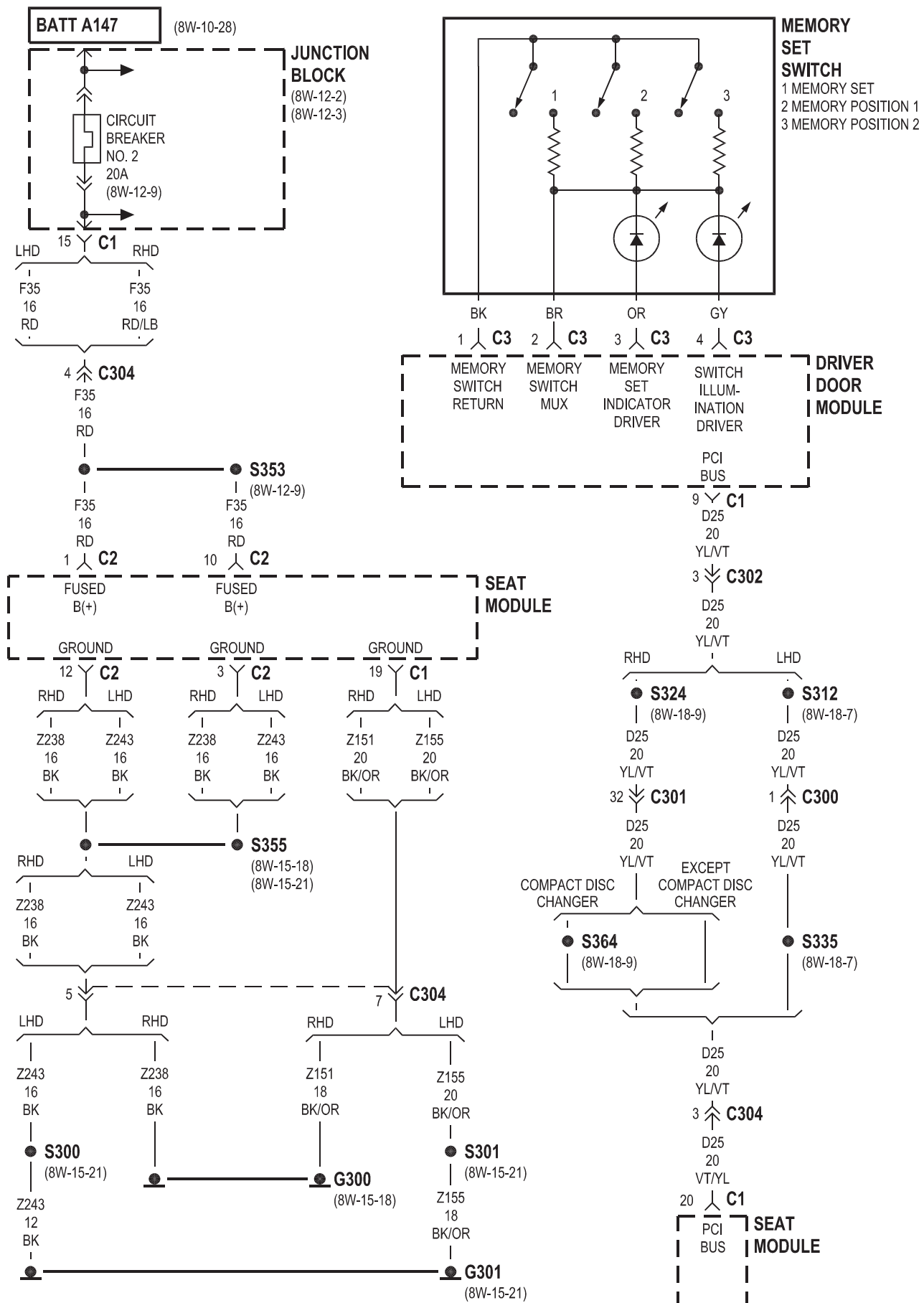


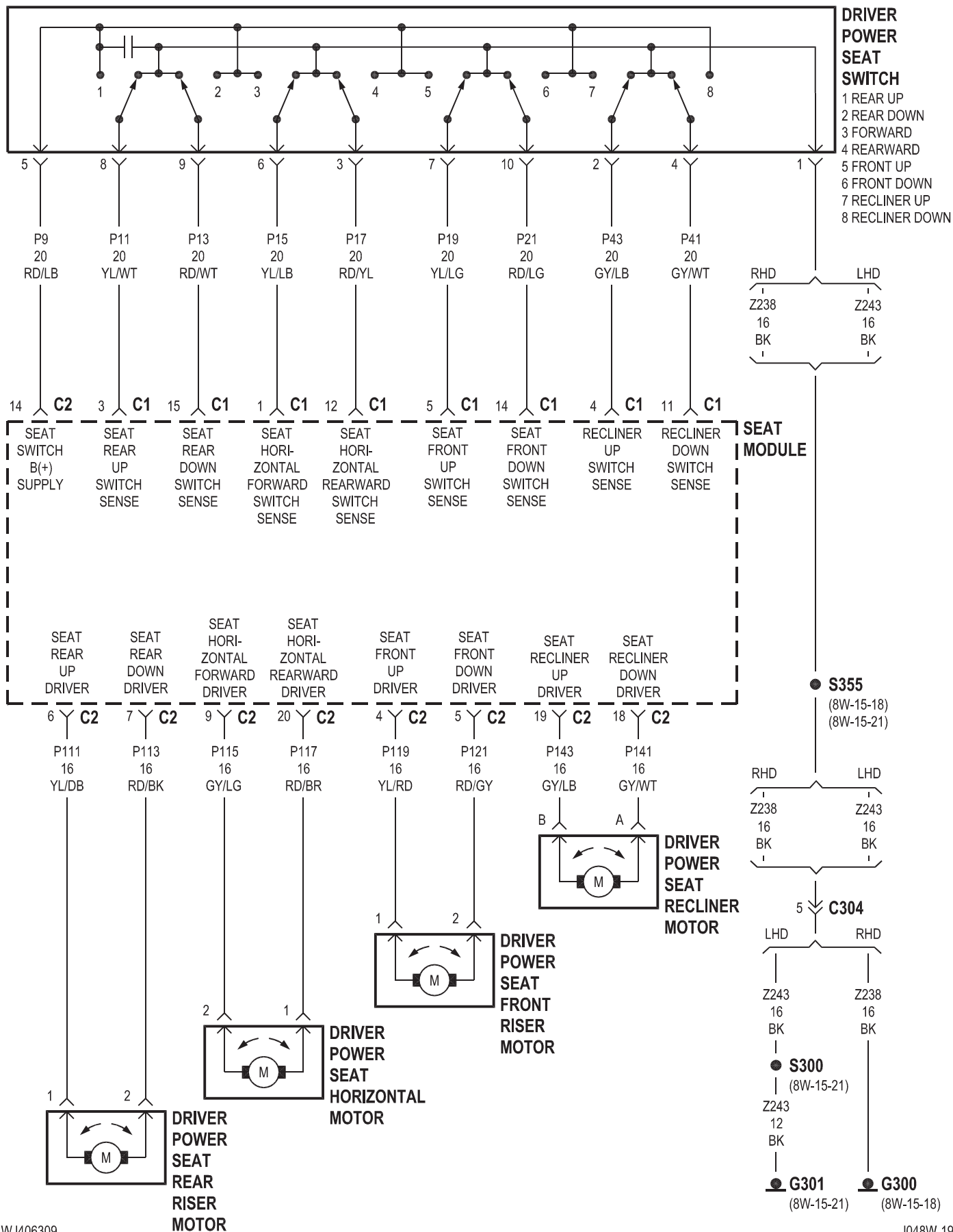


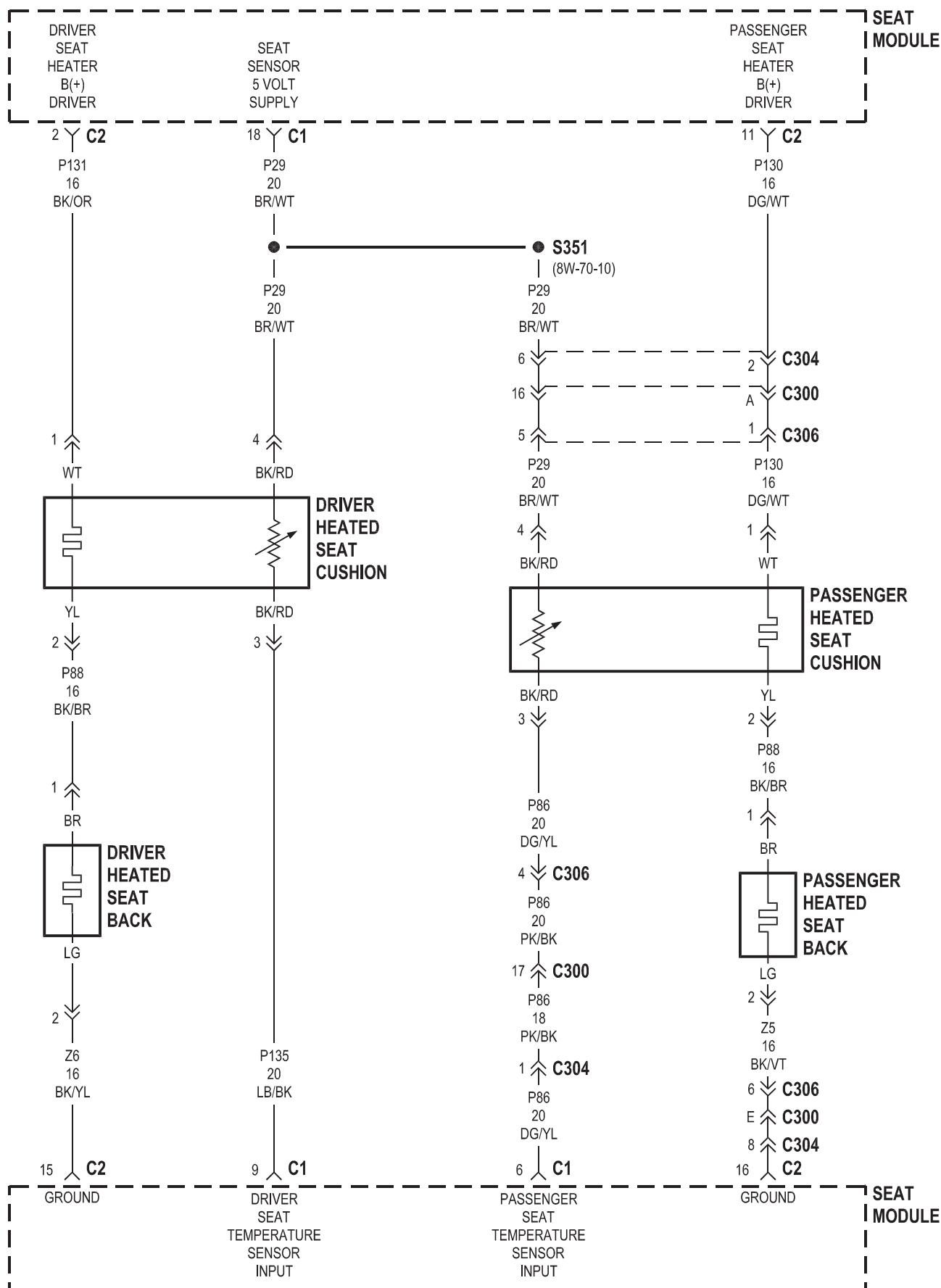


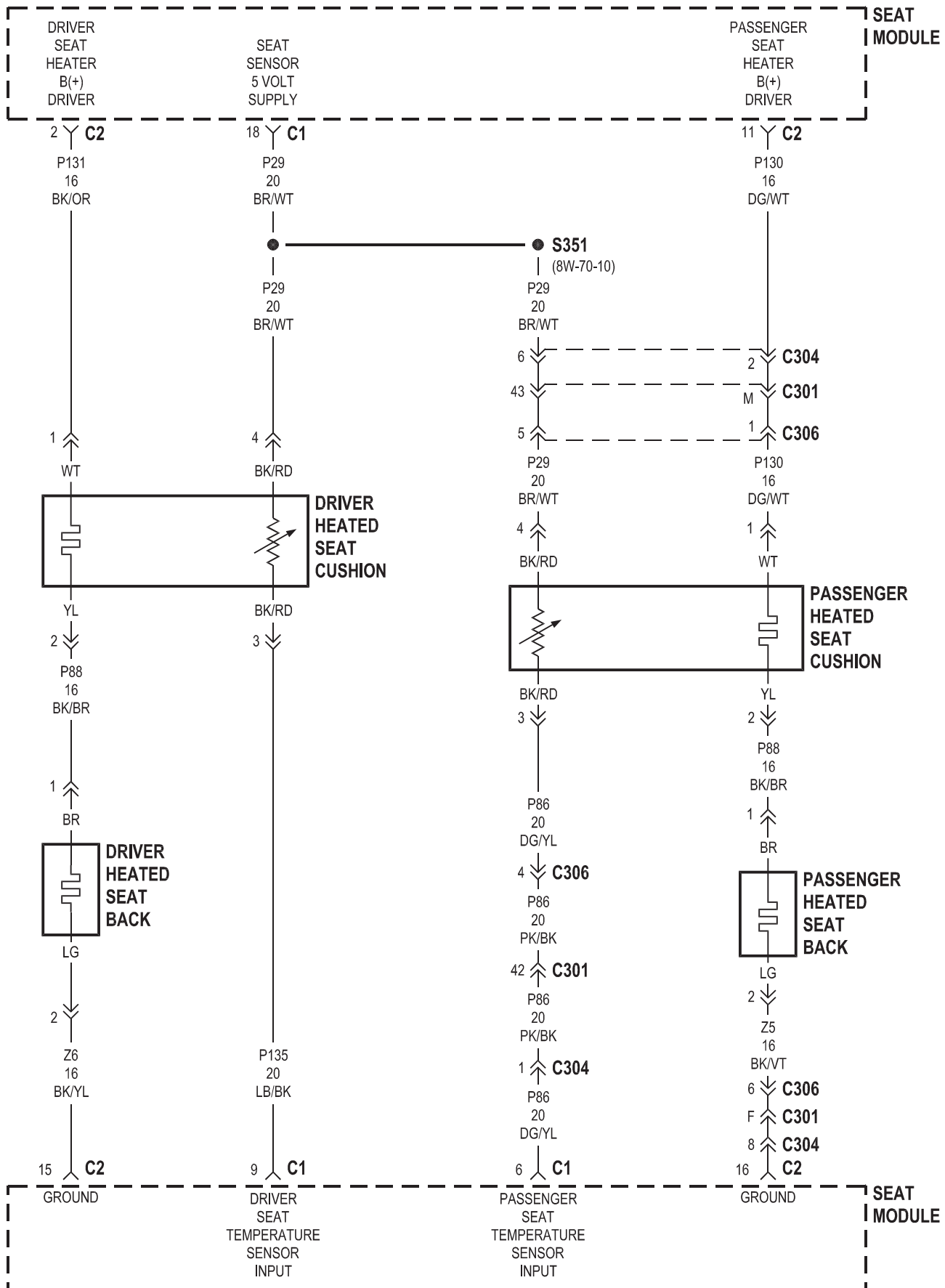




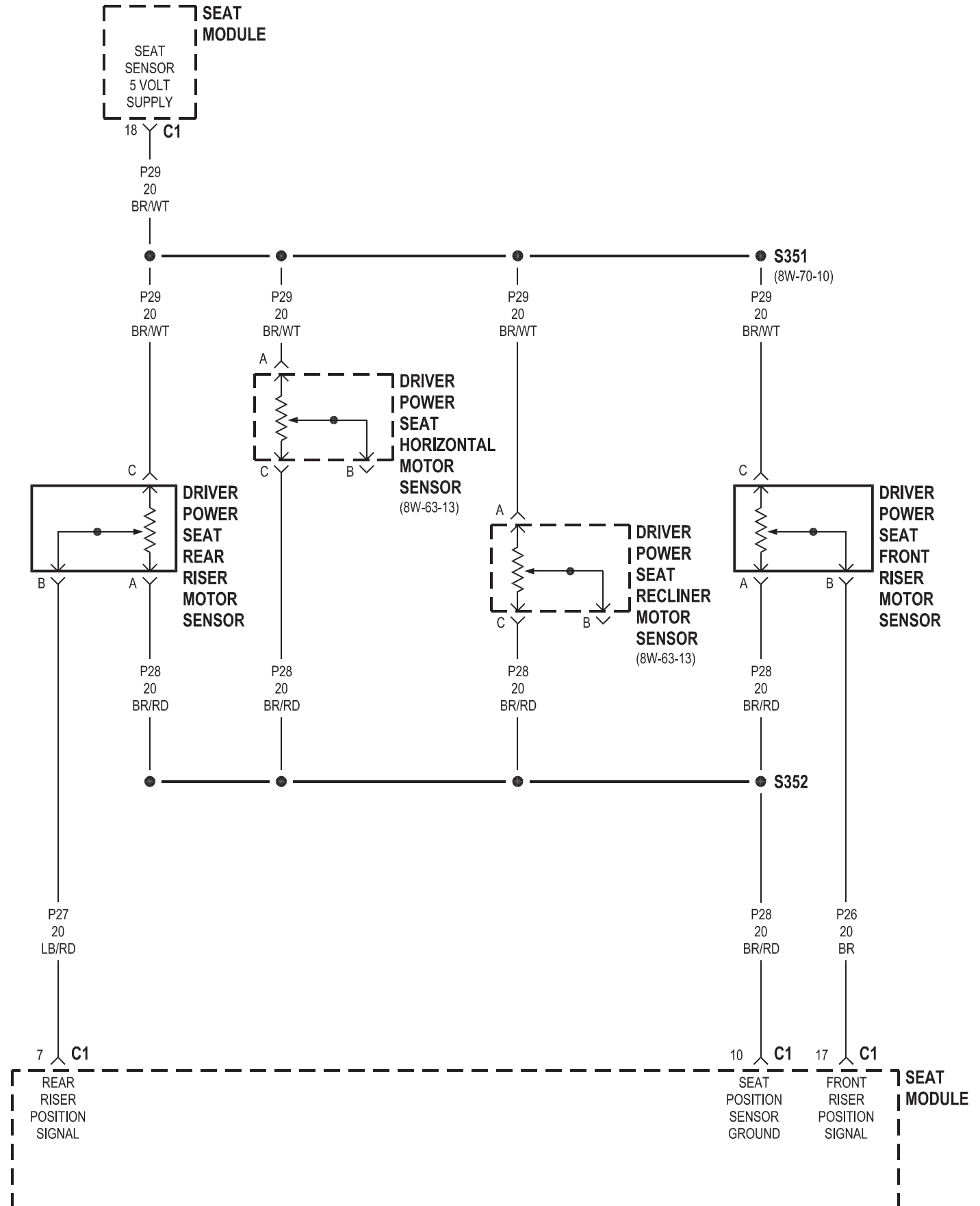


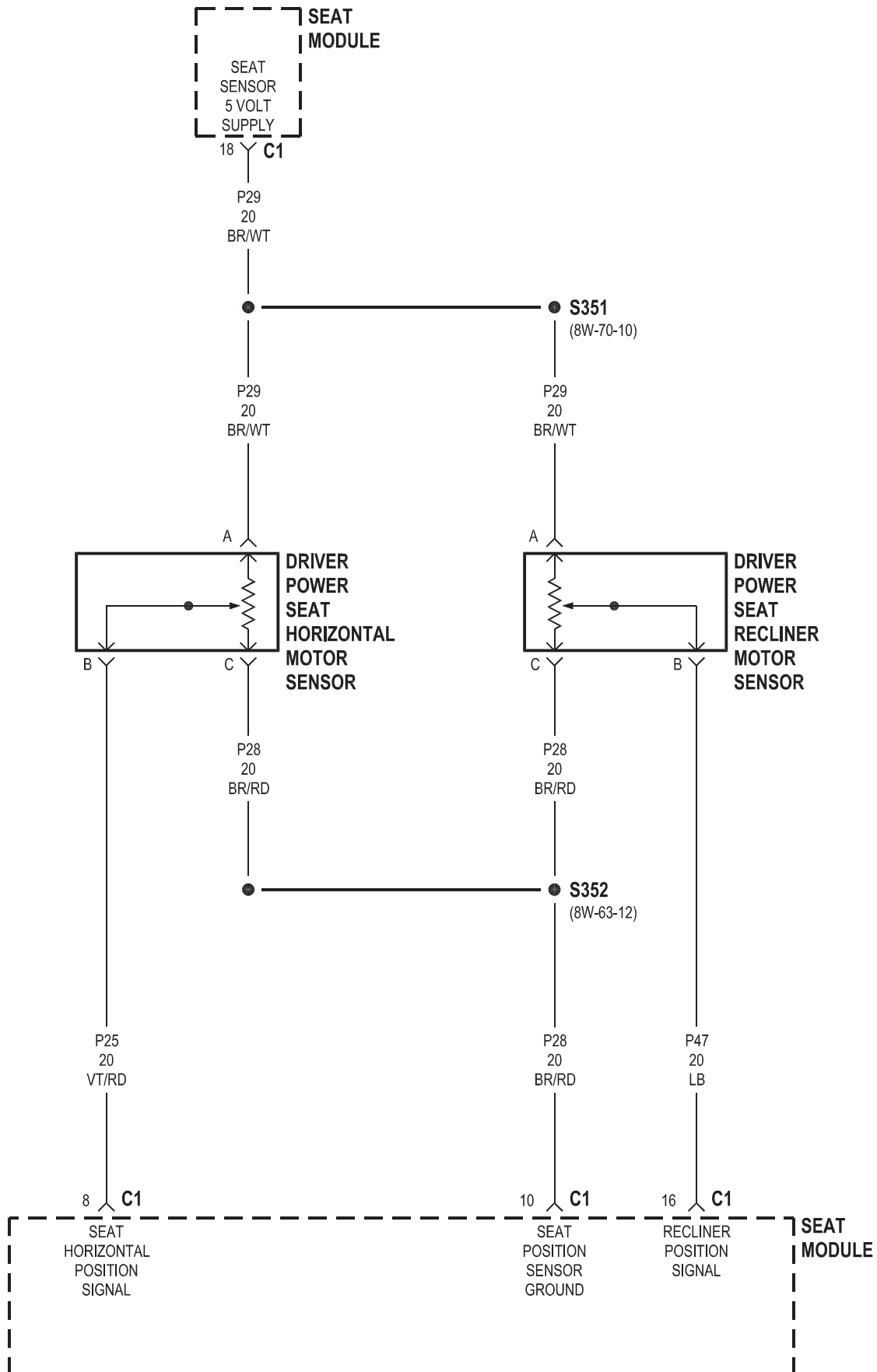


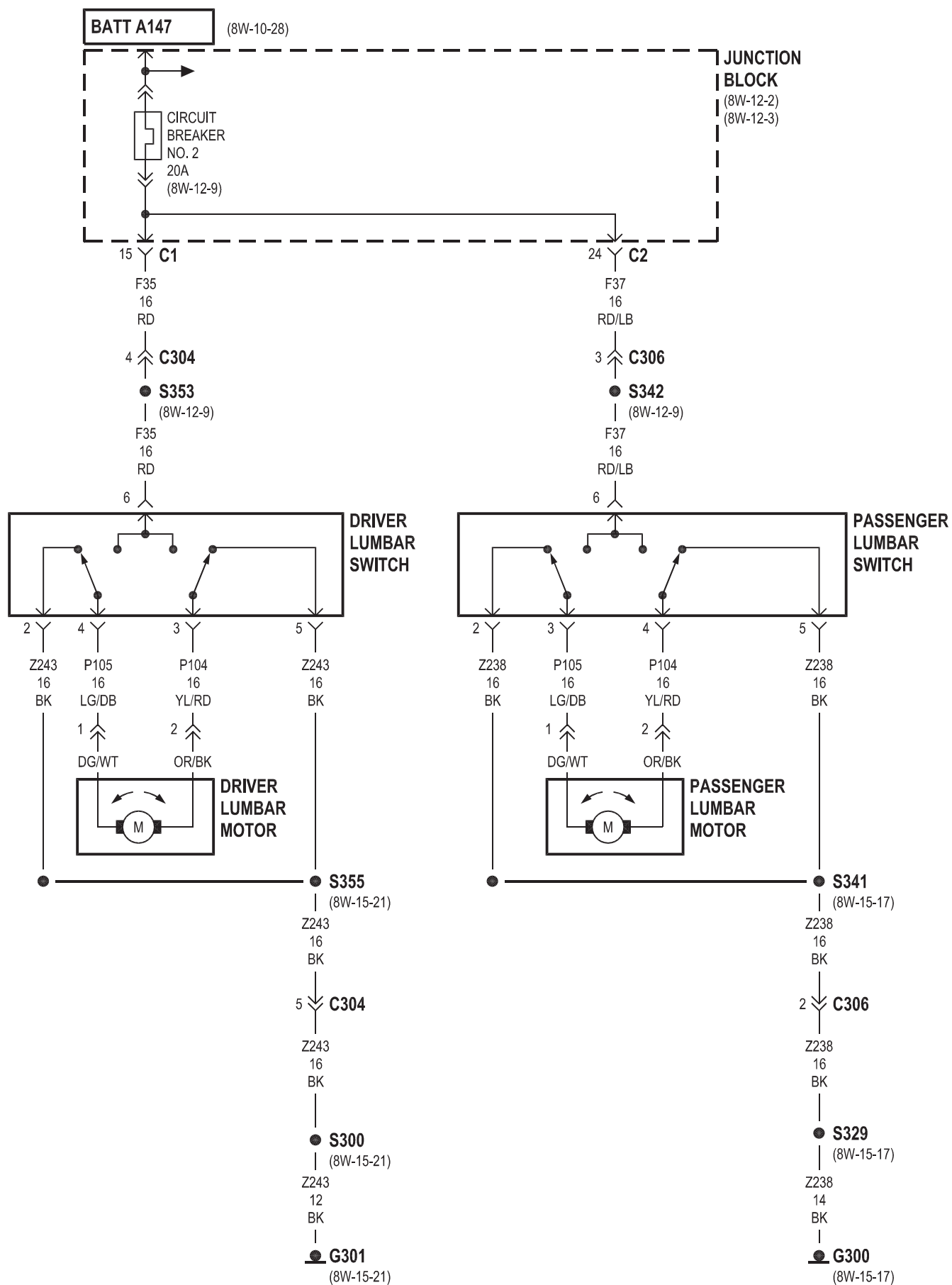


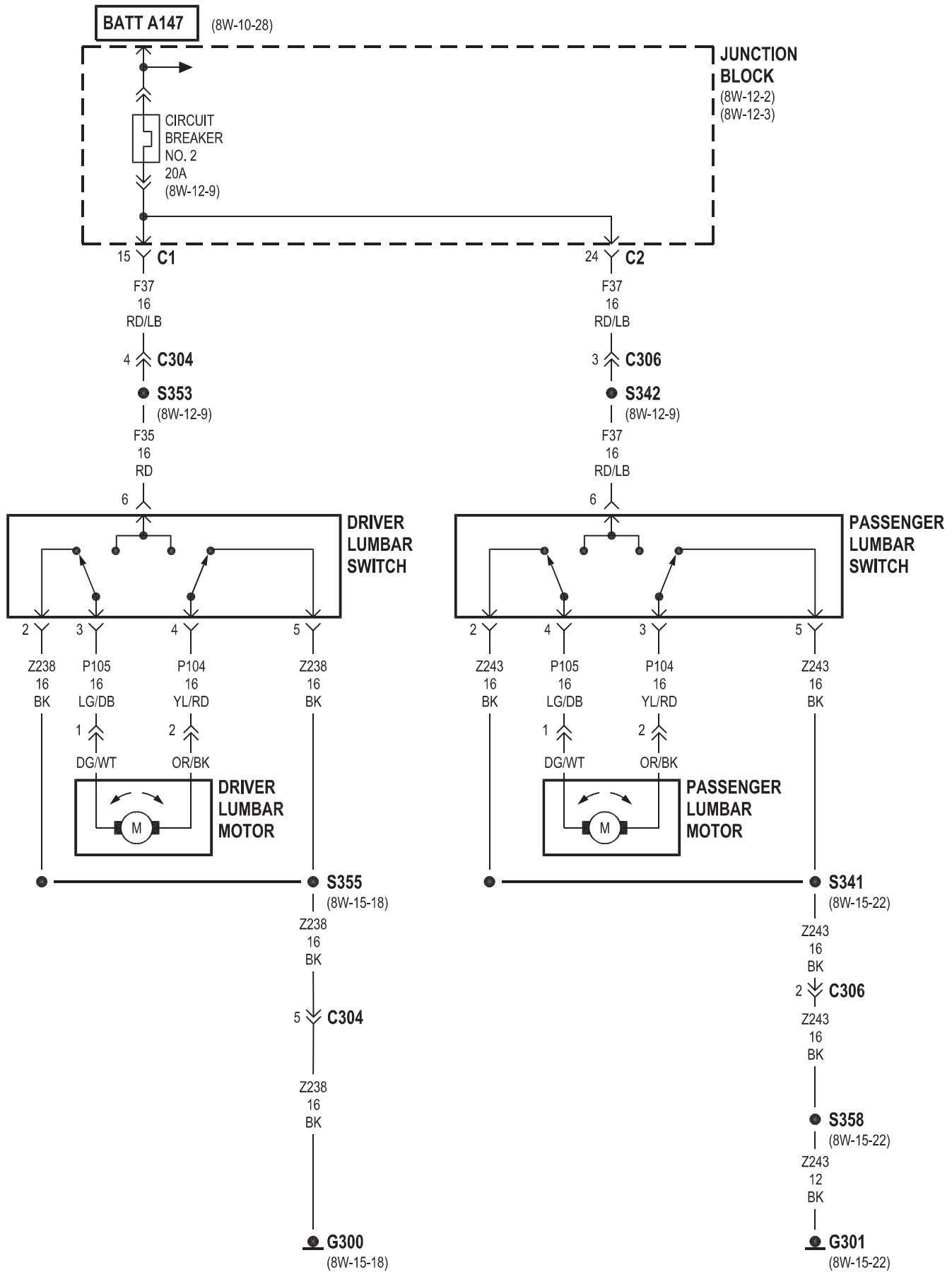


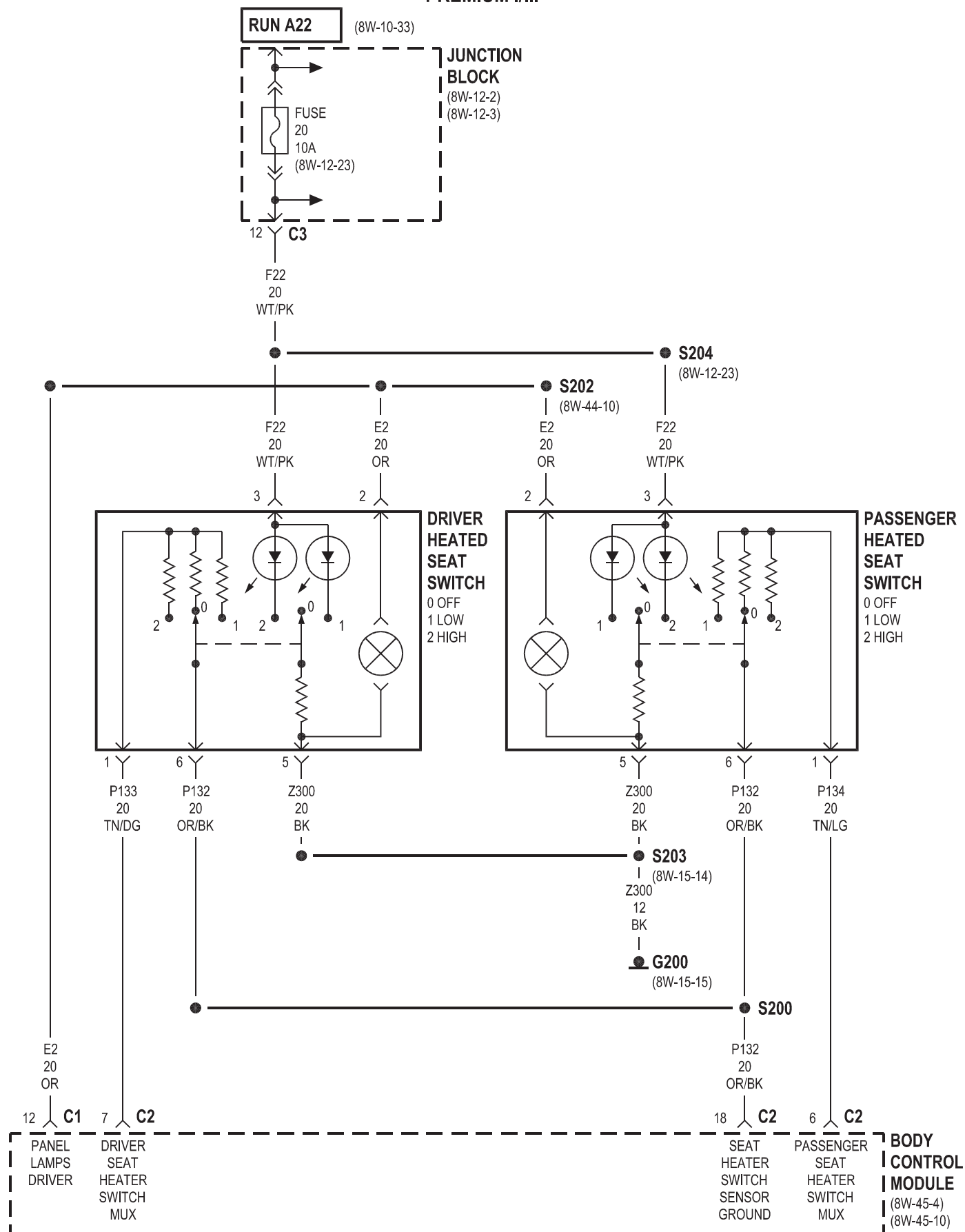






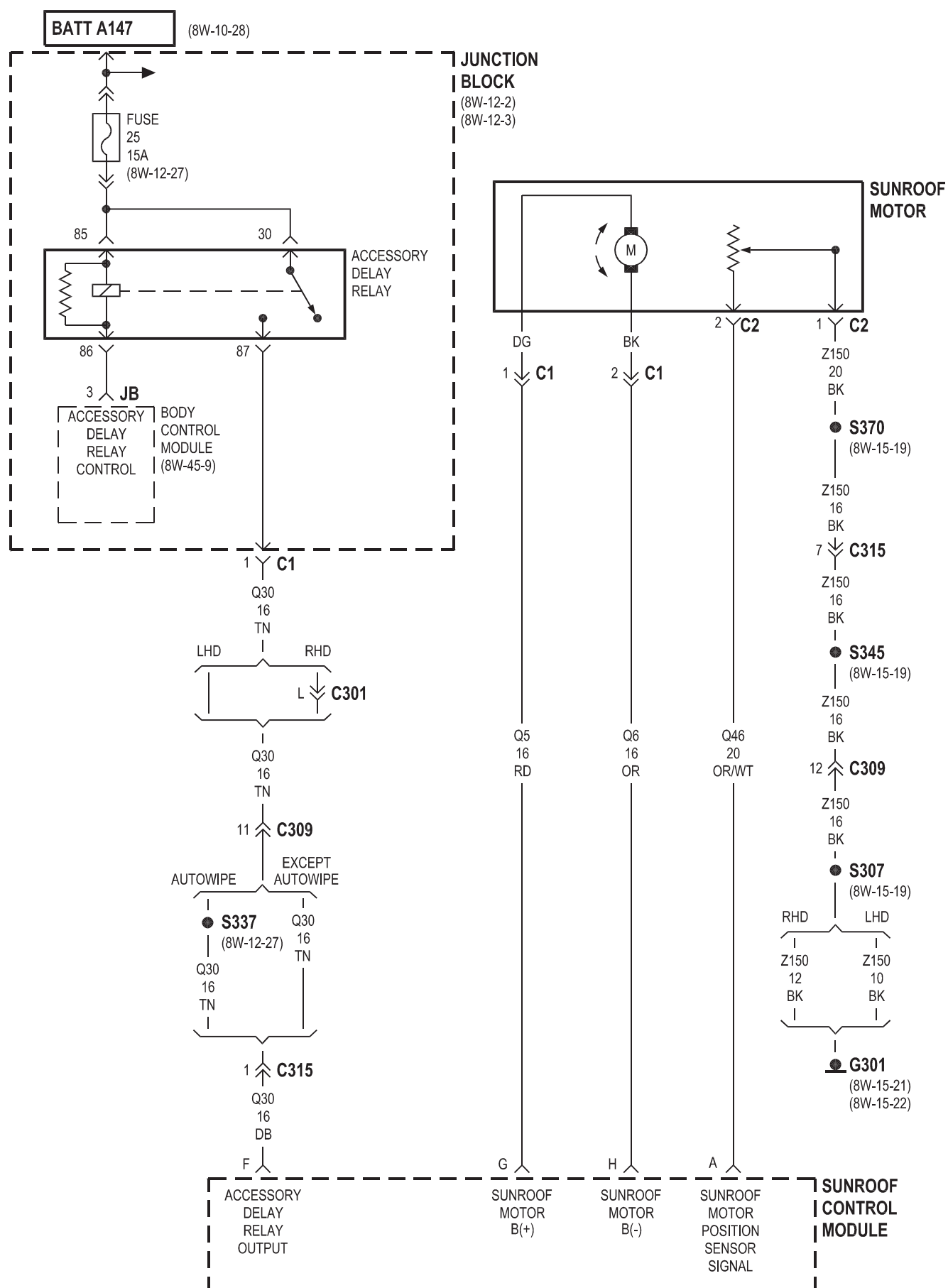




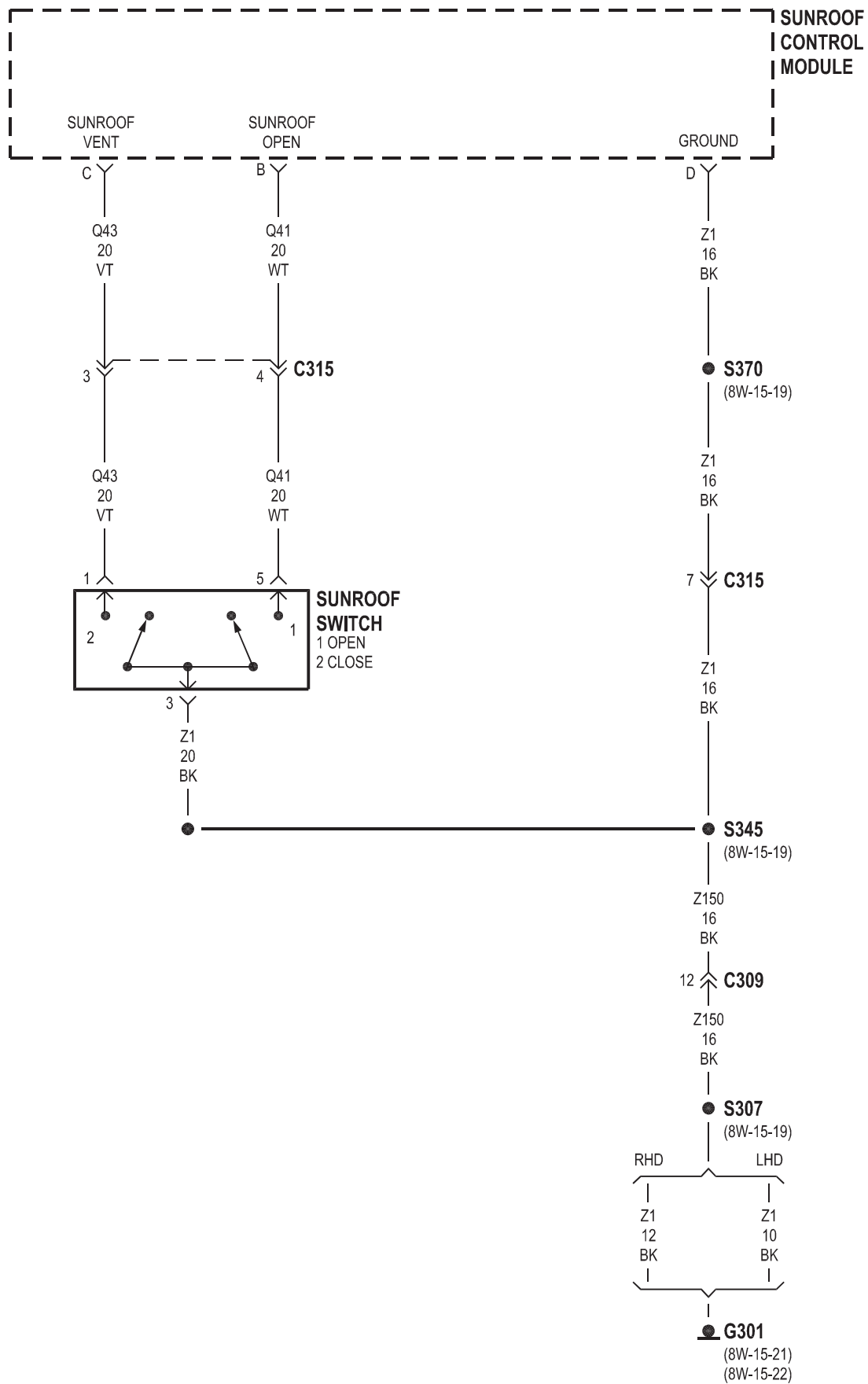


8W-64 POWER SUNROOF

Component	Page	Component	Page
Accessory Delay Relay . . . . .	8W-64-2	Junction Block . . . . .	8W-64-2
Body Control Module . . . . .	8W-64-2	Sunroof Control Module . . . . .	8W-64-2, 3
Fuse 25 . . . . .	8W-64-2	Sunroof Motor . . . . .	8W-64-2
G301 . . . . .	8W-64-2, 3	Sunroof Switch . . . . .	8W-64-3



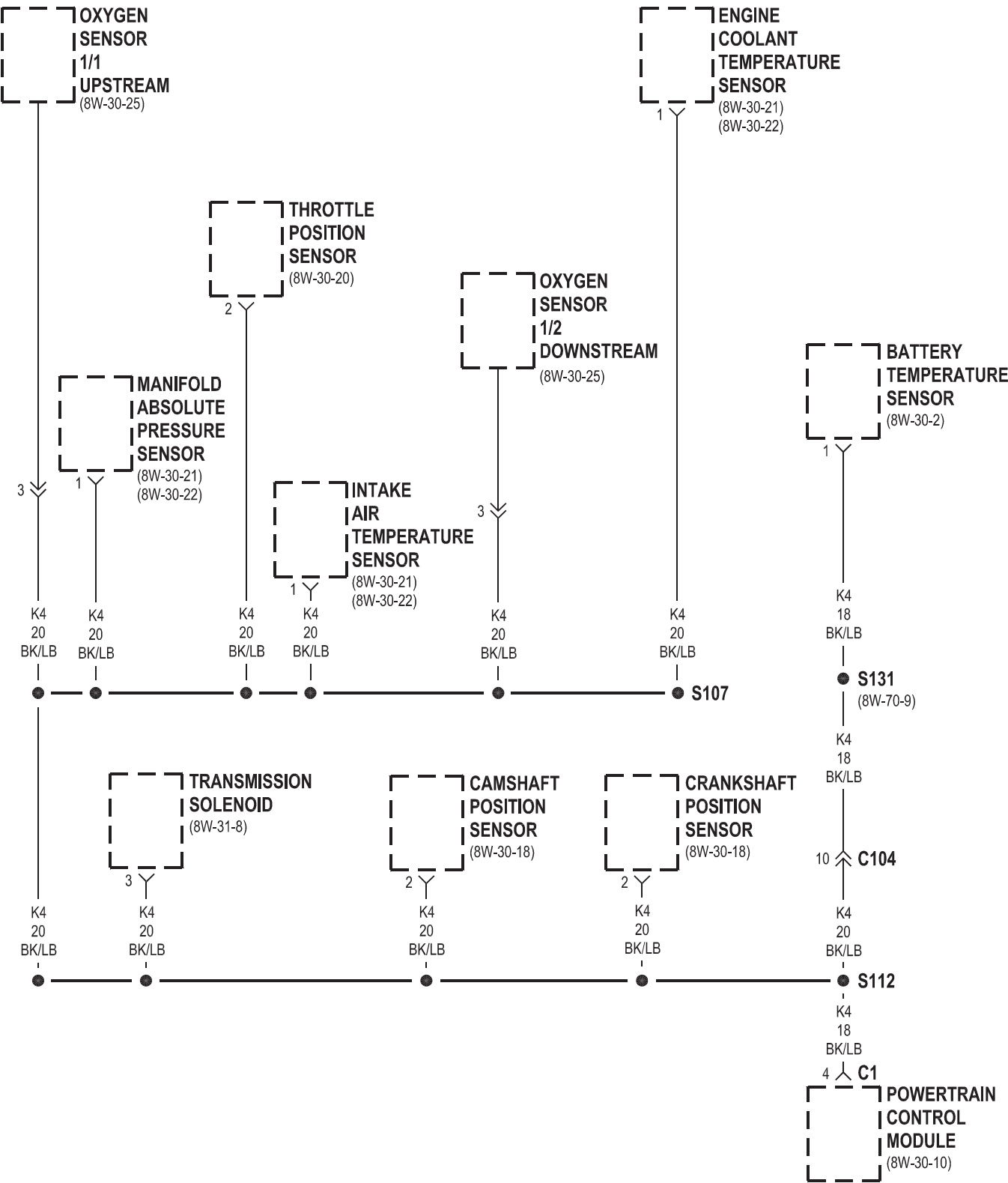


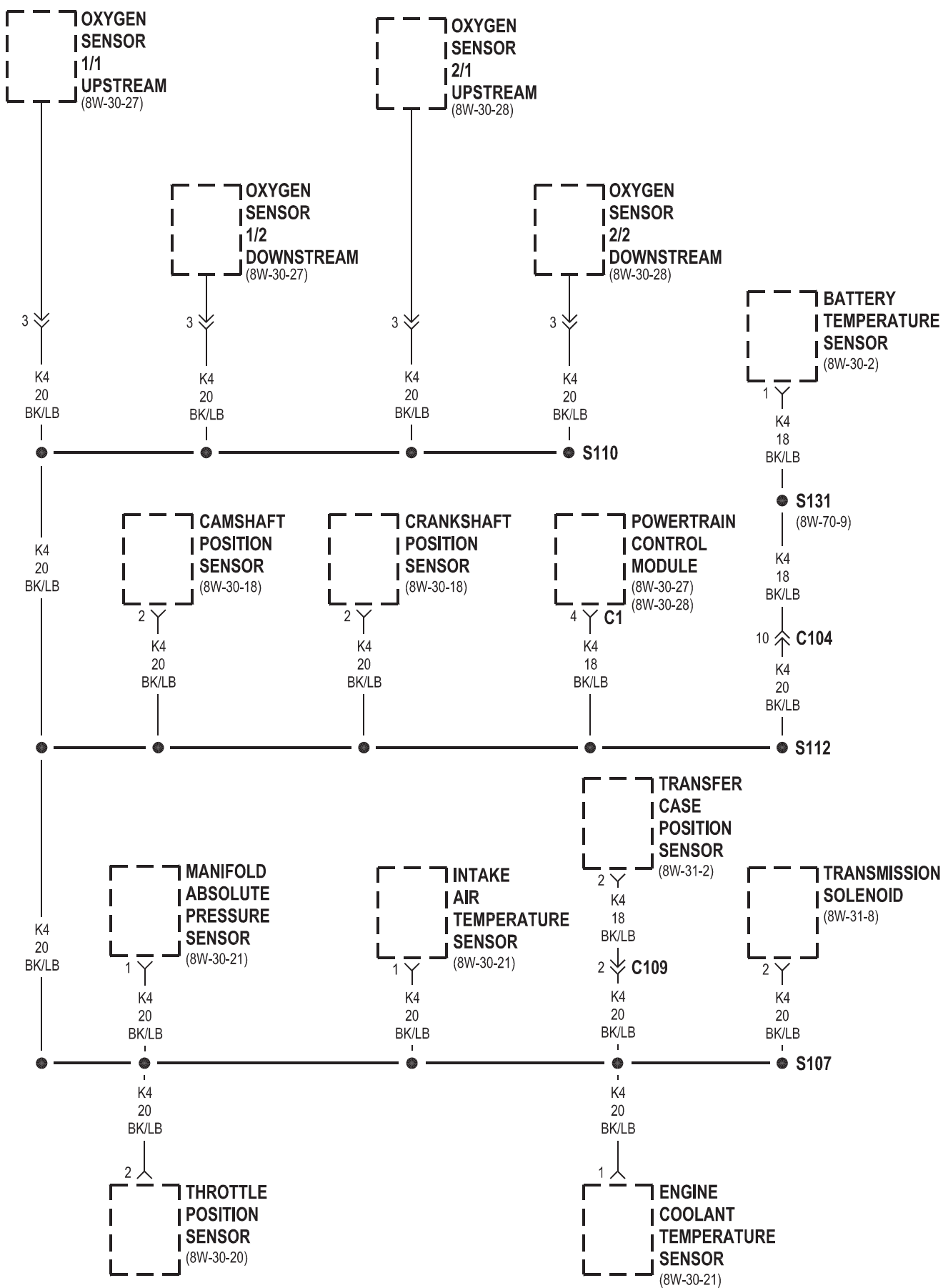


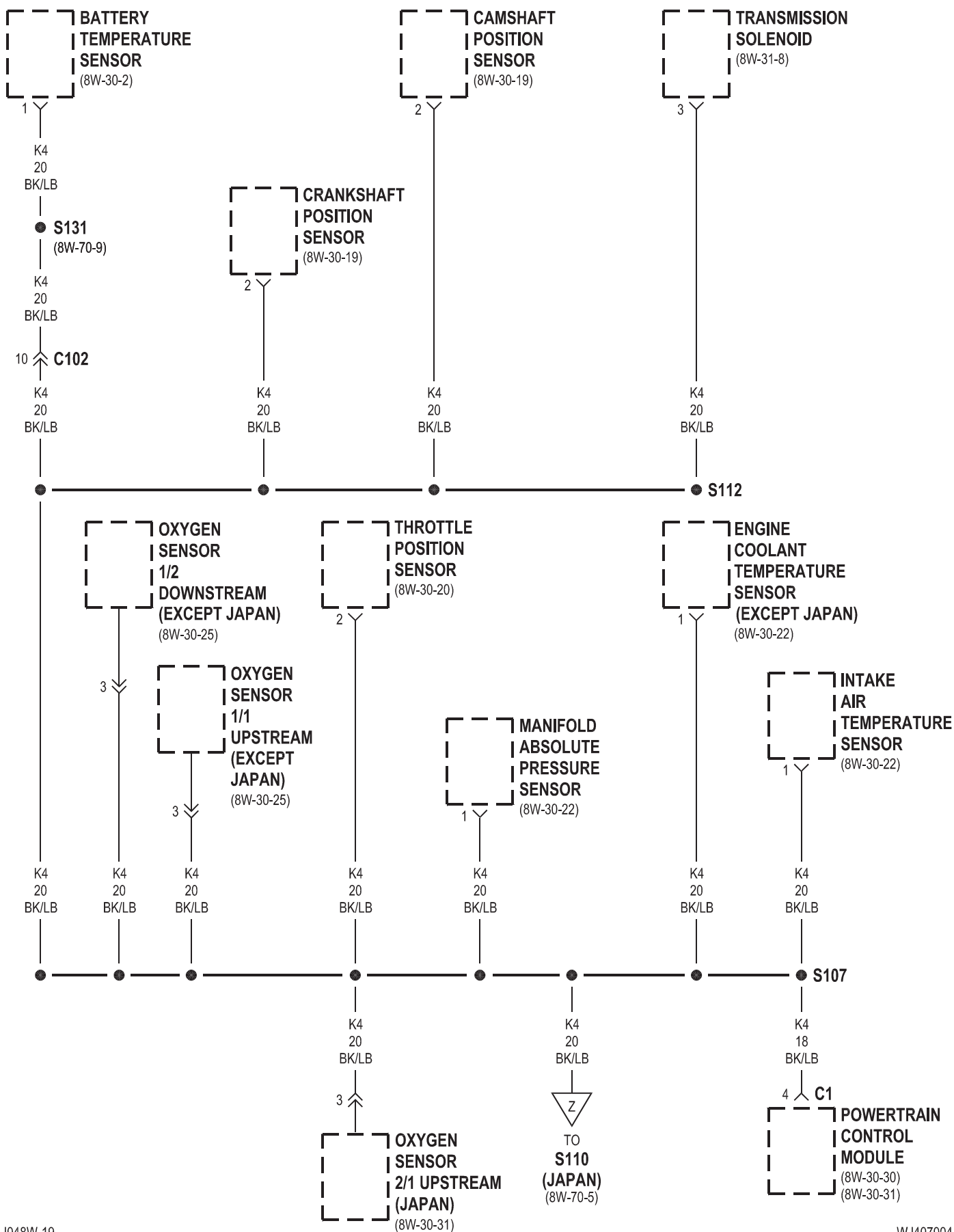


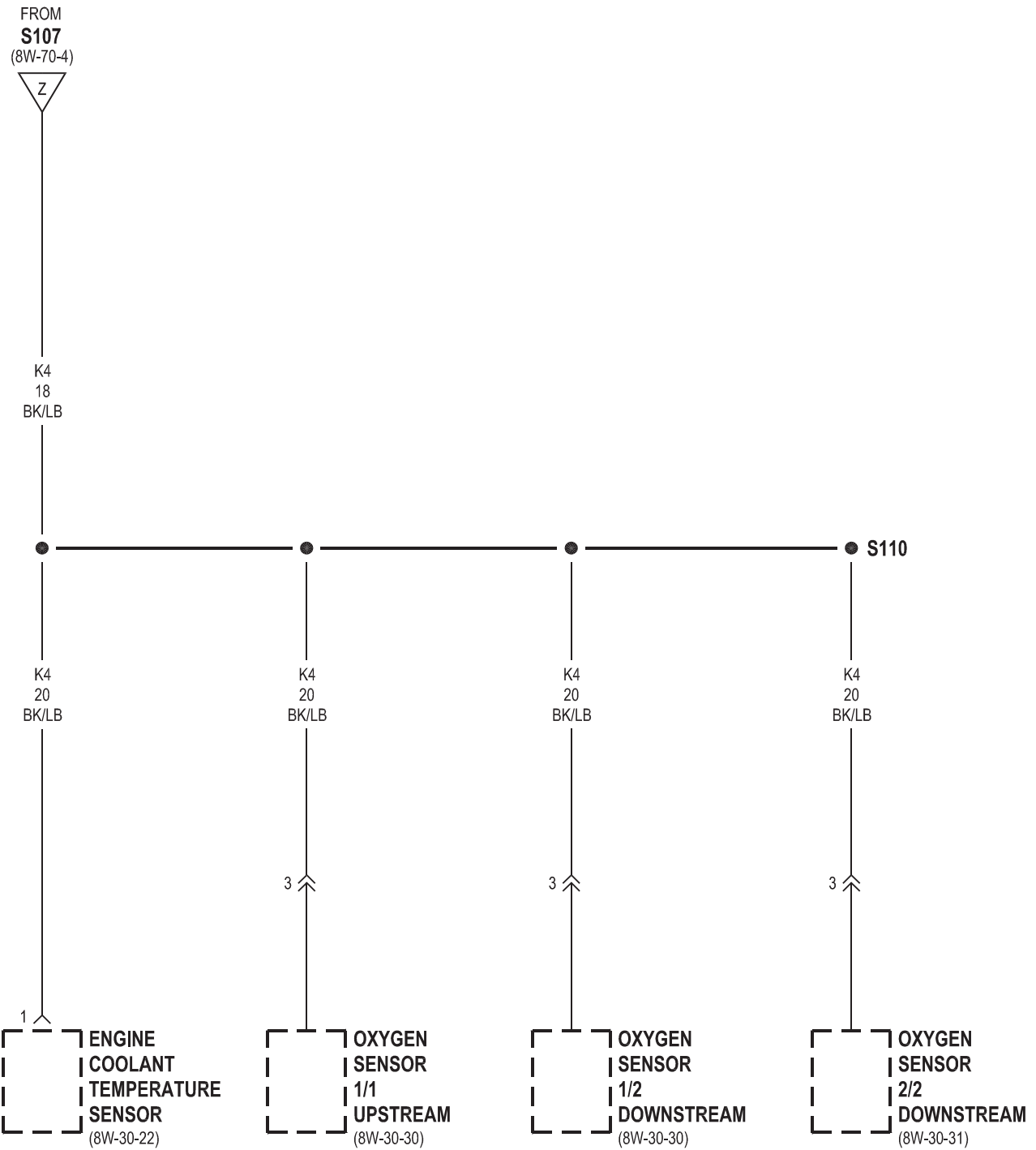
## 8W-70 SPLICE INFORMATION

Component	Page	Component	Page
S100	8W-10-12, 13	S222	8W-30-44
S102	8W-30-21, 22, 52	S223	8W-18-2, 3, 4
S104	8W-15-4	S224	8W-15-17, 18
S105	8W-30-20	S226	8W-18-5, 8
S106	8W-10-21, 22, 24, 25	S300	8W-15-21
S107	8W-70-2, 3, 4, 6, 7	S301	8W-15-21
S109	8W-10-26	S302	8W-61-5, 6
S110	8W-70-3, 5	S303	8W-61-5, 6
S111	8W-10-22, 25	S304	8W-12-17
S112	8W-70-2, 3, 4, 6, 7	S305	8W-18-7, 10
S113	8W-31-13	S306	8W-12-29
S114	8W-15-2	S307	8W-15-19
S115	8W-10-18	S308	8W-12-39
S116	8W-12-19	S309	8W-12-12
S118	8W-10-27	S310	8W-51-8, 9
S119	8W-31-9, 10	S311	8W-51-5
S120	8W-30-20	S312	8W-18-7, 10
S121	8W-10-26	S313	8W-51-5, 6
S122	8W-31-5, 6	S314	8W-33-2
S123	8W-10-20, 23	S315	8W-70-8, 9
S124	8W-10-27	S316	8W-12-19
S125	8W-30-6	S317	8W-61-5
S126	8W-30-24	S318	8W-61-5
S127	8W-10-32	S323	8W-18-3
S128	8W-10-20, 23	S324	8W-18-6, 9
S130	8W-18-6, 9	S326	8W-12-12, 13
S131	8W-70-8, 9	S327	8W-12-34, 35
S132	8W-15-9, 10, 11	S328	8W-51-8
S133	8W-15-9, 10, 11	S329	8W-15-17
S134	8W-15-6, 7	S330	8W-15-16
S135	8W-10-19	S331	8W-15-17, 18
S136	8W-10-19	S332	8W-15-17, 18
S137	8W-10-36	S333	8W-47-3
S139	8W-15-3	S334	8W-12-11
S141	8W-15-6	S335	8W-18-7
S142	8W-12-34, 35	S336	8W-15-16
S143	8W-12-34, 35	S337	8W-12-27
S145	8W-70-8	S338	8W-15-16
S147	8W-30-58	S339	8W-61-5, 6
S151	8W-15-5	S340	8W-61-5, 6
S152	8W-15-8	S341	8W-15-17, 22
S153	8W-12-14	S342	8W-12-9
S154	8W-12-36	S343	8W-12-13
S155	8W-12-36	S345	8W-15-19
S156	8W-12-14	S346	8W-12-17
S158	8W-70-7	S347	8W-12-32
S160	8W-30-11	S348	8W-12-26
S162	8W-10-31	S349	8W-12-25
S165	8W-51-7	S351	8W-70-10
S168	8W-10-30	S352	8W-63-12
S169	8W-30-54	S353	8W-12-9
S170	8W-30-51	S355	8W-15-18, 21
S171	8W-30-43	S356	8W-15-21, 22
S172	8W-30-43	S357	8W-15-16, 18
S174	8W-15-6, 7	S358	8W-15-22
S175	8W-21-2	S359	8W-50-9
S176	8W-10-30	S360	8W-47-4
S180	8W-10-21, 24	S361	8W-47-4
S181	8W-12-24	S362	8W-47-4
S200	8W-63-16	S363	8W-47-4
S201	8W-15-15	S364	8W-18-9
S202	8W-44-10	S365	8W-39-11
S203	8W-15-14	S366	8W-12-15
S204	8W-12-23	S367	8W-12-39
S205	8W-15-15	S368	8W-47-3
S206	8W-12-23	S369	8W-15-21, 22
S207	8W-12-16	S370	8W-15-19
S208	8W-44-8	S371	8W-12-22
S210	8W-18-5, 8	S372	8W-51-5
S211	8W-15-13	S374	8W-12-18
S212	8W-53-2	S375	8W-15-20
S213	8W-33-7	S376	8W-15-20
S214	8W-33-7	S377	8W-12-17
S215	8W-47-13	S378	8W-12-32
S216	8W-47-13	S379	8W-12-32
S217	8W-18-4	S380	8W-12-12, 13
S220	8W-45-7	S381	8W-15-20
S221	8W-12-11		

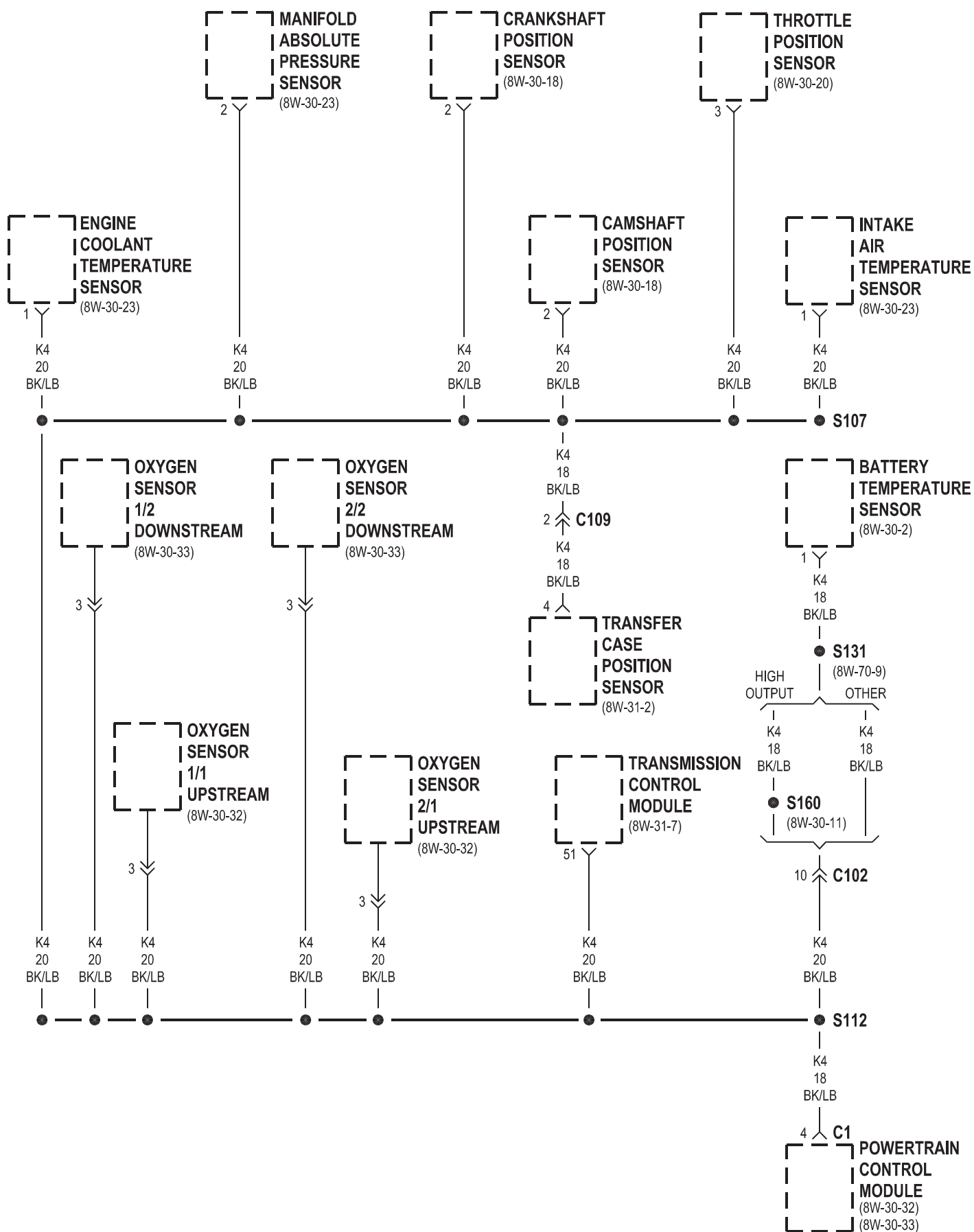


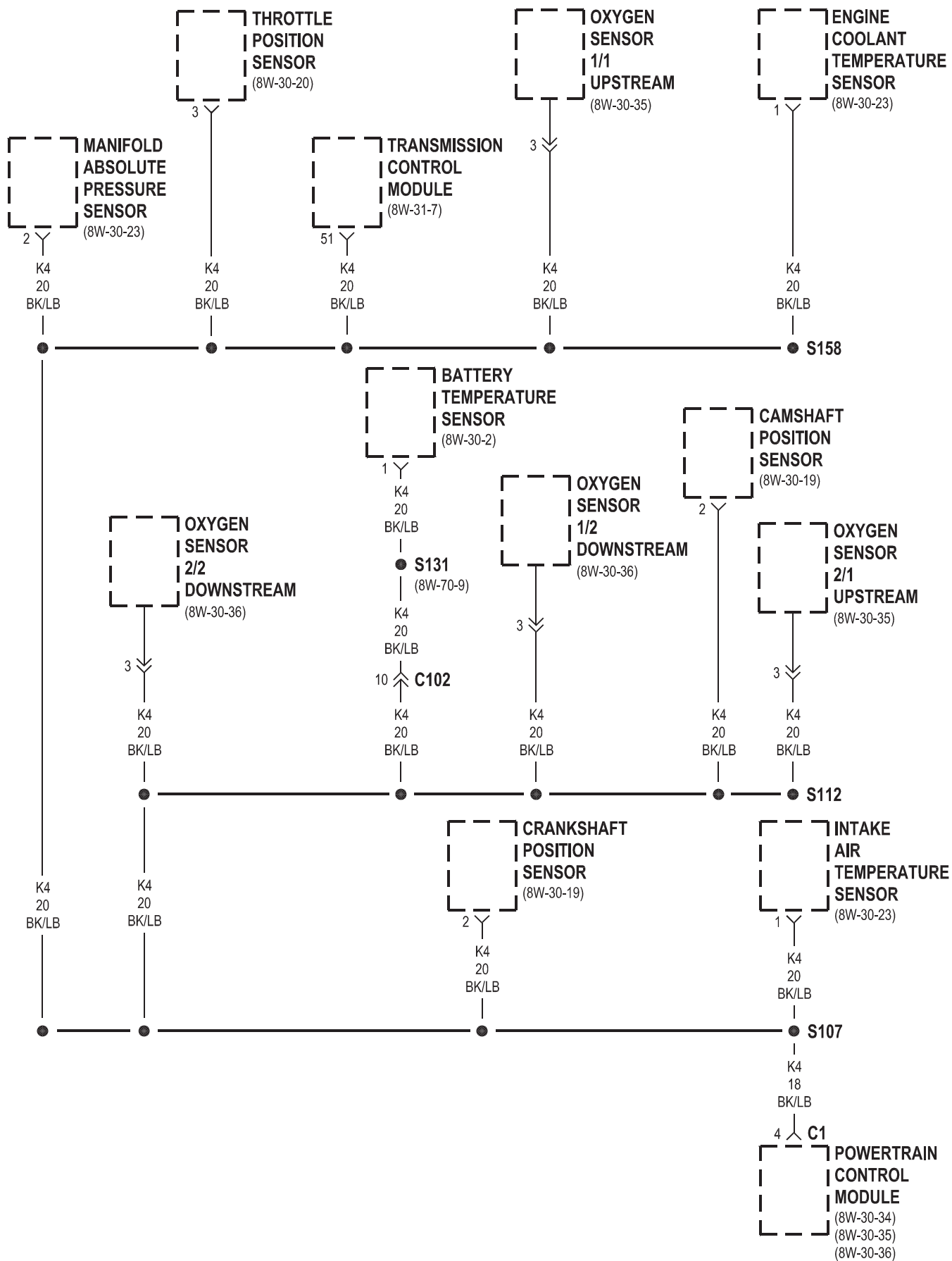


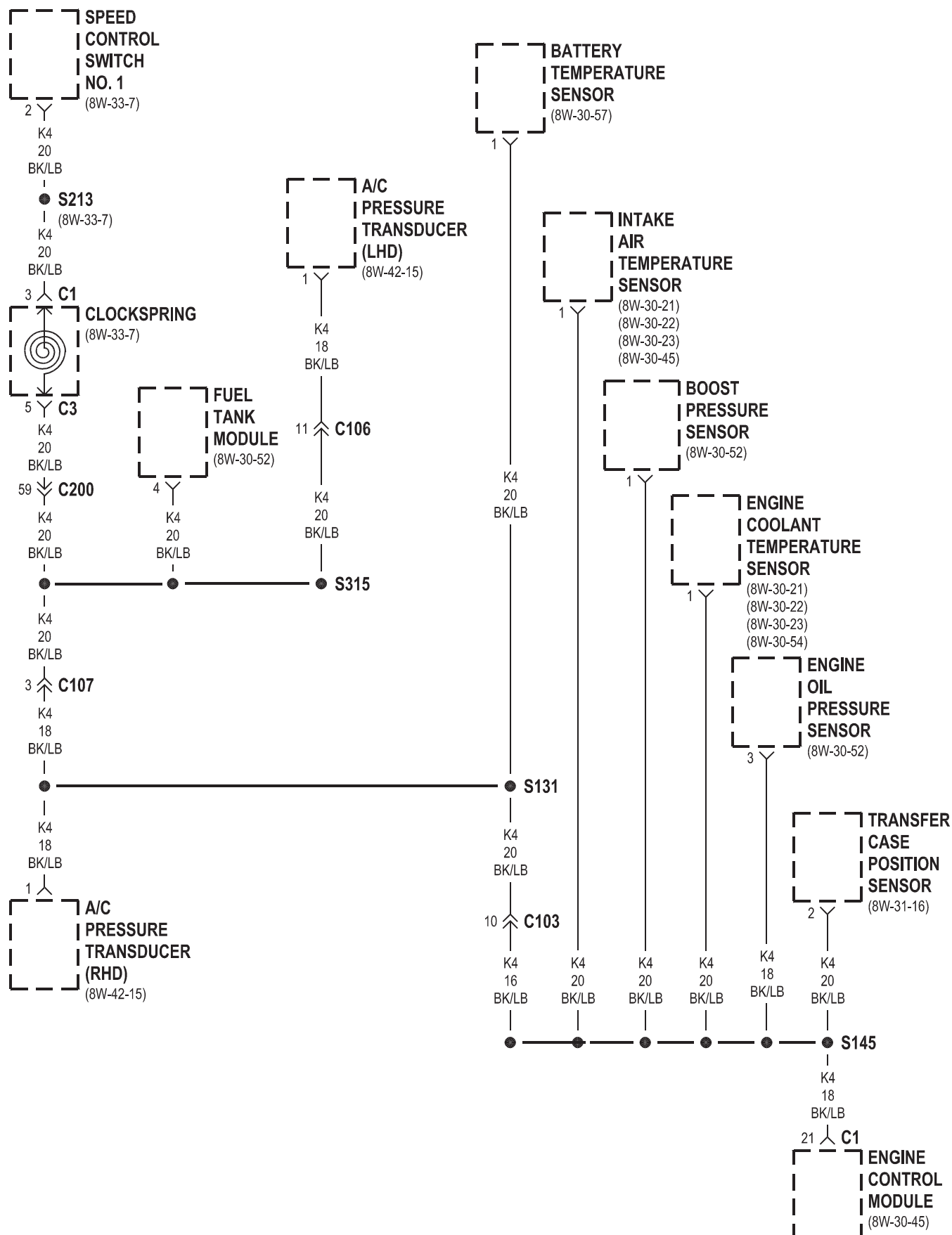


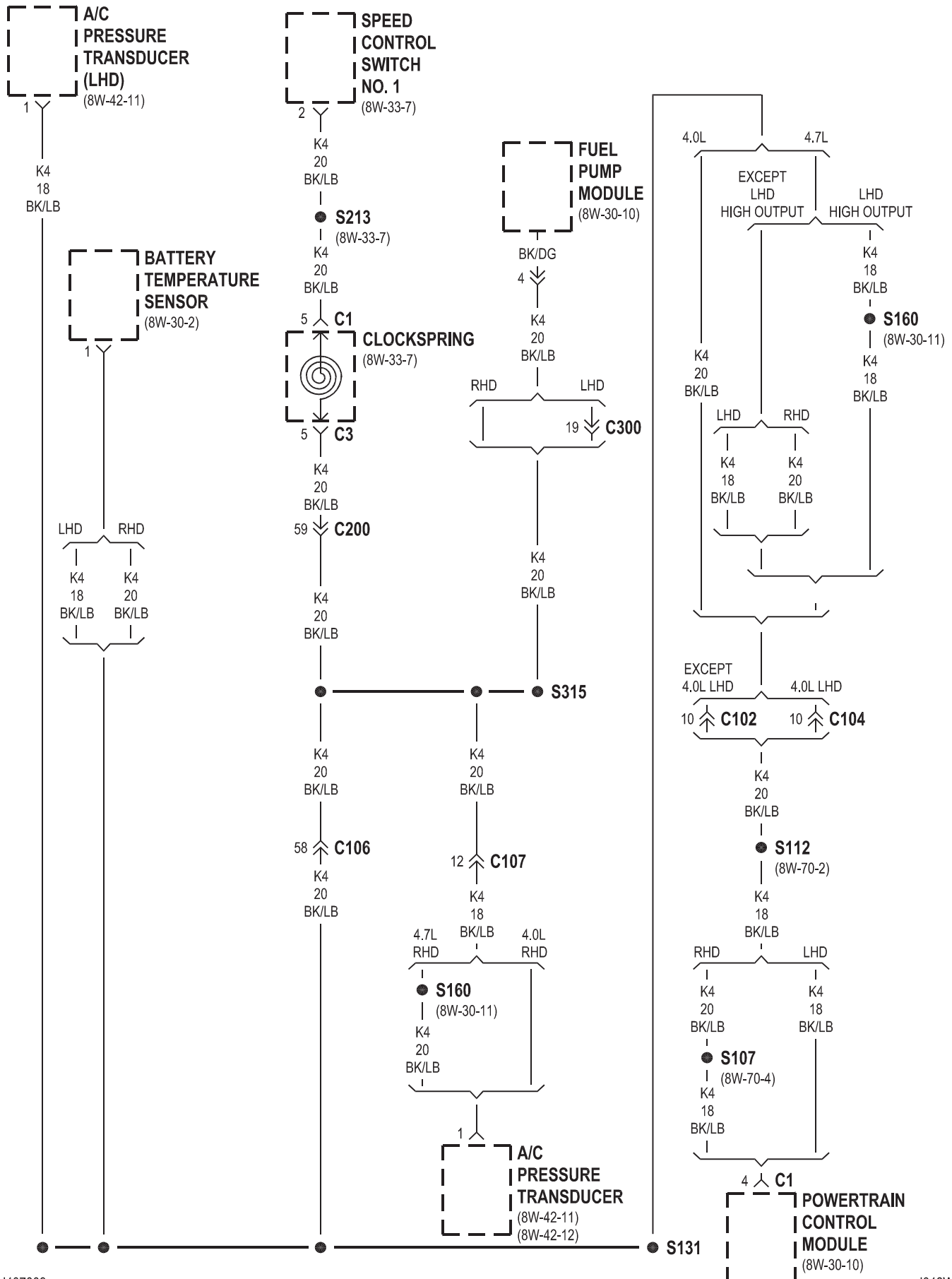


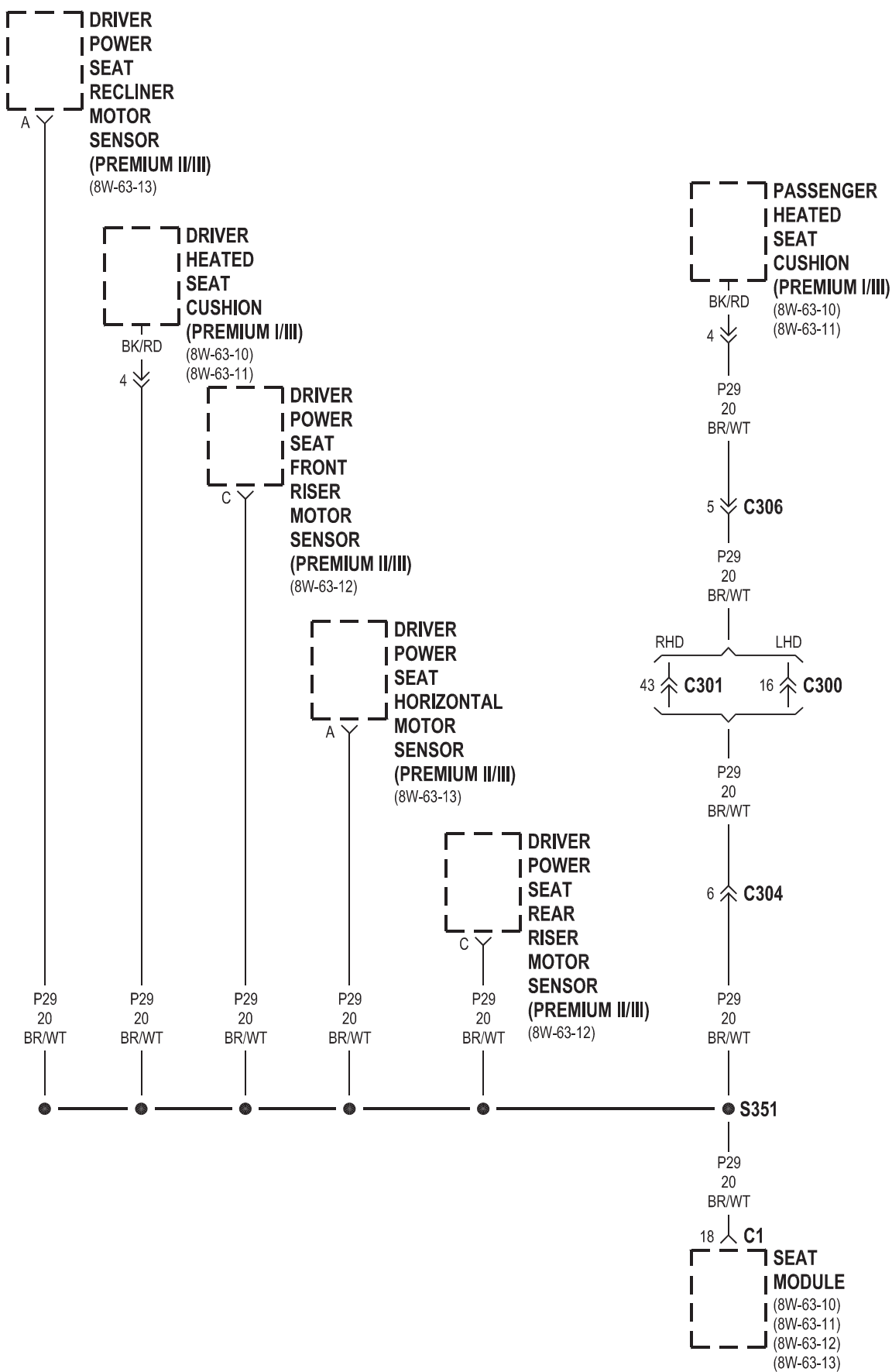












## 8W-80 CONNECTOR PIN-OUTS

<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>	<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
A/C Compressor Clutch . . . . .	8W-80-5	C109 . . . . .	8W-80-33
A/C Pressure Transducer . . . . .	8W-80-5	C109 . . . . .	8W-80-33
Accelerator Pedal Position Sensor		C110 (Diesel) . . . . .	8W-80-34
(Diesel) . . . . .	8W-80-5	C110 (Diesel) . . . . .	8W-80-34
Adjustable Pedals Module		C111 . . . . .	8W-80-34
(Except Export) . . . . .	8W-80-5	C111 . . . . .	8W-80-34
Adjustable Pedals Motor/Sensor Assembly		C112 . . . . .	8W-80-35
(Except Export) . . . . .	8W-80-6	C112 . . . . .	8W-80-35
Adjustable Pedals Switch (Except Export) .	8W-80-6	C113 (Diesel) . . . . .	8W-80-35
Airbag Control Module C1 (ORC C1) . . . . .	8W-80-6	C113 (Diesel) . . . . .	8W-80-35
Airbag Control Module C2 (ORC C2) . . . . .	8W-80-7	C200 . . . . .	8W-80-36
Ambient Temperature Sensor . . . . .	8W-80-7	C200 . . . . .	8W-80-38
Antenna Module (Export) . . . . .	8W-80-8	C201 (Diesel) . . . . .	8W-80-39
Automatic Day/Night Mirror . . . . .	8W-80-8	C201 (Diesel) . . . . .	8W-80-39
Automatic Headlamp Light Sensor/VTSS		C202 (AZC) . . . . .	8W-80-40
LED . . . . .	8W-80-8	C202 (AZC) . . . . .	8W-80-40
Automatic Zone Control Module C1 (AZC) .	8W-80-8	C202 (MTC) . . . . .	8W-80-41
Automatic Zone Control Module C2 (AZC) .	8W-80-9	C202 (MTC) . . . . .	8W-80-41
Battery Temperature Sensor . . . . .	8W-80-9	C203 (AZC) . . . . .	8W-80-41
Blower Motor . . . . .	8W-80-9	C203 (AZC) . . . . .	8W-80-42
Blower Motor Controller (AZC) . . . . .	8W-80-9	C300 . . . . .	8W-80-42
Blower Motor Resistor Block (MTC) . . . . .	8W-80-10	C300 . . . . .	8W-80-44
Body Control Module C1 . . . . .	8W-80-10	C301 (RHD) . . . . .	8W-80-46
Body Control Module C2 . . . . .	8W-80-11	C301 (RHD) . . . . .	8W-80-48
Boost Pressure Sensor (Diesel) . . . . .	8W-80-11	C302 . . . . .	8W-80-49
Brake Lamp Switch . . . . .	8W-80-11	C302 . . . . .	8W-80-50
C100 . . . . .	8W-80-12	C303 . . . . .	8W-80-50
C100 . . . . .	8W-80-12	C303 . . . . .	8W-80-51
C101 (4.0L RHD) . . . . .	8W-80-12	C304 . . . . .	8W-80-51
C101 (4.0L RHD) . . . . .	8W-80-12	C304 . . . . .	8W-80-51
C101 (4.7L RHD) . . . . .	8W-80-13	C306 . . . . .	8W-80-52
C101 (4.7L RHD) . . . . .	8W-80-13	C306 . . . . .	8W-80-52
C102 (Diesel) . . . . .	8W-80-13	C307 . . . . .	8W-80-52
C102 (Diesel) . . . . .	8W-80-14	C307 . . . . .	8W-80-53
C102 (Gas Except 4.0L LHD) . . . . .	8W-80-14	C308 . . . . .	8W-80-53
C102 (Gas Except 4.0L LHD) . . . . .	8W-80-15	C308 . . . . .	8W-80-53
C103 (Diesel) . . . . .	8W-80-15	C309 . . . . .	8W-80-54
C103 (Diesel) . . . . .	8W-80-16	C309 . . . . .	8W-80-54
C103 (Gas) . . . . .	8W-80-16	C310 (Except Export) . . . . .	8W-80-55
C103 (Gas) . . . . .	8W-80-17	C310 (Except Export) . . . . .	8W-80-55
C104 (LHD) . . . . .	8W-80-17	C310 (Export) . . . . .	8W-80-55
C104 (LHD) . . . . .	8W-80-18	C310 (Export) . . . . .	8W-80-56
C105 (Diesel) . . . . .	8W-80-18	C311 . . . . .	8W-80-56
C105 (Diesel) . . . . .	8W-80-19	C311 . . . . .	8W-80-56
C106 (Diesel) . . . . .	8W-80-19	C312 . . . . .	8W-80-56
C106 (Diesel) . . . . .	8W-80-21	C312 . . . . .	8W-80-57
C106 (Gas) . . . . .	8W-80-22	C313 . . . . .	8W-80-57
C106 (Gas) . . . . .	8W-80-24	C313 . . . . .	8W-80-57
C107 (Diesel) . . . . .	8W-80-26	C314 . . . . .	8W-80-57
C107 (Diesel) . . . . .	8W-80-28	C314 . . . . .	8W-80-58
C107 (Gas) . . . . .	8W-80-30	C315 . . . . .	8W-80-58
C107 (Gas) . . . . .	8W-80-32	C315 . . . . .	8W-80-58

<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>	<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
C316 (Except Export) . . . . .	8W-80-59	Driver Power Mirror . . . . .	8W-80-71
C316 (Except Export) . . . . .	8W-80-59	Driver Power Seat Front Riser Motor . . . .	8W-80-72
C317 . . . . .	8W-80-59	Driver Power Seat Front Riser Motor Sensor	
C317 . . . . .	8W-80-59	(Premium II/III) . . . . .	8W-80-72
Camshaft Position Sensor (Diesel) . . . . .	8W-80-60	Driver Power Seat Horizontal Motor . . . .	8W-80-72
Camshaft Position Sensor (Gas) . . . . .	8W-80-60	Driver Power Seat Horizontal Motor Sensor	
Capacitor (4.0L) . . . . .	8W-80-60	(Premium II/III) . . . . .	8W-80-72
Capacitor No. 1 (4.7L) . . . . .	8W-80-60	Driver Power Seat Rear Riser Motor . . . .	8W-80-73
Capacitor No. 2 (4.7L) . . . . .	8W-80-60	Driver Power Seat Rear Riser Motor Sensor	
Cargo Lamp . . . . .	8W-80-61	(Premium II/III) . . . . .	8W-80-73
Center High Mounted Stop Lamp . . . . .	8W-80-61	Driver Power Seat Recliner Motor . . . . .	8W-80-73
Cigar Lighter . . . . .	8W-80-61	Driver Power Seat Recliner Motor Sensor (Premium	
Clockspring C1 . . . . .	8W-80-61	II/III) . . . . .	8W-80-73
Clockspring C2 . . . . .	8W-80-62	Driver Power Seat Switch (Base) . . . . .	8W-80-74
Clockspring C3 . . . . .	8W-80-62	Driver Power Seat Switch (Midline/	
Clockspring C4 . . . . .	8W-80-62	Premium) . . . . .	8W-80-74
Coil On Plug No. 1 (4.7L) . . . . .	8W-80-62	Driver Rear Power Window Motor . . . . .	8W-80-75
Coil On Plug No. 2 (4.7L) . . . . .	8W-80-62	Driver Rear Power Window Switch . . . . .	8W-80-75
Coil On Plug No. 3 (4.7L) . . . . .	8W-80-63	Driver Seat Belt Switch . . . . .	8W-80-75
Coil On Plug No. 4 (4.7L) . . . . .	8W-80-63	Driver Seat Belt Tensioner . . . . .	8W-80-75
Coil On Plug No. 5 (4.7L) . . . . .	8W-80-63	Driver Side Impact Sensor . . . . .	8W-80-75
Coil On Plug No. 6 (4.7L) . . . . .	8W-80-63	EGR Solenoid (Diesel) . . . . .	8W-80-76
Coil On Plug No. 7 (4.7L) . . . . .	8W-80-64	Electronic Speed Control Servo . . . . .	8W-80-76
Coil On Plug No. 8 (4.7L) . . . . .	8W-80-64	Engine Control Module C1 (Diesel) . . . . .	8W-80-76
Coil Rail (4.0L) . . . . .	8W-80-64	Engine Control Module C2 (Diesel) . . . . .	8W-80-78
Compact Disc Changer (Premium Radio) .	8W-80-64	Engine Coolant Temperature Sensor	
Controller Antilock Brake . . . . .	8W-80-65	(Diesel) . . . . .	8W-80-79
Coolant Level Sensor . . . . .	8W-80-65	Engine Coolant Temperature Sensor	
Crankcase Heater (Diesel) . . . . .	8W-80-65	(Gas) . . . . .	8W-80-79
Crankshaft Position Sensor (Diesel) . . . .	8W-80-66	Engine Oil Pressure Sensor (Diesel) . . . .	8W-80-79
Crankshaft Position Sensor (Gas) . . . . .	8W-80-66	Engine Oil Pressure Switch (Gas) . . . . .	8W-80-79
Data Link Connector . . . . .	8W-80-66	Evap Temp Sensor . . . . .	8W-80-80
Driver Airbag Squib 1 . . . . .	8W-80-67	Evap/Purge Solenoid (Gas) . . . . .	8W-80-80
Driver Airbag Squib 2 . . . . .	8W-80-67	Front Power Outlet . . . . .	8W-80-80
Driver Blend Door Motor/Actuator (LHD		Front Washer Pump . . . . .	8W-80-80
AZC) . . . . .	8W-80-67	Front Wiper Motor . . . . .	8W-80-80
Driver Blend Door Motor/Actuator (RHD		Fuel Injector No. 1 (Diesel) . . . . .	8W-80-81
AZC) . . . . .	8W-80-67	Fuel Injector No. 1 (Gas) . . . . .	8W-80-81
Driver Curtain Airbag Squib . . . . .	8W-80-68	Fuel Injector No. 2 (Diesel) . . . . .	8W-80-81
Driver Cylinder Lock Switch . . . . .	8W-80-68	Fuel Injector No. 2 (Gas) . . . . .	8W-80-81
Driver Door Lock Motor/Ajar Switch . . . .	8W-80-68	Fuel Injector No. 3 (Diesel) . . . . .	8W-80-82
Driver Door Module C1 . . . . .	8W-80-69	Fuel Injector No. 3 (Gas) . . . . .	8W-80-82
Driver Door Module C2 . . . . .	8W-80-69	Fuel Injector No. 4 (Diesel) . . . . .	8W-80-82
Driver Door Module C3 . . . . .	8W-80-69	Fuel Injector No. 4 (Gas) . . . . .	8W-80-82
Driver Front Door Courtesy Lamp . . . . .	8W-80-70	Fuel Injector No. 5 (Diesel) . . . . .	8W-80-83
Driver Front Power Window Motor . . . . .	8W-80-70	Fuel Injector No. 5 (Gas) . . . . .	8W-80-83
Driver Heated Seat Back (Heated Seat/Premium		Fuel Injector No. 6 (Gas) . . . . .	8W-80-83
I/III) . . . . .	8W-80-70	Fuel Injector No. 7 (4.7L) . . . . .	8W-80-83
Driver Heated Seat Cushion (Premium I/		Fuel Injector No. 8 (4.7L) . . . . .	8W-80-84
III) . . . . .	8W-80-70	Fuel Pressure Sensor (Diesel) . . . . .	8W-80-84
Driver Heated Seat Switch . . . . .	8W-80-71	Fuel Pressure Solenoid (Diesel) . . . . .	8W-80-84
Driver Lumbar Motor (Midline/		Fuel Pump Module (Gas) . . . . .	8W-80-84
Premium) . . . . .	8W-80-71	Fuel Tank Module (Diesel) . . . . .	8W-80-85
Driver Lumbar Switch (Midline/		Generator (Diesel) . . . . .	8W-80-85
Premium) . . . . .	8W-80-71	Generator (Gas) . . . . .	8W-80-85

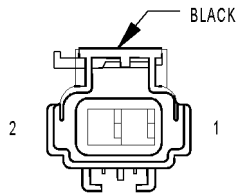


<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
Glove Box Lamp . . . . .	8W-80-85
Headlamp Leveling Switch (Export) . . . . .	8W-80-85
Hood Ajar Switch (Export) . . . . .	8W-80-86
Horn No. 1 . . . . .	8W-80-86
Horn No. 2 . . . . .	8W-80-86
Hydraulic Cooling Module . . . . .	8W-80-86
Idle Air Control Motor . . . . .	8W-80-87
Ignition Switch C1 . . . . .	8W-80-87
Ignition Switch C2 . . . . .	8W-80-87
Input Speed Sensor (4.7L) . . . . .	8W-80-87
Instrument Cluster . . . . .	8W-80-87
Intake Air Temperature Sensor (Diesel) . . . . .	8W-80-88
Intake Air Temperature Sensor (Gas) . . . . .	8W-80-88
Intake Port Swirl Actuator (Diesel) . . . . .	8W-80-88
Intrusion Transceiver Module (Export) . . . . .	8W-80-88
Junction Block Body Control Module . . . . .	8W-80-89
Junction Block C1 . . . . .	8W-80-89
Junction Block C2 (LHD) . . . . .	8W-80-91
Junction Block C2 (RHD) . . . . .	8W-80-92
Junction Block C3 . . . . .	8W-80-93
Junction Block C4 . . . . .	8W-80-94
Junction Block C5 . . . . .	8W-80-94
Knock Sensor . . . . .	8W-80-94
Leak Detection Pump (Except Export) . . . . .	8W-80-94
Left Courtesy Lamp . . . . .	8W-80-95
Left Door Handle Courtesy Lamp . . . . .	8W-80-95
Left Fog Lamp . . . . .	8W-80-95
Left Front Door Speaker . . . . .	8W-80-95
Left Front Impact Sensor . . . . .	8W-80-96
Left Front Park Lamp . . . . .	8W-80-96
Left Front Park/Turn Signal Lamp (Except Export) . . . . .	8W-80-96
Left Front Side Marker Lamp (Except Export) . . . . .	8W-80-96
Left Front Turn Signal Lamp (Export) . . . . .	8W-80-97
Left Front Wheel Speed Sensor . . . . .	8W-80-97
Left Headlamp Leveling Motor (Export) . . . . .	8W-80-97
Left High Beam Headlamp . . . . .	8W-80-97
Left Instrument Panel Speaker . . . . .	8W-80-98
Left Liftgate Ajar Switch . . . . .	8W-80-98
Left Low Beam Headlamp . . . . .	8W-80-98
Left Multi-Function Switch . . . . .	8W-80-98
Left Rear Door Lock Motor/Ajar Switch . . . . .	8W-80-99
Left Rear Door Speaker . . . . .	8W-80-99
Left Rear Lamp Assembly . . . . .	8W-80-99
Left Rear Wheel Speed Sensor . . . . .	8W-80-99
Left Remote Radio Switch . . . . .	8W-80-100
Left Side Repeater Lamp (Export) . . . . .	8W-80-100
Left Visor/Vanity Lamp . . . . .	8W-80-100
License Lamp No. 1 . . . . .	8W-80-100
License Lamp No. 2 . . . . .	8W-80-101
Liftgate Flip-Up Ajar Switch . . . . .	8W-80-101
Liftgate Flip-Up Push Button Switch . . . . .	8W-80-101
Liftgate Flip-Up Release Solenoid . . . . .	8W-80-101

<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
Liftgate Power Lock Motor . . . . .	8W-80-102
Line Pressure Sensor (4.7L) . . . . .	8W-80-102
Manifold Absolute Pressure Sensor (4.0L) . . . . .	8W-80-102
Manifold Absolute Pressure Sensor (4.7L) . . . . .	8W-80-102
Manual Temperature Control C1 (MTC) . . . . .	8W-80-103
Manual Temperature Control C2 (MTC) . . . . .	8W-80-103
Mass Air Flow Sensor (Diesel) . . . . .	8W-80-103
Mode Door Motor/Actuator (AZC) . . . . .	8W-80-103
Output Speed Sensor (4.0L) . . . . .	8W-80-104
Output Speed Sensor (4.7L) . . . . .	8W-80-104
Overhead Map/Courtesy Lamp . . . . .	8W-80-104
Oxygen Sensor 1/1 Upstream . . . . .	8W-80-104
Oxygen Sensor 1/2 Downstream . . . . .	8W-80-105
Oxygen Sensor 2/1 Upstream . . . . .	8W-80-105
Oxygen Sensor 2/2 Downstream . . . . .	8W-80-105
Park/Neutral Position Switch (4.0L) . . . . .	8W-80-105
Passenger Airbag . . . . .	8W-80-106
Passenger Blend Door Motor/Actuator (LHD AZC) . . . . .	8W-80-106
Passenger Blend Door Motor/Actuator (RHD AZC) . . . . .	8W-80-106
Passenger Curtain Airbag Squib . . . . .	8W-80-106
Passenger Door Lock Motor/Ajar Switch . . . . .	8W-80-107
Passenger Door Module C1 . . . . .	8W-80-107
Passenger Door Module C2 . . . . .	8W-80-107
Passenger Front Door Courtesy Lamp . . . . .	8W-80-108
Passenger Front Power Window Motor . . . . .	8W-80-108
Passenger Heated Seat Back (Premium I/ III) . . . . .	8W-80-108
Passenger Heated Seat Cushion (Premium I/III) . . . . .	8W-80-108
Passenger Heated Seat Switch . . . . .	8W-80-109
Passenger Lumbar Motor (Midline/ Premium) . . . . .	8W-80-109
Passenger Lumbar Switch (Midline/ Premium) . . . . .	8W-80-109
Passenger Power Mirror . . . . .	8W-80-109
Passenger Power Seat Front Riser Motor . . . . .	8W-80-110
Passenger Power Seat Horizontal Motor . . . . .	8W-80-110
Passenger Power Seat Rear Riser Motor . . . . .	8W-80-110
Passenger Power Seat Recliner Motor (Midline/ Premium) . . . . .	8W-80-110
Passenger Power Seat Switch (Except Midline/ Premium) . . . . .	8W-80-111
Passenger Power Seat Switch (Midline/ Premium) . . . . .	8W-80-111
Passenger Rear Power Window Motor . . . . .	8W-80-111
Passenger Rear Power Window Switch . . . . .	8W-80-111
Passenger Seat Belt Tensioner (RHD Export) . . . . .	8W-80-112
Passenger Side Impact Sensor . . . . .	8W-80-112

<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
Power Amplifier C1 (Premium Radio) . . .	8W-80-112
Power Amplifier C2 (Premium Radio) . . .	8W-80-113
Powertrain Control Module C1 (Gas) . . .	8W-80-113
Powertrain Control Module C2 (Gas) . . .	8W-80-114
Powertrain Control Module C3 (Gas) . . .	8W-80-115
Radiator Fan Motor (4.0L) . . . . .	8W-80-116
Radio C1 . . . . .	8W-80-116
Radio C2 . . . . .	8W-80-116
Rain Sensor (Autowipe) . . . . .	8W-80-117
Rear Power Outlet (Except Base) . . . . .	8W-80-117
Rear Washer Pump . . . . .	8W-80-117
Rear Wiper Motor . . . . .	8W-80-117
Recirculation Door Motor/Actuator (AZC) . . . . .	8W-80-118
Red Brake Warning Indicator Switch . . .	8W-80-118
Remote Keyless Module (Japan) . . . . .	8W-80-118
Right Courtesy Lamp . . . . .	8W-80-118
Right Door Handle Courtesy Lamp . . . . .	8W-80-119
Right Fog Lamp . . . . .	8W-80-119
Right Front Door Speaker . . . . .	8W-80-119
Right Front Impact Sensor . . . . .	8W-80-119
Right Front Park Lamp . . . . .	8W-80-120
Right Front Park/Turn Signal Lamp (Except Export) . . . . .	8W-80-120
Right Front Side Marker Lamp (Except Export) . . . . .	8W-80-120
Right Front Turn Signal Lamp (Export) .	8W-80-120
Right Front Wheel Speed Sensor . . . . .	8W-80-121
Right Headlamp Leveling Motor (Export) . . . . .	8W-80-121
Right High Beam Headlamp . . . . .	8W-80-121
Right Instrument Panel Speaker . . . . .	8W-80-121
Right Liftgate Ajar Switch . . . . .	8W-80-121
Right Low Beam Headlamp . . . . .	8W-80-122
Right Multi-Function Switch . . . . .	8W-80-122
Right Rear Door Lock Motor/Ajar Switch . . . . .	8W-80-122
Right Rear Door Speaker . . . . .	8W-80-122
Right Rear Lamp Assembly . . . . .	8W-80-123
Right Rear Wheel Speed Sensor . . . . .	8W-80-123
Right Remote Radio Switch . . . . .	8W-80-123
Right Side Repeater Lamp (Export) . . . .	8W-80-123

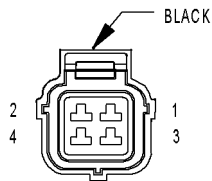
<b>Component</b>	<b>Page</b>
Right Visor/Vanity Lamp . . . . .	8W-80-123
Seat Module C1 (Premium/Heated Seats) . . . . .	8W-80-124
Seat Module C2 (Premium/Heated Seats) . . . . .	8W-80-124
Sentry Key Immobilizer Module . . . . .	8W-80-125
Shifter Assembly (Gas) . . . . .	8W-80-125
Shifter Assembly C1 (Diesel) . . . . .	8W-80-125
Shifter Assembly C2 (Diesel) . . . . .	8W-80-125
Siren (Export) . . . . .	8W-80-126
Speed Control Switch No. 1 . . . . .	8W-80-126
Speed Control Switch No. 2 . . . . .	8W-80-126
Sunroof Control Module . . . . .	8W-80-126
Sunroof Motor C1 . . . . .	8W-80-127
Sunroof Motor C2 . . . . .	8W-80-127
Sunroof Switch . . . . .	8W-80-127
Temperature Valve Actuator (MTC) . . . .	8W-80-127
Throttle Position Sensor (4.0L) . . . . .	8W-80-127
Throttle Position Sensor (4.7L) . . . . .	8W-80-128
Trailer Tow Circuit Breaker . . . . .	8W-80-128
Trailer Tow Connector . . . . .	8W-80-128
Trailer Tow Left Turn Relay . . . . .	8W-80-128
Trailer Tow Right Turn Relay . . . . .	8W-80-129
Transfer Case Position Sensor (Except Export) . . . . .	8W-80-129
Transmission Control Module (4.7L) . . . .	8W-80-129
Transmission Control Module C1 (Diesel) . . . . .	8W-80-130
Transmission Control Module C2 (Diesel) . . . . .	8W-80-131
Transmission Solenoid (4.0L) . . . . .	8W-80-131
Transmission Solenoid Assembly (Diesel) . . . . .	8W-80-131
Transmission Solenoid/TRS Assembly (4.7L) . . . . .	8W-80-132
Vehicle Information Center . . . . .	8W-80-132
Viscous/Cabin Heater (Diesel) . . . . .	8W-80-132
Washer Fluid Level Switch . . . . .	8W-80-133
Wastegate Solenoid (Diesel) . . . . .	8W-80-133
Water In Fuel Sensor (Diesel) . . . . .	8W-80-133



A/C  
COMPRESSOR  
CLUTCH

A/C COMPRESSOR CLUTCH - BLACK 2 WAY

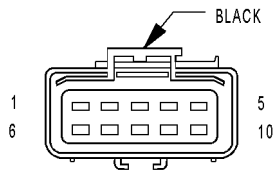
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	C2 14DB/BK (DIESEL)	A/C COMPRESSOR CLUTCH RELAY OUTPUT
1	C2 18DB/YL (GAS)	A/C CLUTCH RELAY OUTPUT
2	Z18 18BK	GROUND



A/C PRESSURE  
TRANSDUCER

A/C PRESSURE TRANSDUCER - BLACK 4 WAY

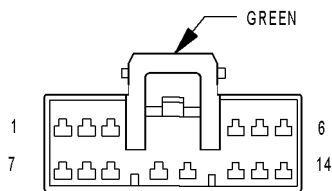
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K4 18BK/LB	SENSOR GROUND
2	K6 18VT/WT (DIESEL)	SENSOR REFERENCE VOLTAGE B
2	K6 18VT/BK (GAS)	5 VOLT SUPPLY
3	C18 18DB	A/C PRESSURE SIGNAL
4	-	-



ACCELERATOR  
PEDAL  
POSITION  
SENSOR  
(DIESEL)

ACCELERATOR PEDAL POSITION SENSOR (DIESEL) - BLACK 10 WAY

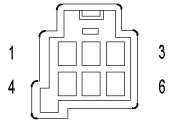
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	-	-
2	F855 18BR/YL	SENSOR REFERENCE VOLTAGE A
3	K22 14RD/DB	ACCELERATOR PEDAL POSITION SENSOR 2 SIGNAL
4	-	-
5	-	-
6	K225 18BK	ACCELERATOR PEDAL POSITION SENSOR 2 GROUND
7	K81 20DB/DG	ACCELERATOR PEDAL POSITION SENSOR 1 SIGNAL
8	K255 20WT/DG	ACCELERATOR PEDAL POSITION SENSOR 1 GROUND
9	-	-
10	Y43 20WT/VT	ACCELERATOR PEDAL POSITION SENSOR 1 5-VOLT SUPPLY



ADJUSTABLE  
PEDALS  
MODULE  
(EXCEPT EXPORT)

ADJUSTABLE PEDALS MODULE (EXCEPT EXPORT) - GREEN 14 WAY

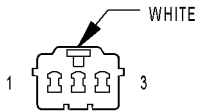
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	Y151 20LG/BR	ADJUSTABLE PEDALS SWITCH SENSE (FORWARD)
2	Y152 20LG/OR	ADJUSTABLE PEDALS SWITCH SENSE (REARWARD)
3	Q110 16OR/VT	ADJUSTABLE PEDALS MOTOR (FORWARD)
4	F72 16RD/YL	FUSED B(+)
5	-	-
6	Q111 16OR/GY	ADJUSTABLE PEDALS MOTOR (REARWARD)
7	Q113 20OR/DB (MEMORY)	PEDAL POSITION SENSOR FEED
8	Q112 20OR/YL (MEMORY)	PEDAL POSITION SENSOR SENSE
9	Q114 20OR/TN (MEMORY)	PEDAL POSITION SENSOR RETURN
10	Z151 16BK	GROUND
11	Z155 20BK/OR	GROUND
12	L1 18WT/BR	BACK-UP LAMP FEED
13	D25 20VT/YL	PCI BUS
14	Y153 16DB/RD	ADJUSTABLE PEDALS SWITCH FEED



ADJUSTABLE  
PEDALS  
MOTOR/SENSOR  
ASSEMBLY  
(EXCEPT EXPORT)

ADJUSTABLE PEDALS MOTOR/SENSOR ASSEMBLY (EXCEPT EXPORT) - 6 WAY

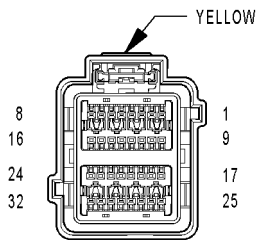
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	Q113 200R/DB	PEDAL POSITION SENSOR FEED
2	Q112 200R/YL	PEDAL POSITION SENSOR SENSE
3	Q114 200R/TN	PEDAL POSITION SENSOR RETURN
4	-	-
5	Q111 160R/GY	ADJUSTABLE PEDALS MOTOR (REARWARD)
6	Q110 160R/VT	ADJUSTABLE PEDALS MOTOR (FORWARD)



ADJUSTABLE  
PEDALS  
SWITCH  
(EXCEPT EXPORT)

ADJUSTABLE PEDALS SWITCH (EXCEPT EXPORT) - WHITE 3 WAY

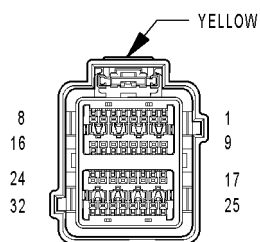
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	Y153 20DB/RD	ADJUSTABLE PEDALS SWITCH FEED
2	Y152 20LG/OR	ADJUSTABLE PEDALS SWITCH SENSE (REARWARD)
3	Y151 20LG/BR	ADJUSTABLE PEDALS SWITCH SENSE (FORWARD)



AIRBAG  
CONTROL  
MODULE C1  
(ORC C1)

AIRBAG CONTROL MODULE C1 (ORC C1) - YELLOW 32 WAY

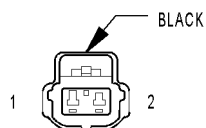
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	R72 20LB/WT (SIDE AIRBAGS)	PASSENGER CURTAIN SQUIB 1 LINE 2
2	R74 20LB/YL (SIDE AIRBAGS)	PASSENGER CURTAIN SQUIB 1 LINE 1
3	R56 20LB/DG (RHD EXPORT)	PASSENGER SEAT BELT TENSIONER LINE 1
4	R54 20LB/YL (RHD EXPORT)	PASSENGER SEAT BELT TENSIONER LINE 2
5	-	-
6	-	-
7	-	-
8	-	-
9	-	-
10	-	-
11	-	-
12	-	-
13	-	-
14	-	-
15	R132 20LG/VT (SIDE AIRBAGS)	PASSENGER SIDE IMPACT SENSOR SIGNAL
16	R134 20LB/BR (SIDE AIRBAGS)	PASSENGER SIDE IMPACT SENSOR GROUND
17	R131 20LG/YL (SIDE AIRBAGS)	DRIVER SIDE IMPACT SENSOR SIGNAL
18	R133 20LB/DG (SIDE AIRBAGS)	DRIVER SIDE IMPACT SENSOR GROUND
19	-	-
20	-	-
21	-	-
22	-	-
23	R59 20LB	DRIVER SEAT BELT SWITCH GROUND
24	R57 20DG	DRIVER SEAT BELT SWITCH SENSE
25	R73 20LB/BR (SIDE AIRBAGS)	DRIVER CURTAIN SQUIB 1 LINE 2
26	R75 20LB/OR (SIDE AIRBAGS)	DRIVER CURTAIN SQUIB 1 LINE 1
27	R55 20LG/DG (RHD EXPORT)	DRIVER SEAT BELT TENSIONER LINE 1
28	R53 20LG/YL RHD EXPORT)	DRIVER SEAT BELT TENSIONER LINE 2
29	-	-
30	-	-
31	-	-
32	-	-



AIRBAG  
CONTROL  
MODULE C2  
(ORC C2)

AIRBAG CONTROL MODULE C2 (ORC C2) - YELLOW 32 WAY

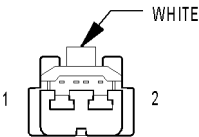
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	R45 20DG/LB	DRIVER SQUIB 1 LINE 2
2	R43 20BK/LB	DRIVER SQUIB 1 LINE 1
3	R42 20BK/YL	PASSENGER SQUIB 1 LINE 1
4	R44 20DG/YL	PASSENGER SQUIB 1 LINE 2
5	-	-
6	-	-
7	-	-
8	-	-
9	R49 20LB	LEFT FRONT IMPACT SENSOR SIGNAL
10	R47 20DB/LB	LEFT FRONT IMPACT SENSOR GROUND
11	R46 20BR/LB	RIGHT FRONT IMPACT SENSOR GROUND
12	R48 20TN	RIGHT FRONT IMPACT SENSOR SIGNAL
13	-	-
14	-	-
15	-	-
16	F23 18DB/YL	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN)
17	Z6 20BK/PK	GROUND
18	-	-
19	-	-
20	-	-
21	-	-
22	-	-
23	D25 20YL/VT/OR	PCI BUS
24	F14 20LG/YL	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-START)
25	R63 20TN/LB	DRIVER SQUIB 2 LINE 2
26	R61 20OR/LB	DRIVER SQUIB 2 LINE 1
27	R62 20OR/YL	PASSENGER SQUIB 2 LINE 2
28	R64 20TN/YL	PASSENGER SQUIB 2 LINE 1
29	-	-
30	-	-
31	-	-
32	-	-



AMBIENT  
TEMPERATURE  
SENSOR

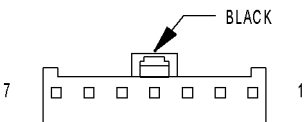
AMBIENT TEMPERATURE SENSOR - BLACK 2 WAY

CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	G32 20BK/LB	SENSOR GROUND
2	G31 20VT/LG	AMBIENT TEMPERATURE SENSOR SIGNAL



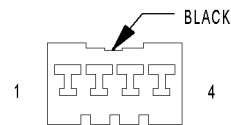
ANTENNA  
MODULE  
(EXPORT)

ANTENNA MODULE (EXPORT) - WHITE 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	X64 18BK/WT	ENABLE SIGNAL TO AMPLIFIER
2	-	-



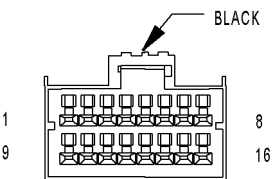
AUTOMATIC DAY/  
NIGHT MIRROR

AUTOMATIC DAY/NIGHT MIRROR - BLACK 7 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	G5 20BK/LG	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-START)
2	Z150 20BK	GROUND
3	L1 20BK/VT	BACK-UP LAMP FEED
4	P112 20BK/WT	AUTO DAY/NIGHT MIRROR (+)
5	P114 20BK/YL	AUTO DAY/NIGHT MIRROR (-)
6	-	-
7	-	-



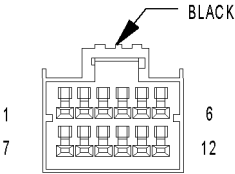
AUTOMATIC  
HEADLAMP LIGHT  
SENSOR/VTSS LED

AUTOMATIC HEADLAMP LIGHT SENSOR/VTSS LED - BLACK 4 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	L109 20WT	ULTRALIGHT SENSOR SIGNAL
2	L110 20BK/YL	ULTRALIGHT SENSOR RETURN
3	G69 20BK/OR	VTSS INDICATOR DRIVER
4	M1 20PK	FUSED B(+)



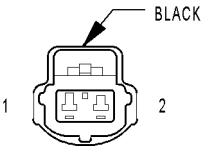
AUTOMATIC  
ZONE CONTROL  
MODULE C1  
(AZC)

AUTOMATIC ZONE CONTROL MODULE C1 (AZC) - BLACK 16 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	C102 20TN/BK	MODE DOOR DRIVER (B)
2	-	-
3	C32 20GY/DB	RECIRCULATION DOOR DRIVER (A)
4	C100 20YL/DB	RECIRCULATION DOOR DRIVER (B)
5	-	-
6	C79 20BK/WT	FUSED REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER RELAY OUTPUT
7	-	-
8	Z118 20BK	GROUND
9	C35 20DG/YL	MODE DOOR DRIVER (A)
10	C33 20DB/RD	DRIVER BLEND DOOR DRIVER (A)
11	-	-
12	-	-
13	-	-
14	C81 20LB/WT	REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER SWITCH SENSE
15	-	-
16	-	-



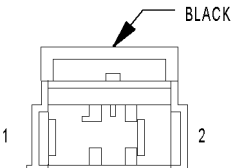
AUTOMATIC  
ZONE CONTROL  
MODULE C2  
(AZC)

AUTOMATIC ZONE CONTROL MODULE C2 (AZC) - BLACK 12 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	-	-
2	C94 20WT/DG	PASSENGER BLEND DOOR DRIVER (A)
3	C95 20WT/BK	DRIVER BLEND DOOR DRIVER (B)
4	C96 20WT/DB	PASSENGER BLEND DOOR DRIVER (B)
5	-	-
6	E2 20OR	PANEL LAMPS DRIVER
7	C56 20RD/LG	BLOWER MOTOR CONTROL
8	D25 20YL/VT/DG	PCI BUS
9	C103 20DG	A/C SWITCH SIGNAL
10	-	-
11	F22 20WT/PK	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN)
12	M1 20PK	FUSED B(+)



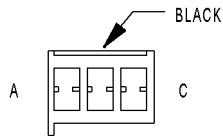
BATTERY  
TEMPERATURE  
SENSOR

BATTERY TEMPERATURE SENSOR - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K4 20BK/LB (DIESEL/RHD)	SENSOR GROUND
1	K4 18BK/LB (GAS LHD)	SENSOR GROUND
2	K25 18VT/LG	BATTERY TEMPERATURE SENSOR SIGNAL



BLOWER  
MOTOR

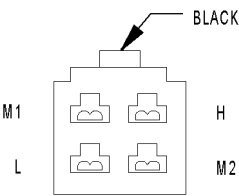
BLOWER MOTOR - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	C1 12DG	BLOWER MOTOR SUPPLY
2	C7 12BK/TN	BLOWER MOTOR HIGH DRIVER



BLOWER MOTOR  
CONTROLLER  
(AZC)

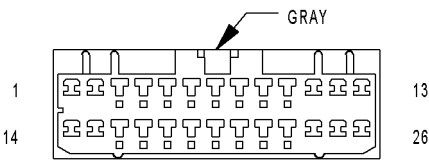
BLOWER MOTOR CONTROLLER (AZC) - BLACK 3 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
A	Z118 12BK	GROUND
B	C56 20RD/LG	BLOWER MOTOR CONTROL
C	C1 12DG	BLOWER MOTOR SUPPLY





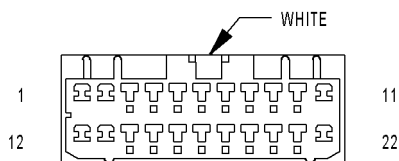
BLOWER  
MOTOR  
RESISTOR  
BLOCK  
(MTC)

BLOWER MOTOR RESISTOR BLOCK (MTC) - BLACK 4 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
H	C7 12BK/TN	BLOWER MOTOR HIGH DRIVER
L	C4 16TN	BLOWER MOTOR LOW DRIVER
M1	C5 16LG	BLOWER MOTOR M1 DRIVER
M2	C6 14LB	BLOWER MOTOR M2 DRIVER



BODY  
CONTROL  
MODULE C1

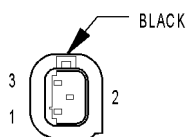
BODY CONTROL MODULE C1 - GRAY 26 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	Z132 20BK/OR	GROUND
2	G52 20YL	HEADLAMP SWITCH MUX
3	E19 20RD	PANEL LAMPS DIMMER SIGNAL
4	-	-
5	G70 20BR/TN (EXPORT)	HOOD AJAR SWITCH SENSE
6	G26 20LB	KEY-IN IGNITION SWITCH SENSE
7	G76 20TN/YL	RIGHT REAR DOOR AJAR SWITCH SENSE
8	-	-
9	E2 20OR	PANEL LAMPS DRIVER
10	E2 20OR	PANEL LAMPS DRIVER
11	-	-
12	E2 20OR	PANEL LAMPS DRIVER
13	E2 20OR	PANEL LAMPS DRIVER
14	Z132 20BK/OR	GROUND
15	D25 20YL/VT/WT	PCI BUS
16	L80 20WT/DG	HEADLAMP SWITCH RETURN
17	D19 20VT/OR	BODY CONTROL MODULE FLASH ENABLE
18	-	-
19	-	-
20	G69 20BK/OR	VTSS INDICATOR DRIVER
21	-	-
22	V14 20RD/VT	WIPER ON/OFF RELAY CONTROL
23	M20 20BR/OR	COURTESY LAMP LOAD SHED
24	M2 20YL	COURTESY LAMP DRIVER
25	Z234 20BK	GROUND
26	-	-



BODY  
CONTROL  
MODULE C2

BODY CONTROL MODULE C2 - WHITE 22 WAY

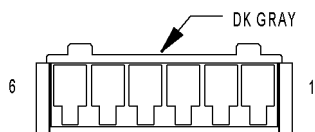
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	C103 20DG	A/C SWITCH SIGNAL
2	V10 20BR	WASHER PUMP SWITCH SENSE
3	V48 20RD/GY	WIPER HIGH CONTROL
4	L40 20BR	HIGH BEAM SWITCH SENSE
5	V11 20BK/TN	WASHER FLUID SWITCH SENSE
6	P134 20TN/LG	PASSENGER SEAT HEATER SWITCH MUX
7	P133 20TN/DG	DRIVER SEAT HEATER SWITCH MUX
8	X20 20RD/YL	RADIO CONTROL MUX
9	G31 20VT/LG	AMBIENT TEMPERATURE SENSOR SIGNAL
10	L109 20WT	ULTRALIGHT SENSOR SIGNAL
11	V52 20DG/RD	WINDSHIELD WIPER SWITCH MUX
12	C81 20LB/WT	REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER SWITCH SENSE
13	-	-
14	-	-
15	L27 20WT/TN	FOG LAMP SWITCH SENSE
16	C201 20LB/YL	EVAPORATOR TEMPERATURE SENSOR SIGNAL
17	G18 20PK/BK	COOLANT LEVEL SWITCH SENSE
18	P132 20OR/BK	SEAT HEATER SWITCH SENSOR GROUND
19	X10 20RD/BK	RADIO CONTROL MUX RETURN
20	G32 20BK/LB	SENSOR GROUND
21	L110 20BK/YL	ULTRALIGHT SENSOR RETURN
22	V9 20WT/BK	WINDSHIELD WIPER SWITCH RETURN



BOOST  
PRESSURE  
SENSOR  
(DIESEL)

BOOST PRESSURE SENSOR (DIESEL) - BLACK 3 WAY

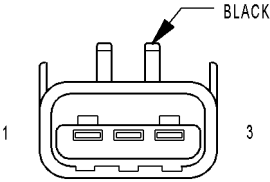
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K4 20BK/LB	SENSOR GROUND
2	Y53 20BK/YL	BOOST PRESSURE SENSOR SIGNAL
3	K6 20VT/WT	SENSOR REFERENCE VOLTAGE B



BRAKE  
LAMP  
SWITCH

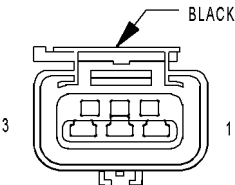
BRAKE LAMP SWITCH - DK GRAY 6 WAY

CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K29 20WT/PK (DIESEL)	SECONDARY BRAKE SWITCH SIGNAL
1	K29 20WT/PK (GAS LHD)	BRAKE SWITCH SENSE
1	K29 18WT/PK (GAS RHD)	BRAKE SWITCH SENSE
2	Z238 18BK (LHD)	GROUND
2	Z243 18BK (RHD)	GROUND
3	B30 18DG/OR (DIESEL)	SPEED CONTROL POWER SUPPLY
3	V32 22OR/DG (GAS)	SPEED CONTROL POWER SUPPLY
4	Z238 18BK (DIESEL)	GROUND
4	V30 22DB/RD (GAS)	SPEED CONTROL BRAKE SWITCH OUTPUT
5	L50 20WT/TN (DIESEL)	PRIMARY BRAKE SWITCH SIGNAL
5	L50 20WT/TN (GAS)	BRAKE LAMP SWITCH OUTPUT
6	F32 20PK/DB	FUSED B(+)



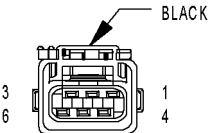
C100

C100 - BLACK (BATTERY SIDE)	
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	T40 12LG
2	K125 18WT/DB
3	K20 18DG



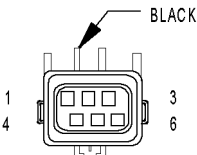
C100

C100 - BLACK (RIGHT HEADLAMP AND DASH SIDE)	
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	T40 12LG
2	K125 18WT/DB
3	K20 18DG



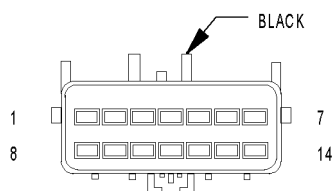
C101  
(4.0L RHD)

C101 (4.0L RHD) - BLACK (ENGINE SIDE)	
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	B22 18DG/YL
2	K99 20BR/OR
3	K299 20BR/WT
4	K6 20VT/BK
5	C18 18DB
6	-



C101  
(4.0L RHD)

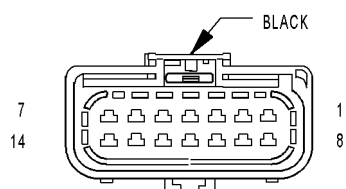
C101 (4.0L RHD) - BLACK (HEADLAMP AND DASH SIDE)	
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	B22 18DG/YL
2	K99 18LB/OR
3	K299 18BR/WT
4	K6 18VT/BK
5	C18 18DB
6	-



C101  
(4.7L RHD)

C101 (4.7L RHD) - BLACK (ENGINE SIDE)

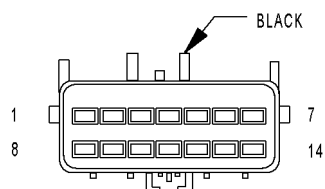
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	K4 20BK/LB (HIGH OUTPUT)
2	K99 20BR/OR
3	C18 18DB
4	K299 20BR/WT
5	T6 20VT/WT
6	K6 18VT/BK
7	K4 20BK/LB (HIGH OUTPUT)
8	K142 20GY/BK (HIGH OUTPUT)
9	T10 20YL/DG
10	-
11	-
12	B22 18DG/YL
13	-
14	K42 20DB/LG (HIGH OUTPUT)



C101  
(4.7L RHD)

C101 (4.7L RHD) - BLACK (LEFT HEADLAMP  
AND DASH SIDE)

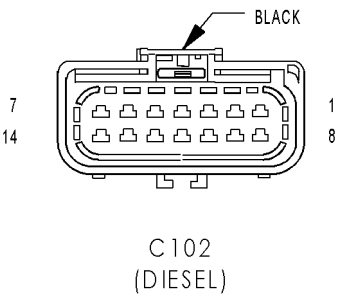
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	K4 18BK/LB
2	K99 18BR/OR
3	C18 18DB
4	K299 18BR/WT
5	T6 18OR/WT
6	K6 18VT/BK
7	K4 18BK/LB
8	K142 18GY/BK
9	T10 18YL/DG
10	-
11	-
12	B22 18DG/YL
13	-
14	K42 18DB/LG



C102  
(DIESEL)

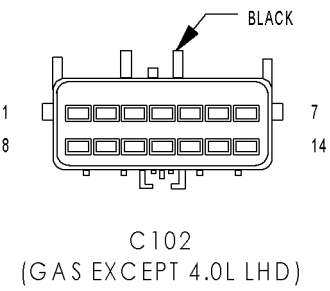
C102 (DIESEL) - BLACK (ENGINE SIDE)

CAV	CIRCUIT
1	D21 20PK
2	D25 20VT/YL
3	K226 20DB/WT
4	D52 16DG/WT
5	D51 16WT
6	B22 20DG/YL
7	F991 20RD/DB
8	T752 20DG/RD
9	K236 20GY/PK
10	K132 20BR/BK
11	A82 16PK/DG
12	K152 20WT
13	L50 20WT/DB
14	K29 20WT/PK



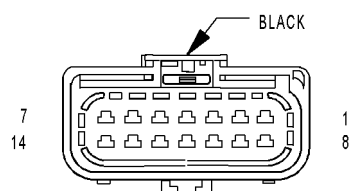
C102 (DIESEL) - BLACK (LEFT HEADLAMP AND DASH SIDE)

CAV	CIRCUIT
1	D21 18PK
2	D25 18VT/YL
3	K226 18DB/WT
4	D52 18LG/WT
5	D51 18DG/WT
6	B22 18DG/YL
7	F991 200R/DB
8	T752 18DG/OR
9	K236 18GY/PK
10	K132 18BR/BK
11	A82 18PK/LG
12	K152 18WT
13	L50 18WT/TN
14	K29 18WT/PK



C102 (GAS EXCEPT 4.0L LHD) - BLACK (ENGINE SIDE)

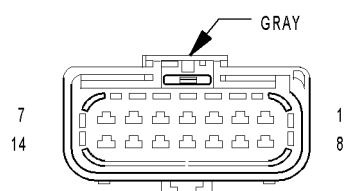
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	A30 14RD/WT (4.7L)
2	F991 200R/DB (4.7L)
3	K173 18LG
4	F42 18DG/LG
5	A7 14RD/BK
6	L1 18VT/BK
7	Z306 20BK/LG
8	T41 20BK/WT
9	-
10	K4 20BK/LB
11	K200 18VT/OR
11	K200 20VT/OR (4.7L/JAPAN)
12	C2 18DB/YL
13	-
14	A142 14DG/OR



C102  
(GAS EXCEPT 4.0L LHD)

C102 (GAS EXCEPT 4.0L LHD) - BLACK (RIGHT HEADLAMP AND DASH SIDE)

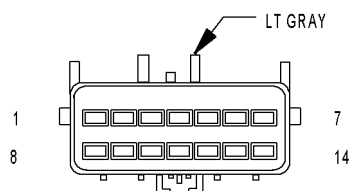
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	A30 14RD/WT (4.7L)
2	F991 200R/DB
3	
3	K173 18LG (4.7L)
4	F42 18DG/LG
5	A7 14RD/BK
6	L1 18VT/BK
7	Z306 20BK/LG
8	T41 18BK/WT
9	-
10	K4 18BK/LB (4.7L HIGH OUTPUT)
10	K4 20BK/LB (EXCEPT 4.7L HIGH OUTPUT)
11	K200 18VT/OR (4.0L/4.7L HIGH OUTPUT)
11	K200 18BR/WT (4.7L EXCEPT HIGH OUTPUT)
12	C2 18DB/YL
13	-
14	A142 14DG/OR



C103  
(DIESEL)

C103 (DIESEL) - GRAY (LEFT HEADLAMP AND DASH SIDE)

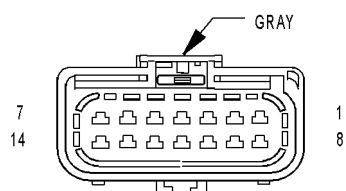
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	T41 18BK/WT
2	K173 18LG
3	C2 18DB/BK
4	-
5	F142 14OR/DG
6	K51 18DB/YL
7	K25 18VT/LG
8	Y42 18OR/DB
9	C18 18DB
10	K4 20BK/LB
11	K6 18VT/WT
12	-
13	T40 12BR
14	F15 18DB/WT



C103  
(DIESEL)

C103 (DIESEL) - LT GRAY (ENGINE SIDE)

CAV	CIRCUIT
1	T41 20BK/WT
2	K173 20GY
3	C2 14DB/BK
4	-
5	F142 16RD/DG
6	K51 20DB/YL
7	K25 20VT/DG
8	Y42 20RD/DB
9	C18 20DB
10	K4 16BK/LB
11	K6 16VT/WT
12	-
13	T40 12DG
14	F15 16DB/WT

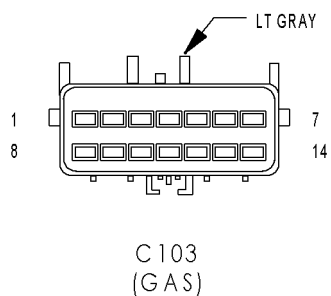


C103  
(GAS)

C103 (GAS) - GRAY (RIGHT HEADLAMP AND  
DASH SIDE)

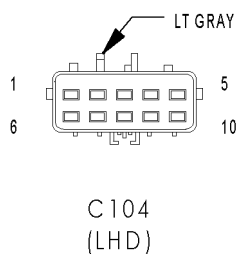
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	F22 20WT/TN (4.7L RHD)
1	F22 20WT/PK (EXCEPT 4.7L RHD)
2	C18 18DB (4.0L EXCEPT EXPORT)
2	C18 18DB (4.0L LHD EXPORT)
2	T6 18OR/WT (4.7L LHD)
3	K99 18BR/OR (4.0L LHD)
3	D20 20LG (4.7L LHD)
3	D20 18LG (4.7L RHD)
4	K299 18BR/WT (4.0L LHD)
4	D21 20PK (4.7L LHD)
4	D21 18PK (4.7L RHD)
5	B22 18DG/YL (LHD)
6	K20 18DG
7	K30 20PK (4.0L RHD)
7	K30 18PK/YL (4.7L RHD)
7	K30 20PK/YL (LHD)
8	A142 14DG/OR (4.0L LHD)
8	T10 18DG/LG (4.7L LHD)
9	T16 14RD (4.7L)
10	D25 18VT/YL (4.7L)
11	Z305 20BK/OR
12	T15 18YL/BR (4.0L)
12	F45 18YL/RD (4.7L)
13	K6 18VT/BK (4.0L LHD)
14	F142 18OR/DG





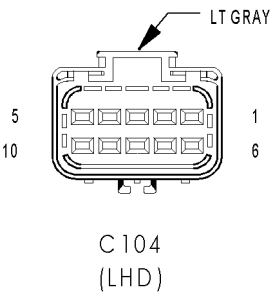
C103 (GAS) - LT GRAY (ENGINE SIDE)

CAV	CIRCUIT
1	F22 18WT/PK
2	C18 18DB (4.0L LHD)
2	T6 20VT/WT (4.7L LHD)
3	K99 20BR/OR (4.0L LHD)
3	D20 18LG (4.7L)
4	K299 20BR/WT (4.0L LHD)
4	D21 18PK (4.7L)
5	B22 18DG/YL (LHD)
6	K20 18DG
7	K30 18PK/YL (4.0L)
7	K30 20PK/YL (4.7L)
8	A142 14DG/OR (4.0L LHD)
8	T10 20YL/DG (4.7L LHD)
9	T16 14RD (4.7L)
10	D25 18YL/VT (4.7L)
11	Z305 20BK/OR
12	T15 18LG (4.0L)
12	F45 18YL/RD (4.7L)
13	K6 20VT/BK (4.0L LHD)
14	F142 18OR/DG



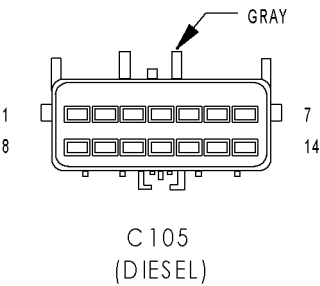
C104 (LHD) - LT GRAY (ENGINE SIDE)

CAV	CIRCUIT
1	K200 20VT/OR (4.0L EXCEPT EXPORT)
1	K4 20BK/LB (4.7L HIGH OUTPUT)
2	F991 18OR/DB (4.0L)
2	K99 20BR/OR (4.7L)
3	K173 18LG (4.0L)
4	F42 18DG/LG (4.0L)
5	A7 14RD/BK (4.0L)
5	K4 20BK/LB (4.7L HIGH OUTPUT)
6	L1 18VT/BK (4.0L)
6	K142 20GY/BK (4.7L HIGH OUTPUT)
7	Z306 20BK/LG (4.0L)
7	K299 20BR/WT (4.7L)
8	T41 18BK/WT (4.0L)
8	C18 18DB (4.7L)
9	C2 18DB/YL (4.0L)
9	K6 18VT/BK (4.7L)
10	K4 20BK/LB (4.0L)
10	K42 20DB/YL (4.7L HIGH OUTPUT)



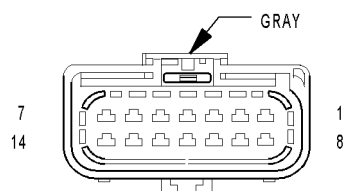
C104 (LHD) - LT GRAY (RIGHT HEADLAMP AND DASH SIDE)

CAV	CIRCUIT
1	K200 18VT/OR (4.0L EXCEPT EXPORT)
1	K4 18BK/LB (4.7L HIGH OUTPUT)
2	F991 200R/DB (4.0L)
2	K99 18BR/OR (4.7L)
3	- -
4	F42 18DG/LG (4.0L)
5	A7 14RD/BK (4.0L)
5	K4 18BK/LB (4.7L HIGH OUTPUT)
6	L1 18VT/BK (4.0L)
6	K142 18GY/BK (4.7L HIGH OUTPUT)
7	Z306 20BK/LG (4.0L)
7	K299 18BR/WT (4.7L)
8	T41 18BK/WT (4.0L)
8	C18 18DB (4.7L)
9	C2 18DB/YL (4.0L)
9	K6 18VT/BK (4.7L)
10	K4 18BK/LB (4.0L)
10	K42 18DB/LG (4.7L HIGH OUTPUT)



C105 (DIESEL) - GRAY (ENGINE SIDE)

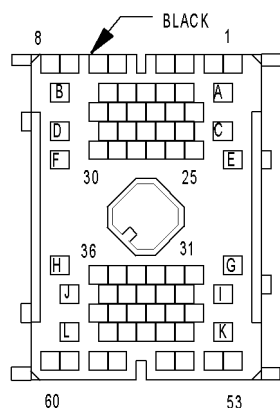
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	C13 20DB/RD
2	F300 20RD/BK
3	V37 20RD/DG
4	Z305 18BK/DB
5	Z306 18BK/DB
6	-
7	-
8	-
9	-
10	-
11	-
12	-
13	-
14	-



C105  
(DIESEL)

C105 (DIESEL) - GRAY (LEFT HEADLAMP AND  
DASH SIDE)

CAV	CIRCUIT
1	C13 18DB/OR
2	F300 18RD/BK
3	V37 18RD/LG
4	Z305 20BK/OR
5	Z306 20BK/LG
6	L1 18VT/BK
7	-
8	-
9	-
10	-
11	-
12	-
13	-
14	-



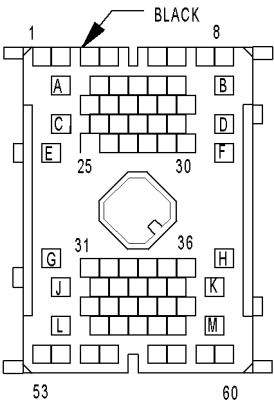
C106  
(LHD)  
(DIESEL)

C106 (DIESEL) - BLACK (BODY SIDE)

CAV	CIRCUIT
1	F15 20DB/WT
2	-
3	G31 20VT/LG
4	G32 20BK/LB (LHD)
4	G32 20DB/OR (RHD)
5	G18 20PK/BK
6	-
7	-
8	-
9	-
10	Z231 18BK (RHD)
11	K4 20BK/LB (LHD)
11	G9 18GY/BL (RHD)
12	K6 18VT/WT (LHD)
13	-
14	-
15	-
16	K173 18LG
17	-
18	X2 18DG/RD
19	C18 18DB (LHD)
20	Y42 18OR/DB
21	-
22	-
23	-
24	-
25	B7 20WT
26	B6 20WT/DB
27	-
28	-
29	-
30	-
31	-
32	-
33	-

C106 (DIESEL) - BLACK (BODY SIDE)

CAV	CIRCUIT
34	-
35	-
36	-
37	-
38	L13 18BR/YL
39	-
40	-
41	-
42	R46 20BR/LB
43	R48 20TN
44	-
45	-
46	-
47	-
48	-
49	-
50	-
51	-
52	-
53	L7 20BK/YL
54	L60 20TN
55	-
56	-
57	L39 20LB
58	-
59	L44 18VT/RD
60	L34 18RD/OR
A	-
B	-
C	-
D	-
E	-
F	-
G	-
H	-
J	-
K	-
L	-
M	-



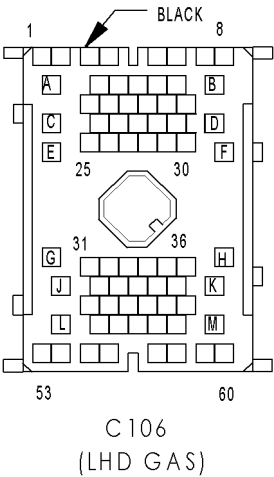
C106  
(DIESEL)

C106 (DIESEL) - BLACK (RIGHT HEADLAMP  
AND DASH SIDE)

CAV	CIRCUIT
1	F15 18DB/WT
2	-
3	G31 20VT/LG
4	G32 20BK/LB
5	G18 20PK/BK
6	-
7	-
8	-
9	-
10	Z231 18BK (RHD)
11	K4 18BK/LB (LHD)
11	G9 18GY/BK (RHD)
12	K6 18VT/WT (LHD)
13	-
14	-
15	-
16	K173 18LG
17	-
18	X2 18DG/RD
19	C18 18DB (LHD)
20	Y42 18OR/DB
21	-
22	-
23	-
24	-
25	B7 18WT
26	B6 18WT/DG
27	-
28	-
29	-
30	-
31	-
32	-
33	-
34	-
35	-
36	-
37	-
38	L13 18BR/YL
39	-
40	-
41	-
42	R46 18BR/LB
43	R48 18TN
44	-
45	-
46	-
47	-
48	-
49	-
50	-
51	-
52	-

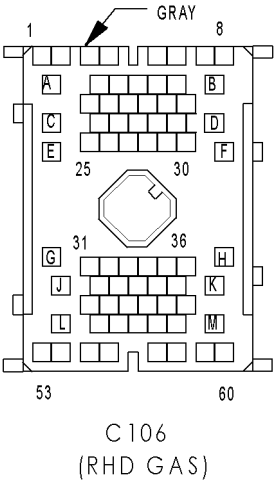
C106 (DIESEL) - BLACK (RIGHT HEADLAMP AND DASH SIDE)

CAV	CIRCUIT
53	L7 20BK/YL
54	L60 20TN
55	-
56	-
57	L39 20LB
58	-
59	L44 18VT/RD
60	L34 18RD/OR
A	-
B	-
C	-
D	-
E	-
F	-
G	-
H	-
J	-
K	-
L	-
M	-



C106 (GAS) - GRAY/RHD BLACK/LHD (RIGHT HEADLAMP AND DASH SIDE)

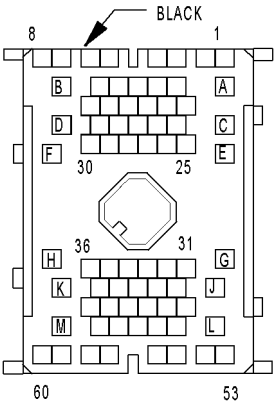
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	A141 16DG/WT (LHD)
1	A141 16DG/BK (RHD)
2	G18 18PK/BK (LHD)
2	F42 18DG/LG (RHD)
3	V3 16BR/WT
4	V4 16RD/YL
5	V55 16TN/RD
6	V6 16DB
7	F22 20WT/PK (LHD)
7	F22 20WT/TN (RHD)
8	F12 18DB/WT
9	K52 18PK/BK (LHD)
10	K29 18WT/PK (LHD)
10	Z231 18BK (RHD)
11	K226 18LB/YL (LHD)
11	K512 18RD/YL (RHD)
12	K107 18OR/PK (EXCEPT EXPORT)
12	C27 18PK/DG (JAPAN)
13	K106 18WT/DG (EXCEPT EXPORT)
13	C24 18DB/PK (JAPAN)
14	T41 18BK/WT (LHD)
14	C13 18DB/OR (RHD)
15	V35 20LG/RD (RHD)
16	V36 20TN/RD (RHD)
17	G9 18GY/BK (RHD)
18	K25 18VT/LG (RHD)
19	K51 18DB/YL (RHD)
20	K125 18WT/DB (EXCEPT EXPORT)
21	K125 18WT/DB (RHD)
22	K31 18BR (RHD)
23	-



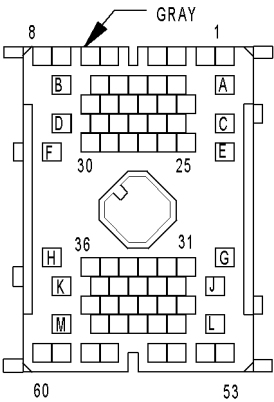
C106 (GAS) - GRAY/RHD BLACK/LHD (RIGHT HEADLAMP AND DASH SIDE)

CAV	CIRCUIT
24	-
25	B7 18WT
26	B6 18WT/DB
27	X3 20BK/RD
28	G32 20BK/LB
29	-
30	G31 20VT/LG
31	-
32	-
33	V30 20DB/RD
34	V16 20VT
35	V14 20RD/VT
36	-
37	F45 20YL/RD (4.0L RHD)
37	F45 18YL/RD (4.7L RHD)
38	L13 18BR/YL
39	-
40	Z306 20BK/LG
41	Z305 20BK/OR
42	R46 18BR/LB
43	R48 18TN
44	F991 20OR/DB
45	B22 18DG/YL (LHD)
46	-
47	-
48	D25 18VT/YL (EXCEPT 4.0L RHD)
49	D21 18PK (4.0L LHD/4.7L RHD)
49	D21 20PK (4.7L LHD)
50	D20 20LG (4.7L LHD)
50	D20 18LG (4.7L RHD)
51	D32 18LG (LHD)
52	T6 18OR/WT (LHD)
52	T41 18BK/WT (RHD)
53	L7 20BK/YL
54	L60 20TN
55	V37 18RD/LG (LHD)
55	G18 20PK/BK (RHD)
56	L1 18VT/BK
57	L39 20LB
58	K4 18BK/LB (LHD)
58	K4 20BK/LB (RHD)
59	L44 18VT/RD
60	L34 18RD/OR
A	A149 12RD/TN
B	Y180 16LG/RD
C	C1 12DG
D	-
E	A10 12RD/DG
F	A1 12RD
G	A145 10WT/RD
H	A146 10OR/WT
J	A147 10RD/GY
K	A148 10PK/WT
L	A2 12PK/BK
M	A20 12RD/DG





C106  
(LHD GAS)



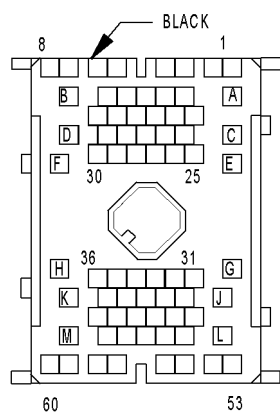
C106  
(RHD GAS)

C106 (GAS) - GRAY/RHD BLACK/LHD (BODY SIDE)

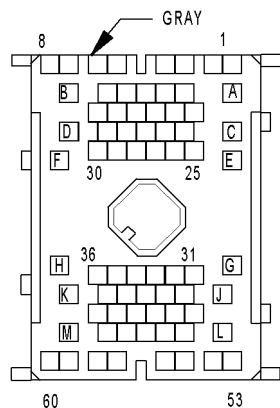
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	A141 16DG/BK
2	G18 20PK/BK (LHD)
2	F42 18DG/LG (RHD)
3	V3 16BR/WT
4	V4 16RD/YL
5	V55 16TN/RD
6	V6 16DB
7	F22 20WT/PK (LHD)
7	F22 18WT/TN (RHD)
8	F12 20DB/WT
9	K52 20PK/BK (LHD)
10	K29 20WT/PK (LHD)
11	K226 20LB/YL (LHD)
11	K512 18LB (RHD)
12	K107 20OR/YL (EXCEPT EXPORT)
12	C27 18PK/DB (RHD)
13	K106 20WT/DG (EXCEPT EXPORT)
13	C24 18DB/BK (RHD)
14	T41 18BK/WT (LHD)
14	C13 20DB/OR (RHD)
15	V35 20LG/RD (RHD)
16	V36 20TN/RD (RHD)
17	G9 18GY/BK (RHD)
18	K25 18VT/LG (RHD)
19	K51 20DB/YL (RHD)
20	K125 18WT/DB (EXCEPT EXPORT)
21	K125 18WT/DB (RHD)
22	K31 18BR (RHD)
23	-
24	-
25	B7 20WT
26	B6 20WT/DB
27	X3 22GY/OR (LHD)
27	X3 22BK/RD (RHD)
28	G32 20BK/LB (LHD)
28	G32 20DB/OR (RHD)
29	-
30	G31 20VT/LG
31	-
32	V32 22OR/DG (LHD)
33	V30 22DB/RD
34	V16 22VT
35	V14 22RD/VT
36	-
37	F45 20YL/RD
38	L13 18BR/YL (EXPORT)
39	-
40	Z306 20BK/LG
41	Z305 20BK/OR
42	R46 20BR/LB
43	R48 20TN
44	F991 20OR/DB
45	B22 18DG/YL (LHD)

C106 (GAS) - GRAY/RHD BLACK/LHD (BODY  
SIDE)

CAV	CIRCUIT
46	-
47	-
48	D25 20YL/VT
49	D21 20PK
50	D20 20LG
51	D32 20LG/DG (LHD)
52	T6 18OR/BK (LHD)
52	T41 18BK/WT (RHD)
53	L7 20BK/YL
54	L60 20TN
55	G18 20PK/BK (RHD)
56	L1 18VT/BK
57	L39 20LB
58	K4 18BK/LB (LHD)
58	K4 20BK/LB (RHD)
59	L44 18VT/RD
60	L34 18RD/OR
A	A149 12RD/TN
B	Y180 16LG/RD
C	C1 12DG
D	-
E	A10 10RD/DG (RHD)
F	A1 12RD
G	A145 10WT/RD
H	A146 10OR/WT
J	A147 10RD/GY
K	A148 10PK/WT
L	A2 12PK/BK
M	A20 14RD/DB



C107  
(DIESEL LHD)



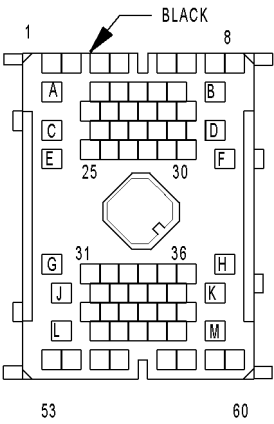
C107  
(DIESEL RHD)

C107 (DIESEL) - GRAY/RHD BLACK/LHD (BODY SIDE)

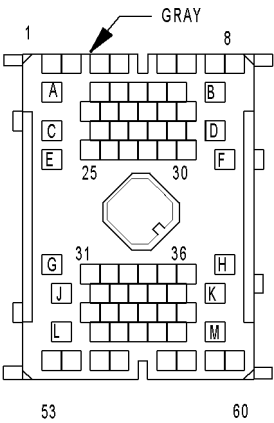
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	X2 18DG/RD
2	V11 20BK/TN
3	K4 20BK/LB
4	V37 22RD/LG (LHD)
4	V37 20RD/LG (RHD)
5	V55 16TN/RD
6	V6 16DB
7	V10 22BR (LHD)
7	V10 20BR (RHD)
8	-
9	K226 18LB/YL (LHD)
9	K226 20LB/YL (RHD)
10	X3 22GY/OR (LHD)
10	X3 22BK/RD (RHD)
11	F15 20DB/WT
12	F45 20YL/RD
13	T41 18BK/WT
14	-
15	G70 20BR/TN
16	G9 18GY/BK (RHD)
17	Z231 18BK (RHD)
18	-
19	-
20	-
21	F991 20OR/DB
22	-
23	X75 20GY/LG
24	Y42 18OR/DB
25	B7 20WT
26	B6 20WT/DB
27	B4 20LG
28	B3 20LG/DB
29	B2 20YL
30	B1 20YL/DB
31	-
32	M1 20PK/RD
33	F20 20DB/PK
34	L50 18VT/TN (LHD)
34	L50 18WT/TN (RHD)
35	R47 20DB/LB
36	T2 18TN/BK
37	Z305 20BK/OR
38	Z306 20BK/LG
39	R49 20LB
40	K29 20WT/PK
41	C18 20DB (LHD)
42	-

C107 (DIESEL) - GRAY/RHD BLACK/LHD (BODY  
SIDE)

CAV	CIRCUIT
43	K6 18VT/WT (LHD)
44	-
45	V16 22VT
46	V14 22RD/VT
47	L13 18BR/YL
48	D25 20YL/VT
49	D21 20PK
50	K173 18LG
51	-
52	-
53	L7 20BK/YL
54	L61 20TN/LG
55	L1 18VT/BK
56	V20 20BK/WT
57	L39 20LB
58	F22 20WT/PK (LHD)
58	F22 18WT/TN (RHD)
59	L43 18VT
60	L33 18RD
A	-
B	Y180 16LG/RD
C	C1 12DG
D	A149 12RD/TN
E	-
F	A1 12RD
G	A145 10WT/RD
H	A146 10OR/WT
J	A147 10RD/GY
K	A148 10PK/WT
L	A2 12PK/BK
M	-



C 107  
(DIESEL LHD)



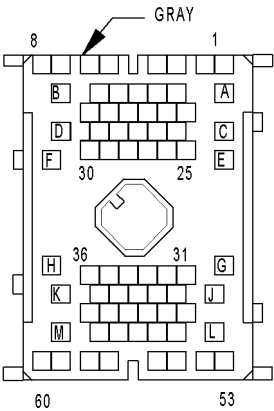
C 107  
(DIESEL RHD)

C107 (DIESEL) - GRAY/RHD BLACK/LHD (LEFT HEADLAMP AND DASH SIDE)

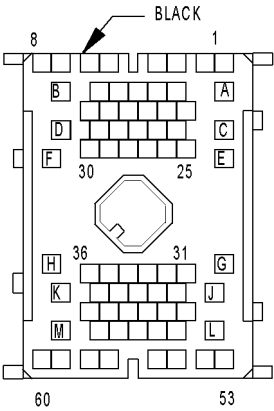
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	X2 18DG/RD
2	V11 20BK/TN
3	K4 18BK/LB
4	V37 18RD/LG
5	V55 16TN/RD
6	V6 16DB
7	V10 20BR
8	-
9	K226 18DB/WT
10	X3 20BK/RD
11	F15 18DB/WT
12	F45 18YL/RD
13	T41 18BK/WT
14	-
15	G70 20BR/TN
16	G9 18GY/BK (RHD)
17	Z231 18BK (RHD)
18	-
19	-
20	-
21	F991 200R/DB
22	-
23	X75 18GY/LB
24	Y42 18OR/DB
25	B7 18WT
26	B6 18WT/DB
27	B4 18LG
28	B3 18LG/DB
29	B2 18YL
30	B1 18YL/DB
31	-
32	M1 18PK
33	F20 18DB/PK
34	L50 18WT/TN
35	R47 18DB/LB
36	T2 18TN/BK
37	Z305 20BK/OR
38	Z306 20BK/LG
39	R49 18LB
40	K29 18WT/PK
41	C18 18DB (LHD)
42	-
43	K6 18VT/WT (LHD)

C107 (DIESEL) - GRAY/RHD BLACK/LHD (LEFT  
HEADLAMP AND DASH SIDE)

CAV	CIRCUIT
44	-
45	V16 20WT
46	V14 20RD/VT
47	L13 18BR/YL
48	D25 18VT/YL
49	D21 18PK
50	K173 18LG
51	-
52	-
53	L7 18BK/YL
54	L61 20LG
55	L1 18VT/BK
56	V20 18BK/WT
57	L39 20LB
58	F22 18WT/PK
59	L43 18VT
60	L33 18LG/BR
A	-
B	Y180 16LG/RD
C	C1 12DG
D	A149 12RD/TN
E	-
F	A1 12RD
G	A145 10WT/RD
H	A146 10OR/WT
J	A147 10RD/GY
K	A148 10PK/WT
L	A2 12PK/BK
M	-



C107  
(RHD)  
(GAS)



C107  
(LHD)  
(GAS)

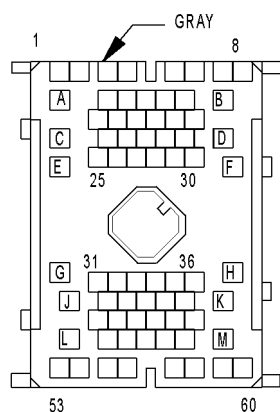
C107 (GAS) - GRAY/RHD BLACK/LHD (BODY SIDE)

CAV	CIRCUIT
1	V37 20RD/LG (RHD)
2	V11 20BK/TN
3	V3 16BR/WT
4	V4 16RD/YL
5	V55 16TN/RD
6	V6 16DB
7	V10 22BR (LHD)
7	V10 20BR (RHD)
8	F12 20DB/WT
9	K52 20PK/BK (LHD)
9	K226 20LB/YL (RHD)
10	L13 18BR/YL (EXPORT)
11	K512 18LB (RHD)
12	K4 20BK/LB (RHD)
13	-
14	T6 18OR/BK (RHD)
15	G70 20BR/TN (EXPORT)
16	G9 18GY/BK (RHD)
17	Z231 18BK (RHD)
18	-
19	D32 20LG/DG (RHD)
20	
21	
22	-
23	X75 20GY/LG (EXPORT)
24	F42 18DG/LG (RHD)
25	B7 20WT
26	B6 20WT/DB
27	B4 20LG
28	B3 20LG/DB
29	B2 20YL
30	B1 20YL/DB
31	-
32	M1 20PK/RD
33	F20 20DB/PK
34	L50 18WT/TN (RHD)
35	R47 20DB/LB (LHD)
36	-
37	K51 18BR (RHD)
38	K25 18VT/LG (RHD)
39	R49 20DB (LHD)
39	K31 18BR (RHD)
40	K29 18WT/PK (RHD)
41	K125 18WT/DB (RHD)

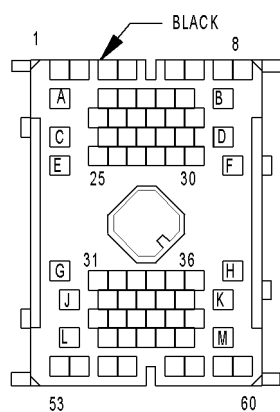


C107 (GAS) - GRAY/RHD BLACK/LHD (BODY  
SIDE)

CAV	CIRCUIT
42	V32 22OR/DG (RHD)
43	R47 20DB/LB (RHD)
44	V35 20LG/RD (RHD)
45	B22 18DG/YL (LHD)
45	V36 20TN/RD (RHD)
46	C13 20DB/OR (RHD)
47	L13 18BR/YL (RHD)
48	D25 20YL/VT
49	D21 20PK (RHD)
50	R49 20LB (RHD)
51	C27 18PK/DB (RHD)
52	C24 18DB/PK (RHD)
53	L7 20BK/YL
54	L61 20TN/LG
55	-
56	V20 20BK/WT
57	L39 20LB
58	-
59	L43 18VT
60	L33 18RD
A	-
B	-
C	-
D	-
E	A10 12RD/LG (LHD)
F	-
G	-
H	-
J	-
K	-
L	-
M	A20 14RD/DB



C107  
(RHD)  
(GAS)



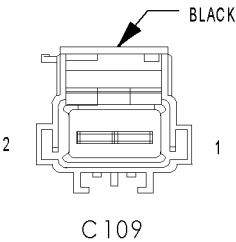
C107  
(LHD)  
(GAS)

C107 (GAS) - GRAY/RHD BLACK/LHD (LEFT  
HEADLAMP AND DASH SIDE)

CAV	CIRCUIT
1	V37 18RD/LG (RHD)
2	V11 20BK/TN
3	V3 16BR/WT
4	V4 16RD/YL
5	V55 16TN/RD
6	V6 16DB
7	V10 20BR
8	F12 20DB/WT
9	K52 20PK/BK (LHD)
9	K226 18LB/YL (RHD)
10	L13 18BR/YL (EXPORT)
11	K512 18RD/YL (RHD)
12	K4 18BK/LB (RHD)
13	-
14	T6 18OR/WT (RHD)
15	G70 20BR/TN (EXPORT)
16	G9 18GY/BK (RHD)
17	Z231 18BK (RHD)
18	-
19	D32 18LG/BK (RHD)
20	-
21	-
22	-
23	X75 18GY/LG (EXPORT)
24	F42 18DG/LG (RHD)
25	B7 18WT
26	B6 18WT/DB
27	B4 18LG
28	B3 18LG/DB
29	B2 18YL
30	B1 18YL/DB
31	-
32	M1 18PK
33	F20 18DB/PK
34	L50 18WT/TN
35	R47 18DB/LB (LHD)
36	-
37	K51 18DB/YL (RHD)
38	K25 18VT/LG (RHD)
39	R49 18LB (LHD)
39	K31 18BR (RHD)
40	K29 18WT/PK (RHD)
41	K125 18WT/DB (RHD)
42	V32 18OR/DG (RHD)
43	R47 18DB/LB (RHD)
44	V35 18LG/RD (RHD)
45	B22 18DG/YL (LHD)
45	V36 18TN/RD (RHD)
46	C13 18DB/OR (RHD)
47	L13 18BR/YL (RHD)
48	D25 18DG/YL (LHD)
48	D25 18VT/YL (RHD)
49	D21 18PK (RHD)
50	R49 18LB (RHD)

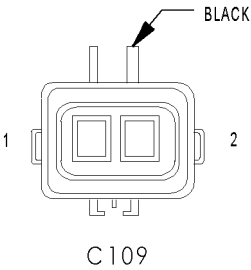
C107 (GAS) - GRAY/RHD BLACK/LHD (LEFT HEADLAMP AND DASH SIDE)

CAV	CIRCUIT
51	C27 18PK/DB (4.0L RHD)
52	C24 18DB/PK (4.0L RHD)
53	L7 20BK/YL
54	L61 18TN/LG (LHD)
54	L61 20TN/LG (RHD)
55	-
56	V20 18BK/WT
57	L39 20LB
58	-
59	L43 18VT
60	L33 18RD
A	-
B	-
C	-
D	-
E	A10 12RD/DG
F	-
G	-
H	-
J	-
K	-
L	-
M	A20 12RD/DB



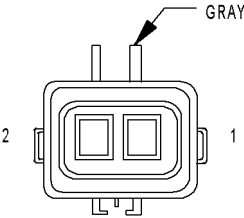
C109 - BLACK (ENGINE SIDE)

CAV	CIRCUIT
1	K77 18LG/BK
2	K4 20BK/LB



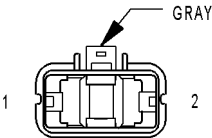
C109 - BLACK (TRANSFER CASE JUMPER SIDE)

CAV	CIRCUIT
1	K77 18LG/BK
2	K4 18BK/LB



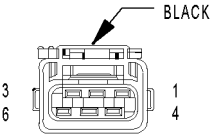
C 110  
(DIESEL)

C110 (DIESEL) - GRAY (GLOW PLUG SIDE)	
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	K154 10GY
2	K254 10GY/YL



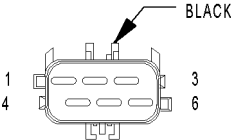
C 110  
(DIESEL)

C110 (DIESEL) - GRAY (LEFT HEADLAMP AND DASH SIDE)	
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	K154 10GY
2	K254 10GY/YL



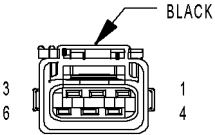
C 111

C111 - BLACK (LEFT FRONT LIGHTING MODULE SIDE)	
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	L33 18RD
2	L43 18VT
3	L61 20TN/LG
4	L7 20BK/YL
5	L114 18BR/YL (EXPORT)
6	Z141 18BK



C 111

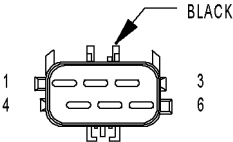
C111 - BLACK (LEFT HEADLAMP AND DASH SIDE)	
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	L33 18LG/BR (DIESEL)
1	L33 18RD (GAS)
2	L43 18VT
3	L61 20LG (DIESEL)
3	L61 20TN/LG (GAS)
4	L7 18BK/YL (DIESEL)
4	L7 20BK/YL (GAS)
5	L114 18BR/YL (EXPORT)
6	Z141 18BK



C112

C112 - BLACK (RIGHT FRONT LIGHTING MODULE SIDE)

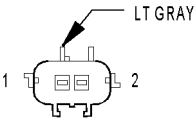
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	L34 18RD/OR
2	L44 18VT/RD
3	L60 20TN
4	L7 20BK/YL
5	L13 18BR/YL (EXPORT)
6	Z142 18BK



C112

C112 - BLACK (RIGHT HEADLAMP AND DASH SIDE)

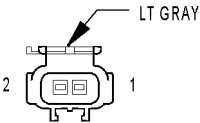
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	L34 18RD/OR
2	L44 18VT/RD
3	L60 20TN
4	L7 20BK/YL
5	L13 18BR/YL (EXPORT)
6	Z142 18BK



C113  
(DIESEL)

C113 (DIESEL) - LT GRAY (ENGINE SIDE)

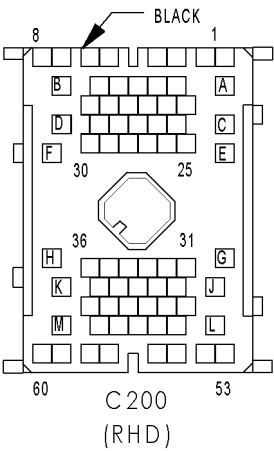
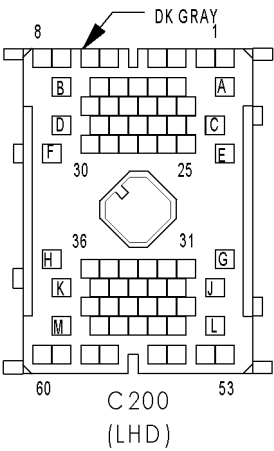
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	D52 16DG/WT
2	D51 16WT



C113  
(DIESEL)

C113 (DIESEL) - LT GRAY (TRANSMISSION SIDE)

CAV	CIRCUIT
1	D52 20LG/WT
2	D51 20DG/WT



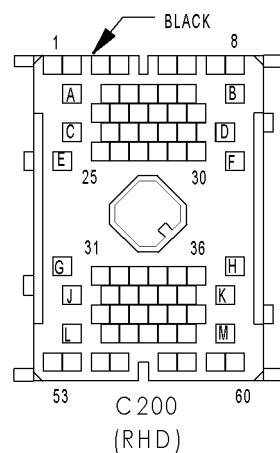
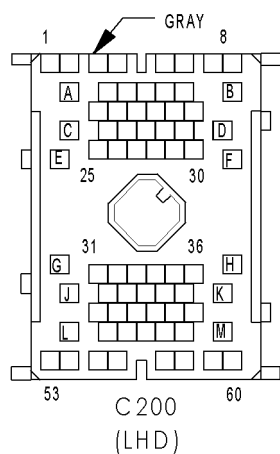
C200 - DK GRAY/LHD BLACK/RHD (BODY SIDE)

CAV	CIRCUIT
1	X56 18DB/PK (BASE)
1	X84 18OR/GY (EXCEPT BASE)
2	X54 18VT (BASE)
2	X86 18OR/RD (EXCEPT BASE)
3	X55 18BR/RD (BASE)
3	X81 18YL/BK (EXCEPT BASE)
4	X53 18DG/OR (BASE)
4	X83 18YL/RD (EXCEPT BASE)
5	X53 18DG/OR
6	X55 18BR/RD
7	X54 18VT
8	X56 18DB/PK
9	Y152 20LG/OR (EXCEPT BASE)
10	D20 20LG (GAS)
11	Y151 20LG/BR (EXCEPT EXPORT)
12	Y153 20DB/RD (EXCEPT EXPORT)
13	X40 20WT/RD (CD)
14	D25 20YL/VT
15	D25 20YL/VT
16	D32 20LG/BK (GAS)
17	T41 20WT/DG
18	Z4 20WT/BK (CD)
19	Z41 20WT/DG (CD)
20	T6 18OR/BK (GAS)
21	D21 20PK
22	B30 18DG/OR (DIESEL)
22	K29 20DG/OR (GAS)
23	X160 20YL (CD)
24	X112 20RD (CD)
25	-
26	-
27	G70 20BR/TN (EXPORT)
28	R47 20DB/LB
29	Z17 20BK (CD)
30	R49 20LB
31	G76 20TN/YL (LHD)
31	G76 20TN/YL (RHD)
32	T2 18TN/BK (DIESEL)
33	-
34	-
35	X51 18WT/DG
36	X57 18DG/WT
37	L7 18BK/YL (EXPORT)
38	L13 18BR/YL (EXPORT)
39	V10 22BR (LHD)
39	V10 20BR (RHD)

C200 - DK GRAY/LHD BLACK/RHD (BODY SIDE)

CAV	CIRCUIT
40	X52 18DB/WT
41	X58 18DB/OR
42	-
43	V13 20BR/LG
44	V14 22RD/VT
45	-
46	V20 20BK/WT
47	V22 20BR/YL
48	R46 20BR/LB
49	X64 18BR/WT
50	Z305 20BK/OR
51	Z306 20BK/LG
52	R48 20TN
53	G32 20BK/LB (LHD)
53	G32 20DB/OR (RHD)
54	G31 20VT/LG
55	Z9 16BK
56	V11 20BK/TN
57	G18 20PK/BK
58	V37 22RD/LG (LHD)
58	V37 20RD/LG (RHD)
59	K4 20BK/LB
60	-
A	-
B	-
C	A1 12RD
D	-
E	-
F	-
G	A2 12PK/BK
H	C1 12DG
J	-
K	-
L	-
M	-



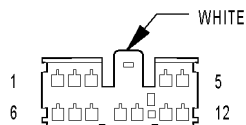


C200 - GRAY/LHD BLACK/RHD (INSTRUMENT PANEL SIDE)

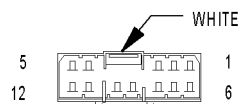
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	X84 18OR/BK
2	X86 18OR/RD
3	X81 18YL/BK
4	X83 18YL/RD
5	X53 18DG/OR
6	X55 18BR/RD
7	X54 18VT
8	X56 18DB/PK
9	Y152 20LG/OR (EXCEPT EXPORT)
10	D20 20LG
11	Y151 20LG/BR (EXCEPT EXPORT)
12	Y153 20DB/RD (EXCEPT EXPORT)
13	X40 20WT/RD (PREMIUM RADIO)
14	D25 20YL/VT/GY
15	D25 20YL/VT/BR
16	D32 20LG/DG
17	T41 18BK/WT (DIESEL)
18	Z4 20WT/BK (PREMIUM RADIO)
19	X41 20WT/DG (PREMIUM RADIO)
20	T6 18OR/WT (GAS)
21	D21 20PK (GAS)
22	B30 18DG/OR (DIESEL)
22	K29 20WT/PK (GAS)
23	X160 20YL (PREMIUM RADIO)
24	X112 20RD (PREMIUM RADIO)
25	-
26	-
27	G70 20BR/TN (EXPORT)
28	R47 20DB/LB
29	Z17 20BK (PREMIUM RADIO)
30	R49 20LB
31	G76 20TN/YL
32	T2 20TN/BK (DIESEL)
33	-
34	-
35	X51 18WT/DG
36	X57 18DG/WT
37	L7 20BK/YL (EXPORT)
38	L13 20BR/YL (EXPORT)
39	V10 20BR
40	X52 18DB/WT
41	X58 18DB/OR
42	-
43	V13 20BR/LG
44	V14 20RD/VT
45	-
46	V20 20BK/WT
47	V22 20BR/YL
48	R46 20BR/LB
49	X64 18BR/WT
50	Z305 20BK/OR
51	Z306 20BK/LG
52	R48 20TN
53	G32 20BK/LB

C200 - GRAY/LHD BLACK/RHD (INSTRUMENT  
PANEL SIDE)

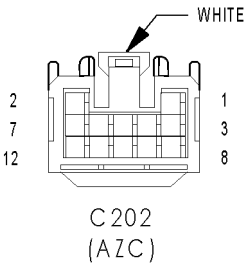
CAV	CIRCUIT
54	G31 20VT/LG
55	Z9 16BK
56	V11 20BK/TN
57	G18 20PK/BK
58	V37 20RD/LG
59	K4 20BK/LB
60	-
A	-
B	-
C	A1 12RD
D	-
E	-
F	-
G	A2 12PK/BK (RHD)
H	C1 12DG
J	-
K	-
L	-
M	-

C 201  
(DIESEL)C201 (DIESEL) - WHITE (INSTRUMENT PANEL  
SIDE)

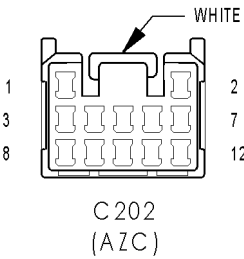
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	-
2	Z300 18BK
3	E2 20OR
4	B30 18DG/OR
5	D25 20YL/VT
6	D19 20VT/OR
7	D21 20PK
8	F12 20DB/WT
9	T2 20TN/BK
10	Z234 18BK
11	T41 18BK/WT
12	F991 18OR/DB

C 201  
(DIESEL)C201 (DIESEL) - WHITE (SHIFTER ASSEMBLY  
SIDE)

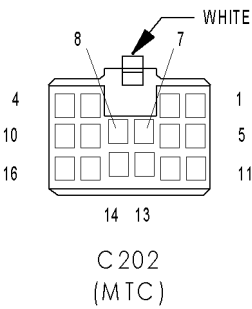
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	-
2	Z300 20WT/DB
3	-
4	K2 20WT/PK
5	D25 20RD
6	-
7	D21 20PK
8	F12 20DB/WT
9	T2 20TN/BK
10	Z234 20WT
11	T41 20BK/WT
12	F991 20OR/DB



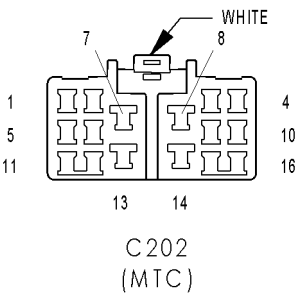
C202 (AZC) - WHITE (A/C SIDE)	
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	C32 20GY/DB (LHD)
1	C100 20YL/DB (RHD)
2	C100 20YL/DB (LHD)
2	C32 20GY/DB (RHD)
3	C33 20DB/RD (LHD)
3	C96 20WT/DB (RHD)
4	C95 20WT/BK (LHD)
4	C94 20WT/DG (RHD)
5	C94 20WT/DG (LHD)
5	C95 20WT/BK (RHD)
6	C96 20WT/DB (LHD)
6	C33 20DB/RD (RHD)
7	C102 20TN/BK (LHD)
7	C35 20DG/YL (RHD)
8	C35 20DG/YL (LHD)
8	C102 20TN/BK (RHD)
9	C56 20RD/LG
10	-
11	C201 20LB/YL
12	G32 20BK/LB



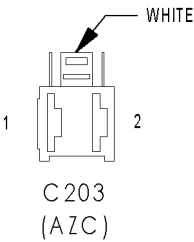
C202 (AZC) - WHITE (INSTRUMENT PANEL SIDE)	
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	C32 20GY/DB (LHD)
1	C100 20YL/DB (RHD)
2	C100 20YL/DB (LHD)
2	C32 20GY/DB (RHD)
3	C33 20DB/RD (LHD)
3	C96 20WT/DB (RHD)
4	C95 20WT/BK (LHD)
4	C94 20WT/DG (RHD)
5	C94 20WT/DG (LHD)
5	C95 20WT/BK (RHD)
6	C96 20WT/DB (LHD)
6	C33 20DB/RD (RHD)
7	C102 20TN/BK (LHD)
7	C35 20DG/YL (RHD)
8	C35 20DG/YL (LHD)
8	C102 20TN/BK (RHD)
9	C56 20RD/LG
10	-
11	C201 20LB/YL
12	G32 20BK/LB



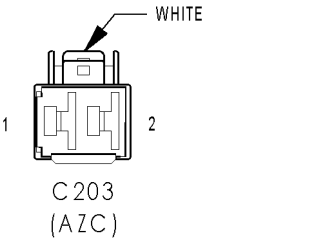
C202 (MTC) - WHITE (A/C SIDE)	
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	-
2	C101 20LB/YL
3	G32 20BK/LB
4	-
5	C67 20RD/LB
6	-
7	-
8	-
9	-
10	C6 14LB
11	Z132 20BK/OR
12	F22 20WT/PK
13	C7 12BK/TN
14	C1 12DG
15	C4 16TN
16	C5 16LG



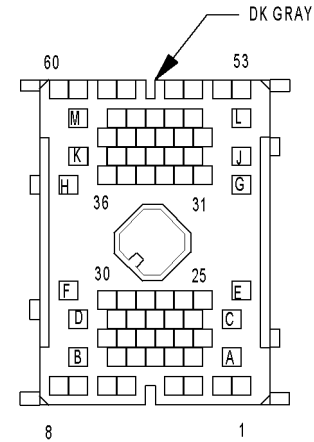
C202 (MTC) - WHITE (INSTRUMENT PANEL SIDE)	
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	-
2	C201 20LB/YL
3	G32 20BK/LB
4	-
5	C67 20RD/LB
6	-
7	-
8	-
9	-
10	C6 14LB
11	Z132 20BK/OR
12	F22 20WT/PK
13	C7 12BK/TN
14	C1 12DG
15	C4 16TN
16	C5 16LG



C203 (AZC) - WHITE (A/C SIDE)	
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	Z118 12BK
2	C1 12DG



C203 (AZC) - WHITE (INSTRUMENT PANEL SIDE)	
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	Z118 12BK
2	C1 12DG

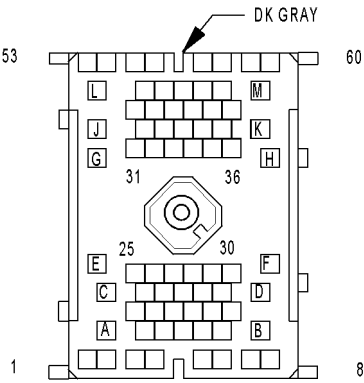


C 300  
(LHD)  
(IF EQUIPPED -- DELETED  
ON LATE VOLUME  
PRODUCTION CHANGE)

C300 - DK GRAY (LEFT BODY SIDE)	
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	D25 20YL/VT
2	V13 20BR/LG
3	V22 20BR/YL
4	P112 20YL/WT
5	P114 20YL/RD
6	P35 20OR/VT
7	P36 20PK/VT
8	L50 18WT/TN
9	B1 20YL/DB
10	B2 20YL
11	B3 20LG/DB
12	B4 20LG
13	-
14	-
15	-
16	P29 20BR/WT (HEATED SEATS)
17	P86 20PK/BK (HEATED SEATS)
18	E21 20OR/RD
19	K4 20BK/LB
20	K226 20LB/YL
21	L62 18BR/RD
22	L95 18DG/YL (EXPORT)
23	-
24	L1 18VT/BK
25	-
26	-
27	-
28	-
29	-
30	-
31	-
32	-
33	-
34	-
35	-

C300 - DK GRAY (LEFT BODY SIDE)

CAV	CIRCUIT
36	-
37	X75 20GY/LG (EXPORT)
38	-
39	-
40	-
41	K106 20WT/DG (EXCEPT EXPORT)
42	K107 20OR/YL (EXCEPT EXPORT)
43	K125 18OR/DG (EXCEPT EXPORT)
44	-
45	-
46	-
47	-
48	-
49	-
50	-
51	-
52	-
53	X91 18WT/DG (PREMIUM)
53	X57 18WT/DG (PREMIUM)
54	X51 18DG/WT (BASE)
55	-
56	-
57	Z155 18BK/OR (EXCEPT BASE)
58	-
59	-
60	-
A	P130 16DG/WT (HEATED SEATS)
B	Q13 16DB
C	B40 14LB
D	-
E	P144 16BK/VT (HEATED SEATS)
F	A141 16DG/BK (GAS)
G	-
H	-
J	-
K	-
L	Q23 16RD/WT
M	-



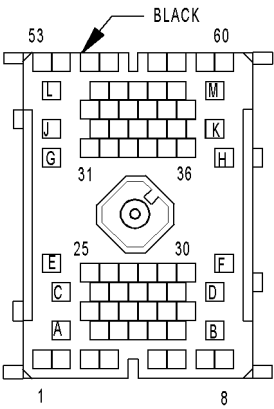
C 300  
(LHD)  
(IF EQUIPPED -- DELETED  
ON LATE VOLUME  
PRODUCTION CHANGE)

C300 - DK GRAY (RIGHT BODY SIDE)	
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	D25 20YL/VT
2	V13 20BR/LG
3	V22 20BR/YL
4	P112 20YL/WT
5	P114 20YL/WT
6	P35 20PR/VT
7	P36 20PK/VT
8	L50 20WT/TN
9	B1 20YL/DB
10	B2 20YL
11	B3 20LG/DB
12	B4 20LG
13	-
14	-
15	-
16	P29 20BR/WT (EXCEPT BASE)
17	P86 20PK/BK (EXCEPT BASE)
18	E21 20OR/RD
19	K4 20BK/LB
20	K226 18LB/YL (DIESEL)
20	K226 20LB/YL (GAS)
21	L62 18BR/RD
22	L95 18DG/YL (EXPORT)
23	-
24	L1 18VT/BK
25	-
26	-
27	-
28	-
29	-
30	-
31	-
32	-
33	-
34	-
35	-
36	-
37	X75 20GY/LG (EXPORT)
38	-
39	-



C300 - DK GRAY (RIGHT BODY SIDE)

CAV	CIRCUIT
40	-
41	K106 20WT/DG (EXCEPT EXPORT)
42	K107 200R/YL (EXCEPT EXPORT)
43	K125 18WT/DB (EXCEPT EXPORT)
44	-
45	-
46	-
47	-
48	-
49	-
50	-
51	-
52	-
53	X57 18DG/WT (BASE)
53	X91 18WT/DG (EXCEPT BASE)
54	X51 18WT/DG (BASE)
54	X93 18DG/WT (EXCEPT BASE)
55	-
56	-
57	Z155 18BK/OR
58	-
59	-
60	-
A	P130 16DG/WT (EXCEPT BASE)
B	Q13 16DB
C	B40 12LB
D	
E	P144 16BK/LG (EXCEPT BASE)
F	A141 16DG/BK (GAS)
G	-
H	-
J	-
K	-
L	Q23 16RD/WT
M	-

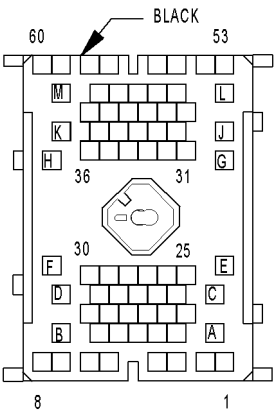


C 301  
(RHD)

C301 (RHD) - BLACK (LEFT BODY SIDE)	
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	L50 18WT/TN
2	F70 20PK
3	M2 18YL
4	M20 18YL/BK
5	P35 20OR/VT
6	P36 20PK/VT
7	-
8	L7 18BK/YL
9	L95 18DG/YL
10	L63 18DG/RD
11	G80 20VT/YL
12	X80 18LB/BK
13	X82 18LB/RD
14	X85 18LG/DG
15	X87 18LG/RD
16	X93 18DG/WT
17	X91 18WT/DG
18	X84 18OR/GY
19	L62 20BR/RD
20	X86 18OR/RD
21	X81 18YL/BK
22	X83 18YL/RD
23	X56 18DB/PK
24	X51 18WT/DG
25	X57 18DG/WT
26	X52 18DB/WT
27	X58 18DB/OR
28	X54 18VT
29	X55 18BR/RD
30	X53 18DG/OR
31	X64 18BR/WT
32	D25 20YL/VT
33	
34	G78 20TN/BK
35	-
36	-
37	E21 20OR/RD
38	G77 20TN/OR
39	G76 20TN/YL

C301 (RHD) - BLACK (LEFT BODY SIDE)

CAV	CIRCUIT
40	L1 18VT/BK
41	G5 20DB/WT
42	P86 20PK/BK
43	P29 20BR/WT
44	G73 20LG/OR
45	C235 18WT/LB (CD)
46	X160 20YL (CD)
47	X40 20RD/WT (CD)
48	-
49	X112 20RD (CD)
50	X41 20RD/BK (CD)
51	Z4 20WT/BK (CD)
52	Z17 20BK (CD)
53	-
54	-
55	-
56	-
57	-
58	-
59	-
60	-
A	Q13 16DB
B	Q23 16RD/WT
C	F9 14RD/BK
D	F60 16RD/WT
E	Z9 16BK
F	Z5 16BK/VT
G	C15 12BK/WT
H	A148 16LG/RD
J	-
K	Y202 14RD/TN
L	Q30 16TN
M	P130 16DG/WT

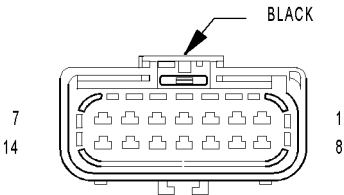


C 301  
(RHD)

C301 (RHD) - BLACK (RIGHT BODY SIDE)	
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	L50 18WT/TN
2	F70 18PK
3	M2 18YL
4	M20 18YL/BK
5	P35 20OR/VT
6	P36 20PK/VT
7	-
8	L7 18BK/YL
9	L95 18DG/YL
10	L63 18DG/RD
11	G80 20VT/YL
12	X80 18LB/BK
13	X82 18LB/RD
14	X85 18LG/DG
15	X87 18LG/RD
16	X93 18DG/WT
17	X91 18WT/DG
18	X84 18OR/GY
19	L62 18BR/RD
20	X86 18OR/RD
21	X81 18YL/BK
22	X83 18YL/RD
23	X56 18DB/BK
24	X51 18WT/DG
25	X57 18DG/WT
26	X52 18DB/WT
27	X58 18DB/OR
28	X54 18VT
29	X55 18BR/RD
30	X53 18DG/OR
31	X64 18BR/WT
32	D25 20YL/VT
33	F22 20WT/PK
34	G78 20TN/BK
35	M1 18PK/RD
36	-
37	E21 20OR/RD
38	G77 20TN/OR
39	G76 20TN/YL
40	L1 18VT/BK
41	G5 20DB/WT
42	P86 20PK/BK
43	P29 20BR/WT
44	G73 20LG/OR
45	C235 20WT/LB (CD)
46	X160 20YL (CD)
47	X40 20WT/RD (CD)
48	-
49	X112 20RD (CD)
50	X41 20WT/DG (CD)
51	Z4 20WT/BK (CD)
52	Z17 20BK (CD)
53	-
54	-
55	-

C301 (RHD) - BLACK (RIGHT BODY SIDE)

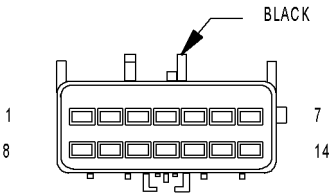
CAV	CIRCUIT
56	-
57	-
58	-
59	-
60	-
A	Q13 16DB
B	Q23 16RD/WT
C	F9 14RD/BK
D	F60 16RD/WT
E	Z9 16BK
F	Z5 16BK/VT
G	C15 12BK/WT
H	A148 16LG/RD
J	-
K	Y202 14RD/TN
L	Q30 16TN
M	P130 16DG/WT



C302

C302 - BLACK (BODY SIDE)

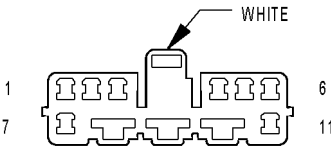
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	P112 20YL/WT
2	P114 20YL/RD
3	D25 20YL/VT
4	Z28 12BK (LHD)
4	Z243 12BK (RHD)
5	E21 20OR/RD
6	Q13 16DB
7	Q23 16RD/WT
8	A146 12OR/WT
9	X55 18BR/RD (BASE)
9	X85 18LG/DG (LHD PREMIUM)
9	X80 18LB/BK (RHD PREMIUM)
10	X53 18DG/OR (BASE)
10	X87 18LG/RD (LHD PREMIUM)
10	X82 18LB/RD (RHD PREMIUM)
11	M1 18PK/RD (JAPAN)
12	-
13	-
14	-



C 302

C302 - BLACK (FRONT DRIVER DOOR SIDE)

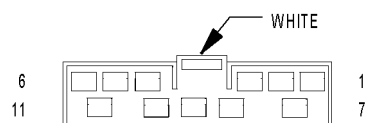
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	P112 20YL/WT
2	P114 20YL/RD
3	D25 20YL/VT
4	Z28 12BK (LHD)
4	Z243 12BK (RHD)
5	E21 20OR/RD
6	Q13 16DB
7	Q23 16RD/WT
8	A146 12OR/WT
9	X55 18LG/DG (BASE)
9	X85 18LG/DG (LHD PREMIUM)
9	X80 18LG/DG (RHD PREMIUM)
10	X53 18LG/RD (BASE)
10	X87 18LG/RD (LHD PREMIUM)
10	X82 18LG/RD (RHD PREMIUM)
11	M1 18PK (JAPAN)
12	-
13	-
14	-



C 303

C303 - WHITE (BODY SIDE)

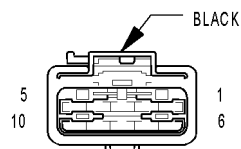
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	X58 18DB/OR (BASE)
1	X92 18TN/DG (PREMIUM)
2	X52 18DB/WT (BASE)
2	X90 18WT/VT (PREMIUM)
3	E20 20OR/DB (LHD)
3	E21 20OR/RD (RHD)
4	P35 20OR/VT
5	P36 20PK/VT
6	-
7	-
8	Q14 16GY (LHD)
8	Q13 16DB (RHD)
9	Q24 16DG (LHD)
9	Q23 16RD/WT (RHD)
10	Z28 16BK (LHD)
10	Z151 16BK (RHD)
11	G76 18TN/YL (LHD)
11	G76 20TN/YL (RHD)



C 303

C303 - WHITE (REAR DOOR SIDE)

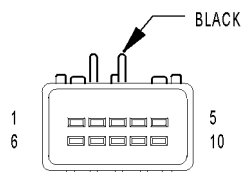
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	X58 18TN/DG (BASE)
1	X92 18TN/DG (PREMIUM)
2	X52 18WT/VT (BASE)
2	X90 18WT/VT (PREMIUM)
3	E21 20OR/RD
4	P35 18OR/VT
5	P36 18PK/VT
6	-
7	-
8	Q14 16GY
9	Q24 16DG
10	Z28 16BK
11	G76 18TN/YL



C 304

C304 - BLACK (BODY SIDE)

CAV	CIRCUIT
1	P86 18PK/BK (LHD)
1	P86 20PK/BK (RHD)
2	P130 16DG/WT
3	D25 20YL/VT
4	F37 16RD (LHD)
4	F37 16RD/LB (RHD)
5	Z243 16BK (LHD)
5	Z238 16BK (RHD)
6	P29 20BR/WT
7	Z155 20BK/OR (LHD)
7	Z155 18BK/OR (RHD)
8	P144 16BK/VT (LHD)
8	Z5 16BK/VT (RHD)
9	-
10	-

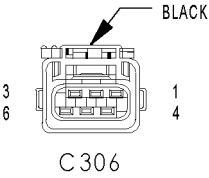


C 304

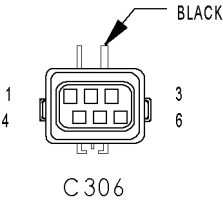
C304 - BLACK (POWER SEAT SIDE)

CAV	CIRCUIT
1	P86 20DG/YL (HEATED SEATS)
2	P130 16DG/WT (HEATED SEATS)
3	D25 20VT/YL (PREMIUM POWER SEATS)
4	F35 16RD
5	Z1 16BK
6	P29 20BR/WT (HEATED SEATS)
7	Z2 20BK/OR (PREMIUM POWER SEATS)
8	Z5 16BK/VT (HEATED SEATS)
9	-
10	-

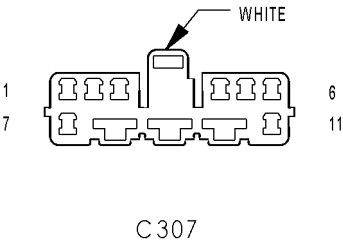




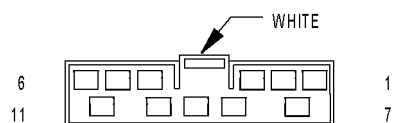
C306 - BLACK (BODY SIDE)	
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	P130 16DG/WT
2	Z238 16BK
3	F37 16RD/LB
4	P86 20PK/BK
5	P29 20BR/WT
6	Z5 16BK/VT



C306 - BLACK (POWER SEAT SIDE)	
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	P130 16DG/WT (HEATED SEATS)
2	Z238 16BK (LHD)
2	Z243 16BK (RHD)
3	F37 16RD/LB
4	P86 20DG/YL (HEATED SEATS)
5	P29 20BR/WT (HEATED SEATS)
6	Z5 16BK/VT (HEATED SEATS)



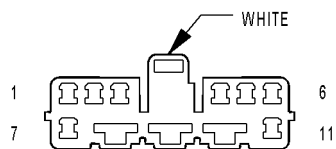
C307 - WHITE (BODY SIDE)	
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	X91 18WT/DG (LHD)
1	X93 18DG/WT (RHD)
2	X93 18DG/WT (LHD)
2	X91 18WT/DG (RHD)
3	E21 20OR/RD (LHD)
3	E20 20OR/DB (RHD)
4	P35 20OR/VT
5	P36 20PK/VT
6	-
7	-
8	Q13 16DB (LHD)
8	Q14 16GY (RHD)
9	Q23 16RD/WT (LHD)
9	Q24 16DG (RHD)
10	Z243 16BK
11	G77 20TN/OR



C 307

C307 - WHITE (REAR DOOR SIDE)

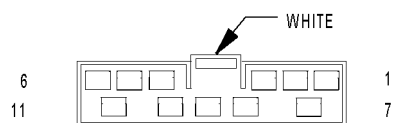
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	X57 18TN/DG (BASE)
1	X93 18TN/DG (PREMIUM)
2	X51 18WT/VT (BASE)
2	X91 18WT/VT (PREMIUM)
3	E21 20OR/RD
4	P35 18OR/VT
5	P36 18PK/VT
6	-
7	-
8	Q14 16GY
9	Q24 16DG
10	Z1 16BK
11	G76 18TN/YL



C 308

C308 - WHITE (LEFT BODY SIDE)

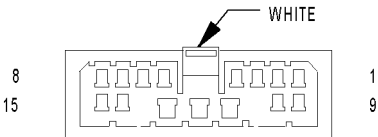
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	G78 20TN/BK
2	P35 18OR/VT
3	P36 18PK/VT
4	V13 18BR/LG
5	V22 18BR/YL
6	F70 18PK
7	L50 18WT/TN
8	Z309 12BK
9	G80 20VT/YL
10	C15 12BK/WT
11	L7 18BK/YL



C 308

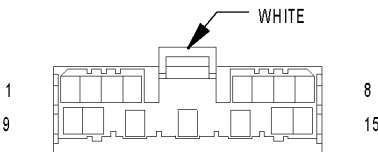
C308 - WHITE (LIFTGATE SIDE)

CAV	CIRCUIT
1	G78 20TN/BK
2	P35 18OR/VT
3	P36 18PK/VT
4	V13 18BR/LG
5	V22 18BR/YL
6	F70 18PK
7	L50 18WT/TN
8	Z1 12BK
9	G80 18VT/YL
10	C15 12BK/WT
11	L7 18BK/YL



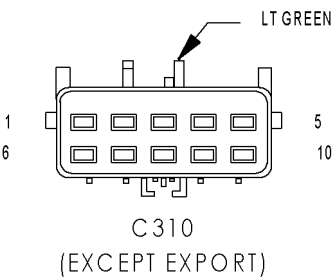
C 309

C309 - WHITE (LEFT BODY SIDE)	
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	D25 20YL/VT
2	M20 20YL/BK (LHD)
2	M20 18YL/BK (RHD)
3	M2 20YL/DG (LHD)
3	M2 18YL (RHD)
4	P112 20YL/WT
5	P114 20YL/RD
6	L1 20VT/BK
7	G5 20DB/WT
8	X75 20GY/LG (EXPORT)
9	-
10	F70 20PK
11	Q30 16TN
12	Z150 16BK
13	-
14	Z155 20BK/OR (EXCEPT LHD BASE)
14	Z155 18BK/OR (RHD/LHD BASE)
15	G73 20LG/OR



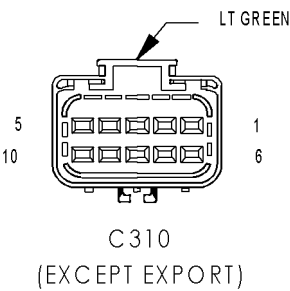
C 309

C309 - WHITE (OVERHEAD SIDE)	
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	D25 20YL/VT
2	M20 20YL/BK
3	M2 20YL/DG
4	P112 20BK/WT
5	P114 20BK/YL
6	L1 20BK/VT
7	G5 20DB/WT
8	X75 20GY/LG (EXPORT)
9	-
10	F70 20PK
11	Q30 20BK/LB (AUTOWIPE)
11	Q30 16TN (SUNROOF)
12	Z150 20BK (EXCEPT SUNROOF)
12	Z150 16BK (SUNROOF)
13	-
14	Z155 20BK/OR
15	G73 20LG/OR



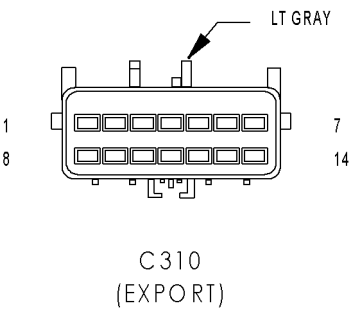
C310 (EXCEPT EXPORT) - LT GREEN (LEFT BODY SIDE)

CAV	CIRCUIT
1	F9 14RD/BK
2	L62 18BR/RD
3	L1 18VT/BK
4	Y202 14RD/TN
5	L7 18BK/YL
6	Z150 14BK
7	B40 14LB
8	Z150 14BK
9	L50 18WT/TN
10	L63 20DG/RD



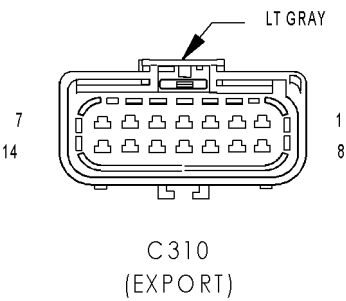
C310 (EXCEPT EXPORT) - LT GREEN (TRAILER TOW SIDE)

CAV	CIRCUIT
1	F9 14RD/BK
2	L62 20BR/RD
3	L1 18VT/BK
4	Y202 14RD/TN
5	L7 18BK/YL
6	Z150 14BK
7	B40 14LB
8	Z150 14BK
9	L50 18WT/TN
10	L63 20DG/RD



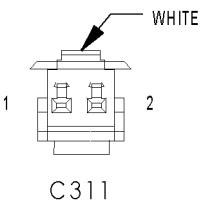
C310 (EXPORT) - LT GRAY (BODY SIDE)

CAV	CIRCUIT
1	F9 14RD/BK
2	L62 18BR/RD (LHD)
2	L62 20BR/RD (RHD)
3	L1 18VT/BK
4	F30 14RD/TN
5	L7 18BK/YL
6	L95 18DG/YL
7	B40 14LB
8	Z150 14BK
9	L50 18WT/TN (LHD)
9	L50 16WT/TN (RHD)
10	L63 20DG/RD
11	Z150 14BK
12	-
13	-
14	-



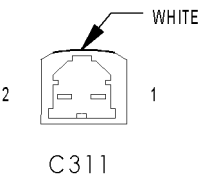
C310 (EXPORT) - LT GRAY (TRAILER TOW SIDE)

CAV	CIRCUIT
1	F9 14RD/BK
2	L62 20BR/RD
3	L1 18VT/BK
4	F30 14RD/TN
5	L7 18BK/YL
6	Z150 14RD/BK
7	B40 14LB
8	Z150 14BK
9	L50 18WT/TN
10	L63 20DG/RD
11	Z1 14BK
12	-
13	-
14	-



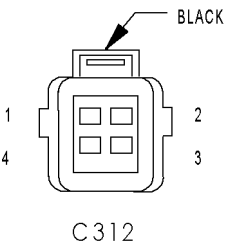
C311 - WHITE (CHMSL SIDE)

CAV	CIRCUIT
1	L50 18WT/TN
2	Z1 18BK



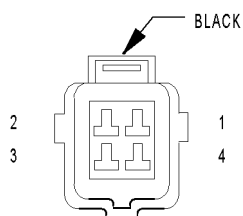
C311 - WHITE (LIFTGATE SIDE)

CAV	CIRCUIT
1	L50 18WT/TN
2	Z1 18BK



C312 - BLACK (LICENSE PLATE LAMP SIDE)

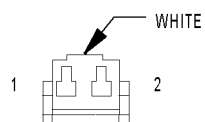
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	Z1 18BK
2	L7 18BK/YL
3	P101 18OR/PK
4	F70 18PK



C312

C312 - BLACK (LIFTGATE SIDE)

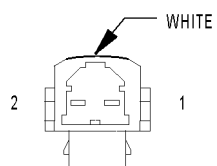
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	Z1 18BK
2	L7 18BK/YL
3	P101 18OR/PK
4	F70 18PK



C313

C313 - WHITE (FRONT DRIVER DOOR SIDE)

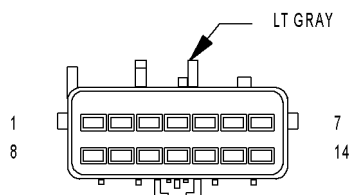
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	P112 20YL/WT
2	P114 20YL/RD



C313

C313 - WHITE (MUX JUMPER SIDE)

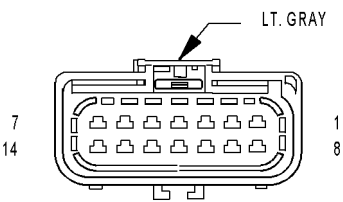
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	P112 20YL/WT
2	P114 20YL/RD



C314

C314 - LT GRAY (FRONT PASSENGER DOOR SIDE)

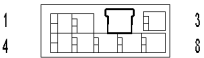
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	D25 20YL/VT
2	A146 12OR/WT
3	P35 18OR/VT
4	P36 18PK/VT
5	Z28 12BK (LHD)
5	Z234 12BK (RHD)
6	Q14 16GY
7	Q24 16DG
8	E20 20OR/DB
9	X56 18LB/BK (BASE)
9	X80 18LB/BK (LHD PREMIUM)
9	X85 18LB/BK (RHD PREMIUM)
10	X54 18LB/RD (BASE)
10	X82 18LB/RD (LHD PREMIUM)
10	X87 18LB/RD (RHD PREMIUM)
11	-
12	-
13	-
14	-



C314

C314 - LT GRAY (BODY SIDE)

CAV	CIRCUIT
1	D25 20YL/VT
2	A146 12OR/WT
3	P35 20OR/VT
4	P36 20PK/VT
5	Z28 12BK (LHD)
5	Z243 12BK (RHD)
6	Q14 16GY
7	Q24 16DG
8	E20 20OR/DB
9	X56 18DB/PK (BASE LHD)
9	X80 18LB/BK (PREMIUM LHD)
9	X85 18LG/DG (RHD)
10	X54 18VT (BASE)
10	X82 18LB/RD (PREMIUM)
10	X87 18LG/RD (RHD)
11	-
12	-
13	-
14	-



C315

C315 - (OVERHEAD SIDE)

CAV	CIRCUIT
1	Q30 16TN
2	-
3	Q43 20VT
4	Q41 20WT
5	-
6	-
7	Z150 16BK
8	-

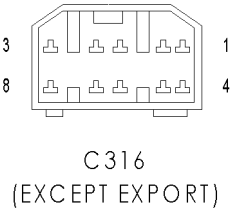


C315

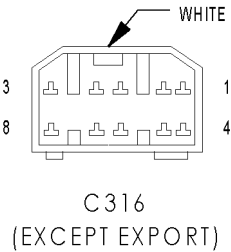
C315 - (SUN ROOF MODULE SIDE)

CAV	CIRCUIT
1	Q30 16DB
2	-
3	Q43 20VT
4	Q41 20WT
5	-
6	-
7	Z150 16BK
8	-

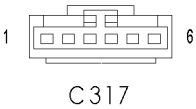




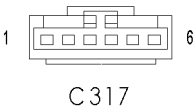
C316 (EXCEPT EXPORT) - (PEDAL SIDE)	
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	Y153 16DB/RD
2	L1 18WT/BR
3	F72 16RD/YL
4	D25 20VT/YL
5	Y151 20LG/BR
6	Z155 20BK/OR
7	Y152 20LG/OR
8	Z151 16BK



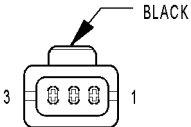
C316 (EXCEPT EXPORT) - WHITE (BODY SIDE)	
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	Y153 20DB/RD
2	L1 18VT/BK
3	F72 16RD/YL
4	D25 20YL/VT
5	Y151 20LG/BR
6	Z155 18BK/OR
7	Y152 20LG/OR
8	Z151 18BK



C317 - (INTRUSION TRANSCIEVER MODULE SIDE)	
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	Z155 20BK
2	-
3	X75 20GY/LG
4	-
5	D25 20YL/VT
6	F70 20PK

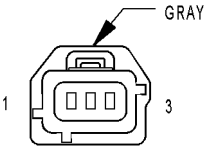


C317 - (OVERHEAD SIDE)	
CAV	CIRCUIT
1	Z155 20BK/OR
2	-
3	X75 20GY/LG
4	-
5	D25 20YL/VT
6	F70 20PK



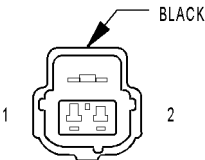
CAM SHAFT  
POSITION  
SENSOR  
(DIESEL)

CAMSHAFT POSITION SENSOR (DIESEL) - BLACK 3 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K944 20BR/DG	CAMSHAFT POSITION SENSOR GROUND
2	K44 20YL/GY	CAMSHAFT POSITION SENSOR SIGNAL
3	F15 18RD/DG	FUSED AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT



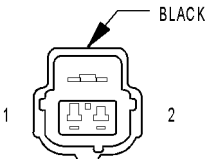
CAM SHAFT  
POSITION  
SENSOR  
(GAS)

CAMSHAFT POSITION SENSOR (GAS) - GRAY 3 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K44 18TN/YL	CAMSHAFT POSITION SENSOR SIGNAL
2	K4 20BK/LB	SENSOR GROUND
3	K7 20OR	5 VOLT SUPPLY



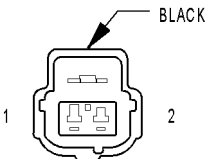
CAPACITOR  
(4.0L)

CAPACITOR (4.0L) - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	A142 14DG/OR (LHD)	AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT
1	A142 16DG/OR (RHD)	AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT
2	-	-



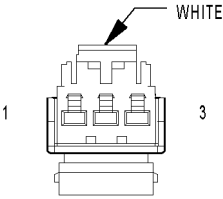
CAPACITOR  
NO. 1  
(4.7L)

CAPACITOR NO. 1 (4.7L) - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	A142 14DG/OR	AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT
2	-	-



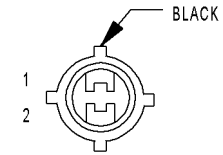
CAPACITOR  
NO. 2  
(4.7L)

CAPACITOR NO. 2 (4.7L) - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	A142 14DG/OR	AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT
2	-	-



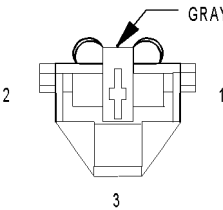
CARGO  
LAMP

CARGO LAMP - WHITE 3 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	F70 20PK	FUSED B(+)
2	G73 20LG/OR	LIFTGATE COURTESY DISABLE
3	M2 20YL/DG	COURTESY LAMP DRIVER



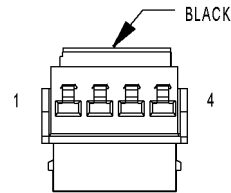
CENTER HIGH  
MOUNTED STOP  
LAMP

CENTER HIGH MOUNTED STOP LAMP - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	L50 18WT/TN	PRIMARY BRAKE SWITCH SIGNAL
2	Z309 18BK	GROUND



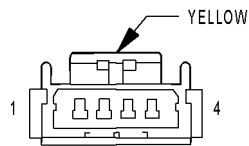
CIGAR  
LIGHTER

CIGAR LIGHTER - GRAY 3 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	F30 16RD	FUSED CIGAR LIGHTER RELAY OUTPUT
2	-	-
3	Z300 16BK	GROUND



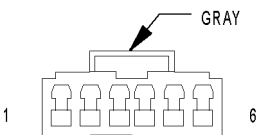
CLOCKSPEED C1

CLOCKSPEED C1 - BLACK 4 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	X3 20GY/OR	HORN RELAY CONTROL
2	V37 20RD/LG	SPEED CONTROL SWITCH SIGNAL
3	K4 20BK/LB	SENSOR GROUND
4	-	-



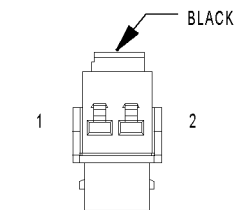
CLOCKSPEED C2

CLOCKSPEED C2 - YELLOW 4 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	R63 20TN/LB	DRIVER SQUIB 2 LINE 2
2	R61 20OR/LB	DRIVER SQUIB 2 LINE 1
3	R43 20BK/LB	DRIVER SQUIB 1 LINE 1
4	R45 20DG/LB	DRIVER SQUIB 1 LINE 2



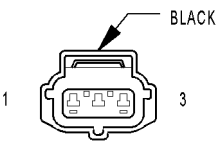
CLOCKSPEED C3

CLOCKSPEED C3 - GRAY 6 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	X20 20RD/YL	RADIO CONTROL MUX
2	X10 20RD/BK	RADIO CONTROL MUX RETURN
3	X3 20GY/OR	HORN RELAY CONTROL
4	V37 20RD/LG	SPEED CONTROL SWITCH SIGNAL
5	K4 20BK/LB	SENSOR GROUND
6	-	-



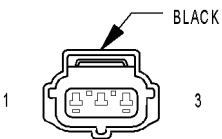
CLOCKSPEED C4

CLOCKSPEED C4 - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	X20 20RD/YL	RADIO CONTROL MUX
2	X10 20RD/BK	RADIO CONTROL MUX RETURN



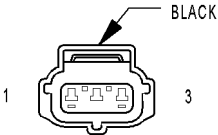
COIL ON  
PLUG NO. 1  
(4.7L)

COIL ON PLUG NO. 1 (4.7L) - BLACK 3 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K91 14TN/RD	COIL DRIVER NO. 1
2	A142 14DG/OR	AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT
3	-	-



COIL ON  
PLUG NO. 2  
(4.7L)

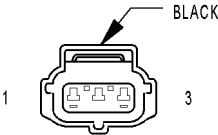
COIL ON PLUG NO. 2 (4.7L) - BLACK 3 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K92 14TN/PK	COIL DRIVER NO. 2
2	A142 14DG/OR	AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT
3	-	-



COIL ON  
PLUG NO. 3  
(4.7L)

COIL ON PLUG NO. 3 (4.7L) - BLACK 3 WAY

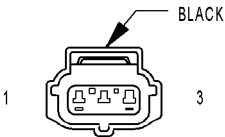
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K93 14TN/OR	COIL DRIVER NO. 3
2	A142 14DG/OR	AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT
3	-	-



COIL ON  
PLUG NO. 4  
(4.7L)

COIL ON PLUG NO. 4 (4.7L) - BLACK 3 WAY

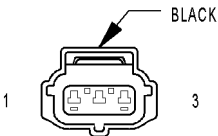
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K94 14TN/LG	COIL DRIVER NO. 4
2	A142 14DG/OR	AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT
3	-	-



COIL ON  
PLUG NO. 5  
(4.7L)

COIL ON PLUG NO. 5 (4.7L) - BLACK 3 WAY

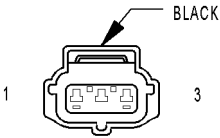
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K95 14TN/DG	COIL DRIVER NO. 5
2	A142 14DG/OR	AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT
3	-	-



COIL ON  
PLUG NO. 6  
(4.7L)

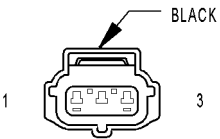
COIL ON PLUG NO. 6 (4.7L) - BLACK 3 WAY

CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K96 14TN/LB	COIL DRIVER NO. 6
2	A142 14DG/OR	AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT
3	-	-



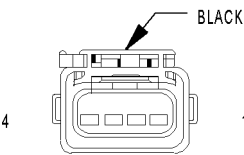
COIL ON  
PLUG NO. 7  
(4.7L)

COIL ON PLUG NO. 7 (4.7L) - BLACK 3 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K97 14BR	COIL DRIVER NO. 7
2	A142 14DG/OR	AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT
3	-	-



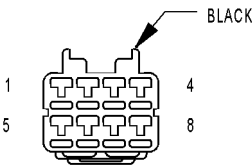
COIL ON  
PLUG NO. 8  
(4.7L)

COIL ON PLUG NO. 8 (4.7L) - BLACK 3 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K98 14LB/RD	COIL DRIVER NO. 8
2	A142 14DG/OR	AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT
3	-	-



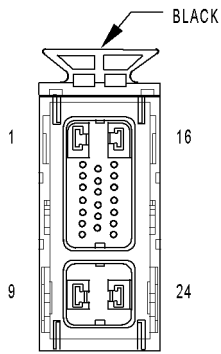
COIL  
RAIL  
(4.0L)

COIL RAIL (4.0L) - BLACK 4 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K91 14TN/RD	COIL DRIVER NO. 1
2	A142 14DG/OR	AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT
3	K92 14TN/PK	COIL DRIVER NO. 2
4	K93 14TN/OR	COIL DRIVER NO. 3



COMPACT  
DISC  
CHANGER  
(PREMIUM RADIO)

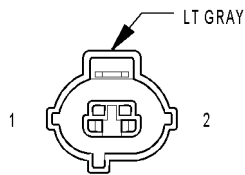
COMPACT DISC CHANGER (PREMIUM RADIO) - BLACK 8 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	X40 20WT/RD	AUDIO OUT RIGHT
2	C235 20WT/LB	SHIELD
3	D25 20YL/VT	PCI BUS
4	X112 20RD	IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-ACC)
5	X41 20WT/DG	AUDIO OUT LEFT
6	Z4 20WT/BK	GROUND
7	Z17 20BK	GROUND
8	X160 20YL	FUSED B(+)



CONTROLLER  
ANTILOCK  
BRAKE

CONTROLLER ANTILOCK BRAKE - BLACK 25 WAY

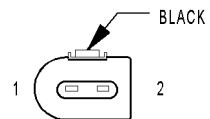
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	Z101 12BK/OR	GROUND
2	B1 18YL/DB	RIGHT REAR WHEEL SPEED SENSOR SIGNAL
3	B2 18YL	RIGHT REAR WHEEL SPEED SENSOR 12 VOLT SUPPLY
4	-	-
5	D25 18VT/YL	PCI BUS
6	B6 18WT/DB	RIGHT FRONT WHEEL SPEED SENSOR SIGNAL
7	B7 18WT	RIGHT FRONT WHEEL SPEED SENSOR 12 VOLT SUPPLY
8	-	-
9	A20 12RD/DB	FUSED B(+)
10	F20 18DB/PK	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN)
11	D52 18LG/WT (DIESEL)	CAN C BUS(+)
12	-	-
13	B22 18DG/YL	VEHICLE SPEED SENSOR SIGNAL
14	D51 18DG/WT (DIESEL)	CAN C BUS(-)
15	-	-
16	Z102 12BK/OR	GROUND
17	G9 18GY/BK	RED BRAKE WARNING INDICATOR SWITCH SENSE
18	L50 18WT/TN	BRAKE LAMP SWITCH OUTPUT
19	B3 18LG/DB	LEFT REAR WHEEL SPEED SENSOR SIGNAL
20	B4 18LG	LEFT REAR WHEEL SPEED SENSOR 12 VOLT SUPPLY
21	Z231 18BK	GROUND
22	B8 18RD/DB	LEFT FRONT WHEEL SPEED SENSOR SIGNAL
23	B9 18RD	LEFT FRONT WHEEL SPEED SENSOR 12 VOLT SUPPLY
24	A10 12RD/DG	FUSED B(+)



COOLANT  
LEVEL  
SENSOR

COOLANT LEVEL SENSOR - LT GRAY 2 WAY

CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	G18 20PK/BK (EXCEPT LHD GAS)	COOLANT LEVEL SWITCH SENSE
1	G18 18PK/BK (LHD GAS)	COOLANT LEVEL SWITCH SENSE
2	Z307 20BK	GROUND

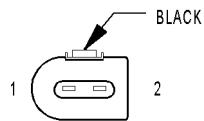


CRANKCASE  
HEATER  
(DIESEL)

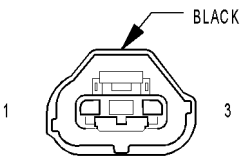
CRANKCASE HEATER (DIESEL) - BLACK 2 WAY

CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	Z18 20BR	GROUND
2	F15 16RD/DG	FUSED AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT

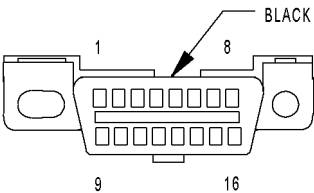




CRANKSHAFT  
POSITION  
SENSOR  
(DIESEL)



CRANKSHAFT  
POSITION  
SENSOR  
(GAS)



DATA LINK  
CONNECTOR

CRANKSHAFT POSITION SENSOR (DIESEL) - BLACK 2 WAY

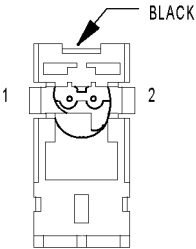
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K924 20YL	CRANKSHAFT POSITION SENSOR SIGNAL 2
2	K3 20BK	CRANKSHAFT POSITION SENSOR SIGNAL 1

CRANKSHAFT POSITION SENSOR (GAS) - BLACK 3 WAY

CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K24 18GY/BK (4.0L)	CRANKSHAFT POSITION SENSOR SIGNAL
1	K24 20GY/BK (4.7L)	CRANKSHAFT POSITION SENSOR SIGNAL
2	K4 20BK/LB	SENSOR GROUND
3	K7 20OR	5 VOLT SUPPLY

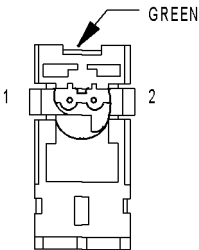
DATA LINK CONNECTOR - BLACK 16 WAY

CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	-	-
2	D25 20YL/VT	PCI BUS
3	-	-
4	Z305 20BK/OR	GROUND
5	Z306 20BK/LG	GROUND
6	D32 20LG/DG	SCI RECEIVE
7	D21 20PK	SCI TRANSMIT
8	-	-
9	D19 20VT/OR	BODY CONTROL MODULE FLASH ENABLE
10	-	-
11	-	-
12	-	-
13	-	-
14	D20 20LG	SCI RECEIVE
15	-	-
16	F33 20PK/RD	FUSED B(+)



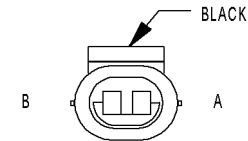
DRIVER  
AIRBAG  
SQUIB 1

DRIVER AIRBAG SQUIB 1 - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	R43 20BK	DRIVER SQUIB 1 LINE 1
2	R45 20BK	DRIVER SQUIB 1 LINE 2



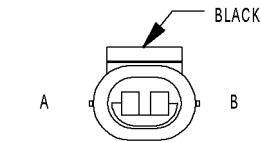
DRIVER  
AIRBAG  
SQUIB 2

DRIVER AIRBAG SQUIB 2 - GREEN 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	R63 20TN/LB	DRIVER SQUIB 2 LINE 2
2	R61 20OR/LB	DRIVER SQUIB 2 LINE 1



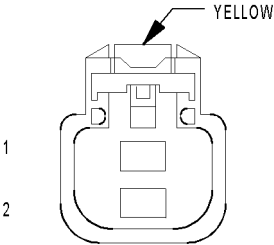
DRIVER  
BLEND DOOR  
MOTOR/ACTUATOR  
(LHD AZC)

DRIVER BLEND DOOR MOTOR/ACTUATOR (LHD AZC) - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
A	C95 20WT/BK	DRIVER BLEND DOOR DRIVER (B)
B	C33 20DB/RD	DRIVER BLEND DOOR DRIVER (A)



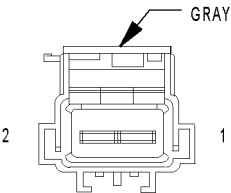
DRIVER  
BLEND DOOR MOTOR/  
ACTUATOR  
(RHD AZC)

DRIVER BLEND DOOR MOTOR/ACTUATOR (RHD AZC) - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
A	C33 20DB/RD	DRIVER BLEND DOOR DRIVER (A)
B	C95 20WT/BK	DRIVER BLEND DOOR DRIVER (B)



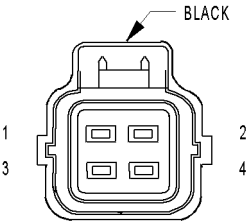
DRIVER  
CURTAIN  
AIRBAG  
SQUIB

DRIVER CURTAIN AIRBAG SQUIB - YELLOW 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	R73 20LB/BR (LHD)	DRIVER CURTAIN SQUIB 1 LINE 2
1	R73 20LB/WT (RHD)	DRIVER CURTAIN SQUIB 1 LINE 2
2	R75 20LB/OR (LHD)	DRIVER CURTAIN SQUIB 1 LINE 1
2	R75 20LB/YL (RHD)	DRIVER CURTAIN SQUIB 1 LINE 1



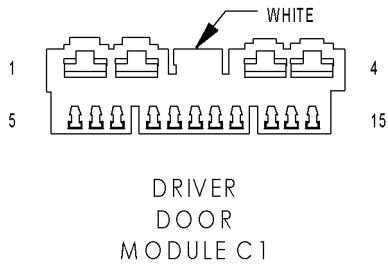
DRIVER  
CYLINDER  
LOCK SWITCH

DRIVER CYLINDER LOCK SWITCH - GRAY 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	G73 20LG/OR	DRIVER CYLINDER LOCK SWITCH SENSE
2	Z28 12BK (LHD)	GROUND
2	Z243 12BK (RHD)	GROUND



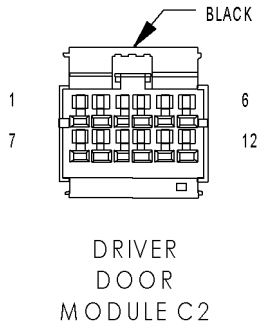
DRIVER DOOR  
LOCK  
MOTOR/  
AJAR SWITCH

DRIVER DOOR LOCK MOTOR/AJAR SWITCH - BLACK 4 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	G75 18TN/RD	DRIVER DOOR AJAR SWITCH SENSE
2	Z28 12BK (LHD)	GROUND
2	Z243 12BK (RHD)	GROUND
3	P34 18PK/BK	DRIVER DOOR UNLOCK DRIVER
4	P35 18OR/BK	DRIVER DOOR LOCK DRIVER



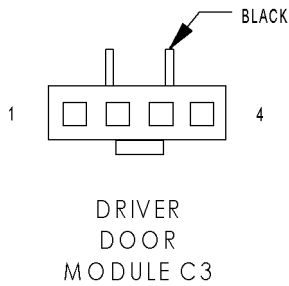
DRIVER DOOR MODULE C1 - WHITE 15 WAY

CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	A146 12OR/WT	FUSED B(+)
2	Q23 16RD/WT	DRIVER REAR WINDOW DRIVER (DOWN)
3	Q13 16DB	DRIVER REAR WINDOW DRIVER (UP)
4	Z28 12BK (LHD)	GROUND
4	Z234 12BK (RHD)	GROUND
5	P35 18OR/BK	DRIVER DOOR LOCK DRIVER
6	-	-
7	P34 18PK/BK	DRIVER DOOR UNLOCK DRIVER
8	D30 20VT/YL (JAPAN)	DIAGNOSTIC OUT
9	D25 20YL/VT	PCI BUS
10	G73 20LG/OR	DRIVER CYLINDER LOCK SWITCH SENSE
11	G75 18TN/RD	DRIVER DOOR AJAR SWITCH SENSE
12	E21 20OR/RD	DRIVER REAR DOOR SWITCH ILLUMINATION
13	Q11 16LB	DRIVER WINDOW DRIVER (UP)
14	-	-
15	Q21 16WT	DRIVER WINDOW DRIVER (DOWN)



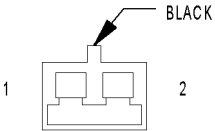
DRIVER DOOR MODULE C2 - BLACK 12 WAY

CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	P95 20OR	MIRROR HORIZONTAL DRIVER
2	C118 20BK/WT	MIRROR HEATER GROUND
3	P64 20VT	MIRROR VERTICAL POSITION SIGNAL
4	P69 20GY	MIRROR SENSOR GROUND
5	P65 20DG	MIRROR HORIZONTAL POSITION SIGNAL
6	C117 20BK	MIRROR HEATER 12 VOLT SUPPLY
7	P91 20WT	MIRROR COMMON DRIVER
8	P93 20RD	MIRROR VERTICAL DRIVER
9	M21 20PK/DG	COURTESY LAMP DRIVER
10	P110 20YL (EXPORT)	FOLDING MIRROR RETURN
11	P99 20DB (EXPORT)	FOLDING MIRROR FEED
12	L121 20BK/RD	COURTESY LAMP GROUND



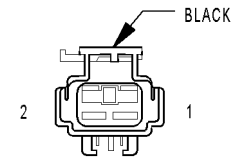
DRIVER DOOR MODULE C3 - BLACK 4 WAY

CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	BK	MEMORY SWITCH RETURN
2	BR	MEMORY SWITCH MUX
3	OR	MEMORY SET INDICATOR DRIVER
4	GY	SWITCH ILLUMINATION DRIVER



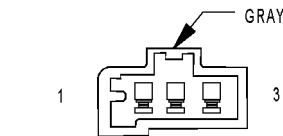
DRIVER  
FRONT DOOR  
COURTESY  
LAMP

DRIVER FRONT DOOR COURTESY LAMP - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	M21 20PK/DG	COURTESY LAMP DRIVER
2	L121 20BK/RD	COURTESY LAMP GROUND



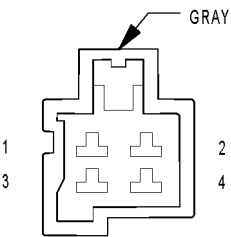
DRIVER FRONT  
POWER  
WINDOW MOTOR

DRIVER FRONT POWER WINDOW MOTOR - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	Q21 16WT	DRIVER WINDOW DRIVER (DOWN)
2	Q11 16LB	DRIVER WINDOW DRIVER (UP)



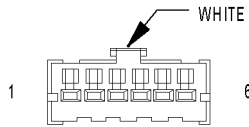
DRIVER  
HEATED SEAT  
BACK  
(HEATED SEAT/PREMIUM I/III)

DRIVER HEATED SEAT BACK (HEATED SEAT/PREMIUM I/III) - GRAY 3 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	P88 16BK/BR	HEATED SEAT DRIVER
2	Z6 16BK/YL	GROUND
3	-	-



DRIVER  
HEATED SEAT  
CUSHION  
(PREMIUM I/III)

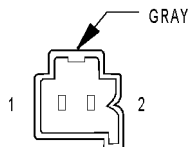
DRIVER HEATED SEAT CUSHION (PREMIUM I/III) - GRAY 4 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	P131 16BK/OR	DRIVER SEAT HEATER B(+) DRIVER
2	P88 16BK/BR	HEATED SEAT DRIVER
3	P135 20LB/BK	DRIVER SEAT TEMPERATURE SENSOR INPUT
4	P29 20BR/WT	SEAT SENSOR 5 VOLT SUPPLY



DRIVER  
HEATED SEAT  
SWITCH

DRIVER HEATED SEAT SWITCH - WHITE 6 WAY

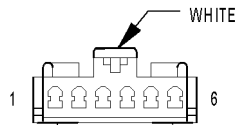
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	P133 20TN/DG	DRIVER SEAT HEATER SWITCH MUX
2	E2 20OR	PANEL LAMPS DRIVER
3	F22 20WT/PK	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN)
4	-	-
5	Z300 20BK	GROUND
6	P132 20OR/BK	SEAT HEATER SWITCH SENSOR GROUND



DRIVER  
LUMBAR  
MOTOR  
(MIDLINE/PREMIUM)

DRIVER LUMBAR MOTOR (MIDLINE/PREMIUM) - GRAY 2 WAY

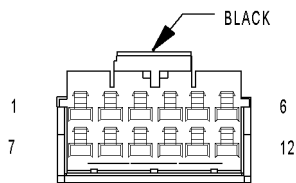
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	P105 16LG/DB	LUMBAR FORWARD SWITCH SENSE
2	P104 16YL/RD	LUMBAR REARWARD SWITCH SENSE



DRIVER  
LUMBAR  
SWITCH  
(MIDLINE/PREMIUM)

DRIVER LUMBAR SWITCH (MIDLINE/PREMIUM) - WHITE 6 WAY

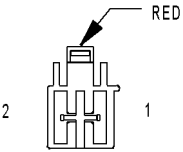
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	-	-
2	Z243 16BK (LHD)	GROUND
2	Z238 16BK (RHD)	GROUND
3	P104 16YL/RD (LHD)	LUMBAR REARWARD SWITCH SENSE
3	P105 16LG/DB (RHD)	LUMBAR FORWARD SWITCH SENSE
4	P105 16LG/DB (LHD)	LUMBAR FORWARD SWITCH SENSE
4	P104 16YL/RD (RHD)	LUMBAR REARWARD SWITCH SENSE
5	Z243 16BK (LHD)	GROUND
5	Z238 16BK (RHD)	GROUND
6	F35 16RD	FUSED B(+)



DRIVER  
POWER  
MIRROR

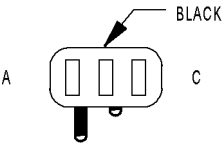
DRIVER POWER MIRROR - BLACK 12 WAY

CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	C117 20BK	MIRROR HEATER 12 VOLT SUPPLY
2	P65 20DG	MIRROR HORIZONTAL POSITION SIGNAL
3	P69 20GY	MIRROR SENSOR GROUND
4	P64 20VT	MIRROR VERTICAL POSITION SIGNAL
5	C118 20BK/WT	MIRROR HEATER GROUND
6	P95 20OR	MIRROR HORIZONTAL DRIVER
7	P114 20YL/RD	AUTO DAY/NIGHT MIRROR (-)
8	P99 20DB (EXPORT)	FOLDING MIRROR FEED
9	P110 20YL (EXPORT)	FOLDING MIRROR RETURN
10	P112 20YL/WT	AUTO DAY/NIGHT MIRROR (+)
11	P93 20RD	MIRROR VERTICAL DRIVER
12	P91 20WT	MIRROR COMMON DRIVER



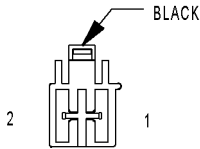
DRIVER  
POWER SEAT  
FRONT RISER  
MOTOR

DRIVER POWER SEAT FRONT RISER MOTOR - RED 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	P19 16YL/LG (EXCEPT PREMIUM II/III)	DRIVER SEAT FRONT UP DRIVER
1	P119 16YL/RD (PREMIUM II/III)	SEAT FRONT UP DRIVER
2	P21 16RD/LG (EXCEPT PREMIUM II/III)	DRIVER SEAT FRONT DOWN DRIVER
2	P121 16RD/GY (PREMIUM II/III)	SEAT FRONT DOWN DRIVER



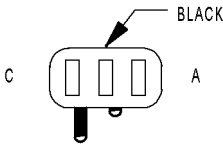
DRIVER  
POWER SEAT  
FRONT RISER  
MOTOR SENSOR  
(PREMIUM II/III)

DRIVER POWER SEAT FRONT RISER MOTOR SENSOR (PREMIUM II/III) - BLACK 3 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
A	P28 20BR/RD	SEAT POSITION SENSOR GROUND
B	P26 20BR	FRONT RISER POSITION SIGNAL
C	P29 20BR/WT	SEAT SENSOR 5 VOLT SUPPLY



DRIVER  
POWER SEAT  
HORIZONTAL  
MOTOR

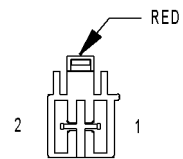
DRIVER POWER SEAT HORIZONTAL MOTOR - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	P17 16RD/YL (EXCEPT PREMIUM II/III)	DRIVER SEAT HORIZONTAL REARWARD DRIVER
1	P117 16RD/BR (PREMIUM II/III)	SEAT HORIZONTAL REARWARD DRIVER
2	P15 16YL/LB (EXCEPT PREMIUM II/III)	DRIVER SEAT HORIZONTAL FORWARD DRIVER
2	P115 16GY/LG (PREMIUM II/III)	SEAT HORIZONTAL FORWARD DRIVER



DRIVER  
POWER SEAT  
HORIZONTAL  
MOTOR SENSOR  
(PREMIUM II/III)

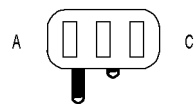
DRIVER POWER SEAT HORIZONTAL MOTOR SENSOR (PREMIUM II/III) - BLACK 3 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
A	P29 20BR/WT	SEAT SENSOR 5 VOLT SUPPLY
B	P25 20VT/RD	SEAT HORIZONTAL POSITION SIGNAL
C	P28 20BR/RD	SEAT POSITION SENSOR GROUND





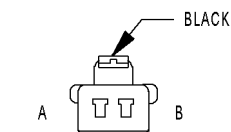
DRIVER  
POWER SEAT  
REAR RISER  
MOTOR

DRIVER POWER SEAT REAR RISER MOTOR - RED 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	P11 16YL/WT (EXCEPT PREMIUM II/III)	DRIVER SEAT REAR UP DRIVER
1	P111 16YL/DB (PREMIUM II/III)	SEAT REAR UP DRIVER
2	P13 16RD/WT (EXCEPT PREMIUM II/III)	DRIVER SEAT REAR DOWN DRIVER
2	P113 16RD/BK (PREMIUM II/III)	SEAT REAR DOWN DRIVER



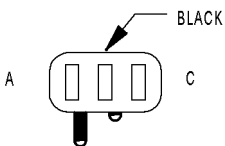
DRIVER  
POWER SEAT  
REAR RISER  
MOTOR SENSOR  
(PREMIUM II/III)

DRIVER POWER SEAT REAR RISER MOTOR SENSOR (PREMIUM II/III) - 3 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
A	P28 20BR/RD	SEAT POSITION SENSOR GROUND
B	P27 20LB/RD	REAR RISER POSITION SIGNAL
C	P29 20BR/WT	SEAT SENSOR 5 VOLT SUPPLY



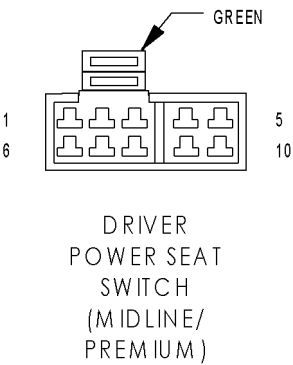
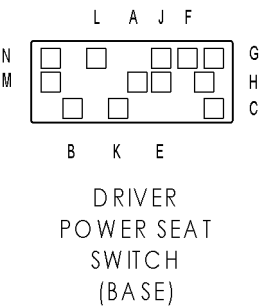
DRIVER  
POWER SEAT  
RECLINER MOTOR

DRIVER POWER SEAT RECLINER MOTOR - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
A	P41 16GY/WT (EXCEPT PREMIUM II/III)	DRIVER SEAT RECLINER DOWN DRIVER
A	P141 16GY/WT (PREMIUM II/III)	SEAT RECLINER DOWN DRIVER
B	P43 16GY/LB (MIDLINE/PREMIUM I)	DRIVER SEAT RECLINER UP DRIVER
B	P143 16GY/LB (PREMIUM II/III)	SEAT RECLINER UP DRIVER



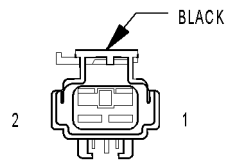
DRIVER POWER  
SEAT RECLINER  
MOTOR SENSOR  
(PREMIUM II/III)

DRIVER POWER SEAT RECLINER MOTOR SENSOR (PREMIUM II/III) - BLACK 3 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
A	P29 20BR/WT	SEAT SENSOR 5 VOLT SUPPLY
B	P47 20LB	RECLINER POSITION SIGNAL
C	P28 20BR/RD	SEAT POSITION SENSOR GROUND



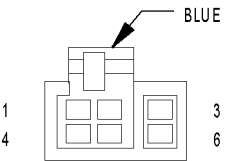
DRIVER POWER SEAT SWITCH (BASE) - 12 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
A	F35 16RD	FUSED B(+)
B	Z243 16BK (LHD)	GROUND
B	Z238 16BK (RHD)	GROUND
C	-	-
E	P21 16RD/LG (LHD)	DRIVER SEAT FRONT DOWN DRIVER
E	P19 16YL/LG (RHD)	DRIVER SEAT FRONT UP DRIVER
F	-	-
G	-	-
H	-	-
J	P19 16YL/LG (LHD)	DRIVER SEAT FRONT UP DRIVER
J	P21 16RD/LG (RHD)	DRIVER SEAT FRONT DOWN DRIVER
K	P15 16YL/LB	DRIVER SEAT HORIZONTAL FORWARD DRIVER
L	P17 16RD/YL	DRIVER SEAT HORIZONTAL REARWARD DRIVER
M	P13 16RD/WT (LHD)	DRIVER SEAT REAR DOWN DRIVER
M	P11 16YL/WT (RHD)	DRIVER SEAT REAR UP DRIVER
N	P11 16YL/WT (LHD)	DRIVER SEAT REAR UP DRIVER
N	P13 16RD/WT (RHD)	DRIVER SEAT REAR DOWN DRIVER

DRIVER POWER SEAT SWITCH (MIDLINE/PREMIUM) - GREEN 10 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	Z243 16BK (LHD)	GROUND
1	Z238 16BK (RHD)	GROUND
2	P43 16GY/LB (MIDLINE/PREMIUM I)	DRIVER SEAT RECLINER UP DRIVER
2	P43 20GY/LB (PREMIUM II/III)	RECLINER UP SWITCH SENSE
3	P17 16RD/YL (MIDLINE/PREMIUM I)	DRIVER SEAT HORIZONTAL REARWARD DRIVER
3	P17 20RD/YL (PREMIUM II/III)	DRIVER SEAT HORIZONTAL REARWARD SWITCH SENSE
4	P41 16GY/WT (MIDLINE/PREMIUM I)	DRIVER SEAT RECLINER DOWN DRIVER
4	P41 20GY/WT (PREMIUM II/III)	RECLINER DOWN SWITCH SENSE
5	F35 16RD (MIDLINE/PREMIUM I)	FUSED B(+)
5	P9 20RD/LB (PREMIUM II/III)	SEAT SWITCH B(+) SUPPLY
6	P15 16YL/LB (MIDLINE/PREMIUM I)	DRIVER SEAT HORIZONTAL FORWARD DRIVER
6	P15 20YL/LB (PREMIUM II/III)	DRIVER SEAT HORIZONTAL FORWARD SWITCH SENSE
7	P19 16YL/LG (MIDLINE/PREMIUM I)	SEAT FRONT UP SWITCH SENSE
7	P19 20YL/LG (PREMIUM II/III)	SEAT FRONT UP SWITCH SENSE
7	P21 20RD/LG (RHD PREMIUM II/III)	SEAT FRONT DOWN SWITCH SENSE
8	P11 16YL/WT (MIDLINE/PREMIUM I)	DRIVER SEAT REAR UP DRIVER
8	P11 20YL/WT (PREMIUM II/III)	SEAT REAR UP SWITCH SENSE
8	P13 20RD/WT (RHD PREMIUM II/III)	SEAT REAR DOWN SWITCH SENSE
9	P13 16RD/WT (MIDLINE/PREMIUM I)	DRIVER SEAT REAR DOWN DRIVER
9	P13 20RD/WT (PREMIUM II/III)	SEAT REAR DOWN SWITCH SENSE
9	P11 20YL/WT (RHD PREMIUM II/III)	SEAT REAR UP SWITCH SENSE
10	P21 16RD/LG (MIDLINE/PREMIUM I)	SEAT FRONT DOWN SWITCH SENSE
10	P21 20RD/LG (PREMIUM II/III)	SEAT FRONT DOWN SWITCH SENSE
10	P19 20YL/LG (RHD PREMIUM II/III)	SEAT FRONT UP SWITCH SENSE



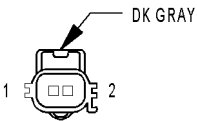
DRIVER REAR  
POWER WINDOW  
MOTOR

DRIVER REAR POWER WINDOW MOTOR - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	Q124 16DG/WT	WINDOW DRIVER (DOWN)
2	Q114 16GY/WT	WINDOW DRIVER (UP)



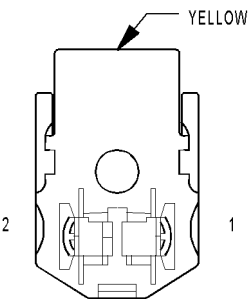
DRIVER REAR  
POWER WINDOW  
SWITCH

DRIVER REAR POWER WINDOW SWITCH - BLUE 6 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	Q14 16GY	DRIVER REAR WINDOW DRIVER (UP)
2	Q114 16GY/WT	WINDOW DRIVER (UP)
3	E21 200R/RD	DRIVER REAR DOOR SWITCH ILLUMINATION
4	Q24 16DG	DRIVER REAR WINDOW DRIVER (DOWN)
5	Q124 16DG/WT	WINDOW DRIVER (DOWN)
6	Z1 16BK	GROUND



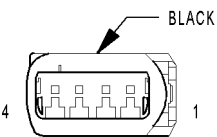
DRIVER  
SEAT BELT  
SWITCH

DRIVER SEAT BELT SWITCH - DK GRAY 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	R57 20DG	DRIVER SEAT BELT SWITCH SENSE
2	R59 20LB	DRIVER SEAT BELT SWITCH GROUND



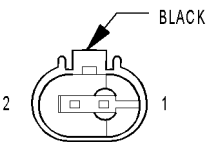
DRIVER  
SEAT BELT  
TENSIONER  
(RHD EXPORT)

DRIVER SEAT BELT TENSIONER - YELLOW (RHD EXPORT) 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	R55 20LG/DG	DRIVER SEAT BELT TENSIONER LINE 1
2	R53 20LG/YL	DRIVER SEAT BELT TENSIONER LINE 2

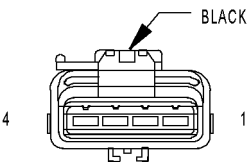


DRIVER SIDE  
IMPACT  
SENSOR

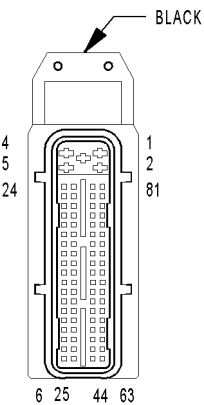
DRIVER SIDE IMPACT SENSOR - BLACK 4 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	-	-
2	-	-
3	R133 20LB/DG	DRIVER SIDE IMPACT SENSOR GROUND
4	R131 20LG/YL	DRIVER SIDE IMPACT SENSOR SIGNAL



EGR  
SOLENOID  
(DIESEL)



ELECTRONIC  
SPEED CONTROL  
SERVO



ENGINE  
CONTROL  
MODULE C1  
(DIESEL)

EGR SOLENOID (DIESEL) - BLACK 2 WAY

CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	F15 18RD/DG	FUSED AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT
2	K35 20GY/YL	EGR SOLENOID CONTROL

ELECTRONIC SPEED CONTROL SERVO - BLACK 4 WAY

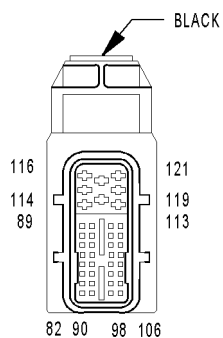
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	V36 18TN/RD (LHD GAS)	SPEED CONTROL VACUUM SOLENOID CONTROL
1	V36 20TN/RD (RHD GAS)	SPEED CONTROL VACUUM SOLENOID CONTROL
2	V35 18LG/RD (LHD GAS)	SPEED CONTROL VENT SOLENOID CONTROL
2	V35 20LG/RD (RHD GAS)	SPEED CONTROL VENT SOLENOID CONTROL
3	V30 20DB/RD	SPEED CONTROL BRAKE SWITCH OUTPUT
4	Z307 20BK	GROUND

ENGINE CONTROL MODULE C1 (DIESEL) - BLACK 81 WAY

CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	Z108 14BK/DG	GROUND
2	Z108 14BK/DG	GROUND
3	K20 14DB	GENERATOR FIELD CONTROL
4	F142 14RD/DG	FUSED AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT
5	F142 14RD/DG	FUSED AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT
6	D52 18DG/WT	CAN C BUS(+)
7	D25 20VT/YL	PCI BUS
8	K944 20 BR/DG	CAMSHAFT POSITION SENSOR GROUND
9	K44 20YL/GY	CAMSHAFT POSITION SENSOR SIGNAL
10	-	-
11	Y53 20BK/YL	BOOST PRESSURE SENSOR SIGNAL
12	K155 20YL/WT	MASS AIR FLOW SENSOR SIGNAL
13	Y40 20DG/VT	FUEL PRESSURE SENSOR SIGNAL
14	K22 20RD/DB	ACCELERATOR PEDAL POSITION SENSOR 2 SIGNAL
15	K81 20DB/DG	ACCELERATOR PEDAL POSITION SENSOR 1 SIGNAL
16	Y100 20BR/GY	FUEL PRESSURE SENSOR GROUND
17	-	-
18	-	-
19	F300 20RD/BK	FUSED B(+)
20	Z11 20BK/WT	BATTERY SENSE (-)
21	K4 18BK/LB	SENSOR GROUND
22	F991 20RD/DB	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-START)
23	K6 18VT/WT	SENSOR REFERENCE VOLTAGE B
24	K3 20BK	CRANKSHAFT POSITION SENSOR SIGNAL 1
25	D51 18WT	CAN C BUS(-)
26	-	-
27	-	-
28	-	-
29	K77 20BR/WT	TRANSFER CASE POSITION SENSOR SIGNAL
30	G60 20BR/DB	ENGINE OIL PRESSURE SENSOR SIGNAL
31	-	-
32	K25 20VT/DG	BATTERY TEMPERATURE SENSOR SIGNAL
33	-	-

ENGINE CONTROL MODULE C1 (DIESEL) - BLACK 81 WAY

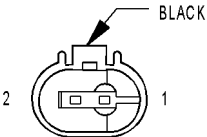
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
34	K255 20WT/DG	ACCELERATOR PEDAL POSITION SENSOR 1 GROUND
35	Y43 20WT/VT	ACCELERATOR PEDAL POSITION SENSOR 1 5-VOLT SUPPLY
36	C18 20DB	A/C PRESSURE SIGNAL
37	-	-
38	V37 20RD/DG	SPEED CONTROL SWITCH SIGNAL
39	K226 20DB/WT	FUEL LEVEL SENSOR SIGNAL
40	K2 20DG/RD	ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE SENSOR SIGNAL
41	K21 20DG/WT	INTAKE AIR TEMPERATURE SENSOR SIGNAL
42	Y101 20BK	CRANKSHAFT POSITION SENSOR SHIELD
43	K924 20YL	CRANKSHAFT POSITION SENSOR SIGNAL 2
44	-	-
45	-	-
46	-	-
47	L50 20WT/DB	PRIMARY BRAKE SWITCH SIGNAL
48	K29 20WT/PK	SECONDARY BRAKE SWITCH SIGNAL
49	-	-
50	F855 18BR/YL	SENSOR REFERENCE VOLTAGE A
51	-	-
52	-	-
53	-	-
54	Z189 20BR	MASS AIR FLOW SENSOR GROUND
55	B22 20DG/YL	VEHICLE SPEED SENSOR SIGNAL
56	K225 18BK	ACCELERATOR PEDAL POSITION SENSOR 2 GROUND
57	-	-
58	K4 20BK/LB	WATER IN FUEL SENSOR GROUND
59	K900 18GY	INTAKE PORT SWIRL ACTUATOR CONTROL
60	K7 20RD/WT	FUEL PRESSURE SENSOR 5 VOLT SUPPLY
61	K51 20DB/YL	AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY CONTROL
62	-	-
63	-	-
64	-	-
65	-	-
66	-	-
67	K173 20GY	HYDRAULIC RADIATOR FAN SOLENOID CONTROL
68	-	-
69	C13 20DB/RD	A/C COMPRESSOR CLUTCH RELAY CONTROL
70	-	-
71	-	-
72	K236 20GY/PK	GLOW PLUG RELAY NO. 2 CONTROL
73	-	-
74	T752 20DG/RD	ENGINE STARTER RELAY CONTROL
75	K132 20BR/BK	VISCOUS HEATER RELAY CONTROL
76	Y42 20RD/BL	WASTEGATE SOLENOID CONTROL
77	K152 20WT	GLOW PLUG RELAY NO. 1 CONTROL
78	-	-
79	-	-
80	K46 20DB/BK	FUEL PRESSURE SOLENOID CONTROL
81	K46 20DB/BK	FUEL PRESSURE SOLENOID CONTROL



ENGINE  
CONTROL  
MODULE C2  
(DIESEL)

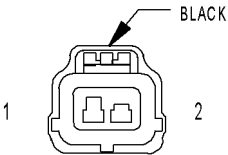
ENGINE CONTROL MODULE C2 (DIESEL) - BLACK 40 WAY

CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
82	D21 20PK	SCI TRANSMIT
83	-	-
84	-	-
85	-	-
86	-	-
87	-	-
88	-	-
89	K35 20GY/YL	EGR SOLENOID CONTROL
90	-	-
91	-	-
92	-	-
93	-	-
94	G123 20DG/WT	WATER IN FUEL SENSOR SIGNAL
95	-	-
96	-	-
97	-	-
98	-	-
99	-	-
100	-	-
101	-	-
102	-	-
103	-	-
104	-	-
105	-	-
106	-	-
107	-	-
108	-	-
109	-	-
110	-	-
111	-	-
112	T41 20BK/WT	PARK/NEUTRAL POSITION SWITCH SENSE (T41)
113	-	-
114	-	-
115	K14 14BK/YL	FUEL INJECTOR NO. 4 CONTROL
116	K63 14BK	COMMON INJECTOR DRIVER
117	-	-
118	K11 14BK/DB	FUEL INJECTOR NO. 1 CONTROL
119	K38 14BK/DG	FUEL INJECTOR NO. 5 CONTROL
120	K12 14BK/VT	FUEL INJECTOR NO. 2 CONTROL
121	K13 14BK/RD	FUEL INJECTOR NO. 3 CONTROL



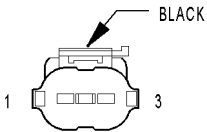
ENGINE  
COOLANT  
TEMPERATURE  
SENSOR  
(DIESEL)

ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE SENSOR (DIESEL) - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K4 20BK/LB	SENSOR GROUND
2	K2 20DG/RD	ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE SENSOR SIGNAL



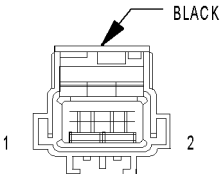
ENGINE  
COOLANT  
TEMPERATURE  
SENSOR  
(GAS)

ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE SENSOR (GAS) - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K4 20BK/LB	SENSOR GROUND
2	K2 18TN/BK	ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE SENSOR SIGNAL



ENGINE  
OIL PRESSURE  
SENSOR  
(DIESEL)

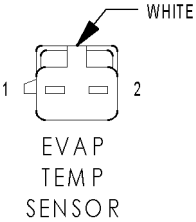
ENGINE OIL PRESSURE SENSOR (DIESEL) - BLACK 3 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K6 18VT/WT	SENSOR REFERENCE VOLTAGE B
2	G60 20BR/DB	ENGINE OIL PRESSURE SENSOR SIGNAL
3	K4 18BK/LB	SENSOR GROUND



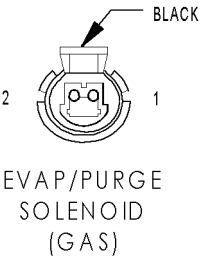
ENGINE OIL  
PRESSURE  
SWITCH  
(GAS)

ENGINE OIL PRESSURE SWITCH (GAS) - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	G60 18GY/YL	ENGINE OIL PRESSURE SWITCH SIGNAL
2	-	-

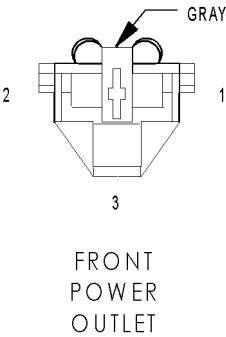




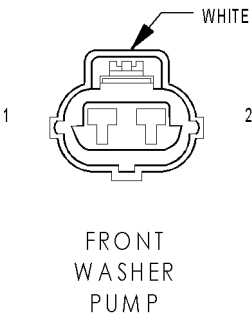
EVAP TEMP SENSOR - WHITE 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	G32 20BK/LB	SENSOR GROUND
2	C201 20LB/YL	EVAPORATOR TEMPERATURE SENSOR SIGNAL



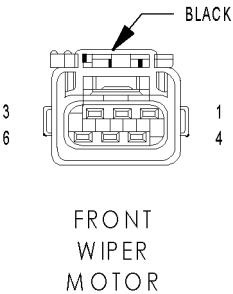
EVAP/PURGE SOLENOID (GAS) - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	F12 20DB/WT	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-START)
2	K52 20PK/BK (LHD)	DUTY CYCLE EVAP/PURGE SOLENOID CONTROL
2	K52 18PK/BK (RHD)	DUTY CYCLE EVAP/PURGE SOLENOID CONTROL



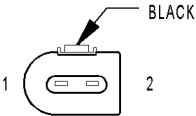
FRONT POWER OUTLET - GRAY 3 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	F85 16VT/WT	FUSED B(+)
2	-	-
3	Z300 16BK	GROUND



FRONT WASHER PUMP - WHITE 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	V10 20BR	WASHER PUMP SWITCH SENSE
2	Z141 20BK	GROUND

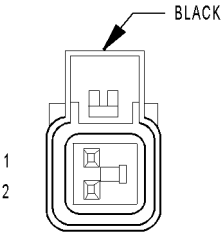


FRONT WIPER MOTOR - BLACK 6 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	V6 16DB	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-ACC)
2	V55 16TN/RD	WIPER PARK SWITCH SENSE
3	-	-
4	Z141 16BK	GROUND
5	V3 16BR/WT	WIPER HIGH/LOW RELAY LOW SPEED OUTPUT
6	V4 16RD/YL	WIPER HIGH/LOW RELAY HIGH SPEED OUTPUT



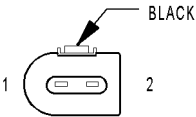
FUEL  
INJECTOR  
NO. 1  
(DIESEL)

FUEL INJECTOR NO. 1 (DIESEL) - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K11 14BK/DB	FUEL INJECTOR NO. 1 CONTROL
2	K63 14BK	COMMON INJECTOR DRIVER



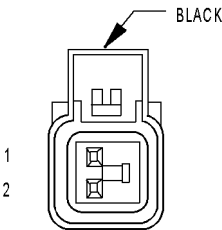
FUEL  
INJECTOR  
NO. 1  
(GAS)

FUEL INJECTOR NO. 1 (GAS) - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K11 18WT/DB	FUEL INJECTOR NO. 1 DRIVER
2	F42 18DG/LG	FUSED AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT



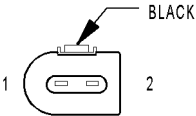
FUEL  
INJECTOR  
NO. 2  
(DIESEL)

FUEL INJECTOR NO. 2 (DIESEL) - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K12 14BK/VT	FUEL INJECTOR NO. 2 CONTROL
2	K63 14BK	COMMON INJECTOR DRIVER



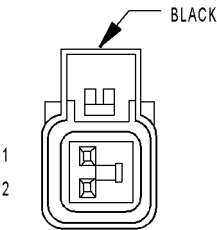
FUEL  
INJECTOR  
NO. 2  
(GAS)

FUEL INJECTOR NO. 2 (GAS) - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K12 18TN	FUEL INJECTOR NO. 2 DRIVER
2	F42 18DG/LG	FUSED AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT



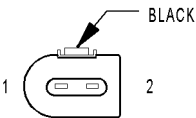
FUEL  
INJECTOR  
NO. 3  
(DIESEL)

FUEL INJECTOR NO. 3 (DIESEL) - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K13 14BK/RD	FUEL INJECTOR NO. 3 CONTROL
2	K63 14BK	COMMON INJECTOR DRIVER



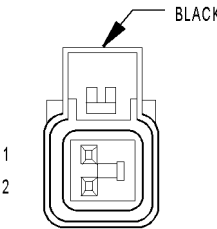
FUEL  
INJECTOR  
NO. 3  
(GAS)

FUEL INJECTOR NO. 3 (GAS) - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K13 18YL/WT	FUEL INJECTOR NO. 3 DRIVER
2	F42 18DG/LG	FUSED AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT



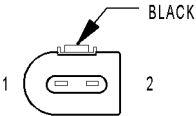
FUEL  
INJECTOR  
NO. 4  
(DIESEL)

FUEL INJECTOR NO. 4 (DIESEL) - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K14 14BK/YL	FUEL INJECTOR NO. 4 CONTROL
2	K63 14BK	COMMON INJECTOR DRIVER



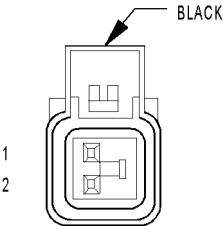
FUEL  
INJECTOR  
NO. 4  
(GAS)

FUEL INJECTOR NO. 4 (GAS) - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K14 18LB/BR	FUEL INJECTOR NO. 4 DRIVER
2	F42 18DG/LG	FUSED AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT



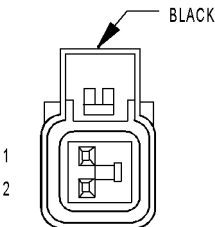
FUEL  
INJECTOR  
NO. 5  
(DIESEL)

FUEL INJECTOR NO. 5 (DIESEL) - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K38 14BK/DG	FUEL INJECTOR NO. 5 CONTROL
2	K63 14BK	COMMON INJECTOR DRIVER



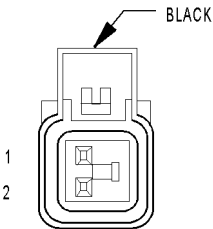
FUEL  
INJECTOR  
NO. 5  
(GAS)

FUEL INJECTOR NO. 5 (GAS) - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K38 18GY	FUEL INJECTOR NO. 5 DRIVER
2	F42 18DG/LG	FUSED AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT



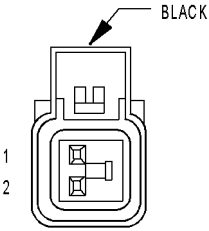
FUEL  
INJECTOR  
NO. 6  
(GAS)

FUEL INJECTOR NO. 6 (GAS) - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K58 18BR/DB	FUEL INJECTOR NO. 6 DRIVER
2	F42 18DG/LG	FUSED AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT



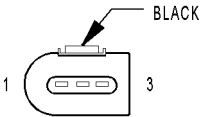
FUEL  
INJECTOR  
NO. 7  
(4.7L)

FUEL INJECTOR NO. 7 (4.7L) - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K26 18VT	FUEL INJECTOR NO. 7 DRIVER
2	F42 18DG/LG	FUSED AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT



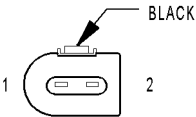
FUEL  
INJECTOR  
NO. 8  
(4.7L)

FUEL INJECTOR NO. 8 (4.7L) - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K28 18GY/LB	FUEL INJECTOR NO. 8 DRIVER
2	F42 18DG/LG	FUSED AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT



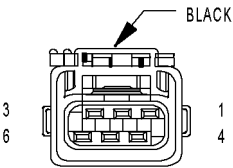
FUEL  
PRESSURE  
SENSOR  
(DIESEL)

FUEL PRESSURE SENSOR (DIESEL) - BLACK 3 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	Y100 20BR/GY	FUEL PRESSURE SENSOR GROUND
2	Y40 20DG/VT	FUEL PRESSURE SENSOR SIGNAL
3	K7 20RD/WT	FUEL PRESSURE SENSOR 5 VOLT SUPPLY



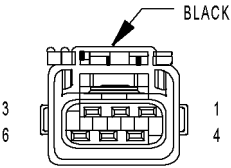
FUEL  
PRESSURE  
SOLENOID  
(DIESEL)

FUEL PRESSURE SOLENOID (DIESEL) - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K46 20DB/BK	FUEL PRESSURE SOLENOID CONTROL
2	F142 16RD/DG	FUSED AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT



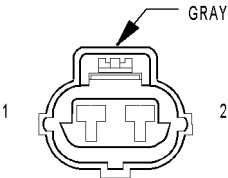
FUEL  
PUMP  
MODULE  
(GAS)

FUEL PUMP MODULE (GAS) - BLACK 6 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	A141 16DG/BK	FUEL PUMP RELAY OUTPUT
2	-	-
3	K226 20LB/YL	FUEL LEVEL SENSOR SIGNAL
4	K4 20BK/LB	SENSOR GROUND
5	-	-
6	Z150 16BK	GROUND



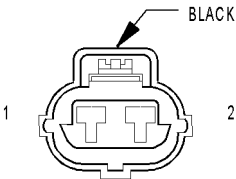
FUEL  
TANK  
MODULE  
(DIESEL)

FUEL TANK MODULE (DIESEL) - BLACK 6 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	-	-
2	-	-
3	K226 20LB/YL	FUEL LEVEL SENSOR SIGNAL
4	K4 20BK/LB	SENSOR GROUND
5	-	-
6	-	-



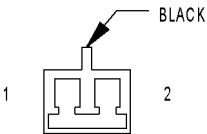
GENERATOR  
(DIESEL)

GENERATOR (DIESEL) - GRAY 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	F15 14DB/WT	FUSED AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT
2	K20 14DB	GENERATOR FIELD CONTROL



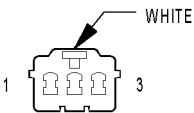
GENERATOR  
(GAS)

GENERATOR (GAS) - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K125 18WT/DB	GENERATOR SOURCE
2	K20 18DG	GENERATOR FIELD DRIVER



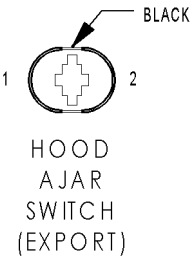
GLOVE  
BOX  
LAMP

GLOVE BOX LAMP - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	F70 20PK/BK	FUSED B(+)
2	M20 20BR/OR	COURTESY LAMP LOAD SHED

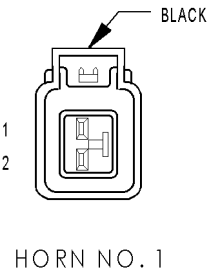


HEADLAMP  
LEVELING  
SWITCH  
(EXPORT)

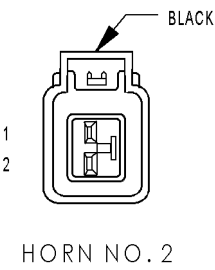
HEADLAMP LEVELING SWITCH (EXPORT) - WHITE 3 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	Z234 20BK	GROUND
2	L7 20BK/YL	PARK LAMP RELAY OUTPUT
3	L13 20BR/YL	HEADLAMP ADJUST SIGNAL



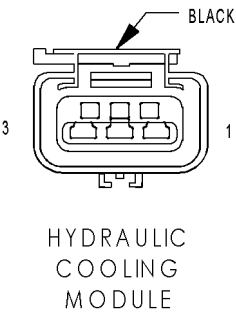
HOOD AJAR SWITCH (EXPORT) - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	G70 20BR/TN	HOOD AJAR SWITCH SENSE
2	Z141 20BK (DIESEL)	GROUND
2	Z161 20BK (GAS)	GROUND



HORN NO. 1 - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	Z307 18BK	GROUND
2	X2 18DG/RD	HORN RELAY OUTPUT

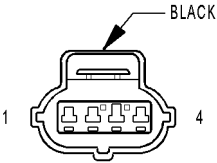


HORN NO. 2 - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	Z307 18BK	GROUND
2	X2 18DG/RD	HORN RELAY OUTPUT

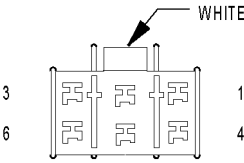


HYDRAULIC COOLING MODULE - BLACK 3 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	F15 18DB/WT (DIESEL)	FUSED AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT
1	F142 18OR/DG (GAS)	FUSED AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT
2	K173 18LG (DIESEL)	HYDRAULIC RADIATOR FAN SOLENOID CONTROL
2	K173 18LG (GAS)	RADIATOR FAN RELAY CONTROL
3	Z500 18BK	GROUND

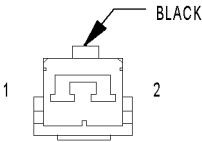




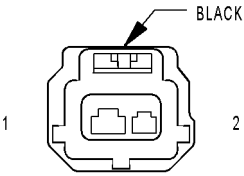
IDLE  
AIR CONTROL  
MOTOR



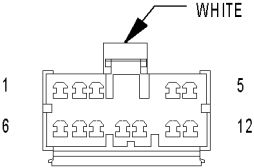
IGNITION  
SWITCH C1



IGNITION  
SWITCH C2



INPUT  
SPEED  
SENSOR  
(4.7L)



INSTRUMENT  
CLUSTER

IDLE AIR CONTROL MOTOR - BLACK 4 WAY

CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K59 18VT/BK	IDLE AIR CONTROL NO. 4 DRIVER
2	K40 18BR/WT	IDLE AIR CONTROL NO. 3 DRIVER
3	K60 18YL/BK	IDLE AIR CONTROL NO. 2 DRIVER
4	K39 18GY/BK	IDLE AIR CONTROL NO. 1 DRIVER

IGNITION SWITCH C1 - WHITE 6 WAY

CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	A41 12YL	IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (START)
2	A2 12PK/BK	FUSED B(+)
3	A22 12BK/OR	IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN)
4	A1 12RD	FUSED B(+)
5	A31 12RD/BK	IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-ACC)
6	A21 12DB	IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-START)

IGNITION SWITCH C2 - BLACK 2 WAY

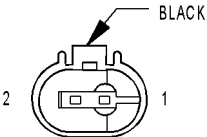
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	G26 20LB	KEY-IN IGNITION SWITCH SENSE
2	Z234 20BK	GROUND

INPUT SPEED SENSOR (4.7L) - BLACK 2 WAY

CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	T52 20RD/BK	INPUT SPEED SENSOR SIGNAL
2	T13 20DB/BK	SPEED SENSOR GROUND

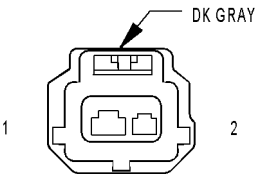
INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - WHITE 12 WAY

CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	L61 20TN/LG	LEFT TURN SIGNAL
2	L60 20TN	RIGHT TURN SIGNAL
3	-	-
4	-	-
5	G9 20GY/BK	RED BRAKE WARNING INDICATOR DRIVER
6	F33 20PK/RD	FUSED B(+)
7	G5 20DB/WT	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-START)
8	D19 20VT/OR	BODY CONTROL MODULE FLASH ENABLE
9	Z300 20BK	GROUND
10	D25 20YL/VT/RD	PCI BUS
11	Z132 20BK/OR	GROUND
12	-	-



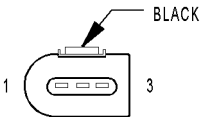
INTAKE  
AIR  
TEMPERATURE  
SENSOR  
(DIESEL)

INTAKE AIR TEMPERATURE SENSOR (DIESEL) - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K4 20BK/LB	SENSOR GROUND
2	K21 20DG/WT	INTAKE AIR TEMPERATURE SENSOR SIGNAL



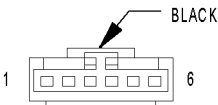
INTAKE AIR  
TEMPERATURE  
SENSOR  
(GAS)

INTAKE AIR TEMPERATURE SENSOR (GAS) - DK GRAY 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K4 20BK/LB	SENSOR GROUND
2	K21 18BK/RD	INTAKE AIR TEMPERATURE SENSOR SIGNAL



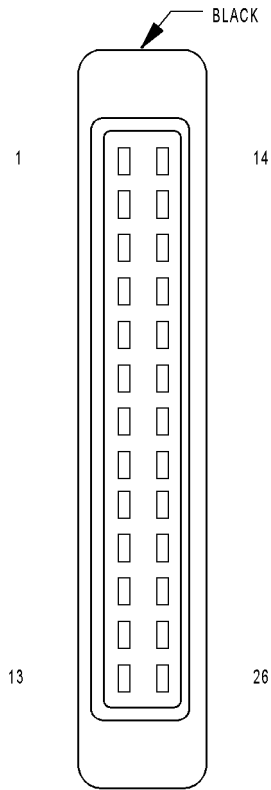
INTAKE PORT  
SWIRL  
ACTUATOR  
(DIESEL)

INTAKE PORT SWIRL ACTUATOR (DIESEL) - BLACK 3 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	Z18 18BK	GROUND
2	F15 18RD/DG	FUSED AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT
3	K900 18GY	INTAKE PORT SWIRL ACTUATOR CONTROL

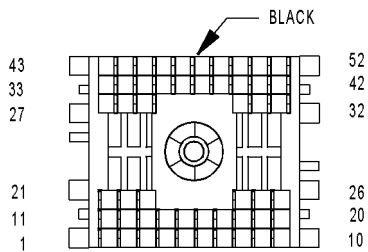


INTRUSION  
TRANSCIVER  
MODULE  
(EXPORT)

INTRUSION TRANSCIVER MODULE (EXPORT) - BLACK 6 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	Z155 20BK	GROUND
2	-	-
3	X75 20GY/LG	SIREN SIGNAL CONTROL
4	-	-
5	D25 20YL/VT	PCI BUS
6	F70 20PK	FUSED B(+)



JUNCTION  
BLOCK  
BODY  
CONTROL  
MODULE



JUNCTION  
BLOCK C1

JUNCTION BLOCK BODY CONTROL MODULE - BLACK 26 WAY

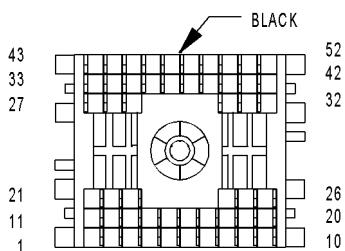
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	L308	PARK LAMP RELAY CONTROL
2	L26	FOG LAMP RELAY CONTROL
3	Q29	ACCESSORY DELAY RELAY CONTROL
4	L307	LOW BEAM RELAY CONTROL
5	G5	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-START)
6	X3	HORN RELAY CONTROL
7	V16	WIPER HIGH/LOW RELAY CONTROL
8	G80	LIFTGATE FLIP-UP AJAR SWITCH SENSE
9	L309	HIGH BEAM RELAY CONTROL
10	L91	HAZARD SWITCH SENSE
11	C80	REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER RELAY CONTROL
12	Z132	GROUND
13	L96 (EXPORT)	REAR FOG LAMP RELAY CONTROL
14	L7	PARK LAMP RELAY OUTPUT
15	Z234	GROUND
16	M2	COURTESY LAMP DRIVER
17	-	-
18	-	-
19	M20	COURTESY LAMP LOAD SHED
20	V55	WIPER PARK SWITCH SENSE
21	G78	LIFTGATE AJAR SWITCH SENSE
22	-	-
23	G77	LEFT REAR DOOR AJAR SWITCH SENSE
24	G73	LIFTGATE COURTESY DISABLE
25	V23	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-ACC)
26	M1	FUSED B(+)

JUNCTION BLOCK C1 - BLACK 52 WAY

CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	Q30 16TN	ACCESSORY DELAY RELAY OUTPUT
2	L63 18DG/RD	LEFT TURN SIGNAL
3	-	-
4	-	-
5	L95 18DG/YL (EXPORT)	REAR FOG LAMP RELAY OUTPUT
6	-	-
7	-	-
8	-	-
9	G73 20LG/OR	LIFTGATE COURTESY DISABLE
10	G77 20TN/OR	LEFT REAR DOOR AJAR SWITCH SENSE
11	L7 18BK/YL	PARK LAMP RELAY OUTPUT
12	-	-
13	-	-
14	-	-
15	F35 16RD (LHD)	FUSED B(+)
15	F35 16RD/LB (RHD)	FUSED B(+)
16	M2 20YL/DG (LHD)	COURTESY LAMP DRIVER
16	M2 18YL (RHD)	COURTESY LAMP DRIVER
17	-	-
18	-	-

JUNCTION BLOCK C1 - BLACK 52 WAY

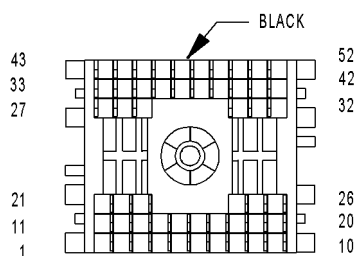
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
19	-	-
20	-	-
21	-	-
22	F22 20WT/PK (RHD)	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN)
23	-	-
24	G80 20VT/YL	LIFTGATE FLIP-UP AJAR SWITCH SENSE
25	G78 20TN/BK	LIFTGATE AJAR SWITCH SENSE
26	M20 20YL/BK (LHD)	COURTESY LAMP LOAD SHED
26	M20 18YL/BK (RHD)	COURTESY LAMP LOAD SHED
27	-	-
28	-	-
29	-	-
30	G5 20DB/WT	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-START)
31	-	-
32	M1 18PK/RD (RHD)	FUSED B(+)
33	-	-
34	-	-
35	F9 14RD/BK	FUSED B(+)
36	F70 18PK	FUSED B(+)
37	-	-
38	-	-
39	-	-
40	-	-
41	Y202 14RD/TN	CIGAR LIGHTER RELAY OUTPUT
42	-	-
43	-	-
44	-	-
45	-	-
46	-	-
47	-	-
48	-	-
49	-	-
50	C15 12BK/WT	REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER RELAY OUTPUT
51	-	-
52	-	-



JUNCTION  
BLOCK C2  
(LHD)

JUNCTION BLOCK C2 (LHD) - BLACK 52 WAY

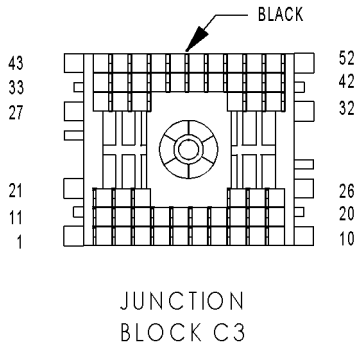
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	X3 22GY/OR	HORN RELAY CONTROL
2	-	-
3	L39 20LB	FOG LAMP RELAY OUTPUT
4	-	-
5	L61 20TN/LG	LEFT TURN SIGNAL
6	-	-
7	-	-
8	V6 16DB	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-ACC)
9	V6 16DB (GAS)	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-ACC)
10	L62 18BR/RD	RIGHT TURN SIGNAL
11	F991 20OR/DB	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-START)
12	L39 20LB	FOG LAMP RELAY OUTPUT
13	-	-
14	-	-
15	V16 22VT	WIPER HIGH/LOW RELAY CONTROL
16	-	-
17	-	-
18	-	-
19	-	-
20	L7 20BK/YL	PARK LAMP RELAY OUTPUT
21	L7 20BK/YL	PARK LAMP RELAY OUTPUT
22	-	-
23	-	-
24	F37 16RD/LB (EXCEPT BASE)	FUSED B(+)
25	F22 20WT/PK	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN)
26	L60 20TN	RIGHT TURN SIGNAL
27	F45 20YL/RD	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (START)
28	V55 16TN/RD	WIPER PARK SWITCH SENSE
29	-	-
30	-	-
31	F72 16RD/YL	FUSED B(+)
32	M1 20PK/RD	FUSED B(+)
33	V55 16TN/RD (GAS)	WIPER PARK SWITCH SENSE
34	-	-
35	-	-
36	A146 12OR/WT	FUSED B(+)
37	-	-
38	L34 18RD/OR	FUSED RIGHT HIGH BEAM OUTPUT
39	L43 18VT	FUSED LEFT LOW BEAM OUTPUT
40	-	-
41	-	-
42	F20 20DB/PK	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN)
43	F12 20DB/WT	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-START)
44	-	-
45	A146 12OR/WT	FUSED B(+)
46	-	-
47	F32 20PK/DB	FUSED B(+)
48	-	-
49	L44 18VT/RD	FUSED RIGHT LOW BEAM OUTPUT
50	L33 18RD	FUSED LEFT HIGH BEAM OUTPUT
51	-	-
52	F60 14RD/WT	FUSED B(+)



JUNCTION  
BLOCK C2  
(RHD)

JUNCTION BLOCK C2 (RHD) - BLACK 52 WAY

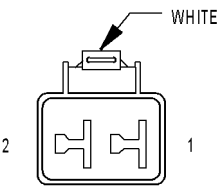
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	X3 22BK/RD	HORN RELAY CONTROL
2	-	-
3	L39 20LB	FOG LAMP RELAY OUTPUT
4	-	-
5	L61 20TN/LG	LEFT TURN SIGNAL
6	-	-
7	-	-
8	V6 16DB	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-ACC)
9	V6 16DB (GAS)	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-ACC)
10	L62 20BR/RD	RIGHT TURN SIGNAL
11	F991 20OR/DB	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-START)
12	L39 20LB	FOG LAMP RELAY OUTPUT
13	-	-
14	-	-
15	V16 22VT	WIPER HIGH/LOW RELAY CONTROL
16	-	-
17	-	-
18	-	-
19	-	-
20	L7 20BK/YL	PARK LAMP RELAY OUTPUT
21	L7 18BK/YL	PARK LAMP RELAY OUTPUT
22	-	-
23	-	-
24	F37 16RD/LB	FUSED B(+)
25	F22 18WT/TN	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN)
26	L60 20TN	RIGHT TURN SIGNAL
27	F45 20YL/RD	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (START)
28	V55 16TN/RD	WIPER PARK SWITCH SENSE
29	-	-
30	-	-
31	-	-
32	M1 20PK/RD	FUSED B(+)
33	V55 16TN/RD (GAS)	WIPER PARK SWITCH SENSE
34	-	-
35	-	-
36	A146 12OR/WT	FUSED B(+)
37	-	-
38	L34 18RD/OR	FUSED RIGHT HIGH BEAM OUTPUT
39	L43 18VT	FUSED LEFT LOW BEAM OUTPUT
40	-	-
41	-	-
42	F20 20DB/PK	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN)
43	F12 20DB/WT (GAS)	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-START)
44	-	-
45	A146 12OR/WT	FUSED B(+)
46	-	-
47	F32 20PK/DB	FUSED B(+)
48	-	-
49	L44 18VT/RD	FUSED RIGHT LOW BEAM OUTPUT
50	L33 18RD	FUSED LEFT HIGH BEAM OUTPUT
51	-	-
52	F60 16RD/WT	FUSED B(+)



JUNCTION BLOCK C3 - BLACK 52 WAY

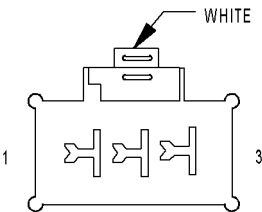
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	F22 20WT/PK	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN)
2	-	-
3	L60 20TN	RIGHT TURN SIGNAL
4	L302 20LB/YL	RIGHT TURN SWITCH SENSE
5	L61 20TN/LG	LEFT TURN SIGNAL
6	L91 20DB/PK	HAZARD SWITCH SENSE
7	-	-
8	L305 20LB/WT	LEFT TURN SWITCH SENSE
9	-	-
10	L309 20PK/LG	HIGH BEAM RELAY CONTROL
11	F23 18DB/YL	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN)
12	F22 20WT/PK	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN)
13	-	-
14	F85 16VT/WT	FUSED B(+)
15	C79 20BK/WT	FUSED REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER RELAY OUTPUT
16	-	-
17	-	-
18	-	-
19	-	-
20	-	-
21	-	-
22	-	-
23	-	-
24	A31 12RD/BK	IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-ACC)
25	F60 16RD/WT	FUSED B(+)
26	-	-
27	A41 12YL	IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (START)
28	F14 20LG/YL	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-START)
29	A22 12BK/OR	IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN)
30	F991 18OR/DB (DIESEL)	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-START)
31	Z234 20BK	GROUND
32	F33 20PK/RD	FUSED B(+)
33	X12 20WT/RD	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-ACC)
34	M1 20PK	FUSED B(+)
35	M1 20PK (AZC)	FUSED B(+)
36	A21 12DB	IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-START)
37	-	-
38	F70 20PK/BK	FUSED B(+)
39	X3 20GY/OR	HORN RELAY CONTROL
40	F30 16RD	FUSED CIGAR LIGHTER RELAY OUTPUT
41	F33 20PK/RD	FUSED B(+)
42	-	-
43	V23 20BR/PK	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-ACC)
44	M1 20PK	FUSED B(+)
45	Z132 20BK/OR	GROUND
46	-	-
47	-	-
48	F70 20PK/BK	FUSED B(+)
49	-	-
50	G5 20DB/WT	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-START)
51	G5 20DB/WT	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-START)
52	F12 20DB/WT	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-START)





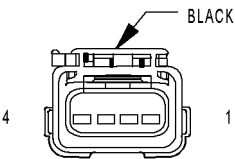
JUNCTION  
BLOCK C4

JUNCTION BLOCK C4 - WHITE 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	A148 10PK/WT	FUSED B(+)
2	A146 100R/WT	FUSED B(+)



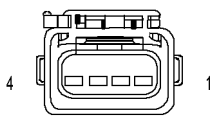
JUNCTION  
BLOCK C5

JUNCTION BLOCK C5 - WHITE 3 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	A145 10WT/RD	FUSED B(+)
2	A149 12RD/TN	FUSED B(+)
3	A147 10RD/GY	FUSED B(+)



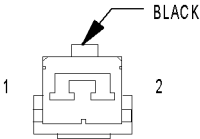
KNOCK  
SENSOR

KNOCK SENSOR - BLACK 4 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K4 20BK/LB	SENSOR GROUND
2	K42 20DB/LG	KNOCK SENSOR NO. 1 SIGNAL
3	K4 20BK/LB	SENSOR GROUND
4	K142 20GY/BK	KNOCK SENSOR NO. 2 SIGNAL



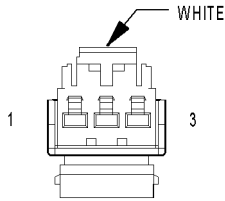
LEAK  
DETECTION  
PUMP  
(EXCEPT EXPORT)

LEAK DETECTION PUMP (EXCEPT EXPORT) - 4 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	-	-
2	K125 18OR/DG	GENERATOR SOURCE
3	K106 20WT/DG	LEAK DETECTION PUMP SOLENOID CONTROL
4	K107 20OR/YL	LEAK DETECTION PUMP SWITCH SENSE



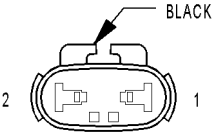
LEFT  
COURTESY  
LAMP

LEFT COURTESY LAMP - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	F70 20PK/BK	FUSED B(+)
2	M2 20YL	COURTESY LAMP DRIVER



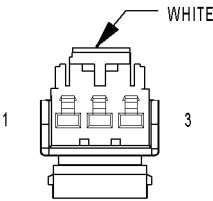
LEFT DOOR  
HANDLE  
COURTESY LAMP

LEFT DOOR HANDLE COURTESY LAMP - WHITE 3 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	F70 20PK/BK	FUSED B(+)
2	M20 20YL/BK	COURTESY LAMP LOAD SHED
3	M2 20YL/DG	COURTESY LAMP DRIVER



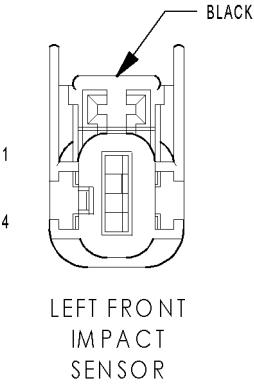
LEFT  
FOG LAMP

LEFT FOG LAMP - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	L39 20LB	FOG LAMP RELAY OUTPUT
2	Z141 20BK (DIESEL/4.7L RHD)	GROUND
2	Z141 18BK (EXCEPT DIESEL/4.7L RHD)	GROUND

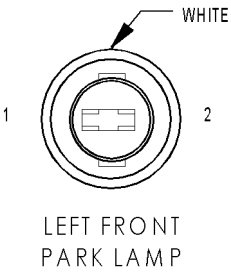


LEFT FRONT  
DOOR  
SPEAKER

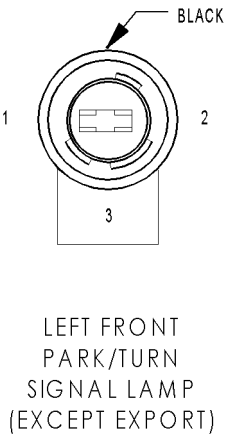
LEFT FRONT DOOR SPEAKER - WHITE 3 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	X55 18LG/DG (BASE)	LEFT FRONT DOOR SPEAKER (-)
1	X85 18LG/DG (LHD PREMIUM)	LEFT FRONT DOOR SPEAKER (-)
1	X85 18LB/BK (RHD PREMIUM)	LEFT FRONT DOOR SPEAKER (-)
2	-	-
3	X53 18LG/RD (BASE)	LEFT FRONT DOOR SPEAKER (+)
3	X87 18LG/RD (LHD PREMIUM)	LEFT FRONT DOOR SPEAKER (+)
3	X87 18LB/RD (RHD PREMIUM)	LEFT FRONT DOOR SPEAKER (+)



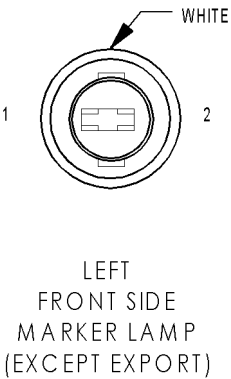
LEFT FRONT IMPACT SENSOR - BLACK 4 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	-	-
2	-	-
3	R47 18DB/LB	LEFT FRONT IMPACT SENSOR GROUND
4	R49 18LB	LEFT FRONT IMPACT SENSOR SIGNAL



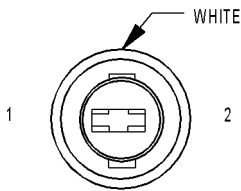
LEFT FRONT PARK LAMP - WHITE 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	Z141 18BK	GROUND
2	L7 20BK/PK	PARK LAMP RELAY OUTPUT



LEFT FRONT PARK/TURN SIGNAL LAMP (EXCEPT EXPORT) - BLACK 3 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	L7 20BK/PK	PARK LAMP RELAY OUTPUT
2	Z141 18BK	GROUND
3	L61 20TN/LG	LEFT TURN SIGNAL

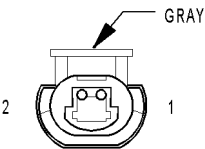


LEFT FRONT SIDE MARKER LAMP (EXCEPT EXPORT) - WHITE 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	L7 20BK/PK	PARK LAMP RELAY OUTPUT
2	L61 20TN/LG	LEFT TURN SIGNAL



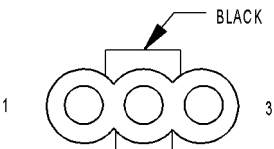
LEFT FRONT  
TURN SIGNAL LAMP  
(EXPORT)

LEFT FRONT TURN SIGNAL LAMP (EXPORT) - WHITE 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	L61 20TN/LG	LEFT TURN SIGNAL
2	Z141 18BK	GROUND



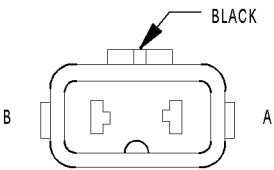
LEFT FRONT  
WHEEL SPEED  
SENSOR

LEFT FRONT WHEEL SPEED SENSOR - GRAY 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	B9 18RD	LEFT FRONT WHEEL SPEED SENSOR 12 VOLT SUPPLY
2	B8 18RD/DB	LEFT FRONT WHEEL SPEED SENSOR SIGNAL



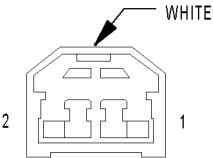
LEFT HEADLAMP  
LEVELING MOTOR  
(EXPORT)

LEFT HEADLAMP LEVELING MOTOR (EXPORT) - BLACK 3 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	Z141 18BK	GROUND
2	L114 18VT/DB	HEADLAMP ADJUST SIGNAL
3	L7 20BK/PK	PARK LAMP RELAY OUTPUT



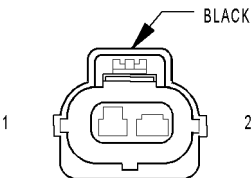
LEFT HIGH BEAM  
HEADLAMP

LEFT HIGH BEAM HEADLAMP - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
A	Z141 18BK	GROUND
B	L33 18RD	FUSED LEFT HIGH BEAM OUTPUT



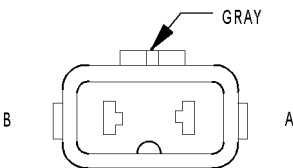
LEFT  
INSTRUMENT  
PANEL  
SPEAKER

LEFT INSTRUMENT PANEL SPEAKER - WHITE 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	X83 18YL/RD	LEFT INSTRUMENT PANEL SPEAKER (+)
2	X81 18YL/BK	LEFT INSTRUMENT PANEL SPEAKER (-)



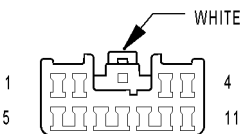
LEFT  
LIFTGATE  
AJAR SWITCH

LEFT LIFTGATE AJAR SWITCH - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	Z309 20BK	GROUND
2	G78 20TN/BK	LIFTGATE AJAR SWITCH SENSE



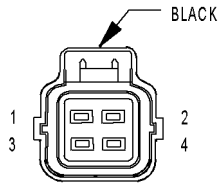
LEFT LOW BEAM  
HEADLAMP

LEFT LOW BEAM HEADLAMP - GRAY 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
A	Z141 18BK	GROUND
B	L43 18VT	FUSED LEFT LOW BEAM OUTPUT

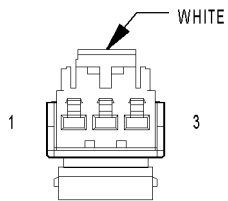


LEFT MULTI-  
FUNCTION  
SWITCH

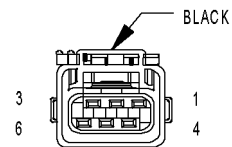
LEFT MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH - WHITE 11 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	L27 20WT/TN	FOG LAMP SWITCH SENSE
2	Z234 20BK	GROUND
3	-	-
4	L80 20WT/DG	HEADLAMP SWITCH RETURN
5	L309 20PK/LG	HIGH BEAM RELAY CONTROL
6	L40 20BR	HIGH BEAM SWITCH SENSE
7	L302 20LB/YL	RIGHT TURN SWITCH SENSE
8	L305 20LB/WT	LEFT TURN SWITCH SENSE
9	L91 20DB/PK	HAZARD SWITCH SENSE
10	E19 20RD	PANEL LAMPS DIMMER SIGNAL
11	G52 20YL	HEADLAMP SWITCH MUX



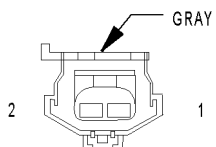
LEFT REAR  
DOOR LOCK  
MOTOR/AJAR  
SWITCH



LEFT REAR  
DOOR SPEAKER



LEFT REAR  
LAMP ASSEMBLY



LEFT REAR  
WHEEL SPEED  
SENSOR

LEFT REAR DOOR LOCK MOTOR/AJAR SWITCH - BLACK 4 WAY

CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	G77 18TN/YL	LEFT REAR DOOR AJAR SWITCH SENSE
2	Z243 18BK (LHD)	GROUND
2	Z151 18BK (RHD)	GROUND
3	P36 18PK/VT	DOOR UNLOCK DRIVER
4	P35 18OR/VT	DOOR LOCK DRIVER

LEFT REAR DOOR SPEAKER - WHITE 3 WAY

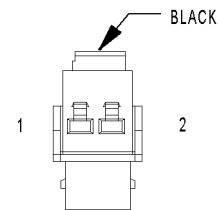
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	X51 18WT/VT (BASE)	LEFT REAR DOOR SPEAKER (+)
1	X91 18WT/VT (PREMIUM)	LEFT REAR DOOR SPEAKER (+)
2	-	-
3	X57 18TN/DG (BASE)	LEFT REAR DOOR SPEAKER (-)
3	X93 18TN/DG (PREMIUM)	LEFT REAR DOOR SPEAKER (-)

LEFT REAR LAMP ASSEMBLY - BLACK 6 WAY

CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	L1 18VT/BK	BACK-UP LAMP FEED
2	L95 18DG/YL (EXPORT)	REAR FOG LAMP RELAY OUTPUT
3	L7 18BK/YL	PARK LAMP RELAY OUTPUT
4	L63 18DG/RD	LEFT TURN SIGNAL
5	Z150 18BK	GROUND
6	L50 18WT/TN	PRIMARY BRAKE SWITCH SIGNAL

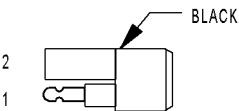
LEFT REAR WHEEL SPEED SENSOR - GRAY 2 WAY

CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	B4 20LG	LEFT REAR WHEEL SPEED SENSOR 12 VOLT SUPPLY
2	B3 20LG/DB	LEFT REAR WHEEL SPEED SENSOR SIGNAL



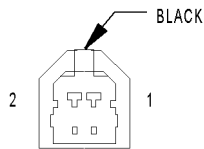
LEFT REMOTE  
RADIO SWITCH

LEFT REMOTE RADIO SWITCH - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	X10 20RD/BK	RADIO CONTROL MUX RETURN
2	X20 20RD/YL	RADIO CONTROL MUX



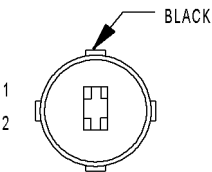
LEFT SIDE  
REPEATER  
LAMP  
(EXPORT)

LEFT SIDE REPEATER LAMP (EXPORT) - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	L61 18LG (DIESEL)	LEFT TURN SIGNAL
1	L61 18TN/LG (GAS)	LEFT TURN SIGNAL
2	Z161 18BK	GROUND



LEFT VISOR/  
VANITY LAMP

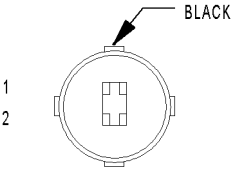
LEFT VISOR/VANITY LAMP - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	F70 20PK	FUSED B(+)
2	M20 20YL/BK	COURTESY LAMP LOAD SHED



LICENSE  
LAMP NO. 1

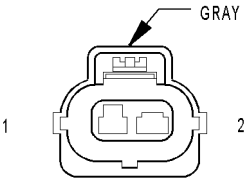
LICENSE LAMP NO. 1 - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	L7 18BK/YL	PARK LAMP RELAY OUTPUT
2	Z309 18BK	GROUND





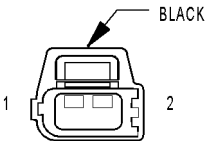
LICENSE  
LAMP NO. 2

LICENSE LAMP NO. 2 - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	L7 18BK/YL	PARK LAMP RELAY OUTPUT
2	Z309 18BK	GROUND



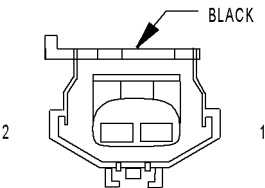
LIFTGATE  
FLIP-UP  
AJAR SWITCH

LIFTGATE FLIP-UP AJAR SWITCH - GRAY 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	Z309 18BK	GROUND
2	G80 20VT/YL	LIFTGATE FLIP-UP AJAR SWITCH SENSE



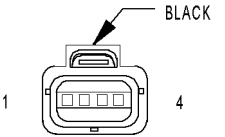
LIFTGATE  
FLIP-UP  
PUSH BUTTON  
SWITCH

LIFTGATE FLIP-UP PUSH BUTTON SWITCH - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	P101 18OR/PK	LIFTGATE FLIP-UP SWITCH OUTPUT
2	F70 18PK	FUSED B(+)



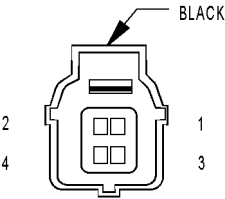
LIFTGATE  
FLIP-UP  
RELEASE  
SOLENOID

LIFTGATE FLIP-UP RELEASE SOLENOID - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	Z1 18BK	GROUND
2	P100 18OR/BR	LIFTGATE GLASS LIMIT SWITCH OUTPUT



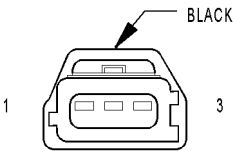
LIFTGATE  
POWER LOCK  
MOTOR

LIFTGATE POWER LOCK MOTOR - BLACK 4 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	P35 18OR/VT	DOOR LOCK DRIVER
2	P36 18PK/VT	DOOR UNLOCK DRIVER
3	P101 18OR/PK	LIFTGATE FLIP-UP SWITCH OUTPUT
4	P100 18OR/BR	LIFTGATE GLASS LIMIT SWITCH OUTPUT



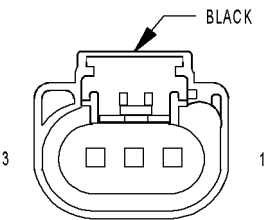
LINE  
PRESSURE  
SENSOR  
(4.7L)

LINE PRESSURE SENSOR (4.7L) - BLACK 4 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	Z114 18BK/LG	GROUND
2	T138 18GY/LB	5 VOLT SUPPLY
3	T130 18VT/TN	LINE PRESSURE SENSOR SIGNAL
4	-	-



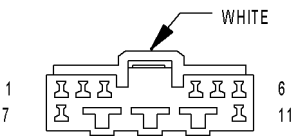
MANIFOLD  
ABSOLUTE  
PRESSURE  
SENSOR  
(4.0L)

MANIFOLD ABSOLUTE PRESSURE SENSOR (4.0L) - BLACK 3 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K4 20BK/LB	SENSOR GROUND
2	K1 18DG/RD	MAP SENSOR SIGNAL
3	K7 20OR	5 VOLT SUPPLY



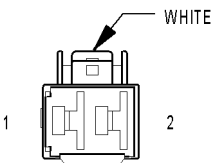
MANIFOLD  
ABSOLUTE  
PRESSURE  
SENSOR  
(4.7L)

MANIFOLD ABSOLUTE PRESSURE SENSOR (4.7L) - BLACK 3 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K1 18DG/RD	MAP SENSOR SIGNAL
2	K4 20BK/LB	SENSOR GROUND
3	K7 20OR	5 VOLT SUPPLY



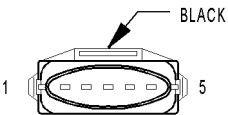
MANUAL  
TEMPERATURE  
CONTROL C1  
(MTC)

MANUAL TEMPERATURE CONTROL C1 (MTC) - WHITE 11 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	C103 20DG	A/C SWITCH SIGNAL
2	Z123 20BK/OR	GROUND
3	C67 20RD/LB	BLEND AIR DOOR POSITION CONTROL
4	C79 20BK/WT	FUSED REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER RELAY OUTPUT
5	C81 20LB/WT	REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER SWITCH SENSE
6	F22 20WT/PK	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN)
7	E2 20OR	PANEL LAMPS DRIVER
8	C4 16TN	BLOWER MOTOR LOW DRIVER
9	C5 16LG	BLOWER MOTOR M1 DRIVER
10	C6 14LB	BLOWER MOTOR M2 DRIVER
11	-	-



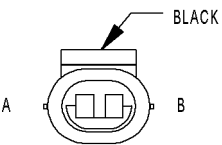
MANUAL  
TEMPERATURE  
CONTROL C2  
(MTC)

MANUAL TEMPERATURE CONTROL C2 (MTC) - WHITE 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	Z118 12BK	GROUND
2	C7 12BK/TN	BLOWER MOTOR HIGH DRIVER



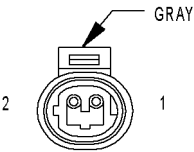
MASS  
AIR FLOW  
SENSOR  
(DIESEL)

MASS AIR FLOW SENSOR (DIESEL) - BLACK 5 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	-	-
2	F15 16RD/DG	FUSED AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT
3	Z189 20BR	MASS AIR FLOW SENSOR GROUND
4	F855 20BR/YL	SENSOR REFERENCE VOLTAGE A
5	K155 20YL/WT	MASS AIR FLOW SENSOR SIGNAL



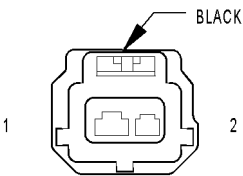
MODE  
DOOR MOTOR/  
ACTUATOR  
(AZC)

MODE DOOR MOTOR/ACTUATOR (AZC) - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
A	C102 20TN/BK (LHD)	MODE DOOR DRIVER (B)
A	C35 20DG/YL (RHD)	MODE DOOR DRIVER (A)
B	C35 20DG/YL (LHD)	MODE DOOR DRIVER (A)
B	C102 20TN/BK (RHD)	MODE DOOR DRIVER (B)



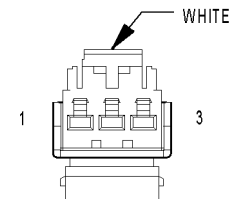
OUTPUT  
SPEED  
SENSOR  
(4.0L)

OUTPUT SPEED SENSOR (4.0L) - GRAY 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	T13 18DB/BK	OUTPUT SPEED SENSOR GROUND
2	T14 18LG/WT	OUTPUT SPEED SENSOR SIGNAL



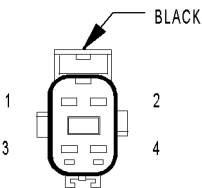
OUTPUT  
SPEED  
SENSOR  
(4.7L)

OUTPUT SPEED SENSOR (4.7L) - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	T14 20LG/WT	OUTPUT SPEED SENSOR SIGNAL
2	T13 20DB/BK	SPEED SENSOR GROUND



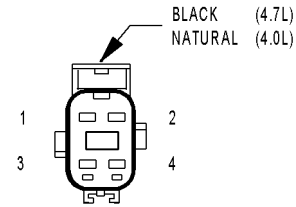
OVERHEAD MAP/  
COURTESY LAMP

OVERHEAD MAP/COURTESY LAMP - WHITE 3 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	F70 20PK	FUSED B(+)
2	M20 20YL/BK	COURTESY LAMP LOAD SHED
3	M2 20YL/DG	COURTESY LAMP DRIVER



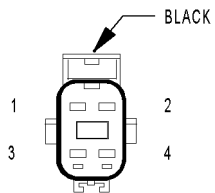
OXYGEN  
SENSOR 1/1  
UPSTREAM

OXYGEN SENSOR 1/1 UPSTREAM - BLACK 4 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	F142 18OR/DG	FUSED AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT
2	K99 20BR/OR	OXYGEN SENSOR 1/1 HEATER CONTROL
3	K4 20BK/LB	SENSOR GROUND
4	K41 18BK/DG	OXYGEN SENSOR 1/1 SIGNAL



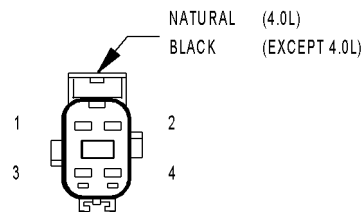
OXYGEN  
SENSOR 1/2  
DOWNSTREAM

OXYGEN SENSOR 1/2 DOWNSTREAM - BLACK/4.7L NATURAL/4.0L 4 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	F142 180R/DG (4.0L LHD EXPORT)	FUSED AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT
1	K200 20VT/OR (EXCEPT 4.0L LHD EXPORT)	OXYGEN SENSOR DOWNSTREAM RELAY OUTPUT
2	K299 18BR/WT (4.0L EXPORT)	OXYGEN SENSOR 1/2 HEATER CONTROL
2	Z186 20BK (EXCEPT 4.0L LHD EXPORT)	GROUND
3	K4 20BK/LB	SENSOR GROUND
4	K141 18TN/WT	OXYGEN SENSOR 1/2 SIGNAL



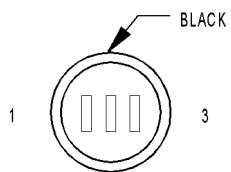
OXYGEN  
SENSOR 2/1  
UPSTREAM

OXYGEN SENSOR 2/1 UPSTREAM - BLACK 4 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	F142 180R/DG	FUSED AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT
2	K299 20BR/WT	OXYGEN SENSOR 2/1 HEATER CONTROL
3	K4 20BK/LB	SENSOR GROUND
4	K241 18LG/RD	OXYGEN SENSOR 2/1 SIGNAL



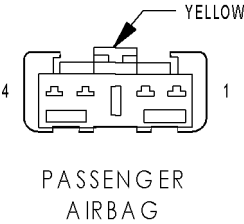
OXYGEN  
SENSOR 2/2  
DOWNSTREAM

OXYGEN SENSOR 2/2 DOWNSTREAM - NATURAL/4.0L BLACK/EXCEPT 4.0L 4 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K200 20VT/OR (4.0L EXCEPT LHD EXPORT/4.7L)	OXYGEN SENSOR DOWNSTREAM RELAY OUTPUT
2	Z186 20BK (4.0L EXCEPT LHD EXPORT)	GROUND
2	Z186 18BK (4.7L)	GROUND
3	K4 20BK/LB (4.0L)	SENSOR GROUND
3	K4 18BK/LB (4.7L)	SENSOR GROUND
4	K341 18TN/WT (4.0L EXCEPT JAPAN)	OXYGEN SENSOR 2/2 SIGNAL
4	K341 18PK/WT (4.7L/4.0L JAPAN)	OXYGEN SENSOR 2/2 SIGNAL

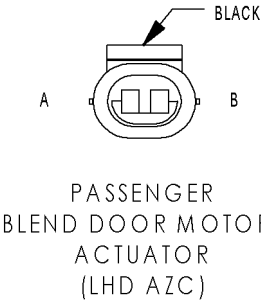


PARK/NEUTRAL  
POSITION  
SWITCH  
(4.0L)

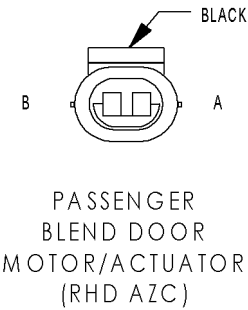
PARK/NEUTRAL POSITION SWITCH (4.0L) - BLACK 3 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	L1 18VT/BK	BACK-UP LAMP FEED
2	T41 18BK/WT	PARK/NEUTRAL POSITION SWITCH SENSE (T41)
3	F22 18WT/PK	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN)



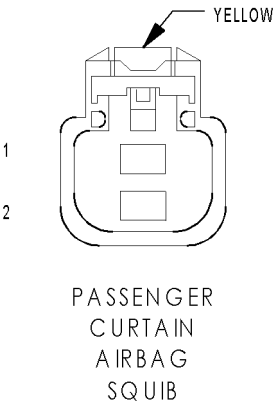
PASSENGER AIRBAG - YELLOW 4 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	R42 20BK/YL	PASSENGER SQUIB 1 LINE 1
2	R44 20DG/YL	PASSENGER SQUIB 1 LINE 2
3	R64 20TN/YL	PASSENGER SQUIB 2 LINE 1
4	R62 20OR/YL	PASSENGER SQUIB 2 LINE 2



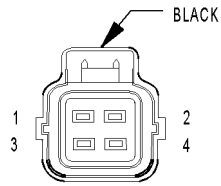
PASSENGER BLEND DOOR MOTOR/ACTUATOR (LHD AZC) - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
A	C96 20WT/DB	PASSENGER BLEND DOOR DRIVER (B)
B	C94 20WT/DG	PASSENGER BLEND DOOR DRIVER (A)



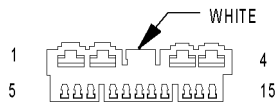
PASSENGER BLEND DOOR MOTOR/ACTUATOR (RHD AZC) - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
A	C94 20WT/DG	PASSENGER BLEND DOOR DRIVER (A)
B	C96 20WT/DB	PASSENGER BLEND DOOR DRIVER (B)



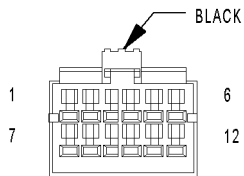
PASSENGER CURTAIN AIRBAG SQUIB - YELLOW 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	R72 20LB/WT (LHD)	PASSENGER CURTAIN SQUIB 1 LINE 2
1	R72 20LB/BR (RHD)	PASSENGER CURTAIN SQUIB 1 LINE 2
2	R74 20LB/YL (LHD)	PASSENGER CURTAIN SQUIB 1 LINE 1
2	R74 20LB/OR (RHD)	PASSENGER CURTAIN SQUIB 1 LINE 1



PASSENGER  
DOOR  
LOCK MOTOR/  
AJAR SWITCH



PASSENGER  
DOOR  
MODULE C1



PASSENGER  
DOOR  
MODULE C2

PASSENGER DOOR LOCK MOTOR/AJAR SWITCH - BLACK 4 WAY

CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	G74 18TN/RD	PASSENGER DOOR AJAR SWITCH SENSE
2	Z28 12BK (LHD)	GROUND
2	Z243 12BK (RHD)	GROUND
3	P36 18PK/VT	DOOR UNLOCK DRIVER
4	P35 18OR/VT	DOOR LOCK DRIVER

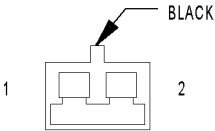
PASSENGER DOOR MODULE C1 - WHITE 15 WAY

CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	A146 12OR/WT	FUSED B(+)
2	Q24 16DG	PASSENGER REAR WINDOW DRIVER (DOWN)
3	Q14 16GY	PASSENGER REAR WINDOW DRIVER (UP)
4	Z28 12BK (LHD)	GROUND
4	Z243 12BK (RHD)	GROUND
5	P35 18OR/VT	DOOR LOCK DRIVER
6	-	-
7	P36 18PK/VT	DOOR UNLOCK DRIVER
8	-	-
9	D25 20YL/VT	PCI BUS
10	-	-
11	G74 18TN/RD	PASSENGER DOOR AJAR SWITCH SENSE
12	E20 20OR/DB	PASSENGER REAR DOOR SWITCH ILLUMINATION
13	Q12 16BR	PASSENGER WINDOW DRIVER (UP)
14	-	-
15	Q22 16VT	PASSENGER WINDOW DRIVER (DOWN)

PASSENGER DOOR MODULE C2 - BLACK 12 WAY

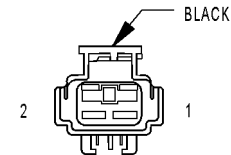
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	P95 20OR	MIRROR HORIZONTAL DRIVER
2	C118 20BK/WT	MIRROR HEATER GROUND
3	P64 20VT	MIRROR VERTICAL POSITION SIGNAL
4	P69 20GY	MIRROR SENSOR GROUND
5	P65 20DG	MIRROR HORIZONTAL POSITION SIGNAL
6	C117 20BK	MIRROR HEATER 12 VOLT SUPPLY
7	P91 20WT	MIRROR COMMON DRIVER
8	P93 20RD	MIRROR VERTICAL DRIVER
9	M21 20PK/DG	COURTESY LAMP DRIVER
10	P110 20YL (EXPORT)	FOLDING MIRROR RETURN
11	P99 20DB (EXPORT)	FOLDING MIRROR FEED
12	L121 20BK/RD	COURTESY LAMP GROUND





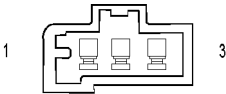
PASSENGER  
FRONT DOOR  
COURTESY  
LAMP

PASSENGER FRONT DOOR COURTESY LAMP - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	M21 20PK/DG	COURTESY LAMP DRIVER
2	L121 20BK/RD	COURTESY LAMP GROUND



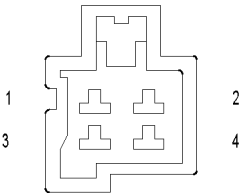
PASSENGER  
FRONT  
POWER WINDOW  
MOTOR

PASSENGER FRONT POWER WINDOW MOTOR - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	Q22 16VT	PASSENGER WINDOW DRIVER (DOWN)
2	Q12 16BR	PASSENGER WINDOW DRIVER (UP)



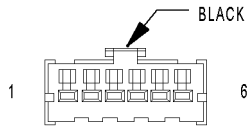
PASSENGER  
HEATED SEAT  
BACK  
(PREMIUM I/III)

PASSENGER HEATED SEAT BACK (PREMIUM I/III) - 3 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	P88 16BK/BR	HEATED SEAT DRIVER
2	Z5 16BK/VT	GROUND
3	-	-



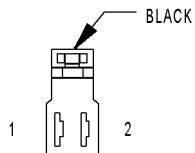
PASSENGER  
HEATED SEAT  
CUSHION  
(PREMIUM I/III)

PASSENGER HEATED SEAT CUSHION (PREMIUM I/III) - 4 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	P130 16DG/WT	PASSENGER SEAT HEATER B(+) DRIVER
2	P88 16BK/BR	HEATED SEAT DRIVER
3	P86 20DG/YL	PASSENGER SEAT TEMPERATURE SENSOR INPUT
4	P29 20BR/WT	SEAT SENSOR 5 VOLT SUPPLY



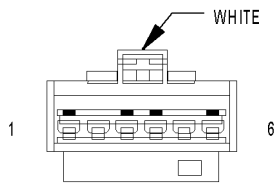
PASSENGER  
HEATED SEAT  
SWITCH

PASSENGER HEATED SEAT SWITCH - BLACK 6 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	P134 20TN/LG	PASSENGER SEAT HEATER SWITCH MUX
2	E2 20OR	PANEL LAMPS DRIVER
3	F22 20WT/PK	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN)
4	-	-
5	Z300 20BK	GROUND
6	P132 20OR/BK	SEAT HEATER SWITCH SENSOR GROUND



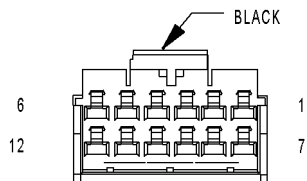
PASSENGER  
LUMBAR  
MOTOR  
(MIDLINE/PREMIUM)

PASSENGER LUMBAR MOTOR (MIDLINE/PREMIUM) - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	P105 16LG/DB	LUMBAR FORWARD SWITCH SENSE
2	P104 16YL/RD	LUMBAR REARWARD SWITCH SENSE



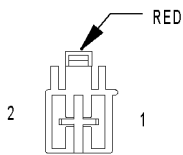
PASSENGER  
LUMBAR  
SWITCH  
(MIDLINE/PREMIUM)

PASSENGER LUMBAR SWITCH (MIDLINE/PREMIUM) - WHITE 6 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	-	-
2	Z238 16BK (LHD)	GROUND
2	Z243 16BK (RHD)	GROUND
3	P105 16LG/DB (LHD)	LUMBAR FORWARD SWITCH SENSE
3	P104 16YL/RD (RHD)	LUMBAR REARWARD SWITCH SENSE
4	P104 16YL/RD (LHD)	LUMBAR REARWARD SWITCH SENSE
4	P105 16LG/DB (RHD)	LUMBAR FORWARD SWITCH SENSE
5	Z238 16BK (LHD)	GROUND
5	Z243 16BK (RHD)	GROUND
6	F37 16RD/LB	FUSED B(+)



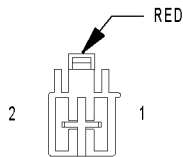
PASSENGER  
POWER  
MIRROR

PASSENGER POWER MIRROR - BLACK 12 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	C117 20BK	MIRROR HEATER 12 VOLT SUPPLY
2	P65 20DG	MIRROR HORIZONTAL POSITION SIGNAL
3	P69 20GY	MIRROR SENSOR GROUND
4	P64 20VT	MIRROR VERTICAL POSITION SIGNAL
5	C118 20BK/WT	MIRROR HEATER GROUND
6	P95 20OR	MIRROR HORIZONTAL DRIVER
7	-	-
8	P99 20DB (EXPORT)	FOLDING MIRROR FEED
9	P110 20YL (EXPORT)	FOLDING MIRROR RETURN
10	-	-
11	P93 20RD	MIRROR VERTICAL DRIVER
12	P91 20WT	MIRROR COMMON DRIVER



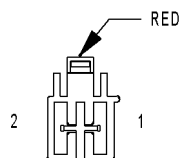
PASSENGER  
POWER SEAT  
FRONT RISER  
MOTOR

PASSENGER POWER SEAT FRONT RISER MOTOR - RED 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	P18 16YL/LG	PASSENGER SEAT FRONT UP DRIVER
2	P20 16RD/LG	PASSENGER SEAT FRONT DOWN DRIVER



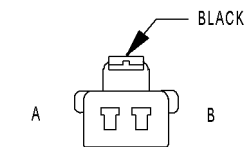
PASSENGER  
POWER SEAT  
HORIZONTAL  
MOTOR

PASSENGER POWER SEAT HORIZONTAL MOTOR - RED 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	P16 16RD/YL	PASSENGER SEAT HORIZONTAL REARWARD DRIVER
2	P14 16YL/LB	PASSENGER SEAT HORIZONTAL FORWARD DRIVER



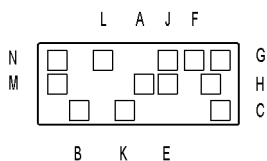
PASSENGER  
POWER SEAT  
REAR RISER  
MOTOR

PASSENGER POWER SEAT REAR RISER MOTOR - RED 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	P10 16YL/WT	PASSENGER SEAT REAR UP DRIVER
2	P12 16RD/WT	PASSENGER SEAT REAR DOWN DRIVER



PASSENGER  
POWER SEAT  
RECLINER MOTOR  
(MIDLINE/PREMIUM)

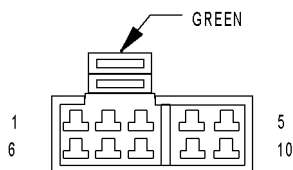
PASSENGER POWER SEAT RECLINER MOTOR (MIDLINE/PREMIUM) - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
A	P42 16BR/WT	PASSENGER SEAT RECLINER DOWN DRIVER
B	P44 16GY/LB	PASSENGER SEAT RECLINER UP DRIVER



PASSENGER  
POWER SEAT  
SWITCH  
(EXCEPT MIDLINE/  
PREMIUM)

PASSENGER POWER SEAT SWITCH (EXCEPT MIDLINE/PREMIUM) - 12 WAY

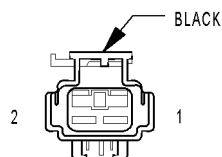
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
A	F37 16RD/LB	FUSED B(+)
B	Z238 16BK (LHD)	GROUND
B	Z243 16BK (RHD)	GROUND
C	-	-
E	P18 16YL/DG	PASSENGER SEAT FRONT DOWN DRIVER
F	-	-
G	-	-
H	-	-
J	P20 16RD/LG	PASSENGER SEAT FRONT DOWN DRIVER
K	P14 16YL/LB	PASSENGER SEAT HORIZONTAL FORWARD DRIVER
L	P16 16RD/YL	PASSENGER SEAT HORIZONTAL REARWARD DRIVER
M	P10 16YL/WT	PASSENGER SEAT REAR UP DRIVER
N	P12 16RD/WT	PASSENGER SEAT REAR DOWN DRIVER



PASSENGER  
POWER SEAT  
SWITCH  
(MIDLINE/PREMIUM)

PASSENGER POWER SEAT SWITCH (MIDLINE/PREMIUM) - GREEN 10 WAY

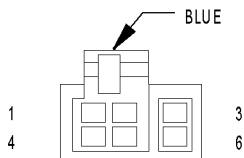
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	Z238 16BK (LHD)	GROUND
1	Z243 16BK (RHD)	GROUND
2	P44 16GY/LB	PASSENGER SEAT RECLINER UP DRIVER
3	P16 16RD/YL	PASSENGER SEAT HORIZONTAL REARWARD DRIVER
4	P42 16BR/WT	PASSENGER SEAT RECLINER DOWN DRIVER
5	F37 16RD/LB	FUSED B(+)
6	P14 16YL/LB	PASSENGER SEAT HORIZONTAL FORWARD DRIVER
7	P20 16RD/LG (LHD)	PASSENGER SEAT FRONT DOWN DRIVER
8	P12 16RD/WT (LHD)	PASSENGER SEAT REAR DOWN DRIVER
9	P10 16YL/WT (LHD)	PASSENGER SEAT REAR UP DRIVER
10	P18 16YL/LG (LHD)	PASSENGER SEAT FRONT UP DRIVER



PASSENGER REAR  
POWER WINDOW  
MOTOR

PASSENGER REAR POWER WINDOW MOTOR - BLACK 2 WAY

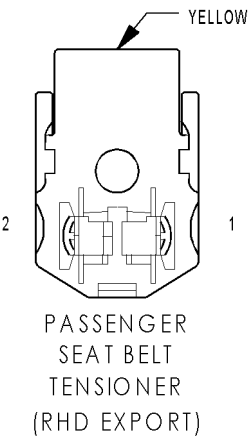
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	Q124 16DG/WT	WINDOW DRIVER (DOWN)
2	Q114 16GY/WT	WINDOW DRIVER (UP)



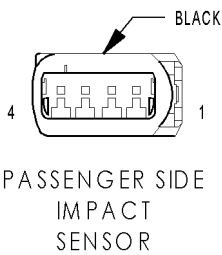
PASSENGER REAR  
POWER WINDOW  
SWITCH

PASSENGER REAR POWER WINDOW SWITCH - BLUE 6 WAY

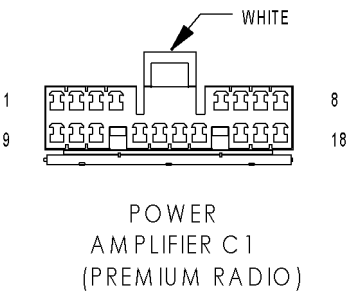
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	Q14 16GY	PASSENGER REAR WINDOW DRIVER (UP)
2	Q114 16GY/WT	WINDOW DRIVER (UP)
3	E21 200R/RD	PASSENGER REAR DOOR SWITCH ILLUMINATION
4	Q24 16DG	PASSENGER REAR WINDOW DRIVER (DOWN)
5	Q124 16DG/WT	WINDOW DRIVER (DOWN)
6	Z28 16BK (LHD)	GROUND
6	Z243 16BK (RHD)	GROUND



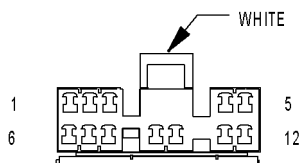
PASSENGER SEAT BELT TENSIONER (RHD EXPORT) - YELLOW 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	R54 20LB/YL	PASSENGER SEAT BELT TENSIONER LINE 2
2	R56 20LB/DG	PASSENGER SEAT BELT TENSIONER LINE 1



PASSENGER SIDE IMPACT SENSOR - BLACK 4 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	-	-
2	-	-
3	R134 20LB/BR	PASSENGER SIDE IMPACT SENSOR GROUND
4	R132 20LG/VT	PASSENGER SIDE IMPACT SENSOR SIGNAL



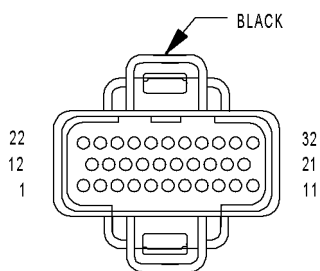
POWER AMPLIFIER C1 (PREMIUM RADIO) - WHITE 18 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	D25 20YL/VT	PCI BUS
2	F60 16RD/WT	FUSED B(+)
3	Z9 16BK	GROUND
4	-	-
5	X58 18DB/OR	RIGHT REAR SPEAKER (-)
6	X57 18DG/WT	LEFT REAR SPEAKER (-)
7	X56 18DB/PK	RIGHT FRONT SPEAKER (-)
8	X55 18BR/RD	LEFT FRONT SPEAKER (-)
9	-	-
10	F60 16RD/WT	FUSED B(+)
11	Z9 16BK	GROUND
12	-	-
13	X64 18BR/WT	ENABLE SIGNAL TO AMPLIFIER
14	-	-
15	X52 18DB/WT	RIGHT REAR SPEAKER (+)
16	X51 18WT/DG	LEFT REAR SPEAKER (+)
17	X54 18VT	RIGHT FRONT SPEAKER (+)
18	X53 18DG/OR	LEFT FRONT SPEAKER (+)



POWER  
AMPLIFIER C2  
(PREMIUM RADIO)

POWER AMPLIFIER C2 (PREMIUM RADIO) - WHITE 12 WAY

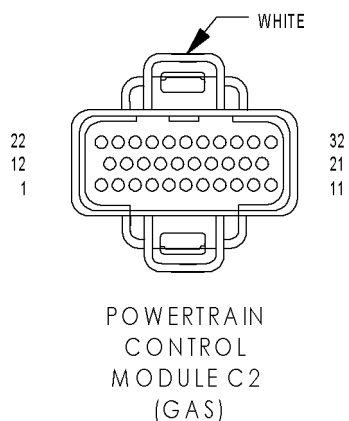
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	X90 18WT/VT	RIGHT REAR DOOR SPEAKER (+)
2	X92 18TN/DG	RIGHT REAR DOOR SPEAKER (-)
3	X85 18LG/DG	LEFT FRONT DOOR SPEAKER (-)
4	X83 18YL/RD	LEFT INSTRUMENT PANEL SPEAKER (+)
5	X84 18OR/GY	RIGHT INSTRUMENT PANEL SPEAKER (-)
6	X93 18DG/WT	LEFT REAR DOOR SPEAKER (+)
7	X91 18WT/DG	LEFT REAR DOOR SPEAKER (-)
8	X87 18LG/RD	LEFT FRONT DOOR SPEAKER (+)
9	X80 18LB/BK	RIGHT FRONT DOOR SPEAKER (-)
10	X82 18LB/RD	RIGHT FRONT DOOR SPEAKER (+)
11	X81 18YL/BK	LEFT INSTRUMENT PANEL SPEAKER (-)
12	X86 18OR/RD	RIGHT INSTRUMENT PANEL SPEAKER (+)



POWERTRAIN  
CONTROL  
MODULE C1  
(GAS)

POWERTRAIN CONTROL MODULE C1 (GAS) - BLACK 32 WAY

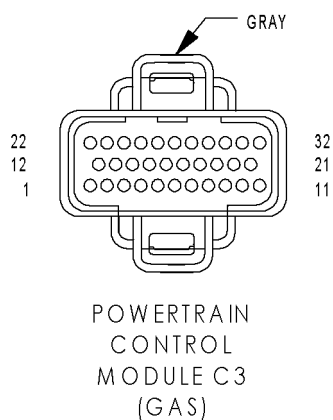
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K93 14TN/OR	COIL DRIVER NO. 3
2	F991 18OR/DB	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-START)
3	K94 14TN/LG (4.7L)	COIL DRIVER NO. 4
4	K4 18BK/LB	SENSOR GROUND
5	K96 14TN/LB (4.7L)	COIL DRIVER NO. 6
6	T41 18BK/WT	PARK/NEUTRAL POSITION SWITCH SENSE (T41)
7	K91 14TN/RD	COIL DRIVER NO. 1
8	K24 18GY/BK	CRANKSHAFT POSITION SENSOR SIGNAL
9	K98 14LB/RD (4.7L)	COIL DRIVER NO. 8
10	K60 18YL/BK	IDLE AIR CONTROL NO. 2 DRIVER
11	K40 18BR/WT	IDLE AIR CONTROL NO. 3 DRIVER
12	-	-
13	-	-
14	K77 18LG/BK (EXCEPT EXPORT)	TRANSFER CASE POSITION SENSOR INPUT
15	K21 18BK/RD	INTAKE AIR TEMPERATURE SENSOR SIGNAL
16	K2 18TN/BK	ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE SENSOR SIGNAL
17	K7 18OR	5 VOLT SUPPLY
18	K44 18TN/YL	CAMSHAFT POSITION SENSOR SIGNAL
19	K39 18GY/BK	IDLE AIR CONTROL NO. 1 DRIVER
20	K59 18VT/BK	IDLE AIR CONTROL NO. 4 DRIVER
21	K95 14TN/DG (4.7L)	COIL DRIVER NO. 5
22	A7 14RD/BK	FUSED B(+)
23	K22 18OR/RD	THROTTLE POSITION SENSOR SIGNAL
24	K41 18BK/DG	OXYGEN SENSOR 1/1 SIGNAL
25	K141 18TN/WT	OXYGEN SENSOR 1/2 SIGNAL
26	K241 18LG/RD	OXYGEN SENSOR 2/1 SIGNAL
27	K1 18DG/RD	MAP SENSOR SIGNAL
28	-	-
29	K341 18TN/WT (4.0L EXCEPT JAPAN)	OXYGEN SENSOR 2/2 SIGNAL
29	K341 18PK/WT (4.7L/4.0L JAPAN)	OXYGEN SENSOR 2/2 SIGNAL
30	-	-
31	Z82 14BK/WT	GROUND
32	Z81 14BK/TN	GROUND



POWERTRAIN CONTROL MODULE C2 (GAS) - WHITE 32 WAY

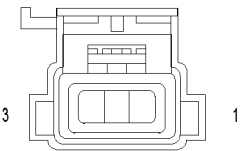
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	T54 18VT (4.0L)	TRANSMISSION TEMPERATURE SENSOR SIGNAL
2	K26 18VT (4.7L)	FUEL INJECTOR NO. 7 DRIVER
3	-	-
4	K11 18WT/DB	FUEL INJECTOR NO. 1 DRIVER
5	K13 18YL/WT	FUEL INJECTOR NO. 3 DRIVER
6	K38 18GY	FUEL INJECTOR NO. 5 DRIVER
7	K97 14BR (4.7L)	COIL DRIVER NO. 7
8	K88 18PK (4.0L)	GOVERNOR PRESSURE SOLENOID CONTROL
9	K92 14TN/PK	COIL DRIVER NO. 2
10	K20 18DG	GENERATOR FIELD DRIVER
11	T20 18LB (4.0L)	TORQUE CONVERTER CLUTCH SOLENOID CONTROL
12	K58 18BR/DB	FUEL INJECTOR NO. 6 DRIVER
13	K28 18GY/LB (4.7L)	FUEL INJECTOR NO. 8 DRIVER
14	-	-
15	K12 18TN	FUEL INJECTOR NO. 2 DRIVER
16	K14 18LB/BR	FUEL INJECTOR NO. 4 DRIVER
17	K173 18LG	RADIATOR FAN RELAY CONTROL
18	-	-
19	C18 18DB	A/C PRESSURE SIGNAL
20	-	-
21	T60 18BR (4.0L)	3-4 SHIFT SOLENOID CONTROL
22	-	-
23	G60 18GY/YL	ENGINE OIL PRESSURE SWITCH SIGNAL
24	-	-
25	T13 18DB/BK (4.0L)	SPEED SENSOR GROUND
26	-	-
27	B22 18DG/YL	VEHICLE SPEED SIGNAL
28	T14 18LG/WT (4.0L)	OUTPUT SPEED SENSOR SIGNAL
29	T25 18LG/RD (4.0L)	GOVERNOR PRESSURE SENSOR SIGNAL
30	K30 18PK/YL (4.0L)	TRANSMISSION CONTROL RELAY CONTROL
31	K6 18VT/BK	5 VOLT SUPPLY
32	-	-



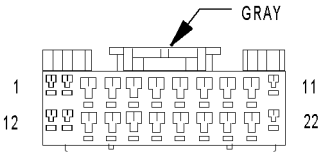


POWERTRAIN CONTROL MODULE C3 (GAS) - GRAY 32 WAY

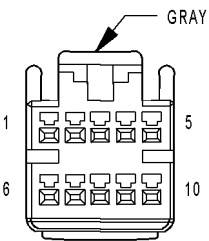
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	C13 18DB/OR	A/C CLUTCH RELAY CONTROL
2	C24 18DB/PK (4.0L)	LOW SPEED RADIATOR FAN RELAY CONTROL
3	K51 18DB/YL	AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY CONTROL
4	V36 18TN/RD	SPEED CONTROL VACUUM SOLENOID CONTROL
5	V35 18LG/RD	SPEED CONTROL VENT SOLENOID CONTROL
6	-	-
7	K42 18DB/LG (4.7L HIGH OUTPUT)	KNOCK SENSOR NO. 1 SIGNAL
8	K99 18BR/OR	OXYGEN SENSOR 1/1 HEATER CONTROL
9	K512 18RD/YL	OXYGEN SENSOR DOWNSTREAM RELAY CONTROL
10	K106 18WT/DG (EXCEPT EXPORT)	LEAK DETECTION PUMP SOLENOID CONTROL
11	V32 18OR/DG	SPEED CONTROL POWER SUPPLY
12	F42 18DG/LG	FUSED AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT
13	T6 18OR/WT (4.0L LHD)	OVERDRIVE OFF SWITCH SENSE
13	T6 18OR/BK (4.0L RHD)	OVERDRIVE OFF SWITCH SENSE
13	T10 18DG/LG (4.7L LHD)	TORQUE MANAGEMENT REQUEST SENSE
13	T10 18YL/DG (4.7L RHD)	TORQUE MANAGEMENT REQUEST SENSE
14	K107 18OR/PK (EXCEPT EXPORT)	LEAK DETECTION PUMP SWITCH SENSE
15	K25 18VT/LG	BATTERY TEMPERATURE SENSOR SIGNAL
16	K299 18BR/WT	OXYGEN SENSOR 2/1 HEATER CONTROL
17	-	-
18	K142 18GY/BK (4.7L HIGH OUTPUT)	KNOCK SENSOR NO. 2 SIGNAL
19	K31 18BR	FUEL PUMP RELAY CONTROL
20	K52 18PK/BK	DUTY CYCLE EVAP/PURGE SOLENOID CONTROL
21	C27 18PK/DB (4.0L)	HIGH SPEED RADIATOR FAN RELAY CONTROL
22	-	-
23	-	-
24	K29 18WT/PK	BRAKE SWITCH SENSE
25	K125 18WT/DB	GENERATOR SOURCE
26	K226 18LB/YL	FUEL LEVEL SENSOR SIGNAL
27	D21 18PK	SCI TRANSMIT
28	-	-
29	D32 18LG (LHD)	SCI RECEIVE
29	D32 18LG/DG (RHD)	SCI RECEIVE
30	D25 18VT/YL	PCI BUS
31	-	-
32	V37 18RD/LG	SPEED CONTROL SWITCH SIGNAL



RADIATOR FAN  
MOTOR  
(4.0L)



RADIO C 1



RADIO C 2

RADIATOR FAN MOTOR (4.0L) - 3 WAY

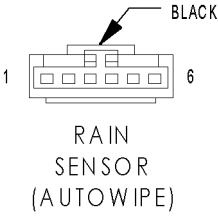
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	C23 12DG	LOW SPEED RADIATOR FAN RELAY OUTPUT
2	Z4 12WT/BK	GROUND
3	C25 12YL	HIGH SPEED RADIATOR FAN RELAY OUTPUT

RADIO C1 - GRAY 22 WAY

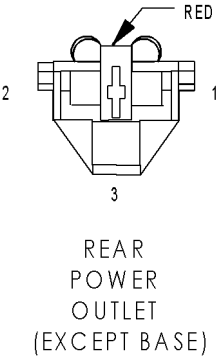
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	F60 16RD/WT	FUSED B(+)
2	X12 20WT/RD	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-ACC)
3	E2 20OR	PANEL LAMPS DRIVER
4	-	-
5	-	-
6	-	-
7	X54 18VT	RIGHT FRONT SPEAKER (+)
8	X56 18DB/PK	RIGHT FRONT SPEAKER (-)
9	X55 18BR/RD	LEFT FRONT SPEAKER (-)
10	X53 18DG/OR	LEFT FRONT SPEAKER (+)
11	Z9 16BK	GROUND
12	F60 16RD/WT	FUSED B(+)
13	X64 18BR/WT	ENABLE SIGNAL TO AMPLIFIER
14	D25 20YL/VT/DB	PCI BUS
15	-	-
16	-	-
17	-	-
18	X51 18WT/DG	LEFT REAR SPEAKER (+)
19	X57 18DG/WT	LEFT REAR SPEAKER (-)
20	X58 18DB/OR	RIGHT REAR SPEAKER (-)
21	X52 18DB/WT	RIGHT REAR SPEAKER (+)
22	Z9 16BK	GROUND

RADIO C2 - GRAY 10 WAY

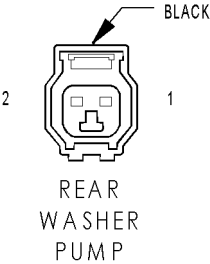
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	X40 20WT/RD	AUDIO OUT RIGHT
2	Z4 20WT/BK	GROUND
3	Z5 20BK/LB	SHIELD
4	-	-
5	X112 20RD	IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-ACC)
6	X41 20WT/DG	AUDIO OUT LEFT
7	Z17 20BK	GROUND
8	-	-
9	-	-
10	X160 20YL	FUSED B(+)



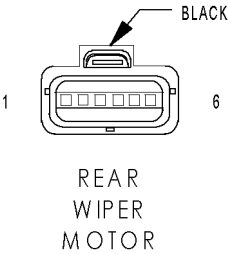
RAIN SENSOR (AUTOWIPE) - BLACK 6 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	-	-
2	D25 20BK/PK	PCI BUS
3	-	-
4	Z155 20BK/OR	GROUND
5	Q30 20BK/LB	ACCESSORY DELAY RELAY OUTPUT
6	-	-



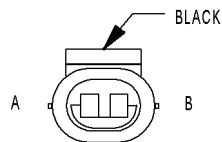
REAR POWER OUTLET (EXCEPT BASE) - RED 3 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	A148 16LG/RD	FUSED B(+)
2	-	-
3	Z151 16BK	GROUND



REAR WASHER PUMP - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	Z141 18BK	GROUND
2	V20 18BK/WT	REAR WASHER PUMP MOTOR CONTROL

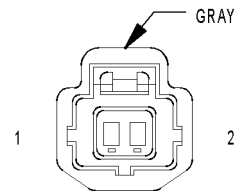


REAR WIPER MOTOR - BLACK 6 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	Z309 18BK	GROUND
2	V13 18BR/LG	REAR WIPER MOTOR CONTROL
3	G80 20VT/YL	LIFTGATE FLIP-UP AJAR SWITCH SENSE
4	V22 18BR/YL	REAR WIPER MOTOR DELAY CONTROL
5	F70 18PK	FUSED B(+)
6	-	-



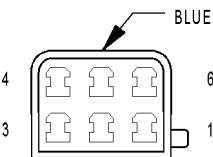
RECIRCULATION  
DOOR MOTOR/  
ACTUATOR  
(AZC)

RECIRCULATION DOOR MOTOR/ACTUATOR (AZC) - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
A	C32 20GY/DB (LHD)	RECIRCULATION DOOR DRIVER (A)
A	C100 20YL/DB (RHD)	RECIRCULATION DOOR DRIVER (B)
B	C100 20YL/DB (LHD)	RECIRCULATION DOOR DRIVER (B)
B	C32 20GY/DB (RHD)	RECIRCULATION DOOR DRIVER (A)



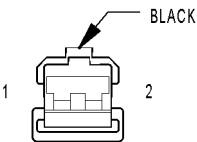
RED BRAKE  
WARNING  
INDICATOR SWITCH

RED BRAKE WARNING INDICATOR SWITCH - GRAY 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	Z231 18BK	GROUND
2	G9 18GY/BK	RED BRAKE WARNING INDICATOR SWITCH SENSE



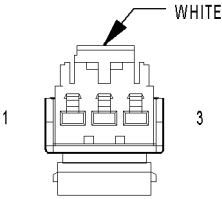
REMOTE  
KEYLESS  
MODULE  
(JAPAN)

REMOTE KEYLESS MODULE (JAPAN) - BLUE 6 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K25 20RD/GY	ANTENNA SIGNAL
2	K25 20RD/GY	ANTENNA SIGNAL
3	M1 18PK	FUSED B(+)
4	Z1 18BK	GROUND
5	D30 20VT/YL	DIAGNOSTIC OUT
6	D30 20VT/YL	DIAGNOSTIC OUT



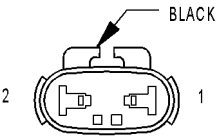
RIGHT  
COURTESY  
LAMP

RIGHT COURTESY LAMP - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	F70 20PK/BK	FUSED B(+)
2	M2 20YL	COURTESY LAMP DRIVER



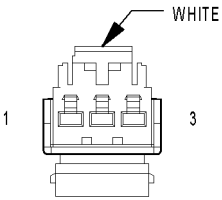
RIGHT DOOR  
HANDLE  
COURTESY LAMP

RIGHT DOOR HANDLE COURTESY LAMP - WHITE 3 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	F70 20PK	FUSED B(+)
2	M20 20YL/BK	COURTESY LAMP LOAD SHED
3	M2 20YL/DG	COURTESY LAMP DRIVER



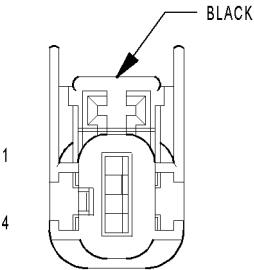
RIGHT  
FOG  
LAMP

RIGHT FOG LAMP - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	L39 20LB	FOG LAMP RELAY OUTPUT
2	Z142 18BK	GROUND



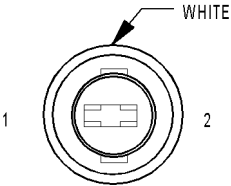
RIGHT FRONT  
DOOR SPEAKER

RIGHT FRONT DOOR SPEAKER - WHITE 3 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	X56 18LB/BK (BASE)	RIGHT FRONT DOOR SPEAKER (-)
1	X80 18LB/BK (LHD PREMIUM)	RIGHT FRONT DOOR SPEAKER (-)
1	X80 18LG/DG (RHD PREMIUM)	RIGHT FRONT DOOR SPEAKER (-)
2	-	-
3	X54 18LB/RD (BASE)	RIGHT FRONT DOOR SPEAKER (+)
3	X82 18LB/RD (LHD PREMIUM)	RIGHT FRONT DOOR SPEAKER (+)
3	X82 18LG/RD (RHD PREMIUM)	RIGHT FRONT DOOR SPEAKER (+)



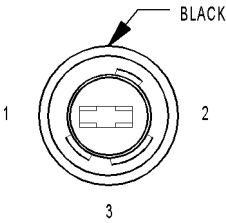
RIGHT FRONT  
IMPACT  
SENSOR

RIGHT FRONT IMPACT SENSOR - BLACK 4 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	-	-
2	-	-
3	R46 18BR/LB	RIGHT FRONT IMPACT SENSOR GROUND
4	R48 18TN	RIGHT FRONT IMPACT SENSOR SIGNAL



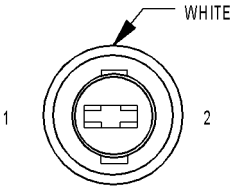
RIGHT  
FRONT  
PARK  
LAMP

RIGHT FRONT PARK LAMP - WHITE 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	Z142 18BK	GROUND
2	L7 20BK/PK	PARK LAMP RELAY OUTPUT



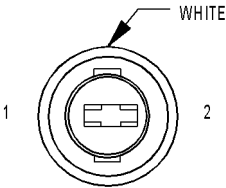
RIGHT  
FRONT  
PARK/TURN  
SIGNAL LAMP  
(EXCEPT EXPORT)

RIGHT FRONT PARK/TURN SIGNAL LAMP (EXCEPT EXPORT) - BLACK 3 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	L7 20BK/PK	PARK LAMP RELAY OUTPUT
2	Z142 18BK	GROUND
3	L60 20TN	RIGHT TURN SIGNAL



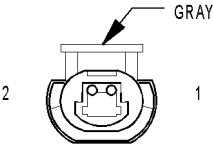
RIGHT  
FRONT  
SIDE  
MARKER  
LAMP  
(EXCEPT EXPORT)

RIGHT FRONT SIDE MARKER LAMP (EXCEPT EXPORT) - WHITE 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	L7 20BK/PK	PARK LAMP RELAY OUTPUT
2	L60 20TN	RIGHT TURN SIGNAL



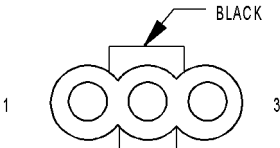
RIGHT  
FRONT  
TURN  
SIGNAL LAMP  
(EXPORT)

RIGHT FRONT TURN SIGNAL LAMP (EXPORT) - WHITE 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	L60 20TN	RIGHT TURN SIGNAL
2	Z142 18BK	GROUND



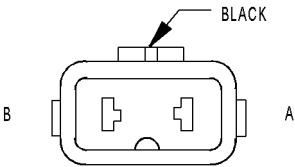
RIGHT FRONT  
WHEEL SPEED  
SENSOR

RIGHT FRONT WHEEL SPEED SENSOR - GRAY 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	B7 18WT	RIGHT FRONT WHEEL SPEED SENSOR 12 VOLT SUPPLY
2	B6 18WT/DB	RIGHT FRONT WHEEL SPEED SENSOR SIGNAL



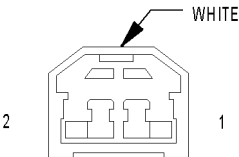
RIGHT HEADLAMP  
LEVELING MOTOR  
(EXPORT)

RIGHT HEADLAMP LEVELING MOTOR (EXPORT) - BLACK 3 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	Z142 18BK	GROUND
2	L114 18VT/DB	HEADLAMP ADJUST SIGNAL
3	L7 20BK/PK	PARK LAMP RELAY OUTPUT



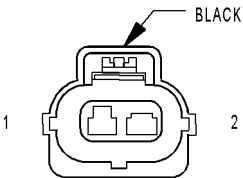
RIGHT HIGH BEAM  
HEADLAMP

RIGHT HIGH BEAM HEADLAMP - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
A	Z142 18BK	GROUND
B	L34 18RD/OR	FUSED RIGHT HIGH BEAM OUTPUT



RIGHT  
INSTRUMENT  
PANEL  
SPEAKER

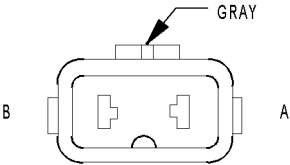
RIGHT INSTRUMENT PANEL SPEAKER - WHITE 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	X86 18OR/RD	RIGHT INSTRUMENT PANEL SPEAKER (+)
2	X84 18OR/BK	RIGHT INSTRUMENT PANEL SPEAKER (-)



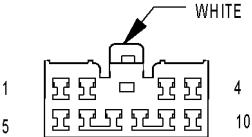
RIGHT  
LIFTGATE  
AJAR SWITCH

RIGHT LIFTGATE AJAR SWITCH - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	Z1 20BK	GROUND
2	G78 20TN/BK	LIFTGATE AJAR SWITCH SENSE

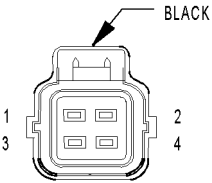




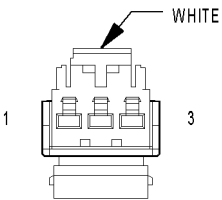
RIGHT LOW BEAM  
HEADLAMP



RIGHT MULTI-  
FUNCTION  
SWITCH



RIGHT REAR  
DOOR LOCK  
MOTOR/AJAR  
SWITCH



RIGHT REAR  
DOOR  
SPEAKER

RIGHT LOW BEAM HEADLAMP - GRAY 2 WAY

CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
A	Z142 18BK	GROUND
B	L44 18VT/RD	FUSED RIGHT LOW BEAM OUTPUT

RIGHT MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH - WHITE 10 WAY

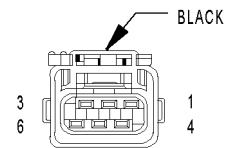
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	V23 20BR/PK	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-ACC)
2	V20 20BK/WT	REAR WASHER PUMP MOTOR CONTROL
3	V10 20BR	WASHER PUMP SWITCH SENSE
4	-	-
5	V13 20BR/LG	REAR WIPER MOTOR CONTROL
6	V22 20BR/YL	REAR WIPER MOTOR DELAY CONTROL
7	V9 20WT/BK	WINDSHIELD WIPER SWITCH RETURN
8	V52 20DG/RD	WINDSHIELD WIPER SWITCH MUX
9	V48 20RD/GY	WIPER HIGH CONTROL
10	-	-

RIGHT REAR DOOR LOCK MOTOR/AJAR SWITCH - BLACK 4 WAY

CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	G76 18TN/YL	RIGHT REAR DOOR AJAR SWITCH SENSE
2	Z28 18BK (LHD)	GROUND
2	Z151 18BK (RHD)	GROUND
3	P36 18PK/VT	DOOR UNLOCK DRIVER
4	P35 18OR/VT	DOOR LOCK DRIVER

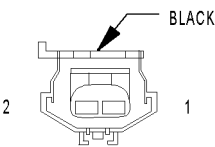
RIGHT REAR DOOR SPEAKER - WHITE 3 WAY

CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	X52 18WT/VT (BASE)	RIGHT REAR DOOR SPEAKER (+)
1	X90 18WT/VT (PREMIUM)	RIGHT REAR DOOR SPEAKER (+)
2	-	-
3	X58 18TN/DG (BASE)	RIGHT REAR DOOR SPEAKER (-)
3	X92 18TN/DG (PREMIUM)	RIGHT REAR DOOR SPEAKER (-)



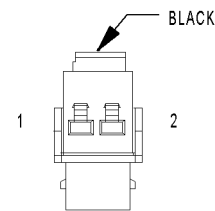
RIGHT REAR  
LAMP ASSEMBLY

RIGHT REAR LAMP ASSEMBLY - BLACK 6 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	L1 18VT/BK	BACK-UP LAMP FEED
2	L95 18DG/YL (EXPORT)	REAR FOG LAMP RELAY OUTPUT
3	L7 18BK/YL	PARK LAMP RELAY OUTPUT
4	L62 18BR/RD	RIGHT TURN SIGNAL
5	Z151 18BK	GROUND
6	L50 18WT/TN	PRIMARY BRAKE SWITCH SIGNAL



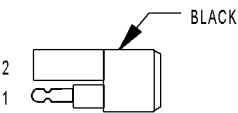
RIGHT REAR  
WHEEL SPEED  
SENSOR

RIGHT REAR WHEEL SPEED SENSOR - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	B2 20YL	RIGHT REAR WHEEL SPEED SENSOR 12 VOLT SUPPLY
2	B1 20YL/DB	RIGHT REAR WHEEL SPEED SENSOR SIGNAL



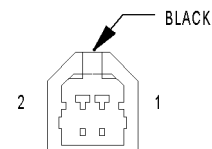
RIGHT REMOTE  
RADIO SWITCH

RIGHT REMOTE RADIO SWITCH - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	X10 20RD/BK	RADIO CONTROL MUX RETURN
2	X20 20RD/YL	RADIO CONTROL MUX



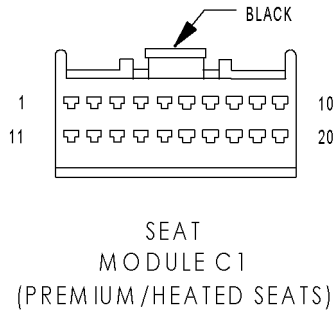
RIGHT SIDE  
REPEATER  
LAMP  
(EXPORT)

RIGHT SIDE REPEATER LAMP (EXPORT) - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	L60 18TN	RIGHT TURN SIGNAL
2	Z142 18BK	GROUND



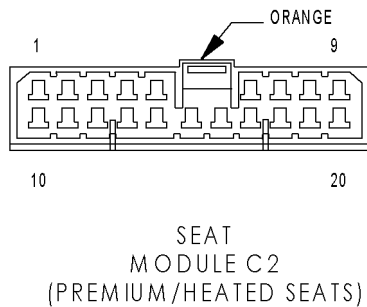
RIGHT VISOR/  
VANITY LAMP

RIGHT VISOR/VANITY LAMP - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	F70 20PK	FUSED B(+)
2	M20 20YL/BK	COURTESY LAMP LOAD SHED



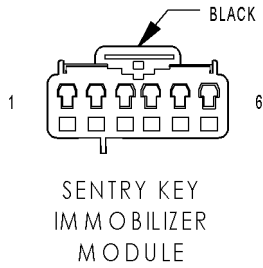
SEAT MODULE C1 (PREMIUM/HEATED SEATS) - BLACK 20 WAY

CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	P15 20YL/LB (PREMIUM II/III)	SEAT HORIZONTAL FORWARD SWITCH SENSE
2	-	-
3	P11 20YL/WT (PREMIUM II/III)	SEAT REAR UP SWITCH SENSE
4	P43 20GY/LB (PREMIUM II/III)	RECLINER UP SWITCH SENSE
5	P19 20YL/LG (PREMIUM II/III)	SEAT FRONT UP SWITCH SENSE
6	P86 20DG/YL (HEATED SEATS)	PASSENGER SEAT TEMPERATURE SENSOR INPUT
7	P27 20LB/RD (PREMIUM II/III)	REAR RISER POSITION SIGNAL
8	P25 20VT/RD (PREMIUM II/III)	SEAT HORIZONTAL POSITION SIGNAL
9	P135 20LB/BK (HEATED SEATS)	DRIVER SEAT TEMPERATURE SENSOR INPUT
10	P28 20BR/RD (PREMIUM II/III)	SEAT POSITION SENSOR GROUND
11	P41 20GY/WT (PREMIUM II/III)	RECLINER DOWN SWITCH SENSE
12	P17 20RD/YL (PREMIUM II/III)	SEAT HORIZONTAL REARWARD SWITCH SENSE
13	-	-
14	P21 20RD/LG (PREMIUM II/III)	SEAT FRONT DOWN SWITCH SENSE
15	P13 20RD/WT (PREMIUM II/III)	SEAT REAR DOWN SWITCH SENSE
16	P47 20LB (PREMIUM II/III)	RECLINER POSITION SIGNAL
17	P26 20BR (PREMIUM II/III)	FRONT RISER POSITION SIGNAL
18	P29 20BR/WT	SEAT SENSOR 5 VOLT SUPPLY
19	Z155 20BK/OR (LHD)	GROUND
19	Z151 20BK/OR (RHD)	GROUND
20	D25 20VT/YL	PCI BUS



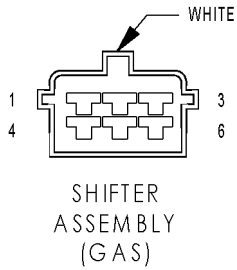
SEAT MODULE C2 (PREMIUM/HEATED SEATS) - ORANGE 20 WAY

CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	F35 16RD	FUSED B(+)
2	P131 16BK/OR (PREMIUM I/III)	DRIVER SEAT HEATER B(+) DRIVER
3	Z1 16BK	GROUND
4	P119 16YL/RD (PREMIUM II/III)	SEAT FRONT UP DRIVER
5	P121 16RD/GY (PREMIUM II/III)	SEAT FRONT DOWN DRIVER
6	P111 16YL/DB (PREMIUM II/III)	SEAT REAR UP DRIVER
7	P113 16RD/BK (PREMIUM II/III)	SEAT REAR DOWN DRIVER
8	-	-
9	P115 16GY/LG (PREMIUM II/III)	SEAT HORIZONTAL FORWARD DRIVER
10	F35 16RD	FUSED B(+)
11	P130 16DG/WT (HEATED SEATS/PREMIUM I/III)	PASSENGER SEAT HEATER B(+) DRIVER
12	Z1 16BK	GROUND
13	-	-
14	P9 20RD/LB (PREMIUM II/III)	SEAT SWITCH B(+) SUPPLY
15	Z6 16BK/YL (HEATED SEATS/PREMIUM I/III)	GROUND
16	Z5 16BK/VT (HEATED SEATS/PREMIUM I/III)	GROUND
17	-	-
18	P141 16GY/WT (PREMIUM II/III)	SEAT RECLINER DOWN DRIVER
19	P143 16GY/LB (PREMIUM II/III)	SEAT RECLINER UP DRIVER
20	P117 16RD/BR (PREMIUM II/III)	SEAT HORIZONTAL REARWARD DRIVER



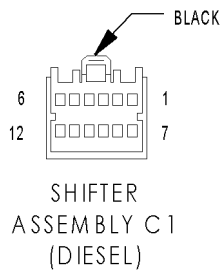
SENTRY KEY IMMOBILIZER MODULE - BLACK 6 WAY

CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	M1 20PK	FUSED B(+)
2	Z132 20BK/OR	GROUND
3	G5 20DB/WT	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-START)
4	-	-
5	D25 20YL/VT/BK	PCI BUS
6	-	-



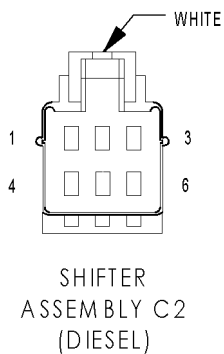
SHIFTER ASSEMBLY (GAS) - WHITE 6 WAY

CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	E2 20OR	PANEL LAMPS DRIVER
2	Z234 18BK	GROUND
3	T6 18OR/WT	OVERDRIVE OFF SWITCH SENSE
4	Z300 18BK	GROUND
5	F12 20DB/WT	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-START)
6	K29 20WT/PK	SECONDARY BRAKE SWITCH SIGNAL



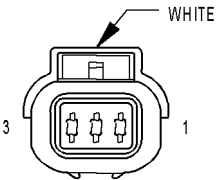
SHIFTER ASSEMBLY C1 (DIESEL) - BLACK 12 WAY

CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	F991 20OR/DB	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-START)
2	F991 20OR/DB	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-START)
3	F991 20OR/DB	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-START)
4	T2 20TN/BK	BACK-UP LAMP RELAY CONTROL
5	D25 20RD	PCI BUS
6	W0 20DB/WT	SHIFTER C1 SENSE
7	W1 20VT/WT	SHIFTER C2 SENSE
8	W2 20VT	SHIFTER C3 SENSE
9	W3 20BK	SHIFTER C4 SENSE
10	W4 20PK/OR	SHIFTER C5 SENSE
11	Z234 20WT	GROUND
12	Z234 20WT	GROUND



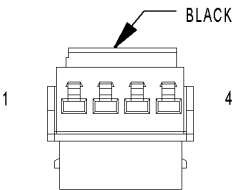
SHIFTER ASSEMBLY C2 (DIESEL) - WHITE 6 WAY

CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	-	-
2	-	-
3	F12 20DB/WT	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-START)
4	K29 20WT/PK	SECONDARY BRAKE SWITCH SIGNAL
5	F991 20OR/DB	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-START)
6	Y1 20DB/PK	PARK LOCKOUT SOLENOID CONTROL



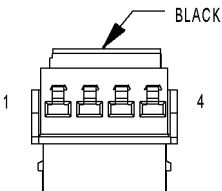
SIREN  
(EXPORT)

SIREN (EXPORT) - WHITE 3 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	Z141 18BK	GROUND
2	X75 18GY/LB (DIESEL)	SIREN SIGNAL CONTROL
2	X75 18GY/LG (GAS)	SIREN SIGNAL CONTROL
3	M1 18PK	FUSED B(+)



SPEED  
CONTROL  
SWITCH  
NO. 1

SPEED CONTROL SWITCH NO. 1 - BLACK 4 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	-	-
2	K4 20BK/LB	SENSOR GROUND
3	V37 20RD/LG	SPEED CONTROL SWITCH SIGNAL
4	-	-



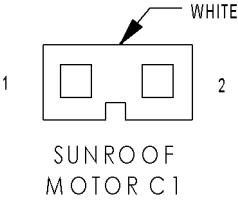
SPEED  
CONTROL  
SWITCH  
NO. 2

SPEED CONTROL SWITCH NO. 2 - BLACK 4 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	-	-
2	K4 20BK/LB	SENSOR GROUND
3	V37 20RD/LG	SPEED CONTROL SWITCH SIGNAL
4	-	-

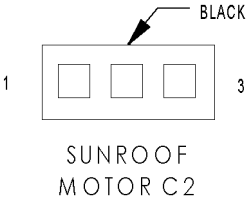


SUNROOF  
CONTROL  
MODULE

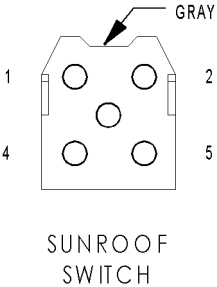
SUNROOF CONTROL MODULE - 8 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
A	Q46 20OR/WT	SUNROOF MOTOR POSITION SENSOR SIGNAL
B	Q41 20WT	SUNROOF OPEN
C	Q43 20VT	SUNROOF VENT
D	Z1 16BK	GROUND
E	-	-
F	Q30 16DB	ACCESSORY DELAY RELAY OUTPUT
G	Q5 16RD	SUNROOF MOTOR B(+)
H	Q6 16OR	SUNROOF MOTOR B(-)



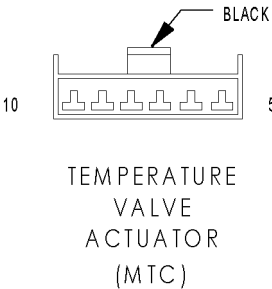
SUNROOF MOTOR C1 - WHITE 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	Q5 16RD	SUNROOF MOTOR B(+)
2	Q6 16OR	SUNROOF MOTOR B(-)



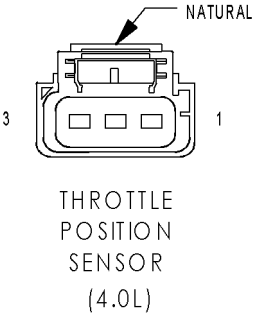
SUNROOF MOTOR C2 - BLACK 3 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	Z150 20BK	GROUND
2	Q46 200R/WT	SUNROOF MOTOR POSITION SENSOR SIGNAL
3	-	-



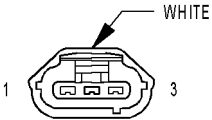
SUNROOF SWITCH - GRAY 5 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	Q43 20VT	SUNROOF VENT
2	-	-
3	Z150 20BK	GROUND
4	-	-
5	Q41 20WT	SUNROOF OPEN



TEMPERATURE VALVE ACTUATOR (MTC) - BLACK 6 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
5	-	-
6	-	-
7	Z132 20BK/OR	GROUND
8	C67 20RD/LB	BLEND AIR DOOR POSITION CONTROL
9	-	-
10	F22 20WT/PK	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN)

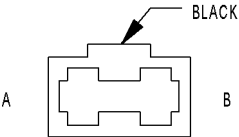


THROTTLE POSITION SENSOR (4.0L) - NATURAL 3 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K7 200R	5 VOLT SUPPLY
2	K4 20BK/LB	SENSOR GROUND
3	K22 180R/RD	THROTTLE POSITION SENSOR SIGNAL



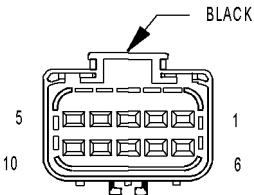
THROTTLE  
POSITION  
SENSOR  
(4.7L)

THROTTLE POSITION SENSOR (4.7L) - WHITE 3 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K7 200R	5 VOLT SUPPLY
2	K22 200R/RD	THROTTLE POSITION SENSOR SIGNAL
3	K4 20BK/LB	SENSOR GROUND



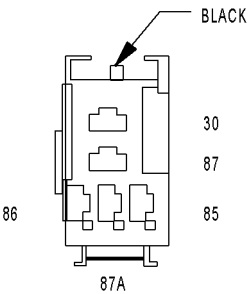
TRAILER TOW  
CIRCUIT BREAKER

TRAILER TOW CIRCUIT BREAKER - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
A	Y203 14RD/WT	FUSED CIGAR LIGHTER RELAY OUTPUT
B	Y202 14RD/TN	CIGAR LIGHTER RELAY OUTPUT



TRAILER TOW  
CONNECTOR

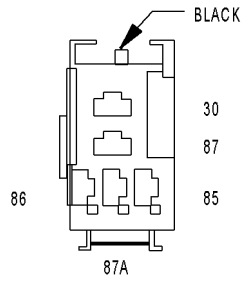
TRAILER TOW CONNECTOR - BLACK 10 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	-	-
2	L74 14PK/BK	TRAILER TOW RIGHT TURN RELAY OUTPUT
3	L1 18VT/BK	BACK-UP LAMP FEED
4	Y203 14RD/WT	FUSED CIGAR LIGHTER RELAY OUTPUT
5	L7 18BK/YL	PARK LAMP RELAY OUTPUT
6	-	-
7	B40 14LB	TRAILER TOW BRAKE B(+)
8	Z150 14BK	GROUND
9	Z150 14BK	GROUND
10	L73 14PK/WT	TRAILER TOW LEFT TURN RELAY OUTPUT



TRAILER TOW  
LEFT TURN RELAY

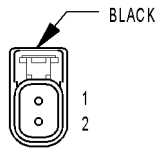
TRAILER TOW LEFT TURN RELAY - BLACK 5 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
30	L73 14PK/WT	TRAILER TOW LEFT TURN RELAY OUTPUT
85	L50 18WT/TN	PRIMARY BRAKE SWITCH SIGNAL
86	L63 20DG/RD	LEFT TURN SIGNAL
87	F9 14RD/BK	FUSED B(+)
87A	-	-





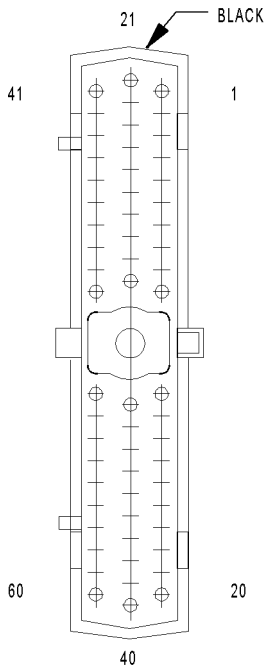
TRAILER TOW  
RIGHT TURN RELAY

TRAILER TOW RIGHT TURN RELAY - BLACK 5 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
30	L74 14PK/BK	TRAILER TOW RIGHT TURN RELAY OUTPUT
85	L50 18WT/TN	PRIMARY BRAKE SWITCH SIGNAL
86	L62 20BR/RD	RIGHT TURN SIGNAL
87	F9 14RD/BK	FUSED B(+)
87A	-	-



TRANSFER CASE  
POSITION  
SENSOR  
(EXCEPT  
EXPORT)

TRANSFER CASE POSITION SENSOR (EXCEPT EXPORT) - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K77 20BR/WT (DIESEL)	TRANSFER CASE POSITION SENSOR SIGNAL
1	K77 18LG/BK (GAS)	TRANSFER CASE POSITION SENSOR INPUT
2	K4 20BK/LB (DIESEL)	SENSOR GROUND
2	K4 18BK/LB (GAS)	SENSOR GROUND

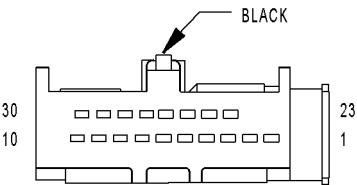


TRANSMISSION  
CONTROL  
MODULE  
(4.7L)

TRANSMISSION CONTROL MODULE (4.7L) - BLACK 60 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	T1 20LG/BK	TRS T1 SENSE
2	T2 20TN/BK	TRS T2 SENSE
3	T3 20VT	TRS T3 SENSE
4	-	-
5	-	-
6	K24 20GY/BK	CRANKSHAFT POSITION SENSOR SIGNAL
7	D21 18PK	SCI TRANSMIT
8	F45 18YL/RD	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (START)
9	T9 20OR/BK	OVERDRIVE PRESSURE SWITCH SENSE
10	T10 20YL/DG	TORQUE MANAGEMENT REQUEST SENSE
11	F991 20OR/DB	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-START)
12	K22 20OR/RD	THROTTLE POSITION SENSOR SIGNAL
13	T13 20DB/BK	SPEED SENSOR GROUND
14	T14 20LG/WT	OUTPUT SPEED SENSOR SIGNAL
15	K30 20PK/YL	TRANSMISSION CONTROL RELAY CONTROL
16	T16 14RD	TRANSMISSION CONTROL RELAY OUTPUT
17	T16 14RD	TRANSMISSION CONTROL RELAY OUTPUT
18	T118 20YL/DB	PRESSURE CONTROL SOLENOID CONTROL
19	T119 20WT/DB	2C SOLENOID CONTROL
20	T120 20LG	LR SOLENOID CONTROL
21	-	-
22	-	-
23	-	-
24	-	-
25	-	-
26	-	-
27	-	-
28	-	-

TRANSMISSION CONTROL MODULE (4.7L) - BLACK 60 WAY

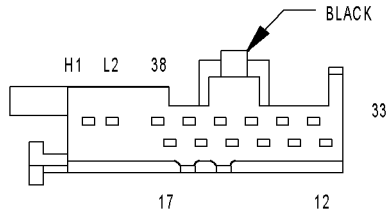
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
29	T29 20GY	UNDERDRIVE PRESSURE SWITCH SENSE
30	T130 18VT/TN	LINE PRESSURE SENSOR SIGNAL
31	-	-
32	-	-
33	-	-
34	-	-
35	-	-
36	T16 14RD	TRANSMISSION CONTROL RELAY OUTPUT
37	Z113 14BK/WT	GROUND
38	T138 18GY/LB	5 VOLT SUPPLY
39	Z112 14BK/YL	GROUND
40	T140 20VT/LG	MS SOLENOID CONTROL
41	T141 20WT	TRS T41 SENSE
42	T42 20VT/WT	TRS T42 SENSE
43	D25 18YL/VT	PCI BUS
44	-	
45	-	
46	D20 18LG	SCI RECEIVE
47	T147 20LB	2C PRESSURE SWITCH SENSE
48	T48 20DB	4C PRESSURE SWITCH SENSE
49	T6 20VT/WT	OVERDRIVE OFF SWITCH SENSE
50	T150 20BR/LB	LR PRESSURE SWITCH SENSE
51	K4 20BK/LB	SENSOR GROUND
52	T52 20RD/BK	INPUT SPEED SENSOR SIGNAL
53	Z114 18BK/LG	GROUND
54	T54 20VT	TRANSMISSION TEMPERATURE SENSOR SIGNAL
55	T59 20PK	UNDERDRIVE SOLENOID CONTROL
56	A30 14RD/WT	FUSED B(+)
57	Z12 14BK/TN	GROUND
58	-	-
59	T159 20DG/WT	4C SOLENOID CONTROL
60	T60 20BR	OVERDRIVE SOLENOID CONTROL



TRANSMISSION  
CONTROL  
MODULE C1  
(DIESEL)

TRANSMISSION CONTROL MODULE C1 (DIESEL) - BLACK 18 WAY

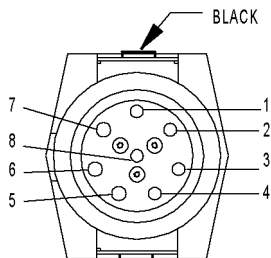
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	D21 20PK	SCI TRANSMIT
2	-	-
3	W4 20PK/OR	SHIFTER C5 SENSE
4	Y1 20DB/PK	PARK LOCKOUT SOLENOID CONTROL
5	-	-
6	-	-
7	T41 20BK/WT	PARK/NEUTRAL POSITION SWITCH SENSE (T41)
8	-	-
9	-	-
10	-	-
23	-	-
24	-	-
25	W0 20DB/WT	SHIFTER C1 SENSE
26	W1 20VT/WT	SHIFTER C2 SENSE
27	W2 20VT	SHIFTER C3 SENSE
28	W3 20BK	SHIFTER C4 SENSE
29	F991 20OR/DB	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-START)
30	Z234 20WT	GROUND



TRANSMISSION  
CONTROL  
MODULE C2  
(DIESEL)

TRANSMISSION CONTROL MODULE C2 (DIESEL) - BLACK 14 WAY

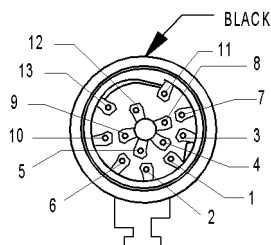
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
12	T52 20RD/BK	N2 INPUT SPEED SENSOR
13	T39 20GY/LB	SENSOR SUPPLY VOLTAGE
14	T60 20BR	1-2/4-5 SOLENOID CONTROL
15	T159 20DG/WT	3-4 SOLENOID CONTROL
16	T119 20WT/DB	2-3 SOLENOID CONTROL
17	T120 20LG	TCC SOLENOID CONTROL
33	T13 20DB/BK	SENSOR GROUND
34	T54 20VT	TEMP SENSOR - P/N SWITCH
35	T14 20LG/WT	N3 INPUT SPEED SENSOR
36	T591 20YL/DB	MODULATION PRESSURE SOLENOID CONTROL
37	T118 20YL/DB	SHIFT PRESSURE SOLENOID CONTROL
38	T16 20RD	SOLENOID SUPPLY VOLTAGE
H1	D52 20LG/WT	CAN C BUS(+)
L2	D51 20DG/WT	CAN C BUS(-)



TRANSMISSION  
SOLENOID  
(4.0L)

TRANSMISSION SOLENOID (4.0L) - BLACK 8 WAY

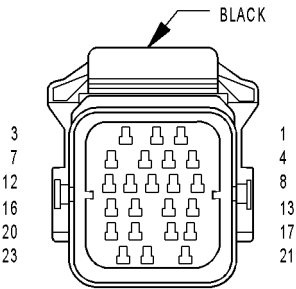
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	T15 18LG	FUSED TRANSMISSION CONTROL RELAY OUTPUT
2	K6 20VT/BK	5 VOLT SUPPLY
3	K4 20BK/LB	SENSOR GROUND
4	T25 18LG/RD	GOVERNOR PRESSURE SENSOR SIGNAL
5	K88 18PK	GOVERNOR PRESSURE SOLENOID CONTROL
6	T60 18BR	3-4 SHIFT SOLENOID CONTROL
7	T20 18LB	TORQUE CONVERTER CLUTCH SOLENOID CONTROL
8	T54 18VT	TRANSMISSION TEMPERATURE SENSOR SIGNAL



TRANSMISSION  
SOLENOID  
ASSEMBLY  
(DIESEL)

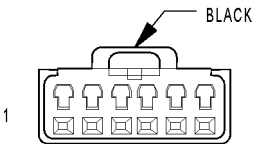
TRANSMISSION SOLENOID ASSEMBLY (DIESEL) - BLACK 13 WAY

CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	T14 20LG/WT	N3 INPUT SPEED SENSOR
2	T591 20YL/DB	MODULATION PRESSURE SOLENOID CONTROL
3	T52 20RD/BK	N2 INPUT SPEED SENSOR
4	T54 20VT	TEMP SENSOR - P/N SWITCH
5	-	-
6	T16 20RD	SOLENOID SUPPLY VOLTAGE
7	T39 20GY/LB	SENSOR SUPPLY VOLTAGE
8	T119 20WT/DB	2-3 SOLENOID CONTROL
9	T159 20DG/WT	3-4 SOLENOID CONTROL
10	T118 20YL/DB	SHIFT PRESSURE SOLENOID CONTROL
11	T120 20LG	TCC SOLENOID CONTROL
12	T13 20DB/BK	SENSOR GROUND
13	T60 20BR	1-2/4-5 SOLENOID CONTROL



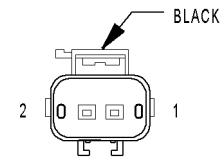
TRANSMISSION  
SOLENOID/  
TRS  
ASSEMBLY  
(4.7L)

TRANSMISSION SOLENOID/TRS ASSEMBLY (4.7L) - BLACK 23 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	F22 18WT/PK	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN)
2	T120 20LG	LR SOLENOID CONTROL
3	T41 20BK/WT	PARK/NEUTRAL POSITION SWITCH SENSE (T41)
4	T141 20WT	TRS T41 SENSE
5	T42 20VT/WT	TRS T42 SENSE
6	L1 18VT/BK	BACK-UP LAMP FEED
7	T60 20BR	OVERDRIVE SOLENOID CONTROL
8	T3 20VT	TRS T3 SENSE
9	T1 20LG/BK	TRS T1 SENSE
10	T16 14RD	TRANSMISSION CONTROL RELAY OUTPUT
11	T48 20DB	4C PRESSURE SWITCH SENSE
12	T118 20YL/DB	PRESSURE CONTROL SOLENOID CONTROL
13	T2 20TN/BK	TRS T2 SENSE
14	T150 20BR/LB	LR PRESSURE SWITCH SENSE
15	T147 20LB	2C PRESSURE SWITCH SENSE
16	T9 20OR/BK	OVERDRIVE PRESSURE SWITCH SENSE
17	T59 20PK	UNDERDRIVE SOLENOID CONTROL
18	T29 20GY	UNDERDRIVE PRESSURE SWITCH SENSE
19	T159 20DG/WT	4C SOLENOID CONTROL
20	T119 20WT/DB	2C SOLENOID CONTROL
21	T140 20VT/LG	MS SOLENOID CONTROL
22	T13 20DB/BK	SPEED SENSOR GROUND
23	T54 20VT	TRANSMISSION TEMPERATURE SENSOR SIGNAL



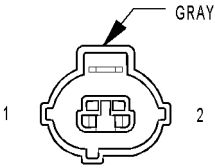
VEHICLE  
INFORMATION  
CENTER

VEHICLE INFORMATION CENTER - BLACK 6 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	-	-
2	D25 20YL/VT	PCI BUS
3	F70 20PK	FUSED B(+)
4	Z155 20BK/OR	GROUND
5	G5 20DB/WT	FUSED IGNITION SWITCH OUTPUT (RUN-START)
6	-	-



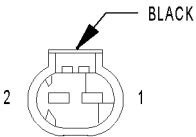
VISCOUS/CABIN  
HEATER  
(DIESEL)

VISCOUS/CABIN HEATER (DIESEL) - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	A82 16PK/LG	VISCOUS/CABIN HEATER RELAY OUTPUT
2	Z18 16BK	GROUND



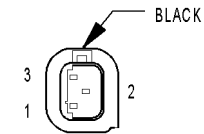
WASHER  
FLUID  
LEVEL  
SWITCH

WASHER FLUID LEVEL SWITCH - GRAY 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	V11 20BK/TN	WASHER FLUID SWITCH SENSE
2	Z141 20BK	GROUND



WASTEGATE  
SOLENOID  
(DIESEL)

WASTEGATE SOLENOID (DIESEL) - BLACK 2 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	F15 18DB/WT	FUSED AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT
2	Y42 18OR/DB	WASTEGATE SOLENOID CONTROL



WATER IN  
FUEL SENSOR  
(DIESEL)

WATER IN FUEL SENSOR (DIESEL) - BLACK 3 WAY		
CAV	CIRCUIT	FUNCTION
1	K4 20BK/LB	SENSOR GROUND
2	G123 20DG/WT	WATER IN FUEL SENSOR SIGNAL
3	F15 20RD/DG	FUSED AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY OUTPUT



## 8W-91 CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

page

**CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION**

DESCRIPTION ..... 1

**CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE  
LOCATION****DESCRIPTION**

This section provides illustrations identifying connector, ground, and splice locations in the vehicle. Connector, ground, and splice indexes are provided.

Use the wiring diagrams in each section for connector, ground, and splice identification. Refer to the appropriate index for the proper figure number. For items that are not shown in this section N/S is placed in the Fig. column.

*CONNECTORS*

<b>CONNECTOR NAME/ NUMBER</b>	<b>COLOR</b>	<b>LOCATION</b>	<b>FIG.</b>
A/C Compressor Clutch	BK	At A/C Compressor	14, 18
A/C Pressure Transducer	BK	Right Front of Engine Compartment	4, 5, 6, 7
Accelerator Pedal Position Sensor (Diesel)	BK	Rear of Engine Compartment Near Fuel/Water Separator	9
Adjustable Pedals Module (Except Export)	GN	Above Drivers Control Pedals	N/S
Adjustable Pedals Motor/Sensor Assembly (Except Export)		Above Drivers Control Pedals	N/S
Adjustable Pedals Switch (Except Export)	WT	Drivers Lower Kick Panel	28
Airbag Control Module (ORC C1)	YL	Below Center Floor Console, Behind Park Brake	N/S
Airbag Control Module (ORC C2)	YL	Below Center Floor Console, Behind Park Brake	24, 25, 27, 28, 29
Ambient Temperature Sensor	BK	On Radiator Center Support	6, 7
Antenna Module (Export)	WT	Above Right Quarter Window	N/S
Automatic Day/Night Mirror	BK	In Front of Rear View Mirror	N/S
Automatic Headlamp Light Sensor/VTSS LED	BK	Near Left Instrument Panel Speaker	24, 25
Automatic Zone Control Module - C1 (AZC)	BK	Left Side of HVAC Housing	N/S
Automatic Zone Control Module - C2 (AZC)	BK	Left Side of HVAC Housing	N/S
Battery Temperature Sensor	BK	Below Battery Tray	5, 6



## CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)

CONNECTOR NAME/ NUMBER	COLOR	LOCATION	FIG.
Blower Motor	BK	Behind Right Hand Side of Instrument Panel	N/S
Blower Motor Controller (AZC)	BK	Behind Right Hand Side of Instrument Panel	N/S
Blower Motor Resistor Block (MTC)	BK	Behind Right Hand Side of Instrument Panel	N/S
Body Control Module - C1	GY	Lower Left Side of Instrument Panel	28, 29
Body Control Module - C2	WT	Lower Left Side of Instrument Panel	28, 29
Boost Pressure Sensor (Diesel)	BK	Top Front of Engine	9, 10
Brake Lamp Switch	DKGY	Brake Pedal Arm	38
C100	BK	Right Front Engine Compartment	3, 6
C101 (4.0L RHD)	BK	Rear of Engine Compartment	N/S
C101 (4.7L RHD)	BK	Rear of Engine Compartment	N/S
C102 (Diesel)	BK	Left Rear Engine Compartment	5, 9
C102 (Gas)	BK	Right Rear Engine Compartment	6, 16, 19, 20, 23
C103 (Diesel)	GY	Rear of Engine	5, 9
C103 (Gas)	GY	Right Rear Engine Compartment	6, 15, 16, 19, 20
C104	LTGY	Right Rear Engine Compartment	15, 19, 23
C105 (Diesel)	GY	Right Rear Engine Compartment	5, 9, 13
C106 (Diesel)	BK	Lower Right Instrument Panel	7
C106 (Gas RHD)	GY	Lower Left Instrument Panel	N/S
C107 (Diesel LHD)	BK	Left Rear Engine Compartment	5
C107 (Gas LHD)	BK	Passenger Side Near Kick Panel	4, 37, 43
C107 (Gas RHD)	GY	Passenger Side Near Kick Panel	4, 38
C109 (LHD)	BK	Near Transfer Case switch	17
C110 (Diesel)	GY	Top of Engine Near Glow Plugs	5, 9
C111	BK	Left Front Frame Near Windshield Washer Pump	1, 4, 5
C112	BK	Right Front Frame Near Horns	1, 6, 7
C113 (Diesel)	LTGY	Rear of Engine	9, 13
C200 (LHD)	BK/GY	Passenger Side Near Kick Panel	24, 28, 43
C200 (RHD)	BK	Passenger Side Near Kick Panel	25, 29
C201 (Diesel)	WT	Below Center Floor Console, Near Park Brake	24, 27, 28, 29
C202 (MTC)	WT	HVAC unit, Right Side of Instrument Panel	24, 25, 28, 29
C202 (AZC)	WT	HVAC unit, Right Side of Instrument Panel	24, 25, 27, 28
C203 (AZC)	WT	HVAC Unit, Right Side of Instrument Panel	24, 25, 28, 29
C300	DKGY	Near Junction Block	37, 41

## CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)

CONNECTOR NAME/ NUMBER	COLOR	LOCATION	FIG.
C301 (RHD)	BK	Near Junction Block	38
C302	BK	At Driver Door	31, 32, 37, 38
C303	WT	Right Rear Door	36, 42, 44
C304	BK	Under Driver Seat	39,41, 44
C306	BK	Under Passenger Seat	39,42, 43
C307	WT	Left Rear Door	35, 41, 43
C308	WT	Top of Liftgate	45, 46
C309	WT	Left Rear Quarter Pillar	45
C310 (Export)	LT GY	Above Left Quarter Wheel Housing	45, 47
C310 (Except Export)	LT GN	Above Left Quarter Wheel Housing	47
C311	WT	Top of Liftgate	46
C312	BK	Center of Liftgate	46
C313	WT	In Driver Door	31, 32
C314	LT GY	At Passenger Door	33, 34, 38
C315		To Rear of Right Quarter Window	40
C316 (Except Export)	WT	Left Bulkhead, Near Control Pedal	N/S
C317		Above B Pillar	N/S
Camshaft Position Sensor (Diesel)	BK	Top of Engine	9, 12
Camshaft Position Sensor (Gas)	GY	Right Side of Engine	15, 16, 19, 20
Capacitor (4.0L)	BK	Right Rear of Engine	15
Capacitor NO. 1 (4.7L)	BK	Right Side of Engine	19, 20
Capacitor NO. 2 (4.7L)	BK	Left Side of Engine	18
Cargo Lamp	WT	In Headliner Near Liftgate	N/S
Center High Mounted Stop Lamp	BK	Top of Liftgate	N/S
Cigar Lighter	GY	Center of Instrument Panel	24, 25
Clockspring - C1	BK	At Steering Column	30
Clockspring - C2	YL	At Steering Column	30
Clockspring - C3	GY	At Steering Column	30
Clockspring - C4	BK	At Steering Column	30
Coil On Plug NO. 1 (4.7L)	BK	Left Side of Engine Near Fuel Injector No.1	18
Coil On Plug NO. 2 (4.7L)	BK	Right Side of Engine Near Fuel Injector No.2	19, 20
Coil On Plug NO. 3 (4.7L)	BK	Left Side of Engine Near Fuel Injector No.3	18
Coil On Plug NO. 4 (4.7L)	BK	Right Side of Engine Near Fuel Injector No.4	19, 20
Coil On Plug NO. 5 (4.7L)	BK	Left Side of Engine Near Fuel Injector No.5	18

## CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)

CONNECTOR NAME/ NUMBER	COLOR	LOCATION	FIG.
Coil On Plug NO. 6 (4.7L)	BK	Right Side of Engine Near Fuel Injector No.6	19, 20
Coil On Plug NO. 7 (4.7L)	BK	Left Side of Engine Near Fuel Injector No.7	18
Coil On Plug NO. 8 (4.7L)	BK	Right Side of Engine Near Fuel Injector No.8	19, 20
Coil Rail (4.0L)	BK	Right Rear of Engine	15, 16
Compact Disc Changer (Premium Radio)	BK	Near Radio	24, 25
Compact Disc Changer (Rear)	BK	Right Rear Quarter Panel	45
Controller Antilock Brake	BK	Left Front Engine Compartment	4, 5
Coolant Level Sensor	LT GY	Right Rear of Engine	6, 7
Crankcase Heater (Diesel)	BK	At top of Inlet Air Hose to Turbo	13
Crankshaft Position Sensor (Diesel)	BK	Rear of Engine Near Transmission Bell Housing	9,11
Crankshaft Position Sensor (Gas)	BK	Rear of Engine Near Transmission Bell Housing	15, 16, 19, 20, 22
Data Link Connector	BK	Under Lower Driver's Side of Instrument Panel	28, 29
Driver Airbag Squib 1	BK	In Steering Wheel	30
Driver Airbag Squib 2	GN	In Steering Wheel	30
Driver Blend Door Motor/ Actuator (LHD, AZC)	BK	On HVAC Housing	N/S
Driver Blend Door Motor/ Actuator (RHD, AZC)	BK	On HVAC Unit	N/S
Driver Curtain Airbag Squib	YL	Between C and D Pillar	45
Driver Cylinder Lock Switch	GY	In Driver Door	31, 32
Driver Door Lock Motor/Ajar Switch	BK	In Driver Door	31, 32
Driver Door Module - C1	WT	In Driver Door	31, 32
Driver Door Module - C2	BK	In Driver Door	N/S
Driver Door Module - C3	BK	In Driver Door	N/S
Driver Front Door Courtesy Lamp	BK	In Driver Door	N/S
Driver Front Power Window Motor	BK	In Driver Door	31, 32
Driver Heated Seat Back (Heated Seat/Premium I/III)	GY	At Driver Seat	39
Driver Heated Seat Cushion (Heated Seat/Premium I/III)	GY	At Driver Seat	39
Driver Heated Seat Switch	WT	Center of Instrument Panel	24, 25, 28
Driver Lumbar Motor (Midline/Premium)	BK	At Driver Seat	39

## CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)

CONNECTOR NAME/ NUMBER	COLOR	LOCATION	FIG.
Driver Lumbar Switch (Midline/Premium)	WT	At Driver Seat	N/S
Driver Power Mirror	BK	At Driver Door	N/S
Driver Power Seat Front Riser Motor	RD	At Driver Seat	N/S
Driver Power Seat Front Riser Motor Sensor (Premium II/III)	BK	At Driver Seat	N/S
Driver Power Seat Horizontal Motor	BK	At Driver Seat	N/S
Driver Power Seat Horizontal Motor Sensor (Premium II/III)	BK	At Driver Seat	N/S
Driver Power Seat Rear Riser Motor	RD	At Driver Seat	N/S
Driver Power Seat Rear Riser Motor Sensor (Premium II/III)		At Driver Seat	N/S
Driver Power Seat Recliner Motor	BK	At Driver Seat	N/S
Driver Power Seat Recliner Motor Sensor (Premium II/III)	BK	At Driver Seat	N/S
Driver Power Seat Switch	GN	On Side of Driver Seat	N/S
Driver Rear Power Window Motor	BK	In Left Rear Door	35
Driver Rear Power Window Switch	BL	In Left Rear Door	35
Driver Seat Belt Switch	DKGY	At Switch	N/S
Driver Seat Belt Tensioner	YL		
Driver Side Impact Sensor	BK	Below Driver Seat	N/S
EGR Solenoid (Diesel)	BK	Left Front Fender	9, 13
Electronic Speed Control Servo	BK	Right Front of Engine Compartment	6
Engine Control Module C1 (Diesel)	BK	Left Front of Engine	9, 13
Engine Control Module C2 (Diesel)	BK	Left Front of Engine	9, 13
Engine Coolant Temperature Sensor (Diesel)	BK	Top of Engine	12
Engine Coolant Temperature Sensor (GAS)	BK	Right Front of Engine	14, 18
Engine Oil Pressure Sensor(DIESEL)	BK	Right Side of Engine	11
Engine Oil Pressure Sensor(GAS)	BK	Side of Engine	15, 16, 18
EVAP/Purge Solenoid	BK	Left Front Fender Near Controller Antilock Brake	4

## CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)

CONNECTOR NAME/ NUMBER	COLOR	LOCATION	FIG.
EVAP Temp Sensor	WT	Behind Left Corner of the Glove Box RHD Similar	26
Front Power Outlet	GY	Center of Instrument Panel	24, 25
Front Washer Pump	WT	Left Front of Engine Compartment	4, 5
Front Wiper Motor	BK	Left Side of Cowl	4, 5
Fuel Injector No.1	BK	At Injector	12, 14, 18
Fuel Injector No.2	BK	At Injector	12, 14, 19, 20
Fuel Injector No.3	BK	At Injector	12, 14, 18
Fuel Injector No.4	BK	At Injector	12, 14, 19, 20
Fuel Injector No.5	BK	At Injector	12, 14, 18
Fuel Injector No.6	BK	At Injector	14, 19, 20
Fuel Injector No.7 (4.7L)	BK	At Injector	18
Fuel Injector No.8 (4.7L)	BK	At Injector	19, 20
Fuel Pressure Sensor (Diesel)	BK	Right Front of Engine	9, 10, 12
Fuel Pressure Solenoid (Diesel)	BK	Top of Engine	9, 12
Fuel Pump Module (Gas)	BK	Near Fuel Tank	41, 43
Fuel Tank Module (Diesel)	BK	Near Fuel Tank	41, 43
Generator (Diesel)	GY	At Generator	13
Generator (Gas)	BK	At Generator	N/S
Glove Box Lamp	BK	Inside Glove Box	24, 25
Glow Plugs (Diesel)		Left Side of Engine Head	12
Headlamp Leveling Switch (Export)	WT	Driver Side of Instrument Panel	25
Hood Ajar Switch (Export)	BK	Left Side of Engine Compartment	4, 5
Horn No.1	BK	Right Front Fascia	6, 7
Horn No.2	BK	Right Front Fascia	6, 7
Hydraulic Cooling Module	BK	Right Front of Engine Compartment	6, 7
Idle Air Control Motor	BK	Left Side of Engine Near Throttle Body	14, 18
Ignition Switch - C1	WT	On Steering Column	30
Ignition Switch - C2	BK	On Steering Column	30
Input Speed Sensor (4.7L)	BK	Left Side of Transmission	21
Instrument Cluster	WT	At Instrument Cluster	24, 25
Intake Air Temperature Sensor (Gas)	DKGY	Left Side of Engine	14, 18
Intake Air Temperature Sensor (Diesel)	BK	Lower Left Front of Engine Intake	10
Intake Port Swirl Actuator (Diesel)	BK	Left Rear of Engine Block	11
Intrusion Transceiver Module (Export)	BK	In The Overhead	N/S

## CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)

CONNECTOR NAME/ NUMBER	COLOR	LOCATION	FIG.
Junction Block - C1	BK	At Junction Block	37, 38, 41
Junction Block - C2	BK	At Junction Block	37, 38
Junction Block - C3	BK	At Junction Block	28, 29, 37
Junction Block - C4	WT	At Junction Block	37, 38
Junction Block - C5	WT	At Junction Block	37, 38
Knock Sensor	BK	Right Rear Side of Engine, Near Coil on Plug No.8	N/S
Leak Detection Pump (Except Export)		Left Rear Quarter Behind Left Rear Tire	N/S
Left Courtesy Lamp	BK	Left Side of Instrument Panel	28, 29, 30
Left Door Handle Courtesy Lamp	WT	At Lamp	N/S
Left Fog Lamp	BK	At Lamp	4, 5
Left Front Door Speaker	WT	In Left Front Door	31, 34
Left Front Impact Sensor	BK	Left Front Frame Near Windshield Washer Pump	4, 5
Left Front Park Lamp	WT	At Lamp	2
Left Front Park/Turn Signal Lamp (Except Export)	BK	At Lamp	N/S
Left Front Side Marker Lamp (Except Export)	WT	At Lamp	N/S
Left Front Turn Signal Lamp (Export)	WT	At Lamp	2
Left Front Wheel Speed Sensor	GY	At Left Front Wheel Opening	5
Left Headlamp Leveling Motor (Export)	BK	At Motor	2
Left High Beam Headlamp	BK	At Lamp	2
Left Instrument Panel Speaker	WT	At Speaker	24, 25
Left Liftgate Ajar Switch	BK	In Liftgate	46
Left Low Beam Headlamp	GY	At Lamp	2
Left Multi-Function Switch	WT	On Steering Column	30
Left Rear Door Lock Motor/Ajar Switch	BK	In Left Rear Door	35
Left Rear Door Speaker	WT	In Left Rear Door	35
Left Rear Lamp Assembly	BK	At Lamp Assembly	45
Left Rear Wheel Speed Sensor	GY	Near Left Rear Wheel	41, 43
Left Remote Radio Switch	BK	At Switch in Steering Wheel	N/S
Left Side Impact Sensor	BK	Left Body	N/S
Left Side Repeater Lamp (Export)	BK	On Left Front Fender	4, 5
Left Visor/Vanity Lamp	BK	At Lamp	N/S

## CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)

CONNECTOR NAME/ NUMBER	COLOR	LOCATION	FIG.
License Lamp No.1	BK	At Lamp	N/S
License Lamp No.2	BK	At Lamp	N/S
Liftgate Flip-Up Ajar Switch	GY	In Liftgate	46
Liftgate Flip-Up Push Button Switch	BK	In Liftgate	N/S
Liftgate Flip-Up Release Solenoid	BK	In Liftgate	46
Liftgate Power Lock Motor	BK	In Liftgate	46
Line Pressure Sensor (4.7L)	BK	Rear of Transmission	N/S
Manifold Absolute Pressure Sensor (4.0L)	BK	At Throttle Body	14
Manifold Absolute Pressure Sensor (4.7L)	BK	Right Side of Engine	18
Manual Temperature Control - C1 (MTC)	WT	Center of Instrument Panel	N/S
Manual Temperature Control - C2 (MTC)	WT	Center of Instrument Panel	N/S
Mass Air Flow Sensor (Diesel)	BK	At Bottom of Air Inlet Hose Near Air Cleaner	13
Mode Door Motor/Actuator (AZC)	BK	Right Center of Instrument Panel	N/S
Output Speed Sensor (4.0L)	GY	Left Side of Transmission	17
Output Speed Sensor (4.7L)	BK	Left Side of Transmission	21
Overhead Map/Courtesy Lamp	WT	At Overhead Console	N/S
Oxygen Sensor 1/1 Upstream (4.0L)	GY	Left Side of Engine Near Valve Cover	14
Oxygen Sensor 1/1 Upstream (4.7L)	BK	Left Side of Engine Near Engine Mount	22
Oxygen Sensor 1/2 Downstream (4.0L)	NAT	Rear of Transmission	14, 17
Oxygen Sensor 1/2 Downstream (4.7L)	BK	Right side of Trans BellHousing, Near 'Y' Pipe Wire cover Green	22
Oxygen Sensor 2/1 Upstream (4.0L)	BK	Left of Transmission	17
Oxygen Sensor 2/1 Upstream (4.7L)	BK	Right Front Lower Engine, Forward of Engine mount	19
Oxygen Sensor 2/2 Downstream (4.0L)	NAT	Rear of Transmission	N/S
Oxygen Sensor 2/2 Downstream (4.7L)	BK	Right side of Trans BellHousing, Near 'Y' Pipe	N/S
Park Brake Switch		Center Console Area, Near Airbag Control Module	27,28, 29
Park/Neutral Position Switch (4.0L)	BK	Left Side of Transmission	17



## CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)

CONNECTOR NAME/ NUMBER	COLOR	LOCATION	FIG.
Passenger Airbag	YL	Passenger Side of Instrument Panel	24, 25
Passenger Blend Door Motor/Actuator (AZC)	BK	Passenger Side of HVAC unit	N/S
Passenger Curtain Airbag Squib	YL	Between C and D Pillar	45
Passenger Door Lock Motor/Ajar Switch	BK	In Passenger Door	33, 34
Passenger Door Module - C1	WT	In Passenger Door	33, 34
Passenger Door Module - C2	BK	In Passenger Door	N/S
Passenger Front Door Courtesy Lamp	BK	In Passenger Door	N/S
Passenger Front Power Window Motor	BK	In Passenger Door	33, 34
Passenger Heated Seat Back (Premium I/III)	GY	At Passenger Seat	39
Passenger Heated Seat Cushion (Premium I/III)	GY	At Passenger Seat	39
Passenger Heated Seat Switch	BK	Center of Instrument Panel	24, 25, 28
Passenger Lumbar Motor (Midline/Premium)	BK	At Passenger Seat	39
Passenger Lumbar Switch (Midline/Premium)	WT	At Passenger Seat	N/S
Passenger Power Mirror	BK	In Passenger Door	N/S
Passenger Power Seat Front Riser Motor	RD	At Passenger Seat	N/S
Passenger Power Seat Horizontal Motor	RD	At Passenger Seat	N/S
Passenger Power Seat Rear Riser Motor	RD	At Passenger Seat	N/S
Passenger Power Seat Recliner Motor (Midline/Premium)	BK	At Passenger Seat	N/S
Passenger Power Seat Switch	GN	On Side of Passenger Seat	N/S
Passenger Rear Power Window Motor	BK	In Right Rear Door	36
Passenger Rear Power Window Switch	BL	In Right Rear Door	36
Passenger Seat Belt Switch		t Switch	N/S
Passenger Seat Belt Tensioner	YL		
Passenger Side Impact Sensor	BK	Below Passenger Seat	N/S
Power Amplifier - C1	WT	Under Rear Seat	42, 44

## CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)

CONNECTOR NAME/ NUMBER	COLOR	LOCATION	FIG.
Power Amplifier - C2	WT	Under Rear Seat	42, 44
Powertrain Control Module - C1 (Gas)	BK	Rear of Engine Compartment	6, 15, 16, 19, 20, 23
Powertrain Control Module - C2 (Gas)	WT	Rear of Engine Compartment	6, 15, 16, 19, 20, 23
Powertrain Control Module - C3 (Gas)	WT	Rear of Engine Compartment	N/S
Radiator Fan Motor	BK	At Radiator	6
Radio - C1	GY	Center of Instrument Panel	24, 25
Radio - C2	GY	Center of Instrument Panel	24, 25
Rain Sensor (Autowipe)	BK	Front Center Overhead	N/S
Rear Power Outlet (Except Base)	RD	Right Rear Quarter Panel	45
Rear Washer Pump	BK	Left Front of Engine Compartment	4, 5
Rear Window Defogger	BK	Right Upper Corner of Liftgate	46
Rear Wiper Motor	BK	In Liftgate	46
Recirculation Door Motor/ Actuator (AZC)	BK	Center of Instrument Panel	N/S
Red Brake Warning Indicator Switch	GY	At Master Cylinder	5
Remote Keyless Module (Japan)	BL	In Driver Door	32
Right Courtesy Lamp	BK	At Lamp	28
Right Door Handle Courtesy Lamp	WT	At Lamp	N/S
Right Fog Lamp	BK	At Right Front Fascia	6, 7
Right Front Door Speaker	WT	In Right Front Door	32, 33
Right Front Impact Sensor	BK	Near Right Vehicle Radiator Support	7
Right Front Park Lamp	WT	At Lamp	2
Right Front Park/Turn Signal Lamp (Except Export)	BK	At Lamp	N/S
Right Front Side Marker Lamp (Except Export)	WT	At Lamp	N/S
Right Front Turn Signal Lamp (Export)	WT	At Lamp	2
Right Front Wheel Speed Sensor	GY	In Right Front Wheel Opening	7
Right Headlamp Leveling Motor (Export)	BK	At Motor	2
Right High Beam Headlamp	BK	At Lamp	2
Right Instrument Panel Speaker	WT	At Speaker	24, 25
Right Liftgate Ajar Switch	BK	In Liftgate	46
Right Low Beam Headlamp	GY	At Lamp	2

## CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)

CONNECTOR NAME/ NUMBER	COLOR	LOCATION	FIG.
Right Multi-Function Switch	WT	On Steering Column	30
Right Rear Door Lock Motor/Ajar Switch	BK	In Right Rear Door	36
Right Rear Door Speaker	WT	In Right Rear Door	36
Right Rear Lamp Assembly	BK	At Lamp Assembly	45
Right Rear Wheel Speed Sensor	BK	Near Right Rear Wheel	41, 43
Right Remote Radio Switch	BK	At Switch in Steering Wheel	N/S
Right Side Repeater Lamp (Export)	BK	On Right Front Fender	6, 7
Right Visor/Vanity Lamp	BK	At Lamp	N/S
Seat Belt Switch	WT	At Driver Seat	N/S
Seat Module - C1 (Heated Seat/Premium)	BK	Under Driver Seat	N/S
Seat Module - C2 (Heated Seat/Premium)	OR	Under Driver Seat	N/S
Sentry Key Immobilizer Module	BK	On Steering Column	30
Shifter Assembly (Gas)	WT	Between Front Seats	30
Shifter Assembly C1 (Diesel)	BK	Between Front Seats	N/S
Shifter Assembly C2 (Diesel)	WT	Between Front Seats	N/S
Siren (Export)	WT	Left Front Fender	4, 5
Speed Control Switch NO. 1	BK	On Steering Wheel	N/S
Speed Control Switch NO. 2	BK	On Steering Wheel	N/S
Sunroof Control Module		At Sunroof	40
Sunroof Motor C1	WT	At Sunroof	40
Sunroof Motor C2	BK	In Overhead	40
Sunroof Switch	GY	At Switch	N/S
Temperature Valve Actuator (MTC)	BK	On HVAC Housing	N/S
Throttle Position Sensor (4.0L)	NAT	Left Side of Engine	14
Throttle Position Sensor (4.7L)	WT	Left Side of Engine	18
Trailer Tow Circuit Breaker	BK	Left Quarter Panel	N/S
Trailer Tow Connector	BK	In Rear Bumper	47
Trailer Tow Left Turn Relay	BK	Left Quarter Panel	N/S
Trailer Tow Right Turn Relay	BK	Left Quarter Panel	N/S
Transfer Case Position Sensor	BK	On Transfer Case	9
Transmission Control Module	BK	Rear of Engine Compartment	19, 20, 23
Transmission Control Module C1 (Diesel)	BK	Right Rear Side of Engine Compartment	N/S

## CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)

CONNECTOR NAME/ NUMBER	COLOR	LOCATION	FIG.
Transmission Control Module C2 (Diesel)	BK	Right Rear Side of Engine Compartment	13
Transmission Solenoid (4.0L Gas)	BK	Left Side of Transmission	17
Transmission Solenoid Assembly (Diesel)	BK	On Transmission	13
Transmission Solenoid/TRS Assembly (4.7L)	GY	Left Side of Transmission	21
Underhood Lamp	BK	At Lamp	8
Vehicle Information Center	BK	In Overhead Console	N/S
Viscous/Cabin Heater (Diesel)	BK	Right Front of Engine Above Generator	13
Washer Fluid Level Switch	GY	Left Front of Engine Compartment	4, 5
Wastegate Solenoid (Diesel)		Near Power Distribution Center	7, 10
Water In Fuel Sensor (Diesel)	BK	Left Rear of Engine Compartment	N/S

## GROUNDS

GROUND NUMBER	LOCATION	FIG.
G100 (4.0L and Diesel)	Near Starter	N/S
G100 (4.7L)	Near Intake Plenum	N/S
G101	Near Battery	3
G102	Right Side of Engine	19, 20
G103	Right Side of Engine	9, 13, 15, 16, 19, 20
G104 (4.0L)	Right Rear of Engine	15, 16
G104 (4.7L)	Left Side of Engine	18
G105	Right Side of Engine	13
G106	Left Side of Engine Compartment	4, 5
G107	Left Side of Engine Compartment	4, 5
G108	Near Power Distribution Center	6, 7
G200	Near Airbag Control Module	24, 27, 28, 29
G201	Near Airbag Control Module	24, 27, 28, 29
G300	Near Right Front Seat	42, 44
G301	Near Left Front Seat	41, 43

## CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)

## SPLICES

SPLICE NUMBER	LOCATION	FIG.
S100	Near T/O for Power Distribution Center Eyelet	3
S102 (4.0L) Except Export	Near T/O for G104	15, 16
S102 (Diesel)	Near T/O for C110	9, 13
S104 (4.7L Export) RHD	Near T/O for Oxygen Sensor 2/2 Downstream	N/S
S105 (4.0L, Except Export)	Near T/O for Crankshaft Position Sensor	16
S105 (4.7L)	Near T/O for Fuel Injector NO. 7	18
S106 (4.0L) LHD	In T/O for Oxygen Sensors, Right Top of Trans	17
S106 (4.0L Export) RHD	Right Top of Trans	16
S106 (4.7L)	Near T/O for C102	19, 23
S106 (4.7L) RHD	Near T/O for Fuel Injector No.4	20
S107 (4.0L)	Near T/O for Fuel Injector No.6	14
S107 (4.7L)	Near T/O for Fuel Injector No.7	18
S109 (4.0L)	Near T/O for Fuel Injector No.2	14
S109 (4.0L, Export) RHD	Between Injectors 4 and 5	N/S
S109 (4.7L)	Near T/O for Coil On Plug No. 6	19, 20
S110 (4.0L Except Export)	Near T/O for Oxygen Sensor 1/1	N/S
S111 (4.0L)	Near T/O for Oxygen Sensor 1/1	14
S111 (4.0L, Japan) RHD	In T/O for Oxygen Sensor 1/2 and 2/2	N/S
S111 (4.7L)	In T/O for Oxygen Sensors	N/S
S111 (4.7L) RHD	Near T/O for Oxygen Sensors 2/2 Downstream	N/S
S112 (4.0L) LHD	In T/O for C103 and C104	15
S112 (4.0L Export) RHD	Between T/O for Camshaft Position Sensor and main Engine Harness	16
S112 (4.7L)	Near T/O for Coil On Plug No.8	20, 23
S112 (4.7L) RHD	Near T/O for Fuel Injector No. 6	N/S
S113 (4.7L)	Near T/O for Transmission Control Module	20, 23
S114 (4.7L)	Near T/O for Transmission Control Module	20, 23
S115 (4.7L)	Near T/O for Transmission Control Module	20, 23
S116 (4.7L) LHD	Near T/O for Trans Control Module	19, 23
S116 (4.7L) RHD	In T/O for Powertrain Control Module	20
S118 (4.7L)	Between T/O for Coil On Plug No.4 and No.6	19, 20
S119 (4.7L) LHD	In T/O for Crankshaft Position Sensor	23
S119 (4.7L) RHD	In T/O for Powertrain Control Module	N/S
S120 (4.7L)	Near T/O for Crankshaft Position Sensor	20
S120 (4.7L) RHD	Near T/O for Powertrain Control Module	N/S

## CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)

SPLICE NUMBER	LOCATION	FIG.
S121 (4.7L)	Near T/O for Idle Air Control Motor	N/S
S122 (4.0L) Except Export	In T/O to C103 and C104	15
S122 (4.0L) RHD	In T/O to C102 and C103	16
S122 (4.7L) LHD	Near T/O for Input Speed Sensor	20
S122 (4.7L) RHD	Near T/O for Powertrain Control Module	21
S123 (4.0L)	Near T/O for G104	15,
S123 (4.0L) RHD	In T/O to C102 and C103	16
S124 (4.7L) LHD	In Trough Near T/O for Idle Air Control Motor	18
S124 (4.7L) RHD	Near T/O for fuel Injector No. 3	N/S
S125 (Gas)	In Trough, Near T/O for Powertrain Control Module - C3	6
S126 (4.0L Except Export) LHD	In Trough, Near Coolant Level Sensor	6
S126 (4.0L) LHD Export	Near T/O for Coolant Level Sensor	N/S
S126 (4.0L) RHD Japan	In Trough Near T/O for Right Side Repeater Lamp	N/S
S127 (LHD) Gas	In Trough, Near T/O for Power Distribution Center	6
S127 (RHD) Gas 4.0L Japan	In Trough, Near T/O for C102 and C103	6
S127 (Diesel)	Near T/O for Power Distribution Center	5
S128 (LHD) Gas	In Trough Near T/O for Power Distribution Center	6
S128 (RHD) Gas	In T/O for C102	6
S130 (LHD) Gas	In T/O for Coolant Level Sensor	6
S130 (RHD) Gas	In T/O for Controller Antilock Brake	4
S130 (Diesel)	In T/O for Controller Anti-Lock Brake	5
S131LHD	In Trough Foward From Power Distribution Center	6
S131 RHD	In Trough Near T/O for G108	N/S
S131 (Diesel)	Near T/O for Power Distribution Center	5
S132 (Diesel)	Near T/O for Waste Gate Solenoid	N/S
S132 (Gas)	Near T/O for G108	6
S133 (Diesel)	In Trough Near T/O for Waste Gate Solenoid	7
S133 (Gas)	Near T/O for Battery Temperature Sensor	6
S134 (Gas) LHD	Near T/O for Left Front Impact Sensor	4
S134 (Gas) RHD	Near T/O for Front Washer Pump	N/S
S134 (Diesel) Export	Near T/O for Battery Temperature Sensor	5
S135 (Diesel)	Near T/O for Engine Control Module C1	9, 13
S136 (Diesel)	Near T/O for Engine Control Module C1	9, 13
S137 (Diesel)	In Trough Near T/O for Coolant Level Sensor	7
S139 (Diesel)	Near T/O for Engine Control Module C1	9, 13
S141 (Gas)	Near T/O for Controller Antilock Brake	4

## CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)

SPLICE NUMBER	LOCATION	FIG.
S142 (Diesel)	In Trough Near T/O for Coolant Level Sensor	7
S142 Gas 4.0L Japan	In Trough, Near T/O for C102 and C103	6
S142 (4.7L) RHD	In Trough Near T/O for Coolant Level Sensor	N/S
S143 (Diesel)	In Trough Near T/O for Hood Ajar Switch	5
S143 (Gas, Export) LHD	In Trough Near T/O for Controller Antilock Brake	4
S143 Gas RHD	Near T/O for Evap/Purge Solenoid	N/S
S145 (Diesel)	Near T/O for Engine Control Module C1	9, 13
S147 (Diesel)	In T/O for Controller Anti-Lock Brake	5
S151	In Headlamp Assembly	N/S
S152	In Headlamp Assembly	N/S
S153	In Headlamp Assembly	N/S
S154	In Headlamp Assembly	N/S
S155	In Headlamp Assembly	N/S
S156	In Headlamp Assembly	N/S
S158 4.7L RHD	Near T/O for Fuel Injector No. 1	18
S160 (4.7L High Output)	In T/O for C102	6
S162 (Diesel)	In T/O for Wastegate Solenoid	5, 7, 13
S165 (Diesel)	In T/O for C105	5
S168	Near T/O for Intake Air Temperature Sensor	9, 13
S169	Near T/O for Engine Control Module C1	9, 13
S170	Near T/O for Engine Control Module C2	9, 13
S171	Near T/O for C113	9
S172	Near T/O for C113	9
S174 (4.0L/4.7L) Export	Near T/O for Siren	6
S174 (Diesel)	Near T/O for Left Fog Lamp	4
S175 (4.7L HO) LHD	Near T/O for Coolant Level Sensor	6
S176	Near T/O for Intake Air Temperature Sensor	9
S180 (4.0L/4.7L Except Export) LHD	In T/O for Power Distribution Center	6
S181 (4.0L) Japan	In Trough, Near T/O for Coolant Level Sensor	6
S181 (4.0L/4.7L, Export) LHD	In Trough, Near T/O for Power Distribution Sensor	N/S
S200	In Trough Near T/O for Passenger Heated Seat Switch	28
S200 (RHD)	Upper Center Instrument Panel	29
S201	In Trough Near T/O for Passenger Heated Seat Switch	28
S201 (RHD)	Near T/O for Driver Heated Seat Switch	29



## CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)

SPLICE NUMBER	LOCATION	FIG.
S202	In Trough Between T/O for Driver and Passenger Heated Seat Switchs	28
S202 (RHD)	Upper Center Instrument Panel	29
S203	In Trough Near T/O for Cigar Lighter	28
S203 (RHD)	Lower Center Instrument Panel, Near T/O for Driver Heated Seat Switch	29
S204	In Trough Near T/O for Adjustable Pedal Switch	28
S204 (RHD)	Right Center Instrument Panel	29
S205	Near T/O for Adjustable Pedal Switch	28
S205 (RHD)	Upper Center Instrument Panel	29
S206 (MTC)	Near T/O for Adjustable Pedals Switch	28
S206 (RHD)	Upper Center Instrument Panel, Near T/O for Front Power Outlet	29
S207	In Trough Near T/O for Radio Connectors	28
S207 (RHD)	Upper Center Instrument Panel	N/S
S208	In Trough Near T/O for Radio Connectors	28
S208 (RHD)	Upper Center Instrument Panel	29
S210	In Trough Near T/O for Left Courtesy Lamp	28
S210 (RHD)	Lower Center Instrument Panel	29
S211	In Trough Near T/O for Left Courtesy Lamp	28
S211 (RHD)	Right Side of Instrument Panel	29
S212	In Trough Near T/O for Left Courtesy Lamp	28
S212 (RHD)	Right Center Instrument Panel	29
S213	Near T/O for Cruise Switch No.1	N/S
S214	Near T/O for Cruise Switch No.1	N/S
S215	Near T/O for Horn Switch	N/S
S216	Near T/O for Remote Radio Switch No.2	N/S
S217	In Trough Near T/O for Adjustable Pedal Switch	28
S217 (RHD)	Lower Center Instrument Panel, Near T/O for Front Power Outlet	29
S221	Right Center of Instrument Panel	28
S221 (RHD)	Left Center of Instrument Panel	29
S222	Right Center of Instrument Panel, Near T/O for Left Courtesy Lamp	28
S222 (RHD)	Near T/O for Front Power Outlet	29
S223	Near T/O for Adjustable Pedals Switch	28
S223 (RHD)	Lower Left Side of Instrument Panel	29
S224	Right Center of Instrument Panel, Near Radio Connectors	28
S224 (RHD)	Upper Center of Instrument Panel	29
S226	In I/P Trough Left of Center Near Radio C2	24, 28
S300	Near T/O for G304	41
S301	In T/O for C304	41
S302	In Sill Trough Near T/O for C307	41, 43
S303	In Sill Trough Near T/O for C307	41, 43
S304	In Sill Trough Near T/O for C307	41, 43

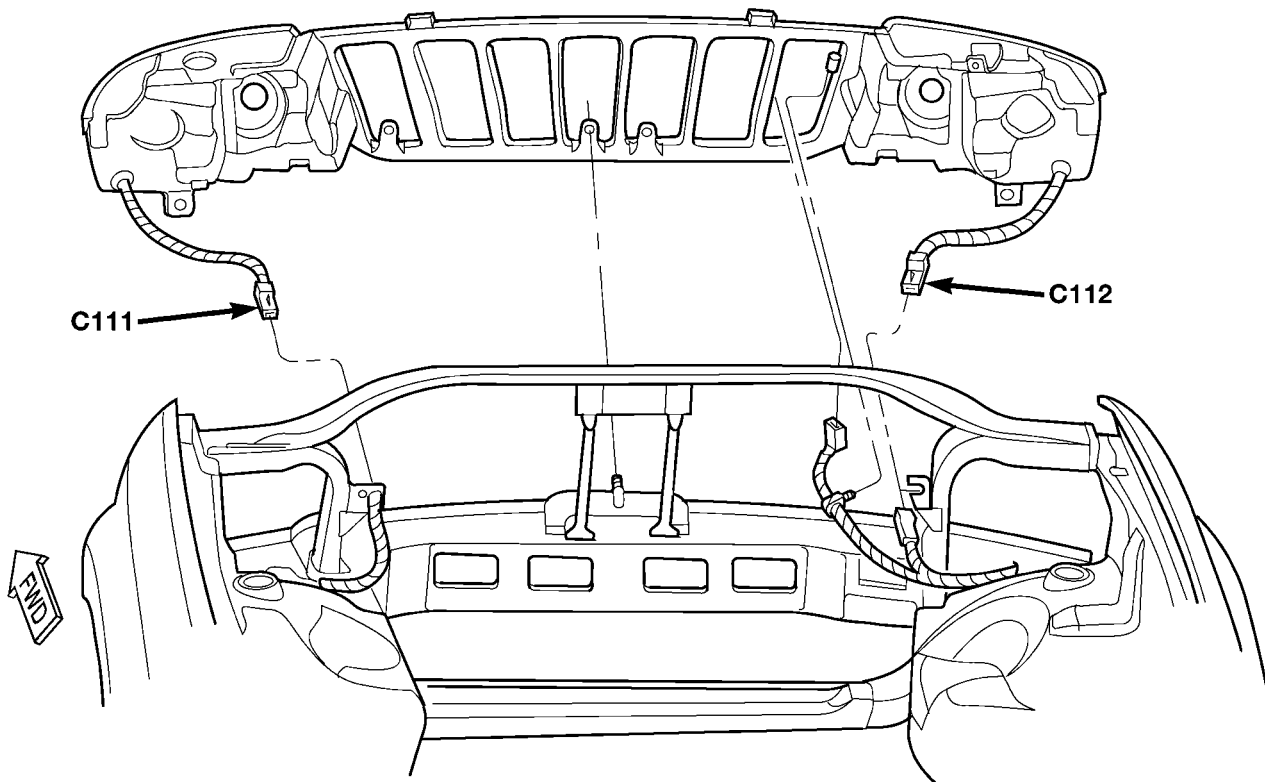
## CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)

SPLICE NUMBER	LOCATION	FIG.
S305	In Sill Trough Near T/O for C307	41
S306	Near T/O for C310	43, 45
S307	Near T/O for C310	45
S308	Between T/O's for C310 and Left Rear Lamp Assembly	44, 45
S308 Export	Near T/O for Junction Block C1	N/S
S309	Between T/O's for C310 and Left Rear Lamp Assembly	45
S310	Between T/O's for C310 and Left Rear Lamp Assembly	43, 45
S311	Near T/O for Left Rear Lamp Assembly	45
S312 LHD	Near T/O for C302	N/S
S312 RHD	Near T/O for C200	43
S313 LHD	In T/O to C302	N/S
S313 RHD	Near T/O for G301	43
S314 LHD	Near T/O for Brake Lamp Switch	N/S
S314 RHD	Near T/O for C107	38
S315 (Gas) LHD	Near T/O for Brake Lamp Switch	N/S
S315 (Gas) RHD	In Center Spline Near T/O for G301	43
S315 (Diesel)	Near T/O for Junction Block Connectors	N/S
S316 (Gas) LHD	Near T/O for C314	N/S
S316 (Gas) RHD	Near T/O for Junction Block C2, C4, C5	38
S317	Between Troughs Near T/O for C314	N/S
S318	Between Troughs Near T/O for C314	N/S
S323 RHD	Near T/O for C314	38
S324	In T/O for C200	42
S324 RHD	Near T/O for Brake Lamp Switch	N/S
S326	Near T/O for C106	42, 43
S327	Near T/O for C307	42, 43
S328	In Sill Trough Near T/O for C106	42
S329	In Sill Trough Near T/O for C106	42
S330	Near T/O for G300	42
S331	In Sill Trough Near T/O for C303	42, 44
S332	In Sill Trough Near T/O for C303	42, 44
S333	Near T/O for Power Amplifiers	44
S334	In T/O for Power Amplifier - C2	42
S335 RHD	Near T/O for Junction Block C2	44
S336	Near T/O for Driver Power Window Motor	31, 32
S337	Near T/O for C309	44
S338	Near T/O for Passenger Power Window Motor	33, 34
S339	Near T/O for Passenger Power Window Motor	33, 34
S340	In T/O for Passenger Door Module - C1	33, 34
S341	Near T/O for C306	N/S
S345	Near T/O for C309	40

## CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)

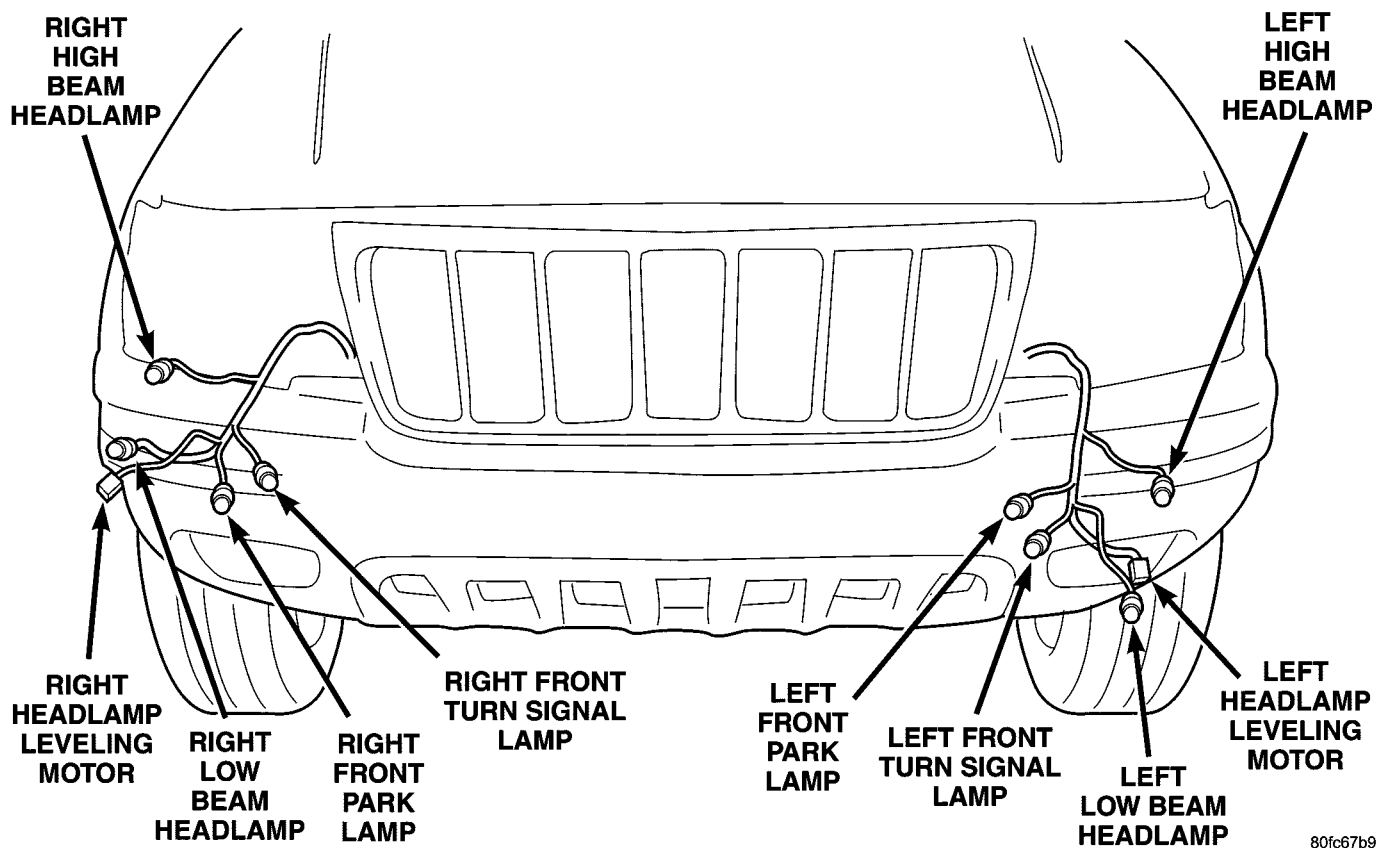
SPLICE NUMBER	LOCATION	FIG.
S346	Near T/O for Left Visor/Vanity Lamp	40
S347	Near T/O for Left Visor/Vanity Lamp	40
S348	Near T/O for Automatic Day/Night Mirror	40
S349	Near T/O for Automatic Day/Night Mirror	40
S351	Near T/O for Driver Power Seat	N/S
S352	Near T/O for Driver Power Seat	N/S
S353	Near T/O for Driver Lumbar Switch	N/S
S355	Near T/O for C304	N/S
S356	In T/O for Left Rear Door Lock Motor/Ajar Switch	35
S357	In T/O for Right Rear Door Lock Motor/Ajar Switch	36
S358	Near T/O for G301	43
S359 LHD	Near T/O for C302	42
S359 RHD	Near T/O for Brake Lamp Switch	N/S
S360	In T/O for C302	N/S
S361	Near T/O for C302	N/S
S362	In T/O for C200	42
S363	In T/O for C200	42
S364	In Sill Trough, Near T/O for C318	44
S365 Japan	Near T/O for Remote Keyless Entry Module	31, 32
S366 RHD	Near T/O for C302	38
S367 (RHD)	Near T/O for C310	N/S
S368	Near T/O for Power Amplifier - C1	42
S369	Near T/O for Left Visor Vanity Lamp	40
S370	In Sunroof Module Jumper	40
S371	In Trailer Tow Harness Jumper	47
S372	In T/O for C310	47
S374	Near Rear Window Defogger Ground Connector	46
S375	Near Rear Window Defogger Ground Connector	46
S376	Near T/O for Liftgate Flip-Up Ajar Switch	46
S377	Near T/O for Rear Wiper Motor	46
S378	Near T/O for Liftgate Lock Motor	46
S379	In T/O for Rear Wiper Motor	46
S380	Near T/O for License Lamp No.1	N/S
S381	In T/O for C312	N/S

CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)



**Fig. 1 ENGINE COMPARTMENT (FRONT CLIP)**

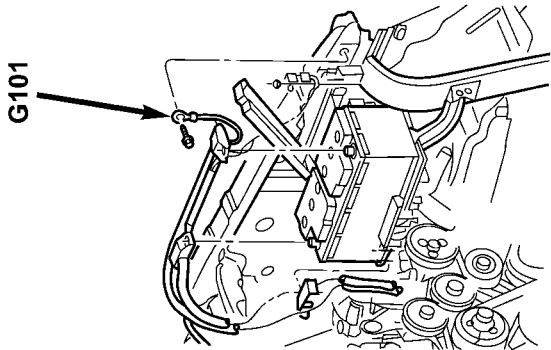
80bceaee



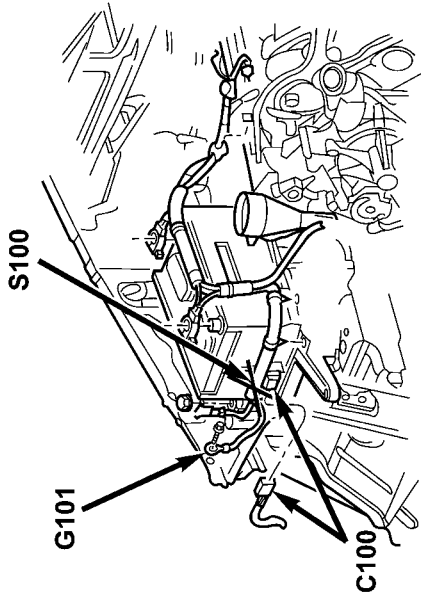
**Fig. 2 FRONT LIGHTING EXPORT**

80fc67b9

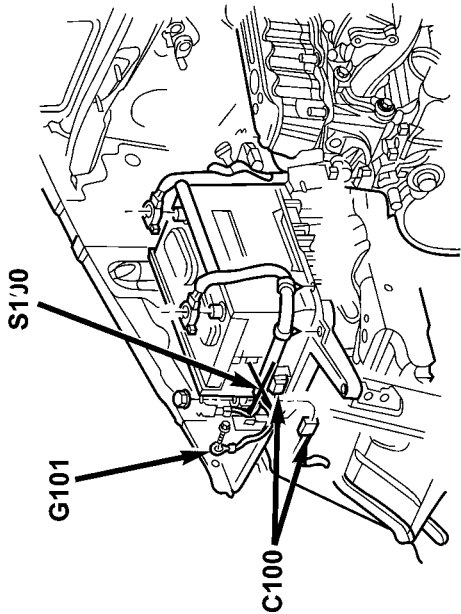
80d19b5a



(DIESEL)



4.7L (V8)



4.0L (6)

Fig. 3 ENGINE COMPARTMENT (BATTERY)

CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)

810erfba

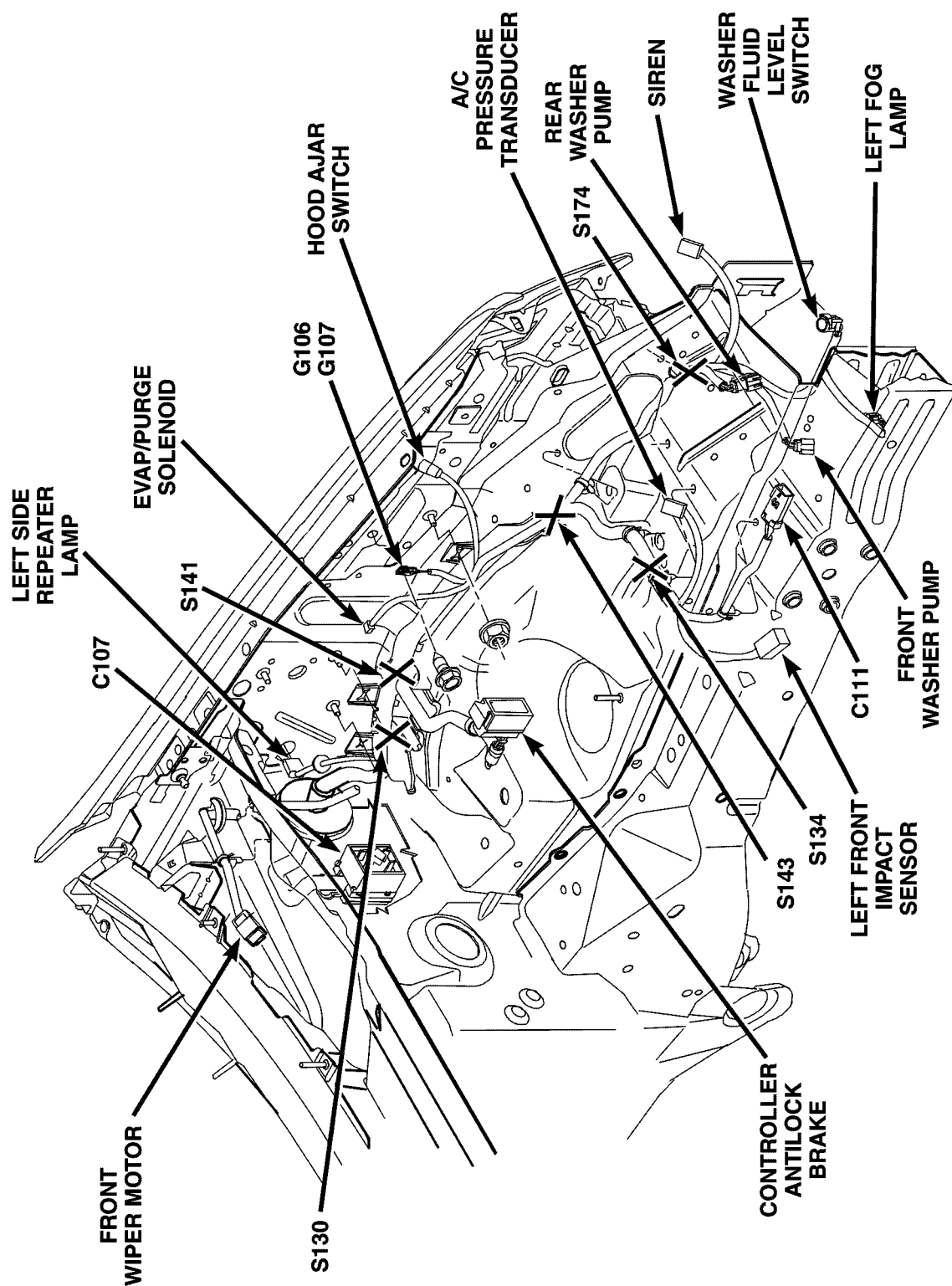


Fig. 4 ENGINE COMPARTMENT LEFT SIDE

CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)

810f0015

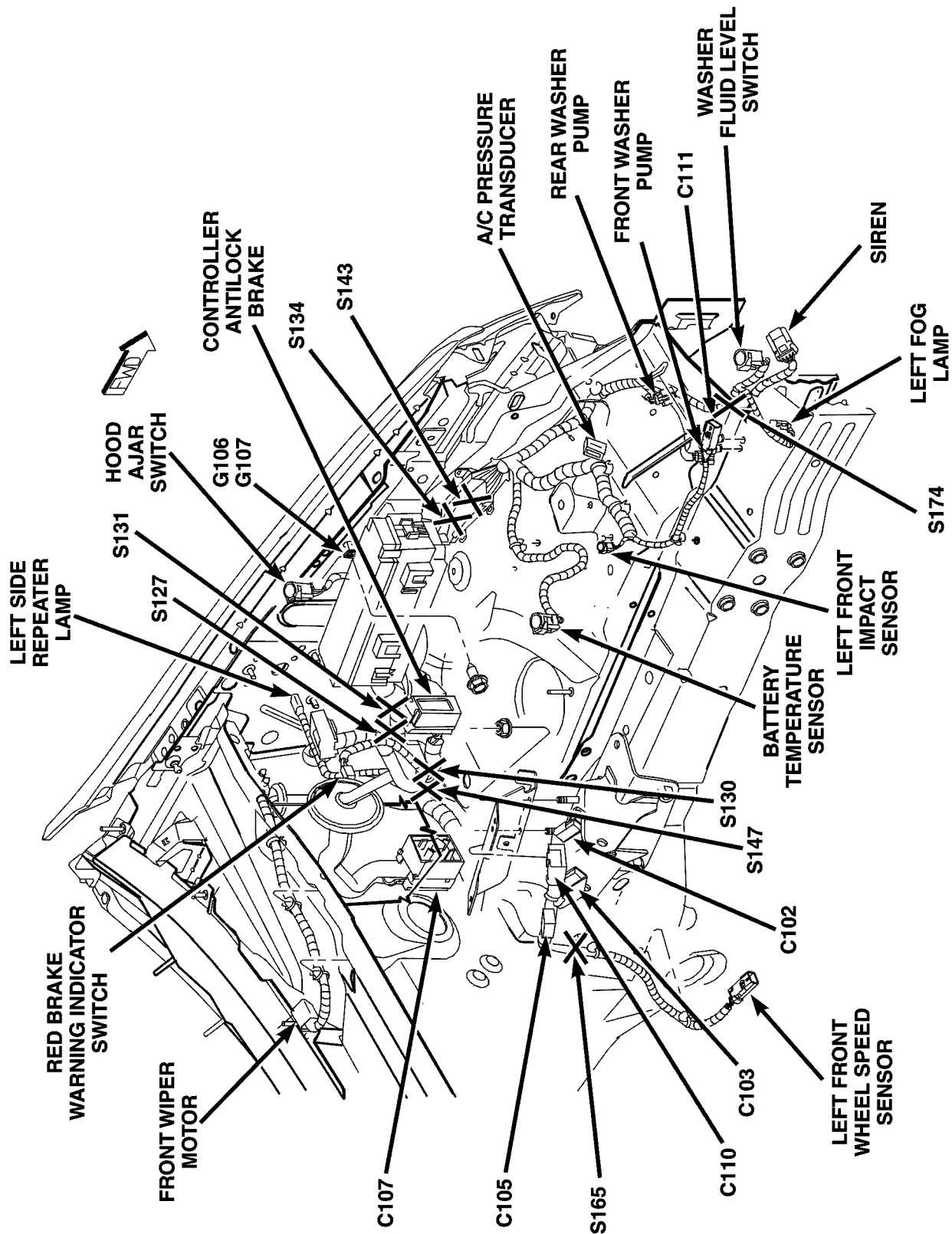


Fig. 5 ENGINE COMPARTMENT LEFT SIDE DIESEL



## CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)

8100201

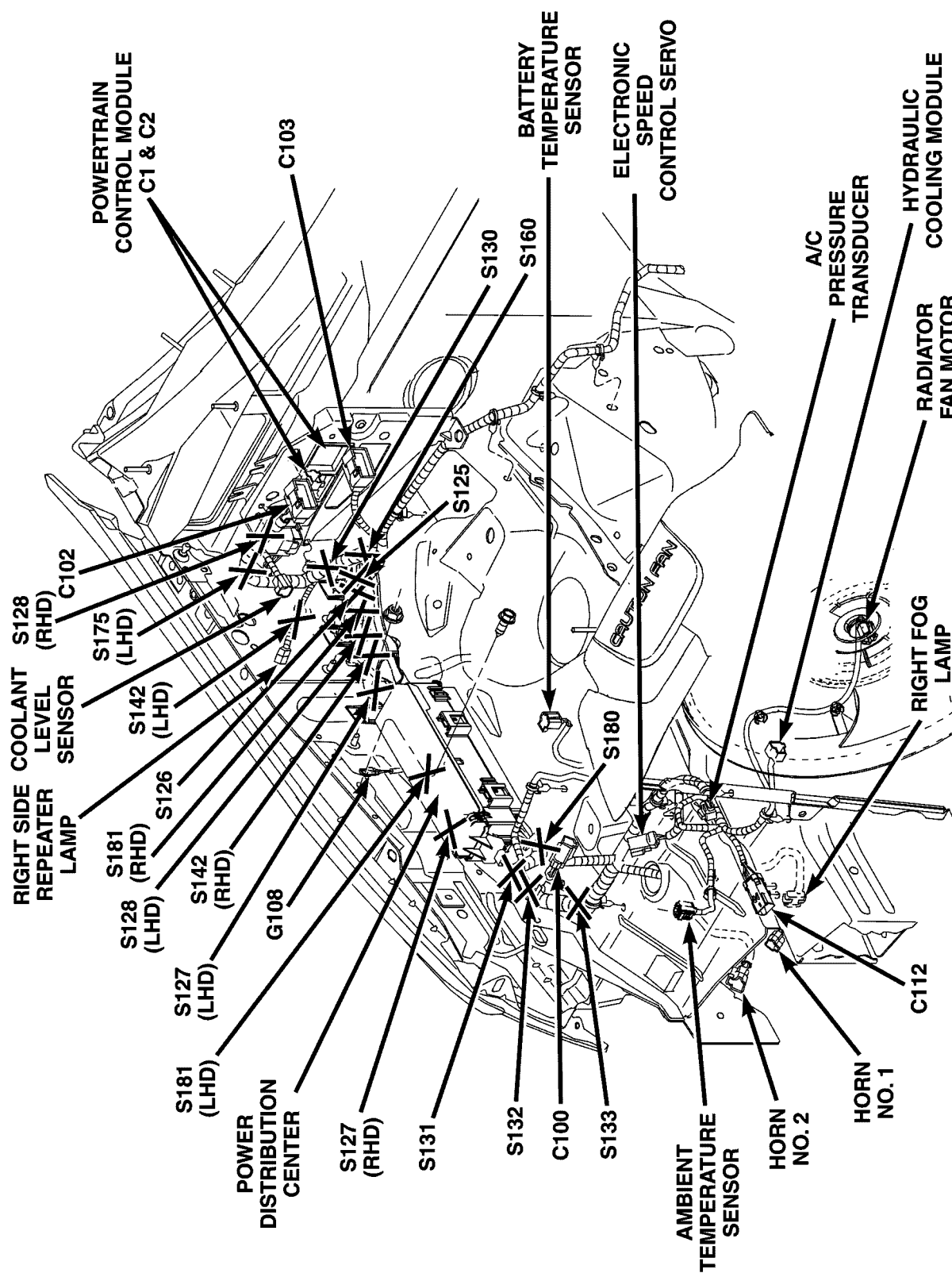
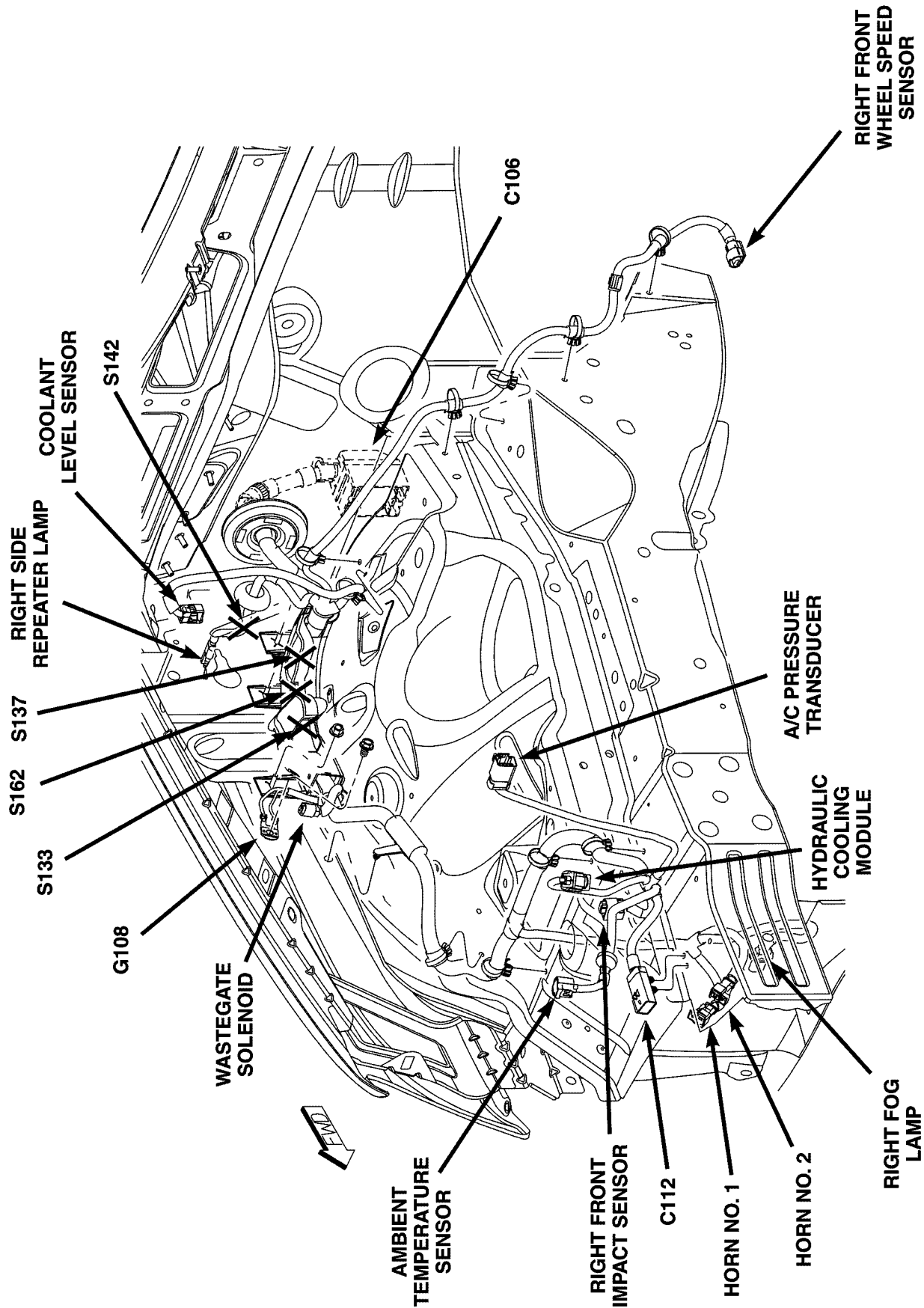


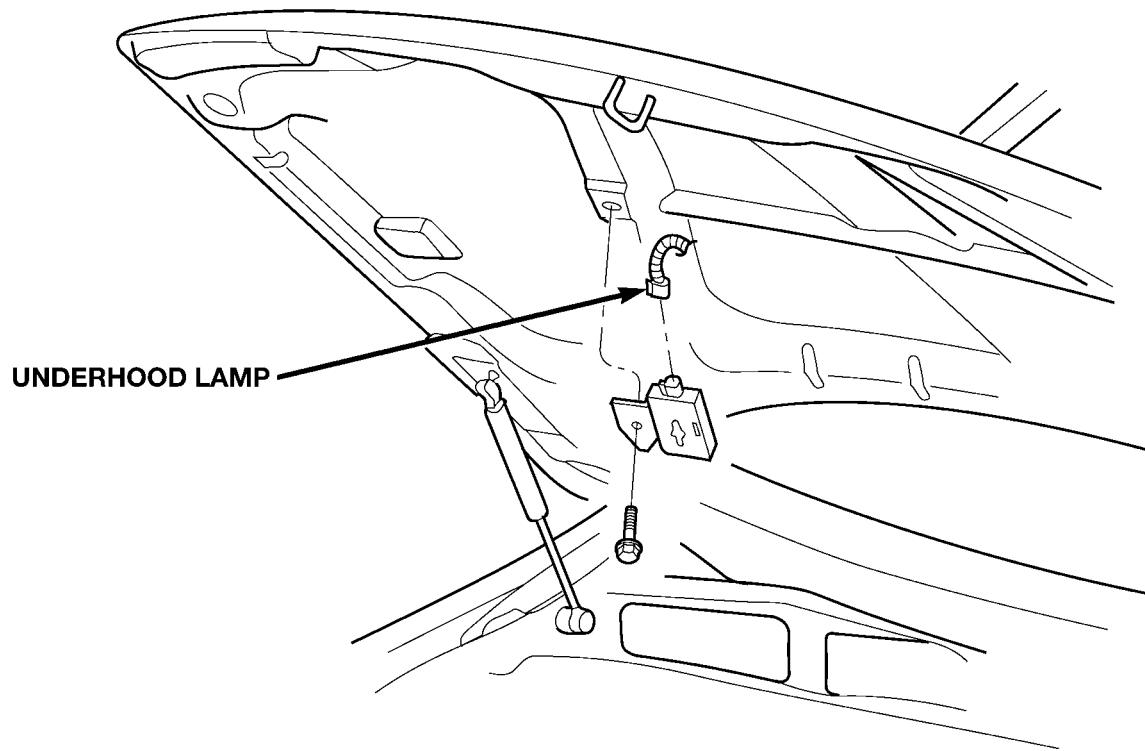
Fig. 6 ENGINE COMPARTMENT RIGHT SIDE

CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)



810023a

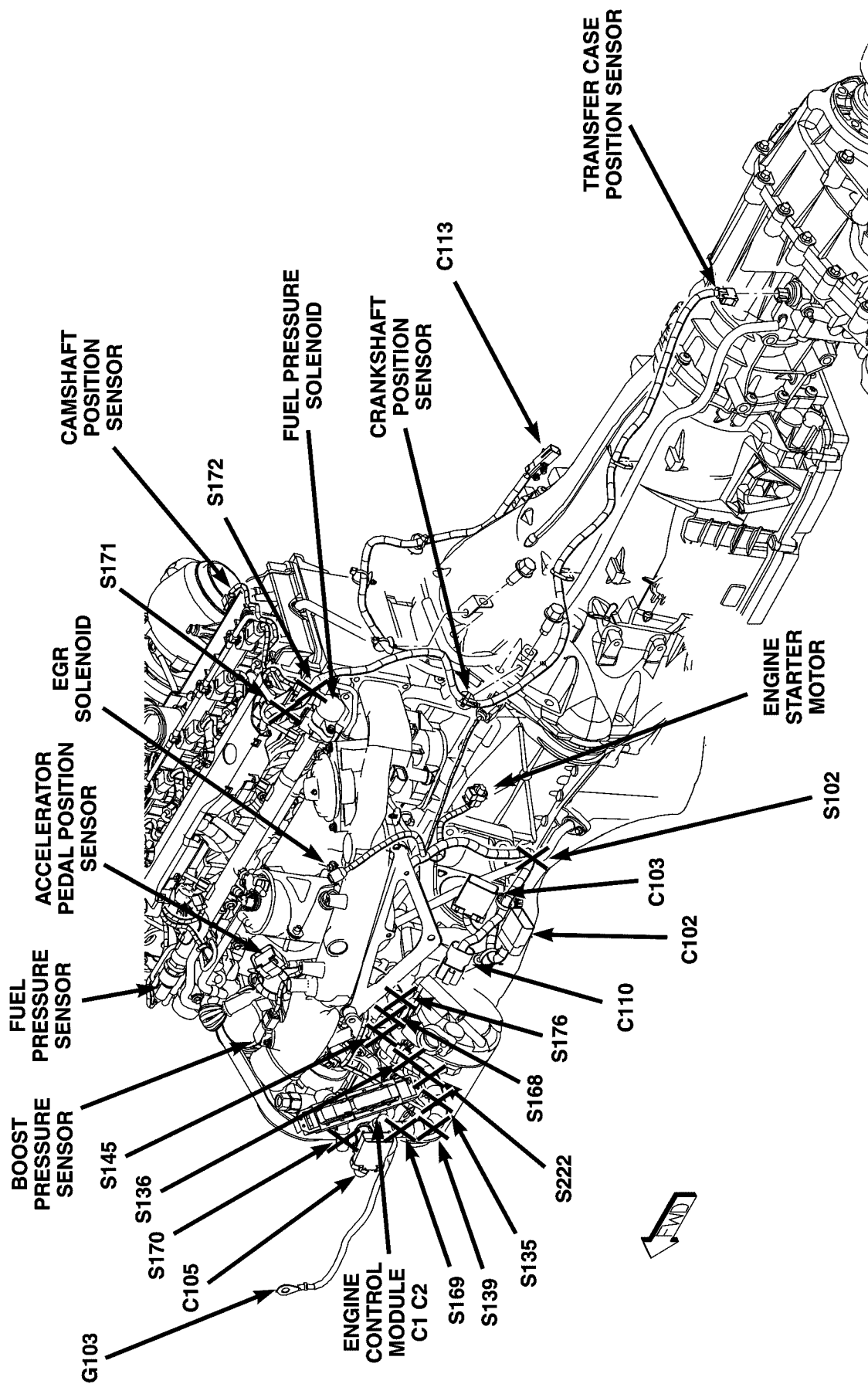
Fig. 7 DIESEL ENGINE COMPARTMENT RIGHT SIDE



80bceab8

***Fig. 8 UNDERHOOD LAMP***

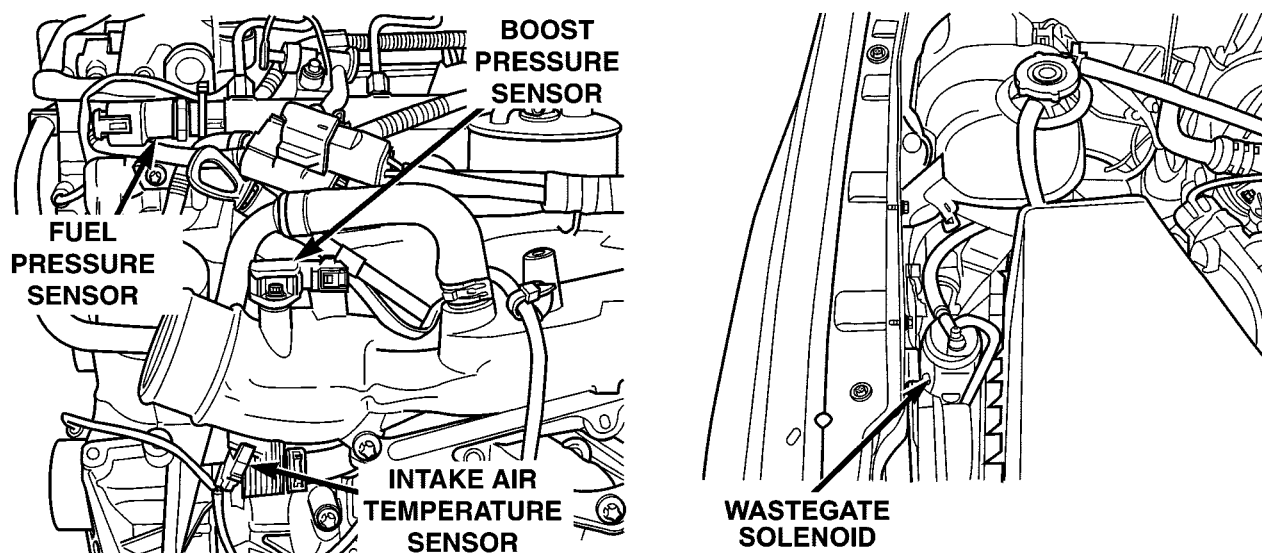
## CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)



801c76c3

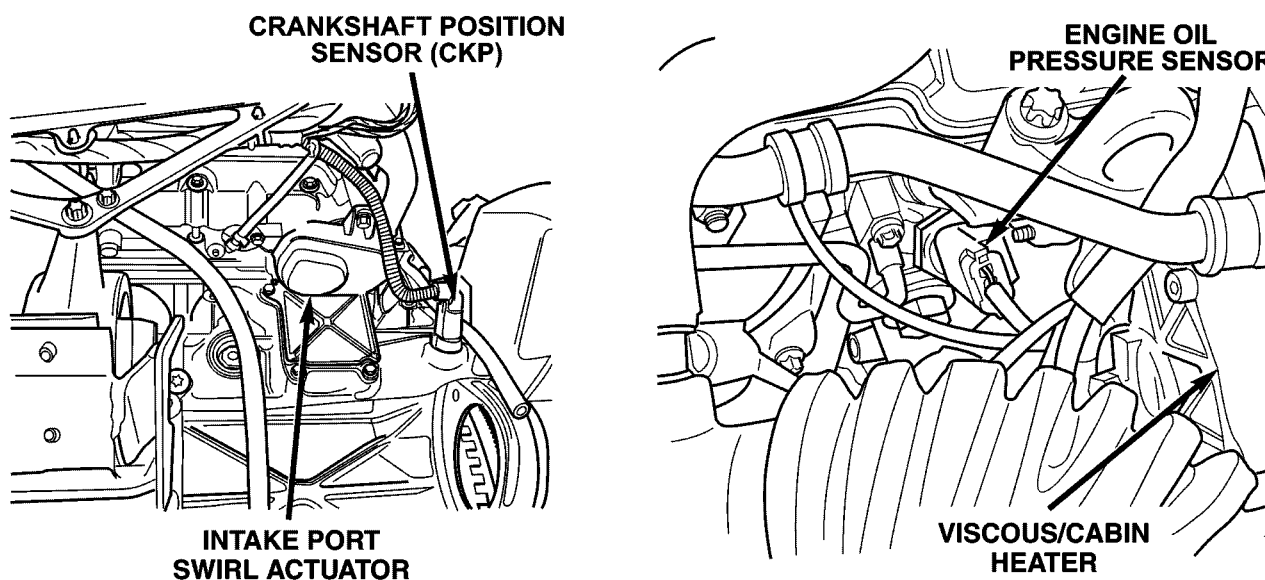
Fig. 9 DIESEL ENGINE LEFT SIDE 2.7 L

CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)



*Fig. 10 DIESEL ENGINE LEFT SENSORS*

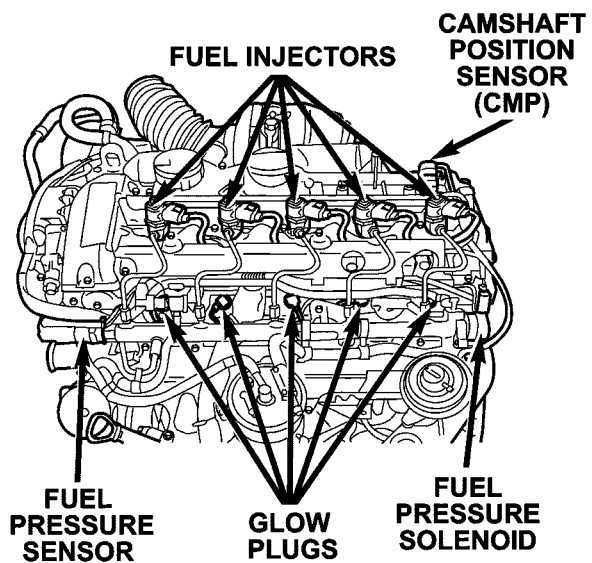
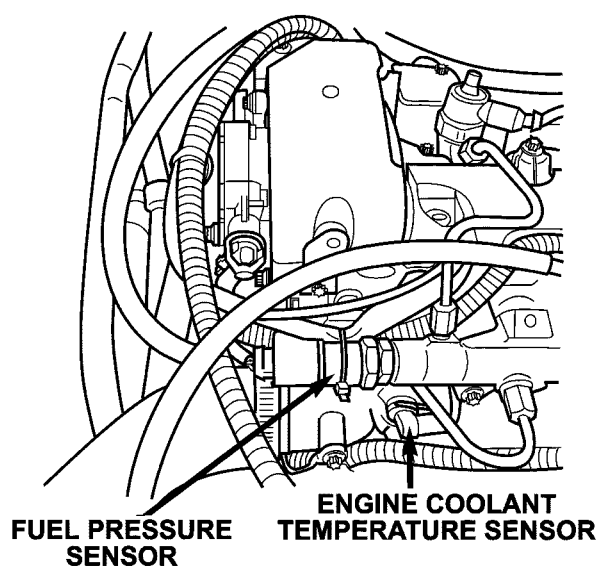
80fc7705



*Fig. 11 DIESEL ENGINE RIGHT SENSORS*

810f0273

CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)

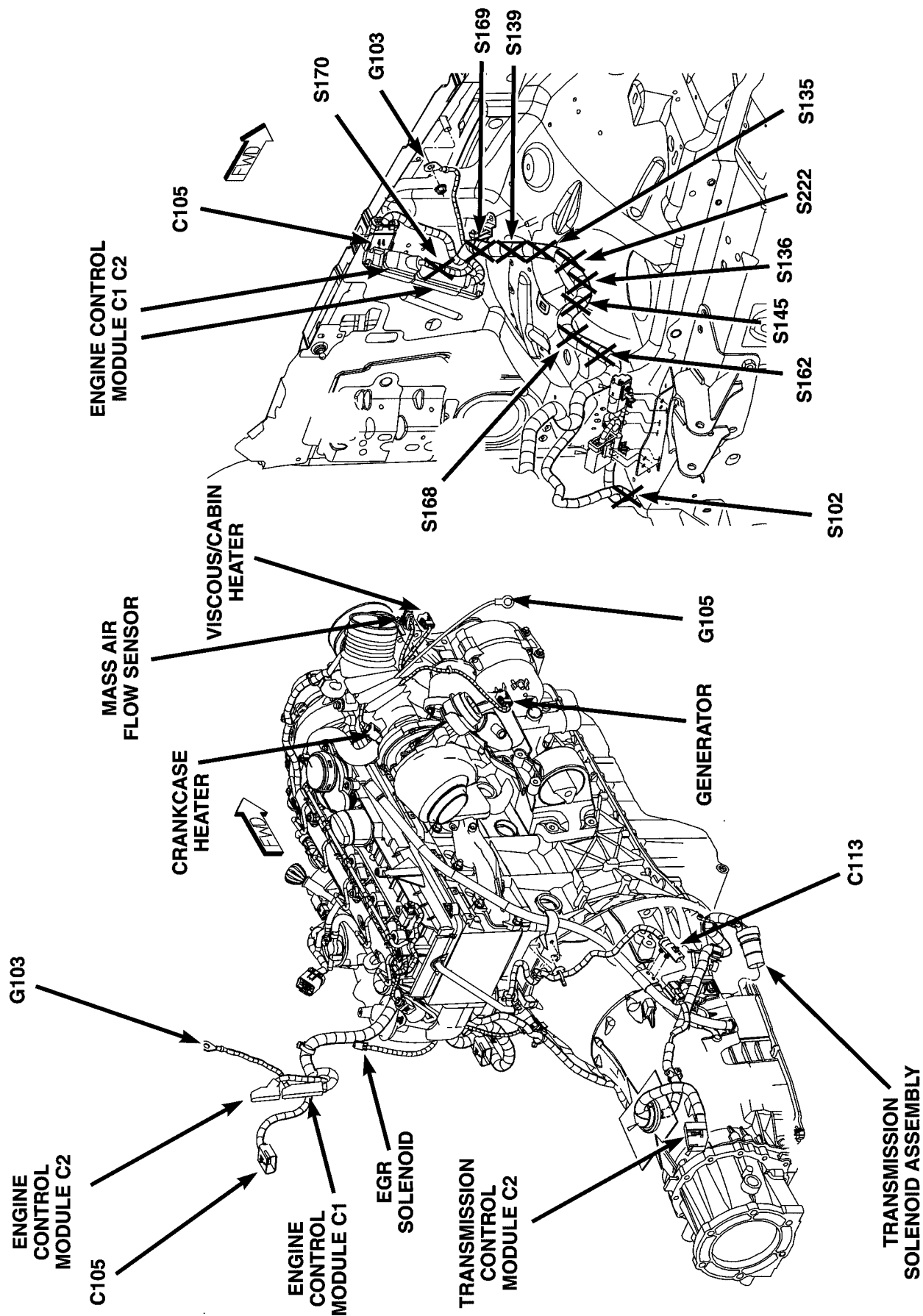


80fc7743

*Fig. 12 DIESEL ENGINE FUEL SENSORS*



CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)

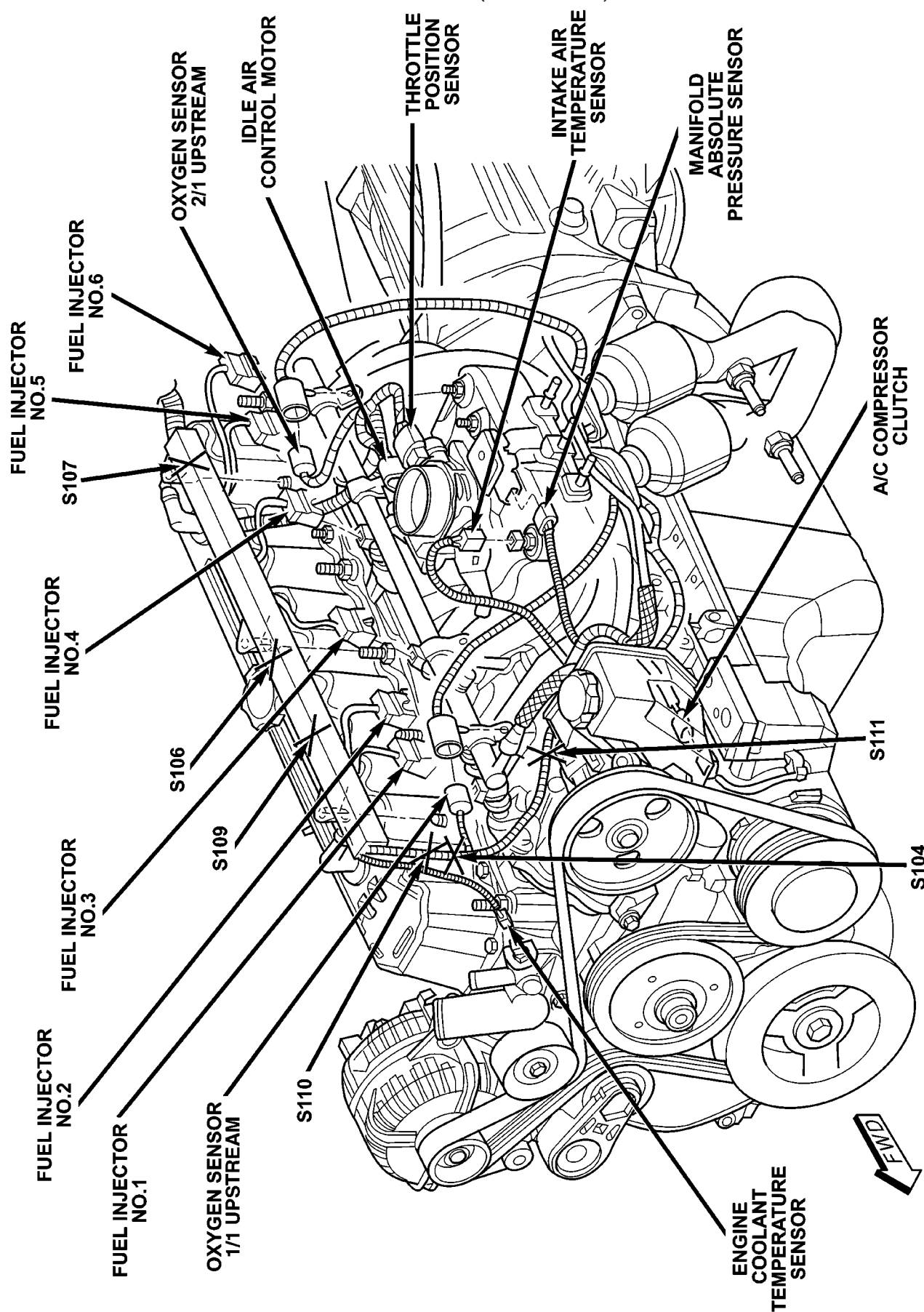


801c77cc

Fig. 13 DIESEL ENGINE RIGHT 2.7 L



## CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)



810facb6

Fig. 14 ENGINE LEFT SIDE 4.0 L

811017d2

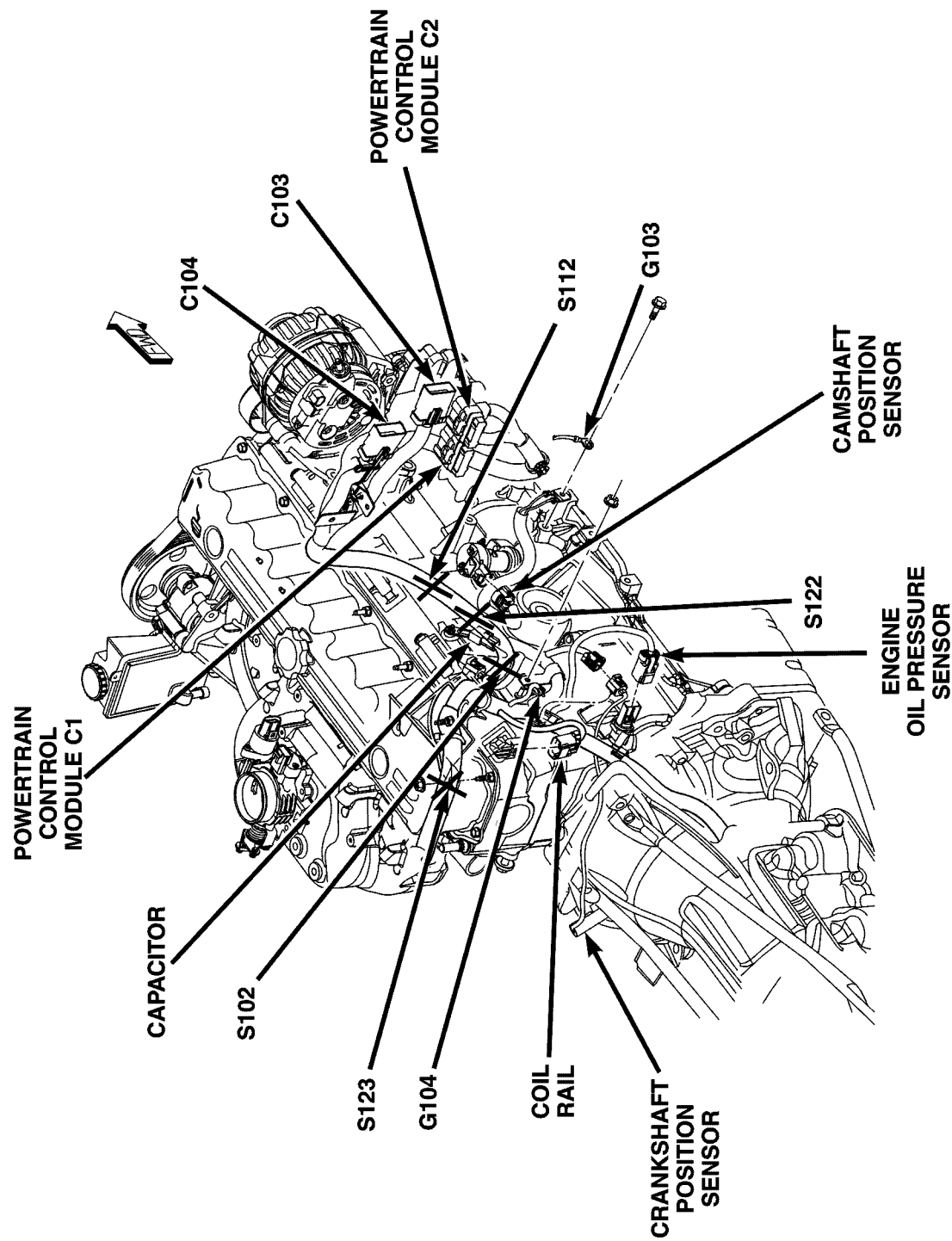


Fig. 15 ENGINE RIGHT REAR LHD 4.0 L

CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)

8105e933

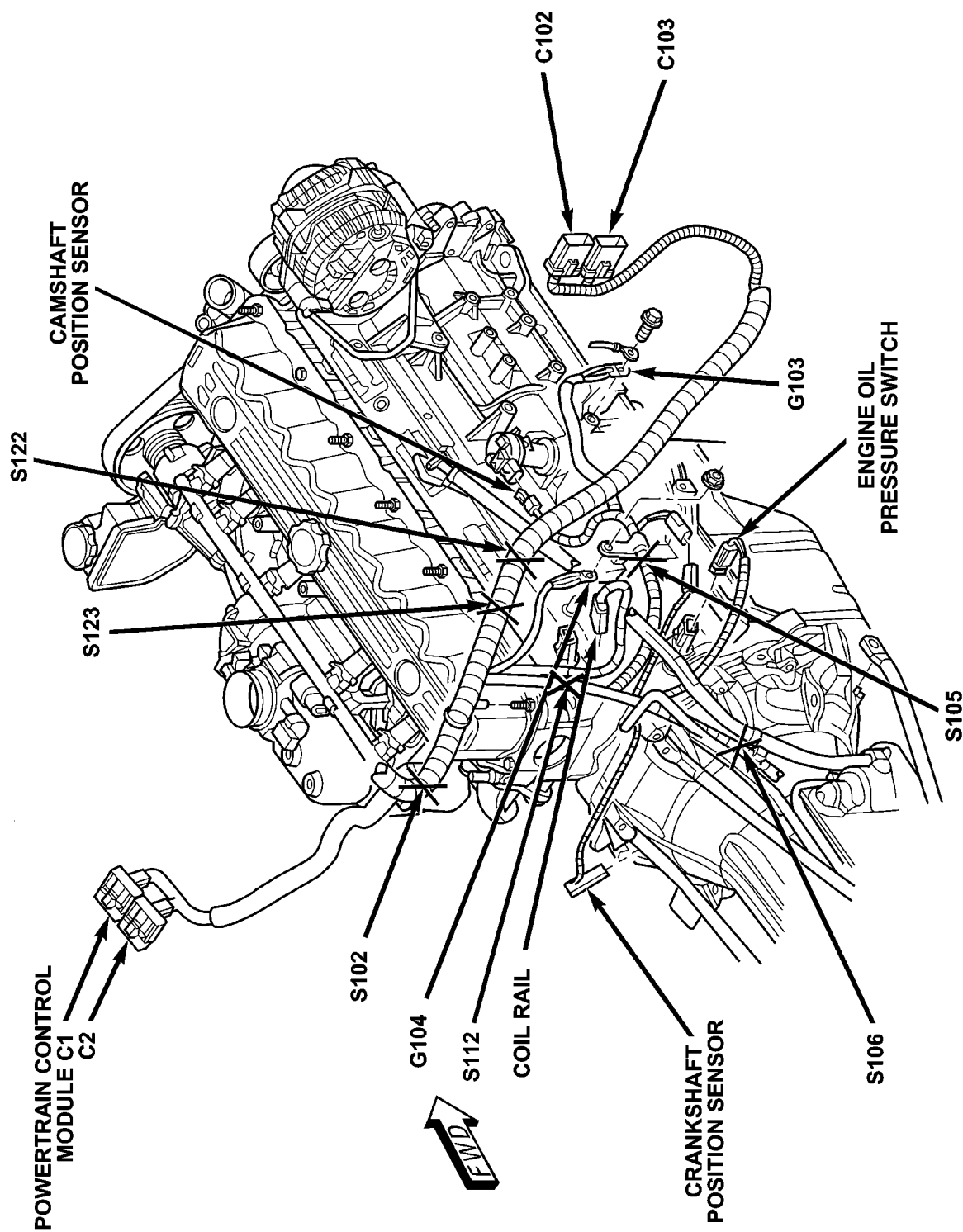


Fig. 16 ENGINE RIGHT REAR RHD 4.0 L

CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)

80/c7b2d

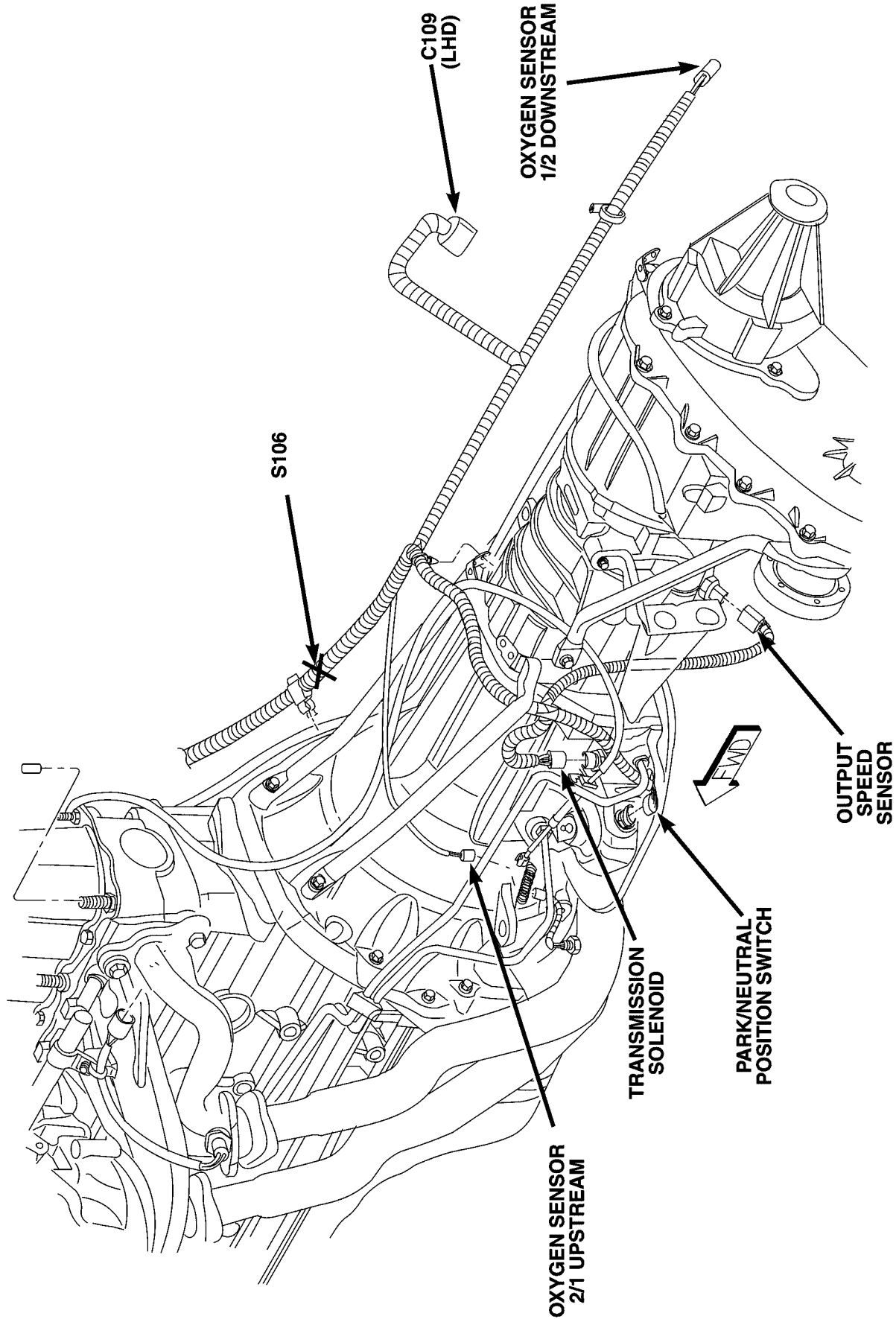


Fig. 17 TRANSMISSION 4.0 L

CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)

810102a7

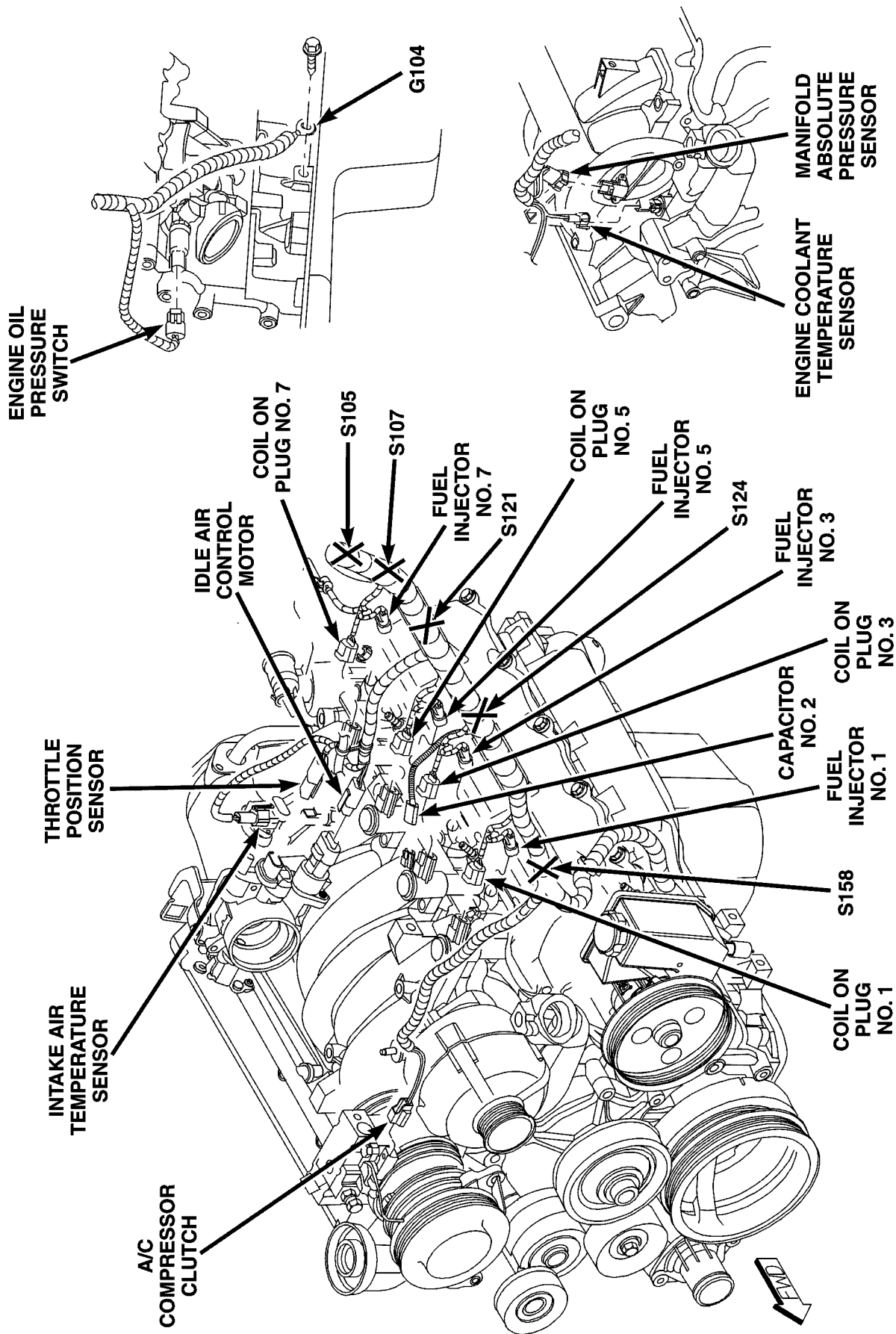


Fig. 18 ENGINE LEFT FRONT 4.7 L



CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)

810f02c9

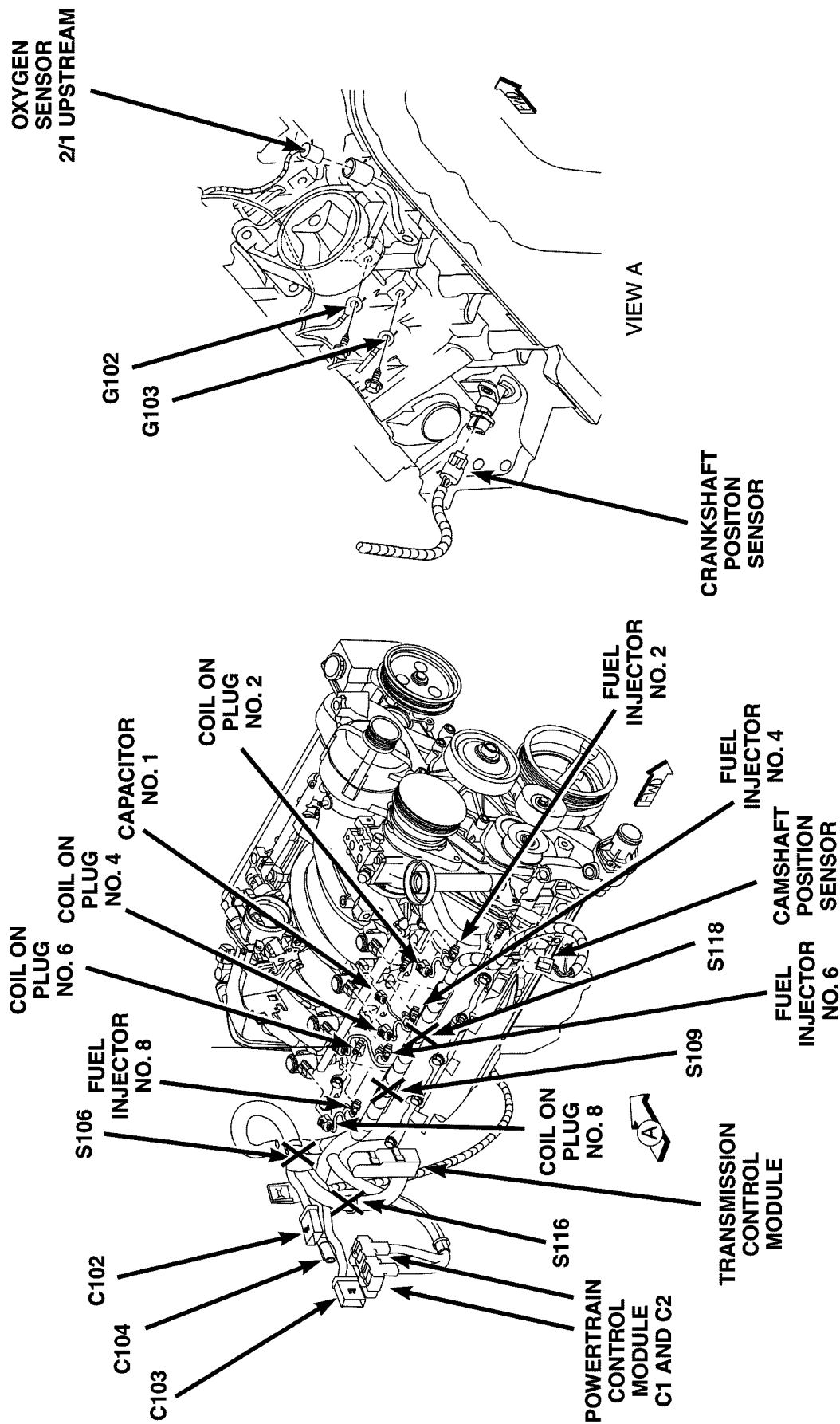


Fig. 19 ENGINE RIGHT FRONT LHD 4.7 L

## CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)

80d19b70

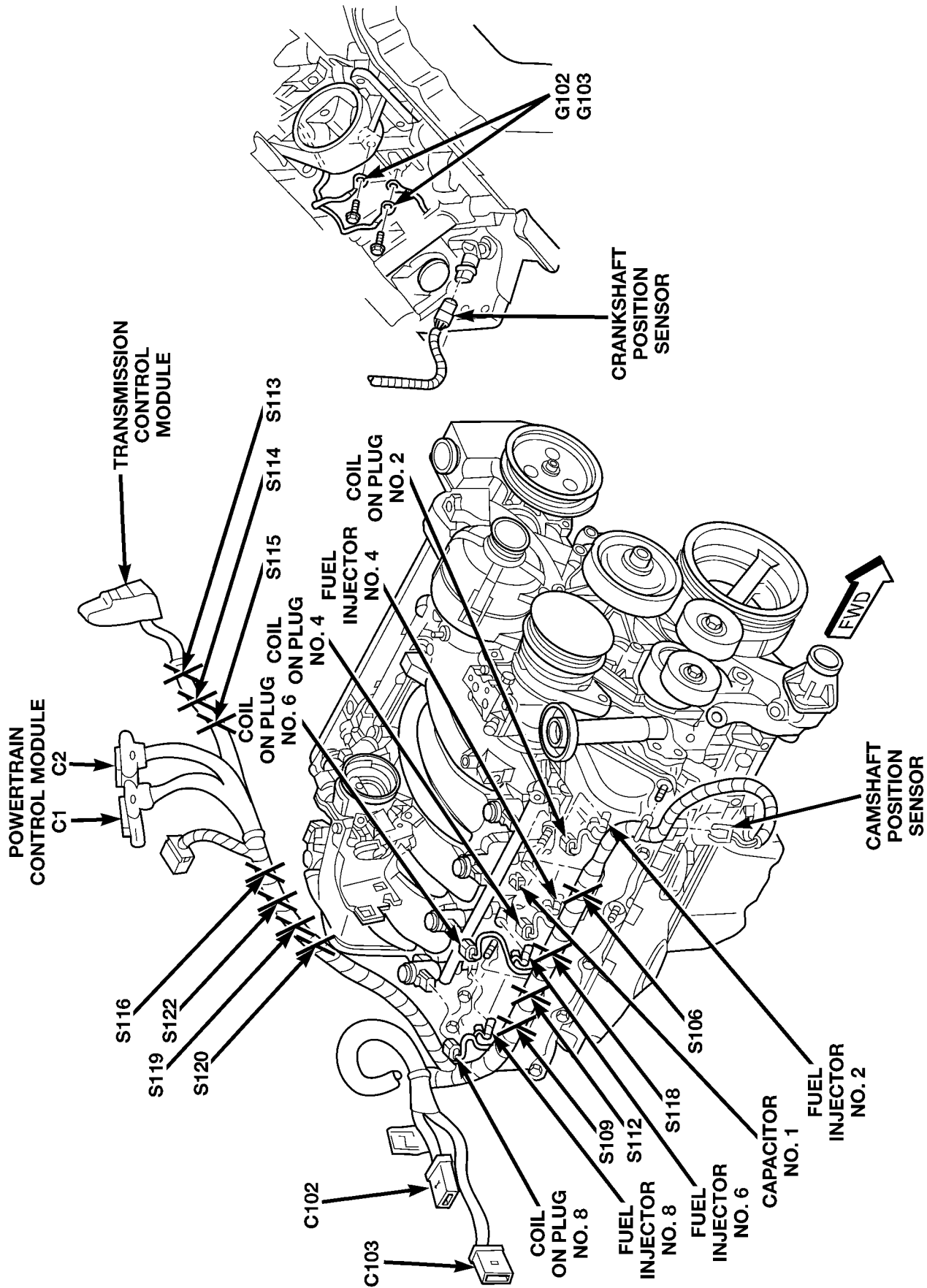
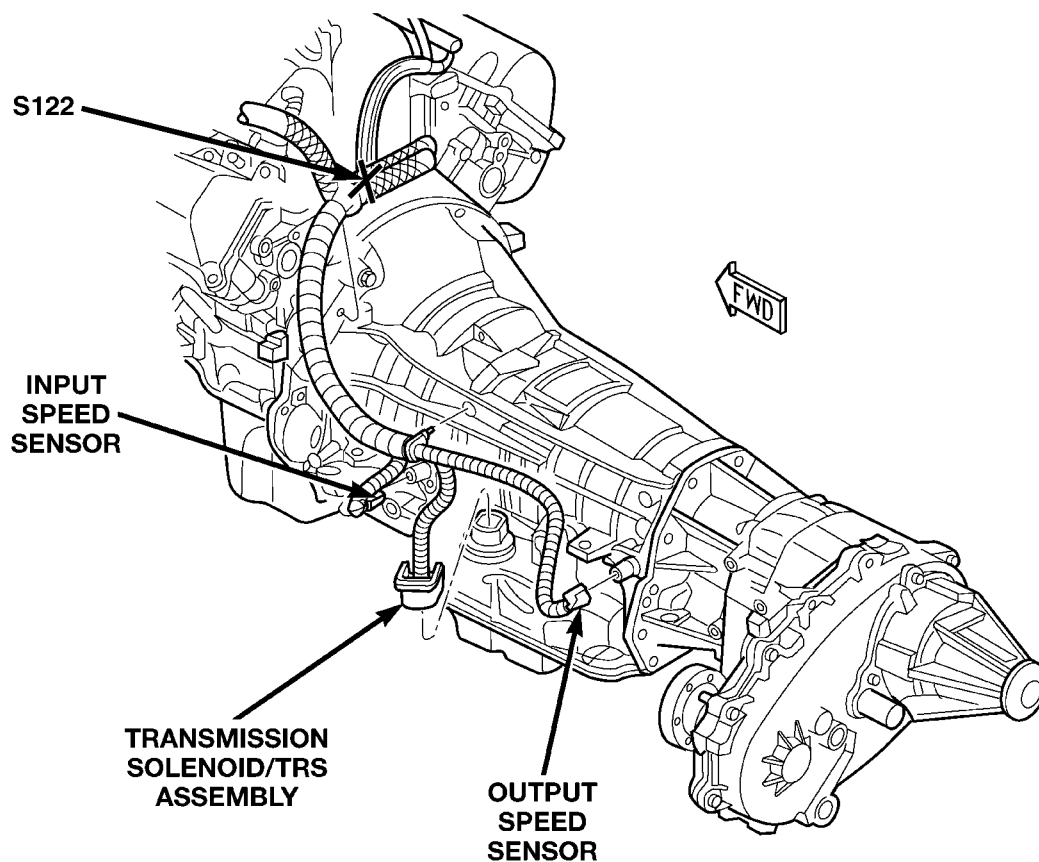


Fig. 20 ENGINE CONNECTORS RHD 4.7L

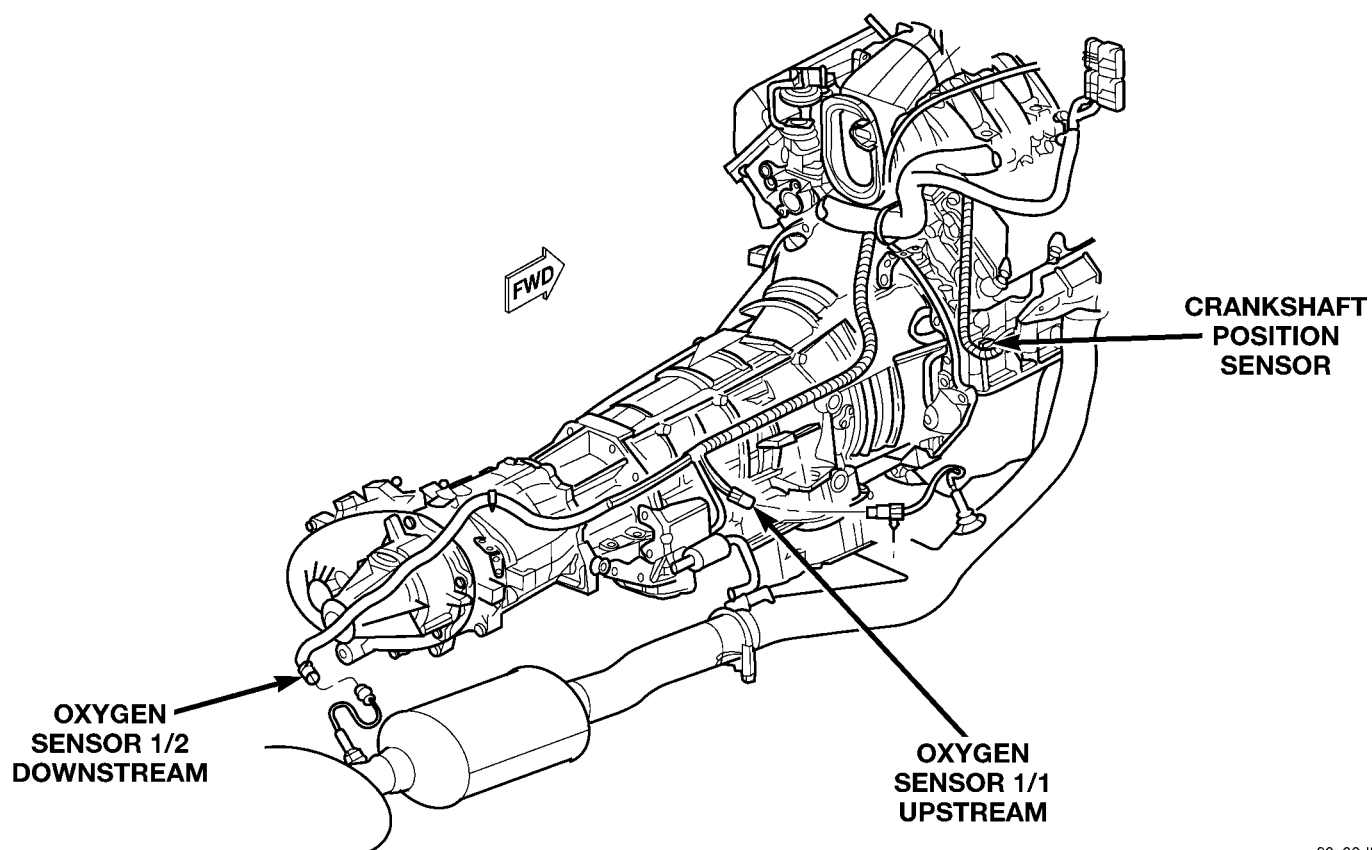


CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)



80d19b77

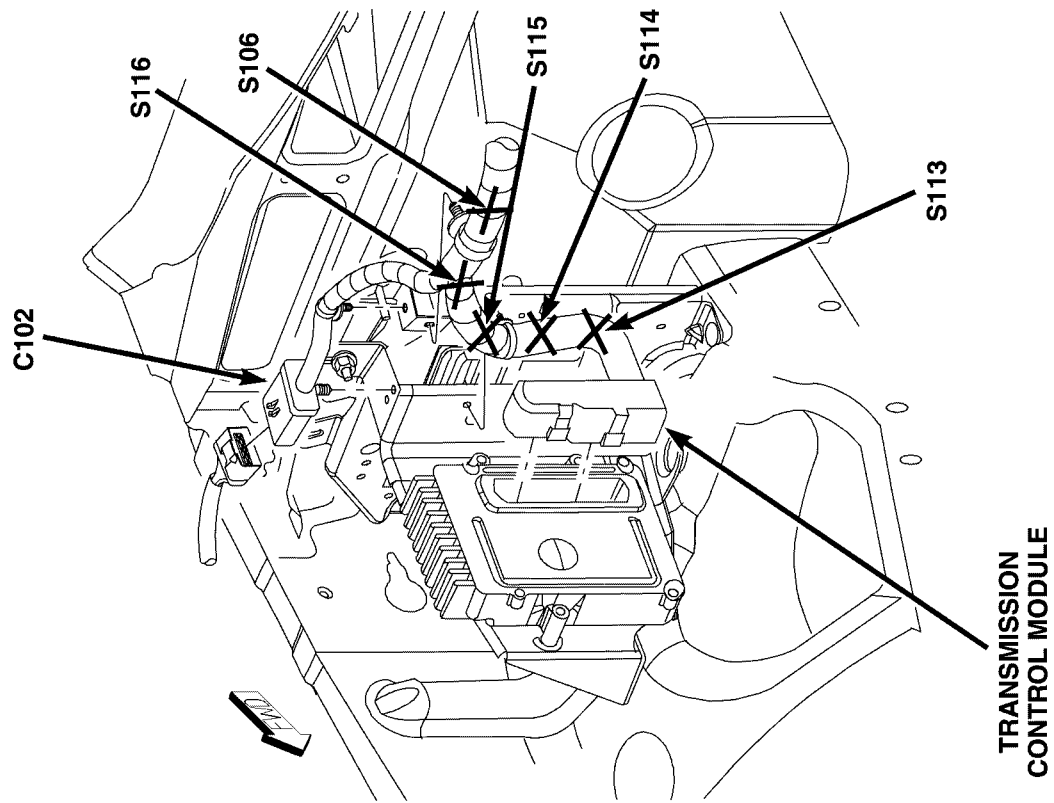
*Fig. 21 TRANSMISSION LEFT SIDE 4.7 L*



*Fig. 22 TRANSMISSION 4.7 LITER ENGINE RIGHT SIDE*

80c06df3

## CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)



8101030d

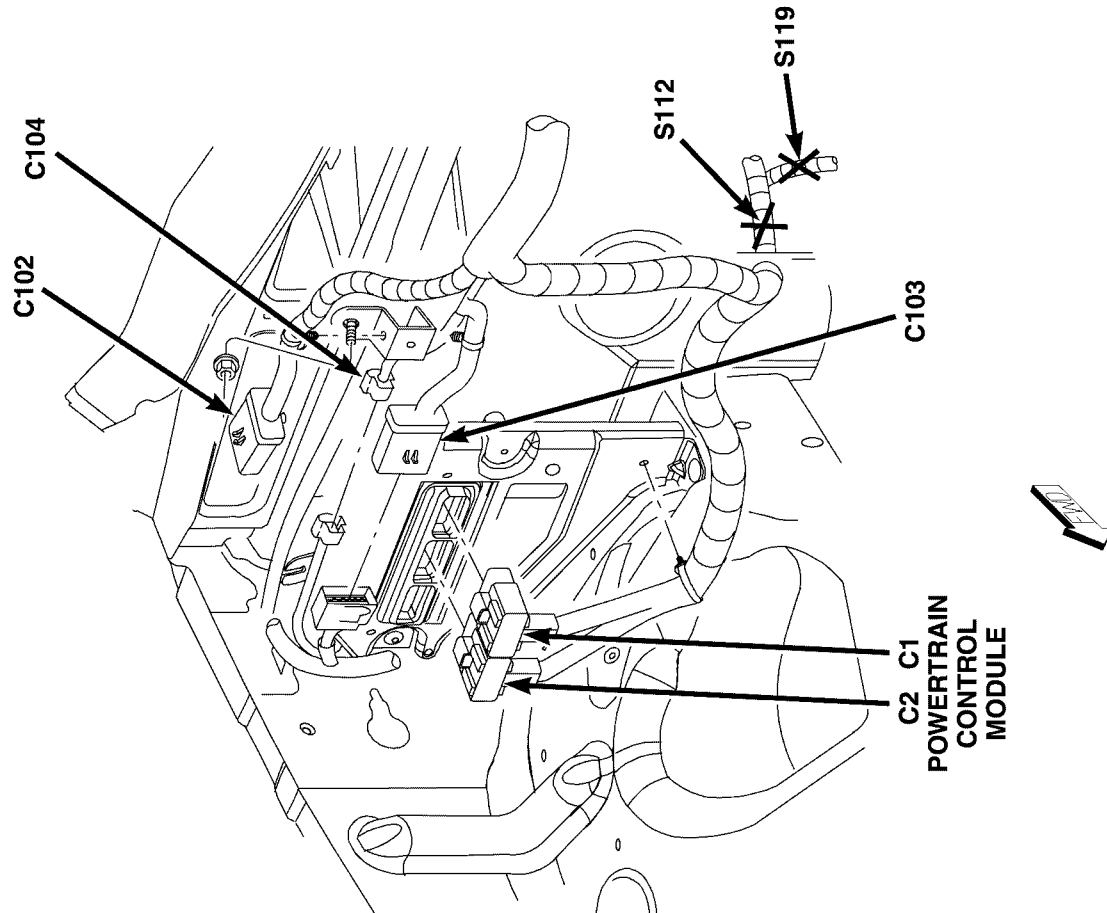
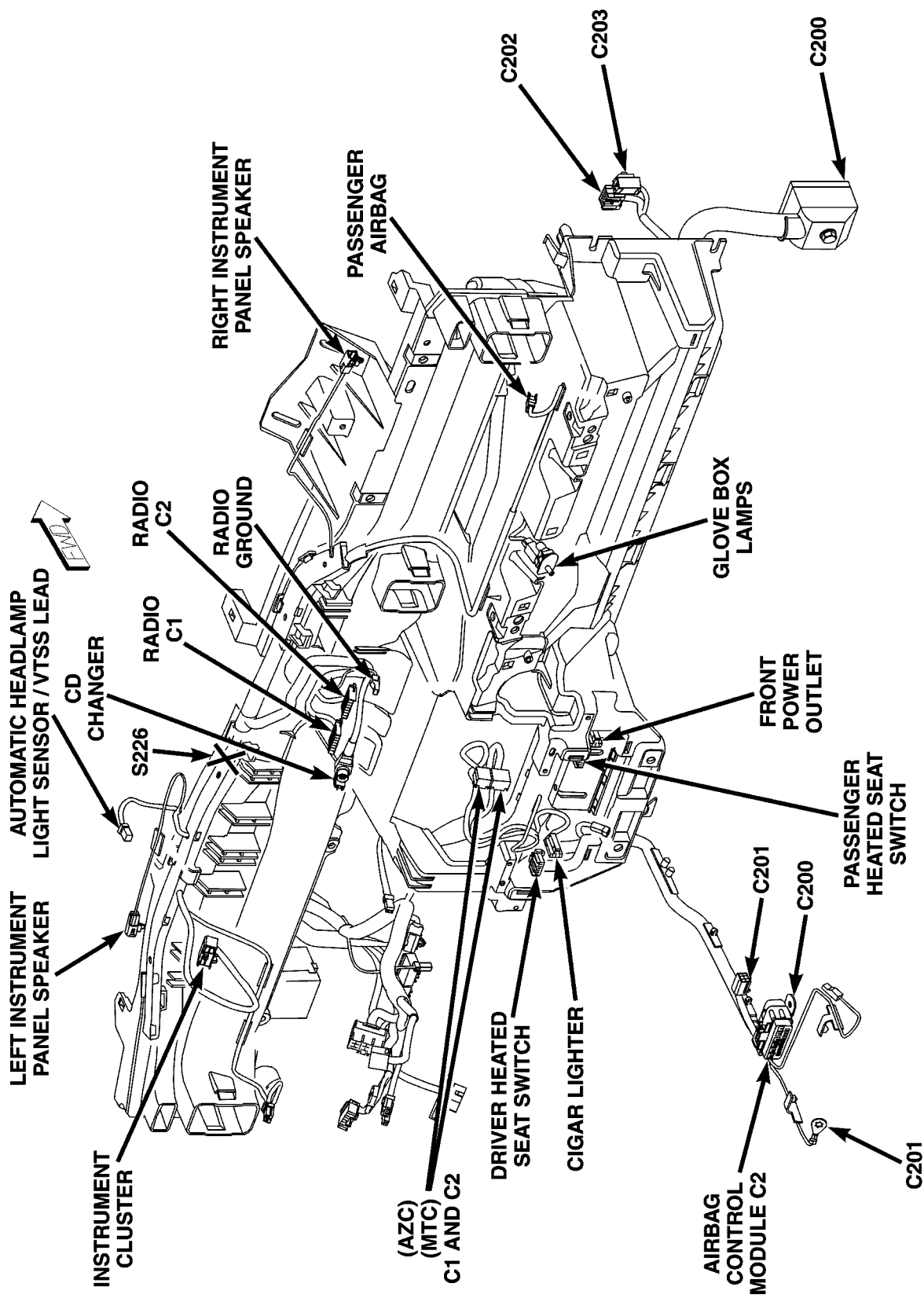


Fig. 23 REAR ENGINE COMPARTMENT LHD



**Fig. 24 INSTRUMENT PANEL FRONT LHD**

CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)

81 0f0312

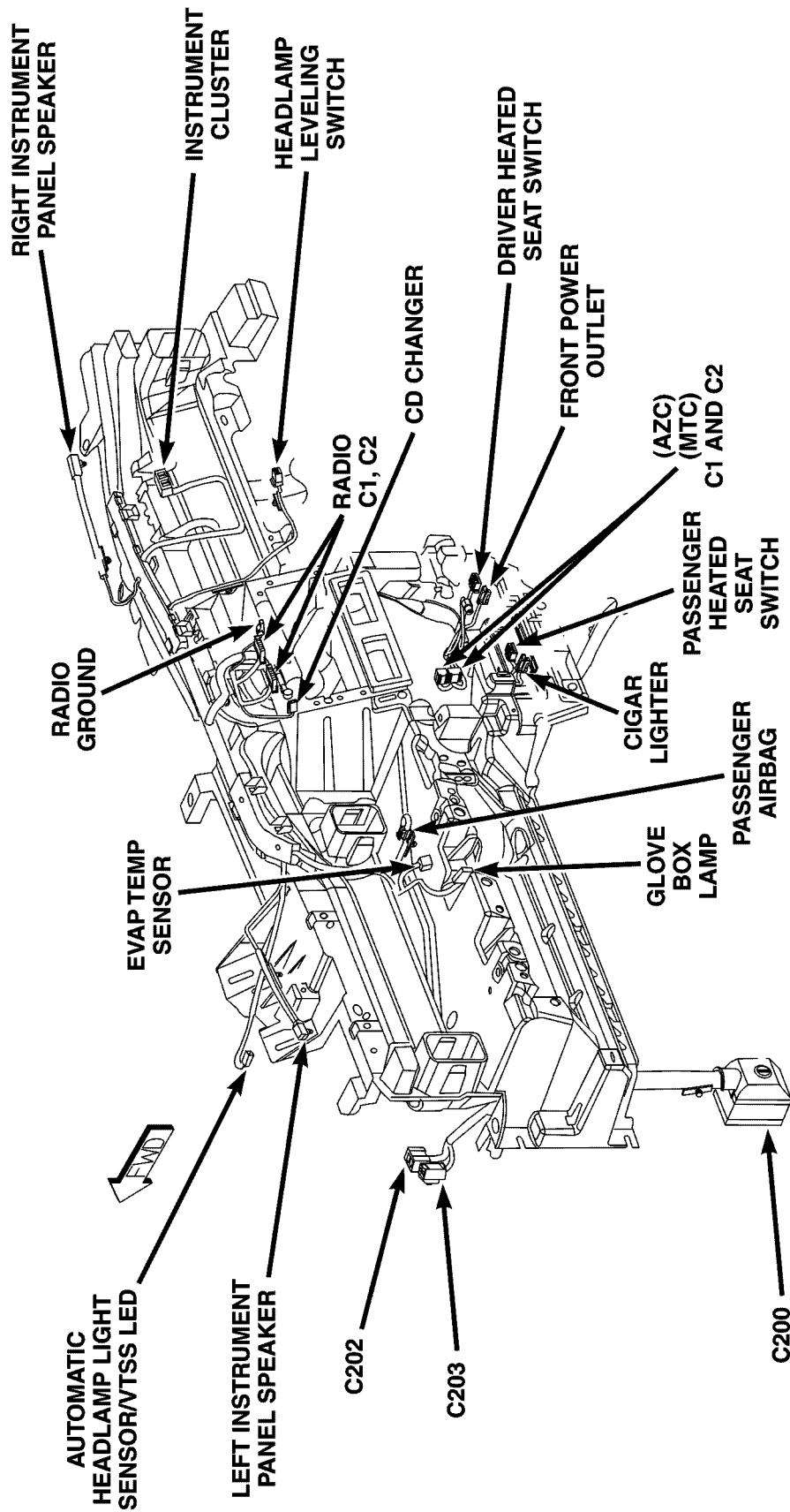
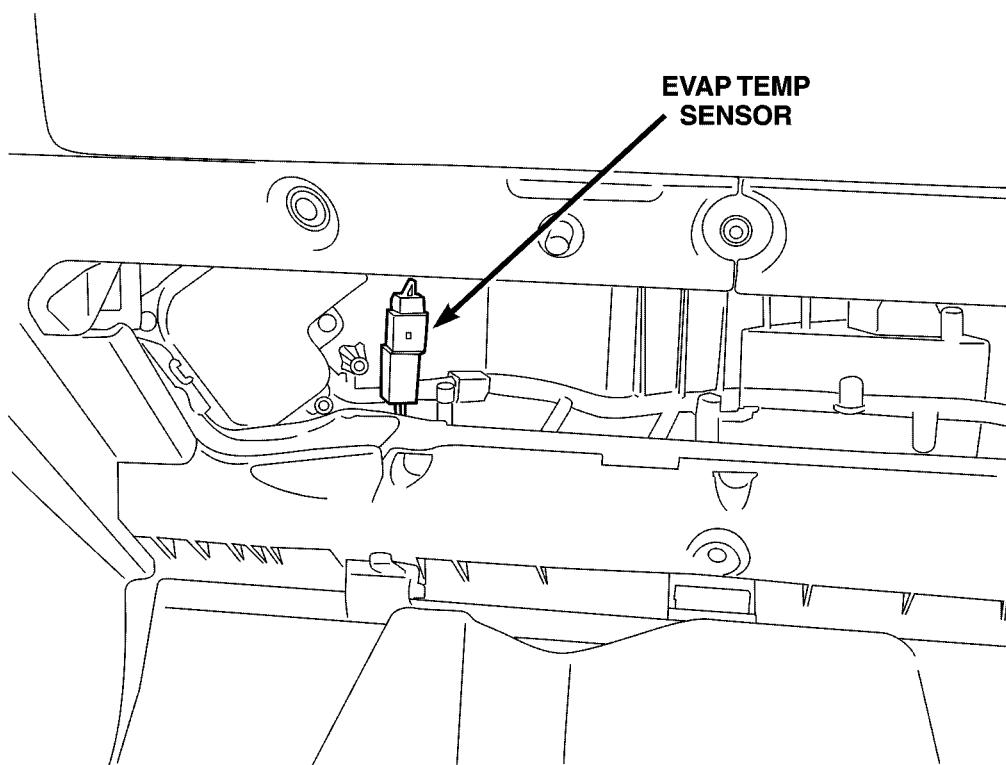


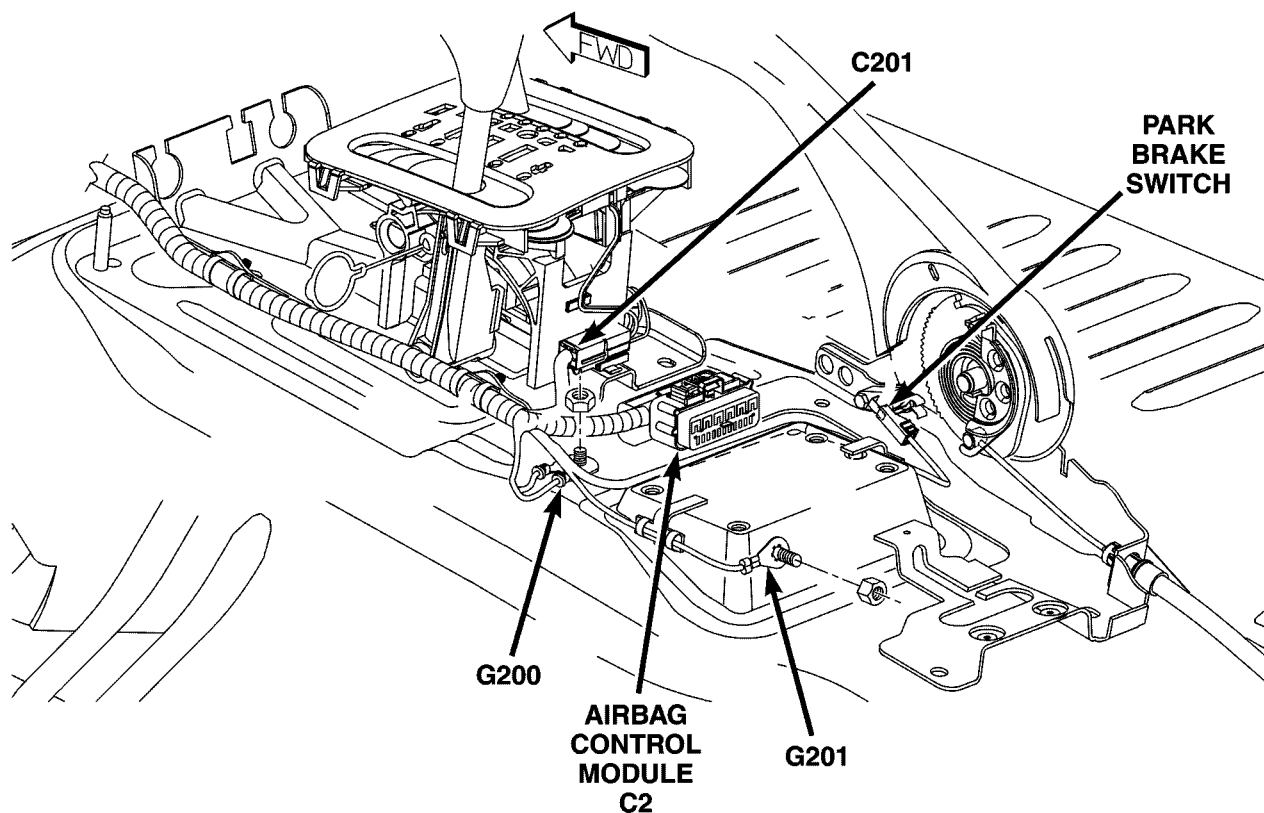
Fig. 25 INSTRUMENT PANEL FRONT RHD

CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)



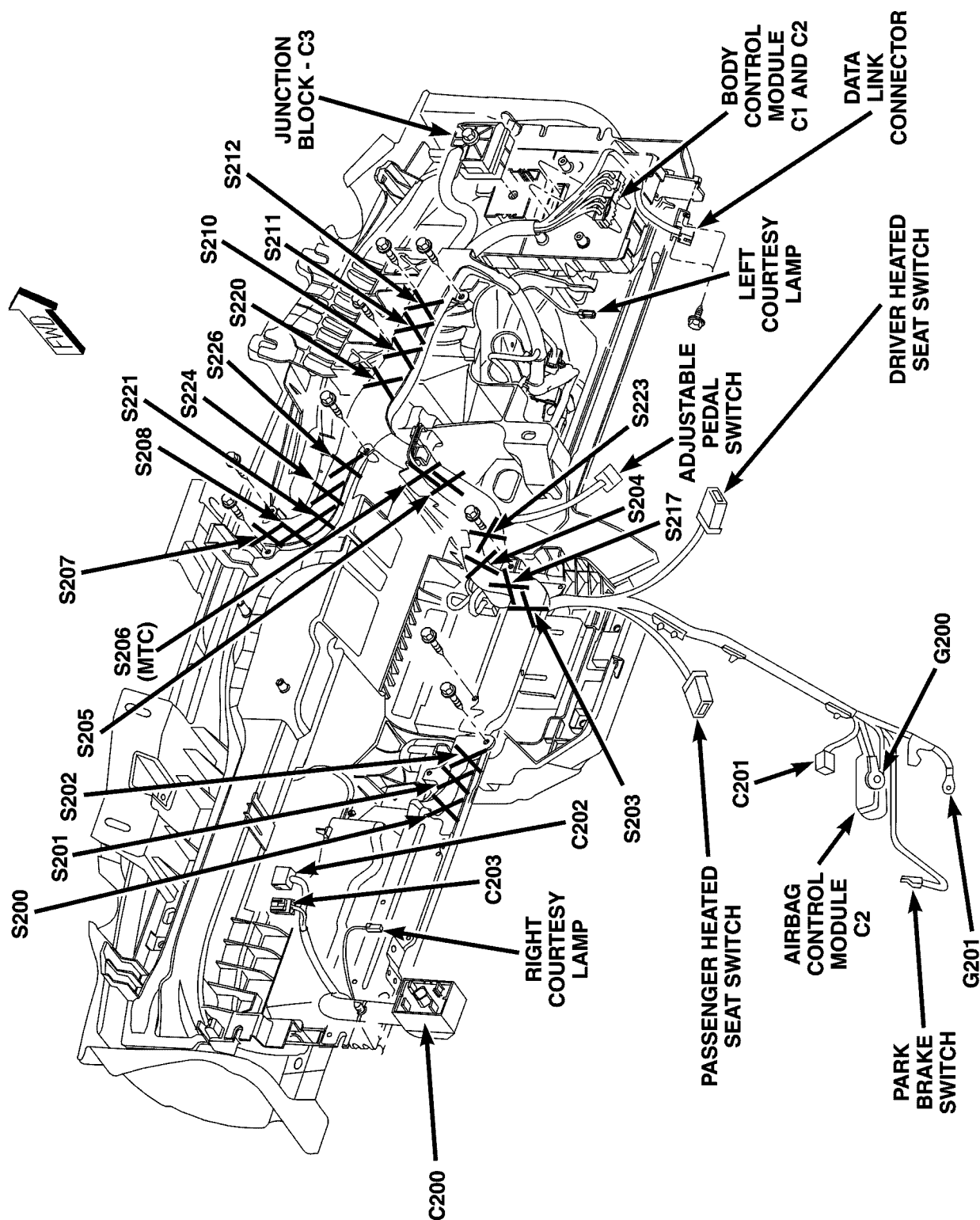
**Fig. 26 EVAP TEMP SENSOR**

810efe08



**Fig. 27 CONSOLE SHIFTER ASSEMBLY**

810f043b



**Fig. 28 INSTRUMENT PANEL REAR LHD**



CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)

81010500

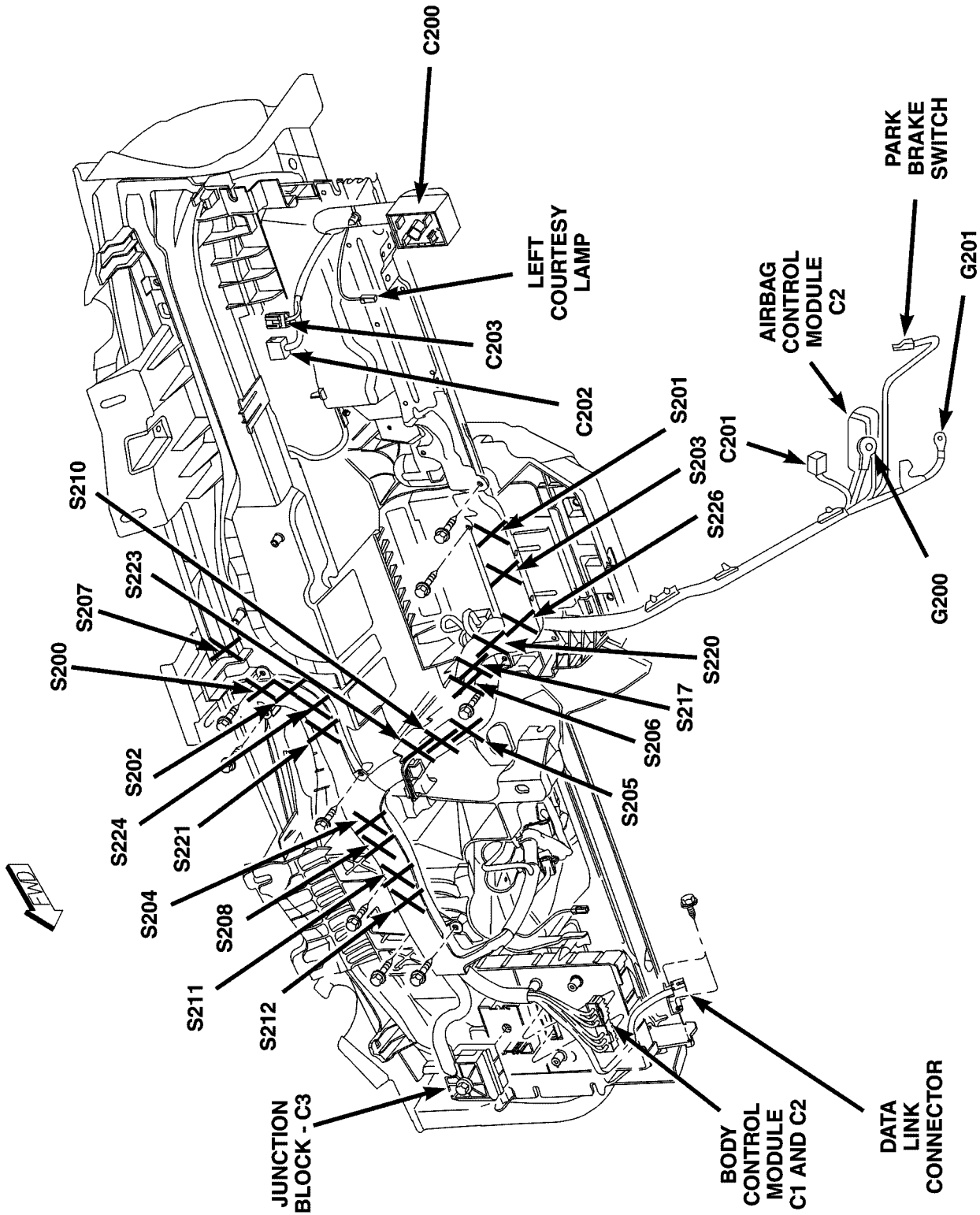
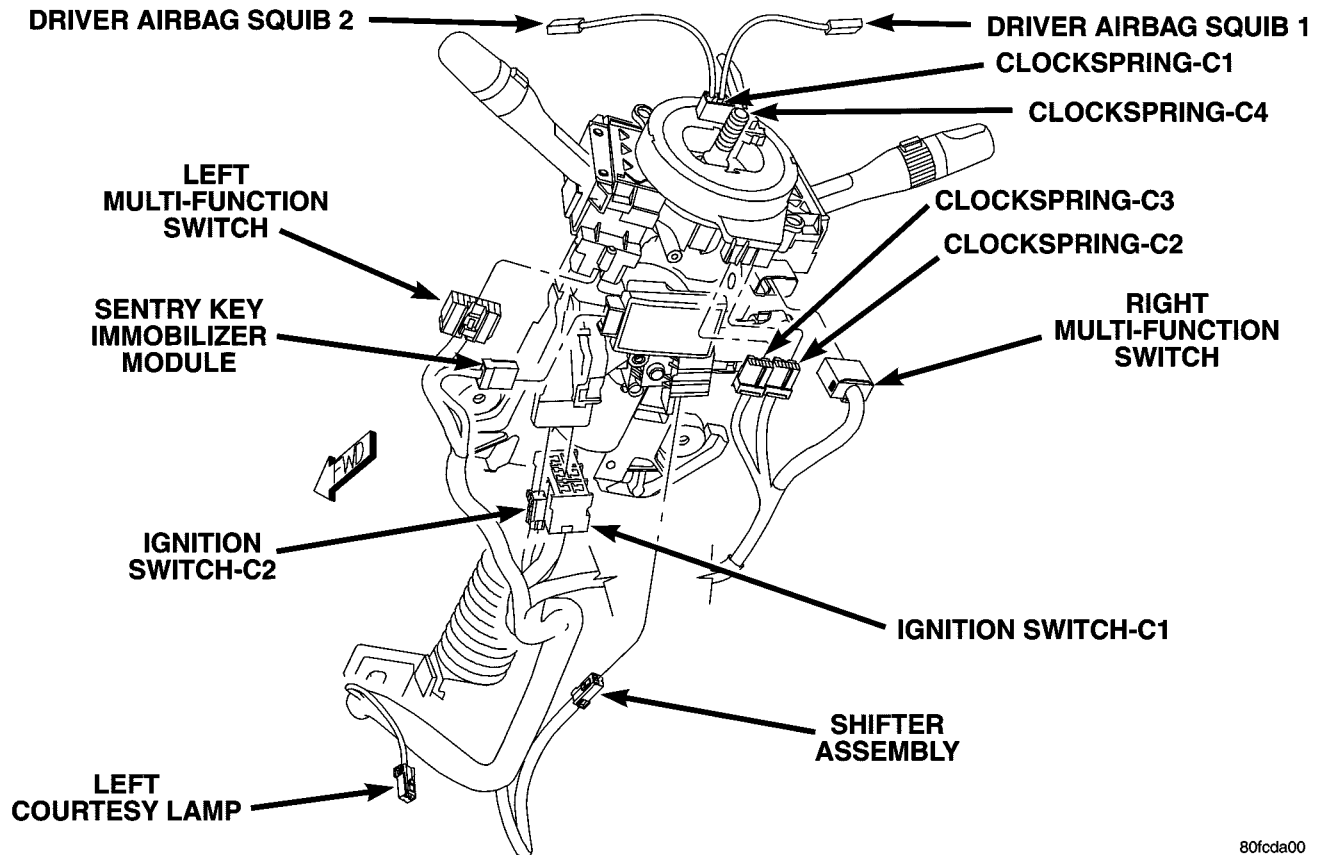


Fig. 29 INSTRUMENT PANEL REAR RHD

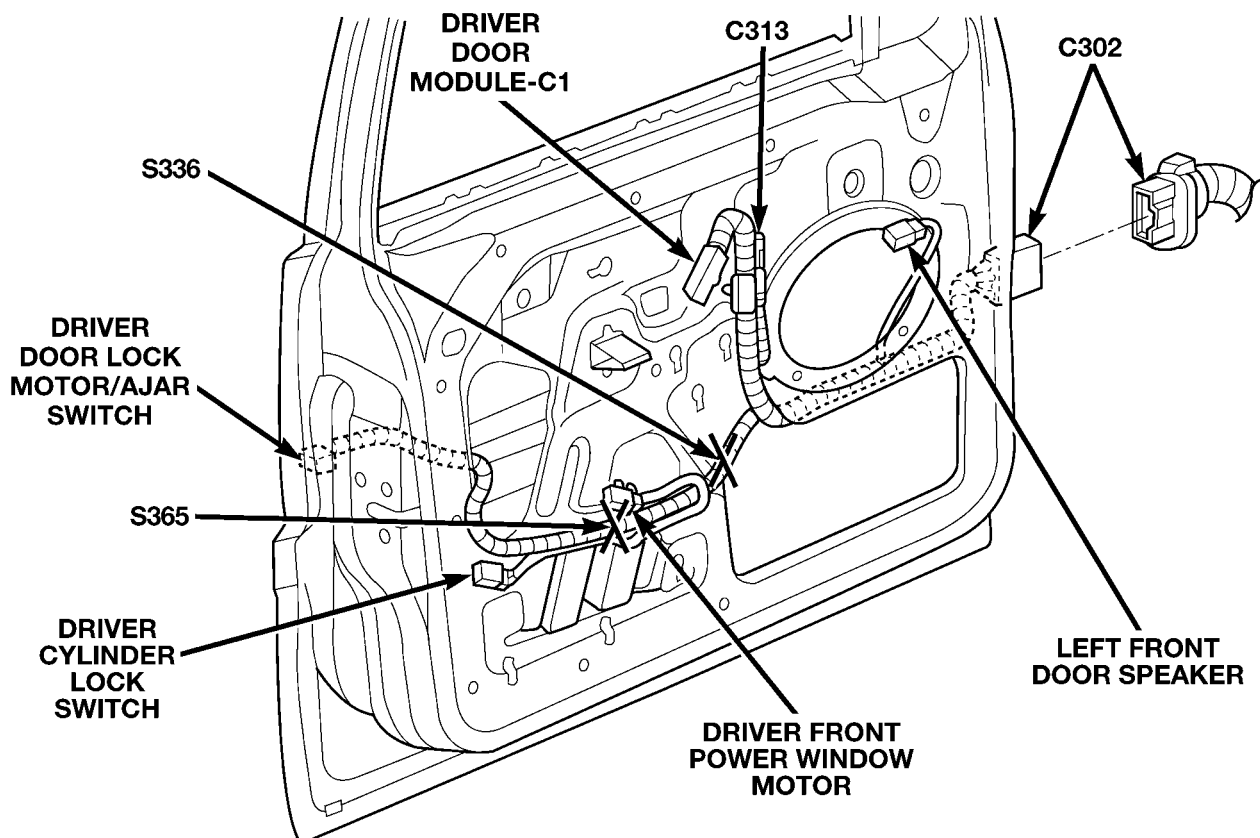


CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)



80fcd00

Fig. 30 STEERING COLUMN



80d19b8d

Fig. 31 DRIVER DOOR LHD

CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)

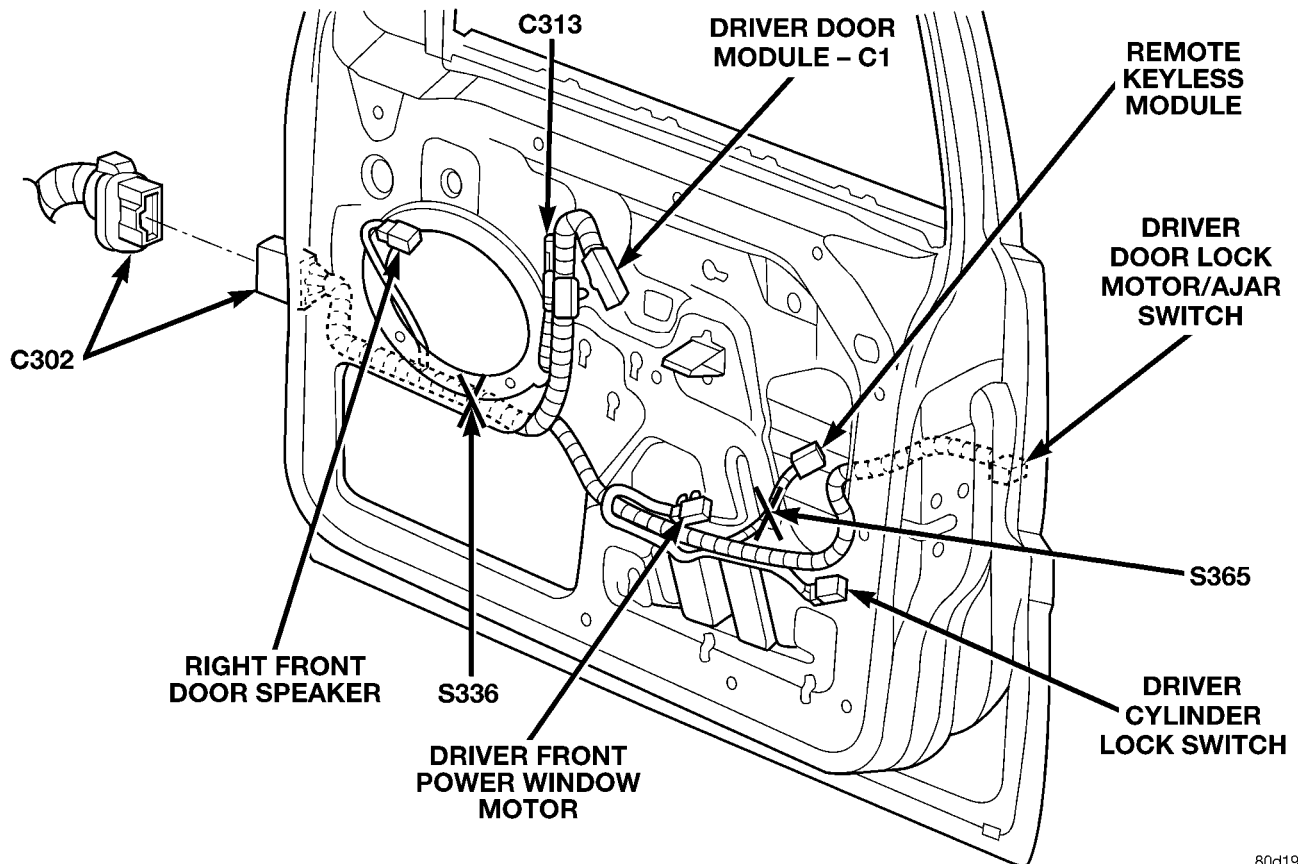


Fig. 32 DRIVER DOOR RHD

80d19b92

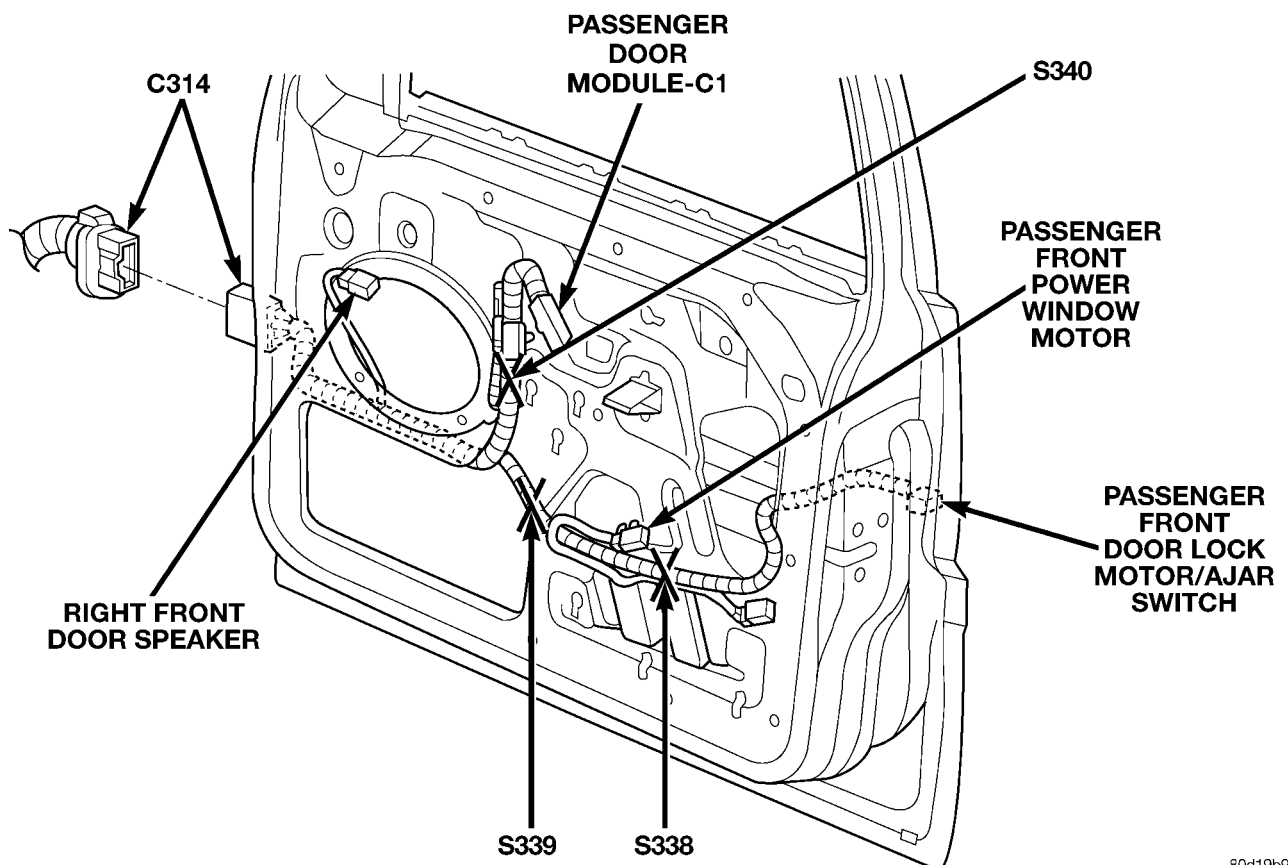
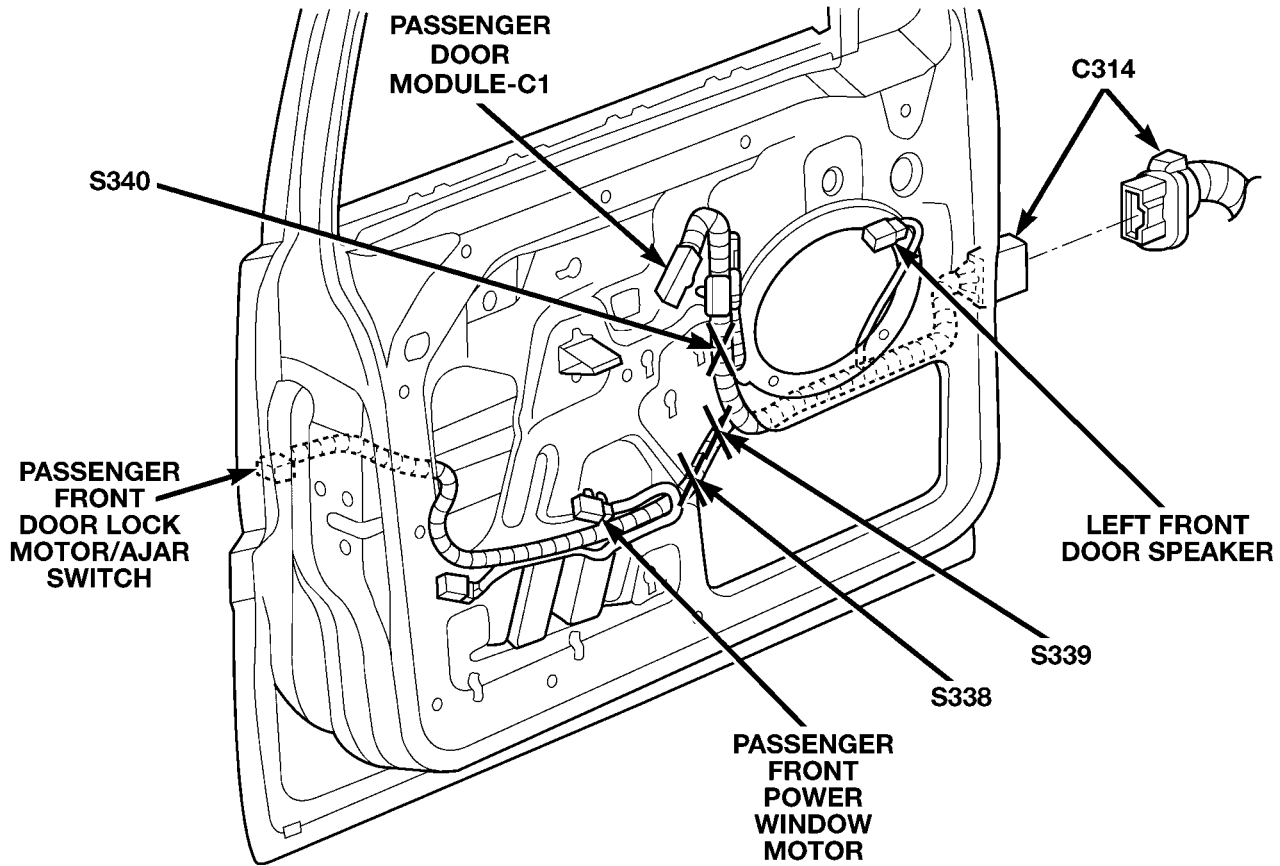


Fig. 33 PASSENGER DOOR LHD

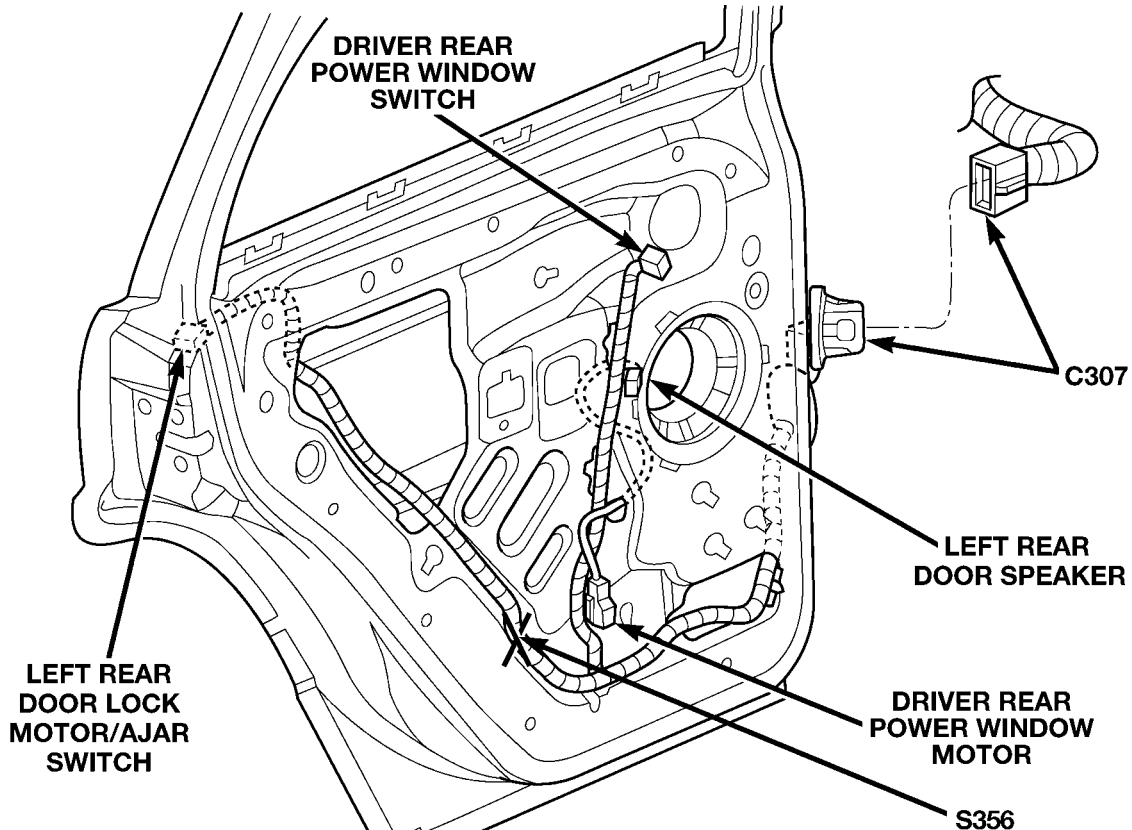
80d19b95

## CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)



80d19b9b

Fig. 34 PASSENGER DOOR RHD



80d19b9c

Fig. 35 LEFT REAR DOOR

CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)

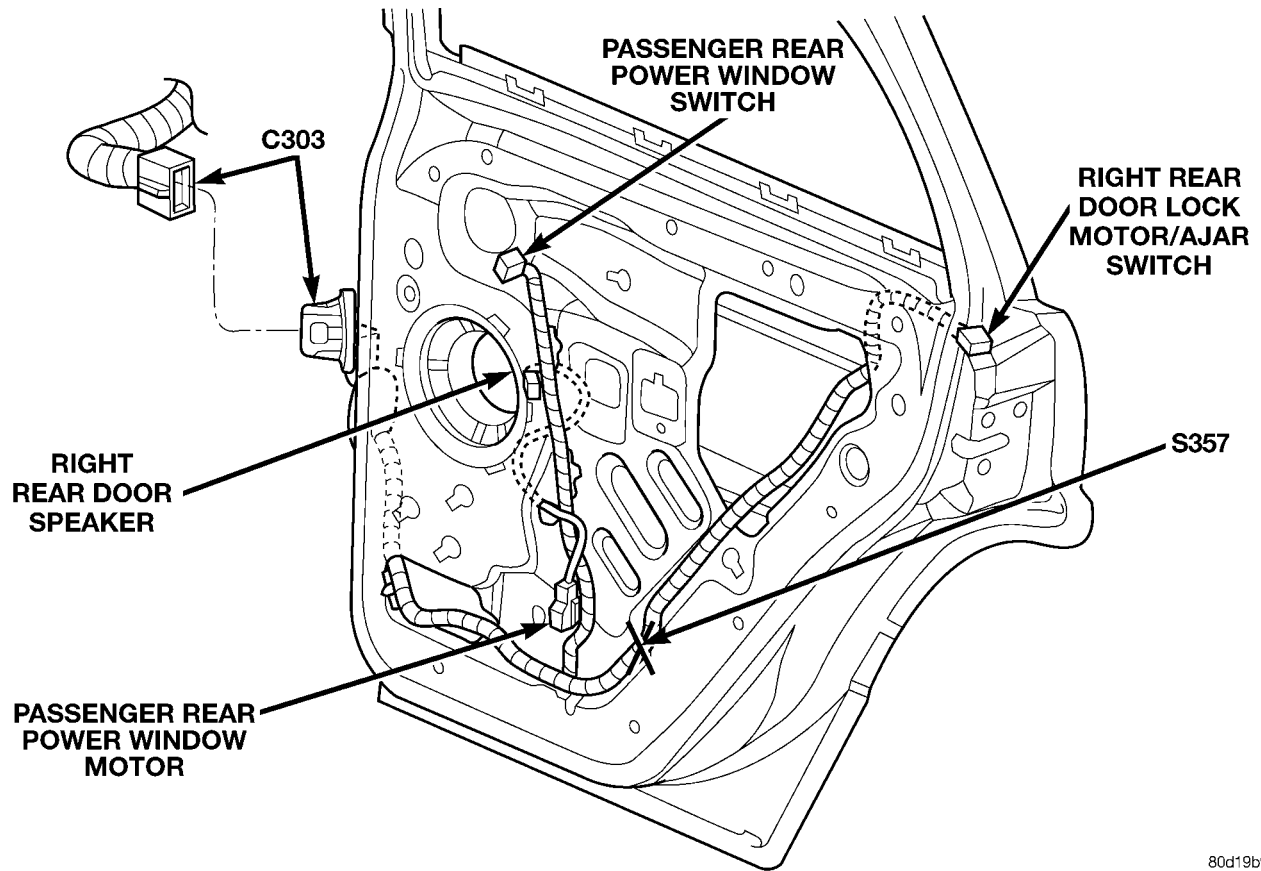


Fig. 36 RIGHT REAR DOOR

80d19b9d

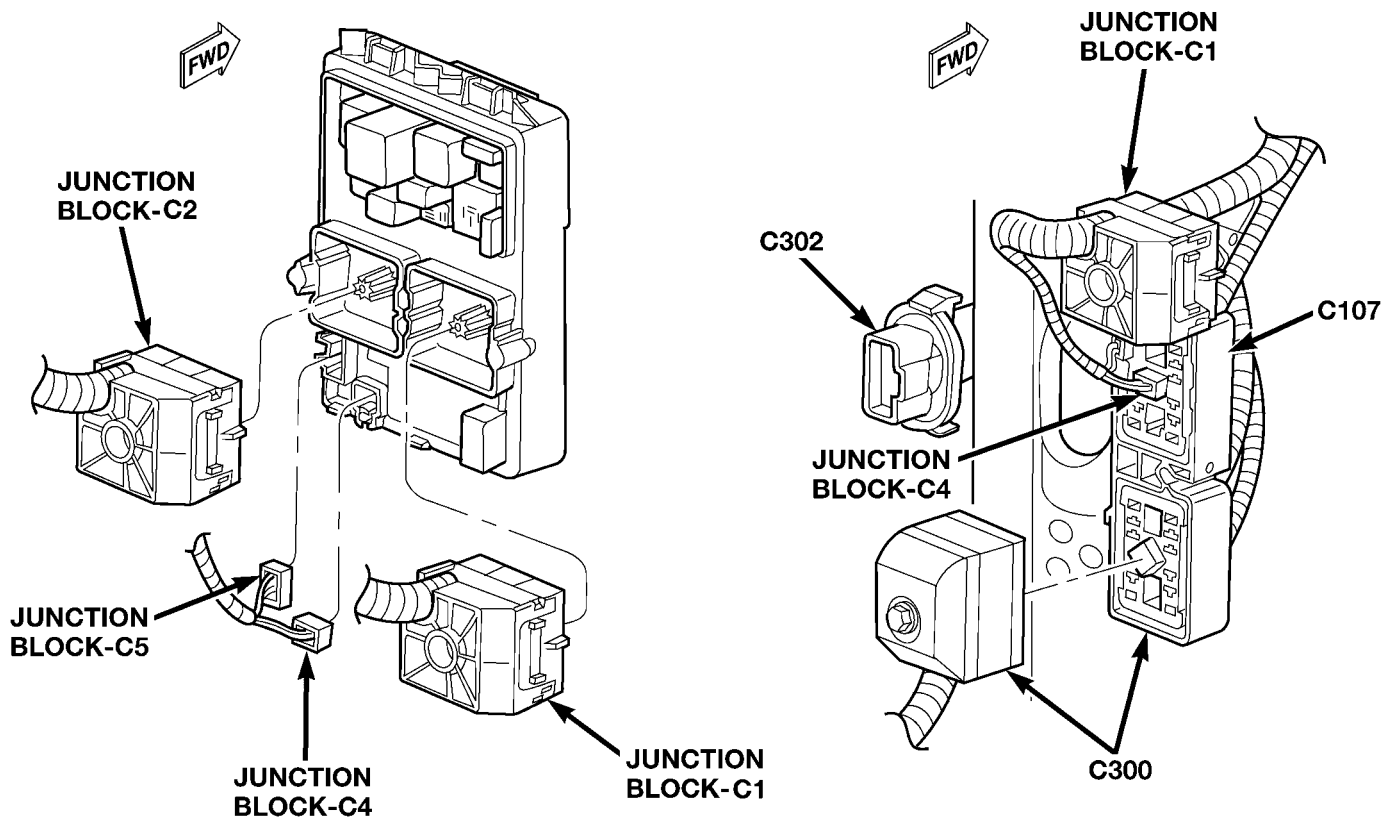


Fig. 37 KICK PANEL AREA LHD

80f9c8ba

## CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)

8108cea2

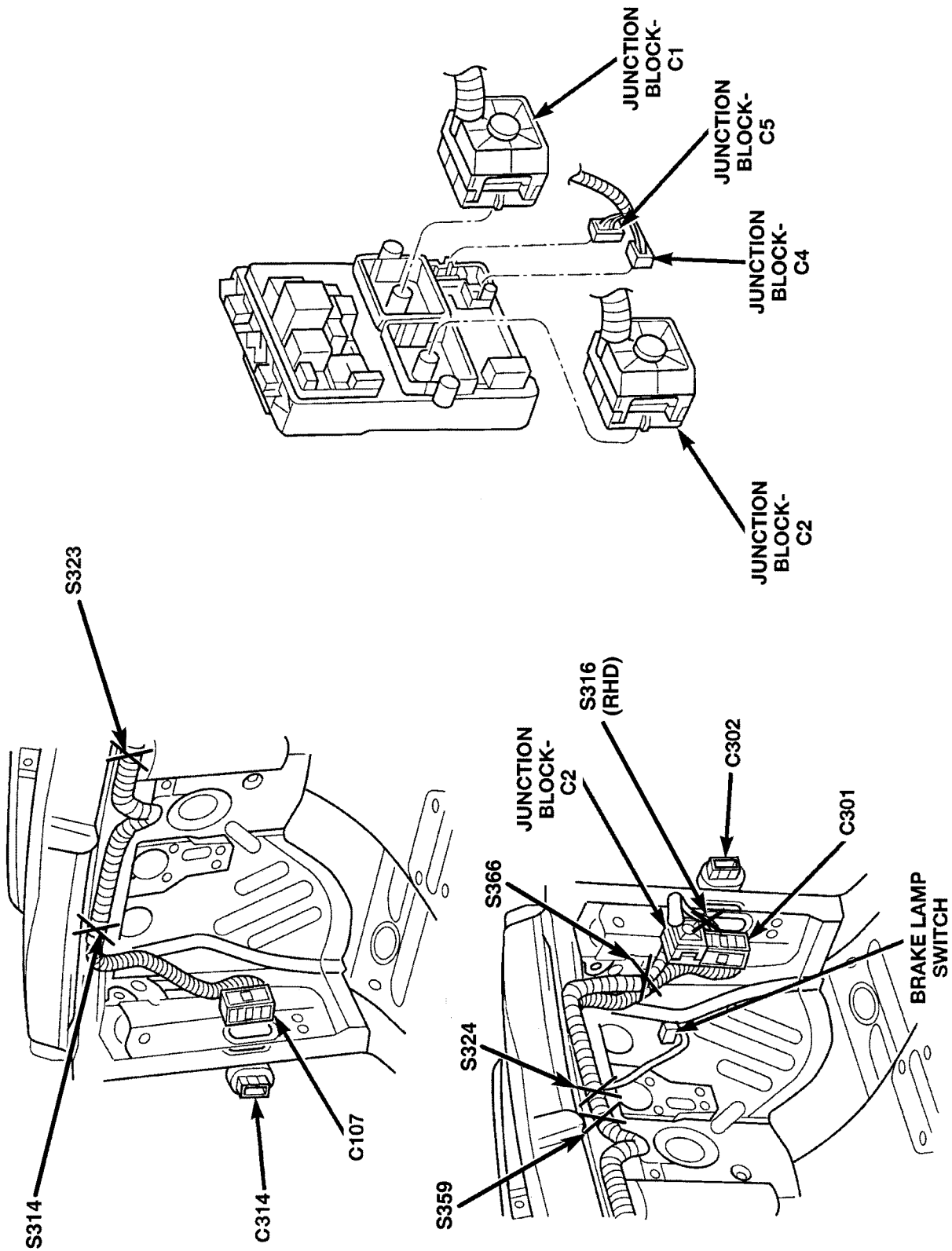


Fig. 38 KICK PANEL AREA RHD

CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)

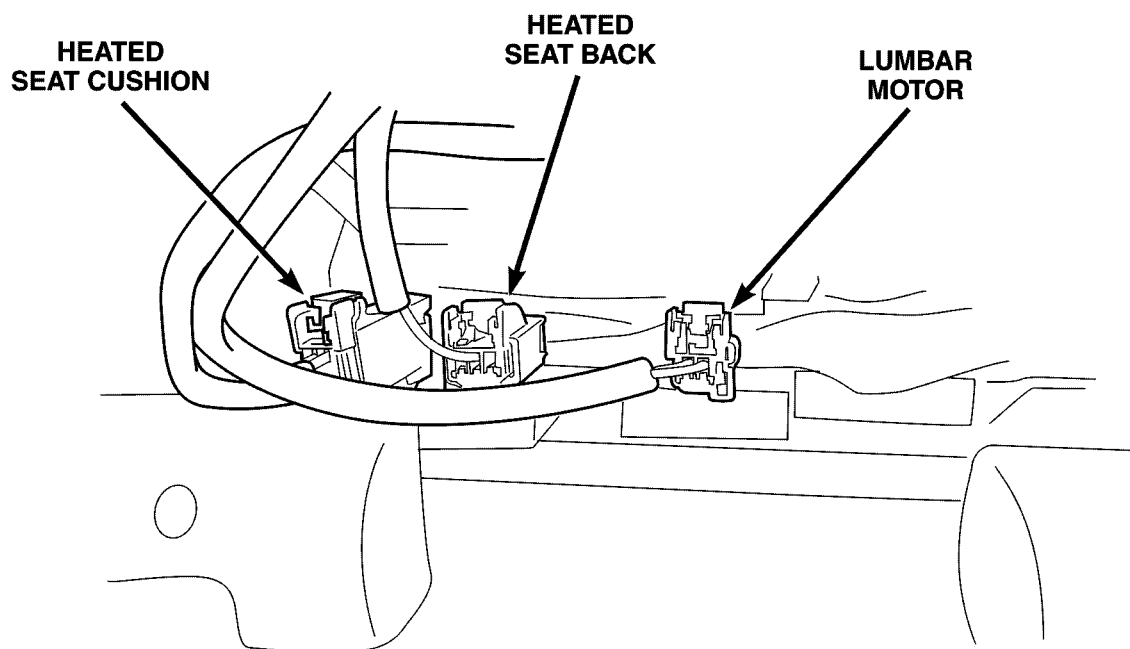


Fig. 39 POWER HEATED SEAT

810f05c4

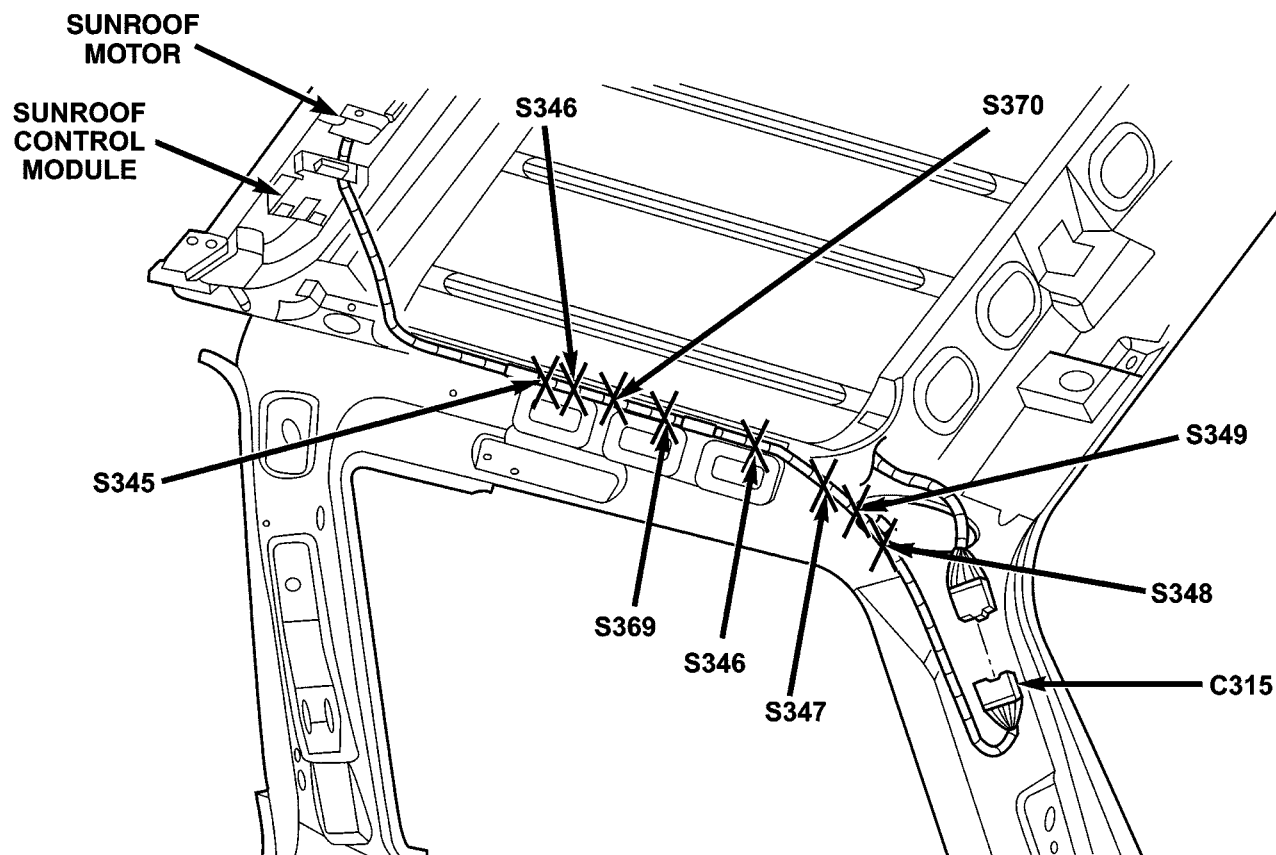
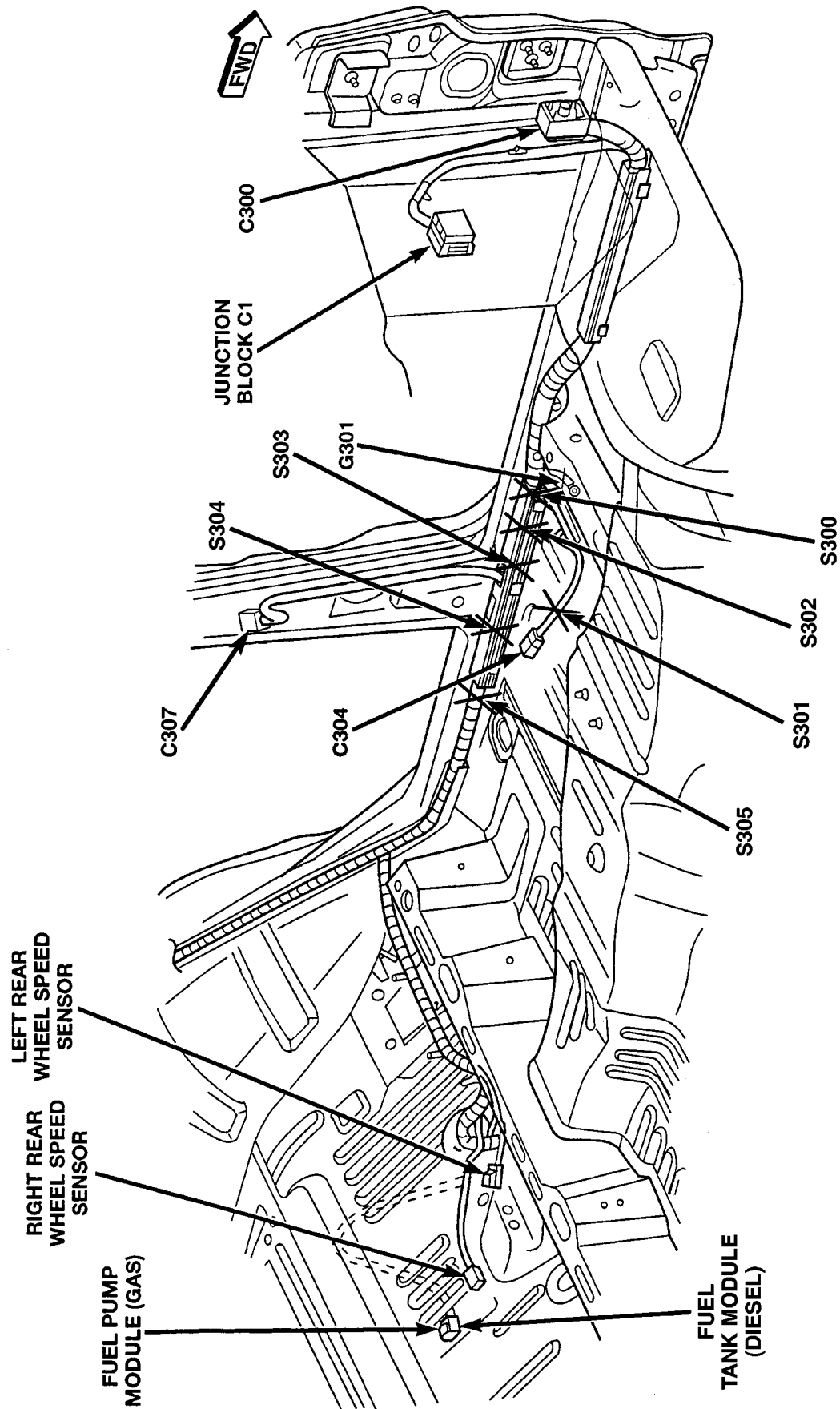


Fig. 40 ROOF AREA

80fcdaa4



## CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)



8108cea7

Fig. 41 BODY LEFT SIDE LHD



CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)

8108ceae

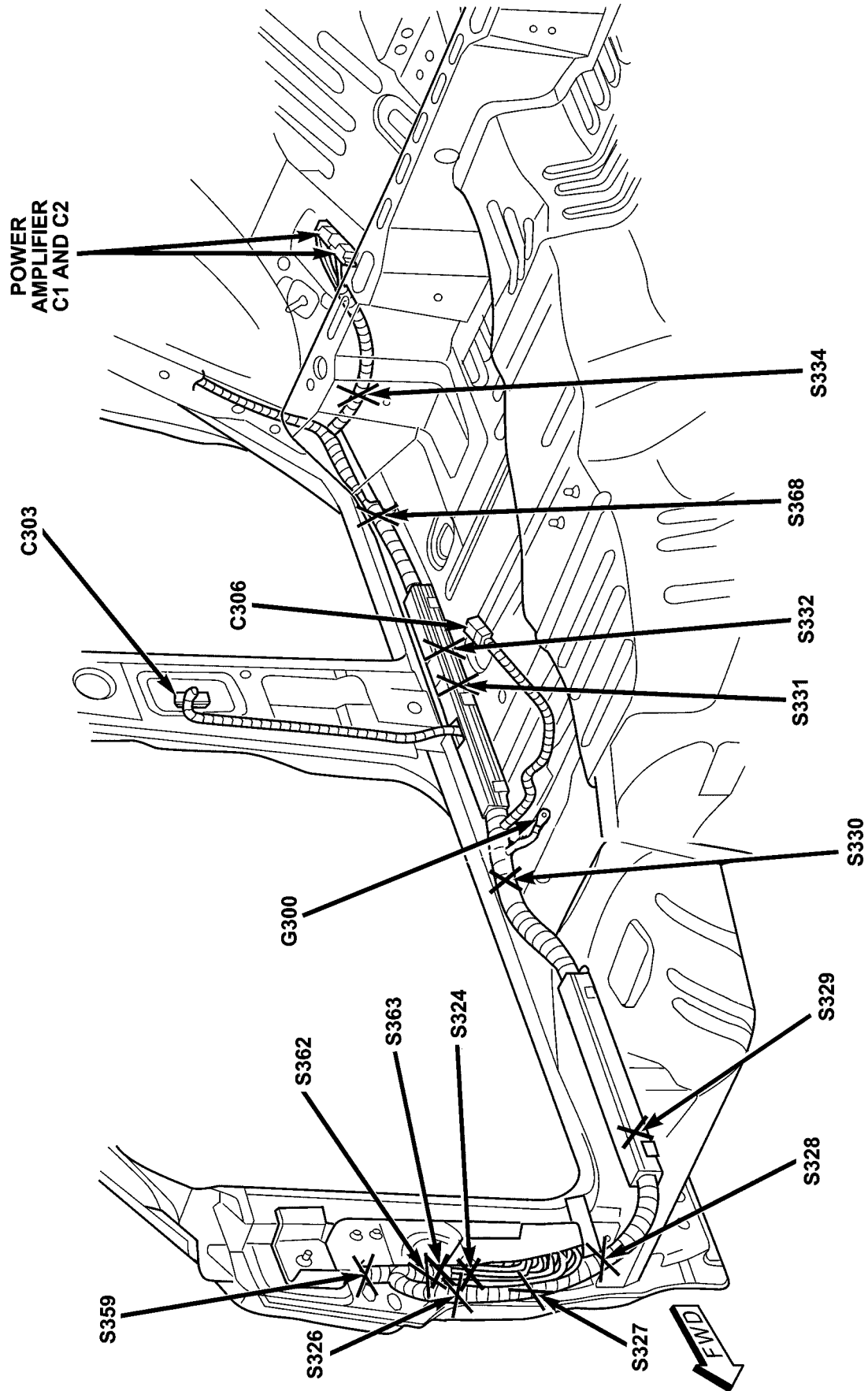


Fig. 42 BODY RIGHT SIDE LHD

CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)

8108cab2

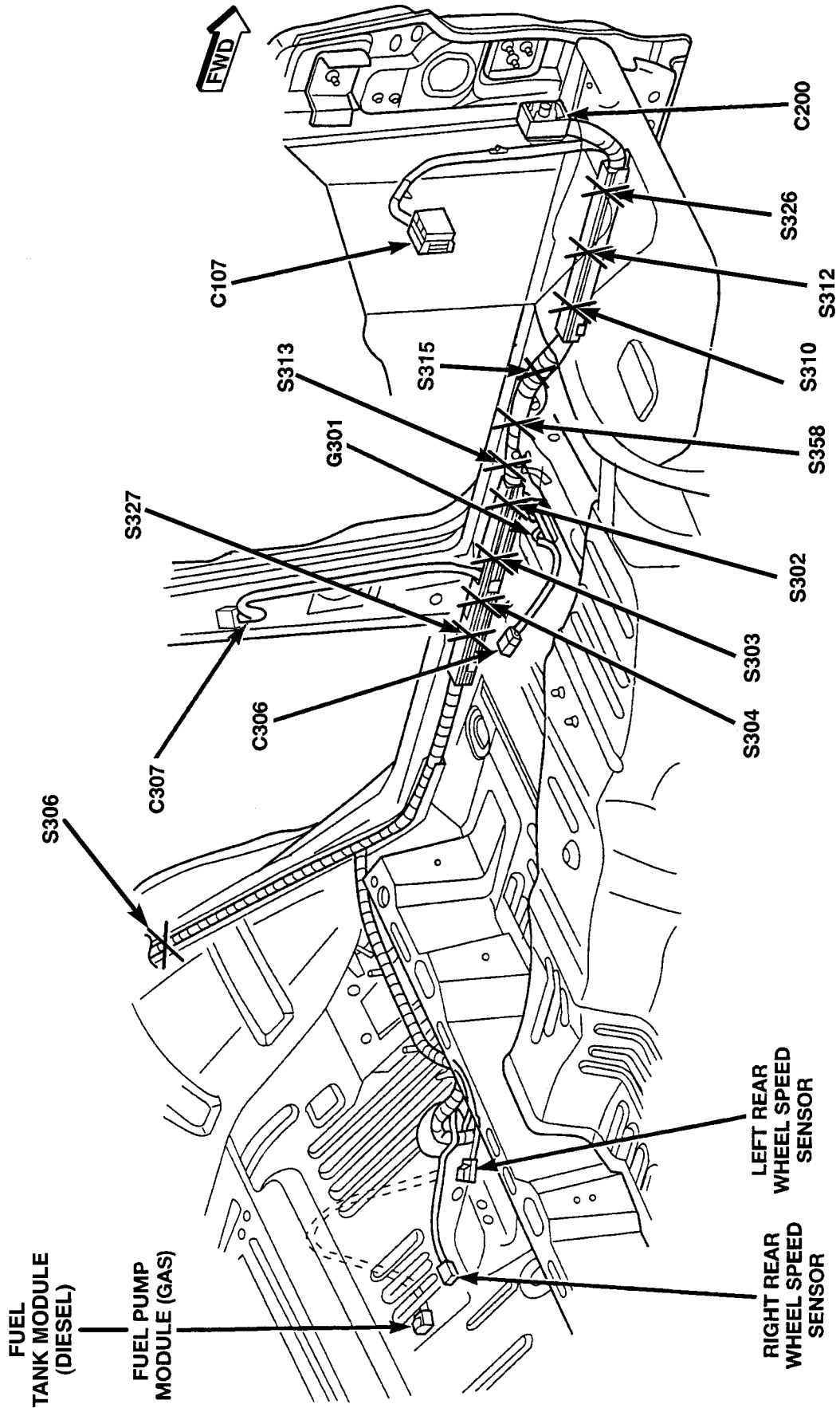


Fig. 43 BODY LEFT SIDE RHD

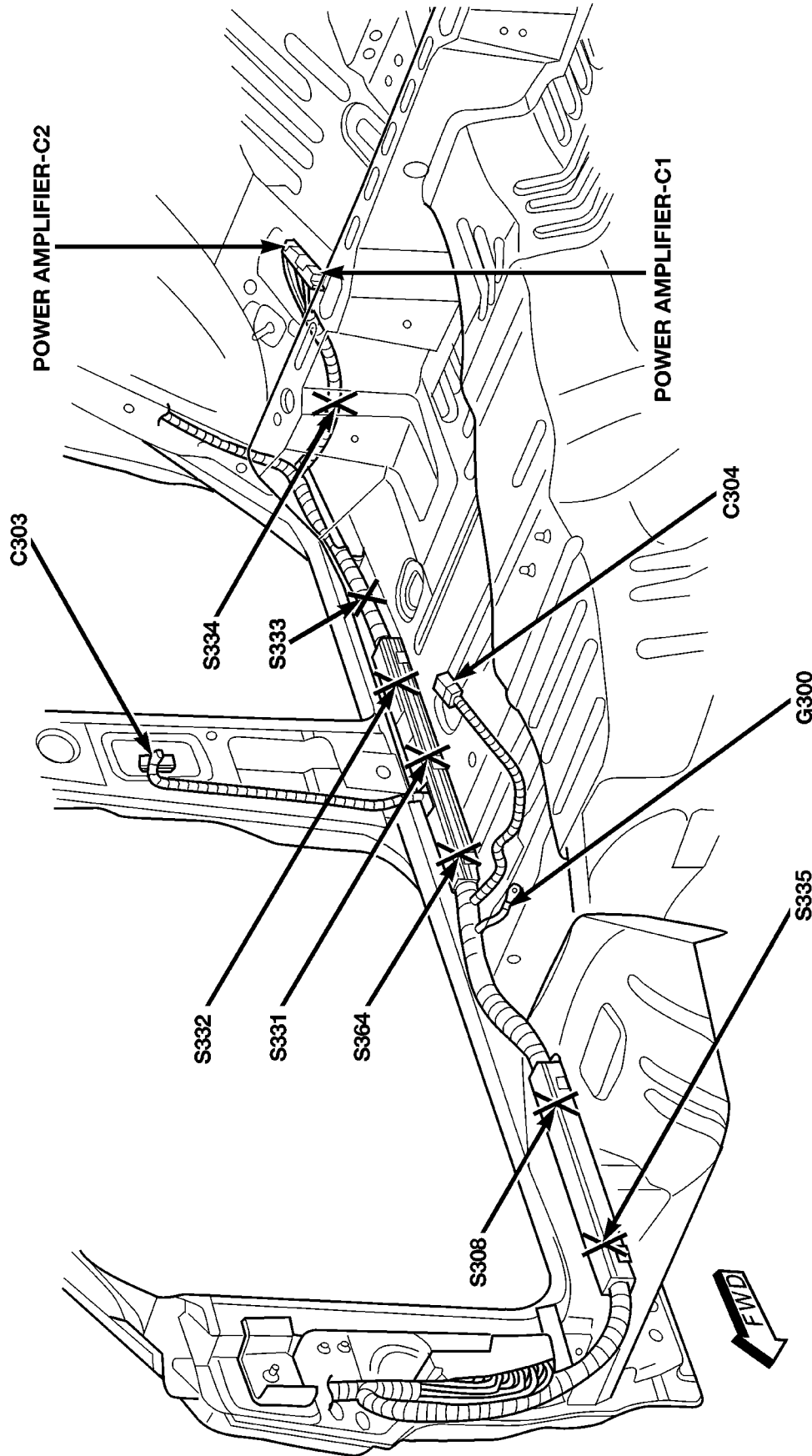


Fig. 44 BODY RIGHT SIDE RHD

## CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)

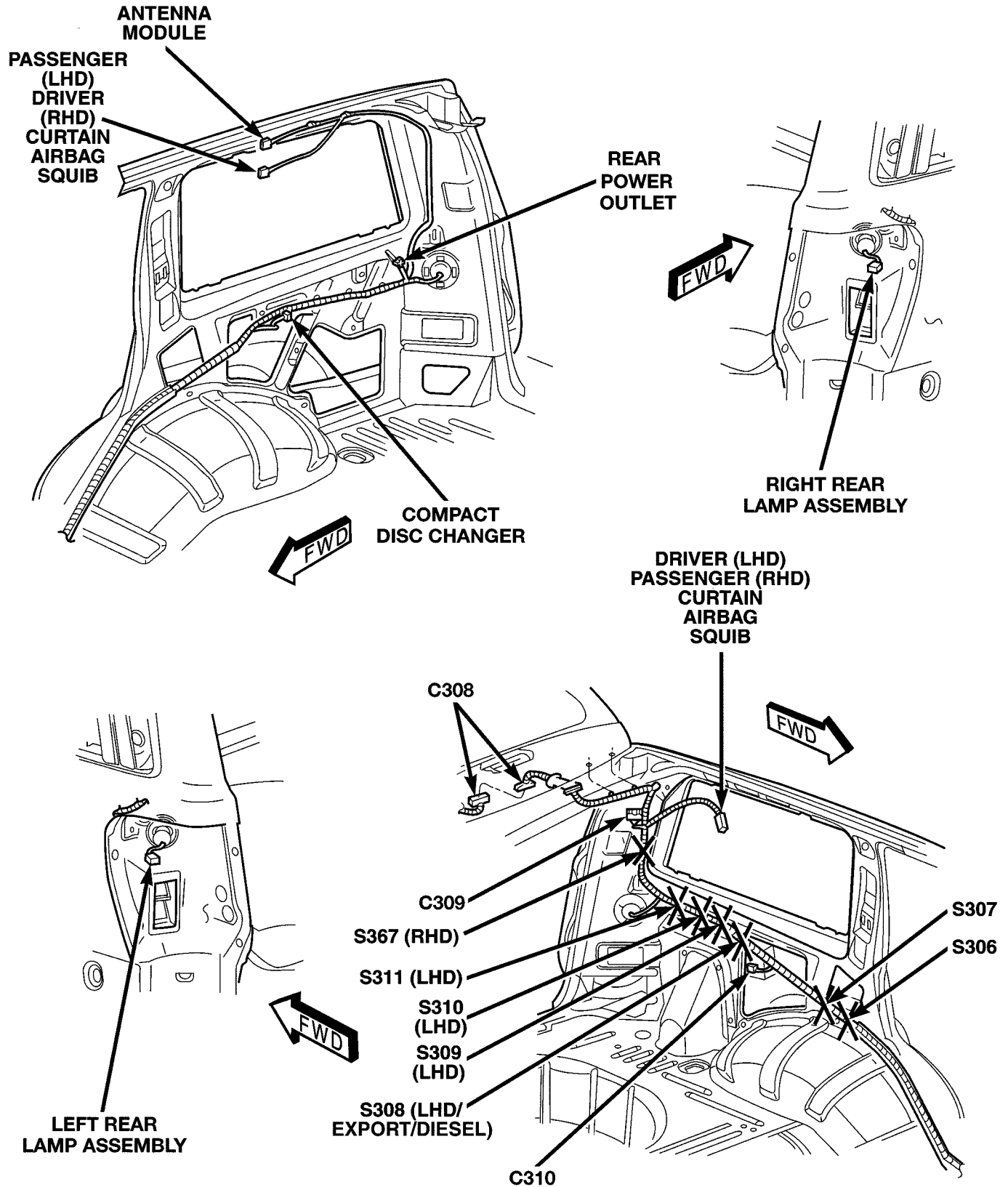


Fig. 45 BODY QUARTER PANELS

CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPLICE LOCATION (Continued)

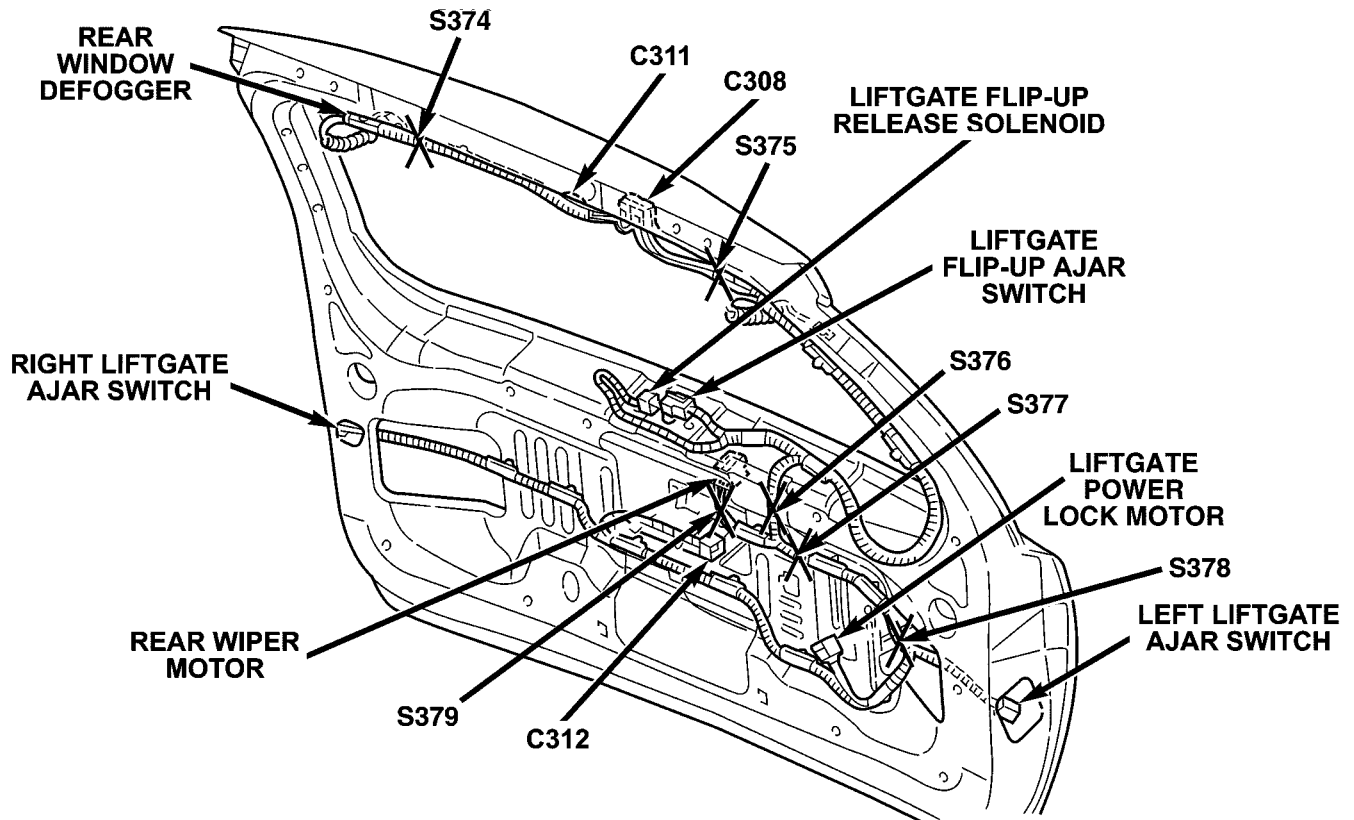


Fig. 46 LIFTGATE

810f0d0c

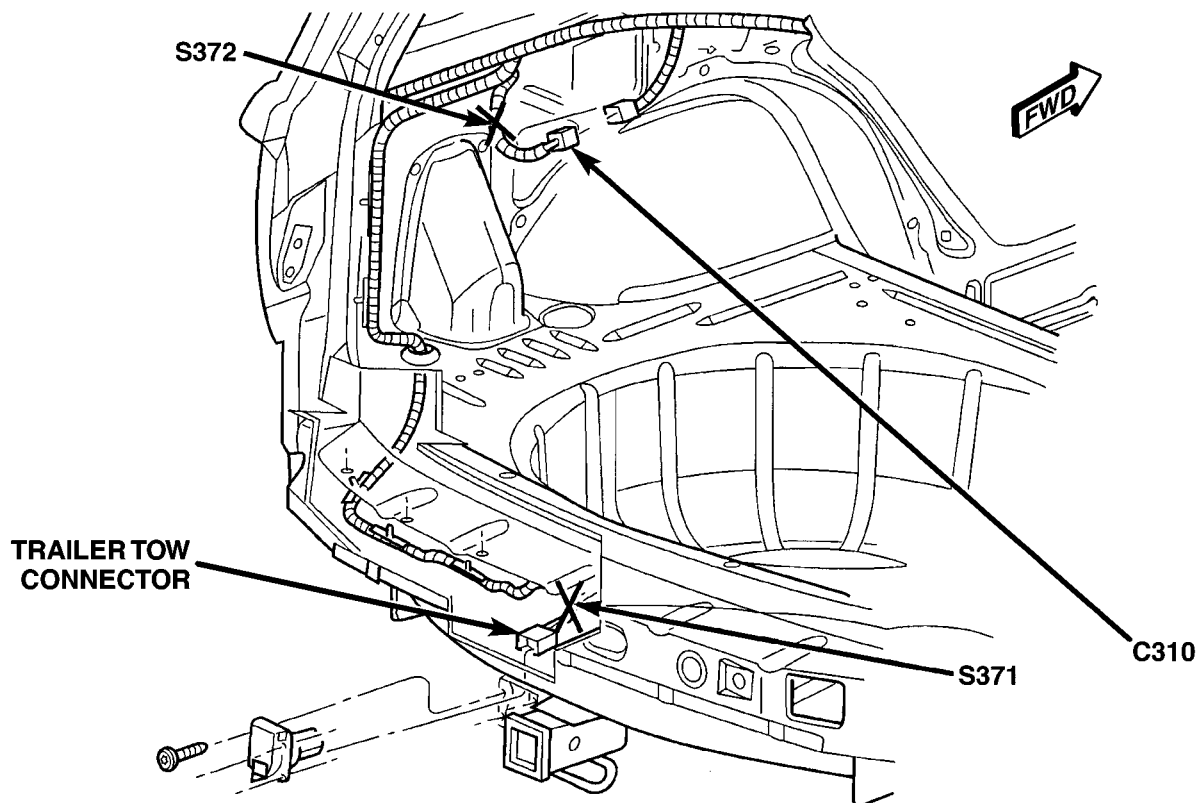


Fig. 47 TRAILER TOW

810f0d16



## 8W-97 POWER DISTRIBUTION

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>POWER DISTRIBUTION</b>		<b>ASSEMBLY</b>	
DESCRIPTION .....	1	POWER DISTRIBUTION CENTER	
OPERATION .....	1	ASSEMBLY .....	10
SPECIAL TOOLS		INSTALLATION .....	11
POWER DISTRIBUTION SYSTEMS .....	2	<b>POWER OUTLET</b>	
<b>CIGAR LIGHTER OUTLET</b>		DESCRIPTION - FRONT POWER OUTLET ....	12
DESCRIPTION .....	2	OPERATION - FRONT POWER OUTLET .....	12
OPERATION .....	2	DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - POWER OUTLET .	12
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - CIGAR LIGHTER		REMOVAL .....	12
OUTLET .....	2	INSTALLATION .....	13
<b>CIGAR LIGHTER OUTLET DOOR SPRING</b>		<b>POWER OUTLET RELAY</b>	
REMOVAL .....	3	DESCRIPTION .....	13
INSTALLATION .....	3	OPERATION .....	13
<b>IOD FUSE</b>		DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - POWER OUTLET	
DESCRIPTION .....	3	RELAY .....	13
OPERATION .....	4	REMOVAL .....	14
REMOVAL .....	4	INSTALLATION .....	14
INSTALLATION .....	4	<b>IOD WIRE HARNESS CONNECTOR</b>	
<b>JUNCTION BLOCK</b>		DESCRIPTION .....	15
DESCRIPTION .....	4	OPERATION .....	15
OPERATION .....	5	<b>FUSE COVER</b>	
REMOVAL .....	5	REMOVAL .....	15
INSTALLATION .....	6	INSTALLATION .....	16
<b>POWER DISTRIBUTION CENTER</b>		<b>REAR POWER OUTLET</b>	
DESCRIPTION .....	7	DESCRIPTION - REAR POWER OUTLET .....	16
OPERATION .....	7	OPERATION - REAR POWER OUTLET .....	16
REMOVAL .....	7	DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - REAR POWER	
DISASSEMBLY		OUTLET .....	17
POWER DISTRIBUTION CENTER		REMOVAL .....	17
DISASSEMBLY .....	8	INSTALLATION .....	18

## POWER DISTRIBUTION

## DESCRIPTION

This group covers the various standard and optional power distribution components used on this model. The power distribution system for this vehicle consists of the following components:

- Power Distribution Center (PDC)
- Junction Block (JB)
- Power Outlets

The power distribution system also incorporates various types of circuit control and protection features, including:

- Automatic resetting circuit breakers
- Blade-type fuses
- Bus bars
- Cartridge fuses

- Circuit splice blocks
- Flashers
- Fusible links
- Standard and Micro-Relays

Following are general descriptions of the major components in the power distribution system. See the owner's manual in the vehicle glove box for more information on the features and use of all of the power distribution system components. Refer to Wiring Diagrams for complete circuit diagrams.

## OPERATION

The power distribution system for this vehicle is designed to provide safe, reliable, and centralized distribution points for the electrical current required to operate all of the standard and optional factory-installed electrical and electronic powertrain, chassis, safety, security, comfort and convenience systems. At

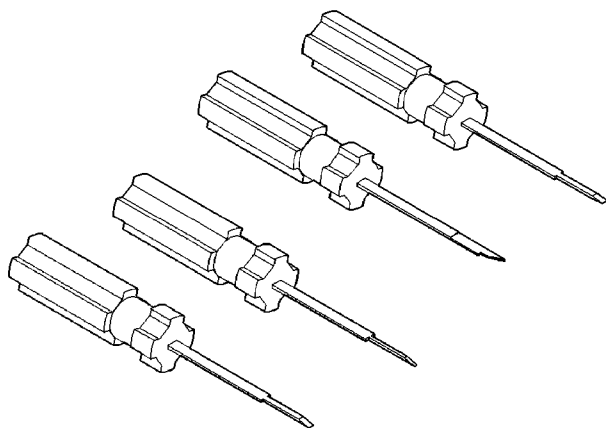


## POWER DISTRIBUTION (Continued)

the same time, the power distribution system was designed to provide ready access to these electrical distribution points for the vehicle technician to use when conducting diagnosis and repair of faulty circuits. The power distribution system can also prove useful for the sourcing of additional electrical circuits that may be required to provide the electrical current needed to operate accessories that the vehicle owner may choose to have installed in the aftermarket.

## SPECIAL TOOLS

## POWER DISTRIBUTION SYSTEMS



*Terminal Pick Kit 6680*

## CIGAR LIGHTER OUTLET

## DESCRIPTION

A cigar lighter outlet is standard equipment on this model. On models equipped with the optional Smoker's Package, the cigar lighter knob and heating element are included. On models without the Smoker's Package, the cigar lighter outlet is equipped with a snap fit plastic cap and is treated as an extra accessory power outlet. The cigar lighter outlet is installed in the instrument panel center lower bezel, which is located near the bottom of the instrument panel center stack area, below the heater and air conditioner controls. The cigar lighter outlet is secured by a snap fit within the center lower bezel.

The cigar lighter outlet, plastic cap and the knob and heating element unit are available for service replacement. These components cannot be repaired and, if faulty or damaged, they must be replaced.

## OPERATION

The cigar lighter consists of two major components: a knob and heating element unit, and the cigar lighter base or outlet shell. The receptacle shell is connected to ground, and an insulated contact in the bottom of the shell is connected to battery current.

The cigar lighter receives battery voltage from a fuse in the junction block when the ignition switch is in the Accessory or On positions.

The cigar lighter knob and heating element are encased within a spring-loaded housing, which also features a sliding protective heat shield. When the knob and heating element are inserted in the outlet shell, the heating element resistor coil is grounded through its housing to the outlet shell. If the cigar lighter knob is pushed inward, the heat shield slides up toward the knob exposing the heating element, and the heating element extends from the housing toward the insulated contact in the bottom of the outlet shell.

Two small spring-clip retainers are located on either side of the insulated contact inside the bottom of the outlet shell. These clips engage and hold the heating element against the insulated contact long enough for the resistor coil to heat up. When the heating element is engaged with the contact, battery current can flow through the resistor coil to ground, causing the resistor coil to heat.

When the resistor coil becomes sufficiently heated, excess heat radiates from the heating element causing the spring-clips to expand. Once the spring-clips expand far enough to release the heating element, the spring-loaded housing forces the knob and heating element to pop back outward to their relaxed position. When the cigar lighter knob and element are pulled out of the outlet shell, the protective heat shield slides downward on the housing so that the heating element is recessed and shielded around its circumference for safety.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - CIGAR LIGHTER OUTLET

For complete circuit diagrams, refer to **Horn/Cigar Lighter/Power Outlet** in Wiring Diagrams.

(1) Check the fused B(+) fuse in the junction block. If OK, go to Step 2. If not OK, repair the shorted circuit or component as required and replace the faulty fuse.

(2) Turn the ignition switch to the On position. Check for battery voltage at the fused B(+) fuse in the junction block. If OK, go to Step 3. If not OK, repair the open or short as required.

(3) Remove the cigar lighter knob and element from the cigar lighter outlet shell. Check for continuity between the inside circumference of the cigar lighter outlet shell and a good ground. There should be continuity. If OK, go to Step 4. If not OK, go to Step 5.

(4) Turn the ignition switch to the On position. Check for battery voltage at the insulated contact located at the back of the cigar lighter outlet shell. If

## CIGAR LIGHTER OUTLET (Continued)

OK, replace the faulty cigar lighter knob and element. If not OK, go to Step 5.

(5) Turn the ignition switch to the Off position. Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Remove the instrument panel center lower bezel. Check for continuity between the ground circuit cavity of the cigar lighter wire harness connector and a good ground. There should be continuity. If OK, go to Step 6. If not OK, repair the open ground circuit to ground as required.

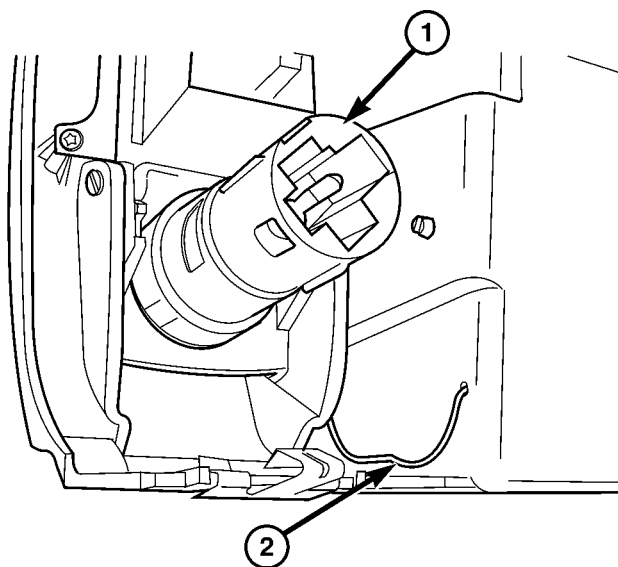
(6) Connect the battery negative cable. Turn the ignition switch to the Accessory or On positions. Check for battery voltage at the fused B(+) circuit cavity of the cigar lighter wire harness connector. If OK, replace the faulty cigar lighter outlet. If not OK, repair the open fused B(+) circuit to the junction block fuse as required.

CIGAR LIGHTER OUTLET  
DOOR SPRING

## REMOVAL

(1) Disconnect and isolate the negative battery cable.

(2) Remove the instrument panel center lower bezel from the I.P. Refer to Body for the procedure.



80950645

**Fig. 1 Cigar Lighter Outlet Door Spring**

- 1 - CIGAR LIGHTER OUTLET
- 2 - CIGAR LIGHTER OUTLET DOOR SPRING

(3) Remove the cigar lighter outlet door spring from its locating holes (Fig. 1).

## INSTALLATION

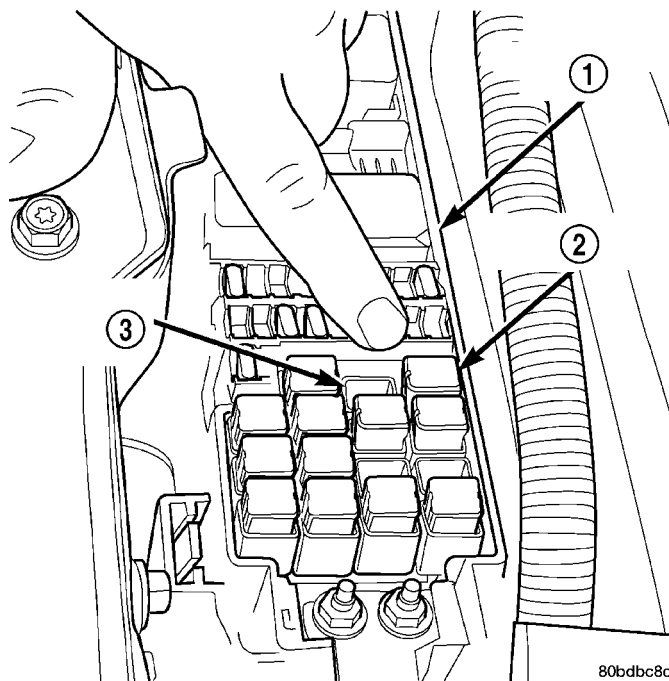
(1) Install the cigar outlet door spring in its locating holes.

(2) Install the instrument panel center lower bezel on the I.P. Refer to Body for the procedure.

(3) Connect the negative battery cable.

## IOD FUSE

## DESCRIPTION



80bdbc8c

**Fig. 2 Ignition-Off Draw Fuse**

- 1 - POWER DISTRIBUTION CENTER
- 2 - IGNITION-OFF DRAW FUSE
- 3 - IOD FUSE STORAGE CAVITY

All vehicles are equipped with an Ignition-Off Draw (IOD) fuse (Fig. 2) that is removed from its cavity in the Power Distribution Center (PDC) when the vehicle is shipped from the factory. Dealer personnel are to remove the IOD fuse from the storage location and install it into PDC fuse cavity 15 as part of the preparation procedures performed just prior to new vehicle delivery.

The PDC has a molded plastic cover that can be removed to provide service access to all of the fuses and relays in the PDC. An integral latch and hinges are molded into the PDC cover for easy removal. A fuse layout map is integral to the underside of the PDC cover to ensure proper fuse and relay identification. The IOD fuse is a 50 ampere maxi-type cartridge fuse and, when removed, it is stored in a spare fuse cavity within the PDC.

## IOD FUSE (Continued)

## OPERATION

The term ignition-off draw identifies a normal condition where power is being drained from the battery with the ignition switch in the Off position. The IOD fuse feeds the memory and sleep mode functions for some of the electronic modules in the vehicle as well as various other accessories that require battery current when the ignition switch is in the Off position, including the clock. The only reason the IOD fuse is removed is to reduce the normal IOD of the vehicle electrical system during new vehicle transportation and pre-delivery storage to reduce battery depletion, while still allowing vehicle operation so that the vehicle can be loaded, unloaded and moved as needed by both vehicle transportation company and dealer personnel.

The IOD fuse is removed from PDC fuse cavity 15 when the vehicle is shipped from the assembly plant. Dealer personnel must install the IOD fuse when the vehicle is being prepared for delivery in order to restore full electrical system operation. Once the vehicle is prepared for delivery, the IOD function of this fuse becomes transparent and the fuse that has been assigned the IOD designation becomes only another Fused B(+) circuit fuse. The IOD fuse serves no useful purpose to the dealer technician in the service or diagnosis of any vehicle system or condition, other than the same purpose as that of any other standard circuit protection device.

The IOD fuse can be used by the vehicle owner as a convenient means of reducing battery depletion when a vehicle is to be stored for periods not to exceed about thirty days. However, it must be remembered that removing the IOD fuse will not eliminate IOD, but only reduce this normal condition. If a vehicle will be stored for more than about thirty days, the battery negative cable should be disconnected to eliminate normal IOD; and, the battery should be tested and recharged at regular intervals during the vehicle storage period to prevent the battery from becoming discharged or damaged. Refer to **Battery System** for additional service information.

## REMOVAL

The Ignition-Off Draw (IOD) fuses normal installation location is cavity 15 in the power distribution center. When the vehicle is shipped from the assembly plant the fuse is removed to maintain proper battery voltage during vehicle storage (in some cases). Dealer personnel must install the IOD fuse when the vehicle is being prepared for customer delivery in order to restore full electrical system operation.

- (1) Turn the ignition switch to the Off position.
- (2) Unlatch and open the cover of the power distribution center.

(3) Remove the IOD fuse from fuse **cavity 15** of the power distribution center (Fig. 2).

(4) Store the removed IOD fuse by installing it in the unused fuse storage **cavity 11** of the PDC (Fig. 2).

(5) Close and latch the power distribution center cover.

## INSTALLATION

(1) Be certain the ignition switch is in the Off position.

(2) Unlatch and open the cover of the power distribution center.

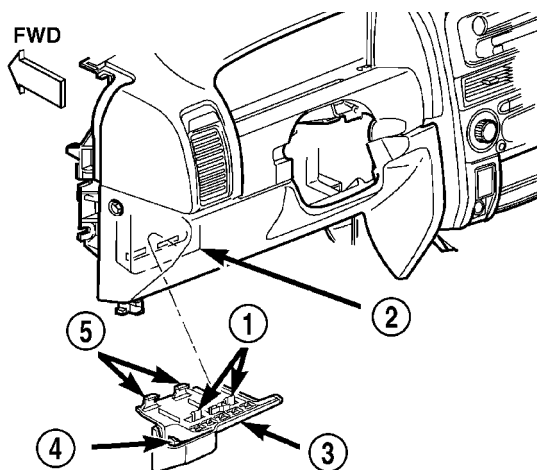
(3) Remove the stored IOD fuse from fuse storage **cavity 11** of the power distribution center.

(4) Use a thumb to press the IOD fuse firmly down into power distribution center fuse **cavity 15**.

(5) Close and latch the power distribution center cover.

## JUNCTION BLOCK

## DESCRIPTION



80b6b36f

**Fig. 3 Junction Block Location**

- 1 - REAR LATCHES
- 2 - JUNCTION BLOCK AND BODY CONTROL MODULE UNIT
- 3 - INSTRUMENT PANEL FUSE COVER
- 4 - SIDE LATCH
- 5 - FRONT LATCHES

An electrical Junction Block (JB) is concealed beneath the driver side of the instrument panel in the passenger compartment of the vehicle (Fig. 3). The JB combines the functions previously provided by a separate fuseblock module and relay center. The JB serves to simplify and centralize numerous electrical components, as well as to distribute electrical current to many of the accessory systems in the vehicle. It also eliminates the need for numerous splice connections. The JB houses up to thirty-three blade-

## JUNCTION BLOCK (Continued)

type mini fuses, up to two blade-type automatic resetting circuit breakers, the electronic combination flasher, the Daytime Running Lamp (DRL) module (Canada only) and up to twelve International Standards Organization (ISO) relays (three standard-type and nine micro-type). The JB also incorporates an integral connector and mounting for the Body Control Module (BCM). The BCM is secured with four screws directly to the dash panel side of the JB. Refer to **Body Control Module** in Electronic Control Modules for additional information covering the BCM.

The molded plastic JB housing has integral mounts that are secured with two screws and two snap retainers to the instrument panel steering column support bracket behind the instrument panel steering column opening cover. The JB is concealed above the molded plastic instrument panel fuse cover. Integral latches molded into the fuse cover secure it the JB, the BCM and the 16-way data link connector tab of the instrument panel steering column support bracket. The fuse cover can be pulled downward to disengage the latches and provide service access to all of the fuses, relays and wire harness connectors of the JB. The fuse cover has a fuse puller and spare fuses secured to its upper surface. Refer to **Instrument Panel Fuse Cover** in Body for additional service information.

The JB unit cannot be repaired and is only serviced as an assembly. If any internal circuit or the JB housing is faulty or damaged, the entire JB unit must be replaced. The BCM is available for separate service replacement.

## OPERATION

All of the circuits entering and leaving the Junction Block (JB) do so through up to five wire harness connectors, which are connected to the JB through integral connector receptacles molded into the JB housing. Internal connection of all of the JB circuits is accomplished by a printed circuit board. There are also two separate wire harness connections to connector receptacles that are integral to the BCM. Refer to **Junction Block** in Wiring Diagrams for additional information and the location of complete JB circuit diagrams.

## REMOVAL

**WARNING: DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE**

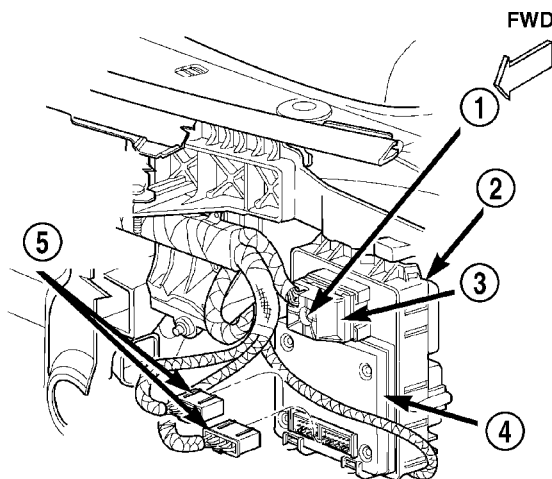
**BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Remove the fuse cover from the bottom of the Junction Block (JB).

(3) Remove the steering column opening cover from the instrument panel. Refer to **Steering Column Opening Cover** in Body for the location of steering column opening cover removal procedures.

(4) Reach behind the JB to disconnect the two instrument panel wire harness connectors from the Body Control Module (BCM) connector receptacles located near the bottom of the JB (Fig. 4).



80ba7774

**Fig. 4 Junction Block Connections**

- 1 - SCREW
- 2 - JUNCTION BLOCK
- 3 - BULKHEAD CONNECTOR
- 4 - BODY CONTROL MODULE
- 5 - INSTRUMENT PANEL WIRE HARNESS CONNECTORS

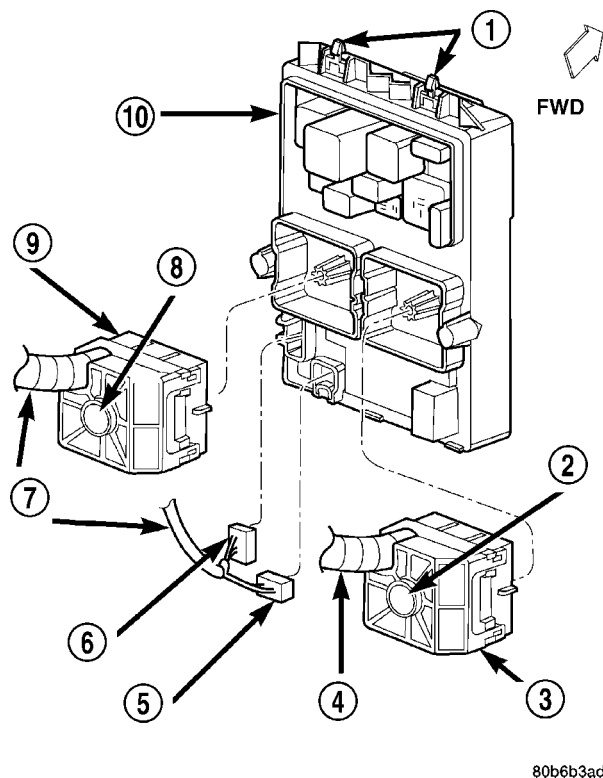
(5) Reach behind the JB to remove the screw that secures the instrument panel wire harness bulkhead connector to the connector receptacle located near the top of the JB and disconnect the connector.

(6) Disconnect the fused B(+) and the IOD wire harness connectors from the connector receptacles located near the bottom of the JB (Fig. 5).

(7) Remove the screws that secure the right and left body wire harness bulkhead connectors to the connector receptacles located near the center of the JB and disconnect the connectors.



## JUNCTION BLOCK (Continued)

**Fig. 5 Junction Block Connections**

- 1 - SNAP CLIPS
- 2 - SCREW
- 3 - CONNECTOR
- 4 - LEFT BODY WIRE HARNESS
- 5 - IOD CONNECTOR
- 6 - FUSED B+ CONNECTOR
- 7 - RIGHT BODY WIRE HARNESS
- 8 - SCREW
- 9 - CONNECTOR
- 10 - JUNCTION BLOCK

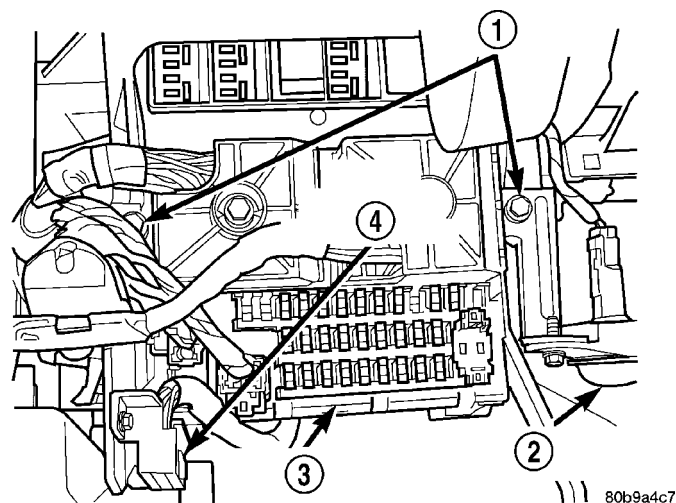
(8) Remove the two screws that secure the JB to the instrument panel steering column support bracket (Fig. 6).

(9) To disengage the two snap clips that secure the top of the JB to the instrument panel steering column support bracket, grasp the bottom of the junction block firmly with both hands and pull it downward sharply.

(10) Remove the JB from the instrument panel steering column support bracket.

**INSTALLATION**

**NOTE:** If the Junction Block (JB) is being replaced with a new unit, be certain to transfer each of the optional fuses, circuit breakers and relays from the faulty JB to the proper cavities of the replacement JB. Refer to Junction Block in Wiring Diagrams for the location of complete circuit diagrams and cavity assignments for the JB. The Body Control Module (BCM) must also be transferred to the new JB. Refer to Body Control Module in Electronic Control

**Fig. 6 Junction Block**

- 1 - SCREW (2)
- 2 - DRIVER SIDE COURTESY LAMP
- 3 - JUNCTION BLOCK
- 4 - 16 WAY DATA LINK CONNECTOR

**Modules for the location of the BCM removal and installation procedures.**

(1) Position the JB into its mounting location on the instrument panel steering column support bracket.

(2) Align the snap clips at the top of the JB with the mounting holes in the instrument panel steering column support bracket.

(3) Grasp the bottom of the JB firmly with both hands and push it upward sharply to engage the two snap clips that secure the top of the JB to the instrument panel steering column support bracket.

(4) Install and tighten the two screws that secure the JB to the instrument panel steering column support bracket. Tighten the screws to 2.2 N·m (20 in. lbs.).

(5) Reconnect the right and left body wire harness bulkhead connectors to the connector receptacles located near the center of the JB.

(6) Install and tighten the screws that secure the right and left body wire harness bulkhead connectors to the connector receptacles located near the center of the JB. Tighten the screws to 2.2 N·m (20 in. lbs.).

(7) Reconnect the fused B(+) and the IOD wire harness connectors to the connector receptacles located near the bottom of the JB.

(8) Reach behind the JB to reconnect the instrument panel wire harness bulkhead connector to the connector receptacle located near the top of the JB.

(9) Install and tighten the screw that secures the instrument panel wire harness bulkhead connector to the connector receptacle located near the top of the JB. Tighten the screw to 2.2 N·m (20 in. lbs.).

(10) Reach behind the JB to reconnect the two instrument panel wire harness connectors to the

## JUNCTION BLOCK (Continued)

BCM connector receptacles located near the bottom of the JB.

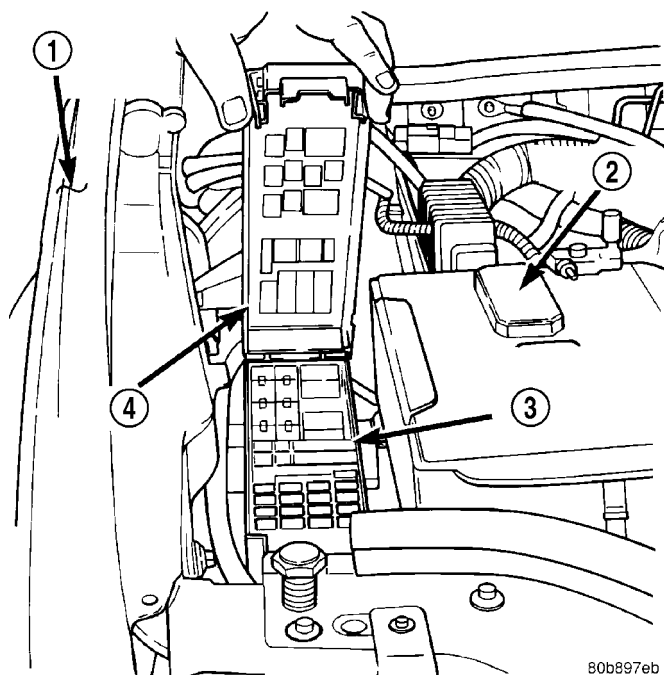
(11) Install the steering column opening cover onto the instrument panel. Refer to **Steering Column Opening Cover** in Body for the location of the steering column opening cover installation procedures.

(12) Install the fuse cover onto the bottom of the JB.

(13) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

## POWER DISTRIBUTION CENTER

### DESCRIPTION



**Fig. 7 Power Distribution Center Location**

- 1 - RIGHT FENDER
- 2 - BATTERY
- 3 - POWER DISTRIBUTION CENTER
- 4 - COVER

All of the electrical current distributed throughout this vehicle is directed through the standard equipment Power Distribution Center (PDC) (Fig. 7). The molded plastic PDC housing is located in the right front corner of the engine compartment, between the battery and the right front inner fender shield. The PDC houses up to fifteen maxi-type cartridge fuses, which replace all in-line fusible links. The PDC also houses up to thirteen blade-type mini fuses, and up to ten International Standards Organization (ISO) relays (two standard-type and eight micro-type).

The PDC housing is secured in the engine compartment at three points. Integral mounts on both sides of the PDC housing engage and latch to stanchions

that are integral to the molded plastic battery support. The PDC is integral to the right headlamp and dash wire harness, which exits from the bottom of the PDC housing. The PDC housing has a molded plastic cover that includes two integral latches at the front and pivot hooks at the back that snap over a hinge pin on the rear of the PDC housing. The PDC cover is easily opened or removed for service access and has a convenient fuse and relay layout map integral to the inside surface of the cover to ensure proper component identification. A fuse puller is also stored on the inside of the PDC cover.

The PDC cover, the PDC housing lower cover, the PDC relay wedges, the PDC relay cassettes and the PDC B(+) terminal stud module are available for service replacement. The PDC main housing unit, the fuse wedges and the bus bars cannot be repaired and are only serviced as a unit with the right headlamp and dash wire harness. If the PDC main housing unit, fuse wedges or the bus bars are faulty or damaged, the right headlamp and dash wire harness unit must be replaced.

### OPERATION

All of the current from the battery and the generator output enters the PDC through two cables and a single two-holed eyelet that is secured with nuts to the two PDC B(+) terminal studs just inside the front end of the PDC housing. The PDC cover is unlatched and opened to access the battery and generator output connection B(+) terminal studs, the fuses or the relays. Internal connection of all of the PDC circuits is accomplished by an intricate combination of hard wiring and bus bars. Refer to **Power Distribution** in Wiring Diagrams for the location of complete PDC circuit diagrams.

### REMOVAL

The Power Distribution Center (PDC) main housing unit, the PDC fuse wedges and the PDC bus bars cannot be repaired and are only serviced as a unit with the right headlamp and dash wire harness. If the PDC main housing unit, the fuse wedges or the bus bars are faulty or damaged, the entire PDC and right headlamp and dash wire harness unit must be replaced.

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Disconnect each of the right headlamp and dash wire harness connectors. Refer to **Connector Locations** in Wiring Diagrams for the location of more information on the right headlamp and dash wire harness connector locations.

(3) Remove all of the fasteners that secure each of the right headlamp and dash wire harness ground eyelets to the vehicle body and chassis components.

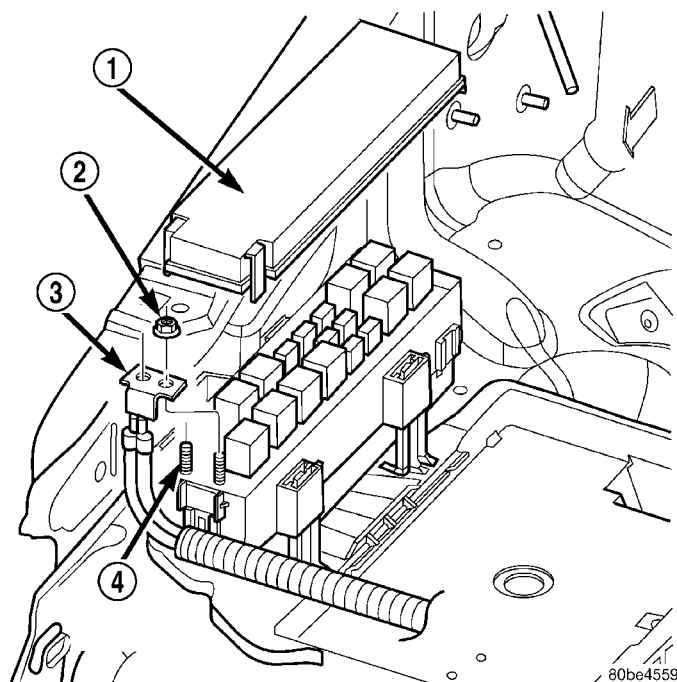
## POWER DISTRIBUTION CENTER (Continued)

Refer to **Connector Locations** in Wiring Diagrams for the location of more information on the ground eyelet locations.

(4) Disengage each of the retainers that secure the right headlamp and dash wire harness to the vehicle body and chassis components. Refer to **Connector Locations** in Wiring Diagrams for the location of more information on the right headlamp and dash wire harness retainer locations.

(5) Unlatch and open the PDC cover.

(6) Remove the two nuts that secure the two-holed eyelet of the battery wire harness PDC take outs to the PDC B(+) terminal studs (Fig. 8).



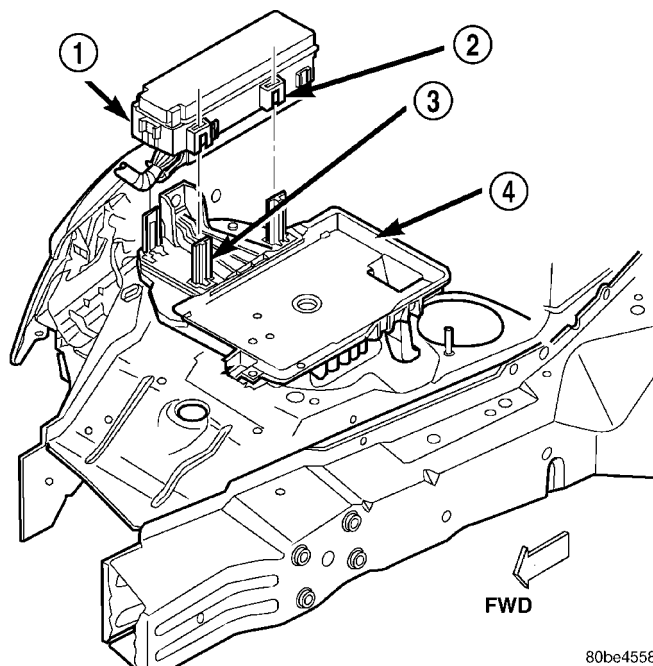
**Fig. 8 Power Distribution Center Connections**

- 1 - PDC COVER
- 2 - NUT (2)
- 3 - EYELET
- 4 - B(+) TERMINAL STUDS

(7) Remove the battery wire harness PDC take out eyelet from the B(+) terminal studs.

(8) Disengage the latches on the PDC housing mounts from the tabs on the PDC mounting stanchions of the battery support, and pull the PDC housing upward to disengage the mounts from the stanchions (Fig. 9).

(9) Remove the PDC and the right headlamp and dash wire harness from the engine compartment as a unit.



80be4558

**Fig. 9 Power Distribution Center Remove/Install**

- 1 - POWER DISTRIBUTION CENTER
- 2 - MOUNTS
- 3 - STANCHIONS (3)
- 4 - BATTERY SUPPORT

## DISASSEMBLY

## POWER DISTRIBUTION CENTER DISASSEMBLY

## PDC HOUSING LOWER COVER REMOVAL

The Power Distribution Center (PDC) cover, the PDC housing lower cover, the PDC relay wedges, the PDC relay cassettes and the PDC B(+) terminal stud module are available for service replacement. The PDC cover can be simply unlatched and removed from the PDC housing without the PDC being removed or disassembled. Service of the remaining PDC components requires that the PDC be removed from its mounting and disassembled. Refer to **Wiring Repair** in Wiring Diagrams for the location of the wiring repair procedures.

(1) Remove the battery from the battery support. Refer to **Battery System** for the location of the battery removal procedures.

(2) Unlatch and remove the cover from the PDC.

(3) Remove the two nuts that secure the two-holed eyelet of the battery wire harness PDC take out to the B(+) terminal studs near the front of the PDC.

(4) Remove the battery wire harness PDC take out eyelet from the two PDC B(+) terminal studs.

(5) Disengage the latches on the PDC housing mounts from the tabs on the PDC mounting stanchions on the battery support, and pull the PDC

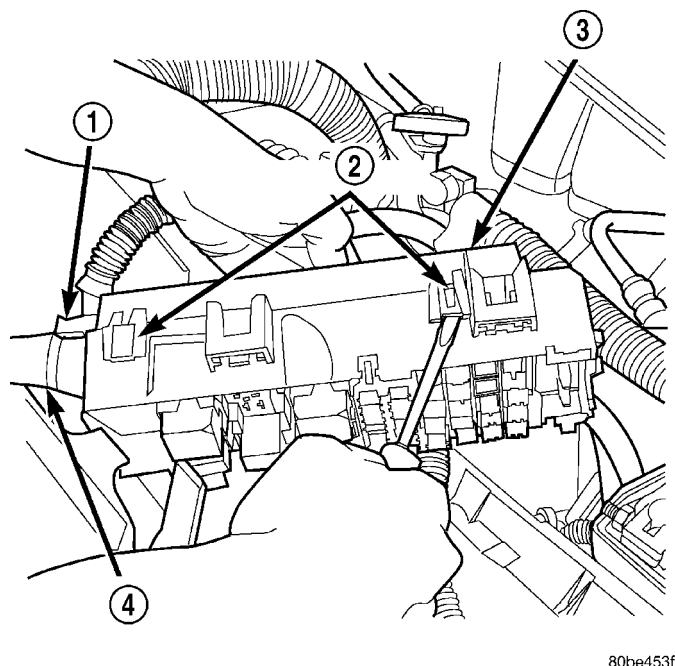


## POWER DISTRIBUTION CENTER (Continued)

housing upward to disengage the mounts from the stanchions.

(6) Where the right headlamp and dash wire harness exits the PDC, remove the tape that secures the wire harness to the trough formation on the PDC housing lower cover.

(7) Using a trim stick or another suitable wide flat-bladed tool, gently pry the latches on each side and the front of the PDC housing that secure the housing lower cover to the PDC and remove the housing lower cover (Fig. 10).



80be453f

**Fig. 10 PDC Housing Lower Cover Remove/Install - Typical**

- 1 - TROUGH FORMATION
- 2 - LATCHES (5)
- 3 - PDC HOUSING LOWER COVER
- 4 - WIRE HARNESS

## PDC B+ TERMINAL MODULE REMOVAL

The Power Distribution Center (PDC) cover, the PDC housing lower cover, the PDC relay wedges, the PDC relay cassettes and the PDC B(+) terminal stud module are available for service replacement. The PDC cover can be simply unlatched and removed from the PDC housing without the PDC being removed or disassembled. Service of the remaining PDC components requires that the PDC be removed from its mounting and disassembled. Refer to **Wiring Repair** in Wiring Diagrams for the location of the wiring repair procedures.

(1) Remove the PDC housing lower cover.

(2) From the top of the PDC housing, use a small screwdriver or a terminal pick tool (Special Tool Kit 6680) to release the two latches that secure the B(+) terminal module in the PDC.

(3) Gently and evenly press the two B(+) terminal studs down through the bus bar in the PDC.

(4) From the bottom of the PDC housing, remove the B(+) terminal module from the PDC.

## PDC RELAY WEDGE REMOVAL

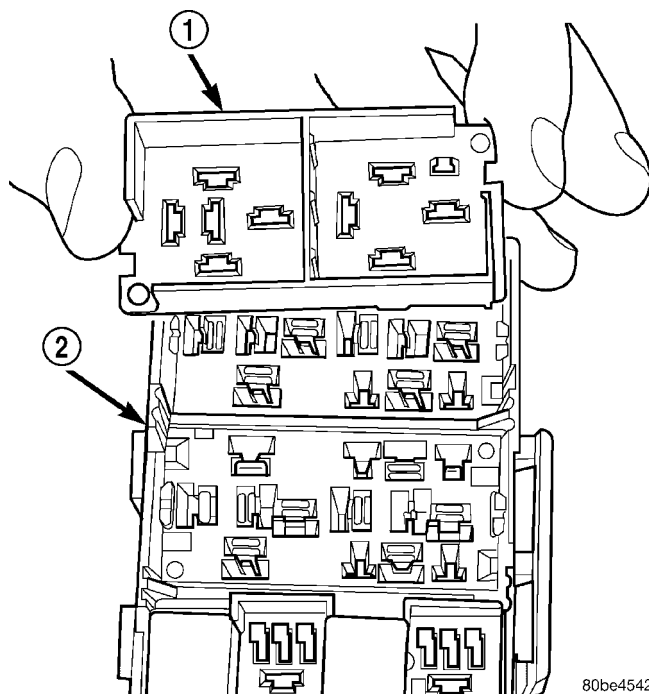
The Power Distribution Center (PDC) cover, the PDC housing lower cover, the PDC relay wedges, the PDC relay cassettes and the PDC B(+) terminal stud module are available for service replacement. The PDC cover can be simply unlatched and removed from the PDC housing without the PDC being removed or disassembled. Service of the remaining PDC components requires that the PDC be removed from its mounting and disassembled. Refer to **Wiring Repair** in Wiring Diagrams for the location of the wiring repair procedures.

(1) Remove the PDC housing lower cover.

(2) Remove each of the relays from the PDC relay wedge to be removed.

(3) From the bottom of the PDC housing, use a small screwdriver or a terminal pick tool (Special Tool Kit 6680) to release the two latches (yellow) that secure the relay wedge to the PDC relay cassette.

(4) From the top of the PDC housing, remove the relay wedge from the PDC relay cassette (Fig. 11).



80be4542

**Fig. 11 PDC Relay Wedge Remove/Install - Typical**

- 1 - RELAY WEDGE (TYPICAL)
- 2 - PDC HOUSING

## PDC RELAY CASSETTE REMOVAL

The Power Distribution Center (PDC) cover, the PDC housing lower cover, the PDC relay wedges, the PDC relay cassettes and the PDC B(+) terminal stud

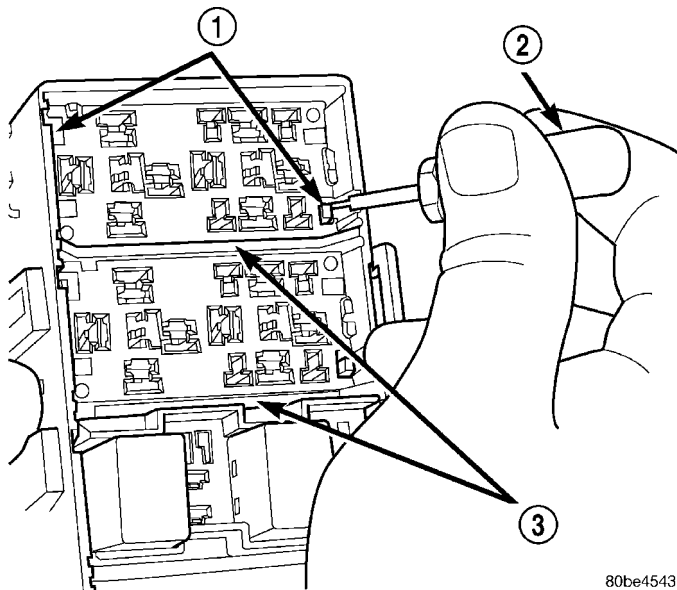
## POWER DISTRIBUTION CENTER (Continued)

module are available for service replacement. The PDC cover can be simply unlatched and removed from the PDC housing without the PDC being removed or disassembled. Service of the remaining PDC components requires that the PDC be removed from its mounting and disassembled. Refer to **Wiring Repair** in Wiring Diagrams for the location of the wiring repair procedures.

(1) Remove the relay wedge from the PDC relay cassette to be removed.

**NOTE:** It may be necessary to remove relay cassettes that are not being serviced from the PDC housing in order to obtain sufficient clearance to access the faulty relay cassette. The same service procedure is repeated as necessary to remove each of the interfering relay wedges and relay cassettes from the PDC housing.

(2) From the top of the PDC housing, use a small screwdriver or a terminal pick tool (Special Tool Kit 6680) to release the two latches that secure the relay cassette in the PDC (Fig. 12).



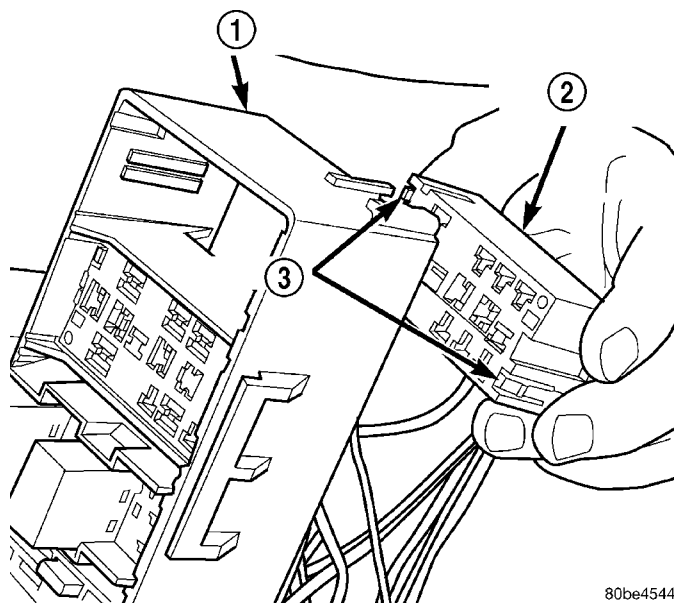
**Fig. 12 PDC Relay Cassette Latches - Typical**

- 1 - LATCHES
- 2 - FROM SPECIAL TOOL KIT 6680
- 3 - PDC RELAY CASSETTES (TYPICAL)

(3) Gently and evenly press the relay cassette down through the PDC housing.

(4) From the bottom of the PDC housing, remove the relay cassette from the PDC (Fig. 13).

**CAUTION:** Do not remove the wiring and terminals from the terminal cavities of the faulty PDC relay cassette at this time. Refer to the Assembly procedure that follows for the proper procedures for



80be4544

**Fig. 13 PDC Relay - Typical**

- 1 - PDC HOUSING
- 2 - PDC RELAY CASSETTE (TYPICAL)
- 3 - LATCHES

transferring the wiring and terminals to the replacement PDC relay cassette.

## ASSEMBLY

### POWER DISTRIBUTION CENTER ASSEMBLY

#### PDC B(+) TERMINAL MODULE INSTALLATION

(1) From the bottom of the PDC housing, align and insert the B(+) terminal module into the PDC.

(2) From the bottom of the PDC housing, align and insert the two studs of the PDC B(+) terminal module through the bus bar in the PDC.

(3) From the bottom of the PDC housing, press the B(+) terminal module gently and evenly into the PDC until both of the latches are fully engaged.

(4) Install the PDC housing lower cover.

#### RELAY WEDGE INSTALLATION

(1) From the top of the PDC housing, align and insert the PDC relay wedge latch arms into the correct cavities in the relay cassette.

(2) Gently and evenly press the PDC relay wedge down into the relay cassette until both of the latches are fully engaged.

(3) Install each of the removed relays into the proper cavities of the PDC relay wedge.

(4) Install the PDC housing lower cover.

## POWER DISTRIBUTION CENTER (Continued)

## RELAY CASSETTE INSTALLATION

(1) Move the faulty PDC relay cassette with its wiring away from the bottom of the PDC housing far enough to allow the replacement relay cassette to be installed into the PDC.

(2) Using the faulty relay cassette as a guide, be certain that the replacement relay cassette is correctly oriented before installing it into the PDC housing.

(3) From the bottom of the PDC housing, align and insert the replacement relay cassette into the PDC. Press the relay cassette up into the PDC until both of the latches are fully engaged.

**CAUTION:** Proper care must be taken to be certain that the wiring and terminals from the faulty PDC relay cassette are installed in the correct terminal cavities of the replacement relay cassette. To prevent mistakes it is recommended that the wiring and terminals be removed from the faulty relay cassette one cavity at a time, repaired or spliced as necessary, then installed securely into the correct cavity of the replacement relay cassette. If you are not absolutely certain into which cavity a terminal should be installed, refer to Power Distribution in the index of this service manual for the location of complete circuit diagrams covering the PDC.

(4) While pulling gently on the wire from the bottom of the faulty PDC relay cassette, use a terminal pick tool (Special Tool Kit 6680) from the top of the relay cassette to release the latch that secures the terminal in the relay cassette terminal cavity (Fig. 14).

(5) From the bottom of the faulty PDC relay cassette, remove the wire and terminal from the relay cassette terminal cavity.

(6) Make all necessary repairs and splices to the wire for the removed terminal. Refer to **Wiring Repair** in Wiring Diagrams for the location of the wiring repair procedures.

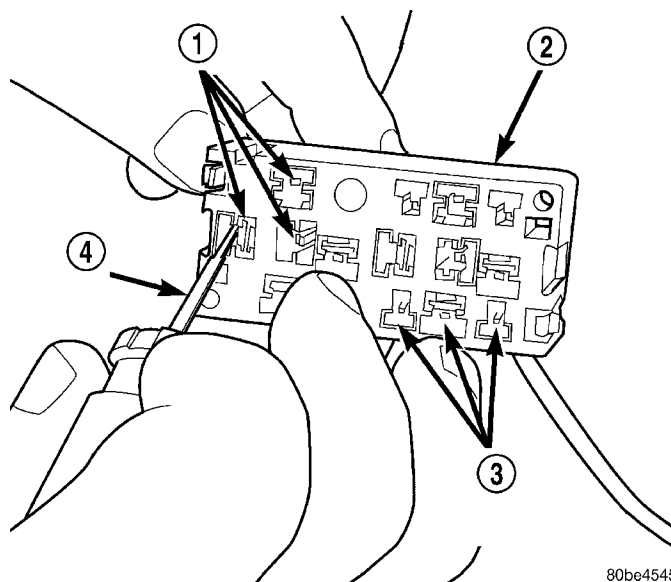
(7) From the bottom of the PDC housing, align and insert the removed wire and terminal into the correct terminal cavity of the replacement relay cassette. Push the wire and terminal up into the relay cassette terminal cavity until it is fully engaged by the latch.

(8) Repeat Step 4, Step 5, Step 6 and Step 7 one wire and terminal at a time until each of the wires and terminals have been transferred from the faulty PDC relay cassette into the replacement relay cassette.

(9) Install the PDC relay wedge into the replacement PDC relay cassette.

## PDC LOWER COVER INSTALLATION

(1) Align the PDC housing lower cover on the bottom of the PDC.



**Fig. 14 PDC Relay Cassette Terminal Remove/Install**

- 1 - TERMINAL CAVITIES (TYPICAL)
- 2 - PDC RELAY CASSETTE (TYPICAL)
- 3 - TERMINAL LATCHES (TYPICAL)
- 4 - FROM SPECIAL TOOL KIT 6680

(2) Evenly press the lower cover into place until latches are fully engaged.

(3) Where the right headlamp and dash harness enters the PDC, tape the harness securely to the trough formation on the PDC lower cover.

(4) Install the PDC in its mounting location on the battery support.

(5) Install the battery wire harness over the two PDC B+ terminal studs. Torque the nuts to 11.3 N·m (100 in. lbs.).

(6) Install the battery. Refer to Battery System for the procedure.

(7) Install the PDC cover.

## INSTALLATION

The Power Distribution Center (PDC) main housing unit, the PDC fuse wedges and the PDC bus bars cannot be repaired and are only serviced as a unit with the right headlamp and dash wire harness. If the PDC main housing unit, the fuse wedges or the bus bars are faulty or damaged, the entire PDC and right headlamp and dash wire harness unit must be replaced.

(1) Position the PDC and the right headlamp and dash wire harness unit in the engine compartment.

(2) Engage the PDC housing mounts with the stanchions of the battery support and push the unit downward until the mount latches fully engage the mounting tabs on the stanchions.

(3) Install the two-holed eyelet of the battery wire harness PDC take outs onto the two PDC B(+) terminal studs.

## POWER DISTRIBUTION CENTER (Continued)

(4) Install and tighten the nuts that secure the eyelet of the battery wire harness PDC take outs to the B(+) terminal studs. Tighten the nuts to 11.3 N·m (100 in. lbs.).

(5) Engage each of the retainers that secure the right headlamp and dash wire harness to the vehicle body and chassis components. Refer to **Connector Locations** in Wiring Diagrams for the location of more information on the right headlamp and dash wire harness retainer locations.

(6) Install all of the fasteners that secure each of the right headlamp and dash wire harness ground eyelets to the vehicle body and chassis components. Refer to **Connector Locations** in Wiring Diagrams for the location of more information on the ground eyelet locations.

(7) Reconnect each of the right headlamp and dash wire harness connectors. Refer to **Connector Locations** in Wiring Diagrams for the location of more information on the right headlamp and dash wire harness connector locations. For connectors secured with screws, tighten the screws to 4.3 N·m (38 in. lbs.).

(8) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

## POWER OUTLET

## DESCRIPTION - FRONT POWER OUTLET

An accessory power outlet is standard equipment on this model. The power outlet is installed in the instrument panel center lower bezel, which is located near the bottom of the instrument panel center stack area, below the heater and air conditioner controls. The power outlet base is secured by a snap fit within the center lower bezel. A hinged door with an over-center spring flips closed to conceal and protect the power outlet base when the power outlet is not being used, and flips open below the center lower bezel while the power outlet is in use.

The power outlet receptacle unit and the power outlet door are each available for service replacement.

## OPERATION - FRONT POWER OUTLET

The power outlet base or receptacle shell is connected to ground, and an insulated contact in the bottom of the shell is connected to battery current. The power outlet receives battery voltage from a fuse in the junction block at all times.

While the power outlet is very similar to a cigar lighter base unit, it does not include the two small spring-clip retainers inside the bottom of the receptacle shell that are used to secure the cigar lighter heating element to the insulated contact.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - POWER OUTLET

For complete circuit diagrams, refer to **Horn/Cigar Lighter/Power Outlet** in Wiring Diagrams.

**WARNING: REFER TO RESTRAINTS BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Check the fused B(+) fuse in the junction block. If OK, go to Step 2. If not OK, repair the shorted circuit or component as required and replace the faulty fuse.

(2) Check for battery voltage at the fused B(+) fuse in the junction block. If OK, go to Step 3. If not OK, repair the open fused B(+) circuit to the Power Distribution Center (PDC) fuse as required.

(3) Open the power outlet door. Check for continuity between the inside circumference of the power outlet receptacle and a good ground. There should be continuity. If OK, go to Step 4. If not OK, go to Step 5.

(4) Check for battery voltage at the insulated contact located at the back of the power outlet receptacle. If not OK, go to Step 5.

(5) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Remove the instrument panel center lower bezel. Check for continuity between the ground circuit cavity of the power outlet wire harness connector and a good ground. There should be continuity. If OK, go to Step 6. If not OK, repair the open ground circuit to ground as required.

(6) Connect the battery negative cable. Check for battery voltage at the fused B(+) circuit cavity of the power outlet wire harness connector. If OK, replace the faulty power outlet receptacle. If not OK, repair the open fused B(+) circuit to the junction block fuse as required.

## REMOVAL

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Remove the center lower bezel from the instrument panel. Refer to **Instrument Panel Center Lower Bezel** in Body for the procedure.

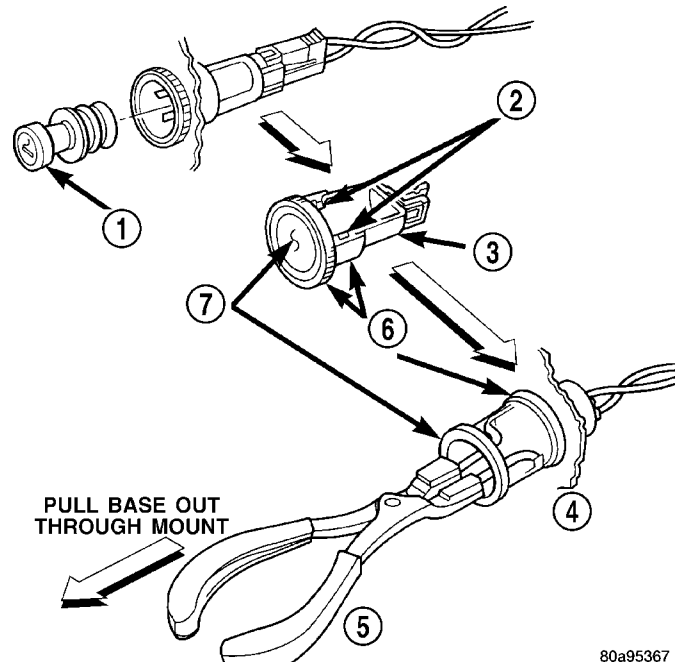
(3) Pull the cigar lighter knob and element or the protective cap out of the cigar lighter receptacle base, or open the power outlet door in the instrument panel center lower bezel.

(4) Look inside the cigar lighter or power outlet receptacle base and note the position of the rectangular retaining bosses of the mount that secures the



## POWER OUTLET (Continued)

receptacle base to the instrument panel center lower bezel (Fig. 15).



**Fig. 15 Cigar Lighter and Power Outlet Remove/Install - Typical**

- 1 - KNOB AND ELEMENT
- 2 - RETAINING BOSSES-ENGAGE PLIERS HERE
- 3 - BASE
- 4 - PARTIALLY REMOVED
- 5 - EXTERNAL SNAP-RING PLIERS
- 6 - MOUNT
- 7 - BASE

(5) Insert a pair of external snap ring pliers into the cigar lighter or power outlet receptacle base and engage the tips of the pliers with the retaining bosses of the mount.

(6) Squeeze the pliers to disengage the mount retaining bosses from the receptacle base and, using a gentle rocking motion, pull the pliers and the receptacle base out of the mount.

(7) Remove the cigar lighter or power outlet mount from the instrument panel center lower bezel.

## INSTALLATION

(1) Install the cigar lighter or power outlet mount into the instrument panel center lower bezel.

(2) Align the splines on the outside of the cigar lighter or power outlet receptacle base connector receptacle with the grooves on the inside of the mount.

(3) Press firmly on the cigar lighter or power outlet receptacle base until the retaining bosses of the mount are fully engaged in their receptacles.

(4) Install the cigar lighter knob and element or the protective cap into the cigar lighter receptacle

base, or close the power outlet door in the instrument panel center lower bezel.

(5) Install the center lower bezel onto the instrument panel. Refer to **Instrument Panel Center Lower Bezel** in Body for the procedure.

(6) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

## POWER OUTLET RELAY

## DESCRIPTION

The power outlet / cigar lighter relay is an electro-mechanical device that switches fused battery current to the cigar lighter or power outlet when the ignition switch is turned to the Accessory or On positions. The power outlet / cigar lighter relay is located in the junction block, below the driver side of the instrument panel in the passenger compartment.

The cigar lighter relay is a International Standards Organization (ISO) relay. Relays conforming to the ISO specifications have common physical dimensions, current capacities, terminal patterns, and terminal functions.

The cigar lighter relay cannot be repaired or adjusted and, if faulty or damaged, it must be replaced.

## OPERATION

The ISO relay consists of an electromagnetic coil, a resistor or diode, and three (two fixed and one movable) electrical contacts. The movable (common feed) relay contact is held against one of the fixed contacts (normally closed) by spring pressure. When the electromagnetic coil is energized, it draws the movable contact away from the normally closed fixed contact, and holds it against the other (normally open) fixed contact.

When the electromagnetic coil is de-energized, spring pressure returns the movable contact to the normally closed position. The resistor or diode is connected in parallel with the electromagnetic coil in the relay, and helps to dissipate voltage spikes that are produced when the coil is de-energized.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - POWER OUTLET RELAY

The power outlet / cigar lighter relay (Fig. 16) is located in the junction block, below the driver side end of the instrument panel in the passenger compartment. For complete circuit diagrams, refer to **Horn/Cigar Lighter/Power Outlet** in Wiring Diagrams.

## POWER OUTLET RELAY (Continued)

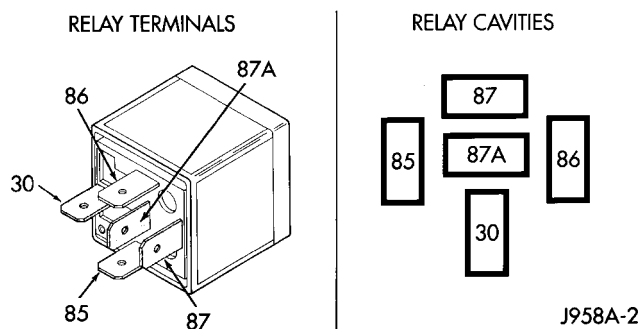
**WARNING: REFER TO RESTRAINTS BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Remove the power outlet / cigar lighter relay from the junction block. Refer to the procedure in this group.

(2) A relay in the de-energized position should have continuity between terminals 87A and 30, and no continuity between terminals 87 and 30. If OK, go to Step 3. If not OK, replace the faulty relay.

(3) Resistance between terminals 85 and 86 (electromagnet) should be  $75 \pm 5$  ohms. If OK, go to Step 4. If not OK, replace the faulty relay.

(4) Connect a battery to terminals 85 and 86. There should now be continuity between terminals 30 and 87, and no continuity between terminals 87A and 30. If OK, perform the Relay Circuit Test that follows. If not OK, replace the faulty relay.



**Fig. 16 Accessory Relay**

TERMINAL LEGEND

NUMBER	IDENTIFICATION
30	COMMON FEED
85	COIL GROUND
86	COIL BATTERY
87	NORMALLY OPEN
87A	NORMALLY CLOSED

### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - RELAY CIRCUIT TEST

(1) The relay common feed terminal cavity (30) of the junction block is connected to battery voltage and should be hot at all times. Check for battery voltage at the fused B(+) circuit cavity in the junction block receptacle for the cigar lighter relay. If OK, go to Step 2. If not OK, repair the fused B(+) circuit to the Power Distribution Center (PDC) fuse as required.

(2) The relay normally closed terminal (87A) is connected to terminal 30 in the de-energized position, but is not used for this application. Go to Step 3.

(3) The relay normally open terminal (87) is connected to the common feed terminal (30) in the energized position. This terminal supplies battery voltage to the fused B(+) fuse in the junction block that feeds the cigar lighter when the relay is energized by the ignition switch. There should be continuity between the junction block cavity for relay terminal 87 and the fused B(+) fuse in the junction block at all times. If OK, go to Step 4. If not OK, repair the open fused B(+) circuit to the junction block fuse as required.

(4) The coil ground terminal (85) is connected to the electromagnet in the relay. It receives battery feed to energize the cigar lighter relay when the ignition switch is in the Accessory or On positions. Turn the ignition switch to the On position. Check for battery voltage at the fused ignition switch output (acc/run) circuit cavity for relay terminal 85 in the junction block receptacle for the cigar lighter relay. If OK, go to Step 5. If not OK, repair the open fused ignition switch output (acc/run) circuit to the ignition switch as required.

(5) The coil battery terminal (86) is connected to the electromagnet in the relay. The junction block cavity for this terminal should have continuity to ground at all times. If not OK, repair the open ground circuit to ground as required.

### REMOVAL

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Remove the steering column opening cover from the instrument panel. Refer to **Steering Column Opening Cover** in Body for the procedure.

(3) The power outlet / cigar lighter relay is located on the left side of the combination flasher in the junction block.

(4) Remove the power outlet / cigar lighter relay from the junction block.

### INSTALLATION

(1) Position the power outlet / cigar lighter relay in the proper receptacle in the junction block.

(2) Align the power outlet / cigar lighter relay terminals with the terminal cavities in the junction block receptacle.

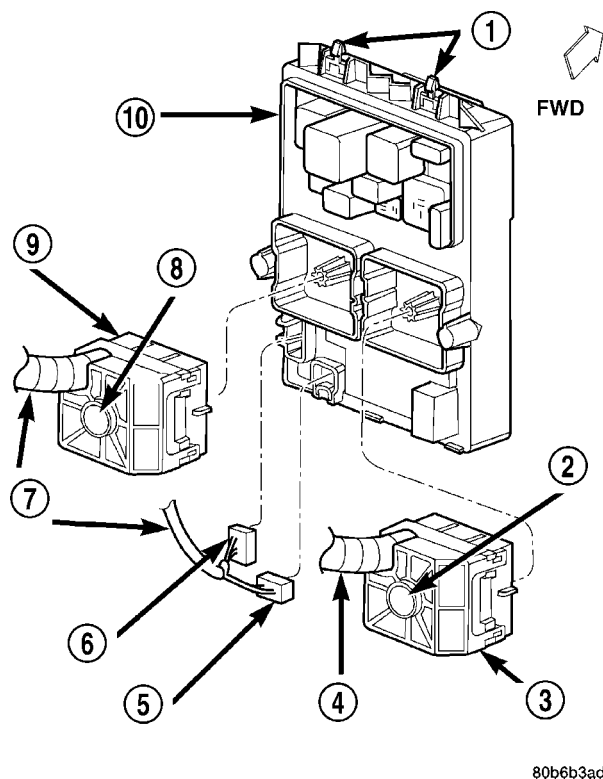
(3) Push in firmly on the power outlet / cigar lighter relay until the terminals are fully seated in the terminal cavities in the junction block receptacle.

(4) Install the steering column opening cover onto the instrument panel. Refer to **Steering Column Opening Cover** in Body for the procedure.

(5) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

## IOD WIRE HARNESS CONNECTOR

### DESCRIPTION



**Fig. 17 Ignition-Off Draw Connector**

- 1 - SNAP CLIPS
- 2 - SCREW
- 3 - CONNECTOR
- 4 - LEFT BODY WIRE HARNESS
- 5 - IOD CONNECTOR
- 6 - FUSED B+ CONNECTOR
- 7 - RIGHT BODY WIRE HARNESS
- 8 - SCREW
- 9 - CONNECTOR
- 10 - JUNCTION BLOCK

All vehicles are equipped with an Ignition-Off Draw (IOD) connector that is located in a molded connector receptacle on the lower rear surface of the Junction Block (JB) housing (Fig. 17). The JB is concealed above the molded plastic instrument panel fuse cover. Integral latches molded into the fuse cover secure it the JB, the Body Control Module (BCM) and the 16-way data link connector tab of the instrument panel steering column support bracket. The fuse cover can be pulled downward to disengage the latches and provide service access to all of the fuses, relays and wire harness connectors of the JB. Refer to **Instrument Panel Fuse Cover** in the index of this service manual for the location of additional service information covering the fuse cover.

### OPERATION

The term ignition-off draw identifies a normal condition where power is being drained from the battery with the ignition switch in the Off position. The IOD connector feeds the memory and sleep mode functions for some of the electronic modules in the vehicle as well as various other accessories that require battery current when the ignition switch is in the Off position, including the clock.

The IOD connector can be used by the vehicle owner as a convenient means of reducing battery depletion when a vehicle is to be stored for periods not to exceed about twenty days (short-term storage). Simply disconnect the IOD connector from the JB receptacle. However, it must be remembered that disconnecting the IOD connector will not eliminate IOD, but only reduce this normal condition. When a vehicle will not be used for more than twenty days, but less than thirty days, remove the IOD fuse from the Power Distribution Center (PDC). If a vehicle will be stored for more than about thirty days, the battery negative cable should be disconnected to eliminate normal IOD; and, the battery should be tested and recharged at regular intervals during the vehicle storage period to prevent the battery from becoming discharged or damaged. Refer to **Ignition-Off Draw Fuse** and **Battery** in the index in this service manual for the location of additional service information covering the ignition-off draw fuse and the battery.

## FUSE COVER

### REMOVAL

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

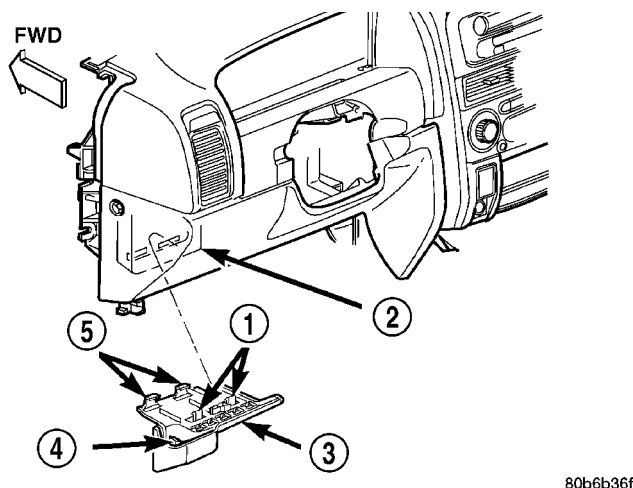
(2) Pull down on the rear edge (nearest the rear of the vehicle) of the instrument panel fuse cover until the rear latches unsnap from the tabs on the lower junction block housing and the side latch unsnaps from the tab on the instrument panel steering column support bracket outboard of the 16-way data link connector (Fig. 18).

(3) Move the instrument panel fuse cover towards the front of the vehicle to disengage the front latches from the mounting slots in the lower housing of the body control module.

(4) Remove the fuse cover from under the instrument panel.



## FUSE COVER (Continued)



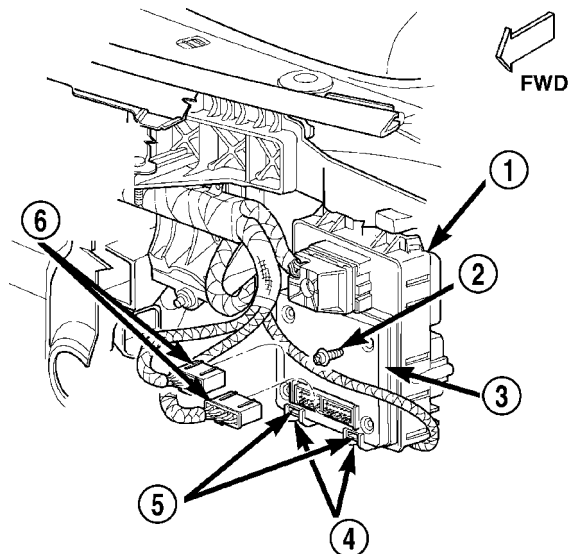
80b6b36f

**Fig. 18 Instrument Panel Fuse Cover Remove/Install**

- 1 - REAR LATCHES
- 2 - JUNCTION BLOCK AND BODY CONTROL MODULE UNIT
- 3 - INSTRUMENT PANEL FUSE COVER
- 4 - SIDE LATCH
- 5 - FRONT LATCHES

**INSTALLATION**

(1) Position the two front latches of the instrument panel fuse cover within the two locator channel formations on the bottom of the body control module housing (Fig. 19).



80b76f92

**Fig. 19 Instrument Panel Fuse Cover Locator Channels**

- 1 - JUNCTION BLOCK
- 2 - SCREWS (4)
- 3 - BODY CONTROL MODULE
- 4 - FUSE COVER LOCATOR CHANNELS
- 5 - FUSE COVER MOUNTING SLOTS
- 6 - INSTRUMENT PANEL WIRE HARNESS CONNECTORS

(2) While applying a slight upward pressure to the instrument panel fuse cover over the front latches,

slowly slide the front latches through the locator channels toward the front of the vehicle until the latches exit the front of the locator channels. This will locate the front latches at the mounting slots in the lower housing of the body control module.

(3) Apply a slight rearward pressure on the instrument panel fuse cover to engage the front latches in the mounting slots in the lower housing of the body control module.

(4) Swing the rear edge (nearest the rear of the vehicle) of the instrument panel fuse cover up toward the junction block.

(5) Press firmly upward on the instrument panel fuse cover over the rear latches until the latches snap into place over the tabs on the lower edge of the junction block housing.

(6) Press firmly upward on the 16-way data link connector cover formation of the instrument panel fuse cover until the side latch snaps into place over the tab on the outboard side of the instrument panel steering column support bracket.

(7) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

**REAR POWER OUTLET****DESCRIPTION - REAR POWER OUTLET**

A rear accessory power outlet is optional equipment on this model. The rear power outlet is installed in the lower right quarter trim panel near the right liftgate opening pillar in the cargo area of the vehicle. The power outlet base and mount are secured by a snap fit within the quarter trim panel. A plastic protective cap snaps into the power outlet base when the power outlet is not being used, and hangs from the power outlet base mount by an integral bail strap while the power outlet is in use. While the power outlet is very similar to a cigar lighter base unit, it does not include the two small spring-clip retainers inside the bottom of the receptacle shell that are used to secure the cigar lighter heating element to the insulated contact.

The power outlet receptacle unit and the accessory power outlet protective cap are available for service. The power outlet receptacle cannot be repaired and, if faulty or damaged, it must be replaced.

**OPERATION - REAR POWER OUTLET**

The power outlet base or receptacle shell is connected to ground, and an insulated contact in the bottom of the shell is connected to battery current. The power outlet receives battery voltage from a fuse in the Power Distribution Center (PDC) through a fuse in the Junction Block (JB) at all times. Refer to **Horn/Cigar Lighter/Power Outlet** in Wiring Dia-

## REAR POWER OUTLET (Continued)

grams for the location of complete rear power outlet circuit diagrams.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - REAR POWER OUTLET

Refer to **Horn/Cigar Lighter/Power Outlet** in Wiring Diagrams for the location of complete rear power outlet circuit diagrams.

(1) Check the fused B(+) fuse in the Junction Block (JB). If OK, go to Step 2. If not OK, repair the shorted circuit or component as required and replace the faulty fuse.

(2) Check for battery voltage at the fused B(+) fuse in the JB. If OK, go to Step 3. If not OK, repair the open fused B(+) circuit to the Power Distribution Center (PDC) as required.

(3) Remove the plastic protective cap from the rear power outlet receptacle. Check for continuity between the inside circumference of the rear power outlet receptacle and a good ground. There should be continuity. If OK, go to Step 4. If not OK, go to Step 5.

(4) Check for battery voltage at the insulated contact located at the back of the rear power outlet receptacle. If not OK, go to Step 5.

(5) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Remove the rear power outlet from the right quarter trim panel. Check for continuity between the ground circuit cavity of the rear power outlet wire harness connector and a good ground. There should be continuity. If OK, go to Step 6. If not OK, repair the open ground circuit to ground as required.

(6) Connect the battery negative cable. Check for battery voltage at the fused B(+) circuit cavity of the rear power outlet wire harness connector. If OK, replace the faulty rear power outlet receptacle base. If not OK, repair the open fused B(+) circuit to the JB fuse as required.

## REMOVAL

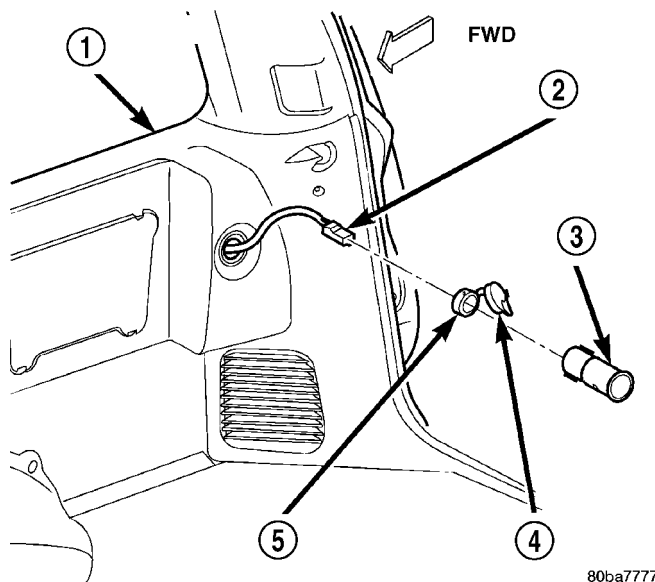
(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Pull the protective cap out of the rear power outlet receptacle base (Fig. 20).

(3) Look inside the rear power outlet receptacle base and note the position of the rectangular retaining bosses of the mount that secures the receptacle base to the right quarter trim panel (Fig. 21).

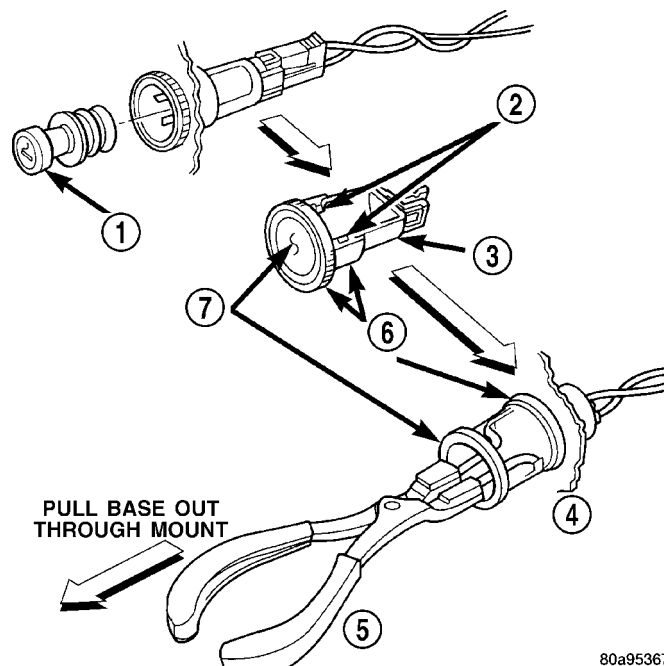
(4) Insert a pair of external snap ring pliers into the rear power outlet receptacle base and engage the tips of the pliers with the retaining bosses of the mount.

(5) Squeeze the pliers to disengage the mount retaining bosses from the receptacle base and, using a gentle rocking motion, pull the pliers and the receptacle base out of the mount.



**Fig. 20 Rear Power Outlet Remove/Install**

- 1 - RIGHT QUARTER TRIM PANEL
- 2 - RIGHT BODY WIRE HARNESS CONNECTOR
- 3 - RECEPTACLE BASE
- 4 - PROTECTIVE CAP
- 5 - MOUNT



**Fig. 21 Power Outlet Remove/Install - Typical**

- 1 - KNOB AND ELEMENT
- 2 - RETAINING BOSSES-ENGAGE PLIERS HERE
- 3 - BASE
- 4 - PARTIALLY REMOVED
- 5 - EXTERNAL SNAP-RING PLIERS
- 6 - MOUNT
- 7 - BASE

## REAR POWER OUTLET (Continued)

(6) Pull the rear power outlet receptacle base away from the right quarter trim panel far enough to access the wire harness connector.

(7) Disconnect the right body wire harness connector from the rear power outlet receptacle base connector receptacle.

(8) Remove the rear power outlet mount from the right quarter trim panel.

**INSTALLATION**

(1) Align the splines on the outside of the rear power outlet receptacle base connector receptacle with the grooves on the inside of the mount.

(2) Insert the rear power outlet receptacle base about half way through the mount.

(3) Reconnect the right body wire harness connector to the rear power outlet receptacle base connector receptacle.

(4) Insert the rear power outlet receptacle base and mount into the right quarter trim panel as a unit until the mount is seated flush against the trim panel.

(5) Press firmly on the rear power outlet receptacle base until the retaining bosses of the mount are fully engaged in their receptacles.

(6) Install the protective cap into the rear power outlet receptacle base.

(7) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

# ENGINE

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
ENGINE - 4.0L .....	1	ENGINE - 4.7L .....	62

## ENGINE - 4.0L

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>ENGINE - 4.0L</b>		<b>CYLINDER HEAD</b>	
DESCRIPTION .....	3	DESCRIPTION .....	20
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING		REMOVAL .....	20
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - ENGINE		CLEANING .....	21
DIAGNOSIS - INTRODUCTION .....	3	INSPECTION .....	21
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - ENGINE		INSTALLATION .....	21
DIAGNOSIS - PERFORMANCE .....	4	<b>CYLINDER HEAD COVER(S)</b>	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - ENGINE		DESCRIPTION .....	22
DIAGNOSIS - MECHANICAL .....	6	REMOVAL .....	23
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING—CYLINDER		CLEANING .....	23
COMPRESSION PRESSURE .....	8	INSPECTION .....	23
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - CYLINDER		INSTALLATION .....	23
COMBUSTION PRESSURE LEAKAGE .....	8	<b>INTAKE/EXHAUST VALVES &amp; SEATS</b>	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING—REAR SEAL		DESCRIPTION .....	24
AREA LEAKS .....	9	STANDARD PROCEDURE - VALVE SERVICE ..	24
STANDARD PROCEDURE		REMOVAL .....	25
STANDARD PROCEDURE - FORM-IN-		INSTALLATION .....	26
PLACE GASKETS AND SEALERS .....	9	<b>ROCKER ARM / ADJUSTER ASSEMBLY</b>	
STANDARD PROCEDURE - REPAIR		DESCRIPTION .....	27
DAMAGED OR WORN THREADS .....	10	OPERATION .....	27
STANDARD PROCEDURE—HYDROSTATIC		REMOVAL .....	27
LOCK .....	10	CLEANING .....	27
STANDARD PROCEDURE - CYLINDER		INSPECTION .....	27
BORE HONING .....	11	INSTALLATION .....	28
STANDARD PROCEDURE - ENGINE CORE		<b>VALVE STEM SEALS</b>	
AND OIL GALLERY PLUGS .....	11	DESCRIPTION .....	28
REMOVAL .....	11	<b>VALVE SPRINGS</b>	
INSTALLATION .....	13	DESCRIPTION .....	28
SPECIFICATIONS		STANDARD PROCEDURE - VALVE SPRING	
ENGINE - 4.0L .....	14	TENSION TEST .....	28
TORQUE - 4.0L ENGINE .....	18	REMOVAL .....	29
<b>AIR CLEANER ELEMENT</b>		INSTALLATION .....	29
REMOVAL - 4.0L .....	19	<b>ENGINE BLOCK</b>	
INSTALLATION - 4.0L .....	19	CLEANING .....	30
<b>AIR CLEANER HOUSING</b>		INSPECTION .....	30
REMOVAL - 4.0L .....	19	<b>CAMSHAFT &amp; BEARINGS</b>	
INSTALLATION - 4.0L .....	19	DESCRIPTION .....	31

<b>REMOVAL</b>	
REMOVAL - CAMSHAFT BEARINGS	31
REMOVAL - CAMSHAFT	31
<b>INSPECTION</b>	
INSPECTION - CAMSHAFT BEARINGS	32
INSPECTION - CAMSHAFT	32
<b>INSTALLATION</b>	
INSTALLATION - CAMSHAFT BEARINGS	32
INSTALLATION - CAMSHAFT	33
<b>CONNECTING ROD BEARINGS</b>	
STANDARD PROCEDURE - FITTING	
CONNECTING ROD BEARINGS	34
<b>CRANKSHAFT</b>	
DESCRIPTION	36
<b>CRANKSHAFT MAIN BEARINGS</b>	
STANDARD PROCEDURE - FITTING	
CRANKSHAFT MAIN BEARINGS	36
REMOVAL	39
INSPECTION	39
INSTALLATION	40
<b>CRANKSHAFT OIL SEAL - FRONT</b>	
REMOVAL	41
INSTALLATION	42
<b>CRANKSHAFT OIL SEAL - REAR</b>	
REMOVAL	42
INSTALLATION	42
<b>HYDRAULIC LIFTERS</b>	
DESCRIPTION	43
REMOVAL	43
CLEANING	43
INSPECTION	43
INSTALLATION	44
<b>PISTON &amp; CONNECTING ROD</b>	
DESCRIPTION	44
STANDARD PROCEDURE - PISTON FITTING	45
REMOVAL	45
INSTALLATION	46
<b>PISTON RINGS</b>	
STANDARD PROCEDURE - PISTON RING	
FITTING	47
<b>VIBRATION DAMPER</b>	
REMOVAL	50
INSTALLATION	50

<b>STRUCTURAL SUPPORT</b>	
REMOVAL	50
INSTALLATION	50
<b>LUBRICATION</b>	
DESCRIPTION	51
OPERATION	51
<b>DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING</b>	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - ENGINE OIL	
PRESSURE	53
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - ENGINE OIL	
LEAK	53
<b>OIL</b>	
STANDARD PROCEDURE - ENGINE OIL	
SERVICE	54
<b>OIL FILTER</b>	
REMOVAL	54
INSTALLATION	55
<b>OIL PAN</b>	
DESCRIPTION	55
REMOVAL	55
INSTALLATION	55
<b>ENGINE OIL PRESSURE SENSOR</b>	
DESCRIPTION	57
OPERATION	57
<b>OIL PUMP</b>	
REMOVAL	57
INSTALLATION	57
<b>INTAKE MANIFOLD</b>	
DESCRIPTION	57
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - INTAKE	
MANIFOLD LEAKAGE	57
REMOVAL	58
INSTALLATION	58
<b>EXHAUST MANIFOLD</b>	
DESCRIPTION	59
REMOVAL	59
INSTALLATION	59
<b>TIMING BELT / CHAIN COVER(S)</b>	
REMOVAL	59
INSTALLATION	59
<b>TIMING BELT/CHAIN AND SPROCKETS</b>	
REMOVAL	60
INSTALLATION	61

## ENGINE - 4.0L

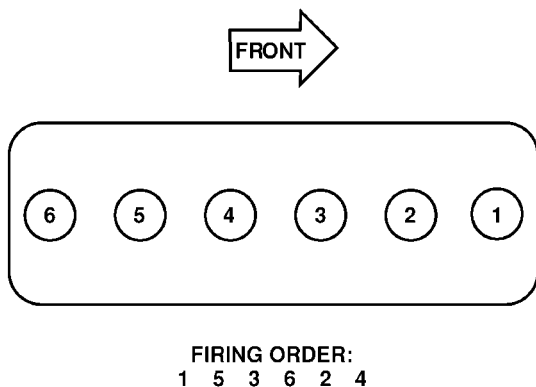
### DESCRIPTION

The 4.0 Liter (242 CID) six-cylinder engine is an In-line, lightweight, overhead valve engine. This engine is designed for unleaded fuel.

The engine cylinder head has dual quench-type combustion chambers that create turbulence and fast burning of the air/fuel mixture. This results in better fuel economy.

The cylinders are numbered 1 through 6 from front to rear. The firing order is 1-5-3-6-2-4 (Fig. 1).

The crankshaft rotation is clockwise, when viewed from the front of the engine. The crankshaft rotates within seven main bearings. The camshaft rotates within four bearings.



80b770a2

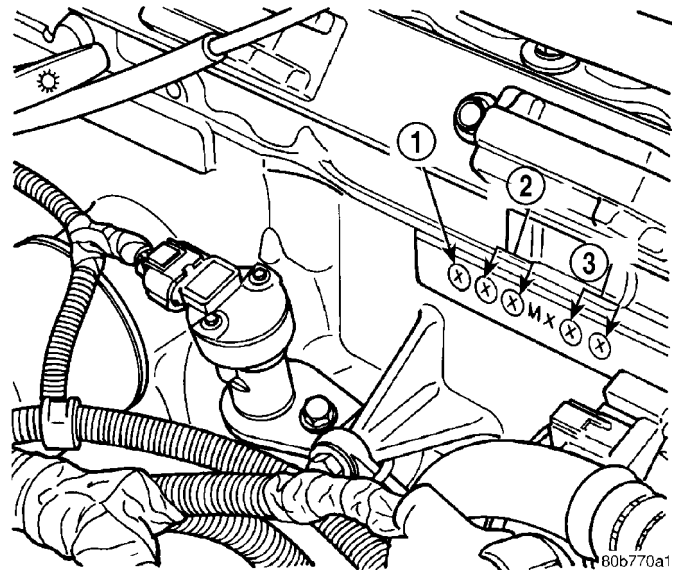
**Fig. 1 Engine Firing Order**

The engine Build Date Code is located on a machined surface on the right side of the cylinder block between the No.2 and No.3 cylinders (Fig. 2).

The digits of the code identify:

- 1st Digit—The year (8 = 1998).
- 2nd & 3rd Digits—The month (01 - 12).
- 4th & 5th Digits—The engine type/fuel system/compression ratio (MX = A 4.0 Liter (242 CID) 8.7:1 compression ratio engine with a multi-point fuel injection system).
- 6th & 7th Digits—The day of engine build (01 - 31).

(1) **FOR EXAMPLE:** Code \* 801MX12 \* identifies a 4.0 Liter (242 CID) engine with a multi-point fuel injection system, 8.7:1 compression ratio and built on January 12, 1998.



**Fig. 2 Build Date Code Location**

- 1 - YEAR
- 2 - MONTH
- 3 - DAY

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING

### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - ENGINE

#### DIAGNOSIS - INTRODUCTION

Engine diagnosis is helpful in determining the causes of malfunctions not detected and remedied by routine maintenance.

These malfunctions may be classified as either mechanical (e.g., a strange noise), or performance (e.g., engine idles rough and stalls).

(Refer to 9 - ENGINE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - Performance) or (Refer to 9 - ENGINE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - Mechanical). Refer to 14 - FUEL SYSTEM for fuel system diagnosis.

Additional tests and diagnostic procedures may be necessary for specific engine malfunctions that cannot be isolated with the Service Diagnosis charts. Information concerning additional tests and diagnosis is provided within the following:

- Cylinder Compression Pressure Test (Refer to 9 - ENGINE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING)
- Cylinder Combustion Pressure Leakage Test (Refer to 9 - ENGINE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING)
- Cylinder Head Gasket Failure Diagnosis (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING)
- Intake Manifold Leakage Diagnosis (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/MANIFOLDS/INTAKE MANIFOLD - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING)
- Lash Adjuster (Tappet) Noise Diagnosis (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE BLOCK/HYDRAULIC LIFTERS (CAM IN BLOCK) - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING)
- Engine Oil Leak Inspection (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/LUBRICATION - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING)



ENGINE - 4.0L (Continued)

**DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - ENGINE DIAGNOSIS - PERFORMANCE***ENGINE PERFORMANCE DIAGNOSIS CHART*

<b>CONDITION</b>	<b>POSSIBLE CAUSES</b>	<b>CORRECTION</b>
ENGINE WILL NOT CRANK	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Weak or dead battery</li> <li>2. Corroded or loose battery connections</li> <li>3. Faulty starter or related circuit(s)</li> <li>4. Seized accessory drive component</li> <li>5. Engine internal mechanical failure or hydro-static lock</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Charge/Replace Battery. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/BATTERY SYSTEM/ BATTERY - STANDARD PROCEDURE), for correct procedures. Check charging system. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/ CHARGING - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING), for correct procedures.</li> <li>2. Clean/tighten suspect battery/starter connections</li> <li>3. Check starting system. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/STARTING - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING), for correct diagnostics/ procedures</li> <li>4. Remove accessory drive belt and attempt to start engine. If engine starts, repair/replace seized component.</li> <li>5. (Refer to 9 - ENGINE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING), for correct diagnostics/ procedures</li> </ol>
ENGINE CRANKS BUT WILL NOT START	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. No spark</li> <li>2. No fuel</li> <li>3. Low or no engine compression</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check for spark. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/IGNITION CONTROL - SPECIFICATIONS), for correct procedures.</li> <li>2. Perform fuel pressure test (Refer to 14 - FUEL SYSTEM/FUEL DELIVERY/FUEL PUMP - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING), and if necessary, inspect fuel injector(s) and driver circuits. (Refer to 14 - FUEL SYSTEM/FUEL INJECTION/FUEL INJECTOR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING), for correct procedures.</li> <li>3. Perform cylinder compression pressure test. (Refer to 9 - ENGINE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING).</li> </ol>
ENGINE LOSS OF POWER	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Worn or burned distributor rotor</li> <li>2. Worn camshaft position sensor shaft</li> <li>3. Worn or incorrect gapped spark plugs</li> <li>4. Dirt or water in fuel system</li> <li>5. Faulty fuel pump</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Install new distributor rotor</li> <li>2. Remove and repair camshaft position sensor.(Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/ IGNITION CONTROL/CAMSHAFT POSITION SENSOR - REMOVAL).</li> <li>3. Clean plugs and set gap. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/IGNITION CONTROL/ SPARK PLUG - CLEANING).</li> <li>4. Clean system and replace fuel filter</li> <li>5. Install new fuel pump</li> </ol>



## ENGINE - 4.0L (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
	6. Incorrect valve timing 7. Blown cylinder head gasket 8. Low compression  9. Burned, warped, or pitted valves 10. Plugged or restricted exhaust system 11. Faulty ignition coil rail	6. Correct valve timing 7. Install new cylinder head gasket 8. Test cylinder compression. (Refer to 9 - ENGINE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). 9. Install/Reface valves as necessary 10. Install new parts as necessary 11. Test and replace, as necessary. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/IGNITION CONTROL/ COIL RAIL - REMOVAL).
ENGINE STALLS OR ROUGH IDLE	1. Carbon build-up on throttle plate  2. Engine idle speed too low 3. Worn or incorrectly gapped spark plugs  4. Faulty coil rail  5. Intake manifold vacuum leak	1. Remove throttle body and de-carbon. (Refer to 14 - FUEL SYSTEM/FUEL INJECTION/THROTTLE BODY - REMOVAL) for correct procedure. 2. Check Idle Air Control circuit. 3. Replace or clean and re-gap spark plugs. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/IGNITION CONTROL/SPARK PLUG - CLEANING) 4. Test and replace, if necessary. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/IGNITION CONTROL/ COIL RAIL - REMOVAL) 5. Inspect intake manifold gasket and vacuum hoses. Replace if necessary. (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/MANIFOLDS/ INTAKE MANIFOLD - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING).
ENGINE MISSES ON ACCELERATION	1. Worn or incorrectly gapped spark plugs 2. Spark plug cables defective or crossed 3. Dirt in fuel system 4. Burned, warped or pitted valves 5. Faulty coil rail	1. Replace spark plugs or clean and set gap. 2. Replace spark plug cables.  3. Clean fuel system 4. Install new valves  5. Test and replace as necessary. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/IGNITION CONTROL/ COIL RAIL - REMOVAL)

ENGINE - 4.0L (Continued)

**DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - ENGINE DIAGNOSIS - MECHANICAL***ENGINE MECHANICAL DIAGNOSIS CHART*

<b>CONDITION</b>	<b>POSSIBLE CAUSES</b>	<b>CORRECTION</b>
<b>NOISY VALVES/LIFTERS</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. High or low oil level in crankcase</li> <li>2. Thin or diluted oil</li> <li>3. Low oil pressure</li> <li>4. Dirt in tappets/lash adjusters</li> <li>5. Bent push rod(s)</li> <li>6. Worn rocker arms</li> <li>7. Worn tappets/lash adjusters</li> <li>8. Worn valve guides</li> <li>9. Excessive runout of valve seats or valve faces</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check for correct oil level. Adjust oil level by draining or adding as needed</li> <li>2. Change oil. (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/LUBRICATION/OIL - STANDARD PROCEDURE)</li> <li>3. Check engine oil level. If ok, Perform oil pressure test. (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/LUBRICATION - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING) for engine oil pressure test/specifications</li> <li>4. Clean/replace hydraulic tappets/lash adjusters</li> <li>5. Install new push rods</li> <li>6. Inspect oil supply to rocker arms and replace worn arms as needed</li> <li>7. Install new hydraulic tappets/lash adjusters</li> <li>8. Inspect all valve guides and replace as necessary</li> <li>9. Grind valves and seats</li> </ol>
<b>CONNECTING ROD NOISE</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Insufficient oil supply</li> <li>2. Low oil pressure</li> <li>3. Thin or diluted oil</li> <li>4. Excessive connecting rod bearing clearance</li> <li>5. Connecting rod journal out of round</li> <li>6. Misaligned connecting rods</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check engine oil level.</li> <li>2. Check engine oil level. If ok, Perform oil pressure test. (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/LUBRICATION - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING) engine oil pressure test/specifications</li> <li>3. Change oil to correct viscosity. (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/LUBRICATION/OIL - STANDARD PROCEDURE) for correct procedure/engine oil specifications</li> <li>4. Measure bearings for correct clearance with plasti-gage. Repair as necessary</li> <li>5. Replace crankshaft or grind journals</li> <li>6. Replace bent connecting rods</li> </ol>

## ENGINE - 4.0L (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
MAIN BEARING NOISE	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Insufficient oil supply</li> <li>2. Low oil pressure</li> <li>3. Thin or diluted oil</li> <li>4. Excessive main bearing clearance</li> <li>5. Excessive end play</li> <li>6. Crankshaft main journal out of round or worn</li> <li>7. Loose flywheel or torque converter</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check engine oil level.</li> <li>2. Check engine oil level. If ok, Perform oil pressure test. (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/LUBRICATION - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING)</li> <li>3. Change oil to correct viscosity.</li> <li>4. Measure bearings for correct clearance. Repair as necessary</li> <li>5. Check crankshaft thrust bearing for excessive wear on flanges</li> <li>6. Grind journals or replace crankshaft</li> <li>7. Inspect crankshaft, flexplate/flywheel and bolts for damage. Tighten to correct torque</li> </ol>
LOW OIL PRESSURE	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Low oil level</li> <li>2. Faulty oil pressure sending unit</li> <li>3. Clogged oil filter</li> <li>4. Worn oil pump</li> <li>5. Thin or diluted oil</li> <li>6. Excessive bearing clearance</li> <li>7. Oil pump relief valve stuck</li> <li>8. Oil pickup tube loose, broken, bent or clogged</li> <li>9. Oil pump cover warped or cracked</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check oil level and fill if necessary</li> <li>2. Install new sending unit</li> <li>3. Install new oil filter</li> <li>4. Replace oil pump assembly.</li> <li>5. Change oil to correct viscosity.</li> <li>6. Measure bearings for correct clearance</li> <li>7. Remove valve to inspect, clean and reinstall</li> <li>8. Inspect oil pickup tube and pump, and clean or replace if necessary</li> <li>9. Install new oil pump</li> </ol>
OIL LEAKS	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Misaligned or deteriorated gaskets</li> <li>2. Loose fastener, broken or porous metal part</li> <li>3. Front or rear crankshaft oil seal leaking</li> <li>4. Leaking oil gallery plug or cup plug</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Replace gasket</li> <li>2. Tighten, repair or replace the part</li> <li>3. Replace seal</li> <li>4. Remove and reseal threaded plug. Replace cup style plug</li> </ol>

## ENGINE - 4.0L (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
EXCESSIVE OIL CONSUMPTION OR SPARK PLUGS OIL FOULED	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. CCV System malfunction</li> <li>2. Defective valve stem seal(s)</li> <li>3. Worn or broken piston rings</li> <li>4. Scuffed pistons/cylinder walls</li> <li>5. Carbon in oil control ring groove</li> <li>6. Worn valve guides</li> <li>7. Piston rings fitted too tightly in grooves</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. (Refer to 25 - EMISSIONS CONTROL/EVAPORATIVE EMISSIONS - DESCRIPTION) for correct operation</li> <li>2. Repair or replace seal(s)</li> <li>3. Hone cylinder bores. Install new rings</li> <li>4. Hone cylinder bores and replace pistons as required</li> <li>5. Remove rings and de-carbon piston</li> <li>6. Inspect/replace valve guides as necessary</li> <li>7. Remove rings and check ring end gap and side clearance. Replace if necessary</li> </ol>

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING—CYLINDER COMPRESSION PRESSURE

The results of a cylinder compression pressure test can be utilized to diagnose several engine malfunctions.

Ensure the battery is completely charged and the engine starter motor is in good operating condition. Otherwise, the indicated compression pressures may not be valid for diagnosis purposes.

(1) Clean the spark plug recesses with compressed air.

(2) Remove the spark plugs (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/IGNITION CONTROL/SPARK PLUG - REMOVAL).

(3) Secure the throttle in the wide-open position.

(4) Disconnect the ignition coil.

(5) Insert a compression pressure gauge and rotate the engine with the engine starter motor for three revolutions.

(6) Record the compression pressure on the third revolution. Continue the test for the remaining cylinders.

(Refer to 9 - ENGINE - SPECIFICATIONS) for the correct engine compression pressures.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - CYLINDER COMBUSTION PRESSURE LEAKAGE

The combustion pressure leakage test provides an accurate means for determining engine condition.

Combustion pressure leakage testing will detect:

- Exhaust and intake valve leaks (improper seating)
- Leaks between adjacent cylinders or into water jacket

- Any causes for combustion/compression pressure loss

**WARNING: DO NOT REMOVE THE RADIATOR CAP WITH THE SYSTEM HOT AND UNDER PRESSURE. SERIOUS BURNS FROM HOT COOLANT CAN OCCUR.**

(1) Check the coolant level and fill as required. DO NOT install the radiator cap.

(2) Start and operate the engine until it attains normal operating temperature, then turn OFF the engine.

(3) Remove the spark plugs.

(4) Remove the oil filler cap.

(5) Remove the air cleaner.

(6) Calibrate the tester according to the manufacturer's instructions. The shop air source for testing should maintain 483 kPa (70 psi) minimum, 1,379 kPa (200 psi) maximum and 552 kPa (80 psi) recommended.

(7) Perform the test procedure on each cylinder according to the tester manufacturer's instructions. While testing, listen for pressurized air escaping through the throttle body, tailpipe or oil filler cap opening. Check for bubbles in the radiator coolant.

(8) All gauge pressure indications should be equal, with no more than 25% leakage.

(9) **FOR EXAMPLE:** At 552 kPa (80 psi) input pressure, a minimum of 414 kPa (60 psi) should be maintained in the cylinder CYLINDER COMBUSTION PRESSURE LEAKAGE DIAGNOSIS CHART.

## ENGINE - 4.0L (Continued)

## CYLINDER COMBUSTION PRESSURE LEAKAGE DIAGNOSIS CHART

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSE	CORRECTION
AIR ESCAPES THROUGH THROTTLE BODY	Intake valve bent, burnt, or not seated properly	Inspect valve and valve seat. Reface or replace, as necessary
AIR ESCAPES THROUGH TAILPIPE	Exhaust valve bent, burnt, or not seated properly	Inspect valve and valve seat. Reface or replace, as necessary
AIR ESCAPES THROUGH RADIATOR	Head gasket leaking or cracked cylinder head or block	Remove cylinder head and inspect. Replace defective part
MORE THAN 50% LEAKAGE FROM ADJACENT CYLINDERS	Head gasket leaking or crack in cylinder head or block between adjacent cylinders	Remove cylinder head and inspect. Replace gasket, head, or block as necessary
MORE THAN 25% LEAKAGE AND AIR ESCAPES THROUGH OIL FILLER CAP OPENING ONLY	Stuck or broken piston rings; cracked piston; worn rings and/or cylinder wall	Inspect for broken rings or piston. Measure ring gap and cylinder diameter, taper and out-of-round. Replace defective part as necessary

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING—REAR SEAL AREA LEAKS

Since it is sometimes difficult to determine the source of an oil leak in the rear seal area of the engine, a more involved inspection is necessary. The following steps should be followed to help pinpoint the source of the leak.

If the leakage occurs at the crankshaft rear oil seal area:

- (1) Disconnect the battery.
- (2) Raise the vehicle.
- (3) Remove torque converter or clutch housing cover and inspect rear of block for evidence of oil. Use a black light to check for the oil leak:
  - (a) Circular spray pattern generally indicates seal leakage or crankshaft damage.
  - (b) Where leakage tends to run straight down, possible causes are a porous block, distributor seal, camshaft bore cup plugs, oil galley pipe plugs, oil filter runoff, and main bearing cap to cylinder block mating surfaces.
- (4) If no leaks are detected, pressurized the crankcase as outlined in (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/LUBRICATION - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING)

**CAUTION:** Do not exceed 20.6 kPa (3 psi).

(5) If the leak is not detected, very slowly turn the crankshaft and watch for leakage. If a leak is detected between the crankshaft and seal while slowly turning the crankshaft, it is possible the crankshaft seal surface is damaged. The seal area on the crankshaft could have minor nicks or scratches that can be polished out with emery cloth.

**CAUTION:** Use extreme caution when crankshaft polishing is necessary to remove minor nicks or scratches. The crankshaft seal flange is specially machined to complement the function of the rear oil seal.

(6) For bubbles that remain steady with shaft rotation, no further inspection can be done until disassembled. Refer to the service Diagnosis—Mechanical, under the Oil Leak row, for components inspections on possible causes and corrections.

(7) After the oil leak root cause and appropriate corrective action have been identified, (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE BLOCK/CRANKSHAFT OIL SEAL - REAR - REMOVAL), for proper replacement procedures.

## STANDARD PROCEDURE

## STANDARD PROCEDURE - FORM-IN-PLACE GASKETS AND SEALERS

There are numerous places where form-in-place gaskets are used on the engine. Care must be taken when applying form-in-place gaskets to assure obtaining the desired results. **Do not use form-in-place gasket material unless specified.** Bead size, continuity, and location are of great importance. Too thin a bead can result in leakage while too much can result in spill-over which can break off and obstruct fluid feed lines. A continuous bead of the proper width is essential to obtain a leak-free gasket.

There are numerous types of form-in-place gasket materials that are used in the engine area. Mopar® Engine RTV GEN II, Mopar® ATF-RTV, and Mopar® Gasket Maker gasket materials, each have different properties and can not be used in place of the other.

## ENGINE - 4.0L (Continued)

**MOPAR® ENGINE RTV GEN II**

Mopar® Engine RTV GEN II is used to seal components exposed to engine oil. This material is a specially designed black silicone rubber RTV that retains adhesion and sealing properties when exposed to engine oil. Moisture in the air causes the material to cure. This material is available in three ounce tubes and has a shelf life of one year. After one year this material will not properly cure. Always inspect the package for the expiration date before use.

**MOPAR® ATF RTV**

Mopar® ATF RTV is a specifically designed black silicone rubber RTV that retains adhesion and sealing properties to seal components exposed to automatic transmission fluid, engine coolants, and moisture. This material is available in three ounce tubes and has a shelf life of one year. After one year this material will not properly cure. Always inspect the package for the expiration date before use.

**MOPAR® GASKET MAKER**

Mopar® Gasket Maker is an anaerobic type gasket material. The material cures in the absence of air when squeezed between two metallic surfaces. It will not cure if left in the uncovered tube. The anaerobic material is for use between two machined surfaces. Do not use on flexible metal flanges.

**MOPAR® GASKET SEALANT**

Mopar® Gasket Sealant is a slow drying, permanently soft sealer. This material is recommended for sealing threaded fittings and gaskets against leakage of oil and coolant. Can be used on threaded and machined parts under all temperatures. This material is used on engines with multi-layer steel (MLS) cylinder head gaskets. This material also will prevent corrosion. Mopar® Gasket Sealant is available in a 13 oz. aerosol can or 4oz./16 oz. can w/applicator.

**FORM-IN-PLACE GASKET AND SEALER APPLICATION**

Assembling parts using a form-in-place gasket requires care but it's easier than using pre-cut gaskets.

Mopar® Gasket Maker material should be applied sparingly 1 mm (0.040 in.) diameter or less of sealant to one gasket surface. Be certain the material surrounds each mounting hole. Excess material can easily be wiped off. Components should be torqued in place within 15 minutes. The use of a locating dowel is recommended during assembly to prevent smearing material off the location.

Mopar® Engine RTV GEN II or ATF RTV gasket material should be applied in a continuous bead approximately 3 mm (0.120 in.) in diameter. All mounting holes must be circled. For corner sealing, a 3.17 or 6.35 mm (1/8 or 1/4 in.) drop is placed in the

center of the gasket contact area. Uncured sealant may be removed with a shop towel. Components should be torqued in place while the sealant is still wet to the touch (within 10 minutes). The usage of a locating dowel is recommended during assembly to prevent smearing material off the location.

Mopar® Gasket Sealant in an aerosol can should be applied using a thin, even coat sprayed completely over both surfaces to be joined, and both sides of a gasket. Then proceed with assembly. Material in a can w/applicator can be brushed on evenly over the sealing surfaces. Material in an aerosol can should be used on engines with multi-layer steel gaskets.

**STANDARD PROCEDURE - REPAIR DAMAGED OR WORN THREADS**

**CAUTION:** Be sure that the tapped holes maintain the original center line.

Damaged or worn threads can be repaired. Essentially, this repair consists of:

- Drilling out worn or damaged threads.
- Tapping the hole with a special Heli-Coil Tap, or equivalent.
- Installing an insert into the tapped hole to bring the hole back to its original thread size.

**STANDARD PROCEDURE—HYDROSTATIC LOCK**

**CAUTION:** DO NOT use the starter motor to rotate the crankshaft. Severe damage could occur.

When an engine is suspected of hydrostatic lock (regardless of what caused the problem), follow the steps below.

(1) Perform the Fuel Pressure Release Procedure (Refer to 14 - FUEL SYSTEM/FUEL DELIVERY - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

(2) Disconnect the negative cable(s) from the battery.

(3) Inspect air cleaner, induction system, and intake manifold to ensure system is dry and clear of foreign material.

(4) Place a shop towel around the spark plugs to catch any fluid that may possibly be under pressure in the cylinder head. Remove the spark plugs.

(5) With all spark plugs removed, rotate the crankshaft using a breaker bar and socket.

(6) Identify the fluid in the cylinders (coolant, fuel, oil, etc.).

(7) Be sure all fluid has been removed from the cylinders.

(8) Repair engine or components as necessary to prevent this problem from occurring again.



## ENGINE - 4.0L (Continued)

(9) Squirt a small amount of engine oil into the cylinders to lubricate the walls. This will prevent damage on restart.

(10) Install new spark plugs. Tighten the spark plugs to 41 N·m (30 ft. lbs.) torque.

(11) Drain engine oil. Remove and discard the oil filter.

(12) Install the drain plug. Tighten the plug to 34 N·m (25 ft. lbs.) torque.

(13) Install a new oil filter.

(14) Fill engine crankcase with the specified amount and grade of oil. (Refer to LUBRICATION & MAINTENANCE - SPECIFICATIONS).

(15) Connect the negative cable(s) to the battery.

(16) Start the engine and check for any leaks.

## STANDARD PROCEDURE - CYLINDER BORE HONING

Before honing, stuff plenty of clean shop towels under the bores and over the crankshaft to keep abrasive materials from entering the crankshaft area.

(1) Used carefully, the Cylinder Bore Sizing Hone C-823, equipped with 220 grit stones, is the best tool for this job. In addition to deglazing, it will reduce taper and out-of-round, as well as removing light scuffing, scoring and scratches. Usually, a few strokes will clean up a bore and maintain the required limits.

**CAUTION: DO NOT use rigid type hones to remove cylinder wall glaze.**

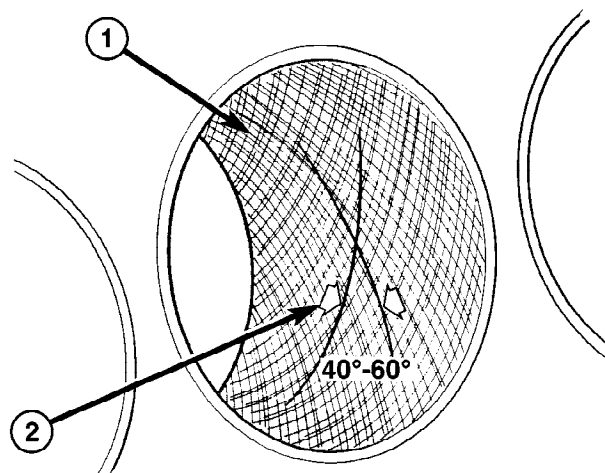
(2) Deglazing of the cylinder walls may be done if the cylinder bore is straight and round. Use a cylinder surfacing hone, Honing Tool C-3501, equipped with 280 grit stones (C-3501-3810). about 20-60 strokes, depending on the bore condition, will be sufficient to provide a satisfactory surface. Using honing oil C-3501-3880, or a light honing oil, available from major oil distributors.

**CAUTION: DO NOT use engine or transmission oil, mineral spirits, or kerosene.**

(3) Honing should be done by moving the hone up and down fast enough to get a crosshatch pattern. The hone marks should INTERSECT at 40° to 60° for proper seating of rings (Fig. 3).

(4) A controlled hone motor speed between 200 and 300 RPM is necessary to obtain the proper cross-hatch angle. The number of up and down strokes per minute can be regulated to get the desired 40° to 60° angle. Faster up and down strokes increase the cross-hatch angle.

(5) After honing, it is necessary that the block be cleaned to remove all traces of abrasive. Use a brush



8086fd41

**Fig. 3 Cylinder Bore Crosshatch Pattern**

- 1 - CROSSHATCH PATTERN  
2 - INTERSECT ANGLE

to wash parts with a solution of hot water and detergent. Dry parts thoroughly. Use a clean, white, lint-free cloth to check that the bore is clean. Oil the bores after cleaning to prevent rusting.

## STANDARD PROCEDURE - ENGINE CORE AND OIL GALLERY PLUGS

Using a blunt tool such as a drift and a hammer, strike the bottom edge of the cup plug. With the cup plug rotated, grasp firmly with pliers or other suitable tool and remove plug (Fig. 4).

**CAUTION: Do not drive cup plug into the casting as restricted cooling can result and cause serious engine problems.**

Thoroughly clean inside of cup plug hole in cylinder block or head. Be sure to remove old sealer. Lightly coat inside of cup plug hole with Mopar® Stud and Bearing Mount. Make certain the new plug is cleaned of all oil or grease. Using proper drive plug, drive plug into hole so that the sharp edge of the plug is at least 0.5 mm (0.020 in.) inside the lead-in chamfer.

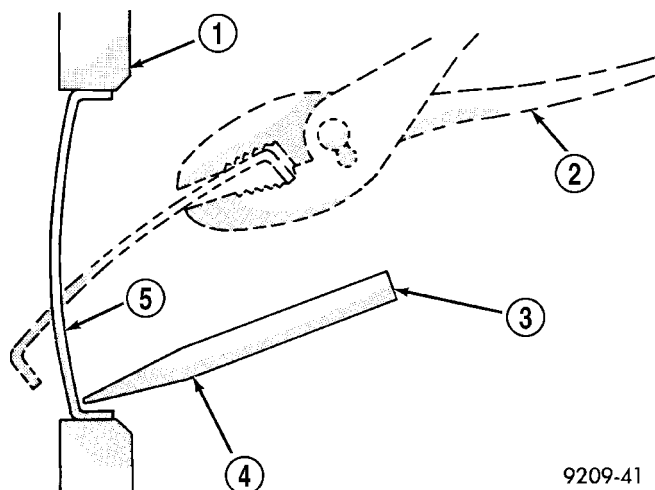
It is not necessary to wait for curing of the sealant. The cooling system can be refilled and the vehicle placed in service immediately.

## REMOVAL

- (1) Disconnect the battery negative cable.



## ENGINE - 4.0L (Continued)

**Fig. 4 Core Hole Plug Removal**

- 1 - CYLINDER BLOCK
- 2 - REMOVE PLUG WITH PLIERS
- 3 - STRIKE HERE WITH HAMMER
- 4 - DRIFT PUNCH
- 5 - CUP PLUG

(2) Mark the hinge locations on the hood panel for alignment reference during installation. Remove the engine compartment lamp. Remove the hood.

(3) Remove the radiator drain cock and radiator cap to drain the coolant. DO NOT waste usable coolant. If the solution is clean, drain the coolant into a clean container for reuse.

(4) Remove the upper radiator hose and coolant recovery hose.

(5) Remove the lower radiator hose.

(6) Remove upper radiator support retaining bolts and remove radiator support.

(7) Remove the fan assembly from the water pump (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ENGINE/RADIATOR FAN - REMOVAL).

(8) Remove the fan shroud.

(9) Disconnect the transmission fluid cooler lines (automatic transmission).

(10) Discharge the A/C system (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

(11) Remove the service valves and cap the compressor ports.

(12) Remove the radiator or radiator/condenser (if equipped with A/C).

(13) Disconnect the heater hoses at the engine thermostat housing and water pump.

(14) Disconnect the accelerator cable, transmission line pressure cable and speed control cable (if equipped) from the throttle body.

(15) Remove cables from the bracket and secure out of the way.

(16) Disconnect the body ground at the engine.

(17) Disconnect the following connectors and secure their harness out of the way.

- Power steering pressure switch
- Coolant temperature sensor
- Six (6) fuel injector connectors
- Intake air temperature sensor
- Throttle position sensor
- Map sensor
- Crankshaft position sensor
- Oxygen sensor
- Camshaft position sensor
- Generator connector and B+ terminal wire

(18) Disconnect the coil rail electrical connections and the oil pressure switch connector.

(19) Perform the fuel pressure release procedure (Refer to 14 - FUEL SYSTEM/FUEL DELIVERY - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

(20) Disconnect the fuel supply line at the injector rail (Refer to 14 - FUEL SYSTEM/FUEL DELIVERY/QUICK CONNECT FITTING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

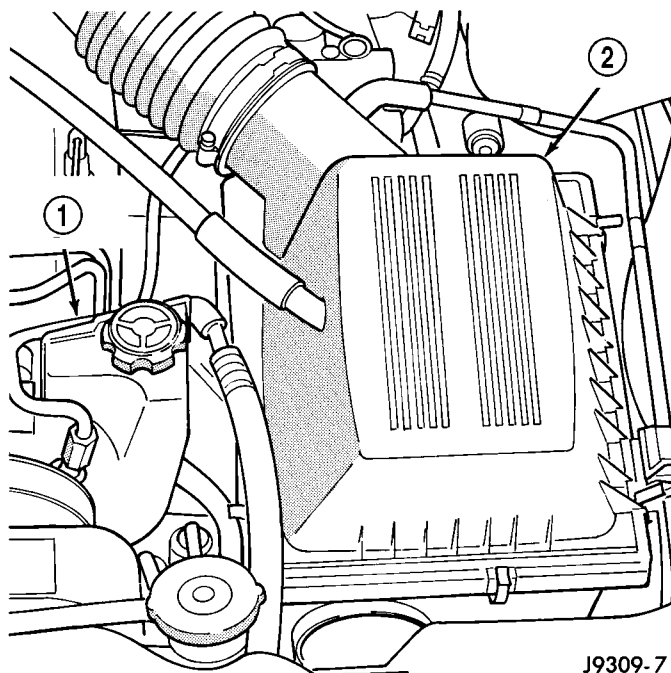
(21) Remove the fuel line bracket from the intake manifold.

(22) Remove the air cleaner assembly (Fig. 5).

(23) Disconnect the hoses from the fittings at the steering gear.

(24) Drain the pump reservoir.

(25) Cap the fittings on the hoses and steering gear to prevent foreign objects from entering the system.

**Fig. 5 Air Cleaner Assembly**

- 1 - POWER STEERING PUMP
- 2 - AIR CLEANER ASSEMBLY

## ENGINE - 4.0L (Continued)

- (26) Raise and support the vehicle.
- (27) Disconnect the wires from the engine starter motor solenoid.
- (28) Remove the engine starter motor (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/STARTING/STARTER MOTOR - REMOVAL).
- (29) Disconnect the oxygen sensor from the exhaust pipe.
- (30) Disconnect the exhaust pipe from the manifold.
- (31) Remove the exhaust pipe support.
- (32) Remove the bending brace (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE BLOCK/STRUCT SUPPORT - REMOVAL).
- (33) Remove the engine flywheel/converter housing access cover.
- (34) Mark the converter and drive plate location.
- (35) Remove the converter-to-drive plate bolts.
- (36) Remove the upper engine flywheel/converter housing bolts and loosen the bottom bolts.
- (37) Remove the engine mount cushion-to-engine compartment bracket bolts.
- (38) Lower the vehicle.
- (39) Attach a lifting device to the engine.
- (40) Raise the engine off the front supports.
- (41) Place a support or floor jack under the converter (or engine flywheel) housing.
- (42) Remove the remaining converter (or engine flywheel) housing bolts.
- (43) Lift the engine out of the engine compartment.

## INSTALLATION

**CAUTION:** When installing the engine into a vehicle equipped with an automatic transmission, be careful not to damage the trigger wheel on the engine flywheel.

- (1) Attach a lifting device to the engine and lower the engine into the engine compartment. For easier installation, it may be necessary to remove the engine mount bracket as an aid in alignment of the engine to the transmission.
- (2) Align the transmission torque converter housing with the engine.
- (3) Loosely install the converter housing lower bolts and install the next higher bolt and nut on each side.
- (4) Tighten all 4 bolts finger tight.
- (5) Install the engine mount brackets (if removed).
- (6) Lower the engine and engine mount brackets onto the engine compartment cushions. Install the bolts and finger tighten the nuts.
- (7) Remove the engine lifting device.
- (8) Raise and support the vehicle.

(9) Install the remaining engine flywheel/converter housing bolts. Tighten all bolts to 38 N·m (28 ft. lbs.) torque.

- (10) Install the converter-to-drive plate bolts.
- (11) Ensure the installation reference marks are aligned.
- (12) Install the engine flywheel/converter housing access cover.
- (13) Install the exhaust pipe support and tighten the screw.
- (14) Install the engine bending brace (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE BLOCK/STRUCT SUPPORT - INSTALLATION).
- (15) Tighten the engine mount-to-bracket bolts.
- (16) Connect the vehicle speed sensor wire connections and tighten the screws.
- (17) Connect the exhaust pipe to the manifold.
- (18) Install the engine starter motor (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/STARTING/STARTER MOTOR - INSTALLATION).
- (19) Connect the wires to the engine starter motor solenoid.
- (20) Lower the vehicle.
- (21) Connect all the vacuum hoses and wire connectors identified during engine removal.
- (22) Remove protective caps from the power steering hoses.
- (23) Connect the hoses to the fittings at the steering gear. Tighten the nut to 52 N·m (38 ft. lbs.) torque.
- (24) Fill the pump reservoir with fluid.
- (25) Inspect the fuel supply line o-ring(s) and replace if necessary. Connect fuel supply line to injector rail and verify connection by pulling outward on the line.
- (26) Install the fuel line bracket to the intake manifold.
- (27) Connect the coil rail electrical connectors and oil pressure switch connector.
- (28) Connect the following electrical connectors:
  - Power steering pressure switch
  - Coolant temperature sensor
  - Six (6) fuel injector connectors
  - Intake air temperature sensor
  - Throttle position sensor
  - Map sensor
  - Crankshaft position sensor
  - Oxygen sensor
  - Camshaft position sensor
  - Generator connector and B+ terminal wire
- (29) Connect all previously removed vacuum hoses.
- (30) Connect the body ground strap.
- (31) Install the throttle, transmission line pressure, and speed control cables to their mounting bracket and connect them to the throttle body.

## ENGINE - 4.0L (Continued)

(32) Connect the heater hoses at the engine thermostat housing and water pump.

(33) Install the fan assembly (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ENGINE/RADIATOR FAN - INSTALLATION).

(34) Place the fan shroud in position over the fan.

(35) Install the radiator (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ENGINE/RADIATOR - INSTALLATION).

(36) Connect the service valves to the A/C compressor ports, if equipped with A/C.

(37) Charge the air conditioner system (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

(38) Connect the radiator hoses and automatic transmission fluid cooler pipes, if equipped.

(39) Install the fan shroud to the radiator or radiator/condenser (if equipped with A/C).

(40) Install upper radiator support.

(41) Connect the upper radiator hose and tighten the clamp.

(42) Connect the lower radiator hose and tighten the clamp.

(43) Fill crankcase with engine oil. (Refer to LUBRICATION & MAINTENANCE/FLUID CAPACITIES - SPECIFICATIONS) for correct capacities.

(44) Fill the cooling system with reusable coolant or new coolant (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

(45) Align the hood to the scribe marks. Install the hood.

(46) Install the air cleaner assembly.

(47) Install the battery and connect the battery cable.

**WARNING: USE EXTREME CAUTION WHEN THE ENGINE IS OPERATING. DO NOT STAND IN A DIRECT LINE WITH THE FAN. DO NOT PUT YOUR HANDS NEAR THE PULLEYS, BELTS OR FAN. DO NOT WEAR LOOSE CLOTHING.**

(48) Start the engine, inspect for leaks and correct the fluid levels, as necessary.

## SPECIFICATIONS

## ENGINE - 4.0L

DESCRIPTION	SPECIFICATION
Engine Type	In-line 6 Cylinder
Bore and Stroke	98.4 x 86.69 mm (3.88 x 3.413 in.)
Displacement	4.0L (242 cu. in.)
Compression Ratio	8.8:1
Firing Order	1-5-3-6-2-4
Lubrication	Pressure Feed-Full Flow Filtration
Cooling System	Liquid Cooled-Forced Circulation
Cylinder Block	Cast Iron
Crankshaft	Cast Nodular Iron
Cylinder Head	Cast Iron
Camshaft	Cast Iron
Pistons	Aluminum Alloy
Combustion Chamber	Dual-Quench
Connecting Rods	Cast Malleable Iron
<b>CAMSHAFT</b>	
Hydraulic Tappet Clearance	Zero Lash
Bearing Clearance	0.025 to 0.076 mm (0.001 to 0.003 in.)
Bearing Journal Diameter	
No. 1	51.54 to 51.56 mm (2.029 to 2.030 in.)
No. 2	51.28 to 51.31 mm (2.019 to 2.020 in.)
No. 3	51.03 to 51.05 mm (2.009 to 2.010 in.)
No. 4	50.78 to 50.80 mm (1.999 to 2.000 in.)
Base Circle Runout (MAX)	0.03 mm

## ENGINE - 4.0L (Continued)

DESCRIPTION	SPECIFICATION
	(0.001 in.)
Valve Lift	
Intake	10.350 mm (0.4075 in.)
Exhaust	10.528 mm (0.4145 in.)
<b>Valve Timing</b>	
Intake	
Opens	12.4° BTDC
Closes	60.9° ABDC
Exhaust	
Opens	49.8 BBDC
Closes	29.2° ATDC
Valve Overlap	41.6°
Intake Duration	253.3°
Exhaust Duration	259.°
<b>CRANKSHAFT</b>	
End Play	0.038 to 0.165 mm (0.0015 to 0.0065 in.)
Main Bearing Journal Diameter	
No. 1-6	63.489 to 63.502 mm (2.4996 to 2.5001 in.)
No. 7	63.449 to 63.487 mm (2.4980 to 2.4995 in.)
Main Bearing Journal Width	
No. 1	27.58 to 27.89 mm (1.086 to 1.098 in.)
No. 3	32.28 to 32.33 mm (1.271 to 1.273 in.)
No. 2-4-5-6-7	30.02 to 30.18 mm (1.182 to 1.188 in.)
Main Bearing Clearance	0.03 to 0.06 mm (0.001 to 0.0025 in.)
Preferred	0.051 mm (0.002 in.)
Connecting Rod Journal Diameter	53.17 to 53.23 mm (2.0934 to 2.0955 in.)

DESCRIPTION	SPECIFICATION
Connecting Rod Journal Width	27.18 to 27.33 mm (1.070 to 1.076 in.)
Out-of-Round (MAX)	0.013 mm (0.0005 in.)
Taper (MAX)	0.013 mm (0.0005 in.)
<b>CYLINDER BLOCK</b>	
Deck Height	240.03 to 240.18 mm (9.450 to 9.456 in.)
Deck Clearance (Below Block)	0.546 mm (0.0215 in.)
Cylinder Bore Diameter	
Standard	98.45 to 98.48 mm (3.8759 to 3.8775 in.)
Taper	0.025 mm (0.001 in.)
Out-ofRound	0.025 mm (0.001 in.)
Tappet Bore Diameter	23.000 to 23.025 mm (0.9055 to 0.9065 in.)
Flatness	0.03 mm per 25 mm (0.001 in. per 1 in.) 0.05 mm per 152 mm (0.002 in. per 6 in.)
Flatness Max.	0.20 mm max. for total length (0.008 in. max. for total length)
Main Bearing Bore Diameter	68.3514 to 68.3768 mm (2.691 to 2.692 in.)
<b>CONNECTING ROD</b>	
Total Weight (Less Bearing)	663 to 671 grams (23.39 to 23.67 oz.)
Length (Center-to-Center)	155.52 to 155.62 mm (6.123 to 6.127 in.)
Piston Pin Bore Diameter	23.59 to 23.62 mm (0.9288 to 0.9298 in.)
Bore (Less Bearings)	56.08 to 56.09 mm (2.2080 to 2.2085 in.)

## ENGINE - 4.0L (Continued)

DESCRIPTION	SPECIFICATION
Bearing Clearance	0.025 to 0.076 mm (0.001 to 0.003 in.)
Preferred	0.044 to 0.050 mm (0.0015 to 0.0020 in.)
Side Clearance	0.25 to 0.48 mm (0.010 to 0.019 in.)
Twist (Max.)	0.002 mm per mm (0.002 in. per inch)
Bend (Max.)	0.002 mm per mm (0.002 in. per inch.)
<b>CYLINDER COMPRESSION PRESSURE</b>	
Pressure Range	827 to 1,034 kPa (120 to 150 psi)
Max. Variation Between Cylinders	206 kPa (30 psi)
<b>CYLINDER HEAD</b>	
Combustion Chamber	55.22 to 58.22 cc (3.37 to 3.55 cu. in.)
Valve Guide I.D. (Integral)	7.95 to 7.97 mm (0.313 to 0.314 in.)
Valve Stem-to-Guide Clearance	0.025 to 0.076 mm (0.001 to 0.003 in.)
Valve Seat Angle	
Intake	44.5°
Exhaust	44.5°
Valve Seat Width	1.02 to 1.52 mm (0.040 to 0.060 in.)
Valve Seat Runout	0.064 mm (0.0025 in.)
Flatness	0.03 mm per 25 mm (0.001 in. per 1 in.) 0.05 mm per 152 mm (0.002 in. per 6 in.)
Flatness Max.	0.20 mm - max. for total length (0.008 in. max. for total length)

DESCRIPTION	SPECIFICATION
<b>ROCKER ARMS, PUSH RODS &amp; TAPPETS</b>	
Rocker Arm Ratio	1.6:1
Push Rod Length (Pink)	244.856 to 245.364 mm (9.640 to 9.660 in.)
Push Rod Diameter	7.92 to 8.00 mm (0.312 to 0.315 in.)
Hydraulic Tappet Diameter	22.962 to 22.974 mm (0.904 to 0.9045 in.)
Tappet-to-Bore Clearance	0.025 to 0.063 mm (0.001 to 0.0025 in.)
<b>VALVES</b>	
Valve Length (Overall)	
Intake	122.479 to 122.860 mm (4.822 to 4.837 in.)
Exhaust	122.860 to 123.241 mm (4.837 to 4.852 in.)
Valve Stem Diameter	7.899 to 7.925 mm (0.311 to 0.312 in.)
Stem-to-Guide Clearance	0.025 to 0.076 mm (0.001 to 0.003 in.)
Valve Head Diameter	
Intake	48.387 to 48.641 mm (1.905 to 1.915 in.)
Exhaust	37.973 to 38.227 mm (1.495 to 1.505 in.)
Valve Face Angle	
Intake	46.5°
Exhaust	46.5°
Tip Refinishing (Max. Allowable)	0.25 mm (0.010 in.)
<b>VALVE SPRINGS</b>	
Free Length (Approx.)	47.65 mm (1.876 in.)
Spring Load	
Valve Closed	316 to 351 N @ 41.656 mm (71 to 79 lbf. @ 1.64 in.)



## ENGINE - 4.0L (Continued)

DESCRIPTION	SPECIFICATION
Valve Open	898.6 to 969.7 N @ 30.89 mm (202 to 218 lbf @ 1.216 in.)
Inside Diameter	21.0 mm to 21.51 mm (0.827 to 0.847 in.)
Installed Height	41.656 mm (1.64 in.)
<b>PISTONS</b>	
Weight (Less Pin)	417 to 429 grams (14.7 to 15.1 oz.)
Piston Pin Bore (Centerline to Piston Top)	40.61 to 40.72 mm (1.599 to 1.603 in.)
Piston-to-Bore Clearance	0.018 to 0.038 mm (0.0008 to 0.0015 in.)
Ring Gap Clearance	
Top Compression Ring	0.229 to 0.610 mm (0.0090 to 0.0240 in.)
2nd Compression Ring	0.483 to 0.965 mm (0.0190 to 0.0380 in.)
Oil Control Steel Rails	0.254 to 1.500 mm (0.010 to 0.060 in.)
Ring Side Clearance	
Compression Rings	0.042 to 0.084 mm (0.0017 to 0.0033 in.)
Oil Control Rings	0.06 to 0.21 mm (0.0024 to 0.0083 in.)
Piston Ring Groove Height	
Compression Rings	1.530 to 1.555 mm (0.0602 to 0.0612 in.)
Oil Control Ring	4.035 to 4.060 mm (0.1589 to 0.1598 in.)
Piston Ring Groove Diameter	
No.1 Compression Ring	88.39 to 88.65 mm (3.48 to 3.49 in.)
No.2 Compression Ring	87.63 to 87.88 mm (3.45 to 3.46 in.)

DESCRIPTION	SPECIFICATION
Oil Control Ring	89.66 to 89.92 mm (3.53 to 3.54 in.)
Piston Pin Bore Diameter	23.650 to 23.658 mm (0.9312 to 0.9315 in.)
Piston Pin Diameter	23.637 to 23.640 mm (0.9306 to 0.9307 in.)
Piston-to-Pin Clearance	0.0102 to 0.0208 mm (0.0005 to 0.0009 in.)
Piston-to-Pin Connecting Rod (Press Fit)	8.9 kN (2000 lbf.)
<b>OIL PUMP</b>	
Gear-to-Body Clearance (Radial)	0.051 to 0.102 mm (0.002 to 0.004 in.)
Gear-to-Body Clearance (Radial) Preferred	0.051 mm (0.002 in.)
Gear End Clearance Plastigage	0.051 to 0.152 mm (0.002 to 0.006 in.)
Gear End Clearance Plastigage (Preferred)	0.051 mm (0.002 in.)
Gear End Clearance Feeler Gauge	0.1016 to 0.2032 mm (0.004 to 0.008 in.)
Gear End Clearance Feeler Gauge (Preferred)	0.1778 mm (0.007 in.)
<b>Oil Pressure</b>	
At Idle Speed	89.6 kPa (13 psi)
At 1600 rpm & Higher	255 to 517 kPa (37 to 75 psi)
Oil Pressure Relief	517 kPa (75 psi)

## ENGINE - 4.0L (Continued)

## TORQUE - 4.0L ENGINE

DESCRIPTION	N-m	Ft. Lbs.	In. Lbs.
A/C Compressor—Bolts	28	—	250
Block Heater—Nut	2	—	16
Camshaft Sprocket—Bolt	68	50	—
Camshaft Thrust Plate to Cylinder Block—Screws	24	18	—
Clutch Cover to Flywheel— Bolts	54	40	—
Coil Bracket to Block—Bolts	22	—	192
Connecting Rod—Nuts	45	33	—
Cylinder Block—Drain Plugs	34	25	—
Cylinder Head—Bolts	135	100	—
Cylinder Head Cover—Bolts	10	—	85
Distributor Clamp—Bolts	23	—	204
Engine Mounts—Front			
Support Bracket Bolts	61	45	—
Support Cushion Bolts/Nuts	41	30	—
Support Cushion Bracket Bolts	54	40	—
Support Cushion Bracket Stud Nuts	41	30	—
Support Cushion Thru-Bolt	65	48	—
Engine Mounts—Rear			
Crossmember to Sill Bolts— (Automatic)	41	30	—
Insulator Stud Assembly—Nut	41	30	—
Support Cushion/ Crossmember—			
Nuts	22	—	192
Support Cushion/Bracket— Nuts			
(Manual)	75	55	—
Transmission Support Bracket —Bolt (Manual)	46	34	—
Transmission Support Bracket/ Cushion—Bolt (4WD Auto)	75	55	—
Transmission Support Adaptor Bracket—Bolts (2WD Auto)	75	55	—
Exhaust Manifold/Pipe—Nuts	27	20	—
Intake/Exhaust Manifold			

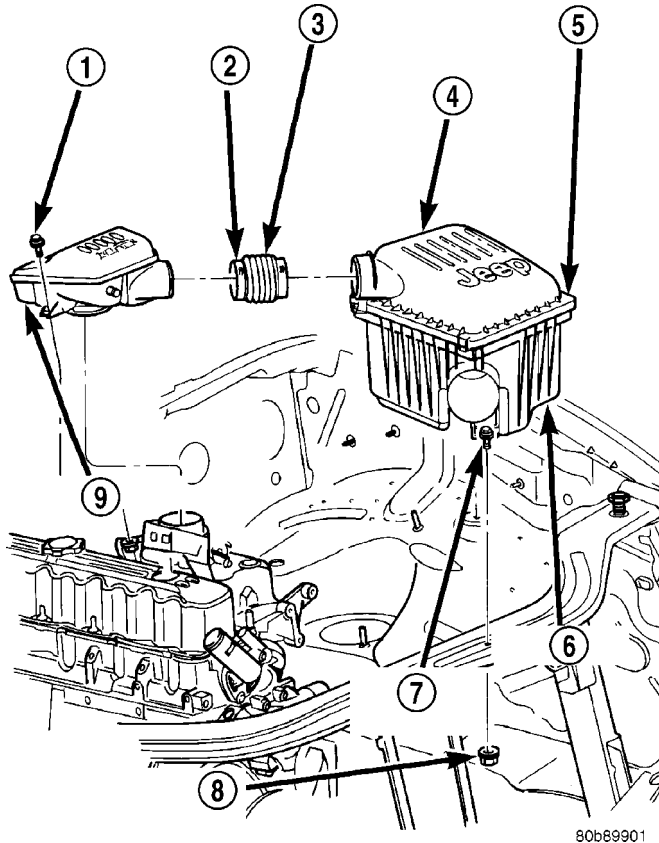
DESCRIPTION	N-m	Ft. Lbs.	In. Lbs.
Fasteners #1-5	33	24	—
Fasteners #6 and 7	14	—	126
Fasteners #8-11	33	24	—
Flywheel to Converter Housing—Bolts	38	28	—
Flywheel to Crankshaft—Bolts	143	105	—
Front Cover to Block—Bolts			
1/4-20	7	—	60
5/16-18	22	—	192
Fuel Rail—Bolts/Stud	12	—	108
Generator—Bolts	57	42	—
Generator Bracket to Engine—Bolts	47	35	—
Idle Pulley to Cylinder Head—Bolt	47	35	—
Main Bearing Cap—Bolts	108	80	—
Oil Filter	18	—	156
Oil Filter Connector to			
Adaptor	47	35	—
Block	68	50	—
Adaptor Bolts	102	50	—
Oil Galley—Plug	41	30	—
Oil Pan—Bolts			
1/4-20	9.5	—	84
5/16-18	15	—	132
Oil Pan—Drain Plug	34	25	—
Oil Pump			
Mounting Bolts	23	—	204
Cover Bolts	8	—	70
Rocker Arm Assembly to Cylinder			
Head—Capscrews	30	21	—
Spark Plugs	37	27	—
Starter Motor—Mounting Bolts	45	33	—
Thermostat Housing—Bolts	18	—	156
Throttle Body—Bolts	10	—	90
Vibration Damper—Bolt	108	80	—
Water Pump to Block—Bolts	23	17	—



## AIR CLEANER ELEMENT

### REMOVAL - 4.0L

(1) Unlatch four clips retaining air cleaner cover to air cleaner housing (Fig. 6).



80b89901

**Fig. 6 Air Cleaner Assembly —4.0L Engine**

- 1 - RESONATOR BOLTS
- 2 - CLAMPS
- 3 - AIR DUCT
- 4 - AIR CLEANER COVER
- 5 - CLIPS
- 6 - HOUSING
- 7 - HOUSING BOLTS (3)
- 8 - LOWER HOUSING NUTS (3)
- 9 - RESONATOR

- (2) Lift cover up and position to the side.
- (3) Remove air cleaner element.

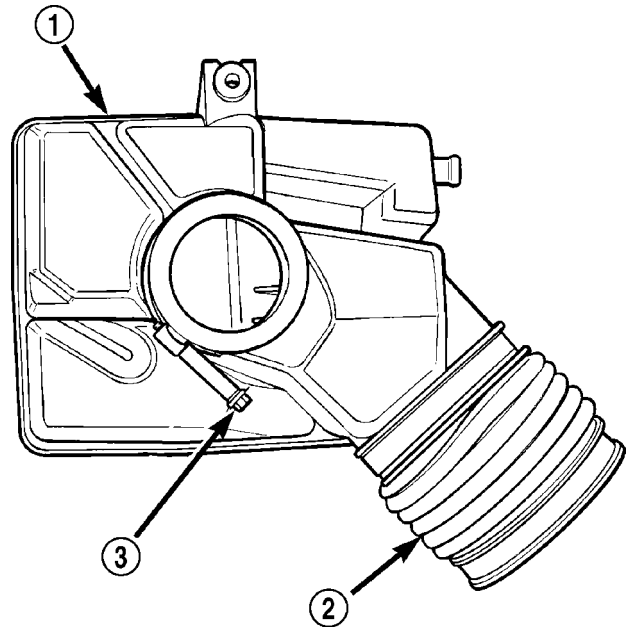
### INSTALLATION - 4.0L

- (1) Clean inside of air cleaner housing before installing new element.
- (2) Install air cleaner element into housing.
- (3) Latch clips and clamp cover down to secure. Be sure air cleaner cover is properly seated to air cleaner housing.

## AIR CLEANER HOUSING

### REMOVAL - 4.0L

- (1) Disconnect air cleaner cover-to-air duct clamp (Fig. 6).
- (2) Disconnect air duct at housing.
- (3) **Each of the 3 air cleaner housing mounting bolts is attached with 2 nuts (an upper nut and lower nut). DO NOT REMOVE BOLTS. To prevent stripping bolts, only remove lower nuts. The lower housing nuts are located under left front inner fender (Fig. 6).**
  - (a) To gain access to lower nuts, raise vehicle.
  - (b) Remove clips retaining rubber inner fender shield.
  - (c) Pry back shield enough to gain access to lower nuts.
  - (d) Remove 3 nuts.
  - (e) Remove air cleaner assembly from vehicle.
- (4) If resonator is to be removed, disconnect breather tube at resonator, disconnect air duct clamp at resonator (Fig. 6) and remove 1 resonator mounting bolt. Remove resonator from throttle body by loosening clamp (Fig. 7).



80b89903

**Fig. 7 RESONATOR CLAMP - 4.0L**

- 1 - RESONATOR
- 2 - AIR DUCT
- 3 - CLAMP

### INSTALLATION - 4.0L

- (1) Position air cleaner assembly to body and install 3 nuts. Tighten nuts to 10 N·m (93 in. lbs.) torque. **To prevent excessive vibration transmitted through housing, the nuts must be properly torqued. Do not overtighten nuts.**

## AIR CLEANER HOUSING (Continued)

(2) If resonator was removed: Install resonator and bolts. Tighten bolts to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.) torque. Tighten clamp at throttle body to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.) torque.

(3) Position fender liner and install clips.

(4) Connect air duct at housing (Fig. 6).

(5) Tighten air duct clamp.

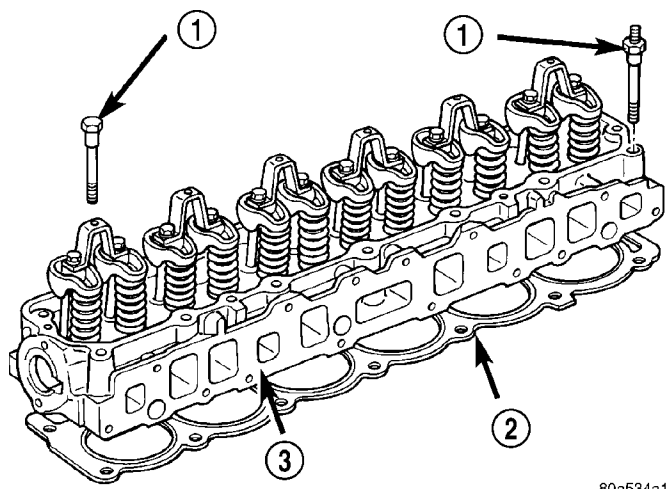
## CYLINDER HEAD

## DESCRIPTION

The cylinder head is made of cast iron containing twelve valves made of chrome plated heat resistant steel, valve stem seals, springs, retainers and keepers. The cylinder head and valve seats can be resurfaced for service purposes.

The valve guides are integral to the cylinder head. They are not replaceable. However, they are serviceable.

The cylinder head uses dual quench-type design combustion chambers which cause turbulence in the cylinders allowing faster burning of the air/fuel mixture, resulting in better fuel economy (Fig. 8).



80a534a1

**Fig. 8 Cylinder Head 4.0L Engine**

- 1 - CYLINDER HEAD BOLTS
- 2 - CYLINDER HEAD GASKET
- 3 - CYLINDER HEAD

## REMOVAL

**NOTE:** This procedure can be done with the engine in or out of the vehicle.

(1) Disconnect the battery negative cable.

**WARNING: DO NOT REMOVE THE CYLINDER BLOCK DRAIN PLUGS OR LOOSEN THE RADIATOR DRAIN COCK WITH THE SYSTEM HOT AND PRESSURIZED BECAUSE SERIOUS BURNS FROM THE COOLANT CAN OCCUR.**

(2) Drain the coolant (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE) and disconnect the hoses at the engine thermostat housing and the water pump inlet. DO NOT waste reusable coolant. If the solution is clean and is being drained only to service the engine or cooling system, drain the coolant into a clean container for reuse.

(3) Remove the air cleaner assembly (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/AIR INTAKE SYSTEM/AIR CLEANER HOUSING - REMOVAL).

(4) Remove the cylinder head cover (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD/CYLINDER HEAD COVER(S) - REMOVAL).

(5) Remove the capscrews, bridge and pivot assemblies and rocker arms (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD/ROCKER ARM / ADJUSTER ASSY - REMOVAL).

(6) Remove the push rods. **Retain the push rods, bridges, pivots and rocker arms in the same order as removed.**

(7) Remove the accessory drive belt (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - REMOVAL).

(8) Remove the A/C compressor mounting bolts and secure the compressor to the side.

(9) Remove the power steering pump and bracket from the intake manifold and water pump. Set the pump and bracket aside. DO NOT disconnect the hoses.

(10) Perform the Fuel System Pressure Release procedure. (Refer to 14 - FUEL SYSTEM/FUEL DELIVERY - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

(11) Disconnect the fuel supply line at the fuel rail.

(12) Remove the intake and exhaust manifolds from the engine cylinder head (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/MANIFOLDS/INTAKE MANIFOLD - REMOVAL).

(13) Remove the coil rail (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/IGNITION CONTROL/COIL RAIL - REMOVAL).

(14) Remove spark plugs (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/IGNITION CONTROL/SPARK PLUG - REMOVAL).

(15) Disconnect the temperature sending unit wire connector.

(16) Remove the engine cylinder head bolts. Bolt No.14 cannot be removed until the head is moved forward (Fig. 9). Pull bolt No.14 out as far as it will go and then suspend the bolt in this position (tape around the bolt).

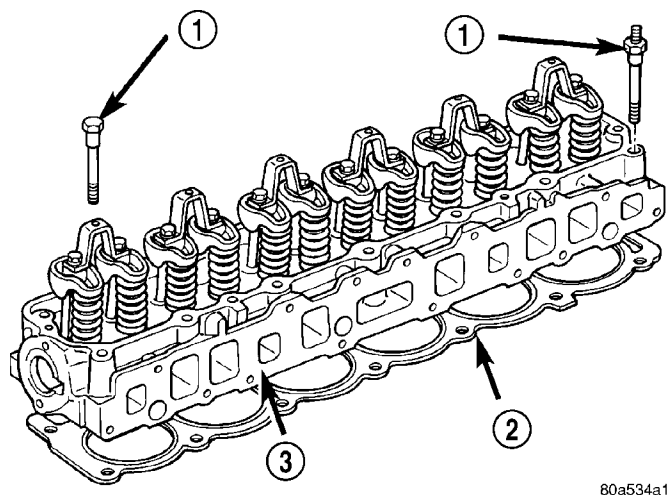
(17) Remove the engine cylinder head and gasket (Fig. 9).

(18) If this was the first time the bolts were removed, put a paint dab on the top of the bolt. If the bolts have a paint dab on the top of the bolt or it isn't known if they were used before, discard the bolts.

## CYLINDER HEAD (Continued)

(19) Stuff clean lint free shop towels into the cylinder bores.

**NOTE:** If the valves, springs, or seals are to be inspected/replaced at this time, (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD/INTAKE/EXHAUST VALVES & SEATS - STANDARD PROCEDURE) for proper inspection procedures.



80a534a1

**Fig. 9 Engine Cylinder**

- 1 - CYLINDER HEAD BOLTS  
2 - CYLINDER HEAD GASKET  
3 - CYLINDER HEAD

## CLEANING

Thoroughly clean the engine cylinder head and cylinder block mating surfaces. Clean the intake and engine exhaust manifold and engine cylinder head mating surfaces. Remove all gasket material and carbon.

Check to ensure that no coolant or foreign material has fallen into the tappet bore area.

Remove the carbon deposits from the combustion chambers and top of the pistons.

## INSPECTION

Use a straightedge and feeler gauge to check the flatness of the engine cylinder head and block mating surfaces.

## INSTALLATION

**NOTE:** This procedure can be done with the engine in or out of the vehicle.

The engine cylinder head gasket is a multi layer steel gasket. The gasket is to be installed DRY. **DO NOT use a gasket sealing compound on the gasket.**

If the engine cylinder head is to be replaced and the original valves used, measure the valve stem diameter. Only standard size valves can be used with a service replacement engine cylinder head unless the replacement head valve stem guide bores are reamed to accommodate oversize valve stems. Remove all carbon buildup and reface the valves.

(1) Remove the shop towels from the cylinder bores. Coat the bores with clean engine oil.

(2) Position the engine cylinder head gasket (with the numbers facing up) using the alignment dowels in the cylinder block, to position the gasket.

**CAUTION:** Engine cylinder head bolts should be reused only once. Replace the head bolts if they were used before or if they have a paint dab on the top of the bolt.

(3) With bolt No.14 held in place (tape around bolt), install the engine cylinder head over the same dowels used to locate the gasket. Remove the tape from bolt No.14.

(4) Coat the threads of stud bolt No.11 with Loctite 592 sealant, or equivalent.

(5) Tighten the engine cylinder head bolts in sequence according to the following procedure (Fig. 10).

**CAUTION:** During the final tightening sequence, bolt No.11 will be tightened to a lower torque than the rest of the bolts. **DO NOT** overtighten bolt No.11.

(a) Tighten all bolts in sequence (1 through 14) to 30 N·m (22 ft. lbs.) torque.

(b) Tighten all bolts in sequence (1 through 14) to 61 N·m (45 ft. lbs.) torque.

(c) Check all bolts to verify they are set to 61 N·m (45 ft. lbs.) torque.

(d) Tighten bolts in sequence:

- Bolts 1 through 10 to 149 N·m (110 ft. lbs.) torque.
- Bolt 11 to 135 N·m (100 ft. lbs.) torque.
- Bolts 12 through 14 to 149 N·m (110 ft. lbs.) torque.

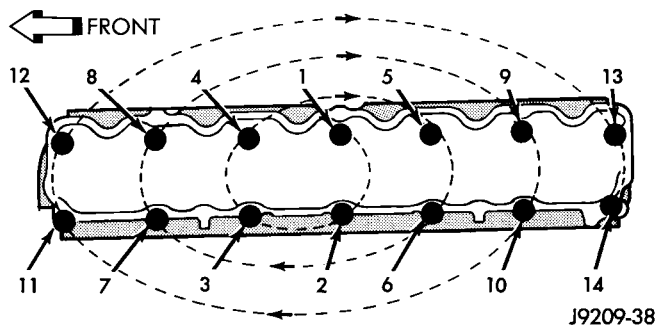
### CYLINDER HEAD BOLTS

POSITION	DESCRIPTION
1,4,5,12,13	1/2 in.-13 BOLT
8,9	1/2 in.-13 BOLT WITH DOWEL POINT
2,3,6,7,10,11,14	1/2 in.-13 WITH 7/16 in.-14 STUD END
All bolts are 12 point drives for rocker cover clearance	

## CYLINDER HEAD (Continued)

(e) Check all bolts in sequence to verify the correct torque.

(f) If not already done, clean and mark each bolt with a dab of paint after tightening. Should you encounter bolts which were painted in an earlier service operation, replace them.



**Fig. 10 Engine Cylinder Head Bolt Tightening Sequence**

(6) Install the spark plugs (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/IGNITION CONTROL/SPARK PLUG - INSTALLATION).

(7) Connect the temperature sending unit wire connector.

(8) Install the ignition coil rail (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/IGNITION CONTROL/COIL RAIL - INSTALLATION).

(9) Install the intake and exhaust manifolds (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/MANIFOLDS/INTAKE MANIFOLD - INSTALLATION).

(10) Install the fuel line.

(11) Attach the power steering pump and bracket.

(12) Install the push rods, rocker arms, pivots and bridges in the order they were removed (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD/ROCKER ARM / ADJUSTER ASSY - INSTALLATION).

(13) Install the engine cylinder head cover (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD/CYLINDER HEAD COVER(S) - INSTALLATION).

(14) Attach the air conditioner compressor mounting bracket to the engine cylinder head and block. Tighten the bolts to 40 N·m (30 ft. lbs.) torque.

(15) Attach the air conditioning compressor to the bracket. Tighten the bolts to 27 N·m (20 ft. lbs.) torque.

**CAUTION:** The serpentine drive belt must be routed correctly. Incorrect routing can cause the water pump to turn in the opposite direction causing the engine to overheat.

(16) Install the serpentine drive belt. (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - INSTALLATION).

(17) Install the air cleaner and ducting.

(18) Connect the hoses to the engine thermostat housing and fill the cooling system to the specified level (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

(19) The automatic transmission throttle linkage and cable must be adjusted after completing the engine cylinder head installation (Refer to 21 - TRANSMISSION/TRANSAXLE/AUTOMATIC - AW4/THROTTLE VALVE CABLE - ADJUSTMENTS).

(20) Install the temperature sending unit and connect the wire connector.

(21) If equipped with air conditioning, install A/C compressor (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING/A/C COMPRESSOR - INSTALLATION) and charge A/C system (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

(22) Connect negative cable to battery.

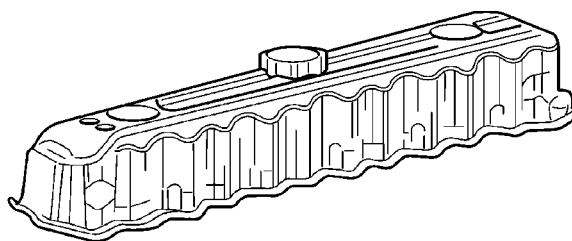
**WARNING: USE EXTREME CAUTION WHEN THE ENGINE IS OPERATING. DO NOT STAND IN DIRECT LINE WITH THE FAN. DO NOT PUT HANDS NEAR THE PULLEYS, BELTS OR FAN. DO NOT WEAR LOOSE CLOTHING.**

(23) Operate the engine with the radiator cap off. Inspect for leaks and continue operating the engine until the engine thermostat opens. Add coolant, if required.

## CYLINDER HEAD COVER(S)

## DESCRIPTION

The cylinder head cover (Fig. 11) is made of stamped steel and incorporates the Crankcase Ventilation (CCV) Hoses and the oil fill opening.



80bcea5b

**Fig. 11 Cylinder Head Cover**

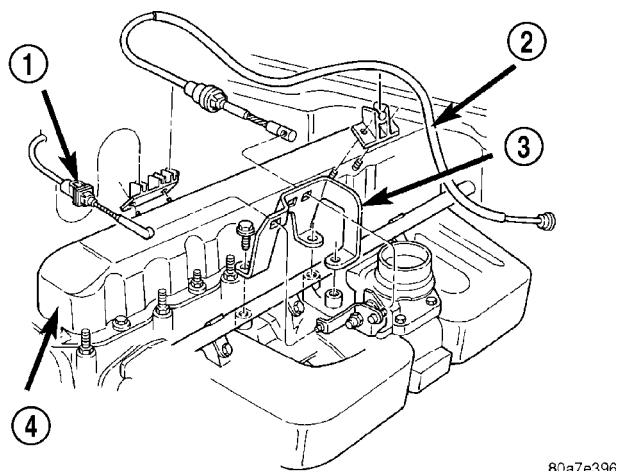


## CYLINDER HEAD COVER(S) (Continued)

## REMOVAL

The cylinder head cover is isolated from the cylinder head via grommets and a reusable molded rubber gasket. The grommet and limiter are retained in the cylinder head cover.

- (1) Disconnect negative cable from battery.
- (2) Disconnect the Crankcase Ventilation (CCV) vacuum hose from engine cylinder head cover.
- (3) Disconnect the fresh air inlet hose from the engine cylinder head cover.
- (4) Disconnect the accelerator, transmission, and speed (if equipped) control cables from the throttle body (Fig. 12).
- (5) Remove the three bolts that fasten the control cable bracket to the intake manifold.
- (6) Remove control cables from cylinder head cover clip.
- (7) Position control cables and bracket away from cylinder head cover secure with tie straps.
- (8) Remove the engine cylinder head cover mounting bolts.
- (9) Remove the engine cylinder head cover and gasket.



**Fig. 12 Engine Cylinder Head Cover**

- 1 - TRANS CONTROL CABLE
- 2 - ACCELERATOR CABLE
- 3 - CONTROL CABLE BRACKET
- 4 - CYLINDER HEAD COVER

## CLEANING

Remove any original sealer from the cover sealing surface of the engine cylinder head and clean the surface using a fabric cleaner.

Remove all residue from the sealing surface using a clean, dry cloth.

## INSPECTION

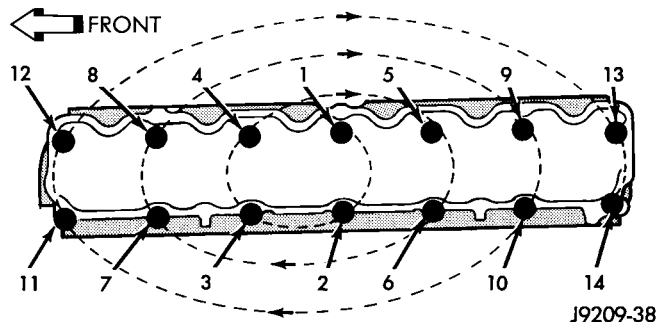
Inspect the engine cylinder head cover for cracks. Replace the cover, if cracked.

The original dark grey gasket material should NOT be removed. If sections of the gasket material are missing or are compressed, replace the engine cylinder head cover. However, sections with minor damage such as small cracks, cuts or chips may be repaired with a hand held applicator. The new material must be smoothed over to maintain gasket height. Allow the gasket material to cure prior to engine cylinder head cover installation.

## INSTALLATION

The cylinder head cover is isolated from the cylinder head via grommets and a reusable molded rubber gasket. The grommet and limiter are retained in the cylinder head cover.

- (1) If a replacement cover is installed, transfer the CCV valve grommet and oil filler cap from the original cover to the replacement cover.
- (2) Install cylinder head cover and gasket (Fig. 13). Tighten the mounting bolts to 10 N·m (85 in. lbs.) torque.



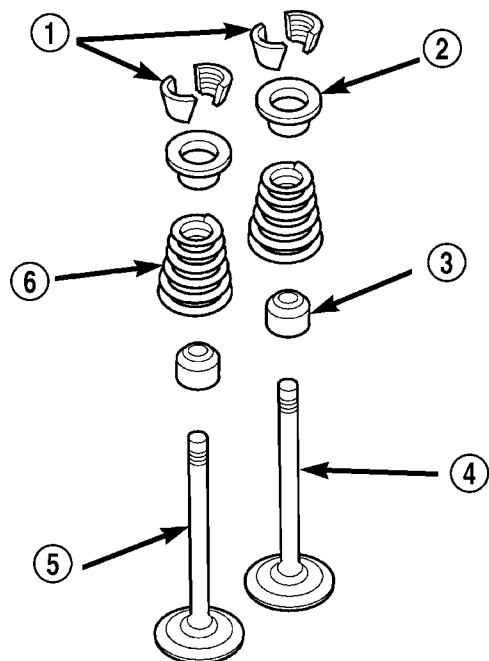
**Fig. 13 Cylinder Head Cover Gasket Locator Pins at #8 & #9**

- (3) Connect the CCV hoses.
- (4) Install control cables and bracket on intake manifold and tighten bolts to 8.7 N·m (77 in. lbs.) torque.
- (5) Connect control cables to throttle body linkage.
- (6) Snap control cables into cylinder head cover clip.
- (7) Connect negative cable to battery.

## INTAKE/EXHAUST VALVES & SEATS

### DESCRIPTION

The valves are made of heat resistant steel and have chrome plated stems to prevent scuffing. All valves use three bead locks to promote valve rotation (Fig. 14).



80b7704b

**Fig. 14 VALVE AND KEEPER CONFIGURATION 4.0L**

- 1 - VALVE LOCKS (3-BEAD)
- 2 - RETAINER
- 3 - VALVE STEM OIL SEAL
- 4 - INTAKE VALVE
- 5 - EXHAUST VALVE
- 6 - VALVE SPRING

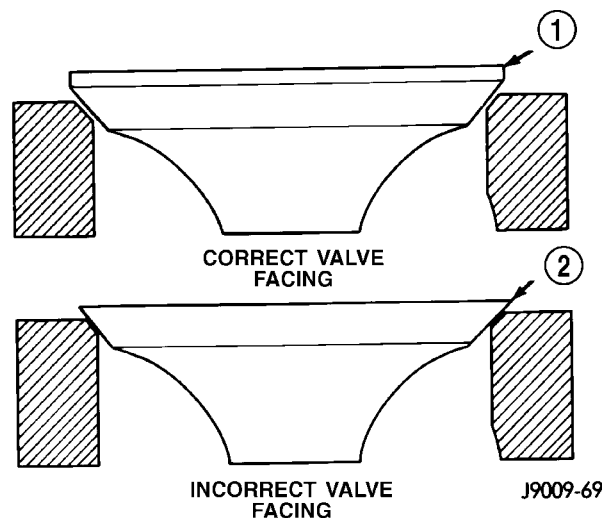
### STANDARD PROCEDURE - VALVE SERVICE

#### VALVE REFACING

Clean all carbon deposits from the combustion chambers, valve ports, valve stems, valve stem guides and head.

(1) Use a valve refacing machine to reface the intake and exhaust valves to the specified angle.

(2) After refacing, a margin of at least 0.787 mm (0.031 inch) must remain (Fig. 15). If the margin is less than 0.787 mm (0.031 inch), the valve must be replaced.



**Fig. 15 Valve Facing**

- 1 - VALVE MARGIN
- 2 - NO MARGIN

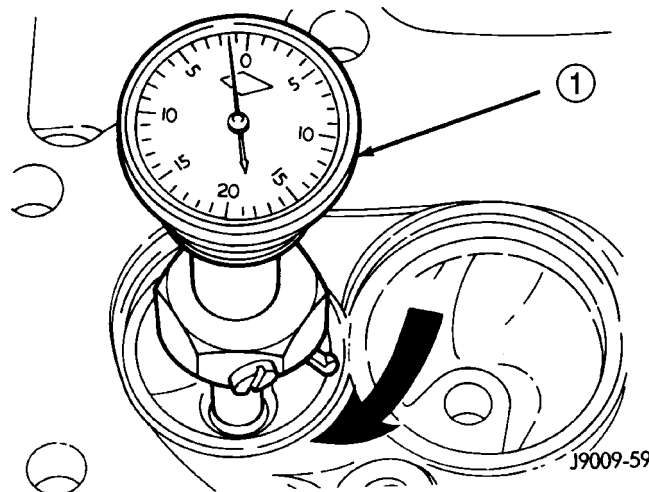
#### VALVE SEAT REFACING

Clean all carbon deposits from the combustion chambers, valve ports, valve stems, valve stem guides and head.

(1) Install a pilot of the correct size in the valve guide bore. Reface the valve seat to the specified angle with a good dressing stone. Remove only enough metal to provide a smooth finish.

(2) Use tapered stones to obtain the specified seat width when required.

(3) Control valve seat runoff to a maximum of 0.0635 mm (0.0025 in.) (Fig. 16).



**Fig. 16 Measurement of Valve Seat Runout**

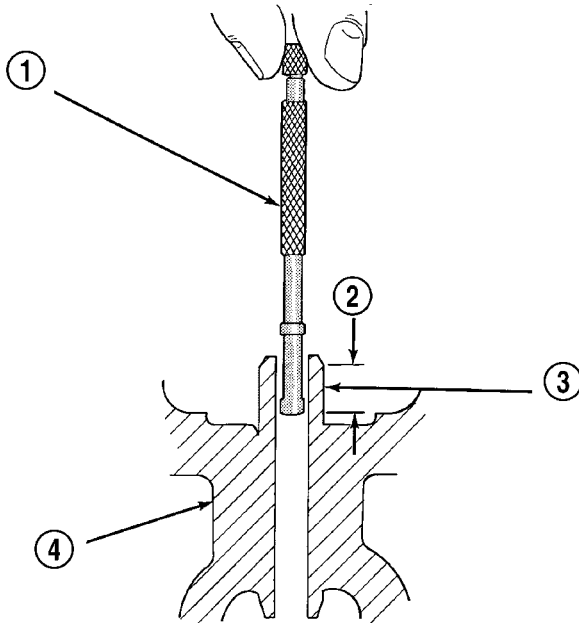
- 1 - DIAL INDICATOR

## INTAKE/EXHAUST VALVES &amp; SEATS (Continued)

## VALVE STEM-TO-GUIDE CLEARANCE MEASUREMENT

## PREFERRED METHOD

- (1) Remove the valve from the head.
- (2) Clean the valve stem guide bore with solvent and a bristle brush.
- (3) Insert a telescoping gauge into the valve stem guide bore approximately 9.525 mm (.375 inch) from the valve spring side of the head (Fig. 17).



J9509-87

**Fig. 17 Measurement of Valve Guide Bore Diameter**

- 1 - GAUGE
- 2 - 9.525 MM (3/8 INCH)
- 3 - VALVE STEM GUIDE
- 4 - CYLINDER HEAD

(4) Remove and measure telescoping gauge with a micrometer.

(5) Repeat the measurement with contacts lengthwise to engine cylinder head.

(6) Compare the crosswise to lengthwise measurements to determine out-of-roundness. If the measurements differ by more than 0.0635 mm (0.0025 in.), ream the guide bore to accommodate an oversize valve stem.

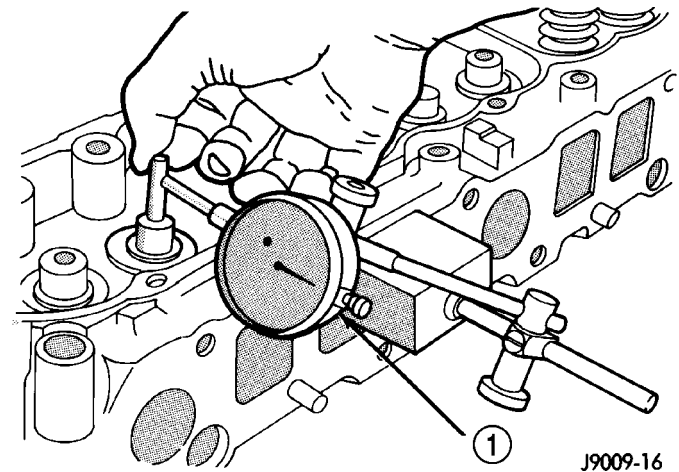
(7) Compare the measured valve guide bore diameter with specifications (7.95-7.97 mm or 0.313-0.314 inch). If the measurement differs from specification by more than 0.076 mm (0.003 inch), ream the guide bore to accommodate an oversize valve stem.

## ALTERNATIVE METHOD

(1) Use a dial indicator to measure the lateral movement of the valve stem (stem-to-guide clearance). This must be done with the valve installed in its guide and just off the valve seat (Fig. 18).

(2) Correct clearance is 0.025-0.0762 mm (0.001-0.003 inch). If indicated movement exceeds the specification ream the valve guide to accommodate an oversize valve stem.

**NOTE:** Valve seats must be ground after reaming the valve guides to ensure that the valve seat is concentric to the valve guide.



J9009-16

**Fig. 18 Measurement of Lateral Movement Of Valve Stem**

- 1 - DIAL INDICATOR

## REMOVAL

**NOTE:** This procedure is done with the engine cylinder head removed from the block.

(1) Remove the engine cylinder head (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD - REMOVAL) from the cylinder block.

(2) Use Valve Spring Compressor Tool MD-998772A and compress each valve spring.

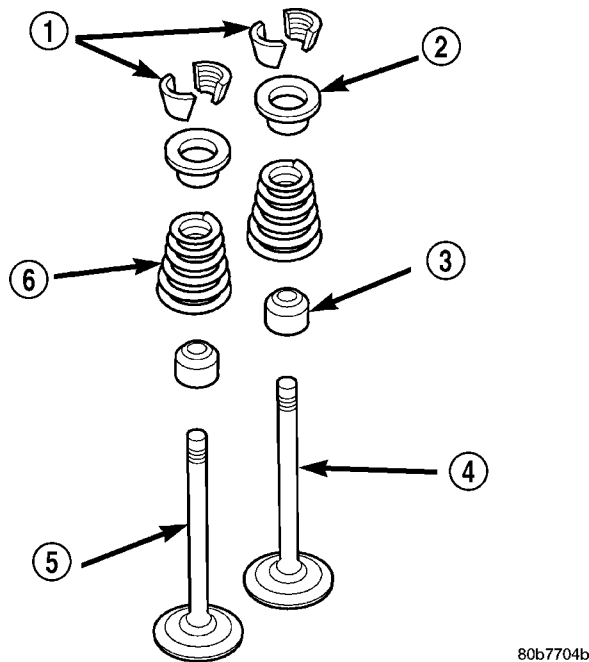
(3) Remove the valve locks, retainers, springs and valve stem oil seals. Discard the oil seals (Fig. 19).

(4) Use a smooth stone or a jewelers file to remove any burrs on the top of the valve stem, especially around the groove for the locks.

(5) Remove the valves, and place them in a rack in the same order as removed.



## INTAKE/EXHAUST VALVES &amp; SEATS (Continued)

**Fig. 19 Valve and Valve Components**

- 1 - VALVE LOCKS (3-BEAD)
- 2 - RETAINER
- 3 - VALVE STEM OIL SEAL
- 4 - INTAKE VALVE
- 5 - EXHAUST VALVE
- 6 - VALVE SPRING

**INSTALLATION**

**NOTE:** This procedure is done with the engine cylinder head removed from the block.

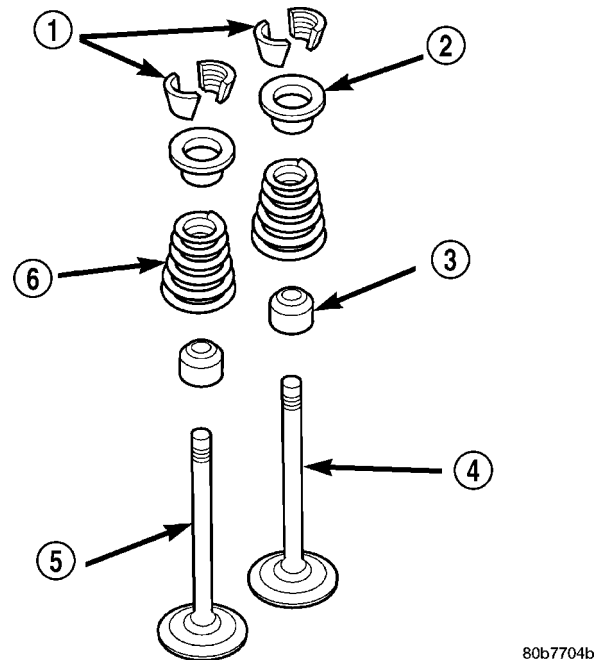
- (1) Thoroughly clean the valve stems and the valve guide bores.
- (2) Lightly lubricate the stem.
- (3) Install the valve in the original valve guide bore.
- (4) Install the replacement valve stem oil seals on the valve stems (Fig. 20). If the 0.381 mm (0.015 inch) oversize valve stems are used, oversize oil seals are required.

(5) Position the valve spring and retainer on the engine cylinder head and compress the valve spring with Valve Spring Compressor Tool MD-998772A.

(6) Install the valve locks and release the tool.

(7) Tap the valve spring from side to side with a hammer to ensure that the spring is properly seated at the engine cylinder head. Also tap the top of the retainer to seat the valve locks.

(8) Install the engine cylinder head (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD - INSTALLATION).

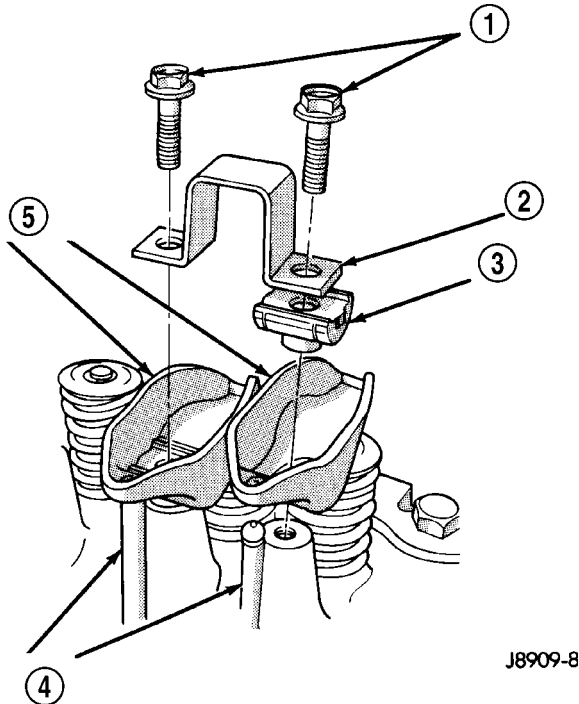
**Fig. 20 Valve and Valve Components**

- 1 - VALVE LOCKS (3-BEAD)
- 2 - RETAINER
- 3 - VALVE STEM OIL SEAL
- 4 - INTAKE VALVE
- 5 - EXHAUST VALVE
- 6 - VALVE SPRING

## ROCKER ARM / ADJUSTER ASSEMBLY

### DESCRIPTION

The rocker arms are made of stamped steel and have a operational ratio of 1.6:1 (Fig. 21).



J8909-8

**Fig. 21 Rocker Arms—Typical**

- 1 - CAPSCREWS
- 2 - BRIDGE
- 3 - PIVOT ASSEMBLY
- 4 - PUSH RODS
- 5 - ROCKER ARMS

### OPERATION

When the push rods are forced upward by the camshaft lobes the push rod presses upward on the rocker arms, the rocker arms pivot, forcing downward pressure on the valves forcing the valves to move downward and off from their seats.

### REMOVAL

**NOTE:** This procedure can be done with the engine in or out of the vehicle.

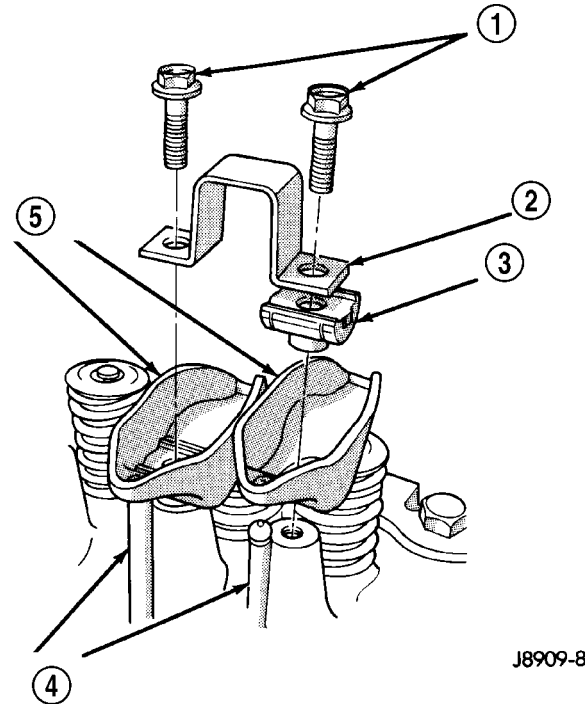
(1) Remove the cylinder head cover (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD/CYLINDER HEAD COVER(S) - REMOVAL).

(2) Check for rocker arm bridges which are causing misalignment of the rocker arm to valve tip area.

(3) Remove the cap screws at each bridge and pivot assembly (Fig. 22). Alternately loosen the cap screws one turn at a time to avoid damaging the bridges.

(4) Remove the bridges, pivots and corresponding pairs of rocker arms (Fig. 22). Place them on a bench in the same order as removed.

(5) Remove the push rods and place them on a bench in the same order as removed.



J8909-8

**Fig. 22 Rocker Arm**

- 1 - CAPSCREWS
- 2 - BRIDGE
- 3 - PIVOT ASSEMBLY
- 4 - PUSH RODS
- 5 - ROCKER ARMS

### CLEANING

Clean all the components with cleaning solvent.

Use compressed air to blow out the oil passages in the rocker arms and push rods.

### INSPECTION

Inspect the pivot surface area of each rocker arm. Replace any that are scuffed, pitted, cracked or excessively worn.

Inspect the valve stem tip contact surface of each rocker arm and replace any rocker arm that is deeply pitted.

Inspect each push rod end for excessive wear and replace as required. If any push rod is excessively worn because of lack of oil, replace it and inspect the corresponding hydraulic tappet for excessive wear.

Inspect the push rods for straightness by rolling them on a flat surface or by shining a light between the push rod and the flat surface.

A wear pattern along the length of the push rod is not normal. Inspect the engine cylinder head for obstruction if this condition exists.

## ROCKER ARM / ADJUSTER ASSEMBLY (Continued)

## INSTALLATION

**NOTE:** This procedure can be done with the engine in or out of the vehicle.

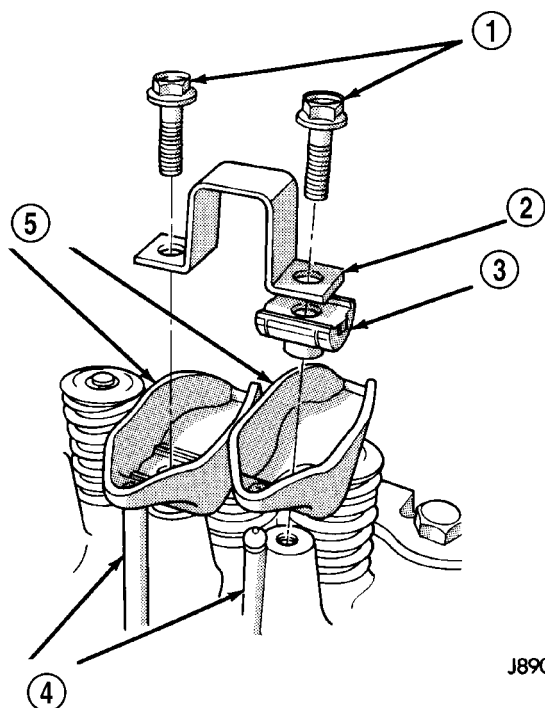
(1) Lubricate the ball ends of the push rods with Mopar® Engine Oil Supplement, or equivalent and install push rods in their original locations. Ensure that the bottom end of each push rod is centered in the tappet plunger cap seat.

(2) Using Mopar® Engine Oil Supplement, or equivalent, lubricate the area of the rocker arm that the pivot contacts. Install rocker arms, pivots and bridge above each cylinder in their originally position (Fig. 23).

(3) Loosely install the capscrews through each bridge.

(4) At each bridge, tighten the capscrews alternately, one turn at a time, to avoid damaging the bridge. Tighten the capscrews to 28 N·m (21 ft. lbs.) torque.

(5) Install the engine cylinder head cover (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD/CYLINDER HEAD COVER(S) - INSTALLATION).



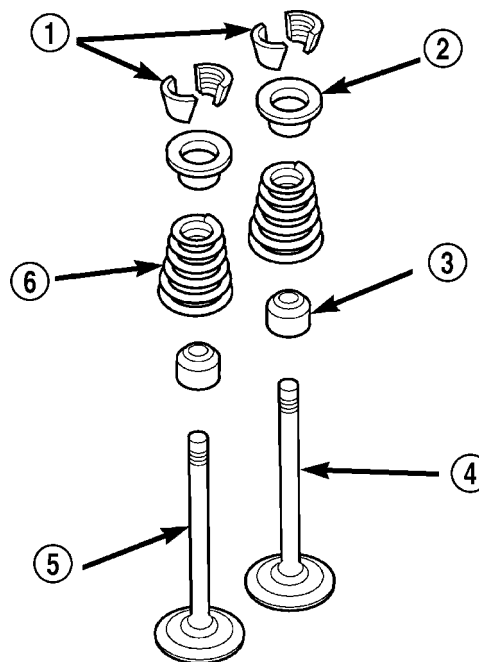
**Fig. 23 Rocker Arm**

- 1 - CAPSCREWS
- 2 - BRIDGE
- 3 - PIVOT ASSEMBLY
- 4 - PUSH RODS
- 5 - ROCKER ARMS

## VALVE STEM SEALS

## DESCRIPTION

The valve stem seals (Fig. 24) are made of rubber and incorporate a garter spring to maintain consistent lubrication control.



80b7704b

**Fig. 24 Valve**

- 1 - VALVE LOCKS (3-BEAD)
- 2 - RETAINER
- 3 - VALVE STEM OIL SEAL
- 4 - INTAKE VALVE
- 5 - EXHAUST VALVE
- 6 - VALVE SPRING

## VALVE SPRINGS

## DESCRIPTION

The valve springs (Fig. 25) are made of high strength silicon chrome spring steel. The springs are common for both intake and exhaust valves.

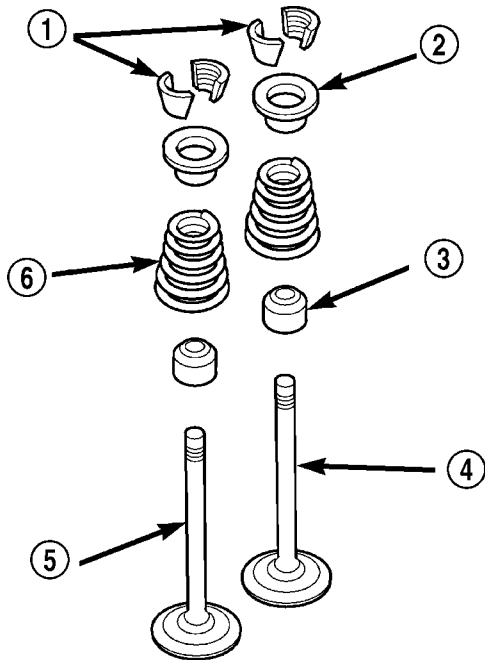
## STANDARD PROCEDURE - VALVE SPRING TENSION TEST

Clean all carbon deposits from the combustion chambers, valve ports, valve stems, valve stem guides and head.

Use a universal Valve Spring Tester and a torque wrench to test each valve spring for the specified tension value (Fig. 26).

Replace valve springs that are not within specifications.

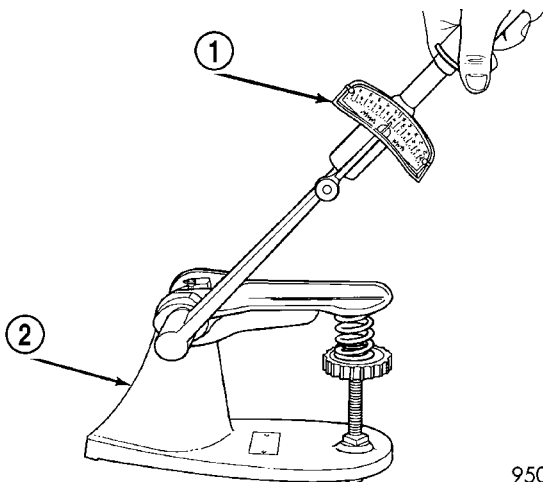
## VALVE SPRINGS (Continued)



80b7704b

**Fig. 25 VALVE AND KEEPER CONFIGURATION 4.0L**

- 1 - VALVE LOCKS (3-BEAD)
- 2 - RETAINER
- 3 - VALVE STEM OIL SEAL
- 4 - INTAKE VALVE
- 5 - EXHAUST VALVE
- 6 - VALVE SPRING



9509-79

**Fig. 26 Valve Spring Tester**

- 1 - TORQUE WRENCH
- 2 - VALVE SPRING TESTER

**REMOVAL**

**NOTE:** This procedure can be done with the engine cylinder head installed on the block.

Inspect the valve stems, especially the grooves. An Arkansas smooth stone should be used to remove nicks and high spots.

Each valve spring is held in place by a retainer and a set of conical valve locks. The locks can be removed only by compressing the valve spring.

(1) Remove the engine cylinder head cover (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD/CYLINDER HEAD COVER(S) - REMOVAL).

(2) Remove cap screws, bridge and pivot assemblies and rocker arms (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD/ROCKER ARM / ADJUSTER ASSY - REMOVAL) for access to each valve spring to be removed.

(3) Remove push rods. **Retain the push rods, bridges, pivots and rocker arms in the same order and position as removed.**

(4) Inspect the springs and retainer for cracks and possible signs of weakening.

(5) Remove the spark plug(s) adjacent to the cylinder(s) below the valve springs to be removed.

(6) Connect an air hose to the adapter and apply air pressure slowly. Maintain at least 621 kPa (90 psi) of air pressure in the cylinder to hold the valves against their seats. For vehicles equipped with an air conditioner, use a flexible air adaptor when servicing the No.1 cylinder.

(7) Tap the retainer or tip with a rawhide hammer to loosen the lock from the retainer. Use Valve Spring Compressor Tool MD-998772A to compress the spring and remove the locks (Fig. 27).

(8) Remove valve spring and retainer (Fig. 27).

(9) Remove valve stem oil seals (Fig. 27). Note the valve seals are different for intake and exhaust valves. The top of each seal is marked either INT (intake/black in color) or EXH (exhaust/brown in color). DO NOT mix the seals.

**INSTALLATION**

**NOTE:** This procedure can be done with the engine cylinder head installed on the block.

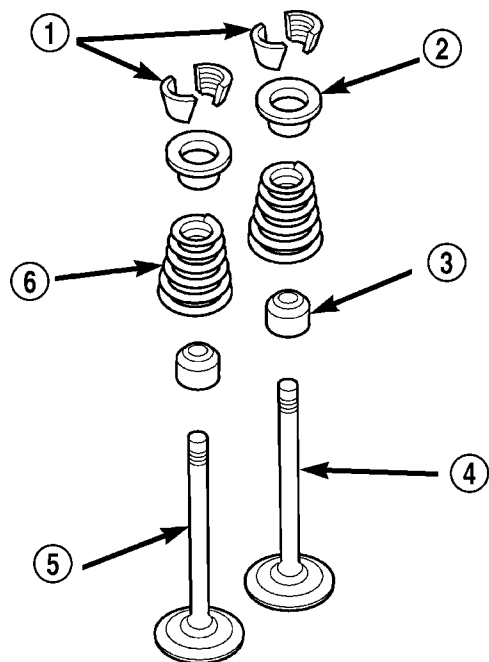
**CAUTION:** Install oil seals carefully to prevent damage from the sharp edges of the valve spring lock groove.

(1) Lightly push the valve seal over the valve stem and valve guide boss. Be sure the seal is completely seated on the valve guide boss.

(2) Install valve spring and retainer (Fig. 28).

(3) Compress the valve spring with Valve Spring Compressor Tool MD-998772A and insert the valve locks. Release the spring tension and remove the tool. Tap the spring from side-to-side to ensure that the spring is seated properly on the engine cylinder head.

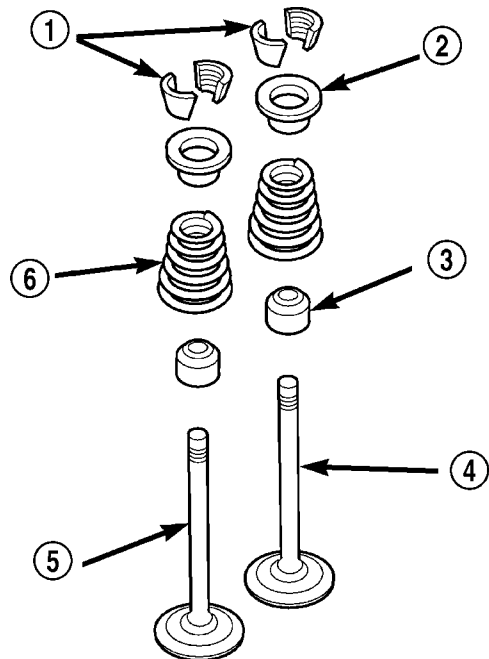
## VALVE SPRINGS (Continued)



80b7704b

**Fig. 27 Valve and Valve Components**

- 1 - VALVE LOCKS (3-BEAD)
- 2 - RETAINER
- 3 - VALVE STEM OIL SEAL
- 4 - INTAKE VALVE
- 5 - EXHAUST VALVE
- 6 - VALVE SPRING



80b7704b

**Fig. 28 Valve and Valve**

- 1 - VALVE LOCKS (3-BEAD)
- 2 - RETAINER
- 3 - VALVE STEM OIL SEAL
- 4 - INTAKE VALVE
- 5 - EXHAUST VALVE
- 6 - VALVE SPRING

(4) Release air pressure and disconnect the air hose. Remove the adaptor from the spark plug hole and install the spark plug.

(5) Repeat the procedures for each remaining valve spring to be removed.

(6) Install the push rods. Ensure the bottom end of each rod is centered in the plunger cap seat of the hydraulic valve tappet.

(7) Install the rocker arms, pivots and bridge (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD/ROCKER ARM / ADJUSTER ASSY - INSTALLATION) at their original location.

(8) Install the engine cylinder head cover (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD/CYLINDER HEAD COVER(S) - INSTALLATION).

## ENGINE BLOCK

## CLEANING

Thoroughly clean the oil pan and engine block gasket surfaces.

Use compressed air to clean out:

- The galley at the oil filter adaptor hole.
- The front and rear oil galley holes.
- The feed holes for the crankshaft main bearings.

Once the block has been completely cleaned, apply Loctite PST pipe sealant with Teflon 592 to the threads of the front and rear oil galley plugs. Tighten the plugs to 34 N·m (25 ft. lbs.) torque.

## INSPECTION

(1) It is mandatory to use a dial bore gauge to measure each cylinder bore diameter (Fig. 29). To correctly select the proper size piston, a cylinder bore gauge, capable of reading in 0.003 mm (.0001 in.) INCREMENTS is required. If a bore gauge is not available, do not use an inside micrometer.

(2) Measure the inside diameter of the cylinder bore at three levels below top of bore. Start perpendicular (across or at 90 degrees) to the axis of the crankshaft and then take two additional reading.

(3) Measure the cylinder bore diameter crosswise to the cylinder block near the top of the bore. Repeat the measurement near the middle of the bore, then repeat the measurement near the bottom of the bore.

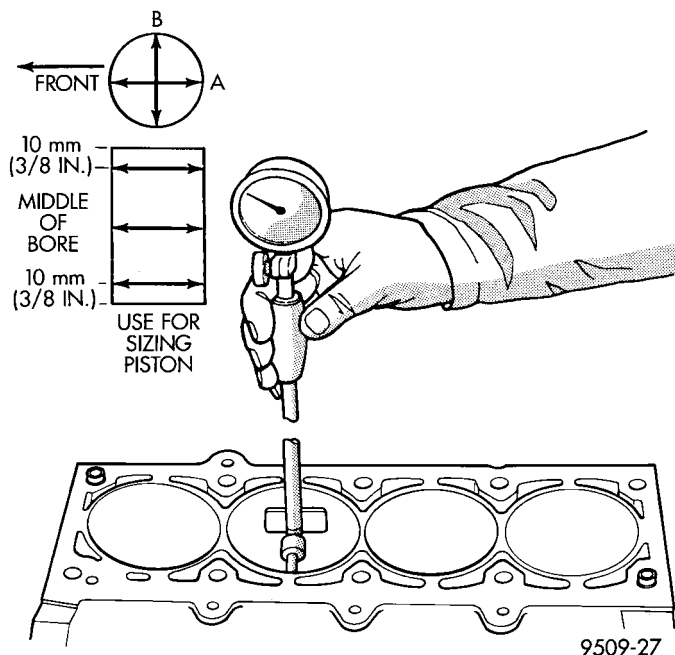
(4) Determine taper by subtracting the smaller diameter from the larger diameter.

(5) Rotate measuring device 90° and repeat steps above.

(6) Determine out-of-roundness by comparing the difference between each measurement.



## ENGINE BLOCK (Continued)

**Fig. 29 Cylinder Bore Measurement**

(7) If cylinder bore taper does not exceed 0.025 mm (0.001 inch) and out-of-roundness does not exceed 0.025 mm (0.001 inch), the cylinder bore can be honed. If the cylinder bore taper or out-of-round condition exceeds these maximum limits, the cylinder must be bored and then honed to accept an oversize piston. A slight amount of taper always exists in the cylinder bore after the engine has been in use for a period of time.

## CAMSHAFT & BEARINGS

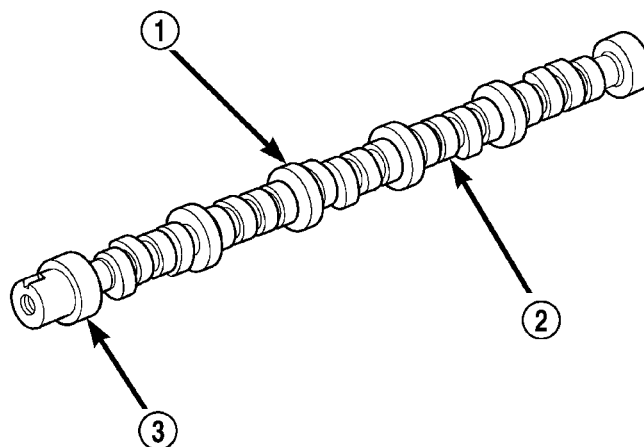
### DESCRIPTION

The camshaft is made of gray cast iron with twelve machined lobes and four bearing journals (Fig. 30). When the camshaft rotates the lobes actuate the tappets and push rods, forcing upward on the rocker arms which applies downward force on the valves.

### REMOVAL

#### REMOVAL - CAMSHAFT BEARINGS

The camshaft rotates within four steel-shelled, babbitt-lined bearings that are pressed into the cylinder block and then line reamed. The camshaft bearing bores and bearing diameters are not the same size. They are stepped down in 0.254 mm (0.010 inch) increments from the front bearing (largest) to the rear bearing (smallest). This permits easier removal and installation of the camshaft. The

**Fig. 30 Camshaft—Typical**

- 1 - CAMSHAFT
- 2 - LOBES
- 3 - BEARING JOURNAL

camshaft bearings are pressure lubricated. Camshaft end play is maintained by the thrust plate.

(1) Remove the camshaft (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE BLOCK/CAMSHAFT & BEARINGS (IN BLOCK) - REMOVAL).

**NOTE:** It is not advisable to attempt to replace camshaft bearings unless special removal and installation tools are available, such as recommended tool 8544 Camshaft Bushing Remover Installer.

(2) Using Special tool 8544 Camshaft Bushing Remover Installer, remove the camshaft bearings.

### REMOVAL - CAMSHAFT

**WARNING:** THE COOLANT IN A RECENTLY OPERATED ENGINE IS HOT AND PRESSURIZED. RELEASE THE PRESSURE BEFORE REMOVING THE DRAIN COCK, CAP AND DRAIN PLUGS.

- (1) Disconnect negative cable from battery.
- (2) Drain the cooling system (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).
- (3) Remove the radiator (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ENGINE/RADIATOR - REMOVAL) and condenser (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING/A/C CONDENSER - REMOVAL), if equipped with A/C.

## CAMSHAFT &amp; BEARINGS (Continued)

(4) Remove the engine cylinder head cover (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD/CYLINDER HEAD COVER(S) - REMOVAL).

(5) Remove the rocker arms, bridges and pivots (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD/ROCKER ARM / ADJUSTER ASSY - REMOVAL).

(6) Remove the push rods.

(7) Remove the engine cylinder head and gasket (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD - REMOVAL).

(8) Remove the hydraulic valve tappets from the engine cylinder block (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE BLOCK/HYDRAULIC LIFTERS (CAM IN BLOCK) - REMOVAL).

(9) Remove the vibration damper (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE BLOCK/VIBRATION DAMPER - REMOVAL).

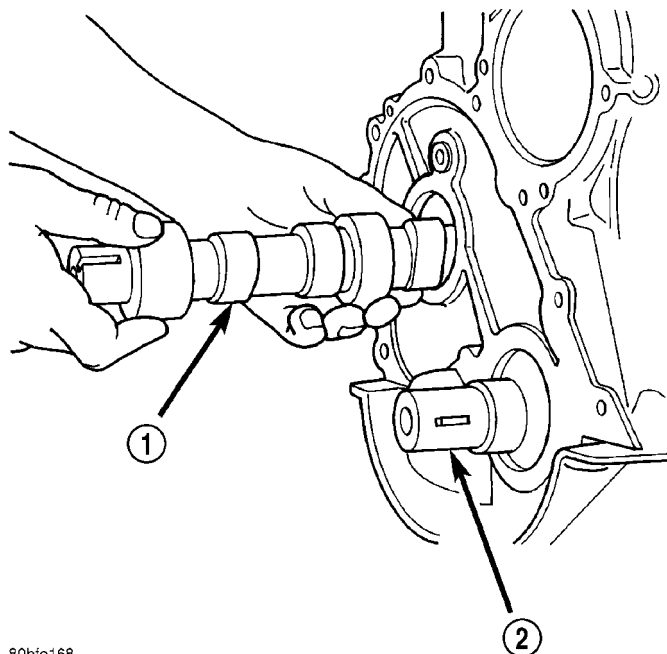
(10) Remove the timing case cover (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/VALVE TIMING/TIMING BELT / CHAIN COVER(S) - REMOVAL).

(11) Rotate the crankshaft until the crankshaft sprocket timing mark is aligned on centerline with the camshaft sprocket timing mark (Fig. 32).

(12) Remove the timing chain and sprockets (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/VALVE TIMING/TIMING BELT/ CHAIN AND SPROCKETS - REMOVAL).

(13) Remove the front bumper and/or grille, as required.

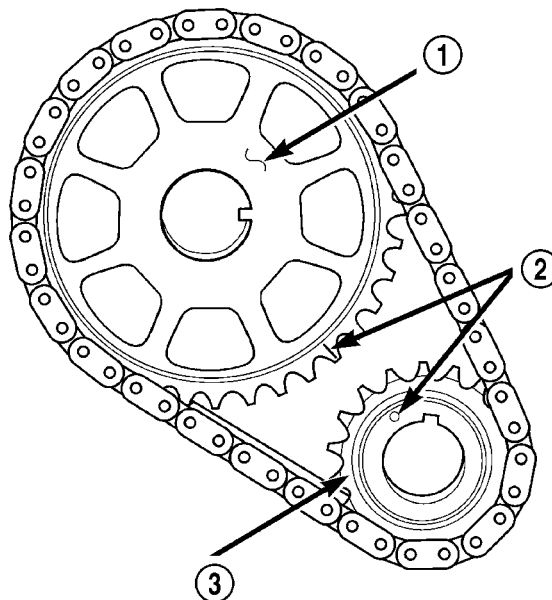
(14) Remove the two thrust plate retaining screws, thrust plate and camshaft (Fig. 31).



80bfe168

**Fig. 31 Camshaft Removal**

- 1 - CAMSHAFT
- 2 - CRANKSHAFT



80bfe0fa

**Fig. 32 Crankshaft / Camshaft Sprocket Timing Mark Alignment**

- 1 - CAMSHAFT SPROCKET
- 2 - TIMING MARKS
- 3 - CRANKSHAFT SPROCKET

## INSPECTION

## INSPECTION - CAMSHAFT BEARINGS

(1) Inspect the bearing journals for uneven wear pattern or finish.

(2) Inspect the bearings for wear.

## INSPECTION - CAMSHAFT

(1) Inspect the cam lobes for wear.

(2) Inspect the camshaft position sensor drive gear for wear.

(3) If the camshaft appears to have been rubbing against the thrust washer, examine the oil pressure relief holes in the rear cam journal. The oil pressure relief holes must be free of debris.

## INSTALLATION

## INSTALLATION - CAMSHAFT BEARINGS

**CAUTION:** Make sure outside diameter of number 1 bearing is clean. Make sure that the bearing is properly installed in the engine block, align the oil hole in the bearing with the oil gallery in the bearing bore. Failure to do so will cause inadequate oil supply for the sprockets and timing chain.



## CAMSHAFT &amp; BEARINGS (Continued)

(1) Using recommended special tool 8544 Camshaft Bearing Remover/Installer, install new camshaft bearings.

**INSTALLATION - CAMSHAFT**

(1) Lubricate the camshaft with Mopar® Engine Oil Supplement, or equivalent.

(2) Carefully install the camshaft to prevent damage to the camshaft bearings.

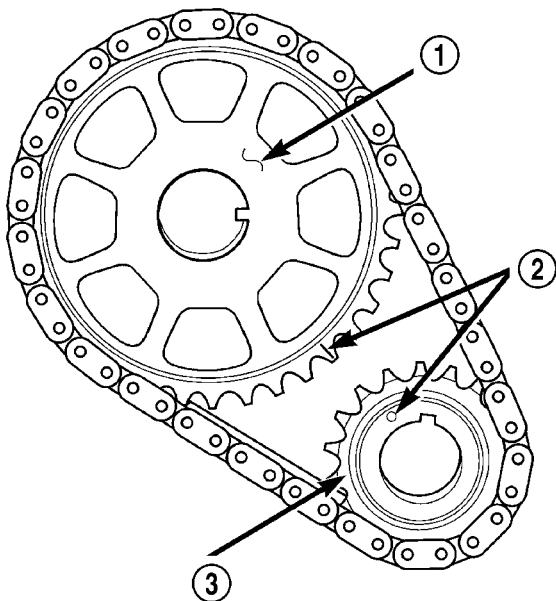
(3) Position thrust plate and install retaining screws. Tighten screws to 24 N·m (18 ft. lbs.).

(4) Lubricate the camshaft with Mopar® engine oil supplement, or equivalent.

(5) Install the camshaft sprocket, crankshaft sprocket and timing chain (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/VALVE TIMING/TIMING BELT/CHAIN AND SPROCKETS - INSTALLATION).

(6) Tighten the camshaft sprocket bolt and washer to 68 N·m (50 ft. lbs.).

(7) To verify correct installation of the timing chain, turn the crankshaft two full revolutions then position the camshaft sprocket timing mark as shown in (Fig. 33).



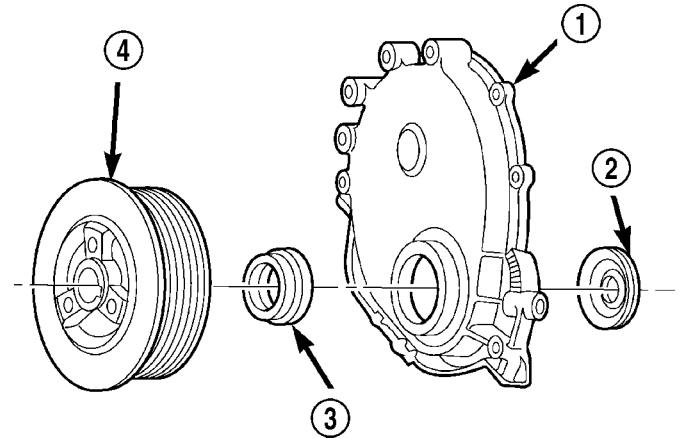
80bfe0fa

**Fig. 33 Crankshaft / Camshaft Chain Drive Installation—Typical**

- 1 - CAMSHAFT SPROCKET
- 2 - TIMING MARKS
- 3 - CRANKSHAFT SPROCKET

(8) Install the timing case cover with a replacement oil seal (Fig. 34). (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/VALVE TIMING/TIMING BELT / CHAIN COVER(S) - INSTALLATION).

(9) Install the vibration damper (Fig. 34) (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE BLOCK/VIBRATION DAMPER - INSTALLATION).



80abd2b1

**Fig. 34 Timing Case Cover Components**

- 1 - TIMING CASE COVER
- 2 - OIL SLINGER
- 3 - CRANKSHAFT OIL SEAL
- 4 - VIBRATION DAMPER PULLEY

(10) Install the hydraulic valve tappets (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE BLOCK/HYDRAULIC LIFTERS (CAM IN BLOCK) - INSTALLATION).

(11) Install the cylinder head gasket with the numbers facing up.

(12) Install the cylinder head (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD - INSTALLATION).

(13) Install the push rods.

(14) Install the rocker arms and pivot and bridge assemblies (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD/ROCKER ARM / ADJUSTER ASSY - INSTALLATION).

(15) Install the engine cylinder head cover (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD/CYLINDER HEAD COVER(S) - INSTALLATION).

(16) Install the serpentine drive belt (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - INSTALLATION).

**NOTE:** During installation, lubricate the hydraulic valve tappets and all valve components with Mopar® Engine Oil Supplement, or equivalent. The Mopar® Engine Oil Supplement, or equivalent must remain with the engine oil for at least 1609 km (1,000 miles). The oil supplement need not be drained until the next scheduled oil change.

(17) Install the radiator (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ENGINE/RADIATOR - INSTALLATION).

(18) Check the ignition timing and adjust as necessary.

(19) Install the grille and bumper, if removed.

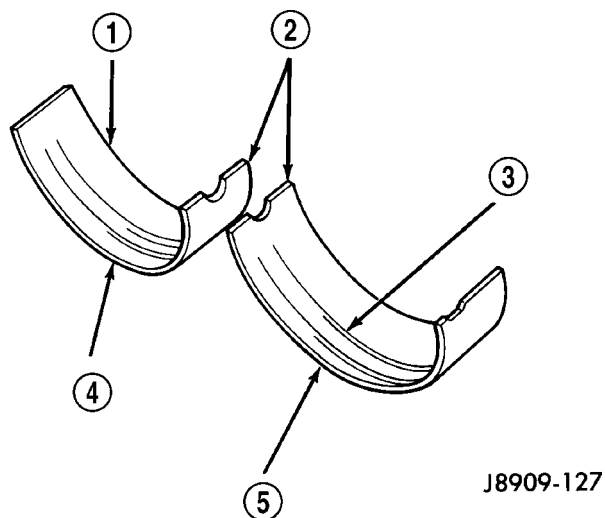
(20) Connect negative cable to battery.

## CONNECTING ROD BEARINGS

### STANDARD PROCEDURE - FITTING CONNECTING ROD BEARINGS

Inspect the connecting rod bearings for scoring and bent alignment tabs (Fig. 35) (Fig. 36). Check the bearings for normal wear patterns, scoring, grooving, fatigue and pitting (Fig. 37). Replace any bearing that shows abnormal wear.

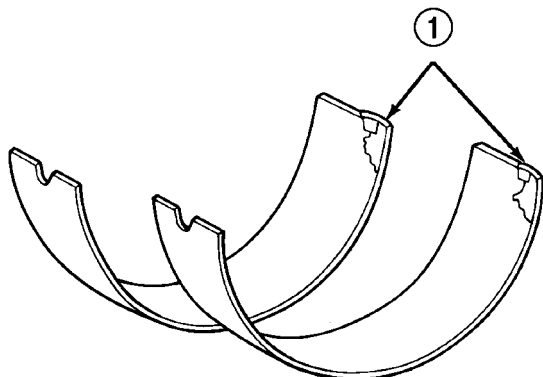
Inspect the connecting rod journals for signs of scoring, nicks and burrs.



J8909-127

**Fig. 35 Connecting Rod Bearing Inspection**

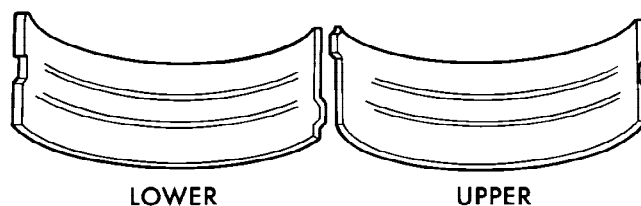
- 1 - UPPER BEARING HALF
- 2 - MATING EDGES
- 3 - GROOVES CAUSED BY ROD BOLTS SCRATCHING JOURNAL DURING INSTALLATION
- 4 - WEAR PATTERN - ALWAYS GREATER ON UPPER BEARING
- 5 - LOWER BEARING HALF



J8909-128

**Fig. 36 Locking Tab Inspection**

- 1 - ABNORMAL CONTACT AREA CAUSED BY LOCKING TABS NOT FULLY SEATED OR BEING BENT



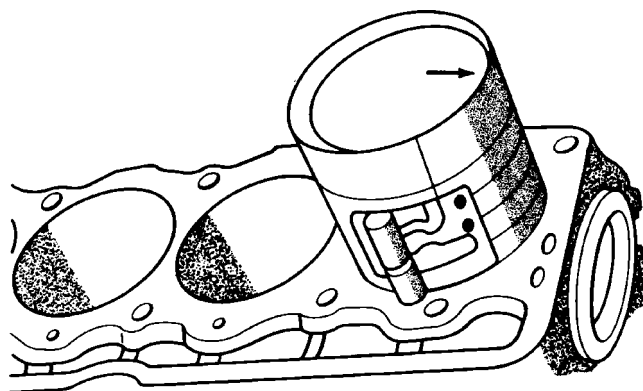
J8909-129

**Fig. 37 Scoring Caused by Insufficient Lubrication or Damaged Crankshaft Journal**

Misaligned or bent connecting rods can cause abnormal wear on pistons, piston rings, cylinder walls, connecting rod bearings and crankshaft connecting rod journals. If wear patterns or damage to any of these components indicate the probability of a misaligned connecting rod, inspect it for correct rod alignment. Replace misaligned, bent or twisted connecting rods.

### BEARING-TO-JOURNAL CLEARANCE

- (1) Wipe the oil from the connecting rod journal.
- (2) Use short rubber hose sections over rod bolts during installation.
- (3) Lubricate the upper bearing insert and install in connecting rod.
- (4) Use piston ring compressor to install the rod and piston assemblies. The oil squirt holes in the rods must face the camshaft. The arrow on the piston crown should point to the front of the engine (Fig. 38). Verify that the oil squirt holes in the rods face the camshaft and that the arrows on the pistons face the front of the engine.



J9009-41

**Fig. 38 Rod and Piston Assembly Installation**

## CONNECTING ROD BEARINGS (Continued)

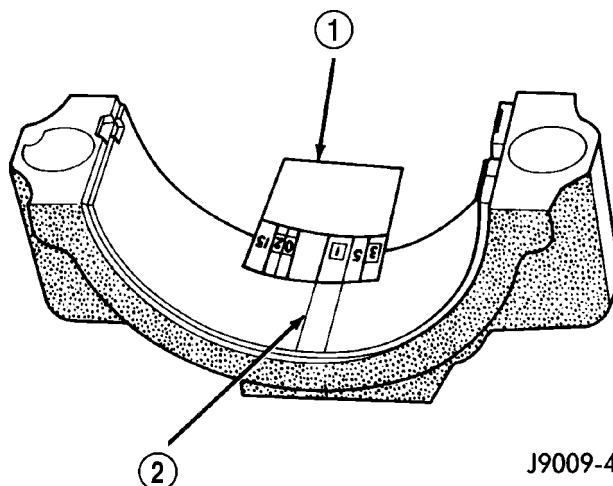
(5) Install the lower bearing insert in the bearing cap. The lower insert must be dry. Place strip of Plastigage across full width of the lower insert at the center of bearing cap. Plastigage must not crumble in use. If brittle, obtain fresh stock.

(6) Install bearing cap and connecting rod on the journal and tighten nuts to 45 N·m (33 ft. lbs.) torque. DO NOT rotate crankshaft. Plastigage will smear, resulting in inaccurate indication.

(7) Remove the bearing cap and determine amount of bearing-to-journal clearance by measuring the width of compressed Plastigage (Fig. 39). **Plastigage should indicate the same clearance across the entire width of the insert. If the clearance varies, it may be caused by either a tapered journal, bent connecting rod or foreign material trapped between the insert and cap or rod.**

(8) If the correct clearance is indicated, replacement of the bearing inserts is not necessary. Remove the Plastigage from crankshaft journal and bearing insert. Proceed with installation.

(9) If bearing-to-journal clearance exceeds the specification, install a pair of 0.0254 mm (0.001 inch) undersize bearing inserts. All the odd size inserts must be on the bottom. The sizes of the service replacement bearing inserts are stamped on the backs of the inserts. Measure the clearance as described in the previous steps.



J9009-42

**Fig. 39 Measuring Bearing Clearance with Plastigage**

- 1 - PLASTIGAGE SCALE  
2 - COMPRESSED PLASTIGAGE

(10) The clearance is measured with a pair of 0.0254 mm (0.001 inch) undersize bearing inserts installed. This will determine if two 0.0254 mm (0.001 inch) undersize inserts or another combination is needed to provide the correct clearance. Refer to CONNECTING ROD BEARING FITTING CHART.

## CONNECTING ROD BEARING FITTING CHART

CRANKSHAFT JOURNAL		CORRESPONDING ROD BEARING INSERT	
Color Code	Diameter	Upper Insert Size	Lower Insert Size
Yellow	53.2257 - 53.2079 mm (2.0955 - 2.0948 in.)	Yellow - Standard	Yellow - Standard
Orange	53.2079 - 53.1901 mm (2.0948 - 2.0941 in.) 0.0178 mm (0.0007 in.) Undersize	Yellow - Standard	Blue - Undersize 0.025 mm (0.001 in.)
Blue	53.1901 - 53.1724 mm (2.0941 - 2.0934 in.) 0.0356 mm (0.0014 in.) Undersize	Blue - Undersize 0.025 mm (0.001 in.)	Blue - Undersize 0.025 mm (0.001 in.)
Red	52.9717 - 52.9539 mm (2.0855 - 2.0848 in.) 0.254 mm (0.010 in.) Undersize	Red - Undersize 0.254 mm (0.010 in.)	Red - Undersize 0.254 mm (0.010 in.)

## CONNECTING ROD BEARINGS (Continued)

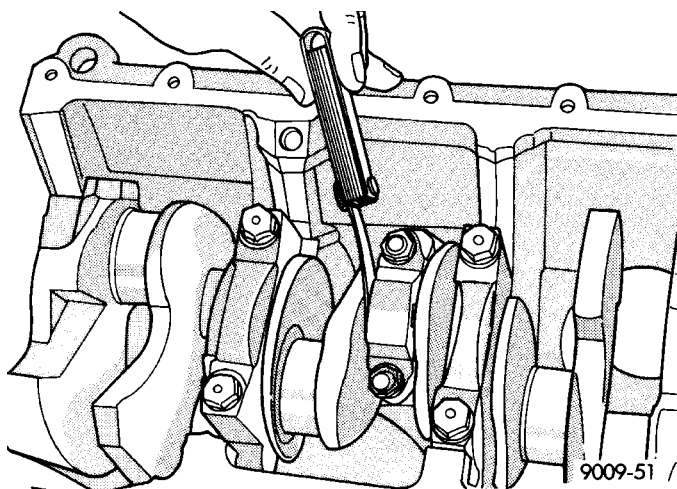
(11) **FOR EXAMPLE:** If the initial clearance was 0.0762 mm (0.003 inch), 0.025 mm (0.001 inch) undersize inserts would reduce the clearance by 0.025 mm (0.001 inch). The clearance would be 0.002 inch and within specification. A 0.051 mm (0.002 inch) undersize insert would reduce the initial clearance an additional 0.013 mm (0.0005 inch). The clearance would then be 0.038 mm (0.0015 inch).

(12) Repeat the Plastigage measurement to verify your bearing selection prior to final assembly.

(13) Once you have selected the proper insert, install the insert and cap. Tighten the connecting rod bolts to 45 N·m (33 ft. lbs.) torque.

## SIDE CLEARANCE MEASUREMENT

Slide snug-fitting feeler gauge between the connecting rod and crankshaft journal flange (Fig. 40). (Refer to 9 - ENGINE - SPECIFICATIONS). Replace the connecting rod if the side clearance is not within specification.

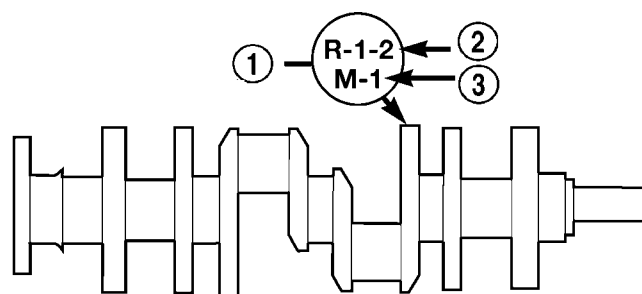


**Fig. 40 Checking Connecting Rod Side Clearance - Typical**

## CRANKSHAFT

## DESCRIPTION

The crankshaft is constructed of nodular cast iron. The crankshaft is a crossshaped four throw design with eight counterweights for balancing purposes. The crankshaft is supported by seven select main bearings with the number three serving as the thrust washer location. The main journals of the crankshaft are cross drilled to improve rod bearing lubrication. The select fit main bearing markings are located on the crankshaft counter weights. The crankshaft rear oil seal is a two piece design. The front oil seal is a one piece design retained in the timing chain cover (Fig. 41).



80ba7a6b

**Fig. 41 Crankshaft with Select Fit Marking Location**

1 - 1/4" LETTERS

2 - (ROD)

3 - (MAIN)

## CRANKSHAFT MAIN BEARINGS

## STANDARD PROCEDURE - FITTING CRANKSHAFT MAIN BEARINGS

## FITTING BEARINGS (CRANKSHAFT INSTALLED)

The main bearing caps, numbered (front to rear) from 1 through 7 have an arrow to indicate the forward position. The upper main bearing inserts are grooved to provide oil channels while the lower inserts are smooth.

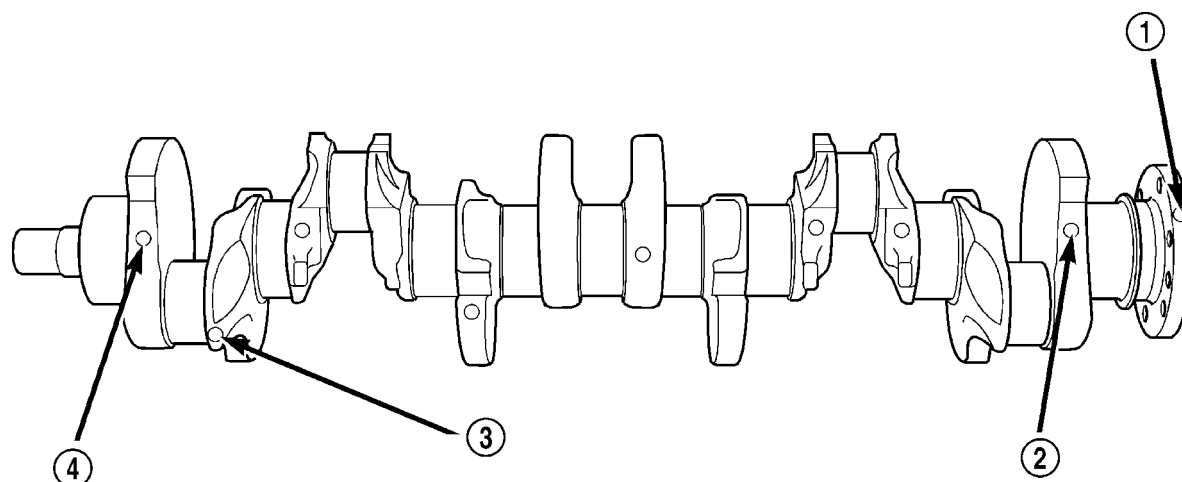
Each bearing insert pair is selectively fitted to its respective journal to obtain the specified operating clearance. In production, the select fit is obtained by using various-sized color-coded bearing insert pairs as listed in the Main Bearing Fitting Chart. The bearing color code appears on the edge of the insert. **The size is not stamped on bearing inserts used for engine production.**

The main bearing journal size (diameter) is identified by a color-coded paint mark (Fig. 42) on the adjacent cheek or counterweight towards the rear of the crankshaft (flange end). The rear main journal, is identified by a color-coded paint mark on the crankshaft rear flange.

When required, upper and lower bearing inserts of different sizes may be used as a pair. A standard size insert is sometimes used in combination with a 0.025 mm (0.001 inch) undersize insert to reduce the clearance by 0.013 mm (0.0005 inch). **Never use a pair of bearing inserts with greater than a 0.025 mm (0.001 inch) difference in size. Refer to the Bearing Insert Pair Chart.**

**NOTE:** When replacing inserts, the odd size inserts must be either all on the top (in cylinder block) or all on the bottom (in main bearing cap).

## CRANKSHAFT MAIN BEARINGS (Continued)



80a9f121

**Fig. 42 Crankshaft Journal Size Paint I.D. Location**

1 - NO. 7 MAIN JOURNAL SIZE PAINT MARK

2 - NO. 6 CONNECTING ROD JOURNAL SIZE PAINT MARK

3 - NO. 1 CONNECTING ROD JOURNAL SIZE PAINT MARK

4 - NO. 1 MAIN JOURNAL SIZE PAINT MARK

Once the bearings have been properly fitted, (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE BLOCK/CRANKSHAFT MAIN BEARINGS - INSTALLATION).

**BEARING-TO-JOURNAL CLEARANCE (CRANKSHAFT INSTALLED)**

When using Plastigage, check only one bearing clearance at a time.

Install the grooved main bearings into the cylinder block and the non-grooved bearings into the bearing caps.

Install the crankshaft into the upper bearings dry.

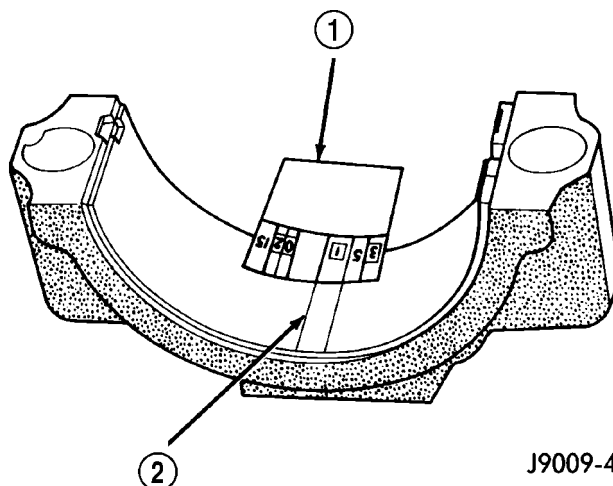
Place a strip of Plastigage across full width of the crankshaft journal to be checked.

Install the bearing cap and tighten the bolts to 108 N·m (80 ft. lbs.) torque.

**NOTE: DO NOT rotate the crankshaft. This will cause the Plastigage to shift, resulting in an inaccurate reading. Plastigage must not be permitted to crumble. If brittle, obtain fresh stock.**

Remove the bearing cap. Determine the amount of clearance by measuring the width of the compressed Plastigage with the scale on the Plastigage envelope (Fig. 43). (Refer to 9 - ENGINE - SPECIFICATIONS) for the proper clearance.

Plastigage should indicate the same clearance across the entire width of the insert. If clearance varies, it may indicate a tapered journal or foreign material trapped behind the insert.



J9009-42

**Fig. 43 Measuring Bearing Clearance with Plastigage**

1 - PLASTIGAGE SCALE

2 - COMPRESSED PLASTIGAGE

If the specified clearance is indicated and there are no abnormal wear patterns, replacement of the bearing inserts is not necessary. Remove the Plastigage from the crankshaft journal and bearing insert. Proceed to (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE BLOCK/CRANKSHAFT MAIN BEARINGS - INSTALLATION).

If the clearance exceeds specification, install a pair of 0.025 mm (0.001 inch) undersize bearing inserts and measure the clearance as described in the previous steps.



## CRANKSHAFT MAIN BEARINGS (Continued)

The clearance indicate with the 0.025 mm (0.001 inch) undersize insert pair installed will determine if this insert size or some other combination will provide the specified clearance. **FOR EXAMPLE:** If the clearance was 0.0762 mm (0.003 inch) originally, a pair of 0.0254 mm (0.001 inch) undersize inserts would reduce the clearance by 0.0254 mm (0.001 inch). The clearance would then be 0.0508 mm (0.002 inch) and within the specification. A 0.051 mm (0.002 inch) undersize bearing insert and a 0.0254 mm (0.001 inch) undersize insert would reduce the original clearance an additional 0.0127 mm (0.0005 inch). The clearance would then be 0.0381 mm (0.0015 inch).

**CAUTION:** Never use a pair of inserts that differ more than one bearing size as a pair.

**FOR EXAMPLE:** DO NOT use a standard size upper insert and a 0.051 mm (0.002 inch) undersize lower insert.

If the clearance exceeds specification using a pair of 0.051 mm (0.002 inch) undersize bearing inserts, measure crankshaft journal diameter with a micrometer. If the journal diameter is correct, the crankshaft bore in the cylinder block may be misaligned, which requires cylinder block replacement or machining to true bore.

Replace the crankshaft or grind to accept the appropriate undersize bearing inserts if:

- Journal diameters 1 through 6 are less than 63.4517 mm (2.4981 inches)
- Journal 7 diameter is less than 63.4365 mm (2.4975 inches).

Once the proper clearances have been obtained, proceed to (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE BLOCK/CRANKSHAFT MAIN BEARINGS - INSTALLATION).

**JOURNAL DIAMETER (CRANKSHAFT REMOVED)**

Remove the crankshaft from the cylinder block.

Clean the oil off the main bearing journal.

Determine the maximum diameter of the journal with a micrometer. Measure at two locations 90° apart at each end of the journal.

The maximum allowable taper and out of round is 0.013 mm (0.0005 inch). Compare the measured diameter with the journal diameter specification MAIN BEARING FITTING CHART. Select inserts required to obtain the specified bearing-to-journal clearance.

Install the crankshaft into the cylinder block.

MAIN BEARING FITTING CHART

Crankshaft Journals #1-6		Corresponding Crankshaft Bearing Insert	
Color Code	Diameter	Upper Insert Size	Lower Insert Size
Yellow	63.5025 - 63.4898 mm (2.5001 - 2.4996 in.)	Yellow - Standard	Yellow - Standard
Orange	63.4898 - 63.4771 mm (2.4996 - 2.4991 in.) 0.0127 mm (0.0005 in.) Undersize	Yellow - Standard	Blue - Undersize 0.025 mm (0.001 in.)
Blue	63.4771 - 63.4644 mm (2.4991 - 2.4986 in.) 0.0254 mm (0.001 in.) Undersize	Blue - Undersize 0.025 mm (0.001 in.)	Blue - Undersize 0.025 mm (0.001 in.)
Green	63.4644 - 63.4517 mm (2.4986 - 2.4981 in.) 0.0381 mm (0.0015 in.) Undersize	Blue - Undersize 0.025 mm (0.001 in.)	Green - Undersize 0.051 mm (0.002 in.)
Red	63.2485 - 63.2358 mm (2.4901 - 2.4896 in.) 0.254 mm (0.010 in.) Undersize	Red - Undersize 0.254 mm (0.010 in.)	Red - Undersize 0.254 mm (0.010 in.)

## CRANKSHAFT MAIN BEARINGS (Continued)

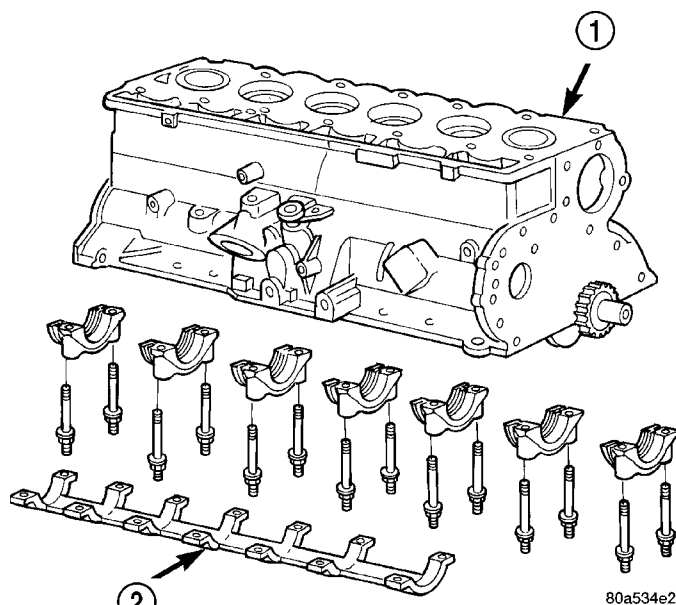
Crankshaft Journal #7 Only		Corresponding Bearing Insert	
Color Code	Diameter	Upper Insert Size	Lower Insert Size
Yellow	63.4873 - 63.4746 mm (2.4995 - 2.4990 in.)	Yellow - Standard	Yellow - Standard
Orange	63.4746 - 63.4619 mm (2.4990 - 2.4985 in.) 0.0127 mm (0.0005 in.) Undersize	Yellow - Standard	Blue - Undersize 0.025 mm (0.001 in.)
Blue	63.4619 - 63.4492 mm (2.4985 - 2.4980 in.) 0.0254 mm (0.001 in.) Undersize	Blue - Undersize 0.025 mm (0.001 in.)	Blue - Undersize 0.025 mm (0.001 in.)
Green	63.4492 - 63.4365 mm (2.4980 - 2.4975 in.) 0.0381 mm (0.0015 in.) Undersize	Blue - Undersize 0.025 mm (0.001 in.)	Green - Undersize 0.051 mm (0.002 in.)
Red	63.2333 - 63.2206 mm (2.4895 - 2.4890 in.) 0.254 mm (0.010 in.) Undersize	Red - Undersize 0.254 mm (0.010 in.)	Red - Undersize 0.254 mm (0.010 in.)

## REMOVAL

- (1) Disconnect negative cable from battery.
- (2) Remove the spark plugs (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/IGNITION CONTROL/SPARK PLUG - REMOVAL).
- (3) Raise the vehicle.

(4) Remove the oil pan (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/LUBRICATION/OIL PAN - REMOVAL) and oil pump (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/LUBRICATION/OIL PUMP - REMOVAL).

(5) Remove main bearing cap brace (Fig. 44).



**Fig. 44 Main Bearing Caps and Brace.**

- 1 - BLOCK  
2 - MAIN BEARING CAP BRACE

(6) Remove only one main bearing cap and lower insert at a time (Fig. 45).

(7) Remove the lower insert from the bearing cap.

(8) Remove the upper insert by LOOSENING (DO NOT REMOVE) all of the other bearing caps. Now insert a small cotter pin tool in the crankshaft journal oil hole. Bend the cotter pin as illustrated to fabricate the tool (Fig. 46). With the cotter pin tool in place, rotate the crankshaft so that the upper bearing insert will rotate in the direction of its locking tab. Because there is no hole in the No.3 main journal, use a tongue depressor or similar soft-faced tool to remove the bearing insert (Fig. 46). After moving the insert approximately 25 mm (1 inch), it can be removed by applying pressure under the tab.

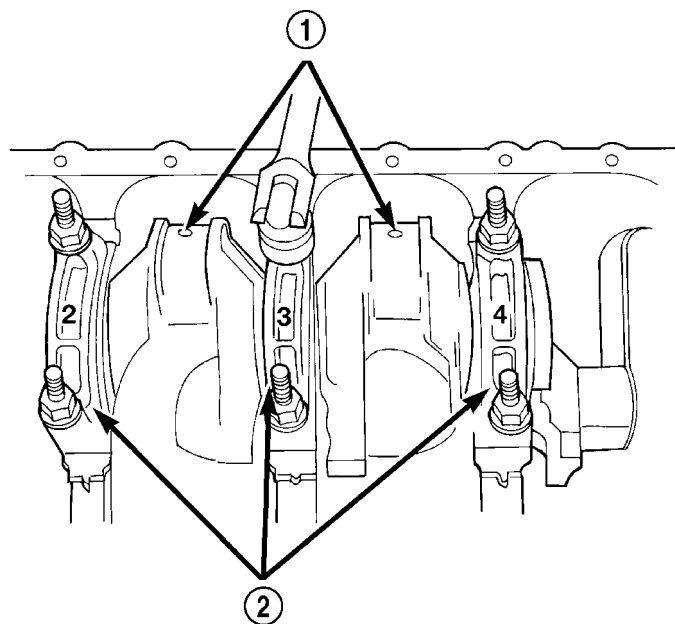
(9) Using the same procedure described above, remove the remaining bearing inserts one at a time for inspection.

## INSPECTION

Wipe the inserts clean and inspect for abnormal wear patterns and for metal or other foreign material imbedded in the lining. Normal main bearing insert wear patterns are illustrated (Fig. 47). In general the lower bearing half will have a heavier wear pattern.



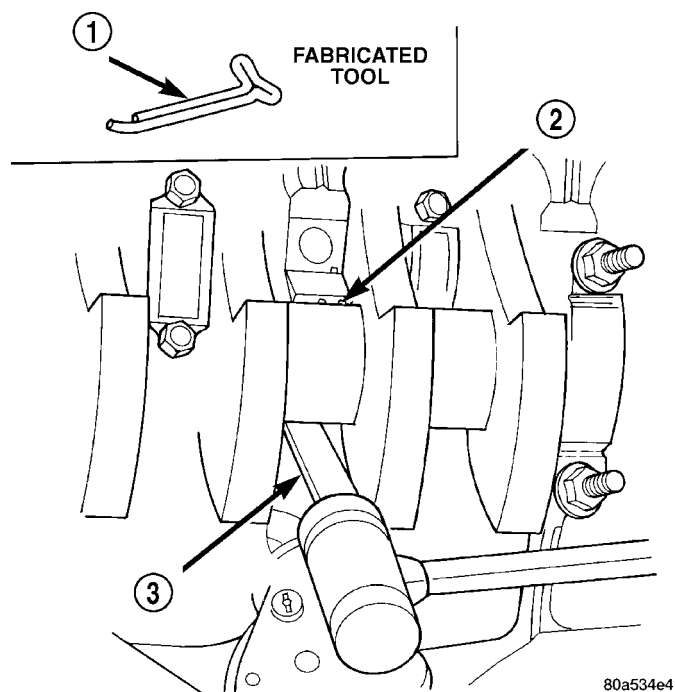
## CRANKSHAFT MAIN BEARINGS (Continued)



80a534e3

**Fig. 45 Removing Main Bearing Caps and Lower Inserts**

- 1 - CONNECTING ROD JOURNAL  
2 - MAIN BEARING CAPS

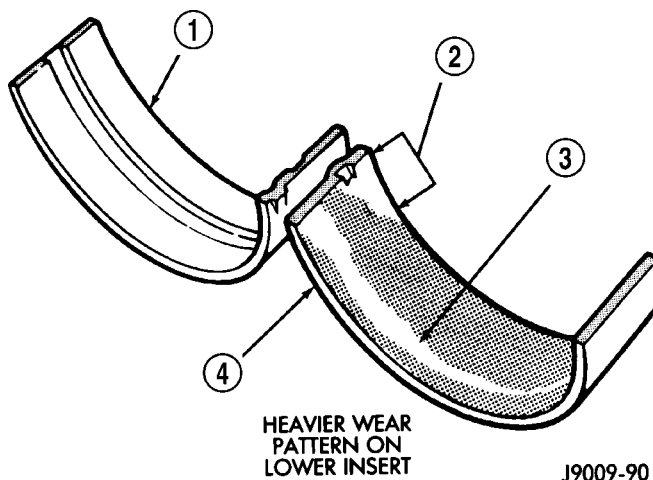


80a534e4

**Fig. 46 Removing Upper Inserts**

- 1 - COTTER PIN  
2 - BEARING INSERT  
3 - TONGUE DEPRESSOR

**NOTE:** If any of the crankshaft journals are scored, remove the engine for crankshaft repair.



**Fig. 47 Main Bearing Wear Patterns**

- 1 - UPPER INSERT  
2 - NO WEAR IN THIS AREA  
3 - LOW AREA IN BEARING LINING  
4 - LOWER INSERT

Inspect the back of the inserts for fractures, scrapings or irregular wear patterns.

Inspect the upper insert locking tabs for damage.

Replace all damaged or worn bearing inserts.

## INSTALLATION

(1) Lubricate the bearing surface of each insert with engine oil.

(2) Loosen all the main bearing caps. Install the main bearing upper inserts.

(3) Install the lower bearing inserts into the main bearing caps.

(4) On the rear main cap, apply Mopar® Gasket Maker sealer on both sides of cylinder block as shown in (Fig. 48). The dab of sealer should be 3 mm (0.125 in.) in diameter.

(5) Apply Mopar® Gasket Maker on the rear bearing cap. The bead should be 2.3 mm (0.09 in.) in diameter. DO NOT apply sealer to the lip of the seal.

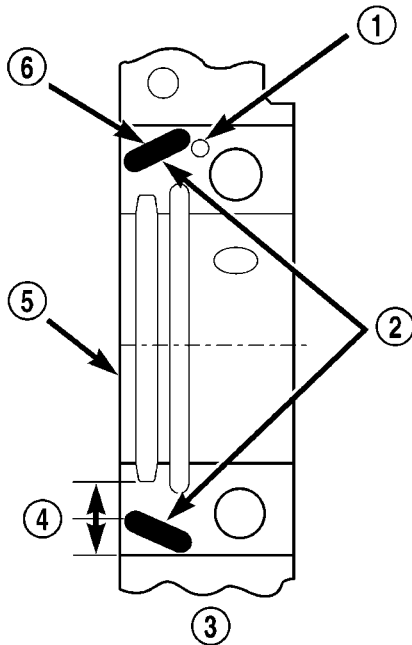
(6) Install the main bearing cap(s) and lower insert(s).

(7) Tighten the bolts of caps 1, 2, 4, 5, 6, and 7 to 54 N·m (40 ft. lbs.) torque. Now tighten these bolts to 95 N·m (70 ft. lbs.) torque. Finally, tighten these bolts to 108 N·m (80 ft. lbs.) torque.

(8) Push the crankshaft forward and backward. Load the crankshaft front or rear and tighten cap bolt No.3 to 54 N·m (40 ft. lbs.) torque. Then tighten to 95 N·m (70 ft. lbs.) torque and finally tighten to 108 N·m (80 ft. lbs.) torque.

(9) Rotate the crankshaft after tightening each main bearing cap to ensure the crankshaft rotates freely.

## CRANKSHAFT MAIN BEARINGS (Continued)

**Fig. 48 Location of Sealer**

- 1 - DOWEL
- 2 - SEALER LOCATIONS
- 3 - CYLINDER BLOCK
- 4 - HALFWAY BETWEEN
- 5 - REAR FACE OF CYLINDER BLOCK
- 6 - 3mm (0.125 in.)

(10) Check crankshaft end play. Crankshaft end play is controlled by the thrust bearing which is flange and installed at the No.2 main bearing position.

(a) Attach a magnetic base dial indicator to the cylinder block at either the front or rear of the engine.

(b) Position the dial indicator rod so that it is parallel to the center line of the crankshaft.

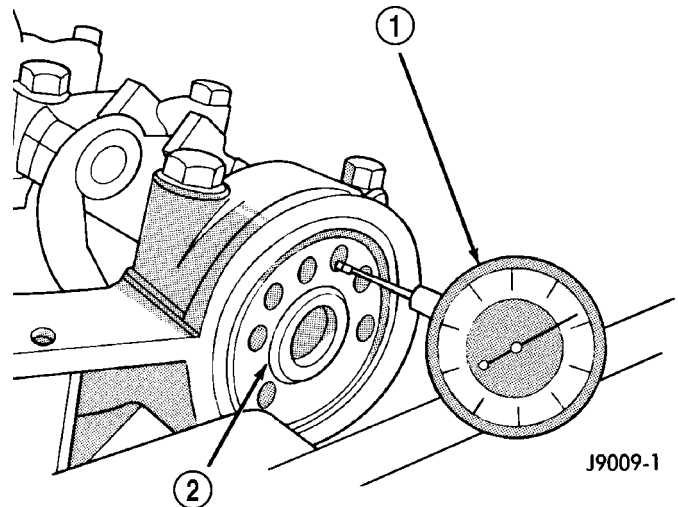
(c) Pry the crankshaft forward, position the dial indicator to zero.

(d) Pry the crankshaft forward and backward. Note the dial indicator readings. End play is the difference between the high and low measurements (Fig. 49). Correct end play is 0.038-0.165 mm (0.0015-0.0065 inch). The desired specifications are 0.051-0.064 mm (0.002-0.0025 inch).

(e) If end play is not within specification, inspect crankshaft thrust faces for wear. If no wear is apparent, replace the thrust bearing and measure end play. If end play is still not within specification, replace the crankshaft.

(11) If the crankshaft was removed, install the crankshaft into the cylinder block.

(12) Install main bearing cap brace tighten nuts to 47 N·m (35 ft. lbs.) torque.

**Fig. 49 Crankshaft End Play Measurement**

- 1 - DIAL INDICATOR
- 2 - CRANKSHAFT

(13) Install oil pump assy. and tighten attaching bolts to 23 N·m (17 ft. lbs.)

(14) Install the oil pan (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/LUBRICATION/OIL PAN - INSTALLATION).

(15) Install the drain plug. Tighten the plug to 34 N·m (25 ft. lbs.) torque.

(16) Lower the vehicle.

(17) Install the spark plugs. Tighten the plugs to 37 N·m (27 ft. lbs.) torque.

(18) Fill the oil pan with engine oil to the full mark on the dipstick level.

(19) Connect negative cable to battery.

## CRANKSHAFT OIL SEAL - FRONT

### REMOVAL

This procedure is done with the timing case cover installed.

(1) Disconnect negative cable from battery.

(2) Remove the serpentine drive belt (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - REMOVAL).

(3) Remove the vibration damper (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE BLOCK/VIBRATION DAMPER - REMOVAL).

(4) Remove the radiator shroud.

(5) Carefully remove the oil seal. Make sure seal bore is clean.

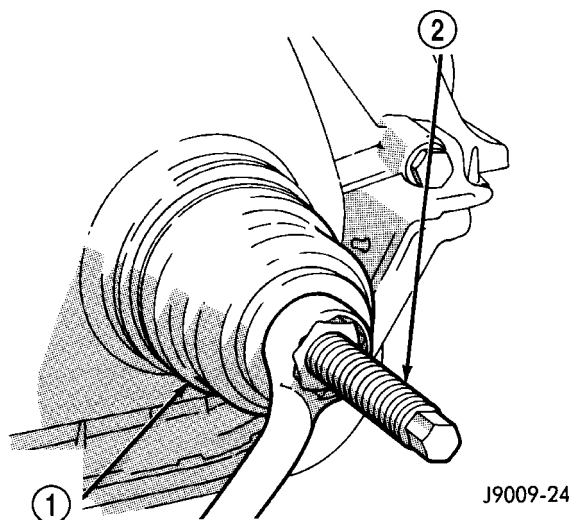
## CRANKSHAFT OIL SEAL - FRONT (Continued)

## INSTALLATION

This procedure is done with the timing case cover installed.

(1) Position the replacement oil seal on Timing Case Cover Alignment and Seal Installation Tool 6139 with seal open end facing inward. Apply a light film of Perfect Seal, or equivalent, on the outside diameter of the seal. Lightly coat the crankshaft with engine oil.

(2) Position the tool and seal over the end of the crankshaft and insert a draw screw tool into Seal Installation Tool 6139 (Fig. 50). Tighten the nut against the tool until it contacts the cover.



**Fig. 50 Timing Case Cover Oil Seal Installation**

- 1 - SEAL INSTALLATION TOOL  
2 - DRAW SCREW TOOL

(3) Remove the tools. Apply a light film of engine oil on the vibration damper hub contact surface of the seal.

(4) Apply Mopar® Silicone Rubber Adhesive Sealant to the keyway in the crankshaft and insert the key. With the key inserted in the keyway in the crankshaft, install the vibration damper (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE BLOCK/VIBRATION DAMPER - INSTALLATION).

(5) Install the serpentine belt (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - INSTALLATION).

(6) Install the radiator shroud.

(7) Connect negative cable to battery.

## CRANKSHAFT OIL SEAL - REAR

## REMOVAL

The crankshaft rear main bearing oil seal consists of two half pieces of viton with a single lip that effectively seals the rear of the crankshaft. Replace the upper and lower seal halves as a unit to ensure leak-free operation.

(1) Remove transmission inspection cover.

(2) Remove oil pan. (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/LUBRICATION/OIL PAN - REMOVAL)

(3) Remove main bearing cap brace.

(4) Remove rear main bearing cap (No.7).

(5) Push upper seal out of the groove. Ensure that the crankshaft and seal groove are not damaged.

(6) Remove lower half of the seal from the bearing cap.

## INSTALLATION

The crankshaft rear main bearing oil seal consists of two half pieces of viton with a single lip that effectively seals the rear of the crankshaft. Replace the upper and lower seal halves as a unit to ensure leak-free operation.

(1) Wipe the seal surface area of the crankshaft until it is clean.

(2) Apply a thin coat of engine oil.

(3) Coat lip of the seal with engine oil.

(4) Carefully position the upper seal into the groove in the cylinder block. The lip of the seal faces toward the front of the engine.

(5) Apply Mopar® Gasket Maker sealer on both sides of cylinder block as shown in (Fig. 51). The dab of sealer should be 3 mm (0.125 in.) in diameter.

(6) Apply Mopar® Gasket Maker on the rear bearing cap (Fig. 51). The bead should be 2.3 mm (0.09 in.) in diameter. DO NOT apply sealer to the lip of the seal.

(7) Position the lower seal into the bearing cap recess and seat it firmly. Be sure the seal is flush with the cylinder block pan rail.

(8) Coat the outer curved surface of the lower seal with soap and the lip of the seal with engine oil.

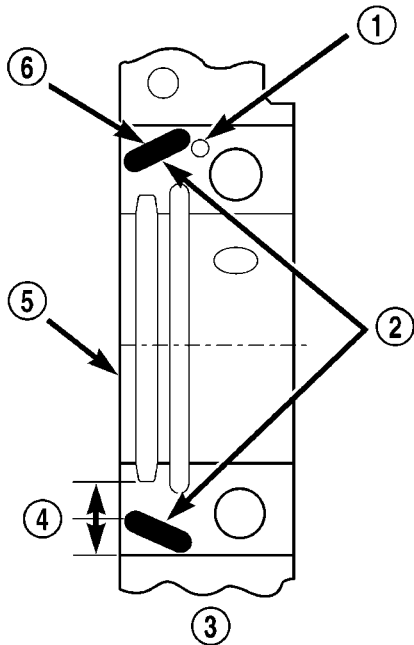
(9) Install the rear main bearing cap. DO NOT strike the cap more than twice for proper engagement.

(10) Tighten all main bearing bolts to 108 N·m (80 ft. lbs.) torque.

(11) Install the main bearing cap brace. Tighten nuts to 47 N·m (35 ft. lbs.).

(12) Install the oil pan gasket and oil pan (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/LUBRICATION/OIL PAN - INSTALLATION).

## CRANKSHAFT OIL SEAL - REAR (Continued)

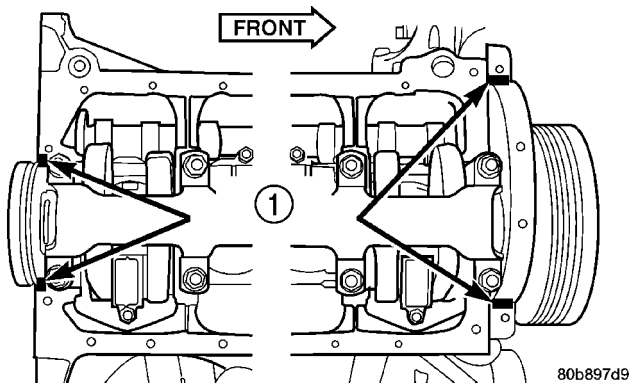


80bfe13c

**Fig. 51 Location of Sealer**

- 1 - DOWEL
- 2 - SEALER LOCATIONS
- 3 - CYLINDER BLOCK
- 4 - HALFWAY BETWEEN
- 5 - REAR FACE OF CYLINDER BLOCK
- 6 - 3mm (0.125 in.)

(13) Apply Mopar® Silicone Rubber Adhesive Sealant on cylinder block to rear main bearing cap corners and cylinder block to front cover joints (four places) (Fig. 52)



80b897d9

**Fig. 52 Oil Pan**

- 1 - SEALER LOCATIONS

(14) Install transmission inspection cover.

## HYDRAULIC LIFTERS

## DESCRIPTION

Valve lash is controlled by hydraulic tappets located inside the cylinder block, in tappet bores above the camshaft.

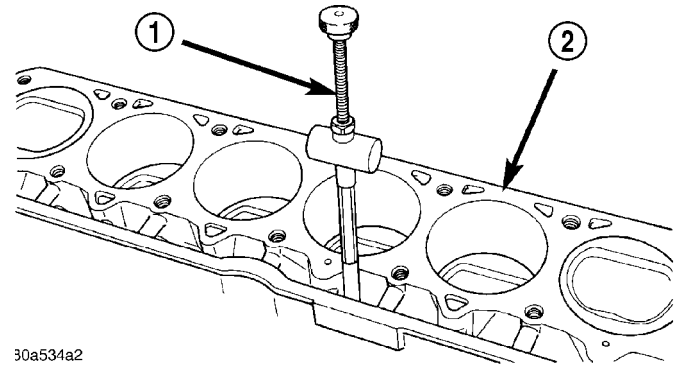
## REMOVAL

**NOTE:** Retain all the components in the same order as removed.

(1) Remove the engine cylinder head (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD - REMOVAL).

(2) Remove the push rods.

(3) Remove the tappets through the push rod openings in the cylinder block with a Hydraulic Valve Tappet Removal/Installation Tool (Fig. 53).



30a534a2

**Fig. 53 HYDRAULIC VALVE TAPPET REMOVAL - 4.0L**

- 1 - HYDRAULIC TAPPET REMOVAL TOOL
- 2 - CYLINDER BLOCK

## CLEANING

Clean each tappet assembly in cleaning solvent to remove all varnish, gum and sludge deposits.

## INSPECTION

Inspect for indications of scuffing on the side and base of each tappet body.

Inspect each tappet base for concave wear with a straightedge positioned across the base. If the base is concave, the corresponding lobe on the camshaft is also worn. Replace the camshaft and tappets.

After cleaning and inspection, test each tappet for specified leak-down rate tolerance to ensure zero-lash operation (Fig. 54).

Swing the weighted arm of the hydraulic valve tappet tester away from the ram of the Leak-Down Tester.

(1) Place a 7.925-7.950 mm (0.312-0.313 inch) diameter ball bearing on the plunger cap of the tappet.

## HYDRAULIC LIFTERS (Continued)

(2) Lift the ram and position the tappet (with the ball bearing) inside the tester cup.

(3) Lower the ram, then adjust the nose of the ram until it contacts the ball bearing. DO NOT tighten the hex nut on the ram.

(4) Fill the tester cup with hydraulic valve tappet test oil until the tappet is completely submerged.

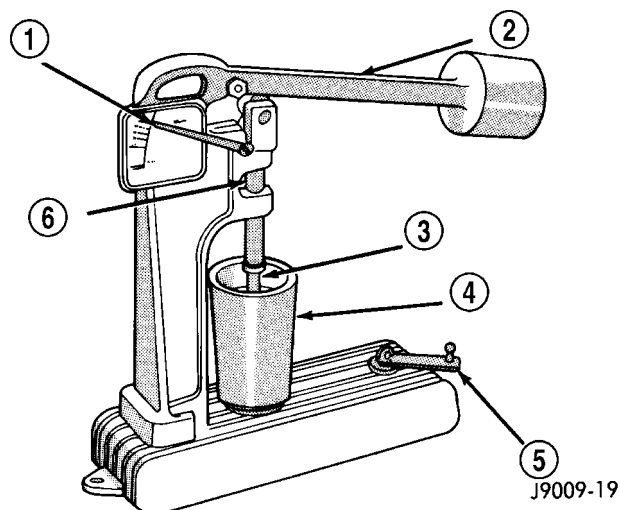
(5) Swing the weighted arm onto the push rod and pump the tappet plunger up and down to remove air. When the air bubbles cease, swing the weighted arm away and allow the plunger to rise to the normal position.

(6) Adjust the nose of the ram to align the pointer with the SET mark on the scale of the tester and tighten the hex nut.

(7) Slowly swing the weighted arm onto the push rod.

(8) Rotate the cup by turning the handle at the base of the tester clockwise one revolution every 2 seconds.

(9) Observe the leak-down time interval from the instant the pointer aligns with the START mark on the scale until the pointer aligns with the 0.125 mark. A normally functioning tappet will require 20-110 seconds to leak-down. Discard tappets with leak-down time interval not within this specification.



**Fig. 54 Leak-Down Tester**

- 1 - POINTER
- 2 - WEIGHTED ARM
- 3 - RAM
- 4 - CUP
- 5 - HANDLE
- 6 - PUSH ROD

## INSTALLATION

Retain all the components in the same order as removed.

It is not necessary to charge the tappets with engine oil. They will charge themselves within a very short period of engine operation.

(1) Dip each tappet in Mopar® Engine Oil Supplement, or equivalent.

(2) Use Hydraulic Valve Tappet Removal/Installation Tool to install each tappet in the same bore from where it was originally removed.

(3) Install the cylinder head (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD - INSTALLATION).

(4) Install the push rods in their original locations.

(5) Install the rocker arms and bridge and pivot assemblies at their original locations. Loosely install the capscrews at each bridge.

(6) Tighten the capscrews alternately, one turn at a time, to avoid damaging the bridges. Tighten the capscrews to 28 N·m (21 ft. lbs.) torque.

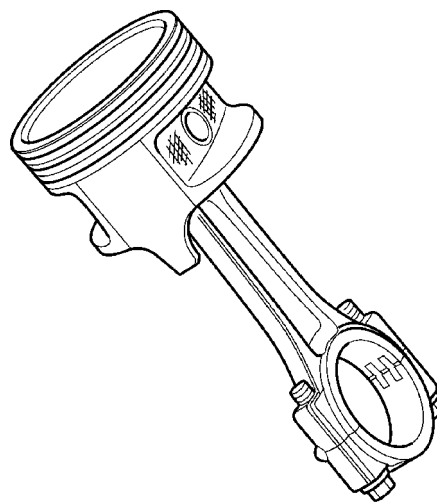
(7) Pour the remaining Mopar® Engine Oil Supplement, or equivalent over the entire valve actuating assembly. The Mopar® Engine Oil Supplement, or equivalent must remain with the engine oil for at least 1 609 km (1,000 miles). The oil supplement need not be drained until the next scheduled oil change.

(8) Install the cylinder head cover (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD/CYLINDER HEAD COVER(S) - INSTALLATION).

## PISTON & CONNECTING ROD

### DESCRIPTION

The pistons (Fig. 55) are made of a high strength aluminum alloy, the piston skirts are coated with a solid lubricant (Molykote) to reduce friction and provide scuff resistance. The connecting rods are made of cast iron.



80bcea5c

**Fig. 55 Piston and Connecting Rod Assembly**



## PISTON &amp; CONNECTING ROD (Continued)

## STANDARD PROCEDURE - PISTON FITTING

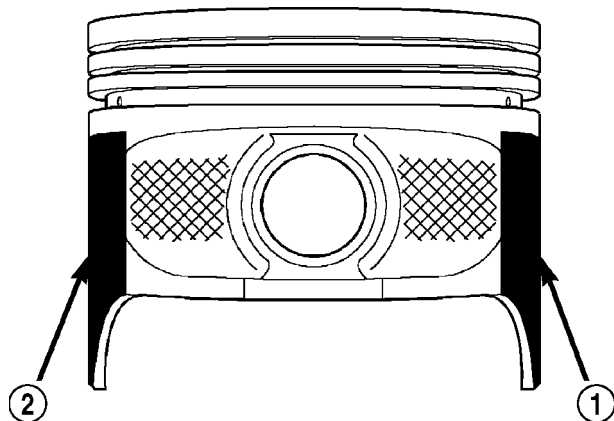
(1) To correctly select the proper size piston, a cylinder bore gauge, capable of reading in 0.003 mm (.0001 in.) INCREMENTS is required. If a bore gauge is not available, do not use an inside micrometer.

(2) Measure the inside diameter of the cylinder bore at a point 49.5 mm (1-15/16 inches) below top of bore. Start perpendicular (across or at 90 degrees) to the axis of the crankshaft at point A and then take an additional bore reading 90 degrees to that at point B (Fig. 57).

(3) The coated pistons will be serviced with the piston pin and connecting rod pre-assembled. **The coated piston connecting rod assembly can be used to service previous built engines and MUST be replaced as complete sets.** Tin coated pistons should not be used as replacements for coated pistons.

(4) The coating material is applied to the piston after the final piston machining process. Measuring the outside diameter of a coated piston will not provide accurate results (Fig. 56). Therefore measuring the inside diameter of the cylinder bore with a dial Bore Gauge is **MANDATORY**. To correctly select the proper size piston, a cylinder bore gauge capable of reading in 0.003 mm (.0001 in.) increments is required.

(5) Piston installation into the cylinder bore requires slightly more pressure than that required for non-coated pistons. The bonded coating on the piston will give the appearance of a line-to-line fit with the cylinder bore.



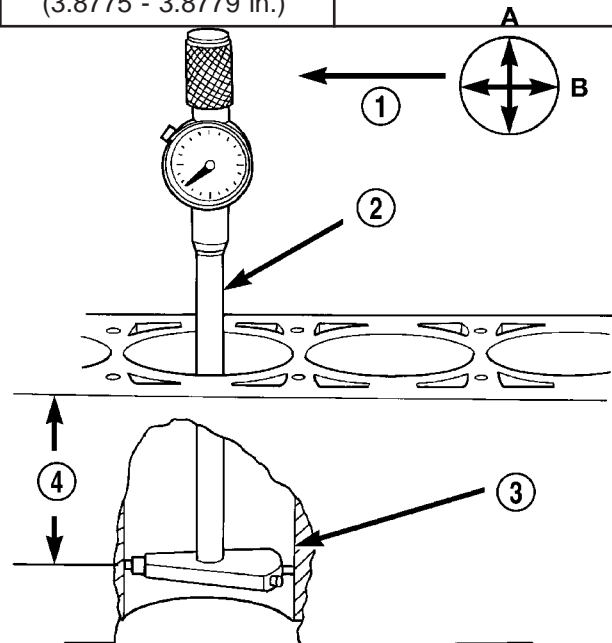
80aac2ao

Fig. 56 Moly Coated Piston

- 1 - MOLY COATED  
2 - MOLY COATED

## PISTON SIZE CHART

CYLINDER BORE SIZE	PISTON LETTER SIZE
98.438 - 98.448 mm (3.8755 - 3.8759 in.)	A
98.448 - 98.458 mm (3.8759 - 3.8763 in.)	B
98.458 - 98.468 mm (3.8763 - 3.8767 in.)	C
98.468 - 98.478 mm (3.8767 - 3.8771 in.)	D
98.478 - 98.488 mm (3.8771 - 3.8775 in.)	E
98.488 - 98.498 mm (3.8775 - 3.8779 in.)	F



805dd884

Fig. 57 Bore Gauge

- 1 - FRONT  
2 - BORE GAUGE  
3 - CYLINDER BORE  
4 - 49.5 MM (1-15/16 in.)

## REMOVAL

(1) Remove the engine cylinder head cover. (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD/CYLINDER HEAD COVER(S) - REMOVAL).

(2) Remove the rocker arms, bridges and pivots.

(3) Remove the push rods.

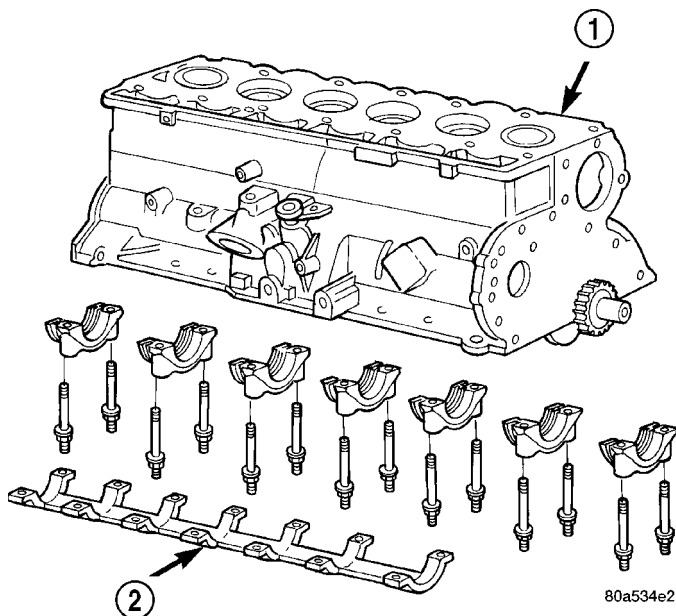
(4) Remove the engine cylinder head. (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD - REMOVAL).

(5) Position the pistons one at a time near the bottom of the stroke. Use a ridge reamer to remove the ridge from the top end of the cylinder walls. Use a protective cloth to collect the cuttings.

(6) Raise the vehicle.

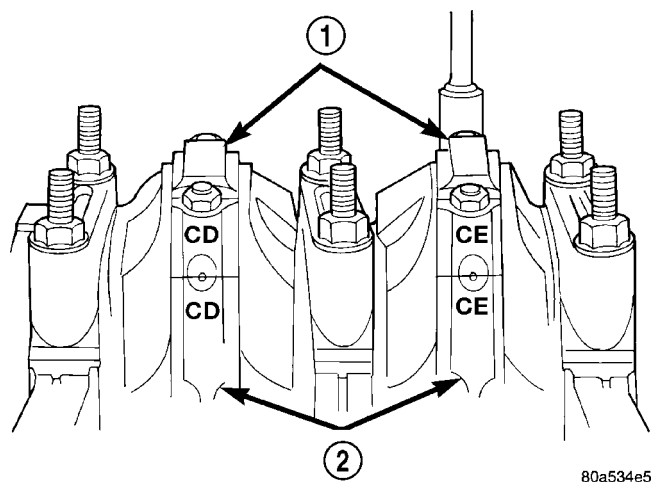
## PISTON &amp; CONNECTING ROD (Continued)

- (7) Drain the engine oil.
- (8) Remove the oil pan and gasket. (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/LUBRICATION/OIL PAN - REMOVAL).
- (9) Remove main bearing cap brace (Fig. 58).

**Fig. 58 Main Bearings Caps and Brace**

- 1 - BLOCK
- 2 - MAIN BEARING CAP BRACE

- (10) Remove the connecting rod bearing caps and inserts. Mark the caps and rods with the cylinder bore location. The connecting rods and caps are stamped with a two letter combination (Fig. 59).

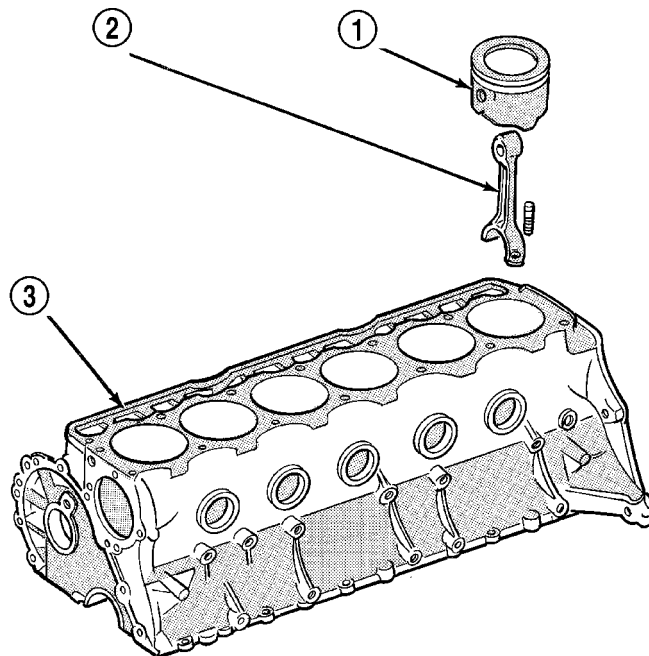
**Fig. 59 Stamped Connecting Rods and Caps**

- 1 - CONNECTING ROD CAP
- 2 - CONNECTING ROD

- (11) Lower the vehicle until it is about 2 feet from the floor.

**CAUTION:** Ensure that the connecting rod bolts **DO NOT** scratch the crankshaft journals or cylinder walls. Short pieces of rubber hose, slipped over the rod bolts will provide protection during removal.

- (12) Have an assistant push the piston and connecting rod assemblies up and through the top of the cylinder bores (Fig. 60).



J9509-84

**Fig. 60 Removal of Connecting Rod and Piston Assembly**

- 1 - PISTON
- 2 - CONNECTING ROD
- 3 - BLOCK

**INSTALLATION**

- (1) Clean the cylinder bores thoroughly. Apply a light film of clean engine oil to the bores with a clean lint-free cloth.

- (2) Install the piston rings on the pistons if removed (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE BLOCK/PISTON RINGS - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

- (3) Lubricate the piston and rings with clean engine oil.

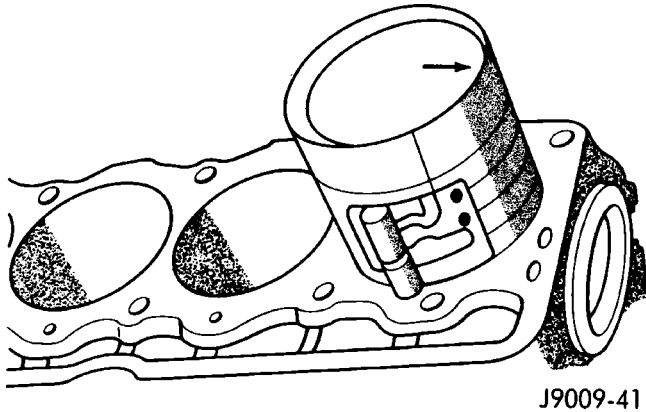
**CAUTION:** Ensure that connecting rod bolts **DO NOT** scratch the crankshaft journals or cylinder walls. Short pieces of rubber hose slipped over the connecting rod bolts will provide protection during installation.



## PISTON & CONNECTING ROD (Continued)

(4) Use a piston ring compressor to install the connecting rod and piston assemblies through the top of the cylinder bores (Fig. 61).

(5) Ensure the arrow on the piston top points to the front of the engine (Fig. 61).



J9009-41

**Fig. 61 Rod and Piston Assembly Installation**

(6) Raise the vehicle.

(7) Each bearing insert is fitted to its respective journal to obtain the specified clearance between the bearing and the journal. In production, the select fit is obtained by using various-sized, color-coded bearing inserts as listed in the Connecting Rod Bearing Fitting Chart. The color code appears on the edge of the bearing insert. The size is not stamped on inserts used for production of engines.

(8) The rod journal is identified during the engine production by a color-coded paint mark on the adjacent cheek or counterweight toward the flange (rear) end of the crankshaft. The color codes used to indicate journal sizes are listed in the Connecting Rod Bearing Fitting Chart.

(9) When required, upper and lower bearing inserts of different sizes may be used as a pair (refer to Connecting Rod Bearing Fitting Chart). A standard size insert is sometimes used in combination with a 0.025 mm (0.001 inch) undersize insert to reduce clearance 0.013 mm (0.0005 inch).

**CAUTION:** DO NOT intermix bearing caps. Each connecting rod and bearing cap are stamped with the cylinder number. The stamp is located on a machined surface adjacent to the oil squirt hole that faces the camshaft side of the cylinder block.

(10) Install the connecting rod bearing caps and inserts in the same positions as removed.

**CAUTION:** Verify that the oil squirt holes in the rods face the camshaft and that the arrows on the pistons face the front of the engine.

(11) Install main bearing cap brace (Fig. 58). Tighten nuts to 47 N·m (35 ft. lbs.).

(12) Install the oil pan and gasket (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/LUBRICATION/OIL PAN - INSTALLATION).

(13) Lower the vehicle.

(14) Install the engine cylinder head (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD - INSTALLATION), push rods, rocker arms, bridges, pivots and engine cylinder head cover (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD/CYLINDER HEAD COVER(S) - INSTALLATION).

(15) Fill the crankcase with engine oil.

## PISTON RINGS

### STANDARD PROCEDURE - PISTON RING FITTING

(1) Carefully clean the carbon from all ring grooves. Oil drain openings in the oil ring groove and pin boss must be clear. DO NOT remove metal from the grooves or lands. This will change ring-to-groove clearances and will damage the ring-to-land seating.

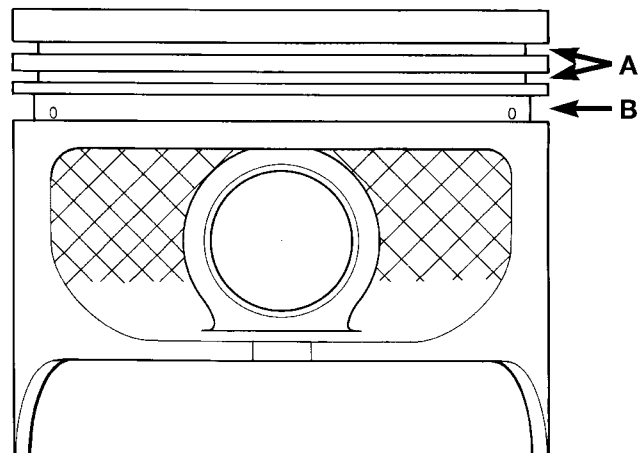
(2) Be sure the piston ring grooves are free of nicks and burrs.

(3) Measure the ring side clearance with a feeler gauge fitted snugly between the ring land and ring (Fig. 62) (Fig. 63). Rotate the ring in the groove. It must move freely around circumference of the groove.

### GROOVE HEIGHT

**A** 1.530-1.555 mm (0.0602-0.0612 in)

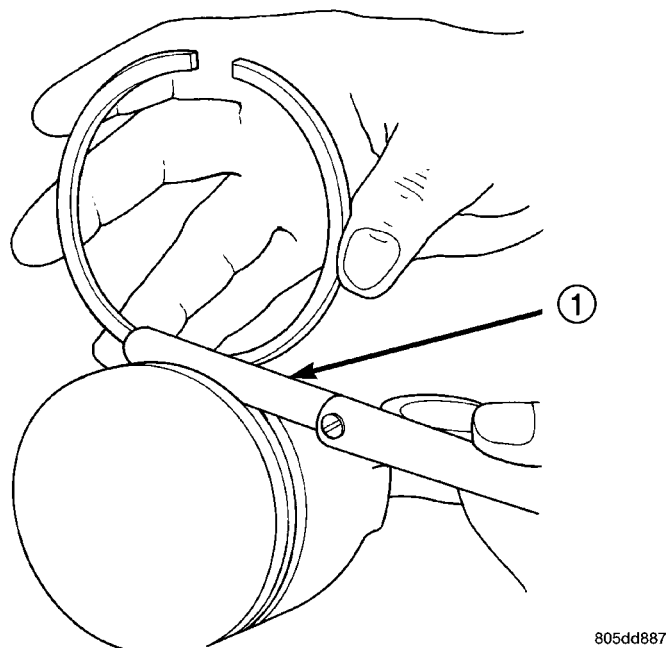
**B** 4.035-4.060 mm (0.1589-0.1598 in)



805dd885

**Fig. 62 Piston Dimensions**

## PISTON RINGS (Continued)

**Fig. 63 Ring Side Clearance Measurement**

1 - FEELER GAUGE

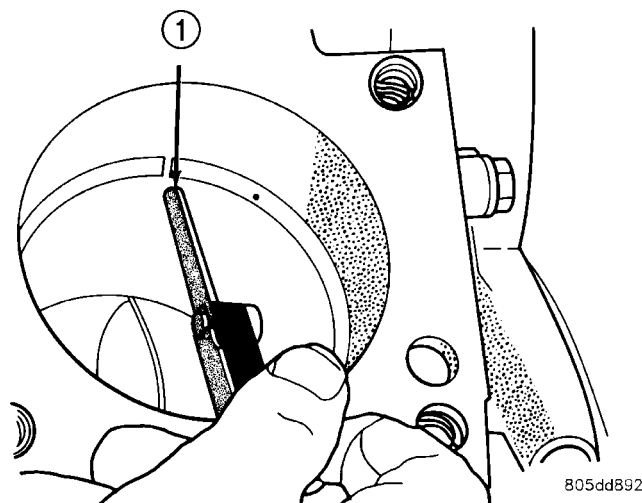
## RING SIDE CLEARANCE CHART

ITEM	SPECIFICATION
Top Compression Ring	0.042 - 0.084 mm (0.0017 - 0.0033 in.)
Second Compression Ring	0.042 - 0.084 mm (0.0017 - 0.0033 in.)
Oil Control Ring	0.06 - 0.21 mm (0.0024 - 0.0083 in.)

(4) Place ring in the cylinder bore and push down with inverted piston to position near lower end of the ring travel. Measure ring gap with a feeler gauge fitting snugly between ring ends (Fig. 64).

## RING GAP MEASUREMENT CHART

ITEM	SPECIFICATION
Top Compression Ring	0.229 - 0.610 mm (0.0090 - 0.0240 in.)
Second Compression Ring	0.483 - 0.965 mm (0.0190 - 0.080 in.)
Oil Control Ring	0.254 - 1.500 mm (0.010 - 0.060 in.)



805dd892

**Fig. 64 Gap Measurement**

1 - FEELER GAUGE

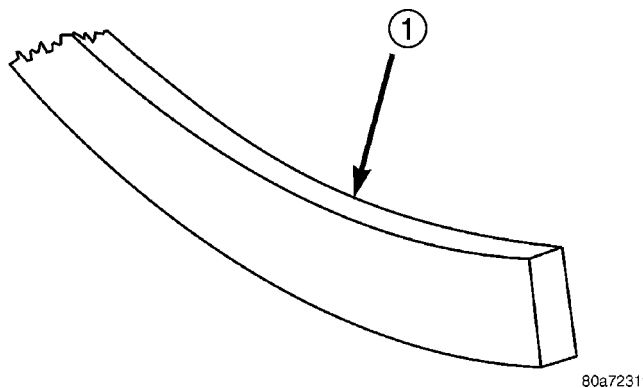
(5) The oil control rings are symmetrical, and can be installed with either side up. It is not necessary to use a tool to install the upper and lower rails. Insert oil rail spacer first, then side rails.

(6) The two compression rings are different and cannot be interchanged. The top compression ring can be identified by the shiny coating on the outer sealing surface and can be installed with either side up. (Fig. 65).

(7) The second compression ring has a slight chamfer on the bottom of the inside edge and a dot on the top for correct installation (Fig. 66) and (Fig. 67).

(8) Using a ring installer, install the second compression ring with the dot facing up (Fig. 66) (Fig. 68).

(9) Using a ring installer, install the top compression ring (either side up).

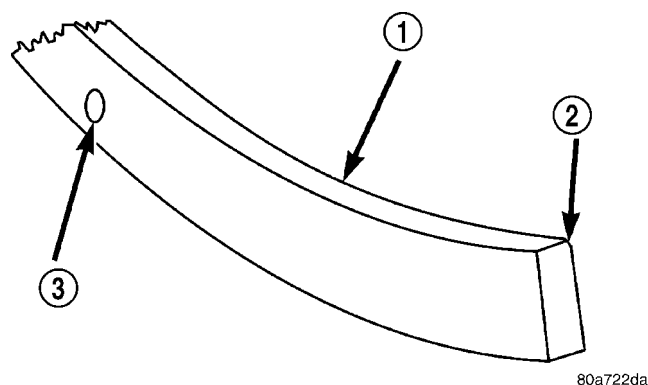


80a7231f

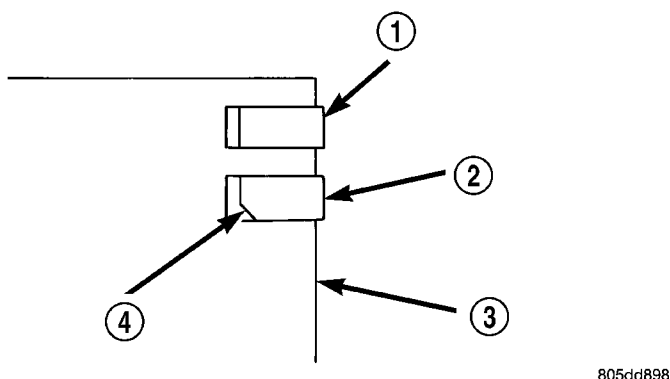
**Fig. 65 Top Compression ring identification**

1 - TOP COMPRESSION RING

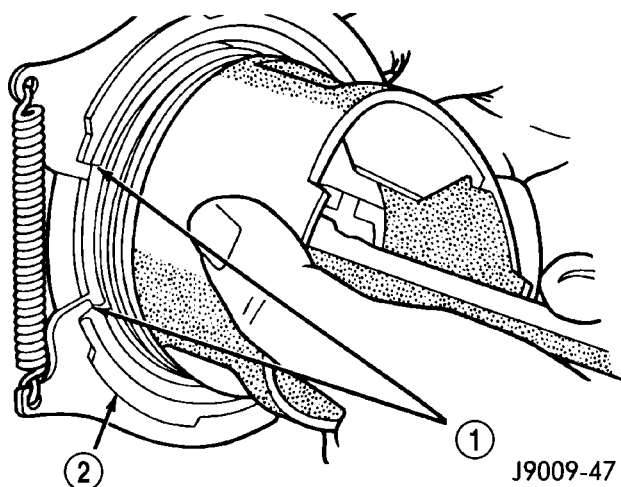
## PISTON RINGS (Continued)

**Fig. 66 Second Compression Ring Identification**

- 1 - SECOND COMPRESSION RING  
 2 - CHAMFER  
 3 - ONE DOT

**Fig. 67 Compression Ring Chamfer Location**

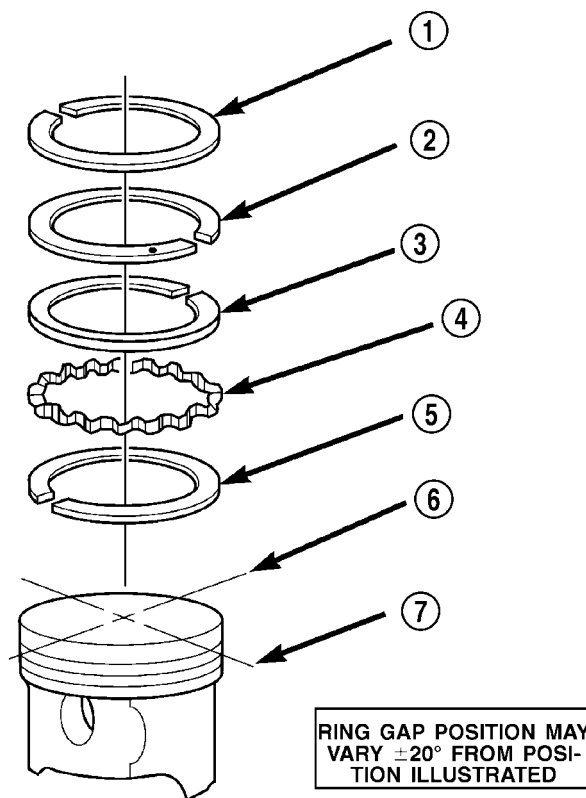
- 1 - TOP COMPRESSION RING  
 2 - SECOND COMPRESSION RING  
 3 - PISTON  
 4 - CHAMFER

**Fig. 68 Compression Ring Installation**

- 1 - COMPRESSION RING  
 2 - RING EXPANDER RECOMMENDED

**Ring Gap Orientation**

- Position the gaps on the piston as shown (Fig. 69).
- Oil spacer - Gap on center line of piston skirt.
- Oil rails - gap 180° apart on centerline of piston pin bore.
- No. 2 Compression ring - Gap 180° from top oil rail gap.
- No. 1 Compression ring - Gap 180° from No. 2 compression ring gap.

**Fig. 69 Ring Gap Orientation**

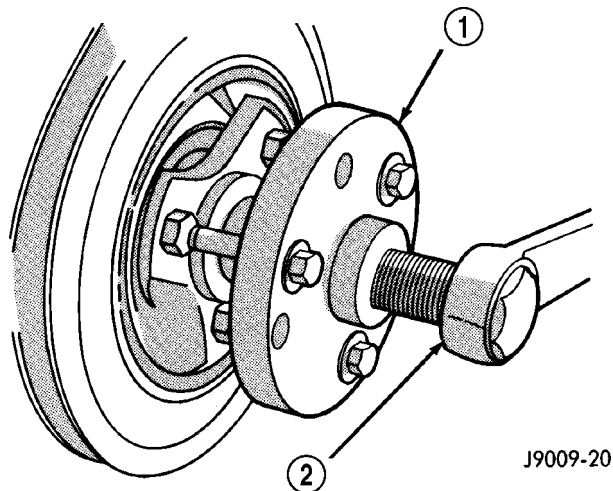
- 1 - TOP COMPRESSION RING  
 2 - BOTTOM COMPRESSION RING  
 3 - TOP OIL CONTROL RAIL  
 4 - OIL RAIL SPACER  
 5 - BOTTOM OIL CONTROL RAIL  
 6 - IMAGINARY LINE PARALLEL TO PISTON PIN  
 7 - IMAGINARY LINE THROUGH CENTER OF PISTON SKIRT

80a7233s

## VIBRATION DAMPER

### REMOVAL

- (1) Disconnect negative cable from battery.
- (2) Remove the serpentine drive belt (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - REMOVAL) and fan shroud.
- (3) Remove the vibration damper retaining bolt and washer.
- (4) Use Vibration Damper Removal Tool 7697 to remove the damper from the crankshaft (Fig. 70).



**Fig. 70 Vibration Damper Removal Tool 7697**

- 1 - VIBRATION DAMPER REMOVAL TOOL  
2 - WRENCH

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Apply Mopar® Silicone Rubber Adhesive Sealant to the keyway in the crankshaft and insert the key. With the key in position, align the keyway on the vibration damper hub with the crankshaft key and tap the damper onto the crankshaft.
- (2) Install the vibration damper retaining bolt and washer.
- (3) Tighten the damper retaining bolt to 108 N·m (80 ft. lbs.) torque.
- (4) Install the serpentine drive belt (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - INSTALLATION) and fan shroud.
- (5) Connect negative cable to battery.

## STRUCTURAL SUPPORT

### REMOVAL

The engine bending braces are used to add strength to the powertrain and to address some minor NVH concerns.

**NOTE:** Before the engine or the transmission can be removed the engine bending braces must be removed.

- (1) Raise and support vehicle.

**NOTE:** Both left and right side bending braces are removed the sameway. Only the right side is shown.

**NOTE:** The exhaust does not require removal to preform this procedure.

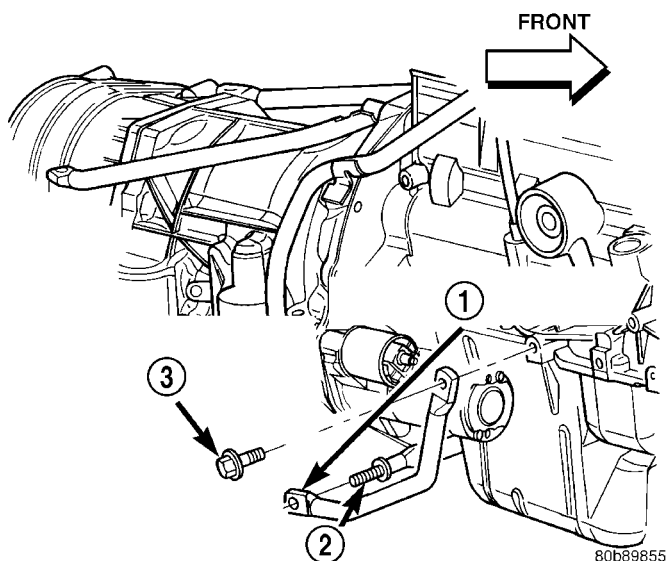
- (2) Remove the exhaust hanger bracket retaining bolt.
- (3) Remove locknut and transmission bending brace bar.
- (4) Remove engine-to-bending brace retaining bolt, bending brace bar and cross bar.

### INSTALLATION

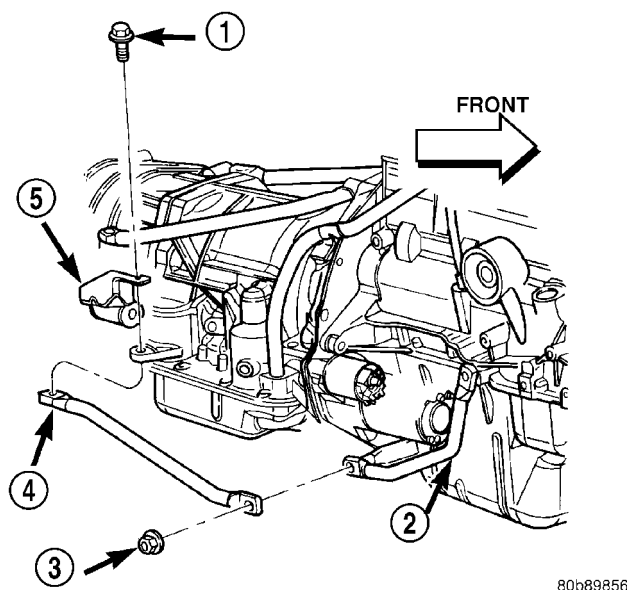
**NOTE:** DO NOT tighten the retaining hardware until all bending braces are in place.

- (1) Position the cross brace into the engine-to-transmission brace, then position the engine-to-transmission brace and install retaining bolt.
- (2) Position the transmission bending brace onto through brace and install new locknut.
- (3) Position exhaust hanger and transmission brace, install retaining bolt (Fig. 72).
- (4) Tighten engine-to-transmission brace retaining bolt (Fig. 71) to 40 N·m (30 ft. lbs.).
- (5) Tighten transmission brace retaining bolts (Fig. 72) to 40 N·m (30 ft. lbs.), then tighten transmission brace retaining lock nuts (Fig. 72) to 108 N·m (80 ft. lbs.).

## STRUCTURAL SUPPORT (Continued)

**Fig. 71 Engine-to-Transmission Bending Braces**

- 1 - ENGINE-TO-TRANSMISSION BENDING BRACE
- 2 - CROSS BRACE
- 3 - ENGINE-TO-TRANSMISSION BENDING BRACE RETAINING BOLT

**Fig. 72 Transmission Bending Braces and Exhaust Hanger**

- 1 - TRANSMISSION BENDING BRACE RETAINING BOLT
- 2 - ENGINE-TO-TRANSMISSION BENDING BRACE
- 3 - LOCKNUT
- 4 - TRANSMISSION BRACE
- 5 - EXHAUST HANGER

## LUBRICATION

## DESCRIPTION

A gear-type positive displacement pump is mounted at the underside of the block opposite the No. 4 main bearing.

## OPERATION

The pump draws oil through the screen and inlet tube from the sump at the rear of the oil pan. The oil is driven between the drive and idler gears and pump body, then forced through the outlet to the block. An oil gallery in the block channels the oil to the inlet side of the full flow oil filter. After passing through the filter element, the oil passes from the center outlet of the filter through an oil gallery that channels the oil up to the main gallery which extends the entire length of the block.

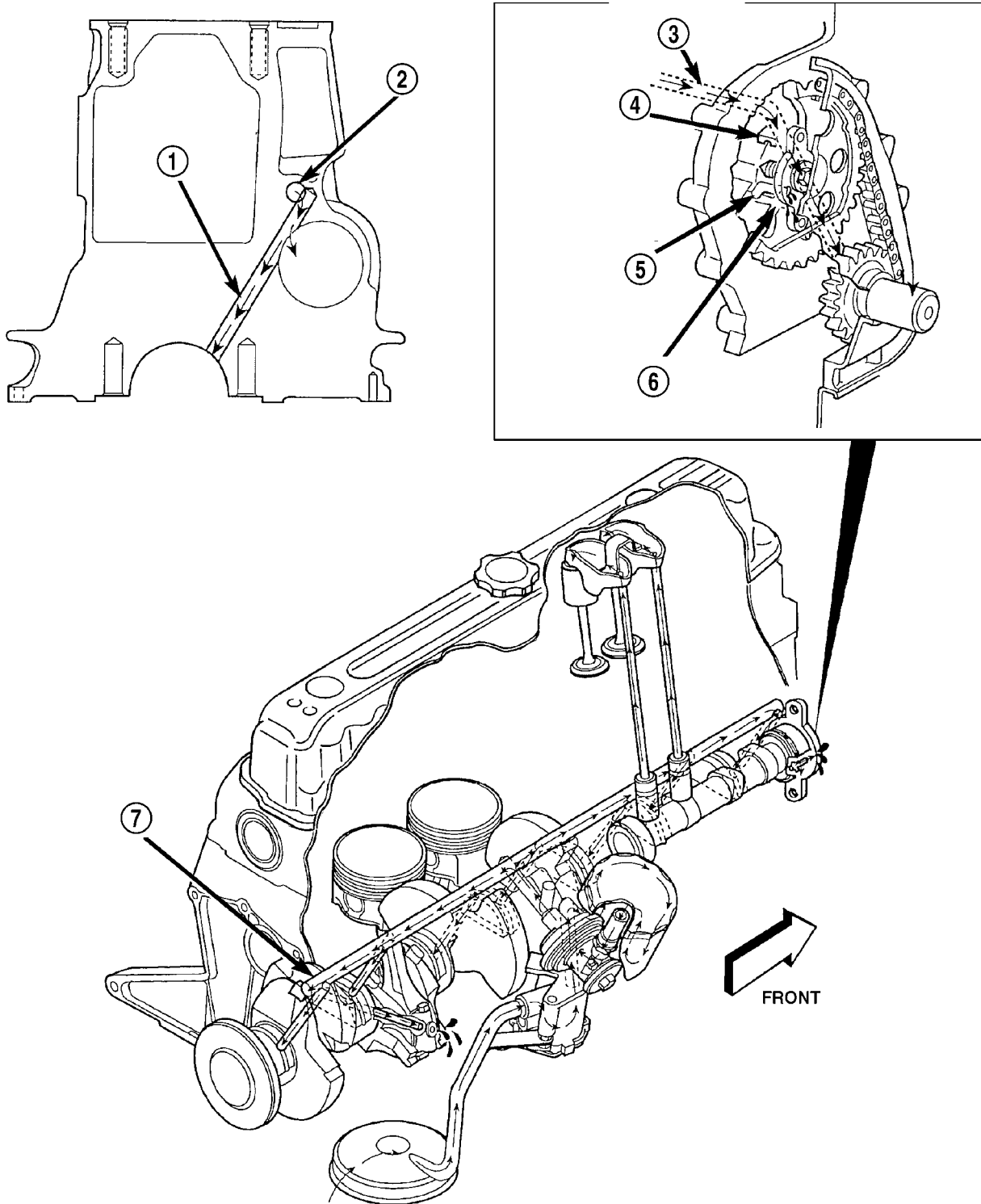
Galleries extend downward from the main oil gallery to the upper shell of each main bearing. The crankshaft is drilled internally to pass oil from the main bearing journals (except number 4 main bearing journal) to the connecting rod journals. Each connecting rod bearing cap has a small squirt hole, oil passes through the squirt hole and is thrown off as the rod rotates. This oil throwoff lubricates the camshaft lobes, distributor drive gear, cylinder walls, and piston pins.

The hydraulic valve tappets receive oil directly from the main oil gallery. Oil is provided to the camshaft bearing journal passes oil through the camshaft sprocket to the timing chain. Oil drains back to the oil pan under the number one main bearing cap.

The oil supply for the rocker arms and bridged pivot assemblies is provided by the hydraulic valve tappets which pass oil through hollow push rods to a hole in the corresponding rocker arm. Oil from the rocker arm lubricates the valve train components, then passes down through the push rod guide holes in the cylinder head past the valve tappet area, and returns to the oil pan (Fig. 73).



## LUBRICATION (Continued)



80be47c9

**Fig. 73 Oil Lubrication System—4.0L Engine**

- 1 - CAM/CRANK MAIN GALLERY (7)
- 2 - TAPPET GALLERY
- 3 - TAPPET GALLERY
- 4 - CAMSHAFT BEARING

- 5 - NUMBER 1 CAMSHFT BEARING JOURNAL
- 6 - CAMSHAFT SPROCKET
- 7 - TAPPET GALLERY

## LUBRICATION (Continued)

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - ENGINE OIL PRESSURE

(1) Disconnect connector and remove oil pressure sending unit.

(2) Install Oil Pressure Line and Gauge Tool C-3292 or equivalent. Start engine and record pressure. (Refer to 9 - ENGINE - SPECIFICATIONS) for the correct pressures.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - ENGINE OIL LEAK

Begin with a thorough visual inspection of the engine, particularly at the area of the suspected leak. If an oil leak source is not readily identifiable, the following steps should be followed:

(1) Do not clean or degrease the engine at this time because some solvents may cause rubber to swell, temporarily stopping the leak.

(2) Add an oil soluble dye (use as recommended by manufacturer). Start the engine and let idle for approximately 15 minutes. Check the oil dipstick to make sure the dye is thoroughly mixed as indicated with a bright yellow color under a black light.

(3) Using a black light, inspect the entire engine for fluorescent dye, particularly at the suspected area of oil leak. If the oil leak is found and identified, repair per service manual instructions.

(4) If dye is not observed, drive the vehicle at various speeds for approximately 24km (15 miles), and repeat inspection. **If the oil leak source is not positively identified at this time**, proceed with the air leak detection test method.

## Air Leak Detection Test Method

(1) Disconnect the breather cap to air cleaner hose at the breather cap end. Cap or plug breather cap nipple.

(2) Remove the CCV valve from the cylinder head cover. Cap or plug the CCV valve grommet.

(3) Attach an air hose with pressure gauge and regulator to the dipstick tube.

**CAUTION: Do not subject the engine assembly to more than 20.6 kpa (3 PSI) of test pressure.**

(4) Gradually apply air pressure from 1 psi to 2.5 psi maximum while applying soapy water at the suspected source. Adjust the regulator to the suitable test pressure that provide the best bubbles which will pinpoint the leak source. If the oil leak is detected and identified, repair per service information procedures.

(5) If the leakage occurs at the rear oil seal area, INSPECTION FOR REAR SEAL AREA LEAKS.

(6) If no leaks are detected, turn off the air supply and remove the air hose and all plugs and caps. Install the CCV valve and breather cap hose.

(7) Clean the oil off the suspect oil leak area using a suitable solvent. Drive the vehicle at various speeds approximately 24 km (15 miles). Inspect the engine for signs of an oil leak by using a black light.

## INSPECTION FOR REAR SEAL AREA LEAKS

Since it is sometimes difficult to determine the source of an oil leak in the rear seal area of the engine, a more involved inspection is necessary. The following steps should be followed to help pinpoint the source of the leak.

If the leakage occurs at the crankshaft rear oil seal area:

(1) Disconnect the battery.

(2) Raise the vehicle.

(3) Remove torque converter or clutch housing cover and inspect rear of block for evidence of oil. Use a black light to check for the oil leak:

(a) Circular spray pattern generally indicates seal leakage or crankshaft damage.

(b) Where leakage tends to run straight down, possible causes are a porous block, distributor seal, camshaft bore cup plugs oil galley pipe plugs, oil filter runoff, and main bearing cap to cylinder block mating surfaces.

(4) If no leaks are detected, pressurize the crankcase as outlined in the, Inspection (Engine oil Leaks in general)

**CAUTION: Do not exceed 20.6 kPa (3 psi).**

(5) If the leak is not detected, very slowly turn the crankshaft and watch for leakage. If a leak is detected between the crankshaft and seal while slowly turning the crankshaft, it is possible the crankshaft seal surface is damaged. The seal area on the crankshaft could have minor nicks or scratches that can be polished out with emery cloth.

**CAUTION: Use extreme caution when crankshaft polishing is necessary to remove minor nicks and scratches. The crankshaft seal flange is especially machined to complement the function of the rear oil seal.**

(6) For bubbles that remain steady with shaft rotation, no further inspection can be done until disassembled.



## OIL

### STANDARD PROCEDURE - ENGINE OIL SERVICE

#### ENGINE OIL CHANGE

Change engine oil at mileage and time intervals described in Maintenance Schedules.

Run engine until achieving normal operating temperature.

(1) Position the vehicle on a level surface and turn engine off.

(2) Hoist and support vehicle on safety stands.

(3) Remove oil fill cap.

(4) Place a suitable drain pan under crankcase drain.

(5) Remove drain plug from crankcase and allow oil to drain into pan. Inspect drain plug threads for stretching or other damage. Replace drain plug if damaged.

(6) Install drain plug in crankcase.

(7) Replace engine oil filter. (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/LUBRICATION/OIL FILTER - REMOVAL).

(8) Lower vehicle and fill crankcase with specified type of engine oil (Refer to LUBRICATION & MAINTENANCE/FLUID TYPES - DESCRIPTION) and amount of engine oil (Refer to LUBRICATION & MAINTENANCE - SPECIFICATIONS).

(9) Install oil fill cap.

(10) Start engine and inspect for leaks.

(11) Stop engine and inspect oil level. Refer to CRANKCASE OIL LEVEL INSPECTION.

#### USED ENGINE OIL DISPOSAL

Care should be exercised when disposing used engine oil after it has been drained from a vehicle engine.

#### CRANKCASE OIL LEVEL INSPECTION

**CAUTION:** Do not overfill crankcase with engine oil, oil foaming and oil pressure loss can result.

The engine oil level indicator (Dipstick) is located at the right rear of the 4.0L engine. Inspect engine oil level approximately every 800 kilometers (500 miles). Unless the engine has exhibited loss of oil pressure, run the engine for about five minutes before checking oil level. Checking engine oil level on a cold engine is not accurate.

To ensure proper lubrication of an engine, the engine oil must be maintained at an acceptable level. The acceptable levels are indicated between the ADD and SAFE marks on the engine oil dipstick (Fig. 74).

(1) Position vehicle on level surface.

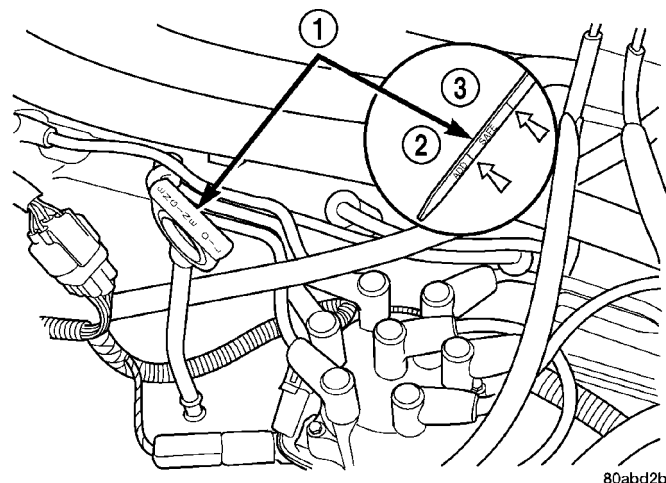
(2) With engine OFF, allow approximately ten minutes for oil to settle to bottom of crankcase, remove engine oil dipstick.

(3) Wipe dipstick clean.

(4) Install dipstick and verify it is seated in the tube.

(5) Remove dipstick, with handle held above the tip, take oil level reading (Fig. 74).

(6) Add oil only if level is below the ADD mark on dipstick.



**Fig. 74 Engine Oil Dipstick—4.0L Engine**

- 1 - DIPSTICK
- 2 - ADD
- 3 - SAFE

## OIL FILTER

### REMOVAL

**CAUTION:** Do not use oil filter with metric threads. The proper oil filter has SAE type 3/4 X 16 threads. An oil filter with metric threads can result in oil leaks and engine failure.

All Jeep engines are equipped with a high quality full-flow, throw-away type oil filter. DaimlerChrysler Corporation recommends a Mopar® or equivalent oil filter be used.

(1) Position a drain pan under the oil filter.

(2) Using a suitable oil filter wrench loosen filter.

(3) Rotate the oil filter counterclockwise to remove it from the cylinder block oil filter boss or filter adapter housing.

(4) When filter separates from adapter nipple, tip gasket end upward to minimize oil spill. Remove filter from vehicle.

(5) Make sure old gasket comes off with oil filter. With a wiping cloth, clean the gasket sealing surface of oil and grime.

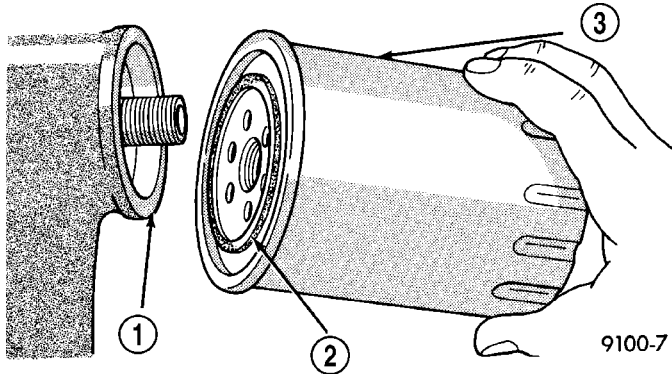
## OIL FILTER (Continued)

## INSTALLATION

(1) Lightly lubricate oil filter gasket with engine oil or chassis grease.

(2) Thread filter onto adapter nipple. When gasket makes contact with sealing surface, (Fig. 75) hand tighten filter one full turn, do not over tighten.

(3) Add oil, verify crankcase oil level and start engine. Inspect for oil leaks.



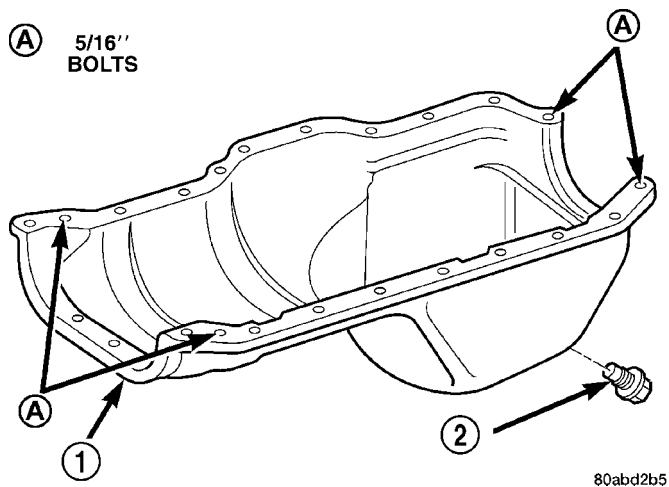
**Fig. 75 Oil Filter Sealing Surface—Typical**

- 1 - SEALING SURFACE
- 2 - RUBBER GASKET
- 3 - OIL FILTER

## OIL PAN

## DESCRIPTION

The oil pan is made of stamped steel. The oil pan gasket is a one piece steel backbone silicone coated gasket (Fig. 76).



**Fig. 76 Oil Pan**

- 1 - OIL PAN
- 2 - OIL PAN DRAIN PLUG

## REMOVAL

- (1) Disconnect negative cable from battery.
- (2) Raise the vehicle.

(3) Remove the oil pan drain plug and drain the engine oil.

(4) Disconnect the exhaust pipe at the exhaust manifold.

(5) Disconnect the exhaust hanger at the catalytic converter and lower the pipe.

(6) Remove the starter motor. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/STARTING/STARTER MOTOR - REMOVAL).

(7) Remove the engine flywheel and transmission torque converter housing access cover.

(8) If equipped with an oil level sensor, disconnect the sensor.

(9) Position a jack stand directly under the engine vibration damper.

(10) Place a piece of wood (2 x 2) between the jack stand and the engine vibration damper.

(11) Remove the engine mount through bolts.

(12) Using the jack stand, raise the engine until adequate clearance is obtained to remove the oil pan.

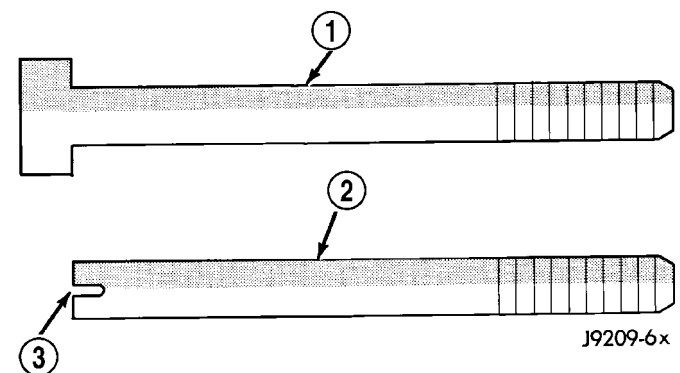
(13) Remove transmission oil cooling lines (if equipped) and oxygen sensor wiring supports that are attached to the oil pan studs.

(14) Remove the oil pan bolts and studs. Carefully slide the oil pan and gasket to the rear. If equipped with an oil level sensor, take care not to damage the sensor.

## INSTALLATION

(1) Clean the block and pan gasket surfaces.

(2) Fabricate 4 alignment dowels from 1 1/2 x 1/4 inch bolts. Cut the head off the bolts and cut a slot into the top of the dowel. This will allow easier installation and removal with a screwdriver (Fig. 77).

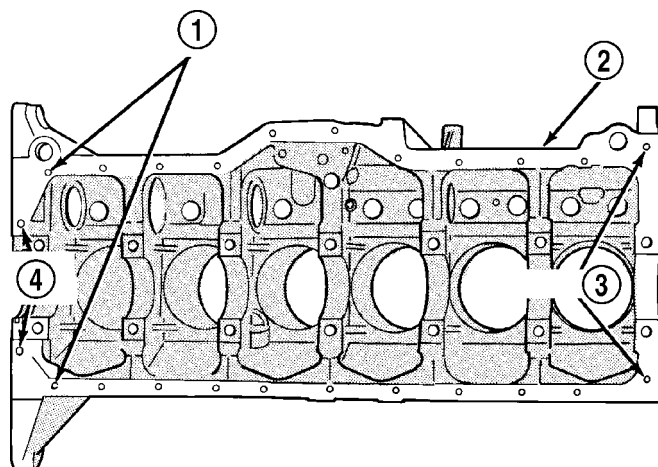


**Fig. 77 Fabrication of Alignment Dowels**

- 1 - 1/4" x 1 1/2" BOLT
- 2 - DOWEL
- 3 - SLOT

(3) Install two dowels in the timing case cover. Install the other two dowels in the cylinder block (Fig. 78).

## OIL PAN (Continued)



J9209-17

**Fig. 78 Position of Dowels in Cylinder Block**

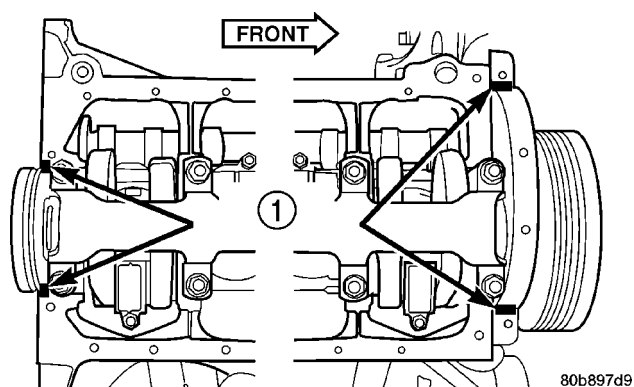
- 1 - DOWEL HOLES
- 2 - CYLINDER BLOCK
- 3 - 5/16" HOLES
- 4 - 5/16" HOLES

(4) Apply Mopar® Silicone Rubber Adhesive Sealant on cylinder block to rear main bearing cap corners and cylinder block to front cover joints (four places) (Fig. 79).

(5) Slide the one-piece gasket over the dowels and onto the block and timing case cover.

(6) Position the oil pan over the dowels and onto the gasket. If equipped with an oil level sensor, take care not to damage the sensor.

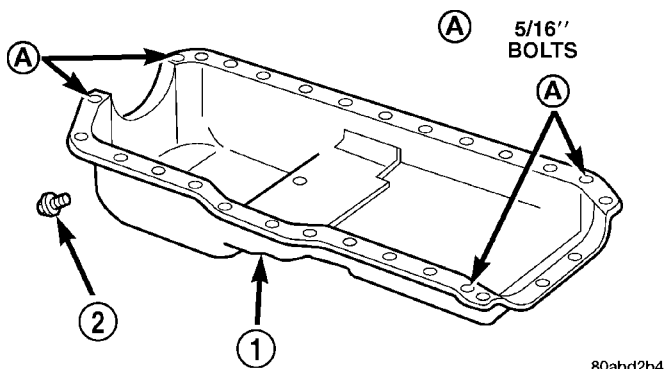
(7) Install the 1/4 inch oil pan bolts. Tighten these bolts to 9.5 N·m (84 in. lbs.) torque. Install the 5/16 inch oil pan bolts (Fig. 80). Tighten these bolts to 15 N·m (132 in. lbs.) torque.



80b897d9

**Fig. 79 Oil Pan Sealer Location**

- 1 - SEALER LOCATIONS



80abd2b4

**Fig. 80 Position of 5/16 inch Oil Pan Bolts**

- 1 - OIL PAN
- 2 - OIL PAN DRAIN PLUG

(8) Remove the dowels. Install the remaining 1/4 inch oil pan bolts. Tighten these bolts to 9.5 N·m (84 in. lbs.) torque.

(9) Lower the engine until it is properly located on the engine mounts.

(10) Install the through bolts and tighten the nuts.

(11) Lower the jack stand and remove the piece of wood.

(12) Install the engine flywheel and transmission torque converter housing access cover.

(13) Install the engine starter motor. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/STARTING/STARTER MOTOR - INSTALLATION).

(14) Connect the exhaust pipe to the hanger and to the engine exhaust manifold.

(15) Install transmission oil cooling lines (if equipped) and oxygen sensor wiring supports that attach to the oil pan studs.

(16) Install the oil pan drain plug (Fig. 80). Tighten the plug to 34 N·m (25 ft. lbs.) torque.

(17) Lower the vehicle.

(18) Connect negative cable to battery.

(19) Fill the oil pan with engine oil to the specified level.

**WARNING: USE EXTREME CAUTION WHEN THE ENGINE IS OPERATING. DO NOT STAND IN A DIRECT LINE WITH THE FAN. DO NOT PUT YOUR HANDS NEAR THE PULLEYS, BELTS OR FAN. DO NOT WEAR LOOSE CLOTHING.**

(20) Start the engine and inspect for leaks.

## ENGINE OIL PRESSURE SENSOR

### DESCRIPTION

The 3-wire, solid-state engine oil pressure sensor (sending unit) is located in an engine oil pressure gallery.

### OPERATION

The oil pressure sensor uses three circuits. They are:

- A 5-volt power supply from the Powertrain Control Module (PCM)
- A sensor ground through the PCM's sensor return
- A signal to the PCM relating to engine oil pressure

The oil pressure sensor has a 3-wire electrical function very much like the Manifold Absolute Pressure (MAP) sensor. Meaning different pressures relate to different output voltages.

A 5-volt supply is sent to the sensor from the PCM to power up the sensor. The sensor returns a voltage signal back to the PCM relating to engine oil pressure. This signal is then transferred (bussed) to the instrument panel on either a CCD or PCI bus circuit (depending on vehicle line) to operate the oil pressure gauge and the check gauges lamp. Ground for the sensor is provided by the PCM through a low-noise sensor return.

## OIL PUMP

### REMOVAL

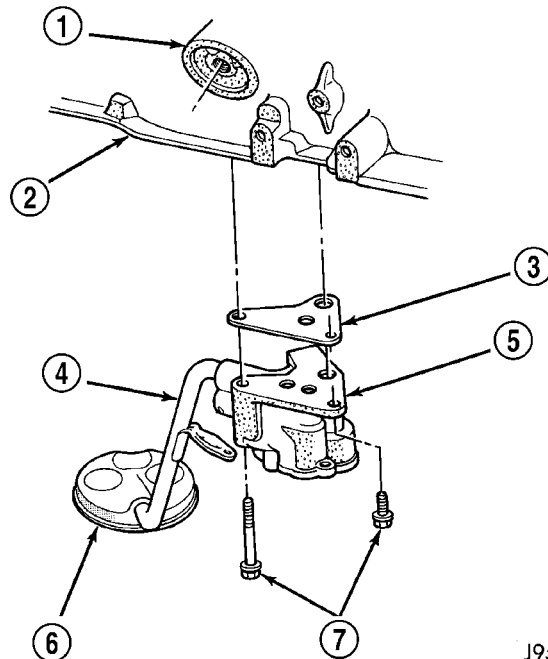
A gear-type oil pump is mounted at the underside of the cylinder block opposite the No.4 main bearing.

- (1) Drain the engine oil.
- (2) Remove the oil pan (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/LUBRICATION/OIL PAN - REMOVAL).
- (3) Remove the pump-to-cylinder block attaching bolts. Remove the pump assembly with gasket (Fig. 81).

**CAUTION:** If the oil pump is not to be serviced, DO NOT disturb position of oil inlet tube and strainer assembly in pump body. If the tube is moved within the pump body, a replacement tube and strainer assembly must be installed to assure an airtight seal.

### INSTALLATION

A gear-type oil pump is mounted at the underside of the cylinder block opposite the No.4 main bearing.



J9509-85

**Fig. 81 Oil Pump Assembly**

- 1 - OIL FILTER ADAPTOR
- 2 - BLOCK
- 3 - GASKET
- 4 - OIL INLET TUBE
- 5 - OIL PUMP
- 6 - STRAINER ASSEMBLY
- 7 - ATTACHING BOLTS

(1) Install the oil pump on the cylinder block using a replacement gasket. Tighten the bolts to 23 N·m (17 ft. lbs.) torque.

(2) Install the oil pan (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/LUBRICATION/OIL PAN - INSTALLATION).

(3) Fill the oil pan with oil to the specified level.

## INTAKE MANIFOLD

### DESCRIPTION

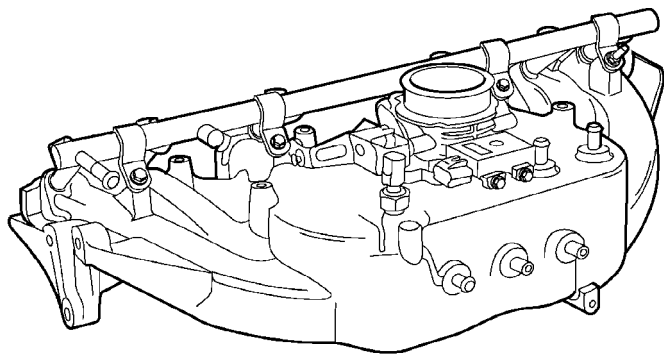
The intake manifold (Fig. 82) is made of cast aluminum and uses eleven bolts to mount to the cylinder head. This mounting style improves sealing and reduces the chance of leaks.

### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - INTAKE MANIFOLD LEAKAGE

An intake manifold air leak is characterized by lower than normal manifold vacuum. Also, one or more cylinders may not be functioning.



## INTAKE MANIFOLD (Continued)



80bc4bb8

**Fig. 82 Intake Manifold 4.0L Engine**

**WARNING: USE EXTREME CAUTION WHEN THE ENGINE IS OPERATING. DO NOT STAND IN A DIRECT LINE WITH THE FAN. DO NOT PUT YOUR HANDS NEAR THE PULLEYS, BELTS OR THE FAN. DO NOT WEAR LOOSE CLOTHING.**

- (1) Start the engine.
- (2) Spray a small stream of water at the suspected leak area.
- (3) If a change in RPM is observed the area of the suspected leak has been found.
- (4) Repair as required.

**REMOVAL**

**NOTE: THE ENGINE INTAKE AND EXHAUST MANIFOLD MUST BE REMOVED AND INSTALLED TOGETHER. THE MANIFOLDS USE A COMMON GASKET AT THE CYLINDER HEAD.**

- (1) Disconnect the battery negative cable.
- (2) Remove air cleaner inlet hose from the resonator assembly.
- (3) Remove the air cleaner assembly.
- (4) Remove the throttle cable, vehicle speed control cable (if equipped) and the transmission line pressure cable (Refer to 21 - TRANSMISSION/TRAN-SAXLE/AUTOMATIC - AW4/THROTTLE VALVE CABLE - REMOVAL).
- (5) Disconnect the following electrical connections and secure their harness out of the way:
  - Throttle Position Sensor
  - Idle Air Control Motor
  - Coolant Temperature Sensor (at thermostat housing)
  - Intake Air Temperature Sensor
  - Oxygen Sensor
  - Crank Position Sensor
  - Six (6) Fuel Injector Connectors
  - Manifold Absolute Pressure (MAP) Sensor.

(6) Disconnect HVAC, and Brake Booster vacuum supply hoses at the intake manifold.

(7) Perform the fuel pressure release procedure. (Refer to 14 - FUEL SYSTEM/FUEL DELIVERY - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

(8) Disconnect and remove the fuel system supply line from the fuel rail assembly.

(9) Remove the accessory drive belt (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - REMOVAL).

(10) Remove the power steering pump from the intake manifold and set aside.

(11) Raise the vehicle.

(12) Disconnect the exhaust pipes from the engine exhaust manifolds.

(13) Lower the vehicle.

(14) Remove the intake manifold and exhaust manifold bolts and manifolds (Fig. 83).

**INSTALLATION**

If the manifold is being replaced, ensure all the fitting, etc. are transferred to the replacement manifold.

(1) Install a new engine exhaust/intake manifold gasket over the alignment dowels on the cylinder head.

(2) Position the engine exhaust manifolds to the cylinder head. Install fastener Number 3 and finger tighten at this time (Fig. 83).

(3) Install intake manifold on the cylinder head dowels.

(4) Install washer and fastener Numbers 1, 2, 4, 5, 8, 9, 10 and 11 (Fig. 83).

(5) Install washer and fastener Numbers 6 and 7 (Fig. 83).

(6) Tighten the fasteners in sequence and to the specified torque (Fig. 83).

• Fastener Numbers 1 through 5—Tighten to 33 N·m (24 ft. lbs.) torque.

• Fastener Numbers 6 and 7—Tighten to 31 N·m (23 ft. lbs.) torque.

• Fastener Numbers 8 through 11—Tighten to 33 N·m (24 ft. lbs.) torque.

(7) Install the power steering pump to the intake manifold.

(8) Install the accessory drive belt (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - INSTALLATION).

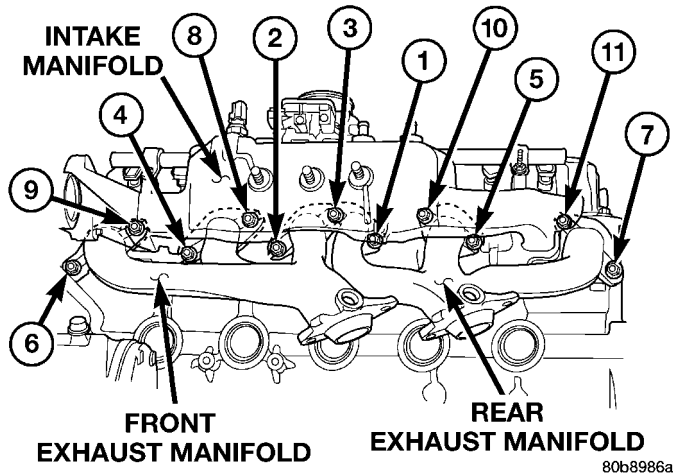
(9) Install the fuel system supply line to the fuel rail assembly.

(10) Connect all electrical connections on the intake manifold.

(11) Connect the vacuum hoses previously removed.

(12) Install throttle cable, vehicle speed control cable (if equipped).

## INTAKE MANIFOLD (Continued)



**Fig. 83 Intake and Exhaust Manifolds Installation**

(13) Install the transmission line pressure cable (if equipped) (Refer to 21 - TRANSMISSION/TRAN-SAXLE/AUTOMATIC - AW4/THROTTLE VALVE CABLE - INSTALLATION).

(14) Install air cleaner assembly.

(15) Connect air inlet hose to the resonator assembly.

(16) Raise the vehicle.

(17) Connect the exhaust pipes to the engine exhaust manifolds. Tighten the bolts to 31 N·m (23 ft. lbs.)

(18) Lower the vehicle.

(19) Connect the battery negative cable.

(20) Start the engine and check for leaks.

## EXHAUST MANIFOLD

## DESCRIPTION

The two exhaust manifolds (Fig. 84) are log style and are made of high silicon molybdenum cast iron. The exhaust manifolds share a common gasket with the intake manifold. The exhaust manifolds also incorporate ball flange outlets for improved sealing and strain free connections.

## REMOVAL

The intake and engine exhaust manifolds on the 4.0L engine must be removed together. The manifolds use a common gasket at the cylinder head.

(Refer to 9 - ENGINE/MANIFOLDS/INTAKE MANIFOLD - REMOVAL).

## INSTALLATION

(1) The exhaust manifold and the intake manifold must be installed together using a common gasket.

(2) (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/MANIFOLDS/INTAKE MANIFOLD - INSTALLATION).

## TIMING BELT / CHAIN COVER(S)

## REMOVAL

(1) Disconnect negative cable from battery.

(2) Remove the vibration damper (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE BLOCK/VIBRATION DAMPER - REMOVAL).

(3) Remove the fan, hub assembly and fan shroud (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ENGINE/RADIATOR FAN - REMOVAL).

(4) Remove the accessory drive brackets that are attached to the timing case cover.

(5) Remove the A/C compressor (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING/A/C COMPRESSOR - REMOVAL) (if equipped) and generator bracket assembly from the engine cylinder head and move to one side.

(6) Remove the oil pan-to-timing case cover bolts and timing case cover-to-cylinder block bolts.

(7) Remove the timing case cover and gasket from the engine.

(8) Pry the crankshaft oil seal from the front of the timing case cover (Fig. 85).

## INSTALLATION

Clean the timing case cover, oil pan and cylinder block gasket surfaces.

(1) Install a new crankshaft oil seal in the timing case cover. The open end of the seal should be toward the inside of the cover. Support the cover at the seal area while installing the seal. Force it into position with Seal Installation Tool 6139.

(2) Position the gasket on the cylinder block.

(3) Position the timing case cover on the oil pan gasket and the cylinder block.

(4) Insert Timing Case Cover Alignment and Seal Installation Tool 6139 in the crankshaft opening in the cover (Fig. 86).

(5) Install the timing case cover-to-cylinder block and the oil pan-to-timing case cover bolts.

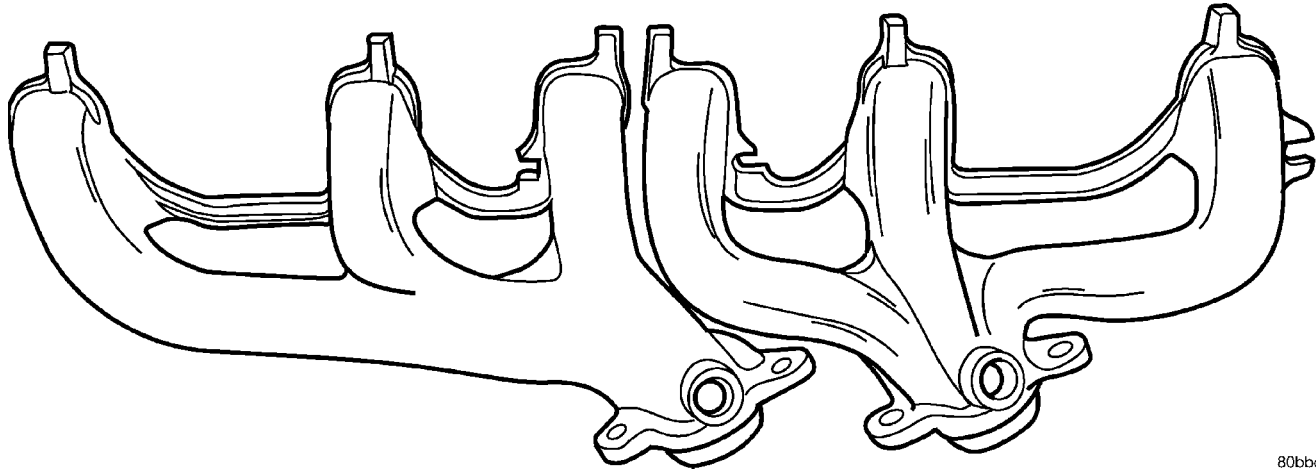
(6) Tighten the 1/4 inch cover-to-block bolts to 7 N·m (60 in. lbs.) torque. Tighten the 5/16 inch front cover-to-block bolts to 22 N·m (192 in. lbs.) torque. Tighten the oil pan-to-cover 1/4 inch bolts to 9.5 N·m (84 in. lbs.) torque.

(7) Remove the cover alignment tool.

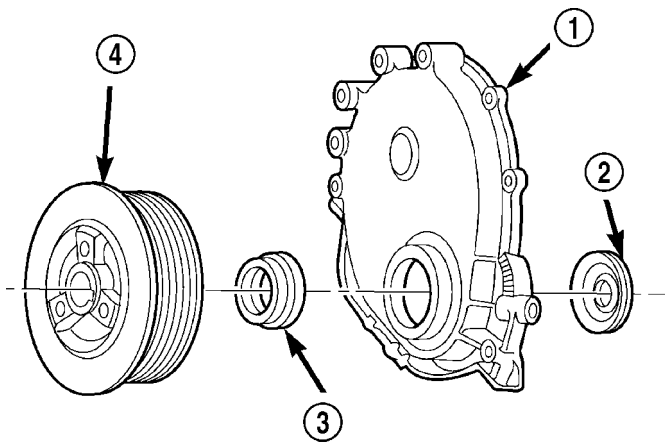
(8) Apply a light film of engine oil on the vibration damper hub contact surface of the seal.

(9) Apply Mopar® Silicone Rubber Adhesive Sealant to the keyway in the crankshaft and insert the key. With the key inserted in the keyway in the crankshaft, install the vibration damper (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE BLOCK/VIBRATION DAMPER - INSTALLATION).

## TIMING BELT / CHAIN COVER(S) (Continued)



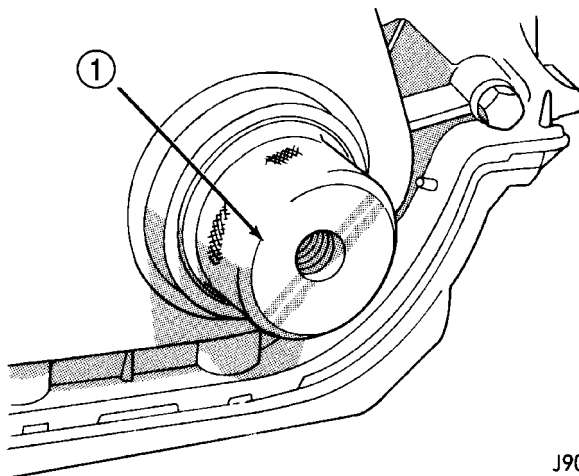
80bbccb8

**Fig. 84 EXHAUST MANIFOLDS 4.0L ENGINE**

80abd2b1

**Fig. 85 Timing Case Cover Components**

- 1 - TIMING CASE COVER
- 2 - OIL SLINGER
- 3 - CRANKSHAFT OIL SEAL
- 4 - VIBRATION DAMPER PULLEY



J9009-23

**Fig. 86 Timing Case Cover Alignment**

- 1 - TIMING CASE COVER ALIGNMENT AND SEAL INSTALLATION TOOL

(10) Install the A/C compressor (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING/A/C COMPRESSOR - INSTALLATION) (if equipped) and generator bracket assembly.

(11) Install the engine fan, hub assembly and shroud (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ENGINE/RADIATOR FAN - INSTALLATION).

(12) Install the serpentine drive belt (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - INSTALLATION).

(13) Connect negative cable to battery.

## TIMING BELT/CHAIN AND SPROCKETS

### REMOVAL

(1) Disconnect negative cable from battery.

(2) Remove the fan and shroud (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ENGINE/RADIATOR FAN - REMOVAL).

(3) Remove the serpentine drive belt (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - REMOVAL).

(4) Remove the crankshaft vibration damper (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE BLOCK/VIBRATION DAMPER - REMOVAL).

(5) Remove the timing case cover (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/VALVE TIMING/TIMING BELT / CHAIN COVER(S) - REMOVAL).

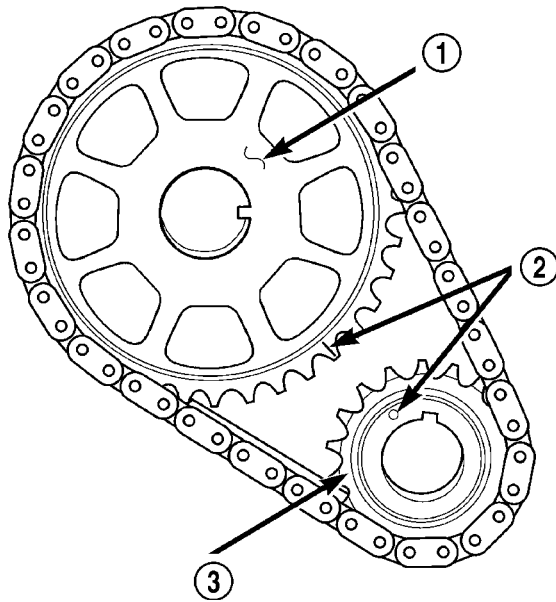
(6) Rotate crankshaft until the "0" timing mark is closest to and on the center line with camshaft sprocket timing mark (Fig. 87).

(7) Remove the oil slinger from the crankshaft.

(8) Remove the camshaft sprocket bolt and washer (Fig. 88).



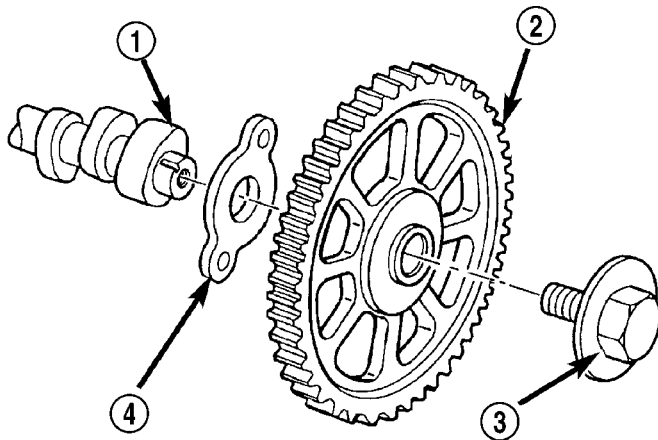
## TIMING BELT/CHAIN AND SPROCKETS (Continued)



80bfe0fa

**Fig. 87 Crankshaft—Camshaft Alignment**

- 1 - CAMSHAFT SPROCKET
- 2 - TIMING MARKS
- 3 - CRANKSHAFT SPROCKET



80bfe167

**Fig. 88 Camshaft Sprocket and Thrust Plate**

- 1 - CAMSHAFT
- 2 - CAMSHAFT SPROCKET W/INTEGRAL KEY
- 3 - BOLT AND WASHER
- 4 - THRUST PLATE

(9) Remove the crankshaft sprocket, camshaft sprocket and timing chain as an assembly.

(10) Installation of the timing chain with the timing marks on the crankshaft and camshaft sprockets properly aligned ensures correct valve timing. A worn or stretched timing chain will adversely affect valve timing. If the timing chain deflects more than 12.7 mm (1/2 inch) replace it.

**INSTALLATION**

Assemble the timing chain, crankshaft sprocket and camshaft sprocket with the timing marks aligned (Fig. 87).

(1) Apply Mopar® Silicone Rubber Adhesive Sealant to the keyway in the crankshaft and insert the key. With the key in the keyway on the crankshaft, install the assembly on the crankshaft and camshaft.

(2) Install the camshaft sprocket bolt and washer (Fig. 88). Tighten the bolt to 68 N·m (50 ft. lbs.) torque.

(3) To verify correct installation of the timing chain, rotate the crankshaft 2 revolutions. The camshaft and crankshaft sprocket timing mark should align (Fig. 87).

(4) Install the crankshaft oil slinger.

(5) Replace the oil seal in the timing case cover (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE BLOCK/CRANKSHAFT OIL SEAL - FRONT - REMOVAL).

(6) Install the timing case cover and gasket (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/VALVE TIMING/TIMING BELT / CHAIN COVER(S) - INSTALLATION).

(7) With the key installed in the crankshaft keyway, install the vibration damper (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE BLOCK/VIBRATION DAMPER - INSTALLATION).

(8) Install the serpentine drive belt (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - INSTALLATION).

(9) Install the fan, hub assembly and shroud (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ENGINE/RADIATOR FAN - INSTALLATION).

(10) Connect negative cable to battery.

## ENGINE - 4.7L

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>ENGINE - 4.7L</b>		INSPECTION .....	89
DESCRIPTION—4.7L ENGINE .....	64	INSTALLATION .....	89
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING		<b>CAMSHAFT(S) - LEFT</b>	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - ENGINE		DESCRIPTION .....	90
DIAGNOSIS - INTRODUCTION .....	65	REMOVAL .....	90
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - ENGINE		INSTALLATION .....	92
DIAGNOSIS - PERFORMANCE .....	66	<b>CYLINDER HEAD COVER(S) - LEFT</b>	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - ENGINE		DESCRIPTION .....	94
DIAGNOSIS - MECHANICAL .....	68	REMOVAL - LEFT SIDE .....	94
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - ENGINE		CLEANING .....	94
DIAGNOSIS - LUBRICATION .....	69	INSTALLATION—LEFT SIDE .....	94
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - CYLINDER		<b>INTAKE/EXHAUST VALVES &amp; SEATS</b>	
COMPRESSION PRESSURE .....	70	DESCRIPTION .....	95
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - CYLINDER		STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFACING .....	95
COMBUSTION PRESSURE LEAKAGE .....	70	REMOVAL .....	95
STANDARD PROCEDURE		INSTALLATION .....	96
STANDARD PROCEDURE - REPAIR		<b>ROCKER ARM / ADJUSTER ASSEMBLY</b>	
DAMAGED OR WORN THREADS .....	71	DESCRIPTION .....	97
STANDARD PROCEDURE - FORM-IN-		REMOVAL .....	97
PLACE GASKETS AND SEALERS .....	71	INSTALLATION .....	97
STANDARD PROCEDURE - ENGINE		<b>VALVE SPRINGS</b>	
GASKET SURFACE PREPARATION .....	72	DESCRIPTION .....	98
STANDARD PROCEDURE - ENGINE CORE		<b>VALVE STEM SEALS</b>	
AND OIL GALLERY PLUGS .....	72	DESCRIPTION .....	98
REMOVAL .....	73	<b>CYLINDER HEAD - RIGHT</b>	
INSTALLATION .....	74	DESCRIPTION	
SPECIFICATIONS		DESCRIPTION - CYLINDER HEAD .....	98
4.7L ENGINE .....	76	DESCRIPTION - VALVE GUIDES .....	98
SPECIFICATIONS - 4.7L H.O. ENGINE .....	78	DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	
TORQUE .....	81	DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING—CYLINDER	
SPECIAL TOOLS		HEAD GASKET .....	98
4.7L ENGINE .....	82	DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - HYDRAULIC	
<b>AIR CLEANER ELEMENT</b>		LASH ADJUSTER .....	99
REMOVAL - 4.7L .....	85	REMOVAL .....	99
INSTALLATION - 4.7L .....	85	CLEANING .....	100
<b>AIR CLEANER HOUSING</b>		INSPECTION .....	100
REMOVAL - 4.7L .....	85	INSTALLATION .....	100
INSTALLATION - 4.7L .....	86	<b>CAMSHAFT(S) - RIGHT</b>	
<b>CYLINDER HEAD - LEFT</b>		DESCRIPTION .....	101
DESCRIPTION		REMOVAL .....	101
DESCRIPTION - CYLINDER HEAD .....	86	INSTALLATION .....	103
DESCRIPTION - VALVE GUIDES .....	86	<b>CYLINDER HEAD COVER(S) - RIGHT</b>	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING		DESCRIPTION .....	105
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - HYDRAULIC		REMOVAL - RIGHT SIDE .....	105
LASH ADJUSTER .....	86	CLEANING .....	105
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING—CYLINDER		INSTALLATION - RIGHT SIDE .....	105
HEAD GASKET .....	86	<b>INTAKE/EXHAUST VALVES &amp; SEATS</b>	
REMOVAL .....	87	DESCRIPTION .....	105
CLEANING .....	89	STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFACING .....	105

REMOVAL .....	106
INSTALLATION .....	107
<b>ROCKER ARM / ADJUSTER ASSEMBLY</b>	
DESCRIPTION .....	108
REMOVAL .....	108
INSTALLATION .....	108
<b>VALVE SPRINGS</b>	
DESCRIPTION .....	109
<b>VALVE STEM SEALS</b>	
DESCRIPTION .....	109
<b>ENGINE BLOCK</b>	
DESCRIPTION .....	109
STANDARD PROCEDURE—CYLINDER BORE	
HONING .....	109
CLEANING .....	109
INSPECTION .....	110
<b>CONNECTING ROD BEARINGS</b>	
STANDARD PROCEDURE - CONNECTING	
ROD BEARING FITTING .....	110
<b>CRANKSHAFT</b>	
DESCRIPTION .....	112
STANDARD PROCEDURE - MEASURING	
CRANKSHAFT END PLAY .....	112
REMOVAL .....	112
INSPECTION .....	113
INSTALLATION .....	113
<b>CRANKSHAFT MAIN BEARINGS</b>	
STANDARD PROCEDURE—CRANKSHAFT	
MAIN BEARING - FITTING .....	115
INSPECTION .....	116
<b>CRANKSHAFT OIL SEAL - FRONT</b>	
REMOVAL .....	116
INSTALLATION .....	117
<b>CRANKSHAFT OIL SEAL - REAR</b>	
REMOVAL .....	118
INSTALLATION .....	118
<b>FLEX PLATE</b>	
REMOVAL .....	119
INSTALLATION .....	119
<b>PISTON &amp; CONNECTING ROD</b>	
DESCRIPTION .....	119
STANDARD PROCEDURE—PISTON FITTING ..	119
REMOVAL .....	119
CLEANING .....	120
INSPECTION .....	120
INSTALLATION .....	121
<b>PISTON RINGS</b>	
STANDARD PROCEDURE - PISTON RING	
FITTING .....	122
<b>VIBRATION DAMPER</b>	
REMOVAL .....	124
INSTALLATION .....	124
<b>STRUCTURAL COVER</b>	
DESCRIPTION .....	125
OPERATION .....	125
REMOVAL .....	125
INSTALLATION .....	125

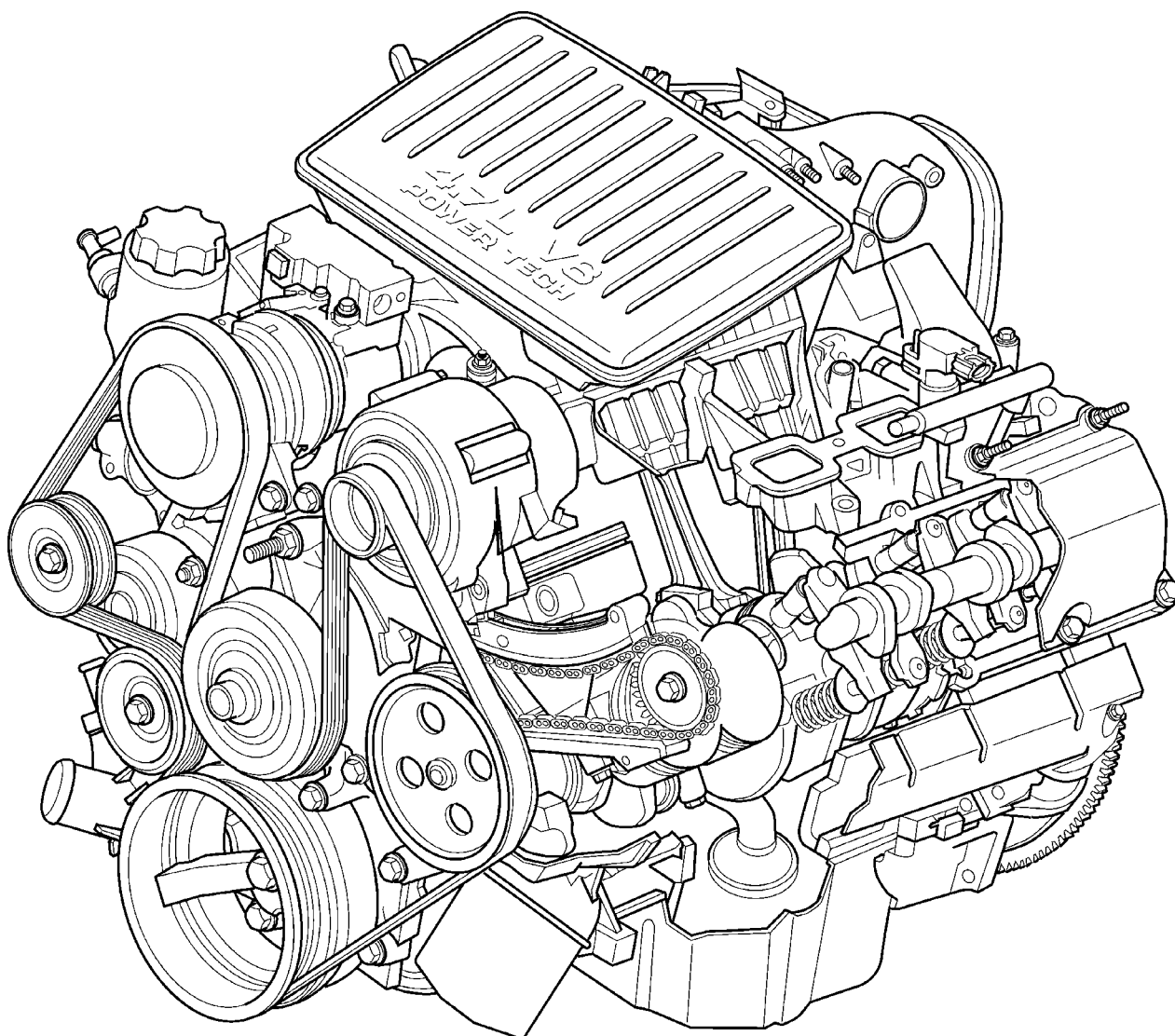
<b>FRONT MOUNT</b>	
REMOVAL .....	126
INSTALLATION .....	126
<b>REAR MOUNT</b>	
REMOVAL .....	127
INSTALLATION .....	127
<b>LUBRICATION</b>	
DESCRIPTION .....	128
OPERATION .....	129
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING—ENGINE OIL	
PRESSURE .....	129
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING—REAR SEAL	
AREA LEAKS .....	130
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING—ENGINE OIL	
LEAK .....	130
<b>OIL</b>	
STANDARD PROCEDURE - ENGINE OIL ....	131
<b>OIL FILTER</b>	
REMOVAL .....	133
INSTALLATION .....	133
<b>OIL PAN</b>	
DESCRIPTION .....	133
REMOVAL .....	133
CLEANING .....	133
INSPECTION .....	134
INSTALLATION .....	134
<b>OIL PRESSURE SENSOR/SWITCH</b>	
DESCRIPTION .....	134
OPERATION .....	134
REMOVAL .....	134
INSTALLATION .....	135
<b>OIL PUMP</b>	
REMOVAL .....	135
DISASSEMBLY .....	135
CLEANING .....	135
INSPECTION .....	135
ASSEMBLY .....	136
INSTALLATION .....	136
<b>INTAKE MANIFOLD</b>	
DESCRIPTION .....	137
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING—INTAKE	
MANIFOLD LEAKAGE .....	137
REMOVAL .....	137
CLEANING .....	138
INSPECTION .....	138
INSTALLATION .....	138
<b>EXHAUST MANIFOLD - LEFT</b>	
DESCRIPTION .....	139
REMOVAL .....	139
CLEANING .....	139
INSPECTION .....	139
INSTALLATION .....	140
<b>EXHAUST MANIFOLD - RIGHT</b>	
DESCRIPTION .....	141
REMOVAL .....	141
CLEANING .....	141

INSPECTION .....	141
INSTALLATION .....	141
<b>VALVE TIMING</b>	
DESCRIPTION - TIMING DRIVE SYSTEM .....	143
OPERATION - TIMING DRIVE SYSTEM .....	143
STANDARD PROCEDURE	
STANDARD PROCEDURE - ENGINE TIMING	
- VERIFICATION .....	144
STANDARD PROCEDURE—MEASURING	
TIMING CHAIN WEAR .....	146

<b>TIMING BELT / CHAIN COVER(S)</b>	
REMOVAL .....	147
INSTALLATION .....	148
<b>TIMING BELT/CHAIN AND SPROCKETS</b>	
REMOVAL .....	149
INSPECTION .....	152
INSTALLATION .....	152
<b>IDLER SHAFT</b>	
REMOVAL .....	155
INSTALLATION .....	155

## ENGINE - 4.7L

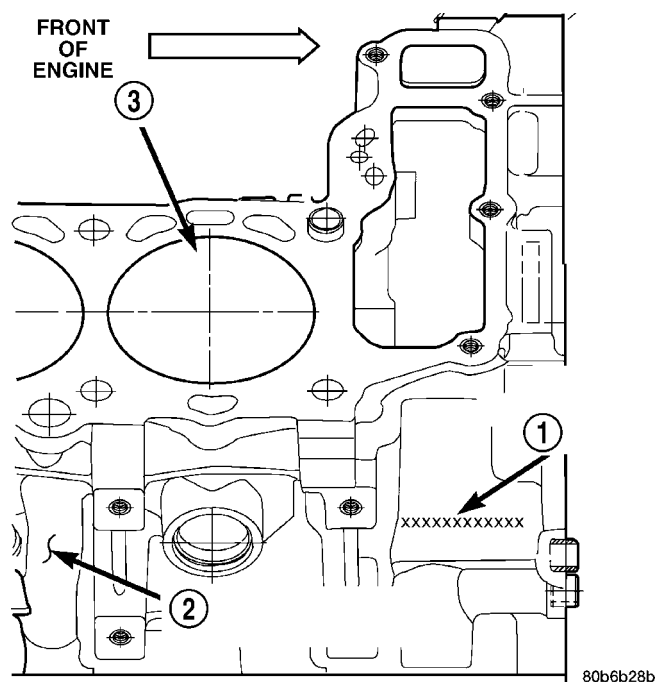
### DESCRIPTION—4.7L ENGINE



80b3b148

## ENGINE - 4.7L (Continued)

The 4.7 liter (287 CID) eight-cylinder engine is an 90° single overhead camshaft engine. The cast iron cylinder block is made up of two different components; the first component is the cylinder bore and upper block, the second component is the bedplate that comprises the lower portion of the cylinder block and houses the lower half of the crankshaft main bearings. The cylinders are numbered from front to rear with the left bank being numbered 1,3,5 and 7, and the right bank being numbered 2,4,6 and 8. The firing order is 1-8-4-3-6-5-7-2. The engine serial number is located at the right front side of the engine block (Fig. 1)



**Fig. 1 Engine Identification Location**

- 1 - VEHICLE VIN NUMBER LOCATION
- 2 - CYLINDER BLOCK RIGHT HAND SIDE
- 3 - CYLINDER BORE #2

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - ENGINE  
DIAGNOSIS - INTRODUCTION

Engine diagnosis is helpful in determining the causes of malfunctions not detected and remedied by routine maintenance.

These malfunctions may be classified as either performance (e.g., engine idles rough and stalls) or mechanical (e.g., a strange noise).

(Refer to 9 - ENGINE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING)—PERFORMANCE and (Refer to 9 - ENGINE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING)—MECHANICAL for possible causes and corrections of malfunctions. (Refer to 14 - FUEL SYSTEM/FUEL DELIVERY - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING) and (Refer to 14 - FUEL SYSTEM/FUEL INJECTION - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING) for the fuel system diagnosis.

Additional tests and diagnostic procedures may be necessary for specific engine malfunctions that can not be isolated with the Service Diagnosis charts. Information concerning additional tests and diagnosis is provided within the following diagnosis:

- Cylinder Compression Pressure Test (Refer to 9 - ENGINE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING).
- Cylinder Combustion Pressure Leakage Test (Refer to 9 - ENGINE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING).
- Engine Cylinder Head Gasket Failure Diagnosis (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING).
- Intake Manifold Leakage Diagnosis (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/MANIFOLDS/INTAKE MANIFOLD - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING).

## ENGINE - 4.7L (Continued)

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - ENGINE DIAGNOSIS - PERFORMANCE

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSE	CORRECTION
ENGINE WILL NOT START	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Weak battery</li> <li>2. Corroded or loose battery connections.</li> <li>3. Faulty starter.</li> <li>4. Faulty coil or control unit.</li> <li>5. Incorrect spark plug gap.</li> <li>6. Dirt or water in fuel system.</li> <li>7. Faulty fuel pump, relay or wiring.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Charge or replace as necessary.</li> <li>2. Clean and tighten battery connections. Apply a coat of light mineral grease to the terminals.</li> <li>3. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/ STARTING - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING).</li> <li>4. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/ IGNITION CONTROL/IGNITION COIL - REMOVAL).</li> <li>5. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/ IGNITION CONTROL/SPARK PLUG - CLEANING).</li> <li>6. Clean system and replace fuel filter.</li> <li>7. Repair or replace as necessary.</li> </ol>
ENGINE STALLS OR ROUGH IDLE	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Idle speed set to low.</li> <li>2. Idle mixture too lean or too rich.</li> <li>3. Vacuum leak.</li> <li>4. Faulty coil.</li> <li>5. Incorrect engine timing.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. (Refer to 14 - FUEL SYSTEM/ FUEL INJECTION/IDLE AIR CONTROL MOTOR - REMOVAL).</li> <li>2. Refer to Powertrain Diagnosis Information.</li> <li>3. Inspect intake manifold and vacuum hoses, repair or replace as necessary.</li> <li>4. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/ IGNITION CONTROL/IGNITION COIL - REMOVAL).</li> <li>5. (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/VALVE TIMING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).</li> </ol>



## ENGINE - 4.7L (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSE	CORRECTION
1. ENGINE LOSS OF POWER	1. Dirty or incorrectly gapped spark plugs. 2. Dirt or water in fuel system. 3. Faulty fuel pump. 4. Blown cylinder head gasket. 5. Low compression. 6. Burned, warped or pitted valves. 7. Plugged or restricted exhaust system. 8. Faulty coil.	1. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/IGNITION CONTROL/SPARK PLUG - CLEANING). 2. Clean system and replace fuel filter. 3. (Refer to 14 - FUEL SYSTEM/FUEL DELIVERY/FUEL PUMP - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). 4. Replace cylinder head gasket. 5. (Refer to 9 - ENGINE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). 6. Replace as necessary. 7. Inspect and replace as necessary. 8. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/IGNITION CONTROL/IGNITION COIL - REMOVAL).
1. ENGINE MISSES ON ACCELERATION	1. Spark plugs dirty or incorrectly gapped. 2. Dirt in fuel system. 3. Burned, warped or pitted valves. 4. Faulty coil.	1. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/IGNITION CONTROL/SPARK PLUG - CLEANING). 2. Clean fuel system. 3. Replace as necessary. 4. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/IGNITION CONTROL/IGNITION COIL - REMOVAL).
1. ENGINE MISSES AT HIGH SPEED	1. Spark plugs dirty or incorrectly gapped. 2. Faulty coil. 3. Dirt or water in fuel system.	1. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/IGNITION CONTROL/SPARK PLUG - CLEANING). 2. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/IGNITION CONTROL/IGNITION COIL - REMOVAL). 3. Clean system and replace fuel filter.



## ENGINE - 4.7L (Continued)

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - ENGINE DIAGNOSIS - MECHANICAL

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTIONS
NOISY VALVES	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. High or low oil level in crankcase.</li> <li>2. Thin or diluted oil.</li> <li>3. Low oil pressure.</li> <li>4. Dirt in lash adjusters.</li> <li>5. Worn rocker arms.</li> <li>6. Worn lash adjusters</li> <li>7. Worn valve guides.</li> <li>8. Excessive runout of valve seats on valve faces.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. (Refer to LUBRICATION &amp; MAINTENANCE - SPECIFICATIONS)</li> <li>2. Change oil and filter.</li> <li>3. Check oil pump, if Ok, check rod and main bearings for excessive wear.</li> <li>4. Replace as necessary.</li> <li>5. Replace as necessary.</li> <li>6. Replace as necessary.</li> <li>7. (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD/INTAKE/EXHAUST VALVES &amp; SEATS - STANDARD PROCEDURE)</li> <li>8. (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD/INTAKE/EXHAUST VALVES &amp; SEATS - STANDARD PROCEDURE)</li> </ol>
CONNECTING ROD NOISE	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Insufficient oil supply.</li> <li>2. Low oil pressure.</li> <li>3. Thin or diluted oil.</li> <li>4. Excessive bearing clearance.</li> <li>5. Connecting rod journal out-of-round.</li> <li>6. Misaligned connecting rods.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. (Refer to LUBRICATION &amp; MAINTENANCE - SPECIFICATIONS)</li> <li>2. Check oil pump, if Ok, check rod and main bearings for excessive wear.</li> <li>3. Change oil and filter.</li> <li>4. Replace as necessary.</li> <li>5. Service or replace crankshaft.</li> <li>6. Replace bent connecting rods.</li> </ol>
MAIN BEARING NOISE	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Insufficient oil supply.</li> <li>2. Low oil pressure.</li> <li>3. Thin or diluted oil.</li> <li>4. Excessive bearing clearance.</li> <li>5. Excessive end play.</li> <li>6. Crankshaft journal out-of round.</li> <li>7. Loose flywheel or torque converter.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. (Refer to LUBRICATION &amp; MAINTENANCE - SPECIFICATIONS)</li> <li>2. Check oil pump, if Ok, check rod and main bearings for excessive wear.</li> <li>3. Change oil and filter.</li> <li>4. Replace as necessary.</li> <li>5. Check thrust washers for wear.</li> <li>6. Service or replace crankshaft.</li> <li>7. Tighten to correct torque</li> </ol>

## ENGINE - 4.7L (Continued)

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - ENGINE DIAGNOSIS - LUBRICATION

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
OIL LEAKS	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Gaskets and O-Rings. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Misaligned or damaged.</li> <li>(b) Loose fasteners, broken or porous metal parts.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. Crankshaft rear seal</li> <li>3. Crankshaft seal flange. Scratched, nicked or grooved.</li> <li>4. Oil pan flange cracked.</li> <li>5. Timing chain cover seal, damaged or misaligned.</li> <li>6. Scratched or damaged vibration damper hub.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Replace as necessary.</li> <li>(b) Tighten fasteners, Repair or replace metal parts.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. Replace as necessary (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE BLOCK/ CRANKSHAFT OIL SEAL - REAR - REMOVAL).</li> <li>3. Polish or replace crankshaft.</li> <li>4. Replace oil pan (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/LUBRICATION/OIL PAN - REMOVAL).</li> <li>5. Replace seal (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE BLOCK/ CRANKSHAFT OIL SEAL - FRONT - REMOVAL).</li> <li>6. Polish or replace damper.</li> </ol>
OIL PRESSURE DROP	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Low oil level.</li> <li>2. Faulty oil pressure sending unit.</li> <li>3. Low oil pressure.</li> <li>4. Clogged oil filter.</li> <li>5. Worn oil pump.</li> <li>6. Thin or diluted oil.</li> <li>7. Excessive bearing clearance.</li> <li>8. Oil pump relief valve stuck.</li> <li>9. Oil pick up tube loose, damaged or clogged.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check and correct oil level.</li> <li>2. Replace sending unit (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/LUBRICATION/OIL PRESSURE SENSOR/SWITCH - REMOVAL).</li> <li>3. Check oil pump and bearing clearance.</li> <li>4. Replace oil filter (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/LUBRICATION/OIL FILTER - REMOVAL).</li> <li>5. Replace oil pump (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/LUBRICATION/OIL PUMP - REMOVAL).</li> <li>6. Change oil and filter.</li> <li>7. Replace as necessary.</li> <li>8. Replace oil pump (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/LUBRICATION/OIL PUMP - REMOVAL).</li> <li>9. Replace as necessary.</li> </ol>

## ENGINE - 4.7L (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
OIL PUMPING AT RINGS; SPARK PLUGS FOULING	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Worn or damaged rings.</li> <li>2. Carbon in oil ring slots.</li> <li>3. Incorrect ring size installed.</li> <li>4. Worn valve guides.</li> <li>5. Leaking valve guide seals.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Hone cylinder bores and replace rings.</li> <li>2. Replace rings (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE BLOCK/PISTON RINGS - STANDARD PROCEDURE).</li> <li>3. Replace rings (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE BLOCK/PISTON RINGS - STANDARD PROCEDURE).</li> <li>4. Ream guides and replace valves (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD/INTAKE/EXHAUST VALVES &amp; SEATS - STANDARD PROCEDURE).</li> <li>5. Replace valve guide seals.</li> </ol>

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - CYLINDER COMPRESSION PRESSURE

The results of a cylinder compression pressure test can be utilized to diagnose several engine malfunctions.

Ensure the battery is completely charged and the engine starter motor is in good operating condition. Otherwise the indicated compression pressures may not be valid for diagnosis purposes.

(1) Clean the spark plug recesses with compressed air.

(2) Remove the spark plugs.

(3) Secure the throttle in the wide-open position.

(4) Disable the fuel system (Refer to 14 - FUEL SYSTEM/FUEL DELIVERY - DESCRIPTION).

(5) Remove the ASD relay (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/IGNITION CONTROL/AUTO SHUT DOWN RELAY - REMOVAL).

(6) Insert a compression pressure gauge and rotate the engine with the engine starter motor for three revolutions.

(7) Record the compression pressure on the 3rd revolution. Continue the test for the remaining cylinders.

(8) (Refer to 9 - ENGINE - SPECIFICATIONS) for the correct engine compression pressures.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - CYLINDER COMBUSTION PRESSURE LEAKAGE

The combustion pressure leakage test provides an accurate means for determining engine condition.

Combustion pressure leakage testing will detect:

- Exhaust and intake valve leaks (improper seating).

- Leaks between adjacent cylinders or into water jacket.

- Any causes for combustion/compression pressure loss.

(1) Check the coolant level and fill as required. DO NOT install the radiator cap.

(2) Start and operate the engine until it attains normal operating temperature, then turn the engine OFF.

(3) Remove the spark plugs.

(4) Remove the oil filler cap.

(5) Remove the air cleaner hose.

(6) Calibrate the tester according to the manufacturer's instructions. The shop air source for testing should maintain 483 kPa (70 psi) minimum, 1,379 kPa (200 psi) maximum and 552 kPa (80 psi) recommended.

(7) Perform the test procedures on each cylinder according to the tester manufacturer's instructions. Set piston of cylinder to be tested at TDC compression. While testing, listen for pressurized air escaping through the throttle body, tailpipe and oil filler cap opening. Check for bubbles in the radiator coolant.

All gauge pressure indications should be equal, with no more than 25% leakage.

**FOR EXAMPLE:** At 552 kPa (80 psi) input pressure, a minimum of 414 kPa (60 psi) should be maintained in the cylinder.

Refer to CYLINDER COMBUSTION PRESSURE LEAKAGE DIAGNOSIS CHART.

## ENGINE - 4.7L (Continued)

## CYLINDER COMBUSTION PRESSURE LEAKAGE DIAGNOSIS CHART

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSE	CORRECTION
AIR ESCAPES THROUGH THROTTLE BODY	Intake valve bent, burnt, or not seated properly	Inspect valve and valve seat. Reface or replace, as necessary. Inspect valve springs. Replace as necessary.
AIR ESCAPES THROUGH TAILPIPE	Exhaust valve bent, burnt, or not seated properly	Inspect valve and valve seat. Reface or replace, as necessary. Inspect valve springs. Replace as necessary.
AIR ESCAPES THROUGH RADIATOR	Head gasket leaking or cracked cylinder head or block	Remove cylinder head and inspect. Replace defective part
MORE THAN 50% LEAKAGE FROM ADJACENT CYLINDERS	Head gasket leaking or crack in cylinder head or block between adjacent cylinders	Remove cylinder head and inspect. Replace gasket, head, or block as necessary
MORE THAN 25% LEAKAGE AND AIR ESCAPES THROUGH OIL FILLER CAP OPENING ONLY	Stuck or broken piston rings; cracked piston; worn rings and/or cylinder wall	Inspect for broken rings or piston. Measure ring gap and cylinder diameter, taper and out-of-round. Replace defective part as necessary

## STANDARD PROCEDURE

## STANDARD PROCEDURE - REPAIR DAMAGED OR WORN THREADS

**CAUTION:** Be sure that the tapped holes maintain the original center line.

Damaged or worn threads can be repaired. Essentially, this repair consists of:

- Drilling out worn or damaged threads.
- Tapping the hole with a special Heli-Coil Tap, or equivalent.
- Installing an insert into the tapped hole to bring the hole back to its original thread size.

## STANDARD PROCEDURE - FORM-IN-PLACE GASKETS AND SEALERS

There are numerous places where form-in-place gaskets are used on the engine. Care must be taken when applying form-in-place gaskets to assure obtaining the desired results. **Do not use form-in-place gasket material unless specified.** Bead size, continuity, and location are of great importance. Too thin a bead can result in leakage while too much can result in spill-over which can break off and obstruct fluid feed lines. A continuous bead of the proper width is essential to obtain a leak-free gasket.

There are numerous types of form-in-place gasket materials that are used in the engine area. Mopar® Engine RTV GEN II, Mopar® ATF-RTV, and Mopar® Gasket Maker gasket materials, each have different properties and can not be used in place of the other.

**MOPAR® ENGINE RTV GEN II**

Mopar® Engine RTV GEN II is used to seal components exposed to engine oil. This material is a specially designed black silicone rubber RTV that retains adhesion and sealing properties when exposed to engine oil. Moisture in the air causes the material to cure. This material is available in three ounce tubes and has a shelf life of one year. After one year this material will not properly cure. Always inspect the package for the expiration date before use.

**MOPAR® ATF RTV**

Mopar® ATF RTV is a specifically designed black silicone rubber RTV that retains adhesion and sealing properties to seal components exposed to automatic transmission fluid, engine coolants, and moisture. This material is available in three ounce tubes and has a shelf life of one year. After one year this material will not properly cure. Always inspect the package for the expiration date before use.

**MOPAR® GASKET MAKER**

Mopar® Gasket Maker is an anaerobic type gasket material. The material cures in the absence of air when squeezed between two metallic surfaces. It will not cure if left in the uncovered tube. The anaerobic material is for use between two machined surfaces. Do not use on flexible metal flanges.

## ENGINE - 4.7L (Continued)

**MOPAR® GASKET SEALANT**

Mopar® Gasket Sealant is a slow drying, permanently soft sealer. This material is recommended for sealing threaded fittings and gaskets against leakage of oil and coolant. Can be used on threaded and machined parts under all temperatures. This material is used on engines with multi-layer steel (MLS) cylinder head gaskets. This material also will prevent corrosion. Mopar® Gasket Sealant is available in a 13 oz. aerosol can or 4oz./16 oz. can w/applicator.

**FORM-IN-PLACE GASKET AND SEALER APPLICATION**

Assembling parts using a form-in-place gasket requires care but it's easier than using pre-cut gaskets.

Mopar® Gasket Maker material should be applied sparingly 1 mm (0.040 in.) diameter or less of sealant to one gasket surface. Be certain the material surrounds each mounting hole. Excess material can easily be wiped off. Components should be torqued in place within 15 minutes. The use of a locating dowel is recommended during assembly to prevent smearing material off the location.

Mopar® Engine RTV GEN II or ATF RTV gasket material should be applied in a continuous bead approximately 3 mm (0.120 in.) in diameter. All mounting holes must be circled. For corner sealing, a 3.17 or 6.35 mm (1/8 or 1/4 in.) drop is placed in the center of the gasket contact area. Uncured sealant may be removed with a shop towel. Components should be torqued in place while the sealant is still wet to the touch (within 10 minutes). The usage of a locating dowel is recommended during assembly to prevent smearing material off the location.

Mopar® Gasket Sealant in an aerosol can should be applied using a thin, even coat sprayed completely over both surfaces to be joined, and both sides of a gasket. Then proceed with assembly. Material in a can w/applicator can be brushed on evenly over the sealing surfaces. Material in an aerosol can should be used on engines with multi-layer steel gaskets.

**STANDARD PROCEDURE - ENGINE GASKET SURFACE PREPARATION**

To ensure engine gasket sealing, proper surface preparation must be performed, especially with the use of aluminum engine components and multi-layer steel cylinder head gaskets.

**Never** use the following to clean gasket surfaces:

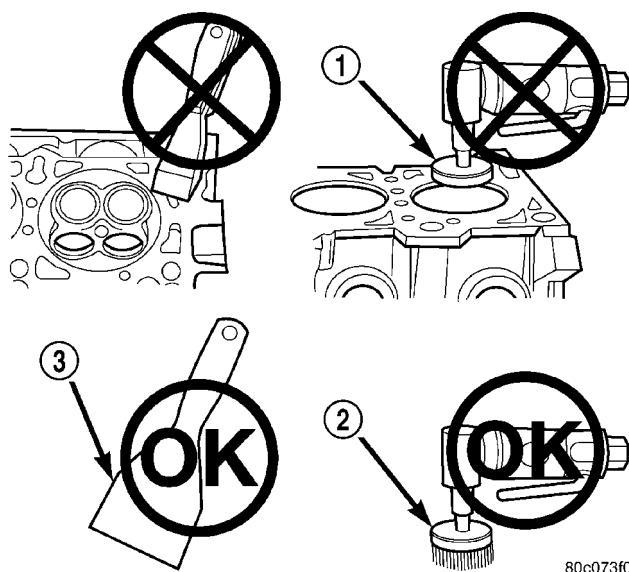
- Metal scraper
- Abrasive pad or paper to clean cylinder block and head
- High speed power tool with an abrasive pad or a wire brush (Fig. 2)

**NOTE: Multi-Layer Steel (MLS) head gaskets require a scratch free sealing surface.**

Only use the following for cleaning gasket surfaces:

- Solvent or a commercially available gasket remover
- Plastic or wood scraper (Fig. 2)
- Drill motor with 3M Roloc™ Bristle Disc (white or yellow) (Fig. 2)

**CAUTION: Excessive pressure or high RPM (beyond the recommended speed), can damage the sealing surfaces. The mild (white, 120 grit) bristle disc is recommended. If necessary, the medium (yellow, 80 grit) bristle disc may be used on cast iron surfaces with care.**



**Fig. 2 Proper Tool Usage For Surface Preparation**

- 1 - ABRASIVE PAD  
2 - 3M ROLOC™ BRISTLE DISC  
3 - PLASTIC/WOOD SCRAPER

**STANDARD PROCEDURE - ENGINE CORE AND OIL GALLERY PLUGS**

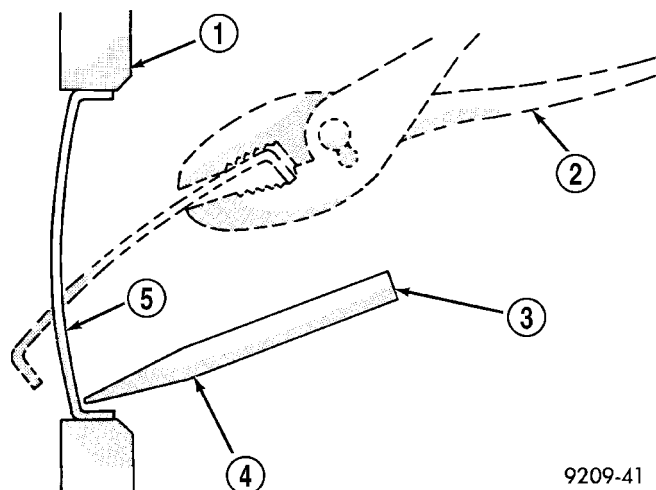
Using a blunt tool such as a drift and a hammer, strike the bottom edge of the cup plug. With the cup plug rotated, grasp firmly with pliers or other suitable tool and remove plug (Fig. 3).

**CAUTION: Do not drive cup plug into the casting as restricted cooling can result and cause serious engine problems.**

Thoroughly clean inside of cup plug hole in cylinder block or head. Be sure to remove old sealer. Lightly coat inside of cup plug hole with Mopar® Stud and Bearing Mount. Make certain the new plug is cleaned of all oil or grease. Using proper drive plug, drive plug into hole so that the sharp edge of



## ENGINE - 4.7L (Continued)



9209-41

**Fig. 3 Core Hole Plug Removal**

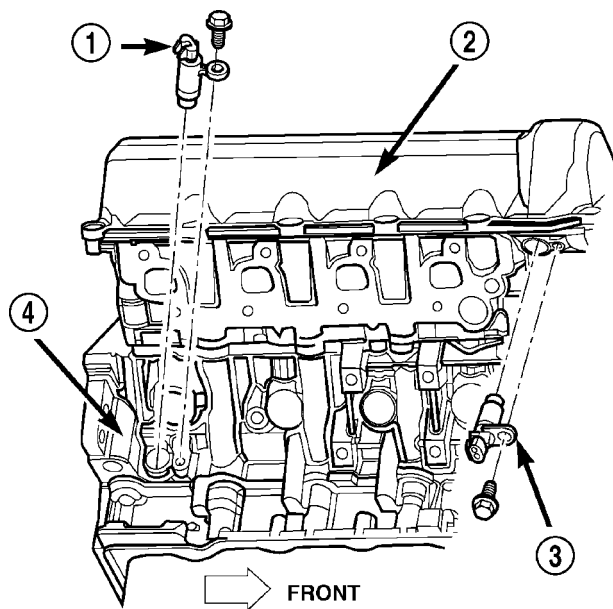
- 1 - CYLINDER BLOCK
- 2 - REMOVE PLUG WITH PLIERS
- 3 - STRIKE HERE WITH HAMMER
- 4 - DRIFT PUNCH
- 5 - CUP PLUG

the plug is at least 0.5 mm (0.020 in.) inside the lead-in chamfer.

It is not necessary to wait for curing of the sealant. The cooling system can be refilled and the vehicle placed in service immediately.

**REMOVAL**

- (1) Disconnect the battery negative cable.
- (2) Remove the front fascia.
- (3) Raise vehicle on hoist.
- (4) Remove exhaust crossover pipe from exhaust manifolds.
- (5) Disconnect two ground straps from the lower left hand side and one ground strap from the lower right hand side of the engine.
- (6) Disconnect crankshaft position sensor. (Fig. 4)
- (7) Remove structural cover (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE BLOCK/STRUCTURAL COVER - REMOVAL).
- (8) Remove starter. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/STARTING/STARTER MOTOR - REMOVAL).
- (9) Remove rubber splash shield.
- (10) Drain cooling system (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).
- (11) Remove torque converter bolts.
- (12) Remove transmission to engine mounting bolts.
- (13) Disconnect the engine block heater power cable from the block heater.
- (14) Lower vehicle.
- (15) Remove throttle body resonator assembly and inlet hose.
- (16) Disconnect throttle and speed control cables.

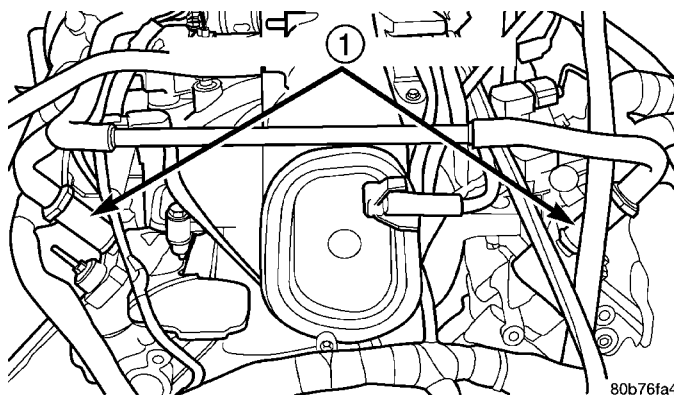


80b77057

**Fig. 4 Crankshaft Position Sensor**

- 1 - CRANKSHAFT POSITION SENSOR
- 2 - CYLINDER HEAD COVER
- 3 - CAMSHAFT POSITION SENSOR
- 4 - RIGHT SIDE CYLINDER BLOCK

(17) Disconnect tube from both the left and right side crankcase breathers, then remove the breathers (Fig. 5).



80b76fa4

**Fig. 5 Crankcase Breather Connection Points**

- 1 - CRANKCASE BREATHERS

(18) Discharge A/C system (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

(19) Remove radiator fan (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ENGINE/RADIATOR FAN - REMOVAL) and accessory drive belt (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - REMOVAL).

(20) Remove A/C compressor (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING/A/C COMPRESSOR - REMOVAL).

## ENGINE - 4.7L (Continued)

(21) Disconnect transmission oil cooler lines at the radiator.

(22) Disconnect radiator lower hose at the thermostat housing.

(23) Remove A/C condenser (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING/A/C CONDENSER - REMOVAL).

(24) Remove radiator (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ENGINE/RADIATOR - REMOVAL).

(25) Remove generator (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/CHARGING/GENERATOR - REMOVAL).

(26) Disconnect the two heater hoses from the timing chain cover.

(27) Disconnect engine harness at the following points :

- Intake air temperature (IAT) sensor (Fig. 6)
- Fuel Injectors
- Throttle Position (TPS) Switch
- Idle Air Control (IAC) Motor
- Engine Oil Pressure Switch
- Engine Coolant Temperature (ECT) Sensor
- Manifold absolute pressure (MAP) Sensor
- Camshaft Position (CMP) Sensor
- Coil Over Plugs

(28) Release fuel rail pressure (Refer to 14 - FUEL SYSTEM/FUEL DELIVERY - STANDARD PROCEDURE) then disconnect the fuel supply quick connect fitting at the fuel rail (Refer to 14 - FUEL SYSTEM/FUEL DELIVERY/QUICK CONNECT FITTING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

(29) Remove power steering pump and position out of the way.

(30) Disconnect ground straps from the left side of the engine.

(31) Install Engine Lifting Fixture Special Tool 8347 (Fig. 7) following these steps.

- Holding the lifting fixture at a slight angle, slide the large bore in the front plate over the hex portion of the lifting stud.

- Position the two remaining fixture arms onto the two lifting studs in the cylinder heads.

- Pull forward and upward on the lifting fixture so that the lifting stud rest in the slotted area below the large bore.

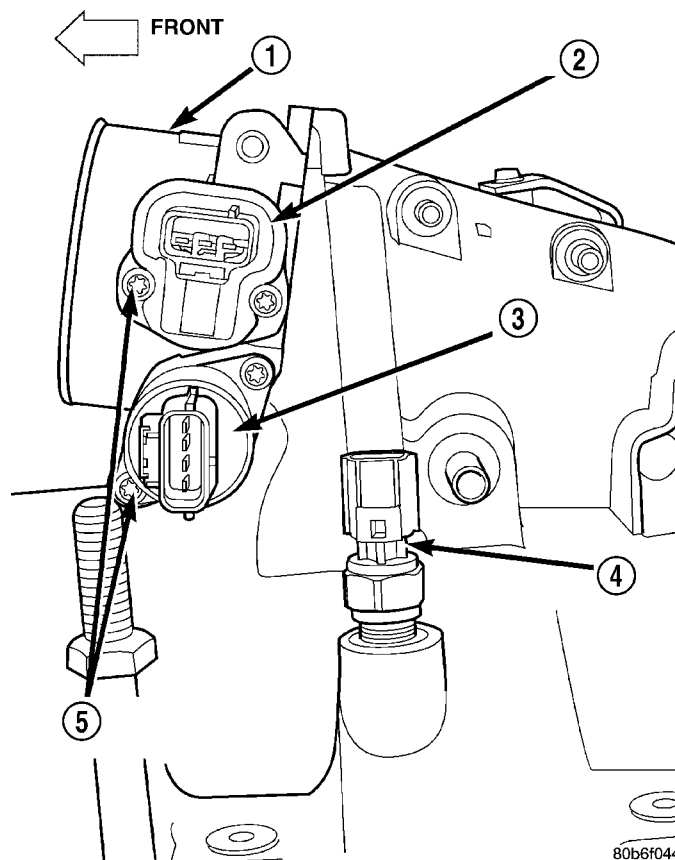
- Secure the lifting fixture to the three studs using three 7/16 - 14 N/C locknuts.

- Make sure the lifting loop in the lifting fixture is in the last hole (closest to the throttle body) to minimize the angle of engine during removal.

(32) Disconnect body ground strap at the right side cowl.

**NOTE:** It will be necessary to support the transmission in order to remove the engine.

(33) Position a suitable jack under the transmission.



**Fig. 6 Throttle Body Connection Points**

- 1 - THROTTLE BODY
- 2 - TPS
- 3 - IAC MOTOR
- 4 - IAT SENSOR (THREADED TYPE)
- 5 - MOUNTING SCREWS

(34) Remove the engine mount through bolts.

(35) Raise engine slightly, then remove both left and right side engine mounts from engine. (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE MOUNTING/FRONT MOUNT - REMOVAL).

(36) Remove engine from the vehicle.

## INSTALLATION

(1) Position engine in the vehicle.

(2) Install both left and right side engine mounts onto engine (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE MOUNTING/FRONT MOUNT - INSTALLATION).

(3) Install transmission to engine mounting bolts. Tighten the bolts to 41 N·m (30 ft. lbs.).

(4) Remove jack from under the transmission.

(5) Remove engine lifting fixture special tool 8347 (Fig. 7).

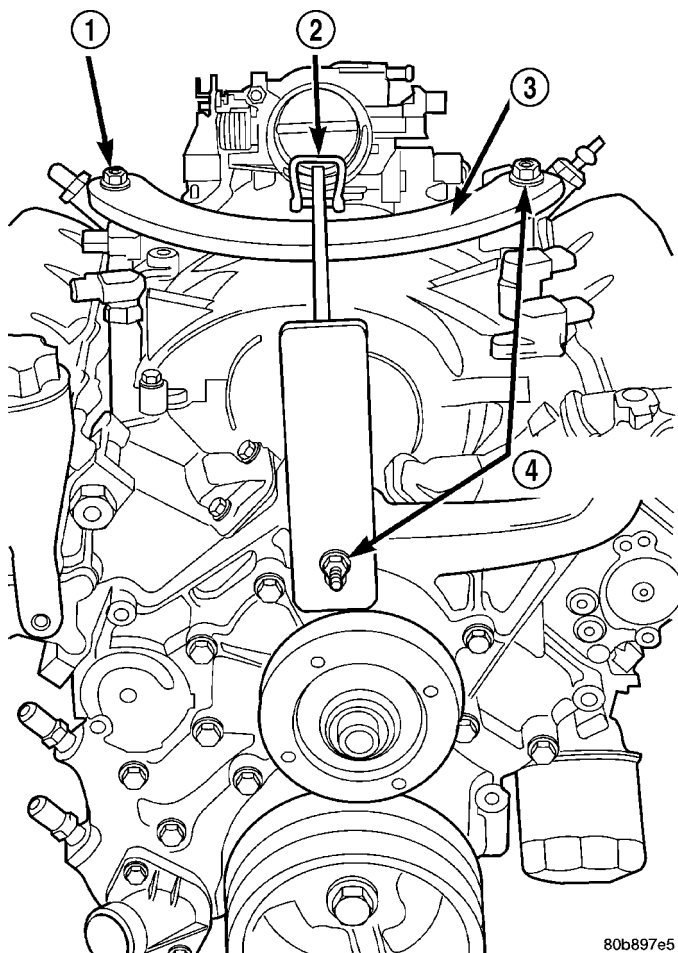
(6) Connect ground straps on the left side of the engine.

(7) Install power steering pump (Refer to 19 - STEERING/PUMP - INSTALLATION).

(8) Connect fuel supply line quick connect fitting (Refer to 14 - FUEL SYSTEM/FUEL DELIVERY/



## ENGINE - 4.7L (Continued)

**Fig. 7 Engine Lifting Fixture Attachment Locations**

- 1 - ATTACHING LOCATION  
 2 - ADJUSTABLE HOOK  
 3 - SPECIAL TOOL 8347 ENGINE LIFT FIXTURE  
 4 - ATTACHING LOCATIONS

**QUICK CONNECT FITTING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).**

(9) Connect engine harness at the following points (Fig. 6):

- Intake Air Temperature (IAT) Sensor
- Idle Air Control (IAC) Motor
- Fuel Injectors
- Throttle Position (TPS) Switch
- Engine Oil Pressure Switch
- Engine Coolant Temperature (ECT) Sensor
- Manifold Absolute Pressure (MAP) Sensor
- Camshaft Position (CMP) Sensor
- Coil Over Plugs

(10) Install generator (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/CHARGING/GENERATOR - INSTALLATION).

(11) Install radiator (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ENGINE/RADIATOR - INSTALLATION).

(12) Install A/C condenser (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING/A/C CONDENSER - INSTALLATION).

(13) Connect radiator lower hose at the thermostat housing.

(14) Connect the transmission oil cooler lines to the radiator.

(15) Install A/C compressor. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING/A/C COMPRESSOR - INSTALLATION).

(16) Install accessory drive belt (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - INSTALLATION) and radiator fan (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ENGINE/RADIATOR FAN - INSTALLATION).

(17) Install breathers, then connect tube to both crankcase breathers (Fig. 5).

(18) Connect throttle and speed control cables.

(19) Install throttle body resonator assembly and inlet hose.

(20) Raise vehicle.

(21) Connect two ground straps on the lower left hand side of the engine and one ground strap on the lower right side.

(22) Install torque converter bolts.

(23) Connect crankshaft position sensor (Fig. 4).

(24) Install starter.

(25) Install rubber splash shield.

**CAUTION:** The structural cover requires a specific torque sequence. Failure to follow this sequence may cause severe damage to the cover.

(26) Install structural cover (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE BLOCK/STRUCTURAL COVER - INSTALLATION).

(27) Install exhaust crossover pipe.

(28) Install engine block heater power cable, If equipped.

(29) Lower vehicle.

(30) Check and fill engine oil (Refer to LUBRICATION & MAINTENANCE/FLUID TYPES - SPECIFICATIONS).

(31) Recharge the A/C system (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

(32) Refill the engine cooling system (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

(33) Connect the battery negative cable.

(34) Start engine and check for leaks.

ENGINE - 4.7L (Continued)

## SPECIFICATIONS

## 4.7L ENGINE

DESCRIPTION	SPECIFICATION
<b>GENERAL SPECIFICATIONS</b>	
Engine Type	90° SOHC V-8 16-Valve
Displacement	4.7 Liters / 4701cc (287 Cubic Inches)
Bore	93.0 mm (3.66 in.)
Stroke	86.5 mm (3.40 in.)
Compression Ratio	9.0:1
Horsepower	235 BHP @ 4800 RPM
Torque	295 LB-FT @ 3200 RPM
Lead Cylinder	#1 Left Bank
Firing Order	1-8-4-3-6-5-7-2
<b>CYLINDER BLOCK</b>	
Cylinder Block	Cast Iron
Bore Diameter	93.010 ± .0075 mm (3.6619 ± 0.0003 in.)
Out of Round (MAX)	0.076 mm (0.003 in.)
Taper (MAX)	0.051 mm (0.002 in.)
<b>PISTONS</b>	
Material	Aluminum Alloy
Diameter	92.975 mm (3.6605 in.)
Weight	367.5 grams (12.96 oz)
<b>Ring Groove Diameter</b>	
No. 1	83.37 - 83.13 mm (3.282 - 3.273 in.)
No. 2	82.833 - 83.033 mm (3.261 - 3.310 in.)
No. 3	83.88 - 84.08 mm (3.302 - 3.310 in.)
<b>PISTON PINS</b>	
Type	Pressed Fit
Clearance In Piston	0.010 - 0.019 mm (0.0004 - 0.0008 in.)
Diameter	24.013 - 24.016 mm (0.9454 - 0.9455 in.)
<b>PISTON RINGS</b>	
<b>Ring Gap</b>	
Top Compression Ring	0.20 - 0.36 mm (0.0079 - 0.0142 in.)

DESCRIPTION	SPECIFICATION
Second Compression Ring	0.37 - 0.63 mm (0.0146 - 0.0249 in.)
Oil Control (Steel Rails)	0.25 - 0.76 mm (0.0099 - 0.30 in.)
<b>Side Clearance</b>	
Top Compression Ring	.051 - .094 mm (0.0020 - 0.0037 in.)
Second Compression Ring	0.040 - 0.080 mm (0.0016 - 0.0031 in.)
Oil Ring (Steel Ring)	.019 - .229 mm (.0007 - .0091 in.)
<b>Ring Width</b>	
Top Compression Ring	1.472 - 1.490 mm (0.057 - 0.058 in.)
Second Compression Ring	1.47 - 1.490 mm (0.057 - 0.058 in.)
Oil Ring (Steel Rails)	0.445 - 0.470 mm (0.017 - 0.018 in.)
<b>CONNECTING RODS</b>	
Bearing Clearance	0.015 - 0.055 mm (0.0006 - 0.0022 in.)
Side Clearance	0.10 - 0.35 mm (0.004 - 0.0138 in.)
Piston Pin Bore Diameter (Interference Fit)	.025 - .048 mm (0.001 - 0.0019 in.)
Bearing Bore Out of Round (MAX)	0.004 mm (0.0002 in.)
Total Weight (Less Bearing)	555 grams (19.5771 ounces)
<b>CRANKSHAFT</b>	
<b>Main Bearing Journal</b>	
Diameter	63.488 - 63.512 mm (2.4996 - 2.5005 in.)
Bearing Clearance	0.018 - 0.052 mm (0.0008 - 0.0021 in.)
Out of Round (MAX)	0.005 mm (0.0002 in.)
Taper (MAX)	0.008 mm (0.0004 in.)
End Play	0.052 - 0.282 mm

## ENGINE - 4.7L (Continued)

DESCRIPTION	SPECIFICATION
	(0.0021 - 0.0112 in.)
End Play (MAX)	0.282 mm (0.0112 in.)
<b>Connecting Rod Journal</b>	
Diameter	50.992 - 51.008 mm (2.0076 - 2.0082 in.)
Bearing Clearance	0.015 - 0.055 mm (0.0006 - 0.0022 in.)
Out of Round (MAX)	0.005 mm (0.0002 in.)
Taper (MAX)	0.008 mm (0.0004 in.)
<b>CAMSHAFT</b>	
Bore Diameter	26.02 - 26.04 mm (1.0245 - 1.0252 in.)
Bearing Journal Diameter	25.975 - 25.995 mm (1.0227 - 1.0235 in.)
Bearing Clearance	0.025 - 0.065 mm (0.001 - 0.0026 in.)
Bearing Clearance (MAX)	0.065 mm (0.0026 in.)
End Play	.075 - .200 mm (0.003 - 0.0079 in.)
End Play (MAX)	.200 mm (0.0079 in.)
<b>VALVE TIMING</b>	
<b>Intake</b>	
Opens (BTDC)	4.4°
Closes (ATDC)	239.1°
Duration	243.5°
<b>Exhaust</b>	
Opens (BTDC)	240.5°
Closes (ATDC)	13.2°
Duration	253.70°
Valve Overlap	17.6°
<b>VALVES</b>	
Face Angle	45° - 45.5°
<b>Head Diameter</b>	
Intake	48.52 - 48.78 mm (1.9103 - 1.9205 in.)
Exhaust	36.87 - 37.13 mm (1.4516 - 1.4618 in.)
<b>Length (Overall)</b>	
Intake	113.45 - 114.21 mm (4.4666 - 4.4965)

DESCRIPTION	SPECIFICATION
Exhaust	114.92 - 115.68 mm (4.5244 - 4.5543 in.)
<b>Stem Diameter</b>	
Intake	6.931 - 6.957 mm (0.2729 - 0.2739 in.)
Exhaust	6.902 - 6.928 mm (0.2717 - 0.2728 in.)
<b>Stem - to - Guide Clearance</b>	
Intake	.018 - .069 mm (0.0008 - 0.0028 in.)
Exhaust	.047 - .098 mm (0.0019 - 0.0039 in.)
<b>Max. Allowable Stem - to - Guide Clearance (Rocking Method)</b>	
Intake	0.069 mm (0.0028 in.)
Exhaust	0.098 mm (0.0039 in.)
<b>Valve Lift (Zero Lash)</b>	
Intake	11.25 mm (0.443 in.)
Exhaust	10.90 mm (0.4292 in.)
<b>VALVE SPRING</b>	
<b>Free Length (Approx)</b>	
Intake and Exhaust	49.0 mm (1.9291 in.)
<b>Spring Force (Valve Closed)</b>	
Intake and Exhaust	313.0 - 354.0 N @ 40.12 mm (70.3652 - 79.58237 lbs. @ 1.5795 in.)
<b>Spring Force (Valve Open)</b>	
Intake and Exhaust	776.0 - 870.0 N @ 28.88 mm 174.4517 - 195.5838 lbs. @ 1.1370 in.)
<b>Number of Coils</b>	
Intake and Exhaust	7.3
<b>Wire Diameter</b>	
Intake and Exhaust	4.6 × 3.67 mm (0.1811 × 0.1445 in.)

## ENGINE - 4.7L (Continued)

DESCRIPTION	SPECIFICATION
<b>Installed Height (Spring Seat to Bottom of Retainer)</b>	
<b>Nominal</b>	
Intake	40.12 mm (1.5795 in.)
Exhaust	40.12 mm (1.5795 in.)
<b>CYLINDER HEAD</b>	
Gasket Thickness (Compressed)	.7 mm (0.0276 in.)
Valve Seat Angle	44.5° - 45.0°
Valve Seat Runout (MAX)	0.051 mm (0.002 in.)
<b>Valve Seat Width</b>	
Intake	1.75 - 2.36 mm (0.0698 - 0.0928 in.)
Exhaust	1.71 - 2.32 mm (0.0673 - 0.0911 in.)
Guide Bore Diameter (Std.)	6.975 - 7.00 mm (0.2747 - 0.2756 in.)
Cylinder Head Warpage (Flatness)	0.0508 mm (0.002 in.)
<b>OIL PUMP</b>	
Clearance Over Rotors / End Face (MAX)	.095 mm - (0.0038 in.)
Cover Out - of -Flat (MAX)	.025 mm (0.001 in.)
Inner and Outer Rotor Thickness	12.02 mm (0.4731 in.)
Outer Rotor to Pocket Diametral Clearance (MAX)	.235 mm (.0093 in.)
Outer Rotor Diameter (MIN)	85.925 mm (0.400 in.)
Tip Clearance Between Rotors (MAX)	.150 mm (0.006 in.)
<b>OIL PRESSURE</b>	
At Curb Idle Speed (MIN)*	48 kPa (7 psi)
@ 3000 rpm	240 - 725 kPa (35 - 105 psi)
<b>* CAUTION: If pressure is zero at curb idle, DO NOT run engine at 3000 rpm.</b>	

## SPECIFICATIONS - 4.7L H.O. ENGINE

DESCRIPTION	SPECIFICATION
<b>GENERAL SPECIFICATIONS</b>	
Engine Type	90° SOHC V-8 16-Valve
Displacement	4.7 Liters / 4701cc (287 Cubic Inches)
Bore	93.0 mm (3.66 in.)
Stroke	86.5 mm (3.40 in.)
Compression Ratio	9.7:1
Horsepower	270 BHP @ 5100 RPM
Torque	330 LB-FT @ 3600 RPM
Lead Cylinder	#1 Left Bank
Firing Order	1-8-4-3-6-5-7-2
<b>CYLINDER BLOCK</b>	
Cylinder Block	Cast Iron
Bore Diameter	93.010 ± .0075 mm (3.6619 ± 0.0003 in.)
Out of Round (MAX)	0.076 mm (0.003 in.)
Taper (MAX)	0.051 mm (0.002 in.)
<b>PISTONS</b>	
Material	Aluminum Alloy
Diameter	92.975 mm (3.6605 in.)
Weight	383.5 grams (13.52 oz)
<b>Ring Groove Diameter</b>	
No. 1	83.37 - 83.13 mm (3.296 - 3.269 in.)
No. 2	82.833 - 83.033 mm (3.261 - 3.310 in.)
No. 3	83.88 - 84.08 mm (3.302 - 3.310 in.)
<b>PISTON PINS</b>	
Type	Full Floating
Clearance In Piston	0.010 - 0.019 mm (0.0004 - 0.0008 in.)

## ENGINE - 4.7L (Continued)

DESCRIPTION	SPECIFICATION
Clearance in Rod	0.015 - 0.028 mm (0.0006 - 0.0011 in.)
Diameter	24.017 - 24.020 mm (0.9456 - 0.9457 in.)
<b>PISTON RINGS</b>	
<b>Ring Gap</b>	
Top Compression Ring	0.20 - 0.36 mm (0.0079 - 0.0142 in.)
Second Compression Ring	0.37 - 0.63 mm (0.0146 - 0.0249 in.)
Oil Control (Steel Rails)	0.25 - 0.76 mm (0.0099 - 0.30 in.)
<b>Side Clearance</b>	
Top Compression Ring	.051 - .094 mm (0.0020 - 0.0037 in.)
Second Compression Ring	0.040 - 0.080 mm (0.0016 - 0.0031 in.)
Oil Ring (Steel Ring)	.019 - .229 mm (.0007 - .0091 in.)
<b>Ring Width</b>	
Top Compression Ring	1.472 - 1.490 mm (0.057 - 0.058 in.)
Second Compression Ring	1.472 - 1.490 mm (0.057 - 0.058 in.)
Oil Ring (Steel Rails)	0.445 - 0.470 mm (0.017 - 0.018 in.)
<b>CONNECTING RODS</b>	
Bearing Clearance	0.015 - 0.055 mm (0.0006 - 0.0022 in.)
Side Clearance	0.10 - 0.35 mm (0.004 - 0.0138 in.)
Piston Pin Bore Diameter	24.045 - 24.035 mm (0.94665 - 0.94626 in.)

DESCRIPTION	SPECIFICATION
Bearing Bore Out of Round (MAX)	0.004 mm (0.0002 in.)
Total Weight (Less Bearing)	555 grams (19.5771 ounces)
<b>CRANKSHAFT</b>	
<b>Main Bearing Journal</b>	
Diameter	63.488 - 63.512 mm (2.4996 - 2.5005 in.)
Bearing Clearance	0.018 - 0.052 mm (0.0008 - 0.0021 in.)
Out of Round (MAX)	0.005 mm (0.0002 in.)
Taper (MAX)	0.008 mm (0.0004 in.)
End Play	0.052 - 0.282 mm (0.0021 - 0.0112 in.)
End Play (MAX)	0.282 mm (0.0112 in.)
<b>Connecting Rod Journal</b>	
Diameter	50.992 - 51.008 mm (2.0076 - 2.0082 in.)
Bearing Clearance	0.015 - 0.055 mm (0.0006 - 0.0022 in.)
Out of Round (MAX)	0.005 mm (0.0002 in.)
Taper (MAX)	0.008 mm (0.0004 in.)
<b>CAMSHAFT</b>	
Bore Diameter	26.02 - 26.04 mm (1.0245 - 1.0252 in.)
Bearing Journal Diameter	25.975 - 25.995 mm (1.0227 - 1.0235 in.)
Bearing Clearance	0.025 - 0.065 mm (0.001 - 0.0026 in.)
Bearing Clearance (MAX)	0.065 mm (0.0026 in.)
End Play	.075 - .200 mm (0.003 - 0.0079 in.)
End Play (MAX)	.200 mm (0.0079 in.)

## ENGINE - 4.7L (Continued)

DESCRIPTION	SPECIFICATION
<b>VALVE TIMING</b>	
<b>Intake</b>	
Opens (BTDC)	3.0°
Closes (ATDC)	233.0°
Duration	236.0°
<b>Exhaust</b>	
Opens (BTDC)	235.0°
Closes (ATDC)	15.0°
Duration	250.0°
Valve Overlap	18.0°
<b>VALVES</b>	
Face Angle	45° - 45.5°
<b>Head Diameter</b>	
Intake	48.52 - 48.78 mm (1.9103 - 1.9205 in.)
Exhaust	36.87 - 37.13 mm (1.4516 - 1.4618 in.)
<b>Length (Overall)</b>	
Intake	113.45 - 114.21 mm (4.4666 - 4.4965)
Exhaust	114.92 - 115.68 mm (4.5244 - 4.5543 in.)
<b>Stem Diameter</b>	
Intake	6.931 - 6.957 mm (0.2729 - 0.2739 in.)
Exhaust	6.902 - 6.928 mm (0.2717 - 0.2728 in.)
<b>Stem - to - Guide Clearance</b>	
Intake	.018 - .069 mm (0.0008 - 0.0028 in.)
Exhaust	.047 - .098 mm (0.0019 - 0.0039 in.)
<b>Max. Allowable Stem - to - Guide Clearance (Rocking Method)</b>	

DESCRIPTION	SPECIFICATION
Intake	0.069 mm (0.0028 in.)
Exhaust	0.098 mm (0.0039 in.)
<b>Valve Lift (Zero Lash)</b>	
Intake	12.00 mm (0.4724 in.)
Exhaust	10.90 mm (0.4292 in.)
<b>VALVE SPRING</b>	
<b>Free Length (Approx)</b>	
Intake and Exhaust	48.92 mm (1.9259 in.)
<b>Spring Force (Valve Closed)</b>	
Intake	361.0 - 390.0 N @40.12 mm (81.1560 - 87.6755 lbs. @1.5795 in.)
Exhaust	390.0 - 430.0 N @40.12 mm (87.6755 - 96.6678 lbs. @ 1.5795 in.)
<b>Spring Force (Valve Open)</b>	
Intake	984.0 - 1040.0 N @ 28.12 mm (221.212 - 233.801 lbs. @ 1.107 in.)
Exhaust	965.0 - 1055 N @ 29.12 mm (216.940 - 237.173 lbs. @ 1.146 in.)
<b>Number of Coils</b>	
Intake	7.30
Exhaust	7.45
<b>Wire Diameter</b>	
Intake and Exhaust	4.77 +/- 0.03 mm x 3.80 +/- .03mm
<b>Installed Height (Spring Seat to Bottom of Retainer)</b>	
<b>Nominal</b>	
Intake	40.12 mm (1.579 in.)
Exhaust	40.12 mm (1.579 in.)



## ENGINE - 4.7L (Continued)

DESCRIPTION	SPECIFICATION
<b>CYLINDER HEAD</b>	
Gasket Thickness (Compressed)	.7 mm (0.0276 in.)
Valve Seat Angle	44.5° - 45.0°
Valve Seat Runout (MAX)	0.051 mm (0.002 in.)
<b>Valve Seat Width</b>	
Intake	1.75 - 2.36 mm (0.0698 - 0.0928 in.)
Exhaust	1.71 - 2.32 mm (0.0673 - 0.0911 in.)
Guide Bore Diameter (Std.)	6.975 - 7.00 mm (0.2747 - 0.2756 in.)
Cylinder Head Warpage (Flatness)	0.0508 mm (0.002 in.)
<b>OIL PUMP</b>	
Clearance Over Rotors / End Face (MAX)	.095 mm ( 0.0038 in.)
Cover Out - of -Flat (MAX)	.025 mm (0.001 in.)
Inner and Outer Rotor Thickness	12.02 mm (0.4731 in.)
Outer Rotor to Pocket (Diametral) Clearance (MAX)	.235 mm (.0093 in.)
Outer Rotor Diameter (MIN)	85.925 mm (0.400 in.)
Tip Clearance Between Rotors (MAX)	.150 mm (0.006 in.)
<b>OIL PRESSURE</b>	
At Curb Idle Speed (MIN)*	25 kPa (4 psi)
@ 3000 rpm	170 - 758 kPa (25 - 110 psi)
* <b>CAUTION: If pressure is zero at curb idle, DO NOT run engine at 3000 rpm.</b>	

## TORQUE

DESCRIPTION	N-m	Ft. Lbs.	In. Lbs.
Camshaft			
Non - Oiled Sprocket Bolt	122	90	—
Bearing Cap Bolts	11	—	100
Timing Chain Cover—Bolts	58	43	—
Connecting Rod Cap—Bolts	27	20	—
<b>PLUS 90° TURN</b>			
Bed Plate—Bolts	Refer to Procedure		
Crankshaft Damper—Bolt	175	130	—
Cylinder Head—Bolts			
M11 Bolts	81	60	—
M8 Bolts	26	19	—
Cylinder Head Cover—Bolts	12	—	105
Exhaust Manifold—Bolts	25	18	—
Exhaust Manifold Heat Shield—Nuts	8	—	72
Then loosen 45°			
Flexplate—Bolts	60	45	—
Engine Mount Bracket to Block—Bolts	61	45	—
Rear Mount to Transmission—Bolts	46	34	—
Generator Mounting—Bolts			
M10 Bolts	54	40	—
M8 Bolts	28	—	250
Intake Manifold—Bolts	12	—	105
Refer to Procedure for Tightening Sequence			
Oil Pan—Bolts	15	—	130
Oil Pan—Drain Plug	34	25	—
Oil Pump—Bolts	28	—	250
Oil Pump Cover—Bolts	12	—	105
Oil Pickup Tube—Bolt and Nut	28	—	250
Oil Dipstick Tube to Engine Block—Bolt	15	—	130
Oil Fill Tube—Bolts	12	—	105
Timing Chain Guide—Bolts	28	—	250
Timing Chain Tensioner Arm—Special			

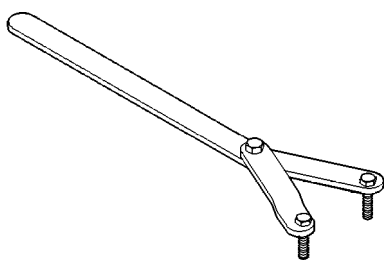
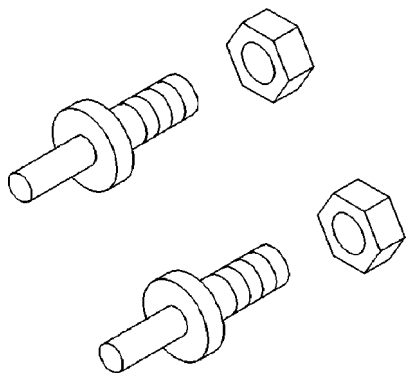
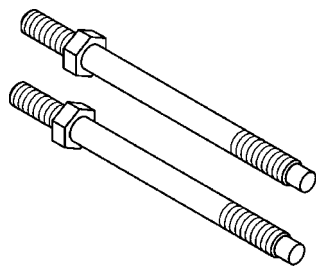
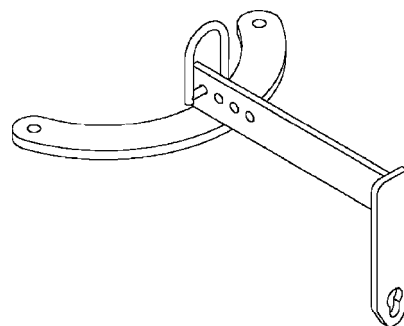
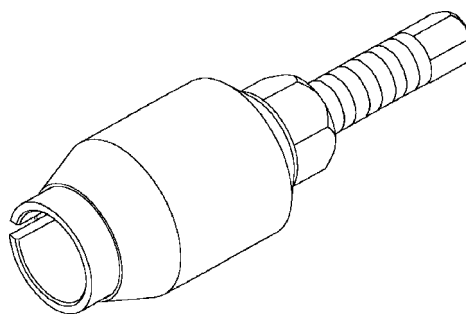
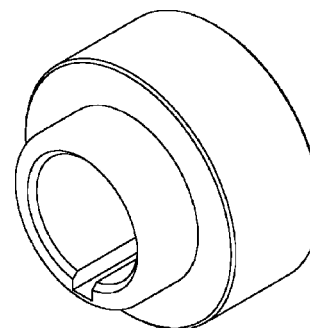
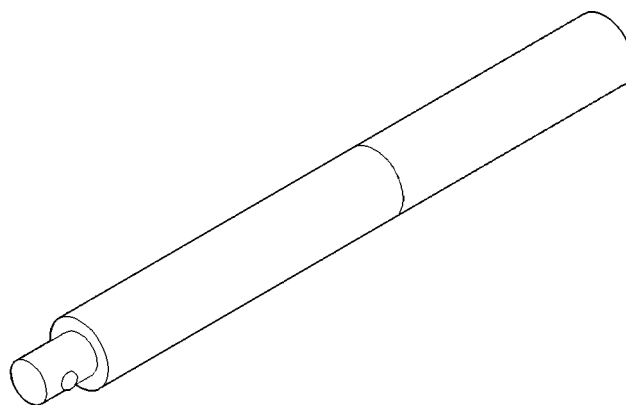


## ENGINE - 4.7L (Continued)

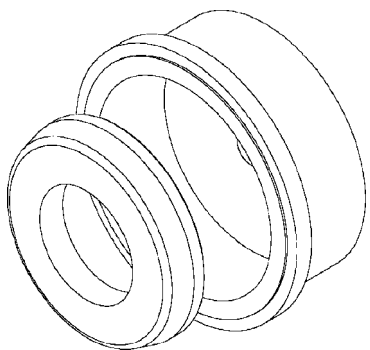
DESCRIPTION	N-m	Ft. Lbs.	In. Lbs.
Pin Bolt	17	—	150
Hydraulic Tensioner—Bolts	28	—	250
Timing Chain Primary Tensioner—Bolts	28	—	250
Timing Drive Idler Sprocket—Bolt	34	25	—
Thermostat Housing—Bolts	13	—	115
Water Pump—Bolts	58	43	—

## SPECIAL TOOLS

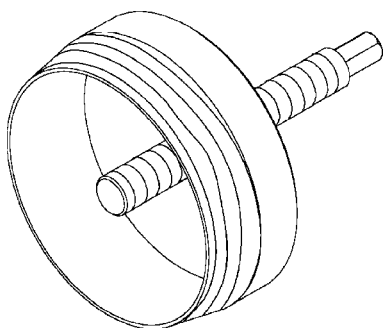
## 4.7L ENGINE

**Spanner Wrench 6958****Adapter Pins 8346****Engine Lifting Studs 8400****Engine Lift Fixture 8347****Front Crankshaft Seal Remover 8511****Front Crankshaft Seal Installer 8348****Handle C-4171**

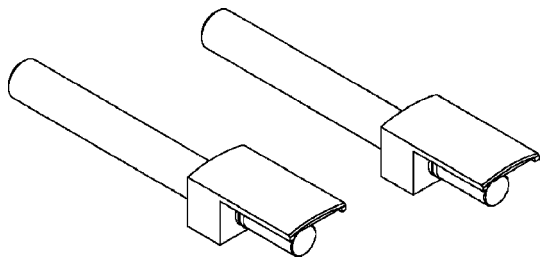
ENGINE - 4.7L (Continued)



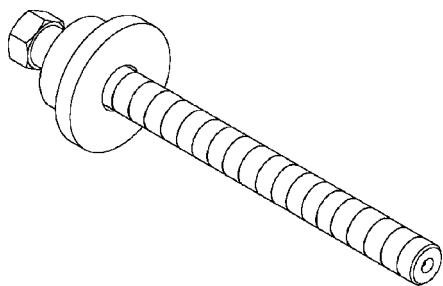
**Rear Crankshaft Seal Installer 8349**



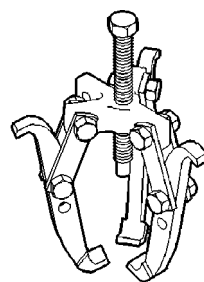
**Rear Crankshaft Seal Remover 8506**



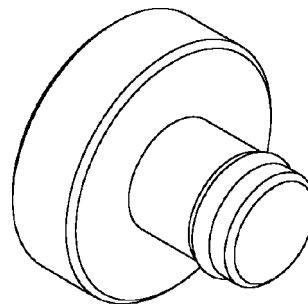
**Connecting Rod Guides 8507**



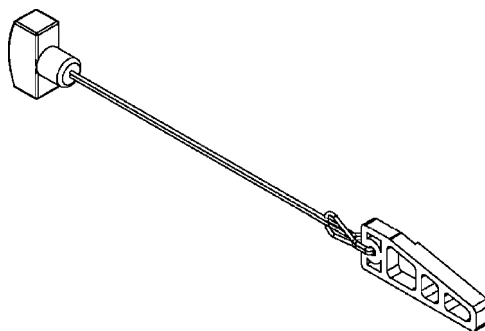
**Crankshaft Damper Installer 8512**



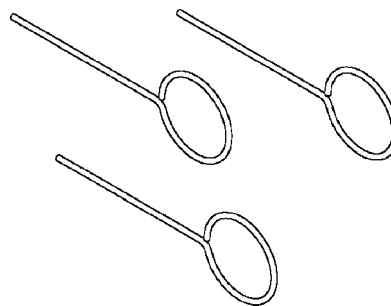
**Puller 1026**



**Crankshaft Damper Removal Insert 8513**

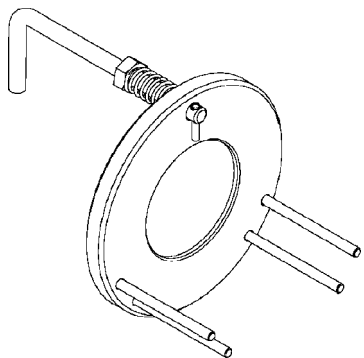


**Chain Tensioner Wedge 8350**

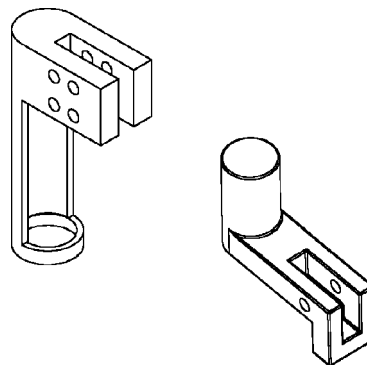


**Chain Tensioner Pins 8514**

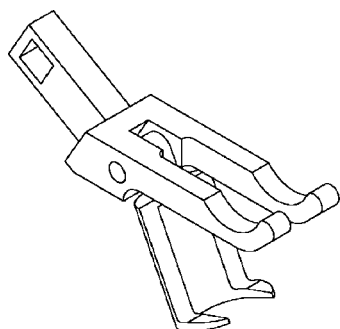
ENGINE - 4.7L (Continued)



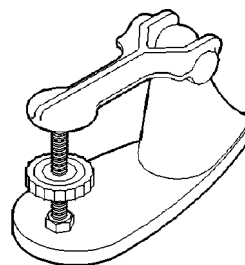
**Secondary Chain Holder 8515**



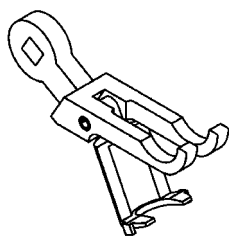
**Valve Spring Compressor Adapters 8519**



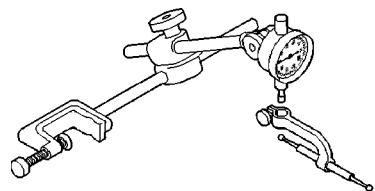
**Remover, Rocker Arm 8516**



**Valve Spring Tester C-647**

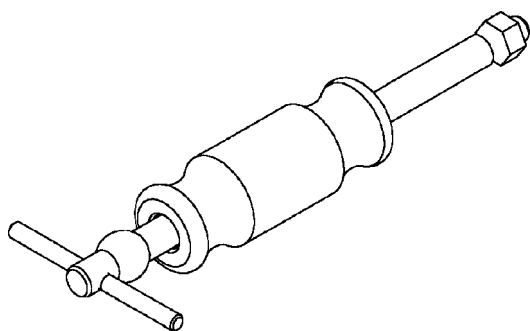


**Valve Spring Compressor 8387**

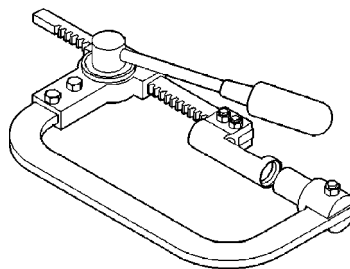


8011d42b

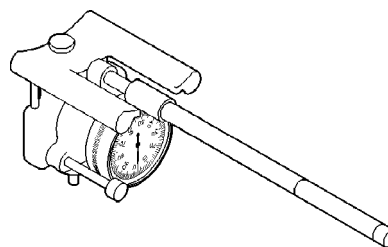
**Dial Indicator C-3339**



**Idler Shaft Remover 8517**



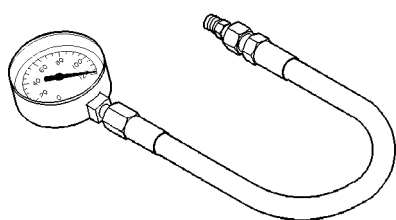
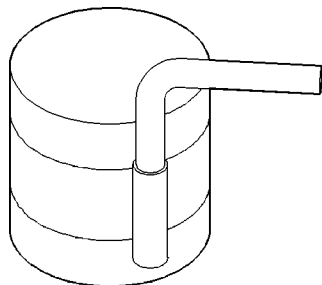
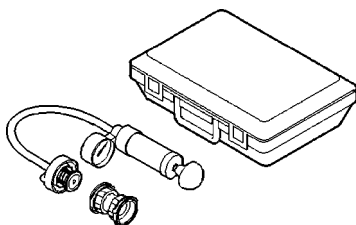
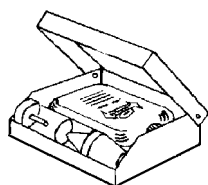
**Valve Spring Compressor C-3422-B**



8011c9fa

**Bore Size Indicator C-119**

## ENGINE - 4.7L (Continued)

*Oil Pressure Gauge C-3292**Piston Ring Compressor C-385**Pressure Tester Kit 7700**Bloc-Chek-Kit C-3685-A*

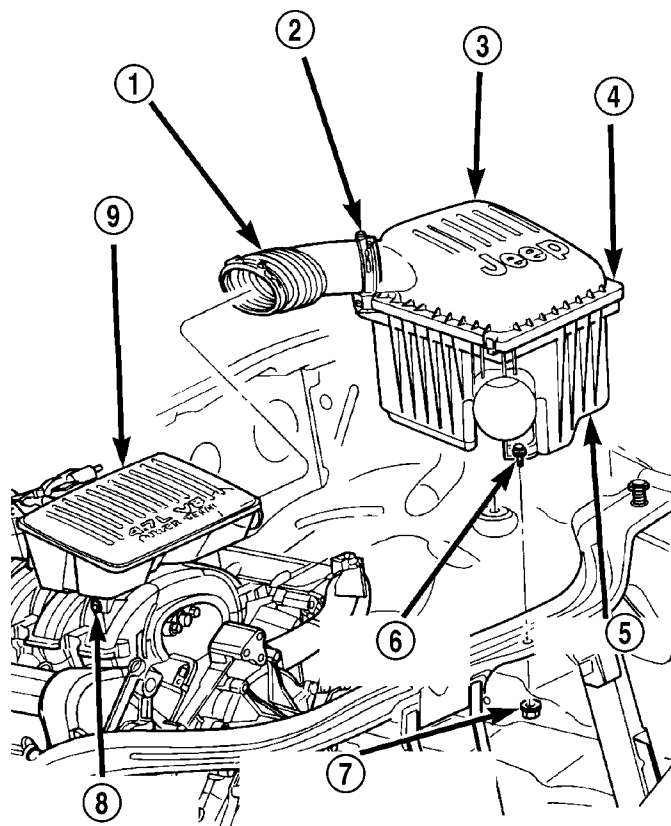
## AIR CLEANER ELEMENT

## REMOVAL - 4.7L

- (1) Unlatch four clips retaining air cleaner cover to air cleaner housing (Fig. 8).
- (2) Lift cover up and position to the side.
- (3) Remove air cleaner element.

## INSTALLATION - 4.7L

- (1) Clean inside of air cleaner housing before installing new element.
- (2) Install air cleaner element into housing.
- (3) Latch clips and clamp cover down to secure. Be sure air cleaner cover is properly seated to air cleaner housing.



80b89902

*Fig. 8 Air Cleaner Assembly - 4.7L*

- 1 - AIR DUCT
- 2 - CLAMPS
- 3 - AIR CLEANER COVER
- 4 - CLIPS
- 5 - HOUSING
- 6 - HOUSING BOLTS (3)
- 7 - LOWER HOUSING NUTS (3)
- 8 - RESONATOR BOLTS
- 9 - RESONATOR

## AIR CLEANER HOUSING

## REMOVAL - 4.7L

- (1) Disconnect air cleaner cover-to-air duct clamp (Fig. 8).
- (2) Disconnect air duct at housing.
- (3) **Each of the 3 air cleaner housing mounting bolts is attached with 2 nuts (an upper nut and lower nut). DO NOT REMOVE BOLTS. To prevent stripping bolts, only remove lower nuts. The lower housing nuts are located under left front inner fender (Fig. 8).**
  - (a) To gain access to lower nuts, raise vehicle.
  - (b) Remove clips retaining rubber inner fender shield.
  - (c) Pry back shield enough to gain access to lower nuts.
  - (d) Remove 3 nuts.
  - (e) Remove air cleaner assembly from vehicle.

## AIR CLEANER HOUSING (Continued)

(4) If resonator is to be removed, disconnect breather tube at resonator, disconnect air duct clamp at resonator (Fig. 8) and remove 2 resonator mounting bolts (at sides of resonator). Remove resonator from throttle body by loosening clamp at throttle body.

## INSTALLATION - 4.7L

(1) Position air cleaner assembly to body and install 3 nuts. Tighten nuts to 10 N·m (93 in. lbs.) torque. **To prevent excessive vibration transmitted through housing, the nuts must be properly torqued. Do not overtighten nuts.**

(2) If resonator was removed: Install resonator and bolts. Tighten bolts to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.) torque. Tighten clamp at throttle body to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.) torque.

(3) Position fender liner and install clips.

(4) Connect air duct at housing (Fig. 8).

(5) Tighten air duct clamp.

(3) Turn engine off and let set for a few minutes before restarting. Repeat this several times after engine has reached normal operating temperature.

(4) Low oil pressure.

(5) The oil restrictor in cylinder head gasket or the oil passage to the cylinder head is plugged with debris.

(6) Air ingested into oil due to broken or cracked oil pump pick up.

(7) Worn valve guides.

(8) Rocker arm ears contacting valve spring retainer.

(9) Rocker arm loose, adjuster stuck or at maximum extension and still leaves lash in the system.

(10) Oil leak or excessive cam bore wear in cylinder head.

(11) Faulty lash adjuster.

a. Check lash adjusters for sponginess while installed in cylinder head and cam on camshaft at base circle. Depress part of rocker arm over adjuster. Normal adjusters should feel very firm. Spongy adjusters can be bottomed out easily.

b. Remove suspected lash adjusters, and replace.

c. Before installation, make sure adjusters are at least partially full of oil. This can be verified by little or no plunger travel when lash adjuster is depressed.

## CYLINDER HEAD - LEFT

## DESCRIPTION

## DESCRIPTION - CYLINDER HEAD

The cylinder heads are made of an aluminum alloy. The cylinder head features two valves per cylinder with pressed in powdered metal valve guides. The cylinder heads also provide enclosures for the timing chain drain, necessitating unique left and right cylinder heads.

## DESCRIPTION - VALVE GUIDES

The valve guides are made of powdered metal and are pressed into the cylinder head. The guides are not replaceable or serviceable, and valve guide reaming is not recommended. If the guides are worn beyond acceptable limits, replace the cylinder heads.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - HYDRAULIC LASH ADJUSTER

A tappet-like noise may be produced from several items. Check the following items.

(1) Engine oil level too high or too low. This may cause aerated oil to enter the adjusters and cause them to be spongy.

(2) Insufficient running time after rebuilding cylinder head. Low speed running up to 1 hour may be required.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING—CYLINDER HEAD GASKET

A cylinder head gasket leak can be located between adjacent cylinders or between a cylinder and the adjacent water jacket.

Possible indications of the cylinder head gasket leaking between adjacent cylinders are:

- Loss of engine power
- Engine misfiring
- Poor fuel economy

Possible indications of the cylinder head gasket leaking between a cylinder and an adjacent water jacket are:

- Engine overheating
- Loss of coolant
- Excessive steam (white smoke) emitting from exhaust
- Coolant foaming

## CYLINDER-TO-CYLINDER LEAKAGE TEST

To determine if an engine cylinder head gasket is leaking between adjacent cylinders, follow the procedures in Cylinder Compression Pressure Test (Refer to 9 - ENGINE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). An engine cylinder head gasket leaking between adjacent cylinders will result in approximately a 50–70% reduction in compression pressure.

## CYLINDER HEAD - LEFT (Continued)

## CYLINDER-TO-WATER JACKET LEAKAGE TEST

**WARNING: USE EXTREME CAUTION WHEN THE ENGINE IS OPERATING WITH COOLANT PRESSURE CAP REMOVED.**

## VISUAL TEST METHOD

With the engine cool, remove the coolant pressure cap. Start the engine and allow it to warm up until thermostat opens.

If a large combustion/compression pressure leak exists, bubbles will be visible in the coolant.

## COOLING SYSTEM TESTER METHOD

**WARNING: WITH COOLING SYSTEM TESTER IN PLACE, PRESSURE WILL BUILD UP FAST. EXCESSIVE PRESSURE BUILT UP, BY CONTINUOUS ENGINE OPERATION, MUST BE RELEASED TO A SAFE PRESSURE POINT. NEVER PERMIT PRESSURE TO EXCEED 138 kPa (20 psi).**

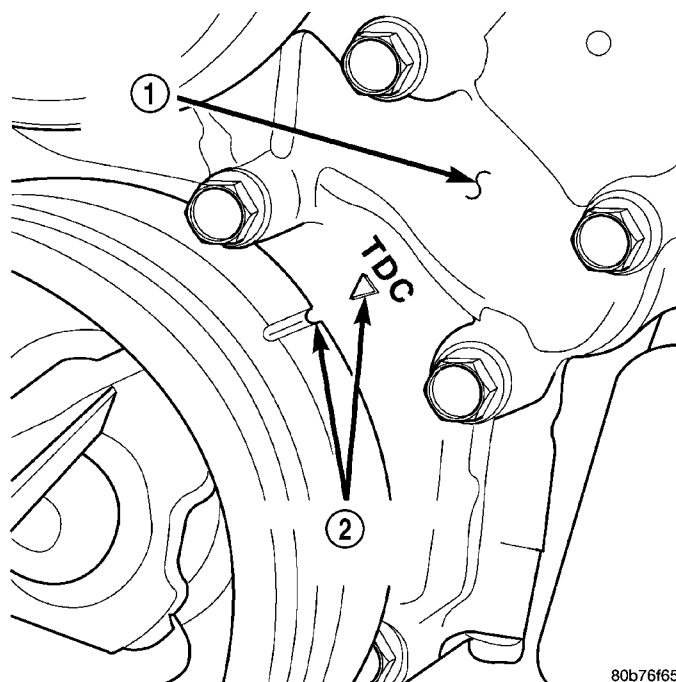
Install Cooling System Tester 7700 or equivalent to pressure cap neck. Start the engine and observe the tester's pressure gauge. If gauge pulsates with every power stroke of a cylinder a combustion pressure leak is evident.

## CHEMICAL TEST METHOD

Combustion leaks into the cooling system can also be checked by using Bloc-Chek Kit C-3685-A or equivalent. Perform test following the procedures supplied with the tool kit.

## REMOVAL

- (1) Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
- (2) Raise the vehicle on a hoist.
- (3) Disconnect the exhaust pipe at the left side exhaust manifold.
- (4) Drain the engine coolant. (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).
- (5) Lower the vehicle.
- (6) Remove the intake manifold. (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/MANIFOLDS/INTAKE MANIFOLD - REMOVAL).
- (7) Remove the cylinder head cover. (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD/CYLINDER HEAD COVER(S) - REMOVAL).
- (8) Remove accessory drive belt. (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - REMOVAL).
- (9) Remove the power steering pump and set aside.
- (10) Rotate the crankshaft until the damper timing mark is aligned with TDC indicator mark (Fig. 9).



**Fig. 9 Engine Top Dead Center**

- 1 - TIMING CHAIN COVER  
2 - CRANKSHAFT TIMING MARKS

(11) Verify the V8 mark on the camshaft sprocket is at the 12 o'clock position (Fig. 11). Rotate the crankshaft one turn if necessary.

(12) Remove the crankshaft damper. (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE BLOCK/VIBRATION DAMPER - REMOVAL).

(13) Remove the timing chain cover. (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/VALVE TIMING/TIMING BELT / CHAIN COVER(S) - REMOVAL).

(14) Lock the secondary timing chains to the idler sprocket using Special Tool 8515 (Fig. 10).

**NOTE: Mark the secondary timing chain prior to removal to aid in installation.**

(15) Mark the secondary timing chain, one link on each side of the V8 mark on the camshaft drive gear (Fig. 11).

(16) Remove the left side secondary chain tensioner. (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/VALVE TIMING/TIMING BELT/CHAIN AND SPROCKETS - REMOVAL).

(17) Remove the cylinder head access plug (Fig. 12).

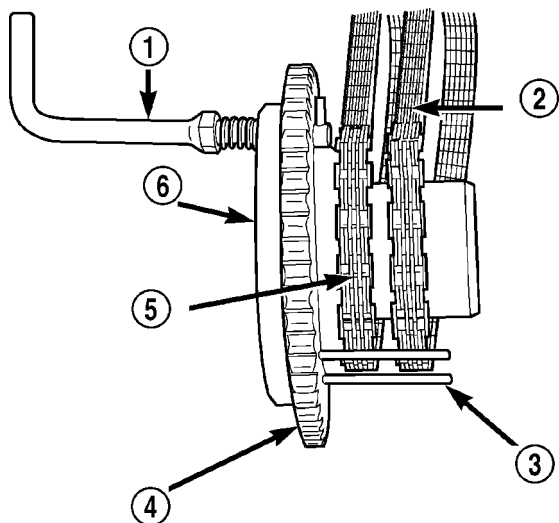
(18) Remove the left side secondary chain guide. (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/VALVE TIMING/TIMING BELT/CHAIN AND SPROCKETS - REMOVAL).

(19) Remove the retaining bolt and the camshaft drive gear.

**CAUTION: Do not allow the engine to rotate. Severe damage to the valve train can occur.**



## CYLINDER HEAD - LEFT (Continued)

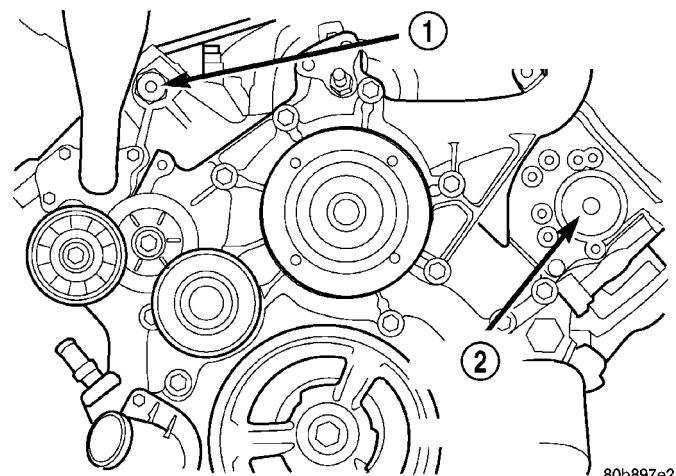


80b77055

**Fig. 10 Using Special Tool 8515 to Hold Chains to Idler Sprocket.**

- 1 - LOCK ARM
- 2 - RIGHT CAMSHAFT CHAIN
- 3 - SECONDARY CHAINS RETAINING PINS (4)
- 4 - IDLER SPROCKET
- 5 - LEFT CAMSHAFT CHAIN
- 6 - SPECIAL TOOL 8515

**CAUTION:** Do not overlook the four smaller bolts at the front of the cylinder head. Do not attempt to remove the cylinder head without removing these four bolts.



80b897e2

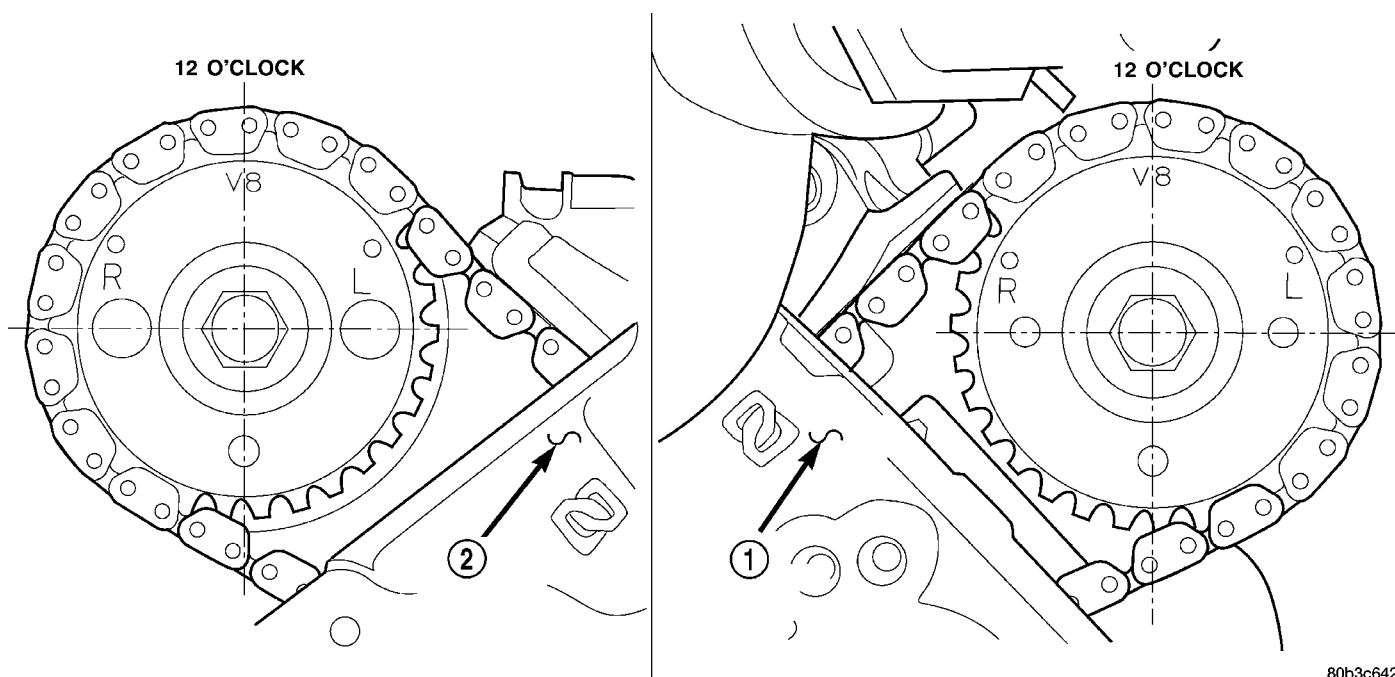
**Fig. 12 Cylinder Head Access Plugs**

- 1 - RIGHT CYLINDER HEAD ACCESS PLUG
- 2 - LEFT CYLINDER HEAD ACCESS PLUG

**NOTE:** The cylinder head is attached to the cylinder block with fourteen bolts.

- (20) Remove the cylinder head retaining bolts.
- (21) Remove the cylinder head and gasket. Discard the gasket.

**CAUTION:** Do not lay the cylinder head on its gasket sealing surface, due to the design of the cylinder head gasket any distortion to the cylinder head sealing surface may prevent the gasket from properly sealing resulting in leaks.



80b3c642

**Fig. 11 Camshaft Sprocket V8 Marks**

- 1 - LEFT CYLINDER HEAD

- 2 - RIGHT CYLINDER HEAD



## CYLINDER HEAD - LEFT (Continued)

## CLEANING

To ensure engine gasket sealing, proper surface preparation must be performed, especially with the use of aluminum engine components. (Refer to 9 - ENGINE - STANDARD PROCEDURE)

## INSPECTION

(1) Inspect the cylinder head for out-of-flatness, using a straightedge and a feeler gauge. If tolerances exceed 0.0508 mm (0.002 in.) replace the cylinder head.

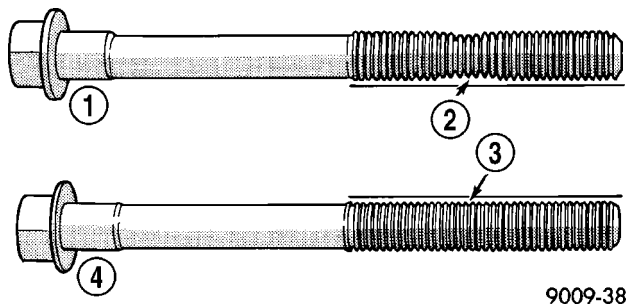
(2) Inspect the valve seats for damage. Service the valve seats as necessary.

(3) Inspect the valve guides for wear, cracks or looseness. If either condition exist, replace the cylinder head.

## INSTALLATION

**NOTE:** The cylinder head bolts are tightened using a torque plus angle procedure. The bolts must be examined **BEFORE** reuse. If the threads are necked down the bolts should be replaced.

Necking can be checked by holding a straight edge against the threads. If all the threads do not contact the scale, the bolt should be replaced (Fig. 13).



**Fig. 13 Checking Cylinder Head Bolts for Stretching (Necking)**

- 1 - STRETCHED BOLT
- 2 - THREADS ARE NOT STRAIGHT ON LINE
- 3 - THREADS ARE STRAIGHT ON LINE
- 4 - UNSTRETCHED BOLT

**CAUTION:** When cleaning cylinder head and cylinder block surfaces, **DO NOT** use a metal scraper because the surfaces could be cut or ground. Use only a wooden or plastic scraper.

(1) Clean the cylinder head and cylinder block mating surfaces (Refer to 9 - ENGINE - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

(2) Position the new cylinder head gasket on the locating dowels.

**CAUTION:** When installing cylinder head, use care not damage the tensioner arm or the guide arm.

(3) Position the cylinder head onto the cylinder block. Make sure the cylinder head seats fully over the locating dowels.

**NOTE:** The four smaller cylinder head mounting bolts require sealant to be added to them before installing. Failure to do so may cause leaks.

(4) Lubricate the cylinder head bolt threads with clean engine oil and install the ten M11 bolts.

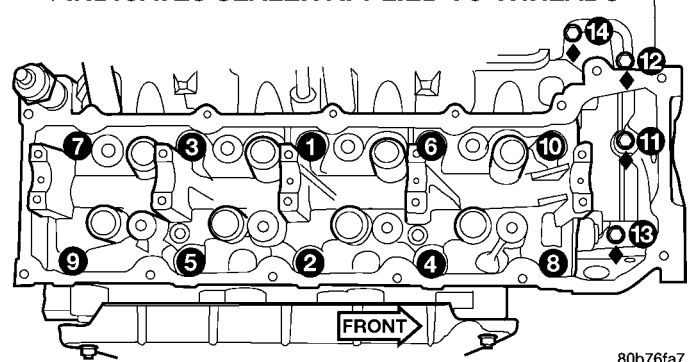
(5) Coat the four M8 cylinder head bolts with **Mopar® Lock and Seal Adhesive** then install the bolts.

**NOTE:** The cylinder head bolts are tightened using an angle torque procedure, however, the bolts are not a torque-to-yield design.

(6) Tighten the bolts in sequence (Fig. 14) using the following steps and torque values:

- Step 1: Tighten bolts 1-10, 27 N·m (20 ft. lbs.).
- Step 2: Verify that bolts 1-10, all reached 27 N·m (20 ft. lbs.), by repeating step-1 without loosening the bolts. Tighten bolts 11 thru 14 to 14 N·m (10 ft. lbs.).
- Step 3: Tighten bolts 1-10, 90 degrees.
- Step 4: Tighten bolts 1-10, 90 degrees, again. Tighten bolts 11-14, 26 N·m (19 ft. lbs.).

◆ INDICATES SEALER APPLIED TO THREADS



**Fig. 14 Cylinder Head Tightening Sequence**

(7) Install the secondary chain and secondary chain guide (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/VALVE TIMING/TIMING BELT/CHAIN AND SPROCKETS - INSTALLATION).

(8) Install the cylinder head access plug.

(9) Re-set and Install the left side secondary chain tensioner (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/VALVE TIMING/TIMING BELT/CHAIN AND SPROCKETS - INSTALLATION).

(10) Remove Special Tool 8515.

## CYLINDER HEAD - LEFT (Continued)

(11) Install the timing chain cover (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/VALVE TIMING/TIMING BELT / CHAIN COVER(S) - INSTALLATION).

(12) Install the crankshaft damper (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE BLOCK/VIBRATION DAMPER - INSTALLATION).

(13) Install the power steering pump.

(14) Install the cylinder head cover (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD/CYLINDER HEAD COVER(S) - INSTALLATION).

(15) Install the intake manifold (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/MANIFOLDS/INTAKE MANIFOLD - INSTALLATION).

(16) Refill the cooling system (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

(17) Raise the vehicle.

(18) Install the exhaust pipe onto the left exhaust manifold.

(19) Lower the vehicle.

(20) Connect the negative cable to the battery.

(21) Start the engine and check for leaks.

**CAUTION:** When removing the cam sprocket, timing chains or camshaft, Failure to use Special Tool 8350 will result in hydraulic tensioner ratchet over extension, requiring timing chain cover removal to reset the tensioner ratchet.

(1) Remove cylinder head cover (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD/CYLINDER HEAD COVER(S) - REMOVAL).

(2) Set engine to TDC cylinder #1, camshaft sprocket V8 marks at the 12 o'clock position.

(3) Mark one link on the secondary timing chain on both sides of the V8 mark on the camshaft sprocket to aid in installation.

**CAUTION:** Do not hold or pry on the camshaft target wheel (Located on the right side camshaft sprocket) for any reason, Severe damage will occur to the target wheel resulting in a vehicle no start condition.

(4) Loosen but **DO NOT** remove the camshaft sprocket retaining bolt. Leave the bolt snug against the sprocket.

## CAMSHAFT(S) - LEFT

## DESCRIPTION

The camshafts consist of powdered metal steel lobes which are sinter-bonded to a steel tube. A steel post or nose piece is friction-welded to the steel camshaft tube. Five bearing journals are machined into the camshaft, four on the steel tube and one on the steel nose piece. Camshaft end play is controlled by two thrust walls that border the nose piece journal. Engine oil enters the hollow camshafts at the third journal and lubricates every intake lobe rocker through a drilled passage in the intake lobe.

## REMOVAL

**CAUTION:** When the timing chain is removed and the cylinder heads are still installed, **DO NOT** forcefully rotate the camshafts or crankshaft independently of each other. Severe valve and/or piston damage can occur.

**NOTE:** The timing chain tensioners must be secured prior to removing the camshaft sprockets. Failure to secure tensioners will allow the tensioners to extend, requiring timing chain cover removal in order to reset tensioners.

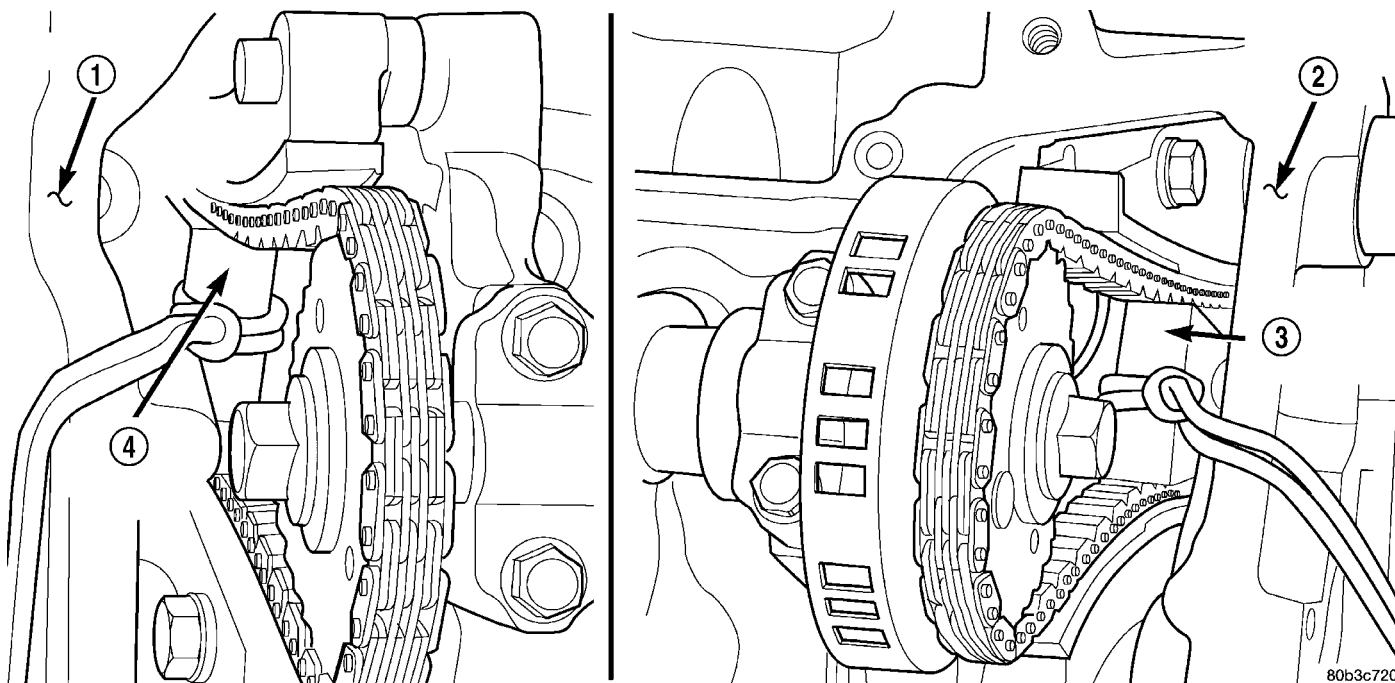
**CAUTION:** Do not force wedge past the narrowest point between the chain strands. Damage to the tensioners may occur.

(5) Position Special Tool 8350 timing chain wedge between the timing chain strands, tap the tool to securely wedge the timing chain against the tensioner arm and guide (Fig. 15).

**NOTE:** When gripping the camshaft, place the pliers on the tube portion of the camshaft only. Do not grip the lobes or the sprocket areas.

(6) Hold the camshaft with adjustable pliers while removing the camshaft sprocket bolt and sprocket (Fig. 16).

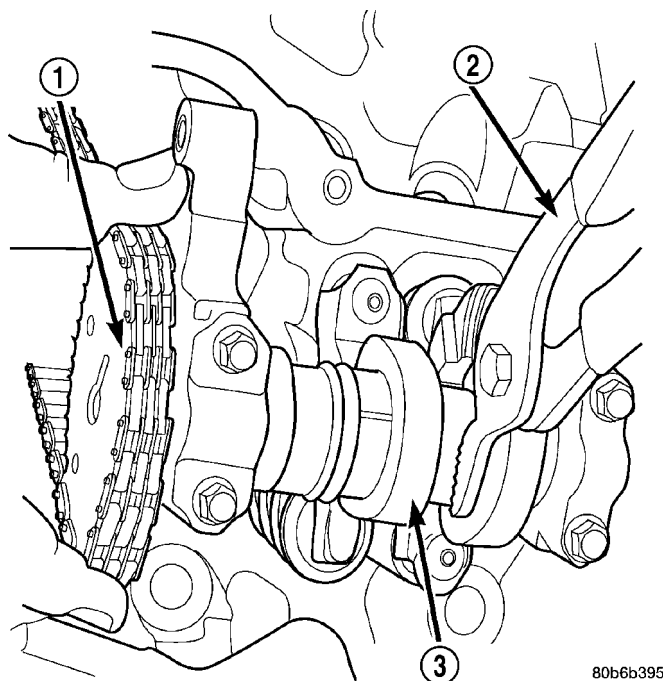
## CAMSHAFT(S) - LEFT (Continued)



**Fig. 15 Securing Timing Chain Tensioners Using Timing Chain Wedge**

- 1 - LEFT CYLINDER HEAD  
2 - RIGHT CYLINDER HEAD

- 3 - SPECIAL TOOL 8350 WEDGE  
4 - SPECIAL TOOL 8350 WEDGE



**Fig. 16 Camshaft Sprocket and Chain**

- 1 - CAMSHAFT SPROCKET AND CHAIN  
2 - ADJUSTABLE PLIERS  
3 - CAMSHAFT

(7) Using the pliers, gently allow the camshaft to rotate 15° clockwise until the camshaft is in the neutral position (no valve load).

(8) Starting at the outside working inward, loosen the camshaft bearing cap retaining bolts 1/2 turn at a time. Repeat until all load is off the bearing caps.

**CAUTION: DO NOT STAMP OR STRIKE THE CAMSHAFT BEARING CAPS. SEVERE DAMAGE WILL OCCUR TO THE BEARING CAPS.**

**NOTE:** When the camshaft is removed the rocker arms may slide downward, mark the rocker arms before removing camshaft.

(9) Remove the camshaft bearing caps and the camshaft.

## CAMSHAFT(S) - LEFT (Continued)

## INSTALLATION

(1) Lubricate camshaft journals with clean engine oil.

**NOTE:** Position the left side camshaft so that the camshaft sprocket dowel is near the 1 o'clock position. This will place the camshaft at the neutral position easing the installation of the camshaft bearing caps.

(2) Position the camshaft into the cylinder head.

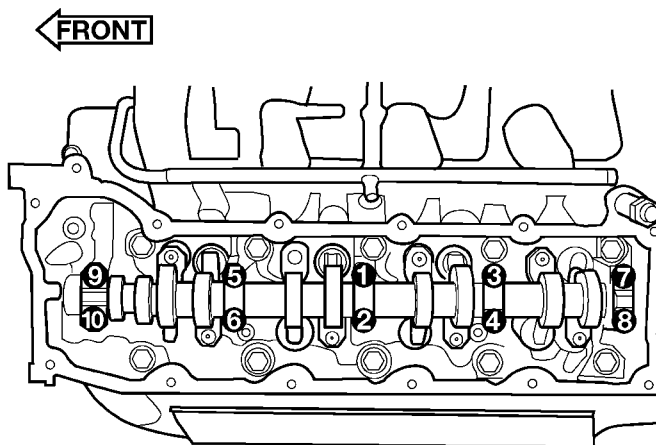
(3) Install the camshaft bearing caps, hand tighten the retaining bolts.

(4) Working in  $\frac{1}{2}$  turn increments, tighten the bearing cap retaining bolts starting with the middle cap working outward (Fig. 17).

(5) Torque the camshaft bearing cap retaining bolts to 11 N·m (100 in. lbs.).

(6) Position the camshaft drive gear into the timing chain aligning the V8 mark between the two marked chain links (Two links marked during removal) (Fig. 18).

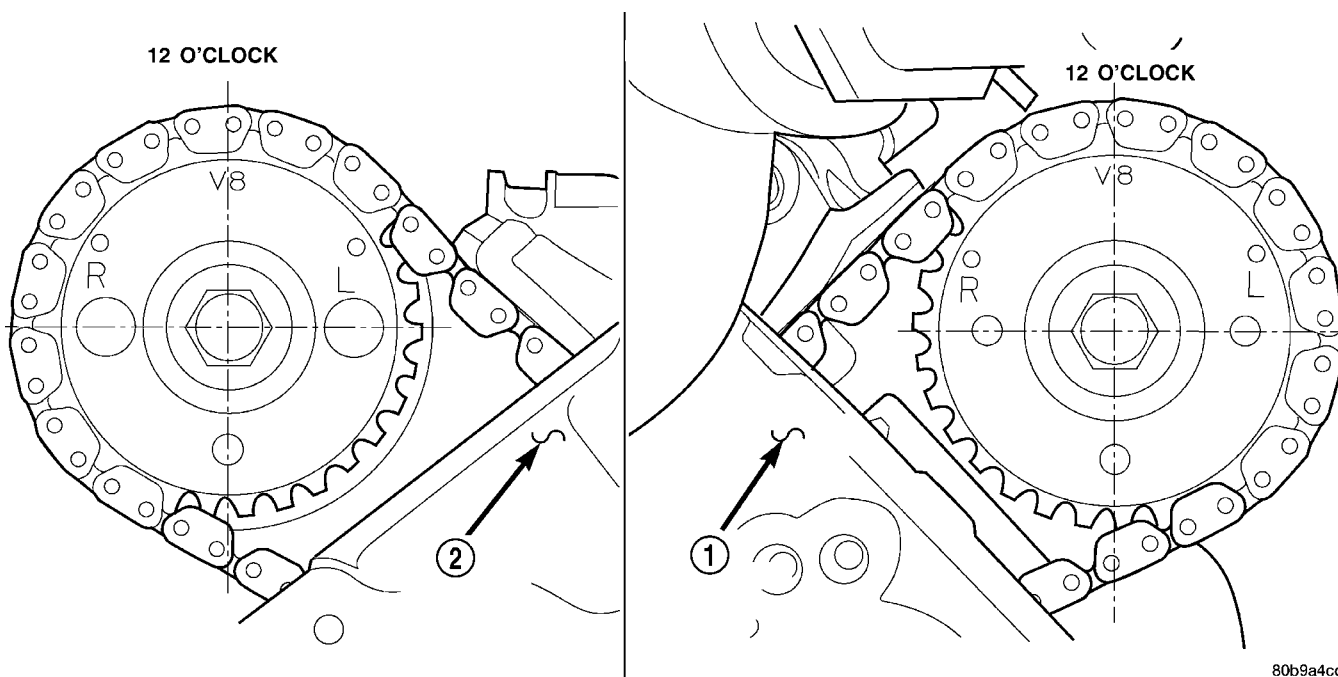
**NOTE:** When gripping the camshaft, place the pliers on the tube portion of the camshaft only. Do not grip the lobes or the sprocket areas.



80b6b398

**Fig. 17 Camshaft Bearing Caps Tightening Sequence**

(7) Using the adjustable pliers, rotate the camshaft until the camshaft sprocket dowel is aligned with the slot in the camshaft sprocket. Install the sprocket onto the camshaft (Fig. 19).



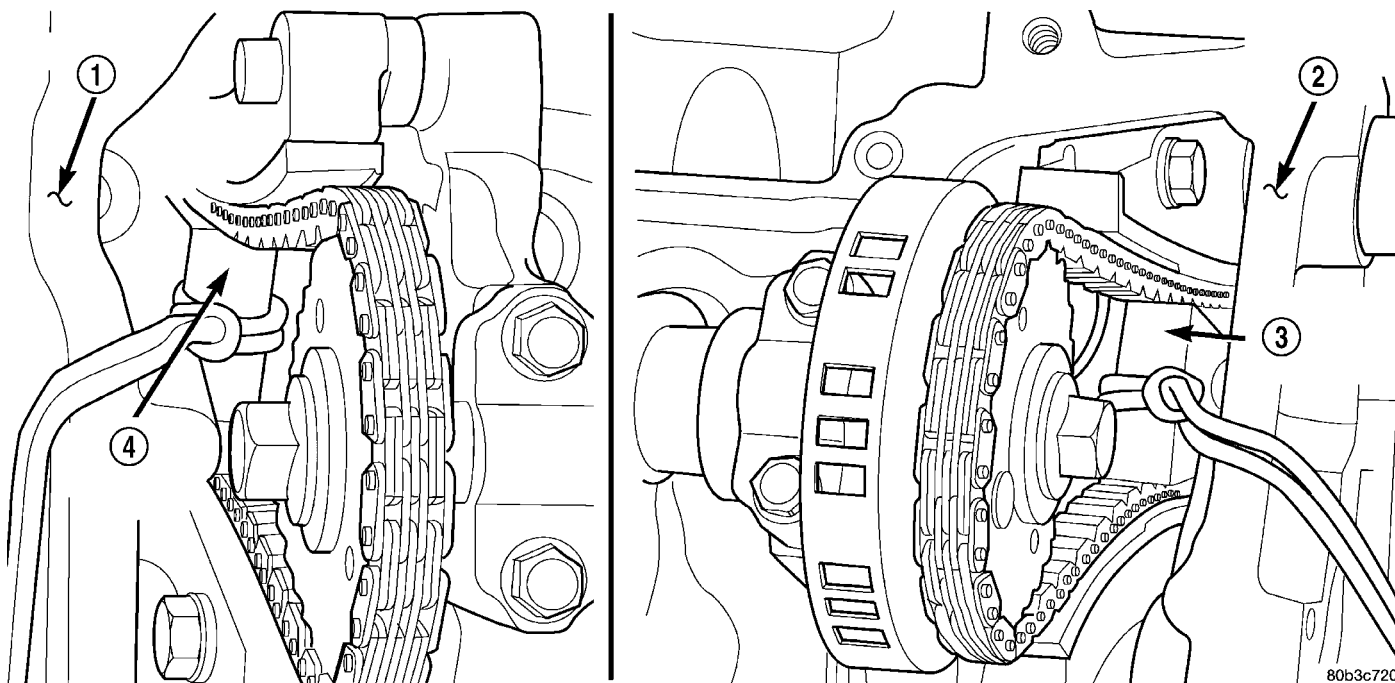
80b9a4cd

**Fig. 18 Timing Chain to Sprocket Alignment**

1 - LEFT CYLINDER HEAD

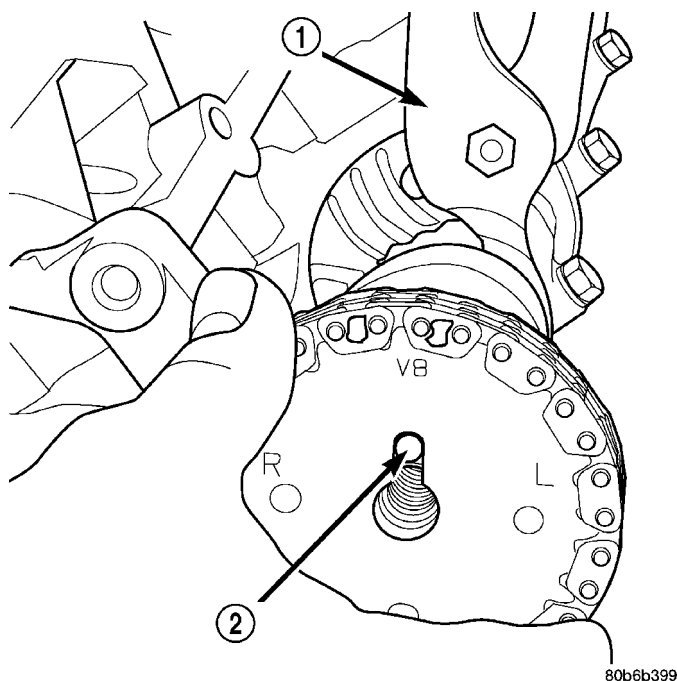
2 - RIGHT CYLINDER HEAD

## CAMSHAFT(S) - LEFT (Continued)

**Fig. 20 SPECIAL TOOL 8350**

- 1 - LEFT CYLINDER HEAD  
2 - RIGHT CYLINDER HEAD

- 3 - SPECIAL TOOL 8350 WEDGE  
4 - SPECIAL TOOL 8350 WEDGE

**Fig. 19 Camshaft Sprocket Installation**

- 1 - ADJUSTABLE PLIERS  
2 - CAMSHAFT DOWEL

**CAUTION:** Remove excess oil from camshaft sprocket bolt. Failure to do so can cause bolt over-torque resulting in bolt failure.

(8) Remove excess oil from bolt, then install the camshaft sprocket retaining bolt and hand tighten.

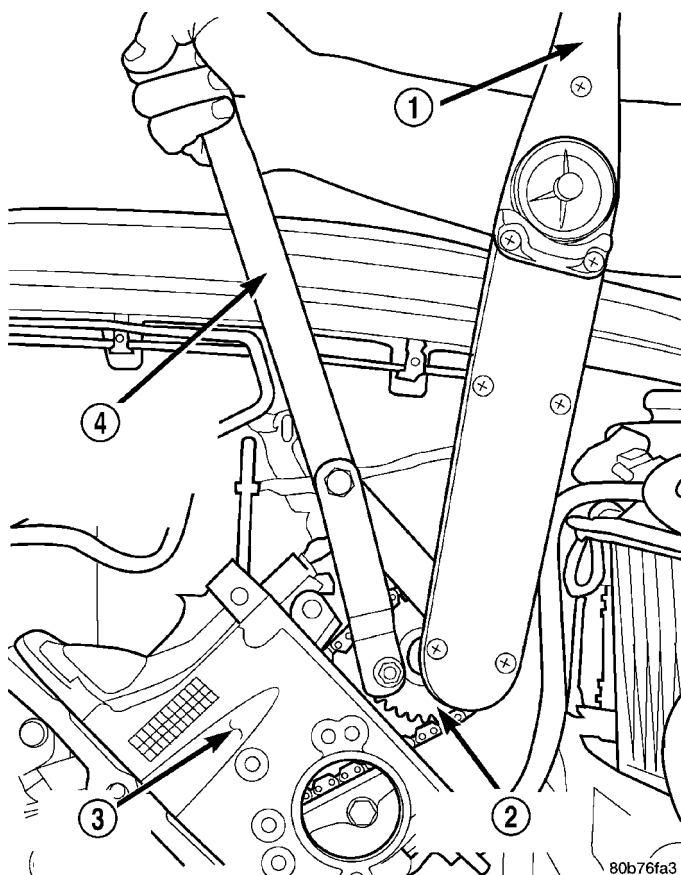
(9) Remove Special Tool 8350 timing chain wedge (Fig. 20).

(10) Using Special Tool 6958 spanner wrench with adapter pins 8346 (Fig. 21), torque the camshaft sprocket retaining bolt to 122 N·m (90 ft. lbs.).

(11) Install the cylinder head cover.



## CAMSHAFT(S) - LEFT (Continued)



**Fig. 21 Tightening Left Side Cam Sprocket Retaining Bolt**

- 1 - TORQUE WRENCH
- 2 - CAMSHAFT SPROCKET
- 3 - LEFT CYLINDER HEAD
- 4 - SPECIAL TOOL 6958 SPANNER WITH ADAPTER PINS 8346

## CYLINDER HEAD COVER(S) - LEFT

## DESCRIPTION

The cylinder head covers are made of injection molded thermo-set plastic, and are not interchangeable from side-to-side. It is imperative that nothing rest on the cylinder head covers. Prolonged contact with other items may wear a hole in the cylinder head cover.

## REMOVAL - LEFT SIDE

- (1) Disconnect negative cable from battery.
- (2) Remove the resonator assemble and air inlet hose.
- (3) Disconnect injector connectors and un-clip the injector harness.

(4) Route injector harness in front of cylinder head cover.

(5) Disconnect the left side breather tube and remove the breather tube.

(6) Remove the cylinder head cover mounting bolts.

(7) Remove cylinder head cover and gasket.

**NOTE:** The gasket may be used again, provided no cuts, tears, or deformation has occurred.

## CLEANING

Clean cylinder head cover gasket surface.

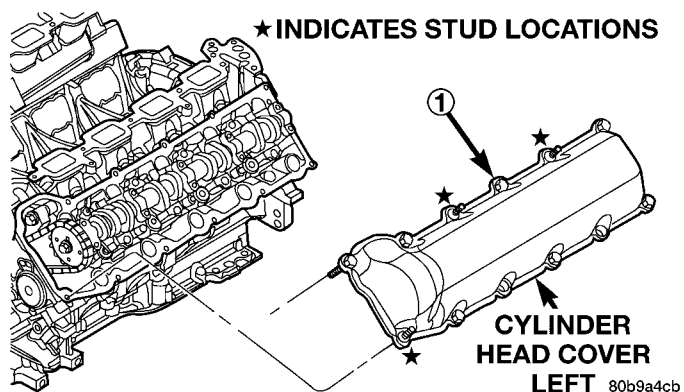
Clean head rail, if necessary.

## INSTALLATION—LEFT SIDE

**CAUTION:** Do not use harsh cleaners to clean the cylinder head covers. Severe damage to covers may occur.

(1) Clean cylinder head cover and both sealing surfaces. Inspect and replace gasket as necessary.

(2) Install cylinder head cover and hand start all fasteners. Verify that all studs are in the correct location shown in (Fig. 22).



**Fig. 22 Cylinder Head Cover-Left**

ITEM	DESCRIPTION	TORQUE
1	Cover Fasteners	12 N·m (105 in. lbs.)

(3) Tighten cylinder head cover bolts and double ended studs to 12 N·m (105 in. lbs.).

(4) Install left side breather and connect breather tube.

(5) Connect injector electrical connectors and injector harness retaining clips.

(6) Install the resonator and air inlet hose.

(7) Connect negative cable to battery.

## INTAKE/EXHAUST VALVES & SEATS

### DESCRIPTION

The valves are made of heat resistant steel and have chrome plated stems to prevent scuffing. Each valve is actuated by a roller rocker arm which pivots on a stationary lash adjuster. All valves use three bead lock keepers to retain the springs and promote valve rotation.

### STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFACING

**NOTE:** Valve seats that are worn or burned can be reworked, provided that correct angle and seat width are maintained. Otherwise the cylinder head must be replaced.

**NOTE:** When refacing valves and valve seats, it is important that the correct size valve guide pilot be used for reseating stones. A true and complete surface must be obtained.

(1) Using a suitable dial indicator measure the center of the valve seat. Total run out must not exceed 0.051 mm (0.002 in.).

(2) Apply a small amount of Prussian blue to the valve seat, insert the valve into the cylinder head, while applying light pressure on the valve rotate the valve. Remove the valve and examine the valve face. If the blue is transferred below the top edge of the valve face, lower the valve seat using a 15 degree stone. If the blue is transferred to the bottom edge of the valve face, raise the valve seat using a 65 degree stone.

(3) When the seat is properly positioned the width of the intake seat must be 1.75 – 2.36 mm (0.0689 – 0.0928 in.) and the exhaust seat must be 1.71 – 2.32 mm (0.0673 – 0.0911 in.).

(4) Check the valve spring installed height after refacing the valve and seat. The installed height for both intake and exhaust valve springs must not exceed 40.74 mm (1.6039 in.).

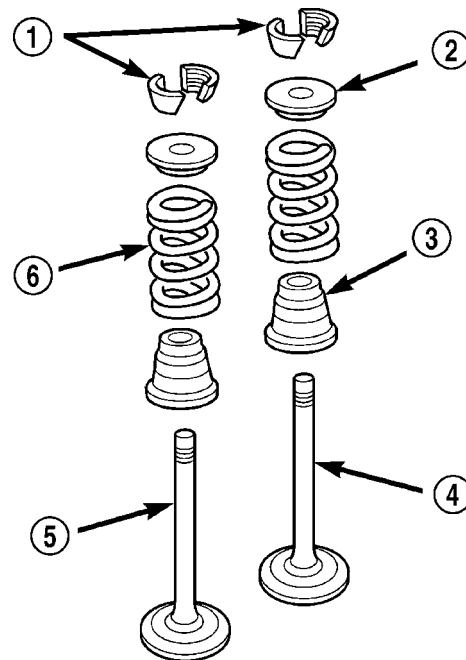
(5) The valve seat and valve face must maintain a face angle of 44.5 – 45 degrees angle (Fig. 23).

### REMOVAL

**NOTE:** The cylinder heads must be removed in order to preform this procedure.

(1) Remove rocker arms and lash adjusters. Refer to procedures in this section (Fig. 24).

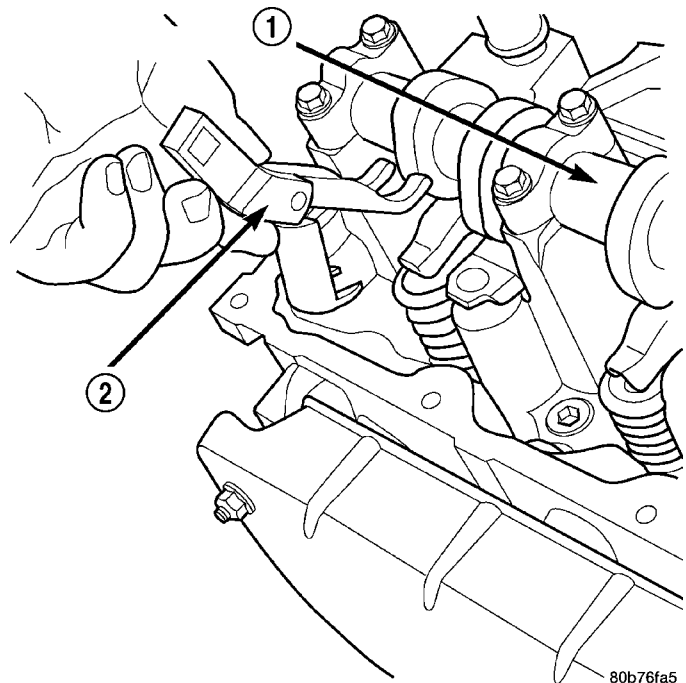
(2) Remove the camshaft bearing caps and the camshaft.



80b8983f

**Fig. 23 Valve Assembly Configuration**

- 1 - VALVE LOCKS (3-BEAD)
- 2 - RETAINER
- 3 - VALVE STEM OIL SEAL
- 4 - INTAKE VALVE
- 5 - EXHAUST VALVE
- 6 - VALVE SPRING



80b76fa5

**Fig. 24 Rocker Arm Removal**

- 1 - CAMSHAFT
- 2 - SPECIAL TOOL 8516



## INTAKE/EXHAUST VALVES &amp; SEATS (Continued)

**NOTE:** All eight valve springs and valves are removed in the same manner; this procedure only covers one valve and valve spring.

(3) Using Special Tool C-3422-B or C-3422-C Valve Spring Compressor and Special tool 8519 Adapter, compress the valve spring.

**NOTE:** It may be necessary to tap the top of the valve spring to loosen the spring retainers locks enough to be removed.

(4) Remove the two spring retainer lock halves.

**NOTE:** the valve spring is under tension use care when releasing the valve spring compressor.

(5) Remove the valve spring compressor.

(6) Remove the spring retainer, and the spring.

**NOTE:** Check for sharp edges on the keeper grooves. Remove any burrs from the valve stem before removing the valve from the cylinder head.

(7) Remove the valve from the cylinder head.

**NOTE:** The valve stem seals are common between intake and exhaust.

(8) Remove the valve stem seal. Mark the valve for proper installation.

## TESTING VALVE SPRINGS

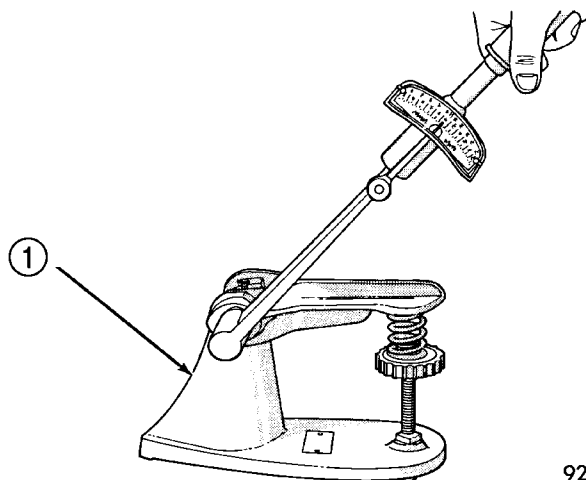
**NOTE:** Whenever the valves are removed from the cylinder head it is recommended that the valve springs be inspected and tested for reuse.

Inspect the valve springs for physical signs of wear or damage. Turn table of tool C-647 until surface is in line with the 40.12 mm (1.579 in.) mark on the threaded stud and the zero mark on the front. Place spring over the stud on the table and lift compressing lever to set tone device. Pull on torque wrench until Ping is heard. Take reading on torque wrench at this instant. Multiply this reading by two. This will give the spring load at test length. Fractional measurements are indicated on the table for finer adjustments. Refer to Specifications Section to obtain specified height and allowable tensions. Replace any springs that do not meet specifications. (Fig. 25)

## INSTALLATION

(1) coat the valve stem with clean engine oil and insert it into the cylinder head.

(2) Install the valve stem seal. make sure the seal is fully seated and that the garter spring at the top of the seal is intact.



9209-37

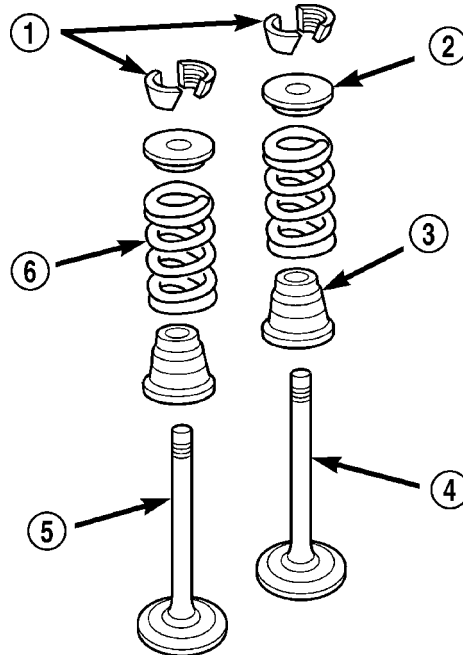
Fig. 25 Testing Valve Springs

1 - SPECIAL TOOL C-647

(3) Install the spring and the spring retainer (Fig. 26).

(4) Using the valve spring compressor, compress the spring and install the two valve spring retainer halves.

(5) Release the valve spring compressor and make sure the two spring retainer halves and the spring retainer are fully seated.



80b8983f

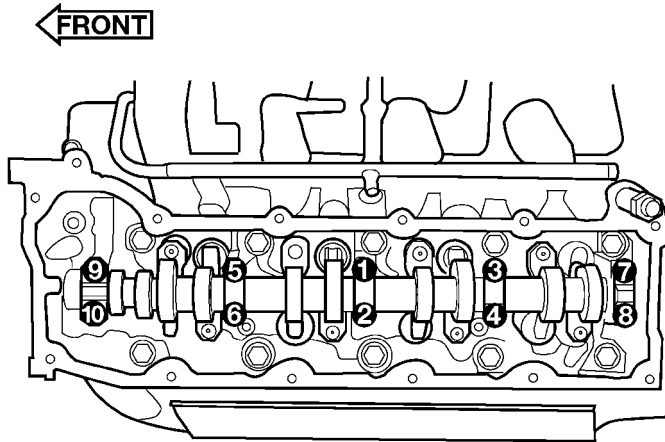
Fig. 26 Valve Assembly Configuration

- 1 - VALVE LOCKS (3-BEAD)
- 2 - RETAINER
- 3 - VALVE STEM OIL SEAL
- 4 - INTAKE VALVE
- 5 - EXHAUST VALVE
- 6 - VALVE SPRING

## INTAKE/EXHAUST VALVES & SEATS (Continued)

(6) lubricate the camshaft journal with clean engine oil then Position the camshaft (with the sprocket dowel on the left camshaft at 11 o'clock and the right camshaft at 12 o'clock), then position the camshaft bearing caps.

(7) Install the camshaft bearing cap retaining bolts. Tighten the bolts 9–13 N·m (100 in. lbs.) in ½ turn increments in the sequence shown (Fig. 27).



80b6b398

**Fig. 27 Camshaft Bearing Caps Tightening Sequence**

(8) Position the hydraulic lash adjusters and rocker arms (Fig. 24).

## ROCKER ARM / ADJUSTER ASSEMBLY

### DESCRIPTION

The rocker arms are steel stampings with an integral roller bearing. The rocker arms incorporate a 2.8 mm (0.11 inch) oil hole in the lash adjuster socket for roller and camshaft lubrication.

### REMOVAL

**NOTE:** Disconnect the battery negative cable to prevent accidental starter engagement.

(1) Remove the cylinder head cover (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD/CYLINDER HEAD COVER(S) - REMOVAL).

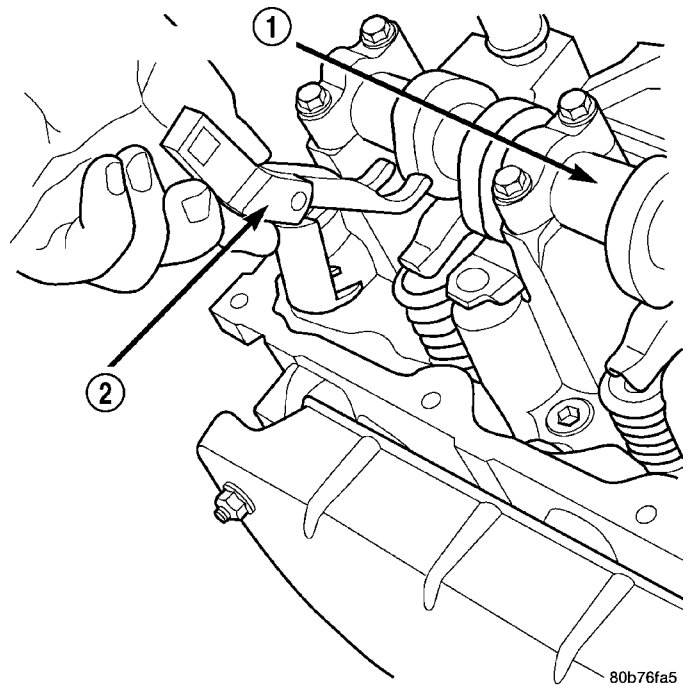
(2) For rocker arm removal on cylinders 3 and 5 Rotate the crankshaft until cylinder #1 is at TDC exhaust stroke.

(3) For rocker arm removal on cylinders 2 and 8 Rotate the crankshaft until cylinder #1 is at TDC compression stroke.

(4) For rocker arm removal on cylinders 4 and 6 Rotate the crankshaft until cylinder #3 is at TDC compression stroke.

(5) For rocker arm removal on cylinders 1 and 7 Rotate the crankshaft until cylinder #2 is at TDC compression stroke.

(6) Using special tool 8516 Rocker Arm Remover, press downward on the valve spring, remove rocker arm (Fig. 28).



80b76fa5

**Fig. 28 Rocker Arm—Removal**

- 1 - CAMSHAFT
- 2 - SPECIAL TOOL 8516

### INSTALLATION

**CAUTION:** Make sure the rocker arms are installed with the concave pocket over the lash adjusters. Failure to do so may cause severe damage to the rocker arms and/or lash adjusters.

**NOTE:** Coat the rocker arms with clean engine oil prior to installation.

(1) For rocker arm installation on cylinders 3 and 5 Rotate the crankshaft until cylinder #1 is at TDC exhaust stroke.

## ROCKER ARM / ADJUSTER ASSEMBLY (Continued)

(2) For rocker arm installation on cylinders 2 and 8 Rotate the crankshaft until cylinder #1 is at TDC compression stroke.

(3) For rocker arm installation on cylinders 4 and 6 Rotate the crankshaft until cylinder #3 is at TDC compression stroke.

(4) For rocker arm installation on cylinders 1 and 7 Rotate the crankshaft until cylinder #2 is at TDC compression stroke.

(5) Using special tool 8516 press downward on the valve spring, install rocker arm (Fig. 28).

(6) Install the cylinder head cover (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD/CYLINDER HEAD COVER(S) - INSTALLATION).

## VALVE SPRINGS

## DESCRIPTION

The valve springs are made from high strength chrome silicon steel. The springs are common for intake and exhaust applications, **except for the 4.7L H.O. which has unique intake and exhaust springs**. The valve spring seat is integral with the valve stem seal, which is a positive type seal to control lubrication.

## VALVE STEM SEALS

## DESCRIPTION

The valve stem seals are made of rubber and incorporate an integral steel valve spring seat. The integral garter spring maintains consistent lubrication control to the valve stems.

## CYLINDER HEAD - RIGHT

## DESCRIPTION

## DESCRIPTION - CYLINDER HEAD

The cylinder heads are made of an aluminum alloy. The cylinder head features two valves per cylinder with pressed in powdered metal valve guides. The cylinder heads also provide enclosures for the timing chain drain, necessitating unique left and right cylinder heads.

## DESCRIPTION - VALVE GUIDES

The valve guides are made of powdered metal and are pressed into the cylinder head. The guides are not replaceable or serviceable, and valve guide reaming is not recommended. If the guides are worn beyond acceptable limits, replace the cylinder heads.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING—CYLINDER HEAD GASKET

A cylinder head gasket leak can be located between adjacent cylinders or between a cylinder and the adjacent water jacket.

Possible indications of the cylinder head gasket leaking between adjacent cylinders are:

- Loss of engine power
- Engine misfiring
- Poor fuel economy

Possible indications of the cylinder head gasket leaking between a cylinder and an adjacent water jacket are:

- Engine overheating
- Loss of coolant
- Excessive steam (white smoke) emitting from exhaust
- Coolant foaming

## CYLINDER-TO-CYLINDER LEAKAGE TEST

To determine if an engine cylinder head gasket is leaking between adjacent cylinders, follow the procedures in Cylinder Compression Pressure Test (Refer to 9 - ENGINE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING). An engine cylinder head gasket leaking between adjacent cylinders will result in approximately a 50–70% reduction in compression pressure.

## CYLINDER-TO-WATER JACKET LEAKAGE TEST

**WARNING: USE EXTREME CAUTION WHEN THE ENGINE IS OPERATING WITH COOLANT PRESSURE CAP REMOVED.**

## VISUAL TEST METHOD

With the engine cool, remove the coolant pressure cap. Start the engine and allow it to warm up until thermostat opens.

If a large combustion/compression pressure leak exists, bubbles will be visible in the coolant.

## COOLING SYSTEM TESTER METHOD

**WARNING: WITH COOLING SYSTEM TESTER IN PLACE, PRESSURE WILL BUILD UP FAST. EXCESSIVE PRESSURE BUILT UP, BY CONTINUOUS ENGINE OPERATION, MUST BE RELEASED TO A SAFE PRESSURE POINT. NEVER PERMIT PRESSURE TO EXCEED 138 kPa (20 psi).**

## CYLINDER HEAD - RIGHT (Continued)

Install Cooling System Tester 7700 or equivalent to pressure cap neck. Start the engine and observe the tester's pressure gauge. If gauge pulsates with every power stroke of a cylinder a combustion pressure leak is evident.

## CHEMICAL TEST METHOD

Combustion leaks into the cooling system can also be checked by using Bloc-Chek Kit C-3685-A or equivalent. Perform test following the procedures supplied with the tool kit.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - HYDRAULIC LASH ADJUSTER

A tappet-like noise may be produced from several items. Check the following items.

(1) Engine oil level too high or too low. This may cause aerated oil to enter the adjusters and cause them to be spongy.

(2) Insufficient running time after rebuilding cylinder head. Low speed running up to 1 hour may be required.

(3) Turn engine off and let set for a few minutes before restarting. Repeat this several times after engine has reached normal operating temperature.

(4) Low oil pressure.

(5) The oil restrictor in cylinder head gasket or the oil passage to the cylinder head is plugged with debris.

(6) Air ingested into oil due to broken or cracked oil pump pick up.

(7) Worn valve guides.

(8) Rocker arm ears contacting valve spring retainer.

(9) Rocker arm loose, adjuster stuck or at maximum extension and still leaves lash in the system.

(10) Oil leak or excessive cam bore wear in cylinder head.

(11) Faulty lash adjuster.

a. Check lash adjusters for sponginess while installed in cylinder head and cam on camshaft at base circle. Depress part of rocker arm over adjuster. Normal adjusters should feel very firm. Spongy adjusters can be bottomed out easily.

b. Remove suspected lash adjusters, and replace.

c. Before installation, make sure adjusters are at least partially full of oil. This can be verified by little or no plunger travel when lash adjuster is depressed.

## REMOVAL

(1) Disconnect battery negative cable.

(2) Raise the vehicle on a hoist.

(3) Disconnect the exhaust pipe at the right side exhaust manifold.

(4) Drain the engine coolant (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

(5) Lower the vehicle.

(6) Remove the intake manifold (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/MANIFOLDS/INTAKE MANIFOLD - REMOVAL).

(7) Remove the cylinder head cover (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD/CYLINDER HEAD COVER(S) - REMOVAL).

(8) Remove oil fill housing from cylinder head.

(9) Remove accessory drive belt (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - REMOVAL).

(10) Rotate the crankshaft until the damper timing mark is aligned with TDC indicator mark (Fig. 9).

(11) Verify the V8 mark on the camshaft sprocket is at the 12 o'clock position (Fig. 11). Rotate the crankshaft one turn if necessary.

(12) Remove the crankshaft damper (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE BLOCK/VIBRATION DAMPER - REMOVAL).

(13) Remove the timing chain cover (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/VALVE TIMING/TIMING BELT / CHAIN COVER(S) - REMOVAL).

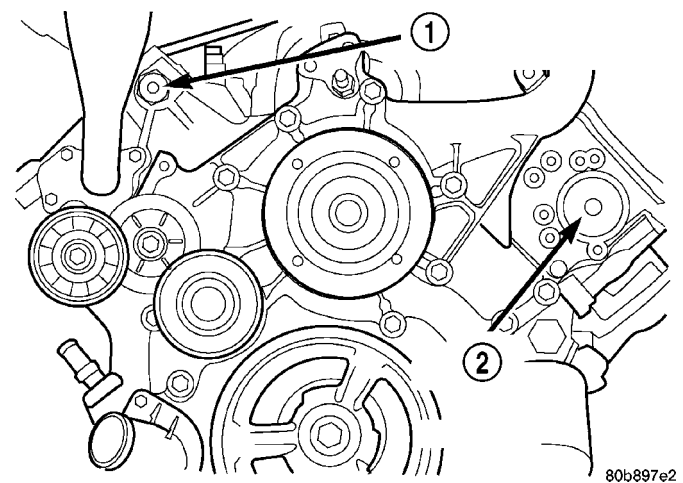
(14) Lock the secondary timing chains to the idler sprocket using Special Tool 8515 (Fig. 10).

**NOTE:** Mark the secondary timing chain prior to removal to aid in installation.

(15) Mark the secondary timing chain, one link on each side of the V8 mark on the camshaft drive gear (Fig. 11).

(16) Remove the right side secondary chain tensioner (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/VALVE TIMING/TIMING BELT/CHAIN AND SPROCKETS - REMOVAL).

(17) Remove the cylinder head access plug (Fig. 29).



**Fig. 29 Cylinder Head Access Plugs**

1 - RIGHT CYLINDER HEAD ACCESS PLUG

2 - LEFT CYLINDER HEAD ACCESS PLUG



## CYLINDER HEAD - RIGHT (Continued)

(18) Remove the right side secondary chain guide (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/VALVE TIMING/TIMING BELT/CHAIN AND SPROCKETS - REMOVAL).

(19) Remove the retaining bolt and the camshaft drive gear.

**CAUTION:** Do not allow the engine to rotate. severe damage to the valve train can occur.

**CAUTION:** Do not overlook the four smaller bolts at the front of the cylinder head. Do not attempt to remove the cylinder head without removing these four bolts.

**CAUTION:** Do not hold or pry on the camshaft target wheel for any reason. A damaged target wheel can result in a vehicle no start condition.

**NOTE:** The cylinder head is attached to the cylinder block with fourteen bolts.

(20) Remove the cylinder head retaining bolts.

(21) Remove the cylinder head and gasket. Discard the gasket.

**CAUTION:** Do not lay the cylinder head on its gasket sealing surface, do to the design of the cylinder head gasket any distortion to the cylinder head sealing surface may prevent the gasket from properly sealing resulting in leaks.

## CLEANING

To ensure engine gasket sealing, proper surface preparation must be performed, especially with the use of aluminum engine components. (Refer to 9 - ENGINE - STANDARD PROCEDURE)

## INSPECTION

(1) Inspect the cylinder head for out-of-flatness, using a straightedge and a feeler gauge. If tolerances exceed 0.0508 mm (0.002 in.) replace the cylinder head.

(2) Inspect the valve seats for damage. Service the valve seats as necessary.

(3) Inspect the valve guides for wear, cracks or looseness. If either condition exist, replace the cylinder head.

## INSTALLATION

**NOTE:** The cylinder head bolts are tightened using a torque plus angle procedure. The bolts must be examined BEFORE reuse. If the threads are necked down the bolts should be replaced.

Necking can be checked by holding a straight edge against the threads. If all the threads do not contact the scale, the bolt should be replaced (Fig. 13).

**CAUTION:** When cleaning cylinder head and cylinder block surfaces, DO NOT use a metal scraper because the surfaces could be cut or ground. Use only a wooden or plastic scraper.

(1) Clean the cylinder head and cylinder block mating surfaces (Refer to 9 - ENGINE - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

(2) Position the new cylinder head gasket on the locating dowels.

**CAUTION:** When installing cylinder head, use care not damage the tensioner arm or the guide arm.

(3) Position the cylinder head onto the cylinder block. Make sure the cylinder head seats fully over the locating dowels.

**NOTE:** The four smaller cylinder head mounting bolts require sealant to be added to them before installing. Failure to do so may cause leaks.

(4) Lubricate the cylinder head bolt threads with clean engine oil and install the ten M10 bolts.

(5) Coat the four M8 cylinder head bolts with **Mopar Lock and Seal Adhesive** then install the bolts.

**NOTE:** The cylinder head bolts are tightened using an angle torque procedure, however, the bolts are not a torque-to-yield design.

(6) Tighten the bolts in sequence (Fig. 30) using the following steps and torque values:

- Step 1: Tighten bolts 1-10, 27 N·m (20 ft. lbs.).
- Step 2: Verify that bolts 1-10, all reached 27 N·m (20 ft. lbs.), by repeating step-1 without loosening the bolts. Tighten bolts 11 thru 14 to 14 N·m (10 ft. lbs.).

- Step 3: Tighten bolts 1-10, 90 degrees.

- Step 4: Tighten bolts 1-10, 90 degrees, again. Tighten bolts 11-14, 26 N·m (19 ft. lbs.)

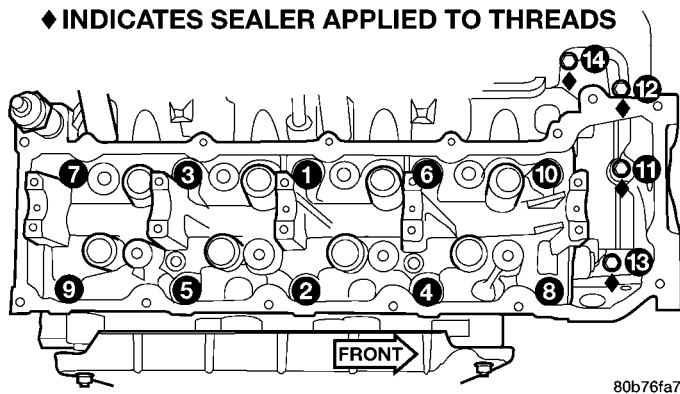
(7) Install the secondary chain and secondary chain guide (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/VALVE TIMING/TIMING BELT/CHAIN AND SPROCKETS - INSTALLATION).

(8) Install the cylinder head access plug.

(9) Re-set and install the right side secondary chain tensioner (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/VALVE TIMING/TIMING BELT/CHAIN AND SPROCKETS - INSTALLATION).

(10) Remove Special Tool 8515.

## CYLINDER HEAD - RIGHT (Continued)



**Fig. 30 Cylinder Head Tightening Sequence**

(11) Install the timing chain cover (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/VALVE TIMING/TIMING BELT / CHAIN COVER(S) - INSTALLATION).

(12) Install the crankshaft damper (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE BLOCK/VIBRATION DAMPER - INSTALLATION).

(13) Install accessory drive belt (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - INSTALLATION).

(14) Install the cylinder head cover (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD/CYLINDER HEAD COVER(S) - INSTALLATION).

(15) Install the intake manifold (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/MANIFOLDS/INTAKE MANIFOLD - INSTALLATION).

(16) Install oil fill housing onto cylinder head.

(17) Refill the cooling system (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

(18) Raise the vehicle.

(19) Install the exhaust pipe onto the right exhaust manifold.

(20) Lower the vehicle.

(21) Reconnect battery negative cable.

(22) Start the engine and check for leaks.

## CAMSHAFT(S) - RIGHT

## DESCRIPTION

The camshafts consist of powdered metal steel lobes which are sinter-bonded to a steel tube. A steel post or nose piece is friction-welded to the steel camshaft tube. Five bearing journals are machined into the camshaft, four on the steel tube and one on the steel nose piece. Camshaft end play is controlled by two thrust walls that border the nose piece journal. Engine oil enters the hollow camshafts at the third journal and lubricates every intake lobe rocker through a drilled passage in the intake lobe.

## REMOVAL

**CAUTION:** When the timing chain is removed and the cylinder heads are still installed, **DO NOT** forcefully rotate the camshafts or crankshaft independently of each other. Severe valve and/or piston damage can occur.

**CAUTION:** When removing the cam sprocket, timing chains or camshaft, Failure to use special tool 8350 will result in hydraulic tensioner ratchet over extension, Requiring timing chain cover removal to re-set the tensioner ratchet.

(1) Remove the cylinder head covers (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD/CYLINDER HEAD COVER(S) - REMOVAL).

(2) Set engine to TDC cylinder #1, camshaft sprocket V8 marks at the 12 o'clock position.

(3) Mark one link on the secondary timing chain on both sides of the V8 mark on the camshaft sprocket to aid in installation.

**CAUTION:** Do not hold or pry on the camshaft target wheel for any reason, Severe damage will occur to the target wheel. A damaged target wheel could cause a vehicle no start condition.

(4) Loosen but **DO NOT** remove the camshaft sprocket retaining bolt. Leave bolt snug against sprocket.

**NOTE:** The timing chain tensioners must be secured prior to removing the camshaft sprockets. Failure to secure tensioners will allow the tensioners to extend, requiring timing chain cover removal in order to reset tensioners.

**CAUTION:** Do not force wedge past the narrowest point between the chain strands. Damage to the tensioners may occur.

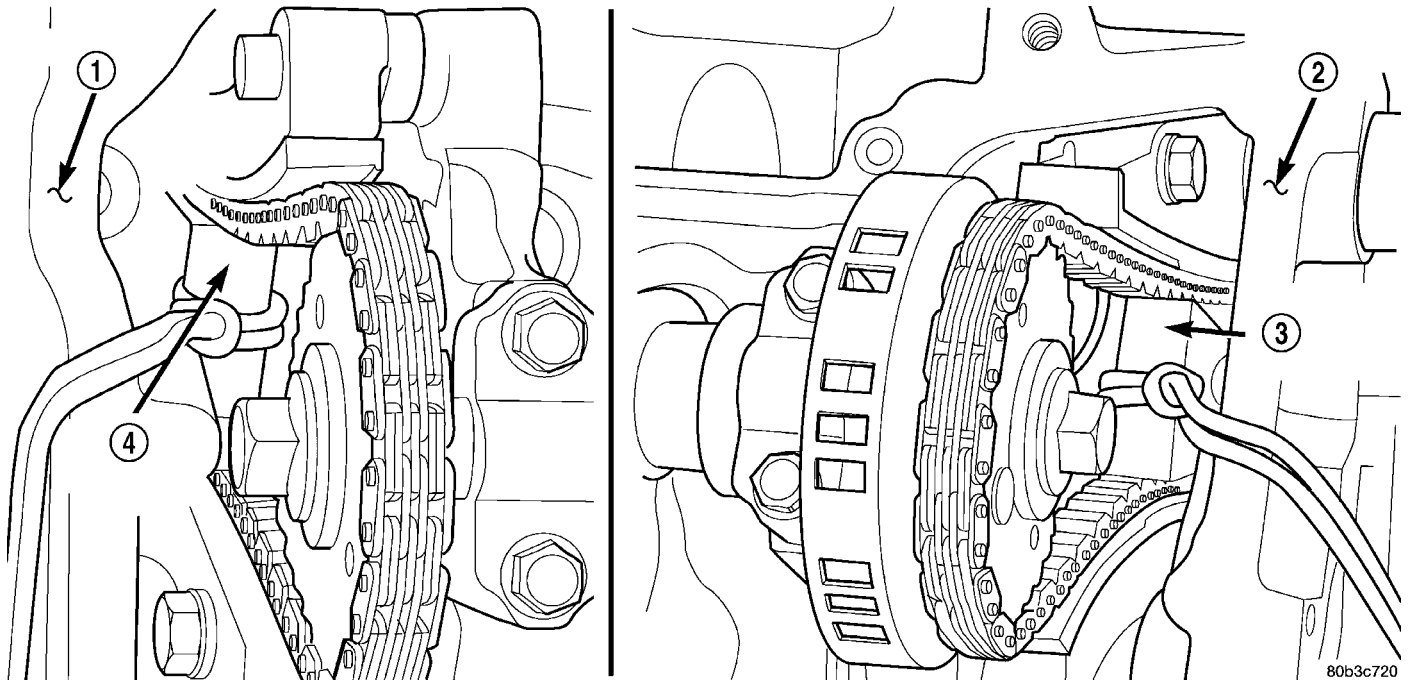
(5) Position Special Tool 8350 timing chain wedge between the timing chain strands. Tap the tool to securely wedge the timing chain against the tensioner arm and guide (Fig. 31).

(6) Remove the camshaft position sensor (Fig. 32).

**NOTE:** When gripping the camshaft, place the pliers on the tube portion of the camshaft only. Do not grip the lobes or the sprocket areas.

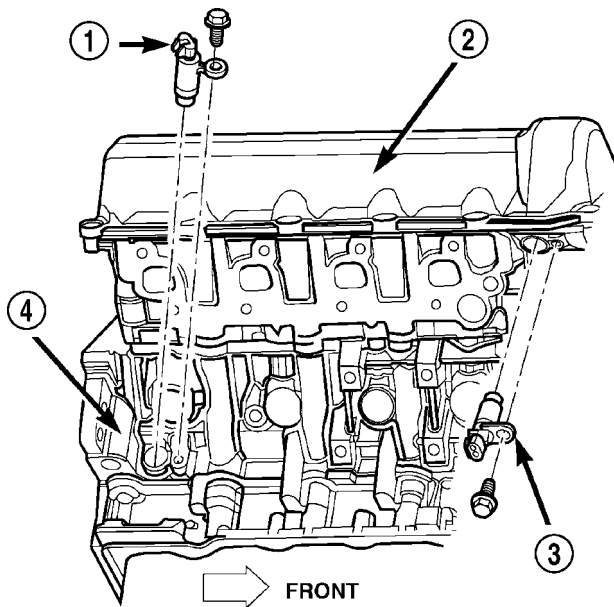
(7) Hold the camshaft with adjustable pliers while removing the camshaft sprocket bolt and sprocket (Fig. 33).

## CAMSHAFT(S) - RIGHT (Continued)

**Fig. 31 Securing Timing Chain Tensioners Using Timing Chain Wedge**

- 1 - LEFT CYLINDER HEAD  
2 - RIGHT CYLINDER HEAD

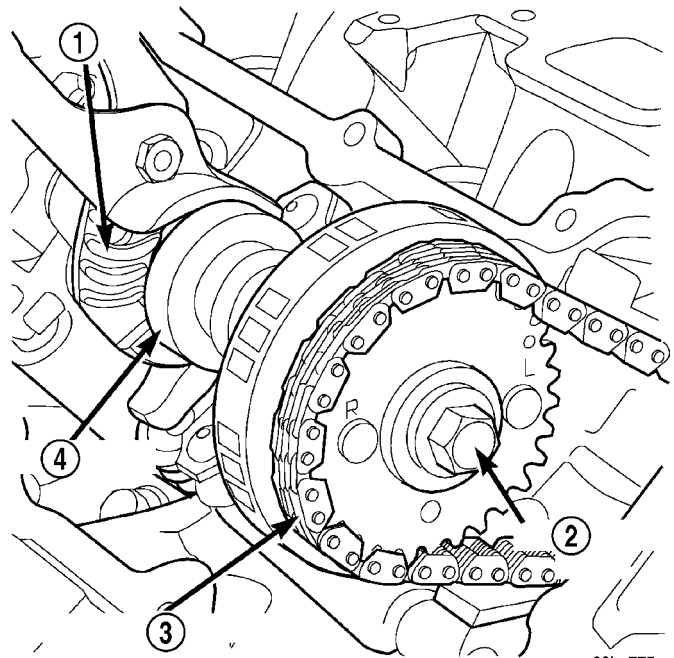
- 3 - SPECIAL TOOL 8350 WEDGE  
4 - SPECIAL TOOL 8350 WEDGE



80b77057

**Fig. 32 Camshaft Position Sensor**

- 1 - CRANKSHAFT POSITION SENSOR  
2 - CYLINDER HEAD COVER  
3 - CAMSHAFT POSITION SENSOR  
4 - RIGHT SIDE CYLINDER BLOCK



80ba775a

**Fig. 33 Camshaft Sprocket and Chain**

- 1 - ADJUSTABLE PLIERS  
2 - SPROCKET BOLT  
3 - CAMSHAFT SPROCKET AND CHAIN  
4 - CAMSHAFT



## CAMSHAFT(S) - RIGHT (Continued)

(8) Using the pliers, gently allow the camshaft to rotate 45° counter-clockwise until the camshaft is in the neutral position (no valve load).

(9) Starting at the outside working inward, loosen the camshaft bearing cap retaining bolts 1/2 turn at a time. Repeat until all load is off the bearing caps.

**CAUTION: DO NOT STAMP OR STRIKE THE CAMSHAFT BEARING CAPS. SEVERE DAMAGE WILL OCCUR TO THE BEARING CAPS.**

**NOTE:** When the camshaft is removed the rocker arms may slide downward, mark the rocker arms before removing camshaft.

(10) Remove the camshaft bearing caps and the camshaft.

## INSTALLATION

(1) Lubricate camshaft journals with clean engine oil.

**NOTE:** Position the right side camshaft so that the camshaft sprocket dowel is near the 10 o'clock position, This will place the camshaft at the neutral position easing the installation of the camshaft bearing caps.

(2) Position the camshaft into the cylinder head.

(3) Install the camshaft bearing caps, hand tighten the retaining bolts.

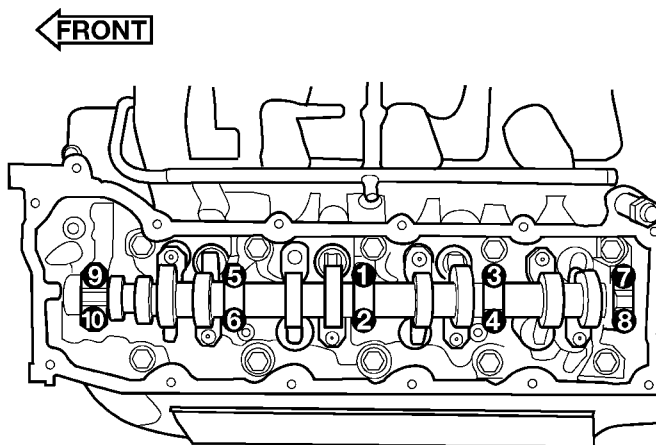
(4) Working in 1/2 turn increments, tighten the bearing cap retaining bolts starting with the middle cap working outward (Fig. 34).

(5) Torque the camshaft bearing cap retaining bolts to 11 N·m (100 in. lbs.).

(6) Position the camshaft drive gear into the timing chain aligning the V8 mark between the two marked chain links (Two links marked during removal) (Fig. 35).

**NOTE:** When gripping the camshaft, place the pliers on the tube portion of the camshaft only. Do not grip the lobes or the sprocket areas.

(7) Using the adjustable pliers, rotate the camshaft until the camshaft sprocket dowel is aligned with the slot in the camshaft sprocket. Install the sprocket onto the camshaft (Fig. 36).



80b6b398

**Fig. 34 Camshaft Bearing Caps Tightening Sequence**

**CAUTION:** Remove excess oil from camshaft sprocket bolt. Failure to do so can cause bolt over-torque resulting in bolt failure.

(8) Remove excess oil from camshaft sprocket bolt, then install the camshaft sprocket retaining bolt and hand tighten.

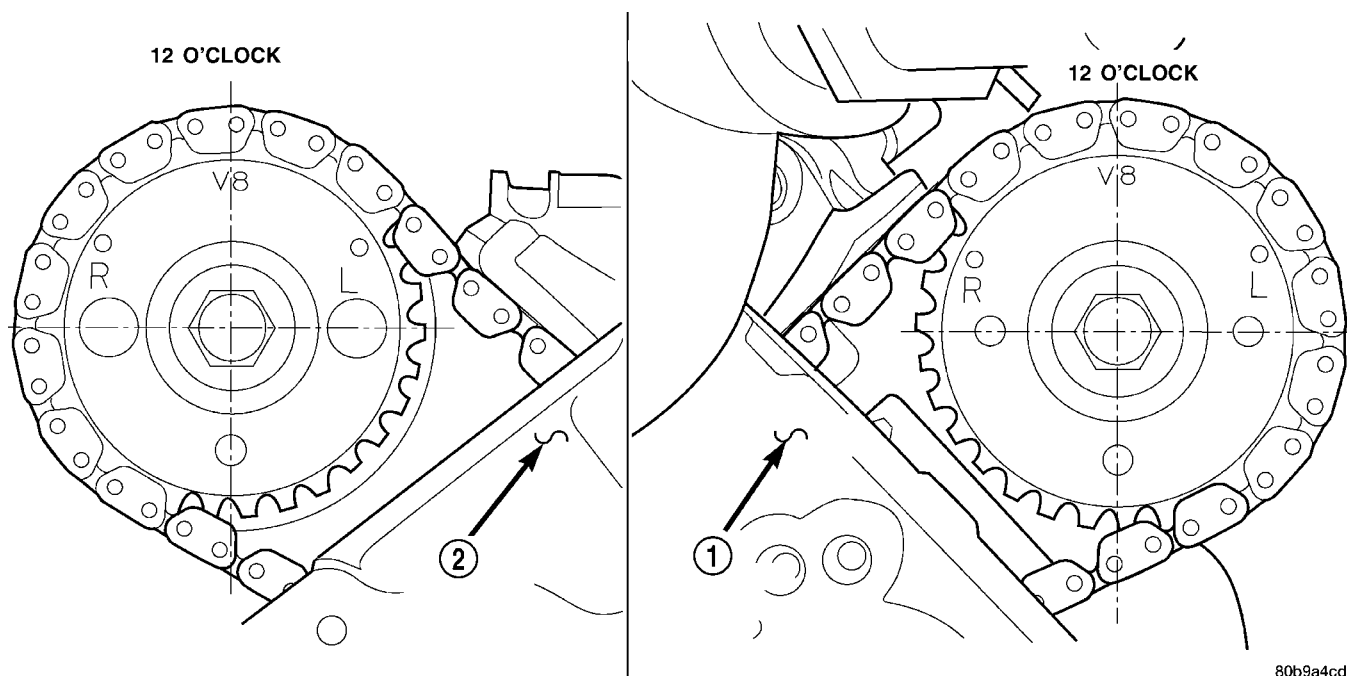
(9) Remove timing chain wedge special tool 8350 (Fig. 31).

(10) Using Special Tool 6958 spanner wrench with adapter pins 8346 (Fig. 37), torque the camshaft sprocket retaining bolt to 122 N·m (90 ft. lbs.).

(11) Install the camshaft position sensor (Fig. 32).

(12) Install the cylinder head cover (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD/CYLINDER HEAD COVER(S) - INSTALLATION).

## CAMSHAFT(S) - RIGHT (Continued)

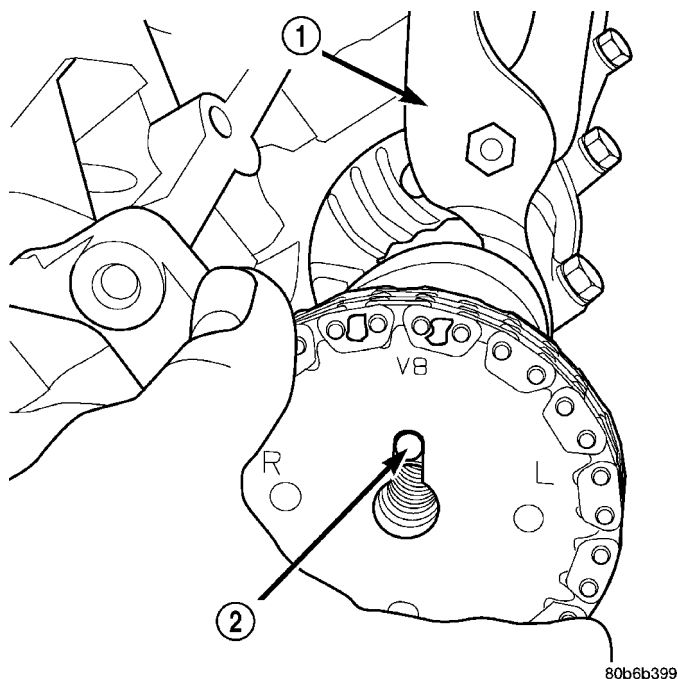


80b9a4cd

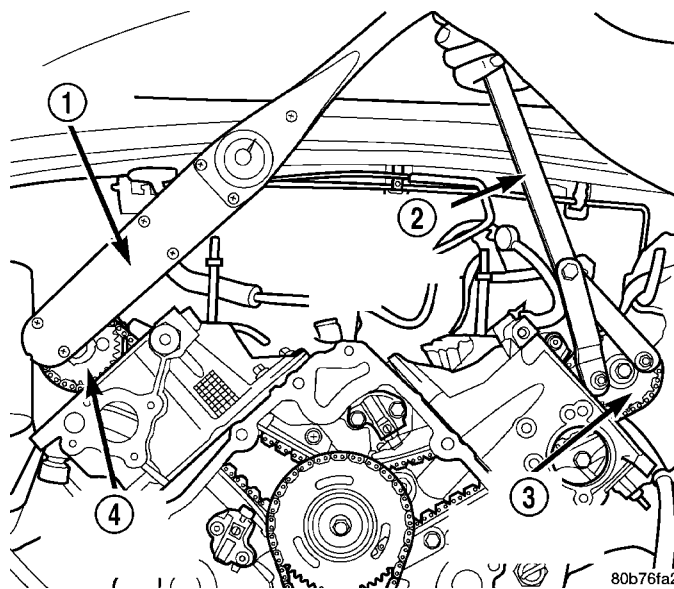
**Fig. 35 Timing Chain to Sprocket Alignment**

1 - LEFT CYLINDER HEAD

2 - RIGHT CYLINDER HEAD



80b6b399

**Fig. 36 Camshaft Sprocket Installation**1 - ADJUSTABLE PLIERS  
2 - CAMSHAFT DOWEL

80b76fa2

**Fig. 37 Tightening Right Side Cam Sprocket Retaining Bolt**1 - TORQUE WRENCH  
2 - SPECIAL TOOL 6958 WITH ADAPTER PINS 8346  
3 - LEFT CAMSHAFT SPROCKET  
4 - RIGHT CAMSHAFT SPROCKET

## CYLINDER HEAD COVER(S) - RIGHT

### DESCRIPTION

The cylinder head covers are made of injection molded thermo-set plastic, and are not interchangeable from side-to-side. It is imperative that nothing rest on the cylinder head covers. Prolonged contact with other items may wear a hole in the cylinder head cover.

### REMOVAL - RIGHT SIDE

- (1) Disconnect battery negative cable.
- (2) Disconnect battery positive cable.
- (3) Remove the battery tray.
- (4) Drain cooling system (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).
- (5) Remove accessory drive belt (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - REMOVAL).
- (6) Remove air conditioning compressor retaining bolts and move compressor to the left.
- (7) Remove heater hoses.
- (8) Disconnect injector and ignition coil connectors.
- (9) Disconnect and remove positive crankcase ventilation (PCV) hose.
- (10) Remove oil fill tube.
- (11) Un-clip injector and ignition coil harness and move away from cylinder head cover.
- (12) Remove right rear breather tube and filter assembly.
- (13) Remove cylinder head cover retaining bolts.
- (14) Remove cylinder head cover.

**NOTE:** The gasket may be used again, provided no cuts, tears, or deformation has occurred.

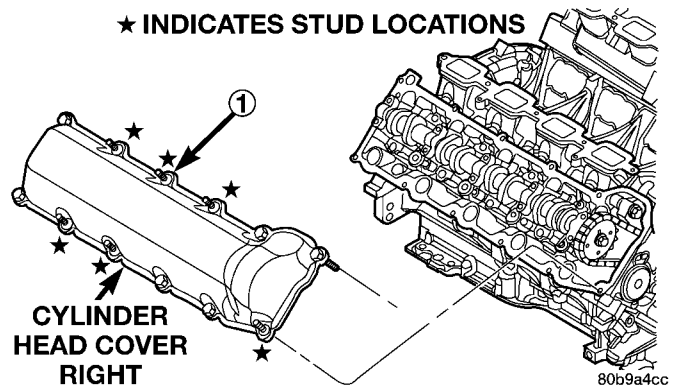
### CLEANING

- Clean cylinder head cover gasket surface.
- Clean head rail, if necessary.

### INSTALLATION - RIGHT SIDE

**CAUTION:** Do not use harsh cleaners to clean the cylinder head covers. Severe damage to covers may occur.

- (1) Clean cylinder head cover and both sealing surfaces. Inspect and replace gasket as necessary.
- (2) Install cylinder head cover and hand start all fasteners. Verify that all double ended studs are in the correct location shown in (Fig. 38).
- (3) Tighten cylinder head cover bolts and double ended studs to 12 N·m (105 in. lbs).



**Fig. 38 Cylinder Head Cover—Right**

ITEM	DESCRIPTION	TORQUE
1	Cover Fasteners	12 N·m (105 in. lbs.)

- (4) Install right rear breather tube and filter assembly.
- (5) Connect injector, ignition coil electrical connectors and harness retaining clips.
- (6) Install the oil fill tube.
- (7) Install PCV hose.
- (8) Install heater hoses.
- (9) Install air conditioning compressor retaining bolts.
- (10) Install accessory drive belt (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - INSTALLATION).
- (11) Fill Cooling system (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).
- (12) Install air cleaner assembly, resonator assembly and air inlet hose.
- (13) Connect battery negative cable.

## INTAKE/EXHAUST VALVES & SEATS

### DESCRIPTION

The valves are made of heat resistant steel and have chrome plated stems to prevent scuffing. Each valve is actuated by a roller rocker arm which pivots on a stationary lash adjuster. All valves use three bead lock keepers to retain the springs and promote valve rotation.

### STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFACING

**NOTE:** Valve seats that are worn or burned can be reworked, provided that correct angle and seat width are maintained. Otherwise the cylinder head must be replaced.

## INTAKE/EXHAUST VALVES &amp; SEATS (Continued)

**NOTE:** When refacing valves and valve seats, it is important that the correct size valve guide pilot be used for reseating stones. A true and complete surface must be obtained.

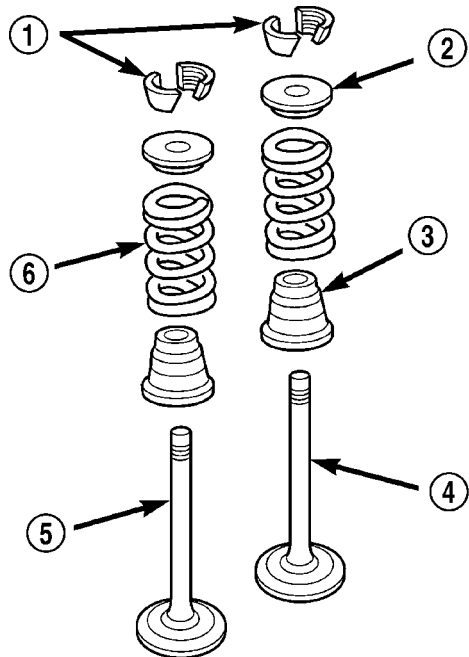
(1) Using a suitable dial indicator measure the center of the valve seat. Total run out must not exceed 0.051 mm (0.002 in.).

(2) Apply a small amount of Prussian blue to the valve seat, insert the valve into the cylinder head, while applying light pressure on the valve rotate the valve. Remove the valve and examine the valve face. If the blue is transferred below the top edge of the valve face, lower the valve seat using a 15 degree stone. If the blue is transferred to the bottom edge of the valve face, raise the valve seat using a 65 degree stone.

(3) When the seat is properly positioned the width of the intake seat must be 1.75 – 2.36 mm (0.0689 – 0.0928 in.) and the exhaust seat must be 1.71 – 2.32 mm (0.0673 – 0.0911 in.).

(4) Check the valve spring installed height after refacing the valve and seat. The installed height for both intake and exhaust valve springs must not exceed 40.74 mm (1.6039 in.).

(5) The valve seat and valve face must maintain a face angle of 44.5 – 45 degrees angle (Fig. 39).



80b8983f

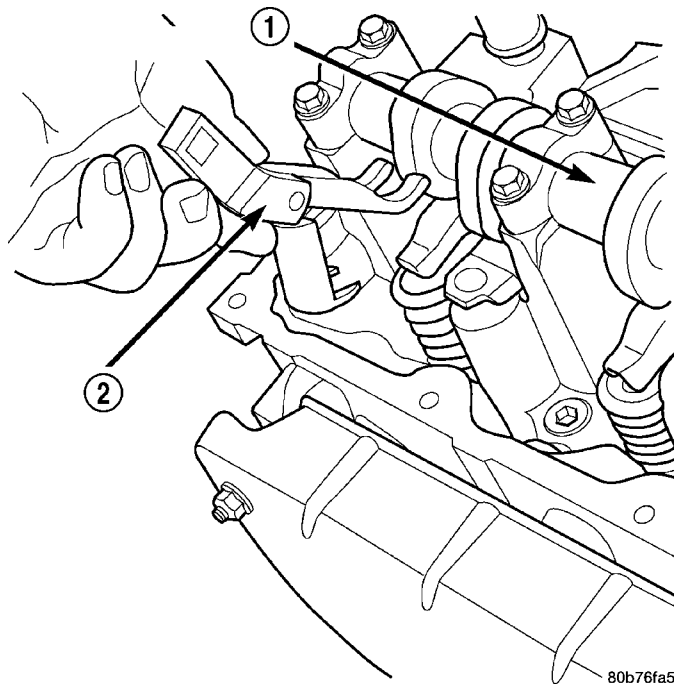
**Fig. 39 Valve Assembly Configuration**

- 1 - VALVE LOCKS (3-BEAD)
- 2 - RETAINER
- 3 - VALVE STEM OIL SEAL
- 4 - INTAKE VALVE
- 5 - EXHAUST VALVE
- 6 - VALVE SPRING

## REMOVAL

**NOTE:** The cylinder heads must be removed in order to preform this procedure.

(1) Remove rocker arms and lash adjusters. Refer to procedures in this section (Fig. 40).



80b76fa5

**Fig. 40 Rocker Arm Removal**

- 1 - CAMSHAFT
- 2 - SPECIAL TOOL 8516

(2) Remove the camshaft bearing caps and the camshaft.

**NOTE:** All eight valve springs and valves are removed in the same manner; this procedure only covers one valve and valve spring.

(3) Using Special Tool C-3422-B or C-3422-C Valve Spring Compressor and Special tool 8519 Adapter, compress the valve spring.

**NOTE:** It may be necessary to tap the top of the valve spring to loosen the spring retainers locks enough to be removed.

(4) Remove the two spring retainer lock halves.

**NOTE:** the valve spring is under tension use care when releasing the valve spring compressor.

(5) Remove the valve spring compressor.

(6) Remove the spring retainer, and the spring.

## INTAKE/EXHAUST VALVES &amp; SEATS (Continued)

**NOTE:** Check for sharp edges on the keeper grooves. Remove any burrs from the valve stem before removing the valve from the cylinder head.

(7) Remove the valve from the cylinder head.

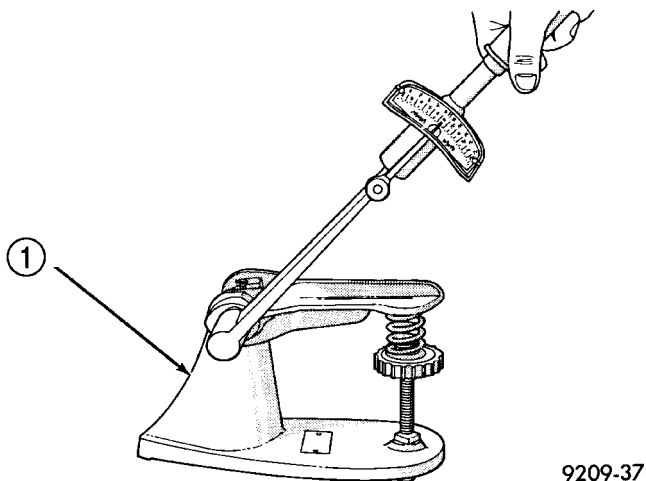
**NOTE:** The valve stem seals are common between intake and exhaust.

(8) Remove the valve stem seal. Mark the valve for proper installation.

## TESTING VALVE SPRINGS

**NOTE:** Whenever the valves are removed from the cylinder head it is recommended that the valve springs be inspected and tested for reuse.

Inspect the valve springs for physical signs of wear or damage. Turn table of tool C-647 until surface is in line with the 40.12 mm (1.579 in.) mark on the threaded stud and the zero mark on the front. Place spring over the stud on the table and lift compressing lever to set tone device. Pull on torque wrench until Ping is heard. Take reading on torque wrench at this instant. Multiply this reading by two. This will give the spring load at test length. Fractional measurements are indicated on the table for finer adjustments. Refer to Specifications Section to obtain specified height and allowable tensions. Replace any springs that do not meet specifications. (Fig. 41)



**Fig. 41 Testing Valve Springs**

1 - SPECIAL TOOL C-647

## INSTALLATION

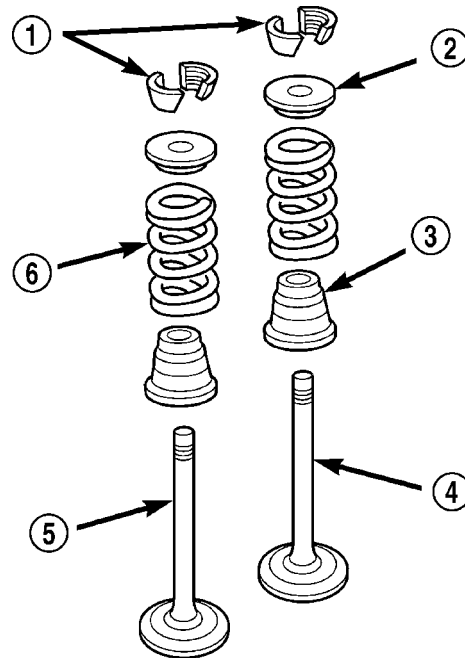
(1) coat the valve stem with clean engine oil and insert it into the cylinder head.

(2) Install the valve stem seal. make sure the seal is fully seated and that the garter spring at the top of the seal is intact.

(3) Install the spring and the spring retainer (Fig. 42).

(4) Using the valve spring compressor, compress the spring and install the two valve spring retainer halves.

(5) Release the valve spring compressor and make sure the two spring retainer halves and the spring retainer are fully seated.



80b8983f

**Fig. 42 Valve Assembly Configuration**

- 1 - VALVE LOCKS (3-BEAD)
- 2 - RETAINER
- 3 - VALVE STEM OIL SEAL
- 4 - INTAKE VALVE
- 5 - EXHAUST VALVE
- 6 - VALVE SPRING

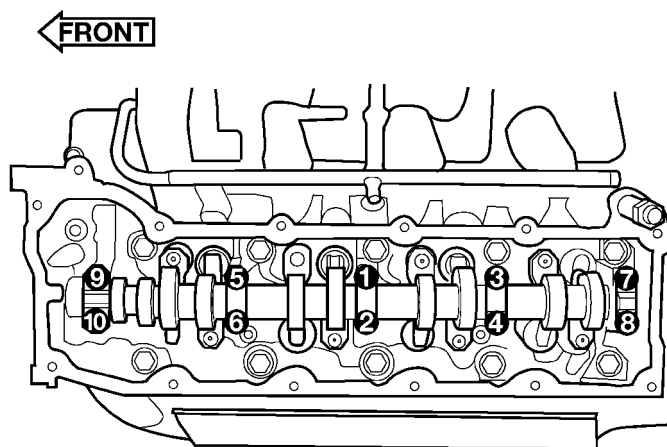
(6) lubricate the camshaft journal with clean engine oil then Position the camshaft (with the sprocket dowel on the left camshaft at 11 o'clock and the right camshaft at 12 o'clock), then position the camshaft bearing caps.

(7) Install the camshaft bearing cap retaining bolts. Tighten the bolts 9-13 N·m (100 in. lbs.) in ½ turn increments in the sequence shown (Fig. 43).

(8) Position the hydraulic lash adjusters and rocker arms (Fig. 40).



## INTAKE/EXHAUST VALVES &amp; SEATS (Continued)



80b6b398

**Fig. 43 Camshaft Bearing Caps Tightening Sequence**

## ROCKER ARM / ADJUSTER ASSEMBLY

### DESCRIPTION

The rocker arms are steel stampings with an integral roller bearing. The rocker arms incorporate a 2.8 mm (0.11 inch) oil hole in the lash adjuster socket for roller and camshaft lubrication.

### REMOVAL

**NOTE:** Disconnect the battery negative cable to prevent accidental starter engagement.

(1) Remove the cylinder head cover (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD/CYLINDER HEAD COVER(S) - REMOVAL).

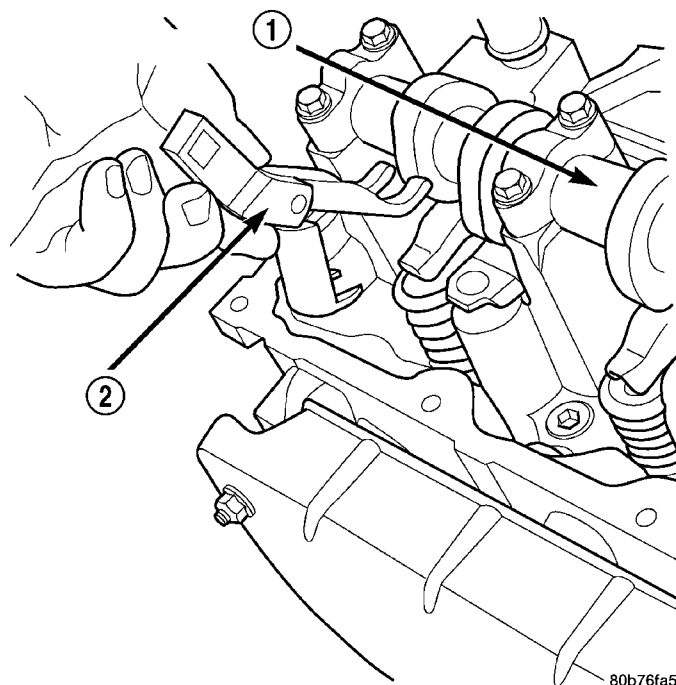
(2) For rocker arm removal on cylinders 3 and 5 Rotate the crankshaft until cylinder #1 is at TDC exhaust stroke.

(3) For rocker arm removal on cylinders 2 and 8 Rotate the crankshaft until cylinder #1 is at TDC compression stroke.

(4) For rocker arm removal on cylinders 4 and 6 Rotate the crankshaft until cylinder #3 is at TDC compression stroke.

(5) For rocker arm removal on cylinders 1 and 7 Rotate the crankshaft until cylinder #2 is at TDC compression stroke.

(6) Using special tool 8516 Rocker Arm Remover, press downward on the valve spring, remove rocker arm (Fig. 44).



80b76fa5

**Fig. 44 Rocker Arm—Removal**

- 1 - CAMSHAFT
- 2 - SPECIAL TOOL 8516

### INSTALLATION

**CAUTION:** Make sure the rocker arms are installed with the concave pocket over the lash adjusters. Failure to do so may cause severe damage to the rocker arms and/or lash adjusters.

**NOTE:** Coat the rocker arms with clean engine oil prior to installation.

(1) For rocker arm installation on cylinders 3 and 5 Rotate the crankshaft until cylinder #1 is at TDC exhaust stroke.

(2) For rocker arm installation on cylinders 2 and 8 Rotate the crankshaft until cylinder #1 is at TDC compression stroke.

(3) For rocker arm installation on cylinders 4 and 6 Rotate the crankshaft until cylinder #3 is at TDC compression stroke.

(4) For rocker arm installation on cylinders 1 and 7 Rotate the crankshaft until cylinder #2 is at TDC compression stroke.

(5) Using special tool 8516 press downward on the valve spring, install rocker arm (Fig. 44).

(6) Install the cylinder head cover (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD/CYLINDER HEAD COVER(S) - INSTALLATION).

## VALVE SPRINGS

### DESCRIPTION

The valve springs are made from high strength chrome silicon steel. The springs are common for intake and exhaust applications, **except for the 4.7L H.O. which has unique intake and exhaust springs**. The valve spring seat is integral with the valve stem seal, which is a positive type seal to control lubrication.

## VALVE STEM SEALS

### DESCRIPTION

The valve stem seals are made of rubber and incorporate an integral steel valve spring seat. The integral garter spring maintains consistent lubrication control to the valve stems.

## ENGINE BLOCK

### DESCRIPTION

The cylinder block is made of cast iron. The block is a closed deck design with the left bank forward. To provide high rigidity and improved NVH an enhanced compacted graphite bedplate is bolted to the block. The block design allows coolant flow between the cylinders bores, and an internal coolant bypass to a single poppet inlet thermostat is included in the cast aluminum front cover.

### STANDARD PROCEDURE—CYLINDER BORE HONING

Before honing, stuff plenty of clean shop towels under the bores and over the crankshaft to keep abrasive materials from entering the crankshaft area.

(1) Used carefully, the Cylinder Bore Sizing Hone C-823, equipped with 220 grit stones, is the best tool for this job. In addition to deglazing, it will reduce taper and out-of-round, as well as removing light scuffing, scoring and scratches. Usually, a few strokes will clean up a bore and maintain the required limits.

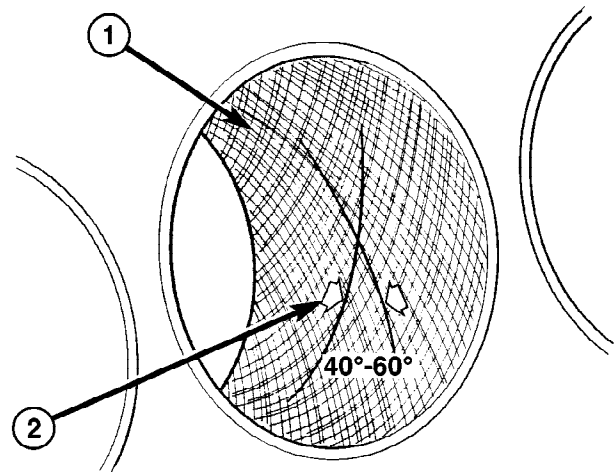
**CAUTION: DO NOT use rigid type hones to remove cylinder wall glaze.**

(2) Deglazing of the cylinder walls may be done if the cylinder bore is straight and round. Use a cylinder surfacing hone, Honing Tool C-3501, equipped with 280 grit stones (C-3501-3810). about 20-60 strokes, depending on the bore condition, will be sufficient to provide a satisfactory surface. Using honing

oil C-3501-3880, or a light honing oil, available from major oil distributors.

**CAUTION: DO NOT use engine or transmission oil, mineral spirits, or kerosene.**

(3) Honing should be done by moving the hone up and down fast enough to get a crosshatch pattern. The hone marks should **INTERSECT** at 50° to 60° for proper seating of rings (Fig. 45).



80861d41

**Fig. 45 CYLINDER BORE CROSSHATCH PATTERN**

1 - CROSSHATCH PATTERN  
2 - INTERSECT ANGLE

(4) A controlled hone motor speed between 200 and 300 RPM is necessary to obtain the proper crosshatch angle. The number of up and down strokes per minute can be regulated to get the desired 50° to 60° angle. Faster up and down strokes increase the crosshatch angle.

(5) After honing, it is necessary that the block be cleaned to remove all traces of abrasive. Use a brush to wash parts with a solution of hot water and detergent. Dry parts thoroughly. Use a clean, white, lint-free cloth to check that the bore is clean. Oil the bores after cleaning to prevent rusting.

### CLEANING

Thoroughly clean the oil pan and engine block gasket surfaces.

Use compressed air to clean out:

- The galley at the oil filter adaptor hole.
- The front and rear oil galley holes.
- The feed holes for the crankshaft main bearings.

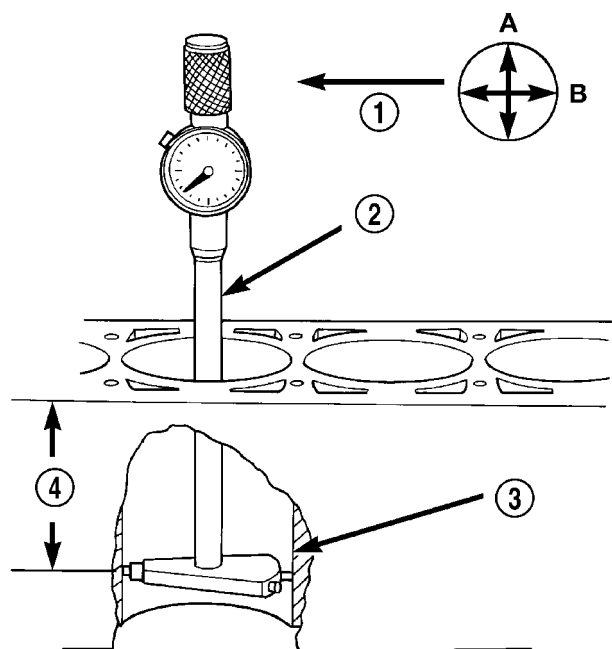


## ENGINE BLOCK (Continued)

Once the block has been completely cleaned, apply Loctite PST pipe sealant with Teflon 592 to the threads of the front and rear oil galley plugs. Tighten the plugs to 34 N·m (25 ft. lbs.) torque.

## INSPECTION

(1) It is mandatory to use a dial bore gauge to measure each cylinder bore diameter. To correctly select the proper size piston, a cylinder bore gauge, capable of reading in 0.003 mm (.0001 in.) INCREMENTS is required. If a bore gauge is not available, do not use an inside micrometer (Fig. 46).



**Fig. 46 BORE GAUGE-TYPICAL**

805dd884

- 1 - FRONT
- 2 - BORE GAUGE
- 3 - CYLINDER BORE
- 4 - 38 MM (1.5 in)

(2) Measure the inside diameter of the cylinder bore at three levels below top of bore. Start perpendicular (across or at 90 degrees) to the axis of the crankshaft and then take two additional readings.

(3) Measure the cylinder bore diameter crosswise to the cylinder block near the top of the bore. Repeat the measurement near the middle of the bore, then repeat the measurement near the bottom of the bore.

(4) Determine taper by subtracting the smaller diameter from the larger diameter.

(5) Rotate measuring device 90° and repeat steps above.

(6) Determine out-of-roundness by comparing the difference between each measurement.

(7) If cylinder bore taper does not exceed 0.025 mm (0.001 inch) and out-of-roundness does not exceed 0.025 mm (0.001 inch), the cylinder bore can

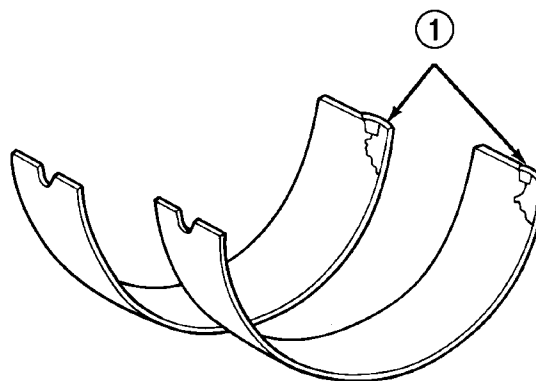
be honed. If the cylinder bore taper or out-of-round condition exceeds these maximum limits, the cylinder block must be replaced. A slight amount of taper always exists in the cylinder bore after the engine has been in use for a period of time.

## CONNECTING ROD BEARINGS

## STANDARD PROCEDURE - CONNECTING ROD BEARING FITTING

Inspect the connecting rod bearings for scoring and bent alignment tabs (Fig. 47). Check the bearings for normal wear patterns, scoring, grooving, fatigue and pitting (Fig. 48). Replace any bearing that shows abnormal wear.

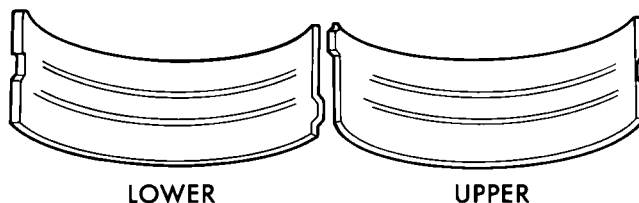
Inspect the connecting rod journals for signs of scoring, nicks and burrs.



J8909-128

**Fig. 47 Locking Tab Inspection**

1 - ABNORMAL CONTACT AREA CAUSED BY LOCKING TABS NOT FULLY SEATED OR BEING BENT



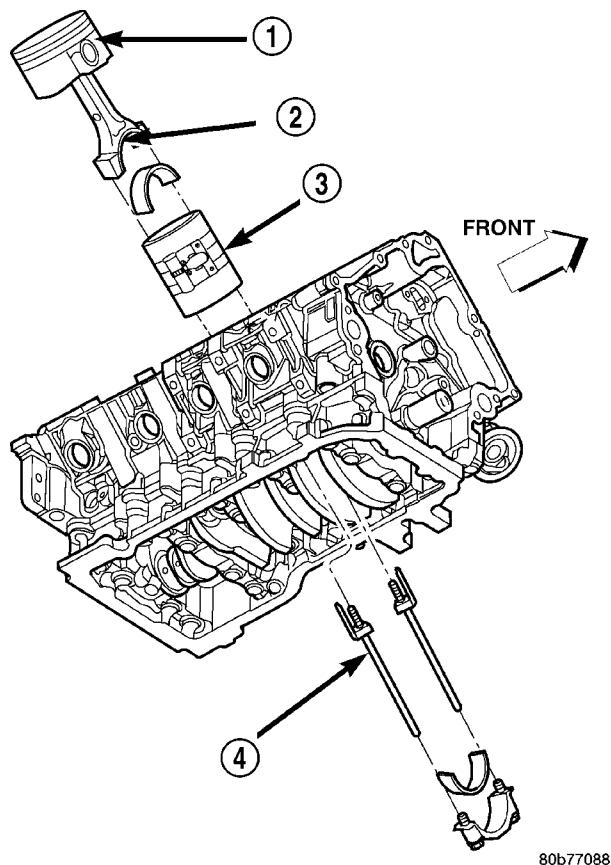
J8909-129

**Fig. 48 Scoring Caused by Insufficient Lubrication or Damaged Crankshaft Journal**

Misaligned or bent connecting rods can cause abnormal wear on pistons, piston rings, cylinder walls, connecting rod bearings and crankshaft connecting rod journals. If wear patterns or damage to any of these components indicate the probability of a misaligned connecting rod, inspect it for correct rod alignment. Replace misaligned, bent or twisted connecting rods.

## CONNECTING ROD BEARINGS (Continued)

- (1) Wipe the oil from the connecting rod journal.
- (2) Lubricate the upper bearing insert and install in connecting rod.
- (3) Use piston ring compressor and Guide Pins Special Tool 8507 (Fig. 49) to install the rod and piston assemblies. The oil slinger slots in the rods must face front of the engine. The "F"'s near the piston wrist pin bore should point to the front of the engine.



**Fig. 49 Piston and Connecting Rod - Installation**

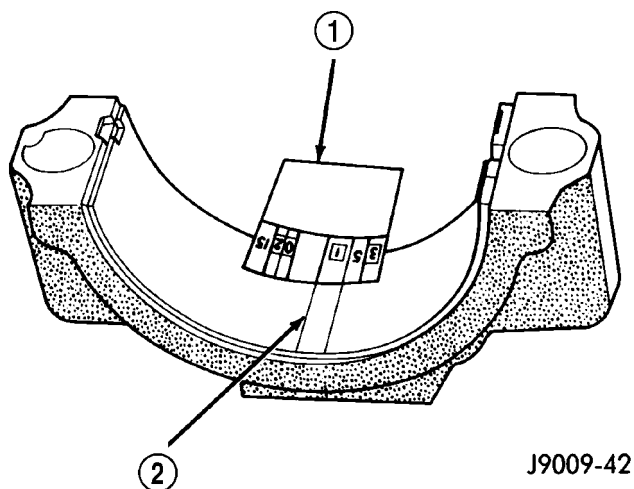
- 1 - "F" TOWARD FRONT OF ENGINE
- 2 - OIL SLINGER SLOT
- 3 - RING COMPRESSOR
- 4 - SPECIAL TOOL 8507

(4) Install the lower bearing insert in the bearing cap. The lower insert must be dry. Place strip of Plastigage across full width of the lower insert at the center of bearing cap. Plastigage must not crumble in use. If brittle, obtain fresh stock.

(5) Install bearing cap and connecting rod on the journal and tighten bolts to 27 N·m (20 ft. lbs.) plus a 90° turn. DO NOT rotate crankshaft. Plastigage will smear, resulting in inaccurate indication.

(6) Remove the bearing cap and determine amount of bearing-to-journal clearance by measuring the width of compressed Plastigage (Fig. 50). Refer to Engine Specifications for the proper clearance. **Plastigage should indicate the same clearance across the entire width of the insert. If the**

**clearance varies, it may be caused by either a tapered journal, bent connecting rod or foreign material trapped between the insert and cap or rod.**



**Fig. 50 Measuring Bearing Clearance with Plastigage**

- 1 - PLASTIGAGE SCALE
- 2 - COMPRESSED PLASTIGAGE

(7) If the correct clearance is indicated, replacement of the bearing inserts is not necessary. Remove the Plastigage from crankshaft journal and bearing insert. Proceed with installation.

(8) If bearing-to-journal clearance exceeds the specification, determine which services bearing set to use the bearing sizes are as follows:

Bearing Mark	SIZE	USED WITH JOURNAL SIZE
<b>.025 US</b>	.025 mm (.001 in.)	50.983-50.967 mm (2.0073-2.0066 in.)
<b>Std.</b>	STANDARD	50.992-51.008 mm (2.0076-2.0082 in.)
<b>.250 US</b>	.250 mm (.010 in.)	50.758-50.742 mm (1.9984-1.9978 in.)

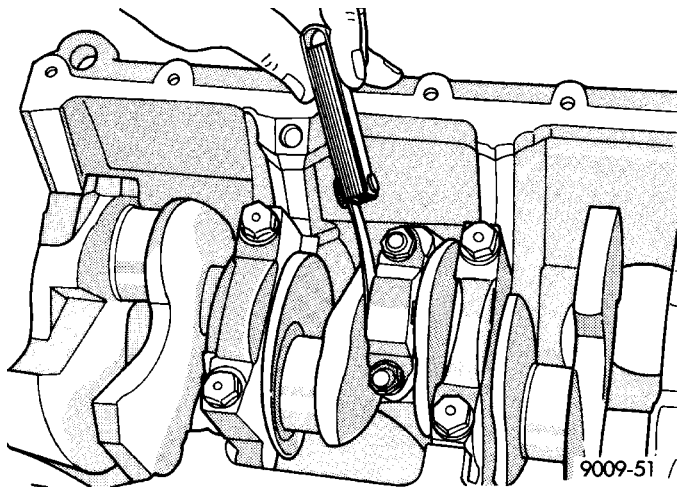
(9) Repeat the Plastigage measurement to verify your bearing selection prior to final assembly.

**CAUTION: Connecting Rod Bolts are Torque to Yield Bolts and Must Not Be Reused. Always replace the Rod Bolts whenever they are loosened or removed.**

## CONNECTING ROD BEARINGS (Continued)

(10) Once you have selected the proper insert, install the insert and cap. Tighten the connecting rod bolts to 27 N·m (20 ft. lbs.) plus a 90° turn.

Slide snug-fitting feeler gauge between the connecting rod and crankshaft journal flange (Fig. 51). Refer to Engine Specifications for the proper clearance. Replace the connecting rod if the side clearance is not within specification.



**Fig. 51 Checking Connecting Rod Side Clearance - Typical**

## CRANKSHAFT

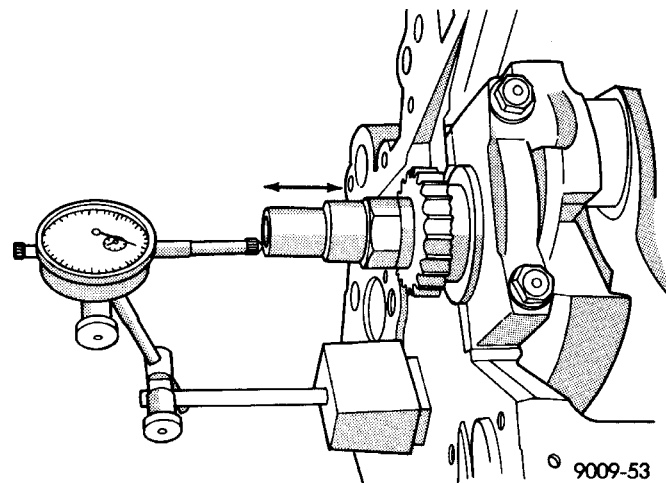
## DESCRIPTION

The 4.7L crankshaft is constructed of nodular cast iron. The crankshaft for the 4.7L H.O. is constructed of **forged steel**. The crankshaft is a cross shaped four throw design with eight counterweights for balancing purposes. The crankshaft is supported by five select fit main bearings with the number three serving as the thrust washer location. The main journals of the crankshaft are cross drilled to improve rod bearing lubrication. The number eight counterweight has provisions for crankshaft position sensor target wheel mounting. The select fit main bearing markings are located on the rear side of the target wheel. The crankshaft oil seals are one piece design. The front oil seal is retained in the timing chain cover, and the rear seal is pressed in to a bore formed by the cylinder block and the bedplate assembly.

## STANDARD PROCEDURE - MEASURING CRANKSHAFT END PLAY

- (1) Mount a dial indicator to front of engine with the locating probe on nose of crankshaft (Fig. 52).
- (2) Move crankshaft all the way to the rear of its travel.
- (3) Zero the dial indicator.

- (4) Move crankshaft all the way to the front and read the dial indicator. (Refer to 9 - ENGINE - SPECIFICATIONS) for end play specification.



**Fig. 52 Checking Crankshaft End Play—Typical**

**NOTE:** To remove the crankshaft from the engine, the engine must be removed from the vehicle.

- (1) Remove the engine. (Refer to 9 - ENGINE - REMOVAL).
- (2) Remove the engine oil pump. (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/LUBRICATION/OIL PUMP - REMOVAL).

**CAUTION:** DO NOT pry on the oil pan gasket when removing the oil pan. The oil pan gasket is mounted to the cylinder block in three locations and will remain attached to block when removing oil pan. Gasket can not be removed with oil pan.

- (3) Remove oil pan. (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/LUBRICATION/OIL PAN - REMOVAL).
- (4) Remove the oil pump pickup tube and oil pan gasket /windage tray.
- (5) Remove the bedplate mounting bolts. Note the location of the three stud bolts for installation.
- (6) Remove the connecting rods from the crankshaft.

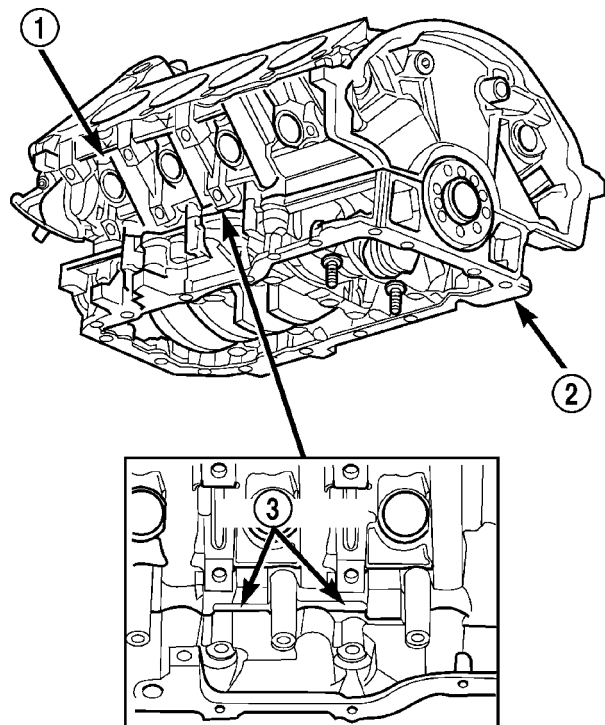
**CAUTION:** The bedplate to cylinder block mating surface is a critical sealing surface. Do not pry on or damage this surface in anyway.

**NOTE:** The bedplate contains the lower main bearing halves. Use care when handling bedplate as not to drop or damage bearing halves. Installing main bearing halves in the wrong position will cause sever damage to the crankshaft.

## CRANKSHAFT (Continued)

**NOTE:** The bedplate has pry points cast into it. Use these points only. The pry points are on both the left and right sides, only the left side is shown.

(7) Carefully pry on the pry points (Fig. 53) to loosen the bedplate then remove the bedplate.



80c07275

**Fig. 53 Bedplate Pry Point Location**

- 1 - CYLINDER BLOCK
- 2 - BEDPLATE
- 3 - PRY POINT

**CAUTION:** When removing the crankshaft, use care not to damage bearing surfaces on the crankshaft.

- (8) Remove the crankshaft.
- (9) Remove the crankshaft target wheel.

## INSPECTION

**NOTE:** Thoroughly inspect the connecting rod bearing bores and main bearing bores for scoring, blueing or severe scratches. Further disassembly may be required.

If connecting rod bearing bores show damage, the cylinder heads must be removed to service the piston and rod assemblies. If the bedplate or the cylinder block main bearing bores show damage the engine must be replaced.

(1) If required, remove the main bearing halves from the cylinder block and bedplate.

(2) Thoroughly clean the bedplate to cylinder block sealing surfaces and main bearing bores. Remove all oil and sealant residue.

(3) Inspect the bedplate main bearing bores for cracks, scoring or severe blueing. If either condition exists the engine must be replaced.

(4) Inspect the crankshaft thrust washers for scoring, scratches, wear or blueing. If either condition exist replace the thrust washer.

(5) Inspect the oil pan gasket/windage tray for splits, tears or cracks in the gasket sealing surfaces. Replace gasket as necessary.

## INSTALLATION

**CAUTION:** Main bearings are select fit. (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE BLOCK/CRANKSHAFT MAIN BEARINGS - STANDARD PROCEDURE) for proper bearing selections.

(1) Lubricate upper main bearing halves with clean engine oil.

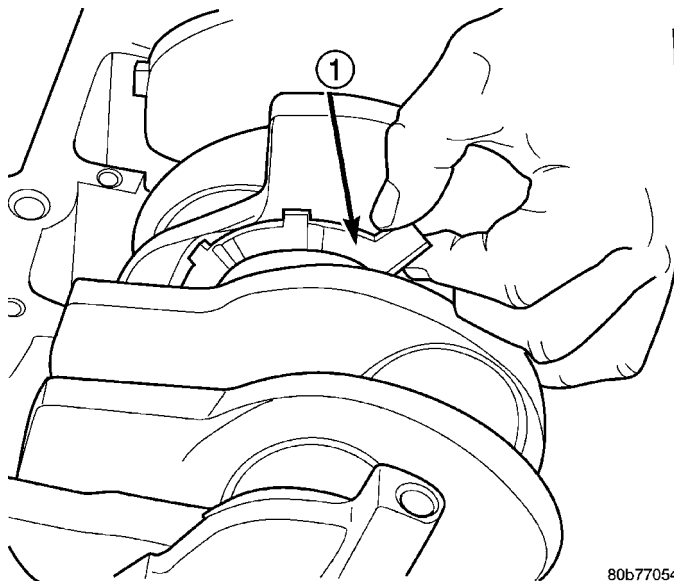
**CAUTION:** When installing crankshaft, use care not to damage bearing surfaces on the crankshaft.

**NOTE:** Apply sealant to the target wheel retaining screws prior to installation.

(2) Install the crankshaft target wheel. Torque the mounting screws to 15 N·m (12 ft. lbs.).

(3) Position crankshaft in cylinder block.

(4) Install the thrust washers (Fig. 54).



80b77054

**Fig. 54 Crankshaft Thrust Washer Installation**

- 1 - CRANKSHAFT THRUST WASHER



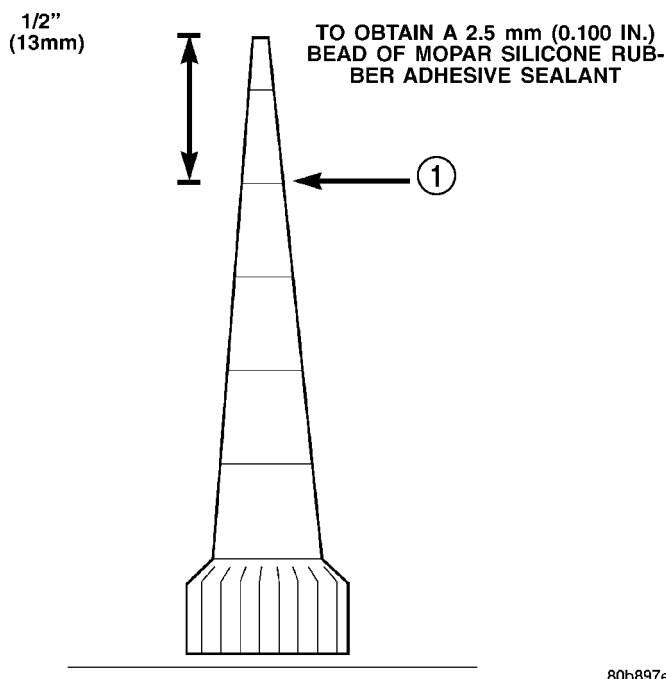
## CRANKSHAFT (Continued)

**CAUTION:** The bedplate to cylinder block mating surface must be coated with sealant prior to installation. Failure to do so will cause severe oil leaks.

**NOTE:** The installation time to install the bedplate after the sealant has been applied is critical.

**NOTE:** Make sure that the bedplate and cylinder block sealing surfaces are clean and free of oil or other contaminants. Contaminants on the sealing surfaces may cause main bearing distortion and/or oil leaks.

(5) Apply a 2.5mm (0.100 inch) (Fig. 55) bead of Mopar® Gen II Silicone Rubber Adhesive sealant to the cylinder block-to-bedplate mating surface as shown (Fig. 56).

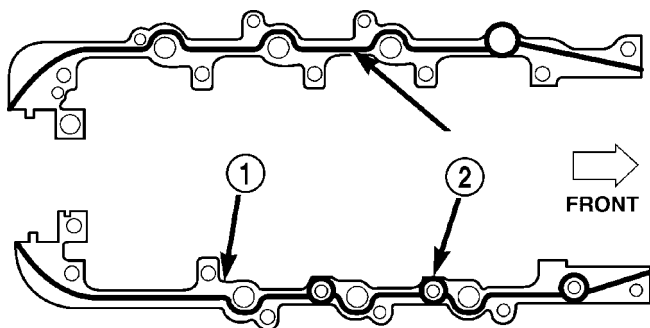


80b897e0

**Fig. 55 Cutting Applicator to Achieve 2.5mm (0.100 in.) Bead**

1 - CUT HERE

(6) Coat the crankshaft main bearing journals with clean engine oil and position the bedplate onto the cylinder block.



80ba77f6

**Fig. 56 Cylinder Block-to-Bedplate Sealant Bead Location**

1 - CYLINDER BLOCK  
2 - SEALANT BEAD LOCATION

**NOTE:** Lubricate the bedplate retaining bolts with clean engine oil prior to installation.

(7) Install the bedplate retaining bolts, making sure to place the stud bolts in the correct location. Torque the bolts in the sequence shown (Fig. 57).

- Tighten bolts **A - L** to 54 N·m (40 ft. lbs.)
- Tighten bolts **1-10** to 2.8 N·m (25 in. lbs.)
- Turn bolts **1-10** an additional 90°.
- Tighten bolts **A1- A6** to 27 N·m (20 ft. lbs.)

(8) Measure crankshaft end play. (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE BLOCK/CRANKSHAFT - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

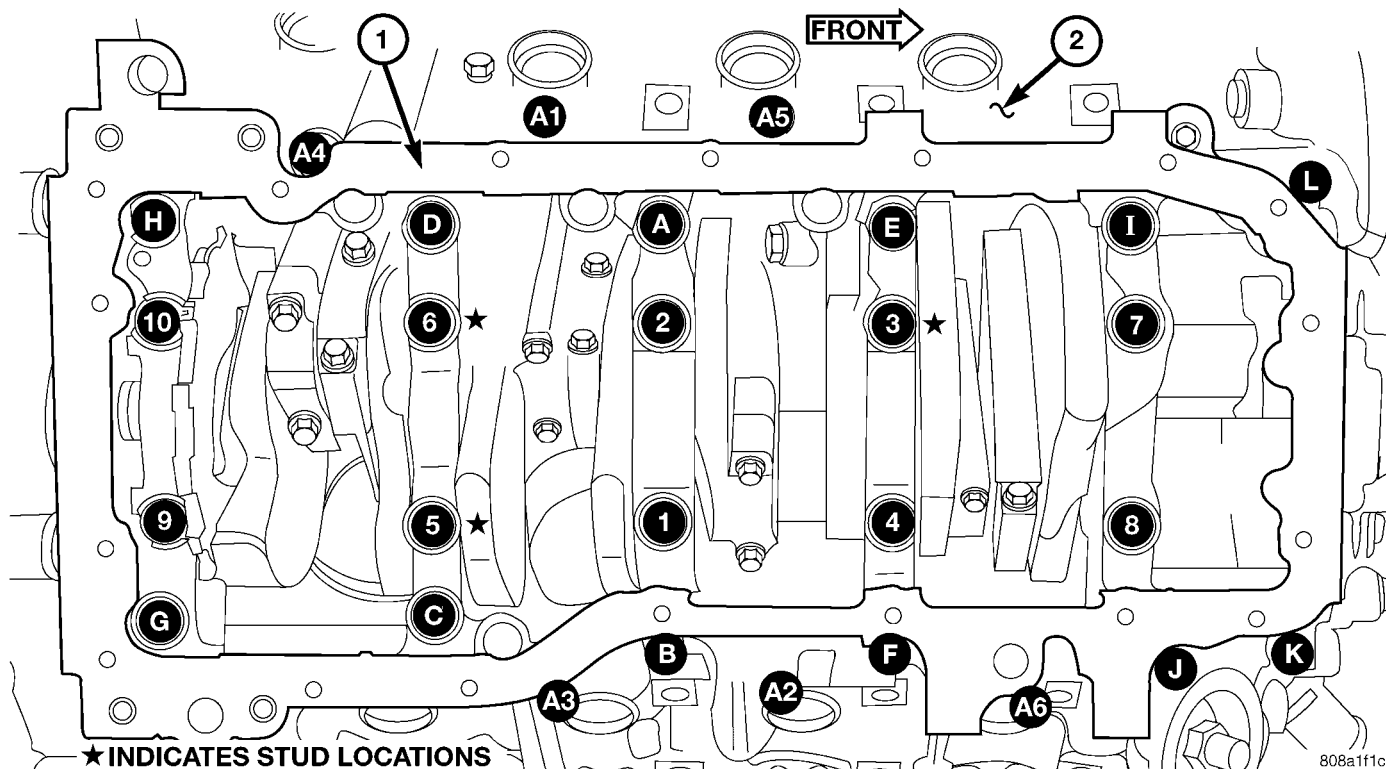
(9) Install the connecting rods and measure side clearance. (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE BLOCK/CONNECTING ROD BEARINGS - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

(10) Position the oil pan gasket/windage tray, using a new o-ring, install the oil pickup tube. Torque the bolt to 28N·m (20 ft. lbs.) torque the nuts to 28N·m (20 ft. lbs.).

(11) Install the oil pan. Torque the retaining bolts to 15 N·m (11 ft. lbs.) in the sequence shown (Fig. 58).

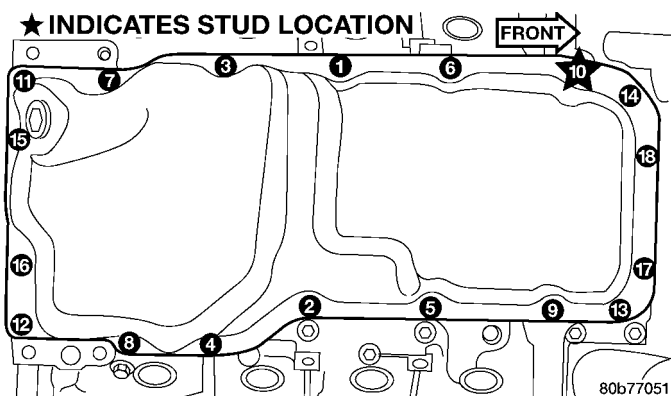
(12) Install the engine (Refer to 9 - ENGINE - INSTALLATION).

## CRANKSHAFT (Continued)

**Fig. 57 Bedplate Tightening Sequence**

1 - BEDPLATE

2 - CYLINDER BLOCK

**Fig. 58 Oil Pan Tightening Sequence****CRANKSHAFT MAIN BEARINGS****STANDARD PROCEDURE—CRANKSHAFT MAIN BEARING - FITTING****MAIN BEARING JOURNAL DIAMETER (CRANKSHAFT REMOVED)**

Crankshaft removed from the cylinder block.

Clean the oil off the main bearing journal.

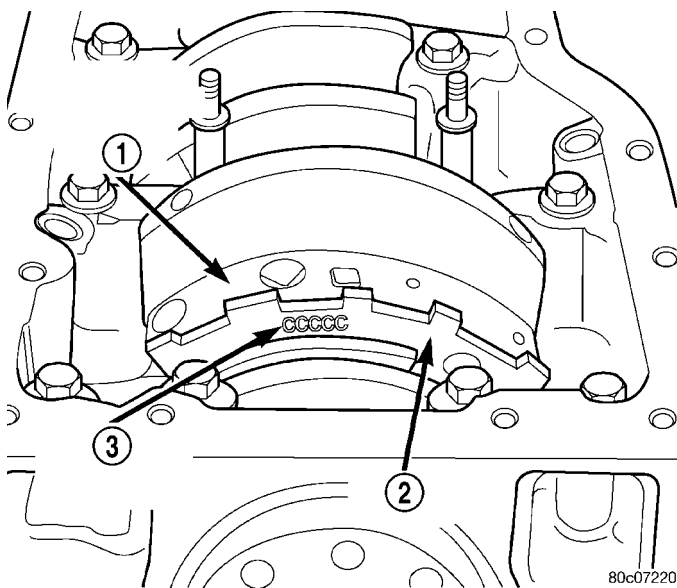
Determine the maximum diameter of the journal with a micrometer. Measure at two locations 90° apart at each end of the journal.

The maximum allowable taper is 0.008mm (0.0004 inch.) and maximum out of round is 0.005mm (0.002 inch). Compare the measured diameter with the journal diameter specification (Main Bearing Fitting Chart). Select inserts required to obtain the specified bearing-to-journal clearance.

## CRANKSHAFT MAIN BEARINGS (Continued)

## CRANKSHAFT MAIN BEARING SELECTION

The main bearings are “select fit” to achieve proper oil clearances. For main bearing selection, the crankshaft position sensor target wheel has grade identification marks stamped into it (Fig. 59). These marks are read from left to right, corresponding with journal number 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5. The crankshaft position sensor target wheel is mounted to the number 8 counter weight on the crankshaft.



**Fig. 59 Main Bearing Markings on Target Wheel**

- 1 - REARMOST CRANKSHAFT COUNTER WEIGHT
- 2 - TARGET WHEEL
- 3 - MAIN BEARING SELECT FIT MARKINGS

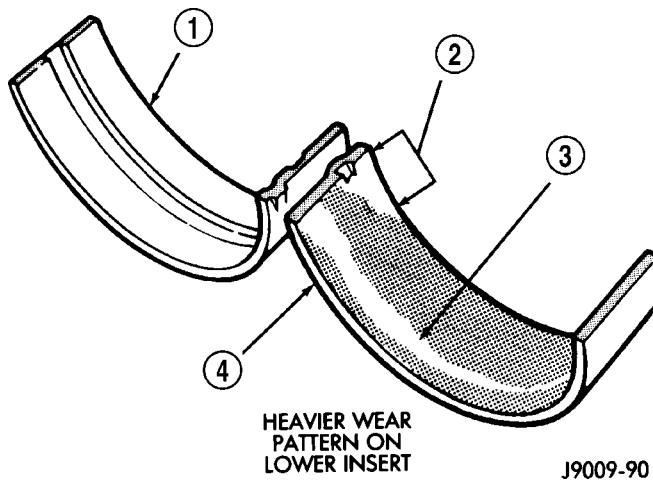
**NOTE:** Service main bearings are coded. These codes identify what size (grade) the bearing is.

## MAIN BEARING SELECTION CHART—4.7L

GRADE MARKING	SIZE mm (in.)	FOR USE WITH JOURNAL SIZE
<b>A</b>	0.008 mm U/S (0.0004 in.) U/S	63.488–63.496 mm (2.4996–2.4999 in.)
<b>B</b>	NOMINAL	63.496–63.504 mm (2.4999–2.5002 in.)
<b>C</b>	0.008 mm O/S (0.0004 in.) O/S	63.504–63.512 mm (2.5002–2.5005 in.)

## INSPECTION

Wipe the inserts clean and inspect for abnormal wear patterns and for metal or other foreign material imbedded in the lining. Normal main bearing insert wear patterns are illustrated (Fig. 60).



**Fig. 60 Main Bearing Wear Patterns**

- 1 - UPPER INSERT
- 2 - NO WEAR IN THIS AREA
- 3 - LOW AREA IN BEARING LINING
- 4 - LOWER INSERT

**NOTE:** If any of the crankshaft journals are scored, the crankshaft must be repaired or replaced.

Inspect the back of the inserts for fractures, scrapings or irregular wear patterns.

Inspect the upper insert locking tabs for damage.  
Replace all damaged or worn bearing inserts.

## CRANKSHAFT OIL SEAL - FRONT

## REMOVAL

- (1) Disconnect negative cable from battery.
- (2) Remove accessory drive belt (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - REMOVAL).
- (3) Remove A/C compressor mousing fasteners and set aside.
- (4) Drain cooling system (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).
- (5) Remove upper radiator hose.
- (6) Disconnect electrical connector for fan mounted inside radiator shroud.
- (7) Remove radiator shroud attaching fasteners.

**NOTE:** Transmission cooler line snaps into shroud lower right hand corner.

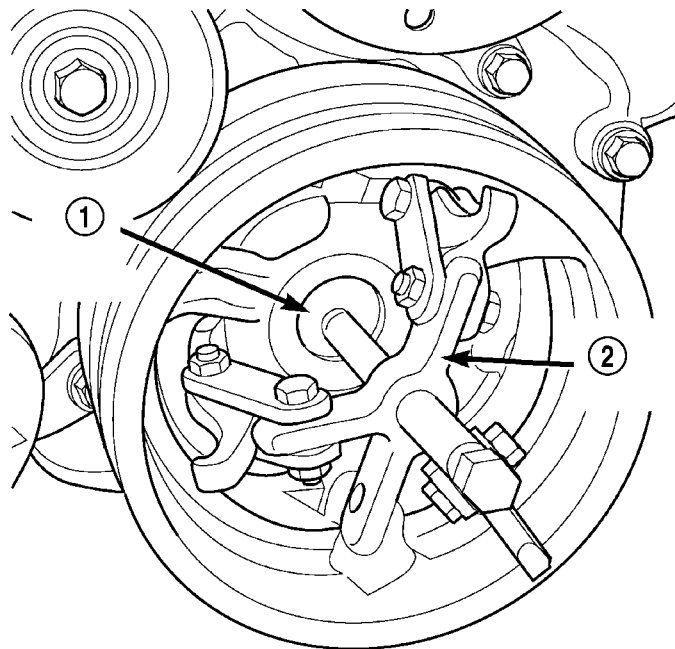


## CRANKSHAFT OIL SEAL - FRONT (Continued)

(8) Remove radiator cooling fan and shroud (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ENGINE/RADIATOR FAN - REMOVAL).

(9) Remove crankshaft damper bolt.

(10) Remove damper using Special Tools 8513 Insert and 1026 Three Jaw Puller (Fig. 61).



80b6b292

**Fig. 61 Crankshaft Damper Removal**

- 1 - SPECIAL TOOL 8513 INSERT  
2 - SPECIAL TOOL 1026

(11) Using Special Tool 8511, remove crankshaft front seal (Fig. 62).

## INSTALLATION

**CAUTION:** To prevent severe damage to the Crankshaft, Damper or Special Tool 8512, thoroughly clean the damper bore and the crankshaft nose before installing Damper.

(1) Using Special Tool 8348 and 8512, install crankshaft front seal (Fig. 63).

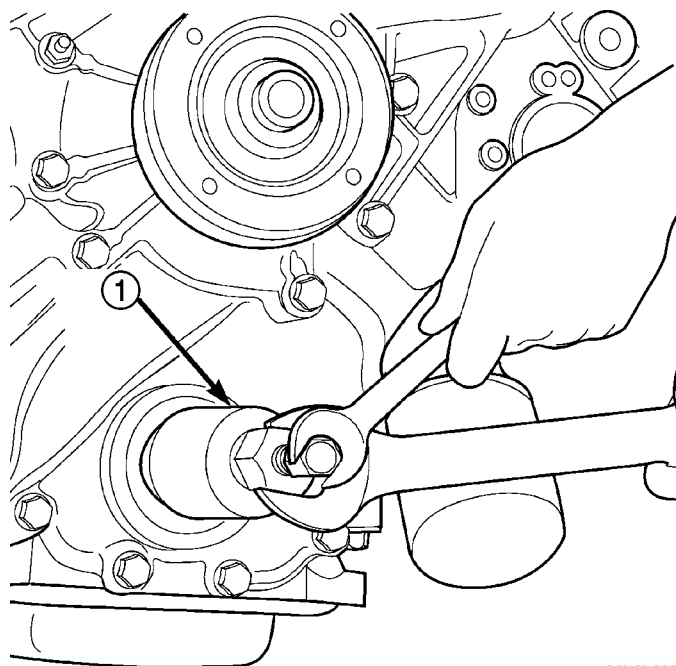
(2) Install vibration damper (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE BLOCK/VIBRATION DAMPER - INSTALLATION).

(3) Install radiator cooling fan and shroud (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ENGINE/RADIATOR FAN - INSTALLATION).

(4) Install upper radiator hose.

(5) Install A/C compressor and tighten fasteners to 54 N·m (40 ft. lbs.).

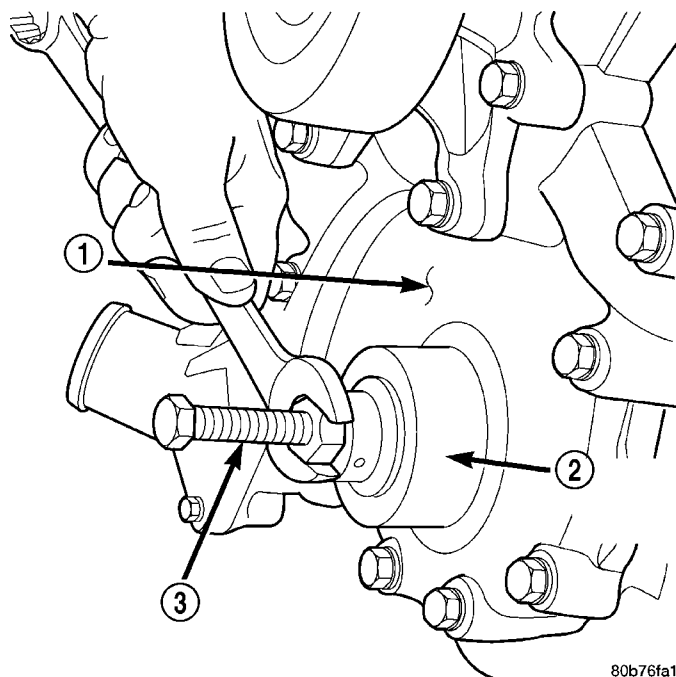
(6) Install accessory drive belt refer (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - INSTALLATION).



80b6b290

**Fig. 62 Crankshaft Front Seal Removal**

- 1 - SPECIAL TOOL 8511



80b76fa1

**Fig. 63 Crankshaft Front Seal Installation**

- 1 - TIMING CHAIN COVER  
2 - SPECIAL TOOL 8348  
3 - SPECIAL TOOL 8512

(7) Refill cooling system (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

(8) Connect negative cable to battery.

## CRANKSHAFT OIL SEAL - REAR

### REMOVAL

**NOTE:** This procedure can be performed in vehicle.

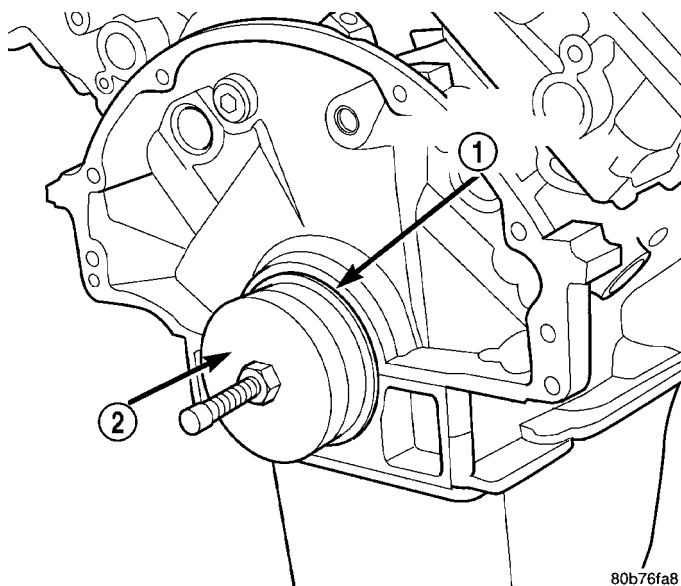
(1) If being performed in vehicle, remove the transmission.

(2) Remove the flexplate (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE BLOCK/FLEX PLATE - REMOVAL).

**NOTE:** The crankshaft oil seal **CAN NOT** be reused after removal.

**NOTE:** The crankshaft rear oil seal remover Special Tool 8506 must be installed deeply into the seal. Continue to tighten the removal tool into the seal until the tool can not be turned farther. Failure to install tool correctly the first time will cause tool to pull free of seal without removing seal from engine.

(3) Using Special Tool 8506 (Fig. 64), remove the crankshaft rear oil seal.

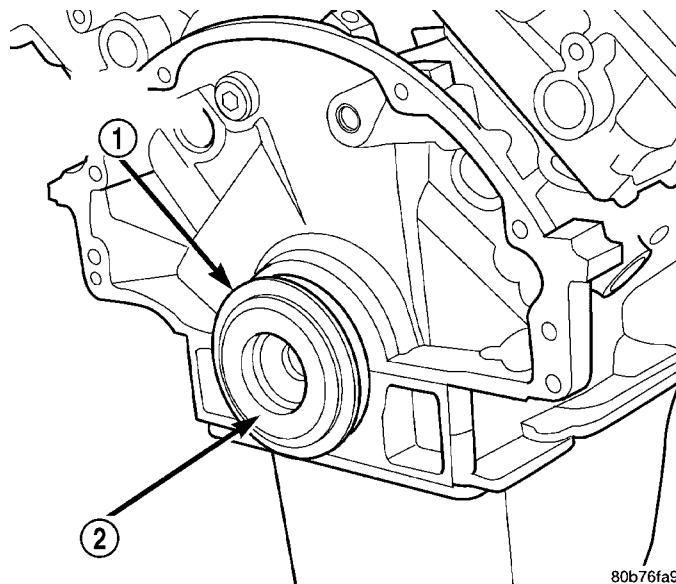


**Fig. 64 Crankshaft Rear Oil Seal Removal**

- 1 - REAR CRANKSHAFT SEAL
- 2 - SPECIAL TOOL 8506

### INSTALLATION

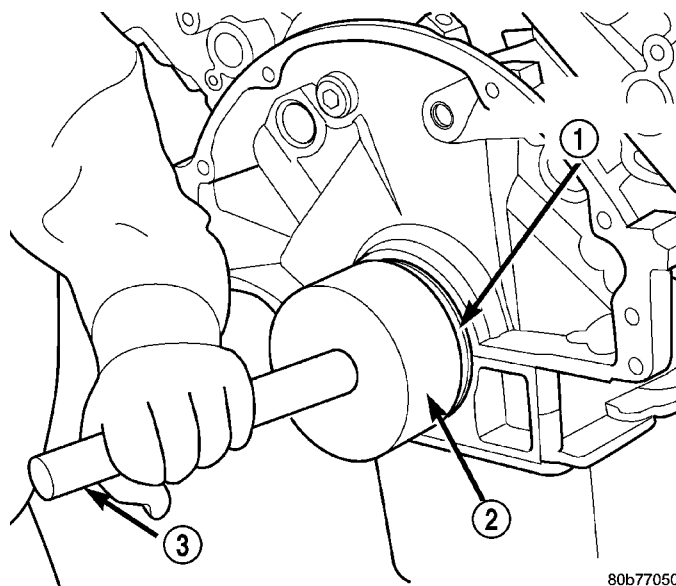
(1) Lubricate the crankshaft flange with engine oil.  
 (2) Position the magnetic seal guide Special Tool 8349-2 (Fig. 65) onto the crankshaft rear face. Then position the crankshaft rear oil seal onto the guide.



**Fig. 65 Crankshaft Rear Oil Seal Guide Special Tool 8349-2 and Oil**

- 1 - REAR CRANKSHAFT SEAL
- 2 - SPECIAL TOOL 8349-2 GUIDE

(3) Using Special Tools 8349 Crankshaft Rear Oil Seal Installer and C-4171 Driver Handle (Fig. 66), with a hammer, tap the seal into place. Continue to tap on the driver handle until the seal installer seats against the cylinder block crankshaft bore.



**Fig. 66 Crankshaft Rear Oil Seal Installation**

- 1 - REAR CRANKSHAFT SEAL
- 2 - SPECIAL TOOL 8349-1 INSTALLER
- 3 - SPECIAL TOOL C-4171 HANDLE

(4) Install the flexplate.  
 (5) Install the transmission.

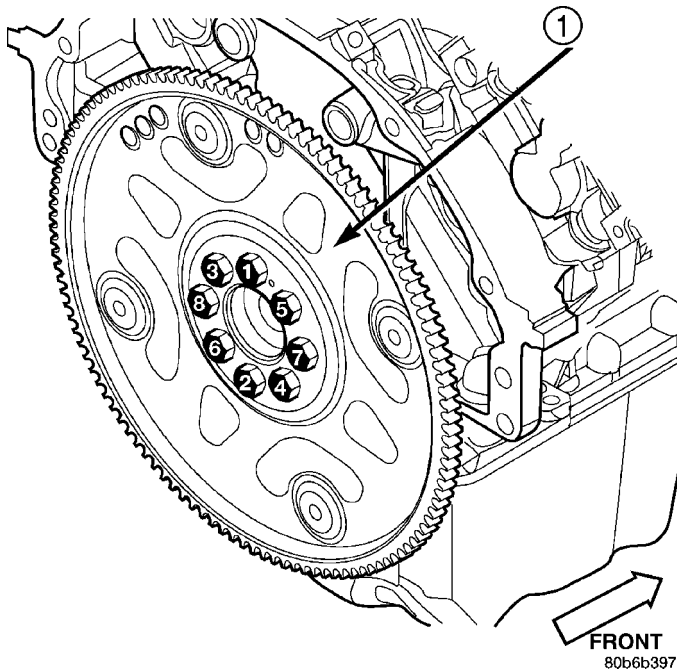
## FLEX PLATE

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove the transmission.
- (2) Remove the bolts and flexplate.

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Position the flexplate onto the crankshaft and install the bolts hand tight.
- (2) Tighten the flexplate retaining bolts to 60 N·m (45 ft. lbs.) in the sequence shown (Fig. 67).
- (3) Install the transmission.



**Fig. 67 Flexplate Tightening Sequence**

1 - FLEXPLATE

## PISTON & CONNECTING ROD

### DESCRIPTION

**CAUTION:** Do not use a metal stamp to mark connecting rods as damage may result, instead use ink or a scratch awl.

The pistons are made of a high strength aluminum alloy. The anodized top ring groove and crown has been replaced with a coated top ring that is blue in color on the bottom surface. Piston skirts are coated with a solid lubricant (Molykote) to reduce friction and provide scuff resistance. The connecting rods are made of forged powdered metal, with a "fractured cap" design. A pressed fit piston pin is used to attach the piston and connecting rod on the 4.7L. The 4.7L HO uses a full floating piston pin.

### STANDARD PROCEDURE—PISTON FITTING

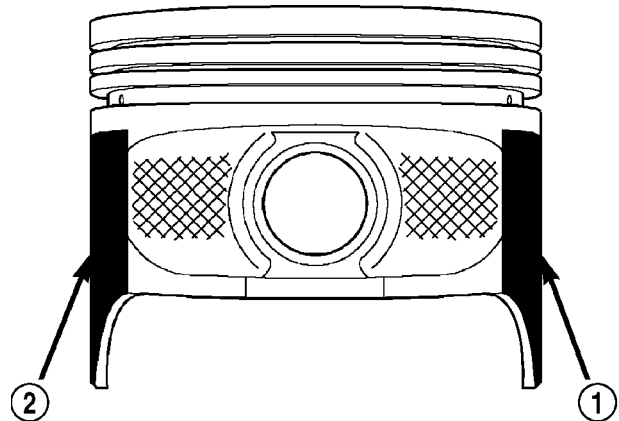
(1) To correctly select the proper size piston, a cylinder bore gauge, capable of reading in 0.003 mm (.0001 in.) INCREMENTS is required. If a bore gauge is not available, do not use an inside micrometer.

(2) Measure the inside diameter of the cylinder bore at a point 38.0 mm (1.5 inches) below top of bore. Start perpendicular (across or at 90 degrees) to the axis of the crankshaft at point A and then take an additional bore reading 90 degrees to that at point B (Fig. 69).

(3) The coated pistons will be serviced with the piston pin and connecting rod pre-assembled.

(4) The coating material is applied to the piston after the final piston machining process. Measuring the outside diameter of a coated piston will not provide accurate results (Fig. 68). Therefore measuring the inside diameter of the cylinder bore with a dial Bore Gauge is **MANDATORY**. To correctly select the proper size piston, a cylinder bore gauge capable of reading in 0.003 mm (.0001 in.) increments is required.

(5) Piston installation into the cylinder bore requires slightly more pressure than that required for non-coated pistons. The bonded coating on the piston will give the appearance of a line-to-line fit with the cylinder bore.



80aac2ao

**Fig. 68 DO NOT MEASURE MOLY COATED PISTON**

1 - MOLY COATED  
2 - MOLY COATED

### REMOVAL

- (1) Disconnect negative cable from battery.
- (2) Remove the following components:
  - Oil pan and gasket/windage tray (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/LUBRICATION/OIL PAN - REMOVAL).
  - Cylinder head covers (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD/CYLINDER HEAD COVER(S) - REMOVAL) and (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD/CYLINDER HEAD COVER(S) - REMOVAL).

## PISTON &amp; CONNECTING ROD (Continued)

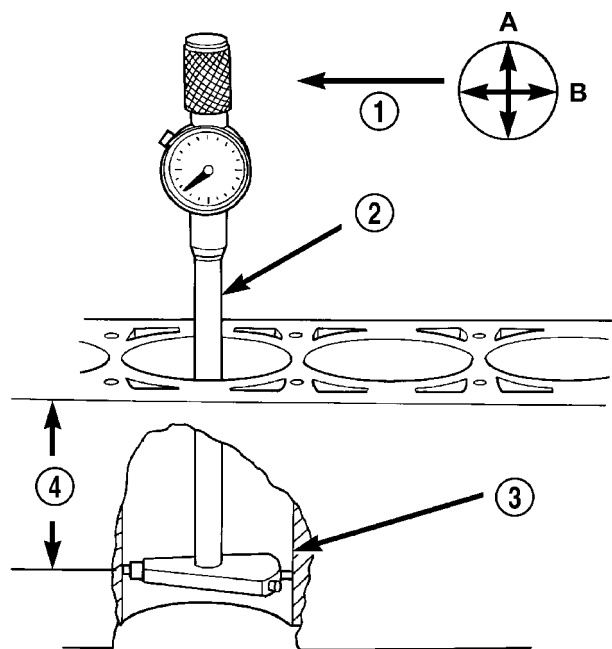


Fig. 69 BORE GAUGE -TYPICAL

805dd884

- 1 - FRONT
- 2 - BORE GAUGE
- 3 - CYLINDER BORE
- 4 - 38 MM  
(1.5 in)

• Timing chain cover (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ VALVE TIMING/TIMING BELT / CHAIN COVER(S) - REMOVAL).

• Cylinder head(s) (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD - REMOVAL) and (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ CYLINDER HEAD - REMOVAL).

(3) If necessary, remove top ridge of cylinder bores with a reliable ridge reamer before removing pistons from cylinder block. **Be sure to keep tops of pistons covered during this operation.** Pistons and connecting rods must be removed from top of cylinder block. When removing piston and connecting rod assemblies from the engine, rotate crankshaft so the each connecting rod is centered in cylinder bore.

**CAUTION: DO NOT** use a number stamp or a punch to mark connecting rods or caps, as damage to connecting rods could occur

**NOTE:** Connecting rods and bearing caps are not interchangeable and should be marked before removing to ensure correct reassembly.

(4) Mark connecting rod and bearing cap positions using a permanent ink marker or scribe tool (Fig. 70).

**CAUTION:** Care must be taken not to damage the fractured rod and cap joint face surfaces, as engine damage may occur.

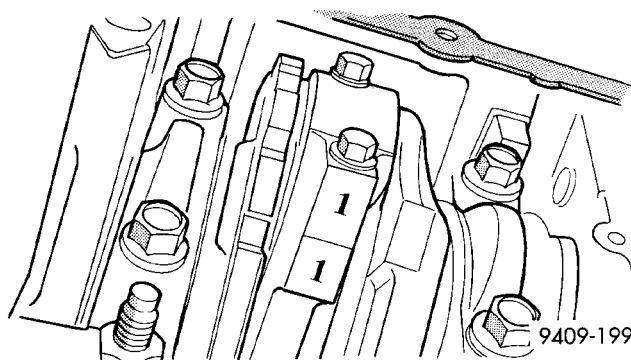


Fig. 70 Identify Connecting Rod to Cylinder Position—Typical

(5) Remove connecting rod cap. Install Special Tool 8507 Connecting Rod Guides into the connecting rod being removed. Remove piston from cylinder bore. Repeat this procedure for each piston being removed.

**CAUTION:** Care must be taken not to nick crankshaft journals, as engine damage may occur

(6) Immediately after piston and connecting rod removal, install bearing cap on the mating connecting rod to prevent damage to the fractured cap and rod surfaces.

(7) Carefully remove piston rings from piston(s), starting from the top ring down.

## CLEANING

**CAUTION: DO NOT** use a wire wheel or other abrasive cleaning devise to clean the pistons or connecting rods. The pistons have a Moly coating, this coating must not be damaged.

(1) Using a suitable cleaning solvent clean the pistons in warm water and towel dry.

(2) Use a wood or plastic scraper to clean the ring land grooves.

**CAUTION: DO NOT** remove the piston pin from the piston and connecting rod assembly.

## INSPECTION

Check the connecting rod journal for excessive wear, taper and scoring (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE BLOCK/CONNECTING ROD BEARINGS - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

Check the connecting rod for signs of twist or bending.

Check the piston for taper and elliptical shape before it is fitted into the cylinder bore (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE BLOCK/PISTON & CONNECTING ROD - STANDARD PROCEDURE).



## PISTON &amp; CONNECTING ROD (Continued)

Check the piston for scoring, or scraping marks in the piston skirts. Check the ring lands for cracks and/or deterioration.

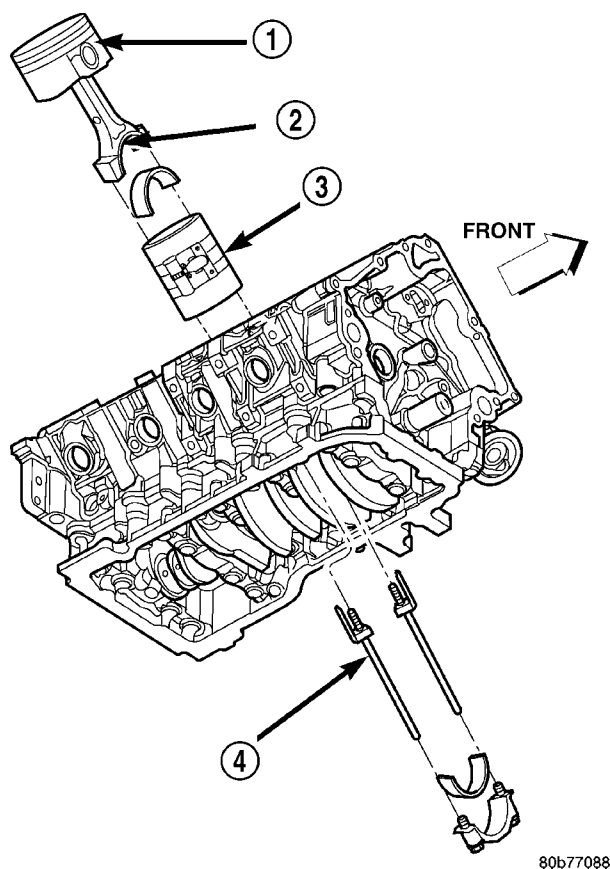
## INSTALLATION

(1) Before installing piston and connecting rod assemblies into the bore, install the piston rings.

(2) Immerse the piston head and rings in clean engine oil. Position a ring compressor over the piston and rings. Tighten ring compressor. **Ensure position of rings do not change during this operation.**

(3) Position bearing onto connecting rod. Ensure that hole in bearing shell aligns with hole in connecting rod. Lubricate bearing surface with clean engine oil.

(4) Install Special Tool 8507 Connecting Rod Guides into connecting rod bolt threads (Fig. 71).

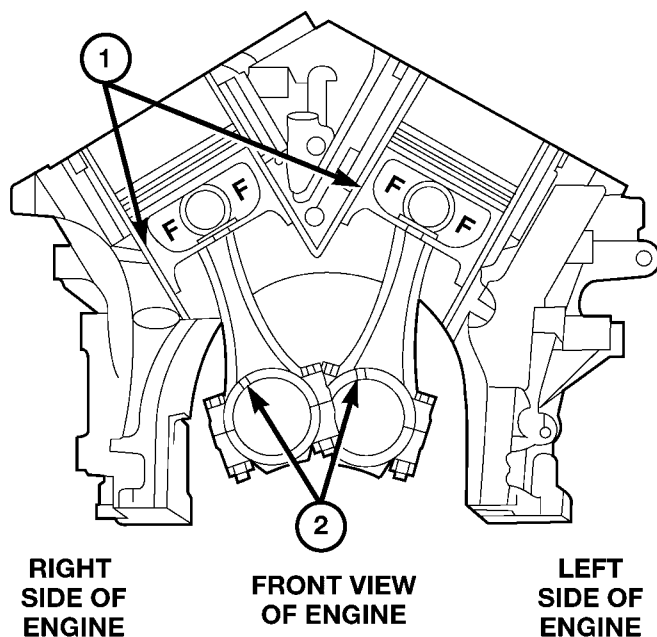


**Fig. 71 PISTON AND CONNECTING ROD INSTALLATION**

- 1 - "F" TOWARD FRONT OF ENGINE
- 2 - OIL SLINGER SLOT
- 3 - RING COMPRESSOR
- 4 - SPECIAL TOOL 8507

(5) The pistons are marked on the piston pin bore surface with an raised "F" indicating installation position. This mark must be pointing toward the front of engine on both cylinder banks. The connect-

ing rod oil slinger slot faces the front of the engine (Fig. 72).



808a1f06

**Fig. 72 PISTON AND CONNECTING ROD ORIENTATION**

- 1 - MAJOR THRUST SIDE OF PISTON
- 2 - OIL SLINGER SLOT

(6) Wipe cylinder bore clean and lubricate with engine oil.

(7) Rotate crankshaft until connecting rod journal is on the center of cylinder bore. Insert rod and piston into cylinder bore and carefully position connecting rod guides over crankshaft journal.

(8) Tap piston down in cylinder bore using a hammer handle. While at the same time, guide connecting rod into position on rod journal.

**CAUTION: Connecting Rod Bolts are Torque to Yield Bolts and Must Not Be Reused. Always replace the Rod Bolts whenever they are loosened or removed.**

(9) Lubricate rod bolts and bearing surfaces with engine oil. Install connecting rod cap and bearing. Tighten bolts to 27 N·m (20 ft. lbs.) plus 90°.

(10) Install the following components:

- Cylinder head(s). (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD - INSTALLATION).
- Timing chain and cover. (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/VALVE TIMING/TIMING BELT / CHAIN COVER(S) - INSTALLATION).
- Cylinder head covers (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD/CYLINDER HEAD COVER(S) - INSTALLATION).

## PISTON &amp; CONNECTING ROD (Continued)

- Oil pan and gasket/windage tray. (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/LUBRICATION/OIL PAN - INSTALLATION).

(11) Fill crankcase with proper engine oil to correct level.

(12) Connect negative cable to battery.

## PISTON RINGS

## STANDARD PROCEDURE - PISTON RING FITTING

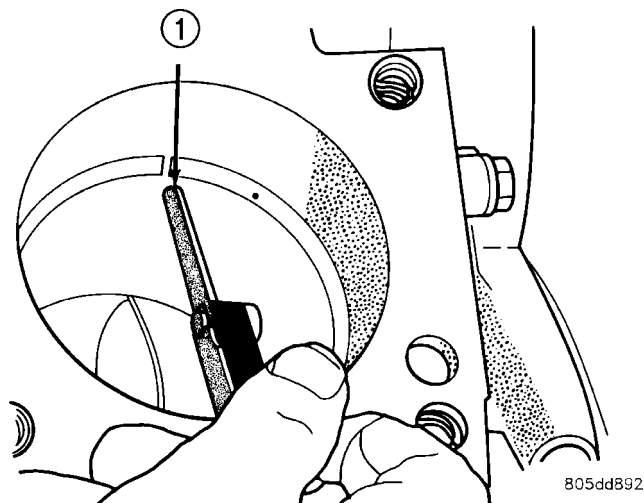
Before reinstalling used rings or installing new rings, the ring clearances must be checked.

- (1) Wipe the cylinder bore clean.
- (2) Insert the ring in the cylinder bore.

**NOTE:** The ring gap measurement must be made with the ring positioned at least 12mm (0.50 inch.) from bottom of cylinder bore.

(3) Using a piston, to ensure that the ring is squared in the cylinder bore, slide the ring downward into the cylinder.

(4) Using a feeler gauge check the ring end gap (Fig. 73). Replace any rings not within specification.



**Fig. 73 Ring End Gap Measurement - Typical**

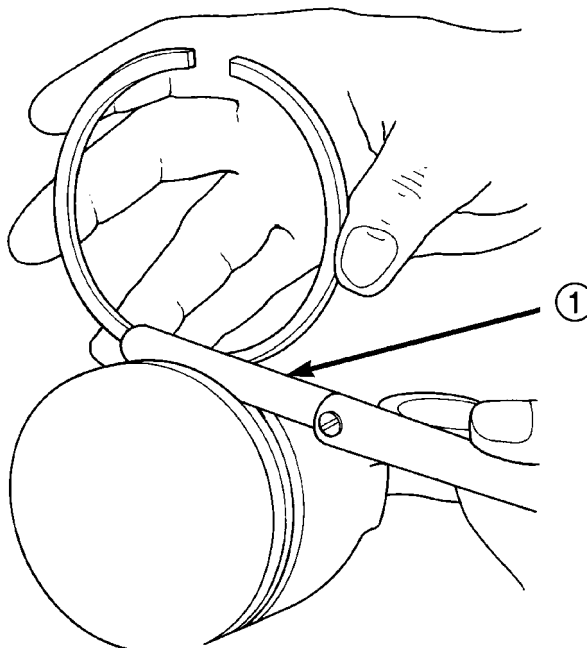
1 - FEELER GAUGE

## PISTON RING SIDE CLEARANCE

**NOTE:** Make sure the piston ring grooves are clean and free of nicks and burrs.

(5) Measure the ring side clearance as shown (Fig. 74) make sure the feeler gauge fits snugly between the ring land and the ring. Replace any ring not within specification.

(6) Rotate the ring around the piston, the ring must rotate in the groove with out binding.



805dd887

**Fig. 74 Measuring Piston Ring Side Clearance**

1 - FEELER GAUGE

## PISTON RING SPECIFICATION CHART

Ring Position	Groove Clearance	Maximum Clearance
Upper Ring	.051-.094mm (0.0020- .0037 in.)	0.11mm (0.004 in.)
Intermediate Ring	0.04-0.08mm (0.0016-0.0031 in.)	0.10mm (0.004 in.)
Oil Control Ring (Steel Rails)	.019-.229mm (.0007-.0090 in.)	.25mm (0.010 in.)
Ring Position	Ring Gap	Wear Limit
Upper Ring	0.20-0.36mm (0.0079-0.0142 in.)	0.43mm (0.0017 in.)
Intermediate Ring	0.37-0.63mm (0.0146-0.0249 in.)	0.74mm (0.029 in.)
Oil Control Ring (Steel Rail)	0.025-0.76mm (0.0099- 0.03 in.)	1.55mm (0.061 in.)

## PISTON RINGS (Continued)

(7) The No. 1 and No. 2 piston rings have a different cross section. Ensure No. 2 ring is installed with manufacturers I.D. mark (Dot) facing up, towards top of the piston.

**NOTE:** Piston rings are installed in the following order:

- Oil ring expander.
- Upper oil ring side rail.
- Lower oil ring side rail.
- No. 2 Intermediate piston ring.
- No. 1 Upper piston ring.

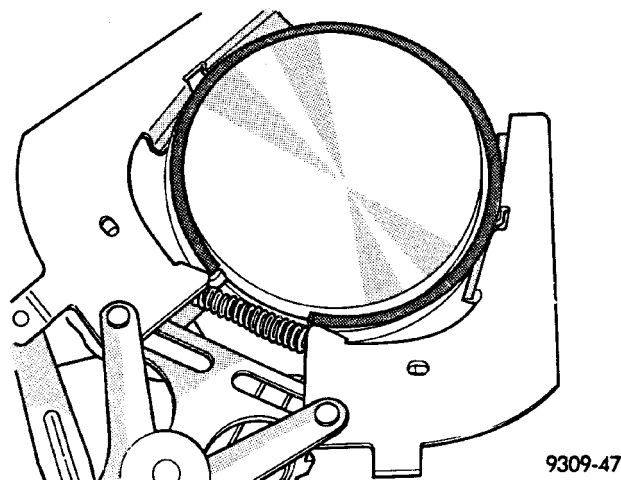
(8) Install the oil ring expander.

(9) Install upper side rail (Fig. 75) by placing one end between the piston ring groove and the expander ring. Hold end firmly and press down the portion to be installed until side rail is in position. Repeat this step for the lower side rail.

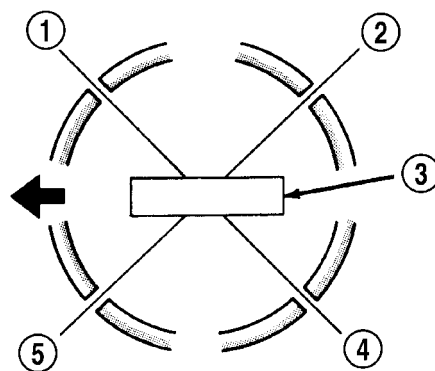
(10) Install No. 2 intermediate piston ring using a piston ring installer (Fig. 76).

(11) Install No. 1 upper piston ring using a piston ring installer (Fig. 76).

(12) Position piston ring end gaps as shown in (Fig. 77). It is important that expander ring gap is at least 45° from the side rail gaps, but not on the piston pin center or on the thrust direction.

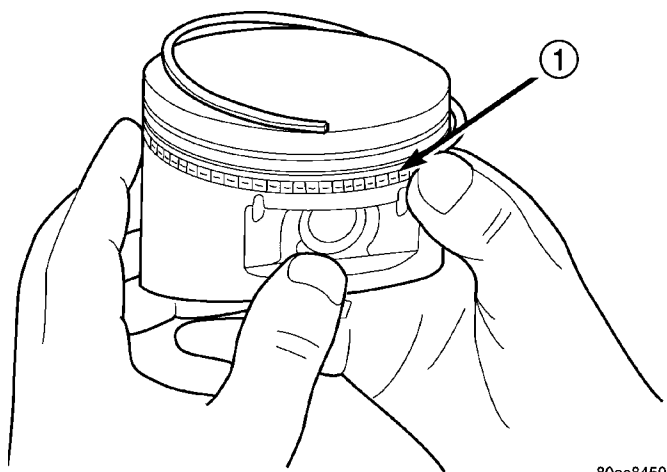


**Fig. 76 Upper and Intermediate Rings—Installation**



**Fig. 77 Piston Ring End Gap Position**

- 1 - SIDE RAIL UPPER
- 2 - NO. 1 RING GAP
- 3 - PISTON PIN
- 4 - SIDE RAIL LOWER
- 5 - NO. 2 RING GAP AND SPACER EXPANDER GAP



**Fig. 75 Side Rail—Installation**

1 - SIDE RAIL END



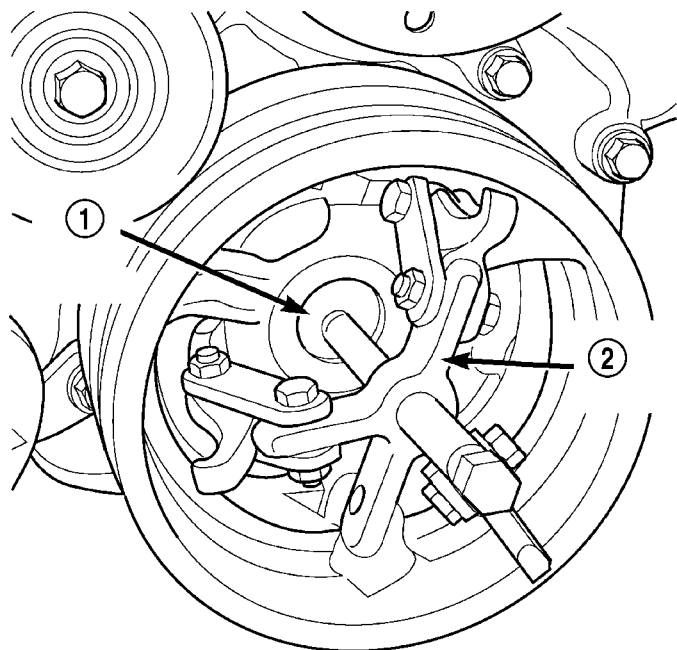
## VIBRATION DAMPER

### REMOVAL

- (1) Disconnect negative cable from battery.
- (2) Remove accessory drive belt (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - REMOVAL).

**NOTE:** Transmission cooler line snaps into shroud lower right hand corner.

- (3) Remove crankshaft damper bolt.
- (4) Remove damper using Special Tools 8513 Insert and 1026 Three Jaw Puller (Fig. 78).



80b6b292

**Fig. 78 CRANKSHAFT DAMPER-REMOVAL**

- 1 - SPECIAL TOOL 8513 INSERT
- 2 - SPECIAL TOOL 1026

### INSTALLATION

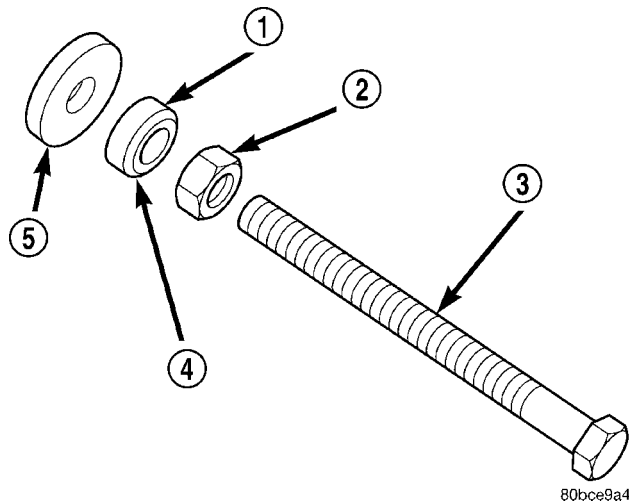
**CAUTION:** To prevent severe damage to the Crankshaft, Damper or Special Tool 8512, thoroughly clean the damper bore and the crankshaft nose before installing Damper.

- (1) Align crankshaft damper slot with key in crankshaft. Slide damper onto crankshaft slightly.

**CAUTION:** Special Tool 8512A, is assembled in a specific sequence. Failure to assemble this tool in this sequence can result in tool failure and severe damage to either the tool or the crankshaft.

- (2) Assemble Special Tool 8512-A as follows, The nut is threaded onto the shaft first. Then the roller

bearing is placed onto the threaded rod (The hardened bearing surface of the bearing **MUST** face the nut). Then the hardened washer slides onto the threaded rod (Fig. 79). Once assembled coat the threaded rod's threads with Mopar® Nickel Anti-Seize or (Loctite No. 771).

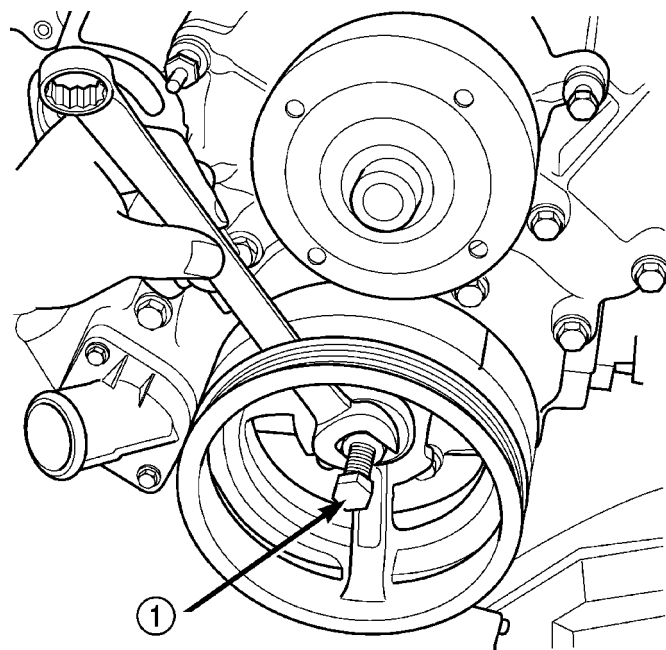


80bce9a4

**Fig. 79 PROPER ASSEMBLY METHOD FOR SPECIAL TOOL 8512-A**

- 1 - BEARING
- 2 - NUT
- 3 - THREADED ROD
- 4 - BEARING HARDENED SURFACE (FACING NUT)
- 5 - HARDENED WASHER

- (3) Using Special Tool 8512A, press damper onto crankshaft (Fig. 80).



80b6b294

**Fig. 80 Crankshaft Damper Installation**

- 1 - SPECIAL TOOL 8512A

## VIBRATION DAMPER (Continued)

(4) Install then tighten crankshaft damper bolt to 175 N·m (130 ft. lbs.).

(5) Install accessory drive belt (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - INSTALLATION).

(6) Connect negative cable to battery.

## STRUCTURAL COVER

## DESCRIPTION

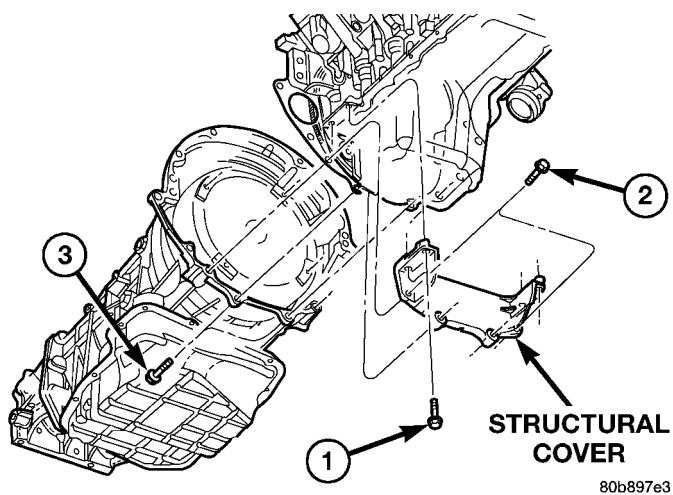
The structural dust cover is made of die cast aluminum and joins the lower half of the transmission bell housing to the engine bedplate.

## OPERATION

The structural cover provides additional powertrain stiffness and reduces noise and vibration.

## REMOVAL

- (1) Raise vehicle on hoist.
- (2) Remove the left hand exhaust pipe from exhaust manifold.
- (3) Loosen the right hand exhaust manifold-to-exhaust pipe retaining bolts.
- (4) Remove the eight bolts retaining structural cover (Fig. 81) in the sequence shown.
- (5) Pivot the exhaust pipe downward and remove the structural cover.



**Fig. 81 Structural Cover**

- 1 - BOLT
- 2 - BOLT
- 3 - BOLT

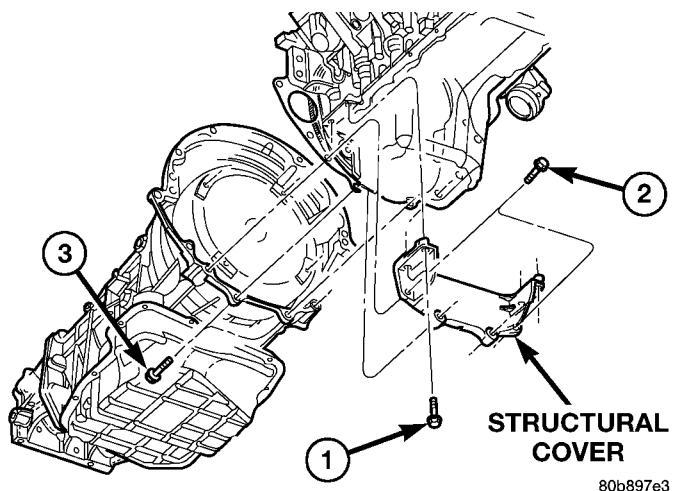
## INSTALLATION

**CAUTION:** The structural cover must be installed as described in the following steps. Failure to do so will cause severe damage to the cover.

- (1) Position the structural cover in the vehicle.
- (2) Install all four bolts retaining the cover-to-engine. DO NOT tighten the bolts at this time.
- (3) Install the four cover-to-transmission bolts. Do NOT tighten at this time.

**CAUTION:** The structural cover must be held tightly against both the engine and the transmission bell housing during tightening sequence. Failure to do so may cause damage to the cover.

- (4) Starting with the two rear cover-to-engine bolts, tighten bolts (1) (Fig. 82) to 54 N·m (40 ft. lbs.), then tighten bolts (2) (Fig. 82) and (3) to 54 N·m (40 ft. lbs.) in the sequence shown.



**Fig. 82 Structural Cover**

- 1 - BOLT
- 2 - BOLT
- 3 - BOLT

(5) Install the exhaust pipe on left hand exhaust manifold.

(6) Tighten exhaust manifold-to-exhaust pipe retaining bolts to 20–26 N·m (15–20 ft. lbs.).

## FRONT MOUNT

### REMOVAL

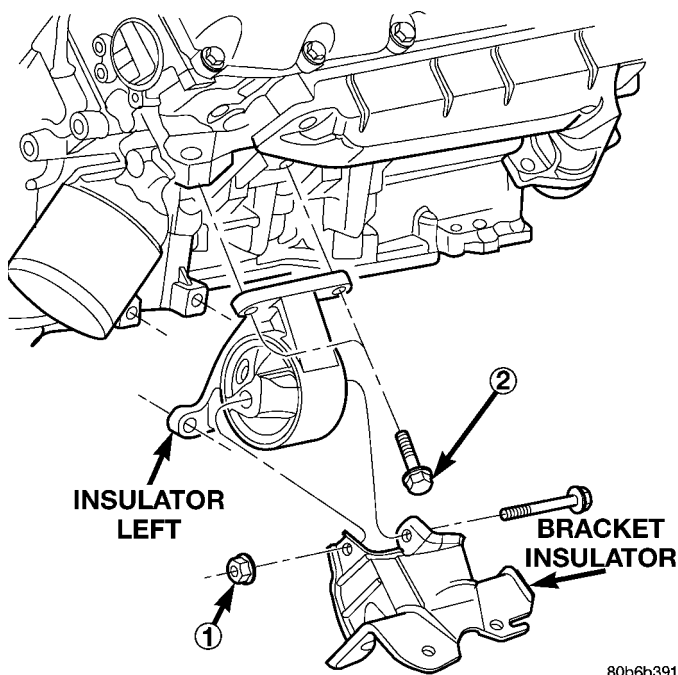
- (1) Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.

**CAUTION:** Remove the fan blade, fan clutch and fan shroud before raising engine. Failure to do so may cause damage to the fan blade, fan clutch and fan shroud.

- (2) Remove the engine oil filter (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/LUBRICATION/OIL FILTER - REMOVAL).

- (3) Support the engine with a suitable jack and a block of wood across the full width of the engine oil pan.

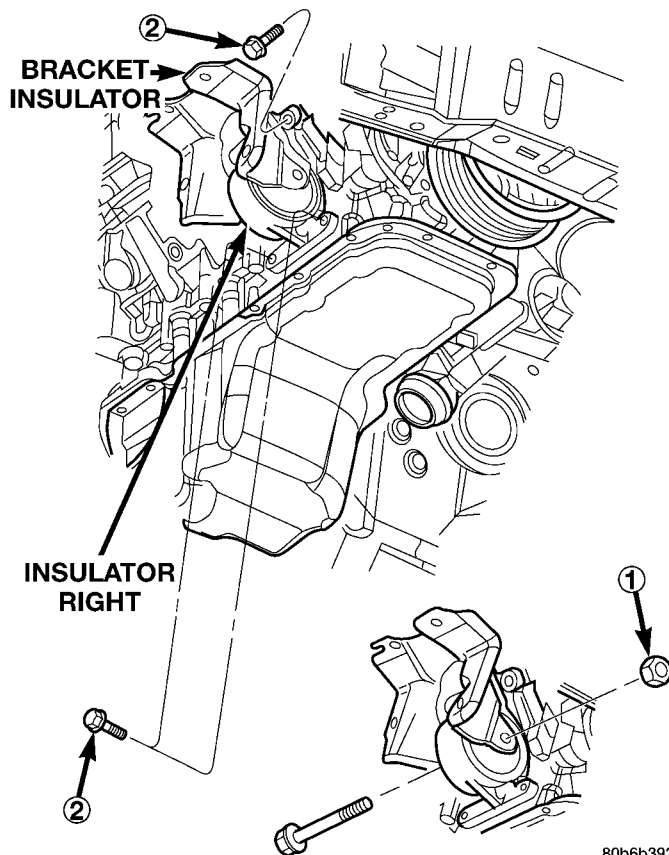
- (4) Remove the four cylinder block-to-insulator mount bolts and the nut from the engine insulator mount through bolt (Fig. 83) (Fig. 84)



**Fig. 83 Engine Insulator Mount 4.7 LEFT**

1 - NUT  
2 - BOLT

- (5) Using the jack, raise the engine high enough to remove the engine insulator mount through bolt and the insulator mount.



**Fig. 84 Engine Insulator Mount 4.7 Right**

1 - NUT  
2 - BOLT

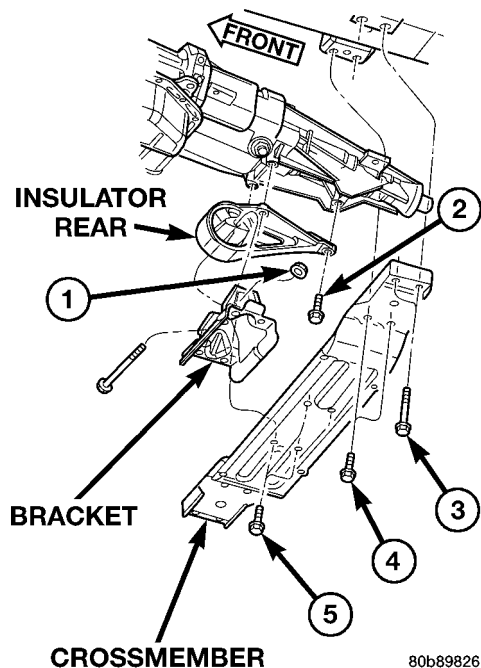
### INSTALLATION

- (1) Position the insulator mount and install the insulator mount through bolt.
- (2) Lower the engine until the four cylinder block-to-insulator mount bolts can be installed.
- (3) Remove the jack and block of wood.
- (4) Torque the cylinder block-to-insulator mount bolts to 61N·m ( 45 ft. lbs.).
- (5) Install and torque the through bolt retaining nut to 61N·m (45 ft. lbs.).

## REAR MOUNT

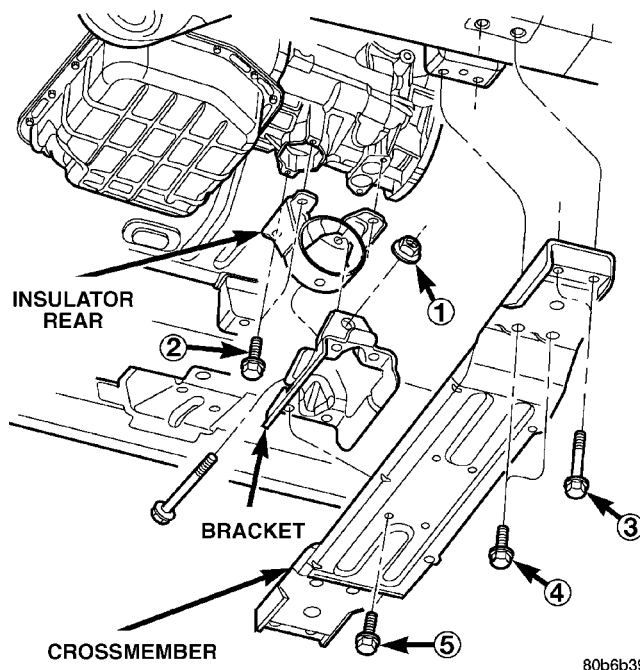
### REMOVAL

- (1) Raise vehicle on hoist.
- (2) Using a suitable jack, support transmission.
- (3) Remove the lock nut from the insulator mount through bolt and the four insulator-to-transmission mounting bolts.
- (4) Raise the transmission enough to remove the through bolt and insulator mount (Fig. 85) (Fig. 86).



**Fig. 85 Engine Rear Mount—4X2**

ITEM	DESCRIPTION	TORQUE
1	NUT (Qty 1)	45 N·m (33 ft. lbs)
2	BOLT (Qty 4)	46 N·m (34 ft. lbs.)
3	BOLT (Qty 2 Per Side)	68 N·m (50 ft. lbs.)
4	BOLT (Qty 2 Per Side)	46 N·m (34 ft. lbs.)
5	BOLT (Qty 4)	46 N·m (34 ft. lbs.)



**Fig. 86 Engine Rear Mount—4X4**

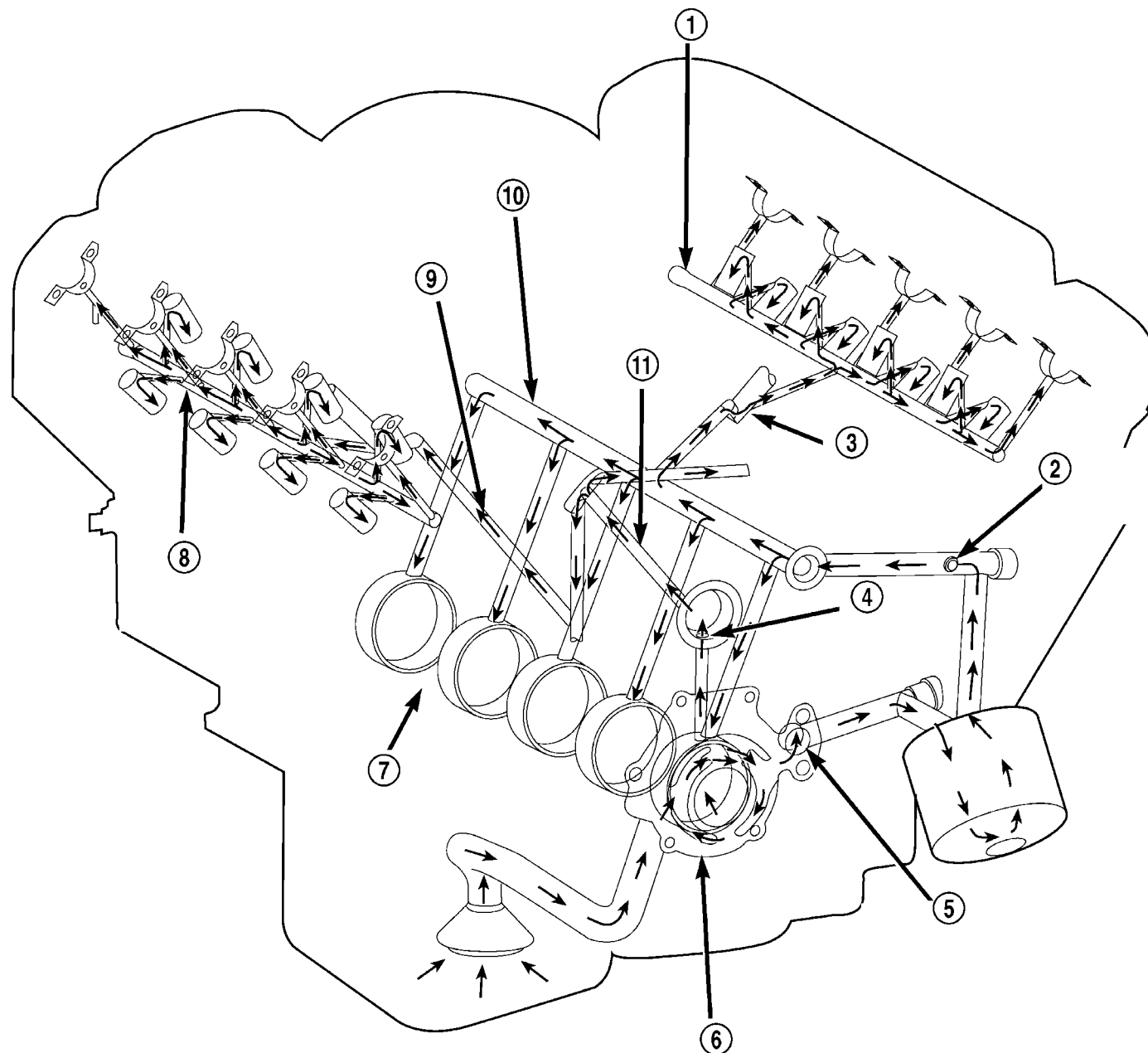
### INSTALLATION

- (1) Position the insulator mount and install the through bolt.
- (2) Lower the transmission enough to install the four insulator-to-transmission mounting bolts. Torque the bolts to 46N·m (34 ft. lbs.).
- (3) Install the through bolt lock nut. Torque nut to 68N·m (50 ft. lbs.).
- (4) Remove jack, lower vehicle.

## LUBRICATION

### DESCRIPTION

The lubrication system (Fig. 87) is a full flow filtration pressure feed type.



80b3c714

**Fig. 87 Engine Oil Lubrication System**

- |                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| 1 - LEFT CYLINDER HEAD OIL GALLERY | 7 - TO CRANKSHAFT MAIN JOURNALS            |
| 2 - OIL PRESSURE SENSOR LOCATION   | 8 - RIGHT CYLINDER HEAD OIL GALLERY        |
| 3 - TO LEFT CYLINDER HEAD          | 9 - TO RIGHT CYLINDER HEAD                 |
| 4 - OIL FEED TO IDLER SHAFT        | 10 - CYLINDER BLOCK MAIN GALLERY           |
| 5 - OIL PUMP OUTLET TO BLOCK       | 11 - OIL FEED TO BOTH SECONDARY TENSIONERS |
| 6 - OIL PUMP                       |  |

## LUBRICATION (Continued)

## OPERATION

Oil from the oil pan is pumped by a gerotor type oil pump directly mounted to the crankshaft nose. Oil pressure is controlled by a relief valve mounted inside the oil pump housing. For lubrication flow refer to (Fig. 87).

The camshaft exhaust valve lobes and rocker arms are lubricated through a small hole in the rocker arm; oil flows through the lash adjuster then through the rocker arm and onto the camshaft lobe. Due to the orientation of the rocker arm, the camshaft intake

lobes are not lubed in the same manner as the exhaust lobes. The intake lobes are lubed through internal passages in the camshaft. Oil flows through a bore in the number 3 camshaft bearing bore, and as the camshaft turns, a hole in the camshaft aligns with the hole in the camshaft bore allowing engine oil to enter the camshaft tube. The oil then exits through 1.6mm (0.063 in.) holes drilled into the intake lobes, lubricating the lobes and the rocker arms.

ENGINE LUBRICATION FLOW CHART—BLOCK: TABLE 1

FROM	TO
Oil Pickup Tube	Oil Pump
Oil Pump	Oil Filter
Oil Filter	Block Main Oil Gallery
Block Main Oil Gallery	1. Crankshaft Main Journal 2. Left Cylinder Head* 3. Right Cylinder Head*
Crankshaft Main Journals	Crankshaft Rod Journals
Crankshaft Number One Main Journal	1. Front Timing Chain Idler Shaft 2. Both Secondary Chain Tensioners
Left Cylinder Head	See Table 2
Right Cylinder Head	See Table 2
* The cylinder head gaskets have an oil restrictor to control oil flow to the cylinder heads.	

ENGINE LUBRICATION FLOW CHART—CYLINDER HEADS: TABLE 2

FROM	TO
Cylinder Head Oil Port (in bolt hole)	Diagonal Cross Drilling to Main Oil Gallery
Main Oil Gallery (drilled through head from rear to front)	1. Base of Camshaft Towers 2. Lash Adjuster Towers
Base of Camshaft Towers	Vertical Drilling Through Tower to Camshaft Bearings**
Lash Adjuster Towers	Diagonal Drillings to Hydraulic Lash Adjuster Pockets
** The number three camshaft bearing journal feeds oil into the hollow camshaft tubes. Oil is routed to the intake lobes, which have oil passages drilled into them to lubricate the rocker arms.	

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING—ENGINE OIL PRESSURE

(1) Remove oil pressure sending unit (Fig. 88) and install gauge assembly C-3292.

(2) Run engine until thermostat opens.

(3) Oil Pressure:

- Curb Idle—25 Kpa (4 psi) minimum
- 3000 rpm—170 - 550 KPa (25 - 80 psi)

(4) If oil pressure is 0 at idle, shut off engine. Check for a clogged oil pick-up screen or a pressure relief valve stuck open.



## LUBRICATION (Continued)

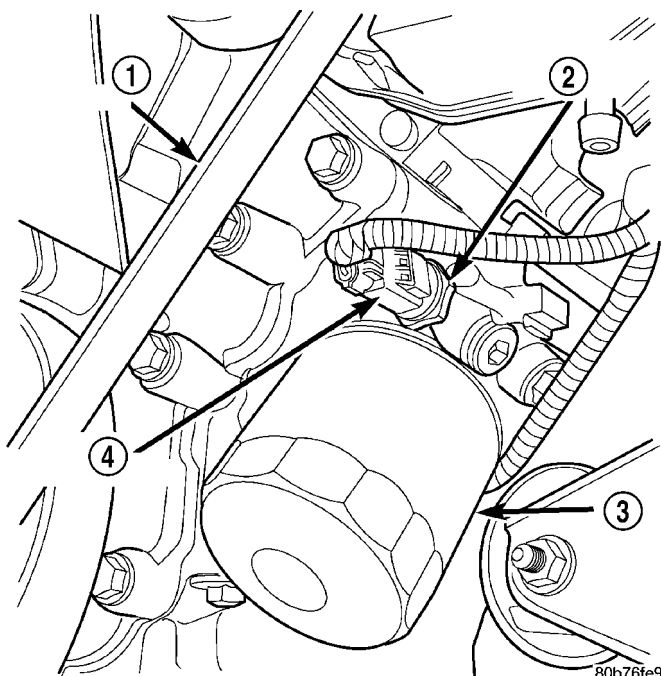


Fig. 88 Oil Pressure Sending Unit

- 1 - BELT  
2 - OIL PRESSURE SENSOR  
3 - OIL FILTER  
4 - ELEC. CONNECTOR

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING—REAR SEAL AREA LEAKS

Since it is sometimes difficult to determine the source of an oil leak in the rear seal area of the engine, a more involved inspection is necessary. The following steps should be followed to help pinpoint the source of the leak.

If the leakage occurs at the crankshaft rear oil seal area:

- (1) Disconnect the battery.
- (2) Raise the vehicle.
- (3) Remove torque converter or clutch housing cover and inspect rear of block for evidence of oil. Use a black light to check for the oil leak:
  - (a) Circular spray pattern generally indicates seal leakage or crankshaft damage.
  - (b) Where leakage tends to run straight down, possible causes are a porous block, distributor seal, camshaft bore cup plugs, oil galley pipe plugs, oil filter runoff, and main bearing cap to cylinder block mating surfaces. See Engine, for proper repair procedures of these items.
- (4) If no leaks are detected, pressurized the crankcase as outlined in the section, Inspection (Engine oil Leaks in general)

**CAUTION:** Do not exceed 20.6 kPa (3 psi).

- (5) If the leak is not detected, very slowly turn the crankshaft and watch for leakage. If a leak is

detected between the crankshaft and seal while slowly turning the crankshaft, it is possible the crankshaft seal surface is damaged. The seal area on the crankshaft could have minor nicks or scratches that can be polished out with emery cloth.

**CAUTION:** Use extreme caution when crankshaft polishing is necessary to remove minor nicks or scratches. The crankshaft seal flange is specially machined to complement the function of the rear oil seal.

(6) For bubbles that remain steady with shaft rotation, no further inspection can be done until disassembled. (Refer to 9 - ENGINE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING), under the Oil Leak row, for components inspections on possible causes and corrections.

(7) After the oil leak root cause and appropriate corrective action have been identified, (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE BLOCK/CRANKSHAFT OIL SEAL - REAR - REMOVAL).

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING—ENGINE OIL LEAK

Begin with a thorough visual inspection of the engine, particularly at the area of the suspected leak. If an oil leak source is not readily identifiable, the following steps should be followed:

(1) Do not clean or degrease the engine at this time because some solvents may cause rubber to swell, temporarily stopping the leak.

(2) Add an oil soluble dye (use as recommended by manufacturer). Start the engine and let idle for approximately 15 minutes. Check the oil dipstick to make sure the dye is thoroughly mixed as indicated with a bright yellow color under a black light.

(3) Using a black light, inspect the entire engine for fluorescent dye, particularly at the suspected area of oil leak. If the oil leak is found and identified, repair per service manual instructions.

(4) If dye is not observed, drive the vehicle at various speeds for approximately 24 km (15 miles), and repeat inspection. **If the oil leak source is not positively identified at this time, proceed with the air leak detection test method.**

### Air Leak Detection Test Method

(1) Disconnect the breather cap to air cleaner hose at the breather cap end. Cap or plug breather cap nipple.

(2) Remove the PCV valve from the cylinder head cover. Cap or plug the PCV valve grommet.

(3) Attach an air hose with pressure gauge and regulator to the dipstick tube.

**CAUTION:** Do not subject the engine assembly to more than 20.6 kPa (3 PSI) of test pressure.



## LUBRICATION (Continued)

(4) Gradually apply air pressure from 1 psi to 2.5 psi maximum while applying soapy water at the suspected source. Adjust the regulator to the suitable test pressure that provide the best bubbles which will pinpoint the leak source. If the oil leak is detected and identified, repair per service manual procedures.

(5) If the leakage occurs at the rear oil seal area, refer to the section, Inspection for Rear Seal Area Leak.

(6) If no leaks are detected, turn off the air supply and remove the air hose and all plugs and caps. Install the PCV valve and breather cap hose.

(7) Clean the oil off the suspect oil leak area using a suitable solvent. Drive the vehicle at various speeds approximately 24 km (15 miles). Inspect the engine for signs of an oil leak by using a black light.

**INSPECTION FOR REAR SEAL AREA LEAKS**

Since it is sometimes difficult to determine the source of an oil leak in the rear seal area of the engine, a more involved inspection is necessary. The following steps should be followed to help pinpoint the source of the leak.

If the leakage occurs at the crankshaft rear oil seal area:

- (1) Disconnect the battery.
- (2) Raise the vehicle.
- (3) Remove torque converter or clutch housing cover and inspect rear of block for evidence of oil. Use a black light to check for the oil leak:

(a) Circular spray pattern generally indicates seal leakage or crankshaft damage.

(b) Where leakage tends to run straight down, possible causes are a porous block, distributor seal, camshaft bore cup plugs oil galley pipe plugs, oil filter runoff, and main bearing cap to cylinder block mating surfaces.

(4) If no leaks are detected, pressurize the crankcase as outlined in the, Inspection (Engine oil Leaks in general)

**CAUTION: Do not exceed 20.6 kPa (3 psi).**

(5) If the leak is not detected, very slowly turn the crankshaft and watch for leakage. If a leak is detected between the crankshaft and seal while slowly turning the crankshaft, it is possible the crankshaft seal surface is damaged. The seal area on the crankshaft could have minor nicks or scratches that can be polished out with emery cloth.

**CAUTION: Use extreme caution when crankshaft polishing is necessary to remove minor nicks and scratches. The crankshaft seal flange is especially machined to complement the function of the rear oil seal.**

(6) For bubbles that remain steady with shaft rotation, no further inspection can be done until disassembled.

**OIL****STANDARD PROCEDURE - ENGINE OIL**

**WARNING: NEW OR USED ENGINE OIL CAN BE IRRITATING TO THE SKIN. AVOID PROLONGED OR REPEATED SKIN CONTACT WITH ENGINE OIL. CONTAMINANTS IN USED ENGINE OIL, CAUSED BY INTERNAL COMBUSTION, CAN BE HAZARDOUS TO YOUR HEALTH. THOROUGHLY WASH EXPOSED SKIN WITH SOAP AND WATER. DO NOT WASH SKIN WITH GASOLINE, DIESEL FUEL, THINNER, OR SOLVENTS, HEALTH PROBLEMS CAN RESULT. DO NOT POLLUTE, DISPOSE OF USED ENGINE OIL PROPERLY.**

**ENGINE OIL SPECIFICATION**

**CAUTION: Do not use non-detergent or straight mineral oil when adding or changing crankcase lubricant. Engine failure can result.**

**API SERVICE GRADE CERTIFIED**

Use an engine oil that is API Service Grade Certified. MOPAR® provides engine oils that conform to this service grade.

**SAE VISCOSITY**

An SAE viscosity grade is used to specify the viscosity of engine oil. Use only engine oils with multiple viscosities such as 5W-30 or 10W-30 in the 4.7L engines. **The 4.7L H.O. uses 10W-30 oil only.** These are specified with a dual SAE viscosity grade which indicates the cold-to-hot temperature viscosity range. Select an engine oil that is best suited to your particular temperature range and variation (Fig. 89).

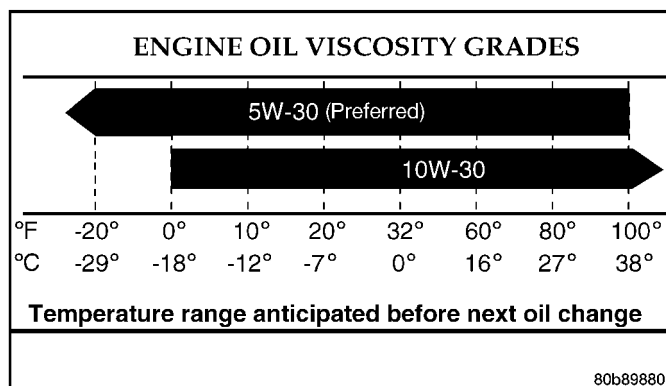
**ENERGY CONSERVING OIL**

An Energy Conserving type oil is recommended for gasoline engines. The designation of ENERGY CONSERVING is located on the label of an engine oil container.

**CONTAINER IDENTIFICATION**

Standard engine oil identification notations have been adopted to aid in the proper selection of engine oil. The identifying notations are located on the label of engine oil plastic bottles and the top of engine oil cans (Fig. 90).

## OIL (Continued)



**Fig. 89 Temperature/Engine Oil Viscosity - 4.7L Engine**

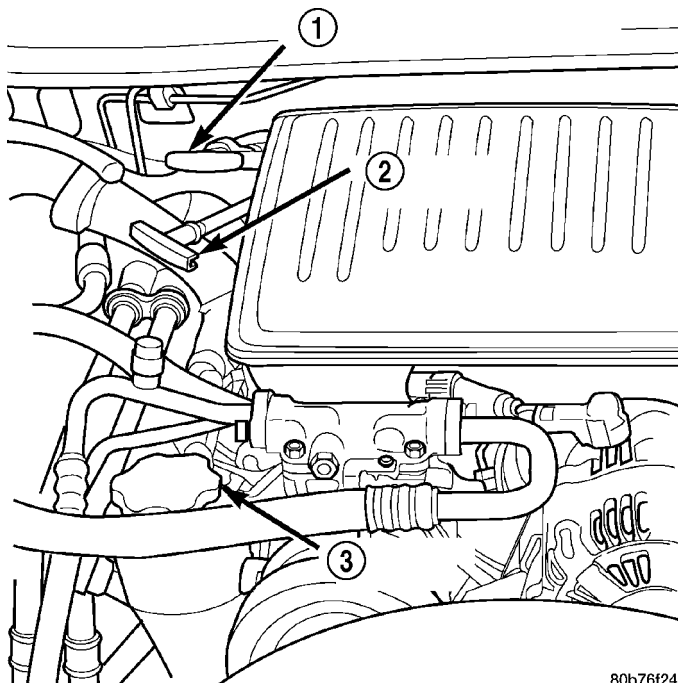


9400-9

**Fig. 90 Engine Oil Container Standard Notations**

## OIL LEVEL INDICATOR (DIPSTICK)

The engine oil level indicator is located on the right side of the the 4.7L engine. (Fig. 91).



80b76f24

**Fig. 91 ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK 4.7L ENGINE**

- 1 - TRANSMISSION DIPSTICK
- 2 - ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK
- 3 - ENGINE OIL FILL CAP

## CRANKCASE OIL LEVEL INSPECTION

**CAUTION:** Do not overfill crankcase with engine oil, pressure loss or oil foaming can result.

Inspect engine oil level approximately every 800 kilometers (500 miles). Unless the engine has exhibited loss of oil pressure, run the engine for about five minutes before checking oil level. Checking engine oil level on a cold engine is not accurate.

To ensure proper lubrication of an engine, the engine oil must be maintained at an acceptable level. The acceptable levels are indicated between the ADD and SAFE marks on the engine oil dipstick.

- (1) Position vehicle on level surface.
- (2) With engine OFF, allow approximately ten minutes for oil to settle to bottom of crankcase, remove engine oil dipstick.
- (3) Wipe dipstick clean.
- (4) Install dipstick and verify it is seated in the tube.
- (5) Remove dipstick, with handle held above the tip, take oil level reading.
- (6) Add oil if level is below the SAFE ZONE on dipstick.

## ENGINE OIL CHANGE

Change engine oil at mileage and time intervals described in Maintenance Schedules.

Run engine until achieving normal operating temperature.

- (1) Position the vehicle on a level surface and turn engine off.
- (2) Remove oil fill cap.
- (3) Hoist and support vehicle on safety stands.
- (4) Place a suitable drain pan under crankcase drain.
- (5) Remove drain plug from crankcase and allow oil to drain into pan. Inspect drain plug threads for stretching or other damage. Replace drain plug if damaged.
- (6) Install drain plug in crankcase.
- (7) Remove oil filter (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/LUBRICATION/OIL FILTER - REMOVAL).
- (8) Lower vehicle and fill crankcase with specified type and amount of engine oil described in this section.
- (9) Install oil fill cap.
- (10) Start engine and inspect for leaks.
- (11) Stop engine and inspect oil level.

## USED ENGINE OIL DISPOSAL

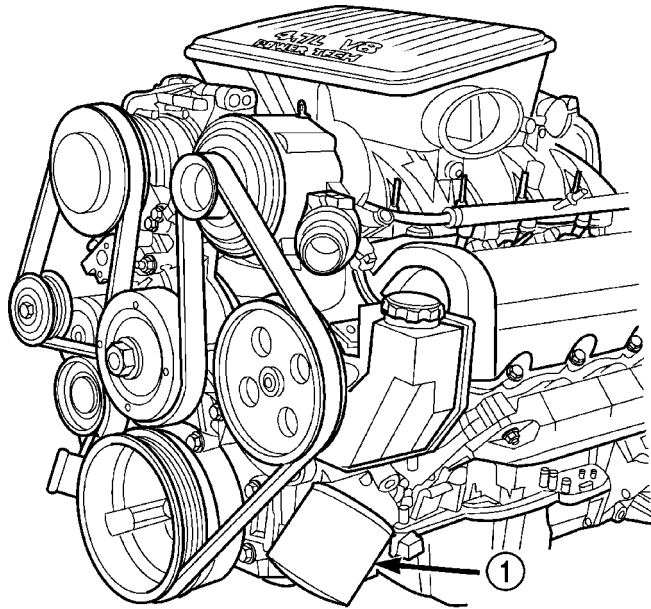
Care should be exercised when disposing used engine oil after it has been drained from a vehicle engine. Refer to the WARNING at beginning of this section.

## OIL FILTER

### REMOVAL

All engines are equipped with a high quality full-flow, disposable type oil filter. DaimlerChrysler Corporation recommends a Mopar® or equivalent oil filter be used.

- (1) Position a drain pan under the oil filter.
- (2) Using a suitable oil filter wrench loosen filter.
- (3) Rotate the oil filter counterclockwise (Fig. 92) to remove it from the cylinder block oil filter boss.



80b76f81

**Fig. 92 Oil Filter - 4.7L Engine**

1 - ENGINE OIL FILTER

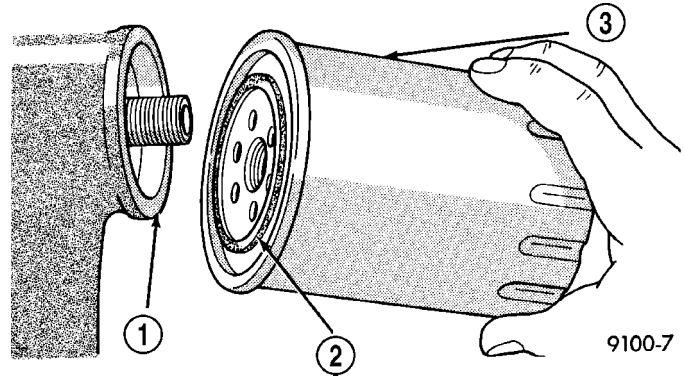
- (4) When filter separates from cylinder block oil filter boss, tip gasket end upward to minimize oil spill. Remove filter from vehicle.

**NOTE:** Make sure filter gasket was removed with filter.

- (5) With a wiping cloth, clean the gasket sealing surface of oil and grime.

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Lightly lubricate oil filter gasket with engine oil.
- (2) Thread filter onto adapter nipple. When gasket makes contact with sealing surface, (Fig. 93) hand tighten filter one full turn, do not over tighten.
- (3) Add oil, verify crankcase oil level and start engine. Inspect for oil leaks.



**Fig. 93 Oil Filter Sealing Surface-Typical**

1 - SEALING SURFACE  
2 - RUBBER GASKET  
3 - OIL FILTER

## OIL PAN

### DESCRIPTION

The engine oil pan is made of laminated steel and has a single plane sealing surface. The sandwich style oil pan gasket has an integrated windage tray and steel carrier. The sealing area of the gasket is molded with rubber and is designed to be reused as long as the gasket is not cut, torn or ripped.

### REMOVAL

- (1) Disconnect negative cable from battery.
- (2) Raise vehicle on hoist.
- (3) Remove structural cover (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE BLOCK/STRUCTURAL COVER - REMOVAL).
- (4) Remove exhaust system Y-pipe.
- (5) Remove starter (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/STARTING/STARTER MOTOR - REMOVAL).
- (6) Drain engine oil.
- (7) Un-clip transmission lines from support on oil pan stud. Move lines for oil pan clearance.

**CAUTION:** DO NOT pry on the oil pan gasket when removing the oil pan. The oil pan gasket is mounted to the cylinder block in three locations and will remain attached to block when lowering oil pan. Gasket can not be removed with oil pan.

- (8) Remove oil pan bolts and oil pan.
- (9) Remove oil pump pickup tube.
- (10) Remove oil pan gasket.

### CLEANING

- (1) Clean oil pan in solvent and wipe dry with a clean cloth.
- (2) Clean the oil pan gasket surface. **DO NOT** use a grinder wheel or other abrasive tool to clean sealing surface.

## OIL PAN (Continued)

(3) Clean oil screen and tube thoroughly in clean solvent.

## INSPECTION

(1) Inspect oil drain plug and plug hole for stripped or damaged threads. Repair as necessary.

(2) Inspect the oil pan mounting flange for bends or distortion. Straighten flange, if necessary.

## INSTALLATION

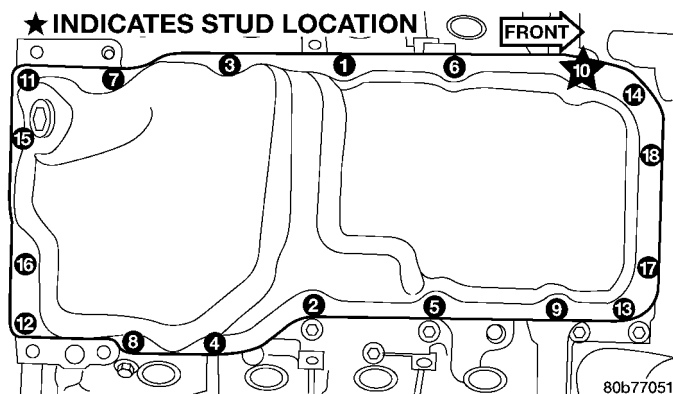
(1) Clean oil pan and all sealing surfaces. Inspect oil pan gasket and replace as necessary.

(2) Install oil pan gasket.

**NOTE:** When installing oil pan gasket/windage tray, start four pan bolts at each corner before tightening oil pickup tube. This will keep pan gasket in alignment.

(3) Install oil pump pick-up tube using a new O-ring. First tighten bolt at O-ring end of tube to 28 N·m (20 ft. lbs.). Tighten remain tube support fasteners to 28 N·m (20 ft. lbs.).

(4) Install oil pan and tighten fasteners to 15 N·m (11 ft. lbs.) (Fig. 94).



**Fig. 94 Oil Pan Tightening Sequence**

(5) Reconnect transmission oil cooler lines to oil pan stud bolt.

(6) Install starter (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/STARTING/STARTER MOTOR - INSTALLATION).

(7) Install exhaust system Y-pipe.

(8) Install structural cover (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE BLOCK/STRUCTURAL COVER - INSTALLATION).

(9) Lower vehicle.

(10) Fill engine with proper amount of oil (Refer to LUBRICATION & MAINTENANCE/FLUID TYPES - SPECIFICATIONS).

(11) Connect negative cable to battery.

OIL PRESSURE SENSOR/  
SWITCH

## DESCRIPTION

The 3-wire, solid-state engine oil pressure sensor (sending unit) is located in an engine oil pressure gallery.

## OPERATION

The oil pressure sensor uses three circuits. They are:

- A 5-volt power supply from the Powertrain Control Module (PCM)
- A sensor ground through the PCM's sensor return
- A signal to the PCM relating to engine oil pressure

The oil pressure sensor has a 3-wire electrical function very much like the Manifold Absolute Pressure (MAP) sensor. Meaning different pressures relate to different output voltages.

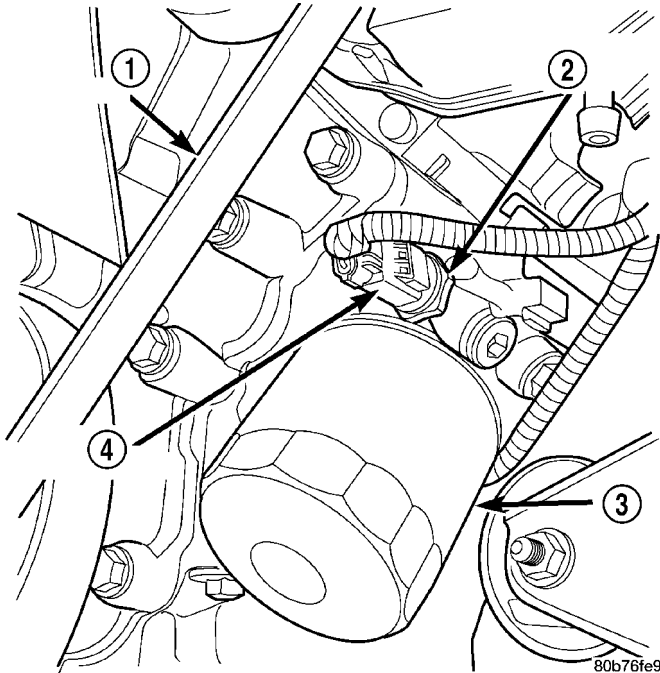
A 5-volt supply is sent to the sensor from the PCM to power up the sensor. The sensor returns a voltage signal back to the PCM relating to engine oil pressure. This signal is then transferred (bussed) to the instrument panel on either a CCD or PCI bus circuit (depending on vehicle line) to operate the oil pressure gauge and the check gauges lamp. Ground for the sensor is provided by the PCM through a low-noise sensor return.

## REMOVAL

- (1) Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
- (2) Raise vehicle on hoist.
- (3) Remove front splash shield.
- (4) Disconnect oil pressure sender wire (Fig. 95).
- (5) Remove the pressure sender (Fig. 95).



## OIL PRESSURE SENSOR/SWITCH (Continued)

**Fig. 95 Oil Pressure Sending Unit**

- 1 - BELT
- 2 - OIL PRESSURE SENSOR
- 3 - OIL FILTER
- 4 - ELEC. CONNECTOR

**INSTALLATION**

- (1) Install oil pressure sender.
- (2) Connect oil pressure sender wire.
- (3) Install front splash shield.
- (4) Lower vehicle.
- (5) Connect the negative battery cable.

**OIL PUMP****REMOVAL**

- (1) Remove the oil pan and pick-up tube (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/LUBRICATION/OIL PAN - REMOVAL).
- (2) Remove the timing chain cover (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/VALVE TIMING/TIMING BELT / CHAIN COVER(S) - REMOVAL).
- (3) Remove the timing chains and tensioners (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/VALVE TIMING/TIMING BELT/CHAIN AND SPROCKETS - REMOVAL).
- (4) Remove the four bolts, primary timing chain tensioner and the oil pump.

**DISASSEMBLY**

- (1) Remove oil pump cover screws and lift off cover plate.
- (2) Remove pump inner and outer rotors.

**NOTE:** Once the oil pressure relief valve, cup plug, and pin are removed, the pump assembly must be replaced.

- (3) If it is necessary to remove the pressure relief valve, drive the roll pin from pump housing and remove cup plug, spring and valve.

**CLEANING**

- (1) Wash all parts in a suitable solvent.

**INSPECTION**

**CAUTION:** Oil pump pressure relief valve and spring should not be removed from the oil pump. If these components are disassembled and or removed from the pump the entire oil pump assembly must be replaced.

- (1) Clean all parts thoroughly. Mating surface of the oil pump housing should be smooth. If the pump cover is scratched or grooved the oil pump assembly should be replaced.

- (2) Lay a straight edge across the pump cover surface (Fig. 96). If a 0.025 mm (0.001 in.) feeler gauge can be inserted between the cover and the straight edge the oil pump assembly should be replaced.

- (3) Measure the thickness of the outer rotor (Fig. 97). If the outer rotor thickness measures at 12.005 mm (0.472 in.) or less the oil pump assembly must be replaced.

- (4) Measure the diameter of the outer rotor. If the outer rotor diameter measures at 85.925 mm (3.382 in.) or less the oil pump assembly must be replaced.

- (5) Measure the thickness of the inner rotor (Fig. 98). If the inner rotor thickness measures at 12.005 mm (0.472 in.) or less then the oil pump assembly must be replaced.

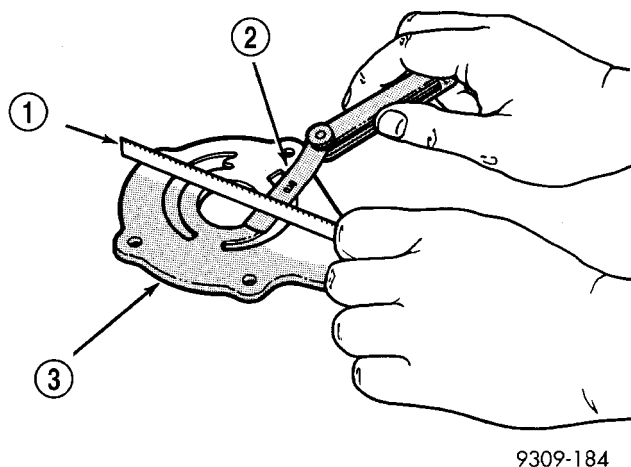
- (6) Slide outer rotor into the body of the oil pump. Press the outer rotor to one side of the oil pump body and measure clearance between the outer rotor and the body (Fig. 99). If the measurement is 0.235mm (0.009 in.) or more the oil pump assembly must be replaced.

- (7) Install the inner rotor in the into the oil pump body. Measure the clearance between the inner and outer rotors (Fig. 100). If the clearance between the rotors is .150 mm (0.006 in.) or more the oil pump assembly must be replaced.

- (8) Place a straight edge across the body of the oil pump (between the bolt holes), if a feeler gauge of .095 mm (0.0038 in.) or greater can be inserted between the straightedge and the rotors, the pump must be replaced (Fig. 101).

## OIL PUMP (Continued)

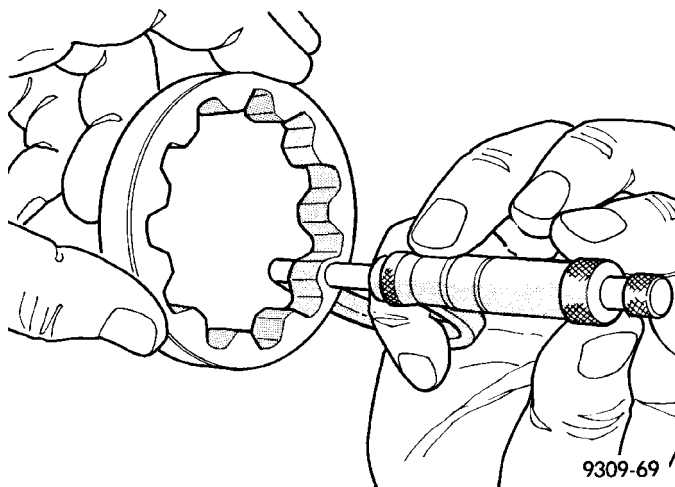
**NOTE:** The 3.7 Oil pump is released as an assembly. There are no DaimlerChrysler part numbers for Sub-Assembly components. In the event the oil pump is not functioning or out of specification it must be replaced as an assembly.



9309-184

**Fig. 96 Checking Oil Pump Cover Flatness**

- 1 - STRAIGHT EDGE
- 2 - FEELER GAUGE
- 3 - OIL PUMP COVER

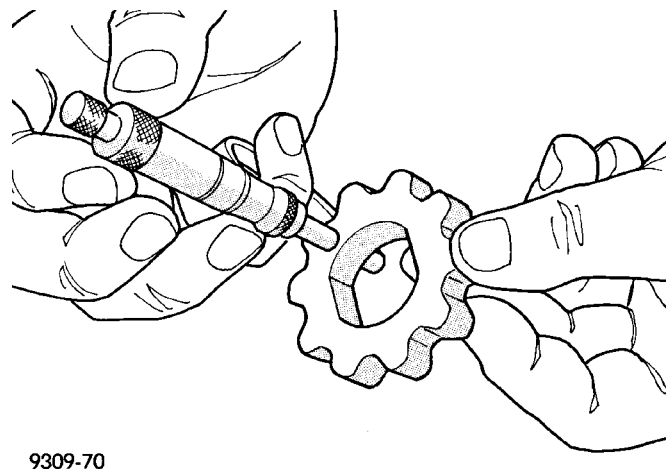


9309-69

**Fig. 97 Measuring Outer Rotor Thickness**

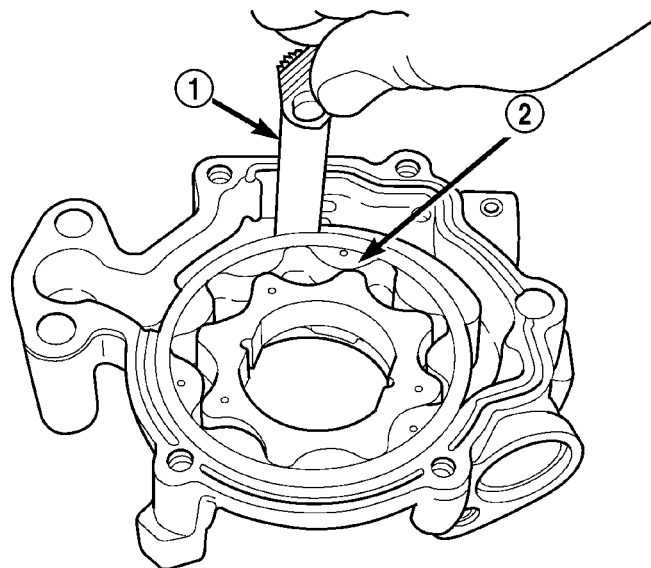
## ASSEMBLY

- (1) Wash all parts in a suitable solvent and inspect carefully for damage or wear.
- (2) Install inner and outer rotors
- (3) Install oil pump cover plate and install cover bolts and tighten them to 12 N·m (105 in. lbs.).
- (4) Prime oil pump before installation by filling rotor cavity with engine oil.
- (5) If oil pressure is low and pump is within specifications, inspect for worn engine bearings or other causes for oil pressure loss.



9309-70

**Fig. 98 Measuring Inner Rotor Thickness**



80b6b3b1

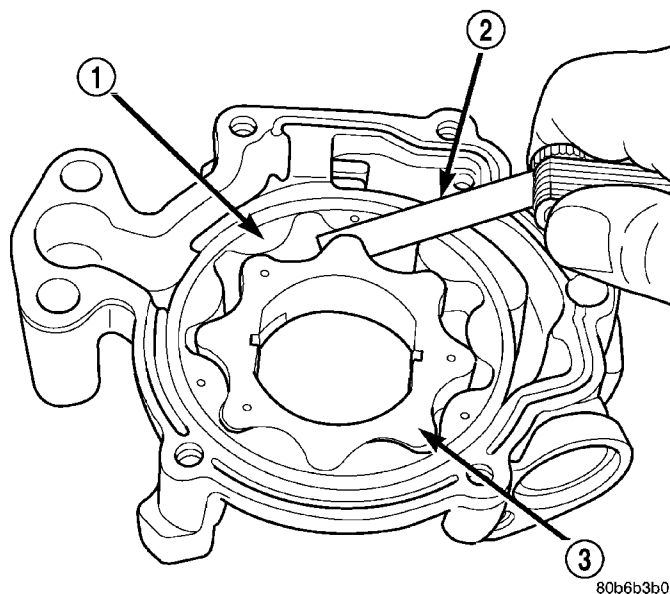
**Fig. 99 Measuring Outer Rotor Clearance**

- 1 - FEELER GAUGE
- 2 - OUTER ROTOR

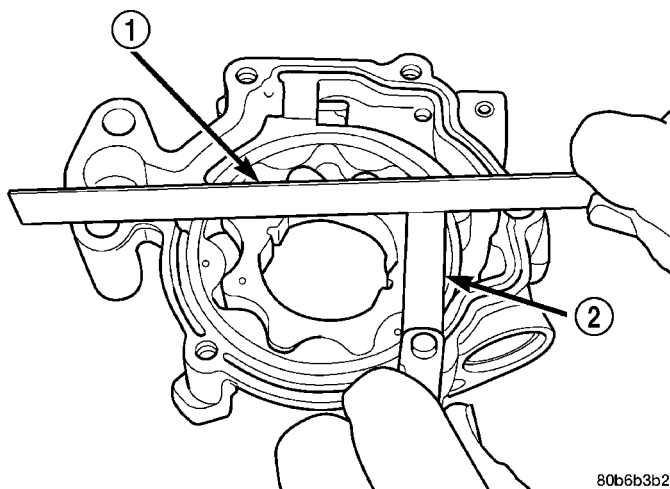
## INSTALLATION

- (1) Position the oil pump onto the crankshaft and install one oil pump retaining bolts.
- (2) Position the primary timing chain tensioner and install three retaining bolts.
- (3) Tighten the oil pump and primary timing chain tensioner retaining bolts to 28 N·m (250 in. lbs.) in the sequence shown (Fig. 102).
- (4) Install the secondary timing chain tensioners and timing chains (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/VALVE TIMING/TIMING BELT/CHAIN AND SPROCKETS - INSTALLATION).
- (5) Install the timing chain cover (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/VALVE TIMING/TIMING BELT / CHAIN COVER(S) - INSTALLATION).

## OIL PUMP (Continued)

**Fig. 100 Measuring Clearance Between Rotors**

- 1 - OUTER ROTOR
- 2 - FEELER GAUGE
- 3 - INNER ROTOR

**Fig. 101 Measuring Clearance Over Rotors**

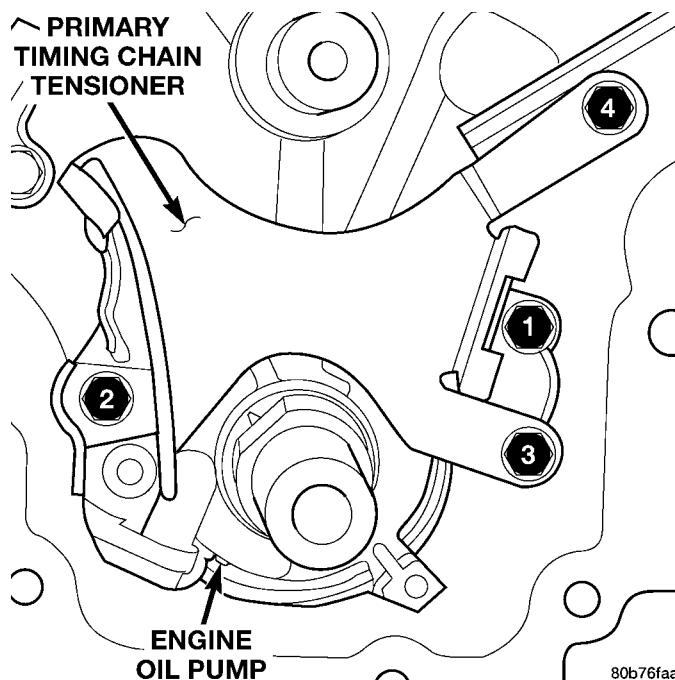
- 1 - STRAIGHT EDGE
- 2 - FEELER GAUGE

(6) Install the pick-up tube and oil pan (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/LUBRICATION/OIL PAN - INSTALLATION).

## INTAKE MANIFOLD

### DESCRIPTION

The intake manifold is made of a composite material and features long runners which maximizes low end torque. The intake manifold uses single plane sealing which consist of eight individual press in

**Fig. 102 Oil Pump And Primary Timing Chain Tensioner Tightening Sequence**

place port gaskets to prevent leaks. Eight studs and two bolts are used to fasten the intake to the head.

### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING—INTAKE MANIFOLD LEAKAGE

An intake manifold air leak is characterized by lower than normal manifold vacuum. Also, one or more cylinders may not be functioning.

**WARNING: USE EXTREME CAUTION WHEN THE ENGINE IS OPERATING. DO NOT STAND IN A DIRECT LINE WITH THE FAN. DO NOT PUT YOUR HANDS NEAR THE PULLEYS, BELTS OR THE FAN. DO NOT WEAR LOOSE CLOTHING.**

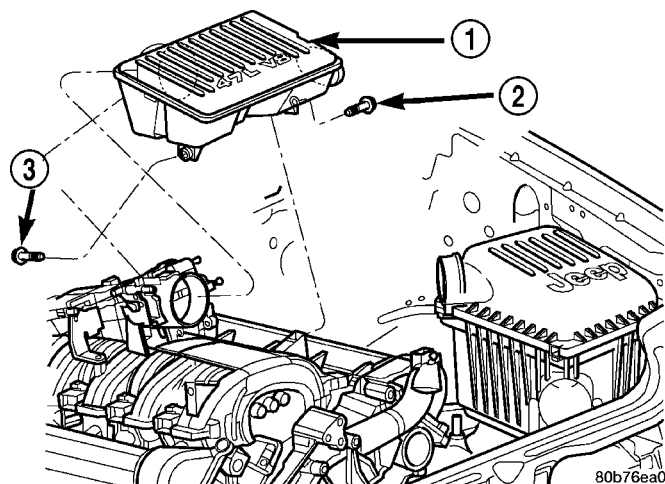
- (1) Start the engine.
- (2) Spray a small stream of water at the suspected leak area.
- (3) If a change in RPM is observed the area of the suspected leak has been found.
- (4) Repair as required.

### REMOVAL

- (1) Disconnect negative cable from battery.
- (2) Remove air cleaner housing and throttle body resonator (Fig. 103).
- (3) Disconnect throttle and speed control cables.
- (4) Disconnect electrical connectors for the following components:
  - Manifold Absolute Pressure (MAP) Sensor
  - Intake Air Temperature (IAT) Sensor
  - Throttle Position (TPS) Sensor



## INTAKE MANIFOLD (Continued)

**Fig. 103 Throttle Body Resonator**

- 1 - THROTTLE BODY RESONATOR  
2 - BOLT  
3 - BOLT

- Coolant Temperature (CTS) Sensor
- Idle Air Control (IAC) Motor

(5) Disconnect vapor purge hose, brake booster hose, speed control servo hose, positive crankcase ventilation (PCV) hose.

(6) Remove accessory drive belt (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - REMOVAL).

(7) Disconnect generator electrical connections.

(8) Unbolt the generator and move it away from the intake manifold for clearance.

(9) Disconnect air conditioning compressor electrical connections.

(10) Unbolt the air conditioning compressor and move it away from the intake manifold for clearance.

(11) Disconnect left and right radio suppressor straps.

(12) Disconnect and remove ignition coil towers (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/IGNITION CONTROL/IGNITION COIL - REMOVAL).

(13) Remove top oil dipstick tube retaining bolt and ground strap.

(14) Bleed pressure from fuel system (Refer to 14 - FUEL SYSTEM/FUEL DELIVERY - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

(15) Remove fuel rail (Refer to 14 - FUEL SYSTEM/FUEL DELIVERY/FUEL RAIL - REMOVAL).

(16) Remove throttle body assembly and mounting bracket.

(17) Drain cooling system below coolant temperature level (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

(18) Remove coolant temperature sensor (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ENGINE/ENGINE COOLANT TEMP SENSOR - REMOVAL).

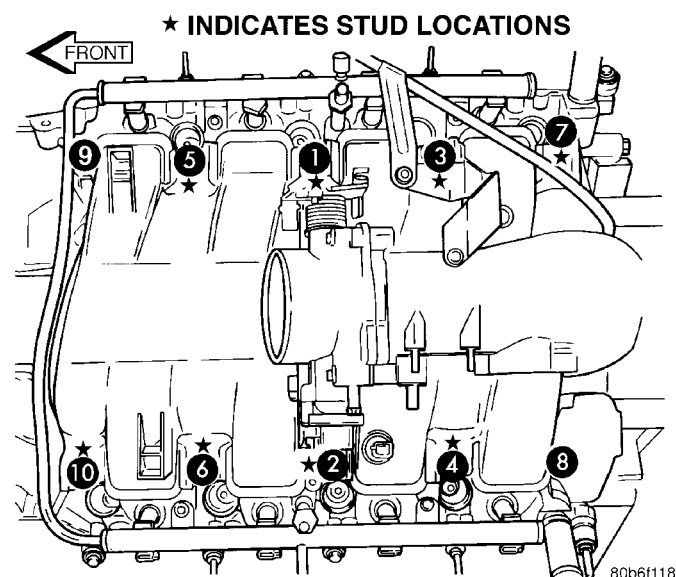
(19) Remove cowl to hood seal. (Refer to 23 - BODY/WEATHERSTRIP/SEALS/COWL WEATHERSTRIP - REMOVAL).

(20) Remove right side engine lifting stud.

(21) Remove intake manifold retaining fasteners, in reverse order of tightening sequence (Fig. 104).

**NOTE:** Intake must be lifted upward and level in the front and rear to clear the cowl. Interference with the cowl will occur during removal.

(22) Remove intake manifold.

**Fig. 104 Intake Manifold Tightening Sequence****CLEANING**

**NOTE:** There is NO approved repair procedure for the intake manifold. If severe damage is found during inspection, the intake manifold must be replaced.

Before installing the intake manifold thoroughly clean the mating surfaces. Use a suitable cleaning solvent, then air dry.

**INSPECTION**

(1) Inspect the intake sealing surface for cracks, nicks and distortion.

(2) Inspect the intake manifold vacuum hose fittings for looseness or blockage.

(3) Inspect the manifold to throttle body mating surface for cracks, nicks and distortion.

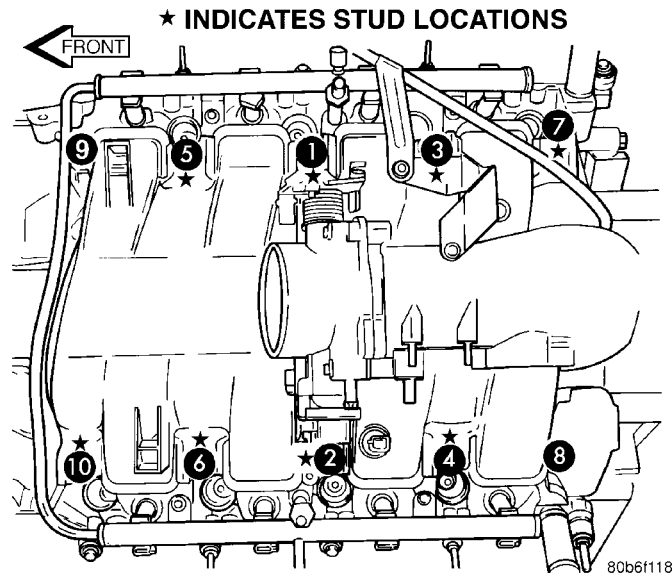
**INSTALLATION**

(1) Install intake manifold gaskets.

(2) Install intake manifold.

## INTAKE MANIFOLD (Continued)

(3) Install intake manifold retaining bolts and tighten in sequence shown in (Fig. 105) to 12 N·m (105 in. lbs.).



**Fig. 105 Intake Manifold Tightening Sequence**

- (4) Install left and right radio suppressor straps.
- (5) Install throttle body assembly.
- (6) Install throttle cable bracket.
- (7) Connect throttle cable and speed control cable to throttle body.
- (8) Install fuel rail (Refer to 14 - FUEL SYSTEM/FUEL DELIVERY/FUEL RAIL - INSTALLATION).
- (9) Install ignition coil towers (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/IGNITION CONTROL/IGNITION COIL - INSTALLATION).
- (10) Install coolant temperature sensor (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ENGINE/ENGINE COOLANT TEMP SENSOR - INSTALLATION).
- (11) Connect electrical connectors for the following components:
  - Manifold Absolute Pressure (MAP) Sensor
  - Intake Air Temperature (IAT) Sensor
  - Throttle Position (TPS) Sensor
  - Coolant Temperature (CTS) Sensor
  - Idle Air Control (IAC) Motor
  - Ignition coil towers
  - Fuel injectors
- (12) Install top oil dipstick tube retaining bolt and ground strap.
- (13) Install right side engine lifting stud.
- (14) Install generator including electrical connections (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/CHARGING/GENERATOR - INSTALLATION).
- (15) Connect Vapor purge hose, Brake booster hose, Speed control servo hose, Positive crankcase ventilation (PCV) hose.
- (16) Install air conditioning compressor including electrical connections.

(17) Fill cooling system (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

(18) Install accessory drive belt (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - INSTALLATION).

(19) Install cowl to hood seal (Refer to 23 - BODY/WEATHERSTRIP/SEALS/COWL WEATHERSTRIP - INSTALLATION).

(20) Install air cleaner housing and throttle body resonator. Tighten resonator bolts 4.5 N·m (40 in. lbs.).

(21) Connect negative cable to battery.

## EXHAUST MANIFOLD - LEFT

### DESCRIPTION

The exhaust manifolds are log style with a patented flow enhancing design to maximize performance. The exhaust manifolds are made of high silicon molybdenum cast iron. A perforated core graphite exhaust manifold gasket is used to improve sealing to the cylinder head. The exhaust manifolds are covered by a three layer laminated heat shield for thermal protection and noise reduction. The heat shields are fastened with a torque prevailing nut that is backed off slightly to allow for the thermal expansion of the exhaust manifold.

### REMOVAL

- (1) Disconnect negative cable for battery.
- (2) Hoist vehicle.
- (3) Disconnect exhaust pipe at manifold.
- (4) Lower vehicle.
- (5) Remove air cleaner housing and tube.
- (6) Remove the front two exhaust heat shield retaining fasteners. Raise vehicle and remove the fasteners at rear of heat shield.
- (7) Remove heat shield (Fig. 106).
- (8) Lower vehicle and remove the upper exhaust manifold retaining bolts (Fig. 106).
- (9) Raise vehicle and remove the lower exhaust manifold retaining bolts (Fig. 106).
- (10) Remove exhaust manifold and gasket (Fig. 106). Manifold is removed from below the engine compartment.

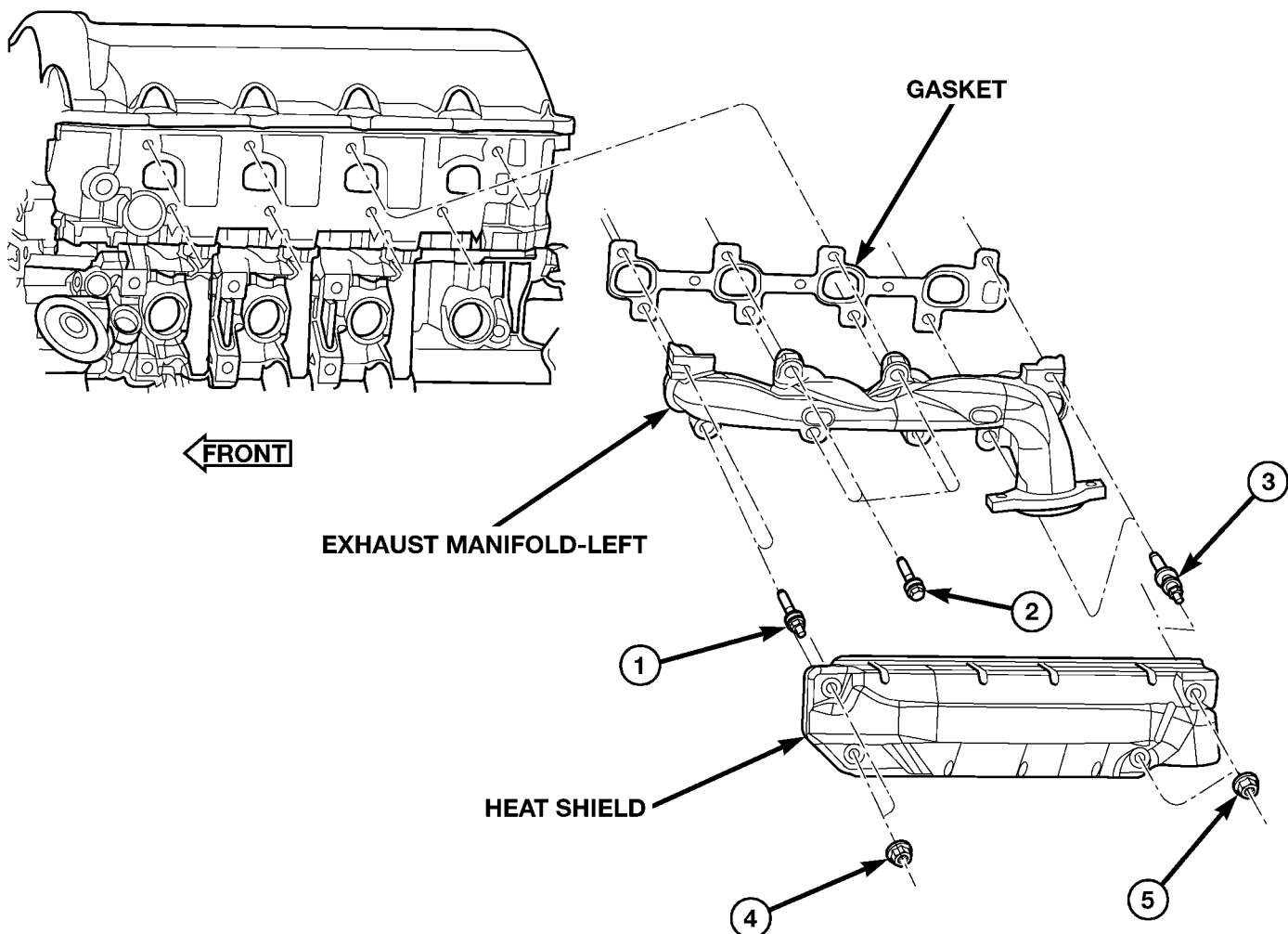
### CLEANING

- (1) Clean the exhaust manifold using a suitable cleaning solvent, then allow to air dry.
- (2) Clean all gasket residue from the manifold mating surface.

### INSPECTION

- (1) Inspect the exhaust manifold for cracks in the mating surface and at every mounting bolt hole.

## EXHAUST MANIFOLD - LEFT (Continued)



80b3b29a

**Fig. 106 Exhaust Manifold—Left**

ITEM	DESCRIPTION	TORQUE	ITEM	DESCRIPTION	TORQUE
1	Stud (Qty 2)		4	Nut (Qty 2)	8 N-m (72 in. lbs.), then loosen 45 degrees
2	Bolt (Qty 4)	25 N-m (18 ft. lbs.)	5	Nut (Qty 2)	
3	Stud (Qty 2)				

(2) Using a straight edge and a feeler gauge, check the mating surface for warp and twist.

(3) Inspect the manifold to exhaust pipe mating surface for cracks, gouges, or other damage that would prevent sealing.

**INSTALLATION**

(1) Install exhaust manifold and gasket from below engine compartment.

(2) Install lower exhaust manifold fasteners (Fig. 106). DO NOT tighten until all fasteners are in place.

(3) Lower vehicle and install upper exhaust manifold fasteners (Fig. 106). Tighten all manifold bolts

starting at center and working outward to 25 N-m (18 ft. lbs.).

**CAUTION:** Over tightening heat shield fasteners, may cause shield to distort and/or crack.

(4) Install exhaust manifold heat shield (Fig. 106). Tighten fasteners to 8 N-m (72 in. lbs.), then loosen 45 degrees.

(5) Install air cleaner housing and tube.

(6) Connect exhaust pipe to manifold.

(7) Connect negative cable to battery.

## EXHAUST MANIFOLD - RIGHT

### DESCRIPTION

The exhaust manifolds are log style with a patented flow enhancing design to maximize performance. The exhaust manifolds are made of high silicon molybdenum cast iron. A perforated core graphite exhaust manifold gasket is used to improve sealing to the cylinder head. The exhaust manifolds are covered by a three layer laminated heat shield for thermal protection and noise reduction. The heat shields are fastened with a torque prevailing nut that is backed off slightly to allow for the thermal expansion of the exhaust manifold.

### REMOVAL

- (1) Disconnect negative cable for battery.
- (2) Remove battery from vehicle.
- (3) Remove Power Distribution Center (PDC) fasteners and set aside.
- (4) Remove battery tray assembly.
- (5) Remove washer bottle assembly.
- (6) Remove accessory drive belt (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - REMOVAL).
- (7) Remove A/C compressor from mounting and set aside.
- (8) Remove A/C accumulator support bracket fastener.
- (9) Drain coolant (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).
- (10) Remove heater hoses at engine.
- (11) Remove fasteners attaching exhaust manifold heat shield (Fig. 107).
- (12) Remove heat shield (Fig. 107).
- (13) Remove upper exhaust manifold attaching fasteners (Fig. 107).
- (14) Raise vehicle on hoist.
- (15) Disconnect exhaust pipe from manifold.
- (16) Remove fasteners attaching starter. Move starter aside.
- (17) Remove lower exhaust manifold attaching fasteners.
- (18) Remove exhaust manifold and gasket (Fig. 107). Manifold is removed from below the engine compartment.

### CLEANING

- (1) Clean the exhaust manifold using a suitable cleaning solvent, then allow to air dry.
- (2) Clean all gasket residue from the manifold mating surface.

### INSPECTION

- (1) Inspect the exhaust manifold for cracks in the mating surface and at every mounting bolt hole.
- (2) Using a straight edge and a feeler gauge, check the mating surface for warp and twist.
- (3) Inspect the manifold to exhaust pipe mating surface for cracks, gouges, or other damage that would prevent sealing.

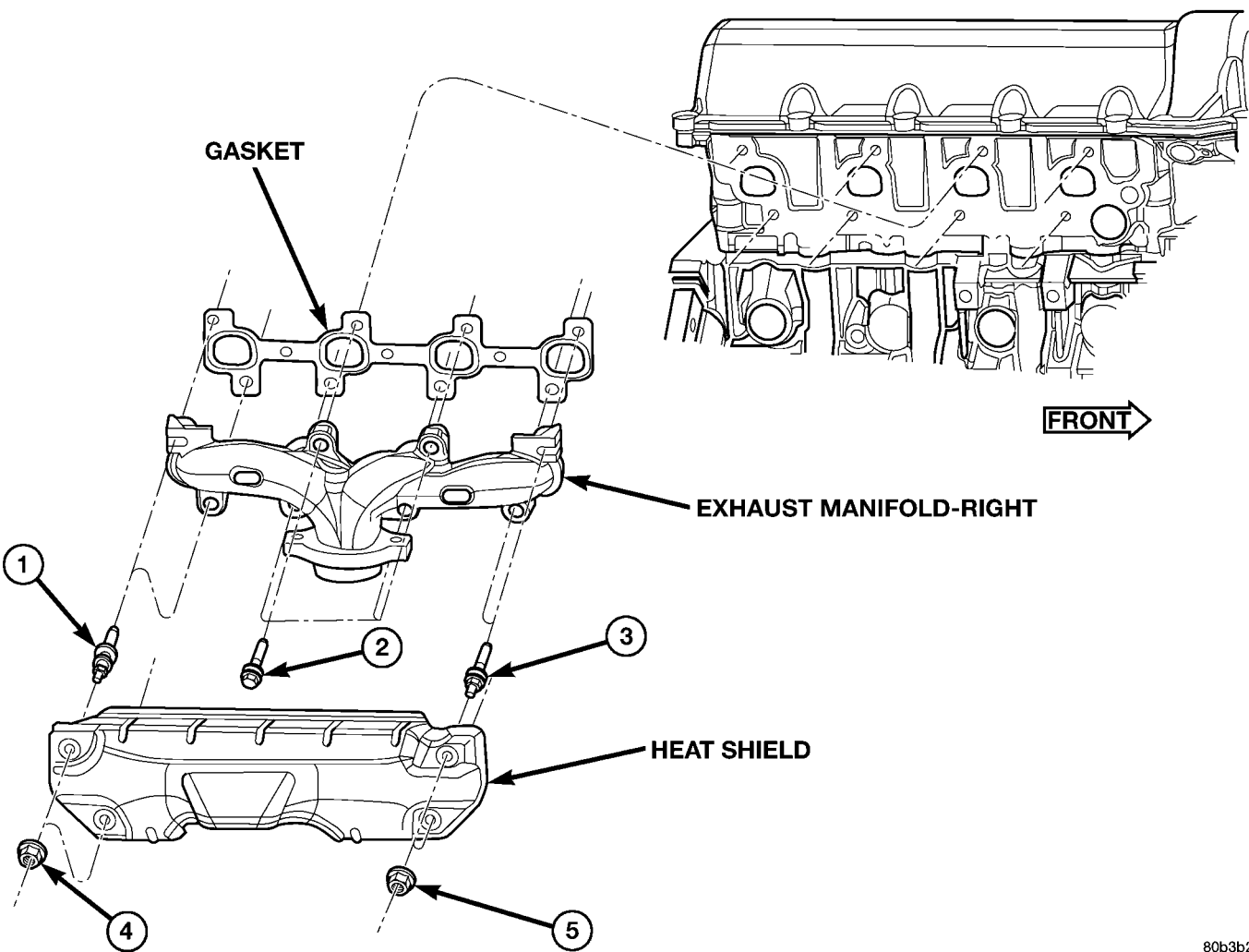
### INSTALLATION

- (1) Install exhaust manifold and gasket from below engine compartment.
- (2) Install lower exhaust manifold fasteners. DO NOT tighten until all fasteners are in place.
- (3) Lower vehicle and install upper exhaust manifold fasteners. Tighten all manifold bolts starting at center and working outward to 25 N·m (18 ft. lbs.).

**CAUTION: Over tightening heat shield fasteners, may cause shield to distort and/or crack.**

- (4) Install exhaust manifold heat shield. Tighten fasteners to 8 N·m (72 in. lbs.), then loosen 45 degrees.
- (5) Install starter and fasteners.
- (6) Connect exhaust pipe to manifold.
- (7) Connect heater hoses at engine.
- (8) Install fastener attaching A/C accumulator.
- (9) Install A/C compressor and fasteners.
- (10) Install accessory drive belt (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - INSTALLATION).
- (11) Install washer bottle and battery tray assembly.
- (12) Install PDC.
- (13) Install battery and connect cables.
- (14) Fill cooling system (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

EXHAUST MANIFOLD - RIGHT (Continued)



80b3b29e

Fig. 107 Exhaust Manifold—Right

ITEM	DESCRIPTION	TORQUE	ITEM	DESCRIPTION	TORQUE
1	Stud (Qty 2)	25 N·m (18 ft. lbs.)	4	Nut (Qty 2)	8 N·m (72 in. lbs.), then loosen 45 degrees
2	Bolt (Qty 4)		5	Nut (Qty 2)	
3	Stud (Qty 2)				



## VALVE TIMING

### DESCRIPTION - TIMING DRIVE SYSTEM

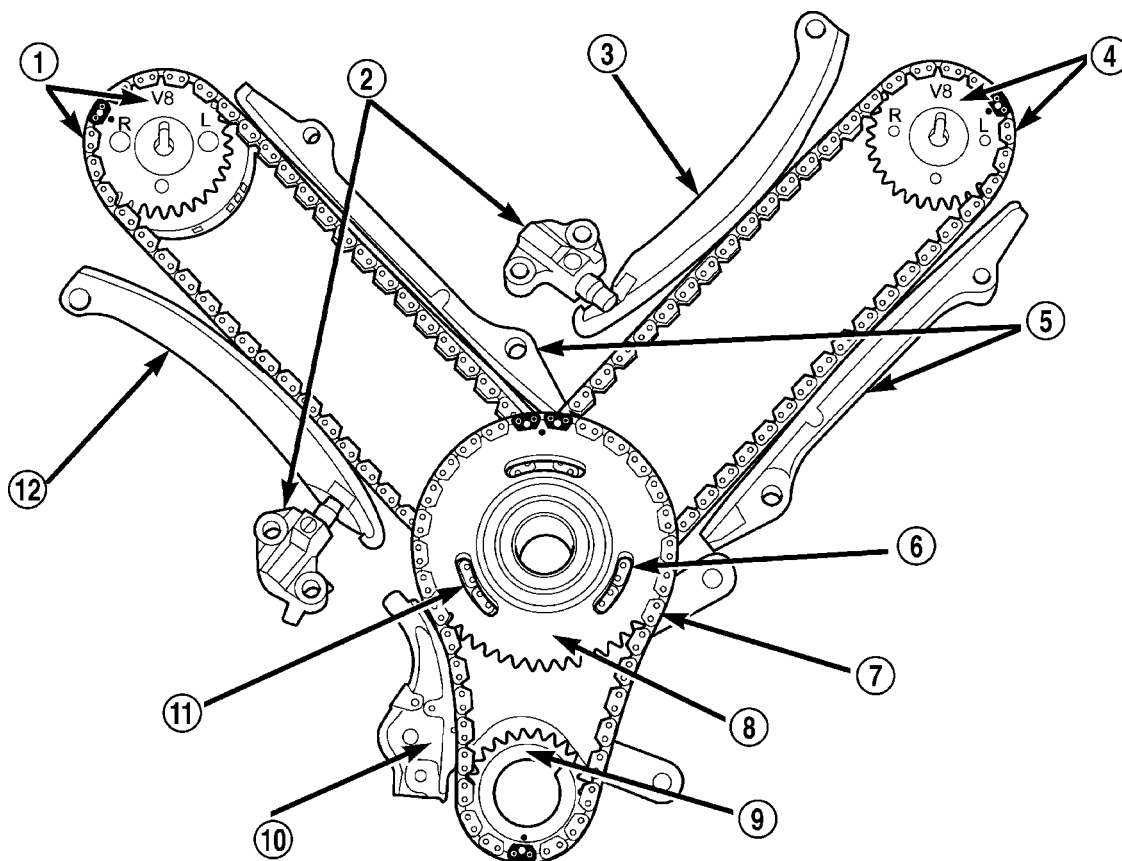
The timing drive system has been designed to provide quiet performance and reliability to support a **non-free wheeling** engine. Specifically the intake valves are non-free wheeling and can be easily damaged with forceful engine rotation if camshaft-to-crankshaft timing is incorrect. The timing drive system consists of a primary chain and two secondary timing chain drives (Fig. 108).

### OPERATION - TIMING DRIVE SYSTEM

The primary timing chain is a single inverted tooth type. The primary chain drives the large fifty tooth idler sprocket directly from a 25 tooth crankshaft sprocket. Primary chain motion is controlled by a pivoting leaf spring tensioner arm and a fixed guide. The arm and the guide both use nylon plastic wear faces for low friction and long wear. The primary

chain receives oil splash lubrication from the secondary chain drive and oil pump leakage. The idler sprocket assembly connects the primary and secondary chain drives. The idler sprocket assembly consists of two integral thirty tooth sprockets and a fifty tooth sprocket that is splined to the assembly. The spline joint is a non - serviceable press fit anti rattle type. The idler sprocket assembly spins on a stationary idler shaft. The idler shaft is press-fit into the cylinder block. A large washer on the idler shaft bolt and the rear flange of the idler shaft are used to control sprocket thrust movement. Pressurized oil is routed through the center of the idler shaft to provide lubrication for the two bushings used in the idler sprocket assembly.

There are two secondary drive chains, both are inverted tooth type, one to drive the camshaft in each SOHC cylinder head. There are no shaft speed changes in the secondary chain drive system. Each secondary chain drives a thirty tooth cam sprocket



80b3c710

**Fig. 108 Timing Drive System**

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 - RIGHT CAMSHAFT SPROCKET AND SECONDARY CHAIN                       | 7 - PRIMARY CHAIN                            |
| 2 - SECONDARY TIMING CHAIN TENSIONER (LEFT AND RIGHT SIDE NOT COMMON) | 8 - IDLER SPROCKET                           |
| 3 - SECONDARY TENSIONER ARM   | 9 - CRANKSHAFT SPROCKET                      |
| 4 - LEFT CAMSHAFT SPROCKET AND SECONDARY CHAIN                        | 10 - PRIMARY CHAIN TENSIONER                 |
| 5 - CHAIN GUIDE   | 11 - TWO PLATED LINKS ON LEFT CAMSHAFT CHAIN |
| 6 - TWO PLATED LINKS ON RIGHT CAMSHAFT CHAIN                          | 12 - SECONDARY TENSIONER ARM                 |

## VALVE TIMING (Continued)

directly from the thirty tooth sprocket on the idler sprocket assembly. A fixed chain guide and a hydraulic oil damped tensioner are used to maintain tension in each secondary chain system. The hydraulic tensioners for the secondary chain systems are fed pressurized oil from oil reservoir pockets in the block. Each tensioner also has a mechanical ratchet system that limits chain slack if the tensioner piston bleeds down after engine shut down. The tensioner arms and guides also utilize nylon wear faces for low friction and long wear. The secondary timing chains receive lubrication from a small orifice in the tensioners. This orifice is protected from clogging by a fine mesh screen which is located on the back of the hydraulic tensioners.

## STANDARD PROCEDURE

## STANDARD PROCEDURE - ENGINE TIMING - VERIFICATION

**CAUTION:** The 4.7L is a non free-wheeling design engine. Therefore, correct engine timing is critical.

**NOTE:** Components referred to as left hand or right hand are as viewed from the drivers position inside the vehicle.

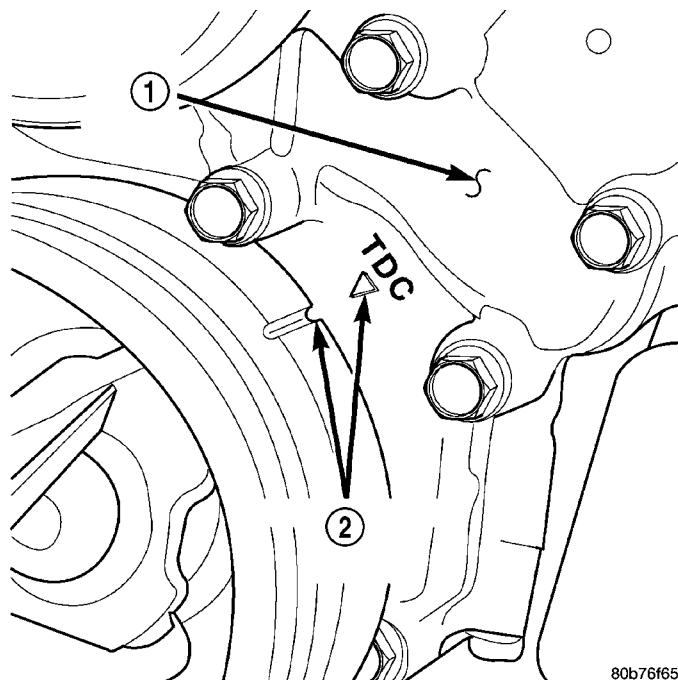
**NOTE:** The blue link plates on the chains and the dots on the camshaft drive sprockets may not line up during the timing verification procedure. The blue link plates are lined up with the sprocket dots only when re-timing the complete timing drive. Once the timing drive is rotated blue link-to-dot alignment is no longer valid.

Engine base timing can be verified by the following procedure:

(1) Remove the cylinder head covers (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD/CYLINDER HEAD COVER(S) - REMOVAL).

(2) Using a mirror, locate the TDC arrow on the front cover (Fig. 109). Rotate the crankshaft until the mark on the crankshaft damper is aligned with the TDC arrow on the front cover. The engine is now at TDC.

(3) Note the location of the V8 mark stamped into the camshaft drive gears (Fig. 110). If the V8 mark on each camshaft drive gear is at the twelve o'clock position, the engine is at TDC (cylinder #1) on the exhaust stroke. If the V8 mark on each gear is at the six o'clock position, the engine is at TDC (cylinder #1) on the compression stroke.



**Fig. 109 Engine Top Dead Center (TDC) Indicator Mark**

- 1 - TIMING CHAIN COVER  
2 - CRANKSHAFT TIMING MARKS

(4) If both of the camshaft drive gears are off in the same or opposite directions, the primary chain or both secondary chains are at fault. Refer to Timing Chain and Sprockets procedure in this section.

(5) If only one of the camshaft drive gears is off and the other is correct, the problem is confined to one secondary chain. Refer to Single camshaft timing, in this procedure.

(6) If both camshaft drive gear V8 marks are at the twelve o'clock or the six o'clock position the engine base timing is correct. Reinstall the cylinder head covers.

## SINGLE CAMSHAFT TIMING

**NOTE:** to adjust the timing on one camshaft, perform the following procedure.

(1) Using Chain Tensioner Wedge, special tool 8350, stabilize the secondary chain drive (Fig. 111). For reference purposes, mark the chain-to-sprocket position (Fig. 111).

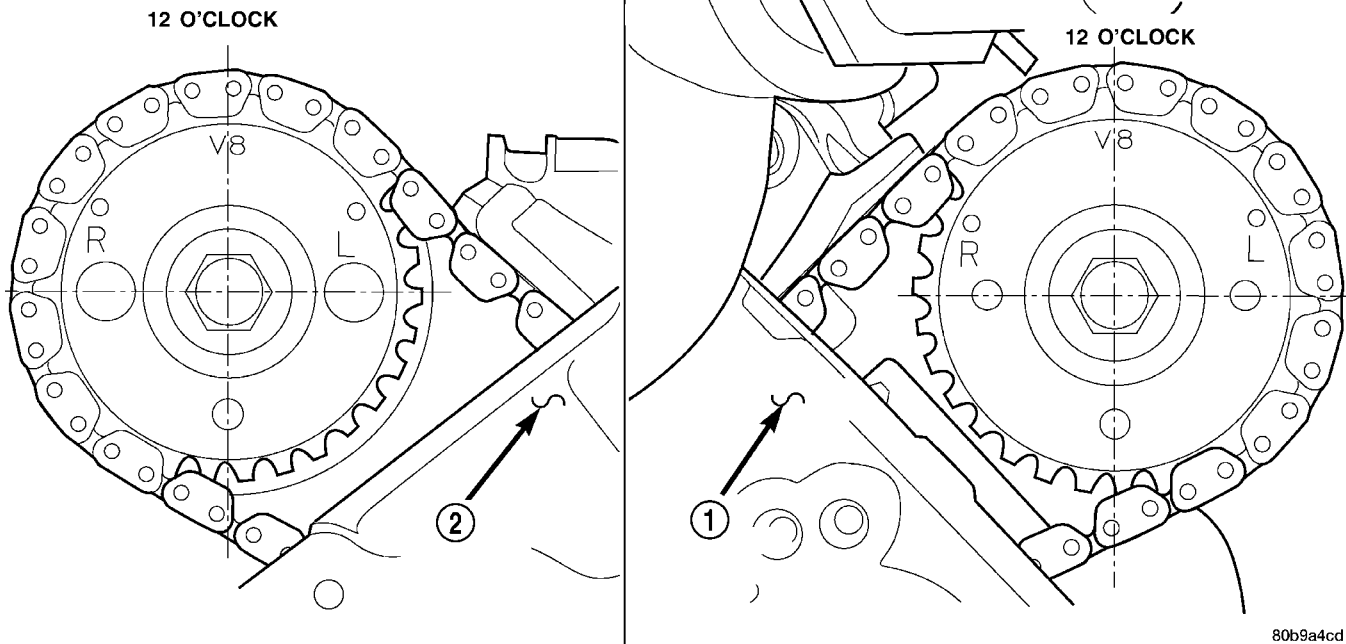
(2) Remove the camshaft drive gear retaining bolt.

(3) Carefully remove the camshaft drive gear from the camshaft.

(4) Re-index the camshaft drive gear in the chain until the V8 mark is at the same position as the V8 mark on the opposite camshaft drive gear.



VALVE TIMING (Continued)

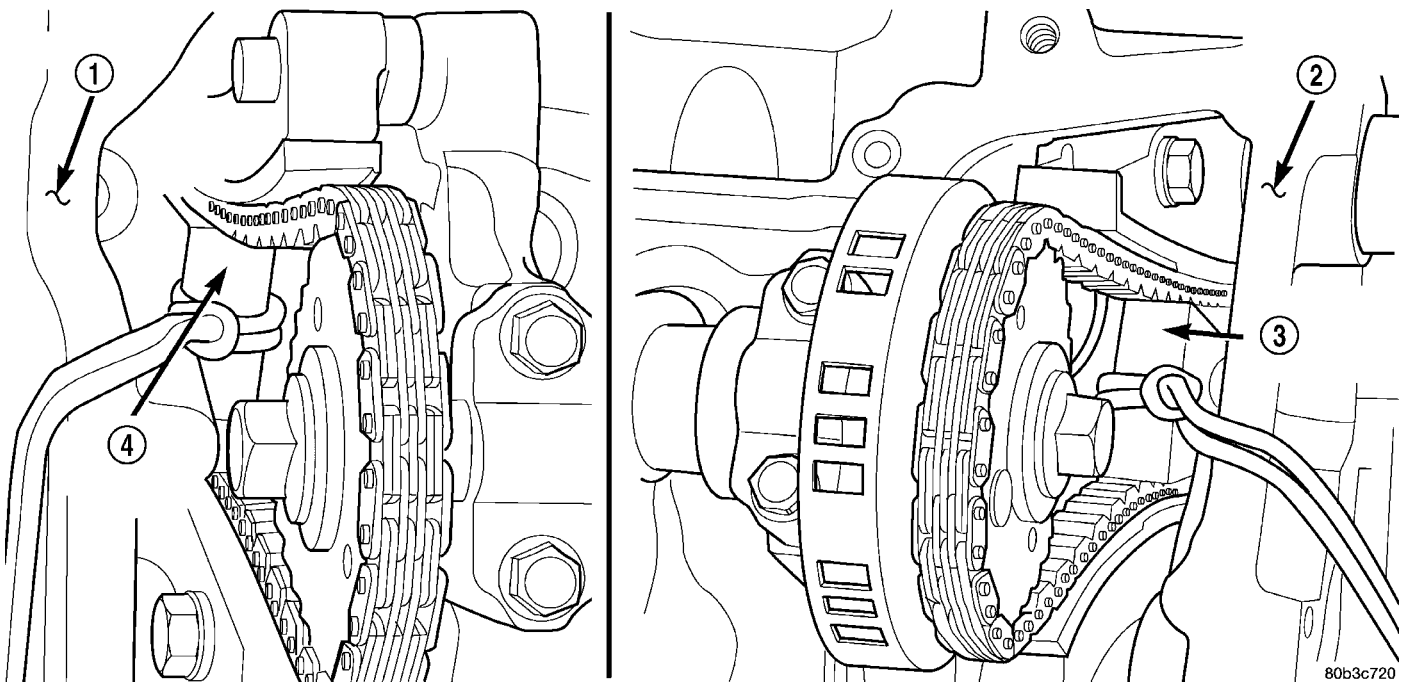


80b9a4cd

**Fig. 110 Camshaft Sprocket V8 Marks**

1 - LEFT CYLINDER HEAD

2 - RIGHT CYLINDER HEAD



80b3c720

**Fig. 111 Securing Timing Chain Tensioners Using Timing Chain Wedge**

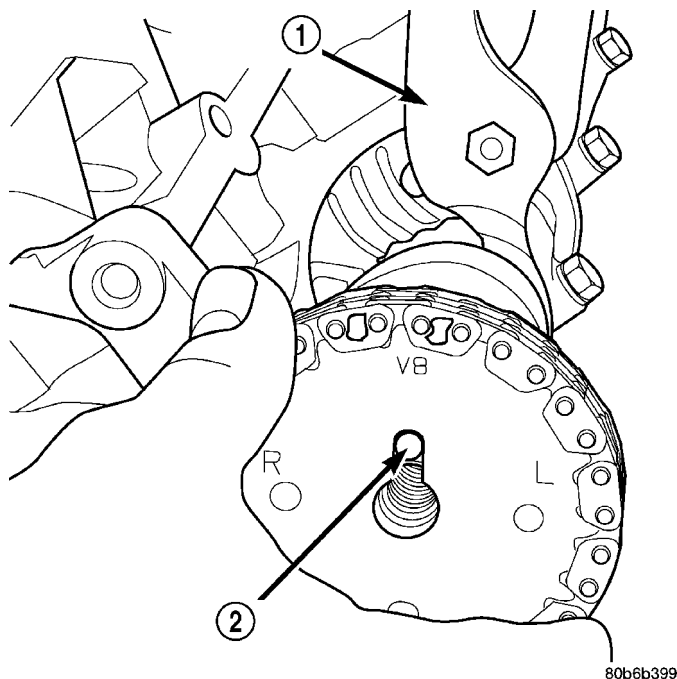
1 - LEFT CYLINDER HEAD  
2 - RIGHT CYLINDER HEAD

3 - SPECIAL TOOL 8350 WEDGE  
4 - SPECIAL TOOL 8350 WEDGE

## VALVE TIMING (Continued)

**NOTE:** When gripping the camshaft, place the pliers on the tube portion of the camshaft only. Do not grip the lobes or the sprocket areas.

(5) Using a suitable pair of adjustable pliers, rotate the camshaft until the alignment dowel on the camshaft is aligned with the slot in the camshaft drive gear (Fig. 112).



**Fig. 112 Camshaft Dowel**

- 1 - ADJUSTABLE PLIERS
- 2 - CAMSHAFT DOWEL

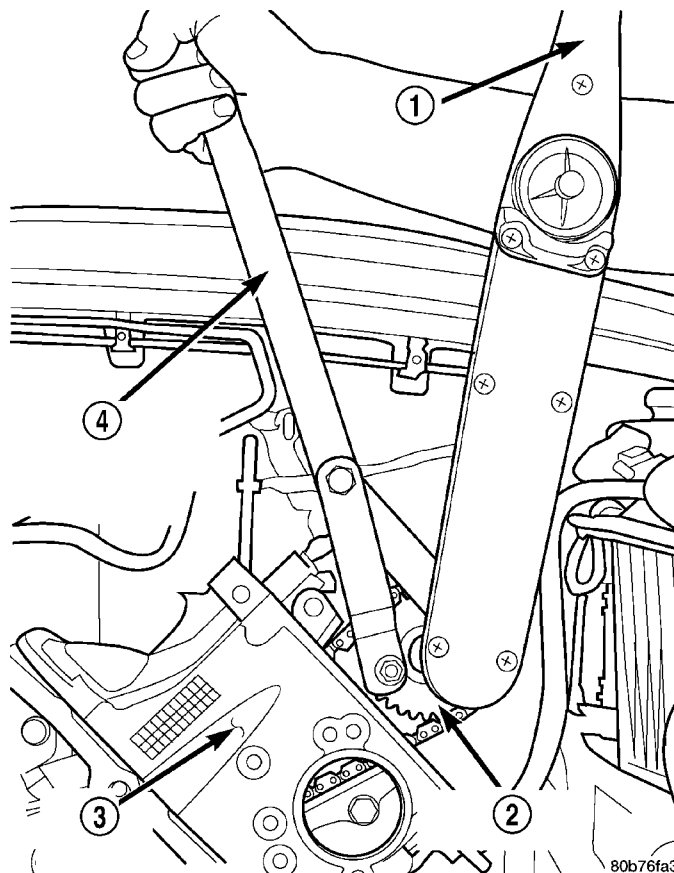
**CAUTION:** Remove excess oil from camshaft sprocket retaining bolt before reinstalling bolt. Failure to do so may cause over-torqueing of bolt resulting in bolt failure.

(6) Position the camshaft drive gear onto the camshaft, remove oil from bolt then install the retaining bolt. Using Special Tools, Spanner Wrench 6958 with Adapter Pins 8346 and a suitable torque wrench, Tighten retaining bolt to 122N·m (90 ft. Lbs.) (Fig. 113) (Fig. 114).

(7) Remove special tool 8350.

(8) Rotate the crankshaft two full revolutions, then reverify that the camshaft drive gear V8 marks are in fact aligned.

(9) Install the cylinder head covers (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD/CYLINDER HEAD COVER(S) - INSTALLATION).



**Fig. 113 Camshaft Sprocket Left Cylinder Head**

- 1 - TORQUE WRENCH
- 2 - CAMSHAFT SPROCKET
- 3 - LEFT CYLINDER HEAD
- 4 - SPECIAL TOOL 6958 SPANNER WITH ADAPTER PINS 8346

## STANDARD PROCEDURE—MEASURING TIMING CHAIN WEAR

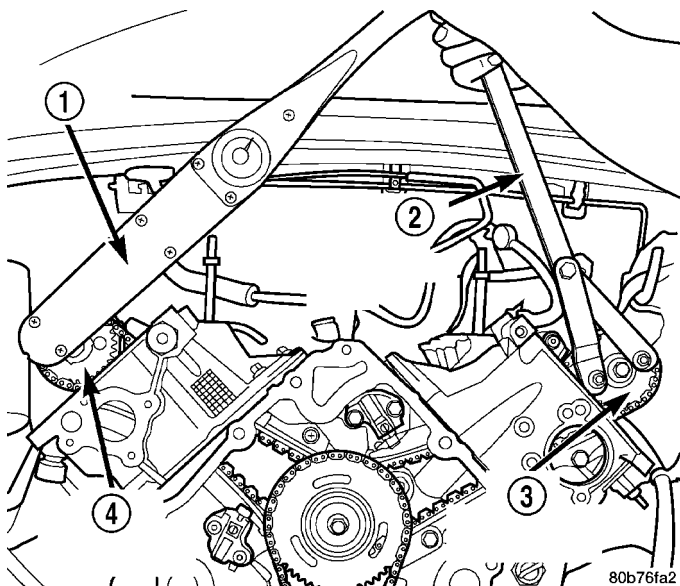
**NOTE:** This procedure must be performed with the timing chain cover removed.

(1) Remove the timing chain cover. (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/VALVE TIMING/TIMING BELT / CHAIN COVER(S) - REMOVAL).

(2) To determine if the secondary timing chains are worn, rotate the engine clockwise until maximum tensioner piston extension is obtained. Measure the distance between the secondary timing chain tensioner housing and the step ledge on the piston (Fig. 115). The measurement at point (A) must be less than 15mm (0.5906 inches).

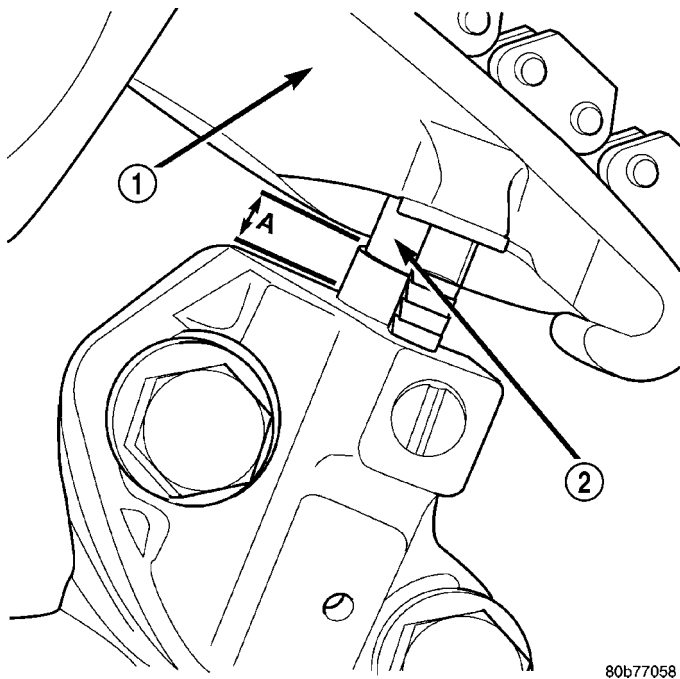
(3) If the measurement exceeds the specification the secondary timing chains are worn and require replacement. (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/VALVE TIMING/TIMING BELT/CHAIN AND SPROCKETS - REMOVAL).

## VALVE TIMING (Continued)



**Fig. 114 Camshaft Sprocket Installation—Right Cylinder Head**

- 1 - TORQUE WRENCH
- 2 - SPECIAL TOOL 6958 WITH ADAPTER PINS 8346
- 3 - LEFT CAMSHAFT SPROCKET
- 4 - RIGHT CAMSHAFT SPROCKET



**Fig. 115 Measuring Secondary Timing Chains For Wear**

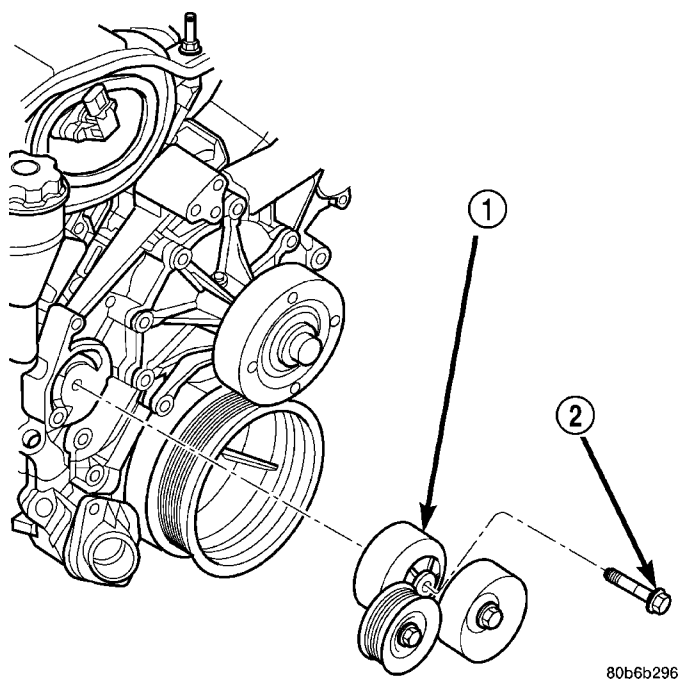
- 1 - SECONDARY TENSIONER ARM
- 2 - SECONDARY CHAIN TENSIONER PISTON

**NOTE:** If the secondary chains are to be replaced the primary chain must also be replaced.

## TIMING BELT / CHAIN COVER(S)

## REMOVAL

- (1) Disconnect the battery negative cable.
- (2) Drain cooling system (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).
- (3) Disconnect both heater hoses at timing cover.
- (4) Disconnect lower radiator hose at engine.
- (5) Remove crankshaft damper (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE BLOCK/VIBRATION DAMPER - REMOVAL).
- (6) Remove accessory drive belt tensioner assembly (Fig. 116).



**Fig. 116 Accessory Drive Belt Tensioner**

- 1 - TENSIONER ASSEMBLY
- 2 - FASTENER TENSIONER TO FRONT COVER

- (7) Remove the generator and A/C compressor.

**CAUTION:** The 4.7L engine uses an RTV sealer instead of a gasket to seal the front cover to the engine block, from the factory. For service, Mopar® Engine RTV sealant must be substituted.

**NOTE:** It is not necessary to remove the water pump for timing cover removal.

- (8) Remove the bolts holding the timing cover to engine block. (Fig. 117).
- (9) Remove cover (Fig. 117).

## TIMING BELT / CHAIN COVER(S) (Continued)

★ INDICATES STUD LOCATIONS

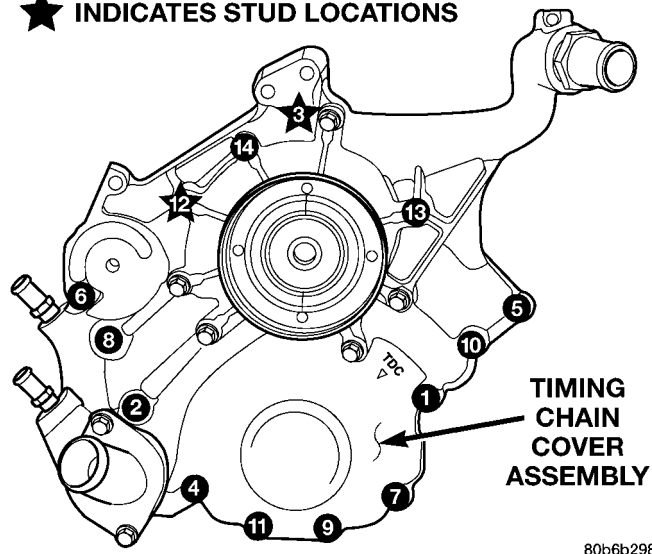


Fig. 117 Timing Chain Cover Fasteners

## INSTALLATION

**CAUTION:** Do not use oil based liquids to clean timing cover or block surfaces. Use only rubbing alcohol, along with plastic or wooden scrapers. Use no wire brushes or abrasive wheels or metal scrapers, or damage to surfaces could result.

(1) Clean timing chain cover and block surface using rubbing alcohol.

**CAUTION:** The 4.7L uses a special RTV sealer instead of a gasket to seal the timing cover to the engine block, from the factory. For service repairs, Mopar® Engine RTV must be used as a substitute.

(2) Inspect the water passage o-rings for any damage, and replace as necessary.

(3) Apply Mopar® Engine RTV sealer to the front cover following the path below, using a 3 to 4mm thick bead (Fig. 118).

(4) Install cover. Tighten flange head fasteners in sequence as shown in (Fig. 119) to 58 N-m (43 ft. lbs.).

(5) Install the A/C compressor and generator.

(6) Install crankshaft damper (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE BLOCK/VIBRATION DAMPER - INSTALLATION).

(7) Install accessory drive belt tensioner assembly. Tighten fastener to 54 N-m (40 ft. lbs.).

(8) Install lower radiator hose.

(9) Install both heater hoses.

(10) Fill cooling system (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

(11) Connect the battery negative cable.

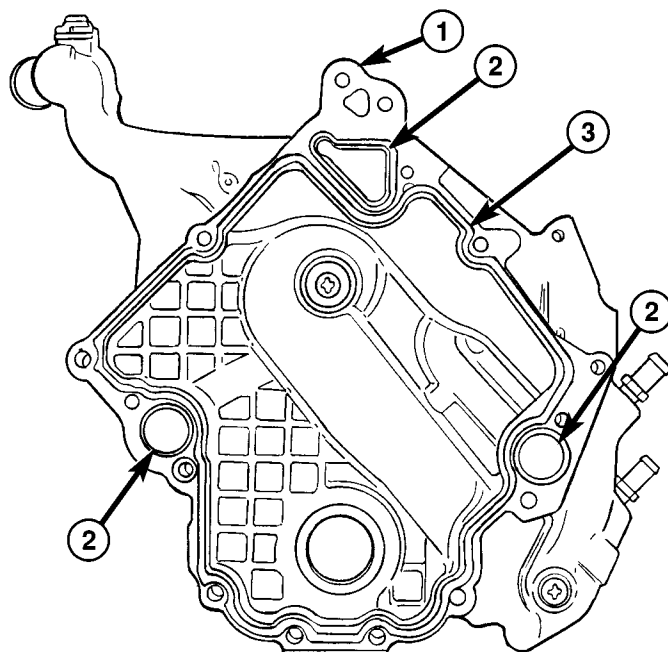


Fig. 118 Timing Cover Sealant

- 1 - TIMING CHAIN COVER
- 2 - WATER PASSAGE ORING
- 3 - MOPAR® ENGINE RTV SEALER

★ INDICATES STUD LOCATIONS

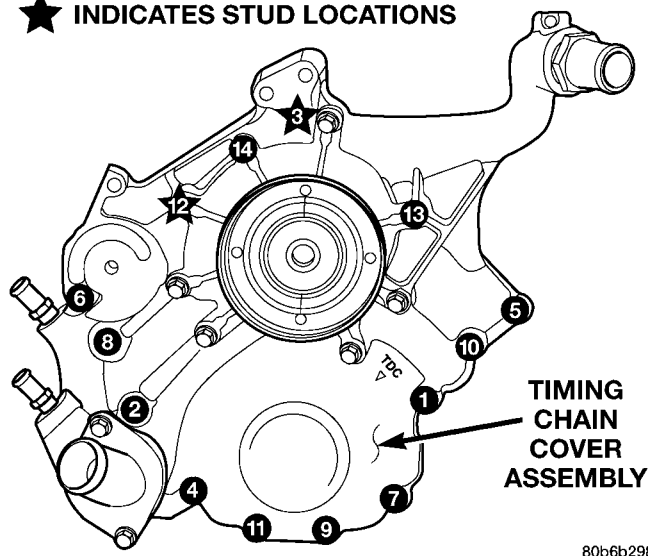
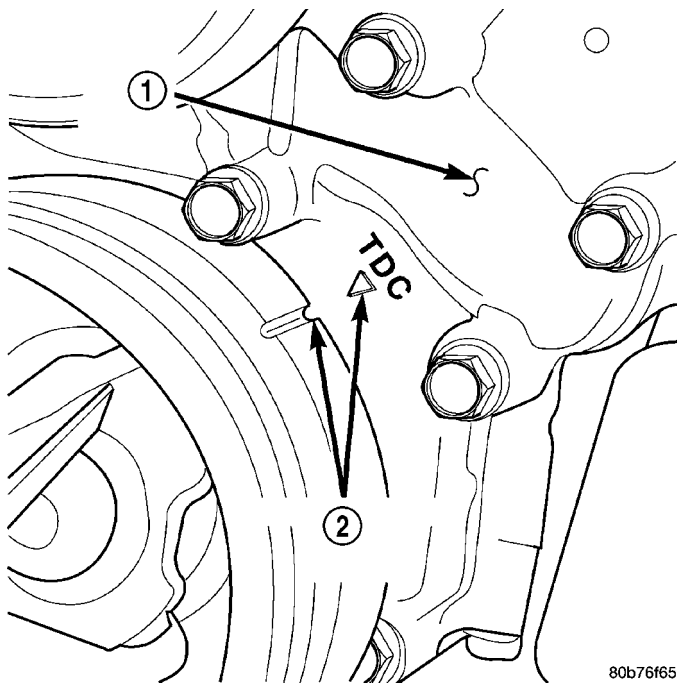


Fig. 119 Timing Chain Cover Fasteners

## TIMING BELT/CHAIN AND SPROCKETS

### REMOVAL

- (1) Disconnect negative cable from battery.
- (2) Drain cooling system (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).
- (3) Remove right and left cylinder head covers (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD/CYLINDER HEAD COVER(S) - REMOVAL).
- (4) Remove radiator fan (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ENGINE/RADIATOR FAN - REMOVAL).
- (5) Rotate engine until timing mark on crankshaft damper aligns with TDC mark on timing chain cover (Fig. 120) (#1 cylinder exhaust stroke) and the camshaft sprocket "V8" marks are at the 12 o'clock position (Fig. 121).



**Fig. 120 Engine Top Dead Center (TDC) Indicator Mark**

- 1 - TIMING CHAIN COVER  
2 - CRANKSHAFT TIMING MARKS

- (6) Remove power steering pump.
- (7) Remove access plugs (2) from left and right cylinder heads for access to chain guide fasteners (Fig. 122).
- (8) Remove the oil fill housing to gain access to the right side tensioner arm fastener.
- (9) Remove crankshaft damper (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE BLOCK/VIBRATION DAMPER - REMOVAL) and timing chain cover (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/VALVE TIMING/TIMING BELT / CHAIN COVER(S) - REMOVAL).
- (10) Collapse and pin primary chain tensioner (Fig. 123).

**CAUTION:** Plate behind left secondary chain tensioner could fall into oil pan. Therefore, cover pan opening.

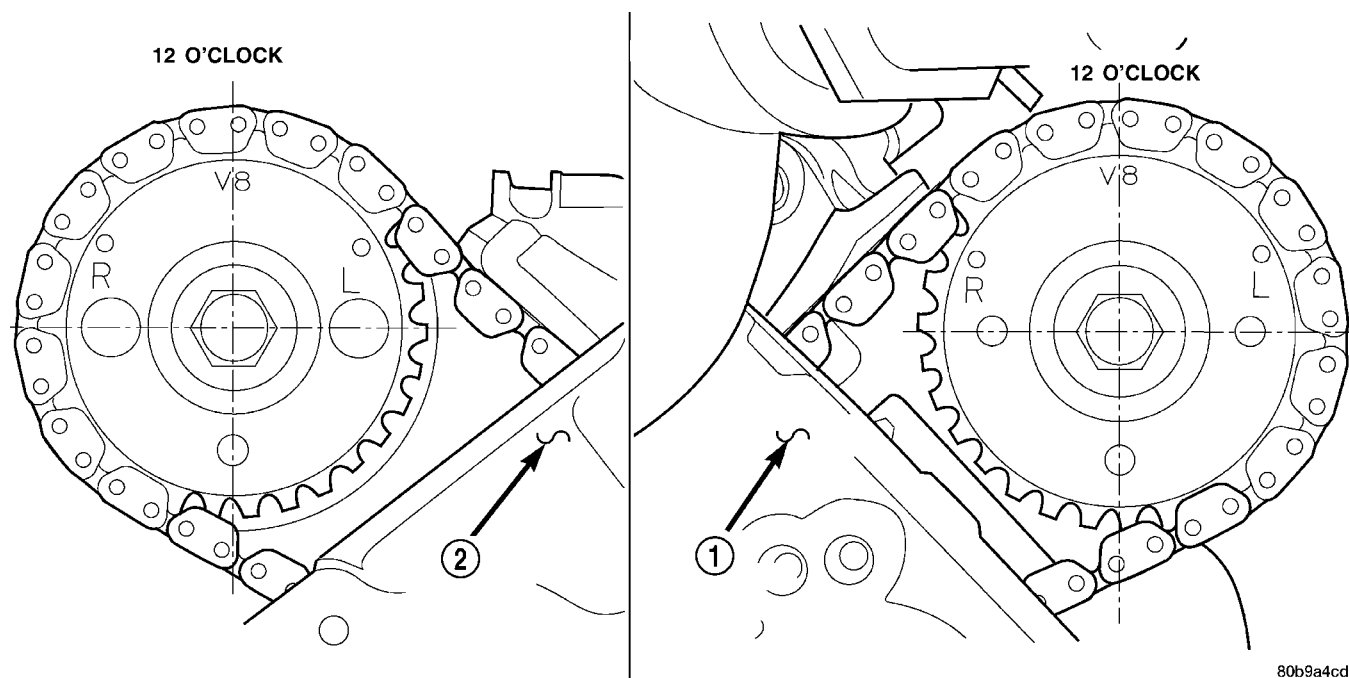
- (11) Remove secondary chain tensioners.
- (12) Remove camshaft position sensor from right cylinder head (Fig. 124).

**CAUTION:** Care should be taken not to damage camshaft target wheel. Do not hold target wheel while loosening or tightening camshaft sprocket. Do not place the target wheel near a magnetic source of any kind. A damaged or magnetized target wheel could cause a vehicle no start condition.

**CAUTION:** Do not forcefully rotate the camshafts or crankshaft independently of each other. Damaging intake valve to piston contact will occur. Ensure negative battery cable is disconnected to guard against accidental starter engagement.



## TIMING BELT/CHAIN AND SPROCKETS (Continued)

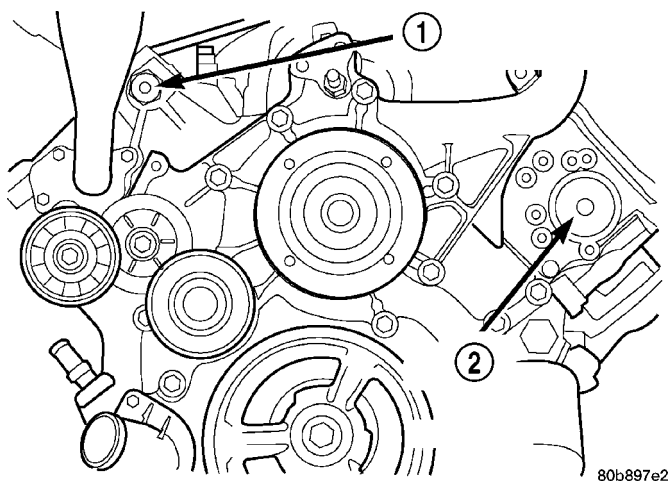


80b9a4cd

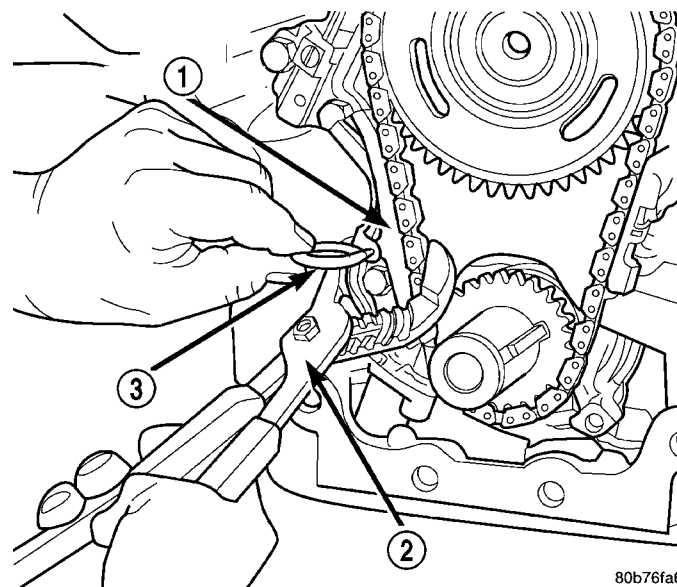
**Fig. 121 Camshaft Sprocket V8 Marks**

1 - LEFT CYLINDER HEAD

2 - RIGHT CYLINDER HEAD



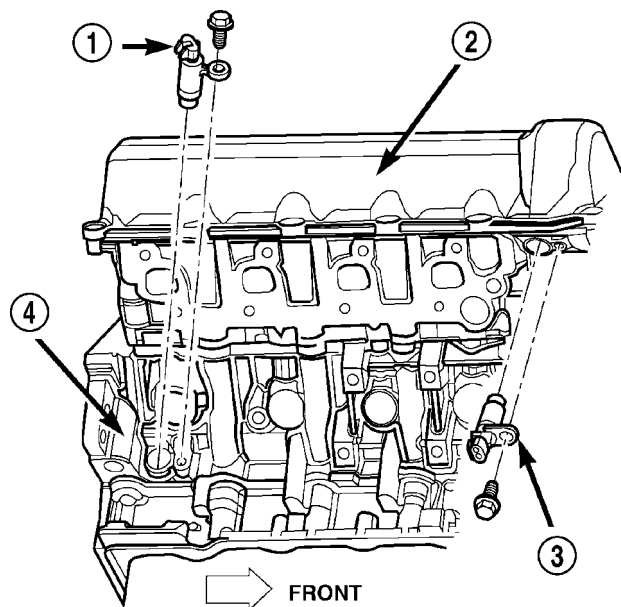
80b897e2

**Fig. 122 Cylinder Head Access Plug Location**1 - RIGHT CYLINDER HEAD ACCESS PLUG  
2 - LEFT CYLINDER HEAD ACCESS PLUG

80b76fa6

**Fig. 123 Collapsing And Pinning Primary Chain Tensioner**1 - PRIMARY CHAIN TENSIONER  
2 - ADJUSTABLE PLIERS  
3 - SPECIAL TOOL 8514

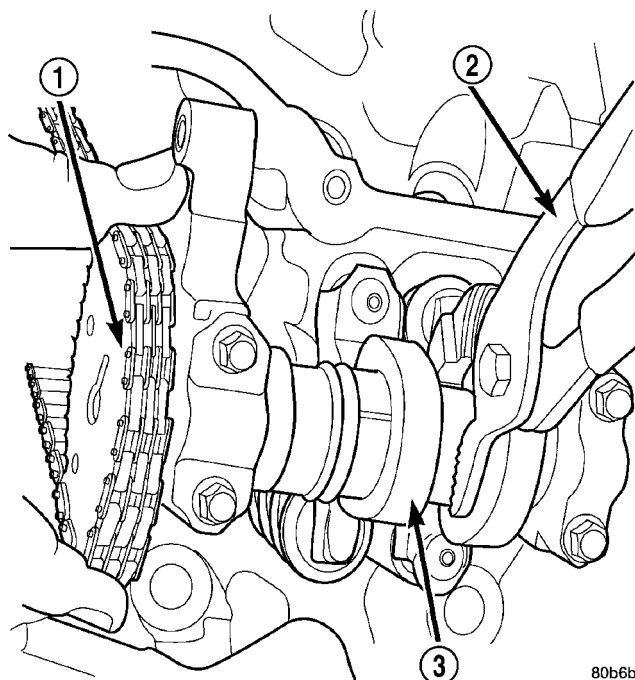
## TIMING BELT/CHAIN AND SPROCKETS (Continued)



80b77057

**Fig. 124 Camshaft Position Sensor—Removal**

- 1 - CRANKSHAFT POSITION SENSOR
- 2 - CYLINDER HEAD COVER
- 3 - CAMSHAFT POSITION SENSOR
- 4 - RIGHT SIDE CYLINDER BLOCK



80b6b395

**Fig. 125 Camshaft Rotation—Left Side**

- 1 - CAMSHAFT SPROCKET AND CHAIN
- 2 - ADJUSTABLE PLIERS
- 3 - CAMSHAFT

(13) Remove left and right camshaft sprocket bolts.

(14) While holding the left camshaft steel tube with adjustable pliers, (Fig. 125) remove the left camshaft sprocket. Slowly rotate the camshaft approximately 15 degrees clockwise to a neutral position.

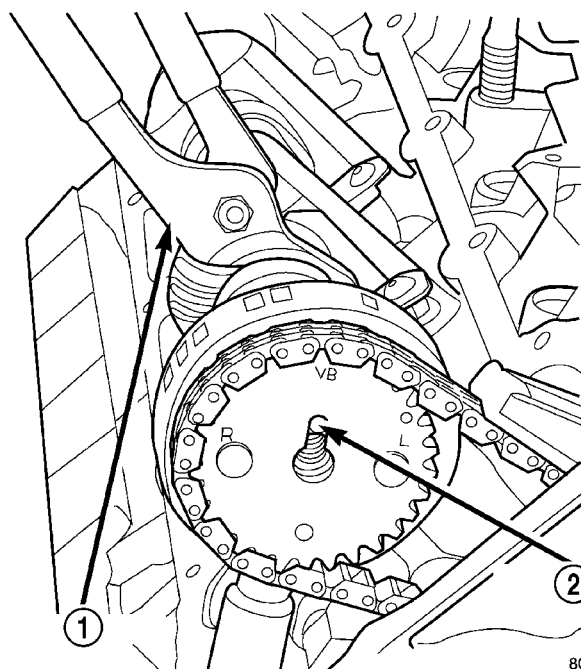
(15) While holding the right camshaft steel tube with adjustable pliers, (Fig. 126) remove the right camshaft sprocket. Slowly rotate the camshaft approximately 45 degrees counterclockwise to a neutral position.

(16) Remove idler sprocket assembly bolt.

(17) Slide the idler sprocket assembly and crank sprocket forward simultaneously to remove the primary and secondary chains.

(18) Remove both pivoting tensioner arms and chain guides.

(19) Remove chain tensioner.



80ba7755

**Fig. 126 Camshaft Rotation—Right Side**

- 1 - ADJUSTABLE PLIERS
- 2 - CAMSHAFT DOWEL



## TIMING BELT/CHAIN AND SPROCKETS (Continued)

## INSPECTION

Inspect the following components:

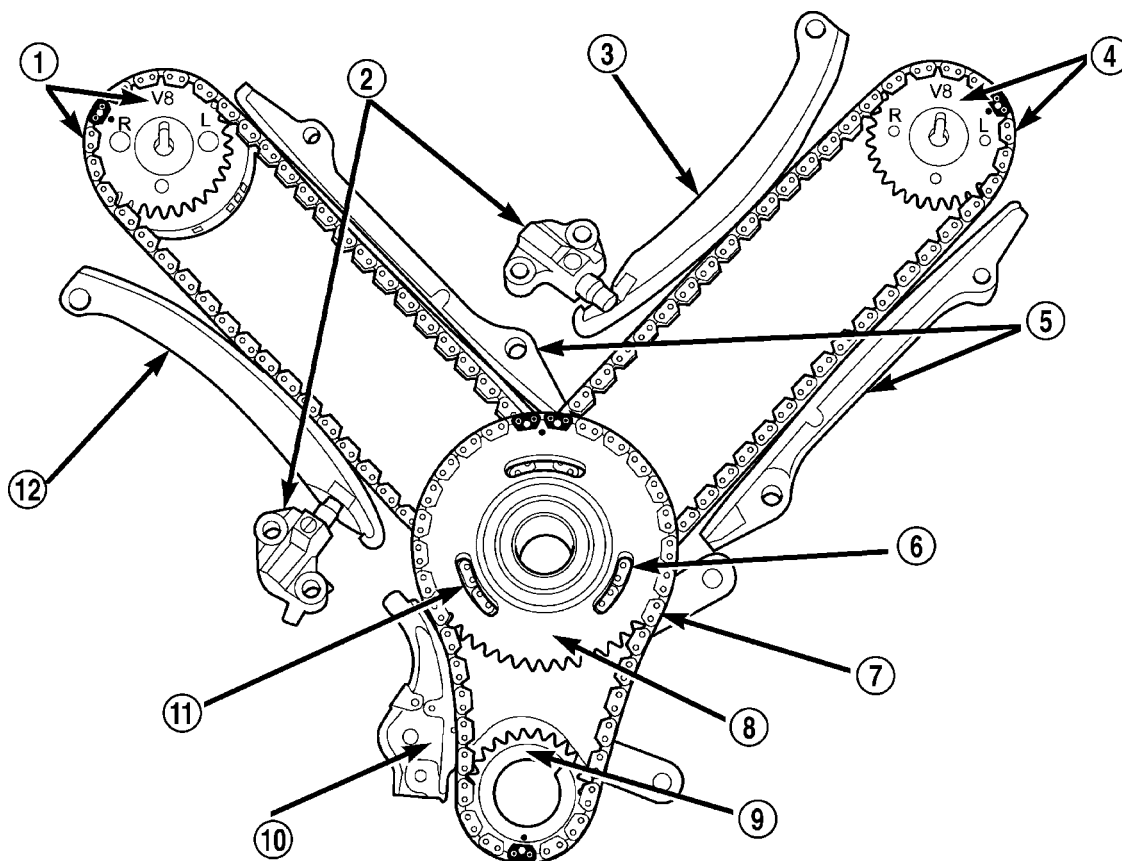
- Sprockets for excessive tooth wear. Some tooth markings are normal and not a cause for sprocket replacement.
- Idler sprocket assembly bushing and shaft for excessive wear.
- Idler sprocket assembly spline joint. The joint should be tight with no backlash or axial movement.
- Chain guides and tensioner arms. Replace these parts if grooving in plastic face is more than 1 mm (0.039 in.) deep. If plastic face is severely grooved or melted, the tensioner lube jet may be clogged. The tensioner should be replaced.
- secondary chain tensioner piston and ratcheting device. Inspect for evidence of heavy contact between tensioner piston and tensioner arm. If this condition exist the tensioner and tensioner arm should be replaced.

- Primary chain tensioner plastic faces. Replace as required (Fig. 127).

## INSTALLATION

(1) Using a vise, lightly compress the secondary chain tensioner piston until the piston step is flush with the tensioner body. Using a pin or suitable tool, release ratchet pawl by pulling pawl back against spring force through access hole on side of tensioner. While continuing to hold pawl back, Push ratchet device to approximately 2 mm from the tensioner body. Install Special Tool 8514 lock pin into hole on front of tensioner. Slowly open vise to transfer piston spring force to lock pin (Fig. 128).

(2) Position primary chain tensioner over oil pump and insert bolts into lower two holes on tensioner bracket. Tighten bolts to 28 N·m (250 in. lbs.).



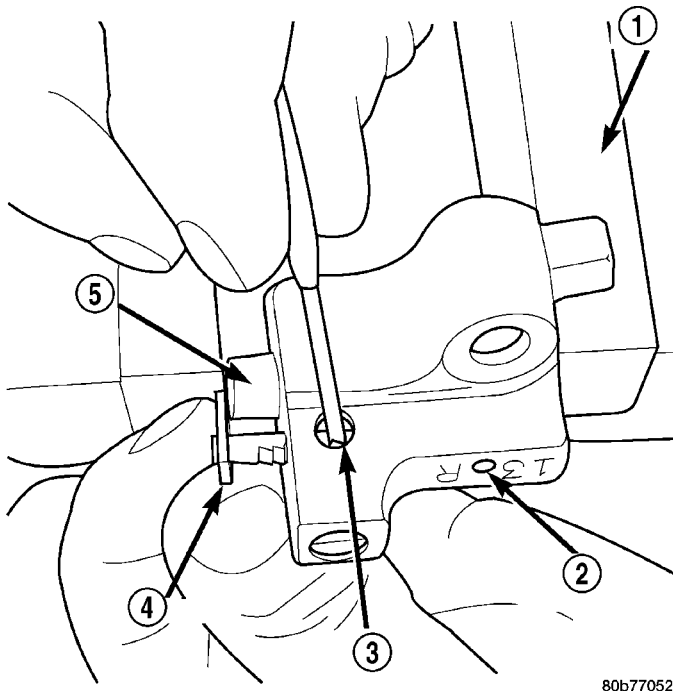
80b3c710

**Fig. 127 Timing Chain System**

- 1 - RIGHT CAMSHAFT SPROCKET AND SECONDARY CHAIN
- 2 - SECONDARY TIMING CHAIN TENSIONER (LEFT AND RIGHT SIDE NOT COMMON)
- 3 - SECONDARY TENSIONER ARM
- 4 - LEFT CAMSHAFT SPROCKET AND SECONDARY CHAIN
- 5 - CHAIN GUIDE
- 6 - TWO PLATED LINKS ON RIGHT CAMSHAFT CHAIN

- 7 - PRIMARY CHAIN
- 8 - IDLER SPROCKET
- 9 - CRANKSHAFT SPROCKET
- 10 - PRIMARY CHAIN TENSIONER
- 11 - TWO PLATED LINKS ON LEFT CAMSHAFT CHAIN
- 12 - SECONDARY TENSIONER ARM

## TIMING BELT/CHAIN AND SPROCKETS (Continued)

**Fig. 128 Resetting Secondary Chain Tensioners**

- 1 - VISE
- 2 - INSERT LOCK PIN
- 3 - RATCHET PAWL
- 4 - RATCHET
- 5 - PISTON

**CAUTION:** Overtightening the tensioner arm torx® bolt can cause severe damage to the cylinder head. Tighten torx® bolt to specified torque only.

(3) Install right side chain tensioner arm. Apply Mopar® Lock N, Seal to torx® bolt, tighten bolt to 17 N·m (150 in. lbs.).

**NOTE:** The silver bolts retain the guides to the cylinder heads and the black bolts retain the guides to the engine block.

(4) Install the left side chain guide. Tighten the bolts to 28 N·m (250 in. lbs.).

**CAUTION:** Overtightening the tensioner arm torx® bolt can cause severe damage to the cylinder head. Tighten torx® bolt to specified torque only.

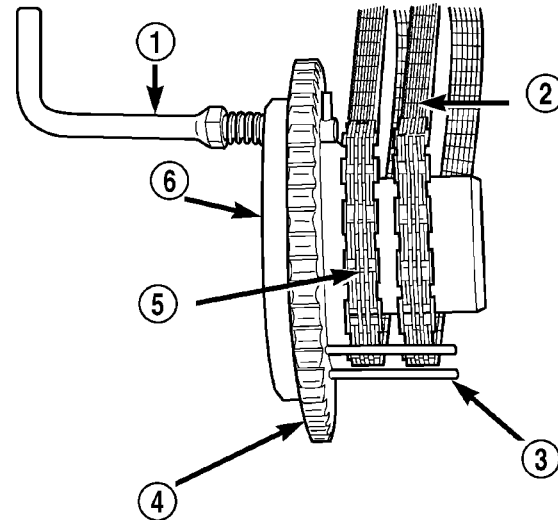
(5) Install left side chain tensioner arm. Apply Mopar® Lock N, Seal to torx® bolt, tighten bolt to 17 N·m (150 in. lbs.).

(6) Install the right side chain guide. Tighten the bolts to 28 N·m (250 in. lbs.).

(7) Install both secondary chains onto the idler sprocket. Align two plated links on the secondary chains to be visible through the two lower openings on the idler sprocket (4 o'clock and 8 o'clock). Once the secondary timing chains are installed, position

special tool 8515 to hold chains in place for installation (Fig. 129).

(8) Align primary chain double plated links with the timing mark at 12 o'clock on the idler sprocket. Align the primary chain single plated link with the timing mark at 6 o'clock on the crankshaft sprocket (Fig. 127).

**Fig. 129 Installing Secondary Timing Chains on Idler Sprocket**

- 1 - LOCK ARM
- 2 - RIGHT CAMSHAFT CHAIN
- 3 - SECONDARY CHAINS RETAINING PINS (4)
- 4 - IDLER SPROCKET
- 5 - LEFT CAMSHAFT CHAIN
- 6 - SPECIAL TOOL 8515

(9) Lubricate idler shaft and bushings with clean engine oil.

(10) Install all chains, crankshaft sprocket, and idler sprocket as an assembly (Fig. 130). After guiding both secondary chains through the block and cylinder head openings, affix chains with an elastic strap or the equivalent. This will maintain tension on chains to aid in installation.

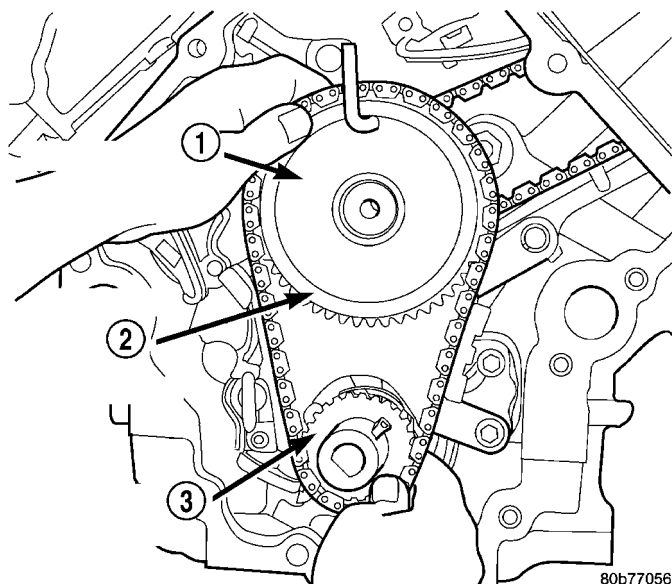
**NOTE:** It will be necessary to slightly rotate camshafts for sprocket installation.

(11) Align left camshaft sprocket "L" dot to plated link on chain.

(12) Align right camshaft sprocket "R" dot to plated link on chain.

**CAUTION:** Remove excess oil from the camshaft sprocket bolt. Failure to do so can result in over-torque of bolt resulting in bolt failure.

## TIMING BELT/CHAIN AND SPROCKETS (Continued)



**Fig. 130 Installing Idler Gear, Primary and Secondary Timing Chains**

- 1 - SPECIAL TOOL 8515
- 2 - PRIMARY CHAIN IDLER SPROCKET
- 3 - CRANKSHAFT SPROCKET

(13) Remove Special Tool 8515, then attach both sprockets to camshafts. Remove excess oil from bolts, then install sprocket bolts, but do not tighten at this time.

(14) Verify that all plated links are aligned with the marks on all sprockets and the "V8" marks on camshaft sprockets are at the 12 o'clock position (Fig. 127).

**CAUTION:** Ensure the plate between the left secondary chain tensioner and block is correctly installed.

(15) Install both secondary chain tensioners. Tighten bolts to 28 N·m (250 in. lbs.).

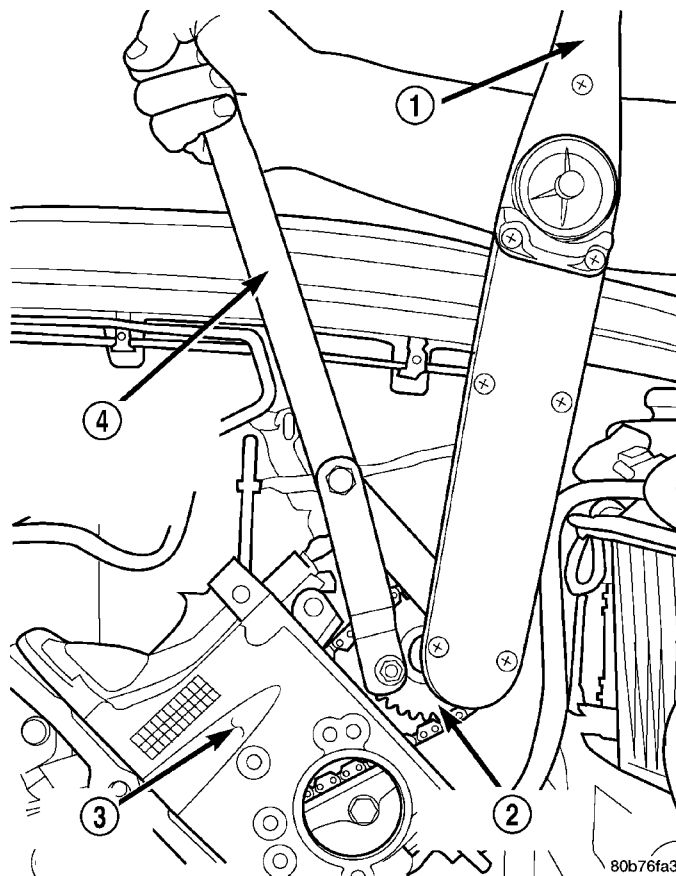
**NOTE:** Left and right secondary chain tensioners are not common.

(16) Before installing idler sprocket bolt, lubricate washer with oil, and tighten idler sprocket assembly retaining bolt to 34 N·m (25 ft. lbs.).

(17) Remove all locking pins (3) from tensioners.

**CAUTION:** After pulling locking pins out of each tensioner, DO NOT manually extend the tensioner(s) ratchet. Doing so will over tension the chains, resulting in noise and/or high timing chain loads.

(18) Using Special Tool 6958, Spanner with Adapter Pins 8346, tighten left (Fig. 131) and right (Fig. 132). camshaft sprocket bolts to 122 N·m (90 ft. lbs.).



**Fig. 131 Tightening Left Side Camshaft Sprocket Bolt**

- 1 - TORQUE WRENCH
- 2 - CAMSHAFT SPROCKET
- 3 - LEFT CYLINDER HEAD
- 4 - SPECIAL TOOL 6958 SPANNER WITH ADAPTER PINS 8346

(19) Rotate engine two full revolutions. Verify timing marks are at the following locations:

- primary chain idler sprocket dot is at 12 o'clock (Fig. 127)
- primary chain crankshaft sprocket dot is at 6 o'clock (Fig. 127)
- secondary chain camshaft sprockets "V8" marks are at 12 o'clock (Fig. 127)

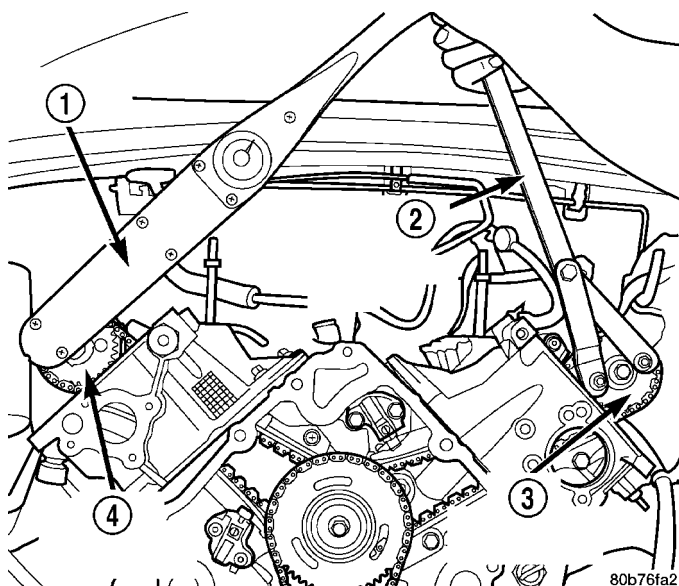
(20) Lubricate all three chains with engine oil.

(21) After installing all chains, it is recommended that the idler gear end play be checked (Fig. 133). The end play must be within 0.10–0.25 mm (0.004–0.010 in.). If not within specification, the idler gear and idler shaft must be replaced.

(22) Install timing chain cover (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/VALVE TIMING/TIMING BELT / CHAIN COVER(S) - INSTALLATION) and crankshaft damper (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE BLOCK/VIBRATION DAMPER - INSTALLATION).

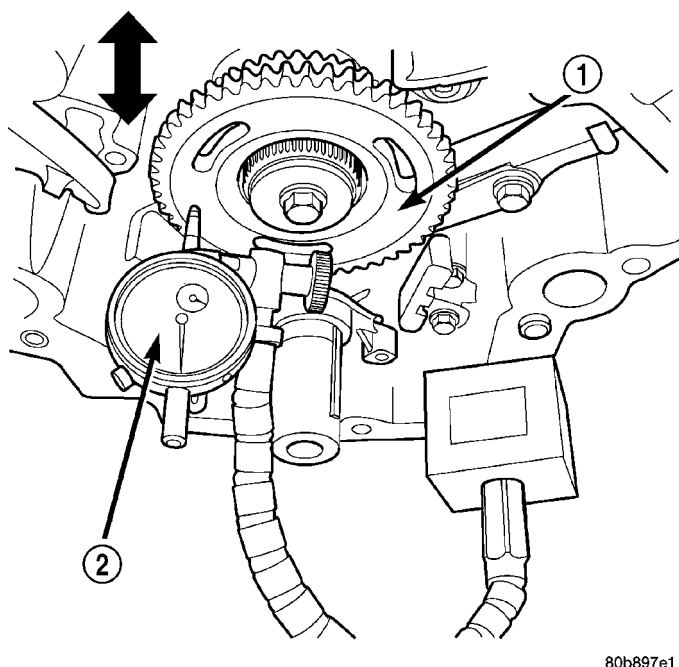
(23) Install cylinder head covers (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/CYLINDER HEAD/CYLINDER HEAD COVER(S) - INSTALLATION).

## TIMING BELT/CHAIN AND SPROCKETS (Continued)



**Fig. 132 Tightening Right Side Camshaft Sprocket Bolt**

- 1 - TORQUE WRENCH
- 2 - SPECIAL TOOL 6958 WITH ADAPTER PINS 8346
- 3 - LEFT CAMSHAFT SPROCKET
- 4 - RIGHT CAMSHAFT SPROCKET



**Fig. 133 Measuring Idler Gear End Play**

- 1 - IDLER SPROCKET ASSEMBLY
- 2 - DIAL INDICATOR

**NOTE:** Before installing threaded plug in right cylinder head, the plug must be coated with sealant to prevent leaks.

(24) Coat the large threaded access plug with **Mopar® Thread Sealant with Teflon**, then install

into the right cylinder head and tighten to 81 N·m (60 ft. lbs.) (Fig. 122).

(25) Install the oil fill housing.

(26) Install access plug in left cylinder head (Fig. 122).

(27) Install power steering pump.

(28) Install radiator fan (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ENGINE/RADIATOR FAN - INSTALLATION).

(29) Fill cooling system (Refer to 7 - COOLING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

(30) Connect negative cable to battery.

## IDLER SHAFT

### REMOVAL

(1) Remove the primary and secondary timing chains and sprockets (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/VALVE TIMING/TIMING BELT/CHAIN AND SPROCKETS - REMOVAL) .

**NOTE:** To remove the idler shaft, it is necessary to tap threads into the shaft, to install the removal tool.

(2) Using a 12 mm X 1.75 tap, cut threads in the idler shaft center bore.

(3) Cover the radiator core with a suitable cover.

**CAUTION:** Use care when removing the idler shaft, Do not strike the radiator cooling fins with the slide hammer.

(4) Using Special Tool 8517 Slide Hammer, remove the idler shaft.

### INSTALLATION

(1) Thoroughly clean the idler shaft bore.

(2) Position the idler shaft in the bore.

**NOTE:** The two lubrication holes in the idler shaft do not require any special alignment.

**NOTE:** Before using the retaining bolt to install the idler shaft, coat the threads and the pilot on the idler shaft, with clean engine oil.

(3) Using the primary idler sprocket retaining bolt and washer, carefully draw the idler shaft into the bore until fully seated.

(4) Coat the idler shaft with clean engine oil.

(5) Install the timing chains and sprockets (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/VALVE TIMING/TIMING BELT/CHAIN AND SPROCKETS - INSTALLATION).



EXHAUST SYSTEM

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>EXHAUST SYSTEM</b>		<b>EXHAUST PIPE - 4.0L</b>	
DESCRIPTION - EXHAUST SYSTEM .....	1	REMOVAL .....	8
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - EXHAUST		INSPECTION .....	8
SYSTEM .....	3	INSTALLATION .....	8
SPECIFICATIONS		<b>EXHAUST PIPE - 4.7L</b>	
TORQUE .....	3	REMOVAL .....	10
<b>CATALYTIC CONVERTER - 4.0L</b>		INSPECTION .....	10
DESCRIPTION - CATALYTIC CONVERTER -		INSTALLATION .....	10
4.0L ENGINE .....	4	<b>HEAT SHIELDS</b>	
REMOVAL .....	4	DESCRIPTION .....	12
INSPECTION .....	5	<b>MUFFLER</b>	
INSTALLATION .....	5	DESCRIPTION .....	12
<b>CATALYTIC CONVERTER - 4.7L</b>		REMOVAL .....	12
DESCRIPTION - CATALYTIC CONVERTER .....	6	INSTALLATION .....	13
REMOVAL .....	6	<b>TAILPIPE</b>	
INSPECTION .....	7	DESCRIPTION .....	13
INSTALLATION .....	7	OPERATION .....	13

EXHAUST SYSTEM

DESCRIPTION - EXHAUST SYSTEM

**WARNING: THE NORMAL OPERATING TEMPERATURE OF THE EXHAUST SYSTEM IS VERY HIGH. THEREFORE, NEVER WORK AROUND OR ATTEMPT TO SERVICE ANY PART OF THE EXHAUST SYSTEM UNTIL IT IS COOLED. SPECIAL CARE SHOULD BE TAKEN WHEN WORKING NEAR THE CATALYTIC CONVERTER. THE TEMPERATURE OF THE CONVERTER RISES TO A HIGH LEVEL AFTER A SHORT PERIOD OF ENGINE OPERATION TIME.**

**CAUTION: Avoid application of rust prevention compounds or undercoating materials to exhaust system floor pan heat shields. Light overspray near the edges is permitted. Application of coating will result in excessive floor pan temperatures and objectionable fumes.**

The exhaust system uses a single muffler with a welded tailpipe.

The 50 State Emissions vehicles use two mini catalytic converters inline with the exhaust pipe below the exhaust manifolds.

The exhaust manifolds are equipped with ball flange outlets to assure a tight seal and strain free connections.

The exhaust system must be properly aligned to prevent stress, leakage and body contact. If the system contacts any body panel, it may amplify objectionable noises originating from the engine or body.

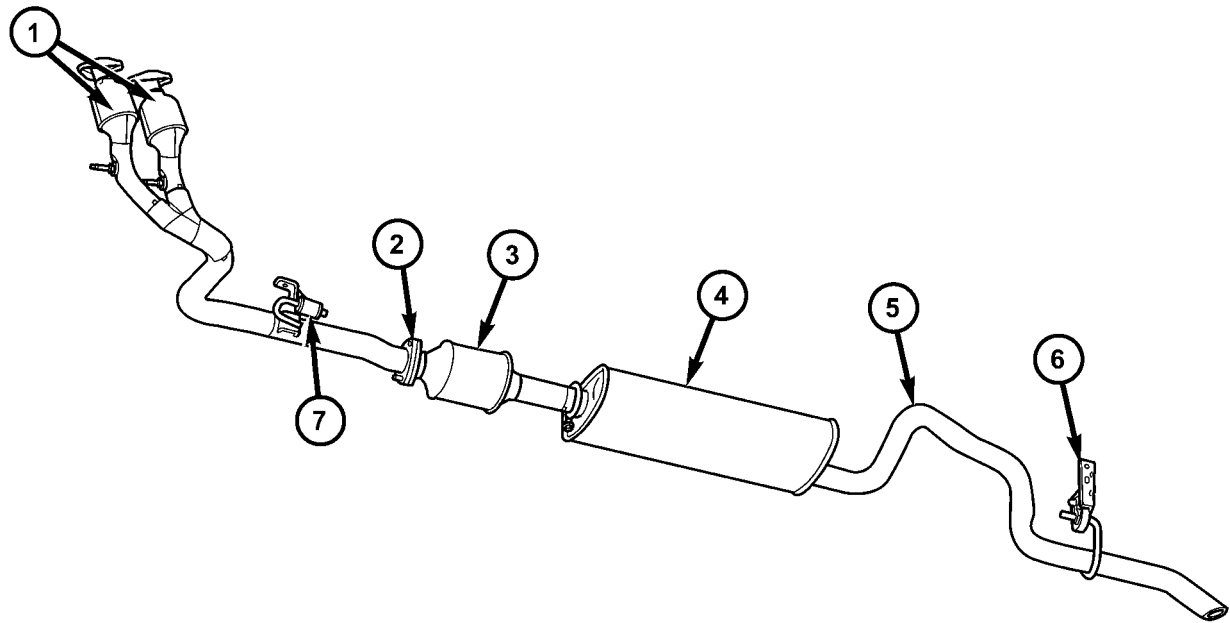
When inspecting an exhaust system, critically inspect for cracked or loose joints, stripped screw or bolt threads, corrosion damage and worn, cracked or broken hangers. Replace all components that are badly corroded or damaged. DO NOT attempt to repair.

When replacement is required, use original equipment parts (or their equivalent). This will assure proper alignment and provide acceptable exhaust noise levels.

The basic exhaust system consists of exhaust manifold(s), exhaust pipe with oxygen sensors, catalytic converter(s), heat shield(s), muffler and tailpipe (Fig. 1) and (Fig. 2).



## EXHAUST SYSTEM (Continued)

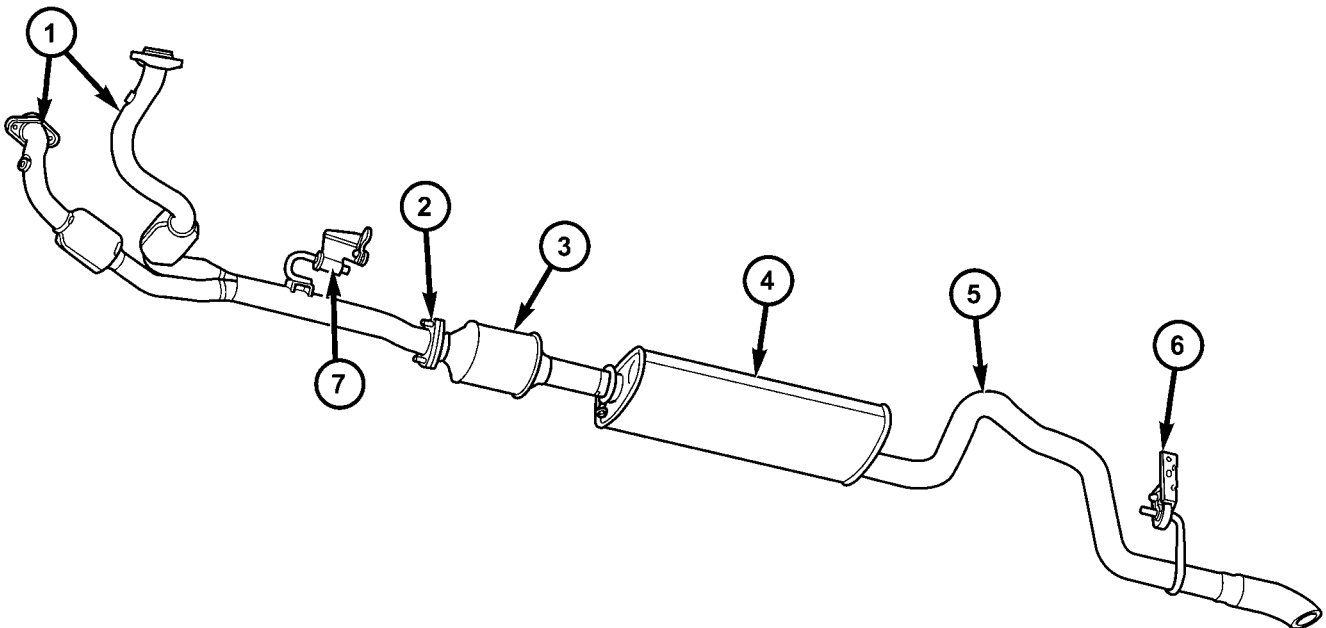


808c3312

**Fig. 1 Exhaust System - 4.0L**

- 1 - MINI CONVERTERS (2)
- 2 - CATALYTIC CONVERTER TO EXHAUST PIPE FLANGE JOINT
- 3 - CATALYTIC CONVERTER
- 4 - MUFFLER

- 5 - TAILPIPE
- 6 - TAILPIPE HANGER REAR MOUNT INSULATOR
- 7 - EXHAUST PIPE HANGER AND MOUNT INSULATOR



808c3318

**Fig. 2 Exhaust System - 4.7L**

- 1 - EXHAUST PIPE WITH CATALYTIC CONVERTERS
- 2 - EXHAUST PIPE TO CATALYTIC CONVERTER FLANGE JOINT
- 3 - CATALYTIC CONVERTER
- 4 - MUFFLER

- 5 - TAILPIPE
- 6 - TAILPIPE HANGER REAR MOUNT INSULATOR
- 7 - EXHAUST PIPE HANGER AND MOUNT INSULATOR



## EXHAUST SYSTEM (Continued)

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - EXHAUST SYSTEM

## EXHAUST SYSTEM DIAGNOSIS CHART

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSE	CORRECTION
EXCESSIVE EXHAUST NOISE	1. Leaks at pipe joints.  2. Burned or blown out muffler.  3. Burned or rusted-out exhaust pipe.  4. Exhaust pipe leaking at manifold flange.  5. Exhaust manifold cracked or broken.  6. Leak between exhaust manifold and cylinder head.  7. Restriction in muffler or tailpipe.  8. Exhaust system contacting body or chassis.	1. Tighten clamps to specified torque at leaking joints (Refer to 11 - EXHAUST SYSTEM - SPECIFICATIONS).  2. Replace muffler assembly (Refer to 11 - EXHAUST SYSTEM/MUFFLER - REMOVAL). Check exhaust system.  3. Replace exhaust pipe (Refer to 11 - EXHAUST SYSTEM/EXHAUST PIPE - REMOVAL).  4. Tighten connection attaching nuts (Refer to 11 - EXHAUST SYSTEM - SPECIFICATIONS).  5. Replace exhaust manifold (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/MANIFOLDS/EXHAUST MANIFOLD - REMOVAL).  6. Tighten exhaust manifold to cylinder head stud nuts or bolts (Refer to 9 - ENGINE - SPECIFICATIONS).  7. Remove restriction, if possible. Replace muffler or tailpipe, as necessary.  8. Re-align exhaust system to clear surrounding components.
LEAKING EXHAUST GASES	1. Leaks at pipe joints.	1. Tighten/replace clamps at leaking joints (Refer to 11 - EXHAUST SYSTEM - SPECIFICATIONS).

## SPECIFICATIONS

## TORQUE

DESCRIPTION	N-m	Ft.Lbs.	In.Lbs.
Rear Tailpipe Hanger Bolts	22	-	192

DESCRIPTION	N-m	Ft.Lbs.	In.Lbs.
Catalytic Converter-to-Exhaust Pipe Nuts	28	-	250
Exhaust Pipe-to-Manifold Nuts	31	23	-
Heat Shield Retaining Nuts	2.0	-	20
Muffler-to-Catalytic Converter U-bolt clamp	47	35	-

## CATALYTIC CONVERTER - 4.0L

## DESCRIPTION - CATALYTIC CONVERTER - 4.0L ENGINE

**WARNING:** THE NORMAL OPERATING TEMPERATURE OF THE EXHAUST SYSTEM IS VERY HIGH. THEREFORE, NEVER WORK AROUND OR ATTEMPT TO SERVICE ANY PART OF THE EXHAUST SYSTEM UNTIL IT IS COOLED. SPECIAL CARE SHOULD BE TAKEN WHEN WORKING NEAR THE CATALYTIC CONVERTER. THE TEMPERATURE OF THE CONVERTER RISES TO A HIGH LEVEL AFTER A SHORT PERIOD OF ENGINE OPERATION TIME.

**CAUTION:** DO NOT remove spark plug wires from plugs or by any other means short out cylinders. Failure of the catalytic converter can occur due to a temperature increase caused by unburned fuel passing through the converter.

The stainless steel catalytic converter body is designed to last the life of the vehicle. Excessive heat can result in bulging or other distortion, but excessive heat will not be the fault of the converter. If unburned fuel enters the converter, overheating may occur. If a converter is heat-damaged, correct the cause of the damage at the same time the converter is replaced. Also, inspect all other components of the exhaust system for heat damage.

**Unleaded gasoline must be used to avoid contaminating the catalyst core.**

50 State emission vehicles incorporate two mini catalytic converters located after the exhaust manifolds and before the inline catalytic converter (Fig. 3).

## REMOVAL

**WARNING:** IF TORCHES ARE USED WHEN WORKING ON THE EXHAUST SYSTEM, DO NOT ALLOW THE FLAME NEAR THE FUEL LINES.

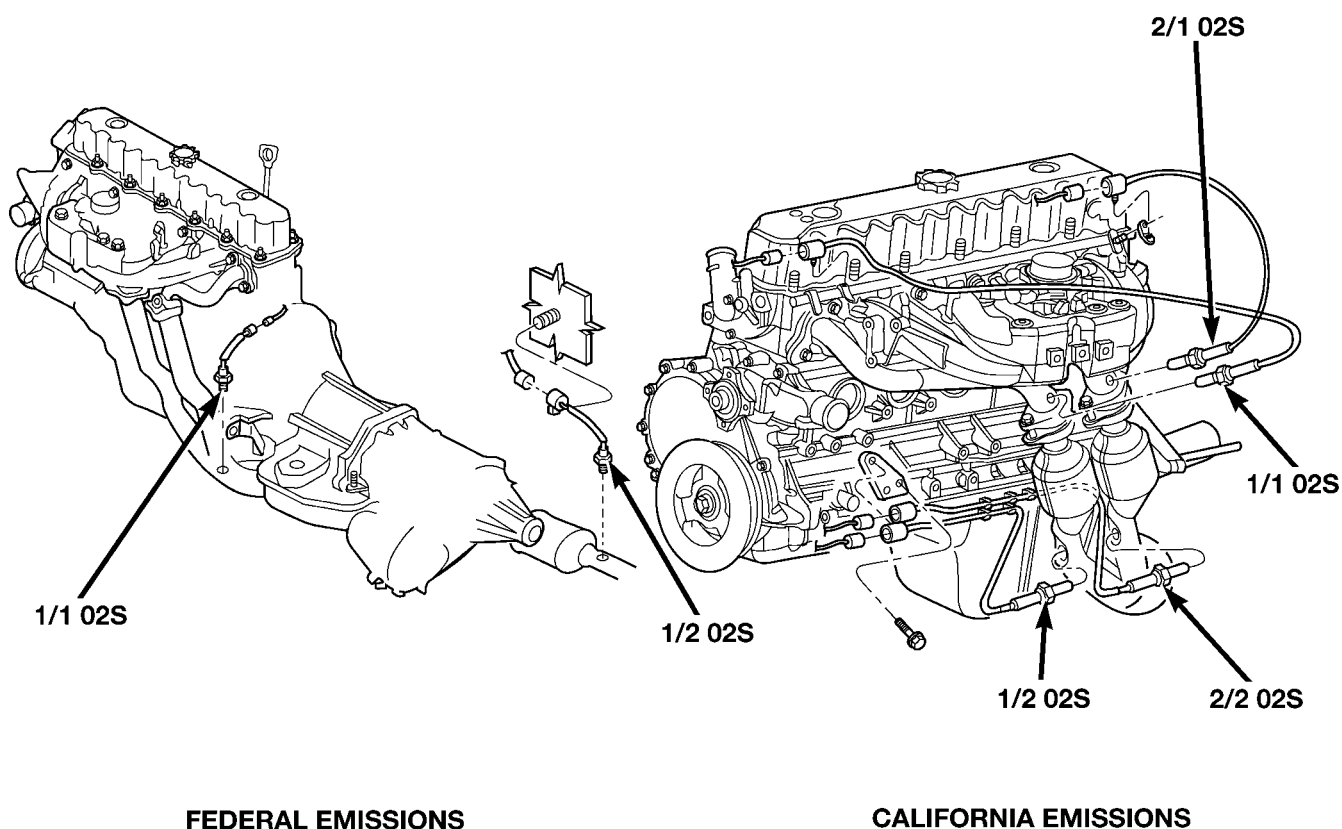
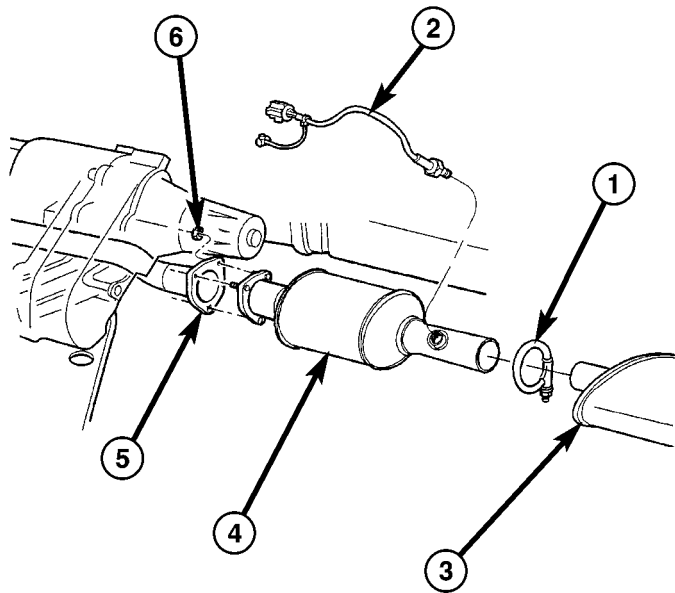


Fig. 3 4.0L Catalytic Converter and O2 Sensor Configuration - 50 State Emissions

## CATALYTIC CONVERTER - 4.0L (Continued)

- (1) Raise and support the vehicle.
- (2) Saturate the bolts and nuts with heat valve lubricant. Allow 5 minutes for penetration.
- (3) Remove nuts from the catalytic converter and exhaust pipe flange connection (Fig. 4).
- (4) Loosen exhaust clamp from the catalytic converter and muffler connection (Fig. 4).
- (5) Disconnect oxygen sensor wiring (Fig. 4).



**Fig. 4 Exhaust Pipe-to-Catalytic Converter-to-Muffler Connection**

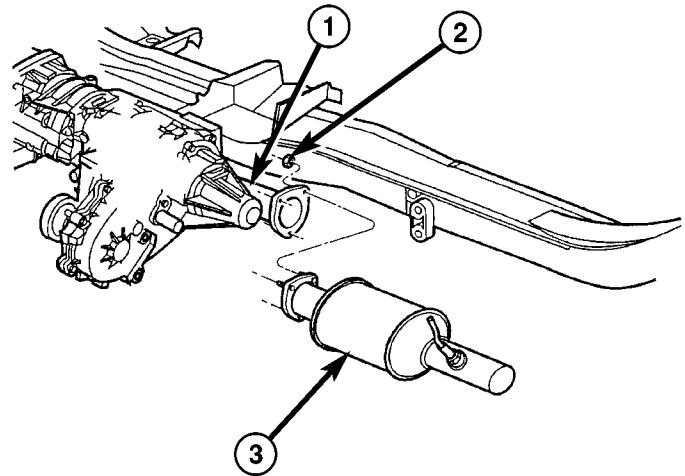
- 1 - EXHAUST CLAMP ASSEMBLY
- 2 - OXYGEN SENSOR
- 3 - MUFFLER
- 4 - CATALYTIC CONVERTER
- 5 - EXHAUST PIPE WITH FLANGE JOINT
- 6 - NUTS (3)

- (6) Heat the catalytic converter to muffler connection with a torch until the metal becomes cherry red.
- (7) While the metal is still cherry red, twist the catalytic converter back and forth to separate it from the exhaust pipe and the muffler (Fig. 5).

## INSPECTION

Look at the stainless steel body of the converter, inspect for bulging or other distortion that could be a result of overheating. If the converter has a heat shield attached make sure it is not bent or loose.

If you suspect internal damage to the catalyst, tapping the bottom of the catalyst with a rubber mallet may indicate a damaged core.



808c339c

**Fig. 5 Catalytic Converter - Removal**

- 1 - EXHAUST PIPE WITH FLANGE
- 2 - NUTS (3)
- 3 - CATALYTIC CONVERTER

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Position the catalytic converter onto the exhaust pipe flange connection (Fig. 4). Tighten the nuts to 28 N·m (250 in. lbs.) torque.
- (2) Install the muffler onto the catalytic converter until the alignment tab is inserted into the alignment slot.
- (3) Install the exhaust clamp at the muffler and catalytic converter connection (Fig. 4). Tighten the clamp nuts to 47 N·m (35 ft. lbs.) torque.
- (4) Connect oxygen sensor wiring (Fig. 4).
- (5) Lower the vehicle.
- (6) Start the engine and inspect for exhaust leaks. Repair exhaust leaks as necessary.
- (7) Check the exhaust system for contact with the body panels. Make the necessary adjustments, if needed.

## CATALYTIC CONVERTER - 4.7L

### DESCRIPTION - CATALYTIC CONVERTER

**WARNING:** THE NORMAL OPERATING TEMPERATURE OF THE EXHAUST SYSTEM IS VERY HIGH. THEREFORE, NEVER WORK AROUND OR ATTEMPT TO SERVICE ANY PART OF THE EXHAUST SYSTEM UNTIL IT IS COOLED. SPECIAL CARE SHOULD BE TAKEN WHEN WORKING NEAR THE CATALYTIC CONVERTER. THE TEMPERATURE OF THE CONVERTER RISES TO A HIGH LEVEL AFTER A SHORT PERIOD OF ENGINE OPERATION TIME.

**CAUTION:** DO NOT remove spark plug wires from plugs or by any other means short out cylinders. Failure of the catalytic converter can occur due to a temperature increase caused by unburned fuel passing through the converter.

The stainless steel catalytic converter body is designed to last the life of the vehicle. Excessive heat can result in bulging or other distortion, but excessive heat will not be the fault of the converter. If unburned fuel enters the converter, overheating may occur. If a converter is heat-damaged, correct the cause of the damage at the same time the converter is replaced. Also, inspect all other components of the exhaust system for heat damage.

**Unleaded gasoline must be used to avoid contaminating the catalyst core.**

50 State emission vehicles incorporate two mini catalytic converters located after the exhaust manifolds and before the inline catalytic converter (Fig. 6).

### REMOVAL

**WARNING:** IF TORCHES ARE USED WHEN WORKING ON THE EXHAUST SYSTEM, DO NOT ALLOW THE FLAME NEAR THE FUEL LINES.

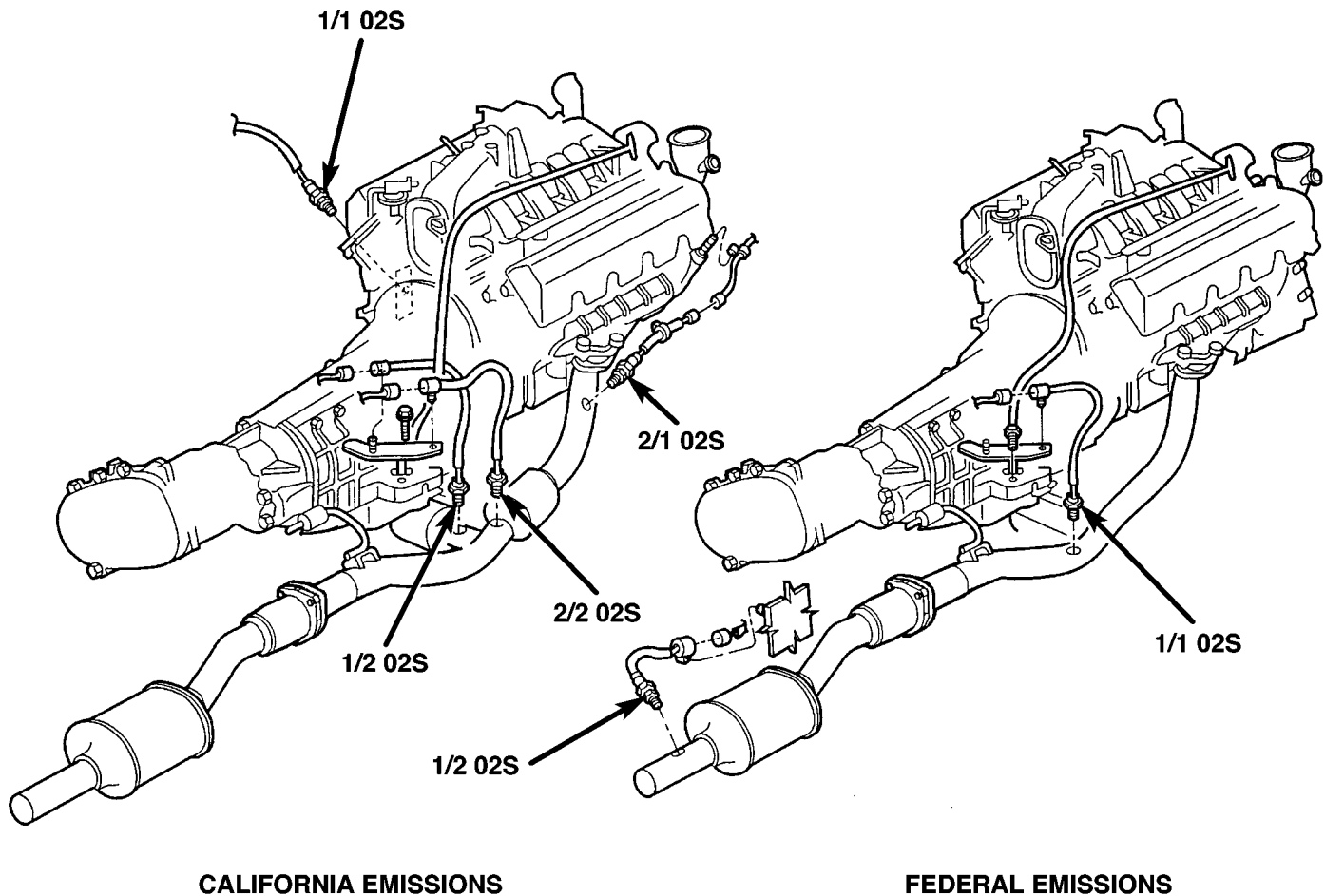
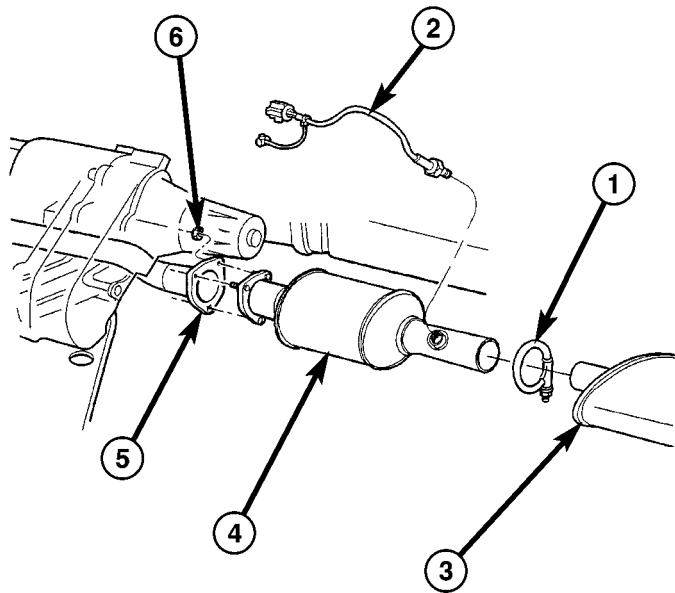


Fig. 6 4.7L Catalytic Converter and O2 Sensor Configuration - 50 State Emissions

## CATALYTIC CONVERTER - 4.7L (Continued)

- (1) Raise and support the vehicle.
- (2) Saturate the bolts and nuts with heat valve lubricant. Allow 5 minutes for penetration.
- (3) Remove nuts from the catalytic converter and exhaust pipe flange connection (Fig. 7).
- (4) Loosen exhaust clamp from the catalytic converter and muffler connection (Fig. 7).
- (5) Disconnect oxygen sensor wiring (Fig. 7).



**Fig. 7 Exhaust Pipe-to-Catalytic Converter-to-Muffler Connection**

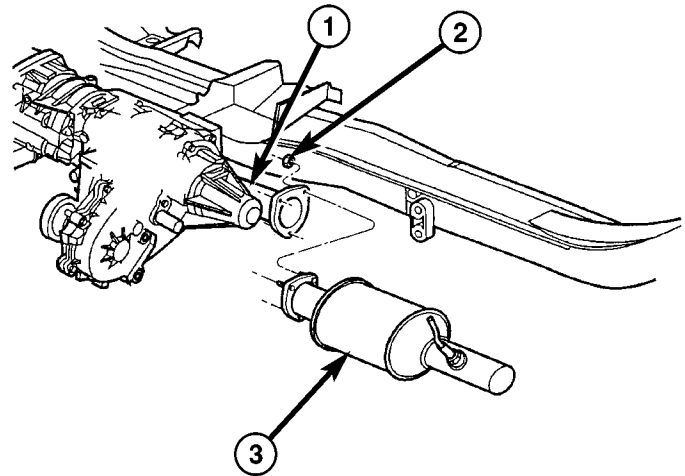
- 1 - EXHAUST CLAMP ASSEMBLY
- 2 - OXYGEN SENSOR
- 3 - MUFFLER
- 4 - CATALYTIC CONVERTER
- 5 - EXHAUST PIPE WITH FLANGE JOINT
- 6 - NUTS (3)

- (6) Heat the catalytic converter to muffler connection with a torch until the metal becomes cherry red.
- (7) While the metal is still cherry red, twist the catalytic converter back and forth to separate it from the muffler (Fig. 8).

## INSPECTION

Look at the stainless steel body of the converter, inspect for bulging or other distortion that could be a result of overheating. If the converter has a heat shield attached make sure it is not bent or loose.

If you suspect internal damage to the catalyst, tapping the bottom of the catalyst with a rubber mallet may indicate a damaged core.



808c339c

**Fig. 8 Catalytic Converter - Removal**

- 1 - EXHAUST PIPE WITH FLANGE
- 2 - NUTS (3)
- 3 - CATALYTIC CONVERTER

## INSTALLATION

(1) Position the catalytic converter onto the exhaust pipe flange connection (Fig. 7). Tighten the nuts to 28 N·m (250 in. lbs.) torque.

(2) Install the muffler onto the catalytic converter until the alignment tab is inserted into the alignment slot.

(3) Install the exhaust clamp at the muffler and catalytic converter connection (Fig. 7). Tighten the clamp nuts to 47 N·m (35 ft. lbs.) torque.

(4) Connect oxygen sensor wiring (Fig. 7).

(5) Lower the vehicle.

(6) Start the engine and inspect for exhaust leaks. Repair exhaust leaks as necessary.

(7) Check the exhaust system for contact with the body panels. Make the necessary adjustments, if needed.

## EXHAUST PIPE - 4.0L

## REMOVAL

**WARNING: IF TORCHES ARE USED WHEN WORKING ON THE EXHAUST SYSTEM, DO NOT ALLOW THE FLAME NEAR THE FUEL LINES.**

**WARNING: THE NORMAL OPERATING TEMPERATURE OF THE EXHAUST SYSTEM IS VERY HIGH. THEREFORE, NEVER WORK AROUND OR ATTEMPT TO SERVICE ANY PART OF THE EXHAUST SYSTEM UNTIL IT IS COOLED. SPECIAL CARE SHOULD BE TAKEN WHEN WORKING NEAR THE CATALYTIC CONVERTER. THE TEMPERATURE OF THE CONVERTER RISES TO A HIGH LEVEL AFTER A SHORT PERIOD OF ENGINE OPERATION TIME.**

- (1) Raise and support the vehicle.

- (2) Saturate the bolts and nuts with heat valve lubricant. Allow 5 minutes for penetration.

- (3) Remove the oxygen sensor from the exhaust pipe (Fig. 9).

- (4) Remove the nuts from the exhaust pipe to catalytic converter flange connection (Fig. 10).

- (5) Disconnect the exhaust pipe from the exhaust manifold (Fig. 11).

## INSPECTION

Discard rusted clamps, broken or worn supports and attaching parts. Replace a component with original equipment parts, or equivalent. This will assure proper alignment with other parts in the system and provide acceptable exhaust noise levels.

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Connect the exhaust pipe to the engine exhaust manifold. Tighten the nuts to 31 N·m (23 ft. lbs.) (Fig. 11).

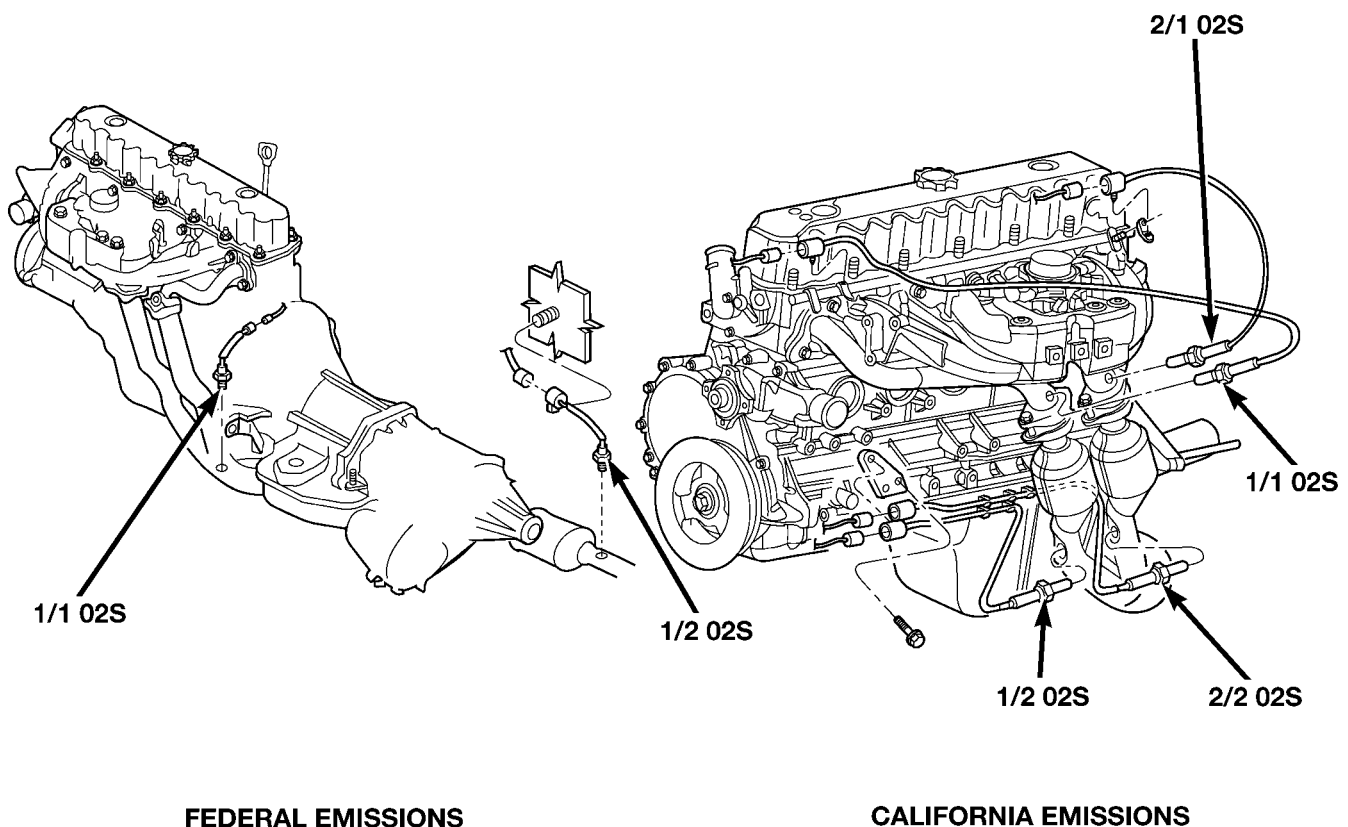
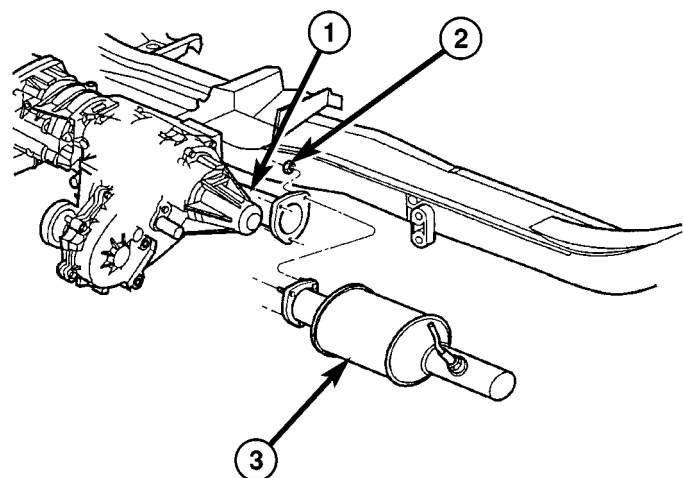


Fig. 9 O2 Sensor Location 4.0L



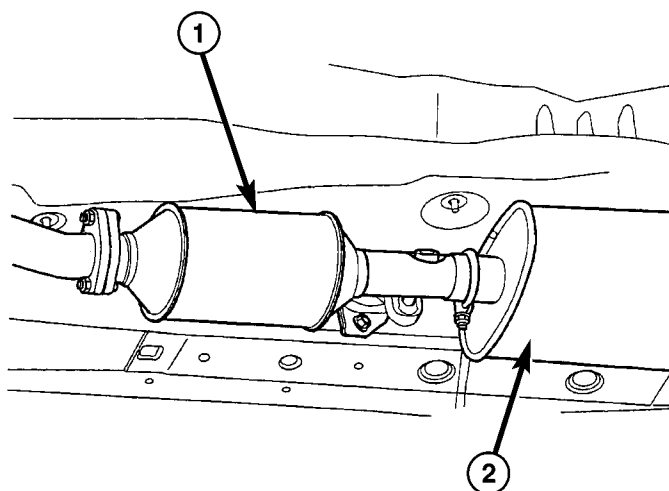
## EXHAUST PIPE - 4.0L (Continued)



808c339c

**Fig. 10 Catalytic Converter - Removal**

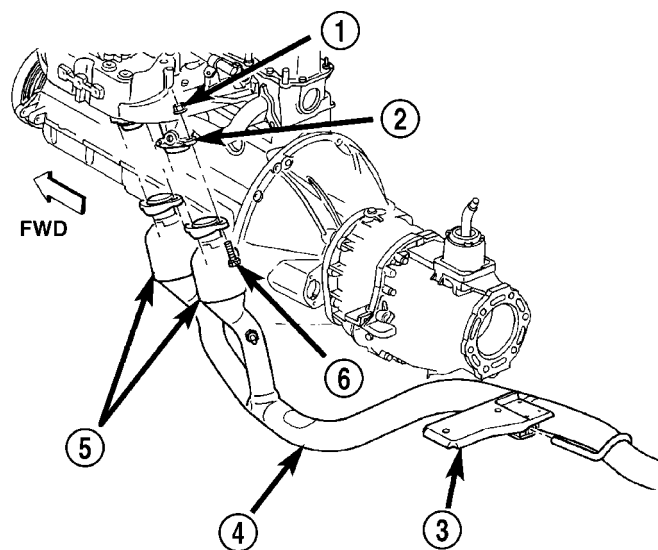
- 1 - EXHAUST PIPE WITH FLANGE
- 2 - NUTS (3)
- 3 - CATALYTIC CONVERTER



808c33b3

**Fig. 12 Installing Exhaust Clamps**

- 1 - CATALYTIC CONVERTER
- 2 - MUFFLER



80be44ba

**Fig. 11 Exhaust Pipe 4.0L**

- 1 - NUT
- 2 - EXHAUST MANIFOLD
- 3 - TRANSMISSION SUPPORT
- 4 - EXHAUST PIPE
- 5 - MINI CATALYTIC CONVERTER
- 6 - BOLT

**NOTE:** When servicing the exhaust system, replace the factory installed uni-clamp with standard u-bolt clamps.

(2) Position the catalytic converter onto the exhaust pipe flange connection. Tighten retaining nuts to 28 N·m (250 in. lbs.) (Fig. 12).

(3) Coat the oxygen sensor with anti-seize compound. Install the sensor and tighten the nut to 48 N·m (35 ft. lbs.) torque (Fig. 9).

(4) Lower the vehicle.

(5) Start the engine and inspect for exhaust leaks. Repair exhaust leaks as necessary.

(6) Check the exhaust system for contact with the body panels. Make the necessary adjustments, if needed.

(7) After initial start-up, check the engine exhaust manifold to exhaust pipe nuts for proper torque.



## EXHAUST PIPE - 4.7L

## REMOVAL

**WARNING: IF TORCHES ARE USED WHEN WORKING ON THE EXHAUST SYSTEM, DO NOT ALLOW THE FLAME NEAR THE FUEL LINES.**

**WARNING: THE NORMAL OPERATING TEMPERATURE OF THE EXHAUST SYSTEM IS VERY HIGH. THEREFORE, NEVER WORK AROUND OR ATTEMPT TO SERVICE ANY PART OF THE EXHAUST SYSTEM UNTIL IT IS COOLED. SPECIAL CARE SHOULD BE TAKEN WHEN WORKING NEAR THE CATALYTIC CONVERTER. THE TEMPERATURE OF THE CONVERTER RISES TO A HIGH LEVEL AFTER A SHORT PERIOD OF ENGINE OPERATION TIME.**

- (1) Raise and support the vehicle.

- (2) Saturate the bolts and nuts with heat valve lubricant. Allow 5 minutes for penetration.

- (3) Remove the oxygen sensor from the exhaust pipe (Fig. 13).

- (4) Remove the retaining nuts holding catalytic converter to exhaust pipe (Fig. 14).

- (5) Disconnect the exhaust pipe from the exhaust manifold. (Fig. 15)

## INSPECTION

Discard rusted clamps, broken or worn supports and attaching parts. Replace a component with original equipment parts, or equivalent. This will assure proper alignment with other parts in the system and provide acceptable exhaust noise levels.

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Connect the exhaust pipe to the engine exhaust manifold. Tighten the nuts (A) to 31 N·m (23 ft. lbs.) (Fig. 15).

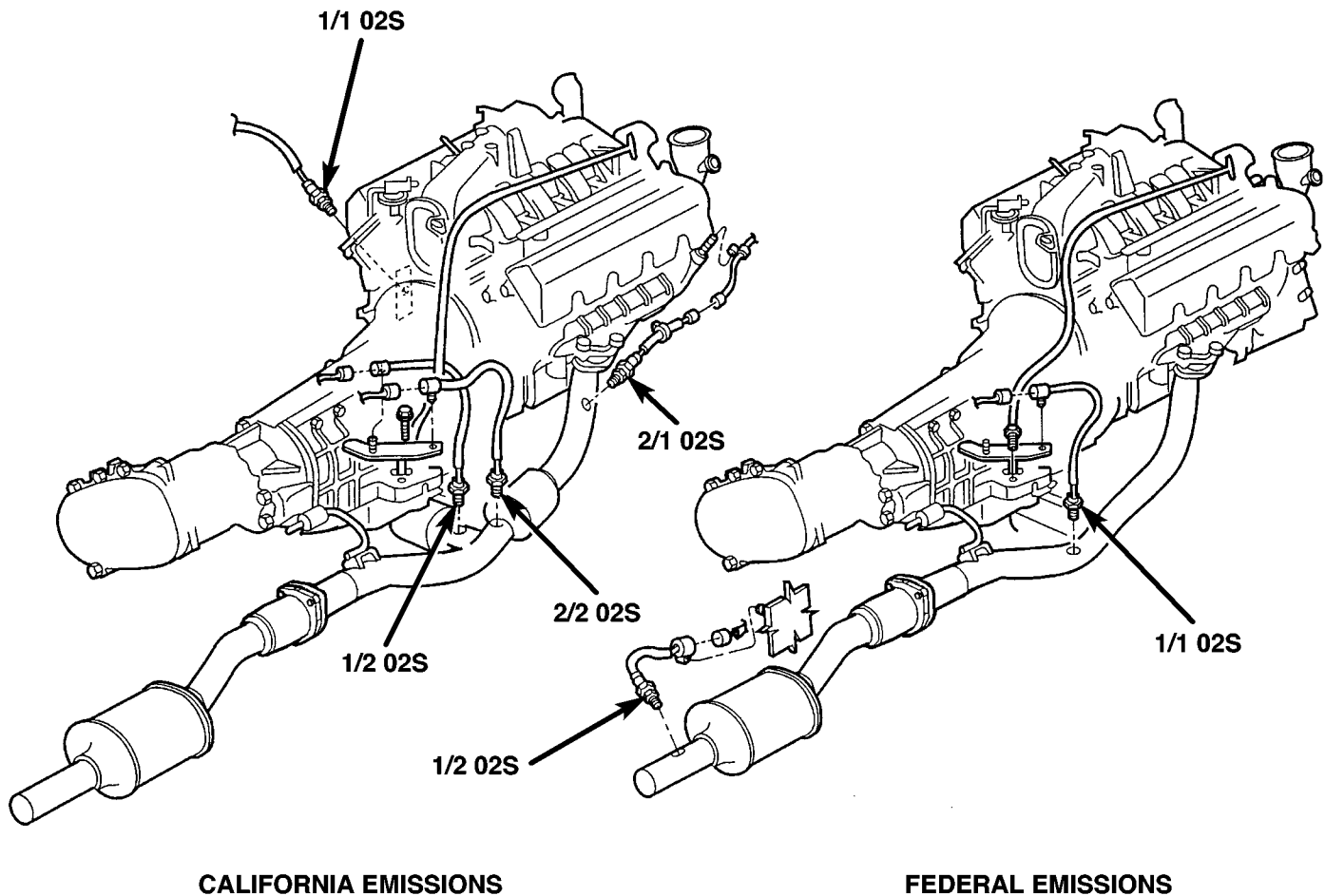
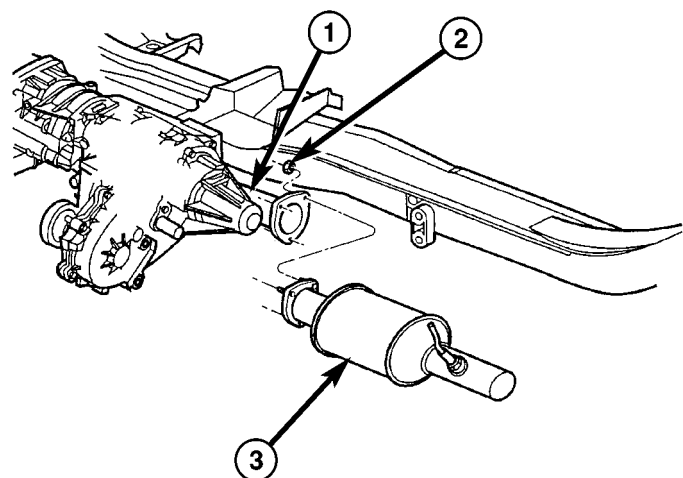


Fig. 13 4.7L Catalytic Converter and O2 Sensor Configuration - 50 State Emissions

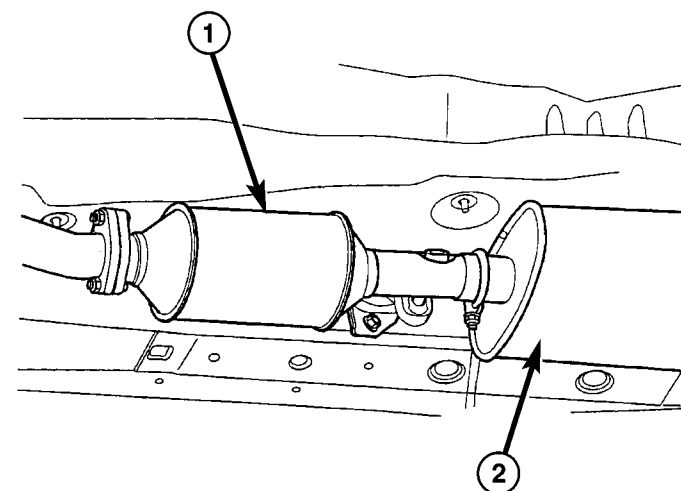
## EXHAUST PIPE - 4.7L (Continued)



808c339c

**Fig. 14 Catalytic Converter - Removal**

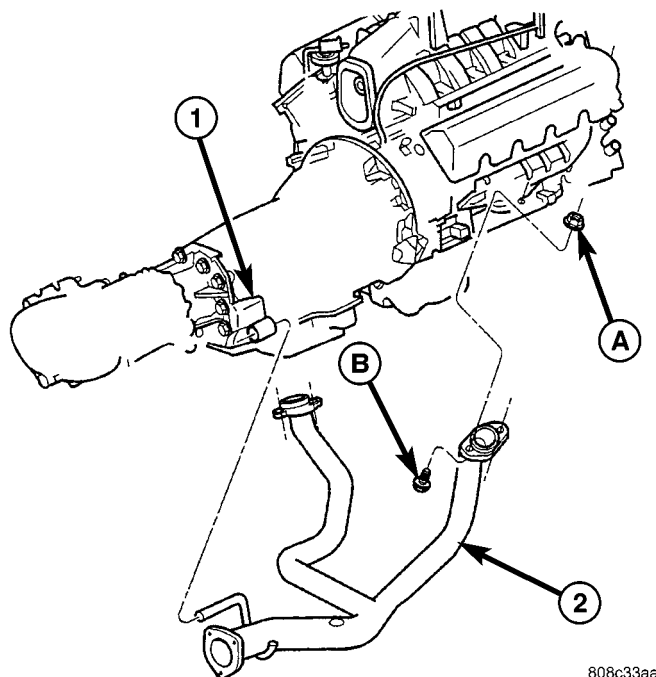
- 1 - EXHAUST PIPE WITH FLANGE
- 2 - NUTS (3)
- 3 - CATALYTIC CONVERTER



808c33b3

**Fig. 16 Installing Exhaust Clamps**

- 1 - CATALYTIC CONVERTER
- 2 - MUFFLER



808c33aa

**Fig. 15 Exhaust Pipe 4.7L**

- 1 - EXHAUST PIPE HANGER
- A - NUTS (4)
- 3 - EXHAUST PIPE
- B - BOLTS (4)

**NOTE:** When servicing the exhaust system, replace the factory installed uni-clamp with standard u-bolt clamps.

(2) Position the catalytic converter onto the exhaust pipe flange connection. Tighten retaining nuts to 28 N·m (250 in. lbs.). (Fig. 16)

(3) Coat the oxygen sensor with anti-seize compound. Install the sensor and tighten the nut to 48 N·m (35 ft. lbs.) torque (Fig. 13).

(4) Lower the vehicle.

(5) Start the engine and inspect for exhaust leaks. Repair exhaust leaks as necessary.

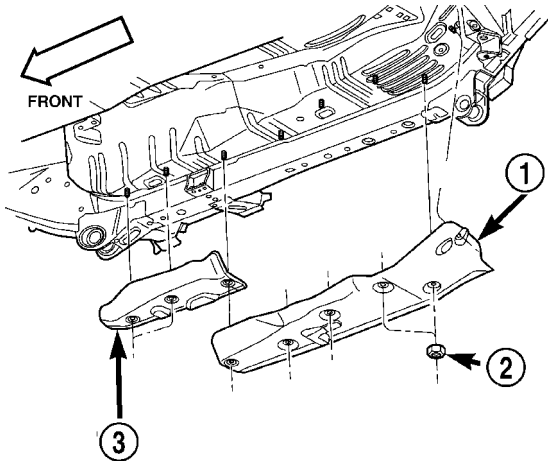
(6) Check the exhaust system for contact with the body panels. Make the necessary adjustments, if needed.

(7) After initial start-up, check the engine exhaust manifold to exhaust pipe nuts for proper torque.

## HEAT SHIELDS

### DESCRIPTION

Heat shields are needed to protect both the vehicle and the environment from the high temperatures developed by the catalytic converter. The catalytic converter releases additional heat into the exhaust system. Under severe operating conditions, the temperature increases in the area of the converter. Such conditions can exist when the engine misfires or otherwise does not operate at peak efficiency (Fig. 17).



80b89850

**Fig. 17 Front and Rear Floor Pan Heat Shields - Typical**

- 1 - REAR FLOOR PAN HEAT SHIELD
- 2 - HEAT SHIELD RETAINING NUTS (QTY 8)
- 3 - FRONT FLOOR PAN HEAT SHIELD

## MUFFLER

### DESCRIPTION

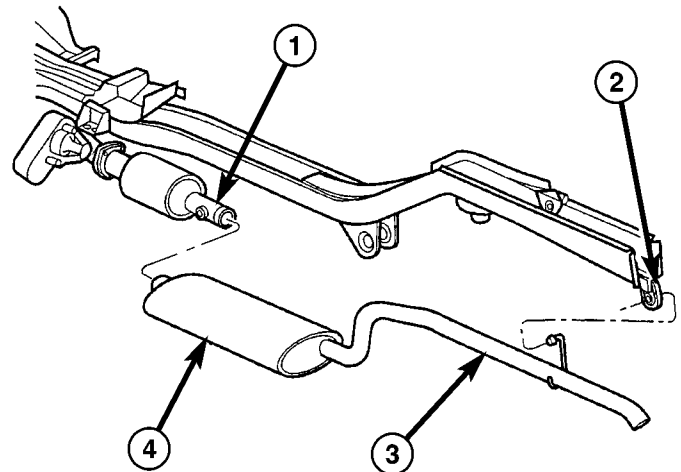
Both the 4.0L and 4.7L engines use a stainless steel muffler to control exhaust noise levels and exhaust back pressure. The muffler and tailpipe are a one piece assembly (Fig. 18).

### REMOVAL

All original equipment exhaust systems are manufactured with the tailpipe welded to the muffler. Service replacement mufflers and tailpipes are either clamped together or welded together.

**WARNING: IF TORCHES ARE USED WHEN WORKING ON THE EXHAUST SYSTEM, DO NOT ALLOW THE FLAME NEAR THE FUEL LINES.**

- (1) Raise and support the vehicle.
- (2) Saturate the bolts and nuts with heat valve lubricant. Allow 5 minutes for penetration.

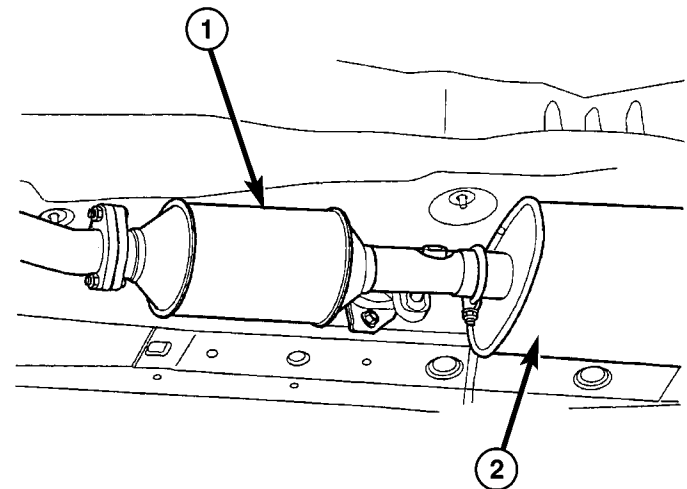


808c335a

**Fig. 18 Muffler and Tailpipe**

- 1 - CATALYTIC CONVERTER
- 2 - TAILPIPE HANGER
- 3 - TAILPIPE
- 4 - MUFFLER

(3) Loosen the exhaust clamp on the catalytic converter to muffler connection (Fig. 19).



808c33b3

**Fig. 19 Installing Exhaust Clamps**

- 1 - CATALYTIC CONVERTER
- 2 - MUFFLER

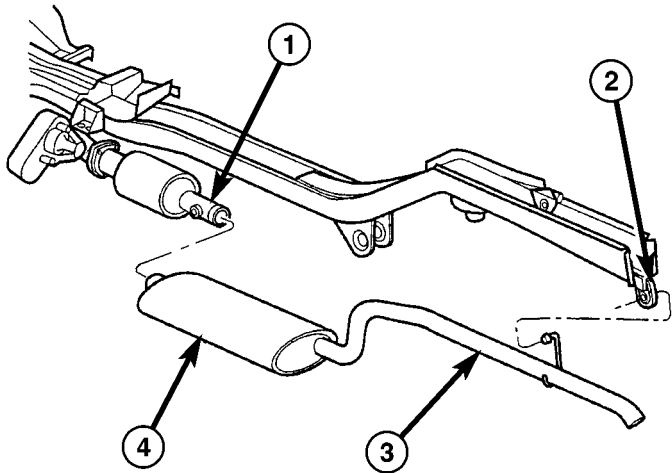
## MUFFLER (Continued)

(4) Heat the catalytic converter-to-muffler connection with a torch until the metal becomes cherry red.

(5) While the metal is still cherry red, remove the tailpipe/muffler assembly from the catalytic converter.

(6) Remove the tailpipe from the tailpipe hanger (Fig. 20).

(7) Remove the tailpipe/muffler assembly (Fig. 20).



808c335a

**Fig. 20 Muffler and Tailpipe**

- 1 - CATALYTIC CONVERTER
- 2 - TAILPIPE HANGER
- 3 - TAILPIPE
- 4 - MUFFLER

## INSTALLATION

(1) If the tailpipe hanger assembly was removed, install the hanger to the frame. Tighten the bolts to 22 N·m (192 in. lbs.) torque.

(2) Position the tailpipe and muffler onto the tailpipe hanger (Fig. 20).

(3) Install the muffler onto the catalytic converter. Make sure that the tailpipe has sufficient clearance from the floor pan. Install exhaust clamp and tighten the nuts to 47 N·m (35 ft. lbs.) torque (Fig. 19).

(4) Lower the vehicle.

(5) Start the engine and inspect for exhaust leaks. Repair exhaust leaks as necessary.

(6) Check the exhaust system for contact with the body panels. Make the necessary adjustments, if needed.

## TAILPIPE

## DESCRIPTION

The tailpipe is also made of stainless steel. (Fig. 18).

## OPERATION

The Tailpipe channels the exhaust out of the muffler and out from under the vehicle to control noise and prevent exhaust gas fumes from entering the passenger compartment



# FRAME & BUMPERS

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>FRONT ABSORBER</b>		<b>FRAME DIMENSIONS</b>	5
REMOVAL	1	<b>FRONT SKID PLATE</b>	
INSTALLATION	1	REMOVAL	8
<b>FRONT FASCIA</b>		INSTALLATION	8
REMOVAL		<b>FRONT TOW HOOK</b>	
REMOVAL	1	REMOVAL	8
REMOVAL - EXPORT	1	INSTALLATION	8
INSTALLATION		<b>FUEL TANK SKID PLATE</b>	
INSTALLATION	3	DESCRIPTION	8
INSTALLATION - EXPORT	3	<b>REAR TOW HOOK</b>	
<b>REAR ABSORBER</b>		REMOVAL	8
REMOVAL	3	INSTALLATION	8
INSTALLATION	3	<b>TRAILER HITCH</b>	
<b>REAR FASCIA</b>		REMOVAL	9
REMOVAL	3	INSTALLATION	9
INSTALLATION	5	<b>TRANSFER CASE SKID PLATE</b>	
<b>FRAME</b>		REMOVAL	9
SPECIFICATIONS		INSTALLATION	9
SPECIFICATIONS - TORQUE	5		

## FRONT ABSORBER

### REMOVAL

(1) Remove front fascia, refer to (Refer to 13 - FRAMES & BUMPERS/BUMPERS/FRONT FASCIA - REMOVAL).

(2) Remove the retainer attaching the absorber to the fascia.

(3) Separate the absorber from the fascia.

### INSTALLATION

(1) Position the absorber on the fascia.

(2) Install the retainer attaching the absorber to the fascia.

(3) Install front fascia. Refer to (Refer to 13 - FRAMES & BUMPERS/BUMPERS/FRONT FASCIA - INSTALLATION).

## FRONT FASCIA

### REMOVAL

#### REMOVAL

(1) Raise and support vehicle.

(2) Remove the grille. (Refer to 23 - BODY/EXTERIOR/GRILLE - REMOVAL)

(3) Turn front wheels to access rivets and remove plastic rivets attaching fascia to wheel liner.

(4) Remove bolts attaching fascia to fender (Fig. 1).

(5) Remove plastic push pin fasteners attaching front fascia to lower radiator crossmember splash shield.

(6) Disengage fog lamp connectors, if equipped.

(7) Remove screws attaching fascia to upper radiator crossmember.

(8) Slide fascia forward to separate from vehicle.

### REMOVAL - EXPORT

(1) Raise and support vehicle. (Refer to LUBRICATION & MAINTENANCE/LIFT POINTS - STANDARD PROCEDURE)

(2) Turn front wheels to access rivets and remove plastic rivets attaching fascia to wheel liner.

(3) Remove bolts attaching fascia to fender (Fig. 2).

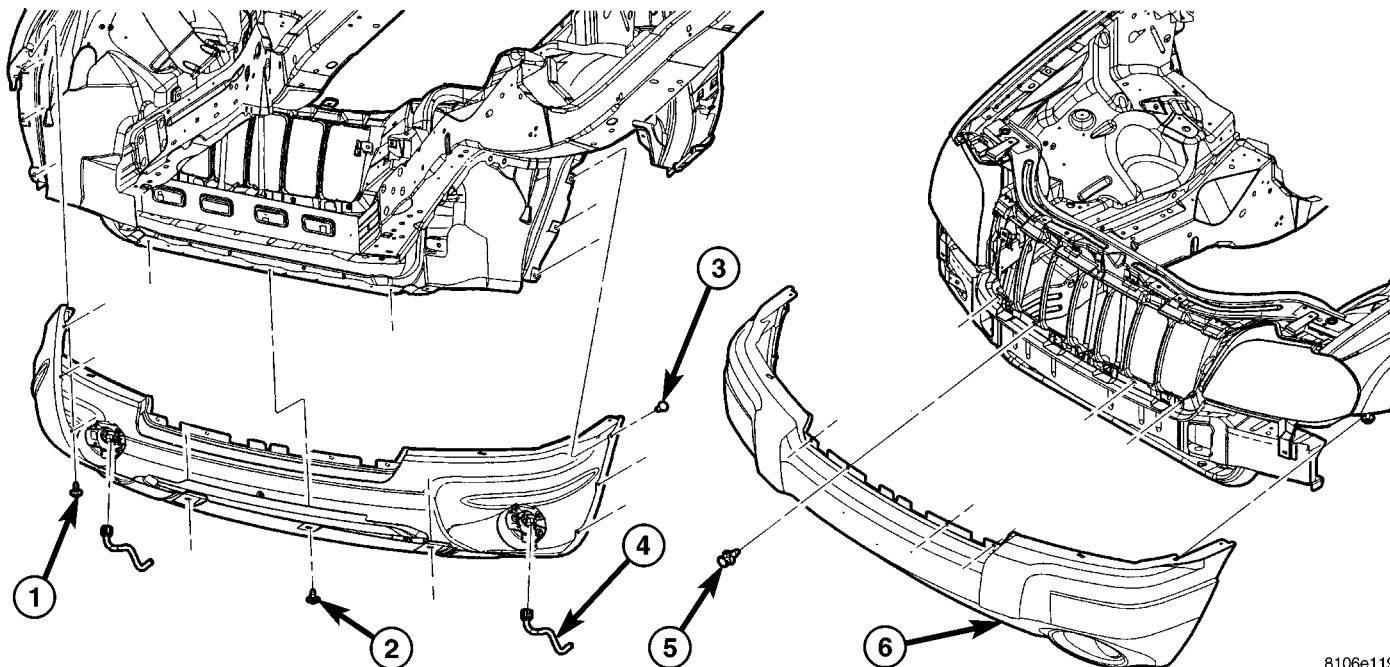
(4) Remove plastic push pin fasteners attaching front fascia to lower radiator crossmember splash shield (Fig. 3).

(5) Disengage fog lamp connectors, if equipped.

(6) Remove screws attaching fascia/grille to upper radiator crossmember (Fig. 4).

(7) Slide fascia forward to separate from vehicle.

## FRONT FASCIA (Continued)

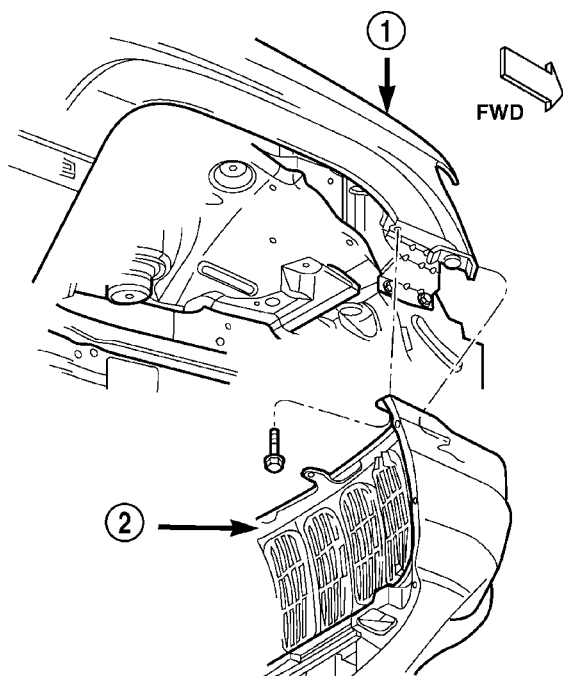


8106e119

**Fig. 1 FRONT FASCIA**

- 1 - FASCIA TO FENDER SCREWS (2)
- 2 - PUSH PIN FASTENERS (3)
- 3 - PLASTIC RIVETS (6)

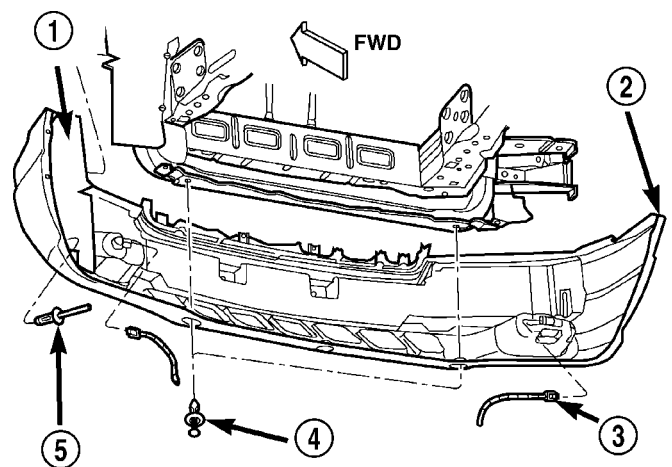
- 4 - FOG LAMP ELECTRICAL CONNECTORS
- 5 - PUSH PIN FASTENERS (4)
- 6 - FRONT FASCIA



80b46af0

**Fig. 2 Front Fascia - Export**

- 1 - BODY
- 2 - FASCIA



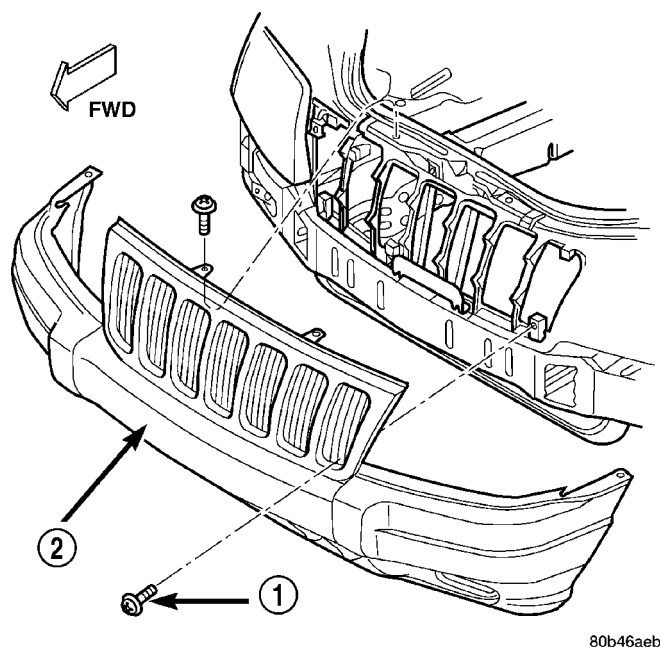
80b46aec

**Fig. 3 Front Fascia - Export**

- 1 - WHEEL LINER
- 2 - FASCIA
- 3 - FOG LAMP CONNECTOR
- 4 - PLASTIC PUSH PIN
- 5 - PLASTIC RIVET



## FRONT FASCIA (Continued)

**Fig. 4 Front Fascia - Export**

1 - SCREW  
2 - FASCIA

**INSTALLATION****INSTALLATION**

- (1) Position the fascia onto the vehicle and engage the drive pins on the fenders.
- (2) Install the three lower push pins to the radiator crossmember.
- (3) Install the screws attaching the fascia to the fenders.
- (4) Connect the fog lamp electrical connectors, if equipped.
- (5) Install the wheelhouse splash shield rivets.
- (6) Install the four upper rivets.

**INSTALLATION - EXPORT**

- (1) Slide fascia onto vehicle engaging fascia with tabs on bottom of front fenders.
- (2) Install screws attaching fascia/grille to upper radiator crossmember (Fig. 4).
- (3) Install bolts attaching fascia to fender (Fig. 2).
- (4) Engage fog lamp connectors, if equipped.
- (5) Install plastic rivets attaching fascia to wheel liner.
- (6) Install plastic push pin fasteners attaching front fascia to lower radiator crossmember splash shield (Fig. 3).
- (7) Remove supports and lower vehicle.

**REAR ABSORBER****REMOVAL**

- (1) Remove rear fascia, refer to (Refer to 13 - FRAMES & BUMPERS/BUMPERS/REAR FASCIA - REMOVAL).
- (2) Remove rivets attaching absorber to rear crossmember (Fig. 6).
- (3) Separate absorber from vehicle.

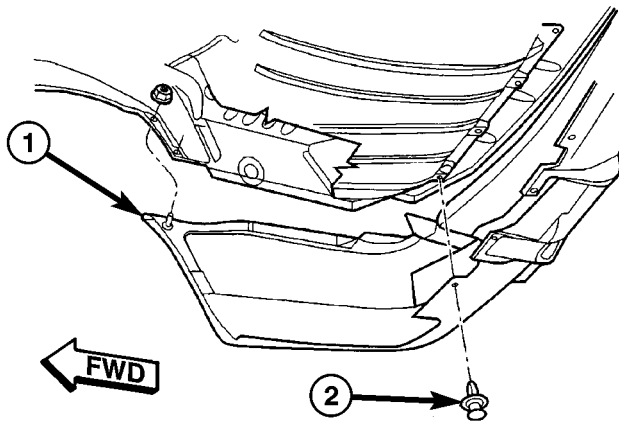
**INSTALLATION**

- (1) Position absorber on vehicle.
- (2) Install rivets attaching absorber to rear crossmember. (Fig. 6)
- (3) Install rear fascia, refer to (Refer to 13 - FRAMES & BUMPERS/BUMPERS/REAR FASCIA - INSTALLATION).

**REAR FASCIA****REMOVAL**

- (1) Raise and support vehicle.
- (2) Remove wheels.
- (3) Remove plastic push pins attaching fascia to fuel tank skid plate.
- (4) Remove plastic rivets attaching fascia to wheel liner.
- (5) Remove nuts attaching upper edge of fascia to quarter panel and wheel liner (Fig. 5).
- (6) Remove plastic push pins attaching fascia to liftgate opening (Fig. 6).
- (7) Remove screws attaching fascia to liftgate opening.
- (8) Remove D pillar trim and scuff plate outboard screws.
- (9) Remove the rearward tie down screws and the aperture trim panel.
- (10) Carefully peel back the rubber body sealer patch to access the retainer clips.
- (11) Release the forward and rearward retainer clips on both sides of the fascia.
- (12) Grasp forward edges of fascia and pull outward to disengage retainers attaching fascia to quarter panel (Fig. 7).
- (13) Separate fascia from vehicle.

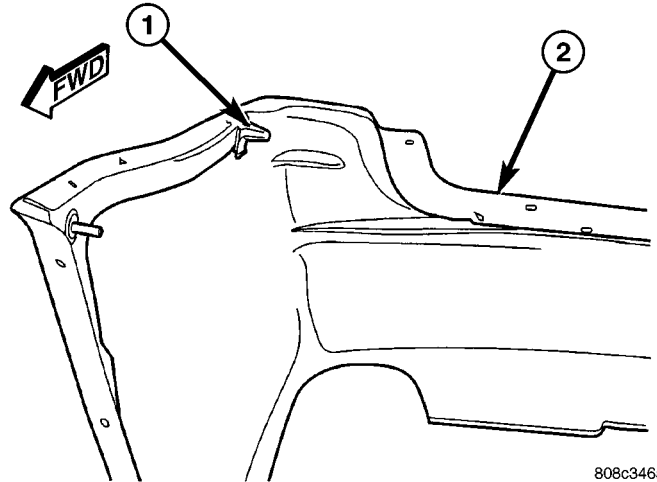
## REAR FASCIA (Continued)



808c3466

**Fig. 5 Rear Fascia Attachment**

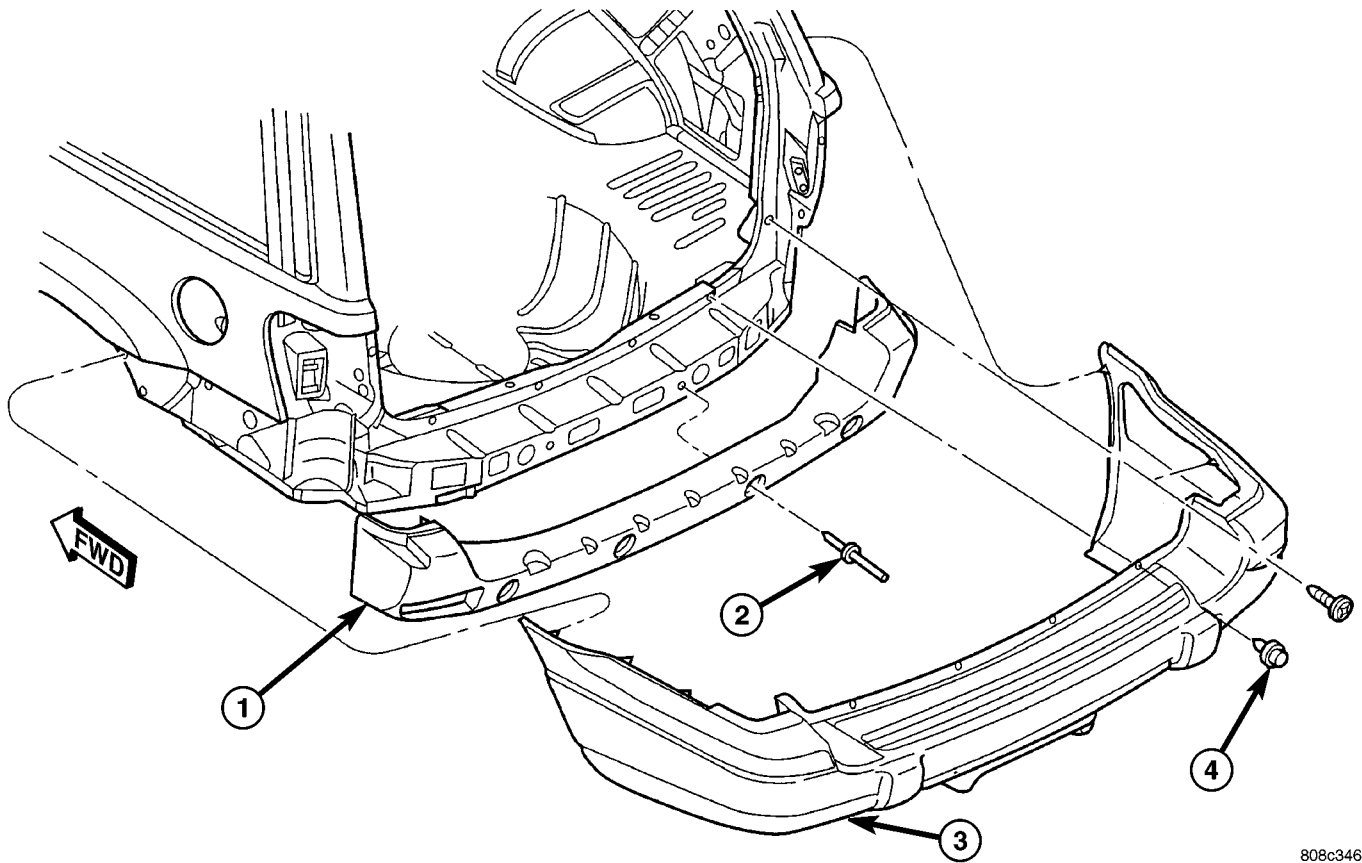
- 1 - FASCIA  
2 - PLASTIC PUSH PIN



808c346a

**Fig. 7 Rear Fascia Retainers**

- 1 - RETAINER  
2 - FASCIA



808c3468

**Fig. 6 Rear Fascia**

- 1 - ABSORBER  
2 - RIVET

- 3 - FASCIA  
4 - PLASTIC PUSH PIN

## REAR FASCIA (Continued)

**INSTALLATION**

(1) Position fascia on vehicle aligning retainers with slots in quarter panel (Fig. 8).

(2) Press forward edges of fascia inward to engage retainers.

(3) Install screws attaching fascia to liftgate opening.

(4) Install plastic push pins attaching fascia to liftgate opening.

(5) Install nuts attaching upper edge of fascia to quarter panel and wheel liner.

(6) Install plastic rivets attaching fascia to wheel liner.

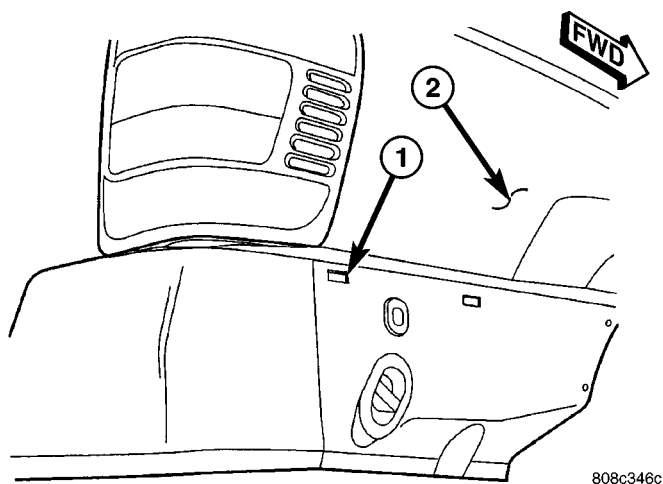
(7) Install support lower vehicle.

(8) Install plastic push pins attaching fascia to fuel tank skid plate.

(9) Install the interior trim panels removed to access fascia retainers.

(10) Install tie down loop screws.

(11) Install the wheels, refer to section 22 for tightening sequence and torque specifications.



**Fig. 8 Fascia Attachment**

- 1 - SLOT  
2 - QUARTER PANEL

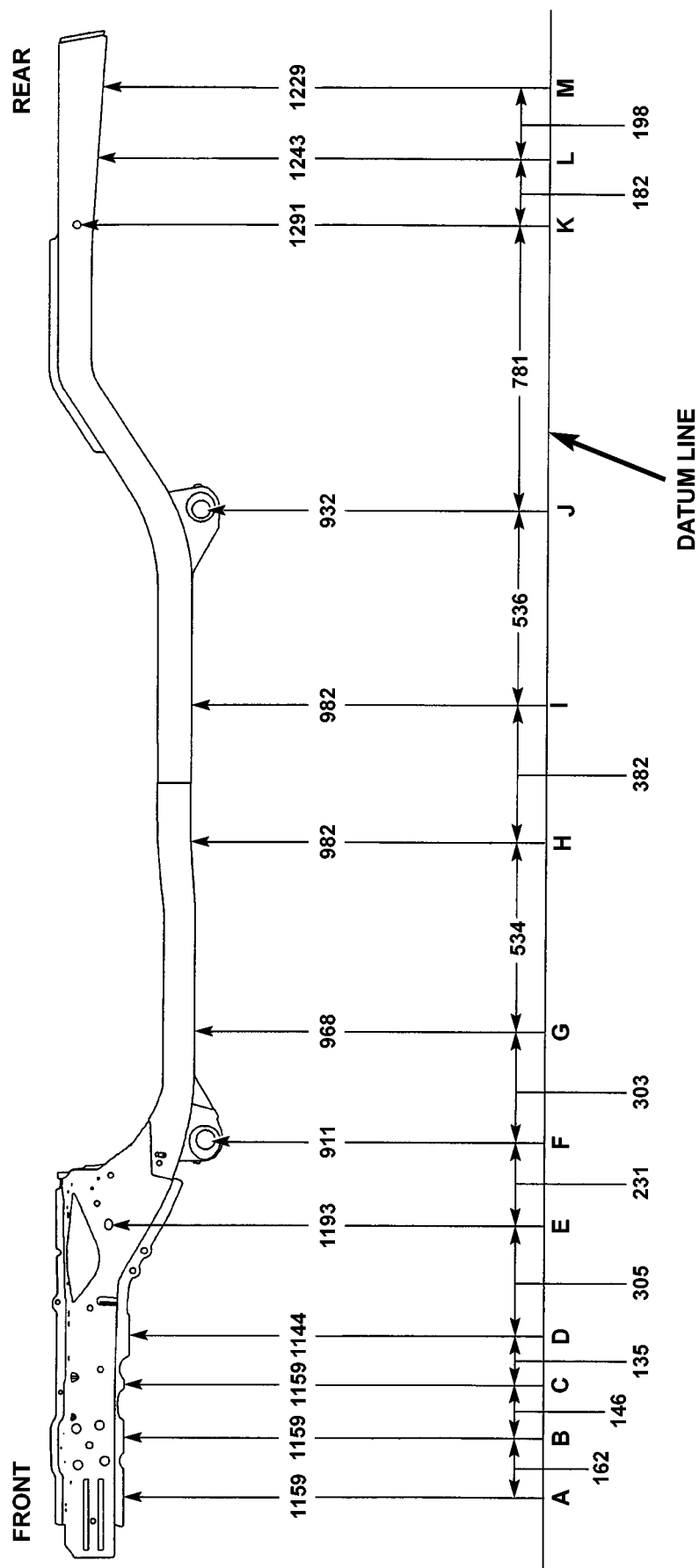
**FRAME****SPECIFICATIONS****SPECIFICATIONS - TORQUE***TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS*

DESCRIPTION	N·m	Ft. Lbs.	In. Lbs.
Front Tow Hook Bolt	54	40	—
Front Skid Plate Bolt	54	40	—
Rear Tow Hook Bolt	68	50	—
Trailer Hitch Bolts	68	50	—
Transfer Case Skid Plate Bolts	34	25	—

**FRAME DIMENSIONS***INDEX*

DESCRIPTION	FIGURE
SIDE VIEW	9
BOTTOM VIEW	10

## FRAME (Continued)



## SIDE VIEW

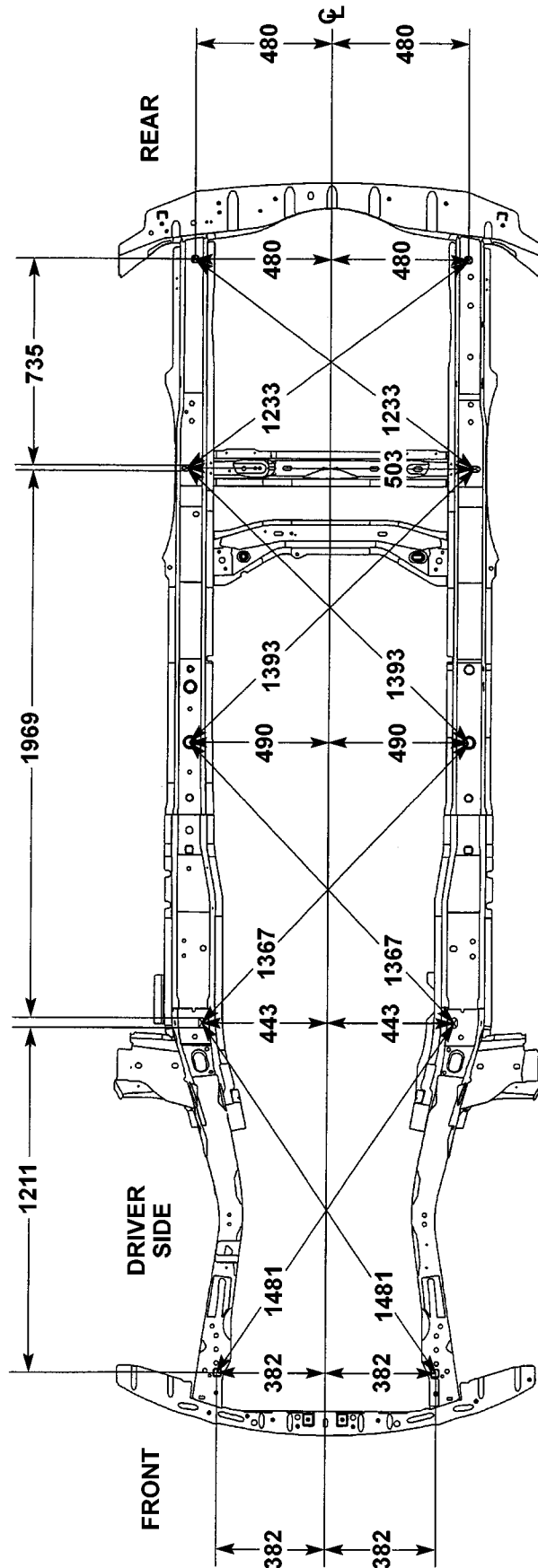
DATUM HEIGHT DIMENSIONS ARE PERPENDICULAR TO DATUM PLANE.  
 DATUM LENGTH DIMENSIONS ARE PARALLEL TO CENTERLINE OF VEHICLE,  
 AND ARE MEASURED CENTER-TO-CENTER.

ALL MEASUREMENTS ARE IN MILLIMETERS

808c354b

Fig. 9 SIDE VIEW

## FRAME (Continued)



## BOTTOM VIEW

BOTTOM VIEW POINT-TO-POINT DIMENSIONS ARE TAKEN  
WITH TRAM BAR POINTERS SET AT EQUAL LENGTHS.  
BOLTS AND STUDS ARE MEASURED TO CENTER.  
HOLES ARE MEASURED TO CLOSEST EDGE.

ALL MEASUREMENTS ARE IN MILLIMETERS

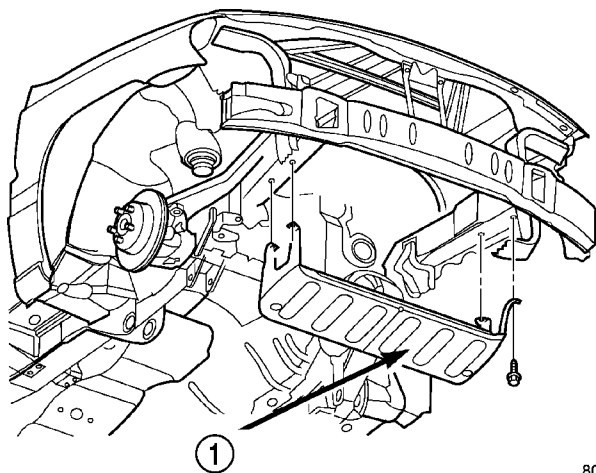
808c3554

Fig. 10 BOTTOM VIEW

## FRONT SKID PLATE

### REMOVAL

- (1) Position a support under skid plate.
- (2) Remove bolts attaching skid plate to frame (Fig. 11).
- (3) Separate skid plate from frame.



**Fig. 11 Front Skid Plate**

1 - SKID PLATE

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Position skid plate on a support.
- (2) Raise it into position
- (3) Install bolts attaching skid plate to frame. Tighten bolts to 54 N·m (40 ft. lbs.) torque.

## FRONT TOW HOOK

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove bolts that attach tow hook bracket to the lower crossmember (Fig. 12).
- (2) Separate tow hook bracket from lower crossmember.

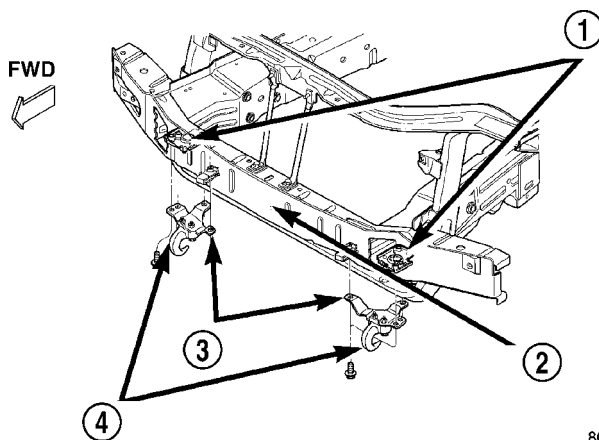
### INSTALLATION

- (1) Position tow hook bracket at the lower crossmember.
- (2) Install bolts attaching tow hook bracket to crossmember. Tighten bolts to 54 N·m (40 ft. lbs.) torque.

## FUEL TANK SKID PLATE

### DESCRIPTION

The fuel tank skid plate is integrated with the fuel tank. Refer to Fuel Tank for service procedures



80b46aof

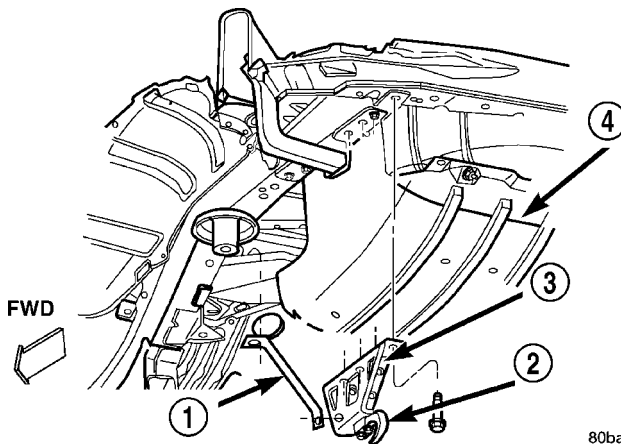
**Fig. 12 Front Tow Hook**

- 1 - TAPPING PLATE
- 2 - CROSSMEMBER
- 3 - BRACKET
- 4 - TOW HOOK

## REAR TOW HOOK

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove rear tow hook to frame brace.
- (2) Remove bolts attaching the tow hook bracket to frame (Fig. 13).
- (3) Separate tow hook bracket from frame.



80ba780f

**Fig. 13 Rear Tow Hook**

- 1 - TOW HOOK BRACE
- 2 - TOW HOOK
- 3 - BRACKET
- 4 - FUEL TANK

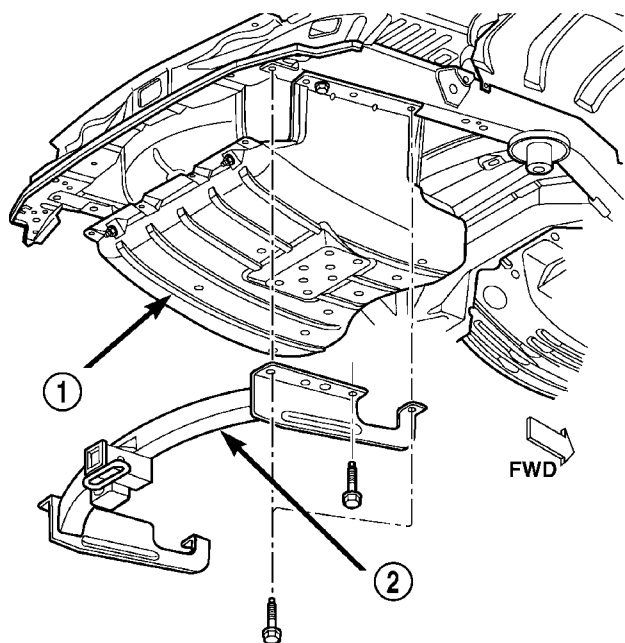
### INSTALLATION

- (1) position tow hook bracket on frame.
- (2) Install bolts attaching tow hook bracket to frame. Tighten bolts to 68 N·m (50 ft. lbs.) torque.
- (3) Install rear tow hook to frame brace.

## TRAILER HITCH

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove rear fascia, refer to (Refer to 13 - FRAMES & BUMPERS/BUMPERS/REAR FASCIA - REMOVAL).
- (2) Remove screws attaching trailer harness plug to trailer hitch.
- (3) Disconnect harness connector from harness plug.
- (4) Position support stands under trailer hitch.
- (5) Remove bolts attaching trailer hitch to frame rails (Fig. 14).
- (6) Separate trailer hitch from vehicle.



**Fig. 14 Trailer Hitch**

- 1 - FUEL TANK  
2 - TRAILER HITCH

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Position trailer hitch on support stands.
- (2) Position trailer hitch on vehicle.
- (3) Install bolts attaching trailer hitch to frame rails. Tighten bolts to 68 N·m (50 lbs.) torque.
- (4) Connect harness connector to harness plug.

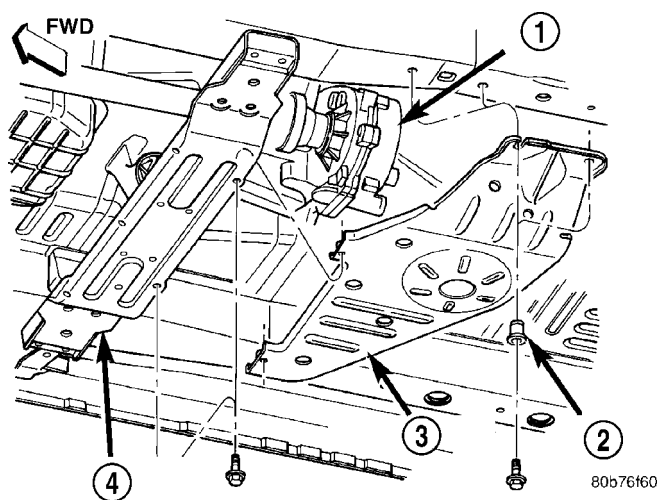
(5) Position harness plug in trailer hitch and install screws.

(6) Install rear fascia, refer to (Refer to 13 - FRAMES & BUMPERS/BUMPERS/REAR FASCIA - INSTALLATION).

## TRANSFER CASE SKID PLATE

### REMOVAL

- (1) Support skid plate.
- (2) Remove bolts that attach skid plate to transmission support crossmember and frame sill (Fig. 15).
- (3) Remove support and skid plate from vehicle.



**Fig. 15 Transfer Case Skid Plate**

- 1 - TRANSFER CASE  
2 - NUTSERT  
3 - SKID PLATE  
4 - CROSSMEMBER

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Install nutserts, if removed.
- (2) Position and support skid plate at the frame sill and transmission support crossmember.
- (3) Attach skid plate to frame sill and crossmember with the bolts. Tighten bolts to 34 N·m (25 ft. lbs) torque.





# FUEL SYSTEM

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>FUEL DELIVERY</b>	1	<b>FUEL INJECTION</b>	25

## FUEL DELIVERY

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>FUEL DELIVERY</b>		<b>REMOVAL</b>	9
DESCRIPTION	2	INSTALLATION	9
OPERATION	2	<b>FUEL RAIL</b>	
STANDARD PROCEDURE - FUEL SYSTEM		DESCRIPTION	
PRESSURE RELEASE	2	DESCRIPTION - 4.7L	10
SPECIFICATIONS		DESCRIPTION - 4.0L	10
FUEL SYSTEM PRESSURE	3	OPERATION	
TORQUE - FUEL DELIVERY	3	OPERATION - 4.7L	10
SPECIAL TOOLS		OPERATION - 4.0L	10
FUEL SYSTEM	4	REMOVAL	
<b>FUEL FILTER/PRESSURE REGULATOR</b>		REMOVAL - 4.7L	11
DESCRIPTION	5	REMOVAL - 4.0L	12
OPERATION	5	INSTALLATION	
REMOVAL	5	INSTALLATION - 4.7L	13
INSTALLATION	6	INSTALLATION - 4.0L	13
<b>FUEL LEVEL SENDING UNIT / SENSOR</b>		<b>FUEL TANK</b>	
DESCRIPTION	6	DESCRIPTION	14
OPERATION	6	OPERATION	14
REMOVAL	7	REMOVAL	14
INSTALLATION	7	INSTALLATION	19
<b>FUEL LINES</b>		<b>INLET FILTER</b>	
DESCRIPTION	7	REMOVAL	20
<b>FUEL PUMP</b>		INSTALLATION	20
DESCRIPTION	8	<b>QUICK CONNECT FITTING</b>	
OPERATION	8	DESCRIPTION	21
<b>FUEL PUMP MODULE</b>		STANDARD PROCEDURE - QUICK-CONNECT	
DESCRIPTION	8	FITTINGS	21
OPERATION	9		

## FUEL DELIVERY

### DESCRIPTION

The fuel delivery system consists of:

- the fuel pump module containing the electric fuel pump, fuel gauge sending unit (fuel level sensor) and a separate fuel filter located at bottom of pump module
- a separate combination fuel filter/fuel pressure regulator
  - fuel tubes/lines/hoses
  - quick-connect fittings
  - fuel injector rail
  - fuel injectors
  - fuel tank
  - fuel tank filler pipe/vent tube assembly
  - fuel tank filler tube cap
  - vapor canister assembly
  - accelerator pedal
  - throttle cable

### OPERATION

The fuel tank assembly consists of: the fuel tank, fuel tank shield, fuel tank straps, fuel pump module assembly, fuel pump module locknut/gasket, and fuel tank check valve (refer to Emission Control System for fuel tank check valve information).

A fuel filler/vent tube assembly using a pressure/vacuum, 1/4 turn fuel filler cap is used.

Also to be considered part of the fuel system is the evaporation control system. This is designed to reduce the emission of fuel vapors into the atmosphere. The description and function of the Evaporative Control System is found in Emission Control Systems.

Both fuel filters (at bottom of fuel pump module and within fuel pressure regulator) are designed for extended service. They do not require normal scheduled maintenance. Filters should only be replaced if a diagnostic procedure indicates to do so.

### STANDARD PROCEDURE - FUEL SYSTEM PRESSURE RELEASE

**Use following procedure if the fuel injector rail is, or is not equipped with a fuel pressure test port.**

- (1) Remove fuel fill cap.
- (2) Remove fuel pump relay from Power Distribution Center (PDC). For location of relay, refer to label on underside of PDC cover.
- (3) Start and run engine until it stalls.
- (4) Attempt restarting engine until it will no longer run.
- (5) Turn ignition key to OFF position.

**CAUTION: Steps 1, 2, 3 and 4 must be performed to relieve high pressure fuel from within fuel rail. Do not attempt to use following steps to relieve this pressure as excessive fuel will be forced into a cylinder chamber.**

- (6) Unplug connector from any fuel injector.
- (7) Attach one end of a jumper wire with alligator clips (18 gauge or smaller) to either injector terminal.
- (8) Connect other end of jumper wire to positive side of battery.
- (9) Connect one end of a second jumper wire to remaining injector terminal.

**CAUTION: Powering an injector for more than a few seconds will permanently damage the injector.**

- (10) Momentarily touch other end of jumper wire to negative terminal of battery for no more than a few seconds.
- (11) Place a rag or towel below fuel line quick-connect fitting at fuel rail.
- (12) Disconnect quick-connect fitting at fuel rail. Refer to Quick-Connect Fittings.
- (13) Return fuel pump relay to PDC.
- (14) One or more Diagnostic Trouble Codes (DTC's) may have been stored in PCM memory due to fuel pump relay removal. The DRB® scan tool must be used to erase a DTC.

## FUEL DELIVERY (Continued)

## SPECIFICATIONS

## FUEL SYSTEM PRESSURE

339 kPa  $\pm$  34 kPa (49.2 psi  $\pm$  5 psi).

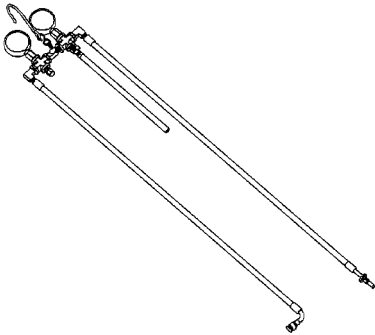
## TORQUE - FUEL DELIVERY

DESCRIPTION	N-m	Ft. Lbs.	In. Lbs.
Accelerator Pedal Bracket Mounting Nuts (without adjustable pedals)	12 $\pm$ 2	-	105 $\pm$ 20
Fuel Filter/Fuel Press. Reg. Bolts	12	-	105
Fuel Hose Clamps	3	-	28
Fuel Injector Rail Mounting Bolts -4.0L Engine	11	-	100
Fuel Injector Rail Mounting Bolts -4.7L V-8 Engine	11	-	100
Fuel Pump Module Locknut	74	55	-
Fuel Tank Filler Tube-to-Body Mounting Bolts	3	-	25
Fuel Tank-to-Body Mounting Bolts	88	65	-
Fuel Tank Support Bracket Bolts (large brackets)	34	25	-
Fuel Tank Support Bracket Bolts (small bracket)	5	-	45
Fuel Tank Support Bracket Nuts (large brackets)	61	45	-
Fuel Tank Heat Shield Nuts (shield-to-tank)	9	-	85
Fuel Tank Heat Shield Nuts (shield-to-body)	3	-	25

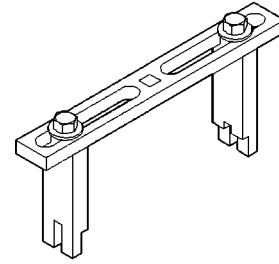
FUEL DELIVERY (Continued)

SPECIAL TOOLS

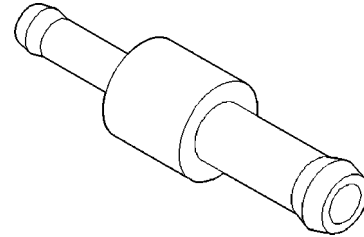
FUEL SYSTEM



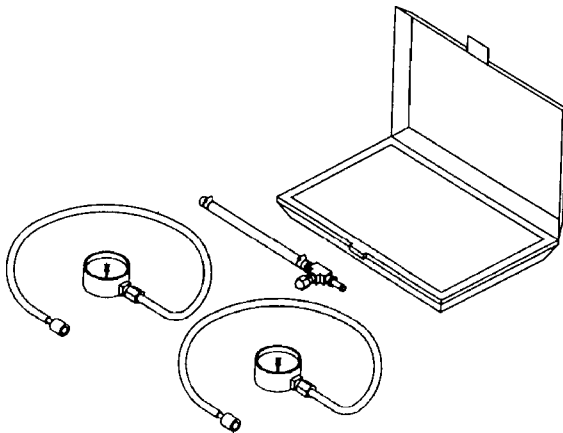
**FUEL PRESSURE TESTER - #8978**



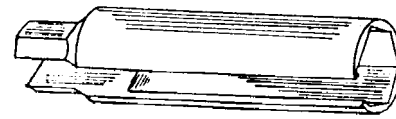
**SPANNER WRENCH - #6856**



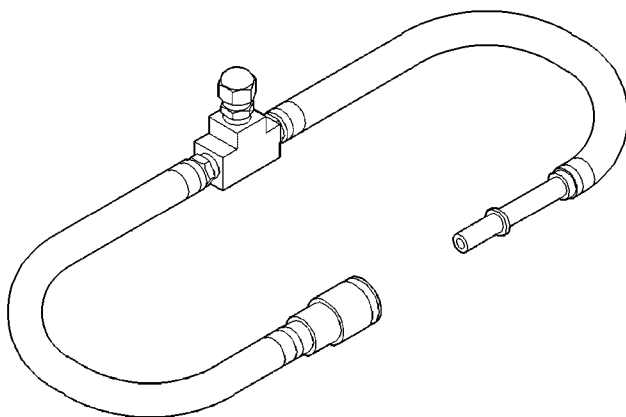
**FITTING, AIR METERING - #6714**



**TEST KIT, FUEL PRESSURE, 8.0L ENGINE - #5069**



**O2S (OXYGEN SENSOR) REMOVER/INSTALLER -  
#C-4907**



**ADAPTERS, FUEL PRESSURE TEST, 8.0L - #6539  
AND/OR #6631**

## FUEL FILTER/PRESSURE REGULATOR

### DESCRIPTION

The combination fuel filter/pressure regulator is located in front of the fuel tank and above the rear axle (Fig. 1). It is transversely mounted to a chassis crossmember (left-to-right). **Fuel Line Identification:** The filter/regulator is equipped with 3 fuel line fittings (2 at one end and 1 at the other end). The single fitting facing the left side of the vehicle is the supply line to the fuel rail (Fig. 1). The 2 fittings facing the right side of the vehicle are connected to the fuel tank. Of these 2 fittings, the fitting towards the **front** is used for fuel return to the fuel tank. The fitting towards the **rear** is a pressure line.

### OPERATION

**Fuel Pressure Regulator Operation:** The pressure regulator is a mechanical device that is not controlled by engine vacuum or the Powertrain Control Module (PCM).

The regulator is calibrated to maintain fuel system operating pressure of approximately 339 kPa  $\pm$  34 kPa (49.2 psi  $\pm$  5 psi) at the fuel injectors. It contains

a diaphragm and calibrated springs. The internal fuel filter is also part of the assembly.

Fuel is supplied to the filter/regulator by the electric fuel pump. The regulator acts as a check valve to maintain some fuel pressure when the engine is not operating. This will help to start the engine. A second check valve is located at the outlet end of the electric fuel pump.

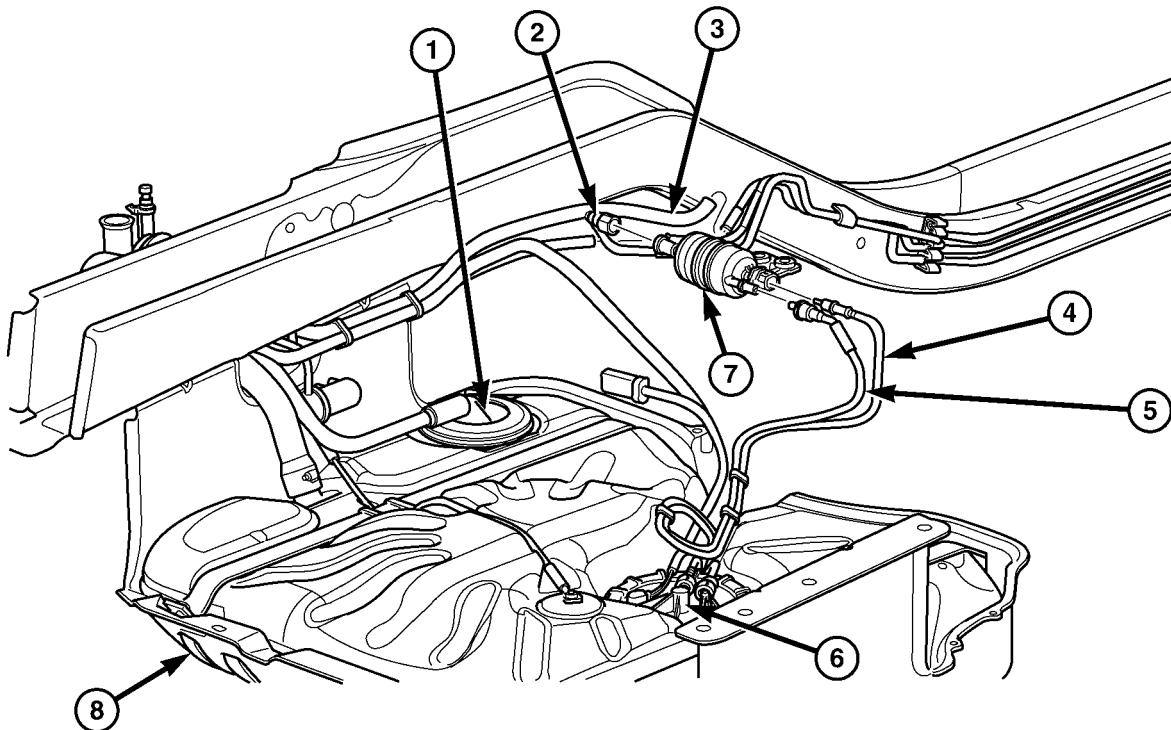
If fuel pressure at the pressure regulator exceeds approximately 49 psi, an internal diaphragm closes. Excess fuel is then routed into a separate fuel return line and returned to the fuel tank through the top of the fuel pump module.

Both fuel filters (at bottom of fuel pump module and within fuel pressure regulator) are designed for extended service. They do not require normal scheduled maintenance. Filters should only be replaced if a diagnostic procedure indicates to do so.

### REMOVAL

The combination Fuel Filter/Fuel Pressure Regulator is remotely mounted to the vehicle body, above the rear axle and near the front of the fuel tank (Fig. 1) or (Fig. 2).

(1) Perform Fuel System Pressure Release Procedure.



810bc95c

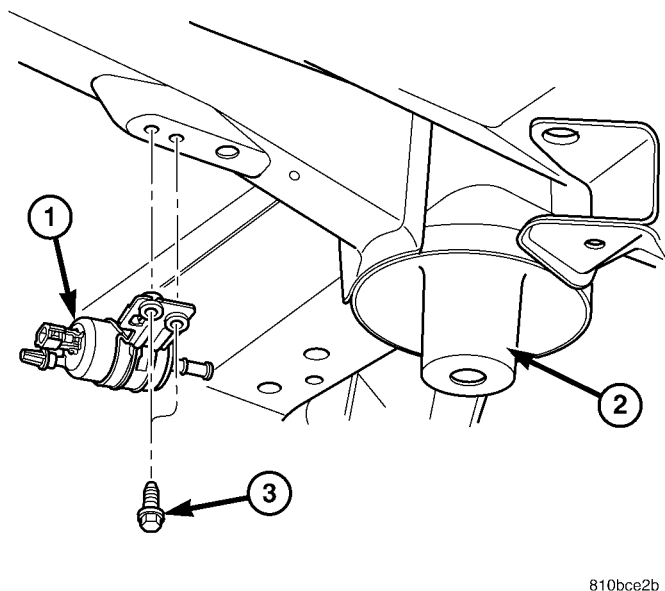
**Fig. 1 FUEL FILTER/FUEL PRESSURE REGULATOR LOCATION**

- 1 - ORVR CONTROL VALVE
- 2 - FUEL SUPPLY LINE (TO FUEL RAIL)
- 3 - EVAP LINE
- 4 - FUEL RETURN LINE (MALE)

- 5 - FUEL PRESSURE LINE (FEMALE)
- 6 - FUEL PUMP MODULE ASSEMBLY
- 7 - FUEL FILTER/PRESSURE REGULATOR
- 8 - FUEL TANK

## FUEL FILTER/PRESSURE REGULATOR (Continued)

- (2) Disconnect negative battery cable at battery.
- (3) Raise vehicle.
- (4) Clean area around 3 filter/regulator fittings.
- (5) Disconnect fuel supply, fuel return and fuel pressure lines at filter/regulator (Fig. 1). Refer to Quick-Connect Fittings.
- (6) Remove 2 mounting bolts (Fig. 2) and remove filter/regulator.



**Fig. 2 FUEL FILTER/FUEL PRESSURE REGULATOR REMOVAL/INSTALLATION**

- 1 - FILTER/REGULATOR  
2 - LEFT/REAR SPRING MOUNT  
3 - MOUNTING BOLTS (2)

**INSTALLATION**

- (1) Before installing filter/regulator, be sure all fittings are cleaned of all dirt and contaminants.
- (2) Be sure o-ring is positioned into fuel return fitting in filter/regulator.
- (3) Apply a small amount of clean engine oil to o-rings.
- (4) Position filter/regulator to body and install 2 bolts. Tighten bolts. Refer to Torque Specifications.
- (5) Connect 3 fittings. Refer to Quick-Connect Fittings.
- (6) Connect negative battery cable to battery.
- (7) Start engine and check for leaks.

**FUEL LEVEL SENDING UNIT / SENSOR****DESCRIPTION**

The fuel gauge sending unit (fuel level sensor) is attached to the side of the fuel pump module. The sending unit consists of a float, an arm, and a variable resistor track (card).

**OPERATION**

The fuel pump module has 4 different circuits (wires). Two of these circuits are used for the fuel gauge sending unit for fuel gauge operation, and for certain OBD II emission requirements. The other 2 wires are used for electric fuel pump operation.

**For Fuel Gauge Operation:** A constant input voltage source of about 12 volts (battery voltage) is supplied to the resistor track on the fuel gauge sending unit. This is fed directly from the Powertrain Control Module (PCM). **NOTE: For diagnostic purposes, this 12V power source can only be verified with the circuit opened (fuel pump module electrical connector unplugged).** With the connectors plugged, output voltages will vary from about 0.6 volts at FULL, to about 8.6 volts at EMPTY (about 8.6 volts at EMPTY for Jeep models, and about 7.0 volts at EMPTY for Dodge Truck models). The resistor track is used to vary the voltage (resistance) depending on fuel tank float level. As fuel level increases, the float and arm move up, which decreases voltage. As fuel level decreases, the float and arm move down, which increases voltage. The varied voltage signal is returned back to the PCM through the sensor return circuit.

Both of the electrical circuits between the fuel gauge sending unit and the PCM are hard-wired (not multi-plexed). After the voltage signal is sent from the resistor track, and back to the PCM, the PCM will interpret the resistance (voltage) data and send a message across the multi-plex bus circuits to the instrument panel cluster. Here it is translated into the appropriate fuel gauge level reading. Refer to Instrument Panel for additional information.

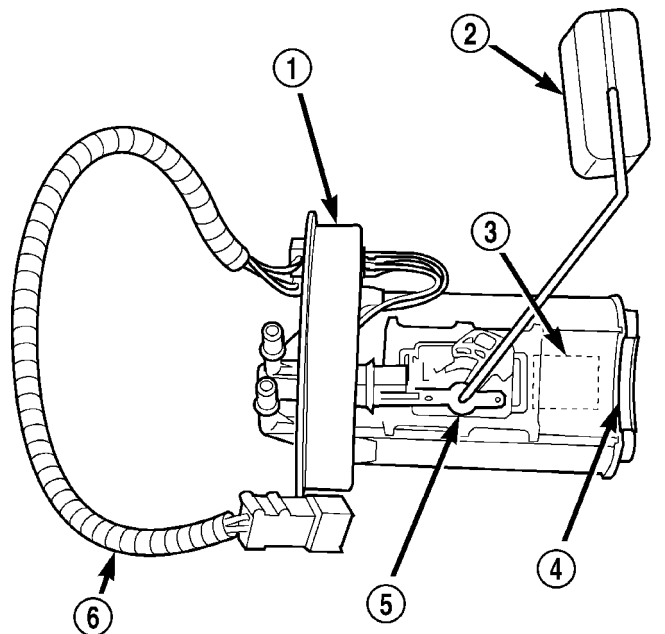
**For OBD II Emission Monitor Requirements:** The PCM will monitor the voltage output sent from the resistor track on the sending unit to indicate fuel level. The purpose of this feature is to prevent the OBD II system from recording/setting false misfire and fuel system monitor diagnostic trouble codes. The feature is activated if the fuel level in the tank is less than approximately 15 percent of its rated capacity. If equipped with a Leak Detection Pump (EVAP system monitor), this feature will also be activated if the fuel level in the tank is more than approximately 85 percent of its rated capacity.



## FUEL LEVEL SENDING UNIT / SENSOR (Continued)

## REMOVAL

The fuel gauge sending unit (fuel level sensor) and float assembly is located on the side of fuel pump module (Fig. 3). The fuel pump module is located within the fuel tank.



80ba7722

**Fig. 3 Fuel Gauge Sending Unit Location**

- 1 - FUEL PUMP MODULE
- 2 - FUEL GAUGE FLOAT
- 3 - ELECTRIC FUEL PUMP
- 4 - INLET FILTER
- 5 - FUEL GAUGE SENDING UNIT
- 6 - PIGTAIL HARNESS

(1) Remove fuel tank. Refer to Fuel Tank Removal/Installation.

(2) Remove fuel pump module. Refer to Fuel Pump Module Removal/Installation.

(3) Remove electrical wire connector at sending unit terminals.

(4) Press upward on release tab (Fig. 4) to remove sending unit from pump module.

## INSTALLATION

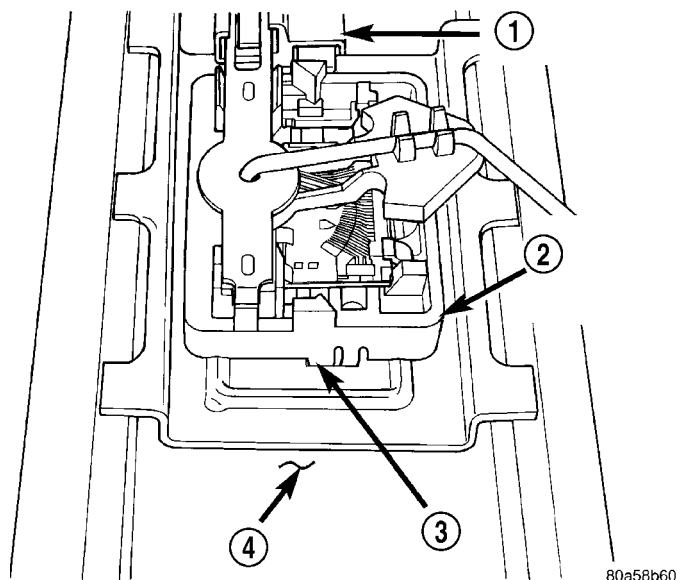
The fuel gauge sending unit (fuel level sensor) and float assembly is located on the side of fuel pump module (Fig. 3). The fuel pump module is located within the fuel tank.

(1) Position sending unit to pump module and snap into place.

(2) Connect electrical connector to terminals.

(3) Install fuel pump module. Refer to Fuel Pump Module Removal/Installation.

(4) Install fuel tank. Refer to Fuel Tank Removal/Installation.



80a58b60

**Fig. 4 Fuel Gauge Sending Unit Release Tab**

- 1 - ELECTRICAL CONNECTOR
- 2 - FUEL GAUGE SENDING UNIT
- 3 - RELEASE TAB
- 4 - FUEL PUMP MODULE

## FUEL LINES

## DESCRIPTION

Also refer to Quick-Connect Fittings.

**WARNING: THE FUEL SYSTEM IS UNDER A CONSTANT PRESSURE (EVEN WITH THE ENGINE OFF). BEFORE SERVICING ANY FUEL SYSTEM HOSES, FITTINGS OR LINES, THE FUEL SYSTEM PRESSURE MUST BE RELEASED. REFER TO THE FUEL SYSTEM PRESSURE RELEASE PROCEDURE IN THIS GROUP.**

The lines/tubes/hoses used on fuel injected vehicles are of a special construction. This is due to the higher fuel pressures and the possibility of contaminated fuel in this system. If it is necessary to replace these lines/tubes/hoses, only those marked EFM/EFI may be used.

**If equipped:** The hose clamps used to secure rubber hoses on fuel injected vehicles are of a special rolled edge construction. This construction is used to prevent the edge of the clamp from cutting into the hose. Only these rolled edge type clamps may be used in this system. All other types of clamps may cut into the hoses and cause high-pressure fuel leaks.

Use new original equipment type hose clamps.

## FUEL PUMP

### DESCRIPTION

The electric fuel pump is located inside of the fuel pump module. A 12 volt, permanent magnet, electric motor powers the fuel pump. The electric fuel pump is not a separate, serviceable component.

### OPERATION

Voltage to operate the electric pump is supplied through the fuel pump relay.

Fuel is drawn in through a filter at the bottom of the module and pushed through the electric motor gearset to the pump outlet.

**Check Valve Operation:** The pump outlet contains a one-way check valve to prevent fuel flow back into the tank and to maintain fuel supply line pressure (engine warm) when pump is not operational. It is also used to keep the fuel supply line full of gasoline when pump is not operational. After the vehicle has cooled down, fuel pressure may drop to 0 psi (cold fluid contracts), but liquid gasoline will remain in fuel supply line between the check valve and fuel

injectors. **Fuel pressure that has dropped to 0 psi on a cooled down vehicle (engine off) is a normal condition.** Refer to the Fuel Pressure Leak Down Test for more information.

The electric fuel pump is not a separate, serviceable component.

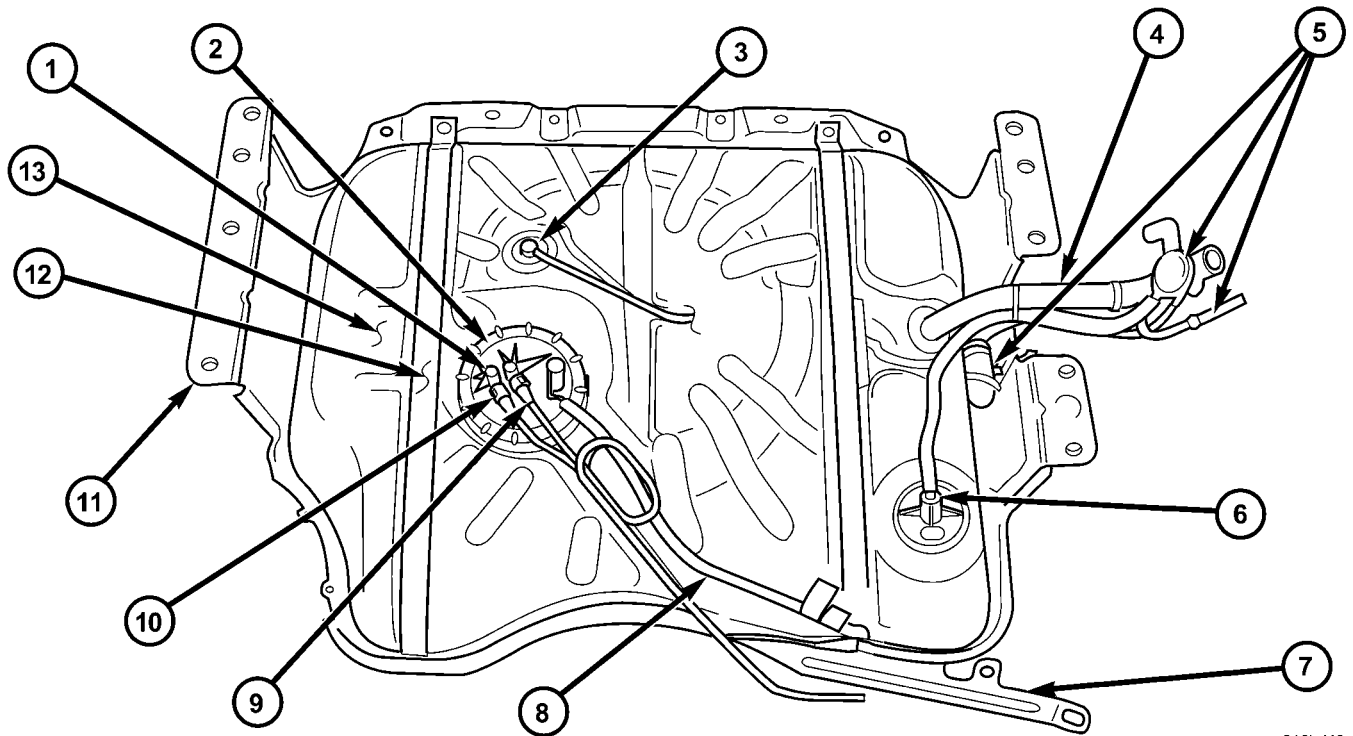
## FUEL PUMP MODULE

### DESCRIPTION

The fuel pump module is installed in the top of the fuel tank (Fig. 5). The fuel pump module (Fig. 6) contains the following components:

- A separate fuel pick-up filter (strainer)
- An electric fuel pump
- A threaded locknut to retain module to tank
- A gasket between tank flange and module
- Fuel gauge sending unit (fuel level sensor)
- Fuel supply tube (line) connection
- Fuel return tube (line) connection

The fuel gauge sending unit and pick-up filter may be serviced separately. If the electrical fuel pump



810bd40c

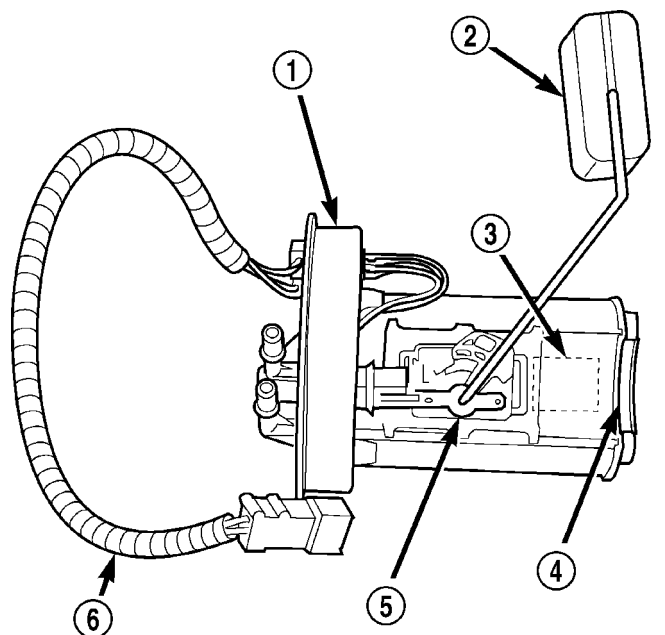
**Fig. 5 TOP OF FUEL TANK**

- 1 - FUEL PUMP MODULE
- 2 - MODULE LOCK RING
- 3 - CHECK VALVE
- 4 - FUEL FILL HOSE
- 5 - ORVR COMPONENTS
- 6 - ORVR CONTROL VALVE
- 7 - TANK SUPPORT BRACKET (SMALL/FRONT)
- 8 - MODULE PIGTAIL HARNESS

- 9 - FUEL SUPPLY (PRESSURE) LINE
- 10 - FUEL RETURN LINE
- 11 - SKID PLATE
- 12 - TANK STRAPS (2)
- 13 - FUEL TANK

## FUEL PUMP MODULE (Continued)

requires service, the entire fuel pump module must be replaced.



80ba7722

**Fig. 6 FUEL PUMP MODULE**

- 1 - FUEL PUMP MODULE
- 2 - FUEL GAUGE FLOAT
- 3 - ELECTRIC FUEL PUMP
- 4 - INLET FILTER
- 5 - FUEL GAUGE SENDING UNIT
- 6 - PIGTAIL HARNESS

## OPERATION

Refer to Fuel Pump, Fuel Filter/Fuel Pressure Regulator and Fuel Gauge Sending Unit.

## REMOVAL

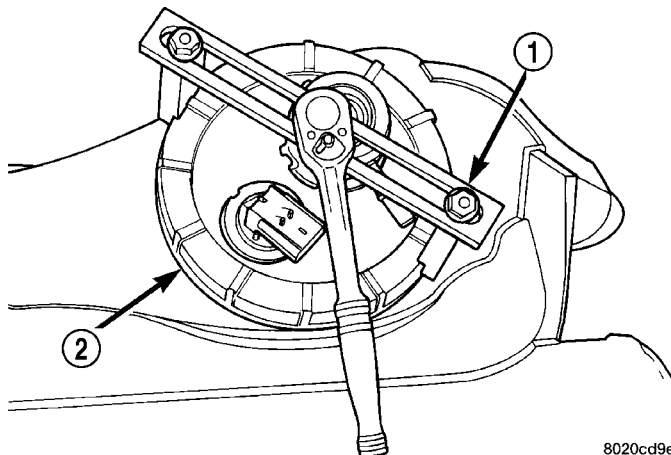
Fuel tank removal will be necessary for fuel pump module removal.

**WARNING: THE FUEL SYSTEM IS UNDER A CONSTANT PRESSURE (EVEN WITH THE ENGINE OFF). BEFORE SERVICING FUEL PUMP MODULE, FUEL SYSTEM PRESSURE MUST BE RELEASED.**

- (1) Perform Fuel System Pressure Release Procedure.
- (2) Drain fuel tank and remove tank. Refer to Fuel Tank Removal/Installation.
- (3) Thoroughly wash and clean area around pump module to prevent contaminants from entering tank.
- (4) Disconnect electrical connector at top of pump module.
- (5) Disconnect fuel return and pressure lines from fuel pump module fittings (Fig. 5). Refer to Quick-Connect Fittings for procedures.
- (6) The plastic fuel pump module locknut is threaded onto fuel tank (Fig. 5). Install Special Tool

6856 to fuel pump module locknut and remove locknut (Fig. 7). While rotating tool 6856, be careful not to damage fuel fittings or electrical connector. The fuel pump module will spring up slightly after locknut is removed.

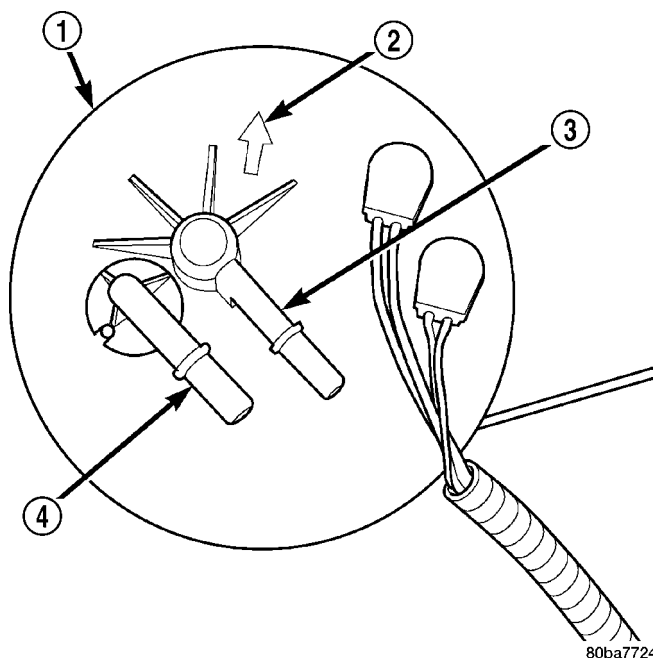
- (7) Remove module from fuel tank.



8020cd9e

**Fig. 7 LOCKNUT REMOVAL/INSTALLATION (TYPICAL PUMP MODULE SHOWN)**

- 1 - SPECIAL TOOL 6856
- 2 - LOCKNUT



80ba7724

**Fig. 8 FUEL PUMP MODULE INDEXING ARROW**

- 1 - FUEL PUMP MODULE
- 2 - INDEXING ARROW
- 3 - FUEL SUPPLY (PRESSURE) FITTING
- 4 - FUEL RETURN FITTING

## INSTALLATION

Fuel tank removal will be necessary for fuel pump module removal.

## FUEL PUMP MODULE (Continued)

**CAUTION:** Whenever fuel pump module is serviced, module gasket must be replaced.

(1) Thoroughly clean locknut threads and mating fuel tank threads. Use a soap/water solution. Do not use carburetor cleaner to clean threads.

(2) **Using new gasket**, position fuel pump module into opening in fuel tank.

(3) Apply clean water to locknut threads.

(4) Position locknut over top of fuel pump module.

(5) Rotate module until indexing arrow at top of module (Fig. 8) is pointed toward rear of vehicle. Align arrow to tick mark on top of fuel tank. **This step must be done to prevent float/float rod assembly from contacting sides of fuel tank.**

(6) Install Special Tool 6856 to locknut.

(7) Tighten locknut. Refer to Torque Specifications.

(8) Connect fuel return and pressure lines to fuel pump module fittings (Fig. 5). Refer to Quick-Connect Fittings.

(9) Install fuel tank. Refer to Fuel Tank Installation.

## FUEL RAIL

## DESCRIPTION

## DESCRIPTION - 4.7L

The fuel injector rail is used to mount the fuel injectors to the engine. It is mounted to the intake manifold (Fig. 9).

## DESCRIPTION - 4.0L

The fuel injector rail is used to mount the fuel injectors to the engine (Fig. 10). On the 4.0L 6-cylinder engine, a **fuel damper** is located near the center of the fuel rail (Fig. 10).

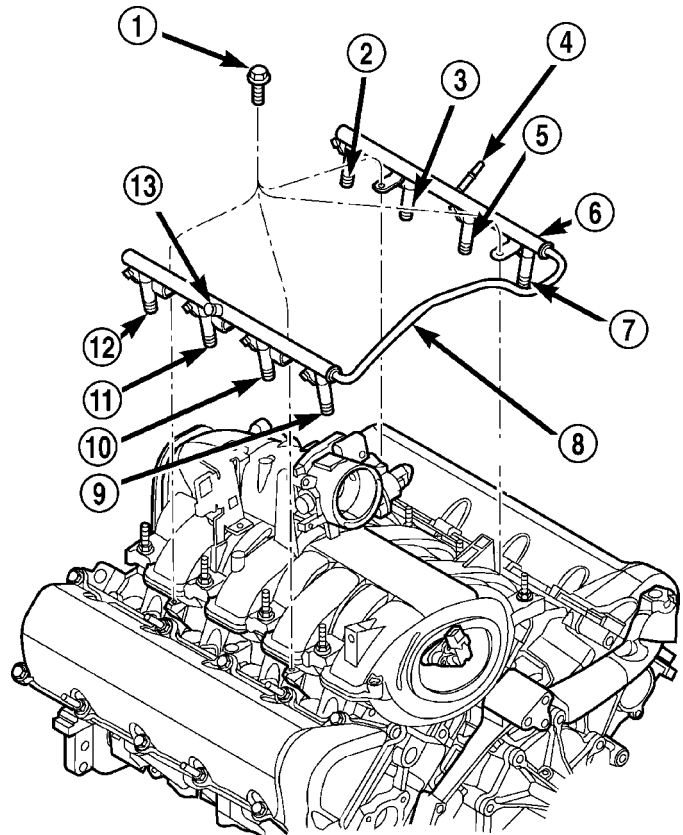
## OPERATION

## OPERATION - 4.7L

High pressure fuel from the fuel pump is routed to the fuel rail. The fuel rail then supplies the necessary fuel to each individual fuel injector.

A fuel pressure test port is located on the fuel rail (Fig. 9). A quick-connect fitting with a safety latch is used to attach the fuel line to the fuel rail.

The fuel rail is not repairable.



80b898e4

**Fig. 9 Fuel Injector Rail—4.7L V-8 Engine**

- 1 - MOUNTING BOLTS (4)
- 2 - INJ.#7
- 3 - INJ.#5
- 4 - QUICK-CONNECT FITTING
- 5 - INJ.#3
- 6 - FUEL INJECTOR RAIL
- 7 - INJ.#1
- 8 - CONNECTOR TUBE
- 9 - INJ.#2
- 10 - INJ.#4
- 11 - INJ.#6
- 12 - INJ.#8
- 13 - PRESSURE TEST PORT CAP

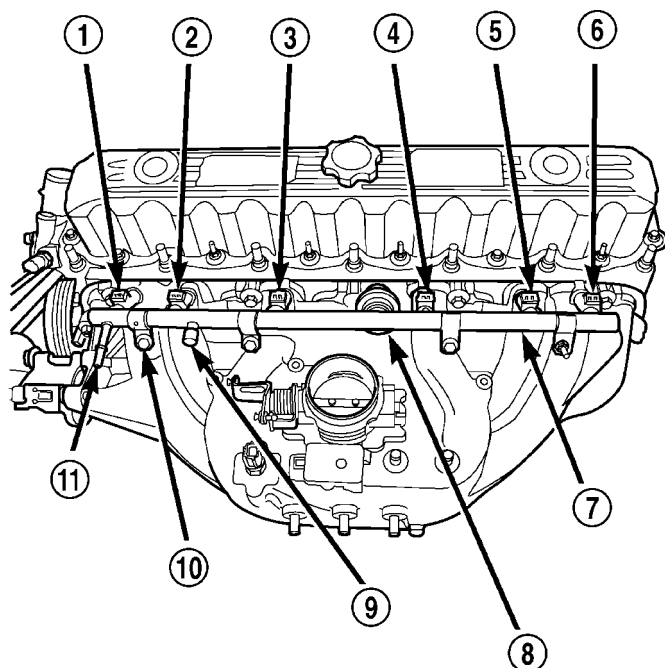
## OPERATION - 4.0L

The fuel injector rail supplies the necessary fuel to each individual fuel injector.

High pressure fuel from the fuel pump is routed to the fuel rail. The fuel rail then supplies the necessary fuel to each individual fuel injector.

The fuel damper is used only to help control fuel pressure pulsations. These pulsations are the result of the firing of the fuel injectors. It is **not used** as a fuel pressure regulator. The fuel pressure regulator is **not mounted** to the fuel rail on any engine. It is located near the front of the fuel tank above the rear axle. Refer to Fuel Filter/Fuel Pressure Regulator in this group for information.

## FUEL RAIL (Continued)



80bfe150

**Fig. 10 Fuel Injector Rail/Fuel Damper—4.0L Engine**

- 1 - INJ. #1
- 2 - INJ. #2
- 3 - INJ. #3
- 4 - INJ. #4
- 5 - INJ. #5
- 6 - INJ. #6
- 7 - FUEL INJECTOR RAIL
- 8 - FUEL DAMPER
- 9 - PRESSURE TEST PORT CAP
- 10 - MOUNTING BOLTS (4)
- 11 - QUICK-CONNECT FITTING

A fuel pressure test port is located on the fuel rail (Fig. 10). A quick-connect fitting with a safety latch is used to attach the fuel line to the fuel rail.

The fuel rail is not repairable.

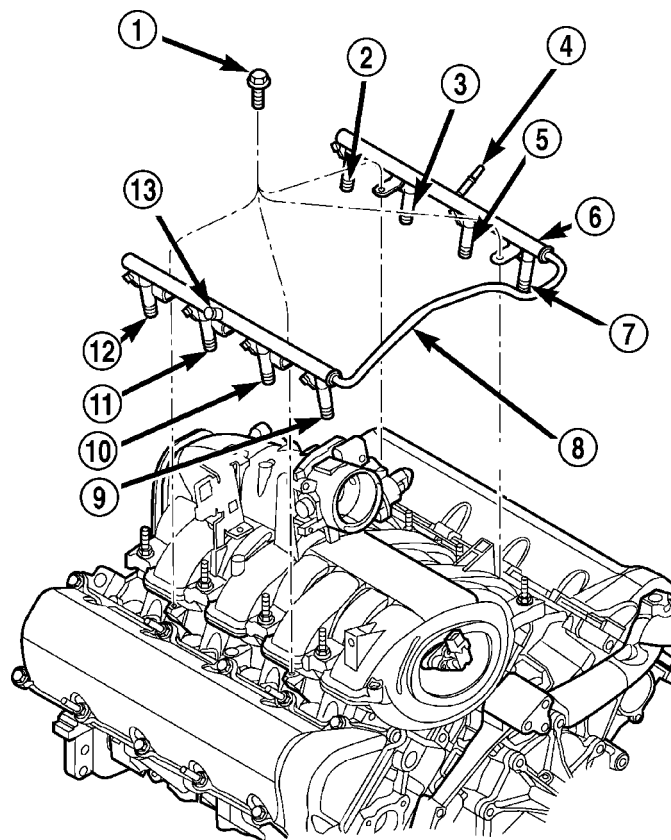
## REMOVAL

## REMOVAL - 4.7L

**WARNING: THE FUEL SYSTEM IS UNDER CONSTANT PRESSURE EVEN WITH ENGINE OFF. BEFORE SERVICING FUEL RAIL, FUEL SYSTEM PRESSURE MUST BE RELEASED.**

**CAUTION:** The left and right fuel rails are replaced as an assembly. Do not attempt to separate rail halves at connector tube (Fig. 11). Due to design of tube, it does not use any clamps. Never attempt to install a clamping device of any kind to tube. When

removing fuel rail assembly for any reason, be careful not to bend or kink tube.



80b898e4

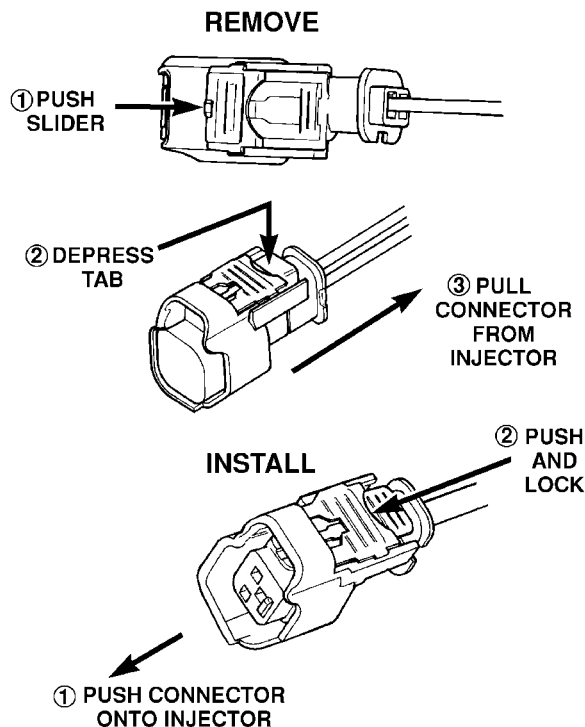
**Fig. 11 FUEL INJECTOR RAIL - 4.7L V-8 EN**

- 1 - MOUNTING BOLTS (4)
- 2 - INJ.#7
- 3 - INJ.#5
- 4 - QUICK-CONNECT FITTING
- 5 - INJ.#3
- 6 - FUEL INJECTOR RAIL
- 7 - INJ.#1
- 8 - CONNECTOR TUBE
- 9 - INJ.#2
- 10 - INJ.#4
- 11 - INJ.#6
- 12 - INJ.#8
- 13 - PRESSURE TEST PORT CAP

- (1) Remove fuel tank filler tube cap.
- (2) Perform Fuel System Pressure Release Procedure.
- (3) Remove negative battery cable at battery.
- (4) Remove air duct at throttle body air box.
- (5) Remove air box at throttle body.
- (6) Remove wiring at rear of generator.
- (7) Disconnect fuel line latch clip and fuel line at fuel rail. A special tool will be necessary for fuel line disconnection. Refer to Quick-Connect Fittings.
- (8) Remove vacuum lines at throttle body.
- (9) Disconnect electrical connectors at all 8 fuel injectors. To remove connector refer to (Fig. 12). Push red colored slider away from injector (1). While push-



## FUEL RAIL (Continued)



80b6f033

**Fig. 12 Remove/Install Injector Connector—4.7L V-8 Engine**

ing slider, depress tab (2) and remove connector (3) from injector. The factory fuel injection wiring harness is numerically tagged (INJ 1, INJ 2, etc.) for injector position identification. If harness is not tagged, note wiring location before removal.

(10) Disconnect electrical connectors at throttle body.

(11) Disconnect electrical connectors at MAP and IAT sensors.

(12) Remove first three ignition coils on each bank (cylinders #1, 3, 5, 2, 4 and 6). Refer to Ignition Coil Removal/Installation.

(13) Remove 4 fuel rail mounting bolts (Fig. 11).

(14) Gently rock and pull **left** side of fuel rail until fuel injectors just start to clear machined holes in cylinder head. Gently rock and pull **right** side of rail until injectors just start to clear cylinder head holes. Repeat this procedure (left/right) until all injectors have cleared cylinder head holes.

(15) Remove fuel rail (with injectors attached) from engine.

(16) If fuel injectors are to be removed, refer to Fuel Injector Removal/Installation.

## REMOVAL - 4.0L

The fuel damper is not serviced separately.

**WARNING: THE FUEL SYSTEM IS UNDER CONSTANT FUEL PRESSURE EVEN WITH ENGINE OFF.**

**THIS PRESSURE MUST BE RELEASED BEFORE SERVICING FUEL RAIL.**

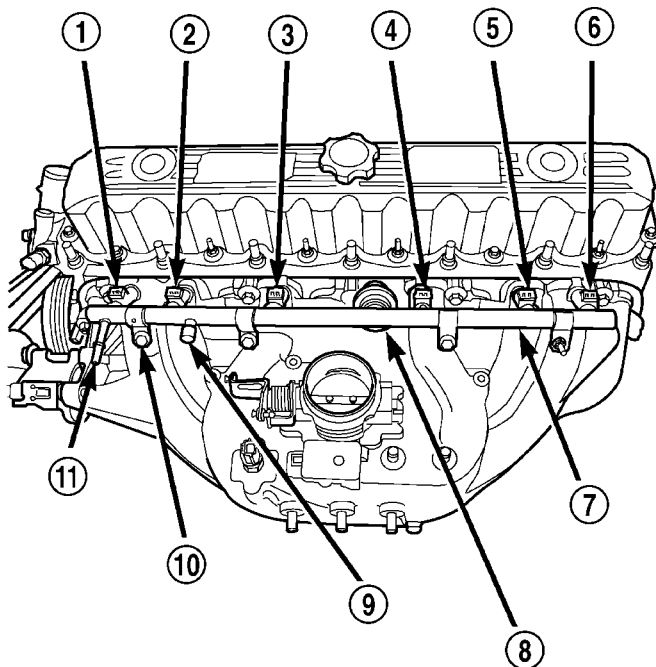
(1) Remove fuel tank filler tube cap.

(2) Perform Fuel System Pressure Release Procedure.

(3) Disconnect negative battery cable from battery.

(4) Remove air tube at top of throttle body. Note: Some engine/vehicles may require removal of air cleaner ducts at throttle body.

(5) Disconnect electrical connectors at all 6 fuel injectors. To remove connector refer to (Fig. 14). Push red colored slider away from injector (1). While pushing slider, depress tab (2) and remove connector (3) from injector. The factory fuel injection wiring harness is numerically tagged (INJ 1, INJ 2, etc.) for injector position identification. If harness is not tagged, note wiring location before removal.



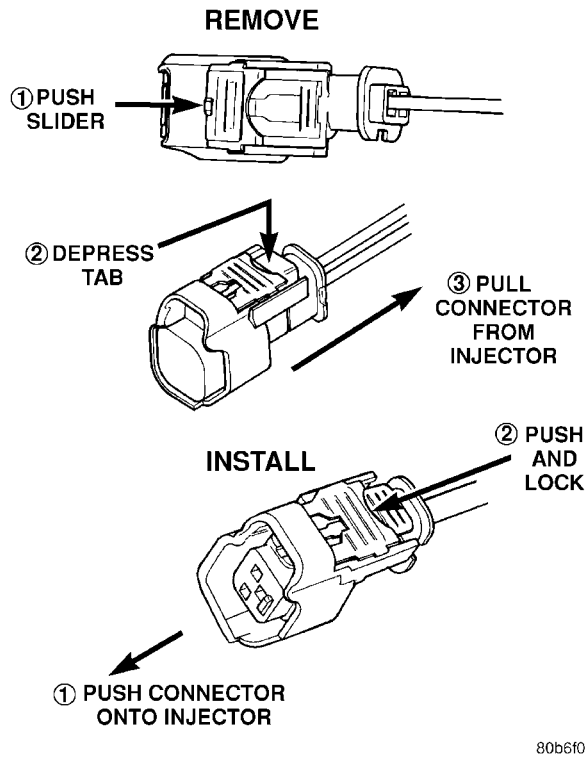
80bfe150

**Fig. 13 Fuel Rail Mounting—4.0L Engine**

- 1 - INJ. #1
- 2 - INJ. #2
- 3 - INJ. #3
- 4 - INJ. #4
- 5 - INJ. #5
- 6 - INJ. #6
- 7 - FUEL INJECTOR RAIL
- 8 - FUEL DAMPER
- 9 - PRESSURE TEST PORT CAP
- 10 - MOUNTING BOLTS (4)
- 11 - QUICK-CONNECT FITTING

(6) Remove oxygen sensor wiring clip nuts at fuel rail mounting studs (certain emissions packages only).

## FUEL RAIL (Continued)



**Fig. 14 Remove/Install Injector Connector—4.0L Engine**

(7) Disconnect fuel supply line latch clip and fuel line at fuel rail. Refer to Quick-Connect Fittings.

(8) Disconnect throttle cable at throttle body. Refer to Throttle Cable Removal/Installation.

(9) Disconnect speed control cable at throttle body (if equipped). Refer to Speed Control Cable.

(10) Disconnect automatic transmission cable at throttle body (if equipped).

(11) Remove cable routing bracket at intake manifold.

(12) Clean dirt/debris from each fuel injector at intake manifold.

(13) Remove fuel rail mounting nuts/bolts (Fig. 13).

(14) Remove fuel rail by gently rocking until all fuel injectors have cleared machined holes at intake manifold.

(15) If fuel injectors are to be removed, refer to Fuel Injector Removal/Installation.

## INSTALLATION

### INSTALLATION - 4.7L

(1) If fuel injectors are to be installed, refer to Fuel Injector Removal/Installation.

(2) Apply a small amount of engine oil to each fuel injector o-ring. This will help in fuel rail installation.

(3) Position fuel rail/fuel injector assembly to machined injector openings in cylinder head.

(4) Guide each injector into cylinder head. Be careful not to tear injector o-rings.

(5) Push **right** side of fuel rail down until fuel injectors have bottomed on cylinder head shoulder. Push **left** fuel rail down until injectors have bottomed on cylinder head shoulder.

(6) Install 4 fuel rail mounting bolts and tighten to 27 N·m (20 ft. lbs.).

(7) Install ignition coils. Refer to Ignition Coil Removal/Installation.

(8) Connect electrical connectors to throttle body.

(9) Connect electrical connectors to MAP and IAT sensors.

(10) Connect electrical connectors at all fuel injectors. To install connector, refer to (Fig. 12). Push connector onto injector (1) and then push and lock red colored slider (2). Verify connector is locked to injector by lightly tugging on connector.

(11) Connect vacuum lines to throttle body.

(12) Connect fuel line latch clip and fuel line to fuel rail. Refer to Quick-Connect Fittings.

(13) Connect wiring to rear of generator.

(14) Install air box to throttle body.

(15) Install air duct to air box.

(16) Connect battery cable to battery.

(17) Start engine and check for leaks.

### INSTALLATION - 4.0L

(1) If fuel injectors are to be installed, refer to Fuel Injector Removal/Installation.

(2) Clean each injector bore at intake manifold.

(3) Apply a small amount of clean engine oil to each injector o-ring. This will aid in installation.

(4) Position tips of all fuel injectors into the corresponding injector bore in intake manifold. Seat injectors into manifold.

(5) Install and tighten fuel rail mounting bolts to 11 ±3 N·m (100 ±25 in. lbs.) torque.

(6) Connect electrical connectors at all fuel injectors. To install connector, refer to (Fig. 14). Push connector onto injector (1) and then push and lock red colored slider (2). Verify connector is locked to injector by lightly tugging on connector.

(7) Connect fuel line and fuel line latch clip to fuel rail. Refer Quick-Connect Fittings.

(8) Install protective cap to pressure test port fitting (if equipped).

(9) Install cable routing bracket to intake manifold.

(10) Connect throttle cable at throttle body.

(11) Connect speed control cable at throttle body (if equipped).

(12) Connect automatic transmission cable at throttle body (if equipped).



## FUEL RAIL (Continued)

- (13) Install oxygen sensor wiring clip nuts to fuel rail mounting studs (certain emissions packages only).
- (14) Install air tube (or duct) at top of throttle body.
- (15) Install fuel tank cap.
- (16) Connect negative battery cable to battery.
- (17) Start engine and check for fuel leaks.

## FUEL TANK

## DESCRIPTION

The fuel tank is constructed of a plastic material. Its main functions are for fuel storage and for placement of the fuel pump module and certain ORVR components.

## OPERATION

All models pass a full 360 degree rollover test without fuel leakage. To accomplish this, fuel and vapor flow controls are required for all fuel tank connections.

A fuel tank check valve(s) is mounted into the top of the fuel tank (or pump module). Refer to Fuel Tank Check Valve for additional information.

An evaporation control system is connected to the check valve(s) to reduce emissions of fuel vapors into the atmosphere. When fuel evaporates from the fuel tank, vapors pass through vent hoses or tubes to a charcoal canister where they are temporarily held. When the engine is running, the vapors are drawn into the intake manifold. Certain models are also equipped with a self-diagnosing system using either a Leak Detection Pump (LDP), or an NVLD pump. Refer to Emission Control System for additional information.

Refer to ORVR for On-Board Refueling Vapor Recovery system information.

## REMOVAL

**WARNING: THE FUEL SYSTEM IS UNDER CONSTANT FUEL PRESSURE EVEN WITH ENGINE OFF. PRESSURE MUST BE RELEASED BEFORE SERVICING FUEL TANK.**

**Fuel level in tank below 3/4:** fuel tank draining is not necessary for tank removal.

**Fuel level in tank above 3/4:** the electric fuel pump may be activated allowing tank to be partially drained at fuel rail connection. Refer to DRB Scan Tool for fuel pump activation procedures. Before disconnecting fuel line at fuel rail, remove gas cap and release fuel pressure. Refer to the Fuel System Pressure Release Procedure for procedures. Attach end of Special Adapter Hose Tool number 6539 at fuel rail

disconnection. Position opposite end of 6539 to an approved gasoline draining station. **Note: A temporary adapter fitting such as SnapOn® tool number FIA610 may be used to attach the disconnected fuel line to the approved gasoline draining station.** Activate fuel pump with DRB and drain approximately 4–5 gallons of fuel before tank removal. The fuel tank does not need to be completely emptied before removal.

**Electric fuel pump not operating, and fuel level in tank above 3/4:** the fuel tank does not need to be completely emptied before removal. Before disconnecting fuel line at fuel rail, remove gas cap and release fuel pressure. Attach an approved, suction-type gasoline draining station to disconnected fuel line at fuel rail. Drain approximately 4–5 gallons of fuel before tank removal. **Note: A temporary adapter fitting such as SnapOn® tool number FIA610 may be used to attach the disconnected fuel line to the approved gasoline draining station.**

- (1) Release fuel system pressure. Refer to Fuel System Pressure Release Procedure.
- (2) Disconnect negative battery cable at battery.
- (3) Raise and support vehicle.
- (4) Remove left rear wheel/tire.

**CAUTION: HANDLE EVAP, LDP AND ORVR VAPOR / VACUUM LINES VERY CAREFULLY. THESE LINES AND HOSES MUST BE FIRMLY CONNECTED. CHECK THE VAPOR/VACUUM LINES AT THE LDP, LDP FILTER, EVAP CANISTER, EVAP CANISTER PURGE SOLENOID AND ORVR COMPONENTS (Fig. 15) FOR DAMAGE OR LEAKS. IF A LEAK IS PRESENT, A DIAGNOSTIC TROUBLE CODE (DTC) MAY BE SET.**

- (5) Remove stone shield behind left/rear wheel (Fig. 16). Drill out plastic rivets for removal.
- (6) Remove 3 LDP mounting bolts (Fig. 17).
- (7) Remove support bracket brace bolt (Fig. 18).
- (8) Loosen, but do not remove 2 support bracket nuts at frame rail (Fig. 17).
- (9) To separate and lower front section of two-piece support bracket, remove 3 attaching bolts on bottom of support bracket (Fig. 18). While lowering support bracket, disconnect LDP wiring clip (Fig. 19).
- (10) Remove hose clamp (Fig. 20) and remove fuel fill hose from fuel fill tube.
- (11) Cut and discard tie wrap from axle vent hose (Fig. 20).
- (12) Disconnect fuel vent hose from fuel vent tube (Fig. 20).
- (13) Disconnect ORVR hose elbow (Fig. 21) at top of EVAP canister.
- (14) Place hydraulic jack to bottom of fuel tank.

## FUEL TANK (Continued)

(15) Remove fuel tank-to-rear bumper fascia clips (Fig. 22).

(16) Remove fuel tank heat shield mounting bolts (Fig. 23).

**CAUTION:** To protect fuel tank from exhaust heat, shield must re-installed after tank installation.

**WARNING:** PLACE SHOP TOWEL AROUND FUEL LINES TO CATCH ANY EXCESS FUEL.

(17) Disconnect fuel return line at fuel filter/fuel pressure regulator (Fig. 24). Refer to Quick-Connect Fittings for procedures.

(18) Disconnect fuel pressure line at fuel filter/fuel pressure regulator (Fig. 24). Refer to Quick-Connect Fittings for procedures.

(19) Disconnect EVAP canister vent line near front of tank (Fig. 24).

(20) Disconnect fuel pump module electrical connector (pigtail harness) near front of tank (Fig. 24). Harness connector is clipped to body.

(21) Remove left / front tank support bracket bolt at frame (Fig. 25).

(22) **WITHOUT TRAILER HITCH:** Remove tank-to-frame mounting bolts (Fig. 27). Remove rear tank support bracket bolt at frame (Fig. 26). Carefully lower tank until clear of vehicle. Place tank on floor.

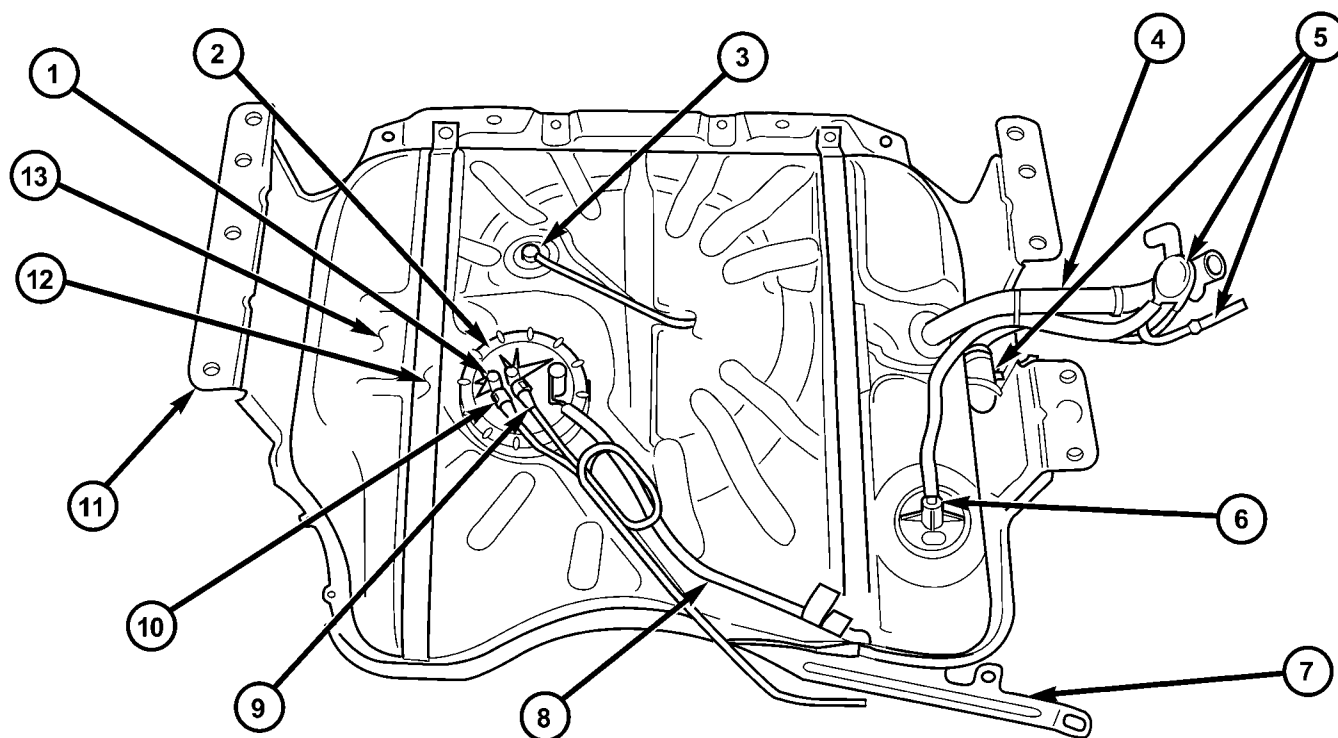
(23) **WITH TRAILER HITCH:** Remove tank / hitch mounting bolts (Fig. 28). Carefully lower tank until clear of vehicle. Place tank on floor.

(24) If necessary, separate skid plate from fuel tank by removing 2 fuel tank strap nuts (Fig. 27) and remove 2 tank straps.

(25) If fuel pump module removal is necessary, refer to Fuel Pump Module Removal/Installation.

(26) If hoses are to be removed at fuel tank end, note painted alignment (indexing) markings on hoses, and molded indexing tangs on tank before removal. Remove hoses.

(27) If necessary, remove 3 fuel filler tube assembly mounting bolts (Fig. 29) and remove fuel filler tube.



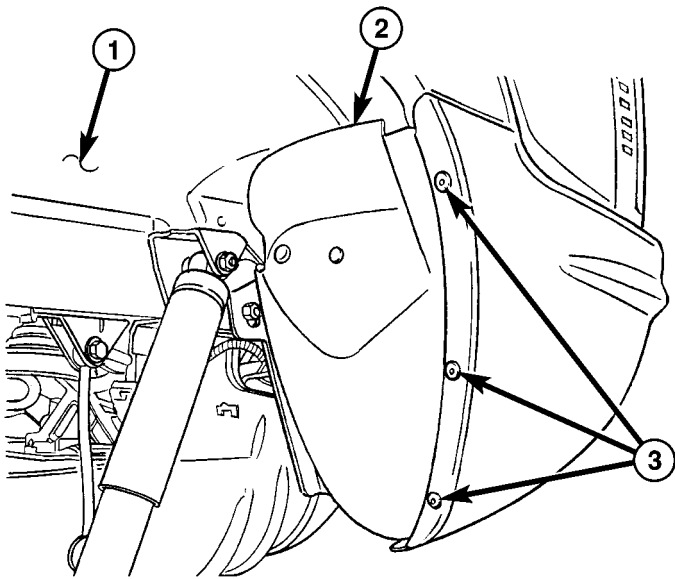
810bd40c

**Fig. 15 TOP OF FUEL TANK**

- 1 - FUEL PUMP MODULE
- 2 - MODULE LOCK RING
- 3 - CHECK VALVE
- 4 - FUEL FILL HOSE
- 5 - ORVR COMPONENTS
- 6 - ORVR CONTROL VALVE
- 7 - TANK SUPPORT BRACKET (SMALL/FRONT)
- 8 - MODULE PIGTAIL HARNESS

- 9 - FUEL SUPPLY (PRESSURE) LINE
- 10 - FUEL RETURN LINE
- 11 - SKID PLATE
- 12 - TANK STRAPS (2)
- 13 - FUEL TANK

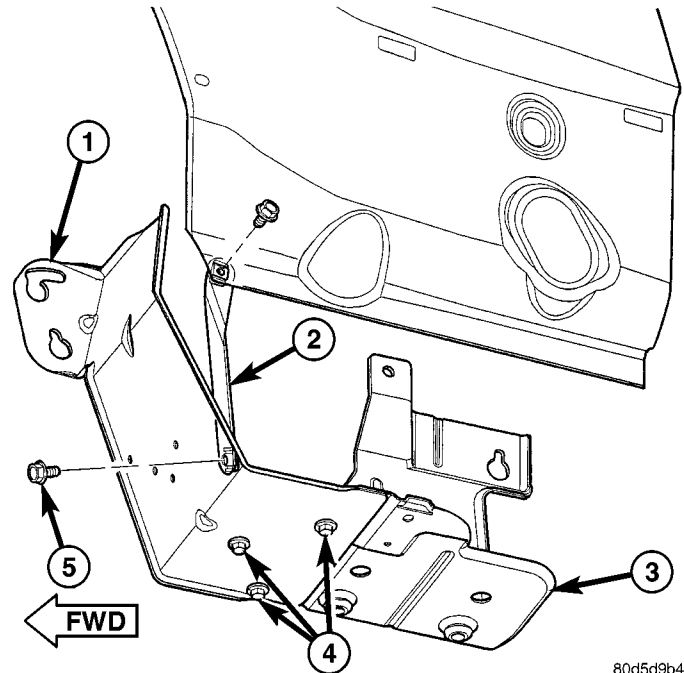
## FUEL TANK (Continued)



80d5d99c

**Fig. 16 STONE SHIELD**

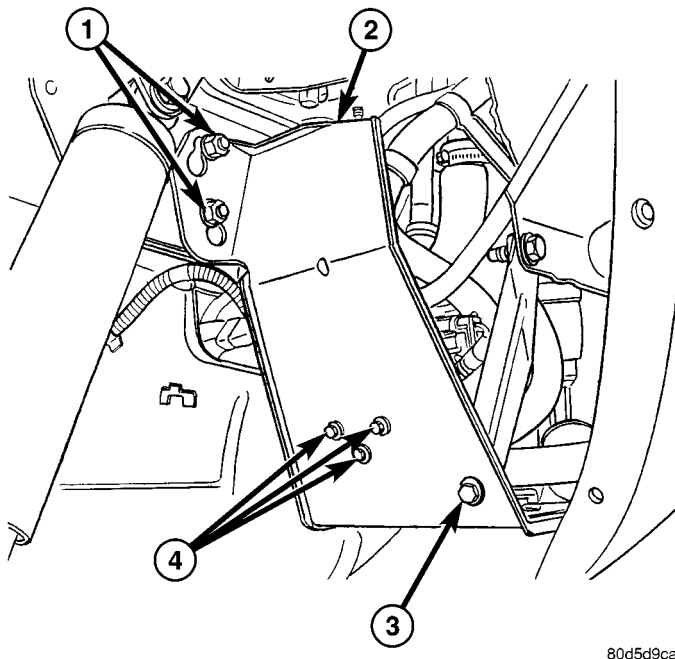
- 1 - LEFT-REAR WHEELHOUSE
- 2 - STONE SHIELD
- 3 - PLASTIC RIVETS



80d5d9b4

**Fig. 18 TWO-PIECE SUPPORT BRACKET**

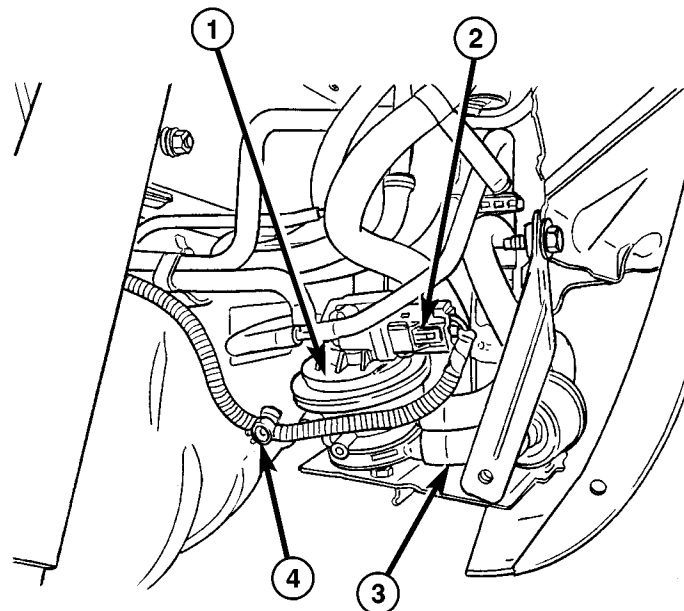
- 1 - TWO-PIECE SUPPORT BRACKET (FRONT)
- 2 - SUPPORT BRACKET BRACE
- 3 - TWO-PIECE SUPPORT BRACKET (REAR)
- 4 - SUPPORT BRACKET ATTACHING BOLTS (3)
- 5 - SUPPORT BRACKET BRACE BOLT



80d5d9ca

**Fig. 17 LDP MOUNTING BOLTS**

- 1 - SUPPORT BRACKET NUTS (2)
- 2 - SUPPORT BRACKET (FRONT)
- 3 - SUPPORT BRACKET BRACE BOLT
- 4 - LDP MOUNTING BOLTS (3)

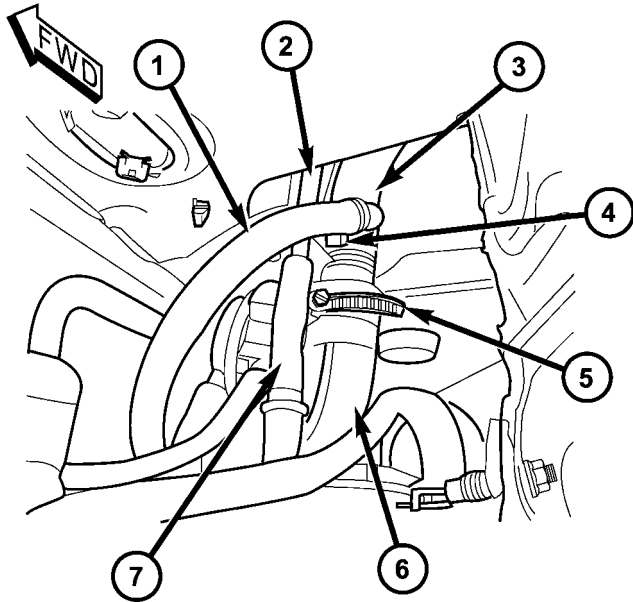


80d5d9e4

**Fig. 19 LDP REMOVAL / INSTALLATION**

- 1 - LDP
- 2 - ELEC. CONNECT.
- 3 - VAPOR / VACUUM LINES
- 4 - WIRING CLIP

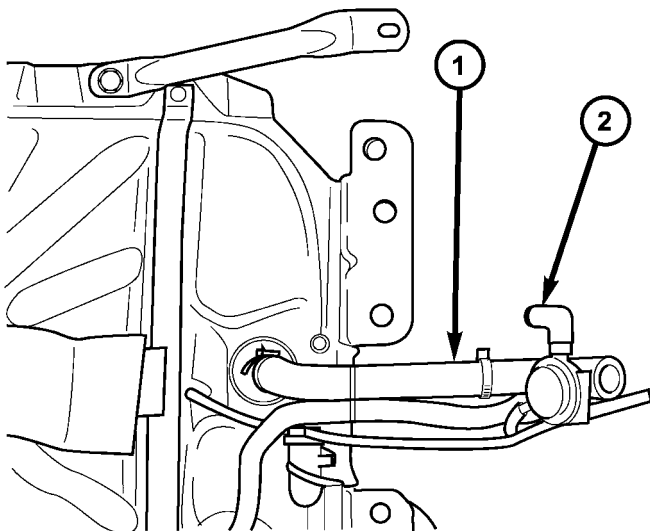
## FUEL TANK (Continued)



80d80f78

**Fig. 20 FUEL FILL TUBE/HOSE/CLAMP**

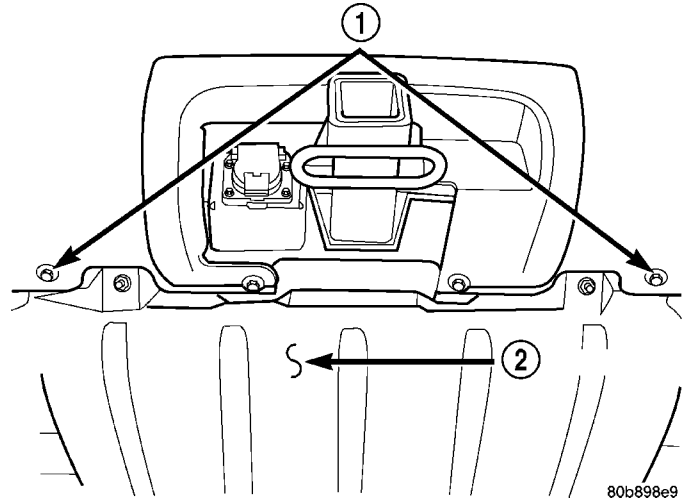
- 1 - AXLE VENT HOSE
- 2 - FUEL VENT TUBE
- 3 - FUEL FILL TUBE
- 4 - PLASTIC TIE WRAP
- 5 - HOSE CLAMP
- 6 - FUEL FILL HOSE
- 7 - FUEL VENT HOSE



80d8131d

**Fig. 21 ORVR HOSE ELBOW**

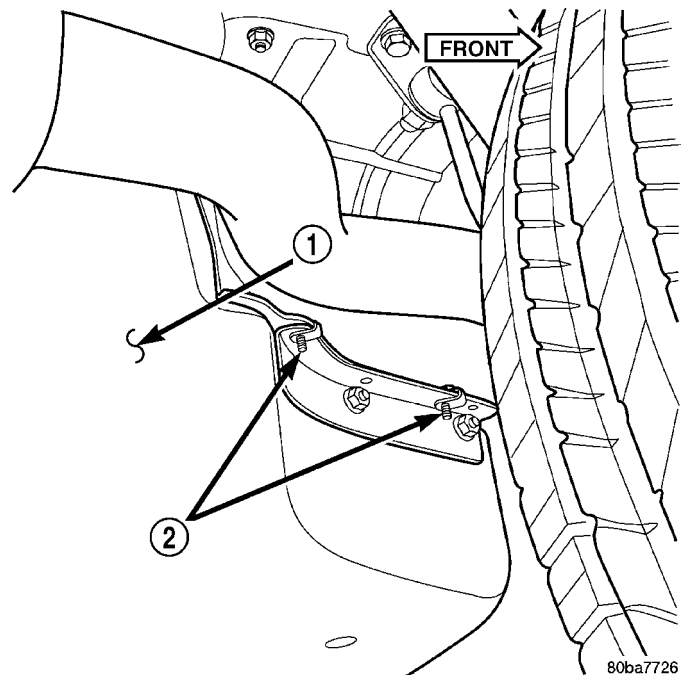
- 1 - FUEL FILL HOSE
- 2 - ELBOW (TO TOP OF EVAP CANISTER)



80b898e9

**Fig. 22 BUMPER FASCIA CLIPS**

- 1 - CLIPS
- 2 - FUEL TANK

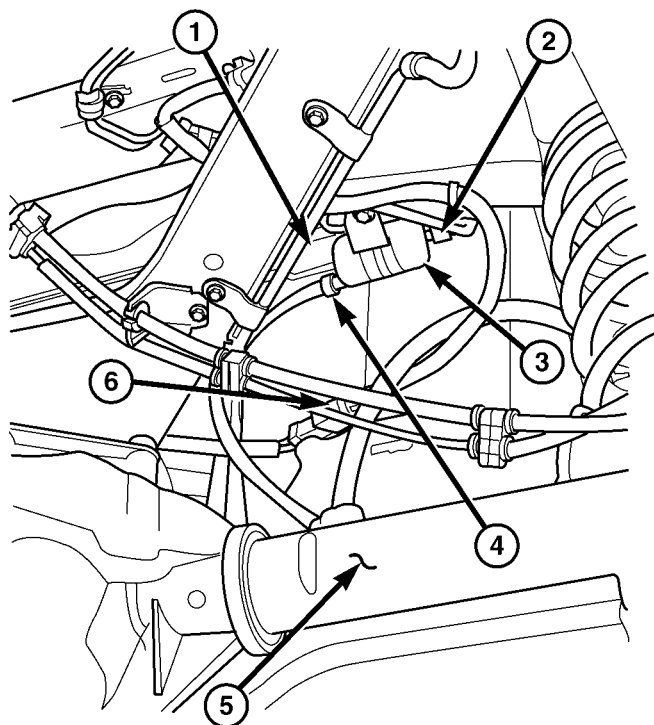


80ba7726

**Fig. 23 FUEL TANK HEAT SHIELD BOLTS**

- 1 - FUEL TANK
- 2 - HEAT SHIELD BOLTS

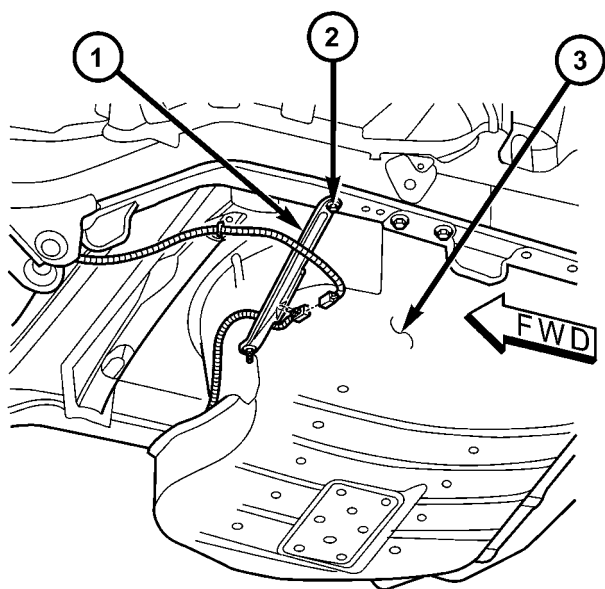
## FUEL TANK (Continued)



810c19ac

**Fig. 24 FUEL FILTER/FUEL PRESSURE REGULATOR**

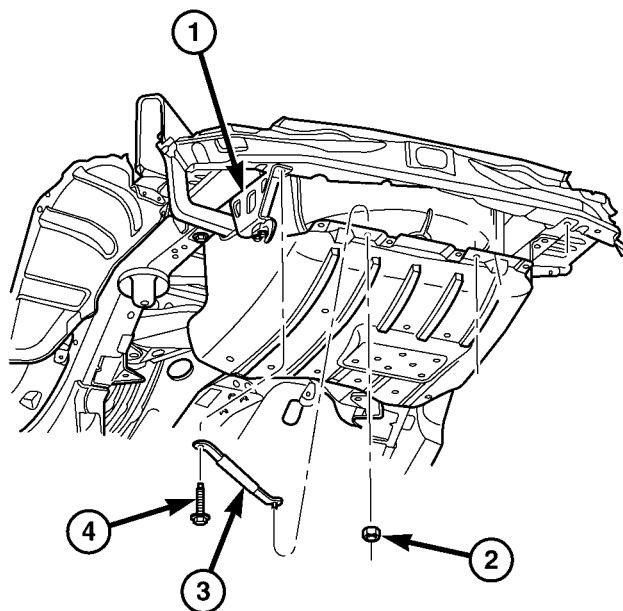
- 1 - FUEL RETURN LINE
- 2 - FUEL SUPPLY LINE (TO FUEL RAIL)
- 3 - FUEL FILTER/FUEL PRESSURE REGULATOR
- 4 - FUEL PRESSURE LINE
- 5 - REAR AXLE
- 6 - ELEC. CONNECTOR



80d81d5d

**Fig. 25 BRACKET, TANK SUPPORT - FRONT**

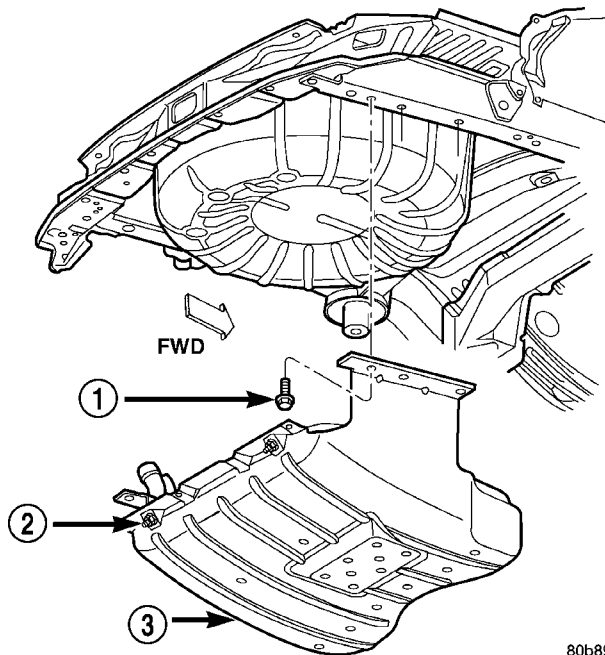
- 1 - FUEL TANK SUPPORT BRACKET (LEFT FRONT)
- 2 - BRACKET BOLT
- 3 - LEFT SIDE OF TANK



810c1c88

**Fig. 26 BRACKET, TANK SUPPORT - REAR**

- 1 - TOW HOOKS
- 2 - REAR TANK SUPPORT BRACKET NUT
- 3 - TANK SUPPORT BRACKET
- 4 - TANK SUPPORT BRACKET BOLT



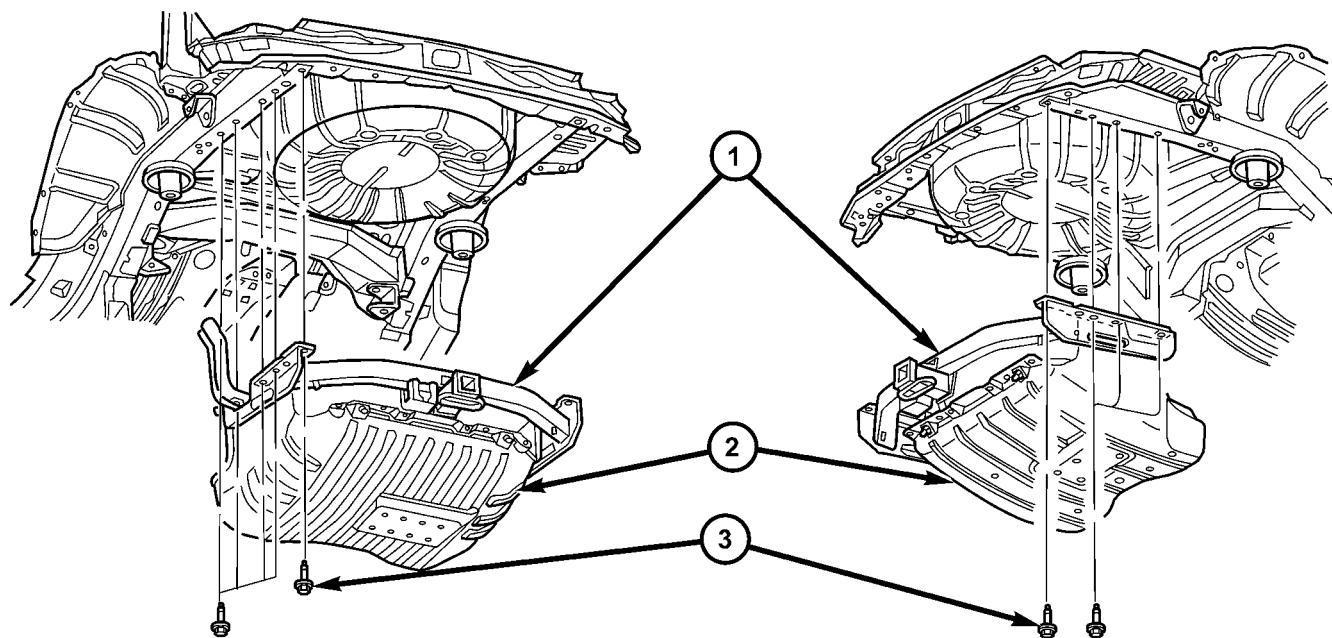
80b898f1

**Fig. 27 FUEL TANK MOUNTING - NO TRAILER HITCH**

- 1 - TANK MOUNTING BOLTS
- 2 - STRAP NUTS
- 3 - FUEL TANK/SHIELD ASSEMBLY



## FUEL TANK (Continued)

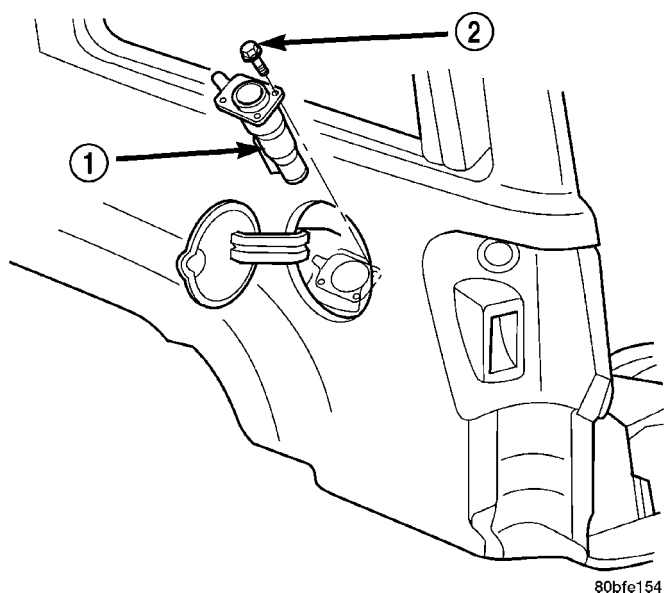


80d82bf0

**Fig. 28 FUEL TANK MOUNTING - WITH TRAILER HITCH**

1 - TRAILER HITCH  
2 - FUEL TANK

3 - FUEL TANK / HITCH MOUNTING BOLTS



80bfe154

**Fig. 29 FUEL FILLER TUBE**

1 - FUEL FILLER TUBE  
2 - MOUNTING BOLTS (3)

**INSTALLATION**

**CAUTION: HANDLE EVAP, LDP AND ORVR VAPOR / VACUUM LINES VERY CAREFULLY. THESE LINES AND HOSES MUST BE FIRMLY CONNECTED. CHECK THE VAPOR/VACUUM LINES AT THE LDP, LDP FILTER, EVAP CANISTER, EVAP CANISTER PURGE SOLENOID AND ORVR COMPONENTS FOR DAMAGE OR LEAKS. IF A LEAK IS PRESENT, A DIAGNOSTIC TROUBLE CODE (DTC) MAY BE SET.**

- (1) If necessary, position fuel filler tube assembly to body. Install 3 bolts. Refer to Torque Specifications.
- (2) If necessary, connect quick-connect fittings to fuel pump module.
- (3) If fuel pump module is being installed, refer to Fuel Pump Module Removal/Installation.
- (4) Install fuel fill/vent hoses to tank fittings. To prevent hoses from kinking, rotate each hose until painted indexing mark on hose is aligned to molded indexing tang on tank.
- (5) Install hose clamps to hoses. Refer to Torque Specifications.
- (6) If necessary, position fuel tank into skid plate. Install 2 tank straps and 2 strap nuts (Fig. 27). Refer to Torque Specifications.
- (7) Position fuel tank / skid plate assembly to hydraulic jack.
- (8) Raise tank into position to frame.

## FUEL TANK (Continued)

(9) **WITH TRAILER HITCH:** Position trailer hitch and tow hooks (Fig. 28) to bottom of fuel tank. Install bolts and nuts loosely.

(10) **WITHOUT TRAILER HITCH:** Install 2 rear tank support brackets and bolts (Fig. 26). Install tank-to-frame bolts. Do not tighten bolts / nuts at this time.

(11) Install 1 left / front tank support bracket and bolts / nuts (Fig. 25). Do not tighten bolts / nuts at this time.

(12) Be sure fuel tank is properly aligned to frame and body. Tighten all tank, tow hook and trailer hitch bolts / nuts except for 3 support brackets. Tighten all 3 (2 rear and 1 left / front) support bracket bolts / nuts last. Refer to Torque Specifications.

(13) Connect fuel pump module pigtail harness electrical connector near front of tank.

(14) Connect both fuel lines to fuel filter/fuel pressure regulator. Refer to Quick-Connect Fittings for procedures.

(15) Connect EVAP hose near front of tank.

(16) Position rear axle vent hose and install new tie strap (Fig. 20).

(17) Install heat shield nuts / bolts (Fig. 23). Refer to Torque Specifications.

(18) Connect ORVR hose elbow (Fig. 21) to top of EVAP canister.

(19) Connect fuel vent hose to fuel vent tube (Fig. 20).

(20) Install fuel fill hose and clamp to fuel fill tube (Fig. 20).

(21) Install 3 LDP mounting bolts (Fig. 17).

(22) While raising support bracket, connect LDP wiring clip (Fig. 19). Install front section of two-piece support bracket to rear section with 3 attaching bolts located on bottom of support bracket (Fig. 18).

(23) Install support bracket brace bolt (Fig. 18).

(24) Tighten 2 support bracket nuts at frame rail (Fig. 17).

(25) Install fuel tank-to-rear bumper fascia clips (Fig. 22).

(26) Using new plastic rivets, install stone shield behind left/rear wheel (Fig. 16).

(27) Install left rear wheel/tire.

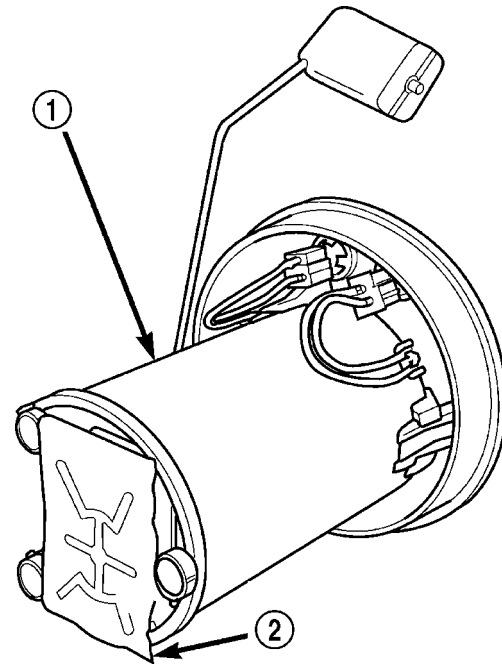
(28) Lower vehicle and connect negative battery cable to battery.

(29) Fill tank with fuel and check for leaks.

## INLET FILTER

## REMOVAL

The fuel pump inlet filter (strainer) is located on the bottom of fuel pump module (Fig. 30). The fuel pump module is located on top of fuel tank.



80ba7725

**Fig. 30 Fuel Pump Inlet Filter**

- 1 - FUEL PUMP MODULE  
2 - FUEL PUMP INLET FILTER

The fuel pump inlet filter (strainer) is located on the bottom of fuel pump module (Fig. 30). The fuel pump module is located on top of fuel tank.

(1) Remove fuel tank. Refer to Fuel Tank Removal/Installation.

(2) Remove fuel pump module. Refer to Fuel Pump Module Removal/Installation.

(3) Remove filter by prying from bottom of module with 2 screwdrivers. Filter is snapped to module.

(4) Clean bottom of pump module.

## INSTALLATION

The fuel pump inlet filter (strainer) is located on the bottom of fuel pump module (Fig. 30). The fuel pump module is located on top of fuel tank.

(1) Snap new filter to bottom of module.

(2) Install fuel pump module. Refer to Fuel Pump Module Removal/Installation.

(3) Install fuel tank. Refer to Fuel Tank Removal/Installation.



## QUICK CONNECT FITTING

### DESCRIPTION

Different types of quick-connect fittings are used to attach various fuel system components, lines and tubes. These are: a single-tab type, a two-tab type or a plastic retainer ring type. Some are equipped with safety latch clips. Some may require the use of a special tool for disconnection and removal. Refer to Quick-Connect Fittings Removal/Installation for more information.

**CAUTION:** The interior components (o-rings, clips) of quick-connect fittings are not serviced separately, but new plastic spacers are available for some types. If service parts are not available, do not attempt to repair the damaged fitting or fuel line (tube). If repair is necessary, replace the complete fuel line (tube) assembly.

### STANDARD PROCEDURE - QUICK-CONNECT FITTINGS

Also refer to Fuel Tubes/Lines/Hoses and Clamps.

Different types of quick-connect fittings are used to attach various fuel system components, lines and tubes. These are: a single-tab type, a two-tab type or a plastic retainer ring type. Safety latch clips are used on certain components/lines. Certain fittings may require use of a special tool for disconnection.

### DISCONNECTING

**WARNING:** THE FUEL SYSTEM IS UNDER A CONSTANT PRESSURE (EVEN WITH ENGINE OFF). BEFORE SERVICING ANY FUEL SYSTEM HOSE, FITTING OR LINE, FUEL SYSTEM PRESSURE MUST BE RELEASED. REFER TO FUEL SYSTEM PRESSURE RELEASE PROCEDURE.

**CAUTION:** The interior components (o-rings, spacers) of some types of quick-connect fitting are not serviced separately. If service parts are not available, do not attempt to repair a damaged fitting or fuel line. If repair is necessary, replace complete fuel line assembly.

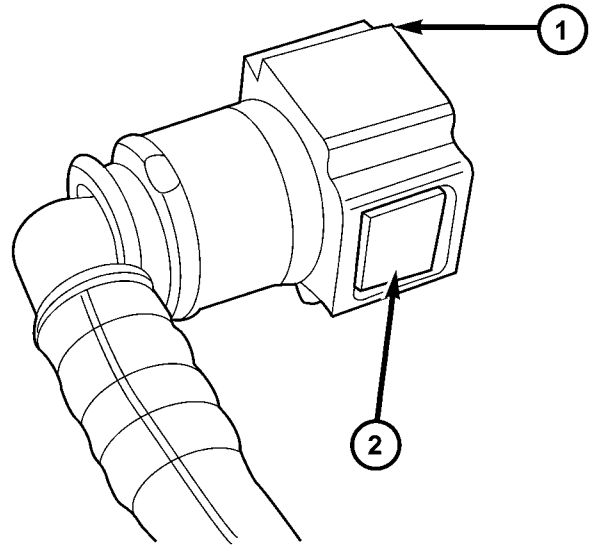
(1) Perform fuel pressure release procedure. Refer to Fuel Pressure Release Procedure.

(2) Disconnect negative battery cable from battery.

(3) Clean fitting of any foreign material before disassembly.

(4) **2-Button Type Fitting:** This type of fitting is equipped with a push-button located on each side of quick-connect fitting (Fig. 31). Press on both buttons

simultaneously for removal. Special tools are not required for disconnection.

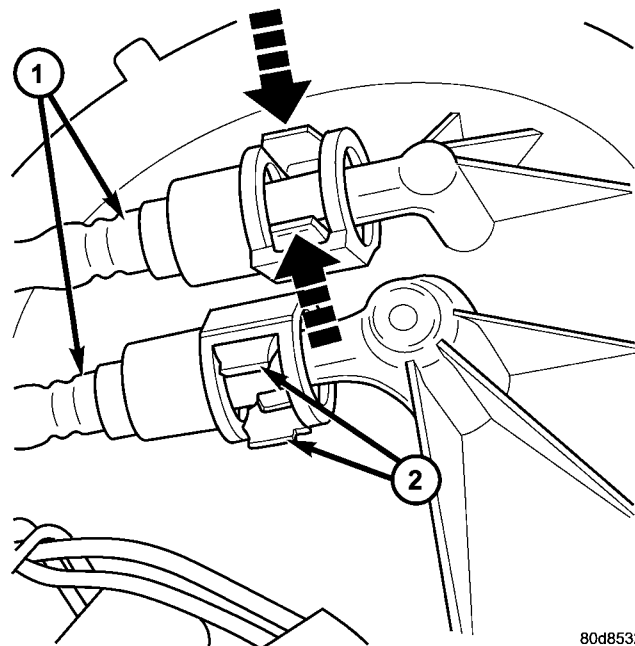


80cc704d

**Fig. 31 2-BUTTON TYPE FITTING**

- 1 - QUICK-CONNECT FITTING  
2 - PUSH-BUTTONS (2)

(5) **Pinch-Type Fitting:** This fitting is equipped with two finger tabs. Pinch both tabs together while removing fitting (Fig. 32). Special tools are not required for disconnection.



80d85327

**Fig. 32 PINCH TYPE QUICK-CONNECT FITTING**

- 1 - QUICK-CONNECT FITTINGS  
2 - PINCH TABS

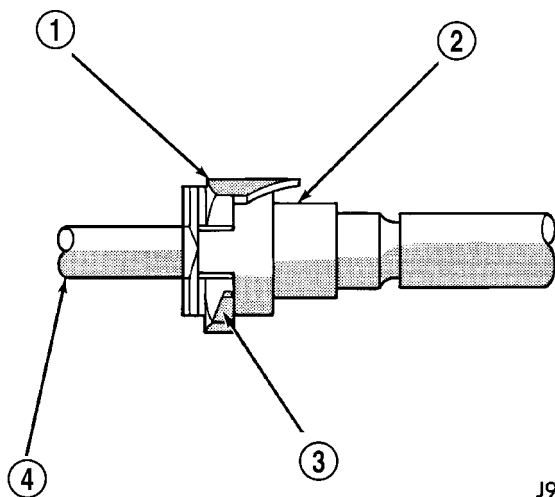
## QUICK CONNECT FITTING (Continued)

(6) **Single-Tab Type Fitting:** This type of fitting is equipped with a single pull tab (Fig. 33). The tab is removable. After tab is removed, quick-connect fitting can be separated from fuel system component. Special tools are not required for disconnection.

(a) Press release tab on side of fitting to release pull tab (Fig. 34). **If release tab is not pressed prior to releasing pull tab, pull tab will be damaged.**

(b) While pressing release tab on side of fitting, use screwdriver to pry up pull tab (Fig. 34).

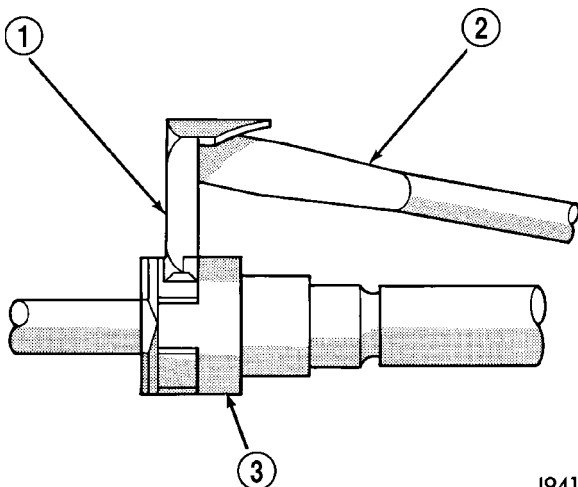
(c) Raise pull tab until it separates from quick-connect fitting (Fig. 35).



J9414-24

**Fig. 33 SINGLE-TAB TYPE FITTING**

- 1 - PULL TAB
- 2 - QUICK-CONNECT FITTING
- 3 - PRESS HERE TO REMOVE PULL TAB
- 4 - INSERTED TUBE END

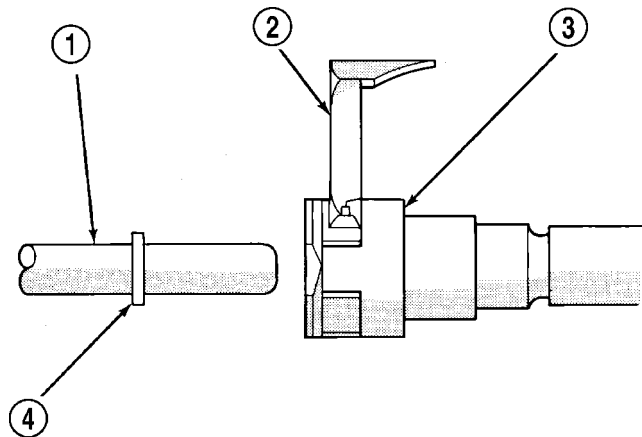


J9414-25

**Fig. 34 DISCONNECTING SINGLE-TAB TYPE FITTING**

- 1 - PULL TAB
- 2 - SCREWDRIVER
- 3 - QUICK-CONNECT FITTING

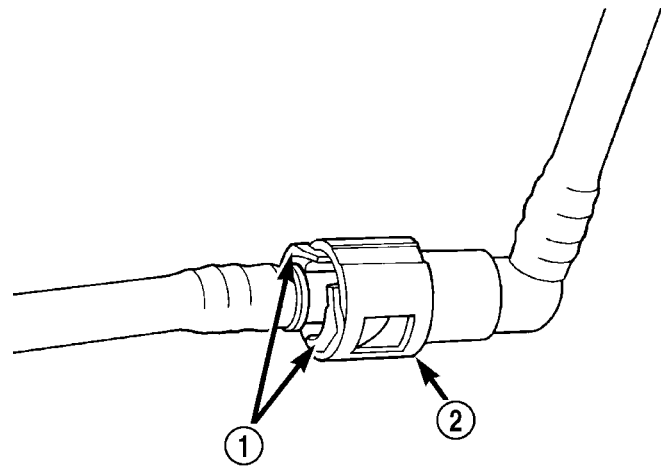
(7) **Two-Tab Type Fitting:** This type of fitting is equipped with tabs located on both sides of fitting (Fig. 36). The tabs are supplied for disconnecting quick-connect fitting from component being serviced.



J9414-26

**Fig. 35 REMOVING PULL TAB**

- 1 - FUEL TUBE OR FUEL SYSTEM COMPONENT
- 2 - PULL TAB
- 3 - QUICK-CONNECT FITTING
- 4 - FUEL TUBE STOP



80a35405

**Fig. 36 TYPICAL 2-TAB TYPE FITTING**

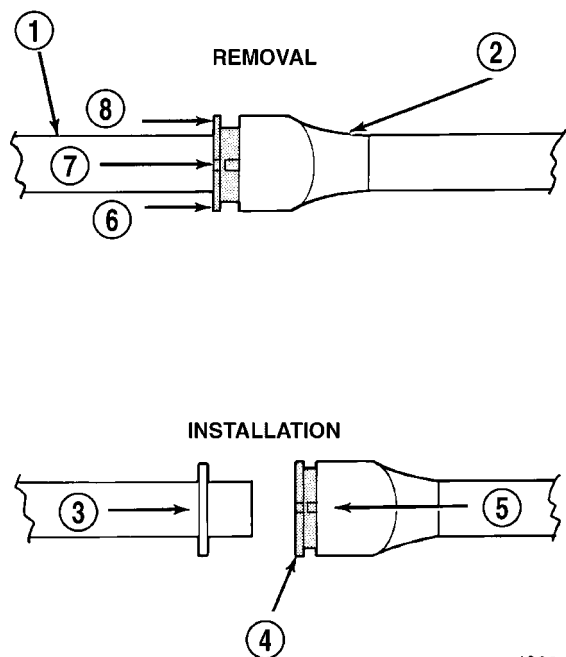
- 1 - TAB(S)
- 2 - QUICK-CONNECT FITTING

(a) To disconnect quick-connect fitting, squeeze plastic retainer tabs (Fig. 36) against sides of quick-connect fitting with your fingers. Tool use is not required for removal and may damage plastic retainer.

(b) Pull fitting from fuel system component being serviced.

(c) The plastic retainer will remain on component being serviced after fitting is disconnected. The o-rings and spacer will remain in quick-connect fitting connector body.

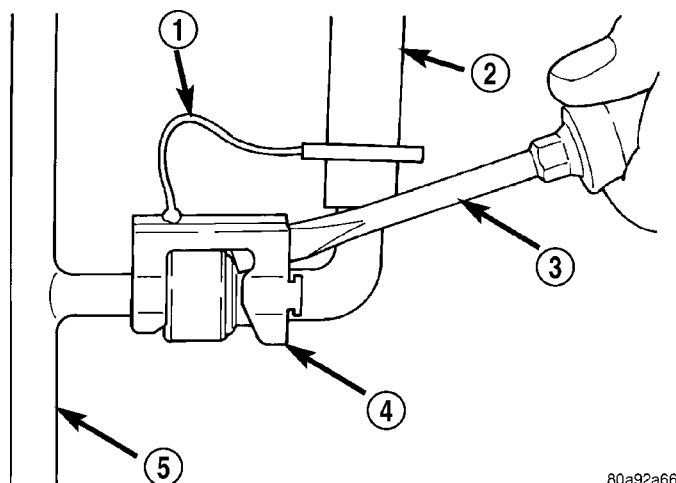
## QUICK CONNECT FITTING (Continued)



J9314-100

**Fig. 37 PLASTIC RETAINER RING TYPE FITTING**

- 1 - FUEL TUBE
- 2 - QUICK CONNECT FITTING
- 3 - PUSH
- 4 - PLASTIC RETAINER
- 5 - PUSH
- 6 - PUSH
- 7 - PUSH
- 8 - PUSH

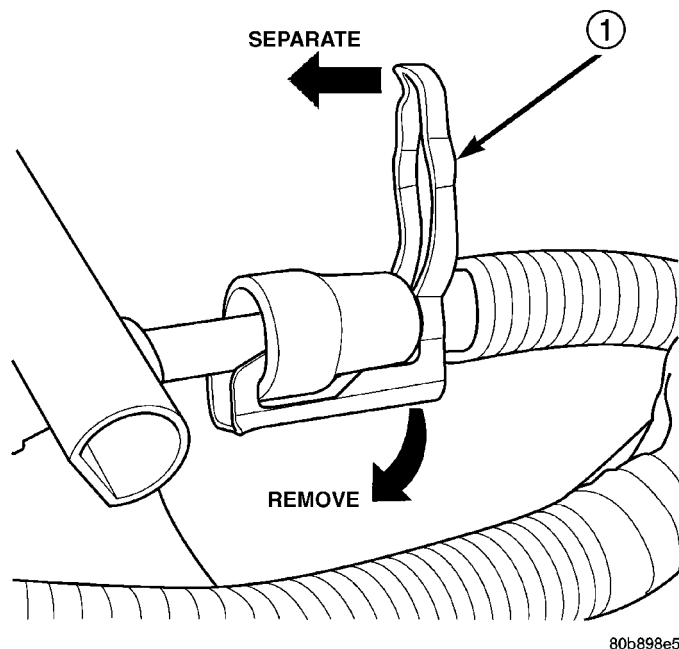


80a92a66

**Fig. 38 LATCH CLIP-TYPE 1**

- 1 - TETHER STRAP
- 2 - FUEL LINE
- 3 - SCREWDRIVER
- 4 - LATCH CLIP
- 5 - FUEL RAIL

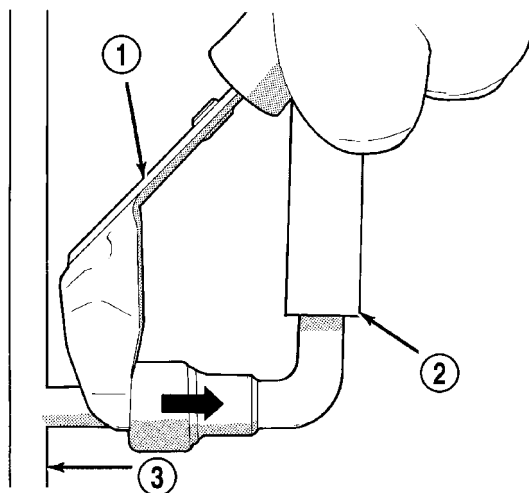
(8) **Plastic Retainer Ring Type Fitting:** This type of fitting can be identified by the use of a full-round plastic retainer ring (Fig. 37) usually black in color.



80b898e5

**Fig. 39 LATCH CLIP-TYPE 2**

- 1 - LATCH CLIP



J9514-6

**Fig. 40 FUEL LINE DISCONNECTION USING SPECIAL TOOL**

- 1 - SPECIAL FUEL LINE TOOL
- 2 - FUEL LINE
- 3 - FUEL RAIL

(a) To release fuel system component from quick-connect fitting, firmly push fitting towards component being serviced while firmly pushing plastic retainer ring into fitting (Fig. 37). With plastic ring depressed, pull fitting from component. **The plastic retainer ring must be pressed squarely into fitting body. If this retainer is cocked during removal, it may be difficult to disconnect fitting. Use an open-end wrench on shoulder of plastic retainer ring to aid in disconnection.**

## QUICK CONNECT FITTING (Continued)

(b) After disconnection, plastic retainer ring will remain with quick-connect fitting connector body.

(c) Inspect fitting connector body, plastic retainer ring and fuel system component for damage. Replace as necessary.

(9) **Latch Clips:** Depending on vehicle model and engine, 2 different types of safety latch clips are used (Fig. 38) or (Fig. 39). Type-1 is tethered to fuel line and type-2 is not. A special tool will be necessary to disconnect fuel line after latch clip is removed. The latch clip may be used on certain fuel line/fuel rail connection, or to join fuel lines together.

(a) Type 1: Pry up on latch clip with a screwdriver (Fig. 38).

(b) Type 2: Separate and unlatch 2 small arms on end of clip (Fig. 39) and swing away from fuel line.

(c) Slide latch clip toward fuel rail while lifting with screwdriver.

(d) Insert special fuel line removal tool (Snap-On number FIH 9055-1 or equivalent) into fuel line (Fig. 40). Use tool to release locking fingers in end of line.

(e) With special tool still inserted, pull fuel line from fuel rail.

(f) After disconnection, locking fingers will remain within quick-connect fitting at end of fuel line.

(10) Disconnect quick-connect fitting from fuel system component being serviced.

## CONNECTING

(1) Inspect quick-connect fitting body and fuel system component for damage. Replace as necessary.

(2) Prior to connecting quick-connect fitting to component being serviced, check condition of fitting and component. Clean parts with a lint-free cloth. Lubricate with clean engine oil.

(3) Insert quick-connect fitting into fuel tube or fuel system component until built-on stop on fuel tube or component rests against back of fitting.

(4) Continue pushing until a click is felt.

(5) Single-tab type fitting: Push new tab down until it locks into place in quick-connect fitting.

(6) Verify a locked condition by firmly pulling on fuel tube and fitting (15-30 lbs.).

(7) Latch Clip Equipped: Install latch clip (snaps into position). **If latch clip will not fit, this indicates fuel line is not properly installed to fuel rail (or other fuel line). Recheck fuel line connection.**

(8) Connect negative cable to battery.

(9) Start engine and check for leaks.

## FUEL INJECTION

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>FUEL INJECTION</b>		<b>MAP SENSOR</b>	
SPECIFICATIONS		DESCRIPTION	
TORQUE - FUEL INJECTION	26	DESCRIPTION	35
<b>ACCELERATOR PEDAL</b>		DESCRIPTION - 4.7L	35
REMOVAL	27	OPERATION	35
INSTALLATION	27	REMOVAL	
<b>CRANKSHAFT POSITION SENSOR</b>		REMOVAL - 4.0L	36
DESCRIPTION		REMOVAL - 4.7L	36
DESCRIPTION - 4.0L	27	INSTALLATION	
DESCRIPTION - 4.7L	28	INSTALLATION - 4.0L	37
OPERATION		INSTALLATION - 4.7L	37
OPERATION - 4.0L	28	<b>O2S HEATER RELAY</b>	
OPERATION - 4.7L	28	DESCRIPTION	37
REMOVAL		OPERATION	37
REMOVAL - 4.0L	28	REMOVAL	37
REMOVAL - 4.7L	29	INSTALLATION	37
INSTALLATION		<b>O2S SENSOR</b>	
INSTALLATION - 4.0L	29	DESCRIPTION	37
INSTALLATION - 4.7L	30	OPERATION	37
<b>FUEL INJECTOR</b>		REMOVAL	38
DESCRIPTION	30	INSTALLATION	39
OPERATION		<b>THROTTLE BODY</b>	
OPERATION	30	DESCRIPTION	41
OPERATION - PCM OUTPUT	31	OPERATION	41
REMOVAL	31	REMOVAL	
INSTALLATION	31	REMOVAL - 4.0L	41
<b>FUEL PUMP RELAY</b>		REMOVAL - 4.7L	42
DESCRIPTION	31	INSTALLATION	
OPERATION	31	INSTALLATION - 4.0L	42
<b>IDLE AIR CONTROL MOTOR</b>		INSTALLATION - 4.7L	42
DESCRIPTION	31	<b>THROTTLE CONTROL CABLE</b>	
OPERATION	32	REMOVAL	
REMOVAL		REMOVAL - 4.0L	43
REMOVAL - 4.0L	32	REMOVAL - 4.7L	43
REMOVAL - 4.7L	33	INSTALLATION	
INSTALLATION		INSTALLATION - 4.0L	44
INSTALLATION - 4.0L	33	INSTALLATION - 4.7L	44
INSTALLATION - 4.7L	33	<b>THROTTLE POSITION SENSOR</b>	
<b>INTAKE AIR TEMPERATURE SENSOR</b>		DESCRIPTION	45
DESCRIPTION	33	OPERATION	45
OPERATION	33	REMOVAL	
REMOVAL		REMOVAL - 4.0L	45
REMOVAL - 4.0L	33	REMOVAL - 4.7L	46
REMOVAL - 4.7L	34	INSTALLATION	
INSTALLATION		INSTALLATION - 4.0L	46
INSTALLATION - 4.0L	35	INSTALLATION - 4.7L	47
INSTALLATION - 4.7L	35		

## FUEL INJECTION

## SPECIFICATIONS

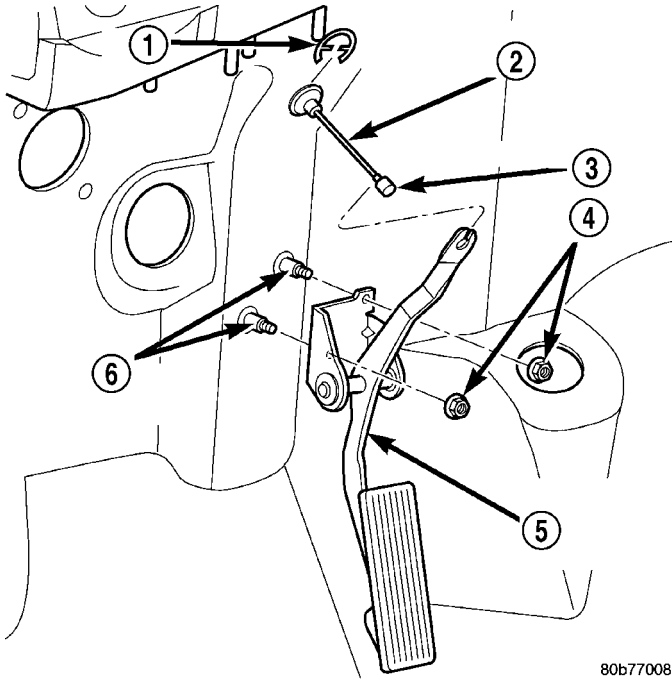
## TORQUE - FUEL INJECTION

DESCRIPTION	N-m	Ft. Lbs.	In. Lbs.
Air Cleaner Housing Mount. Nuts	10	-	93
Air Cleaner Air Duct Clamps	4	-	35
Air Cleaner Resonator Bolts	4	-	35
Engine Coolant Temperature Sensor—4.0L Engine	11	-	96
Engine Coolant Temperature Sensor—4.7L Engine	11	-	96
Fuel Hose Clamps	1	-	10
IAC Motor-To-Throttle Body Bolts—4.0L Engine	7	-	60
IAC Motor-To-Throttle Body Bolts—4.7L Engine	7	-	60
Intake Manifold Air Temp. Sensor—4.0L Engine	28	20	-
Intake Manifold Air Temp. Sensor—4.7L Engine	28	20	-
MAP Sensor Mounting Screws—4.0L Engine	3	-	25
MAP Sensor Mounting Screws—4.7L Engine	3	-	25
Oxygen Sensor—All Engines	30	22	-
PCM-to-Mounting Bracket Screws	3	-	25
PCM-to-Mounting Bracket Screws	9	-	80
Radiator Cooling Fan Relay Bolts	3	-	25
Throttle Body Mounting Bolts—4.0L Engine	11	-	100
Throttle Body Mounting Bolts—4.7L Engine	12	-	105
TPS Mounting Screws—4.0L Engine	7	-	60
TPS Mounting Screws—4.7L Engine	7	-	60

## ACCELERATOR PEDAL

### REMOVAL

The accelerator pedal is connected to the throttle body linkage by the throttle cable. The cable is protected by a plastic sheathing and is connected to the throttle body linkage by a ball socket. It is connected to the accelerator pedal arm by a plastic retainer (clip) (Fig. 1). This retainer (clip) snaps into the top of the accelerator pedal arm. A retainer clip (Fig. 1) is also used to fasten cable to dash panel.



80b77008

**Fig. 1 Accelerator Pedal Mounting**

- 1 - CLIP
- 2 - ACCELERATOR CABLE
- 3 - CABLE CONNECTOR
- 4 - MOUNTING NUTS (2)
- 5 - PEDAL/BRAKET ASSEMBLY
- 6 - MOUNTING STUDS (2)

**CAUTION:** Be careful not to damage or kink the cable core wire (within the cable sheathing) while servicing accelerator pedal or throttle cable.

(1) From inside vehicle, hold up accelerator pedal. Remove plastic cable retainer (clip) and throttle cable core wire from upper end of pedal arm. Plastic cable retainer (clip) snaps into pedal arm.

(2) Remove accelerator pedal bracket nuts. Remove accelerator pedal assembly.

### INSTALLATION

The accelerator pedal is connected to the throttle body linkage by the throttle cable. The cable is protected by a plastic sheathing and is connected to the throttle body linkage by a ball socket. It is connected to the accelerator pedal arm by a plastic retainer (clip) (Fig. 1). This retainer (clip) snaps into the top of the accelerator pedal arm. A retainer clip (Fig. 1) is also used to fasten cable to dash panel.

(1) Place accelerator pedal assembly over studs protruding from floor pan. Tighten mounting nuts to  $12 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m} \pm 2 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$  (105 in. lbs.  $\pm$  20 in. lbs.) torque.

(2) Slide throttle cable into opening in top of pedal arm. Push plastic cable retainer (clip) into pedal arm opening until it snaps into place.

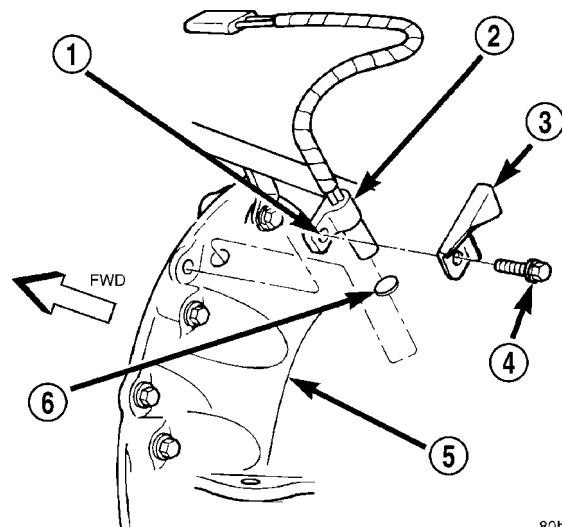
(3) Before starting engine, operate accelerator pedal to check for any binding.

## CRANKSHAFT POSITION SENSOR

### DESCRIPTION

#### DESCRIPTION - 4.0L

The Crankshaft Position Sensor (CKP) is mounted to the transmission bellhousing at the left/rear side of the engine block (Fig. 2).



80b89904

**Fig. 2 CKP Sensor Location—4.0L 6-Cyl. Engine**

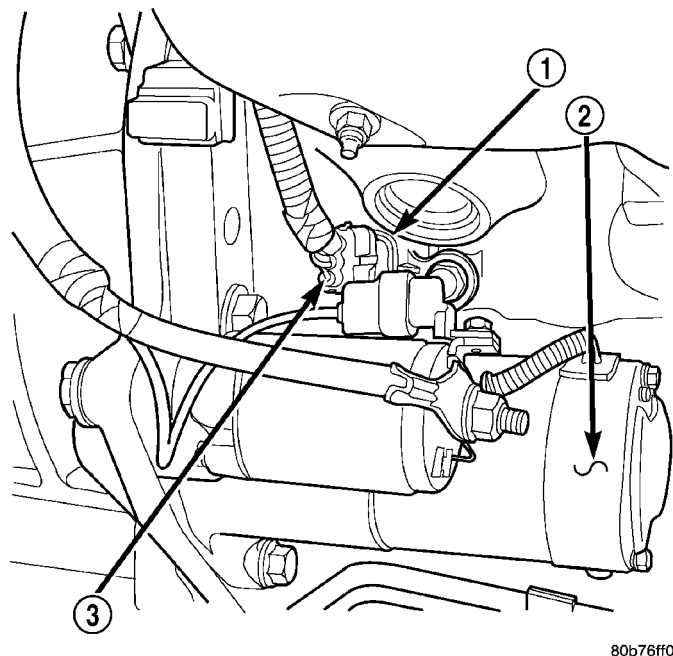
- 1 - SLOTTED HOLE
- 2 - CRANKSHAFT POSITION SENSOR
- 3 - WIRE SHIELD
- 4 - MOUNTING BOLT
- 5 - TRANSMISSION HOUSING
- 6 - PAPER SPACER



## CRANKSHAFT POSITION SENSOR (Continued)

## DESCRIPTION - 4.7L

The Crankshaft Position Sensor (CKP) is mounted into the engine block above the starter motor (Fig. 3).



**Fig. 3 CKP Sensor Location—4.7L V-8 Engine**

- 1 - CRANKSHAFT POSITION SENSOR
- 2 - STARTER
- 3 - ELEC. CONNECTOR

## OPERATION

## OPERATION - 4.0L

Engine speed and crankshaft position are provided through the crankshaft position sensor. The sensor generates pulses that are the input sent to the powertrain control module (PCM). The PCM interprets the sensor input to determine the crankshaft position. The PCM then uses this position, along with other inputs, to determine injector sequence and ignition timing.

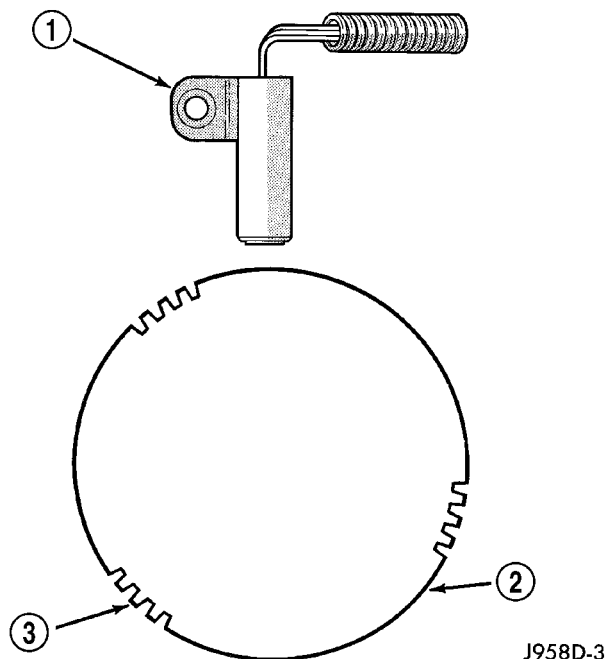
The sensor is a hall effect device combined with an internal magnet. It is also sensitive to steel within a certain distance from it.

On 4.0L 6-cylinder engines, the flywheel/drive plate has 3 sets of four notches at its outer edge (Fig. 4).

The notches cause a pulse to be generated when they pass under the sensor. The pulses are the input to the PCM. For each engine revolution there are 3 sets of four pulses generated.

The trailing edge of the fourth notch, which causes the pulse, is four degrees before top dead center (TDC) of the corresponding piston.

The engine will not operate if the PCM does not receive a crankshaft position sensor input.



**Fig. 4 CKP Sensor Operation—4.0L 6-Cyl. Engine**

- 1 - CRANKSHAFT POSITION SENSOR
- 2 - FLYWHEEL
- 3 - FLYWHEEL NOTCHES

## OPERATION - 4.7L

Engine speed and crankshaft position are provided through the crankshaft position sensor. The sensor generates pulses that are the input sent to the powertrain control module (PCM). The PCM interprets the sensor input to determine the crankshaft position. The PCM then uses this position, along with other inputs, to determine injector sequence and ignition timing.

The sensor is a hall effect device combined with an internal magnet. It is also sensitive to steel within a certain distance from it.

On the 4.7L V-8 engine, a tonewheel is bolted to the engine crankshaft (Fig. 5). This tonewheel has sets of notches at its outer edge (Fig. 5).

The notches cause a pulse to be generated when they pass under the sensor. The pulses are the input to the PCM.

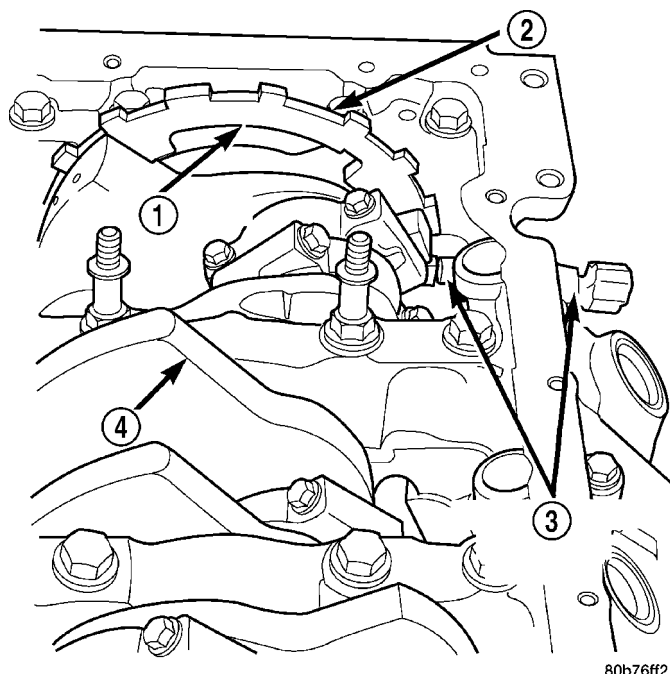
## REMOVAL

## REMOVAL - 4.0L

The Crankshaft Position (CKP) sensor is mounted to the transmission bellhousing at the left/rear side of the engine block (Fig. 6). The sensor is **adjustable** and is attached with one bolt. A wire shield/router is attached to the sensor (Fig. 6).

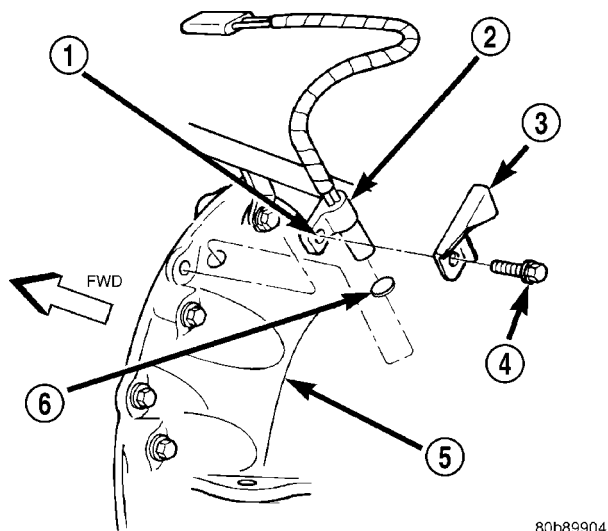
(1) Disconnect sensor pigtail harness (3-way connector) from main engine wiring harness.

## CRANKSHAFT POSITION SENSOR (Continued)



**Fig. 5 CKP Sensor Operation and Tonewheel—4.7L V-8 Engine**

- 1 - TONEWHEEL
- 2 - NOTCHES
- 3 - CRANKSHAFT POSITION SENSOR
- 4 - CRANKSHAFT



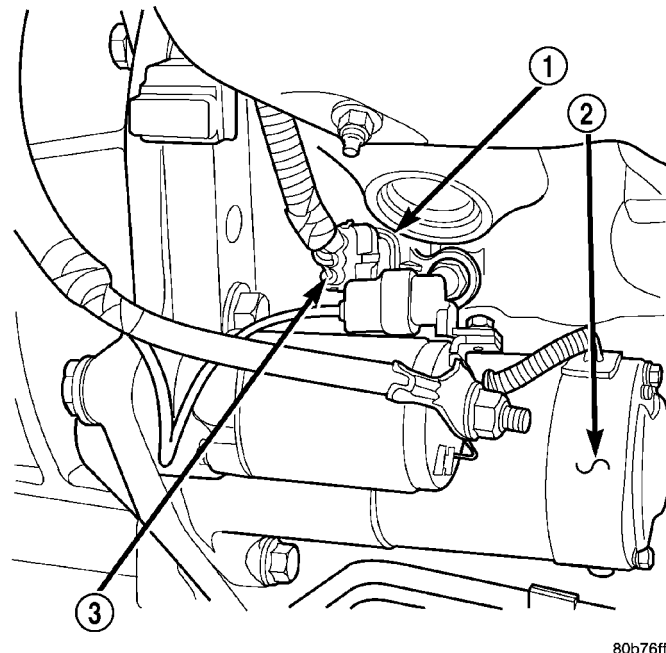
**Fig. 6 CKP Sensor—4.0L 6-Cylinder Engine**

- 1 - SLOTTED HOLE
- 2 - CRANKSHAFT POSITION SENSOR
- 3 - WIRE SHIELD
- 4 - MOUNTING BOLT
- 5 - TRANSMISSION HOUSING
- 6 - PAPER SPACER

- (2) Remove sensor mounting bolt.
- (3) Remove wire shield and sensor.

## REMOVAL - 4.7L

The Crankshaft Position (CKP) sensor is bolted to the side of the engine cylinder block above the starter motor (Fig. 7). It is positioned into a machined hole at the side of the engine block.



**Fig. 7 CKP Sensor Location—4.7L V-8 Engine**

- 1 - CRANKSHAFT POSITION SENSOR
- 2 - STARTER
- 3 - ELEC. CONNECTOR

- (1) Remove starter motor. Refer to Starter Removal/Installation.
- (2) Disconnect CKP electrical connector at sensor (Fig. 7).
- (3) Remove CKP mounting bolt (Fig. 8).
- (4) Carefully twist sensor from cylinder block.
- (5) Remove sensor from vehicle.
- (6) Check condition of sensor o-ring.

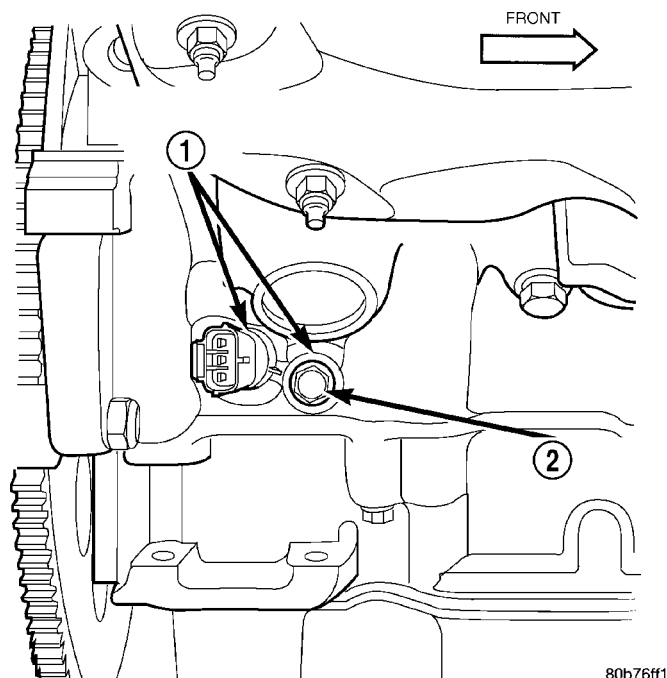
## INSTALLATION

## INSTALLATION - 4.0L

The Crankshaft Position (CKP) sensor is mounted to the transmission bellhousing at the left/rear side of the engine block (Fig. 6). The sensor is **adjustable** and is attached with one bolt. A wire shield/router is attached to the sensor (Fig. 6).

New replacement sensors will be equipped with a paper spacer glued to bottom of sensor. If installing (returning) a **used** sensor to vehicle, a new paper spacer must be installed to bottom of sensor. This spacer will be ground off the first time engine is started. If spacer is not used, sensor will be broken the first time engine is started.

## CRANKSHAFT POSITION SENSOR (Continued)



**Fig. 8 CKP Sensor Removal/Installation—4.7L V-8 Engine**

- 1 - CRANKSHAFT POSITION SENSOR  
2 - MOUNTING BOLT

(1) New Sensors: Be sure paper spacer is installed to bottom of sensor. If not, obtain spacer PN05252229.

(2) Used Sensors: Clean bottom of sensor and install spacer PN05252229.

(3) Install sensor into transmission bellhousing hole.

(4) Position sensor wire shield to sensor (Fig. 6).

(5) Push sensor against flywheel/drive plate. With sensor pushed against flywheel/drive plate, tighten mounting bolt to 7 N·m (60 in. lbs.) torque.

(6) Route sensor wiring harness into wire shield.

(7) Connect sensor pigtail harness electrical connector to main wiring harness.

### INSTALLATION - 4.7L

(1) Clean out machined hole in engine block.

(2) Apply a small amount of engine oil to sensor o-ring.

(3) Install sensor into engine block with a slight rocking action. Do not twist sensor into position as damage to o-ring may result.

**CAUTION:** Before tightening sensor mounting bolt, be sure sensor is completely flush to cylinder block. If sensor is not flush, damage to sensor mounting tang may result.

(4) Install mounting bolt and tighten to 28 N·m (21 ft. lbs.) torque.

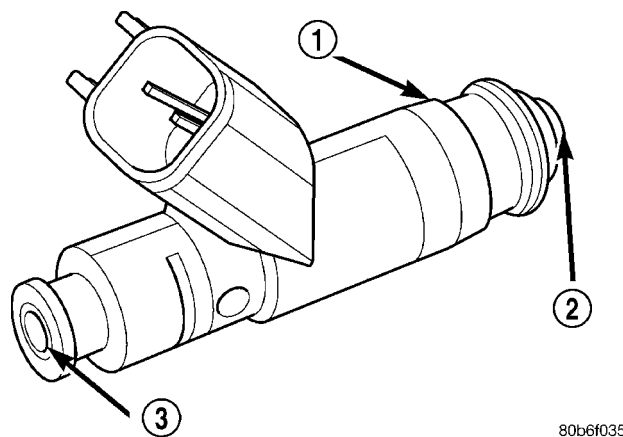
(5) Connect electrical connector to sensor.

(6) Install starter motor. Refer to Starter Removal/Installation.

## FUEL INJECTOR

### DESCRIPTION

A separate fuel injector (Fig. 9) is used for each individual cylinder.



**Fig. 9 Fuel Injector—4.0L/4.7L Engines**

- 1 - FUEL INJECTOR  
2 - NOZZLE  
3 - TOP (FUEL ENTRY)

### OPERATION

#### OPERATION

The fuel injectors are electrical solenoids. The injector contains a pintle that closes off an orifice at the nozzle end. When electric current is supplied to the injector, the armature and needle move a short distance against a spring, allowing fuel to flow out the orifice. Because the fuel is under high pressure, a fine spray is developed in the shape of a pencil stream. The spraying action atomizes the fuel, adding it to the air entering the combustion chamber.

The top (fuel entry) end of the injector (Fig. 9) is attached into an opening on the fuel rail.

The nozzle (outlet) ends of the injectors are positioned into openings in the intake manifold just above the intake valve ports of the cylinder head. The engine wiring harness connector for each fuel injector is equipped with an attached numerical tag (INJ 1, INJ 2 etc.). This is used to identify each fuel injector.

The injectors are electrically energized, individually and in a sequential order by the Powertrain Control Module (PCM). The PCM will adjust injector pulse width by switching the ground path to each individual injector on and off. Injector pulse width is the period of time that the injector is energized. The

## FUEL INJECTOR (Continued)

PCM will adjust injector pulse width based on various inputs it receives.

Battery voltage is supplied to the injectors through the ASD relay.

The PCM determines injector pulse width based on various inputs.

## OPERATION - PCM OUTPUT

The nozzle ends of the injectors are positioned into openings in the intake manifold just above the intake valve ports of the cylinder head. The engine wiring harness connector for each fuel injector is equipped with an attached numerical tag (INJ 1, INJ 2 etc.). This is used to identify each fuel injector with its respective cylinder number.

The injectors are energized individually in a sequential order by the Powertrain Control Module (PCM). The PCM will adjust injector pulse width by switching the ground path to each individual injector on and off. Injector pulse width is the period of time that the injector is energized. The PCM will adjust injector pulse width based on various inputs it receives.

Battery voltage (12 volts +) is supplied to the injectors through the ASD relay. The ASD relay will shut-down the 12 volt power source to the fuel injectors if the PCM senses the ignition is on, but the engine is not running. This occurs after the engine has not been running for approximately 1.8 seconds.

The PCM determines injector on-time (pulse width) based on various inputs.

## REMOVAL

**WARNING: THE FUEL SYSTEM IS UNDER CONSTANT PRESSURE EVEN WITH ENGINE OFF. BEFORE SERVICING FUEL INJECTOR(S), FUEL SYSTEM PRESSURE MUST BE RELEASED.**

To remove one or more fuel injectors, the fuel rail assembly must be removed from engine.

(1) Perform Fuel System Pressure Release Procedure.

(2) Remove fuel injector rail. Refer to Fuel Injector Rail Removal/Installation.

(3) Remove clip(s) retaining injector(s) to fuel rail (Fig. 10).

(4) Remove injector(s) from fuel rail.

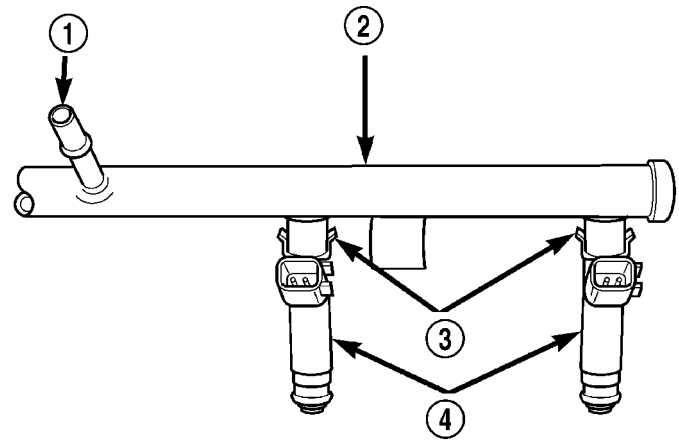
## INSTALLATION

(1) Apply a small amount of engine oil to each fuel injector o-ring. This will help in fuel rail installation.

(2) Install injector(s) and injector clip(s) to fuel rail.

(3) Install fuel rail assembly. Refer to Fuel Injector Rail Removal/Installation.

(4) Start engine and check for leaks.



80b898e8

**Fig. 10 Fuel Injector Mounting—Typical (4.7L V-8 Engine Shown)**

- 1 - INLET FITTING
- 2 - FUEL INJECTOR RAIL
- 3 - CLIP
- 4 - FUEL INJECTOR

## FUEL PUMP RELAY

### DESCRIPTION

The 5-pin, 12-volt, fuel pump relay is located in the Power Distribution Center (PDC). Refer to the label on the PDC cover for relay location.

### OPERATION

The Powertrain Control Module (PCM) energizes the electric fuel pump through the fuel pump relay. The fuel pump relay is energized by first applying battery voltage to it when the ignition key is turned ON, and then applying a ground signal to the relay from the PCM.

Whenever the ignition key is turned ON, the electric fuel pump will operate. But, the PCM will shut-down the ground circuit to the fuel pump relay in approximately 1–3 seconds unless the engine is operating or the starter motor is engaged.

## IDLE AIR CONTROL MOTOR

### DESCRIPTION

The IAC stepper motor is mounted to the throttle body, and regulates the amount of air bypassing the control of the throttle plate. As engine loads and ambient temperatures change, engine rpm changes. A pintle on the IAC stepper motor protrudes into a passage in the throttle body, controlling air flow through the passage. The IAC is controlled by the Powertrain Control Module (PCM) to maintain the target engine idle speed.



## IDLE AIR CONTROL MOTOR (Continued)

## OPERATION

At idle, engine speed can be increased by retracting the IAC motor pintle and allowing more air to pass through the port, or it can be decreased by restricting the passage with the pintle and diminishing the amount of air bypassing the throttle plate.

The IAC is called a stepper motor because it is moved (rotated) in steps, or increments. Opening the IAC opens an air passage around the throttle blade which increases RPM.

The PCM uses the IAC motor to control idle speed (along with timing) and to reach a desired MAP during decel (keep engine from stalling).

The IAC motor has 4 wires with 4 circuits. Two of the wires are for 12 volts and ground to supply electrical current to the motor windings to operate the stepper motor in one direction. The other 2 wires are also for 12 volts and ground to supply electrical current to operate the stepper motor in the opposite direction.

To make the IAC go in the opposite direction, the PCM just reverses polarity on both windings. If only 1 wire is open, the IAC can only be moved 1 step (increment) in either direction. To keep the IAC motor in position when no movement is needed, the PCM will energize both windings at the same time. This locks the IAC motor in place.

In the IAC motor system, the PCM will count every step that the motor is moved. This allows the PCM to determine the motor pintle position. If the memory is cleared, the PCM no longer knows the position of the pintle. So at the first key ON, the PCM drives the IAC motor closed, regardless of where it was before. This zeros the counter. From this point the PCM will back out the IAC motor and keep track of its position again.

When engine rpm is above idle speed, the IAC is used for the following:

- Off-idle dashpot (throttle blade will close quickly but idle speed will not stop quickly)
- Deceleration air flow control
- A/C compressor load control (also opens the passage slightly before the compressor is engaged so that the engine rpm does not dip down when the compressor engages)
- Power steering load control

The PCM can control polarity of the circuit to control direction of the stepper motor.

**IAC Stepper Motor Program:** The PCM is also equipped with a memory program that records the number of steps the IAC stepper motor most recently advanced to during a certain set of parameters. For example: The PCM was attempting to maintain a 1000 rpm target during a cold start-up cycle. The last recorded number of steps for that may have been 125. That value would be recorded in the memory

cell so that the next time the PCM recognizes the identical conditions, the PCM recalls that 125 steps were required to maintain the target. This program allows for greater customer satisfaction due to greater control of engine idle.

Another function of the memory program, which occurs when the power steering switch (if equipped), or the A/C request circuit, requires that the IAC stepper motor control engine rpm, is the recording of the last targeted steps into the memory cell. The PCM can anticipate A/C compressor loads. This is accomplished by delaying compressor operation for approximately 0.5 seconds until the PCM moves the IAC stepper motor to the recorded steps that were loaded into the memory cell. Using this program helps eliminate idle-quality changes as loads change. Finally, the PCM incorporates a "No-Load" engine speed limiter of approximately 1800 - 2000 rpm, when it recognizes that the TPS is indicating an idle signal and IAC motor cannot maintain engine idle.

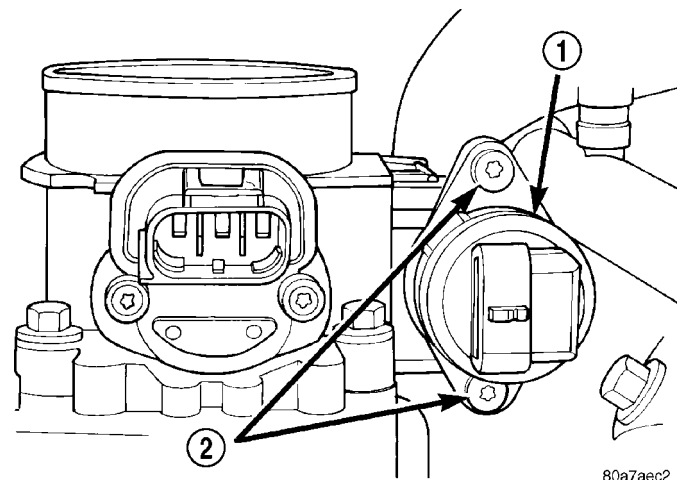
A (factory adjusted) set screw is used to mechanically limit the position of the throttle body throttle plate. **Never attempt to adjust the engine idle speed using this screw.** All idle speed functions are controlled by the IAC motor through the PCM.

## REMOVAL

## REMOVAL - 4.0L

The IAC motor is located on the throttle body.

- (1) Remove air duct and air resonator box at throttle body.
- (2) Disconnect electrical connector from IAC motor (Fig. 25).
- (3) Remove two mounting bolts (screws) (Fig. 11).
- (4) Remove IAC motor from throttle body.



**Fig. 11 Mounting Bolts (Screws)—IAC**

- 1 - IDLE AIR CONTROL MOTOR  
2 - MOUNTING SCREWS

## IDLE AIR CONTROL MOTOR (Continued)

**REMOVAL - 4.7L**

- (1) Remove air duct and air resonator box at throttle body.
- (2) Disconnect electrical connector from IAC motor (Fig. 21).
- (3) Remove two mounting bolts (screws) (Fig. 27).
- (4) Remove IAC motor from throttle body.

**INSTALLATION****INSTALLATION - 4.0L**

The IAC motor is located on the throttle body.

- (1) Install IAC motor to throttle body.
- (2) Install and tighten two mounting bolts (screws) to 7 N·m (60 in. lbs.) torque.
- (3) Install electrical connector.
- (4) Install air cleaner duct/air box to throttle body.

**INSTALLATION - 4.7L**

- (1) Install IAC motor to throttle body.
- (2) Install and tighten two mounting bolts (screws) to 7 N·m (60 in. lbs.) torque.
- (3) Install electrical connector.
- (4) Install air duct/air box to throttle body.

**INTAKE AIR TEMPERATURE SENSOR****DESCRIPTION**

The 2-wire Intake Manifold Air Temperature (IAT) sensor is installed in the intake manifold with the sensor element extending into the air stream.

The IAT sensor is a two-wire Negative Thermal Coefficient (NTC) sensor. Meaning, as intake manifold temperature increases, resistance (voltage) in the sensor decreases. As temperature decreases, resistance (voltage) in the sensor increases.

**OPERATION**

The IAT sensor provides an input voltage to the Powertrain Control Module (PCM) indicating the density of the air entering the intake manifold based upon intake manifold temperature. At key-on, a 5-volt power circuit is supplied to the sensor from the PCM. The sensor is grounded at the PCM through a low-noise, sensor-return circuit.

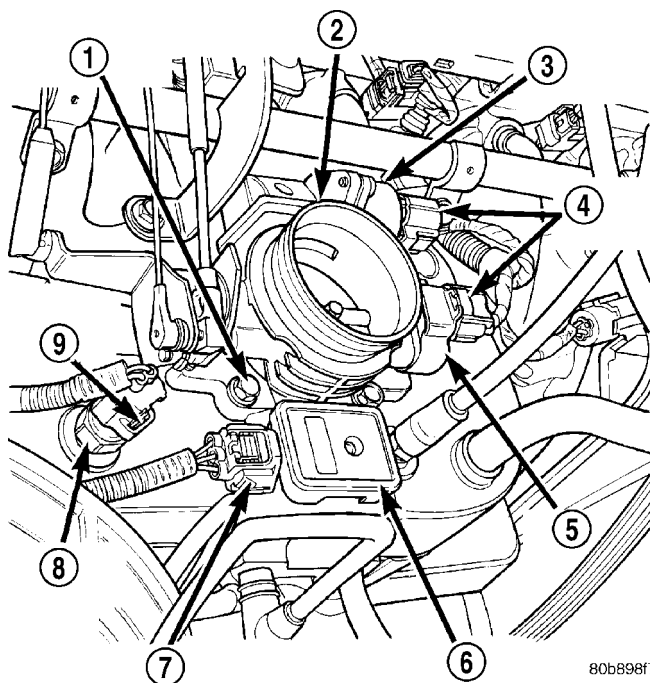
The PCM uses this input to calculate the following:

- Injector pulse-width
- Adjustment of spark timing (to help prevent spark knock with high intake manifold air-charge temperatures)

The resistance values of the IAT sensor is the same as for the Engine Coolant Temperature (ECT) sensor.

**REMOVAL****REMOVAL - 4.0L**

The Intake Manifold Air Temperature (IAT) sensor is installed into the intake manifold plenum near the front of the throttle body (Fig. 12).



**Fig. 12 Intake Manifold Air Sensor Location—4.0L Engine**

- 1 - MOUNTING BOLTS (4)
- 2 - THROTTLE BODY
- 3 - IAC MOTOR
- 4 - ELEC. CONN.
- 5 - TPS
- 6 - MAP SENSOR
- 7 - ELEC. CONN.
- 8 - IAT SENSOR
- 9 - ELEC. CONN.

- (1) Disconnect electrical connector from sensor.
- (2) Remove sensor from intake manifold.

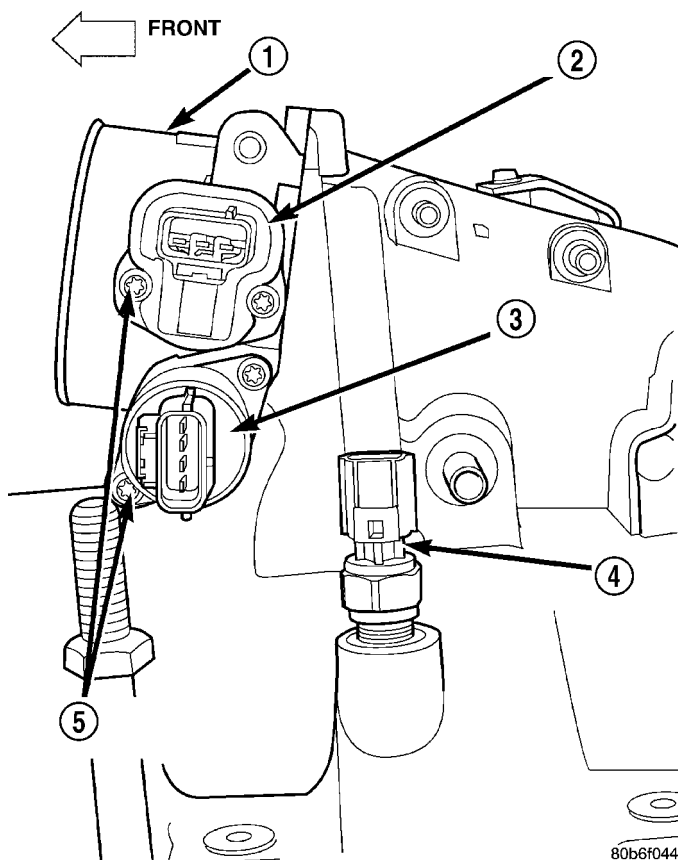
## INTAKE AIR TEMPERATURE SENSOR (Continued)

## REMOVAL - 4.7L

The Intake Manifold Air Temperature (IAT) sensor is located on the left side of the intake manifold.

## Threaded Type Sensor

- (1) Disconnect electrical connector from sensor.
- (2) Remove sensor from intake manifold (Fig. 13).

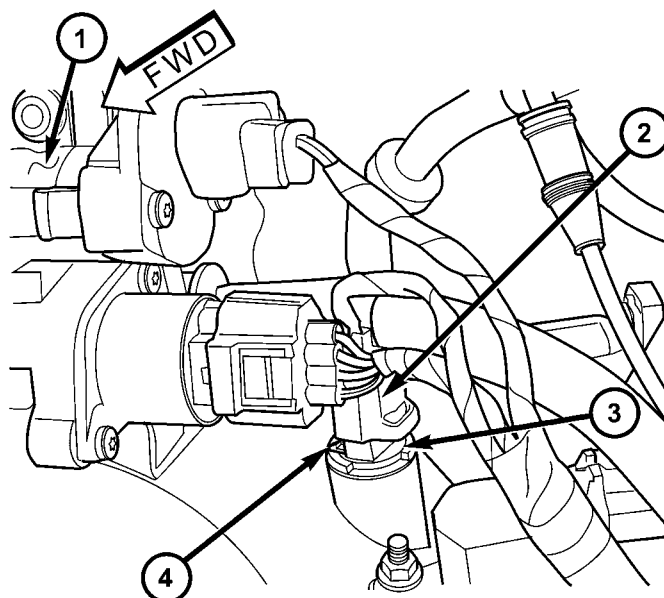


**Fig. 13 IAT - 4.7L (THREADED TYPE)**

- 1 - THROTTLE BODY
- 2 - TPS
- 3 - IAC MOTOR
- 4 - IAT SENSOR (THREADED TYPE)
- 5 - MOUNTING SCREWS

## Snap-In Type Sensor

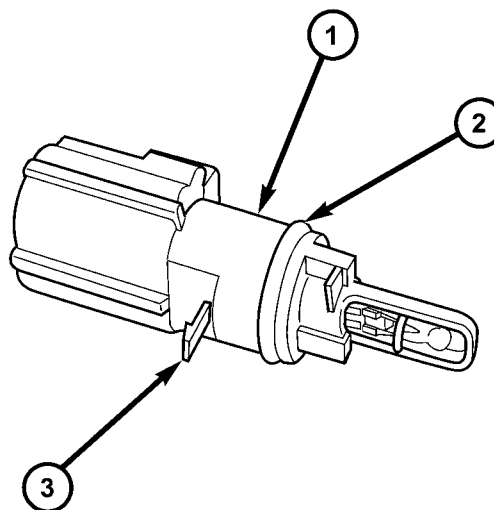
- (1) Disconnect electrical connector from IAT sensor.
- (2) Clean dirt from intake manifold at sensor base.
- (3) Gently lift on small plastic release tab (Fig. 15) or (Fig. 14) and rotate sensor about 1/4 turn counter-clockwise for removal.
- (4) Check condition of sensor o-ring.



80d3cd8e

**Fig. 14 IAT SENSOR - 4.7L (SNAP-IN TYPE)**

- 1 - LEFT SIDE OF THROTTLE BODY
- 2 - ELEC. CONNECT.
- 3 - IAT SENSOR
- 4 - RELEASE TAB



80c9e002

**Fig. 15 IAT SENSOR TAB / O-RING - 4.7L (SNAP-IN TYPE)**

- 1 - IAT SENSOR
- 2 - SENSOR O-RING
- 3 - RELEASE TAB



## INTAKE AIR TEMPERATURE SENSOR (Continued)

### INSTALLATION

#### INSTALLATION - 4.0L

The Intake Manifold Air Temperature (IAT) sensor is installed into the intake manifold plenum near the front of the throttle body (Fig. 12).

- (1) Install sensor into intake manifold. Tighten sensor to 28 N·m (20 ft. lbs.) torque.
- (2) Connect electrical connector to sensor.

#### INSTALLATION - 4.7L

##### Threaded Type Sensor

- (1) Install sensor (Fig. 13) into intake manifold. Tighten sensor to 28 N·m (20 ft. lbs.) torque.
- (2) Connect electrical connector to sensor.

##### Snap-In Type Sensor

- (1) Check condition of sensor o-ring (Fig. 15).
- (2) Clean sensor mounting hole in intake manifold.
- (3) Position sensor (Fig. 14) into intake manifold and rotate clockwise until past release tab.
- (4) Install electrical connector.

## MAP SENSOR

### DESCRIPTION

#### DESCRIPTION

On the 4.0L six-cylinder engine the MAP sensor is mounted to the engine throttle body. On the 4.7L V-8 engine the MAP sensor is mounted to front of the intake manifold.

#### DESCRIPTION - 4.7L

The MAP sensor is located on the front of the intake manifold. An o-ring seals the sensor to the intake manifold.

### OPERATION

The MAP sensor is used as an input to the Powertrain Control Module (PCM). It contains a silicon based sensing unit to provide data on the manifold vacuum that draws the air/fuel mixture into the combustion chamber. The PCM requires this information to determine injector pulse width and spark advance. When manifold absolute pressure (MAP) equals Barometric pressure, the pulse width will be at maximum.

A 5 volt reference is supplied from the PCM and returns a voltage signal to the PCM that reflects manifold pressure. The zero pressure reading is 0.5V and full scale is 4.5V. For a pressure swing of 0–15 psi, the voltage changes 4.0V. To operate the sensor,

it is supplied a regulated 4.8 to 5.1 volts. Ground is provided through the low-noise, sensor return circuit at the PCM.

The MAP sensor input is the number one contributor to fuel injector pulse width. The most important function of the MAP sensor is to determine barometric pressure. The PCM needs to know if the vehicle is at sea level or at a higher altitude, because the air density changes with altitude. It will also help to correct for varying barometric pressure. Barometric pressure and altitude have a direct inverse correlation; as altitude goes up, barometric goes down. At key-on, the PCM powers up and looks at MAP voltage, and based upon the voltage it sees, it knows the current barometric pressure (relative to altitude). Once the engine starts, the PCM looks at the voltage again, continuously every 12 milliseconds, and compares the current voltage to what it was at key-on. The difference between current voltage and what it was at key-on, is manifold vacuum.

During key-on (engine not running) the sensor reads (updates) barometric pressure. A normal range can be obtained by monitoring a known good sensor.

As the altitude increases, the air becomes thinner (less oxygen). If a vehicle is started and driven to a very different altitude than where it was at key-on, the barometric pressure needs to be updated. Any time the PCM sees Wide Open Throttle (WOT), based upon Throttle Position Sensor (TPS) angle and RPM, it will update barometric pressure in the MAP memory cell. With periodic updates, the PCM can make its calculations more effectively.

The PCM uses the MAP sensor input to aid in calculating the following:

- Manifold pressure
- Barometric pressure
- Engine load
- Injector pulse-width
- Spark-advance programs
- Shift-point strategies (certain automatic transmissions only)
- Idle speed
- Decel fuel shutoff

The MAP sensor signal is provided from a single piezoresistive element located in the center of a diaphragm. The element and diaphragm are both made of silicone. As manifold pressure changes, the diaphragm moves causing the element to deflect, which stresses the silicone. When silicone is exposed to stress, its resistance changes. As manifold vacuum increases, the MAP sensor input voltage decreases proportionally. The sensor also contains electronics that condition the signal and provide temperature compensation.

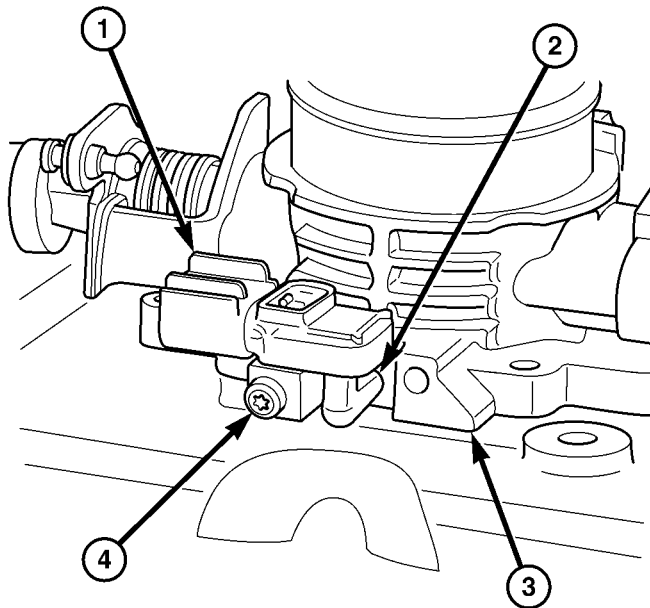
## MAP SENSOR (Continued)

The PCM recognizes a decrease in manifold pressure by monitoring a decrease in voltage from the reading stored in the barometric pressure memory cell. The MAP sensor is a linear sensor; meaning as pressure changes, voltage changes proportionately. The range of voltage output from the sensor is usually between 4.6 volts at sea level to as low as 0.3 volts at 26 in. of Hg. Barometric pressure is the pressure exerted by the atmosphere upon an object. At sea level on a standard day, no storm, barometric pressure is approximately 29.92 in Hg. For every 100 feet of altitude, barometric pressure drops .10 in. Hg. If a storm goes through it can change barometric pressure from what should be present for that altitude. You should know what the average pressure and corresponding barometric pressure is for your area.

## REMOVAL

## REMOVAL - 4.0L

The MAP sensor is mounted to the side of the throttle body (Fig. 16). An L-shaped rubber fitting is used to connect the MAP sensor to throttle body (Fig. 16).



8105d0ba

**Fig. 16 4.0L MAP SENSOR MOUNTING**

- 1 - MAP SENSOR
- 2 - RUBBER FITTING
- 3 - THROTTLE BODY
- 4 - MOUNTING SCREW (1)

(1) Remove air cleaner duct and air resonator box at throttle body.

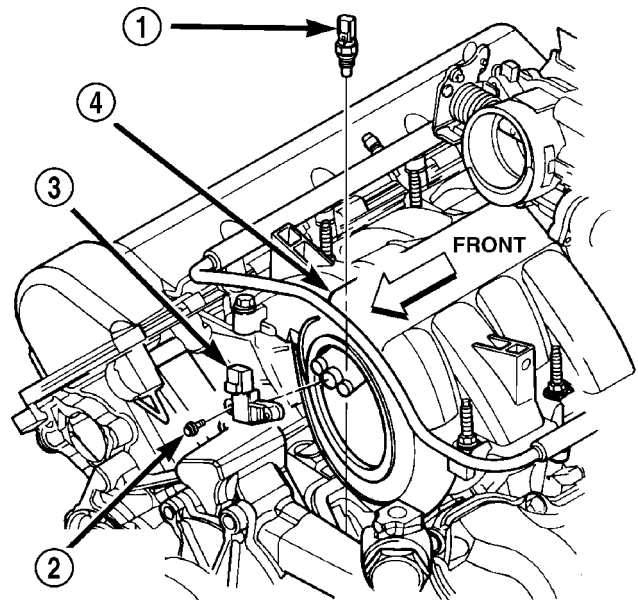
(2) Remove MAP sensor mounting bolt (screw) (Fig. 16).

(3) While removing MAP sensor, slide the rubber L-shaped fitting (Fig. 16) from the throttle body.

(4) Remove rubber L-shaped fitting from MAP sensor.

## REMOVAL - 4.7L

The MAP sensor is located on the front of the intake manifold (Fig. 17). An o-ring seals the sensor to the intake manifold.



80b698f8

**Fig. 17 MAP and ECT Sensor Locations—4.7L V-8 Engine**

- 1 - ECT SENSOR
- 2 - MOUNTING BOLTS (2)
- 3 - MAP SENSOR
- 4 - INTAKE MANIFOLD

- (1) Disconnect electrical connector at sensor.
- (2) Clean area around MAP sensor.
- (3) Remove 2 sensor mounting bolts (Fig. 17).
- (4) Remove MAP sensor from intake manifold.

## MAP SENSOR (Continued)

## INSTALLATION

## INSTALLATION - 4.0L

The MAP sensor is mounted to the side of the throttle body. An L-shaped rubber fitting is used to connect the MAP sensor to throttle body (Fig. 16).

- (1) Install rubber L-shaped fitting to MAP sensor.
- (2) Position sensor to throttle body while guiding rubber fitting over throttle body vacuum nipple.
- (3) Install MAP sensor mounting bolt (screw). Tighten screw to 3 N·m (25 in. lbs.) torque.
- (4) Install air cleaner duct/air box.

## INSTALLATION - 4.7L

The MAP sensor is located on the front of the intake manifold (Fig. 17). An o-ring seals the sensor to the intake manifold.

- (1) Clean MAP sensor mounting hole at intake manifold.
- (2) Check MAP sensor o-ring seal for cuts or tears.
- (3) Position sensor into manifold.
- (4) Install MAP sensor mounting bolts (screws). Tighten screws to 3 N·m (25 in. lbs.) torque.
- (5) Connect electrical connector.

## O2S HEATER RELAY

## DESCRIPTION

The 2 oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) sensor heater relays (upstream and downstream) are located in the Powertrain Distribution Center (PDC).

## OPERATION

Engines equipped with the California (NAE) Emissions Package use **four O<sub>2</sub> sensors**.

Two of the four sensor heater elements (upstream sensors 1/1 and 2/1) are controlled by the upstream heater relay through output signals from the Powertrain Control Module (PCM).

The other two heater elements (downstream sensors 1/2 and 2/2) are controlled by the downstream heater relay through output signals from the PCM.

To avoid a large simultaneous current surge, power is delayed to the 2 downstream heater elements by the PCM for approximately 2 seconds.

## REMOVAL

- (1) Remove PDC cover.
- (2) Remove relay from PDC.
- (3) Check condition of relay terminals and PDC connector terminals for damage or corrosion. Repair if necessary before installing relay.
- (4) Check for pin height (pin height should be the same for all terminals within the PDC connector). Repair if necessary before installing relay.

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Install relay to PDC.
- (2) Install cover to PDC.

## O2S SENSOR

## DESCRIPTION

The Oxygen Sensors (O<sub>2</sub>S) are attached to, and protrude into the vehicle exhaust system. Depending on the emission package, the vehicle may use a total of either 2 or 4 sensors.

**Federal Emissions Package:** Two sensors are used: upstream (referred to as 1/1) and downstream (referred to as 1/2). With this emission package, the upstream sensor (1/1) is located just before the main catalytic converter. The downstream sensor (1/2) is located just after the main catalytic converter.

**4.7L V-8 With California Emissions Package:** On this emissions package, 4 sensors are used: 2 upstream (referred to as 1/1 and 2/1) and 2 downstream (referred to as 1/2 and 2/2). With this emission package, the right upstream sensor (2/1) is located in the right exhaust downpipe just before the mini-catalytic converter. The left upstream sensor (1/1) is located in the left exhaust downpipe just before the mini-catalytic converter. The right downstream sensor (2/2) is located in the right exhaust downpipe just after the mini-catalytic converter, and before the main catalytic converter. The left downstream sensor (1/2) is located in the left exhaust downpipe just after the mini-catalytic converter, and before the main catalytic converter.

**4.0L 6-Cylinder With California Emissions Package:** On this emissions package, 4 sensors are used: 2 upstream (referred to as 1/1 and 2/1) and 2 downstream (referred to as 1/2 and 2/2). With this emission package, the rear/upper upstream sensor (2/1) is located in the exhaust downpipe just before the rear mini-catalytic converter. The front/upper upstream sensor (1/1) is located in the exhaust downpipe just before the front mini-catalytic converter. The rear/lower downstream sensor (2/2) is located in the exhaust downpipe just after the rear mini-catalytic converter, and before the main catalytic converter. The front/lower downstream sensor (1/2) is located in the exhaust downpipe just after the front mini-catalytic converter, and before the main catalytic converter.

## OPERATION

An O<sub>2</sub> sensor is a galvanic battery that provides the PCM with a voltage signal (0-1 volt) inversely proportional to the amount of oxygen in the exhaust. In other words, if the oxygen content is low, the voltage output is high; if the oxygen content is high the

## O2S SENSOR (Continued)

output voltage is low. The PCM uses this information to adjust injector pulse-width to achieve the 14.7-to-1 air/fuel ratio necessary for proper engine operation and to control emissions.

The O2 sensor must have a source of oxygen from outside of the exhaust stream for comparison. Current O2 sensors receive their fresh oxygen (outside air) supply through the O2 sensor case housing.

Four wires (circuits) are used on each O2 sensor: a 12-volt feed circuit for the sensor heating element; a ground circuit for the heater element; a low-noise sensor return circuit to the PCM, and an input circuit from the sensor back to the PCM to detect sensor operation.

**Oxygen Sensor Heaters/Heater Relays:** Depending on the emissions package, the heating elements within the sensors will be supplied voltage from either the ASD relay, or 2 separate oxygen sensor relays. Refer to Wiring Diagrams to determine which relays are used.

The O2 sensor uses a Positive Thermal Co-efficient (PTC) heater element. As temperature increases, resistance increases. At ambient temperatures around 70°F, the resistance of the heating element is approximately 4.5 ohms on 4.0L engines. It is approximately 13.5 ohms on the 4.7L engine. As the sensor's temperature increases, resistance in the heater element increases. This allows the heater to maintain the optimum operating temperature of approximately 930°-1100°F (500°-600° C). Although the sensors operate the same, there are physical differences, due to the environment that they operate in, that keep them from being interchangeable.

Maintaining correct sensor temperature at all times allows the system to enter into closed loop operation sooner. Also, it allows the system to remain in closed loop operation during periods of extended idle.

In Closed Loop operation, the PCM monitors certain O2 sensor input(s) along with other inputs, and adjusts the injector pulse width accordingly. During Open Loop operation, the PCM ignores the O2 sensor input. The PCM adjusts injector pulse width based on preprogrammed (fixed) values and inputs from other sensors.

**Upstream Sensor (Non-California Emissions):** The upstream sensor (1/1) provides an input voltage to the PCM. The input tells the PCM the oxygen content of the exhaust gas. The PCM uses this information to fine tune fuel delivery to maintain the correct oxygen content at the downstream oxygen sensor. The PCM will change the air/fuel ratio until the upstream sensor inputs a voltage that the PCM has determined will make the downstream sensor output (oxygen content) correct.

The upstream oxygen sensor also provides an input to determine catalytic convertor efficiency.

**Downstream Sensor (Non-California Emissions):** The downstream oxygen sensor (1/2) is also used to determine the correct air-fuel ratio. As the oxygen content changes at the downstream sensor, the PCM calculates how much air-fuel ratio change is required. The PCM then looks at the upstream oxygen sensor voltage and changes fuel delivery until the upstream sensor voltage changes enough to correct the downstream sensor voltage (oxygen content).

The downstream oxygen sensor also provides an input to determine catalytic convertor efficiency.

**Upstream Sensors (California Engines):** Two upstream sensors are used (1/1 and 2/1). The 1/1 sensor is the first sensor to receive exhaust gases from the #1 cylinder. They provide an input voltage to the PCM. The input tells the PCM the oxygen content of the exhaust gas. The PCM uses this information to fine tune fuel delivery to maintain the correct oxygen content at the downstream oxygen sensors. The PCM will change the air/fuel ratio until the upstream sensors input a voltage that the PCM has determined will make the downstream sensors output (oxygen content) correct.

The upstream oxygen sensors also provide an input to determine mini-catalyst efficiency. Main catalytic convertor efficiency is not calculated with this package.

**Downstream Sensors (California Engines):** Two downstream sensors are used (1/2 and 2/2). The downstream sensors are used to determine the correct air-fuel ratio. As the oxygen content changes at the downstream sensor, the PCM calculates how much air-fuel ratio change is required. The PCM then looks at the upstream oxygen sensor voltage, and changes fuel delivery until the upstream sensor voltage changes enough to correct the downstream sensor voltage (oxygen content).

The downstream oxygen sensors also provide an input to determine mini-catalyst efficiency. Main catalytic convertor efficiency is not calculated with this package.

Engines equipped with either a downstream sensor(s), or a post-catalytic sensor, will monitor catalytic convertor efficiency. If efficiency is below emission standards, the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) will be illuminated and a Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) will be set. Refer to Monitored Systems in Emission Control Systems for additional information.

## REMOVAL

**Never apply any type of grease to the oxygen sensor electrical connector, or attempt any soldering of the sensor wiring harness.**



## O2S SENSOR (Continued)

Oxygen sensor (O2S) locations are shown in (Fig. 18) and (Fig. 19).

**WARNING: THE EXHAUST MANIFOLD, EXHAUST PIPES AND CATALYTIC CONVERTER(S) BECOME VERY HOT DURING ENGINE OPERATION. ALLOW ENGINE TO COOL BEFORE REMOVING OXYGEN SENSOR.**

- (1) Raise and support vehicle.
- (2) Disconnect O2S pigtail harness from main wiring harness.
- (3) If equipped, disconnect sensor wire harness mounting clips from engine or body.

**CAUTION: When disconnecting sensor electrical connector, do not pull directly on wire going into sensor.**

- (4) Remove O2S sensor with an oxygen sensor removal and installation tool.

## INSTALLATION

Threads of new oxygen sensors are factory coated with anti-seize compound to aid in removal. **DO NOT add any additional anti-seize compound to threads of a new oxygen sensor.**

- (1) Install O2S sensor. Tighten to 30 N·m (22 ft. lbs.) torque.
- (2) Connect O2S sensor wire connector to main wiring harness.
- (3) If equipped, connect sensor wire harness mounting clips to engine or body. **When Equipped: The O2S pigtail harness must be clipped and/or bolted back to their original positions on engine or body to prevent mechanical damage to wiring..**
- (4) Lower vehicle.

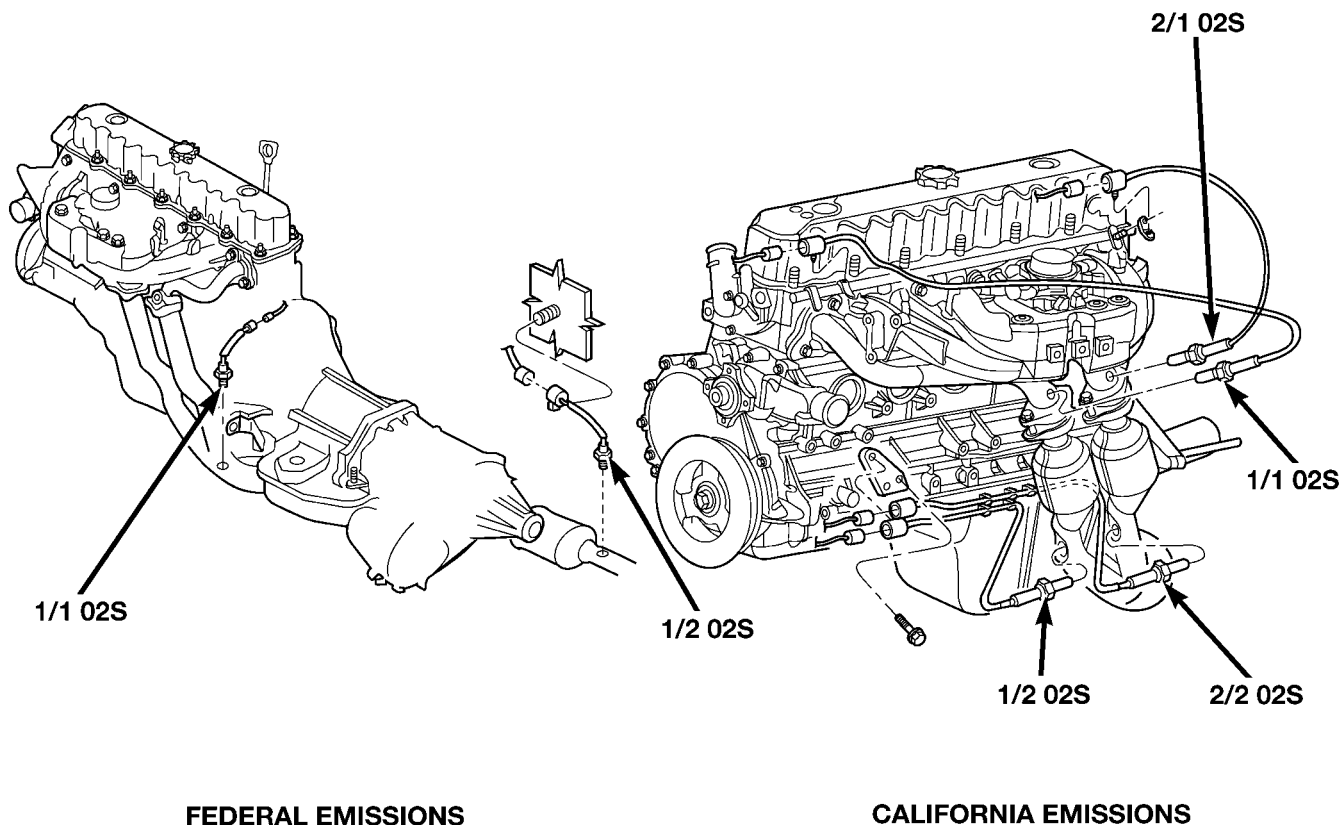
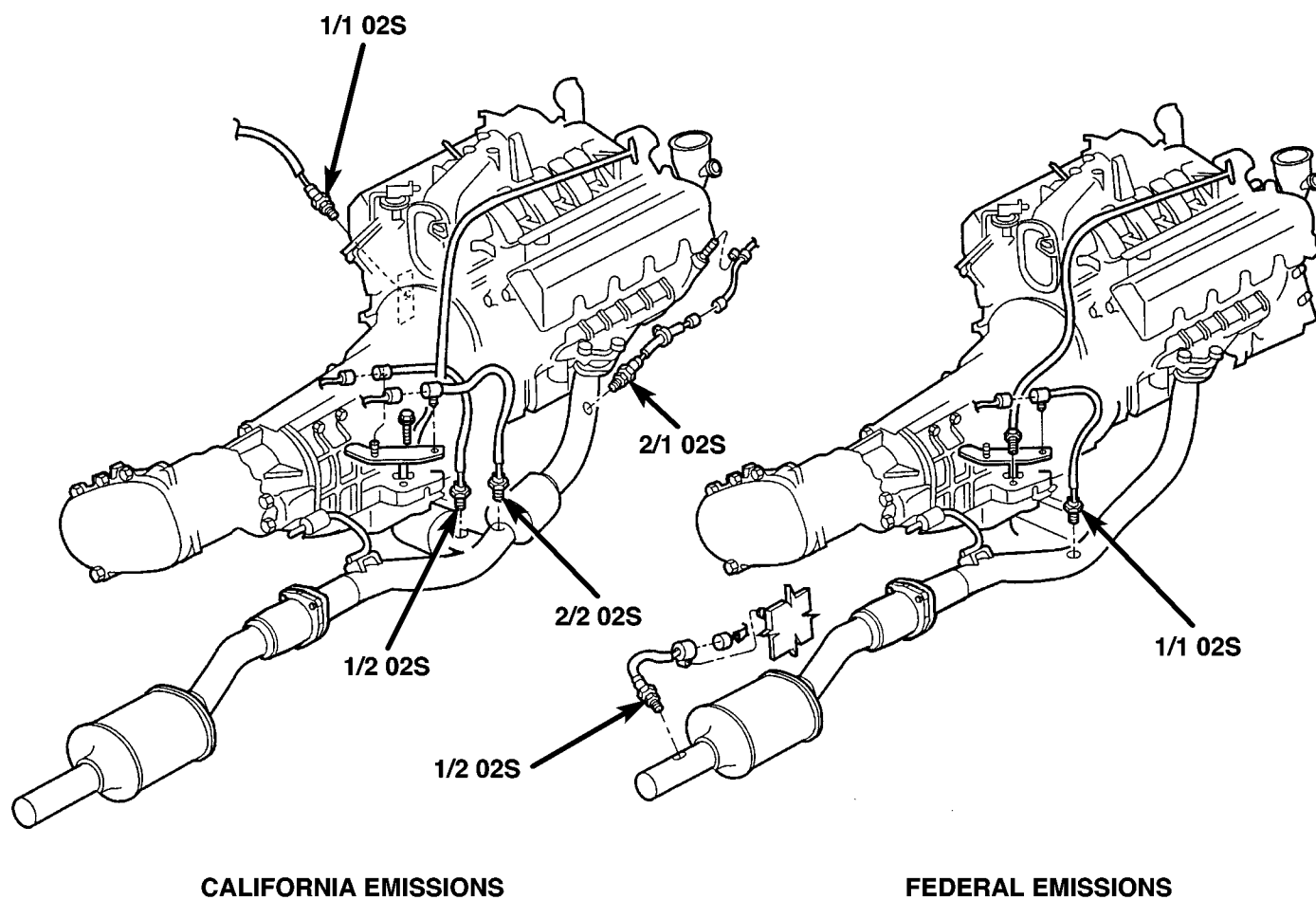


Fig. 18 Oxygen Sensor Locations—4.0L Engine

## O2S SENSOR (Continued)



808a28b1

*Fig. 19 Oxygen Sensor Locations—4.7L V-8 Engine*

## THROTTLE BODY

### DESCRIPTION

The throttle body is located on the intake manifold. Fuel does not enter the intake manifold through the throttle body. Fuel is sprayed into the manifold by the fuel injectors.

### OPERATION

Filtered air from the air cleaner enters the intake manifold through the throttle body. The throttle body contains an air control passage controlled by an Idle Air Control (IAC) motor. The air control passage is used to supply air for idle conditions. A throttle valve (plate) is used to supply air for above idle conditions.

Certain sensors are attached to the throttle body. The accelerator pedal cable, speed control cable and transmission control cable (when equipped) are connected to the throttle body linkage arm.

A (factory adjusted) set screw is used to mechanically limit the position of the throttle body throttle plate. **Never attempt to adjust the engine idle speed using this screw.** All idle speed functions are controlled by the PCM.

### REMOVAL

#### REMOVAL - 4.0L

A (factory adjusted) set screw is used to mechanically limit the position of the throttle body throttle plate. **Never attempt to adjust the engine idle speed using this screw.** All idle speed functions are controlled by the Powertrain Control Module (PCM).

(1) Remove air cleaner duct and air resonator box at throttle body.

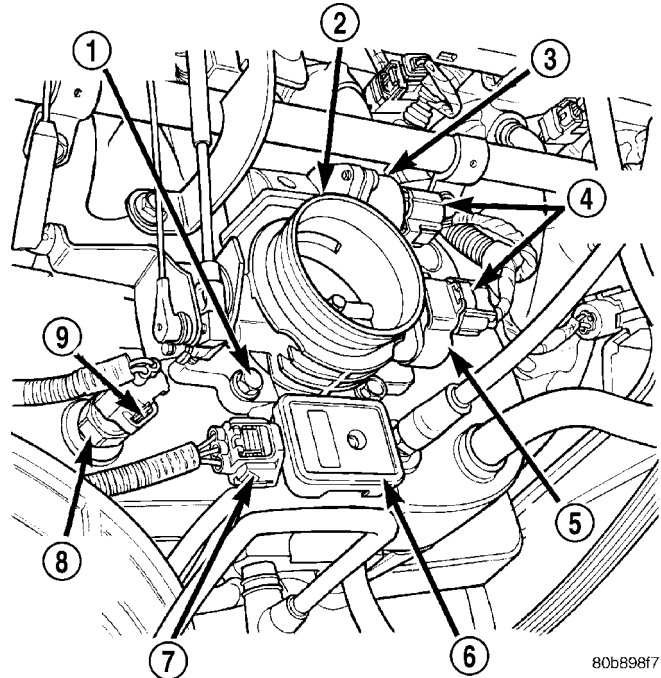
(2) Disconnect throttle body electrical connectors at MAP sensor, IAC motor and TPS (Fig. 20).

(3) Remove all control cables from throttle body (lever) arm. Refer to Accelerator Pedal and Throttle Cable.

(4) Remove four throttle body mounting bolts.

(5) Remove throttle body from intake manifold.

(6) Discard old throttle body-to-intake manifold gasket.



80b898f7

**Fig. 20 Throttle Body and Sensor Locations—4.0L Engine**

- 1 - MOUNTING BOLTS (4)
- 2 - THROTTLE BODY
- 3 - IAC MOTOR
- 4 - ELEC. CONN.
- 5 - TPS
- 6 - MAP SENSOR
- 7 - ELEC. CONN.
- 8 - IAT SENSOR
- 9 - ELEC. CONN.

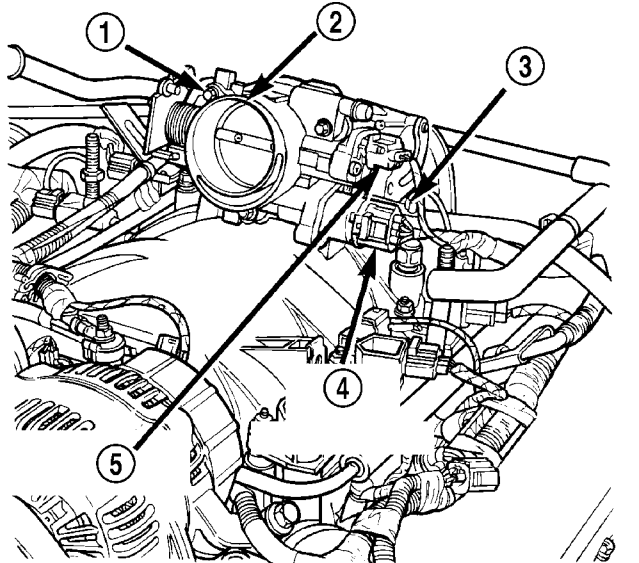


## THROTTLE BODY (Continued)

## REMOVAL - 4.7L

(1) Remove the air duct and air resonator box at throttle body.

(2) Disconnect throttle body electrical connectors at IAC motor and TPS (Fig. 21).



80b898f6

**Fig. 21 Throttle Body, Sensors and Electrical Connectors—4.7L V-8 Engine**

- 1 - MOUNTING BOLTS (3)
- 2 - THROTTLE BODY
- 3 - IAT SENSOR CONNECTOR
- 4 - IAC MOTOR CONNECTOR
- 5 - TPS CONNECTOR

- (3) Remove vacuum line at throttle body.
- (4) Remove all control cables from throttle body (lever) arm. Refer to Accelerator Pedal and Throttle Cable.
- (5) Remove three throttle body mounting bolts (Fig. 21).
- (6) Remove throttle body from intake manifold.

## INSTALLATION

## INSTALLATION - 4.0L

A (factory adjusted) set screw is used to mechanically limit the position of the throttle body throttle plate. **Never attempt to adjust the engine idle speed using this screw.** All idle speed functions are controlled by the Powertrain Control Module (PCM).

(1) Clean the mating surfaces of the throttle body and the intake manifold.

(2) Install new throttle body-to-intake manifold gasket.

(3) Install throttle body to intake manifold.

(4) Install four mounting bolts. Tighten bolts to 11 N·m (100 in. lbs.) torque.

(5) Install control cables.

(6) Install electrical connectors.

(7) Install air duct and air box at throttle body.

## INSTALLATION - 4.7L

(1) Clean throttle body-to-intake manifold o-ring.

(2) Clean mating surfaces of throttle body and intake manifold.

(3) Install throttle body to intake manifold by positioning throttle body to manifold alignment pins.

(4) Install three mounting bolts. Tighten bolts to 12 N·m (105 in. lbs.) torque.

(5) Install control cables.

(6) Install vacuum line to throttle body.

(7) Install electrical connectors.

(8) Install air duct/air box at throttle body.

## THROTTLE CONTROL CABLE

### REMOVAL

#### REMOVAL - 4.0L

**CAUTION:** Be careful not to damage or kink the cable core wire (within the cable sheathing) while servicing accelerator pedal or throttle cable.

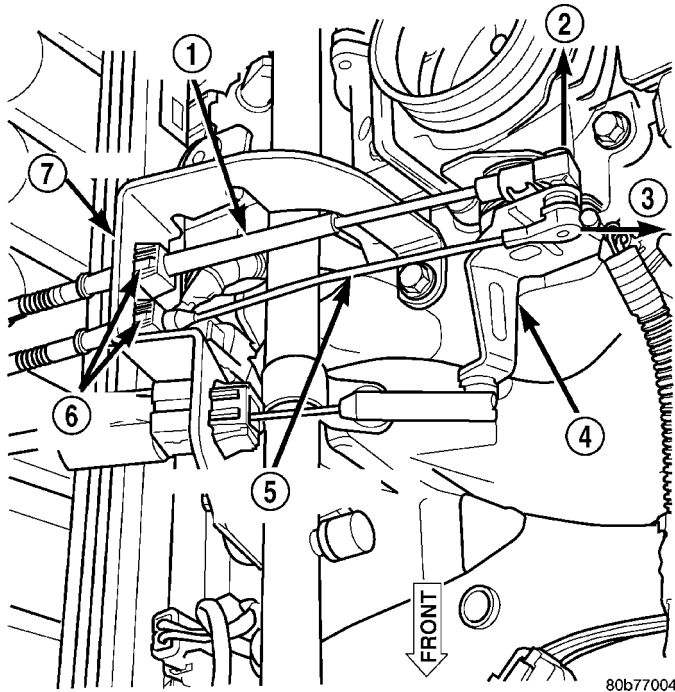
(1) From inside vehicle, hold up accelerator pedal. Remove plastic cable retainer (clip) and throttle cable core wire from upper end of pedal arm (Fig. 1). Plastic cable retainer (clip) snaps into pedal arm.

(2) Remove cable core wire at pedal arm.

(3) From inside vehicle, remove clip holding cable to dashpanel (Fig. 1).

(4) Remove cable housing from dash panel and pull into engine compartment.

(5) Remove (unsnap) cable from routing clips on engine valve cover.



**Fig. 22 Throttle (Accelerator) Cable at Throttle Body—4.0L Engine**

- 1 - ACCELERATOR CABLE
- 2 - OFF
- 3 - OFF
- 4 - THROTTLE BODY BELLCRANK
- 5 - SPEED CONTROL CABLE
- 6 - RELEASE TABS
- 7 - BRACKET

(6) Remove cable connector at throttle body bellcrank ball by unsnapping rearward (Fig. 22).

(7) Remove throttle cable from bracket by compressing release tabs (Fig. 22) and pushing cable through hole in bracket.

(8) Remove throttle cable from vehicle.

#### REMOVAL - 4.7L

**CAUTION:** Be careful not to damage or kink the cable core wire (within the cable sheathing) while servicing accelerator pedal or throttle cable.

(1) From inside vehicle, hold up accelerator pedal. Remove plastic cable retainer (clip) and throttle cable core wire from upper end of pedal arm (Fig. 1). Plastic cable retainer (clip) snaps into pedal arm.

(2) Remove cable core wire at pedal arm.

(3) From inside vehicle, remove clip holding cable to dashpanel (Fig. 1).

(4) Remove air box at throttle body.

(5) Unsnap cable from plenum routing clip.

(6) Remove cable housing from dash panel and pull into engine compartment.

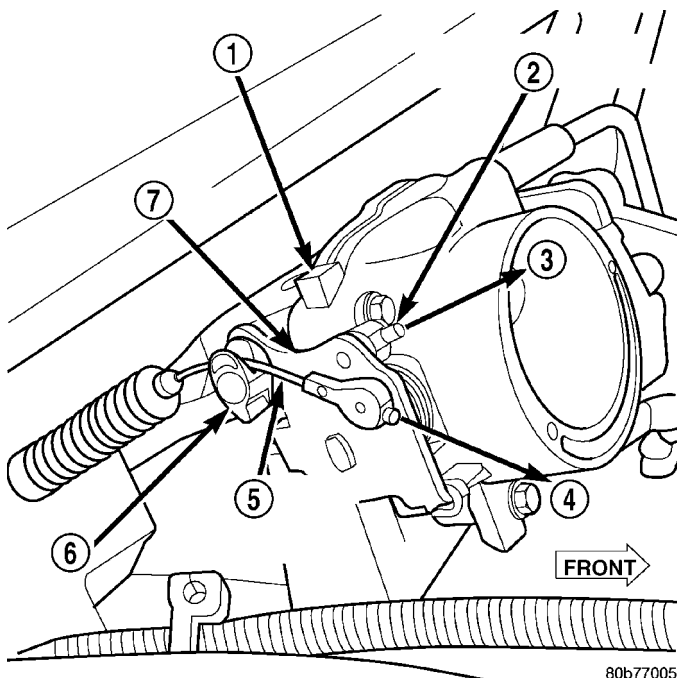
(7) Using finger pressure only, disconnect accelerator cable connector at throttle body bellcrank pin by pushing connector off bellcrank pin towards front of vehicle (Fig. 23). **DO NOT try to pull connector off perpendicular to the bellcrank pin. Connector will be broken.**

(8) Lift accelerator cable from top of cable cam (Fig. 23).

(9) Press tab (Fig. 24) to release plastic cable mount from bracket. **Press on tab only enough to release cable from bracket. If tab is pressed too much, it will be broken.** Slide plastic mount (Fig. 24) towards passenger side of vehicle to remove cable from bracket.

(10) Remove throttle cable from vehicle.

## THROTTLE CONTROL CABLE (Continued)



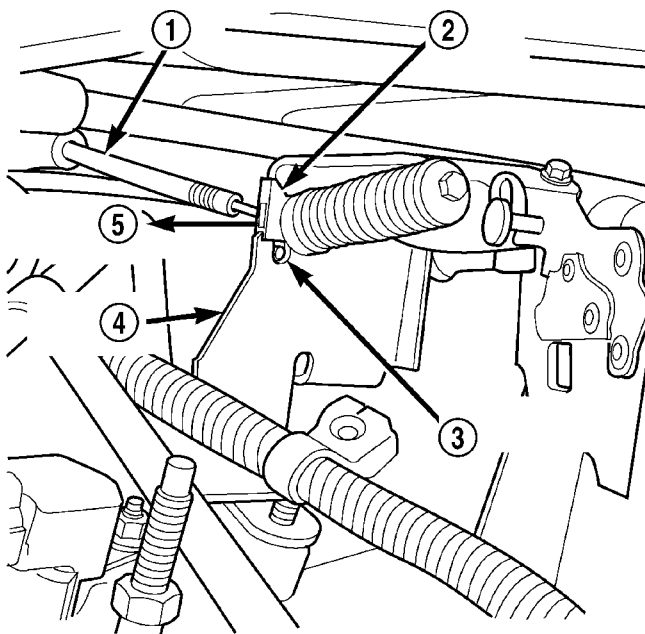
**Fig. 23 Accelerator Cable at Bell Crank—4.7L V-8 Engine**

- 1 - THROTTLE BODY
- 2 - SPEED CONTROL CABLE CONNECTOR
- 3 - OFF
- 4 - OFF
- 5 - ACCELERATOR CABLE CONNECTOR
- 6 - CABLE CAM
- 7 - BELLCRANK

## INSTALLATION

## INSTALLATION - 4.0L

- (1) Slide throttle cable through hole in bracket until release tabs lock into bracket.
- (2) Connect cable ball end to throttle body bellcrank ball (snaps on).
- (3) Snap cable into routing clips on engine valve cover.
- (4) Slide rubber grommet away from plastic cable housing.
- (5) Install rubber grommet into dash panel until seated.
- (6) Push cable housing into rubber grommet and through opening in dash panel.
- (7) From inside vehicle, install clip holding cable to dashpanel (Fig. 1).
- (8) From inside vehicle, slide throttle cable core wire into opening in top of pedal arm.
- (9) Push cable retainer (clip) into pedal arm opening until it snaps in place.
- (10) Before starting engine, operate accelerator pedal to check for any binding.



**Fig. 24 Accelerator Cable Release Tab—4.7L V-8 Engine**

- 1 - ACCELERATOR CABLE
- 2 - PLASTIC CABLE MOUNT
- 3 - PRESS TAB FOR REMOVAL
- 4 - CABLE BRACKET
- 5 - SLIDE FOR REMOVAL

## INSTALLATION - 4.7L

- (1) Slide accelerator cable plastic mount into bracket. Continue sliding until tab (Fig. 24) is aligned to hole in mounting bracket.
- (2) Route accelerator cable over top of cable cam.
- (3) Connect cable end to throttle body bellcrank pin (snaps on rearward).
- (4) Slide rubber grommet away from plastic cable housing.
- (5) Install rubber grommet into dash panel until seated.
- (6) Push cable housing into rubber grommet and through opening in dash panel.
- (7) From inside vehicle, install clip holding cable to dashpanel (Fig. 1).
- (8) From inside vehicle, slide throttle cable core wire into opening in top of pedal arm.
- (9) Push cable retainer (clip) into pedal arm opening until it snaps in place.
- (10) Snap cable into plenum routing clip.
- (11) Install air box to throttle body.
- (12) Before starting engine, operate accelerator pedal to check for any binding.

## THROTTLE POSITION SENSOR

### DESCRIPTION

The 3-wire Throttle Position Sensor (TPS) is mounted on the throttle body and is connected to the throttle blade.

### OPERATION

The TPS is a 3-wire variable resistor that provides the Powertrain Control Module (PCM) with an input signal (voltage) that represents the throttle blade position of the throttle body. The sensor is connected to the throttle blade shaft. As the position of the throttle blade changes, the resistance (output voltage) of the TPS changes.

The PCM supplies approximately 5 volts to the TPS. The TPS output voltage (input signal to the PCM) represents the throttle blade position. The PCM receives an input signal voltage from the TPS. This will vary in an approximate range of from .26 volts at minimum throttle opening (idle), to 4.49 volts at wide open throttle. Along with inputs from other sensors, the PCM uses the TPS input to determine current engine operating conditions. In response to engine operating conditions, the PCM will adjust fuel injector pulse width and ignition timing.

The PCM needs to identify the actions and position of the throttle blade at all times. This information is needed to assist in performing the following calculations:

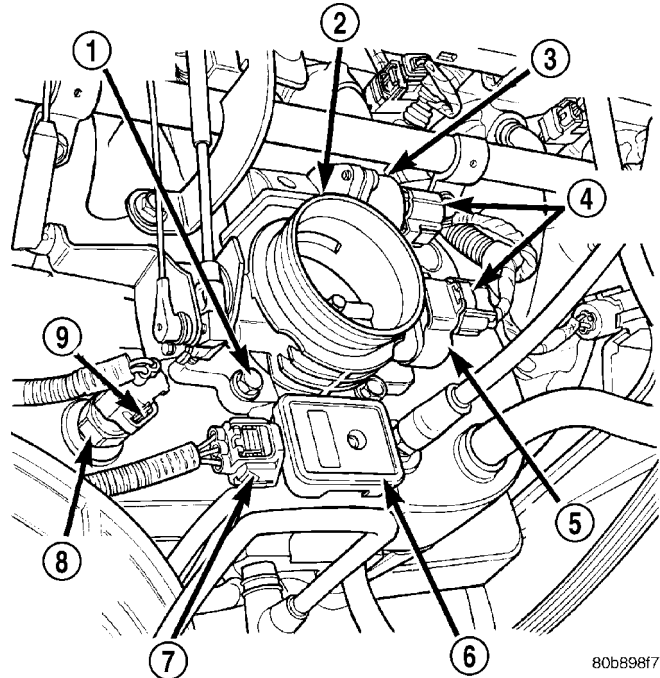
- Ignition timing advance
- Fuel injection pulse-width
- Idle (learned value or minimum TPS)
- Off-idle (0.06 volt)
- Wide Open Throttle (WOT) open loop (2.608 volts above learned idle voltage)
  - Deceleration fuel lean out
  - Fuel cutoff during cranking at WOT (2.608 volts above learned idle voltage)
  - A/C WOT cutoff (certain automatic transmissions only)

### REMOVAL

#### REMOVAL - 4.0L

The TPS is mounted to the throttle body.

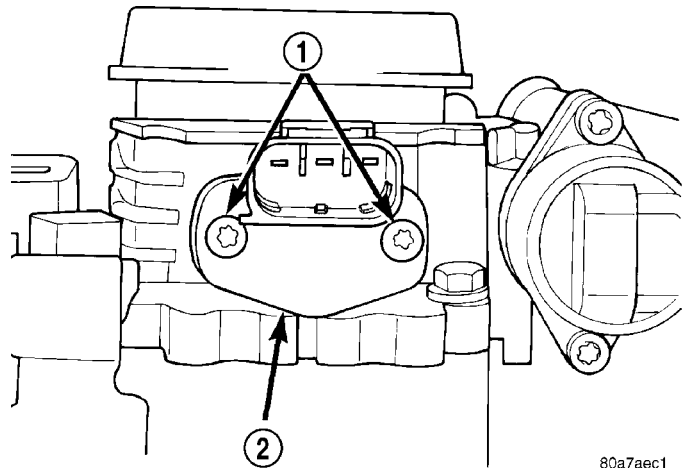
- (1) Disconnect TPS electrical connector (Fig. 25).
- (2) Remove TPS mounting screws (Fig. 26).
- (3) Remove TPS.



80b898f7

**Fig. 25 TPS Electrical Connector—4.0L Engine**

- 1 - MOUNTING BOLTS (4)
- 2 - THROTTLE BODY
- 3 - IAC MOTOR
- 4 - ELEC. CONN.
- 5 - TPS
- 6 - MAP SENSOR
- 7 - ELEC. CONN.
- 8 - IAT SENSOR
- 9 - ELEC. CONN.



80a7aec1

**Fig. 26 TPS Mounting Screws—4.0L Engine**

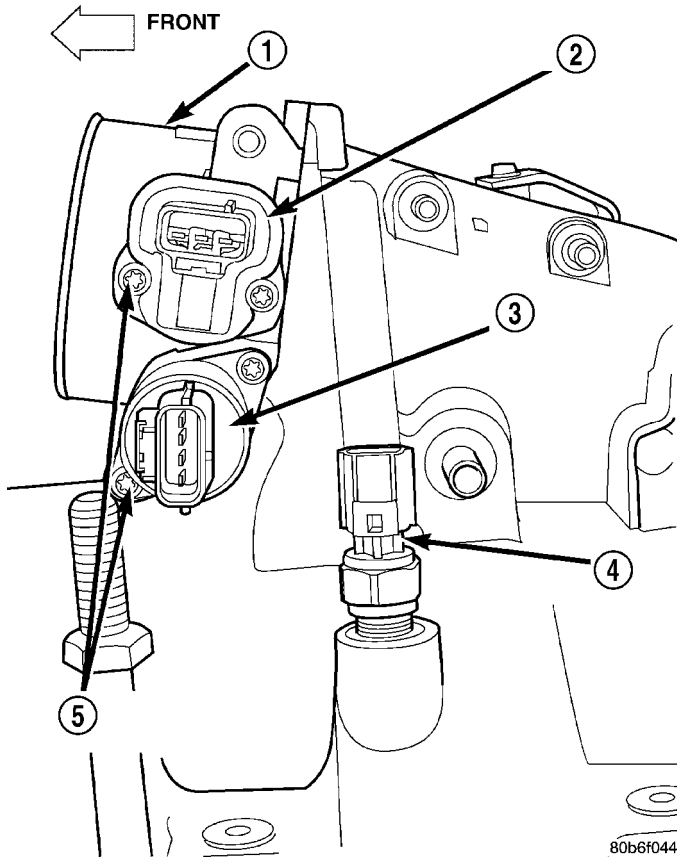
- 1 - MOUNTING SCREWS
- 2 - TPS

## THROTTLE POSITION SENSOR (Continued)

## REMOVAL - 4.7L

The TPS is located on the throttle body.

- (1) Remove air duct and air resonator box at throttle body.
- (2) Disconnect TPS electrical connector (Fig. 21).
- (3) Remove two TPS mounting bolts (screws) (Fig. 27).



**Fig. 27 TPS Mounting Bolts—4.7L V-8**

- 1 - THROTTLE BODY
- 2 - TPS
- 3 - IAC MOTOR
- 4 - IAT SENSOR (THREADED TYPE)
- 5 - MOUNTING SCREWS

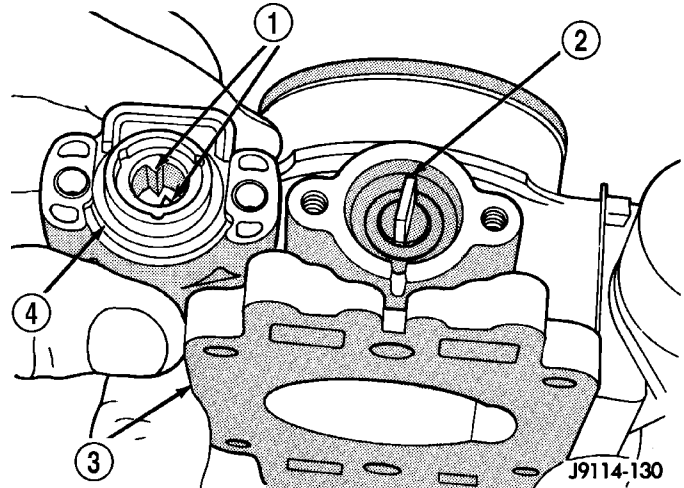
- (4) Remove TPS from throttle body.

## INSTALLATION

## INSTALLATION - 4.0L

The TPS is mounted to the throttle body.

The throttle shaft end of throttle body slides into a socket in the TPS (Fig. 28). The TPS must be installed so that it can be rotated a few degrees. (If sensor will not rotate, install sensor with throttle shaft on other side of socket tangs). The TPS will be under slight tension when rotated.



**Fig. 28 Throttle Position Sensor Installation—4.0L Engine**

- 1 - TANGS
- 2 - THROTTLE SHAFT
- 3 - THROTTLE BODY
- 4 - TPS

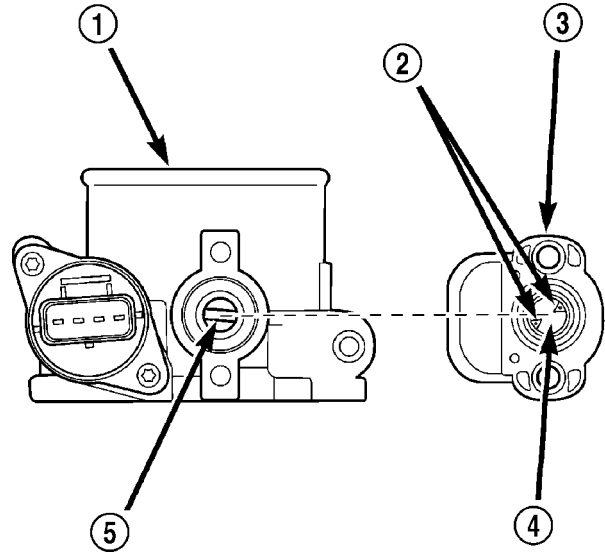
- (1) Install TPS and retaining screws.
- (2) Tighten screws to 7 N·m (60 in. lbs.) torque.
- (3) Connect TPS electrical connector to TPS.
- (4) Manually operate throttle (by hand) to check for any TPS binding before starting engine.

## THROTTLE POSITION SENSOR (Continued)

**INSTALLATION - 4.7L**

The throttle shaft end of throttle body slides into a socket in TPS (Fig. 29). The TPS must be installed so that it can be rotated a few degrees. If sensor will not rotate, install sensor with throttle shaft on other side of socket tangs. The TPS will be under slight tension when rotated.

- (1) Install TPS and two retaining bolts.
- (2) Tighten bolts to 7 N·m (60 in. lbs.) torque.
- (3) Manually operate throttle control lever by hand to check for any binding of TPS.
- (4) Connect TPS electrical connector to TPS.
- (5) Install air duct/air box to throttle body.



80b89900

**Fig. 29 TPS Installation—4.7L**

- 1 - THROTTLE BODY
- 2 - LOCATING TANGS
- 3 - THROTTLE POSITION SENSOR
- 4 - SOCKET
- 5 - THROTTLE SHAFT





STEERING

TABLE OF CONTENTS

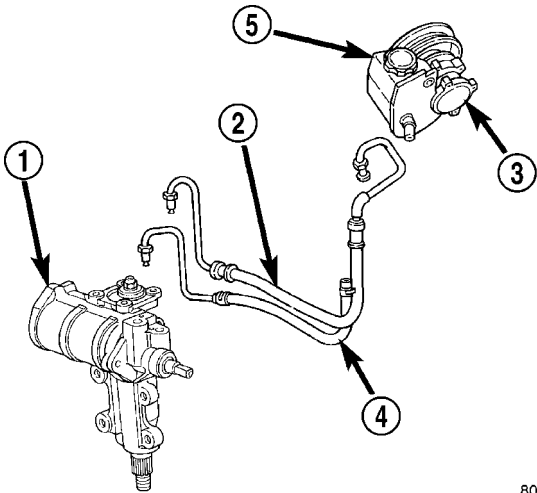
	page		page
<b>STEERING</b>		<b>DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - 4.7L -</b>	
DESCRIPTION - POWER STEERING SYSTEM . . . 1		HYDRAULIC . . . . .	5
OPERATION - POWER STEERING SYSTEM . . . 1		<b>COLUMN</b> . . . . .	7
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING		<b>GEAR</b> . . . . .	17
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - POWER		<b>LINKAGE</b> . . . . .	27
STEERING SYSTEM . . . . .	2	<b>PUMP</b> . . . . .	32
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - STEERING			
FLOW AND PRESSURE . . . . .	4		

STEERING

DESCRIPTION - POWER STEERING SYSTEM

The power steering pump (Fig. 1) is a constant flow rate and displacement vane type pump. The pump reservoir is attached to the pump body. The pump is connected to the steering by the pressure and return hoses. The steering gear (Fig. 1) used is a recirculating ball type gear. A tilt and non-tilt column provide steering input.

The power steering system consists of:



80c07226

Fig. 1 POWER STEERING GEAR & PUMP 4.0L

- 1 - STEERING GEAR
- 2 - PRESSURE HOSE
- 3 - PUMP
- 4 - RETURN HOSE
- 5 - RESERVOIR

OPERATION - POWER STEERING SYSTEM

The rack piston balls act as a rolling thread between the worm shaft and rack piston. The worm shaft is supported by a thrust bearing at the lower end and a bearing assembly at the upper end. When the worm shaft is turned from input from the steering column the rack piston moves. The rack piston teeth mesh with the pitman shaft. Turning the worm shaft turns the pitman shaft, which moves the steering linkage.

## STEERING (Continued)

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - POWER STEERING SYSTEM

There is some noise in all power steering systems. One of the most common is a hissing sound evident at a standstill parking. Or when the steering wheel is at the end of it's travel. Hiss is a high frequency noise similar to that of a water tap being closed slowly. The noise is present in all valves that have a high velocity fluid passing through an orifice. There is no relationship between this noise and steering performance.

## STEERING NOISE

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
OBJECTIONAL HISS OR WHISTLE	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Steering intermediate shaft to dash panel seal.</li> <li>2. Noisy valve in power steering gear.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check and repair seal at dash panel.</li> <li>2. Replace steering gear.</li> </ol>
RATTLE OR CLUNK	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Gear mounting bolts loose.</li> <li>2. Loose or damaged suspension components/track bar.</li> <li>3. Loose or damaged steering linkage.</li> <li>4. Internal gear noise.</li> <li>5. Pressure hose in contact with other components.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Tighten bolts to specification.</li> <li>2. Inspect and repair suspension.</li> <li>3. Inspect and repair steering linkage.</li> <li>4. Replace gear.</li> <li>5. Reposition hose.</li> </ol>
CHIRP OR SQUEAL	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Loose belt.</li> <li>2. Belt routing.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Adjust or replace.</li> <li>2. Verify belt routing is correct.</li> </ol>
WHINE OR GROWL	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Low fluid level.</li> <li>2. Pressure hose in contact with other components.</li> <li>3. Internal pump noise.</li> <li>4. Air in the system.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Fill to proper level.</li> <li>2. Reposition hose.</li> <li>3. Replace pump.</li> <li>4. Perform pump initial operation.</li> </ol>
SUCKING AIR SOUND	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Loose return line clamp.</li> <li>2. O-ring missing or damaged on hose fitting.</li> <li>3. Low fluid level.</li> <li>4. Air leak between pump and reservoir.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Replace clamp.</li> <li>2. Replace o-ring.</li> <li>3. Fill to proper level.</li> <li>4. Repair as necessary.</li> </ol>
SCRUBBING OR KNOCKING	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Wrong tire size.</li> <li>2. Wrong gear.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Verify tire size.</li> <li>2. Verify gear.</li> </ol>

## STEERING (Continued)

*BINDING AND STICKING*

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSE	CORRECTION
DIFFICULT TO TURN WHEEL STICKS OR BINDS	1. Low fluid level. 2. Tire pressure. 3. Steering component. 4. Loose belt. 5. Low pump pressure. 6. Column shaft coupler binding. 7. Steering gear worn or out of adjustment. 8. Ball joints binding. 9. Belt routing.	1. Fill to proper level. 2. Adjust tire pressure. 3. Inspect and lube. 4. Adjust or replace. 5. Pressure test and replace if necessary. 6. Replace coupler. 7. Repair or replace gear. 8. Inspect and repair as necessary. 9. Verify belt routing is correct.
4.7L	Hydraulic fan motor steering output low	Pressure / Flow test fans steering output flow

*INSUFFICIENT ASST. OR POOR RETURN TO CENTER*

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSE	CORRECTION
HARD TURNING OR MOMENTARY INCREASE IN TURNING EFFORT	1. Tire pressure. 2. Low fluid level. 3. Loose belt. 4. Lack of lubrication. 5. Low pump pressure or flow. 6. Internal gear leak. 7. Belt routing. 8. Low flow / pressure from fan motor	1. Adjust tire pressure. 2. Fill to proper level. 3. Adjust or replace. 4. Inspect and lubricate steering and suspension components. 5. Pressure and flow test and repair as necessary. 6. Pressure and flow test, and repair as necessary. 7. Verify belt routing is correct. 8. Pressure and flow test and repair as necessary.
4.7L		
STEERING WHEEL DOES NOT WANT TO RETURN TO CENTER POSITION	1. Tire pressure. 2. Wheel alignment. 3. Lack of lubrication. 4. High friction in steering gear. 5. Ball joints binding.	1. Adjust tire pressure. 2. Align front end. 3. Inspect and lubricate steering and suspension components. 4. Test and adjust as necessary. 5. Inspect and repair as necessary.

NOTE: Some roads will cause a vehicle to drift, due to the crown in the road.

## STEERING (Continued)

## LOOSE STEERING AND VEHICLE LEADS/DRIFTS

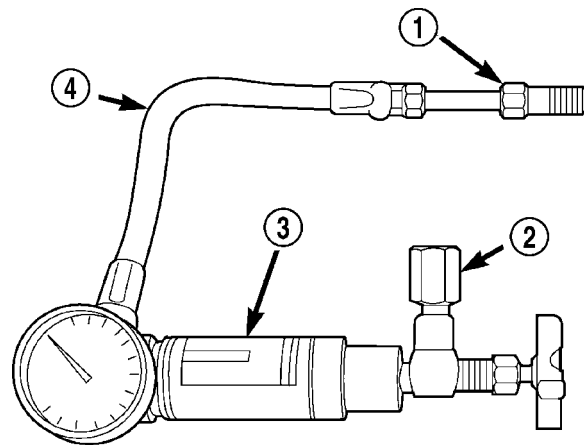
CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSE	CORRECTION
EXCESSIVE PLAY IN STEERING WHEEL	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Worn or loose suspension or steering components.</li> <li>2. Worn or loose wheel bearings.</li> <li>3. Steering gear mounting.</li> <li>4. Gear out of adjustment.</li> <li>5. Worn or loose steering coupler.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Repair as necessary.</li> <li>2. Repair as necessary.</li> <li>3. Tighten gear mounting bolts to specification.</li> <li>4. Adjust gear to specification.</li> <li>5. Repair as necessary.</li> </ol>
VEHICLE PULLS TO ONE SIDE DURING BRAKING	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Tire Pressure.</li> <li>2. Air in brake hydraulics system.</li> <li>3. Worn brake components.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Adjust tire pressure.</li> <li>2. Bleed brake system.</li> <li>3. Repair as necessary.</li> </ol>
VEHICLE LEADS OR DRIFTS FROM STRAIGHT AHEAD DIRECTION ON UNCROWNED ROAD.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Tire pressure.</li> <li>2. Radial tire lead.</li> <li>3. Brakes dragging.</li> <li>4. Wheel alignment.</li> <li>5. Weak or broken spring.</li> <li>6. Loose or worn steering/suspension components.</li> <li>7. Cross caster out of spec.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Adjust tire pressure.</li> <li>2. Cross front tires.</li> <li>3. Repair as necessary.</li> <li>4. Align vehicle.</li> <li>5. Replace spring.</li> <li>6. Repair as necessary.</li> <li>7. Adjust or replace axle as necessary.</li> </ol>

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - STEERING FLOW AND PRESSURE

The following procedure is used to test the operation of the power steering system on the vehicle. This test will provide the gallons per minute (GPM) or flow rate of the power steering pump along with the maximum relief pressure. Perform test any time a power steering system problem is present. This test will determine if the power steering pump or power steering gear is not functioning properly. The following pressure and flow test is performed using Power Steering Analyzer Tool kit 6815 (Fig. 2) and Adapter Kit 6893.

## FLOW AND PRESSURE TEST

- (1) Check the power steering belt to ensure it is in good condition and adjusted properly.
- (2) Connect pressure gauge hose from the Power Steering Analyzer to Tube 6865.
- (3) Connect Adapter 6826 to Power Steering Analyzer test valve end.
- (4) Disconnect the high pressure hose from the power steering pump.
- (5) Connect Tube 6865 to the pump hose fitting.



80ac82e2

Fig. 2 Power Steering Analyzer

- 1 - TUBE
- 2 - ADAPTER FITTINGS
- 3 - ANALYZER
- 4 - GAUGE HOSE

- (6) Connect the power steering hose from the steering gear to Adapter 6826.
- (7) Open the test valve completely.

## STEERING (Continued)

(8) Start engine and let idle long enough to circulate power steering fluid through flow/pressure test gauge.

(9) Shut off the engine and check the fluid level, add fluid as necessary. Start engine again and let idle.

(10) The initial pressure reading should be 345-552 kPa (50-80 psi). If pressure is higher inspect the hoses for restrictions and repair as necessary.

(11) Increase the engine speed to 1500 RPM and read the flow meter. The reading should be 2.4 - 2.8 GPM, if the reading is below this specification the pump should be replaced.

**CAUTION:** This next step involves testing maximum pump pressure output and flow control valve operation. Do not leave valve closed for more than three seconds as the pump could be damaged.

(12) Close valve fully three times for three seconds and record highest pressure indicated each time. **All three readings must be at pump relief pressure specifications and within 345 kPa (50 psi) of each other.**

- Pressures above specifications but not within 345 kPa (50 psi) of each other, replace pump.
- Pressures within 345 kPa (50 psi) of each other but below specifications, replace pump.

**CAUTION:** Do not force the pump to operate against the stops for more than 2 to 4 seconds at a time because, pump damage will result.

(13) Open the test valve and turn the steering wheel to the extreme left and right positions against the stops. Record the highest pressure reading at each position. Compare readings to the pump specifications chart. If pressures readings are not within 50 psi. of each other, the gear is leaking internally and must be repaired.

## GEAR INLET SPECIFICATIONS 4.0L &amp; 4.7L

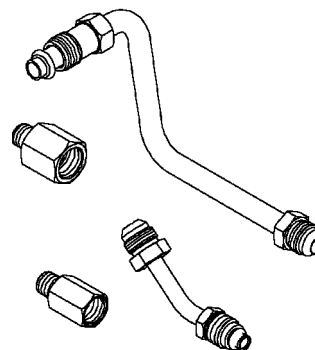
ENGINE	RELIEF PRESSURE $\pm$ 50	FLOW RATE (GPM)
4.0L	9653 kPa (1400 psi)	1500 RPM 2.4 - 2.8 GPM
4.7L	9653 kPa (1450 psi)	

## PUMP MOTOR SPECIFICATIONS 4.7L

ENGINE	RELIEF PRESSURE $\pm$ 50	FLOW RATE (GPM)
4.7L	9653 kPa (1900 psi)	1100 RPM 2.4-2.8 GPM Minimum @ 200 psi

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - 4.7L - HYDRAULIC

The following procedures are used to test the operation of the power steering and hydraulic fan systems on the vehicle. This test will provide the gallons per minute (GPM) or flow rate of the power steering pump along with any maximum relief pressure. Perform test anytime a power steering system problem is present. This test will determine if the power steering pump, hydraulic fan, and power steering gear are not functioning properly. It will also determine if the flow coming out of the hydraulic fan motor is sufficient for the power steering gear. The following pressure and flow test is performed using the Power Steering Analyzer Tool kit 6815 (Fig. 2) and Adapter kit 8630 (Fig. 3).



**Fig. 3 4.7L HYDRAULIC POWER STEERING TEST ADAPTERS**

## FLOW TEST - FLOW FROM POWER STEERING PUMP

- (1) Check the power steering belt to ensure it is in good condition and adjusted properly.
- (2) Connect the pressure gauge hose from the Power Steering Analyzer to Tube 8630-2.
- (3) Connect Adapter 8630-3 to Power Steering Analyzer test valve end.
- (4) Disconnect the high pressure hose from the power steering pump.
- (5) Connect Tube 8630-2 to the pump hose fitting.
- (6) Connect the power steering hose from the fan motor to Adapter 8630-3.
- (7) Open the test valve completely.

## STEERING (Continued)

(8) Start engine and let idle long enough to circulate power steering fluid through the flow/pressure test gauge.

(9) Shut off the engine and check the fluid level, add fluid as necessary. Start engine again and let idle.

(10) The initial pressure reading should be 483 - 690 kPa (70 - 100 psi). If pressure is higher inspect the hoses for restrictions and repair as necessary.

(11) Increase the engine speed to 1100 rpm and read the flow meter. The reading should be 2.6 GPM minimum, if the reading is below this specification, the pump should be replaced.

### FLOW AND PRESSURE TEST - FLOW FROM HYDRAULIC FAN MOTOR TO STEERING GEAR (should be done if necessary after the Pump flow test)

(1) Connect the pressure gauge hose from the Power Steering Analyzer to Fitting 8630-1.

(2) Connect Adapter 8630-4 to Power Steering Analyzer test valve end.

(3) Disconnect the high pressure hose from the power steering gear.

(4) Connect Fitting 8630-1 to the high pressure hose.

(5) Connect Adapter 8630-4 to the power steering gear.

(6) Open the test valve completely.

(7) Start engine and let idle long enough to circulate power steering fluid through the flow/pressure test gauge.

(8) Shut off the engine and check the fluid level, add fluid as necessary. Start engine again and let idle.

(9) The initial pressure reading should be 345-552 kPa (50-80 psi). If pressure is higher inspect the hoses for restrictions and repair as necessary.

(10) Increase the engine speed to 1500 RPM and read the flow meter. The reading should be 2.4 - 2.8 GPM if the reading is below this specification the fan should be replaced.

**CAUTION: This next step involves testing maximum fan motor steering relief pressure. Do not leave the valve closed for more than three seconds.**

(11) Close the valve fully three times for three seconds and record highest pressures indicated each time. All three readings must be at fan motor steering relief pressures.

(12) Open the test valve and turn the steering wheel to the extreme left and right positions against the stops. Record the highest pressure readings at each position. If pressure readings are not within 50 psi from each other, the gear is leaking internally and must be repaired.

#### PUMP MOTOR SPECIFICATIONS 4.7L

ENGINE	RELIEF PRESSURE $\pm$ 50	FLOW RATE (GPM)
4.7L	9653 kPa (1900 psi)	1100 RPM 2.4-2.8 GPM Minimum @ 200 psi

COLUMN

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page	page
<b>COLUMN</b>		
DESCRIPTION		
SERVICE WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS	7	
REMOVAL	8	
INSTALLATION	11	
SPECIFICATIONS		
TORQUE CHART	12	
SPECIAL TOOLS		
STEERING COLUMN	12	
<b>IGNITION SWITCH</b>		
DESCRIPTION	12	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - IGNITION		
SWITCH	12	
REMOVAL		
IGNITION SWITCH REMOVAL	13	
INSTALLATION		
IGNITION SWITCH INSTALLATION		13
<b>KEY-IN IGNITION SWITCH</b>		
DESCRIPTION	13	
OPERATION	14	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING		
KEY-IN IGNITION SWITCH	14	
<b>KEY CYLINDER</b>		
REMOVAL	14	
INSTALLATION	15	
<b>STEERING WHEEL</b>		
REMOVAL	15	
INSTALLATION	16	

COLUMN

DESCRIPTION

SERVICE WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS

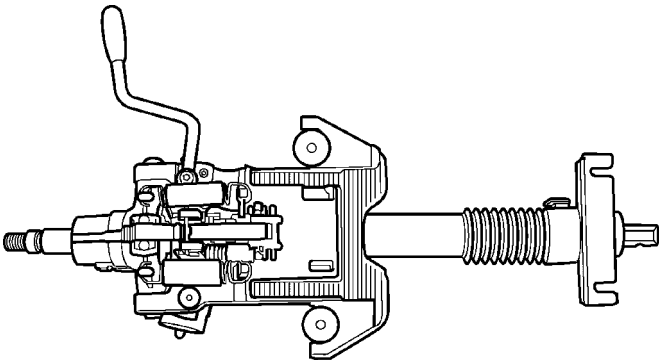
DESCRIPTION

**NOTE:** The steering column on vehicles with an automatic transmission may not be equipped with an internal locking shaft that allows the ignition key cylinder to be locked with the key. Alternative methods of locking the steering wheel for service will have to be used.

The tilt column (Fig. 1) has been designed to be serviced as an assembly, less the wiring, switches, shrouds, steering wheel, etc. Most steering column components can be serviced without removing the steering column from the vehicle.

To service the steering wheel, switches or airbag,(Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS - WARNING).

**WARNING:** THE AIRBAG SYSTEM IS A SENSITIVE, COMPLEX ELECTRO-MECHANICAL UNIT. BEFORE ATTEMPTING TO DIAGNOSE, REMOVE OR INSTALL THE AIRBAG SYSTEM COMPONENTS YOU MUST FIRST DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE. THEN WAIT TWO



80b6f0a2

Fig. 1 Steering Column

MINUTES FOR THE SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE. FAILURE TO DO SO COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL DEPLOYMENT OF THE AIRBAG AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY. THE FASTENERS, SCREWS, AND BOLTS, ORIGINALLY USED FOR THE AIRBAG COMPONENTS, HAVE SPECIAL COATINGS AND ARE SPECIFICALLY DESIGNED FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. THEY MUST NEVER BE REPLACED WITH ANY SUBSTITUTES. ANYTIME A NEW FASTENER IS NEEDED, REPLACE WITH THE CORRECT FASTENERS PROVIDED IN THE SERVICE PACKAGE OR FASTENERS LISTED IN THE PARTS BOOKS.



## COLUMN (Continued)

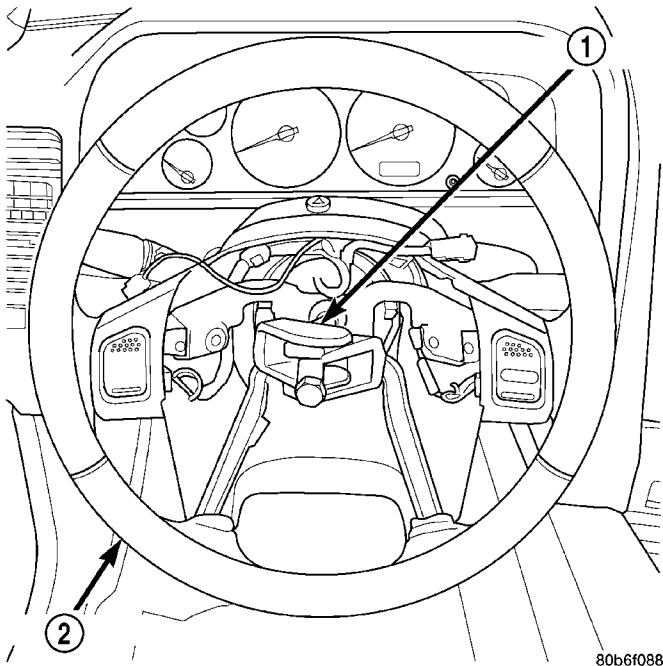
**CAUTION:** Safety goggles should be worn at all times when working on steering columns.

**NOTE:** Ensure the puller jaws are seated in the pockets (Fig. 3) of the steering wheel armature.

## REMOVAL

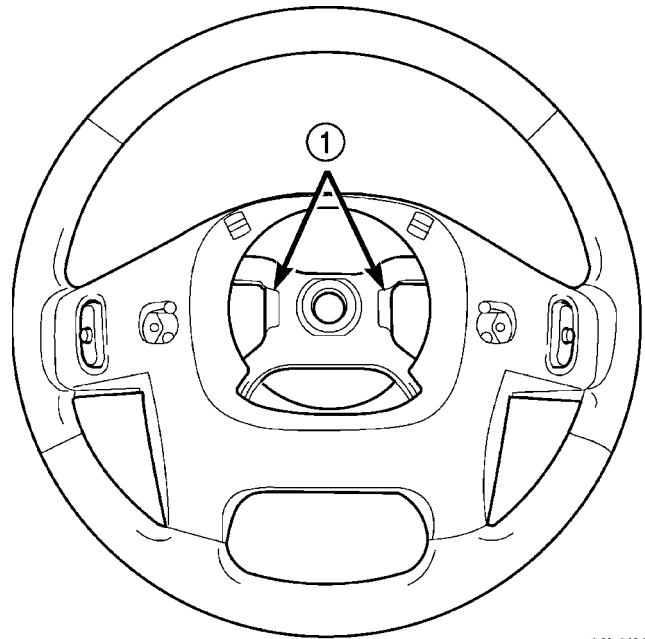
**WARNING:** BEFORE SERVICING THE STEERING COLUMN THE AIRBAG SYSTEM MUST BE DISARMED. FAILURE TO DO SO MAY RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL DEPLOYMENT OF THE AIRBAG AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS/DRIVER AIRBAG - REMOVAL).

- (1) Position front wheels straight ahead.
- (2) Disconnect and isolate the negative (ground) cable from the battery.
- (3) Remove the airbag. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS/DRIVER AIRBAG - REMOVAL).
- (4) Remove the steering wheel nut and remove wheel with Puller C-3894-A (Fig. 2).



**Fig. 2 Steering Wheel Puller**

- 1 - PULLER
- 2 - STEERING WHEEL

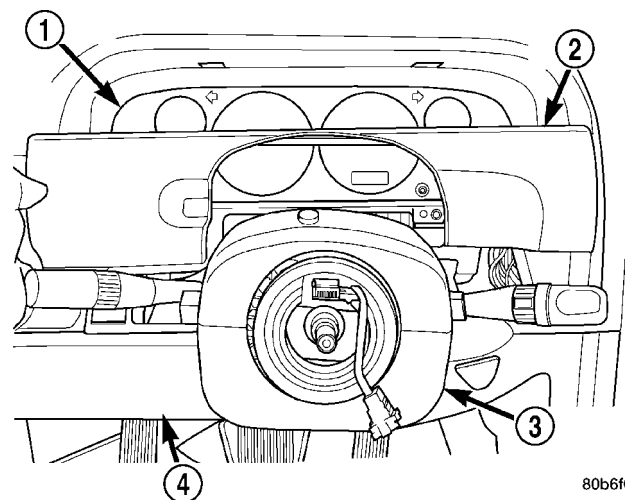


80b6f089

**Fig. 3 Steering Wheel Pockets**

- 1 - STEERING WHEEL POCKETS

- (5) Remove the cluster bezel by pulling it from the instrument panel (Fig. 4).



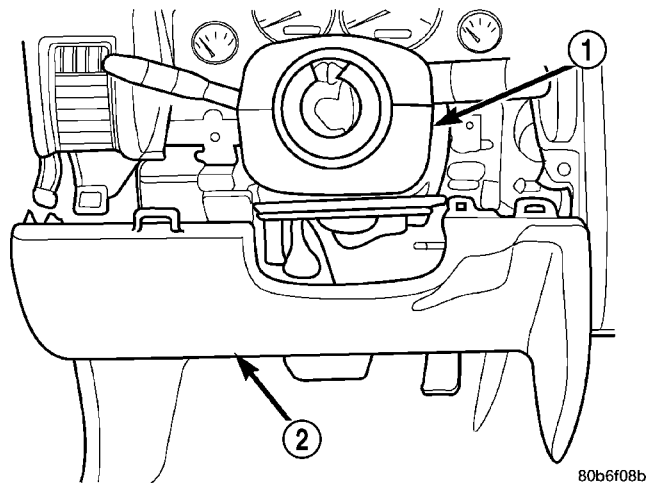
80b6f08a

**Fig. 4 Cluster Bezel**

- 1 - CLUSTER
- 2 - CLUSTER BEZEL
- 3 - STEERING COLUMN
- 4 - KNEE BLOCKER COVER

## COLUMN (Continued)

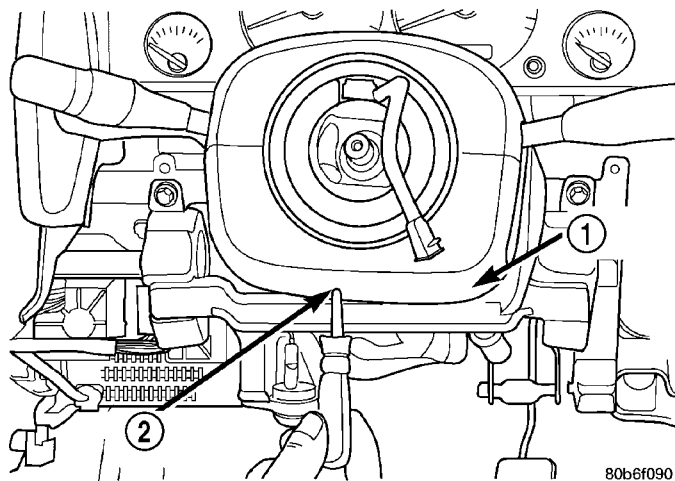
(6) Remove the knee blocker cover (Fig. 5),(Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL - REMOVAL).



**Fig. 5 Knee Blocker Cover**

- 1 - STEERING COLUMN  
2 - KNEE BLOCKER COVER

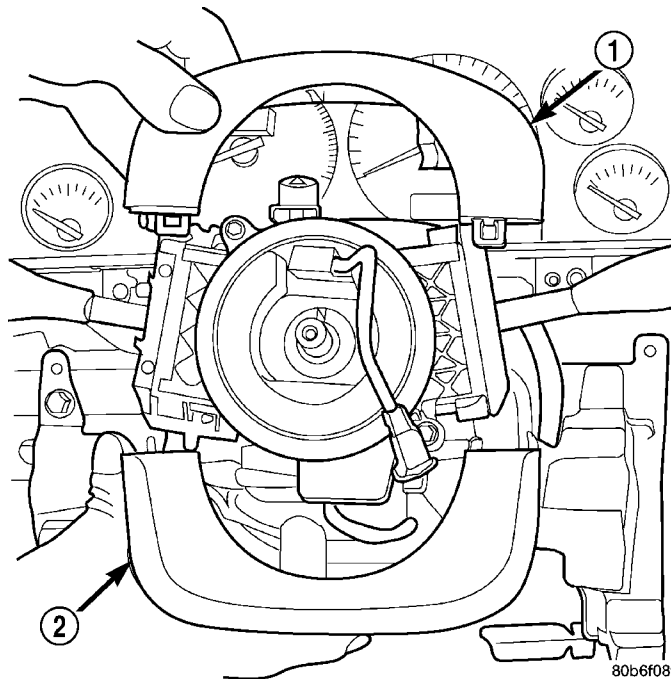
(7) Remove the lower steering column shroud mounting screw (Fig. 6).



**Fig. 6 Column Shroud Mounting Screw**

- 1 - LOWER SHROUD  
2 - ACCESS HOLE

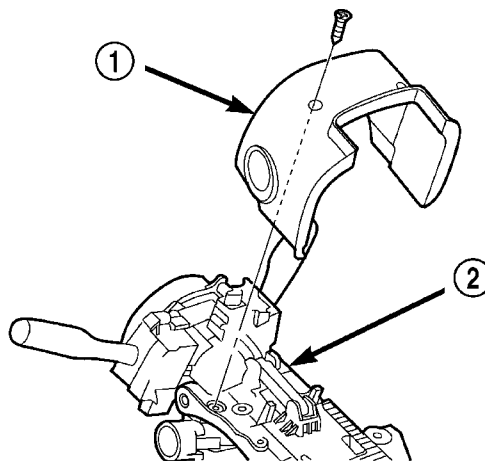
(8) Unsnap the two halves of the column shrouds by pressing on the sides of the upper shroud and tilting the rear of the upper shroud up. Remove the shrouds from the steering column (Fig. 7).



**Fig. 7 Column Shrouds**

- 1 - UPPER SHROUD  
2 - LOWER SHROUD

(9) Remove the upper fixed shroud mounting screws and remove the shroud (Fig. 8).

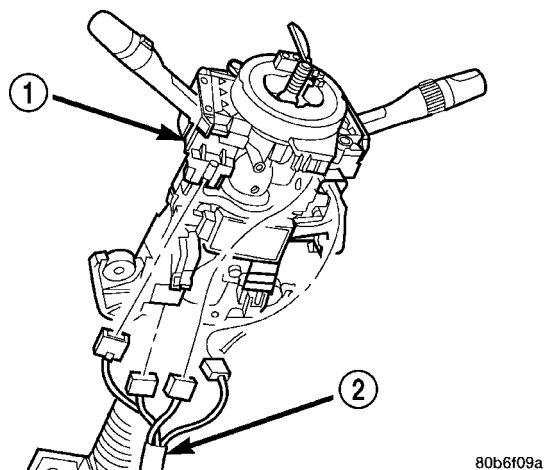


**Fig. 8 Upper Fixed Shroud**

- 1 - UPPER FIXED SHROUD  
2 - COLUMN

## COLUMN (Continued)

(10) Disconnect the multifunction switch (Fig. 9) and ignition switch harness.

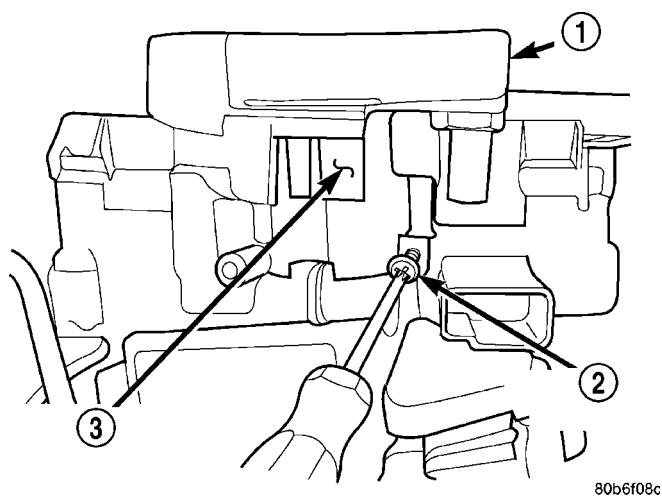


80b6f09a

**Fig. 9 Multifunction Switch Harness**

- 1 - MULTIFUNCTION SWITCH
- 2 - MULTIFUNCTION SWITCH HARNESS

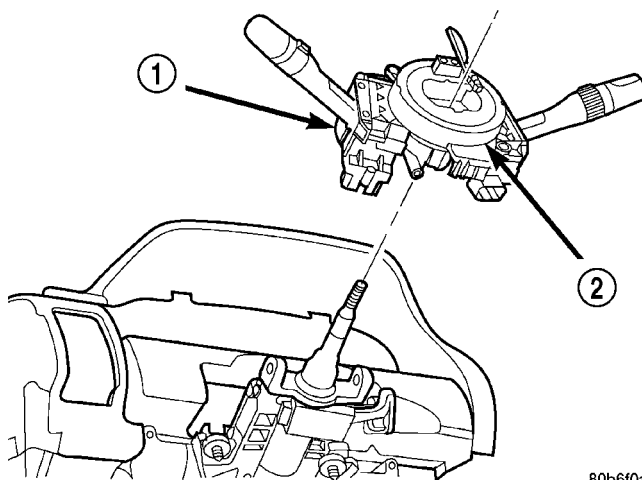
(11) Remove the multifunction switch screw from underneath the switch (Fig. 10). Slide the multifunction switch and clock spring off the column as an assembly (Fig. 11).



80b6f08c

**Fig. 10 Multifunction**

- 1 - CLOCK SPRING
- 2 - SCREW
- 3 - MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH MOUNTING HOUSING

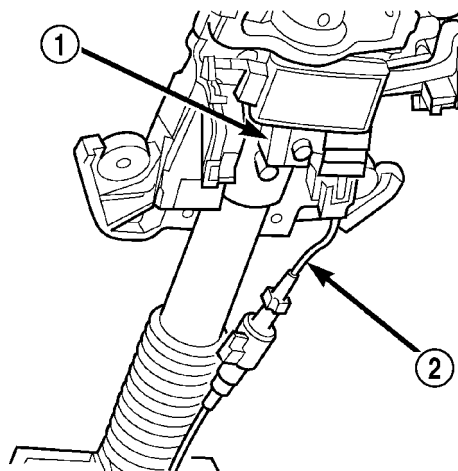


80b6f0a0

**Fig. 11 Multifunction Switch And Clock Spring**

- 1 - MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH ASSEMBLY
- 2 - CLOCKSPring

(12) Turn the ignition key to the on position then release and remove the shifter interlock cable (Fig. 12) from the ignition lock cylinder housing.



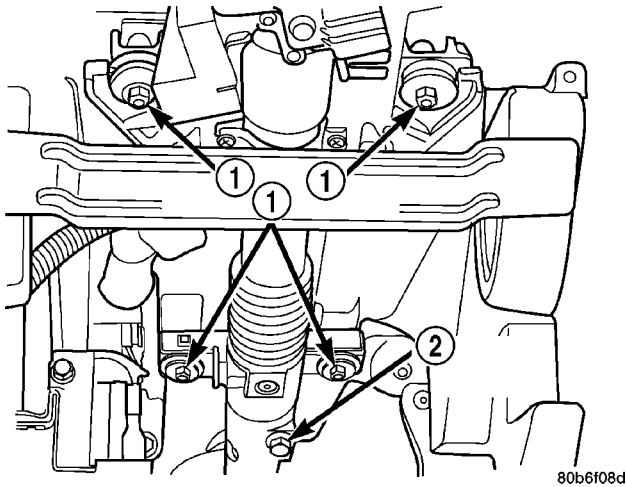
80b6f09b

**Fig. 12 Shifter Interlock Cable**

- 1 - LOCK CYLINDER HOUSING
- 2 - INTERLOCK CABLE

## COLUMN (Continued)

(13) Remove the column coupler bolt (Fig. 13) and slide the coupler off the column shaft.

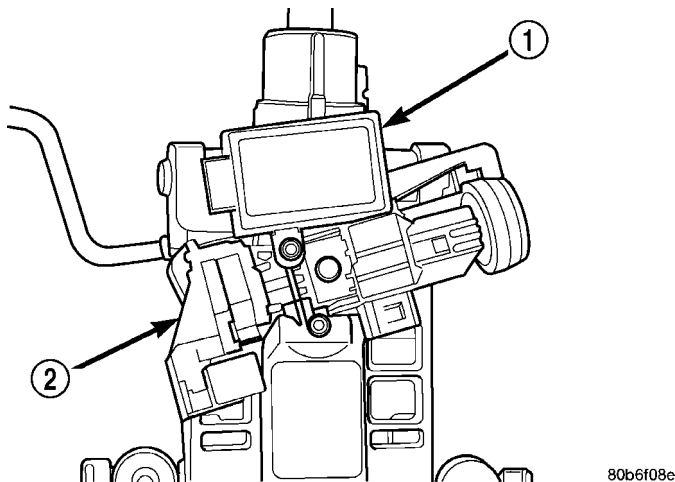


**Fig. 13 Column Coupler Bolt And Mounting Nuts**

- 1 - COLUMN MOUNTING NUTS  
2 - COUPLER BOLT

(14) Remove the column mounting nuts (Fig. 13) and lower column off mounting studs. Remove the column from the vehicle.

(15) Remove the ignition switch, cylinder and SKIM, (Refer to 19 - STEERING/COLUMN/LOCK CYLINDER HOUSING - REMOVAL). (Fig. 14).



**Fig. 14 Ignition Switch And SKIM**

- 1 - SKIM  
2 - IGNITION SWITCH

## INSTALLATION

**WARNING: BEFORE SERVICING THE STEERING COLUMN THE AIRBAG SYSTEM MUST BE DISARMED. FAILURE TO DO SO MAY RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL DEPLOYMENT OF THE AIRBAG AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY. (Refer to 8 - ELEC-**

**TRICAL/RESTRAINTS/DRIVER AIRBAG - INSTALLATION).**

(1) Install the ignition switch, cylinder and SKIM, (Refer to 19 - STEERING/COLUMN/IGNITION SWITCH - INSTALLATION).

(2) Install the column into the vehicle and lift the column up onto the mounting studs. Install the mounting nuts and tighten to 12 N·m (105 in. lbs.).

(3) Slide the coupler onto the column shaft and install the coupler bolt. Tighten the coupler bolt to 49 N·m (36 ft. lbs.).

(4) Turn the ignition key to the on position then release and install the shifter interlock cable (Fig. 12) into ignition lock cylinder housing.

(5) Verify ignition switch and shifter interlock operation, (Refer to 21 - TRANSMISSION/TRAN-SAXLE/AUTOMATIC - 42RE/GEAR SHIFT CABLE - ADJUSTMENTS).

(6) Slide the multifunction switch and clock spring onto the column as an assembly (Fig. 11).

(7) Install the multifunction switch mounting screw (Fig. 10).

(8) Connect the multifunction switch (Fig. 9) and ignition switch harness.

(9) Install the upper fixed shroud and mounting screws (Fig. 8).

(10) Install the lower steering column shroud to the steering column. Install and tighten the mounting screw.

(11) Install the upper column shroud. Align the upper shroud to the lower shroud and snap the two shroud halves together.

(12) Install the knee blocker cover (Fig. 5), (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL - INSTALLATION).

(13) Install the cluster bezel by inserting it into the instrument panel (Fig. 4).

(14) Align the steering wheel with the column index spline and install the wheel on the column shaft. Pull the clockspring wire harness through the steering wheel armature spokes.

(15) Install and tighten the steering wheel mounting nut to 61 N·m (45 ft. lbs.).

(16) Connect the steering wheel wire harness connector to the clock spring connector.

(17) Install the airbag, (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS/DRIVER AIRBAG - INSTALLATION).

(18) Connect the negative (ground) cable to the battery.

## COLUMN (Continued)

## SPECIFICATIONS

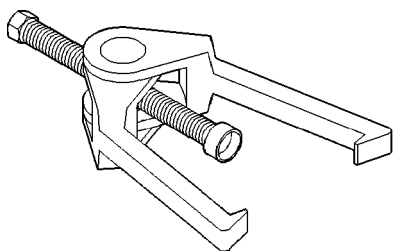
## TORQUE CHART

## TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS

DESCRIPTION	N-m	Ft. Lbs.	In. Lbs.
Steering Column Steering Wheel Nut	61	45	—
Steering Column Column Bracket Nuts	12	—	105
Steering Column Shaft Coupler Bolts	49	36	—

## SPECIAL TOOLS

## STEERING COLUMN

*Puller C-3894-A*

## IGNITION SWITCH

## DESCRIPTION

The electrical ignition switch is located on the steering column. It is used as the main on/off switching device for most electrical components. The mechanical key lock cylinder is used to engage/disengage the electrical ignition switch.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - IGNITION SWITCH

## ELECTRICAL DIAGNOSIS

For ignition switch electrical schematics, refer to Ignition Switch in Wiring Diagrams.

## MECHANICAL DIAGNOSIS (KEY DIFFICULT TO ROTATE)

**Vehicles equipped with an automatic transmission and a floor mounted shifter:** a cable is

used to connect the interlock device in the steering column assembly, to the transmission floor shift lever. This interlock device is used to lock the transmission shifter in the PARK position when the key lock cylinder is rotated to any position. If repair is necessary, the steering column assembly must be replaced, (Refer to 19 - STEERING/COLUMN - REMOVAL).

If the ignition key is difficult to rotate to or from any position, it may not be the fault of the key cylinder or the steering column components. The brake transmission shift interlock cable may be out of adjustment, (Refer to 21 - TRANSMISSION/TRAN-SAXLE/AUTOMATIC - 44RE/SHIFT INTERLOCK MECHANISM - ADJUSTMENTS).

**Vehicles equipped with an automatic transmission and a steering column mounted shifter:** an interlock device is located within the steering column. This interlock device is used to lock the transmission shifter in the PARK position when the key lock cylinder is in the any position. If it is difficult to rotate the key to or from any position, the interlock device within the steering column may be defective. This device is not serviceable. If repair is necessary, the steering column assembly must be replaced, (Refer to 19 - STEERING/COLUMN - REMOVAL).



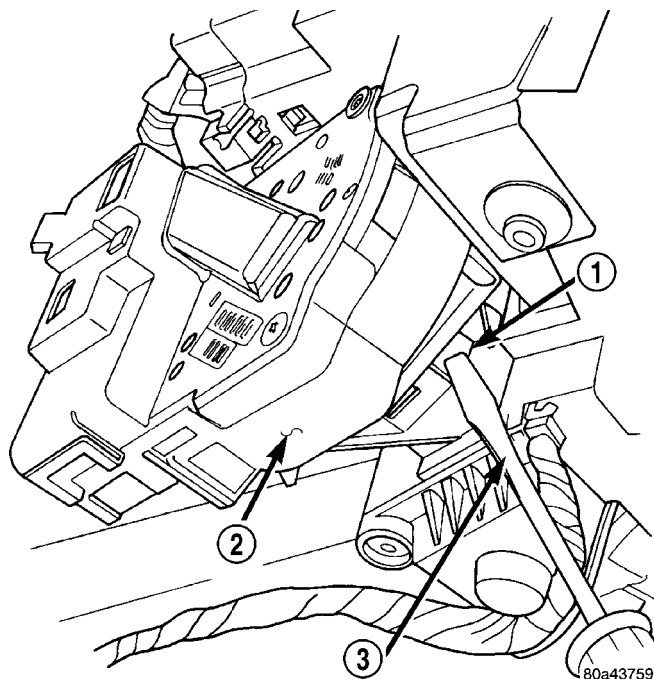
## IGNITION SWITCH (Continued)

## REMOVAL

## IGNITION SWITCH REMOVAL

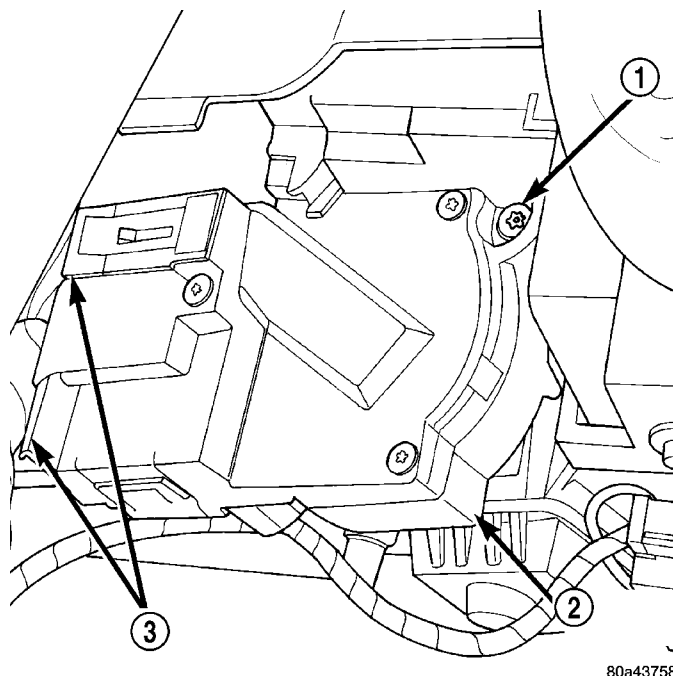
The ignition key must be in the key cylinder for cylinder removal. The key cylinder must be removed first before removing ignition switch.

- (1) Remove key cylinder. Refer to previous steps.
- (2) Remove lower steering column cover screws and remove cover (Fig. 19).



**Fig. 15 Ignition Switch Lock Tab**

- 1 - LOCK TAB
- 2 - IGNITION SWITCH
- 3 - SCREWDRIVER



**Fig. 17 Ignition Switch Removal/Installation**

- 1 - TAMPER PROOF SCREW
- 2 - IGNITION SWITCH
- 3 - ELECTRICAL CONNECTORS

- (3) Remove ignition switch mounting screw (Fig. 17). Use tamper proof torx bit to remove the screw.
- (4) Using a small screwdriver, push on locking tab (Fig. 15) and remove switch from steering column.
- (5) Disconnect two electrical connectors at rear of ignition switch (Fig. 17).

## INSTALLATION

## IGNITION SWITCH INSTALLATION

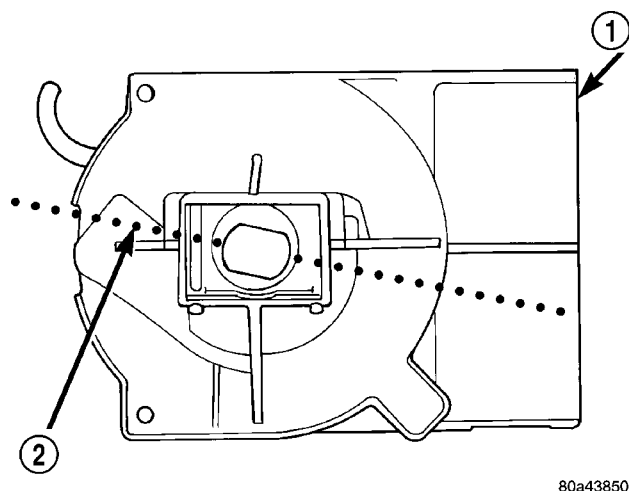
The ignition key must be in the key cylinder for cylinder removal. The key cylinder must be removed first before removing ignition switch.

- (1) Before installing ignition switch, rotate the slot in the switch to the ON position (Fig. 16).
- (2) Connect two electrical connectors to rear of ignition switch. Make sure that locking tabs are fully seated into wiring connectors.
- (3) Position switch to column and install tamper proof screw. Tighten screw to 3 N-m (26 in. lbs.).
- (4) Install steering column lower cover.

## KEY-IN IGNITION SWITCH

## DESCRIPTION

The key-in ignition switch is concealed within and integral to the ignition switch, which is mounted on the steering column. The key-in ignition switch is



**Fig. 16 Switch In ON Position**

- 1 - IGNITION SWITCH
- 2 - ROTATE TO ON POSITION

## KEY-IN IGNITION SWITCH (Continued)

actuated by the ignition cylinder mechanism, and is hard wired between a body ground and the Body Control Module (BCM) through the instrument panel wire harness.

The key-in ignition switch cannot be adjusted or repaired and, if faulty or damaged, the entire ignition switch unit must be replaced. (Refer to 19 - STEERING/COLUMN/LOCK CYLINDER HOUSING - REMOVAL). For complete circuit diagrams, refer to **Body Control Module** in the Contents of Wiring Diagrams.

## OPERATION

The key-in ignition switch closes a path to ground for the BCM when the ignition key is inserted in the ignition cylinder, and opens the ground path when the key is removed from the ignition cylinder. The BCM monitors the key-in ignition switch status through an internal pull-up, then sends the proper switch status messages to other electronic modules over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) data bus network. The key-in ignition switch status is also used by the BCM as an input for chime warning system operation.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING

## KEY-IN IGNITION SWITCH

For complete circuit diagrams, refer to **Body Control Module** in the Contents of Wiring Diagrams.

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, REFER TO GROUP 8M - PASSIVE RESTRAINT SYSTEMS BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Disconnect the instrument panel wire harness connector from the key-in ignition switch connector receptacle on the ignition switch. Check for continuity between the key-in ignition switch sense and ground terminals of the key-in ignition switch connector receptacle. There should be continuity with the key inserted in the ignition cylinder, and no continuity with the key removed from the ignition cylinder. If OK, go to Step 2. If not OK, replace the faulty ignition switch unit.

(2) Check for continuity between the ground circuit cavity of the instrument panel wire harness connector for the key-in ignition switch and a good ground. There should be continuity. If OK, go to Step

3. If not OK, repair the open ground circuit to ground as required.

(3) Disconnect the gray 26-way instrument panel wire harness connector from the Body Control Module (BCM) connector receptacle. Check for continuity between the key-in ignition switch sense circuit cavity of the instrument panel wire harness connector for the key-in ignition switch and a good ground. There should be no continuity. If OK, go to Step 4. If not OK, repair the shorted key-in ignition switch sense circuit as required.

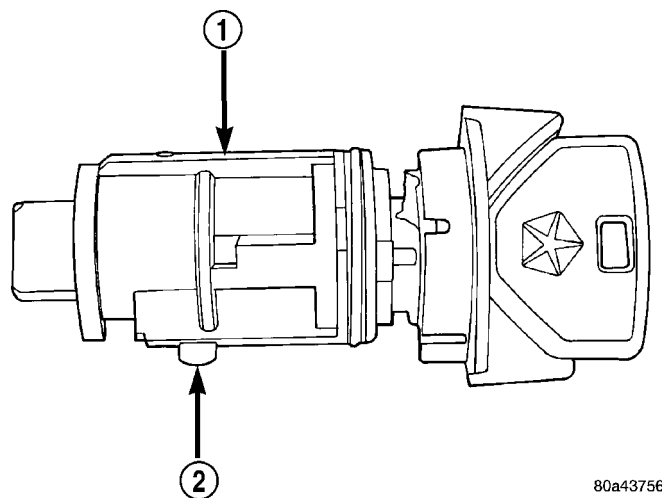
(4) Check for continuity between the key-in ignition switch sense circuit cavities of the instrument panel wire harness connector for the key-in ignition switch and the gray 26-way instrument panel wire harness connector for the BCM. There should be continuity. If OK, use a DRB scan tool and the proper Diagnostic Procedures manual to test the BCM. If not OK, repair the open key-in ignition switch sense circuit as required.

## KEY CYLINDER

## REMOVAL

The ignition key must be in the key cylinder for cylinder removal. The key cylinder must be removed first before removing ignition switch.

- (1) Disconnect negative battery cable at battery.
- (2) If equipped with an automatic transmission, place shifter in PARK position.
- (3) Rotate key to ON position.
- (4) A release tang is located on bottom of key cylinder (Fig. 18).



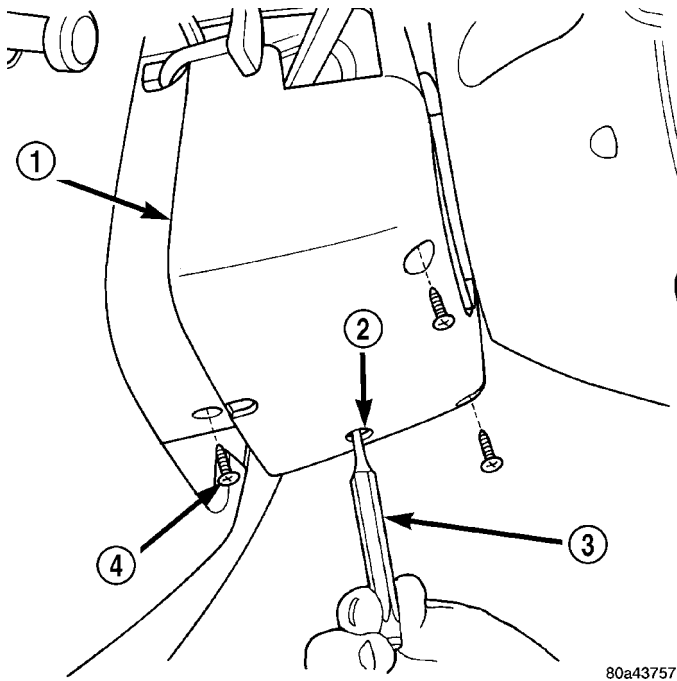
80a43756

**Fig. 18 Key Cylinder Release Tang**

- 1 - KEY CYLINDER  
2 - RELEASE TANG



## KEY CYLINDER (Continued)



80a43757

**Fig. 19 Key Cylinder and Cover Removal**

- 1 - LOWER COVER
- 2 - ACCESS HOLE
- 3 - PIN PUNCH
- 4 - COVER SCREWS (3)

(5) Position a small screwdriver or pin punch into tang access hole on bottom of steering column lower cover (Fig. 19).

(6) Push the pin punch up while pulling key cylinder from steering column.

**INSTALLATION**

The ignition key must be in the key cylinder for cylinder removal. The key cylinder must be removed first before removing ignition switch.

- (1) If equipped with an automatic transmission, place shifter in PARK position.
- (2) Position key cylinder into steering column as it would normally be in the ON position.
- (3) Press key cylinder into column until it snaps into position.

(4) Check mechanical operation of switch. Be sure transmission lever is locked in PARK position after key removal. If key is difficult to rotate or is difficult to remove, the shift lever-to-steering column cable may be out of adjustment or defective. Refer to Transmission for procedures. If key can be removed, release lever mechanism may be defective. Release lever mechanism is not serviced separately. If repair is necessary, the steering column must be replaced. (Refer to 19 - STEERING/COLUMN - REMOVAL).

(5) Connect negative cable to battery.

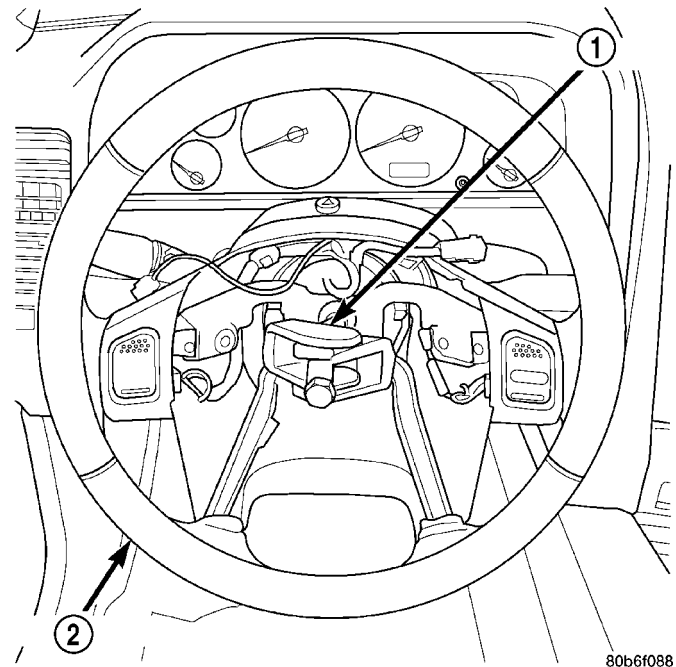
(6) Check electrical operation of switch.

**STEERING WHEEL****REMOVAL**

(1) Disable and remove the drivers side airbag. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS/DRIVER AIRBAG - REMOVAL).

(2) Partially remove the steering wheel bolt and leave the bolt in the column.

(3) Install puller C-3894-A or equivalent using the top of the bolt to push on. (Fig. 20)



80b6f088

**Fig. 20 STEERING WHEEL PULLER**

- 1 - PULLER C-3894-A
- 2 - STEERING WHEEL

## STEERING WHEEL (Continued)

**NOTE:** Ensure the puller jaws are seated in the pockets (Fig. 21) of the steering wheel armature.

- (4) Remove the steering wheel.

## INSTALLATION

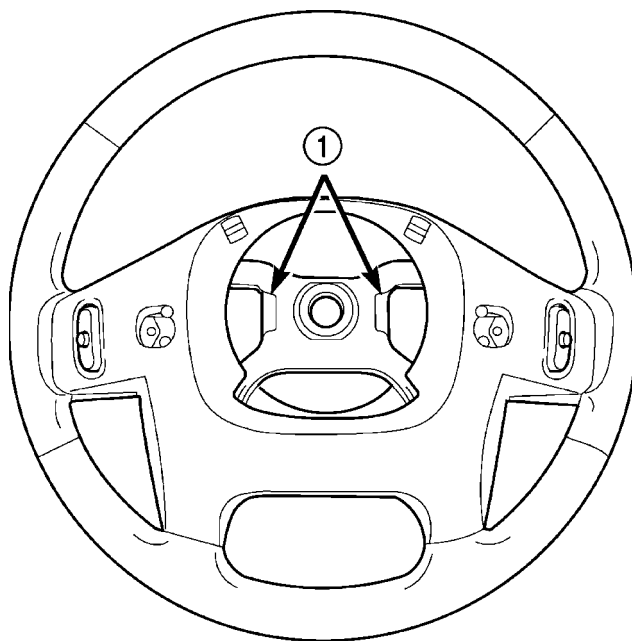
**NOTE:** Do not reuse the old steering wheel bolt (a new bolt must be used)

- (1) Install steering wheel to the column

**NOTE:** Be certain that the steering wheel mounting bolt is tightened to the proper torque specification to ensure proper clockspring operation.

- (2) Install the new steering wheel bolt. Tighten the bolt to 54 N·m (40 ft. lbs.).

- (3) Install the drivers side air bag. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS/DRIVER AIRBAG - INSTALLATION).



80b6f089

**Fig. 21 Steering Wheel Pockets**

1 - STEERING WHEEL POCKETS

## GEAR

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>GEAR</b>		INSTALLATION .....	22
DESCRIPTION .....	17	<b>PITMAN SHAFT BEARING</b>	
OPERATION .....	17	REMOVAL .....	23
REMOVAL .....	17	INSTALLATION .....	23
INSTALLATION .....	17	<b>PITMAN SHAFT SEAL</b>	
ADJUSTMENTS		REMOVAL .....	24
STEERING GEAR .....	18	INSTALLATION .....	24
SPECIFICATIONS		<b>RACK PISTON/VALVE ASSEMBLY</b>	
POWER STEERING GEAR .....	19	REMOVAL .....	24
SPECIAL TOOLS		INSTALLATION .....	25
POWER STEERING GEAR .....	20	<b>STUB SHAFT HOUSING</b>	
<b>PITMAN SHAFT</b>		REMOVAL .....	26
REMOVAL .....	21	INSTALLATION .....	26

## GEAR

### DESCRIPTION

The power steering gear is a recirculating ball type gear (Fig. 1).

The following gear components can be serviced:

- Pitman Shaft and Cover
- Pitman Shaft Bearings
- Pitman Shaft Oil Seal/Dust Seal
- Stud Shaft Housing with Seal
- O-Rings and Teflon Rings

**NOTE:** If rack piston assembly is damaged the gear must be replaced.

### OPERATION

The gear acts as a rolling thread between the worm shaft and rack piston. The worm shaft is supported by a thrust bearing at the lower end and a bearing assembly at the upper end. When the worm shaft is turned the rack piston moves. The rack piston teeth mesh with the pitman shaft. Turning the worm shaft turns the pitman shaft, which turns the steering linkage.

### REMOVAL

**NOTE:** The steering column on vehicles with an automatic transmission may not be equipped with an internal locking shaft that allows the ignition key cylinder to be locked with the key. Alternative methods of locking the steering wheel for service will have to be used.

(1) Place the front wheels in the straight ahead position with the steering wheel centered and locked with a steering wheel lock.

(2) Remove the air cleaner housing,(Refer to 9 - ENGINE/AIR INTAKE SYSTEM/AIR CLEANER HOUSING - REMOVAL).

(3) Drain or siphon the power steering system.

(4) Remove the pressure and return lines (Fig. 2)from the steering gear. Refer to hose removal in this section.

(5) Remove the column coupler shaft bolt (Fig. 2)and remove the shaft from the gear.

(6) Raise and support the vehicle.

(7) Remove the left front wheel and tire assembly.

(8) Remove the pitman arm from gear with Puller C-4150A.

(9) Remove the windshield washer reservoir,(Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/WIPERS/WASHERS/WASHER RESERVOIR - REMOVAL).

(10) Remove the steering gear mounting bolts. Remove the steering gear out of the engine compartment (Fig. 3).

### INSTALLATION

(1) Position the steering gear on the frame rail and install the bolts. Tighten the bolts to 108 N·m (80 ft. lbs.) torque.

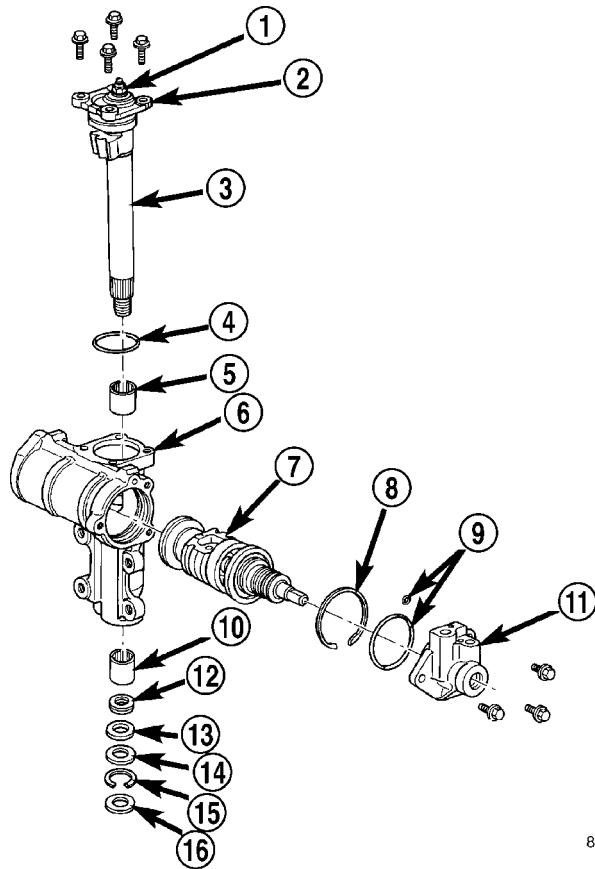
(2) Install the pitman arm and tighten nut to 251 N·m (185 ft. lbs.).

(3) Install windshield washer reservoir,(Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/WIPERS/WASHERS/WASHER RESERVOIR - INSTALLATION).

(4) Install the wheel and tire assembly.

(5) Remove the support and lower the vehicle.

## GEAR (Continued)

**Fig. 1 Recirculating Ball Type Gear**

- 1 - ADJUSTER NUT
- 2 - COVER
- 3 - PITMAN SHAFT
- 4 - O-RING
- 5 - BEARING
- 6 - GEAR HOUSING
- 7 - RACK PISTON
- 8 - RETAINING RING
- 9 - O-RING
- 10 - BEARING
- 11 - STUB SHAFT HOUSING
- 12 - PITMAN SHAFT SEAL
- 13 - PLASTIC BACKUP WASHER
- 14 - METAL BACKUP WASHER
- 15 - RETAINING RING
- 16 - DUST SEAL

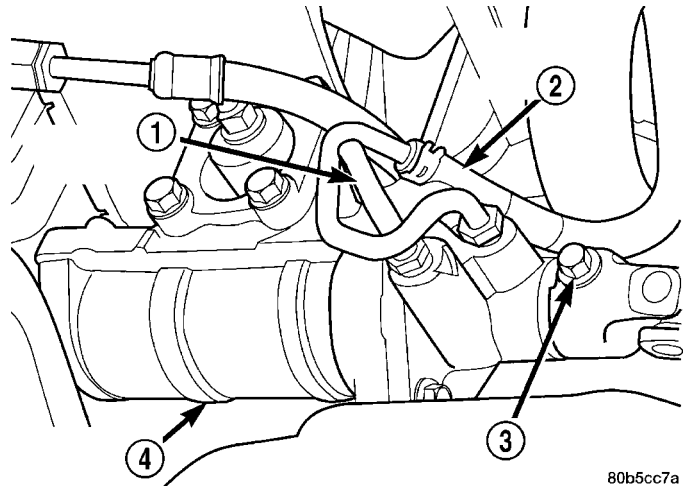
(6) Install the pressure and return hoses to the steering gear and tighten to 20-38 N·m (14-28 ft. lbs.).

(7) Install the column coupler shaft.

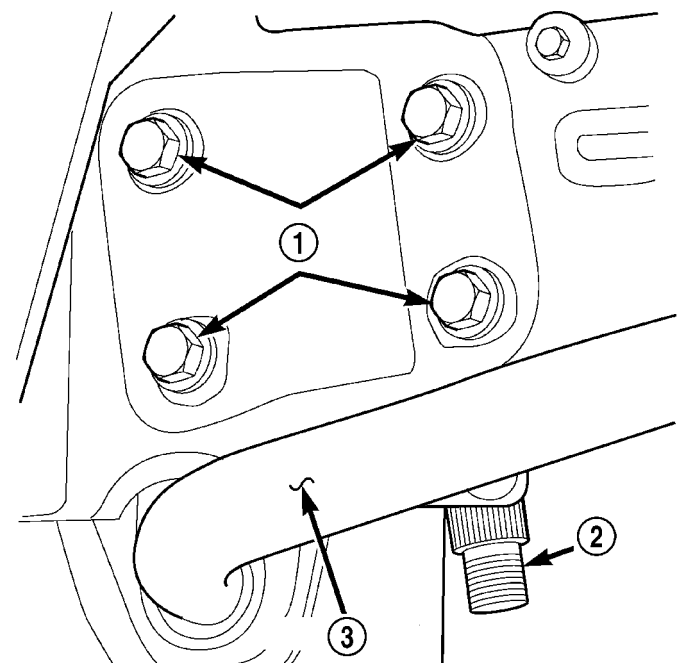
(8) Install the air cleaner housing.(Refer to 9 - ENGINE/AIR INTAKE SYSTEM/AIR CLEANER HOUSING - INSTALLATION).

(9) Remove the steering wheel lock.

(10) Fill the power steering pump (Refer to 19 - STEERING/PUMP - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

**Fig. 2 Pressure And Return Lines**

- 1 - PRESSURE LINE
- 2 - RETURN LINE
- 3 - COUPLER BOLT
- 4 - STEERING GEAR

**Fig. 3 Steering Gear Mounting**

- 1 - MOUNTING BOLTS
- 2 - PITMAN SHAFT
- 3 - STABILIZER BAR

## ADJUSTMENTS

## STEERING GEAR

**NOTE:** Adjusting the steering gear in the vehicle is not recommended. Remove gear from the vehicle and drain the fluid. Then mount gear in a vise to perform adjustments.

## GEAR (Continued)

**OVER-CENTER**

(1) Rotate the stub shaft with Socket 8343 from stop to stop and count the number of turns.

(2) Center the stub shaft by rotating it from the stop 1/2 of the total amount of turns.

(3) Place torque wrench and Socket 8343 in a vertical position on the stub shaft. Rotate the wrench 45 degrees each side of the center and record the highest rotational torque in this range (Fig. 4). This is the Over-Center Rotating Torque.

**NOTE:** The stub shaft must rotate smoothly without sticking or binding.

(4) Rotate the stub shaft between 90° and 180° to the left of center and record the left off-center preload. Repeat this to the right of center and record the right off-center preload. The average of these two recorded readings is the Preload Rotating Torque.

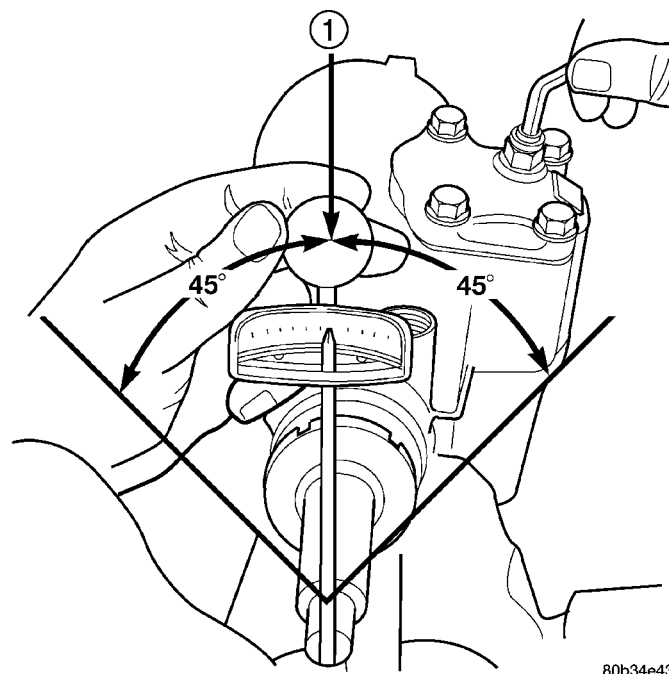
(5) The Over-Center Rotating Torque should be 0.45-0.80 N·m (4-7 in. lbs.) **higher** than the Preload Rotating Torque.

(6) If an adjustment to the Over-Center Rotating Torque is necessary, first loosen the adjuster lock nut. Then turn the pitman shaft adjuster screw back (COUNTERCLOCKWISE) until fully extended, then turn back in (CLOCKWISE) one full turn.

(7) Remeasure Over-Center Rotating Torque. If necessary turn the adjuster screw and repeat measurement until correct Over-Center Rotating Torque is reached.

**NOTE:** To increase the Over-Center Rotating Torque turn the screw **CLOCKWISE**.

(8) Prevent the adjuster screw from turning while tightening adjuster lock nut. Tighten the adjuster lock nut to 37-52 N·m (27-38 ft. lbs.).



80b34e43

**Fig. 4 Checking Over-center Rotation Torque**

1 - CENTER

**SPECIFICATIONS****POWER STEERING GEAR***SPECIFICATIONS*

DESCRIPTION	SPECIFICATION
Steering Gear Type	Recirculating Ball
Steering Gear Overall Ratio	12.7:1

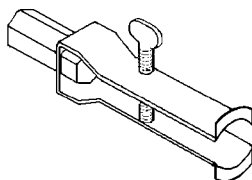
*TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS*

DESCRIPTION	N·m	Ft. Lbs.	In. Lbs.
Pitman Shaft Overcenter Drag New Gear (under 400 miles)	0.45-0.80 + Worm Shaft Preload	—	4-7 + Worm Shaft Preload
Pitman Shaft Overcenter Drag Used Gear (over 400 miles)	0.5-0.6 + Worm Shaft Preload	—	4-5 + Worm Shaft Preload

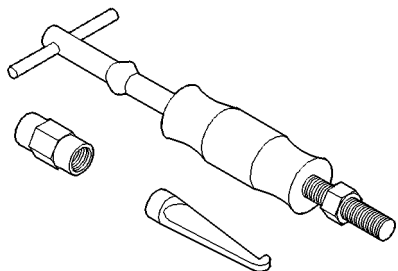
GEAR (Continued)

## SPECIAL TOOLS

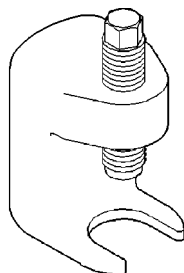
### POWER STEERING GEAR



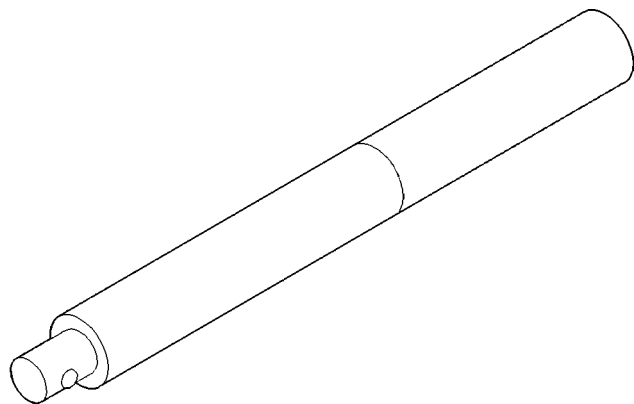
**Puller Seal 7794-A**



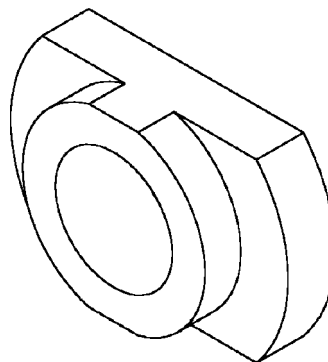
**Slide Hammer C-637**



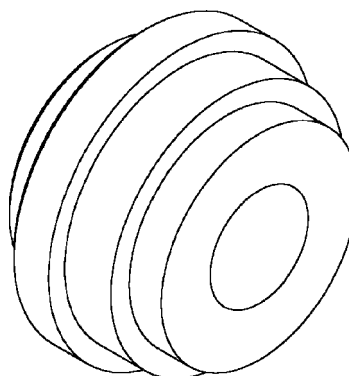
**Remover, Pitman Arm C-4150A**



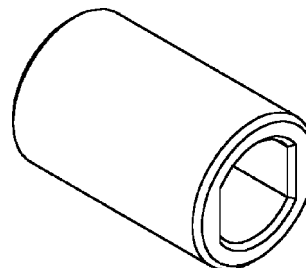
**Handle C-4171**



**Driver 8277**



**Driver 8294**



**Socket 8343**

## PITMAN SHAFT

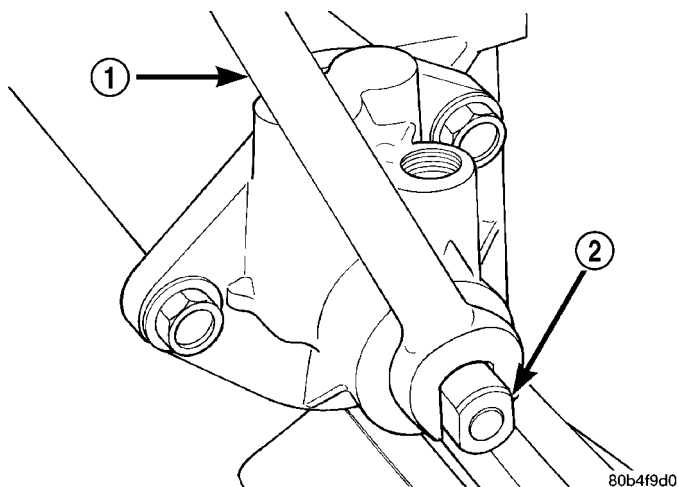
### REMOVAL

(1) Clean exposed end of pitman shaft and housing with a wire brush.

(2) Rotate the stub shaft with a wrench (Fig. 5) from stop to stop and count the number of turns.

(3) Center the stub shaft by rotating it from the stop 1/2 of the total amount of turns.

**NOTE:** The pitman shaft will not clear the housing if it is not centered.



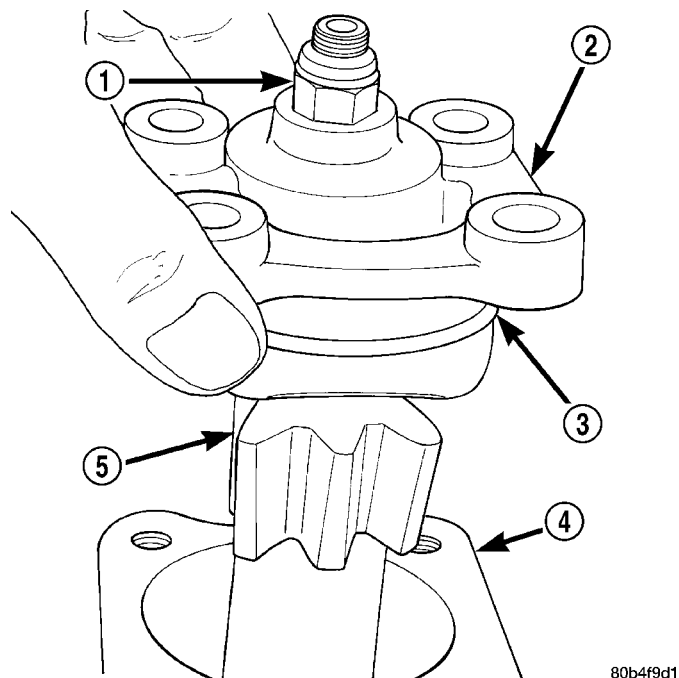
**Fig. 5 Center Stub**

- 1 - WRENCH
- 2 - STUB SHAFT

(4) Remove pitman shaft cover bolts and remove the shaft assembly (Fig. 6).

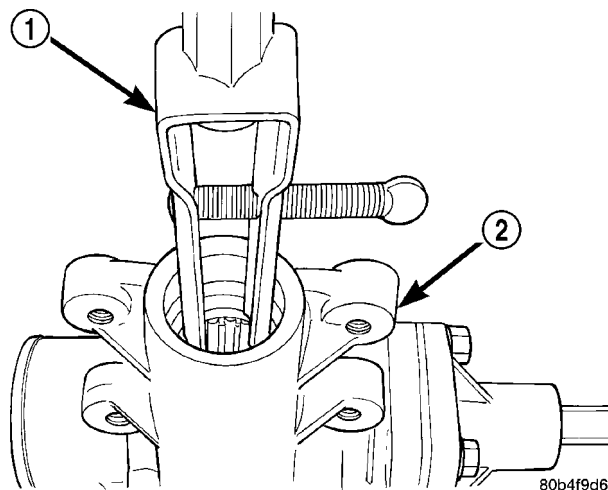
(5) Remove pitman shaft cover o-ring.

(6) Remove pitman shaft dust seal from the housing with a Puller 7794-A and Slide Hammer C-637 (Fig. 7).



**Fig. 6 Cover and Pitman Shaft**

- 1 - ADJUSTER NUT
- 2 - PITMAN SHAFT COVER
- 3 - O-RING
- 4 - GEAR HOUSING
- 5 - PITMAN SHAFT



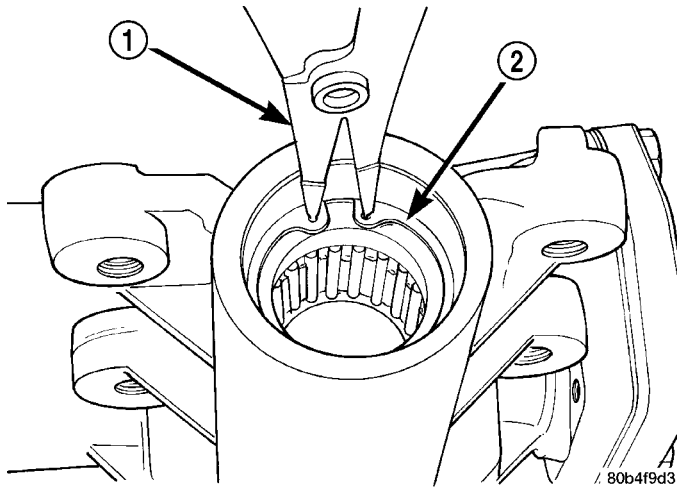
**Fig. 7 Oil Seal Removal**

- 1 - PULLER
- 2 - STEERING GEAR



## PITMAN SHAFT (Continued)

(7) Remove the pitman shaft oil seal retaining ring with snap ring pliers (Fig. 8).



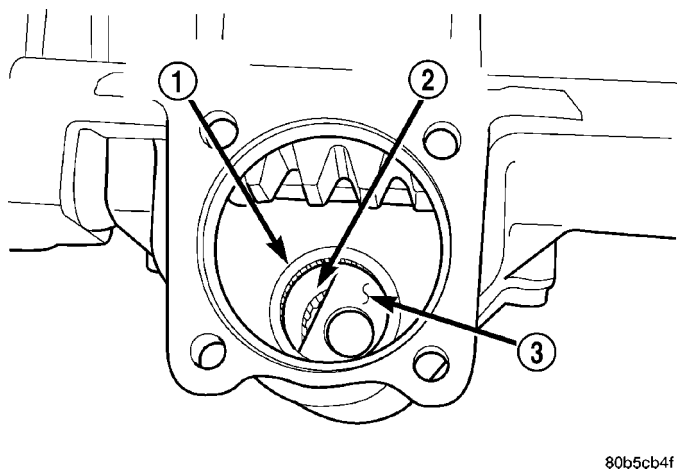
**Fig. 8 Oil Seal Retaining Ring**

- 1 - SNAP RING PLIERS  
2 - RETAINING RING

(8) Remove oil seal metal backup washer then plastic backup washer from the housing.

(9) Remove pitman shaft oil seal from the housing with a Puller 7794-A and Slide Hammer C-637 (Fig. 7).

(10) Drop Driver 8277 through the top bearing and align the driver up with the lower bearing. (Fig. 9). Install Handle C-4171 into the driver and remove the lower bearing.



**Fig. 9 Bearing Driver**

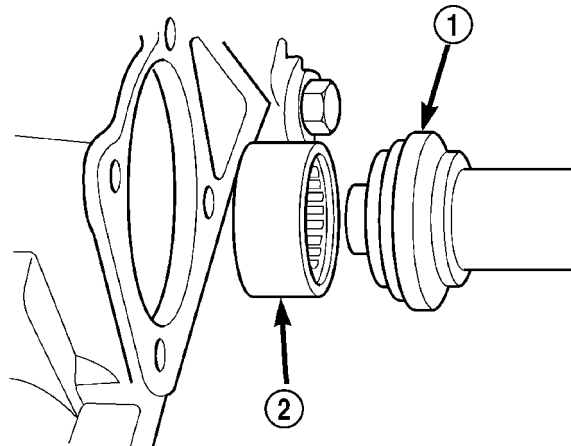
- 1 - UPPER BEARING  
2 - LOWER BEARING  
3 - DRIVER

(11) Turn the gear over and remove the upper bearing with Driver 8277 and Handle C-4171.

## INSTALLATION

(1) Install upper pitman shaft bearing, with Driver 8294 and Handle C-4171 (Fig. 10). Drive bearing into housing until the driver bottoms out.

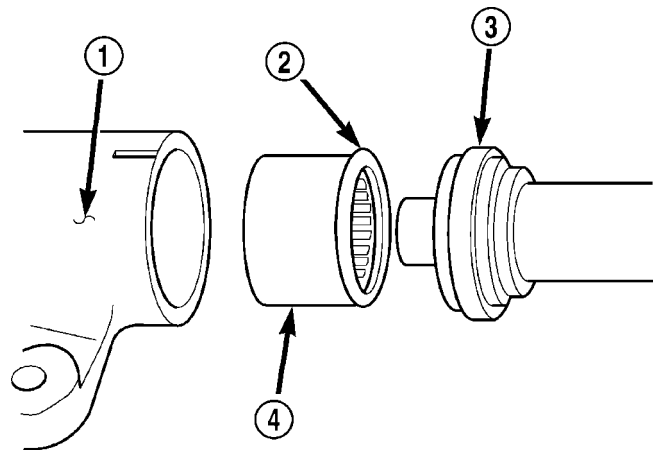
**NOTE:** Install upper pitman shaft bearing with the part number/letters facing the driver.



**Fig. 10 Upper Pitman Shaft Bearing**

- 1 - DRIVER  
2 - UPPER BEARING

(2) Install lower pitman shaft bearing with the other side Driver 8294 and Handle C-4171 (Fig. 11). Drive bearing into housing until the bearing shoulder is seated against the housing.



**Fig. 11 Lower Pitman Shaft Bearing**

- 1 - STEERING GEAR  
2 - BEARING SHOULDER  
3 - DRIVER  
4 - LOWER BEARING

## PITMAN SHAFT (Continued)

- (3) Coat the oil seal and backup washers with **special greases** supplied with the new seal.
- (4) Install the oil seal with Driver 8294 and Handle C-4171.
- (5) Install plastic backup washer.

**NOTE:** The plastic backup washer has a lip on the inside diameter that faces down towards the oil seal.

- (6) Install metal backup washer.
- (7) Install the retainer ring with snap ring pliers.
- (8) Coat the dust seal with **special grease** supplied with the new seal.
- (9) Install dust seal with Driver 8294 and Handle C-4171.
- (10) Install new pitman shaft cover o-ring.
- (11) Install pitman shaft assembly into the housing.
- (12) Install cover bolts and tighten to 62 N·m (46 ft. lbs.).
- (13) Perform over-center rotation torque adjustment.

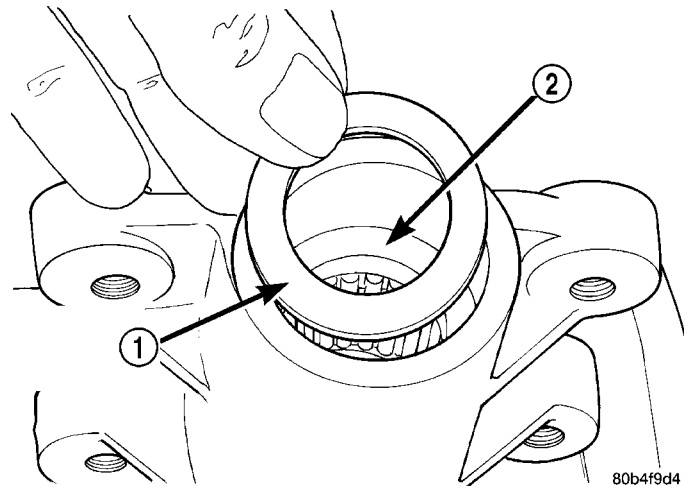
## PITMAN SHAFT BEARING

## REMOVAL

- (1) Clean exposed end of pitman shaft and housing with a wire brush.
- (2) Rotate the stub shaft with a wrench (Fig. 5) from stop to stop and count the number of turns.
- (3) Center the stub shaft by rotating it from the stop 1/2 of the total amount of turns.

**NOTE:** The pitman shaft will not clear the housing if it is not centered.

- (4) Remove pitman shaft cover bolts and remove the shaft assembly (Fig. 6).
- (5) Remove pitman shaft cover o-ring.
- (6) Remove pitman shaft dust seal from the housing with a Puller 7794-A and Slide Hammer C-637 (Fig. 7).
- (7) Remove the pitman shaft oil seal retaining ring with snap ring pliers (Fig. 8).
- (8) Remove oil seal metal backup washer then plastic backup washer from the housing (Fig. 12).
- (9) Remove pitman shaft oil seal from the housing with a Puller 7794-A and Slide Hammer C-637 (Fig. 7).
- (10) Drop Driver 8277 through the top bearing and align the driver up with the lower bearing. (Fig. 9). Install Handle C-4171 into the driver and remove the lower bearing.
- (11) Turn the gear over and remove the upper bearing with Driver 8277 and Handle C-4171.



**Fig. 12 Backup Washers**

- 1 - METAL BACK UP WASHER  
2 - PLASTIC BACK UP WASHER

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Install upper pitman shaft bearing, with Driver 8294 and Handle C-4171 (Fig. 10). Drive bearing into housing until the driver bottoms out.

**NOTE:** Install upper pitman shaft bearing with the part number/letters facing the driver.

- (2) Install lower pitman shaft bearing with the other side Driver 8294 and Handle C-4171 (Fig. 11). Drive bearing into housing until the bearing shoulder is seated against the housing.
- (3) Coat the oil seal and backup washers with **special greases** supplied with the new seal.
- (4) Install the oil seal with Driver 8294 and Handle C-4171.
- (5) Install plastic backup washer.

**NOTE:** The plastic backup washer has a lip on the inside diameter that faces down towards the oil seal.

- (6) Install metal backup washer.
- (7) Install the retainer ring with snap ring pliers.
- (8) Coat the dust seal with **special grease** supplied with the new seal.
- (9) Install dust seal with Driver 8294 and Handle C-4171.
- (10) Install new pitman shaft cover o-ring.
- (11) Install pitman shaft assembly into the housing.
- (12) Install cover bolts and tighten to 62 N·m (46 ft. lbs.).
- (13) Perform over-center rotation torque adjustment.

## PITMAN SHAFT SEAL

### REMOVAL

- (1) Clean exposed end of pitman shaft and housing with a wire brush.
- (2) Rotate the stub shaft with a wrench (Fig. 5) from stop to stop and count the number of turns.
- (3) Center the stub shaft by rotating it from the stop 1/2 of the total amount of turns.

**NOTE: The pitman shaft will not clear the housing if it is not centered.**

- (4) Remove pitman shaft cover bolts and remove the shaft assembly (Fig. 6).
- (5) Remove pitman shaft cover o-ring.
- (6) Remove pitman shaft dust seal from the housing with a Puller 7794-A and Slide Hammer C-637 (Fig. 7).
- (7) Remove the pitman shaft oil seal retaining ring with snap ring pliers (Fig. 8).
- (8) Remove oil seal metal backup washer then plastic backup washer from the housing (Fig. 12).
- (9) Remove pitman shaft oil seal from the housing with a Puller 7794-A and Slide Hammer C-637 (Fig. 7).
- (10) Drop Driver 8277 through the top bearing and align the driver up with the lower bearing. (Fig. 9). Install Handle C-4171 into the driver and remove the lower bearing.
- (11) Turn the gear over and remove the upper bearing with Driver 8277 and Handle C-4171.

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Install upper pitman shaft bearing, with Driver 8294 and Handle C-4171 (Fig. 10). Drive bearing into housing until the driver bottoms out.

**NOTE: Install upper pitman shaft bearing with the part number/letters facing the driver.**

- (2) Install lower pitman shaft bearing with the other side Driver 8294 and Handle C-4171 (Fig. 11). Drive bearing into housing until the bearing shoulder is seated against the housing.
- (3) Coat the oil seal and backup washers with **special greases** supplied with the new seal.
- (4) Install the oil seal with Driver 8294 and Handle C-4171.
- (5) Install plastic backup washer.

**NOTE: The plastic backup washer has a lip on the inside diameter that faces down towards the oil seal.**

- (6) Install metal backup washer.

- (7) Install the retainer ring with snap ring pliers.
- (8) Coat the dust seal with **special grease** supplied with the new seal.
- (9) Install dust seal with Driver 8294 and Handle C-4171.
- (10) Install new pitman shaft cover o-ring.
- (11) Install pitman shaft assembly into the housing.
- (12) Install cover bolts and tighten to 62 N·m (46 ft. lbs.).
- (13) Perform over-center rotation torque adjustment.

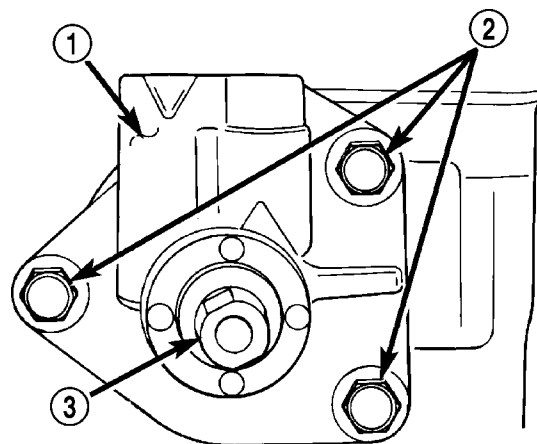
## RACK PISTON/VALVE ASSEMBLY

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove the steering gear (Refer to 19 - STEERING/GEAR - REMOVAL).
- (2) Clean exposed end of pitman shaft and housing with a wire brush.
- (3) Rotate the stub shaft with a wrench (Fig. 5) from stop to stop and count the number of turns.
- (4) Center the stub shaft by rotating it from the stop 1/2 of the total amount of turns.

**NOTE: The pitman shaft will not clear the housing if it is not centered.**

- (5) Remove pitman shaft cover bolts and remove the shaft assembly (Fig. 6).
- (6) Remove the pitman shaft cover o-ring.
- (7) Remove stub shaft housing bolts (Fig. 13).



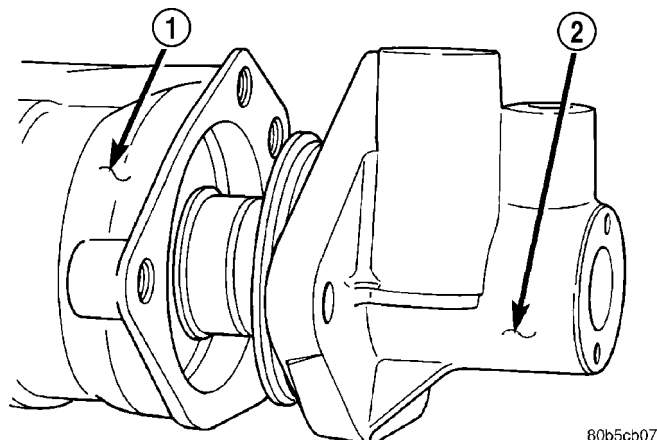
80b5cb06

**Fig. 13 Stub Shaft Housing**

- 1 - STUB SHAFT HOUSING
- 2 - BOLTS
- 3 - STUB SHAFT

## RACK PISTON/VALVE ASSEMBLY (Continued)

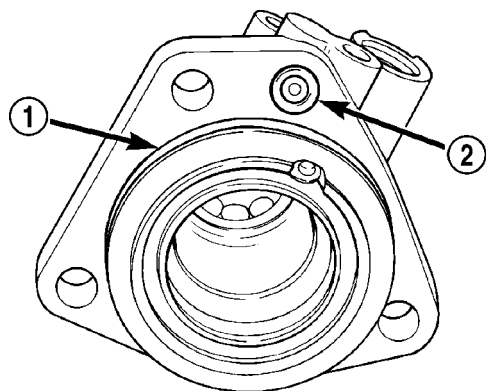
(8) Remove the housing from the stub shaft (Fig. 14).



**Fig. 14 Housing Removal**

- 1 - STEERING GEAR  
2 - STUB SHAFT HOUSING

(9) Remove stub shaft housing o-rings (Fig. 15).



**Fig. 15 O-Rings**

- 1 - LARGE O-RING  
2 - SMALL O-RING

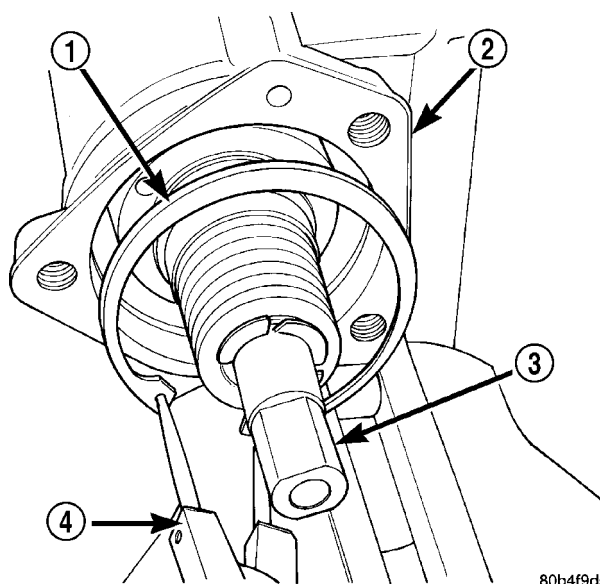
(10) Remove the rack piston/valve assembly retaining ring with snap ring pliers (Fig. 16).

(11) Pull the rack piston/valve assembly out of the gear housing (Fig. 17).

**NOTE:** If the rack piston is damage the gear assembly must be replaced.

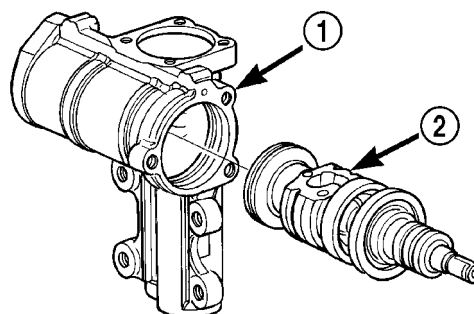
(12) Remove teflon rings and o-ring (Fig. 18) from the rack piston/valve assembly.

**CAUTION:** The rack piston teflon ring and o-ring must be replaced whenever the assembly is removed from the housing.



**Fig. 16 Retaining Ring**

- 1 - SNAP RING  
2 - STUB SHAFT HOUSING  
3 - STUB SHAFT  
4 - SNAP RING PLIERS



**Fig. 17 Rack Piston/Valve Assembly**

- 1 - STEERING GEAR  
2 - RACK PISTON/VALVE ASSEMBLY

## INSTALLATION

(1) Lubricate new o-ring and teflon rings with power steering fluid and install on the rack piston/valve assembly.

(2) Lubricate the rack piston/valve assembly with power steering fluid.

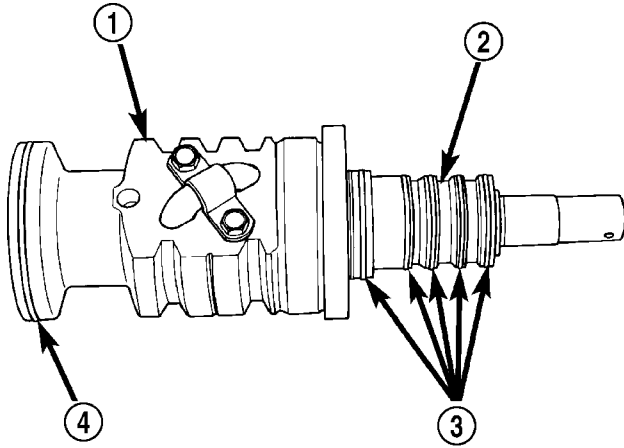
(3) Slide the assembly into the gear housing.

(4) Install new stub shaft housing o-rings and install the housing. Tighten the housing bolts to 62 N·m (46 ft. lbs.).

(5) Install new o-ring on the pitman shaft cover.

(6) Install the pitman shaft into the gear housing.

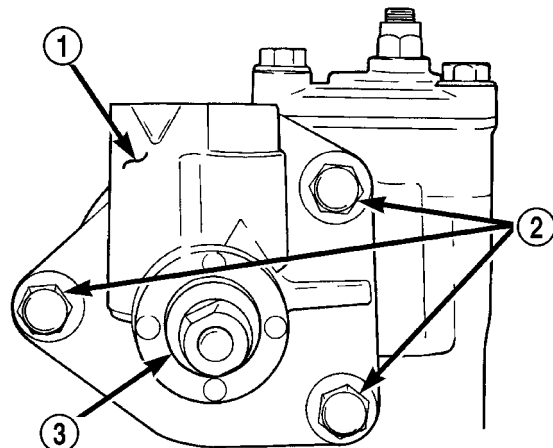
## RACK PISTON/VALVE ASSEMBLY (Continued)



80b6b1a3

**Fig. 18 Teflon Rings And O-Ring**

- 1 - RACK PISTON
- 2 - VALVE
- 3 - TEFLON RINGS
- 4 - TEFLON AND O-RING



80b5cc7e

**Fig. 19 Stub Shaft Housing**

- 1 - STUB SHAFT HOUSING
- 2 - BOLTS
- 3 - STUB SHAFT

(7) Install the pitman shaft cover bolts and tighten to 62 N·m (46 ft. lbs.).

(8) Perform over-center rotation torque adjustment (Refer to 19 - STEERING/GEAR - ADJUSTMENTS)..

(9) Install the steering gear (Refer to 19 - STEERING/GEAR - INSTALLATION).

(10) Fill the power steering pump (Refer to 19 - STEERING/PUMP - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

## STUB SHAFT HOUSING

## REMOVAL

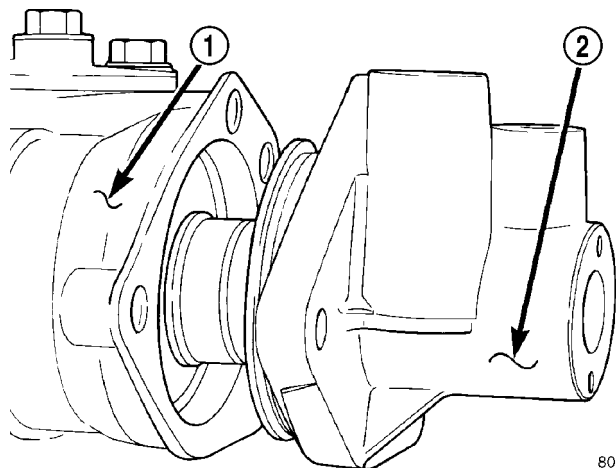
**NOTE:** If stub shaft housing, seal or bearing is damaged the housing must be replaced.

- (1) Remove the steering gear (Refer to 19 - STEERING/GEAR - REMOVAL).
- (2) Remove stub shaft housing bolts (Fig. 19).
- (3) Remove housing from the steering gear (Fig. 20).
- (4) Remove stub shaft housing o-rings (Fig. 15).

## INSTALLATION

**NOTE:** If stub shaft housing, seal or bearing is damaged the housing must be replaced.

- (1) Grease stub shaft seal with **special grease**-supplied with new stub shaft housing.
- (2) Install new stub shaft housing o-rings.
- (3) Install housing on the steering gear.
- (4) Install the housing bolts and tighten to 62 N·m ( 46 ft. lbs.).



80b4b857

**Fig. 20 Housing Removal**

- 1 - STEERING GEAR
- 2 - HOUSING

(5) Install the steering gear (Refer to 19 - STEERING/GEAR - INSTALLATION).

(6) Fill the power steering pump (Refer to 19 - STEERING/PUMP - STANDARD PROCEDURE).



LINKAGE

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>LINKAGE</b>		OPERATION .....	30
DESCRIPTION		REMOVAL .....	30
STEERING LINKAGE – RIGHT HAND DRIVE		INSTALLATION .....	30
(RHD) VEHICLES.....	27	<b>PITMAN ARM</b>	
DESCRIPTION .....	27	DESCRIPTION .....	31
SPECIFICATIONS		OPERATION .....	31
TORQUE CHART .....	29	REMOVAL .....	31
SPECIAL TOOLS		INSTALLATION .....	31
STEERING LINKAGE .....	29	<b>TIE ROD END</b>	
<b>DAMPER</b>		DESCRIPTION .....	31
DESCRIPTION .....	30	OPERATION .....	31
OPERATION .....	30	REMOVAL .....	31
REMOVAL .....	30	INSTALLATION .....	31
INSTALLATION .....	30		
<b>DRAG LINK</b>			
DESCRIPTION .....	30		

LINKAGE

DESCRIPTION

STEERING LINKAGE – RIGHT HAND DRIVE (RHD) VEHICLES

Vehicles equipped with right hand drive (RHD) steering utilize the same components of left hand drive vehicles. The RHD Steering linkage is designed as a mirror image of left hand drive linkage with the exception of the steering damper (Fig. 1), which is mounted on the same side of the vehicle whether RHD or LHD. See figure below for reference. All specifications are the same as LHD. Refer to Group 19, Steering of the gasoline engine service manual for additional information.

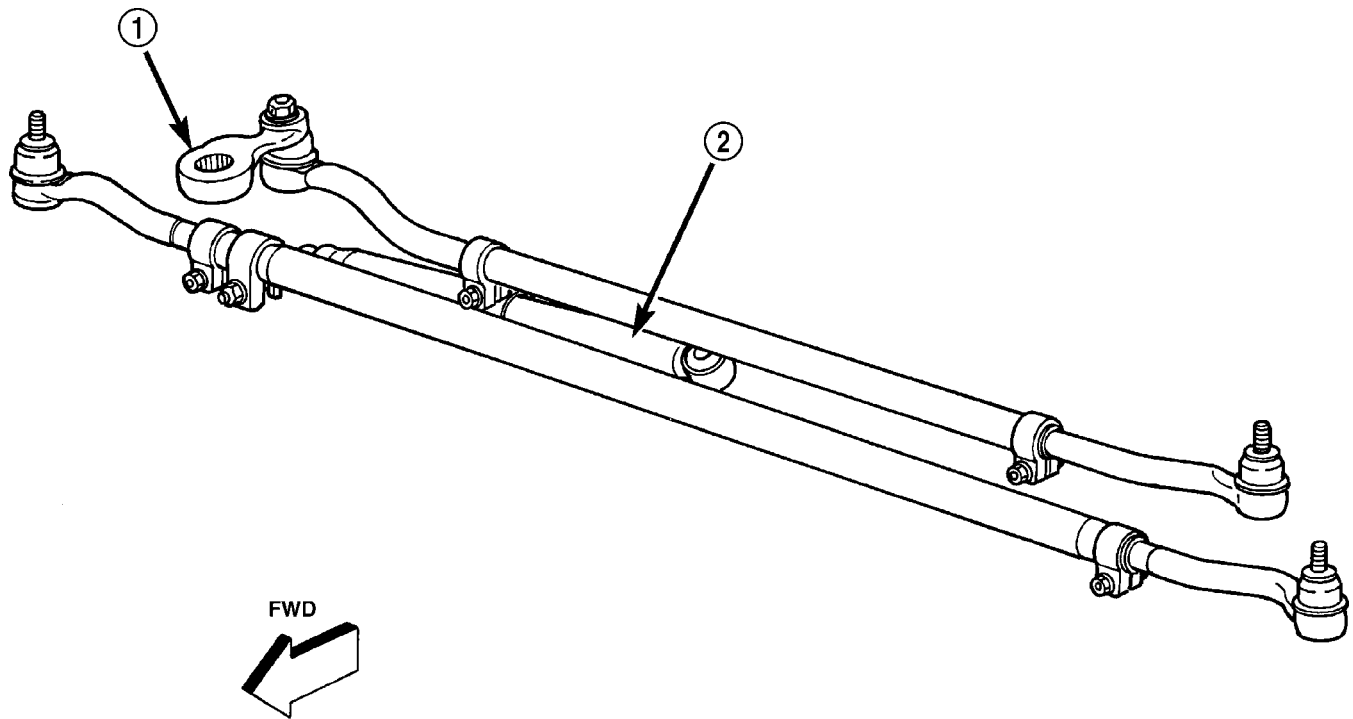
DESCRIPTION

The steering linkage consists of a pitman arm, drag link, tie rod, and steering dampener (Fig. 2). An adjustment sleeve on the tie rod is used to set wheel toe position. The sleeve on the drag link is used for steering wheel centering.

**CAUTION:** If any steering components are replaced or serviced an alignment must be performed, to ensure the vehicle meets all alignment specifications.

**CAUTION:** Components attached with a nut and cotter pin must be torqued to specification. Then if the slot in the nut does not line up with the cotter pin hole, tighten nut until it is aligned. Never loosen the nut to align the cotter pin hole.

## LINKAGE (Continued)

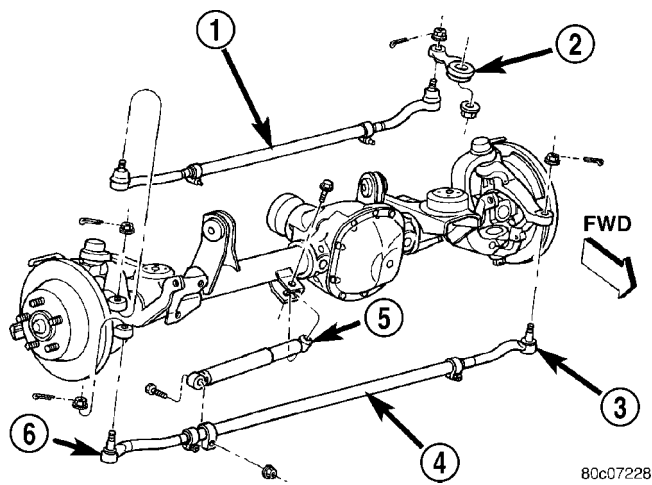


80c06cfb

**Fig. 1 Right Hand Drive Steering Linkage**

1 - PITMAN ARM

2 - STEERING DAMPENER



80c07228

**Fig. 2 Steering Linkage**

- 1 - DRAG LINK
- 2 - PITMAN ARM
- 3 - TIE ROD END
- 4 - TIE ROD
- 5 - DAMPER
- 6 - TIE ROD END



## LINKAGE (Continued)

## SPECIFICATIONS

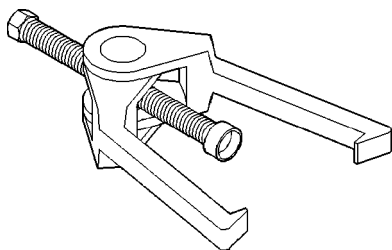
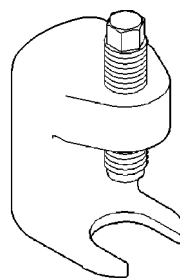
## TORQUE CHART

## TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS

DESCRIPTION	N-m	Ft. Lbs.	In. Lbs.
Pitman Arm Shaft Nut	251	185	—
Drag Link Pitman Arm Nut	88	65	—
Drag Link Knuckle Nut	47	35	—
Drag Link Clamp Nuts	41	30	—
Tie Rod Knuckle Nut	47	35	—
Tie Rod Clamp Nuts	41	30	—
Steering Damper Axle Bolt	88	65	—
Steering Damper Tie Rod Nut	41	30	—

## SPECIAL TOOLS

## STEERING LINKAGE

***Puller C-3894-A******Remover Pitman C-4150A***

## DAMPER

### DESCRIPTION

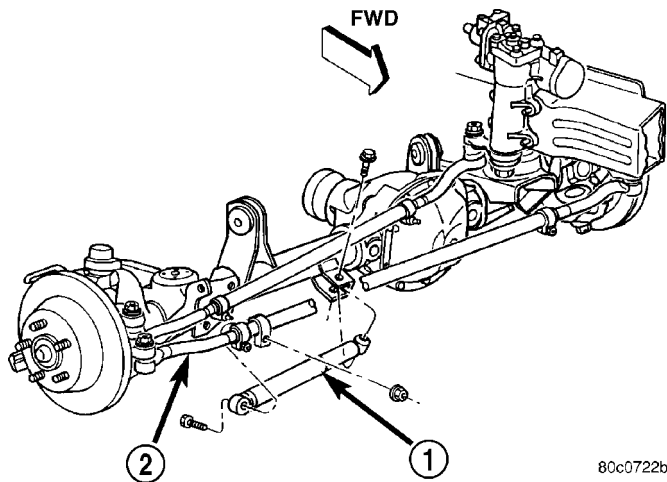
The damper is mounted to the axle housing and the tie rod end. The damper consists of steel tube shock absorber with a permanent bushed end.

### OPERATION

The steering damper provides steering system damping.

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove the nut from the ball stud at the tie rod.
- (2) Remove the steering damper from the tie rod.
- (3) Remove the steering damper nut and bolt from the axle bracket (Fig. 3).



**Fig. 3 Steering Damper**

- 1 - DAMPER  
2 - TIE ROD

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Install the steering damper to the axle bracket and tie rod.
- (2) Install the steering damper bolt in the axle bracket and tighten bolt to 88 N·m (65 ft. lbs.).
- (3) Install the nut at the tie rod and tighten to 41 N·m (30 ft. lbs.).

## DRAG LINK

### DESCRIPTION

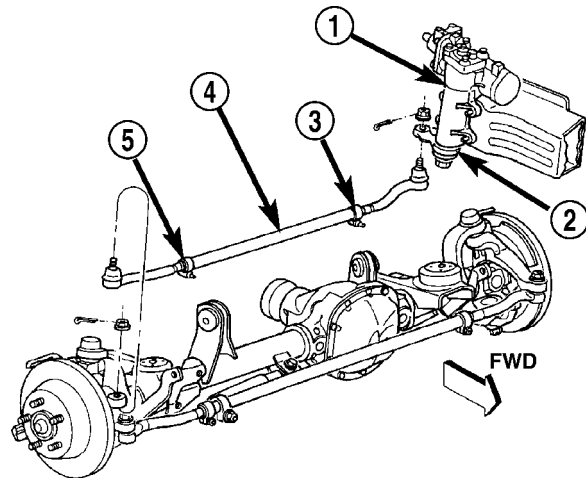
The drag link and ends are comprised of two forged ends connected by a steel adjusting tube. The drag link connects the steering gear pitman arm to the steering knuckle. The larger offset end is attached to the pitman arm.

### OPERATION

The sleeve is used for steering wheel centering.

### REMOVAL

- (1) Raise and support the vehicle.
- (2) Remove right wheel and tire assembly.
- (3) Remove the cotter pins and nuts at the right steering knuckle and pitman arm (Fig. 4).
- (4) Remove the drag link from the steering knuckle and pitman arm Puller C-3894-A.
- (5) Loosen adjustment sleeve clamp bolts and unscrew the tie rod ends from the adjustment sleeve.



**Fig. 4 Drag Link**

- 1 - STEERING GEAR  
2 - PITMAN ARM  
3 - CLAMP  
4 - DRAG LINK  
5 - CLAMP

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Screw the tie rod ends into the adjustment sleeve.
- (2) Install the drag link onto the right steering knuckle and pitman arm.
- (3) Tighten the nut at the steering knuckle to 47 N·m (35 ft. lbs.). Tighten the pitman nut to 88 N·m (65 ft. lbs.). Install new cotter pins.
- (4) Position clamp bolts to their original position and tighten to 41 N·m (30 ft. lbs.).
- (5) Install right wheel and tire assembly.
- (6) Remove support and lower the vehicle.
- (7) Center the steering wheel.

## PITMAN ARM

### DESCRIPTION

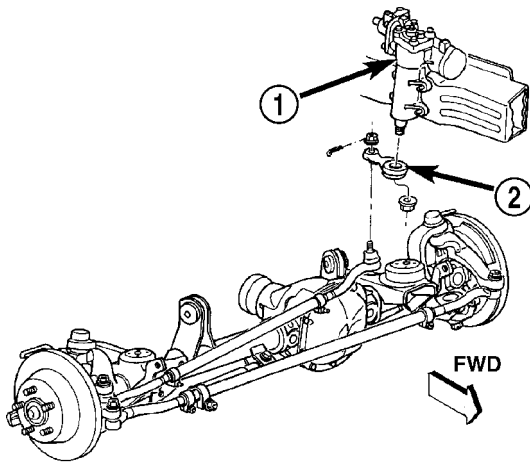
The pitman arm is attached at one end of the steering gear's sector shaft. The other end is connected to the drag link.

### OPERATION

The pitman arm transfers rotary motion into side to side motion.

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove the cotter pin and nut from the drag link at the pitman arm (Fig. 5).
- (2) Remove the drag link ball stud from the pitman arm with a puller.
- (3) Remove the nut and washer from the steering gear shaft. Mark the pitman shaft and pitman arm for installation reference. Remove the pitman arm from steering gear with Puller C-4150A.



80c0722a

**Fig. 5 Pitman Arm**

- 1 - STEERING GEAR
- 2 - PITMAN ARM

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Align and install the pitman arm on steering gear shaft.
- (2) Install the washer and nut on the shaft and tighten the nut to 251 N·m (185 ft. lbs.).
- (3) Install drag link ball stud to pitman arm. Install nut and tighten to 88 N·m (65 ft. lbs.). Install a new cotter pin.

## TIE ROD END

### DESCRIPTION

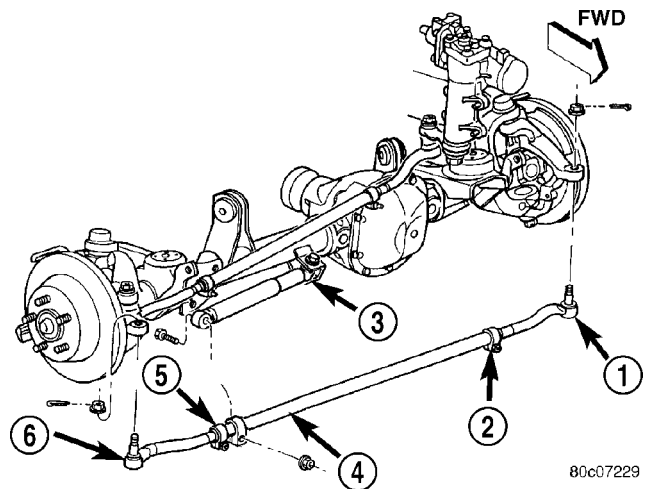
The ends are forged, with a lubed for life ball socket.

### OPERATION

The tie rod ends connect the drag link to the wheel assembly. The tie rod provides toe alignment and transfers steering input from the drag link to the wheels.

### REMOVAL

- (1) Raise and support the vehicle.
- (2) Remove wheel and tire assemblies.
- (3) Remove the damper nut from the tie rod clamp (Fig. 6).
- (4) Remove the damper from the tie rod.
- (5) Remove the cotter pins and nuts from the tie rod ends at the steering knuckles (Fig. 6).
- (6) Remove the tie rod ends from the steering knuckles with Puller C-3894-A..
- (7) Loosen the adjustment sleeve clamp bolts and unscrew the tie rod ends from the sleeve.



80c07229

**Fig. 6 Tie Rod Assembly**

- 1 - TIE ROD END
- 2 - CLAMP
- 3 - DAMPER
- 4 - TIE ROD
- 5 - CLAMP
- 6 - TIE ROD END

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Screw the tie rod ends into the adjustment sleeve.
- (2) Install the tie rod on the steering knuckles and install the nuts.
- (3) Tighten the nuts to 47 N·m (35 ft. lbs.). Install new cotter pins and bend end 60°.
- (4) Position the adjustment sleeve clamp bolts to their original location and tighten to 41 N·m (30 ft. lbs.).
- (5) Install the damper on the tie rod and install the nut.
- (6) Tighten the nut to 41 N·m (30 ft. lbs.). Install new cotter pins and bend end 60°.
- (7) Install wheel and tire assemblies.
- (8) Remove support and lower the vehicle.
- (9) Perform toe position adjustment.

## PUMP

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

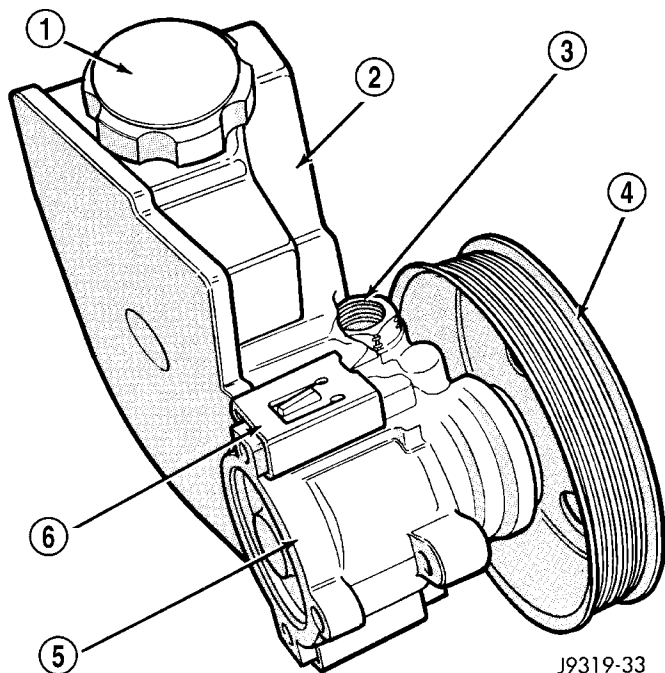
	page		page
<b>PUMP</b>		<b>REMOVAL</b>	
DESCRIPTION - 4.0L, 4.7L	33	REMOVAL - 1/2" PRESSURE HOSE	41
OPERATION		REMOVAL - 1/2" RETURN HOSE	41
OPERATION - 4.7L	33	REMOVAL - 3/8" PRESSURE HOSE	41
OPERATION - 4.0L	34	REMOVAL - 3/8" RETURN HOSE	41
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - PUMP LEAKAGE	34	REMOVAL - 3/8" GEAR OUTLET HOSE	42
STANDARD PROCEDURE		REMOVAL - INLET COOLER HOSE	42
STANDARD PROCEDURE - INITIAL		REMOVAL - OUTLET COOLER HOSE	42
OPERATION - 4.0L	34	<b>INSTALLATION</b>	
STANDARD PROCEDURE - INITIAL		INSTALLATION - 1/2" PRESSURE HOSE	42
OPERATION - 4.7L	34	INSTALLATION - 1/2" RETURN HOSE	42
REMOVAL		INSTALLATION - 3/8" PRESSURE HOSE	43
REMOVAL - 4.0L ENGINE	35	INSTALLATION - 3/8" RETURN HOSE	43
REMOVAL - 4.7L ENGINE	35	INSTALLATION - 3/8" GEAR OUTLET HOSE	43
REMOVAL - 2.7L DIESEL	36	INSTALLATION - INLET COOLER HOSE	43
INSTALLATION		INSTALLATION - OUTLET COOLER HOSE	43
INSTALLATION - 4.0L ENGINE	36	<b>HOSES - 2.7L DIESEL</b>	
INSTALLATION - 4.7L ENGINE	36	<b>REMOVAL</b>	
INSTALLATION - 2.7L DIESEL	37	REMOVAL - PRESSURE HOSE - PUMP TO	
SPECIFICATIONS		THE HYDRAULIC FAN MODULE (2.7L	
TORQUE CHART	37	DIESEL)	43
SPECIAL TOOLS		REMOVAL - RETURN HOSE - RESERVOIR	
POWER STEERING PUMP	38	TO THE HYDRAULIC FAN MODULE (2.7L	
<b>FLUID COOLER</b>		DIESEL)	44
DESCRIPTION	38	REMOVAL - PRESSURE HOSE - GEAR TO	
REMOVAL	38	THE HYDRAULIC FAN MODULE (2.7L	
INSTALLATION	39	DIESEL)	44
<b>HOSES - 4.0L</b>		REMOVAL - RETURN HOSE - RESERVOIR	
DESCRIPTION		TO THE PUMP (2.7L DIESEL)	44
DESCRIPTION - PRESSURE LINE	39	REMOVAL - 3/8" GEAR OUTLET HOSE (2.7L	
DESCRIPTION - RETURN LINE	39	DIESEL)	44
OPERATION		REMOVAL - INLET COOLER HOSE (2.7L	
OPERATION - PRESSURE LINE	39	DIESEL)	44
OPERATION - RETURN LINE	39	REMOVAL - OUTLET COOLER HOSE (2.7L	
REMOVAL	39	DIESEL)	44
INSTALLATION	39	<b>INSTALLATION</b>	
<b>HOSES - 4.7L</b>		INSTALLATION - PRESSURE HOSE PUMP	
DESCRIPTION		TO THE HYDRAULIC FAN MODULE (2.7L	
DESCRIPTION - 1/2" PRESSURE HOSE	40	DIESEL)	45
DESCRIPTION - 1/2" RETURN HOSE	40	INSTALLATION - RETURN HOSE -	
DESCRIPTION - 3/8" PRESSURE HOSE	40	RESERVOIR TO THE HYDRAULIC FAN	
DESCRIPTION - 3/8" GEAR OUTLET HOSE	40	MODULE (2.7L DIESEL)	45
DESCRIPTION - 3/8" RETURN HOSE	41	INSTALLATION - PRESSURE HOSE - GEAR	
OPERATION		TO HYDRAULIC FAN MODULE (2.7L	
OPERATION - 1/2" PRESSURE HOSE	41	DIESEL)	45
OPERATION - 1/2" RETURN HOSE	41	INSTALLATION - RETURN HOSE -	
OPERATION - 3/8" PRESSURE HOSE	41	RESERVOIR TO THE PUMP (2.7L DIESEL)	45
OPERATION - 3/8" GEAR OUTLET HOSE	41	INSTALLATION - 3/8" GEAR OUTLET HOSE	
OPERATION - 3/8" RETURN HOSE	41	(2.7L DIESEL)	45

INSTALLATION - INLET COOLER HOSE (2.7L DIESEL) .....	46
INSTALLATION - OUTLET COOLER HOSE (2.7L DIESEL) .....	46
<b>PULLEY</b>	
REMOVAL .....	46
REMOVAL - 2.7L DIESEL .....	46
INSTALLATION .....	47

## PUMP

### DESCRIPTION - 4.0L, 4.7L

Hydraulic pressure for the power steering system is provided by a belt driven power steering pump (Fig. 1) and (Fig. 2). The pump shaft has a pressed-on drive pulley that is belt driven by the crankshaft pulley.



**Fig. 1 Pump With Integral Reservoir**

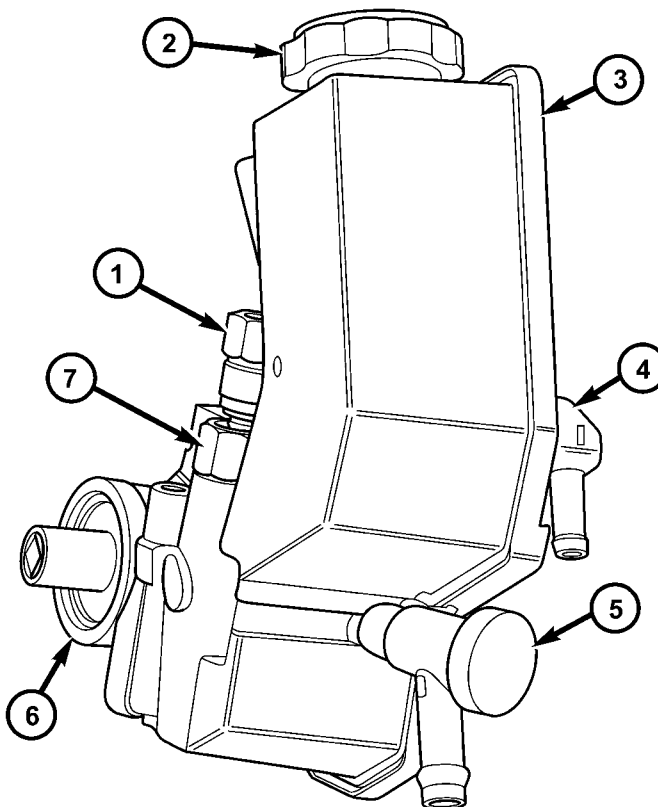
- 1 - CAP
- 2 - FLUID RESERVOIR (TYPICAL)
- 3 - HIGH-PRESSURE FITTING
- 4 - DRIVE PULLEY
- 5 - PUMP BODY
- 6 - RESERVOIR CLIP

## OPERATION

### OPERATION - 4.7L

The power steering pump is a constant flow rate and displacement, vane-type pump. The pump has internal parts that operate submerged in fluid. The flow control orifice and the pressure relief valve, which limits the pump pressure, are internal to the

INSTALLATION - 2.7L DIESEL .....	47
<b>RESERVOIR</b>	
REMOVAL .....	47
REMOVAL - 2.7L DIESEL .....	47
INSTALLATION .....	48
INSTALLATION - 2.7L DIESEL .....	48



80bc1408

**Fig. 2 4.7L POWER STEERING PUMP**

- 1 - PRESSURE HOSE QUICK CONNECT NUT
- 2 - CAP
- 3 - FLUID RESERVOIR
- 4 - LOW-PRESSURE RETURN FROM THE COOLER
- 5 - LOW-PRESSURE RETURN FROM THE HYDRAULIC FAN DRIVE
- 6 - PUMP BODY
- 7 - HIGH PRESSURE FITTING

pump. The reservoir is attached to the pump body with spring clips. The power steering pump is used to drive the hydraulic engine cooling fan, which separates the flow to the fan gerotors and the power steering gear. The power steering pump is connected to the engine cooling fan by pressure and return hoses and the pump is connected to the steering gear via a return hose from the steering cooler (Fig. 2).

## PUMP (Continued)

**NOTE:** Power steering pumps have different pressure rates and are not interchangeable with other pumps.

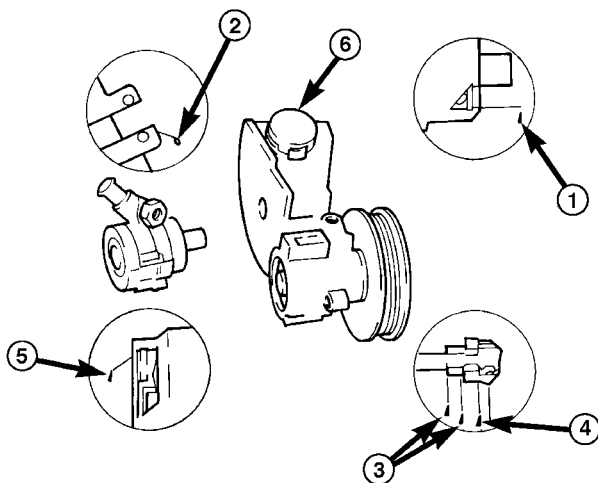
## OPERATION - 4.0L

The power steering pump is a constant flow rate and displacement, vane-type pump. The pump internal parts operate submerged in fluid. The flow control orifice is part of the high pressure line fitting. The pressure relief valve inside the flow control valve limits the pump pressure. The reservoir is attached to the pump body with spring clips. The power steering pump is connected to the steering gear by the pressure and return hoses (Fig. 1).

**NOTE:** Power steering pumps have different pressure rates and are not interchangeable with other pumps.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - PUMP LEAKAGE

(1) Possible areas of pump leakage (Fig. 3).



1. BUSHING (BEARING) WORN, SEAL WORN. REPLACE PUMP.
2. REPLACE RESERVOIR O-RING SEAL.
3. TORQUE HOSE FITTING NUT TO SPECIFICATIONS. IF LEAKAGE PERSISTS, REPLACE O-RING SEAL.
4. TORQUE FITTING TO SPECIFICATIONS. IF LEAKAGE PERSISTS, REPLACE O-RING SEAL.
5. REPLACE PUMP.
6. CHECK OIL LEVEL: IF LEAKAGE PERSISTS WITH THE LEVEL CORRECT AND CAP TIGHT, REPLACE THE CAP.

80a1c3c3

**Fig. 3 4.0L Power Steering Pump**

## STANDARD PROCEDURE

STANDARD PROCEDURE - INITIAL OPERATION  
- 4.0L

**WARNING:** THE FLUID LEVEL SHOULD BE CHECKED WITH ENGINE OFF TO PREVENT INJURY FROM MOVING COMPONENTS.

**CAUTION:** Use MOPAR Power Steering Fluid or equivalent. Do not use automatic transmission fluid and do not overfill.

Wipe filler cap clean, then check the fluid level. The dipstick should indicate **COLD** when the fluid is at normal ambient temperature.

(1) Fill the pump fluid reservoir to the proper level and let the fluid settle for at least two minutes.

(2) Start the engine and let run for a few seconds then turn engine off.

(3) Add fluid if necessary. Repeat the above procedure until the fluid level remains constant after running the engine.

(4) Raise the front wheels off the ground.

(5) Slowly turn the steering wheel right and left, lightly contacting the wheel stops at least 20 times.

(6) Check the fluid level add if necessary.

(7) Lower the vehicle, start the engine and turn the steering wheel slowly from lock to lock.

(8) Stop the engine and check the fluid level and refill as required.

(9) If the fluid is extremely foamy or milky looking, allow the vehicle to stand a few minutes and repeat the procedure.

**CAUTION:** Do not run a vehicle with foamy fluid for an extended period. This may cause pump damage.

STANDARD PROCEDURE - INITIAL OPERATION  
- 4.7L

**WARNING:** THE FLUID LEVEL SHOULD BE CHECKED WITH ENGINE OFF TO PREVENT INJURY FROM MOVING COMPONENTS.

**NOTE:** Remove as much of the old fluid out of the system as possible with a suction tool or by removing a hose, When a component has failed. Then refill it with fresh fluid until it is clean. This may have to be done more than once.

**CAUTION:** Use MOPAR Power Steering Fluid or equivalent. Do not use automatic transmission fluid and do not overfill.



## PUMP (Continued)

Wipe filler cap clean, then check the fluid level. The dipstick should indicate **COLD** when the fluid is at normal ambient temperature.

(1) Fill the pump fluid reservoir to the proper level and let the fluid settle for at least two minutes.

(2) Start the engine and let run for a few seconds then turn engine off.

(3) Add fluid if necessary. Repeat the above procedure until the fluid level remains constant after running the engine.

(4) Raise the front wheels off the ground.

(5) Slowly turn the steering wheel right and left, lightly contacting the wheel stops at least 20 times.

(6) Check the fluid level add if necessary.

(7) Lower the vehicle, start the engine, and use the DRB III to activate the hydraulic fan on full fan operation.

(8) Turn the steering wheel slowly from lock to lock.

(9) Stop the engine, check the fluid level and refill as required and repeat the process

**CAUTION: Do not run a vehicle with foamy fluid for an extended period. This may cause pump damage.**

(10) If the fluid is extremely foamy or milky looking, allow the vehicle to stand a few minutes and repeat the procedure.

(11) While the vehicle is in park, use the DRB III to activate the hydraulic fan to full fan operation and briefly rev the engine up to 3000 rpm to fully engage the hydraulic fan.

(12) Check the fluid level add if necessary.

## REMOVAL

## REMOVAL - 4.0L ENGINE

(1) Remove serpentine drive belt,(Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - REMOVAL).

(2) Remove pressure and return hoses from pump and drain the pump.

(3) Loosen the pump bracket bolt at the engine block.

(4) Remove 3 pump mounting bolts (Fig. 4) through pulley access holes.

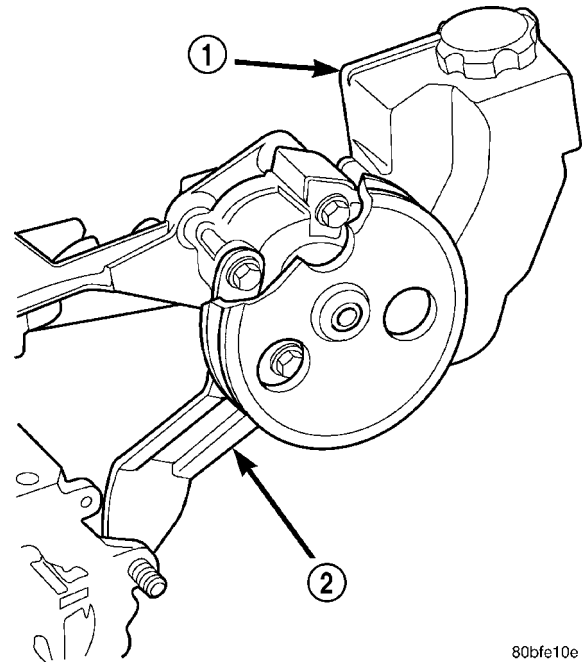
(5) Tilt pump downward and remove from engine.

(6) Remove pulley from pump.

## REMOVAL - 4.7L ENGINE

(1) Remove the serpentine drive belt,(Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - REMOVAL).

(2) Remove the pressure and return hoses from pump and drain pump.



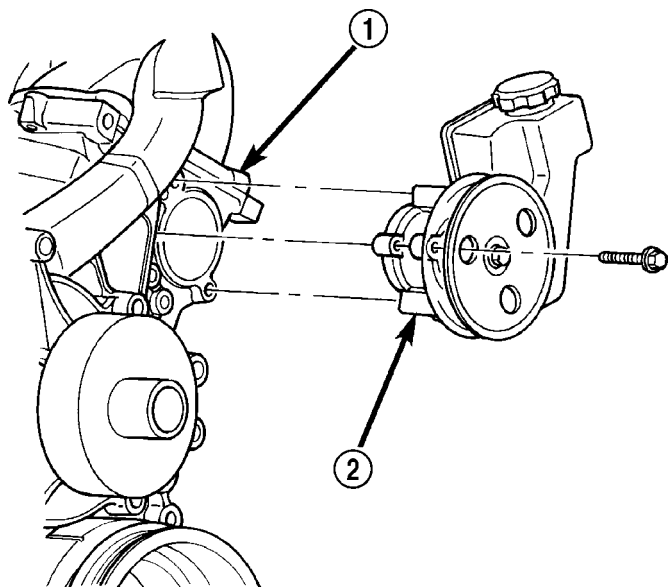
80bfe10e

Fig. 4 PUMP MOUNTING - 4.0L

- 1 - PUMP ASSEMBLY  
2 - PUMP BRACKET

(3) Remove 3 pump mounting bolts through pulley access holes (Fig. 5).

(4) Remove the pump from the vehicle.



80b89871

Fig. 5 Pump Mounting

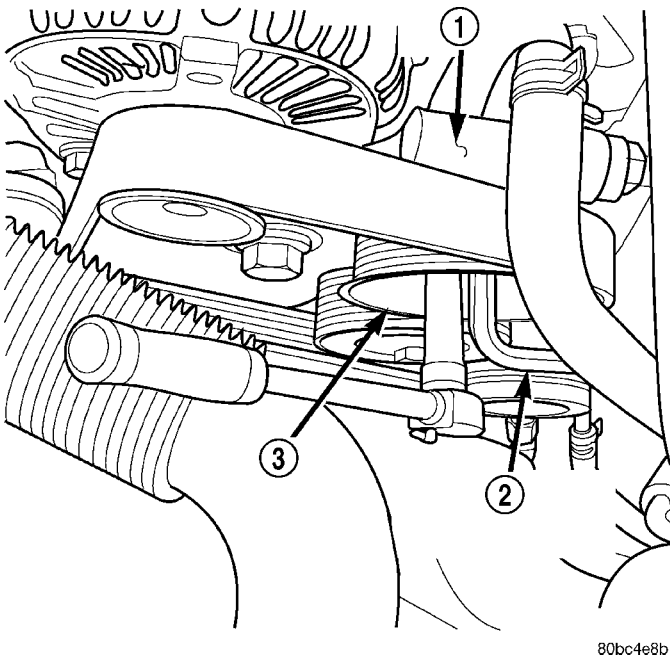
- 1 - LEFT CYLINDER HEAD  
2 - PUMP



## PUMP (Continued)

**REMOVAL - 2.7L DIESEL**

- (1) Open the hood and disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (2) Remove the intercooler outlet hose from the vehicle.
- (3) Remove the battery. Refer to the electrical section.
- (4) Siphon and drain the fluid from the pump.
- (5) Remove the accessory drive belt from the power steering pump pulley. Refer to Cooling System for the procedure.
- (6) Install a allen wrench in the power steering pump center shaft to hold the pump in position. Remove the (3) power steering pump pulley retaining bolts (Fig. 6).

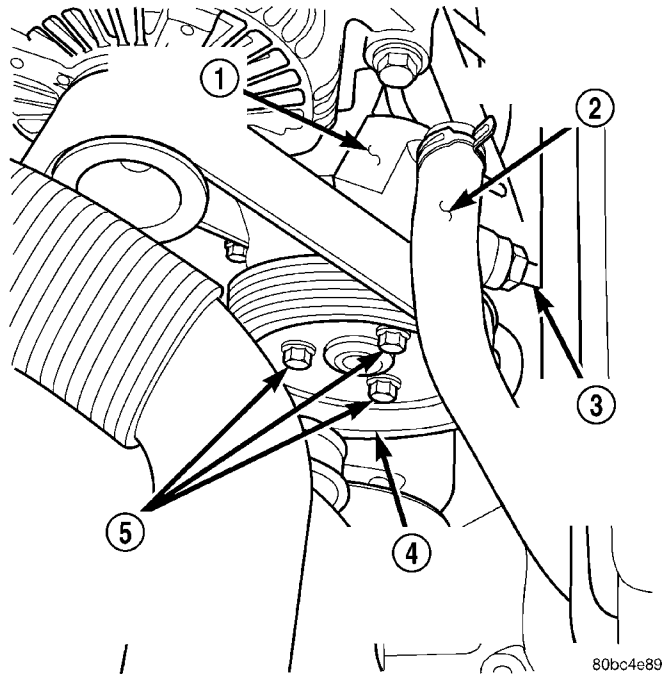
**Fig. 6 Installing Power Steering Pump Pulley**

- 1 - POWER STEERING PUMP
- 2 - ALLEN WRENCH HOLDING PUMP CENTER SHAFT
- 3 - POWER STEERING PUMP PULLEY

- (7) Remove the power steering pump pulley from the pump.
- (8) Remove the power steering fluid supply hose from the pump (Fig. 7).
- (9) Remove the power steering fluid pressure line from the pump (Fig. 7).
- (10) Remove the power steering pump to the mount and remove the pump from the vehicle.

**INSTALLATION****INSTALLATION - 4.0L ENGINE**

- (1) Install pulley on pump.
- (2) Install pump on the engine mounting bracket.

**Fig. 7 Diesel Power Steering Pump Position & Orientation**

- 1 - POWER STEERING PUMP
- 2 - POWER STEERING FLUID SUPPLY HOSE
- 3 - POWER STEERING FLUID PRESSURE LINE
- 4 - POWER STEERING PUMP PULLEY
- 5 - POWER STEERING PUMP PULLEY RETAINING BOLTS

- (3) Install 3 pump mounting bolts and tighten to 27 N·m (20 ft. lbs.).
- (4) Tighten pump bracket bolt to 57 N·m (42 ft. lbs.).
- (5) Install the pressure line on the pump and tighten to 28 N·m (21 ft. lbs.).
- (6) Install the return hoses on pump.
- (7) Install the drive belt,(Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - INSTALLATION).
- (8) Add power steering fluid,(Refer to 19 - STEERING/PUMP - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

**INSTALLATION - 4.7L ENGINE**

- (1) Position the pump on the left cylinder head and install bolts through pulley access holes. Tighten bolts to 28 N·m (21 ft. lbs.).
- (2) Install the pressure and return hoses to pump.
- (3) Install serpentine drive belt,(Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - INSTALLATION).
- (4) Add power steering fluid,(Refer to 19 - STEERING/PUMP - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

## PUMP (Continued)

**INSTALLATION - 2.7L DIESEL**

**CAUTION:** Power steering system fluid may be contaminated with metal shavings, overheated or improper fluid. All fluid should be drained from the system. After any component replacement, system should be flushed and filled with Mopar Power Steering fluid, or equivalent.

(1) Position the pump to the pump mount and install the retaining bolts. Torque the bolts to 27 N·m (20 ft. lbs.).

(2) Install the power steering fluid pressure line on the pump. Torque the nut to 24 N·m (18 ft. lbs.). Be certain the sealing o-ring is lubricated and free of tears.

(3) Install the power steering fluid supply hose on the pump.

(4) Install the power steering pump pulley on the pump. Torque the retaining bolts to 27 N·m (20 ft. lbs.). Use the allen wrench to hold the pump from rotating.

(5) Install the accessory drive belt on the power steering pump pulley. Refer to Cooling System for the procedure.

(6) Install the battery.

(7) Install the intercooler outlet hose on the vehicle.

(8) Connect the negative battery cable.

(9) Fill the power steering fluid. Refer to - Power Steering Pump Initial Operation - in this group for the procedure.

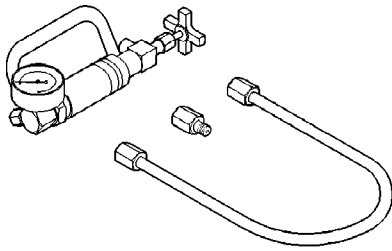
**SPECIFICATIONS****TORQUE CHART***TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS*

DESCRIPTION	N-m	Ft. Lbs.	In. Lbs.
Power Steering Pump Bracket Bolt-4.0L	57	42	—
Power Steering Pump Pump Bolts-4.0L	28	21	250
Power Steering Pump Pump Bolts-4.7L	28	21	250
Power Steering Pump Flow Control Valve	75	55	—
Power Steering Pump Pressure Line 4.0L	20-38	14-28	—
Power Steering Pump Pressure Line 4.7L	47	35	416
Power Steering Pump Return Line 4.0L & 4.7L	20-38	14-28	—
High Pressure Inlet Hose to Hydraulic Fan Drive—1/2 inch Fitting	49	36	—
High Pressure Outlet Hose to Steering Gear—3/8 inch Fitting	29	21.5	—
Power Steering Cooler Lines at the Cooler	22.5	17	200

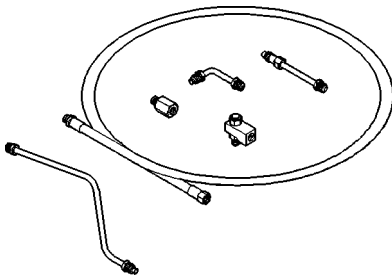
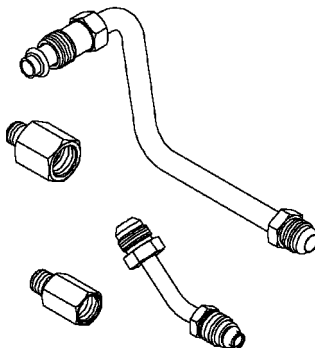
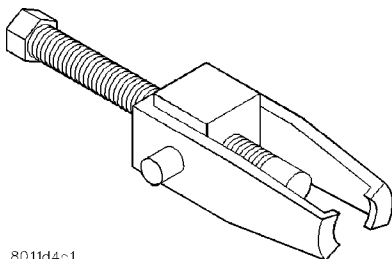
## PUMP (Continued)

## SPECIAL TOOLS

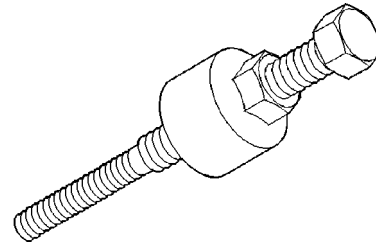
## POWER STEERING PUMP



8011c9c8

**Analyzer Set, Power Steering Flow/Pressure 6815****Adapters, Power Steering Flow/Pressure Tester 6893****4.7L HYDRAULIC POWER STEERING TEST ADAPTER KIT - 8630**

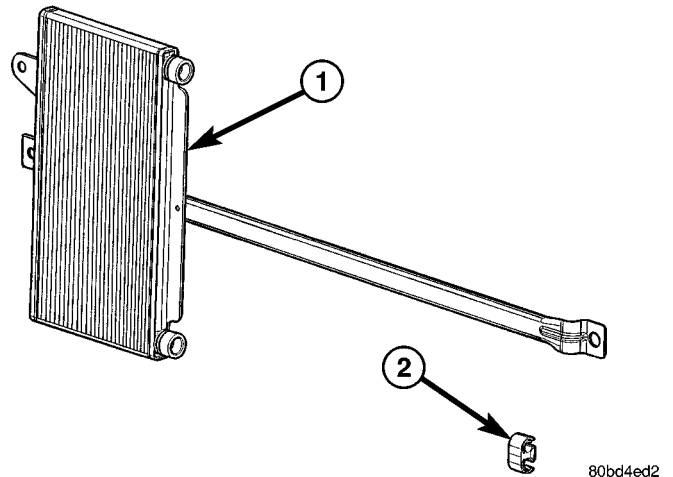
8011d4c1

**Puller C-4333****Installer, Power Steering Pulley C-4063B**

## FLUID COOLER

## DESCRIPTION

4.7L models of this vehicle are equipped with a cooler for the power steering system fluid. The power steering fluid cooler is located at the front of the vehicle. It is mounted to the radiator support just forward of the air-conditioning condenser and just rearward of the front fascia (Fig. 8). The cooler is positioned so it is in the air flow through the front fascia of the vehicle.



80bd4ed2

**Fig. 8 POWER STEERING FLUID COOLER**

- 1 - POWER STEERING COOLER
- 2 - POWER STEERING COOLER LINES CLIP

## REMOVAL

- (1) Disconnect negative battery cable at battery.
- (2) Drain the power steering fluid out of the reservoir.
- (3) Remove the front fascia grille assembly, (Refer to 13 - FRAMES & BUMPERS/BUMPERS/FRONT FASCIA - REMOVAL).
- (4) Remove the grille opening reinforcement panel.
- (5) Place a drain pan under the cooler.
- (6) Disconnect the lower hose at cooler (Fig. 8).
- (7) Disconnect the upper hose at cooler (Fig. 8).
- (8) Remove the three cooler mounting bolts (Fig. 8).
- (9) Remove the cooler from the vehicle.

## FLUID COOLER (Continued)

**INSTALLATION**

- (1) Position and install the power steering cooler to the vehicle.
- (2) Install the three mounting bracket bolts (Fig. 8).
- (3) Reconnect the upper hose at cooler (Fig. 8).
- (4) Reconnect the lower hose at cooler (Fig. 8).
- (5) Connect negative battery cable to battery.
- (6) Refill the power steering fluid and bleed the system,(Refer to 19 - STEERING/PUMP - STANDARD PROCEDURE).
- (7) Start engine and check for leaks.
- (8) Install the grille opening reinforcement panel
- (9) Install the front fascia grille,(Refer to 13 - FRAMES & BUMPERS/BUMPERS/FRONT FASCIA - INSTALLATION).

**HOSES - 4.0L****DESCRIPTION****DESCRIPTION - PRESSURE LINE**

The hose consists of two metal ends and rubber center section that contains a tuning cable. The pump end uses a quick connect fitting. Lubrication must be used on the quick connect nut and o-ring when installing.

**DESCRIPTION - RETURN LINE**

Power steering return line is a hose which is clamped at the pump and the gear.

**OPERATION****OPERATION - PRESSURE LINE**

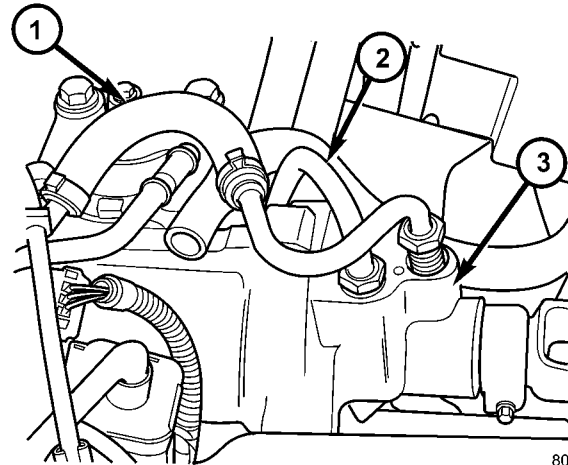
Power steering pressure line, is used to transfer high pressure power steering fluid, from the power steering pump to the power steering gear on the 4.0L. The 4.7L power steering pressure line, is used to transfer high pressure power steering fluid, from the power steering pump to the engine cooling fan and the steering gear.

**OPERATION - RETURN LINE**

Power steering return line, is used to transfer low pressure power steering fluid, from the power steering gear to the power steering pump.

**REMOVAL**

- (1) Drain the power steering fluid from the reservoir.
- (2) Remove the air box,(Refer to 9 - ENGINE/AIR INTAKE SYSTEM/AIR CLEANER HOUSING - REMOVAL).
- (3) Disconnect the power steering pressure hose from the power steering pump and then the power steering gear (Fig. 9).
- (4) Disconnect the power steering return hose from the power steering cooler and the reservoir.



809e92d2

**Fig. 9 POWER STEERING HOSES**

- 1 - RETURN HOSE
- 2 - HIGH PRESSURE HOSE
- 3 - STEERING GEAR

- (5) Remove the hoses from the vehicle.

**INSTALLATION**

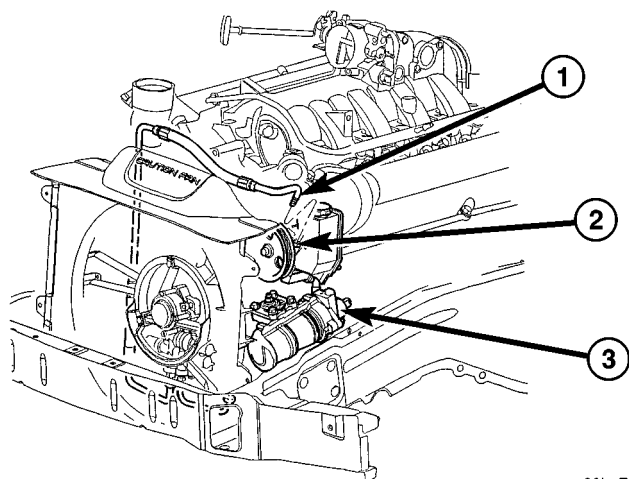
- (1) Install the hoses to the vehicle.
- (2) Reconnect the power steering return hose to the power steering cooler and the reservoir.
- (3) Reconnect the power steering pressure hose to the power steering pump and then the power steering gear.
- (4) Install the air box,(Refer to 9 - ENGINE/AIR INTAKE SYSTEM/AIR CLEANER HOUSING - INSTALLATION).
- (5) Refill the power steering fluid and bleed the system,(Refer to 19 - STEERING/PUMP - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

## HOSES - 4.7L

### DESCRIPTION

#### DESCRIPTION - 1/2" PRESSURE HOSE

The hose consists of two metal ends and a rubber center with quick connect nuts at both ends. The hose connects the power steering pump to the hydraulic fan motor and is clipped to the fan shroud (Fig. 10). Lubrication must be used on the quick connect nuts and o-rings when installing.



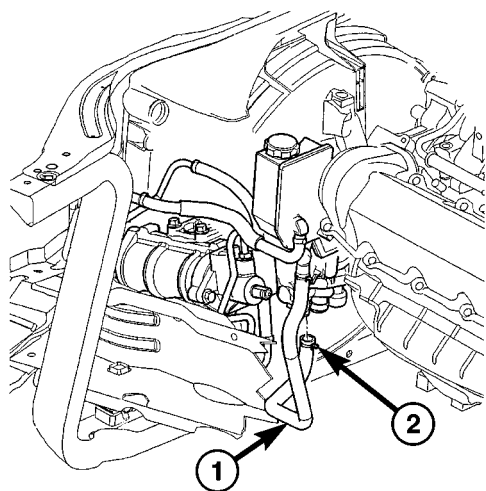
**Fig. 10 1/2" PRESSURE HOSE**

- 1 - 1/2" PRESSURE HOSE
- 2 - POWER STEERING PUMP
- 3 - STEERING GEAR

80be71ab

#### DESCRIPTION - 1/2" RETURN HOSE

The fan motor return line is a molded rubber hose that is clamped at the hydraulic motor and the power steering reservoir (Fig. 11).



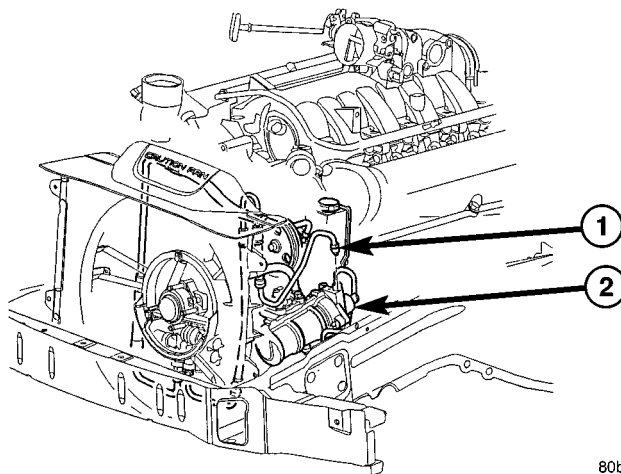
**Fig. 11 1/2" RETURN HOSE**

- 1 - 1/2" RETURN HOSE
- 2 - HOSE CLAMP

80be71bc

#### DESCRIPTION - 3/8" PRESSURE HOSE

The hose consists of two metal ends and two rubber sections one of which contains a tuning cable (Fig. 12). The hose is clipped in two places to the fan shroud. Lubrication must be used on the o-rings when installing.



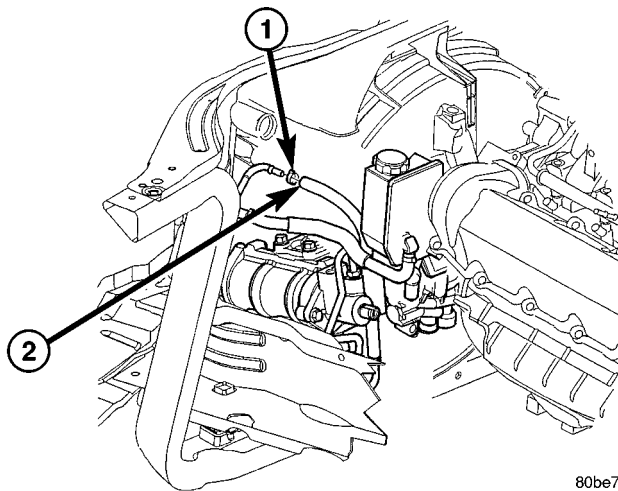
80be7221

**Fig. 12 3/8" PRESSURE HOSE**

- 1 - 3/8" PRESSURE HOSE
- 2 - STEERING GEAR

#### DESCRIPTION - 3/8" GEAR OUTLET HOSE

The gear outlet line consists of a metal section that connects to the gear and a rubber section that clamps to the steering cooler inlet tube (Fig. 13).



80be7225

**Fig. 13 3/8" GEAR OUTLET HOSE**

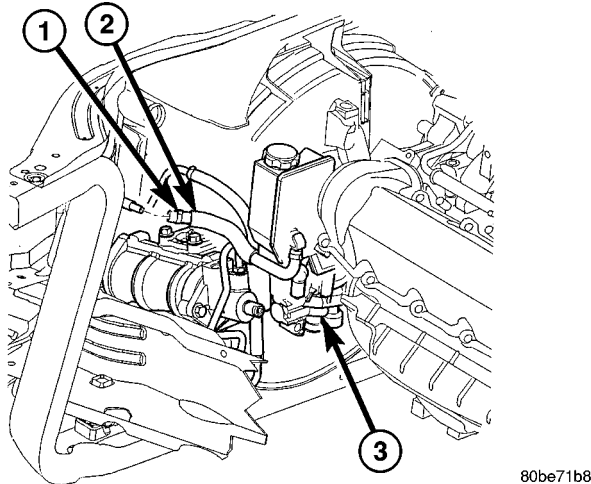
- 1 - HOSE CLAMP
- 2 - 3/8" GEARR OUTLET HOSE



## HOSES - 4.7L (Continued)

**DESCRIPTION - 3/8" RETURN HOSE**

The return hose is a formed rubber hose that connects the steering cooler outlet tube to the power steering reservoir (Fig. 14). It is clamped at both ends.



**Fig. 14 3/8" RETURN HOSE**

- 1 - HOSE CLAMP  
2 - 3/8" RETURN HOSE  
3 - HYDRAULIC COOLING FAN MOTOR

**OPERATION****OPERATION - 1/2" PRESSURE HOSE**

The 1/2" pressure hose is used to transfer high pressure power steering fluid from the power steering pump to the engine cooling fan motor (Fig. 10).

**OPERATION - 1/2" RETURN HOSE**

The power steering return line returns low pressure excess flow from the hydraulic fan motor back to the power steering pump (Fig. 11).

**OPERATION - 3/8" PRESSURE HOSE**

High pressure power steering fluid is transmitted from the hydraulic fan motor to the steering gear by the 3/8" steering line.

**OPERATION - 3/8" GEAR OUTLET HOSE**

The gear outlet hose transmits power steering fluid under moderate low pressure to the power steering cooler inlet tube.

**OPERATION - 3/8" RETURN HOSE**

Low pressure power steering fluid is transmitted from the steering cooler back to the power steering pump by the 3/8" return hose.

**REMOVAL****REMOVAL - 1/2" PRESSURE HOSE**

- (1) Drain the power steering fluid from the reservoir.
- (2) Remove the air box, (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/AIR INTAKE SYSTEM/AIR CLEANER HOUSING - REMOVAL).
- (3) Raise and support the vehicle.
- (4) Remove the metal skid plate.
- (5) Disconnect the high pressure hose from the hydraulic fan motor (Fig. 10).
- (6) Disconnect the high pressure hose from the power steering pump (Fig. 10).
- (7) Remove the hose from the clipped position on the fan shroud.
- (8) Remove the hose from the vehicle.

**REMOVAL - 1/2" RETURN HOSE**

- (1) Drain the power steering fluid from the reservoir.
- (2) Remove the air box, (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/AIR INTAKE SYSTEM/AIR CLEANER HOUSING - REMOVAL).
- (3) Raise and support the vehicle.
- (4) Remove the metal skid plate.
- (5) Disconnect the rubber return hose from the hydraulic fan motor (Fig. 11).
- (6) Disconnect the rubber return hose from the power steering reservoir (Fig. 11).
- (7) Remove the hose from the vehicle.

**REMOVAL - 3/8" PRESSURE HOSE**

- (1) Drain the power steering fluid from the reservoir.
- (2) Remove the air box, (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/AIR INTAKE SYSTEM/AIR CLEANER HOUSING - REMOVAL).
- (3) Raise and support the vehicle.
- (4) Remove the metal skid plate.
- (5) Disconnect the high pressure hose from the hydraulic fan motor (Fig. 12).
- (6) Disconnect the high pressure hose from the power steering gear (Fig. 12).
- (7) Remove the hose from the clipped position on the fan shroud.
- (8) Remove the hose from the vehicle.

**REMOVAL - 3/8" RETURN HOSE**

- (1) Drain the power steering fluid from the reservoir.
- (2) Remove the air box, (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/AIR INTAKE SYSTEM/AIR CLEANER HOUSING - REMOVAL).
- (3) Raise and support the vehicle.

## HOSES - 4.7L (Continued)

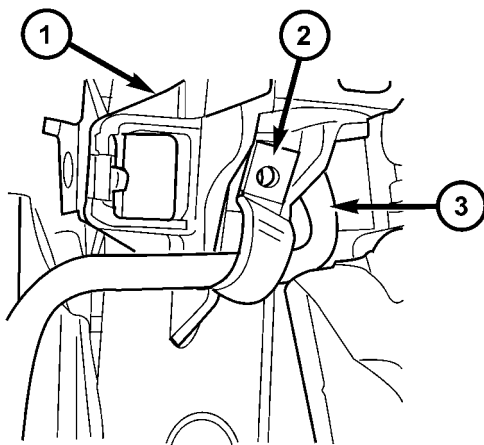
- (4) Disconnect the rubber hose from the steering cooler outlet tube (Fig. 14).
- (5) Disconnect the rubber hose from the power steering reservoir (Fig. 14).
- (6) Remove the hose from the vehicle.

**REMOVAL - 3/8" GEAR OUTLET HOSE**

- (1) Drain the power steering fluid from the reservoir.
- (2) Remove the air box,(Refer to 9 - ENGINE/AIR INTAKE SYSTEM/AIR CLEANER HOUSING - REMOVAL).
- (3) Raise and support the vehicle.
- (4) Disconnect the rubber hose from the steering cooler inlet tube (Fig. 13).
- (5) Disconnect the metal tube from the power steering gear (Fig. 13).
- (6) Remove the hose from the vehicle.

**REMOVAL - INLET COOLER HOSE**

- (1) Disconnect negative battery cable at battery.
- (2) Drain the power steering fluid out of the reservoir.
- (3) Remove the air box,(Refer to 9 - ENGINE/AIR INTAKE SYSTEM/AIR CLEANER HOUSING - REMOVAL).
- (4) Remove the front fascia grille assembly,(Refer to 13 - FRAMES & BUMPERS/BUMPERS/FRONT FASCIA - REMOVAL).
- (5) Remove the grille opening reinforcement panel
- (6) Place a drain pan under the cooler.
- (7) Disconnect the lower hose at cooler.
- (8) Disconnect the cooler hose at the gear.
- (9) Remove the bracket holding the cooler hoses (Fig. 15).
- (10) Remove the cooler hose from the vehicle.



80be81fc

**Fig. 15 COOLER HOSES MOUNTING BRACKET**

- 1 - RADIATOR
- 2 - COOLER HOSES MOUNTING BRACKET
- 3 - COOLER HOSE

**REMOVAL - OUTLET COOLER HOSE**

- (1) Disconnect negative battery cable at battery.
- (2) Drain the power steering fluid out of the reservoir.
- (3) Remove the air box,(Refer to 9 - ENGINE/AIR INTAKE SYSTEM/AIR CLEANER HOUSING - REMOVAL).
- (4) Remove the front fascia grille assembly,(Refer to 13 - FRAMES & BUMPERS/BUMPERS/FRONT FASCIA - REMOVAL).
- (5) Remove the grille opening reinforcement panel
- (6) Place a drain pan under the cooler.
- (7) Disconnect the upper hose at cooler.
- (8) Disconnect the cooler hose at the reservoir.
- (9) Remove the bracket holding the cooler hoses (Fig. 15).
- (10) Remove the cooler hose from the vehicle.

**INSTALLATION****INSTALLATION - 1/2" PRESSURE HOSE**

**NOTE: Lubrication and a new o-ring must be used when reinstalling.**

- (1) Install the hoses to the vehicle.
- (2) Reconnect the high pressure hose to the power steering pump (Fig. 10) Tighten the hose to 22.5 N·m (17 ft.lbs.).
- (3) Reconnect the high pressure hose to the hydraulic fan motor (Fig. 10) Tighten the hose to 22.5 N·m (17 ft.lbs.).
- (4) Install the hose to the clipped position on the fan shroud.
- (5) Install the metal skid plate.
- (6) Install the air box,(Refer to 9 - ENGINE/AIR INTAKE SYSTEM/AIR CLEANER HOUSING - INSTALLATION).
- (7) Refill the power steering fluid and bleed the system,(Refer to 19 - STEERING/PUMP - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

**INSTALLATION - 1/2" RETURN HOSE**

- (1) Install the hoses to the vehicle.
- (2) Reconnect the rubber return hose to the power steering reservoir (Fig. 11) Tighten the hose clamp.
- (3) Reconnect the rubber return hose to the hydraulic fan motor (Fig. 11) Tighten the hose.
- (4) Install the metal skid plate.
- (5) Install the air box,(Refer to 9 - ENGINE/AIR INTAKE SYSTEM/AIR CLEANER HOUSING - INSTALLATION).
- (6) Refill the power steering fluid and bleed the system,(Refer to 19 - STEERING/PUMP - STANDARD PROCEDURE).



## HOSES - 4.7L (Continued)

**INSTALLATION - 3/8" PRESSURE HOSE**

**NOTE: Lubrication and a new o-ring must be used when reinstalling.**

- (1) Install the hoses to the vehicle.
- (2) Reconnect the high pressure hose to the hydraulic fan motor (Fig. 12) Tighten the hose to 22.5 N·m (17 ft.lbs.).
- (3) Reconnect the high pressure hose to the power steering gear (Fig. 12) Tighten the hose to 22.5 N·m (17 ft.lbs.).
- (4) Install the hose to the clipped position on the fan shroud.
- (5) Install the metal skid plate.
- (6) Install the air box,(Refer to 9 - ENGINE/AIR INTAKE SYSTEM/AIR CLEANER HOUSING - INSTALLATION).
- (7) Refill the power steering fluid and bleed the system,(Refer to 19 - STEERING/PUMP - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

**INSTALLATION - 3/8" RETURN HOSE**

- (1) Install the hoses to the vehicle.
- (2) Reconnect the rubber hose to the steering cooler outlet tube (Fig. 14) Tighten the hose clamp.
- (3) Reconnect the rubber hose to the power steering reservoir (Fig. 14) Tighten the hose clamp.
- (4) Install the air box,(Refer to 9 - ENGINE/AIR INTAKE SYSTEM/AIR CLEANER HOUSING - INSTALLATION).
- (5) Refill the power steering fluid and bleed the system,(Refer to 19 - STEERING/PUMP - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

**INSTALLATION - 3/8" GEAR OUTLET HOSE**

**NOTE: Lubrication and a new o-ring must be used when reinstalling.**

- (1) Install the hoses to the vehicle.
- (2) Reconnect the rubber hose to the steering cooler inlet tube (Fig. 13) Tighten the hose clamp.
- (3) Reconnect the metal tube to the power steering gear (Fig. 13) Tighten the hose to 22.5 N·m (17 ft.lbs.).
- (4) Install the air box,(Refer to 9 - ENGINE/AIR INTAKE SYSTEM/AIR CLEANER HOUSING - INSTALLATION).
- (5) Refill the power steering fluid and bleed the system,(Refer to 19 - STEERING/PUMP - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

**INSTALLATION - INLET COOLER HOSE**

- (1) Install the cooler hose to the vehicle.
- (2) Reconnect the cooler hose at the gear.

- (3) Reconnect the lower hose at cooler. Tighten the hose to 22.5 N·m (17 ft.lbs.)

- (4) Install the bracket holding the cooler hoses (Fig. 15).

- (5) Install the air box,(Refer to 9 - ENGINE/AIR INTAKE SYSTEM/AIR CLEANER HOUSING - INSTALLATION).

- (6) Install the grille opening reinforcement panel
- (7) Install the front fascia grille assembly, (Refer to 13 - FRAMES & BUMPERS/BUMPERS/FRONT FASCIA - INSTALLATION).

- (8) Reconnect negative battery cable at battery.
- (9) Refill the power steering fluid and bleed the system,(Refer to 19 - STEERING/PUMP - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

**INSTALLATION - OUTLET COOLER HOSE**

- (1) Install the cooler hose to the vehicle.
- (2) Reconnect the cooler hose at the reservoir.
- (3) Reconnect the upper hose at the cooler. Tighten the hose to 22.5 N·m (17 ft. lbs.)
- (4) Install the bracket holding the cooler hoses (Fig. 15). Tighten the bracket to 22.5 N·m (17 ft. lbs.)
- (5) Install the air box,(Refer to 9 - ENGINE/AIR INTAKE SYSTEM/AIR CLEANER HOUSING - INSTALLATION).
- (6) Install the grille opening reinforcement panel
- (7) Install the front fascia grille assembly, (Refer to 13 - FRAMES & BUMPERS/BUMPERS/FRONT FASCIA - INSTALLATION).
- (8) Reconnect negative battery cable at battery.
- (9) Refill the power steering fluid and bleed the system,(Refer to 19 - STEERING/PUMP - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

**HOSES - 2.7L DIESEL****REMOVAL****REMOVAL - PRESSURE HOSE - PUMP TO THE HYDRAULIC FAN MODULE (2.7L DIESEL)**

- (1) Drain the power steering fluid from the reservoir.
- (2) Raise and support the vehicle.
- (3) Remove the metal skid plate.
- (4) Disconnect the high pressure hose from the hydraulic fan motor.
- (5) Lower the vehicle.
- (6) Disconnect the high pressure hose from the power steering pump.
- (7) Remove the hose from the clipped position on the fan shroud.
- (8) Remove the hose from the vehicle.

## HOSES - 2.7L DIESEL (Continued)

**REMOVAL - RETURN HOSE - RESERVOIR TO THE HYDRAULIC FAN MODULE (2.7L DIESEL)**

- (1) Drain the power steering fluid from the reservoir.
- (2) Remove the battery.
- (3) Remove the front fascia. Refer to the body section.
- (4) Remove the power steering reservoir. Refer to reservoir removal in this section.
- (5) Disconnect the rubber return hose from the power steering reservoir.
- (6) Raise and support the vehicle.
- (7) Remove the metal skid plate.
- (8) Disconnect the rubber return hose from the hydraulic fan motor.
- (9) Remove the hose from the vehicle.

**REMOVAL - PRESSURE HOSE - GEAR TO THE HYDRAULIC FAN MODULE (2.7L DIESEL)**

- (1) Drain the power steering fluid from the reservoir.
- (2) Remove the battery.
- (3) Remove the battery tray.
- (4) Remove the front fascia. Refer to the body section.
- (5) Remove the power steering reservoir. Refer to reservoir removal in this section.
- (6) Disconnect the high pressure hose from the power steering gear.
- (7) Remove the hose from the clipped position on the fan shroud.
- (8) Raise and support the vehicle.
- (9) Remove the metal skid plate.
- (10) Disconnect the high pressure hose from the hydraulic fan motor.
- (11) Remove the hose from the vehicle.

**REMOVAL - RETURN HOSE - RESERVOIR TO THE PUMP (2.7L DIESEL)**

- (1) Drain the power steering fluid from the reservoir.
- (2) Remove the battery.
- (3) Disconnect the rubber hose from the power steering pump.
- (4) Disconnect the rubber hose from the power steering reservoir.
- (5) Remove the hose from the vehicle.

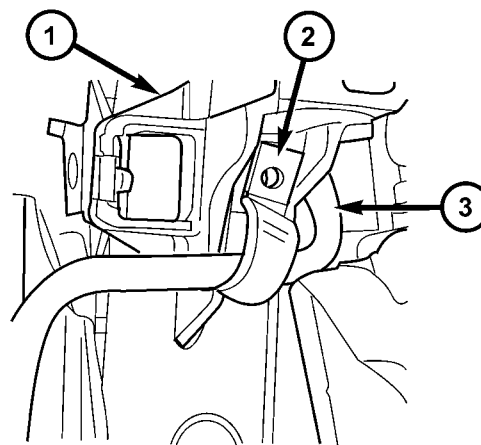
**REMOVAL - 3/8" GEAR OUTLET HOSE (2.7L DIESEL)**

- (1) Drain the power steering fluid from the reservoir.
- (2) Remove the battery.
- (3) Remove the battery tray.

- (4) Remove the front fascia. Refer to the body section.
- (5) Remove the power steering reservoir. Refer to reservoir removal in this section.
- (6) Disconnect the rubber hose from the steering cooler inlet tube.
- (7) Disconnect the metal tube from the power steering gear.
- (8) Remove the hose from the vehicle.

**REMOVAL - INLET COOLER HOSE (2.7L DIESEL)**

- (1) Disconnect negative battery cable at battery.
- (2) Drain the power steering fluid out of the reservoir.
- (3) Remove the front fascia grille assembly, (Refer to 13 - FRAMES & BUMPERS/BUMPERS/FRONT FASCIA - REMOVAL).
- (4) Remove the grille opening reinforcement panel
- (5) Place a drain pan under the cooler.
- (6) Disconnect the lower hose at cooler.
- (7) Disconnect the cooler hose at the gear.
- (8) Remove the bracket holding the cooler hoses (Fig. 16).
- (9) Remove the cooler hose from the vehicle.



80be81fc

**Fig. 16 COOLER HOSES MOUNTING BRACKET**

- 1 - RADIATOR
- 2 - COOLER HOSES MOUNTING BRACKET
- 3 - COOLER HOSE

**REMOVAL - OUTLET COOLER HOSE (2.7L DIESEL)**

- (1) Disconnect negative battery cable at battery.
- (2) Drain the power steering fluid out of the reservoir.
- (3) Remove the front fascia grille assembly, (Refer to 13 - FRAMES & BUMPERS/BUMPERS/FRONT FASCIA - REMOVAL).
- (4) Remove the grille opening reinforcement panel
- (5) Place a drain pan under the cooler.

## HOSES - 2.7L DIESEL (Continued)

- (6) Disconnect the upper hose at cooler.
- (7) Disconnect the cooler hose at the reservoir.
- (8) Remove the bracket holding the cooler hoses (Fig. 16).
- (9) Remove the cooler hose from the vehicle.

## INSTALLATION

## INSTALLATION - PRESSURE HOSE PUMP TO THE HYDRAULIC FAN MODULE (2.7L DIESEL)

**NOTE: Lubrication and a new o-ring must be used when reinstalling.**

- (1) Install the hose to the vehicle.
- (2) Reconnect the high pressure hose to the power steering pump. Tighten the hose to 22.5 N·m (17 ft.lbs.).
- (3) Install the hose to the clipped position on the fan shroud.
- (4) Raise and support the vehicle.
- (5) Reconnect the high pressure hose to the hydraulic fan motor. Tighten the hose to 22.5 N·m (17 ft.lbs.).
- (6) Install the metal skid plate.
- (7) Remove the support and lower the vehicle.
- (8) Refill the power steering fluid and bleed the system,(Refer to 19 - STEERING/PUMP - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

## INSTALLATION - RETURN HOSE - RESERVOIR TO THE HYDRAULIC FAN MODULE (2.7L DIESEL)

- (1) Install the hose to the vehicle.
- (2) Reconnect the rubber return hose to the hydraulic fan motor. Tighten the hose.
- (3) Install the metal skid plate.
- (4) Reconnect the rubber return hose to the power steering reservoir. Tighten the hose clamp.
- (5) Remove the support and lower the vehicle.
- (6) Install the power steering reservoir. Refer to the reservoir installation in this section.
- (7) Install the front fascia. Refer to the body section.
- (8) Install the battery
- (9) Refill the power steering fluid and bleed the system,(Refer to 19 - STEERING/PUMP - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

## INSTALLATION - PRESSURE HOSE - GEAR TO HYDRAULIC FAN MODULE (2.7L DIESEL)

**NOTE: Lubrication and a new o-ring must be used when reinstalling.**

- (1) Install the hose to the vehicle.
- (2) Reconnect the high pressure hose to the hydraulic fan motor. Tighten the hose to 22.5 N·m (17 ft.lbs.).
- (3) Install the metal skid plate.
- (4) Remove the support and lower the vehicle.
- (5) Reconnect the high pressure hose to the power steering gear. Tighten the hose to 22.5 N·m (17 ft.lbs.).
- (6) Install the hose to the clipped position on the fan shroud.
- (7) Install the battery tray.
- (8) Install the power steering reservoir. Refer to the reservoir installation in this section.
- (9) Install the front fascia. Refer to the body section.
- (10) Install the battery
- (11) Refill the power steering fluid and bleed the system,(Refer to 19 - STEERING/PUMP - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

## INSTALLATION - RETURN HOSE - RESERVOIR TO THE PUMP (2.7L DIESEL)

- (1) Install the hose to the vehicle.
- (2) Reconnect the rubber hose to the power steering pump. Tighten the hose clamp.
- (3) Reconnect the rubber hose to the power steering reservoir. Tighten the hose clamp.
- (4) Install the battery.
- (5) Refill the power steering fluid and bleed the system,(Refer to 19 - STEERING/PUMP - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

## INSTALLATION - 3/8" GEAR OUTLET HOSE (2.7L DIESEL)

**NOTE: Lubrication and a new o-ring must be used when reinstalling.**

- (1) Install the hose to the vehicle.
- (2) Reconnect the rubber hose to the steering cooler inlet tube. Tighten the hose clamp.
- (3) Reconnect the metal tube to the power steering gear. Tighten the hose to 22.5 N·m (17 ft.lbs.).
- (4) Install the battery tray.
- (5) Install the power steering reservoir. Refer to the reservoir installation in this section.
- (6) Install the front fascia. Refer to the body section.
- (7) Install the battery
- (8) Refill the power steering fluid and bleed the system,(Refer to 19 - STEERING/PUMP - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

## HOSES - 2.7L DIESEL (Continued)

**INSTALLATION - INLET COOLER HOSE (2.7L DIESEL)**

- (1) Install the cooler hose to the vehicle.
- (2) Reconnect the cooler hose at the gear.
- (3) Reconnect the lower hose at cooler. Tighten the hose to 22.5 N·m (17 ft.lbs.)
- (4) Install the bracket holding the cooler hoses (Fig. 16).
- (5) Install the grille opening reinforcement panel
- (6) Install the front fascia grille assembly, (Refer to 13 - FRAMES & BUMPERS/BUMPERS/FRONT FASCIA - INSTALLATION).
- (7) Reconnect negative battery cable at battery.
- (8) Refill the power steering fluid and bleed the system, (Refer to 19 - STEERING/PUMP - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

**INSTALLATION - OUTLET COOLER HOSE (2.7L DIESEL)**

- (1) Install the cooler hose to the vehicle.
- (2) Reconnect the cooler hose at the reservoir.
- (3) Reconnect the upper hose at the cooler. Tighten the hose to 22.5 N·m (17 ft. lbs.)
- (4) Install the bracket holding the cooler hoses (Fig. 16). Tighten the bracket to 22.5 N·m (17 ft. lbs.)
- (5) Install the grille opening reinforcement panel
- (6) Install the front fascia grille assembly, (Refer to 13 - FRAMES & BUMPERS/BUMPERS/FRONT FASCIA - INSTALLATION).
- (7) Reconnect negative battery cable at battery.
- (8) Refill the power steering fluid and bleed the system, (Refer to 19 - STEERING/PUMP - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

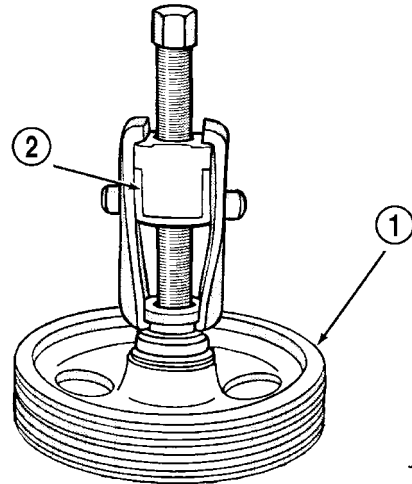
**PULLEY****REMOVAL****REMOVAL**

**CAUTION:** On vehicles equipped with the 4.0L or 4.7L, Do not reuse the old power steering pump pulley it is not intended for reuse. A new pulley must be installed if removed.

- (1) Remove pump assembly.
- (2) Remove pulley from pump with Puller C-4333 or equivalent puller (Fig. 17).

**REMOVAL - 2.7L DIESEL**

- (1) Open the hood and disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (2) Remove the intercooler outlet hose from the vehicle.



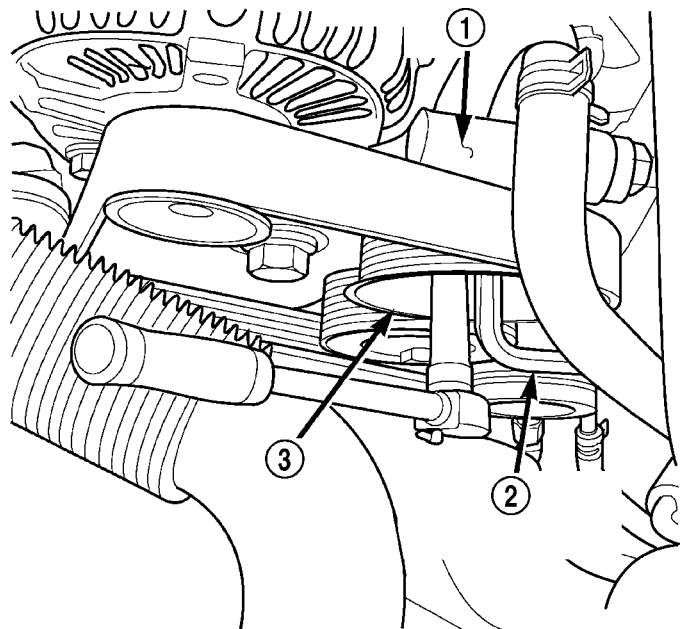
J9319-45

**Fig. 17 Pulley Removal**

- 1 - POWER STEERING PUMP DRIVE PULLEY  
2 - SPECIAL TOOL C-4333

- (3) Remove the accessory drive belt from the power steering pump pulley. Refer to Cooling System for the procedure.

- (4) Install a allen wrench in the power steering pump center shaft to hold the pump in position. Remove the (3) power steering pump pulley retaining bolts (Fig. 18).



80bc4e8b

**Fig. 18 Installing Power Steering Pump Pulley**

- 1 - POWER STEERING PUMP  
2 - ALLEN WRENCH HOLDING PUMP CENTER SHAFT  
3 - POWER STEERING PUMP PULLEY

- (5) Remove the power steering pulley.



## PULLEY (Continued)

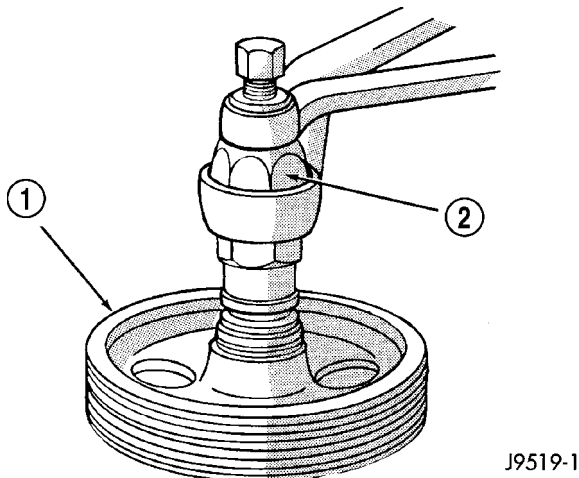
### INSTALLATION

#### INSTALLATION

**NOTE:** The pulley is marked front for installation.

**CAUTION:** On vehicles equipped with the 4.0L or 4.7L, Do not reuse the old power steering pump pulley it is not intended for reuse. A new pulley must be installed if removed.

- (1) Replace pulley if bent, cracked, or loose.
- (2) Install pulley on pump with Installer C-4063-B or equivalent installer (Fig. 19). The front edge of the pulley hub must be flush with the end of the shaft. Ensure the tool and pulley are aligned with the pump shaft.



**Fig. 19 Pulley Installation**

- 1 - POWER STEERING PUMP DRIVE PULLEY
- 2 - SPECIAL TOOL C-4063-B

- (3) Install pump assembly.
- (4) With Serpentine Belt, run engine until warm (5 min.) and note any belt chirp. If chirp exists, move pulley outward approximately 0.5 mm (0.020 in.). If noise increases, press on 1.0 mm (0.040 in.). **Be careful that pulley does not contact mounting bolts.**

#### INSTALLATION - 2.7L DIESEL

- (1) Install the power steering pump pulley on the pump. Torque the retaining bolts to 27 N·m (20 ft. lbs.). Use the allen wrench to hold the pump from rotating.
- (2) Install the accessory drive belt on the power steering pump pulley. Refer to Cooling System for the procedure.
- (3) Install the intercooler outlet hose on the vehicle.
- (4) Connect the negative battery cable.

## RESERVOIR

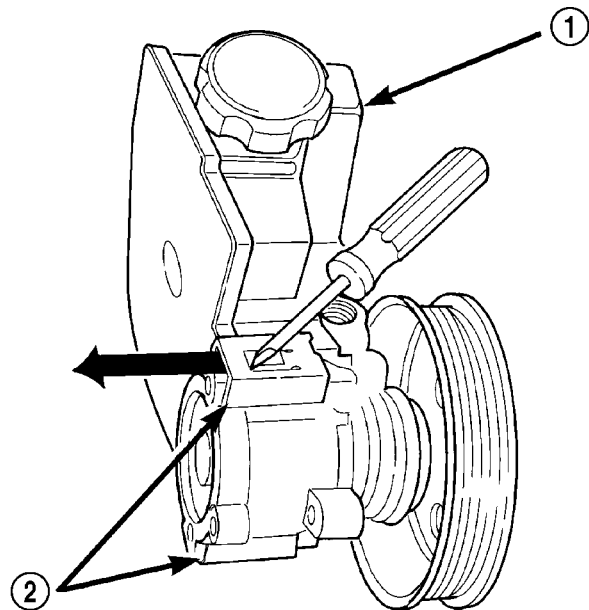
### REMOVAL

#### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove power steering pump.
- (2) Clean exterior of pump.
- (3) Clamp the pump body in a soft jaw vice.

**NOTE:** Use new retaining clips for installation.

- (4) Pry up tab and slide the retaining clips off (Fig. 20).



**Fig. 20 Pump Reservoir Clips**

- 1 - RESERVOIR
- 2 - RETAINING CLIPS

- (5) Remove fluid reservoir from pump body. Remove and discard O-ring seal.

#### REMOVAL - 2.7L DIESEL

- (1) Siphon and drain the fluid from the pump.
- (2) Remove the intercooler outlet hose from the vehicle.
- (3) Remove the front fascia. Refer to the body section.
- (4) Remove the cooler hose to the reservoir.
- (5) Remove the return hose at the reservoir from the pump.
- (6) Remove the supply hose at the reservoir from the fan.

## RESERVOIR (Continued)

## INSTALLATION

## INSTALLATION

(1) Lubricate new O-ring Seal with Mopar Power Steering Fluid or equivalent.

(2) Install O-ring seal in housing.

(3) Install reservoir onto housing.

(4) Slide and tap in **new** reservoir retainer clips until tab locks to housing.

(5) Install power steering pump.

(6) Add power steering fluid,(Refer to 19 - STEERING/PUMP - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

(2) Install the return hose at the reservoir from the pump.

(3) Install the cooler hose to the reservoir.

(4) Install the front fascia. Refer to the body section.

(5) Install the intercooler outlet hose to the vehicle.

(6) Fill the reservoir and check the power steering system for leaks.

## INSTALLATION - 2.7L DIESEL

(1) Install the supply hose at the reservoir from the fan.

# TRANSMISSION AND TRANSFER CASE

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE</b> .....	1	<b>TRANSFER CASE - NV242</b> .....	303
<b>AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 545RFE</b> .....	179	<b>TRANSFER CASE - NV247</b> .....	339
<b>TRANSFER CASE - NV147</b> .....	284		

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE</b>		<b>BANDS</b>	
DESCRIPTION .....	3	DESCRIPTION .....	62
OPERATION .....	5	OPERATION .....	63
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING		ADJUSTMENTS	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - AUTOMATIC		ADJUSTMENT - BANDS .....	63
TRANSMISSION .....	11	<b>BRAKE TRANSMISSION SHIFT INTERLOCK</b>	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - PRELIMINARY	11	<b>MECHANISM</b>	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - ROAD		DESCRIPTION .....	64
TESTING .....	11	OPERATION .....	65
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - HYDRAULIC		DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - BRAKE	
PRESSURE TEST .....	12	TRANSMISSION SHIFT INTERLOCK .....	65
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - AIR CHECKING		ADJUSTMENTS - BRAKE TRANSMISSION	
TRANSMISSION CLUTCH AND BAND		SHIFT INTERLOCK .....	66
OPERATION .....	15	<b>ELECTRONIC GOVERNOR</b>	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - CONVERTER		DESCRIPTION .....	67
HOUSING FLUID LEAK .....	16	OPERATION .....	67
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - DIAGNOSIS		REMOVAL .....	69
CHARTS .....	16	INSTALLATION .....	70
STANDARD PROCEDURE - ALUMINUM		<b>EXTENSION HOUSING BUSHING</b>	
THREAD REPAIR .....	28	REMOVAL .....	71
REMOVAL .....	28	INSTALLATION .....	71
DISASSEMBLY .....	30	<b>EXTENSION HOUSING SEAL</b>	
CLEANING .....	35	REMOVAL .....	71
INSPECTION .....	35	INSTALLATION .....	71
ASSEMBLY .....	36	<b>FLUID AND FILTER</b>	
INSTALLATION .....	42	DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	
SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS		DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - EFFECTS OF	
HYDRAULIC SCHEMATICS .....	44	INCORRECT FLUID LEVEL .....	72
SPECIFICATIONS		DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - CAUSES OF	
TRANSMISSION .....	56	BURNT FLUID .....	72
SPECIAL TOOLS		DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - FLUID	
RE TRANSMISSIONS .....	58	CONTAMINATION .....	72
<b>ACCUMULATOR</b>		STANDARD PROCEDURE	
DESCRIPTION .....	61	STANDARD PROCEDURE - FLUID LEVEL	
OPERATION .....	61	CHECK .....	72
INSPECTION .....	62		



STANDARD PROCEDURE - FLUID AND FILTER REPLACEMENT .....	74	INSPECTION .....	109
STANDARD PROCEDURE - TRANSMISSION FILL .....	74	ASSEMBLY .....	109
<b>FRONT CLUTCH</b>		<b>PARK LOCK CABLE</b>	
DESCRIPTION .....	75	REMOVAL .....	110
OPERATION .....	75	INSTALLATION .....	111
DISASSEMBLY .....	77	<b>PARK/NEUTRAL POSITION SWITCH</b>	
INSPECTION .....	78	DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - PARK/NEUTRAL POSITION SWITCH .....	111
ASSEMBLY .....	78	REMOVAL .....	112
<b>FRONT SERVO</b>		INSTALLATION .....	112
DESCRIPTION .....	79	<b>PISTONS</b>	
OPERATION .....	79	DESCRIPTION .....	112
DISASSEMBLY .....	80	OPERATION .....	112
CLEANING .....	80	<b>PLANETARY GEARTRAIN/OUTPUT SHAFT</b>	
INSPECTION .....	80	DESCRIPTION .....	114
ASSEMBLY .....	81	OPERATION .....	114
<b>GEARSHIFT CABLE</b>		DISASSEMBLY .....	114
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - GEARSHIFT CABLE .....	81	INSPECTION .....	115
REMOVAL .....	81	ASSEMBLY .....	115
INSTALLATION .....	82	<b>REAR CLUTCH</b>	
ADJUSTMENTS - GEARSHIFT CABLE .....	82	DESCRIPTION .....	120
<b>OIL PUMP</b>		OPERATION .....	120
DESCRIPTION .....	83	DISASSEMBLY .....	121
OPERATION .....	83	CLEANING .....	121
DISASSEMBLY .....	83	INSPECTION .....	121
CLEANING .....	85	ASSEMBLY .....	122
INSPECTION .....	85	<b>REAR SERVO</b>	
ASSEMBLY .....	86	DESCRIPTION .....	124
<b>OUTPUT SHAFT FRONT BEARING</b>		OPERATION .....	124
REMOVAL .....	87	DISASSEMBLY .....	124
INSTALLATION .....	87	CLEANING .....	125
<b>OUTPUT SHAFT REAR BEARING</b>		ASSEMBLY .....	125
REMOVAL .....	87	<b>SHIFT MECHANISM</b>	
INSTALLATION .....	88	DESCRIPTION .....	125
<b>OVERDRIVE CLUTCH</b>		OPERATION .....	125
DESCRIPTION .....	88	REMOVAL .....	125
OPERATION .....	88	INSTALLATION .....	127
<b>OVERDRIVE OFF SWITCH</b>		<b>SOLENOID</b>	
DESCRIPTION .....	89	DESCRIPTION .....	127
OPERATION .....	89	OPERATION .....	128
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - OVERDRIVE ELECTRICAL CONTROLS .....	89	<b>SPEED SENSOR</b>	
<b>OVERDRIVE UNIT</b>		DESCRIPTION .....	128
REMOVAL .....	89	OPERATION .....	128
DISASSEMBLY .....	90	<b>THROTTLE VALVE CABLE</b>	
CLEANING .....	97	DESCRIPTION .....	128
INSPECTION .....	97	ADJUSTMENTS - TRANSMISSION THROTTLE VALVE CABLE .....	129
ASSEMBLY .....	97	<b>TORQUE CONVERTER</b>	
INSTALLATION .....	107	DESCRIPTION .....	130
<b>OVERRUNNING CLUTCH CAM/OVERDRIVE PISTON RETAINER</b>		OPERATION .....	134
DESCRIPTION .....	108	REMOVAL .....	135
OPERATION .....	108	INSTALLATION .....	135
DISASSEMBLY .....	108	<b>TORQUE CONVERTER DRAINBACK VALVE</b>	
CLEANING .....	108	DESCRIPTION .....	136
		OPERATION .....	136
		STANDARD PROCEDURE - TORQUE CONVERTER DRAINBACK VALVE .....	136

<b>TRANSMISSION TEMPERATURE SENSOR</b>	
DESCRIPTION	136
OPERATION	137
<b>VALVE BODY</b>	
DESCRIPTION	137
OPERATION	141
REMOVAL	156

DISASSEMBLY	157
CLEANING	168
INSPECTION	168
ASSEMBLY	169
INSTALLATION	176
ADJUSTMENTS - VALVE BODY	177

# AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE

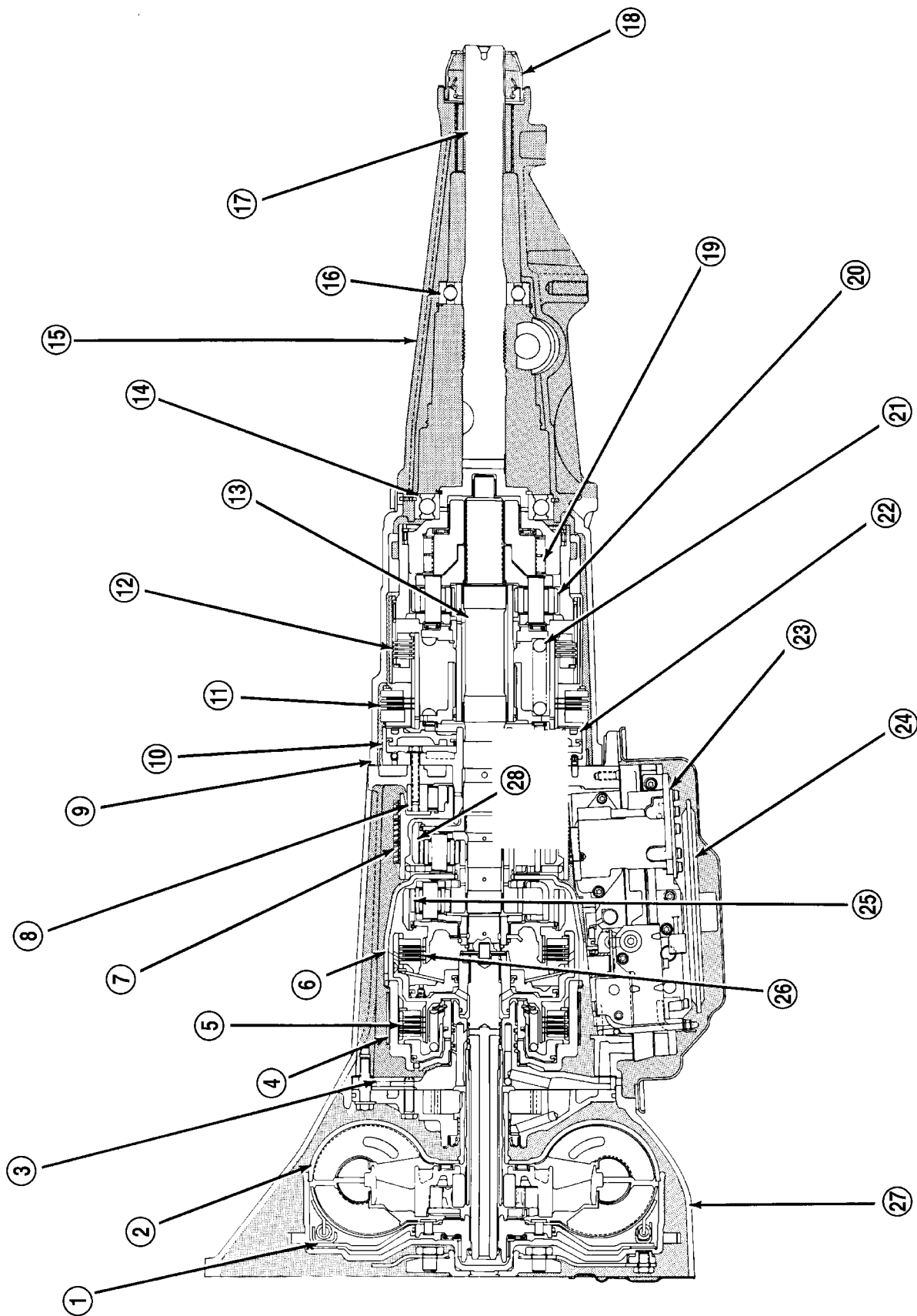
## DESCRIPTION

The 42RE is a four speed fully automatic transmission (Fig. 1) with an electronic governor. The 42RE is equipped with a lock-up clutch in the torque converter. First through third gear ranges are provided by the clutches, bands, overrunning clutch, and planetary gear sets in the transmission. Fourth gear range is provided by the overdrive unit that contains an overdrive clutch, direct clutch, planetary gear set, and overrunning clutch.

The transmission contains a front, rear, and direct clutch which function as the input driving components. It also contains the kickdown (front) and the low/reverse (rear) bands which, along with the overrunning clutch and overdrive clutch, serve as the holding components. The driving and holding components combine to select the necessary planetary gear components, in the front, rear, or overdrive planetary gear set, transfer the engine power from the input shaft through to the output shaft.

The valve body is mounted to the lower side of the transmission and contains the valves to control pressure regulation, fluid flow control, and clutch/band application. The oil pump is mounted at the front of the transmission and is driven by the torque converter hub. The pump supplies the oil pressure necessary for clutch/band actuation and transmission lubrication.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)



J9321-407

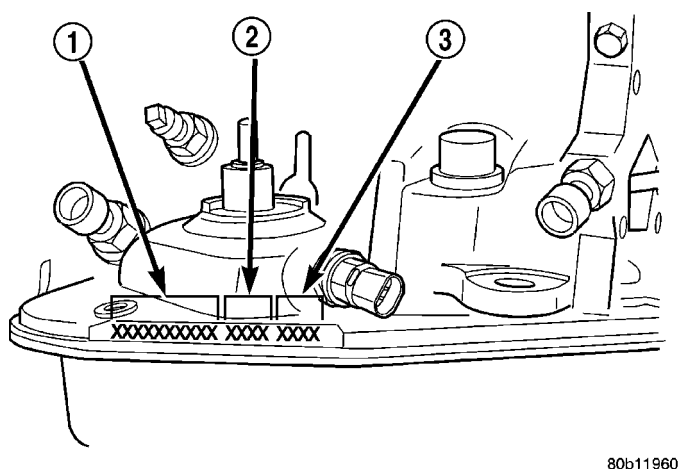
Fig. 1 42RE Transmission

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

- |  |                                   |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| 1 - CONVERTER CLUTCH                             | 15 - HOUSING                      |
| 2 - TORQUE CONVERTER                             | 16 - REAR BEARING                 |
| 3 - OIL PUMP AND REACTION SHAFT SUPPORT ASSEMBLY | 17 - OUTPUT SHAFT                 |
| 4 - FRONT BAND                                   | 18 - SEAL                         |
| 5 - FRONT CLUTCH                                 | 19 - OVERDRIVE OVERRUNNING CLUTCH |
| 6 - DRIVING SHELL                                | 20 - OVERDRIVE PLANETARY GEAR     |
| 7 - REAR BAND                                    | 21 - DIRECT CLUTCH SPRING         |
| 8 - TRANSMISSION OVERRUNNING CLUTCH              | 22 - OVERDRIVE CLUTCH PISTON      |
| 9 - OVERDRIVE UNIT                               | 23 - VALVE BODY ASSEMBLY          |
| 10 - PISTON RETAINER                             | 24 - FILTER                       |
| 11 - OVERDRIVE CLUTCH                            | 25 - FRONT PLANETARY GEAR         |
| 12 - DIRECT CLUTCH                               | 26 - REAR CLUTCH                  |
| 13 - INTERMEDIATE SHAFT                          | 27 - TRANSMISSION                 |
| 14 - FRONT BEARING                               | 28 - REAR PLANETARY GEAR          |

### IDENTIFICATION

Transmission identification numbers are stamped on the left side of the case just above the oil pan gasket surface (Fig. 2). Refer to this information when ordering replacement parts.



80b11960

**Fig. 2 Transmission Part And Serial Number Location**

- 1 - PART NUMBER  
2 - BUILD DATE  
3 - SERIAL NUMBER

### GEAR RATIOS

The 42RE gear ratios are:

<b>1st</b>	2.74:1
<b>2nd</b>	1.54:1
<b>3rd</b>	1.00:1
<b>4th</b>	0.69:1
<b>Rev.</b>	2.21:1

### OPERATION

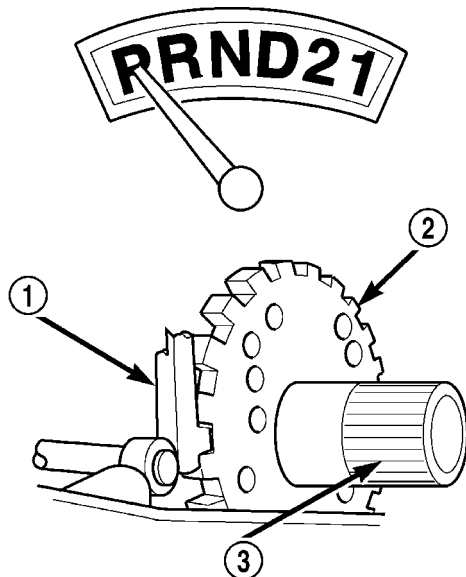
The application of each driving or holding component is controlled by the valve body based upon the manual lever position, throttle pressure, and governor pressure. The governor pressure is a variable pressure input to the valve body and is one of the signals that a shift is necessary. First through fourth gear are obtained by selectively applying and releasing the different clutches and bands. Engine power is thereby routed to the various planetary gear assemblies which combine with the overrunning clutch assemblies to generate the different gear ratios. The torque converter clutch is hydraulically applied and is released when fluid is vented from the hydraulic circuit by the torque converter control (TCC) solenoid on the valve body. The torque converter clutch is controlled by the Powertrain Control Module (PCM). The torque converter clutch engages in fourth gear, and in third gear under various conditions, such as when the O/D switch is OFF, when the vehicle is cruising on a level surface after the vehicle has warmed up. The torque converter clutch will disengage momentarily when an increase in engine load is sensed by the PCM, such as when the vehicle begins to go uphill or the throttle pressure is increased. The torque converter clutch feature increases fuel economy and reduces the transmission fluid temperature.

Since the overdrive clutch is applied in fourth gear only and the direct clutch is applied in all ranges except fourth gear, the transmission operation for park, neutral, and first through third gear will be described first. Once these powerflows are described, the third to fourth shift sequence will be described.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

**PARK POWERFLOW**

As the engine is running and the crankshaft is rotating, the flexplate and torque converter, which are also bolted to it, are all rotating in a clockwise direction as viewed from the front of the engine. The notched hub of the torque converter is connected to the oil pump's internal gear, supplying the transmission with oil pressure. As the converter turns, it turns the input shaft in a clockwise direction. As the input shaft is rotating, the front clutch hub-rear clutch retainer and all their associated parts are also rotating, all being directly connected to the input shaft. The power flow from the engine through the front clutch hub and rear clutch retainer stops at the rear clutch retainer. Therefore, no power flow to the output shaft occurs because no clutches are applied. The only mechanism in use at this time is the parking sprag (Fig. 3), which locks the parking gear on the output shaft to the transmission case.

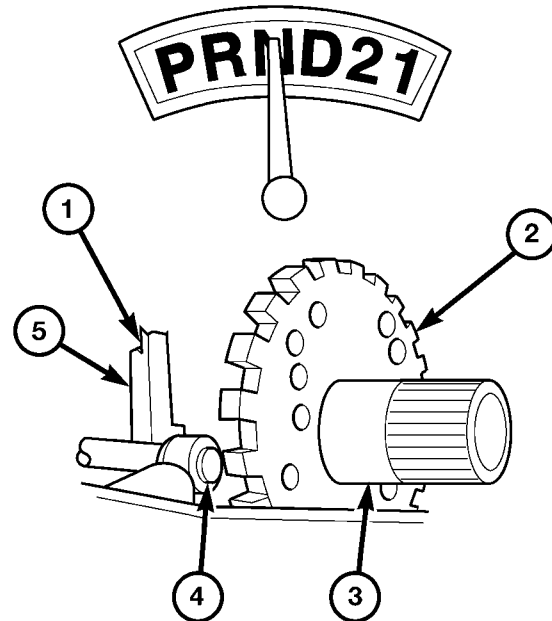
**Fig. 3 Park Powerflow**

- 1 - PAWL ENGAGED FOR PARK
- 2 - PARK SPRAG
- 3 - OUTPUT SHAFT

80c070a6

**NEUTRAL POWERFLOW**

With the gear selector in the NEUTRAL position (Fig. 4), the power flow of the transmission is essentially the same as in the park position. The only operational difference is that the parking sprag has been disengaged, unlocking the output shaft from the transmission case and allowing it to move freely.



80a06c8f

**Fig. 4 Neutral Powerflow**

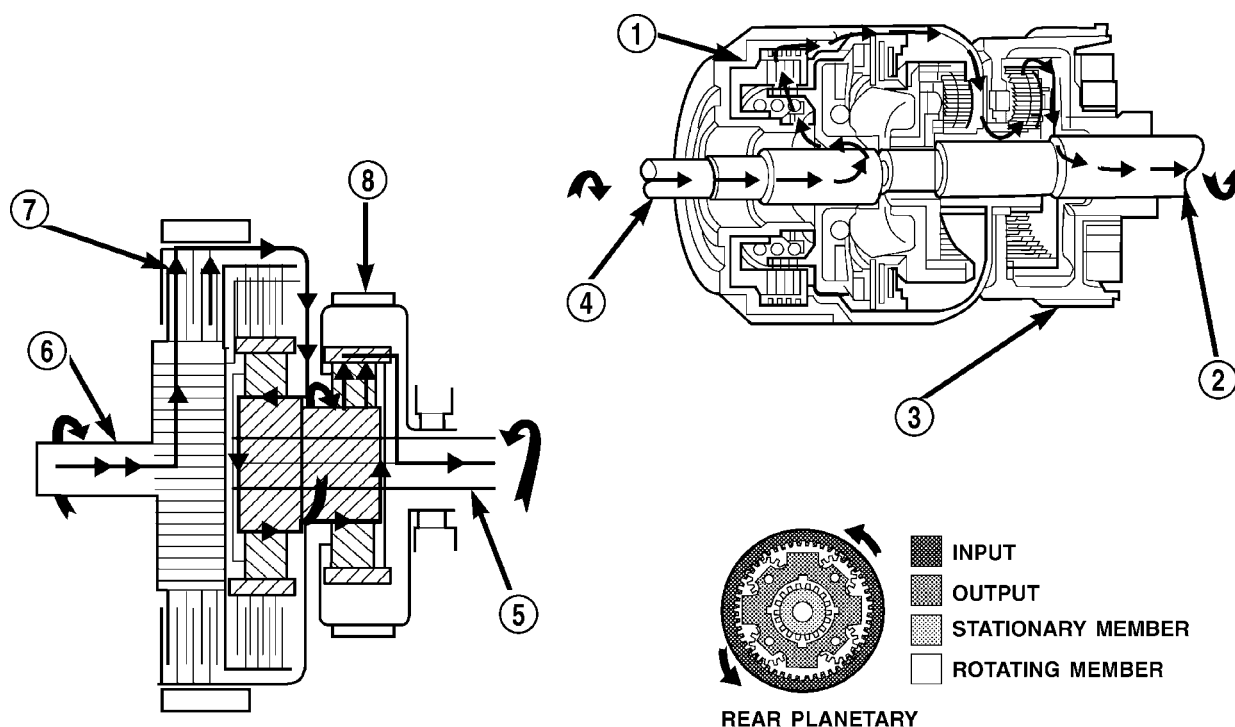
- 1 - PAWL DISENGAGED FOR NEUTRAL
- 2 - PARK SPRAG
- 3 - OUTPUT SHAFT
- 4 - CAM
- 5 - PAWL

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

**REVERSE POWERFLOW**

When the gear selector is moved into the REVERSE position (Fig. 5), the front clutch and the rear band are applied. With the application of the front clutch, engine torque is applied to the sun gear, turning it in a clockwise direction. The clockwise rotation of the sun gear causes the rear planet pinions to rotate against engine rotation in a counterclockwise direction. The rear band is holding the low reverse drum, which is splined to the rear carrier. Since the rear carrier is being held, the torque from

the planet pinions is transferred to the rear annulus gear, which is splined to the output shaft. The output shaft in turn rotates with the annulus gear in a counterclockwise direction giving a reverse gear output. The entire transmission of torque is applied to the rear planetary gearset only. Although there is torque input to the front gearset through the sun gear, no other member of the gearset is being held. During the entire reverse stage of operation, the front planetary gears are in an idling condition.



80c070a8

**Fig. 5 Reverse Powerflow**

- 1 - FRONT CLUTCH ENGAGED
- 2 - OUTPUT SHAFT
- 3 - LOW/REVERSE BAND APPLIED
- 4 - INPUT SHAFT

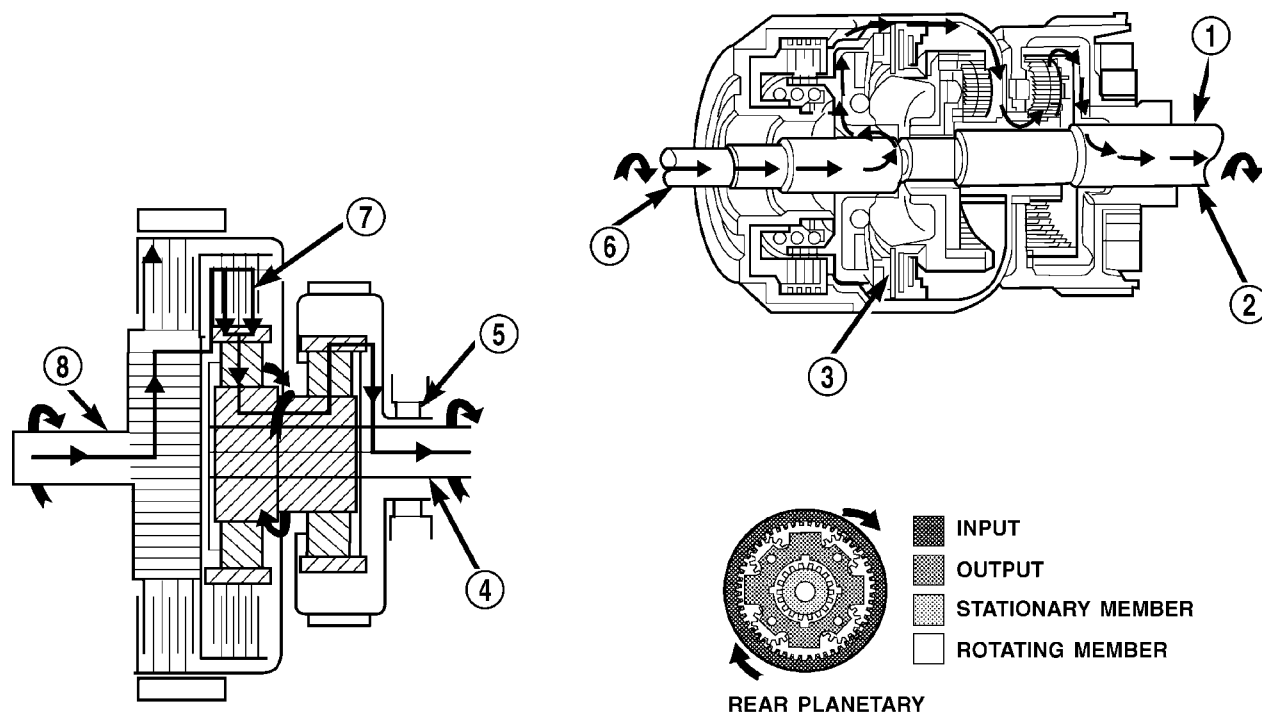
- 5 - OUTPUT SHAFT
- 6 - INPUT SHAFT
- 7 - FRONT CLUTCH ENGAGED
- 8 - LOW/REVERSE BAND APPLIED

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

**FIRST GEAR POWERFLOW**

When the gearshift lever is moved into the DRIVE position the transmission goes into first gear (Fig. 6). As soon as the transmission is shifted from PARK or NEUTRAL to DRIVE, the rear clutch applies, applying the rear clutch pack to the front annulus gear. Engine torque is now applied to the front annulus gear turning it in a clockwise direction. With the front annulus gear turning in a clockwise direction, it causes the front planets to turn in a clockwise direction. The rotation of the front planets cause the sun to revolve in a counterclockwise direction. The sun gear now transfers its counterclockwise rotation to

the rear planets which rotate back in a clockwise direction. With the rear annulus gear stationary, the rear planet rotation on the annulus gear causes the rear planet carrier to revolve in a counterclockwise direction. The rear planet carrier is splined into the low-reverse drum, and the low reverse drum is splined to the inner race of the over-running clutch. With the over-running clutch locked, the planet carrier is held, and the resulting torque provided by the planet pinions is transferred to the rear annulus gear. The rear annulus gear is splined to the output shaft and rotated along with it (clockwise) in an underdrive gear reduction mode.



80c070a9

**Fig. 6 First Gear Powerflow**

- 1 - OUTPUT SHAFT
- 2 - OVER-RUNNING CLUTCH HOLDING
- 3 - REAR CLUTCH APPLIED
- 4 - OUTPUT SHAFT

- 5 - OVER-RUNNING CLUTCH HOLDING
- 6 - INPUT SHAFT
- 7 - REAR CLUTCH APPLIED
- 8 - INPUT SHAFT

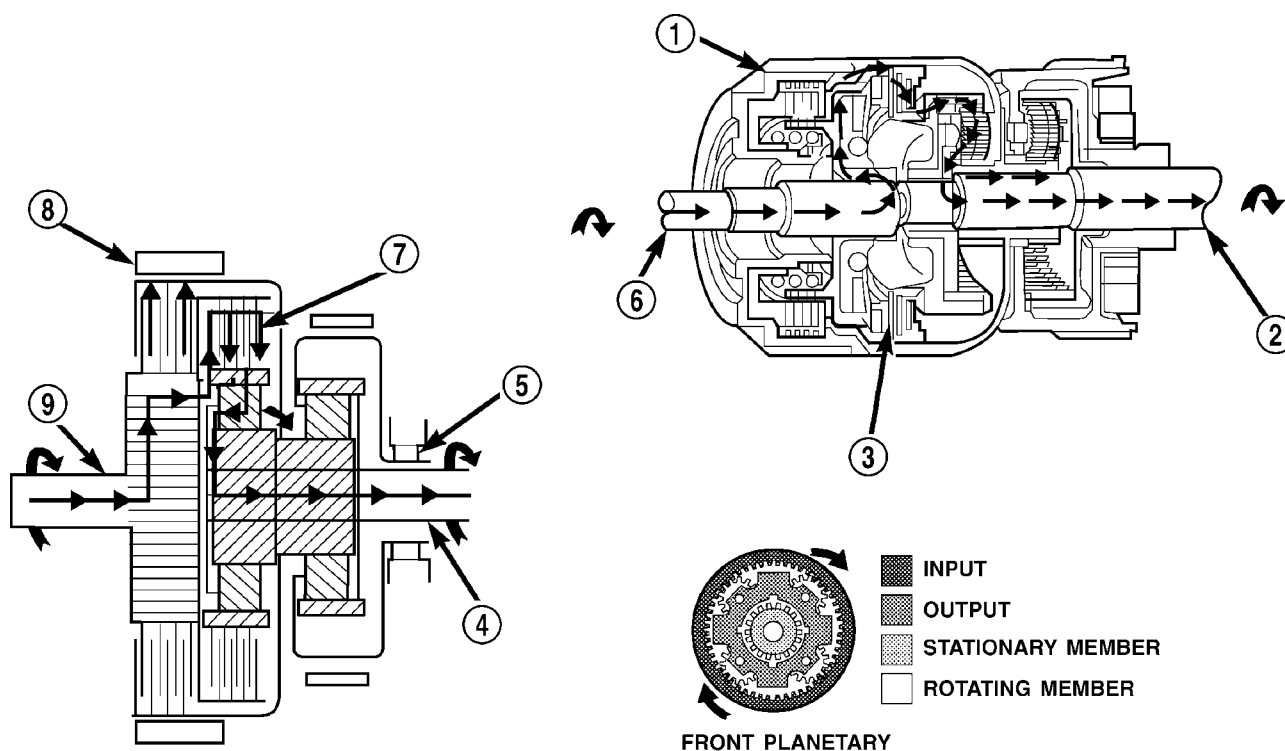


## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

**SECOND GEAR POWERFLOW**

In DRIVE-SECOND (Fig. 7), the same elements are applied as in MANUAL-SECOND. Therefore, the power flow will be the same, and both gears will be discussed as one in the same. In DRIVE-SECOND, the transmission has proceeded from first gear to its shift point, and is shifting from first gear to second. The second gear shift is obtained by keeping the rear clutch applied and applying the front (kickdown) band. The front band holds the front clutch retainer that is locked to the sun gear driving shell. With the rear clutch still applied, the input is still on the front annulus gear turning it clockwise at engine speed.

Now that the front band is holding the sun gear stationary, the annulus rotation causes the front planets to rotate in a clockwise direction. The front carrier is then also made to rotate in a clockwise direction but at a reduced speed. This will transmit the torque to the output shaft, which is directly connected to the front planet carrier. The rear planetary annulus gear will also be turning because it is directly splined to the output shaft. All power flow has occurred in the front planetary gear set during the drive-second stage of operation, and now the over-running clutch, in the rear of the transmission, is disengaged and freewheeling on its hub.



80c070aa

**Fig. 7 Second Gear Powerflow**

- 1 - KICKDOWN BAND APPLIED
- 2 - OUTPUT SHAFT
- 3 - REAR CLUTCH ENGAGED
- 4 - OUTPUT SHAFT
- 5 - OVER-RUNNING CLUTCH FREE-WHEELING

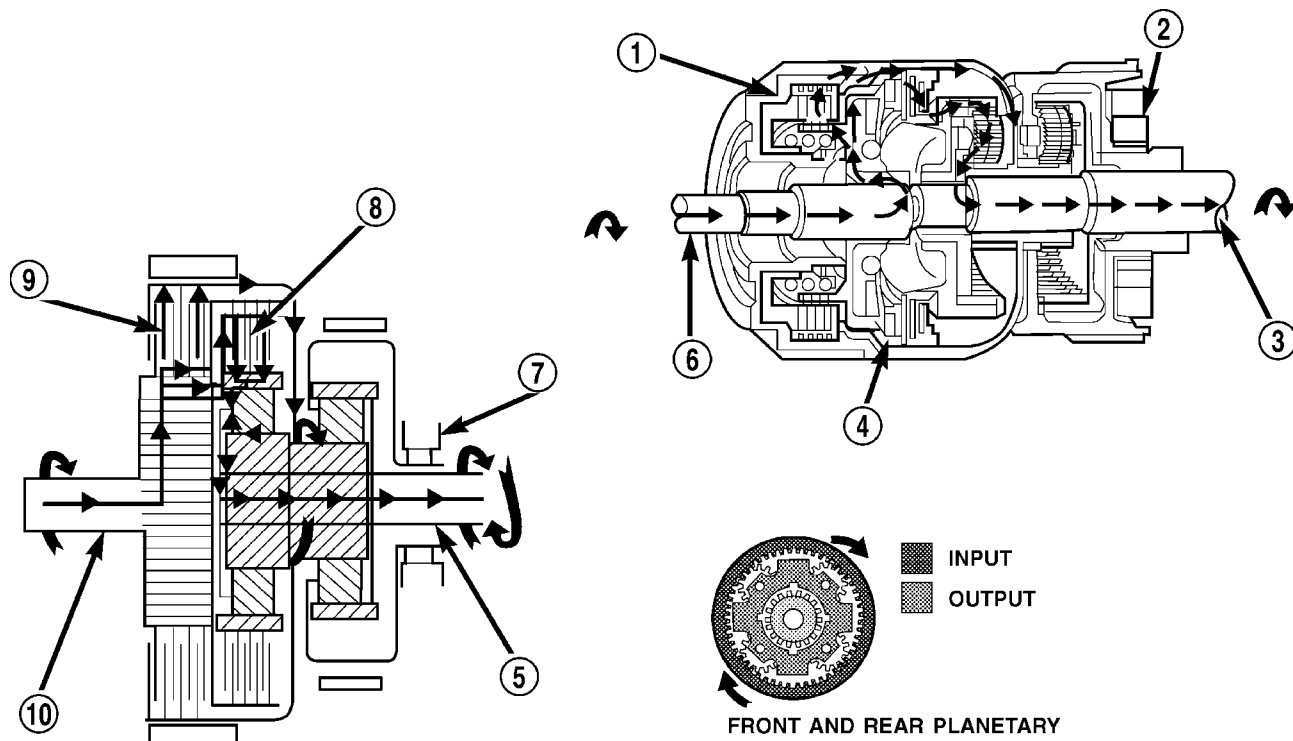
- 6 - INPUT SHAFT
- 7 - REAR CLUTCH APPLIED
- 8 - KICKDOWN BAND APPLIED
- 9 - INPUT SHAFT

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

**DIRECT DRIVE POWERFLOW**

The vehicle has accelerated and reached the shift point for the 2-3 upshift into direct drive (Fig. 8). When the shift takes place, the front band is released, and the front clutch is applied. The rear clutch stays applied as it has been in all the forward gears. With the front clutch now applied, engine torque is now on the front clutch retainer, which is locked to the sun gear driving shell. This means that the sun gear is now turning in engine rotation (clockwise) and at engine speed. The rear clutch is still applied so engine torque is also still on the front annulus gear. If two members of the same planetary

set are driven, direct drive results. Therefore, when two members are rotating at the same speed and in the same direction, it is the same as being locked up. The rear planetary set is also locked up, given the sun gear is still the input, and the rear annulus gear must turn with the output shaft. Both gears are turning in the same direction and at the same speed. The front and rear planet pinions do not turn at all in direct drive. The only rotation is the input from the engine to the connected parts, which are acting as one common unit, to the output shaft.



80c070ab

**Fig. 8 Direct Drive Powerflow**

- 1 - FRONT CLUTCH APPLIED
- 2 - OVER-RUNNING CLUTCH FREE-WHEELING
- 3 - OUTPUT SHAFT
- 4 - REAR CLUTCH APPLIED
- 5 - OUTPUT SHAFT

- 6 - INPUT SHAFT
- 7 - OVER-RUNNING CLUTCH FREE-WHEELING
- 8 - REAR CLUTCH APPLIED
- 9 - FRONT CLUTCH APPLIED
- 10 - INPUT SHAFT

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

**FOURTH GEAR POWERFLOW**

Fourth gear overdrive range is electronically controlled and hydraulically activated. Various sensor inputs are supplied to the powertrain control module to operate the overdrive solenoid on the valve body. The solenoid contains a check ball that opens and closes a vent port in the 3-4 shift valve feed passage. The overdrive solenoid (and check ball) are not energized in first, second, third, or reverse gear. The vent port remains open, diverting line pressure from the 2-3 shift valve away from the 3-4 shift valve. The overdrive control switch must be in the ON position to transmit overdrive status to the PCM. A 3-4 upshift occurs only when the overdrive solenoid is energized by the PCM. The PCM energizes the overdrive solenoid during the 3-4 upshift. This causes the solenoid check ball to close the vent port allowing line pressure from the 2-3 shift valve to act directly on the 3-4 upshift valve. Line pressure on the 3-4 shift valve overcomes valve spring pressure moving the valve to the upshift position. This action exposes the feed passages to the 3-4 timing valve, 3-4 quick fill valve, 3-4 accumulator, and ultimately to the overdrive piston. Line pressure through the timing valve moves the overdrive piston into contact with the overdrive clutch. The direct clutch is disengaged before the overdrive clutch is engaged. The boost valve provides increased fluid apply pressure to the overdrive clutch during 3-4 upshifts, and when accelerating in fourth gear. The 3-4 accumulator cushions overdrive clutch engagement to smooth 3-4 upshifts. The accumulator is charged at the same time as apply pressure acts against the overdrive piston.

**DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING****DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION**

Automatic transmission problems can be a result of poor engine performance, incorrect fluid level, incorrect linkage or cable adjustment, band or hydraulic control pressure adjustments, hydraulic system malfunctions or electrical/mechanical component malfunctions. Begin diagnosis by checking the easily accessible items such as: fluid level and condition, linkage adjustments and electrical connections. A road test will determine if further diagnosis is necessary.

**DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - PRELIMINARY**

Two basic procedures are required. One procedure for vehicles that are drivable and an alternate procedure for disabled vehicles (will not back up or move forward).

**VEHICLE IS DRIVEABLE**

- (1) Check for transmission fault codes using DRB® scan tool.
- (2) Check fluid level and condition.
- (3) Adjust throttle and gearshift linkage if complaint was based on delayed, erratic, or harsh shifts.
- (4) Road test and note how transmission upshifts, downshifts, and engages.
- (5) Perform hydraulic pressure test if shift problems were noted during road test.
- (6) Perform air-pressure test to check clutch-band operation.

**VEHICLE IS DISABLED**

- (1) Check fluid level and condition.
- (2) Check for broken or disconnected gearshift or throttle linkage.
- (3) Check for cracked, leaking cooler lines, or loose or missing pressure-port plugs.
- (4) Raise and support vehicle on safety stands, start engine, shift transmission into gear, and note following:
  - (a) If propeller shaft turns but wheels do not, problem is with differential or axle shafts.
  - (b) If propeller shaft does not turn and transmission is noisy, stop engine. Remove oil pan, and check for debris. If pan is clear, remove transmission and check for damaged drive plate, converter, oil pump, or input shaft.
  - (c) If propeller shaft does not turn and transmission is not noisy, perform hydraulic-pressure test to determine if problem is hydraulic or mechanical.

**DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - ROAD TESTING**

Before road testing, be sure the fluid level and control cable adjustments have been checked and adjusted if necessary. Verify that diagnostic trouble codes have been resolved.

Observe engine performance during the road test. A poorly tuned engine will not allow accurate analysis of transmission operation.

Operate the transmission in all gear ranges. Check for shift variations and engine flare which indicates slippage. Note if shifts are harsh, spongy, delayed, early, or if part throttle downshifts are sensitive.

Slippage indicated by engine flare, usually means clutch, band or overrunning clutch problems. If the condition is advanced, an overhaul will be necessary to restore normal operation.

A slipping clutch or band can often be determined by comparing which internal units are applied in the various gear ranges. The Clutch and Band Application chart provides a basis for analyzing road test results.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

## CLUTCH AND BAND APPLICATION CHART

SHIFT LEVER POSITION	TRANSMISSION CLUTCHES AND BANDS					OVERDRIVE CLUTCHES		
	FRONT CLUTCH	FRONT BAND	REAR CLUTCH	REAR BAND	OVER- RUNNING CLUTCH	OVER- DRIVE CLUTCH	DIRECT CLUTCH	OVER- RUNNING CLUTCH
Reverse	X			X			X	
Drive - First			X		X		X	X
Drive - Second		X	X				X	X
Drive - Third	X		X				X	X
Drive - Fourth	X		X			X		
Manual Second		X	X				X	X
Manual First			X	X	X		X	X

Note that the rear clutch is applied in all forward ranges (D, 2, 1). The transmission overrunning clutch is applied in first gear (D, 2 and 1 ranges) only. The rear band is applied in 1 and R range only.

Note that the overdrive clutch is applied only in fourth gear and the overdrive direct clutch and overrunning clutch are applied in all ranges except fourth gear.

For example: If slippage occurs in first gear in D and 2 range but not in 1 range, the transmission overrunning clutch is faulty. Similarly, if slippage occurs in any two forward gears, the rear clutch is slipping.

Applying the same method of analysis, note that the front and rear clutches are applied simultaneously only in D range third and fourth gear. If the transmission slips in third gear, either the front clutch or the rear clutch is slipping.

If the transmission slips in fourth gear but not in third gear, the overdrive clutch is slipping. By selecting another gear which does not use these clutches, the slipping unit can be determined. For example, if the transmission also slips in Reverse, the front clutch is slipping. If the transmission does not slip in Reverse, the rear clutch is slipping.

If slippage occurs during the 3-4 shift or only in fourth gear, the overdrive clutch is slipping. Similarly, if the direct clutch were to fail, the transmission would lose both reverse gear and overrunning braking in 2 position (manual second gear).

If the transmission will not shift to fourth gear, the control switch, overdrive solenoid or related wiring may also be the problem cause.

This process of elimination can be used to identify a slipping unit and check operation. Proper use of the Clutch and Band Application Chart is the key.

Although road test analysis will help determine the slipping unit, the actual cause of a malfunction usually cannot be determined until hydraulic and air pressure tests are performed. Practically any condition can be caused by leaking hydraulic circuits or sticking valves.

Unless a malfunction is obvious, such as no drive in D range first gear, do not disassemble the transmission. Perform the hydraulic and air pressure tests to help determine the probable cause.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - HYDRAULIC PRESSURE TEST

Hydraulic test pressures range from a low of one psi (6.895 kPa) governor pressure, to 300 psi (2068 kPa) at the rear servo pressure port in reverse.

An accurate tachometer and pressure test gauges are required. Test Gauge C-3292 has a 100 psi range and is used at the accumulator, governor, and front servo ports. Test Gauge C-3293-SP has a 300 psi range and is used at the rear servo and overdrive ports where pressures exceed 100 psi.

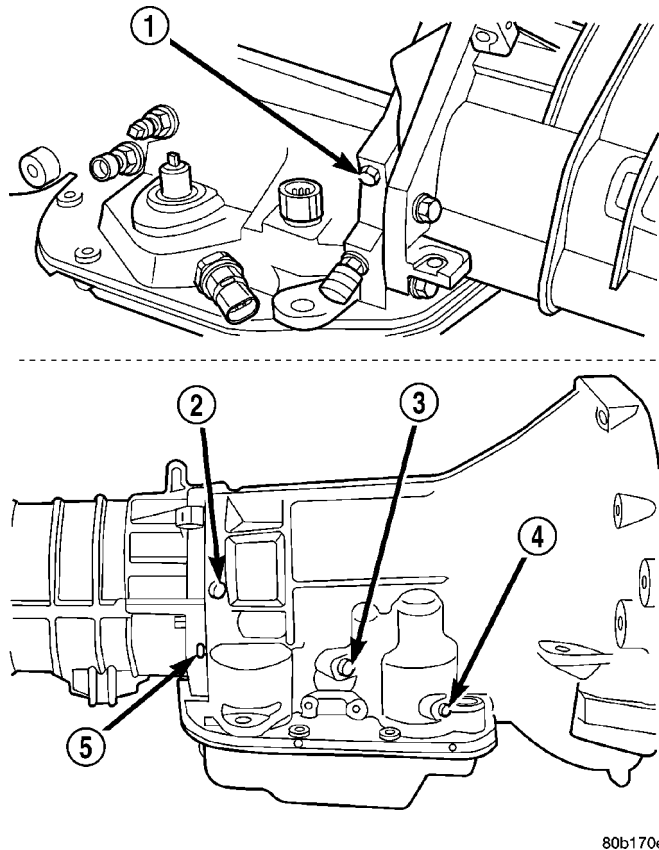
### Pressure Test Port Locations

Test ports are located at both sides of the transmission case (Fig. 9).

Line pressure is checked at the accumulator port on the right side of the case. The front servo pressure port is at the right side of the case just behind the filler tube opening.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

The rear servo and governor pressure ports are at the right rear of the transmission case. The overdrive clutch pressure port is at the left rear of the case.



**Fig. 9 Pressure Test Port Locations**

- 1 - OVERDRIVE CLUTCH TEST PORT
- 2 - GOVERNOR TEST PORT
- 3 - ACCUMULATOR TEST PORT
- 4 - FRONT SERVO TEST PORT
- 5 - REAR SERVO TEST PORT

#### Test One - Transmission In Manual Low

**NOTE:** This test checks pump output, pressure regulation, and condition of the rear clutch and servo circuit. Both test gauges are required for this test.

- (1) Connect tachometer to engine. Position tachometer so it can be observed from driver seat if helper will be operating engine. Raise vehicle on hoist that will allow rear wheels to rotate freely.
- (2) Connect 100 psi Gauge C-3292 to accumulator port. Then connect 300 psi Gauge C-3293-SP to rear servo port.
- (3) Disconnect throttle and gearshift cables from levers on transmission valve body manual shaft.
- (4) Have helper start and run engine at 1000 rpm.
- (5) Move transmission shift lever fully forward into 1 range.

(6) Gradually move transmission throttle lever from full forward to full rearward position and note pressures on both gauges:

- Line pressure at accumulator port should be 54-60 psi (372-414 kPa) with throttle lever forward and gradually increase to 90-96 psi (621-662 kPa) as throttle lever is moved rearward.
- Rear servo pressure should be same as line pressure within 3 psi (20.68 kPa).

#### Test Two - Transmission In 2 Range

**NOTE:** This test checks pump output, line pressure and pressure regulation. Use 100 psi Test Gauge C-3292 for this test.

- (1) Leave vehicle in place on hoist and leave Test Gauge C-3292 connected to accumulator port.
- (2) Have helper start and run engine at 1000 rpm.
- (3) Move transmission shift lever one detent rearward from full forward position. This is 2 range.
- (4) Move transmission throttle lever from full forward to full rearward position and read pressure on gauge.
- (5) Line pressure should be 54-60 psi (372-414 kPa) with throttle lever forward and gradually increase to 90-96 psi (621-662 kPa) as lever is moved rearward.

#### Test Three - Transmission In D Range Third Gear

**NOTE:** This test checks pressure regulation and condition of the clutch circuits. Both test gauges are required for this test.

- (1) Turn OD switch off.
- (2) Leave vehicle on hoist and leave Gauge C-3292 in place at accumulator port.
- (3) Move Gauge C-3293-SP over to front servo port for this test.
- (4) Have helper start and run engine at 1600 rpm for this test.
- (5) Move transmission shift lever two detents rearward from full forward position. This is D range.
- (6) Read pressures on both gauges as transmission throttle lever is gradually moved from full forward to full rearward position:
  - Line pressure at accumulator in D range third gear, should be 54-60 psi (372-414 kPa) with throttle lever forward and increase as lever is moved rearward.
  - Front servo pressure in D range third gear, should be within 3 psi (21 kPa) of line pressure up to kickdown point.



## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

## Test Four - Transmission In Reverse

**NOTE: This test checks pump output, pressure regulation and the front clutch and rear servo circuits. Use 300 psi Test Gauge C-3293-SP for this test.**

- (1) Leave vehicle on hoist and leave gauge C-3292 in place at accumulator port.
- (2) Move 300 psi Gauge C-3293-SP back to rear servo port.
- (3) Have helper start and run engine at 1600 rpm for test.
- (4) Move transmission shift lever four detents rearward from full forward position. This is Reverse range.
- (5) Move transmission throttle lever fully forward then fully rearward and note reading at Gauge C-3293-SP.
- (6) Pressure should be 145 - 175 psi (1000-1207 kPa) with throttle lever forward and increase to 230 - 280 psi (1586-1931 kPa) as lever is gradually moved rearward.

## Test Five - Governor Pressure

**NOTE: This test checks governor operation by measuring governor pressure response to changes in vehicle speed. It is usually not necessary to check governor operation unless shift speeds are incorrect or if the transmission will not downshift. The test should be performed on the road or on a hoist that will allow the rear wheels to rotate freely.**

- (1) Move 100 psi Test Gauge C-3292 to governor pressure port.
- (2) Move transmission shift lever two detents rearward from full forward position. This is D range.
- (3) Have helper start and run engine at curb idle speed. Then firmly apply service brakes so wheels will not rotate.
- (4) Note governor pressure:
  - Governor pressure should be no more than 20.6 kPa (3 psi) at curb idle speed and wheels not rotating.

- If pressure exceeds 20.6 kPa (3 psi), a fault exists in governor pressure control system.

(5) Release brakes, slowly increase engine speed, and observe speedometer and pressure test gauge (do not exceed 30 mph on speedometer). Governor pressure should increase in proportion to vehicle speed. Or approximately 6.89 kPa (1 psi) for every 1 mph.

(6) Governor pressure rise should be smooth and drop back to no more than 20.6 kPa (3 psi), after engine returns to curb idle and brakes are applied to prevent wheels from rotating.

(7) Compare results of pressure test with analysis chart.

## Test Six - Transmission In Overdrive Fourth Gear

**NOTE: This test checks line pressure at the overdrive clutch in fourth gear range. Use 300 psi Test Gauge C-3293-SP for this test. The test should be performed on the road or on a chassis dyno.**

- (1) Remove tachometer; it is not needed for this test.
- (2) Move 300 psi Gauge to overdrive clutch pressure test port. Then remove other gauge and reinstall test port plug.
- (3) Lower vehicle.
- (4) Turn OD switch on.
- (5) Secure test gauge so it can be viewed from drivers seat.
- (6) Start engine and shift into D range.
- (7) Increase vehicle speed gradually until 3-4 shift occurs and note gauge pressure.
- (8) Pressure should be 469-496 kPa (68-72 psi) with closed throttle and increase to 620-827 kPa (90-120 psi) at 1/2 to 3/4 throttle. Note that pressure can increase to around 896 kPa (130 psi) at full throttle.
- (9) Return to shop or move vehicle off chassis dyno.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

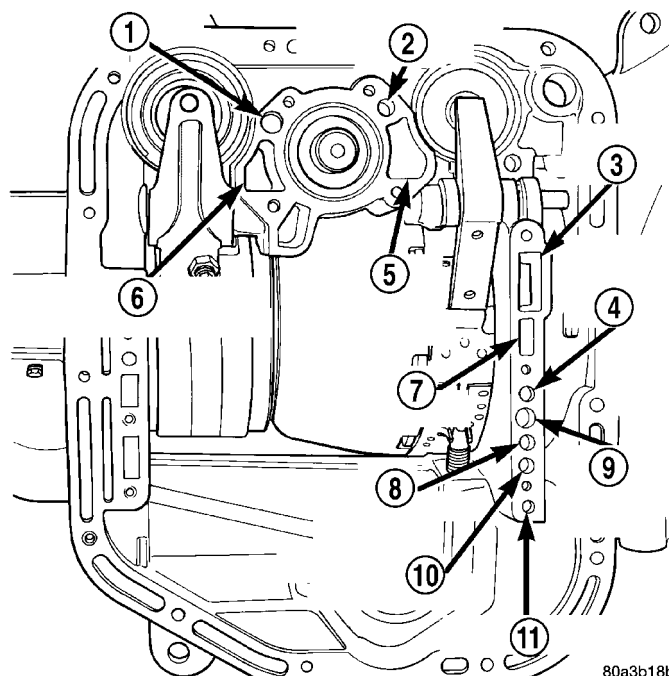
## PRESSURE TEST ANALYSIS CHART

TEST CONDITION	INDICATION
Line pressure OK during any one test	Pump and regulator valve OK
Line pressure OK in R but low in D, 2, 1	Leakage in rear clutch area (seal rings, clutch seals)
Pressure low in D Fourth Gear Range	Overdrive clutch piston seal, or check ball problem
Pressure OK in 1, 2 but low in D3 and R	Leakage in front clutch area
Pressure OK in 2 but low in R and 1	Leakage in rear servo
Front servo pressure in 2	Leakage in servo; broken servo ring or cracked servo piston
Pressure low in all positions	Clogged filter, stuck regulator valve, worn or faulty pump, low oil level
Governor pressure too high at idle speed	Governor pressure solenoid valve system fault. Refer to diagnostic book.
Governor pressure low at all mph figures	Faulty governor pressure solenoid, transmission control module, or governor pressure sensor
Lubrication pressure low at all throttle positions	Clogged fluid cooler or lines, seal rings leaking, worn pump bushings, pump, clutch retainer, or clogged filter.
Line pressure high	Output shaft plugged, sticky regulator valve
Line pressure low	Sticky regulator valve, clogged filter, worn pump

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - AIR CHECKING TRANSMISSION CLUTCH AND BAND OPERATION

Air-pressure testing can be used to check transmission front/rear clutch and band operation. The test can be conducted with the transmission either in the vehicle or on the work bench, as a final check, after overhaul.

Air-pressure testing requires that the oil pan and valve body be removed from the transmission. The servo and clutch apply passages are shown (Fig. 10).



**Fig. 10 Air Pressure Test Passages**

- 1 - REAR SERVO APPLY
- 2 - FRONT SERVO APPLY
- 3 - PUMP SUCTION
- 4 - FRONT CLUTCH APPLY
- 5 - FRONT SERVO RELEASE
- 6 - LINE PRESSURE TO ACCUMULATOR
- 7 - PUMP PRESSURE
- 8 - TO CONVERTER
- 9 - REAR CLUTCH APPLY
- 10 - FROM CONVERTER
- 11 - TO COOLER

### Front Clutch Air Test

Place one or two fingers on the clutch housing and apply air pressure through front clutch apply passage. Piston movement can be felt and a soft thump heard as the clutch applies.

### Rear Clutch Air Test

Place one or two fingers on the clutch housing and apply air pressure through rear clutch apply passage. Piston movement can be felt and a soft thump heard as the clutch applies.

### Front Servo Apply Air Test

Apply air pressure to the front servo apply passage. The servo rod should extend and cause the band to tighten around the drum. Spring pressure should release the servo when air pressure is removed.

### Rear Servo Air Test

Apply air pressure to the rear servo apply passage. The servo rod should extend and cause the band to tighten around the drum. Spring pressure should release the servo when air pressure is removed.



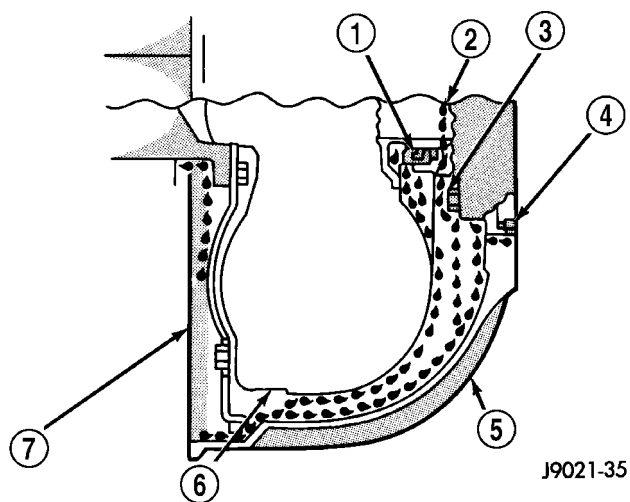
## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

**DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - CONVERTER HOUSING FLUID LEAK**

When diagnosing converter housing fluid leaks, two items must be established before repair.

- (1) Verify that a leak condition actually exists.
- (2) Determined the true source of the leak.

Some suspected converter housing fluid leaks may not be leaks at all. They may only be the result of residual fluid in the converter housing, or excess fluid spilled during factory fill or fill after repair. Converter housing leaks have several potential sources. Through careful observation, a leak source can be identified before removing the transmission for repair. Pump seal leaks tend to move along the drive hub and onto the rear of the converter. Pump body leaks follow the same path as a seal leak (Fig. 11). Pump vent or pump attaching bolt leaks are generally deposited on the inside of the converter housing and not on the converter itself (Fig. 11). Pump o-ring or gasket leaks usually travel down the inside of the converter housing. Front band lever pin plug leaks are generally deposited on the housing and not on the converter.



**Fig. 11 Converter Housing Leak Paths**

- 1 - PUMP SEAL
- 2 - PUMP VENT
- 3 - PUMP BOLT
- 4 - PUMP GASKET
- 5 - CONVERTER HOUSING
- 6 - CONVERTER
- 7 - REAR MAIN SEAL LEAK

**TORQUE CONVERTER LEAK POINTS**

Possible sources of converter leaks are:

- Leaks at the weld joint around the outside diameter weld.
- Leaks at the converter hub weld.

**CONVERTER HOUSING AREA LEAK CORRECTION**

- (1) Remove converter.
- (2) Tighten front band adjusting screw until band is tight around front clutch retainer. This prevents front/rear clutches from coming out when oil pump is removed.
- (3) Remove oil pump and remove pump seal. Inspect pump housing drainback and vent holes for obstructions. Clear holes with solvent and wire.
- (4) Inspect pump bushing and converter hub. If bushing is scored, replace it. If converter hub is scored, either polish it with crocus cloth or replace converter.
- (5) Install new pump seal, O-ring, and gasket. Replace oil pump if cracked, porous or damaged in any way. Be sure to loosen the front band before installing the oil pump, damage to the oil pump seal may occur if the band is still tightened to the front clutch retainer.
- (6) Loosen kickdown lever pin access plug three turns. Apply Loctite™ 592, or Permatex® No. 2 to plug threads and tighten plug to 17 N·m (150 in. lbs.) torque.
- (7) Adjust front band.
- (8) Lubricate pump seal and converter hub with transmission fluid or petroleum jelly and install converter.
- (9) Install transmission and converter housing dust shield.
- (10) Lower vehicle.

**DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - DIAGNOSIS CHARTS**

The diagnosis charts provide additional reference when diagnosing a transmission fault. The charts provide general information on a variety of transmission, overdrive unit and converter clutch fault conditions.

The hydraulic flow charts in the Schematics and Diagrams section of this group, outline fluid flow and hydraulic circuitry. Circuit operation is provided for PARK, NEUTRAL, FIRST, SECOND, THIRD, FOURTH, MANUAL FIRST, MANUAL SECOND, and REVERSE gear ranges. Normal working pressures are also supplied for each of the gear ranges.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

## DIAGNOSIS CHARTS

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
HARSH ENGAGEMENT (FROM NEUTRAL TO DRIVE OR REVERSE)	1. Fluid Level Low.	1. Add Fluid
	2. Throttle Linkage Mis-adjusted.	2. Adjust linkage - setting may be too long.
	3. Mount and Driveline Bolts Loose.	3. Check engine mount, transmission mount, propeller shaft, rear spring to body bolts, rear control arms, crossmember and axle bolt torque. Tighten loose bolts and replace missing bolts.
	4. U-Joint Worn/Broken.	4. Remove propeller shaft and replace U-Joint.
	5. Axle Backlash Incorrect.	5. Check per Service Manual. Correct as needed.
	6. Hydraulic Pressure Incorrect.	6. Check pressure. Remove, overhaul or adjust valve body as needed.
	7. Band Mis-adjusted.	7. Adjust rear band.
	8. Valve Body Check Balls Missing.	8. Inspect valve body for proper check ball installation.
	9. Axle Pinion Flange Loose.	9. Replace nut and check pinion threads before installing new nut. Replace pinion gear if threads are damaged.
	10. Clutch, band or planetary component damaged.	10. Remove, disassemble and repair transmission as necessary.
	11. Converter Clutch Faulty.	11. Replace converter.
DELAYED ENGAGEMENT (FROM NEUTRAL TO DRIVE OR REVERSE)	1. Fluid Level Low.	1. Correct level and check for leaks.
	2. Filter Clogged.	2. Change filter.
	3. Gearshift Linkage Mis-adjusted.	3. Adjust linkage and repair linkage if worn or damaged.
	4. Torque Converter Drain Back (Oil drains from torque converter into transmission sump).	4. If vehicle moves normally after 5 seconds after shifting into gear, no repair is necessary. If longer, inspect pump bushing for wear. Replace pump house.
	5. Rear Band Mis-adjusted.	5. Adjust band.
	6. Valve Body Filter Plugged.	6. Replace fluid and filter. If oil pan and old fluid were full of clutch disc material and/or metal particles, overhaul will be necessary.
	7. Oil Pump Gears Worn/Damaged.	7. Remove transmission and replace oil pump.
	8. Governor Circuit and Solenoid Valve Electrical Fault.	8. Test with DRB® scan tool and repair as required.
	9. Hydraulic Pressure Incorrect.	9. Perform pressure test, remove transmission and repair as needed.
	10. Reaction Shaft Seal Rings Worn/Broken.	10. Remove transmission, remove oil pump and replace seal rings.
	11. Rear Clutch/Input Shaft, Rear Clutch Seal Rings Damaged.	11. Remove and disassemble transmission and repair as necessary.
	12. Regulator Valve Stuck.	12. Clean.
	13. Cooler Plugged.	13. Replace cooler.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
NO DRIVE RANGE (REVERSE OK)	1. Fluid Level Low.	1. Add fluid and check for leaks if drive is restored.
	2. Gearshift Linkage/Cable Loose/Misadjusted.	2. Repair or replace linkage components.
	3. Rear Clutch Burnt.	3. Remove and disassemble transmission and rear clutch and seals. Repair/replace worn or damaged parts as needed.
	4. Valve Body Malfunction.	4. Remove and disassemble valve body. Replace assembly if any valves or bores are damaged.
	5. Transmission Overrunning Clutch Broken.	5. Remove and disassemble transmission. Replace overrunning clutch.
	6. Input Shaft Seal Rings Worn/Damaged.	6. Remove and disassemble transmission. Replace seal rings and any other worn or damaged parts.
	7. Front Planetary Failed Broken.	7. Remove and repair.
NO DRIVE OR REVERSE (VEHICLE WILL NOT MOVE)	1. Fluid Level Low.	1. Add fluid and check for leaks if drive is restored.
	2. Gearshift Linkage/Cable Loose/Misadjusted.	2. Inspect, adjust and reassemble linkage as needed. Replace worn/damaged parts.
	3. U-Joint/Axle/Transfer Case Broken.	3. Perform preliminary inspection procedure for vehicle that will not move. Refer to procedure in diagnosis section.
	4. Filter Plugged.	4. Remove and disassemble transmission. Repair or replace failed components as needed. Replace filter. If filter and fluid contained clutch material or metal particles, an overhaul may be necessary. Replace cooler as necessary.
	5. Oil Pump Damaged.	5. Perform pressure test to confirm low pressure. Replace pump body assembly if necessary.
	6. Valve Body Malfunctioned.	6. Check and inspect valve body. Replace valve body (as assembly) if any valve or bore is damaged. Clean and reassemble correctly if all parts are in good condition.
	7. Transmission Internal Component Damaged.	7. Remove and disassemble transmission. Repair or replace failed components as needed.
	8. Park Sprag not Releasing - Check Stall Speed, Worn/Damaged/Stuck.	8. Remove, disassemble, repair.
	9. Torque Converter Damage.	9. Inspect and replace as required.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
SHIFTS DELAYED OR ERRATIC (SHIFTS ALSO HARSH AT TIMES)	1. Fluid Level Low/High.	1. Correct fluid level and check for leaks if low.
	2. Fluid Filter Clogged.	2. Replace filter. If filter and fluid contained clutch material or metal particles, an overhaul may be necessary.
	3. Throttle Linkage Mis-adjusted.	3. Adjust linkage as described in service section.
	4. Throttle Linkage Binding.	4. Check cable for binding. Check for return to closed throttle at transmission.
	5. Gearshift Linkage/Cable Mis-adjusted.	5. Adjust linkage/cable as described in service section.
	6. Clutch or Servo Failure.	6. Remove valve body and air test clutch, and band servo operation. Disassemble and repair transmission as needed.
	7. Governor Circuit Electrical Fault.	7. Test using DRB® scan tool and repair as required.
	8. Front Band Mis-adjusted.	8. Adjust band.
	9. Pump Suction Passage Leak.	9. Check for excessive foam on dipstick after normal driving. Check for loose pump bolts, defective gasket. Replace pump assembly if needed.
NO REVERSE (D RANGES OK)	1. Gearshift Linkage/Cable Mis-adjusted/Damaged.	1. Repair or replace linkage parts as needed.
	2. Park Sprag Sticking.	2. Replace overdrive annulus gear.
	3. Rear Band Mis-adjusted/Worn.	3. Adjust band; replace.
	4. Valve Body Malfunction.	4. Remove and service valve body. Replace valve body if any valves or valve bores are worn or damaged.
	5. Rear Servo Malfunction.	5. Remove and disassemble transmission. Replace worn/damaged servo parts as necessary.
	6. Direct Clutch in Overdrive Worn.	6. Disassemble overdrive. Replace worn or damaged parts.
	7. Front Clutch Burnt.	7. Remove and disassemble transmission. Replace worn, damaged clutch parts as required.
HAS FIRST/REVERSE ONLY (NO 1-2 OR 2-3 UPSHIFT)	1. Governor Circuit Electrical Fault.	1. Test using DRB® scan tool and repair as required.
	2. Valve Body Malfunction.	2. Repair stuck 1-2 shift valve or governor plug.
	3. Front Servo/Kickdown Band Damaged/Burned.	3. Repair/replace.
MOVES IN 2ND OR 3RD GEAR, ABRUPTLY DOWNSHIFTS TO LOW	1. Valve Body Malfunction.	1. Remove, clean and inspect. Look for stuck 1-2 valve or governor plug.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
NO LOW GEAR (MOVES IN 2ND OR 3RD GEAR ONLY)	1. Governor Circuit Electrical Fault.	1. Test with DRB® scan tool and repair as required.
	2. Valve Body Malfunction.	2. Remove, clean and inspect. Look for sticking 1-2 shift valve, 2-3 shift valve, governor plug or broken springs.
	3. Front Servo Piston Cocked in Bore.	3. Inspect servo and repair as required.
	4. Front Band Linkage Malfunction	4. Inspect linkage and look for bind in linkage.
NO KICKDOWN OR NORMAL DOWNSHIFT	1. Throttle Linkage Mis-adjusted.	1. Adjust linkage.
	2. Accelerator Pedal Travel Restricted.	2. Verify floor mat is not under pedal, repair worn accelerator cable or bent brackets.
	3. Valve Body Hydraulic Pressures Too High or Too Low Due to Valve Body Malfunction or Incorrect Hydraulic Control Pressure Adjustments.	3. Perform hydraulic pressure tests to determine cause and repair as required. Correct valve body pressure adjustments as required.
	4. Governor Circuit Electrical Fault.	4. Test with DRB® scan tool and repair as required.
	5. Valve Body Malfunction.	5. Perform hydraulic pressure tests to determine cause and repair as required. Correct valve body pressure adjustments as required.
	6. TPS Malfunction.	6. Replace sensor, check with DRB® scan tool.
	7. PCM Malfunction.	7. Check with DRB® scan tool and replace if required.
	8. Valve Body Malfunction.	8. Repair sticking 1-2, 2-3 shift valves, governor plugs, 3-4 solenoid, 3-4 shift valve, 3-4 timing valve.
STUCK IN LOW GEAR (WILL NOT UPSHIFT)	1. Throttle Linkage Mis-adjusted/Stuck.	1. Adjust linkage and repair linkage if worn or damaged. Check for binding cable or missing return spring.
	2. Gearshift Linkage Mis-adjusted.	2. Adjust linkage and repair linkage if worn or damaged.
	3. Governor Component Electrical Fault.	3. Check operating pressures and test with DRB® scan tool, repair faulty component.
	4. Front Band Out of Adjustment.	4. Adjust Band.
	5. Clutch or Servo Malfunction.	5. Air pressure check operation of clutches and bands. Repair faulty component.
CREEPS IN NEUTRAL	1. Gearshift Linkage Mis-adjusted.	1. Adjust linkage.
	2. Rear Clutch Dragging/Warped.	2. Disassemble and repair.
	3. Valve Body Malfunction.	3. Perform hydraulic pressure test to determine cause and repair as required.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
BUZZING NOISE	1. Fluid Level Low	1. Add fluid and check for leaks.
	2. Shift Cable Mis-assembled.	2. Route cable away from engine and bell housing.
	3. Valve Body Mis-assembled.	3. Remove, disassemble, inspect valve body. Reassemble correctly if necessary. Replace assembly if valves or springs are damaged. Check for loose bolts or screws.
	4. Pump Passages Leaking.	4. Check pump for porous casting, scores on mating surfaces and excess rotor clearance. Repair as required. Loose pump bolts.
	5. Cooling System Cooler Plugged.	5. Replace cooler.
	6. Overrunning Clutch Damaged.	6. Replace clutch.
SLIPS IN REVERSE ONLY	1. Fluid Level Low.	1. Add fluid and check for leaks.
	2. Gearshift Linkage Mis-adjusted.	2. Adjust linkage.
	3. Rear Band Mis-adjusted.	3. Adjust band.
	4. Rear Band Worn.	4. Replace as required.
	5. Overdrive Direct Clutch Worn.	5. Disassemble overdrive. Repair as needed.
	6. Hydraulic Pressure Too Low.	6. Perform hydraulic pressure tests to determine cause.
	7. Rear Servo Leaking.	7. Air pressure check clutch-servo operation and repair as required.
	8. Band Linkage Binding.	8. Inspect and repair as required.
SLIPS IN FORWARD DRIVE RANGES	1. Fluid Level Low.	1. Add fluid and check for leaks.
	2. Fluid Foaming.	2. Check for high oil level, bad pump gasket or seals, dirt between pump halves and loose pump bolts. Replace pump if necessary.
	3. Throttle Linkage Mis-adjusted.	3. Adjust linkage.
	4. Gearshift Linkage Mis-adjusted.	4. Adjust linkage.
	5. Rear Clutch Worn.	5. Inspect and replace as needed.
	6. Low Hydraulic Pressure Due to Worn Pump, Incorrect Control Pressure Adjustments, Valve Body Warpage or Malfunction, Sticking, Leaking Seal Rings, Clutch Seals Leaking, Servo Leaks, Clogged Filter or Cooler Lines.	6. Perform hydraulic and air pressure tests to determine cause.
	7. Rear Clutch Malfunction, Leaking Seals or Worn Plates.	7. Air pressure check clutch-servo operation and repair as required.
	8. Overrunning Clutch Worn, Not Holding (Slips in 1 Only).	8. Replace Clutch.
SLIPS IN LOW GEAR "D" ONLY, BUT NOT IN MANUAL 1 POSITION	Overrunning Clutch Faulty.	Replace overrunning clutch.



## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
GROWLING, GRATING OR SCRAPING NOISES	1. Drive Plate Broken.	1. Replace.
	2. Torque Converter Bolts Hitting Dust Shield.	2. Dust shield bent. Replace or repair.
	3. Planetary Gear Set Broken/ Seized.	3. Check for debris in oil pan and repair as required.
	4. Overrunning Clutch Worn/Broken.	4. Inspect and check for debris in oil pan. Repair as required.
	5. Oil Pump Components Scored/ Binding.	5. Remove, inspect and repair as required.
	6. Output Shaft Bearing or Bushing Damaged.	6. Remove, inspect and repair as required.
	7. Clutch Operation Faulty.	7. Perform air pressure check and repair as required.
	8. Front and Rear Bands Mis-adjusted.	8. Adjust bands.
DRAGS OR LOCKS UP	1. Fluid Level Low.	1. Check and adjust level.
	2. Clutch Dragging/Failed	2. Air pressure check clutch operation and repair as required.
	3. Front or Rear Band Mis-adjusted.	3. Adjust bands.
	4. Case Leaks Internally.	4. Check for leakage between passages in case.
	5. Servo Band or Linkage Malfunction.	5. Air pressure check servo operation and repair as required.
	6. Overrunning Clutch Worn.	6. Remove and inspect clutch. Repair as required.
	7. Planetary Gears Broken.	7. Remove, inspect and repair as required (look for debris in oil pan).
	8. Converter Clutch Dragging.	8. Check for plugged cooler. Inspect pump for excessive side clearance. Replace pump as required.
NO 4-3 DOWNSHIFT	1. Circuit Wiring and/or Connectors Shorted.	1. Test wiring and connectors with test lamp and volt/ohmmeter. Repair wiring as necessary. Replace connectors and/or harnesses as required.
	2. PCM Malfunction.	2. Check PCM operation with DRB® scan tool. Replace PCM only if faulty.
	3. TPS Malfunction	3. Check TPS with DRB® scan tool at PCM.
	4. Lockup Solenoid Not Venting.	4. Remove valve body and replace solenoid assembly if plugged or shorted.
	5. Overdrive Solenoid Not Venting.	5. Remove valve body and replace solenoid if plugged or shorted.
	6. Valve Body Valve Sticking.	6. Repair stuck 3-4 shift valve or lockup timing valve.



## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
NO 4-3 DOWNSHIFT WHEN CONTROL SWITCH IS TURNED OFF	1. Control Switch Open/Shorted.	1. Test and replace switch if faulty.
	2. Overdrive Solenoid Connector Shorted.	2. Test solenoids and replace if seized or shorted.
	3. PCM Malfunction.	3. Test with DRB® scan tool. Replace PCM if faulty.
	4. Valve Body Stuck Valves.	4. Repair stuck 3-4, lockup or lockup timing valve.
CLUNK NOISE FROM DRIVELINE ON CLOSED THROTTLE 4-3 DOWNSHIFT	1. Transmission Fluid Low.	1. Add Fluid.
	2. Throttle Cable Mis-adjusted.	2. Adjust cable.
	3. Overdrive Clutch Select Spacer Wrong Spacer.	3. Replace overdrive piston thrust plate spacer.
3-4 UPSHIFT OCCURS IMMEDIATELY AFTER 2-3 SHIFT	1. Overdrive Solenoid Connector or Wiring Shorted.	1. Test connector and wiring for loose connections, shorts or ground and repair as needed.
	2. TPS Malfunction.	2. Test TPS and replace as necessary. Check with DRB® scan tool.
	3. PCM Malfunction.	3. Test PCM with DRB® scan tool and replace controller if faulty.
	4. Overdrive Solenoid Malfunction.	4. Replace solenoid.
	5. Valve Body Malfunction.	5. Remove, disassemble, clean and inspect valve body components. Make sure all valves and plugs slide freely in bores. Polish valves with crocus cloth if needed.
WHINE/NOISE RELATED TO ENGINE SPEED	1. Fluid Level Low.	1. Add fluid and check for leaks.
	2. Shift Cable Incorrect Routing.	2. Check shift cable for correct routing. Should not touch engine or bell housing.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
NO 3-4 UPSHIFT	1. O/D Switch In OFF Position.	1. Turn control switch to ON position.
	2. Overdrive Circuit Fuse Blown.	2. Replace fuse. Determine why fuse failed and repair as necessary (i.e., shorts or grounds in circuit).
	3. O/D Switch Wire Shorted/Open Cut.	3. Check wires/connections with 12V test lamp and voltmeter. Repair damaged or loose wire/connection as necessary.
	4. Distance or Coolant Sensor Malfunction.	4. Check with DRB® scan tool and repair or replace as necessary.
	5. TPS Malfunction.	5. Check with DRB® scan tool and replace if necessary.
	6. Neutral Sense to PCM Wire Shorted/Cut.	6. Test switch/sensor as described in service section and replace if necessary. Engine no start.
	7. PCM Malfunction.	7. Check with DRB® scan tool and replace if necessary.
	8. Overdrive Solenoid Shorted/Open.	8. Replace solenoid if shorted or open and repair loose or damaged wires (DRB® scan tool).
	9. Solenoid Feed Orifice in Valve Body Blocked.	9. Remove, disassemble, and clean valve body thoroughly. Check feed orifice.
	10. Overdrive Clutch Failed.	10. Disassemble overdrive and repair as needed.
	11. Hydraulic Pressure Low.	11. Pressure test transmission to determine cause.
	12. Valve Body Valve Stuck.	12. Repair stuck 3-4 shift valve, 3-4 timing valve.
	13. O/D Piston Incorrect Spacer.	13. Remove unit, check end play and install correct spacer.
	14. Overdrive Piston Seal Failure.	14. Replace both seals.
	15. O/D Check Valve/Orifice Failed.	15. Check for free movement and secure assembly (in piston retainer). Check ball bleed orifice.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
SLIPS IN OVERDRIVE FOURTH GEAR	1. Fluid Level Low.	1. Add fluid and check for leaks.
	2. Overdrive Clutch Pack Worn.	2. Remove overdrive unit and rebuild clutch pack.
	3. Overdrive Piston Retainer Bleed Orifice Blown Out.	3. Disassemble transmission, remove retainer and replace orifice.
	4. Overdrive Piston or Seal Malfunction.	4. Remove overdrive unit. Replace seals if worn. Replace piston if damaged. If piston retainer is damaged, remove and disassemble the transmission.
	5. 3-4 Shift Valve, Timing Valve or Accumulator Malfunction.	5. Remove and overhaul valve body. Replace accumulator seals. Make sure all valves operate freely in bores and do not bind or stick. Make sure valve body screws are correctly tightened and separator plates are properly positioned.
	6. Overdrive Unit Thrust Bearing Failure.	6. Disassemble overdrive unit and replace thrust bearing (NO. 1 thrust bearing is between overdrive piston and clutch hub; NO. 2 thrust bearing is between the planetary gear and the direct clutch spring plate; NO. 3 thrust bearing is between overrunning clutch hub and output shaft).
	7. O/D Check Valve/Bleed Orifice Failure.	7. Check for function/secure orifice insert in O/D piston retainer.
DELAYED 3-4 UPSHIFT (SLOW TO ENGAGE)	1. Fluid Level Low.	1. Add fluid and check for leaks.
	2. Throttle Valve Cable Mis-adjusted.	2. Adjust throttle valve cable.
	3. Overdrive Clutch Pack Worn/ Burnt.	3. Remove unit and rebuild clutch pack.
	4. TPS Faulty.	4. Test with DRB® scan tool and replace as necessary
	5. Overdrive Clutch Bleed Orifice Plugged.	5. Disassemble transmission and replace orifice.
	6. Overdrive Solenoid or Wiring Shorted/Open.	6. Test solenoid and check wiring for loose/corroded connections or shorts/grounds. Replace solenoid if faulty and repair wiring if necessary.
	7. Overdrive Excess Clearance.	7. Remove unit. Measure end play and select proper spacer.
	8. O/D Check Valve Missing or Stuck.	8. Check for presence of check valve. Repair or replace as required.
TORQUE CONVERTER LOCKS UP IN SECOND AND/OR THIRD GEAR	Lockup Solenoid, Relay or Wiring Shorted/Open.	Test solenoid, relay and wiring for continuity, shorts or grounds. Replace solenoid and relay if faulty. Repair wiring and connectors as necessary.
HARSH 1-2, 2-3, 3-4 OR 3-2 SHIFTS	Lockup Solenoid Malfunction.	Remove valve body and replace solenoid assembly.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
NO START IN PARK OR NEUTRAL	1. Gearshift Linkage/Cable Mis-adjusted.	1. Adjust linkage/cable.
	2. Neutral Sense Wire Open/Cut.	2. Check continuity with test lamp. Repair as required.
	3. Park/Neutral Switch, or Transmission Range Sensor Faulty.	3. Refer to service section for test and replacement procedure.
	4. Park/Neutral Switch, or Transmission Range Sensor Connection Faulty.	4. Connectors spread open. Repair.
	5. Valve Body Manual Lever Assembly Bent/Worn/Broken.	5. Inspect lever assembly and replace if damaged.
NO REVERSE (OR SLIPS IN REVERSE)	1. Direct Clutch Pack (front clutch) Worn.	1. Disassemble unit and rebuild clutch pack.
	2. Rear Band Mis-adjusted.	2. Adjust band.
	3. Front Clutch Malfunctioned/ Burned.	3. Air-pressure test clutch operation. Remove and rebuild if necessary.
	4. Overdrive Thrust Bearing Failure.	4. Disassemble geartrain and replace bearings.
	5. Direct Clutch Spring Collapsed/ Broken.	5. Remove and disassemble unit. Check clutch position and replace spring.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
OIL LEAKS.	1. Fluid Lines and Fittings Loose/Leaks/Damaged.	1. Tighten fittings. If leaks persist, replace fittings and lines if necessary.
	2. Fill Tube (where tube enters case) Leaks/Damaged.	2. Replace tube seal. Inspect tube for cracks in fill tube.
	3. Pressure Port Plug Loose/Leaky/Damaged.	3. Tighten to correct torque. Replace plug or reseal if leak persists.
	4. Pan Gasket Leaks.	4. Tighten pan screws (150 in. lbs.). If leaks persist, replace gasket.
	5. Valve Body Manual Lever Shaft Seal Leaks/Worn.	5. Replace shaft seal.
	6. Rear Bearing Access Plate Leaks.	6. Replace gasket. Tighten screws.
	7. Gasket Damaged or Bolts are Loose.	7. Replace bolts or gasket or tighten both.
	8. Adapter/Extension Gasket Damaged Leaks/Damaged.	8. Replace gasket.
	9. Park/Neutral Switch, or Transmission Range Sensor Leaks/Damaged.	9. Replace switch and gasket.
	10. Converter Housing Area Leaks.	10. Check for leaks at seal caused by worn seal or burr on converter hub (cutting seal), worn bushing, missing oil return, oil in front pump housing or hole plugged. Check for leaks past O-ring seal on pump or past pump-to-case bolts; pump housing porous, oil coming out vent due to overfill or leak past front band shaft access plug.
	11. Pump Seal Leaks/Worn/Damaged.	11. Replace seal.
	12. Torque Converter Weld Leak/Cracked Hub.	12. Replace converter.
	13. Case Porosity Leaks.	13. Replace case.
NOISY OPERATION IN FOURTH GEAR ONLY	1. Overdrive Clutch Discs, Plates or Snap Rings Damaged.	1. Remove unit and rebuild clutch pack.
	2. Overdrive Piston or Planetary Thrust Bearing Damaged.	2. Remove and disassemble unit. Replace either thrust bearing if damaged.
	3. Output Shaft Bearings Scored/Damaged.	3. Remove and disassemble unit. Replace either bearing if damaged.
	4. Planetary Gears Worn/Chipped.	4. Remove and overhaul overdrive unit.
	5. Overdrive Unit Overrunning Clutch Rollers Worn/Scored.	5. Remove and overhaul overdrive unit.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

**STANDARD PROCEDURE - ALUMINUM  
THREAD REPAIR**

Damaged or worn threads in the aluminum transmission case and valve body can be repaired by the use of Heli-Coils™, or equivalent. This repair consists of drilling out the worn-out damaged threads. Then tap the hole with a special Heli-Coil™ tap, or equivalent, and installing a Heli-Coil™ insert, or equivalent, into the hole. This brings the hole back to its original thread size.

Heli-Coil™, or equivalent, tools and inserts are readily available from most automotive parts suppliers.

**REMOVAL**

The overdrive unit can be removed and serviced separately. It is not necessary to remove the entire transmission assembly to perform overdrive unit repairs.

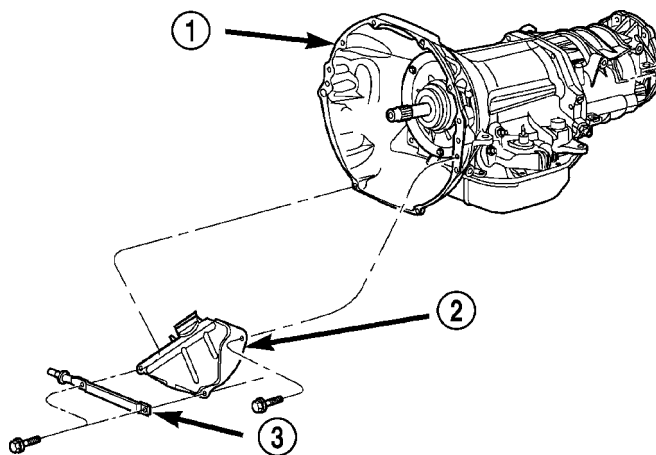
If only the overdrive unit requires service, refer to Overdrive Removal for proper procedures.

**CAUTION:** The transmission and torque converter must be removed as an assembly to avoid component damage. The converter driveplate, pump bushing, or oil seal can be damaged if the converter is left attached to the driveplate during removal. Be sure to remove the transmission and converter as an assembly.

- (1) Disconnect battery negative cable.
- (2) Disconnect and lower or remove necessary exhaust components.
- (3) Disconnect fluid cooler lines at transmission.
- (4) Remove starter motor. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/STARTING/STARTER MOTOR - REMOVAL)
- (5) Disconnect and remove crankshaft position sensor. (Refer to 14 - FUEL SYSTEM/FUEL INJECTION/CRANKSHAFT POSITION SENSOR - REMOVAL) Retain sensor attaching bolts.

**CAUTION:** The crankshaft position sensor will be damaged if the transmission is removed, or installed, while the sensor is still bolted to the engine block, or transmission (4.0L only). To avoid damage, be sure to remove the sensor before removing the transmission.

- (6) Remove the bolts holding the bell housing brace to the transmission.
- (7) Remove nut holding the bell housing brace to the engine to transmission bending brace.
- (8) Remove the bell housing brace from the transmission (Fig. 12).
- (9) Remove the bolt holding the torque converter cover to the transmission.
- (10) Remove the torque converter cover from the transmission.
- (11) If transmission is being removed for overhaul, remove transmission oil pan, drain fluid and reinstall pan.



80ba79c3

**Fig. 12 Bell Housing Brace and Converter Cover**

- 1 - Transmission
- 2 - Torque Converter Cover
- 3 - Bellhousing Brace

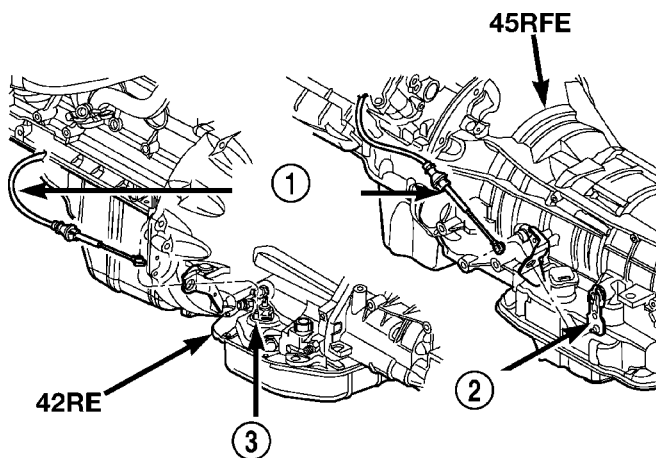
(12) Remove fill tube bracket bolts and pull tube out of transmission. Retain fill tube seal. On 4 x 4 models, it will also be necessary to remove bolt attaching transfer case vent tube to converter housing.

(13) Rotate crankshaft in clockwise direction until converter bolts are accessible. Then remove bolts one at a time. Rotate crankshaft with socket wrench on damper bolt.

(14) Mark propeller shaft and axle yokes for assembly alignment. Then disconnect and remove propeller shaft. On 4 x 4 models, remove both propeller shafts.

(15) Disconnect wires from park/neutral position switch and transmission solenoid.

(16) Disconnect gearshift cable from transmission manual valve lever (Fig. 13).



80ba79c4

**Fig. 13 Transmission Shift Cable**

- 1 - SHIFT CABLE
- 2 - MANUAL LEVER
- 3 - MANUAL LEVER

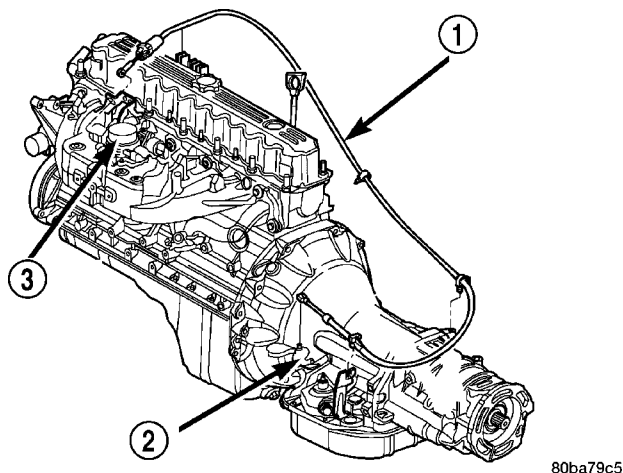


## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

(17) Disconnect throttle valve cable from transmission bracket and throttle valve lever (Fig. 14).

(18) Disconnect transfer case shift cable from the transfer case shift lever (Fig. 15).

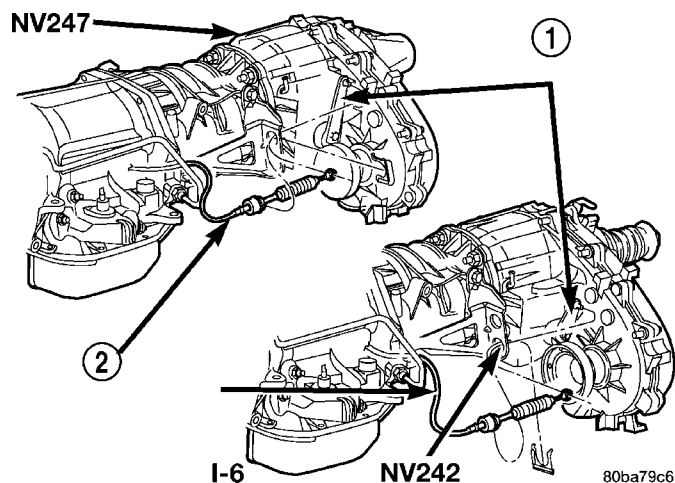
(19) Remove the clip securing the transfer case shift cable into the cable support bracket.



80ba79c5

**Fig. 14 Throttle Valve Cable**

- 1 - THROTTLE VALVE CABLE  
2 - THROTTLE VALVE LEVER  
3 - THROTTLE BODY



80ba79c6

**Fig. 15 Transfer Case Shift Cable**

- 1 - TRANSFER CASE SHIFT LEVER  
2 - TRANSFER CASE SHIFT CABLE

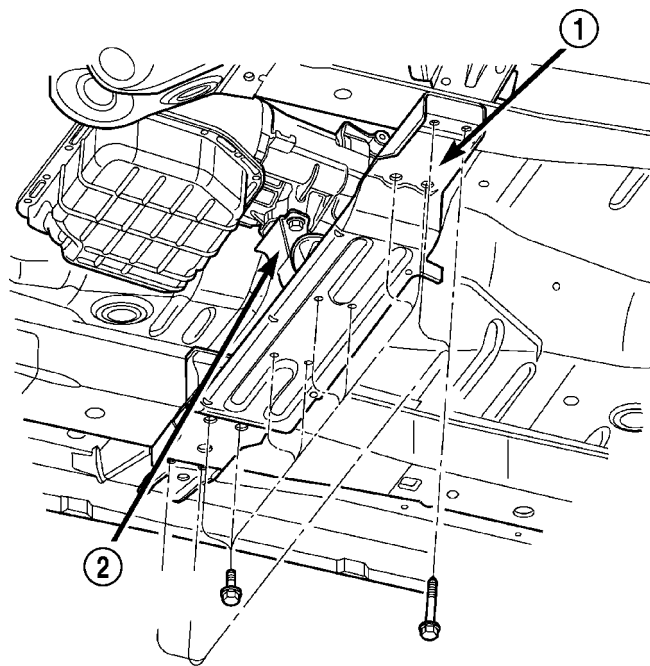
(20) Disconnect transmission fluid cooler lines at transmission fittings and clips.

(21) Support rear of engine with safety stand or jack.

(22) Raise transmission slightly with service jack to relieve load on crossmember and supports.

(23) Remove bolts securing rear support and cushion to transmission and crossmember (Fig. 16).

(24) Remove bolts attaching crossmember to frame and remove crossmember.

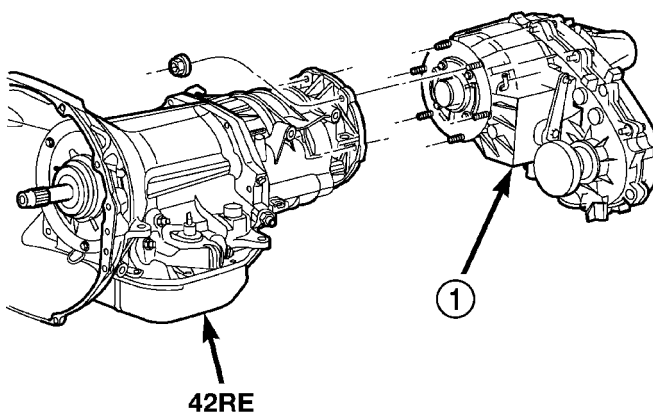


80ba79c7

**Fig. 16 Rear Transmission Crossmember**

- 1 - CROSSMEMBER  
2 - REAR TRANSMISSION MOUNT

(25) Remove transfer case (Fig. 17) and (Fig. 18).



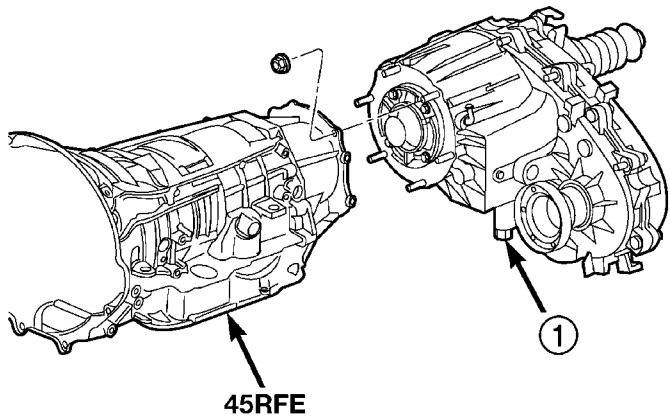
80ba79c9

**Fig. 17 Remove NV247 Transfer Case**

- 1 - NV247 TRANSFER CASE



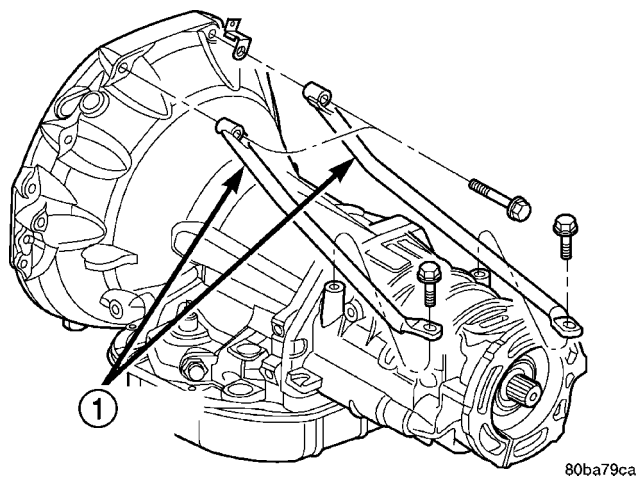
## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

**Fig. 18 Remove NV242 Transfer Case**

1 - NV242 TRANSFER CASE

(26) Remove bolts holding the upper transmission bending braces to the torque converter housing and the overdrive unit (Fig. 19).

(27) Remove all remaining converter housing bolts.

**Fig. 19 Remove Upper Transmission Bending Braces**

1 - TRANSMISSION BENDING BRACES

(28) Carefully work transmission and torque converter assembly rearward off engine block dowels.

(29) Hold torque converter in place during transmission removal.

(30) Lower transmission and remove assembly from under the vehicle.

(31) To remove torque converter, carefully slide torque converter out of the transmission.

**DISASSEMBLY**

(1) Clean transmission exterior with steam gun or with solvent. Wear eye protection during cleaning operations.

(2) Place transmission in a vertical position.

(3) Measure input shaft end play as follows (Fig. 20).

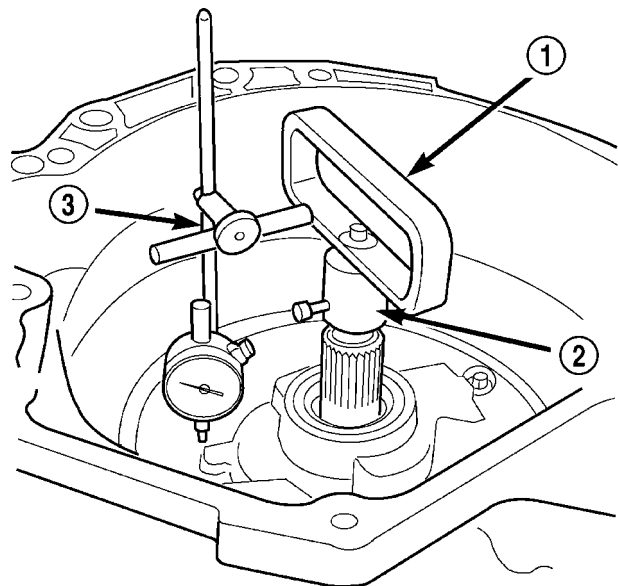
(a) Attach Adapter 8266-6 to Handle 8266-8.

(b) Attach dial indicator C-3339 to Handle 8266-8.

(c) Install the assembled tool onto the input shaft of the transmission and tighten the retaining screw on Adapter 8266-6 to secure it to the input shaft.

(d) Position the dial indicator plunger against a flat spot on the oil pump and zero the dial indicator.

(e) Move the input shaft in and out. Record the maximum travel for assembly reference.

**Fig. 20 Checking Input Shaft End Play**

1 - TOOL 8266-8

2 - TOOL 8266-6

3 - TOOL C-3339

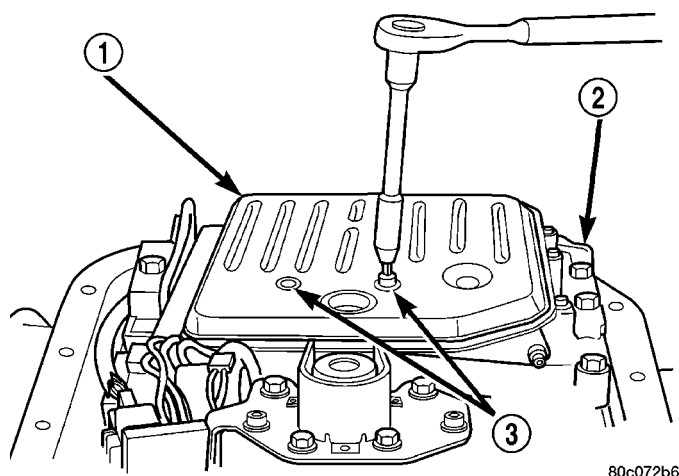
(4) Remove shift and throttle levers from valve body manual lever shaft.

(5) Place transmission in horizontal position.

(6) Remove transmission oil pan and gasket.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

(7) Remove filter from valve body (Fig. 21). Keep filter screws separate from other valve body screws. Filter screws are longer and should be kept with filter.

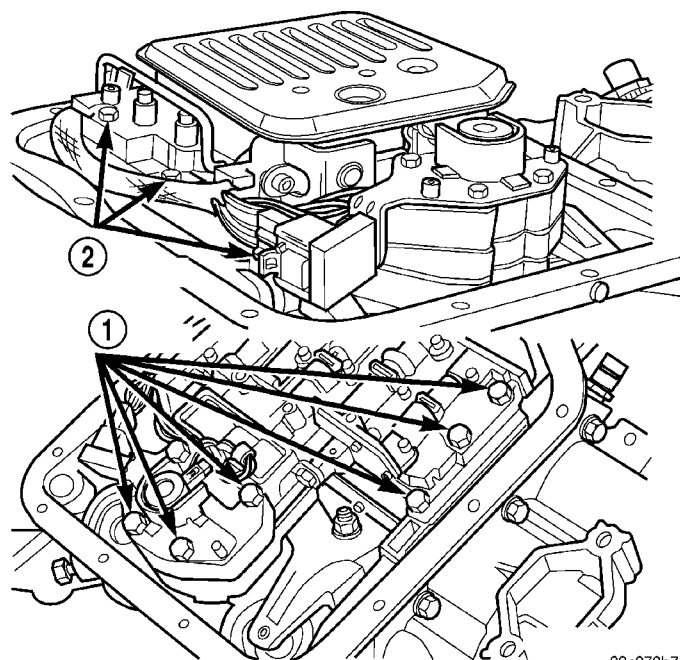


80c072b6

**Fig. 21 Oil Filter Removal**

- 1 - OIL FILTER
- 2 - VALVE BODY
- 3 - FILTER SCREWS (2)

(8) Remove park/neutral position switch.  
 (9) Remove hex head bolts attaching valve body to transmission case (Fig. 22). A total of 10 bolts are used. Note different bolt lengths for assembly reference.



80c072b7

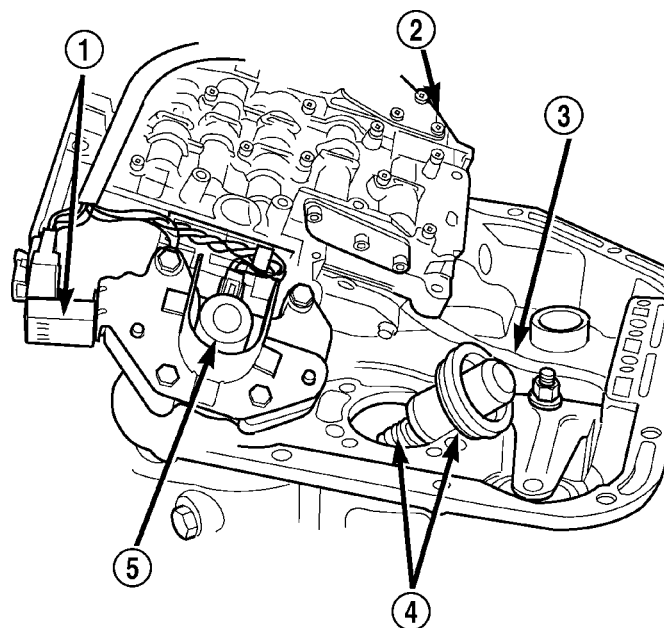
**Fig. 22 Valve Body Bolt Locations**

- 1 - VALVE BODY BOLTS
- 2 - VALVE BODY BOLTS

(10) Remove valve body assembly. Push valve body harness connector out of case. Then work park rod and valve body out of case (Fig. 23).

(11) Remove accumulator piston and inner and outer springs (Fig. 24).

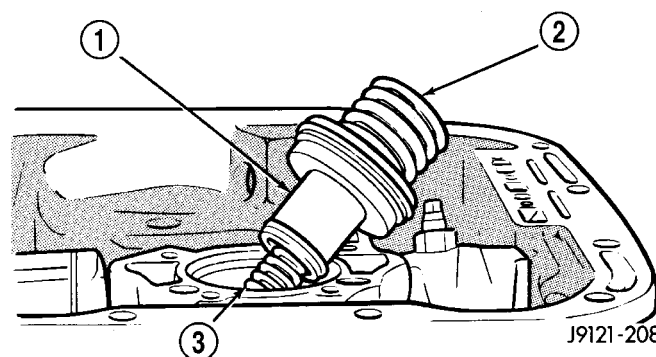
(12) Remove pump oil seal with suitable pry tool or slide-hammer mounted screw.



80c072b8

**Fig. 23 Valve Body Removal**

- 1 - GOVERNOR PRESSURE SENSOR
- 2 - VALVE BODY
- 3 - PARK ROD
- 4 - ACCUMULATOR PISTON
- 5 - GOVERNOR PRESSURE SOLENOID



J9121-208

**Fig. 24 Accumulator Piston And Springs**

- 1 - ACCUMULATOR PISTON
- 2 - OUTER SPRING
- 3 - INNER SPRING

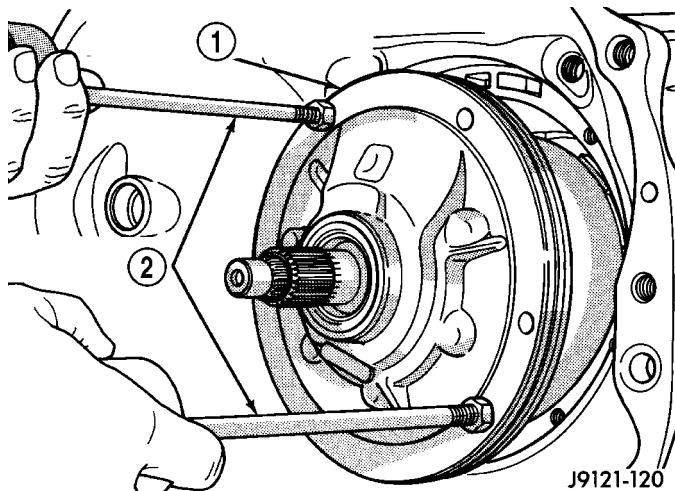
(13) Loosen front band adjusting screw locknut 4-5 turns. Then tighten band adjusting screw until band is tight around front clutch retainer. This prevents front/rear clutches from coming out with pump and possibly damaging clutch or pump components.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

(14) Remove oil pump bolts.

(15) Thread bolts of Slide Hammer Tools C-3752 into threaded holes in pump body flange (Fig. 25).

(16) Bump slide hammer weights outward to remove pump and reaction shaft support assembly from case (Fig. 25).

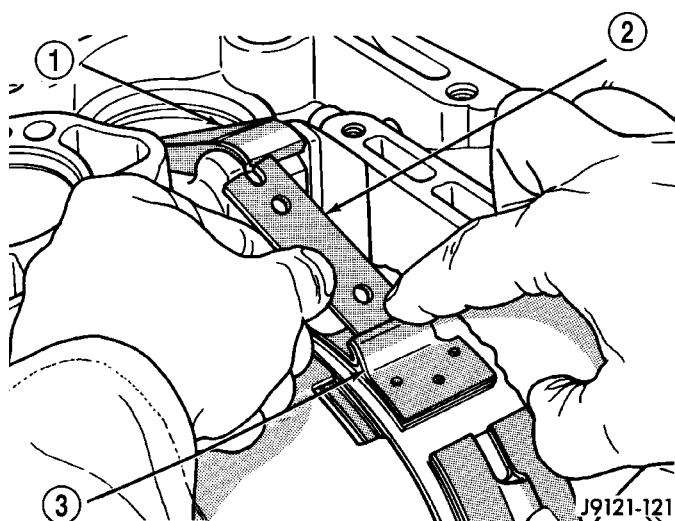


**Fig. 25 Removing Oil Pump And Reaction Shaft Support Assembly**

1 - OIL PUMP AND REACTION SHAFT SUPPORT ASSEMBLY  
2 - SLIDE HAMMER TOOLS C-3752

(17) Loosen front band adjusting screw until band is completely loose.

(18) Squeeze front band together and remove band strut (Fig. 26).



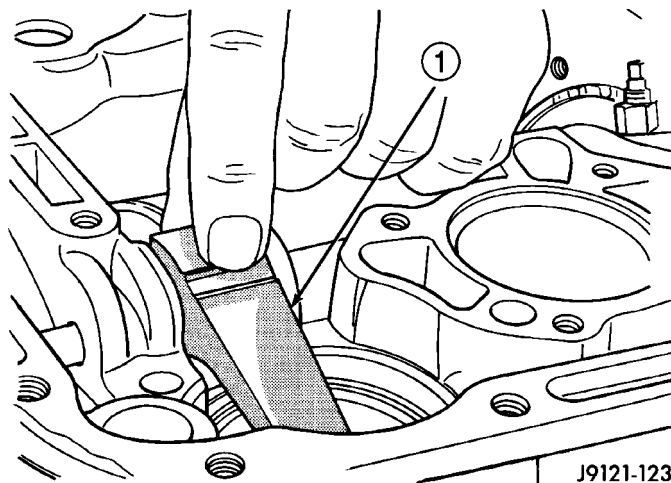
**Fig. 26 Removing Front Band Strut**

1 - BAND LEVER  
2 - BAND STRUT  
3 - FRONT BAND

(19) Remove front band lever (Fig. 27).

(20) Remove front band lever shaft plug, if necessary, from converter housing.

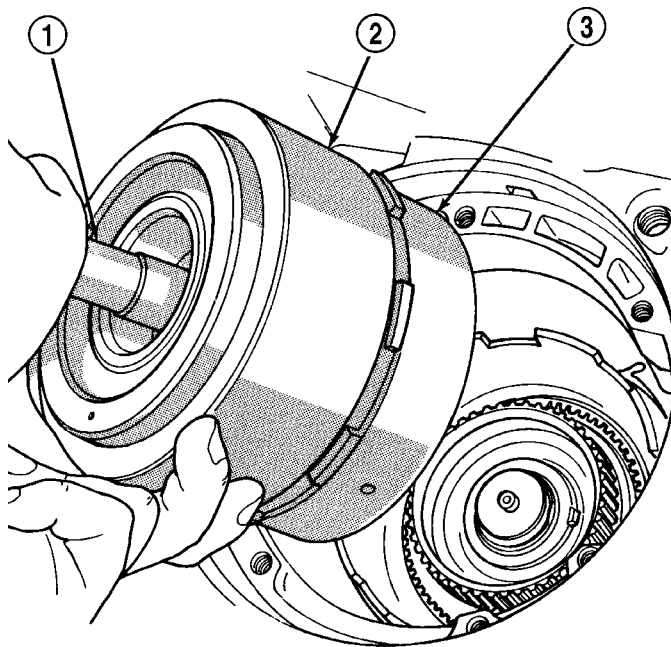
(21) Remove front band lever shaft.



**Fig. 27 Removing Front Band Lever**

1 - FRONT BAND LEVER

(22) Remove front and rear clutch units as assembly. Grasp input shaft, hold clutch units together and remove them from case (Fig. 28).



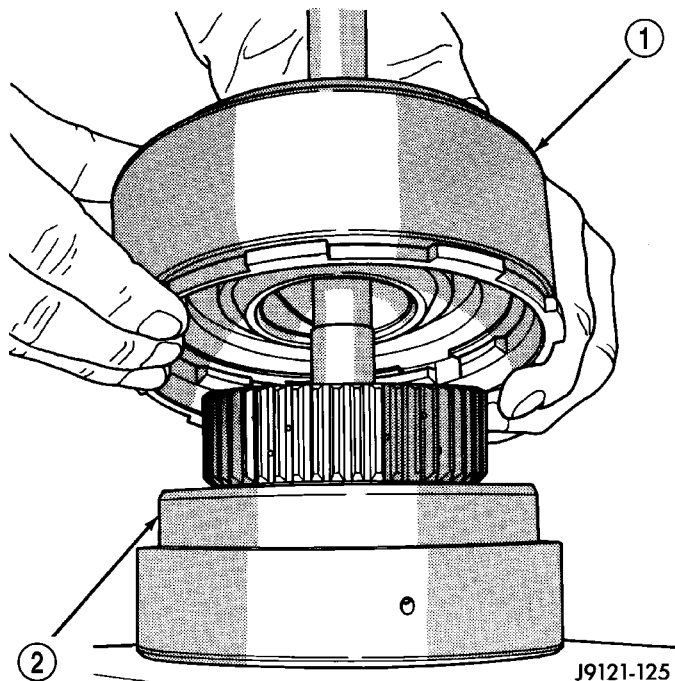
**Fig. 28 Removing Front/Rear Clutch Assemblies**

1 - INPUT SHAFT  
2 - FRONT CLUTCH  
3 - REAR CLUTCH



## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

(23) Lift front clutch off rear clutch (Fig. 29). Set clutch units aside for overhaul.

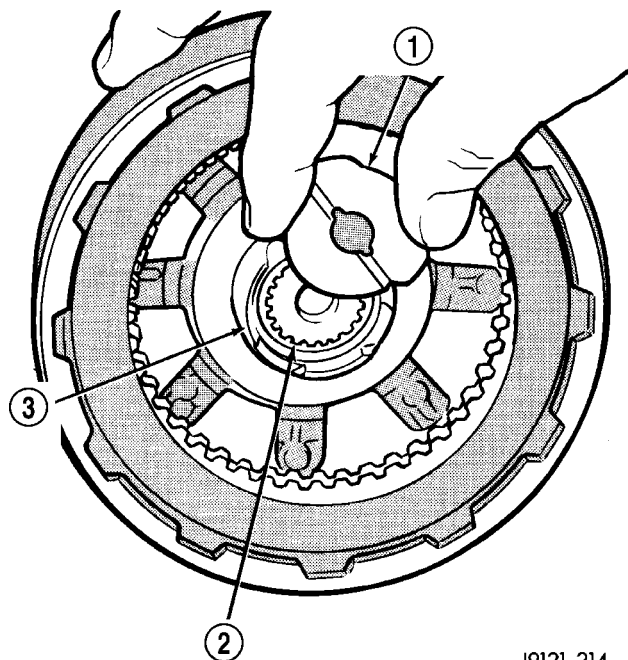


J9121-125

**Fig. 29 Separating Front/Rear Clutch Assemblies**

- 1 - FRONT CLUTCH  
2 - REAR CLUTCH

(24) Remove intermediate shaft thrust washer from front end of shaft or from rear clutch hub (Fig. 30).



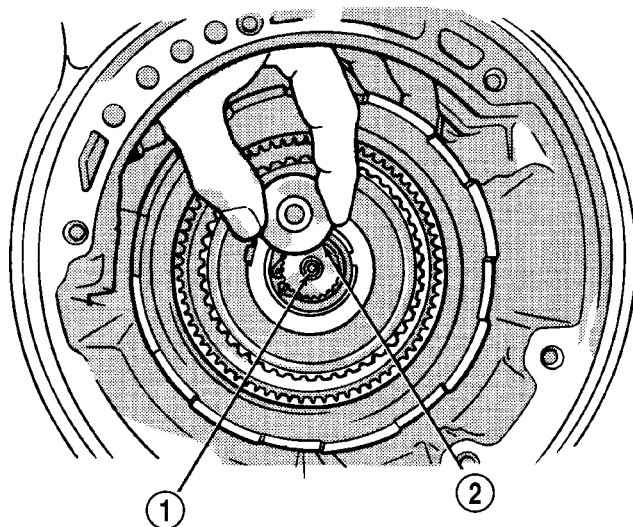
J9121-214

**Fig. 30 Removing Intermediate Shaft Thrust Washer**

- 1 - INTERMEDIATE SHAFT THRUST WASHER  
2 - INPUT SHAFT  
3 - REAR CLUTCH RETAINER HUB

(25) Remove output shaft thrust plate from intermediate shaft hub (Fig. 31).

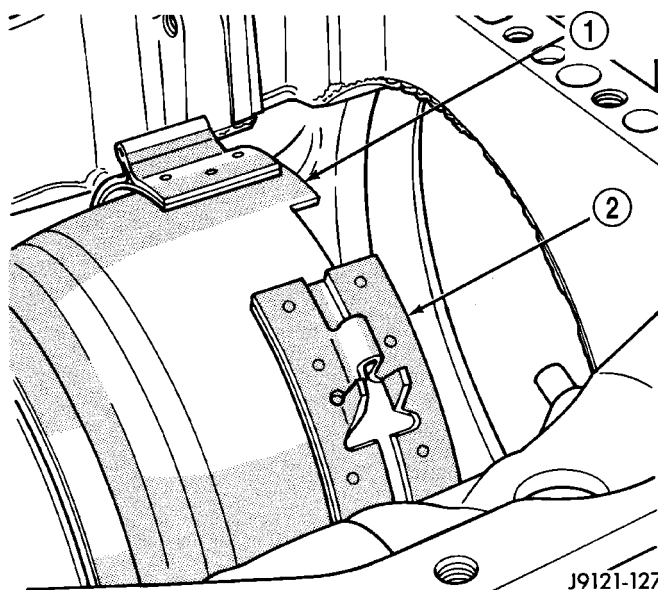
(26) Slide front band off driving shell (Fig. 32) and remove band from case.



J9121-215

**Fig. 31 Removing Intermediate Shaft Thrust Plate**

- 1 - INTERMEDIATE SHAFT HUB  
2 - INTERMEDIATE SHAFT THRUST PLATE



J9121-127

**Fig. 32 Front Band Removal**

- 1 - DRIVING SHELL  
2 - FRONT BAND

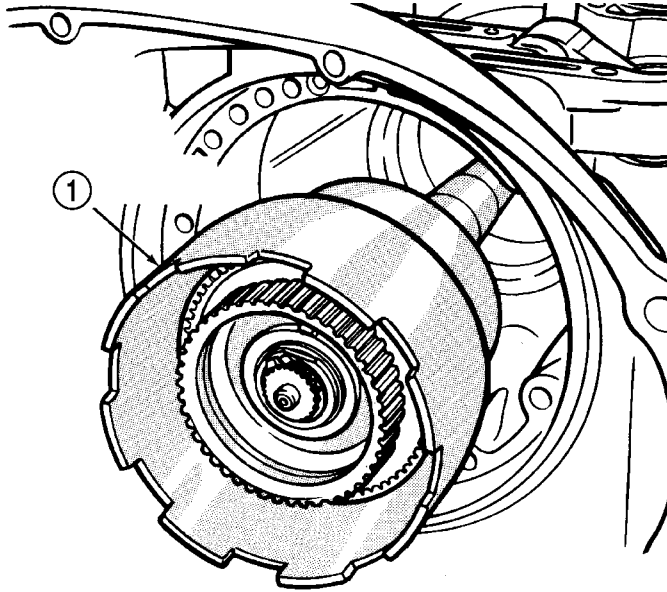
## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

(27) Remove planetary geartrain as assembly (Fig. 33). Support geartrain with both hands during removal. Do not allow machined surfaces on intermediate shaft or overdrive piston retainer to become nicked or scratched.

(28) If overdrive unit is not to be serviced, install Alignment Shaft 6227-2 into the overdrive unit to prevent misalignment of the overdrive clutches during service of main transmission components.

(29) Loosen rear band adjusting screw 4-5 turns.

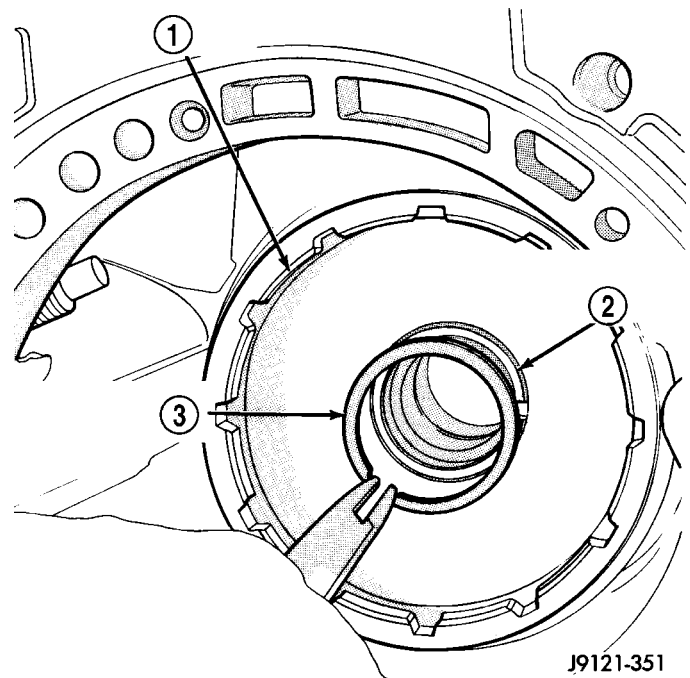
(30) Remove low-reverse drum snap-ring (Fig. 34).



J9121-217

**Fig. 33 Removing Planetary Geartrain And Intermediate Shaft Assembly**

1 - PLANETARY GEARTRAIN AND INTERMEDIATE SHAFT ASSEMBLY

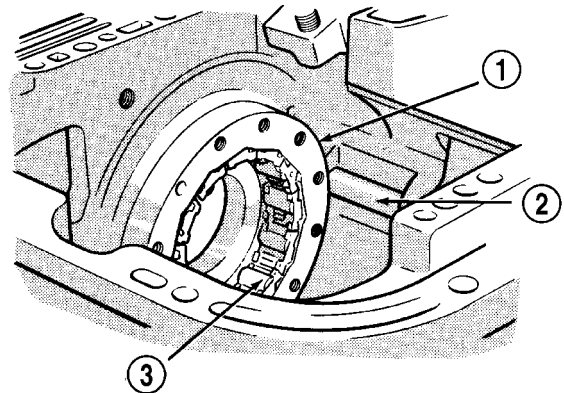


J9121-351

**Fig. 34 Removing Low-Reverse Drum Snap-Ring**

1 - LOW-REVERSE DRUM  
2 - HUB OF OVERDRIVE PISTON RETAINER  
3 - LOW-REVERSE DRUM SNAP-RING

(31) Remove low-reverse drum and reverse band.  
(32) Remove overrunning clutch roller and spring assembly as a unit (Fig. 35).



J9121-222

**Fig. 35 Overrunning Clutch Assembly Removal**

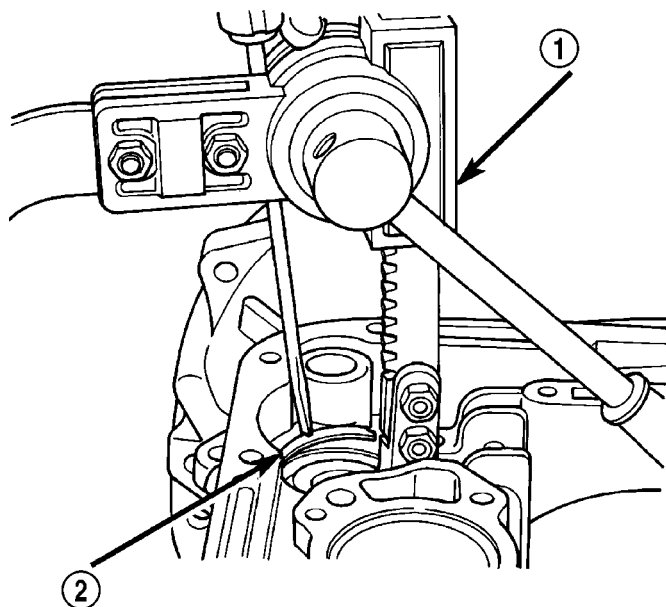
1 - OVERRUNNING CLUTCH CAM  
2 - REAR BAND REACTION PIN  
3 - OVERRUNNING CLUTCH ASSEMBLY

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

(33) Compress front servo rod guide about 1/8 inch with Valve Spring Compressor C-3422-B (Fig. 36).

(34) Remove front servo rod guide snap-ring. Exercise caution when removing snap-ring. Servo bore can be scratched or nicked if care is not exercised.

(35) Remove compressor tools and remove front servo rod guide, spring and servo piston.



60be44b7

**Fig. 36 Compressing Front Servo Rod Guide**

- 1 - SPRING COMPRESSOR TOOL C-3422-B  
2 - ROD GUIDE SNAP-RING

(36) Compress rear servo spring retainer about 1/16 inch with Valve Spring Compressor C-3422-B (Fig. 37).

(37) Remove rear servo spring retainer snap-ring. Then remove compressor tools and remove rear servo spring and piston.

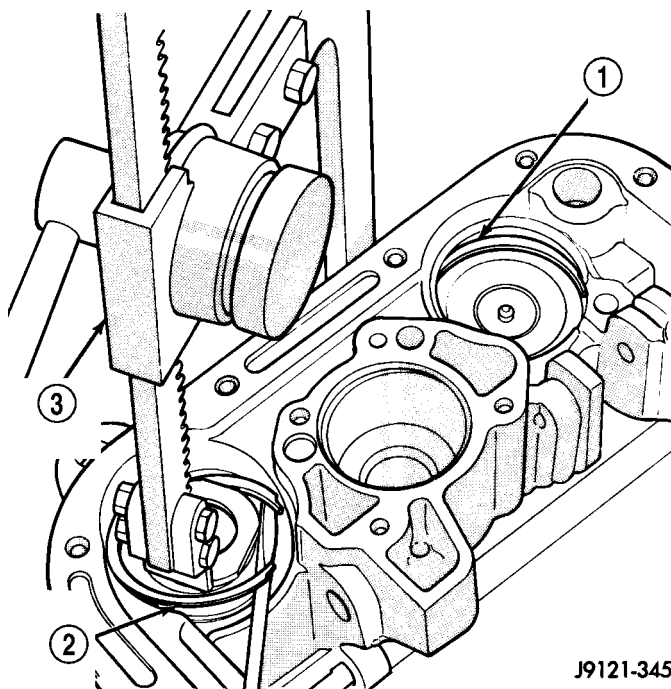
(38) Inspect transmission components.

**NOTE:** To Service the overrunning clutch cam or overdrive piston retainer, refer to the Overrunning Clutch Cam service procedure in this section.

## CLEANING

Clean the case in a solvent tank. Flush the case bores and fluid passages thoroughly with solvent. Dry the case and all fluid passages with compressed air. Be sure all solvent is removed from the case and that all fluid passages are clear.

**NOTE:** Do not use shop towels or rags to dry the case (or any other transmission component) unless they are made from lint-free materials. Lint will stick to case surfaces and transmission components and circulate throughout the transmission after assem-



J9121-345

**Fig. 37 Compressing Rear Servo Spring**

- 1 - FRONT SERVO SNAP-RING  
2 - REAR SERVO SNAP-RING  
3 - SPECIAL TOOL

bly. A sufficient quantity of lint can block fluid passages and interfere with valve body operation.

Lubricate transmission parts with Mopar® ATF +4, Automatic Transmission fluid during overhaul and assembly. Use petroleum jelly, Mopar® Door Ease, or Ru-Glyde™ to prelubricate seals, O-rings, and thrust washers. Petroleum jelly can also be used to hold parts in place during reassembly.

## INSPECTION

Inspect the case for cracks, porous spots, worn bores, or damaged threads. Damaged threads can be repaired with Helicoil thread inserts. However, the case will have to be replaced if it exhibits any type of damage or wear.

Lubricate the front band adjusting screw threads with petroleum jelly and thread the screw part-way into the case. Be sure the screw turns freely.

Inspect the transmission bushings during overhaul. Bushing condition is important as worn, scored bushings contribute to low pressures, clutch slip and accelerated wear of other components. However, do not replace bushings as a matter of course. Replace bushings only when they are actually worn, or scored.

Use recommended tools to replace bushings. The tools are sized and designed to remove, install, and seat bushings correctly. The bushing replacement tools are included in Bushing Tool Set C-3887-B.



## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

Pre-sized service bushings are available for replacement purposes. Only the sun gear bushings are not serviced.

The use of crocus cloth is permissible where necessary, providing it is used carefully. When used on shafts, or valves, use extreme care to avoid rounding off sharp edges. Sharp edges are vital as they prevent foreign matter from getting between the valve and valve bore.

Do not reuse oil seals, gaskets, seal rings, or O-rings during overhaul. Replace these parts as a matter of course. Also do not reuse snap rings or E-clips that are bent or distorted. Replace these parts as well.

## ASSEMBLY

Do not allow dirt, grease, or foreign material to enter the case or transmission components during assembly. Keep the transmission case and components clean. Also make sure the tools and workbench area used for assembly operations are equally clean.

Shop towels used for wiping off tools and hands must be made from **lint free** material. Lint will stick to transmission parts and could interfere with valve operation, or even restrict fluid passages.

Lubricate the transmission components with Mopar® transmission fluid during reassembly. Use Mopar® Door Ease, or Ru-Glyde™ on seals and O-rings to ease installation.

Petroleum jelly can also be used to hold thrust washers, thrust plates and gaskets in position during assembly. However, **do not** use chassis grease, bearing grease, white grease, or similar lubricants on any transmission part. These types of lubricants can eventually block or restrict fluid passages and interfere with valve operation. Use petroleum jelly only.

Do not force parts into place. The transmission components and subassemblies are easily installed by hand when properly aligned.

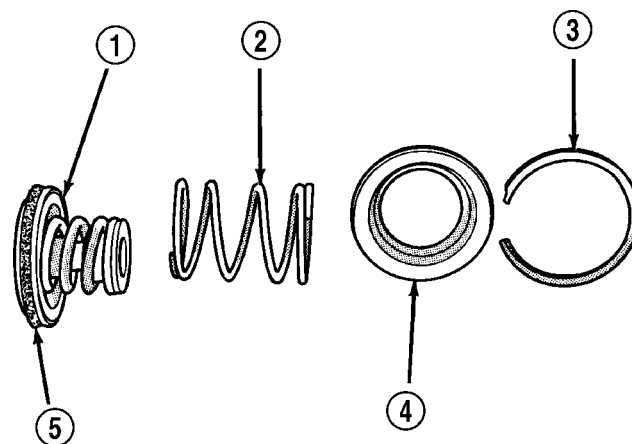
If a part seems extremely difficult to install, it is either misaligned or incorrectly assembled. Also verify that thrust washers, thrust plates and seal rings are correctly positioned before assembly. These parts can interfere with proper assembly if mis-positioned.

The planetary geartrain, front/rear clutch assemblies and oil pump are all much easier to install when the transmission case is upright.

(1) Install rear servo piston, spring and retainer (Fig. 38). Install spring on top of servo piston and install retainer on top of spring.

(2) Install front servo piston assembly, servo spring and rod guide (Fig. 39).

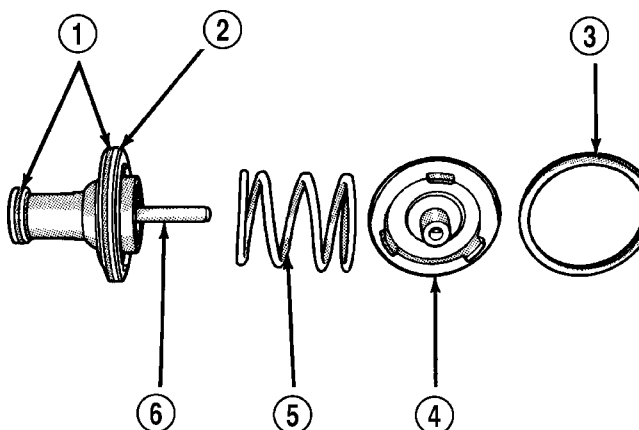
(3) Compress front/rear servo springs with Valve Spring Compressor C-3422-B and install each servo snap-ring (Fig. 40).



J9121-343

Fig. 38 Rear Servo Components

- 1 - SERVO PISTON
- 2 - PISTON SPRING
- 3 - SNAP-RING
- 4 - RETAINER
- 5 - PISTON SEAL



J9121-344

Fig. 39 Front Servo Components

- 1 - PISTON SEAL RINGS
- 2 - SERVO PISTON
- 3 - SNAP-RING
- 4 - ROD GUIDE
- 5 - SPRING
- 6 - ROD

(4) Lubricate clutch cam rollers with transmission fluid.

(5) Install rear band in case (Fig. 41). Be sure twin lugs on band are seated against reaction pin.

(6) Install low-reverse drum and check overrunning clutch operation as follows:

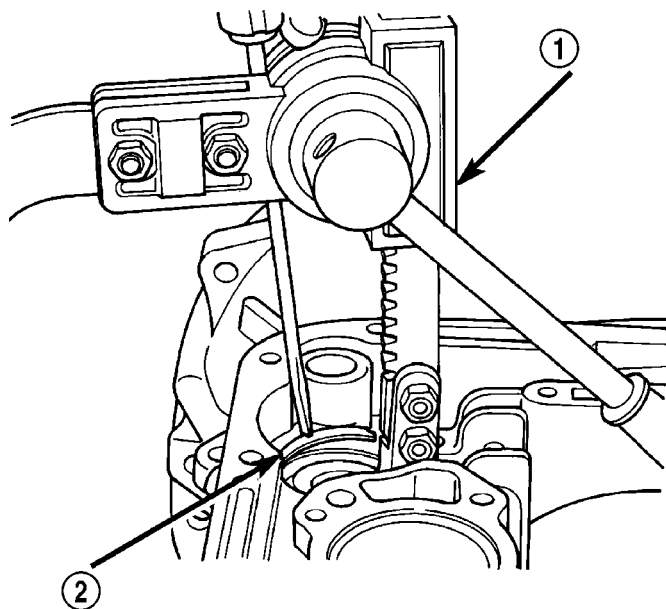
(a) Lubricate overrunning clutch race (on drum hub) with transmission fluid.

(b) Guide drum through rear band.

(c) Tilt drum slightly and start race (on drum hub) into overrunning clutch rollers.



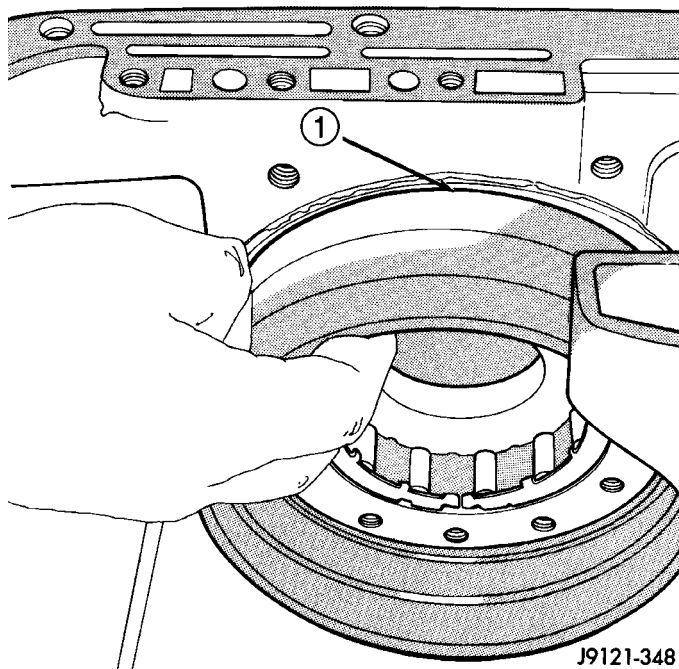
## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)



80be44b7

**Fig. 40 Compressing Front/Rear Servo Springs**

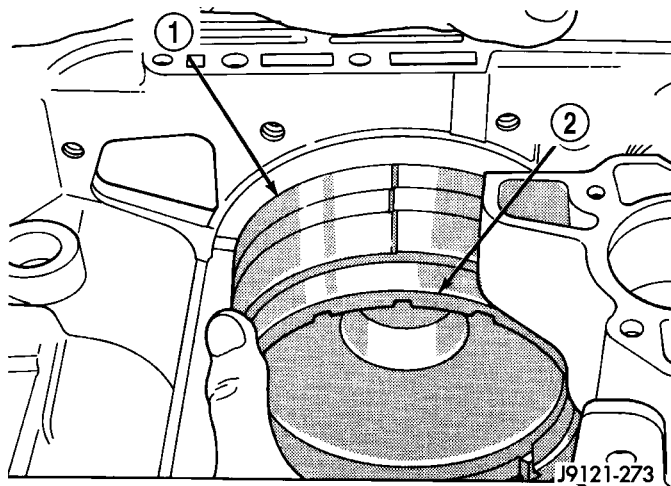
- 1 - SPRING COMPRESSOR TOOL C-3422-B  
2 - ROD GUIDE SNAP-RING

**Fig. 41 Rear Band Installation**

- 1 - REAR BAND

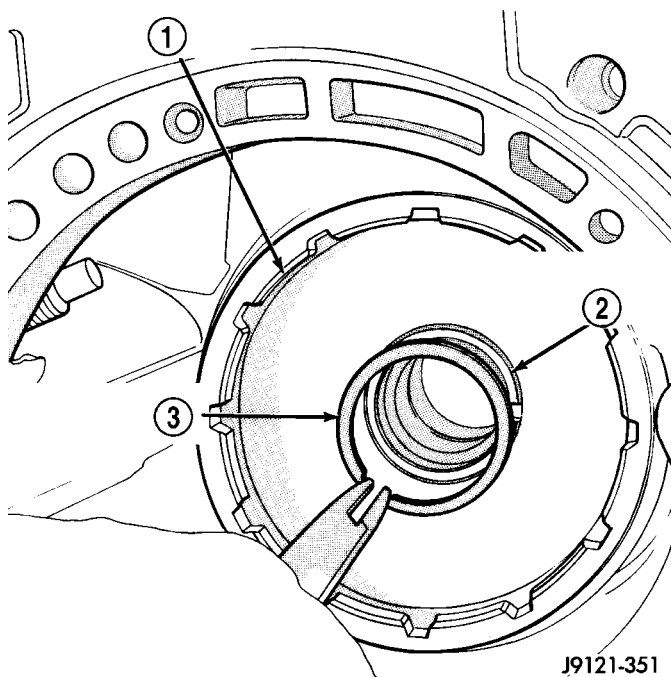
(d) Press drum rearward and turn it in clockwise direction until drum seats in overrunning clutch (Fig. 42).

(e) Turn drum back and forth. Drum should rotate freely in clockwise direction and lock in counterclockwise direction (as viewed from front of case).

**Fig. 42 Installing Low-Reverse Drum**

- 1 - REAR BAND  
2 - LOW-REVERSE DRUM

(7) Install snap-ring that secures low-reverse drum to hub of overdrive piston retainer (Fig. 43).

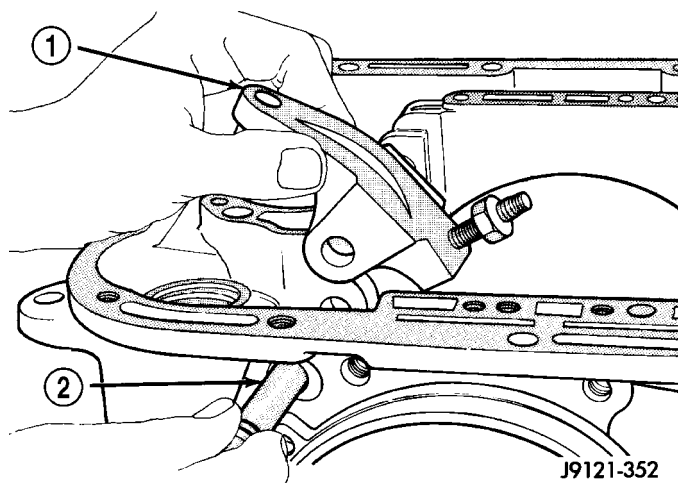
**Fig. 43 Installing Low-Reverse Drum Retaining Snap-Ring**

- 1 - LOW-REVERSE DRUM  
2 - HUB OF OVERDRIVE PISTON RETAINER  
3 - LOW-REVERSE DRUM SNAP-RING

**AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)**

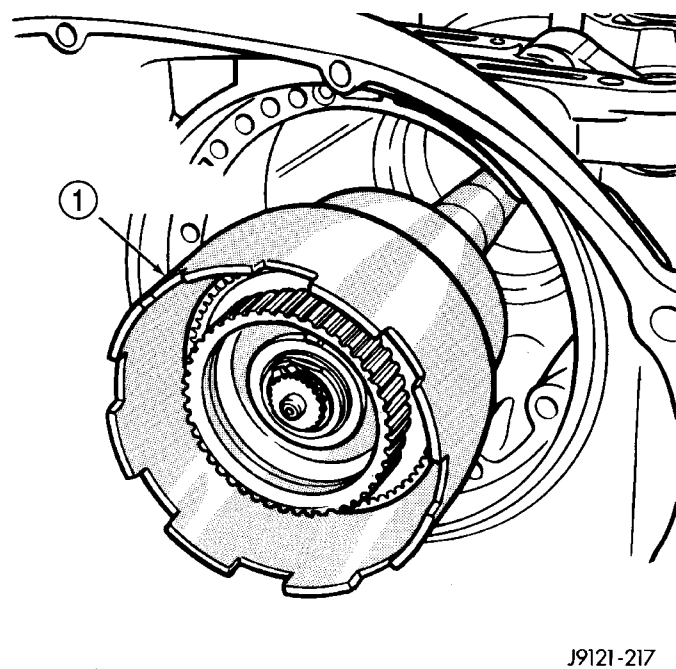
(8) Install rear band lever and pivot pin (Fig. 44). Align lever with pin bores in case and push pivot pin into place.

(9) Install planetary geartrain assembly (Fig. 45).



**Fig. 44 Rear Band Lever And Pivot Pin Installation**

- 1 - REAR BAND LEVER
- 2 - LEVER PIVOT PIN

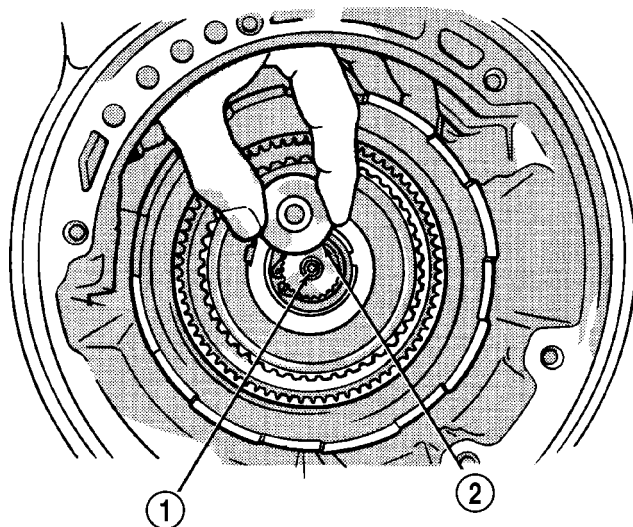


**Fig. 45 Installing Planetary Geartrain**

- 1 - PLANETARY GEARTRAIN AND INTERMEDIATE SHAFT ASSEMBLY

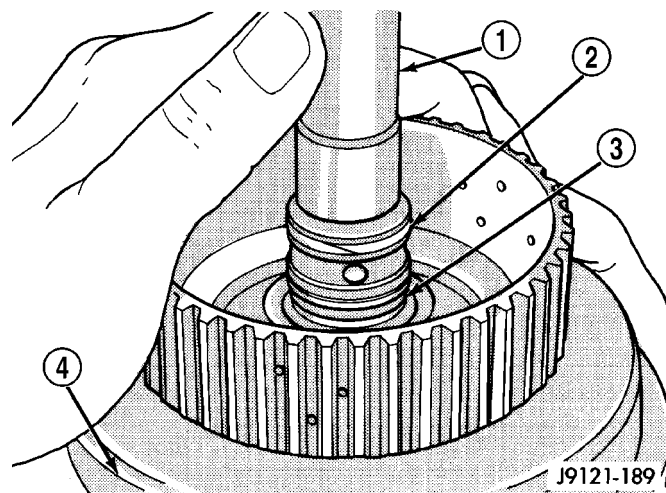
(10) Install thrust plate on intermediate shaft hub (Fig. 46). Use petroleum jelly to hold thrust plate in place.

(11) Check seal ring on rear clutch retainer hub and seal rings on input shaft (Fig. 47). Also verify that shaft seal rings are installed in sequence shown.



**Fig. 46 Installing Intermediate Shaft Thrust Plate**

- 1 - INTERMEDIATE SHAFT HUB
- 2 - INTERMEDIATE SHAFT THRUST PLATE

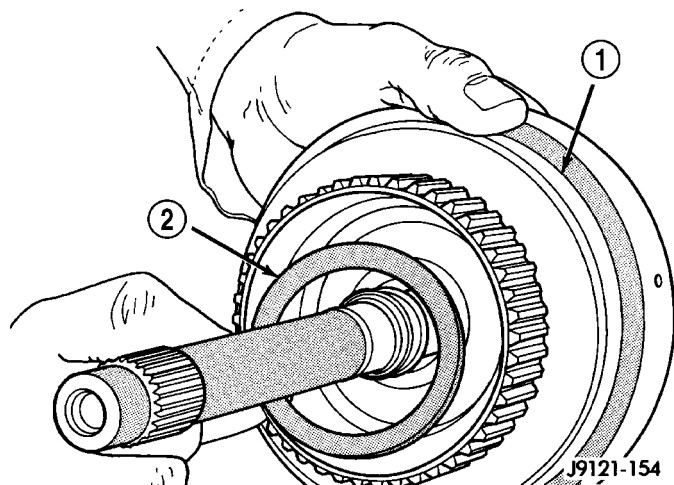


**Fig. 47 Input Shaft Seal Ring Location**

- 1 - INPUT SHAFT
- 2 - TEFLON SEAL RING
- 3 - PLASTIC SEAL RING
- 4 - REAR CLUTCH RETAINER

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

(12) Install rear clutch thrust washer (Fig. 48). Use additional petroleum jelly to hold washer in place if necessary.

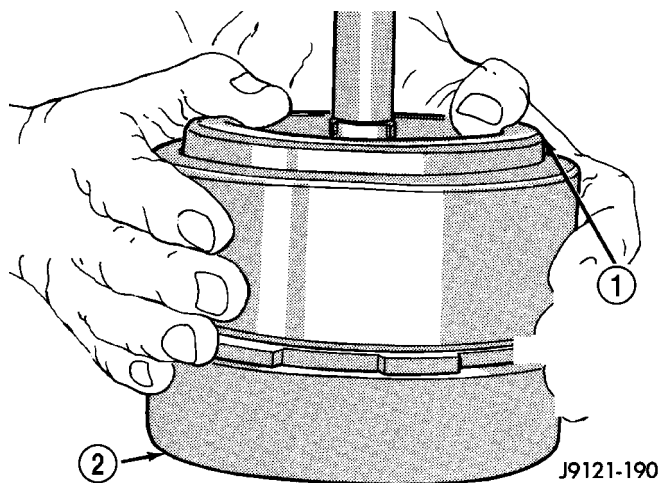


**Fig. 48 Installing Rear Clutch Thrust Washer**

- 1 - REAR CLUTCH RETAINER  
2 - REAR CLUTCH THRUST WASHER (FIBER)

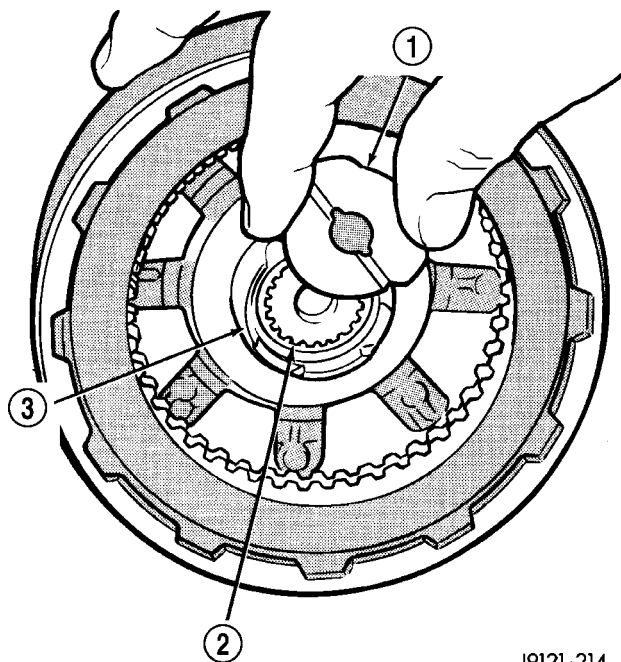
(13) Align clutch discs in front clutch and install front clutch on rear clutch (Fig. 49). Rotate front clutch retainer back and forth until completely seated on rear clutch retainer.

(14) Coat intermediate shaft thrust washer with petroleum jelly. Then install washer in rear clutch hub (Fig. 50). Use enough petroleum jelly to hold washer in place. Be sure grooved side of washer faces rearward (toward output shaft) as shown. Also note that washer only fits one way in clutch hub. Note thickness of this washer. It is a select fit part and is used to control transmission end play.



**Fig. 49 Assembling Front And Rear Clutch Units**

- 1 - TURN FRONT CLUTCH BACK & FORTH UNTIL SEATED  
2 - REAR CLUTCH ASSEMBLY



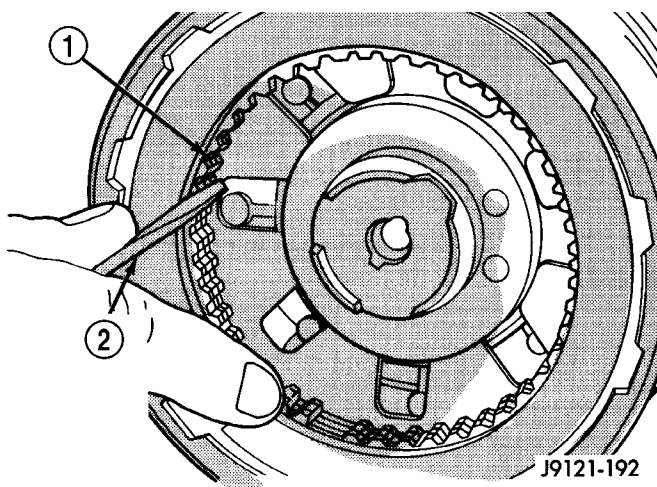
**Fig. 50 Installing Intermediate Shaft Thrust Washer**

- 1 - INTERMEDIATE SHAFT THRUST WASHER  
2 - INPUT SHAFT  
3 - REAR CLUTCH RETAINER HUB

(15) Align drive teeth on rear clutch discs with small screwdriver (Fig. 51). This makes installation on front planetary easier.

(16) Raise front end of transmission upward as far as possible and support case with wood blocks. Front/rear clutch and oil pump assemblies are easier to install if transmission is as close to upright position as possible.

(17) Slide front band into case.



**Fig. 51 Aligning Rear Clutch Disc Lugs**

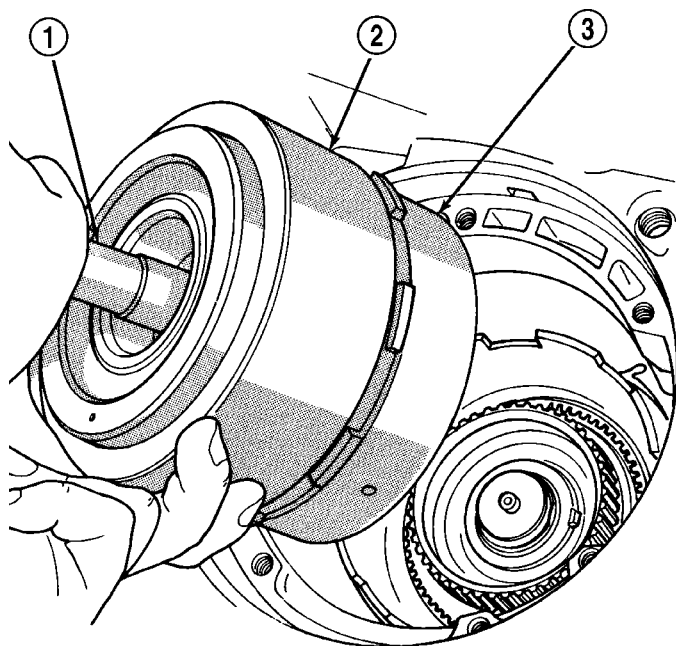
- 1 - REAR CLUTCH DISCS  
2 - USE SMALL SCREWDRIVER TO ALIGN CLUTCH DISC TEETH



## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

(18) Install front and rear clutch units as assembly (Fig. 52). Align rear clutch with front annulus gear and install assembly in driving shell. Be sure output shaft thrust washer and thrust plate are not displaced during installation.

(19) Carefully work assembled clutches back and forth to engage and seat rear clutch discs on front annulus gear. Also be sure front clutch drive lugs are fully engaged in slots of driving shell after installation.



J9121-124

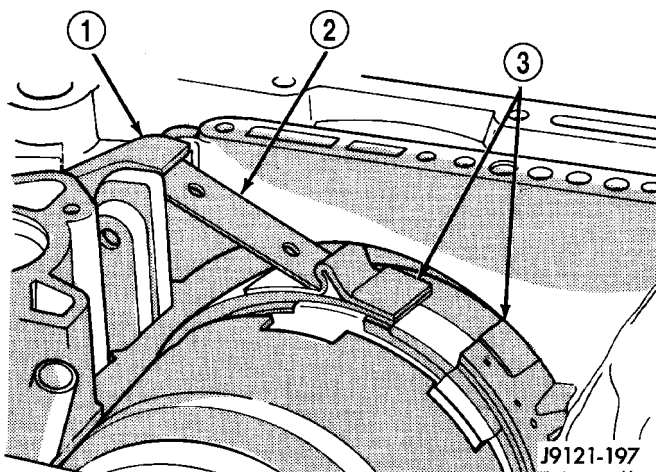
**Fig. 52 Installing Front/Rear Clutch Assemblies**

- 1 - INPUT SHAFT
- 2 - FRONT CLUTCH
- 3 - REAR CLUTCH

(20) Assemble front band strut.  
 (21) Install front band adjuster, strut and adjusting screw (Fig. 53).

(22) Tighten band adjusting screw until band just grips clutch retainer. Verify that front/rear clutches are still seated before continuing.

(23) Check seal rings on reaction shaft support hub. Verify that seal rings are hooked together and that the thrust washer is properly positioned (Fig. 54). Use petroleum jelly to hold thrust washer in place if necessary.

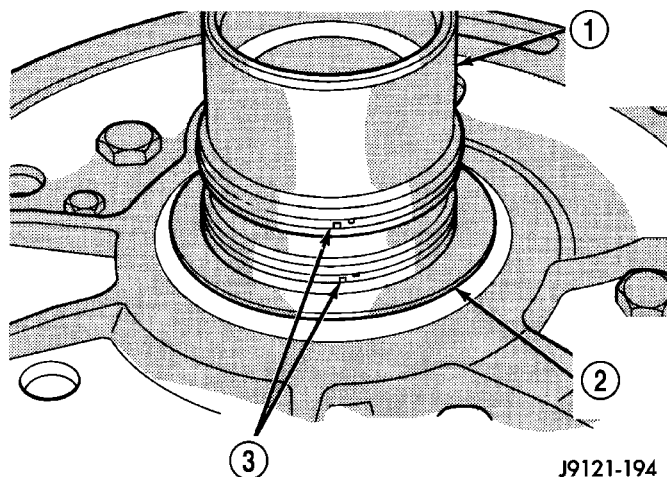


J9121-197

**Fig. 53 Front Band Linkage Installation**

- 1 - BAND LEVER
- 2 - BAND STRUT
- 3 - FRONT BAND

(24) Lubricate oil pump body seal with petroleum jelly. Lubricate pump shaft seal lip with petroleum jelly.



J9121-194

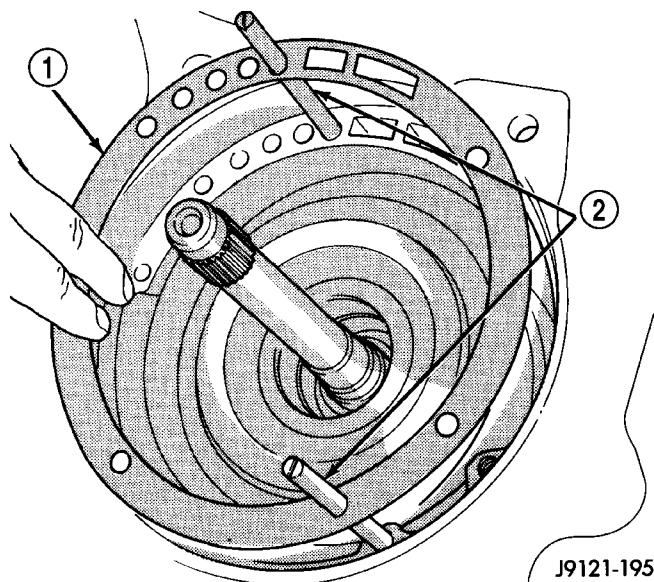
**Fig. 54 Reaction Shaft Support Seal Rings And Thrust Washer**

- 1 - REACTION SHAFT SUPPORT HUB
- 2 - THRUST WASHER
- 3 - SEAL RINGS

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

(25) Thread two Pilot Stud Tools C-3288-B into bolt holes in oil pump bore flange (Fig. 55).

(26) Align and install oil pump gasket (Fig. 55).



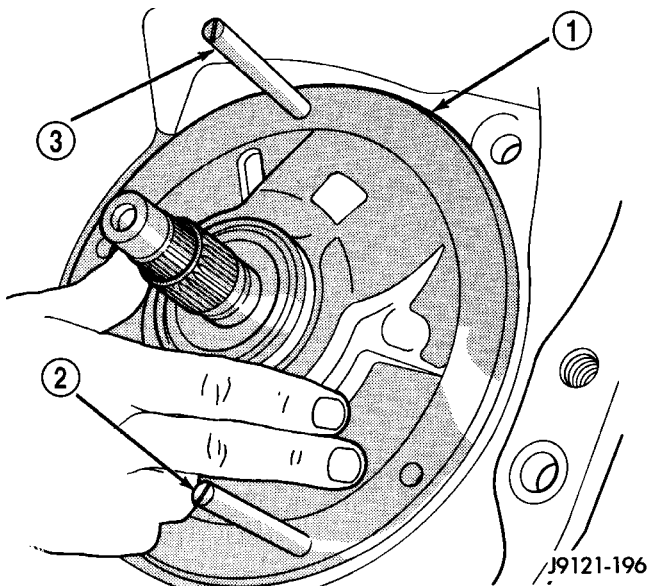
J9121-195

**Fig. 55 Installing Pilot Studs And Oil Pump Gasket**

- 1 - OIL PUMP GASKET  
2 - PILOT STUD TOOLS C-3288-B

(27) Install oil pump (Fig. 56). Align and position pump on pilot studs. Slide pump down studs and work it into front clutch hub and case by hand. Then install 2 or 3 pump bolts to hold pump in place.

(28) Remove pilot stud tools and install remaining oil pump bolts. Tighten bolts alternately in diagonal pattern to 20 N·m (15 ft. lbs.).



J9121-196

**Fig. 56 Installing Oil Pump**

- 1 - OIL PUMP  
2 - PILOT STUD TOOL  
3 - PILOT STUD TOOL

(29) Measure input shaft end play (Fig. 57).

**NOTE:** If end play is incorrect, transmission is incorrectly assembled, or the intermediate shaft thrust washer is incorrect. The intermediate shaft thrust washer is selective.

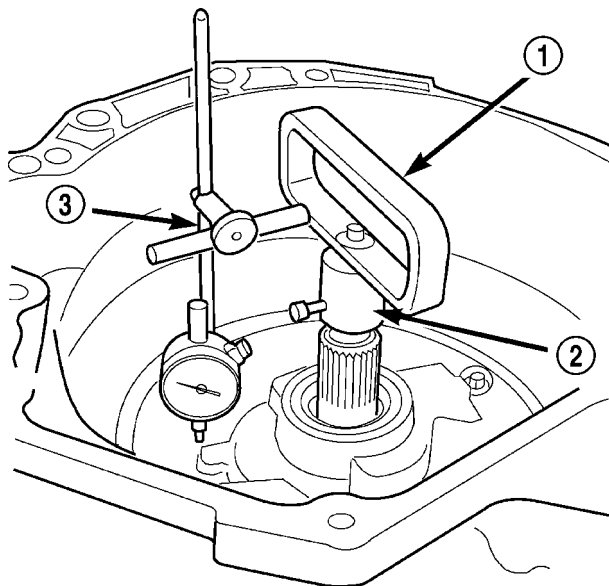
(a) Attach Adapter 8266-6 to Handle 8266-8.

(b) Attach dial indicator C-3339 to Handle 8266-8.

(c) Install the assembled tool onto the input shaft of the transmission and tighten the retaining screw on Adapter 8266-6 to secure it to the input shaft.

(d) Position the dial indicator plunger against a flat spot on the oil pump and zero the dial indicator.

(e) Move input shaft in and out and record reading. End play should be 0.56-2.31 mm (0.022-0.091 in.). Adjust as necessary.



80c070b5

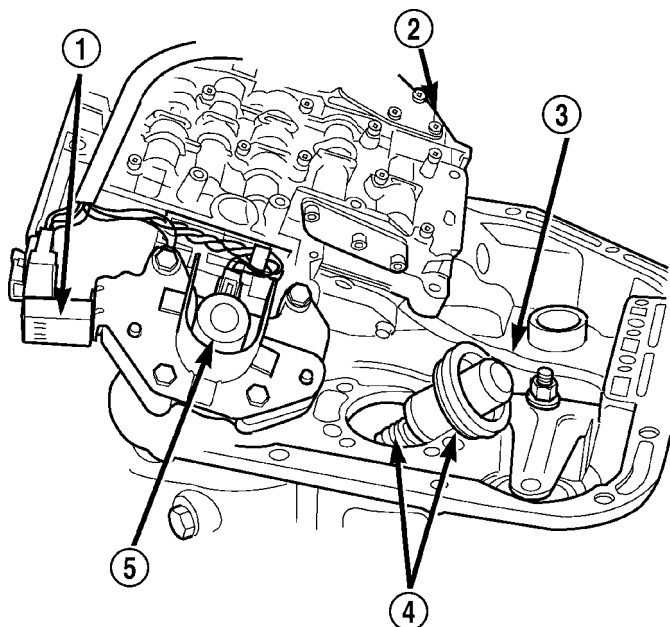
**Fig. 57 Checking Input Shaft End Play**

- 1 - TOOL 8266-8  
2 - TOOL 8266-6  
3 - TOOL C-3339

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

(30) Install accumulator piston and inner and outer springs (Fig. 58).

(31) Verify that valve body solenoid harness is secured in 3-4 accumulator housing cover plate.



80c072b8

**Fig. 58 Accumulator Piston And Springs**

- 1 - GOVERNOR PRESSURE SENSOR
- 2 - VALVE BODY
- 3 - PARK ROD
- 4 - ACCUMULATOR PISTON
- 5 - GOVERNOR PRESSURE SOLENOID

(32) Install valve body as follows:

(a) Align and carefully insert park rod into pawl. Rod will make click noise as it enters pawl. Move rod slightly to check engagement.

(b) Align and seat valve body on case. Be sure manual lever shaft and overdrive connector are fully seated in case. Also be sure valve body wiring is not pinched or kinked.

(c) Install and start all valve body attaching bolts by hand. Then tighten bolts evenly, in a diagonal pattern to 12 N·m (105 in. lbs.) torque. Do not overtighten valve body bolts. This could result in distortion and cross leakage after installation.

**CAUTION:** It is possible for the park rod to displace into a cavity just above the pawl sprag during installation. Make sure the rod is actually engaged in the pawl and has not displaced into the cavity.

(33) Install new filter on valve body. Tighten filter screws to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.).

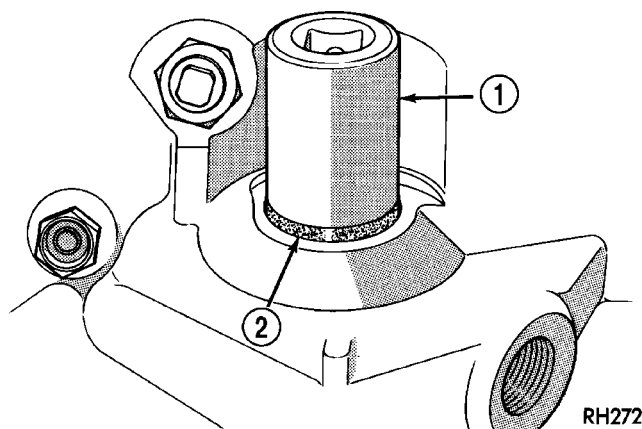
(34) Adjust front and rear bands.

(35) Install seal on park/neutral position switch. Then install and tighten switch to 34 N·m (25 ft. lbs.).

(36) Install magnet in oil pan. Magnet goes on small protrusion at corner of pan.

(37) Position new oil pan gasket on case and install oil pan. Tighten pan bolts to 17 N·m (13 ft. lbs.).

(38) Install new valve body manual shaft seal in case (Fig. 59). Lubricate seal lip and manual shaft with petroleum jelly. Start seal over shaft and into case. Seat seal with 15/16 inch, deep well socket.



RH272

**Fig. 59 Installing Manual Lever Shaft Seal**

- 1 - 15/16" SOCKET
- 2 - SEAL

(39) Install throttle valve and shift selector levers on valve body manual lever shaft.

## INSTALLATION

(1) Check torque converter hub and hub drive notches for sharp edges burrs, scratches, or nicks. Polish the hub and notches with 320/400 grit paper and crocus cloth if necessary. The hub must be smooth to avoid damaging pump seal during installation.

(2) Lubricate oil pump seal lip with transmission fluid.

(3) Align converter and oil pump.

(4) Carefully insert converter in oil pump. Then rotate converter back and forth until fully seated in pump gears.

(5) Check converter seating with steel scale and straightedge (Fig. 60). Surface of converter lugs should be 1/2 in. to rear of straightedge when converter is fully seated.

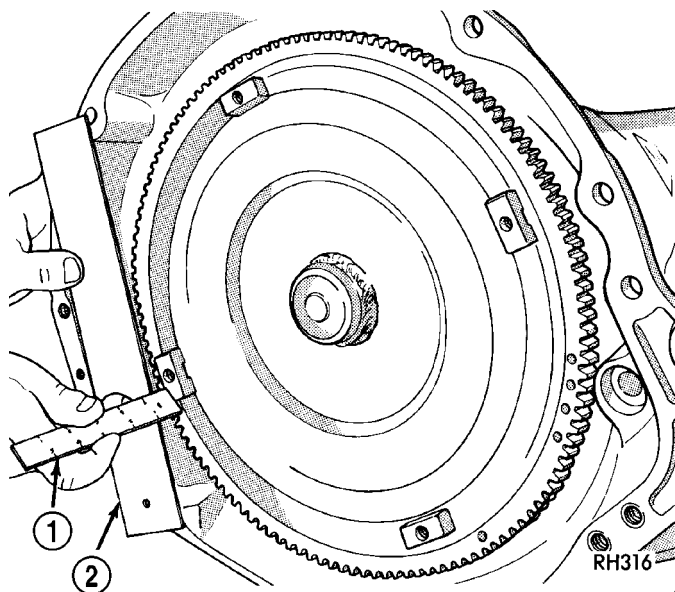
(6) Temporarily secure converter with C-clamp.

(7) Position transmission on jack and secure it with chains.

(8) Check condition of converter driveplate. Replace the plate if cracked, distorted or damaged. Also be sure transmission dowel pins are seated in engine block and protrude far enough to hold transmission in alignment.



## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

**Fig. 60 Checking Torque Converter Seating - Typical**

- 1 - SCALE  
2 - STRAIGHTEDGE

(9) Apply a light coating of Mopar® High Temp grease to the torque converter hub pocket in the rear of the crankshaft

(10) Raise transmission and align converter with drive plate and converter housing with engine block.

(11) Move transmission forward. Then raise, lower or tilt transmission to align converter housing with engine block dowels.

(12) Carefully work transmission forward and over engine block dowels until converter hub is seated in crankshaft.

(13) Install two bolts to attach converter housing to engine.

(14) Install the upper transmission bending braces to the torque converter housing and the overdrive unit. Tighten the bolts to 41 N·m (30 ft.lbs.).

(15) Install remaining torque converter housing to engine bolts. Tighten to 68 N·m (50 ft.lbs.).

(16) Install rear transmission crossmember. Tighten crossmember to frame bolts to 68 N·m (50 ft.lbs.).

(17) Install rear support to transmission. Tighten bolts to 47 N·m (35 ft.lbs.).

(18) Lower transmission onto crossmember and install bolts attaching transmission mount to crossmember. Tighten clevis bracket to crossmember bolts to 47 N·m (35 ft.lbs.). Tighten the clevis bracket to rear support bolt to 68 N·m (50 ft.lbs.).

(19) Remove engine support fixture.

(20) Install crankshaft position sensor. (Refer to 14 - FUEL SYSTEM/FUEL INJECTION/CRANKSHAFT POSITION SENSOR - INSTALLATION)

(21) Install new plastic retainer grommet on any shift cable that was disconnected. Grommets should not be reused. Use pry tool to remove rod from grommet and cut away old grommet. Use pliers to snap new grommet into cable and to snap grommet onto lever.

(22) Connect gearshift and throttle valve cable to transmission.

(23) Connect wires to park/neutral position switch and transmission solenoid connector. Be sure transmission harnesses are properly routed.

**CAUTION:** It is essential that correct length bolts be used to attach the converter to the driveplate. Bolts that are too long will damage the clutch surface inside the converter.

(24) Install all torque converter-to-driveplate bolts by hand.

(25) Verify that the torque converter is pulled flush to the driveplate. Tighten bolts to 31 N·m (270 in. lbs.).

(26) Install converter housing access cover. Tighten bolt to 23 N·m (200 in.lbs.).

(27) Install the bell housing brace to the torque converter cover and the engine to transmission bending brace. Tighten the bolts and nut to 41 N·m (30 ft.lbs.).

(28) Install starter motor (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/STARTING/STARTER MOTOR - INSTALLATION) and cooler line bracket.

(29) Connect cooler lines to transmission.

(30) Install transmission fill tube. Install new seal on tube before installation.

(31) Install exhaust components.

(32) Install transfer case. Tighten transfer case nuts to 35 N·m (26 ft.lbs.).

(33) Install the transfer case shift cable to the cable support bracket and the transfer case shift lever.

(34) Align and connect propeller shaft(s).

(35) Adjust gearshift linkage and throttle valve cable if necessary.

(36) Lower vehicle.

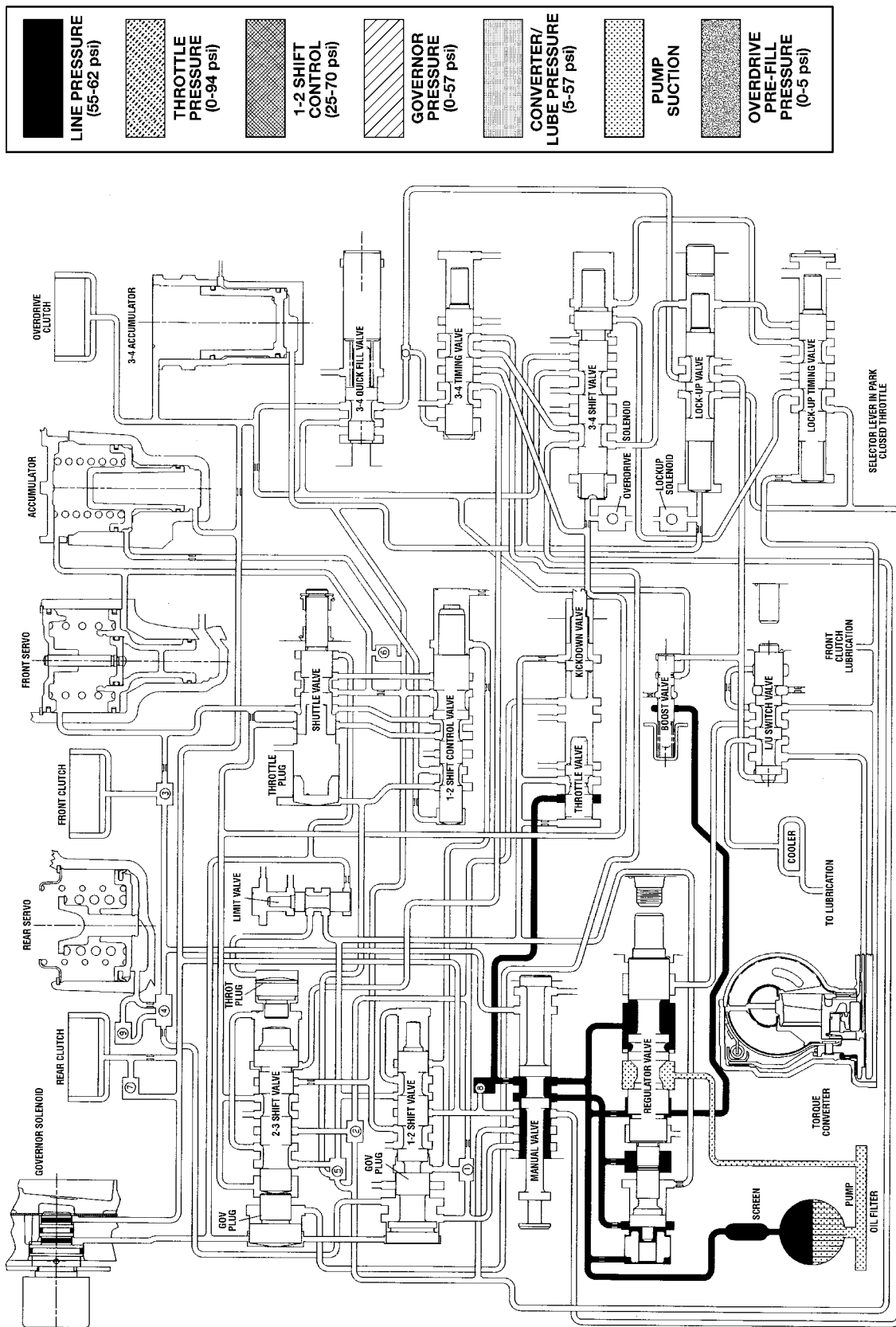
(37) Fill transmission with Mopar® ATF +4, type 9602, fluid.



## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

## SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS

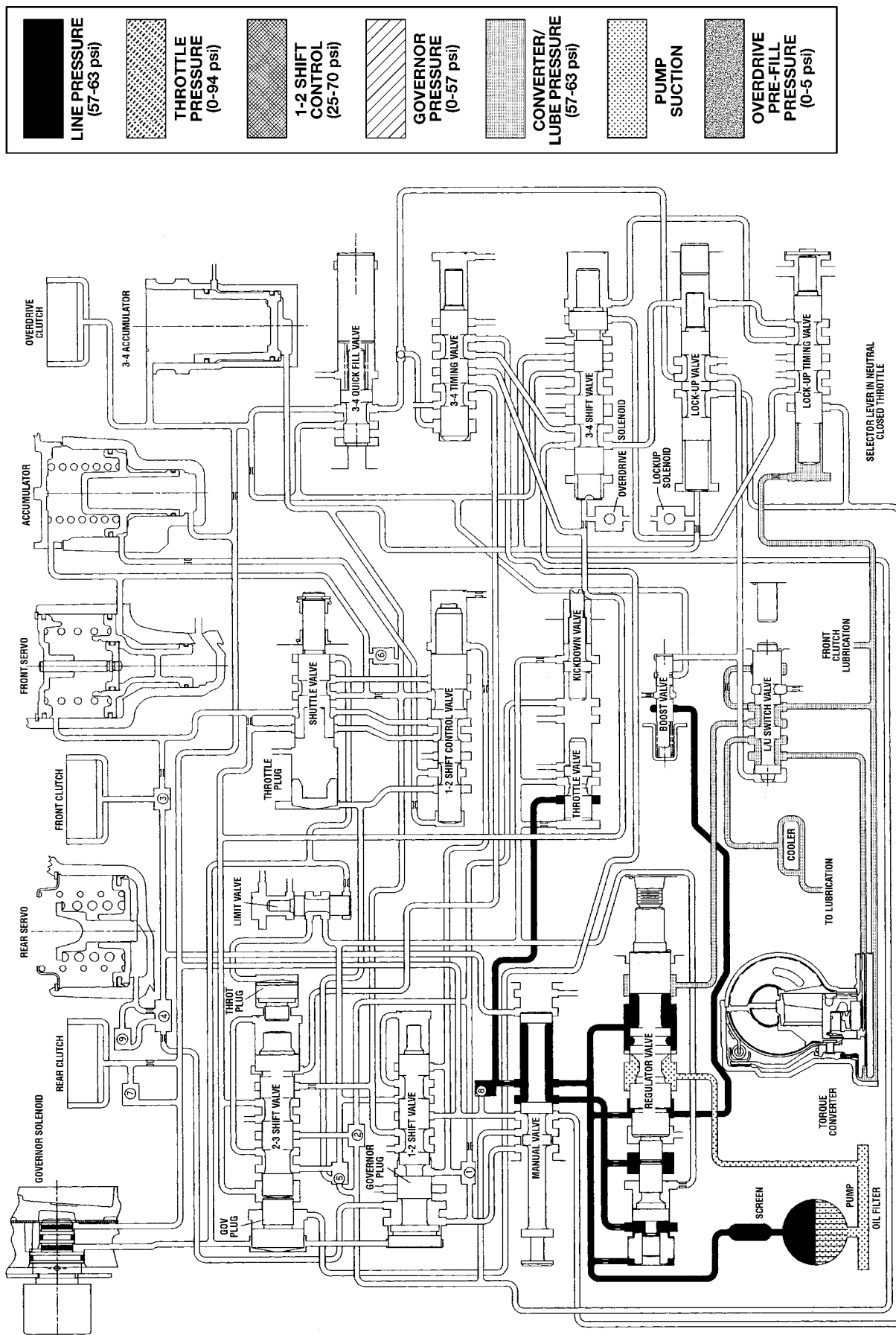
## HYDRAULIC SCHEMATICS



80880593

**HYDRAULIC FLOW IN PARK**

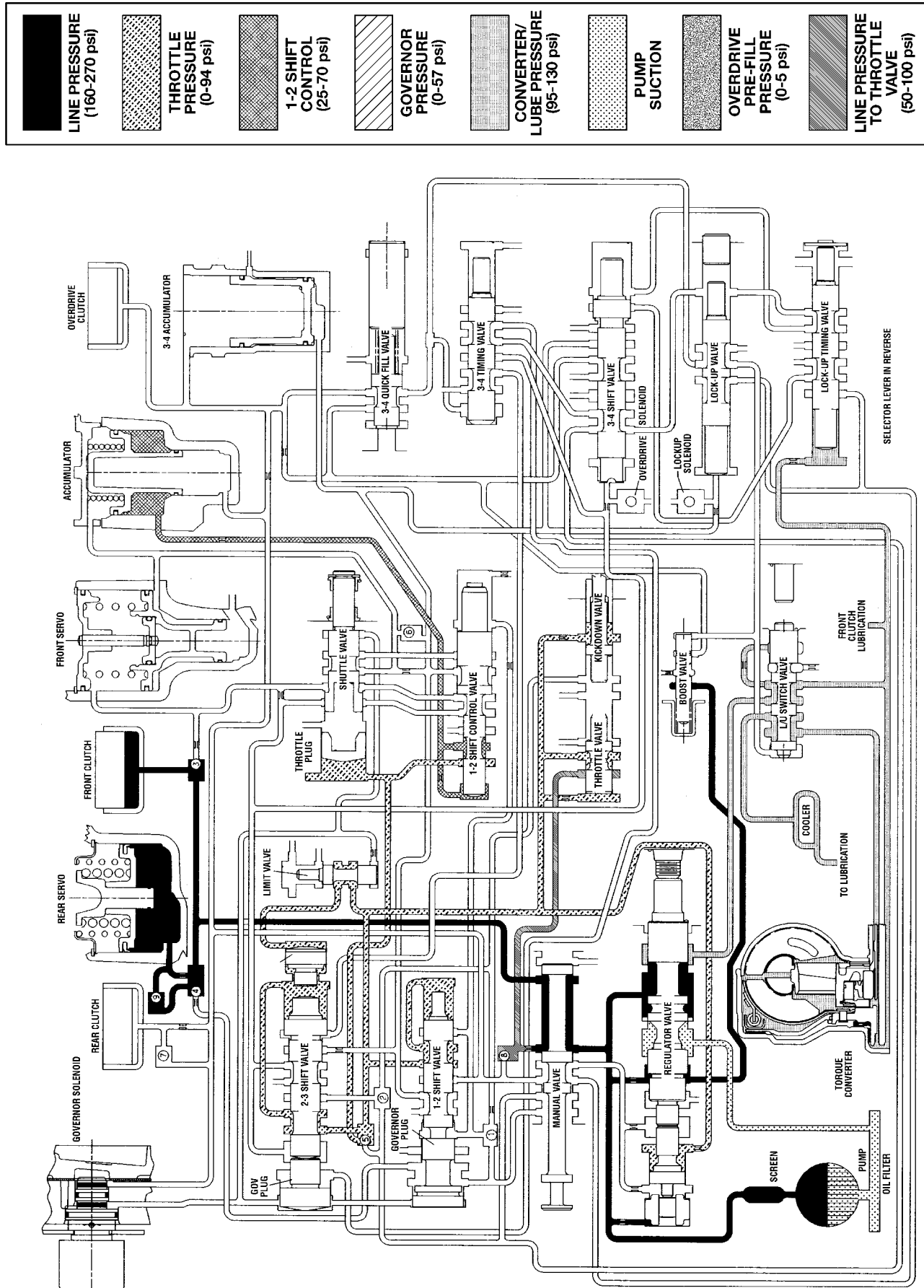
AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)



80880594

HYDRAULIC FLOW IN NEUTRAL

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

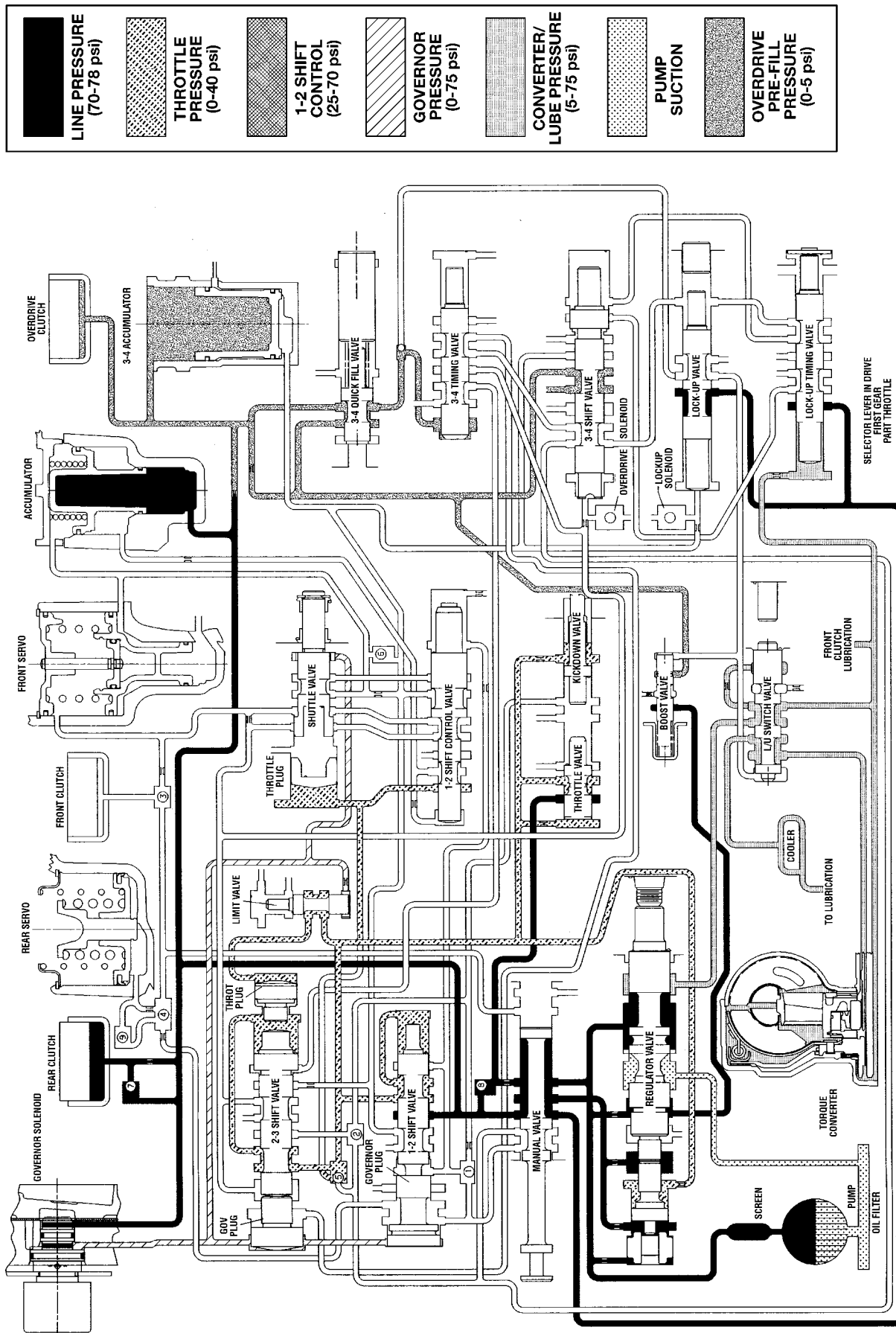


80880595

**HYDRAULIC FLOW IN REVERSE**

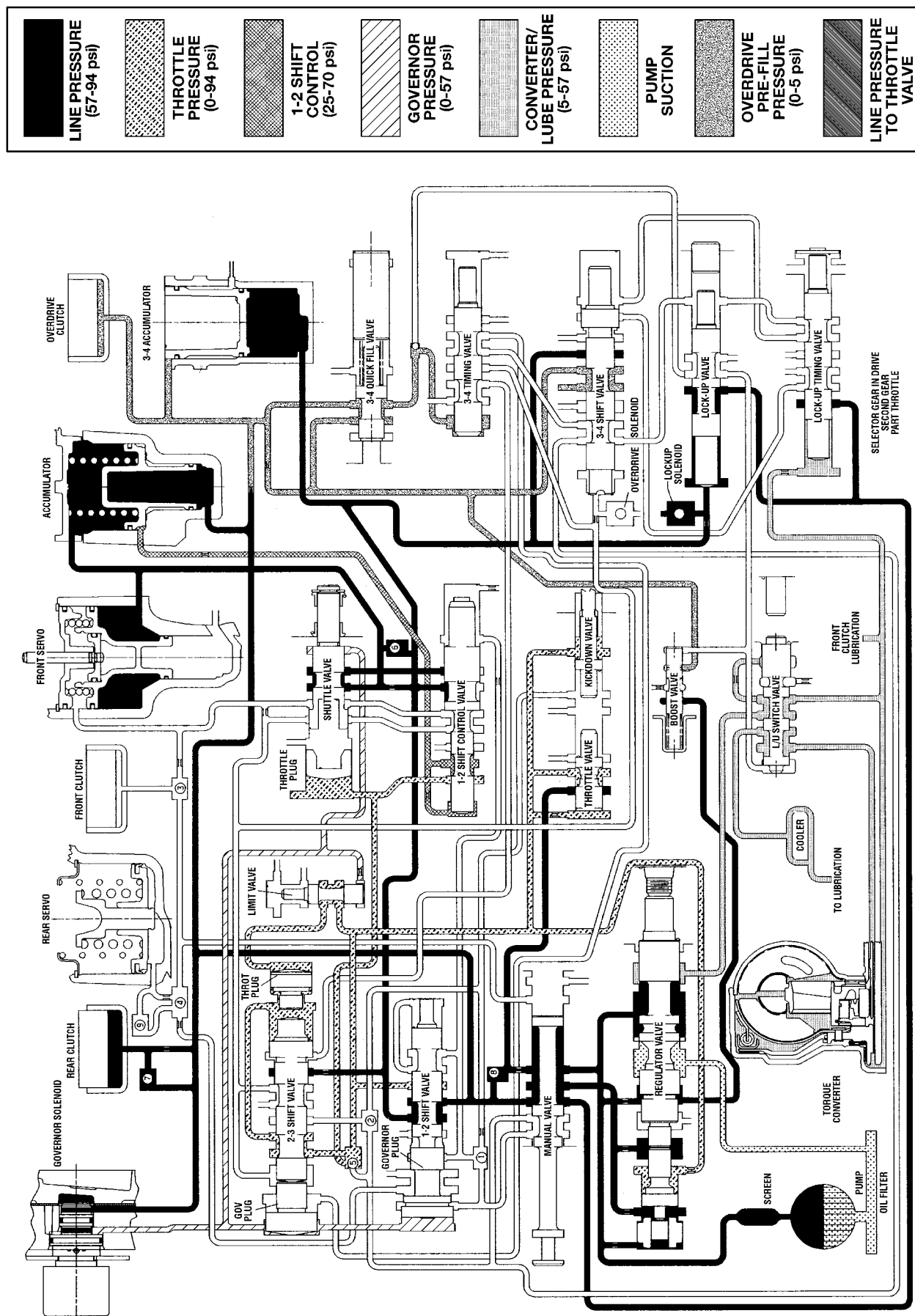
AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

80880596



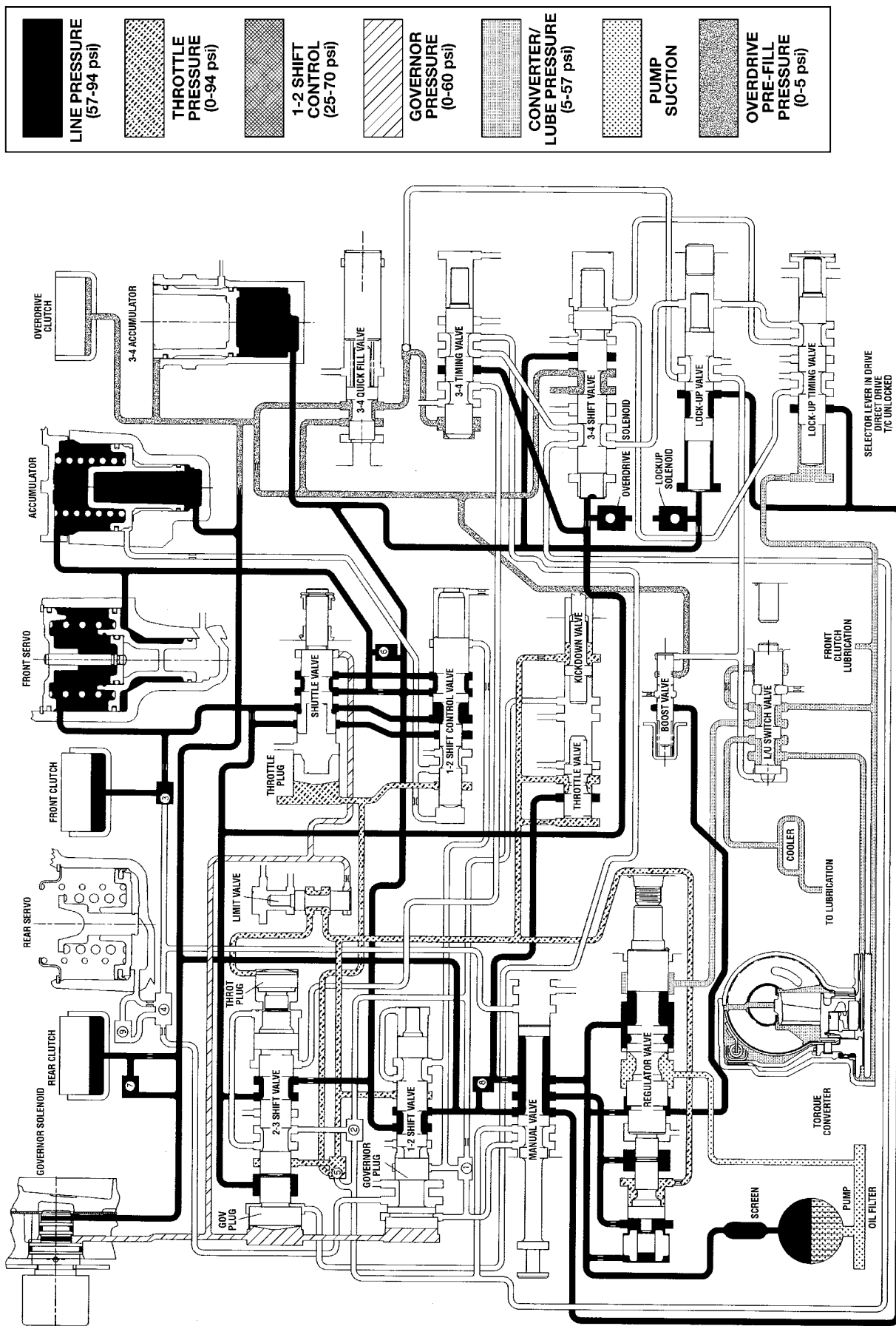
HYDRAULIC FLOW IN DRIVE FIRST GEAR

### AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)





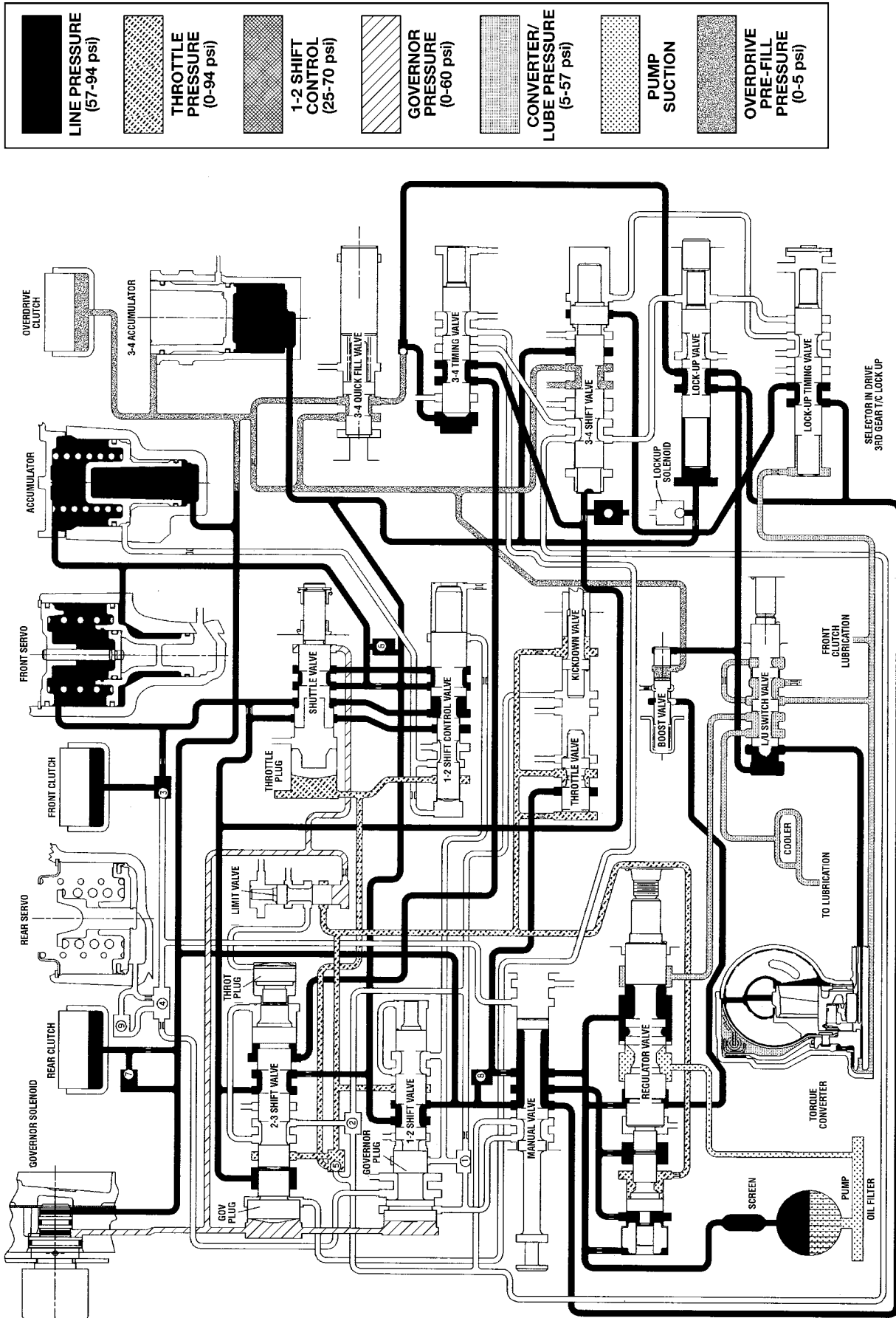
## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)



80880598

HYDRAULIC FLOW IN DRIVE THIRD GEAR (CONVERTER CLUTCH NOT APPLIED)

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)



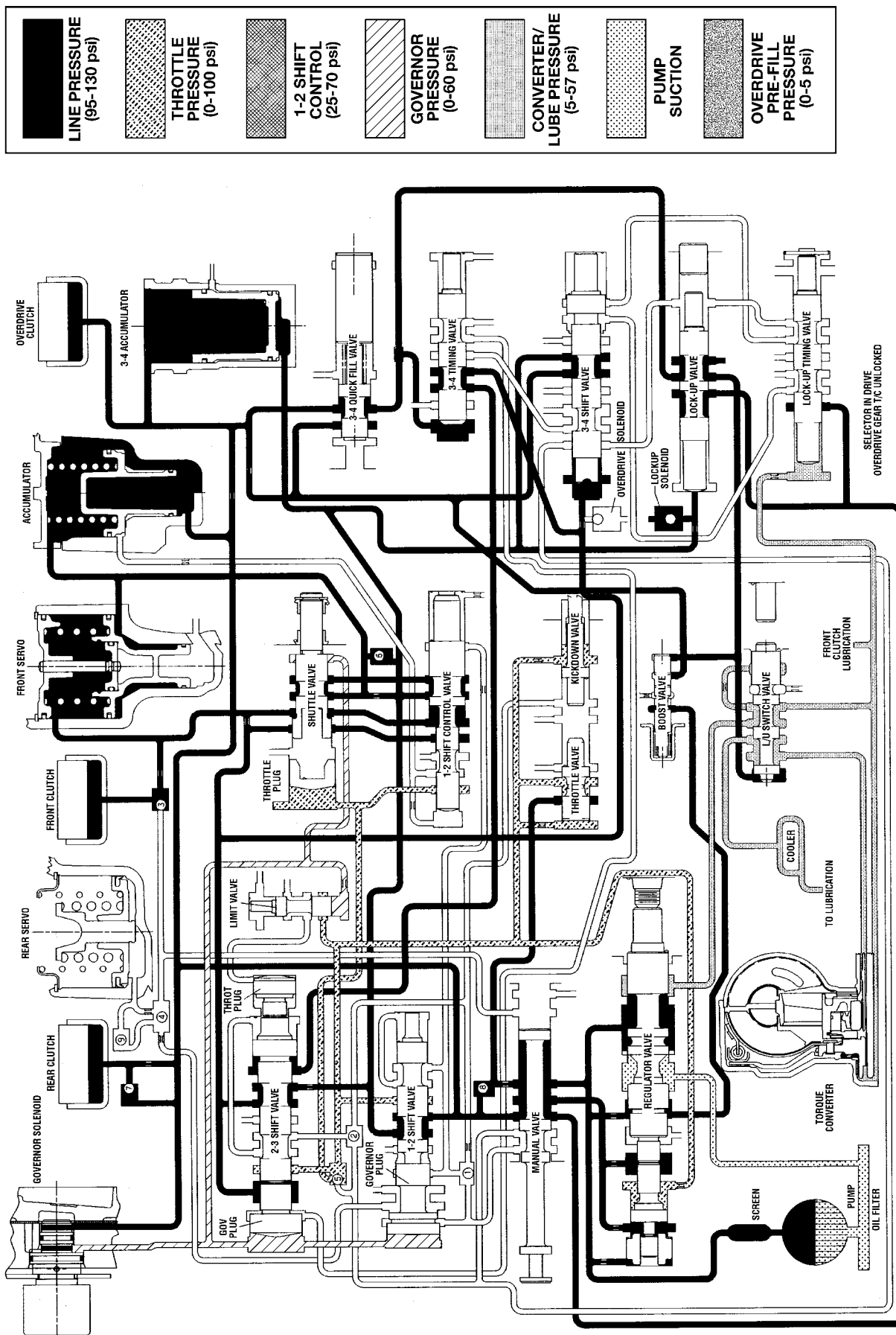
80880599

HYDRAULIC FLOW IN DRIVE THIRD GEAR (CONVERTER CLUTCH APPLIED)



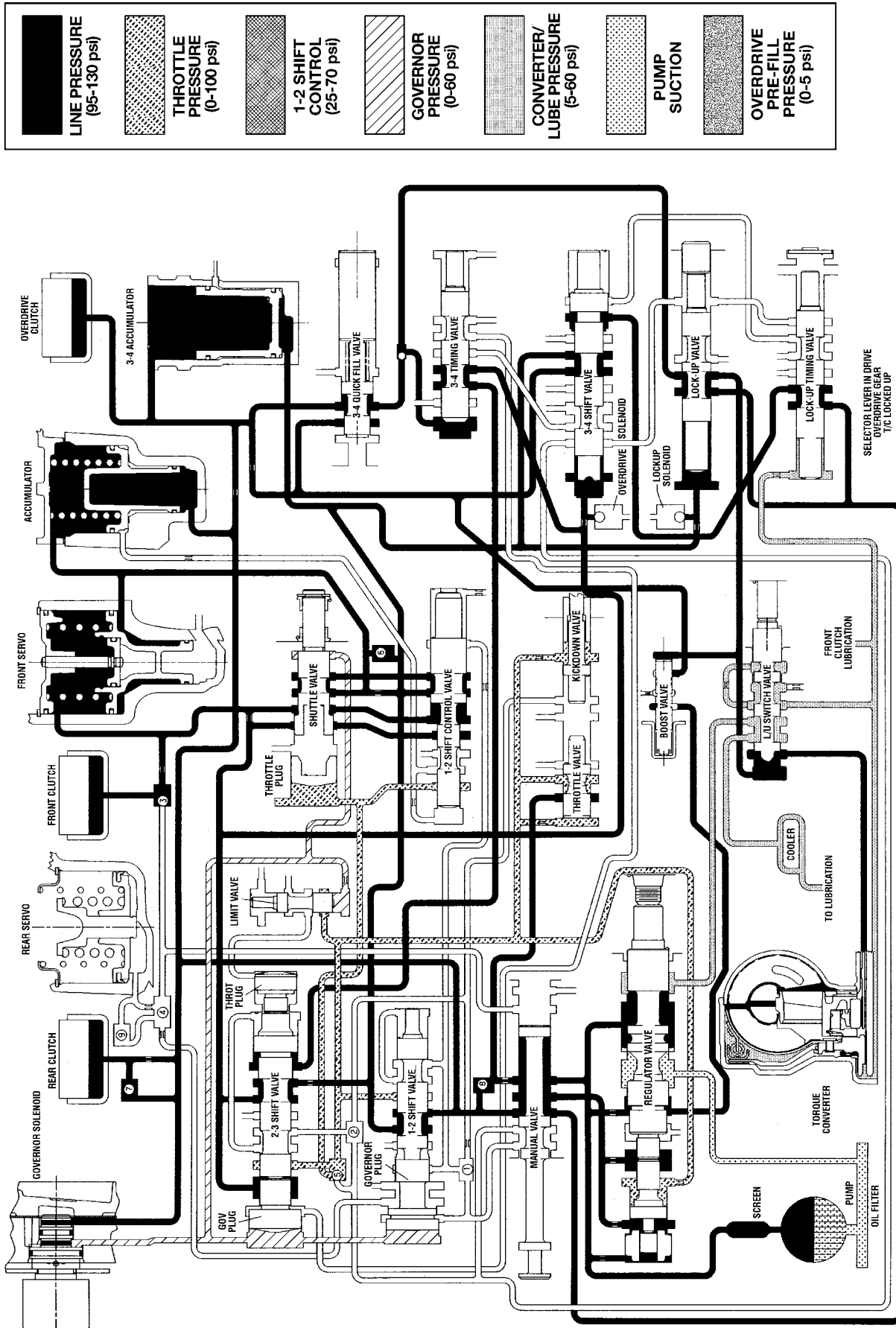
AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

8088059b



HYDRAULIC FLOW IN DRIVE FOURTH GEAR (CONVERTER CLUTCH NOT APPLIED)

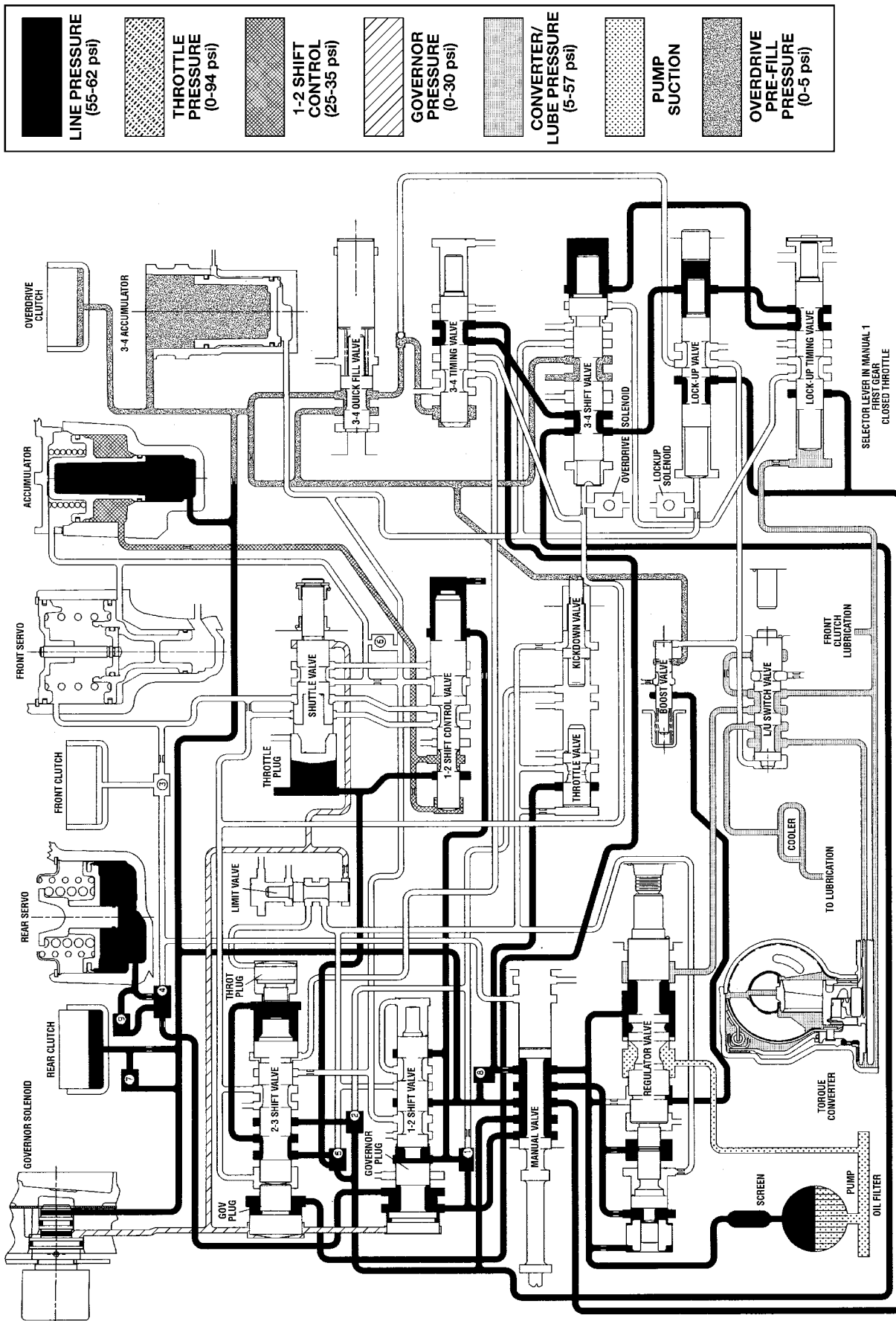
## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)



8088059c

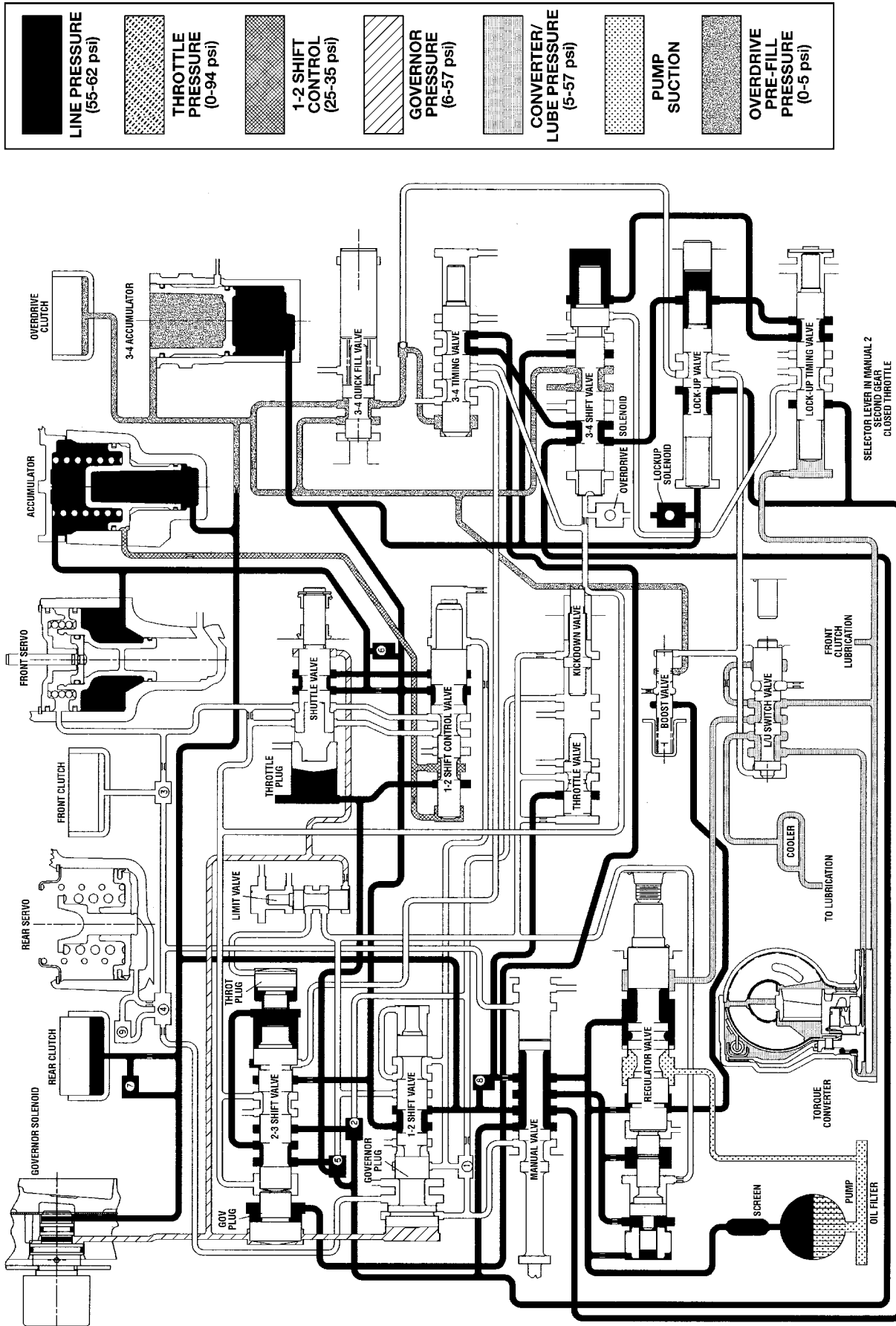
HYDRAULIC FLOW IN DRIVE FOURTH GEAR (CONVERTER CLUTCH APPLIED)

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)



8068059e

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

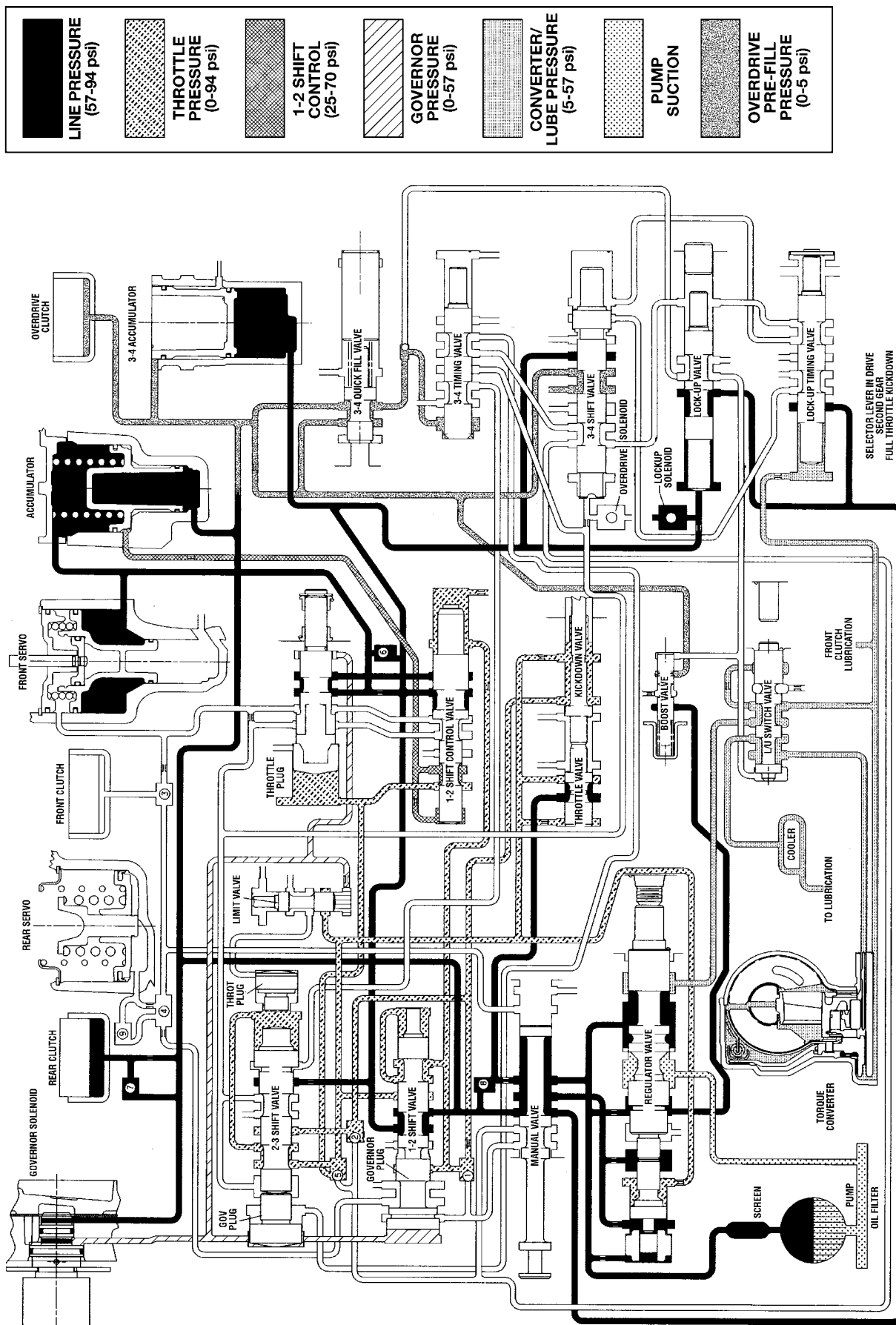


808805a1

HYDRAULIC FLOW IN MANUAL SECOND (2)

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

808805a2



HYDRAULIC FLOW DURING FULL THROTTLE 3-2 DOWNSHIFT (PASSING)



## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

## SPECIFICATIONS

## TRANSMISSION

## GENERAL

Component	Metric	Inch
Planetary end play	0.127-1.22 mm	0.005-0.048 in.
Input shaft end play	0.56-2.31 mm	0.022-0.091 in.
Clutch pack clearance/ Front.	1.70- 3.40mm	0.067-0.134 in.
Clutch pack clearance/ Rear.	0.559-0.914 mm	0.022-0.036 in.
Front clutch	4 discs	
Rear clutch	4 discs	
Overdrive clutch	3 discs	

Component	Metric	Inch
Direct clutch	6 discs	
42RE Band adjustment from 72 in. lbs.		
Front band	Back off 3 turns	
Rear band	Back off 4 turns	
Recommended fluid	Mopar® ATF +4, Automatic Transmission Fluid	

## GEAR RATIOS

1ST GEAR	2.74:1
2ND GEAR	1.54:1
3RD GEAR	1.0:1
4TH GEAR	0.69:1
REVERSE	2.21:1

## THRUST WASHER/SPACER/SNAP-RING DIMENSIONS

Component	Metric	Inch
Front clutch thrust washer (reaction shaft support hub)	1.55 mm	0.061 in.
Rear clutch thrust washer (clutch retainer)	1.55 mm	0.061 in.
Intermediate shaft thrust plate (shaft hub pilot)	Select fit to set end play	
Output shaft thrust washer (rear clutch hub)	1.5-1.6 mm	0.060-0.063 in.
Rear clutch pack snap-ring	1.5 mm	0.060 in.
	1.95 mm	0.076 in.
	2.45 mm	0.098 in.
Planetary geartrain snap-ring (at front of output shaft)	Select fit (three thicknesses available)	
Overdrive piston thrust plate	Thrust plate and spacer are select fit. Refer to size charts and selection procedures in Overdrive Unit D&A procedures	
Intermediate shaft spacer		

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

**PRESSURE TEST**

Overdrive clutch	Fourth gear only	Pressure should be 469-496 kPa (68-72 psi) with closed throttle and increase to 620-896 kPa (90-130 psi) at 1/2 to 3/4 throttle.
Line pressure (at accumulator)	Closed throttle	372-414 kPa (54-60 psi).
Front servo	Third or Fourth gear only	No more than 21 kPa (3 psi) lower than line pressure.
Rear servo	1 range R range	No more than 21 kPa (3 psi) lower than line pressure. 1103 kPa (160 psi) at idle, builds to 1862 kPa (270 psi) at 1600 rpm.
Governor	D range closed throttle	Pressure should respond smoothly to changes in mph and return to 0-7 kPa (0-1.5 psi) when stopped with transmission in D, 1, 2. Pressure above 7 kPa (1.5 psi) at stand still will prevent transmission from downshifting.

*TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS*

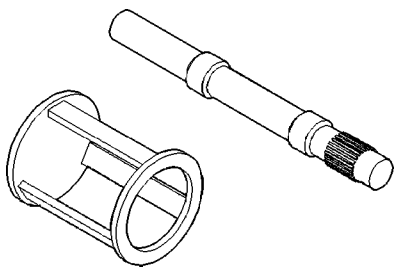
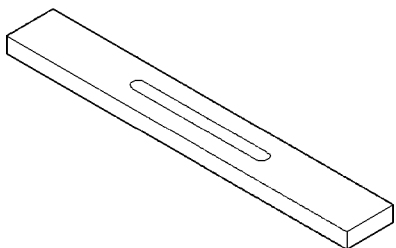
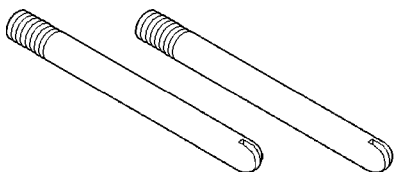
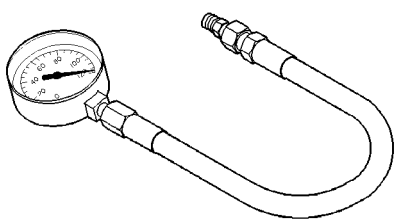
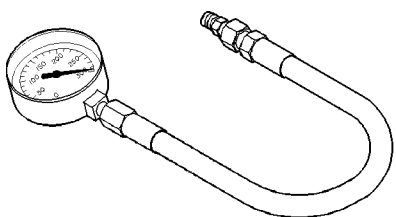
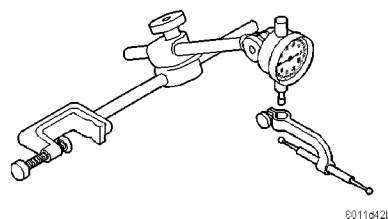
<b>DESCRIPTION</b>	<b>N-m</b>	<b>Ft. Lbs.</b>	<b>In. Lbs.</b>
Fitting, cooler line at trans	18	13	-
Bolt, torque convertor	31	-	270
Bolt, clevis bracket to crossmember	47	35	-
Bolt, clevis bracket to rear support	68	50	-
Bolt, driveplate to crankshaft	75	55	-
Plug, front band reaction	17	13	-
Locknut, front band adj.	34	25	-
Switch, park/neutral	34	25	-
Bolt, fluid pan	17	13	-
Screws, fluid filter	4	-	35
Bolt, oil pump	20	15	-
Bolt, overrunning clutch cam	17	13	-
Bolt, O/D to trans.	34	25	-
Bolt, O/D piston retainer	17	13	-
Plug, pressure test port	14	10	-
Bolt, reaction shaft support	20	15	-
Locknut, rear band	41	30	-
Bolt, speedometer adapter	11	-	100
Screw, vehicle speed sensor	2.5	-	21
Bolt, valve body to case	12	-	100
Sensor, trans speed	27	20	-
Screw, solenoid wiring connector	4	-	35
Screw, solenoid to transfer plate	4	-	35



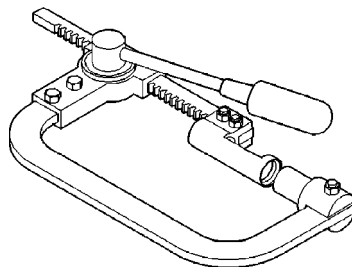
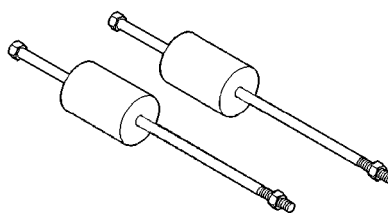
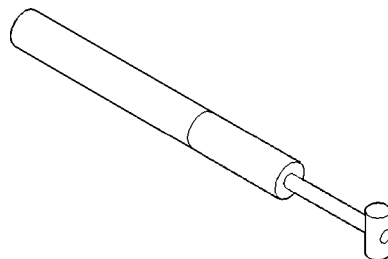
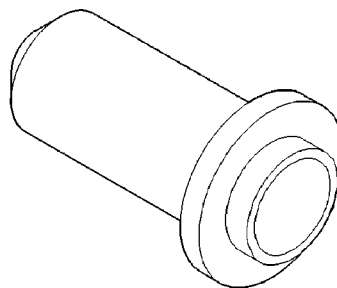
## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

## SPECIAL TOOLS

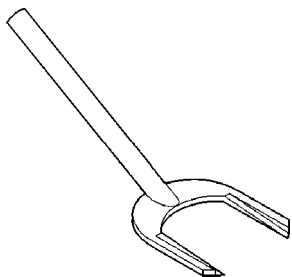
## RE TRANSMISSIONS

**Shaft, Spring Compressor and Alignment - 6227****Bar, Gauge - 6311****Pilot, Extension Housing - C-3288-B****Gauge, Oil Pressure - C-3292****Gauge, Oil Pressure - C-3293SP**

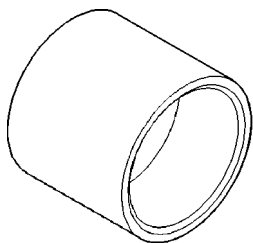
60110420

**Dial Indicator - C-3339****Compressor, Spring - C-3422-C****Puller, Slide Hammer - C-3752****Gauge, Throttle Setting - C-3763****Installer, Seal - C-3860-A**

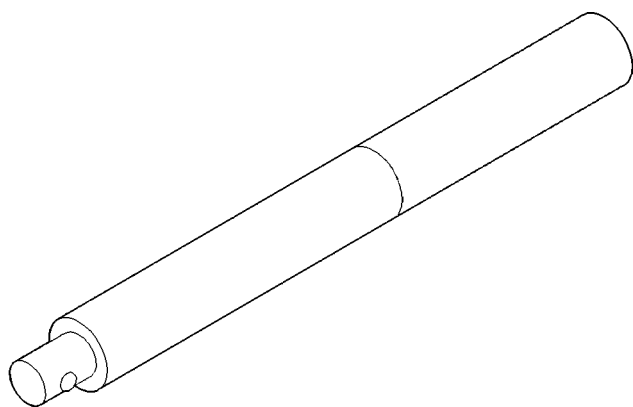
AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)



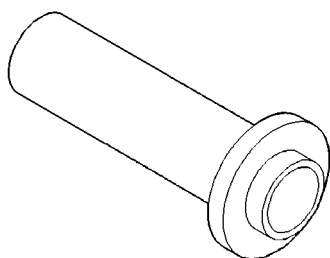
***Remover, Seal - C-3985-B***



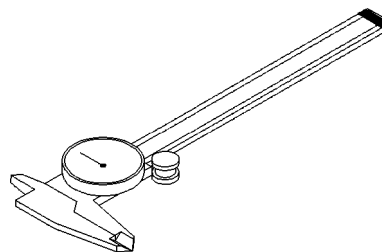
***Installer, Seal - C-3995-A***



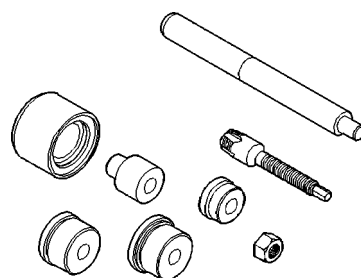
***Handle, Universal - C-4171***



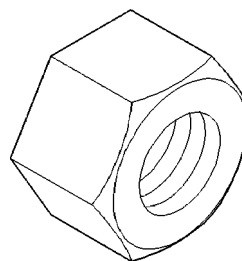
***Installer, Seal - C-4193-A***



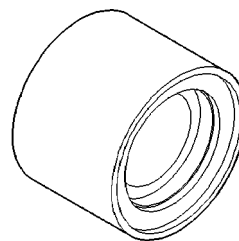
***Dial Caliper - C-4962***



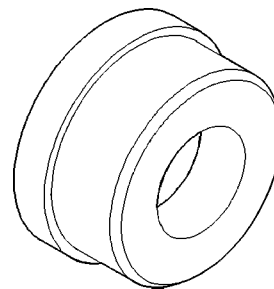
***Kit, Bushing Remover/Installer - C-3887-J***



***Nut, Bushing Remover - SP-1191, From kit C-3887-J***

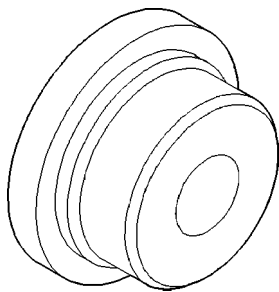
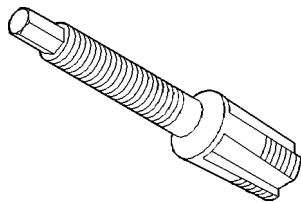
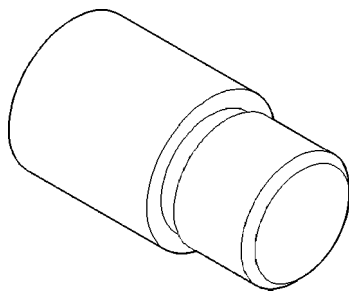
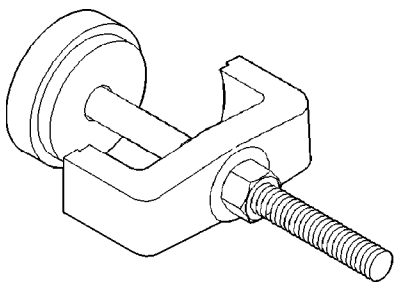
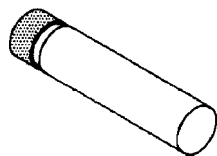
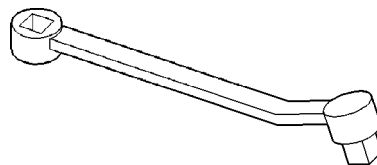
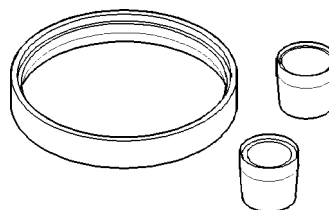
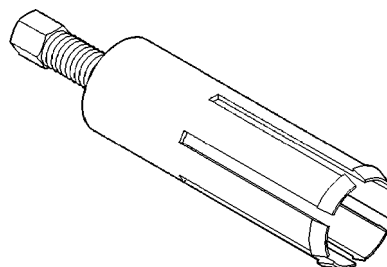
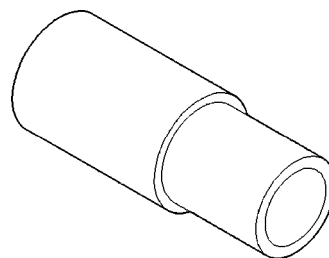
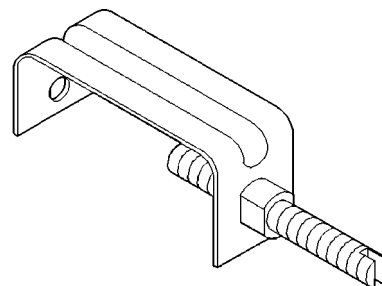


***Cup, Bushing Remover - SP-3633, From kit C-3887-J***



***Remover, Bushing - SP-3551***

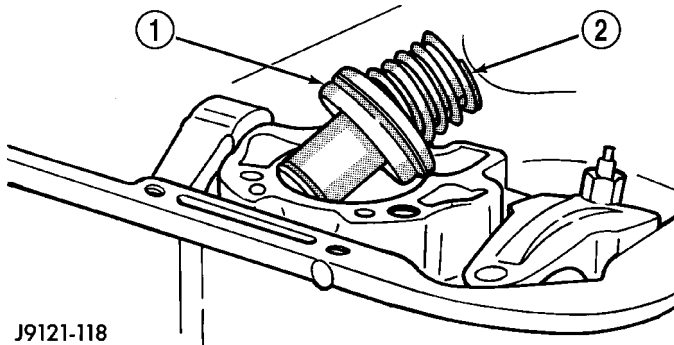
## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE (Continued)

**Installer, Bushing - SP-5117****Remover, Bushing - SP-5324****Installer, Bushing - SP-5325****Compressor, Spring - C-3575-A****Gauge - 6312****Adapter, Band Adjuster - C-3705****Installer, Piston - 8114****Remover, Bushing - 6957****Installer, Bushing - 6951****Retainer, Detent Ball and Spring - 6583**

## ACCUMULATOR

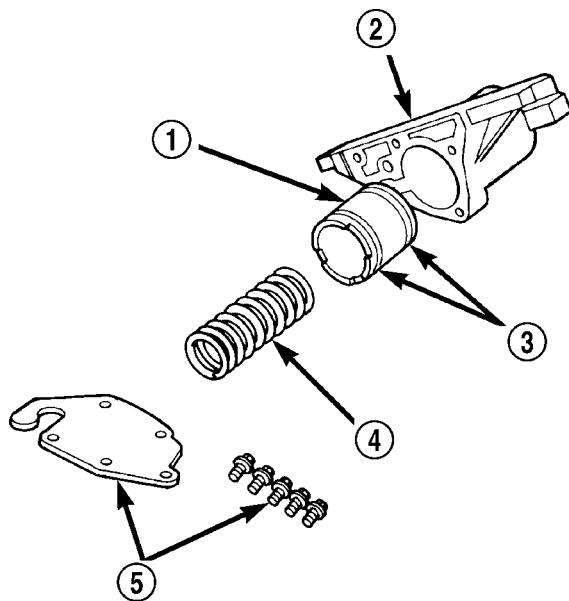
### DESCRIPTION

The accumulator (Fig. 61) is a hydraulic device that has the sole purpose of cushioning the application of a band or clutch. The accumulator consists of a dual-land piston and a spring located in a bore in the transmission case. The 3-4 accumulator is located in a housing attached to the side of the valve body (Fig. 62).



**Fig. 61 Accumulator**

- 1 - ACCUMULATOR PISTON
- 2 - PISTON SPRING



**Fig. 62 3-4 Accumulator and Housing**

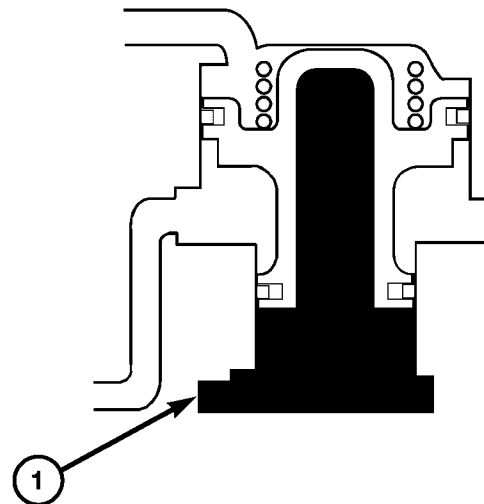
- 1 - ACCUMULATOR PISTON
- 2 - 3-4 ACCUMULATOR HOUSING
- 3 - TEFLON SEALS
- 4 - PISTON SPRING
- 5 - COVER PLATE AND SCREWS

### OPERATION

Both the accumulator and the 3-4 accumulator function the same. Line pressure is directed to the small end of the piston when the transmission is placed into a DRIVE position (Fig. 63), bottoming it against the accumulator plate. When the 1-2 upshift occurs (Fig. 64), line pressure is directed to the large end of the piston and then to the kickdown servo. As the line pressure reaches the accumulator, the combination of spring pressure and line pressure forces the piston away from the accumulator plate. This causes a balanced pressure situation, which results in a cushioned band application. After the kickdown servo has become immovable, line pressure will finish pushing the accumulator up into its bore. When the large end of the accumulator piston is seated in its bore, the band or clutch is fully applied.

**NOTE:** The accumulator is shown in the inverted position for illustrative purposes.

### BOTTOMED AGAINST ACCUMULATOR PLATE

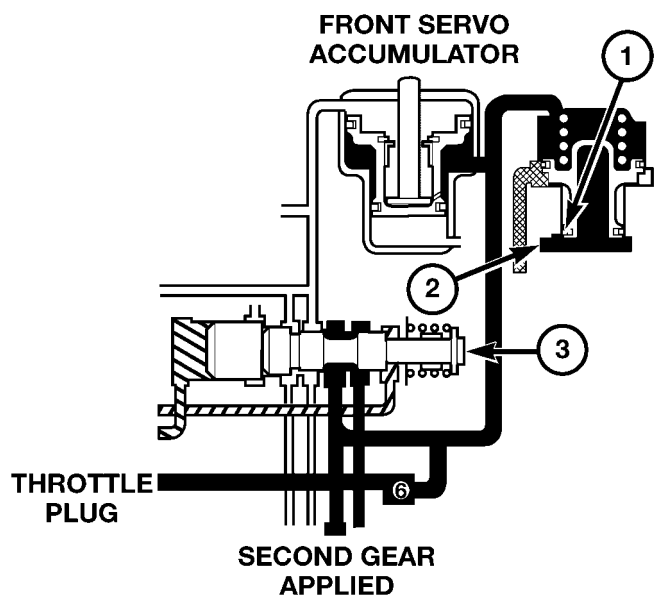


80a08a54

**Fig. 63 Accumulator in DRIVE - FIRST Gear Position**

- 1 - LINE PRESSURE

## ACCUMULATOR (Continued)



80a08a58

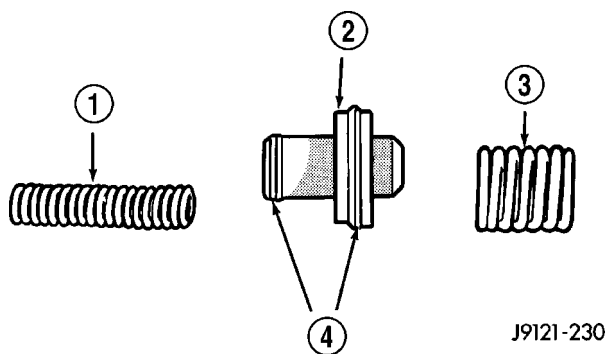
**Fig. 64 Accumulator in SECOND Gear Position**

- 1 - BOTTOM OF BORE
- 2 - LINE PRESSURE
- 3 - SHUTTLE VALVE

## INSPECTION

Inspect the accumulator piston and seal rings (Fig. 65). Replace the seal rings if worn or cut. Replace the piston if chipped or cracked.

Check condition of the accumulator inner and outer springs (Fig. 65). Replace the springs if the coils are cracked, distorted or collapsed.



J9121-230

**Fig. 65 Accumulator Components**

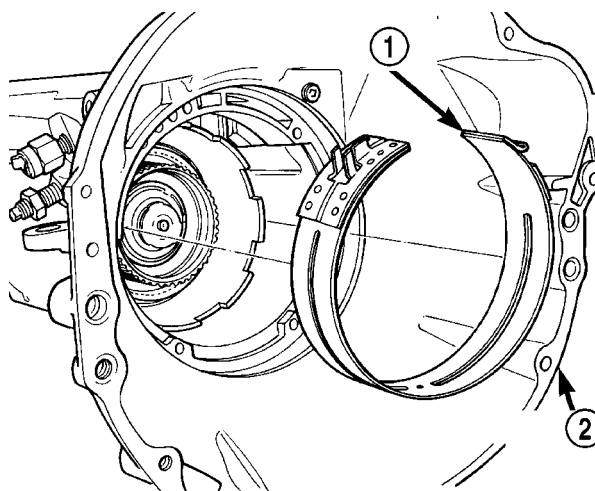
- 1 - INNER SPRING
- 2 - ACCUMULATOR PISTON
- 3 - OUTER SPRING
- 4 - SEAL RINGS

## BANDS

## DESCRIPTION

## KICKDOWN (FRONT) BAND

The kickdown, or "front", band (Fig. 66) holds the common sun gear of the planetary gear sets. The front (kickdown) band is made of steel, and faced on its inner circumference with a friction-type lining. One end of the band is anchored to the transmission case, and the other is acted on with a pushing force by a servo piston. The front band is a single-wrap design (the band does not completely encompass/wrap the drum that it holds).



80a3b192

**Fig. 66 Front Band**

- 1 - FRONT BAND
- 2 - TRANSMISSION HOUSING

## BANDS (Continued)

## LOW/REVERSE (REAR) BAND

The low/reverse band, or "rear", band (Fig. 67) is similar in appearance and operation to the front band. The rear band is slightly different in that it does not use a link bar, but is acted directly on by the apply lever. This is referred to as a double-wrap band design (the drum is completely encompassed/wrapped by the band). The double-wrap band provides a greater holding power in comparison to the single-wrap design.

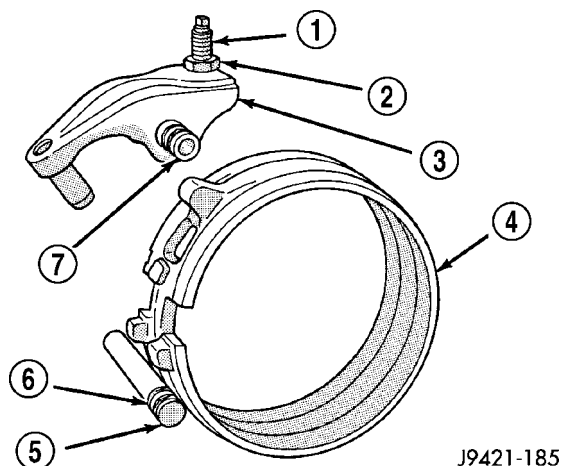


Fig. 67 Rear Band

- 1 - ADJUSTING SCREW
- 2 - LOCKNUT
- 3 - LEVER
- 4 - REAR BAND
- 5 - REACTION PIN
- 6 - O-RINGS
- 7 - PIVOT PIN

## OPERATION

## KICKDOWN (FRONT) BAND

The kickdown band holds the common sun gear of the planetary gear sets by applying and holding the front clutch retainer, which is splined to the sun gear driving shell, and in turn splined directly to the sun gear. The application of the band by the servo is typically done by an apply lever and link bar.

## LOW/REVERSE (REAR) BAND

The rear band holds the rear planet carrier stationary by being mounted around and applied to the low/reverse drum.

## ADJUSTMENTS

## ADJUSTMENT - BANDS

## FRONT BAND

The front (kickdown) band adjusting screw is located on the left side of the transmission case above the manual valve and throttle valve levers.

- (1) Raise vehicle.
- (2) Loosen band adjusting screw locknut (Fig. 68). Then back locknut off 3-5 turns. Be sure adjusting screw turns freely in case. Apply lubricant to screw threads if necessary.
- (3) Tighten band adjusting screw to 8 N·m (72 in. lbs.) torque with Inch Pound Torque Wrench C-3380-A, a 3-in. extension and appropriate Torx™ socket.

**CAUTION:** If Adapter C-3705 is needed to reach the adjusting screw, tighten the screw to only 5 N·m (47-50 in. lbs.) torque.

- (4) Back off front band adjusting screw 3 turns.
- (5) Hold adjuster screw in position and tighten locknut to 41 N·m (30 ft. lbs.) torque.
- (6) Lower vehicle.

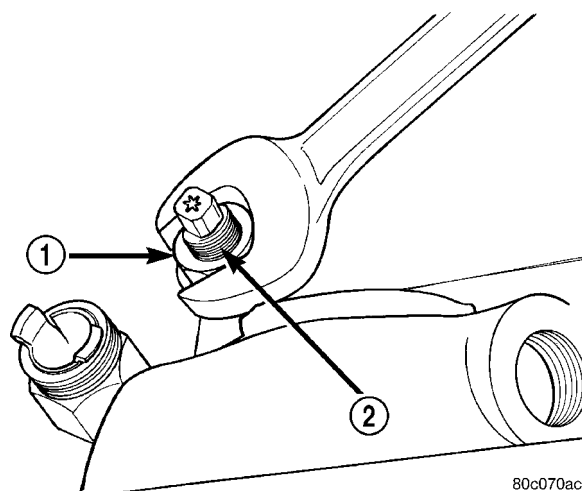


Fig. 68 Front Band Adjustment Screw Location

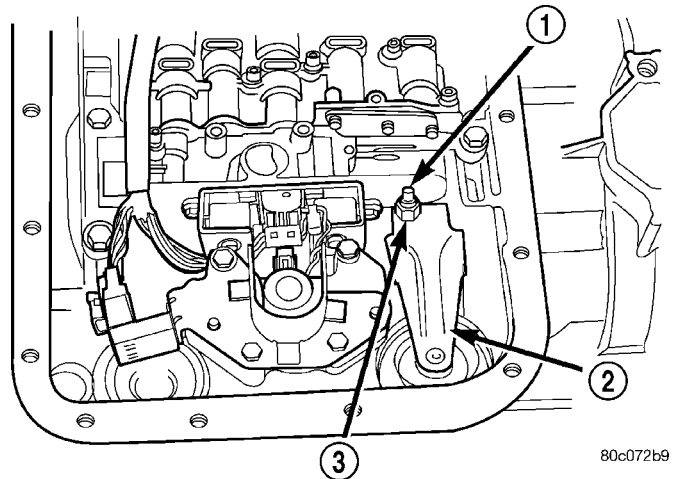
- 1 - LOCK-NUT
- 2 - FRONT BAND ADJUSTER

## BANDS (Continued)

## REAR BAND

The transmission oil pan must be removed for access to the rear band adjusting screw.

- (1) Raise vehicle.
- (2) Remove transmission oil pan and drain fluid.
- (3) Loosen band adjusting screw locknut 5-6 turns (Fig. 69). Be sure adjusting screw turns freely in lever.
- (4) Tighten adjusting screw to 8 N·m (72 in. lbs.) torque.
- (5) Back off adjusting screw 4 turns.
- (6) Hold adjusting screw in place and tighten locknut to 34 N·m (25 ft. lbs.) torque.
- (7) Position new gasket on oil pan and install pan on transmission. Tighten pan bolts to 17 N·m (13 ft. lbs.) torque.
- (8) Lower vehicle and refill transmission with Mopar® ATF +4, Automatic Transmission fluid.



**Fig. 69 Rear Band Adjusting Screw Location**

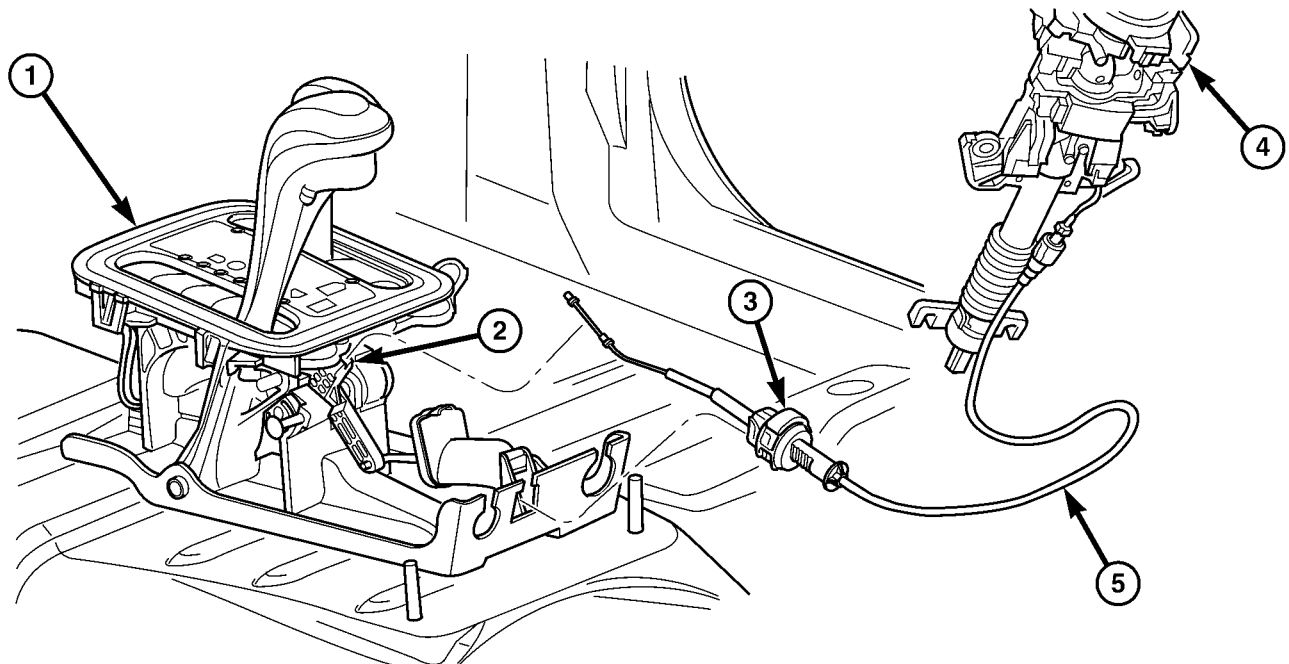
- 1 - ADJUSTING SCREW  
2 - REAR BAND LEVER  
3 - LOCKNUT

## BRAKE TRANSMISSION SHIFT INTERLOCK MECHANISM

## DESCRIPTION

The Brake Transmission Shifter/Ignition Interlock (BTSI), is a cable and solenoid operated system. It

interconnects the automatic transmission floor mounted shifter to the steering column ignition switch (Fig. 70).



**Fig. 70 Ignition Interlock Cable**

- 1 - SHIFT MECHANISM  
2 - SHIFTER BTISI LEVER  
3 - ADJUSTMENT CLIP

- 4 - STEERING COLUMN ASSEMBLY  
5 - INTERLOCK CABLE



## BRAKE TRANSMISSION SHIFT INTERLOCK MECHANISM (Continued)

**OPERATION**

The system locks the shifter into the PARK position. The interlock system is engaged whenever the ignition switch is in the LOCK or ACCESSORY position. An additional electrically activated feature will prevent shifting out of the PARK position unless the brake pedal is depressed approximately one-half an inch. A magnetic holding device in the shifter assembly is energized when the ignition is in the RUN position. When the key is in the RUN position and the brake pedal is depressed, the shifter is unlocked and will move into any gear position. The interlock system also prevents the ignition switch from being turned to the LOCK or ACCESSORY position, unless the shifter is fully locked into the PARK position.

**DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - BRAKE TRANSMISSION SHIFT INTERLOCK****SYSTEM VERIFICATION**

(1) Verify that the key can only be removed in the PARK position

(2) When the shift lever is in PARK And the shift handle pushbutton is in the "OUT" position, the ignition key cylinder should rotate freely from OFF to LOCK. When the shifter is in any other gear or neutral position, the ignition key cylinder should not rotate to the LOCK position.

(3) Shifting out of PARK should not be possible when the ignition key cylinder is in the OFF position.

(4) Shifting out of PARK should not be possible while applying normal pushbutton force and ignition key cylinder is in the RUN or START positions unless the foot brake pedal is depressed approximately 1/2 inch (12mm).

(5) Shifting out of PARK should not be possible when the ignition key cylinder is in the ACCESSORY or LOCK positions.

(6) Shifting between any gears, NEUTRAL or into PARK may be done without depressing foot brake pedal with ignition switch in RUN or START positions.

*DIAGNOSTIC CHART*

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSE	CORRECTION
KEY WILL NOT ROTATE TO THE OFF/LOCK POSITION.	1. Misadjusted Park Lock cable.	1. Adjust Park Lock cable. (Refer to 21 - TRANSMISSION AND TRANSFER CASE/AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION/BRAKE TRANSMISSION SHIFT INTERLOCK SYSTEM - ADJUSTMENTS)
	2. Misadjusted gearshift cable.	2. Adjust gearshift cable. (Refer to 21 - TRANSMISSION AND TRANSFER CASE/AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION/GEAR SHIFT CABLE - ADJUSTMENTS)
	3. Burrs on ignition key.	3. Remove burrs and cycle key several times to verify operation.
	4. Binding or broken components.	4. Inspect system components and repair/replace components as necessary.
VEHICLE WILL NOT START UNLESS SHIFTER IS HELD FORWARD OF THE PARK POSITION.	1. Misadjusted gearshift cable.	1. Adjust gearshift cable. (Refer to 21 - TRANSMISSION AND TRANSFER CASE/AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION/GEAR SHIFT CABLE - ADJUSTMENTS)

## BRAKE TRANSMISSION SHIFT INTERLOCK MECHANISM (Continued)

ADJUSTMENTS - BRAKE TRANSMISSION  
SHIFT INTERLOCK

The park interlock cable is part of the brake/shift lever interlock system. Correct cable adjustment is important to proper interlock operation. The gear shift and park lock cables must both be correctly adjusted in order to shift out of PARK.

## ADJUSTMENT PROCEDURE

(1) Remove floor console as necessary for access to the brake transmission shift interlock cable. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/FLOOR CONSOLE - REMOVAL)

(2) Shift the transmission into the PARK position.

(3) Turn ignition switch to LOCK position. **Be sure ignition key cylinder is in the LOCK position. Cable will not adjust correctly in any other position.**

(4) Pull cable lock button up to release cable (Fig. 71).

(5) Ensure that the cable is free to self-adjust by pushing cable rearward and releasing.

(6) Push lock button down until it snaps in place.

## BTSI FUNCTION CHECK

(1) Verify removal of ignition key allowed in PARK position only.

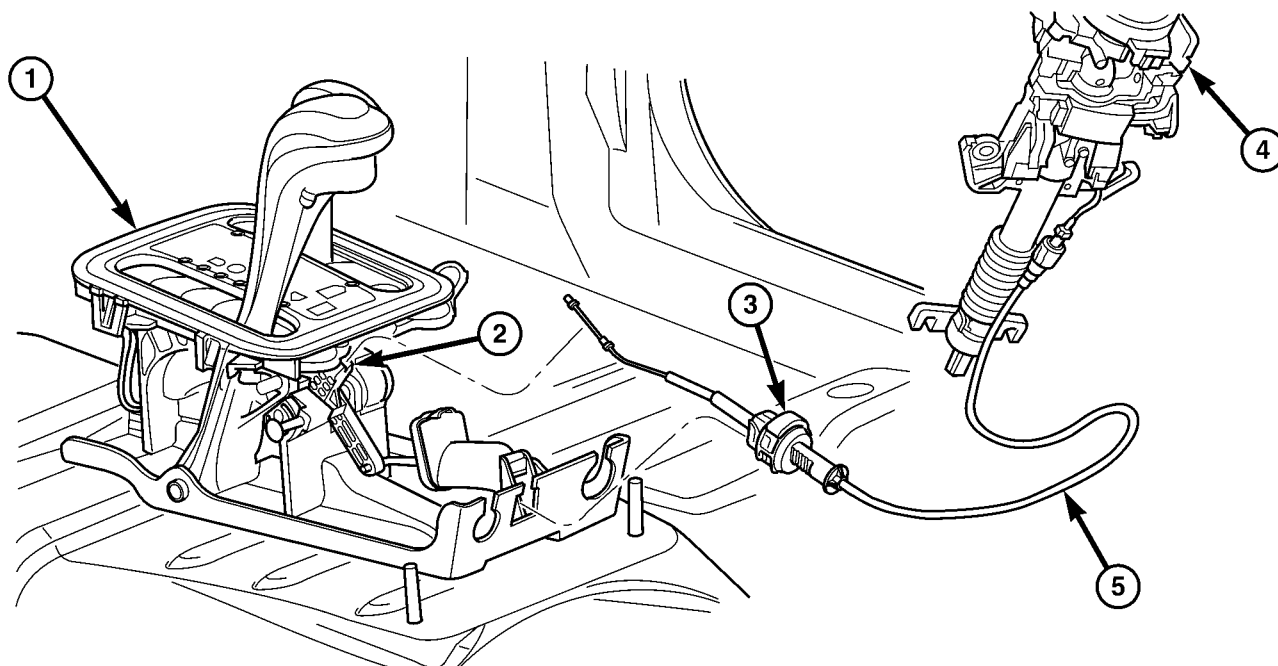
(2) When the shift lever is in PARK, and the shift handle push-button is in the out position, the ignition key cylinder should rotate freely from off to lock. When the shifter is in any other position, the ignition key should not rotate from off to lock.

(3) Shifting out of PARK should be possible when the ignition key cylinder is in the off position.

(4) Shifting out of PARK should not be possible while applying normal push-button force, and ignition key cylinder is in the run or start positions, unless the foot brake pedal is depressed approximately 1/2 inch (12mm).

(5) Shifting out of PARK should not be possible when the ignition key cylinder is in the accessory or lock position.

(6) Shifting between any gear and NEUTRAL, or PARK, may be done without depressing foot brake with ignition switch in run or start positions.



80dba6a6

**Fig. 71 Brake Transmission Shift Interlock Cable**

1 - SHIFT MECHANISM  
2 - SHIFTER BTSI LEVER  
3 - ADJUSTMENT CLIP

4 - STEERING COLUMN ASSEMBLY  
5 - INTERLOCK CABLE

## BRAKE TRANSMISSION SHIFT INTERLOCK MECHANISM (Continued)

(7) The floor shifter lever and gate positions should be in alignment with all transmission detent positions.

(8) Engine starts must be possible with shifter lever in PARK or NEUTRAL gate positions only. Engine starts must not be possible in any other gate positions other than PARK or NEUTRAL.

(9) With shifter lever handle push-button not depressed and lever detent in:

- PARK position- apply forward force on center of handle and remove pressure. Engine start must be possible.

- PARK position- apply rearward force on center of handle and remove pressure. Engine start must be possible.

- NEUTRAL position- engine start must be possible.

- NEUTRAL position, engine running and brakes applied- Apply forward force on center of shift handle. Transmission should not be able to shift into REVERSE detent.

## ELECTRONIC GOVERNOR

### DESCRIPTION

Governor pressure is controlled electronically. Components used for governor pressure control include:

- Governor body
- Valve body transfer plate
- Governor pressure solenoid valve
- Governor pressure sensor
- Fluid temperature thermistor
- Throttle position sensor (TPS)
- Transmission speed sensor
- Powertrain control module (PCM)

### GOVERNOR PRESSURE SOLENOID VALVE

The solenoid valve is a duty-cycle solenoid which regulates the governor pressure needed for upshifts and downshifts. It is an electro-hydraulic device located in the governor body on the valve body transfer plate (Fig. 72).

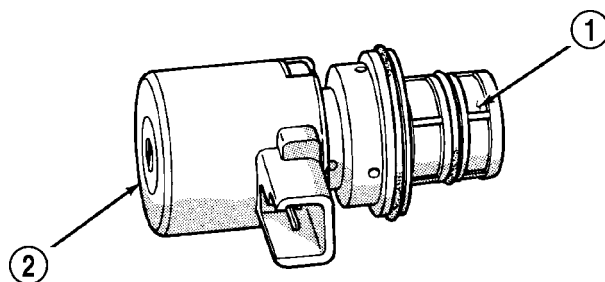
### GOVERNOR PRESSURE SENSOR

The governor pressure sensor measures output pressure of the governor pressure solenoid valve (Fig. 73).

### GOVERNOR BODY AND TRANSFER PLATE

The transfer plate is designed to supply transmission line pressure to the governor pressure solenoid valve and to return governor pressure.

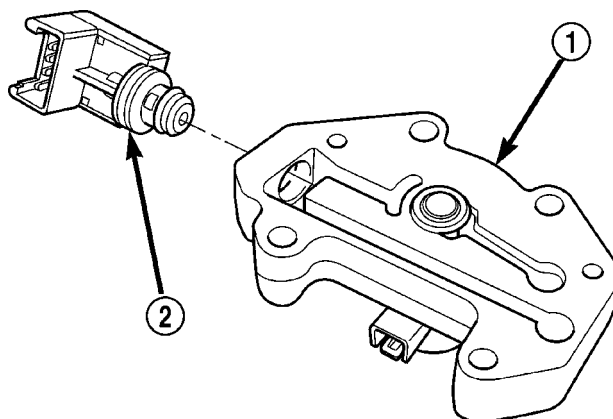
The governor pressure solenoid valve is mounted in the governor body. The body is bolted to the lower side of the transfer plate (Fig. 73).



J9321-408A

**Fig. 72 Governor Pressure Solenoid Valve**

- 1 - SOLENOID FILTER  
2 - GOVERNOR PRESSURE SOLENOID



80c072af

**Fig. 73 Governor Pressure Sensor**

- 1 - GOVERNOR BODY  
2 - GOVERNOR PRESSURE SENSOR/TRANSMISSION FLUID TEMPERATURE THERMISTOR

### GOVERNOR PRESSURE CURVES

There are four governor pressure curves programmed into the transmission pressure control module. The different curves allow the control module to adjust governor pressure for varying conditions. One curve is used for operation when fluid temperature is at, or below,  $-1^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $30^{\circ}\text{F}$ ). A second curve is used when fluid temperature is at, or above,  $10^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $50^{\circ}\text{F}$ ) during normal city or highway driving. A third curve is used during wide-open throttle operation. The fourth curve is used when driving with the transfer case in low range.

### OPERATION

Compensation is required for performance variations of two of the input devices. Though the slope of the transfer functions is tightly controlled, offset may vary due to various environmental factors or manufacturing tolerances.

The pressure transducer is affected by barometric pressure as well as temperature. Calibration of the zero pressure offset is required to compensate for shifting output due to these factors.

## ELECTRONIC GOVERNOR (Continued)

Normal calibration will be performed when sump temperature is above 50 degrees F, or in the absence of sump temperature data, after the first 10 minutes of vehicle operation. Calibration of the pressure transducer offset occurs each time the output shaft speed falls below 200 RPM. Calibration shall be repeated each 3 seconds the output shaft speed is below 200 RPM. A 0.5 second pulse of 95% duty cycle is applied to the governor pressure solenoid valve and the transducer output is read during this pulse. Averaging of the transducer signal is necessary to reject electrical noise.

Under cold conditions (below 50 degrees F sump), the governor pressure solenoid valve response may be too slow to guarantee 0 psi during the 0.5 second calibration pulse. Calibration pulses are continued during this period, however the transducer output values are discarded. Transducer offset must be read at key-on, under conditions which promote a stable reading. This value is retained and becomes the offset during the "cold" period of operation.

**GOVERNOR PRESSURE SOLENOID VALVE**

The inlet side of the solenoid valve is exposed to normal transmission line pressure. The outlet side of the valve leads to the valve body governor circuit.

The solenoid valve regulates line pressure to produce governor pressure. The average current supplied to the solenoid controls governor pressure. One amp current produces zero kPa/psi governor pressure. Zero amps sets the maximum governor pressure.

The powertrain control module (PCM) turns on the trans control relay which supplies electrical power to the solenoid valve. Operating voltage is 12 volts (DC). The PCM controls the ground side of the solenoid using the governor pressure solenoid control circuit.

**GOVERNOR PRESSURE SENSOR**

The sensor output signal provides the necessary feedback to the PCM. This feedback is needed to adequately control governor pressure.

**GOVERNOR BODY AND TRANSFER PLATE**

The transfer plate channels line pressure to the solenoid valve through the governor body. It also channels governor pressure from the solenoid valve to the governor circuit. It is the solenoid valve that develops the necessary governor pressure.

**GOVERNOR PRESSURE CURVES****LOW TRANSMISSION FLUID TEMPERATURE**

When the transmission fluid is cold the conventional governor can delay shifts, resulting in higher

than normal shift speeds and harsh shifts. The electronically controlled low temperature governor pressure curve is higher than normal to make the transmission shift at normal speeds and sooner. The PCM uses a temperature sensor in the transmission oil sump to determine when low temperature governor pressure is needed.

**NORMAL OPERATION**

Normal operation is refined through the increased computing power of the PCM and through access to data on engine operating conditions provided by the PCM that were not available with the previous stand-alone electronic module. This facilitated the development of a load adaptive shift strategy - the ability to alter the shift schedule in response to vehicle load condition. One manifestation of this capability is grade "hunting" prevention - the ability of the transmission logic to delay an upshift on a grade if the engine does not have sufficient power to maintain speed in the higher gear. The 3-2 downshift and the potential for hunting between gears occurs with a heavily loaded vehicle or on steep grades. When hunting occurs, it is very objectionable because shifts are frequent and accompanied by large changes in noise and acceleration.

**WIDE OPEN THROTTLE OPERATION**

In wide-open throttle (WOT) mode, adaptive memory in the PCM assures that up-shifts occur at the preprogrammed optimum speed. WOT operation is determined from the throttle position sensor, which is also a part of the emission control system. The initial setting for the WOT upshift is below the optimum engine speed. As WOT shifts are repeated, the PCM learns the time required to complete the shifts by comparing the engine speed when the shifts occur to the optimum speed. After each shift, the PCM adjusts the shift point until the optimum speed is reached. The PCM also considers vehicle loading, grade and engine performance changes due to high altitude in determining when to make WOT shifts. It does this by measuring vehicle and engine acceleration and then factoring in the shift time.

**TRANSFER CASE LOW RANGE OPERATION**

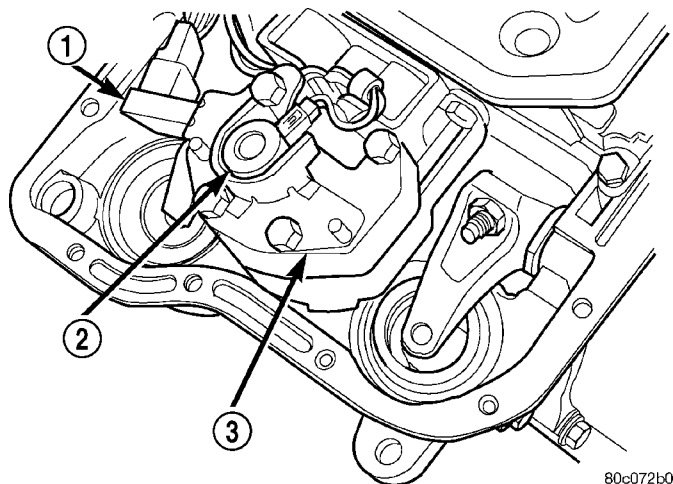
On four-wheel drive vehicles operating in low range, the engine can accelerate to its peak more rapidly than in Normal range, resulting in delayed shifts and undesirable engine "flare." The low range governor pressure curve is also higher than normal to initiate upshifts sooner. The PCM compares electronic vehicle speed signal used by the speedometer to the transmission output shaft speed signal to determine when the transfer case is in low range.



## ELECTRONIC GOVERNOR (Continued)

**REMOVAL**

- (1) Hoist and support vehicle on safety stands.
- (2) Remove transmission fluid pan and filter.
- (3) Disengage wire connectors from pressure sensor and solenoid (Fig. 74).

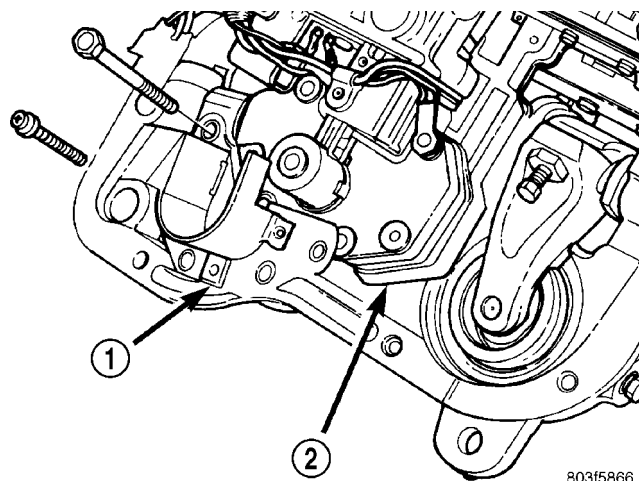


80c072b0

**Fig. 74 Governor Solenoid And Pressure Sensor**

- 1 - PRESSURE SENSOR
- 2 - PRESSURE SOLENOID
- 3 - GOVERNOR

- (4) Remove screws holding pressure solenoid retainer to governor body.
- (5) Separate solenoid retainer from governor (Fig. 75).

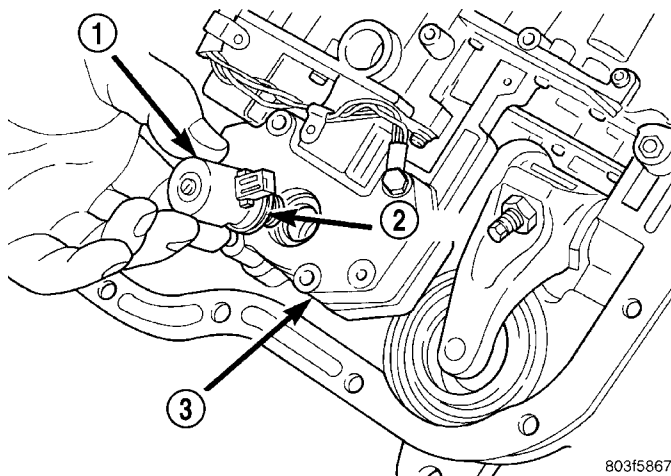


903f5866

**Fig. 75 Pressure Solenoid Retainer**

- 1 - PRESSURE SOLENOID RETAINER
- 2 - GOVERNOR

- (6) Pull solenoid from governor body (Fig. 76).
- (7) Pull pressure sensor from governor body.
- (8) Remove bolts holding governor body to valve body.

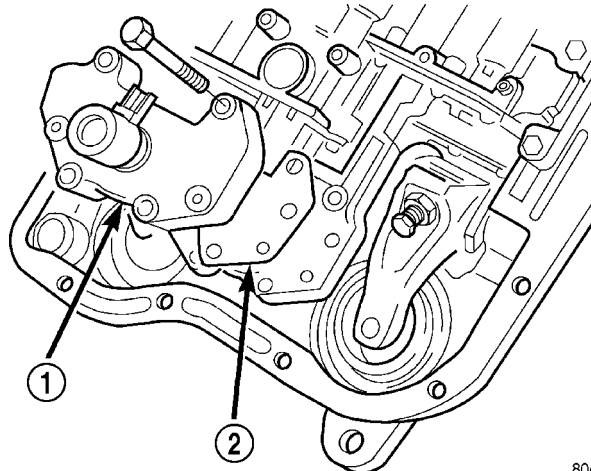


803f5867

**Fig. 76 Pressure Solenoid and O-ring**

- 1 - PRESSURE SOLENOID
- 2 - O-RING
- 3 - GOVERNOR

- (9) Separate governor body from valve body (Fig. 77).
- (10) Remove governor body gasket.



80c072b1

**Fig. 77 Governor Body and Gasket**

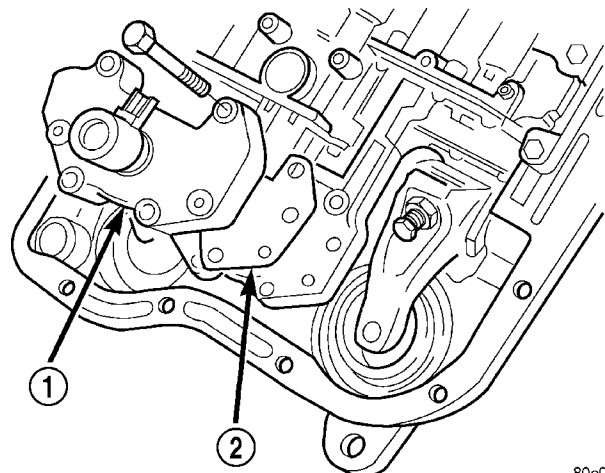
- 1 - GOVERNOR BODY
- 2 - GASKET

## ELECTRONIC GOVERNOR (Continued)

**INSTALLATION**

Before installing the pressure sensor and solenoid in the governor body, replace o-ring seals, clean the gasket surfaces and replace gasket.

- (1) Place gasket in position on back of governor body (Fig. 78).
- (2) Place governor body in position on valve body.
- (3) Install bolts to hold governor body to valve body.

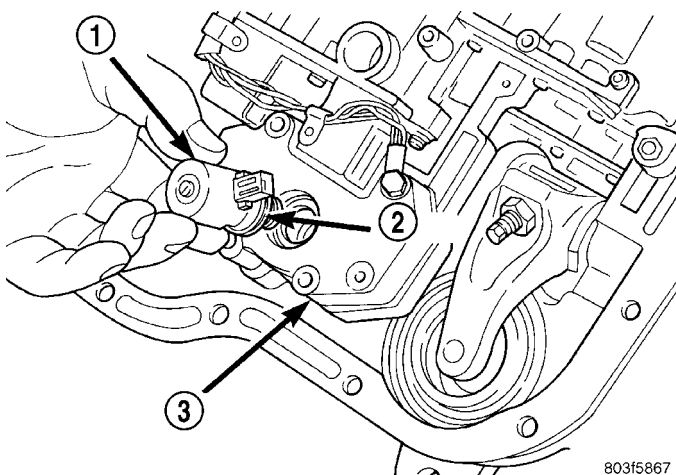


80c072b1

**Fig. 78 Governor Body and Gasket**

- 1 - GOVERNOR BODY
- 2 - GASKET

- (4) Lubricate o-ring on pressure sensor with transmission fluid.
- (5) Align pressure sensor to bore in governor body.
- (6) Push pressure sensor into governor body.
- (7) Lubricate o-ring, on pressure solenoid, with transmission fluid.
- (8) Align pressure solenoid to bore in governor body (Fig. 79).
- (9) Push solenoid into governor body.



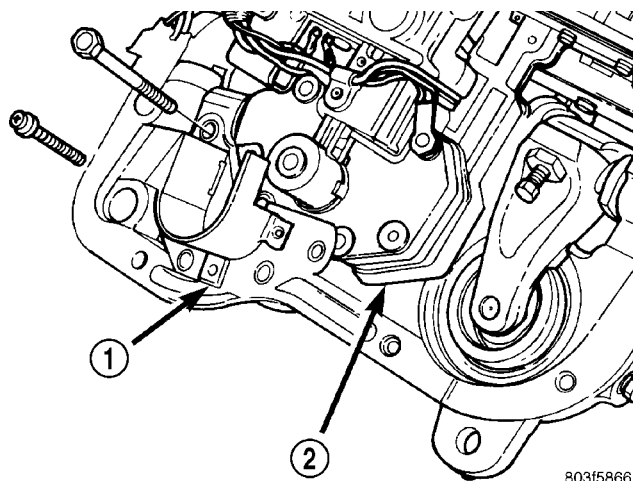
803f5867

**Fig. 79 Pressure Solenoid and O-ring**

- 1 - PRESSURE SOLENOID
- 2 - O-RING
- 3 - GOVERNOR

- (10) Place solenoid retainer in position on governor (Fig. 80).

- (11) Install screws to hold pressure solenoid retainer to governor body.



803f5866

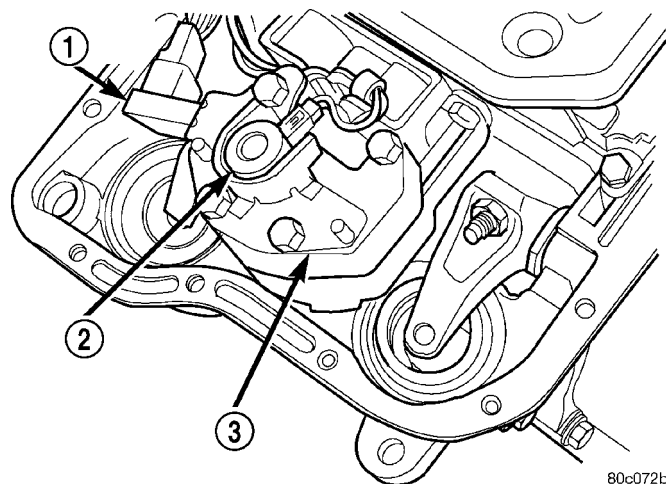
**Fig. 80 Pressure Solenoid Retainer**

- 1 - PRESSURE SOLENOID RETAINER
- 2 - GOVERNOR

- (12) Engage wire connectors into pressure sensor and solenoid (Fig. 81).

- (13) Install transmission fluid pan and (new) filter.

- (14) Lower vehicle and road test to verify repair.



80c072b0

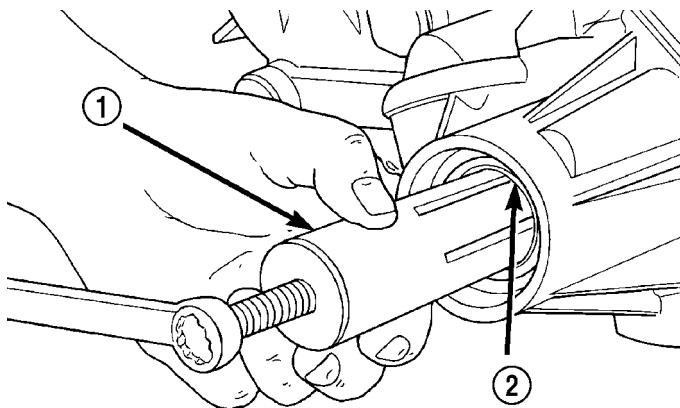
**Fig. 81 Governor Solenoid And Pressure Sensor**

- 1 - PRESSURE SENSOR
- 2 - PRESSURE SOLENOID
- 3 - GOVERNOR

## EXTENSION HOUSING BUSHING

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove extension housing yoke seal.
- (2) Insert Remover 6957 into the extension housing. Tighten tool to bushing and remove bushing (Fig. 82).



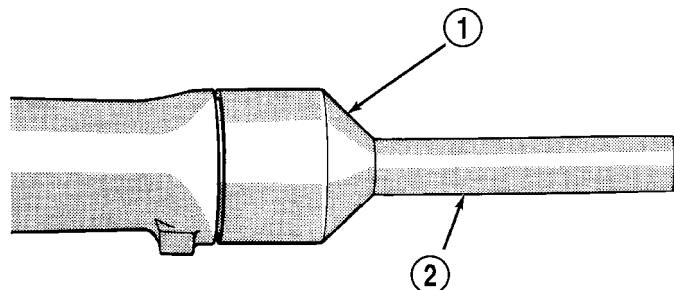
80a11095

**Fig. 82 Bushing Removal - Typical**

- 1 - REMOVER 6957
- 2 - EXTENSION HOUSING BUSHING

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Align bushing oil hole with oil slot in extension housing.
- (2) Tap bushing into place with Installer 6951 and Handle C-4171.
- (3) Install new oil seal in housing using Seal Installer C-3995-A (Fig. 83).



J9521-58

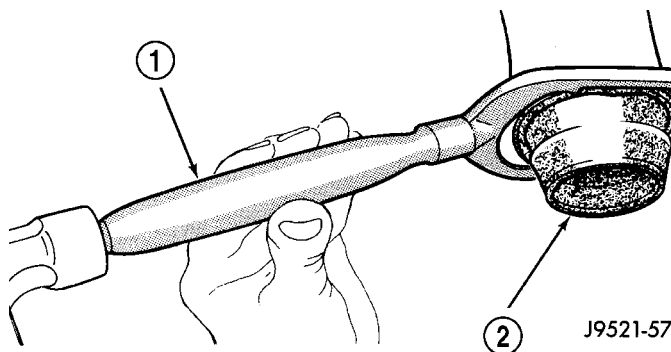
**Fig. 83 Transmission Extension Housing Seal Installation**

- 1 - SPECIAL TOOL C-3995-A OR C-3972-A
- 2 - SPECIAL TOOL C-4471

## EXTENSION HOUSING SEAL

### REMOVAL

- (1) Raise vehicle.
- (2) Mark propeller shaft and axle yoke for alignment reference.
- (3) Disconnect and remove propeller shaft.
- (4) Remove old seal with Seal Remover C-3985-B (Fig. 84) from overdrive housing.



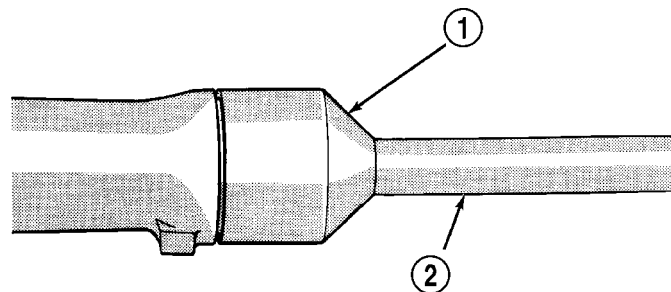
J9521-57

**Fig. 84 Removing Overdrive Housing Yoke Seal**

- 1 - SPECIAL TOOL C-3985-B
- 2 - SEAL

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Place seal in position on overdrive housing.
- (2) Drive seal into overdrive housing with Seal Installer C-3995-A (Fig. 85).
- (3) Carefully guide propeller shaft slip yoke into housing and onto output shaft splines. Align marks made at removal and connect propeller shaft to rear axle pinion yoke.



J9521-58

**Fig. 85 Installing Transmission Housing Seal**

- 1 - SPECIAL TOOL C-3995-A OR C-3972-A
- 2 - SPECIAL TOOL C-4471



## FLUID AND FILTER

### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING

#### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - EFFECTS OF INCORRECT FLUID LEVEL

A low fluid level allows the pump to take in air along with the fluid. Air in the fluid will cause fluid pressures to be low and develop slower than normal. If the transmission is overfilled, the gears churn the fluid into foam. This aerates the fluid and causing the same conditions occurring with a low level. In either case, air bubbles cause fluid overheating, oxidation and varnish buildup which interferes with valve and clutch operation. Foaming also causes fluid expansion which can result in fluid overflow from the transmission vent or fill tube. Fluid overflow can easily be mistaken for a leak if inspection is not careful.

#### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - CAUSES OF BURNT FLUID

Burnt, discolored fluid is a result of overheating which has two primary causes.

(1) A result of restricted fluid flow through the main and/or auxiliary cooler. This condition is usually the result of a faulty or improperly installed drainback valve, a damaged main cooler, or severe restrictions in the coolers and lines caused by debris or kinked lines.

(2) Heavy duty operation with a vehicle not properly equipped for this type of operation. Trailer towing or similar high load operation will overheat the transmission fluid if the vehicle is improperly equipped. Such vehicles should have an auxiliary transmission fluid cooler, a heavy duty cooling system, and the engine/axle ratio combination needed to handle heavy loads.

#### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - FLUID CONTAMINATION

Transmission fluid contamination is generally a result of:

- adding incorrect fluid
- failure to clean dipstick and fill tube when checking level
- engine coolant entering the fluid
- internal failure that generates debris
- overheat that generates sludge (fluid breakdown)
- failure to replace contaminated converter after repair

The use of non-recommended fluids can result in transmission failure. The usual results are erratic shifts, slippage, abnormal wear and eventual failure

due to fluid breakdown and sludge formation. Avoid this condition by using recommended fluids only.

The dipstick cap and fill tube should be wiped clean before checking fluid level. Dirt, grease and other foreign material on the cap and tube could fall into the tube if not removed beforehand. Take the time to wipe the cap and tube clean before withdrawing the dipstick.

Engine coolant in the transmission fluid is generally caused by a cooler malfunction. The only remedy is to replace the radiator as the cooler in the radiator is not a serviceable part. If coolant has circulated through the transmission, an overhaul is necessary.

The torque converter should be replaced whenever a failure generates sludge and debris. This is necessary because normal converter flushing procedures will not remove all contaminants.

### STANDARD PROCEDURE

#### STANDARD PROCEDURE - FLUID LEVEL CHECK

Low fluid level can cause a variety of conditions because it allows the pump to take in air along with the fluid. As in any hydraulic system, air bubbles make the fluid spongy, therefore, pressures will be low and build up slowly.

Improper filling can also raise the fluid level too high. When the transmission has too much fluid, the geartrain churns up foam and cause the same conditions which occur with a low fluid level.

In either case, air bubbles can cause overheating and/or fluid oxidation, and varnishing. This can interfere with normal valve, clutch, and accumulator operation. Foaming can also result in fluid escaping from the transmission vent where it may be mistaken for a leak.

After the fluid has been checked, seat the dipstick fully to seal out water and dirt.

The transmission has a dipstick to check oil level. It is located on the right side of the engine. Be sure to wipe all dirt from dipstick handle before removing.

Fluid level is checked with the engine running at curb idle speed, the transmission in NEUTRAL and the transmission fluid at normal operating temperature. **The engine should be running at idle speed for at least one minute, with the vehicle on level ground.**

The transmission fluid level can be checked two ways.

#### PROCEDURE ONE

(1) Transmission fluid must be at normal operating temperature for accurate fluid level check. Drive

## FLUID AND FILTER (Continued)

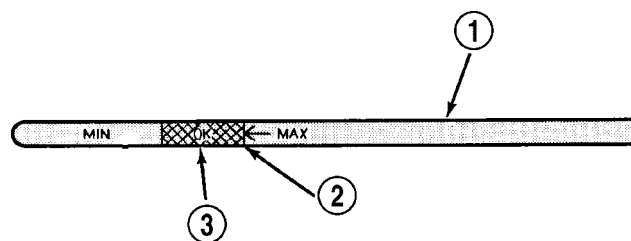
vehicle if necessary to bring fluid temperature up to normal hot operating temperature of 82°C (180°F).

- (2) Position vehicle on level surface.
- (3) Start and run engine at curb idle speed.
- (4) Apply parking brakes.
- (5) Shift transmission momentarily into all gear ranges. Then shift transmission back to NEUTRAL.
- (6) Clean top of filler tube and dipstick to keep dirt from entering tube.
- (7) Remove dipstick (Fig. 86) and check fluid level as follows:

- (a) Correct acceptable level is in crosshatch area.
- (b) Correct maximum level is to MAX arrow mark.
- (c) Incorrect level is at or below MIN line.
- (d) If fluid is low, add only enough Mopar® ATF +4, Automatic Transmission fluid, to restore correct level. Do not overfill.

## PROCEDURE TWO

- (1) Start engine and apply parking brake.
- (2) Shift the transmission into DRIVE for approximately 2 seconds.
- (3) Shift the transmission into REVERSE for approximately 2 seconds.
- (4) Shift the transmission into PARK.
- (5) Hook up DRB® scan tool and select engine.



804d8eee

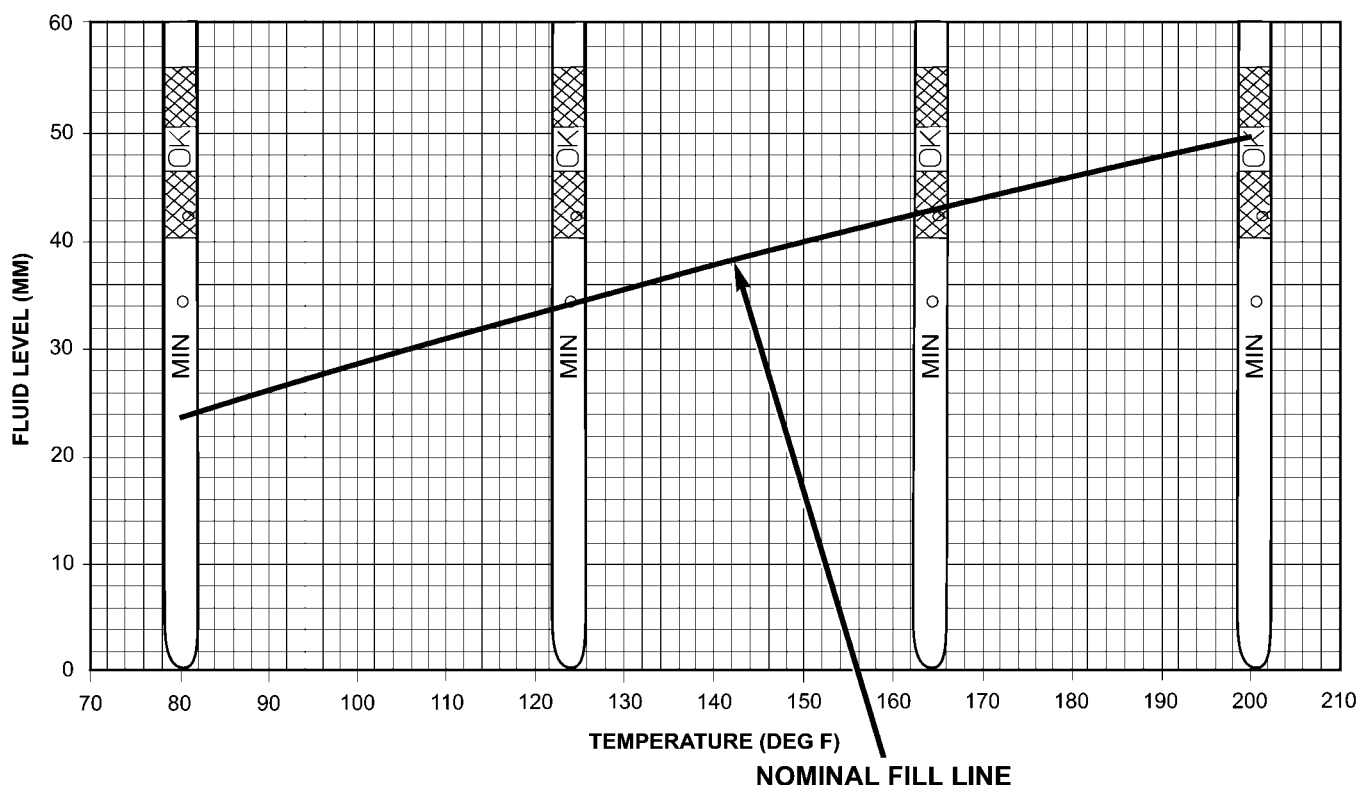
**Fig. 86 Dipstick Fluid Level Marks - Typical**

- 1 - DIPSTICK
- 2 - MAXIMUM CORRECT FLUID LEVEL
- 3 - ACCEPTABLE FLUID LEVEL

- (6) Select sensors.
- (7) Read the transmission temperature value.
- (8) Compare the fluid temperature value with the figure. (Fig. 87)
- (9) Adjust transmission fluid level shown on the dipstick according to the figure.

**NOTE:** After adding any fluid to the transmission, wait a minimum of 2 minutes for the oil to fully drain from the fill tube into the transmission before rechecking the fluid level.

- (10) Check transmission for leaks.



80a3bfba

**Fig. 87 42RE Fluid Fill Graph**

## FLUID AND FILTER (Continued)

## STANDARD PROCEDURE - FLUID AND FILTER REPLACEMENT

For proper service intervals (Refer to LUBRICATION & MAINTENANCE/MAINTENANCE SCHEDULES - DESCRIPTION). The service fluid fill after a filter change is approximately 3.8 liters (4.0 quarts).

## REMOVAL

- (1) Hoist and support vehicle on safety stands.
- (2) Place a large diameter shallow drain pan beneath the transmission pan.
- (3) Remove bolts holding front and sides of pan to transmission (Fig. 88).
- (4) Loosen bolts holding rear of pan to transmission.
- (5) Slowly separate front of pan and gasket away from transmission allowing the fluid to drain into drain pan.
- (6) Hold up pan and remove remaining bolt holding pan to transmission.
- (7) While holding pan level, lower pan and gasket away from transmission.
- (8) Pour remaining fluid in pan into drain pan.
- (9) Remove screws holding filter to valve body (Fig. 89).
- (10) Separate filter from valve body and pour fluid in filter into drain pan.
- (11) Dispose of used trans fluid and filter properly.

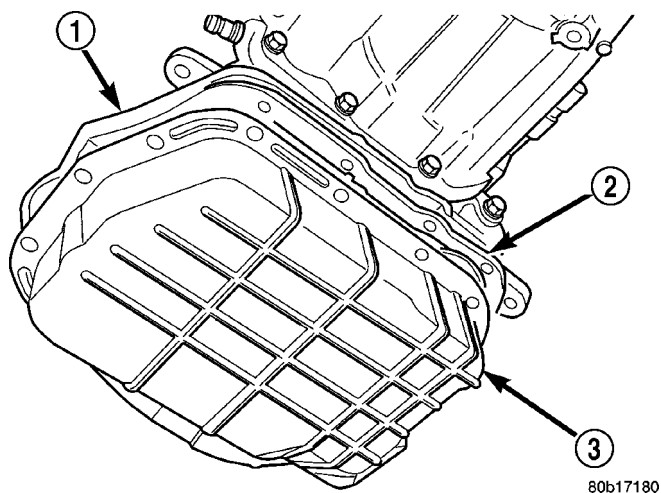
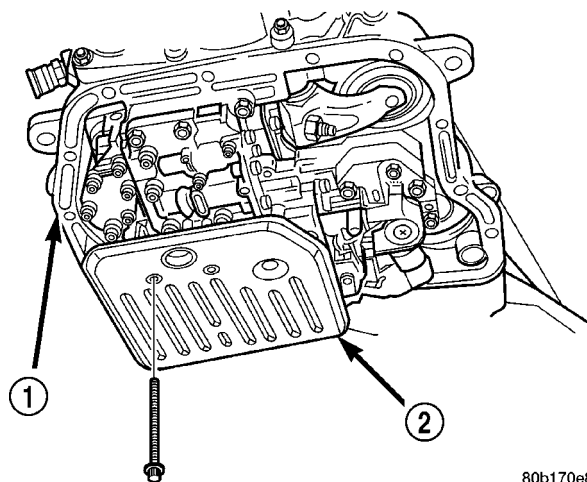


Fig. 88 Transmission Pan

- 1 - TRANSMISSION  
2 - GASKET  
3 - PAN

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Position a new transmission oil filter onto the valve body.
- (2) Install the screws to hold the filter to the valve body. Tighten the screws to 4 N·m (35 in.lbs.).
- (3) Clean the gasket surfaces of the transmission oil pan and transmission pan rail.



80b170e8

Fig. 89 Transmission Filter

- 1 - TRANSMISSION  
2 - FILTER

**NOTE:** The transmission pan oil gasket is reusable. Inspect the sealing surfaces of the gasket. If the sealing ribs on both surfaces appear to be in good condition, clean the gasket of any foreign material and reinstall.

- (4) Position the oil pan gasket onto the oil pan.
- (5) Position the oil pan and gasket onto the transmission and install several bolts to hold the pan and gasket to the transmission.
- (6) Install the remainder of the oil pan bolts. Tighten the bolts to 13.6 N·m (125 in.lbs.).
- (7) Lower vehicle and fill transmission. (Refer to 21 - TRANSMISSION/AUTOMATIC/FLUID - STANDARD PROCEDURE)

## STANDARD PROCEDURE - TRANSMISSION FILL

To avoid overfilling transmission after a fluid change or overhaul, perform the following procedure:

- (1) Remove dipstick and insert clean funnel in transmission fill tube.

- (2) Add following initial quantity of Mopar® ATF +4, Automatic Transmission Fluid, to transmission:

(a) If only fluid and filter were changed, add **3 pints (1-1/2 quarts)** of ATF +4 to transmission.

(b) If transmission was completely overhauled, or torque converter was replaced or drained, add **12 pints (6 quarts)** of ATF +4 to transmission.

- (3) Apply parking brakes.
- (4) Start and run engine at normal curb idle speed.
- (5) Apply service brakes, shift transmission through all gear ranges then back to NEUTRAL, set parking brake, and leave engine running at curb idle speed.

## FLUID AND FILTER (Continued)

(6) Remove funnel, insert dipstick and check fluid level. If level is low, **add fluid to bring level to MIN mark on dipstick**. Check to see if the oil level is equal on both sides of the dipstick. If one side is noticeably higher than the other, the dipstick has picked up some oil from the dipstick tube. Allow the oil to drain down the dipstick tube and re-check.

(7) Drive vehicle until transmission fluid is at normal operating temperature.

(8) With the engine running at curb idle speed, the gear selector in NEUTRAL, and the parking brake applied, check the transmission fluid level.

**CAUTION: Do not overfill transmission, fluid foaming and shifting problems can result.**

(9) Add fluid to bring level up to MAX arrow mark.

When fluid level is correct, shut engine off, release park brake, remove funnel, and install dipstick in fill tube.

## FRONT CLUTCH

## DESCRIPTION

The front clutch assembly (Fig. 90) is composed of the front clutch retainer, pressure plate, clutch plates, driving discs, piston, piston return spring, return spring retainer, and snap-rings. The front clutch is the forward-most component in the transmission geartrain and is directly behind the oil pump and is considered a driving component.

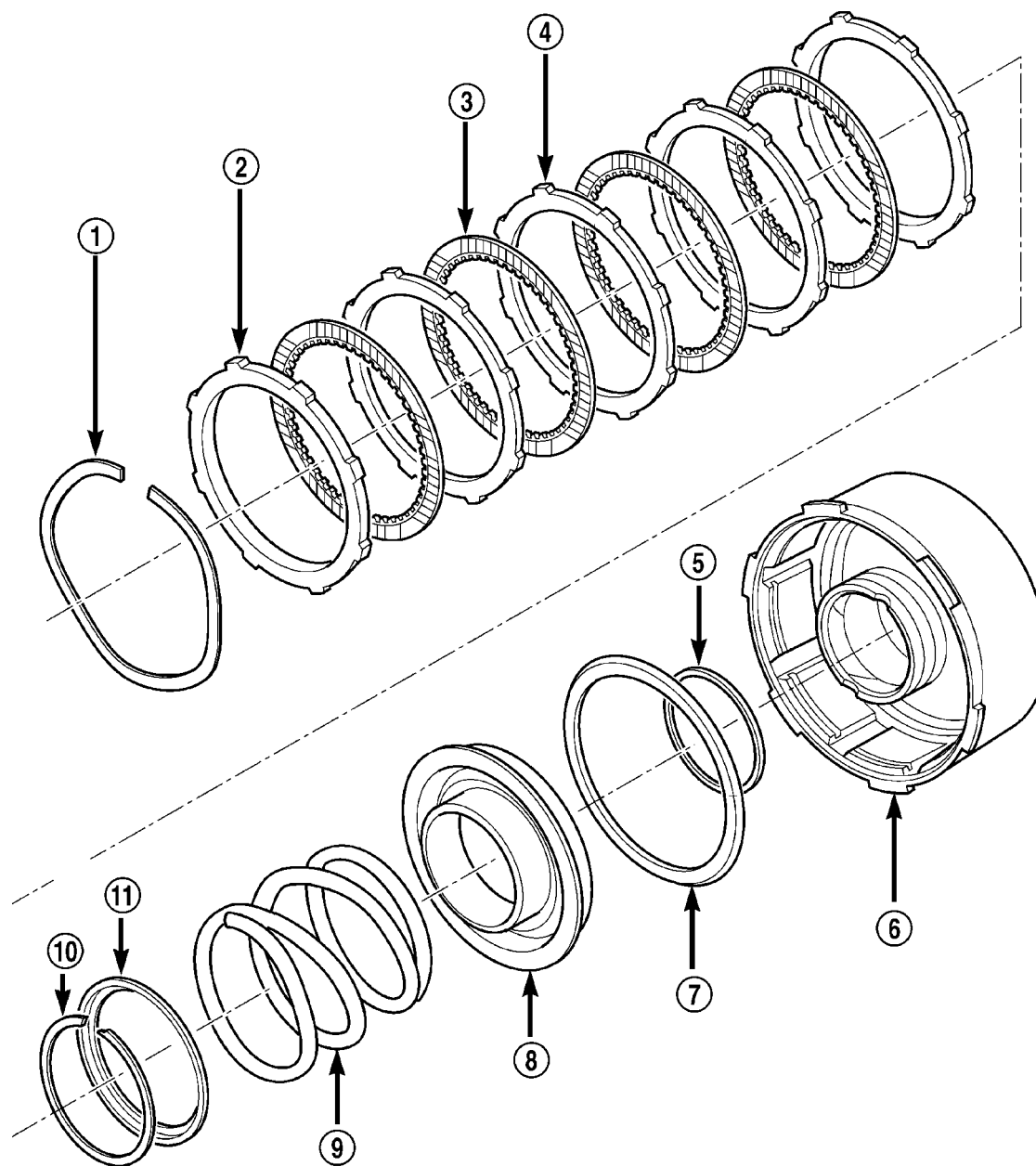
**NOTE: The number of discs and plates may vary with each engine and vehicle combination.**

## OPERATION

To apply the clutch, pressure is applied between the clutch retainer and piston. The fluid pressure is provided by the oil pump, transferred through the control valves and passageways, and enters the clutch through the hub of the reaction shaft support. With pressure applied between the clutch retainer and piston, the piston moves away from the clutch retainer and compresses the clutch pack. This action applies the clutch pack, allowing torque to flow through the input shaft into the driving discs, and into the clutch plates and pressure plate that are lugged to the clutch retainer. The waved snap-ring is used to cushion the application of the clutch pack.

When pressure is released from the piston, the spring returns the piston to its fully released position and disengages the clutch. The release spring also helps to cushion the application of the clutch assembly. When the clutch is in the process of being released by the release spring, fluid flows through a vent and one-way ball-check-valve located in the clutch retainer. The check-valve is needed to eliminate the possibility of plate drag caused by centrifugal force acting on the residual fluid trapped in the clutch piston retainer.

## FRONT CLUTCH (Continued)



80bdbd40

**Fig. 90 Front Clutch Components**

- 1 - SNAP-RING (WAVE)
- 2 - REACTION PLATE
- 3 - CLUTCH DISC
- 4 - CLUTCH PLATE
- 5 - SEAL
- 6 - CLUTCH RETAINER

- 7 - SEAL
- 8 - PISTON
- 9 - SPRING
- 10 - SNAP-RING
- 11 - SPRING RETAINER



## FRONT CLUTCH (Continued)

## DISASSEMBLY

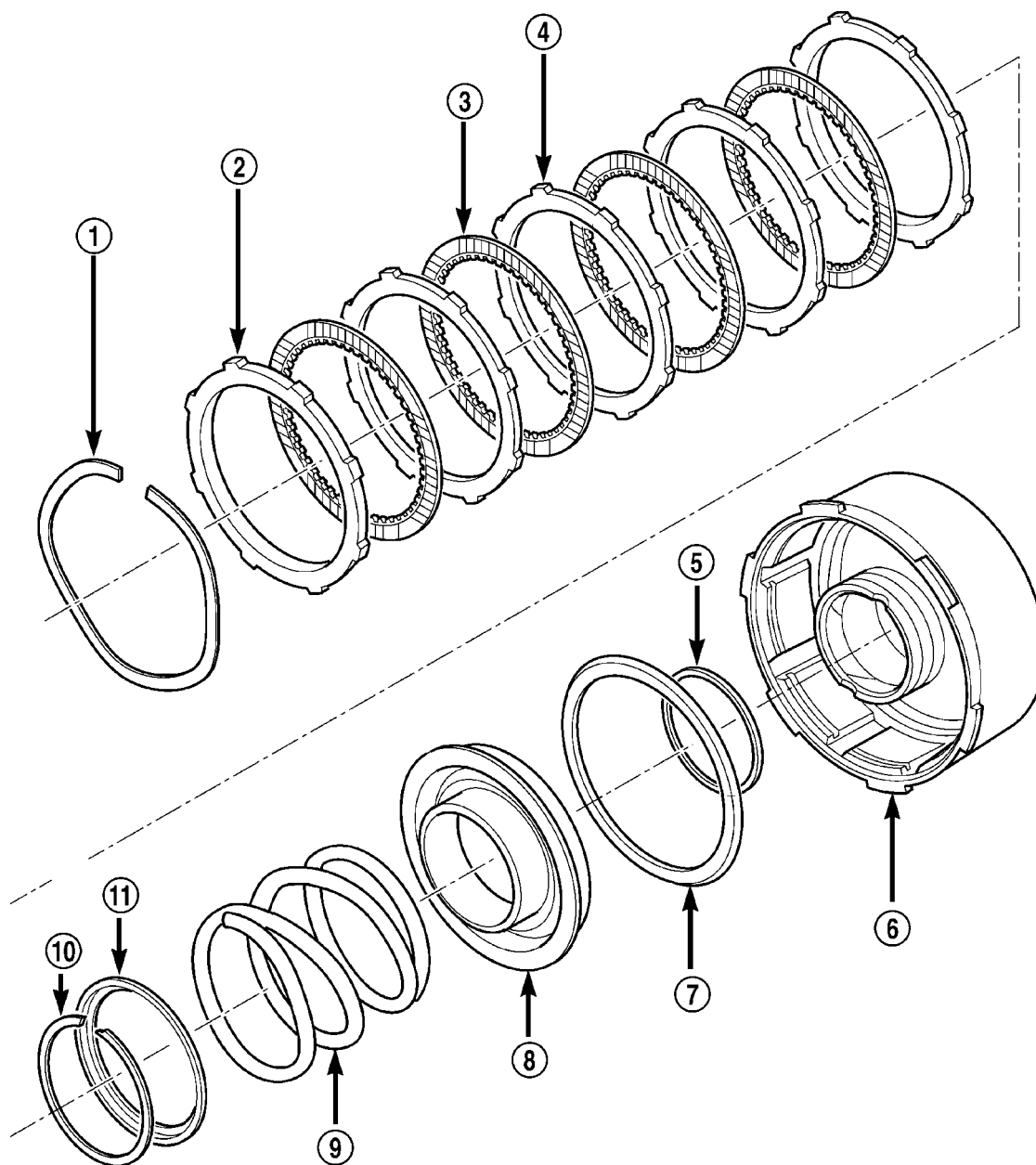
(1) Remove waved snap-ring and remove pressure plate, clutch plates and clutch discs (Fig. 91).

(2) Compress clutch piston spring with Compressor Tool C-3575-A (Fig. 92). Be sure legs of tool are seated squarely on spring retainer before compressing spring.

(3) Remove retainer snap-ring and remove compressor tool.

(4) Remove spring retainer and clutch spring. Note position of retainer on spring for assembly reference.

(5) Remove clutch piston from clutch retainer. Remove piston by rotating it up and out of retainer.



80bdbd40

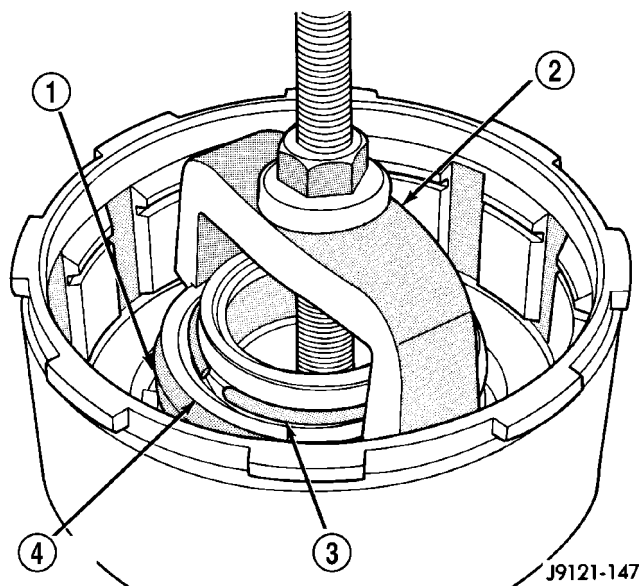
**Fig. 91 42RE Front Clutch Components**

- 1 - SNAP-RING (WAVE)
- 2 - REACTION PLATE
- 3 - CLUTCH DISC
- 4 - CLUTCH PLATE
- 5 - SEAL
- 6 - CLUTCH RETAINER

- 7 - SEAL
- 8 - PISTON
- 9 - SPRING
- 10 - SNAP-RING
- 11 - SPRING RETAINER

## FRONT CLUTCH (Continued)

(6) Remove seals from clutch retainer piston bore and clutch retainer hub. Discard both seals as they are not reusable.



**Fig. 92 Compressing Front Clutch Piston Spring**

- 1 - FRONT CLUTCH SPRING
- 2 - COMPRESSOR TOOL C-3575-A
- 3 - RETAINER SNAP-RING
- 4 - SPRING RETAINER

## INSPECTION

Inspect the front clutch components. Replace the clutch discs if warped, worn, scored, burned or charred, or if the facing is flaking off. Replace the steel plates if heavily scored, warped, or broken. Be sure the driving lugs on the plates are in good condition. The lugs must not be bent, cracked or damaged in any way.

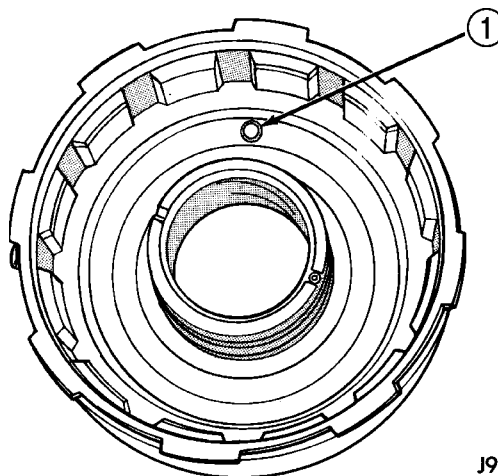
Replace the clutch spring and spring retainer if either is distorted, warped or broken.

Check the lug grooves in the clutch retainer. The steel plates should slide freely in the slots. Replace the retainer if the grooves are worn or damaged.

Check action of the check ball in the retainer (Fig. 93). The ball must move freely and not stick.

**NOTE:** Inspect the clutch retainer bushings carefully (Fig. 94). The retainer bushings are **NOT** serviceable. It will be necessary to replace the retainer if either bushing is scored, or worn.

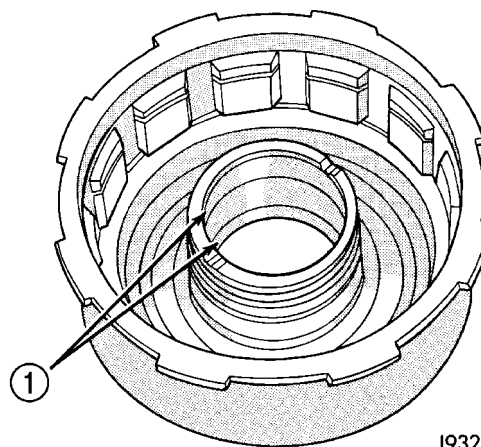
Inspect the piston and retainer seal surfaces for nicks or scratches. Minor scratches can be removed with crocus cloth. However, replace the piston and/or retainer if the seal surfaces are seriously scored.



J9121-368

**Fig. 93 Front Clutch Piston Retainer Check Ball Location**

- 1 - RETAINER CHECK BALL



J9321-223

**Fig. 94 Retainer Bushing Location/Inspection**

- 1 - FRONT CLUTCH RETAINER BUSHINGS (NON-SERVICEABLE)

## ASSEMBLY

**NOTE:** The 42RE transmission uses four plates and discs for the front clutch.

(1) Soak clutch discs in transmission fluid while assembling other clutch parts.

(2) Install new seals in the clutch retainer lower groove and on outer diameter of the retainer hub. Be sure lip of each seal faces interior of clutch retainer.

(3) Lubricate lips of the retainer seals with liberal quantity of Mopar® Door Ease. Then lubricate retainer hub, bore and piston with light coat of transmission fluid.

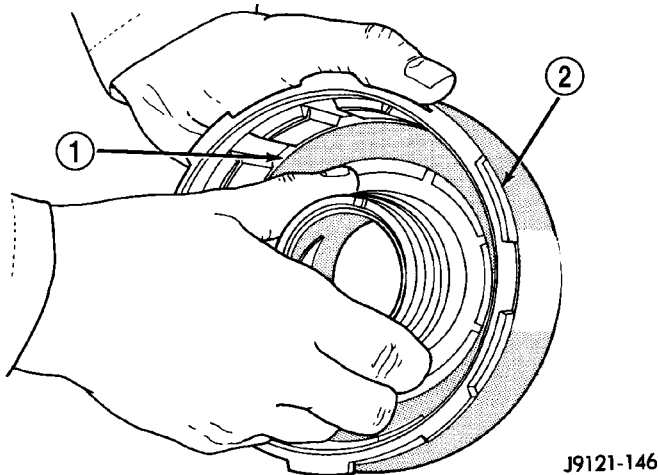
(4) Install clutch piston in retainer (Fig. 95). Use twisting motion to seat piston in bottom of retainer.



## FRONT CLUTCH (Continued)

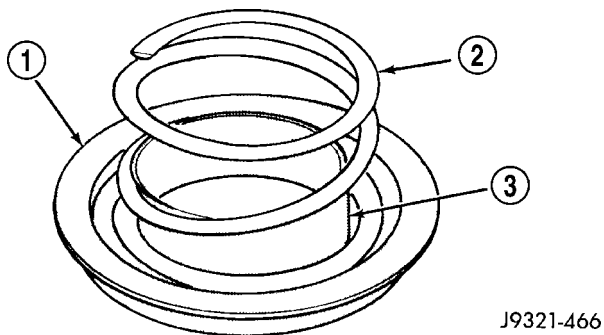
**CAUTION:** Never push the clutch piston straight in. This will fold the seals over causing leakage and clutch slip.

- (5) Position spring in clutch piston (Fig. 96).
- (6) Position spring retainer on top of piston spring. Make sure retainer is properly installed (Fig. 91).



**Fig. 95 Front Clutch Piston Installation**

- 1 - CLUTCH PISTON
- 2 - FRONT CLUTCH RETAINER



**Fig. 96 Clutch Piston Spring Installation**

- 1 - RETAINER
- 2 - CLUTCH SPRING
- 3 - PISTON

(7) Compress piston spring and retainer with Compressor Tool C-3575-A (Fig. 92). Then install new snap-ring to secure spring retainer and spring.

(8) Install clutch plates and discs (Fig. 91). Install steel plate then disc until all plates and discs are installed. The front clutch uses 4 clutch discs and plates in a 42RE transmission.

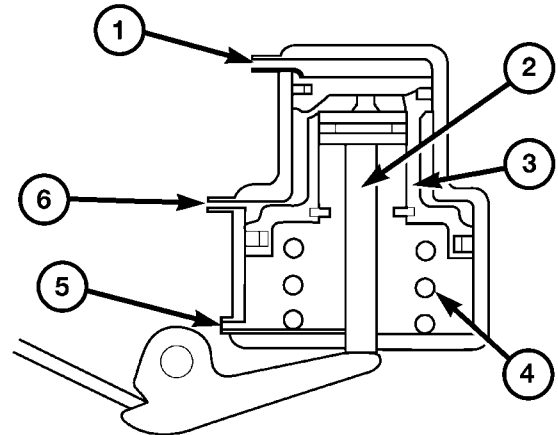
(9) Install pressure plate and waved snap-ring (Fig. 91).

Clearance should be 1.70 to 3.40 mm (0.067 to 0.134 in.). If clearance is incorrect, clutch discs, plates, pressure plates and snap-ring may have to be changed.

## FRONT SERVO

## DESCRIPTION

The kickdown servo (Fig. 97) consists of a two-land piston with an inner piston, a piston rod and guide, and a return spring. The dual-land piston uses seal rings on its outer diameters and an O-ring for the inner piston.



**Fig. 97 Front Servo**

- 1 - VENT
- 2 - PISTON ROD
- 3 - PISTON
- 4 - SPRING
- 5 - RELEASE PRESSURE
- 6 - APPLY PRESSURE

## OPERATION

The application of the piston is accomplished by applying pressure between the two lands of the piston. The pressure acts against the larger lower land to push the piston downward, allowing the piston rod to extend through its guide against the apply lever. Release of the servo at the 2-3 upshift is accomplished by a combination of spring and line pressure, acting on the bottom of the larger land of the piston. The small piston is used to cushion the application of the band by bleeding oil through a small orifice in the larger piston. The release timing of the kickdown servo is very important to obtain a smooth but firm shift. The release has to be very quick, just as the front clutch application is taking place. Otherwise, engine runaway or a shift hesitation will occur. To accomplish this, the band retains its holding capacity until the front clutch is applied, giving a small amount of overlap between them.

## FRONT SERVO (Continued)

## DISASSEMBLY

- (1) Remove seal ring from rod guide (Fig. 98).
- (2) Remove small snap-ring from servo piston rod. Then remove piston rod, spring and washer from piston.
- (3) Remove and discard servo component o-ring and seal rings.

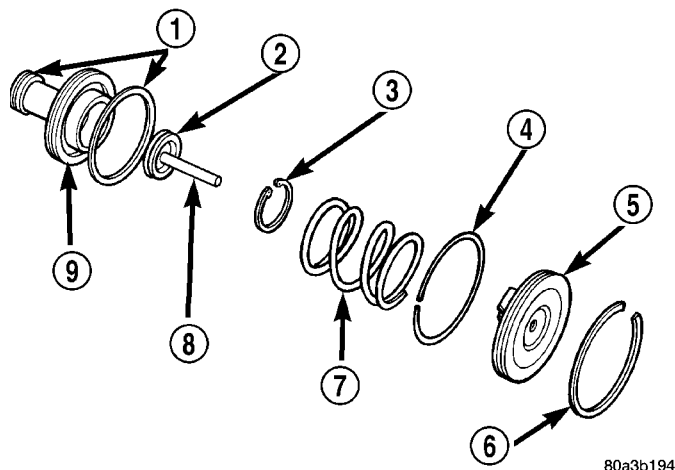


Fig. 98 Front Servo

- 1 - PISTON RINGS
- 2 - O-RING
- 3 - SNAP-RING
- 4 - SEAL RING
- 5 - PISTON ROD GUIDE
- 6 - SNAP-RING
- 7 - SERVO SPRING
- 8 - PISTON ROD
- 9 - SERVO PISTON

## CLEANING

Clean the servo piston components (Fig. 99) with solvent and dry them with compressed air.

## INSPECTION

Inspect the servo components (Fig. 100). Replace the springs if collapsed, distorted or broken. Replace the guide, rod and piston if cracked, bent, or worn. Discard the servo snap-ring if distorted or warped.

Check the servo piston bore for wear. If the bore is severely scored, or damaged, it will be necessary to replace the case.

Replace any servo component if doubt exists about condition. Do not reuse suspect parts.

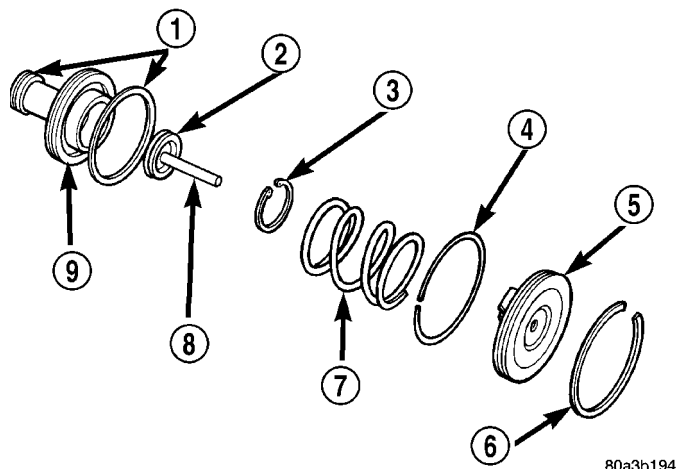


Fig. 99 Front Servo Piston

- 1 - PISTON RINGS
- 2 - O-RING
- 3 - SNAP-RING
- 4 - SEAL RING
- 5 - PISTON ROD GUIDE
- 6 - SNAP-RING
- 7 - SERVO SPRING
- 8 - PISTON ROD
- 9 - SERVO PISTON

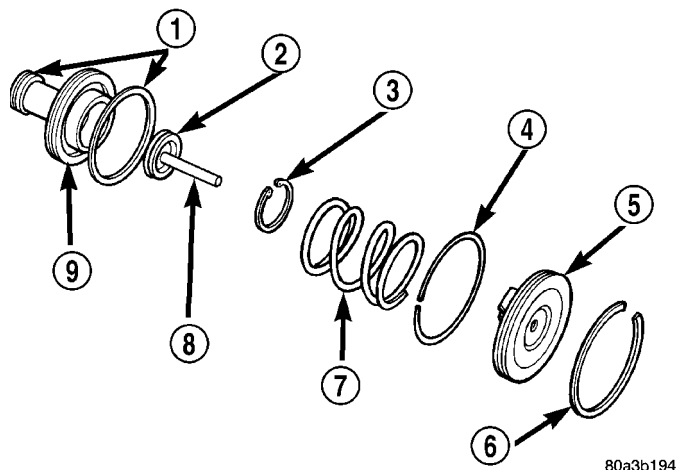


Fig. 100 Front Servo Piston

- 1 - PISTON RINGS
- 2 - O-RING
- 3 - SNAP-RING
- 4 - SEAL RING
- 5 - PISTON ROD GUIDE
- 6 - SNAP-RING
- 7 - SERVO SPRING
- 8 - PISTON ROD
- 9 - SERVO PISTON

## FRONT SERVO (Continued)

## ASSEMBLY

Clean and inspect front servo components.

- (1) Lubricate new o-ring and seal rings with petroleum jelly and install them on piston, guide and rod.
- (2) Install rod in piston. Install spring and washer on rod. Compress spring and install snap-ring (Fig. 101).

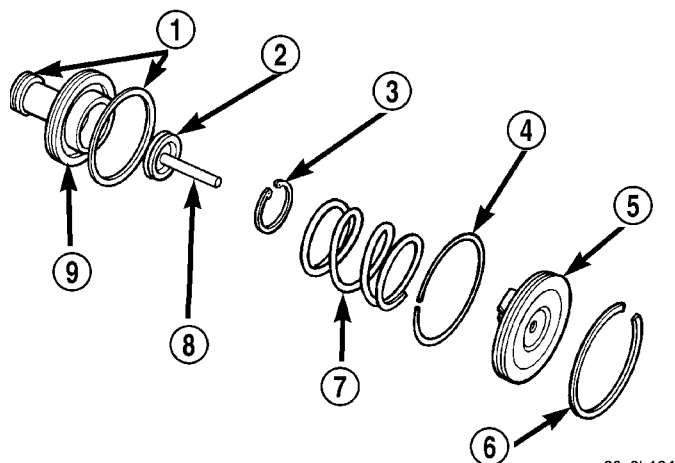


Fig. 101 Front Servo

80a3b194

- 1 - PISTON RINGS
- 2 - O-RING
- 3 - SNAP-RING
- 4 - SEAL RING
- 5 - PISTON ROD GUIDE
- 6 - SNAP-RING
- 7 - SERVO SPRING
- 8 - PISTON ROD
- 9 - SERVO PISTON

## GEARSHIFT CABLE

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - GEARSHIFT CABLE

(1) The floor shifter lever and gate positions should be in alignment with all transmission PARK, NEUTRAL, and gear detent positions.

(2) Engine starts must be possible with floor shift lever in PARK or NEUTRAL gate positions only. Engine starts must not be possible in any other gear position.

(3) With floor shift lever handle push-button not depressed and lever in:

(a) PARK position - Apply forward force on center of handle and remove pressure. Engine starts must be possible.

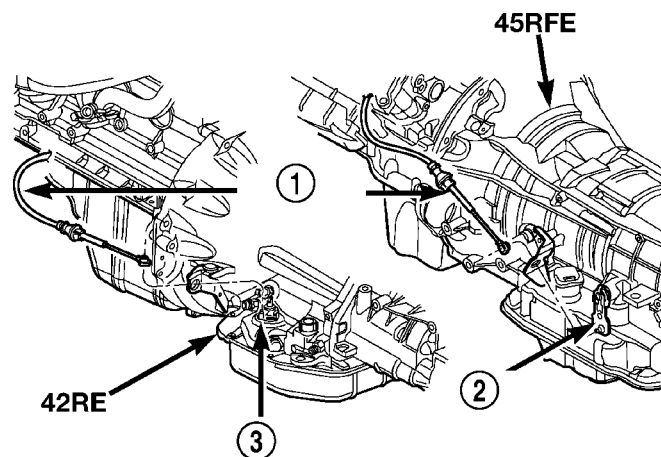
(b) PARK position - Apply rearward force on center of handle and remove pressure. Engine starts must be possible.

(c) NEUTRAL position - Normal position. Engine starts must be possible.

(d) NEUTRAL position - Engine running and brakes applied, apply forward force on center of shift handle. Transmission shall not be able to shift from NEUTRAL to REVERSE.

## REMOVAL

- (1) Shift transmission into PARK.
- (2) Raise vehicle.
- (3) Remove the shift cable eyelet from the transmission manual shift lever (Fig. 102).
- (4) Remove shift cable from the cable support bracket.

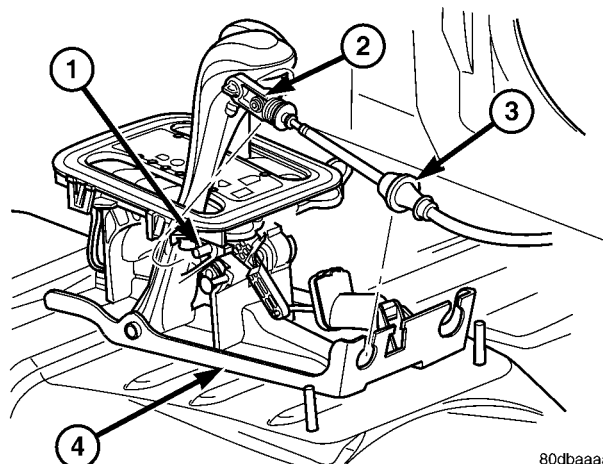


80ba79c4

Fig. 102 Remove Shift Cable From Transmission

- 1 - SHIFT CABLE
- 2 - MANUAL LEVER
- 3 - MANUAL LEVER

- (5) Lower vehicle.
- (6) Remove necessary console parts for access to shift lever assembly and shift cable. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/FLOOR CONSOLE - REMOVAL)
- (7) Disconnect cable at shift lever and shifter assembly bracket (Fig. 103).
- (8) Remove the nuts holding the shift cable seal plate to the floor pan (Fig. 104).
- (9) Pull cable through floor panel opening.

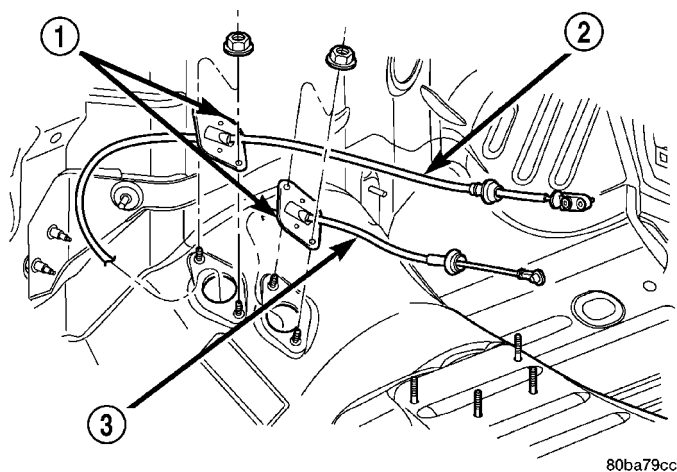


80dbaaaa

Fig. 103 Transmission Shift Cable at Shifter

- 1 - SHIFT LEVER PIN
- 2 - ADJUSTMENT SCREW
- 3 - SHIFT CABLE
- 4 - SHIFTER ASSEMBLY BRACKET

## GEARSHIFT CABLE (Continued)

**Fig. 104 Shift Cables at Floor Pan**

- 1 - SEAL PLATES
- 2 - TRANSMISSION SHIFT CABLE
- 3 - TRANSFER CASE SHIFT CABLE

(10) Remove shift cable from vehicle.

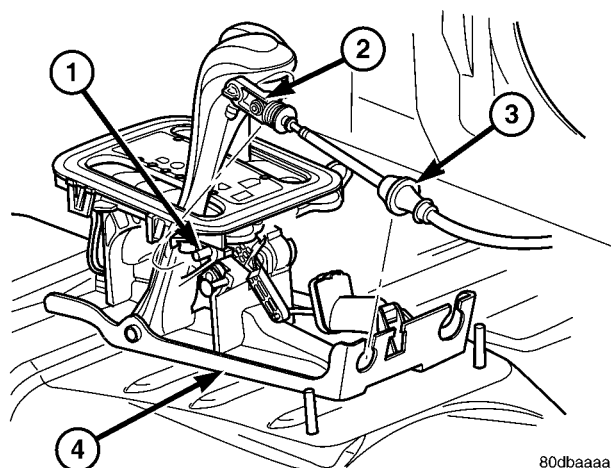
**INSTALLATION**

- (1) Route cable through hole in floor pan.
- (2) Install seal plate to studs in floor pan.
- (3) Install nuts to hold seal plate to floor pan. Tighten nuts to 7 N·m (65 in.lbs.).
- (4) Install the shift cable to the shifter assembly bracket. Push cable into the bracket until secure.
- (5) Place the floor shifter lever in PARK position.
- (6) Loosen the adjustment screw on the shift cable.
- (7) Snap the shift cable onto the shift lever pin.
- (8) Raise the vehicle.
- (9) Install the shift cable to the shift cable support bracket.
- (10) Shift the transmission into PARK. PARK is the rearmost detent position on the transmission manual shift lever.
- (11) Snap the shift cable onto the transmission manual shift lever.
- (12) Lower vehicle.
- (13) Verify that the shift lever is in the PARK position.
- (14) Tighten the adjustment screw to 7 N·m (65 in.lbs.).
- (15) Verify correct shifter operation.
- (16) Install any console parts removed for access to shift lever assembly and shift cable. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/FLOOR CONSOLE - INSTALLATION)

**ADJUSTMENTS - GEARSHIFT CABLE**

Check adjustment by starting the engine in PARK and NEUTRAL. Adjustment is CORRECT if the engine starts only in these positions. Adjustment is INCORRECT if the engine starts in one but not both positions. If the engine starts in any position other than PARK or NEUTRAL, or if the engine will not start at all, the park/neutral position switch or TRS may be faulty.

- (1) Shift transmission into PARK.
- (2) Remove floor console as necessary for access to the shift cable adjustment. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/FLOOR CONSOLE - REMOVAL)
- (3) Loosen the shift cable adjustment screw (Fig. 105).

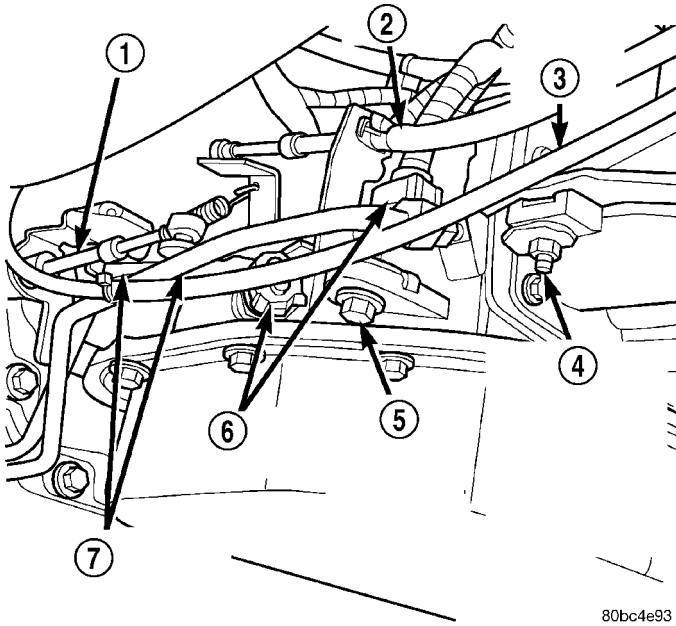
**Fig. 105 Shift Cable at the Shifter**

- 1 - SHIFT LEVER PIN
- 2 - ADJUSTMENT SCREW
- 3 - SHIFT CABLE
- 4 - SHIFTER ASSEMBLY BRACKET

- (4) Raise vehicle.
- (5) Unsnap cable eyelet from transmission shift lever (Fig. 106).
- (6) Verify transmission shift lever is in PARK detent by moving lever fully rearward. Last rearward detent is PARK position.
- (7) Verify positive engagement of transmission park lock by attempting to rotate propeller shaft. Shaft will not rotate when park lock is engaged.
- (8) Snap cable eyelet onto transmission shift lever.
- (9) Lower vehicle
- (10) Tighten the shift cable adjustment screw to 7 N·m (65 in.lbs.).
- (11) Verify correct operation.

## GEARSHIFT CABLE (Continued)

(12) Install any floor console components removed for access. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/FLOOR CONSOLE - INSTALLATION)



**Fig. 106 Shift Cable at Transmission**

- 1 - TRANSMISSION SHIFTER CABLE
- 2 - THROTTLE VALVE CABLE
- 3 - TRANSFER CASE SHIFTER CABLE
- 4 - TRANSFER CASE SHIFTER CABLE BRACKET RETAINING BOLT(S)
- 5 - THROTTLE VALVE CABLE BRACKET RETAINING BOLT
- 6 - ELECTRICAL CONNECTORS
- 7 - TRANSMISSION FLUID LINES

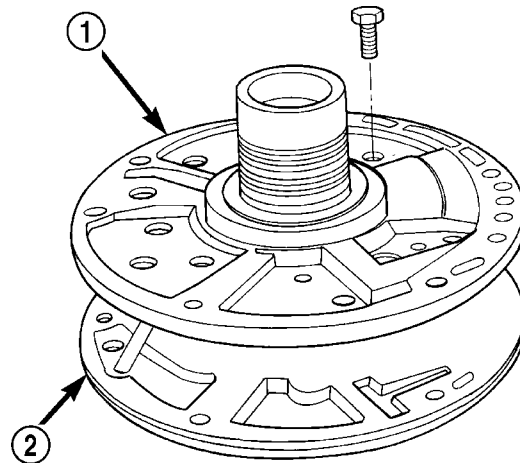
## OIL PUMP

### DESCRIPTION

The oil pump (Fig. 107) is located in the pump housing inside the bell housing of the transmission case. The oil pump consists of an inner and outer gear (Fig. 108), a housing, and a cover that also serves as the reaction shaft support.

### OPERATION

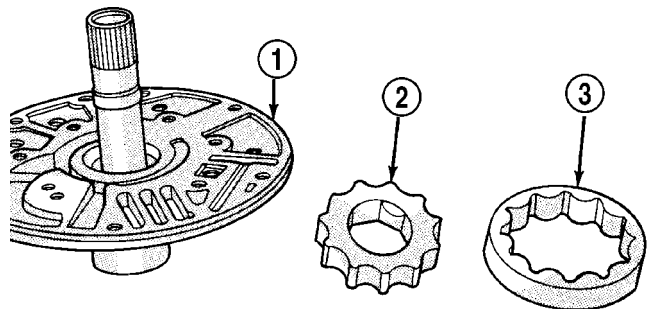
As the torque converter rotates, the converter hub rotates the inner and outer gears. As the gears rotate, the clearance between the gear teeth increases in the crescent area, and creates a suction at the inlet side of the pump. This suction draws fluid through the pump inlet from the oil pan. As the clearance between the gear teeth in the crescent area decreases, it forces pressurized fluid into the pump outlet and to the valve body.



80a483e7

**Fig. 107 Oil Pump and Reaction Shaft Support**

- 1 - REACTION SHAFT SUPPORT
- 2 - PUMP



J9321-214

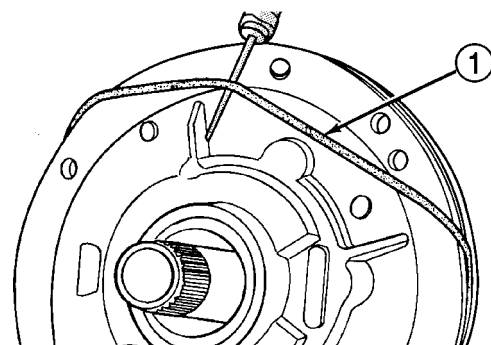
**Fig. 108 Pump Gear Removal**

- 1 - REACTION SHAFT SUPPORT
- 2 - INNER GEAR
- 3 - OUTER GEAR

### DISASSEMBLY

(1) Remove seal ring from housing and reaction shaft support (Fig. 109).

(2) Mark pump housing and support assembly for alignment reference.



J9321-211

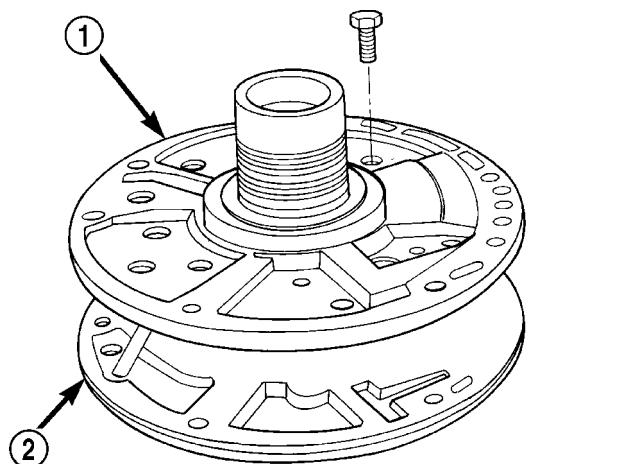
**Fig. 109 Removing Pump Seal Ring**

- 1 - PUMP HOUSING SEAL RING



## OIL PUMP (Continued)

(3) Remove bolts attaching pump body to support (Fig. 110).



**Fig. 110 Pump Support Bolts**

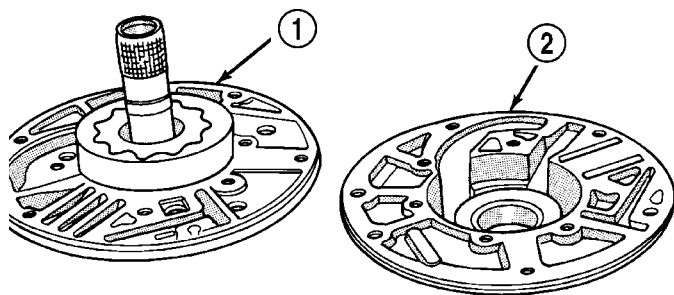
- 1 - REACTION SHAFT SUPPORT  
2 - PUMP

(4) Separate support from pump housing (Fig. 111).

(5) Remove inner and outer gears from reaction shaft support (Fig. 112).

(6) If pump seal was not removed during transmission disassembly, remove seal with punch and hammer.

(7) Remove front clutch thrust washer from support hub (Fig. 113).



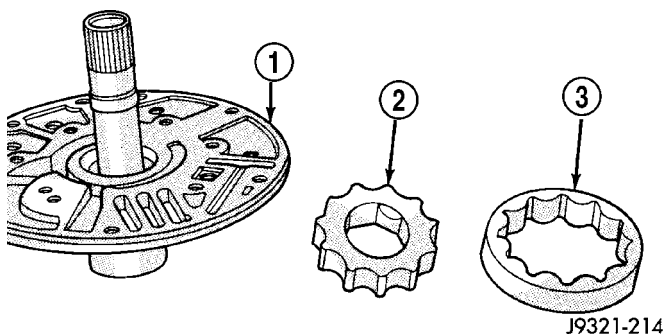
**Fig. 111 Separating Pump Housing From Reaction Shaft Support**

- 1 - REACTION SHAFT SUPPORT  
2 - PUMP HOUSING

## OIL PUMP BUSHING REPLACEMENT

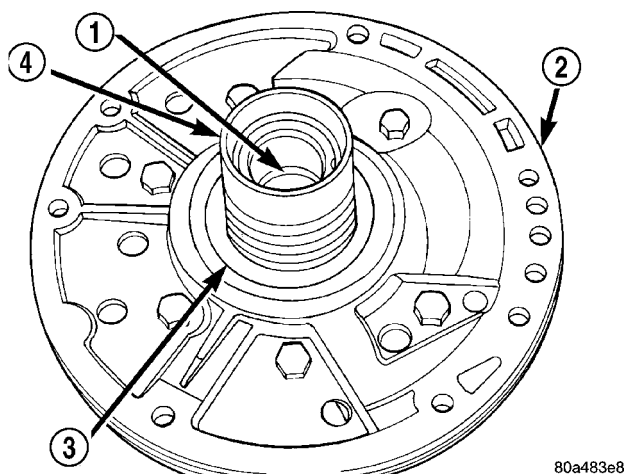
(1) Remove pump bushing with Tool Handle C-4171 and Bushing Remover SP-3551 from Tool Set C-3887-J (Fig. 114).

(2) Install new pump bushing with Tool Handle C-4171 and Bushing Installer SP-5117 (Fig. 114). Bushing should be flush with pump housing bore.



**Fig. 112 Pump Gear Removal**

- 1 - REACTION SHAFT SUPPORT  
2 - INNER GEAR  
3 - OUTER GEAR



**Fig. 113 Support Hub Thrust Washer**

- 1 - BUSHING  
2 - REACTION SHAFT SUPPORT  
3 - THRUST WASHER  
4 - HUB

(3) Stake new pump bushing in two places with blunt punch (Fig. 115). Remove burrs from stake points with knife blade afterward.

## REACTION SHAFT SUPPORT BUSHING REMOVAL

(1) Assemble Bushing Remover Tools SP-1191, 3633 and 5324 (Fig. 116). Do not clamp any part of reaction shaft or support in vise.

(2) Hold Cup Tool SP-3633 firmly against reaction shaft and thread remover SP-5324 into bushing as far as possible by hand. Then thread remover tool 3-4 additional turns into bushing with a wrench.

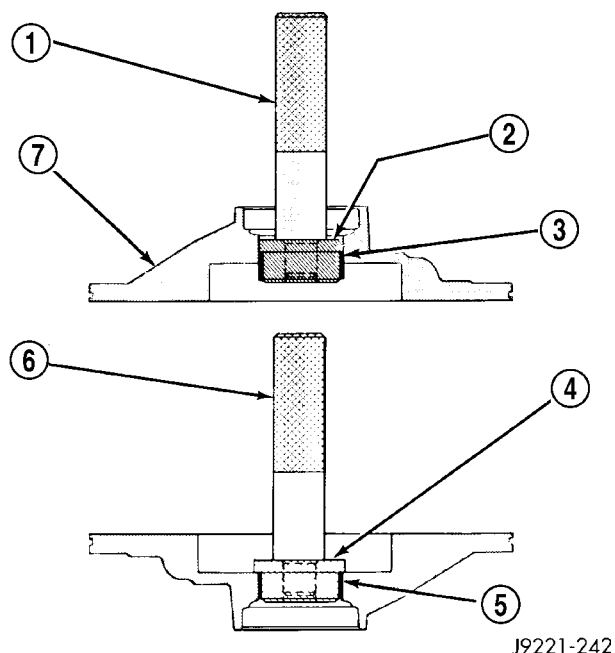
(3) Turn remover tool hex nut down against remover cup to pull bushing from shaft. Clean all chips from shaft after bushing removal.

(4) Lightly grip old bushing in vise or with pliers and back remover tool out of bushing.

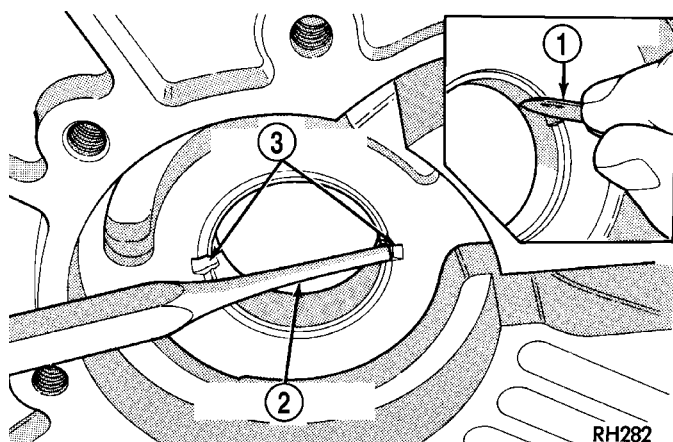
(5) Assemble Bushing Installer Tools C-4171 and SP-5325 (Fig. 116).

(6) Slide new bushing onto Installer Tool SP-5325.

## OIL PUMP (Continued)

**Fig. 114 Removing Oil Pump Bushing**

- 1 - SPECIAL TOOL C-4171
- 2 - SPECIAL TOOL SP-3551
- 3 - BUSHING
- 4 - SPECIAL TOOL SP-5117
- 5 - BUSHING
- 6 - SPECIAL TOOL C-4171
- 7 - PUMP HOUSING

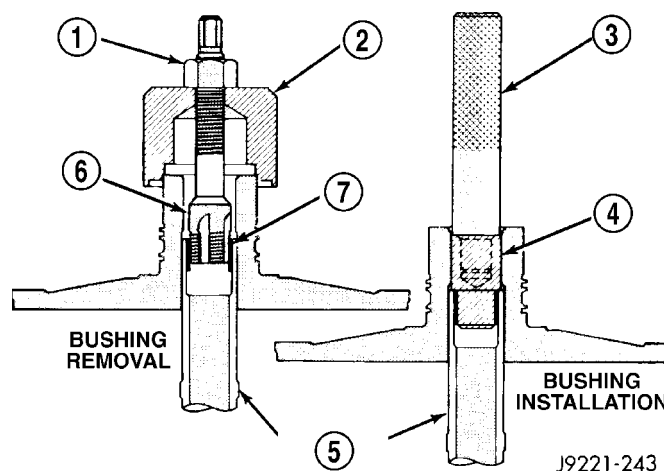
**Fig. 115 Staking Oil Pump Bushing**

- 1 - NARROW BLADE
- 2 - BLUNT PUNCH
- 3 - TWO STAKES

(7) Position reaction shaft support upright on a clean smooth surface.

(8) Align bushing in bore. Then tap bushing into place until Bushing Installer SP-5325 bottoms.

(9) Clean reaction shaft support thoroughly after installing bushing.



J9221-243

**Fig. 116 Replacing Reaction Shaft Support Bushing**

- 1 - SPECIAL TOOL SP-1191
- 2 - SPECIAL TOOL SP-3633
- 3 - SPECIAL TOOL C-4171
- 4 - SPECIAL TOOL SP-5325
- 5 - REACTION SHAFT
- 6 - SPECIAL TOOL SP-5324
- 7 - BUSHING

**CLEANING**

Clean pump and support components with solvent and dry them with compressed air.

**INSPECTION**

Check condition of the seal rings and thrust washer on the reaction shaft support. The seal rings do not need to be replaced unless cracked, broken, or severely worn.

Inspect the pump and support components. Replace the pump or support if the seal ring grooves or machined surfaces are worn, scored, pitted, or damaged. Replace the pump gears if pitted, worn chipped, or damaged.

Inspect the pump bushing. Then check the reaction shaft support bushing. Replace either bushing only if heavily worn, scored or damaged. It is not necessary to replace the bushings unless they are actually damaged.

Clearance between outer gear and reaction shaft housing should be 0.010 to 0.063 mm (0.0004 to 0.0025 in.). Clearance between inner gear and reaction shaft housing should be 0.010 to 0.063 mm (0.0004 to 0.0025 in.). Both clearances can be measured at the same time by installing the gears in the pump body and measure pump component clearances as follows:

(1) Position an appropriate piece of Plastigage™ across both gears.

(2) Align the plastigage to a flat area on the reaction shaft housing.

(3) Install the reaction shaft to the pump housing.

(4) Separate the reaction shaft housing from the pump housing and measure the Plastigage™ following the instructions supplied with it.



## OIL PUMP (Continued)

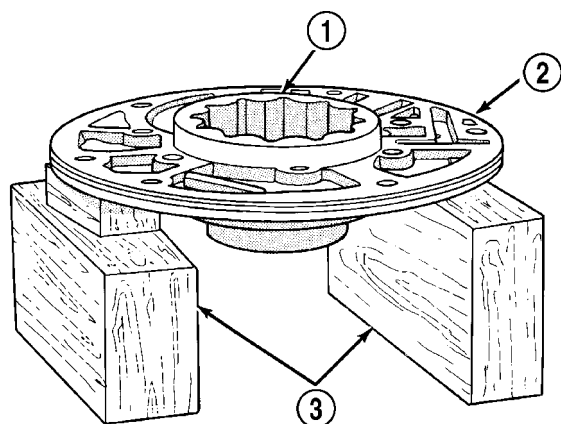
Clearance between inner gear tooth and outer gear should be 0.08 to 0.19 mm (0.0035 to 0.0075 in.). Measure clearance with an appropriate feeler gauge.

Clearance between outer gear and pump housing should be 0.10 to 0.19 mm (0.004 to 0.0075 in.). Measure clearance with an appropriate feeler gauge.

**ASSEMBLY**

- (1) Lubricate gear bore in pump housing with transmission fluid.
- (2) Lubricate pump gears with transmission fluid.
- (3) Support pump housing on wood blocks (Fig. 117).
- (4) Install outer gear in pump housing (Fig. 117). Gear can be installed either way (it is not a one-way fit).
- (5) Install pump inner gear (Fig. 118).

**CAUTION:** The pump inner gear is a one way fit. The bore on one side of the gear inside diameter (I.D.) is chamfered. Be sure the chamfered side faces forward (to front of pump).



J9321-219

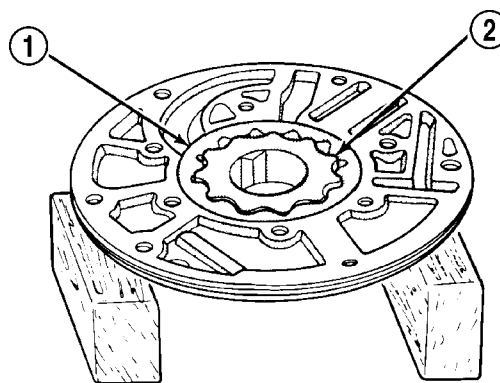
**Fig. 117 Supporting Pump And Installing Outer Gear**

- 1 - OUTER GEAR
- 2 - PUMP HOUSING
- 3 - WOOD BLOCKS

(6) Install new thrust washer on hub of reaction shaft support. Lubricate washer with transmission fluid or petroleum jelly.

(7) If reaction shaft seal rings are being replaced, install new seal rings on support hub (Fig. 119). Lubricate seal rings with transmission fluid or petroleum jelly after installation. Squeeze each ring until ring ends are securely hooked together.

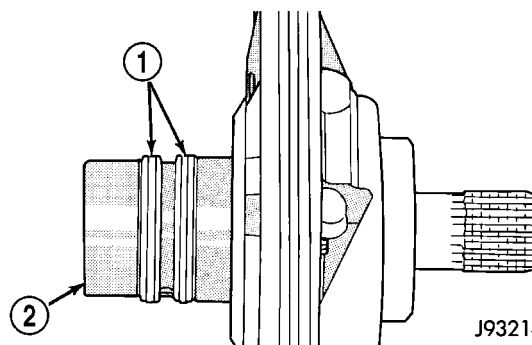
**CAUTION:** The reaction shaft support seal rings will break if overspread, or twisted. If new rings are being installed, spread them only enough for installation. Also be very sure the ring ends are securely hooked together after installation. Otherwise, the rings will either prevent pump installation, or break during installation.



J9321-465

**Fig. 118 Pump Inner Gear Installation**

- 1 - OUTER GEAR
- 2 - INNER GEAR



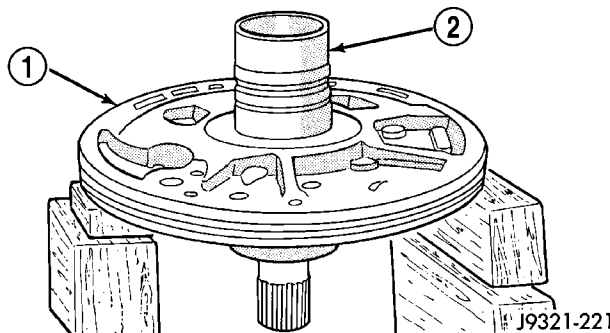
J9321-218

**Fig. 119 Hub Seal Ring Position**

- 1 - SEAL RINGS
- 2 - SUPPORT HUB

(8) Install reaction shaft support on pump housing (Fig. 120).

(9) Align reaction support on pump housing. Use alignment marks made at disassembly. Or, rotate support until bolt holes in support and pump housing are all aligned (holes are offset for one-way fit).



J9321-221

**Fig. 120 Assembling Reaction Shaft Support And Pump Housing**

- 1 - PUMP HOUSING
- 2 - REACTION SHAFT SUPPORT

## OIL PUMP (Continued)

(10) Install all bolts that attach support to pump housing. Then tighten bolts finger tight.

(11) Tighten support-to-pump bolts to required torque as follows:

(a) Reverse pump assembly and install it in transmission case. Position pump so bolts are facing out and are accessible.

(b) Secure pump assembly in case with 2 or 3 bolts, or with pilot studs.

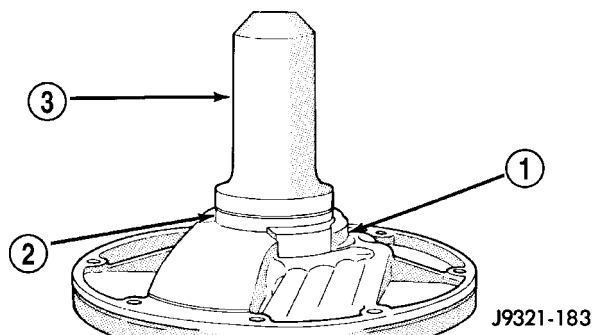
(c) Tighten support-to-pump bolts to 20 N·m (15 ft. lbs.).

(d) Remove pump assembly from transmission case.

(12) Install new oil seal in pump with Special Tool C-4193 and Tool Handle C-4171 (Fig. 121). Be sure seal lip faces inward.

(13) Install new seal ring around pump housing. Be sure seal is properly seated in groove.

(14) Lubricate lip of pump oil seal and O-ring seal with transmission fluid.



**Fig. 121 Pump Oil Seal Installation**

- 1 - PUMP BODY
- 2 - PUMP SEAL
- 3 - SPECIAL TOOL C-4193

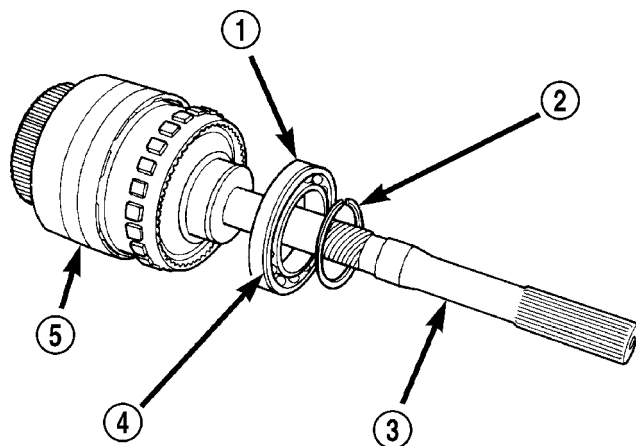
## OUTPUT SHAFT FRONT BEARING

## REMOVAL

- (1) Remove overdrive unit from the vehicle.
- (2) Remove overdrive geartrain from housing.
- (3) Remove snap-ring holding output shaft front bearing to overdrive geartrain. (Fig. 122).
- (4) Pull bearing from output shaft.

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Place replacement bearing in position on geartrain with locating retainer groove toward the rear.
- (2) Push bearing onto shaft until the snap-ring groove is visible.
- (3) Install snap-ring to hold bearing onto output shaft.
- (4) Install overdrive geartrain into housing.



**Fig. 122 Output Shaft Front Bearing**

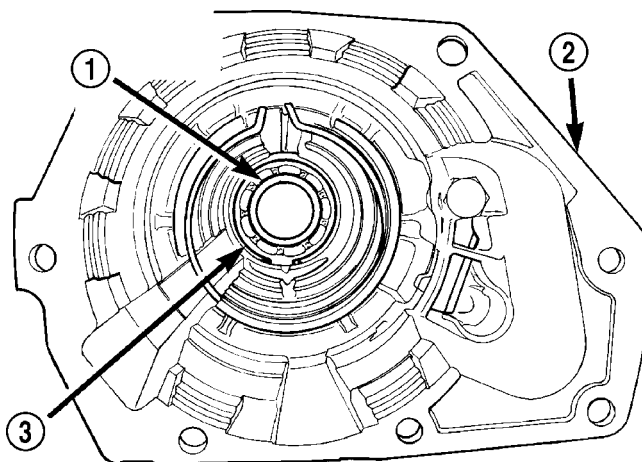
- 1 - OUTPUT SHAFT FRONT BEARING
- 2 - SNAP-RING
- 3 - OUTPUT SHAFT
- 4 - GROOVE TO REAR
- 5 - OVERDRIVE GEARTRAIN

- (5) Install overdrive unit in vehicle.

## OUTPUT SHAFT REAR BEARING

## REMOVAL

- (1) Remove overdrive unit from the vehicle. (Refer to 21 - TRANSMISSION/AUTOMATIC/OVERDRIVE - REMOVAL)
- (2) Remove overdrive geartrain from housing.
- (3) Remove snap-ring holding output shaft rear bearing into overdrive housing (Fig. 123).
- (4) Using a suitable driver inserted through the rear end of housing, drive bearing from housing.



**Fig. 123 Output Shaft Rear Bearing**

- 1 - OUTPUT SHAFT REAR BEARING
- 2 - OVERDRIVE HOUSING
- 3 - SNAP-RING

## OUTPUT SHAFT REAR BEARING (Continued)

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Place replacement bearing in position in housing.
- (2) Using a suitable driver, drive bearing into housing until the snap-ring groove is visible.
- (3) Install snap-ring to hold bearing into housing (Fig. 123).
- (4) Install overdrive geartrain into housing.
- (5) Install overdrive unit in vehicle.

## OVERDRIVE CLUTCH

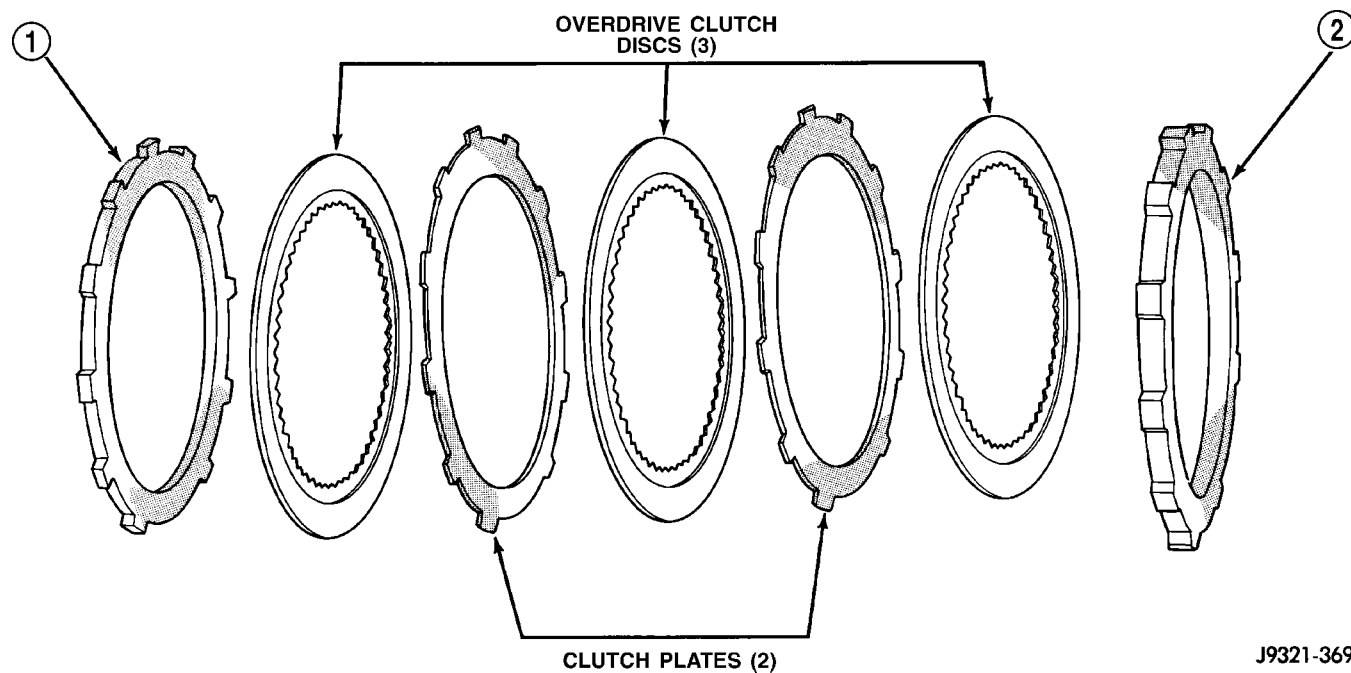
## DESCRIPTION

The overdrive clutch (Fig. 124) is composed of the pressure plate, clutch plates, holding discs, overdrive piston retainer, piston, piston spacer, and snap-rings. The overdrive clutch is the forwardmost component in the transmission overdrive unit and is considered a holding component. The overdrive piston retainer, piston, and piston spacer are located on the rear of the main transmission case.

**NOTE:** The number of discs and plates may vary with each engine and vehicle combination.

## OPERATION

To apply the clutch, pressure is applied between the piston retainer and piston. The fluid pressure is provided by the oil pump, transferred through the control valves and passageways, and enters the clutch through passages at the lower rear portion of the valve body area. With pressure applied between the piston retainer and piston, the piston moves away from the piston retainer and compresses the clutch pack. This action applies the clutch pack, allowing torque to flow through the intermediate shaft into the overdrive planetary gear set. The overdrive clutch discs are attached to the overdrive clutch hub while the overdrive clutch plates, reaction plate, and pressure plate are lugged to the overdrive housing. This allows the intermediate shaft to transfer the engine torque to the planetary gear and overrunning clutch. This drives the planetary gear inside the annulus, which is attached to the overdrive clutch drum and output shaft, creating the desired gear ratio. The waved snap-ring is used to cushion the application of the clutch pack.



J9321-369

Fig. 124 Overdrive Clutch

1 - REACTION PLATE

2 - PRESSURE PLATE

## OVERDRIVE OFF SWITCH

### DESCRIPTION

The overdrive OFF (control) switch is located in the shifter handle. The switch is a momentary contact device that signals the PCM to toggle current status of the overdrive function.

### OPERATION

At key-on, fourth gear operation is allowed. Pressing the switch once causes the overdrive OFF mode to be entered and the overdrive OFF switch lamp to be illuminated. Pressing the switch a second time causes normal overdrive operation to be restored and the overdrive lamp to be turned off. The overdrive OFF mode defaults to ON after the ignition switch is cycled OFF and ON. The normal position for the control switch is the ON position. The switch must be in this position to energize the solenoid and allow upshifts to fourth gear. The control switch indicator light illuminates only when the overdrive switch is turned to the OFF position, or when illuminated by the powertrain control module.

### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - OVERDRIVE ELECTRICAL CONTROLS

The overdrive off switch, valve body solenoid, case connectors and related wiring can all be tested with a 12 volt test lamp or a volt/ohmmeter. Check continuity of each component when diagnosis indicates this is necessary.

Switch and solenoid continuity should be checked whenever the transmission fails to shift into fourth gear range.

## OVERDRIVE UNIT

### REMOVAL

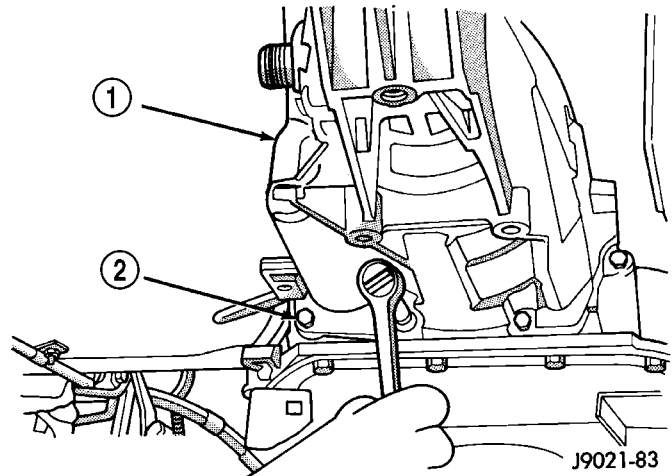
- (1) Shift transmission into PARK.
- (2) Raise vehicle.
- (3) Remove transfer case, if equipped.
- (4) Mark propeller shaft universal joint(s) and axle pinion yoke, or the companion flange and flange yoke, for alignment reference at installation, if necessary.
- (5) Disconnect and remove the rear propeller shaft, if necessary. (Refer to 3 - DIFFERENTIAL & DRIVE/PROPELLER SHAFT/PROPELLER SHAFT - REMOVAL)
- (6) Remove transmission oil pan, remove gasket, drain oil and reinstall pan.
- (7) If overdrive unit had malfunctioned, or if fluid is contaminated, remove entire transmission. If diag-

nosis indicated overdrive problems only, remove just the overdrive unit.

(8) Support transmission with transmission jack.

(9) Remove bolts attaching overdrive unit to transmission (Fig. 125).

**CAUTION:** Support the overdrive unit with a jack before moving it rearward. This is necessary to prevent damaging the intermediate shaft. Do not allow the shaft to support the entire weight of the overdrive unit.



**Fig. 125 Overdrive Unit Bolts**

- 1 - OVERDRIVE UNIT  
2 - ATTACHING BOLTS (7)

(10) Carefully work overdrive unit off intermediate shaft. Do not tilt unit during removal. Keep it as level as possible.

(11) If overdrive unit does not require service, immediately insert Alignment Tool 6227-2 in splines of planetary gear and overrunning clutch to prevent splines from rotating out of alignment. If misalignment occurs, overdrive unit will have to be disassembled in order to realign splines.

(12) Remove and retain overdrive piston thrust bearing. Bearing may remain on piston or in clutch hub during removal.

(13) Position drain pan on workbench.

(14) Place overdrive unit over drain pan. Tilt unit to drain residual fluid from case.

(15) Examine fluid for clutch material or metal fragments. If fluid contains these items, overhaul will be necessary.

(16) If overdrive unit does not require any service, leave alignment tool in position. Tool will prevent accidental misalignment of planetary gear and overrunning clutch splines.

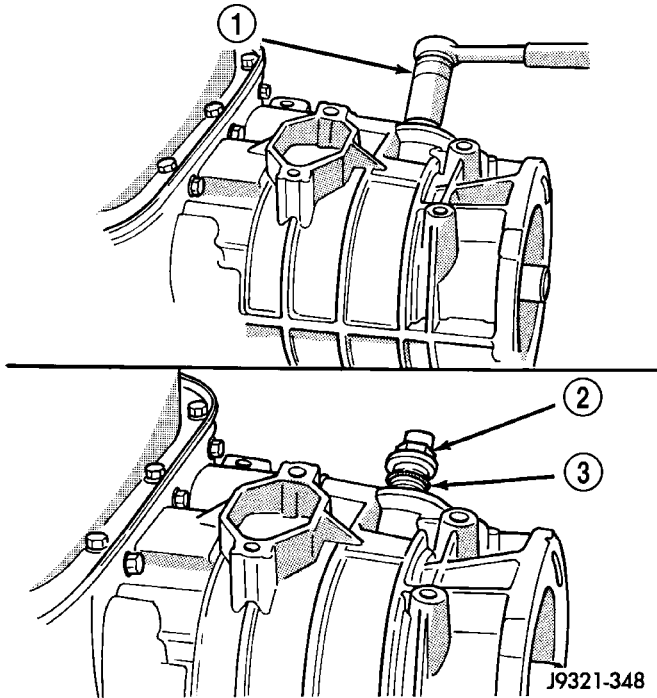


## OVERDRIVE UNIT (Continued)

## DISASSEMBLY

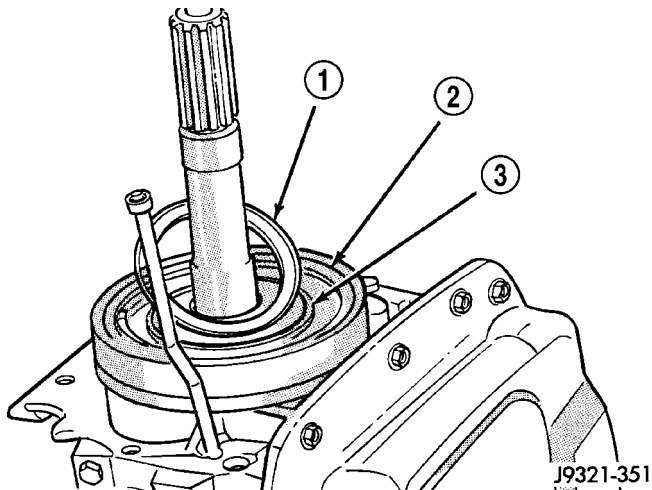
(1) Remove transmission speed sensor and O-ring seal from overdrive case (Fig. 126).

(2) Remove overdrive piston thrust bearing (Fig. 127).



**Fig. 126 Transmission Speed Sensor Removal**

- 1 - SOCKET AND WRENCH
- 2 - SPEED SENSOR
- 3 - O-RING

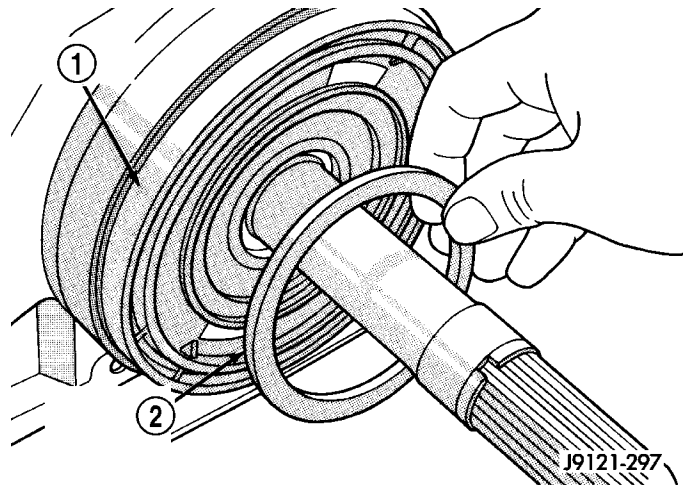


**Fig. 127 Overdrive Piston Thrust Bearing Removal**

- 1 - THRUST BEARING
- 2 - OVERDRIVE PISTON
- 3 - THRUST PLATE

## OVERDRIVE PISTON

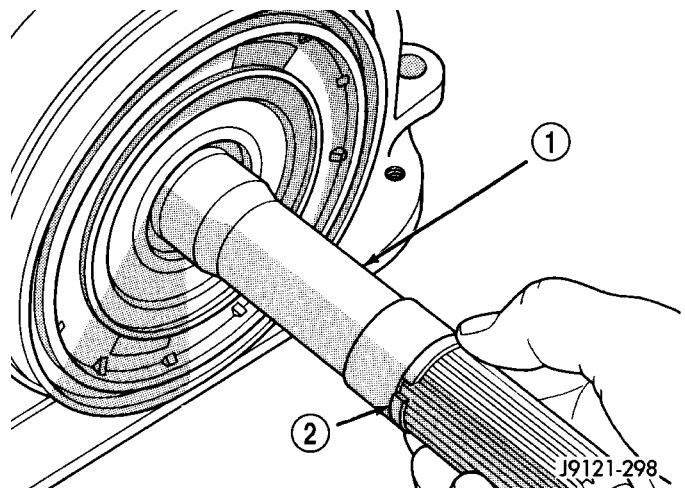
(1) Remove overdrive piston thrust plate (Fig. 128). Retain thrust plate. It is a select fit part and may possibly be reused.



**Fig. 128 Overdrive Piston Thrust Plate Removal**

- 1 - OVERDRIVE PISTON
- 2 - OVERDRIVE PISTON SPACER (SELECT FIT)

(2) Remove intermediate shaft spacer (Fig. 129). Retain spacer. It is a select fit part and may possibly be reused.

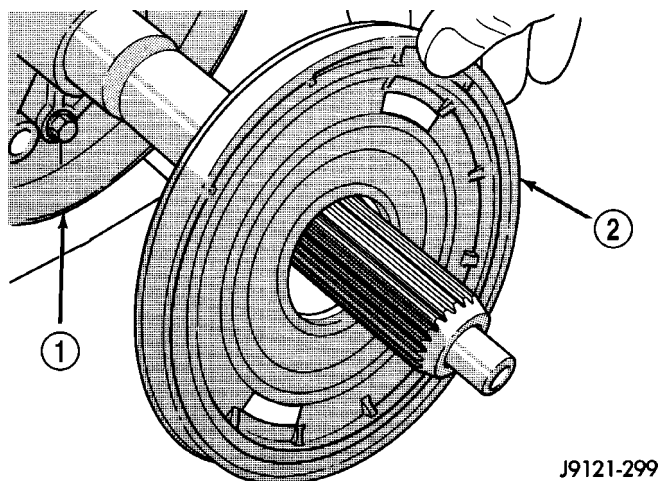


**Fig. 129 Intermediate Shaft Spacer Location**

- 1 - INTERMEDIATE SHAFT
- 2 - INTERMEDIATE SHAFT SPACER (SELECT FIT)

## OVERDRIVE UNIT (Continued)

(3) Remove overdrive piston from retainer (Fig. 130).



**Fig. 130 Overdrive Piston Removal**

- 1 - PISTON RETAINER
- 2 - OVERDRIVE PISTON

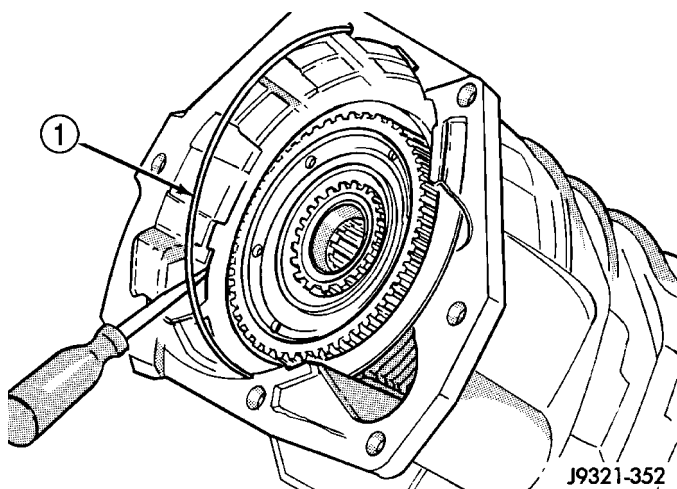
## OVERDRIVE CLUTCH PACK

(1) Remove overdrive clutch pack wire retaining ring (Fig. 131).

(2) Remove overdrive clutch pack (Fig. 132).

**NOTE:** The 42RE transmission has three clutch discs and two clutch plates.

(3) Note position of clutch pack components for assembly reference (Fig. 133).

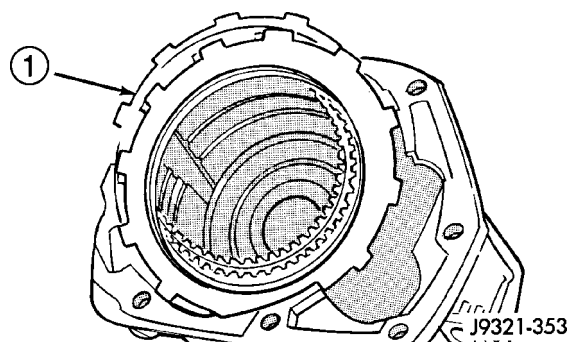


**Fig. 131 Removing Overdrive Clutch Pack Retaining Ring**

- 1 - OVERDRIVE CLUTCH PACK RETAINING RING

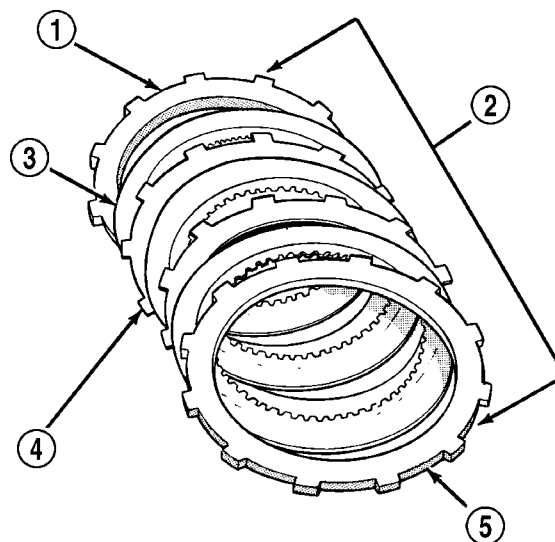
## OVERDRIVE GEARTRAIN

(1) Remove overdrive clutch wave spring (Fig. 134).



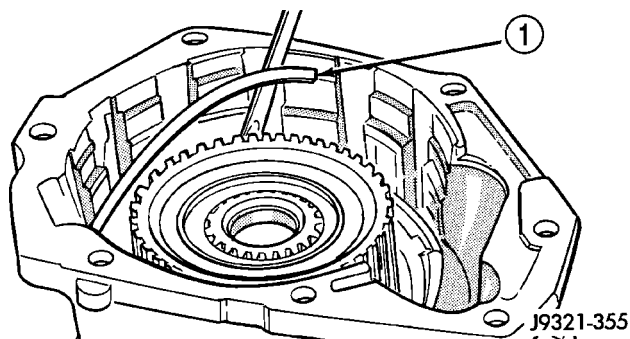
**Fig. 132 Overdrive Clutch Pack Removal**

- 1 - OVERDRIVE CLUTCH PACK



**Fig. 133 42RE Overdrive Clutch Component Position**

- 1 - PRESSURE PLATE (TO FRONT)
- 2 - OVERDRIVE CLUTCH PACK
- 3 - CLUTCH DISC (3)
- 4 - CLUTCH PLATE (2)
- 5 - REACTION PLATE (TO REAR)

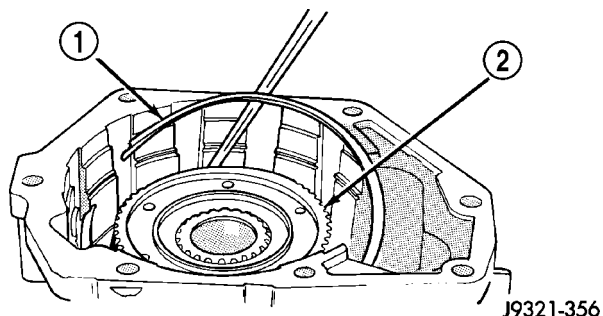


**Fig. 134 Overdrive Clutch Wave**

- 1 - WAVE SPRING

## OVERDRIVE UNIT (Continued)

(2) Remove overdrive clutch reaction snap-ring (Fig. 135). Note that snap-ring is located in same groove as wave spring.

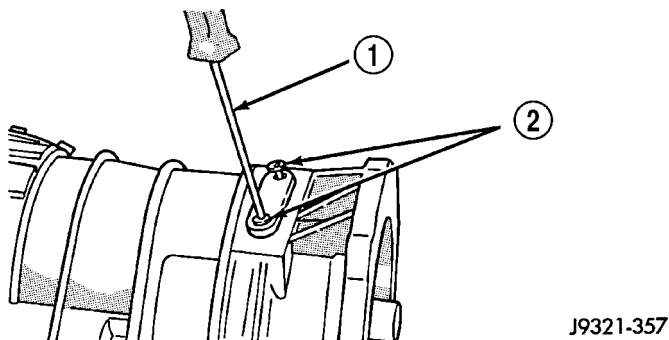


**Fig. 135 Overdrive Clutch Reaction Snap-Ring Removal**

- 1 - REACTION RING  
2 - CLUTCH HUB

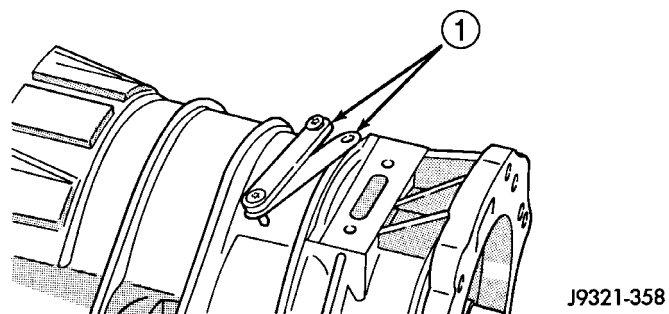
(3) Remove Torx™ head screws that attach access cover and gasket to overdrive case (Fig. 136).

(4) Remove access cover and gasket (Fig. 137).



**Fig. 136 Access Cover Screw Removal**

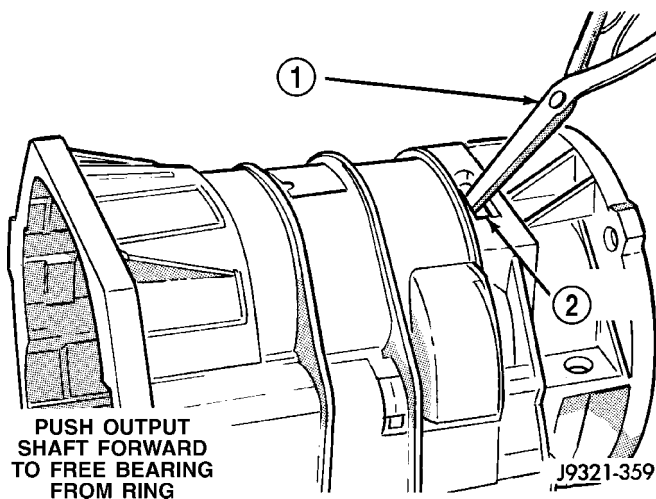
- 1 - TORX SCREWDRIVER (T25)  
2 - ACCESS COVER SCREWS



**Fig. 137 Access Cover And Gasket Removal**

- 1 - ACCESS COVER AND GASKET

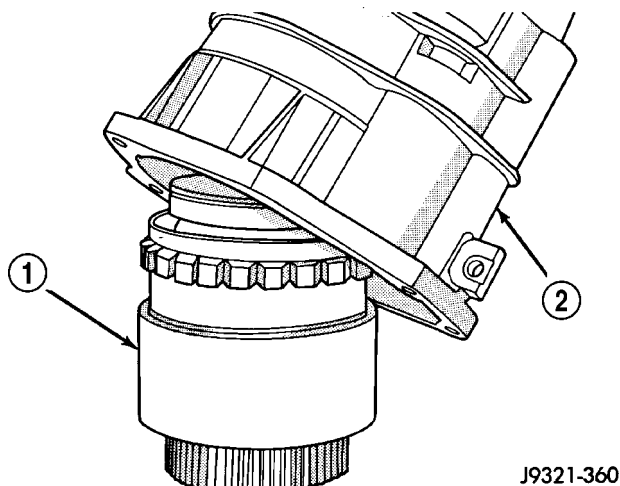
(5) Expand output shaft bearing snap-ring with expanding-type snap-ring pliers. Then push output shaft forward to release shaft bearing from locating ring (Fig. 138).



**Fig. 138 Releasing Bearing From Locating Ring**

- 1 - EXPAND BEARING LOCATING RING WITH SNAP-RING PLIERS  
2 - ACCESS HOLE

(6) Lift gear case up and off geartrain assembly (Fig. 139).



**Fig. 139 Removing Gear Case From Geartrain Assembly**

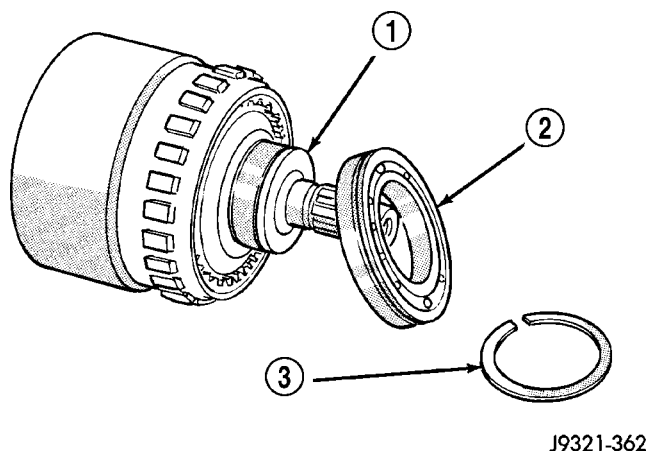
- 1 - GEARTRAIN ASSEMBLY  
2 - GEAR CASE



## OVERDRIVE UNIT (Continued)

(7) Remove snap-ring that retains rear bearing on output shaft.

(8) Remove rear bearing from output shaft (Fig. 140).



**Fig. 140 Rear Bearing Removal**

- 1 - OUTPUT SHAFT
- 2 - REAR BEARING
- 3 - SNAP-RING

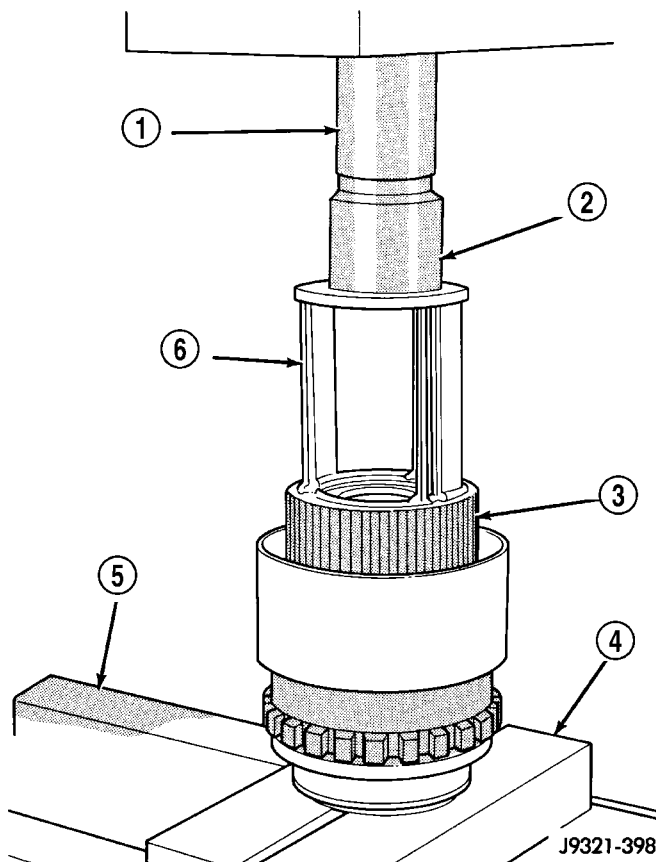
## DIRECT CLUTCH, HUB AND SPRING

**WARNING:** THE NEXT STEP IN DISASSEMBLY INVOLVES COMPRESSING THE DIRECT CLUTCH SPRING. IT IS EXTREMELY IMPORTANT THAT PROPER EQUIPMENT BE USED TO COMPRESS THE SPRING AS SPRING FORCE IS APPROXIMATELY 830 POUNDS. USE SPRING COMPRESSOR TOOL 6227-1 AND A HYDRAULIC SHOP PRESS WITH A MINIMUM RAM TRAVEL OF 5-6 INCHES. THE PRESS MUST ALSO HAVE A BED THAT CAN BE ADJUSTED UP OR DOWN AS REQUIRED. RELEASE CLUTCH SPRING TENSION SLOWLY AND COMPLETELY TO AVOID PERSONAL INJURY.

(1) Mount geartrain assembly in shop press (Fig. 141).

(2) Position Compressor Tool 6227-1 on clutch hub (Fig. 141). Support output shaft flange with steel press plates as shown and center assembly under press ram.

(3) Apply press pressure slowly. Compress hub and spring far enough to expose clutch hub retaining ring and relieve spring pressure on clutch pack snap-ring (Fig. 141).

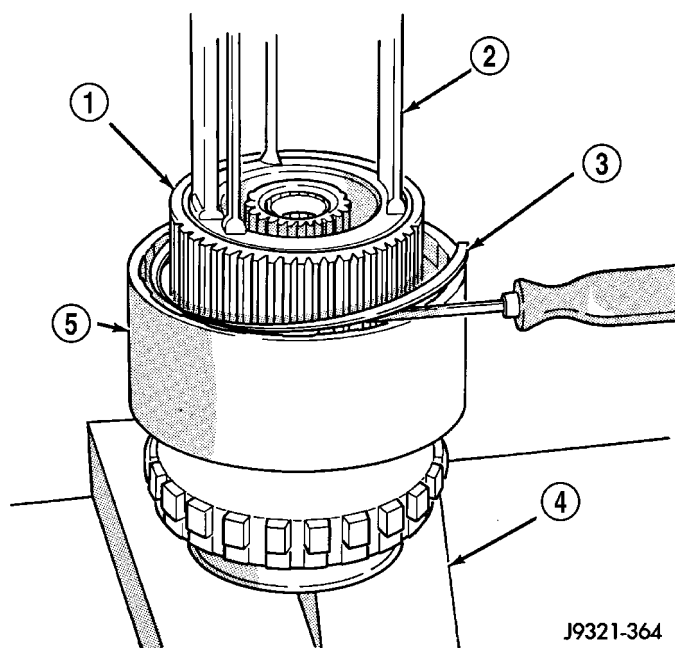


**Fig. 141 Geartrain Mounted In Shop Press**

- 1 - PRESS RAM
- 2 - SPECIAL TOOL C-3995-A (OR SIMILAR TOOL)
- 3 - CLUTCH HUB
- 4 - PLATES
- 5 - PRESS BED
- 6 - SPECIAL TOOL 6227-1

## OVERDRIVE UNIT (Continued)

- (4) Remove direct clutch pack snap-ring (Fig. 142).  
 (5) Remove direct clutch hub retaining ring (Fig. 143).

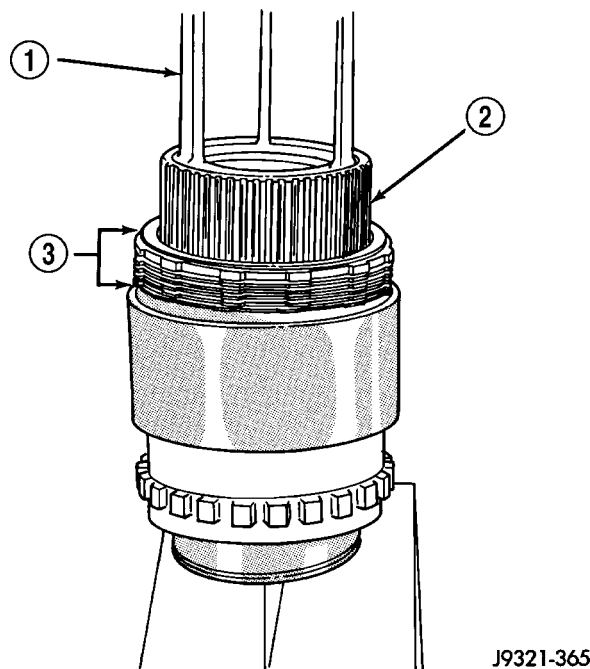


**Fig. 142 Direct Clutch Pack Snap-Ring Removal**

- 1 - CLUTCH HUB  
 2 - SPECIAL TOOL 6227-1  
 3 - DIRECT CLUTCH PACK SNAP-RING  
 4 - PRESS PLATES  
 5 - CLUTCH DRUM

- (6) Release press load slowly and completely (Fig. 144).

- (7) Remove Special Tool 6227-1. Then remove clutch pack from hub (Fig. 144).

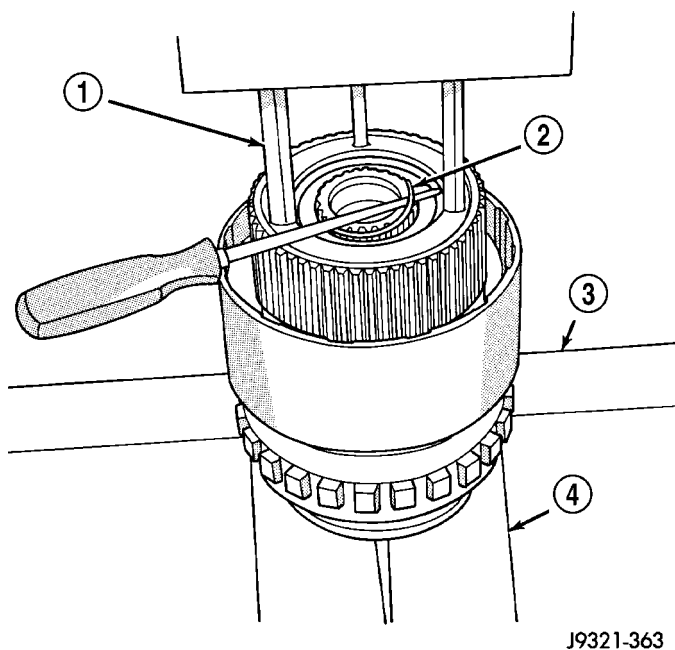


**Fig. 144 Direct Clutch Pack Removal**

- 1 - SPECIAL TOOL 6227-1  
 2 - DIRECT CLUTCH HUB  
 3 - DIRECT CLUTCH PACK

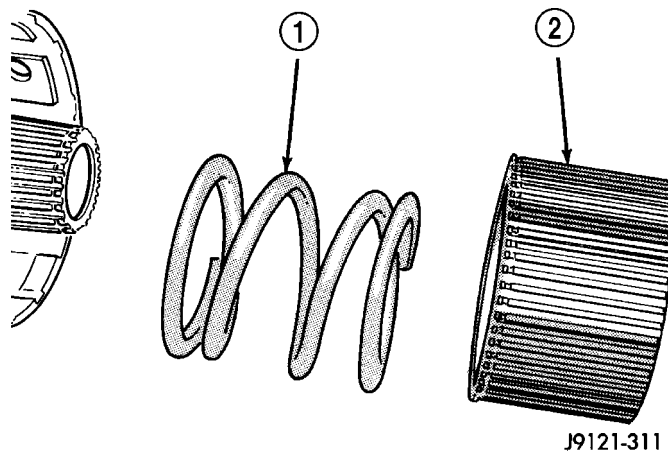
## GEARTRAIN

- (1) Remove direct clutch hub and spring (Fig. 145).  
 (2) Remove sun gear and spring plate. Then remove planetary thrust bearing and planetary gear (Fig. 146).



**Fig. 143 Direct Clutch Hub Retaining Ring Removal**

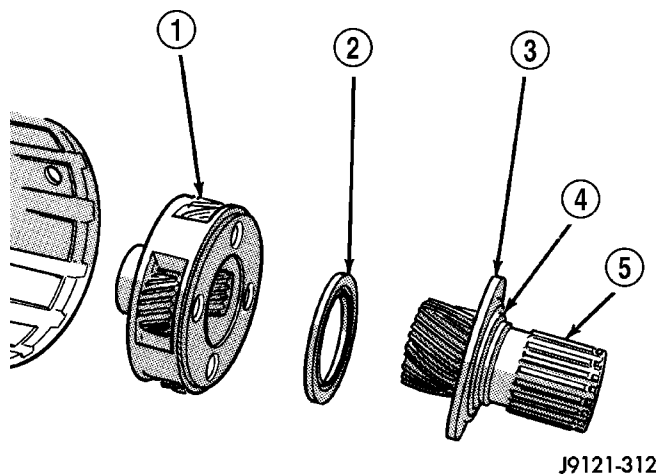
- 1 - SPECIAL TOOL 6227-1  
 2 - CLUTCH HUB RETAINING RING  
 3 - PRESS BED  
 4 - PRESS PLATES



**Fig. 145 Direct Clutch Hub And Spring Removal**

- 1 - DIRECT CLUTCH SPRING  
 2 - DIRECT CLUTCH HUB

## OVERDRIVE UNIT (Continued)



J9121-312

**Fig. 146 Removing Sun Gear, Thrust Bearing And Planetary Gear**

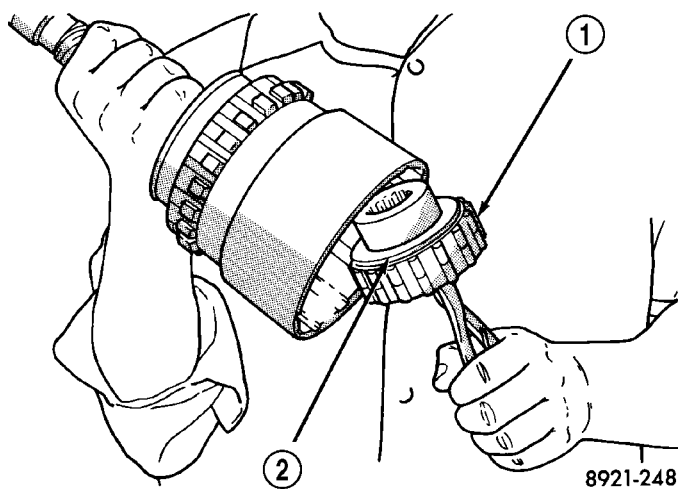
- 1 - PLANETARY GEAR
- 2 - PLANETARY THRUST BEARING
- 3 - CLUTCH SPRING PLATE
- 4 - SPRING PLATE SNAP-RING
- 5 - SUN GEAR

(3) Remove overrunning clutch assembly with expanding type snap-ring pliers (Fig. 147). Insert pliers into clutch hub. Expand pliers to grip hub splines and remove clutch with counterclockwise, twisting motion.

(4) Remove thrust bearing from overrunning clutch hub.

(5) Remove overrunning clutch from hub.

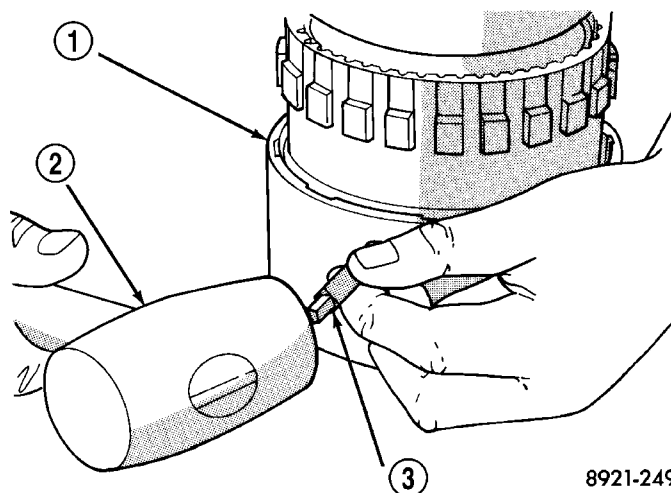
(6) Mark position of annulus gear and direct clutch drum for assembly alignment reference (Fig. 148). Use small center punch or scribe to make alignment marks.



8921-248

**Fig. 147 Overrunning Clutch**

- 1 - OVERRUNNING CLUTCH
- 2 - NEEDLE BEARING

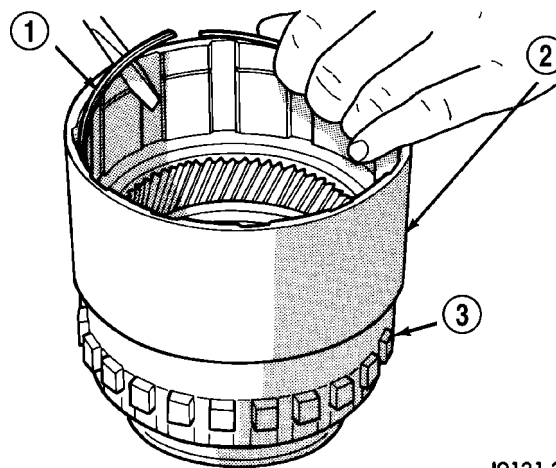


8921-249

**Fig. 148 Marking Direct Clutch Drum And Annulus Gear For Assembly Alignment**

- 1 - DIRECT CLUTCH DRUM
- 2 - HAMMER
- 3 - PUNCH

(7) Remove direct clutch drum rear retaining ring (Fig. 149).



J9121-292

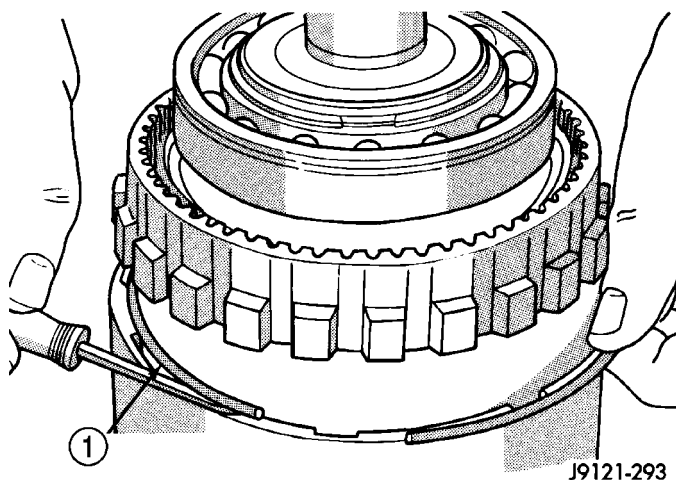
**Fig. 149 Clutch Drum Inner Retaining Ring Removal**

- 1 - INNER RETAINING RING
- 2 - DIRECT CLUTCH DRUM
- 3 - ANNULUS GEAR

## OVERDRIVE UNIT (Continued)

(8) Remove direct clutch drum outer retaining ring (Fig. 150).

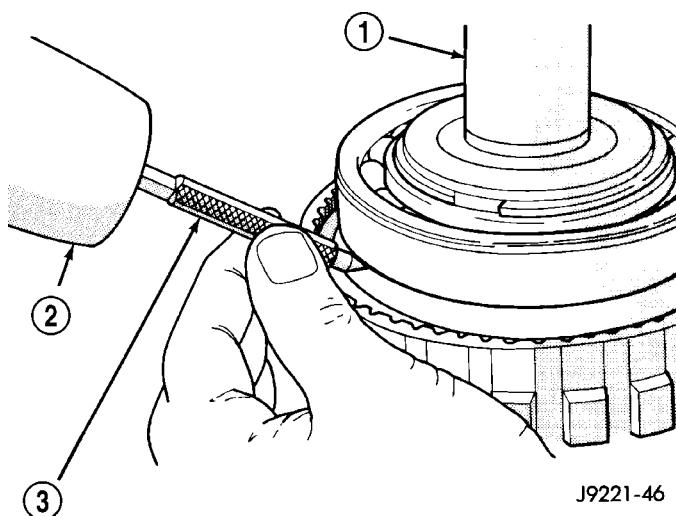
(9) Mark annulus gear and output shaft for assembly alignment reference (Fig. 151). Use punch or scriber to mark gear and shaft.



J9121-293

**Fig. 150 Clutch Drum Outer Retaining Ring Removal**

1 - OUTER RETAINING RING



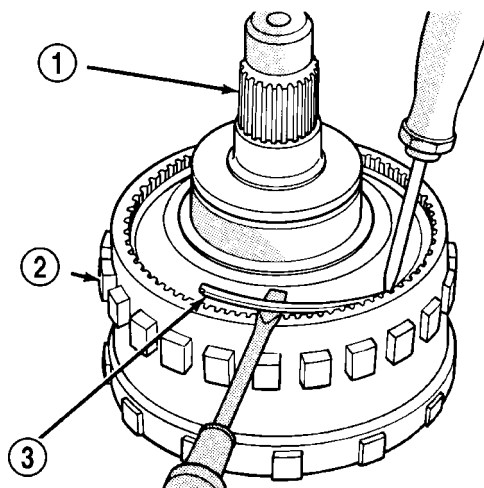
J9221-46

**Fig. 151 Marking Annulus Gear And Output Shaft For Assembly Alignment**

1 - OUTPUT SHAFT  
2 - HAMMER  
3 - PUNCH

(10) Remove snap-ring that secures annulus gear on output shaft (Fig. 152). Use two screwdrivers to unseat and work snap-ring out of groove as shown.

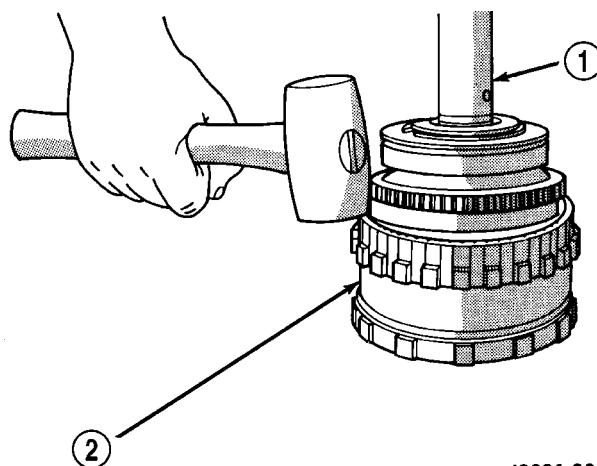
(11) Remove annulus gear from output shaft (Fig. 153). Use rawhide or plastic mallet to tap gear off shaft.



J9321-448

**Fig. 152 Annulus Gear Snap-Ring Removal**

1 - OUTPUT SHAFT  
2 - ANNULUS GEAR  
3 - SNAP-RING



J9021-288

**Fig. 153 Annulus Gear Removal**

1 - OUTPUT SHAFT  
2 - ANNULUS GEAR



## OVERDRIVE UNIT (Continued)

**GEAR CASE AND PARK LOCK**

- (1) Remove locating ring from gear case.
- (2) Remove park pawl shaft retaining bolt and remove shaft, pawl and spring.
- (3) Remove reaction plug snap-ring and remove reaction plug.
- (4) Remove output shaft seal.

**CLEANING**

Clean the geartrain and case components with solvent. Dry all parts except the bearings with compressed air. Allow bearings to air dry.

Do not use shop towels for wiping parts dry unless the towels are made from a lint-free material. A sufficient quantity of lint (from shop towels, cloths, rags, etc.) could plug the transmission filter and fluid passages.

Discard the old case gasket and seals. Do not attempt to salvage these parts. They are not reusable. Replace any of the overdrive unit snap-rings if distorted or damaged.

Minor nicks or scratches on components can be smoothed with crocus cloth. However, do not attempt to reduce severe scoring on any components with abrasive materials. Replace severely scored components; do not try to salvage them.

**INSPECTION**

Check condition of the park lock components and the overdrive case.

Check the bushings in the overdrive case. Replace the bushings if severely scored or worn. Also replace the case seal if loose, distorted, or damaged.

Examine the overdrive and direct clutch discs and plates. Replace the discs if the facing is worn, severely scored, or burned and flaking off. Replace the clutch plates if worn, heavily scored, or cracked. Check the lugs on the clutch plates for wear. The plates should slide freely in the drum. Replace the plates or drum if binding occurs.

Check condition of the annulus gear, direct clutch hub, clutch drum and clutch spring. Replace the gear, hub and drum if worn or damaged. Replace the spring if collapsed, distorted, or cracked.

Be sure the splines and lugs on the gear, drum and hub are in good condition. The clutch plates and discs should slide freely in these components.

Inspect the thrust bearings and spring plate. Replace the plate if worn or scored. Replace the bearings if rough, noisy, brinnelled, or worn.

Inspect the planetary gear assembly and the sun gear and bushings. If either the sun gear or the bushings are damaged, replace the gear and bushings as an assembly. The gear and bushings are not serviced separately.

The planetary carrier and pinions must be in good condition. Also be sure the pinion pins are secure and in good condition. Replace the carrier if worn or damaged.

Inspect the overrunning clutch and race. The race surface should be smooth and free of scores. Replace the overrunning clutch assembly or the race if either assembly is worn or damaged in any way.

Replace the shaft pilot bushing and inner bushing if damaged. Replace either shaft bearing if rough or noisy. Replace the bearing snap-rings if distorted or cracked.

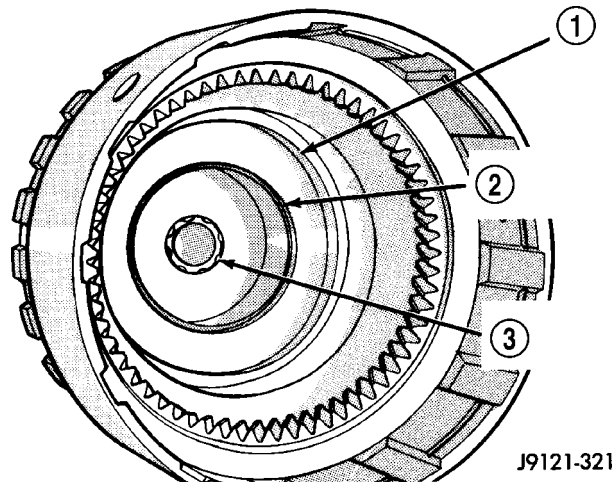
Check the machined surfaces on the output shaft. These surfaces should be clean and smooth. Very minor nicks or scratches can be smoothed with crocus cloth. Replace the shaft if worn, scored or damaged in any way.

Inspect the output shaft bushings. The small bushing is the intermediate shaft pilot bushing. The large bushing is the overrunning clutch hub bushing. Replace either bushing if scored, pitted, cracked, or worn.

**ASSEMBLY****GEARTRAIN AND DIRECT CLUTCH**

(1) Soak direct clutch and overdrive clutch discs in Mopar® ATF +4, Automatic Transmission fluid. Allow discs to soak for 10-20 minutes.

(2) Install new pilot bushing and clutch hub bushing in output shaft if necessary (Fig. 154). Lubricate bushings with petroleum jelly, or transmission fluid.



**Fig. 154 Output Shaft Pilot Bushing**

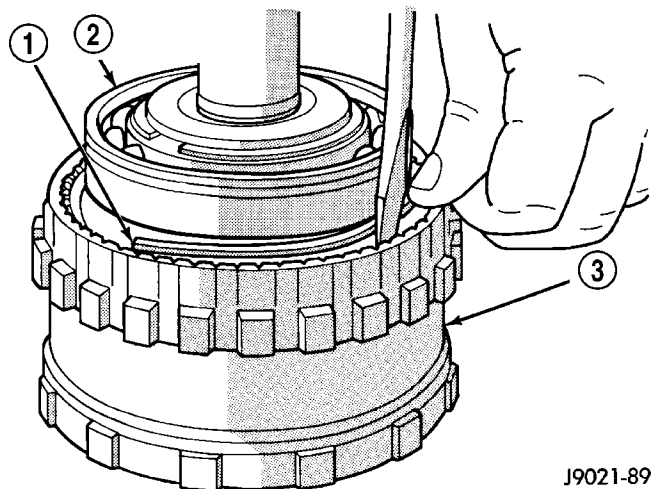
- 1 - OUTPUT SHAFT HUB
- 2 - OVERRUNNING CLUTCH HUB BUSHING
- 3 - INTERMEDIATE SHAFT PILOT BUSHING

## OVERDRIVE UNIT (Continued)

(3) Install annulus gear on output shaft, if removed. Then install annulus gear retaining snap-ring (Fig. 155).

(4) Align and install clutch drum on annulus gear (Fig. 156). Be sure drum is engaged in annulus gear lugs.

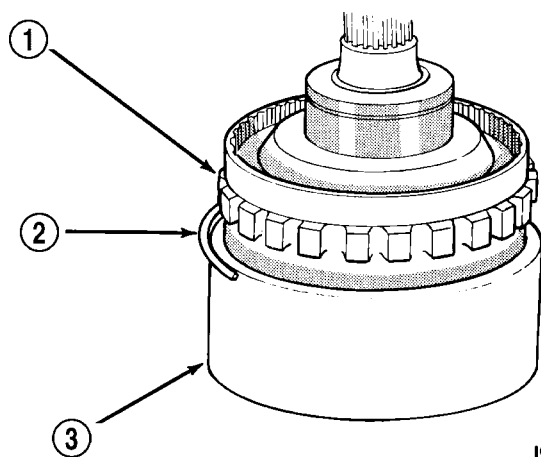
(5) Install clutch drum outer retaining ring (Fig. 156).



J9021-89

**Fig. 155 Annulus Gear Installation**

- 1 - SNAP-RING
- 2 - OUTPUT SHAFT FRONT BEARING
- 3 - ANNULUS GEAR



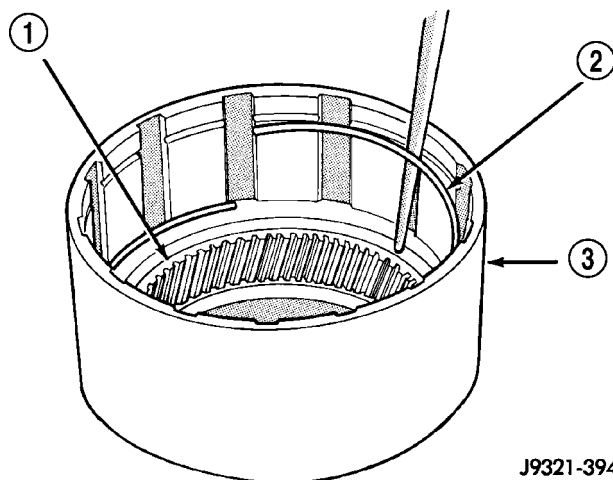
J9321-393

**Fig. 156 Clutch Drum And Outer Retaining Ring Installation**

- 1 - ANNULUS GEAR
- 2 - OUTER SNAP-RING
- 3 - CLUTCH DRUM

(6) Slide clutch drum forward and install inner retaining ring (Fig. 157).

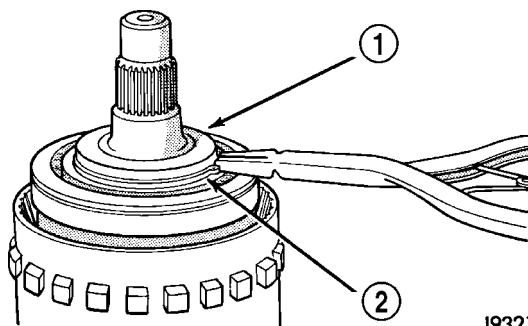
(7) Install rear bearing and snap-ring on output shaft (Fig. 158). Be sure locating ring groove in bearing is toward rear.



J9321-394

**Fig. 157 Clutch Drum Inner Retaining Ring Installation**

- 1 - ANNULUS GEAR
- 2 - INNER SNAP-RING
- 3 - CLUTCH DRUM



J9321-370

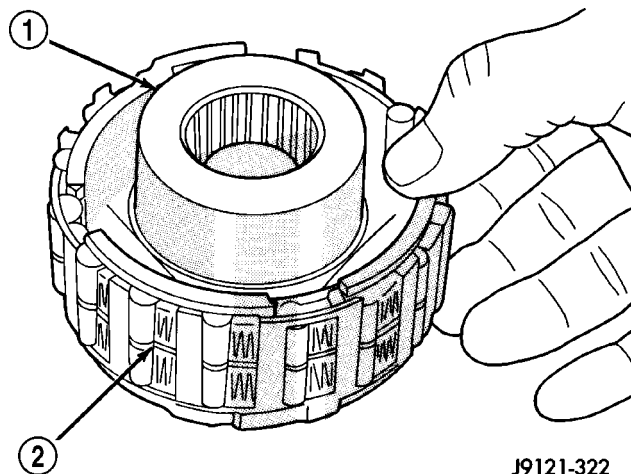
**Fig. 158 Rear Bearing And Snap-Ring Installation**

- 1 - REAR BEARING
- 2 - SNAP-RING

## OVERDRIVE UNIT (Continued)

(8) Install overrunning clutch on hub (Fig. 159). Note that clutch only fits one-way. Shoulder on clutch should seat in small recess at edge of hub.

(9) Install thrust bearing on overrunning clutch hub. Use generous amount of petroleum jelly to hold bearing in place for installation. Bearing fits one-way only. Be sure bearing is seated squarely against hub. Reinstall bearing if it does not seat squarely.



J9121-322

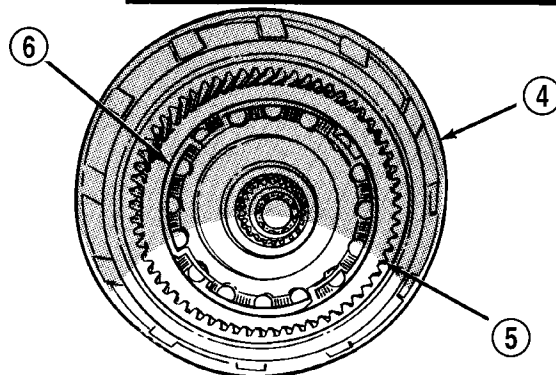
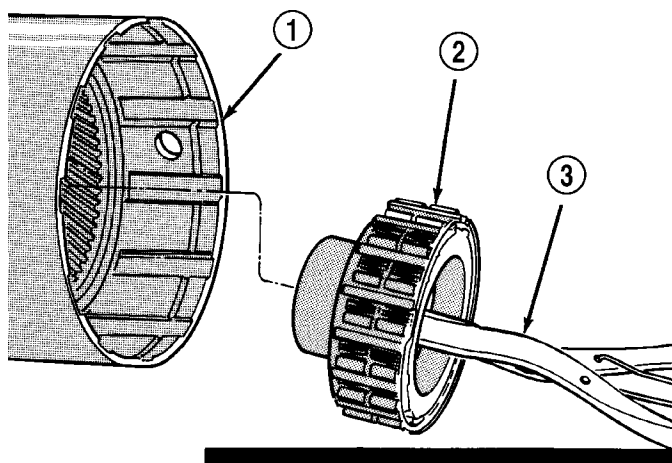
**Fig. 159 Assembling Overrunning Clutch And Hub**

- 1 - CLUTCH HUB  
2 - OVERRUNNING CLUTCH

(10) Install overrunning clutch in output shaft (Fig. 160). Insert snap-ring pliers in hub splines. Expand pliers to grip hub. Then install assembly with counterclockwise, twisting motion.

(11) Install planetary gear in annulus gear (Fig. 161). Be sure planetary pinions are fully seated in annulus gear before proceeding.

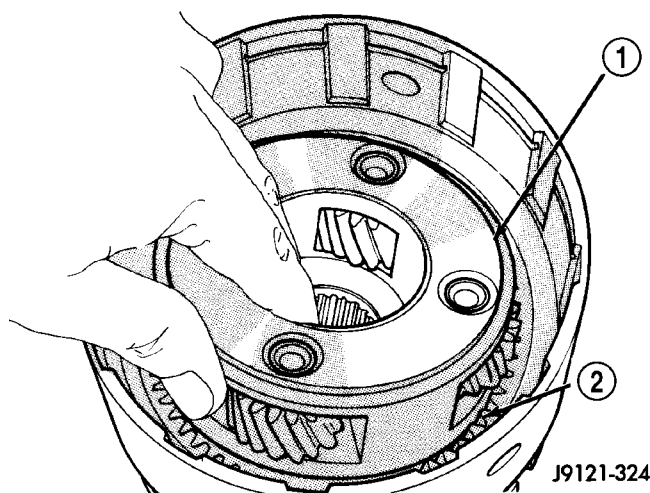
(12) Coat planetary thrust bearing and bearing contact surface of spring plate with generous amount of petroleum jelly. This will help hold bearing in place during installation.



J9121-314

**Fig. 160 Overrunning Clutch Installation**

- 1 - CLUTCH DRUM  
2 - OVERRUNNING CLUTCH ASSEMBLY  
3 - EXPANDING-TYPE SNAP-RING PLIERS  
4 - CLUTCH DRUM  
5 - ANNULUS GEAR  
6 - OVERRUNNING CLUTCH ASSEMBLY SEATED IN OUTPUT SHAFT



J9121-324

**Fig. 161 Planetary Gear Installation**

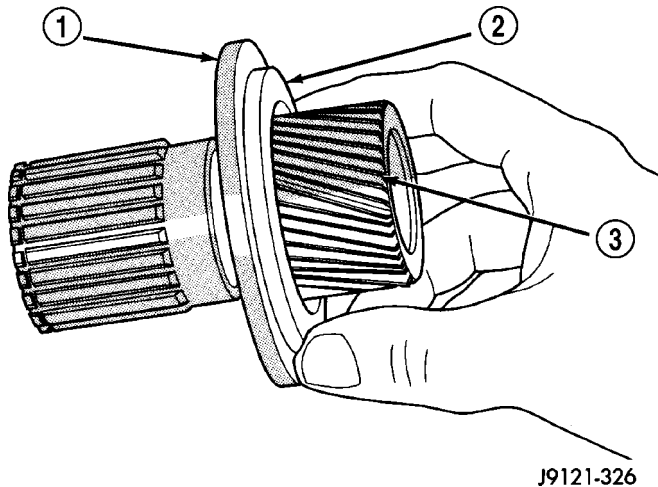
- 1 - PLANETARY GEAR  
2 - ANNULUS GEAR



## OVERDRIVE UNIT (Continued)

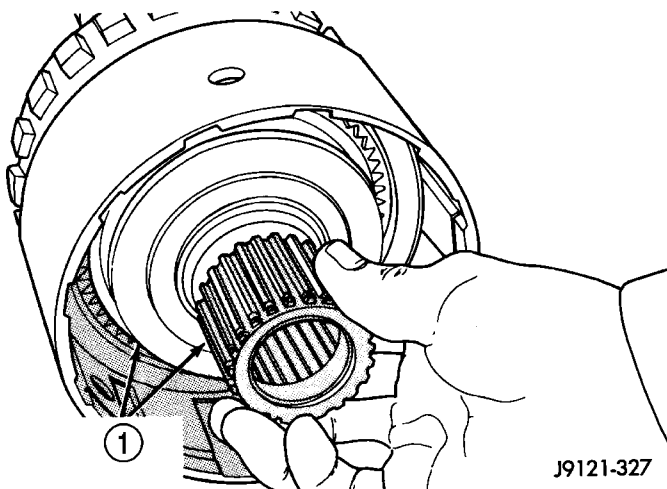
(13) Install planetary thrust bearing on sun gear (Fig. 162). Slide bearing onto gear and seat it against spring plate as shown. Bearing fits one-way only. If it does not seat squarely against spring plate, remove and reposition bearing.

(14) Install assembled sun gear, spring plate and thrust bearing (Fig. 163). Be sure sun gear and thrust bearing are fully seated before proceeding.



**Fig. 162 Planetary Thrust Bearing Installation**

- 1 - SPRING PLATE
- 2 - PLANETARY THRUST BEARING
- 3 - SUN GEAR



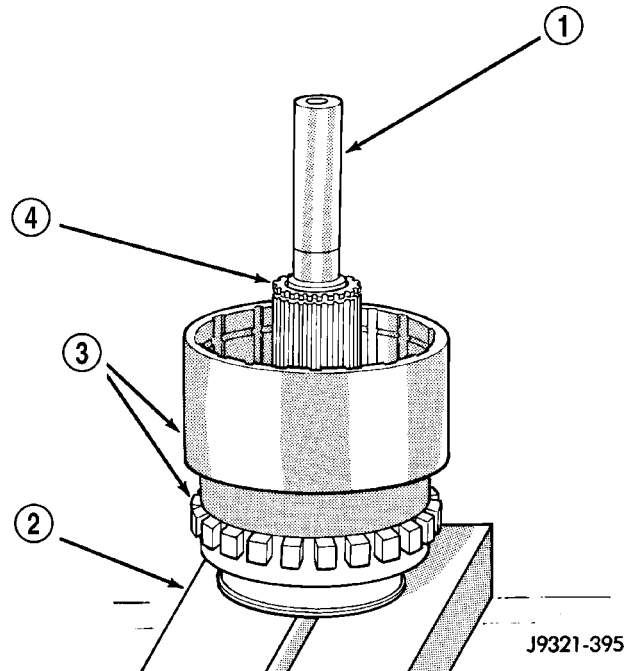
**Fig. 163 Sun Gear Installation**

- 1 - SUN GEAR AND SPRING PLATE ASSEMBLY

(15) Mount assembled output shaft, annulus gear, and clutch drum in shop press. Direct clutch spring, hub and clutch pack are easier to install with assembly mounted in press.

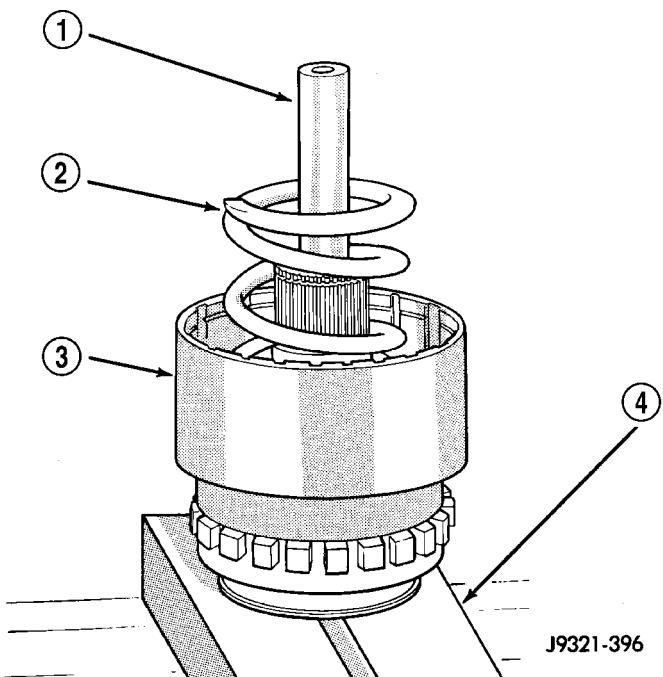
(16) Align splines in hubs of planetary gear and overrunning clutch with Alignment tool 6227-2 (Fig. 164). Insert tool through sun gear and into splines of both hubs. Be sure alignment tool is fully seated before proceeding.

(17) Install direct clutch spring (Fig. 165). Be sure spring is properly seated on spring plate.



**Fig. 164 Alignment Tool Installation**

- 1 - SPECIAL TOOL 6227-2
- 2 - PRESS PLATES
- 3 - ASSEMBLED DRUM AND ANNULUS GEAR
- 4 - SUN GEAR



**Fig. 165 Direct Clutch Spring Installation**

- 1 - SPECIAL TOOL 6227-2
- 2 - DIRECT CLUTCH SPRING
- 3 - CLUTCH HUB
- 4 - PRESS PLATES

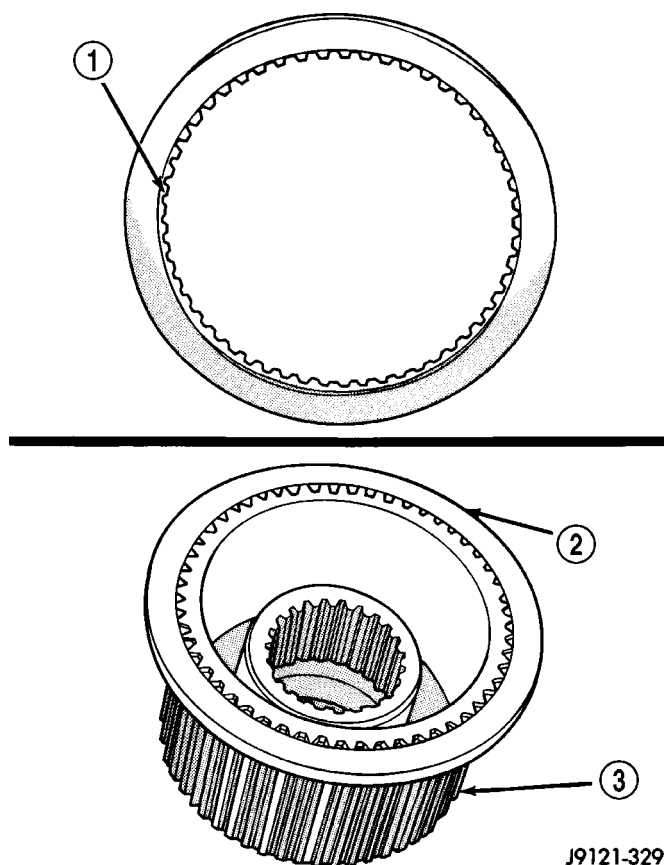
## OVERDRIVE UNIT (Continued)

**NOTE:** The 42RE transmission has 6 direct clutch discs and 5 clutch plates.

(18) Assemble and install direct clutch pack on hub as follows:

(a) Assemble clutch pack components (Fig. 166).

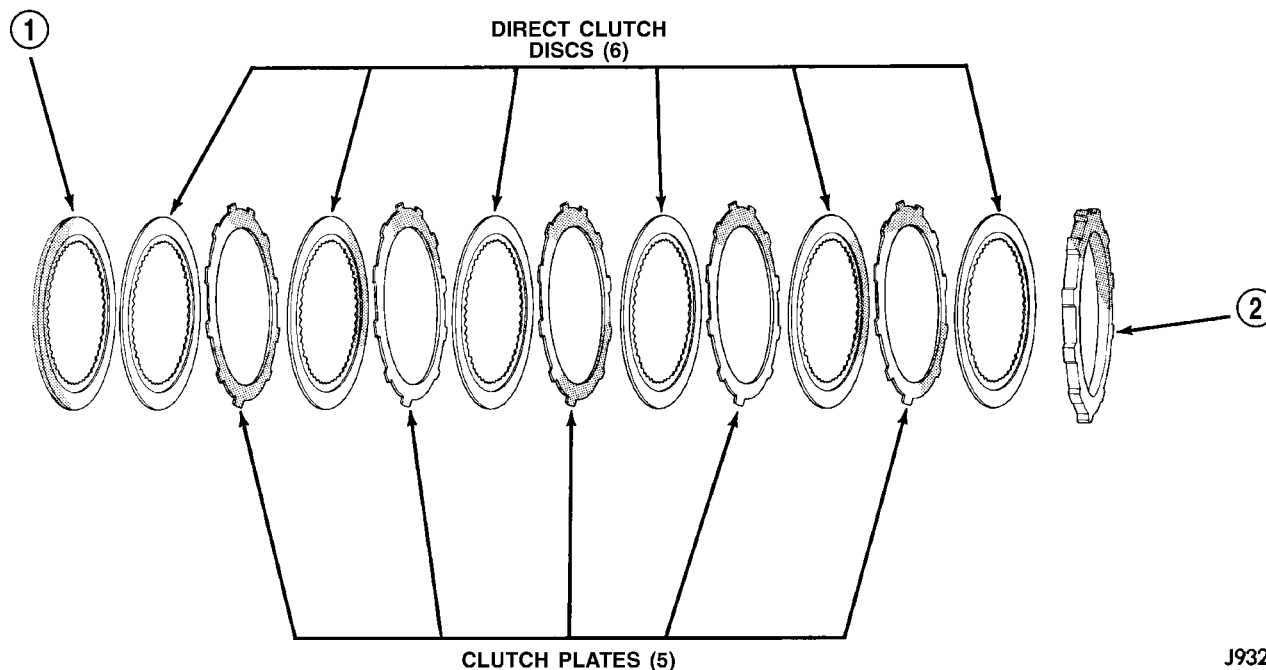
(b) Install direct clutch reaction plate on clutch hub first. Note that one side of reaction plate is counterbored. Be sure this side faces rearward. Splines at rear of hub are raised slightly. Counterbore in plate fits over raised splines. Plate should be flush with this end of hub (Fig. 167).



J9121-329

**Fig. 167 Correct Position Of Direct Clutch Reaction Plate**

- 1 - REACTION PLATE COUNTERBORE
- 2 - DIRECT CLUTCH REACTION PLATE (FLUSH WITH END OF HUB)
- 3 - CLUTCH HUB



J9321-368

**Fig. 166 42RE Direct Clutch Pack Components**

1 - REACTION PLATE

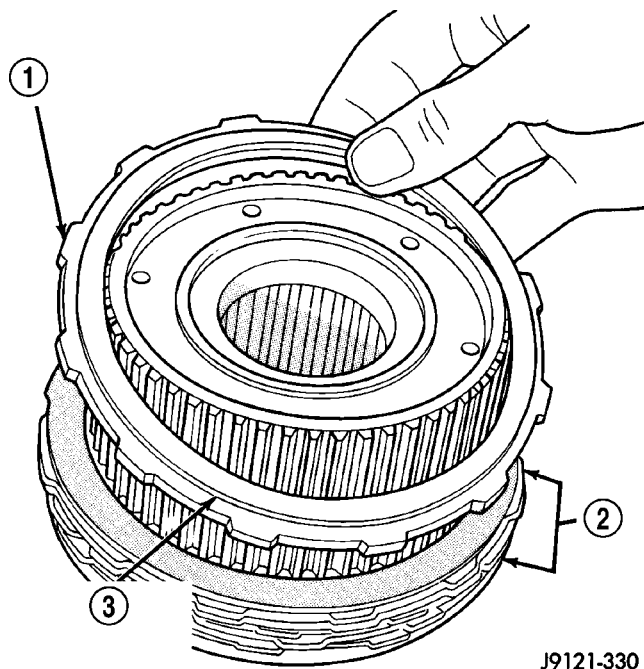
2 - PRESSURE PLATE

## OVERDRIVE UNIT (Continued)

(c) Install first clutch disc followed by a steel plate until all discs and plates have been installed.

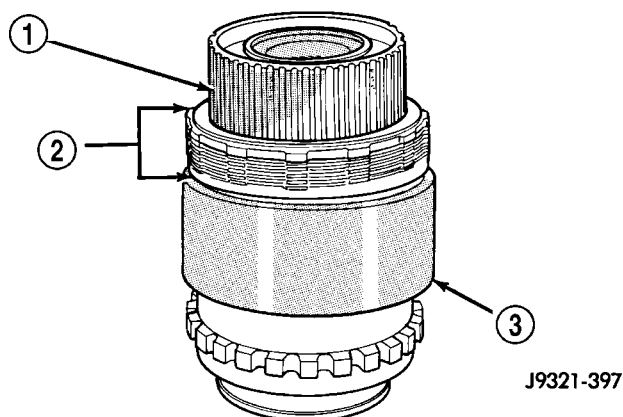
(d) Install pressure plate. This is last clutch pack item to be installed. Be sure plate is installed with shoulder side facing upward (Fig. 168).

(19) Install clutch hub and clutch pack on direct clutch spring (Fig. 169). Be sure hub is started on sun gear splines before proceeding.



**Fig. 168 Correct Position Of Direct Clutch Pressure Plate**

- 1 - DIRECT CLUTCH PRESSURE PLATE
- 2 - CLUTCH PACK
- 3 - BE SURE SHOULDER SIDE OF PLATE FACES UPWARD



**Fig. 169 Direct Clutch**

- 1 - CLUTCH HUB
- 2 - DIRECT CLUTCH PACK
- 3 - CLUTCH DRUM

**WARNING: THE NEXT STEP IN GEARTRAIN ASSEMBLY INVOLVES COMPRESSING THE DIRECT CLUTCH HUB AND SPRING. IT IS EXTREMELY IMPORTANT THAT PROPER EQUIPMENT BE USED TO COMPRESS THE SPRING AS SPRING FORCE IS APPROXIMATELY 830 POUNDS. USE COMPRESSOR TOOL C-6227-1 AND A HYDRAULIC-TYPE SHOP PRESS WITH A MINIMUM RAM TRAVEL OF 6 INCHES. THE PRESS MUST ALSO HAVE A BED THAT CAN BE ADJUSTED UP OR DOWN AS REQUIRED. RELEASE CLUTCH SPRING TENSION SLOWLY AND COMPLETELY TO AVOID PERSONAL INJURY.**

(20) Position Compressor Tool 6227-1 on clutch hub.

(21) Compress clutch hub and spring just enough to place tension on hub and hold it in place.

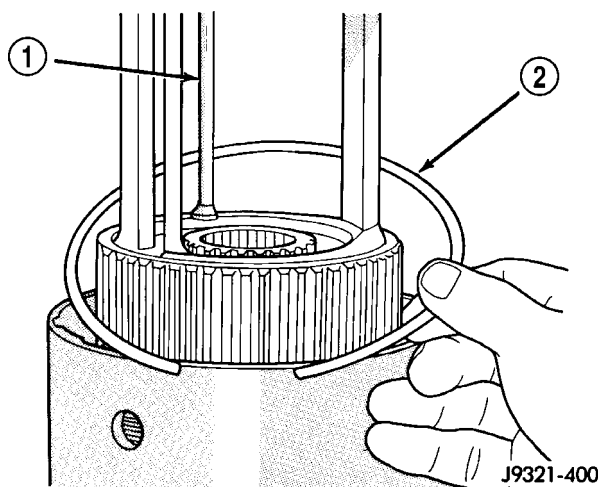
(22) Slowly compress clutch hub and spring. Compress spring and hub only enough to expose ring grooves for clutch pack snap ring and clutch hub retaining ring.

(23) Realign clutch pack on hub and seat clutch discs and plates in clutch drum.

(24) Install direct clutch pack snap-ring (Fig. 170). Be very sure snap-ring is fully seated in clutch drum ring groove.

(25) Install clutch hub retaining ring (Fig. 171). Be very sure retaining ring is fully seated in sun gear ring groove.

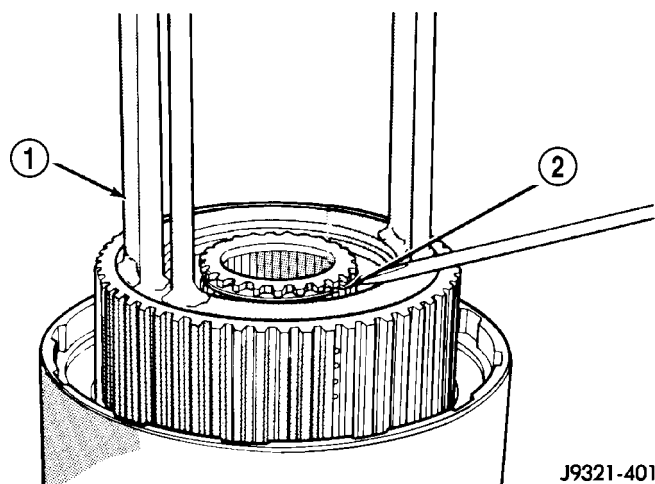
(26) Slowly release press ram, remove compressor tools and remove geartrain assembly.



**Fig. 170 Direct Clutch Pack Snap-Ring Installation**

- 1 - SPECIAL TOOL 6227-1
- 2 - DIRECT CLUTCH PACK SNAP-RING

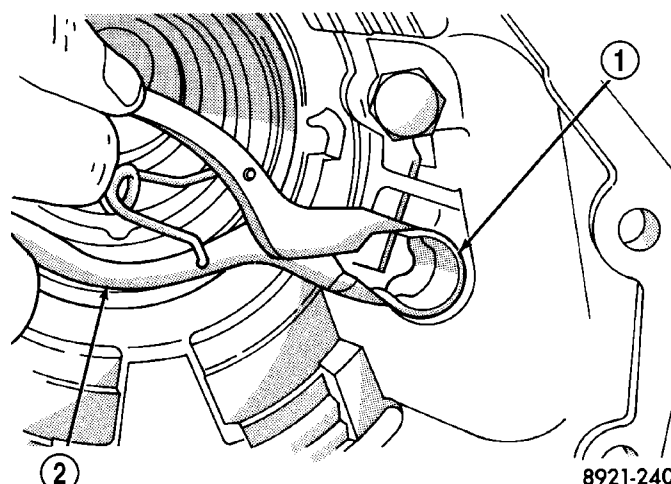
## OVERDRIVE UNIT (Continued)



J9321-401

**Fig. 171 Clutch Hub Retaining Ring Installation**

- 1 - SPECIAL TOOL 6227-1  
2 - CLUTCH HUB RETAINING RING



8921-240

**Fig. 173 Reaction Plug And Snap-Ring Installation**

- 1 - REACTION PLUG SNAP-RING  
2 - SNAP-RING PLIERS

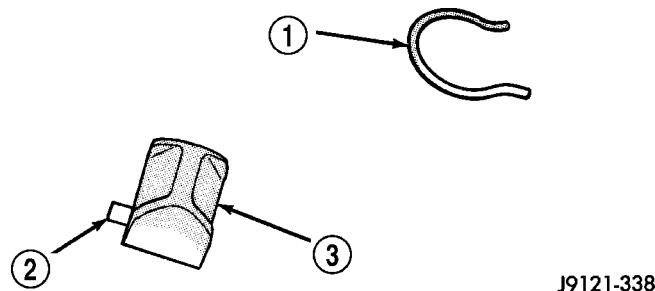
**GEAR CASE**

(1) Position park pawl and spring in case and install park pawl shaft. Verify that end of spring with 90° bend is hooked to pawl and straight end of spring is seated against case.

(2) Install pawl shaft retaining bolt. Tighten bolt to 27 N·m (20 ft. lbs.) torque.

(3) Install park lock reaction plug. Note that plug has locating pin at rear (Fig. 172). Be sure pin is seated in hole in case before installing snap-ring.

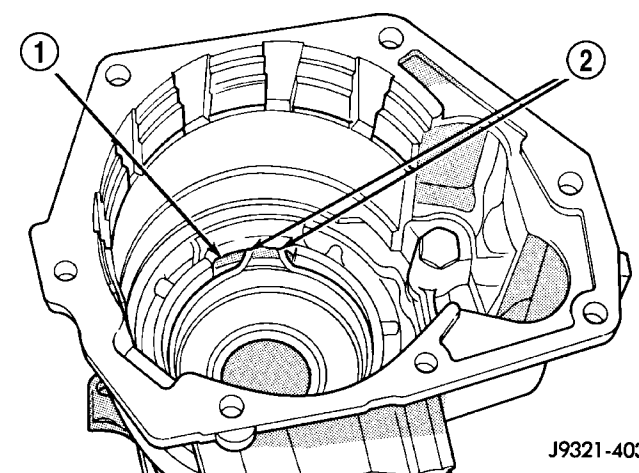
(4) Install reaction plug snap-ring (Fig. 173). Compress snap ring only enough for installation; do not distort it.



J9121-338

**Fig. 172 Reaction Plug Locating Pin And Snap-Ring**

- 1 - REACTION PLUG SNAP-RING (DO NOT OVERCOMPRESS TO INSTALL)  
2 - LOCATING PIN  
3 - PARK LOCK REACTION PLUG



J9321-403

**Fig. 174 Correct Rear Bearing Locating Ring Position**

- 1 - CASE ACCESS HOLE  
2 - TAB ENDS OF LOCATING RING

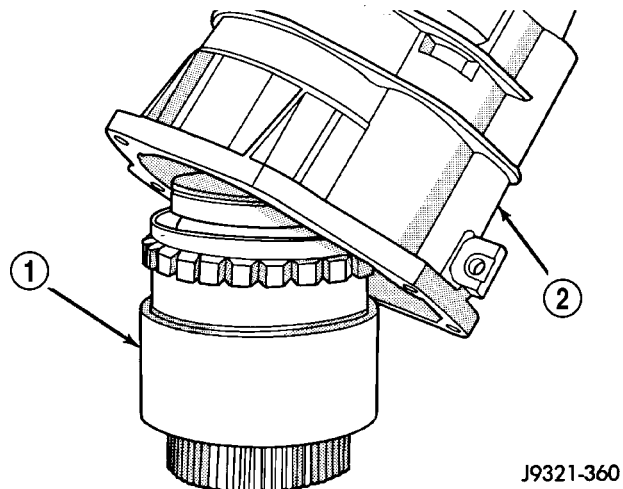


## OVERDRIVE UNIT (Continued)

(6) Verify that tab ends of rear bearing locating ring extend into access hole in gear case (Fig. 174).

(7) Support geartrain on Tool 6227-1 (Fig. 175). Be sure tool is securely seated in clutch hub.

(8) Install overdrive gear case on geartrain (Fig. 175).



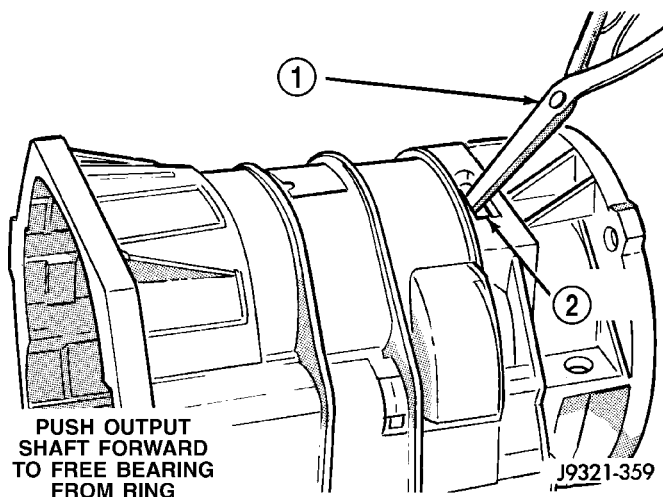
J9321-360

**Fig. 175 Overdrive Gear Case Installation**

- 1 - GEARTRAIN ASSEMBLY  
2 - GEAR CASE

(9) Expand front bearing locating ring with snapping pliers (Fig. 176). Then slide case downward until locating ring locks in bearing groove and release snap-ring.

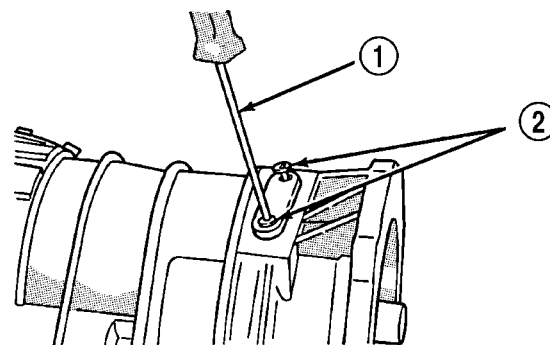
(10) Install locating ring access cover and gasket in overdrive unit case (Fig. 177).



J9321-359

**Fig. 176 Seating Locating Ring In Rear Bearing**

- 1 - EXPAND BEARING LOCATING RING WITH SNAP-RING PLIERS  
2 - ACCESS HOLE



J9321-357

**Fig. 177 Locating Ring Access Cover And Gasket Installation**

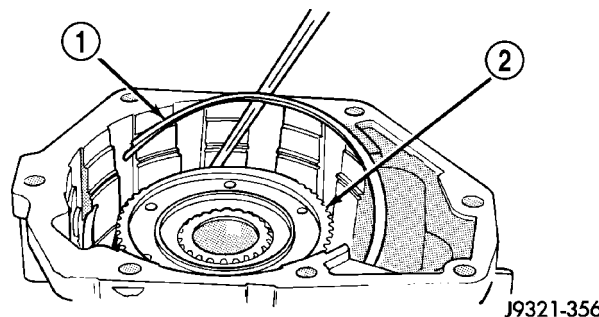
- 1 - TORX SCREWDRIVER (T25)  
2 - ACCESS COVER SCREWS

## OVERDRIVE CLUTCH

(1) Install overdrive clutch reaction ring first. Reaction ring is flat with notched ends (Fig. 178).

(2) Install wave spring on top of reaction ring (Fig. 179). Reaction ring and wave ring both fit in same ring groove. Use screwdriver to seat each ring securely in groove. Also ensure that the ends of the two rings are offset from each other.

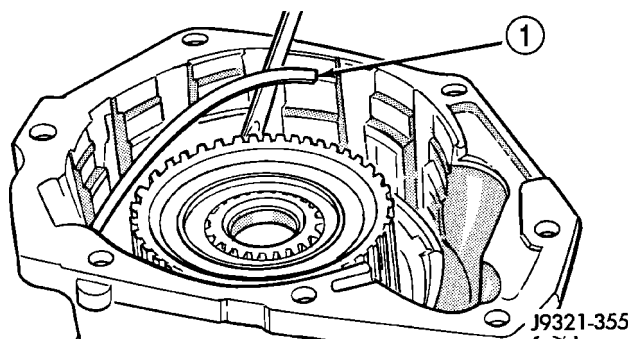
**NOTE:** The 42RE transmission has 3 overdrive clutch discs and 2 plates.



J9321-356

**Fig. 178 Overdrive Clutch Reaction Ring Installation**

- 1 - REACTION RING  
2 - CLUTCH HUB

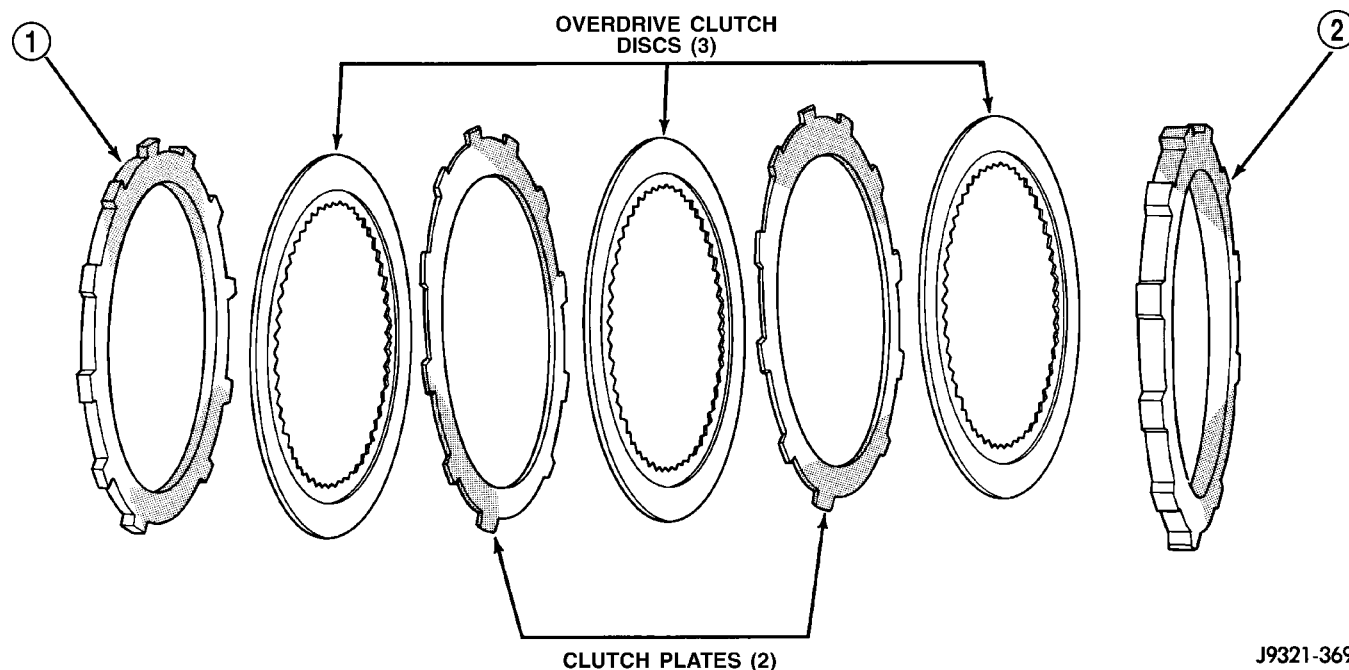


J9321-355

**Fig. 179 Overdrive Clutch Wave Spring Installation**

- 1 - WAVE SPRING

## OVERDRIVE UNIT (Continued)



J9321-369

**Fig. 180 42RE Overdrive Clutch Components**

1 - REACTION PLATE

2 - PRESSURE PLATE

- (3) Assemble overdrive clutch pack (Fig. 180).
- (4) Install overdrive clutch reaction plate first.

**NOTE:** The reaction plate is thinner than the pressure plate in a 42RE transmission.

- (5) Install first clutch disc followed by first clutch plate. Then install remaining clutch discs and plates in same order.
- (6) Install clutch pack pressure plate.
- (7) Install clutch pack wire-type retaining ring (Fig. 181).

**INTERMEDIATE SHAFT SPACER SELECTION**

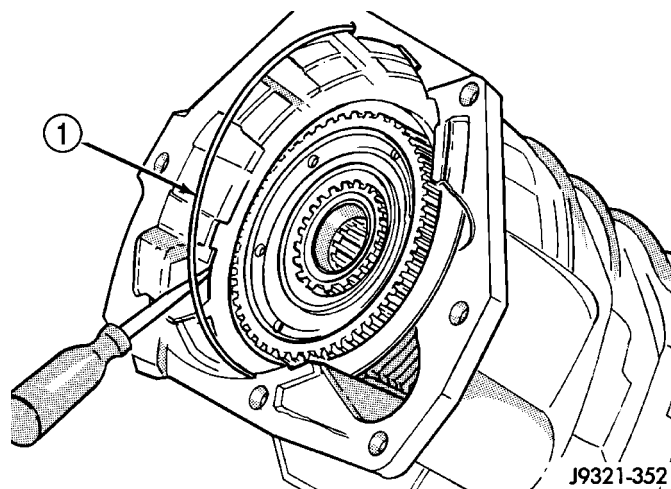
(1) Place overdrive unit in vertical position. Mount it on blocks, or in workbench with appropriate size mounting hole cut into it. Be sure unit is facing upward for access to direct clutch hub. Also be sure output shaft is not loaded and internal components are moved rearward for accurate measurement.

(2) Determine correct thickness intermediate shaft spacer as follows:

(a) Insert Special Tool 6312 through sun gear, planetary gear and into pilot bushing in output shaft. Be sure tool bottoms against planetary shoulder.

(b) Position Gauge Tool 6311 across face of overdrive case (Fig. 182). Then position Dial Caliper C-4962 over gauge tool.

(c) Extend sliding scale of dial caliper downward through gauge tool slot until scale contacts end of



J9321-352

**Fig. 181 Overdrive Clutch Pack Retaining Ring Installation**

1 - OVERDRIVE CLUTCH PACK RETAINING RING

Gauge Alignment Tool 6312. Lock scale in place. Remove dial caliper tool and note distance measured (Fig. 182).

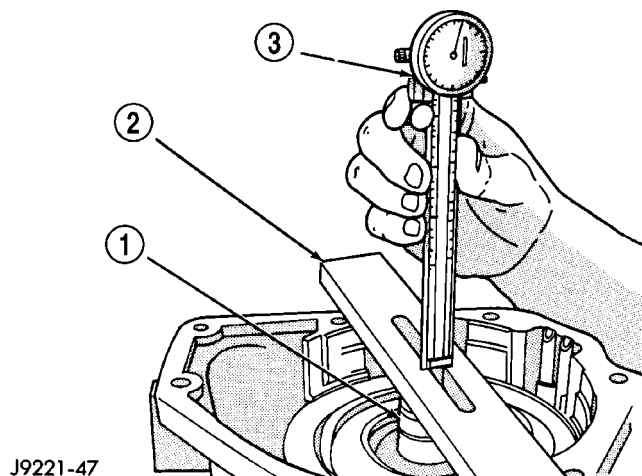
(d) Select proper thickness end play spacer from spacer chart based on distance measured (Fig. 183).

(e) Remove Gauge Alignment Tool 6312.

**OD THRUST PLATE SELECTION**

(1) Place overdrive unit in vertical position. Mount it on blocks, or in workbench with appropriate size

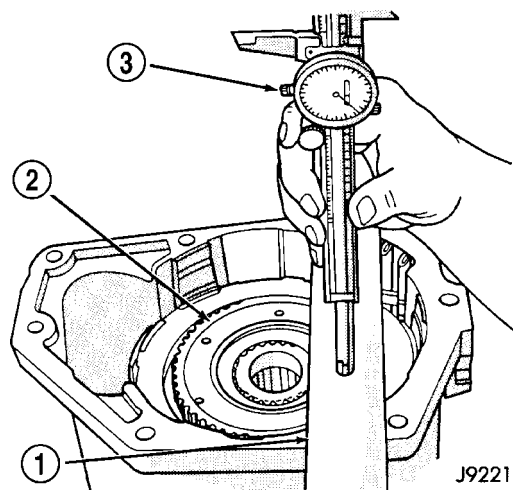
## OVERDRIVE UNIT (Continued)



J9221-47

**Fig. 182 Shaft End Play Measurement**

- 1 - SPECIAL TOOL 6312  
 2 - SPECIAL TOOL 6311  
 3 - SPECIAL TOOL C-4962



J9221-48

**Fig. 184 Overdrive Piston Thrust Plate Measurement**

- 1 - SPECIAL TOOL 6311  
 2 - DIRECT CLUTCH HUB THRUST BEARING SEAT  
 3 - SPECIAL TOOL C-4962

End Play Measurement (Inches)	Spacer Thickness (Inches)
.7336 - .7505	.158 - .159
.7506 - .7675	.175 - .176
.7676 - .7855	.193 - .194
.7856 - .8011	.211 - .212

J9121-341

**Fig. 183 Intermediate Shaft End Play Spacer Selection**

mounting hole cut into it. Be sure unit is facing upward for access to direct clutch hub. Also be sure output shaft is not loaded and internal components are moved rearward for accurate measurement.

(2) Determine correct thickness overdrive piston thrust plate as follows:

(a) Position Gauge Tool 6311 across face of overdrive case. Then position Dial Caliper C-4962 over gauge tool (Fig. 184).

(b) Measure distance to clutch hub thrust bearing seat at four points 90° apart. Then average measurements by adding them and dividing by 4.

(c) Select and install required thrust plate from information in thrust plate chart (Fig. 185).

(3) Leave Alignment Tool 6227-2 in place. Tool will keep planetary and clutch hub splines in alignment until overdrive unit is ready for installation on transmission.

(4) Transmission speed sensor can be installed at this time if desired. However, it is recommended that sensor not be installed until after overdrive unit is secured to transmission.

End Play Measurement (Inches)	Spacer Thickness (Inches)
1.7500 - 1.7649	.108 - .110
1.7650 - 1.7799	.123 - .125
1.7800 - 1.7949	.138 - .140
1.7950 - 1.8099	.153 - .155
1.8100 - 1.8249	.168 - .170
1.8250 - 1.8399	.183 - .185
1.8400 - 1.8549	.198 - .200
1.8550 - 1.8699	.213 - .215
1.8700 - 1.8849	.228 - .230
1.8850 - 1.8999	.243 - .245

J9121-342

**Fig. 185 Overdrive Piston Thrust Plate Selection****OVERDRIVE PISTON**

(1) Install new seals on over drive piston.

(2) Stand transmission case upright on bellhousing.

(3) Position Guide Ring 8114-1 on outer edge of overdrive piston retainer.

(4) Position Seal Guide 8114-2 on inner edge of overdrive piston retainer.

(5) Install overdrive piston in overdrive piston retainer by: aligning locating lugs on overdrive piston to the two mating holes in retainer.

(a) Aligning locating lugs on overdrive piston to the two mating holes in retainer.

(b) Lubricate overdrive piston seals with Mopar® Door Ease, or equivalent.

(c) Install piston over Seal Guide 8114-2 and inside Guide Ring 8114-1.

(d) Push overdrive piston into position in retainer.

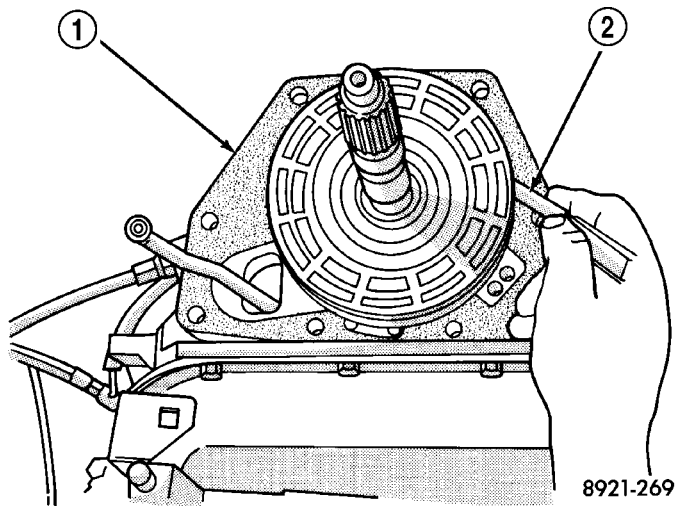


## OVERDRIVE UNIT (Continued)

- (e) Verify that the locating lugs entered the lug bores in the retainer.
- (6) Install intermediate shaft spacer on intermediate shaft.
- (7) Install overdrive piston thrust plate on overdrive piston.
- (8) Install overdrive piston thrust bearing on overdrive piston.
- (9) Install transmission speed sensor and O-ring seal in overdrive case (Fig. 126).

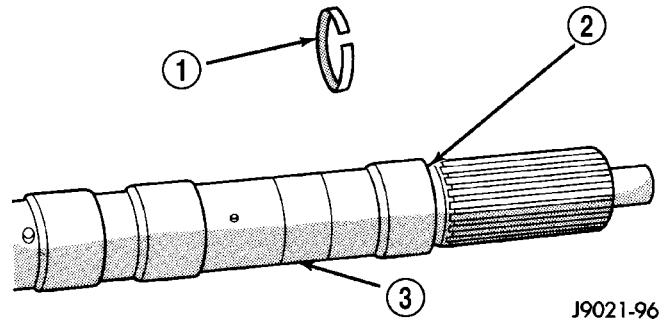
## INSTALLATION

- (1) Be sure overdrive unit Alignment Tool 6227-2 is fully seated before moving unit. If tool is not seated and gear splines rotate out of alignment, overdrive unit will have to be disassembled in order to realign splines.
- (2) If overdrive piston retainer was not removed during service and original case gasket is no longer reusable, prepare new gasket by trimming it.
- (3) Cut out old case gasket around piston retainer with razor knife (Fig. 186).
- (4) Use old gasket as template and trim new gasket to fit.
- (5) Position new gasket over piston retainer and on transmission case. Use petroleum jelly to hold gasket in place if necessary. Do not use any type of sealer to secure gasket. Use petroleum jelly only.

**Fig. 186 Trimming Overdrive Case Gasket**

- 1 - GASKET
- 2 - SHARP KNIFE

- (6) Install selective spacer on intermediate shaft, if removed. Spacer goes in groove just rearward of shaft rear splines (Fig. 187).

**Fig. 187 Intermediate Shaft Selective Spacer Location**

- 1 - SELECTIVE SPACER
- 2 - SPACER GROOVE
- 3 - INTERMEDIATE SHAFT

- (7) Install thrust bearing in overdrive unit sliding hub. Use petroleum jelly to hold bearing in position.

**CAUTION:** Be sure the shoulder on the inside diameter of the bearing is facing forward.

- (8) Verify that splines in overdrive planetary gear and overrunning clutch hub are aligned with Alignment Tool 6227-2. Overdrive unit cannot be installed if splines are not aligned. If splines have rotated out of alignment, unit will have to be disassembled to realign splines.

- (9) Carefully slide Alignment Tool 6227-2 out of overdrive planetary gear and overrunning clutch splines.

- (10) Raise overdrive unit and carefully slide it straight onto intermediate shaft. Insert park rod into park lock reaction plug at same time. Avoid tilting overdrive during installation as this could cause planetary gear and overrunning clutch splines to rotate out of alignment. If this occurs, it will be necessary to remove and disassemble overdrive unit to realign splines.

- (11) Work overdrive unit forward on intermediate shaft until seated against transmission case.

- (12) Install bolts attaching overdrive unit to transmission unit. Tighten bolts in diagonal pattern to 34 N·m (25 ft-lbs).

- (13) Connect the transmission speed sensor and overdrive wiring connectors.

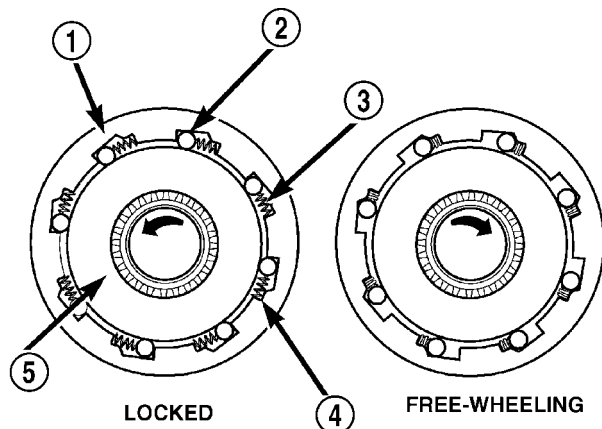
- (14) Install the transfer case, if equipped.

- (15) Align and install rear propeller shaft, if necessary. (Refer to 3 - DIFFERENTIAL & DRIVELINE/ PROPELLER SHAFT/PROPELLER SHAFT - INSTALLATION)

## OVERRUNNING CLUTCH CAM/OVERDRIVE PISTON RETAINER

### DESCRIPTION

The overrunning clutch (Fig. 188) consists of an inner race, an outer race (or cam), rollers and springs, and the spring retainer. The number of rollers and springs depends on what transmission and which overrunning clutch is being dealt with.



80be45f8

**Fig. 188 Overrunning Clutch**

- 1 - OUTER RACE (CAM)
- 2 - ROLLER
- 3 - SPRING
- 4 - SPRING RETAINER
- 5 - INNER RACE (HUB)

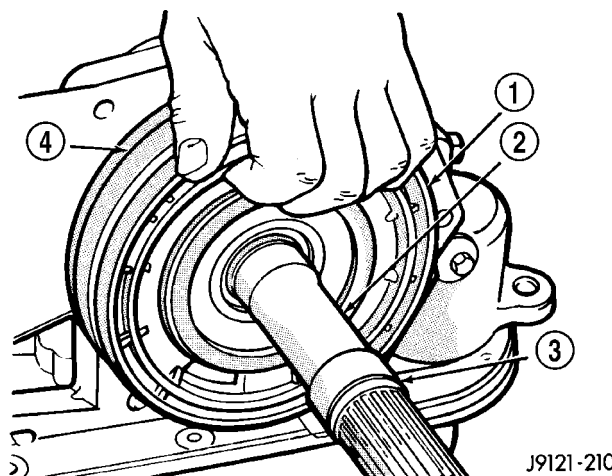
### OPERATION

As the inner race is rotated in a clockwise direction (as viewed from the front of the transmission), the race causes the rollers to roll toward the springs, causing them to compress against their retainer. The compression of the springs increases the clearance between the rollers and cam. This increased clearance between the rollers and cam results in a free-wheeling condition. When the inner race attempts to rotate counterclockwise, the action causes the rollers to roll in the same direction as the race, aided by the pushing of the springs. As the rollers try to move in the same direction as the inner race, they are wedged between the inner and outer races due to the design of the cam. In this condition, the clutch is locked and acts as one unit.

### DISASSEMBLY

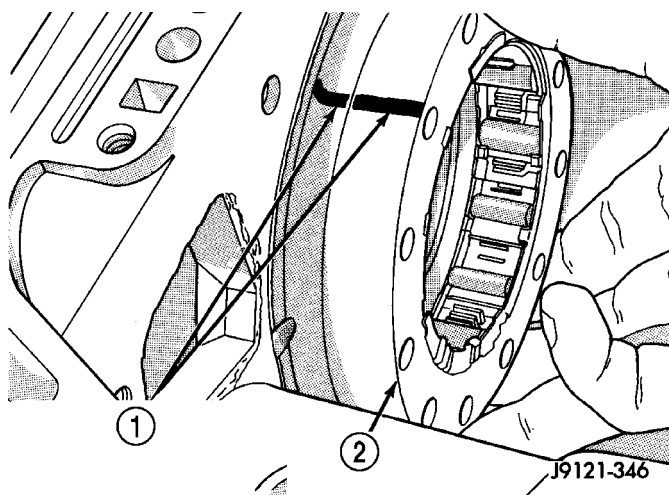
**NOTE:** To service the overrunning clutch cam and the overdrive piston retainer, the transmission geartrain and the overdrive unit must be removed from the transmission.

- (1) Remove the overdrive piston (Fig. 189).
- (2) Remove the overdrive piston retainer bolts.
- (3) Remove overdrive piston retainer.
- (4) Remove case gasket.
- (5) Mark the position of the overrunning clutch cam in the case (Fig. 190).
- (6) Remove the overrunning clutch cam bolts.
- (7) Remove the overrunning clutch cam.



**Fig. 189 Overdrive Piston Removal**

- 1 - OVERDRIVE CLUTCH PISTON
- 2 - INTERMEDIATE SHAFT
- 3 - SELECTIVE SPACER
- 4 - PISTON RETAINER



**Fig. 190 Overrunning Clutch Cam Removal**

- 1 - ALIGN MARKS IDENTIFYING NON-THREADED HOLE IN CAM AND CASE
- 2 - OVERRUNNING CLUTCH ASSEMBLY

### CLEANING

Clean the overrunning clutch assembly, clutch cam, low-reverse drum, and overdrive piston retainer in solvent. Dry them with compressed air after cleaning.

## OVERRUNNING CLUTCH CAM/OVERDRIVE PISTON RETAINER (Continued)

## INSPECTION

Inspect condition of each clutch part after cleaning. Replace the overrunning clutch roller and spring assembly if any rollers or springs are worn or damaged, or if the roller cage is distorted, or damaged. Replace the cam if worn, cracked or damaged.

Replace the low-reverse drum if the clutch race, roller surface or inside diameter is scored, worn or damaged. **Do not remove the clutch race from the low-reverse drum under any circumstances. Replace the drum and race as an assembly if either component is damaged.**

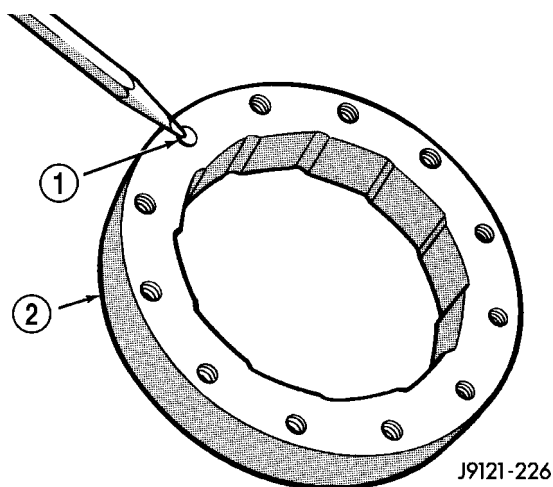
Examine the overdrive piston retainer carefully for wear, cracks, scoring or other damage. Be sure the retainer hub is a snug fit in the case and drum. Replace the retainer if worn or damaged.

## ASSEMBLY

(1) Examine bolt holes in overrunning clutch cam. Note that one hole is **not threaded** (Fig. 191). This hole must align with blank area in clutch cam bolt circle (Fig. 192). Mark hole location on clutch cam and blank area in case with grease pencil, paint stripe, or scribe mark for assembly reference.

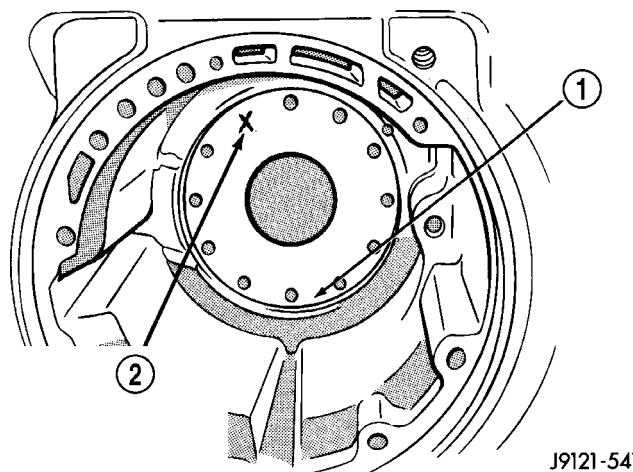
(2) Mark location of non-threaded hole in clutch cam and blank area in bolt circle with grease pencil.

(3) Align and install overrunning clutch and cam in case (Fig. 193). Be sure cam is correctly installed. Bolt holes in cam are slightly countersunk on one side. Be sure this side of cam faces rearward (toward piston retainer).



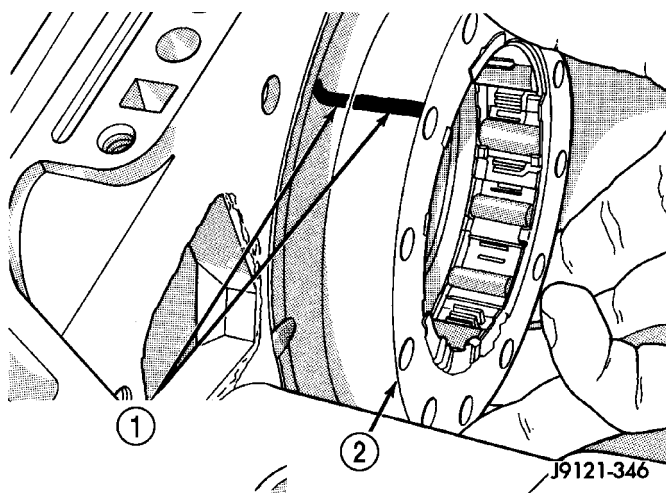
**Fig. 191 Location Of Non-Threaded Hole In Clutch Cam**

- 1 - NON-THREADED HOLE  
2 - OVERRUNNING CLUTCH CAM



**Fig. 192 Location Of Blank Area In Clutch Cam Bolt Circle**

- 1 - OVERRUNNING CLUTCH CAM SEAT IN CASE  
2 - NON-THREADED HOLE IN CLUTCH CAM ALIGNS HERE (BLANK AREA) OF SEAT



**Fig. 193 Overrunning Clutch Installation**

- 1 - ALIGN MARKS IDENTIFYING NON-THREADED HOLE IN CAM AND CASE  
2 - OVERRUNNING CLUTCH ASSEMBLY

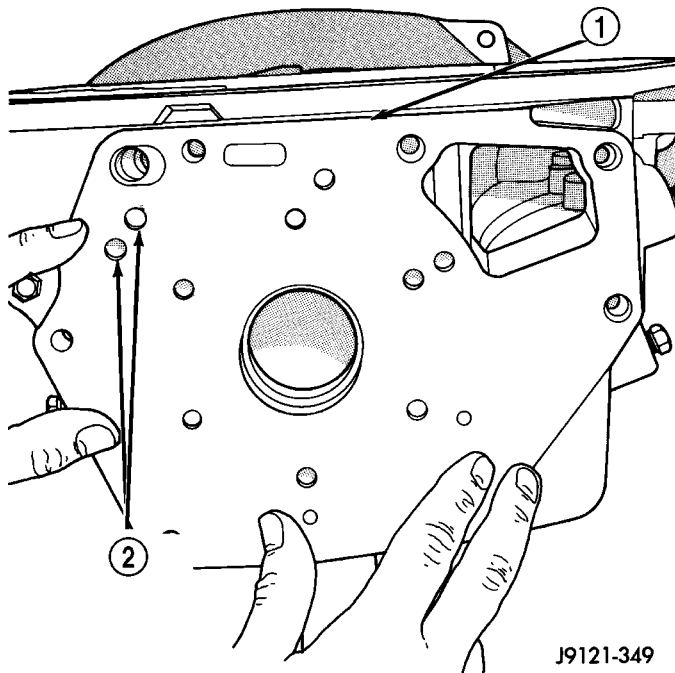
(4) Verify that non-threaded hole in clutch cam is properly aligned. Check alignment by threading a bolt into each bolt hole. Adjust clutch cam position if necessary.

(5) Install and tighten overrunning clutch cam bolts to 17 N·m (13 ft. lbs.) torque. Note that clutch cam bolts are shorter than piston retainer bolts.

## OVERRUNNING CLUTCH CAM/OVERDRIVE PISTON RETAINER (Continued)

(6) Install new gasket at rear of transmission case. Use petroleum jelly to hold gasket in place. Be sure to align governor feed holes in gasket with feed passages in case (Fig. 194). Also install gasket before overdrive piston retainer. Center hole in gasket is smaller than retainer and cannot be installed over retainer.

(7) Position overdrive piston retainer on transmission case and align bolt holes in retainer, gasket and case (Fig. 195). Then install and tighten retainer bolts to 17 N·m (13 ft. lbs.) torque.



**Fig. 194 Installing/Aligning Case Gasket**

- 1 - CASE GASKET
- 2 - BE SURE GOVERNOR TUBE FEED HOLES IN CASE AND GASKET ARE ALIGNED

(8) Install new seals on over drive piston.  
(9) Stand transmission case upright on bellhousing.

(10) Position Guide Ring 8114-1 on outer edge of overdrive piston retainer.

(11) Position Seal Guide 8114-2 on inner edge of overdrive piston retainer.

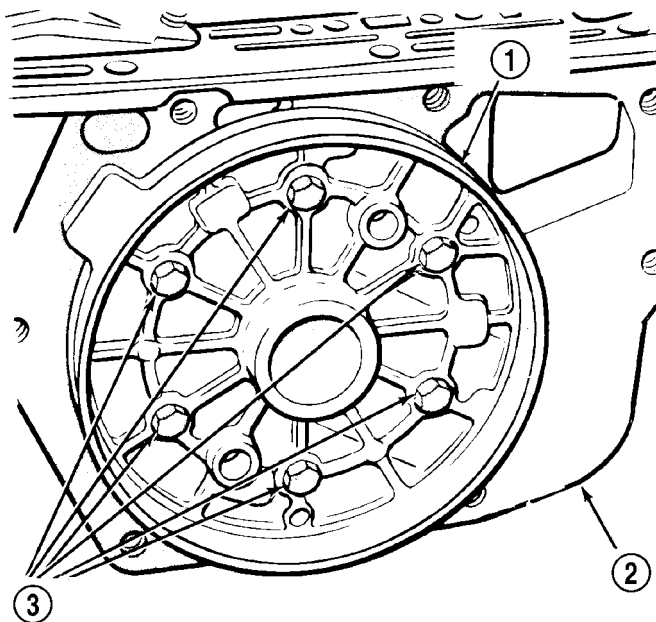
(12) Install overdrive piston in overdrive piston retainer by: aligning locating lugs on overdrive piston to the two mating holes in retainer.

(a) Aligning locating lugs on overdrive piston to the two mating holes in retainer.

(b) Lubricate overdrive piston seals with Mopar® Door Ease, or equivalent.

(c) Install piston over Seal Guide 8114-2 and inside Guide Ring 8114-1.

(d) Push overdrive piston into position in retainer.



J9321-464

**Fig. 195 Aligning Overdrive Piston Retainer**

- 1 - PISTON RETAINER
- 2 - GASKET
- 3 - RETAINER BOLTS

(e) Verify that the locating lugs entered the lug bores in the retainer.

**NOTE:** Install the remaining transmission components and the overdrive unit.

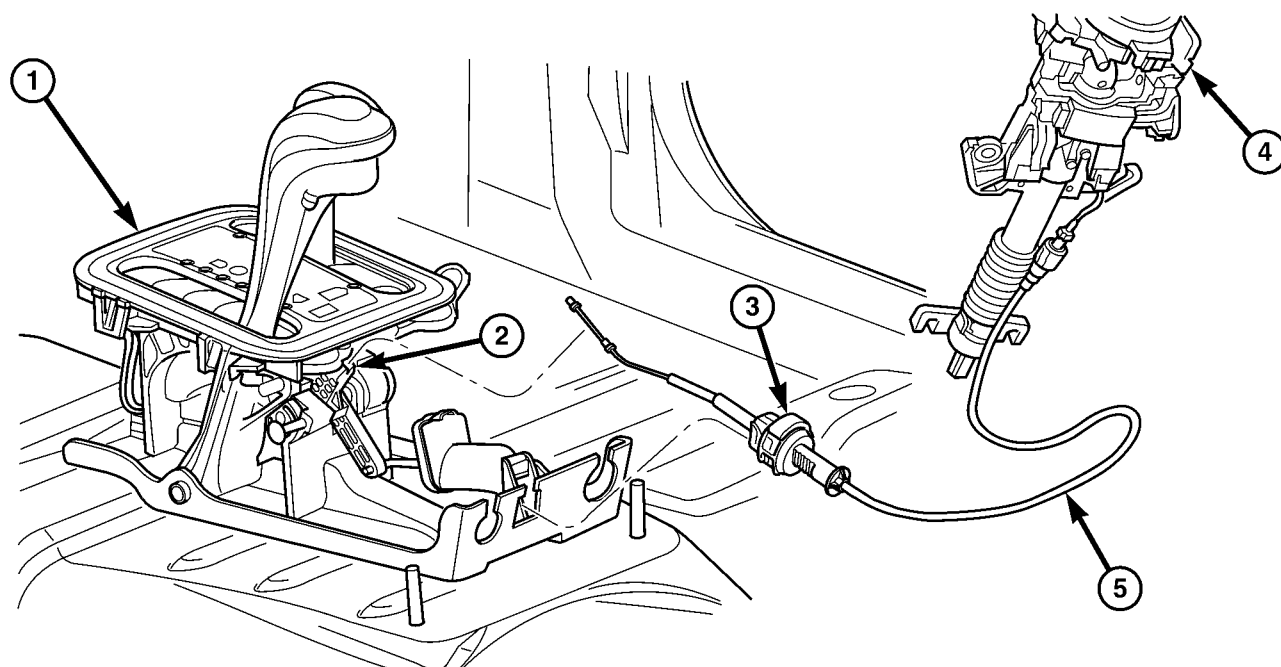
## PARK LOCK CABLE

### REMOVAL

- (1) Place the shifter in the PARK position.
- (2) Lower the steering column cover.
- (3) With the ignition switch in the "RUN" position depress the park lock cable locking tab, located on top of the cable connector at the steering column and pull the park lock cable straight out.
- (4) Remove the park lock cable from steering column (Fig. 196).
- (5) Remove the floor console and related trim. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/FLOOR CONSOLE - REMOVAL)
- (6) Disconnect the park lock cable from the shift BTSI lever and remove the cable from the shifter assembly bracket.
- (7) Release the park lock cable from any remaining clips.
- (8) Remove park lock cable from the vehicle.



## PARK LOCK CABLE (Continued)



80dba6a6

**Fig. 196 Brake Transmission Shift Interlock**

1 - SHIFT MECHANISM  
2 - SHIFTER BTSI LEVER  
3 - ADJUSTMENT CLIP

4 - STEERING COLUMN ASSEMBLY  
5 - INTERLOCK CABLE

**INSTALLATION**

**NOTE:** The gearshift cable must be secured into position and properly adjusted before the installation of the Park Lock Cable.

- (1) Verify that the shifter is in the PARK position.
- (2) Push the park lock cable straight into the square mounting hole in the steering column until cable snaps in place.
- (3) Route park lock cable to the shifter mechanism.
- (4) Install the park lock cable end fitting into shifter BTSI lever.
- (5) Pull rearward on the cable housing to snap park lock cable adjuster ears into floor shifter bracket.
- (6) Place the ignition key cylinder in the ACCESSORY position.
- (7) Push the cable adjuster lock clamp downward to lock it.
- (8) Test the park lock cable operation.
- (9) Install the floor console and related trim. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/FLOOR CONSOLE - INSTALLATION)

**PARK/NEUTRAL POSITION SWITCH****DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - PARK/NEUTRAL POSITION SWITCH**

The center terminal of the park/neutral position switch is the starter-circuit terminal. It provides the ground for the starter solenoid circuit through the selector lever in PARK and NEUTRAL positions only. The outer terminals on the switch are for the backup lamp circuit.

**SWITCH TEST**

To test the switch, remove the wiring connector. Test for continuity between the center terminal and the transmission case. Continuity should exist only when the transmission is in PARK or NEUTRAL.

Shift the transmission into REVERSE and test continuity at the switch outer terminals. Continuity should exist only when the transmission is in REVERSE. Continuity should not exist between the outer terminals and the case.

Check gearshift linkage adjustment before replacing a switch that tests faulty.

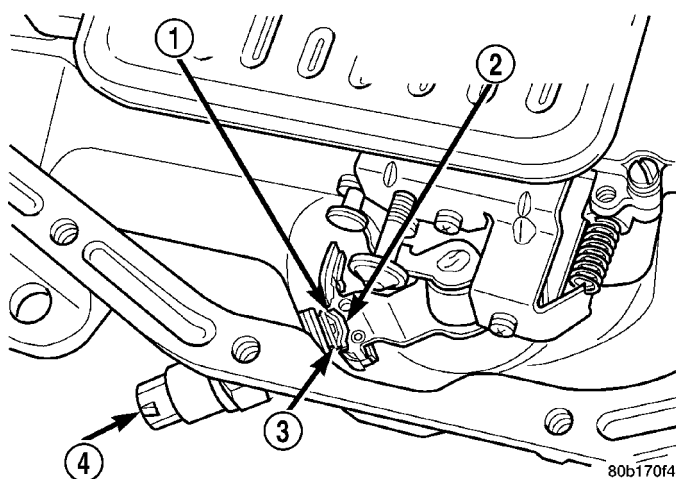
## PARK/NEUTRAL POSITION SWITCH (Continued)

## REMOVAL

- (1) Raise vehicle and position drain pan under switch.
- (2) Disconnect switch wires.
- (3) Remove switch from case.

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Move shift lever to PARK and NEUTRAL positions. Verify that switch operating lever fingers are centered in switch opening in case (Fig. 197).



**Fig. 197 Park/Neutral Position Switch**

- 1 - NEUTRAL CONTACT
- 2 - MANUAL LEVER AND SWITCH PLUNGER IN REVERSE POSITION
- 3 - PARK CONTACT
- 4 - SWITCH

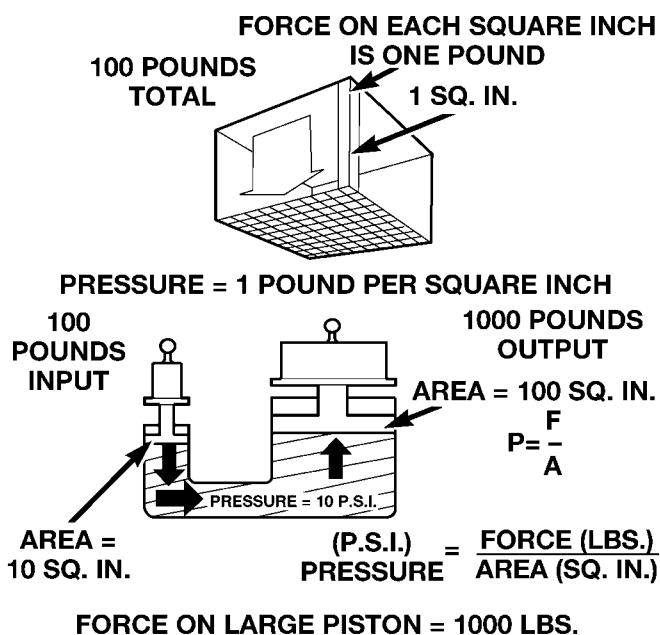
- (2) Install new seal on switch and install switch in case. Tighten switch to 34 N·m (25 ft. lbs.) torque.
- (3) Test continuity of new switch with 12V test lamp.
- (4) Connect switch wires and lower vehicle.
- (5) Top off transmission fluid level.

## OPERATION

The principal which makes this operation possible is known as Pascal's Law. Pascal's Law can be stated as: "Pressure on a confined fluid is transmitted equally in all directions and acts with equal force on equal areas."

## PRESSURE

Pressure (Fig. 198) is nothing more than force (lbs.) divided by area (in or ft.), or force per unit area. Given a 100 lb. block and an area of 100 sq. in. on the floor, the pressure exerted by the block is: 100 lbs. 100 in or 1 pound per square inch, or PSI as it is commonly referred to.



80bfe272

**Fig. 198 Force and Pressure Relationship**

## PISTONS

## DESCRIPTION

There are several sizes and types of pistons used in an automatic transmission. Some pistons are used to apply clutches. They all have in common the fact that they are round or circular in shape, located within a smooth walled cylinder, which is closed at one end and converts fluid pressure into mechanical movement. The fluid pressure exerted on the piston is contained within the system through the use of piston rings or seals.

## PISTONS (Continued)

### PRESSURE ON A CONFINED FLUID

Pressure is exerted on a confined fluid (Fig. 199) by applying a force to some given area in contact with the fluid. A good example of this is a cylinder filled with fluid and equipped with a piston that is closely fitted to the cylinder wall. If a force is applied to the piston, pressure will be developed in the fluid. Of course, no pressure will be created if the fluid is not confined. It will simply "leak" past the piston. There must be a resistance to flow in order to create pressure. Piston sealing is extremely important in hydraulic operation. Several kinds of seals are used to accomplish this within a transmission. These include but are not limited to O-rings, D-rings, lip seals, sealing rings, or extremely close tolerances between the piston and the cylinder wall. The force exerted is downward (gravity), however, the principle remains the same no matter which direction is taken. The pressure created in the fluid is equal to the force applied, divided by the piston area. If the force is 100 lbs., and the piston area is 10 sq. in., then the pressure created equals 10 PSI. Another interpretation of Pascal's Law is that regardless of container shape or size, the pressure will be maintained throughout, as long as the fluid is confined. In other words, the pressure in the fluid is the same everywhere within the container.

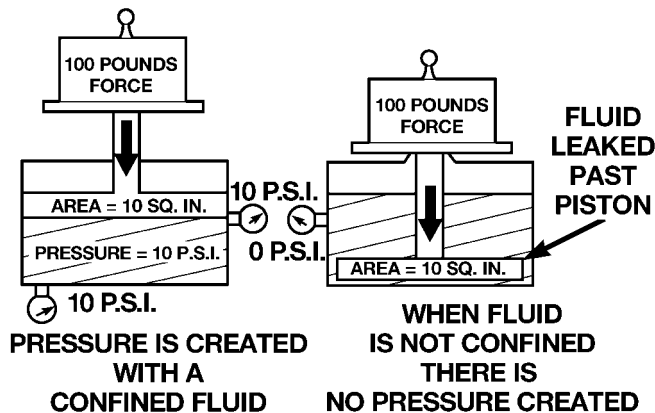


Fig. 199 Pressure on a Confined Fluid

80bfe273

### FORCE MULTIPLICATION

Using the 10 PSI example used in the illustration (Fig. 200), a force of 1000 lbs. can be moved with a force of only 100 lbs. The secret of force multiplication in hydraulic systems is the total fluid contact area employed. The illustration, (Fig. 200), shows an area that is ten times larger than the original area. The pressure created with the smaller 100 lb. input is 10 PSI. The concept "pressure is the same everywhere" means that the pressure underneath the larger piston is also 10 PSI. Pressure is equal to the force applied divided by the contact area. Therefore, by means of simple algebra, the output force may be found. This concept is extremely important, as it is also used in the design

and operation of all shift valves and limiting valves in the valve body, as well as the pistons, of the transmission, which activate the clutches and bands. It is nothing more than using a difference of area to create a difference in pressure to move an object.

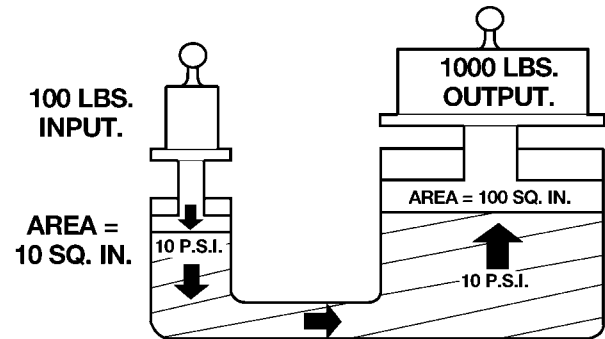


Fig. 200 Force Multiplication

80bfe274

### PISTON TRAVEL

The relationship between hydraulic lever and a mechanical lever is the same. With a mechanical lever it's a weight-to-distance output rather than a pressure-to-area output. Using the same forces and areas as in the previous example, the smaller piston (Fig. 201) has to move ten times the distance required to move the larger piston one inch. Therefore, for every inch the larger piston moves, the smaller piston moves ten inches. This principle is true in other instances also. A common garage floor jack is a good example. To raise a car weighing 2000 lbs., an effort of only 100 lbs. may be required. For every inch the car moves upward, the input piston at the jack handle must move 20 inches downward.

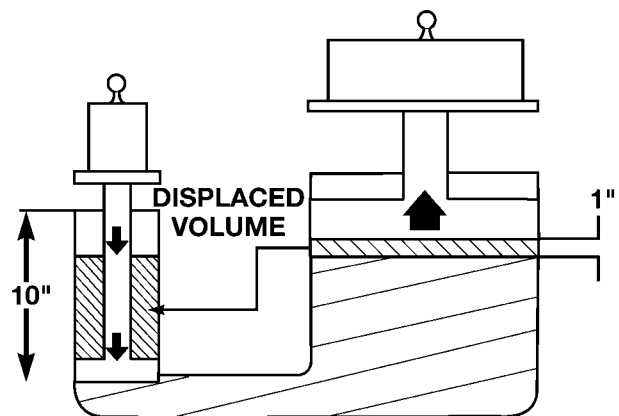


Fig. 201 Piston Travel

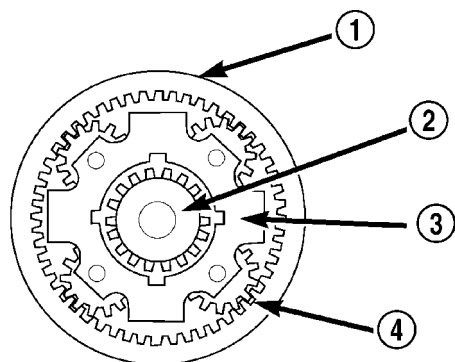
80bfe275



## PLANETARY GEARTRAIN/ OUTPUT SHAFT

### DESCRIPTION

The planetary gearsets (Fig. 202) are designated as the front, rear, and overdrive planetary gear assemblies and located in such order. A simple planetary gearset consists of three main members:



80be45f9

**Fig. 202 Planetary Gearset**

- 1 - ANNULUS GEAR
- 2 - SUN GEAR
- 3 - PLANET CARRIER
- 4 - PLANET PINIONS (4)

- The sun gear which is at the center of the system.
- The planet carrier with planet pinion gears which are free to rotate on their own shafts and are in mesh with the sun gear.
- The annulus gear, which rotates around and is in mesh with the planet pinion gears.

**NOTE:** The number of pinion gears does not affect the gear ratio, only the duty rating.

### OPERATION

With any given planetary gearset, several conditions must be met for power to be able to flow:

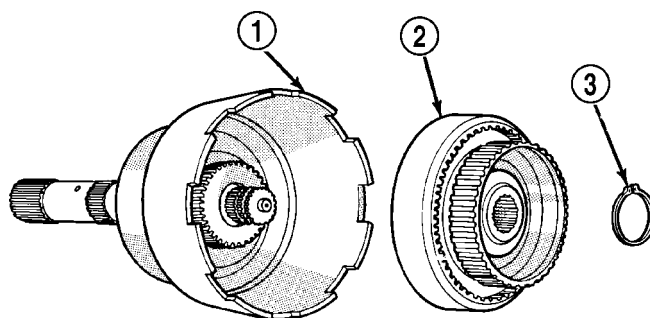
- One member must be held.
- Another member must be driven or used as an input.

- The third member may be used as an output for power flow.
- For direct drive to occur, two gear members in the front planetary gearset must be driven.

**NOTE:** Gear ratios are dependent on the number of teeth on the annulus and sun gears.

### DISASSEMBLY

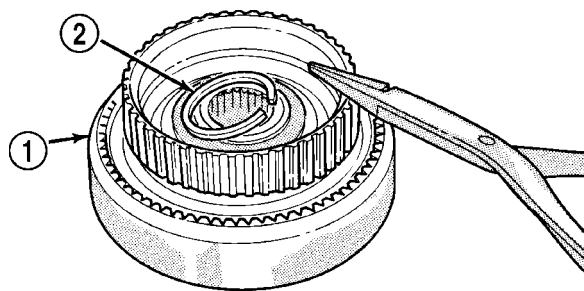
- (1) Remove planetary snap-ring (Fig. 203).
- (2) Remove front annulus and planetary assembly from driving shell (Fig. 203).
- (3) Remove snap-ring that retains front planetary gear in annulus gear (Fig. 204).



J9421-175

**Fig. 203 Front Annulus And Planetary Assembly Removal**

- 1 - DRIVING SHELL
- 2 - FRONT ANNULUS AND PLANETARY ASSEMBLY
- 3 - PLANETARY SNAP-RING



J9421-176

**Fig. 204 Front Planetary Snap-Ring Removal**

- 1 - FRONT ANNULUS GEAR
- 2 - PLANETARY SNAP-RING

## PLANETARY GEARTRAIN/OUTPUT SHAFT (Continued)

(4) Remove tabbed thrust washer and tabbed thrust plate from hub of front annulus (Fig. 205).

(5) Separate front annulus and planetary gears (Fig. 205).

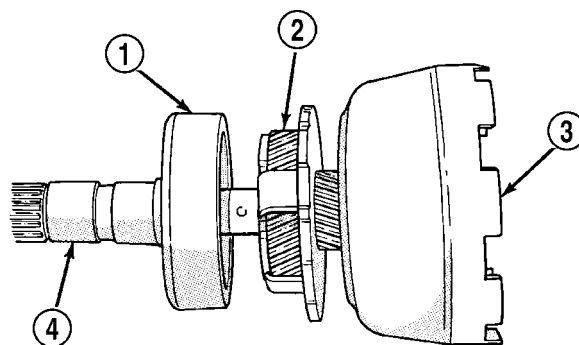
(6) Remove front planetary gear front thrust washer from annulus gear hub.

(7) Separate and remove driving shell, rear planetary and rear annulus from output shaft (Fig. 206).

(8) Remove front planetary rear thrust washer from driving shell.

(9) Remove tabbed thrust washers from rear planetary gear.

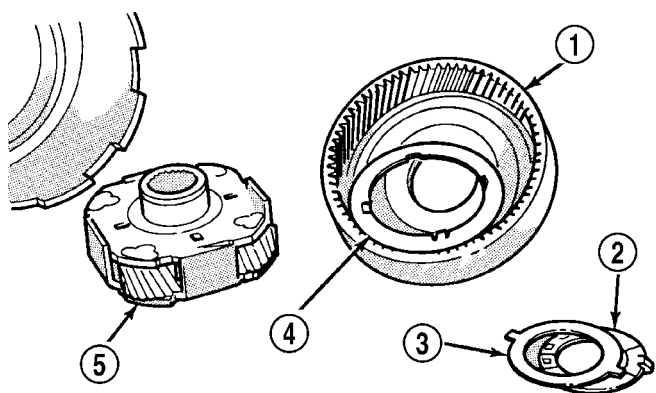
(10) Remove lock ring that retains sun gear in driving shell. Then remove sun gear, spacer and thrust plates.



J9421-178

**Fig. 206 Removing Driving Shell, Rear Planetary And Rear Annulus**

- 1 - REAR ANNULUS
- 2 - REAR PLANETARY
- 3 - DRIVING SHELL
- 4 - OUTPUT SHAFT



J9421-177

**Fig. 205 Front Planetary And Annulus Gear Disassembly**

- 1 - FRONT ANNULUS
- 2 - THRUST WASHER
- 3 - THRUST PLATE
- 4 - FRONT THRUST WASHER
- 5 - FRONT PLANETARY

## INSPECTION

Check sun gear and driving shell condition. Replace the gear if damaged or if the bushings are scored or worn. The bushings are not serviceable. Replace the driving shell if worn, cracked or damaged.

Replace planetary gear sets if gears, pinion pins, or carrier are damaged in any way. Replace the annulus gears and supports if either component is worn or damaged.

Inspect the geartrain spacers, thrust plates, snap-rings, and thrust washers. Replace any of these parts that are worn, distorted or damaged. Do not attempt to reuse these parts.

The planetary gear thrust washers are different sizes. The large diameter washers go on the front planetary and the smaller washers go on the rear planetary. All the washers have four locating tabs on

them. These tabs fit in the holes or slots provided in each planetary gear.

Inspect the output shaft carefully. Pay particular attention to the machined bushing/bearing surfaces on the shaft and the governor valve shaft bore at the shaft rear.

Replace the output shaft if the machined surfaces are scored, pitted, or damaged in any way. Also replace the shaft if the splines are damaged, or exhibits cracks at any location (especially at the governor valve shaft bore).

The annulus gears can be removed from their supports if necessary. Just remove the snap-rings and separate the two parts when replacement is necessary. In addition, the annulus gear bushings can be replaced if severely worn, or scored. However it is not necessary to replace the bushings if they only exhibit normal wear. Check bushing fit on the output shaft to be sure.

## ASSEMBLY

(1) Lubricate output shaft and planetary components with transmission fluid. Use petroleum jelly to lubricate and hold thrust washers and plates in position.

(2) Assemble rear annulus gear and support if disassembled. Be sure support snap-ring is seated and that shoulder-side of support faces rearward (Fig. 207).

(3) Install rear thrust washer on rear planetary gear. Use enough petroleum jelly to hold washer in place. Also be sure all four washer tabs are properly engaged in gear slots.

## PLANETARY GEARTRAIN/OUTPUT SHAFT (Continued)

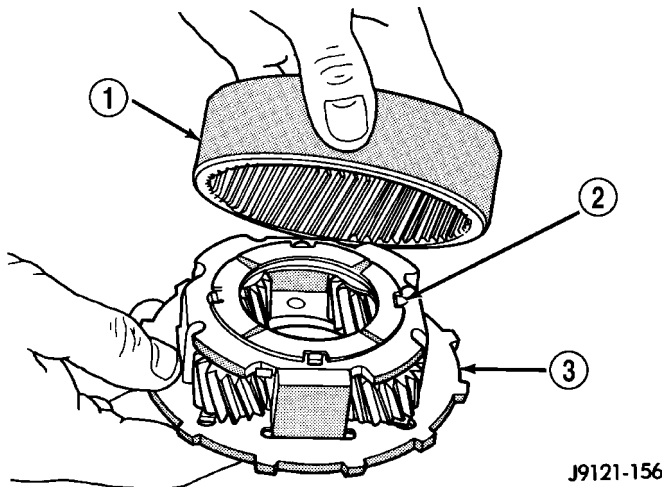
(4) Install rear annulus over and onto rear planetary gear (Fig. 207).

(5) Install assembled rear planetary and annulus gear on output shaft (Fig. 208). Verify that assembly is fully seated on shaft.

(6) Install front thrust washer on rear planetary gear (Fig. 209). Use enough petroleum jelly to hold washer on gear. Be sure all four washer tabs are seated in slots.

(7) Install spacer on sun gear (Fig. 210).

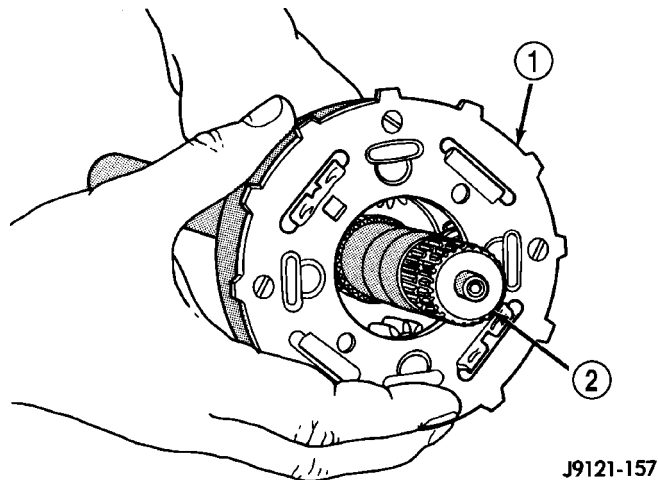
(8) Install thrust plate on sun gear (Fig. 211). Note that driving shell thrust plates are interchangeable. Use either plate on sun gear and at front/rear of shell.



J9121-156

**Fig. 207 Assembling Rear Annulus And Planetary Gear**

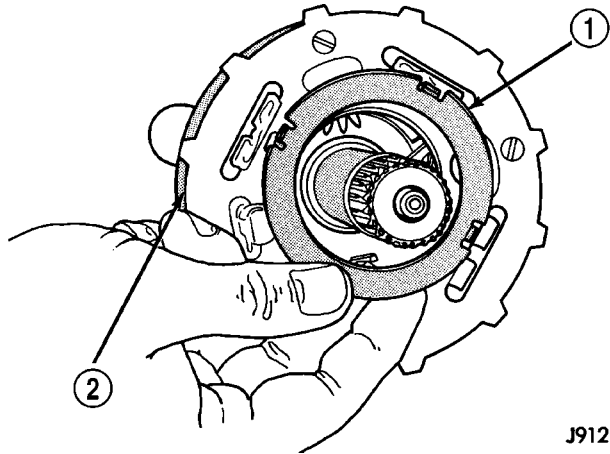
- 1 - REAR ANNULUS GEAR
- 2 - TABBED THRUST WASHER
- 3 - REAR PLANETARY



J9121-157

**Fig. 208 Installing Rear Annulus And Planetary On Output Shaft**

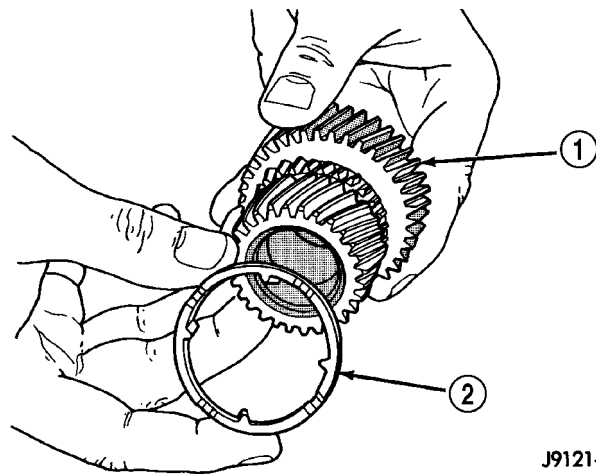
- 1 - REAR ANNULUS AND PLANETARY GEAR ASSEMBLY
- 2 - OUTPUT SHAFT



J9121-158

**Fig. 209 Installing Rear Planetary Front Thrust Washer**

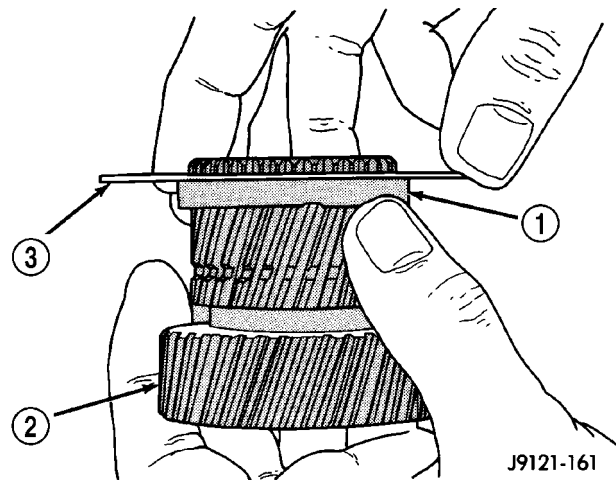
- 1 - FRONT TABBED THRUST WASHER
- 2 - REAR PLANETARY GEAR



J9121-159

**Fig. 210 Installing Spacer On Sun Gear**

- 1 - SUN GEAR
- 2 - SUN GEAR SPACER



J9121-161

**Fig. 211 Installing Driving Shell Front Thrust Plate On Sun Gear**

- 1 - SPACER
- 2 - SUN GEAR
- 3 - THRUST PLATE

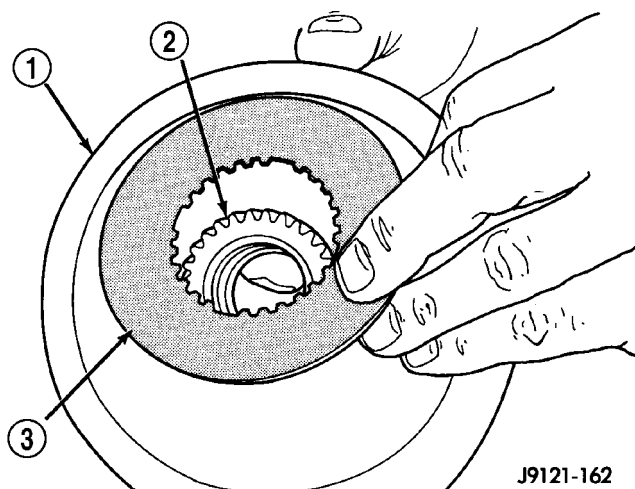
## PLANETARY GEARTRAIN/OUTPUT SHAFT (Continued)

(9) Hold sun gear in place and install thrust plate over sun gear at rear of driving shell (Fig. 212).

(10) Position wood block on bench and support sun gear on block (Fig. 213). This makes it easier to align and install sun gear lock ring. Keep wood block handy as it will also be used for geartrain end play check.

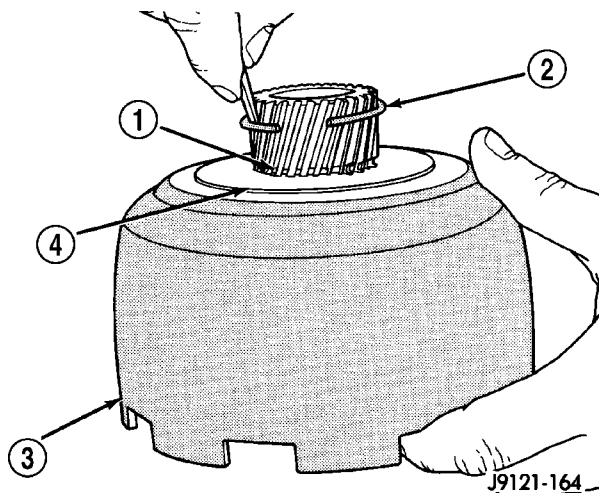
(11) Align rear thrust plate on driving shell and install sun gear lock ring. Be sure ring is fully seated in sun gear ring groove (Fig. 214).

(12) Install assembled driving shell and sun gear on output shaft (Fig. 215).



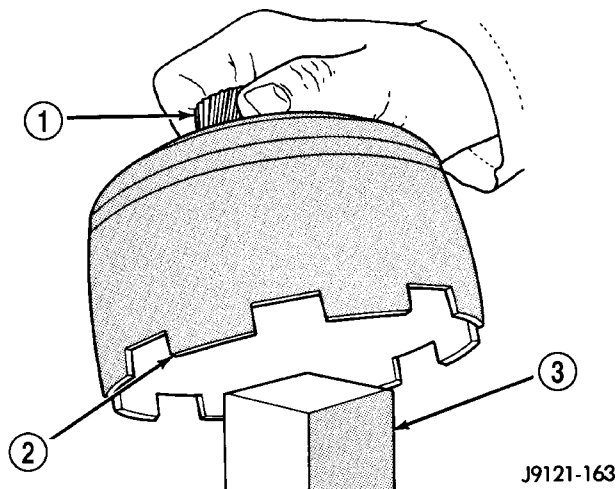
**Fig. 212 Installing Driving Shell Rear Thrust Plate**

- 1 - DRIVING SHELL
- 2 - SUN GEAR
- 3 - REAR THRUST PLATE



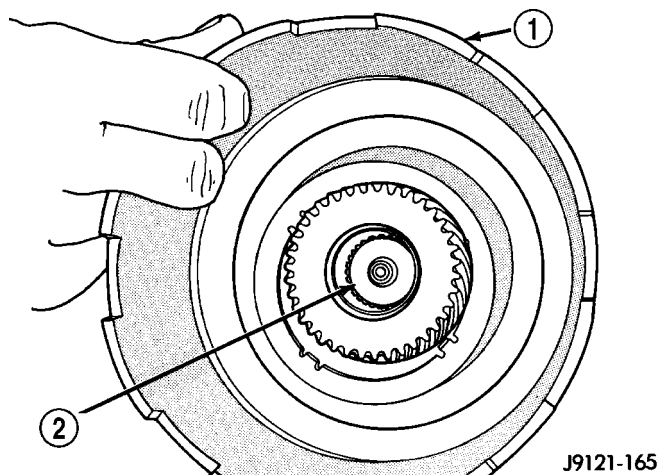
**Fig. 214 Installing Sun Gear Lock Ring**

- 1 - LOCK RING GROOVE
- 2 - SUN GEAR LOCK RING
- 3 - DRIVING SHELL
- 4 - REAR THRUST PLATE



**Fig. 213 Supporting Sun Gear On Wood Block**

- 1 - SUN GEAR
- 2 - DRIVING SHELL
- 3 - WOOD BLOCK



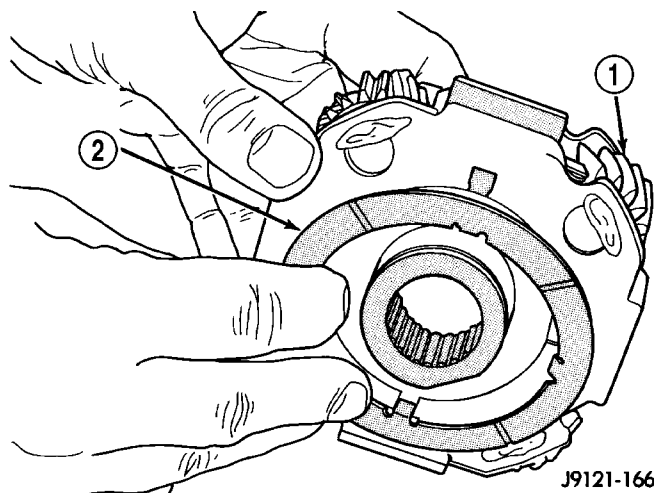
**Fig. 215 Installing Assembled Sun Gear And Driving Shell On Output Shaft**

- 1 - SUN GEAR/DRIVING SHELL ASSEMBLY
- 2 - OUTPUT SHAFT



## PLANETARY GEARTRAIN/OUTPUT SHAFT (Continued)

(13) Install rear thrust washer on front planetary gear (Fig. 216). Use enough petroleum jelly to hold washer in place and be sure all four washer tabs are seated.



**Fig. 216 Installing Rear Thrust Washer On Front Planetary Gear**

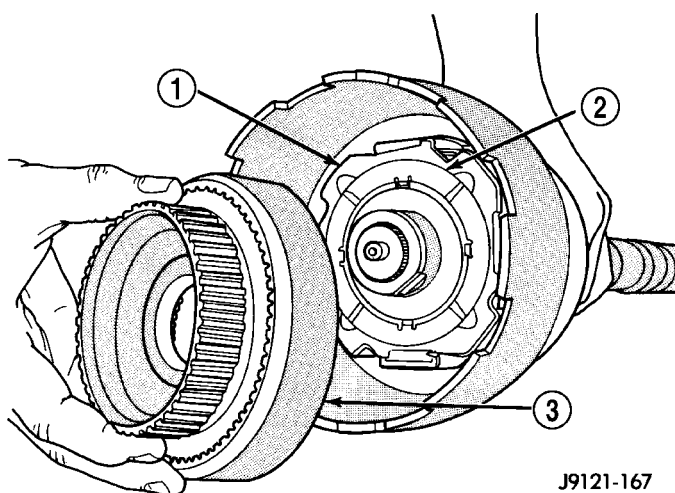
- 1 - FRONT PLANETARY GEAR
- 2 - REAR TABBED THRUST WASHER

(14) Install front planetary gear on output shaft and in driving shell (Fig. 217).

(15) Install front thrust washer on front planetary gear. Use enough petroleum jelly to hold washer in place and be sure all four washer tabs are seated.

(16) Assemble front annulus gear and support, if necessary. Be sure support snap-ring is seated.

(17) Install front annulus on front planetary (Fig. 217).

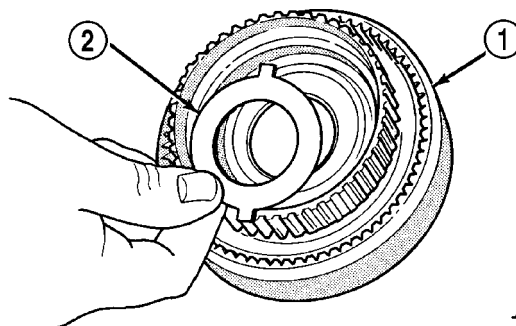


**Fig. 217 Installing Front Planetary And Annulus Gears**

- 1 - FRONT PLANETARY GEAR
- 2 - FRONT THRUST WASHER
- 3 - FRONT ANNULUS GEAR

(18) Position thrust plate on front annulus gear support (Fig. 218). Note that plate has two tabs on it. These tabs fit in notches of annulus hub.

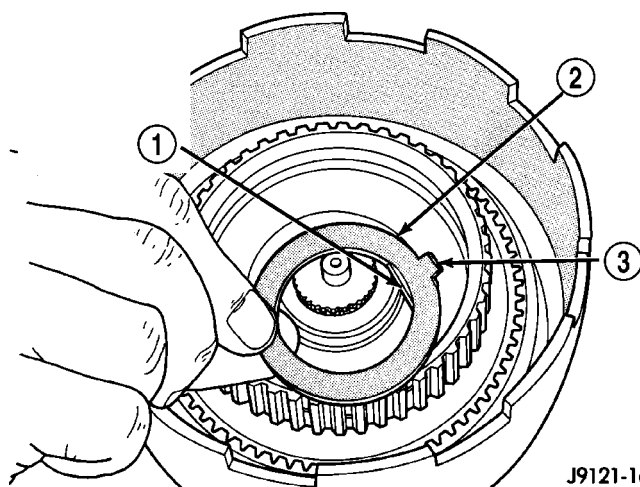
(19) Install thrust washer in front annulus (Fig. 219). Align flat on washer with flat on planetary hub. Also be sure washer tab is facing up.



J9421-179

**Fig. 218 Positioning Thrust Plate On Front Annulus Support**

- 1 - FRONT ANNULUS
- 2 - THRUST PLATE



J9121-168

**Fig. 219 Installing Front Annulus Thrust Washer**

- 1 - WASHER FLAT ALIGNS WITH FLAT ON PLANETARY HUB
- 2 - FRONT ANNULUS THRUST WASHER
- 3 - TAB FACES FRONT

## PLANETARY GEARTRAIN/OUTPUT SHAFT (Continued)

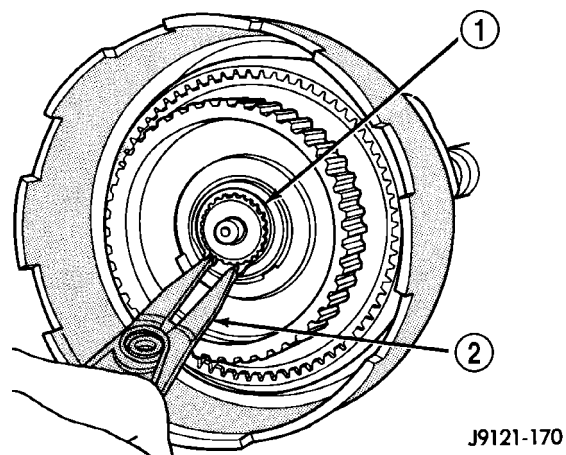
(20) Install front annulus snap-ring (Fig. 220). Use snap-ring pliers to avoid distorting ring during installation. Also be sure ring is fully seated.

(21) Install planetary selective snap-ring with snap-ring pliers (Fig. 221). Be sure ring is fully seated.

(22) Turn planetary geartrain assembly over so driving shell is facing workbench. Then support geartrain on wood block positioned under forward end of output shaft. This allows geartrain components to move forward for accurate end play check.

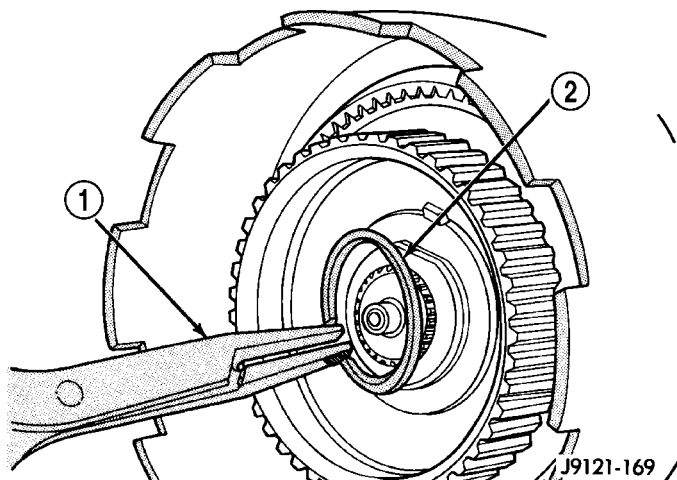
(23) Check planetary geartrain end play with feeler gauge (Fig. 222). Gauge goes between shoulder on output shaft and end of rear annulus support.

(24) Geartrain end play should be 0.12 to 1.22 mm (0.005 to 0.048 in.). If end play is incorrect, snap-ring (or thrust washers) may have to be replaced. Snap-rings are available in three different thicknesses for adjustment purposes.



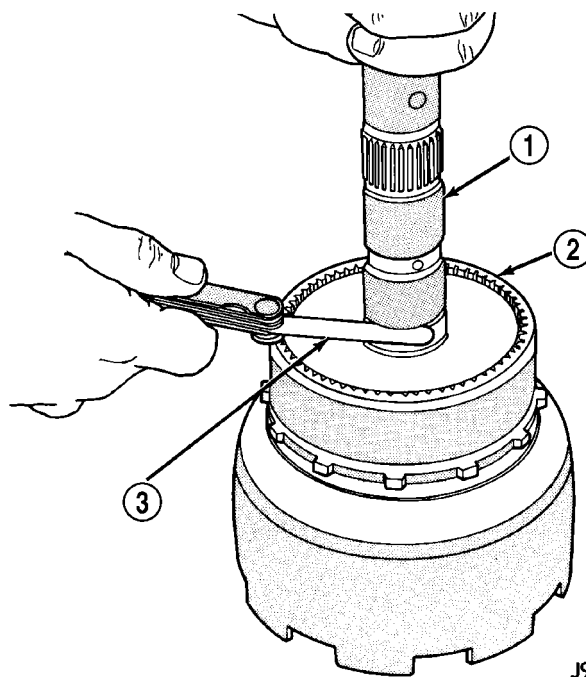
**Fig. 221 Installing Planetary Selective Snap-Ring**

- 1 - SELECTIVE SNAP-RING
- 2 - SNAP-RING PLIERS



**Fig. 220 Installing Front Annulus Snap-Ring**

- 1 - SNAP-RING PLIERS
- 2 - FRONT ANNULUS SNAP-RING



**Fig. 222 Checking Planetary Geartrain End Play**

- 1 - OUTPUT SHAFT
- 2 - REAR ANNULUS GEAR
- 3 - FEELER GAUGE



## REAR CLUTCH

### DESCRIPTION

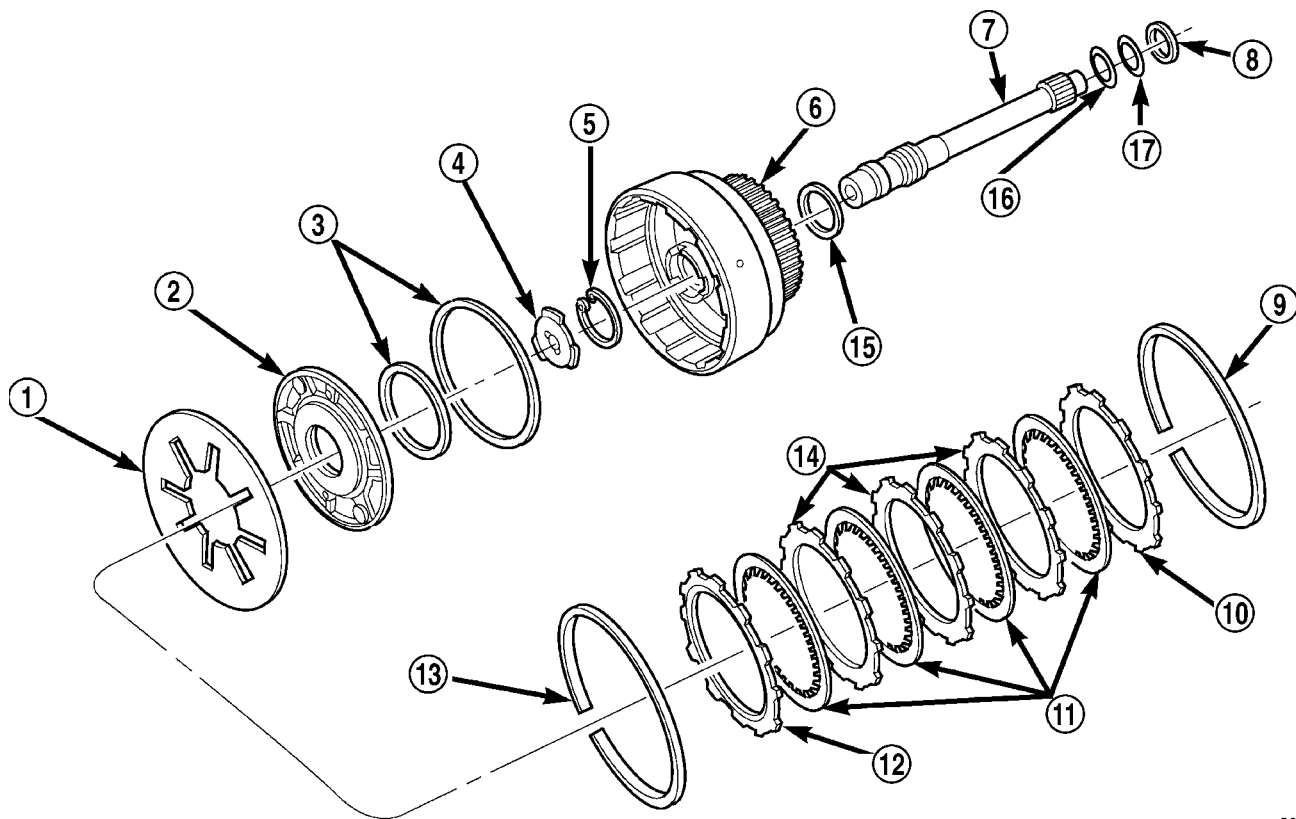
The rear clutch assembly (Fig. 223) is composed of the rear clutch retainer, pressure plate, clutch plates, driving discs, piston, Belleville spring, and snap-rings. The Belleville spring acts as a lever to multiply the force applied on to it by the apply piston. The increased apply force on the rear clutch pack, in comparison to the front clutch pack, is needed to hold against the greater torque load imposed onto the rear pack. The rear clutch is directly behind the front clutch and is considered a driving component.

**NOTE:** The number of discs and plates may vary with each engine and vehicle combination.

### OPERATION

To apply the clutch, pressure is applied between the clutch retainer and piston. The fluid pressure is provided by the oil pump, transferred through the control valves and passageways, and enters the clutch through the hub of the reaction shaft support. With pressure applied between the clutch retainer and piston, the piston moves away from the clutch retainer and compresses the clutch pack. This action applies the clutch pack, allowing torque to flow through the input shaft into the driving discs, and into the clutch plates and pressure plate that are lugged to the clutch retainer. The waved spring is used to cushion the application of the clutch pack. The snap-ring is selective and used to adjust clutch pack clearance.

When pressure is released from the piston, the spring returns the piston to its fully released position and disengages the clutch. The release spring also helps to cushion the application of the clutch assem-



80c070a4

**Fig. 223 Rear Clutch**

- |  |                                     |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 1 - PISTON SPRING                      | 10 - TOP PRESSURE PLATE             |
| 2 - REAR CLUTCH PISTON                 | 11 - CLUTCH DISCS (4)               |
| 3 - CLUTCH PISTON SEALS                | 12 - BOTTOM PRESSURE PLATE          |
| 4 - OUTPUT SHAFT THRUST WASHER (METAL) | 13 - WAVE SPRING                    |
| 5 - INPUT SHAFT SNAP-RING              | 14 - CLUTCH PLATES (3)              |
| 6 - REAR CLUTCH RETAINER               | 15 - RETAINER SEAL RING             |
| 7 - INPUT SHAFT                        | 16 - SHAFT REAR SEAL RING (PLASTIC) |
| 8 - REAR CLUTCH THRUST WASHER (FIBER)  | 17 - SHAFT FRONT SEAL RING (TEFLON) |
| 9 - CLUTCH PACK SNAP-RING (SELECTIVE)  |                                     |

## REAR CLUTCH (Continued)

bly. When the clutch is in the process of being released by the release spring, fluid flows through a vent and one-way ball-check-valve located in the piston. The check-valve is needed to eliminate the possibility of plate drag caused by centrifugal force acting on the residual fluid trapped in the clutch piston retainer.

## DISASSEMBLY

- (1) Remove fiber thrust washer from forward side of clutch retainer.
- (2) Remove input shaft front/rear seal rings.
- (3) Remove selective clutch pack snap-ring (Fig. 224).
- (4) Remove top pressure plate, clutch discs, steel plates, bottom pressure plate and wave snap-ring and wave spring (Fig. 224).
- (5) Remove clutch piston with rotating motion.
- (6) Remove and discard piston seals.

(7) Remove input shaft snap-ring (Fig. 225). It may be necessary to press the input shaft in slightly to relieve tension on the snap-ring

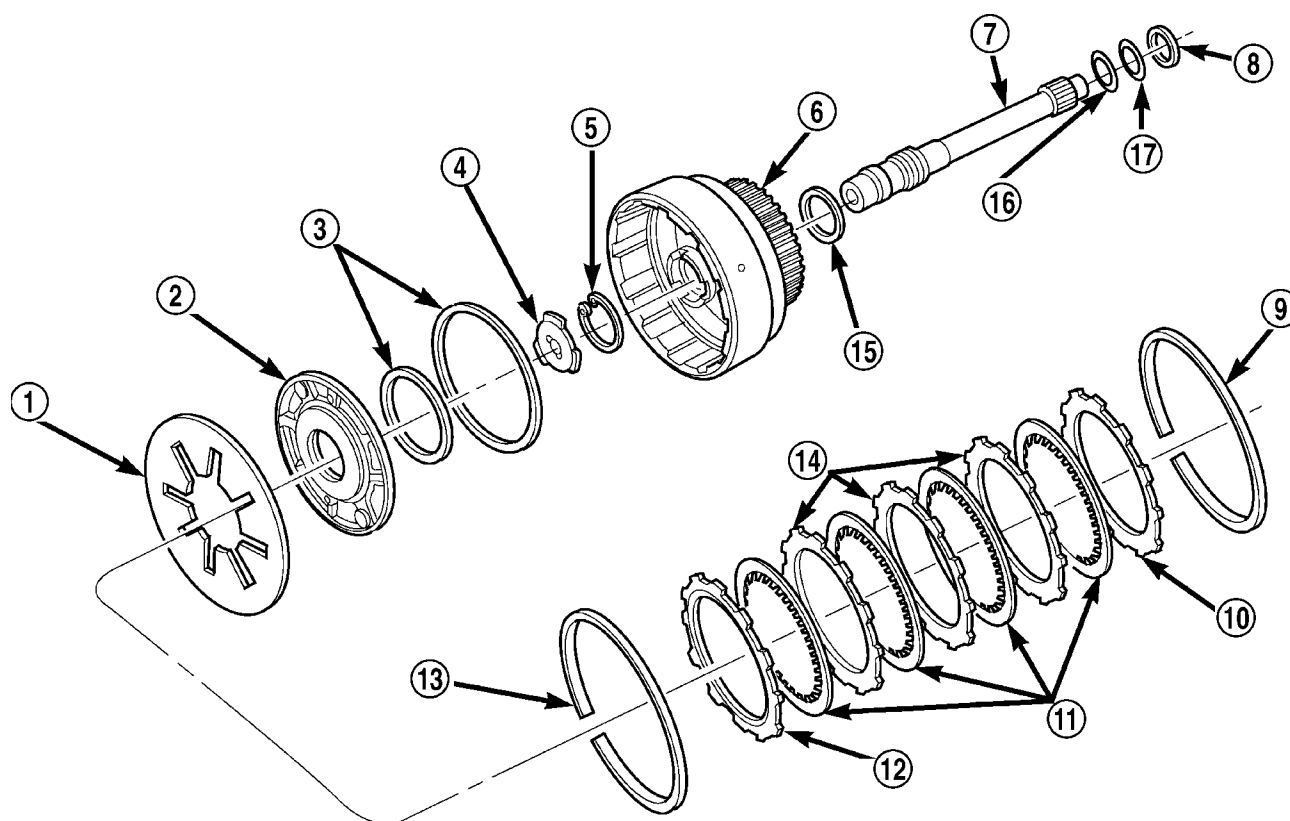
(8) Press input shaft out of retainer with shop press and suitable size press tool. Use a suitably sized press tool to support the retainer as close to the input shaft as possible.

## CLEANING

Clean the clutch components with solvent and dry them with compressed air. Do not use rags or shop towels to dry any of the clutch parts. Lint from such materials will adhere to component surfaces and could restrict or block fluid passages after assembly.

## INSPECTION

Replace the clutch discs if warped, worn, scored, burned/charred, the lugs are damaged, or if the facing is flaking off. Replace the top and bottom pressure plates if scored, warped, or cracked. Be sure the



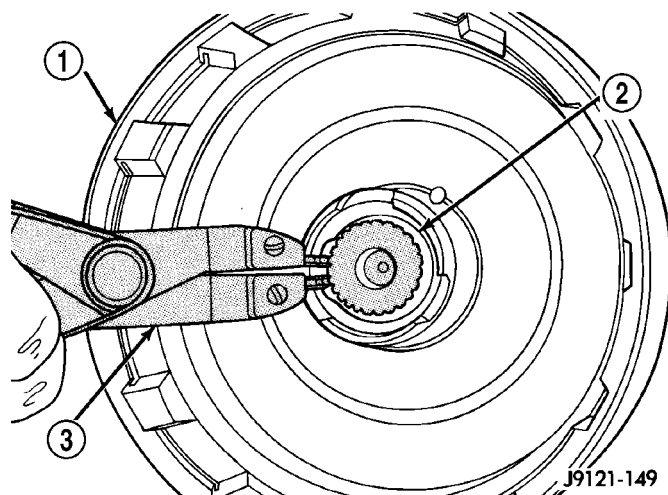
**Fig. 224 Rear Clutch Components**

- 1 - PISTON SPRING
- 2 - REAR CLUTCH PISTON
- 3 - CLUTCH PISTON SEALS
- 4 - OUTPUT SHAFT THRUST WASHER (METAL)
- 5 - INPUT SHAFT SNAP-RING
- 6 - REAR CLUTCH RETAINER
- 7 - INPUT SHAFT
- 8 - REAR CLUTCH THRUST WASHER (FIBER)
- 9 - CLUTCH PACK SNAP-RING (SELECTIVE)

- 10 - TOP PRESSURE PLATE
- 11 - CLUTCH DISCS (4)
- 12 - BOTTOM PRESSURE PLATE
- 13 - WAVE SPRING
- 14 - CLUTCH PLATES (3)
- 15 - RETAINER SEAL RING
- 16 - SHAFT REAR SEAL RING (PLASTIC)
- 17 - SHAFT FRONT SEAL RING (TEFLON)

80c070a4

## REAR CLUTCH (Continued)

**Fig. 225 Removing Input Shaft Snap-Ring**

- 1 - REAR CLUTCH RETAINER  
 2 - INPUT SHAFT SNAP-RING  
 3 - SNAP-RING PLIERS

driving lugs on the pressure and clutch plates are also in good condition. The lugs must not be bent, cracked or damaged in any way.

Replace the piston spring and wave spring if either part is distorted, warped or broken.

Check the lug grooves in the clutch retainer. The clutch and pressure plates should slide freely in the slots. Replace the retainer if the grooves are worn or damaged. Also check action of the check balls in the retainer and piston. Each check ball must move freely and not stick.

Replace the retainer bushing if worn, scored, or doubt exists about bushing condition.

Inspect the piston and retainer seal surfaces for nicks or scratches. Minor scratches can be removed with crocus cloth. However, replace the piston and/or retainer if the seal surfaces are seriously scored.

Check condition of the fiber thrust washer and metal output shaft thrust washer. Replace either washer if worn or damaged.

Check condition of the seal rings on the input shaft and clutch retainer hub. Replace the seal rings only if worn, distorted, or damaged. The input shaft front seal ring is teflon with chamfered ends. The rear ring is metal with interlocking ends.

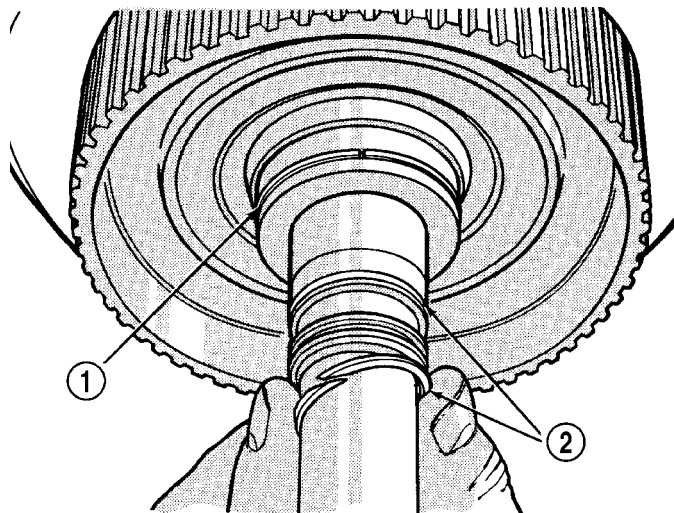
Check the input shaft for wear, or damage. Replace the shaft if worn, scored or damaged in any way.

**ASSEMBLY**

(1) Soak clutch discs in transmission fluid while assembling other clutch parts.

(2) Install new seal rings on clutch retainer hub and input shaft, if necessary, (Fig. 226) and (Fig. 227).

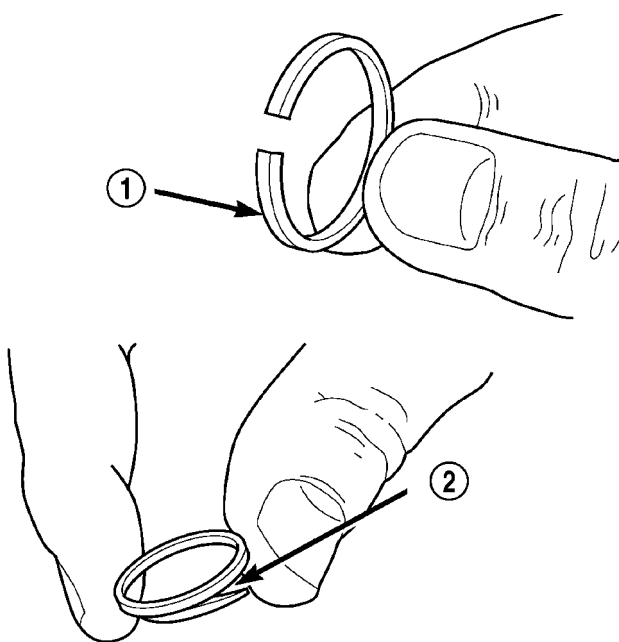
(a) Be sure clutch hub seal ring is fully seated in groove and is not twisted.



J9121-538

**Fig. 226 Rear Clutch Retainer And Input Shaft Seal Ring Installation**

- 1 - REAR CLUTCH RETAINER HUB SEAL RING  
 2 - INPUT SHAFT SEAL RINGS



80c070a5

**Fig. 227 Input Shaft Seal Ring Identification**

- 1 - PLASTIC REAR SEAL RING  
 2 - TEFLON FRONT SEAL RING (SQUEEZE RING TOGETHER SLIGHTLY BEFORE INSTALLATION FOR BETTER FIT)

## REAR CLUTCH (Continued)

(3) Lubricate splined end of input shaft and clutch retainer with transmission fluid. Then press input shaft into retainer (Fig. 228). Use a suitably sized press tool to support retainer as close to input shaft as possible.

(4) Install input shaft snap-ring (Fig. 225).

(5) Invert retainer and press input shaft in opposite direction until snap-ring is seated.

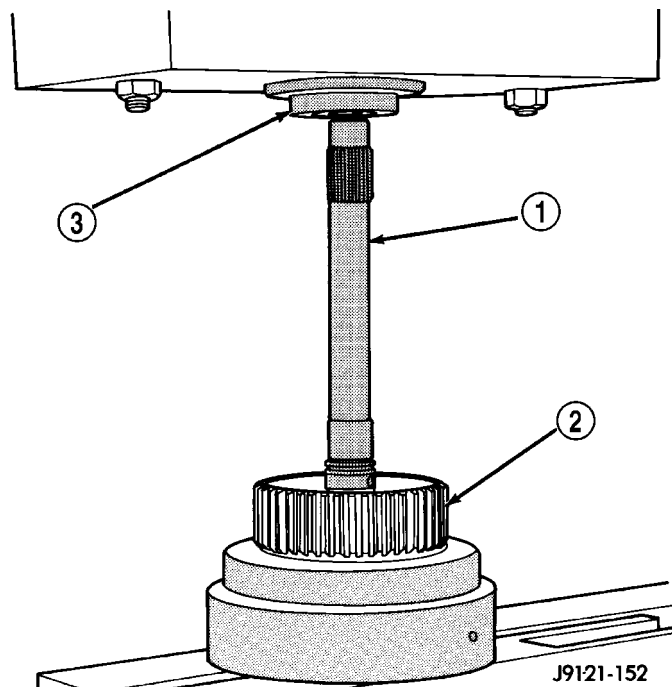
(6) Install new seals on clutch piston. Be sure lip of each seal faces interior of clutch retainer.

(7) Lubricate lip of piston seals with generous quantity of Mopar® Door Ease. Then lubricate retainer hub and bore with light coat of transmission fluid.

(8) Install clutch piston in retainer. Use twisting motion to seat piston in bottom of retainer. A thin strip of plastic (about 0.020" thick), can be used to guide seals into place if necessary.

**CAUTION:** Never push the clutch piston straight in. This will fold the seals over causing leakage and clutch slip. In addition, never use any type of metal tool to help ease the piston seals into place. Metal tools will cut, shave, or score the seals.

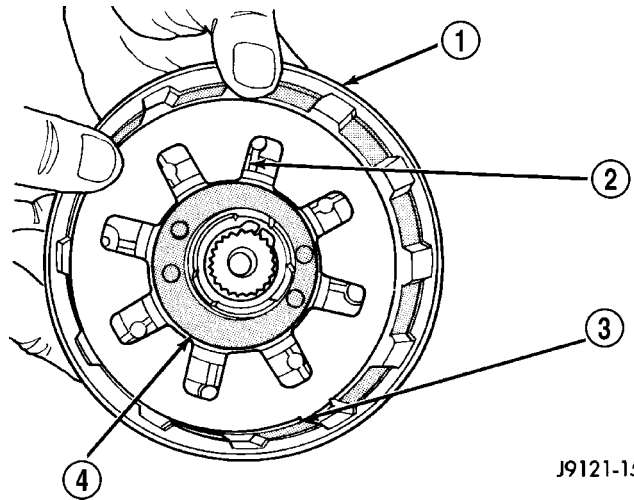
(9) Install piston spring in retainer and on top of piston (Fig. 229). Concave side of spring faces downward (toward piston).



**Fig. 228 Pressing Input Shaft Into Rear Clutch Retainer**

- 1 - INPUT SHAFT  
2 - REAR CLUTCH RETAINER  
3 - PRESS RAM

(10) Install wave spring in retainer (Fig. 229). Be sure spring is completely seated in retainer groove.



J9121-153

**Fig. 229 Piston Spring/Wave Spring Position**

- 1 - REAR CLUTCH RETAINER  
2 - PISTON SPRING  
3 - WAVE SPRING  
4 - CLUTCH PISTON

(11) Install bottom pressure plate (Fig. 224). Ridged side of plate faces downward (toward piston) and flat side toward clutch pack.

(12) Install first clutch disc in retainer on top of bottom pressure plate. Then install a clutch plate followed by a clutch disc until entire clutch pack is installed (4 discs and 3 plates are required) (Fig. 224).

(13) Install top pressure plate.

(14) Install selective snap-ring. Be sure snap-ring is fully seated in retainer groove.

(15) Using a suitable gauge bar and dial indicator, measure clutch pack clearance (Fig. 230).

(a) Position gauge bar across the clutch drum with the dial indicator pointer on the pressure plate (Fig. 230).

(b) Using two small screw drivers, lift the pressure plate and release it.

(c) Zero the dial indicator.

(d) Lift the pressure plate until it contacts the snap-ring and record the dial indicator reading.

Clearance should be 0.559 - 0.914 mm (0.022 - 0.036 in.). If clearance is incorrect, steel plates, discs, selective snap ring and pressure plates may have to be changed.

The selective snap-ring thicknesses are:

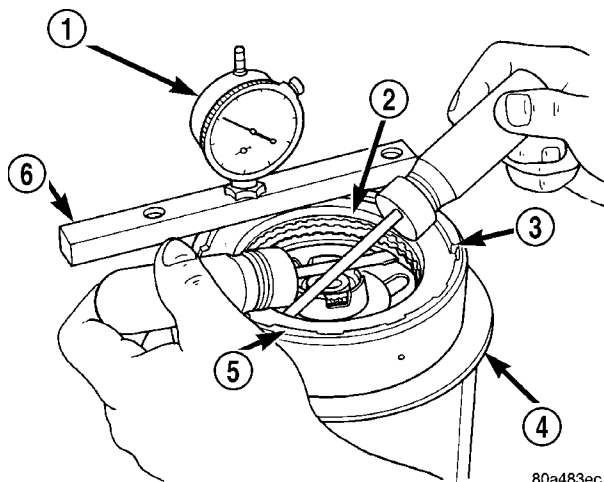
- 0.107-0.109 in.
- 0.098-0.100 in.
- 0.095-0.097 in.
- 0.083-0.085 in.
- 0.076-0.078 in.
- 0.071-0.073 in.



## REAR CLUTCH (Continued)

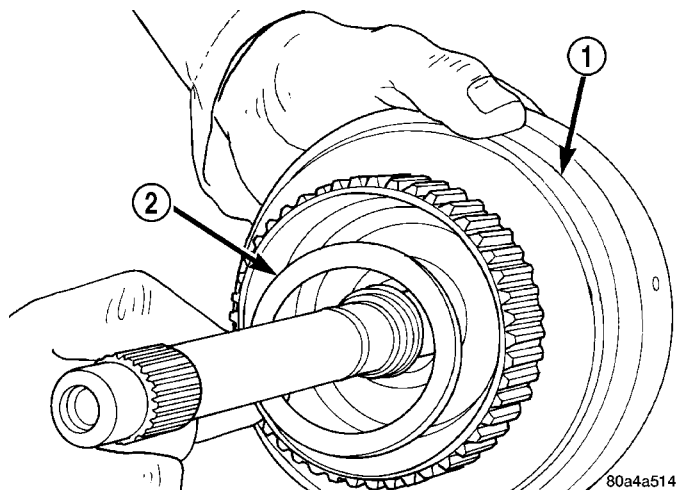
- 0.060-0.062 in.

(16) Coat rear clutch thrust washer with petroleum jelly and install washer over input shaft and into clutch retainer (Fig. 231). Use enough petroleum jelly to hold washer in place.



**Fig. 230 Checking Rear Clutch Pack Clearance**

- 1 - DIAL INDICATOR
- 2 - PRESSURE PLATE
- 3 - SNAP-RING
- 4 - STAND
- 5 - REAR CLUTCH
- 6 - GAUGE BAR



**Fig. 231 Installing Rear Clutch Thrust Washer**

- 1 - REAR CLUTCH RETAINER
- 2 - REAR CLUTCH THRUST WASHER

## REAR SERVO

## DESCRIPTION

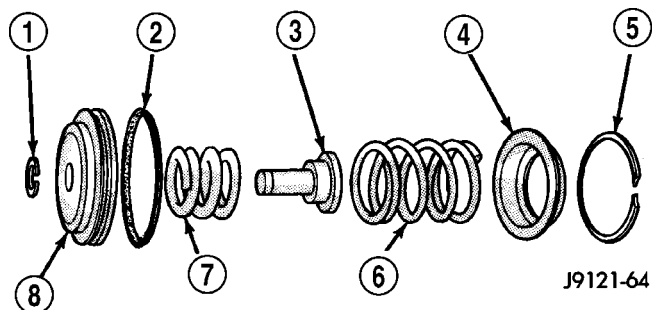
The rear (low/reverse) servo consists of a single stage or diameter piston and a spring loaded plug. The spring is used to cushion the application of the rear (low/reverse) band.

## OPERATION

While in the de-energized state (no pressure applied), the piston is held up in its bore by the piston spring. The plug is held down in its bore, in the piston, by the plug spring. When pressure is applied to the top of the piston, the plug is forced down in its bore, taking up any clearance. As the piston moves, it causes the plug spring to compress, and the piston moves down over the plug. The piston continues to move down until it hits the shoulder of the plug and fully applies the band. The period of time from the initial application, until the piston is against the shoulder of the plug, represents a reduced shocking of the band that cushions the shift.

## DISASSEMBLY

- (1) Remove small snap-ring and remove plug and spring from servo piston (Fig. 232).
- (2) Remove and discard servo piston seal ring.



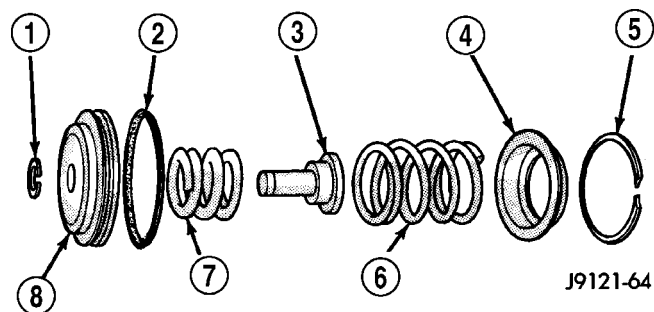
**Fig. 232 Rear Servo Components**

- 1 - SNAP-RING
- 2 - PISTON SEAL
- 3 - PISTON PLUG
- 4 - SPRING RETAINER
- 5 - SNAP-RING
- 6 - PISTON SPRING
- 7 - CUSHION SPRING
- 8 - PISTON

## REAR SERVO (Continued)

## CLEANING

Remove and discard the servo piston seal ring (Fig. 233). Then clean the servo components with solvent and dry with compressed air. Replace either spring if collapsed, distorted or broken. Replace the plug and piston if cracked, bent, or worn. Discard the servo snap-rings and use new ones at assembly.



**Fig. 233 Rear Servo Components**

- 1 - SNAP-RING
- 2 - PISTON SEAL
- 3 - PISTON PLUG
- 4 - SPRING RETAINER
- 5 - SNAP-RING
- 6 - PISTON SPRING
- 7 - CUSHION SPRING
- 8 - PISTON

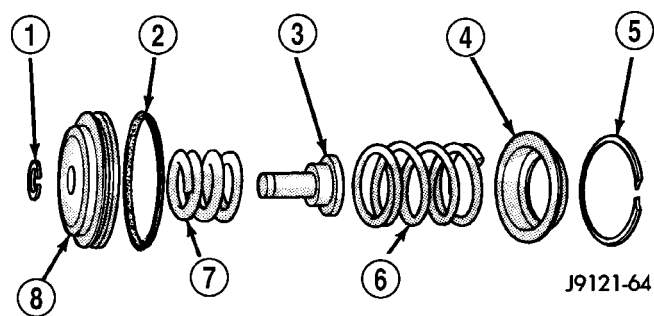
## ASSEMBLY

(1) Lubricate piston and guide seals (Fig. 234) with petroleum jelly. Lubricate other servo parts with Mopar® ATF +4, Automatic Transmission fluid.

(2) Install new seal ring on servo piston.

(3) Assemble piston, plug, spring and new snap-ring.

(4) Lubricate piston seal lip with petroleum jelly.



**Fig. 234 Rear Servo Components**

- 1 - SNAP-RING
- 2 - PISTON SEAL
- 3 - PISTON PLUG
- 4 - SPRING RETAINER
- 5 - SNAP-RING
- 6 - PISTON SPRING
- 7 - CUSHION SPRING
- 8 - PISTON

## SHIFT MECHANISM

## DESCRIPTION

The gear shift mechanism provides six shift positions which are:

- PARK (P)
- REVERSE (R)
- NEUTRAL (N)
- DRIVE (D)
- Manual SECOND (2)
- Manual LOW (1)

## OPERATION

Manual LOW (1) range provides first gear only. Overrun braking is also provided in this range. Manual SECOND (2) range provides first and second gear only.

DRIVE range provides first, second, third, and overdrive fourth gear ranges. The shift into overdrive fourth gear range occurs only after the transmission has completed the shift into D third gear range. No further movement of the shift mechanism is required to complete the 3-4 shift.

The fourth gear upshift occurs automatically when the overdrive selector switch is in the ON position. No upshift to fourth gear will occur if any of the following are true:

- The transmission fluid temperature is below 10° C (50° F) or above 121° C (250° F).
- The shift to third is not yet complete.
- Vehicle speed is too low for the 3-4 shift to occur.
- Battery temperature is below -5° C (23° F).

## REMOVAL

(1) Remove any necessary console parts for access to shift lever assembly and shifter cables. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/FLOOR CONSOLE - REMOVAL)

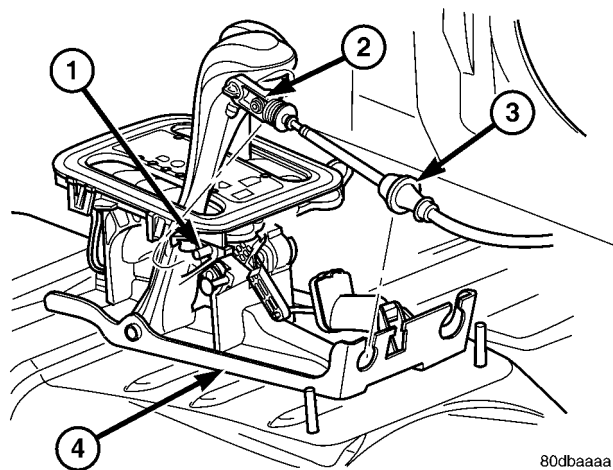
(2) Shift transmission into PARK.

(3) Disconnect the transmission shift cable at shift lever and shifter assembly bracket (Fig. 235).

(4) Disconnect the park lock cable from the shifter BTSI lever and the shifter assembly bracket. (Fig. 236)



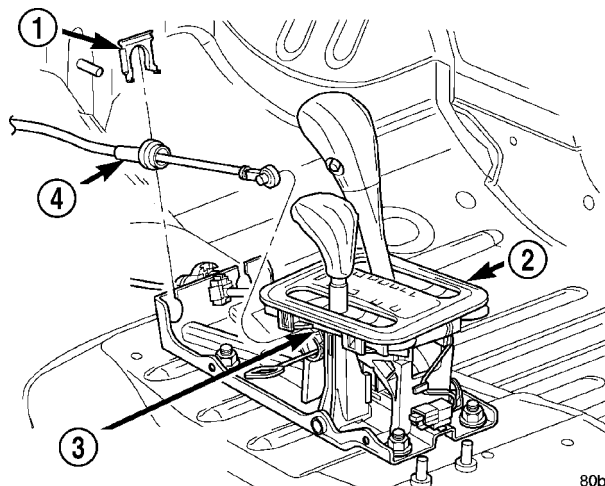
## SHIFT MECHANISM (Continued)



80dba4aa

**Fig. 235 Transmission Shift Cable**

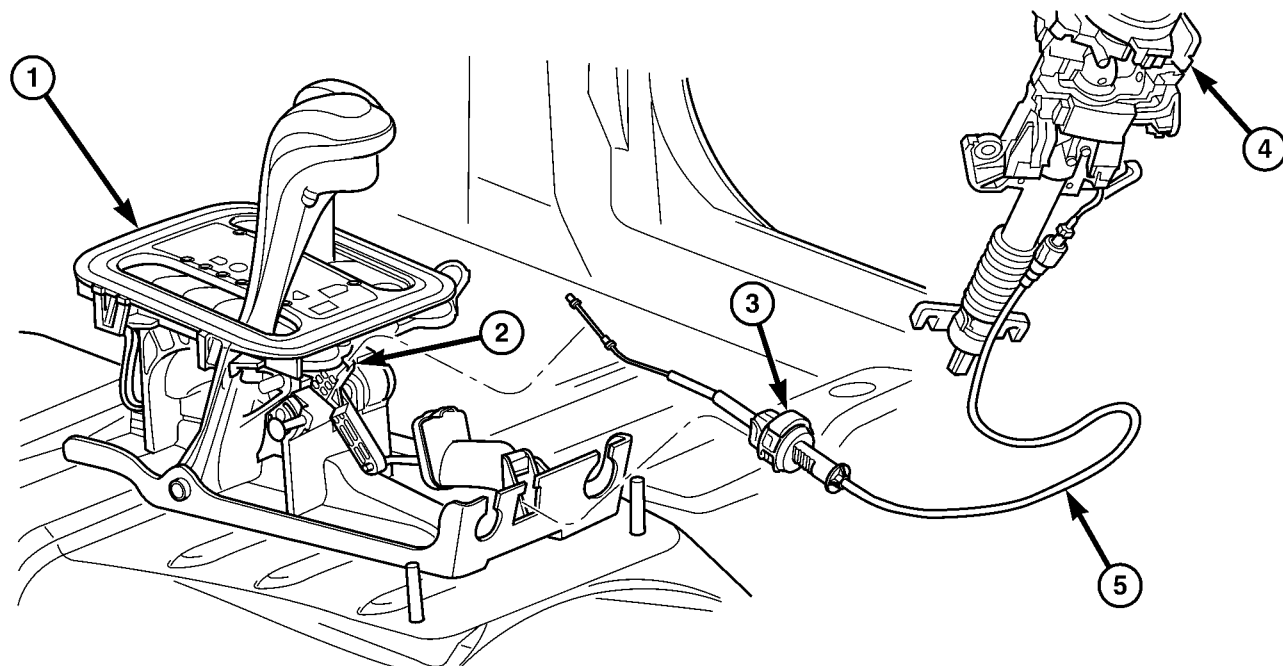
- 1 - SHIFT LEVER PIN
- 2 - ADJUSTMENT SCREW
- 3 - SHIFT CABLE
- 4 - SHIFTER ASSEMBLY BRACKET



80ba79cd

**Fig. 237 Transfer Case Shift Cable**

- 1 - CLIP
- 2 - SHIFTER
- 3 - TRANSFER CASE SHIFT LEVER PIN
- 4 - TRANSFER CASE SHIFT CABLE



80dba6a6

**Fig. 236 Brake Transmission Interlock Cable**

- 1 - SHIFT MECHANISM
- 2 - SHIFTER BTSI LEVER
- 3 - ADJUSTMENT CLIP

- 4 - STEERING COLUMN ASSEMBLY
- 5 - INTERLOCK CABLE

## SHIFT MECHANISM (Continued)

(5) Disconnect the transfer case shift cable from the transfer case shift lever pin (Fig. 237), if equipped.

(6) Remove the clip holding the transfer case shift cable to the shifter assembly bracket, if equipped.

(7) Remove the transfer case shift cable from the shifter assembly bracket, if equipped.

(8) Disengage all wiring connectors from the shifter assembly.

(9) Remove all nuts holding the shifter assembly to the floor pan (Fig. 238).

(10) Remove the shifter assembly from the vehicle.

(10) Install the shift cable to the shifter assembly bracket. Push cable into the bracket until secure.

(11) Snap the shift cable onto the shift lever pin.

(12) Verify that the shift lever is in the PARK position.

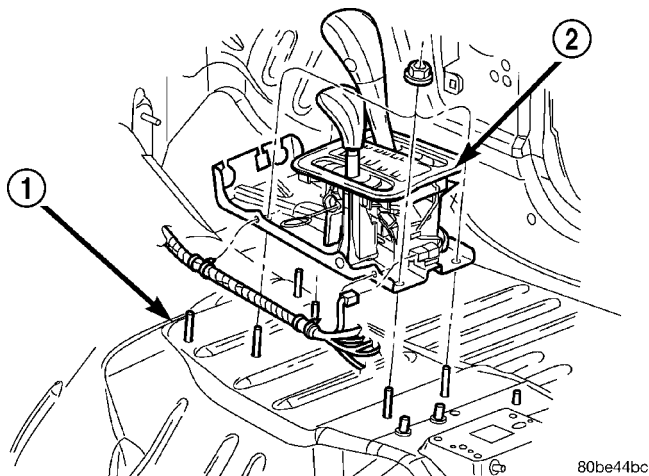
(13) Tighten the adjustment screw to 7 N·m (65 in.lbs.).

(14) Place the key in the accessory position.

(15) Push downward on the park lock cable adjustment tab to lock the adjustment.

(16) Verify correct shifter, park lock, and BTSI operation.

(17) Install any console parts removed for access to shift lever assembly and shift cables. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/FLOOR CONSOLE - INSTALLATION)



**Fig. 238 Shifter Assembly**

1 - FLOOR PAN  
2 - SHIFTER ASSEMBLY

## INSTALLATION

(1) Install shifter assembly onto the shifter assembly studs on the floor pan.

(2) Install the nuts to hold the shifter assembly onto the floor pan. Tighten nuts to 28 N·m (250 in.lbs.).

(3) Place the floor shifter lever in PARK position.

(4) Loosen the adjustment screw on the shift cable.

(5) Verify that the park lock cable adjustment tab is pulled upward to the unlocked position.

(6) Install wiring harness to the shifter assembly bracket. Engage any wire connectors removed from the shifter assembly.

(7) Install the transfer case shift cable to the shifter assembly bracket. Install clip to hold cable to the bracket.

(8) Snap the transfer case shift cable, if equipped, onto the transfer case shift lever pin.

(9) Install the park lock cable into the shifter assembly bracket and into the shifter BTSI lever. (Refer to 21 - TRANSMISSION/TRANSAXLE/AUTOMATIC/SHIFT INTERLOCK MECHANISM - ADJUSTMENTS)

## SOLENOID

## DESCRIPTION

The typical electrical solenoid used in automotive applications is a linear actuator. It is a device that produces motion in a straight line. This straight line motion can be either forward or backward in direction, and short or long distance.

A solenoid is an electromechanical device that uses a magnetic force to perform work. It consists of a coil of wire, wrapped around a magnetic core made from steel or iron, and a spring loaded, movable plunger, which performs the work, or straight line motion.

The solenoids used in transmission applications are attached to valves which can be classified as **normally open** or **normally closed**. The **normally open** solenoid valve is defined as a valve which allows hydraulic flow when no current or voltage is applied to the solenoid. The **normally closed** solenoid valve is defined as a valve which does not allow hydraulic flow when no current or voltage is applied to the solenoid. These valves perform hydraulic control functions for the transmission and must therefore be durable and tolerant of dirt particles. For these reasons, the valves have hardened steel poppets and ball valves. The solenoids operate the valves directly, which means that the solenoids must have very high outputs to close the valves against the sizable flow areas and line pressures found in current transmissions. Fast response time is also necessary to ensure accurate control of the transmission.

The strength of the magnetic field is the primary force that determines the speed of operation in a particular solenoid design. A stronger magnetic field will cause the plunger to move at a greater speed than a weaker one. There are basically two ways to increase the force of the magnetic field:

## SOLENOID (Continued)

- Increase the amount of current applied to the coil or

- Increase the number of turns of wire in the coil.

The most common practice is to increase the number of turns by using thin wire that can completely fill the available space within the solenoid housing. The strength of the spring and the length of the plunger also contribute to the response speed possible by a particular solenoid design.

A solenoid can also be described by the method by which it is controlled. Some of the possibilities include variable force, pulse-width modulated, constant ON, or duty cycle. The variable force and pulse-width modulated versions utilize similar methods to control the current flow through the solenoid to position the solenoid plunger at a desired position somewhere between full ON and full OFF. The constant ON and duty cycled versions control the voltage across the solenoid to allow either full flow or no flow through the solenoid's valve.

## OPERATION

When an electrical current is applied to the solenoid coil, a magnetic field is created which produces an attraction to the plunger, causing the plunger to move and work against the spring pressure and the load applied by the fluid the valve is controlling. The plunger is normally directly attached to the valve which it is to operate. When the current is removed from the coil, the attraction is removed and the plunger will return to its original position due to spring pressure.

The plunger is made of a conductive material and accomplishes this movement by providing a path for the magnetic field to flow. By keeping the air gap between the plunger and the coil to the minimum necessary to allow free movement of the plunger, the magnetic field is maximized.

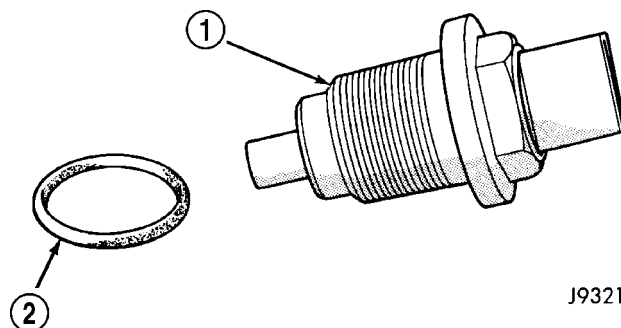
## SPEED SENSOR

## DESCRIPTION

The speed sensor (Fig. 239) is located in the over-drive gear case. The sensor is positioned over the park gear and monitors transmission output shaft rotating speed.

## OPERATION

Speed sensor signals are triggered by the park gear lugs as they rotate past the sensor pickup face. Input signals from the sensor are sent to the transmission control module for processing. Signals from this sensor are shared with the powertrain control module.



J9321-411

**Fig. 239 Transmission Output Speed Sensor**

1 - TRANSMISSION OUTPUT SHAFT SPEED SENSOR  
2 - SEAL

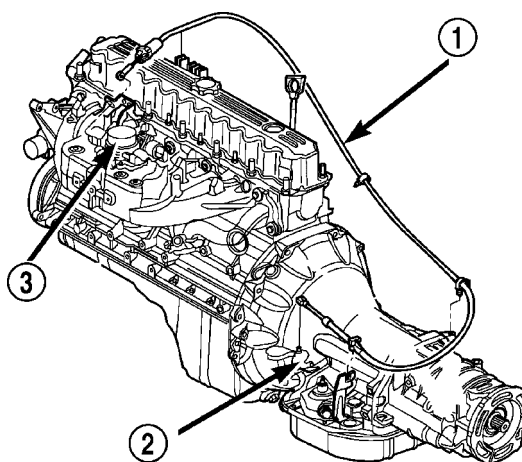
## THROTTLE VALVE CABLE

## DESCRIPTION

Transmission throttle valve cable adjustment is extremely important to proper operation. This adjustment positions the throttle valve, which controls shift speed, quality, and part-throttle downshift sensitivity.

If cable setting is too loose, early shifts and slip-page between shifts may occur. If the setting is too tight, shifts may be delayed and part throttle downshifts may be very sensitive.

The transmission throttle valve is operated by a cam on the throttle lever. The throttle lever is operated by an adjustable cable (Fig. 240). The cable is attached to an arm mounted on the throttle lever shaft. A retaining clip at the engine-end of the cable is removed to provide for cable adjustment. The retaining clip is then installed back onto the throttle valve cable to lock in the adjustment.



80ba79c5

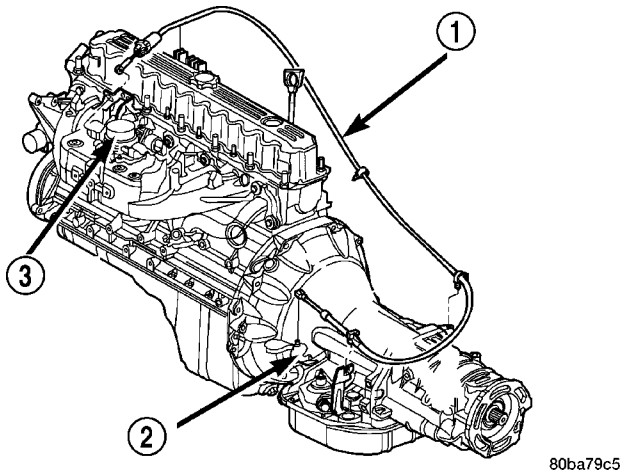
**Fig. 240 Throttle Valve Cable**

1 - THROTTLE VALVE CABLE  
2 - THROTTLE VALVE LEVER  
3 - THROTTLE BODY

## THROTTLE VALVE CABLE (Continued)

## ADJUSTMENTS - TRANSMISSION THROTTLE VALVE CABLE

A correctly adjusted throttle valve cable (Fig. 241) will cause the throttle lever on the transmission to move simultaneously with the throttle body lever from the idle position. Proper adjustment will allow simultaneous movement without causing the transmission throttle lever to either move ahead of, or lag behind the lever on the throttle body.

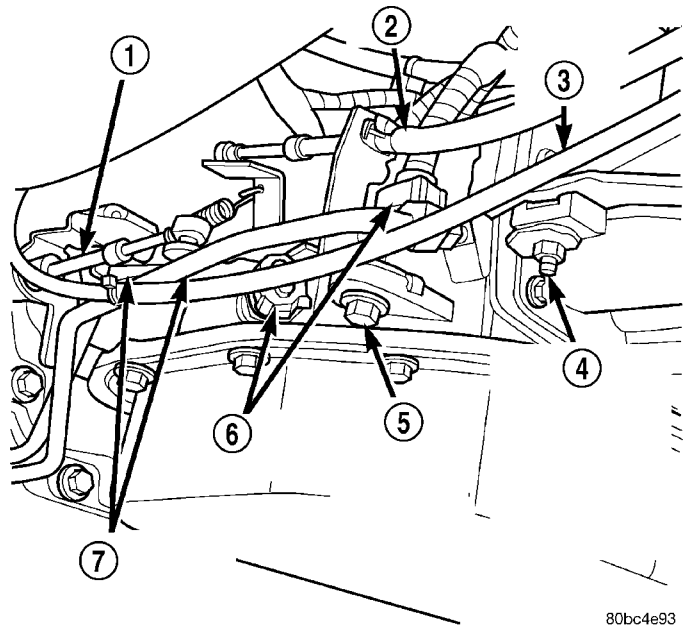


**Fig. 241 Throttle Valve Cable**

- 1 - THROTTLE VALVE CABLE
- 2 - THROTTLE VALVE LEVER
- 3 - THROTTLE BODY

## ADJUSTMENT VERIFICATION

- (1) Turn ignition key to OFF position.
- (2) Remove air cleaner.
- (3) Verify that lever on throttle body (Fig. 241) is at curb idle position. Then verify that the transmission throttle lever (Fig. 242) is also at idle (fully forward) position.
- (4) Slide cable off attachment stud on throttle body lever.
- (5) Compare position of cable end to attachment stud on throttle body lever:
  - Cable end and attachment stud should be aligned (or centered on one another) to within 1 mm (0.039 in.) in either direction (Fig. 243).
  - If cable end and attachment stud are misaligned (off center), cable will have to be adjusted as described in Throttle Valve Cable Adjustment procedure.
- (6) Reconnect cable end to attachment stud. Then with aid of a helper, observe movement of transmission throttle lever and lever on throttle body.
  - If both levers move simultaneously from idle to half-throttle and back to idle position, adjustment is correct.
  - If transmission throttle lever moves ahead of, or lags behind throttle body lever, cable adjustment will



**Fig. 242 Throttle Valve Cable at Transmission**

- 1 - TRANSMISSION SHIFTER CABLE
- 2 - THROTTLE VALVE CABLE
- 3 - TRANSFER CASE SHIFTER CABLE
- 4 - TRANSFER CASE SHIFTER CABLE BRACKET RETAINING BOLT(S)
- 5 - THROTTLE VALVE CABLE BRACKET RETAINING BOLT
- 6 - ELECTRICAL CONNECTORS
- 7 - TRANSMISSION FLUID LINES

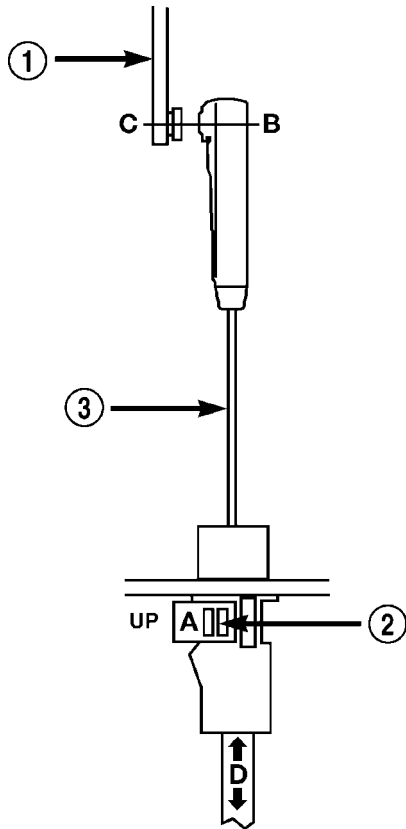
be necessary. Or, if throttle body lever prevents transmission lever from returning to closed position, cable adjustment will be necessary.

## ADJUSTMENT PROCEDURE

- (1) Turn ignition switch to OFF position.
- (2) Remove air cleaner if necessary.
- (3) Disconnect cable end from attachment stud. **Carefully slide cable off stud. Do not pry or pull cable off.**
- (4) Verify that transmission throttle lever is in fully closed position. Then be sure lever on throttle body is at curb idle position.
- (5) Pry the T.V. cable lock (A) into the UP position (Fig. 243). This will unlock the cable and allow for readjustment.
- (6) Apply just enough tension on the T.V. cable (B) to remove any slack in the cable. **Pulling too tight will cause the T.V. lever on the transmission to move out of its idle position, which will result in an incorrect T.V. cable adjustment.** Slide the sheath of the T.V. cable (D) back and forth until the centerlines of the T.V. cable end (B) and the throttle bell crank lever (C) are aligned within one millimeter (1mm) (Fig. 243).
- (7) While holding the T.V. cable in the set position push the T.V. cable lock (A) into the down position



## THROTTLE VALVE CABLE (Continued)



80bce9fb

**Fig. 243 Throttle Valve Cable at Throttle Linkage**

- 1 - THROTTLE LINKAGE
- 2 - THROTTLE VALVE CABLE LOCKING CLIP
- 3 - THROTTLE VALVE CABLE

(Fig. 243). This will lock the present T.V. cable adjustment.

**NOTE:** Be sure that as the cable is pulled forward and centered on the throttle lever stud, the cable housing moves smoothly with the cable. Due to the angle at which the cable housing enters the spring housing, the cable housing may bind slightly and create an incorrect adjustment.

(8) Reconnect the T.V. cable (B) to the throttle bellcrank lever (C).

(9) Check cable adjustment. Verify transmission throttle lever and lever on throttle body move simultaneously.

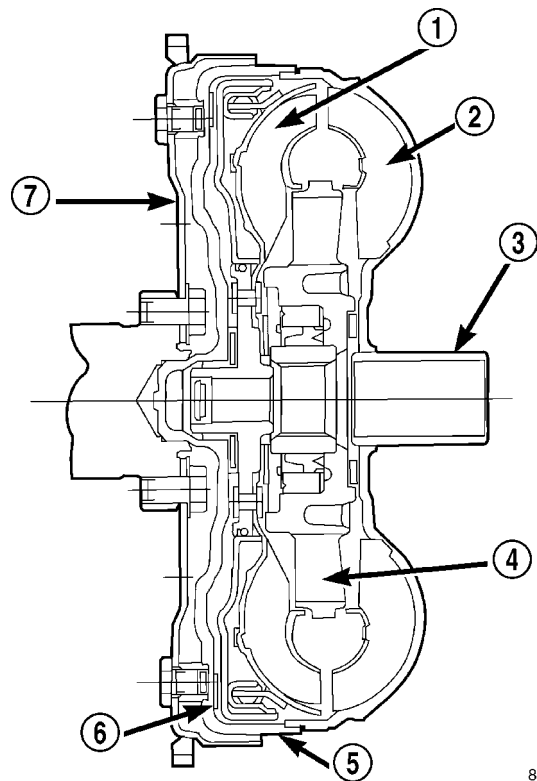
## TORQUE CONVERTER

## DESCRIPTION

The torque converter (Fig. 244) is a hydraulic device that couples the engine crankshaft to the transmission. The torque converter consists of an outer shell with an internal turbine, a stator, an overrunning clutch, an impeller and an electronically applied converter clutch. The converter clutch provides reduced engine speed and greater fuel economy when engaged. Clutch engagement also provides reduced transmission fluid temperatures. The torque converter hub drives the transmission oil (fluid) pump.

The torque converter is a sealed, welded unit that is not repairable and is serviced as an assembly.

**CAUTION:** The torque converter must be replaced if a transmission failure resulted in large amounts of metal or fiber contamination in the fluid.



80c07135

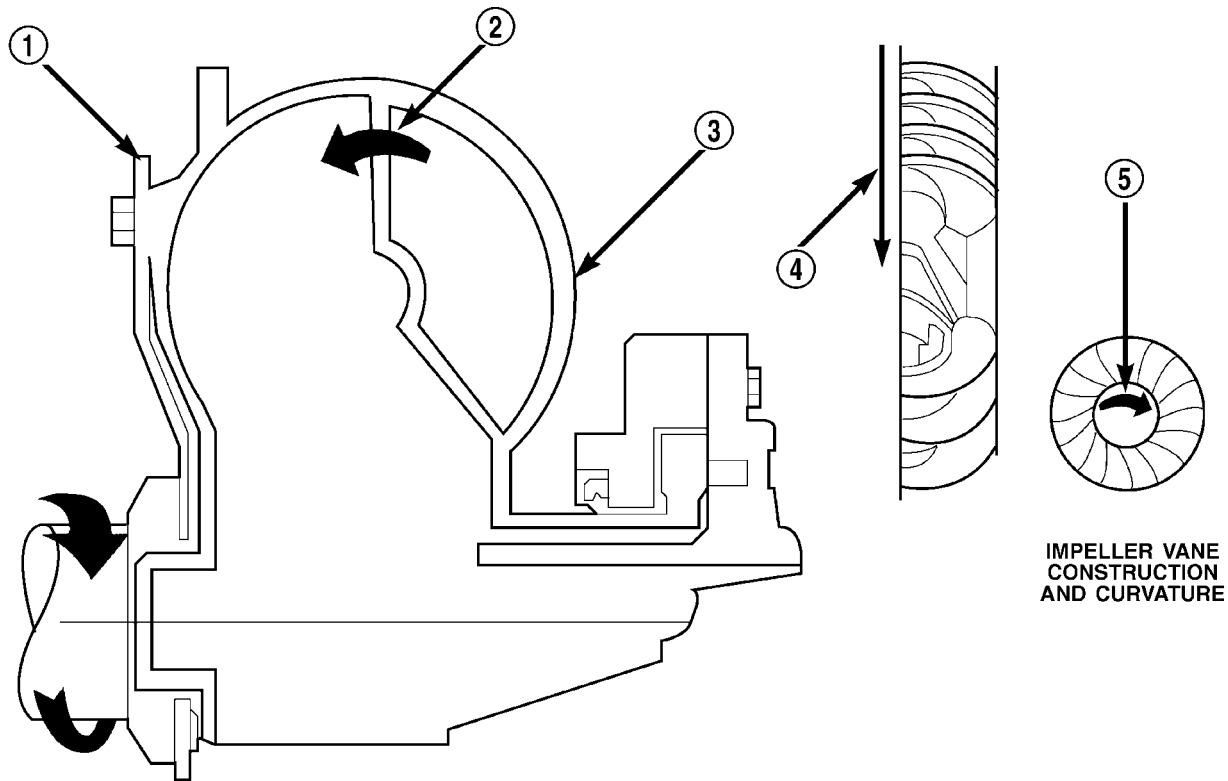
**Fig. 244 Torque Converter Assembly**

- 1 - TURBINE
- 2 - IMPELLER
- 3 - HUB
- 4 - STATOR
- 5 - FRONT COVER
- 6 - CONVERTER CLUTCH DISC
- 7 - DRIVE PLATE

## TORQUE CONVERTER (Continued)

**IMPELLER**

The impeller (Fig. 245) is an integral part of the converter housing. The impeller consists of curved blades placed radially along the inside of the housing on the transmission side of the converter. As the converter housing is rotated by the engine, so is the impeller, because they are one and the same and are the driving members of the system.



**IMPELLER VANE  
CONSTRUCTION  
AND CURVATURE**

80bfe26a

**Fig. 245 Impeller**

- 1 - ENGINE FLEXPLATE
- 2 - OIL FLOW FROM IMPELLER SECTION INTO TURBINE SECTION
- 3 - IMPELLER VANES AND COVER ARE INTEGRAL

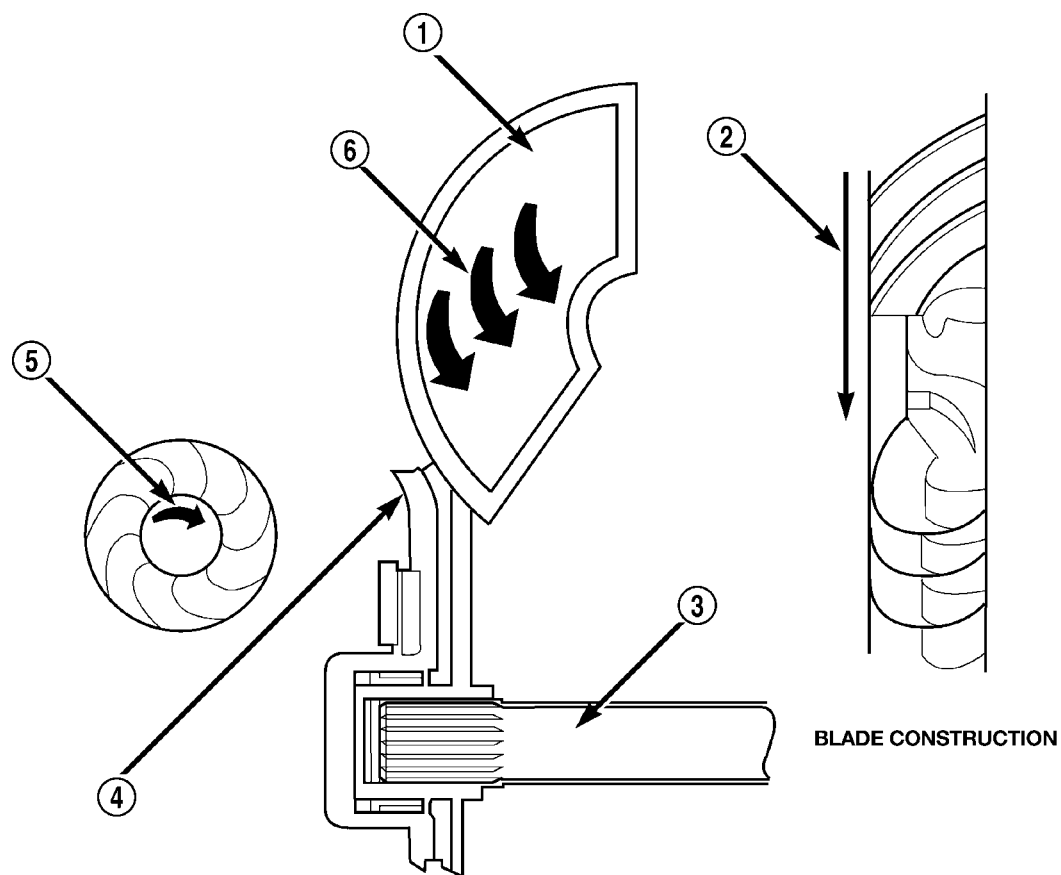
- 4 - ENGINE ROTATION
- 5 - ENGINE ROTATION



## TORQUE CONVERTER (Continued)

**TURBINE**

The turbine (Fig. 246) is the output, or driven, member of the converter. The turbine is mounted within the housing opposite the impeller, but is not attached to the housing. The input shaft is inserted through the center of the impeller and splined into the turbine. The design of the turbine is similar to the impeller, except the blades of the turbine are curved in the opposite direction.



80bfe26b

**Fig. 246 Turbine**

- 1 - TURBINE VANE
- 2 - ENGINE ROTATION
- 3 - INPUT SHAFT

- 4 - PORTION OF TORQUE CONVERTER COVER
- 5 - ENGINE ROTATION
- 6 - OIL FLOW WITHIN TURBINE SECTION

## TORQUE CONVERTER (Continued)

## STATOR

The stator assembly (Fig. 247) is mounted on a stationary shaft which is an integral part of the oil pump. The stator is located between the impeller and turbine within the torque converter case (Fig. 248). The stator contains an over-running clutch, which allows the stator to rotate only in a clockwise direction. When the stator is locked against the over-running clutch, the torque multiplication feature of the torque converter is operational.

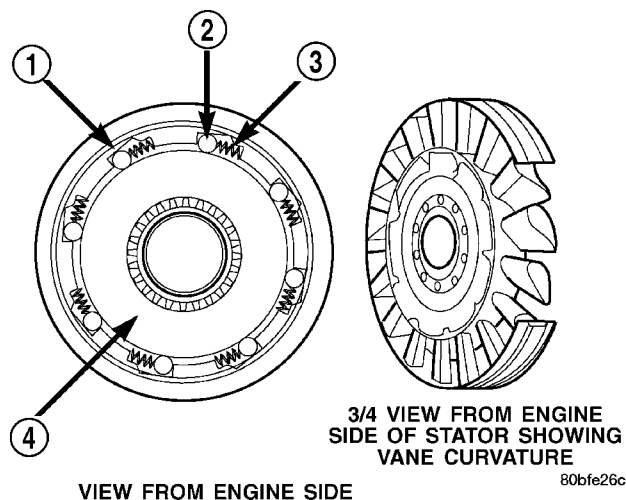
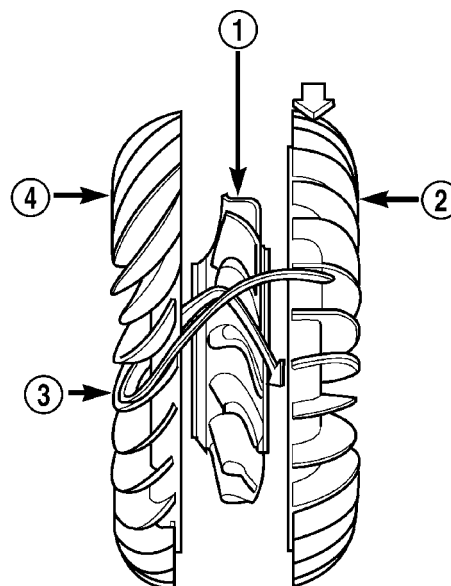


Fig. 247 Stator Components

- 1 - CAM (OUTER RACE)
- 2 - ROLLER
- 3 - SPRING
- 4 - INNER RACE

## TORQUE CONVERTER CLUTCH (TCC)

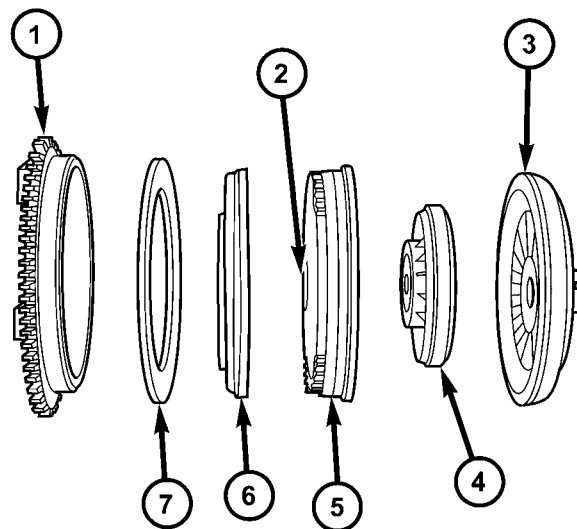
The TCC (Fig. 249) was installed to improve the efficiency of the torque converter that is lost to the slippage of the fluid coupling. Although the fluid coupling provides smooth, shock-free power transfer, it is natural for all fluid couplings to slip. If the impeller and turbine were mechanically locked together, a zero slippage condition could be obtained. A hydraulic piston was added to the turbine, and a friction material was added to the inside of the front cover to provide this mechanical lock-up.



80bfe26d

Fig. 248 Stator Location

- 1 - STATOR
- 2 - IMPELLER
- 3 - FLUID FLOW
- 4 - TURBINE



80870b2f

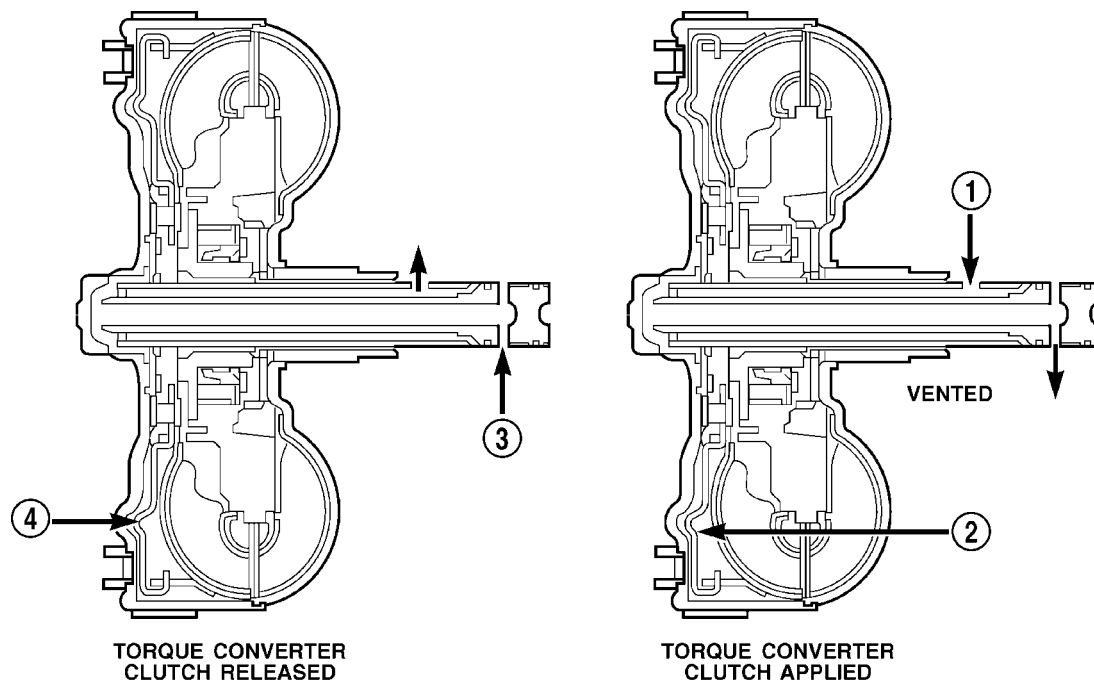
Fig. 249 Torque Converter Clutch (TCC)

- 1 - IMPELLER FRONT COVER
- 2 - THRUST WASHER ASSEMBLY
- 3 - IMPELLER
- 4 - STATOR
- 5 - TURBINE
- 6 - PISTON
- 7 - FRICTION DISC

## TORQUE CONVERTER (Continued)

## OPERATION

The converter impeller (Fig. 250) (driving member), which is integral to the converter housing and bolted to the engine drive plate, rotates at engine speed. The converter turbine (driven member), which reacts from fluid pressure generated by the impeller, rotates and turns the transmission input shaft.



80bfe276

**Fig. 250 Torque Converter Fluid Operation**

1 - APPLY PRESSURE

2 - THE PISTON MOVES SLIGHTLY FORWARD

3 - RELEASE PRESSURE

4 - THE PISTON MOVES SLIGHTLY REARWARD

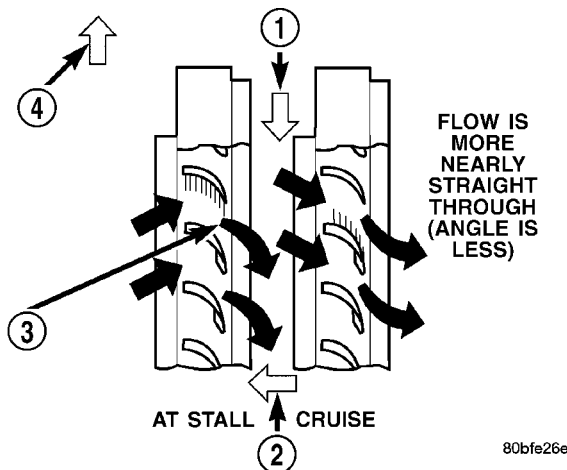
## TORQUE CONVERTER (Continued)

## TURBINE

As the fluid that was put into motion by the impeller blades strikes the blades of the turbine, some of the energy and rotational force is transferred into the turbine and the input shaft. This causes both of them (turbine and input shaft) to rotate in a clockwise direction following the impeller. As the fluid is leaving the trailing edges of the turbine's blades it continues in a "hindering" direction back toward the impeller. If the fluid is not redirected before it strikes the impeller, it will strike the impeller in such a direction that it would tend to slow it down.

## STATOR

Torque multiplication is achieved by locking the stator's over-running clutch to its shaft (Fig. 251). Under stall conditions (the turbine is stationary), the oil leaving the turbine blades strikes the face of the stator blades and tries to rotate them in a counter-clockwise direction. When this happens the over-running clutch of the stator locks and holds the stator from rotating. With the stator locked, the oil strikes the stator blades and is redirected into a "helping" direction before it enters the impeller. This circulation of oil from impeller to turbine, turbine to stator, and stator to impeller, can produce a maximum torque multiplication of about 2.4:1. As the turbine begins to match the speed of the impeller, the fluid that was hitting the stator in such a way as to cause it to lock-up is no longer doing so. In this condition of operation, the stator begins to free wheel and the converter acts as a fluid coupling.



**Fig. 251 Stator Operation**

- 1 - DIRECTION STATOR WILL FREE WHEEL DUE TO OIL PUSHING ON BACKSIDE OF VANES
- 2 - FRONT OF ENGINE
- 3 - INCREASED ANGLE AS OIL STRIKES VANES
- 4 - DIRECTION STATOR IS LOCKED UP DUE TO OIL PUSHING AGAINST STATOR VANES

## TORQUE CONVERTER CLUTCH (TCC)

The torque converter clutch is hydraulically applied and is released when fluid is vented from the hydraulic circuit by the torque converter control (TCC) solenoid on the valve body. The torque converter clutch is controlled by the Powertrain Control Module (PCM). The torque converter clutch engages in fourth gear, and in third gear under various conditions, such as when the O/D switch is OFF, when the vehicle is cruising on a level surface after the vehicle has warmed up. The torque converter clutch will disengage momentarily when an increase in engine load is sensed by the PCM, such as when the vehicle begins to go uphill or the throttle pressure is increased.

## REMOVAL

- (1) Remove transmission and torque converter from vehicle.
- (2) Place a suitable drain pan under the converter housing end of the transmission.

**CAUTION:** Verify that transmission is secure on the lifting device or work surface, the center of gravity of the transmission will shift when the torque converter is removed creating an unstable condition. The torque converter is a heavy unit. Use caution when separating the torque converter from the transmission.

- (3) Pull the torque converter forward until the center hub clears the oil pump seal.
- (4) Separate the torque converter from the transmission.

## INSTALLATION

Check converter hub and drive notches for sharp edges, burrs, scratches, or nicks. Polish the hub and notches with 320/400 grit paper or crocus cloth if necessary. The hub must be smooth to avoid damaging the pump seal at installation.

- (1) Lubricate oil pump seal lip with transmission fluid.
- (2) Place torque converter in position on transmission.

**CAUTION:** Do not damage oil pump seal or bushing while inserting torque converter into the front of the transmission.

- (3) Align torque converter to oil pump seal opening.
- (4) Insert torque converter hub into oil pump.
- (5) While pushing torque converter inward, rotate converter until converter is fully seated in the oil pump gears.

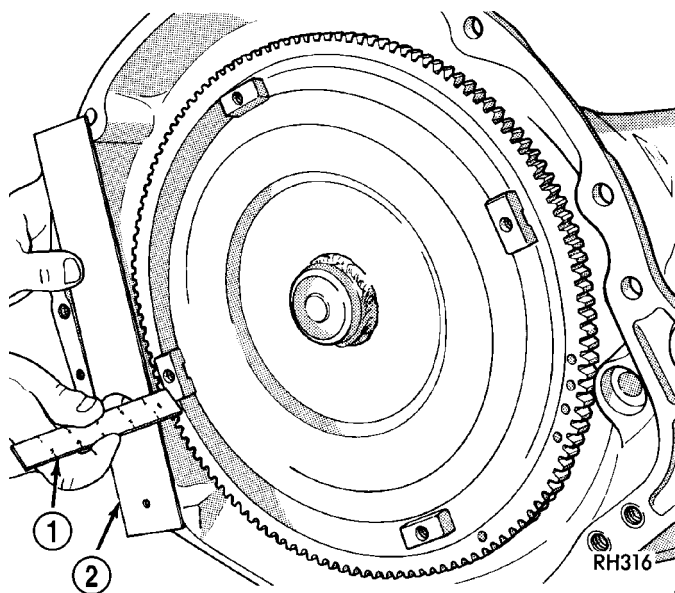
## TORQUE CONVERTER (Continued)

(6) Check converter seating with a scale and straightedge (Fig. 252). Surface of converter lugs should be 1/2 in. to rear of straightedge when converter is fully seated.

(7) If necessary, temporarily secure converter with C-clamp attached to the converter housing.

(8) Install the transmission in the vehicle.

(9) Fill the transmission with the recommended fluid.



**Fig. 252 Checking Torque Converter Seating - Typical**

1 - SCALE  
2 - STRAIGHTEDGE

## TORQUE CONVERTER DRAINBACK VALVE

## DESCRIPTION

The drainback valve is located in the transmission cooler outlet (pressure) line.

## OPERATION

The valve prevents fluid from draining from the converter into the cooler and lines when the vehicle is shut down for lengthy periods. Production valves have a hose nipple at one end, while the opposite end is threaded for a flare fitting. All valves have an arrow (or similar mark) to indicate direction of flow through the valve.

## STANDARD PROCEDURE - TORQUE CONVERTER DRAINBACK VALVE

The converter drainback check valve is located in the cooler outlet (pressure) line near the radiator tank. The valve prevents fluid drainback when the vehicle is parked for lengthy periods. The valve check

ball is spring loaded and has an opening pressure of approximately 2 psi.

The valve is serviced as an assembly; it is not repairable. Do not clean the valve if restricted, or contaminated by sludge, or debris. If the valve fails, or if a transmission malfunction occurs that generates significant amounts of sludge and/or clutch particles and metal shavings, the valve must be replaced.

If the valve is restricted, installed backwards, or in the wrong line, it will cause an overheating condition and possible transmission failure.

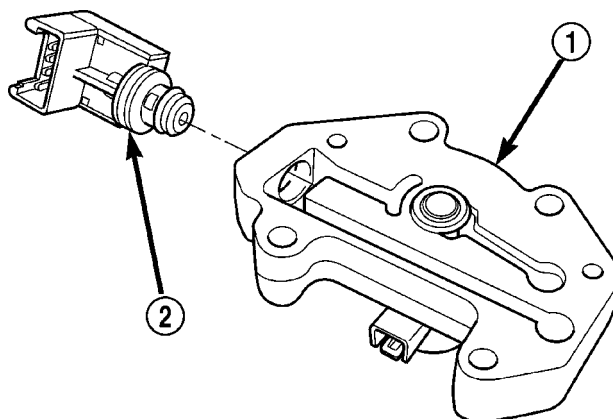
**CAUTION:** The drainback valve is a one-way flow device. It must be properly oriented in terms of flow direction for the cooler to function properly. The valve must be installed in the pressure line. Otherwise flow will be blocked and would cause an overheating condition and eventual transmission failure.

## TRANSMISSION TEMPERATURE SENSOR

## DESCRIPTION

Transmission fluid temperature readings are supplied to the transmission control module by the thermistor (Fig. 253). The temperature readings are used to control engagement of the fourth gear overdrive clutch, the converter clutch, and governor pressure. Normal resistance value for the thermistor at room temperature is approximately 2000 ohms.

The thermistor is part of the governor pressure sensor assembly and is immersed in transmission fluid at all times.



80c072af

**Fig. 253 Governor Pressure Sensor**

1 - GOVERNOR BODY  
2 - GOVERNOR PRESSURE SENSOR/TRANSMISSION FLUID TEMPERATURE THERMISTOR

## TRANSMISSION TEMPERATURE SENSOR (Continued)

## OPERATION

The PCM prevents engagement of the converter clutch and overdrive clutch, when fluid temperature is below approximately 10°C (50°F).

If fluid temperature exceeds 126°C (260°F), the PCM causes a 4-3 downshift and engage the converter clutch. Engagement is according to the third gear converter clutch engagement schedule.

The overdrive OFF lamp in the instrument panel illuminates when the shift back to third occurs. The transmission will not allow fourth gear operation until fluid temperature decreases to approximately 110°C (230°F).

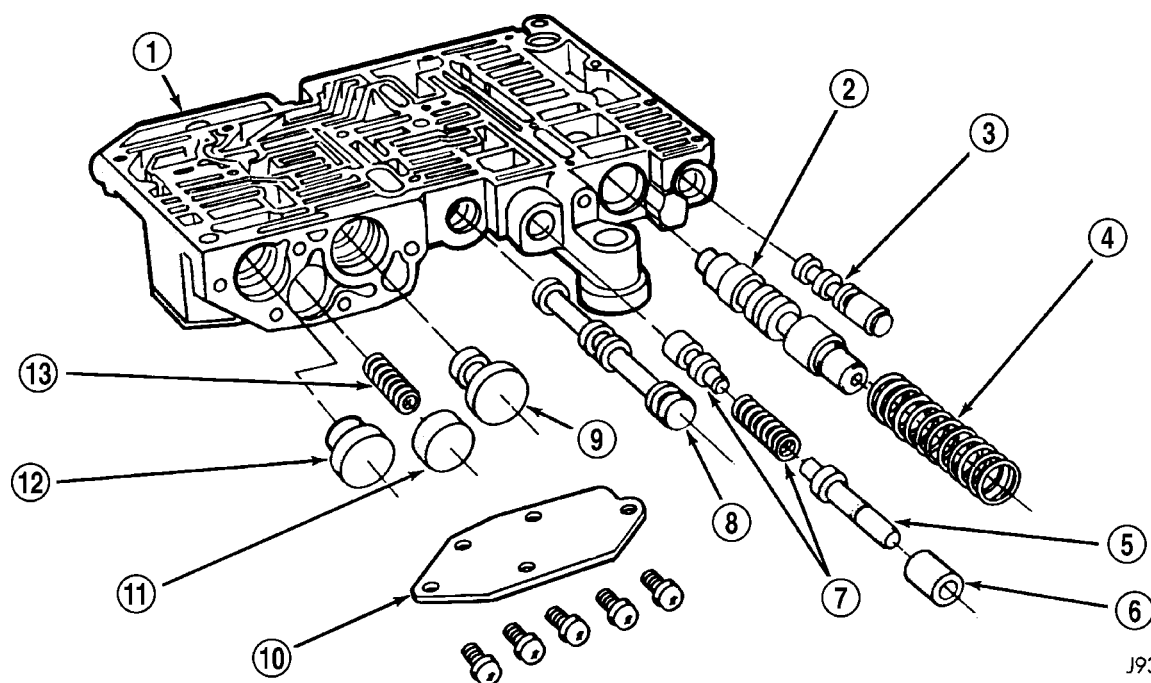
## VALVE BODY

## DESCRIPTION

The valve body consists of a cast aluminum valve body, a separator plate, and transfer plate. The valve body contains valves and check balls that control fluid delivery to the torque converter clutch, bands, and frictional clutches. The valve body contains the following components (Fig. 254), (Fig. 255), (Fig. 256), and (Fig. 257):

- Regulator valve
- Regulator valve throttle pressure plug
- Line pressure plug and sleeve
- Kickdown valve
- Kickdown limit valve
- 1-2 shift valve
- 1-2 control valve
- 2-3 shift valve
- 2-3 governor plug
- 3-4 shift valve
- 3-4 timing valve
- 3-4 quick fill valve
- 3-4 accumulator
- Throttle valve
- Throttle pressure plug
- Switch valve
- Manual valve
- Converter clutch lock-up valve
- Converter clutch lock-up timing Valve
- Shuttle valve
- Shuttle valve throttle plug
- Boost Valve
- 10 check balls

By adjusting the spring pressure acting on the regulator valve, transmission line pressure can be adjusted.



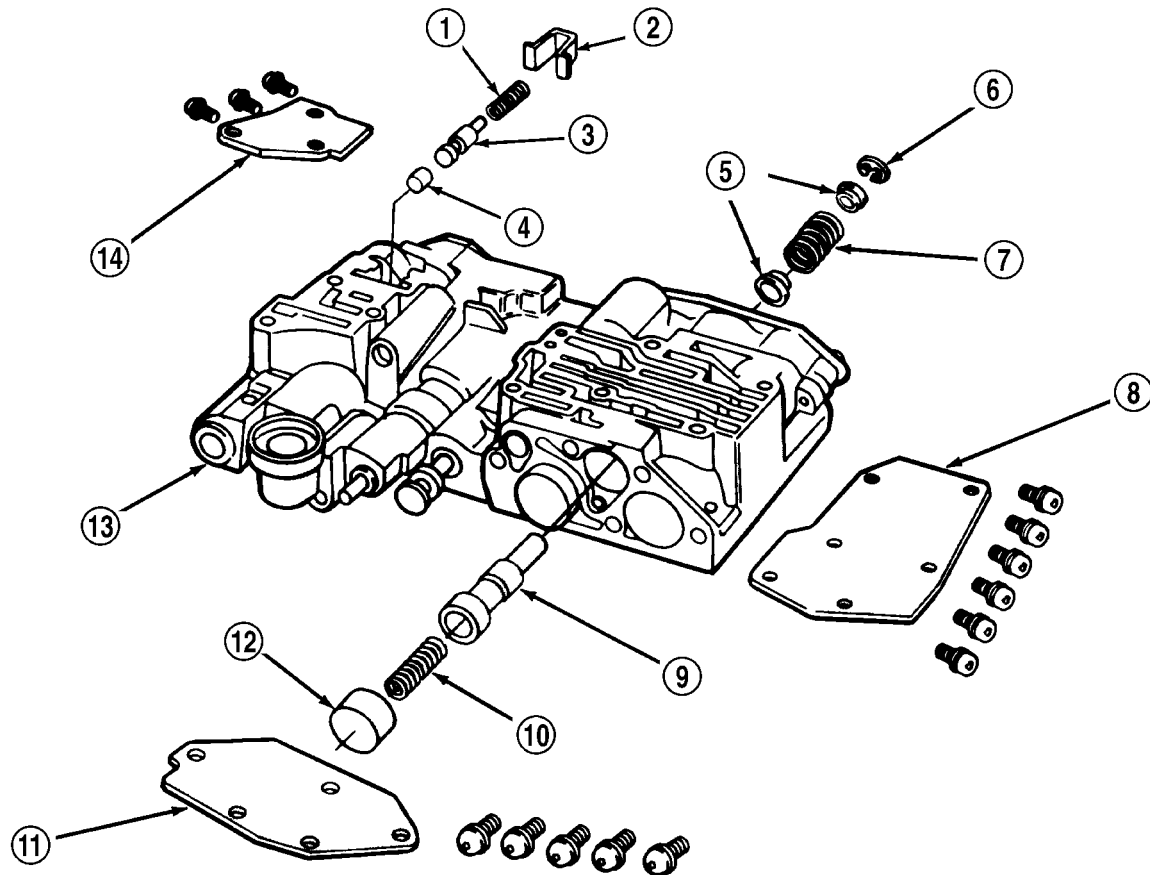
**Fig. 254 Upper Housing Control Valve Locations**

- 1 - UPPER HOUSING
- 2 - REGULATOR VALVE
- 3 - SWITCH VALVE
- 4 - REGULATOR VALVE SPRING
- 5 - KICKDOWN VALVE
- 6 - KICKDOWN DETENT
- 7 - THROTTLE VALVE AND SPRING

- 8 - MANUAL VALVE
- 9 - 1-2 GOVERNOR PLUG
- 10 - GOVERNOR PLUG COVER
- 11 - THROTTLE PLUG
- 12 - 2-3 GOVERNOR PLUG
- 13 - SHUTTLE VALVE PRIMARY SPRING



## VALVE BODY (Continued)

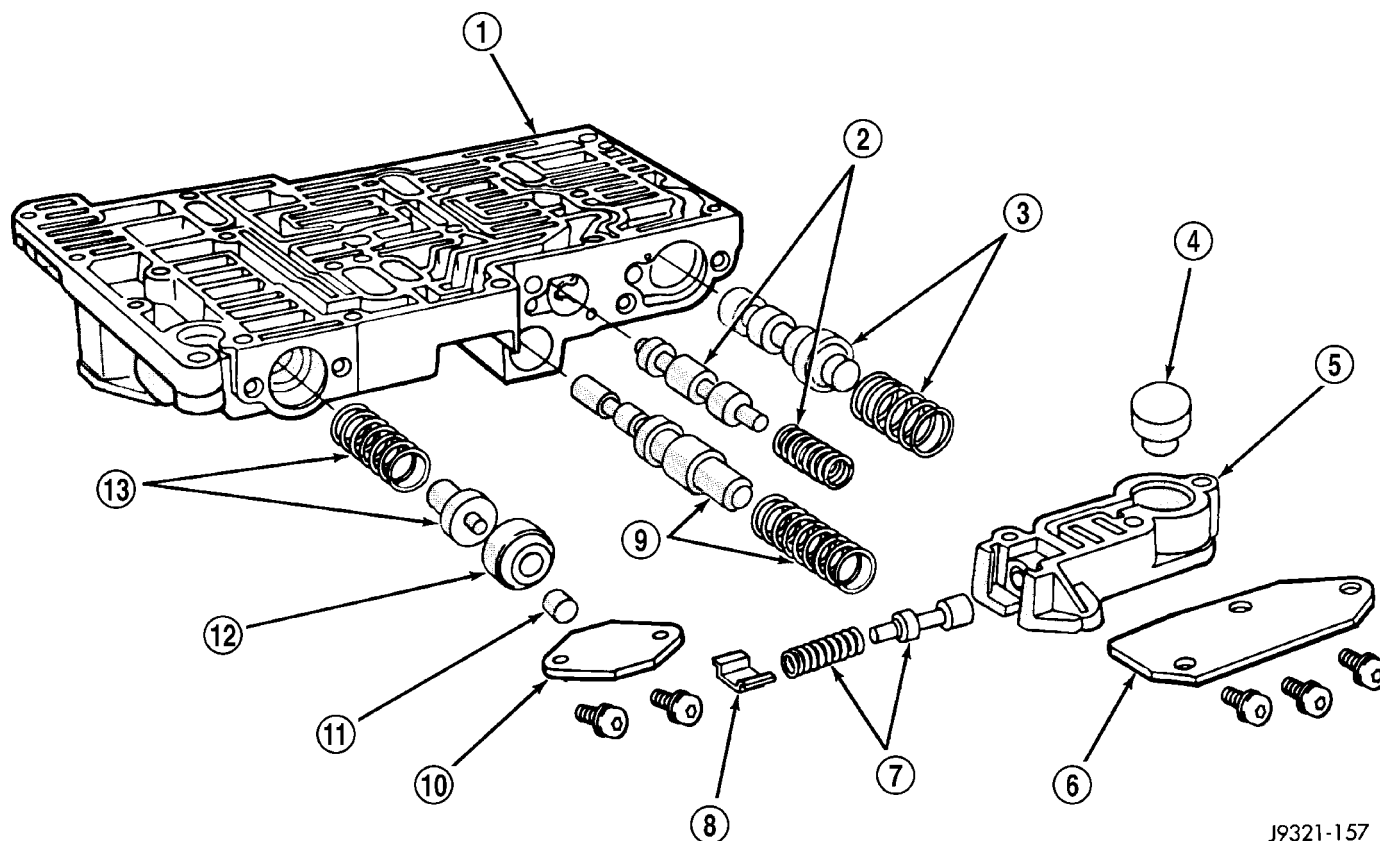


J9421-217

**Fig. 255 Shuttle and Boost Valve Locations**

- |                                    |                                   |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1 - SPRING                         | 8 - SHUTTLE VALVE COVER           |
| 2 - RETAINER                       | 9 - SHUTTLE VALVE                 |
| 3 - BOOST VALVE                    | 10 - SHUTTLE VALVE PRIMARY SPRING |
| 4 - BOOST VALVE PLUG               | 11 - GOVERNOR PLUG COVER          |
| 5 - SPRING GUIDES                  | 12 - THROTTLE PLUG                |
| 6 - E-CLIP                         | 13 - UPPER HOUSING                |
| 7 - SHUTTLE VALVE SECONDARY SPRING | 14 - BOOST VALVE COVER            |

## VALVE BODY (Continued)

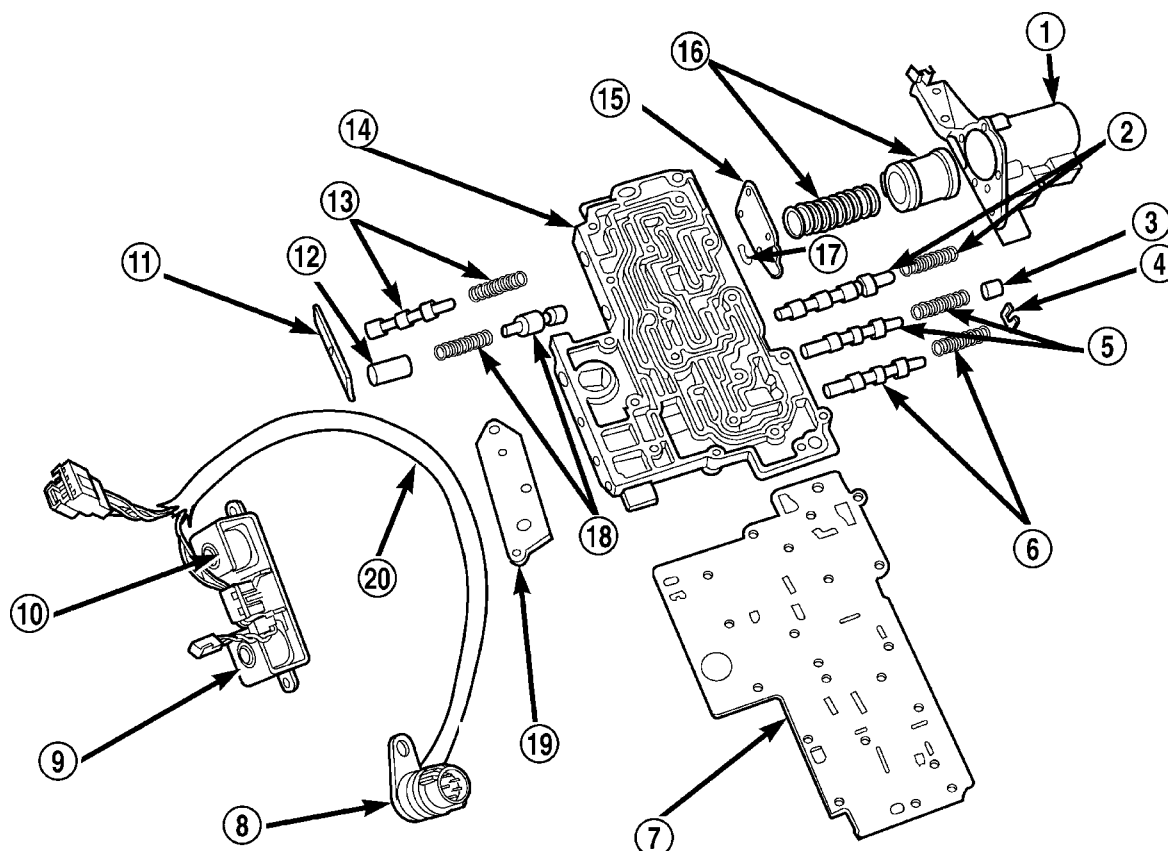


J9321-157

**Fig. 256 Upper Housing Shift Valve and Pressure Plug Locations**

- |                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| 1 - UPPER HOUSING              | 8 - RETAINER                           |
| 2 - 1-2 SHIFT VALVE AND SPRING | 9 - 1-2 SHIFT CONTROL VALVE AND SPRING |
| 3 - 2-3 SHIFT VALVE AND SPRING | 10 - PRESSURE PLUG COVER               |
| 4 - 2-3 THROTTLE PLUG          | 11 - LINE PRESSURE PLUG                |
| 5 - LIMIT VALVE HOUSING        | 12 - PLUG SLEEVE                       |
| 6 - LIMIT VALVE COVER          | 13 - THROTTLE PRESSURE SPRING AND PLUG |
| 7 - LIMIT VALVE AND SPRING     |  |

## VALVE BODY (Continued)



80c072b5

**Fig. 257 Lower Housing Shift Valves and Springs**

- 1 - 3-4 ACCUMULATOR HOUSING
- 2 - 3-4 SHIFT VALVE AND SPRING
- 3 - PLUG
- 4 - SPRING RETAINER
- 5 - CONVERTER CLUTCH VALVE AND SPRING
- 6 - CONVERTER CLUTCH TIMING VALVE AND SPRING
- 7 - OVERDRIVE SEPARATOR PLATE
- 8 - CASE CONNECTOR
- 9 - CONVERTER CLUTCH SOLENOID
- 10 - OVERDRIVE SOLENOID

- 11 - TIMING VALVE COVER
- 12 - PLUG
- 13 - 3-4 TIMING VALVE AND SPRING
- 14 - LOWER HOUSING
- 15 - ACCUMULATOR END PLATE
- 16 - 3-4 ACCUMULATOR PISTON AND SPRING
- 17 - E-CLIP
- 18 - 3-4 QUICK FILL SPRING AND VALVE
- 19 - SOLENOID GASKET
- 20 - HARNESS

## VALVE BODY (Continued)

## OPERATION

**NOTE:** Refer to the Hydraulic Schematics for a visual aid in determining valve location, operation and design.

## CHECK BALLS

CHECK BALL NUMBER	DESCRIPTION
1	Allows either the manual valve to put line pressure on the 1-2 governor plug or the KD Valve to put WOT line pressure on the 1-2 governor plug.
2	Allows either the manual valve to put line pressure on the 2-3 governor plug or the KD Valve to put WOT line pressure on the 2-3 governor plug.
3	Allows either the Reverse circuit or the 3rd gear circuit to pressurize the front clutch.
4	Allows either the Manual Low circuit from the Manual Valve or the Reverse from the Manual Valve circuit to pressurize the rear servo.
5	Directs line pressure to the spring end of the 2-3 shift valve in either Manual Low or Manual 2nd, forcing the downshift to 2nd gear regardless of governor pressure.
6	Provides a by-pass around the front servo orifice so that the servo can release quickly.
7	Provides a by-pass around the rear clutch orifice so that the clutch can release quickly.
8	Directs reverse line pressure through an orifice to the throttle valve eliminating the extra leakage and insuring that Reverse line pressure pressure will be sufficient.
9	Provides a by-pass around the rear servo orifice so that the servo can release quickly.
10	Allows the lockup clutch to used at WOT in 3rd gear by putting line pressure from the 3-4 Timing Valve on the interlock area of the 2-3 shift valve, thereby preventing a 3rd gear Lock-up to 2nd gear kickdown.

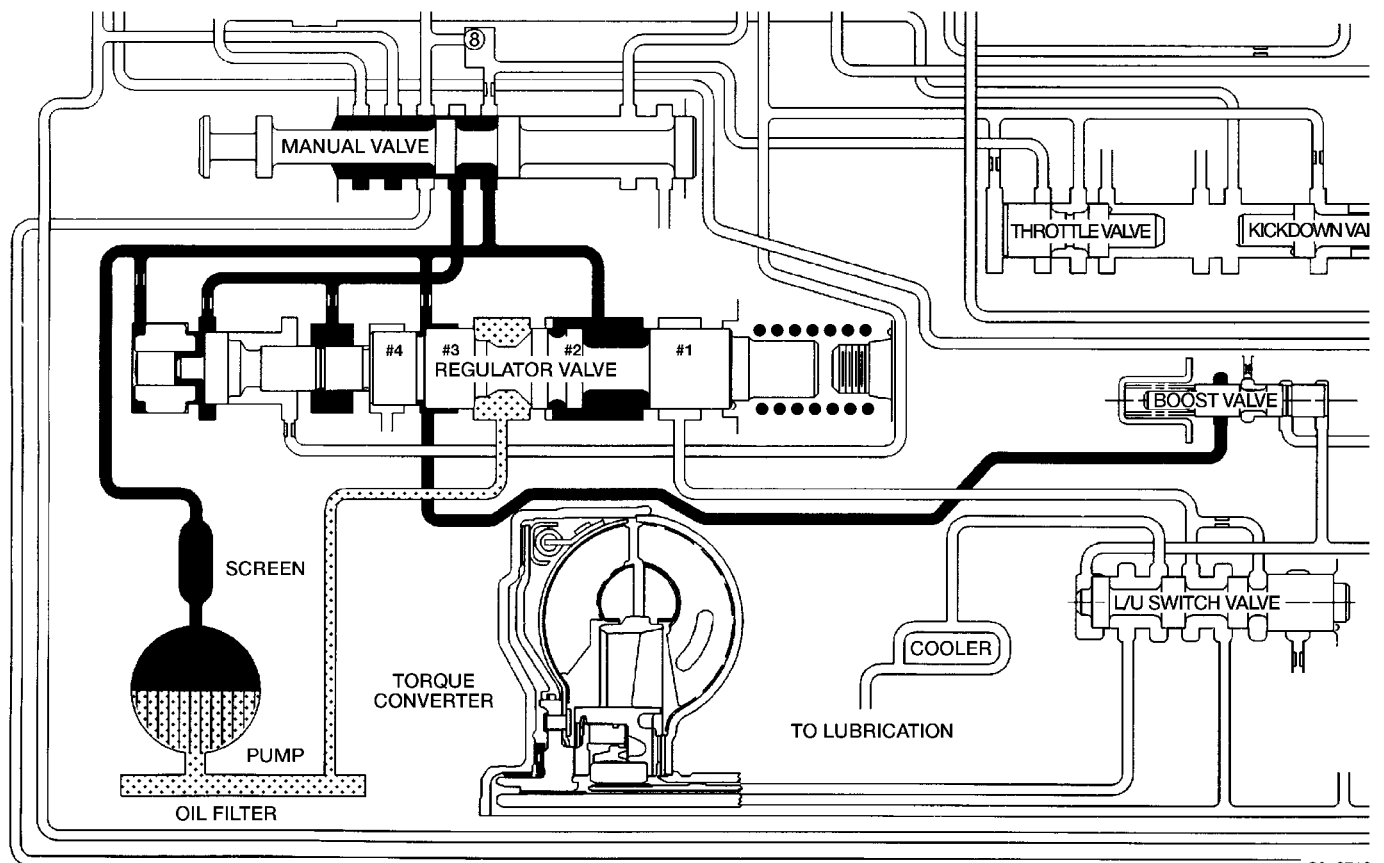
## VALVE BODY (Continued)

## REGULATOR VALVE

The pressure regulator valve is needed to control the hydraulic pressure within the system and reduce the amount of heat produced in the fluid. The pressure regulator valve is located in the valve body near the manual valve. The pressure regulator valve train controls the maximum pressure in the lines by metering the dumping of fluid back into the sump. Regulated pressure is referred to as "line pressure."

The regulator valve (Fig. 258) has a spring on one end that pushes the valve to the left. This closes a dump (vent) that is used to lower pressure. The closing of the dump will cause the oil pressure to increase. Oil pressure on the opposite end of the valve pushes the valve to the right, opening the

dump and lowering oil pressure. The result is spring pressure working against oil pressure to maintain the oil at specific pressures. With the engine running, fluid flows from the pump to the pressure regulator valve, manual valve, and the interconnected circuits. As fluid is sent through passages to the regulator valve, the pressure pushes the valve to the right against the large spring. It is also sent to the reaction areas on the left side of the throttle pressure plug and the line pressure plug. With the gear selector in the PARK position, fluid recirculates through the regulator and manual valves back to the sump.



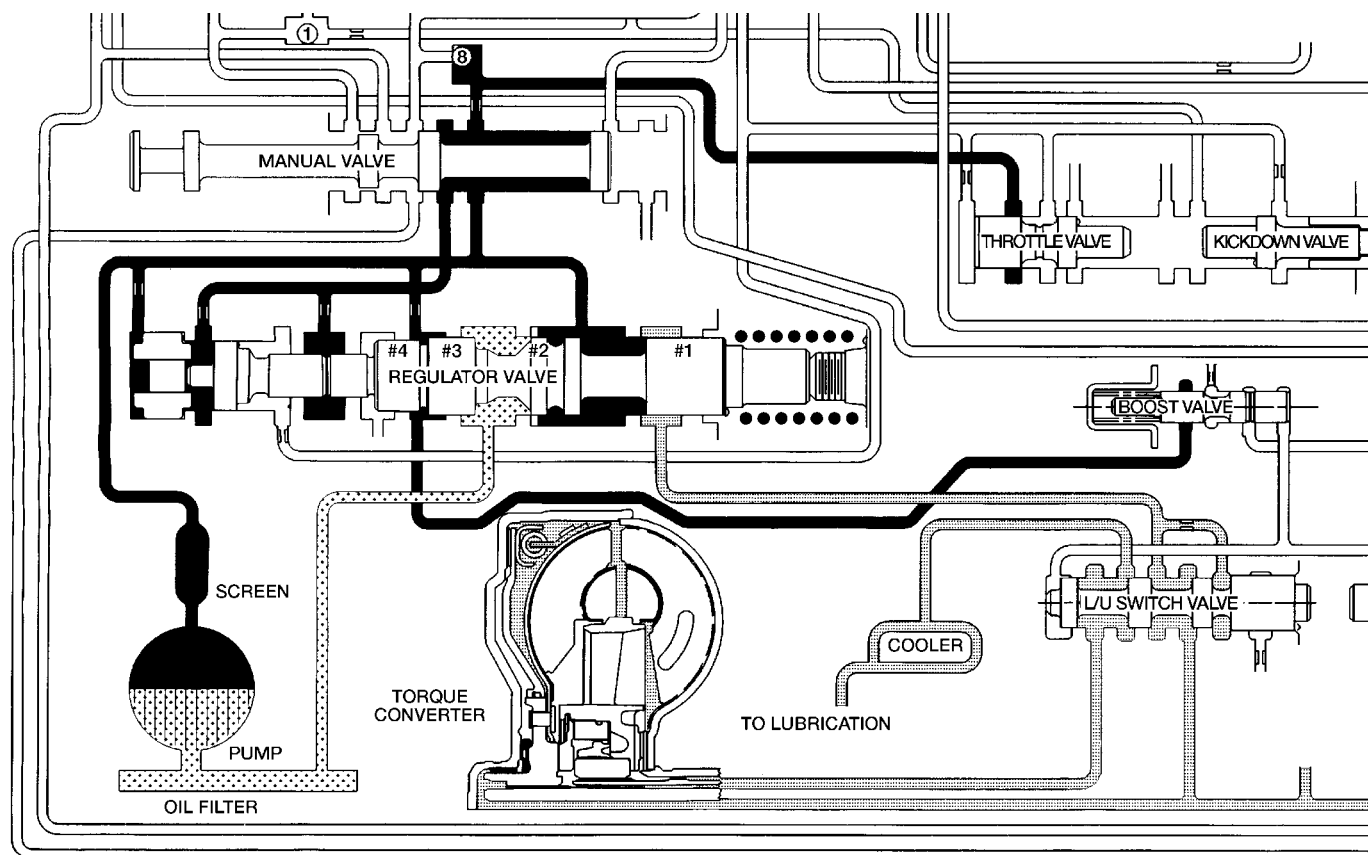
80c0713c

**Fig. 258 Regulator Valve in PARK Position**

## VALVE BODY (Continued)

Meanwhile, the torque converter is filled slowly. In all other gear positions (Fig. 259), fluid flows between two right side lands to the switch valve and torque converter. At low pump speeds, the flow is controlled by the pressure valve groove to reduce pressure to the torque converter. After the torque converter and switch valve fill with fluid, the switch valve becomes the controlling metering device for torque converter pressure. The regulator valve then begins to control the line pressure for the other transmission circuits. The balance of the fluid pressure pushing the valve to the right and the spring pressure pushing to the left determines the size of the metering passage at land #2 (land #1 being at the far right of the valve in the diagram). As fluid leaks past the land, it moves into a groove connected to the filter or sump. As the land meters the fluid to the sump, it causes the pressure to reduce and the spring decreases the size of the metering passage. When the size of the metering passage is reduced, the pressure rises again and the size of the land is increased again. Pressure is regulated by this constant balance of hydraulic and spring pressure.

The metering at land #2 establishes the line pressure throughout the transmission. It is varied according to changes in throttle position and the transmission's internal condition within a range of 57-94 psi (except in REVERSE) (Fig. 260). The regulated line pressure in REVERSE (Fig. 261) is held at much higher pressures than in the other gear positions: 145-280 psi. The higher pressure for REVERSE is achieved by the manual valve blocking the supply of line pressure to the reaction area left of land #4. With this pressure blocked, there is less area for pressure to act on to balance the force of the spring on the right. This allows line pressure to push the valve train to the right, reducing the amount of fluid returned to the pump's inlet, increasing line pressure.

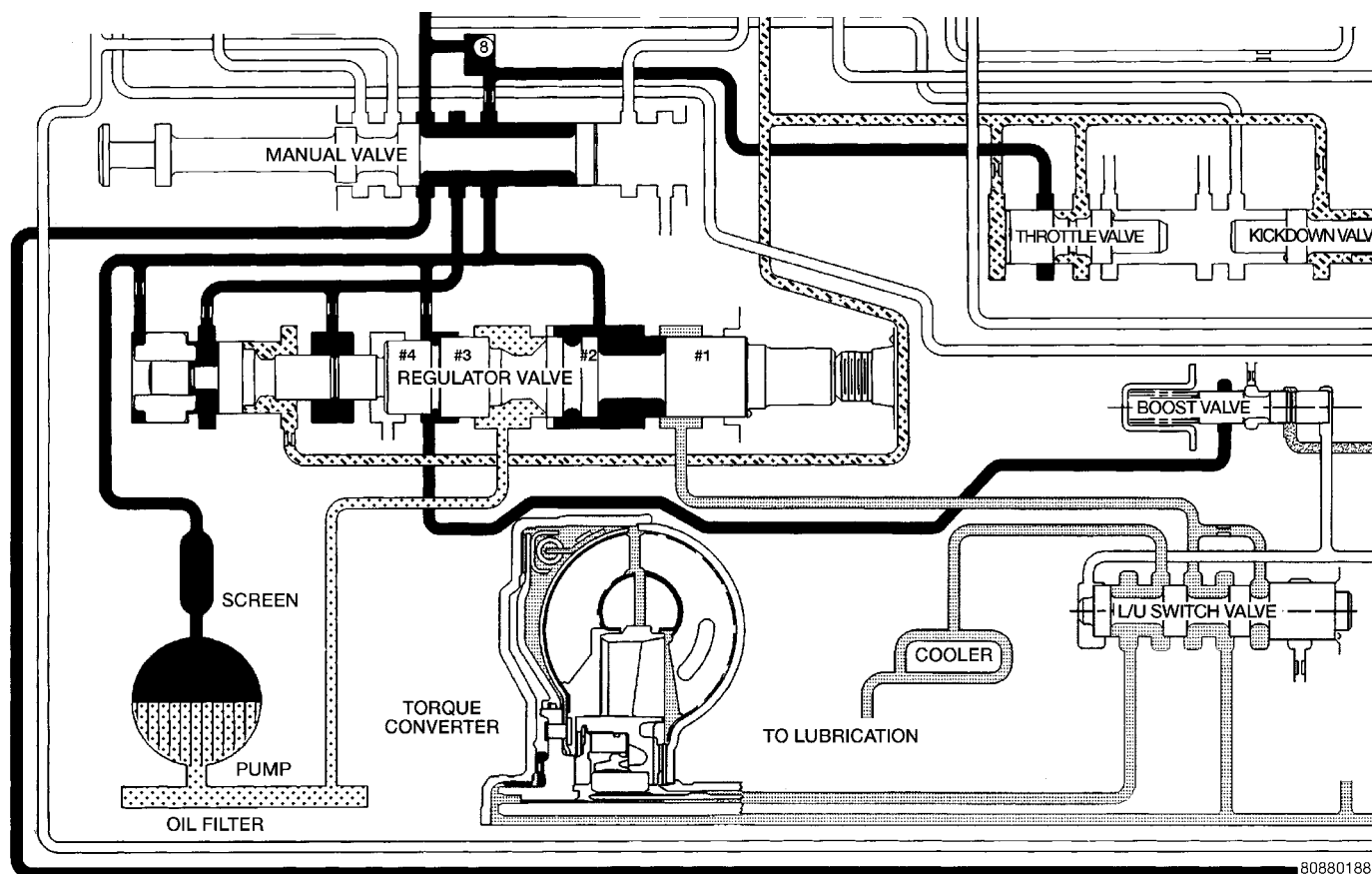
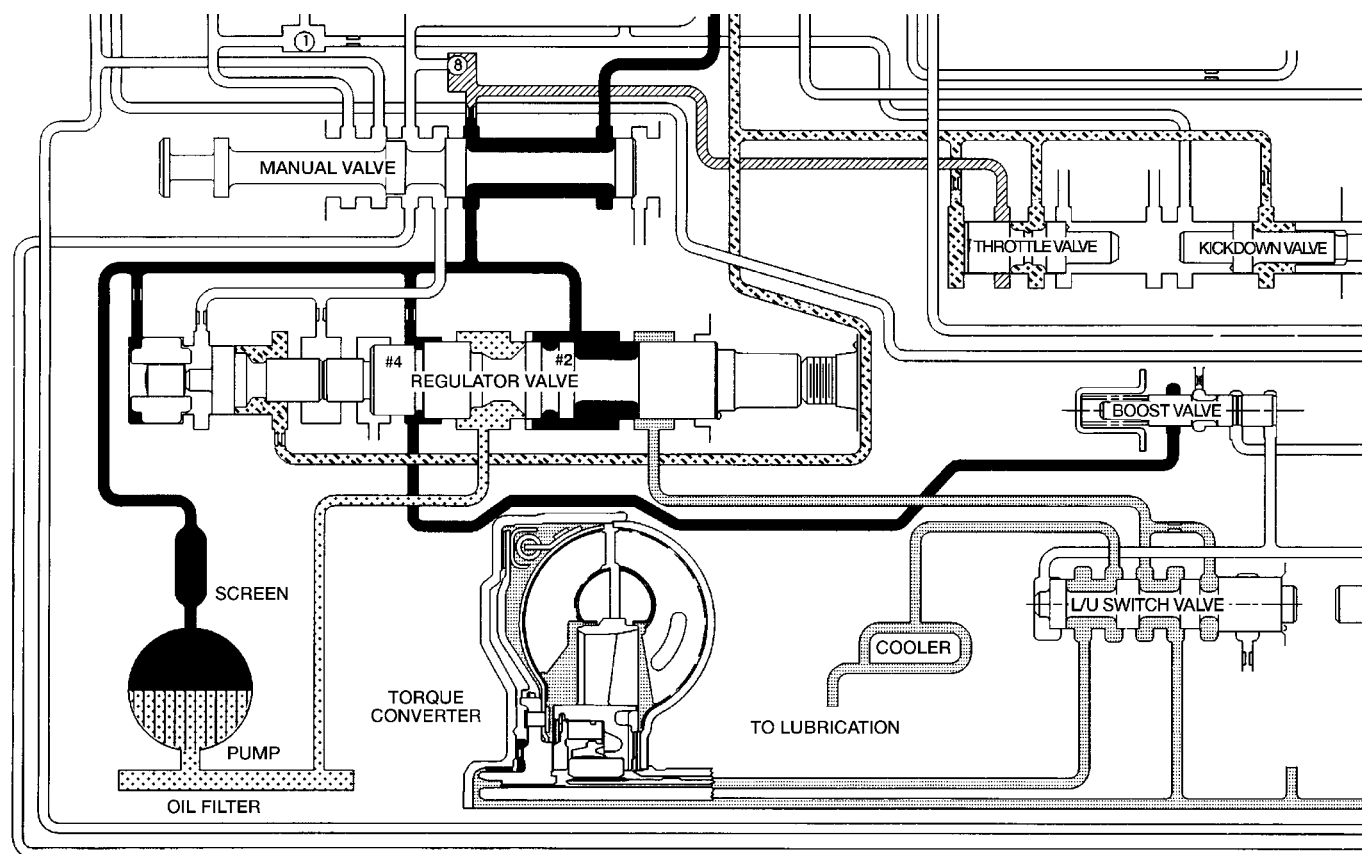


80880187

**Fig. 259 Regulator Valve in NEUTRAL Position**



## VALVE BODY (Continued)

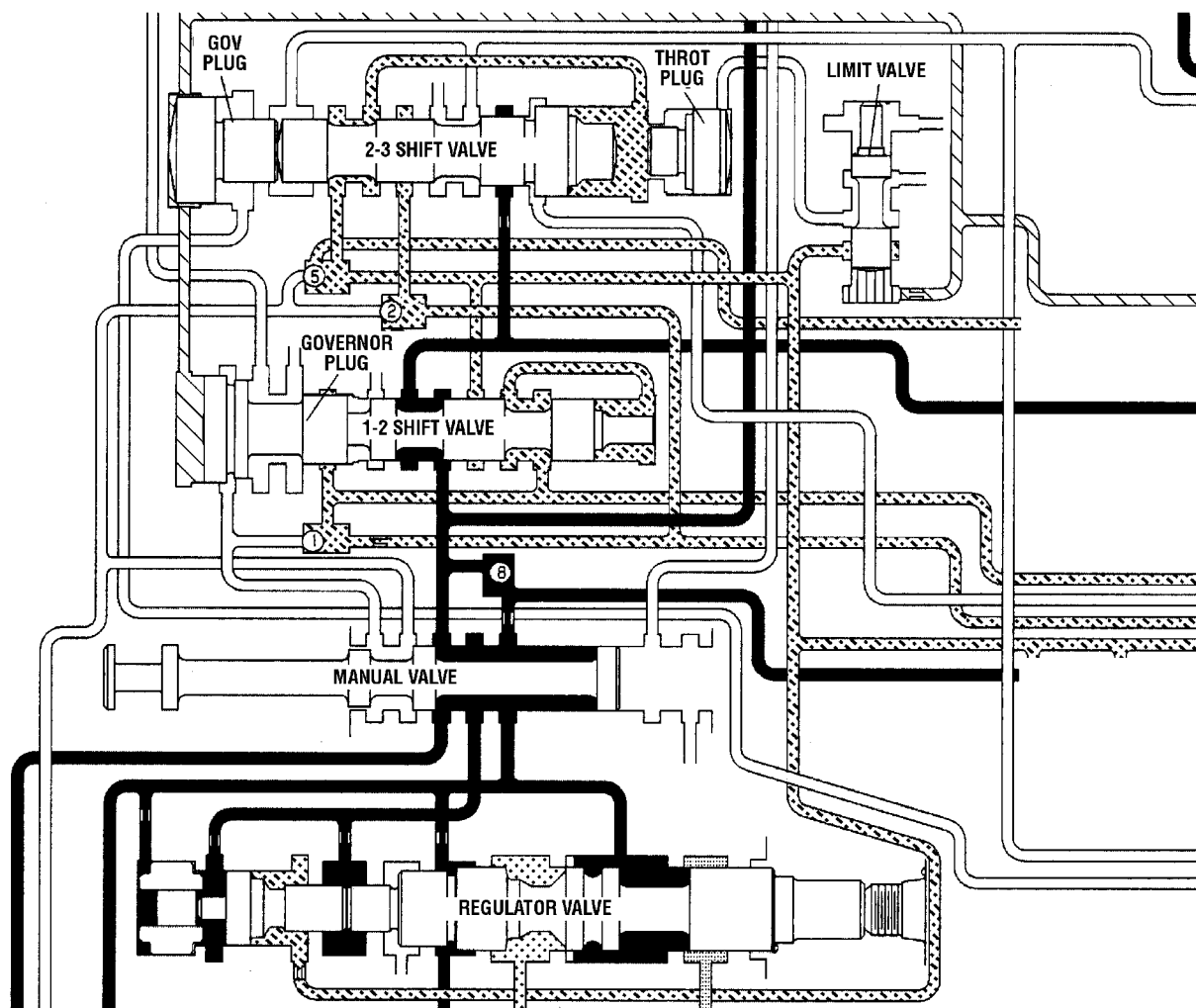
*Fig. 260 Regulator Valve in DRIVE Position**Fig. 261 Regulator Valve in REVERSE Position*

## VALVE BODY (Continued)

**KICKDOWN VALVE**

When the throttle valve is as far over to the left as it can go, the maximum line pressure possible will enter the throttle pressure circuit. In this case, throttle pressure will equal line pressure. With the kickdown valve (Fig. 262) pushed into the bore as far as it will go, fluid initially flows through the annular groove of the 2-3 shift valve (which will be in the direct drive position to the right).

After passing the annular groove, the fluid is routed to the spring end of the 2-3 shift valve. Fluid pressure reacting on the area of land #1 overcomes governor pressure, downshifting the 2-3 shift valve into the kickdown, or second gear stage of operation. The valve is held in the kickdown position by throttle pressure routed from a seated check ball (#2). Again, if vehicle speed is low enough, throttle pressure will also push the 1-2 shift valve left to seat its governor plug, and downshift to drive breakaway.



8088018a

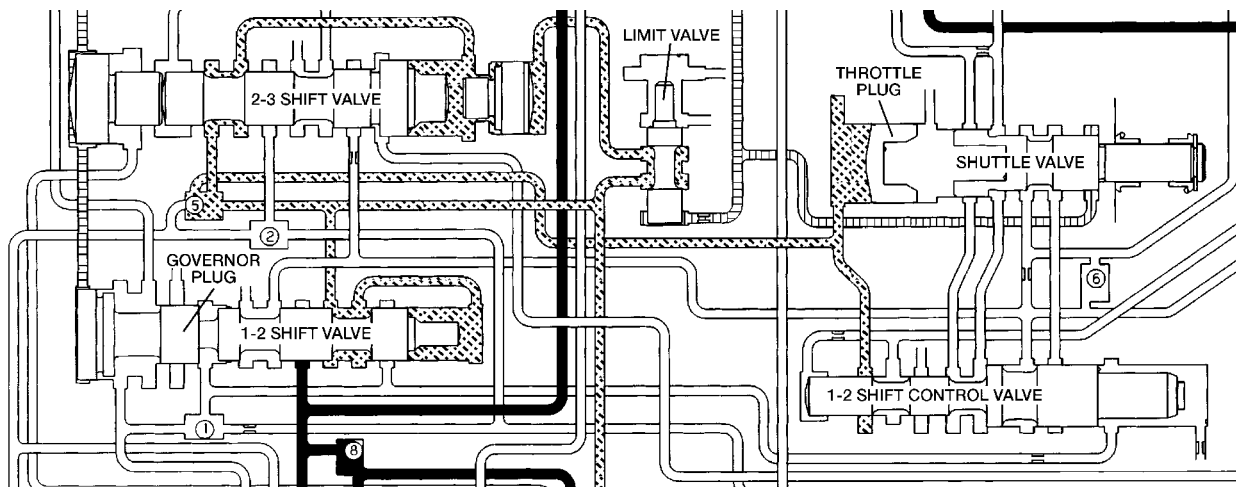
*Fig. 262 Kickdown Valve-Wide Open Throttle*

## VALVE BODY (Continued)

**KICKDOWN LIMIT VALVE**

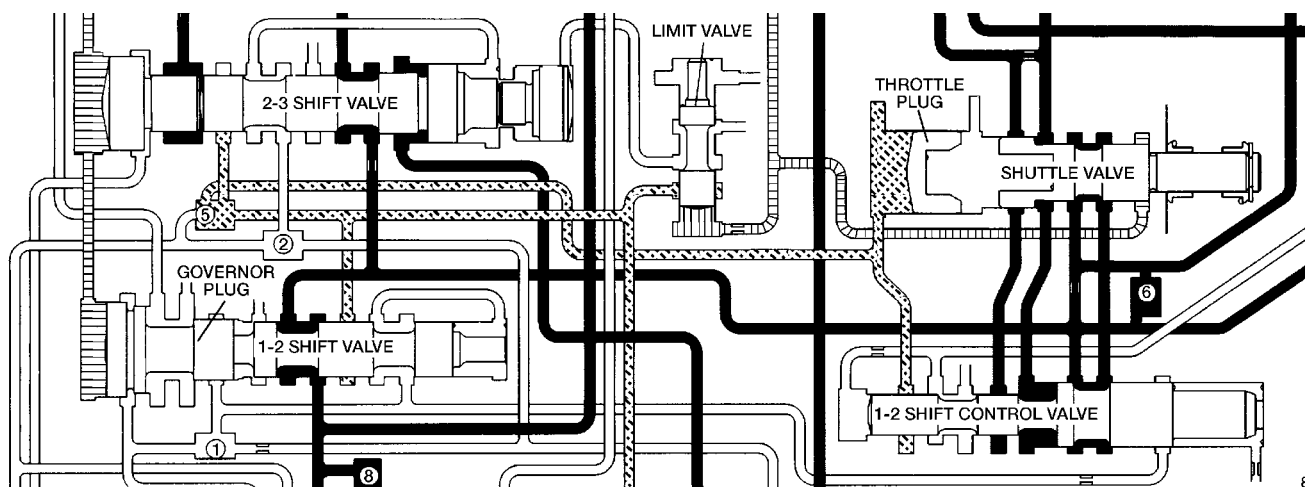
The purpose of the limit valve is to prevent a 3-2 downshift at higher speeds when a part-throttle downshift is not desirable. At these higher speeds only a full throttle 3-2 downshift will occur. At low road speeds (Fig. 263) the limit valve does not come into play and does not affect the downshifts. As the vehicle's speed increases (Fig. 264), the governor pressure also increases. The increased governor pressure acts on the reaction area of the bottom land of the limit valve overcoming the spring force trying to

push the valve toward the bottom of its bore. This pushes the valve upward against the spring and bottoms the valve against the top of the housing. With the valve bottomed against the housing, the throttle pressure supplied to the valve will be closed off by the bottom land of the limit valve. When the supply of throttle pressure has been shut off, the 3-2 part throttle downshift plug becomes inoperative, because no pressure is acting on its reaction area.



80c07142

**Fig. 263 Kickdown Limit Valve-Low Speeds**



80c07143

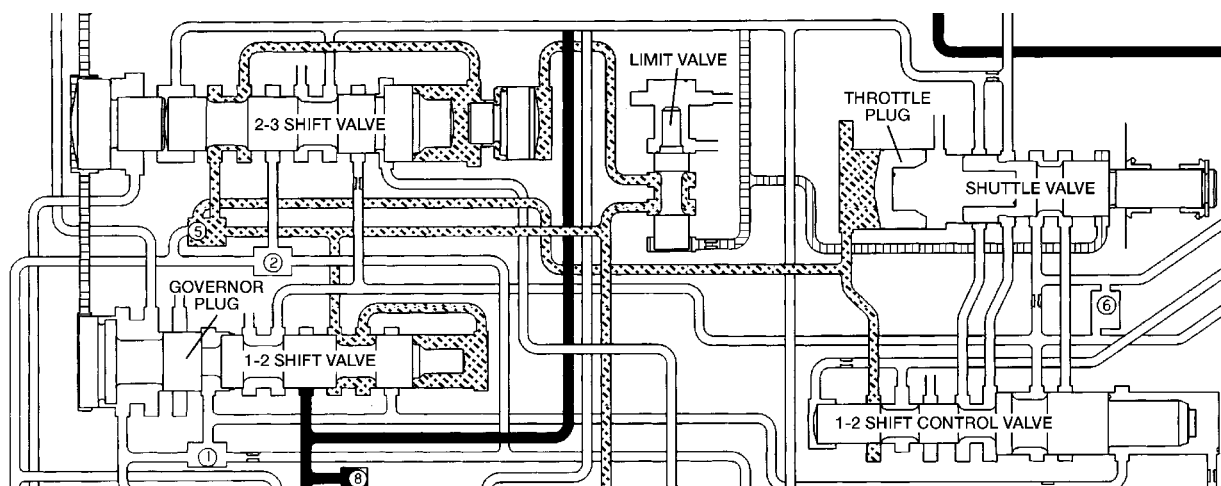
**Fig. 264 Kickdown Limit Valve-High Speeds**

## VALVE BODY (Continued)

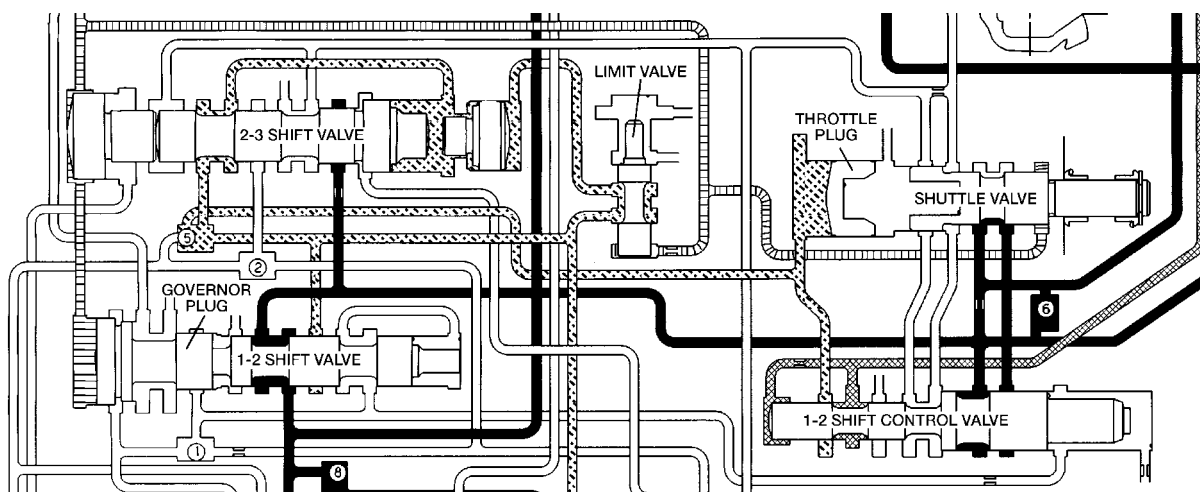
**1-2 SHIFT VALVE**

The 1-2 shift valve assembly (Fig. 265), or mechanism, consists of: the 1-2 shift valve, governor plug, and a spring on the end of the valve. After the manual valve has been placed into a forward gear range, line pressure is directed to the 1-2 shift valve. As the throttle is depressed, throttle pressure is applied to the right side of the 1-2 shift valve assembly. With throttle pressure applied to the right side of the valve, there is now both spring pressure and throttle pressure acting on the valve, holding it against the governor plug. As the vehicle begins to move and build speed, governor pressure is created and is applied to the left of the valve at the governor plug.

When governor pressure builds to a point where it can overcome the combined force of the spring and throttle pressure on the other side of the valve, the valve will begin to move over to the right. As the valve moves to the right, the middle land of the valve will close off the circuit supplying the throttle pressure to the right side of the valve. When the throttle pressure is closed off, the valve will move even farther to the right, allowing line pressure to enter another circuit and energize the front servo, applying the front band (Fig. 266).



80c07144

**Fig. 265 1-2 Shift Valve-Before Shift**

80c07145

**Fig. 266 1-2 Shift Valve-After Shift**

## VALVE BODY (Continued)

The governor plug serves a dual purpose:

- It allows the shift valves to move either left or right, allowing both upshifts and downshifts.
- When in a manual selection position, it will be hydraulically "blocked" into position so no upshift can occur.

The physical blocking of the upshift while in the manual "1" position is accomplished by the directing of line pressure between both lands of the governor plug. The line pressure reacts against the larger land of the plug, pushing the plug back against the end plate overcoming governor pressure. With the combination of the line pressure and spring pressure, the valve cannot move, preventing any upshift.

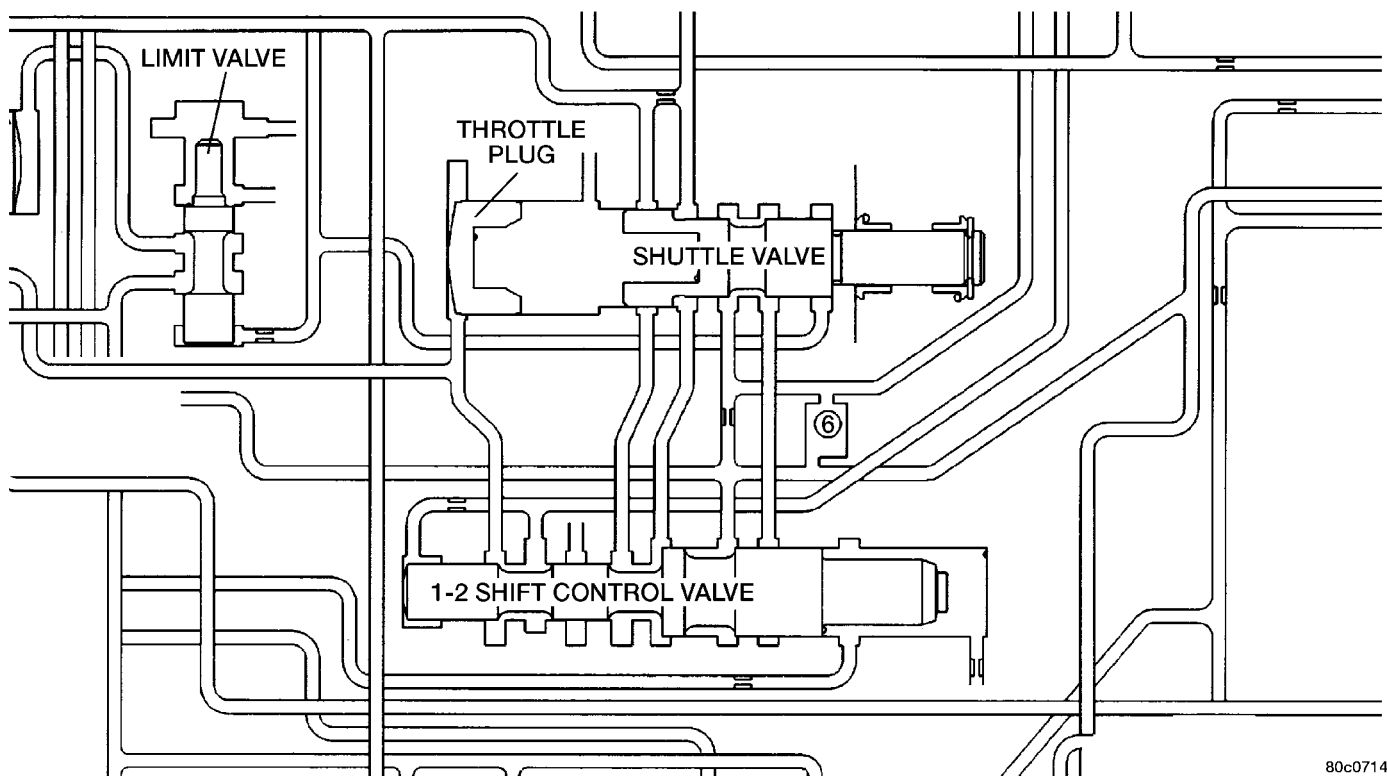
**1-2 SHIFT CONTROL VALVE**

It contains a valve with four lands and a spring. It is used as both a "relay" and "balanced" valve.

The valve has two specific operations (Fig. 267):

- Aid in quality of the 1-2 upshift.
- Aid in the quality and timing of the 3-2 kick-down ranges.

When the manual valve is set to the DRIVE position and the transmission is in the first or second gear range, 1-2 shift control or "modulated throttle pressure" is supplied to the middle of the accumulator piston by the 1-2 shift control valve. During the 1-2 upshift, this pressure is used to control the kick-down servo apply pressure that is needed to apply the kickdown and accumulator pistons. Thus, the 1-2 shift point is "cushioned" and the quality is improved. During a WOT kickdown, kickdown pressure is applied between the kickdown valve and the 1-2 shift control valve. This additional pressure is directed to the 1-2 shift control's spring cavity, adding to the spring load on the valve. The result of this increased "modulated" throttle pressure is a firmer WOT upshift.



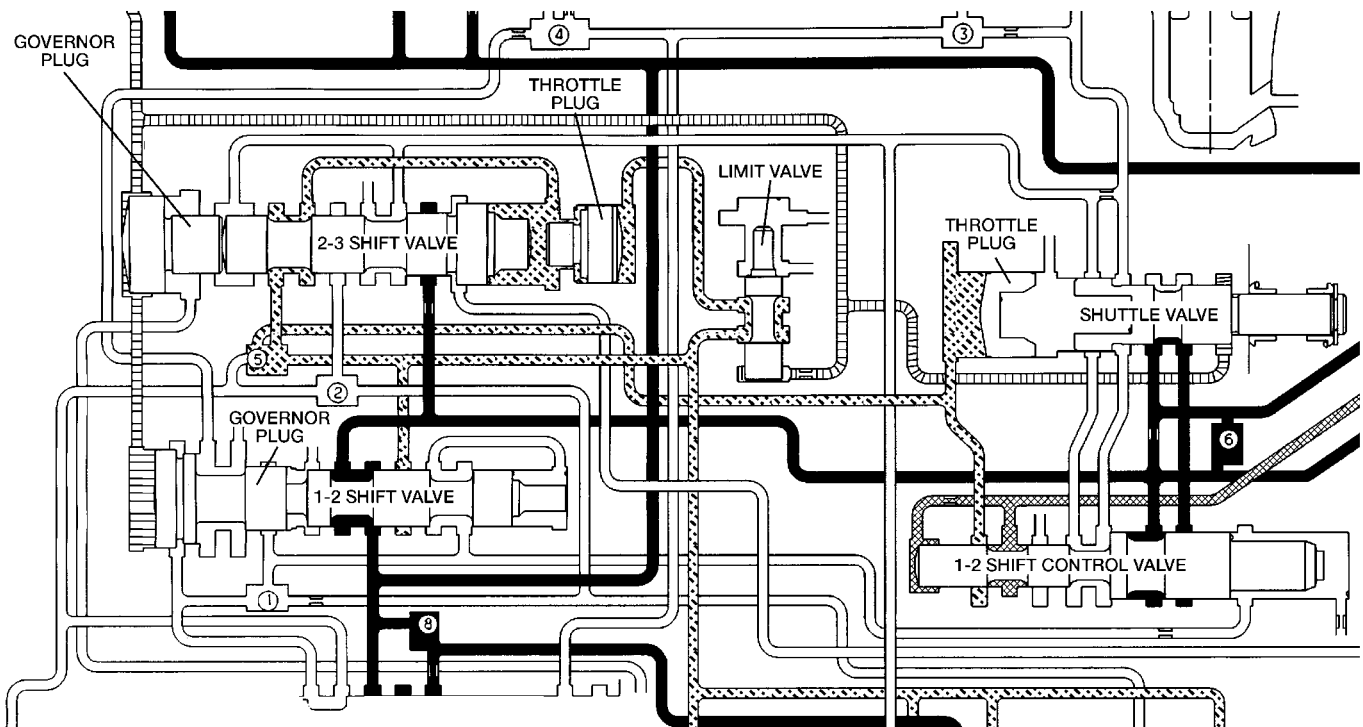
80c07146

**Fig. 267 1-2 Shift Control Valve**

## VALVE BODY (Continued)

**2-3 SHIFT VALVE**

The 2-3 shift valve mechanism (Fig. 268) consists of the 2-3 shift valve, governor plug and spring, and a throttle plug. After the 1-2 shift valve has completed its operation and applied the front band, line pressure is directed to the 2-3 shift valve through the connecting passages from the 1-2 shift valve. The line pressure will then dead-end at land #2 until the 2-3 valve is ready to make its shift. Now that the vehicle is in motion and under acceleration, there is throttle pressure being applied to the spring side of the valve and between lands #3 and #4.



80c07147

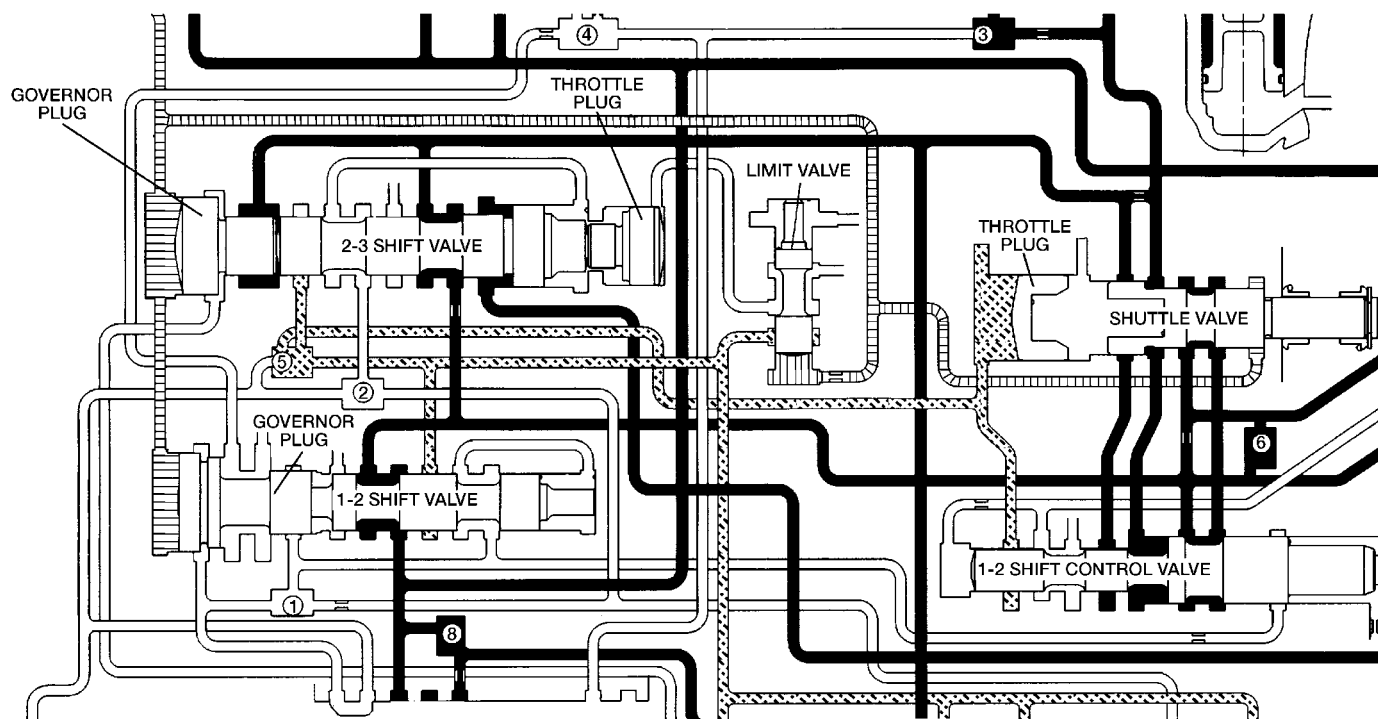
*Fig. 268 2-3 Shift Valve-Before Shift*



## VALVE BODY (Continued)

As vehicle speed increases, governor pressure increases proportionately, until it becomes great enough to overcome the combined throttle and spring pressure on the right side of the valve. Since the throttle pressure end of the 2-3 shift valve is larger in diameter than the 1-2 shift valve, the 2-3 shift will always happen at a greater speed than the 1-2 shift. When this happens, the governor plug is forced against the shift valve moving it to the right. The shift valve causes land #4 to close the passage supplying throttle pressure to the 2-3 shift valve. Without throttle pressure present in the circuit now, the governor plug will push the valve over far enough to bottom the valve in its bore. This allows land #2 to direct line pressure to the front clutch.

After the shift (Fig. 269), line pressure is directed to the land between the shift valve and the governor plug, and to the release side of the kickdown servo. This releases the front band and applies the front clutch, shifting into third gear or direct drive. The rear clutch remains applied, as it has been in the other gears. During a manual "1" or manual "2" gear selection, line pressure is sent between the two lands of the 2-3 governor plug. This line pressure at the governor plug locks the shift valve into the second gear position, preventing an upshift into direct drive. The theory for the blocking of the valve is the same as that of the 1-2 shift valve.



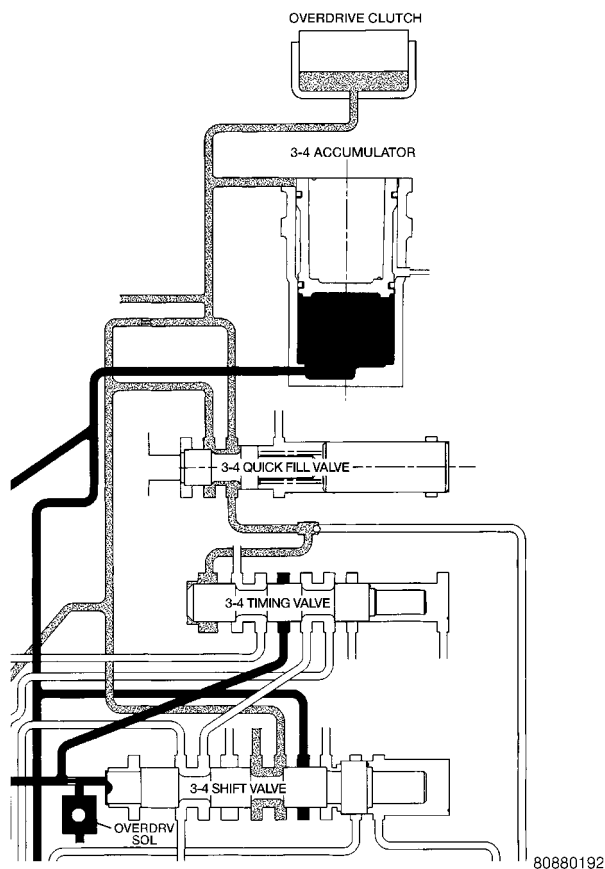
80c07148

**Fig. 269 2-3 Shift Valve-After Shift**

## VALVE BODY (Continued)

**3-4 SHIFT VALVE**

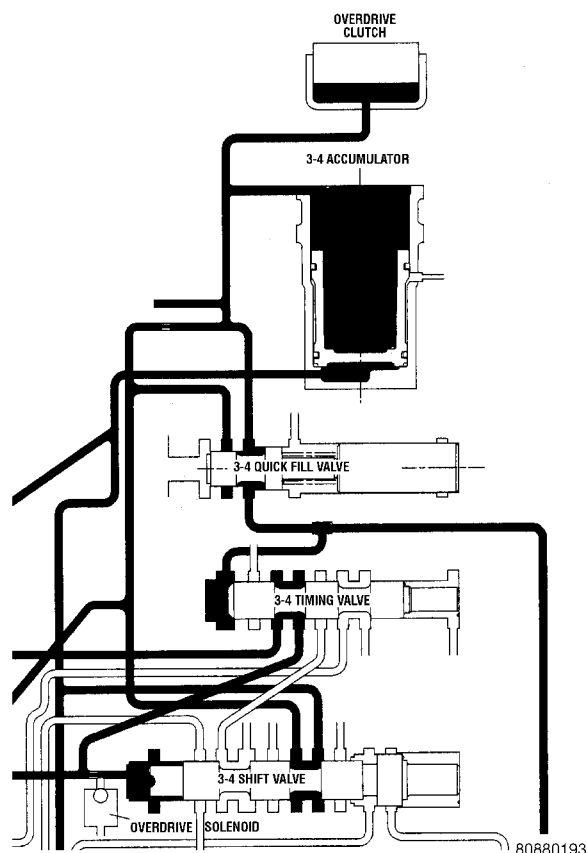
The PCM energizes the overdrive solenoid during the 3-4 upshift (Fig. 270). This causes the solenoid check ball to close the vent port allowing line pressure from the 2-3 shift valve to act directly on the 3-4 upshift valve. Line pressure on the 3-4 shift valve overcomes valve spring pressure moving the valve to the upshift position (Fig. 271). This action exposes the feed passages to the 3-4 timing valve, 3-4 quick fill valve, 3-4 accumulator, and ultimately to the overdrive piston.



**Fig. 270 3-4 Shift Valve Before Shift**

**3-4 TIMING VALVE**

The 3-4 timing valve is moved by line pressure coming through the 3-4 shift valve (Fig. 271). After the shift, the timing valve holds the 2-3 shift valve in an upshift position. The purpose is to prevent the 2-3 valve from downshifting before the 3-4 valve (Fig. 270).



**Fig. 271 3-4 Shift Valve After Shift**

**3-4 QUICK FILL VALVE**

The 3-4 quick fill valve provides faster engagement of the overdrive clutch during 3-4 upshifts. The valve temporarily bypasses the clutch piston feed orifice at the start of a 3-4 upshift (Fig. 270). This exposes a larger passage into the piston retainer resulting in a much faster clutch fill and apply sequence. The quick fill valve does not bypass the regular clutch feed orifice throughout the 3-4 upshift. Instead, once a pre-determined pressure develops within the clutch, the valve closes the bypass (Fig. 271). Clutch fill is then completed through the regular feed orifice.

## VALVE BODY (Continued)

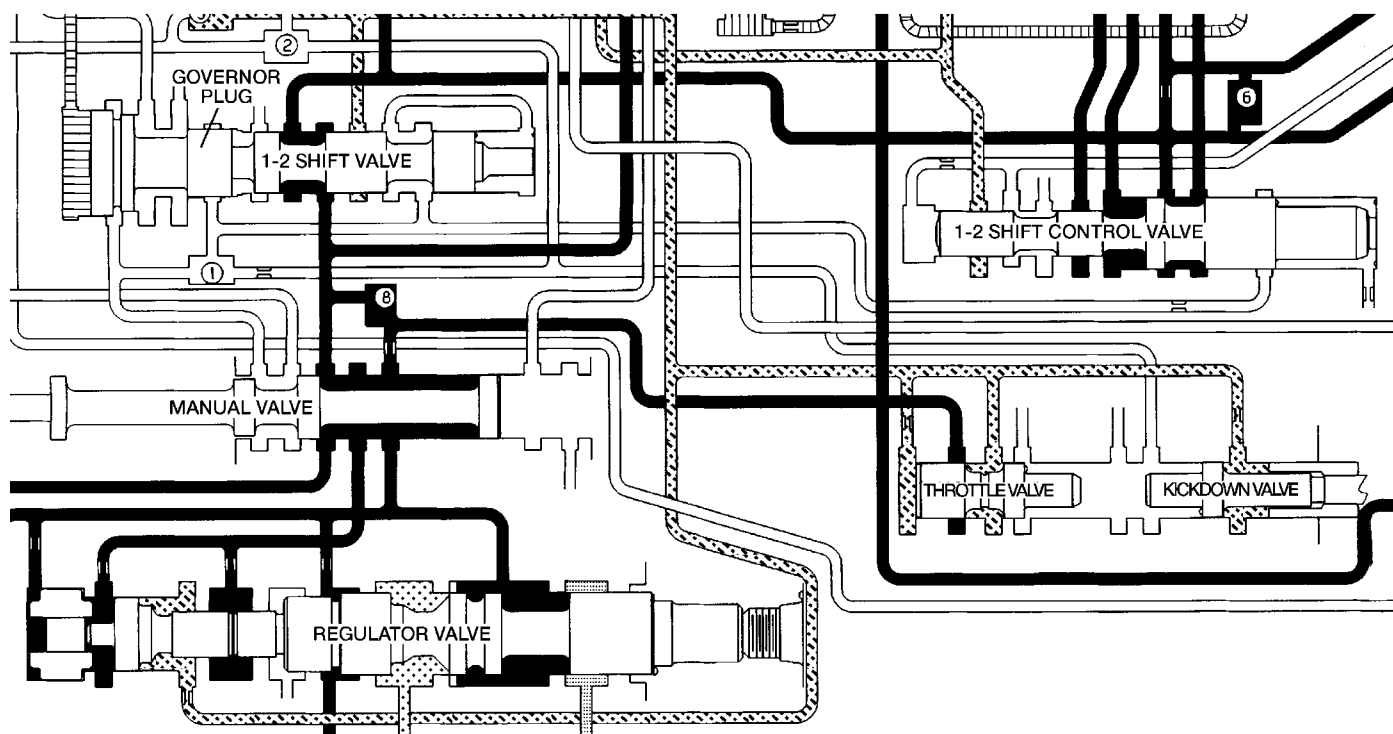
## THROTTLE VALVE

In all gear positions the throttle valve (Fig. 272) is being supplied with line pressure. The throttle valve meters and reduces the line pressure that now becomes throttle pressure. The throttle valve is moved by a spring and the kickdown valve, which is mechanically connected to the throttle. The larger the throttle opening, the higher the throttle pressure (to a maximum of line pressure). The smaller the throttle opening, the lower the throttle pressure (to a minimum of zero at idle). As engine speed increases, the increase in pump speed increases pump output. The increase in pressure and volume must be regulated to maintain the balance within the transmission. To do this, throttle pressure is routed to the reaction area on the right side of the throttle pressure plug (in the regulator valve).

The higher engine speed and line pressure would open the vent too far and reduce line pressure too much. Throttle pressure, which increases with engine speed (throttle opening), is used to oppose the movement of the pressure valve to help control the metering passage at the vent. The throttle pressure is combined with spring pressure to reduce the force of the throttle pressure plug on the pressure valve. The larger spring at the right closes the regulator valve

passage and maintains or increases line pressure. The increased line pressure works against the reaction area of the line pressure plug and the reaction area left of land #3 simultaneously moves the regulator valve train to the right and controls the metering passage.

The kickdown valve, along with the throttle valve, serve to delay upshifts until the correct vehicle speed has been reached. It also controls downshifts upon driver demand, or increased engine load. If these valves were not in place, the shift points would be at the same speed for all throttle positions. The kickdown valve is actuated by a cam connected to the throttle. This is accomplished through either a linkage or a cable. The cam forces the kickdown valve toward the throttle valve compressing the spring between them and moving the throttle valve. As the throttle valve land starts to uncover its port, line pressure is "metered" out into the circuits and viewed as throttle pressure. This increased throttle pressure is metered out into the circuits it is applied to: the 1-2 and 2-3 shift valves. When the throttle pressure is high enough, a 3-2 downshift will occur. If the vehicle speed is low enough, a 2-1 downshift will occur.



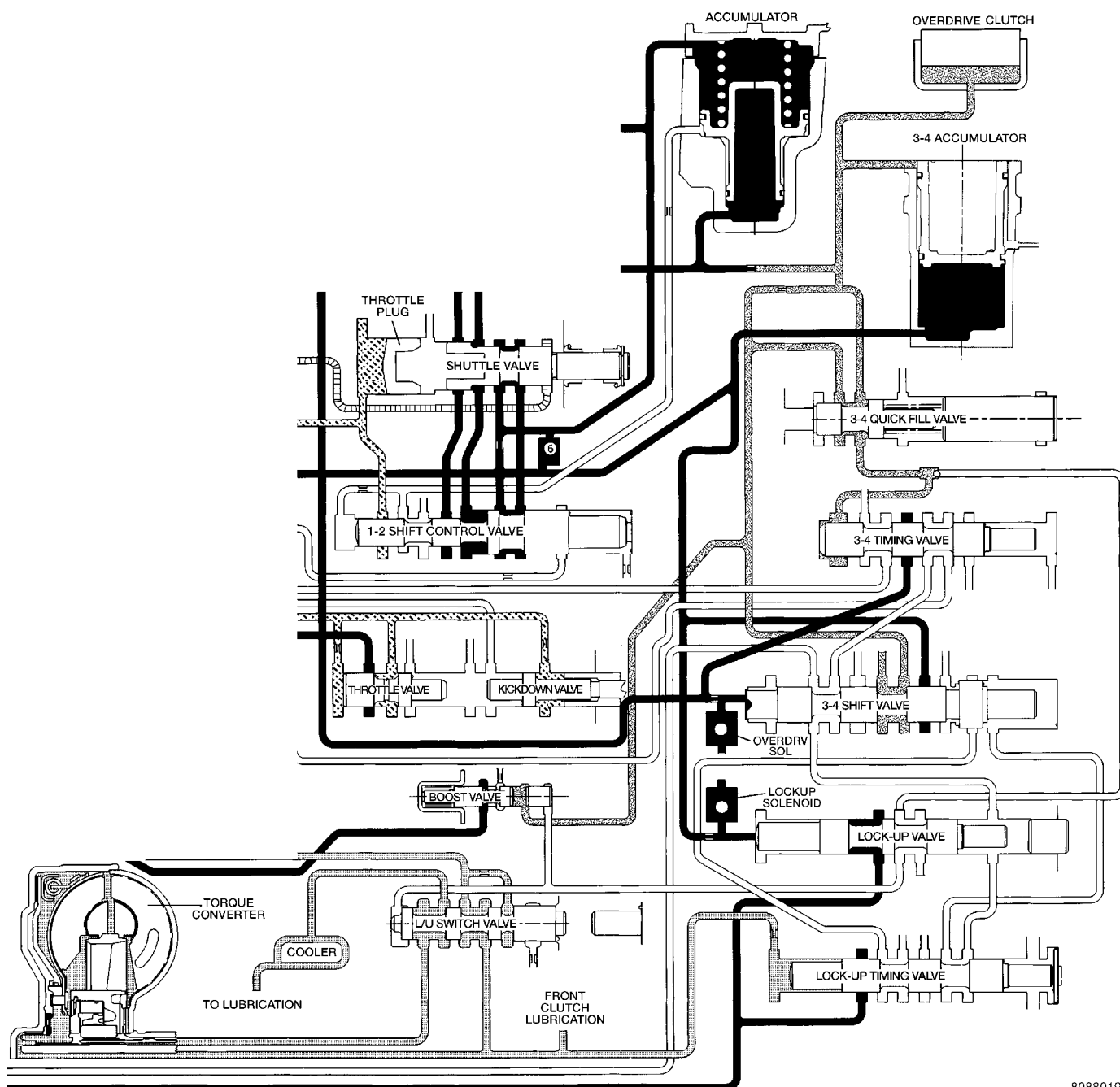
80c07149

Fig. 272 Throttle Valve

## VALVE BODY (Continued)

## SWITCH VALVE

When the transmission is in Drive Second before the TCC application occurs (Fig. 273), the pressure regulator valve is supplying torque converter pressure to the switch valve. The switch valve directs this pressure through the transmission input shaft, into the converter, through the converter, back out between the input shaft and the reaction shaft, and back up to the switch valve. From the switch valve, the fluid pressure is directed to the transmission cooler, and lubrication pressure returns from the cooler to lubricate different portions of the transmission.

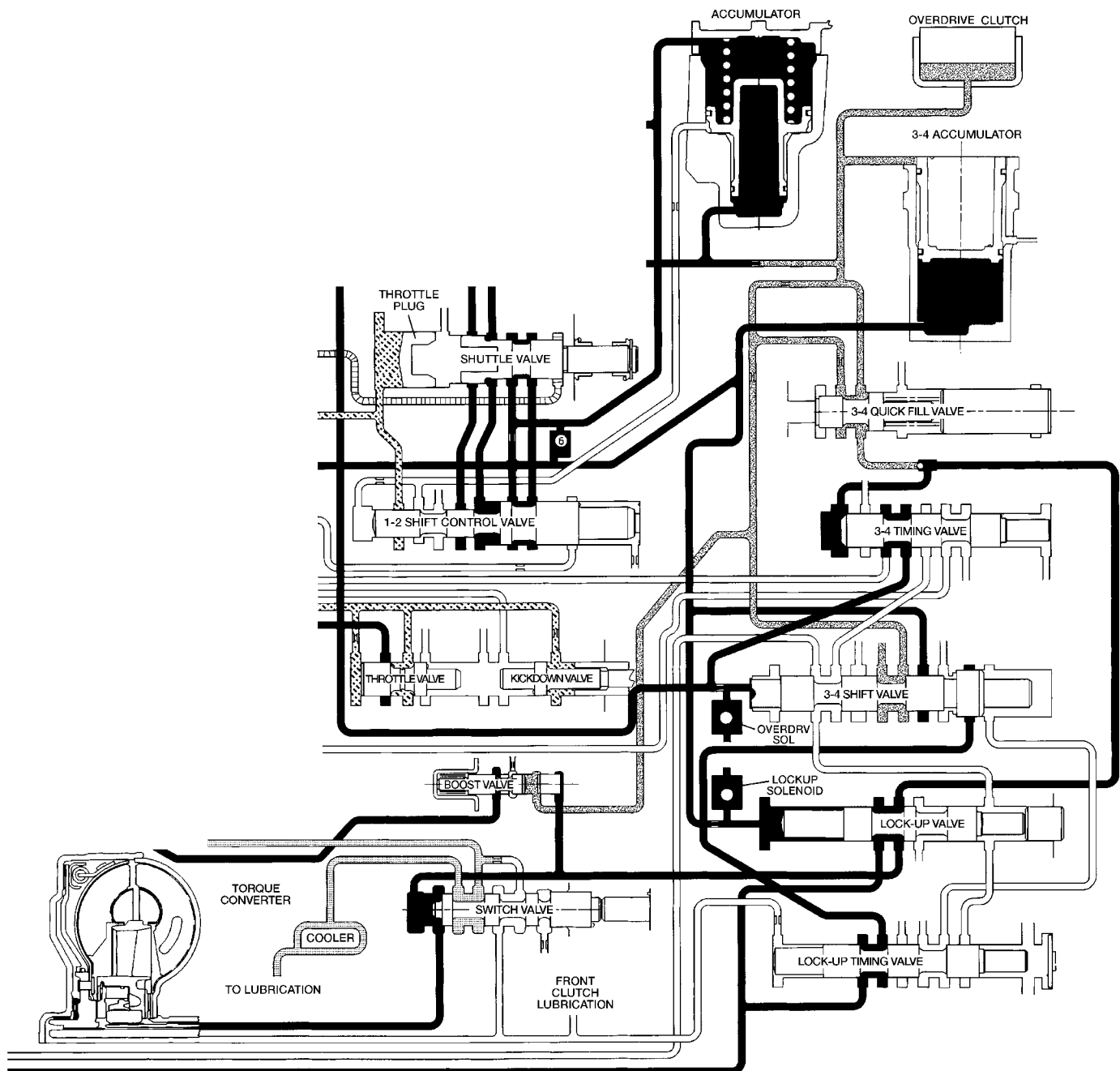


80880199

Fig. 273 Switch Valve-Torque Converter Unlocked

## VALVE BODY (Continued)

Once the TCC control valve has moved to the right (Fig. 274), line pressure is directed to the tip of the switch valve, forcing the valve to the right. The switch valve now vents oil from the front of the piston in the torque converter, and supplies line pressure to the (rear) apply side of the torque converter piston. This pressure differential causes the piston to apply against the friction material, cutting off any further flow of line pressure oil. After the switch valve is shuttled right allowing line pressure to engage the TCC, torque converter pressure is directed past the switch valve into the transmission cooler and lubrication circuits.



8088019a

Fig. 274 Switch Valve-Torque Converter Locked

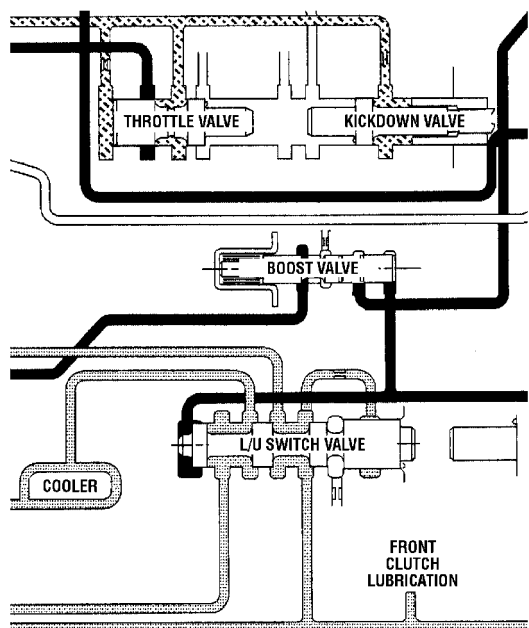
## VALVE BODY (Continued)



## VALVE BODY (Continued)

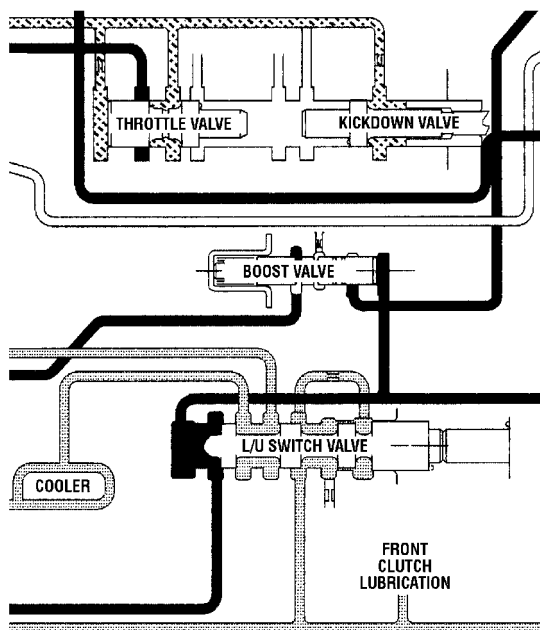
## BOOST VALVE

The boost valve (Fig. 276) provides increased fluid apply pressure to the overdrive clutch during 3-4 upshifts (Fig. 277), and when accelerating in fourth gear. The boost valve also serves to increase line pressure during torque converter lock-up.



8088019c

Fig. 276 Boost Valve Before Lock-up



8088019d

Fig. 277 Boost Valve After Lock-up

## REMOVAL

The valve body can be removed for service without having to remove the transmission assembly.

The valve body can be disassembled for cleaning and inspection of the individual components.

The only replaceable valve body components are:

- Manual lever.
  - Manual lever washer, seal, E-clip, and shaft seal.
  - Manual lever detent ball.
  - Throttle lever.
  - Fluid filter.
  - Pressure adjusting screw bracket.
  - Governor pressure solenoid.
  - Governor pressure sensor (includes transmission temperature thermistor).
  - Converter clutch/overdrive solenoid assembly and harness.
  - Governor housing gasket.
  - Solenoid case connector O-rings.
- (1) Shift transmission into NEUTRAL.
  - (2) Raise vehicle.
  - (3) Remove gearshift and throttle levers from shaft of valve body manual lever.
  - (4) Disconnect wires at solenoid case connector (Fig. 278).

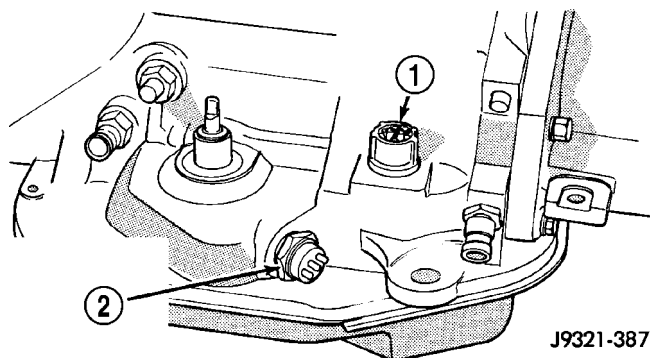
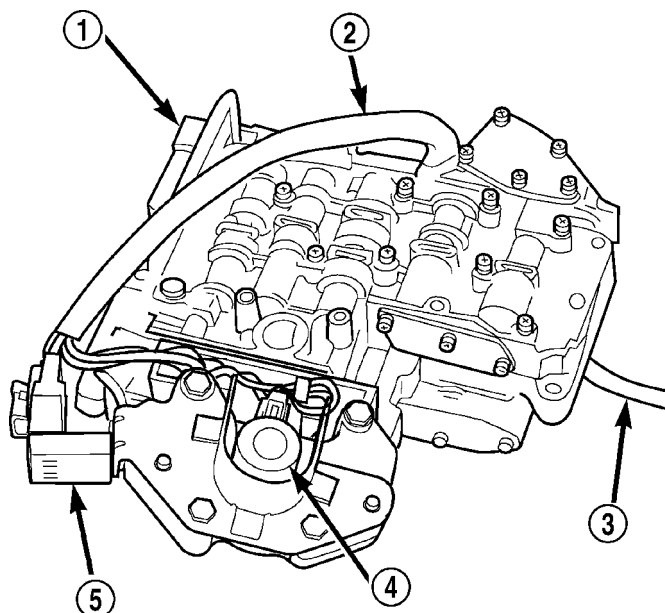


Fig. 278 Transmission Case Connector

- 1 - SOLENOID CASE CONNECTOR
- 2 - PARK/NEUTRAL POSITION SWITCH

## VALVE BODY (Continued)

- (5) Position drain pan under transmission oil pan.
- (6) Remove transmission oil pan and gasket.
- (7) Remove fluid filter from valve body.
- (8) Remove bolts attaching valve body to transmission case.
- (9) Lower valve body enough to remove accumulator piston and springs.
- (10) Work manual lever shaft and electrical connector out of transmission case.
- (11) Lower valve body, rotate valve body away from case, pull park rod out of sprag, and remove valve body (Fig. 279).



80c072b2

**Fig. 279 Valve Body**

- 1 - VALVE BODY
- 2 - WIRE HARNESS
- 3 - PARK ROD
- 4 - GOVERNOR PRESSURE SOLENOID
- 5 - GOVERNOR PRESSURE SENSOR

## DISASSEMBLY

**CAUTION:** Do not clamp any valve body component in a vise. This practice can damage the component resulting in unsatisfactory operation after assembly and installation. Do not use pliers to remove any of the valves, plugs or springs and do not force any of the components out or into place. The valves and valve body housings will be damaged if force is used. Tag or mark the valve body springs for reference as they are removed. Do not allow them to become intermixed.

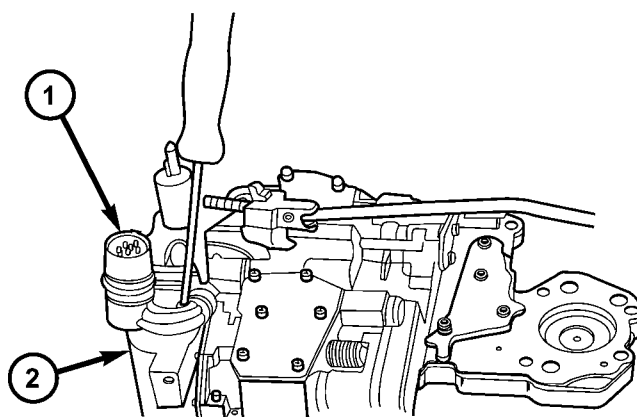
- (1) Disconnect wires from governor pressure sensor and solenoid.
- (2) Remove screws attaching governor body and retainer plate to transfer plate.

- (3) Remove retainer plate, governor body and gasket from transfer plate.

- (4) Remove governor pressure sensor from governor body.

- (5) Remove governor pressure solenoid by pulling it straight out of bore in governor body. Remove and discard solenoid O-rings if worn, cut, or torn.

- (6) Remove small shoulder bolt that secures solenoid harness case connector to 3-4 accumulator housing (Fig. 280). Retain shoulder bolt. Either tape it to harness or thread it back into accumulator housing after connector removal.

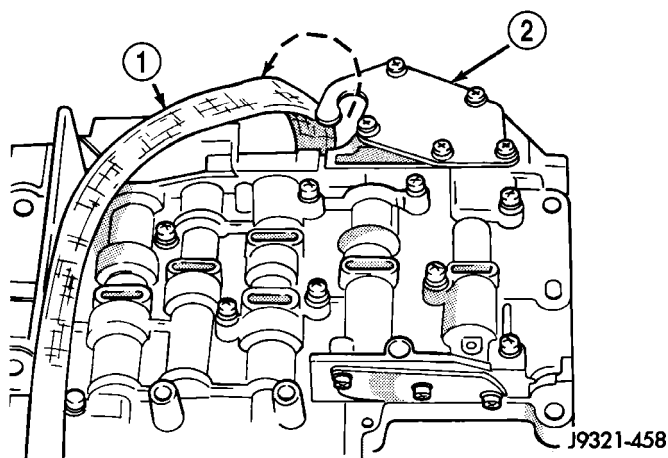


808803a3

**Fig. 280 Solenoid Harness Case Connector Shoulder Bolt**

- 1 - SOLENOID HARNESS CASE CONNECTOR
- 2 - 3-4 ACCUMULATOR HOUSING

- (7) Unhook overdrive/converter solenoid harness from 3-4 accumulator cover plate (Fig. 281).



J9321-458

**Fig. 281 Unhooking Solenoid Harness From Accumulator Cover Plate**

- 1 - OVERDRIVE/CONVERTER SOLENOID WIRE HARNESS
- 2 - 3-4 ACCUMULATOR COVER PLATE

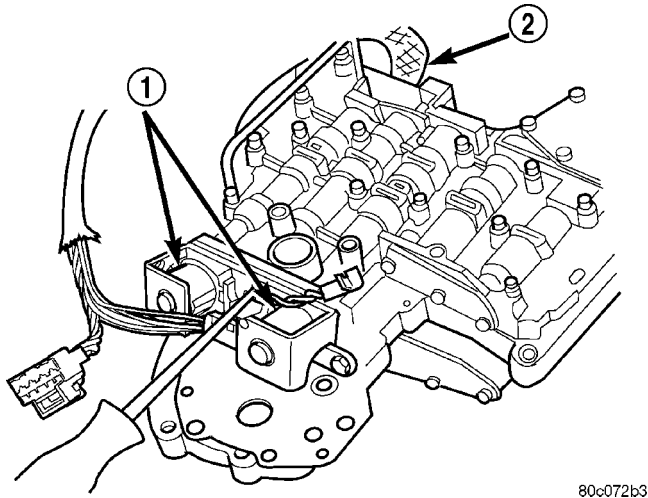
## VALVE BODY (Continued)

(8) Turn valve body over and remove screws that attach overdrive/converter solenoid assembly to valve body (Fig. 282).

(9) Remove solenoid and harness assembly from valve body (Fig. 283).

(10) Remove boost valve cover (Fig. 284).

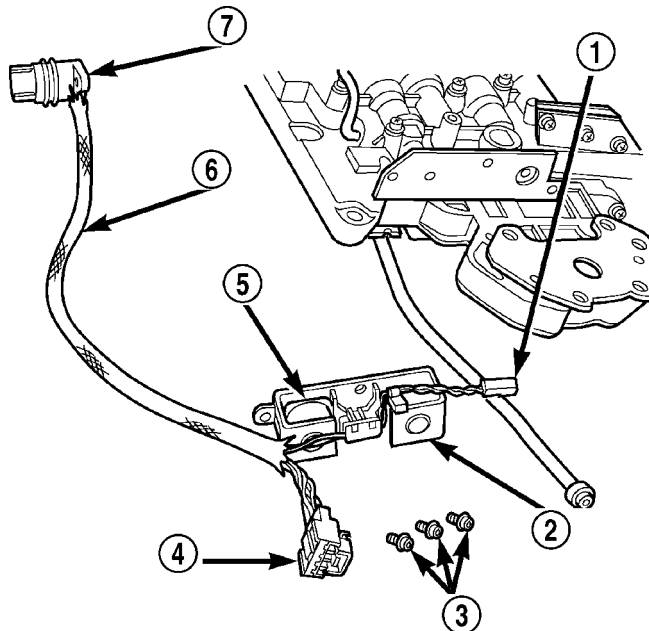
(11) Remove boost valve retainer, valve spring and boost valve (Fig. 285).



80c072b3

**Fig. 282 Solenoid Assembly Screws**

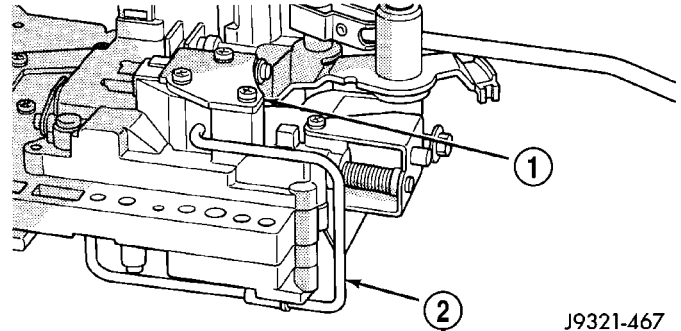
- 1 - OVERDRIVE/CONVERTER CLUTCH SOLENOID ASSEMBLY
- 2 - HARNESS



80c072b4

**Fig. 283 Solenoid Assembly**

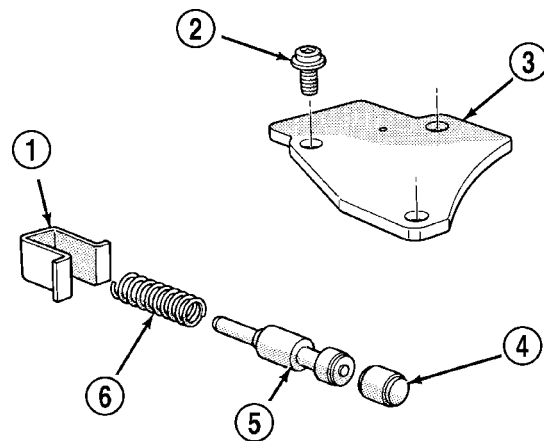
- 1 - GOVERNOR SOLENOID WIRES
- 2 - CONVERTER CLUTCH SOLENOID
- 3 - SOLENOID SCREWS
- 4 - GOVERNOR SENSOR WIRES
- 5 - OVERDRIVE SOLENOID
- 6 - HARNESS
- 7 - CASE CONNECTOR



J9321-467

**Fig. 284 Boost Valve**

- 1 - BOOST VALVE HOUSING AND COVER
- 2 - BOOST VALVE TUBE



J9321-468

**Fig. 285 Boost Valve Components**

- 1 - SPRING AND VALVE RETAINER
- 2 - COVER SCREWS
- 3 - BOOST VALVE COVER
- 4 - BOOST VALVE PLUG
- 5 - BOOST VALVE
- 6 - BOOST VALVE SPRING

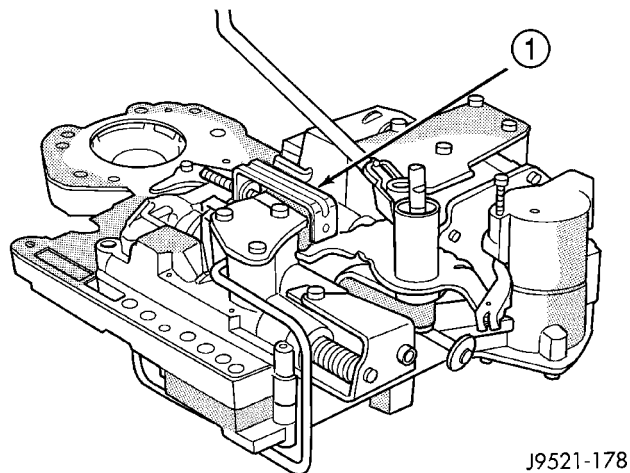
## VALVE BODY (Continued)

(12) Secure detent ball and spring with Retainer Tool 6583 (Fig. 286).

(13) Remove park rod E-clip and separate rod from manual lever (Fig. 287).

(14) Remove E-clip and washer that retains throttle lever shaft in manual lever (Fig. 288).

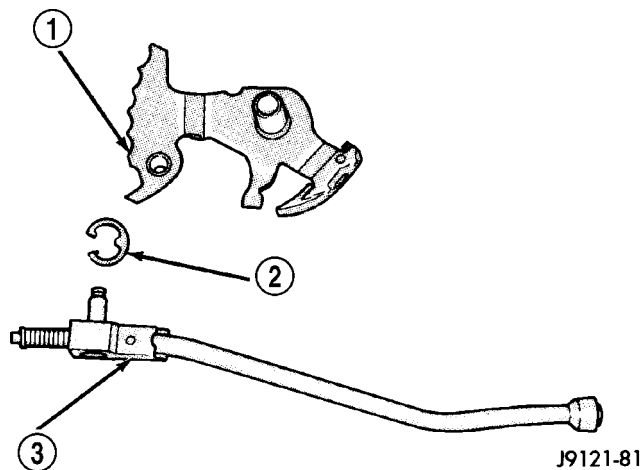
(15) Remove manual lever and throttle lever (Fig. 289). Rotate and lift manual lever off valve body and throttle lever shaft. Then slide throttle lever out of valve body.



J9521-178

**Fig. 286 Detent Ball And Spring**

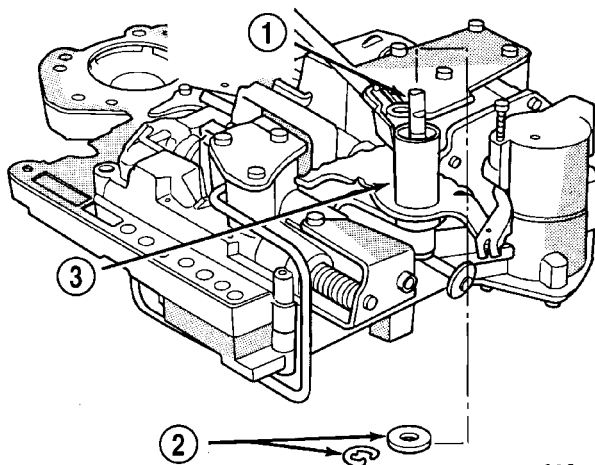
1 - SPECIAL TOOL 6583 POSITIONED ON DETENT HOUSING



J9121-81

**Fig. 287 Park Rod**

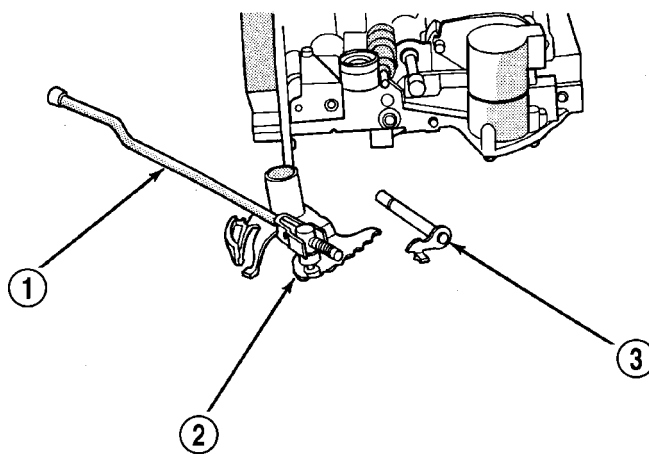
1 - MANUAL LEVER  
2 - E-CLIP  
3 - PARK ROD



J9321-424

**Fig. 288 Throttle Lever E-Clip And Washer**

1 - THROTTLE LEVER SHAFT  
2 - E-CLIP AND WASHER  
3 - MANUAL SHAFT



J9321-425

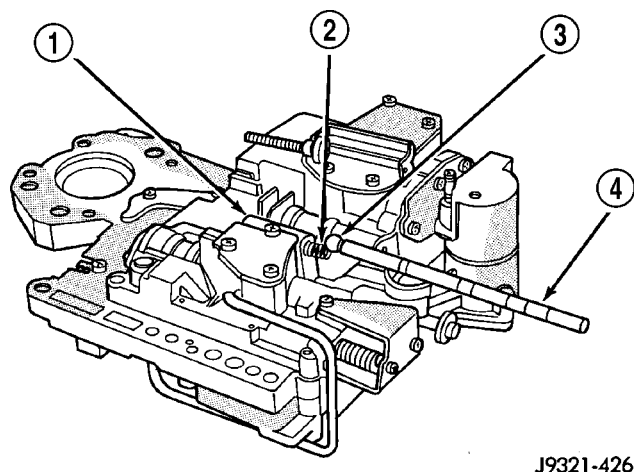
**Fig. 289 Manual And Throttle Lever**

1 - PARK ROD  
2 - MANUAL LEVER ASSEMBLY  
3 - THROTTLE LEVER

## VALVE BODY (Continued)

(16) Position pencil magnet next to detent housing to catch detent ball and spring. Then carefully remove Retainer Tool 6583 and remove detent ball and spring (Fig. 290).

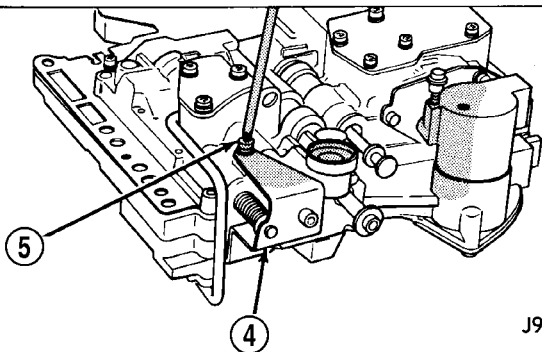
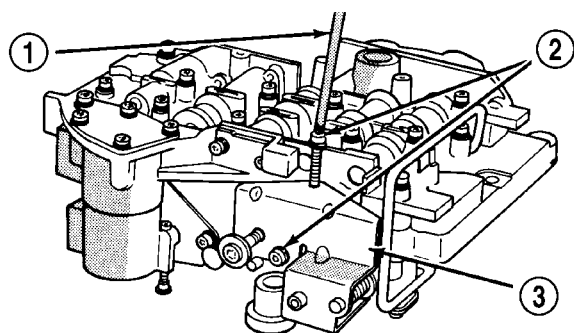
(17) Remove screws attaching pressure adjusting screw bracket to valve body and transfer plate (Fig. 291). Hold bracket firmly against spring tension while removing last screw.



J9321-426

**Fig. 290 Detent Ball And Spring**

- 1 - DETENT HOUSING
- 2 - DETENT SPRING
- 3 - DETENT BALL
- 4 - PENCIL MAGNET



J9321-430

**Fig. 291 Adjusting Screw Bracket Fastener**

- 1 - T25 TORX™ BIT
- 2 - REMOVE THESE SCREWS FIRST
- 3 - BRACKET
- 4 - BRACKET
- 5 - REMOVE THIS SCREW LAST

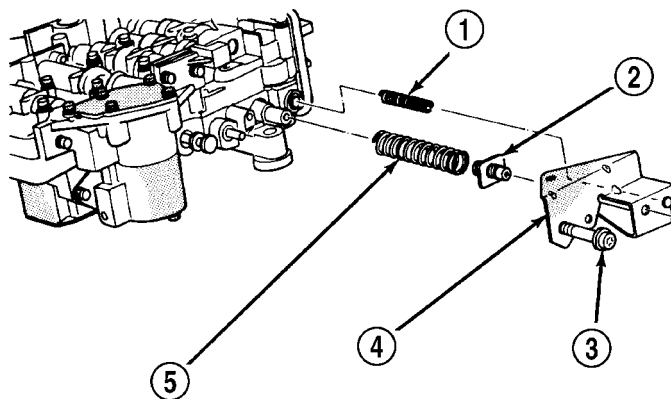
(18) Remove adjusting screw bracket, line pressure adjusting screw, pressure regulator valve spring and switch valve spring (Fig. 292). Do not remove throttle pressure adjusting screw from bracket and do not disturb setting of either adjusting screw during removal.

(19) Turn upper housing over and remove switch valve, regulator valve and spring, and manual valve (Fig. 293).

(20) Remove kickdown detent, kickdown valve, and throttle valve and spring (Fig. 293).

(21) Loosen left-side 3-4 accumulator housing attaching screw about 2-3 threads. Then remove center and right-side housing attaching screws (Fig. 294).

(22) Carefully rotate 3-4 accumulator housing upward and remove 3-4 shift valve spring and converter clutch valve plug and spring (Fig. 295).



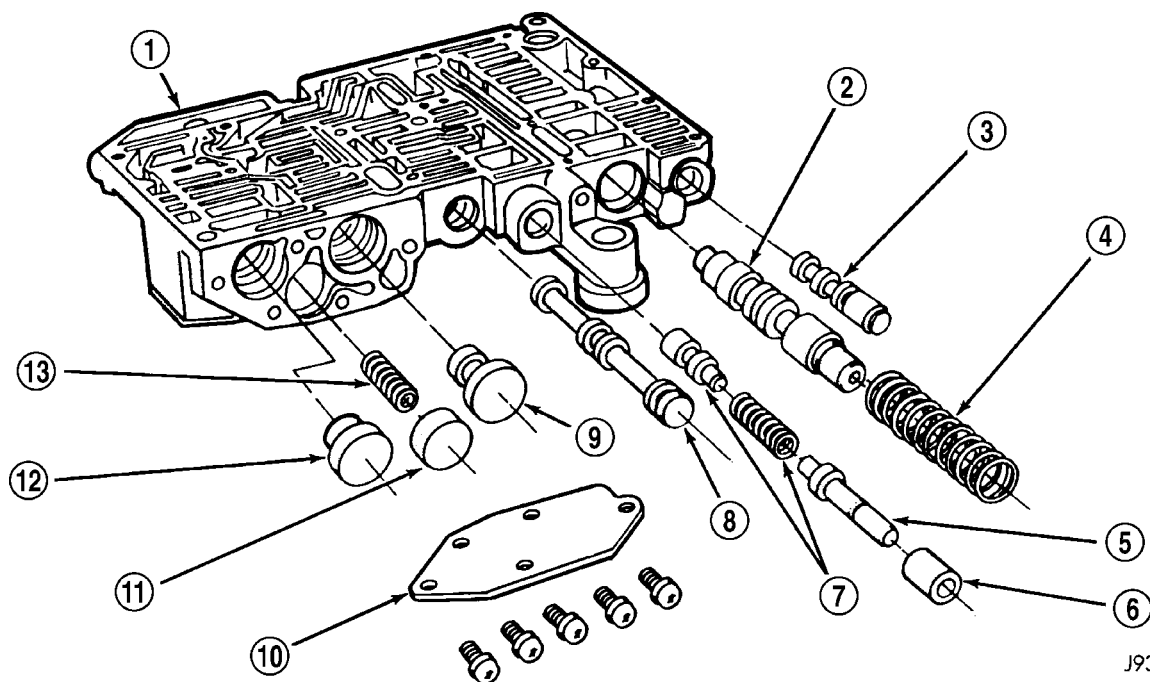
J9321-431

**Fig. 292 Adjusting Screw Bracket And Spring**

- 1 - SWITCH VALVE SPRING
- 2 - LINE PRESSURE SCREW
- 3 - THROTTLE PRESSURE ADJUSTING SCREW
- 4 - ADJUSTING SCREW BRACKET
- 5 - PRESSURE REGULATOR VALVE SPRING

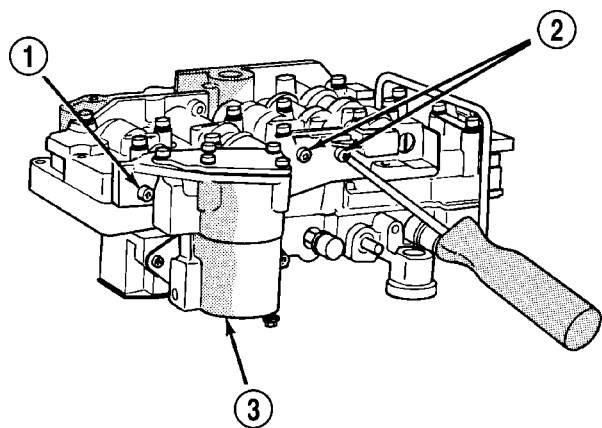


# VALVE BODY (Continued)



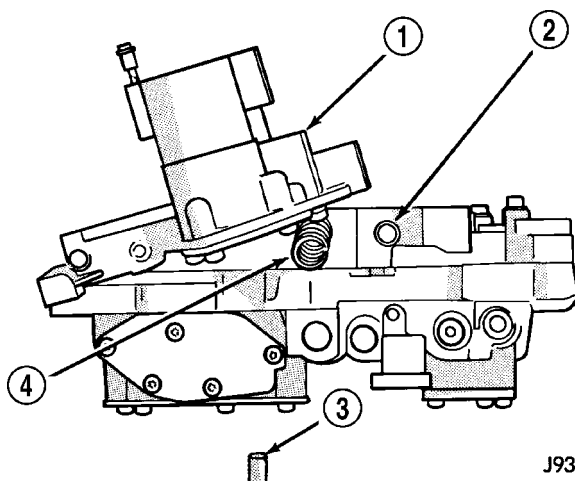
**Fig. 293 Upper Housing Control Valve Locations**

- |                               |                                   |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1 - UPPER HOUSING             | 8 - MANUAL VALVE                  |
| 2 - REGULATOR VALVE           | 9 - 1-2 GOVERNOR PLUG             |
| 3 - SWITCH VALVE              | 10 - GOVERNOR PLUG COVER          |
| 4 - REGULATOR VALVE SPRING    | 11 - THROTTLE PLUG                |
| 5 - KICKDOWN VALVE            | 12 - 2-3 GOVERNOR PLUG            |
| 6 - KICKDOWN DETENT           | 13 - SHUTTLE VALVE PRIMARY SPRING |
| 7 - THROTTLE VALVE AND SPRING |                                   |



**Fig. 294 Accumulator Housing Screw Locations**

- |                             |
|-----------------------------|
| 1 - LOOSEN THIS SCREW       |
| 2 - REMOVE THESE SCREWS     |
| 3 - 3-4 ACCUMULATOR HOUSING |



**Fig. 295 3-4 Shift And Converter Clutch Valve Springs And Plug**

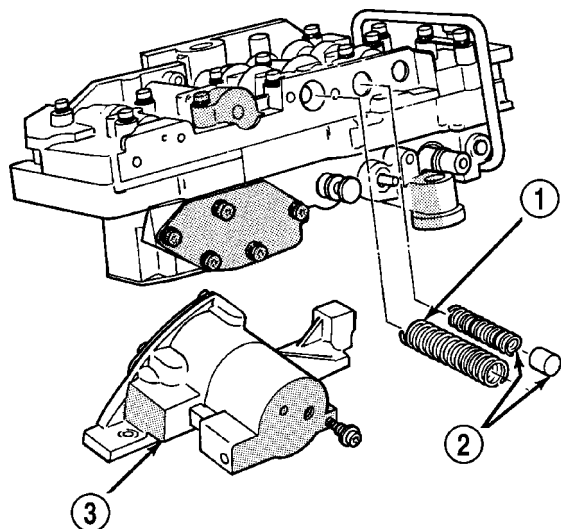
- |                                   |
|-----------------------------------|
| 1 - ACCUMULATOR HOUSING           |
| 2 - CONVERTER CLUTCH VALVE SPRING |
| 3 - CLUTCH VALVE PLUG             |
| 4 - 3-4 SHIFT VALVE SPRING        |



## VALVE BODY (Continued)

(23) Remove left-side screw and remove 3-4 accumulator housing from valve body (Fig. 296).

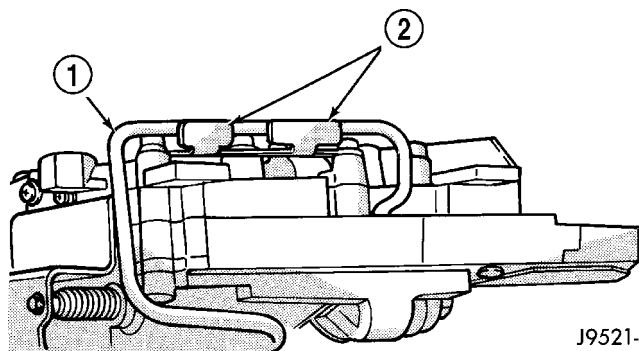
(24) Bend back tabs on boost valve tube brace (Fig. 297).



J9321-434

**Fig. 296 Accumulator Housing, Valve Springs And Plug**

- 1 - 3-4 SHIFT VALVE SPRING  
2 - CONVERTER CLUTCH VALVE SPRING AND PLUG  
3 - 3-4 ACCUMULATOR HOUSING



J9521-101

**Fig. 297 Boost Valve Tube Brace**

- 1 - BOOST VALVE TUBE  
2 - TUBE BRACE (DOUBLE TAB)

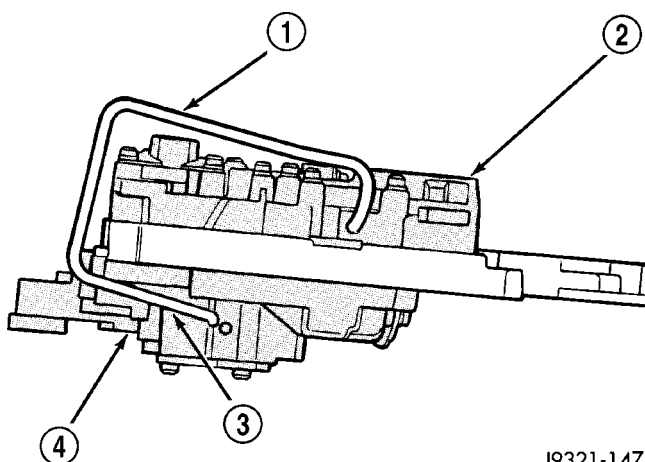
(25) Remove boost valve connecting tube (Fig. 298). Disengage tube from upper housing port first. Then rock opposite end of tube back and forth to work it out of lower housing.

**CAUTION: Do not use tools to loosen or pry the connecting tube out of the valve body housings. Loosen and remove the tube by hand only.**

(26) Turn valve body over so lower housing is facing upward (Fig. 299). In this position, the two check balls in upper housing will remain in place and not fall out when lower housing and separator plate are removed.

(27) Remove screws attaching valve body lower housing to upper housing and transfer plate (Fig. 299). Note position of boost valve tube brace for assembly reference.

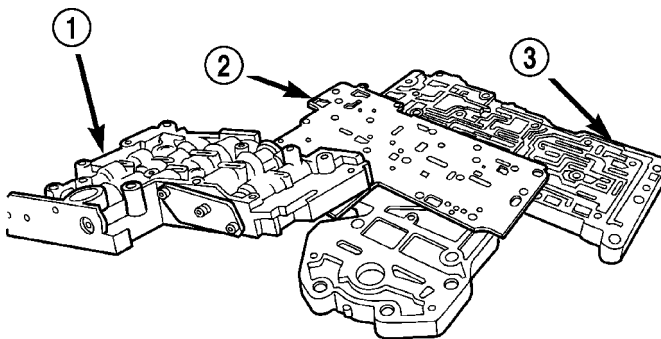
(28) Remove lower housing and overdrive separator plate from transfer plate (Fig. 299).



J9321-147

**Fig. 298 Boost Valve Tube**

- 1 - BOOST VALVE TUBE  
2 - LOWER HOUSING  
3 - DISENGAGE THIS END OF TUBE FIRST  
4 - UPPER HOUSING



80b170f8

**Fig. 299 Lower Housing**

- 1 - LOWER HOUSING  
2 - OVERDRIVE SEPARATOR PLATE  
3 - TRANSFER PLATE AND UPPER HOUSING

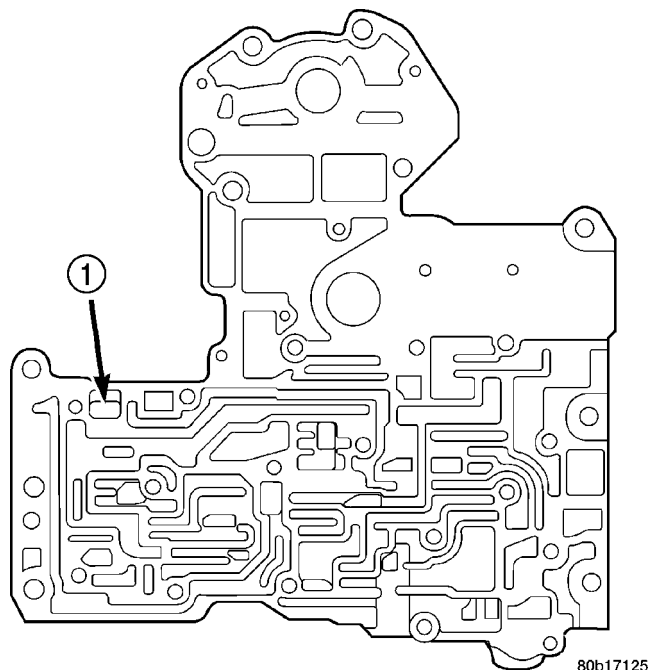
## VALVE BODY (Continued)

(29) Remove the Number 10 check ball from the transfer plate (Fig. 300). The Number 10 check ball is approximately 4.8 mm (3/16 in.) in diameter.

(30) Remove transfer plate from upper housing (Fig. 301).

(31) Turn transfer plate over so upper housing separator plate is facing upward.

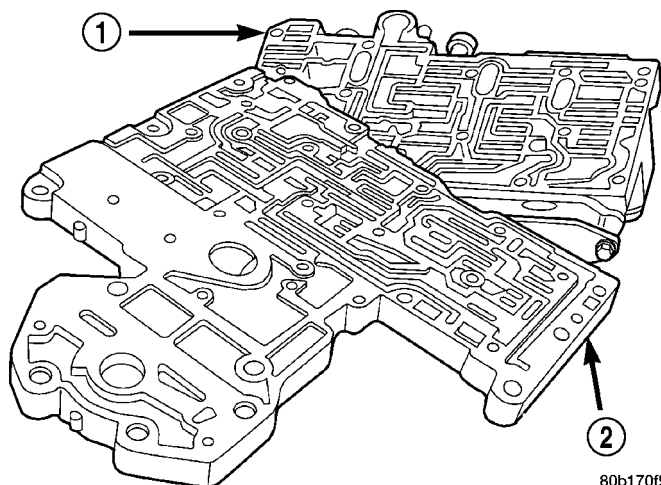
(32) Remove upper housing separator plate from transfer plate (Fig. 302). Note position of filter in separator plate for assembly reference.



80b17125

**Fig. 300 Number 10 Check Ball**

1 - NUMBER 10 CHECK BALL (3/16")

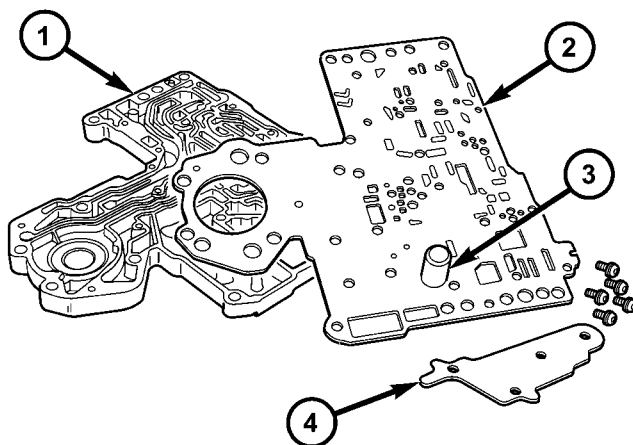


80b170f9

**Fig. 301 Transfer Plate**

1 - UPPER HOUSING  
2 - TRANSFER PLATE

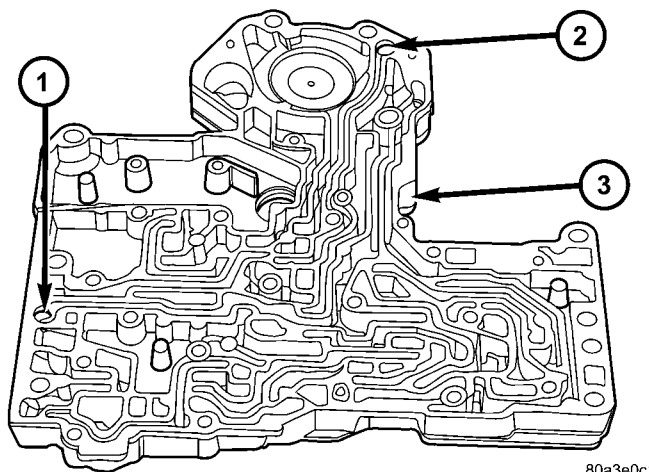
(33) Remove rear clutch and rear servo check balls from transfer plate. Note check ball location for assembly reference (Fig. 303).



80a3e08a

**Fig. 302 Upper Housing Separator Plate**

1 - TRANSFER PLATE  
2 - UPPER HOUSING SEPARATOR PLATE  
3 - FILTER SCREEN  
4 - BRACE



80a3e0c1

**Fig. 303 Rear Clutch And Rear Servo Check Ball**

1 - REAR CLUTCH CHECK BALL  
2 - REAR SERVO CHECK BALL  
3 - TRANSFER PLATE

## VALVE BODY (Continued)

## VALVE BODY UPPER HOUSING

(1) Note location of check balls in valve body upper housing (Fig. 304). Then remove the one large diameter and the six smaller diameter check balls.

(2) Remove governor plug and shuttle valve covers (Fig. 306).

(3) Remove E-clip that secures shuttle valve secondary spring on valve stem (Fig. 305).

(4) Remove throttle plug, primary spring, shuttle valve, secondary spring, and spring guides (Fig. 306).

(5) Remove boost valve retainer, spring and valve if not previously removed.

(6) Remove throttle plug and 1-2 and 2-3 governor plugs (Fig. 293).

(7) Turn upper housing around and remove limit valve and shift valve covers (Fig. 307).

(8) Remove limit valve housing. Then remove retainer, spring, limit valve, and 2-3 throttle plug from limit valve housing (Fig. 307).

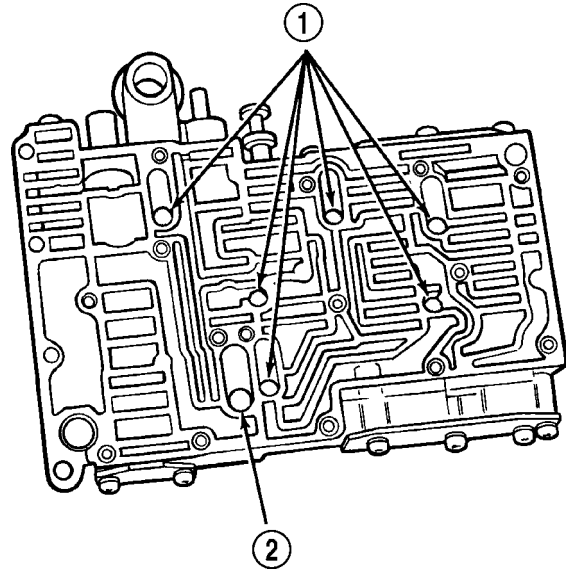
(9) Remove 1-2 shift control valve and spring (Fig. 307).

(10) Remove 1-2 shift valve and spring (Fig. 307).

(11) Remove 2-3 shift valve and spring from valve body (Fig. 307).

(12) Remove pressure plug cover (Fig. 307).

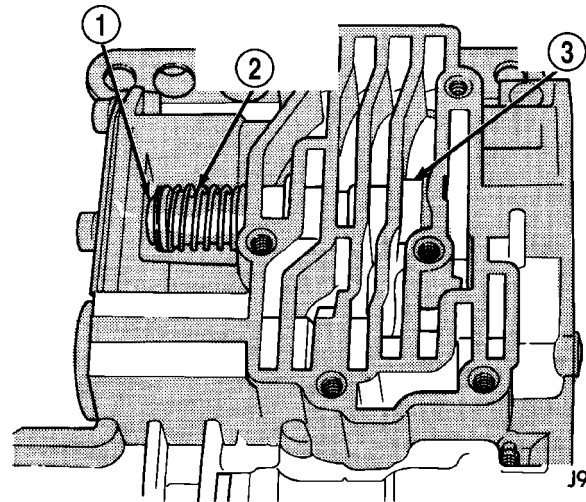
(13) Remove line pressure plug, sleeve, throttle pressure plug and spring (Fig. 307).



J9321-154

**Fig. 304 Check Ball Locations In Upper Housing**

- 1 - SMALL DIAMETER CHECK BALLS (6)  
2 - LARGE DIAMETER CHECK BALL (1)

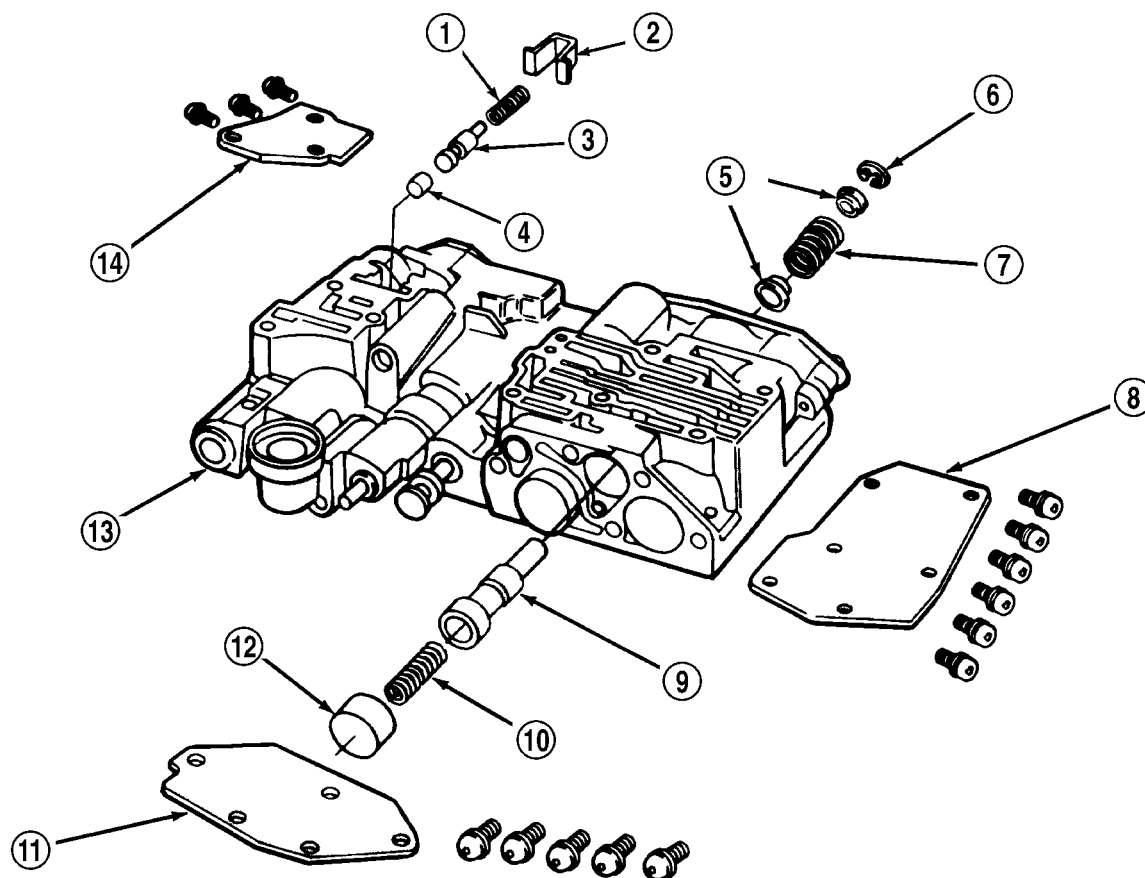


J9121-179

**Fig. 305 Shuttle Valve E-Clip And Secondary Spring Location**

- 1 - E-CLIP  
2 - SECONDARY SPRING AND GUIDES  
3 - SHUTTLE VALVE

## VALVE BODY (Continued)

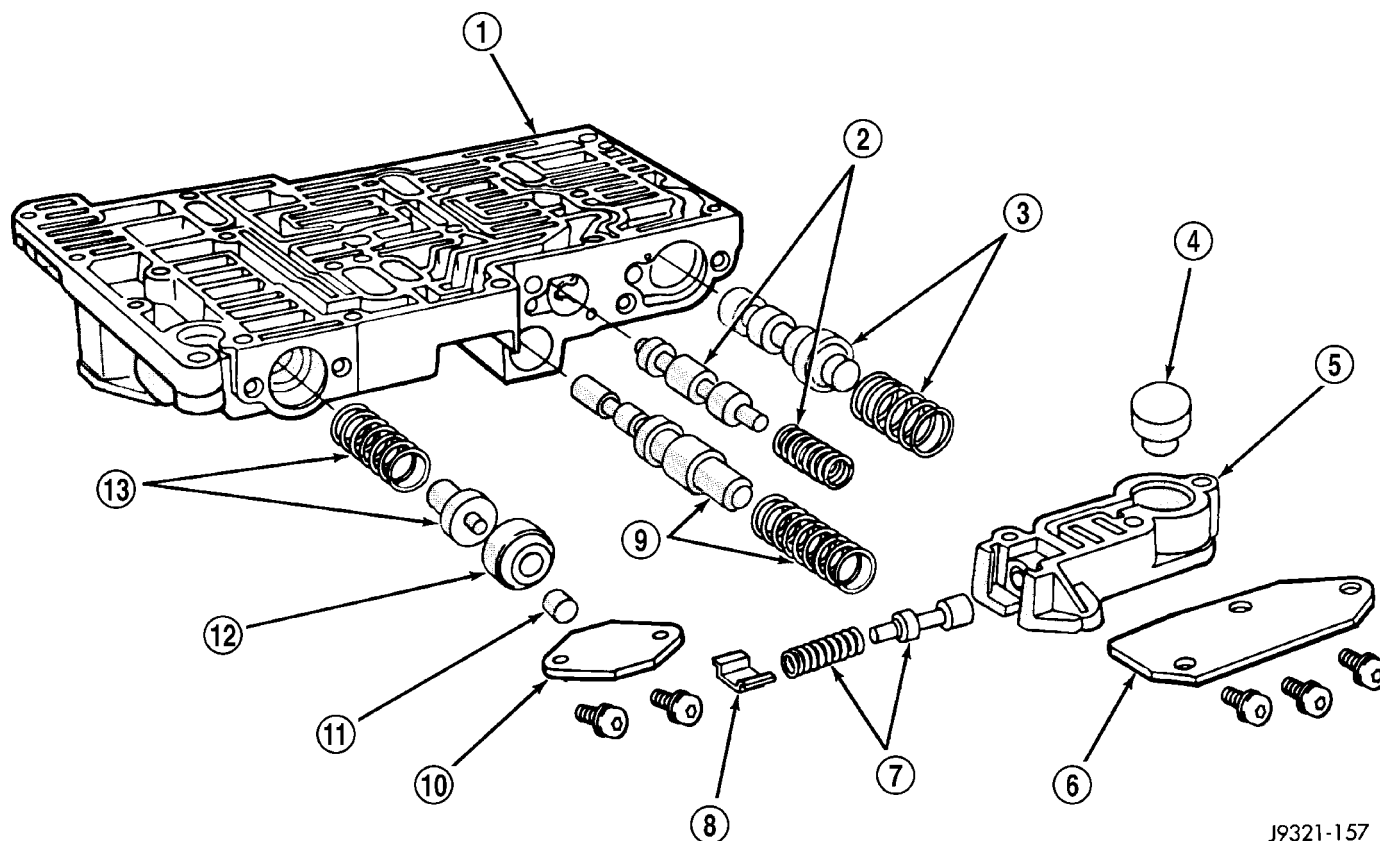


J9421-217

**Fig. 306 Shuttle And Boost Valve Components**

- |                                    |                                   |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1 - SPRING                         | 8 - SHUTTLE VALVE COVER           |
| 2 - RETAINER                       | 9 - SHUTTLE VALVE                 |
| 3 - BOOST VALVE                    | 10 - SHUTTLE VALVE PRIMARY SPRING |
| 4 - BOOST VALVE PLUG               | 11 - GOVERNOR PLUG COVER          |
| 5 - SPRING GUIDES                  | 12 - THROTTLE PLUG                |
| 6 - E-CLIP                         | 13 - UPPER HOUSING                |
| 7 - SHUTTLE VALVE SECONDARY SPRING | 14 - BOOST VALVE COVER            |

## VALVE BODY (Continued)



J9321-157

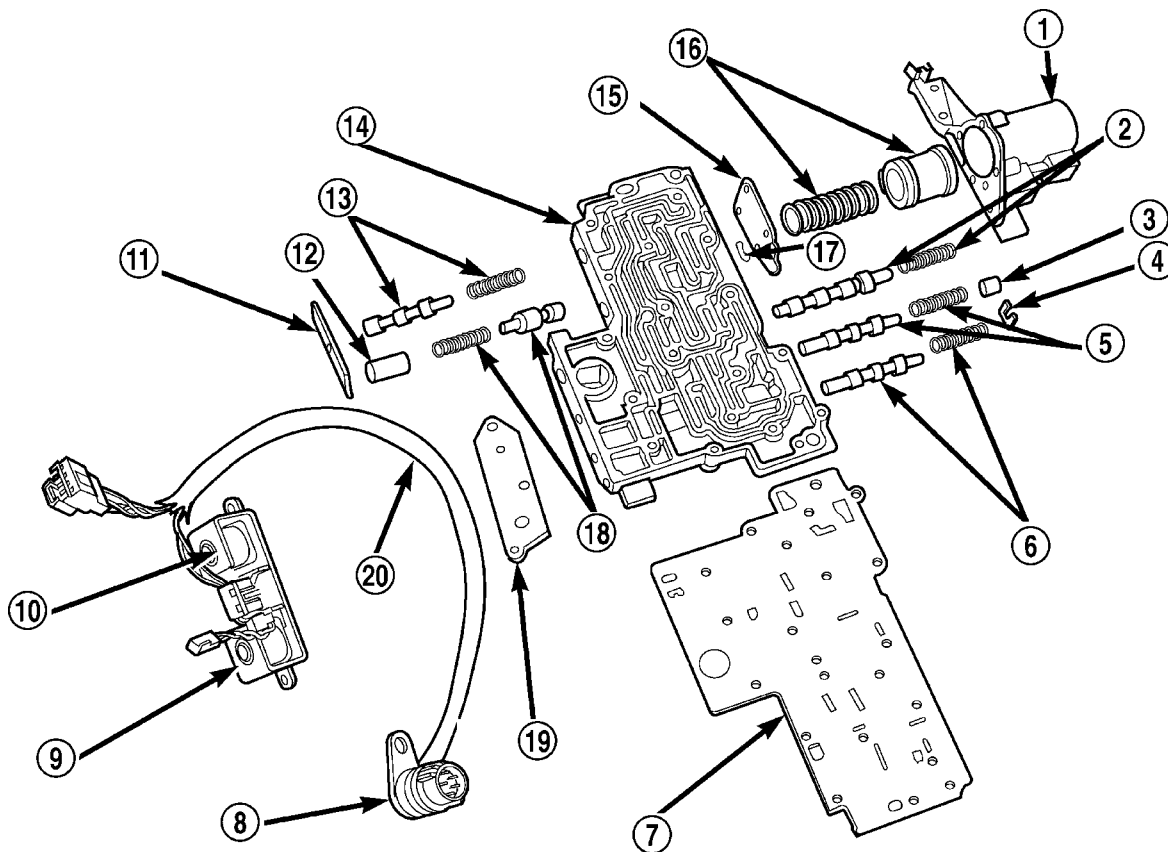
**Fig. 307 Upper Housing Shift Valve And Pressure Plug Locations**

- |                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| 1 - UPPER HOUSING              | 8 - RETAINER                           |
| 2 - 1-2 SHIFT VALVE AND SPRING | 9 - 1-2 SHIFT CONTROL VALVE AND SPRING |
| 3 - 2-3 SHIFT VALVE AND SPRING | 10 - PRESSURE PLUG COVER               |
| 4 - 2-3 THROTTLE PLUG          | 11 - LINE PRESSURE PLUG                |
| 5 - LIMIT VALVE HOUSING        | 12 - PLUG SLEEVE                       |
| 6 - LIMIT VALVE COVER          | 13 - THROTTLE PRESSURE SPRING AND PLUG |
| 7 - LIMIT VALVE AND SPRING     |  |

## VALVE BODY (Continued)

## VALVE BODY LOWER HOUSING

- (1) Remove timing valve cover.
- (2) Remove 3-4 timing valve and spring.
- (3) Remove 3-4 quick fill valve, spring and plug.
- (4) Remove 3-4 shift valve and spring.
- (5) Remove converter clutch valve, spring and plug  
(Fig. 308).
- (6) Remove converter clutch timing valve, retainer and valve spring.



80c072b5

**Fig. 308 Lower Housing Shift Valves and Springs**

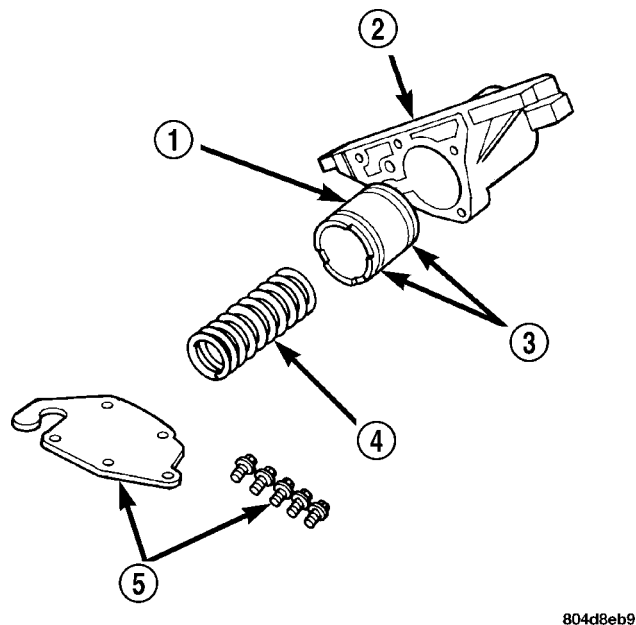
- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1 - 3-4 ACCUMULATOR HOUSING                  | 11 - TIMING VALVE COVER                |
| 2 - 3-4 SHIFT VALVE AND SPRING               | 12 - PLUG                              |
| 3 - PLUG                                     | 13 - 3-4 TIMING VALVE AND SPRING       |
| 4 - SPRING RETAINER                          | 14 - LOWER HOUSING                     |
| 5 - CONVERTER CLUTCH VALVE AND SPRING        | 15 - ACCUMULATOR END PLATE             |
| 6 - CONVERTER CLUTCH TIMING VALVE AND SPRING | 16 - 3-4 ACCUMULATOR PISTON AND SPRING |
| 7 - OVERDRIVE SEPARATOR PLATE                | 17 - E-CLIP                            |
| 8 - CASE CONNECTOR                           | 18 - 3-4 QUICK FILL SPRING AND VALVE   |
| 9 - CONVERTER CLUTCH SOLENOID                | 19 - SOLENOID GASKET                   |
| 10 - OVERDRIVE SOLENOID                      | 20 - HARNESS                           |



## VALVE BODY (Continued)

## 3-4 ACCUMULATOR HOUSING

- (1) Remove end plate from housing.
- (2) Remove piston spring.
- (3) Remove piston. Remove and discard piston seals (Fig. 309).



804d8eb9

**Fig. 309 Accumulator Housing Components**

- 1 - ACCUMULATOR PISTON
- 2 - 3-4 ACCUMULATOR HOUSING
- 3 - TEFLON SEALS
- 4 - PISTON SPRING
- 5 - COVER PLATE AND SCREWS

## CLEANING

Clean the valve housings, valves, plugs, springs, and separator plates with a standard parts cleaning solution only. Do not use gasoline, kerosene, or any type of caustic solution.

Do not immerse any of the electrical components in cleaning solution. Clean the governor solenoid and sensor and the dual solenoid and harness assembly by wiping them off with dry shop towels only.

Dry all except the electrical parts with compressed air. Make sure all passages are clean and free from obstructions. **Do not use rags or shop towels to dry or wipe off valve body components. Lint from these materials can stick to valve body parts, interfere with valve operation, and clog filters and fluid passages.**

Wipe the governor pressure sensor and solenoid valve with dry, lint free shop towels only. The O-rings on the sensor and solenoid valve are the only serviceable components. Be sure the vent ports in the solenoid valve are open and not blocked by dirt or debris. Replace the valve and/or sensor only when DRB scan tool diagnosis indicates this is necessary. Or, if either

part has sustained physical damage (dented, deformed, broken, etc.).

**CAUTION:** Do not turn the small screw at the end of the solenoid valve for any reason. Turning the screw in either direction will ruin solenoid calibration and result in solenoid failure. In addition, the filter on the solenoid valve is **NOT** serviceable. Do not try to remove the filter as this will damage the valve housing.

## INSPECTION

Inspect the throttle and manual valve levers and shafts. Do not attempt to straighten a bent shaft or correct a loose lever. Replace these components if worn, bent, loose or damaged in any way.

Inspect all of the valve body mating surfaces for scratches, nicks, burrs, or distortion. Use a straight-edge to check surface flatness. Minor scratches may be removed with crocus cloth using only very light pressure.

Minor distortion of a valve body mating surface may be corrected by smoothing the surface with a sheet of crocus cloth. Position the crocus cloth on a surface plate, sheet of plate glass or equally flat surface. If distortion is severe or any surfaces are heavily scored, the valve body will have to be replaced.

**CAUTION:** Many of the valves and plugs, such as the throttle valve, shuttle valve plug, 1-2 shift valve and 1-2 governor plug, are made of coated aluminum. Aluminum components are identified by the dark color of the special coating applied to the surface (or by testing with a magnet). Do not sand aluminum valves or plugs under any circumstances. This practice could damage the special coating causing the valves/plugs to stick and bind.

Inspect the valves and plugs for scratches, burrs, nicks, or scores. Minor surface scratches on steel valves and plugs can be removed with crocus cloth but **do not round off the edges of the valve or plug lands.** Maintaining sharpness of these edges is vitally important. The edges prevent foreign matter from lodging between the valves and plugs and the bore.

Inspect all the valve and plug bores in the valve body. Use a penlight to view the bore interiors. Replace the valve body if any bores are distorted or scored. Inspect all of the valve body springs. The springs must be free of distortion, warpage or broken coils.

Check the two separator plates for distortion or damage of any kind. Inspect the upper housing, lower housing, 3-4 accumulator housing, and transfer

## VALVE BODY (Continued)

plate carefully. Be sure all fluid passages are clean and clear. Check condition of the upper housing and transfer plate check balls as well. The check balls and ball seats must not be worn or damaged.

Trial fit each valve and plug in its bore to check freedom of operation. When clean and dry, the valves and plugs should drop freely into the bores.

Valve body bores do not change dimensionally with use. If the valve body functioned correctly when new, it will continue to operate properly after cleaning and inspection. It should not be necessary to replace a valve body assembly unless it is damaged in handling.

The only serviceable valve body components are listed below. The remaining valve body components are serviced only as part of a complete valve body assembly. Serviceable parts are:

- dual solenoid and harness assembly
- solenoid gasket
- solenoid case connector O-rings and shoulder bolt
- switch valve and spring
- pressure adjusting screw and bracket assembly
- throttle lever
- manual lever and shaft seal
- throttle lever shaft seal, washer, and E-clip
- fluid filter and screws
- detent ball and spring
- valve body screws
- governor pressure solenoid
- governor pressure sensor and retaining clip
- park lock rod and E-clip

## ASSEMBLY

**CAUTION:** Do not force valves or plugs into place during reassembly. If the valve body bores, valves and plugs are free of distortion or burrs, the valve body components should all slide into place easily. In addition, do not overtighten the transfer plate and valve body screws during reassembly. Overtightening can distort the housings resulting in valve sticking, cross leakage and unsatisfactory operation. Tighten valve body screws to recommended torque only.

## LOWER HOUSING

(1) Lubricate valves, springs, and the housing valve and plug bores with clean transmission fluid (Fig. 308).

(2) Install 3-4 timing valve spring and valve in lower housing.

(3) Install 3-4 quick fill valve in lower housing.

(4) Install 3-4 quick fill valve spring and plug in housing.

(5) Install timing valve end plate. Tighten end plate screws to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.) torque.

## 3-4 ACCUMULATOR

(1) Lubricate accumulator piston, seals and housing piston bore with clean transmission fluid (Fig. 309).

(2) Install new seal rings on accumulator piston.

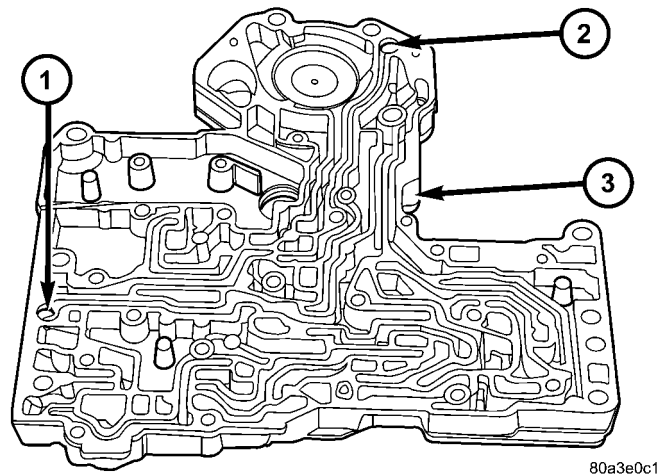
(3) Install piston and spring in housing.

(4) Install end plate on housing.

## TRANSFER PLATE

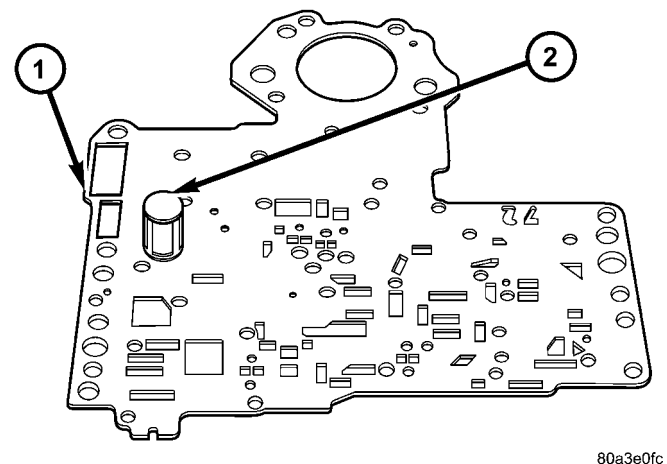
(1) Install rear clutch and rear servo check balls in transfer plate (Fig. 310).

(2) Install filter screen in upper housing separator plate (Fig. 311).



**Fig. 310 Rear Clutch And Rear Servo Check Ball Locations**

- 1 - REAR CLUTCH CHECK BALL
- 2 - REAR SERVO CHECK BALL
- 3 - TRANSFER PLATE



**Fig. 311 Separator Plate Filter Screen Installation**

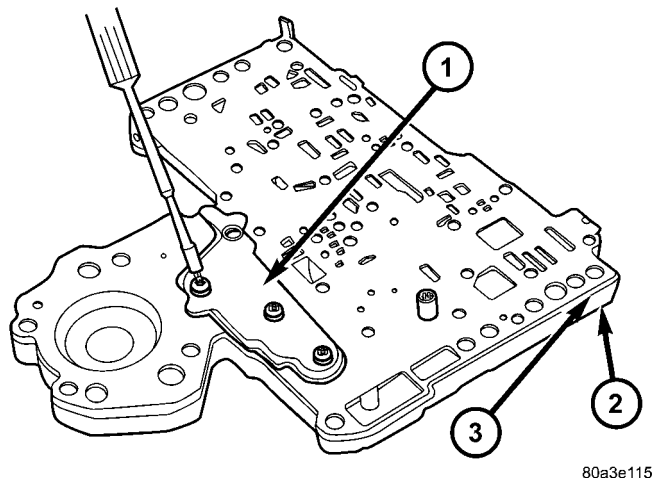
- 1 - UPPER HOUSING SEPARATOR PLATE
- 2 - FILTER SCREEN

## VALVE BODY (Continued)

(3) Align and position upper housing separator plate on transfer plate (Fig. 312).

(4) Install brace plate (Fig. 312). Tighten brace attaching screws to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.) torque.

(5) Install remaining separator plate attaching screws. Tighten screws to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.) torque.



80a3e115

**Fig. 312 Brace Plate**

- 1 - BRACE
- 2 - TRANSFER PLATE
- 3 - SEPARATOR PLATE

## UPPER AND LOWER HOUSING

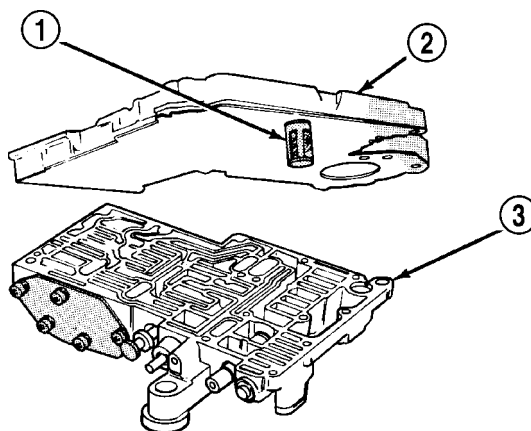
(1) Position upper housing so internal passages and check ball seats are facing upward. Then install check balls in housing (Fig. 313). Eight check balls are used. The single large check ball is approximately 8.7 mm (11/32 in.) diameter. The single small

check ball is approximately 4.8 mm (3/16 in.) in diameter. The remaining 6 check balls are approximately 6.3 mm (1/4 in.) in diameter.

(2) Position assembled transfer plate and upper housing separator plate on upper housing (Fig. 314). Be sure filter screen is seated in proper housing recess.

(3) Install the Number 10 check ball into the transfer plate (Fig. 300). The Number 10 check ball is approximately 4.8 mm (3/16 in.) in diameter.

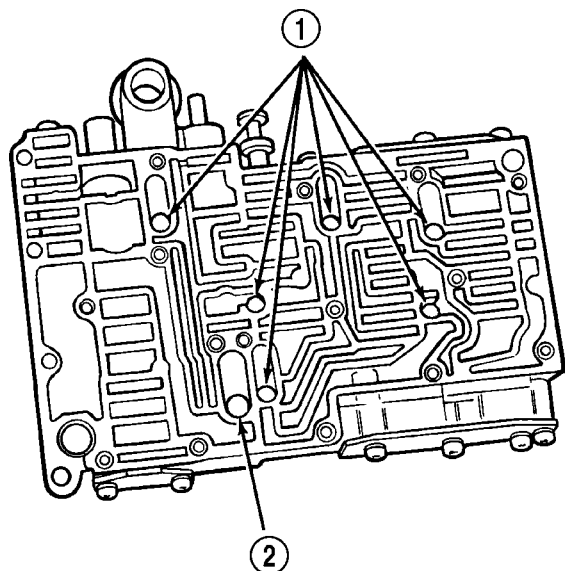
(4) Position lower housing separator plate on transfer plate (Fig. 315).



J9321-439

**Fig. 314 Installing Transfer Plate On Upper Housing**

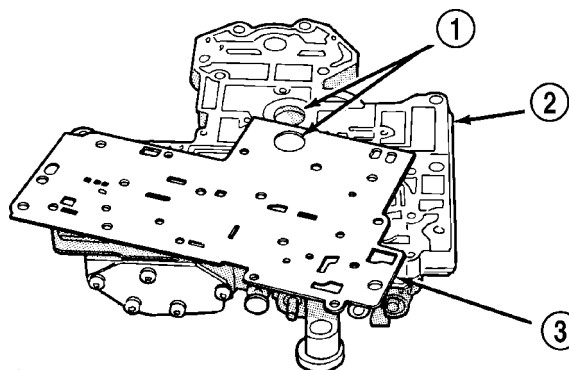
- 1 - FILTER SCREEN
- 2 - TRANSFER PLATE/SEPARATOR PLATE ASSEMBLY
- 3 - UPPER HOUSING



J9321-154

**Fig. 313 Check Ball Locations In Upper Housing**

- 1 - SMALL DIAMETER CHECK BALLS (6)
- 2 - LARGE DIAMETER CHECK BALL (1)



J9321-441

**Fig. 315 Lower Housing Separator Plate**

- 1 - BE SURE TO ALIGN BORES
- 2 - TRANSFER PLATE
- 3 - LOWER HOUSING (OVERDRIVE) SEPARATOR PLATE

## VALVE BODY (Continued)

(5) Install lower housing on assembled transfer plate and upper housing (Fig. 316).

(6) Install and start all valve body screws by hand except for the screws to hold the boost valve tube brace. Save those screws for later installation. Then tighten screws evenly to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.) torque. Start at center and work out to sides when tightening screws (Fig. 316).

## UPPER HOUSING VALVE AND PLUG

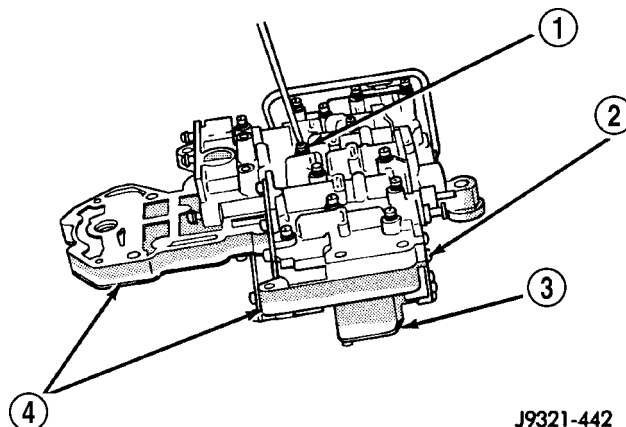
Refer to (Fig. 317), (Fig. 318) and (Fig. 319) to perform the following steps.

(1) Lubricate valves, plugs, springs with clean transmission fluid.

(2) Assemble regulator valve line pressure plug, sleeve, throttle plug and spring. Insert assembly in upper housing and install cover plate. Tighten cover plate screws to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.) torque.

(3) Install 1-2 and 2-3 shift valves and springs.

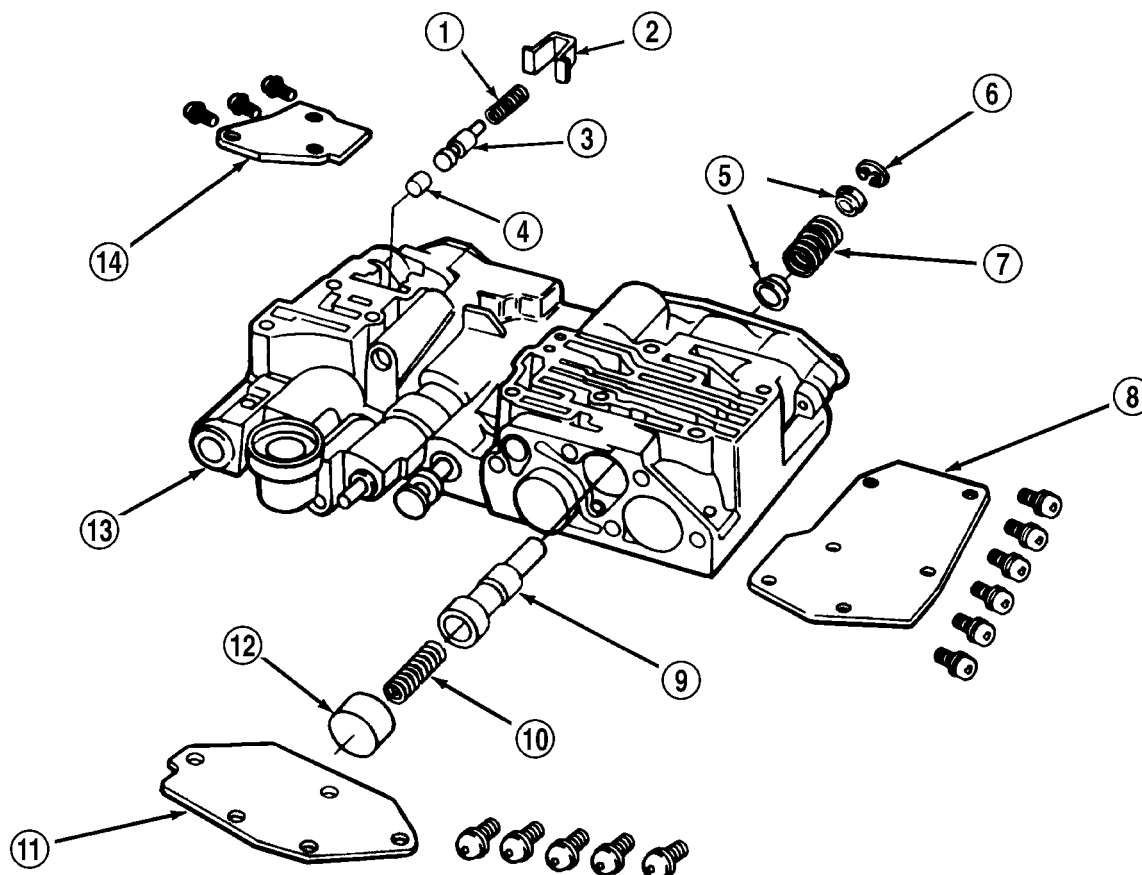
(4) Install 1-2 shift control valve and spring.



J9321-442

**Fig. 316 Installing Lower Housing On Transfer Plate And Upper Housing**

- 1 - VALVE BODY SCREWS (13)
- 2 - LOWER HOUSING
- 3 - UPPER HOUSING
- 4 - TRANSFER PLATE



J9421-217

**Fig. 317 Shuttle And Boost Valve Components**

- 1 - SPRING
- 2 - RETAINER
- 3 - BOOST VALVE
- 4 - BOOST VALVE PLUG
- 5 - SPRING GUIDES
- 6 - E-CLIP
- 7 - SHUTTLE VALVE SECONDARY SPRING

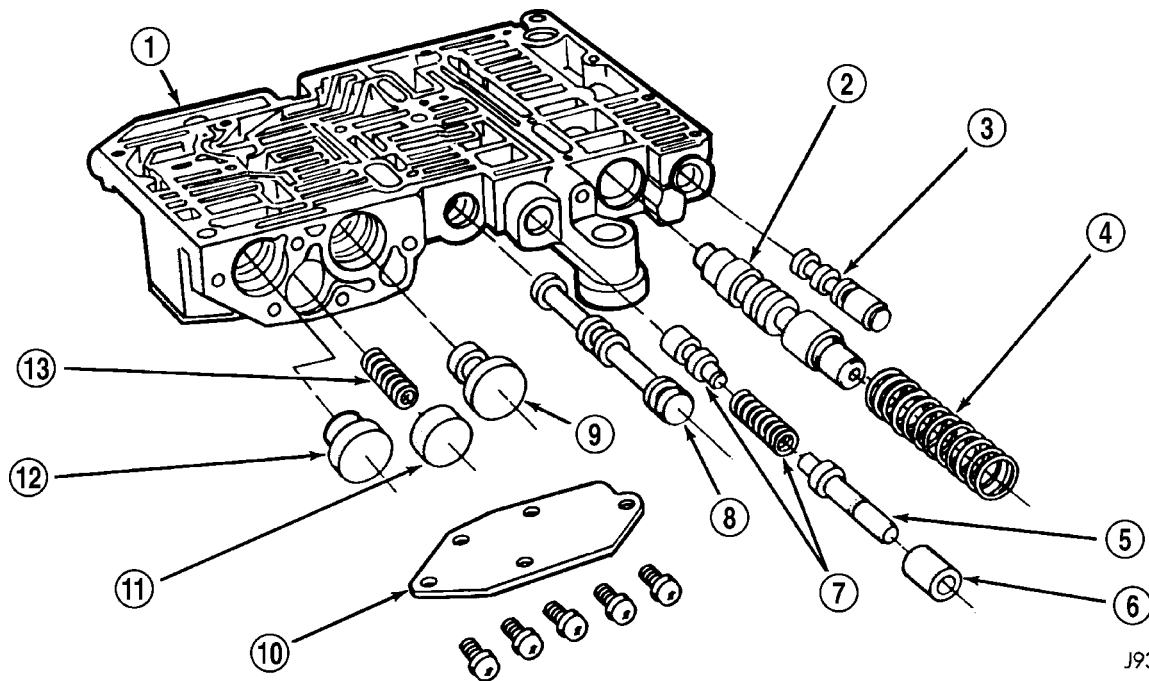
- 8 - SHUTTLE VALVE COVER
- 9 - SHUTTLE VALVE
- 10 - SHUTTLE VALVE PRIMARY SPRING
- 11 - GOVERNOR PLUG COVER
- 12 - THROTTLE PLUG
- 13 - UPPER HOUSING
- 14 - BOOST VALVE COVER

## VALVE BODY (Continued)

- (5) Install retainer, spring, limit valve, and 2-3 throttle plug from limit valve housing.
- (6) Install limit valve housing and cover plate. Tighten screws to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.).
- (7) Install shuttle valve as follows:
  - (a) Insert plastic guides in shuttle valve secondary spring and install spring on end of valve.
  - (b) Install shuttle valve into housing.
  - (c) Hold shuttle valve in place.
  - (d) Compress secondary spring and install E-clip in groove at end of shuttle valve.
  - (e) Verify that spring and E-clip are properly seated before proceeding.
- (8) Install shuttle valve cover plate. Tighten cover plate screws to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.) torque.
- (9) Install 1-2 and 2-3 valve governor plugs in valve body.
- (10) Install shuttle valve primary spring and throttle plug.
- (11) Align and install governor plug cover. Tighten cover screws to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.) torque.

## BOOST VALVE TUBE AND BRACE

- (1) Position valve body assembly so lower housing is facing upward (Fig. 320).
- (2) Lubricate tube ends and housing ports with transmission fluid or petroleum jelly.
- (3) Start tube in lower housing port first. Then swing tube downward and work opposite end of tube into upper housing port (Fig. 320).
- (4) Insert and seat each end of tube in housings.
- (5) Slide tube brace under tube and into alignment with valve body screw holes (Fig. 321).
- (6) Install and finger tighten three screws that secure tube brace to valve body housings (Fig. 321).



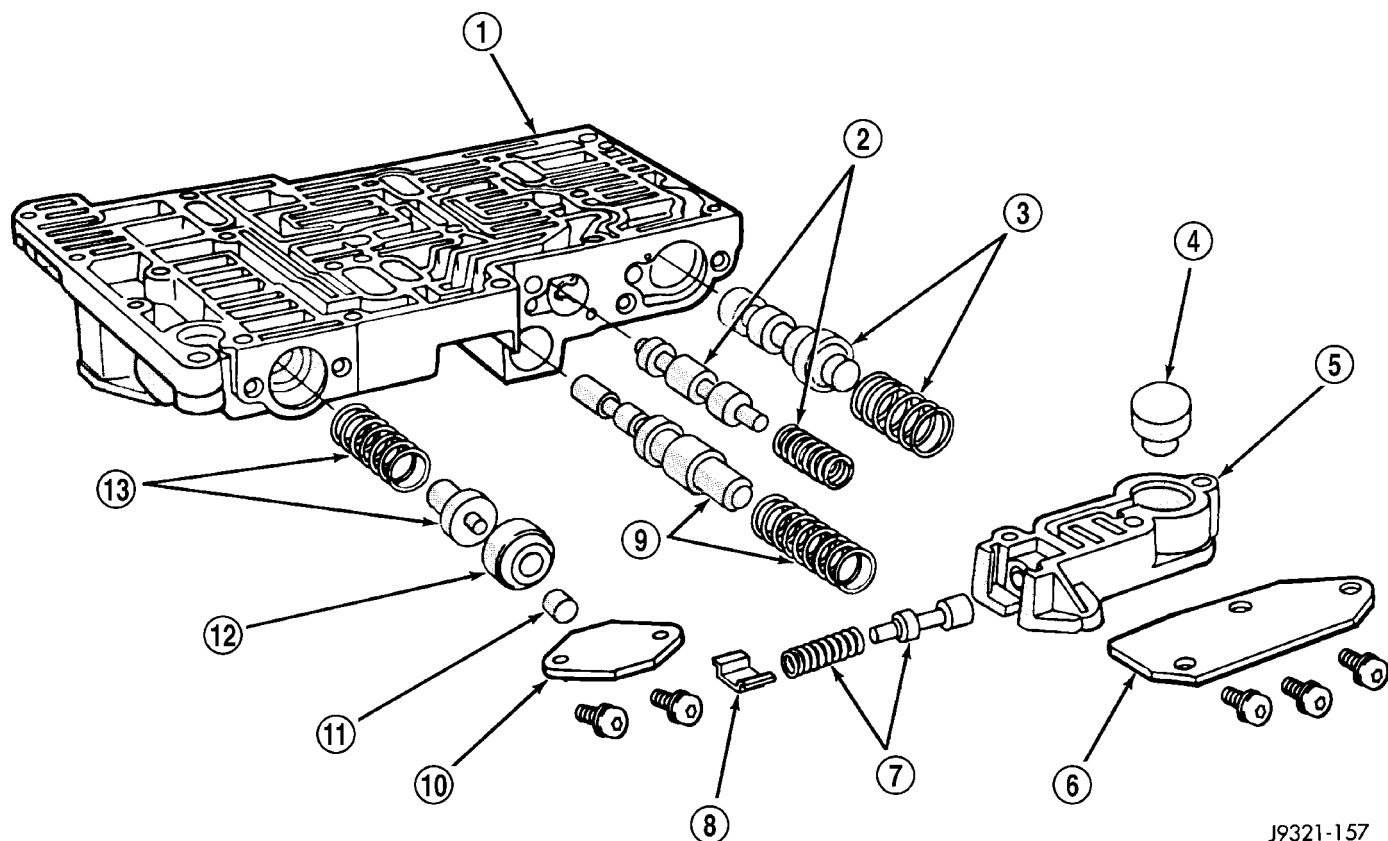
J9321-155

**Fig. 318 Upper Housing Control Valve Locations**

- |                               |                                   |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1 - UPPER HOUSING             | 8 - MANUAL VALVE                  |
| 2 - REGULATOR VALVE           | 9 - 1-2 GOVERNOR PLUG             |
| 3 - SWITCH VALVE              | 10 - GOVERNOR PLUG COVER          |
| 4 - REGULATOR VALVE SPRING    | 11 - THROTTLE PLUG                |
| 5 - KICKDOWN VALVE            | 12 - 2-3 GOVERNOR PLUG            |
| 6 - KICKDOWN DETENT           | 13 - SHUTTLE VALVE PRIMARY SPRING |
| 7 - THROTTLE VALVE AND SPRING |                                   |



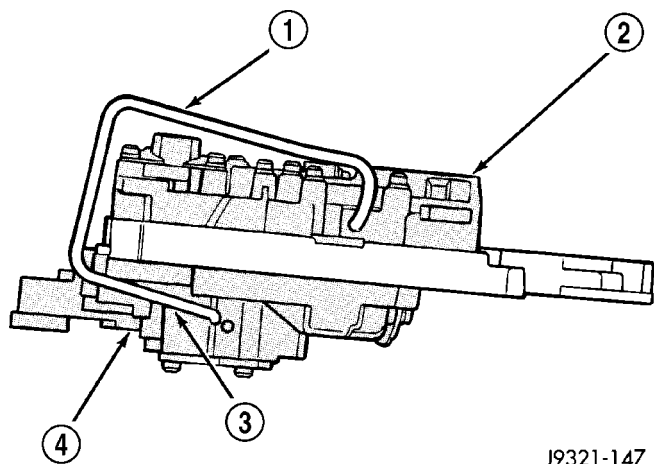
# VALVE BODY (Continued)



J9321-157

**Fig. 319 Upper Housing Shift Valve And Pressure Plug Locations**

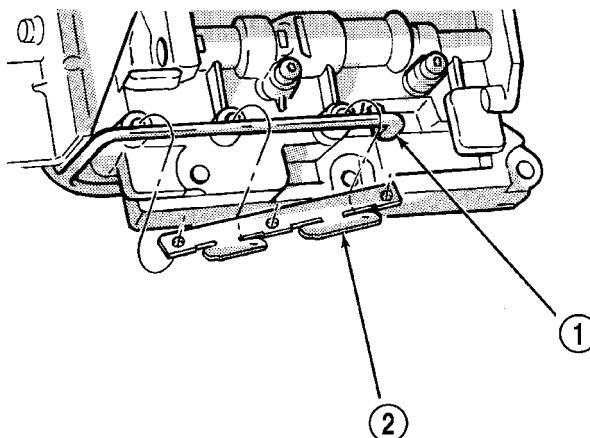
- |                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| 1 - UPPER HOUSING              | 8 - RETAINER                           |
| 2 - 1-2 SHIFT VALVE AND SPRING | 9 - 1-2 SHIFT CONTROL VALVE AND SPRING |
| 3 - 2-3 SHIFT VALVE AND SPRING | 10 - PRESSURE PLUG COVER               |
| 4 - 2-3 THROTTLE PLUG          | 11 - LINE PRESSURE PLUG                |
| 5 - LIMIT VALVE HOUSING        | 12 - PLUG SLEEVE                       |
| 6 - LIMIT VALVE COVER          | 13 - THROTTLE PRESSURE SPRING AND PLUG |
| 7 - LIMIT VALVE AND SPRING     |  |



J9321-147

**Fig. 320 Boost Valve Tube**

- 1 - BOOST VALVE TUBE
- 2 - LOWER HOUSING
- 3 - DISENGAGE THIS END OF TUBE FIRST
- 4 - UPPER HOUSING



J9521-107

**Fig. 321 Boost Valve Tube And Brace**

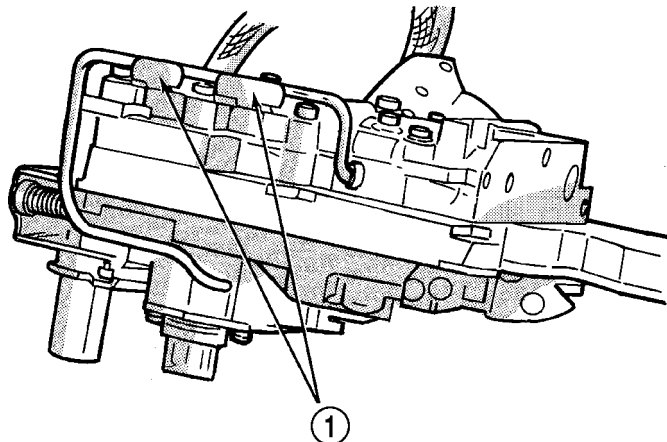
- 1 - BOOST VALVE TUBE
- 2 - TUBE BRACE



## VALVE BODY (Continued)

(7) Bend tube brace tabs up and against tube to hold it in position (Fig. 322).

(8) Tighten all valve body housing screws to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.) torque after tube and brace are installed. Tighten screws in diagonal pattern starting at center and working outward.



J9521-108

**Fig. 322 Securing Boost Valve Tube With Brace Tabs**

1 - BEND TABS UP AGAINST TUBE AS SHOWN

## 3-4 ACCUMULATOR

(1) Position converter clutch valve and 3-4 shift valve springs in housing (Fig. 323).

(2) Loosely attach accumulator housing with right-side screw (Fig. 323). Install only one screw at this time as accumulator must be free to pivot upward for ease of installation.

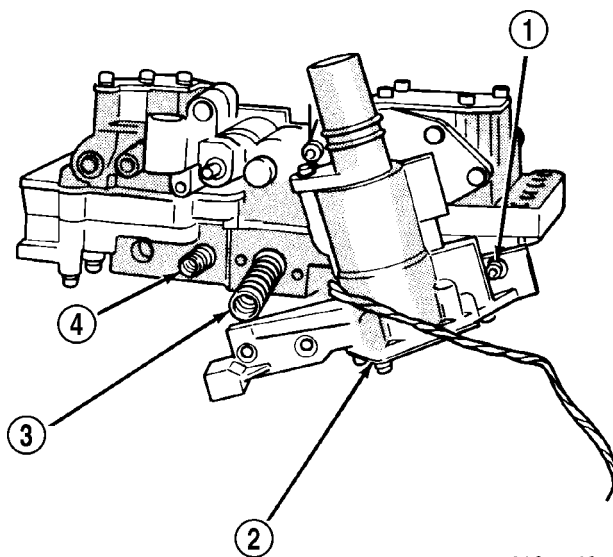
(3) Install 3-4 shift valve and spring.

(4) Install converter clutch timing valve and spring.

(5) Position plug on end of converter clutch valve spring. Then compress and hold springs and plug in place with fingers of one hand.

(6) Swing accumulator housing upward over valve springs and plug.

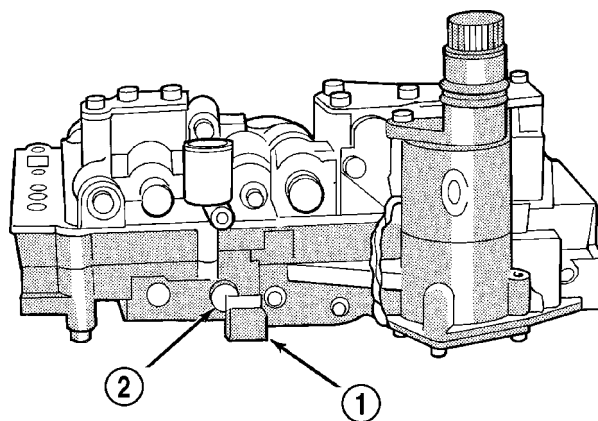
(7) Hold accumulator housing firmly in place and install remaining two attaching screws. Be sure springs and clutch valve plug are properly seated (Fig. 324). Tighten screws to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.).



J9321-160

**Fig. 323 Converter Clutch And 3-4 Shift Valve Springs**

- 1 - RIGHT-SIDE SCREW
- 2 - 3-4 ACCUMULATOR
- 3 - 3-4 SHIFT VALVE SPRING
- 4 - CONVERTER CLUTCH VALVE SPRING



J9521-180

**Fig. 324 Seating 3-4 Accumulator On Lower Housing**

- 1 - ACCUMULATOR BOX
- 2 - CONVERTER CLUTCH VALVE PLUG

## VALVE BODY (Continued)

## VALVE BODY FINAL

(1) Install boost valve, valve spring, retainer and cover plate. Tighten cover plate screws to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.) torque.

(2) Insert manual lever detent spring in upper housing.

(3) Position detent ball on end of spring. Then hold detent ball and spring in detent housing with Retainer Tool 6583 (Fig. 325).

(4) Install throttle lever in upper housing. Then install manual lever over throttle lever and start manual lever into housing.

(5) Align manual lever with detent ball and manual valve. Hold throttle lever upward. Then press down on manual lever until fully seated. Remove detent ball retainer tool after lever is seated.

(6) Then install manual lever seal, washer and E-clip.

(7) Verify that throttle lever is aligned with end of kickdown valve stem and that manual lever arm is engaged in manual valve (Fig. 326).

(8) Position line pressure adjusting screw in adjusting screw bracket.

(9) Install spring on end of line pressure regulator valve.

(10) Install switch valve spring on tang at end of adjusting screw bracket.

(11) Install manual valve.

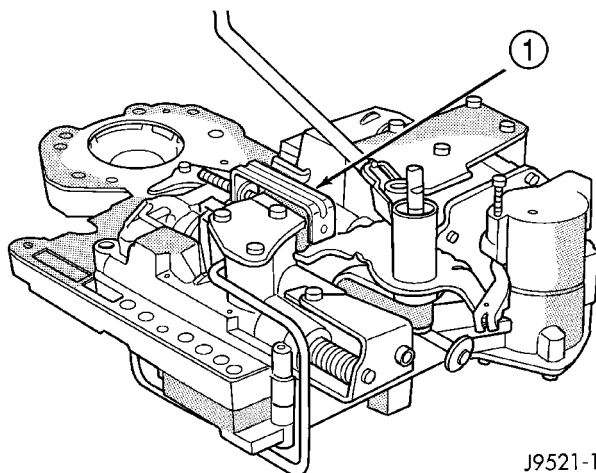
(12) Install throttle valve and spring.

(13) Install kickdown valve and detent.

(14) Install pressure regulator valve.

(15) Install switch valve.

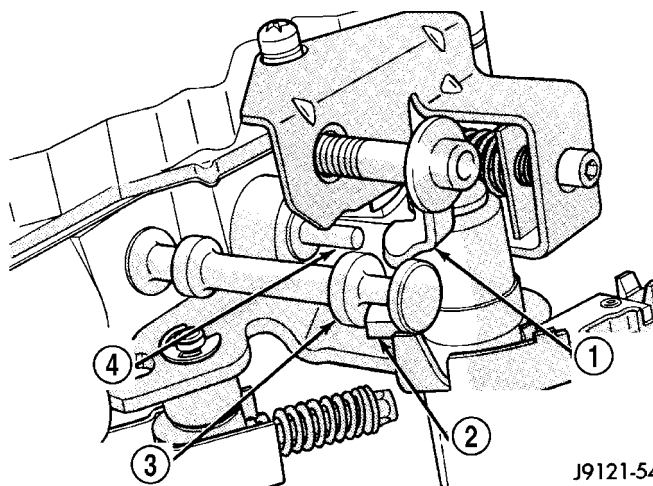
(16) Position adjusting screw bracket on valve body. Align valve springs and press bracket into place. Install short, upper bracket screws first and long bottom screw last. Verify that valve springs and bracket are properly aligned. Then tighten all three bracket screws to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.) torque.



J9521-178

**Fig. 325 Detent Ball Spring**

1 - SPECIAL TOOL 6583 POSITIONED ON DETENT HOUSING



J9121-54

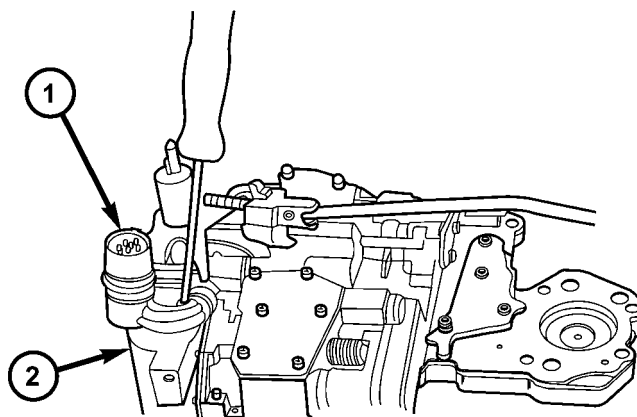
**Fig. 326 Manual And Throttle Lever Alignment**

- 1 - THROTTLE LEVER
- 2 - MANUAL LEVER VALVE ARM
- 3 - MANUAL VALVE
- 4 - KICKDOWN VALVE

(17) Perform Line Pressure and Throttle Pressure adjustments. (Refer to 21 - TRANSMISSION/TRAN-SAXLE/AUTOMATIC/VALVE BODY - ADJUSTMENTS)

(18) Lubricate solenoid case connector O-rings and shaft of manual lever with light coat of petroleum jelly.

(19) Attach solenoid case connector to 3-4 accumulator with shoulder-type screw. Connector has small locating tang that fits in dimple at top of accumulator housing (Fig. 327). Seat tang in dimple before tightening connector screw.



808803a3

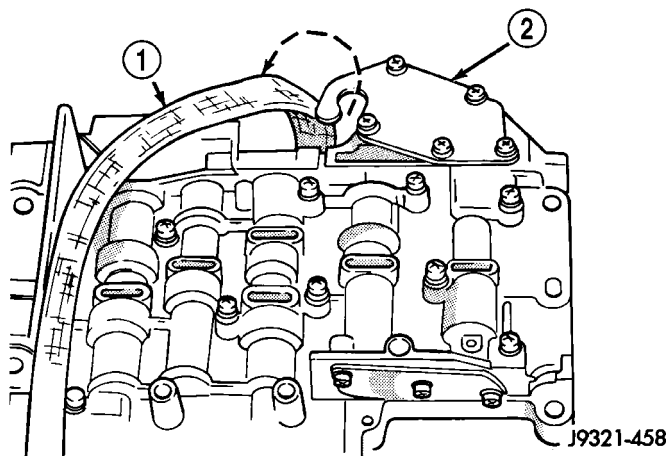
**Fig. 327 Solenoid Harness Case Connector Shoulder Bolt**

- 1 - SOLENOID HARNESS CASE CONNECTOR
- 2 - 3-4 ACCUMULATOR HOUSING

## VALVE BODY (Continued)

(20) Install solenoid assembly and gasket. Tighten solenoid attaching screws to 8 N·m (72 in. lbs.) torque.

(21) Verify that solenoid wire harness is properly routed (Fig. 328). Solenoid harness must be clear of manual lever and park rod and not be pinched between accumulator housing and cover.



**Fig. 328 Solenoid Harness Routing**

- 1 - OVERDRIVE/CONVERTER SOLENOID WIRE HARNESS  
2 - 3-4 ACCUMULATOR COVER PLATE

## GOVERNOR BODY, SENSOR AND SOLENOID

(1) Turn valve body assembly over so accumulator side of transfer plate is facing down.

(2) Install new O-rings on governor pressure solenoid and sensor.

(3) Lubricate solenoid and sensor O-rings with clean transmission fluid.

(4) Install governor pressure sensor in governor body.

(5) Install governor pressure solenoid in governor body. Push solenoid in until it snaps into place in body.

(6) Position governor body gasket on transfer plate.

(7) Install retainer plate on governor body and around solenoid. Be sure solenoid connector is positioned in retainer cutout.

(8) Align screw holes in governor body and transfer plate. Then install and tighten governor body screws to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.) torque.

(9) Connect harness wires to governor pressure solenoid and governor pressure sensor.

(10) Install fluid filter and pan.

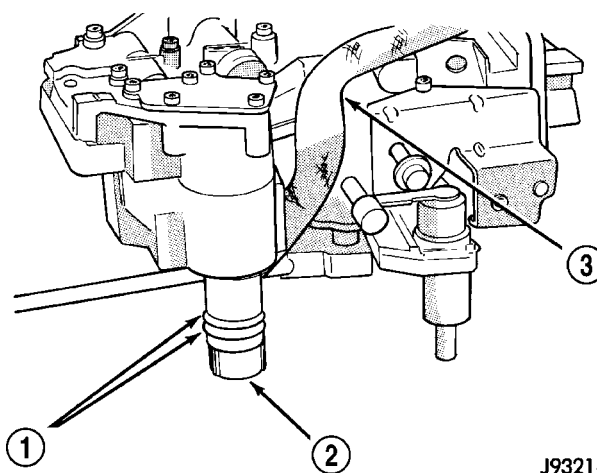
(11) Lower vehicle.

(12) Fill transmission with recommended fluid and road test vehicle to verify repair.

## INSTALLATION

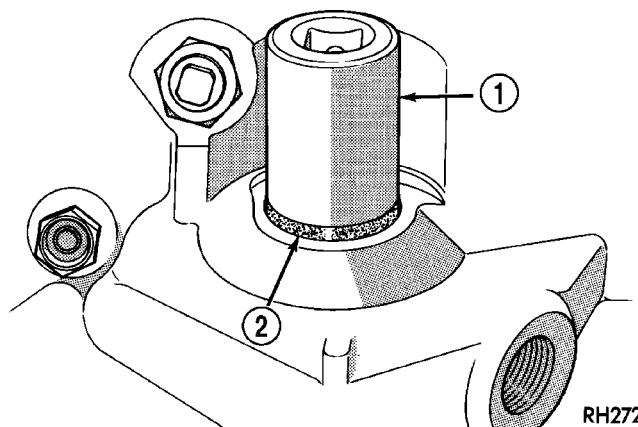
(1) Check condition of O-ring seals on valve body harness connector (Fig. 329). Replace seals on connector body if cut or worn.

(2) Check condition of manual lever shaft seal in transmission case. Replace seal if lip is cut or worn. Install new seal with 15/16 deep well socket (Fig. 330).



**Fig. 329 Valve Body Harness Connector O-Ring Seal**

- 1 - CONNECTOR O-RINGS  
2 - VALVE BODY HARNESS CONNECTOR  
3 - HARNESS



**Fig. 330 Manual Lever Shaft Seal**

- 1 - 15/16" SOCKET  
2 - SEAL

## VALVE BODY (Continued)

(3) Check condition of seals on accumulator piston (Fig. 331). Install new piston seals, if necessary.

(4) Place valve body manual lever in low (1 position) so ball on park lock rod will be easier to install in sprag.

(5) Lubricate shaft of manual lever with petroleum jelly. This will ease inserting shaft through seal in case.

(6) Lubricate seal rings on valve body harness connector with petroleum jelly.

(7) Position valve body in case and work end of park lock rod into and through pawl sprag. Turn propeller shaft to align sprag and park lock teeth if necessary. The rod will click as it enters pawl. Move rod to check engagement.

**CAUTION:** It is possible for the park rod to displace into a cavity just above the pawl sprag during installation. Make sure the rod is actually engaged in the pawl and has not displaced into this cavity.

(8) Install accumulator springs and piston into case. Then swing valve body over piston and outer spring to hold it in place.

(9) Align accumulator piston and outer spring, manual lever shaft and electrical connector in case.

(10) Then seat valve body in case and install one or two bolts to hold valve body in place.

(11) Tighten valve body bolts alternately and evenly to 11 N·m (100 in. lbs.) torque.

(12) Install new fluid filter on valve body. Tighten filter screws to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.) torque.

(13) Install throttle and gearshift levers on valve body manual lever shaft.

(14) Check and adjust front and rear bands if necessary.

(15) Connect solenoid case connector wires.

(16) Install oil pan and new gasket. Tighten pan bolts to 13.6 N·m (125 in. lbs.) torque.

(17) Lower vehicle and fill transmission with Mopar® ATF +4, Automatic Transmission fluid.

(18) Check and adjust gearshift and throttle valve cables, if necessary.

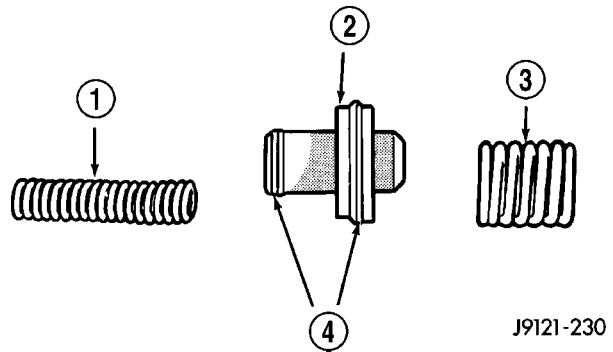
## ADJUSTMENTS - VALVE BODY

## CONTROL PRESSURE ADJUSTMENTS

There are two control pressure adjustments on the valve body;

- Line Pressure
- Throttle Pressure

Line and throttle pressures are interdependent because each affects shift quality and timing. As a result, both adjustments must be performed properly and in the correct sequence. Adjust line pressure first and throttle pressure last.



**Fig. 331 Accumulator Piston Components**

- 1 - INNER SPRING
- 2 - ACCUMULATOR PISTON
- 3 - OUTER SPRING
- 4 - SEAL RINGS

## LINE PRESSURE ADJUSTMENT

Measure distance from the valve body to the inner edge of the adjusting screw with an accurate steel scale (Fig. 332).

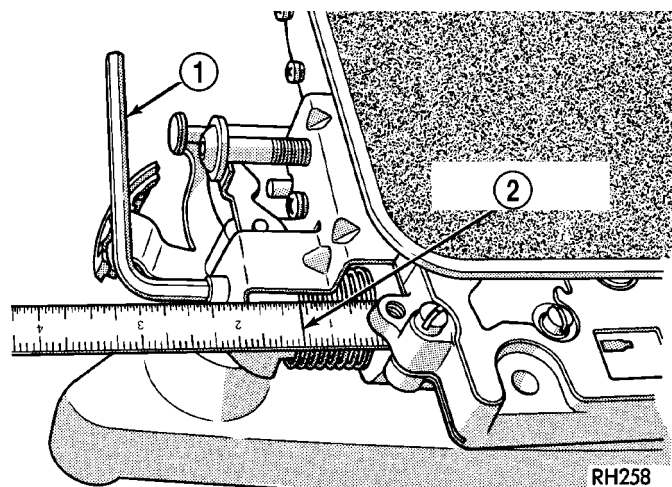
Distance should be 33.4 mm (1-5/16 in.).

If adjustment is required, turn the adjusting screw in, or out, to obtain required distance setting.

**NOTE:** The 33.4 mm (1-5/16 in.) setting is an approximate setting. Manufacturing tolerances may make it necessary to vary from this dimension to obtain desired pressure.

One complete turn of the adjusting screw changes line pressure approximately 1-2/3 psi (9 kPa).

Turning the adjusting screw counterclockwise increases pressure while turning the screw clockwise decreases pressure.



**Fig. 332 Line Pressure Adjustment**

- 1 - WRENCH
- 2 - 1-5/16 INCH



## VALVE BODY (Continued)

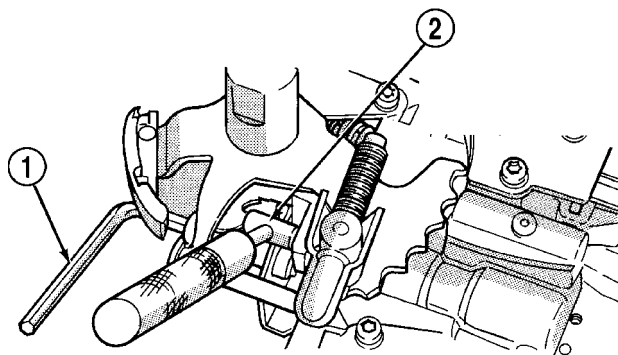
## THROTTLE PRESSURE ADJUSTMENT

Insert Gauge Tool C-3763 between the throttle lever cam and the kickdown valve stem (Fig. 333).

Push the gauge tool inward to compress the kickdown valve against the spring and bottom the throttle valve.

Maintain pressure against kickdown valve spring. Turn throttle lever stop screw until the screw head touches throttle lever tang and the throttle lever cam touches gauge tool.

**NOTE:** The kickdown valve spring must be fully compressed and the kickdown valve completely bottomed to obtain correct adjustment.



J9521-109

**Fig. 333 Throttle Pressure Adjustment**

1 - HEX WRENCH (IN THROTTLE LEVER ADJUSTING SCREW)  
2 - SPECIAL TOOL C-3763 (POSITIONED BETWEEN THROTTLE LEVER AND KICKDOWN VALVE)

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 545RFE

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 545RFE</b>		<b>DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - FLUID</b>	
DESCRIPTION .....	180	CONTAMINATION .....	233
OPERATION .....	181	<b>STANDARD PROCEDURE</b>	
<b>DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING</b>		STANDARD PROCEDURE - FLUID LEVEL	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - AUTOMATIC		CHECK .....	233
TRANSMISSION .....	181	STANDARD PROCEDURE - FLUID AND	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING -		FILTER REPLACEMENT .....	233
PRELIMINARY .....	182	STANDARD PROCEDURE - TRANSMISSION	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - ROAD		FILL .....	235
TESTING .....	182	<b>GEARSHIFT CABLE</b>	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - HYDRAULIC		DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - GEARSHIFT	
PRESSURE TEST .....	183	CABLE .....	235
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - AIR CHECKING		REMOVAL .....	235
TRANSMISSION CLUTCH OPERATION ....	184	INSTALLATION .....	236
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - CONVERTER		ADJUSTMENTS - GEARSHIFT CABLE .....	237
HOUSING FLUID LEAK .....	184	<b>HOLDING CLUTCHES</b>	
<b>STANDARD PROCEDURE - ALUMINUM</b>		DESCRIPTION .....	238
THREAD REPAIR .....	185	OPERATION .....	239
REMOVAL .....	185	<b>INPUT CLUTCH ASSEMBLY</b>	
DISASSEMBLY .....	187	DESCRIPTION .....	240
CLEANING .....	193	OPERATION .....	240
INSPECTION .....	193	DISASSEMBLY .....	241
ASSEMBLY .....	194	ASSEMBLY .....	245
INSTALLATION .....	201	<b>INPUT SPEED SENSOR</b>	
<b>SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS</b>		DESCRIPTION .....	249
HYDRAULIC SCHEMATICS .....	203	OPERATION .....	249
<b>SPECIFICATIONS</b>		REMOVAL .....	250
TRANSMISSION .....	224	INSTALLATION .....	250
<b>SPECIAL TOOLS</b>		<b>LINE PRESSURE (LP) SENSOR</b>	
RFE TRANSMISSION .....	225	DESCRIPTION .....	250
<b>4C RETAINER/BULKHEAD</b>		OPERATION .....	250
DISASSEMBLY .....	228	REMOVAL .....	250
ASSEMBLY .....	228	INSTALLATION .....	251
<b>ADAPTER HOUSING SEAL</b>		<b>LOW/REVERSE CLUTCH</b>	
REMOVAL .....	229	DISASSEMBLY .....	251
INSTALLATION .....	229	CLEANING .....	252
<b>BRAKE TRANSMISSION SHIFT INTERLOCK</b>		INSPECTION .....	252
<b>MECHANISM</b>		ASSEMBLY .....	252
DESCRIPTION .....	230	<b>OIL PUMP</b>	
OPERATION .....	230	DESCRIPTION .....	253
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - BRAKE		OPERATION .....	253
TRANSMISSION SHIFT INTERLOCK .....	230	STANDARD PROCEDURE - OIL PUMP	
ADJUSTMENTS - BRAKE TRANSMISSION		VOLUME CHECK .....	254
SHIFT INTERLOCK .....	231	DISASSEMBLY .....	255
<b>FLUID AND FILTER</b>		CLEANING .....	257
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING		INSPECTION .....	257
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - EFFECTS OF		ASSEMBLY .....	257
INCORRECT FLUID LEVEL .....	232	<b>OIL PUMP FRONT SEAL</b>	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - CAUSES OF		REMOVAL .....	258
BURNT FLUID .....	232	INSTALLATION .....	258



**OUTPUT SPEED SENSOR**

DESCRIPTION .....	258
OPERATION .....	258
REMOVAL .....	259
INSTALLATION .....	259

**OVERDRIVE SWITCH**

DESCRIPTION .....	259
OPERATION .....	259

**PARK LOCK CABLE**

REMOVAL .....	259
INSTALLATION .....	260

**PISTONS**

DESCRIPTION .....	261
OPERATION .....	261

**PLANETARY GEARTRAIN**

DESCRIPTION .....	263
OPERATION .....	263
DISASSEMBLY .....	264
CLEANING .....	264
INSPECTION .....	264
ASSEMBLY .....	265

**SHIFT MECHANISM**

DESCRIPTION .....	266
OPERATION .....	266
REMOVAL .....	266
INSTALLATION .....	266

**SOLENOID SWITCH VALVE**

DESCRIPTION .....	268
OPERATION .....	268

**SOLENOIDS**

DESCRIPTION .....	268
-------------------	-----

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 545RFE

### DESCRIPTION

The 545RFE automatic transmission is a sophisticated, multi-range, electronically controlled transmission which combines optimized gear ratios for responsive performance, state of the art efficiency features and low NVH. Other features include driver adaptive shifting and three planetary gear sets to provide wide ratio capability with precise ratio steps for optimum driveability. The three planetary gear sets also make available a unique alternate second gear ratio. The primary 2nd gear ratio fits between 1st and 3rd gears for normal through-gear accelerations. The alternate second gear ratio (2prime) allows smoother 4-2 kickdowns at high speeds to provide 2nd gear passing performance over a wider highway cruising range. An additional overdrive ratio (0.67:1) is also provided for greater fuel economy and less NVH at highway speeds.

OPERATION .....	268
-----------------	-----

**TORQUE CONVERTER**

DESCRIPTION .....	268
OPERATION .....	272
REMOVAL .....	273
INSTALLATION .....	273

**TRANSMISSION CONTROL RELAY**

DESCRIPTION .....	274
OPERATION .....	274

**TRANSMISSION RANGE SENSOR**

DESCRIPTION .....	274
OPERATION .....	274

**TRANSMISSION SOLENOID/TRS ASSEMBLY**

DESCRIPTION .....	275
OPERATION .....	275
REMOVAL .....	276
INSTALLATION .....	276

**TRANSMISSION TEMPERATURE SENSOR**

DESCRIPTION .....	276
OPERATION .....	276

**VALVE BODY**

DESCRIPTION .....	277
OPERATION .....	277
REMOVAL .....	278
DISASSEMBLY .....	279
CLEANING .....	281
INSPECTION .....	282
ASSEMBLY .....	283
INSTALLATION .....	283

The hydraulic portion of the transmission consists of the transmission fluid, fluid passages, hydraulic valves, and various line pressure control components.

The primary mechanical components of the transmission consist of the following:

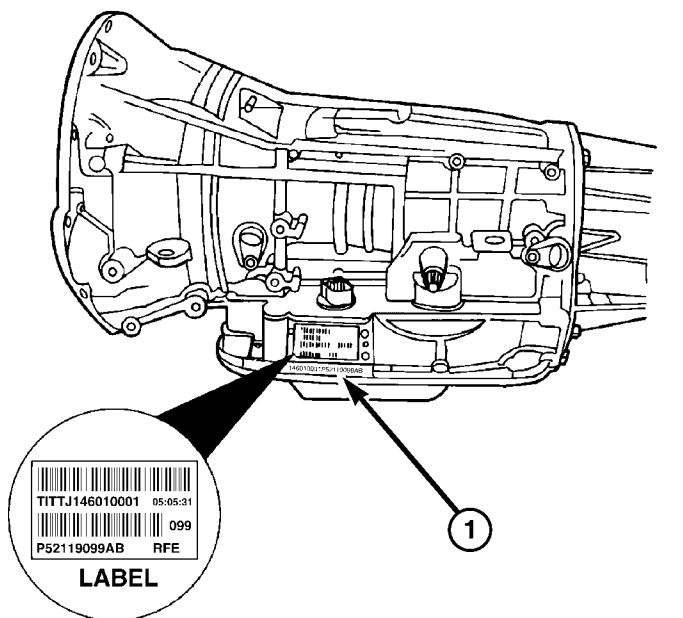
- Three multiple disc input clutches
- Three multiple disc holding clutches
- Five hydraulic accumulators
- Three planetary gear sets
- Dual Stage Hydraulic oil pump
- Valve body
- Solenoid pack

The TCM is the “heart” or “brain” of the electronic control system and relies on information from various direct and indirect inputs (sensors, switches, etc.) to determine driver demand and vehicle operating conditions. With this information, the TCM can calculate and perform timely and quality shifts through various output or control devices (solenoid pack, transmission control relay, etc.).

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 545RFE (Continued)

## TRANSMISSION IDENTIFICATION

Transmission identification numbers are stamped on the left side of the case just above the oil pan sealing surface (Fig. 1). Refer to this information when ordering replacement parts. A label is attached to the transmission case above the stamped numbers. The label gives additional information which may also be necessary for identification purposes.



80af3150

**Fig. 1 Transmission Part And Serial Number Location**

1 - IDENTIFICATION NUMBERS (STAMPED)

## GEAR RATIOS

The 545RFE gear ratios are:

1st .....	3.00:1
2nd .....	1.67:1
2nd Prime .....	1.50:1
3rd .....	1.00:1
4th .....	0.75:1
5th .....	0.67:1
Reverse .....	3.00:1

## OPERATION

The 545RFE offers full electronic control of all automatic up and downshifts, and features real-time adaptive closed-loop shift and pressure control. Electronic shift and torque converter clutch controls help protect the transmission from damage due to high temperatures, which can occur under severe operating conditions. By altering shift schedules, line pressure, and converter clutch control, these controls reduce heat generation and increase transmission cooling.

To help reduce efficiency-robbing parasitic losses, the transmission includes a dual-stage transmission fluid pump with electronic output pressure control. Under most driving conditions, pump output pressure greatly exceeds that which is needed to keep the clutches applied. The 545RFE pump-pressure control system monitors input torque and adjusts the pump pressure accordingly. The primary stage of the pump works continuously; the second stage is bypassed when demand is low. The control system also monitors input and output speed and, if incipient clutch slip is observed, the pressure control solenoid duty cycle is varied, increasing pressure in proportion to demand.

A high-travel torque converter damper assembly allows earlier torque converter clutch engagement to reduce slippage. Needle-type thrust bearings reduce internal friction. The 545RFE is packaged in a one-piece die-cast aluminum case. To reduce NVH, the case has high lateral, vertical and torsional stiffness. It is also designed to maximize the benefit of the structural dust cover that connects the bottom of the bell housing to the engine bedplate, enhancing overall power train stiffness. Dual filters protect the pump and other components. A pump return filter is added to the customary main sump filter. Independent lubrication and cooler circuits assure ample pressure for normal transmission operation even if the cooler is obstructed or the fluid cannot flow due to extremely low temperatures.

The hydraulic control system design (without electronic assist) provides the transmission with PARK, REVERSE, NEUTRAL, SECOND, and THIRD gears, based solely on driver shift lever selection. This design allows the vehicle to be driven (in "limp-in" mode) in the event of a electronic control system failure, or a situation that the Transmission Control Module (TCM) recognizes as potentially damaging to the transmission.

The TCM also performs certain self-diagnostic functions and provides comprehensive information (sensor data, DTC's, etc.) which is helpful in proper diagnosis and repair. This information can be viewed with the DRB scan tool.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

**CAUTION:** Before attempting any repair on a 545RFE automatic transmission, check for Diagnostic Trouble Codes with the DRB® scan tool.

Transmission malfunctions may be caused by these general conditions:

- Poor engine performance
- Improper adjustments

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 545RFE (Continued)

- Hydraulic malfunctions
- Mechanical malfunctions
- Electronic malfunctions

Diagnosis of these problems should always begin by checking the easily accessible variables: fluid level and condition, gearshift cable adjustment. Then perform a road test to determine if the problem has been corrected or if more diagnosis is necessary. If the problem persists after the preliminary tests and corrections are completed, hydraulic pressure checks should be performed.

**DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - PRELIMINARY**

Two basic procedures are required. One procedure for vehicles that are drivable and an alternate procedure for disabled vehicles (will not back up or move forward).

**VEHICLE IS DRIVABLE**

- (1) Check for transmission fault codes using DRB® scan tool.
- (2) Check fluid level and condition.
- (3) Adjust gearshift cable if complaint was based on delayed, erratic, or harsh shifts.
- (4) Road test and note how transmission upshifts, downshifts, and engages.
- (5) Perform hydraulic pressure test if shift problems were noted during road test.
- (6) Perform air-pressure test to check clutch operation.

**VEHICLE IS DISABLED**

- (1) Check fluid level and condition.
- (2) Check for broken or disconnected gearshift cable.

(3) Check for cracked, leaking cooler lines, or loose or missing pressure-port plugs.

(4) Raise and support vehicle on safety stands, start engine, shift transmission into gear, and note following:

(a) If propeller shaft turns but wheels do not, problem is with differential or axle shafts.

(b) If propeller shaft does not turn and transmission is noisy, stop engine. Remove oil pan, and check for debris. If pan is clear, remove transmission and check for damaged driveplate, converter, oil pump, or input shaft.

(c) If propeller shaft does not turn and transmission is not noisy, perform hydraulic-pressure test to determine if problem is hydraulic or mechanical.

**DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - ROAD TESTING**

Before road testing, be sure the fluid level and control cable adjustments have been checked and adjusted if necessary. Verify that all diagnostic trouble codes have been resolved.

Observe engine performance during the road test. A poorly tuned engine will not allow accurate analysis of transmission operation.

Operate the transmission in all gear ranges. Check for shift variations and engine flare which indicates slippage. Note if shifts are harsh, spongy, delayed, early, or if part throttle downshifts are sensitive.

Slippage indicated by engine flare, usually means clutch, overrunning clutch, or line pressure problems.

A slipping clutch can often be determined by comparing which internal units are applied in the various gear ranges. The Clutch Application chart provides a basis for analyzing road test results.

CLUTCH APPLICATION CHART

SLP	UD	OD	R	2C	4C	L/R	OVERRUNNING
P-PARK						ON	
R-REVERSE			ON			ON	
N-NEUTRAL						ON	
D-OVERDRIVE	ON					ON*	ON
FIRST	ON			ON			
SECOND	ON				ON		
SECOND PRIME	ON						
THIRD	ON	ON					
FOURTH		ON			ON		
FIFTH		ON		ON			
LIMP-IN	ON	ON					
2-FIRST	ON					ON*	ON
SECOND	ON			ON			
LIMP-IN	ON			ON			
1-LOW	ON					ON	ON

\*L/R clutch is on only with the output shaft speed below 150 rpm.

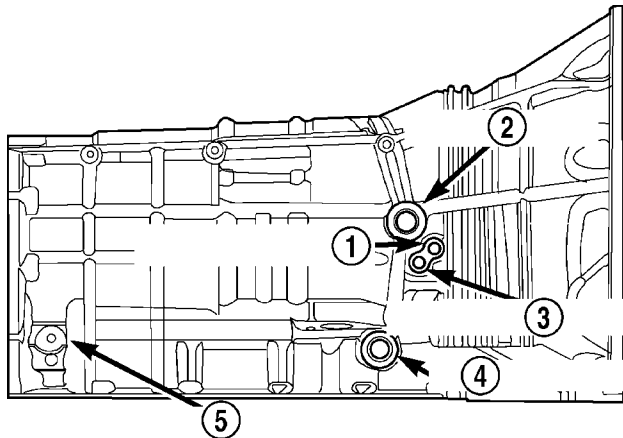
## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 545RFE (Continued)

**DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - HYDRAULIC  
PRESSURE TEST**

An accurate tachometer and pressure test gauges are required. Test Gauge C-3293-SP has a 300 psi range and is used at all locations where pressures exceed 100 psi.

**Pressure Test Port Locations**

Only two pressure ports are supplied on the transmission case. The torque converter clutch apply and release ports are located on the right side of the transmission case (Fig. 2).



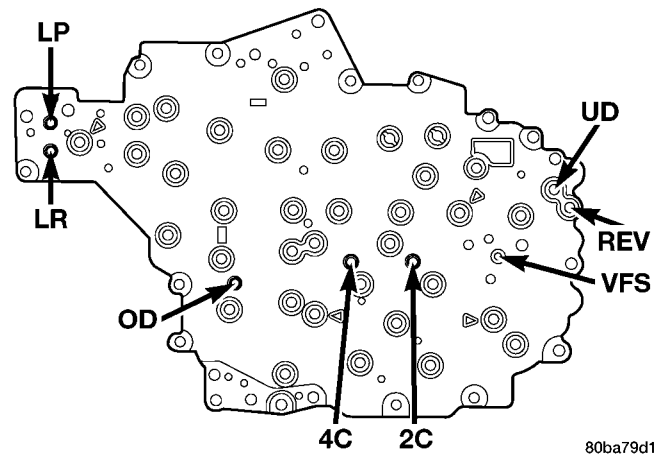
80ba79d0

**Fig. 2 Torque Converter Pressure Locations**

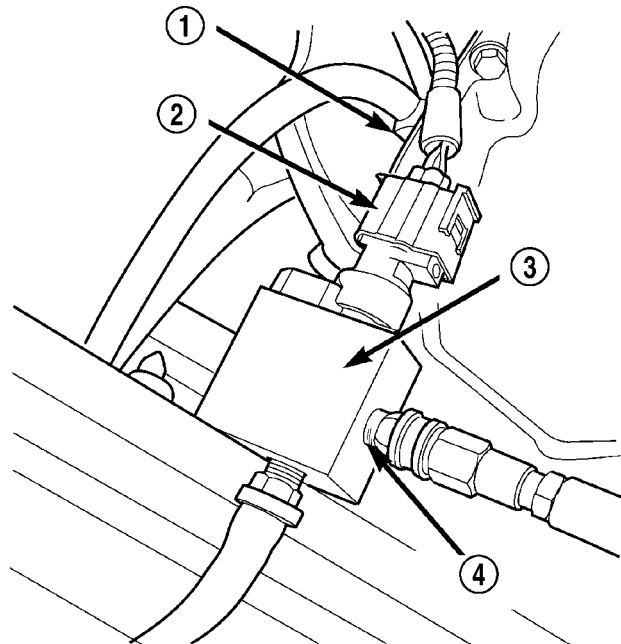
- 1 - TCC RELEASE
- 2 - TO COOLER
- 3 - TCC APPLY
- 4 - FROM COOLER
- 5 - LINE PRESSURE SENSOR

To determine the line pressure, there are two available methods. The DRB® scan tool can be used to read line pressure from the line pressure sensor. The second method is to install Line Pressure Adapter 8259 (Fig. 4) into the transmission case and then install the pressure gauge and the original sensor into the adapter. This will allow a comparison of the DRB® readings and the gauge reading to determine the accuracy of the line pressure sensor. The DRB® line pressure reading should match the gauge reading within  $\pm 10$  psi.

In order to access any other pressure tap locations, the transmission oil pan must be removed, the pressure port plugs removed and Valve Body Pressure Tap Adapter 8258-A (Fig. 5) installed. The extensions supplied with Adapter 8258-A will allow the installation of pressure gauges to the valve body. Refer to (Fig. 3) for correct pressure tap location identification.



80ba79d1

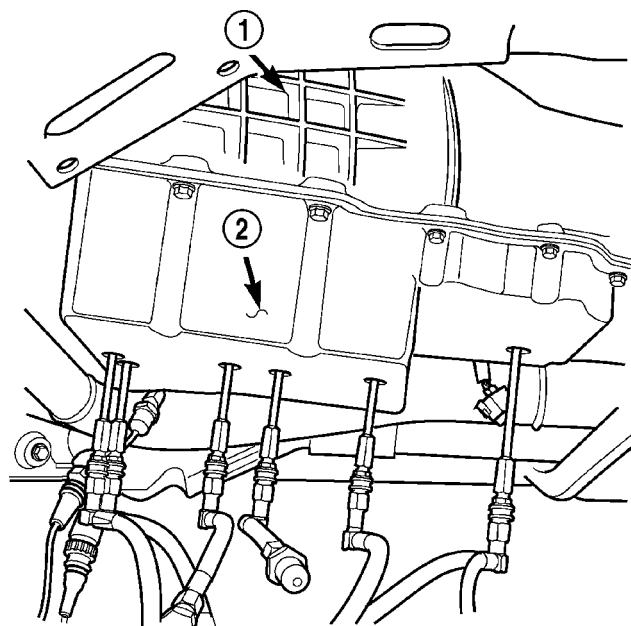
**Fig. 3 Pressure Tap Locations**

80c072fb

**Fig. 4 Line Pressure Adapter 8259**

- 1 - LINE PRESSURE SENSOR PORT
- 2 - LINE PRESSURE SENSOR
- 3 - TOOL 8259
- 4 - PRESSURE TAP

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 545RFE (Continued)



80c072fa

**Fig. 5 Valve Body Pressure Tap Adapter 8258-A**

1 - 545RFE TRANSMISSION  
2 - TOOL 8258-A

**TEST PROCEDURE**

All pressure readings should be taken with the transmission fluid level full, transmission oil at the normal operating temperature, and the engine at 1500 rpm. Check the transmission for proper operation in each gear position that is in question or if a specific element is in question, check the pressure readings in at least two gear positions that employ that element. Refer to the Hydraulic Schematics at the rear of this section to determine the correct pressures for each element in a given gear position.

**NOTE:** The 545RFE utilizes closed loop control of pump line pressure. The pressure readings may therefore vary greatly but should always follow line pressure.

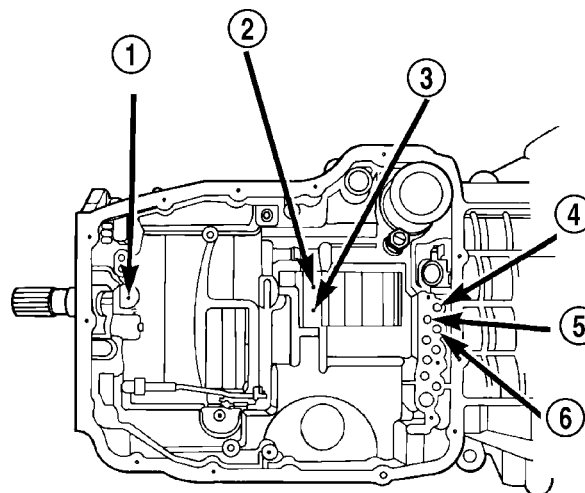
Some common pressures that can be measured to evaluate pump and clutch performance are the upshift/downshift pressures and the garage shift pressures. The upshift/downshift pressure for all shifts except the 4-5 shift is 120 psi. The upshift pressure for the 4-5 shift is 130 psi. The garage shift pressure when performing a N-R shift is 220 psi. The garage shift pressure for the R-N and N-1 shifts is 120 psi.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - AIR CHECKING TRANSMISSION CLUTCH OPERATION

Air-pressure testing can be used to check transmission clutch operation. The test can be conducted with

the transmission either in the vehicle or on the work bench, as a final check.

Air-pressure testing requires that the oil pan and valve body be removed from the transmission. The clutch apply passages are shown (Fig. 6).



80b9a594

**Fig. 6 Air Pressure Test Passages**

- 1 - LOW REVERSE CLUTCH
- 2 - 4TH CLUTCH
- 3 - 2ND CLUTCH
- 4 - OVERDRIVE CLUTCH
- 5 - UNDERDRIVE CLUTCH
- 6 - REVERSE CLUTCH

**NOTE:** The air supply which is used must be free of moisture and dirt. Use a pressure of 30 psi to test clutch operation.

Apply air pressure at each port. If the clutch is functioning, a soft thump will be heard as the clutch is applied. The clutch application can also be felt by touching the appropriate element while applying air pressure. As the air pressure is released, the clutch should also release.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - CONVERTER HOUSING FLUID LEAK

When diagnosing converter housing fluid leaks, two items must be established before repair.

- (1) Verify that a leak condition actually exists.
- (2) Determined the true source of the leak.

Some suspected converter housing fluid leaks may not be leaks at all. They may only be the result of residual fluid in the converter housing, or excess fluid spilled during factory fill or fill after repair. Converter housing leaks have several potential sources. Through careful observation, a leak source can be identified before removing the transmission for repair. Torque converter seal leaks tend to move along the drive hub and onto the rear of the con-



## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 545RFE (Continued)

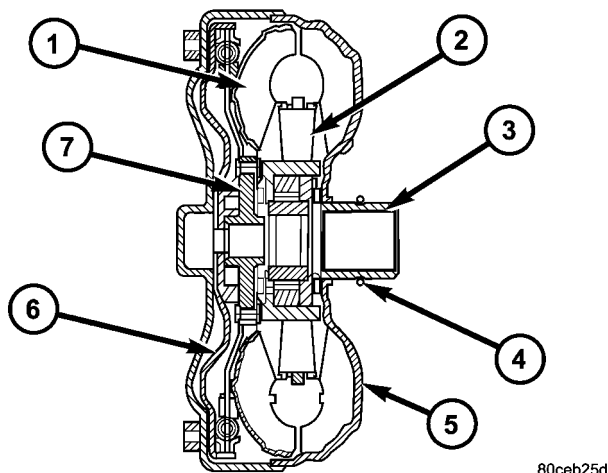
verter. Pump cover seal tend to run down the cover and the inside surface of the bellhousing.

Some leaks, or suspected leaks, may be particularly difficult to locate. If necessary, a Mopar® approved dye may be used to locate a leak.

**TORQUE CONVERTER LEAK POINTS**

Possible sources of converter leaks are:

- (1) Leaks at the weld joint around the outside diameter weld (Fig. 7).
- (2) Leaks at the converter hub weld (Fig. 7).



80ceb25d

**Fig. 7 Torque Converter Assembly**

- 1 - TURBINE ASSEMBLY
- 2 - STATOR
- 3 - CONVERTER HUB
- 4 - O-RING
- 5 - IMPELLER ASSEMBLY
- 6 - CONVERTER CLUTCH PISTON
- 7 - TURBINE HUB

**STANDARD PROCEDURE - ALUMINUM THREAD REPAIR**

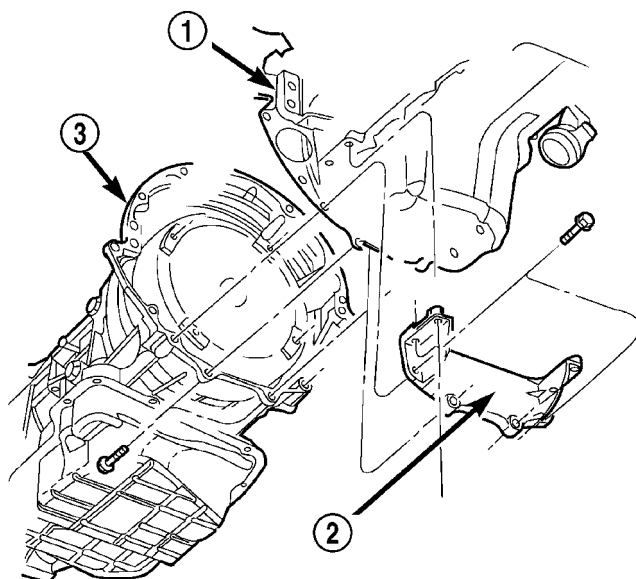
Damaged or worn threads in the aluminum transmission case and valve body can be repaired by the use of Heli-Coils™, or equivalent. This repair consists of drilling out the worn-out damaged threads. Then tap the hole with a special Heli-Coil™ tap, or equivalent, and installing a Heli-Coil™ insert, or equivalent, into the hole. This brings the hole back to its original thread size.

Heli-Coil™, or equivalent, tools and inserts are readily available from most automotive parts suppliers.

**REMOVAL**

**CAUTION:** The transmission and torque converter must be removed as an assembly to avoid component damage. The converter driveplate, converter hub o-ring, or oil seal can be damaged if the converter is left attached to the driveplate during removal. Be sure to remove the transmission and converter as an assembly.

- (1) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (2) Raise and support the vehicle
- (3) Mark propeller shaft and axle yokes for assembly alignment.
- (4) Remove the rear propeller shaft
- (5) Remove the front propeller shaft.
- (6) Remove the engine to transmission collar (Fig. 8).



80ba79d2

**Fig. 8 Transmission Collar**

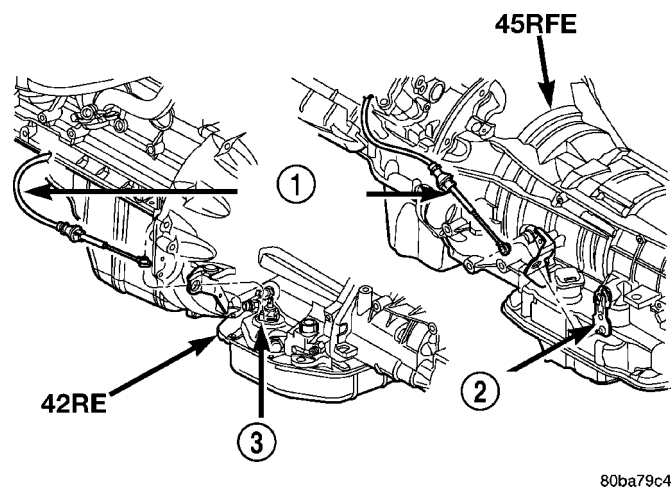
- 1 - ENGINE
- 2 - ENGINE TO TRANSMISSION COLLAR
- 3 - TRANSMISSION

- (7) Remove the exhaust support bracket from the rear of the transmission.
- (8) Disconnect and lower or remove any necessary exhaust components.
- (9) Remove the starter motor.
- (10) Rotate crankshaft in clockwise direction until converter bolts are accessible. Then remove bolts one at a time. Rotate crankshaft with socket wrench on dampener bolt.
- (11) Disconnect wires from solenoid and pressure switch assembly, input and output speed sensors, and line pressure sensor.



## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 545RFE (Continued)

(12) Disconnect gearshift cable from transmission manual valve lever (Fig. 9).

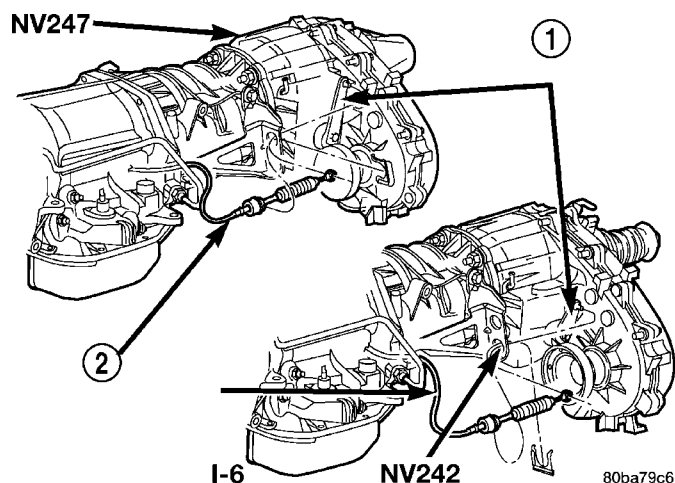


**Fig. 9 Transmission Shift Cable**

- 1 - SHIFT CABLE
- 2 - MANUAL LEVER
- 3 - MANUAL LEVER

(13) Disconnect transfer case shift cable from the transfer case shift lever (Fig. 10).

(14) Remove the clip securing the transfer case shift cable into the cable support bracket.



**Fig. 10 Transfer Case Shift Cable**

- 1 - TRANSFER CASE SHIFT LEVER
- 2 - TRANSFER CASE SHIFT CABLE

(15) Disconnect transmission fluid cooler lines at transmission fittings and clips.

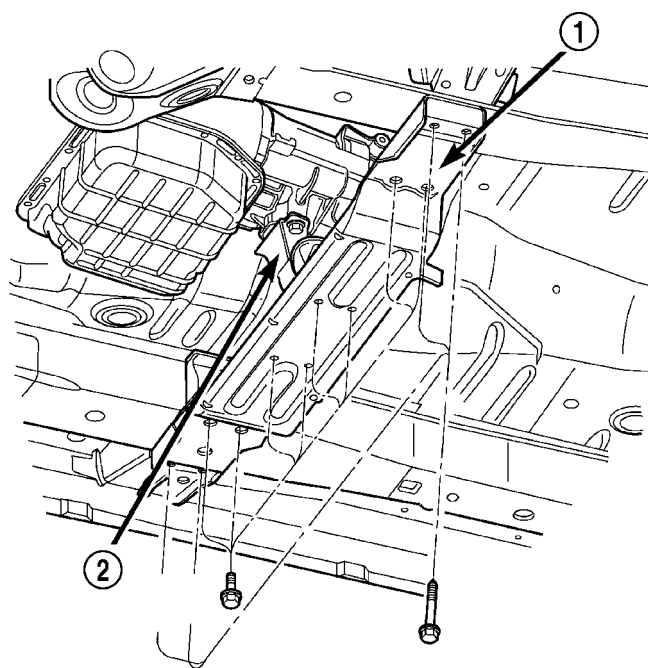
(16) Disconnect the transmission vent hose from the transmission.

(17) Support rear of engine with safety stand or jack.

(18) Raise transmission slightly with service jack to relieve load on crossmember and supports.

(19) Remove bolts securing rear support and cushion to transmission and crossmember (Fig. 11).

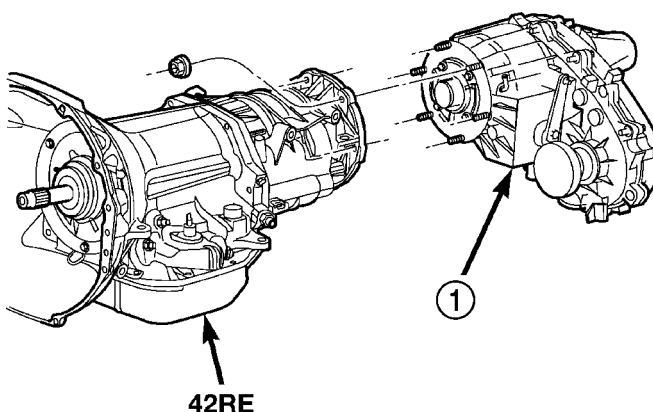
(20) Remove bolts attaching crossmember to frame and remove crossmember.



**Fig. 11 Rear Transmission Crossmember**

- 1 - CROSSMEMBER
- 2 - REAR TRANSMISSION MOUNT

(21) Remove transfer case (Fig. 12) and (Fig. 13).



**Fig. 12 Remove NV247 Transfer Case**

- 1 - NV247 TRANSFER CASE

(22) Remove all remaining converter housing bolts.

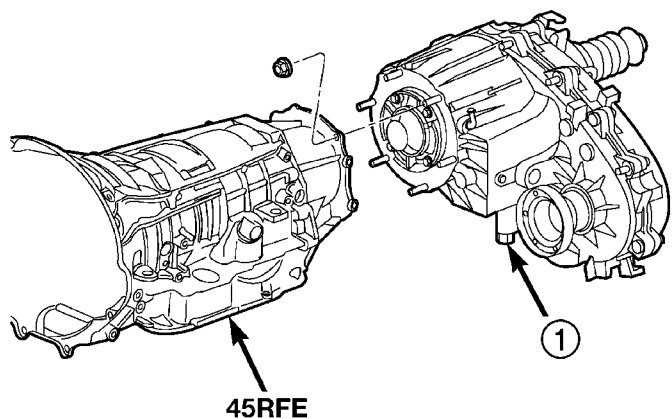
(23) Carefully work transmission and torque converter assembly rearward off engine block dowels.

(24) Hold torque converter in place during transmission removal.

(25) Lower transmission and remove assembly from under the vehicle.

(26) To remove torque converter, carefully slide torque converter out of the transmission.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 545RFE (Continued)



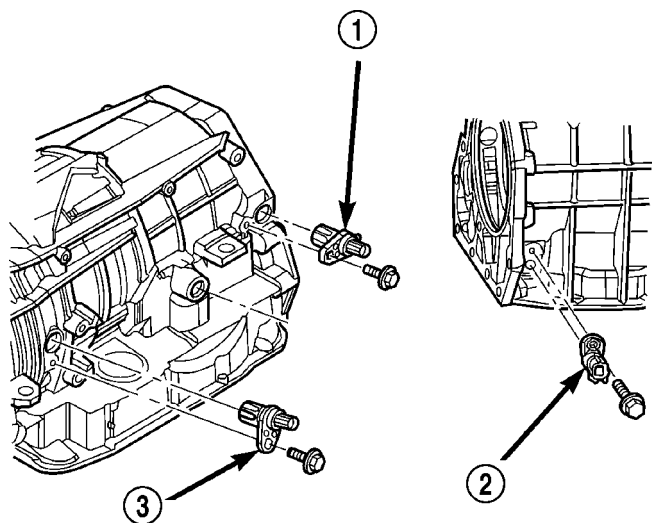
80ba79c8

**Fig. 13 Remove NV242 Transfer Case**

1 - NV242 TRANSFER CASE

**DISASSEMBLY**

- (1) Drain fluid from transmission.
- (2) Clean exterior of transmission with suitable solvent or pressure washer.
- (3) Remove the torque converter from the transmission.
- (4) Remove the manual shift lever from the transmission.
- (5) Remove the input, output, and line pressure sensors from the transmission case (Fig. 14).



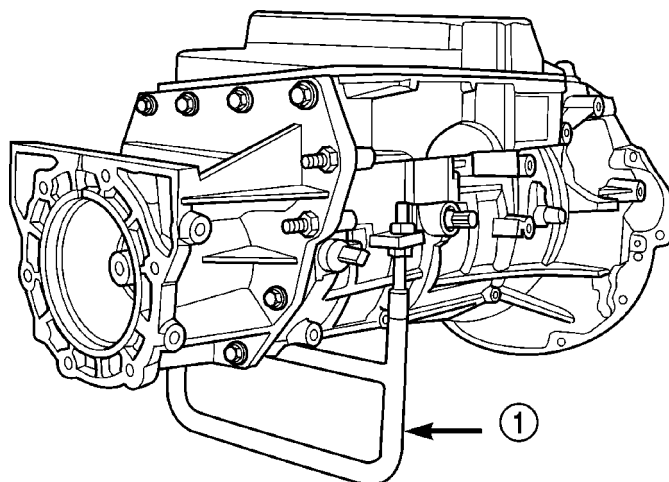
80c07350

**Fig. 14 Remove Input, Output, and Line Pressure Sensors**

- 1 - OUTPUT SPEED SENSOR
- 2 - LINE PRESSURE SENSOR
- 3 - INPUT SPEED SENSOR

(6) Inspect the ends of the sensors for debris, which may indicate the nature of the transmission failure.

(7) Install Support Stand 8257 onto the transmission case (Fig. 15).

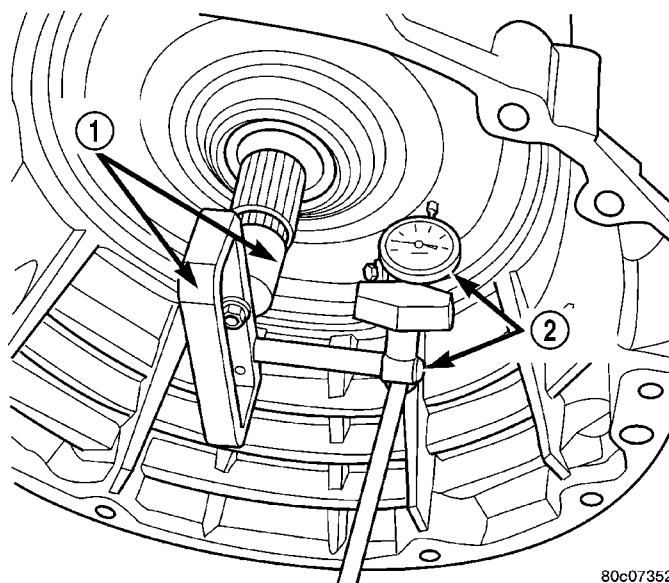


80c07351

**Fig. 15 Install Support Stand - Tool 8257**

1 - TOOL 8257

- (8) Using Adapter 8266-1 from End-Play Tool Set 8266 and Dial Indicator C-3339, measure and record the input shaft end-play (Fig. 16).



80c07352

**Fig. 16 Measure Input Shaft End Play**

- 1 - TOOL 8266
- 2 - TOOL C-3339

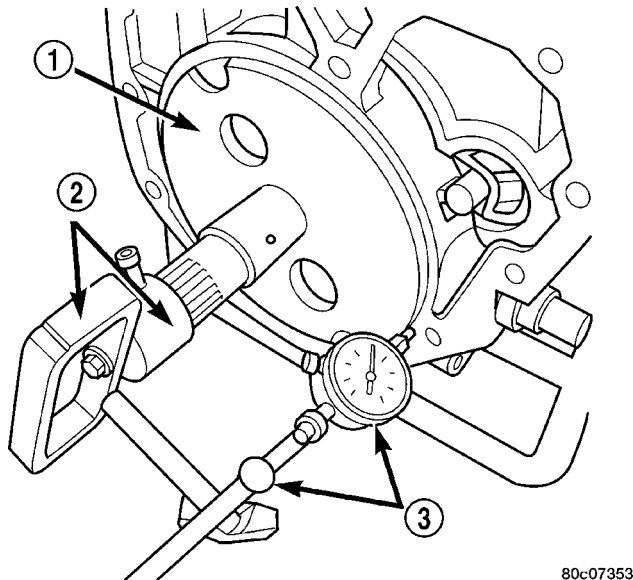
**NOTE:** When measuring the input shaft end-play, two "stops" will be felt. When the input shaft is pushed inward and the dial indicator zeroed, the first "stop" felt when the input shaft is pulled outward is the movement of the input shaft in the input clutch housing hub. This value should not be included in the end-play measured value and therefore must be recorded and subtracted from the dial indicator reading.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 545RFE (Continued)

(9) Remove the bolts holding the transmission extension/adaptor housing to the transmission case.

(10) Remove the extension/adaptor housing from the transmission case.

(11) Using Alignment Plate 8261, Adapter 8266-17 from End-Play Tool Set 8266 and Dial Indicator C-3339, measure and record the output shaft end-play (Fig. 17).



80c07353

**Fig. 17 Measure Output Shaft End Play**

- 1 - TOOL 8261
- 2 - TOOL 8266
- 3 - TOOL C-3339

(12) Remove the bolts holding the transmission oil pan to the transmission case.

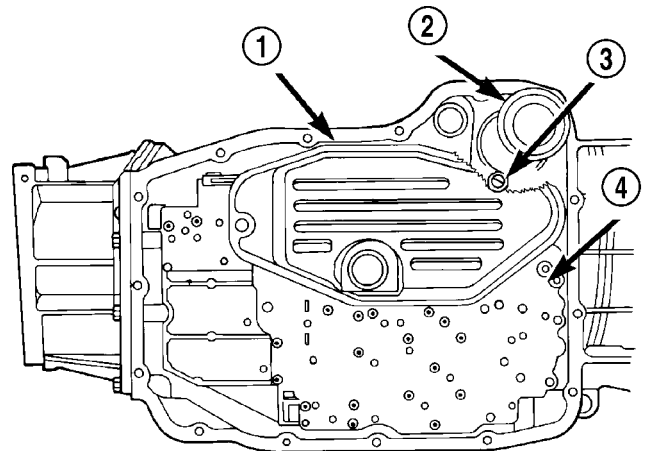
(13) Remove the transmission oil pan from the transmission case.

(14) Remove the primary oil filter and the oil cooler return filter (Fig. 18).

(15) Remove the cooler return filter bypass valve.

(16) Remove the bolts holding the valve body to the transmission case (Fig. 19).

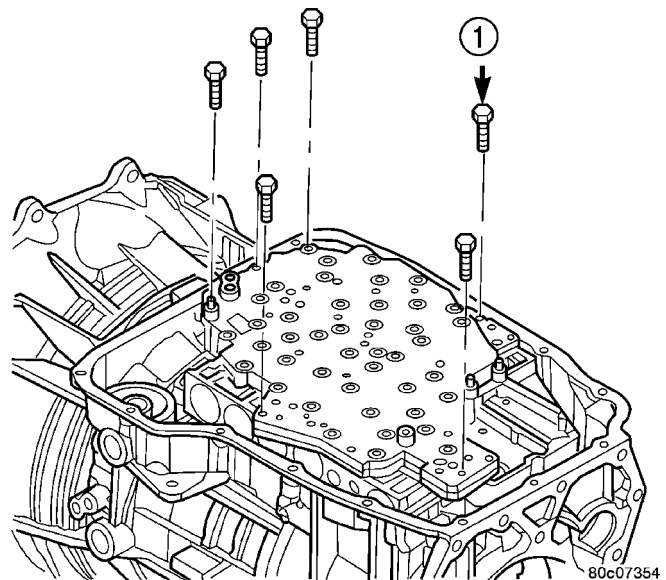
(17) Remove the valve body from the transmission case.



80b9a595

**Fig. 18 Remove Primary Oil and Cooler Filters**

- 1 - PRIMARY OIL FILTER
- 2 - COOLER RETURN FILTER
- 3 - COOLER RETURN FILTER BYPASS VALVE
- 4 - VALVE BODY



80c07354

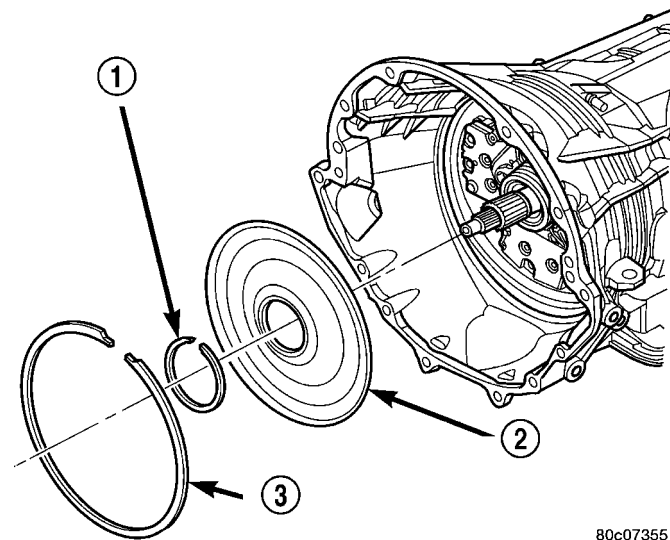
**Fig. 19 Remove Valve Body Assembly**

- 1 - VALVE BODY TO CASE BOLT (6)

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 545RFE (Continued)

(18) Remove the outer snap-ring securing the transmission front cover into the transmission case (Fig. 20).

(19) Remove the inner snap-ring securing the transmission front cover to the oil pump (Fig. 20).



**Fig. 20 Remove Transmission Front Cover**

- 1 - INNER SNAP-RING
- 2 - TRANSMISSION COVER
- 3 - OUTER SNAP-RING

(20) Reaching through a case opening in the valve body area with a long blunted tool, remove the transmission front cover from the transmission case.

(21) Remove the bolts holding the oil pump into the transmission case (Fig. 21).

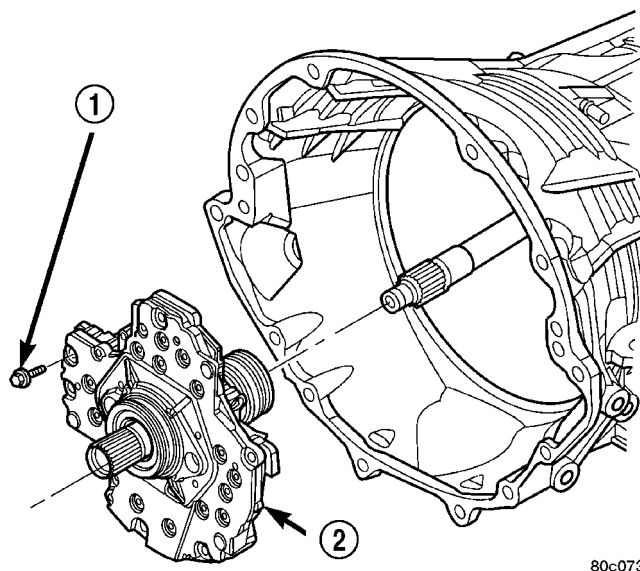
(22) Remove the oil pump. Hold inward on the input shaft to prevent pulling the input clutch assembly with the oil pump (Fig. 21).

**NOTE:** If the input shaft is not held during oil pump removal, the input clutch assembly will attempt to move forward with the oil pump and the numbers 2, 3, or 4 bearings inside the input clutch assembly may become dislodged.

(23) Remove the number 1 bearing from the input clutch assembly (Fig. 22).

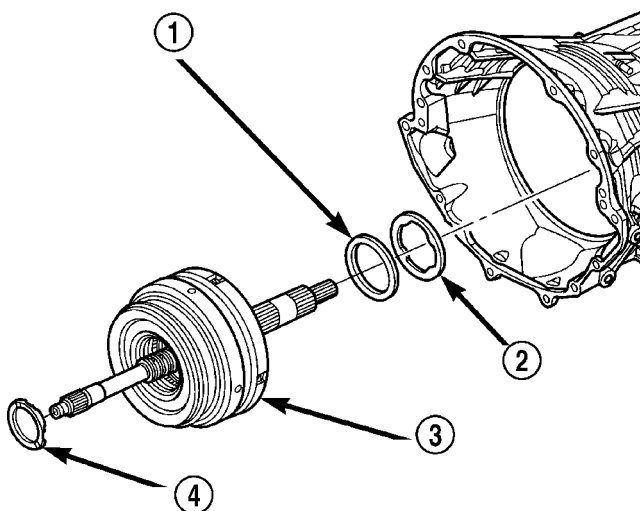
(24) Remove the input clutch assembly from the transmission case (Fig. 22).

(25) Remove the number 5 bearing and selective thrust plate from the input clutch assembly (Fig. 22), or the 4C clutch retainer/bulkhead.



**Fig. 21 Remove Oil Pump**

- 1 - OIL PUMP TO CASE BOLT (6)
- 2 - OIL PUMP



**Fig. 22 Remove Input Clutch Assembly**

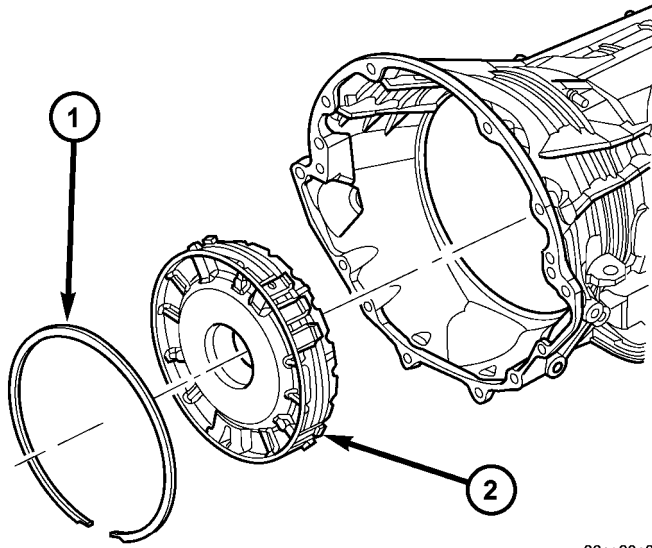
- 1 - BEARING NUMBER 5
- 2 - THRUST PLATE (SELECT)
- 3 - INPUT CLUTCH ASSEMBLY
- 4 - BEARING NUMBER 1



## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 545RFE (Continued)

(26) Remove the 4C clutch retainer/bulkhead tapered snap-ring from the transmission case (Fig. 23).

(27) Remove the 4C clutch retainer/bulkhead from the transmission case (Fig. 23).



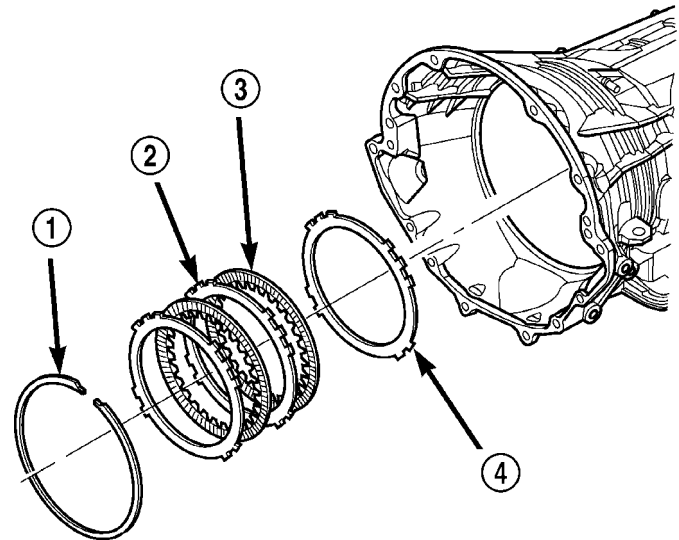
80ce60a3

**Fig. 23 Remove 4C Clutch Retainer/Bulkhead**

- 1 - SNAP-RING  
2 - 4C CLUTCH RETAINER/BULKHEAD

(28) Remove the front 2C clutch pack snap-ring from the transmission case (Fig. 24).

(29) Remove the 2C clutch pack from the transmission case (Fig. 24).



80c07359

**Fig. 24 Remove 2C Clutch Pack**

- 1 - SNAP-RING  
2 - PLATE  
3 - DISC  
4 - REACTION PLATE

(30) Remove the rear selective plate and number 6 bearing from the reaction annulus (Fig. 25).

(31) Remove the reaction annulus from the reaction planetary carrier (Fig. 25).

(32) Remove the number 7 bearing (Fig. 25).

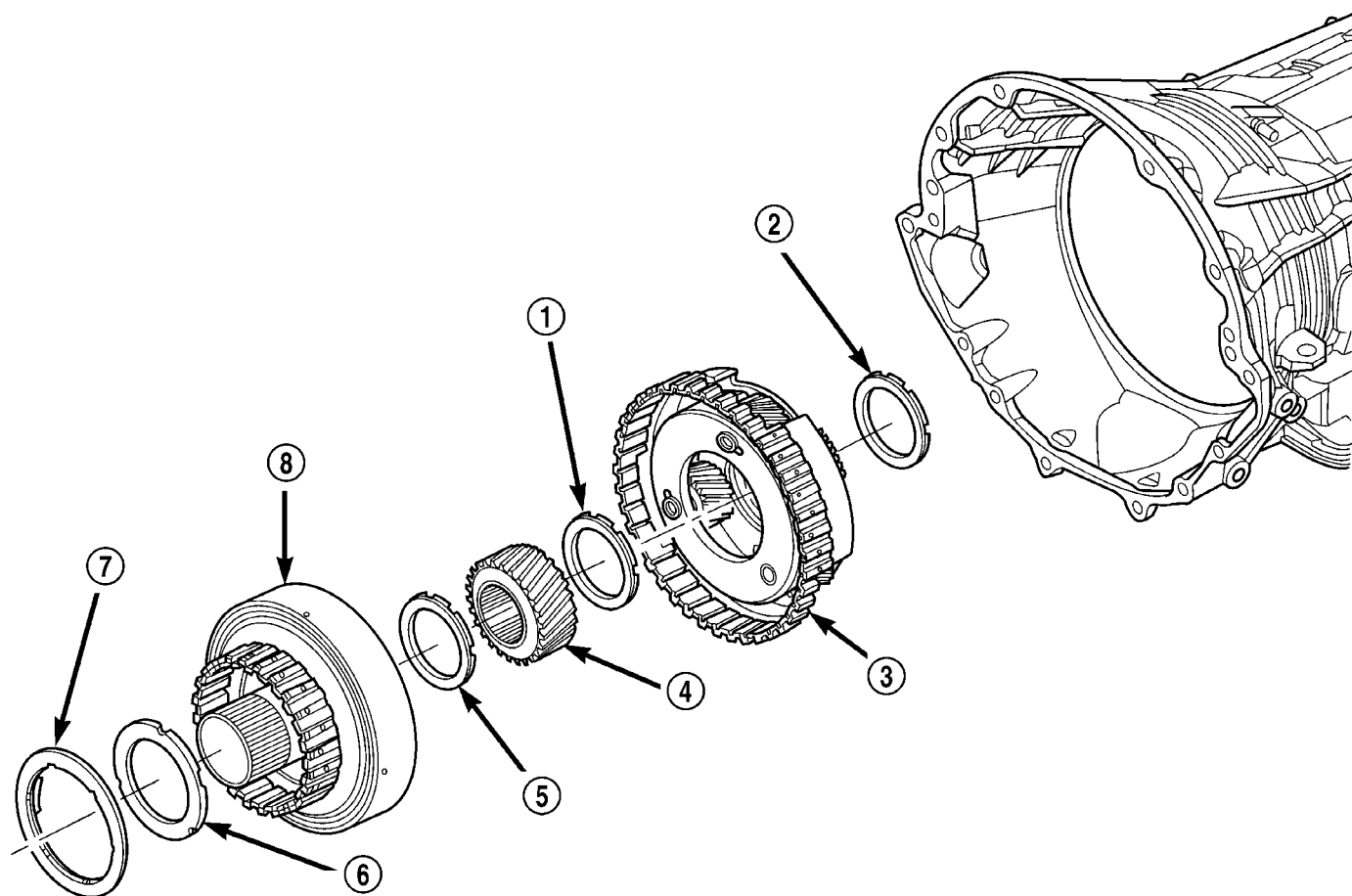
(33) Remove the reaction sun gear (Fig. 25).

(34) Remove the number 8 bearing from the reaction planetary carrier (Fig. 25).

(35) Remove the reaction planetary carrier (Fig. 25). Note that this planetary gear set has three pinion gears.

(36) Remove the number 9 bearing from the reverse planetary gear set (Fig. 25).

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 545RFE (Continued)



80c07031

**Fig. 25 Remove Reaction Annulus and Carrier**

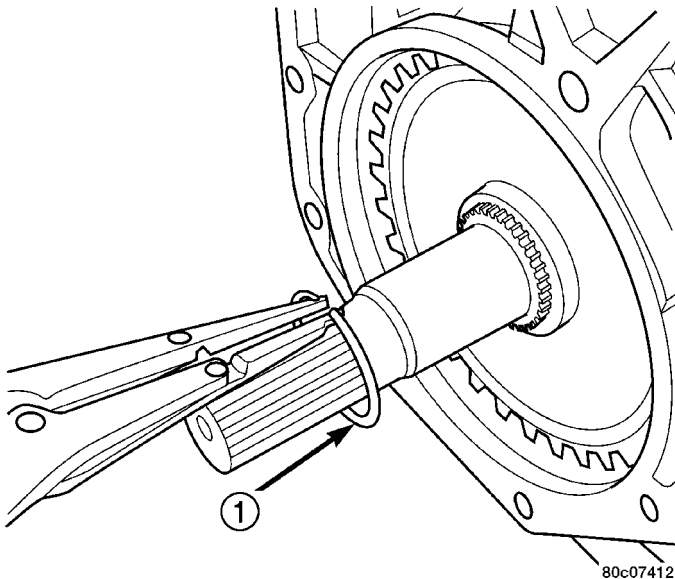
- 1 - BEARING NUMBER 8
- 2 - BEARING NUMBER 9
- 3 - REACTION PLANETARY CARRIER
- 4 - REACTION SUN GEAR

- 5 - BEARING NUMBER 7
- 6 - THRUST PLATE (SELECT)
- 7 - BEARING NUMBER 6
- 8 - REACTION ANNULUS



## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 545RFE (Continued)

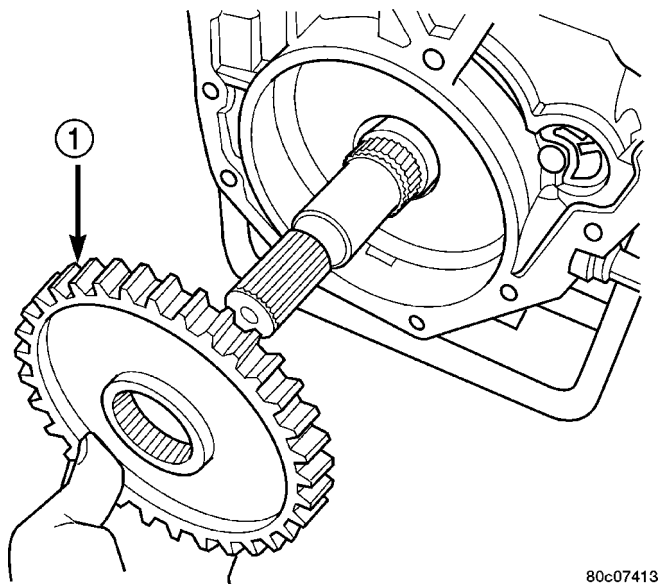
(37) Remove the snap-ring holding the park sprag gear onto the output shaft (Fig. 26).



**Fig. 26 Remove Park Sprag Snap-Ring**

1 - SNAP-RING

(38) Remove the park sprag gear from the output shaft (Fig. 27).

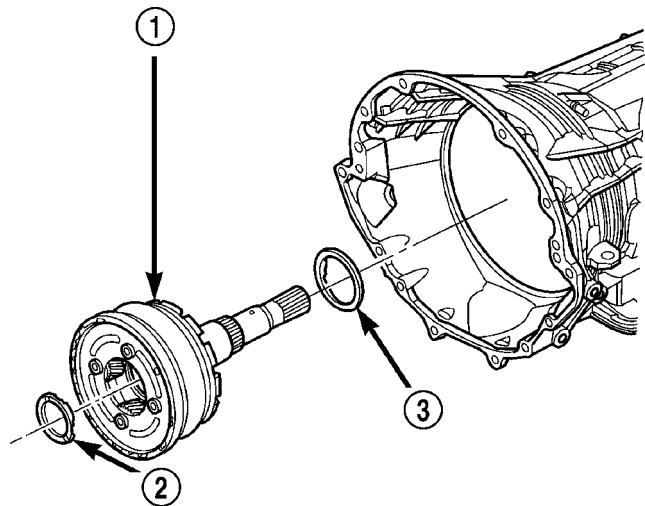


**Fig. 27 Remove Park Sprag Gear**

1 - PARK SPRAG GEAR

(39) Remove the input/reverse planetary assembly (Fig. 28).

(40) Remove the number 12 bearing from the input/reverse planetary assembly (Fig. 28).



**Fig. 28 Remove Input/Reverse Planetary Assembly**

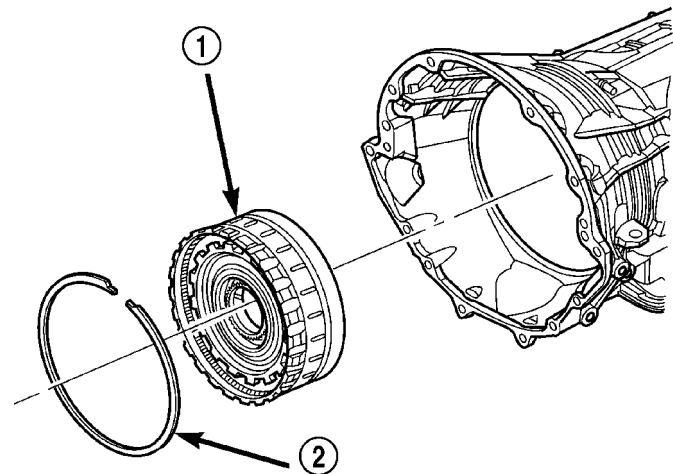
1 - INPUT/REVERSE PLANETARY ASSEMBLY

2 - BEARING NUMBER 9

3 - BEARING NUMBER 12

(41) Remove the snap-ring holding the low/reverse clutch retainer into the transmission case (Fig. 29).

(42) Remove the low/reverse clutch retainer from the transmission case (Fig. 29).



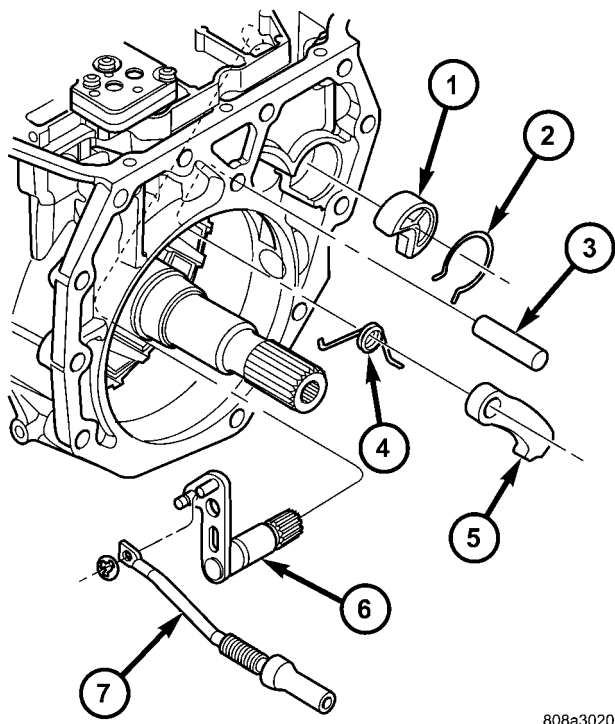
**Fig. 29 Remove Low/Reverse Clutch Retainer**

1 - LOW/REVERSE OVERRUNNING CLUTCH ASSEMBLY

2 - SNAP-RING

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 545RFE (Continued)

- (43) Remove the park pawl rod and e-clip (Fig. 30).
- (44) Remove the park pawl rod guide snap-ring (Fig. 30).
- (45) Remove the park pawl rod guide (Fig. 30).
- (46) Remove the park pawl pivot shaft, park pawl, and spring (Fig. 30).
- (47) Remove the manual selector shaft (Fig. 30).



808a3020

**Fig. 30 Manual Shaft/Park Lock Components**

- 1 - GUIDE
- 2 - SNAP-RING
- 3 - SHAFT
- 4 - SPRING
- 5 - PARK PAWL
- 6 - MANUAL SHAFT/LEVER
- 7 - PARK ROD

- (48) Remove the manual selector shaft seal.
- (49) Remove the dipstick tube seal.

**CLEANING**

The use of crocus cloth is permissible where necessary, providing it is used carefully. When used on shafts, or valves, use extreme care to avoid rounding off sharp edges. Sharp edges are vital as they prevent foreign matter from getting between the valve and valve bore.

Do not reuse oil seals, gaskets, seal rings, or O-rings during overhaul. Replace these parts as a matter of course. Also do not reuse snap rings or E-clips that are bent or distorted. Replace these parts as well.

Lubricate transmission parts with Mopar® ATF +4, Automatic Transmission Fluid, during overhaul and assembly. Use petroleum jelly, Mopar® Door Ease, or Ru-Glyde to prelubricate seals, O-rings, and thrust washers. Petroleum jelly can also be used to hold parts in place during reassembly.

Clean the case in a solvent tank. Flush the case bores and fluid passages thoroughly with solvent. Dry the case and all fluid passages with compressed air. Be sure all solvent is removed from the case and that all fluid passages are clear.

**NOTE:** Do not use shop towels or rags to dry the case (or any other transmission component) unless they are made from lint-free materials. Lint will stick to case surfaces and transmission components and circulate throughout the transmission after assembly. A sufficient quantity of lint can block fluid passages and interfere with valve body operation.

**INSPECTION**

Inspect the case for cracks, porous spots, worn bores, or damaged threads. Damaged threads can be repaired with Helicoil thread inserts. However, the case will have to be replaced if it exhibits any type of damage or wear.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 545RFE (Continued)

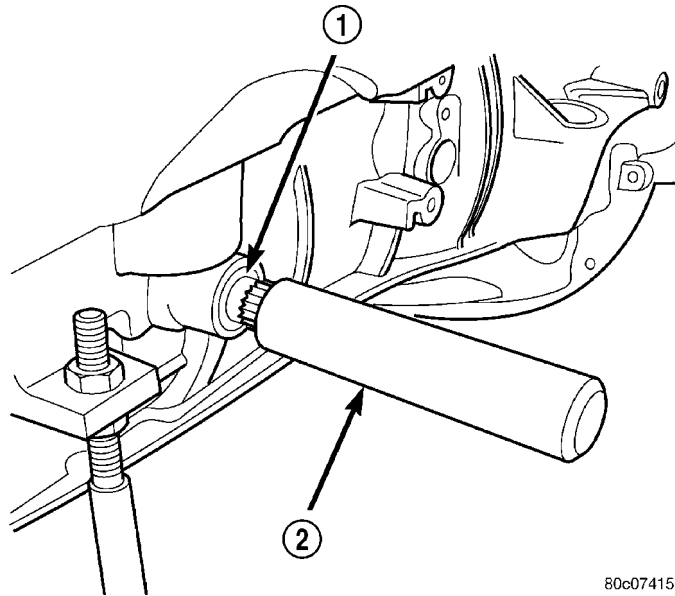
**ASSEMBLY**

(1) Clean and inspect all components. Replace any components which show evidence of excessive wear or scoring.

(2) Install the cooler filter bypass valve.

(3) Torque the bypass valve to specification. The valve uses a tapered pipe thread and excessive torque can damage the transmission case. Tighten the cooler filter bypass valve to 4.5 N·m (40 in.lbs.).

(4) Install a new selector shaft seal using Seal Installer 8253 (Fig. 31).



80c07415

**Fig. 31 Install Selector Shaft**

- 1 - SEAL
- 2 - TOOL 8253

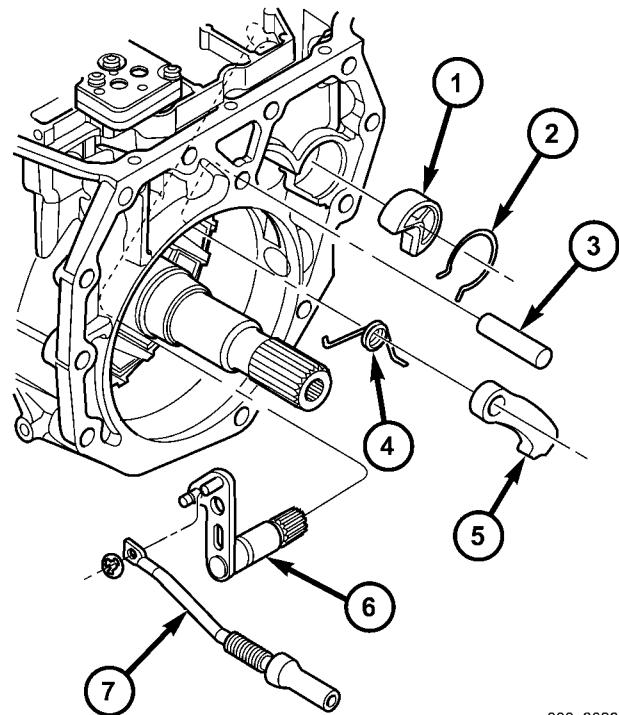
(5) Install the manual selector shaft and retaining screw. Tighten the manual selector shaft retaining screw to 28 N·m (250 in.lbs.).

(6) Install the park pawl, spring, and shaft (Fig. 32).

(7) Install the park rod and e-clip (Fig. 32).

(8) Install the park rod guide and snap-ring (Fig. 32).

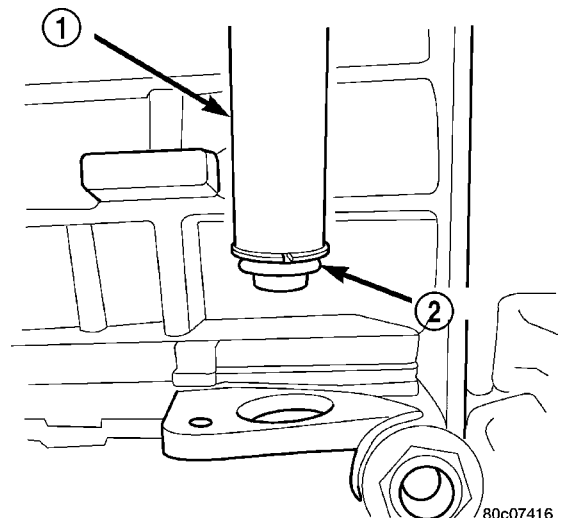
(9) Install a new dipstick tube seal using Seal Installer 8254 (Fig. 33).



808a3020

**Fig. 32 Manual Shaft/Park Lock Components**

- 1 - GUIDE
- 2 - SNAP-RING
- 3 - SHAFT
- 4 - SPRING
- 5 - PARK PAWL
- 6 - MANUAL SHAFT/LEVER
- 7 - PARK ROD



80c07416

**Fig. 33 Install Dipstick Tube Seal Using Tool 8254**

- 1 - TOOL 8254
- 2 - SEAL

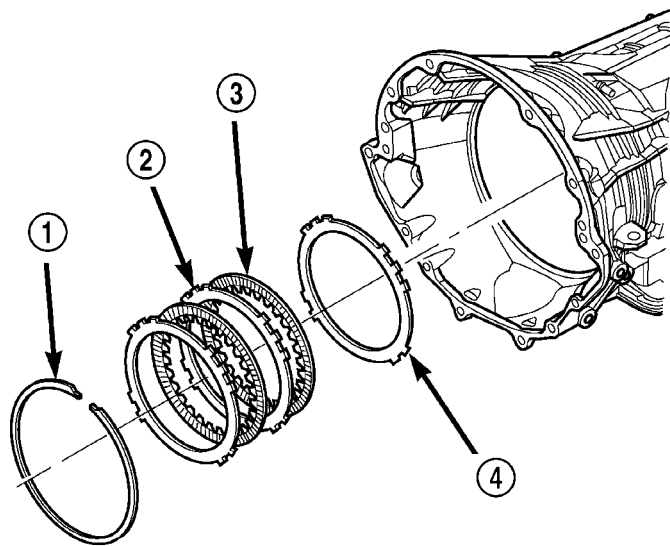
## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 545RFE (Continued)

**NOTE:** Before final assembly of transmission centerline, the 2C/4C clutch components should be installed into position and measured as follows:

(10) Install the 2C reaction plate into the transmission case (Fig. 34).

(11) Install the 2C clutch pack into the transmission case (Fig. 34).

(12) Install the flat 2C clutch snap-ring into the transmission case (Fig. 34).



**Fig. 34 Install 2C Clutch Pack**

80c07359

- 1 - SNAP-RING
- 2 - PLATE
- 3 - DISC
- 4 - REACTION PLATE

(13) Install the 4C retainer/bulkhead into the transmission case. Make sure that the oil feed holes are pointing toward the valve body area.

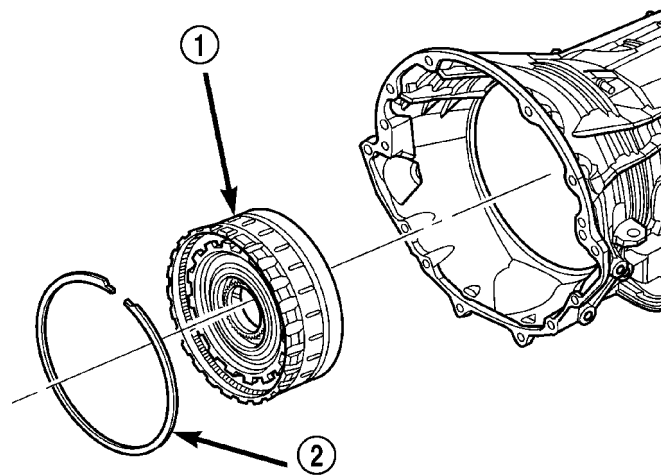
(14) Install the 4C retainer/bulkhead tapered snap-ring into the transmission case. Make sure that the open ends of the snap-ring are located in the case opening toward the valve body area.

(15) Using a feeler gauge through the opening in the rear of the transmission case, measure the 2C clutch pack clearance between the 2C reaction plate and the transmission case at four different points. The average of these measurements is the 2C clutch pack clearance. The correct clutch clearance is 0.455-1.335 mm (0.018-0.053 in.). The reaction plate is not selective. If the clutch pack clearance is not within specification, the reaction plate, all the friction discs, and steels must be replaced.

(16) Remove the 4C retainer/bulkhead and all of the 2C clutch components from the transmission case.

(17) Install the low/reverse clutch assembly (Fig. 35). Make sure that the oil feed hole points toward the valve body area and that the bleed orifice is aligned with the notch in the rear of the transmission case.

(18) Install the snap-ring to hold the low/reverse clutch retainer into the transmission case (Fig. 35). The snap-ring is tapered and must be installed with the tapered side forward. Once installed, verify that the snap-ring is fully seated in the snap-ring groove.



80c07411

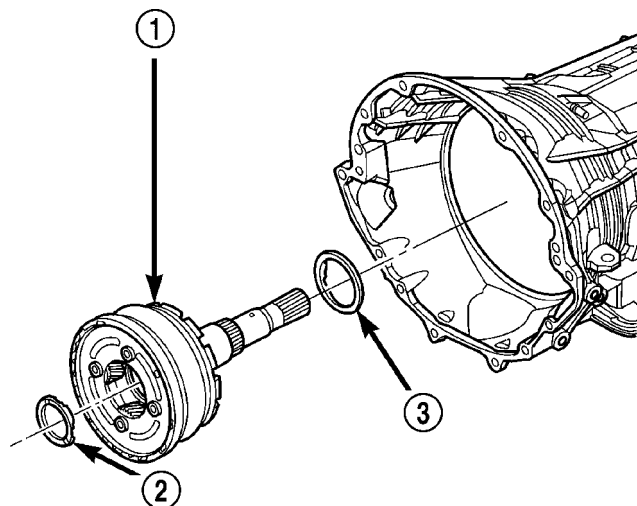
**Fig. 35 Install Low/Reverse Clutch Retainer**

- 1 - LOW/REVERSE OVERRUNNING CLUTCH ASSEMBLY
- 2 - SNAP-RING

(19) Air check the low/reverse clutch and verify correct overrunning clutch operation.

(20) Install the number 12 bearing over the output shaft and against the rear planetary gear set. The flat side of the bearing goes toward the planetary gearset and the raised tabs on the inner race should face the rear of the transmission.

(21) Install the reverse/input planetary assembly through the low/reverse clutch assembly (Fig. 36).



80c07410

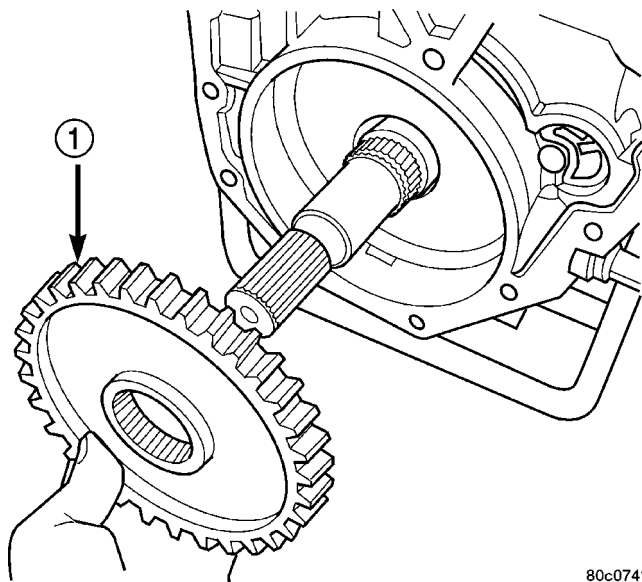
**Fig. 36 Install Input/Reverse Planetary Assembly**

- 1 - INPUT/REVERSE PLANETARY ASSEMBLY
- 2 - BEARING NUMBER 9
- 3 - BEARING NUMBER 12

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 545RFE (Continued)

(22) Install the park sprag onto the output shaft (Fig. 37).

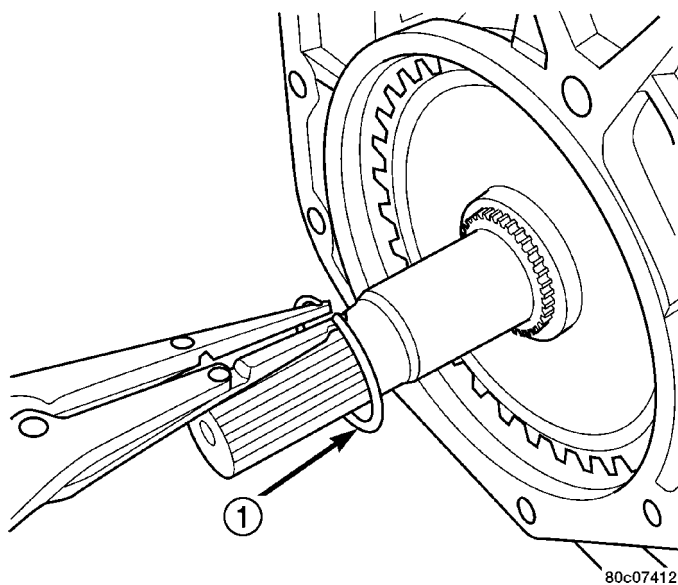
(23) Install the snap-ring to hold the park sprag onto the output shaft (Fig. 38).



80c07413

**Fig. 37 Install Park Sprag Gear**

1 - PARK SPRAG GEAR



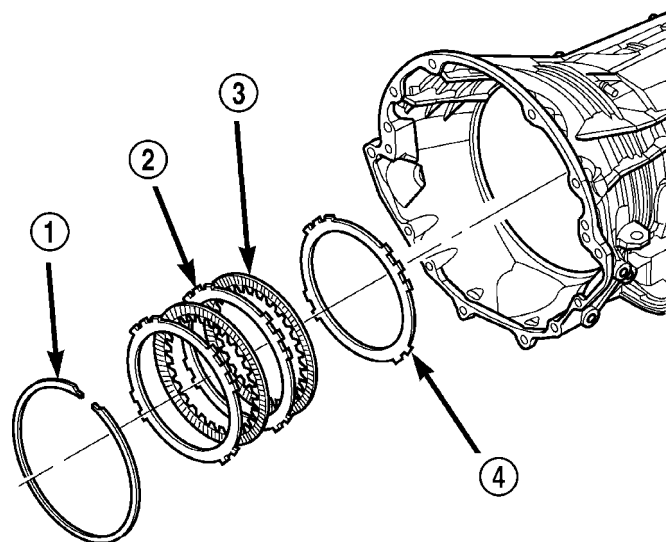
80c07412

**Fig. 38 Install Park Sprag Snap-Ring**

1 - SNAP-RING

(24) Install the 2C reaction plate into the transmission case (Fig. 39).

(25) Install the 2C clutch pack into the transmission case (Fig. 39).



80c07359

**Fig. 39 Install 2C Clutch Pack**

1 - SNAP-RING  
2 - PLATE  
3 - DISC  
4 - REACTION PLATE

(26) Install the number 8 bearing inside the reaction carrier with the outer race against the reaction planetary carrier.

(27) Install the reaction planetary gear set and the number 9 bearing, with the inner race against the reaction planetary carrier, into the transmission case (Fig. 40).

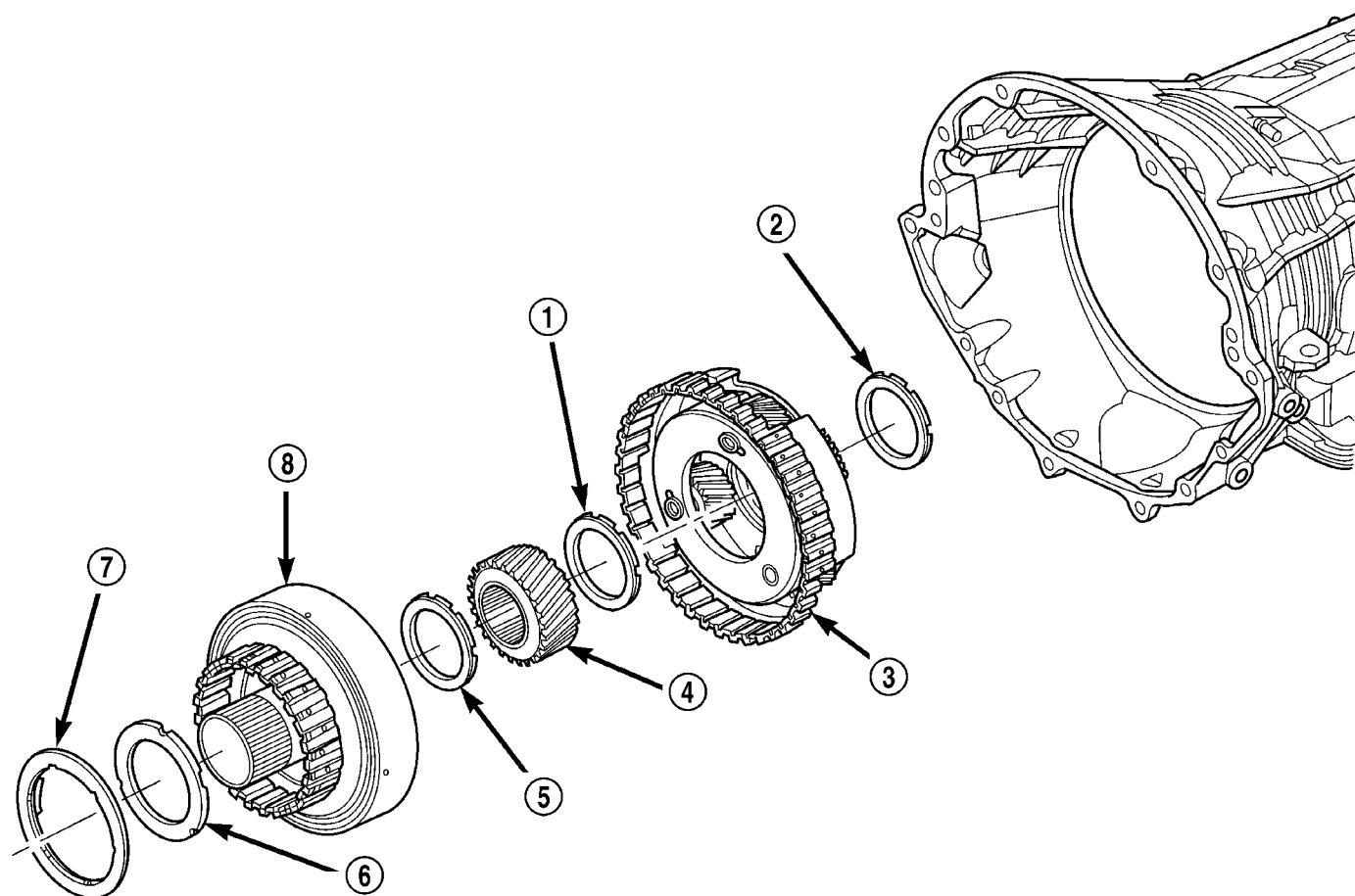
(28) Install the flat 2C clutch snap-ring into the transmission case (Fig. 39).

(29) Install the reaction sun gear into the reaction planetary gear set. **Make sure** the small shoulder is facing the front of the transmission (Fig. 40).

(30) Install the number 7 bearing onto the reaction sun gear with the inner race against the sun gear (Fig. 40).



## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 545RFE (Continued)

**Fig. 40 Install Reaction Annulus and Carrier**

80c07031

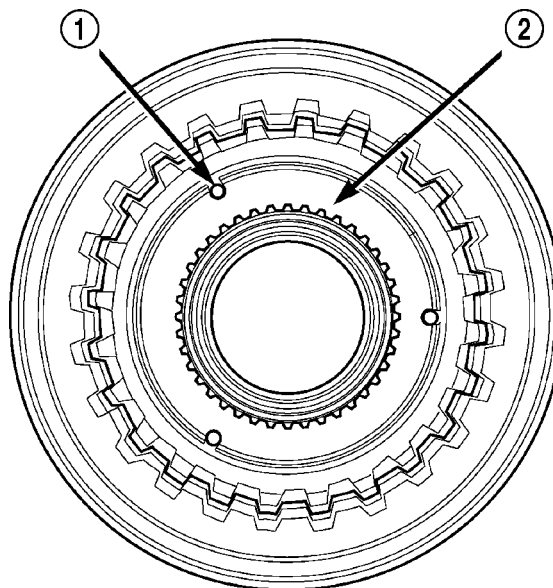
- 1 - BEARING NUMBER 8
- 2 - BEARING NUMBER 9
- 3 - REACTION PLANETARY CARRIER
- 4 - REACTION SUN GEAR

- 5 - BEARING NUMBER 7
- 6 - THRUST PLATE (SELECT)
- 7 - BEARING NUMBER 6
- 8 - REACTION ANNULUS

(31) Install the output shaft selective thrust plate onto the reaction annulus with the oil grooves facing the annulus gear and the tabs and notches aligned as shown in (Fig. 41).

(32) Install the number 6 bearing against the output shaft selective thrust plate with the flat side against the thrust plate (Fig. 40) and the raised tabs on the inner race facing the front of the transmission.

(33) Install the reaction annulus into the reaction planetary gear set (Fig. 40).



80c07425

**Fig. 41 Thrust Plate Alignment**

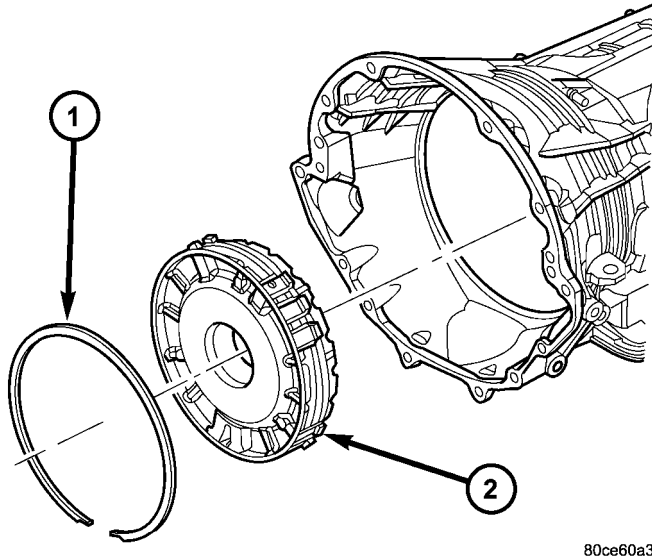
- 1 - LOCATING LUG (3)
- 2 - THRUST PLATE



## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 545RFE (Continued)

(34) Install the 4C retainer/bulkhead into the transmission case. Make sure that the oil feed holes are pointing toward the valve body area. Rotate the reaction annulus during the installation of the 4C retainer/bulkhead to ease installation.

(35) Install the 4C retainer/bulkhead tapered snap-ring into the transmission case (Fig. 42) with the taper toward the front of the case. Make sure that the open ends of the snap-ring are located in the case opening toward the valve body area.



80ce60a3

**Fig. 42 Install 4C Clutch Retainer/Bulkhead**

- 1 - SNAP-RING
- 2 - 4C CLUTCH RETAINER/BULKHEAD

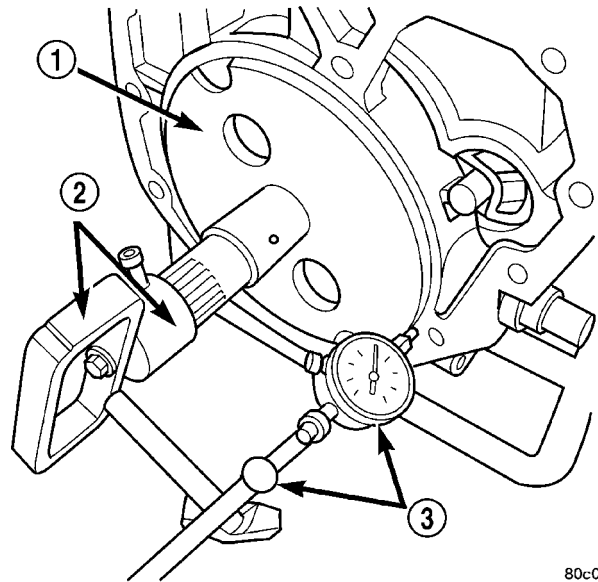
(36) Air check the 2C and 4C clutch operation.

(37) Using Alignment Plate 8261, Adapter 8266-17 from End-Play Tool Set 8266 and Dial Indicator C-3339, measure and record the output shaft end-play (Fig. 43). The correct output shaft end-play is 0.22-0.55 mm (0.009-0.021 in.). Adjust as necessary. Install the chosen output shaft selective thrust plate and re-measure end-play to verify selection.

(38) Apply a bead of RTV silicone and install the extension/adaptor housing onto the transmission case.

(39) Install and torque the bolts to hold the extension/adaptor housing onto the transmission case. The correct torque is 54 N·m (40 ft.lbs.).

(40) Install the number 5 bearing and selective thrust plate onto the 4C retainer/bulkhead (Fig. 44). Be sure that the outer race of the bearing is against the thrust plate.



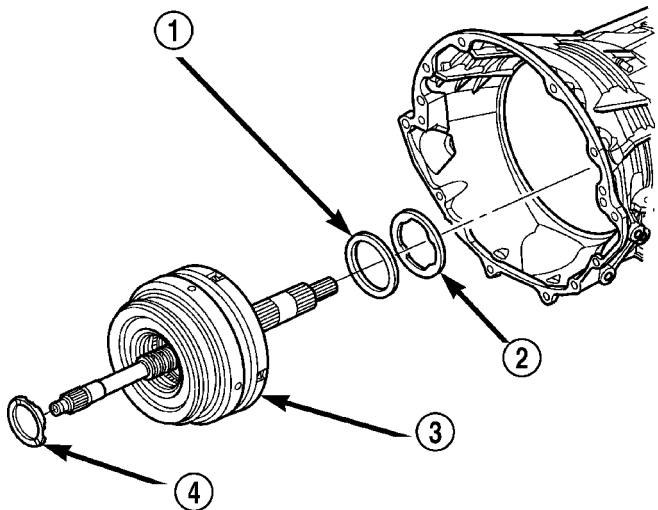
80c07353

**Fig. 43 Measure Output Shaft End Play**

- 1 - TOOL 8261
- 2 - TOOL 8266
- 3 - TOOL C-3339

(41) Install the input clutch assembly into the transmission case (Fig. 44). Make sure that the input clutch assembly is fully installed by performing a visual inspection through the input speed sensor hole. If the tone wheel teeth on the input clutch assembly are centered in the hole, the assembly is fully installed.

(42) Install the number 1 bearing with the outer race up in the pocket of the input clutch assembly (Fig. 44).



80c07357

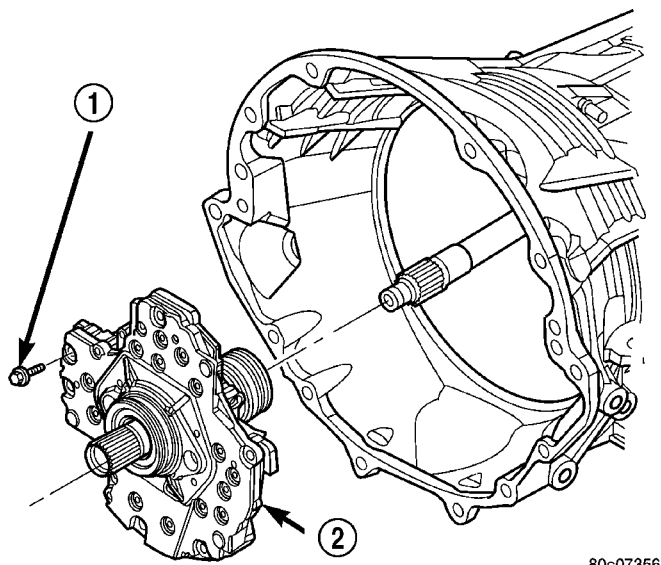
**Fig. 44 Install Input Clutch Assembly**

- 1 - BEARING NUMBER 5
- 2 - THRUST PLATE (SELECT)
- 3 - INPUT CLUTCH ASSEMBLY
- 4 - BEARING NUMBER 1

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 545RFE (Continued)

(43) Install the oil pump into the transmission case (Fig. 45).

(44) Install the bolts to hold the oil pump into the transmission case. Tighten the oil pump bolts to 28 N·m (250 in.lbs.).

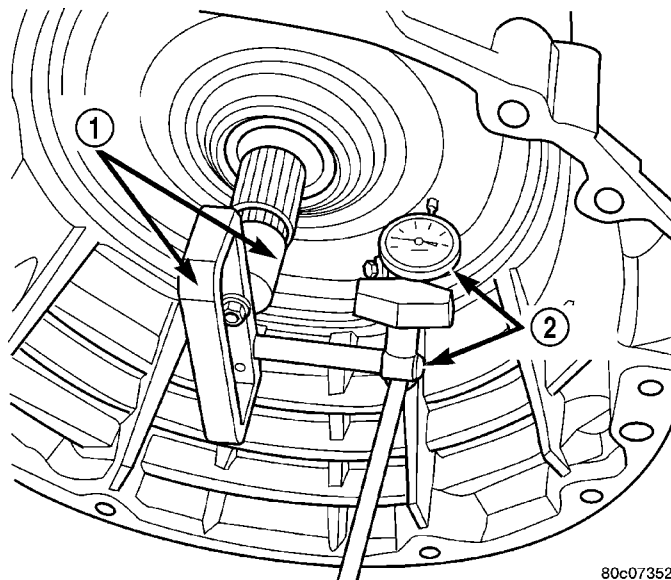


**Fig. 45 Install Oil Pump**

- 1 - OIL PUMP TO CASE BOLT (6)  
2 - OIL PUMP

(45) Using Adapter 8266-1 from End-Play Tool Set 8266 and Dial Indicator C-3339, measure and record the input shaft end-play (Fig. 46). The correct end-play is 0.46-0.89 mm (0.018-0.035 in.). Adjust as necessary. Install the chosen thrust plate on the number 5 bearing and re-measure end-play to verify selection.

**NOTE:** When measuring the input shaft end-play, two "stops" will be felt. When the input shaft is pushed inward and the dial indicator zeroed, the first "stop" felt when the input shaft is pulled outward is the movement of the input shaft in the input clutch housing hub. This value should not be included in the end-play measured value and therefore must be recorded and subtracted from the dial indicator reading.



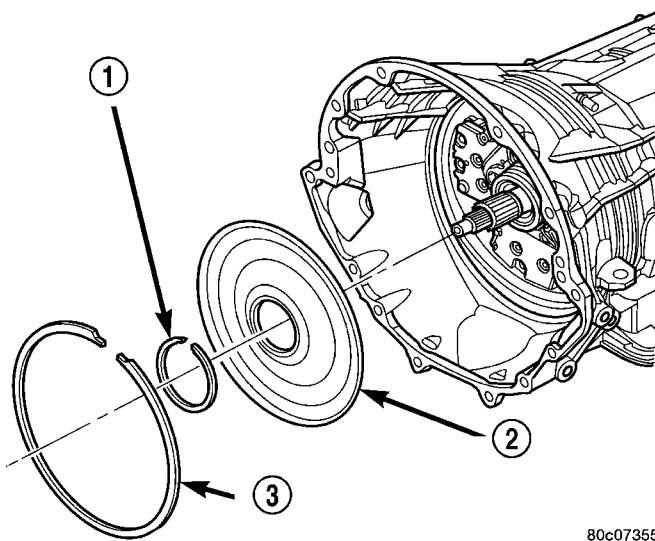
**Fig. 46 Measure Input Shaft End Play**

- 1 - TOOL 8266  
2 - TOOL C-3339

(46) Install the transmission front cover into the transmission case (Fig. 47).

(47) Install the outer snap-ring to hold the transmission front cover into the transmission case (Fig. 47).

(48) Partially install the inner transmission front cover snap-ring onto the oil pump (Fig. 47).

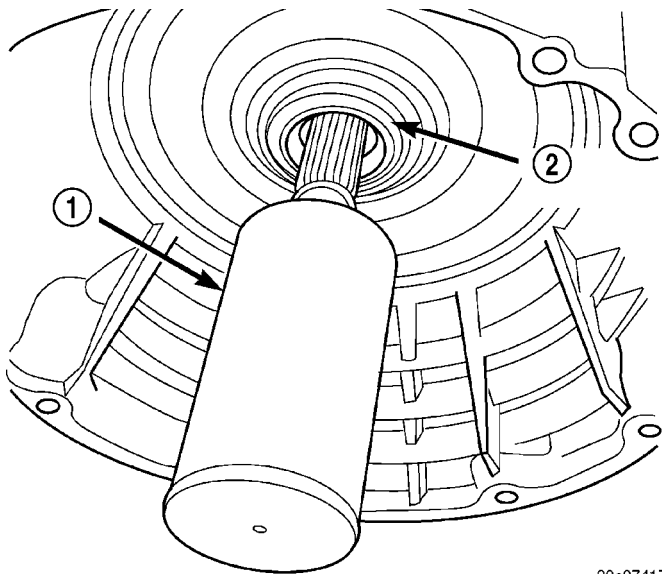


**Fig. 47 Install the Transmission Front Cover**

- 1 - INNER SNAP-RING  
2 - TRANSMISSION COVER  
3 - OUTER SNAP-RING

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 545RFE (Continued)

(49) Using Installer 8255, install the inner transmission front cover snap-ring the remainder of the way onto the oil pump (Fig. 48).

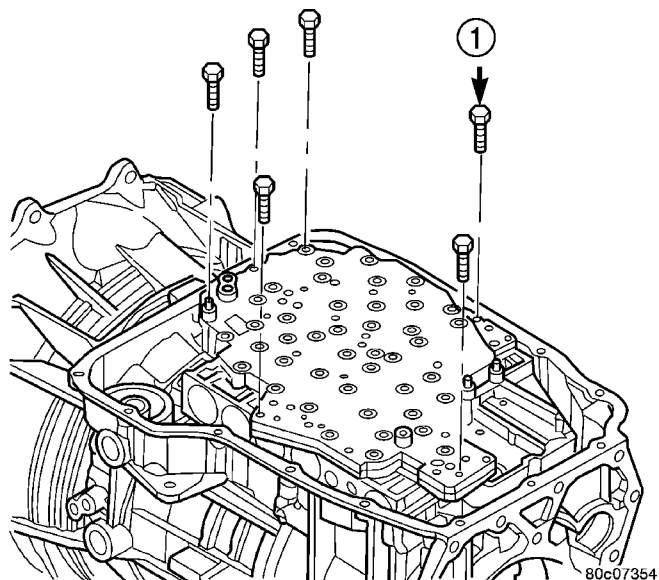


80c07417

**Fig. 48 Seat Snap-Ring Using Tool 8255**

- 1 - TOOL 8255  
2 - SNAP-RING

(50) Install the valve body (Fig. 49). Verify that the pin on the manual lever has properly engaged the TRS selector plate. Tighten the valve body to transmission case bolts to 12 N·m (105 in.lbs.).



80c07354

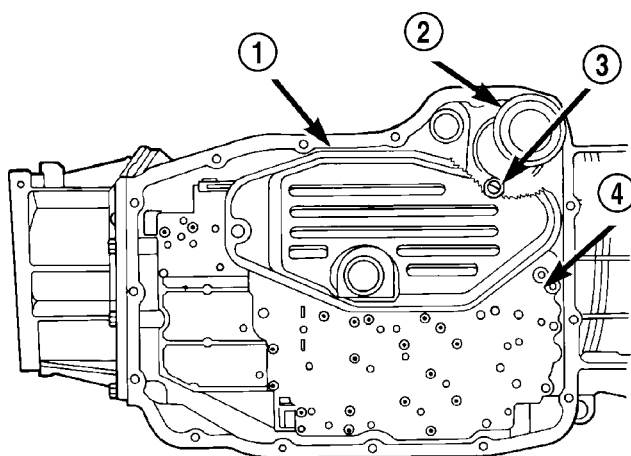
**Fig. 49 Install Valve Body Assembly**

- 1 - VALVE BODY TO CASE BOLT (6)

(51) Install a new primary oil filter seal in the oil pump inlet bore. Seat the seal in the bore with the butt end of a hammer, or other suitable tool.

**CAUTION:** The primary oil filter seal **MUST** be fully installed flush against the oil pump body. **DO NOT** install the seal onto the filter neck and attempt to install the filter and seal as an assembly. Damage to the transmission will result.

(52) Install the primary oil filter and the oil cooler return filter (Fig. 50). Tighten the screw to hold the primary oil filter to the valve body to 4.5 N·m (40 in.lbs.). Using Oil Filter Wrench 8321, tighten the cooler return oil filter to the transmission case to 14 N·m (125 in.lbs.).



80b9a595

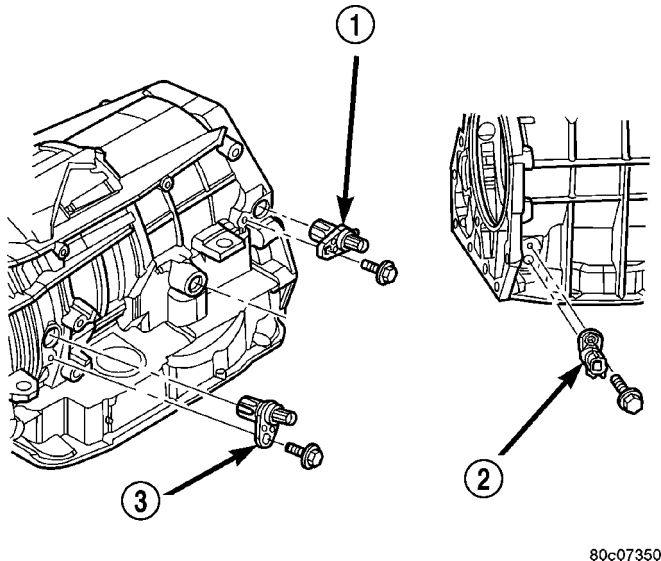
**Fig. 50 Install Primary Oil and Cooler Filters**

- 1 - PRIMARY OIL FILTER  
2 - COOLER RETURN FILTER  
3 - COOLER RETURN FILTER BYPASS VALVE  
4 - VALVE BODY

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 545RFE (Continued)

(53) Apply RTV silicone to the oil pan and install the transmission oil pan. Tighten the bolts to 12 N·m (105 in.lbs.).

(54) Install the input, output, and line pressure sensors (Fig. 51). Tighten the bolts to 12 N·m (105 in.lbs.).



**Fig. 51 Install Input, Output, and Line Pressure Sensors**

- 1 - OUTPUT SPEED SENSOR
- 2 - LINE PRESSURE SENSOR
- 3 - INPUT SPEED SENSOR

(55) Install the manual shift lever from the transmission. Torque the retaining cross-bolt to 16 N·m (140 in.lbs.).

## INSTALLATION

(1) Check torque converter hub and hub drive flats for sharp edges burrs, scratches, or nicks. Polish the hub and flats with 320/400 grit paper and crocus cloth if necessary. Verify that the converter hub o-ring is properly installed and is free of any debris. The hub must be smooth to avoid damaging pump seal at installation.

(2) If a replacement transmission is being installed, transfer any components necessary, such as the manual shift lever and shift cable bracket, from the original transmission onto the replacement transmission.

(3) Lubricate oil pump seal lip with transmission fluid.

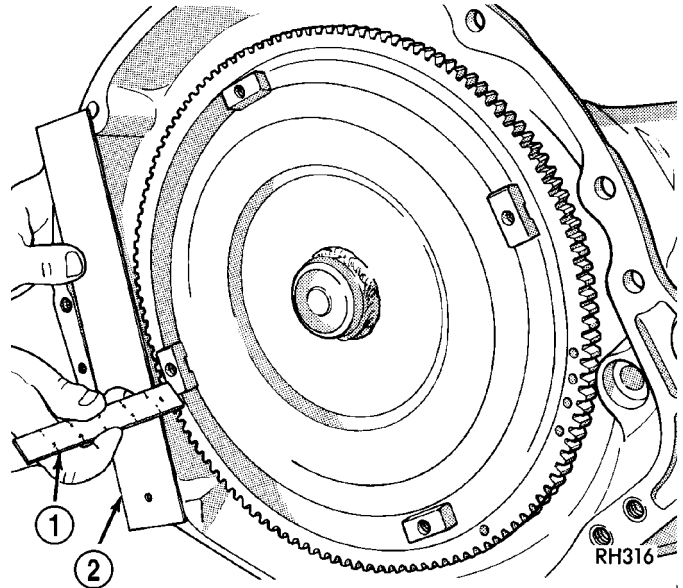
(4) Align converter and oil pump.

(5) Carefully insert converter in oil pump. Then rotate converter back and forth until fully seated in pump gears.

(6) Check converter seating with steel scale and straightedge (Fig. 52). Surface of converter lugs

should be at least 13 mm (1/2 in.) to rear of straight-edge when converter is fully seated.

(7) Temporarily secure converter with C-clamp.



**Fig. 52 Checking Torque Converter Seating - Typical**

- 1 - SCALE
- 2 - STRAIGHTEDGE

(8) Position transmission on jack and secure it with chains.

(9) Check condition of converter driveplate. Replace the plate if cracked, distorted or damaged. **Also be sure transmission dowel pins are seated in engine block and protrude far enough to hold transmission in alignment.**

(10) Apply a light coating of Mopar® High Temp Grease to the torque converter hub pocket in the rear pocket of the engine's crankshaft.

(11) Raise transmission and align the torque converter with the drive plate and the transmission converter housing with the engine block.

(12) Move transmission forward. Then raise, lower, or tilt transmission to align the converter housing with the engine block dowels.

(13) Carefully work transmission forward and over engine block dowels until converter hub is seated in crankshaft. Verify that no wires, or the transmission vent hose, have become trapped between the engine block and the transmission.

(14) Install two bolts to attach the transmission to the engine.

(15) Install remaining torque converter housing to engine bolts. Tighten to 68 N·m (50 ft.lbs.).

(16) Install rear transmission crossmember. Tighten crossmember to frame bolts to 68 N·m (50 ft.lbs.).

(17) Install rear support to transmission. Tighten bolts to 47 N·m (35 ft.lbs.).

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 545RFE (Continued)

(18) Lower transmission onto crossmember and install bolts attaching transmission mount to crossmember. Tighten clevis bracket to crossmember bolts to 47 N·m (35 ft.lbs.). Tighten the clevis bracket to rear support bolt to 68 N·m (50 ft.lbs.).

(19) Remove engine support fixture.

(20) Install new plastic retainer grommet on any shift cable that was disconnected. Grommets should not be reused. Use pry tool to remove rod from grommet and cut away old grommet. Use pliers to snap new grommet into cable and to snap grommet onto lever.

(21) Connect gearshift cable to transmission.

(22) Connect wires to solenoid and pressure switch assembly connector, input and output speed sensors, and line pressure sensor. Be sure transmission harnesses are properly routed.

**CAUTION:** It is essential that correct length bolts be used to attach the converter to the driveplate. Bolts that are too long will damage the clutch surface inside the converter.

(23) Install all torque converter-to-driveplate bolts by hand.

(24) Verify that the torque converter is pulled flush to the driveplate. Tighten bolts to 31 N·m (270 in. lbs.).

(25) Install starter motor and cooler line bracket.

(26) Connect cooler lines to transmission.

(27) Install transmission fill tube.

(28) Install exhaust components.

(29) Install transfer case. Tighten transfer case nuts to 35 N·m (26 ft.lbs.).

(30) Install the transfer case shift cable to the cable support bracket and the transfer case shift lever.

(31) Install the structural dust cover (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/ENGINE BLOCK/STRUCTURAL COVER - INSTALLATION) onto the transmission and the engine.

(32) Align and connect propeller shaft(s).

(33) Adjust gearshift cable if necessary.

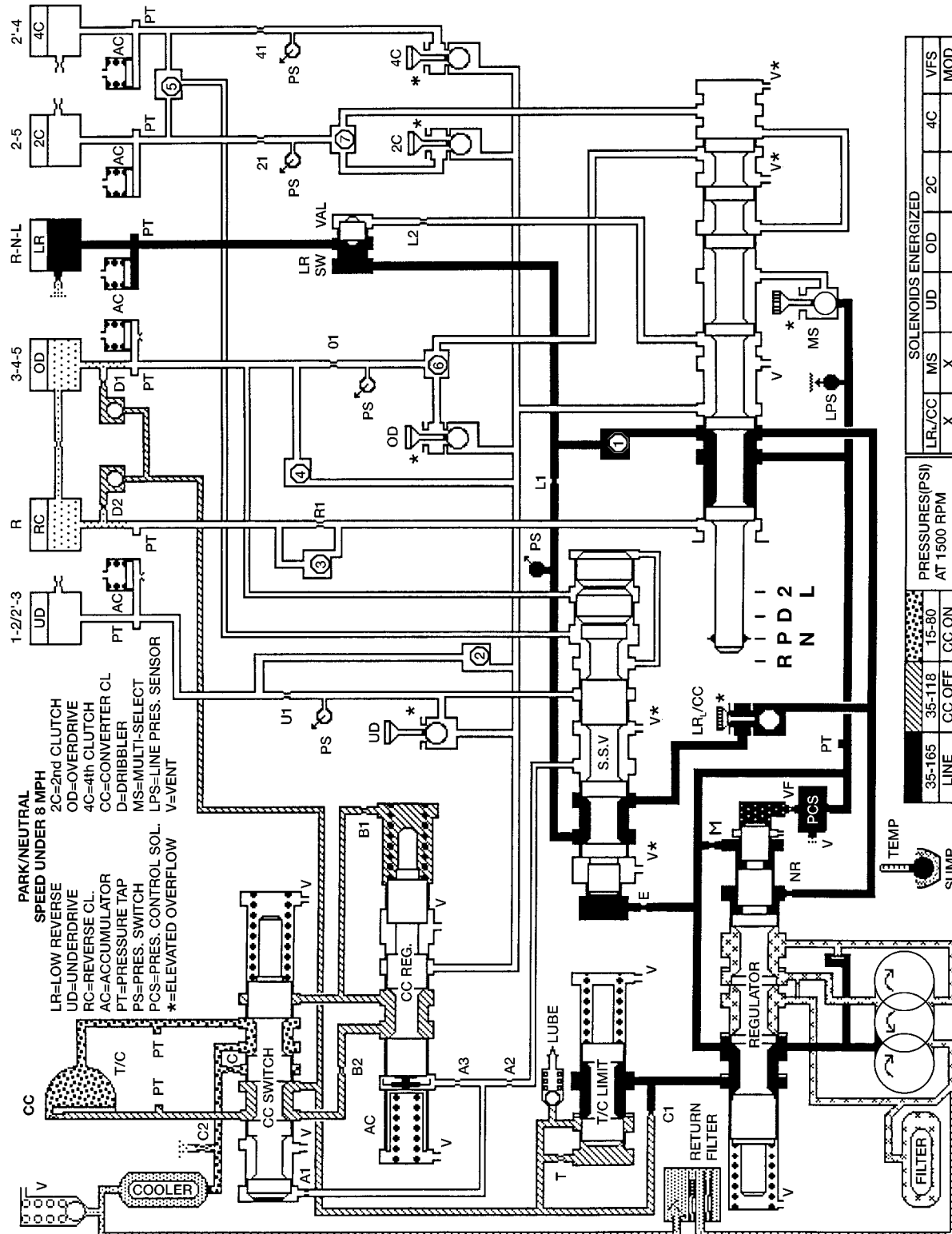
(34) Lower vehicle.

(35) Fill transmission with Mopar® ATF +4, Automatic Transmission fluid.



## SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS

## HYDRAULIC SCHEMATICS

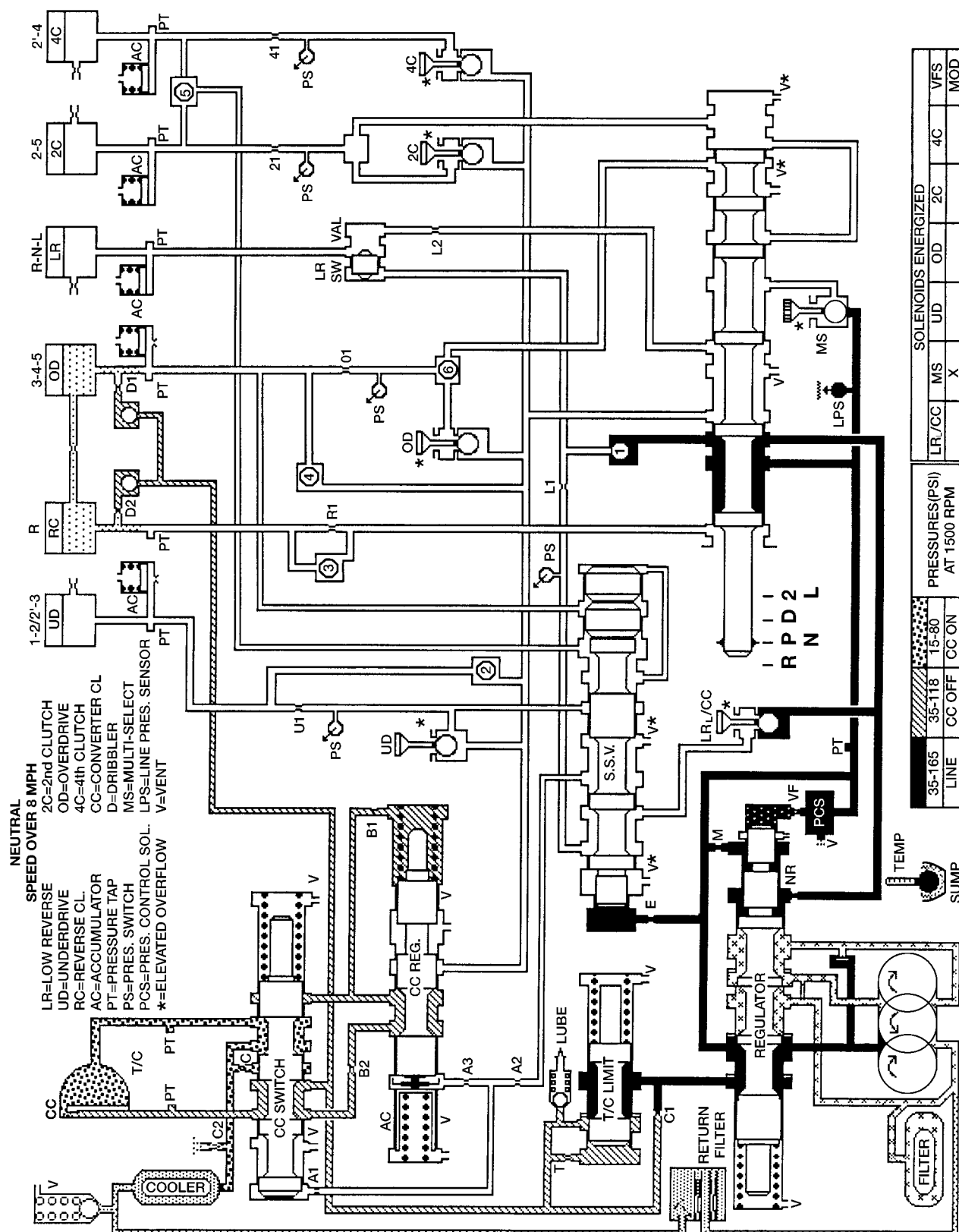


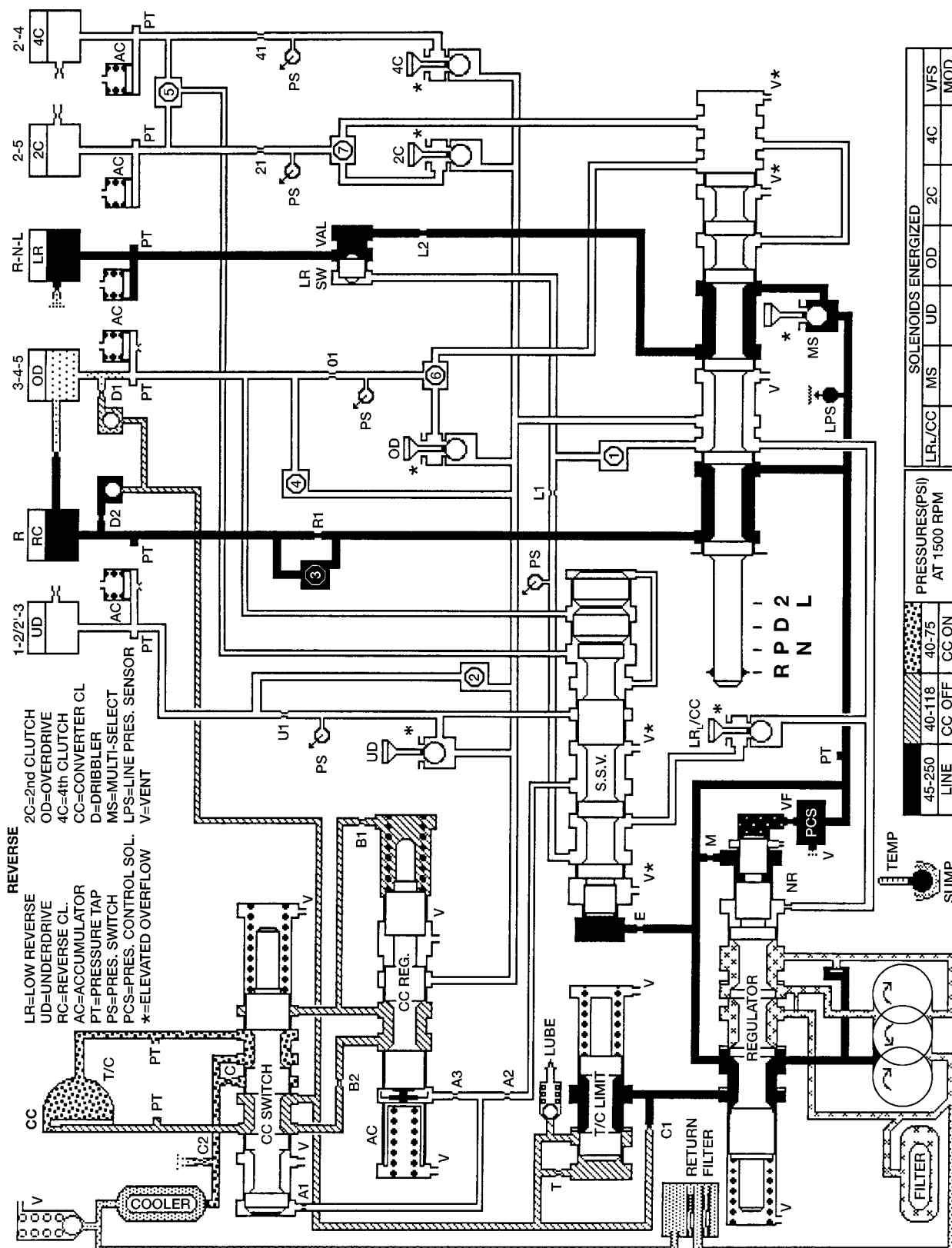
80a0df0a

# HYDRAULIC FLOW IN PARK/NEUTRAL



## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 545RFE (Continued)

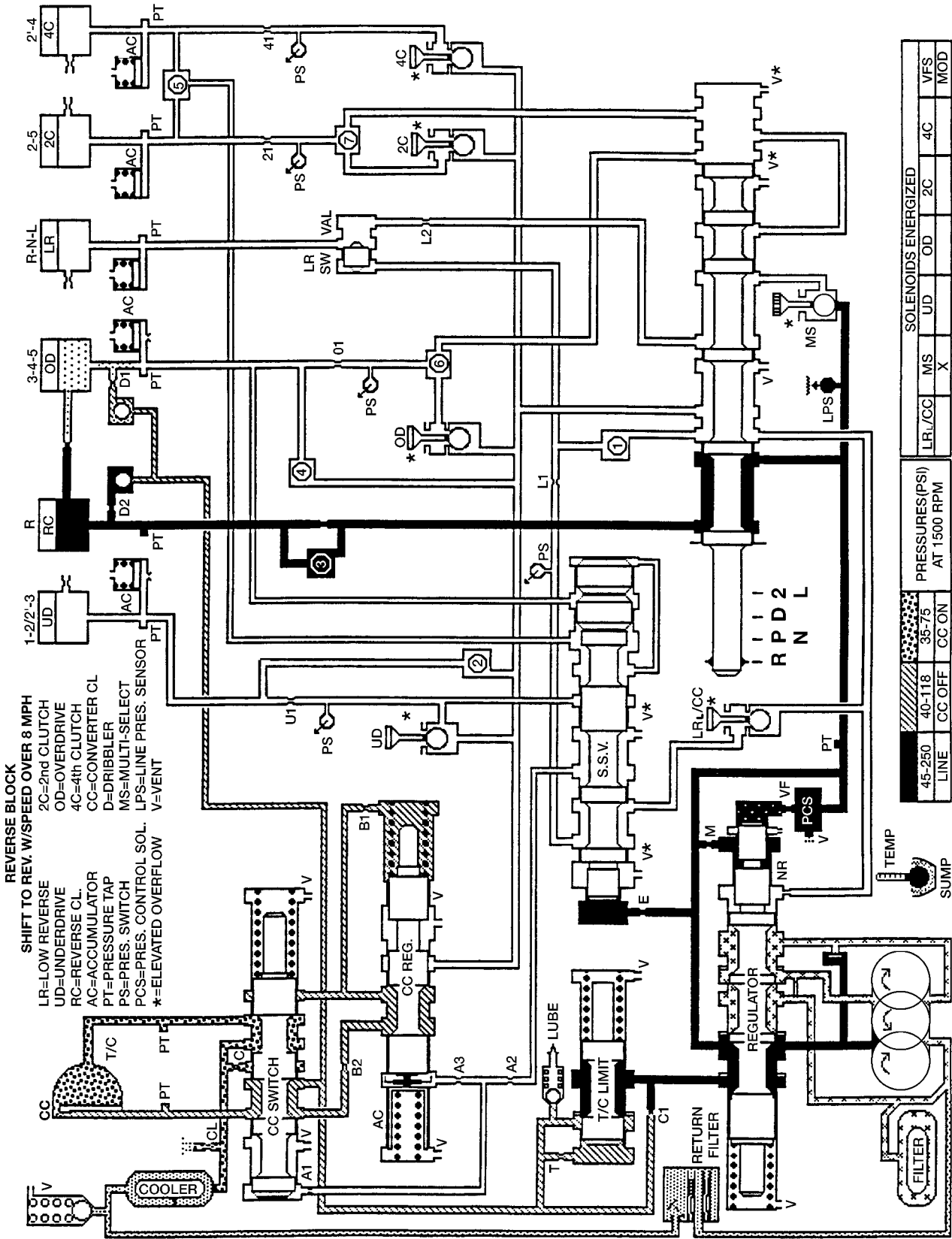


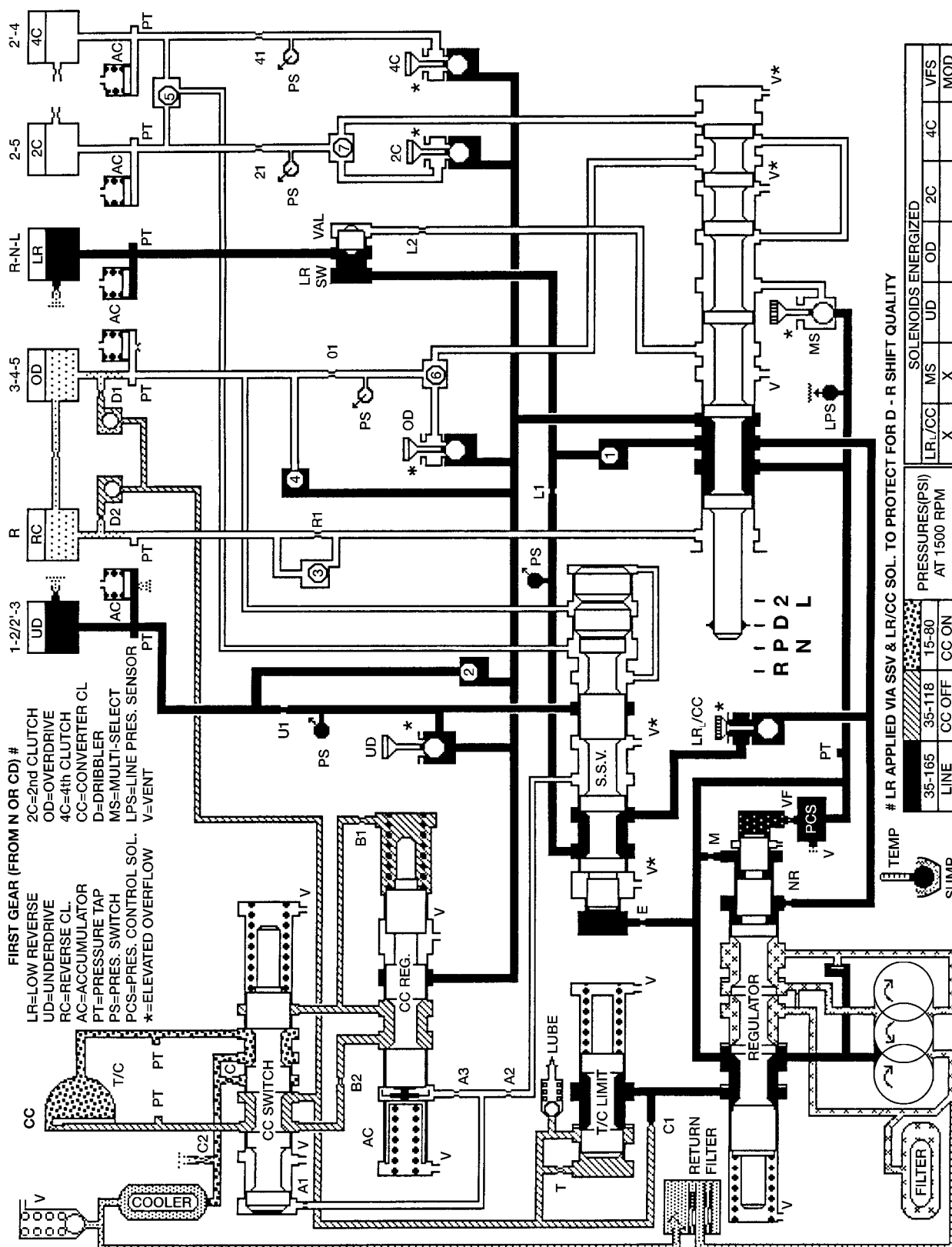


## HYDRAULIC FLOW IN REVERSE

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 545RFE (Continued)

80a0dfe5

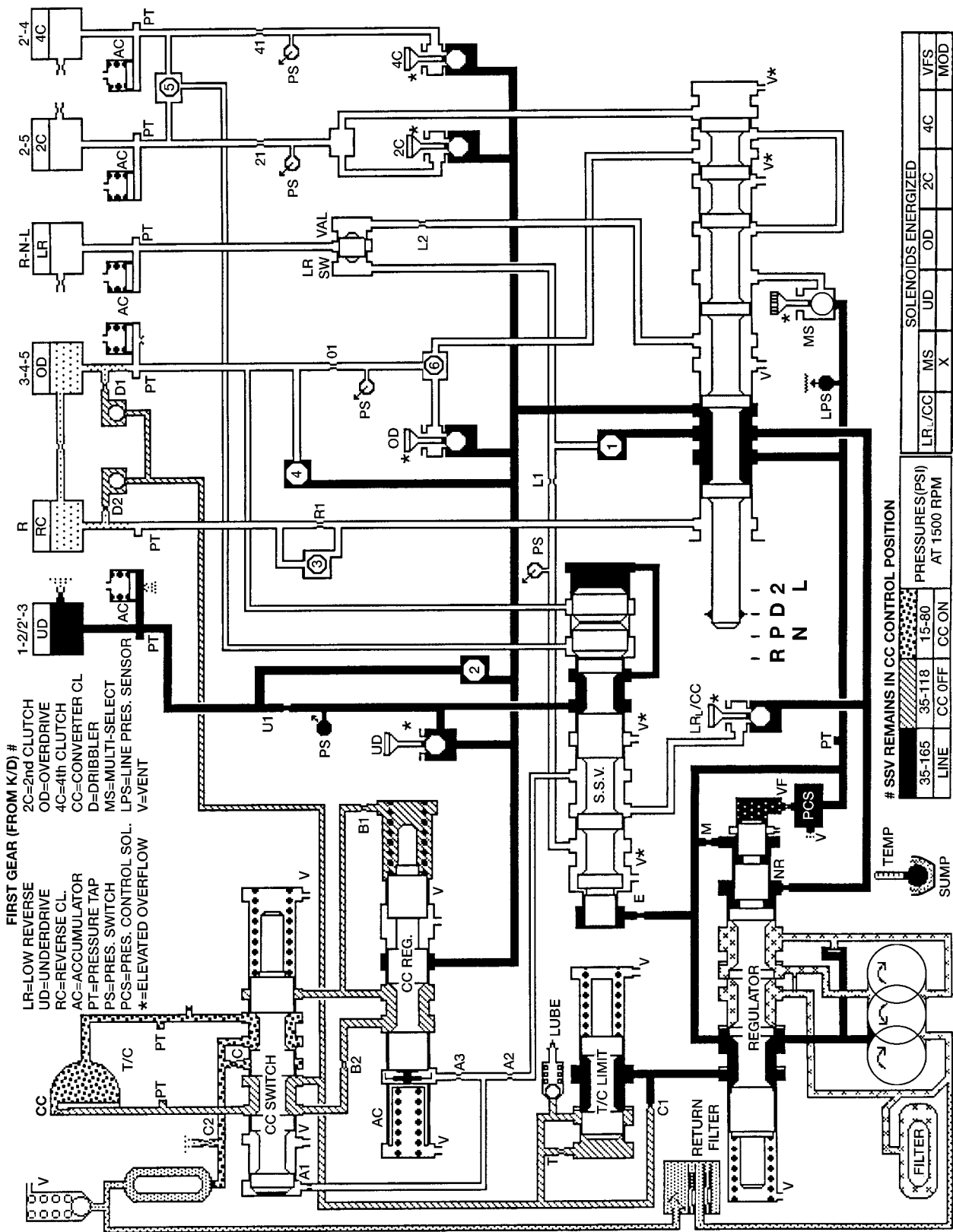




HYDRAULIC FLOW IN FIRST GEAR (FROM N OR OD)



AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 545RFE (Continued)



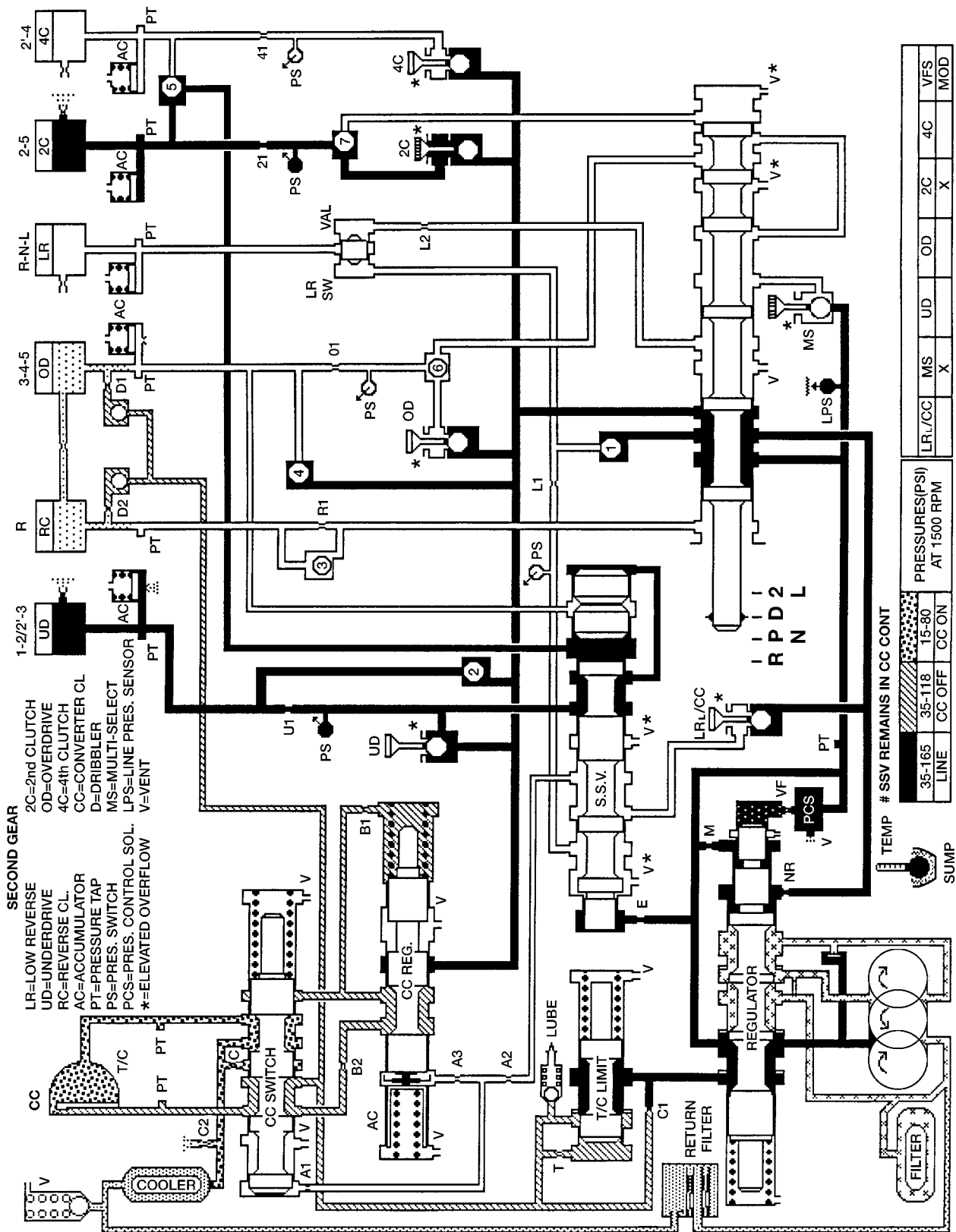
HYDRAULIC FLOW IN FIRST GEAR (FROM K/D)

80a0e0b7



AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 545RFE (Continued)

80a0e167



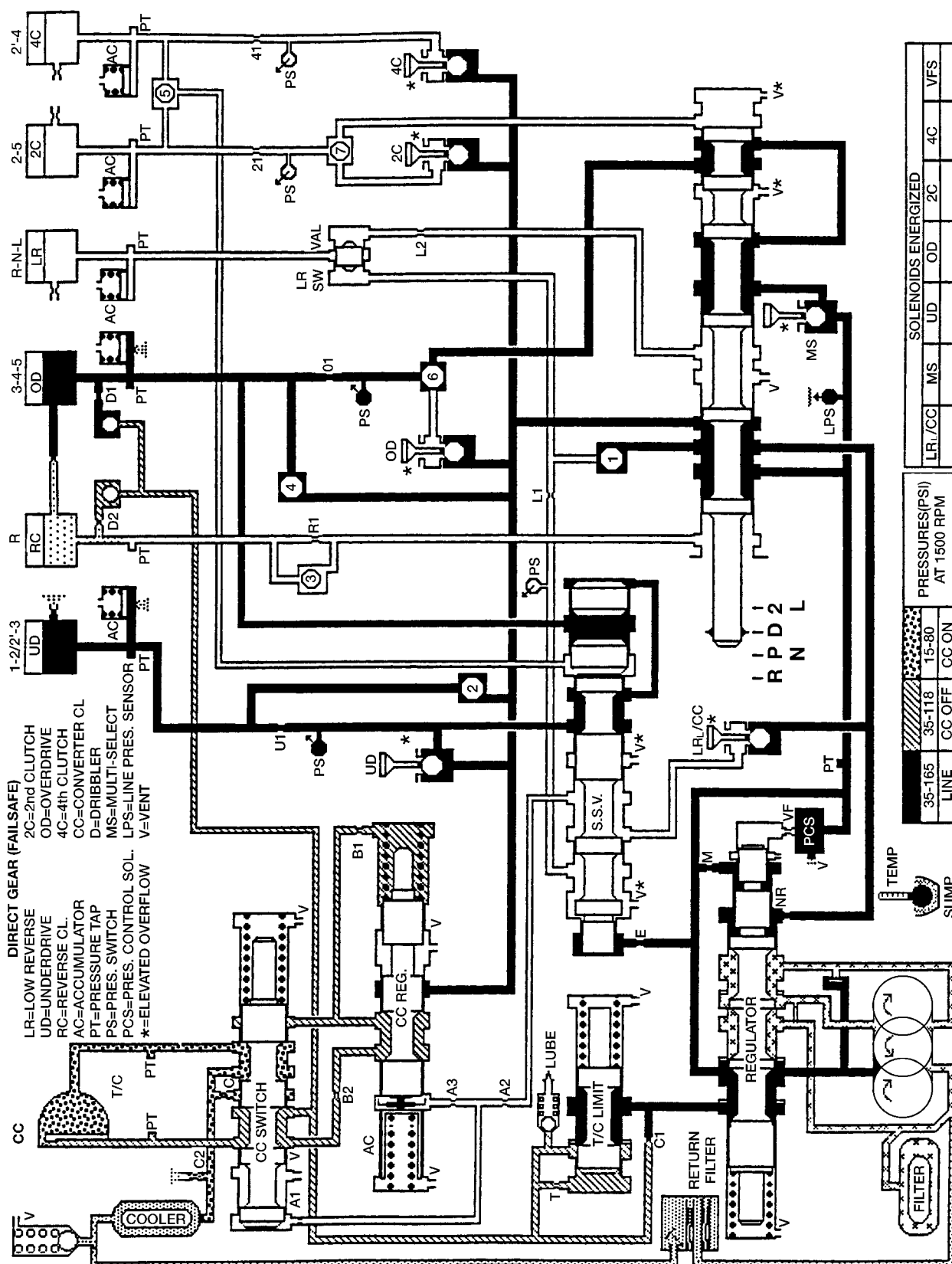






HYDRAULIC FLOW IN SECOND PRIME GEAR EMCC



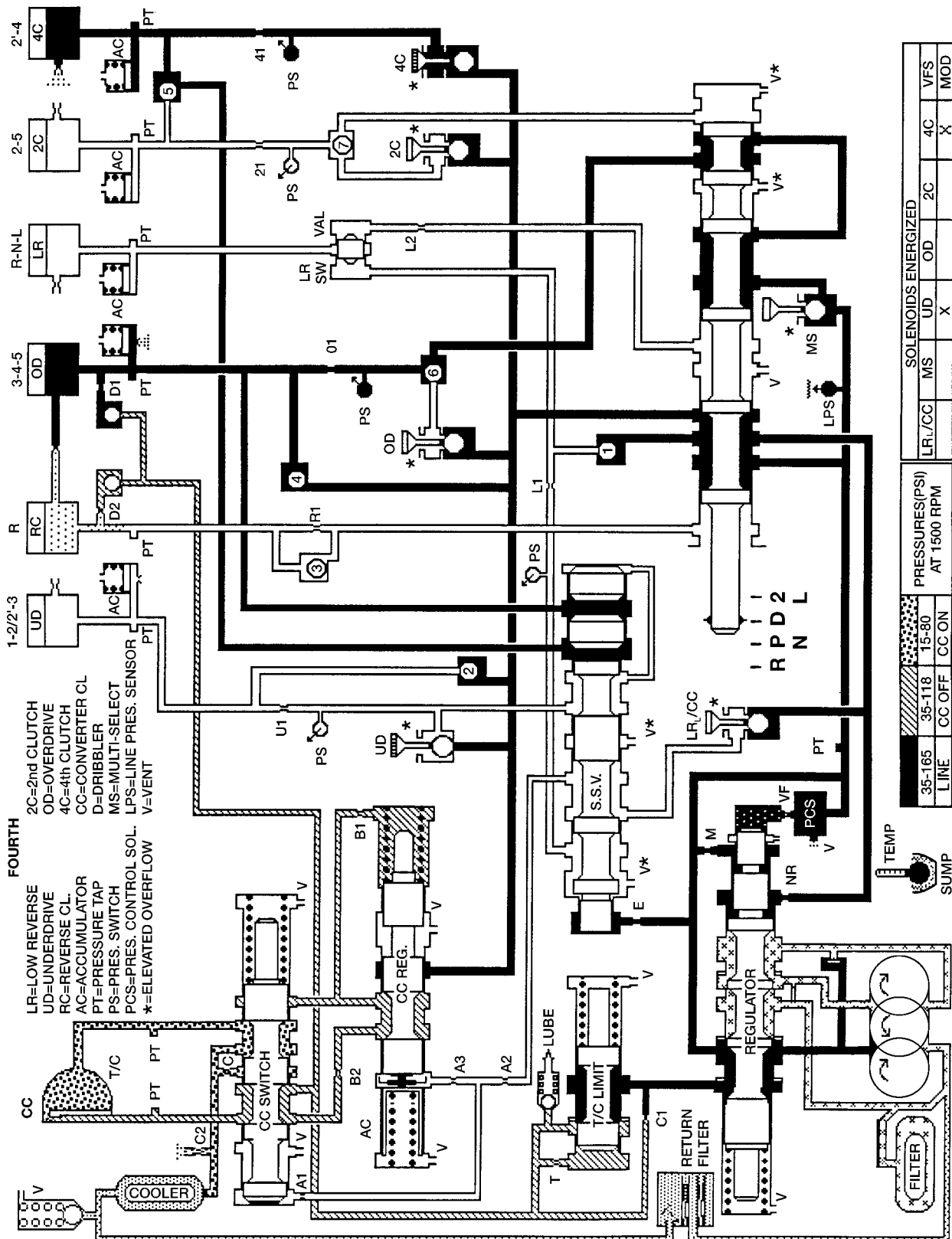


## HYDRAULIC FLOW IN DIRECT GEAR (FAILSAFE)

80a0e26d



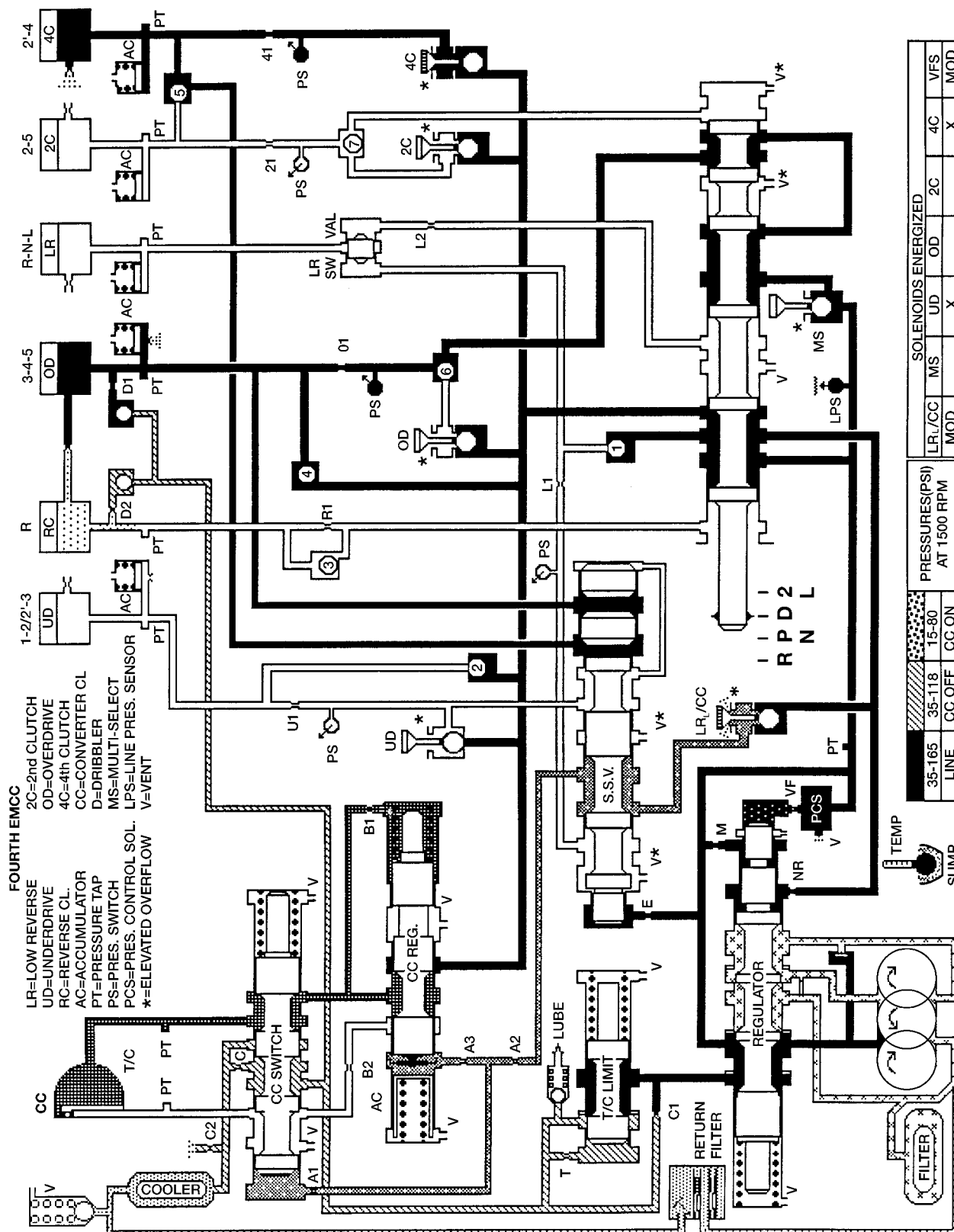




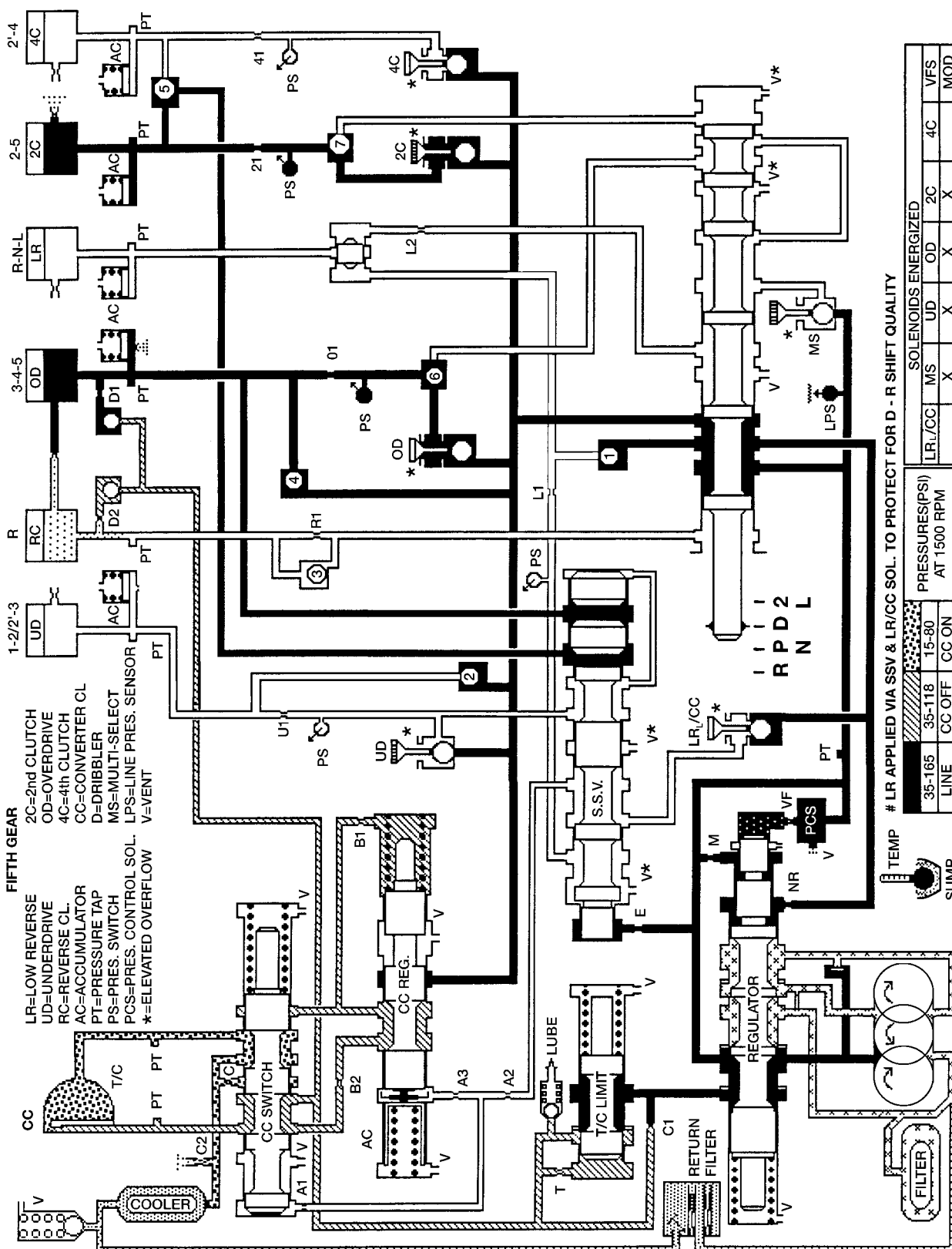
## HYDRAULIC FLOW IN FOURTH

80a0e373

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 545RFE (Continued)



HYDRAULIC FLOW IN FOURTH EMCC

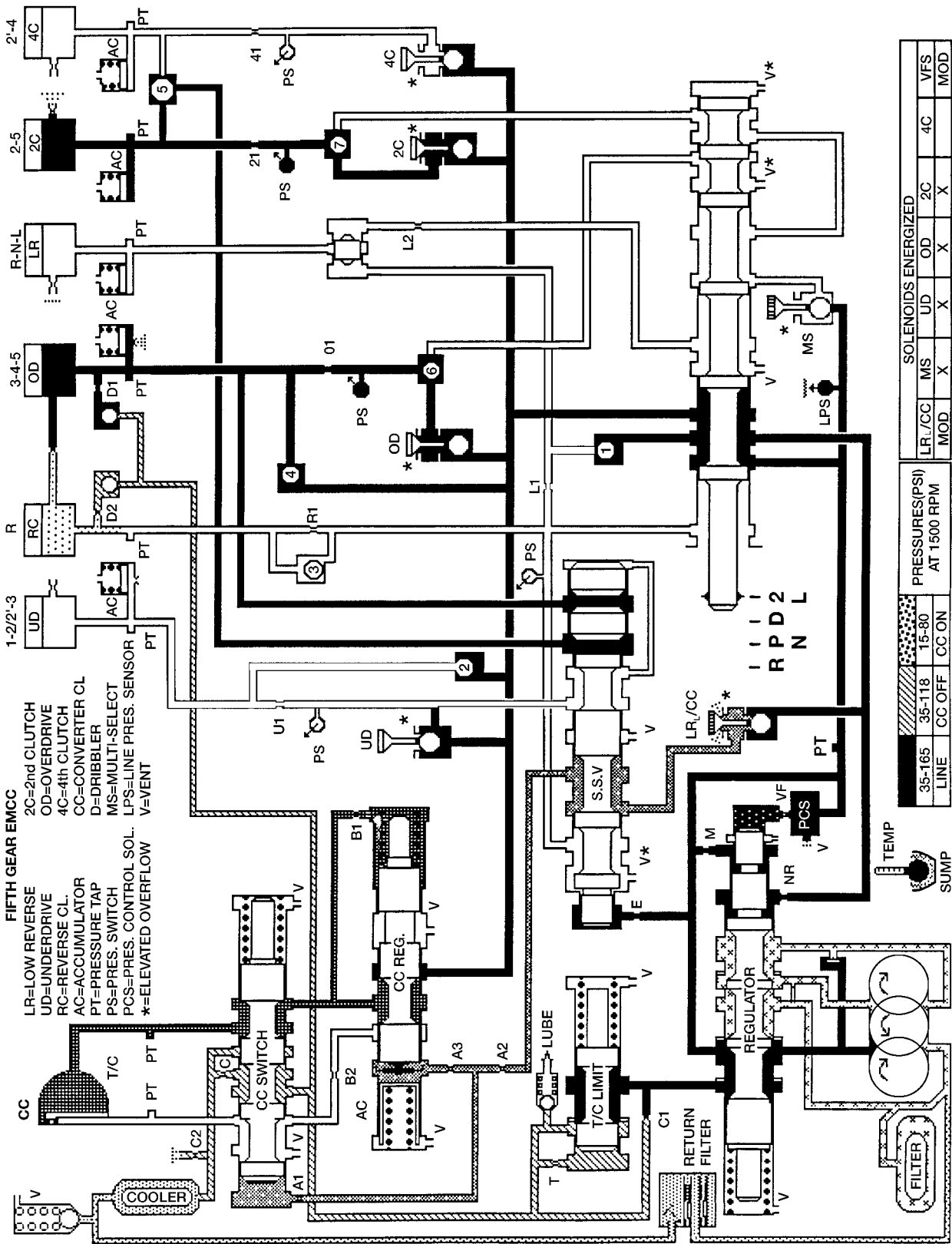


80a0e564

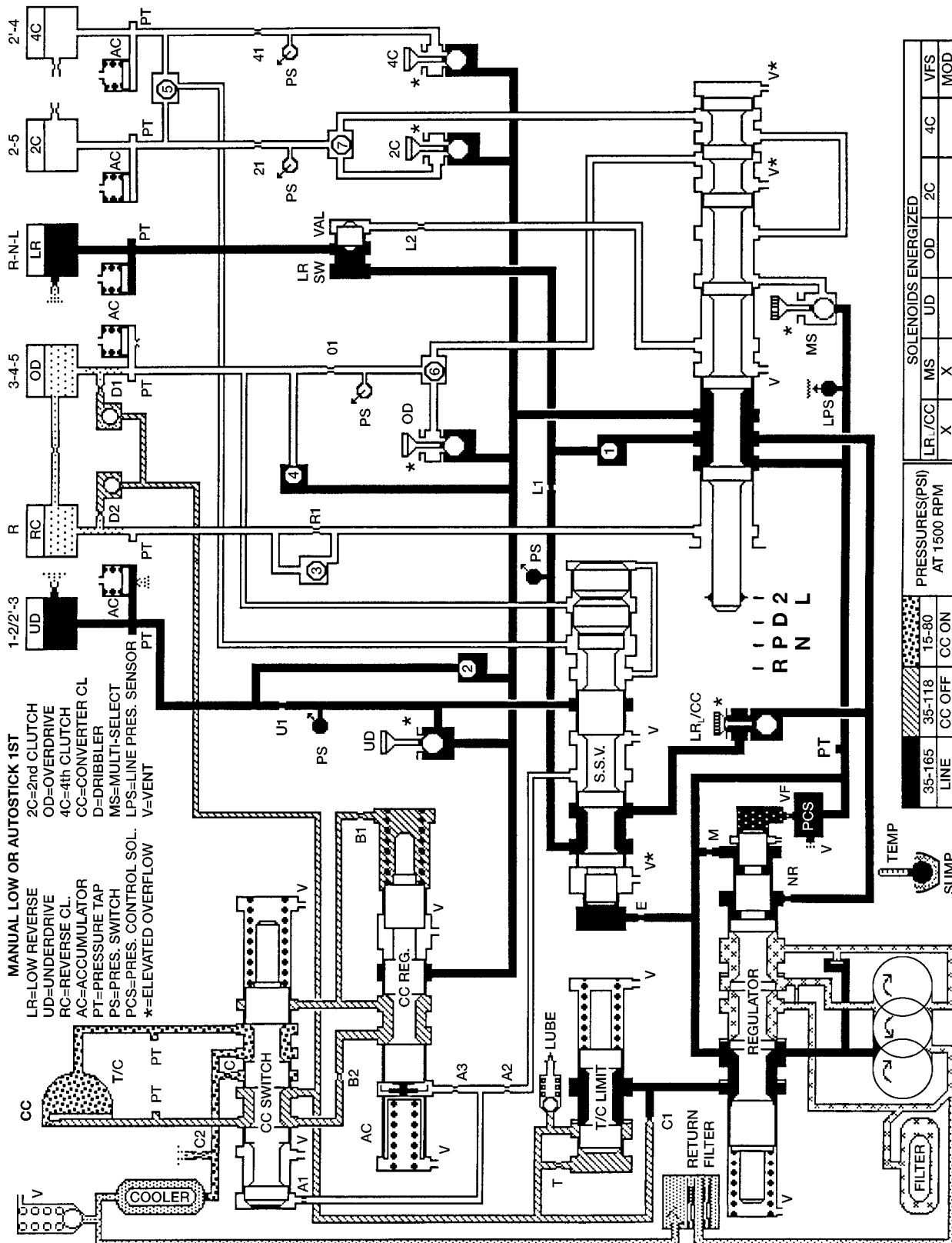
## HYDRAULIC FLOW IN FIFTH

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 545RFE (Continued)

80a0e555



HYDRAULIC FLOW IN FIFTH EMCC

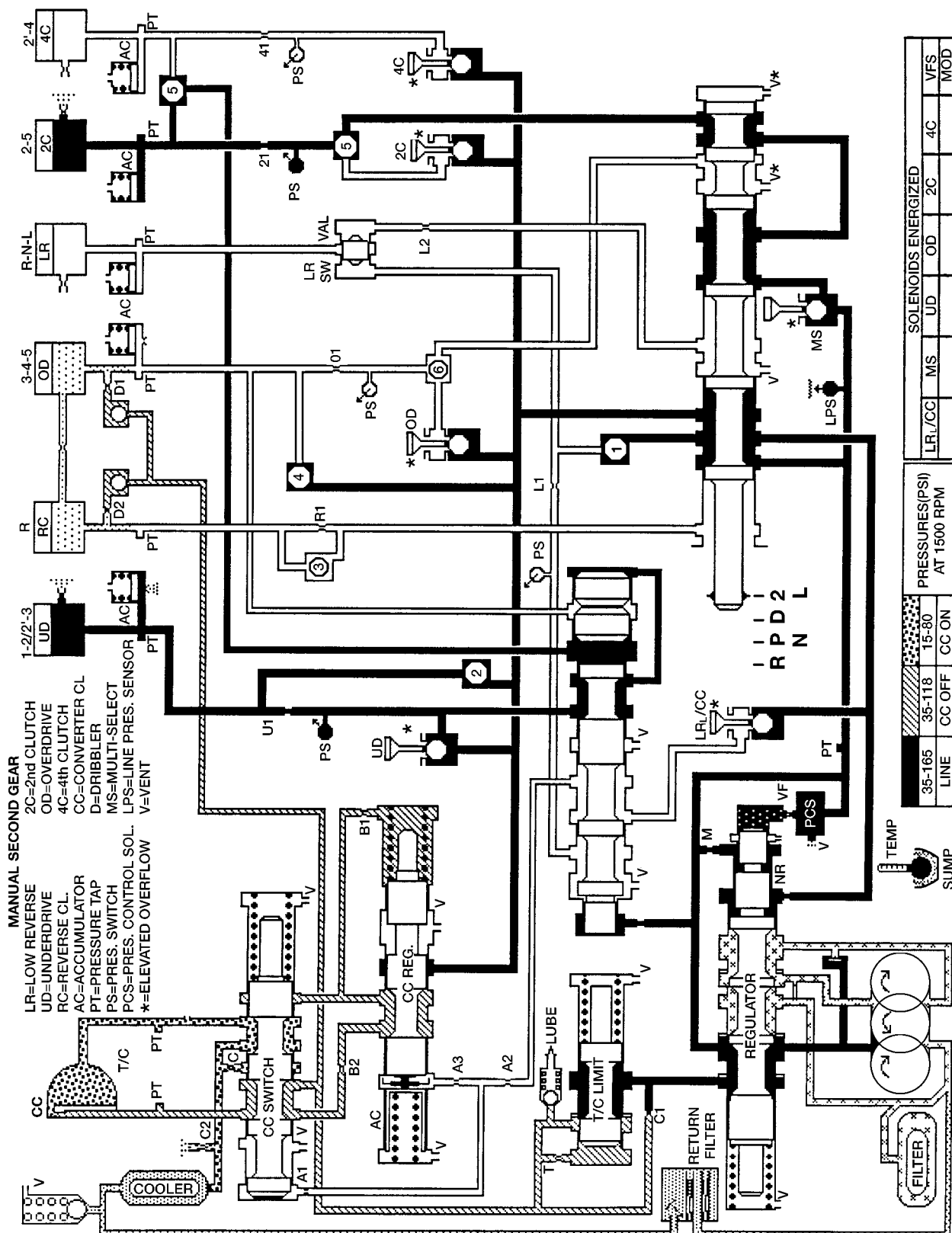


80a0e3c7

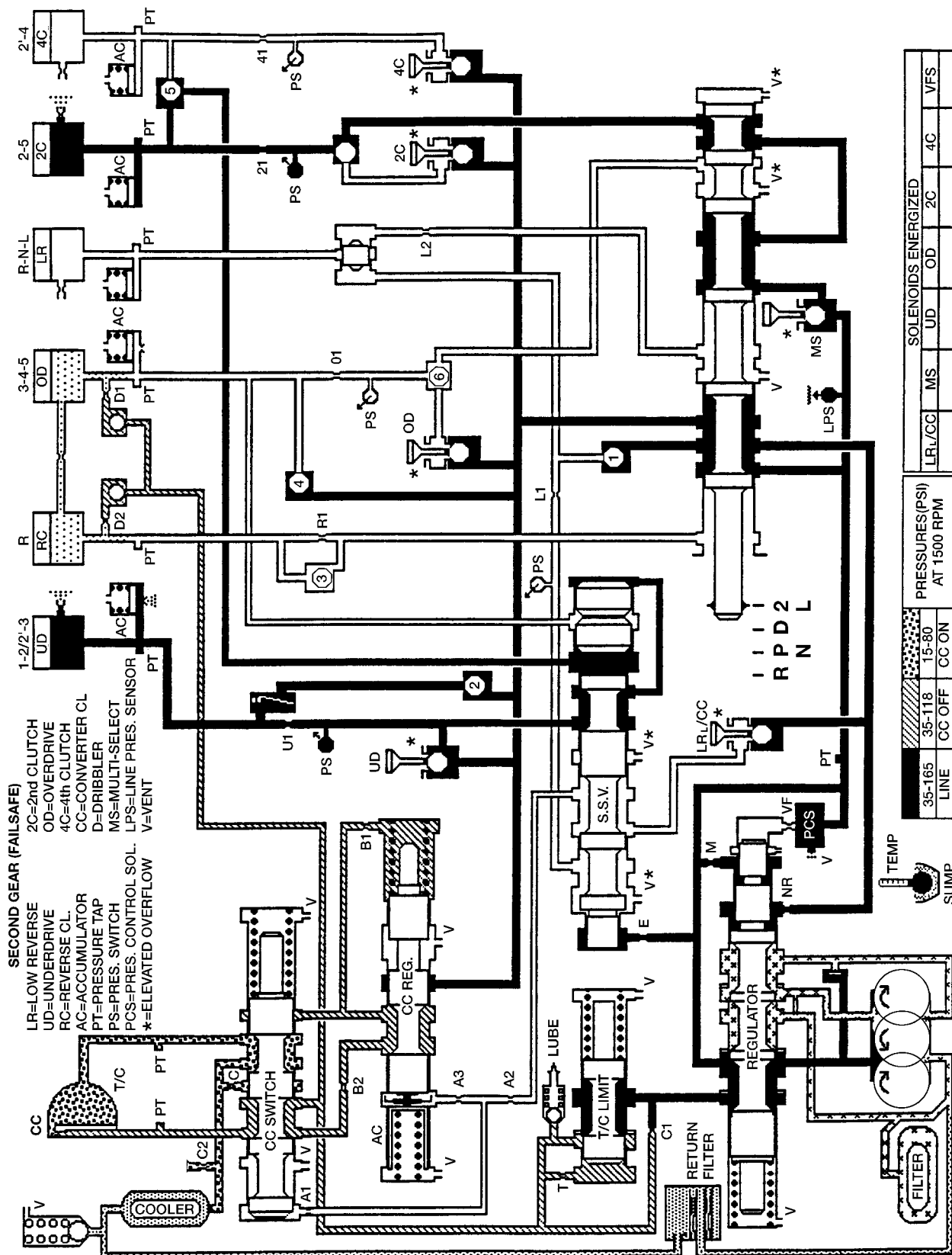
## HYDRAULIC FLOW IN MANUAL LOW OR AUTOSTICK 1ST



80a0e484



## HYDRAULIC FLOW IN MANUAL SECOND



## HYDRAULIC FLOW IN MANUAL SECOND (FAILSAFE)

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 545RFE (Continued)

## SPECIFICATIONS

## TRANSMISSION

## GENERAL

Component	Metric	Inch
Output Shaft End Play	0.22-0.55 mm	0.009-0.021 in.
Input Shaft End Play	0.46-0.89 mm	0.018-0.035 in.
2C Clutch Pack Clearance	0.455-1.335 mm	0.018-0.053 in.
4C Clutch Pack Clearance	0.770-1.390 mm	0.030-0.055 in.
L/R Clutch Pack Clearance	1.00-1.74 mm	0.039-0.069 in.
OD Clutch Pack Clearance	1.103-1.856 mm	0.043-0.073 in.

Component	Metric	Inch
UD Clutch Pack Clearance	0.84-1.54 mm	0.033-0.061 in.
Reverse Clutch Pack Clearance	0.81-1.24 mm	0.032-0.049 in.
Recommended fluid	Mopar® ATF +4	

## GEAR RATIOS

1ST	3.00:1
2ND	1.67:1
2ND Prime	1.50:1
3RD	1.0:1
4TH	0.75:1
5TH	0.67:1
REVERSE	3.00:1

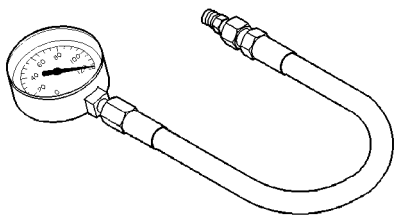
## TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS

DESCRIPTION	N-m	Ft. Lbs.	In. Lbs.
Fitting, cooler line at trans	17.5	-	155
Bolt, torque convertor	31	23	-
Bolt/nut, crossmember	68	50	-
Bolt, driveplate to crankshaft	75	55	-
Bolt, oil pan	11.8	-	105
Screw, primary fluid filter	4.5	-	40
Bolt, oil pump	28.2	-	250
Bolt, oil pump body to cover	4.5	-	40
Screw, plate to oil pump body	4.5	-	40
Bolt, valve body to case	11.8	-	105
Plug, pressure test port	5.1	-	45
Bolt, reaction shaft support	11.8	-	105
Screw, valve body to transfer plate	5.6	-	50
Screw, solenoid module to transfer plate	5.7	-	50
Screw, accumulator cover	8	-	70
Screw, detent spring	4.5	-	40
Bolt, input speed sensor	11.8	-	105
Bolt, output speed sensor	11.8	-	105
Bolt, line pressure sensor	11.8	-	105
Bolt, extension housing	54	40	-
Valve, cooler return filter bypass	4.5	-	40
Screw, manual valve cam retaining	4.5	-	40
Bolt, manual lever	28.2	-	250

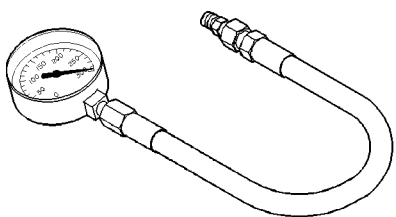
AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 545RFE (Continued)

SPECIAL TOOLS

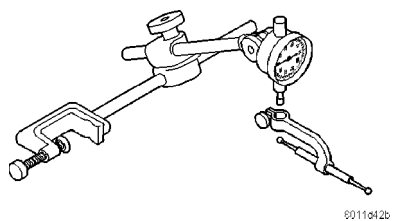
RFE TRANSMISSION



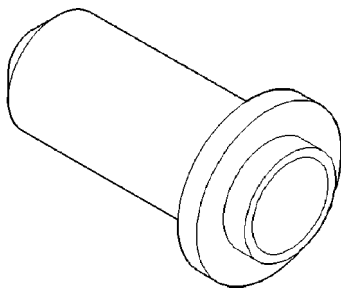
**Gauge, Oil Pressure - C-3292**



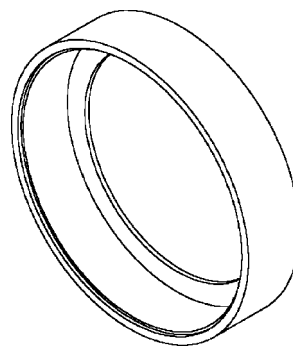
**Gauge, Oil Pressure - C-3293SP**



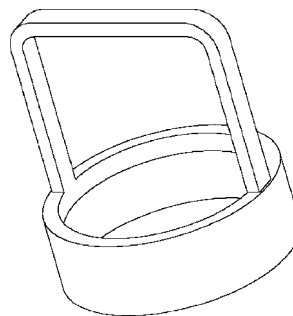
**Dial Indicator - C-3339**



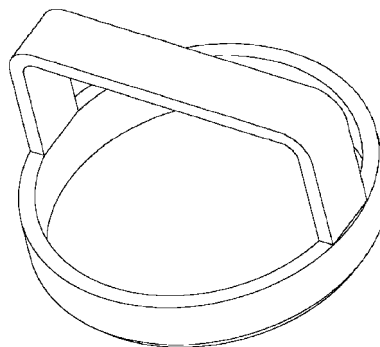
**Installer, Seal - C-3860-A**



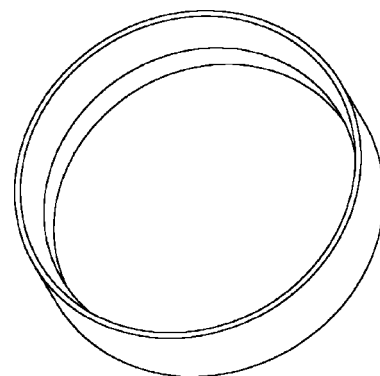
**Compressor, Spring - 8249**



**Compressor, Spring - 8250**

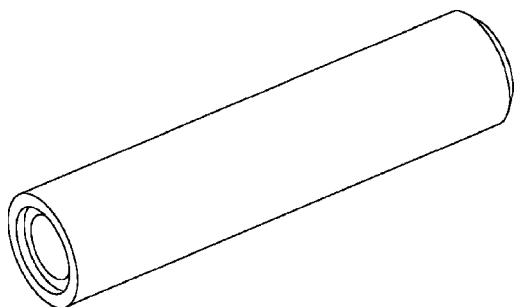
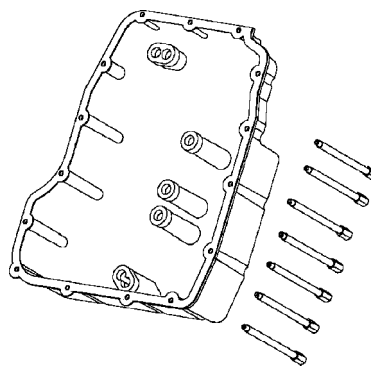
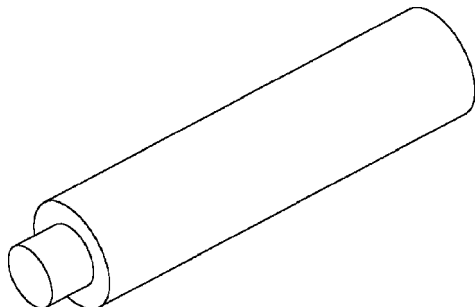
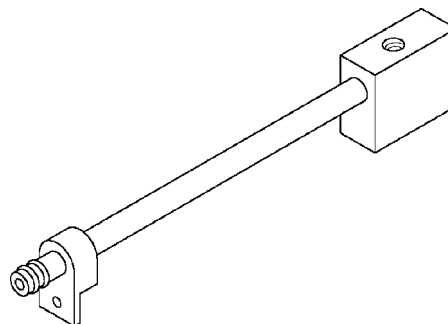
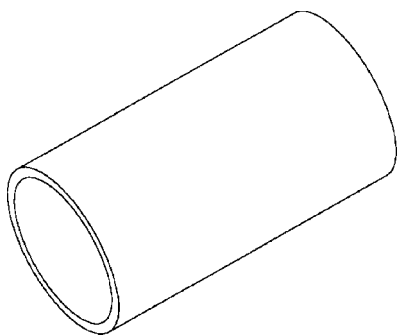
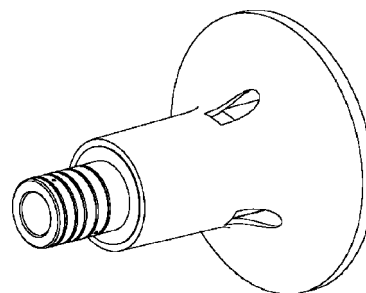
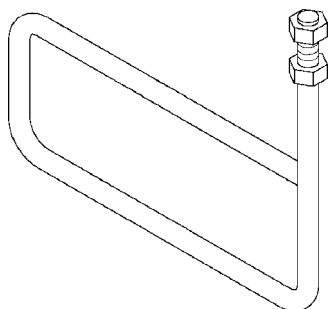
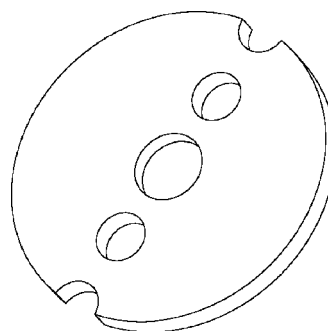


**Compressor, Spring - 8251**

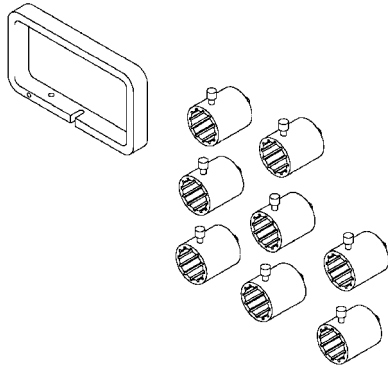


**Installer, Piston - 8252**

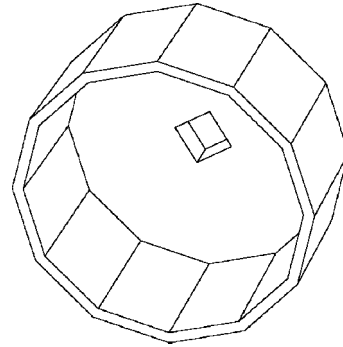
## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 545RFE (Continued)

**Installer, Seal - 8253****Adapter, Pressure Tap - 8258-A****Installer, Seal - 8254****Adapter, Line Pressure - 8259****Installer, Snap-ring - 8255****Fixture, Input Clutch Pressure - 8260****Stand, Support - 8257****Plate, Alignment - 8261**

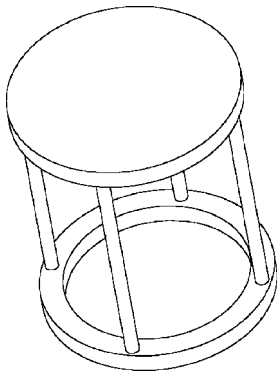
AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 545RFE (Continued)



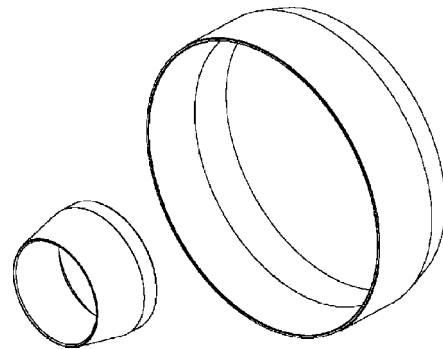
***End Play Set - 8266***



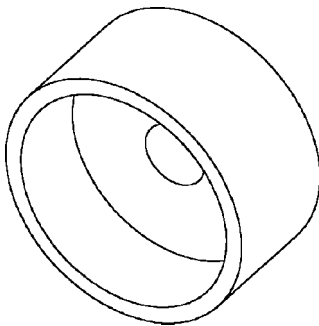
***Wrench, Filter - 8321***



***Compressor, Spring - 8285***



***Installer, Piston - 8504***



***Installer, Bearing - 8320***



## 4C RETAINER/BULKHEAD

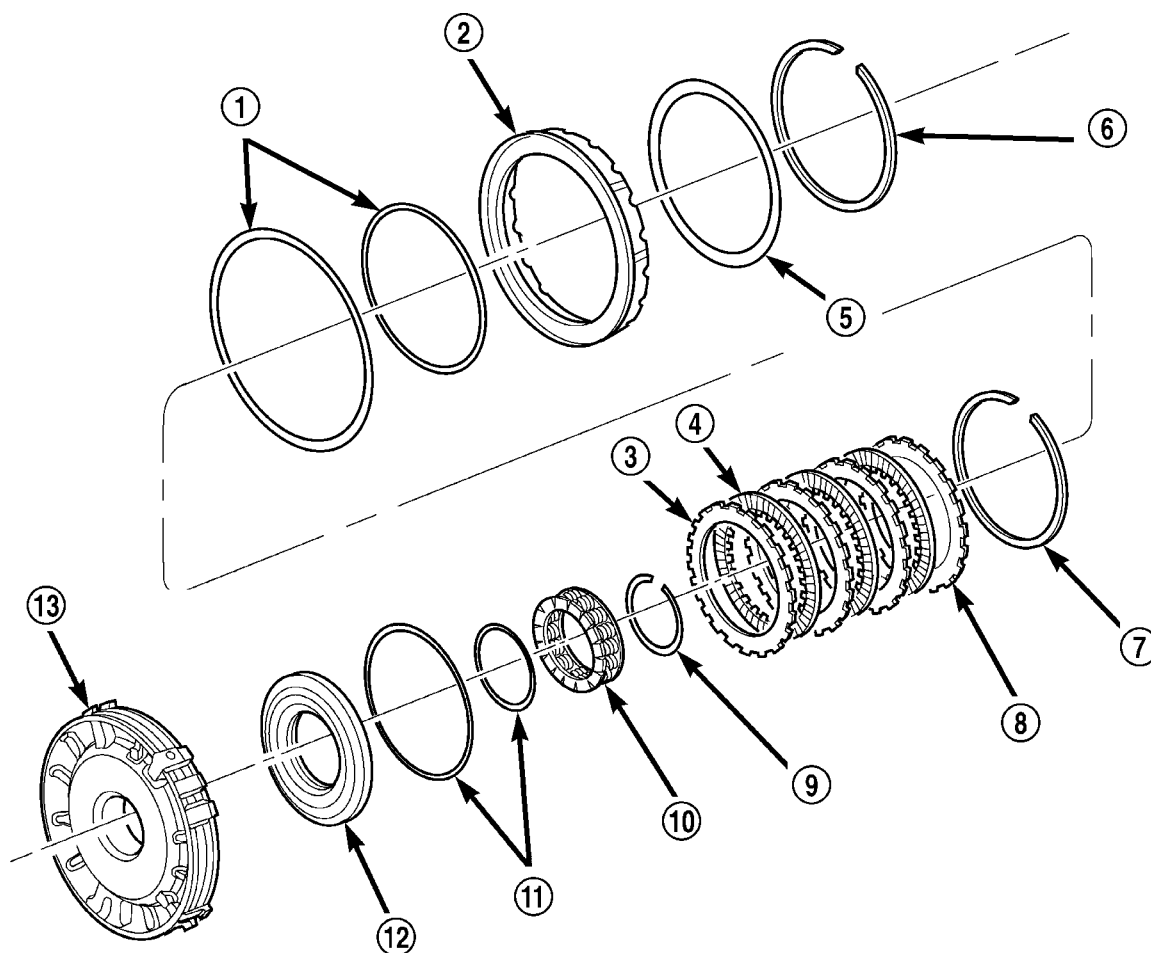
### DISASSEMBLY

- (1) Remove the 2C piston belleville spring snap-ring from the 4C retainer /bulkhead (Fig. 53).
- (2) Remove the 2C piston Belleville spring from the retainer/bulkhead (Fig. 53).
- (3) Remove the 2C piston from the retainer/bulkhead. Use 20 psi of air pressure to remove the piston if necessary.
- (4) Remove the 4C clutch snap-ring from the retainer/bulkhead (Fig. 53).
- (5) Remove the 4C clutch pack from the retainer/bulkhead (Fig. 53).
- (6) Using Spring Compressor 8250 and a suitable shop press, compress the 4C piston return spring and remove the snap-ring (Fig. 53).

- (7) Remove the 4C piston return spring and piston from the retainer/bulkhead (Fig. 53). Use 20 psi of air pressure to remove the piston if necessary.

### ASSEMBLY

- (1) Clean and inspect all components. Replace any components which show evidence of excessive wear or scoring.
- (2) Install new seals on the 2C and 4C pistons (Fig. 53).
- (3) Lubricate all seals with Mopar® ATF +4 prior to installation.
- (4) Install the 4C piston into the 4C retainer/bulkhead (Fig. 53).
- (5) Position the 4C piston return spring onto the 4C piston.



80c07032

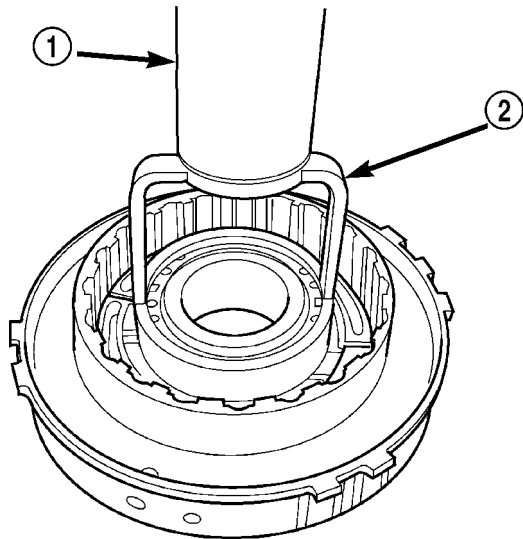
**Fig. 53 4C Retainer/Bulkhead Components**

- 1 - SEAL
- 2 - 2C PISTON
- 3 - PLATE
- 4 - DISC
- 5 - 2C BELLEVILLE SPRING
- 6 - SNAP-RING
- 7 - SNAP-RING (SELECT)

- 8 - REACTION PLATE
- 9 - SNAP-RING
- 10 - RETURN SPRING
- 11 - SEAL
- 12 - 4C PISTON
- 13 - 4C RETAINER/BULKHEAD

## 4C RETAINER/BULKHEAD (Continued)

(6) Using Spring Compressor 8250 and a suitable shop press, compress the 4C piston return spring and install the snap-ring (Fig. 54).



80c07419

**Fig. 54 Compress 4C Piston Return Spring Using Tool 8250**

- 1 - PRESS  
2 - TOOL 8250

(7) Assemble and install the 4C clutch pack into the retainer/bulkhead (Fig. 53) with the steel separator plate against the piston.

(8) Install the 4C reaction plate and snap-ring into the retainer/bulkhead (Fig. 53). The 4C reaction plate is non-directional.

(9) Measure the 4C clutch clearance. The correct clutch clearance is 0.77-1.39 mm (0.030-0.055 in.). The snap-ring is selectable. Install the chosen snap-ring and re-measure to verify the selection.

(10) Install the 2C piston into the retainer/bulkhead (Fig. 53).

(11) Position the 2C Belleville spring onto the 2C piston.

(12) Position the 2C Belleville spring snap-ring onto the 2C Belleville spring (Fig. 53).

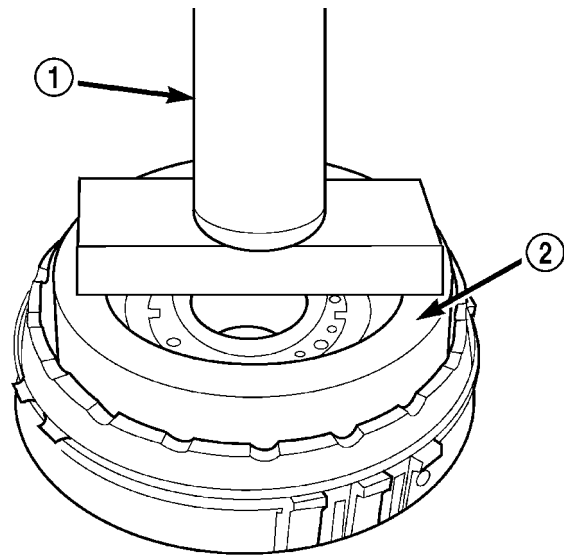
(13) Using Spring Compressor 8249 and a suitable shop press (Fig. 55), compress the belleville spring until the snap-ring is engaged with the snap-ring groove in the retainer/bulkhead.

## ADAPTER HOUSING SEAL

## REMOVAL

(1) Remove the transfer case from the transmission.

(2) Using a screw mounted on a slide hammer, remove the adapter housing seal.



80c07418

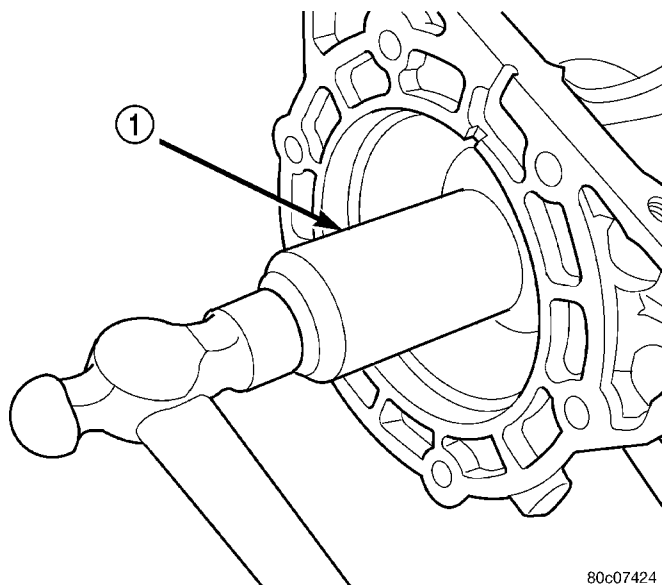
**Fig. 55 Compress 2C Belleville Spring Using Tool 8249**

- 1 - PRESS  
2 - TOOL 8249

## INSTALLATION

(1) Clean the adapter seal bore in the adapter housing of any residue or particles remaining from the original seal.

(2) Install new oil seal in the adapter housing using Seal Installer C-3860-A (Fig. 56). A properly installed seal is flush to the face of the seal bore.



80c07424

**Fig. 56 Adapter Housing Seal Installation**

- 1 - TOOL C-3860-A

(3) Install the transfer case onto the transmission.

## BRAKE TRANSMISSION SHIFT INTERLOCK MECHANISM

### DESCRIPTION

The Brake Transmission Shifter/Ignition Interlock (BTSI), is a cable and solenoid operated system. It interconnects the automatic transmission floor mounted shifter to the steering column ignition switch (Fig. 57).

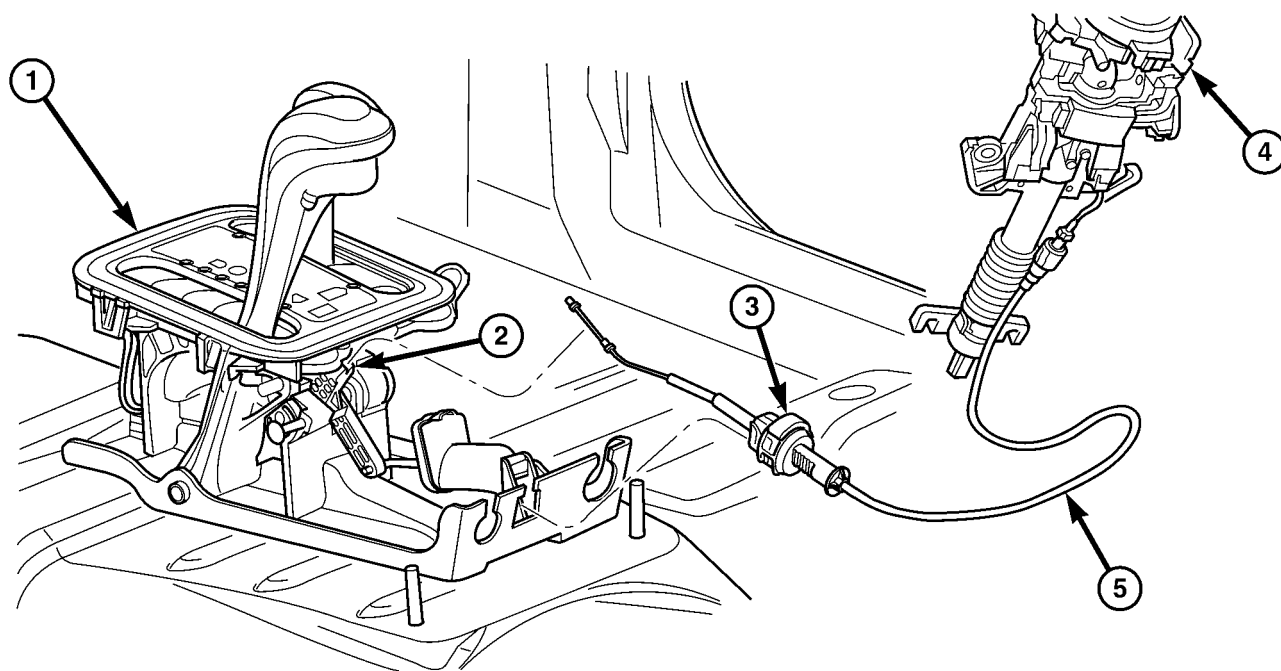
### OPERATION

The system locks the shifter into the PARK position. The interlock system is engaged whenever the ignition switch is in the LOCK or ACCESSORY position. An additional electrically activated feature will prevent shifting out of the PARK position unless the brake pedal is depressed approximately one-half an inch. A magnetic holding device in the shifter assembly is energized when the ignition is in the RUN position. When the key is in the RUN position and the brake pedal is depressed, the shifter is unlocked and will move into any gear position. The interlock system also prevents the ignition switch from being turned to the LOCK or ACCESSORY position, unless the shifter is fully locked into the PARK position.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - BRAKE TRANSMISSION SHIFT INTERLOCK

### SYSTEM VERIFICATION

- (1) Verify that the key can only be removed in the PARK position
- (2) When the shift lever is in PARK And the shift handle pushbutton is in the "OUT" position, the ignition key cylinder should rotate freely from OFF to LOCK. When the shifter is in any other gear or neutral position, the ignition key cylinder should not rotate to the LOCK position.
- (3) Shifting out of PARK should not be possible when the ignition key cylinder is in the OFF position.
- (4) Shifting out of PARK should not be possible while applying normal pushbutton force and ignition key cylinder is in the RUN or START positions unless the foot brake pedal is depressed approximately 1/2 inch (12mm).
- (5) Shifting out of PARK should not be possible when the ignition key cylinder is in the ACCESSORY or LOCK positions.
- (6) Shifting between any gears, NEUTRAL or into PARK may be done without depressing foot brake pedal with ignition switch in RUN or START positions.



**Fig. 57 Ignition Interlock Cable**

1 - SHIFT MECHANISM  
2 - SHIFTER BTSI LEVER  
3 - ADJUSTMENT CLIP

4 - STEERING COLUMN ASSEMBLY  
5 - INTERLOCK CABLE

80dba6a6

## BRAKE TRANSMISSION SHIFT INTERLOCK MECHANISM (Continued)

## DIAGNOSTIC CHART

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSE	CORRECTION
KEY WILL NOT ROTATE TO THE OFF/LOCK POSITION.	1. Misadjusted Park Lock cable.	1. Adjust Park Lock cable. (Refer to 21 - TRANSMISSION AND TRANSFER CASE/AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION/BRAKE TRANSMISSION SHIFT INTERLOCK SYSTEM - ADJUSTMENTS)
	2. Misadjusted gearshift cable.	2. Adjust gearshift cable. (Refer to 21 - TRANSMISSION AND TRANSFER CASE/AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION/GEAR SHIFT CABLE - ADJUSTMENTS)
	3. Burrs on ignition key.	3. Remove burrs and cycle key several times to verify operation.
	4. Binding or broken components.	4. Inspect system components and repair/replace components as necessary.
VEHICLE WILL NOT START UNLESS SHIFTER IS HELD FORWARD OF THE PARK POSITION.	1. Misadjusted gearshift cable.	1. Adjust gearshift cable. (Refer to 21 - TRANSMISSION AND TRANSFER CASE/AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION/GEAR SHIFT CABLE - ADJUSTMENTS)

## ADJUSTMENTS - BRAKE TRANSMISSION SHIFT INTERLOCK

The park interlock cable is part of the brake/shift lever interlock system. Correct cable adjustment is important to proper interlock operation. The gear shift and park lock cables must both be correctly adjusted in order to shift out of PARK.

## ADJUSTMENT PROCEDURE

(1) Remove floor console as necessary for access to the brake transmission shift interlock cable. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/FLOOR CONSOLE - REMOVAL)

(2) Shift the transmission into the PARK position.

(3) Turn ignition switch to LOCK position. **Be sure ignition key cylinder is in the LOCK position. Cable will not adjust correctly in any other position.**

(4) Pull cable lock button up to release cable (Fig. 58).

(5) Ensure that the cable is free to self-adjust by pushing cable rearward and releasing.

(6) Push lock button down until it snaps in place.

## BTSI FUNCTION CHECK

(1) Verify removal of ignition key allowed in PARK position only.

(2) When the shift lever is in PARK, and the shift handle push-button is in the out position, the ignition key cylinder should rotate freely from off to lock. When the shifter is in any other position, the ignition key should not rotate from off to lock.

(3) Shifting out of PARK should be possible when the ignition key cylinder is in the off position.

(4) Shifting out of PARK should not be possible while applying normal push-button force, and ignition key cylinder is in the run or start positions, unless the foot brake pedal is depressed approximately 1/2 inch (12mm).

(5) Shifting out of PARK should not be possible when the ignition key cylinder is in the accessory or lock position.

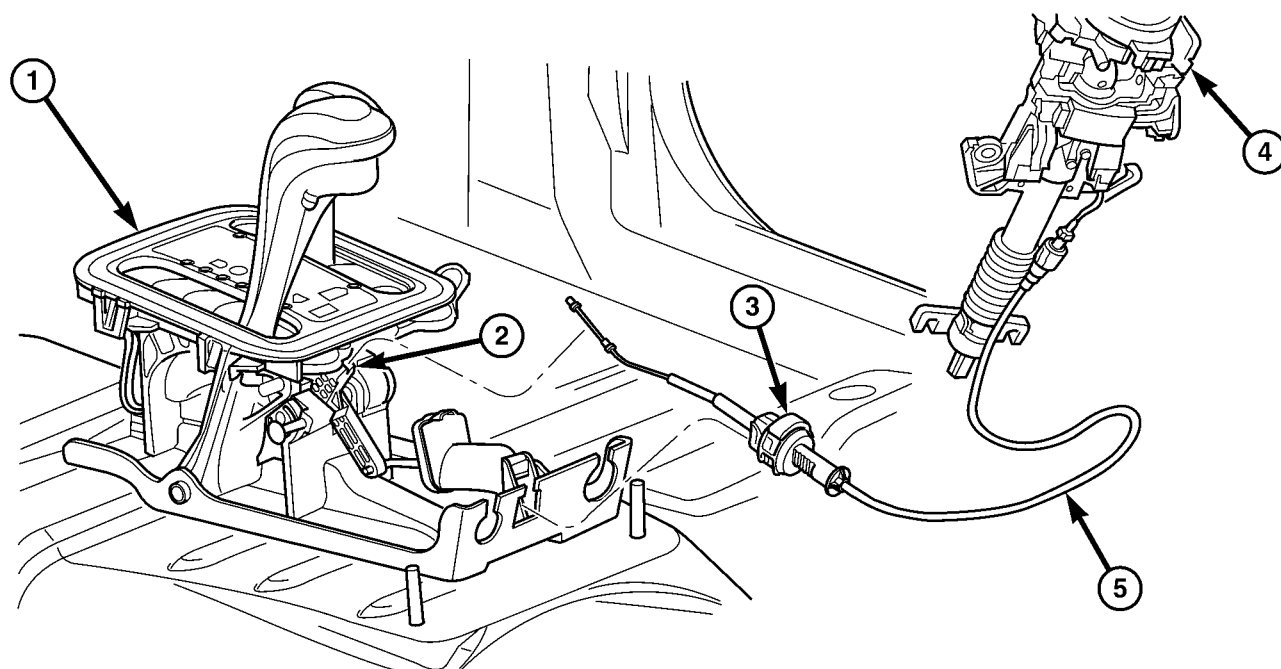
(6) Shifting between any gear and NEUTRAL, or PARK, may be done without depressing foot brake with ignition switch in run or start positions.

(7) The floor shifter lever and gate positions should be in alignment with all transmission detent positions.

(8) Engine starts must be possible with shifter lever in PARK or NEUTRAL gate positions only. Engine starts must not be possible in any other gate positions other than PARK or NEUTRAL.

(9) With shifter lever handle push-button not depressed and lever detent in:

## BRAKE TRANSMISSION SHIFT INTERLOCK MECHANISM (Continued)



80dba6a6

**Fig. 58 Brake Transmission Shift Interlock Cable**

1 - SHIFT MECHANISM  
2 - SHIFTER BTSI LEVER  
3 - ADJUSTMENT CLIP

4 - STEERING COLUMN ASSEMBLY  
5 - INTERLOCK CABLE

- PARK position- apply forward force on center of handle and remove pressure. Engine start must be possible.

- PARK position- apply rearward force on center of handle and remove pressure. Engine start must be possible.

- NEUTRAL position- engine start must be possible.

- NEUTRAL position, engine running and brakes applied- Apply forward force on center of shift handle. Transmission should not be able to shift into REVERSE detent.

## FLUID AND FILTER

### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING

#### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - EFFECTS OF INCORRECT FLUID LEVEL

A low fluid level allows the pump to take in air along with the fluid. Air in the fluid will cause fluid pressures to be low and develop slower than normal. If the transmission is overfilled, the gears churn the fluid into foam. This aerates the fluid and causing

the same conditions occurring with a low level. In either case, air bubbles cause fluid overheating, oxidation and varnish buildup which interferes with valve and clutch operation. Foaming also causes fluid expansion which can result in fluid overflow from the transmission vent or fill tube. Fluid overflow can easily be mistaken for a leak if inspection is not careful.

#### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - CAUSES OF BURNT FLUID

Burnt, discolored fluid is a result of overheating which has three primary causes.

(1) Internal clutch slippage, usually caused by low line pressure, inadequate clutch apply pressure, or clutch seal failure.

(2) A result of restricted fluid flow through the main and/or auxiliary cooler. This condition is usually the result of a faulty or improperly installed drainback valve, a damaged main cooler, or severe restrictions in the coolers and lines caused by debris or kinked lines.

(3) Heavy duty operation with a vehicle not properly equipped for this type of operation. Trailer towing or similar high load operation will overheat the transmission fluid if the vehicle is improperly equipped. Such vehicles should have an auxiliary



## FLUID AND FILTER (Continued)

transmission fluid cooler, a heavy duty cooling system, and the engine/axle ratio combination needed to handle heavy loads.

### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - FLUID CONTAMINATION

Transmission fluid contamination is generally a result of:

- adding incorrect fluid
- failure to clean dipstick and fill tube when checking level
- engine coolant entering the fluid
- internal failure that generates debris
- overheat that generates sludge (fluid breakdown)
- failure to replace contaminated converter after repair

The use of non-recommended fluids can result in transmission failure. The usual results are erratic shifts, slippage, abnormal wear and eventual failure due to fluid breakdown and sludge formation. Avoid this condition by using recommended fluids only.

The dipstick cap and fill tube should be wiped clean before checking fluid level. Dirt, grease and other foreign material on the cap and tube could fall into the tube if not removed beforehand. Take the time to wipe the cap and tube clean before withdrawing the dipstick.

Engine coolant in the transmission fluid is generally caused by a cooler malfunction. The only remedy is to replace the radiator as the cooler in the radiator is not a serviceable part. If coolant has circulated through the transmission, an overhaul is necessary.

The torque converter should be replaced whenever a failure generates sludge and debris. This is necessary because normal converter flushing procedures will not remove all contaminants.

## STANDARD PROCEDURE

### STANDARD PROCEDURE - FLUID LEVEL CHECK

Low fluid level can cause a variety of conditions because it allows the pump to take in air along with the fluid. As in any hydraulic system, air bubbles make the fluid spongy, therefore, pressures will be low and build up slowly.

Improper filling can also raise the fluid level too high. When the transmission has too much fluid, the geartrain churns up foam and cause the same conditions which occur with a low fluid level.

In either case, air bubbles can cause overheating and/or fluid oxidation, and varnishing. This can interfere with normal valve, clutch, and accumulator operation. Foaming can also result in fluid escaping

from the transmission vent where it may be mistaken for a leak.

After the fluid has been checked, seat the dipstick fully to seal out water and dirt.

The transmission has a dipstick to check oil level. It is located on the right side of the engine. Be sure to wipe all dirt from dipstick handle before removing.

The torque converter fills in both the P (PARK) and N (NEUTRAL) positions. Place the selector lever in P (PARK) to be sure that the fluid level check is accurate. **The engine should be running at idle speed for at least one minute, with the vehicle on level ground.** At normal operating temperature (approximately 82 C. or 180 F.), the fluid level is correct if it is in the HOT region (cross-hatched area) on the oil level indicator. The fluid level will be approximately at the upper COLD hole of the dipstick at 70° F fluid temperature.

**NOTE: Engine and Transmission should be at normal operating temperature before performing this procedure.**

- (1) Start engine and apply parking brake.
- (2) Shift the transmission into DRIVE for approximately 2 seconds.
- (3) Shift the transmission into REVERSE for approximately 2 seconds.
- (4) Shift the transmission into PARK.
- (5) Hook up DRB® scan tool and select transmission.
- (6) Select sensors.
- (7) Read the transmission temperature value.
- (8) Compare the fluid temperature value with the chart. (Fig. 59)
- (9) Adjust transmission fluid level shown on the dipstick according to the chart.

**NOTE: After adding any fluid to the transmission, wait a minimum of 2 minutes for the oil to fully drain from the fill tube into the transmission before rechecking the fluid level.**

- (10) Check transmission for leaks.

### STANDARD PROCEDURE - FLUID AND FILTER REPLACEMENT

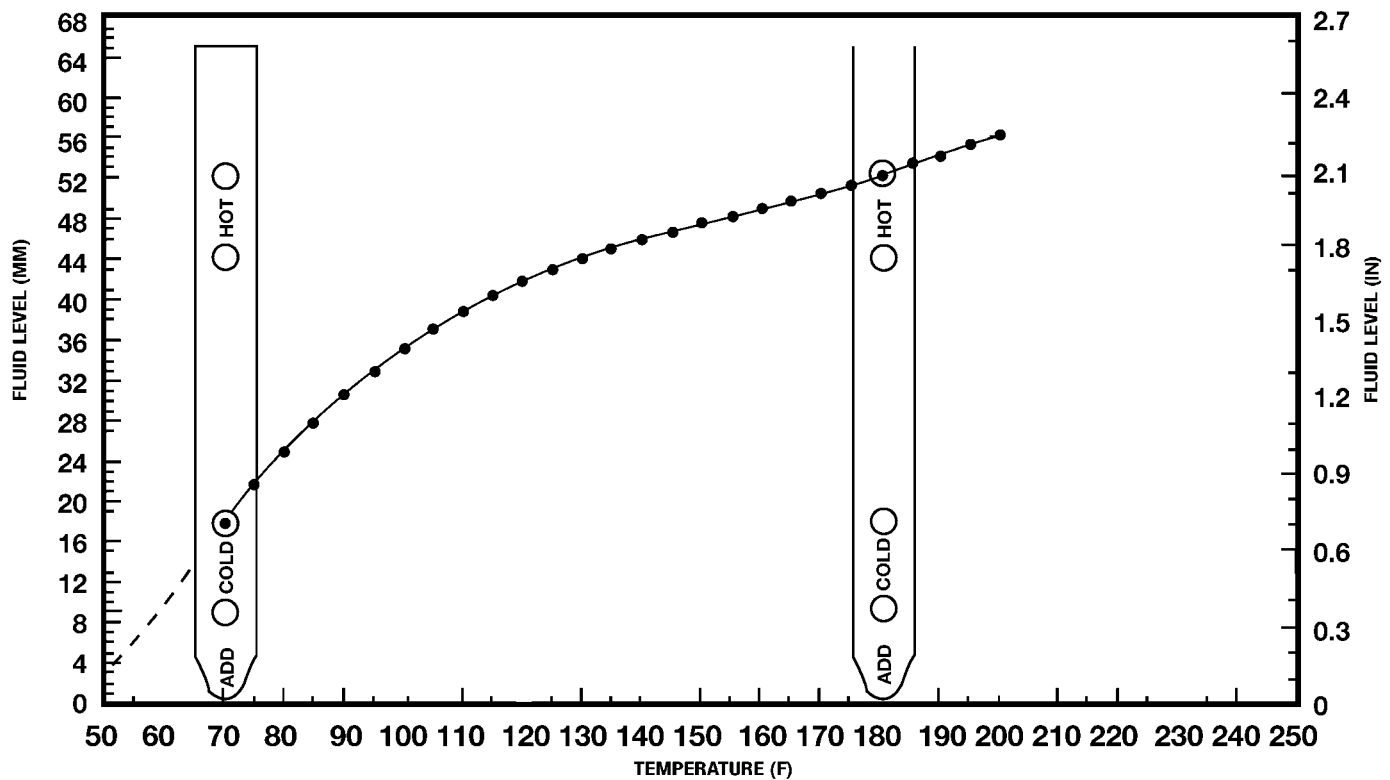
For proper service intervals (Refer to LUBRICATION & MAINTENANCE/MAINTENANCE SCHEDULES - DESCRIPTION).

#### REMOVAL

- (1) Hoist and support vehicle on safety stands.
- (2) Place a large diameter shallow drain pan beneath the transmission pan.
- (3) Remove bolts holding front and sides of pan to transmission.



## FLUID AND FILTER (Continued)



80c072fc

**Fig. 59 Transmission Fluid Temperature Chart**

(4) Loosen bolts holding rear of pan to transmission.

(5) Slowly separate front of pan away from transmission allowing the fluid to drain into drain pan.

(6) Hold up pan and remove remaining bolts holding pan to transmission.

(7) While holding pan level, lower pan away from transmission.

(8) Pour remaining fluid in pan into drain pan.

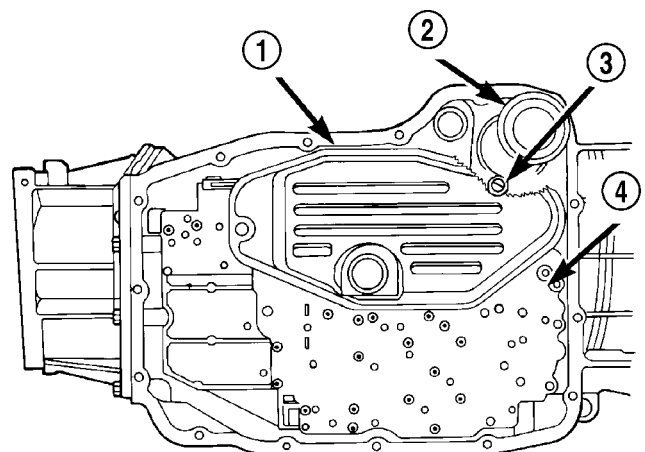
(9) Remove screw holding filter to valve body (Fig. 60).

(10) Separate filter from valve body and oil pump and pour fluid in filter into drain pan.

(11) Remove and discard the oil filter seal from the bottom of the oil pump.

(12) If replacing the cooler return filter, use Oil Filter Wrench 8321 to remove the filter from the transmission.

(13) Dispose of used trans fluid and filter(s) properly.



80b9a595

**Fig. 60 Transmission Filters - 4X4 Shown**

- 1 - PRIMARY OIL FILTER
- 2 - COOLER RETURN FILTER
- 3 - COOLER RETURN FILTER BYPASS VALVE
- 4 - VALVE BODY

amounts of debris, refer to the diagnosis section of this group.

**CLEANING**

(1) Using a suitable solvent, clean pan and magnet.

**INSPECTION**

Inspect bottom of pan and magnet for excessive amounts of metal. A light coating of clutch material on the bottom of the pan does not indicate a problem unless accompanied by a slipping condition or shift lag. If fluid and pan are contaminated with excessive

## FLUID AND FILTER (Continued)

(2) Using a suitable gasket scraper, clean original sealing material from surface of transmission case and the transmission pan.

## INSTALLATION

(1) Install a new primary oil filter seal in the oil pump inlet bore. Seat the seal in the bore with the butt end of a hammer, or other suitable tool.

**CAUTION:** The primary oil filter seal **MUST** be fully installed flush against the oil pump body. **DO NOT** install the seal onto the filter neck and attempt to install the filter and seal as an assembly. **Damage to the transmission will result.**

(2) Place replacement filter in position on valve body and into the oil pump.

(3) Install screw to hold filter to valve body (Fig. 60). Tighten screw to 4.5 N·m (40 in. lbs.) torque.

(4) Install new cooler return filter onto the transmission, if necessary. Torque the filter to 14.12 N·m (125 in.lbs.).

(5) Place bead of Mopar® RTV sealant onto the transmission case sealing surface.

(6) Place pan in position on transmission.

(7) Install bolts to hold pan to transmission. Tighten bolts to 11.8 N·m (105 in. lbs.) torque.

(8) Lower vehicle and fill transmission with Mopar® ATF +4.

## STANDARD PROCEDURE - TRANSMISSION FILL

To avoid overfilling transmission after a fluid change or overhaul, perform the following procedure:

(1) Remove dipstick and insert clean funnel in transmission fill tube.

(2) Add following initial quantity of Mopar® ATF +4 to transmission:

(a) If only fluid and filter were changed, add **10 pints (5 quarts)** of ATF +4 to transmission.

(b) If transmission was completely overhauled and the torque converter was replaced or drained, add **24 pints (12 quarts)** of ATF +4 to transmission.

(3) Check the transmission fluid (Refer to 21 - TRANSMISSION/AUTOMATIC - RFE/FLUID - STANDARD PROCEDURE) and adjust as required.

## GEARSHIFT CABLE

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - GEARSHIFT CABLE

(1) The floor shifter lever and gate positions should be in alignment with all transmission PARK, NEUTRAL, and gear detent positions.

(2) Engine starts must be possible with floor shift lever in PARK or NEUTRAL gate positions only. Engine starts must not be possible in any other gear position.

(3) With floor shift lever handle push-button not depressed and lever in:

(a) PARK position - Apply forward force on center of handle and remove pressure. Engine starts must be possible.

(b) PARK position - Apply rearward force on center of handle and remove pressure. Engine starts must be possible.

(c) NEUTRAL position - Normal position. Engine starts must be possible.

(d) NEUTRAL position - Engine running and brakes applied, apply forward force on center of shift handle. Transmission shall not be able to shift from NEUTRAL to REVERSE.

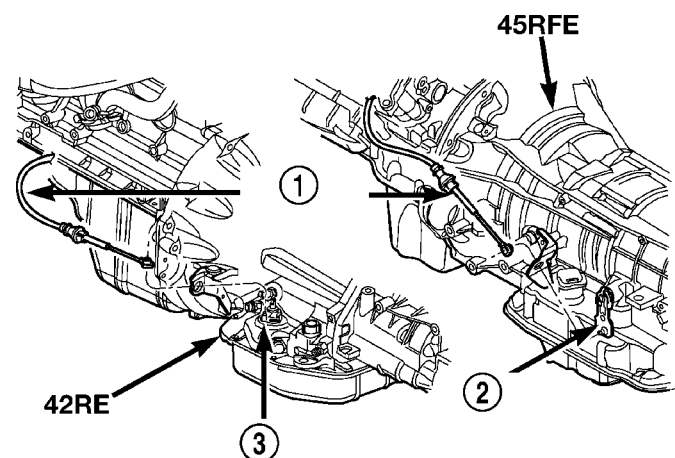
## REMOVAL

(1) Shift transmission into PARK.

(2) Raise vehicle.

(3) Remove the shift cable eyelet from the transmission manual shift lever (Fig. 61).

(4) Remove shift cable from the cable support bracket.



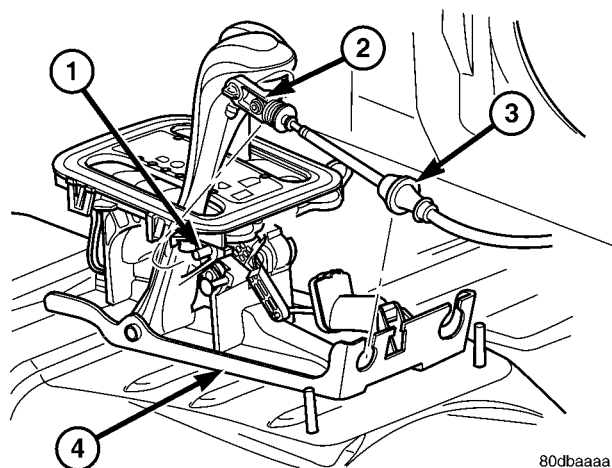
80ba79c4

**Fig. 61 Remove Shift Cable From Transmission**

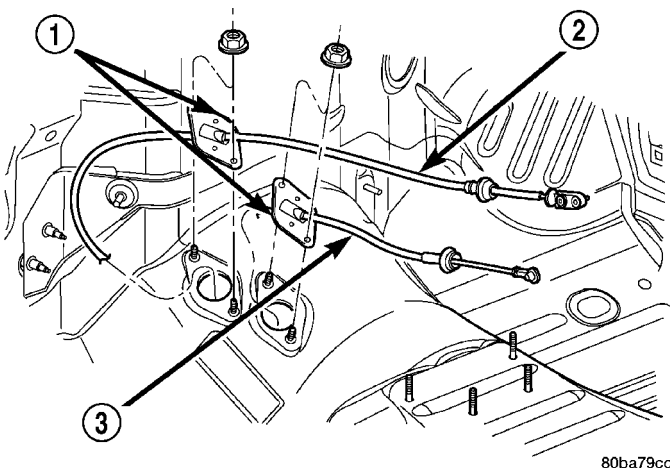
- 1 - SHIFT CABLE
- 2 - MANUAL LEVER
- 3 - MANUAL LEVER

## GEARSHIFT CABLE (Continued)

- (5) Lower vehicle.
- (6) Remove necessary console parts for access to shift lever assembly and shift cable. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/FLOOR CONSOLE - REMOVAL)
- (7) Disconnect cable at shift lever and shifter assembly bracket (Fig. 62).
- (8) Remove the nuts holding the shift cable seal plate to the floor pan (Fig. 63).
- (9) Pull cable through floor panel opening.

**Fig. 62 Transmission Shift Cable at Shifter**

- 1 - SHIFT LEVER PIN
- 2 - ADJUSTMENT SCREW
- 3 - SHIFT CABLE
- 4 - SHIFTER ASSEMBLY BRACKET

**Fig. 63 Shift Cables at Floor Pan**

- 1 - SEAL PLATES
- 2 - TRANSMISSION SHIFT CABLE
- 3 - TRANSFER CASE SHIFT CABLE

**INSTALLATION**

- (1) Route cable through hole in floor pan.
- (2) Install seal plate to studs in floor pan.
- (3) Install nuts to hold seal plate to floor pan. Tighten nuts to 7 N·m (65 in.lbs.).
- (4) Install the shift cable to the shifter assembly bracket. Push cable into the bracket until secure.
- (5) Place the floor shifter lever in PARK position.
- (6) Loosen the adjustment screw on the shift cable.
- (7) Snap the shift cable onto the shift lever pin.
- (8) Raise the vehicle.
- (9) Install the shift cable to the shift cable support bracket.
- (10) Shift the transmission into PARK. PARK is the rearmost detent position on the transmission manual shift lever.
- (11) Snap the shift cable onto the transmission manual shift lever.
- (12) Lower vehicle.
- (13) Verify that the shift lever is in the PARK position.
- (14) Tighten the adjustment screw to 7 N·m (65 in.lbs.).
- (15) Verify correct shifter operation.
- (16) Install any console parts removed for access to shift lever assembly and shift cable. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/FLOOR CONSOLE - INSTALLATION)

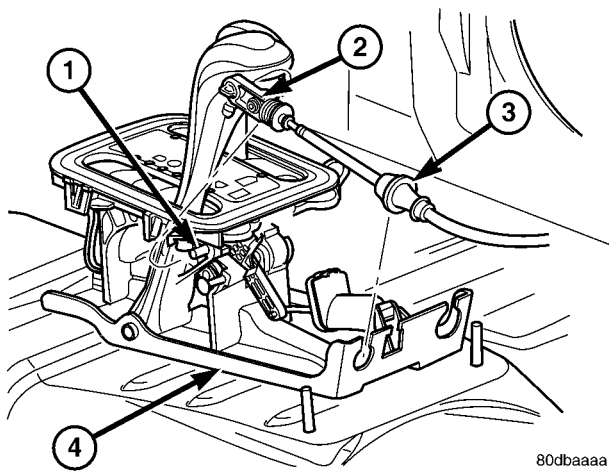
- (10) Remove shift cable from vehicle.

## GEARSHIFT CABLE (Continued)

**ADJUSTMENTS - GEARSHIFT CABLE**

Check adjustment by starting the engine in PARK and NEUTRAL. Adjustment is CORRECT if the engine starts only in these positions. Adjustment is INCORRECT if the engine starts in one but not both positions. If the engine starts in any position other than PARK or NEUTRAL, or if the engine will not start at all, the park/neutral position switch or TRS may be faulty.

- (1) Shift transmission into PARK.
- (2) Remove floor console as necessary for access to the shift cable adjustment. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/FLOOR CONSOLE - REMOVAL)
- (3) Loosen the shift cable adjustment screw (Fig. 64).

**Fig. 64 Shift Cable at the Shifter**

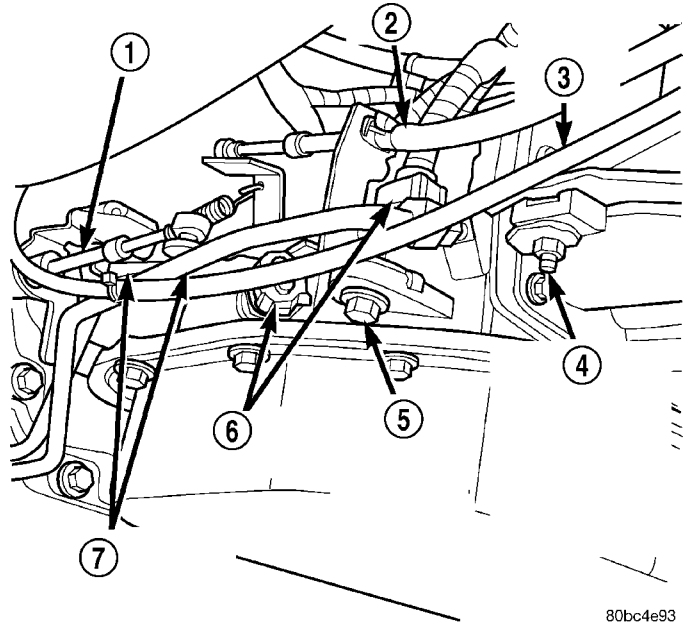
- 1 - SHIFT LEVER PIN
- 2 - ADJUSTMENT SCREW
- 3 - SHIFT CABLE
- 4 - SHIFTER ASSEMBLY BRACKET

- (4) Raise vehicle.
- (5) Unsnap cable eyelet from transmission shift lever (Fig. 65).

(6) Verify transmission shift lever is in PARK detent by moving lever fully rearward. Last rearward detent is PARK position.

(7) Verify positive engagement of transmission park lock by attempting to rotate propeller shaft. Shaft will not rotate when park lock is engaged.

- (8) Snap cable eyelet onto transmission shift lever.
- (9) Lower vehicle
- (10) Tighten the shift cable adjustment screw to 7 N·m (65 in.lbs.).
- (11) Verify correct operation.
- (12) Install any floor console components removed for access. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/FLOOR CONSOLE - INSTALLATION)

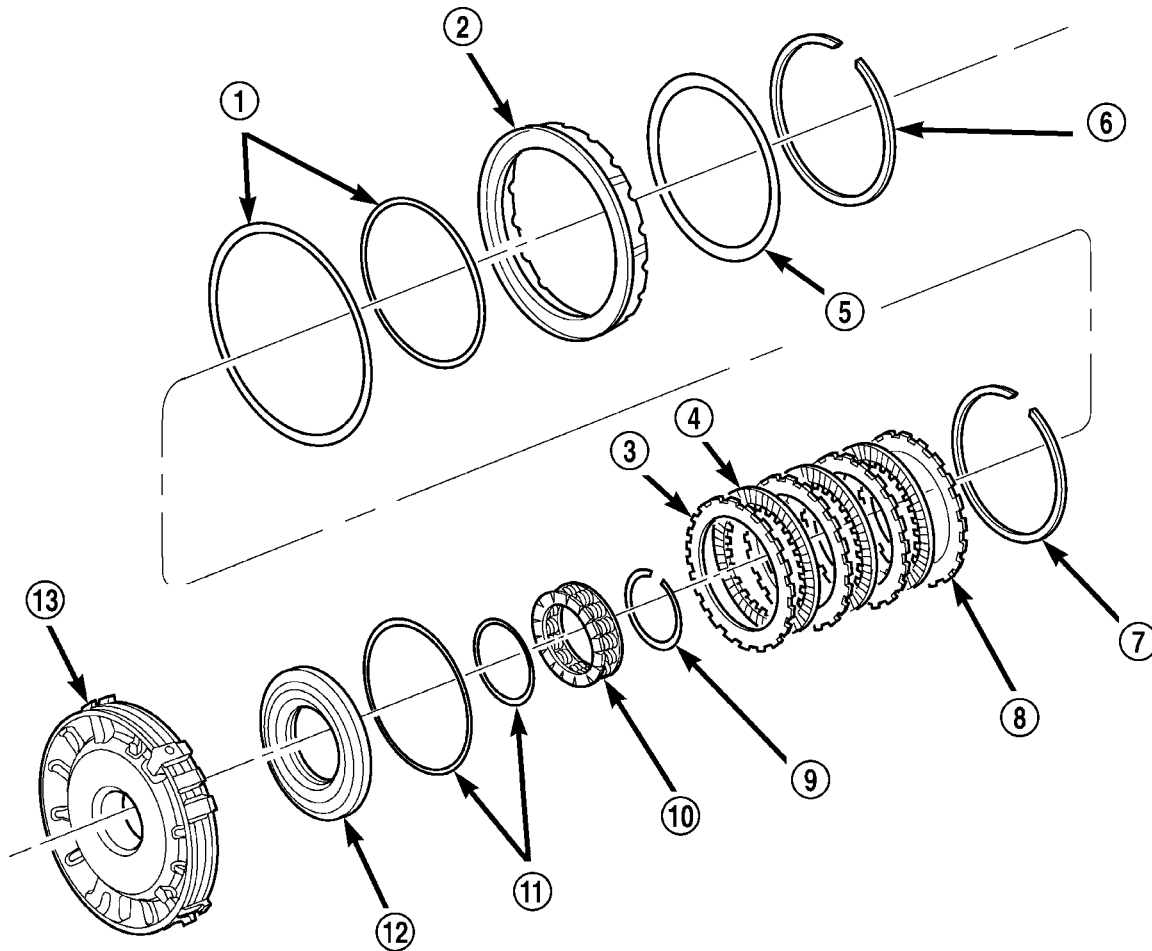
**Fig. 65 Shift Cable at Transmission**

- 1 - TRANSMISSION SHIFTER CABLE
- 2 - THROTTLE VALVE CABLE
- 3 - TRANSFER CASE SHIFTER CABLE
- 4 - TRANSFER CASE SHIFTER CABLE BRACKET RETAINING BOLT(S)
- 5 - THROTTLE VALVE CABLE BRACKET RETAINING BOLT
- 6 - ELECTRICAL CONNECTORS
- 7 - TRANSMISSION FLUID LINES

## HOLDING CLUTCHES

### DESCRIPTION

Three hydraulically applied multi-disc clutches are used to hold some planetary geartrain components stationary while the input clutches drive others. The 2C, 4C, and Low/Reverse clutches are considered holding clutches. The 2C and 4C clutches are located in the 4C retainer/bulkhead (Fig. 66), while the Low/Reverse clutch is located at the rear of the transmission case (Fig. 67).

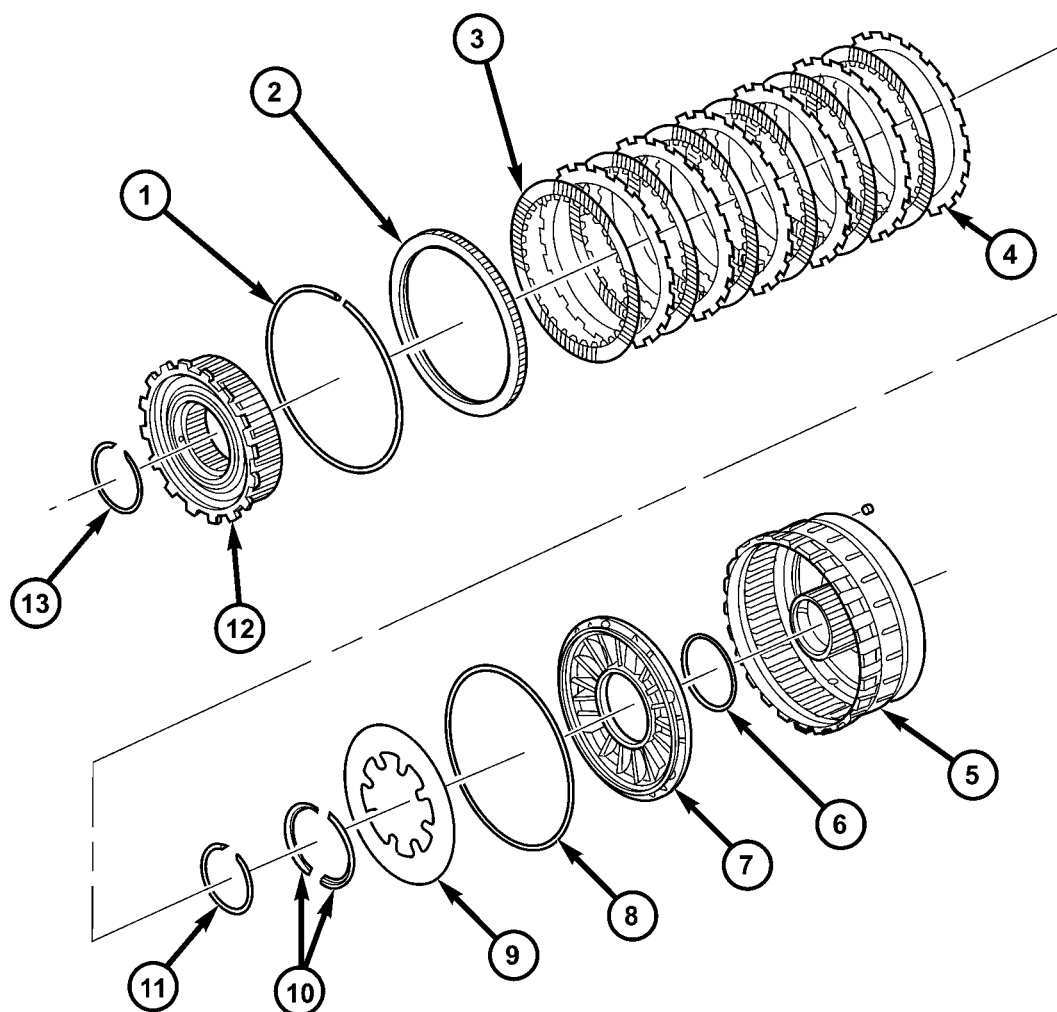


80c07032

**Fig. 66 2C and 4C Clutches**

- |                          |                           |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 - SEAL                 | 8 - REACTION PLATE        |
| 2 - 2C PISTON            | 9 - SNAP-RING             |
| 3 - PLATE                | 10 - RETURN SPRING        |
| 4 - DISC                 | 11 - SEAL                 |
| 5 - 2C BELLEVILLE SPRING | 12 - 4C PISTON            |
| 6 - SNAP-RING            | 13 - 4C RETAINER/BULKHEAD |
| 7 - SNAP-RING (SELECT)   |                           |

## HOLDING CLUTCHES (Continued)



808a2e78

**Fig. 67 Low/Reverse Clutch**

- 1 - SNAP-RING (SELECT)
- 2 - REACTION PLATE
- 3 - DISC
- 4 - PLATE
- 5 - L/R CLUTCH RETAINER
- 6 - SEAL
- 7 - PISTON

- 8 - SEAL
- 9 - BELLEVILLE SPRING
- 10 - RETAINER
- 11 - SNAP-RING
- 12 - OVERRUNNING CLUTCH
- 13 - SNAP-RING

**OPERATION****2C CLUTCH**

The 2C clutch is hydraulically applied in second and fifth gear by pressurized fluid against the 2C piston. When the 2C clutch is applied, the reverse sun gear assembly is held or grounded to the transmission case by holding the reaction planetary carrier.

**4C CLUTCH**

The 4C clutch is hydraulically applied in second prime and fourth gear by pressurized fluid against the 4C clutch piston. When the 4C clutch is applied,

the reaction annulus gear is held or grounded to the transmission case.

**LOW/REVERSE CLUTCH**

The Low/Reverse clutch is hydraulically applied in park, reverse, neutral, and first gear, only at low speeds, by pressurized fluid against the Low/Reverse clutch piston. When the Low/Reverse clutch is applied, the input annulus assembly is held or grounded to the transmission case.



## INPUT CLUTCH ASSEMBLY

### DESCRIPTION

Three hydraulically applied input clutches are used to drive planetary components. The underdrive, overdrive, and reverse clutches are considered input clutches and are contained within the input clutch assembly (Fig. 68) and (Fig. 69). The input clutch assembly also contains:

- Input shaft
- Input hub
- Clutch retainer
- Underdrive piston
- Overdrive/reverse piston
- Overdrive hub
- Underdrive hub

### OPERATION

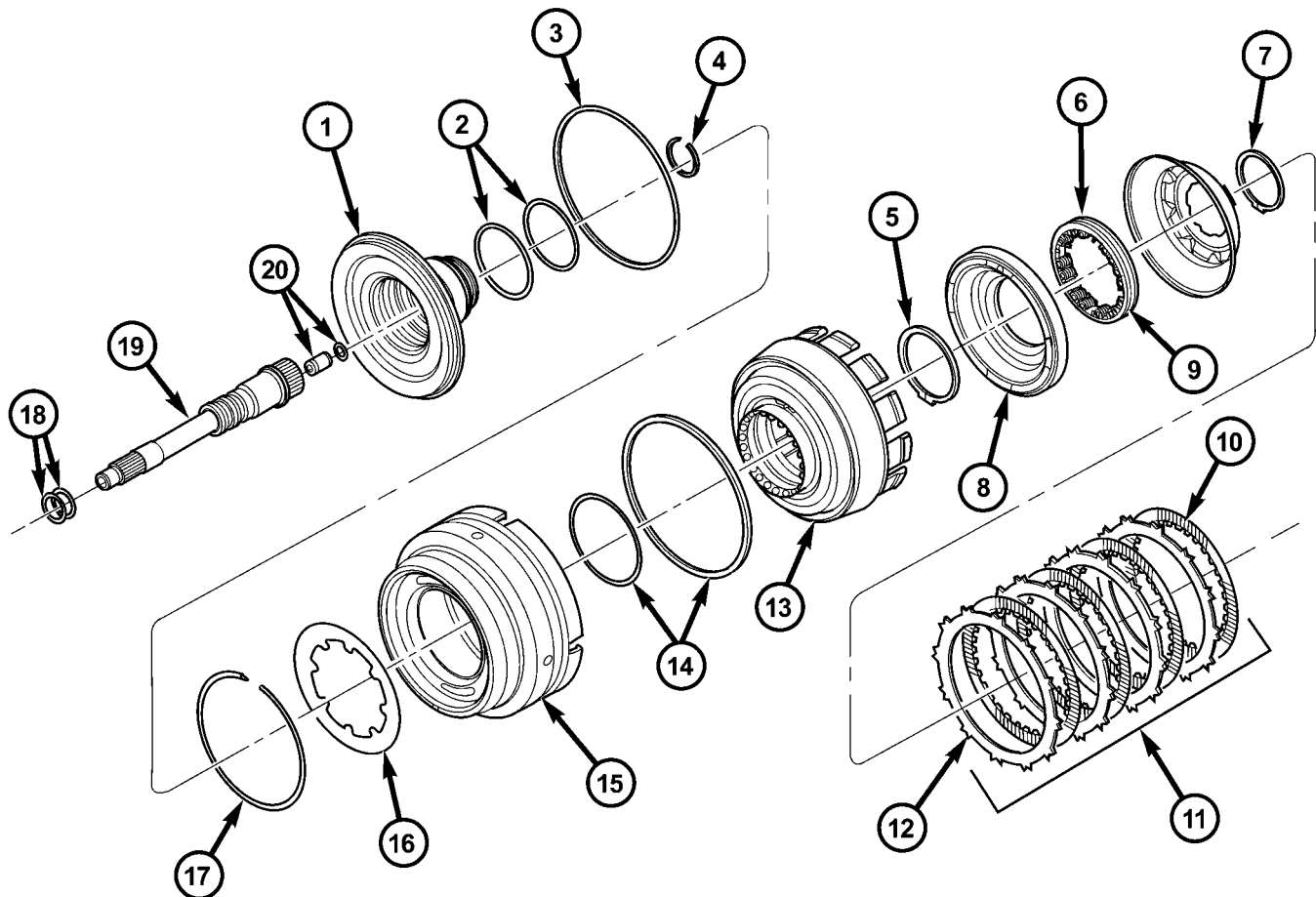
The three input clutches are responsible for driving different components of the planetary geartrain.

### UNDERDRIVE CLUTCH

The underdrive clutch is hydraulically applied in first, second, second prime, and third (direct) gears by pressurized fluid against the underdrive piston. When the underdrive clutch is applied, the underdrive hub drives the input sun gear.

### OVERDRIVE CLUTCH

The overdrive clutch is hydraulically applied in third (direct), fourth, and fifth gears by pressurized fluid against the overdrive/reverse piston. When the



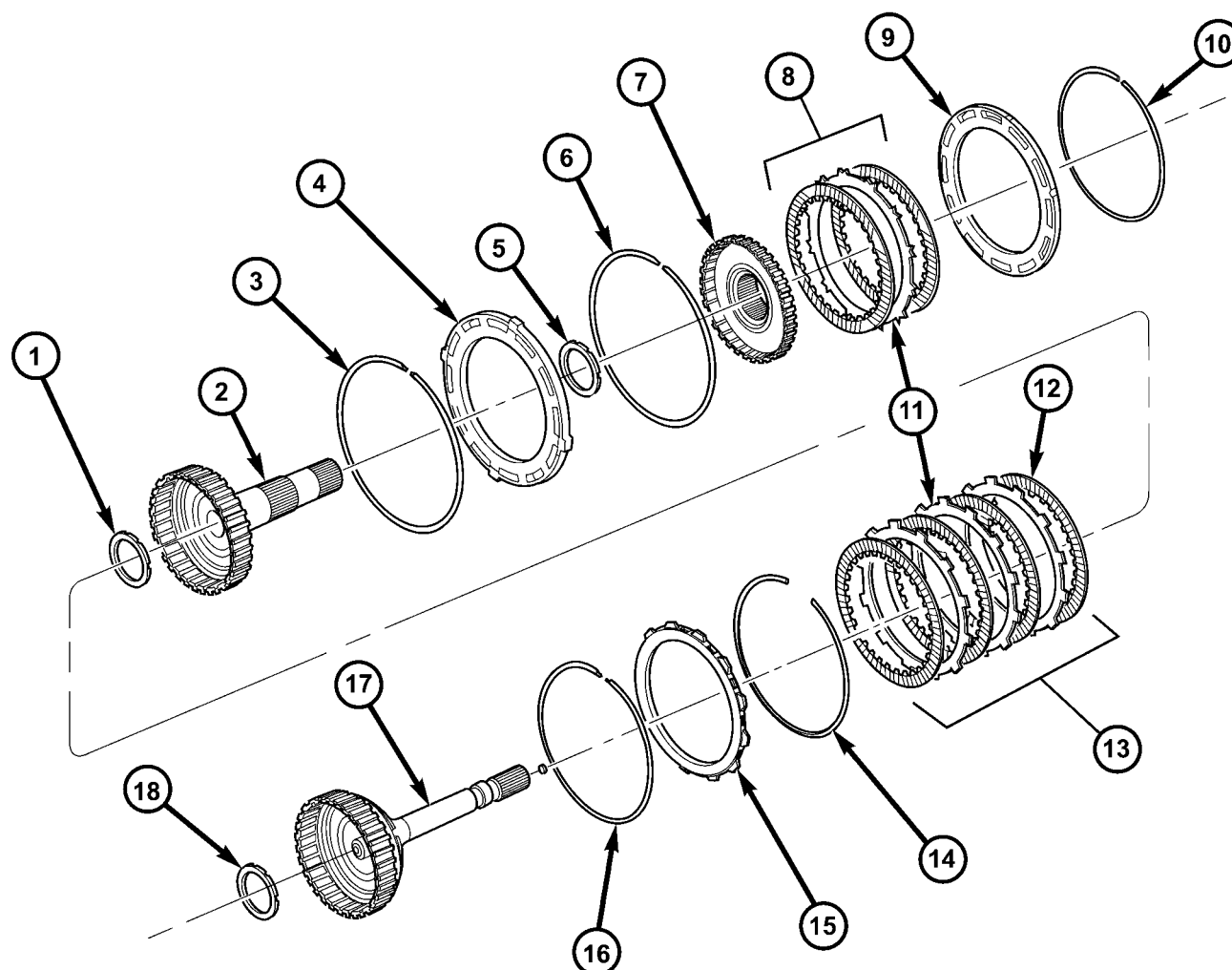
**Fig. 68 Input Clutch Assembly - Part 1**

- 1 - INPUT CLUTCH HUB
- 2 - O-RING SEALS
- 3 - SEAL
- 4 - SNAP-RING
- 5 - SNAP-RING
- 6 - UD BALANCE PISTON
- 7 - SNAP-RING
- 8 - UD PISTON
- 9 - SPRING
- 10 - DISC

- 11 - UD CLUTCH
- 12 - PLATE
- 13 - CLUTCH RETAINER
- 14 - SEAL
- 15 - OD/REV PISTON
- 16 - BELLEVILLE SPRING
- 17 - SNAP-RING
- 18 - SEAL RINGS
- 19 - INPUT SHAFT
- 20 - LUBRICATION CHECK VALVE AND SNAP-RING

808a2e66

## INPUT CLUTCH ASSEMBLY (Continued)



808a2e68

**Fig. 69 Input Clutch Assembly - Part 2**

- 1 - BEARING NUMBER 3
- 2 - OD HUB/SHAFT
- 3 - SNAP-RING (WAVE)
- 4 - REV/OD REACTION PLATE
- 5 - BEARING NUMBER 4
- 6 - SNAP-RING (FLAT)
- 7 - REVERSE HUB/SHAFT
- 8 - REVERSE CLUTCH
- 9 - REVERSE REACTION PLATE

- 10 - SNAP-RING (SELECT)
- 11 - PLATE
- 12 - DISC
- 13 - OD CLUTCH
- 14 - SNAP-RING (TAPERED)
- 15 - UD/OD REACTION PLATE
- 16 - SNAP-RING (FLAT)
- 17 - UD HUB/SHAFT
- 18 - BEARING NUMBER 2

overdrive clutch is applied, the overdrive hub drives the reverse carrier/input annulus assembly.

**REVERSE CLUTCH**

The reverse clutch is hydraulically applied in reverse gear by pressurized fluid against the overdrive/reverse piston. When the reverse clutch is applied, the reaction annulus gear is driven.

**DISASSEMBLY**

(1) Remove the reverse reaction plate selective snap-ring from the input clutch retainer (Fig. 70).

(2) Remove the reverse reaction plate from the input clutch retainer.

(3) Remove the reverse hub and reverse clutch pack from the input clutch retainer.

(4) Remove the number 4 bearing from the overdrive hub.

(5) Remove the overdrive hub from the input clutch retainer (Fig. 70).

(6) Remove the number 3 bearing from the underdrive hub.

(7) Remove the OD/reverse reaction plate snap-ring from the input clutch retainer.

## INPUT CLUTCH ASSEMBLY (Continued)

(8) Remove the underdrive hub, overdrive clutch, and overdrive reaction plate from the input clutch retainer (Fig. 70).

**NOTE:** The overdrive friction discs and steel discs are thicker than the matching components in the underdrive and reverse clutches.

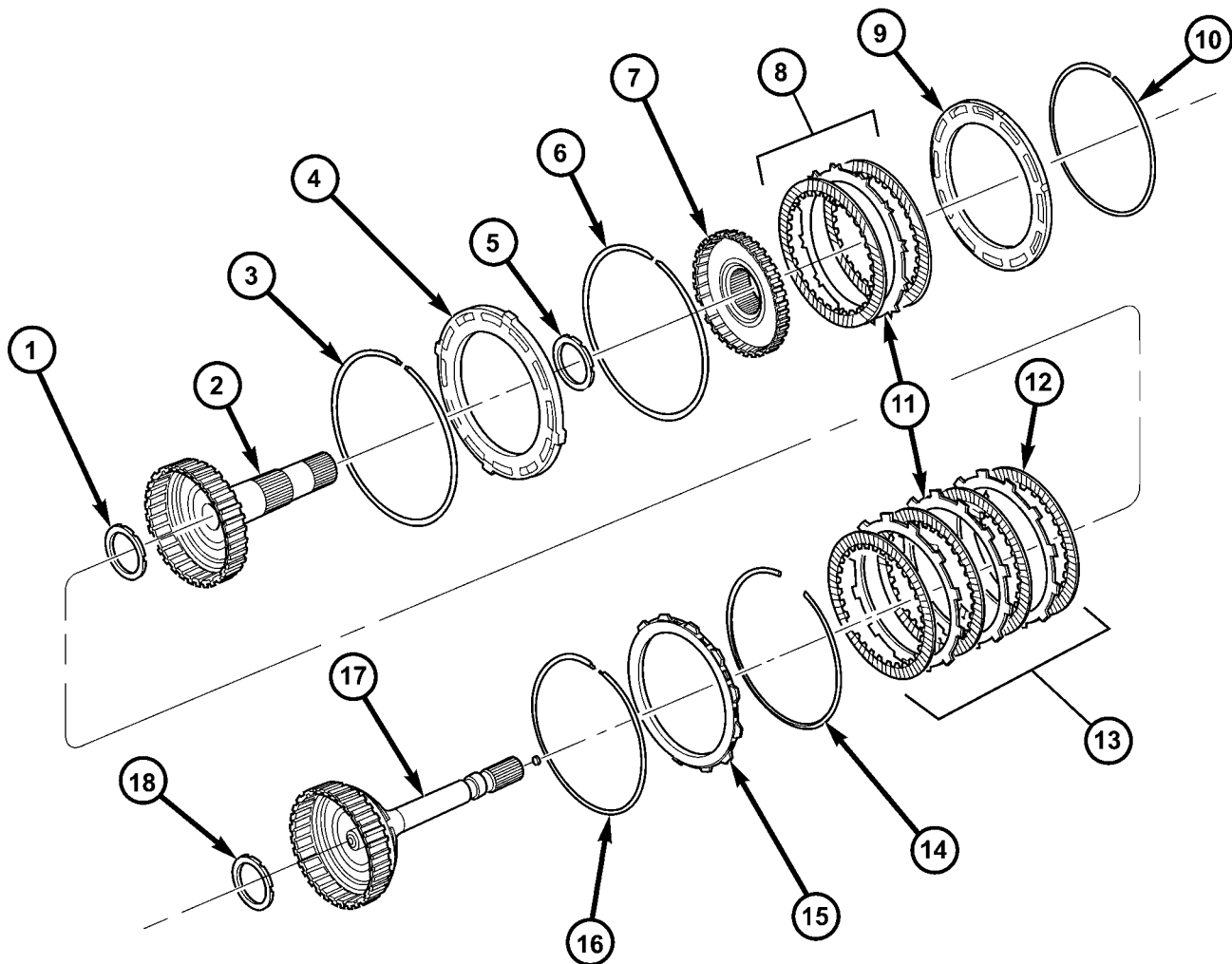
(9) Remove the number 2 bearing from the input clutch hub.

(10) Remove the overdrive clutch wave snap-ring from the input clutch retainer.

(11) Remove the UD/OD reaction plate tapered snap-ring from the input clutch retainer.

(12) Remove the UD/OD reaction plate from the input clutch retainer.

(13) Remove the UD/OD reaction plate flat snap-ring from the input clutch retainer (Fig. 70).



808a2e68

**Fig. 70 Input Clutch Assembly - Part 2**

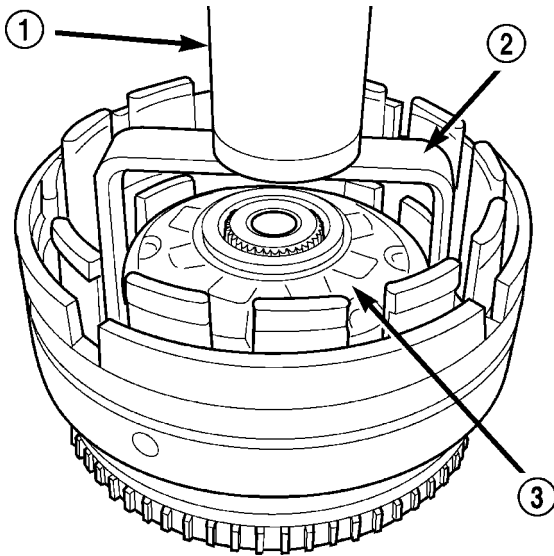
- 1 - BEARING NUMBER 3
- 2 - OD HUB/SHAFT
- 3 - SNAP-RING (WAVE)
- 4 - REV/OD REACTION PLATE
- 5 - BEARING NUMBER 4
- 6 - SNAP-RING (FLAT)
- 7 - REVERSE HUB/SHAFT
- 8 - REVERSE CLUTCH
- 9 - REVERSE REACTION PLATE

- 10 - SNAP-RING (SELECT)
- 11 - PLATE
- 12 - DISC
- 13 - OD CLUTCH
- 14 - SNAP-RING (TAPERED)
- 15 - UD/OD REACTION PLATE
- 16 - SNAP-RING (FLAT)
- 17 - UD HUB/SHAFT
- 18 - BEARING NUMBER 2

## INPUT CLUTCH ASSEMBLY (Continued)

(14) Remove the underdrive clutch pack from the input clutch retainer (Fig. 72).

(15) Using Spring Compressor 8251, compress the UD/OD balance piston and remove the snap-ring from the input clutch hub (Fig. 71).



80c07426

**Fig. 71 Compressing UD/OD Balance Piston Using Tool 8251**

- 1 - PRESS
- 2 - TOOL 8251
- 3 - BALANCE PISTON

(16) Remove the UD/OD balance piston and piston return spring from the input clutch retainer (Fig. 72).

(17) Remove the underdrive piston from the input clutch retainer (Fig. 72).

**NOTE:** Both the UD/OD balance piston and the underdrive piston have seals molded onto them. If the seal is damaged, do not attempt to install a new seal onto the piston. The piston/seal must be replaced as an assembly.

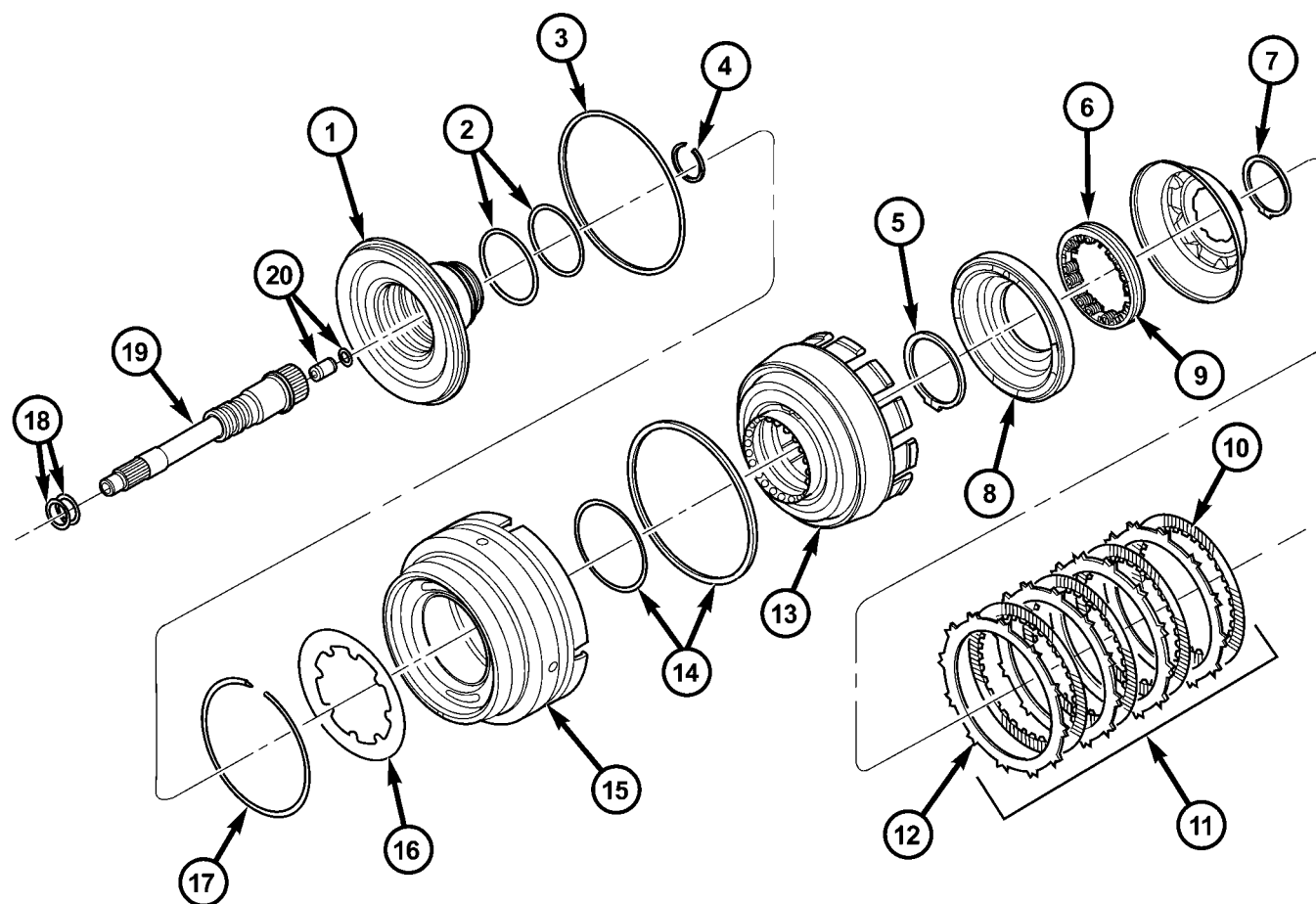
(18) Remove the input clutch retainer tapered snap-ring.

(19) Separate input clutch retainer from input clutch hub.

(20) Separate OD/reverse piston from input clutch hub retainer (Fig. 72).

(21) Remove all seals and o-rings from the input shaft and input hub. The o-rings on the input hub are color coded. Be sure to make note of which o-ring belongs in which location.

## INPUT CLUTCH ASSEMBLY (Continued)



808a2e66

**Fig. 72 Input Clutch Assembly - Part 1**

- 1 - INPUT CLUTCH HUB
- 2 - O-RING SEALS
- 3 - SEAL
- 4 - SNAP-RING
- 5 - SNAP-RING
- 6 - UD BALANCE PISTON
- 7 - SNAP-RING
- 8 - UD PISTON
- 9 - SPRING
- 10 - DISC

- 11 - UD CLUTCH
- 12 - PLATE
- 13 - CLUTCH RETAINER
- 14 - SEAL
- 15 - OD/REV PISTON
- 16 - BELLEVILLE SPRING
- 17 - SNAP-RING
- 18 - SEAL RINGS
- 19 - INPUT SHAFT
- 20 - LUBRICATION CHECK VALVE AND SNAP-RING

## INPUT CLUTCH ASSEMBLY (Continued)

**ASSEMBLY**

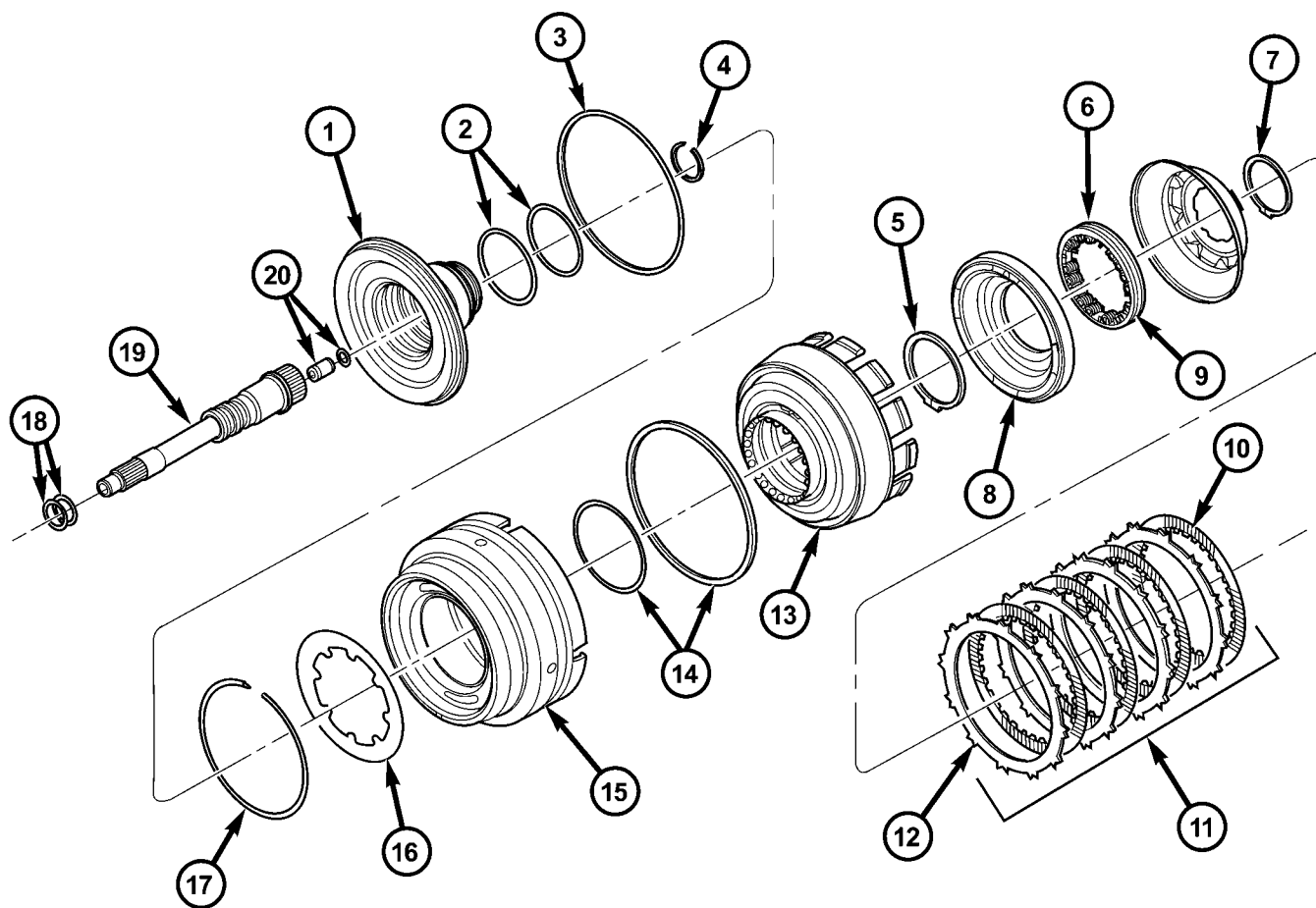
(1) Install all new seals and o-rings onto the input shaft and input hub. The o-rings on the input hub are color coded. Be sure to install the correct o-ring in the correct location.

(2) Check the transmission lubrication check valve located in the input shaft using shop air. The valve should only allow air flow in one direction. If the valve allows no air flow, or air flow in both directions, the valve will need to be replaced.

(3) Lubricate all seals with Mopar® ATF +4, Automatic Transmission Fluid, prior to installation.

(4) Assemble the OD/reverse piston onto the input clutch hub (Fig. 73).

(5) Assemble the input clutch retainer onto the input clutch hub.



808a2e66

**Fig. 73 Input Clutch Assembly - Part I**

- 1 - INPUT CLUTCH HUB
- 2 - O-RING SEALS
- 3 - SEAL
- 4 - SNAP-RING
- 5 - SNAP-RING
- 6 - UD BALANCE PISTON
- 7 - SNAP-RING
- 8 - UD PISTON
- 9 - SPRING
- 10 - DISC

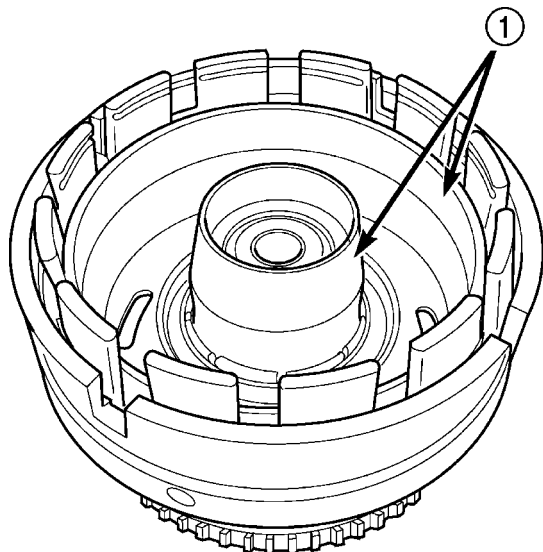
- 11 - UD CLUTCH
- 12 - PLATE
- 13 - CLUTCH RETAINER
- 14 - SEAL
- 15 - OD/REV PISTON
- 16 - BELLEVILLE SPRING
- 17 - SNAP-RING
- 18 - SEAL RINGS
- 19 - INPUT SHAFT
- 20 - LUBRICATION CHECK VALVE AND SNAP-RING



## INPUT CLUTCH ASSEMBLY (Continued)

(6) Install the input clutch retainer tapered snap-ring with tapered side up onto the input clutch hub.

(7) Install Piston Guides 8504 into the input clutch retainer (Fig. 74) and onto the input clutch hub to guide the inner and outer underdrive piston seals into position.



80c07427

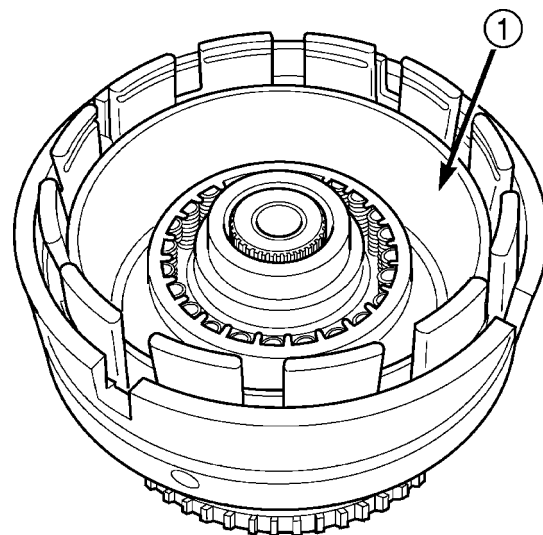
**Fig. 74 Install Underdrive Piston Using Tool 8504**

1 - TOOL 8504

(8) Install the underdrive piston into the input clutch retainer and over the input clutch hub (Fig. 73).

(9) Install the UD/OD balance piston return spring pack into the input clutch retainer.

(10) Install Piston Guide 8252 into the input clutch retainer (Fig. 75) to guide the UD/OD balance piston seal into position inside the underdrive piston.



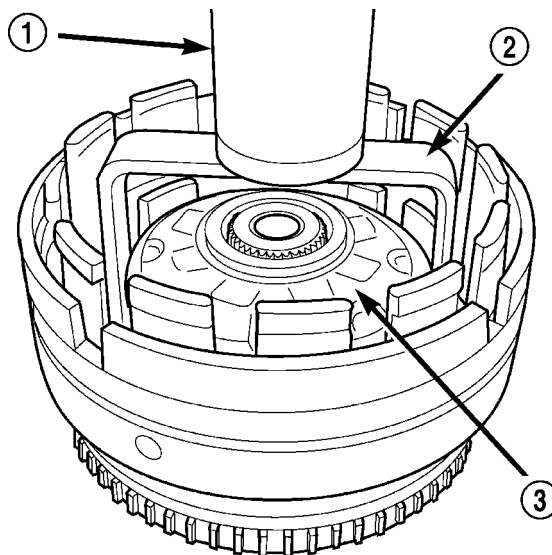
80c07428

**Fig. 75 Install Balance Piston Using Tool 8252**

1 - TOOL 8252

(11) Install the UD/OD balance piston into the input clutch retainer and the underdrive piston.

(12) Using Spring Compressor 8251, compress the UD/OD return spring pack and secure the piston in place with the snap-ring (Fig. 76).



80c07426

**Fig. 76 Compressing UD/OD Balance Piston Using Tool 8251**

1 - PRESS  
2 - TOOL 8251  
3 - BALANCE PISTON

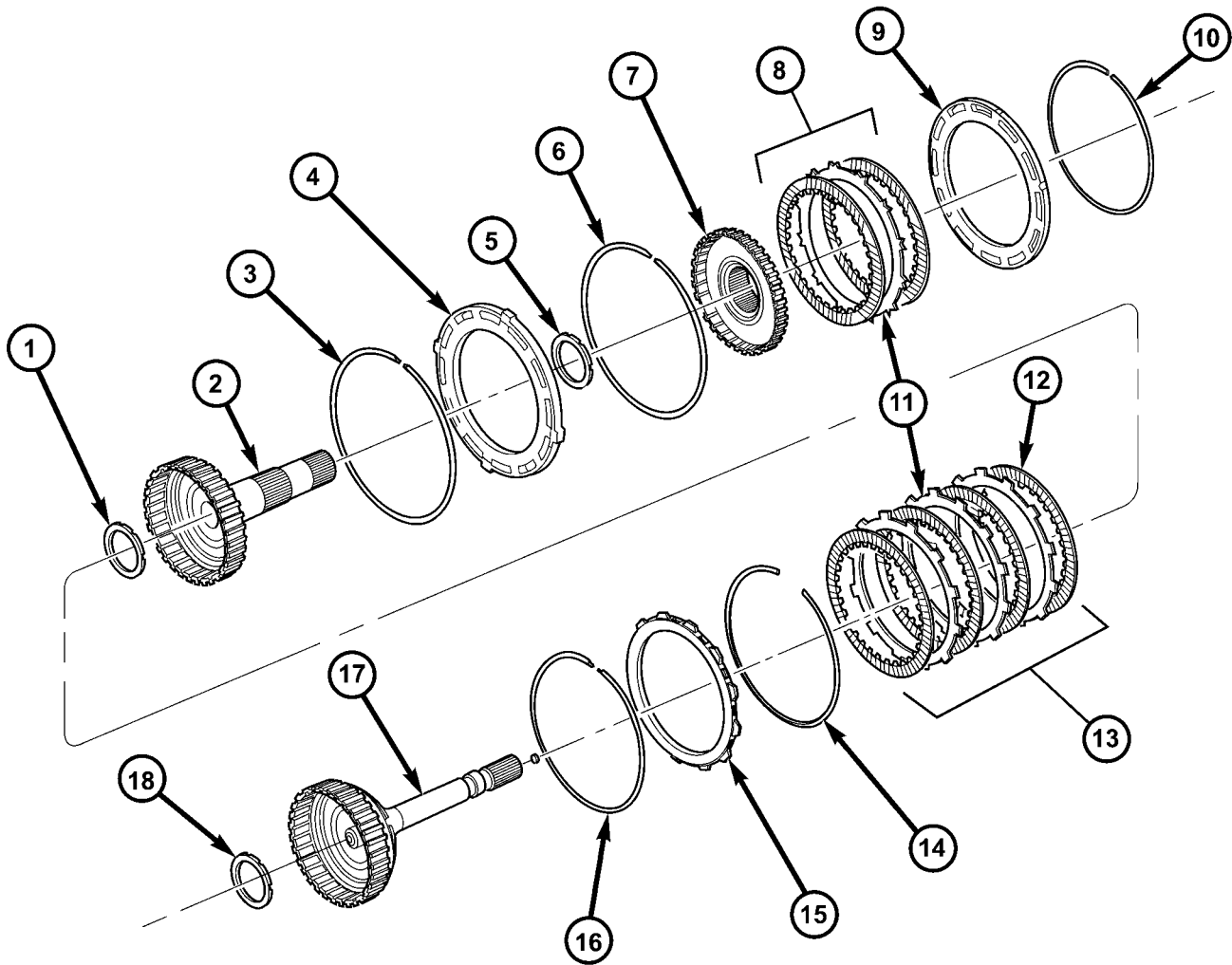
(13) Install the underdrive clutch pack into the input clutch retainer (Fig. 73).

(14) Install the UD/OD reaction plate lower flat snap-ring (Fig. 77). The correct snap-ring can be identified by the two tabbed ears.

(15) Install the UD/OD reaction plate into the input clutch retainer. The reaction plate is to be installed with the big step down.

(16) Install the UD/OD reaction plate upper tapered snap-ring with tapered side up.

## INPUT CLUTCH ASSEMBLY (Continued)



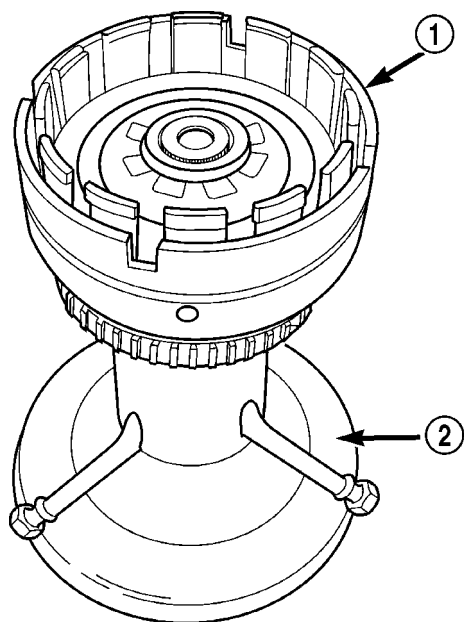
808a2e68

**Fig. 77 Input Clutch Assembly - Part II**

- |                            |                           |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 - BEARING NUMBER 3       | 10 - SNAP-RING (SELECT)   |
| 2 - OD HUB/SHAFT           | 11 - PLATE                |
| 3 - SNAP-RING (WAVE)       | 12 - DISC                 |
| 4 - REV/OD REACTION PLATE  | 13 - OD CLUTCH            |
| 5 - BEARING NUMBER 4       | 14 - SNAP-RING (TAPERED)  |
| 6 - SNAP-RING (FLAT)       | 15 - UD/OD REACTION PLATE |
| 7 - REVERSE HUB/SHAFT      | 16 - SNAP-RING (FLAT)     |
| 8 - REVERSE CLUTCH         | 17 - UD HUB/SHAFT         |
| 9 - REVERSE REACTION PLATE | 18 - BEARING NUMBER 2     |

## INPUT CLUTCH ASSEMBLY (Continued)

(17) Install the input clutch assembly into Input Clutch Pressure Fixture 8260 (Fig. 78). Mount a dial indicator to the assembly, push down on the clutch discs and zero the indicator against the underdrive clutch discs (Fig. 79). Apply 20 psi of air pressure to the underdrive clutch and record the dial indicator reading. Measure and record UD clutch pack measurement in four (4) places, 90° apart. Take average of four measurements and compare with UD clutch pack clearance specification. The correct clutch clearance is 0.84-1.54 mm (0.033-0.061 in.). The reaction plate is not selective. If the clutch clearance is not within specification, replace the reaction plate along with all the friction and steel discs.



80c07429

**Fig. 78 Input Clutch Assembly Mounted on Tool 8260**

- 1 - INPUT CLUTCH ASSEMBLY  
2 - TOOL 8260

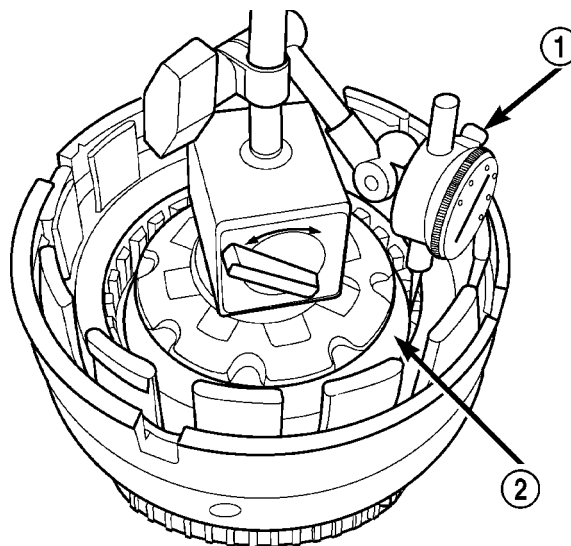
(18) Install the overdrive clutch pack into the input clutch retainer (Fig. 77). The overdrive steel separator plates can be identified by the lack of the half-moon cuts in the locating tabs.

(19) Install the overdrive clutch wavy snap-ring with the two tabbed ears into the input clutch retainer.

(20) Install the OD/reverse reaction plate into the input clutch retainer. The reaction plate is non-directional (Fig. 77).

(21) Install the OD/reverse reaction plate flat snap-ring into the input clutch retainer.

(22) Mount a dial indicator to the assembly and zero the indicator against the OD/reverse reaction plate (Fig. 80). Apply 20 psi of air pressure to the overdrive clutch and record the dial indicator read-

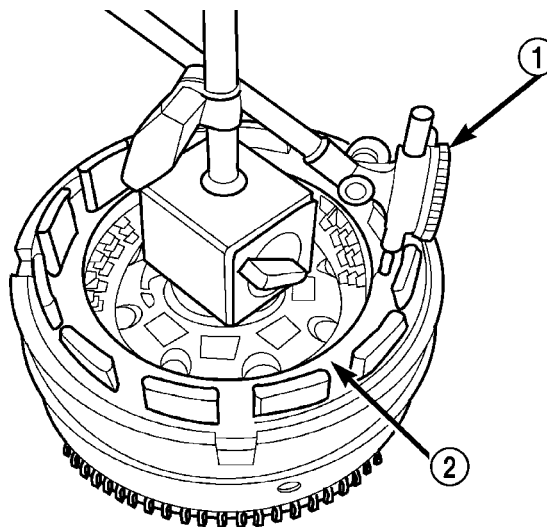


80c07440

**Fig. 79 Measuring UD Clutch Clearance**

- 1 - TOOL C-3339  
2 - UNDERDRIVE CLUTCH PACK

ing. Measure and record OD clutch pack measurement in four (4) places, 90° apart. Take average of four measurements and compare with OD clutch pack clearance specification. Verify that the clutch clearance is 1.103-1.856 mm (0.043-0.073 in.). The reaction plate is not selective. If the clutch clearance is not within specification, replace the reaction plate along with all the friction and steel discs.



80c07447

**Fig. 80 Measuring OD Clutch Clearance**

- 1 - TOOL C-3339  
2 - OD/REV REACTION PLATE

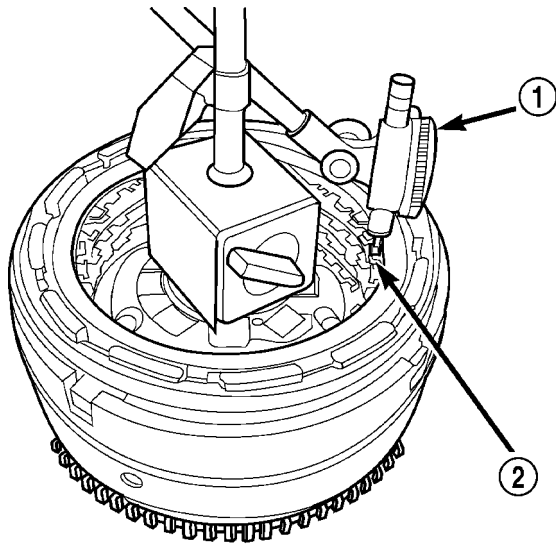
(23) Install the reverse clutch pack into the input clutch retainer (Fig. 77).

## INPUT CLUTCH ASSEMBLY (Continued)

(24) Install the reverse reaction plate into the input clutch retainer.

(25) Install the reverse reaction plate selective snap-ring into the input clutch retainer.

(26) Mount a dial indicator to the assembly, push down on the clutch discs, pull up on the reaction plate to ensure the plate is properly seated and zero the indicator against the reverse clutch discs (Fig. 81). Apply 20 psi of air pressure to the reverse clutch and record the dial indicator reading. Measure and record Reverse clutch pack measurement in four (4) places, 90° apart. Take average of four measurements and compare with Reverse clutch pack clearance specification. The correct clutch clearance is 0.58-1.47 mm (0.023-0.058 in.). Adjust as necessary. Install the chosen snap-ring and re-measure to verify selection.



80c07446

**Fig. 81 Measuring Reverse Clutch Clearance**

- 1 - TOOL C-3339  
2 - REVERSE CLUTCH PACK

(27) Remove the reverse clutch pack from the input clutch retainer.

(28) Install the number 2 bearing onto the underdrive hub with outer race against the hub with petroleum jelly.

(29) Install the underdrive hub into the input clutch retainer.

(30) Install the number 3 bearing into the overdrive hub with the outer race against the hub with petroleum jelly.

(31) Install the overdrive hub into the input clutch retainer.

(32) Install the number 4 bearing into the reverse hub with outer race against the hub with petroleum jelly.

(33) Install the reverse hub into the input clutch retainer.

(34) Install the complete reverse clutch pack.

(35) Install the reverse reaction plate and snap-ring.

(36) Push up on reaction plate to allow reverse clutch to move freely.

## INPUT SPEED SENSOR

## DESCRIPTION

The Input and Output Speed Sensors are two-wire magnetic pickup devices that generate AC signals as rotation occurs. They are mounted in the left side of the transmission case and are considered primary inputs to the Transmission Control Module (TCM).

## OPERATION

The Input Speed Sensor provides information on how fast the input shaft is rotating. As the teeth of the input clutch hub pass by the sensor coil, an AC voltage is generated and sent to the TCM. The TCM interprets this information as input shaft rpm.

The Output Speed Sensor generates an AC signal in a similar fashion, though its coil is excited by rotation of the rear planetary carrier lugs. The TCM interprets this information as output shaft rpm.

The TCM compares the input and output speed signals to determine the following:

- Transmission gear ratio
- Speed ratio error detection
- CVI calculation

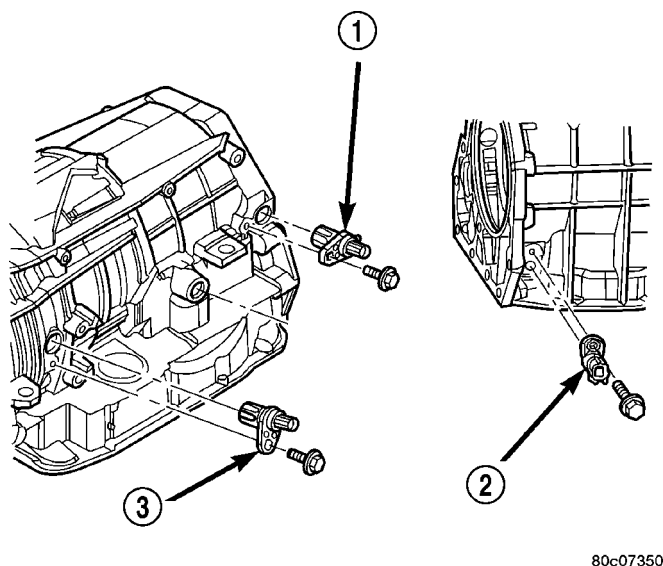
The TCM also compares the input speed signal and the engine speed signal to determine the following:

- Torque converter clutch slippage
- Torque converter element speed ratio

## INPUT SPEED SENSOR (Continued)

## REMOVAL

- (1) Raise vehicle.
- (2) Place a suitable fluid catch pan under the transmission.
- (3) Remove the wiring connector from the input speed sensor (Fig. 82).
- (4) Remove the bolt holding the input speed sensor to the transmission case.
- (5) Remove the input speed sensor from the transmission case.



80c07350

**Fig. 82 Input Speed Sensor**

- 1 - OUTPUT SPEED SENSOR  
2 - LINE PRESSURE SENSOR  
3 - INPUT SPEED SENSOR

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Install the input speed sensor into the transmission case.
- (2) Install the bolt to hold the input speed sensor into the transmission case. Tighten the bolt to 11.9 N·m (105 in.lbs.).
- (3) Install the wiring connector onto the input speed sensor
- (4) Verify the transmission fluid level. Add fluid as necessary.
- (5) Lower vehicle.

## LINE PRESSURE (LP) SENSOR

## DESCRIPTION

The TCM utilizes a closed-loop system to control transmission line pressure. The system contains a variable force style solenoid, the Pressure Control Solenoid, mounted on the side of the solenoid and pressure switch assembly. The solenoid is duty cycle controlled by the TCM to vent the unnecessary line pressure supplied by the oil pump back to the sump.

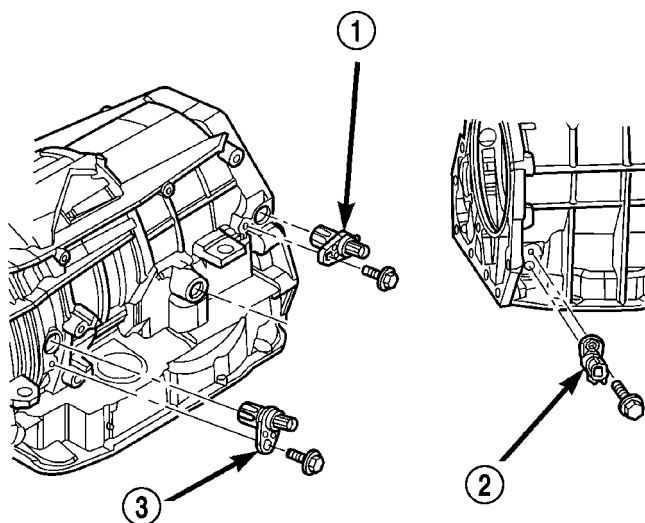
The system also contains a variable pressure style sensor, the Line Pressure Sensor, which is a direct input to the TCM. The line pressure solenoid monitors the transmission line pressure and completes the feedback loop to the TCM. The TCM uses this information to adjust its control of the pressure control solenoid to achieve the desired line pressure.

## OPERATION

The TCM calculates the desired line pressure based upon inputs from the transmission and engine. The TCM calculates the torque input to the transmission and uses that information as the primary input to the calculation. The line pressure is set to a predetermined value during shifts and when the transmission is in the PARK and NEUTRAL positions. This is done to ensure consistent shift quality. During all other operation, the actual line pressure is compared to the desired line pressure and adjustments are made to the pressure control solenoid duty cycle.

## REMOVAL

- (1) Raise vehicle.
- (2) Place a suitable fluid catch pan under the transmission.
- (3) Remove the wiring connector from the line pressure sensor (Fig. 83).
- (4) Remove the bolt holding the line pressure sensor to the transmission case.
- (5) Remove the line pressure sensor from the transmission case.



80c07350

**Fig. 83 Line Pressure Sensor**

- 1 - OUTPUT SPEED SENSOR  
2 - LINE PRESSURE SENSOR  
3 - INPUT SPEED SENSOR



## LINE PRESSURE (LP) SENSOR (Continued)

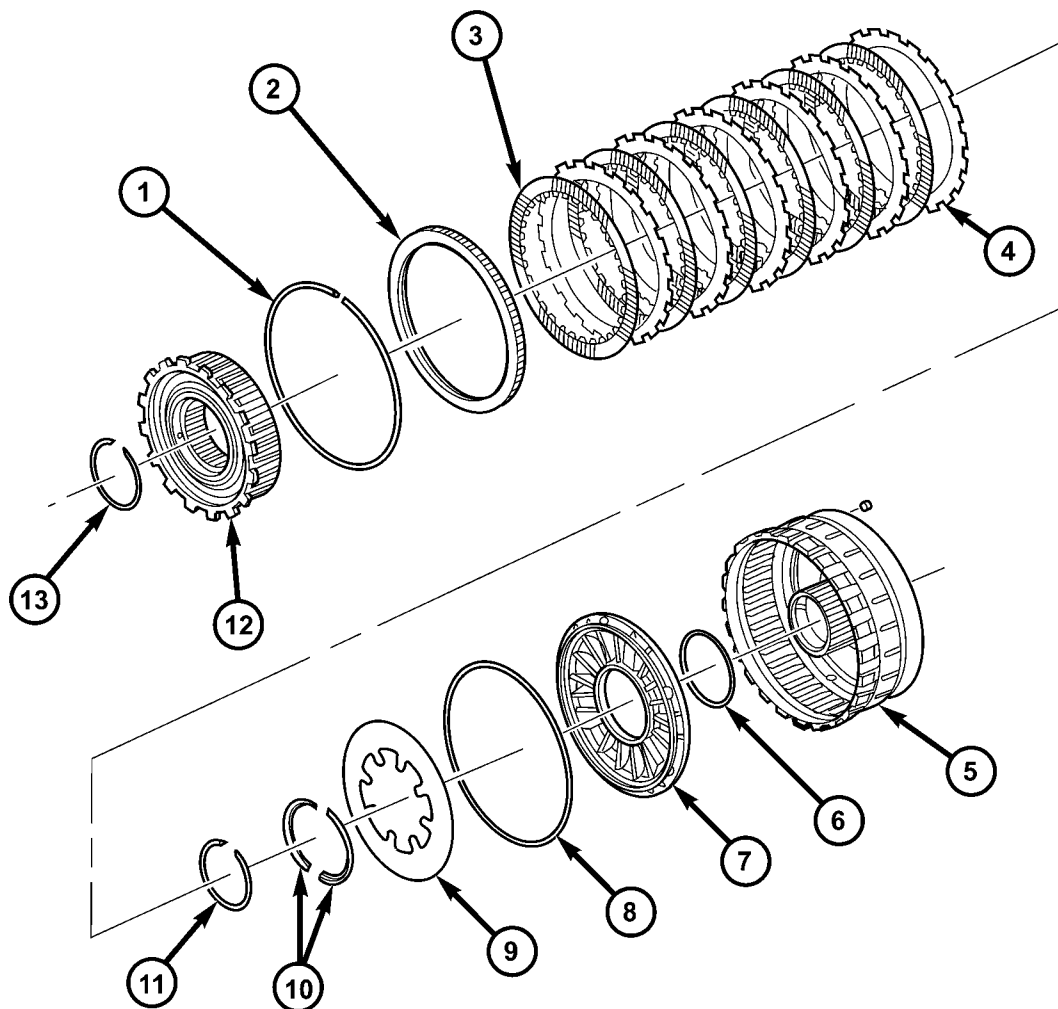
## INSTALLATION

- (1) Install the line pressure sensor into the transmission case.
- (2) Install the bolt to hold the line pressure sensor into the transmission case. Tighten the bolt to 11.9 N·m (105 in.lbs.).
- (3) Install the wiring connector onto the line pressure sensor
- (4) Verify the transmission fluid level. Add fluid as necessary.
- (5) Lower vehicle.

## LOW/REVERSE CLUTCH

## DISASSEMBLY

- (1) Remove the inner overrunning clutch snap-ring from the low/reverse clutch retainer (Fig. 84).
- (2) Remove the outer low/reverse reaction plate flat snap-ring (Fig. 84).
- (3) Remove the low/reverse clutch and the overrunning clutch from the low/reverse clutch retainer as an assembly (Fig. 84).



808a2e78

**Fig. 84 Low/Reverse Clutch Assembly**

- |                         |                         |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1 - SNAP-RING (SELECT)  | 8 - SEAL                |
| 2 - REACTION PLATE      | 9 - BELLEVILLE SPRING   |
| 3 - DISC                | 10 - RETAINER           |
| 4 - PLATE               | 11 - SNAP-RING          |
| 5 - L/R CLUTCH RETAINER | 12 - OVERRUNNING CLUTCH |
| 6 - SEAL                | 13 - SNAP-RING          |
| 7 - PISTON              |                         |



## LOW/REVERSE CLUTCH (Continued)

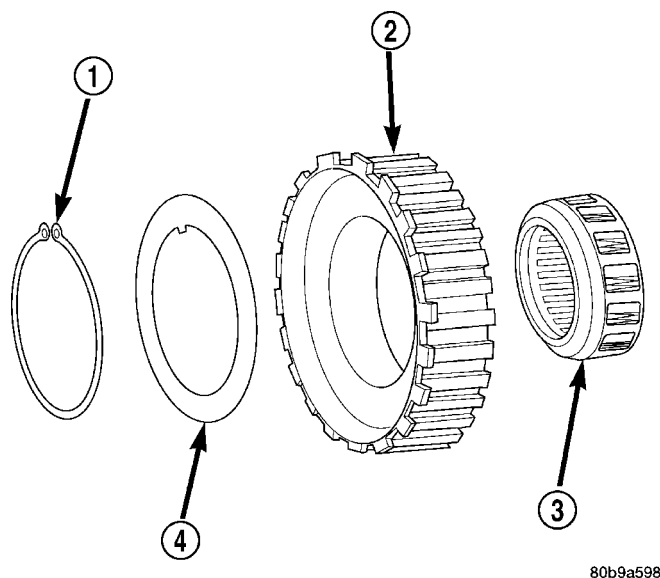
(4) Separate the low/reverse clutch from the overrunning clutch.

(5) Remove the overrunning clutch snap-ring (Fig. 85).

(6) Remove the spacer from the overrunning clutch (Fig. 85).

(7) Separate the inner and outer races of the overrunning clutch (Fig. 85).

(8) Remove the overrunning clutch lower snap-ring (Fig. 85).



**Fig. 85 Overrunning Clutch**

- 1 - SNAP-RING
- 2 - OUTER RACE
- 3 - OVERRUNNING CLUTCH
- 4 - SPACER

(9) Using Spring Compressor 8285 and a suitable shop press (Fig. 86), compress the low/reverse piston Belleville spring and remove the split retaining ring holding the Belleville spring into the low/reverse clutch retainer.

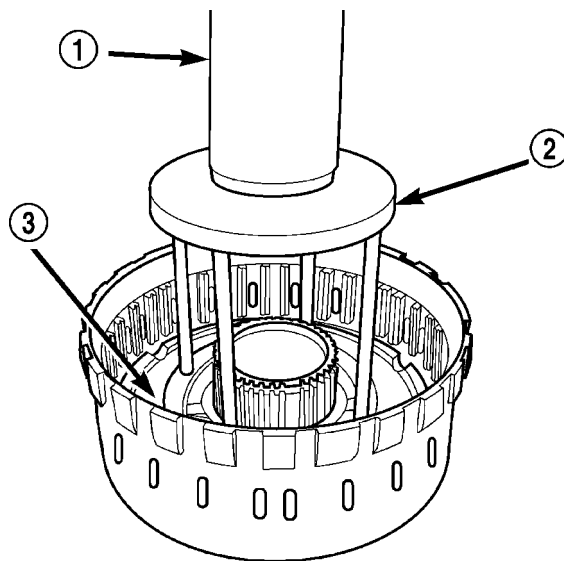
(10) Remove the low/reverse clutch Belleville spring and piston from the low/reverse clutch retainer. Use 20 psi of air pressure to remove the piston if necessary.

## CLEANING

Clean the overrunning clutch assembly, clutch cam, and low-reverse clutch retainer. Dry them with compressed air after cleaning.

## INSPECTION

Inspect condition of each clutch part after cleaning. Replace the overrunning clutch roller and spring assembly if any rollers or springs are worn or damaged, or if the roller cage is distorted, or damaged. Replace the cam if worn, cracked or damaged.



**Fig. 86 Compress Low/Reverse Belleville Spring Using Tool 8285**

80c07420

- 1 - PRESS
- 2 - TOOL 8285
- 3 - BELLEVILLE SPRING

Replace the low-reverse clutch retainer if the clutch race, roller surface or inside diameter is scored, worn or damaged.

## ASSEMBLY

(1) Check the bleed orifice to ensure that it is not plugged or restricted.

(2) Install a new seal on the low/reverse piston. Lubricate the seal with Mopar® ATF +4, Automatic Transmission Fluid, prior to installation.

(3) Install the low/reverse piston into the low/reverse clutch retainer.

(4) Position the low/reverse piston Belleville spring on the low/reverse piston.

(5) Using Spring Compressor 8285 and a suitable shop press (Fig. 86), compress the low/reverse piston Belleville spring and install the split retaining ring to hold the Belleville spring into the low/reverse clutch retainer.

(6) Install the lower overrunning clutch snap-ring (Fig. 85).

(7) Assemble the inner and outer races of the overrunning clutch (Fig. 85).

(8) Position the overrunning clutch spacer on the overrunning clutch.

(9) Install the upper overrunning clutch snap-ring (Fig. 85).

(10) Assemble and install the low/reverse clutch pack into the low/reverse clutch retainer (Fig. 84).

(11) Install the low/reverse reaction plate into the low/reverse clutch retainer (Fig. 84). The reaction plate is directional and must be installed with the flat side down.

## LOW/REVERSE CLUTCH (Continued)

(12) Install the low/reverse clutch pack snap-ring (Fig. 84). The snap-ring is selectable and should be chosen to give the correct clutch pack clearance.

(13) Measure the low/reverse clutch pack clearance and adjust as necessary. The correct clutch clearance is 1.00-1.74 mm (0.039-0.075 in.).

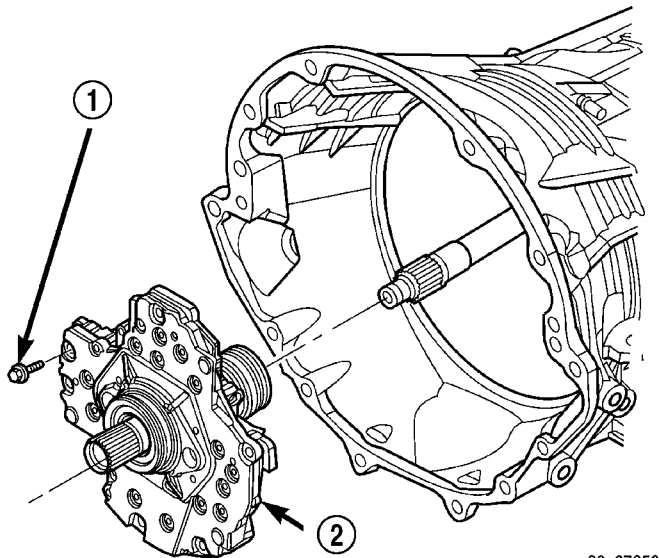
(14) Install the overrunning clutch into the low/reverse clutch retainer making sure that the index splines are aligned with the retainer.

(15) Install the overrunning clutch inner snap-ring.

## OIL PUMP

### DESCRIPTION

The oil pump (Fig. 87) is located at the front of the transmission inside the bell housing and behind the transmission front cover. The oil pump consists of two independent pumps (Fig. 88), a number of valves (Fig. 89), a front seal (Fig. 90), and a bolt on reaction shaft. The converter clutch switch and regulator valves, pressure regulator valve, and converter pressure limit valve are all located in the oil pump valve body.



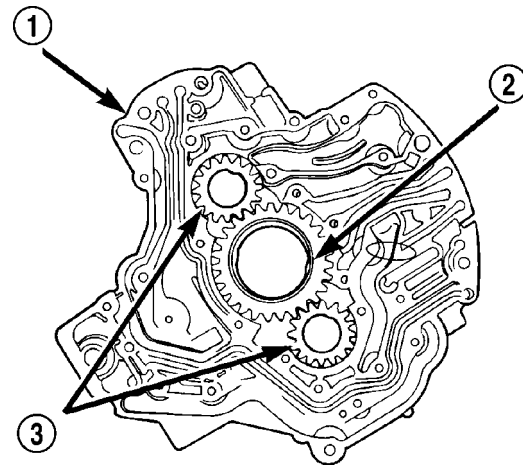
**Fig. 87 Oil Pump**

- 1 - OIL PUMP TO CASE BOLT (6)  
2 - OIL PUMP

80c07356

### OPERATION

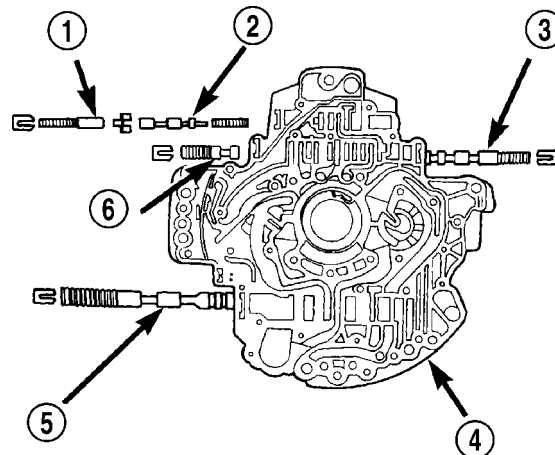
As the torque converter rotates, the converter hub rotates the oil pump drive gear. As the drive gear rotates both driven gears, a vacuum is created when the gear teeth come out of mesh. This suction draws fluid through the pump inlet from the oil pan. As the gear teeth come back into mesh, pressurized fluid is forced into the pump outlet and to the oil pump valves.



80b9a592

**Fig. 88 Oil Pump Gears**

- 1 - PUMP HOUSING  
2 - DRIVE GEAR  
3 - DRIVEN GEARS



80b9a593

**Fig. 89 Oil Pump Valves**

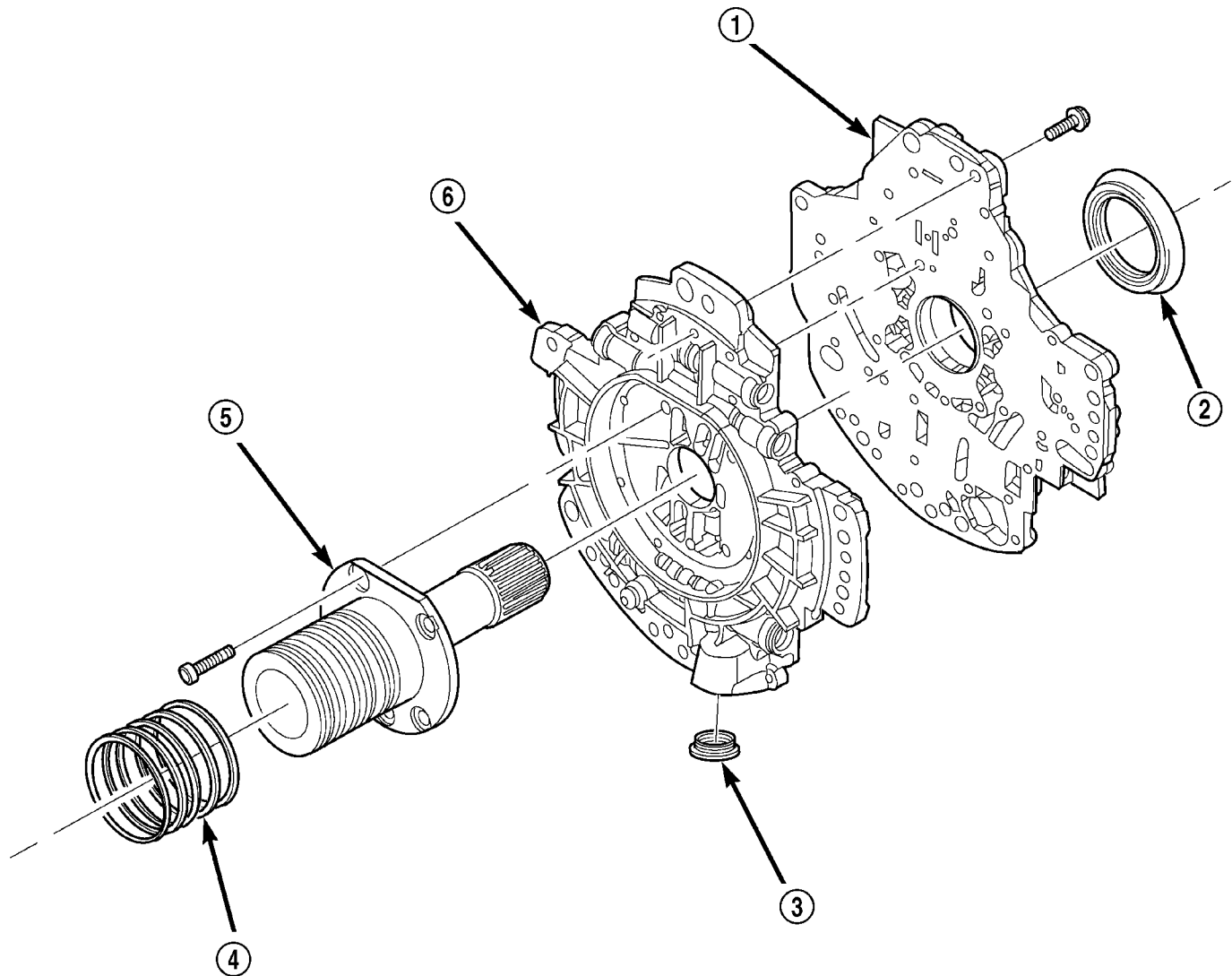
- 1 - TORQUE CONVERTER CLUTCH ACCUMULATOR VALVE  
2 - TORQUE CONVERTER CLUTCH CONTROL VALVE  
3 - TORQUE CONVERTER CLUTCH SWITCH VALVE  
4 - PUMP VALVE BODY  
5 - PRESSURE REGULATOR VALVE  
6 - TORQUE CONVERTER CLUTCH LIMIT VALVE

At low speeds, both sides of the pump supply fluid to the transmission. As the speed of the torque converter increases, the flow from both sides increases until the flow from the primary side alone is sufficient to meet system demands. At this point, the check valve located between the two pumps closes. The secondary side is shut down and the primary side supplies all the fluid to the transmission.

### CONVERTER CLUTCH SWITCH VALVE

The converter clutch switch valve is used to control the hydraulic pressure supplied to the front (OFF) side of the torque converter clutch.

## OIL PUMP (Continued)



80c07011

**Fig. 90 Oil Pump Reaction Shaft**

1 - PUMP HOUSING  
2 - SEAL  
3 - OIL FILTER SEAL

4 - SEAL RING (5)  
5 - REACTION SHAFT SUPPORT  
6 - PUMP VALVE BODY

**CONVERTER CLUTCH REGULATOR VALVE**

The converter clutch regulator valve is used to control the hydraulic pressure supplied to the back (ON) side of the torque converter clutch.

**TORQUE CONVERTER LIMIT VALVE**

The torque converter limit valve serves to limit the available line pressure to the torque converter clutch.

**STANDARD PROCEDURE - OIL PUMP VOLUME CHECK**

Measuring the oil pump output volume will determine if sufficient oil flow to the transmission oil cooler exists, and whether or not an internal transmission failure is present.

Verify that the transmission fluid is at the proper level. Refer to the Fluid Level Check procedure in this section. If necessary, fill the transmission to the proper level with Mopar® ATF +4, Automatic Transmission Fluid.

(1) Disconnect the **To cooler** line at the cooler inlet and place a collecting container under the disconnected line.

**CAUTION:** With the fluid set at the proper level, fluid collection should not exceed (1) quart or internal damage to the transmission may occur.

(2) Run the engine at **1800 rpm**, with the shift selector in neutral. Verify that the transmission fluid temperature is below 104.5° C (220° F) for this test.

## OIL PUMP (Continued)

(3) If one quart of transmission fluid is collected in the container in 30 seconds or less, oil pump flow volume is within acceptable limits. If fluid flow is intermittent, or it takes more than 30 seconds to collect one quart of fluid, refer to the Hydraulic Pressure tests in this section for further diagnosis.

(4) Re-connect the **To cooler** line to the transmission cooler inlet.

(5) Refill the transmission to proper level.

(3) Remove all bolts holding the oil pump halves together (Fig. 91).

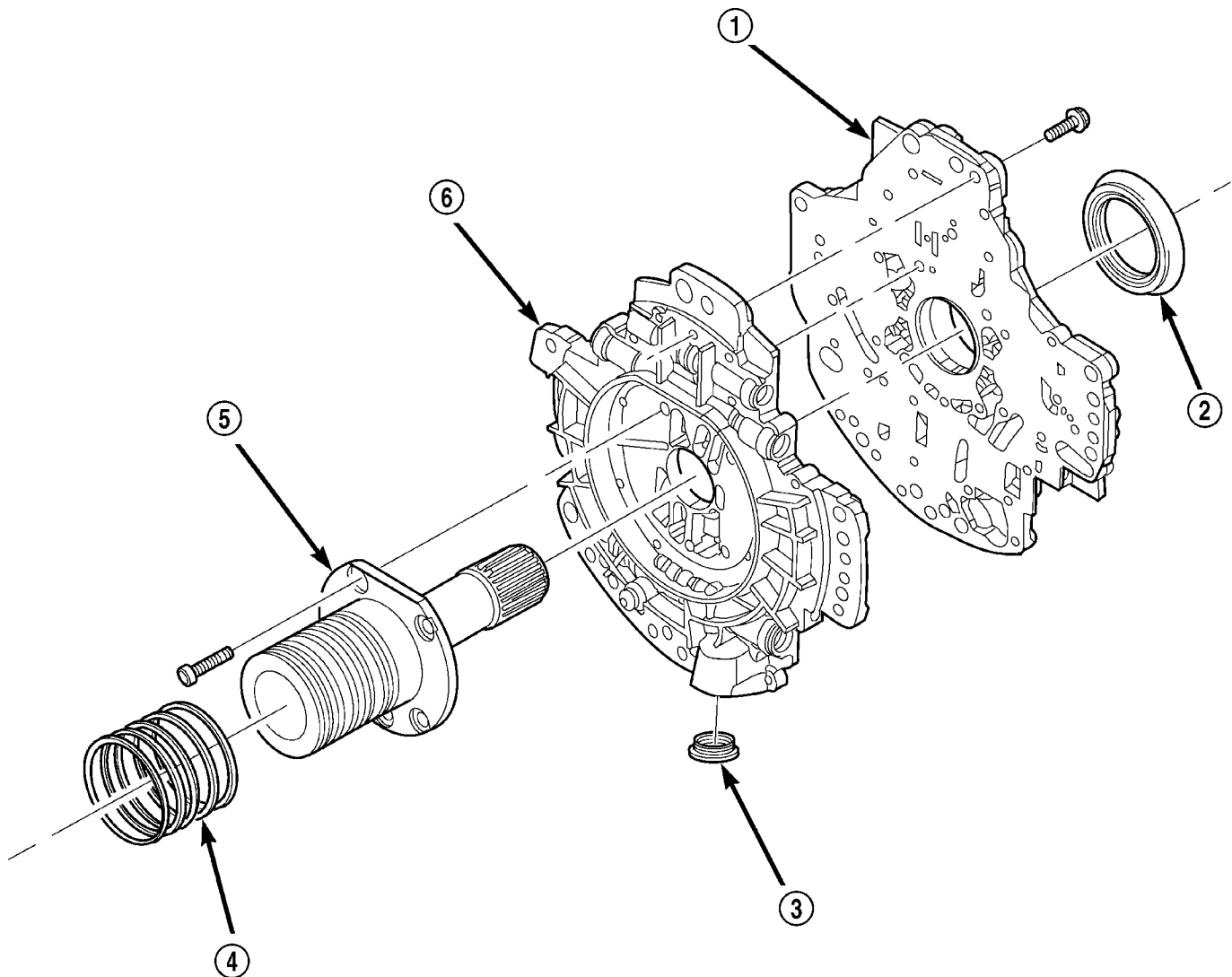
(4) Using suitable prying tools, separate the oil pump sections by inserting the tools in the supplied areas and prying the halves apart.

**NOTE:** The oil pump halves are aligned to each other through the use of two dowels. Be sure to pry upward evenly to prevent damage to the oil pump components.

## DISASSEMBLY

(1) Remove the bolts holding the reaction shaft support to the oil pump (Fig. 91).

(2) Remove the reaction shaft support from the oil pump (Fig. 91).



**Fig. 91 Oil Pump Assembly**

1 - PUMP HOUSING  
2 - SEAL  
3 - OIL FILTER SEAL

4 - SEAL RING (5)  
5 - REACTION SHAFT SUPPORT  
6 - PUMP VALVE BODY

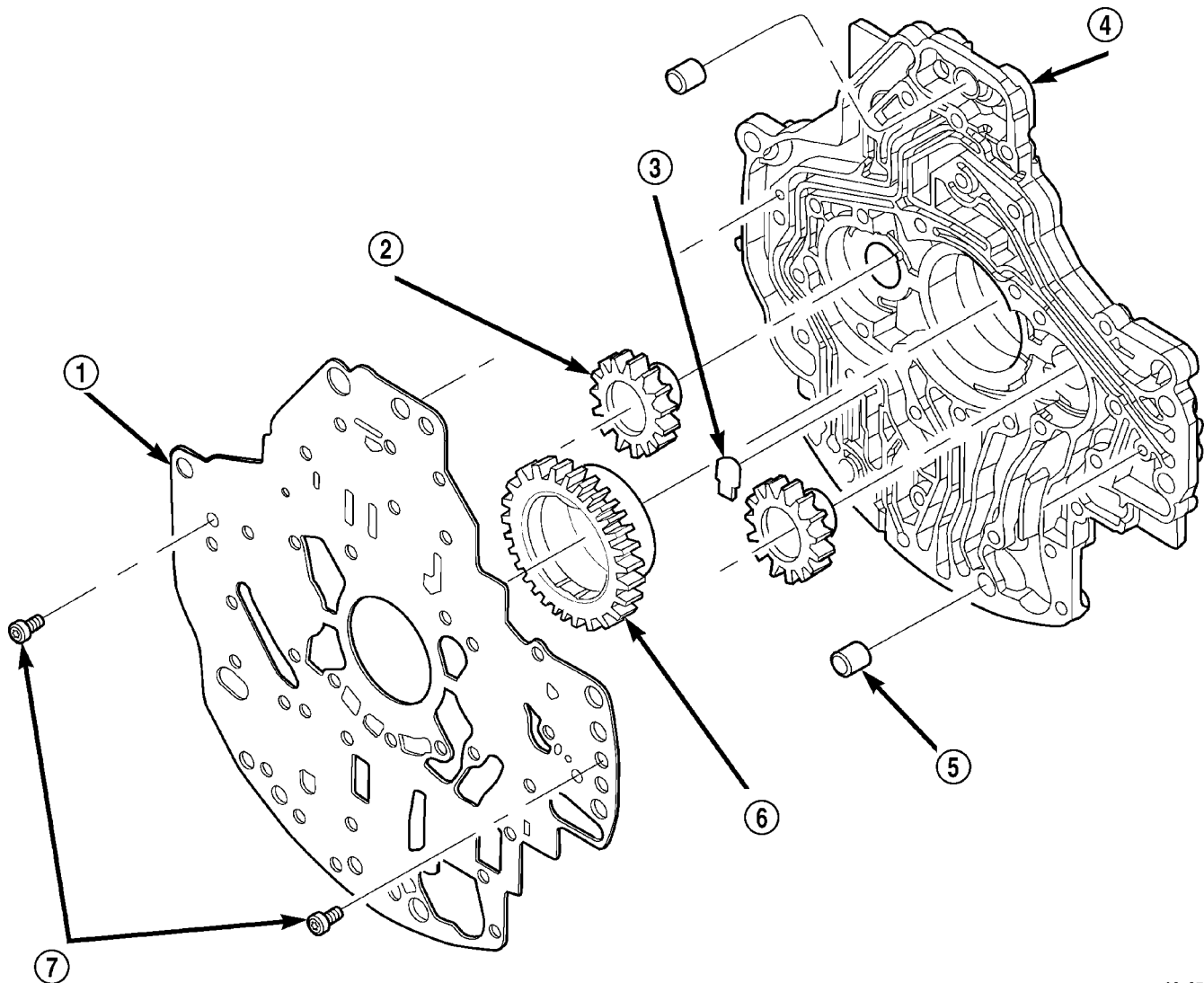
## OIL PUMP (Continued)

(5) Remove the screws holding the separator plate onto the oil pump body (Fig. 92).

(6) Remove the separator plate from the oil pump body (Fig. 92).

(7) Mark all gears for location. The gears are select fit and if the oil pump is to be reused, the gears must be returned to their original locations.

(8) Remove the oil pump gears from the oil pump case (Fig. 92).



80c07012

**Fig. 92 Oil Pump Housing and Gears**

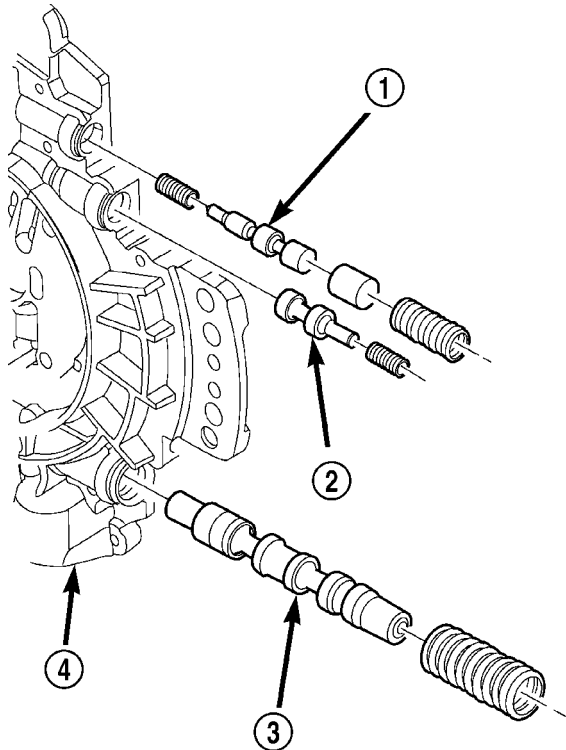
1 - SEPARATOR PLATE  
2 - DRIVEN GEAR (2)  
3 - CHECK VALVE  
4 - PUMP HOUSING

5 - DOWEL (2)  
6 - DRIVE GEAR  
7 - SCREW



## OIL PUMP (Continued)

(9) Remove the oil pump valve retainers and associated valve and spring one at a time (Fig. 93) (Fig. 94). Mark the combination of components as a group and tag them as to the location from which they were removed.



**Fig. 93 Oil Pump Valve Body**

- 1 - T/C REGULATOR VALVE
- 2 - T/C LIMIT VALVE
- 3 - REGULATOR VALVE
- 4 - OIL PUMP VALVE BODY

## CLEANING

Clean pump and support components with solvent and dry them with compressed air.

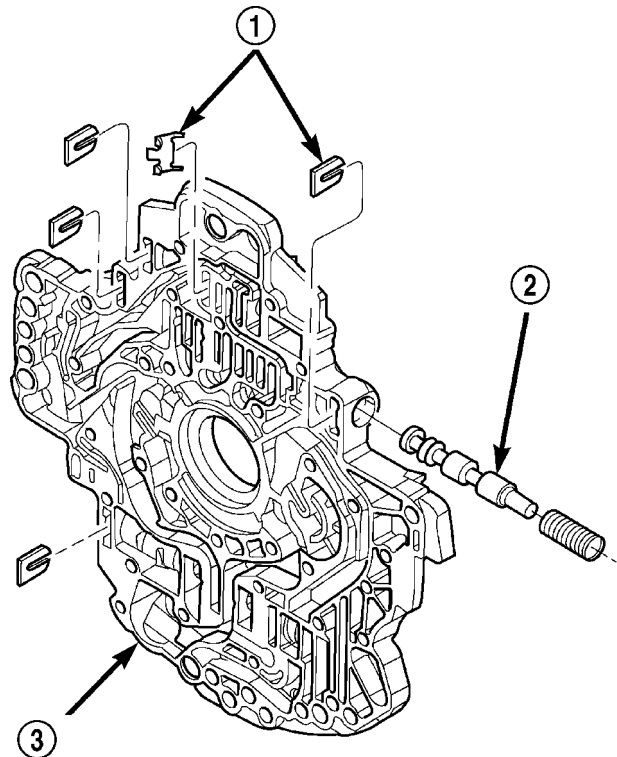
## INSPECTION

Check condition of the seal rings and thrust washer on the reaction shaft support. The seal rings do not need to be replaced unless cracked, broken, or severely worn.

Inspect the pump and support components. Replace the pump or support if the seal ring grooves or machined surfaces are worn, scored, pitted, or damaged. Replace the pump gears if pitted, worn chipped, or damaged.

Inspect the pump reaction shaft support bushings. Replace either bushing only if heavily worn, scored or damaged. It is not necessary to replace the bushings unless they are actually damaged.

Inspect the valves and plugs for scratches, burrs, nicks, or scores. Minor surface scratches on steel valves and plugs can be removed with crocus cloth



80c07421

**Fig. 94 T/C Switch Valve**

- 1 - RETAINER
- 2 - T/C SWITCH VALVE
- 3 - OIL PUMP VALVE BODY

but **do not round off the edges of the valve or plug lands**. Maintaining sharpness of these edges is vitally important. The edges prevent foreign matter from lodging between the valves and plugs and the bore.

Inspect all the valve and plug bores in the oil pump cover. Use a penlight to view the bore interiors. Replace the oil pump if any bores are distorted or scored. Inspect all of the valve springs. The springs must be free of distortion, warpage or broken coils.

Trial fit each valve and plug in its bore to check freedom of operation. When clean and dry, the valves and plugs should drop freely into the bores.

## ASSEMBLY

(1) Clean and inspect all components. Make sure that all passages are thoroughly cleaned and are free from dirt or debris. Make sure that all valves move freely in their proper bore. Make sure that all gear pockets and bushings are free from excessive wear and scoring. Replace the oil pump if any excessive wear or scoring is found.

(2) Coat the gears with Mopar® ATF +4 and install into their original locations.

(3) Lubricate the oil pump valves with Mopar® ATF +4 and install the valve, spring and retainer



## OIL PUMP (Continued)

into the appropriate oil pump valve body bore (Fig. 93) (Fig. 94).

(4) Place the separator plate onto the oil pump body (Fig. 92).

(5) Install the screws to hold the separator plate onto the oil pump body (Fig. 92). Tighten the screws to 4.5 N·m (40 in.lbs.).

(6) Position the oil pump cover onto the locating dowels (Fig. 91).

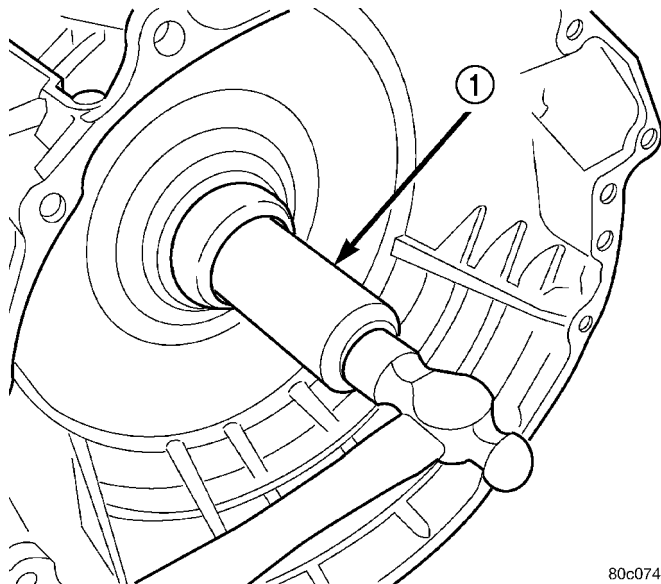
(7) Seat the two oil pump halves together and install all bolts finger tight.

(8) Torque all bolts down slowly starting in the center and working outward. The correct torque is 4.5 N·m (40 in.lbs.).

(9) Verify that the oil pump gears rotate freely and smoothly.

(10) Position the reaction shaft support into the oil pump (Fig. 91).

(11) Install and torque the bolts to hold the reaction shaft support to the oil pump (Fig. 91). The correct torque is 12 N·m (105 in.lbs.).



80c07423

**Fig. 95 Install Oil Pump Front Seal**

1 - TOOL C-3860-A

## OIL PUMP FRONT SEAL

## REMOVAL

- (1) Remove transmission from the vehicle.
- (2) Remove the torque converter from the transmission.
- (3) Using a screw mounted in a slide hammer, remove the oil pump front seal.

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Clean seal bore of the oil pump of any residue or particles from the original seal.
- (2) Install new oil seal in the oil pump housing using Seal Installer C-3860-A (Fig. 95).

## OUTPUT SPEED SENSOR

## DESCRIPTION

The Input and Output Speed Sensors are two-wire magnetic pickup devices that generate AC signals as rotation occurs. They are mounted in the left side of the transmission case and are considered primary inputs to the Transmission Control Module (TCM).

## OPERATION

The Input Speed Sensor provides information on how fast the input shaft is rotating. As the teeth of the input clutch hub pass by the sensor coil, an AC voltage is generated and sent to the TCM. The TCM interprets this information as input shaft rpm.

The Output Speed Sensor generates an AC signal in a similar fashion, though its coil is excited by rotation of the rear planetary carrier lugs. The TCM interprets this information as output shaft rpm.

The TCM compares the input and output speed signals to determine the following:

- Transmission gear ratio
- Speed ratio error detection
- CVI calculation

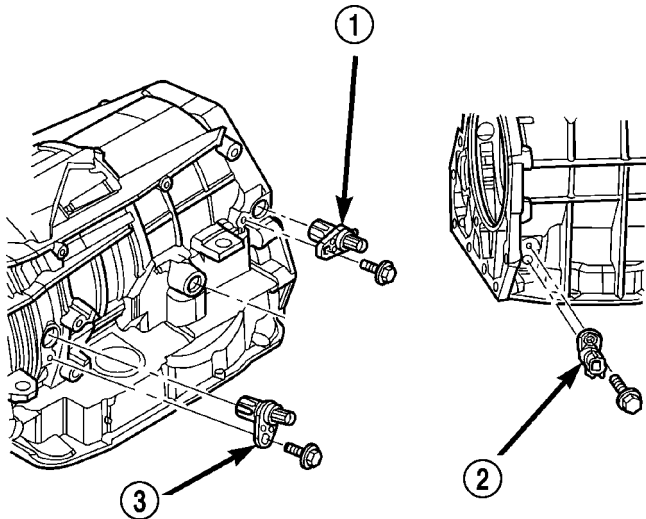
The TCM also compares the input speed signal and the engine speed signal to determine the following:

- Torque converter clutch slippage
- Torque converter element speed ratio

## OUTPUT SPEED SENSOR (Continued)

**REMOVAL**

- (1) Raise vehicle.
- (2) Place a suitable fluid catch pan under the transmission.
- (3) Remove the wiring connector from the output speed sensor (Fig. 96).
- (4) Remove the bolt holding the output speed sensor to the transmission case.
- (5) Remove the output speed sensor from the transmission case.



80c07350

**Fig. 96 Output Speed Sensor**

- 1 - OUTPUT SPEED SENSOR  
2 - LINE PRESSURE SENSOR  
3 - INPUT SPEED SENSOR

**INSTALLATION**

- (1) Install the output speed sensor into the transmission case.
- (2) Install the bolt to hold the output speed sensor into the transmission case. Tighten the bolt to 11.9 N·m (105 in.lbs.).
- (3) Install the wiring connector onto the output speed sensor.
- (4) Verify the transmission fluid level. Add fluid as necessary.
- (5) Lower vehicle.

**OVERDRIVE SWITCH****DESCRIPTION**

The overdrive OFF (control) switch is located in the shifter handle. The switch is a momentary contact device that signals the PCM to toggle current status of the overdrive function.

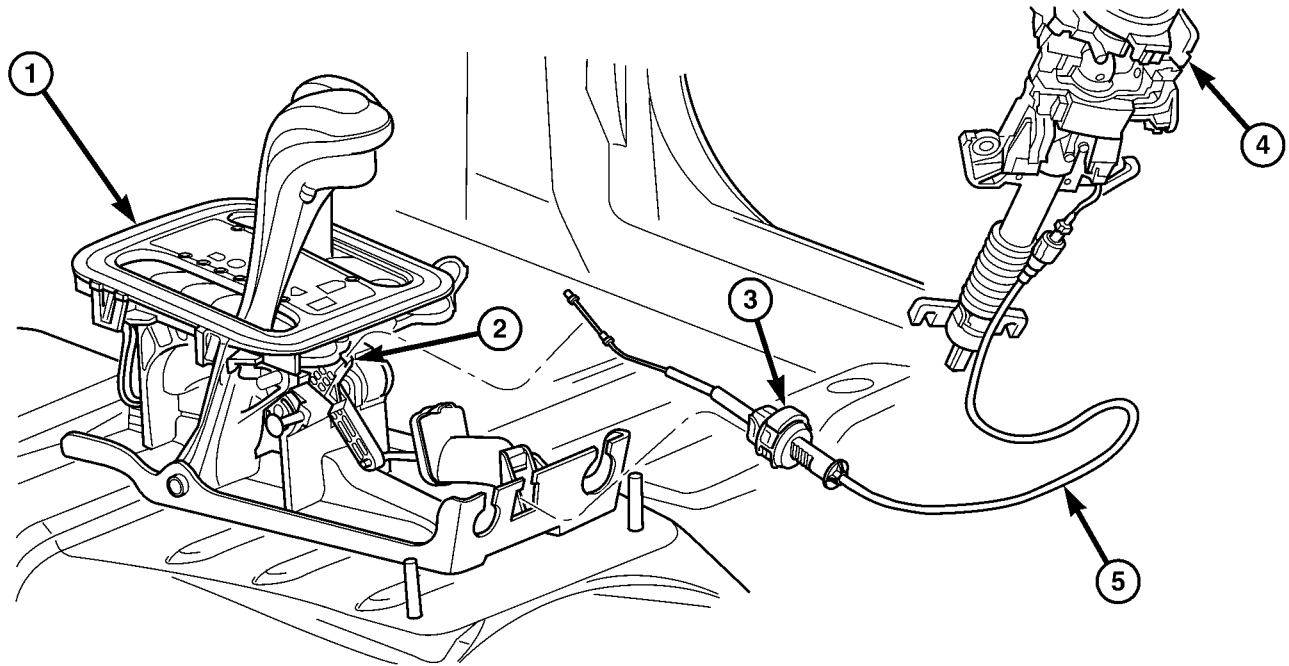
**OPERATION**

At key-on, fourth and fifth gear operation is allowed. Pressing the switch once causes the overdrive OFF mode to be entered and the overdrive OFF switch lamp to be illuminated. Pressing the switch a second time causes normal overdrive operation to be restored and the overdrive lamp to be turned off. The overdrive OFF mode defaults to ON after the ignition switch is cycled OFF and ON. The normal position for the control switch is the ON position. The switch must be in this position to energize the solenoids and allow upshifts to fourth and fifth gears. The control switch indicator light illuminates only when the overdrive switch is turned to the OFF position, or when illuminated by the transmission control module.

**PARK LOCK CABLE****REMOVAL**

- (1) Place the shifter in the PARK position.
- (2) Lower the steering column cover.
- (3) With the ignition switch in the "RUN" position depress the park lock cable locking tab, located on top of the cable connector at the steering column and pull the park lock cable straight out.
- (4) Remove the park lock cable from steering column (Fig. 97).
- (5) Remove the floor console and related trim. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/FLOOR CONSOLE - REMOVAL)
- (6) Disconnect the park lock cable from the shift BTSI lever and remove the cable from the shifter assembly bracket.
- (7) Release the park lock cable from any remaining clips.
- (8) Remove park lock cable from the vehicle.

## PARK LOCK CABLE (Continued)



80dba6a6

**Fig. 97 Brake Transmission Shift Interlock**

1 - SHIFT MECHANISM  
2 - SHIFTER BTSI LEVER  
3 - ADJUSTMENT CLIP

4 - STEERING COLUMN ASSEMBLY  
5 - INTERLOCK CABLE

**INSTALLATION**

**NOTE:** The gearshift cable must be secured into position and properly adjusted before the installation of the Park Lock Cable.

- (1) Verify that the shifter is in the PARK position.
- (2) Push the park lock cable straight into the square mounting hole in the steering column until cable snaps in place.
- (3) Route park lock cable to the shifter mechanism.
- (4) Install the park lock cable end fitting into shifter BTSI lever.

- (5) Pull rearward on the cable housing to snap park lock cable adjuster ears into floor shifter bracket.

- (6) Place the ignition key cylinder in the ACCESSORY position.

- (7) Push the cable adjuster lock clamp downward to lock it.

- (8) Test the park lock cable operation.

- (9) Install the floor console and related trim. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/FLOOR CONSOLE - INSTALLATION)

## PISTONS

### DESCRIPTION

There are several sizes and types of pistons used in an automatic transmission. Some pistons are used to apply clutches. They all have in common the fact that they are round or circular in shape, located within a smooth walled cylinder, which is closed at one end and converts fluid pressure into mechanical movement. The fluid pressure exerted on the piston is contained within the system through the use of piston rings or seals.

### OPERATION

The principal which makes this operation possible is known as Pascal's Law. Pascal's Law can be stated as: "Pressure on a confined fluid is transmitted equally in all directions and acts with equal force on equal areas."

### PRESSURE

Pressure (Fig. 98) is nothing more than force (lbs.) divided by area (in or ft.), or force per unit area. Given a 100 lb. block and an area of 100 sq. in. on the floor, the pressure exerted by the block is: 100 lbs. 100 in or 1 pound per square inch, or PSI as it is commonly referred to.

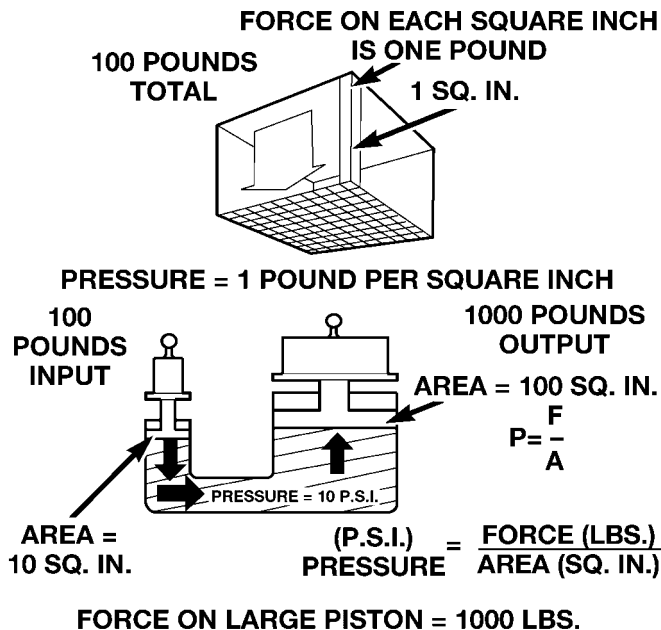
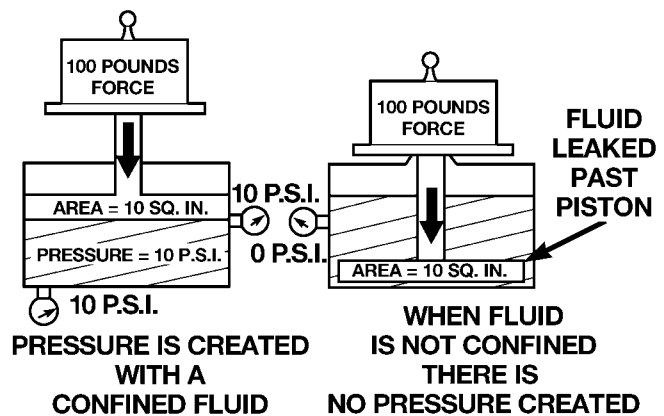


Fig. 98 Force and Pressure Relationship

### PRESSURE ON A CONFINED FLUID

Pressure is exerted on a confined fluid (Fig. 99) by applying a force to some given area in contact with the fluid. A good example of this is a cylinder filled with fluid and equipped with a piston that is closely fitted to the cylinder wall. If a force is applied to the piston, pressure will be developed in the fluid. Of course, no pressure will be created if the fluid is not confined. It will simply "leak" past the piston. There must be a resistance to flow in order to create pressure. Piston sealing is extremely important in hydraulic operation. Several kinds of seals are used to accomplish this within a transmission. These include but are not limited to O-rings, D-rings, lip seals, sealing rings, or extremely close tolerances between the piston and the cylinder wall. The force exerted is downward (gravity), however, the principle remains the same no matter which direction is taken. The pressure created in the fluid is equal to the force applied, divided by the piston area. If the force is 100 lbs., and the piston area is 10 sq. in., then the pressure created equals 10 PSI. Another interpretation of Pascal's Law is that regardless of container shape or size, the pressure will be maintained throughout, as long as the fluid is confined. In other words, the pressure in the fluid is the same everywhere within the container.



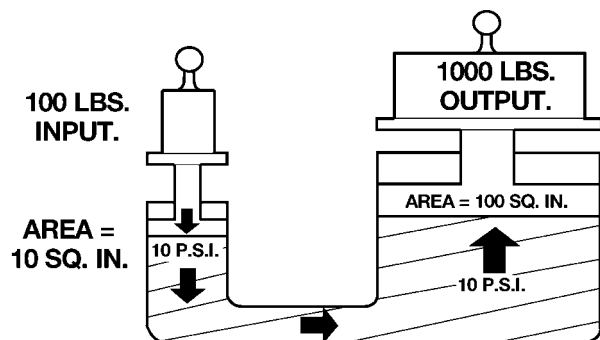
80bfe273

Fig. 99 Pressure on a Confined Fluid

## PISTONS (Continued)

## FORCE MULTIPLICATION

Using the 10 PSI example used in the illustration (Fig. 100), a force of 1000 lbs. can be moved with a force of only 100 lbs. The secret of force multiplication in hydraulic systems is the total fluid contact area employed. The illustration, (Fig. 100), shows an area that is ten times larger than the original area. The pressure created with the smaller 100 lb. input is 10 PSI. The concept "pressure is the same everywhere" means that the pressure underneath the larger piston is also 10 PSI. Pressure is equal to the force applied divided by the contact area. Therefore, by means of simple algebra, the output force may be found. This concept is extremely important, as it is also used in the design and operation of all shift valves and limiting valves in the valve body, as well as the pistons, of the transmission, which activate the clutches and bands. It is nothing more than using a difference of area to create a difference in pressure to move an object.

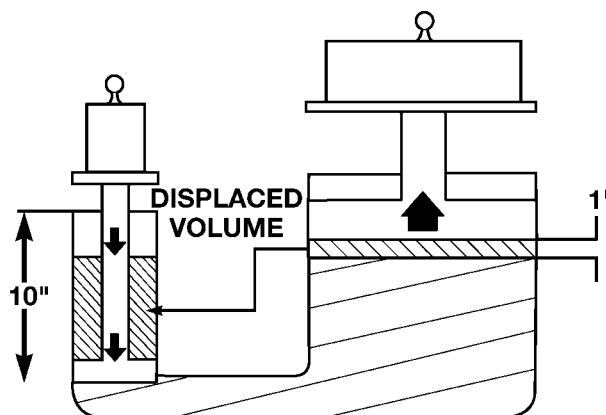


80bfe274

Fig. 100 Force Multiplication

## PISTON TRAVEL

The relationship between hydraulic lever and a mechanical lever is the same. With a mechanical lever it's a weight-to-distance output rather than a pressure-to-area output. Using the same forces and areas as in the previous example, the smaller piston (Fig. 101) has to move ten times the distance required to move the larger piston one inch. Therefore, for every inch the larger piston moves, the smaller piston moves ten inches. This principle is true in other instances also. A common garage floor jack is a good example. To raise a car weighing 2000 lbs., an effort of only 100 lbs. may be required. For every inch the car moves upward, the input piston at the jack handle must move 20 inches downward.



80bfe275

Fig. 101 Piston Travel

## PLANETARY GEARTRAIN

### DESCRIPTION

The planetary geartrain is located behind the 4C retainer/bulkhead, toward the rear of the transmission. The planetary geartrain consists of three primary assemblies:

- Reaction (Fig. 102).
- Reverse (Fig. 103).
- Input (Fig. 103).

### OPERATION

#### REACTION PLANETARY GEARTRAIN

The reaction planetary carrier and reverse sun gear of the reaction planetary geartrain are a single component which is held by the 2C clutch when required. The reaction annulus gear is a stand alone component that can be driven by the reverse clutch

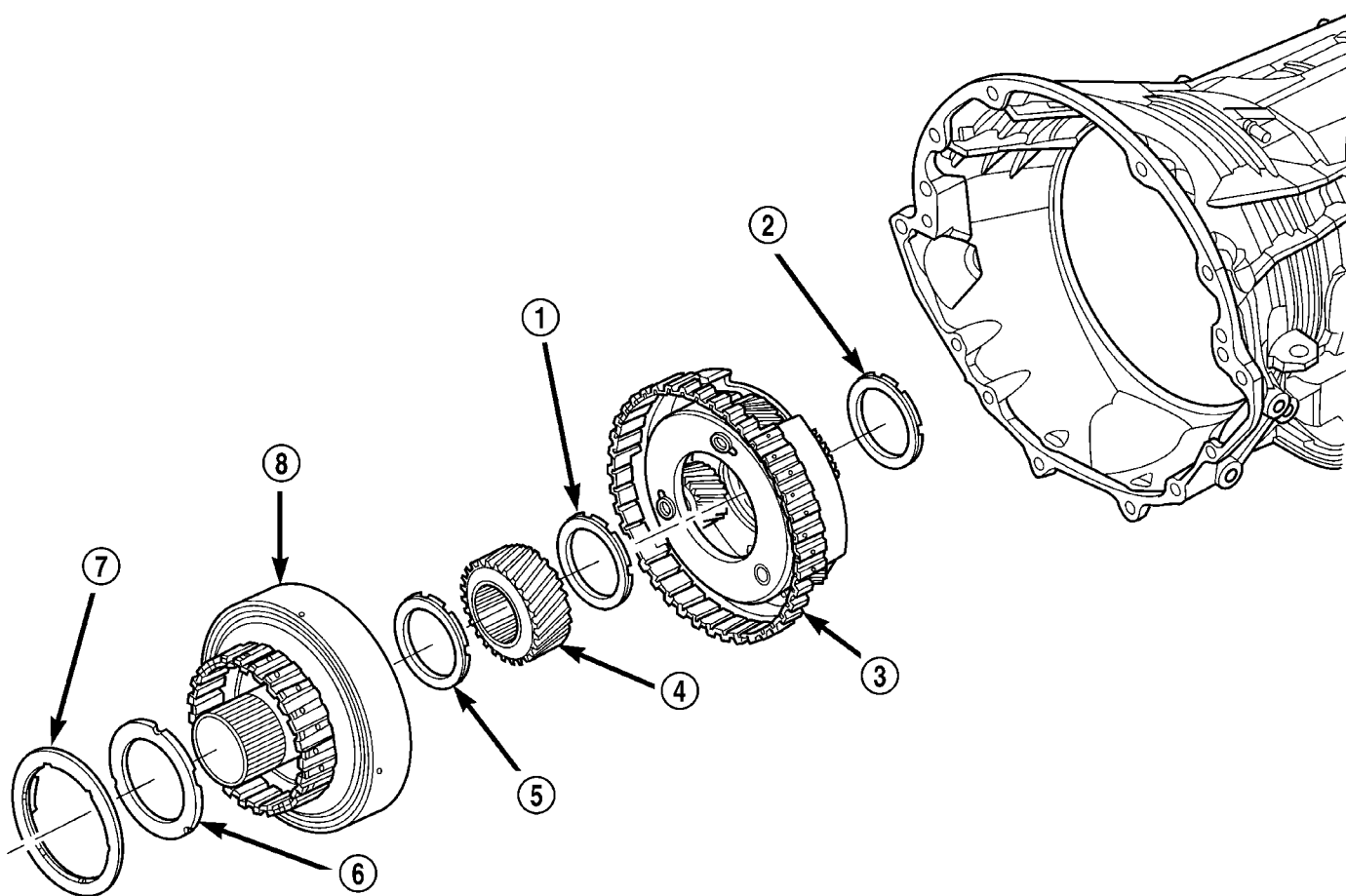
or held by the 4C clutch. The reaction sun gear is driven by the overdrive clutch.

#### REVERSE PLANETARY GEARTRAIN

The reverse planetary geartrain is the middle of the three planetary sets. The reverse planetary carrier can be driven by the overdrive clutch as required. The reverse planetary carrier is also splined to the input annulus gear, which can be held by the low/reverse clutch. The reverse planetary annulus, input planetary carrier, and output shaft are all one piece.

#### INPUT PLANETARY GEARTRAIN

The input sun gear of the input planetary geartrain is driven by the underdrive clutch.



**Fig. 102 Reaction Planetary Geartrain**

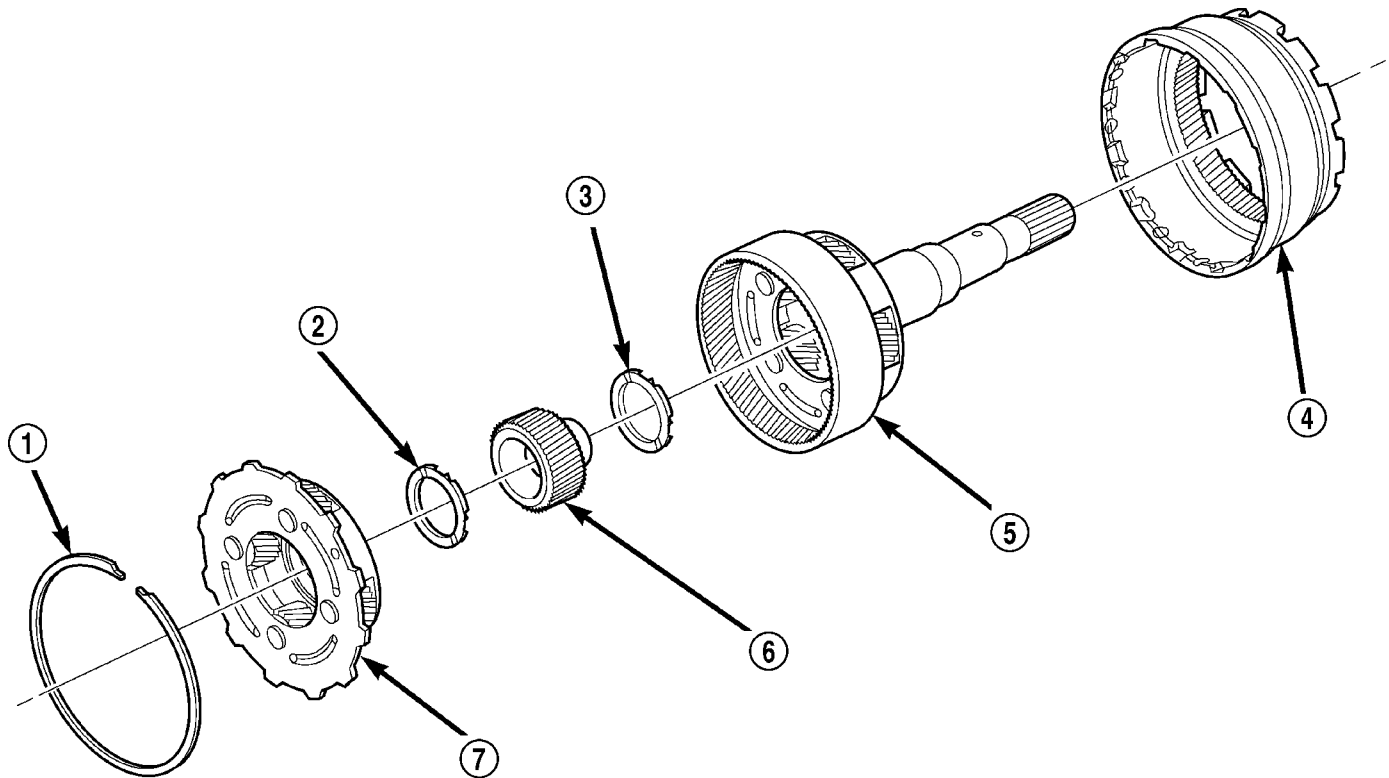
- 1 - BEARING NUMBER 8
- 2 - BEARING NUMBER 9
- 3 - REACTION PLANETARY CARRIER
- 4 - REACTION SUN GEAR

- 5 - BEARING NUMBER 7
- 6 - THRUST PLATE (SELECT)
- 7 - BEARING NUMBER 6
- 8 - REACTION ANNULUS

80c07031



## PLANETARY GEARTRAIN (Continued)



80c07034

**Fig. 103 Reverse/Input Planetary Geartrain**

- 1 - SNAP-RING
- 2 - BEARING NUMBER 10
- 3 - BEARING NUMBER 11
- 4 - INPUT ANNULUS

- 5 - INPUT PLANETARY CARRIER
- 6 - INPUT SUN GEAR
- 7 - REVERSE PLANETARY CARRIER

**DISASSEMBLY**

- (1) Remove the snap-ring holding the input annulus into the input carrier (Fig. 104).
- (2) Remove the input annulus from the input carrier (Fig. 104).
- (3) Remove the number 9 bearing from the reverse planetary carrier. Note that this planetary carrier has four pinion gears.
- (4) Remove the reverse planetary gear carrier (Fig. 104).
- (5) Remove the number 10 bearing from the input sun gear (Fig. 104).
- (6) Remove the input sun gear from the input carrier (Fig. 104).
- (7) Remove the number 11 bearing from the input carrier (Fig. 104).

**CLEANING**

Clean the planetary components in solvent and dry them with compressed air.

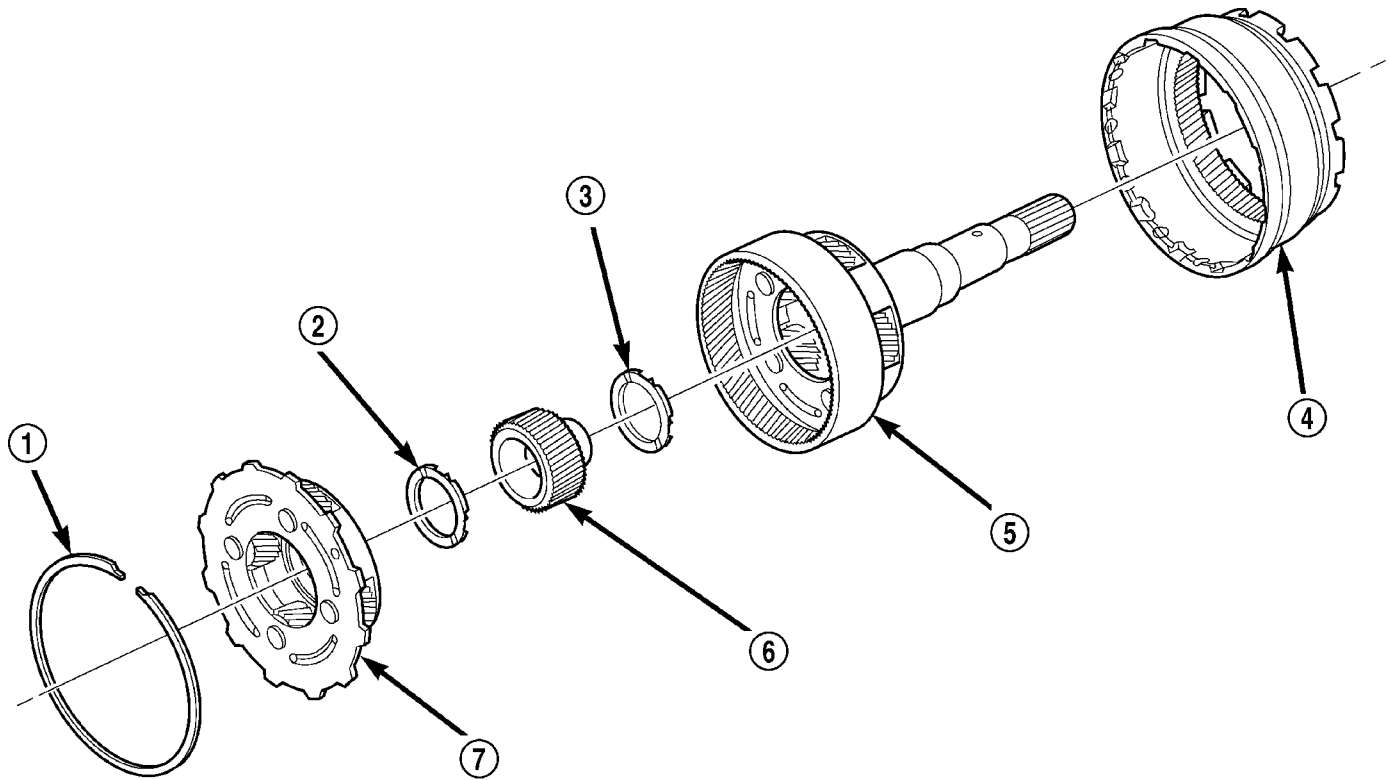
**INSPECTION**

Check sun gear and driving shell condition. Replace the gear if damaged or if the bushings are scored or worn. The bushings are not serviceable. Replace the driving shell if worn, cracked or damaged.

Replace planetary gear sets if gears, pinion pins, or carrier are damaged in any way. Replace the annulus gears and supports if either component is worn or damaged.

Replace the output shaft if the machined surfaces are scored, pitted, or damaged in any way. Also replace the shaft if the splines are damaged, or exhibits cracks at any location.

## PLANETARY GEARTRAIN (Continued)



80c07034

**Fig. 104 Reverse/Input Planetary Carrier Assembly**

1 - SNAP-RING  
 2 - BEARING NUMBER 10  
 3 - BEARING NUMBER 11  
 4 - INPUT ANNULUS

5 - INPUT PLANETARY CARRIER  
 6 - INPUT SUN GEAR  
 7 - REVERSE PLANETARY CARRIER

**ASSEMBLY**

(1) Clean and inspect all components. Replace any components which show evidence of excessive wear or scoring.

(2) Install the number 11 bearing into the input planetary carrier so that the inner race will be toward the front of the transmission (Fig. 104).

(3) Install the input sun gear into the input carrier (Fig. 104).

(4) Install the number 10 bearing onto the rear of the reverse planetary carrier with the inner race toward the carrier (Fig. 104).

(5) Install the number 9 bearing onto the front of the reverse planetary carrier with the outer race toward the carrier and the inner race facing upward (Fig. 104).

(6) Install the reverse planetary gear carrier into the input carrier (Fig. 104).

(7) Install the input annulus gear into the input carrier (Fig. 104).

(8) Install the snap-ring to hold the input annulus gear into the input carrier (Fig. 104).

## SHIFT MECHANISM

### DESCRIPTION

The gear shift mechanism provides six shift positions which are:

- Park (P)
- Reverse (R)
- Neutral (N)
- Drive (D)
- Manual second (2)
- Manual low (1)

### OPERATION

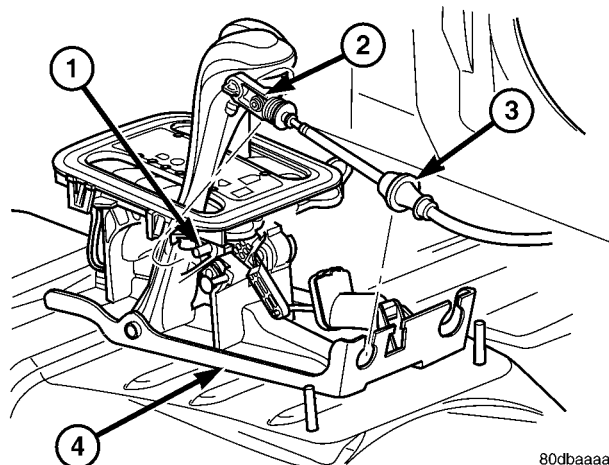
MANUAL LOW (1) range provides FIRST gear only. Overrun braking is also provided in this range. MANUAL SECOND (2) range provides FIRST and SECOND gear only.

DRIVE range provides FIRST, SECOND, THIRD and OVERDRIVE FOURTH and FIFTH gear ranges. The shift into OVERDRIVE FOURTH and FIFTH gear range occurs only after the transmission has completed the shift into D THIRD gear range. No further movement of the shift mechanism is required to complete the 3-4 or 4-5 shifts.

The FOURTH and FIFTH gear upshifts occurs automatically when the overdrive selector switch is in the ON position. An upshift to FOURTH and FIFTH gears may not occur or may be delayed in some of the possible shift schedules. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/ELECTRONIC CONTROL MODULES/TRANSMISSION CONTROL MODULE - OPERATION)

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove any necessary console parts for access to shift lever assembly and shifter cables. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/FLOOR CONSOLE - REMOVAL)
- (2) Shift transmission into PARK.
- (3) Disconnect the transmission shift cable at shift lever and shifter assembly bracket (Fig. 105).
- (4) Disconnect the park lock cable from the shifter BTSI lever and the shifter assembly bracket. (Fig. 106)
- (5) Disconnect the transfer case shift cable from the transfer case shift lever pin (Fig. 107), if equipped.
- (6) Remove the clip holding the transfer case shift cable to the shifter assembly bracket, if equipped.
- (7) Remove the transfer case shift cable from the shifter assembly bracket, if equipped.
- (8) Disengage all wiring connectors from the shifter assembly.
- (9) Remove all nuts holding the shifter assembly to the floor pan (Fig. 108).
- (10) Remove the shifter assembly from the vehicle.



80dbaaaa

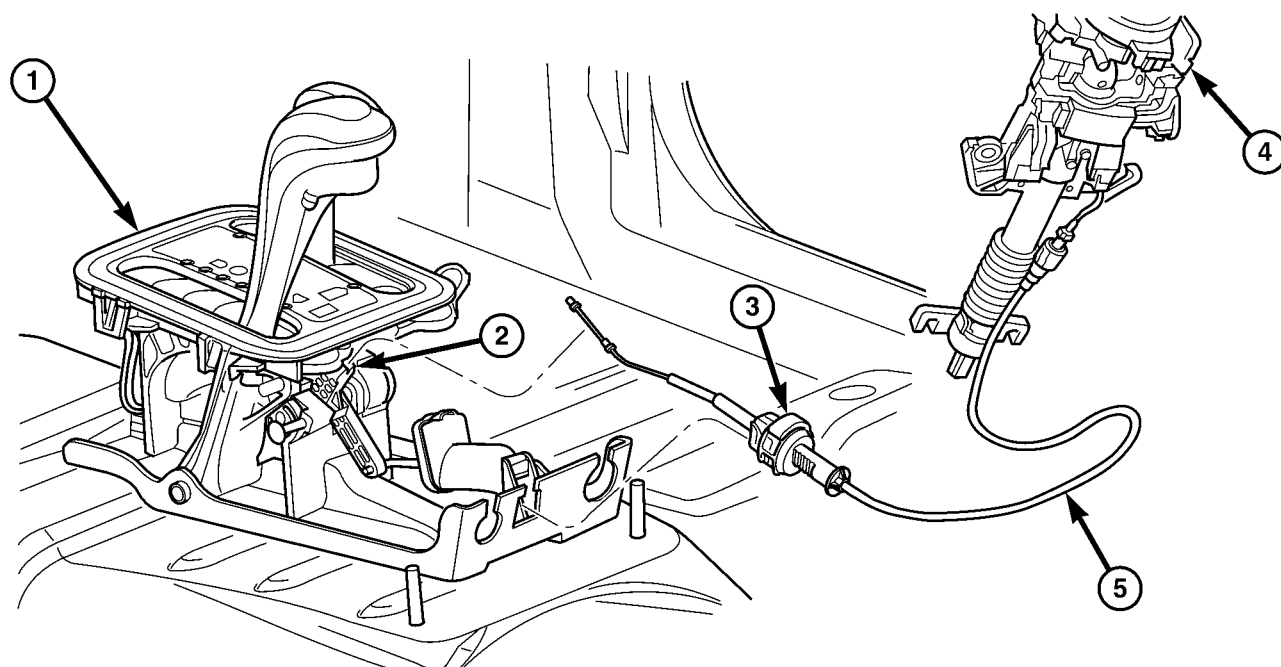
**Fig. 105 Transmission Shift Cable**

- 1 - SHIFT LEVER PIN
- 2 - ADJUSTMENT SCREW
- 3 - SHIFT CABLE
- 4 - SHIFTER ASSEMBLY BRACKET

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Install shifter assembly onto the shifter assembly studs on the floor pan.
- (2) Install the nuts to hold the shifter assembly onto the floor pan. Tighten nuts to 28 N·m (250 in.lbs.).
- (3) Place the floor shifter lever in PARK position.
- (4) Loosen the adjustment screw on the shift cable.
- (5) Verify that the park lock cable adjustment tab is pulled upward to the unlocked position.
- (6) Install wiring harness to the shifter assembly bracket. Engage any wire connectors removed from the shifter assembly.
- (7) Install the transfer case shift cable to the shifter assembly bracket. Install clip to hold cable to the bracket.
- (8) Snap the transfer case shift cable, if equipped, onto the transfer case shift lever pin.
- (9) Install the park lock cable into the shifter assembly bracket and into the shifter BTSI lever. (Refer to 21 - TRANSMISSION/TRANSAXLE/AUTOMATIC/SHIFT INTERLOCK MECHANISM - ADJUSTMENTS)
- (10) Install the shift cable to the shifter assembly bracket. Push cable into the bracket until secure.
- (11) Snap the shift cable onto the shift lever pin.
- (12) Verify that the shift lever is in the PARK position.
- (13) Tighten the adjustment screw to 7 N·m (65 in.lbs.).
- (14) Place the key in the accessory position.
- (15) Push downward on the park lock cable adjustment tab to lock the adjustment.
- (16) Verify correct shifter, park lock, and BTSI operation.

## SHIFT MECHANISM (Continued)

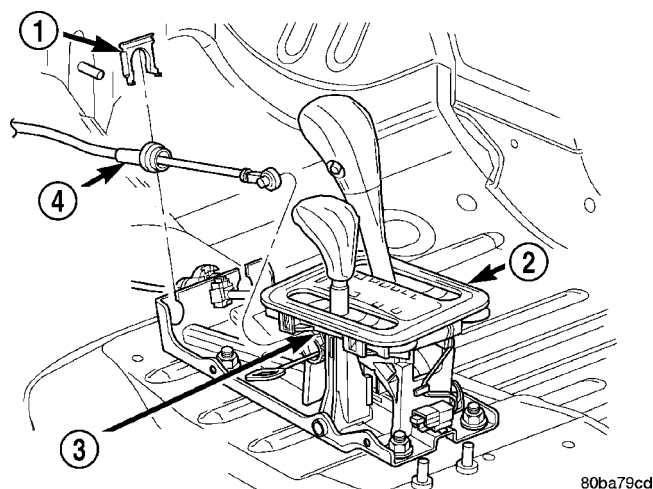


80dba6a6

**Fig. 106 Brake Transmission Interlock Cable**

- 1 - SHIFT MECHANISM
- 2 - SHIFTER BTSI LEVER
- 3 - ADJUSTMENT CLIP

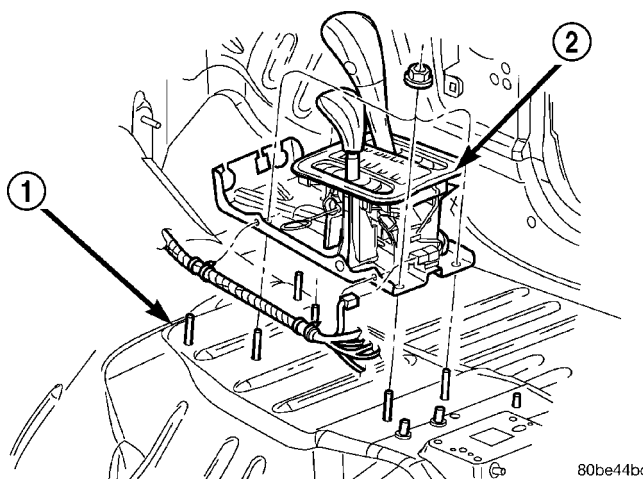
- 4 - STEERING COLUMN ASSEMBLY
- 5 - INTERLOCK CABLE



80ba79cd

**Fig. 107 Transfer Case Shift Cable**

- 1 - CLIP
- 2 - SHIFTER
- 3 - TRANSFER CASE SHIFT LEVER PIN
- 4 - TRANSFER CASE SHIFT CABLE



80be44bc

**Fig. 108 Shifter Assembly**

- 1 - FLOOR PAN
- 2 - SHIFTER ASSEMBLY

(17) Install any console parts removed for access to shift lever assembly and shift cables. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/FLOOR CONSOLE - INSTALLATION)

## SOLENOID SWITCH VALVE

### DESCRIPTION

The Solenoid Switch Valve (SSV) is located in the valve body and controls the direction of the transmission fluid when the L/R-TCC solenoid is energized.

### OPERATION

The Solenoid Switch Valve controls line pressure from the LR-TCC solenoid. In 1st gear, the SSV will be in the downshifted position, thus directing fluid to the L/R clutch circuit. In 2nd, 3rd, 4th, and 5th gears, the solenoid switch valve will be in the upshifted position and directs the fluid into the torque converter clutch (TCC) circuit.

When shifting into 1st gear, a special hydraulic sequence is performed to ensure SSV movement into the downshifted position. The L/R pressure switch is monitored to confirm SSV movement. If the movement is not confirmed (the L/R pressure switch does not close), 2nd gear is substituted for 1st. A DTC will be set after three unsuccessful attempts are made to get into 1st gear in one given key start.

## SOLENOIDS

### DESCRIPTION

The typical electrical solenoid used in automotive applications is a linear actuator. It is a device that produces motion in a straight line. This straight line motion can be either forward or backward in direction, and short or long distance.

A solenoid is an electromechanical device that uses a magnetic force to perform work. It consists of a coil of wire, wrapped around a magnetic core made from steel or iron, and a spring loaded, movable plunger, which performs the work, or straight line motion.

The solenoids used in transmission applications are attached to valves which can be classified as **normally open** or **normally closed**. The **normally open** solenoid valve is defined as a valve which allows hydraulic flow when no current or voltage is applied to the solenoid. The **normally closed** solenoid valve is defined as a valve which does not allow hydraulic flow when no current or voltage is applied to the solenoid. These valves perform hydraulic control functions for the transmission and must therefore be durable and tolerant of dirt particles. For these reasons, the valves have hardened steel poppets and ball valves. The solenoids operate the valves directly, which means that the solenoids must have very high outputs to close the valves against the sizable flow areas and line pressures found in current transmissions. Fast response time is also necessary to ensure accurate control of the transmission.

The strength of the magnetic field is the primary force that determines the speed of operation in a particular solenoid design. A stronger magnetic field will cause the plunger to move at a greater speed than a weaker one. There are basically two ways to increase the force of the magnetic field:

- Increase the amount of current applied to the coil or
- Increase the number of turns of wire in the coil.

The most common practice is to increase the number of turns by using thin wire that can completely fill the available space within the solenoid housing. The strength of the spring and the length of the plunger also contribute to the response speed possible by a particular solenoid design.

A solenoid can also be described by the method by which it is controlled. Some of the possibilities include variable force, pulse-width modulated, constant ON, or duty cycle. The variable force and pulse-width modulated versions utilize similar methods to control the current flow through the solenoid to position the solenoid plunger at a desired position somewhere between full ON and full OFF. The constant ON and duty cycled versions control the voltage across the solenoid to allow either full flow or no flow through the solenoid's valve.

### OPERATION

When an electrical current is applied to the solenoid coil, a magnetic field is created which produces an attraction to the plunger, causing the plunger to move and work against the spring pressure and the load applied by the fluid the valve is controlling. The plunger is normally directly attached to the valve which it is to operate. When the current is removed from the coil, the attraction is removed and the plunger will return to its original position due to spring pressure.

The plunger is made of a conductive material and accomplishes this movement by providing a path for the magnetic field to flow. By keeping the air gap between the plunger and the coil to the minimum necessary to allow free movement of the plunger, the magnetic field is maximized.

## TORQUE CONVERTER

### DESCRIPTION

The torque converter (Fig. 109) is a hydraulic device that couples the engine crankshaft to the transmission. The torque converter consists of an outer shell with an internal turbine, a stator, an overrunning clutch, an impeller and an electronically applied converter clutch. The converter clutch provides reduced engine speed and greater fuel economy



## TORQUE CONVERTER (Continued)

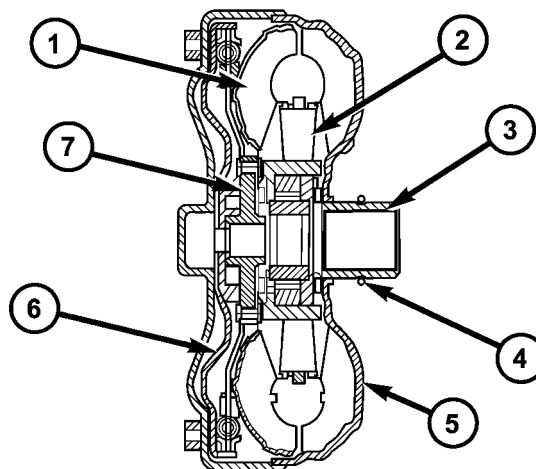
when engaged. Clutch engagement also provides reduced transmission fluid temperatures. The torque converter hub drives the transmission oil (fluid) pump and contains an o-ring seal to better control oil flow.

The torque converter is a sealed, welded unit that is not repairable and is serviced as an assembly.

**CAUTION:** The torque converter must be replaced if a transmission failure resulted in large amounts of metal or fiber contamination in the fluid.

## IMPELLER

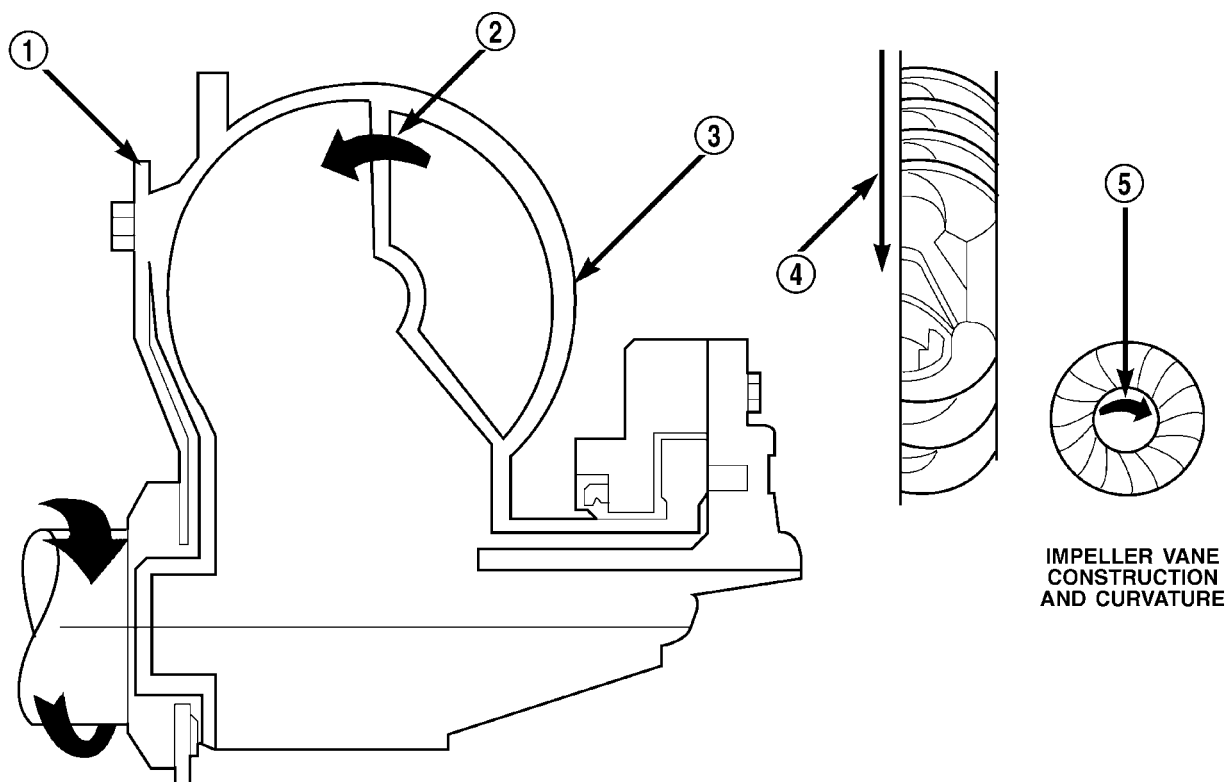
The impeller (Fig. 110) is an integral part of the converter housing. The impeller consists of curved blades placed radially along the inside of the housing on the transmission side of the converter. As the converter housing is rotated by the engine, so is the impeller, because they are one and the same and are the driving members of the system.



80ceb25d

**Fig. 109 Torque Converter Assembly**

- 1 - TURBINE ASSEMBLY
- 2 - STATOR
- 3 - CONVERTER HUB
- 4 - O-RING
- 5 - IMPELLER ASSEMBLY
- 6 - CONVERTER CLUTCH PISTON
- 7 - TURBINE HUB



IMPELLER VANE  
CONSTRUCTION  
AND CURVATURE

80bfe26a

**Fig. 110 Impeller**

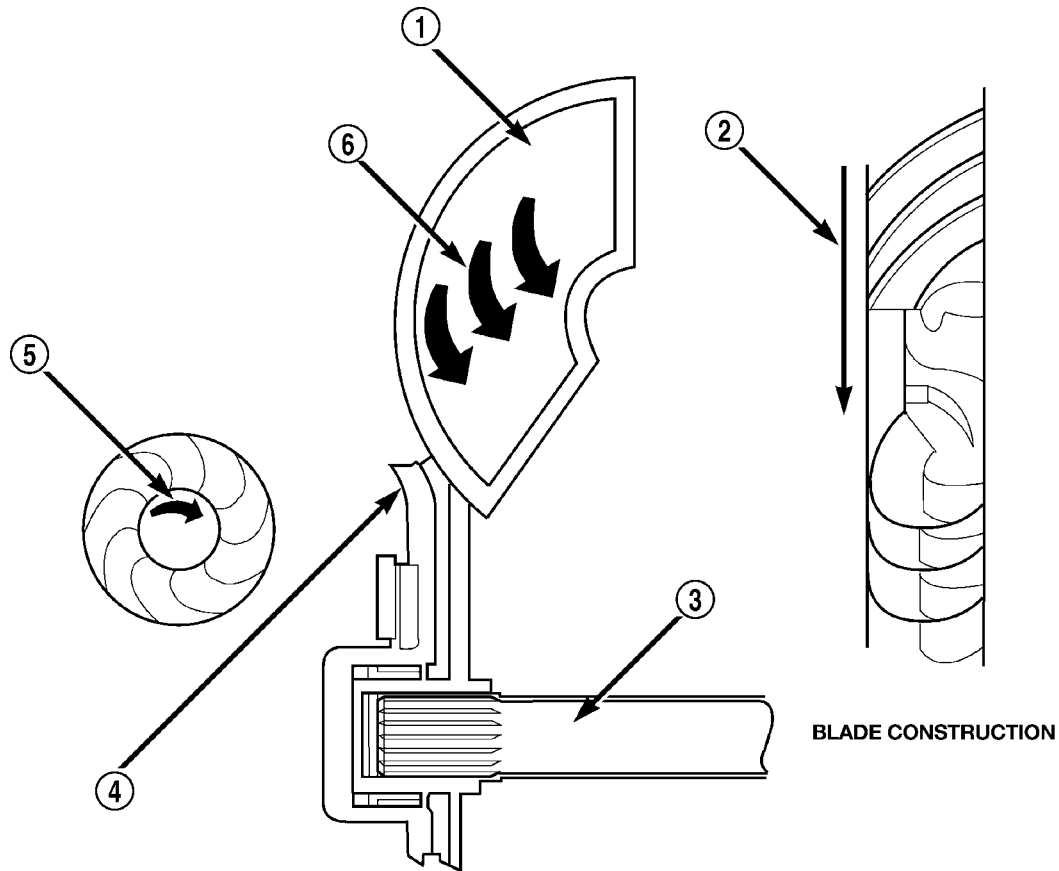
- 1 - ENGINE FLEXPLATE
- 2 - OIL FLOW FROM IMPELLER SECTION INTO TURBINE SECTION
- 3 - IMPELLER VANES AND COVER ARE INTEGRAL
- 4 - ENGINE ROTATION
- 5 - IMPELLER ROTATION



## TORQUE CONVERTER (Continued)

**TURBINE**

The turbine (Fig. 111) is the output, or driven, member of the converter. The turbine is mounted within the housing opposite the impeller, but is not attached to the housing. The input shaft is inserted through the center of the impeller and splined into the turbine. The design of the turbine is similar to the impeller, except the blades of the turbine are curved in the opposite direction.



80bfe26b

**Fig. 111 Turbine**

- 1 - TURBINE VANE
- 2 - ENGINE ROTATION
- 3 - INPUT SHAFT

- 4 - PORTION OF TORQUE CONVERTER COVER
- 5 - ENGINE ROTATION
- 6 - OIL FLOW WITHIN TURBINE SECTION

## TORQUE CONVERTER (Continued)

## STATOR

The stator assembly (Fig. 112) is mounted on a stationary shaft which is an integral part of the oil pump. The stator is located between the impeller and turbine within the torque converter case (Fig. 113). The stator contains an over-running clutch, which allows the stator to rotate only in a clockwise direction. When the stator is locked against the over-running clutch, the torque multiplication feature of the torque converter is operational.

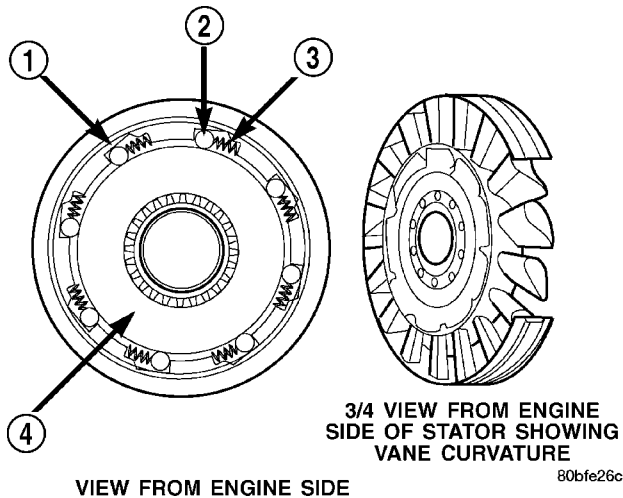


Fig. 112 Stator Components

- 1 - CAM (OUTER RACE)
- 2 - ROLLER
- 3 - SPRING
- 4 - INNER RACE

## TORQUE CONVERTER CLUTCH (TCC)

The TCC (Fig. 114) was installed to improve the efficiency of the torque converter that is lost to the slippage of the fluid coupling. Although the fluid coupling provides smooth, shock-free power transfer, it is natural for all fluid couplings to slip. If the impeller and turbine were mechanically locked together, a zero slippage condition could be obtained. A hydraulic piston with friction material was added to the turbine assembly to provide this mechanical lock-up.

In order to reduce heat build-up in the transmission and buffer the powertrain against torsional vibrations, the TCM can duty cycle the L/R-CC Solenoid to achieve a smooth application of the torque converter clutch. This function, referred to as Electronically Modulated Converter Clutch (EMCC) can occur at various times depending on the following variables:

- Shift lever position
- Current gear range
- Transmission fluid temperature
- Engine coolant temperature
- Input speed
- Throttle angle
- Engine speed

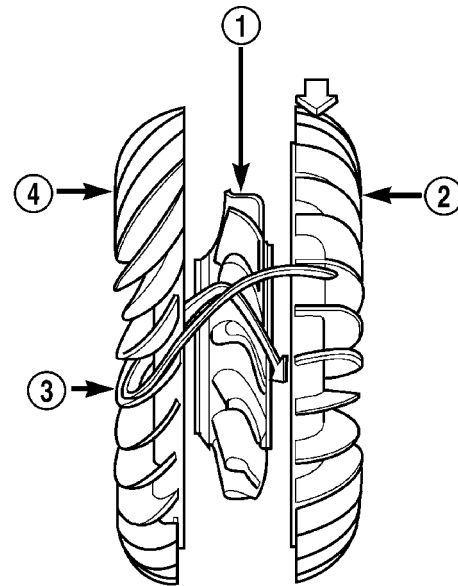


Fig. 113 Stator Location

- 1 - STATOR
- 2 - IMPELLER
- 3 - FLUID FLOW
- 4 - TURBINE

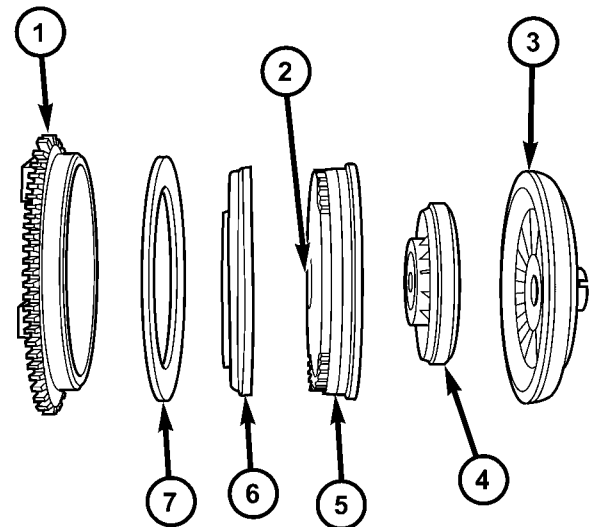


Fig. 114 Torque Converter Clutch (TCC)

- 1 - IMPELLER FRONT COVER
- 2 - THRUST WASHER ASSEMBLY
- 3 - IMPELLER
- 4 - STATOR
- 5 - TURBINE
- 6 - PISTON
- 7 - FRICTION DISC

## TORQUE CONVERTER (Continued)

## OPERATION

The converter impeller (Fig. 115) (driving member), which is integral to the converter housing and bolted to the engine drive plate, rotates at engine speed. The converter turbine (driven member), which reacts from fluid pressure generated by the impeller, rotates and turns the transmission input shaft.

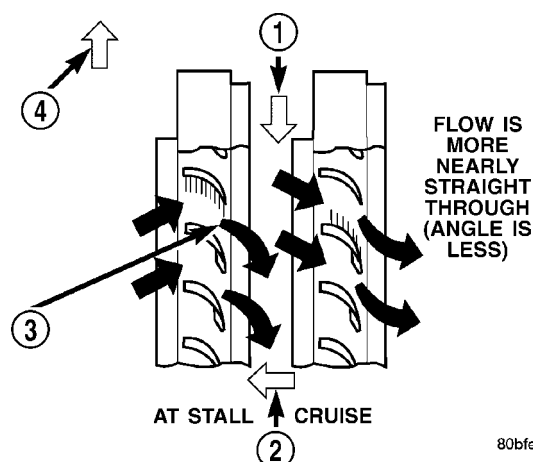
## TURBINE

As the fluid that was put into motion by the impeller blades strikes the blades of the turbine, some of the energy and rotational force is transferred into the turbine and the input shaft. This causes both of them (turbine and input shaft) to rotate in a clockwise direction following the impeller. As the fluid is leaving the trailing edges of the turbine's blades it continues in a "hindering" direction back toward the impeller. If the fluid is not redirected before it strikes the impeller, it will strike the impeller in such a direction that it would tend to slow it down.

## STATOR

Torque multiplication is achieved by locking the stator's over-running clutch to its shaft (Fig. 116). Under stall conditions (the turbine is stationary), the oil leaving the turbine blades strikes the face of the stator blades and tries to rotate them in a counterclockwise direction. When this happens the over-running clutch of the stator locks and holds the stator from rotating. With the stator locked, the oil strikes the stator blades and is

redirected into a "helping" direction before it enters the impeller. This circulation of oil from impeller to turbine, turbine to stator, and stator to impeller, can produce a maximum torque multiplication of about 2.4:1. As the turbine begins to match the speed of the impeller, the fluid that was hitting the stator in such a way as to cause it to lock-up is no longer doing so. In this condition of operation, the stator begins to free wheel and the converter acts as a fluid coupling.



80bfe26e

Fig. 116 Stator Operation

- 1 - DIRECTION STATOR WILL FREE WHEEL DUE TO OIL PUSHING ON BACKSIDE OF VANES
- 2 - FRONT OF ENGINE
- 3 - INCREASED ANGLE AS OIL STRIKES VANES
- 4 - DIRECTION STATOR IS LOCKED UP DUE TO OIL PUSHING AGAINST STATOR VANES

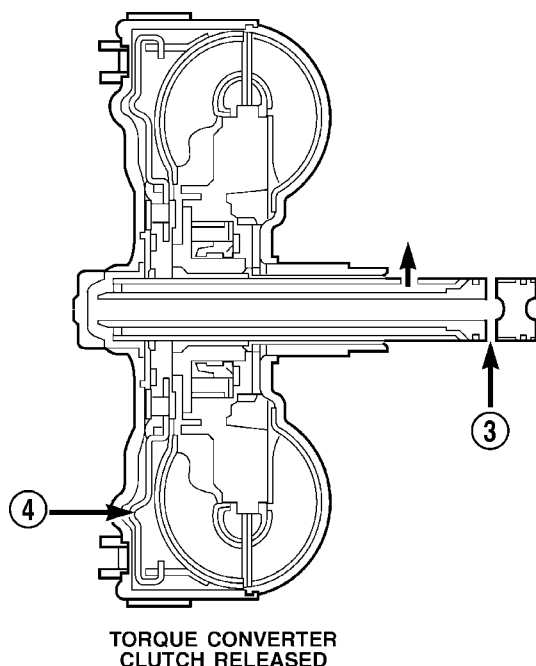
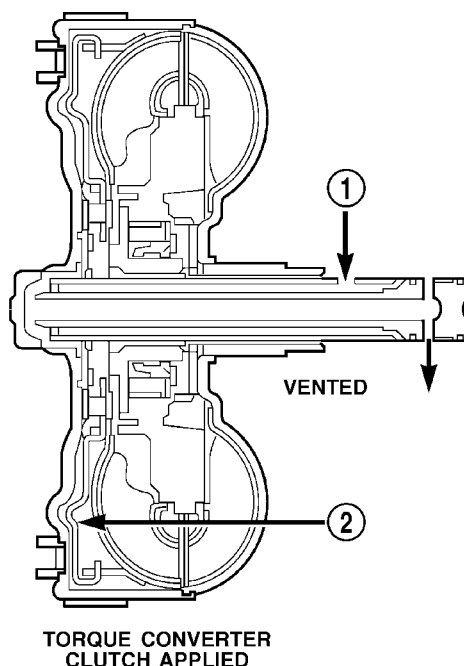
TORQUE CONVERTER  
CLUTCH RELEASEDTORQUE CONVERTER  
CLUTCH APPLIED

Fig. 115 Torque Converter Fluid Operation - Typical

80bfe276

- 1 - APPLY PRESSURE
- 2 - THE PISTON MOVES SLIGHTLY FORWARD

- 3 - RELEASE PRESSURE
- 4 - THE PISTON MOVES SLIGHTLY REARWARD

## TORQUE CONVERTER (Continued)

## TORQUE CONVERTER CLUTCH (TCC)

In a standard torque converter, the impeller and turbine are rotating at about the same speed and the stator is freewheeling, providing no torque multiplication. By applying the turbine's piston and friction material to the front cover, a total converter engagement can be obtained. The result of this engagement is a direct 1:1 mechanical link between the engine and the transmission.

The clutch can be engaged in second, third, fourth, and fifth gear ranges depending on overdrive control switch position. If the overdrive control switch is in the normal ON position, the clutch will engage after the shift to fourth gear, and above approximately 72 km/h (45 mph). If the control switch is in the OFF position, the clutch will engage after the shift to third gear, at approximately 56 km/h (35 mph) at light throttle.

The TCM controls the torque converter by way of internal logic software. The programming of the software provides the TCM with control over the L/R-CC Solenoid. There are four output logic states that can be applied as follows:

- No EMCC
- Partial EMCC
- Full EMCC
- Gradual-to-no EMCC

## NO EMCC

Under No EMCC conditions, the L/R Solenoid is OFF. There are several conditions that can result in NO EMCC operations. No EMCC can be initiated due to a fault in the transmission or because the TCM does not see the need for EMCC under current driving conditions.

## PARTIAL EMCC

Partial EMCC operation modulates the L/R Solenoid (duty cycle) to obtain partial torque converter clutch application. Partial EMCC operation is maintained until Full EMCC is called for and actuated. During Partial EMCC some slip does occur. Partial EMCC will usually occur at low speeds, low load and light throttle situations.

## FULL EMCC

During Full EMCC operation, the TCM increases the L/R Solenoid duty cycle to full ON after Partial EMCC control brings the engine speed within the desired slip range of transmission input speed relative to engine rpm.

## GRADUAL-TO-NO EMCC

This operation is to soften the change from Full or Partial EMCC to No EMCC. This is done at mid-throttle by decreasing the L/R Solenoid duty cycle.

## REMOVAL

- (1) Remove transmission and torque converter from vehicle.
- (2) Place a suitable drain pan under the converter housing end of the transmission.

**CAUTION:** Verify that transmission is secure on the lifting device or work surface, the center of gravity of the transmission will shift when the torque converter is removed creating an unstable condition. The torque converter is a heavy unit. Use caution when separating the torque converter from the transmission.

- (3) Pull the torque converter forward until the center hub clears the oil pump seal.
- (4) Separate the torque converter from the transmission.

## INSTALLATION

Check converter hub and drive flats for sharp edges, burrs, scratches, or nicks. Polish the hub and flats with 320/400 grit paper or crocus cloth if necessary. Verify that the converter hub o-ring is properly installed and is free from debris. The hub must be smooth to avoid damaging the pump seal at installation.

- (1) Lubricate oil pump seal lip with transmission fluid.
- (2) Place torque converter in position on transmission.

**CAUTION:** Do not damage oil pump seal or converter hub o-ring while inserting torque converter into the front of the transmission.

- (3) Align torque converter to oil pump seal opening.
- (4) Insert torque converter hub into oil pump.
- (5) While pushing torque converter inward, rotate converter until converter is fully seated in the oil pump gears.

## TORQUE CONVERTER (Continued)

(6) Check converter seating with a scale and straightedge (Fig. 117). Surface of converter lugs should be at least 13 mm (1/2 in.) to rear of straight-edge when converter is fully seated.

(7) If necessary, temporarily secure converter with C-clamp attached to the converter housing.

(8) Install the transmission in the vehicle.

(9) Fill the transmission with the recommended fluid.

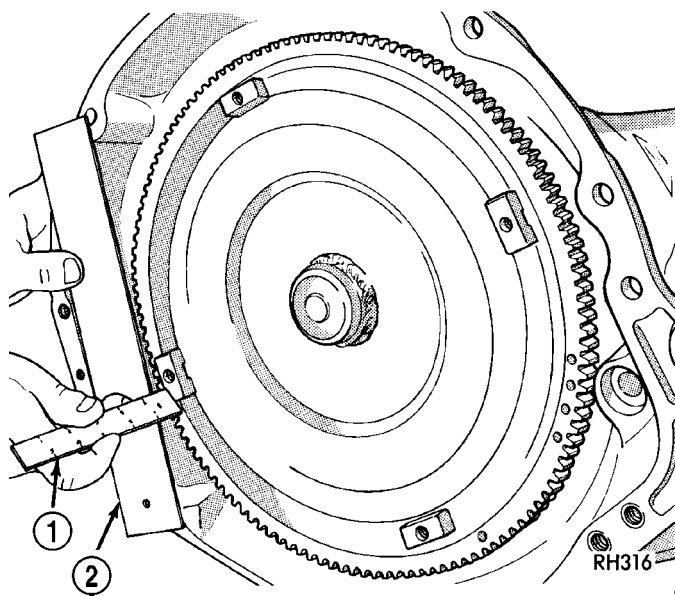


Fig. 117 Checking Torque Converter Seating-Typical

1 - SCALE  
2 - STRAIGHTEDGE

## TRANSMISSION CONTROL RELAY

## DESCRIPTION

The relay is supplied fused B+ voltage, energized by the TCM, and is used to supply power to the solenoid pack when the transmission is in normal operating mode.

## OPERATION

When the relay is "off", no power is supplied to the solenoid pack and the transmission is in "limp-in" mode. After a controller reset, the TCM energizes the relay. Prior to this, the TCM verifies that the contacts are open by checking for no voltage at the switched battery terminals. After this is verified, the voltage at the solenoid pack pressure switches is checked. After the relay is energized, the TCM monitors the terminals to verify that the voltage is greater than 3 volts.

## TRANSMISSION RANGE SENSOR

## DESCRIPTION

The Transmission Range Sensor (TRS) is part of the solenoid module, which is mounted to the top of the valve body inside the transmission.

The Transmission Range Sensor (TRS) has five switch contact pins that:

- Determine shift lever position
- Supply ground to the Starter Relay in Park and Neutral only.
- Supply +12 V to the backup lamps in Reverse only.

The TRS also has an integrated temperature sensor (thermistor) that communicates transmission temperature to the TCM and PCM.

## OPERATION

The Transmission Range Sensor (TRS) communicates shift lever position to the TCM as a combination of open and closed switches. Each shift lever position has an assigned combination of switch states (open/closed) that the TCM receives from four sense circuits. The TCM interprets this information and determines the appropriate transmission gear position and shift schedule.

There are many possible combinations of open and closed switches (codes). Seven of these possible codes are related to gear position and five are recognized as "between gear" codes. This results in many codes which should **never occur**. These are called "invalid" codes. An invalid code will result in a DTC, and the TCM will then determine the shift lever position based on pressure switch data. This allows reasonably normal transmission operation with a TRS failure.

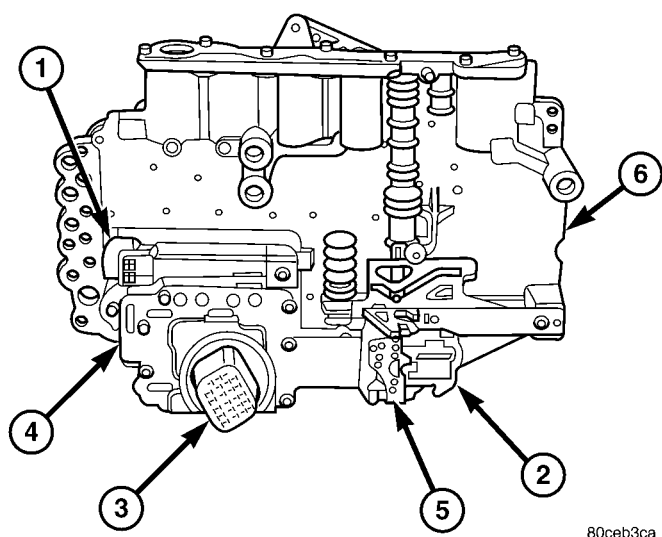
GEAR	C5	C4	C3	C2	C1
Park	CL	OP	OP	CL	CL
Temp 1	CL	OP	OP	CL	OP
Reverse	OP	OP	OP	CL	OP
Temp 2	OP	OP	CL	CL	OP
Neutral 1	OP	OP	CL	CL	CL
Neutral 2	OP	CL	CL	CL	CL
Temp 3	OP	CL	CL	CL	OP
Drive	OP	CL	CL	OP	OP
Temp 4	OP	CL	OP	OP	OP
Manual 2	CL	CL	OP	OP	OP
Temp 5	CL	OP	OP	OP	OP
Manual 1	CL	OP	CL	OP	OP



## TRANSMISSION SOLENOID/ TRS ASSEMBLY

### DESCRIPTION

The transmission solenoid/TRS assembly is internal to the transmission and mounted on the valve body assembly (Fig. 118). The assembly consists of six solenoids that control hydraulic pressure to the six friction elements (transmission clutches), and the torque converter clutch. The pressure control solenoid is located on the side of the solenoid/TRS assembly. The solenoid/TRS assembly also contains five pressure switches that feed information to the TCM.



80ceb3ca

**Fig. 118 Transmission Solenoid/TRS Assembly**

- 1 - PRESSURE CONTROL SOLENOID
- 2 - TRANSMISSION RANGE SELECTOR PLATE
- 3 - 23-WAY CONNECTOR
- 4 - SOLENOID PACK
- 5 - TRANSMISSION RANGE SENSOR
- 6 - VALVE BODY

### OPERATION

#### SOLENOIDS

Solenoids are used to control the L/R, 2C, 4C, OD, and UD friction elements. The reverse clutch is controlled by line pressure and the position of the manual valve in the valve body. All the solenoids are contained within the Solenoid and Pressure Switch Assembly. The solenoid and pressure switch assembly contains one additional solenoid, Multi-Select (MS), which serves primarily to provide 2nd and 3rd gear limp-in operation.

The solenoids receive electrical power from the Transmission Control Relay through a single wire. The TCM energizes or operates the solenoids individually by grounding the return wire of the solenoid as

necessary. When a solenoid is energized, the solenoid valve shifts, and a fluid passage is opened or closed (vented or applied), depending on its default operating state. The result is an apply or release of a frictional element.

The MS and UD solenoids are normally applied to allow transmission limp-in in the event of an electrical failure.

The continuity of the solenoids and circuits are periodically tested. Each solenoid is turned on or off depending on its current state. An inductive spike should be detected by the TCM during this test. If no spike is detected, the circuit is tested again to verify the failure. In addition to the periodic testing, the solenoid circuits are tested if a speed ratio or pressure switch error occurs.

### PRESSURE SWITCHES

The TCM relies on five pressure switches to monitor fluid pressure in the L/R, 2C, 4C, UD, and OD hydraulic circuits. The primary purpose of these switches is to help the TCM detect when clutch circuit hydraulic failures occur. The switches close at 23 psi and open at 11 psi, and simply indicate whether or not pressure exists. The switches are continuously monitored by the TCM for the correct states (open or closed) in each gear as shown in the following chart:

GEAR	L/R	2C	4C	UD	OD
R	OP	OP	OP	OP	OP
P/N	CL	OP	OP	OP	OP
1ST	CL*	OP	OP	CL	OP
2ND	OP	CL	OP	CL	OP
2ND PRIME	OP	OP	CL	CL	OP
D	OP	OP	OP	CL	CL
4TH	OP	OP	CL	OP	CL
5TH	OP	CL	OP	OP	CL

\*L/R is closed if output speed is below 100 rpm in Drive and Manual 2. L/R is open in Manual 1.

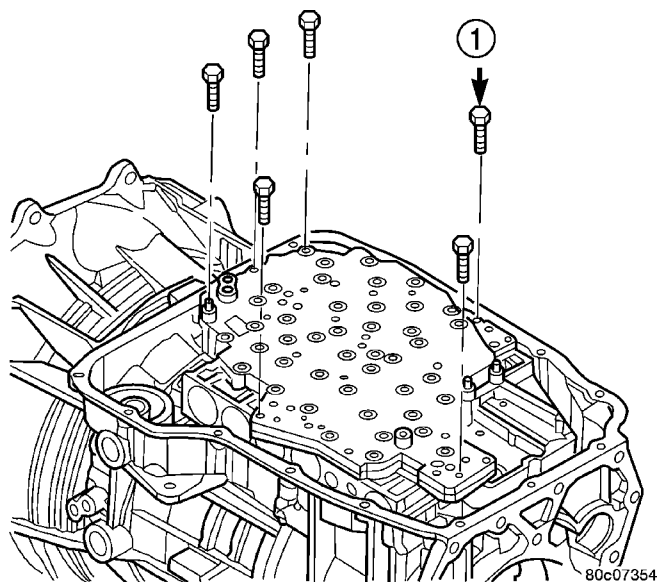
A Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) will set if the TCM senses any switch open or closed at the wrong time in a given gear.



## TRANSMISSION SOLENOID/TRS ASSEMBLY (Continued)

**REMOVAL**

(1) Remove the valve body from the transmission (Fig. 119).

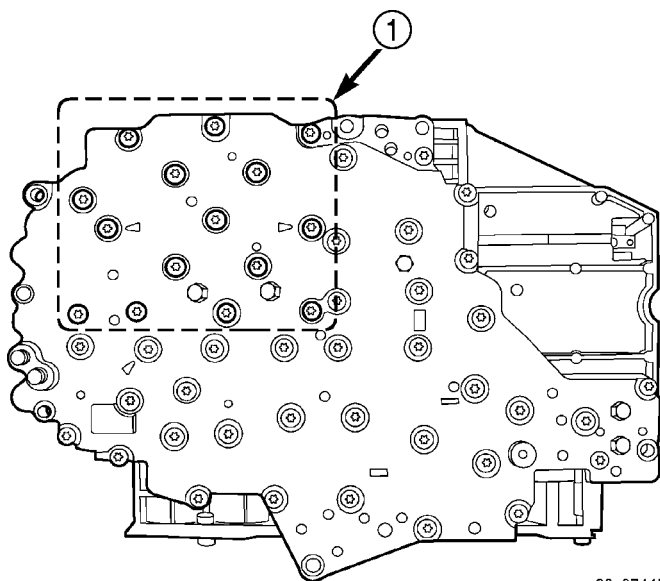


**Fig. 119 Valve Body Bolts**

1 - VALVE BODY TO CASE BOLT (6)

(2) Remove the screws holding the transmission solenoid/TRS assembly onto the valve body (Fig. 120).

(3) Separate the transmission solenoid/TRS assembly from the valve body.



**Fig. 120 Transmission Solenoid/TRS Assembly Screws**

1 - SOLENOID PACK BOLTS (15)

**INSTALLATION**

(1) Place TRS selector plate in the PARK position.

(2) Position the transmission solenoid/TRS assembly onto the valve body. Be sure that both alignment dowels are fully seated in the valve body and that the TRS switch contacts are properly positioned in the selector plate.

(3) Install the screws to hold the transmission solenoid/TRS assembly onto the valve body.

(4) Tighten the solenoid assembly screws adjacent to the arrows cast into the bottom of the valve body first. Tighten the screws to 5.7 N·m (50 in.lbs.).

(5) Tighten the remainder of the solenoid assembly screws to 5.7 N·m (50 in.lbs.).

(6) Install the valve body into the transmission.

**TRANSMISSION TEMPERATURE SENSOR****DESCRIPTION**

The transmission temperature sensor is a thermistor that is integral to the Transmission Range Sensor (TRS).

**OPERATION**

The transmission temperature sensor is used by the TCM to sense the temperature of the fluid in the sump. Since fluid temperature can affect transmission shift quality and converter lock up, the TCM requires this information to determine which shift schedule to operate in.

**Calculated Temperature**

A failure in the temperature sensor or circuit will result in calculated temperature being substituted for actual temperature. Calculated temperature is a predicted fluid temperature which is calculated from a combination of inputs:

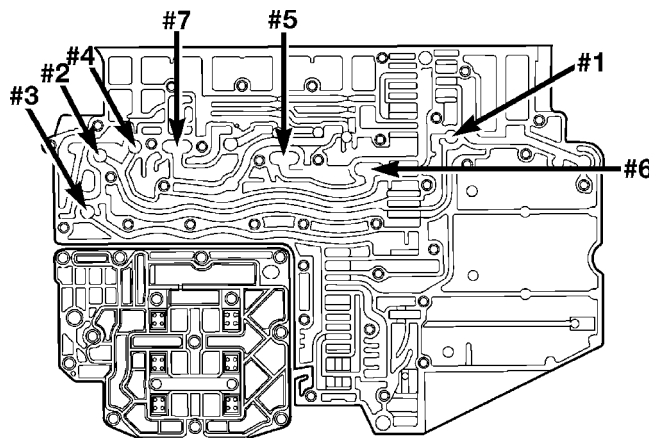
- Battery (ambient) temperature
- Engine coolant temperature
- In-gear run time since start-up

## VALVE BODY

### DESCRIPTION

The valve body consists of a cast aluminum valve body, a separator plate, and a transfer plate. The valve body contains valves and check balls that control fluid delivery to the torque converter clutch, bands, and frictional clutches. The valve body contains the following components (Fig. 121) and (Fig. 122):

- Solenoid switch valve
- Manual valve
- Low/reverse switch valve
- 5 Accumulators
- 7 check balls

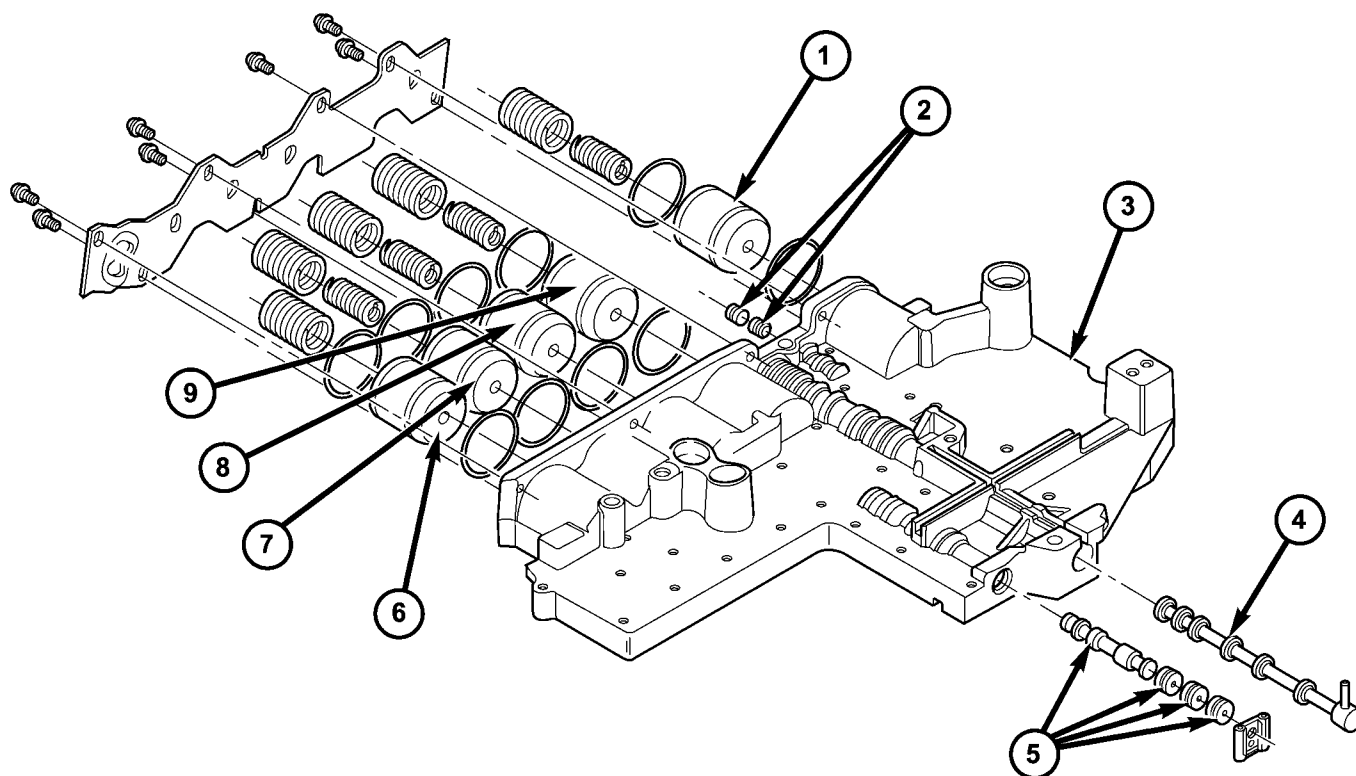


80c072f1

**Fig. 122 Check Ball Locations**

### OPERATION

**NOTE:** Refer to the Hydraulic Schematics for a visual aid in determining valve location, operation and design.



808a2e54

**Fig. 121 Valve Body Components**

- 1 - LOW/REVERSE ACCUMULATOR
- 2 - LOW/REVERSE SWITCH VALVE
- 3 - UPPER VALVE BODY
- 4 - MANUAL VALVE
- 5 - SOLENOID SWITCH VALVE

- 6 - OVERDRIVE ACCUMULATOR
- 7 - UNDERDRIVE ACCUMULATOR
- 8 - 4C ACCUMULATOR
- 9 - 2C ACCUMULATOR

## VALVE BODY (Continued)

## SOLENOID SWITCH VALVE

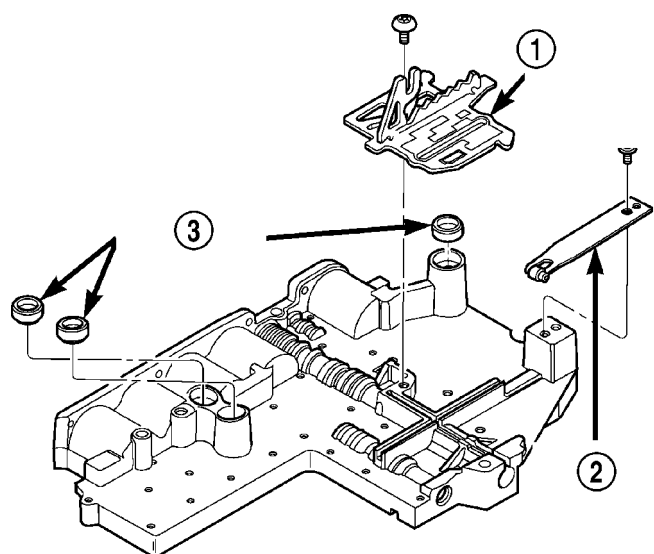
The Solenoid Switch Valve (SSV) controls the direction of the transmission fluid when the L/R-TCC solenoid is energized.

The Solenoid Switch Valve controls line pressure from the LR-TCC solenoid. In 1st gear, the SSV will be in the downshifted position, thus directing fluid to the L/R clutch circuit. In 2nd, 3rd, 4th, and fifth gears, the solenoid switch valve will be in the upshifted position and directs the fluid into the torque converter clutch (TCC) circuit.

When shifting into 1st gear, a special hydraulic sequence is performed to ensure SSV movement into the downshifted position. The L/R pressure switch is monitored to confirm SSV movement. If the movement is not confirmed (the L/R pressure switch does not close), 2nd gear is substituted for 1st. A DTC will be set after three unsuccessful attempts are made to get into 1st gear in one given key start.

## MANUAL VALVE

The manual valve is a relay valve. The purpose of the manual valve is to direct fluid to the correct circuit needed for a specific gear or driving range. The manual valve, as the name implies, is manually operated by the driver with a lever located on the top of the valve body. The valve is connected mechanically by a cable to the gearshift mechanism. The valve is held in each of its positions by a roller detent spring (Fig. 123) that engages the "roostercomb" of the TRS selector plate.



80c072f3

**Fig. 123 TRS Selector Plate and Detent Spring**

- 1 - TRS SELECTOR PLATE
- 2 - DETENT SPRING
- 3 - CLUTCH PASSAGE SEALS

## LOW/REVERSE SWITCH VALVE

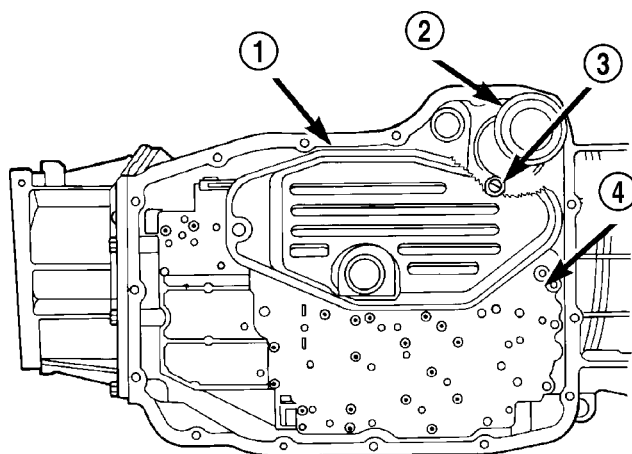
The low/reverse switch valve allows the low/reverse clutch to be operated by either the LR/CC solenoid or the MS solenoid.

## REMOVAL

The valve body can be removed for service without having to remove the transmission assembly.

The valve body can be disassembled for cleaning and inspection of the individual components. (Refer to 21 - TRANSMISSION/TRANSAXLE/AUTOMATIC - 45RFE/VALVE BODY - DISASSEMBLY)

- (1) Shift transmission into PARK.
  - (2) Raise vehicle.
  - (3) Disconnect wires at the solenoid and pressure switch assembly connector.
  - (4) Position drain pan under transmission oil pan.
  - (5) Remove transmission oil pan.
  - (6) Remove the primary oil filter from valve body.
- (Fig. 124)



80b9a595

**Fig. 124 Remove Primary Oil Filter**

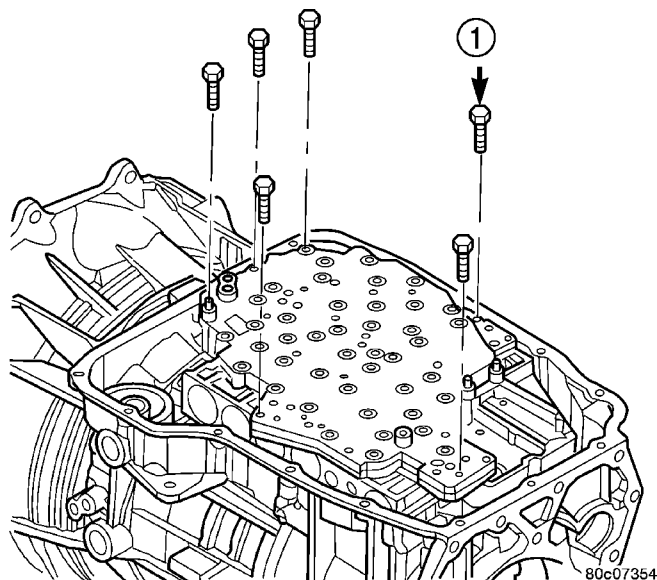
- 1 - PRIMARY OIL FILTER
- 2 - COOLER RETURN FILTER
- 3 - COOLER RETURN FILTER BYPASS VALVE
- 4 - VALVE BODY

## VALVE BODY (Continued)

(7) Remove bolts attaching valve body to transmission case (Fig. 125).

(8) Lower the valve body and work the electrical connector out of transmission case.

(9) Separate the valve body from the transmission.



**Fig. 125 Valve Body Bolts**

1 - VALVE BODY TO CASE BOLT (6)

## DISASSEMBLY

(1) Remove the screws holding the solenoid and pressure switch assembly to the valve body (Fig. 126). Do not remove the screws on the top of the solenoid and pressure switch assembly.

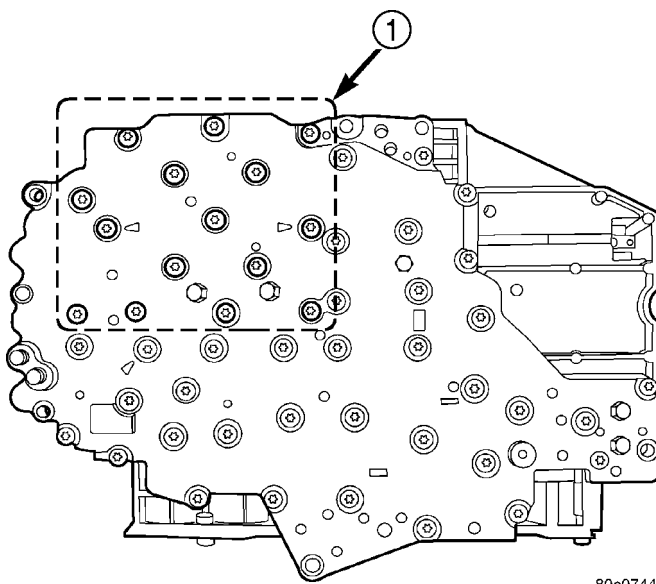
(2) Separate the solenoid and pressure switch assembly from the valve body.

(3) Remove the screw holding the detent spring (Fig. 127) onto the valve body.

(4) Remove the detent spring from the valve body.

(5) Remove the TRS selector plate from the valve body and the manual valve.

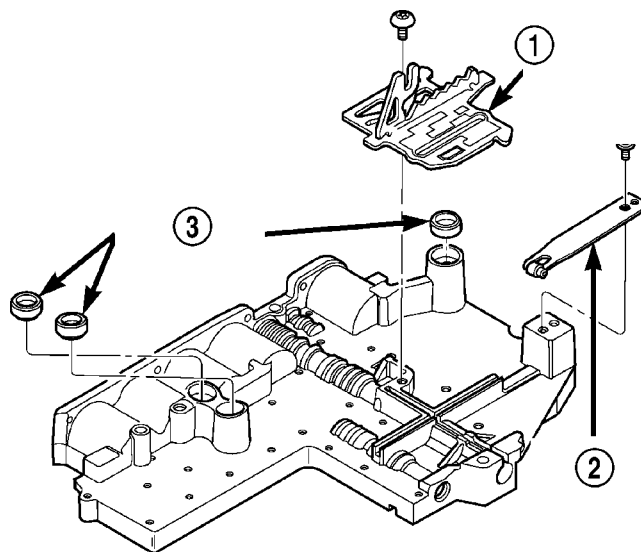
(6) Remove the clutch passage seals from the valve body, if necessary.



80c07445

**Fig. 126 Solenoid and Pressure Switch Assembly Screws**

1 - SOLENOID PACK BOLTS (15)



80c072f3

**Fig. 127 Valve Body External Components**

1 - TRS SELECTOR PLATE  
2 - DETENT SPRING  
3 - CLUTCH PASSAGE SEALS

## VALVE BODY (Continued)

(7) Remove the screws holding the accumulator cover onto the valve body (Fig. 128).

(8) Remove the accumulator springs and pistons from the valve body. Note which accumulator piston and spring belong in each location.

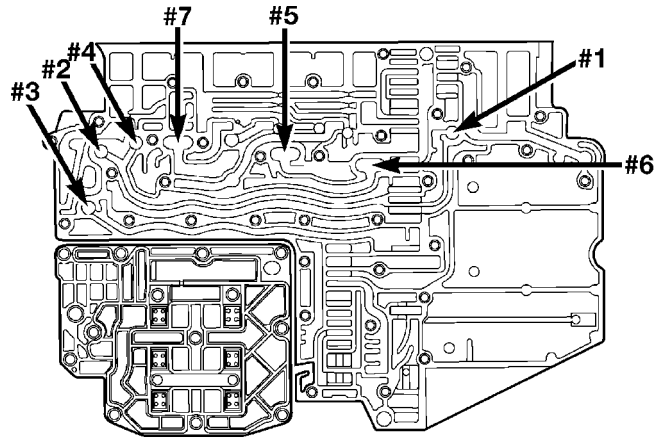
(9) Place the valve body on the bench with the transfer plate upward.

**NOTE:** The valve body contains seven check balls. The transfer plate must be placed upward to prevent losing the check balls when the transfer plate is removed from the valve body.

(10) Remove the screws holding the valve body to the valve body transfer plate.

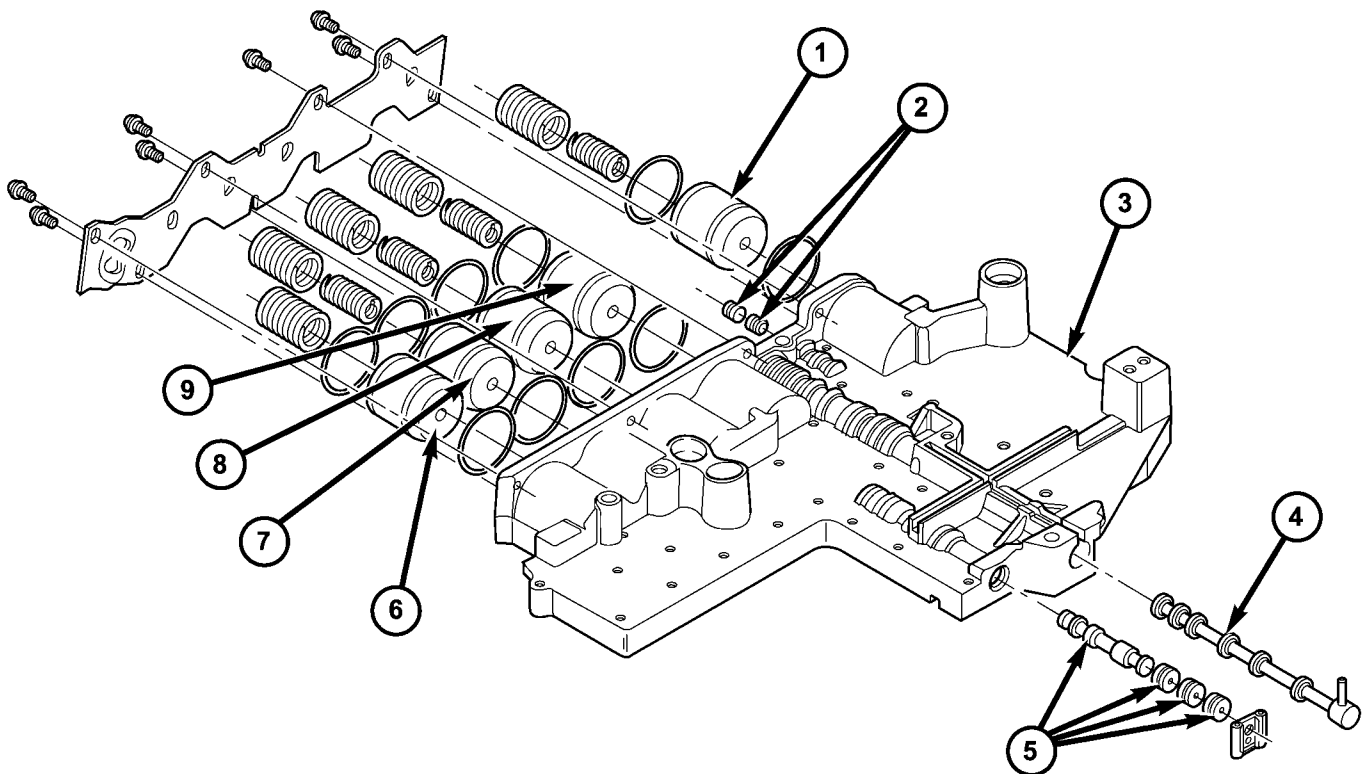
(11) Remove the transfer plate from the valve body. Note the location of all check balls (Fig. 129).

(12) Remove the check balls from the valve body.



80c072f1

**Fig. 129 Check Ball Locations**



808a2e54

**Fig. 128 Valve Body Components**

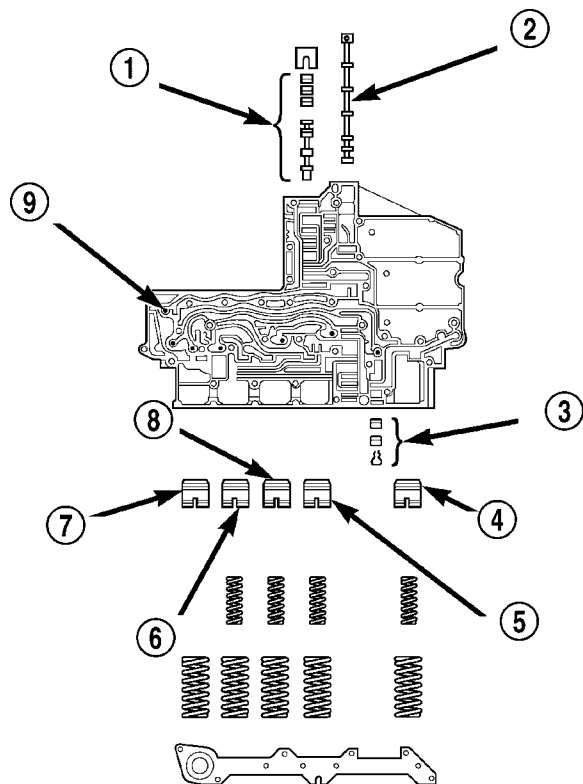
1 - LOW/REVERSE ACCUMULATOR  
2 - LOW/REVERSE SWITCH VALVE  
3 - UPPER VALVE BODY  
4 - MANUAL VALVE  
5 - SOLENOID SWITCH VALVE

6 - OVERDRIVE ACCUMULATOR  
7 - UNDERDRIVE ACCUMULATOR  
8 - 4C ACCUMULATOR  
9 - 2C ACCUMULATOR



## VALVE BODY (Continued)

(13) Remove the retainers securing the solenoid switch valve, manual valve, and the low/reverse switch valve into the valve body and remove the associated valve and spring. Tag each valve and spring combination with location information to aid in assembly. (Fig. 130)



80b9a599

**Fig. 130 Valve Body Components**

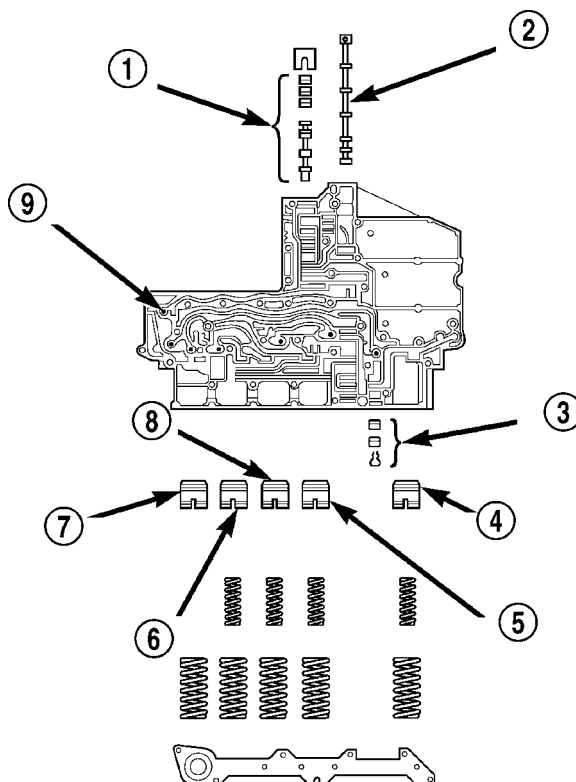
- 1 - SOLENOID SWITCH VALVE
- 2 - MANUAL VALVE
- 3 - LOW REVERSE SWITCH VALVE
- 4 - LOW REVERSE ACCUMULATOR
- 5 - 2ND CLUTCH ACCUMULATOR
- 6 - UNDERDRIVE ACCUMULATOR
- 7 - OVERDRIVE ACCUMULATOR
- 8 - 4TH CLUTCH ACCUMULATOR
- 9 - CHECK BALLS (7)

**CLEANING**

Clean the valve housings, valves, plugs, springs, and separator plates with a standard parts cleaning solution only. Do not use gasoline, kerosene, or any type of caustic solution. (Fig. 131)

Do not immerse any of the electrical components in cleaning solution. Clean the electrical components by wiping them off with dry shop towels only.

Dry all except the electrical parts with compressed air. Make sure all passages are clean and free from obstructions. **Do not use rags or shop towels to dry or wipe off valve body components. Lint from these materials can stick to valve body parts, interfere with valve operation, and clog filters and fluid passages.**



80b9a599

**Fig. 131 Valve Body Components**

- 1 - SOLENOID SWITCH VALVE
- 2 - MANUAL VALVE
- 3 - LOW REVERSE SWITCH VALVE
- 4 - LOW REVERSE ACCUMULATOR
- 5 - 2ND CLUTCH ACCUMULATOR
- 6 - UNDERDRIVE ACCUMULATOR
- 7 - OVERDRIVE ACCUMULATOR
- 8 - 4TH CLUTCH ACCUMULATOR
- 9 - CHECK BALLS (7)



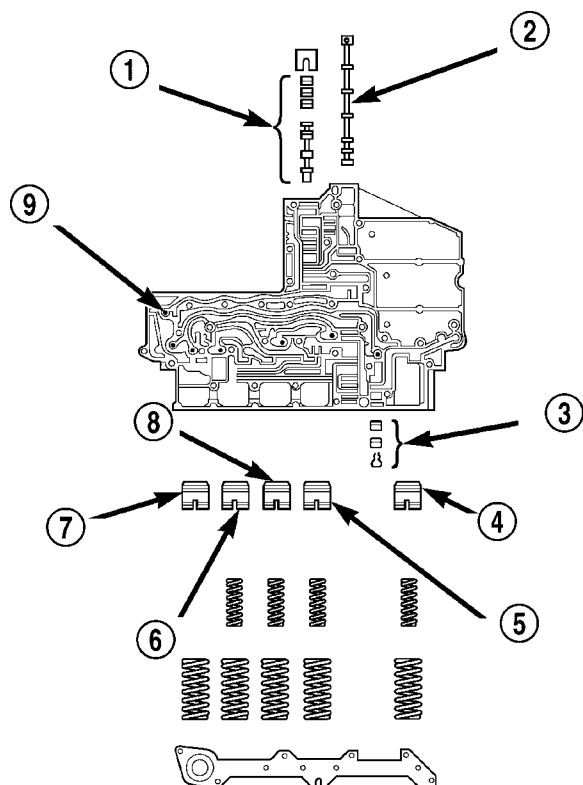
## VALVE BODY (Continued)

## INSPECTION

Inspect all of the valve body mating surfaces for scratches, nicks, burrs, or distortion. Use a straight-edge to check surface flatness. Minor scratches may be removed with crocus cloth using only very light pressure.

Minor distortion of a valve body mating surface may be corrected by smoothing the surface with a sheet of crocus cloth. Position the crocus cloth on a surface plate, sheet of plate glass or equally flat surface. If distortion is severe or any surfaces are heavily scored, the valve body will have to be replaced.

Inspect the valves and plugs (Fig. 132) for scratches, burrs, nicks, or scores. Minor surface scratches on steel valves and plugs can be removed with crocus cloth but **do not round off the edges of the valve or plug lands**. Maintaining sharpness of these edges is vitally important. The edges prevent foreign matter from lodging between the valves and plugs and the bore.



80b9a599

**Fig. 132 Valve Body Components**

- 1 - SOLENOID SWITCH VALVE
- 2 - MANUAL VALVE
- 3 - LOW REVERSE SWITCH VALVE
- 4 - LOW REVERSE ACCUMULATOR
- 5 - 2ND CLUTCH ACCUMULATOR
- 6 - UNDERDRIVE ACCUMULATOR
- 7 - OVERDRIVE ACCUMULATOR
- 8 - 4TH CLUTCH ACCUMULATOR
- 9 - CHECK BALLS (7)

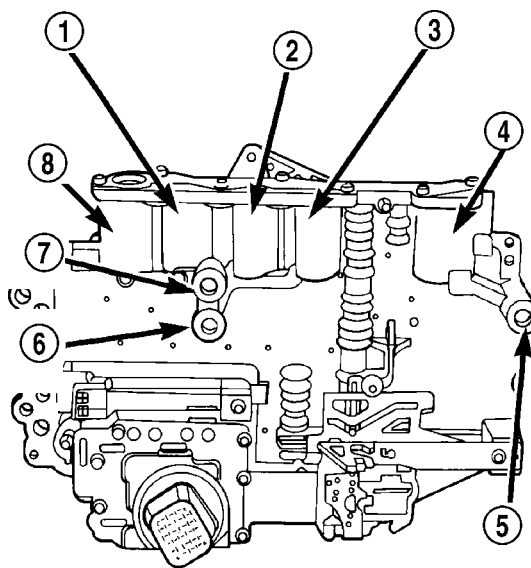
Inspect all the valve and plug bores in the valve body. Use a penlight to view the bore interiors. Replace the valve body if any bores are distorted or scored. Inspect all of the valve body springs. The springs must be free of distortion, warpage or broken coils.

Trial fit each valve and plug in its bore to check freedom of operation. When clean and dry, the valves and plugs should drop freely into the bores.

Valve body bores do not change dimensionally with use. If the valve body functioned correctly when new, it will continue to operate properly after cleaning and inspection. It should not be necessary to replace a valve body assembly unless it is damaged in handling.

Inspect all the accumulator bores in the valve body. Use a penlight to view the bore interiors. Replace the valve body if any bores are distorted or scored. Inspect all of the accumulator springs. The springs must be free of distortion, warpage or broken coils.

Inspect all the fluid seals on the valve body (Fig. 133). Replace any seals that are cracked, distorted, or damaged in any way. These seals pass fluid pressure directly to the clutches. Any pressure leak at these points, may cause transmission performance problems.



80b9a591

**Fig. 133 Valve Body Seals**

- 1 - UNDERDRIVE ACCUMULATOR (2 SPRINGS)
- 2 - 4TH CLUTCH ACCUMULATOR (2 SPRINGS)
- 3 - 2ND CLUTCH ACCUMULATOR (2 SPRINGS)
- 4 - LOW REVERSE ACCUMULATOR (2 SPRINGS)
- 5 - LOW/REVERSE PASSAGE SEAL
- 6 - 2ND CLUTCH PASSAGE SEAL
- 7 - 4TH CLUTCH PASSAGE SEAL
- 8 - OVERDRIVE ACCUMULATOR (1 SPRING)

## VALVE BODY (Continued)

## ASSEMBLY

(1) Lubricate valves, springs, and the housing valve bores with clean transmission fluid.

(2) Install solenoid switch valve, manual valve, and the low/reverse switch valve into the valve body.

(3) Install the retainers to hold each valve into the valve body.

(4) Install the valve body check balls into their proper locations.

(5) Position the transfer plate onto the valve body.

(6) Install the screws to hold the transfer plate to the valve body. Tighten the screws to 5.6 N·m (50 in. lbs.).

(7) Install the accumulator pistons and springs into the valve body in the location from which they were removed. Note that all accumulators except the overdrive have two springs. The overdrive accumulator piston has only one spring.

(8) Position the accumulator cover onto the valve body.

(9) Install the screws to hold the accumulator cover onto the valve body. Tighten the screws to 8 N·m (70 in. lbs.).

(10) Install the TRS selector plate onto the valve body and the manual valve.

(11) Install the solenoid and pressure switch assembly onto the valve body.

(12) Install the screws to hold the solenoid and pressure switch assembly onto the valve body. Tighten the screws to 5.7 N·m (50 in. lbs.). Tighten the screws adjacent to the arrows cast into the bottom of the transfer plate first.

(13) Position the detent spring onto the valve body.

(14) Install the screw to hold the detent spring onto the valve body. Tighten the screw to 4.5 N·m (40 in. lbs.).

(15) Install new clutch passage seals onto the valve body, if necessary

## INSTALLATION

(1) Check condition of seals on valve body and the solenoid and pressure switch assembly. Replace seals if cut or worn.

(2) Place TRS selector plate in the PARK position.

(3) Place the transmission in the PARK position.

(4) Lubricate seal on the solenoid and pressure switch assembly connector with petroleum jelly.

(5) Position valve body in transmission and align the manual lever on the valve body to the pin on the transmission manual shift lever.

(6) Seat valve body in case and install one or two bolts to hold valve body in place.

(7) Tighten valve body bolts alternately and evenly to 12 N·m (105 in. lbs.) torque.

(8) Install a new primary oil filter seal in the oil pump inlet bore. Seat the seal in the bore with the butt end of a hammer, or other suitable tool.

**CAUTION: The primary oil filter seal MUST be fully installed flush against the oil pump body. DO NOT install the seal onto the filter neck and attempt to install the filter and seal as an assembly. Damage to the transmission will result.**

(9) Place replacement filter in position on valve body and into the oil pump.

(10) Install screw to hold filter to valve body. Tighten screw to 4.5 N·m (40 in. lbs.) torque.

(11) Connect the solenoid and pressure switch assembly connector.

(12) Install oil pan. Tighten pan bolts to 12 N·m (105 in. lbs.) torque.

(13) Lower vehicle and fill transmission with Mopar® ATF +4.

(14) Check and adjust gearshift cable, if necessary.

TRANSFER CASE - NV147

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>TRANSFER CASE - NV147</b>			
DESCRIPTION .....	284	SPECIAL TOOLS	
OPERATION .....	285	TRANSFER CASE - NV147 .....	299
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - TRANSFER		<b>FLUID</b>	
CASE - NV147 .....	285	STANDARD PROCEDURE - FLUID DRAIN/	
REMOVAL .....	286	REFILL .....	300
DISASSEMBLY .....	286	<b>FRONT OUTPUT SHAFT SEAL</b>	
CLEANING .....	290	REMOVAL .....	301
INSPECTION .....	290	INSTALLATION .....	301
ASSEMBLY .....	291	<b>REAR RETAINER BUSHING AND SEAL</b>	
INSTALLATION .....	298	REMOVAL .....	301
SPECIFICATIONS		INSTALLATION .....	302
TRANSFER CASE - NV147 .....	299		

TRANSFER CASE - NV147

DESCRIPTION

The NV147 (Fig. 1) is an on-demand 4-wheel drive transfer case with one operating range. The only operating range is 4-high.

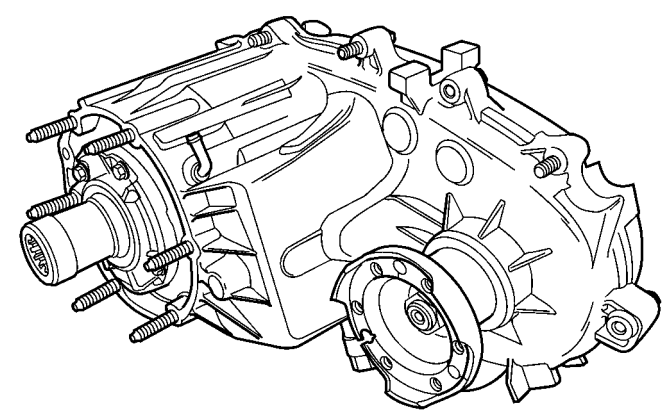


Fig. 1 NV147 Transfer Case

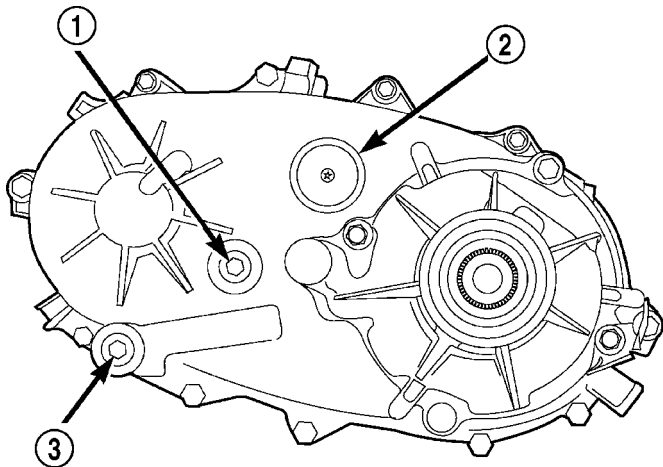
810c1654

TRANSFER CASE IDENTIFICATION

A circular I.D. tag is attached to the rear case of each NV147 transfer case (Fig. 2). The tag indicates the following information:

- Model number.
- Serial number.
- Assembly number.
- Gear ratio.
- Location of manufacture.

The transfer case serial number also represents the date of build.



80ba7a32

Fig. 2 Transfer Case I.D. Tag

- 1 - FILL PLUG  
2 - I.D. TAG  
3 - DRAIN PLUG

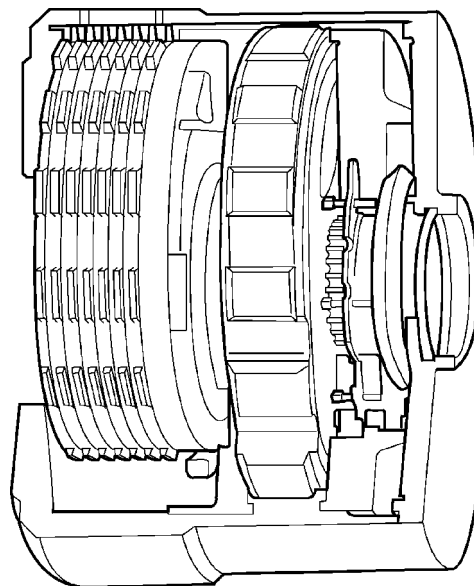
## TRANSFER CASE - NV147 (Continued)

**OPERATION**

Under normal driving conditions, the system operates conventionally, and the majority of available torque is applied to the rear wheels. However, when front-to-rear wheel speed variations exist, the progressive differential transfers torque to the axle with the better traction, thus minimizing wheel spin and maximizing control.

The key to this design is a progressive coupling (Fig. 3), which is supplied with pressurized oil by a gerotor style pump. The pump rotor and case are driven by the front and rear driveshafts respectively, and deliver pressurized oil flow to the coupling in proportion to their speed difference. The progressive coupling contains a multi-disc clutch pack that is alternately splined to the front and rear driveshafts, and controls torque variation between the front and rear driveshafts as dictated by the pump.

A set of orifices and valves control the speed-differential starting point and rate of torque transfer rise in the clutch. This allows the system to disregard the normal speed differences between axles that result from variations in front-to-rear loading and typical cornering.



80ba7a55

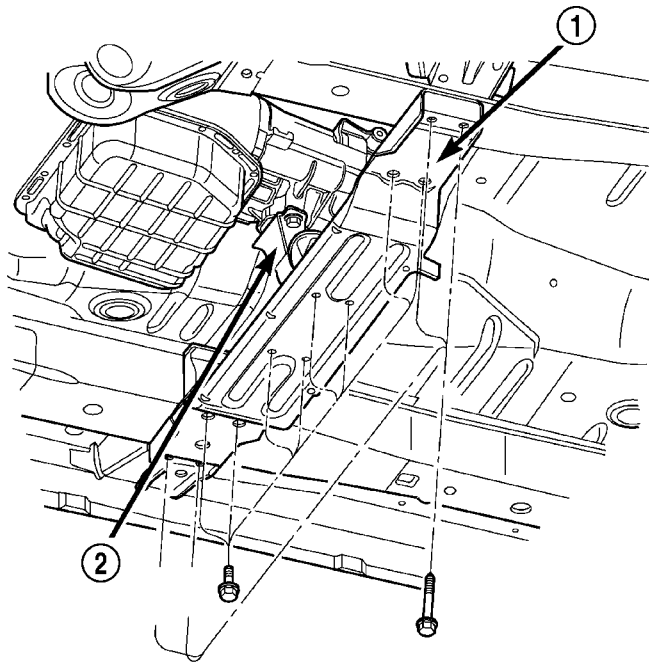
**Fig. 3 Progressive Coupling****DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - TRANSFER CASE - NV147**

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSE	CORRECTION
TRANSFER CASE NOISY IN ALL MODES	1. Insufficient or incorrect lubricant	1. Drain and refill to edge of fill hole with correct lubricant. <b>If unit is still noisy after drain and refill, disassembly and inspection may be required to locate source of noise</b>
LUBRICANT LEAKING FROM OUTPUT SHAFT SEALS OR FROM VENT	1. Transfer case over filled	1. Drain to correct level
	2. Vent closed or restricted	2. Clear or replace vent if necessary
	3. Output shaft seals damaged or installed correctly	3. Replace seals. Be sure seal lip faces interior of case when installed. Also be sure yoke seal surfaces are not scored or nicked. Remove scores and nicks with fine sandpaper or replace yoke(s) if necessary.

## TRANSFER CASE - NV147 (Continued)

**REMOVAL**

- (1) Raise vehicle.
- (2) Remove transfer case drain plug and drain transfer case lubricant.
- (3) Mark front and rear propeller shaft yokes for alignment reference.
- (4) Support transmission with jack stand.
- (5) Remove rear crossmember and skid plate, if equipped (Fig. 4).



80ba79c7

**Fig. 4 Crossmember Removal**

- 1 - CROSSMEMBER  
2 - REAR TRANSMISSION MOUNT

(6) Disconnect front propeller shaft from transfer case at companion flange. Remove rear propeller shaft from vehicle. (Refer to 3 - DIFFERENTIAL & DRIVELINE/PROPELLER SHAFT/PROPELLER SHAFT - REMOVAL)

**CAUTION:** Do not allow propshafts to hang at attached end. Damage to joint can result.

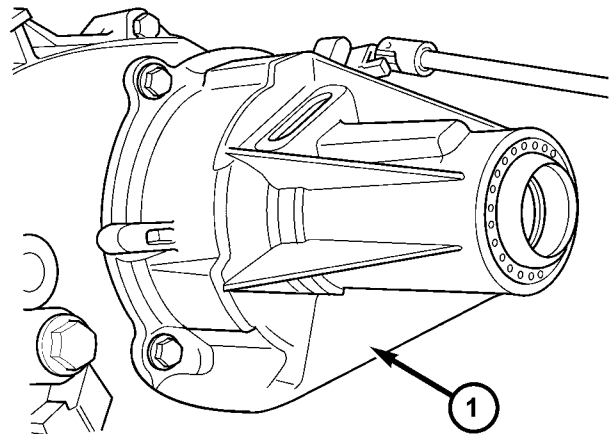
- (7) Disconnect transfer case vent hose.
- (8) Support transfer case with transmission jack.
- (9) Secure transfer case to jack with chains.
- (10) Remove nuts attaching transfer case to transmission.
- (11) Pull transfer case and jack rearward to disengage transfer case.
- (12) Remove transfer case from under vehicle.

**DISASSEMBLY**

Position transfer case on shallow drain pan. Remove drain plug and drain lubricant remaining in case.

**REAR RETAINER AND OIL PUMP**

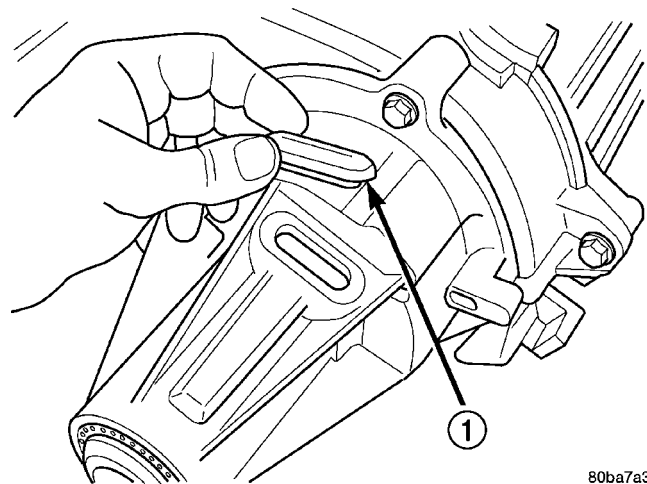
- (1) Remove rear retainer bolts (Fig. 5).
- (2) Remove rear bearing locating ring access plug (Fig. 6).



810c241a

**Fig. 5 Rear Retainer Bolt Removal**

- 1 - REAR RETAINER



80ba7a33

**Fig. 6 Remove Rubber Access Plug**

- 1 - PLUG



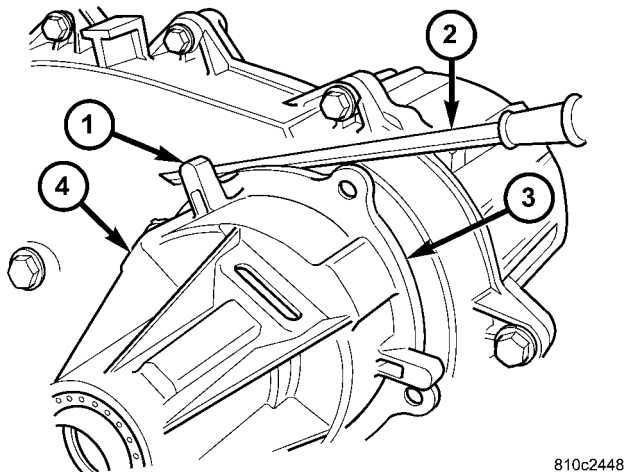
## TRANSFER CASE - NV147 (Continued)

(3) Loosen rear retainer with pry tool to break sealer bead. Pry only against retainer boss as shown (Fig. 7).

(4) Remove rear retainer as follows:

(a) Spread rear bearing locating ring with snap ring pliers (Fig. 8).

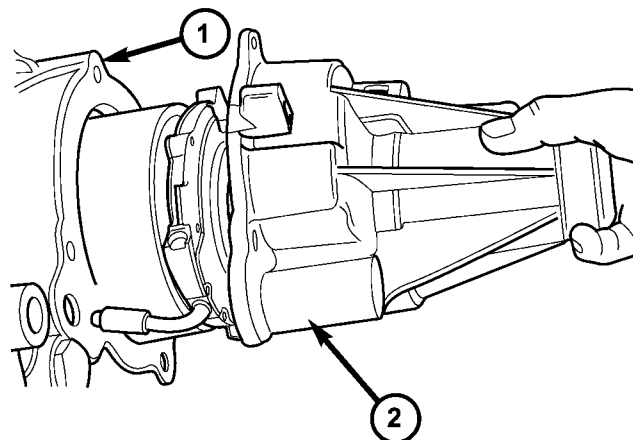
(b) Then slide retainer off mainshaft and rear bearing (Fig. 9).



810c2448

**Fig. 7 Loosening Rear Retainer**

- 1 - RETAINER BOSS
- 2 - PRY TOOL
- 3 - SEALER BEAD
- 4 - REAR RETAINER



810c1ebe

**Fig. 9 Rear Retainer Removal**

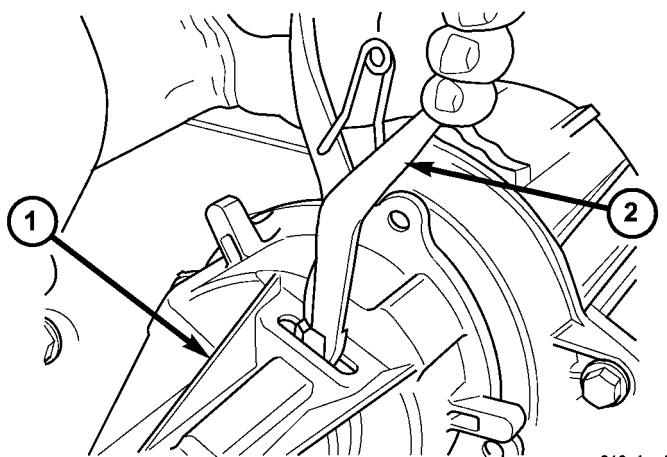
- 1 - REAR CASE
- 2 - REAR RETAINER

(5) Remove rear bearing snap-ring.

(6) Remove rear bearing. Note position of bearing locating ring groove for assembly reference.

(7) Disengage oil pickup tube from oil pump and remove oil pump assembly (Fig. 10).

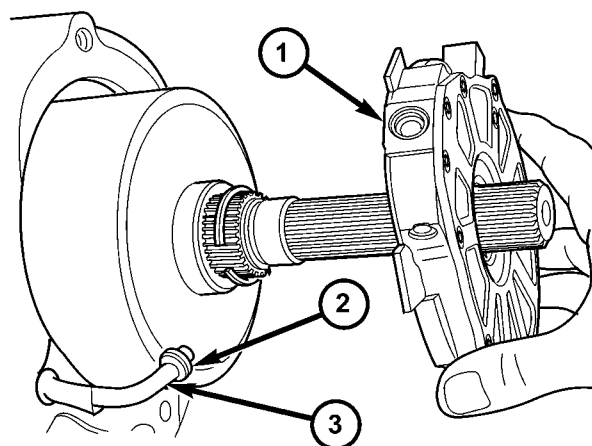
(8) Remove pick-up tube o-ring from oil pump (Fig. 11), if necessary. Do not disassemble the oil pump, it is not serviceable.



810c1ec4

**Fig. 8 Disengaging Rear Bearing Locating Ring**

- 1 - REAR RETAINER
- 2 - PARALLEL JAW SNAP-RING PLIERS



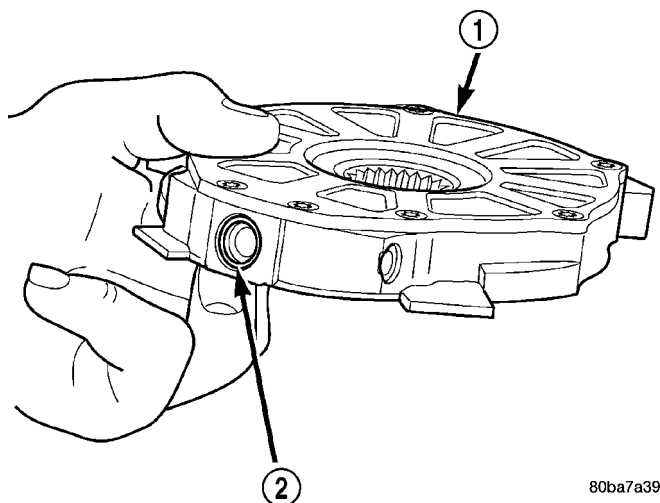
810c1e9b

**Fig. 10 Rear Bearing and Oil Pump Removal**

- 1 - OIL PUMP
- 2 - TUBE O-RING
- 3 - OIL PICKUP TUBE



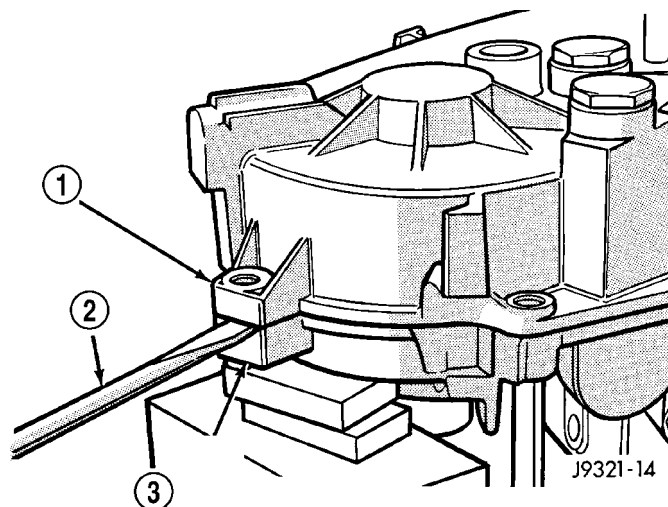
## TRANSFER CASE - NV147 (Continued)



80ba7a39

**Fig. 11 Pick-up Tube O-ring Location**

- 1 - OIL PUMP  
2 - O-RING



J9321-14

**Fig. 13 Loosening Rear Case**

- 1 - REAR CASE  
2 - PRY TOOL (IN CASE SLOT)  
3 - FRONT CASE

**COMPANION FLANGE**

(1) Remove front companion flange nut with socket and impact wrench.

(2) Remove companion flange. If flange is difficult to remove by hand, remove it with bearing splitter, or with standard two jaw puller. Be sure puller tool is positioned on flange and not on slinger, as slinger will be damaged.

(3) Remove seal washer from front output shaft. Discard washer as it should not be reused.

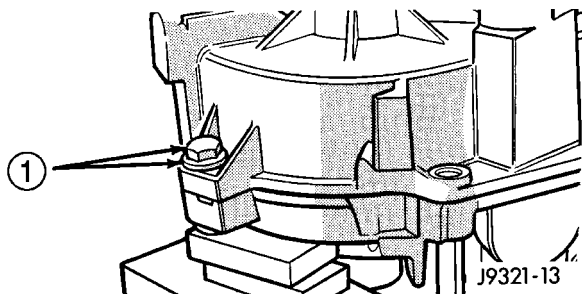
**REAR CASE**

(1) Support transfer case so rear case is facing upward.

(2) Remove bolts holding front case to rear case. The case alignment bolt require flat washers (Fig. 12).

(3) Loosen rear case with flat blade screwdriver to break sealer bead. Insert screwdriver blade only into notches provided at each end of case (Fig. 13).

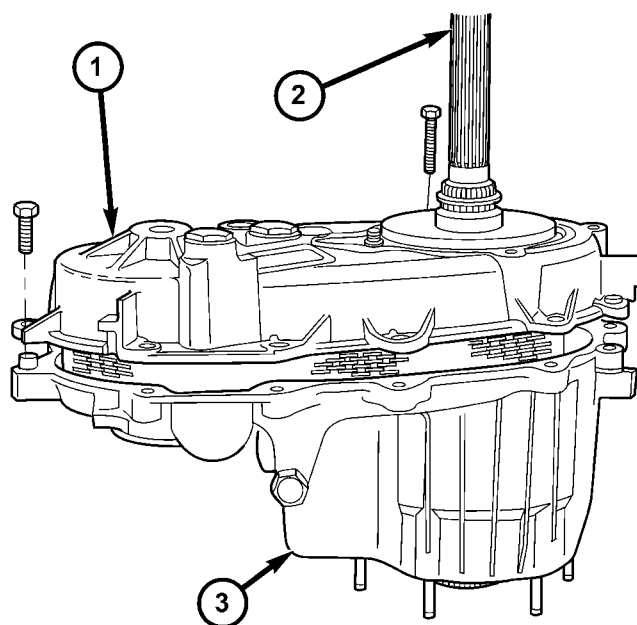
(4) Remove rear case (Fig. 14).



J9321-13

**Fig. 12 Rear Case Alignment Bolt Locations**

- 1 - ALIGNMENT BOLT AND WASHER (AT EACH END OF CASE)



810c189d

**Fig. 14 Rear Case Removal**

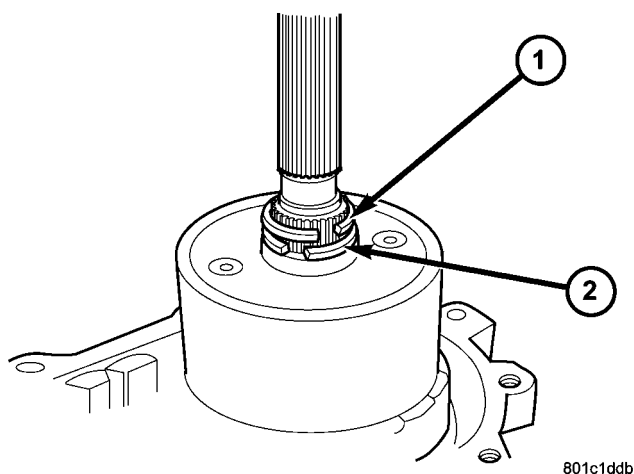
- 1 - REAR HOUSING  
2 - MAINSHAFT  
3 - TRANSFER CASE

## TRANSFER CASE - NV147 (Continued)

**PROGRESSIVE COUPLING**

(1) Remove oil pump locating snap-ring and progressive coupling thrust washer from the mainshaft (Fig. 15).

(2) Remove progressive coupling from mainshaft (Fig. 15).



**Fig. 15 Progressive Coupling Removal**

- 1 - SNAP-RING
- 2 - PROGRESSIVE COUPLING

**FRONT OUTPUT SHAFT AND DRIVE CHAIN**

(1) Remove oil pickup tube from rear case (Fig. 16).

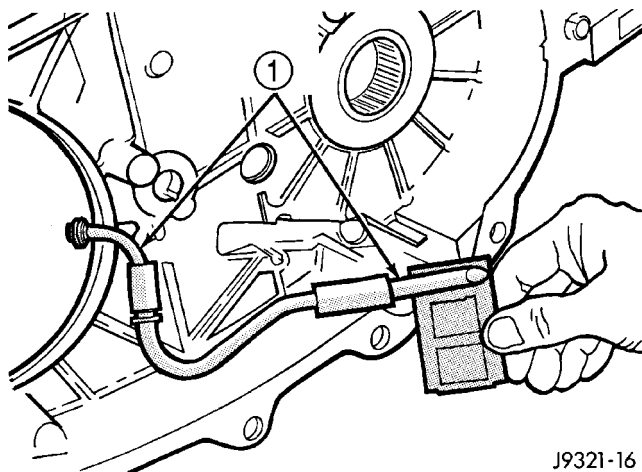
(2) Remove drive gear snap-ring (Fig. 17).

(3) Disengage drive gear (Fig. 17). Pry gear upward and off mainshaft as shown.

(4) Remove front output shaft, drive chain and drive gear as assembly (Fig. 17).

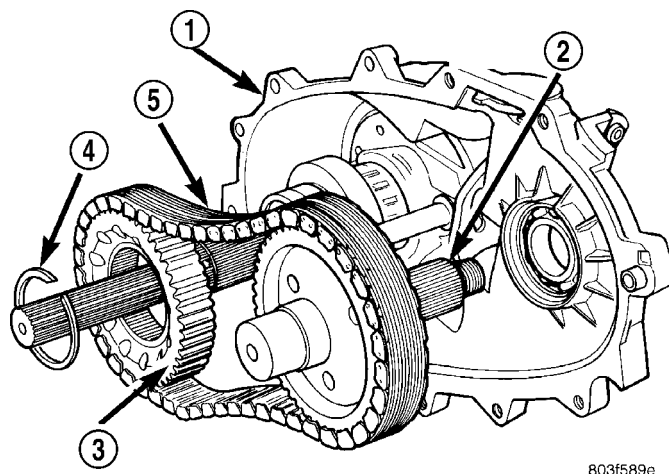
(5) Remove output shaft drive gear snap ring.

(6) Remove output shaft drive gear from output shaft.



**Fig. 16 Oil Pickup Tube Removal**

- 1 - OIL PICKUP TUBE



**Fig. 17 Front Output Shaft, Drive Gear And Chain Removal**

- 1 - REAR HOUSING
- 2 - OUTPUT SHAFT AND SPROCKET
- 3 - MAINSHAFT SPROCKET
- 4 - SNAP-RING
- 5 - DRIVE CHAIN

**MAINSHAFT**

(1) Remove mainshaft from the input gear pilot bearing.

**NOTE:** Loose needle bearings are used to support the drive sprocket hub on the mainshaft. Do not lift mainshaft by drive sprocket hub or needle bearings will become dislodged.

(2) Wrap rag around mainshaft underneath drive sprocket hub and remove drive sprocket hub from mainshaft. Be sure to retrieve all the drive sprocket hub needle bearings.

## TRANSFER CASE - NV147 (Continued)

## INPUT GEAR

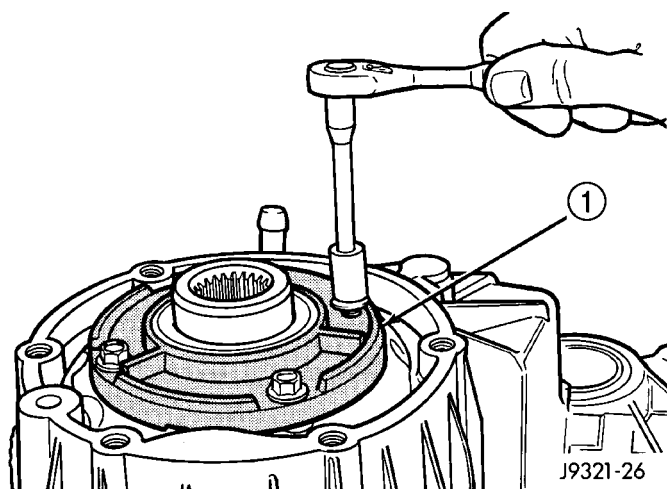
(1) Turn front case on side so front bearing retainer is accessible.

(2) Remove front bearing retainer bolts (Fig. 18).

(3) Remove front bearing retainer as follows:

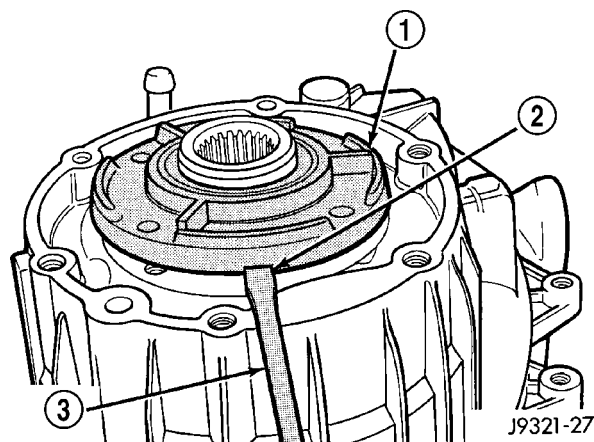
(a) Loosen retainer with flat blade screwdriver to break sealer bead. **To avoid damaging case and retainer, position screwdriver blade only in slots provided in retainer (Fig. 19).**

(b) Then remove retainer from case and gear.



**Fig. 18 Front Bearing Retainer Bolt Removal**

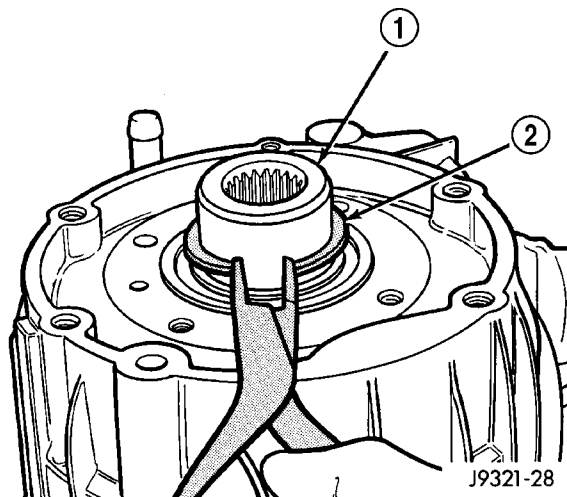
1 - FRONT BEARING RETAINER



**Fig. 19 Front Bearing Retainer Removal**

1 - FRONT BEARING RETAINER  
2 - RETAINER NOTCH  
3 - FLAT BLADE SCREWDRIVER

(4) Remove snap-ring that retains input gear shaft in front bearing (Fig. 20).



**Fig. 20 Input Gear Snap-Ring Removal**

1 - INPUT GEAR  
2 - SNAP-RING

(5) Remove oil seals from following components:

- front bearing retainer.
- rear retainer.
- case halves.

## CLEANING

Clean the transfer case components with parts cleaning solvent. Flush the oil passages in the cases and drivetrain components with solvent. This will help remove dirt and particles from these passages.

Dry the transfer case components with compressed air or allow them to air dry on clean shop towels.

Apply compressed air through all oil passages in the cases and gear components to clear them of any residue.

## INSPECTION

## MAINSHAFT

Examine the mainshaft components carefully for evidence of wear or damage.

Replace the thrust washers if worn or damaged.

Replace the mainshaft and sprocket gears if the teeth or gear bores are worn or damaged.

Replace the mainshaft bearings if worn, flat spotted, brinelled, or damaged in any way.

Replace the mainshaft if it is bent, exhibits wear or damage to the bearing surfaces, splines or gear teeth.

## TRANSFER CASE - NV147 (Continued)

**INPUT GEAR**

Check the input gear pilot bearing. Rotate the bearing and check for roughness or noise. Also check bearing position in the bore. The bearing should be installed such that the snap-ring on the outer diameter of the bearing is seated against the front case half. Replace the bearing if worn, or roughness is evident. Replace both the gear and bearing if the bearing is a loose fit in the bore.

During inspection, also make sure the seal surface of the input gear is in good condition. Minor nicks on this surface can be reduced with crocus cloth. However, replace the gear if the seal surface is severely scored or worn.

**GEAR CASE AND RETAINERS**

Examine both case halves and retainers carefully. Replace any retainer or case half if wear, cracks, or other damage is evident.

Check the bushing in the rear retainer. Replace the bushing if worn or scored.

Examine the sealing surfaces of both case halves and retainers. Small burrs, or scratches on these surfaces can be reduced with crocus cloth or a fine tooth file.

**OIL PUMP AND PROGRESSIVE COUPLING**

The oil pump and progressive coupling are not serviceable components. Replace the coupling as an assembly if it is damaged. Replace the oil pump as an assembly if the gear teeth are worn, or if the pump has become damaged.

**BEARINGS AND SEALS**

The transfer case seals should be replaced during overhaul. Use new seals in the input gear bearing retainer, front case and rear retainer. Also replace the yoke seal washer.

Check condition of each transfer case bearing. Replace any bearing exhibiting signs of roughness, wear, or damage.

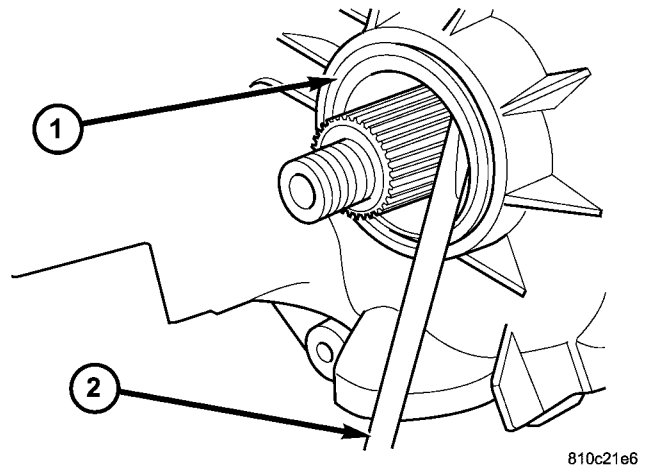
**ASSEMBLY**

Lubricate transfer case components with Mopar® Transfer Case Lubricant or petroleum jelly (where indicated) during assembly.

**CAUTION:** The bearing bores in various transfer case components contain oil feed holes. Make sure replacement bearings do not block the holes.

**BEARINGS AND SEALS**

(1) Remove front output shaft seal from front case with pry tool (Fig. 21).

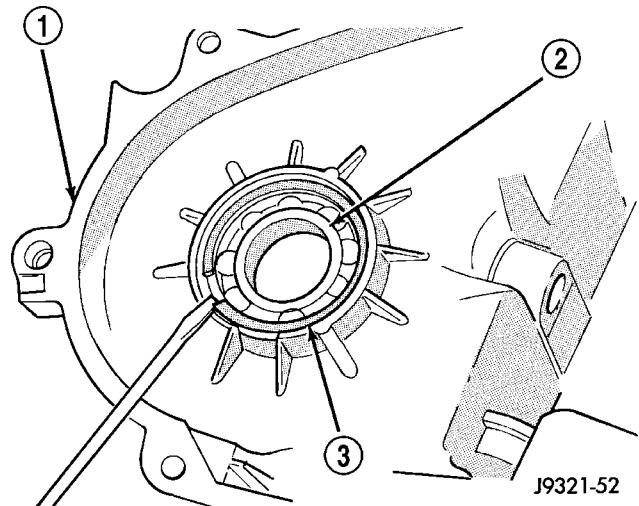


810c21e6

**Fig. 21 Remove Front Output Shaft Seal**

- 1 - OUTPUT SHAFT SEAL  
2 - PRYBAR

(2) Remove snap-ring that retains the front output shaft bearing into the front case (Fig. 22).



J9321-52

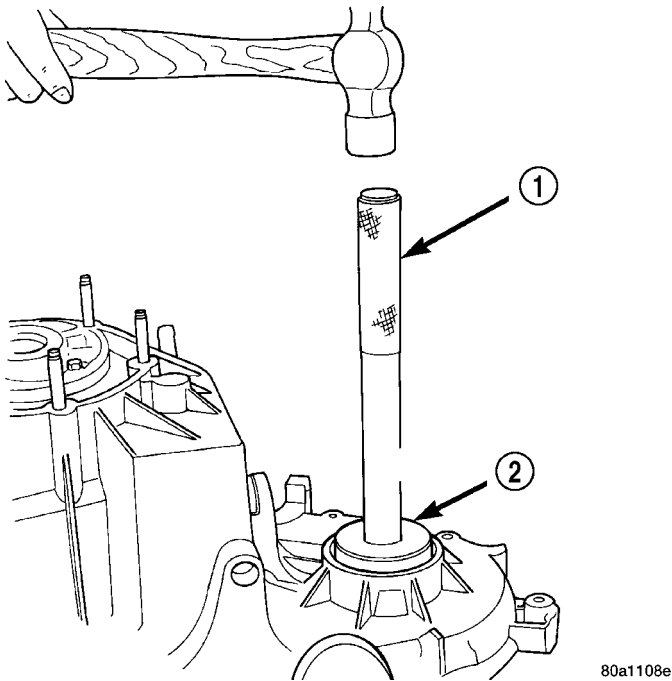
**Fig. 22 Output Shaft Front Bearing Snap-Ring Removal**

- 1 - FRONT CASE  
2 - OUTPUT SHAFT FRONT BEARING  
3 - BEARING SNAP-RING

## TRANSFER CASE - NV147 (Continued)

(3) Using tool 6953, remove bearing from front case (Fig. 23).

(4) Using tool 6953, install new bearing.



**Fig. 23 Remove Output Shaft Front Bearing**

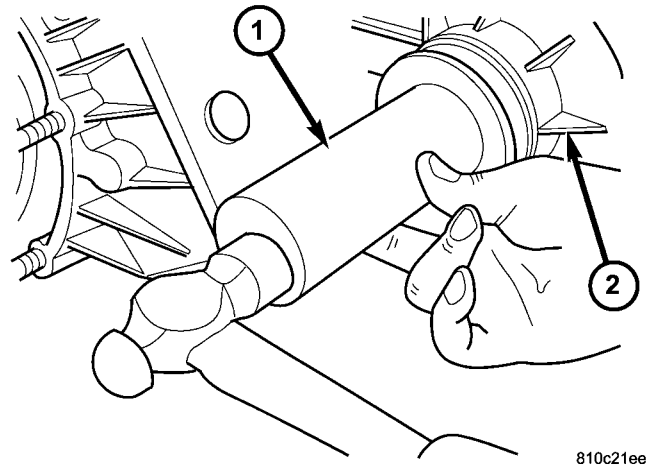
1 - HANDLE C-4171  
2 - REMOVER/INSTALLER 6953

(5) Install snap-ring to hold bearing into case.  
(6) Install new front output seal in front case with Installer Tool 6952-A as follows:

(a) Place new seal on tool. **Garter spring on seal goes toward interior of case.**

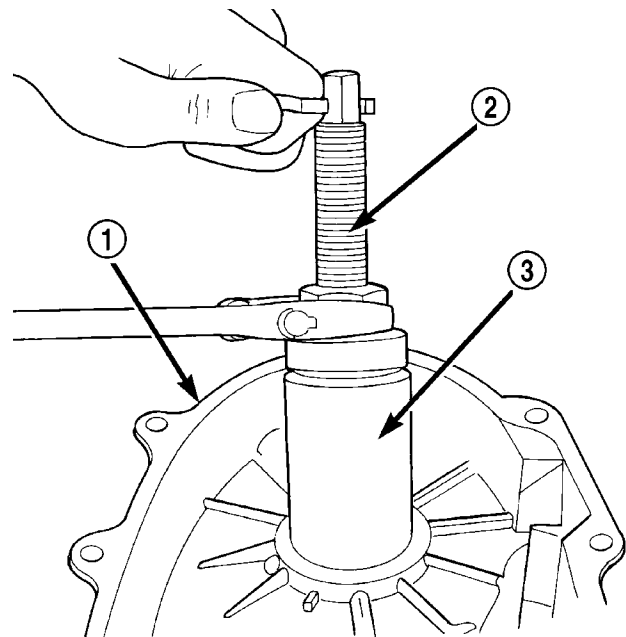
(b) Start seal in bore with light taps from hammer (Fig. 24). Once seal is started, continue tapping seal into bore until installer tool bottoms against case.

(7) Remove the output shaft rear bearing with the screw and jaws from Remover L-4454 and Cup 8148 (Fig. 25).



**Fig. 24 Front Output Seal Installation**

1 - INSTALLER 6952-A  
2 - TRANSFER CASE



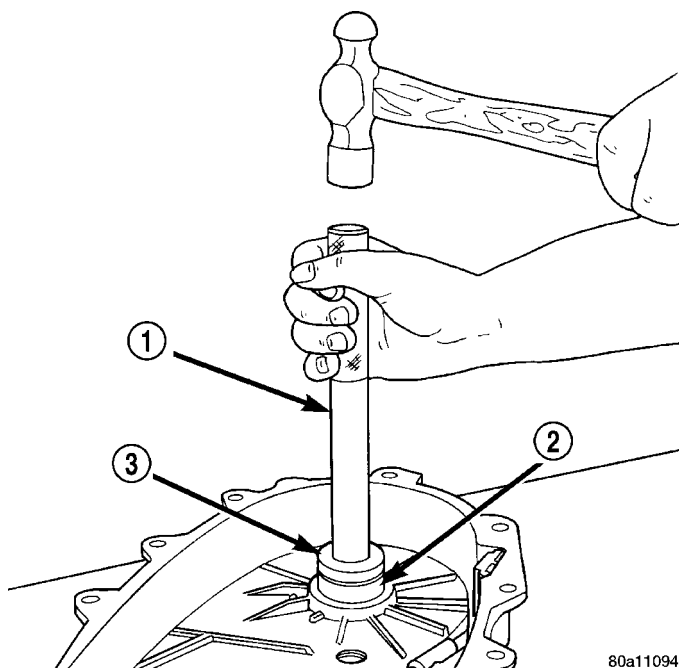
**Fig. 25 Output Shaft Rear Bearing Removal**

1 - REAR CASE  
2 - SPECIAL TOOL L-4454-1 AND L-4454-3  
3 - SPECIAL TOOL 8148



## TRANSFER CASE - NV147 (Continued)

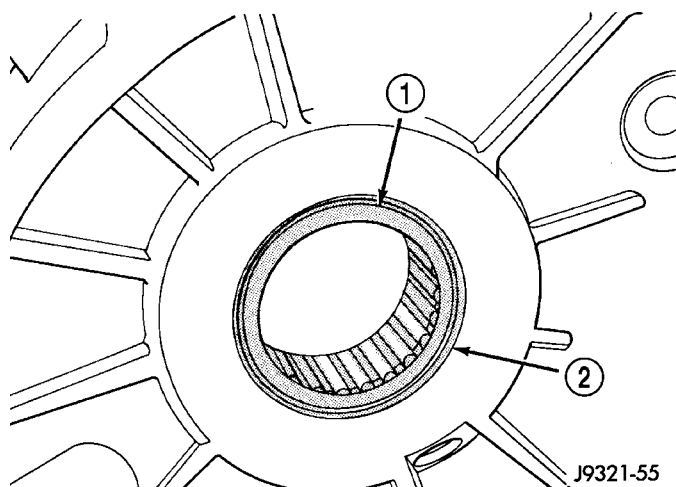
(8) Install new bearing with Tool Handle C-4171 and Installer 5066 (Fig. 26). **The bearing bore is chamfered at the top. Install the bearing so it is flush with the lower edge of this chamfer (Fig. 27).**



80a11094

**Fig. 26 Output Shaft Rear Bearing Installation**

- 1 - HANDLE C-4171  
2 - OUTPUT SHAFT INNER BEARING  
3 - INSTALLER 5066



J9321-55

**Fig. 27 Output Shaft Rear Bearing Installation Depth**

- 1 - BEARING (SEATED) AT LOWER EDGE OF CHAMFER  
2 - CHAMFER

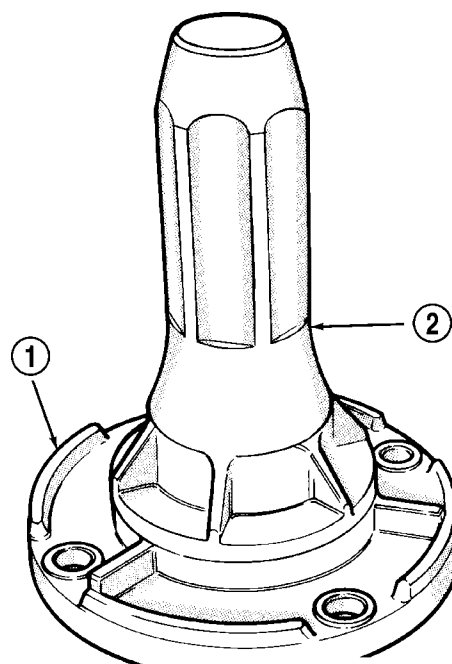
(9) Using Remover C-4210 and Handle C-4171, drive input shaft bearing from inside the front case half.

(10) Position case so forward end is facing upward.

(11) Using Remover C-4210 and Handle C-4171, drive input shaft bearing into case. The bearing locating ring must be fully seated against case surface.

(12) Remove front bearing retainer seal with suitable pry tool.

(13) Install new front bearing retainer with Installer 7884 (Fig. 28).



J9521-41

**Fig. 28 Install Front Bearing Retainer Seal**

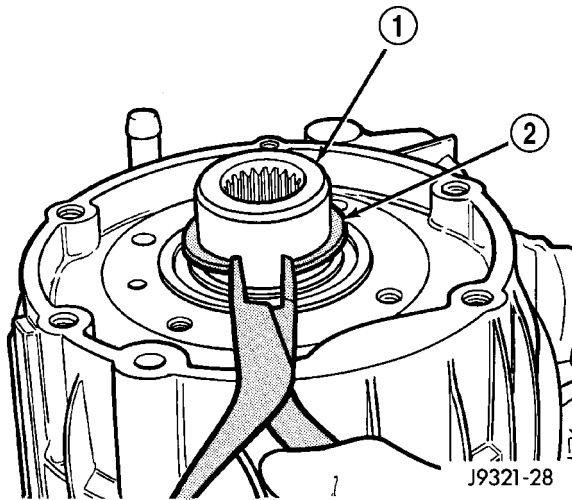
- 1 - FRONT BEARING RETAINER  
2 - SPECIAL TOOL 7884



## TRANSFER CASE - NV147 (Continued)

**INPUT GEAR**

- (1) Align and install input gear into front case.
- (2) Install snap-ring to hold input gear into front bearing (Fig. 29).

**Fig. 29 Install Input Gear Snap-Ring**

- 1 - INPUT GEAR  
2 - SNAP-RING

(3) Clean gasket sealer residue from retainer and inspect retainer for cracks or other damage.

(4) Apply a 3 mm (1/8 in.) bead of Mopar® gasket maker or silicone adhesive to sealing surface of retainer.

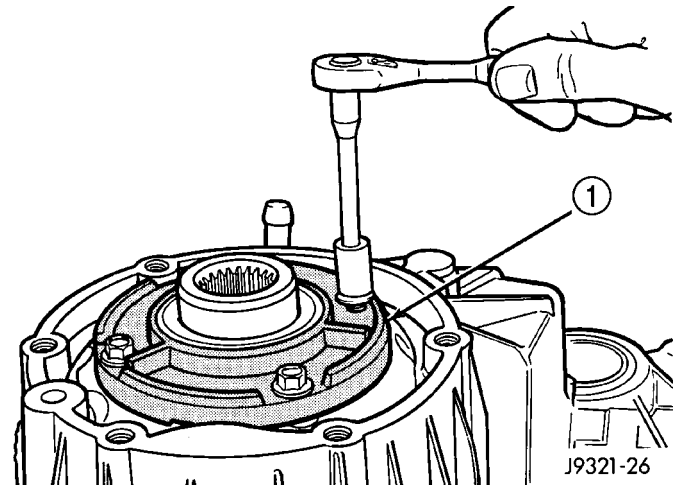
(5) Align cavity in seal retainer with fluid return hole in front of case.

**CAUTION:** Do not block fluid return cavity on sealing surface of retainer when applying Mopar® gasket maker or silicone adhesive sealer. Seal failure and fluid leak can result.

(6) Install bolts to hold retainer to transfer case (Fig. 30). Tighten to 21 N·m (16 ft. lbs.) of torque.

**MAINSHAFT**

- (1) Install drive sprocket hub to mainshaft and manually load the needle bearings.

**Fig. 30 Install Front Bearing Retainer**

- 1 - FRONT BEARING RETAINER

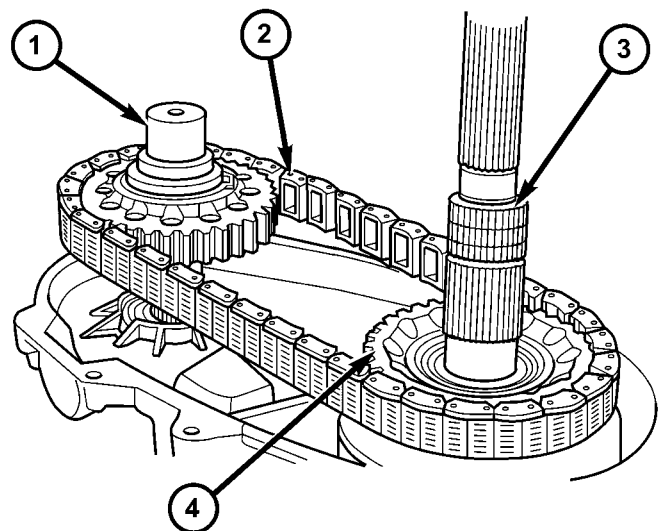
**FRONT OUTPUT SHAFT AND DRIVE CHAIN**

(1) Lubricate front output shaft-sprocket assembly, drive chain and drive sprocket with transfer case lubricant.

(2) Assemble drive chain, drive sprocket and front output shaft (Fig. 31).

(3) Start drive sprocket on mainshaft.

(4) Guide front shaft into bearing and drive sprocket onto mainshaft drive gear (Fig. 31).



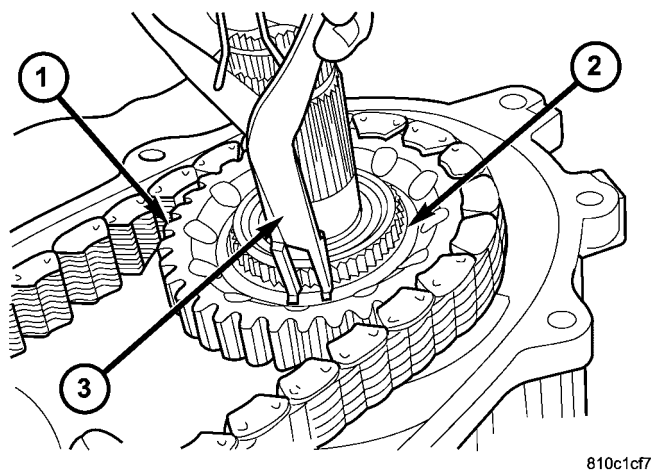
810c1ce0

**Fig. 31 Installing Drive Chain, Front Output Shaft And Drive Sprocket**

- 1 - FRONT OUTPUT SHAFT  
2 - DRIVE CHAIN  
3 - MAINSHAFT  
4 - DRIVE GEAR

## TRANSFER CASE - NV147 (Continued)

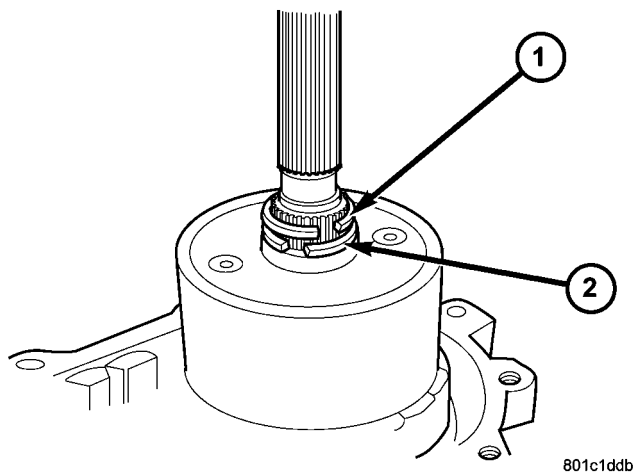
(5) Install drive sprocket snap-ring (Fig. 32).



**Fig. 32 Installing Drive Sprocket Snap-Ring**

- 1 - MAINSHAFT DRIVE SPROCKET  
2 - DRIVE SPROCKET SNAP-RING  
3 - SNAP-RING PLIERS

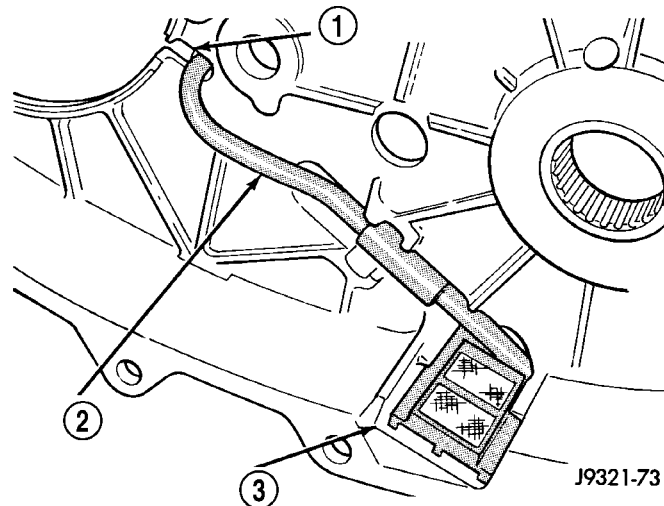
- (6) Install roller bearings, if removed.  
(7) Install progressive coupling (Fig. 33).  
(8) Install the progressive coupling thrust washer over the output shaft and against the coupling.  
(9) Install the oil pump locating snap-ring onto the output shaft.



**Fig. 33 Progressive Coupling Installation**

- 1 - SNAP-RING  
2 - PROGRESSIVE COUPLING

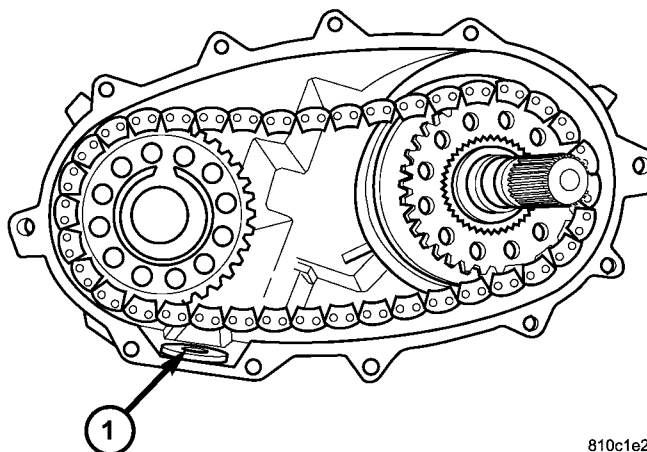
(10) Install oil pickup tube in rear case. Be sure tube is seated in case notch as shown (Fig. 34).



**Fig. 34 Oil Pickup Tube Installation**

- 1 - CASE NOTCH  
2 - OIL PICKUP TUBE ASSEMBLY  
3 - CASE SLOT

(11) Install magnet in front case pocket (Fig. 35).



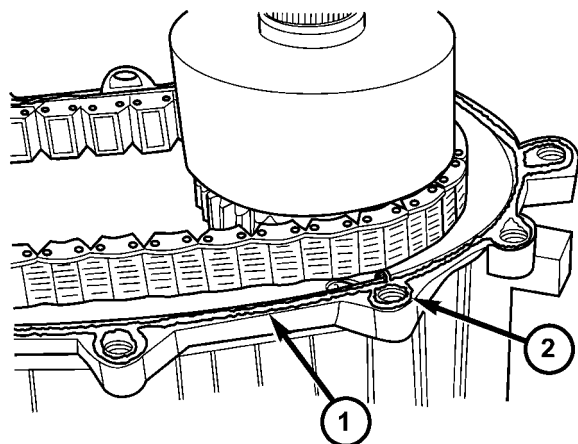
**Fig. 35 Installing Case Magnet**

- 1 - MAGNET

## TRANSFER CASE - NV147 (Continued)

(12) Clean sealing flanges of front case and rear case with a wax and grease remover.

(13) Apply 3 mm (1/8 in.) wide bead of Mopar® gasket maker or silicone adhesive sealer to mounting flange of front case. Work sealer bead around bolt holes as shown (Fig. 36).

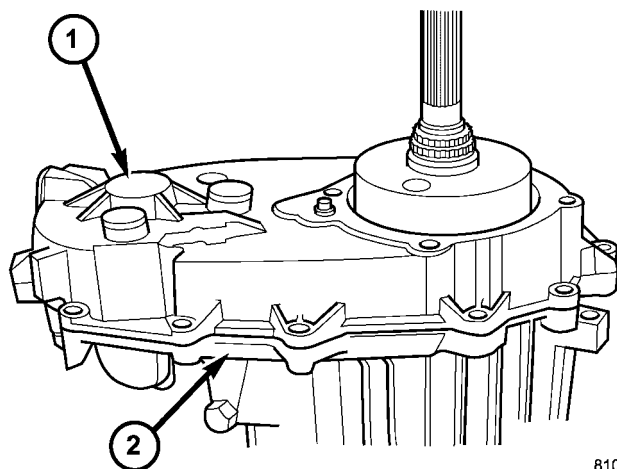


810c1e2e

**Fig. 36 Applying Sealer To Front Case Flange**

- 1 - FRONT CASE FLANGE  
2 - SEALER BEAD

(14) Align and install rear case on front case (Fig. 37).



810c1e4f

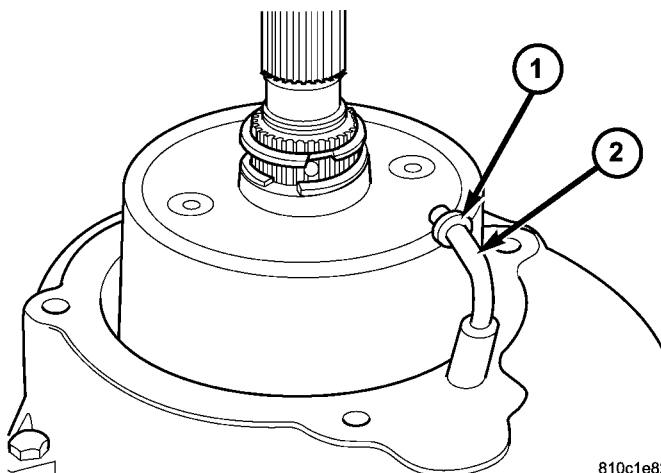
**Fig. 37 Rear Case Installation**

- 1 - REAR CASE  
2 - FRONT CASE

(15) Verify that oil pickup tube is still seated in case notch and tube end is pointed toward mainshaft (Fig. 38).

(16) Install case attaching bolts. Alignment bolts at each end of case are only ones requiring washers (Fig. 39).

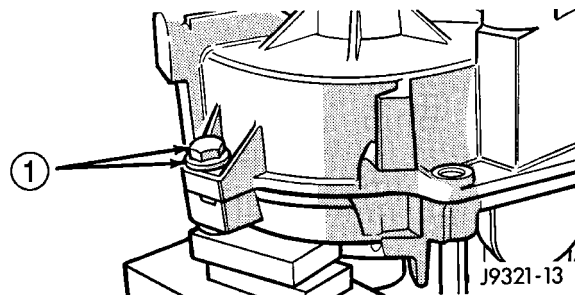
(17) Tighten case bolts to 27-34 N·m (20-25 ft. lbs.) torque.



810c1e82

**Fig. 38 Checking Position Of Oil Pickup Tube**

- 1 - TUBE O-RING  
2 - CORRECT PICKUP TUBE POSITION



J9321-13

**Fig. 39 Alignment Bolt**

- 1 - ALIGNMENT BOLT AND WASHER (AT EACH END OF CASE)

### COMPANION FLANGE

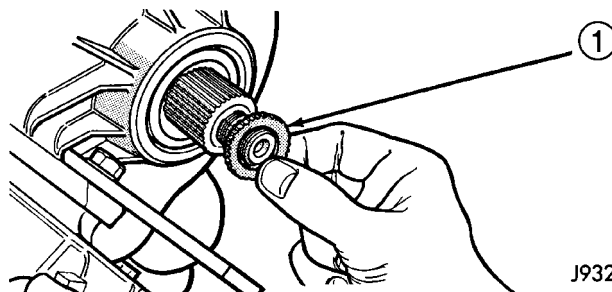
(1) Install new seal washer on front output shaft (Fig. 40).

(2) Lubricate flange hub with transfer case lubricant and install flange on front shaft.

(3) Install new seal washer on front shaft.

(4) Install companion flange and new nut on front output shaft.

(5) Tighten flange nut to 122-176 N·m (90-130 ft. lbs.) torque. Use Tool C-3281, or similar tool to hold flange while tightening yoke nut.



J9321-2

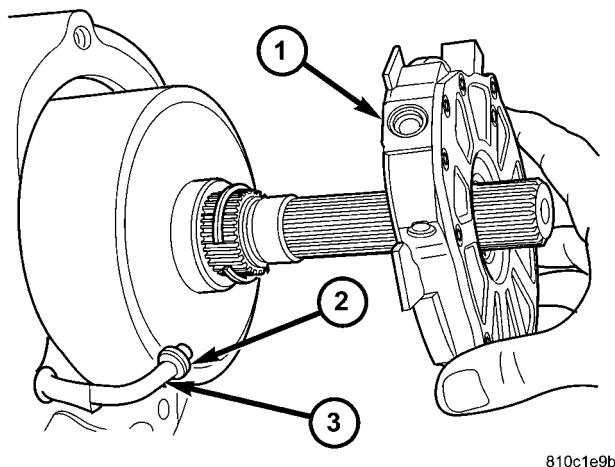
**Fig. 40 Flange Seal Washer Installation**

- 1 - YOKE SEAL WASHER

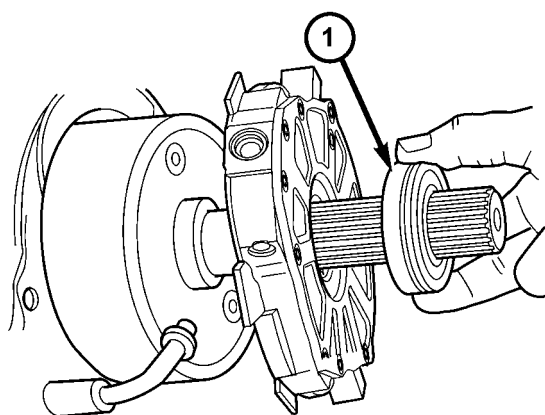
## TRANSFER CASE - NV147 (Continued)

**REAR RETAINER AND OIL PUMP**

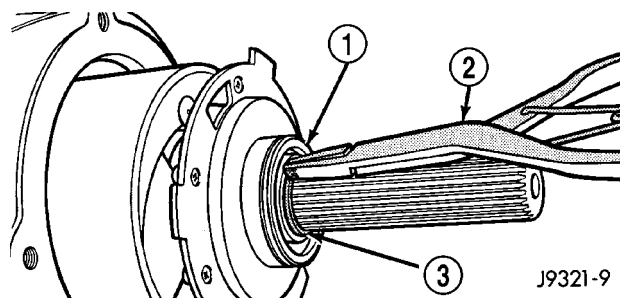
- (1) Install new O-ring on flanged end of oil pickup tube.
- (2) Install oil pump (Fig. 41).
- (3) Insert oil pickup tube in pump (Fig. 42).
- (4) Install rear bearing on mainshaft (Fig. 42). Locating ring groove in bearing goes toward end of mainshaft.
- (5) Install rear bearing retaining snap-ring (Fig. 43).

**Fig. 41 Installing Oil Pump**

- 1 - OIL PUMP
- 2 - TUBE O-RING
- 3 - OIL PICKUP TUBE

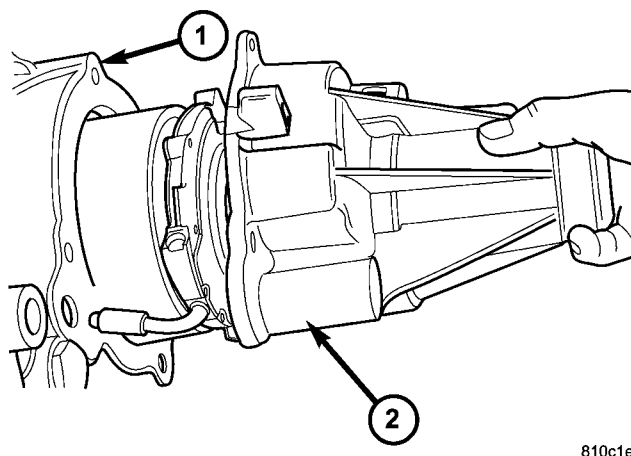
**Fig. 42 Rear Bearing Installation**

- 1 - REAR BEARING

**Fig. 43 Rear Bearing Snap-Ring Installation - Typical**

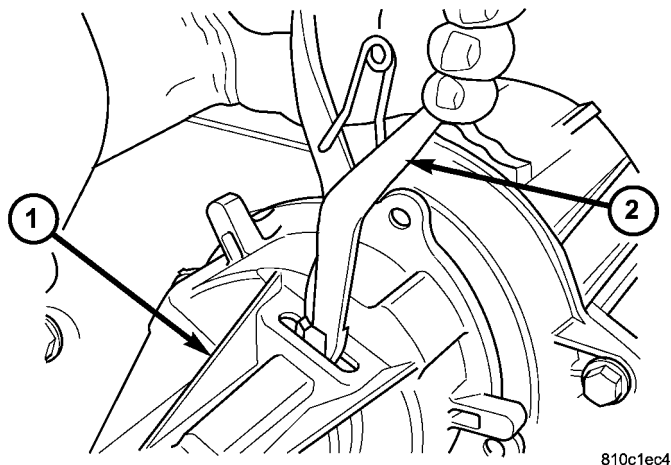
- 1 - REAR BEARING
- 2 - SNAP-RING PLIERS
- 3 - SNAP-RING

- (6) Install rear bearing locating ring in rear retainer, if ring was removed during overhaul.
- (7) Apply 3 mm (1/8 in.) wide bead of Mopar® gasket maker or silicone adhesive sealer to mounting surface of rear retainer. Allow sealer to set-up slightly before proceeding.
- (8) Slide rear retainer onto mainshaft (Fig. 44).
- (9) Spread rear bearing locating ring and slide rear retainer into place on rear case (Fig. 45).
- (10) Install and tighten rear retainer bolts to 27-34 N·m (20-25 ft. lbs.).
- (11) Install rubber access plug (Fig. 46).

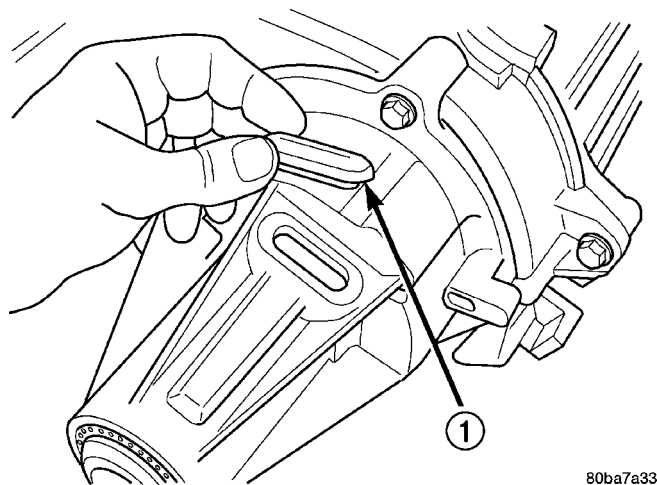
**Fig. 44 Rear Retainer Installation**

- 1 - REAR CASE
- 2 - REAR RETAINER

## TRANSFER CASE - NV147 (Continued)

**Fig. 45 Engaging Rear Bearing Locating Ring**

- 1 - REAR RETAINER  
2 - PARALLEL JAW SNAP-RING PLIERS

**Fig. 46 Installing Rubber Access Plug**

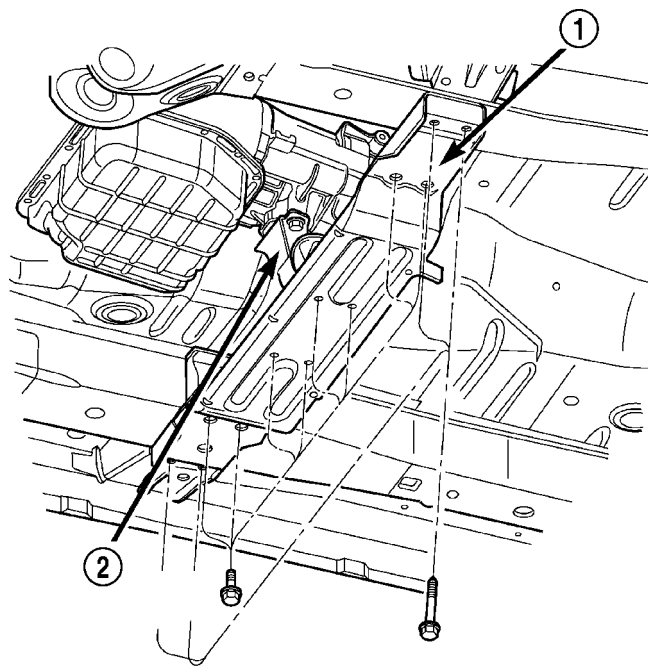
- 1 - PLUG

**FINAL ASSEMBLY**

- (1) Install drain plug. Tighten plug to 41-54 N·m (30-40 ft. lbs.) torque.
- (2) Level transfer case and fill it with Mopar® Transfer Case Lubricant. Correct fill level is to bottom edge of fill plug hole.
- (3) Install and tighten fill plug to 41-54 N·m (30-40 ft. lbs.) torque.

**INSTALLATION**

- (1) Mount transfer case on a transmission jack.
- (2) Secure transfer case to jack with chains.
- (3) Position transfer case under vehicle.
- (4) Align transfer case and transmission shafts and install transfer case on transmission.
- (5) Install and tighten transfer case attaching nuts to 35 N·m (26 ft. lbs.) torque.
- (6) Connect front propeller shaft and install rear propeller shaft. (Refer to 3 - DIFFERENTIAL & DRIVELINE/PROPELLER SHAFT/PROPELLER SHAFT - INSTALLATION)
- (7) Fill transfer case with correct fluid. Check transmission fluid level. Correct as necessary.
- (8) Install rear crossmember (Fig. 47) and skid plate, if equipped. Tighten crossmember bolts to 41 N·m (30 ft. lbs.) torque.

**Fig. 47 Crossmember Installation**

- 1 - CROSSMEMBER  
2 - REAR TRANSMISSION MOUNT

- (9) Remove transmission jack and support stand.
- (10) Lower vehicle and verify transfer case shift operation.



## TRANSFER CASE - NV147 (Continued)

## SPECIFICATIONS

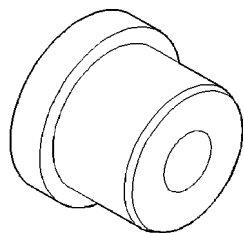
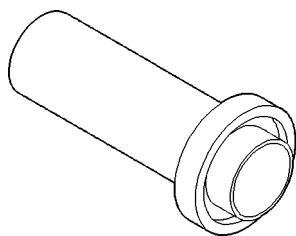
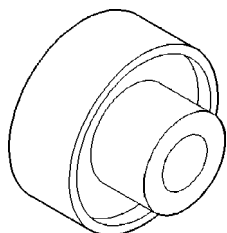
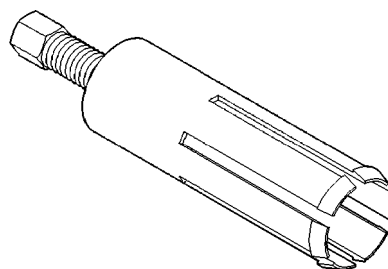
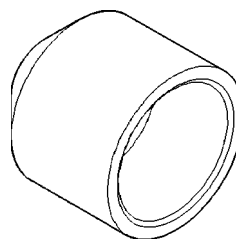
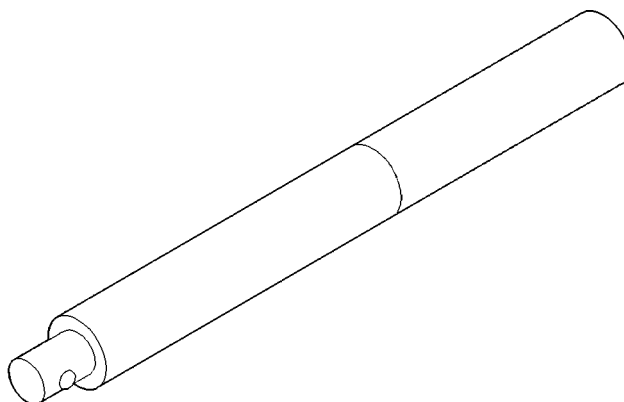
## TRANSFER CASE - NV147

## TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS

DESCRIPTION	N-m	Ft. Lbs.	In. Lbs.
Bolt, crossmember	41-47	30.2-34.7	-
Plugs, drain/fill	20-34	15-25	-
Bolts, front brg. retainer	16-24	11.8-17.7	-
Bolts, case half	27-34	19.9-25	-
Nut, companion flange	122-176	90-130	-
Bolts, rear extension	27-34	19.9-25	-
Nuts, T-case mount stud	33-41	24.3-30.2	-

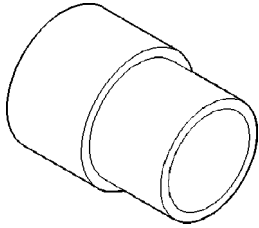
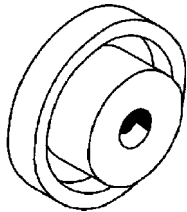
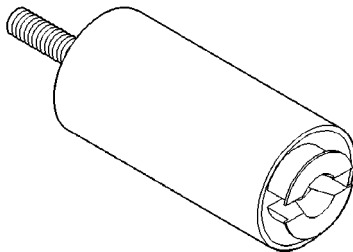
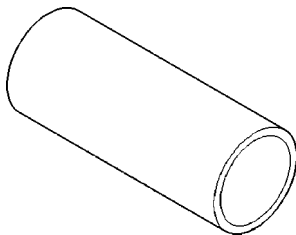
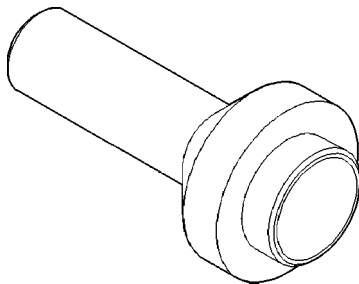
## SPECIAL TOOLS

## TRANSFER CASE - NV147

**Installer, Bearing - 5066****Installer, Seal - 6952-A****Installer, Bearing - 6953****Remover, Bushing - 6957****Installer, Seal - C-3995-A****Handle - C-4171**



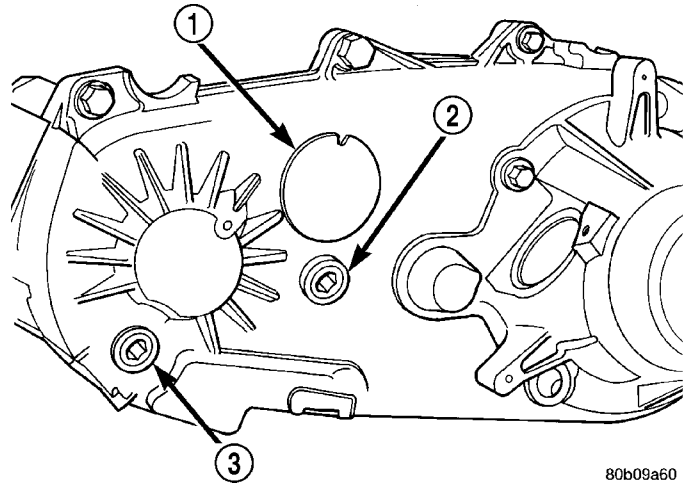
## TRANSFER CASE - NV147 (Continued)

**Installer, Bushing - 8145****Remover, Bearing - C-4210****Remover, Bearing - L-4454****Cup - 8148****Installer, Seal - 7884**

## FLUID

STANDARD PROCEDURE - FLUID DRAIN/  
REFILL

The fill and drain plugs are both in the rear case (Fig. 48).



80b09a60

**Fig. 48 Fill/Drain Plug and I.D. Tag Location - Typical**

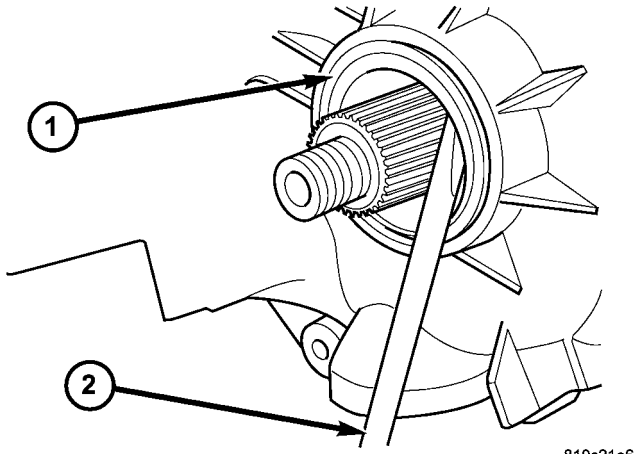
- 1 - I.D. TAG
- 2 - FILL PLUG
- 3 - DRAIN PLUG

- (1) Raise vehicle.
- (2) Position drain pan under transfer case.
- (3) Remove drain and fill plugs and drain lubricant completely.
- (4) Install drain plug. Tighten plug to 20-34 N·m (15-25 ft. lbs.).
- (5) Remove drain pan.
- (6) Fill transfer case to bottom edge of fill plug opening with Mopar® Transfer Case Lubricant.
- (7) Install and tighten fill plug to 20-34 N·m (15-25 ft. lbs.).
- (8) Lower vehicle.

## FRONT OUTPUT SHAFT SEAL

### REMOVAL

- (1) Raise vehicle on hoist.
- (2) Remove front propeller shaft. (Refer to 3 - DIFFERENTIAL & DRIVELINE/PROPELLER SHAFT/PROPELLER SHAFT - REMOVAL)
- (3) Remove front output shaft companion flange.
- (4) Remove seal from front case with pry tool (Fig. 49).

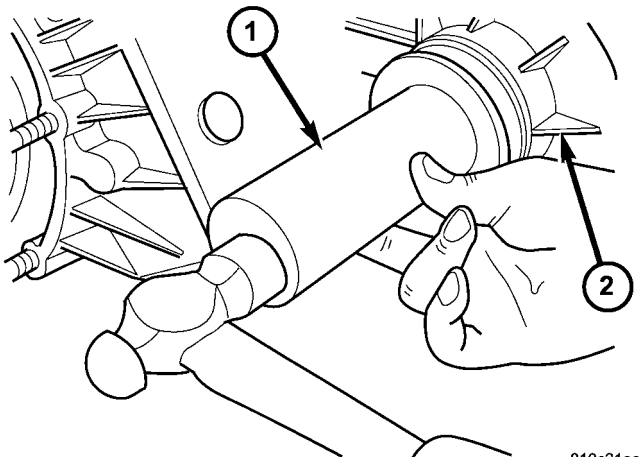


**Fig. 49 Remove Front Output Shaft Seal**

- 1 - OUTPUT SHAFT SEAL  
2 - PRYBAR

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Install new front output seal in front case with Installer Tool 6952-A as follows:
  - (a) Place new seal on tool. Garter spring on seal goes toward interior of case.
  - (b) Start seal in bore with light taps from hammer (Fig. 50). Once seal is started, continue tapping seal into bore until installer tool seats against case.



**Fig. 50 Front Output Seal Installation**

- 1 - INSTALLER 6952-A  
2 - TRANSFER CASE

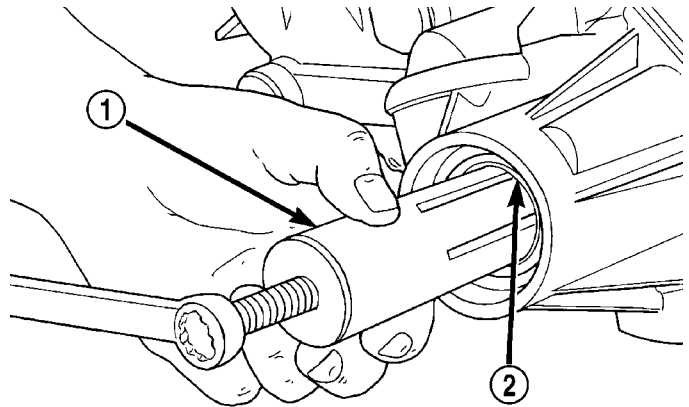
- (2) Install companion flange and torque nut to 122-176 N·m (90-130 ft. lbs.).

- (3) Install front propeller shaft. (Refer to 3 - DIFFERENTIAL & DRIVELINE/PROPELLER SHAFT/PROPELLER SHAFT - INSTALLATION)

## REAR RETAINER BUSHING AND SEAL

### REMOVAL

- (1) Raise vehicle on hoist.
- (2) Remove rear propeller shaft. (Refer to 3 - DIFFERENTIAL & DRIVELINE/PROPELLER SHAFT/PROPELLER SHAFT - REMOVAL)
- (3) Using a suitable pry tool or slide-hammer mounted screw, remove the rear retainer seal.
- (4) Using Remover 6957, remove bushing from rear retainer (Fig. 51).



80a98373

**Fig. 51 Rear Retainer Bushing Removal**

- 1 - REMOVER 6957  
2 - REAR RETAINER BUSHING

## REAR RETAINER BUSHING AND SEAL (Continued)

**INSTALLATION**

(1) Clean fluid residue from sealing surface and inspect for defects.

(2) Position replacement bushing in rear retainer with fluid port in bushing aligned with slot in retainer.

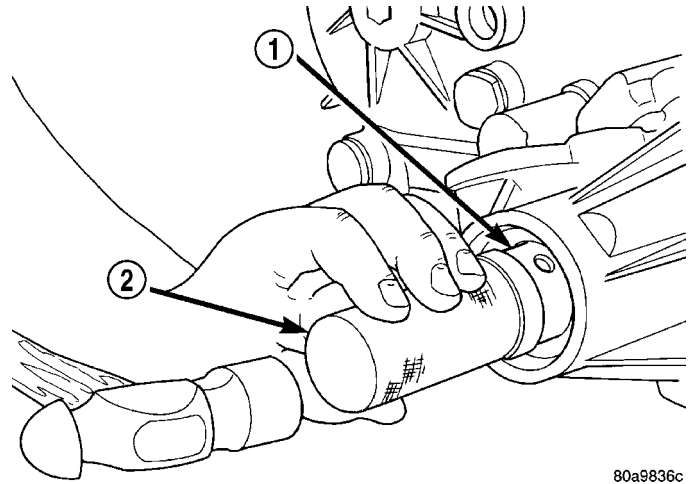
(3) Using Installer 8145, drive bushing into retainer until installer seats against case (Fig. 52).

(4) Using Installer C-3995-A, install seal in rear retainer (Fig. 53).

(5) Install rear propeller shaft. (Refer to 3 - DIFFERENTIAL & DRIVELINE/PROPELLER SHAFT/PROPELLER SHAFT - INSTALLATION)

(6) Verify proper fluid level.

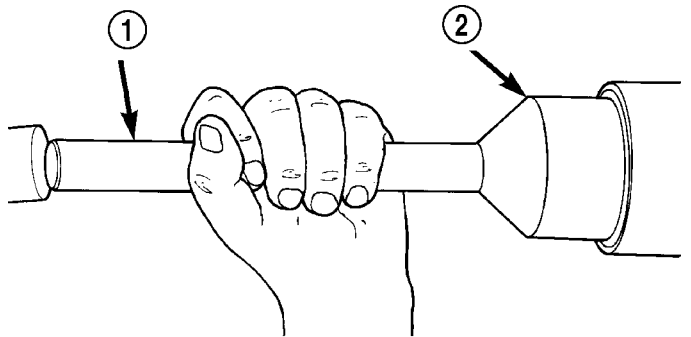
(7) Lower vehicle.



80a9836c

**Fig. 52 Rear Retainer Bushing Installation**

- 1 - REAR RETAINER BUSHING  
2 - INSTALLER 8145



80a983a7

**Fig. 53 Install Rear Retainer Seal**

- 1 - SPECIAL TOOL C-4171  
2 - SPECIAL TOOL C-3995-A

## TRANSFER CASE - NV242

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>TRANSFER CASE - NV242</b>		<b>FRONT OUTPUT SHAFT SEAL</b>	
DESCRIPTION .....	303	REMOVAL .....	334
OPERATION .....	304	INSTALLATION .....	334
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - TRANSFER		<b>POSITION SENSOR</b>	
CASE - NV242 .....	304	DESCRIPTION .....	335
REMOVAL .....	305	OPERATION .....	335
DISASSEMBLY .....	305	REMOVAL .....	336
CLEANING .....	316	INSTALLATION .....	336
INSPECTION .....	316	<b>REAR RETAINER BUSHING AND SEAL -</b>	
ASSEMBLY .....	319	<b>NV242HD</b>	
INSTALLATION .....	331	REMOVAL .....	336
SPECIFICATIONS		INSTALLATION .....	336
TRANSFER CASE - NV242 .....	332	<b>SHIFT CABLE</b>	
SPECIAL TOOLS		REMOVAL .....	337
TRANSFER CASE - NV242 .....	332	INSTALLATION .....	337
<b>FLUID</b>			
STANDARD PROCEDURE - FLUID DRAIN/ REFILL .....	334		

## TRANSFER CASE - NV242

## DESCRIPTION

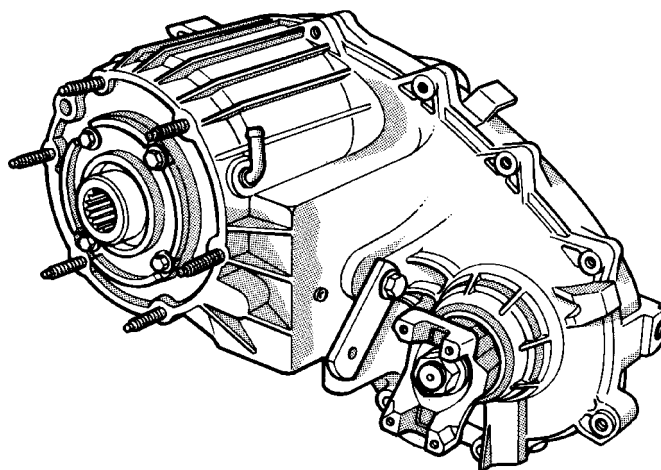
The NV242 is a full transfer case (Fig. 1). It provides full time 2-wheel, or 4-wheel drive operation.

A differential in the transfer case is used to control torque transfer to the front and rear axles. A low range gear provides increased low speed torque capability for off road operation. The low range provides a 2.72:1 reduction ratio.

The geartrain is mounted in two aluminum case halves attached with bolts. The mainshaft front and rear bearings are mounted in aluminum retainer housings bolted to the case halves.

## TRANSFER CASE IDENTIFICATION

Two versions of the NV242 are used in the WJ vehicles, NV242LD and NV242HD. The two transfer cases can be distinguished from one another by the rear output shaft retainer. The NV242LD uses a rubber boot to cover the rear output shaft, while the NV242HD uses a cast aluminum housing. Other than this difference, the two transfer cases are serviced the same.



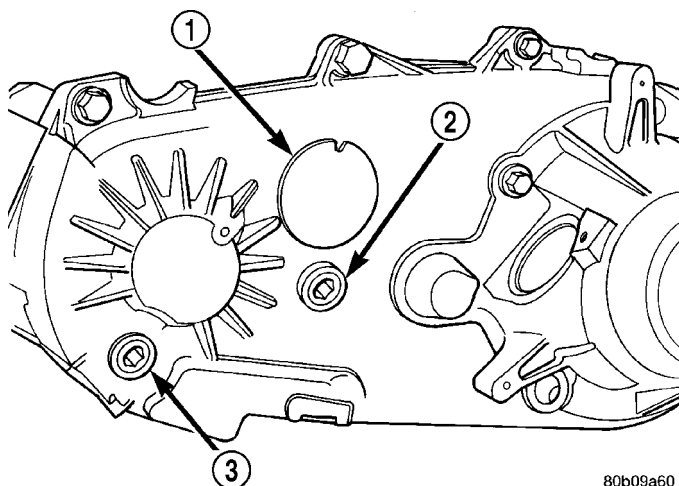
J8921-243

**Fig. 1 NV242 Transfer Case**

A circular ID tag is attached to the rear case of each transfer case (Fig. 2). The ID tag provides the transfer case model number, assembly number, serial number, and low range ratio.

The transfer case serial number also represents the date of build.

## TRANSFER CASE - NV242 (Continued)



**Fig. 2 Fill/Drain Plug And I.D. Tag Locations**

- 1 - I.D. TAG
- 2 - FILL PLUG
- 3 - DRAIN PLUG

### SHIFT MECHANISM

Operating ranges are selected with a lever in the floor mounted shifter assembly. The shift lever is connected to the transfer case range lever by an adjust-

able cable. A straight line shift pattern is used. Range positions are marked on the shifter bezel.

### OPERATION

The input gear is splined to the transmission output shaft. It drives the mainshaft through the planetary gear and range hub. The front output shaft is operated by a drive chain that connects the shaft to a drive sprocket on the mainshaft. The drive sprocket is engaged/disengaged by the mode fork, which operates the mode sleeve and hub. The sleeve and hub are not equipped with a synchro mechanism for shifting.

### OPERATING RANGES

NV242 operating ranges are 2WD (2-wheel drive), 4x4 part-time, 4x4 full time, and 4 Lo.

The 2WD and 4x4 full time ranges can be used at any time and on any road surface.

The 4x4 part-time and 4 Lo ranges are for off road use only. The only time these ranges can be used on hard surface roads, is when the surface is covered with snow and ice.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - TRANSFER CASE - NV242

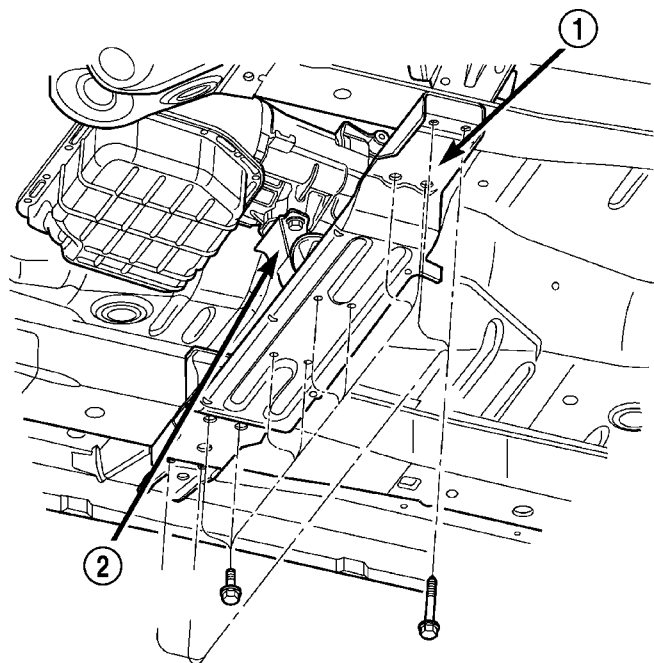
### DIAGNOSIS CHART

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSE	CORRECTION
Transfer case difficult to shift or will not shift into desired range.	1) Transfer case shift linkage binding.	1) Repair or replace linkage as necessary.
	2) Insufficient or incorrect lubricant.	2) Drain and refill transfer case with the correct type and quantity of lubricant.
	3) Internal transfer case components binding, worn, or damaged.	3) Repair or replace components as necessary.
Transfer case noisy in all drive modes.	1) Insufficient or incorrect lubricant.	1) Drain and refill transfer case with the correct type and quantity of lubricant.
Lubricant leaking from transfer case seals or vent.	1) Transfer case overfilled.	1) Drain lubricant to the correct level.
	2) Transfer case vent closed or restricted.	2) Clean or replace vent as necessary.
	3) Transfer case seals damaged or installed incorrectly.	3) Replace suspect seal.
Transfer case will not shift through 4X4 part time range (light remains on)	1) Incomplete shift due to drivetrain torque load.	1) Momentarily release the accelerator pedal to complete the shift.
	2) Incorrect tire pressure.	2) Correct tire pressure as necessary.
	3) Excessive Tire wear.	3) Correct tire condition as necessary.
	4) Excessive vehicle loading.	4) Correct as necessary.

## TRANSFER CASE - NV242 (Continued)

**REMOVAL**

- (1) Shift transfer case into NEUTRAL.
- (2) Raise vehicle.
- (3) Remove transfer case drain plug and drain transfer case lubricant.
- (4) Mark front and rear propeller shaft yokes for alignment reference.
- (5) Support transmission with jack stand.
- (6) Remove rear crossmember and skid plate, if equipped (Fig. 3).



80ba79c7

**Fig. 3 Crossmember Removal**

- 1 - CROSSMEMBER  
2 - REAR TRANSMISSION MOUNT

(7) Disconnect front/rear propeller shafts at transfer case. (Refer to 3 - DIFFERENTIAL & DRIVELINE/PROPELLER SHAFT/PROPELLER SHAFT - REMOVAL)

(8) Disconnect transfer case cable from range lever.

(9) Disconnect transfer case vent hose (Fig. 4) and transfer case position sensor.

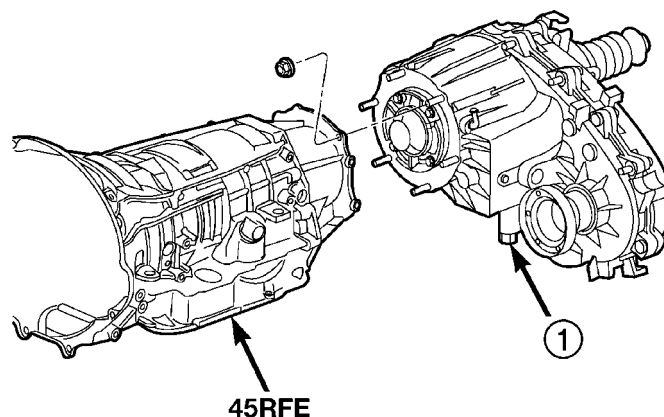
(10) Support transfer case with transmission jack.

(11) Secure transfer case to jack with chains.

(12) Remove nuts attaching transfer case to transmission.

(13) Pull transfer case and jack rearward to disengage transfer case.

(14) Remove transfer case from under vehicle.



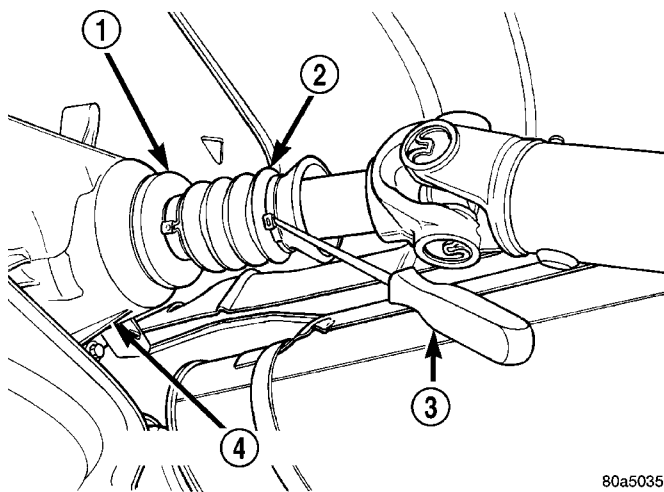
80ba79c8

**Fig. 4 Transfer Case Mounting**

- 1 - NV242 TRANSFER CASE

**DISASSEMBLY****REAR RETAINER - NV242LD**

(1) Remove output shaft boot. Spread band clamp that secures boot on slinger with a suitable awl. Then slide boot off shaft (Fig. 5).



80a50351

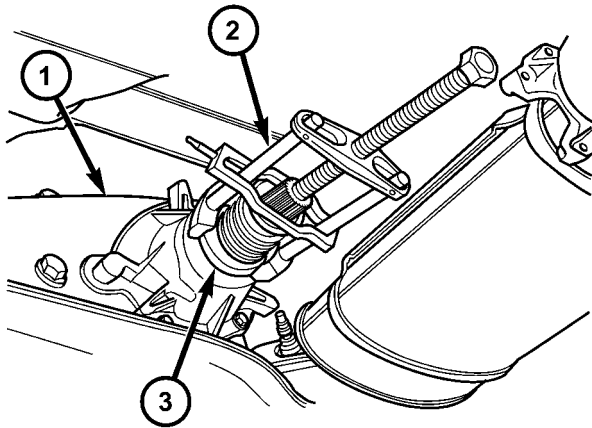
**Fig. 5 Output Boot - Typical**

- 1 - SLINGER  
2 - BOOT  
3 - AWL  
4 - TRANSFER CASE



## TRANSFER CASE - NV242 (Continued)

(2) Using puller MD-998056-A, remove rear slinger (Fig. 6).

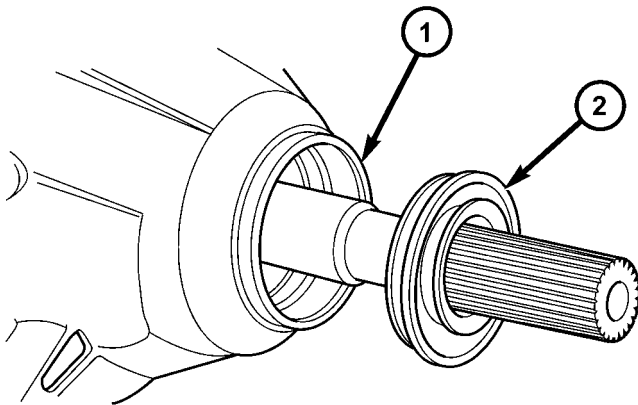


80cc2407

**Fig. 6 Rear Slinger Removal**

- 1 - TRANSFER CASE
- 2 - SPECIAL TOOL MD998056-A
- 3 - SLINGER

(3) Remove rear seal from retainer (Fig. 7). Use pry tool, or collapse seal with punch to remove it.

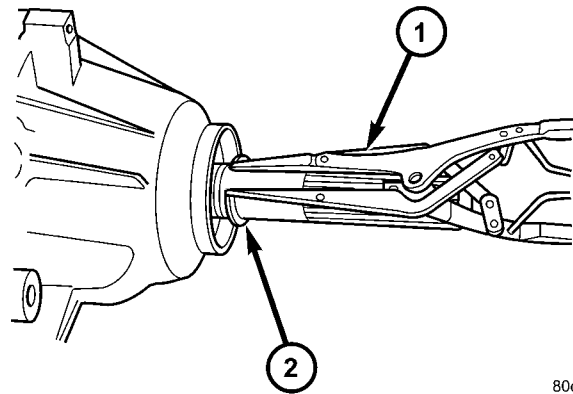


80cc23aa

**Fig. 7 Rear Retainer Seal**

- 1 - REAR RETAINER
- 2 - OUTPUT SHAFT SEAL

(4) Remove rear output bearing I.D. retaining ring (Fig. 8).



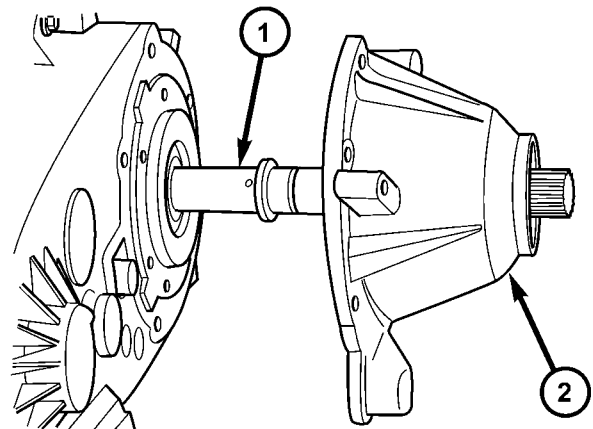
80cc2481

**Fig. 8 Output Shaft Rear Bearing Retaining Ring**

- 1 - SNAP-RING PLIERS
- 2 - RETAINING RING

(5) Remove rear retainer bolts.

(6) Remove rear retainer. Tap retainer with mallet and pry upward to break sealer bead. Then slide retainer off case and output shaft (Fig. 9).



80cc2462

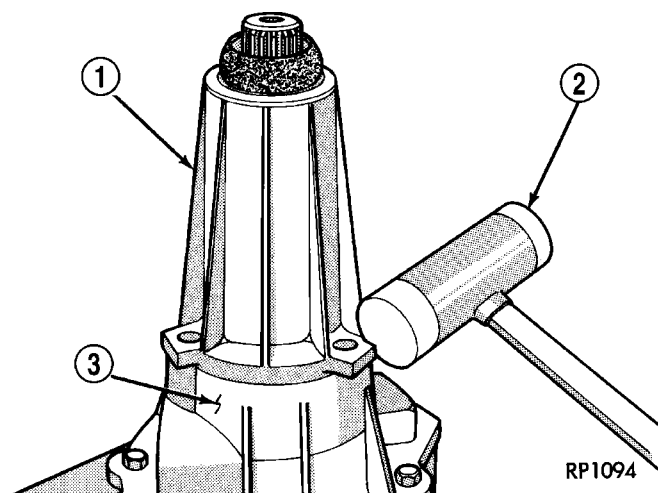
**Fig. 9 Rear Retainer Removal**

- 1 - MAINSHAFT
- 2 - REAR RETAINER

## TRANSFER CASE - NV242 (Continued)

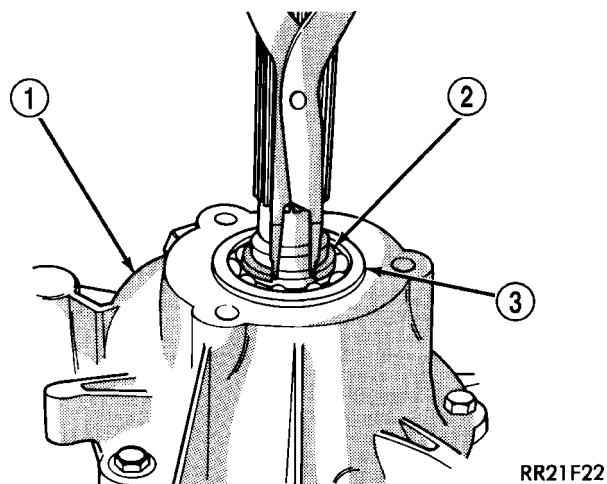
**REAR RETAINER - NV242HD**

- (1) Remove extension housing bolts.
- (2) Tap extension housing with plastic or rawhide mallet to loosen sealer (Fig. 10).

**Fig. 10 Remove Extension Housing**

- 1 - EXTENSION HOUSING
- 2 - PLASTIC HAMMER
- 3 - REAR RETAINER

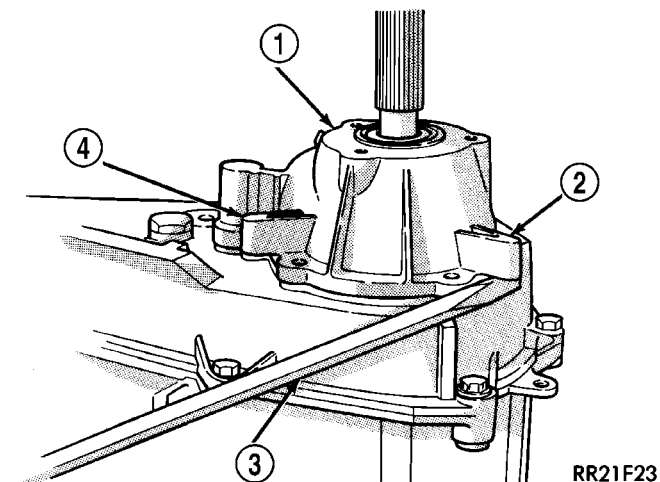
- (3) Separate extension housing from rear retainer.
- (4) Remove rear bearing snap-ring (Fig. 11).

**Fig. 11 Remove the Output Bearing Snap-ring**

- 1 - REAR RETAINER
- 2 - SNAP-RING
- 3 - REAR BEARING

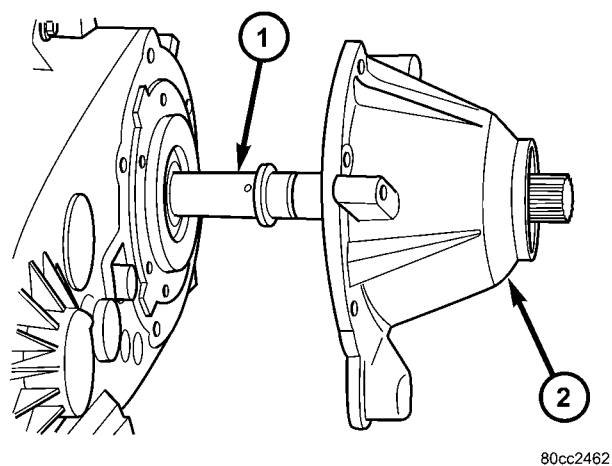
- (5) Remove bolts holding rear retainer to rear case half.

- (6) Loosen rear retainer with pry tool to break sealer bead. Pry only against retainer boss as shown (Fig. 12).

**Fig. 12 Loosening Rear Retainer**

- 1 - REAR RETAINER
- 2 - TAB (2)
- 3 - SCREWDRIVER
- 4 - TAB

- (7) Slide retainer off case and output shaft (Fig. 13).

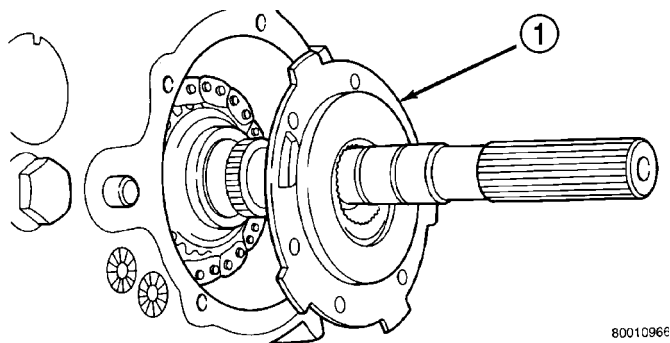
**Fig. 13 Rear Retainer Removal**

- 1 - MAINSHAFT
- 2 - REAR RETAINER

## TRANSFER CASE - NV242 (Continued)

## OIL PUMP AND REAR CASE HALF

(1) Remove rear bearing O.D. retaining ring with snap ring pliers. Then tilt pump and slide it off output shaft (Fig. 14)



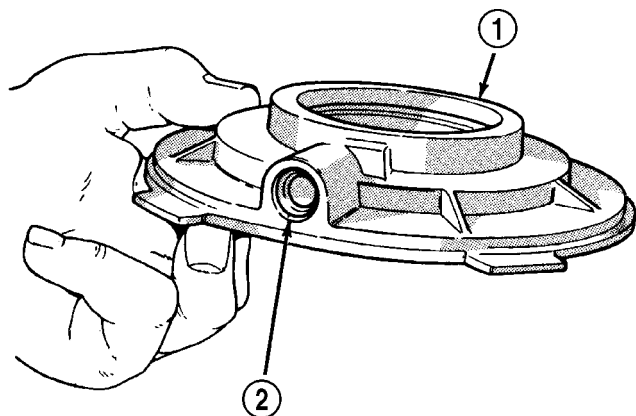
8001096E

**Fig. 14 Oil Pump Removal**

1 - OIL PUMP

(2) Remove pickup tube O-ring from pump (Fig. 15) but do not disassemble pump; it is not a repairable part.

(3) Remove seal from oil pump with pry tool.

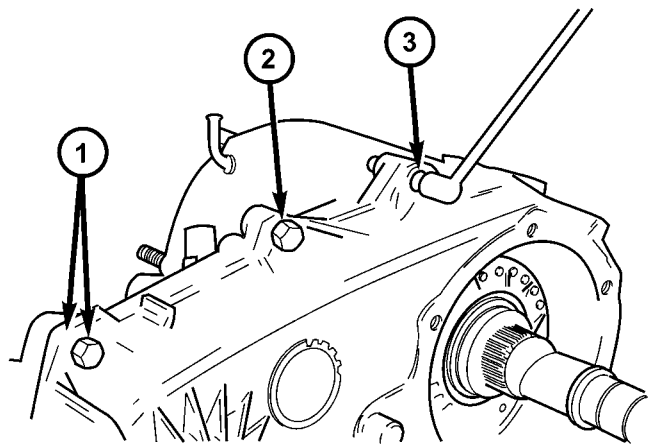


RR21F27

**Fig. 15 Pickup Tube O-Ring Location**

1 - OIL PUMP  
2 - O-RING

(4) Remove bolts attaching rear case to front case (Fig. 16). Note position of the two black finish bolts at each end of the case. These bolts go through the case dowels and require a washer under the bolt head.



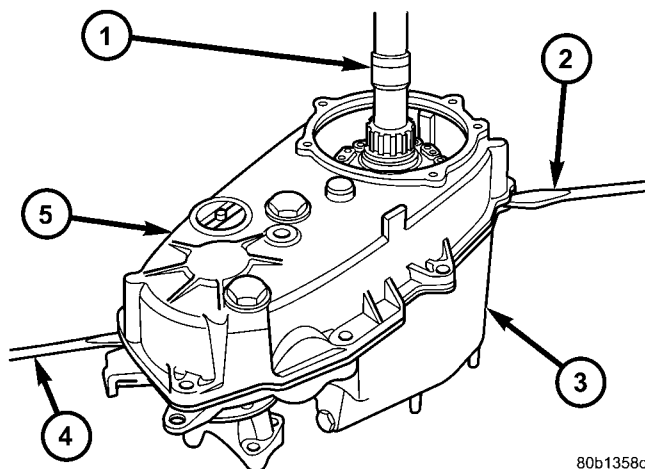
80b13560

**Fig. 16 Spline And Dowel Bolt Locations**

1 - DOWEL BOLT AND WASHER (2)  
2 - CASE BOLTS  
3 - SPLINE HEAD BOLT (1)

(5) Remove rear case from front case (Fig. 17). Insert screwdrivers into slots cast into each end of case. Then pry upward to break sealer bead and remove rear case.

**CAUTION:** Do not pry on the sealing surface of either case half as the surfaces will become damaged.



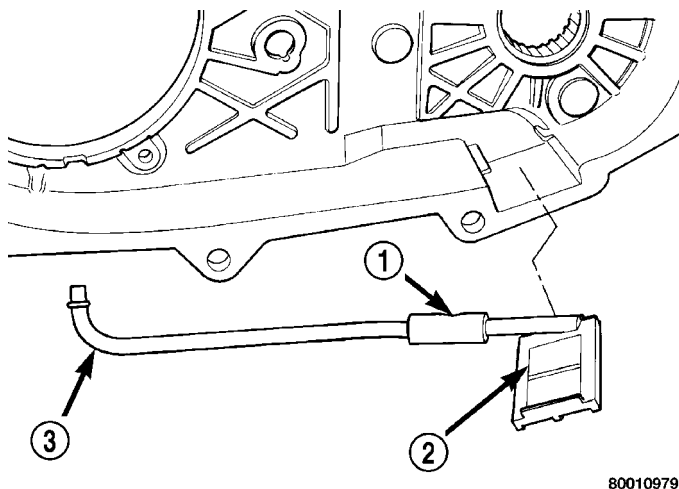
80b1358c

**Fig. 17 Loosening/Removing Rear Case**

1 - MAINSHAFT  
2 - SCREWDRIVER  
3 - FRONT CASE  
4 - SCREWDRIVER  
5 - REAR CASE

## TRANSFER CASE - NV242 (Continued)

(6) Remove oil pickup tube and screen from rear case (Fig. 18).



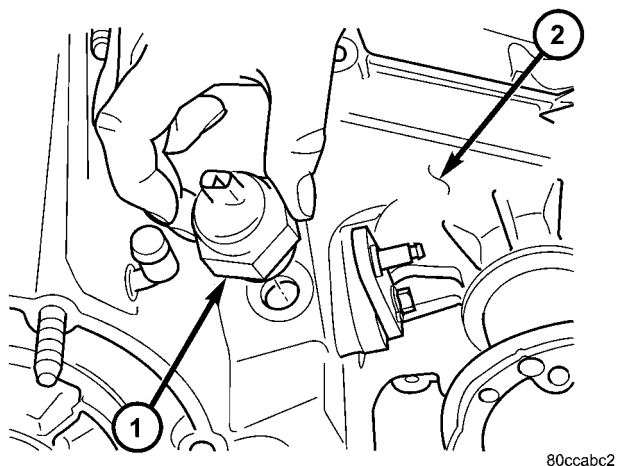
80010979

**Fig. 18 Oil Pickup Screen, Hose And Tube Removal**

- 1 - CONNECTING HOSE
- 2 - PICKUP SCREEN
- 3 - PICKUP TUBE

## COMPANION FLANGE AND RANGE LEVER

(1) Remove transfer case position sensor (Fig. 19).



80ccabc2

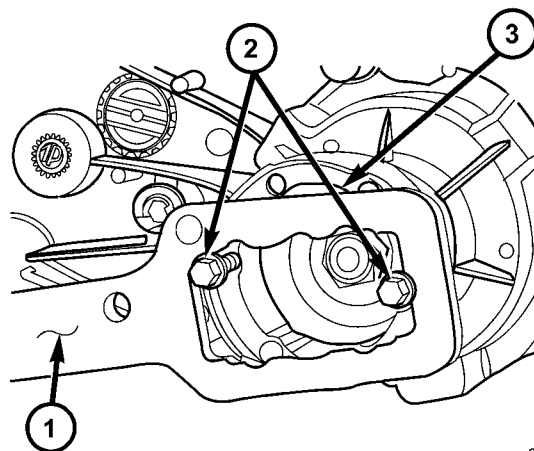
**Fig. 19 Remove Transfer Case Position Sensor**

- 1 - TRANSFER CASE POSITION SENSOR
- 2 - TRANSFER CASE

(2) Install two bolts (Fig. 20) partially into the propeller shaft companion flange, 180° from each other.

(3) Install the rectangular end of the Flange Holder C-3281 over the bolts to hold the companion flange stationary and remove the nut holding the companion flange to the output shaft.

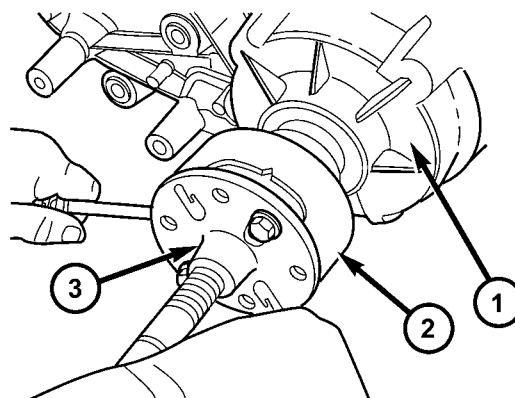
(4) Use Remover C-452 (Fig. 21) to remove the companion flange.



80bd68a3

**Fig. 20 Hold Companion Flange - Typical**

- 1 - HOLDER C-3281
- 2 - BOLTS
- 3 - COMPANION FLANGE



80bd68a7

**Fig. 21 Remove Companion Flange - Typical**

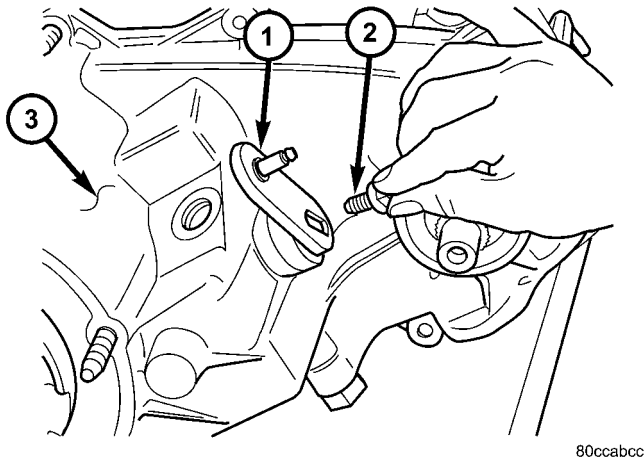
- 1 - TRANSFER CASE
- 2 - COMPANION FLANGE
- 3 - REMOVER C-452

## TRANSFER CASE - NV242 (Continued)

(5) Remove seal washer from front output shaft. Discard washer as it should not be reused.

(6) Remove the bolt (Fig. 22) that attaches the range lever to sector shaft. Then move sector to neutral position and remove range lever from shaft.

**NOTE:** Be sure to note the orientation of the range lever (lever up or down) so that it may be re-installed in the same direction.



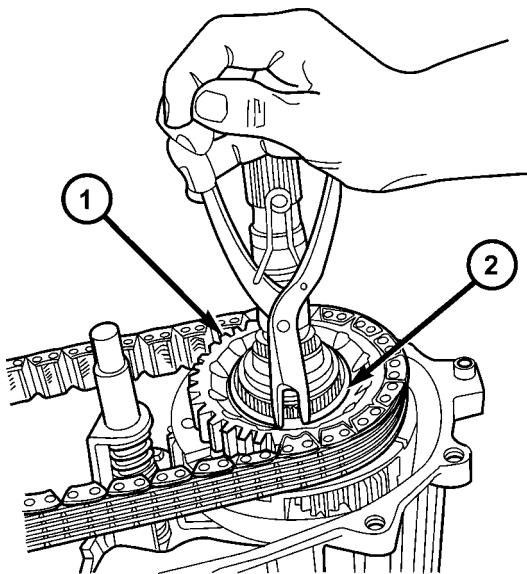
80ccabcc

**Fig. 22 Remove Shift Lever Bolt - Typical**

- 1 - RANGE LEVER
- 2 - RANGE LEVER BOLT
- 3 - TRANSFER CASE

## FRONT OUTPUT SHAFT AND DRIVE CHAIN

(1) Remove drive sprocket snap-ring (Fig. 23).

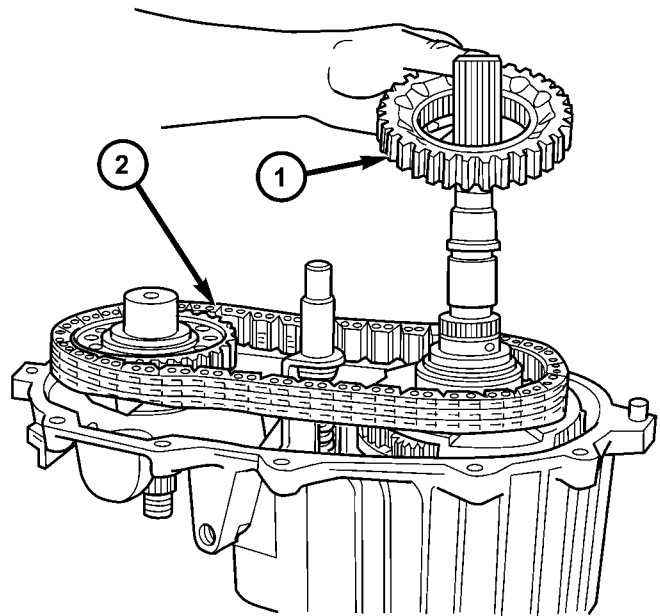


80b1359a

**Fig. 23 Drive Sprocket Snap-Ring Removal**

- 1 - DRIVE SPROCKET
- 2 - DRIVE SPROCKET SNAP-RING

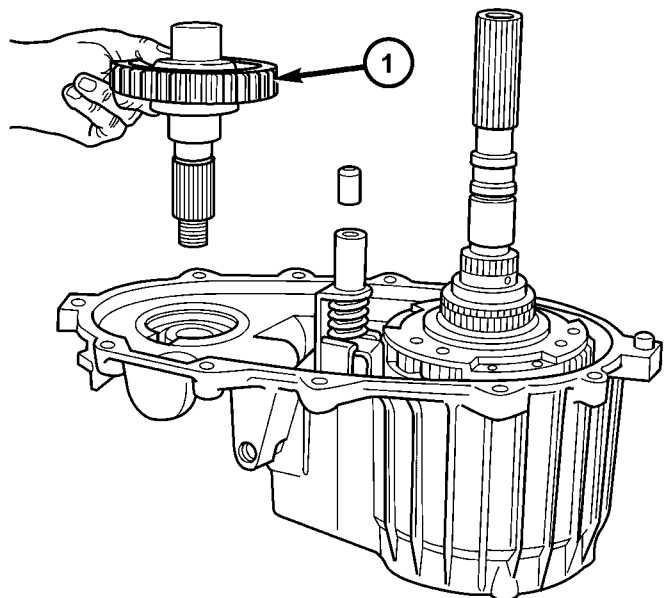
(2) Remove drive sprocket and chain (Fig. 24).  
(3) Remove front output shaft (Fig. 25).



80b135a6

**Fig. 24 Drive Sprocket And Chain Removal**

- 1 - DRIVE SPROCKET
- 2 - DRIVE CHAIN



80b136a2

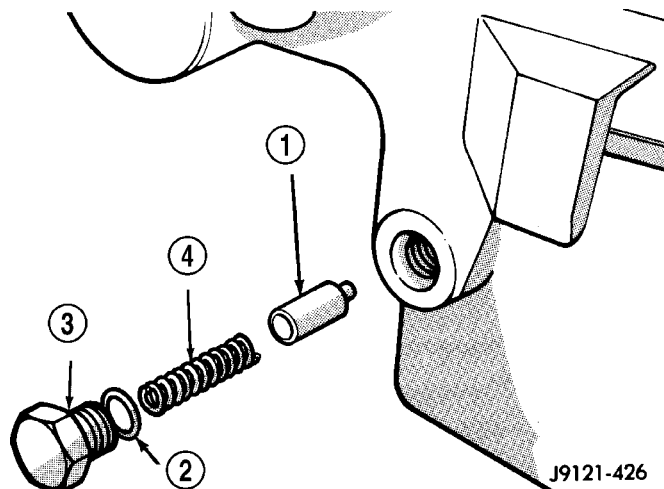
**Fig. 25 Removing Front Output Shaft**

- 1 - FRONT OUTPUT SHAFT

## TRANSFER CASE - NV242 (Continued)

## SHIFT FORKS AND MAINSHAFT

(1) Remove shift detent plug, spring and pin (Fig. 26).



**Fig. 26 Detent Component Removal**

- 1 - PLUNGER
- 2 - O-RING
- 3 - PLUG
- 4 - SPRING

(2) Remove seal plug from low range fork lockpin access hole. Then move shift sector to align low range fork lockpin with access hole.

(3) Remove range fork lockpin with size number one easy-out tool as follows:

(a) Insert easy-out tool through access hole in side of transfer case and into lock-pin.

(b) Tap easy-out tool into lock-pin with hammer until tool is securely engaged into the lock-pin.

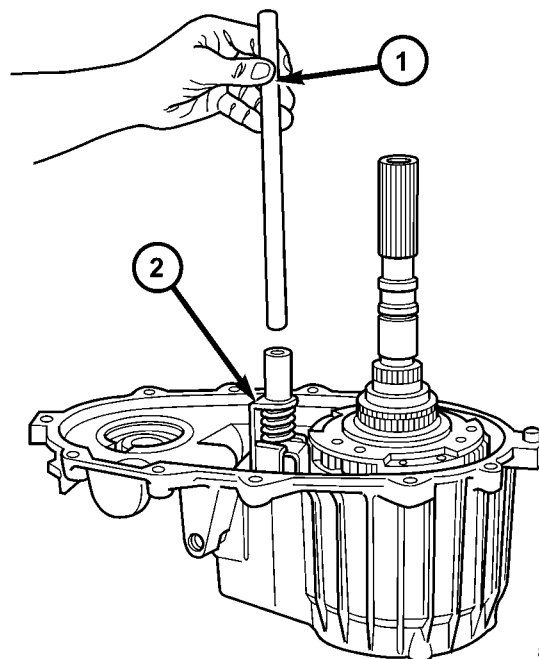
(c) Install a t-handle, such as from a tap and die set, onto the easy-out tool.

(d) Securely tighten the t-handle onto the tool.

(e) In one motion, pull upward and turn the t-handle counter-clockwise to remove the lock-pin.

(4) Remove shift rail by pulling it straight up and out of fork (Fig. 27).

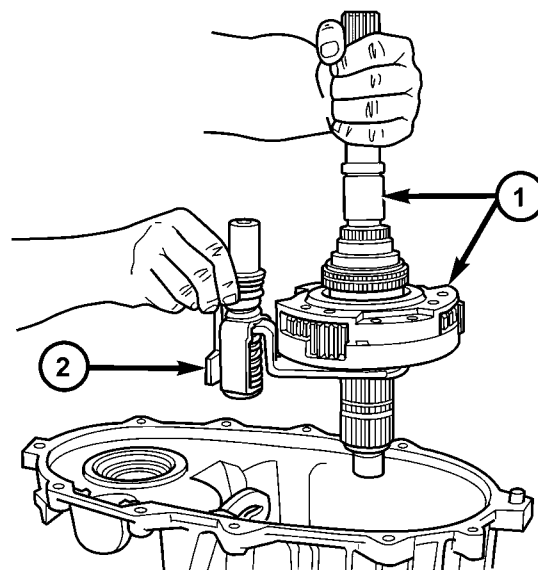
(5) Remove mode fork and mainshaft as assembly (Fig. 28).



80b135b4

**Fig. 27 Shift Rail Removal**

- 1 - SHIFT RAIL
- 2 - MODE FORK



80b135e0

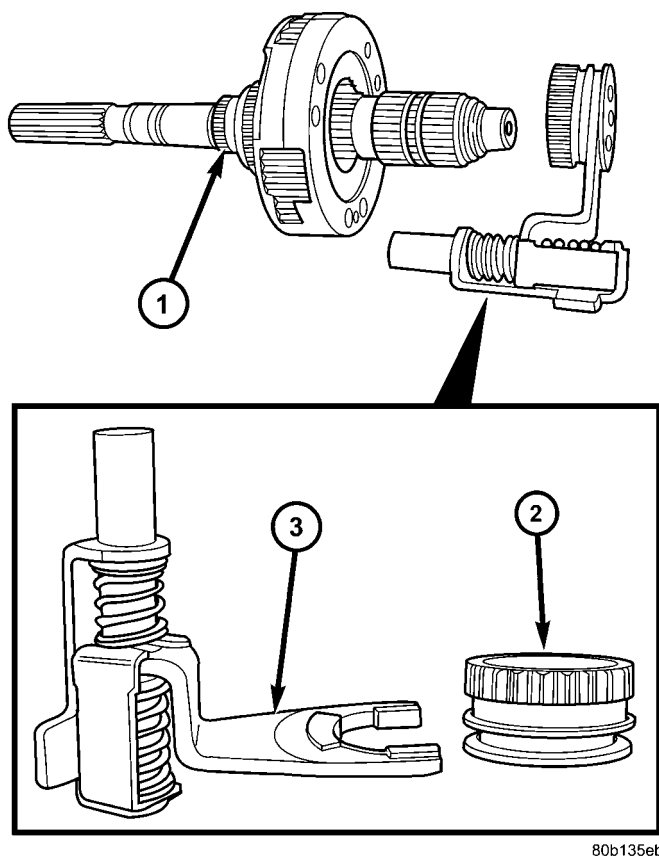
**Fig. 28 Mainshaft And Mode Fork Removal**

- 1 - MAINSHAFT ASSEMBLY
- 2 - MODE FORK



## TRANSFER CASE - NV242 (Continued)

(6) Remove mode shift sleeve and mode fork assembly from mainshaft (Fig. 29). Note position of mode sleeve in fork and remove sleeve.

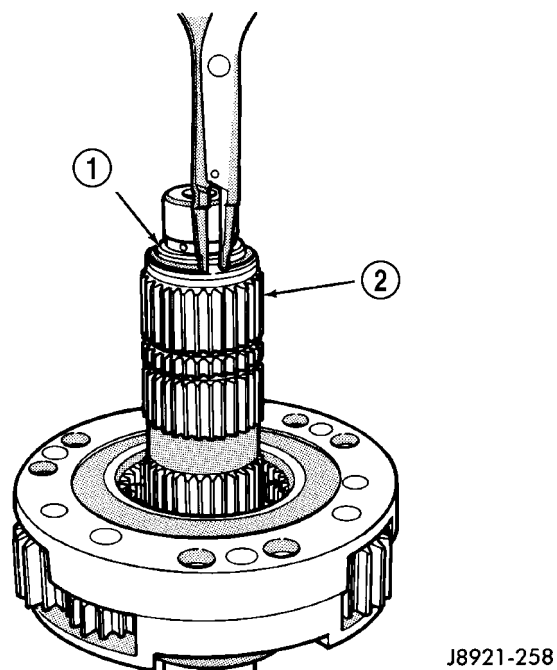


**Fig. 29 Separate Mode Fork And Sleeve**

- 1 - MAINSHAFT
- 2 - MODE SLEEVE
- 3 - MODE FORK ASSEMBLY

(7) Remove intermediate clutch shaft snap-ring (Fig. 30).

(8) Remove clutch shaft thrust ring (Fig. 31).



**Fig. 30 Intermediate Clutch Shaft Snap-Ring Removal**

- 1 - SNAP-RING
- 2 - INTERMEDIATE CLUTCH SHAFT

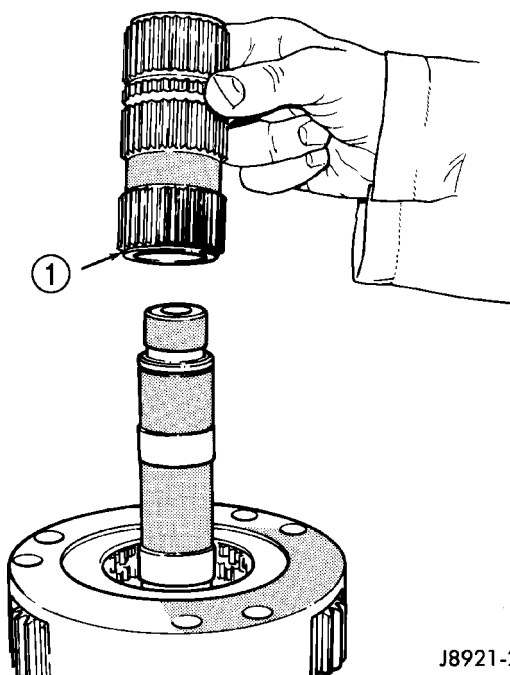


**Fig. 31 Clutch Shaft Thrust Ring Removal**

- 1 - CLUTCH SHAFT THRUST RING

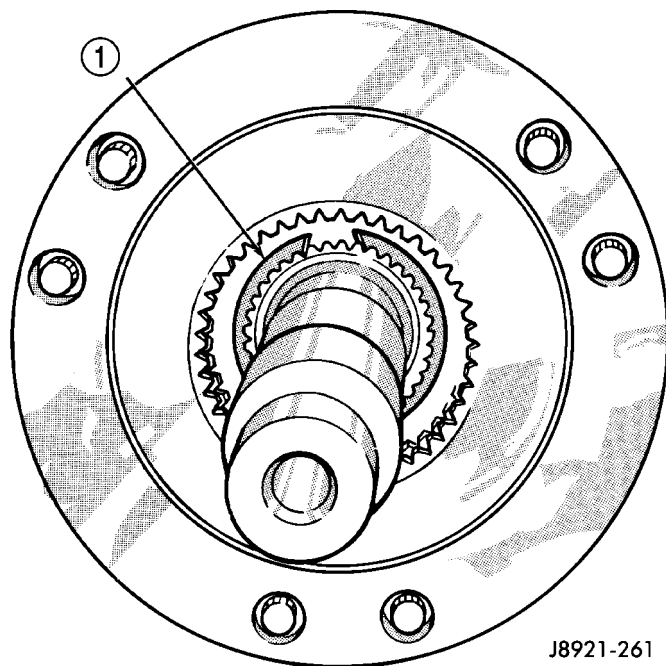
## TRANSFER CASE - NV242 (Continued)

(9) Remove intermediate clutch shaft (Fig. 32).

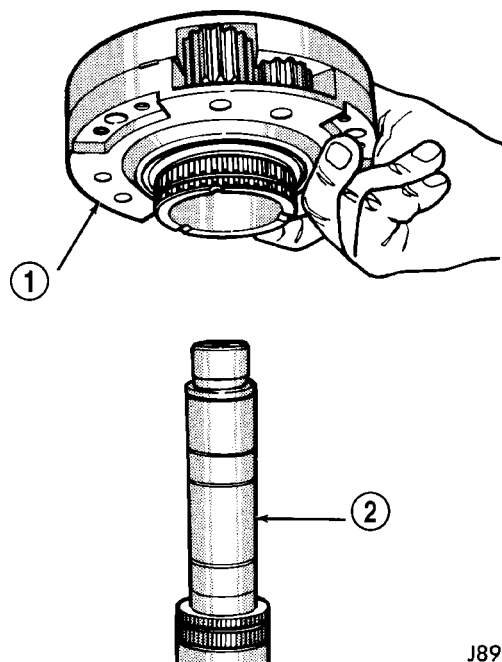
**Fig. 32 Intermediate Clutch Shaft Removal**

1 - INTERMEDIATE CLUTCH SHAFT

- (10) Remove differential snap-ring (Fig. 33).  
 (11) Remove differential (Fig. 34).  
 (12) Remove differential needle bearings and both needle bearing thrust washers from mainshaft.

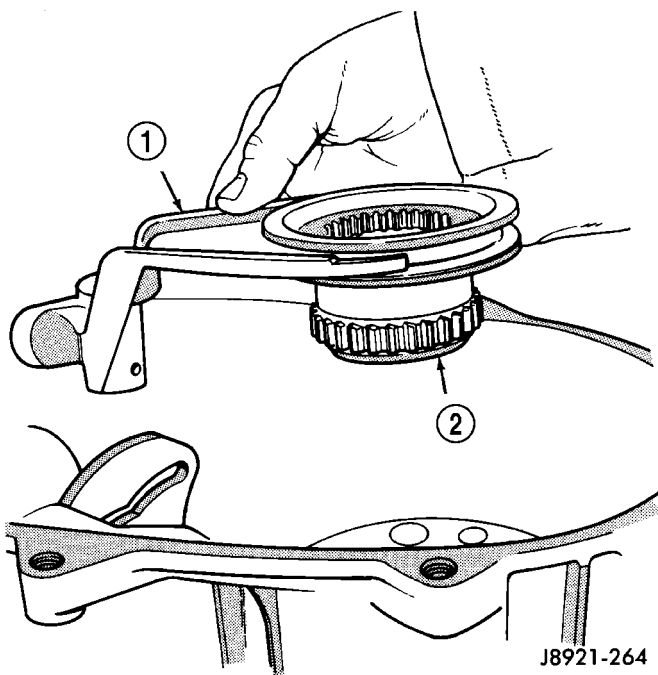
**Fig. 33 Differential Snap-Ring Removal**

1 - DIFFERENTIAL SNAP-RING

**Fig. 34 Differential Removal**

1 - DIFFERENTIAL  
 2 - MAINSHAFT

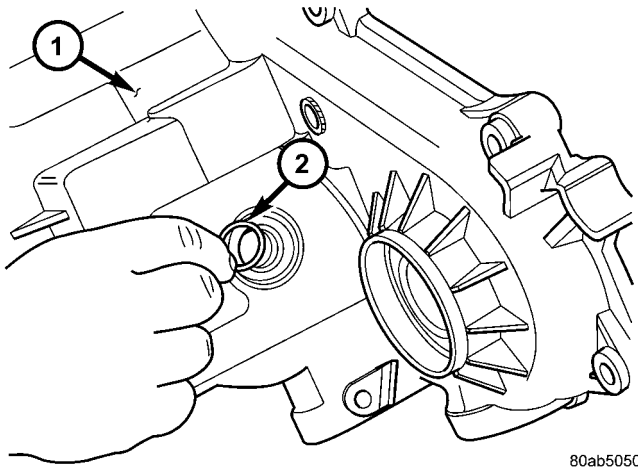
- (13) Slide low range fork pin out of shift sector slot.  
 (14) Remove low range fork and sleeve (Fig. 35).  
 (15) Remove shift sector.

**Fig. 35 Low Range Fork And Hub Removal**

1 - LOW RANGE FORK  
 2 - FORK HUB

## TRANSFER CASE - NV242 (Continued)

(16) Remove the shift sector shaft bushing and o-ring (Fig. 36).



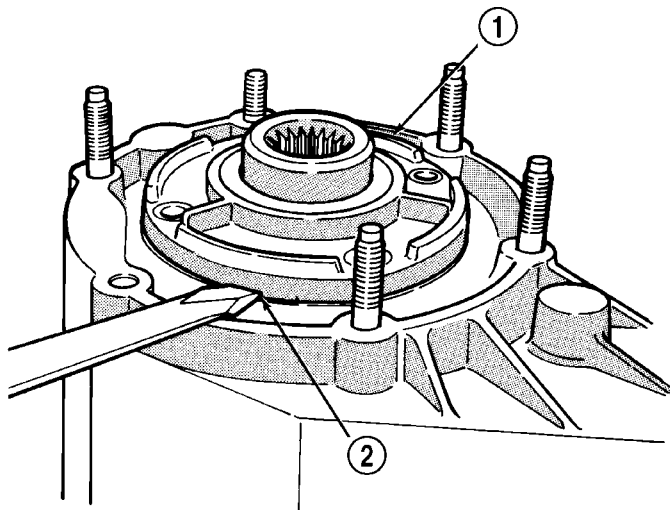
80ab5050

**Fig. 36 Remove the Shift Sector O-Ring**

- 1 - TRANSFER CASE FRONT HOUSING  
2 - SHIFT SECTOR O-RING

## INPUT GEAR/LOW RANGE ASSEMBLY

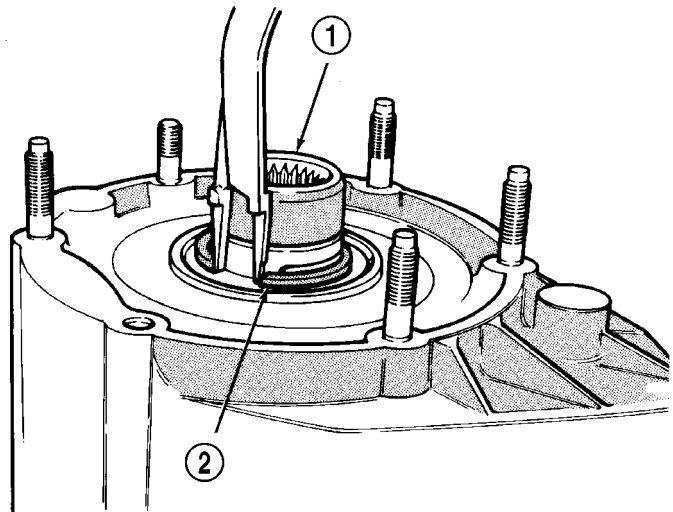
- (1) Remove front bearing retainer bolts.
- (2) Remove front bearing retainer. Carefully pry retainer loose with screwdriver (Fig. 37). Position screwdriver in slots cast into retainer.
- (3) Remove input gear snap-ring (Fig. 38).



J8921-266

**Fig. 37 Front Bearing Retainer Removal**

- 1 - FRONT BEARING RETAINER  
2 - RETAINER SLOT

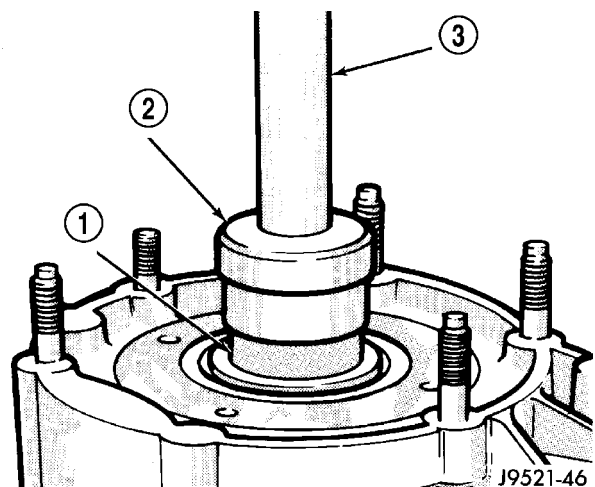


J8921-267

**Fig. 38 Input Gear Snap Ring Removal**

- 1 - INPUT GEAR  
2 - SNAP-RING

(4) Remove input/low range gear assembly from bearing with Tool Handle C-4171 and Tool 7829A (Fig. 39).



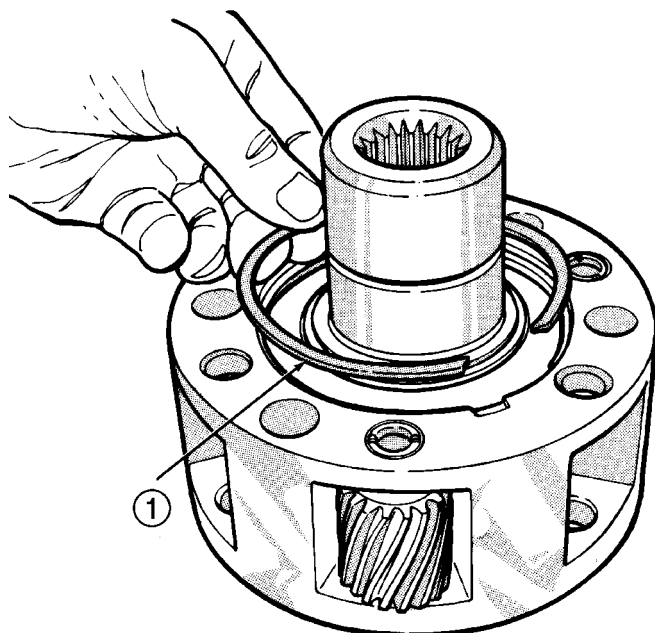
J9521-46

**Fig. 39 Input And Low Range Gear Assembly Removal**

- 1 - INPUT-LOW RANGE GEARS  
2 - SPECIAL TOOL 7829-A  
3 - SPECIAL TOOL C-4171

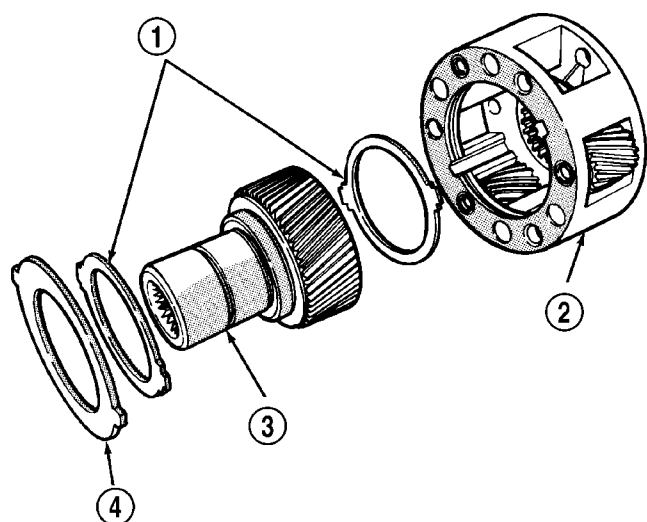
## TRANSFER CASE - NV242 (Continued)

- (5) Remove low range gear snap-ring (Fig. 40).  
 (6) Remove input gear retainer, thrust washers and input gear from low range gear (Fig. 41).



**Fig. 40 Remove Low Range Gear Snap-Ring**

1 - LOW RANGE GEAR SNAP-RING



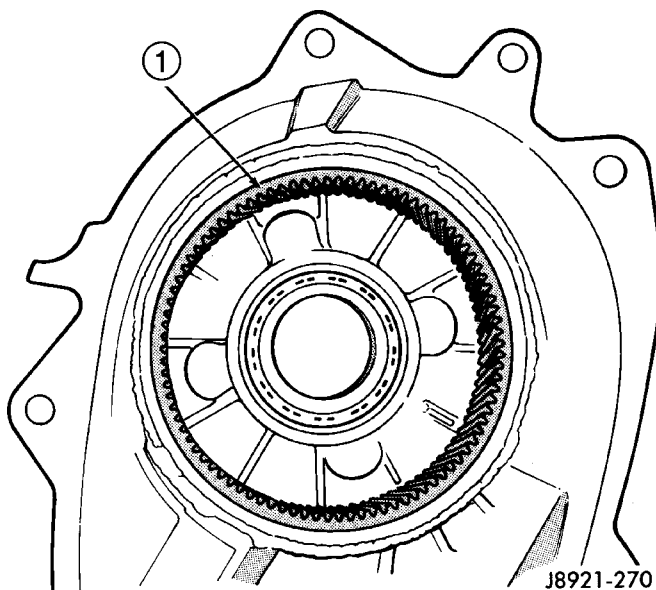
**Fig. 41 Low Range And Input Gear Assembly**

1 - THRUST WASHERS  
 2 - LOW RANGE GEAR  
 3 - INPUT GEAR  
 4 - RETAINER

- (7) Inspect low range annulus gear (Fig. 42). **Gear is not a serviceable component. If damaged, replace gear and front case as assembly.**

- (8) Remove oil seals from following components:

- front bearing retainer.
- rear retainer.
- oil pump.
- case halves.

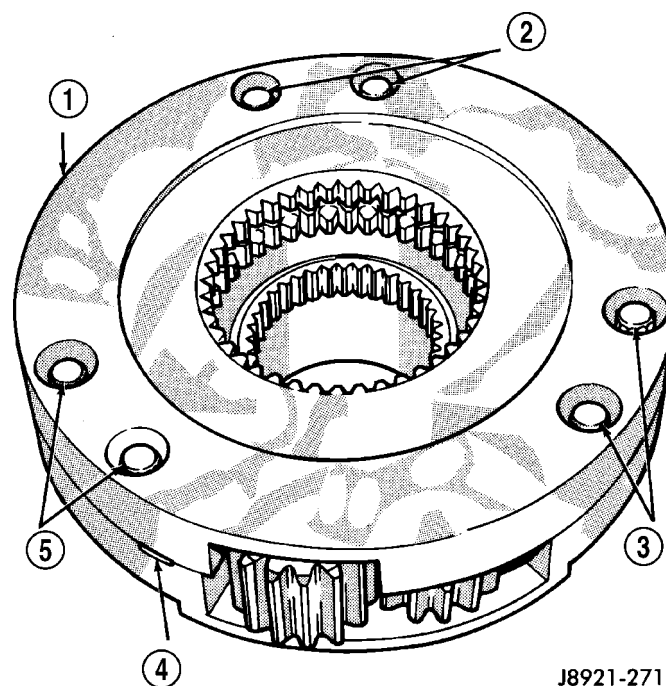


**Fig. 42 Inspecting Low Range Annulus Gear**

1 - LOW RANGE ANNULUS GEAR

## DIFFERENTIAL

- (1) Mark differential case halves for reference.  
 (2) Remove differential case bolts.  
 (3) Invert differential on workbench.  
 (4) Separate top case from bottom case. Use slots in case halves to pry them apart (Fig. 43).



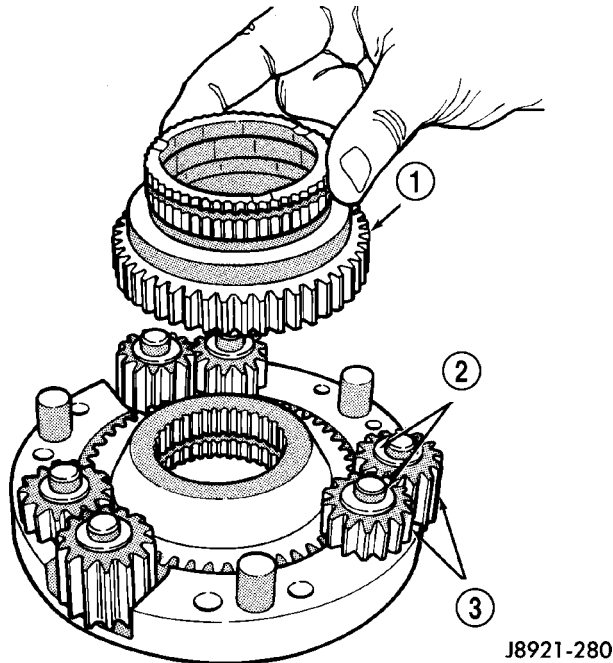
**Fig. 43 Separating Differential Case Halves**

1 - TOP CASE  
 2 - CASE BOLTS  
 3 - CASE BOLTS  
 4 - CASE SLOTS  
 5 - CASE BOLTS

## TRANSFER CASE - NV242 (Continued)

(5) Remove thrust washers and planet gears from case pins (Fig. 44).

(6) Remove mainshaft and sprocket gears from bottom case (Fig. 45). Note gear position for reference before separating them.



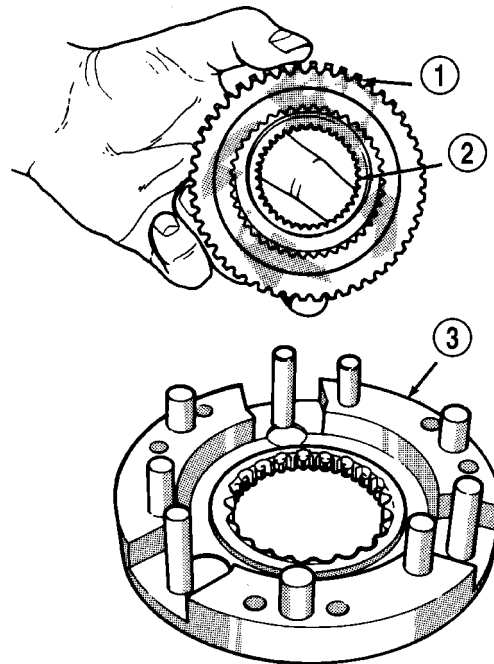
**Fig. 44 Planet Gears And Thrust Washer Removal**

- 1 - MAINSHAFT GEAR
- 2 - THRUST WASHERS (12)
- 3 - PLANET GEARS (6)

## CLEANING

Clean the transfer case parts with a standard parts cleaning solvent. Remove all traces of sealer from the cases and retainers with a scraper and all purpose cleaner. Use compressed air to remove solvent residue from oil feed passages in the case halves, retainers, gears, and shafts.

The oil pickup screen can be cleaned with solvent. Shake excess solvent from the screen after cleaning and allow it to air dry. Do not use compressed air.



**Fig. 45 Mainshaft And Sprocket Gear Removal**

- 1 - MAINSHAFT GEAR
- 2 - SPROCKET GEAR
- 3 - BOTTOM CASE

## INSPECTION

### MAINSHAFT/SPROCKET/HUB

Inspect the splines on the hub and shaft and the teeth on the sprocket. Minor nicks and scratches can be smoothed with an oilstone. However, replace any part that is damaged.

Check the contact surfaces in the sprocket bore and on the mainshaft. Minor nicks and scratches can be smoothed with 320-400 grit emery cloth but do not try to salvage the shaft if nicks or wear is severe.



## TRANSFER CASE - NV242 (Continued)

**INPUT GEAR AND PLANETARY CARRIER**

Check the teeth on the gear (Fig. 46). Minor nicks can be dressed off with an oilstone but replace the gear if any teeth are broken, cracked, or chipped. The bearing surface on the gear can be smoothed with 300-400 grit emery cloth if necessary.

Examine the carrier body and pinion gears for wear or damage. The carrier will have to be replaced as an assembly if the body, pinion pins, or pinion gears are damaged.

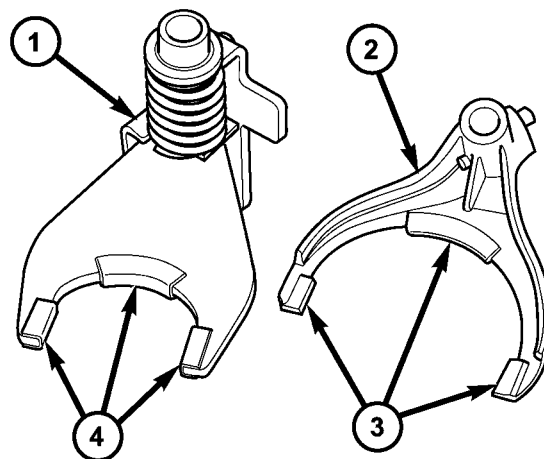
Check the lock ring and both thrust washers for wear or cracks. Replace them if necessary. Also replace the lock retaining ring if bent, distorted, or broken.

**SHIFT FORKS/HUBS/SLEEVES**

Check condition of the shift forks and mode fork shift rail (Fig. 47). Minor nicks on the shift rail can be smoothed with 320-400 grit emery cloth.

Inspect the shift fork wear pads. The mode fork pads are serviceable and can be replaced if necessary. The range fork pads are also serviceable.

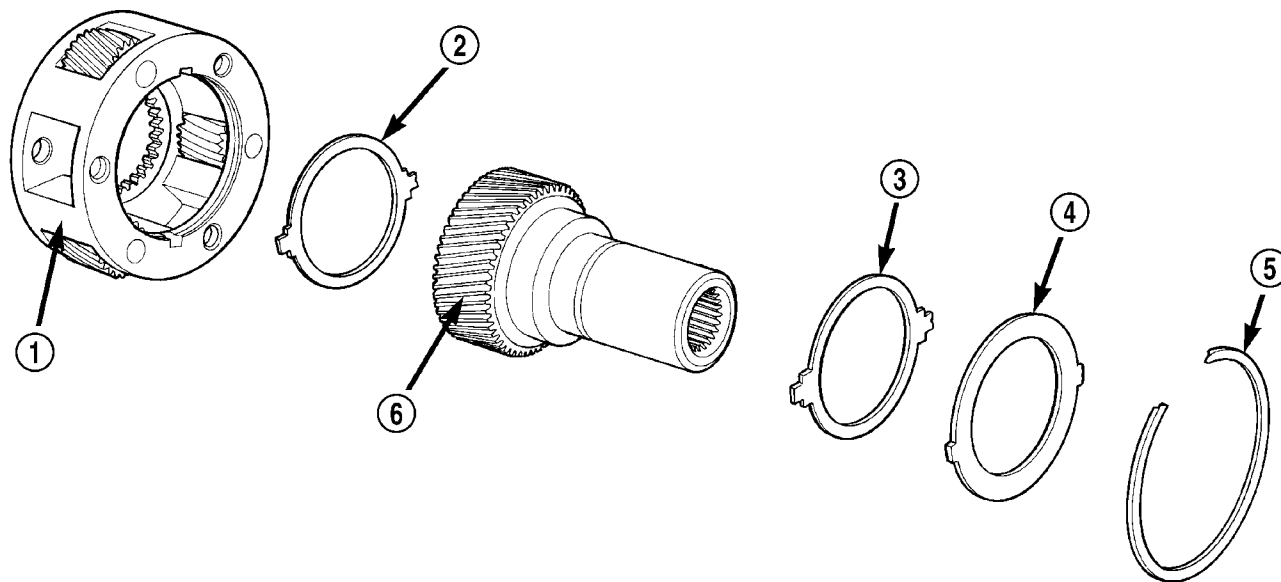
Check both of the sleeves for wear or damage, especially on the interior teeth. Replace the sleeves if wear or damage is evident.



80cfe528

**Fig. 47 Shift Fork And Wear Pad Locations**

- 1 - MODE FORK
- 2 - RANGE FORK
- 3 - WEAR PADS (SERVICEABLE)
- 4 - WEAR PADS (SERVICEABLE)



8001b751

**Fig. 46 Input Gear And Carrier Components**

- 1 - PLANETARY CARRIER
- 2 - REAR THRUST WASHER
- 3 - FRONT THRUST WASHER
- 4 - CARRIER LOCK RING
- 5 - CARRIER LOCK RETAINING RING
- 6 - INPUT GEAR



## TRANSFER CASE - NV242 (Continued)

**REAR RETAINER/BEARING/ SEAL/SLINGER/BOOT**

Inspect the retainer components (Fig. 48). Replace the bearing if rough or noisy. Check the retainer for cracks or wear in the bearing bore. Clean the retainer sealing surfaces with a scraper and 3M all purpose cleaner. This will ensure proper adhesion of the sealer during reassembly.

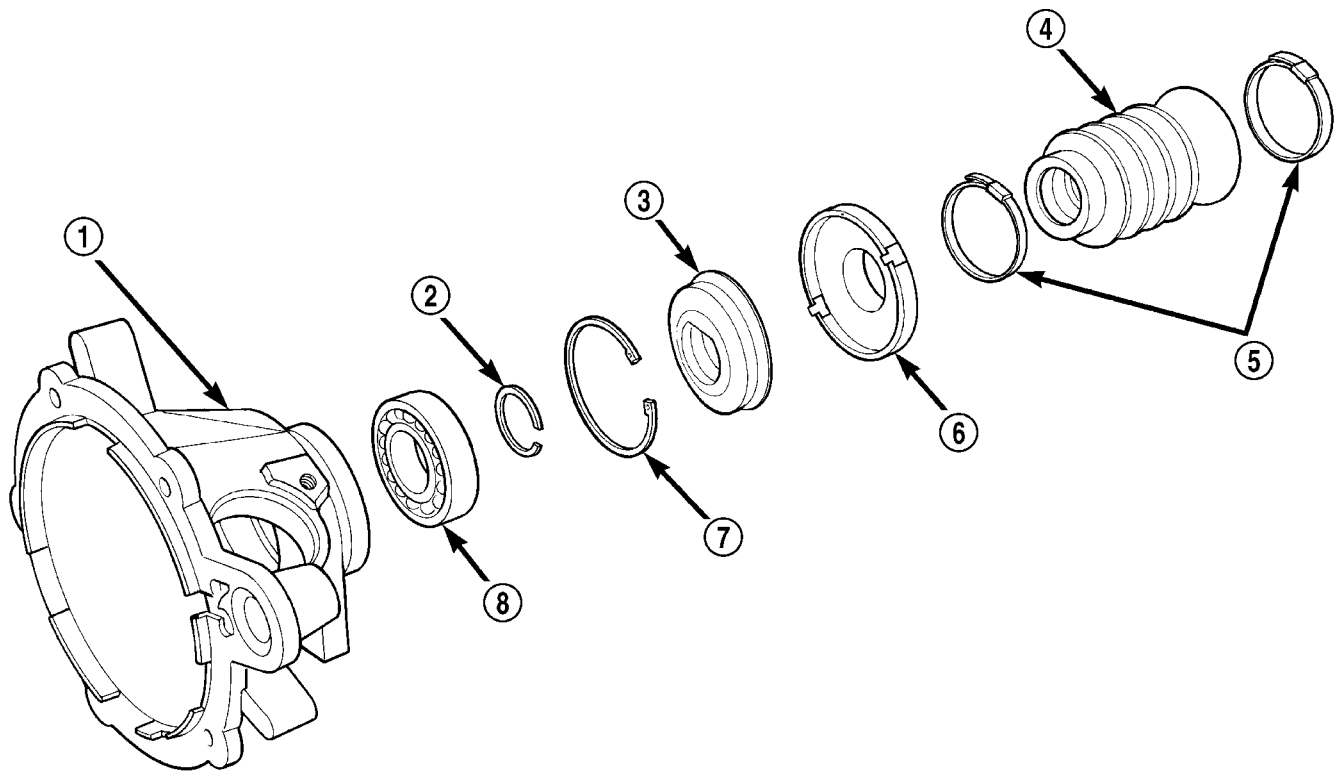
Replace the slinger and seal outright; do not reuse either part.

Replace any part if distorted, bent, or broken. Also replace the boot if cut or torn. Replace the boot band clamps, do not reuse them.

**REAR OUTPUT SHAFT/YOKE/DRIVE CHAIN**

Check condition of the seal contact surfaces of the yoke slinger (Fig. 49). This surface must be clean and smooth to ensure proper seal life. Replace the yoke nut and seal washer as neither part should be reused.

Inspect the shaft threads, sprocket teeth, and bearing surfaces. Minor nicks on the teeth can be smoothed with an oilstone. Use 320-400 grit emery to smooth minor scratches on the shaft bearing surfaces. Rough threads on the shaft can be chased if necessary. Replace the shaft if the threads are damaged, bearing surfaces are scored, or if any sprocket teeth are cracked or broken.



80c070f4

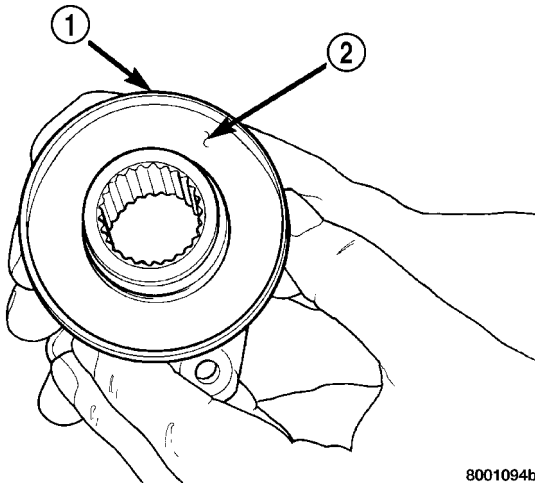
**Fig. 48 Rear Retainer - Typical**

- 1 - REAR RETAINER
- 2 - REAR BEARING I.D. MAINSHAFT RETAINING RING
- 3 - REAR SEAL
- 4 - BOOT

- 5 - BAND CLAMPS
- 6 - REAR SLINGER
- 7 - REAR BEARING O.D. RETAINING RING
- 8 - REAR BEARING

## TRANSFER CASE - NV242 (Continued)

Examine the drive chain and shaft bearings. Replace the chain and both sprockets if the chain is stretched, distorted, or if any of the links bind. Replace the bearings if rough, or noisy.

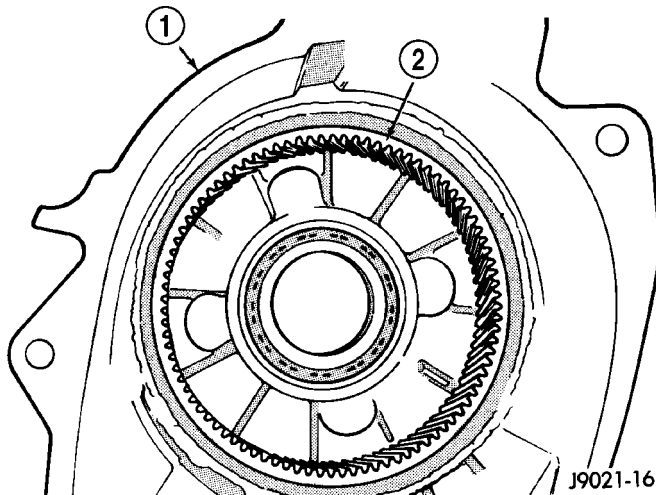


**Fig. 49 Seal Contact Surface Of Yoke Slinger**

- 1 - FRONT SLINGER (PART OF YOKE)
- 2 - SEAL CONTACT SURFACE MUST BE CLEAN AND SMOOTH

**LOW RANGE ANNULUS GEAR**

Inspect annulus gear condition carefully. The gear is only serviced as part of the front case. If the gear is damaged, it will be necessary to replace the gear and front case as an assembly. Do not attempt to remove the gear (Fig. 50)



**Fig. 50 Low Range Annulus Gear**

- 1 - FRONT CASE
- 2 - LOW RANGE ANNULUS GEAR

**FRONT-REAR CASES AND FRONT RETAINER**

Inspect the cases and retainer for wear and damage. Clean the sealing surfaces with a scraper and 3M all purpose cleaner. This will ensure proper sealer adhesion at assembly. Replace the input retainer seal; do not reuse it.

Check case condition. If leaks were a problem, look for gouges and severe scoring of case sealing surfaces. Also make sure the front case mounting studs are in good condition.

Check the front case mounting studs and vent tube. The tube can be secured with Loctite™ 271 or 680 if loose. The stud threads can be cleaned up with a die if necessary. Also check condition of the fill/drain plug threads in the rear case. The threads can be repaired with a thread chaser or tap if necessary. Or the threads can be repaired with Helicoil™ stainless steel inserts if required.

**OIL PUMP/OIL PICKUP**

Examine the oil pump pickup parts. Replace the pump if any part appears to be worn or damaged. Do not disassemble the pump as individual parts are not available. The pump is only available as a complete assembly. The pickup screen, hose, and tube are the only serviceable parts and are available separately.

**ASSEMBLY**

Lubricate transfer case components with automatic transmission fluid or petroleum jelly (where indicated) during assembly.

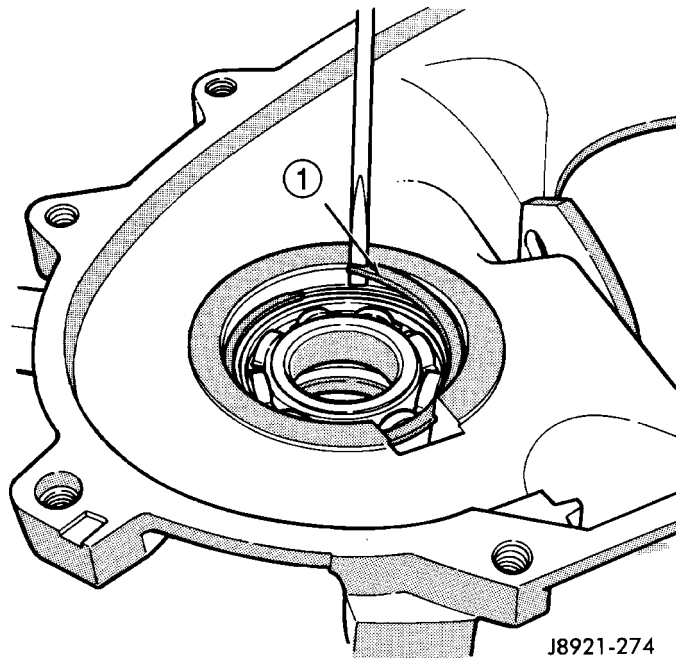
**CAUTION:** The bearing bores in various transfer case components contain oil feed holes. Make sure replacement bearings do not block the holes.

## TRANSFER CASE - NV242 (Continued)

**BEARING AND SEAL**

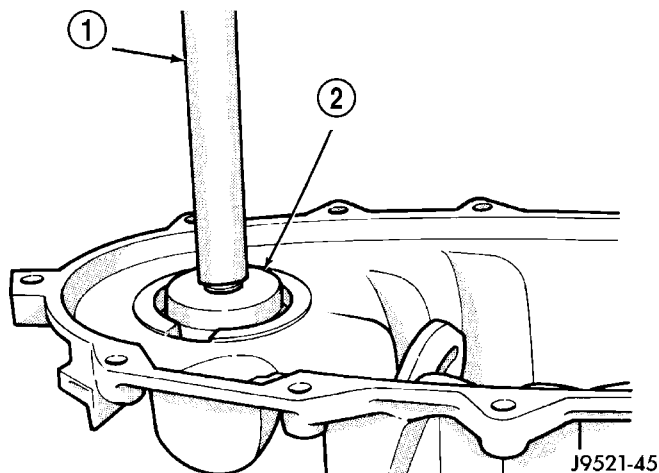
(1) Remove snap-ring that retains front output shaft front bearing in case (Fig. 51). Then remove bearing. Use hammer handle, or hammer and brass punch to tap bearing out of case.

(2) Install new front output shaft front bearing with Tool Handle C-4171 and Installer 8033-A with the tapered cone upward (Fig. 52).



**Fig. 51 Front Output Shaft Front Bearing Snap-Ring Removal**

1 - FRONT BEARING SNAP-RING



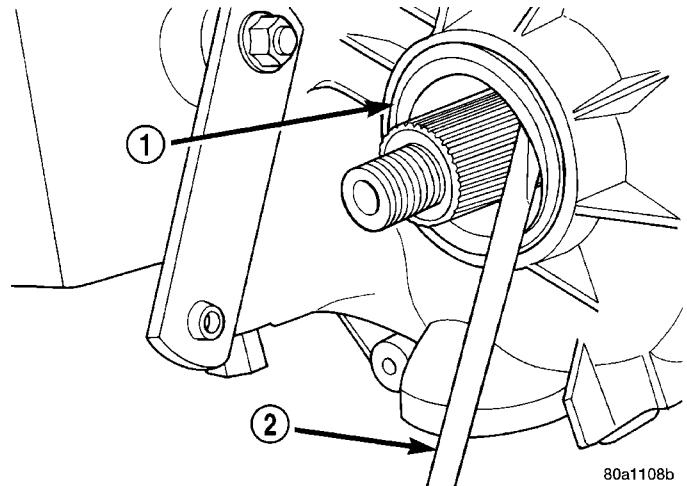
**Fig. 52 Front Output Shaft Front Bearing Installation**

1 - SPECIAL TOOL C-4171  
2 - SPECIAL TOOL 8033-A

(3) Install front bearing snap-ring (Fig. 51).

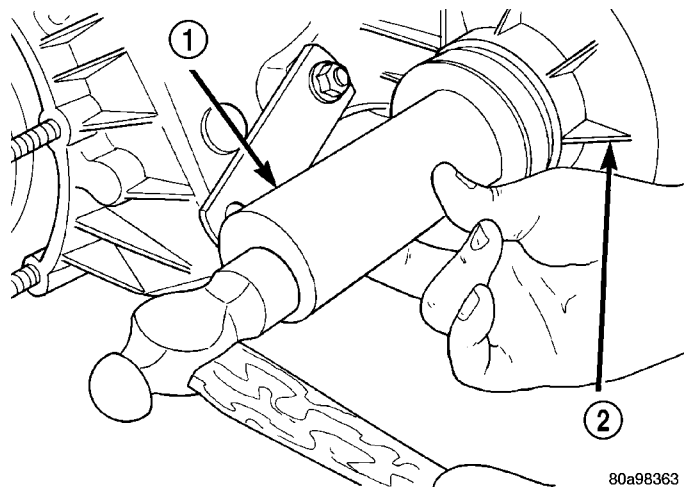
(4) Remove front output shaft seal using an appropriate pry tool (Fig. 53) or slide-hammer mounted screw.

(5) Install new front output shaft oil seal with Installer 6952-A (Fig. 54).



**Fig. 53 Remove Front Output Shaft Seal**

1 - OUTPUT SHAFT SEAL  
2 - PRYBAR



**Fig. 54 Install Front Output Shaft Seal**

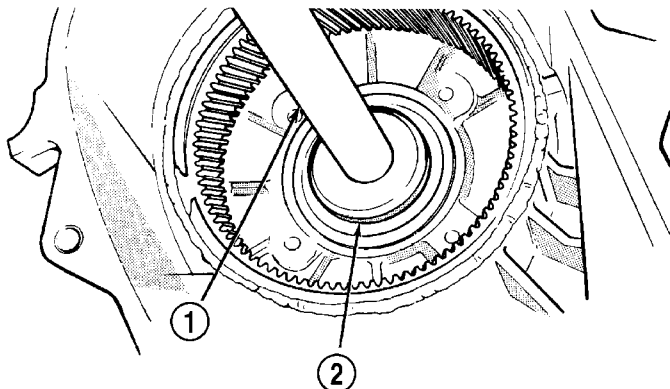
1 - INSTALLER 6952-A  
2 - TRANSFER CASE

## TRANSFER CASE - NV242 (Continued)

(6) Remove input gear bearing with Tool Handle C-4171 and Remover C-4210 (Fig. 55).

(7) Install snap-ring on new input gear bearing.

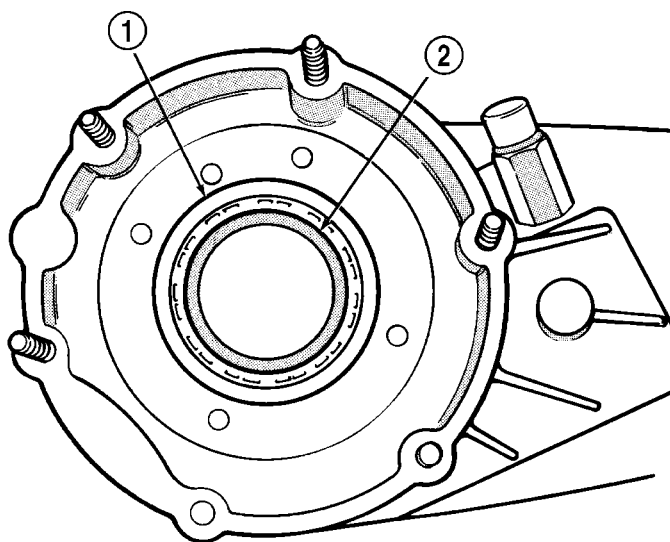
(8) Install new input gear bearing with Tool Handle C-4171 and Remover C-4210. Install bearing far enough to seat snap-ring against case (Fig. 56).



J9521-43

**Fig. 55 Input Gear Bearing Removal**

- 1 - SPECIAL TOOL C-4171  
2 - SPECIAL TOOL C-4210



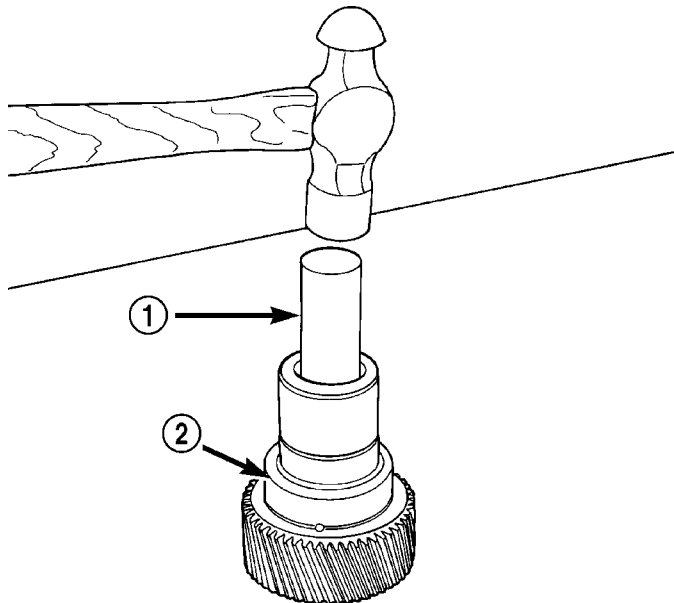
J8921-219

**Fig. 56 Seating Input Gear Bearing**

- 1 - SNAP-RING  
2 - INPUT SHAFT BEARING

(9) Remove the input gear pilot bearing by inserting a suitably sized drift into the splined end of the input gear and driving the bearing out with the drift and a hammer (Fig. 57).

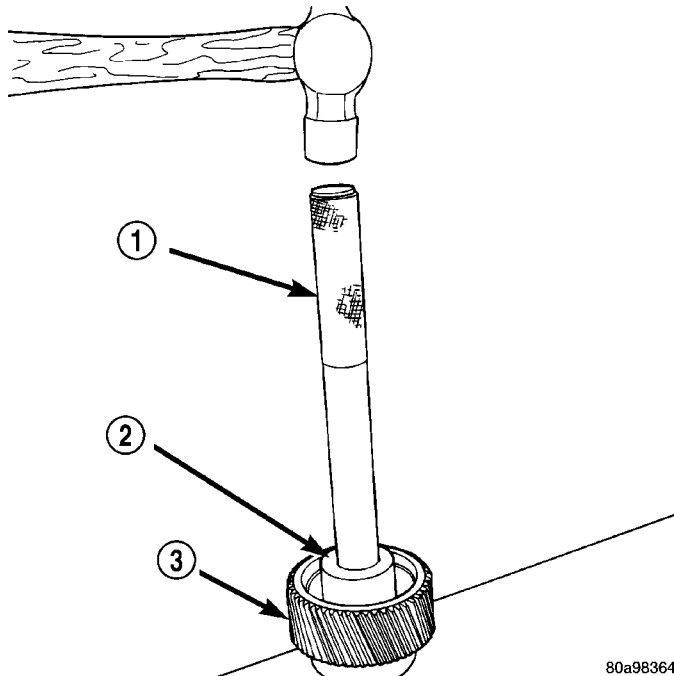
(10) Install new pilot bearing with Installer 8128 and Handle C-4171 (Fig. 58).



80a11090

**Fig. 57 Remove Input Gear Pilot Bearing**

- 1 - DRIFT  
2 - INPUT GEAR



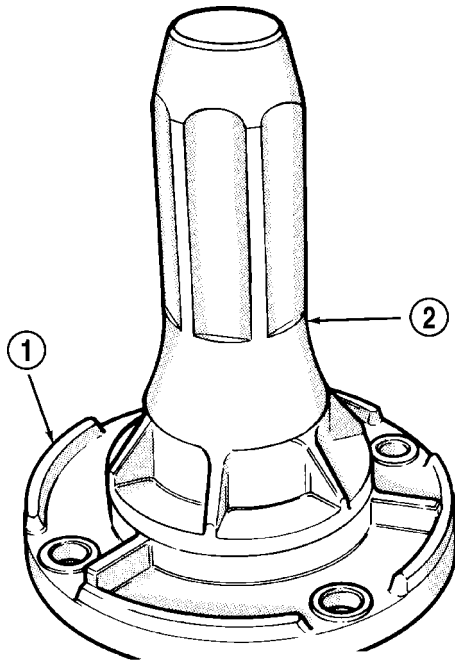
80a98364

**Fig. 58 Install Input Gear Pilot Bearing**

- 1 - HANDLE C-4171  
2 - INSTALLER 8128  
3 - INPUT GEAR

## TRANSFER CASE - NV242 (Continued)

(11) Install new seal in front bearing retainer with Installer 7884 (Fig. 59).

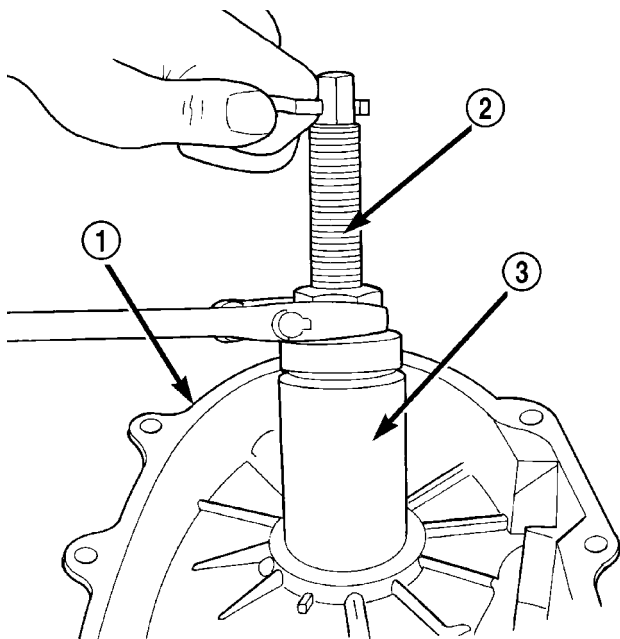


J9521-41

**Fig. 59 Front Bearing Retainer Seal Installation**

- 1 - FRONT BEARING RETAINER
- 2 - SPECIAL TOOL 7884

(12) Remove output shaft rear bearing with the screw and jaws from Remover L-4454 and Cup 8148 (Fig. 60).

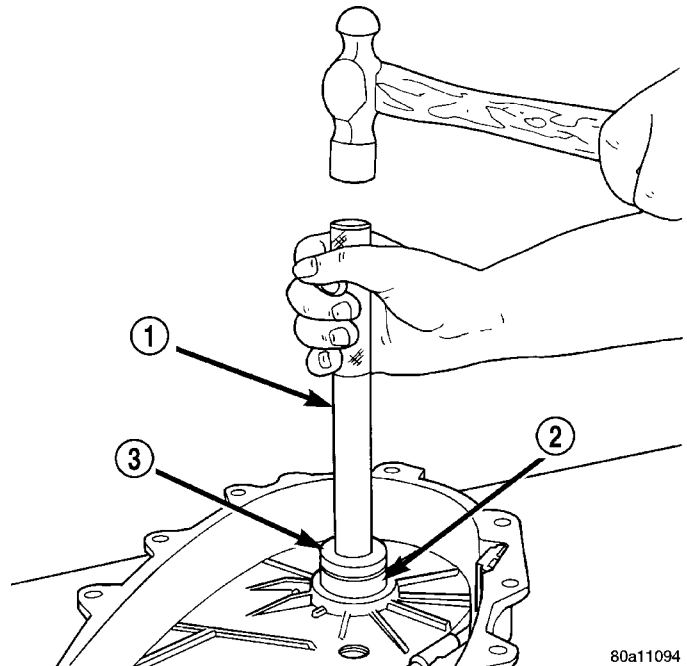


80a98366

**Fig. 60 Remove Front Output Shaft Rear Bearing**

- 1 - REAR CASE
- 2 - SPECIAL TOOL L-4454-1 AND L-4454-3
- 3 - SPECIAL TOOL 8148

(13) Install new bearing with Tool Handle C-4171 and Installer 5066 (Fig. 61). Lubricate bearing after installation.

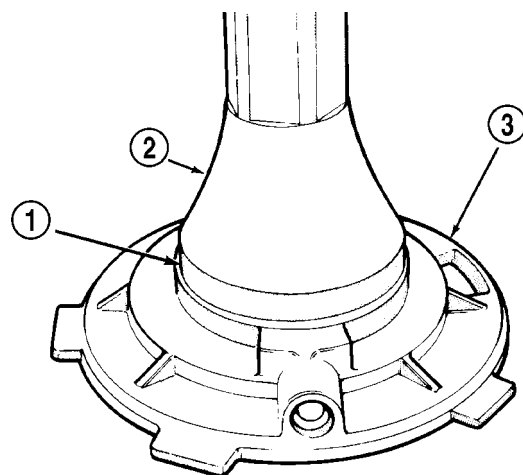


80a11094

**Fig. 61 Install Front Output Shaft Rear Bearing**

- 1 - HANDLE C-4171
- 2 - OUTPUT SHAFT INNER BEARING
- 3 - INSTALLER 5066

(14) Install new seal in oil pump feed housing with Special Tool 7888 (Fig. 62).



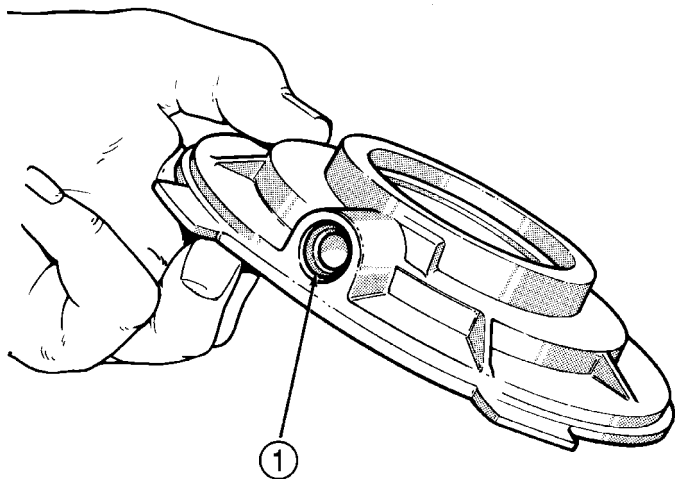
J9521-35

**Fig. 62 Oil Pump Seal Installation**

- 1 - HOUSING SEAL
- 2 - SPECIAL TOOL 7888
- 3 - OIL PUMP FEED HOUSING

## TRANSFER CASE - NV242 (Continued)

(15) Install new pickup tube O-ring in oil pump (Fig. 63).



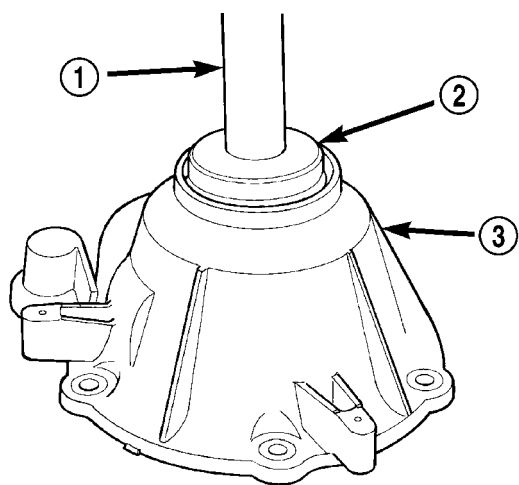
J8921-286

**Fig. 63 Pickup Tube O-Ring Installation**

1 - PICKUP TUBE O-RING

(16) Remove rear retainer bearing with Installer 8128 and Handle C-4171, NV242HD only.

(17) Install rear bearing in retainer with Handle C-4171 and Installer 5064 (Fig. 64), NV242HD only.



800bdfa9

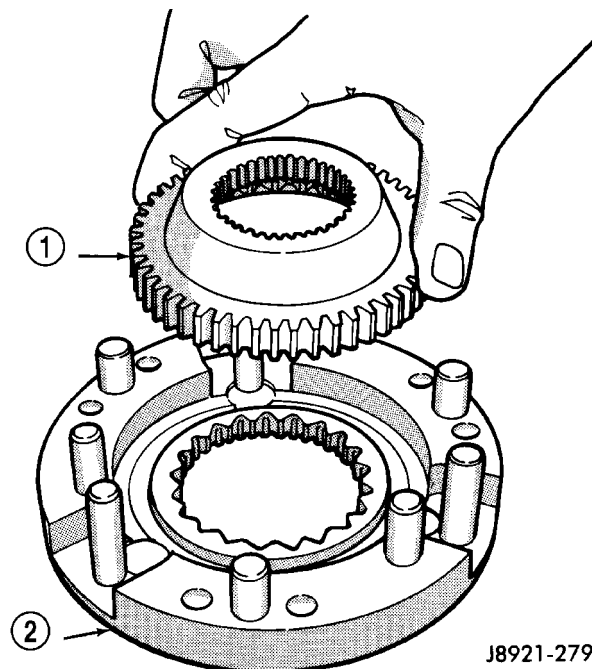
**Fig. 64 Installing Rear Bearing In Retainer**

1 - SPECIAL TOOL C-4171  
2 - SPECIAL TOOL 5064  
3 - REAR RETAINER

## DIFFERENTIAL

(1) Lubricate differential components with automatic transmission fluid.

(2) Install sprocket gear in differential bottom case (Fig. 65).



J8921-279

**Fig. 65 Installing Differential Sprocket Gear**

1 - SPROCKET GEAR  
2 - BOTTOM CASE

(3) Install differential planet gears and new thrust washers (Fig. 66). **Be sure thrust washers are installed at top and bottom of each planet gear.**

(4) Install differential mainshaft gear (Fig. 66).

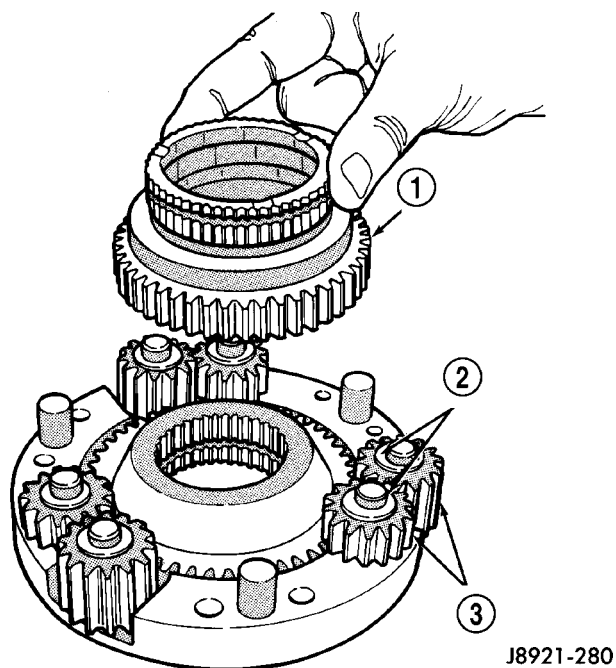
(5) Align and position differential top case on bottom case (Fig. 67). Align using scribe marks made at disassembly.

(6) While holding differential case halves together, invert the differential and start the differential case bolts.

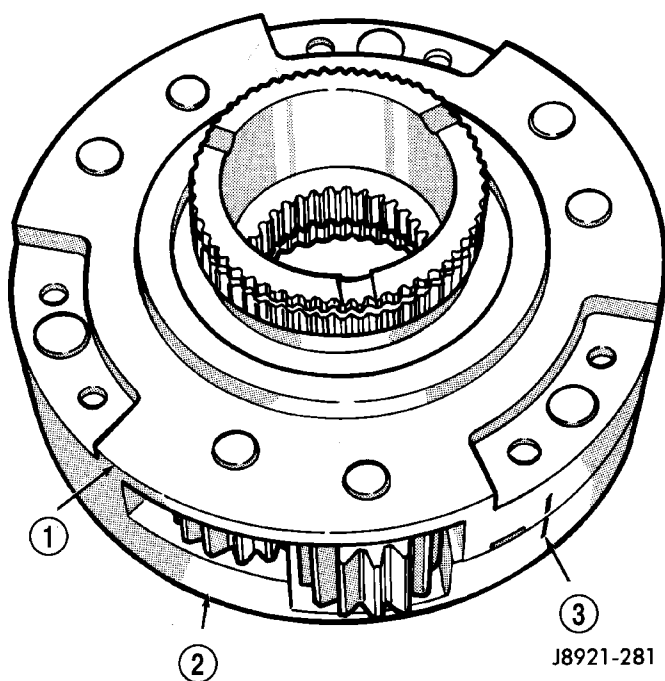
(7) Tighten differential case bolts to specified torque.



## TRANSFER CASE - NV242 (Continued)

**Fig. 66 Installing Mainshaft And Planet Gears**

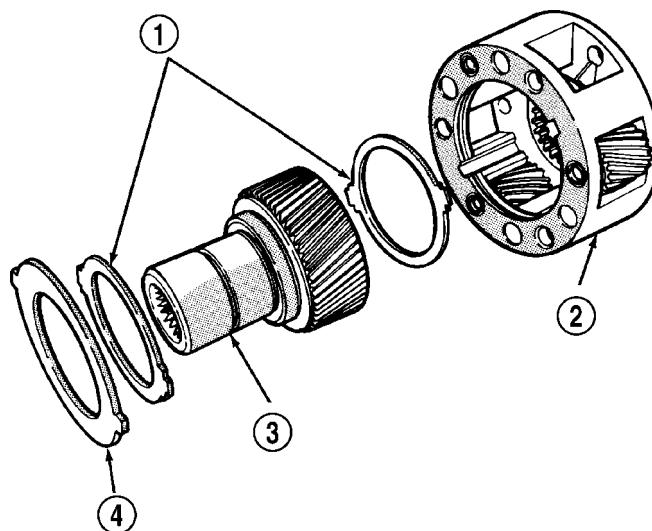
- 1 - MAINSHAFT GEAR
- 2 - THRUST WASHERS (12)
- 3 - PLANET GEARS (6)

**Fig. 67 Differential Case Assembly**

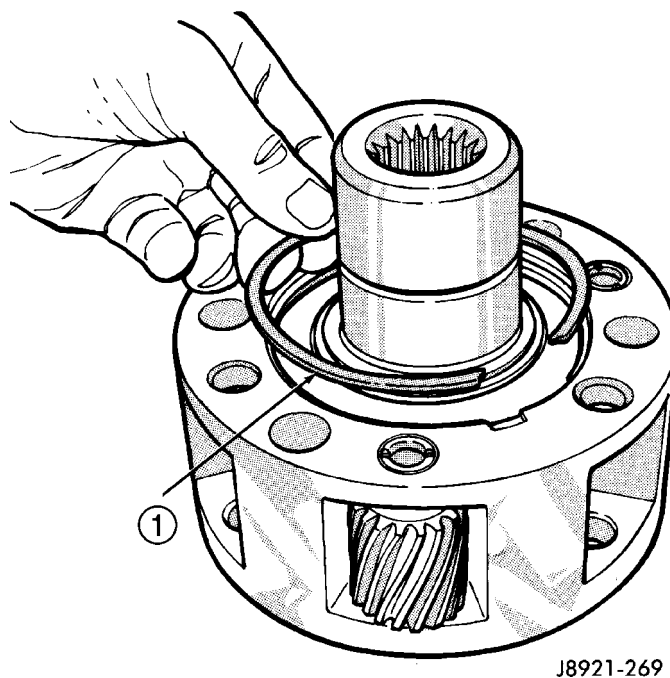
- 1 - TOP CASE
- 2 - BOTTOM CASE
- 3 - CASE ALIGNMENT MARKS

**INPUT GEAR/LOW RANGE ASSEMBLY**

- (1) Assemble low range gear, input gear thrust washers, input gear and input gear retainer (Fig. 68).
- (2) Install low range gear snap ring (Fig. 69).

**Fig. 68 Low Range And Input Gear Assembly**

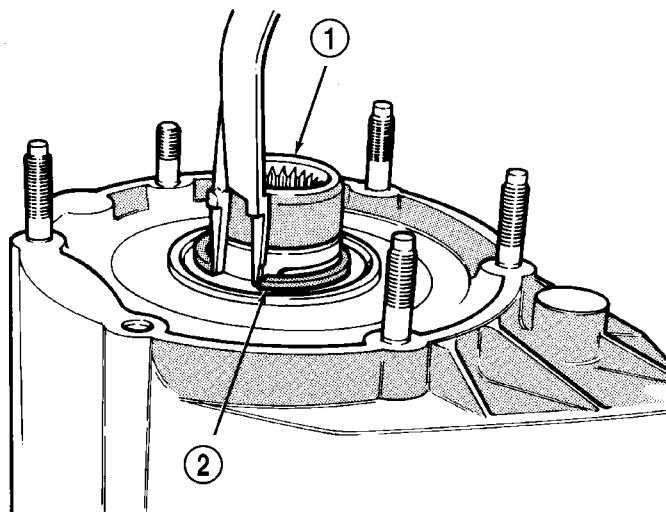
- 1 - THRUST WASHERS
- 2 - LOW RANGE GEAR
- 3 - INPUT GEAR
- 4 - RETAINER

**Fig. 69 Install Low Range Gear Snap-Ring**

- 1 - LOW RANGE GEAR SNAP-RING

## TRANSFER CASE - NV242 (Continued)

- (3) Lubricate input gear and low range gears with automatic transmission fluid.
- (4) Start input gear shaft into front case bearing.
- (5) Press input gear shaft into front bearing.
- (6) Install new input gear snap ring (Fig. 70).



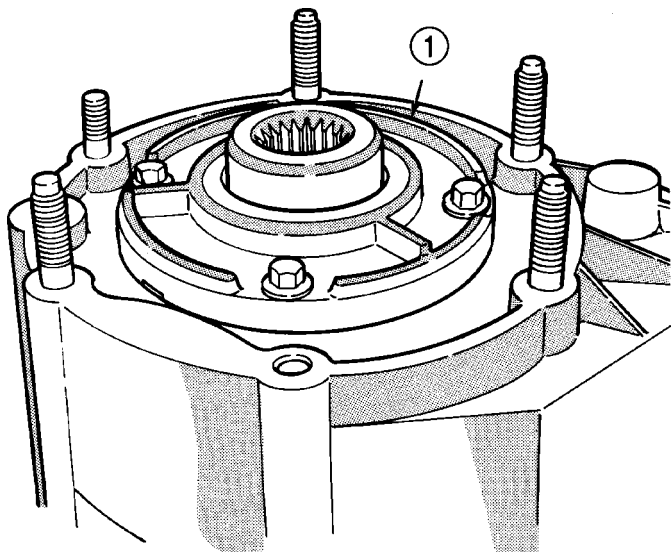
J8921-267

**Fig. 70 Input Gear Snap-Ring Installation**

- 1 - INPUT GEAR
- 2 - SNAP-RING

(7) Apply 3 mm (1/8 in.) wide bead of Mopar® gasket maker or silicone adhesive sealer to seal surface of front bearing retainer.

(8) Install front bearing retainer (Fig. 71). Tighten retainer bolts to 16 ft. lbs. (21 N·m) torque.



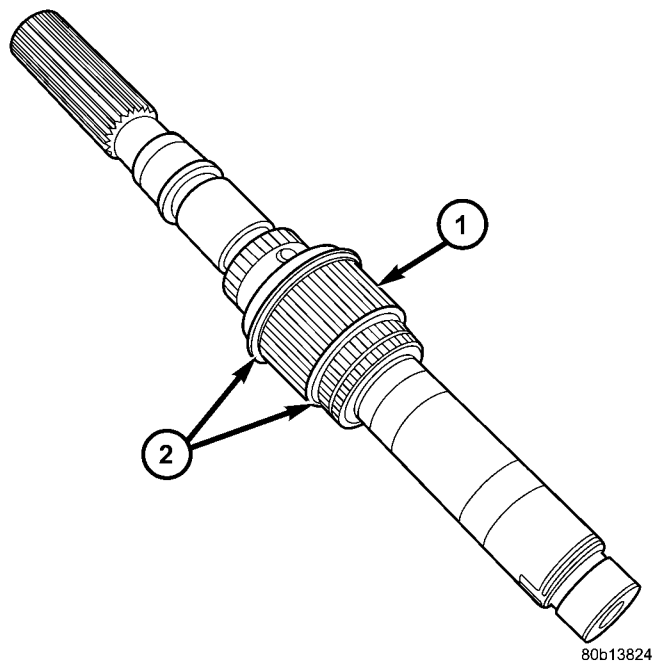
J8921-276

**Fig. 71 Installing Front Bearing Retainer**

- 1 - FRONT BEARING RETAINER

**SHIFT FORKS, SECTOR, AND MAINSHAFT**

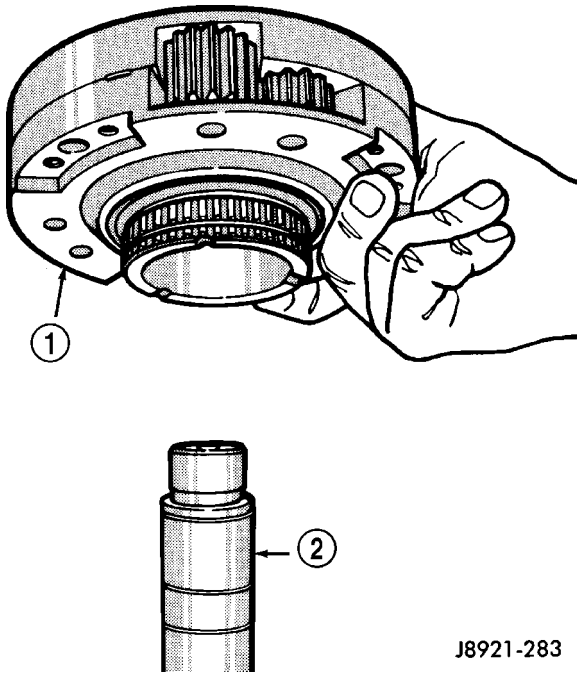
- (1) Install the shift sector shaft o-ring and bushing.
- (2) Install shift sector.
- (3) Install new pads on low range fork, if necessary.
- (4) Assemble low range fork and sleeve.
- (5) Position low range fork and sleeve in case. Be sure low range fork pin is engaged in shift sector slot.
- (6) Install first mainshaft bearing spacer on mainshaft (Fig. 72).
- (7) Install bearing rollers on mainshaft (Fig. 72). Coat bearing rollers with generous quantity of petroleum jelly to hold them in place.
- (8) Install remaining bearing spacer on mainshaft (Fig. 72). Do not displace any bearings while installing spacer.

**Fig. 72 Installing Mainshaft Bearing Rollers and Spacers**

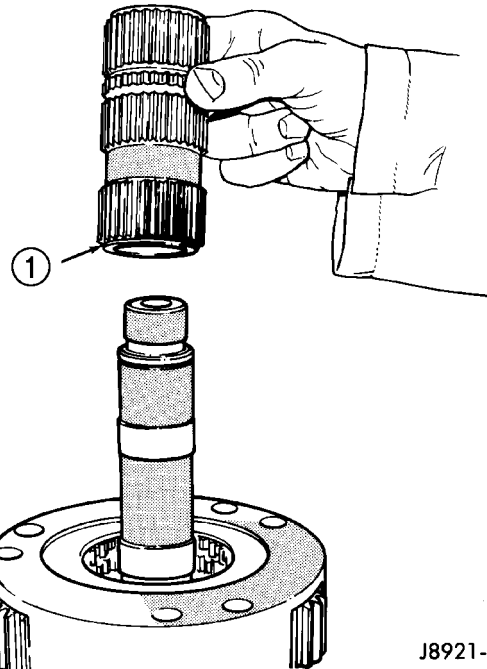
- 1 - MAINSHAFT BEARING ROLLERS
- 2 - BEARING SPACERS

## TRANSFER CASE - NV242 (Continued)

- (9) Install differential (Fig. 73). Do not displace mainshaft bearings when installing differential.  
 (10) Install differential snap-ring (Fig. 74).  
 (11) Install intermediate clutch shaft (Fig. 75).

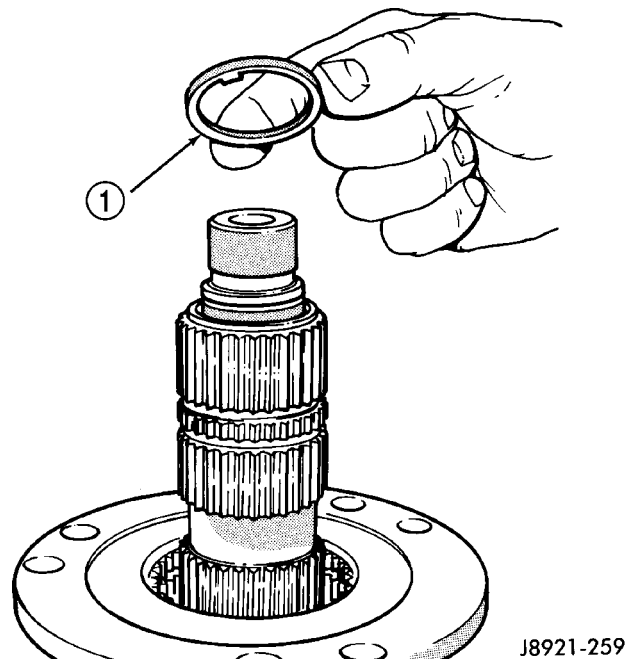
**Fig. 73 Differential Installation**

- 1 - DIFFERENTIAL  
 2 - MAINSHAFT

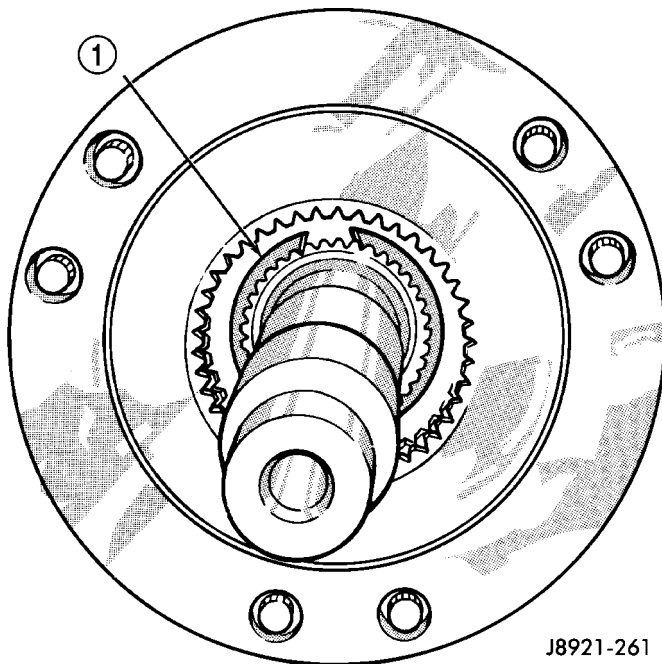
**Fig. 75 Installing Intermediate Clutch Shaft**

- 1 - INTERMEDIATE CLUTCH SHAFT

- (12) Install clutch shaft thrust washer (Fig. 76).

**Fig. 76 Installing Clutch Shaft Thrust Washer**

- 1 - CLUTCH SHAFT THRUST RING

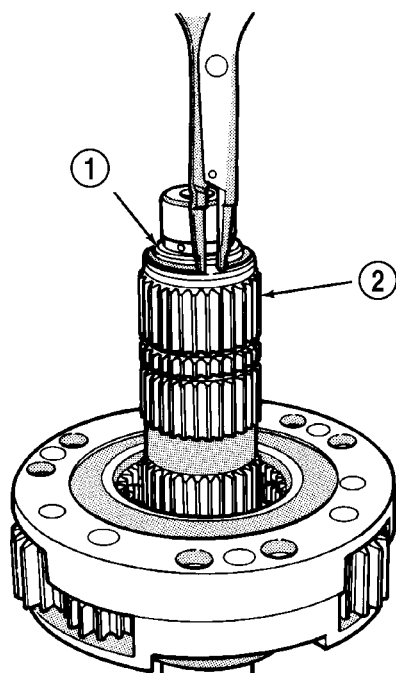
**Fig. 74 Installing Differential Snap-Ring**

- 1 - DIFFERENTIAL SNAP-RING

## TRANSFER CASE - NV242 (Continued)

(13) Install clutch shaft snap-ring (Fig. 77).

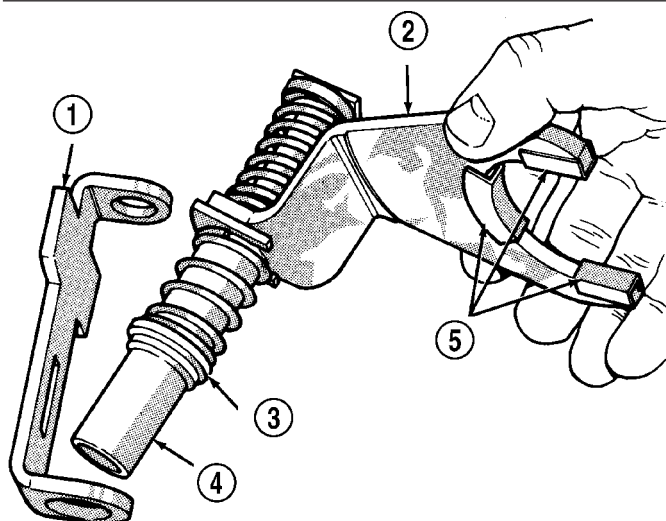
(14) Inspect mode fork assembly (Fig. 78). Replace pads and bushing if necessary. Replace fork tube if bushings inside tube are worn or damaged. Also check springs and slider bracket (Fig. 78). Replace worn, damaged components.



J8921-258

**Fig. 77 Installing Clutch Shaft Snap-Ring**

- 1 - SNAP-RING
- 2 - INTERMEDIATE CLUTCH SHAFT

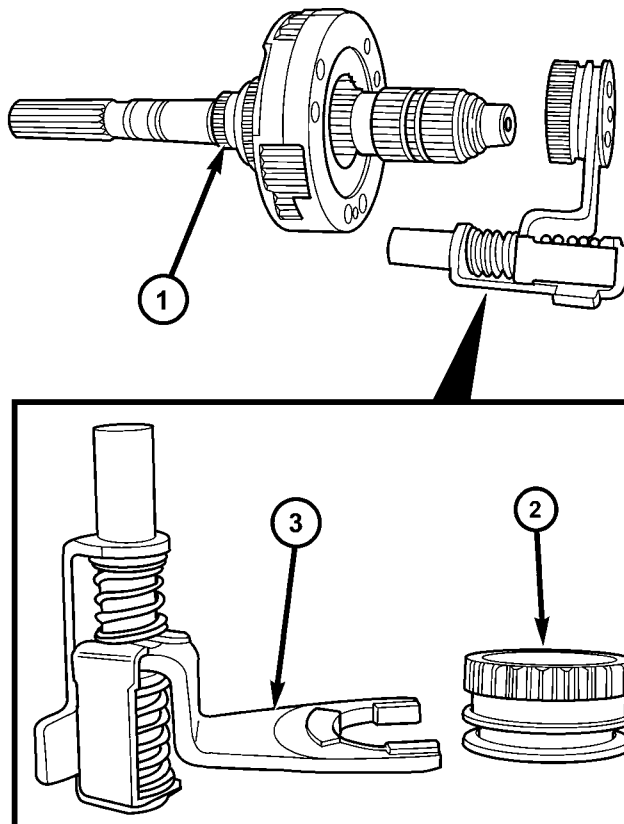


J8921-284

**Fig. 78 Mode Fork Assembly Inspection**

- 1 - SLIDER
- 2 - MODE FORK
- 3 - BUSHING/SPRING
- 4 - TUBE
- 5 - PADS

(15) Install mode sleeve in mode fork (Fig. 79). Then install assembled sleeve and fork on mainshaft. Be sure mode sleeve splines are engaged in differential splines.



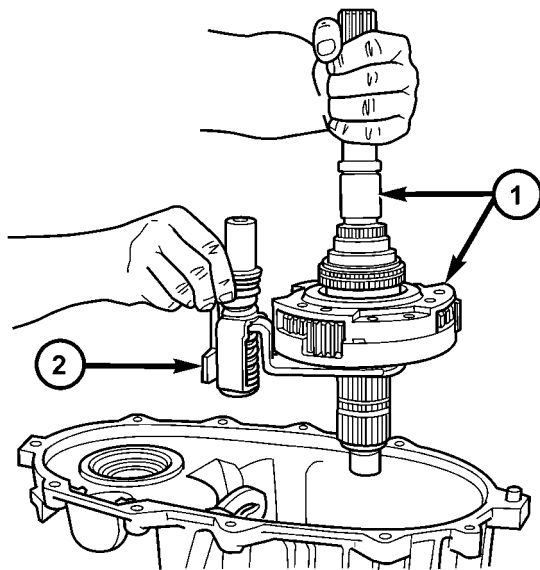
80b135eb

**Fig. 79 Installing Mode Fork And Sleeve**

- 1 - MAINSHAFT
- 2 - MODE SLEEVE
- 3 - MODE FORK ASSEMBLY

## TRANSFER CASE - NV242 (Continued)

(16) Install mode fork and mainshaft assembly in case (Fig. 80). Rotate mainshaft slightly to engage shaft with low range gears.

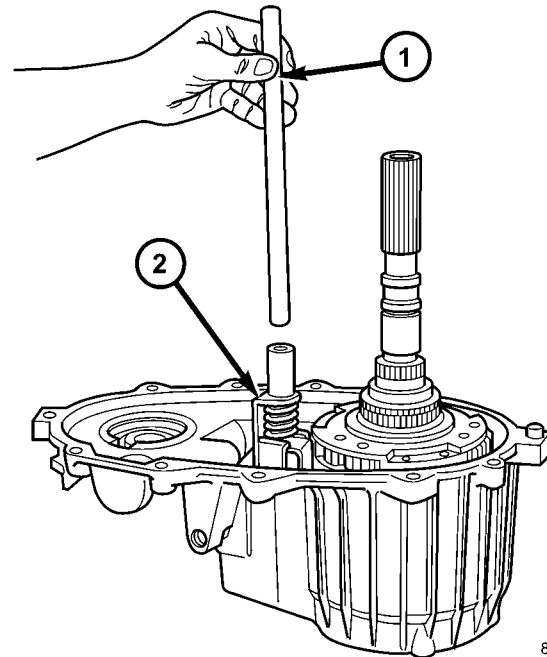


80b135e0

**Fig. 80 Assembled Mainshaft And Mode Fork Installation**

- 1 - MAINSHAFT ASSEMBLY
- 2 - MODE FORK

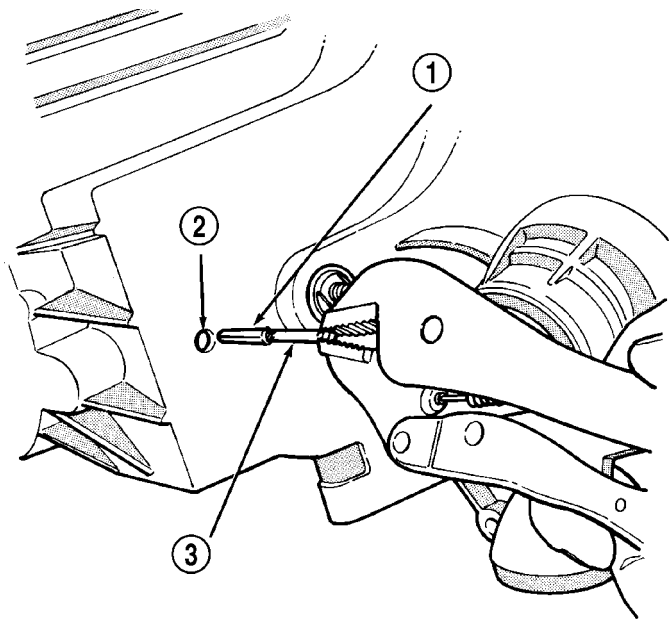
- (17) Rotate mode fork pin into shift sector slot.
- (18) Install shift rail (Fig. 81). Be sure rail is seated in both shift forks.
- (19) Rotate shift sector to align lockpin hole in low range fork with access hole in case.
- (20) Insert an easy-out in range fork lockpin to hold it securely for installation (Fig. 82). Lockpin is slightly tapered on one end. Insert tapered end into fork and rail.
- (21) Insert lockpin through access hole and into shift fork (Fig. 82). Then remove easy-out and seat the pin with pin punch.



80b135b4

**Fig. 81 Shift Rail Installation**

- 1 - SHIFT RAIL
- 2 - MODE FORK



J8921-254

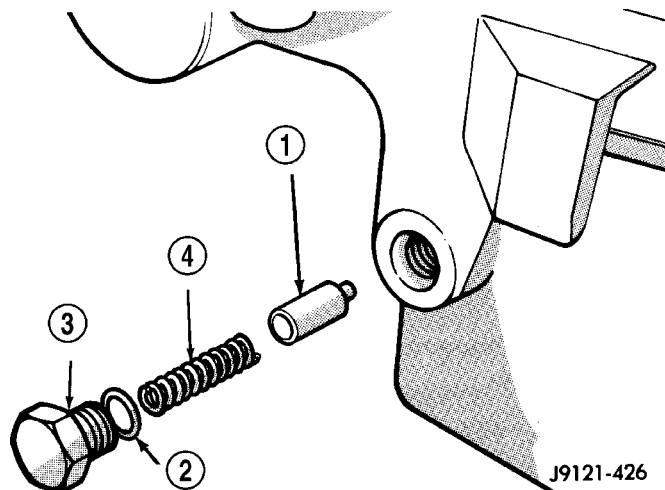
**Fig. 82 Installing Low Range Fork Lockpin**

- 1 - LOW RANGE FORK LOCK PIN
- 2 - ACCESS HOLE
- 3 - EASY-OUT



## TRANSFER CASE - NV242 (Continued)

- (22) Install plug in lockpin access hole.  
 (23) Install detent plunger, detent spring and detent plug in case (Fig. 83).

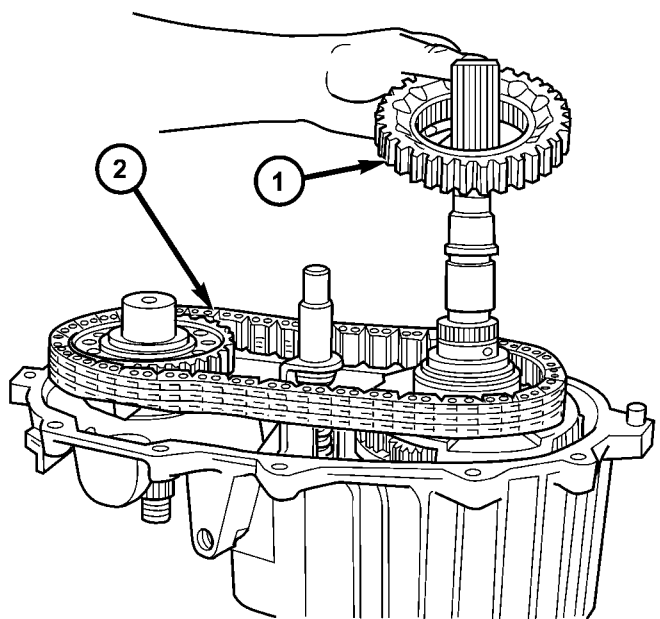


**Fig. 83 Detent Pin, Spring And Plug Installation**

- 1 - PLUNGER  
 2 - O-RING  
 3 - PLUG  
 4 - SPRING

## FRONT OUTPUT SHAFT AND DRIVE CHAIN

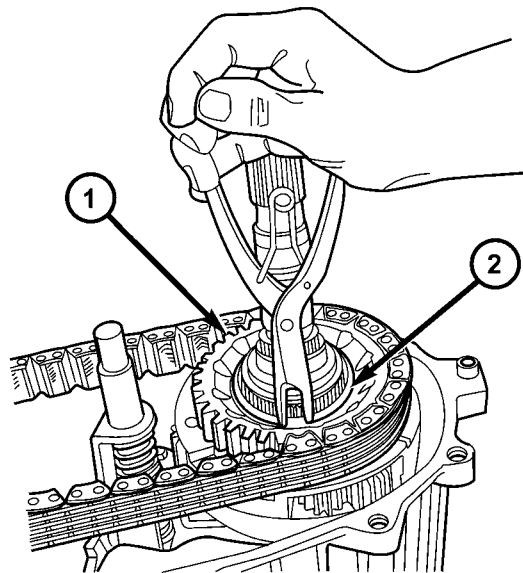
- (1) Install front output shaft (Fig. 84).  
 (2) Install drive chain (Fig. 84). Engage chain with front output shaft sprocket teeth.  
 (3) Install drive sprocket (Fig. 84). Engage drive sprocket teeth with chain. Then engage sprocket splines with mainshaft splines.



**Fig. 84 Drive Chain And Sprocket Installation**

- 1 - DRIVE SPROCKET  
 2 - DRIVE CHAIN

- (4) Install drive sprocket snap-ring (Fig. 85).

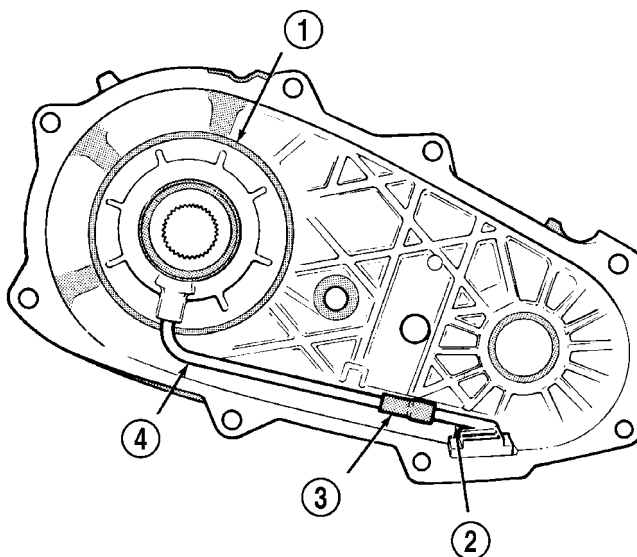


**Fig. 85 Drive Sprocket Snap-Ring Installation**

- 1 - DRIVE SPROCKET  
 2 - DRIVE SPROCKET SNAP-RING

## OIL PUMP AND REAR CASE

- (1) Insert oil pickup tube in oil pump and attach oil screen and connector hose to pickup tube. Then install assembled pump, tube and screen in rear case (Fig. 86). Be sure screen is seated in case slot as shown.



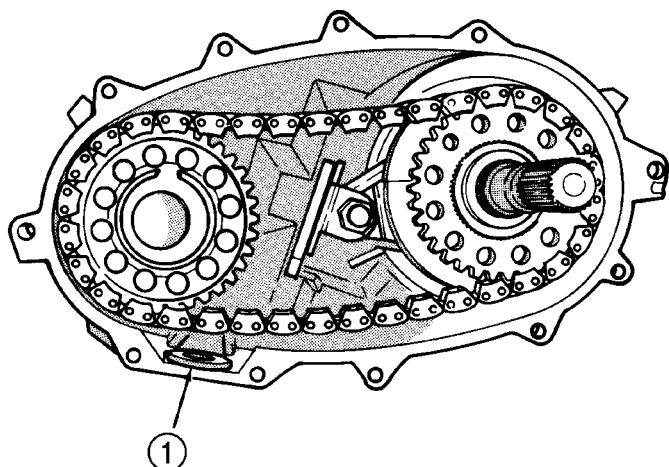
**Fig. 86 Oil Screen And Pickup Tube Installation**

- 1 - OIL PUMP  
 2 - OIL SCREEN  
 3 - CONNECTOR  
 4 - PICKUP TUBE



## TRANSFER CASE - NV242 (Continued)

- (2) Install magnet in front case pocket (Fig. 87).



J8921-288

**Fig. 87 Installing Case Magnet**

1 - MAGNET

- (3) Apply 3 mm (1/8 in.) wide bead of Mopar® gasket maker or silicone adhesive sealer to seal surface of front case.

- (4) Align and install rear case on front case. Be sure case locating dowels are in place and that main-shaft splines are engaged in oil pump inner gear.

- (5) Install and tighten front case-to-rear case bolts to 41 N·m (30 ft. lbs.) torque. **Be sure to install a washer under each bolt used at case dowel locations.**

**REAR RETAINER - NV242LD**

- (1) Apply bead of Mopar® Sealer, or Loctite™ Ultra Gray, to mating surface of rear retainer. Sealer bead should be a maximum of 3/16 in.

- (2) Install rear retainer on rear case. Tighten retainer bolts to 20-27 N·m (15-20 ft. lbs.) torque.

- (3) Install rear bearing I.D. retaining ring and spacer on output shaft.

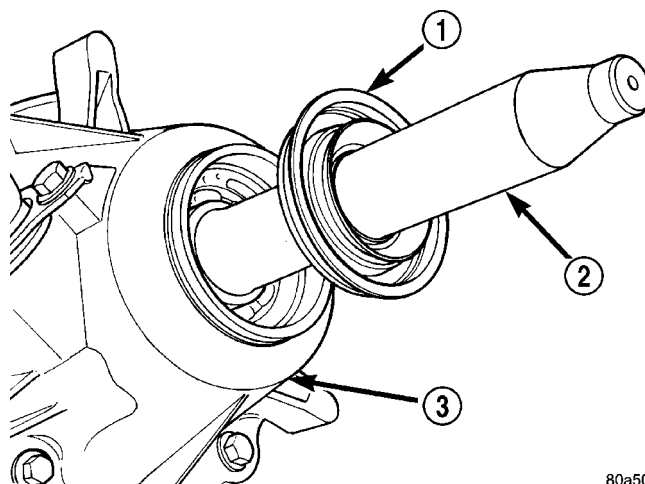
- (4) Apply liberal quantity of petroleum jelly to new rear seal and to output shaft. Petroleum jelly is needed to protect seal lips during installation.

- (5) Slide seal onto Seal Protector 6992 (Fig. 88). Slide seal protector and seal onto output shaft.

- (6) Slide Installer C-4076-B onto seal protector with the recessed side of the tool toward the seal. Drive seal into rear bearing retainer with Installer C-4076-B and Handle MD-998323 (Fig. 89).

- (7) Install rear slinger with Installer 8408.

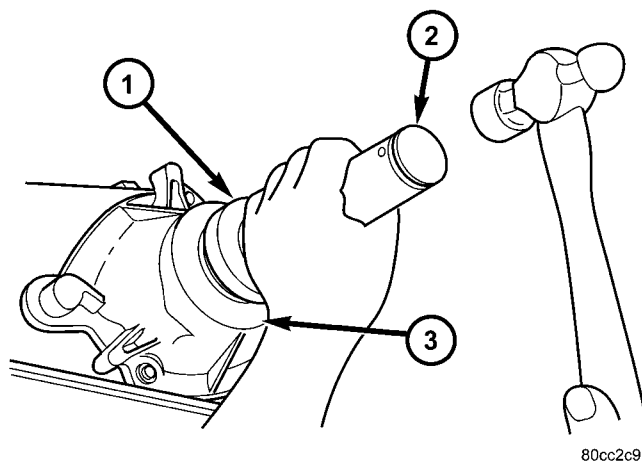
- (8) Install boot on output shaft slinger and crimp retaining clamp with tool C-4975-A (Fig. 90).



80a50355

**Fig. 88 Output Shaft Seal and Protector**

1 - OUTPUT SHAFT SEAL  
2 - SPECIAL TOOL 6992  
3 - TRANSFER CASE

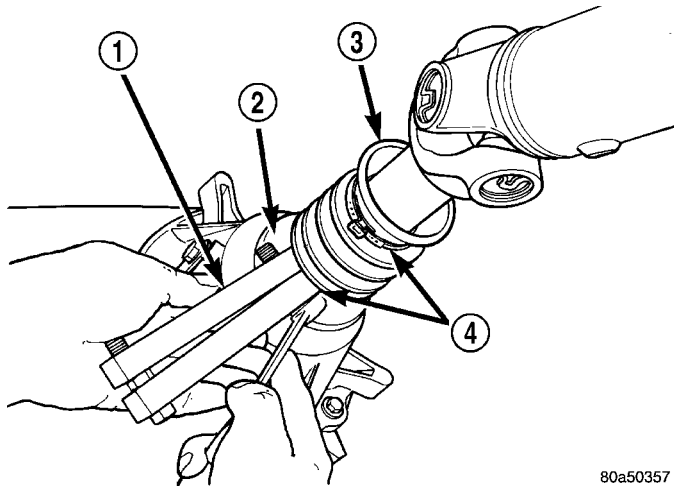


80cc2c9b

**Fig. 89 Rear Seal Installation**

1 - SPECIAL TOOL 8691  
2 - HANDLE  
3 - TRANSFER CASE

## TRANSFER CASE - NV242 (Continued)

**Fig. 90 Slinger Boot Installation**

- 1 - SPECIAL TOOL C-4975-A
- 2 - SLINGER
- 3 - BOOT
- 4 - CLAMP

**NV242HD REAR RETAINER**

(1) Apply bead of Mopar® Sealer, or Loctite™ Ultra Gray, to mating surface of rear retainer. Sealer bead should be a maximum of 3/16 in.

(2) Install rear retainer on rear case. Tighten retainer bolts to 20-27 N·m (15-20 ft. lbs.) torque.

(3) Install new output shaft bearing snap-ring (Fig. 91). Lift mainshaft slightly to seat snap-ring in shaft groove, if necessary.

(4) Apply 3 mm (1/8 in.) wide bead of Mopar® gasket maker or silicone adhesive sealer to mounting surface of extension housing. Allow sealer to set-up slightly before proceeding.

(5) Install extension housing on rear retainer.

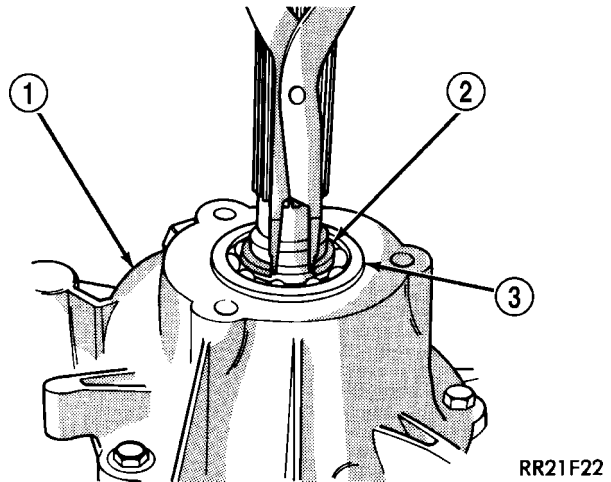
(6) Install extension housing bolts and tighten to 35-46 N·m (26-34 ft. lbs.).

**COMPANION FLANGE**

(1) Lubricate companion flange hub with transmission fluid and install flange on front shaft.

(2) Install new seal washer on front shaft.

(3) Install flange on front shaft and tighten nut to 122-176 N·m (90-130 ft. lbs.).

**Fig. 91 Install Output Bearing Snap-ring**

- 1 - REAR RETAINER
- 2 - SNAP-RING
- 3 - REAR BEARING

**INSTALLATION**

(1) Mount transfer case on a transmission jack.

(2) Secure transfer case to jack with chains.

(3) Position transfer case under vehicle.

(4) Align transfer case and transmission shafts and install transfer case on transmission.

(5) Install and tighten transfer case attaching nuts to 35 N·m (26 ft. lbs.) torque (Fig. 4).

(6) Align and connect propeller shafts. (Refer to 3 - DIFFERENTIAL & DRIVELINE/PROPELLER SHAFT/PROPELLER SHAFT - INSTALLATION)

(7) Fill transfer case with correct fluid. Check transmission fluid level. Correct as necessary.

(8) Install rear crossmember and skid plate, if equipped. Tighten crossmember bolts to 41 N·m (30 ft. lbs.) torque.

(9) Remove transmission jack and support stand.

(10) Connect shift rod to transfer case range lever.

(11) Connect transfer case vent hose and transfer case position sensor.

(12) Adjust transfer case shift cable.

(13) Lower vehicle and verify transfer case shift operation.

## TRANSFER CASE - NV242 (Continued)

## SPECIFICATIONS

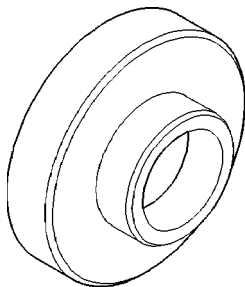
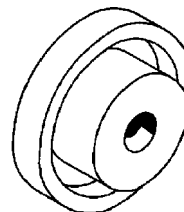
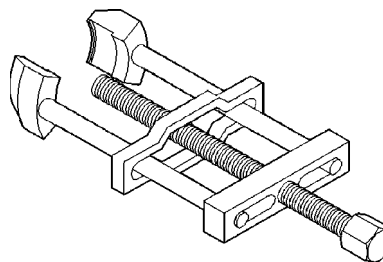
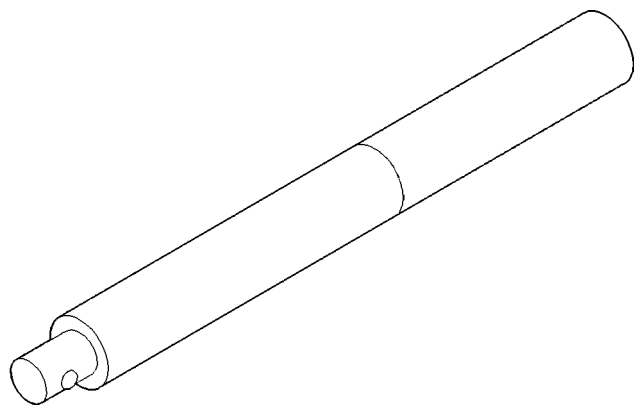
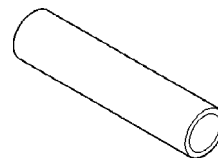
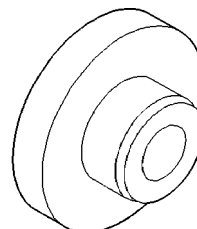
## TRANSFER CASE - NV242

## TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS

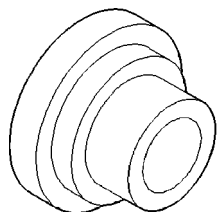
DESCRIPTION	N-m	Ft. Lbs.	In. Lbs.
Plug, Detent	16-24	11.8-17.7	-
Bolt, Diff. Case	17-27	12.5-19.9	-
Plug, Drain/Fill	20-34	15-25	-
Bolt, Front Brg. Retainer	16-27	11.8-19.9	-
Bolt, Case Half	35-46	25.8-33.9	-
Nut, Front Yoke	122-176	90-130	-
Screw, Oil Pump	1.2-1.8	-	12-15
Nut, Range Lever	27-34	19.9-25	-
Bolt, Rear Retainer	35-46	25.8-33.9	-
Nuts, Mounting	35	25.8	-
Bolts, U-Joint	19	14	-

## SPECIAL TOOLS

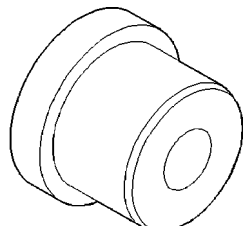
## TRANSFER CASE - NV242

**Installer, Seal - C-4076-B****Remover, Bearing - C-4210****Puller, Slinger - MD-998056-A****Handle, Universal - C-4171****Installer - MD-998323****Installer, Bearing - 5064**

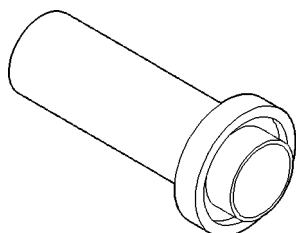
TRANSFER CASE - NV242 (Continued)



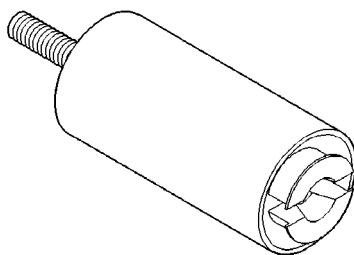
**Installer, Bearing - 8128**



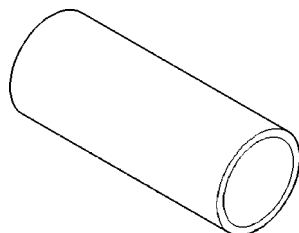
**Installer, Bearing - 5066**



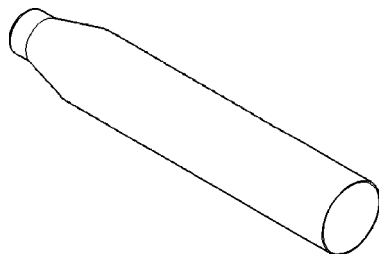
**Installer, Seal - 6952-A**



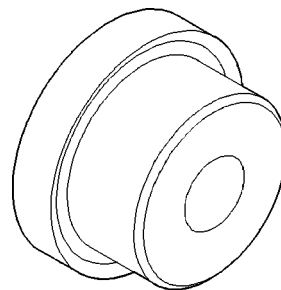
**Remover, Bearing - L-4454**



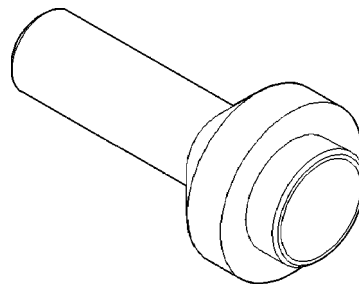
**Cup - 8148**



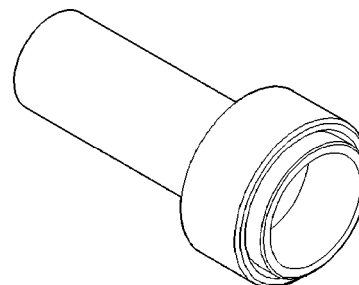
**Protector, Seal - 6992**



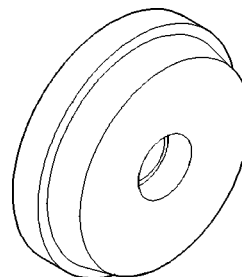
**Installer, Input Gear Bearing - 7829-A**



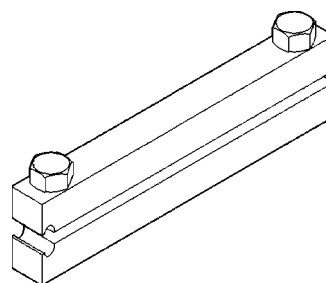
**Installer, Seal - 7884**



**Installer, Pump Housing Seal - 7888**



**Installer, Bearing - 8033-A**

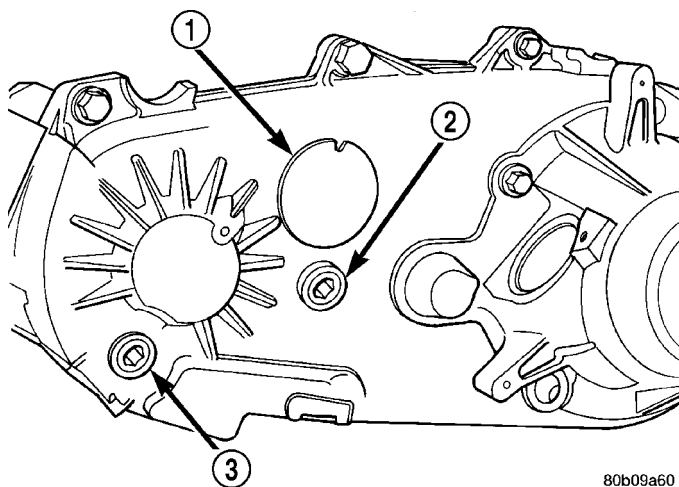


**Installer, Boot Clamp - C-4975-A**

## FLUID

### STANDARD PROCEDURE - FLUID DRAIN/REFILL

The fill and drain plugs are both in the rear case (Fig. 92).



**Fig. 92 Fill/Drain Plug and I.D. Tag Location - Typical**

- 1 - I.D. TAG
- 2 - FILL PLUG
- 3 - DRAIN PLUG

- (1) Raise vehicle.
- (2) Position drain pan under transfer case.
- (3) Remove drain and fill plugs and drain lubricant completely.
- (4) Install drain plug. Tighten plug to 20-34 N·m (15-25 ft. lbs.).
- (5) Remove drain pan.
- (6) Fill transfer case to bottom edge of fill plug opening with Mopar® Transfer Case Lubricant.
- (7) Install and tighten fill plug to 20-34 N·m (15-25 ft. lbs.).
- (8) Lower vehicle.

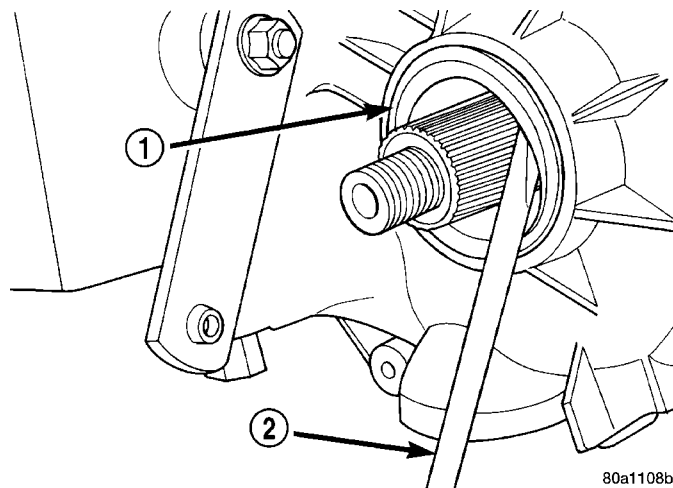
## FRONT OUTPUT SHAFT SEAL

### REMOVAL

- (1) Raise vehicle.
- (2) Remove front propeller shaft. (Refer to 3 - DIFFERENTIAL & DRIVELINE/PROPELLER SHAFT/PROPELLER SHAFT - REMOVAL)
- (3) Remove front output shaft companion flange.
- (4) Remove seal from front case with pry tool (Fig. 93).

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Install new front output seal in front case with Installer Tool 6952-A as follows:

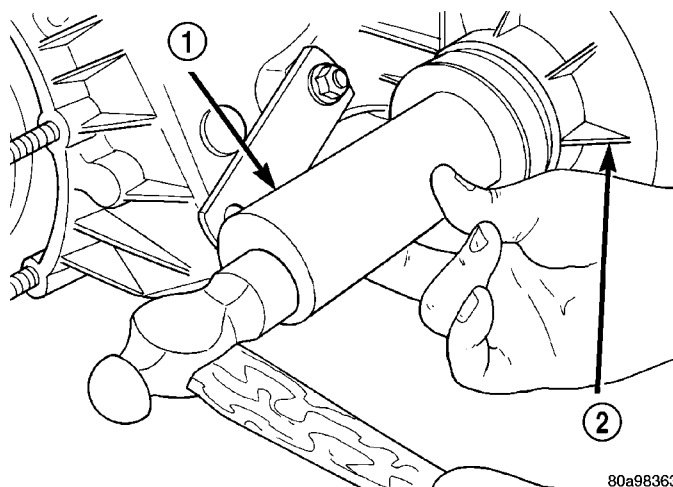


**Fig. 93 Remove Front Output Shaft Seal**

- 1 - OUTPUT SHAFT SEAL
- 2 - PRYBAR

(a) Place new seal on tool. Garter spring on seal goes toward interior of case.

(b) Start seal in bore with light taps from hammer (Fig. 94). Once seal is started, continue tapping seal into bore until installer tool seats against case.



**Fig. 94 Front Output Seal Installation**

- 1 - INSTALLER 6952-A
- 2 - TRANSFER CASE

(2) Install companion flange and tighten nut to 122-176 (90-130 ft. lbs.) torque.

(3) Install front propeller shaft. (Refer to 3 - DIFFERENTIAL & DRIVELINE/PROPELLER SHAFT/PROPELLER SHAFT - INSTALLATION)

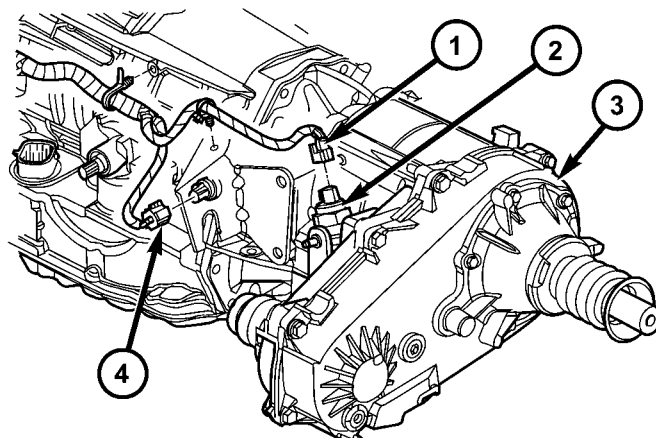
## POSITION SENSOR

### DESCRIPTION

The transfer case position sensor (Fig. 95) is an electronic device whose output can be interpreted to indicate the transfer case's current operating mode. The sensor consists of a five position, resistive multiplexed circuit which returns a specific resistance value to the Powertrain Control Module (PCM) for each transfer case operating mode. The sensor is located on the top of the transfer case, just left of the transfer case centerline and rides against the sector plate roostercomb. The PCM supplies 5VDC (+/- 0.5V) to the sensor and monitors the return voltage to determine the sector plate, and therefore the transfer case, position.

### OPERATION

During normal vehicle operation, the Powertrain Control Module (PCM) monitors the transfer case position sensor return voltage to determine the operating mode of the transfer case. Refer to the Operating Mode Versus Resistance table for the correct resistance for each position (Fig. 96).



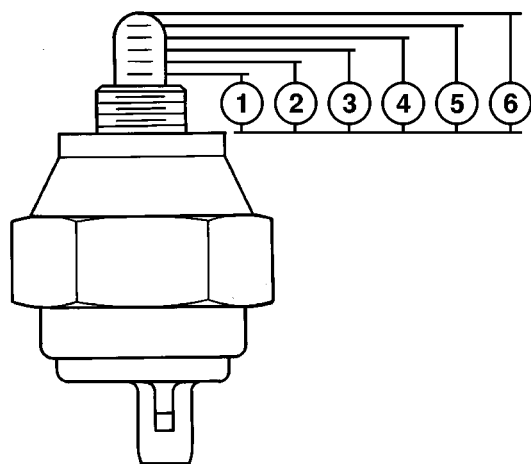
80cc20be

**Fig. 95 Transfer Case Position Sensor and Connector**

- 1 - TRANSFER CASE POSITION SENSOR CONNECTOR
- 2 - TRANSFER CASE POSITION SENSOR
- 3 - TRANSFER CASE
- 4 - OUTPUT SPEED SENSOR CONNECTOR

### OPERATING MODE VERSUS RESISTANCE

SENSOR POSITION	OPERATING MODE	SENSOR RESISTANCE (ohms)
1	2WD	1124-1243
2	4WD PART TIME	650-719
3	4WD FULL TIME	389-431
4	NEUTRAL	199-221
5	4WD LOW	57-64



80cd3d70

**Fig. 96 Position Sensor Linear Movement**

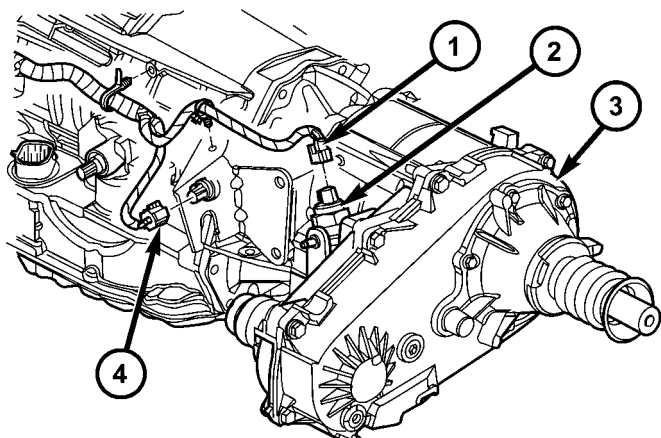
- 1 - POSITION 1 - 10mm ±0.5mm
- 2 - POSITION 2 - 12mm ±0.5mm
- 3 - POSITION 3 - 14mm ±0.5mm
- 4 - POSITION 4 - 16mm ±0.5mm
- 5 - POSITION 5 - 18mm ±0.5mm
- 6 - POSITION 6 - 20mm±0.5mm - FULL EXTENSION



## POSITION SENSOR (Continued)

## REMOVAL

- (1) Raise and support the vehicle.
- (2) Disengage the transfer case position sensor connector from the position sensor (Fig. 97).
- (3) Remove the position sensor from the transfer case.



80cc20be

**Fig. 97 Transfer Case Position Sensor and Connector**

- 1 - TRANSFER CASE POSITION SENSOR CONNECTOR
- 2 - TRANSFER CASE POSITION SENSOR
- 3 - TRANSFER CASE
- 4 - OUTPUT SPEED SENSOR CONNECTOR

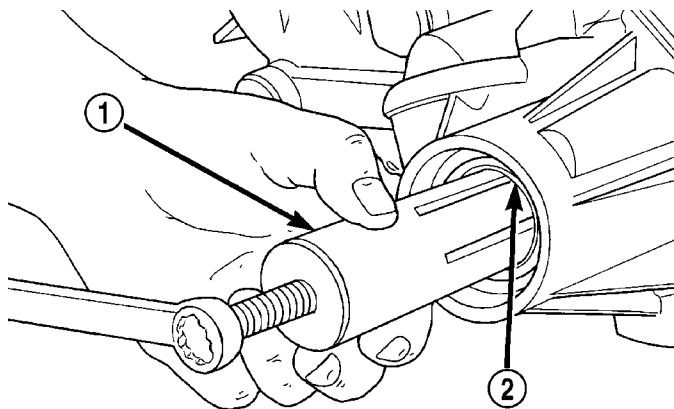
## INSTALLATION

- (1) Inspect the o-ring seal on the transfer case position sensor. Replace the o-ring if necessary.
- (2) Install the transfer case position sensor into the transfer case. Torque the sensor to 20-34 N·m (15-25 ft.lbs.).
- (3) Engage the transfer case position sensor connector to the position sensor.
- (4) Lower vehicle.
- (5) Verify proper sensor operation.

## REAR RETAINER BUSHING AND SEAL - NV242HD

## REMOVAL

- (1) Raise vehicle.
- (2) Remove rear propeller shaft. (Refer to 3 - DIFFERENTIAL & DRIVELINE/PROPELLER SHAFT/PROPELLER SHAFT - REMOVAL)
- (3) Using a suitable pry tool or slide-hammer mounted screw, remove the rear retainer seal.
- (4) Using Remover 6957, remove bushing from rear retainer (Fig. 98).



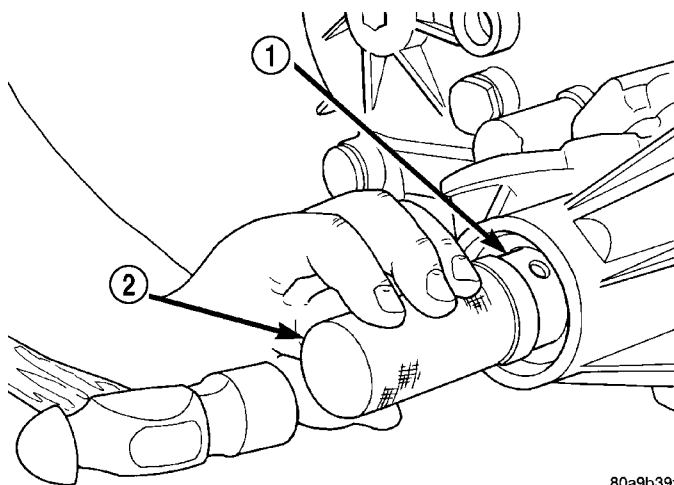
80a98373

**Fig. 98 Rear Retainer Bushing Removal**

- 1 - REMOVER 6957
- 2 - REAR RETAINER BUSHING

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Clean fluid residue from sealing surface and inspect for defects.
- (2) Position replacement bushing in rear retainer with fluid port in bushing aligned with slot in retainer.
- (3) Using Installer 8160, drive bushing into retainer until installer seats against case (Fig. 99).



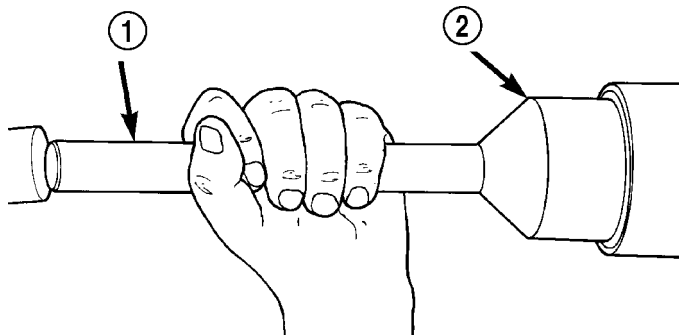
80a9b39f

**Fig. 99 Rear Retainer Bushing Install**

- 1 - REAR RETAINER BUSHING
- 2 - INSTALLER 8160

## REAR RETAINER BUSHING AND SEAL - NV242HD (Continued)

(4) Using Installer C-3995-A, install seal in rear retainer (Fig. 100).



80a983a7

**Fig. 100 Install Rear Retainer Seal**

- 1 - SPECIAL TOOL C-4171  
2 - SPECIAL TOOL C-3995-A

(5) Install the rear propeller shaft. (Refer to 3 - DIFFERENTIAL & DRIVELINE/PROPELLER SHAFT/PROPELLER SHAFT - INSTALLATION)

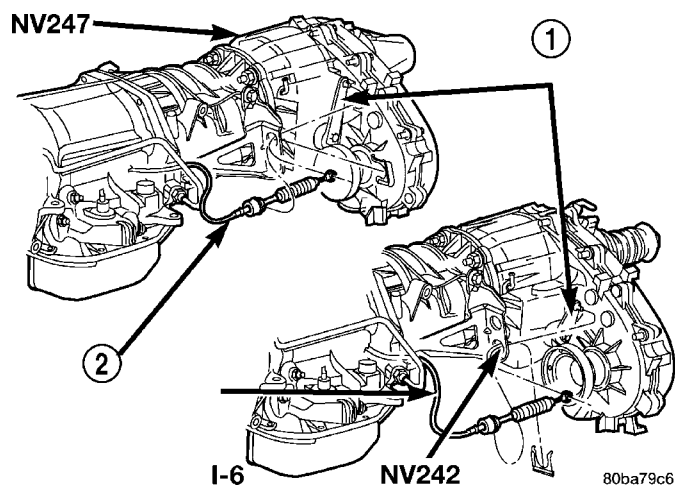
(6) Verify proper fluid level.

(7) Lower vehicle.

## SHIFT CABLE

## REMOVAL

- (1) Shift transfer case into NEUTRAL.  
(2) Raise vehicle.  
(3) Disconnect the shift cable eyelet from the transfer case shift lever (Fig. 101).  
(4) Remove shift cable from the cable support bracket.



80ba79c6

**Fig. 101 Transfer Case Shift Cable at Transfer Case**

- 1 - TRANSFER CASE SHIFT LEVER  
2 - TRANSFER CASE SHIFT CABLE

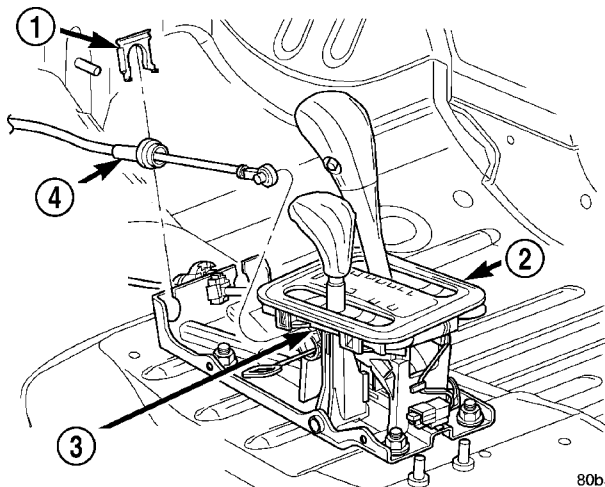
(5) Lower vehicle.

(6) Remove any necessary console parts for access to shift lever assembly and shift cable.

(7) Disconnect cable at shift lever and shifter assembly bracket (Fig. 102).

(8) Remove the nuts holding the shift cable seal plate to the floor pan (Fig. 103).

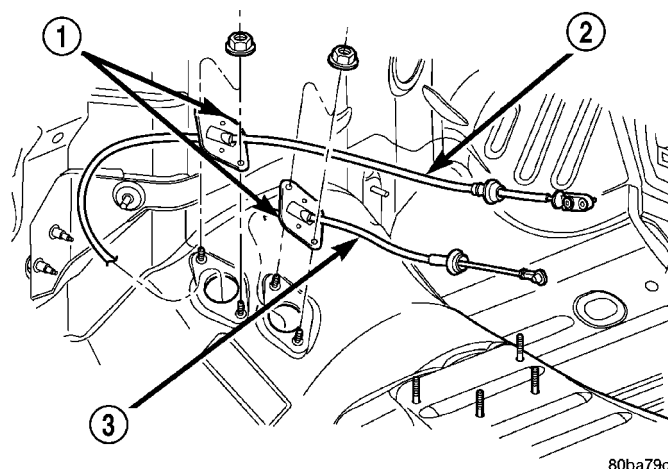
(9) Pull cable through floor panel opening.



80ba79cd

**Fig. 102 Transfer Case Shift Cable at Shifter**

- 1 - CLIP  
2 - SHIFTER  
3 - TRANSFER CASE SHIFT LEVER PIN  
4 - TRANSFER CASE SHIFT CABLE



80ba79cc

**Fig. 103 Shift Cables at Floor Pan**

- 1 - SEAL PLATES  
2 - TRANSMISSION SHIFT CABLE  
3 - TRANSFER CASE SHIFT CABLE

(10) Remove transfer case shift cable from vehicle.

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Route cable through hole in floor pan.  
(2) Install seal plate to studs in floor pan.  
(3) Install nuts to hold seal plate to floor pan (Fig. 103). Tighten nuts to 7 N·m (65 in.lbs.).

## SHIFT CABLE (Continued)

(4) Install the transfer case shift cable to the shifter assembly bracket. Seat cable in bracket and install clip (Fig. 102).

(5) Verify the transfer case shift lever (at console) is in the NEUTRAL position.

(6) Snap the cable onto the shift lever pin (Fig. 102).

(7) Raise the vehicle.

(8) Install the shift cable to the shift cable support bracket and install clip (Fig. 101).

(9) Verify that the transfer case is still in the NEUTRAL position.

(10) Snap the shift cable onto the transfer case shift lever (Fig. 101).

(11) Lower vehicle.

(12) Verify correct transfer case operation in all ranges.

(13) Install any console parts removed for access to transfer case shift cable.

## TRANSFER CASE - NV247

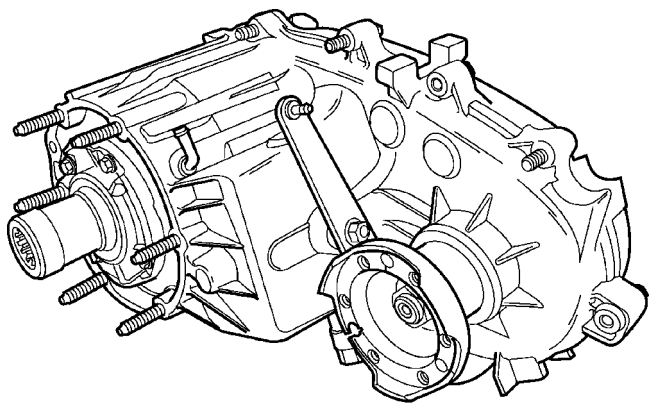
### TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page	page
<b>TRANSFER CASE - NV247</b>		
DESCRIPTION .....	339	
OPERATION .....	340	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - TRANSFER		
CASE - NV247 .....	340	
REMOVAL .....	341	
DISASSEMBLY .....	342	
CLEANING .....	348	
INSPECTION .....	348	
ASSEMBLY .....	349	
INSTALLATION .....	359	
SPECIFICATIONS		
TRANSFER CASE - NV247 .....	360	
SPECIAL TOOLS		
TRANSFER CASE - NV247 .....	360	
<b>FLUID</b>		
STANDARD PROCEDURE - FLUID DRAIN/ REFILL .....		361
<b>FRONT OUTPUT SHAFT SEAL</b>		
REMOVAL .....	362	
INSTALLATION .....	362	
<b>REAR RETAINER BUSHING AND SEAL</b>		
REMOVAL .....	362	
INSTALLATION .....	363	
<b>SHIFT CABLE</b>		
REMOVAL .....	363	
INSTALLATION .....	364	

## TRANSFER CASE - NV247

### DESCRIPTION

The NV247 (Fig. 1) is an on-demand 4-wheel drive transfer case with two operating ranges and a neutral position. Operating ranges are 4-high and 4-low. The 4-low range is used for extra pulling power in off-road situations.



80ba7a31

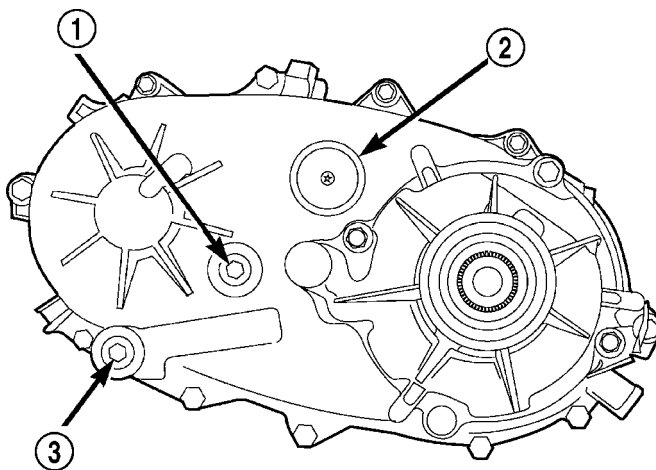
**Fig. 1 NV247 Transfer Case**

### TRANSFER CASE IDENTIFICATION

A circular I.D. tag is attached to the rear case of each NV247 transfer case (Fig. 2). The tag indicates the following information:

- Model number
- Serial number
- Assembly number
- Gear ratio
- Location of manufacture

The transfer case serial number also represents the date of build.



80ba7a32

**Fig. 2 Transfer Case I.D. Tag**

- 1 - FILL PLUG
- 2 - I.D. TAG
- 3 - DRAIN PLUG

## TRANSFER CASE - NV247 (Continued)

**OPERATION**

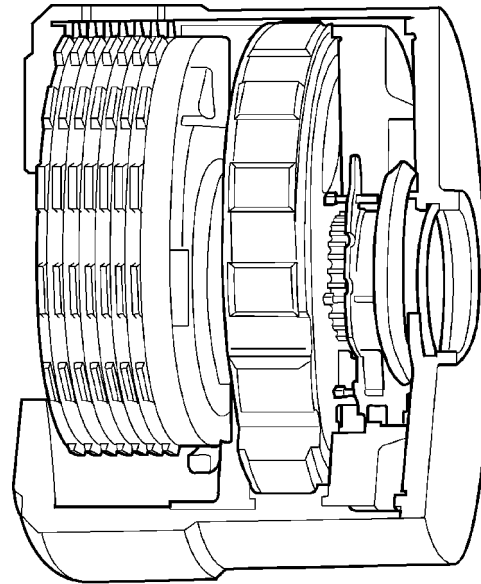
Under normal driving conditions, the system operates conventionally, and the majority of available torque is applied to the rear wheels. However, when front-to-rear wheel speed variations exist, the progressive differential transfers torque to the axle with the better traction, thus minimizing wheel spin and maximizing control.

The key to this design is a progressive coupling (Fig. 3), which is supplied with pressurized oil by a gerotor style pump. The pump rotor and case are driven by the front and rear driveshafts respectively, and deliver pressurized oil flow to the coupling in proportion to their speed difference. The progressive coupling contains a multi-disc clutch pack that is alternately splined to the front and rear driveshafts, and controls torque variation between the front and rear driveshafts as dictated by the pump.

A set of orifices and valves control the speed-differential starting point and rate of torque transfer rise in the clutch. This allows the system to disregard the normal speed differences between axles that result from variations in front-to-rear loading and typical cornering.

Transfer case operating ranges are selected with a floor mounted shift lever. The shift lever is connected

to the transfer case range lever by an adjustable cable. Range positions are marked on the shifter bezel plate.



80ba7a55

**Fig. 3 Progressive Coupling****DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - TRANSFER CASE - NV247**

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSE	CORRECTION
TRANSFER CASE DIFFICULT TO SHIFT OR WILL NOT SHIFT INTO DESIRED RANGE	1. Vehicle speed too great to permit shifting	1. Reduce speed to 3-4 km/h (2-3 mph) before attempting to shift
	2. Transfer case external shift cable binding	2. Lubricate, repair or replace cable, or tighten loose components as necessary
	3. Insufficient or incorrect lubricant	3. Drain and refill to edge of fill hole with correct lubricant
	4. Internal components binding, worn, or damaged	4. Disassemble unit and replace worn or damaged components as necessary
TRANSFER CASE NOISY IN ALL MODES	1. Insufficient or incorrect lubricant	1. Drain and refill to edge of fill hole with correct lubricant. <b>If unit is still noisy after drain and refill, disassembly and inspection may be required to locate source of noise</b>

## TRANSFER CASE - NV247 (Continued)

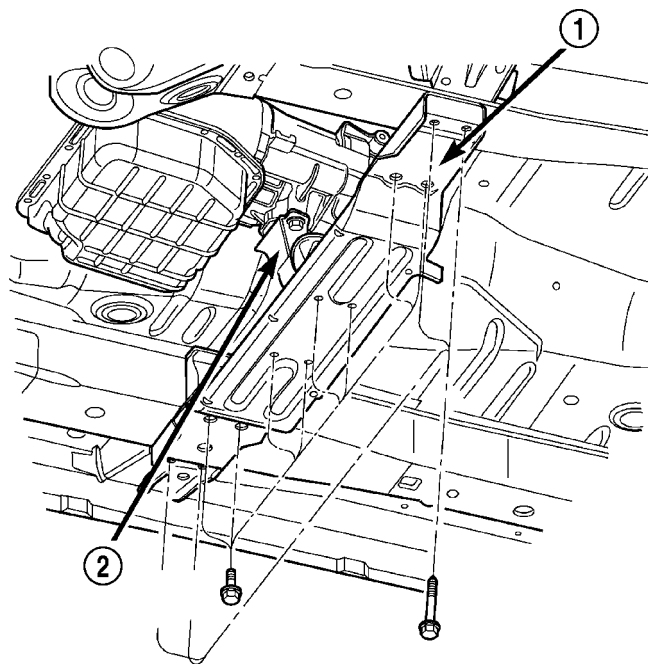
CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSE	CORRECTION
NOISY IN—OR JUMPS OUT OF 4WD LOW RANGE	1. Transfer case not completely engaged in 4WD LOW (possibly from shift to 4L while rolling)	1. Stop vehicle, shift transfer case to neutral, then shift back to 4WD LOW
	2. Shift linkage loose, binding, or is misadjusted	2. Tighten, lubricate, or repair linkage as necessary. Adjust linkage if necessary
	3. Range fork cracked, inserts worn, or fork is binding on shift rail	3. Disassemble unit and repair as necessary
	4. Annulus gear or lockplate worn or damaged	4. Disassemble unit and repair as necessary
LUBRICANT LEAKING FROM OUTPUT SHAFT SEALS OR FROM VENT	1. Transfer case over filled	1. Drain to correct level
	2. Vent closed or restricted	2. Clear or replace vent if necessary
	3. Output shaft seals damaged or installed correctly	3. Replace seals. Be sure seal lip faces interior of case when installed. Also be sure yoke seal surfaces are not scored or nicked. Remove scores and nicks with fine sandpaper or replace yoke(s) if necessary.

**REMOVAL**

- (1) Shift transfer case into NEUTRAL.
- (2) Raise vehicle.
- (3) Remove transfer case drain plug and drain transfer case lubricant.
- (4) Mark front and rear propeller shaft yokes for alignment reference.
- (5) Support transmission with jack stand.
- (6) Remove rear crossmember and skid plate, if equipped (Fig. 4).
- (7) Disconnect front propeller shaft from transfer case at companion flange. Remove rear propeller shaft from vehicle. (Refer to 3 - DIFFERENTIAL & DRIVELINE/PROPELLER SHAFT/PROPELLER SHAFT - REMOVAL)

**CAUTION:** Do not allow propshafts to hang at attached end. Damage to joint can result.

- (8) Disconnect transfer case cable from range lever.
- (9) Disconnect transfer case vent hose (Fig. 5).
- (10) Support transfer case with transmission jack.
- (11) Secure transfer case to jack with chains.
- (12) Remove nuts attaching transfer case to transmission.



80ba79c7

**Fig. 4 Crossmember Removal**

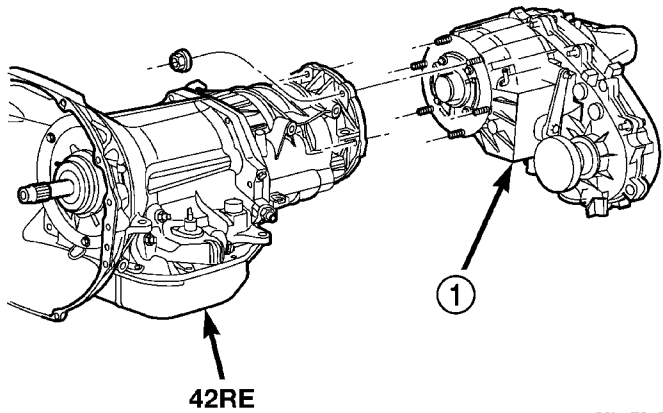
- 1 - CROSSMEMBER  
2 - REAR TRANSMISSION MOUNT



## TRANSFER CASE - NV247 (Continued)

(13) Pull transfer case and jack rearward to disengage transfer case (Fig. 5).

(14) Remove transfer case from under vehicle.



80ba79c9

**Fig. 5 Transfer Case Mounting**

1 - NV247 TRANSFER CASE

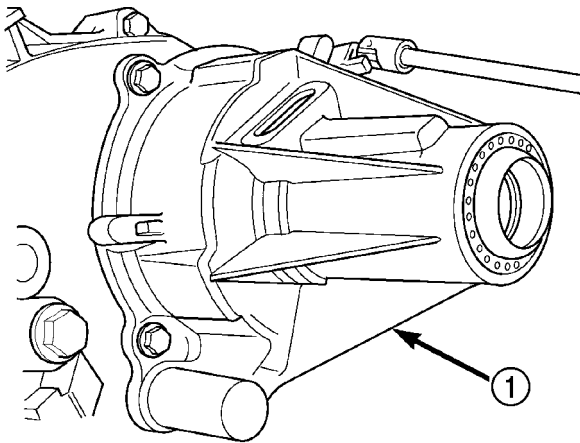
## DISASSEMBLY

Position transfer case on shallow drain pan. Remove drain plug and drain lubricant remaining in case.

## REAR RETAINER AND OIL PUMP

(1) Remove rear retainer bolts (Fig. 6).

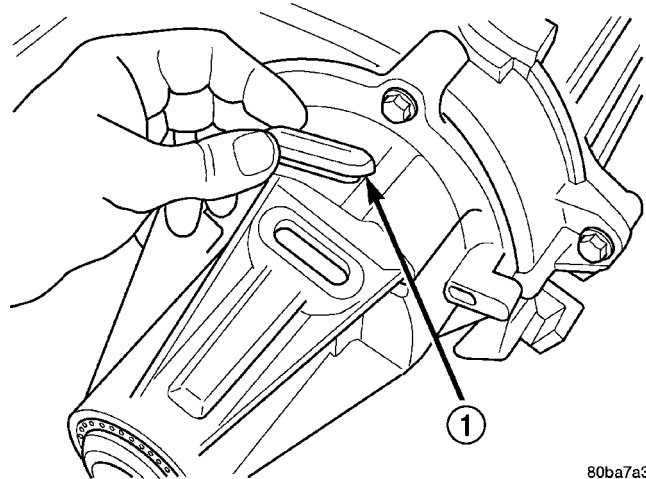
(2) Remove rear bearing locating ring access plug (Fig. 7).



80ba7a35

**Fig. 6 Rear Retainer Bolt Removal**

1 - REAR RETAINER

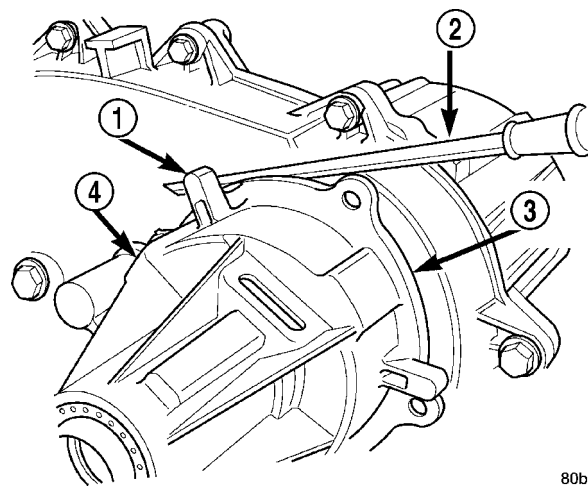


80ba7a33

**Fig. 7 Remove Rubber Access Plug**

1 - PLUG

(3) Loosen rear retainer with pry tool to break sealer bead. Pry only against retainer boss as shown (Fig. 8).



80ba7a34

**Fig. 8 Loosening Rear Retainer**

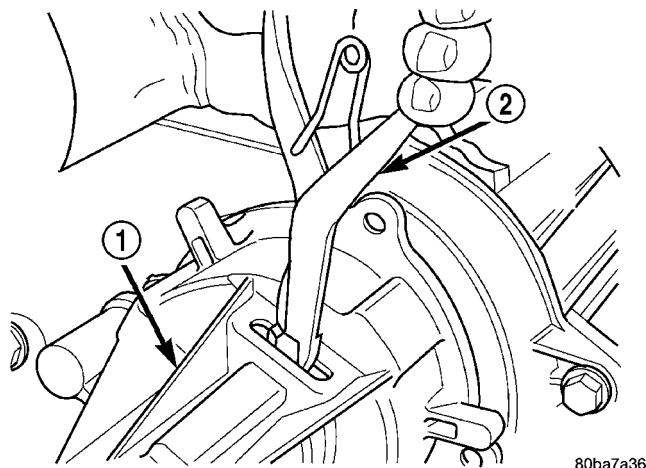
1 - RETAINER BOSS  
2 - PRY TOOL  
3 - SEALER BEAD  
4 - REAR RETAINER

## TRANSFER CASE - NV247 (Continued)

(4) Remove rear retainer as follows:

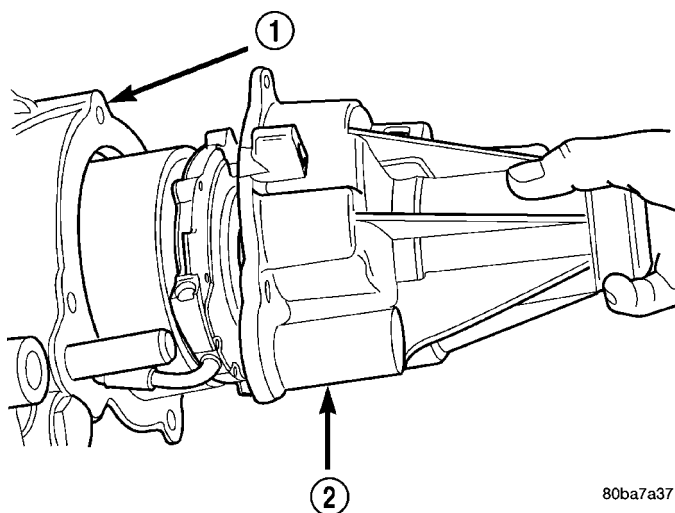
(a) Spread rear bearing locating ring with snap ring pliers (Fig. 9).

(b) Then slide retainer off mainshaft and rear bearing (Fig. 10).



**Fig. 9 Disengaging Rear Bearing Locating Ring**

- 1 - REAR RETAINER  
2 - PARALLEL JAW SNAP-RING PLIERS



**Fig. 10 Rear Retainer Removal**

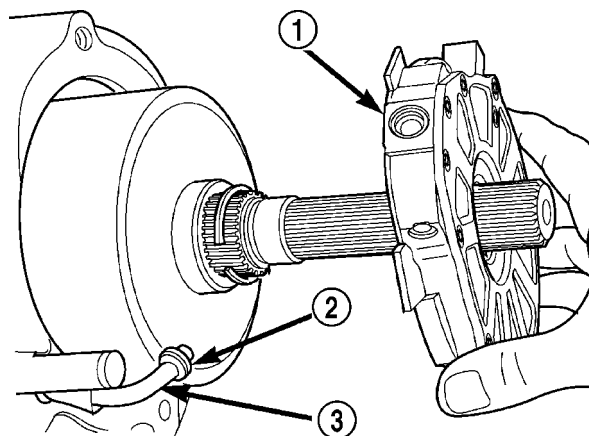
- 1 - REAR CASE  
2 - REAR RETAINER

(5) Remove rear bearing snap-ring.

(6) Remove rear bearing. Note position of bearing locating ring groove for assembly reference.

(7) Disengage oil pickup tube from oil pump and remove oil pump assembly (Fig. 11).

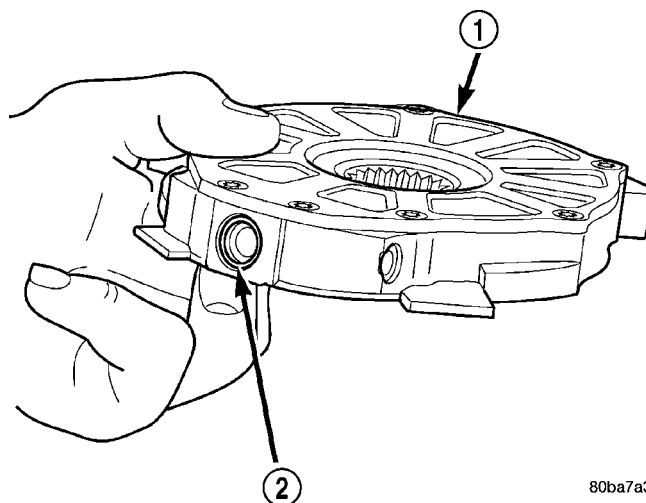
(8) Remove pick-up tube o-ring from oil pump (Fig. 12), if necessary. Do not disassemble the oil pump, it is not serviceable.



80ba7a38

**Fig. 11 Rear Bearing and Oil Pump Removal**

- 1 - OIL PUMP  
2 - TUBE O-RING  
3 - OIL PICKUP TUBE



80ba7a39

**Fig. 12 Pick-up Tube O-ring Location**

- 1 - OIL PUMP  
2 - O-RING

## COMPANION FLANGE AND RANGE LEVER

(1) Remove front companion flange nut as follows:

(a) Move range lever to 4L position.

(b) Remove nut with socket and impact wrench.

(2) Remove companion flange. If flange is difficult to remove by hand, remove it with bearing splitter, or with standard two jaw puller. Be sure puller tool is positioned on flange and not on slinger as slinger will be damaged.

(3) Remove seal washer from front output shaft. Discard washer as it should not be reused.

(4) Remove nut and washer that attach range lever to sector shaft. Then move sector to neutral position and remove range lever from shaft.

**NOTE:** Note position of range lever so it can be re-installed correctly.

## TRANSFER CASE - NV247 (Continued)

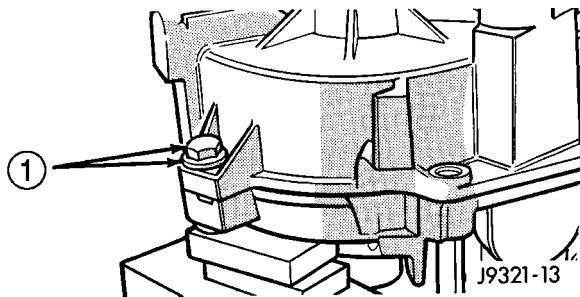
**REAR CASE**

(1) Support transfer case so rear case is facing upward.

(2) Remove bolts holding front case to rear case. The case alignment bolt require flat washers (Fig. 13).

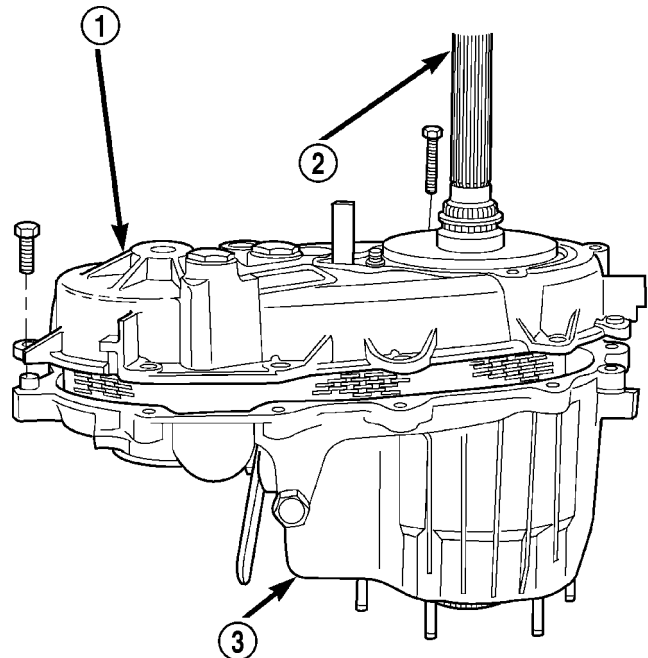
(3) Loosen rear case with flat blade screwdriver to break sealer bead. Insert screwdriver blade only into notches provided at each end of case (Fig. 14).

(4) Remove rear case (Fig. 15).



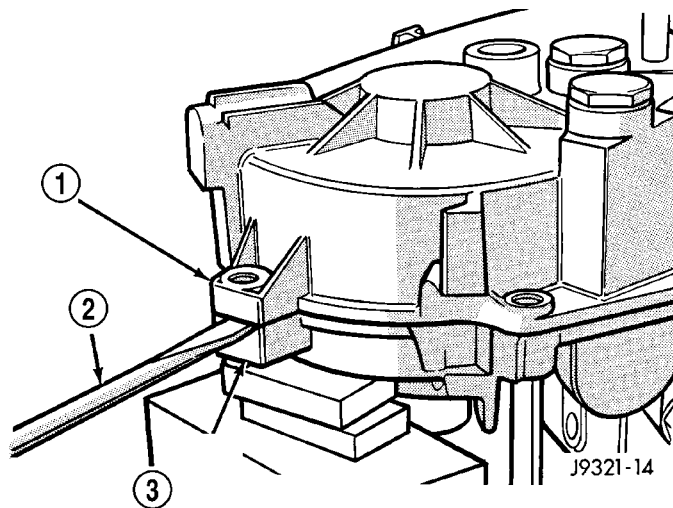
**Fig. 13 Rear Case Alignment Bolt Locations**

1 - ALIGNMENT BOLT AND WASHER (AT EACH END OF CASE)



**Fig. 15 Rear Case Removal**

1 - REAR HOUSING  
2 - MAINSHAFT  
3 - TRANSFER CASE



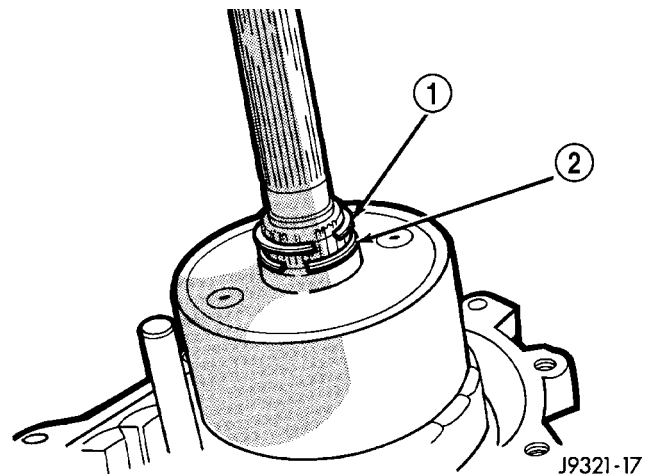
**Fig. 14 Loosening Rear Case**

1 - REAR CASE  
2 - PRY TOOL (IN CASE SLOT)  
3 - FRONT CASE

**PROGRESSIVE COUPLING**

(1) Remove oil pump locating snap-ring and progressive coupling thrust washer from the mainshaft (Fig. 16).

(2) Remove progressive coupling from mainshaft (Fig. 16).



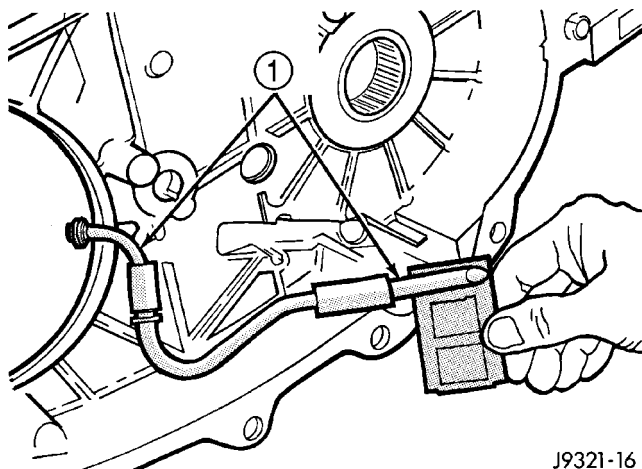
**Fig. 16 Progressive Coupling Removal**

1 - SNAP-RING  
2 - PROGRESSIVE COUPLING

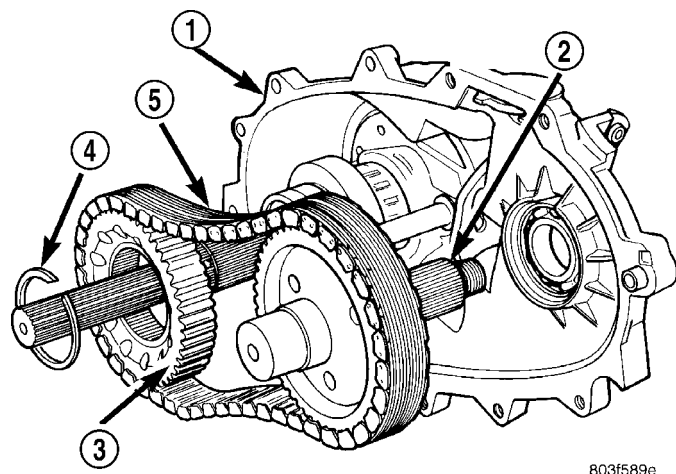
## TRANSFER CASE - NV247 (Continued)

**FRONT OUTPUT SHAFT AND DRIVE CHAIN**

- (1) Remove oil pickup tube from rear case (Fig. 17).
- (2) Remove drive gear snap-ring (Fig. 18).
- (3) Disengage drive gear (Fig. 18). Pry gear upward and off mainshaft as shown.
- (4) Remove front output shaft, drive chain and drive gear as assembly (Fig. 18).
- (5) Remove output shaft drive gear snap ring.
- (6) Remove output shaft drive gear from output shaft.

**Fig. 17 Oil Pickup Tube Removal**

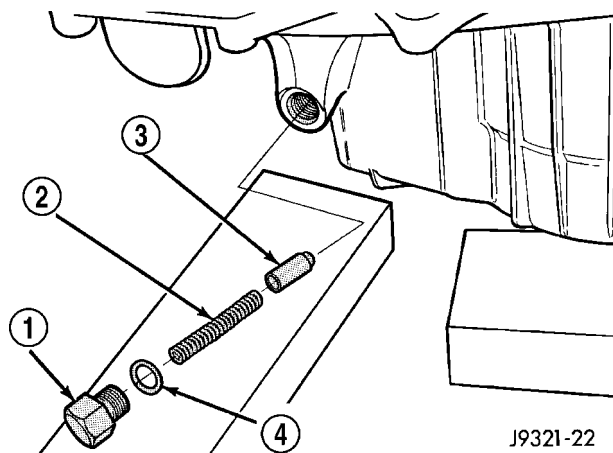
1 - OIL PICKUP TUBE

**Fig. 18 Front Output Shaft, Drive Gear And Chain Removal**

- 1 - REAR HOUSING
- 2 - OUTPUT SHAFT AND SPROCKET
- 3 - MAINSHAFT SPROCKET
- 4 - SNAP-RING
- 5 - DRIVE CHAIN

**SHIFT FORKS AND MAINSHAFT**

- (1) Remove detent plug, O-ring, detent spring and detent plunger (Fig. 19).

**Fig. 19 Detent Plug, Spring And Plunger Removal**

- 1 - DETENT PLUG
- 2 - DETENT SPRING
- 3 - DETENT PLUNGER
- 4 - PLUG O-RING

- (2) Remove shift rail from shift fork and transfer case housing.
- (3) Rotate range shift fork until it disengages from shift sector.
- (4) Remove mainshaft and shift fork from input gear pilot bearing.

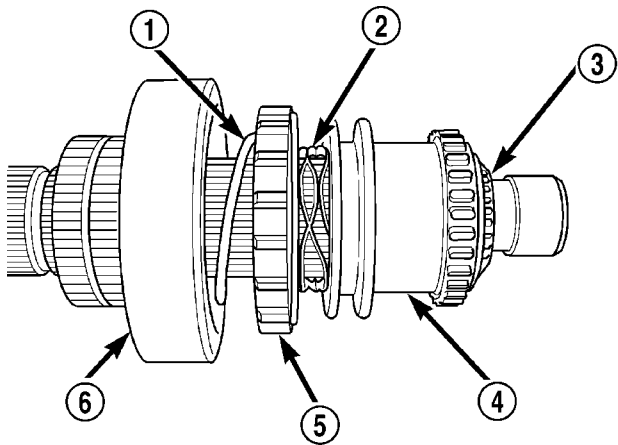
**NOTE:** Loose needle bearings are used to support the drive sprocket hub on the mainshaft. Do not lift mainshaft by drive sprocket hub or needle bearings will become dislodged.

- (5) Wrap rag around mainshaft underneath drive sprocket hub and remove drive sprocket hub from mainshaft. Be sure to retrieve all the drive sprocket hub needle bearings.

- (6) Remove snap ring holding clutch sleeve onto mainshaft.

## TRANSFER CASE - NV247 (Continued)

(7) Remove range clutch sleeve, blockout spring, locking clutch, and locking clutch spring from main-shaft (Fig. 20).



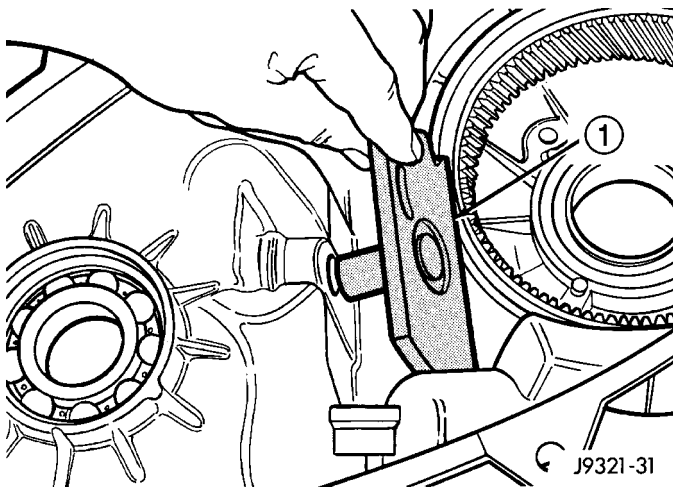
80ba7a52

**Fig. 20 Range Clutch Sleeve, Blockout Spring, Locking Clutch and Spring**

- 1 - LOCKING CLUTCH SPRING
- 2 - BLOCKOUT SPRING
- 3 - SNAP-RING
- 4 - RANGE CLUTCH SLEEVE
- 5 - LOCKING CLUTCH
- 6 - DRIVE SPROCKET HUB

(8) Remove shift sector. Rotate and tilt sector as needed to remove it (Fig. 21).

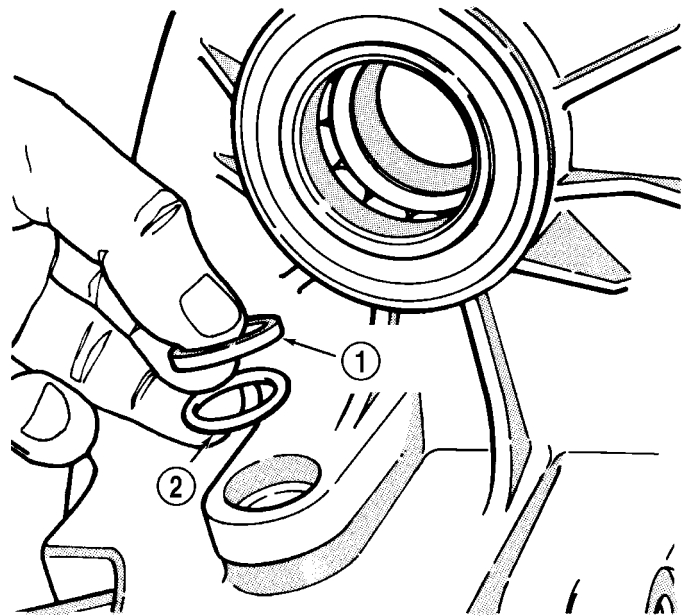
(9) Remove shift sector bushing and O-ring (Fig. 22).



J9321-31

**Fig. 21 Shift Sector Removal**

- 1 - SHIFT SECTOR



J8921-207

**Fig. 22 Sector Bushing And O-Ring Removal**

- 1 - SHIFT SECTOR BUSHING
- 2 - O-RING

### INPUT GEAR/LOW RANGE ASSEMBLY

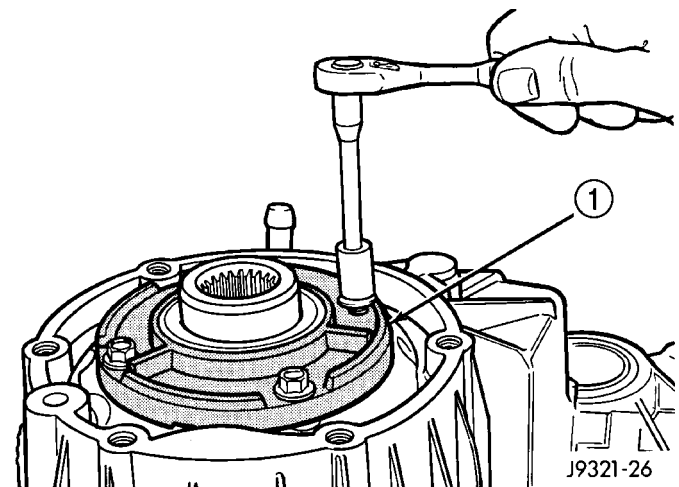
(1) Turn front case on side so front bearing retainer is accessible.

(2) Remove front bearing retainer bolts (Fig. 23).

(3) Remove front bearing retainer as follows:

(a) Loosen retainer with flat blade screwdriver to break sealer bead. **To avoid damaging case and retainer, position screwdriver blade only in slots provided in retainer (Fig. 24).**

(b) Then remove retainer from case and gear.



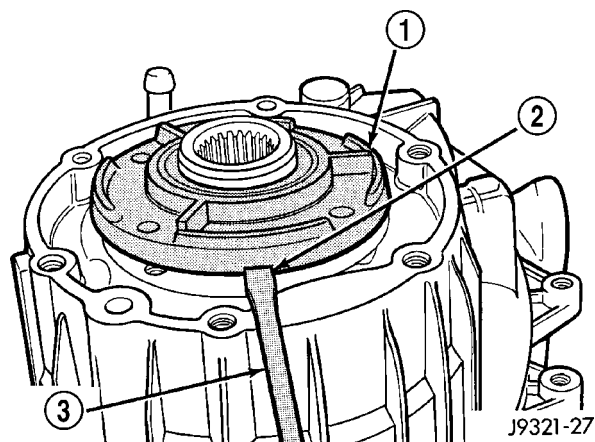
J9321-26

**Fig. 23 Front Bearing Retainer Bolt Removal**

- 1 - FRONT BEARING RETAINER



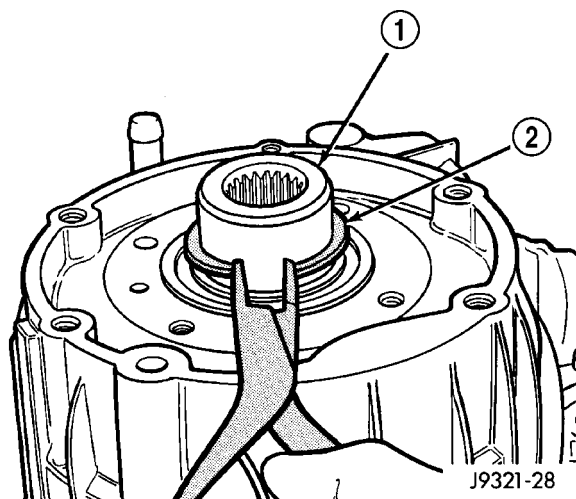
## TRANSFER CASE - NV247 (Continued)

**Fig. 24 Front Bearing Retainer Removal**

- 1 - FRONT BEARING RETAINER  
 2 - RETAINER NOTCH  
 3 - FLAT BLADE SCREWDRIVER

(4) Remove snap-ring that retains input gear shaft in front bearing (Fig. 25).

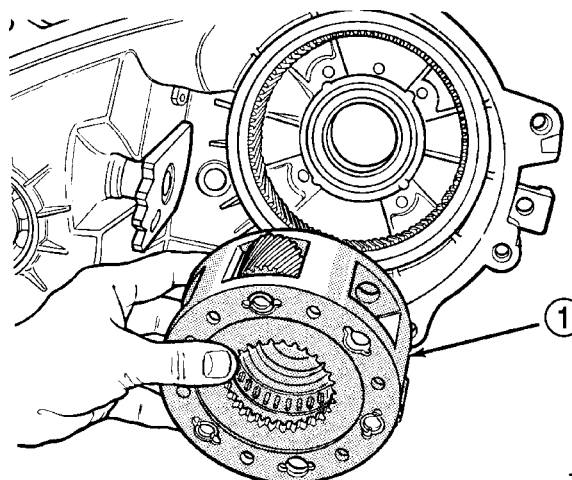
(5) Remove input and low range gear assembly (Fig. 26).

**Fig. 25 Input Gear Snap-Ring Removal**

- 1 - INPUT GEAR  
 2 - SNAP-RING

(6) Remove oil seals from following components:

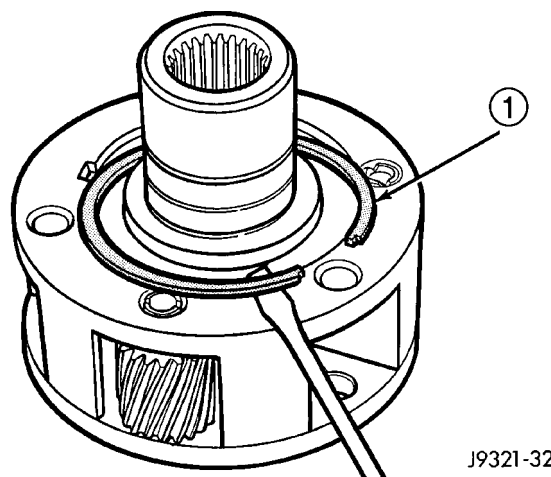
- front bearing retainer.
- rear retainer.
- case halves.

**Fig. 26 Input And Low Range Gear Assembly Removal**

- 1 - INPUT AND LOW RANGE GEAR ASSEMBLY

**INPUT AND LOW RANGE GEAR**

(1) Remove snap-ring that retains input gear in low range gear (Fig. 27).

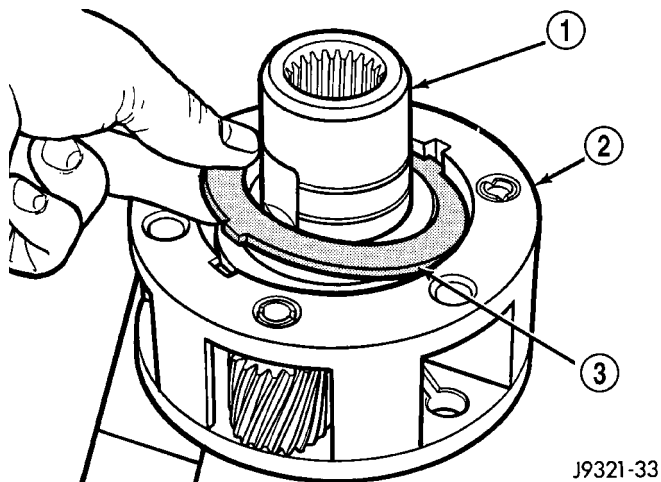
**Fig. 27 Input Gear Snap-Ring Removal**

- 1 - INPUT GEAR SNAP-RING

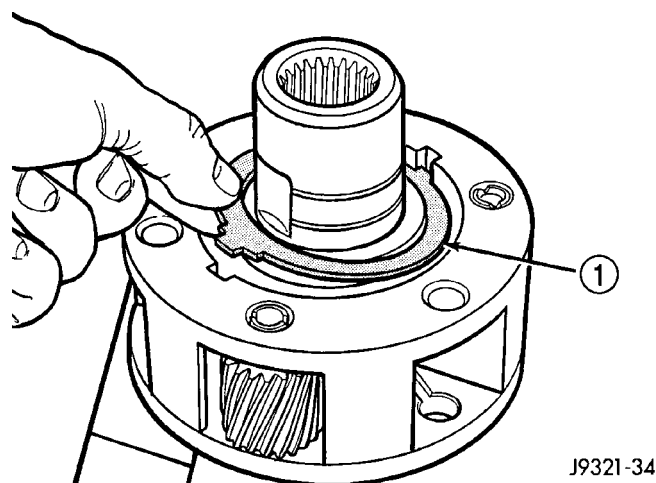


## TRANSFER CASE - NV247 (Continued)

- (2) Remove retainer (Fig. 28).
- (3) Remove front tabbed thrust washer (Fig. 29).
- (4) Remove input gear (Fig. 30).
- (5) Remove rear tabbed thrust washer from low range gear (Fig. 31).

**Fig. 28 Input Gear Retainer**

- 1 - INPUT GEAR
- 2 - LOW RANGE GEAR
- 3 - RETAINER

**Fig. 29 Front Tabbed Thrust Washer**

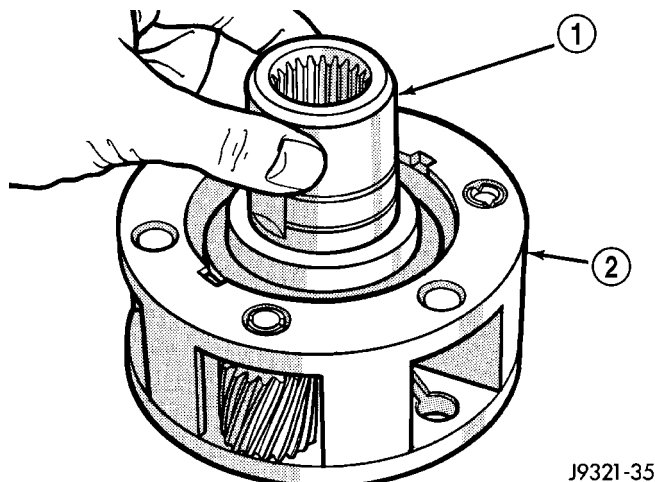
- 1 - FRONT TABBED THRUST WASHER

**CLEANING**

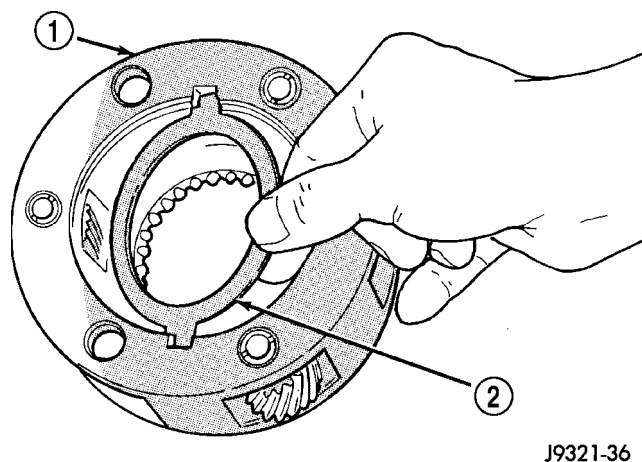
Clean the transfer case components with parts cleaning solvent. Flush the oil passages in the cases and drivetrain components with solvent. This will help remove dirt and particles from these passages.

Dry the transfer case components with compressed air or allow them to air dry on clean shop towels.

Apply compressed air through all oil passages in the cases and gear components to clear them of any residue.

**Fig. 30 Input Gear Removal**

- 1 - INPUT GEAR
- 2 - LOW RANGE GEAR

**Fig. 31 Rear Tabbed Thrust Washer Removal**

- 1 - LOW RANGE GEAR
- 2 - REAR TABBED THRUST WASHER

**INSPECTION****MAINSHAFT**

Examine the mainshaft components carefully for evidence of wear or damage.

Replace the thrust washers if worn or damaged.

Replace the mainshaft and sprocket gears if the teeth or gear bores are worn or damaged.

Replace the mainshaft bearings if worn, flat spotted, brinelled, or damaged in any way.

Replace the mainshaft if it is bent, exhibits wear or damage to the bearing surfaces, splines or gear teeth.

**INPUT AND LOW RANGE GEARS**

Inspect the low range gear pinions and pinion pins. Replace the low range gear if any of the pins or pinions are worn or damaged.

## TRANSFER CASE - NV247 (Continued)

Inspect the thrust washers, retainer, and snap-ring. Replace the snap-ring if bent, or distorted. Replace the thrust washers and retainer if worn, cracked or damaged in any way.

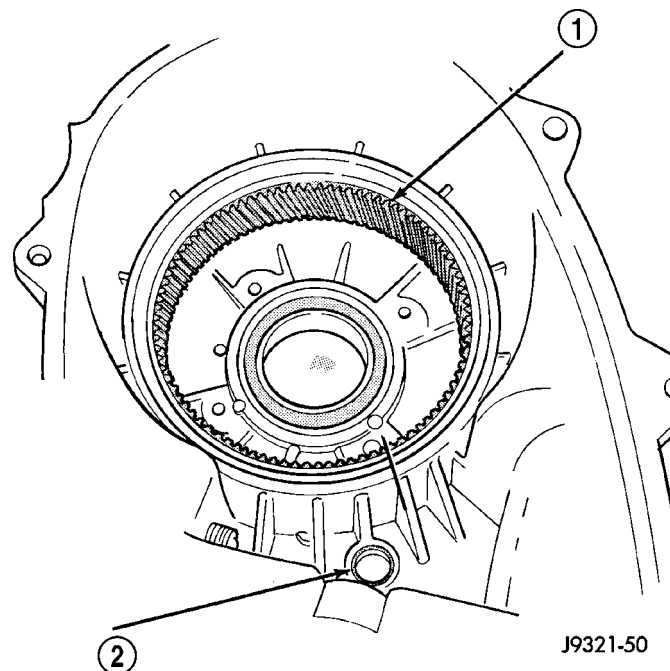
Examine the input gear carefully. Be sure the gear teeth and bearing surfaces are in good condition. Replace the gear if wear or damage is evident.

Check the input gear pilot bearing. Rotate the bearing and check for roughness or noise. Also check bearing position in the bore. The bearing should be recessed approximately 2.5 mm (0.100 in.) below the top edge of the bore. The bearing should not be seated at the bottom of the bore. Replace the bearing if worn, or roughness is evident. Replace both the gear and bearing if the bearing is a loose fit in the bore.

**GEAR CASE AND RETAINERS**

Examine both case halves and retainers carefully. Replace any retainer or case half if wear, cracks, or other damage is evident.

Check condition of the low range annulus gear and the shift rail bushing in the front case (Fig. 32). The low range annulus gear is not a serviceable part. Replace the gear and case as an assembly if the gear is loose, worn, or damaged. The shift rail bushing is a serviceable part and can be replaced if necessary.



**Fig. 32 Low Range Annulus Gear Location**

- 1 - LOW RANGE ANNULUS GEAR  
2 - SHIFT RAIL BUSHING

Check the bushing in the rear retainer. Replace the bushing if worn or scored.

Examine the sealing surfaces of both case halves and retainers. Small burrs, or scratches on these surfaces can be reduced with crocus cloth or a fine tooth file.

Examine condition of the shift rail bushing in the front case. If the bushing is worn or damaged, it can be removed with a blind hole type puller. A replacement bushing can be installed with a suitable size driver. Recess the bushing slightly below the edge of the bore but do not seat it all the into the case.

**GEARTRAIN**

Inspect the mainshaft splines, gear teeth and bearing surfaces carefully for evidence of wear, or damage. Replace the shaft if necessary. do not attempt to salvage it if damaged.

The shift rail and range fork are an assembly. Replace both parts if either is damaged. However, the nylon pads in the fork can be replaced if worn, or cracked.

Inspect the transfer case snap-rings closely. Do not attempt to salvage a distorted snap-ring by straightening or reshaping it. Replace any snap-ring that is distorted, or worn.

Inspect the low range gear, input gear and the gear thrust washers retainer, and snap-ring. The low range gear is serviced as an assembly only. Replace the gear if the case or pinions are damaged.

During inspection, also make sure the seal surface of the input gear is in good condition. Minor nicks on this surface can be reduced with crocus cloth. However, replace the gear if the seal surface is severely scored or worn.

**OIL PUMP AND PROGRESSIVE COUPLING**

The oil pump and progressive coupling are not serviceable components. Replace the coupling as an assembly if it is damaged. Replace the oil pump as an assembly if the gear teeth are worn, or if the pump has become damaged.

**BEARINGS AND SEALS**

The transfer case seals should be replaced during overhaul. Use new seals in the input gear bearing retainer, front case and rear retainer. Also replace the yoke seal washer and the detent plug O-ring.

Check condition of each transfer case bearing. Replace any bearing exhibiting signs of roughness, wear, or damage.

**ASSEMBLY**

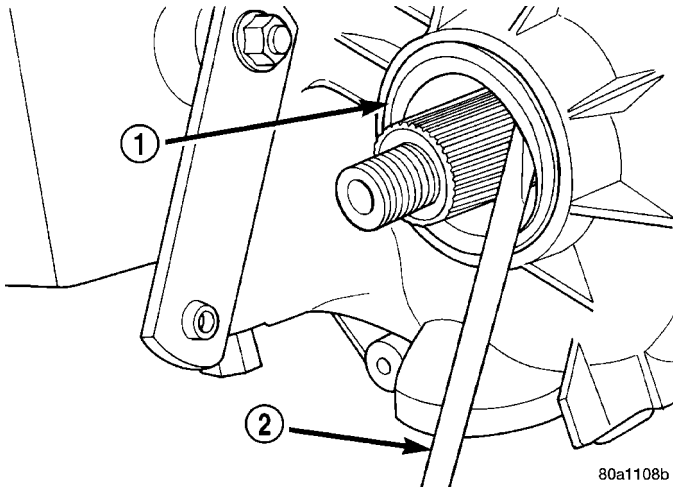
Lubricate transfer case components with Mopar® Transfer Case Lubricant or petroleum jelly (where indicated) during assembly.

## TRANSFER CASE - NV247 (Continued)

**CAUTION:** The bearing bores in various transfer case components contain oil feed holes. Make sure replacement bearings do not block the holes.

**BEARINGS AND SEALS**

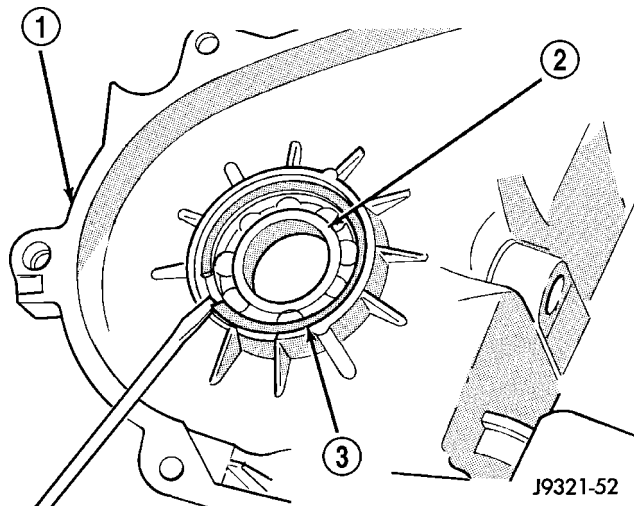
(1) Remove front output shaft seal from front case with pry tool (Fig. 33).



**Fig. 33 Remove Front Output Shaft Seal**

- 1 - OUTPUT SHAFT SEAL  
2 - PRYBAR

(2) Remove snap-ring that retains front output shaft bearing in front case (Fig. 34).



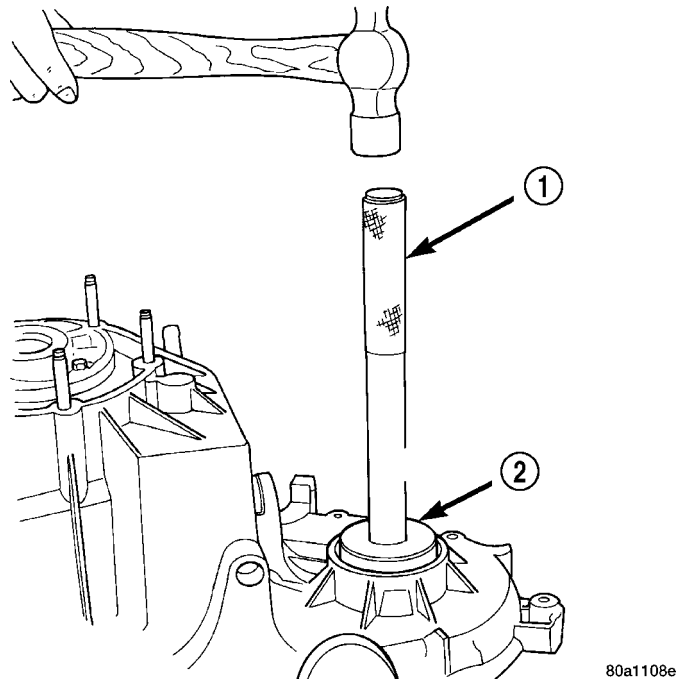
**Fig. 34 Output Shaft Front Bearing Snap-Ring Removal**

- 1 - FRONT CASE  
2 - OUTPUT SHAFT FRONT BEARING  
3 - BEARING SNAP-RING

(3) Using tool 6953, remove bearing from front case (Fig. 35).

(4) Using tool 6953, install new bearing.

(5) Install snap-ring to hold bearing into case.



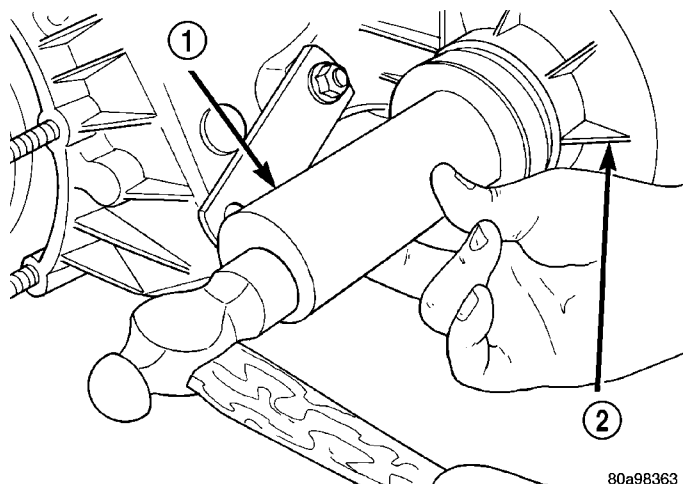
**Fig. 35 Remove Output Shaft Front Bearing**

- 1 - HANDLE C-4171  
2 - REMOVER/INSTALLER 6953

(6) Install new front output seal in front case with Installer Tool 6952-A as follows:

(a) Place new seal on tool. **Garter spring on seal goes toward interior of case.**

(b) Start seal in bore with light taps from hammer (Fig. 36). Once seal is started, continue tapping seal into bore until installer tool bottoms against case.



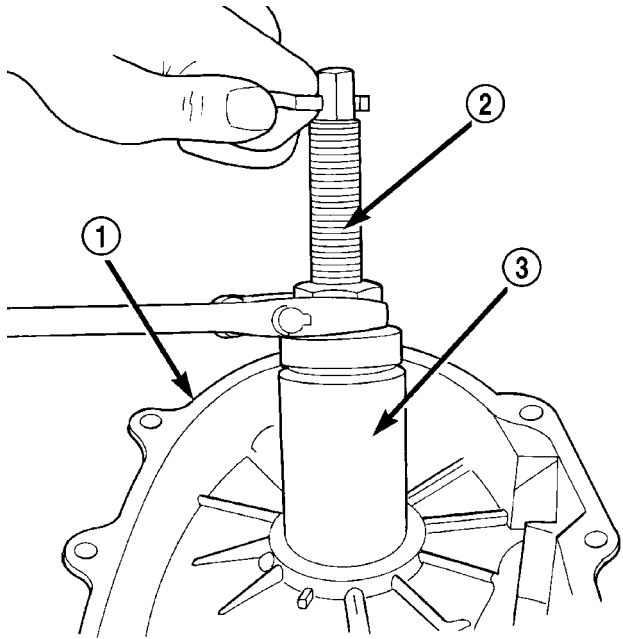
**Fig. 36 Front Output Seal Installation**

- 1 - INSTALLER 6952-A  
2 - TRANSFER CASE

## TRANSFER CASE - NV247 (Continued)

(7) Remove the output shaft rear bearing with the screw and jaws from Remover L-4454 and Cup 8148 (Fig. 37).

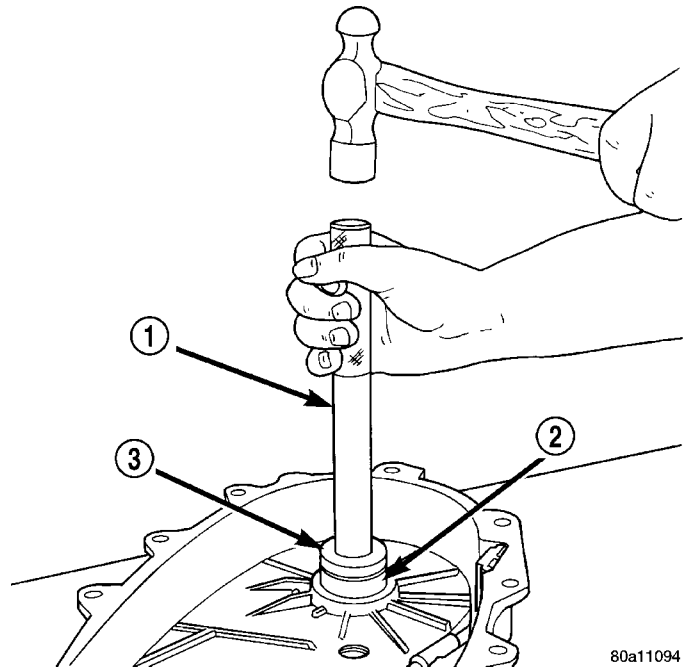
(8) Install new bearing with Tool Handle C-4171 and Installer 5066 (Fig. 38). **The bearing bore is chamfered at the top. Install the bearing so it is flush with the lower edge of this chamfer (Fig. 39).**



80a98366

**Fig. 37 Output Shaft Rear Bearing Removal**

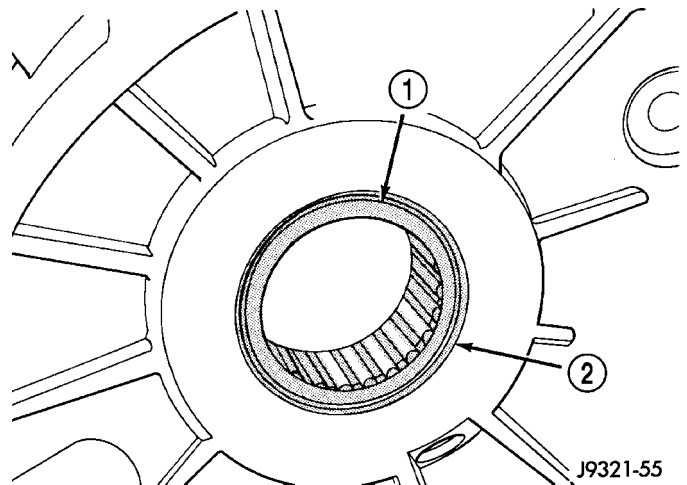
- 1 - REAR CASE
- 2 - SPECIAL TOOL L-4454-1 AND L-4454-3
- 3 - SPECIAL TOOL 8148



80a11094

**Fig. 38 Output Shaft Rear Bearing Installation**

- 1 - HANDLE C-4171
- 2 - OUTPUT SHAFT INNER BEARING
- 3 - INSTALLER 5066



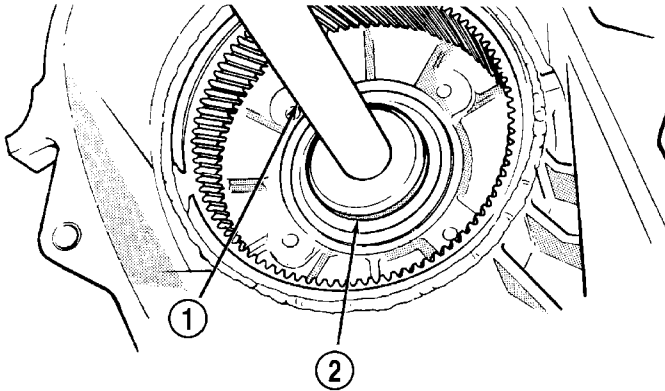
J9321-55

**Fig. 39 Output Shaft Rear Bearing Installation Depth**

- 1 - BEARING (SEATED) AT LOWER EDGE OF CHAMFER
- 2 - CHAMFER

## TRANSFER CASE - NV247 (Continued)

(9) Using Remover C-4210 and Handle C-4171, drive input shaft bearing from inside the annulus gear opening in the case. (Fig. 40).

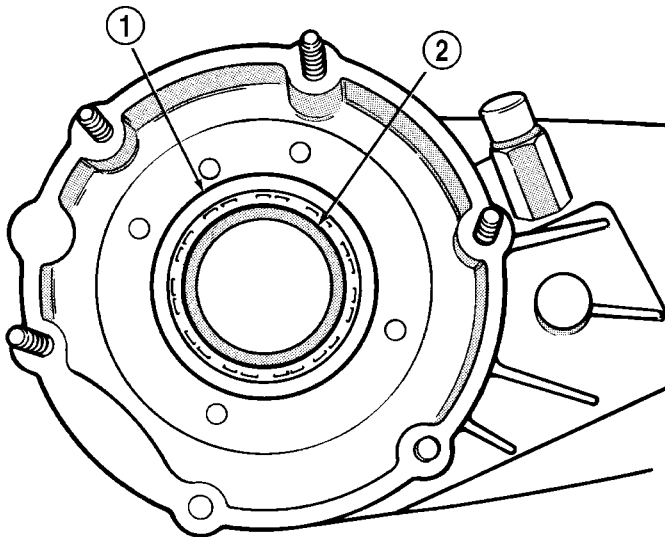


J9521-43

**Fig. 40 Input Shaft Bearing Removal**

- 1 - SPECIAL TOOL C-4171  
2 - SPECIAL TOOL C-4210

(10) Install locating ring on new bearing.  
(11) Position case so forward end is facing upward.  
(12) Using Remover C-4210 and Handle C-4171, drive input shaft bearing into case. The bearing locating ring must be fully seated against case surface (Fig. 41).



J8921-219

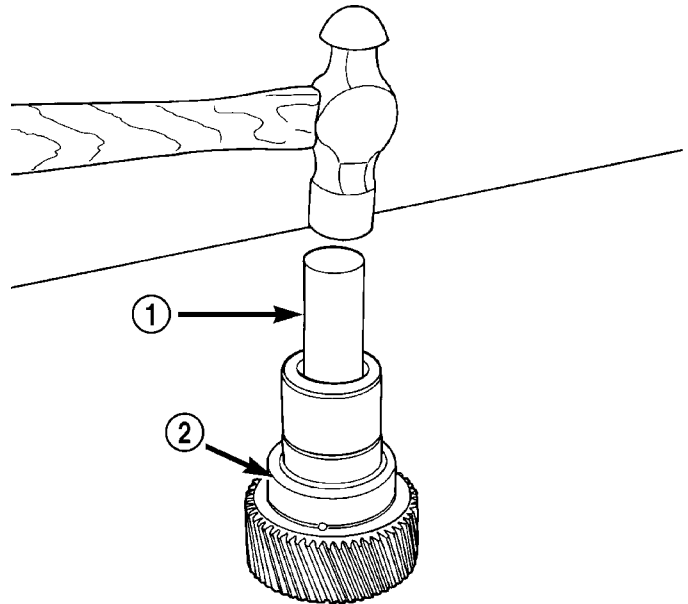
**Fig. 41 Seating Input Shaft Bearing**

- 1 - SNAP-RING  
2 - INPUT SHAFT BEARING

(13) Remove input gear pilot bearing by inserting a suitably sized drift into the splined end of the input

gear and driving the bearing out with the drift and a hammer (Fig. 42).

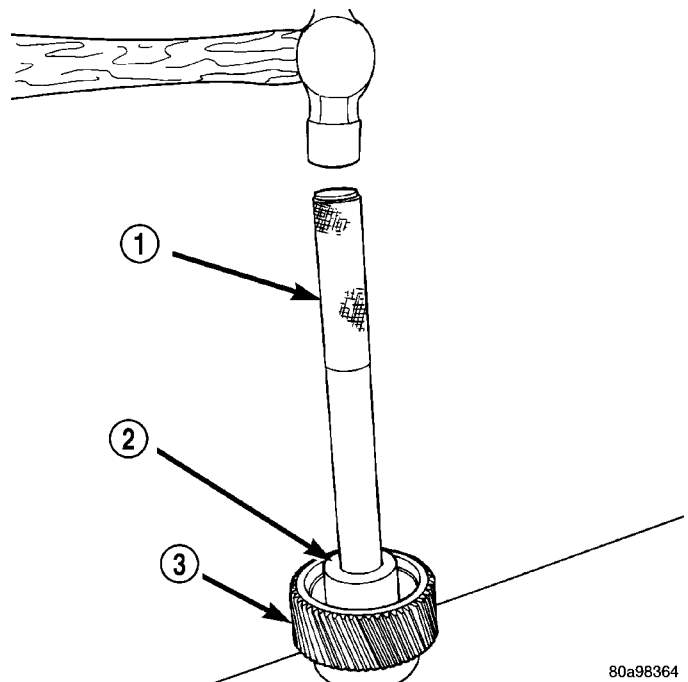
(14) Install new pilot bearing with Installer 8128 and Handle C-4171 (Fig. 43).



80a11090

**Fig. 42 Remove Input Gear Pilot Bearing**

- 1 - DRIFT  
2 - INPUT GEAR



80a98364

**Fig. 43 Install Input Gear Pilot Bearing**

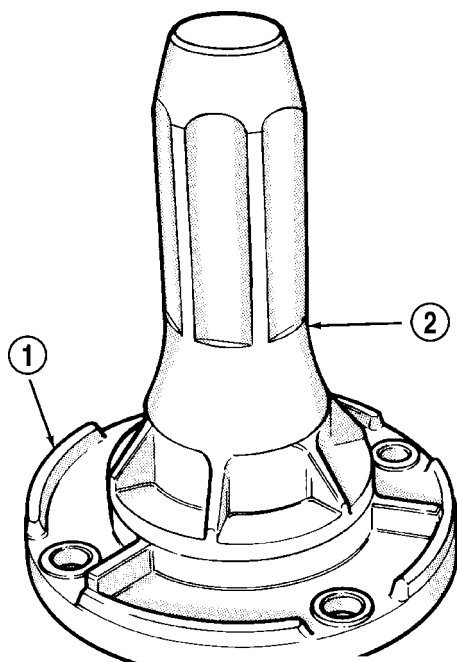
- 1 - HANDLE C-4171  
2 - INSTALLER 8128  
3 - INPUT GEAR



## TRANSFER CASE - NV247 (Continued)

(15) Remove front bearing retainer seal with suitable pry tool.

(16) Install new front bearing retainer with Installer 7884 (Fig. 44).



J9521-41

**Fig. 44 Install Front Bearing Retainer Seal**

- 1 - FRONT BEARING RETAINER
- 2 - SPECIAL TOOL 7884

## INPUT AND LOW RANGE GEAR

(1) Lubricate gears and thrust washers (Fig. 45) with transfer case lubricant.

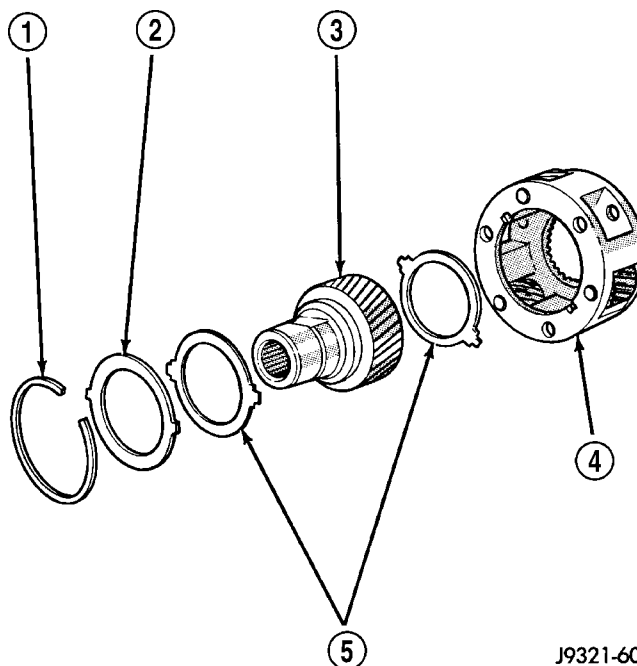
(2) Install first thrust washer in low range gear (Fig. 45). Be sure washer tabs are properly aligned in gear notches.

(3) Install input gear in low range gear. Be sure input gear is fully seated.

(4) Install remaining thrust washer in low range gear and on top of input gear. Be sure washer tabs are properly aligned in gear notches.

(5) Install retainer on input gear and install snap-ring.

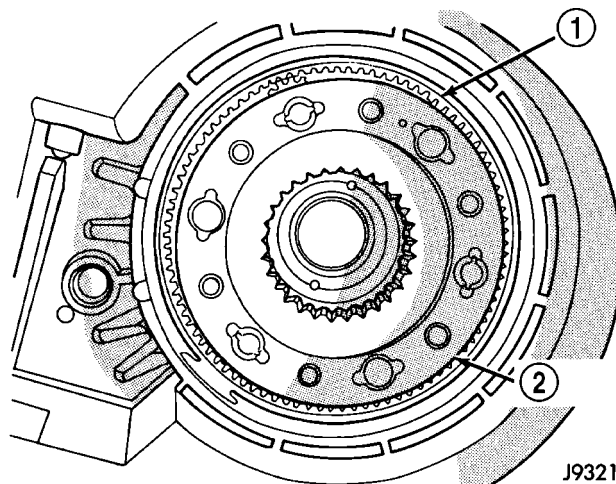
(6) Align and install low range/input gear assembly in front case (Fig. 46). Be sure low range gear pinions are engaged in annulus gear and that input gear shaft is fully seated in front bearing.



J9321-60

**Fig. 45 Input/Low Range Gear Components**

- 1 - SNAP-RING
- 2 - RETAINER PLATE
- 3 - INPUT GEAR
- 4 - LOW RANGE GEAR
- 5 - THRUST WASHERS



J9321-61

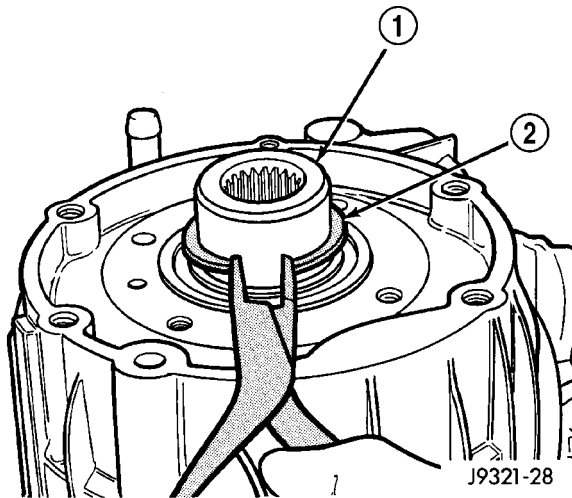
**Fig. 46 Input/Low Range Gear Installation**

- 1 - ANNULUS GEAR
- 2 - INPUT/LOW RANGE GEAR



## TRANSFER CASE - NV247 (Continued)

(7) Install snap-ring to hold input/low range gear into front bearing (Fig. 47).



**Fig. 47 Install Input Gear Snap-Ring**

- 1 - INPUT GEAR  
2 - SNAP-RING

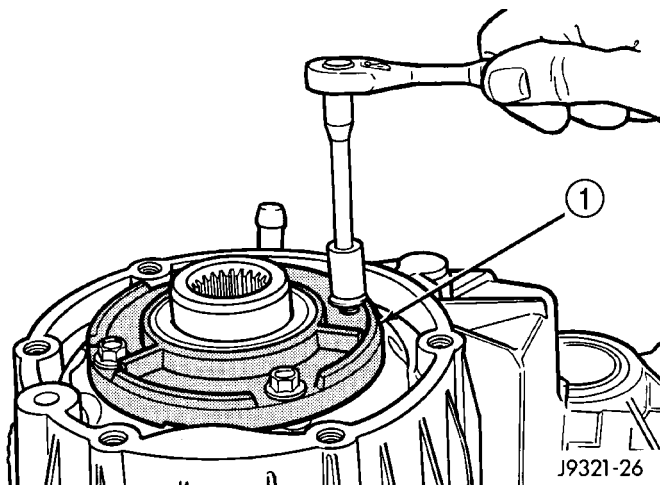
(8) Clean gasket sealer residue from retainer and inspect retainer for cracks or other damage.

(9) Apply a 3 mm (1/8 in.) bead of Mopar® gasket maker or silicone adhesive to sealing surface of retainer.

(10) Align cavity in seal retainer with fluid return hole in front of case.

**CAUTION:** Do not block fluid return cavity on sealing surface of retainer when applying Mopar® gasket maker or silicone adhesive sealer. Seal failure and fluid leak can result.

(11) Install bolts to hold retainer to transfer case (Fig. 48). Tighten to 21 N·m (16 ft. lbs.) of torque.



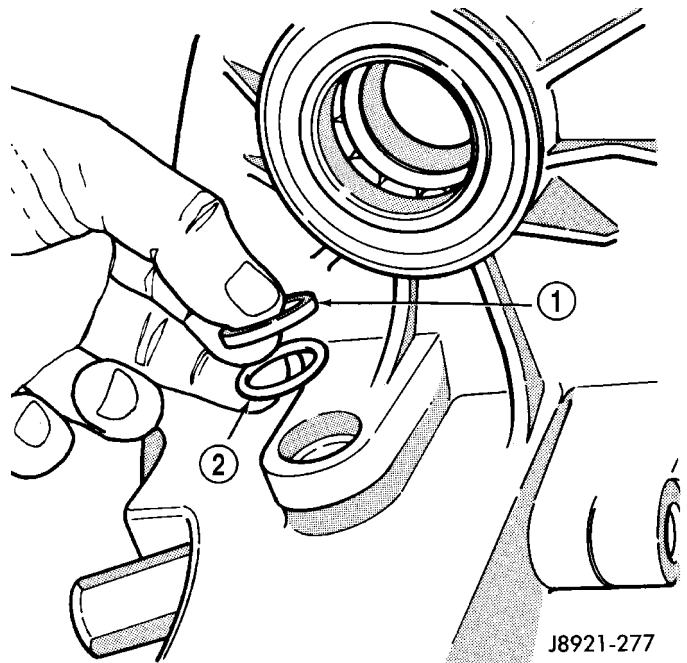
**Fig. 48 Install Front Bearing Retainer**

- 1 - FRONT BEARING RETAINER

## SHIFT FORKS AND MAINSHAFT

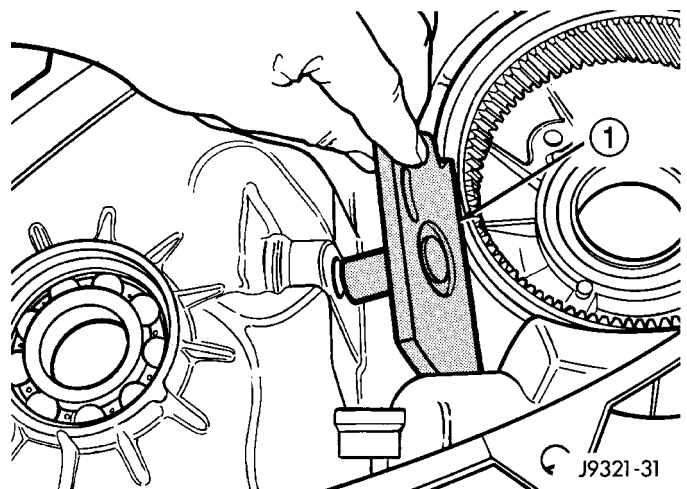
(1) Install new sector shaft O-ring and bushing (Fig. 49).

(2) Install shift sector (Fig. 50).



**Fig. 49 Sector O-Ring And Bushing Installation**

- 1 - SECTOR BUSHING  
2 - O-RING

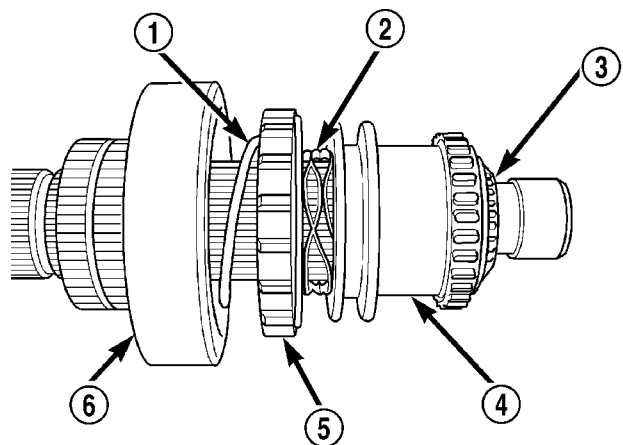


**Fig. 50 Shift Sector Installation**

- 1 - SHIFT SECTOR

## TRANSFER CASE - NV247 (Continued)

(3) Install locking clutch spring, locking clutch, blockout spring, and range clutch sleeve, to mainshaft as shown in (Fig. 51). Install snap ring.



80ba7a52

**Fig. 51 Range Clutch Sleeve, Blockout Spring, Locking Clutch and Spring**

- 1 - LOCKING CLUTCH SPRING
- 2 - BLOCKOUT SPRING
- 3 - SNAP-RING
- 4 - RANGE CLUTCH SLEEVE
- 5 - LOCKING CLUTCH
- 6 - DRIVE SPROCKET HUB

(4) Install drive sprocket hub to mainshaft and manually load the needle bearings.

(5) Install new pads on range fork, if necessary.

(6) Install range shift fork to range clutch sleeve. Install mainshaft/range shift fork assembly into transfer case and input planetary assembly. Rotate fork until it engages with slot in shift sector.

(7) Install shift rail to shift range fork and transfer case housing.

(8) Rotate shift sector to NEUTRAL position.

(9) Install new O-ring on detent plug (Fig. 52).

(10) Lubricate detent plunger with transfer case lubricant or light coat of petroleum jelly.

(11) Install detent plunger, spring and plug (Fig. 52).

(12) Verify that plunger is properly engaged in sector.

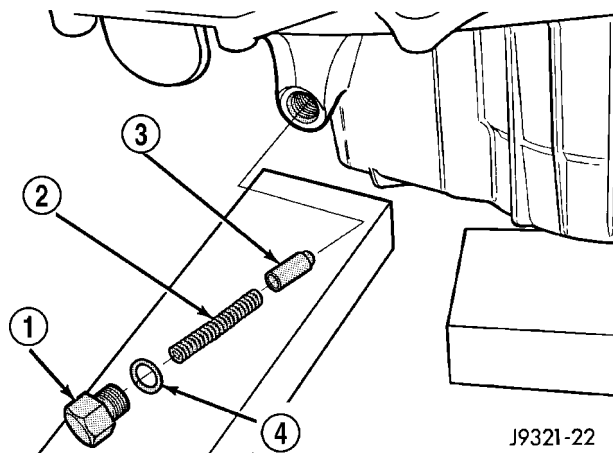
## FRONT OUTPUT SHAFT AND DRIVE CHAIN

(1) Lubricate front output shaft-sprocket assembly, drive chain and drive sprocket with transfer case lubricant.

(2) Assemble drive chain, drive sprocket and front output shaft (Fig. 53).

(3) Start drive sprocket on mainshaft.

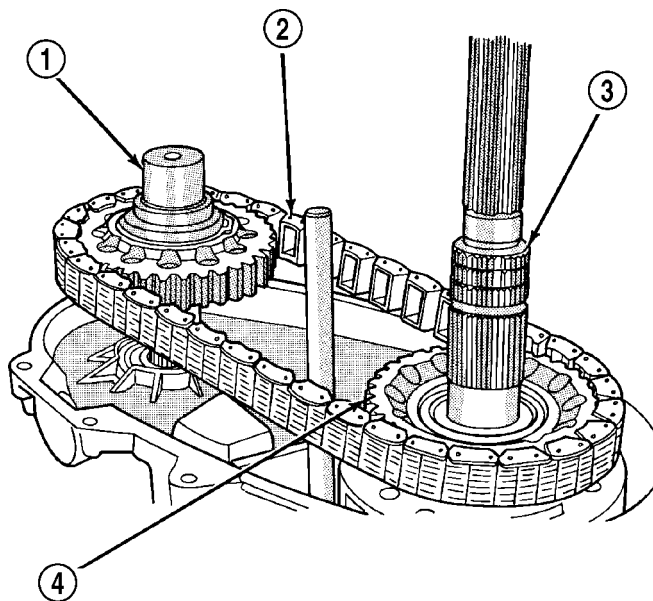
(4) Guide front shaft into bearing and drive sprocket onto mainshaft drive gear (Fig. 53).



J9321-22

**Fig. 52 Shift Detent Components**

- 1 - DETENT PLUG
- 2 - DETENT SPRING
- 3 - DETENT PLUNGER
- 4 - PLUG O-RING



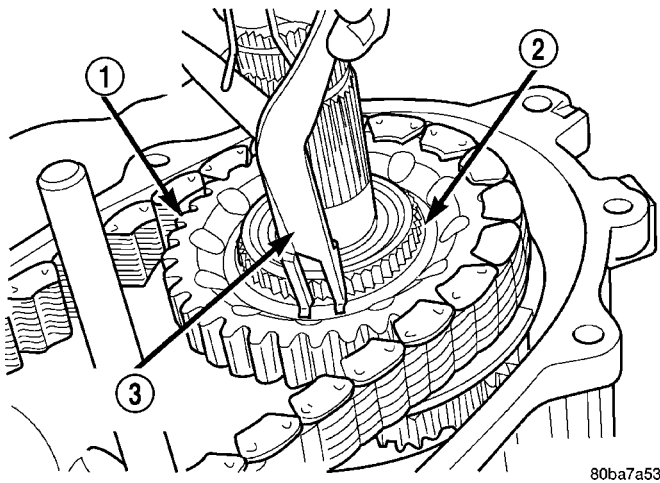
J9321-72

**Fig. 53 Installing Drive Chain, Front Output Shaft And Drive Sprocket**

- 1 - FRONT OUTPUT SHAFT
- 2 - DRIVE CHAIN
- 3 - MAINSHAFT
- 4 - DRIVE GEAR

## TRANSFER CASE - NV247 (Continued)

(5) Install drive sprocket snap-ring (Fig. 54).

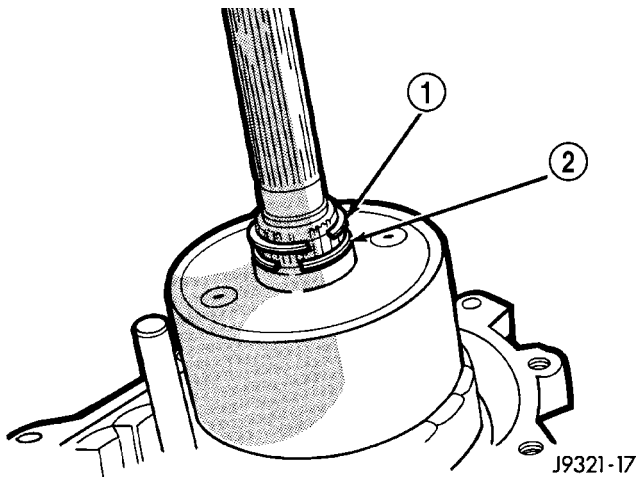


80ba7a53

**Fig. 54 Installing Drive Sprocket Snap-Ring**

- 1 - MAINSHAFT DRIVE SPROCKET
- 2 - DRIVE SPROCKET SNAP-RING
- 3 - SNAP-RING PLIERS

- (6) Install roller bearings if removed.
- (7) Install progressive coupling (Fig. 55).
- (8) Install the progressive coupling thrust washer over the output shaft and against the coupling.
- (9) Install the oil pump locating snap-ring onto the output shaft.

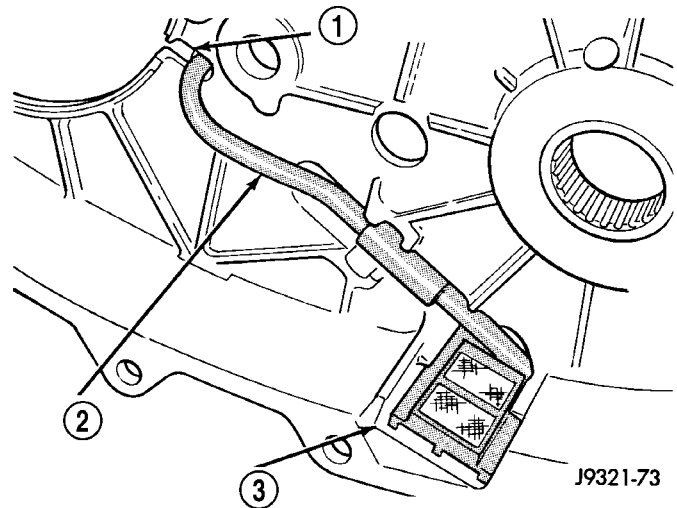


J9321-17

**Fig. 55 Progressive Coupling Installation**

- 1 - SNAP-RING
- 2 - PROGRESSIVE COUPLING

(10) Install oil pickup tube in rear case. Be sure tube is seated in case notch as shown (Fig. 56).

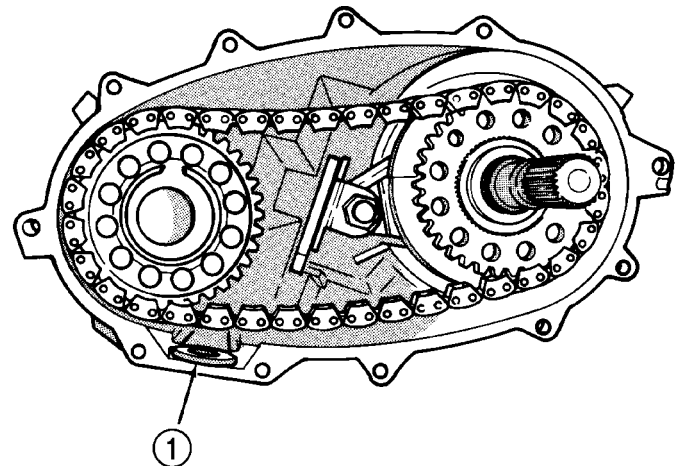


J9321-73

**Fig. 56 Oil Pickup Tube Installation**

- 1 - CASE NOTCH
- 2 - OIL PICKUP TUBE ASSEMBLY
- 3 - CASE SLOT

(11) Install magnet in front case pocket (Fig. 57).



J8921-288

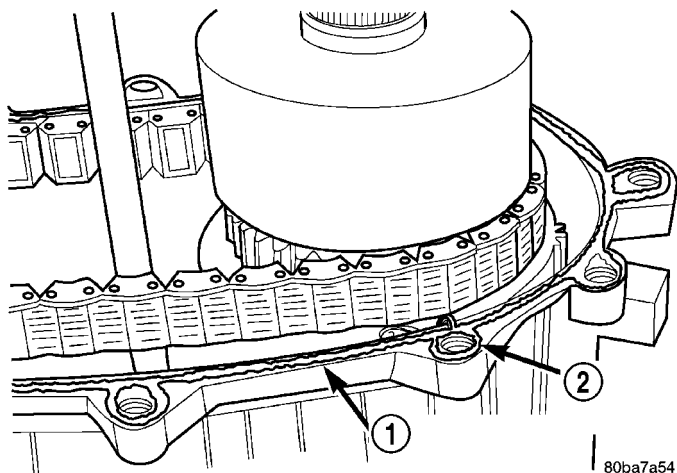
**Fig. 57 Installing Case Magnet**

- 1 - MAGNET

## TRANSFER CASE - NV247 (Continued)

(12) Clean sealing flanges of front case and rear case with a wax and grease remover.

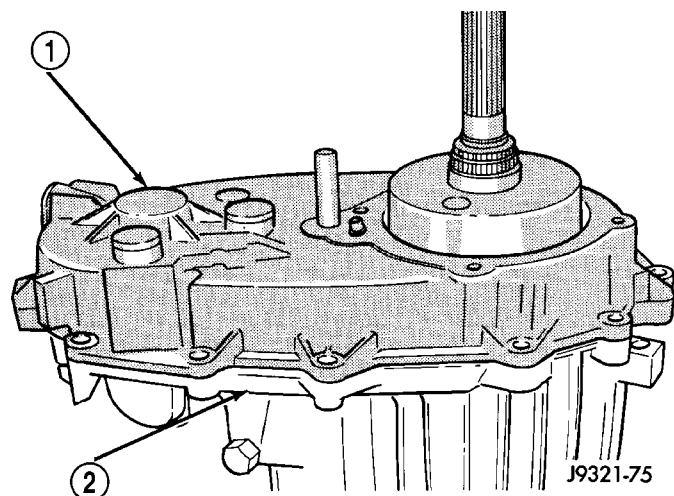
(13) Apply 3 mm (1/8 in.) wide bead of Mopar® gasket maker or silicone adhesive sealer to mounting flange of front case. Work sealer bead around bolt holes as shown (Fig. 58).



**Fig. 58 Applying Sealer To Front Case Flange**

- 1 - FRONT CASE FLANGE  
2 - SEALER BEAD

(14) Align and install rear case on front case (Fig. 59).



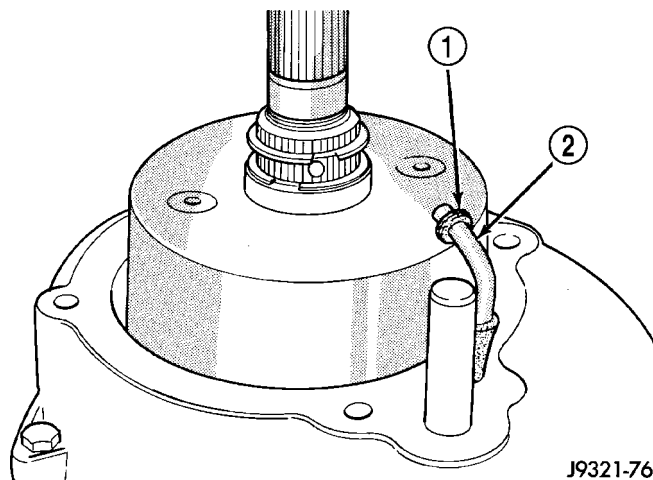
**Fig. 59 Rear Case Installation**

- 1 - REAR CASE  
2 - FRONT CASE

(15) Verify that oil pickup tube is still seated in case notch and tube end is pointed toward mainshaft (Fig. 60).

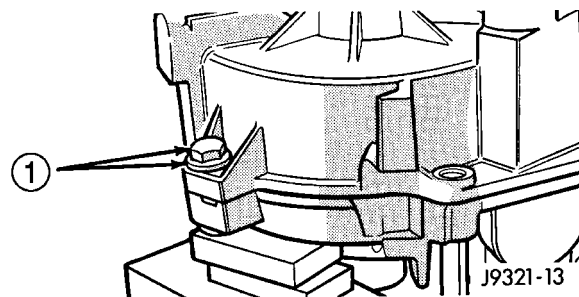
(16) Install case attaching bolts. Alignment bolts at each end of case are only ones requiring washers (Fig. 61).

(17) Tighten case bolts to 27-34 N·m (20-25 ft. lbs.) torque.



**Fig. 60 Checking Position Of Oil Pickup Tube**

- 1 - TUBE O-RING  
2 - CORRECT PICKUP TUBE POSITION

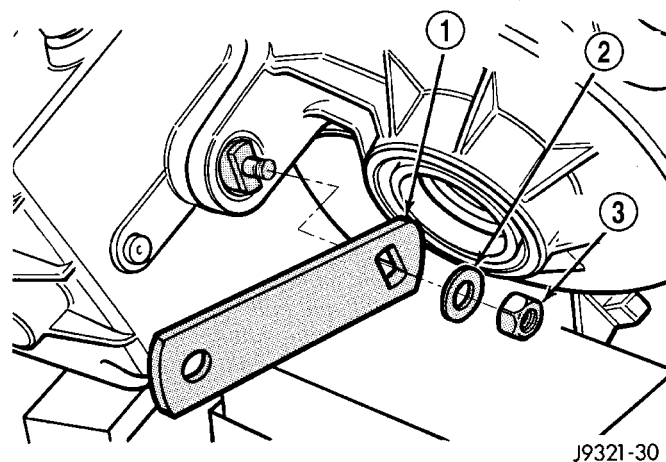


**Fig. 61 Alignment Bolt**

- 1 - ALIGNMENT BOLT AND WASHER (AT EACH END OF CASE)

## COMPANION FLANGE AND RANGE LEVER

(1) Install range lever, washer and locknut on sector shaft (Fig. 62). Tighten locknut to 27-34 N·m (20-25 ft. lbs.) torque.



**Fig. 62 Range Lever Installation - Typical**

- 1 - RANGE LEVER  
2 - WASHER  
3 - LOCKNUT



## TRANSFER CASE - NV247 (Continued)

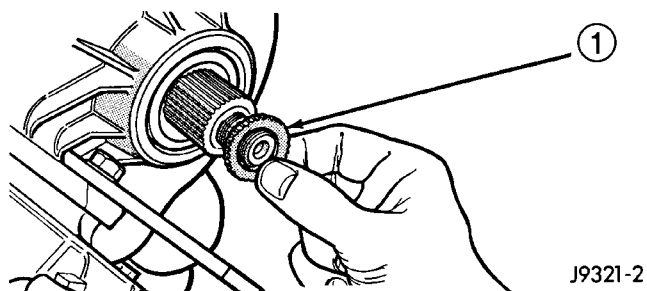
(2) Install new seal washer on front output shaft (Fig. 63).

(3) Lubricate flange hub with transfer case lubricant and install flange on front shaft.

(4) Install new seal washer on front shaft.

(5) Install companion flange and new nut on front output shaft.

(6) Tighten flange nut to 122-176 N·m (90-130 ft. lbs.) torque. Use Tool C-3281, or similar tool to hold flange while tightening yoke nut.



**Fig. 63 Flange Seal Washer Installation**

1 - YOKE SEAL WASHER

### REAR RETAINER AND OIL PUMP

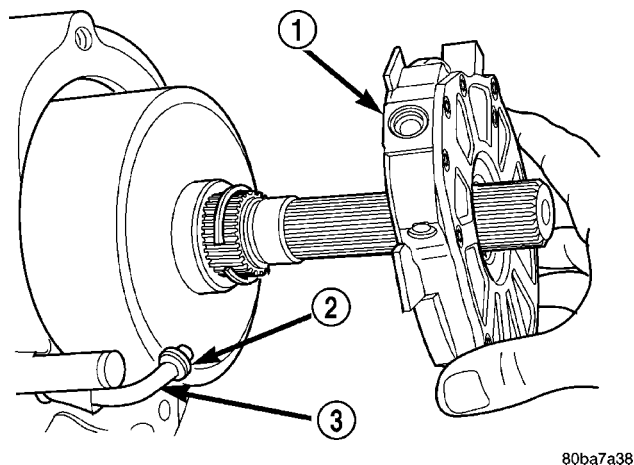
(1) Install new O-ring on flanged end of oil pickup tube.

(2) Install oil pump (Fig. 64).

(3) Insert oil pickup tube in pump (Fig. 65).

(4) Install rear bearing on mainshaft (Fig. 65). Locating ring groove in bearing goes toward end of mainshaft.

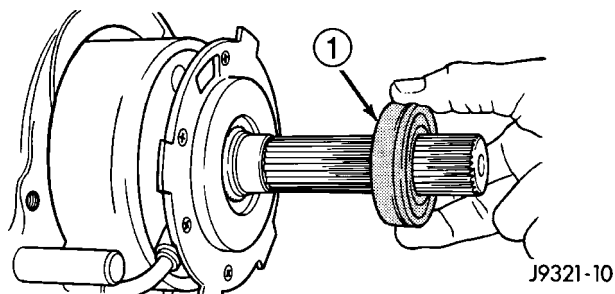
(5) Install rear bearing retaining snap-ring (Fig. 66).



**Fig. 64 Installing Oil Pump**

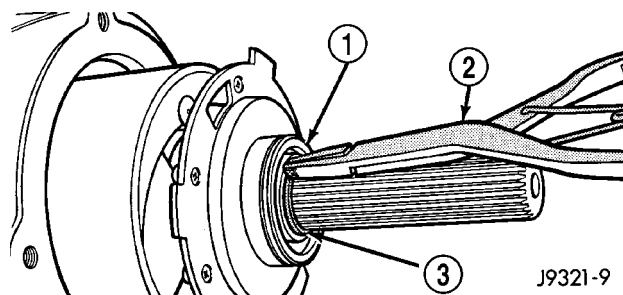
1 - OIL PUMP  
2 - TUBE O-RING  
3 - OIL PICKUP TUBE

(6) Install rear bearing locating ring in rear retainer, if ring was removed during overhaul.



**Fig. 65 Rear Bearing Installation**

1 - REAR BEARING



**Fig. 66 Rear Bearing Snap-Ring Installation**

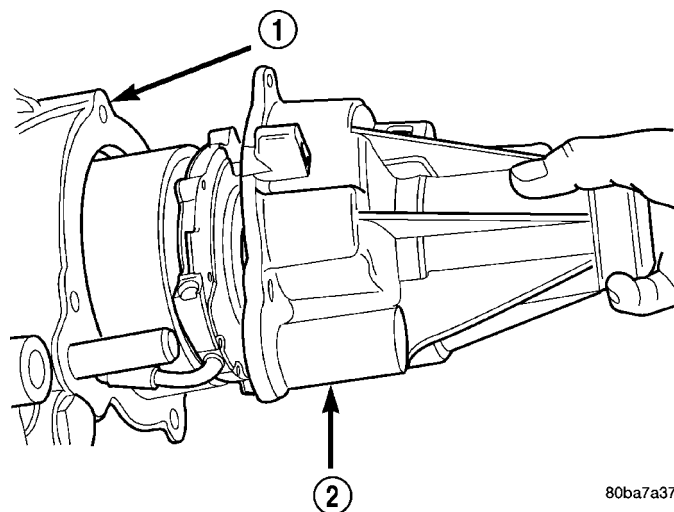
1 - REAR BEARING  
2 - SNAP-RING PLIERS  
3 - SNAP-RING

(7) Apply 3 mm (1/8 in.) wide bead of Mopar® gasket maker or silicone adhesive sealer to mounting surface of rear retainer. Allow sealer to set-up slightly before proceeding.

(8) Slide rear retainer onto mainshaft (Fig. 67).

(9) Spread rear bearing locating ring and slide rear retainer into place on rear case (Fig. 68).

(10) Install and tighten rear retainer bolts to 27-34 N·m (20-25 ft. lbs.).

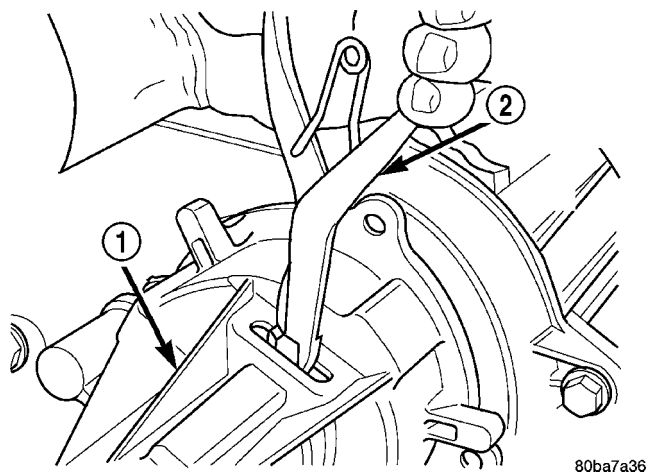


**Fig. 67 Rear Retainer Installation**

1 - REAR CASE  
2 - REAR RETAINER

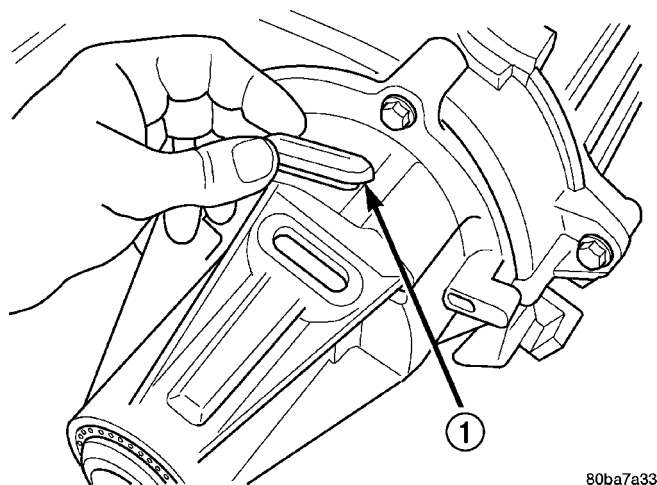
## TRANSFER CASE - NV247 (Continued)

(11) Install rubber access plug (Fig. 69).



**Fig. 68 Engaging Rear Bearing Locating Ring**

- 1 - REAR RETAINER  
2 - PARALLEL JAW SNAP-RING PLIERS



**Fig. 69 Installing Rubber Access Plug**

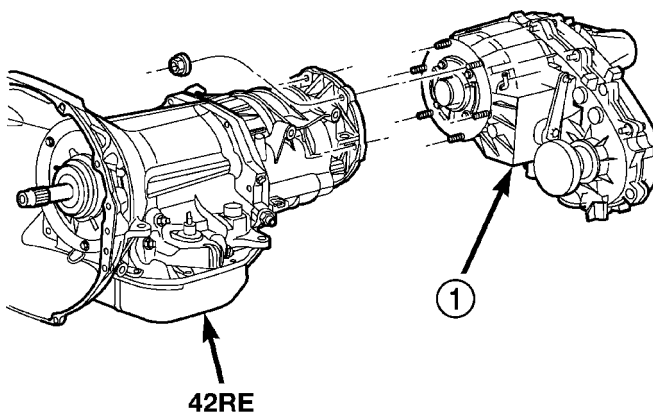
- 1 - PLUG

## FINAL ASSEMBLY

- (1) Install drain plug. Tighten plug to 41-54 N·m (30-40 ft. lbs.) torque.
- (2) Level transfer case and fill it with Mopar® Transfer Case Lubricant. Correct fill level is to bottom edge of fill plug hole.
- (3) Install and tighten fill plug to 41-54 N·m (30-40 ft. lbs.) torque.

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Mount transfer case on a transmission jack.
- (2) Secure transfer case to jack with chains.
- (3) Position transfer case under vehicle.
- (4) Align transfer case and transmission shafts and install transfer case on transmission.
- (5) Install and tighten transfer case attaching nuts to 35 N·m (26 ft. lbs.) torque (Fig. 70).



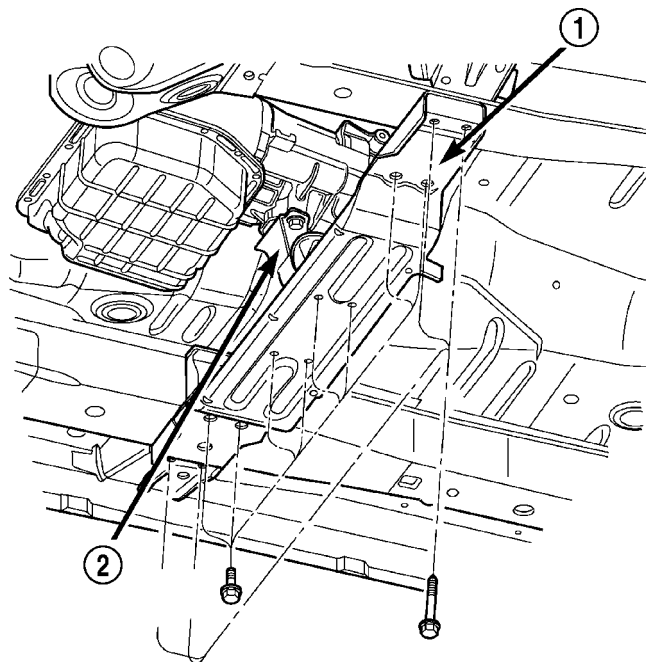
**Fig. 70 Install Transfer Case**

- 1 - NV247 TRANSFER CASE

(6) Connect front propeller shaft and install rear propeller shaft. (Refer to 3 - DIFFERENTIAL & DRIVELINE/PROPELLER SHAFT/PROPELLER SHAFT - INSTALLATION)

(7) Fill transfer case with correct fluid. Check transmission fluid level. Correct as necessary.

(8) Install rear crossmember (Fig. 71) and skid plate, if equipped. Tighten crossmember bolts to 41 N·m (30 ft. lbs.) torque.



**Fig. 71 Crossmember Installation**

- 1 - CROSSMEMBER  
2 - REAR TRANSMISSION MOUNT

- (9) Remove transmission jack and support stand.
- (10) Verify transfer case is in NEUTRAL. Connect shift cable to transfer case range lever.
- (11) Lower vehicle and verify transfer case shift operation.
- (12) Adjust the transfer case shift cable, if necessary.



## TRANSFER CASE - NV247 (Continued)

## SPECIFICATIONS

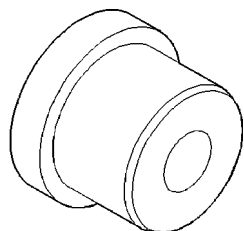
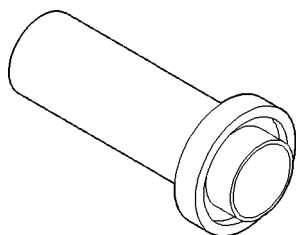
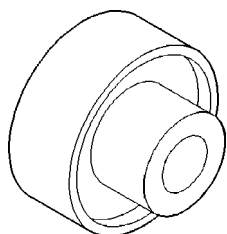
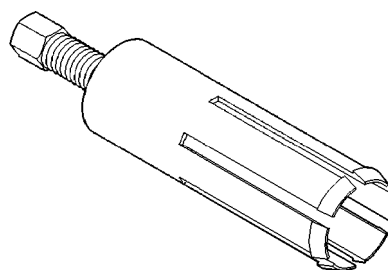
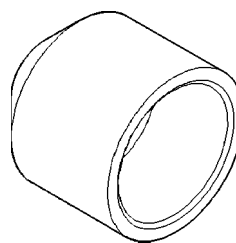
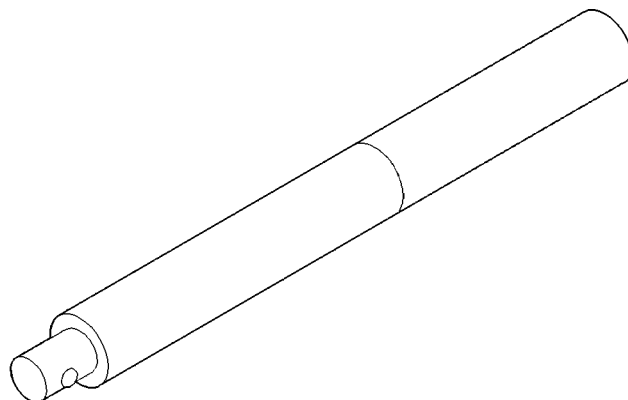
## TRANSFER CASE - NV247

## TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS

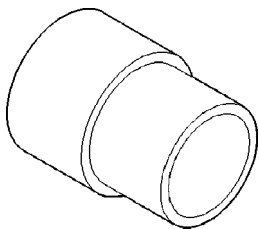
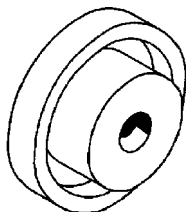
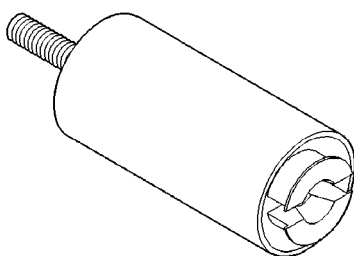
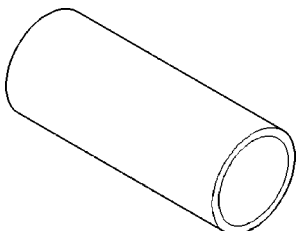
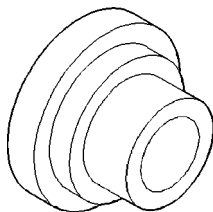
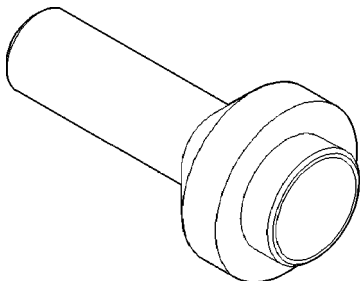
DESCRIPTION	N-m	Ft. Lbs.	In. Lbs.
Bolt, crossmember	41-47	30.2-34.7	-
Plug, Detent	16-24	11.8-17.7	-
Plugs, drain/fill	20-34	15-25	-
Bolts, front brg. retainer	16-24	11.8-17.7	-
Bolts, case half	27-34	19.9-25	-
Nut, companion flange	122-176	90-130	-
Bolts, rear extension	27-34	19.9-25	-
Lock-nut, shift	27-34	19.9-25	-
Nuts, T-case mount stud	33-41	24.3-30.2	-

## SPECIAL TOOLS

## TRANSFER CASE - NV247

**Installer, Bearing - 5066****Installer, Seal - 6952-A****Installer, Bearing - 6953****Remover, Bushing - 6957****Installer, Seal - C-3995-A****Handle - C-4171**

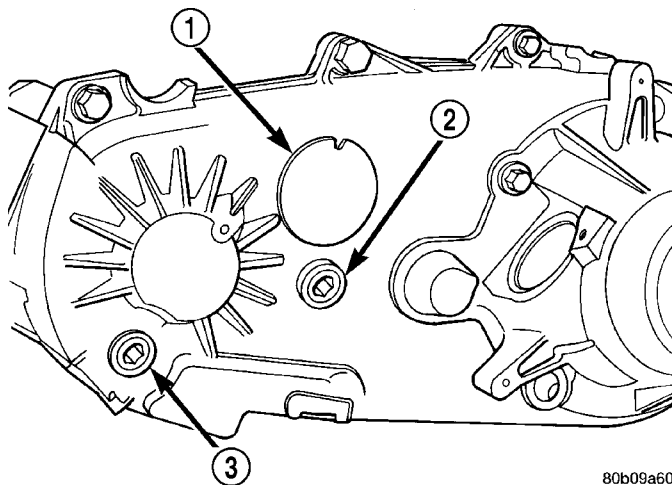
## TRANSFER CASE - NV247 (Continued)

**Installer, Bushing - 8145****Remover, Bearing - C-4210****Remover, Bearing - L-4454****Cup - 8148****Installer, Bearing - 8128****Installer, Seal - 7884**

## FLUID

STANDARD PROCEDURE - FLUID DRAIN/  
REFILL

The fill and drain plugs are both in the rear case (Fig. 72).



80b09a60

**Fig. 72 Fill/Drain Plug and I.D. Tag Location - Typical**

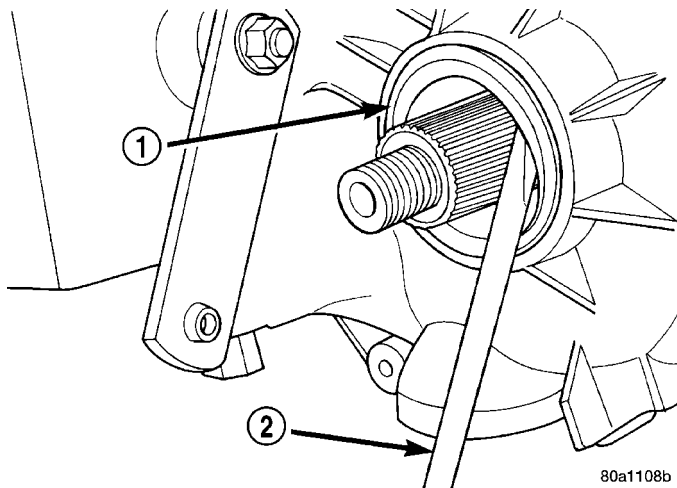
- 1 - I.D. TAG
- 2 - FILL PLUG
- 3 - DRAIN PLUG

- (1) Raise vehicle.
- (2) Position drain pan under transfer case.
- (3) Remove drain and fill plugs and drain lubricant completely.
- (4) Install drain plug. Tighten plug to 20-34 N·m (15-25 ft. lbs.).
- (5) Remove drain pan.
- (6) Fill transfer case to bottom edge of fill plug opening with Mopar® Transfer Case Lubricant.
- (7) Install and tighten fill plug to 20-34 N·m (15-25 ft. lbs.).
- (8) Lower vehicle.

## FRONT OUTPUT SHAFT SEAL

### REMOVAL

- (1) Raise vehicle on hoist.
- (2) Remove front propeller shaft. (Refer to 3 - DIFFERENTIAL & DRIVELINE/PROPELLER SHAFT/PROPELLER SHAFT - REMOVAL)
- (3) Remove front output shaft companion flange.
- (4) Remove seal from front case with pry tool (Fig. 73).

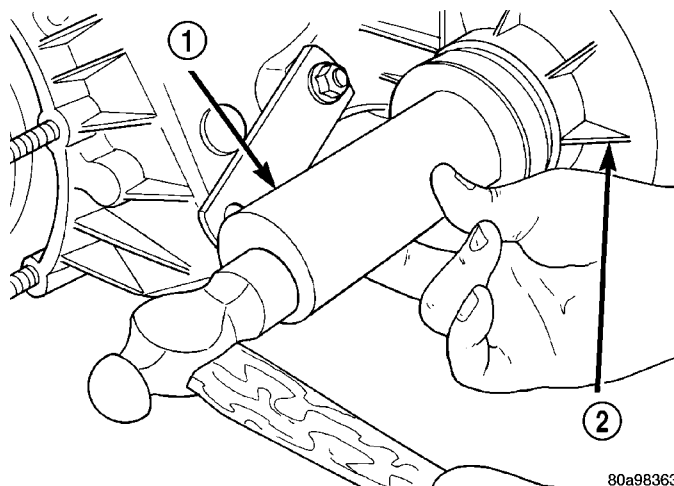


**Fig. 73 Remove Front Output Shaft Seal**

- 1 - OUTPUT SHAFT SEAL  
2 - PRYBAR

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Install new front output seal in front case with Installer Tool 6952-A as follows:
  - (a) Place new seal on tool. Garter spring on seal goes toward interior of case.
  - (b) Start seal in bore with light taps from hammer (Fig. 74). Once seal is started, continue tapping seal into bore until installer tool seats against case.
- (2) Install companion flange and torque nut to 122-176 N·m (90-130 ft. lbs.).
- (3) Install front propeller shaft. (Refer to 3 - DIFFERENTIAL & DRIVELINE/PROPELLER SHAFT/PROPELLER SHAFT - INSTALLATION)



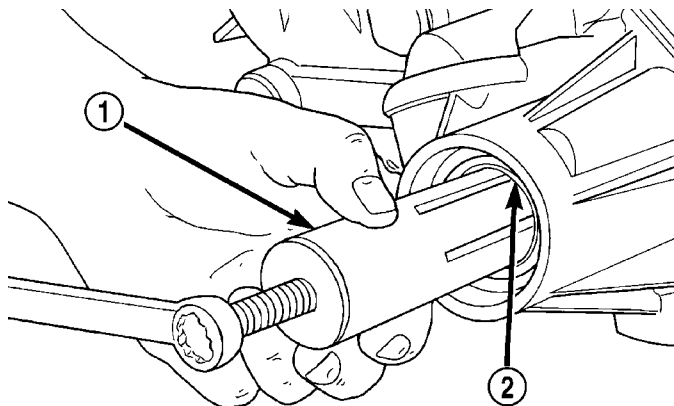
**Fig. 74 Front Output Seal Installation**

- 1 - INSTALLER 6952-A  
2 - TRANSFER CASE

## REAR RETAINER BUSHING AND SEAL

### REMOVAL

- (1) Raise vehicle on hoist.
- (2) Remove rear propeller shaft. (Refer to 3 - DIFFERENTIAL & DRIVELINE/PROPELLER SHAFT/PROPELLER SHAFT - REMOVAL)
- (3) Using a suitable pry tool or slide-hammer mounted screw, remove the rear retainer seal.
- (4) Using Remover 6957, remove bushing from rear retainer (Fig. 75).



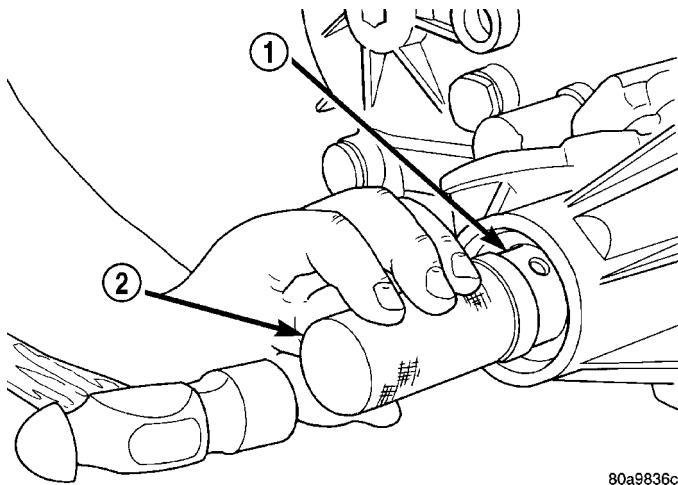
**Fig. 75 Rear Retainer Bushing Removal**

- 1 - REMOVER 6957  
2 - REAR RETAINER BUSHING

## REAR RETAINER BUSHING AND SEAL (Continued)

**INSTALLATION**

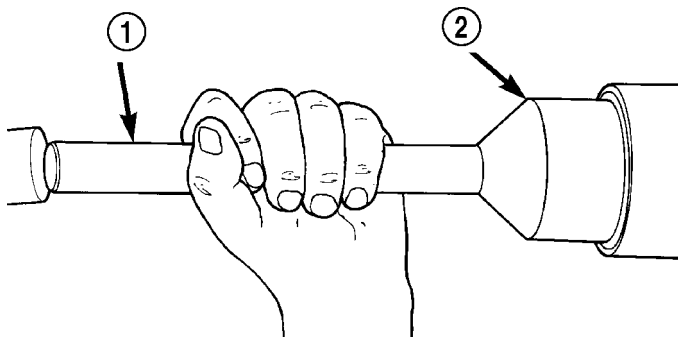
- (1) Clean fluid residue from sealing surface and inspect for defects.
- (2) Position replacement bushing in rear retainer with fluid port in bushing aligned with slot in retainer.
- (3) Using Installer 8145, drive bushing into retainer until installer seats against case (Fig. 76).
- (4) Using Installer C-3995-A, install seal in rear retainer (Fig. 77).



80a9836c

**Fig. 76 Rear Retainer Bushing Installation**

- 1 - REAR RETAINER BUSHING
- 2 - INSTALLER 8145



80a983a7

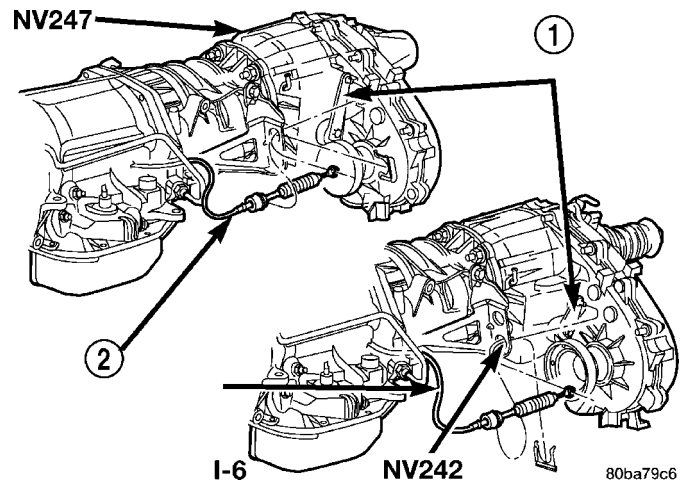
**Fig. 77 Install Rear Retainer Seal**

- 1 - SPECIAL TOOL C-4171
- 2 - SPECIAL TOOL C-3995-A

- (5) Install rear propeller shaft. (Refer to 3 - DIFFERENTIAL & DRIVELINE/PROPELLER SHAFT/PROPELLER SHAFT - INSTALLATION)
- (6) Verify proper fluid level.
- (7) Lower vehicle.

**SHIFT CABLE****REMOVAL**

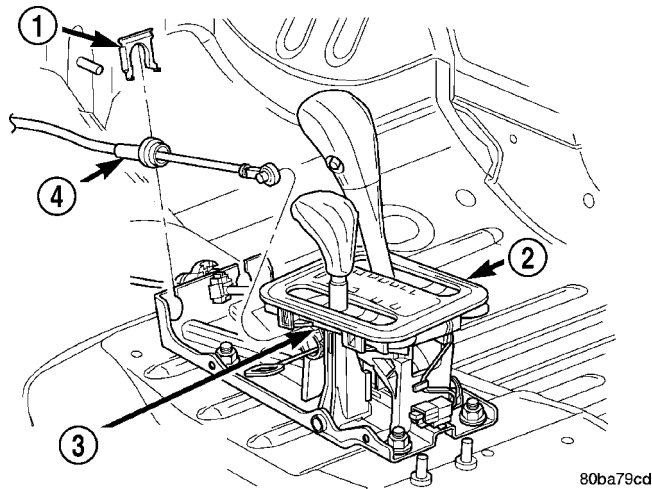
- (1) Shift transfer case into NEUTRAL.
- (2) Raise vehicle.
- (3) Disconnect the shift cable eyelet from the transfer case shift lever (Fig. 78).
- (4) Remove shift cable from the cable support bracket.

**Fig. 78 Transfer Case Shift Cable at Transfer Case**

- 1 - TRANSFER CASE SHIFT LEVER
- 2 - TRANSFER CASE SHIFT CABLE

- (5) Lower vehicle.
- (6) Remove any necessary console parts for access to shift lever assembly and shift cable.
- (7) Disconnect cable at shift lever and shifter assembly bracket (Fig. 79).
- (8) Remove the nuts holding the shift cable seal plate to the floor pan (Fig. 80).
- (9) Pull cable through floor panel opening.
- (10) Remove transfer case shift cable from vehicle.

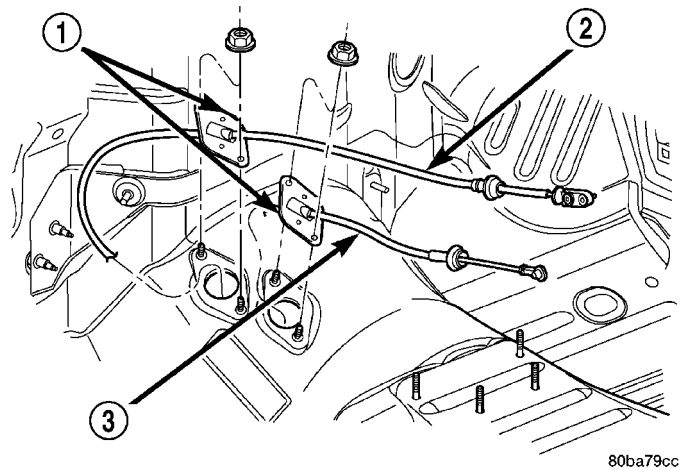
## SHIFT CABLE (Continued)

**Fig. 79 Transfer Case Shift Cable at Shifter**

- 1 - CLIP
- 2 - SHIFTER
- 3 - TRANSFER CASE SHIFT LEVER PIN
- 4 - TRANSFER CASE SHIFT CABLE

**INSTALLATION**

- (1) Route cable through hole in floor pan.
- (2) Install seal plate to studs in floor pan.
- (3) Install nuts to hold seal plate to floor pan (Fig. 80). Tighten nuts to 7 N·m (65 in.lbs.).
- (4) Install the transfer case shift cable to the shifter assembly bracket. Seat cable in bracket and install clip (Fig. 79).
- (5) Verify the transfer case shift lever (at console) is in the NEUTRAL position.
- (6) Snap the cable onto the shift lever pin (Fig. 79).

**Fig. 80 Shift Cables at Floor Pan**

- 1 - SEAL PLATES
- 2 - TRANSMISSION SHIFT CABLE
- 3 - TRANSFER CASE SHIFT CABLE

- (7) Raise the vehicle.
- (8) Install the shift cable to the shift cable support bracket and install clip (Fig. 78).
- (9) Verify that the transfer case is still in the NEUTRAL position.
- (10) Snap the shift cable onto the transfer case shift lever (Fig. 78).
- (11) Lower vehicle.
- (12) Verify correct transfer case operation in all ranges.
- (13) Install any console parts removed for access to transfer case shift cable.

# TIRES/WHEELS

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>TIRES/WHEELS</b>		<b>SPECIFICATIONS</b>	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - TIRE AND		TIRES .....	10
WHEEL RUNOUT .....	1	SPECIFICATIONS - .....	10
STANDARD PROCEDURE		<b>SPARE TIRE</b>	
STANDARD PROCEDURE - TIRE AND		DESCRIPTION	
WHEEL BALANCE .....	2	DESCRIPTION - SPARE / TEMPORARY	
STANDARD PROCEDURE - MATCH		TIRE .....	11
MOUNTING .....	4	DESCRIPTION - FULL SIZE, SPARE WHEEL	
STANDARD PROCEDURE - TIRE ROTATION	5	WITH MATCHING TIRE .....	11
STANDARD PROCEDURE - WHEEL		<b>WHEELS</b>	
INSTALLATION .....	5	DESCRIPTION .....	11
<b>TIRES</b>		DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - WHEEL	
DESCRIPTION		INSPECTION .....	11
DESCRIPTION - TIRES .....	5	STANDARD PROCEDURE - WHEEL	
DESCRIPTION - RADIAL-PLY TIRES .....	6	REPLACEMENT .....	11
DESCRIPTION - TIRE INFLATION		SPECIFICATIONS	
PRESSURES .....	6	TORQUE CHART .....	12
DESCRIPTION - TIRE PRESSURE FOR		<b>STUDS</b>	
HIGH SPEED .....	7	REMOVAL .....	12
DESCRIPTION - REPLACEMENT TIRES	7	INSTALLATION .....	12
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING		<b>TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM</b>	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - PRESSURE		DESCRIPTION .....	13
GAUGES .....	7	OPERATION .....	13
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - TREAD WEAR		DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - TIRE PRESSURE	
INDICATORS .....	7	MONITORING SYSTEM .....	13
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - TIRE WEAR		SPECIFICATIONS	
PATTERNS .....	8	TORQUE CHART .....	13
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - TIRE NOISE		<b>SENSOR</b>	
OR VIBRATION .....	8	STANDARD PROCEDURE - TIRE PRESSURE	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - TIRE/VEHICLE		SENSOR RETRAIN .....	14
LEAD .....	8	REMOVAL - TIRE PRESSURE SENSOR/	
STANDARD PROCEDURE - REPAIRING		TRANSMITTER .....	14
LEAKS .....	8	INSTALLATION - TIRE PRESSURE SENSOR/	
CLEANING .....	10	TRANSMITTER .....	15

## TIRES/WHEELS

### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - TIRE AND WHEEL RUNOUT

Radial runout is the difference between the high and low points on the tire or wheel (Fig. 1).

Lateral runout is the **wobble** of the tire or wheel.

Radial runout of more than 1.5 mm (.060 inch) measured at the center line of the tread may cause the vehicle to shake.

Lateral runout of more than 2.0 mm (.080 inch) measured near the shoulder of the tire may cause the vehicle to shake.

Sometimes radial runout can be reduced. Relocate the wheel and tire assembly on the mounting studs (See Method 1). If this does not reduce runout to an acceptable level, the tire can be rotated on the wheel. (See Method 2).

### METHOD 1 (RELOCATE WHEEL ON HUB)

(1) Drive vehicle a short distance to eliminate tire flat spotting from a parked position.

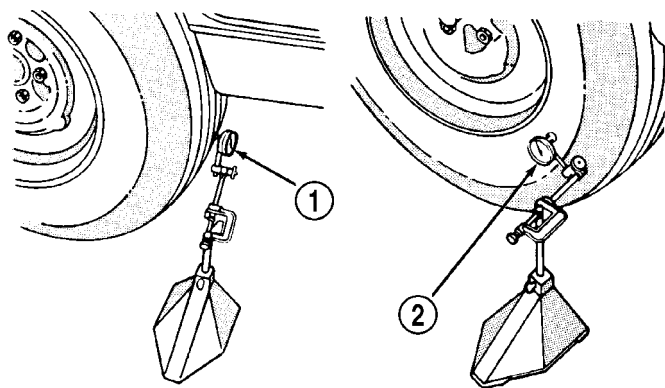
(2) Check wheel bearings and adjust if adjustable or replace if necessary.

(3) Check the wheel mounting surface.

(4) Relocate wheel on the mounting, two studs over from the original position.



## TIRES/WHEELS (Continued)



J9022-4

**Fig. 1 Checking Tire/Wheel/Hub Runout**

- 1 - RADIAL RUNOUT  
2 - LATERAL RUNOUT

(5) Tighten wheel nuts until all are properly torqued, to eliminate brake distortion.

(6) Check radial runout. If still excessive, mark tire sidewall, wheel, and stud at point of maximum runout and proceed to Method 2.

**METHOD 2 (RELOCATE TIRE ON WHEEL)**

**NOTE:** Rotating the tire on wheel is particularly effective when there is runout in both tire and wheel.

(1) Remove tire from wheel and mount wheel on service dynamic balance machine.

(2) Check wheel radial runout (Fig. 2) and lateral runout (Fig. 3).

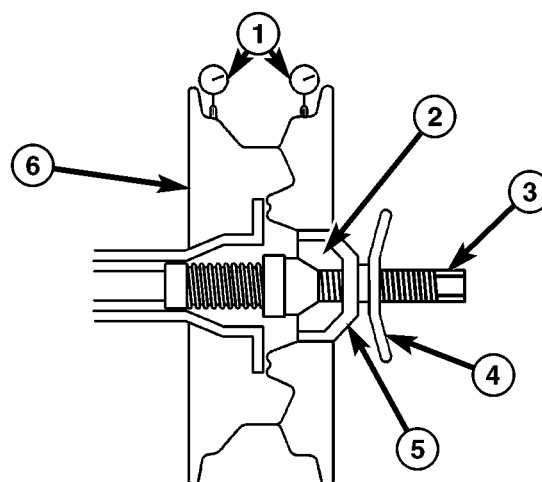
- **STEEL WHEELS:** Radial runout 0.040 in., Lateral runout 0.045 in. (average-maximum)

- **ALUMINUM WHEELS:** Radial runout 0.030 in., Lateral runout 0.035 in. (average-maximum)

(3) If point of greatest wheel lateral runout is near original chalk mark, remount tire 180 degrees. Recheck runout or match mount, (Refer to 22 - TIRES/WHEELS - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

**STANDARD PROCEDURE****STANDARD PROCEDURE - TIRE AND WHEEL BALANCE**

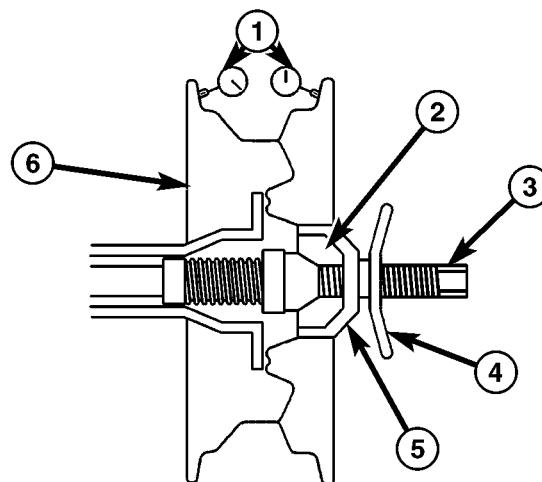
It is recommended that a two plane service dynamic balancer be used when a tire and wheel assembly require balancing. Refer to balancer operation instructions for proper cone mounting procedures. Typically use front cone mounting method for



80f2f241

**Fig. 2 RADIAL RUNOUT**

- 1 - DIAL INDICATORS  
2 - MOUNTING CONE  
3 - SPINDLE SHAFT  
4 - WING NUT  
5 - PLASTIC CUP  
6 - WHEEL



80f2f27d

**Fig. 3 LATERAL RUNOUT**

- 1 - DIAL INDICATORS  
2 - MOUNTING CONE  
3 - SPINDLE SHAFT  
4 - WING NUT  
5 - PLASTIC CUP  
6 - WHEEL

steel wheels. For aluminum wheel use back cone mounting method without cone spring.

**NOTE:** Static should be used only when a two plane balancer is not available.

**NOTE:** Cast aluminum and forged aluminum wheels require coated balance weights and special alignment equipment.

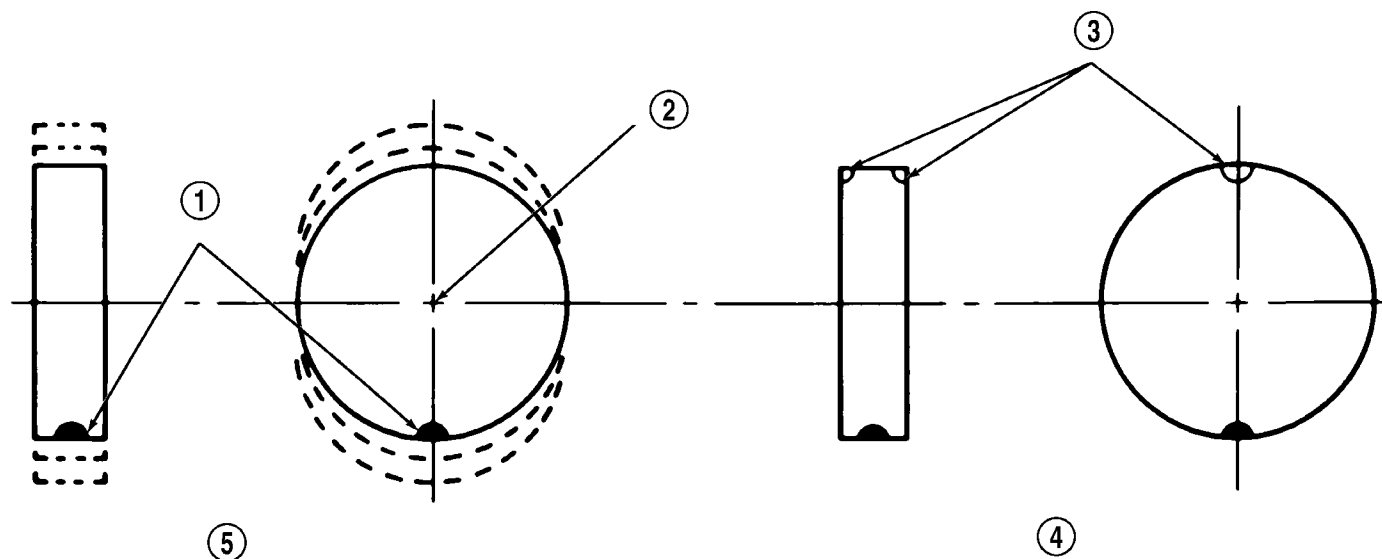
## TIRES/WHEELS (Continued)

Wheel balancing can be accomplished with either on or off vehicle equipment. When using on-vehicle balancing equipment, remove the opposite wheel/tire. Off-vehicle balancing is recommended.

For static balancing, find the location of the heavy spot causing the imbalance. Counter balance wheel directly opposite the heavy spot. Determine weight

required to counter balance the area of imbalance. Place half of this weight on the **inner** rim flange and the other half on the **outer** rim flange (Fig. 4).

For dynamic balancing, the balancing equipment is designed to locate the amount of weight to be applied to both the inner and outer rim flange (Fig. 5).

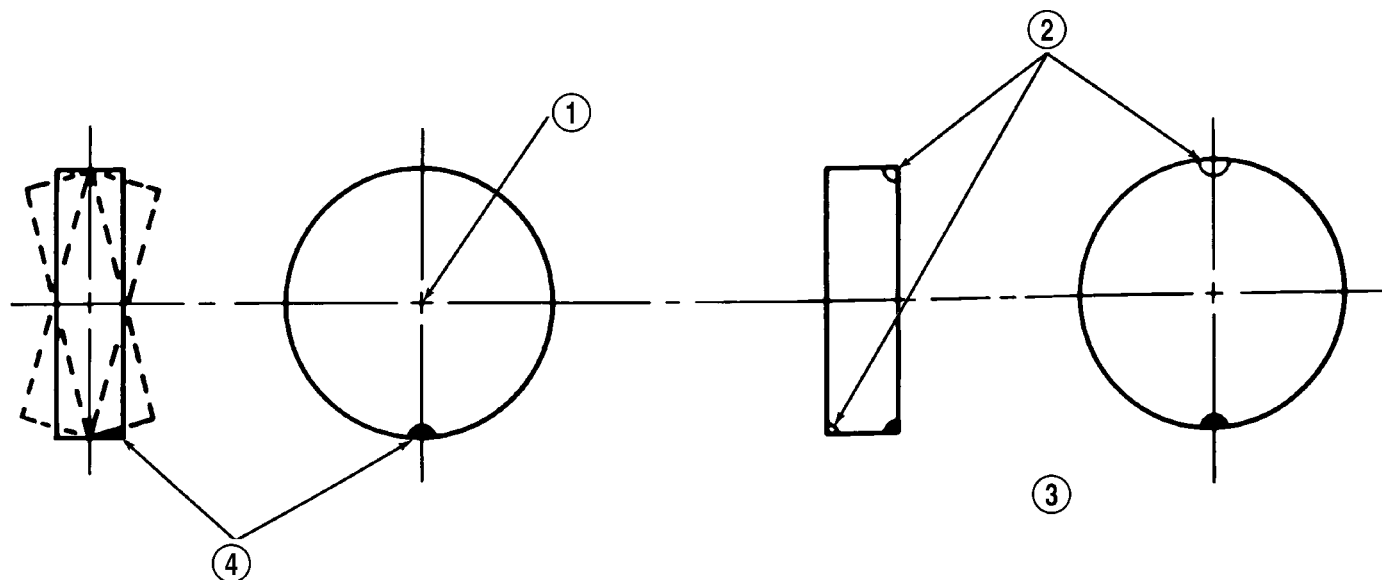


J8922-8

**Fig. 4 Static Unbalance & Balance**

- 1 - HEAVY SPOT
- 2 - CENTER LINE OF SPINDLE
- 3 - ADD BALANCE WEIGHTS HERE

- 4 - CORRECTIVE WEIGHT LOCATION
- 5 - TIRE OR WHEEL TRAMP, OR WHEEL HOP



J8922-9

**Fig. 5 Dynamic Unbalance & Balance**

- 1 - CENTER LINE OF SPINDLE
- 2 - ADD BALANCE WEIGHTS HERE

- 3 - CORRECTIVE WEIGHT LOCATION
- 4 - HEAVY SPOT WHEEL SHIMMY AND VIBRATION

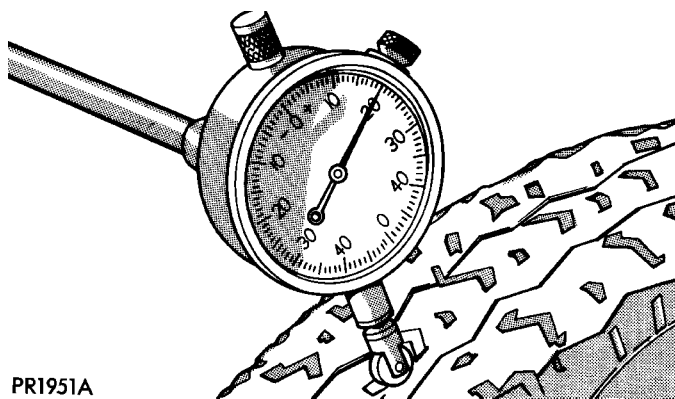
## TIRES/WHEELS (Continued)

**STANDARD PROCEDURE - MATCH MOUNTING**

Tires and wheels are currently not match mounted at the factory. Match mounting is a technique used to reduce runout in the wheel/tire assembly. This means that the high spot of the tire is aligned with the low spot on the wheel rim. The high spot on the tire is marked with a paint mark or a bright colored adhesive label on the outboard sidewall. The low spot on the rim is identified with a label on the outside of the rim and a dot on the inside of the rim. If the outside label has been removed the tire will have to be removed to locate the dot on the inside of the rim.

Before dismounting a tire from its wheel, a reference mark should be placed on the tire at the valve stem location. This reference will ensure that it is remounted in the original position on the wheel.

(1) Use a dial indicator to locate the high spot of the tire on the center tread rib (Fig. 6). Record the indicator reading and mark the high spot on the tire. Place a mark on the tire at the valve stem location (Fig. 7).



PRI951A

**Fig. 6 Dial Indicator**

(2) Break down the tire and remount it 180 degrees on the rim (Fig. 8).

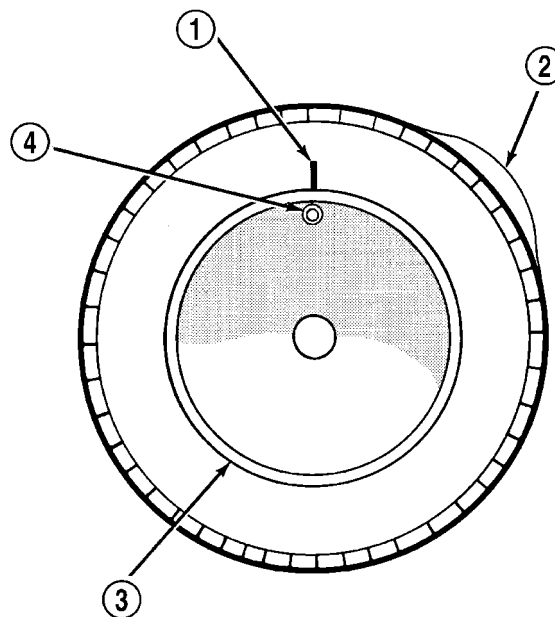
(3) Measure the total runout again and mark the tire to indicate the high spot.

(4) If runout is still excessive use the following procedures.

(a) If the high spot is within 101.6 mm (4.0 in.) of the first spot and is still excessive, replace the tire.

(b) If the high spot is within 101.6 mm (4.0 in.) of the first spot on the wheel, the wheel may be out of specifications, (Refer to 22 - TIRES/WHEELS - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING).

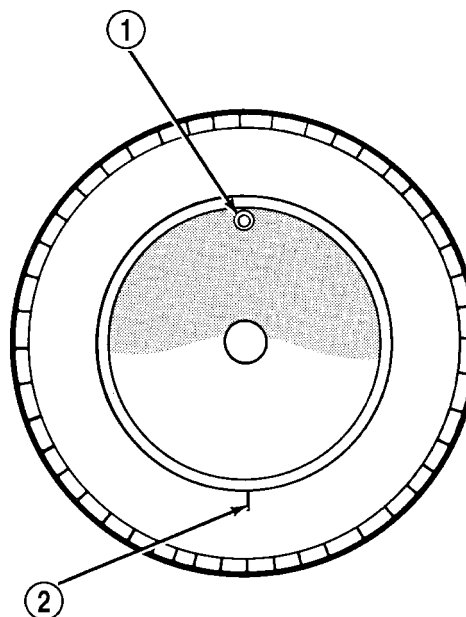
(c) If the high spot is NOT within 101.6 mm (4.0 in.) of either high spot, draw an arrow on the tread from second high spot to first. Break down the tire and remount it 90 degrees on rim in that direction (Fig. 9). This procedure will normally reduce the runout to an acceptable amount.



J9322-3

**Fig. 7 First Measurement On Tire**

- 1 - REFERENCE MARK
- 2 - 1ST MEASUREMENT
- HIGH SPOT MARK TIRE AND RIM
- 3 - WHEEL
- 4 - VALVE STEM

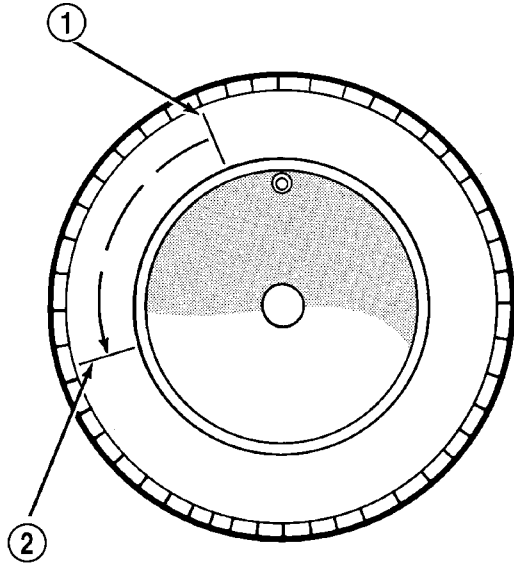


J9322-4

**Fig. 8 Remount Tire 180 Degrees**

- 1 - VALVE STEM
- 2 - REFERENCE MARK

## TIRES/WHEELS (Continued)



J9322-5

**Fig. 9 Remount Tire 90 Degrees In Direction of Arrow**

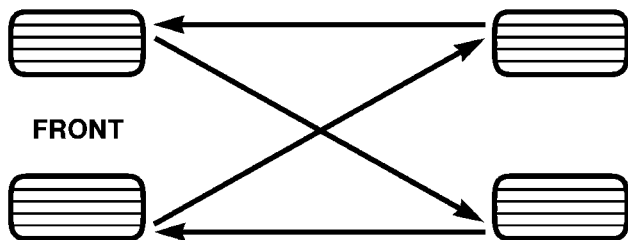
1 - 2ND HIGH SPOT ON TIRE  
2 - 1ST HIGH SPOT ON TIRE

## STANDARD PROCEDURE - TIRE ROTATION

Tires on the front and rear operate at different loads and perform different steering, driving, and braking functions. For these reasons they wear at unequal rates and tend to develop irregular wear patterns. These effects can be reduced by rotating the tires at regular intervals. The benefits of tire rotation are:

- Increase tread life
- Maintain traction levels
- A smooth, quiet ride

The suggested method of tire rotation is (Fig. 10). Other rotation methods can be used, but they will not provide all the tire longevity benefits.



8031e864

**Fig. 10 Tire Rotation Pattern**

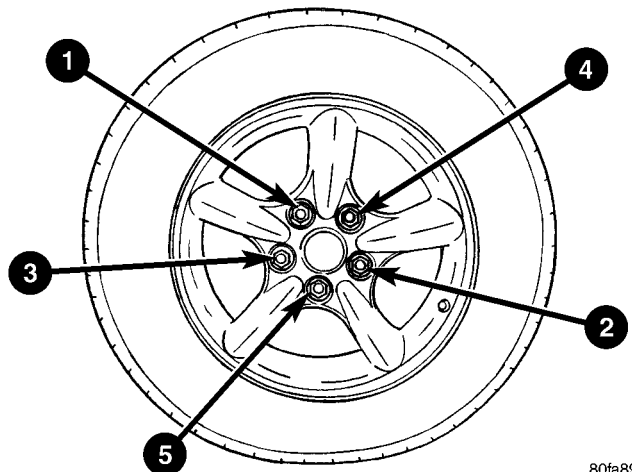
## STANDARD PROCEDURE - WHEEL INSTALLATION

The wheel studs and nuts are designed for specific applications. They must be replaced with equivalent parts. Do not use replacement parts of lesser quality or a substitute design. All aluminum and some steel wheels have wheel stud nuts which feature an enlarged nose. This enlarged nose is necessary to ensure proper retention of the aluminum wheels.

**NOTE: Do not use chrome plated lug nuts with chrome plated wheels.**

Before installing the wheel, be sure to remove any build up of corrosion on the wheel mounting surfaces. Ensure wheels are installed with good metal-to-metal contact. Improper installation could cause loosening of wheel nuts. This could affect the safety and handling of your vehicle.

To install the wheel, first position it properly on the mounting surface. All wheel nuts should then be tightened just snug. Gradually tighten them in sequence to the proper torque specification (Fig. 11). **Never use oil or grease on studs or nuts.**



80fa8998

**Fig. 11 LUG NUT TIGHTENING PATTERN**

## TIRES

### DESCRIPTION

### DESCRIPTION - TIRES

Tires are designed and engineered for each specific vehicle. They provide the best overall performance for normal operation. The ride and handling characteristics match the vehicle's requirements. With proper care they will give excellent reliability, traction, skid resistance, and tread life.

Driving habits have more effect on tire life than any other factor. Careful drivers will obtain in most

## TIRES (Continued)

cases, much greater mileage than severe use or careless drivers. A few of the driving habits which will shorten the life of any tire are:

- Rapid acceleration
- Severe brake applications
- High speed driving
- Excessive speeds on turns
- Striking curbs and other obstacles

Radial-ply tires are more prone to irregular tread wear. It is important to follow the tire rotation interval shown in the section on Tire Rotation. (Refer to 22 - TIRES/WHEELS - STANDARD PROCEDURE), This will help to achieve a greater tread life.

## TIRE IDENTIFICATION

Tire type, size, aspect ratio and speed rating are encoded in the letters and numbers imprinted on the side wall of the tire. Refer to the chart to decipher the tire identification code (Fig. 12).

Performance tires have a speed rating letter after the aspect ratio number. The speed rating is not always printed on the tire sidewall. These ratings are:

- **Q** up to 100 mph
- **S** up to 112 mph
- **T** up to 118 mph
- **U** up to 124 mph
- **H** up to 130 mph
- **V** up to 149 mph
- **Z** more than 149 mph (consult the tire manufacturer for the specific speed rating)

An All Season type tire will have either **M + S**, **M & S** or **M-S** (indicating mud and snow traction) imprinted on the side wall.

## TIRE CHAINS

Tire snow chains may be used on **certain** models. Refer to the Owner's Manual for more information.

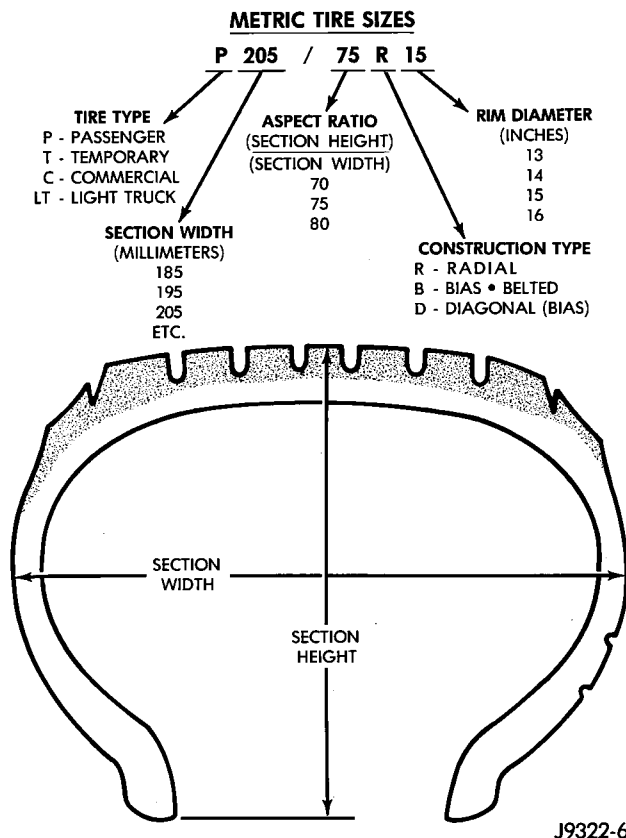
## DESCRIPTION - RADIAL-PLY TIRES

Radial-ply tires improve handling, tread life and ride quality, and decrease rolling resistance.

Radial-ply tires must always be used in sets of four. Under no circumstances should they be used on the front only. They may be mixed with temporary spare tires when necessary. A maximum speed of 50 MPH is recommended while a temporary spare is in use.

Radial-ply tires have the same load-carrying capacity as other types of tires of the same size. They also use the same recommended inflation pressures.

The use of oversized tires, either in the front or rear of the vehicle, can cause vehicle drive train failure. This could also cause inaccurate wheel speed signals when the vehicle is equipped with Anti-Lock Brakes.

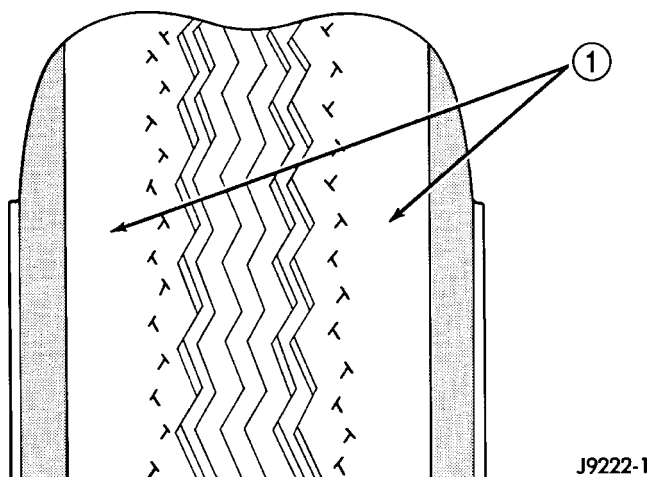


**Fig. 12 Tire Identification**

The use of tires from different manufactures on the same vehicle is NOT recommended. The proper tire pressure should be maintained on all four tires.

## DESCRIPTION - TIRE INFLATION PRESSURES

Under inflation will cause rapid shoulder wear, tire flexing, and possible tire failure (Fig. 13).



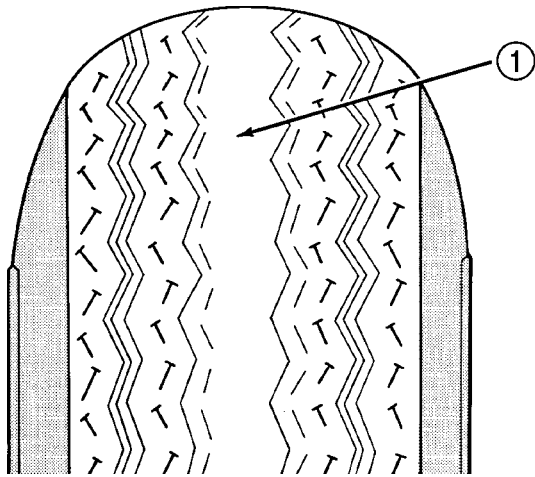
**Fig. 13 Under Inflation Wear**

1 - THIN TIRE THREAD AREAS



## TIRES (Continued)

Over inflation will cause rapid center wear and loss of the tire's ability to cushion shocks (Fig. 14).



J9222-2

**Fig. 14 Over Inflation Wear**

1 - THIN TIRE THREAD AREA

Improper inflation can cause:

- Uneven wear patterns
- Reduced tread life
- Reduced fuel economy
- Unsatisfactory ride
- Vehicle drift

For proper tire pressure specification refer to the Tire Inflation Pressure Chart provided with the vehicle's Owners Manual. A Certification Label on the driver's side door pillar provides the minimum tire and rim size for the vehicle. The label also lists the cold inflation pressure for these tires at full load operation.

Tire pressures have been chosen to provide safe operation, vehicle stability, and a smooth ride. Tire pressure should be checked cold once a month. Tire pressure decreases as the ambient temperature drops. Check tire pressure frequently when ambient temperature varies widely.

Tire inflation pressures are cold inflation pressure. The vehicle must sit for at least 3 hours to obtain the correct cold inflation pressure reading. Or be driven less than one mile after sitting for 3 hours. Tire inflation pressures may increase from 2 to 6 pounds per square inch (psi) during operation. Do not reduce this normal pressure build-up.

**WARNING: OVER OR UNDER INFLATED TIRES CAN AFFECT VEHICLE HANDLING AND TREAD WEAR. THIS MAY CAUSE THE TIRE TO FAIL SUDDENLY, RESULTING IN LOSS OF VEHICLE CONTROL.**

#### DESCRIPTION - TIRE PRESSURE FOR HIGH SPEED

Where speed limits allow the vehicle to be driven at high speeds, correct tire inflation pressure is very

important. For speeds up to and including 120 km/h (75 mph), tires must be inflated to the pressures shown on the tire placard. For continuous speeds in excess of 120 km/h (75 mph), tires must be inflated to the maximum pressure specified on the tire sidewall.

Vehicles loaded to the maximum capacity should not be driven at continuous speeds above 75 mph (120 km/h).

For emergency vehicles that are driven at speeds over 90 mph (144 km/h), special high speed tires must be used. Consult tire manufacturer for correct inflation pressure recommendations.

#### DESCRIPTION - REPLACEMENT TIRES

The original equipment tires provide a proper balance of many characteristics such as:

- Ride
- Noise
- Handling
- Durability
- Tread life
- Traction
- Rolling resistance
- Speed capability

It is recommended that tires equivalent to the original equipment tires be used when replacement is needed.

Failure to use equivalent replacement tires may adversely affect the safety and handling of the vehicle.

The use of oversize tires may cause interference with vehicle components. Under extremes of suspension and steering travel, interference with vehicle components may cause tire damage.

**WARNING: FAILURE TO EQUIP THE VEHICLE WITH TIRES HAVING ADEQUATE SPEED CAPABILITY CAN RESULT IN SUDDEN TIRE FAILURE.**

#### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING

##### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - PRESSURE GAUGES

A quality air pressure gauge is recommended to check tire pressure. After checking the air pressure, replace valve cap finger tight.

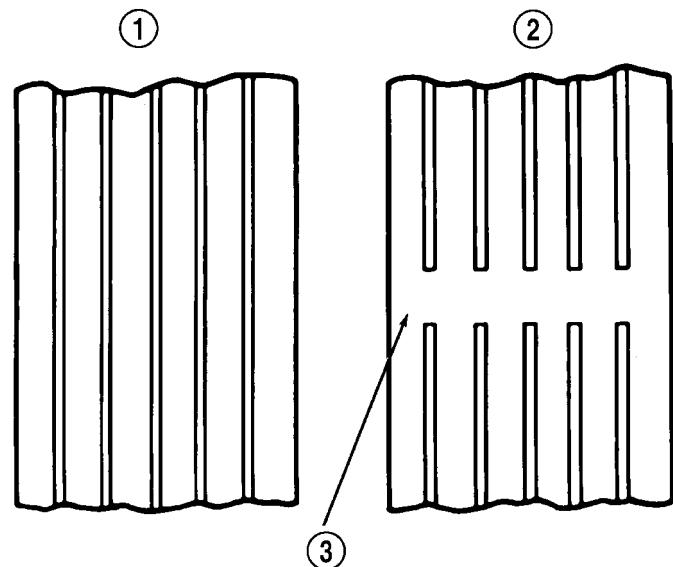
##### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - TREAD WEAR INDICATORS

Tread wear indicators are molded into the bottom of the tread grooves. When tread depth is 1.6 mm (1/16 in.), the tread wear indicators will appear as a 13 mm (1/2 in.) band (Fig. 15).



## TIRES (Continued)

Tire replacement is necessary when indicators appear in two or more grooves or if localized balding occurs.



J8922-5

**Fig. 15 Tread Wear Indicators**

- 1 - TREAD ACCEPTABLE  
2 - TREAD UNACCEPTABLE  
3 - WEAR INDICATOR

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - TIRE WEAR PATTERNS

Under inflation will cause wear on the shoulders of tire. Over inflation will cause wear at the center of tire.

Excessive camber causes the tire to run at an angle to the road. One side of tread is then worn more than the other (Fig. 16).

Excessive toe-in or toe-out causes wear on the tread edges and a feathered effect across the tread (Fig. 16).

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - TIRE NOISE OR VIBRATION

Radial-ply tires are sensitive to force impulses caused by improper mounting, vibration, wheel defects, or possibly tire imbalance.

To find out if tires are causing the noise or vibration, drive the vehicle over a smooth road at varying speeds. Note the noise level during acceleration and deceleration. The engine, differential and exhaust noises will change as speed varies, while the tire noise will usually remain constant.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - TIRE/VEHICLE LEAD

Use the following Vehicle Lead Diagnosis And Correction Chart to diagnose and correct a vehicle lead or drift problem (Fig. 17).

## STANDARD PROCEDURE - REPAIRING LEAKS

For proper repairing, a radial tire must be removed from the wheel. Repairs should only be made if the defect, or puncture, is in the tread area (Fig. 18). The tire should be replaced if the puncture is located in the sidewall.

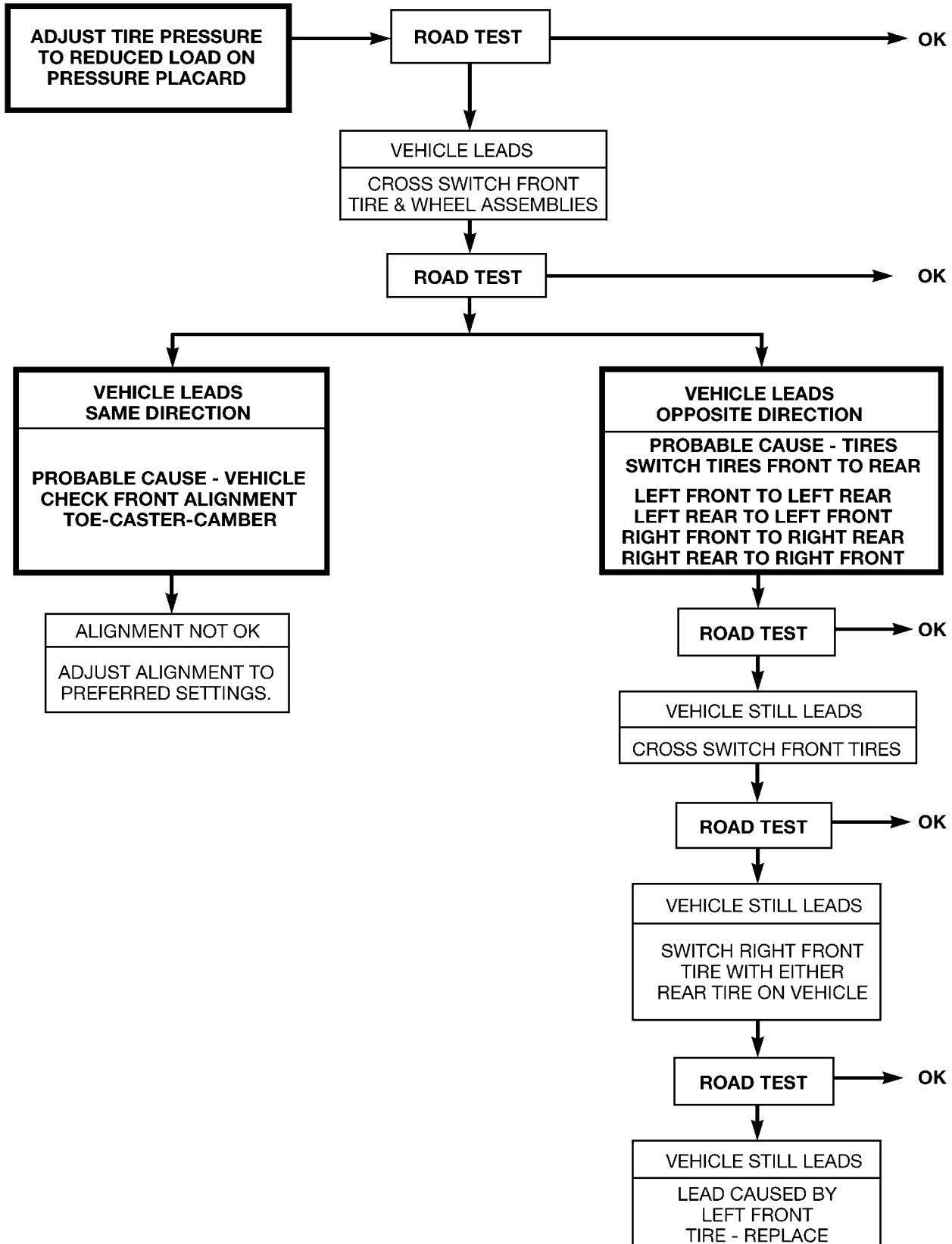
CONDITION	RAPID WEAR AT SHOULDERS	RAPID WEAR AT CENTER	CRACKED TREADS	WEAR ON ONE SIDE	FEATHERED EDGE	BALD SPOTS	SCALLOPED WEAR
EFFECT							
CAUSE	UNDER-INFLATION OR LACK OF ROTATION	OVER-INFLATION OR LACK OF ROTATION	UNDER-INFLATION OR EXCESSIVE SPEED*	EXCESSIVE CAMBER	INCORRECT TOE	UNBALANCED WHEEL OR TIRE DEFECT*	LACK OF ROTATION OF TIRES OR WORN OR OUT-OF-ALIGNMENT SUSPENSION.
CORRECTION	ADJUST PRESSURE TO SPECIFICATIONS WHEN TIRES ARE COOL ROTATE TIRES			ADJUST CAMBER TO SPECIFICATIONS	ADJUST TOE-IN TO SPECIFICATIONS	DYNAMIC OR STATIC BALANCE WHEELS	ROTATE TIRES AND INSPECT SUSPENSION SEE GROUP 2

\*HAVE TIRE INSPECTED FOR FURTHER USE.

RN797

**Fig. 16 Tire Wear Patterns**

## TIRES (Continued)



80a53b5b

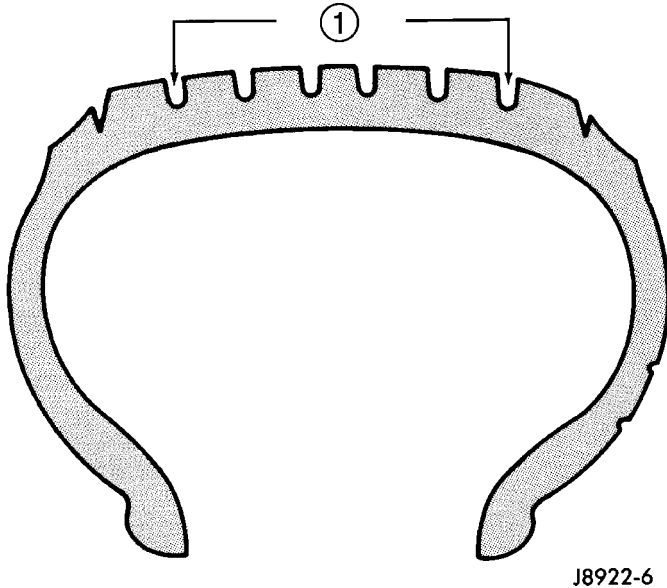
Fig. 17 VEHICLE LEAD DIAGNOSIS AND CORRECTION CHART

## TIRES (Continued)

Deflate tire completely before removing the tire from the wheel. Use lubrication such as a mild soap solution when dismounting or mounting tire. Use tools free of burrs or sharp edges which could damage the tire or wheel rim.

Before mounting tire on wheel, make sure all rust is removed from the rim bead and repaint if necessary.

Install wheel on vehicle, and tighten to proper torque specification (Refer to 22 - TIRES/WHEELS/WHEELS - SPECIFICATIONS).



**Fig. 18 Tire Repair Area**

1 - REPAIRABLE AREA

## CLEANING

Remove the protective coating on the tires before delivery of a vehicle. This coating may cause deterioration of the tires.

To remove the protective coating, apply warm water and let it soak for a few minutes. Afterwards, scrub the coating away with a soft bristle brush. Steam cleaning may also be used to remove the coating.

**NOTE: DO NOT use gasoline, mineral oil, oil-based solvent or a wire brush for cleaning.**

## SPECIFICATIONS

### TIRES

#### SPECIFICATIONS

DESCRIPTION	SPECIFICATION
TIRE	P225/75R16
TIRE	P245/70R16
TIRE	P235/65R17
TIRE WG	225/75HR16
TIRE WG	245/70HR16
TIRE WG	235/65HR17

### SPECIFICATIONS -

#### SPECIFICATIONS

DESCRIPTION - RIM	SPECIFICATION - TIRE
BASE LAREDO (2.7L & 4.0L) 16x7	P225/75R16
OPTIONAL LAREDO (2.7L, 4.0L, 4.7L) 16x7	P245/70R16
LAREDO 4.7L (JAPAN & AUSTRALIA) 17x7.5	P235/65R17
OPTIONAL LAREDO (UP COUNTRY) 17x7.5	P235/65R17
BASE LIMITED 17x7.5	P235/65R17
OPTIONAL LIMITED (UP COUNTRY) & OVERLAND 17x7.5	P235/65R17
BASE WHEEL / SNOW TIRE	P235/65R17

## SPARE TIRE

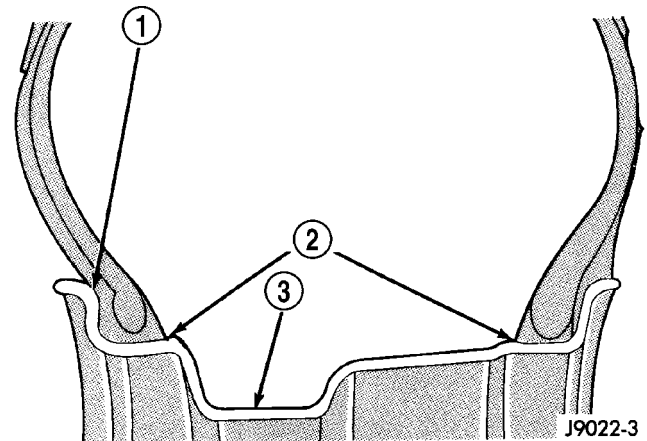
### DESCRIPTION

#### DESCRIPTION - SPARE / TEMPORARY TIRE

The temporary spare tire is designed for emergency use only. The original tire should be repaired or replaced at the first opportunity, then reinstalled. Do not exceed speeds of 50 M.P.H. when using the temporary spare tire. Refer to Owner's Manual for complete details.

#### DESCRIPTION - FULL SIZE, SPARE WHEEL WITH MATCHING TIRE

The spare is a full usage wheel with a matching tire. It can be used within the (posted legal) speed limits or distance limitations as of the rest of the vehicles four tires. Refer to Owner's Manual for complete details.



**Fig. 19 Safety Rim**

- 1 - FLANGE
- 2 - RIDGE
- 3 - WELL

## WHEELS

### DESCRIPTION

The rim size is on the vehicle safety certification label located on the drivers door shut face. The size of the rim is determined by the drivetrain package. Original equipment wheels/rim are designed for operation up to the specified maximum vehicle capacity.

All models use stamped steel, cast aluminum or forged aluminum wheels. Every wheel has raised sections between the rim flanges and rim drop well called safety humps (Fig. 19).

Initial inflation of the tire forces the bead over these raised sections. In case of rapid loss of air pressure, the raised sections help hold the tire on the wheel.

The wheel studs and nuts are designed for specific applications. All aluminum and some steel wheels have wheel stud nuts with an enlarged nose. This enlarged nose is necessary to ensure proper retention of the wheels. Do not use replacement studs or nuts with a different design or lesser quality.

### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - WHEEL INSPECTION

Inspect wheels for:

- Excessive run out
- Dents or cracks
- Damaged wheel lug nut holes
- Air Leaks from any area or surface of the rim

**NOTE:** Do not attempt to repair a wheel by hammering, heating or welding.

If a wheel is damaged an original equipment replacement wheel should be used. When obtaining replacement wheels, they should be equivalent in load carrying capacity. The diameter, width, offset, pilot hole and bolt circle of the wheel should be the same as the original wheel.

**WARNING: FAILURE TO USE EQUIVALENT REPLACEMENT WHEELS MAY ADVERSELY AFFECT THE SAFETY AND HANDLING OF THE VEHICLE. USED WHEELS ARE NOT RECOMMENDED. THE SERVICE HISTORY OF THE WHEEL MAY HAVE INCLUDED SEVERE TREATMENT OR VERY HIGH MILEAGE. THE RIM COULD FAIL WITHOUT WARNING.**

### STANDARD PROCEDURE - WHEEL REPLACEMENT

The wheel studs and nuts are designed for specific applications. They must be replaced with equivalent parts. Do not use replacement parts of lesser quality or a substitute design. All aluminum and some steel wheels have wheel stud nuts which feature an enlarged nose. This enlarged nose is necessary to ensure proper retention of the aluminum wheels.

**NOTE:** Do not use chrome plated lug nuts with chrome plated wheels.

Before installing the wheel, be sure to remove any build up of corrosion on the wheel mounting surfaces. Ensure wheels are installed with good metal-to-metal contact. Improper installation could cause loosening

## WHEELS (Continued)

of wheel nuts. This could affect the safety and handling of your vehicle.

To install the wheel, first position it properly on the mounting surface. All wheel nuts should then be tightened just snug. Gradually tighten them in sequence to the proper torque specification. **Never use oil or grease on studs or nuts.**

Wheels must be replaced if they have:

- Excessive runout
- Bent or dented
- Leak air through welds
- Have damaged bolt holes

Wheel repairs employing hammering, heating, or welding are not allowed.

Original equipment wheels are available through your dealer. Replacement wheels from any other source should be equivalent in:

- Load carrying capacity
- Diameter
- Width
- Offset
- Mounting configuration

Failure to use equivalent replacement wheels may affect the safety and handling of your vehicle. Replacement with **used** wheels is not recommended. Their service history may have included severe treatment.

## SPECIFICATIONS

## TORQUE CHART

## TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS

DESCRIPTION	N-m	Ft. Lbs.	In. Lbs.
Lug Nut 1/2 X 20 with 60° Cone	115-150	85-115	—

## STUDS

## REMOVAL

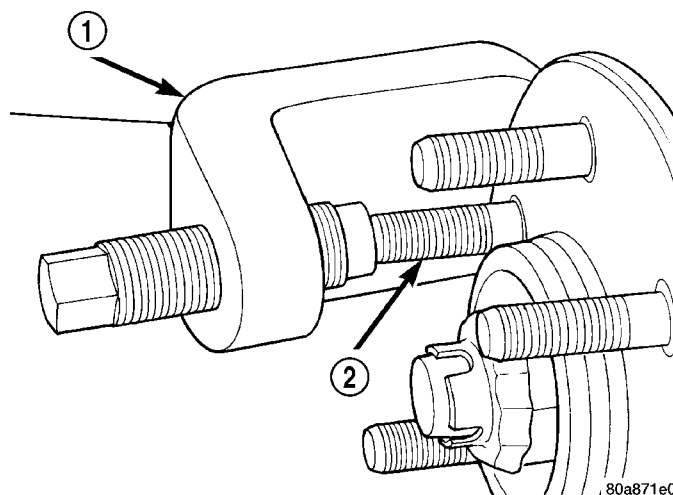
**CAUTION:** Do not use a hammer to remove wheel studs.

- (1) Raise and support vehicle.
- (2) Remove wheel and tire assembly.
- (3) Remove brake caliper, caliper adapter and rotor, (Refer to 5 - BRAKES/HYDRAULIC/MECHANICAL/ROTORS - REMOVAL).
- (4) Remove stud from hub with Remover C-4150A (Fig. 20).

## INSTALLATION

**CAUTION:** Do not use a hammer to remove wheel studs.

- (1) Install the new stud into the hub flange.
- (2) Install the three washers onto the stud, then install the lug nut with the flat side of the nut against the washers.
- (3) Tighten the lug nut until the stud is pulled into the hub flange. Verify that the stud is properly seated into the flange.
- (4) Remove the lug nut and washers.



**Fig. 20 Wheel Stud Removal**

- 1 - REMOVER  
2 - WHEEL STUD

(5) Install the brake rotor, caliper adapter, and caliper, (Refer to 5 - BRAKES/HYDRAULIC/MECHANICAL/DISC BRAKE CALIPERS - INSTALLATION).

- (6) Install the wheel and tire assembly, use new lug nut on stud or studs that were replaced.
- (7) Remove the support and lower vehicle.

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

### DESCRIPTION

The EVIC will monitor the tire pressure signals from the four tire sensors (five sensors in the case of vehicles with the chrome wheel option) and determine if any tire has gone below the low pressure threshold or raised above the high pressure threshold. Refer to the table below.

LOW TIRE PRESSURE THRESHOLDS	
SYSTEM STATUS INDICATOR	TIRE PRESSURE
ON	172 kPa (25 PSI)
OFF	193 kPa (28 PSI)

HIGH TIRE PRESSURE THRESHOLDS	
SYSTEM STATUS INDICATOR	TIRE PRESSURE
ON	310 kPa (45 PSI)
OFF	276 kPa (40 PSI)

The Remote Tire Pressure Monitors (RTPM) are not internally serviceable. For a Sensor Failure or Low Battery fault, the RTPM must be replaced.

### SPECIFICATIONS

#### TORQUE CHART

##### TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS

DESCRIPTION	N-m	Ft. Lbs.	In. Lbs.
Tire Pressure Sensor/ Transmitter Mounting Nut	7	—	64

### OPERATION

If equipped with the Tire Pressure Monitoring System, each of the vehicle's four (or five for chrome wheel option) wheels will have a valve stem with a pressure sensor and radio transmitter built in. Signals from the tire pressure sensors are received and interpreted by the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC). A sensor in a mounted wheel will broadcast its detected pressure once per minute when the vehicle is moving faster than 40 km/h (25 mph). The spare tire sensor will broadcast once every hour. Each sensor's broadcast is uniquely coded so that the EVIC can determine location. The individual tire pressures can be displayed graphically on the EVIC

### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

All Tire Pressure Monitoring System Faults are specific to one location. If a "BATTERY LOW" or "SENSOR FAILURE" fault is detected, the location will be displayed. The appropriate sensor/transmitter can then be replaced. If a single sensor/transmitter cannot be detected by the EVIC, replace that sensor transmitter. If none of the sensors/transmitters can be detected, refer to symptoms in the EVIC section. For additional system description and diagnosis, refer to Tire Pressure Monitoring in the Body Diagnostic manual.



## SENSOR

### STANDARD PROCEDURE - TIRE PRESSURE SENSOR RETRAIN

**WARNING:** DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY CAN OCCUR IF MAGNETICALLY SENSITIVE DEVICES ARE EXPOSED TO THE RELEARN MAGNET. MAGNETS CAN AFFECT PACEMAKERS.

**CAUTION:** Never attempt to train more than one vehicle at a time. System is capable of reading tire pressure sensor transmissions from other nearby vehicles while in train mode.

Each time a wheel rotation or tire pressure sensor replacement occurs the tire pressure sensors must be retrained. This is necessary to inform the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) that a sensor change was made and the new locations of the sensors. Retraining is accomplished through the EVIC used in conjunction with a Re-learn Magnet, Special Tool 8821.

**NOTE:** Use the following procedure to retrain all tire pressure sensors (four or five sensor systems). No attempt should be made to retrain individual sensors.

- (1) Retrieve Re-learn Magnet, Special Tool 8821.
- (2) Press MENU Button on EVIC until "RETRAIN TIRE SENSORS - NO" is displayed.
- (3) Press STEP button to select "YES".

**NOTE:** There is a 60 second timer for training the first sensor and a 30 second timer between training the remaining sensors. If either of these timers expire, the EVIC will abort the training procedure.

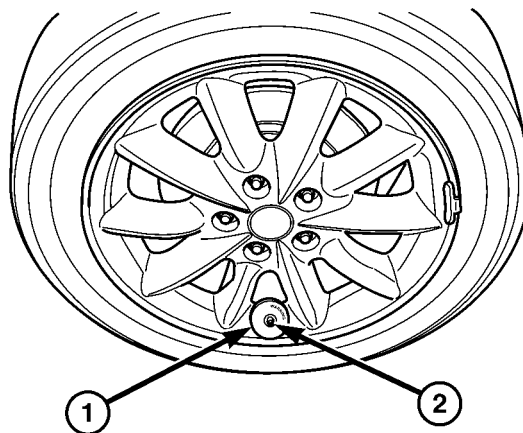
**NOTE:** If at any time the EVIC display reads "TRAINING ABORTED", move the vehicle ahead at least one foot and repeat the entire retraining procedure.

- (4) Press MENU button to start retraining. Display will read "TRAIN LEFT FRONT TIRE"

**NOTE:** The order for retraining all five sensors is:

- Left Front
- Right Front
- Right Rear
- Left Rear
- Spare (if so equipped)

- (5) Starting at left front tire, place Re-learn Magnet over valve stem (Fig. 21). Within approximately 5 seconds, vehicle horn will chirp indicating training complete for that particular sensor. Remove the magnet.



80ce7745

**Fig. 21 Magnet Placement Over Valve Stem**

- 1 - RE-LEARN MAGNET
- 2 - VALVE STEM

- (6) Repeat step (6) on remaining sensors as indicated by EVIC until all TPM sensors positions are trained.

- (7) Once EVIC displays "TRAINING COMPLETE", pressing either STEP, C/T, RESET or MENU button will exit training routine.

### REMOVAL - TIRE PRESSURE SENSOR/TRANSMITTER

- (1) Remove the tire/wheel from the vehicle.

**CAUTION:** When removing the stick on balancing weights from the wheel, do not use an abrasive cleaner or a cleaner which will damage the protective finish on the wheel.

- (2) Remove the balancing weights from the wheel.

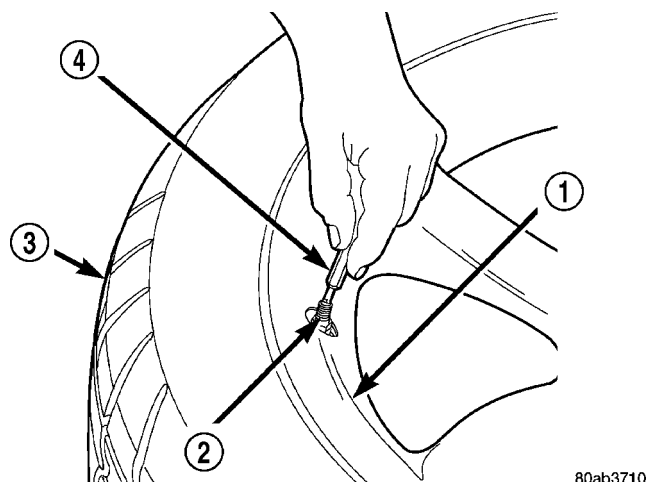
**NOTE:** The cap used on this valve stem contains an O-ring seal to prevent contamination and moisture from entering the valve stem. Retain this valve stem cap for re-use. Do not substitute a regular valve stem cap in its place.

- (3) Remove the cap from the valve stem.

**NOTE:** The valve stem used on this vehicle is made of aluminum and the core is nickel plated brass. The original valve stem core must be reinstalled and not substituted for a valve stem core made of a different material. This is required to prevent corrosion in the valve stem caused by the different metals.

- (4) Using the appropriate tool, remove the core from the valve stem (Fig. 22).
- (5) Let the tire fully deflate.

## SENSOR (Continued)



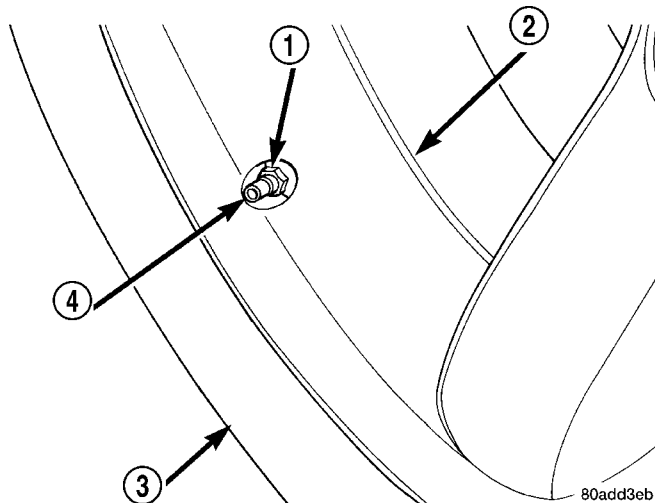
80ab3710

**Fig. 22 REMOVING VALVE STEM CORE - TYPICAL**

- 1 - WHEEL
- 2 - VALVE STEM
- 3 - TIRE
- 4 - VALVE STEM CORE TOOL

**CAUTION:** The pressure transmitter must be removed from the wheel and dropped into the tire prior to breaking the bead and dismounting the tire. Failure to do this will greatly increase the risk of damaging the pressure transducer when servicing the tire.

(6) Remove nut mounting valve stem of pressure sensor/transmitter to the wheel (Fig. 23). Drop sensor/transmitter into tire.



80add3eb

**Fig. 23 VALVE STEM/PRESSURE TRANSMITTER - TYPICAL**

- 1 - NUT
- 2 - WHEEL
- 3 - TIRE
- 4 - VALVE STEM

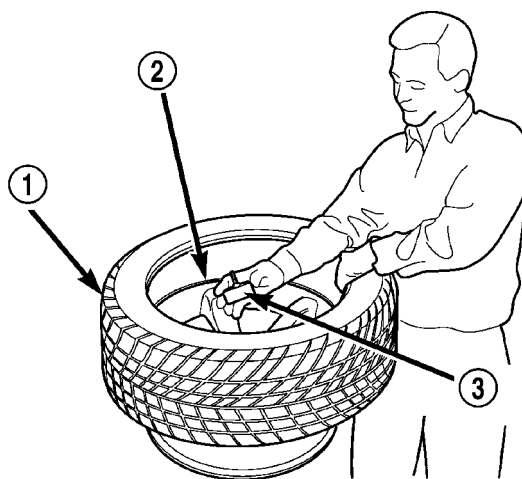
**CAUTION:** When breaking the top and bottom bead of the tire off the wheel, care must be used so the bead breaking mechanism on the tire changer does not damage the wheel. This includes the surface of the wheel flange on the inside of the wheel.

(7) Using the tire changer manufacturers procedure, first break down the upper bead of the tire. Then break down the bottom bead of the tire.

**CAUTION:** When dismounting the upper tire bead from the wheel, the proper procedure must be used. Not using the proper procedure will result in damage to the wheel and tire.

(8) Dismount the upper bead of the tire from the wheel. **The upper bead must be fully dismounted from the wheel to remove the tire pressure transmitter from the inside of the tire. The bottom bead of the tire does not need to be removed from the wheel.**

(9) Pull upward on the tire (Fig. 24). Reach into the tire and remove the pressure sensor/transmitter from inside the tire.



80ab3711

**Fig. 24 PRESSURE TRANSMITTER REMOVAL - TYPICAL**

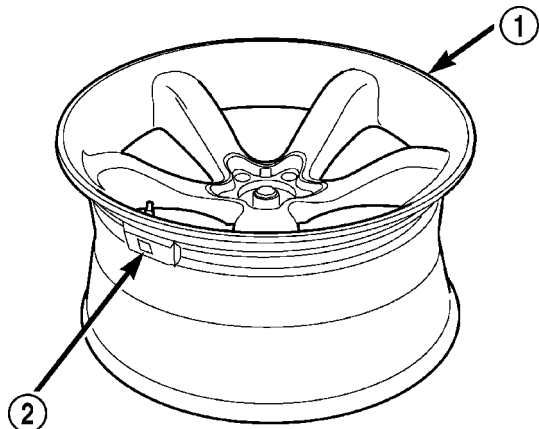
- 1 - TIRE
- 2 - WHEEL
- 3 - PRESSURE TRANSMITTER

**INSTALLATION - TIRE PRESSURE SENSOR/TRANSMITTER**

**NOTE:** When installing the tire pressure sensor/transmitter, inspect the sealing O-ring at the bottom of the valve stem for any sign of damage or deterioration. Replace O-ring if necessary, before installing the pressure transmitter on the wheel. Also, be sure the surface of the wheel that the O-ring seals against is clean and not damaged.

## SENSOR (Continued)

(1) Install the tire pressure sensor/transmitter on the wheel (Fig. 25).



80ab3713

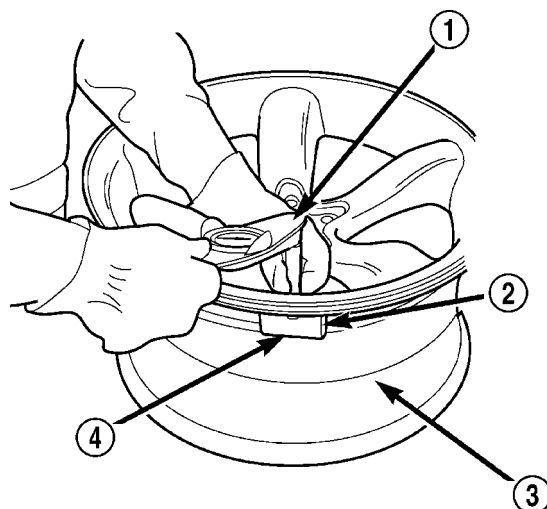
**Fig. 25 TIRE PRESSURE SENSOR/TRANSMITTER - TYPICAL**

- 1 - WHEEL  
2 - TIRE PRESSURE TRANSMITTER

(2) Tighten the tire pressure sensor/transmitter mounting nut to a torque of 7 N·m (64 in. lbs.) (Fig. 26). When tightening the sensor/transmitter nut, hold the transmitter so it does not rotate. If the sensor/transmitter rotates so the top edge is not level with the wheel (Fig. 27), damage to the transmitter will occur when mounting the tire. If the top edge of the transmitter is not level with the wheel, it can be rotated into position by lightly tapping it with your hand.

**CAUTION:** When mounting the upper bead of the extended mobility tire, the proper procedure must be used. Not using the proper procedure will result in damage to the wheel and tire.

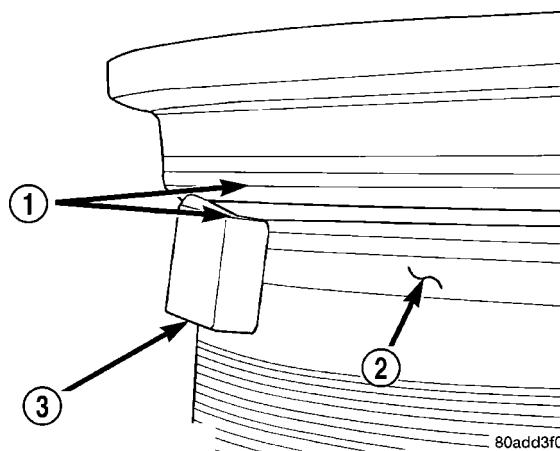
- (3) Mount the upper bead of the tire on the wheel.  
(4) Install the original or an OEM replacement valve stem cap on the valve stem.  
(5) Using a soap solution, check that no air leak is present where the valve stem mounts to the wheel.  
(6) Balance the tire/wheel assembly using the correct procedure for using wheel flange mount and stick-on wheel weights. For balancing information and wheel weight positioning, (Refer to 22 - TIRES/WHEELS - STANDARD PROCEDURE).  
(7) Install the tire/wheel on the vehicle (Refer to 22 - TIRES/WHEELS - STANDARD PROCEDURE).  
(8) Program the identification code for the new tire pressure sensor/transmitter into the TPM module.



80ab3714

**Fig. 26 TIGHTENING SENSOR/TRANSDUCER - TYPICAL**

- 1 - TORQUE WRENCH  
2 - WHEN TORQUING TRANSMITTER MOUNTING NUT DO NOT LET THIS END OF TRANSMITTER ROTATE AWAY FROM THE WHEEL  
3 - WHEEL  
4 - TIRE PRESSURE TRANSMITTER



80add3f0

**Fig. 27 CORRECTLY POSITIONED SENSOR/TRAN - TYPICAL**

- 1 - THE TOP EDGES OF THE TIRE PRESSURE SENSOR/TRANSMITTER MUST BE FLUSH WITH THE WHEEL HERE  
2 - WHEEL  
3 - TIRE PRESSURE SENSOR/TRANSMITTER

(9) Verify that the TPM module has been programmed with the identification code from the new tire pressure sensor/transmitter. Refer to the appropriate electrical section. If the identification code and tire pressure thresholds from the new tire pressure transmitter are present in the receiver's memory, the new tire pressure transmitter has been correctly programmed to the receiver.

# BODY

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>BODY</b>		<b>SPECIAL TOOLS</b>	
WARNING		BODY	13
SAFETY PRECAUTIONS AND WARNINGS	1	<b>LIFTGATE</b>	14
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING		<b>DOOR - FRONT</b>	24
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - WATER LEAKS	1	<b>DOORS - REAR</b>	33
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - WIND NOISE	2	<b>EXTERIOR</b>	40
STANDARD PROCEDURE		<b>HOOD</b>	48
STANDARD PROCEDURE - BODY		<b>INSTRUMENT PANEL SYSTEM</b>	51
LUBRICATION	3	<b>INTERIOR</b>	81
STANDARD PROCEDURE - PLASTIC BODY		<b>PAINT</b>	96
PANEL REPAIR	3	<b>SEATS</b>	98
STANDARD PROCEDURE - BUZZ, SQUEAK		<b>STATIONARY GLASS</b>	108
& RATTLE	10	<b>SUNROOF</b>	111
SPECIFICATIONS		<b>WEATHERSTRIP/SEALS</b>	120
SPECIFICATIONS - TORQUE	12	<b>BODY STRUCTURE</b>	127
BODY LUBRICANTS	13		

## BODY

### WARNING

#### SAFETY PRECAUTIONS AND WARNINGS

**WARNING: USE AN OSHA APPROVED BREATHING FILTER WHEN SPRAYING PAINT OR SOLVENTS IN A CONFINED AREA. PERSONAL INJURY CAN RESULT.**

- **AVOID PROLONGED SKIN CONTACT WITH PETROLEUM OR ALCOHOL – BASED CLEANING SOLVENTS. PERSONAL INJURY CAN RESULT.**

- **DO NOT STAND UNDER A HOISTED VEHICLE THAT IS NOT PROPERLY SUPPORTED ON SAFETY STANDS. PERSONAL INJURY CAN RESULT.**

**CAUTION: When holes must be drilled or punched in an inner body panel, verify depth of space to the outer body panel, electrical wiring, or other components. Damage to vehicle can result.**

- **Do not weld exterior panels unless combustible material on the interior of vehicle is removed from the repair area. Fire or hazardous conditions, can result.**

- **Always have a fire extinguisher ready for use when welding.**

- **Disconnect the negative (-) cable clamp from the battery when servicing electrical components**

that are live when the ignition is OFF. Damage to electrical system can result.

- **Do not use abrasive chemicals or compounds on painted surfaces. Damage to finish can result.**

- **Do not use harsh alkaline based cleaning solvents on painted or upholstered surfaces. Damage to finish or color can result.**

- **Do not hammer or pound on plastic trim panel when servicing interior trim. Plastic panels can break.**

### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING

#### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - WATER LEAKS

Water leaks can be caused by poor sealing, improper body component alignment, body seam porosity, missing plugs, or blocked drain holes. Centrifugal and gravitational force can cause water to drip from a location away from the actual leak point, making leak detection difficult. All body sealing points should be water tight in normal wet-driving conditions. Water flowing downward from the front of the vehicle should not enter the passenger or luggage compartment. Moving sealing surfaces will not always seal water tight under all conditions. At times, side glass or door seals will allow water to enter the passenger compartment during high pressure washing or hard driving rain (severe) conditions. Overcompensating on door or glass adjustments to stop a water leak that occurs under severe conditions can cause premature seal wear and



## BODY (Continued)

excessive closing or latching effort. After completing a repair, water test vehicle to verify leak has stopped before returning vehicle to use.

**VISUAL INSPECTION BEFORE WATER LEAK TESTS**

Verify that floor and body plugs are in place, body drains are clear, and body components are properly aligned and sealed. If component alignment or sealing is necessary, refer to the appropriate section of this group for proper procedures.

**WATER LEAK TESTS**

**WARNING: DO NOT USE ELECTRIC SHOP LIGHTS OR TOOLS IN WATER TEST AREA. PERSONAL INJURY CAN RESULT.**

When the conditions causing a water leak have been determined, simulate the conditions as closely as possible.

- If a leak occurs with the vehicle parked in a steady light rain, flood the leak area with an open-ended garden hose.
- If a leak occurs while driving at highway speeds in a steady rain, test the leak area with a reasonable velocity stream or fan spray of water. Direct the spray in a direction comparable to actual conditions.
- If a leak occurs when the vehicle is parked on an incline, hoist the end or side of the vehicle to simulate this condition. This method can be used when the leak occurs when the vehicle accelerates, stops or turns. If the leak occurs on acceleration, hoist the front of the vehicle. If the leak occurs when braking, hoist the back of the vehicle. If the leak occurs on left turns, hoist the left side of the vehicle. If the leak occurs on right turns, hoist the right side of the vehicle. For hoisting recommendations (Refer to LUBRICATION & MAINTENANCE/HOISTING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

**WATER LEAK DETECTION**

To detect a water leak point-of-entry, do a water test and watch for water tracks or droplets forming on the inside of the vehicle. If necessary, remove interior trim covers or panels to gain visual access to the leak area. If the hose cannot be positioned without being held, have someone help do the water test.

Some water leaks must be tested for a considerable length of time to become apparent. When a leak appears, find the highest point of the water track or drop. The highest point usually will show the point of entry. After leak point has been found, repair the leak and water test to verify that the leak has stopped.

Locating the entry point of water that is leaking into a cavity between panels can be difficult. The trapped water may splash or run from the cavity,

often at a distance from the entry point. Most water leaks of this type become apparent after accelerating, stopping, turning, or when on an incline.

**MIRROR INSPECTION METHOD**

When a leak point area is visually obstructed, use a suitable mirror to gain visual access. A mirror can also be used to deflect light to a limited-access area to assist in locating a leak point.

**BRIGHT LIGHT LEAK TEST METHOD**

Some water leaks in the luggage compartment can be detected without water testing. Position the vehicle in a brightly lit area. From inside the darkened luggage compartment inspect around seals and body seams. If necessary, have a helper direct a drop light over the suspected leak areas around the luggage compartment. If light is visible through a normally sealed location, water could enter through the opening.

**PRESSURIZED LEAK TEST METHOD**

When a water leak into the passenger compartment cannot be detected by water testing, pressurize the passenger compartment and soap test exterior of the vehicle. To pressurize the passenger compartment, close all doors and windows, start engine, and set heater control to high blower in HEAT position. If engine can not be started, connect a charger to the battery to ensure adequate voltage to the blower. With interior pressurized, apply dish detergent solution to suspected leak area on the exterior of the vehicle. Apply detergent solution with spray device or soft bristle brush. If soap bubbles occur at a body seam, joint, seal or gasket, the leak entry point could be at that location.

**DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - WIND NOISE**

Wind noise is the result of most air leaks. Air leaks can be caused by poor sealing, improper body component alignment, body seam porosity, or missing plugs in the engine compartment or door hinge pillar areas. All body sealing points should be airtight in normal driving conditions. Moving sealing surfaces will not always seal airtight under all conditions. At times, side glass or door seals will allow wind noise to be noticed in the passenger compartment during high cross winds. Over compensating on door or glass adjustments to stop wind noise that occurs under severe conditions can cause premature seal wear and excessive closing or latching effort. After a repair procedure has been performed, test vehicle to verify noise has stopped before returning vehicle to use.

## BODY (Continued)

**VISUAL INSPECTION BEFORE TESTS**

Verify that floor and body plugs are in place and body components are aligned and sealed. If component alignment or sealing is necessary, refer to the appropriate section of this group for proper procedures.

**ROAD TESTING WIND NOISE**

(1) Drive the vehicle to verify the general location of the wind noise.

(2) Apply 50 mm (2 in.) masking tape in 150 mm (6 in.) lengths along weatherstrips, weld seams or moldings. After each length is applied, drive the vehicle. If noise goes away after a piece of tape is applied, remove tape, locate, and repair defect.

**POSSIBLE CAUSE OF WIND NOISE**

- Moldings standing away from body surface can catch wind and whistle.
- Gaps in sealed areas behind overhanging body flanges can cause wind-rushing sounds.
- Misaligned movable components.
- Missing or improperly installed plugs in pillars.
- Weld burn through holes.

**STANDARD PROCEDURE****STANDARD PROCEDURE - BODY LUBRICATION**

All mechanisms and linkages should be lubricated when necessary. This will maintain ease of operation and provide protection against rust and excessive wear. The weatherstrip seals should be lubricated to prolong their life as well as to improve door sealing.

All applicable exterior and interior vehicle operating mechanisms should be inspected and cleaned. Pivot/sliding contact areas on the mechanisms should then be lubricated.

(1) When necessary, lubricate the operating mechanisms with the specified lubricants.

(2) Apply silicone lubricant to a cloth and wipe it on door seals to avoid over-spray that can soil passenger's clothing.

(3) Before applying lubricant, the component should be wiped clean. After lubrication, any excess lubricant should be removed.

(4) The hood latch, latch release mechanism, latch striker, and safety latch should be lubricated periodically.

(5) The door lock cylinders should be lubricated twice each year (preferably autumn and spring).

(a) Spray a small amount of lock cylinder lubricant directly into the lock cylinder.

(b) Apply a small amount to the key and insert it into the lock cylinder.

(c) Rotate it to the locked position and then back to the unlocked position several times.

(d) Remove the key. Wipe the lubricant from it with a clean cloth to avoid soiling of clothing.

**STANDARD PROCEDURE - PLASTIC BODY PANEL REPAIR**

There are many different types of plastics used in today's automotive environment. We group plastics in three different categories: Rigid, Semi-Rigid, and Flexible. Any of these plastics may require the use of an adhesion promoter for repair. These types of plastic are used extensively on DaimlerChrysler Motors vehicles. Always follow repair material manufacturer's plastic identification and repair procedures.

**Rigid Plastics:**

Examples of rigid plastic use: Fascias, Hoods, Doors, and other Body Panels, which include SMC, ABS, and Polycarbonates.

**Semi-Rigid Plastics:**

Examples of semi-rigid plastic use: Interior Panels, Under Hood Panels, and other Body Trim Panels.

**Flexible Plastics:**

Examples of flexible plastic use: Fascias, Body Moldings, and upper and lower Fascia Covers.

**Repair Procedure:**

The repair procedure for all three categories of plastics is basically the same. The one difference is the material used for the repair. The materials must be specific for each substrate, rigid repair material for rigid plastic repair, semi-rigid repair material for semi-rigid plastic repair and flexible repair material for flexible plastic repair.

**Adhesion Promoter/Surface Modifier:**

Adhesion Promoters/Surface Modifiers are required for certain plastics. All three categories may have plastics that require the use of adhesion promoter/surface modifiers. Always follow repair material manufacturer's plastic identification and repair procedures.



## BODY (Continued)

## SAFETY PRECAUTION AND WARNINGS

## WARNING:

- EYE PROTECTION SHOULD BE USED WHEN SERVICING COMPONENTS. PERSONAL INJURY CAN RESULT.
- USE AN OSHA APPROVED BREATHING MASK WHEN MIXING EPOXY, GRINDING, AND SPRAYING PAINT OR SOLVENTS IN A CONFINED AREA. PERSONAL INJURY CAN RESULT.
- AVOID PROLONGED SKIN CONTACT WITH RESIN, PETROLEUM, OR ALCOHOL BASED SOLVENTS. PERSONAL INJURY CAN RESULT.

- DO NOT VENTURE UNDER A HOISTED VEHICLE THAT IS NOT PROPERLY SUPPORTED ON SAFETY STANDS. PERSONAL INJURY CAN RESULT.

## NOTE:

- When holes must be drilled or cut in body panels, verify locations of internal body components and electrical wiring. Damage to vehicle can result.
- Do not use abrasive chemicals or compounds on undamaged painted surfaces around repair areas. Damage to finish can result.

## RIGID, SEMI-RIGID, AND FLEXIBLE PLASTIC PARTS TYPES

CODE	FAMILY NAME	COMMON TRADE NAME	TYPICAL APPLICATION
ASA	ACRYLONITRILE STYRENE ACRYLITE	LURAN S	CONSOLES, GRILLES
ABS	ACRYLONITRILE BUTADIENE STYRENE	TERLURAN	"A" PILLARS, CONSOLES, GRILLES
ABS/PC	ABS/PC ALLOY	PULSE, PROLOY, BAYBLEND	DOORS, INSTRUMENT PANELS
ABS/PVC	ABS/PV ALLOY	PROLOY, PULSE, LUSTRAN, CYCLOVIN	DOOR PANELS, GRILLES, TRIM
BMC	BULK MOLDING COMPOUND	BMC	FENDER EXTENSIONS
EMA	EHTYLENE METHYL ACRYLATE/IONOMER	SURLYN, EMA, IONOMER	BUMPER GUARDS, PADS
METTON	METTON	METTON	GRILLES, KICK PANELS, RUNNING BOARDS
MPPO	MODIFIED POLYPHENYLENE OXIDE	MPPO	SPOILER ASSEMBLY
PA	POLYAMID	ZYTEL, VYDYNE, PA, MINLON	FENDERS, QUARTER PANELS
PET	THERMOPLASTIC POLYESTER	RYNITE	TRIM
PBT/PPO	PBT/PPO ALLOY	GERMAX	CLADDINGS
PBTP	POLYBUTYLENE THEREPHTHALATE	PBT, PBTP, POCAN, VALOX	WHEEL COVERS, FENDERS, GRILLES
PBTP/EEBC	POLYBUTYLENE THEREPHTHALATE/EEBC ALLOY	BEXLOY, "M", PBTP/EEBC	FASCIAS, ROCKER PANEL, MOLDINGS
PC	POLYCARBONATE	LEXAN, MERLON, CALIBRE, MAKROLON PC	TAIL LIGHT LENSES, IP TRIM, VALANCE PANELS
PC/ABS	PC/ABS ALLOY	GERMAX, BAY BLENDS, PULSE	DOORS, INSTRUMENT PANELS
PPO	POLYPHENYLENE OXIDE	AZDEL, HOSTALEN, MARLEX, PRFAX, NORYL, GTX, PPO	INTERIOR TRIM, DOOR PANELS, SPLASH SHIELDS, STEERING COLUMN SHROUD

## BODY (Continued)

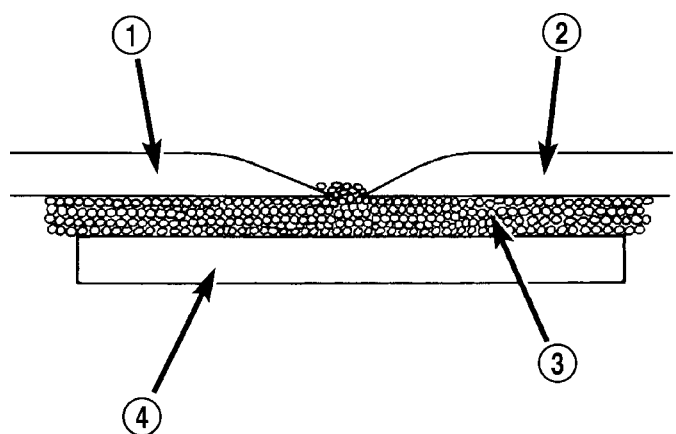
CODE	FAMILY NAME	COMMON TRADE NAME	TYPICAL APPLICATION
PPO/PA	POLYPHENYLENE/ POLYAMID	PPO/PA, GTX 910	FENDERS, QUARTER PANELS
PR/FV	FIBERGLASS REINFORCED PLASTIC	FIBERGLASS, FV, PR/FV	BODY PANELS
PS	POLYSTYRENE	LUSTREX, STYRON, PS	DOOR PANELS, DASH PANELS
RTM	RESIN TRANSFER MOLDING COMPOUND	RTM	BODY PANELS
SMC	SHEET MOLDED COMPOUND	SMC	BODY PANELS
TMC	TRANSFER MOLDING COMPOUND	TMC	GRILLES
UP	UNSATURATED POLYESTER (THERMOSETTING)	SMC, BMC, TMC, ZMC, IMC, XSMC, UP	GRILLE OPENING PANEL, LIFTGATES, FLARESIDE FENDERS, FENDER EXTENSIONS
EEBC	ETHER/ESTER BLOCKED CO-POLYMER	EEBC	BUMPERS
EEBC/PBTP	EEBC/POLYBUTYLENE TEREPHTHALATE	EEBC, PBTP, BEXLOY	BUMPER, ROCKER PANELS
EMPP	ETHYLENE MODIFIED POLYPROPYLENE	EMPP	BUMPER COVERS
EPDM	ETHYLENE/ PROPPOYLENE DIENE MONOMER	EPDM, NORDEL, VISTALON	BUMPERS
EPM	ETHYLENE/ PROPPOYLENE CO- POLYMER	EPM	FENDERS
MPU	FOAM POLYURETHANE	MPU	SPOILERS
PE	POLYETHYLENE	ALATHON, DYLAN, LUPOLEN, MARLEX	-
PP	POLYPROPYLENE (BLENDS)	NORYL, AZDEL, MARLOX, DYLON, PRAVEX	INNER FENDER, SPOILERS, KICK PANELS
PP/EPDM	PP/EPDM ALLOY	PP/EPDM	SPOILERS, GRILLES
PUR	POLYURETHANE	COLONELS, PUR, PU	FASCIAS, BUMPERS
PUR/PC	PUR/PC ALLOY	TEXIN	BUMPERS
PVC	POLYVINYL CHLORIDE	APEX, GEON, VINYLITE	BODY MOLDINGS, WIRE INSULATION, STEERING WHEELS
RIM	REACTION INJECTED MOLDED POLYURETHANE	RIM, BAYFLEX	FRONT FASCIAS, MODULAR WINDOWS
RRIM	REINFORCED REACTION INJECTED MOLDED	PUR, RRIM	FASCIAS, BODY PANELS, BODY TRIMS
TPE	THERMO POLYETHYLENE	TPE, HYTREL, BEXLOY-V	FASCIAS, BUMPERS, CLADDINGS

## BODY (Continued)

CODE	FAMILY NAME	COMMON TRADE NAME	TYPICAL APPLICATION
TPO	THERMOPOLYOLEFIN	POLYTROPE, RENFLEX, SANTOPRENE, VISAFLEX, ETA, APEX, TPO, SHIELDS, CLADDINGS	BUMPERS, END CAPS, TELCAR, RUBBER, STRIPS, SIGHT, INTERIOR B POST
TPP	THERMO-POLYPROPYLENE	TPP	BUMPERS
TPU	THERMOPOLYURETHANE, POLYESTER	TPU, HYTREL, TEXIN, ESTANE	BUMPERS, BODY SIDE, MOLDINGS, FENDERS, FASCIAS

**PANEL SECTIONING**

If it is required to section a large panel for a plastic repair, it will be necessary to reinforce the panel (Fig. 1). To bond two plastic panels together, a reinforcement must overlap both panels. The panels must be "V'd" at a 20 degree angle. The area to be reinforced should be washed, then sanded. Be sure to wipe off any excess soap and water when finished. Lightly sand or abrade the plastic with an abrasive pad or sandpaper. Blow off any dust with compressed air or wipe with a clean dry rag.



80b6fedc

**Fig. 1 PANEL SECTIONING**

- 1 - EXISTING PANEL
- 2 - NEW PANEL
- 3 - PANEL ADHESIVE
- 4 - BONDING STRIP

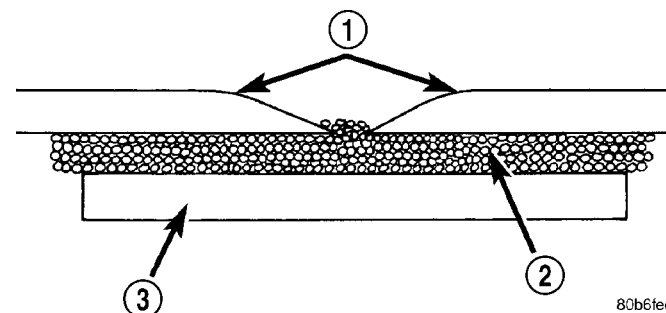
When bonding plastic panels, Follow repair material manufacturers recommendations. Be sure that enough adhesive has been applied to allow squeeze out and to fill the full bond line. Once the pieces have been brought together, do not move them until the adhesive is cured. The assembly can be held together with clamps, rivets, etc. A faster cure can be obtained by heating with a heat lamp or heat gun. After the parts have been bonded and have had time to cure, rough sand the seam and apply the final adhesive filler to the area being repaired. Smooth the filler with a spreader, wooden tongue depressor, or squeegee. For fine texturing, a small amount of

water can be applied to the filler surface while smoothing. The cured filler can be sanded as necessary and, as a final step, cleanup can be done with soapy water. Wipe the surface clean with a dry cloth allowing time for the panel to dry before moving on with the repair.

**PANEL REINFORCEMENT**

Structural repair procedures for rigid panels with large cracks and holes will require a reinforcement backing. Reinforcements can be made with several applications of glass cloth saturated with structural adhesive. Semi-rigid or flexible repair materials should be used for semi-rigid or flexible backing reinforcement (Fig. 2) and (Fig. 3). Open meshed fiberglass dry wall tape can be used to form a reinforcement. The dry wall tape allows the resin to penetrate through and make a good bond between the panel and the adhesive. Structurally, the more dry wall tape used, the stronger the repair.

Another kind of repair that can be done to repair large cracks and holes is to use a scrap piece of similar plastic and bond with structural adhesive. The reinforcement should cover the entire break and should have a generous amount of overlap on either side of the cracked or broken area.



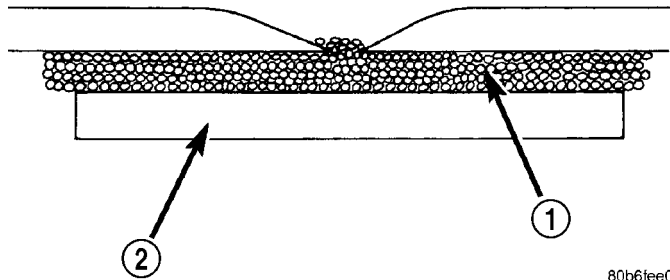
80b6fedf

**Fig. 2 SOFTENED EDGES**

- 1 - SOFTENED EDGES
- 2 - PANEL ADHESIVE
- 3 - BONDING STRIP

## BODY (Continued)

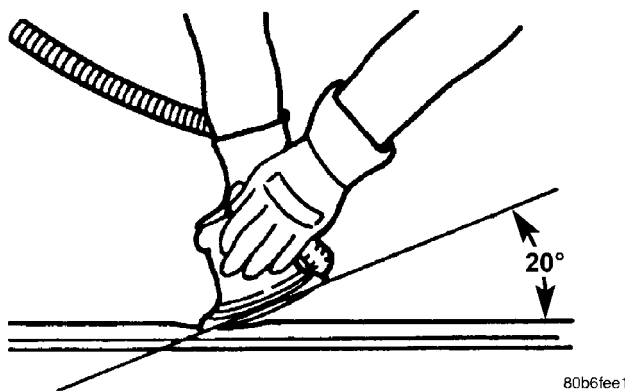
When repairing plastic, the damaged area is first "V'd" out, or beveled. Large bonding areas are desirable when repairing plastic because small repairs are less likely to hold permanently. Beveling the area around a crack at a 20 degree angle will increase the bonding surface for a repair (Fig. 4). It is recommended that sharp edges be avoided because the joint may show through after the panel is refinished.



80b6fee0

**Fig. 3 PANEL REINFORCEMENT**

- 1 - PANEL ADHESIVE  
2 - REINFORCEMENT



80b6fee1

**Fig. 4 BEVELING ANGLE - 20 DEGREE**

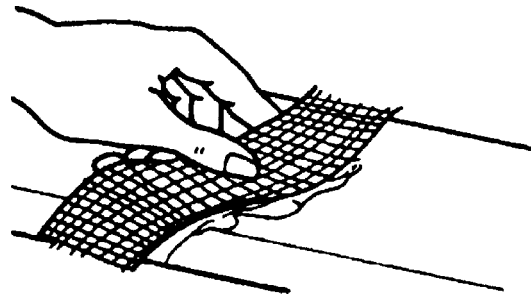
- Panel repair for both flexible and rigid panels are basically the same. The primary difference between flexible panel repair and rigid panel repair is in the adhesive materials used (Fig. 5).

- The technician should first decide what needs to be done when working on any type of body panel. One should determine if it is possible to return the damage part to its original strength and appearance without exceeding the value of the replacement part.

- When plastic repairs are required, it is recommended that the part be left on the vehicle when every possible. That will save time, and the panel will remain stationary during the repair. Misalignment can cause stress in the repair areas and can result in future failure.

## VISUAL INSPECTION

Composite materials can mask the severity of an accident. Adhesive bond lines, interior structure of the doors, and steel structures need to be inspected

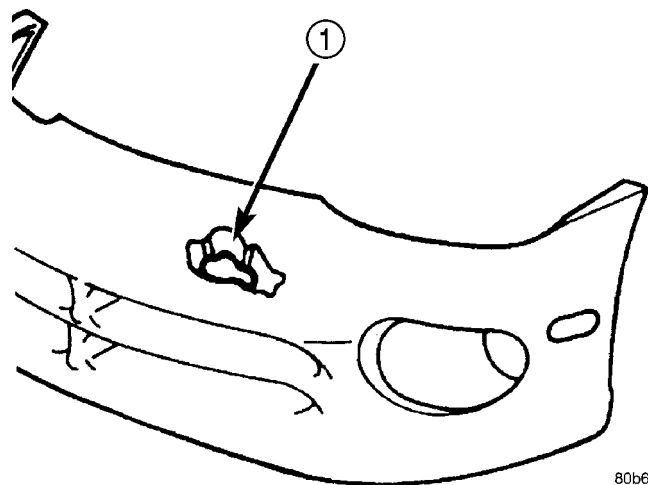


80b6fee2

**Fig. 5 FIBERGLASS TAPE**

carefully to get a true damage assessment. Close inspection may require partial removal of interior trim or inner panels.

Identify the type of repair: Puncture or Crack - Damage that has penetrated completely through the panel. Damage is confined to one general area; a panel section is not required. However, a backer panel, open fiberglass tape, or matted material must be bonded from behind (Fig. 7) (Fig. 6).



80b6fee3

**Fig. 6 DAMAGE COMPONENT**

- 1 - PUNCTURE

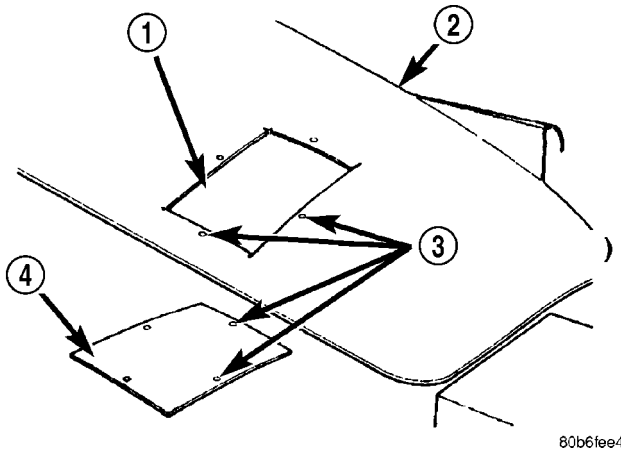
## PANEL SURFACE PREPARATION

If a body panel has been punctured, cracked, or crushed, the damaged area must be removed from the panel to achieve a successful repair. All spider web cracks leading away from a damaged area must be stopped or removed. To stop a running crack in a panel, drill a 6 mm (0.250 in.) hole at the end of the crack farthest away from the damage. If spider web cracks can not be stopped, the panel would require replacement. The surfaces around the damaged area should be stripped of paint and freed from wax and oil. Scuff surfaces around repair area with 360 grit wet/dry sandpaper, or equivalent, to assure adhesion of repair materials.

## BODY (Continued)

## PATCHING PANELS

An panel that has extensive puncture type damage can be repaired by cutting out the damaged material (Fig. 7). Use a suitable reciprocating saw or cut off wheel to remove the section of the panel that is damaged. The piece cut out can be used as a template to shape the new patch. It is not necessary to have access to the back of the panel to install a patch. Bevel edges of cutout at 20 degrees to expose a larger bonding area on the outer side. This will allow for an increased reinforcement areas.



**Fig. 7 DAMAGED PANEL CUTOUT AND PATCH**

- 1 - CUTOUT
- 2 - DAMAGED BODY PANEL
- 3 - 4 MM (0.160 IN.) HOLES
- 4 - PATCH CUT TO SIZE

## PANEL PATCH FABRICATIONS

A patch can be fabricated from any rigid fiberglass panel that has comparable contour with the repair area. Lift gates and fenders can be used to supply patch material. If existing material is not available or compatible, a patch can be constructed with adhesive and reinforcement mesh (dry wall tape). Perform the following operation if required:

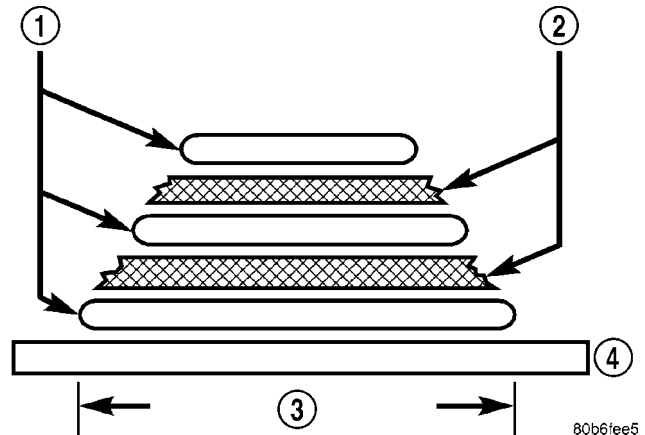
(1) Cover waxed paper or plastic with adhesive backed nylon mesh (dry wall tape) larger than the patch required (Fig. 8).

(2) Tape waxed paper or plastic sheet with mesh to a surface that has a compatible contour to the repair area.

(3) Apply a liberal coat of adhesive over the reinforcement mesh (Fig. 8). If necessary apply a second or third coat of adhesive and mesh after first coat has cured. The thickness of the patch should be the same as the repair area.

(4) After patch has cured, peel waxed paper or plastic from the back of the patch.

(5) If desired, a thin film coat of adhesive can be applied to the back of the patch to cover mesh for added strength.



**Fig. 8 FABRICATED PANEL**

- 1 - STRUCTURAL ADHESIVE
- 2 - FIBERGLASS CLOTH OR FIBERGLASS MESH TAPE
- 3 - WIDTH OF V-GROOVE
- 4 - WAXED PAPER

## PANEL PATCH INSTALLATION

(1) Make a paper or cardboard pattern the size and shape of the cutout hole in the panel.

(2) Trim 3 mm (0.125 in.) from edges of pattern so patch will have a gap between connecting surfaces.

(3) Using the pattern as a guide, cut the patch to size.

(4) Cut scrap pieces of patch material into 50 mm (2 in.) squares to use as patch supports to sustain the patch in the cutout.

(5) Drill 4 mm (0.160 in.) holes 13 mm (0.5 in.) in from edge of cutout hole (Fig. 7).

(6) Drill 4 mm (0.160 in.) holes 13 mm (0.5 in.) away from edge of patch across from holes drilled around cutout.

(7) Drill 3 mm (0.125 in.) holes in the support squares 13 mm (0.5 in.) from the edge in the center of one side.

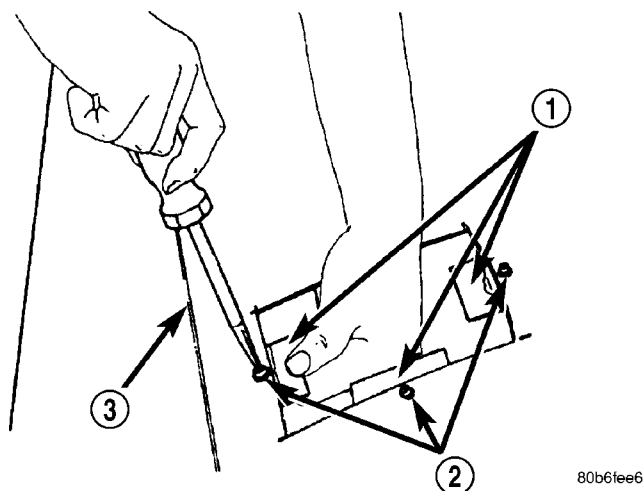
(8) Scuff the backside of the body panel around the cutout hole with a scuff pad or sandpaper.

(9) Mix enough adhesive to cover one side of all support squares.

(10) Apply adhesive to cover one side of all support squares.

## BODY (Continued)

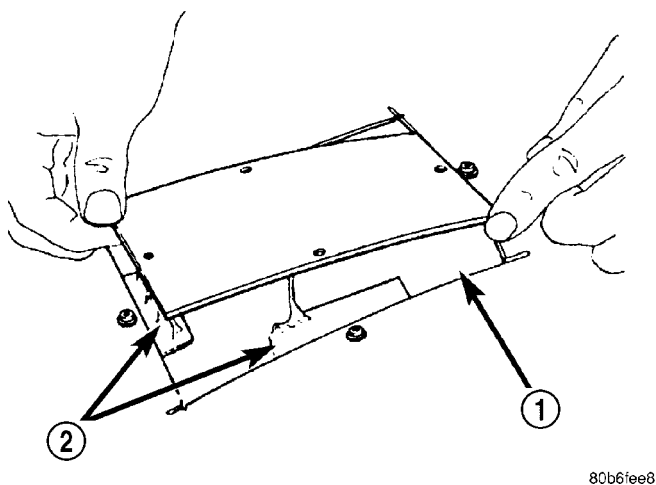
(11) Using number 8 sheet metal screws, secure support squares to back side of body panel with adhesive sandwiched between the panel and squares (Fig. 9).



**Fig. 9 SECURE SUPPORT SQUARES TO BODY PANEL**

- 1 - SUPPORT SQUARES
- 2 - SCREWS
- 3 - DAMAGED BODY PANEL

(12) Position patch in cutout against support squares and adjust patch until the gap is equal along all sides (Fig. 10).



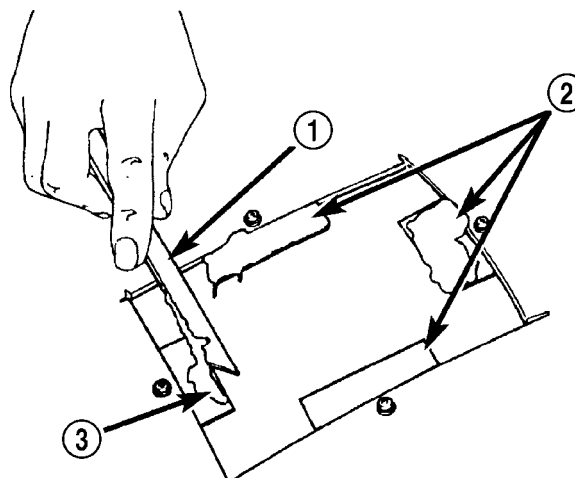
**Fig. 10 POSITION PATCH IN CUTOUT AND ALIGN**

- 1 - CUTOUT
- 2 - SUPPORT SQUARES

(13) Drill 3 mm (0.125 in.) holes in the support squares through the pre-drilled holes in the patch.

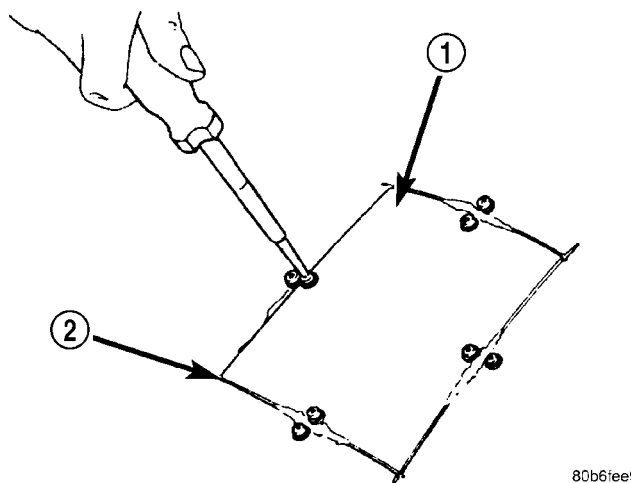
(14) Apply a coat of adhesive to the exposed ends of the support squares (Fig. 11).

(15) Install screws to hold the patch to support squares (Fig. 12). Tighten screws until patch surface is flush with panel surface.



**Fig. 11 APPLY ADHESIVE TO SUPPORT SQUARES**

- 1 - APPLICATOR
- 2 - SUPPORT SQUARES
- 3 - ADHESIVE



**Fig. 12 INSTALL SCREWS**

- 1 - PATCH
- 2 - GAP



## BODY (Continued)

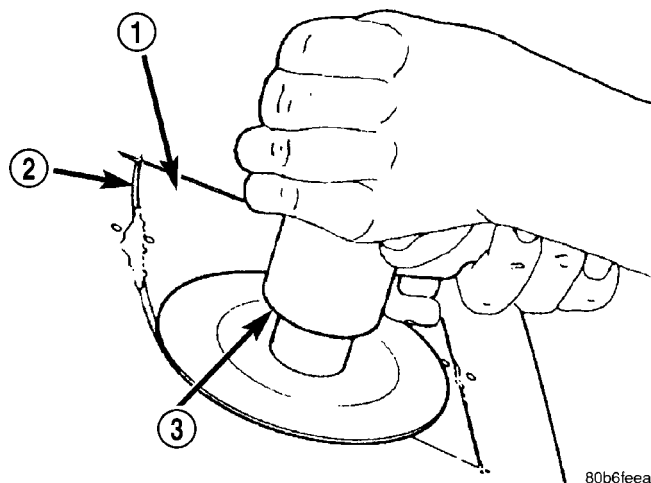
(16) Allow adhesive to cure, and remove all screws.

(17) Using a 125 mm (5 in.) 24 grit disc grinder, grind a 50 mm (2 in.) to 75 mm (3 in.) wide and 2 mm (0.080 in.) deep path across the gaps around the patch (Fig. 13). With compressed air, blow dust from around patch.

(18) Apply adhesive backed nylon mesh (dry wall tape) over gaps around patch (Fig. 14).

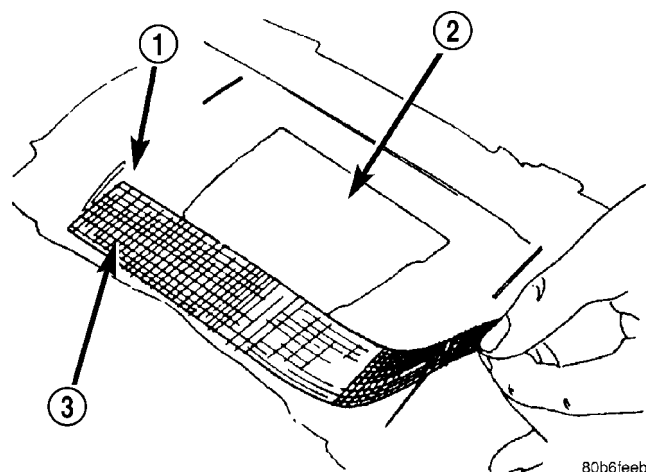
(19) Mix enough adhesive to cover the entire patch area.

(20) Apply adhesive over the mesh around patch, and smooth epoxy with a wide spreader to reduce finish grinding. Use two to three layers of mesh and adhesive to create a stronger repair (Fig. 15).



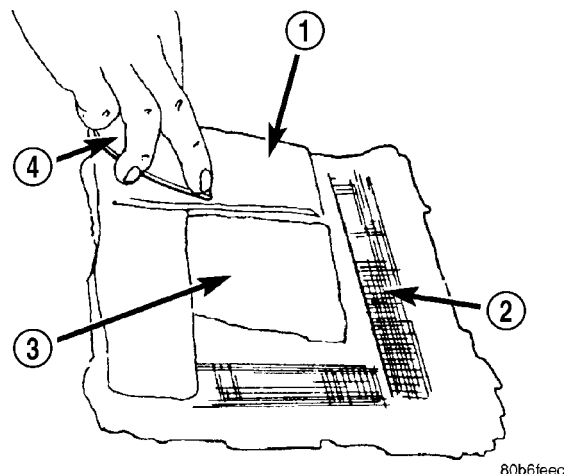
**Fig. 13 GRIND SURFACE**

- 1 - PATCH
- 2 - GAP
- 3 - DISC GRINDER



**Fig. 14 COVER GAPS WITH MESH**

- 1 - GROUND DOWN AREA
- 2 - PATCH
- 3 - MESH



**Fig. 15 COVER MESH WITH ADHESIVE**

- 1 - ADHESIVE
- 2 - MESH
- 3 - PATCH
- 4 - SPREADER

### PATCHED PANEL SURFACING

After patch panel is installed, the patch area can be finished using the same methods as finishing other types of body panels. If mesh material is exposed in the patched area, grind surface down, and apply a coat of high quality rigid plastic body filler. Prime, block sand, and paint as required.

### STANDARD PROCEDURE - BUZZ, SQUEAK & RATTLE

Buzz, Squeak & Rattles (BSR) may be caused by any one or more of the following and may be corrected as indicated:

- Loose fasteners should be tightened to specifications.
- Damaged or missing clips should be replaced.
- Damaged trim panels should be replaced.
- Incorrectly installed trim panels should be reinstalled properly.

Many BSR complaints such as loose trim, can be serviced using the Mopar® Parts BSR Noise Reduction Kit. This kit contains various tapes including foam, flock and anti-squeak used to eliminate noises caused by metal, plastic and vinyl components. Long life lubricants and greases can also be used on a variety of components. Refer to the Buzz, Squeak & Rattle Kit table for material contents and usage.

## BODY (Continued)

*BUZZ, SQUEAK & RATTLE KIT*

ITEM	FEATURES	APPLICATIONS	SERVICE TEMP
Itch And Squeak Tape	An abrasion resistant material thin enough to conform to most irregular surfaces. Stops most itches and squeaks.	Between metal and metal, metal and plastic, metal and vinyl, vinyl and plastic. Interior. Examples: Trim panels and bezels.	-40° to 225° Fahrenheit (-40° to 107° Celsius)
Black Nylon Flock	Nylon Flock with an aggressive acrylic adhesive. Provides for cushioning and compression fit, also isolates components. Water-resistant.	Between metal and metal, metal and plastic, vinyl and plastic. Examples: Pull cups, bezels, clips, ducts, top cover to glass, cowl panel.	-40° to 180° Fahrenheit (-40° to 82° Celsius)
High Density Urethane Foam	Tear resistant, highly resilient and durable.	Between metal and metal, metal and plastic. Water-resistant. Examples: I/P, heavy metal rattles, isolating brackets.	-40° to 180° Fahrenheit (-40° to 82° Celsius)
Open Cell Foam Tape	Soft foam conforms to irregular surfaces.	Wire harness and connector wrap. Examples: Seals, gasket, wiring, heat ducts.	-40° to 180° Fahrenheit (-40° to 82° Celsius)
Closed Cell Low Density Foam Tape	Soft, conformable. Water-resistant.	Wherever bulk is needed. Prevents closing flutters and rattles when applied to door watershield. Examples: Door, I/P.	-40° to 180° Fahrenheit (-40° to 82° Celsius)
NYE® Grease 880	Long life.	Suspensions. Examples: Strut busings, sway bars.	-40° to 390° Fahrenheit (-40° to 200° Celsius)
Krytox® Oil	Long life. Will not dry out or harm plastics or rubber.	When access is not possible, oil will migrate to condition. Vinyl, rubber, plastic, metal. Examples: Convertible top bushings, pull cups trim panel inserts.	-30° to 400° Fahrenheit (-34° to 205° Celsius)
Krytox® Grease	Long life. Will not dry out or harm plastics or rubber.	Vinyl, rubber, plastic, metal, glass. Examples: Weather-strips, backlite and windshield moldings.	-30° to 400° Fahrenheit (-34° to 205° Celsius)

BODY (Continued)

## SPECIFICATIONS

## SPECIFICATIONS - TORQUE

## TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS

DESCRIPTION	N·m	Ft. Lbs.	In. Lbs.
BUCKET SEAT BACK FRAME RECLINER BOLTS TO SEAT CUSHION FRAME	28	20	—
BUCKET SEAT RECLINER TO SEAT BACK FRAME BOLTS	28	20	—
BUCKET SEAT TRACK ADJUSTER NUTS TO SEAT CUSHION FRAME	28	20	—
FRONT BUCKET SEAT TO FLOOR PAN BOLTS	40	30	—
FRONT BUCKET SEAT TO FLOOR PAN FRONT BOLTS	40	30	—
FRONT DOOR HINGE BOLTS	35	26	—
FRONT DOOR LATCH TO DOOR SCREWS	10	—	89
FRONT DOOR STRIKER TO B-PILLAR	28	20	—
HOOD LATCH TO RADIATOR CROSSMEMBER	11	8	—
LIFT GATE LATCH STRIKER TO D-PILLAR NUTS	10	—	89
REAR DOOR LATCH TO DOOR SCREWS	10	—	89
REAR DOOR STRIKER TO C-PILLAR SCREWS	28	20	—
REAR SEAT BACK LATCH/HINGE TO SEAT BACK FRAME	50	37	—
REAR SEAT BACK LEFT SIDE SUPPORT BRACKET TO CENTER PIVOT BRACKET	50	37	—
REAR SEAT BACK RIGHT SIDE SUPPORT BRACKET	50	37	—
REAR SEAT CUSHION LATCH BASE PANEL SCREWS	8	—	75
REAR SEAT CUSHION TO FLOOR PAN BOLTS	11	8	—
SUNROOF MODULE TO ROOF PANEL NUTS	11	8	—

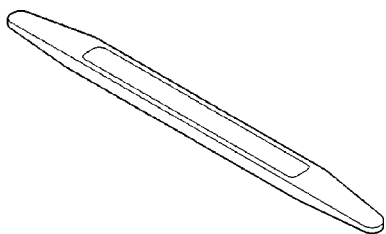
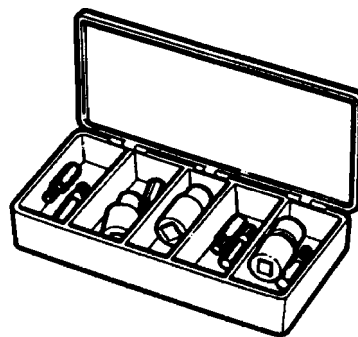
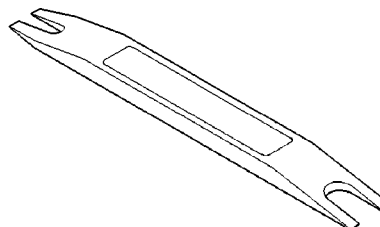
## BODY (Continued)

## BODY LUBRICANTS

COMPONENT	SERVICE INTERVAL	LUBRICANT
Door Hinges	As Required	Multi-Purpose Grease NLGI GC-LB (Water Resistant) (1)
Door Latches	As Required	Multi-Purpose Grease NLGI GC-LB (Water Resistant) (1)
Hood Latch, Release Mechanism and Safety Latch	As Required (When Performing Other Underhood Service)	Multi-Purpose Grease NLGI GC-LB 2 EP (2)
Hood Hinges	As Required	Engine Oil
Seat Track and Release Mechanism	As Required	Multi-Purpose Grease NLGI GC-LB 2 EP (2)
Liftgate Hinge	As Required	Multi-Purpose Grease NLGI GC-LB 2 EP (2)
Liftgate Support Arms	As Required	Engine Oil
Liftgate Latches	As Required	White Spray Lubricant (3)
Liftgate Release Handle (Pivot and Slide Contact Surfaces)	As Required	Multi-Purpose Grease NLGI GC-LB 2 EP (2)
Window System Components	As Required	White Spray Lubricant (3)
Lock Cylinders	Twice a Year	Lock-Cylinder Lubricant (4)
Parking Brake Mechanism	As Required	Multi-Purpose Grease NLGI GC-LB 2 EP (1)
1 = Mopar Wheel Bearing Grease (High Temp) 2 = Mopar Multi-Mileage Lubricant 3 = Mopar Spray White Lube 4 = Mopar Lock Cylinder Lubricant		

## SPECIAL TOOLS

## BODY

**Trim Stick C-4755****Torx Bit Set C-4794-B****Molding Remover C-4829**

# LIFTGATE

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>LIFTGATE</b>		<b>LATCH STRIKER</b>	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - LIFTGATE .....	15	REMOVAL .....	19
<b>EXTERIOR HANDLE</b>		INSTALLATION .....	20
REMOVAL .....	15	<b>LIFTGATE</b>	
INSTALLATION .....	15	REMOVAL .....	20
<b>FLIP-UP GLASS</b>		INSTALLATION .....	20
REMOVAL .....	16	ADJUSTMENTS .....	20
INSTALLATION .....	16	<b>TRIM PANEL</b>	
<b>FLIP-UP GLASS LATCH</b>		REMOVAL .....	21
REMOVAL .....	17	INSTALLATION .....	21
INSTALLATION .....	17	<b>LIFTGATE INSULATOR PAD</b>	
<b>FLIP-UP GLASS LATCH STRIKER</b>		REMOVAL .....	21
REMOVAL .....	17	INSTALLATION .....	21
INSTALLATION .....	17	<b>LATCH - CONTROL ASSEMBLY</b>	
<b>FLIP-UP GLASS SWITCH</b>		REMOVAL .....	22
REMOVAL .....	17	INSTALLATION .....	22
INSTALLATION .....	17	ADJUSTMENTS	
<b>HINGE</b>		ADJUSTMENT .....	22
REMOVAL .....	18	<b>LATCH - CABLES</b>	
INSTALLATION .....	18	REMOVAL .....	23
<b>LATCH/GUIDE PLATE</b>		INSTALLATION .....	23
REMOVAL .....	19	ADJUSTMENTS	
INSTALLATION .....	19	ADJUSTMENT .....	23

## LIFTGATE

### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - LIFTGATE

When the liftgate fails to open as designed, the possible causes may be one of more of the following:

POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
The liftgate may be out of adjustment.	(Refer to 23 - BODY/LIFTGATE/LIFTGATE - ADJUSTMENTS)
The liftgate latch striker(s) may be worn or out of adjustment.	Replace the striker. (Refer to 23 - BODY/LIFTGATE/LATCH STRIKER - REMOVAL) Adjust the striker.
The liftgate guide plate(s) may be worn or out of adjustment.	Replace the guide plates. (Refer to 23 - BODY/LIFTGATE/ALIGNMENT GUIDE PLATE - REMOVAL) Adjust the guide plate.
One or both of the latches may be worn or do not operate smoothly.	Replace the latch. (Refer to 23 - BODY/LIFTGATE/LATCH - REMOVAL)
The liftgate latch actuator (power lock motor) is inoperative.	Replace the actuator. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/POWER LOCKS/LIFTGATE LOCK MOTOR)
The latch rod between the outside latch handle and the latch control assembly is loose or out of adjustment.	Replace the rod clips. (Refer to 23 - BODY/LIFTGATE/LATCH - CONTROL ASSEMBLY - REMOVAL) Adjust the latch control assembly rod. (Refer to 23 - BODY/LIFTGATE/LATCH - CONTROL ASSEMBLY - ADJUSTMENTS)
One or both latch cables is either loose, binding, stretched, or out of adjustment.	Replace the cable(s). (Refer to 23 - BODY/LIFTGATE/LATCH - CABLES - REMOVAL) Adjust the latch cables. (Refer to 23 - BODY/LIFTGATE/LATCH - CABLES - ADJUSTMENTS)

## EXTERIOR HANDLE

### REMOVAL

(1) Remove the insulator pad. (Refer to 23 - BODY/LIFTGATE/LIFTGATE INSULATOR PAD - REMOVAL)

(2) Open the actuator rod clip and disconnect the actuator rod. (Fig. 1)

(3) Remove the nuts attaching the handle to the liftgate and remove the handle.

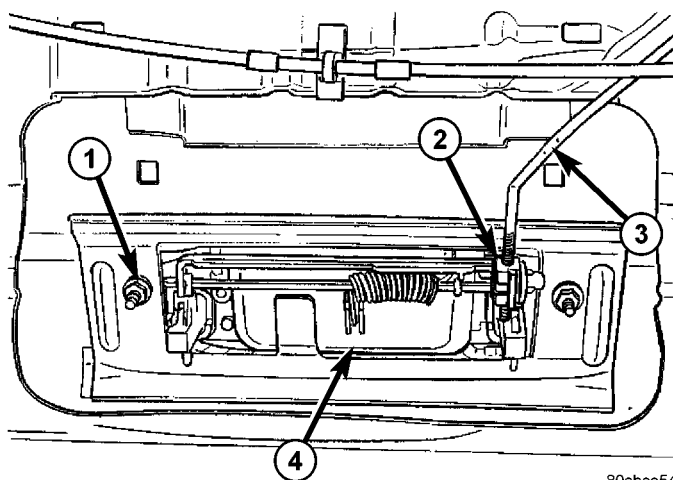
### INSTALLATION

(1) Position the exterior handle on the liftgate.

(2) Install the nuts attaching exterior handle to liftgate and tighten to 9 N·m (80 in. lbs.).

(3) Connect exterior handle link and adjust. (Refer to 23 - BODY/LIFTGATE/LATCH CONTROL ASSEMBLY - ADJUSTMENTS)

(4) Install the liftgate insulator pad. (Refer to 23 - BODY/LIFTGATE/LIFTGATE INSULATOR PAD - INSTALLATION)



80ebce54

**Fig. 1 EXTERIOR HANDLE**

- 1 - NUTS (2)
- 2 - ACTUATOR ROD CLIP
- 3 - ACTUATOR ROD
- 4 - EXTERIOR HANDLE



## FLIP-UP GLASS

### REMOVAL

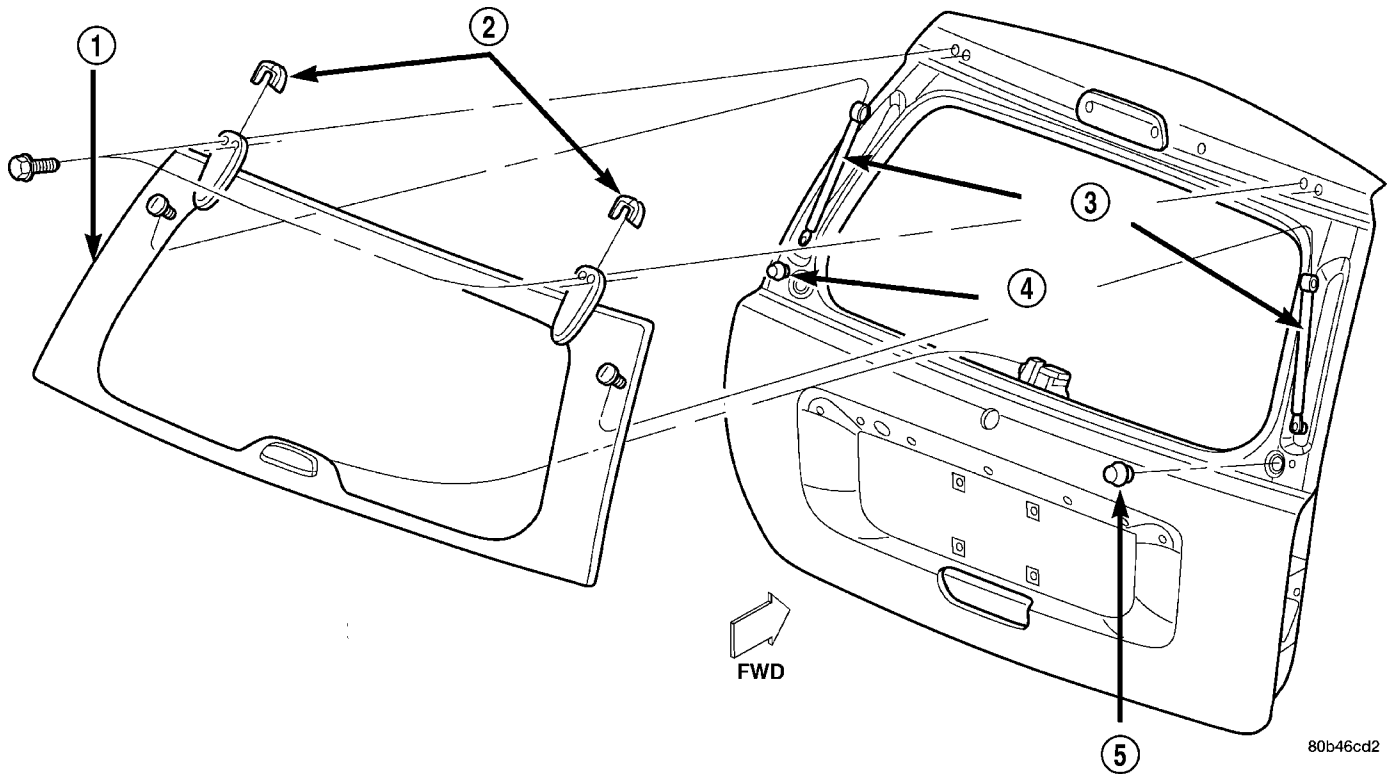
**CAUTION:** Do not disconnect the flip-up glass hinges with the liftgate flip up glass closed. The prop rod pistons are operated by high pressure gas. This pressure could cause damage and/or personal injury if they are removed while the pistons are compressed.

- (1) Using a trim stick C-4755 or equivalent, separate the glass hinge cover from the hinge on the liftgate (Fig. 2).
- (2) Open and support the liftgate glass.
- (3) Using a trim stick C-4755 or equivalent, gently pry open the locking caps on the end of the prop rods.

- (4) Remove prop rod cylinders from ball studs.
- (5) Lower the glass.
- (6) Remove the bolts that secure the glass hinges to the liftgate and remove the glass.

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Position the glass on liftgate.
- (2) Install hinge bolts and hand tighten.
- (3) With the glass panel in the fully open position, push the glass forward to completely seat the hinges and tighten the bolts to 7 N·m (60 in. lbs.).
- (4) Install prop rods on ball studs and compress locking caps to lock rods on ball studs.
- (5) Lower the glass and install the hinge covers.
- (6) Check the flip up glass for proper alignment and latching.



**Fig. 2 FLIP-UP GLASS**

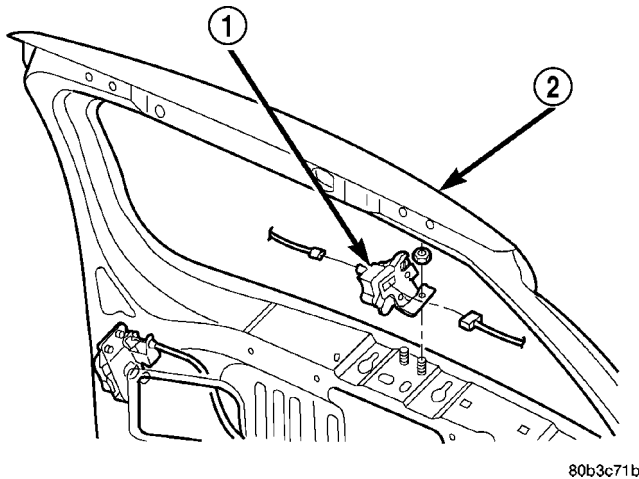
- 1 - FLIP-UP GLASS
- 2 - HINGE COVER
- 3 - SUPPORT PROP

- 4 - BUMPER
- 5 - BUMPER

## FLIP-UP GLASS LATCH

### REMOVAL

- (1) Open liftgate glass.
- (2) Remove the trim panel (Refer to 23 - BODY/LIFTGATE/TRIM PANEL - REMOVAL).
- (3) Remove the nuts and remove the latch. (Fig. 3)
- (4) Disconnect switch electrical connectors.
- (5) Remove latch from liftgate.



**Fig. 3 FLIP-UP GLASS LATCH**

1 - LATCH  
2 - LIFTGATE

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Position the latch on the liftgate (Fig. 3).
- (2) Connect switch electrical connectors.
- (3) Adjust latch to the proper position, and tighten the nuts to 12 N·m (9 ft. lbs.).
- (4) Close the glass and verify proper operation.
- (5) Install the trim panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/LIFTGATE/TRIM PANEL - INSTALLATION)

## FLIP-UP GLASS LATCH STRIKER

### REMOVAL

- (1) Raise the flip up glass.
- (2) Using a grease pencil or equivalent, mark the position of the handle/striker on the glass.
- (3) Remove the screws attaching the handle/striker to the glass.

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Position the handle/striker on the glass panel and align the reference marks.
- (2) Install the screws attaching the handle/striker to the glass panel and tighten to 7 N·m (60 in. lbs.).

## FLIP-UP GLASS SWITCH

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove license plate lamp housing/trim panel from liftgate. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/LAMPS/LIGHTING - EXTERIOR/LICENSE PLATE LAMP UNIT - REMOVAL)
- (2) Squeeze the locking tabs inward to release the switch from the housing.
- (3) Disconnect the switch harness connector, remove the switch from the housing.

### INSTALLATION

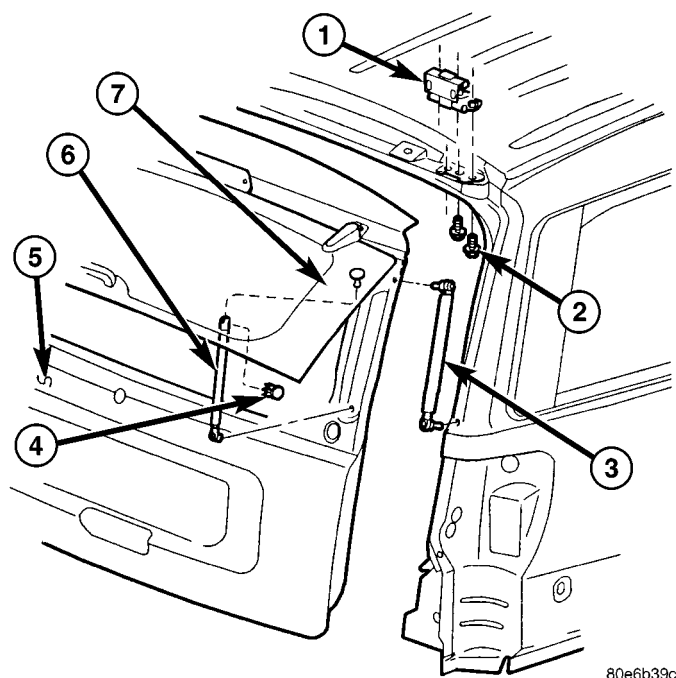
- (1) Connect the switch harness electrical connector.
- (2) Position switch in housing, snap switch into place.
- (3) Install license plate lamp housing/trim panel onto liftgate. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/LAMPS/LIGHTING - EXTERIOR/LICENSE PLATE LAMP UNIT - INSTALLATION)

## HINGE

## REMOVAL

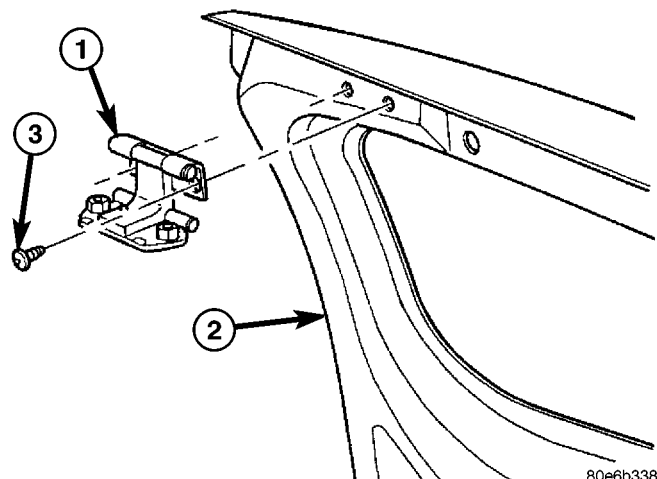
**NOTE:** It is not necessary to remove the liftgate to replace one or both hinges. The hinges can be replaced one at a time.

- (1) Open and support the liftgate.
- (2) Remove the upper liftgate opening trim panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/LIFTGATE OPENING UPPER TRIM - REMOVAL)
- (3) Using a grease pencil or equivalent, mark the hinge location.
- (4) Remove the hinge screws and remove the hinge. (Fig. 4) and (Fig. 5)



**Fig. 4 HINGE**

- 1 - LIFTGATE HINGE
- 2 - HINGE TO HEADER BOLTS (3 PER SIDE)
- 3 - LIFTGATE SUPPORT CYLINDER
- 4 - FLIP-UP GLASS SUPPORT CYLINDER LOCK CAP
- 5 - LIFTGATE
- 6 - FLIP-UP GLASS SUPPORT CYLINDER
- 7 - FLIP-UP GLASS



**Fig. 5 LIFTGATE HINGE**

- 1 - HINGE
- 2 - LIFTGATE
- 3 - SCREWS (2)

## INSTALLATION

**NOTE:** It is not necessary to remove the liftgate to replace one or both hinges. The hinges can be replaced one at a time.

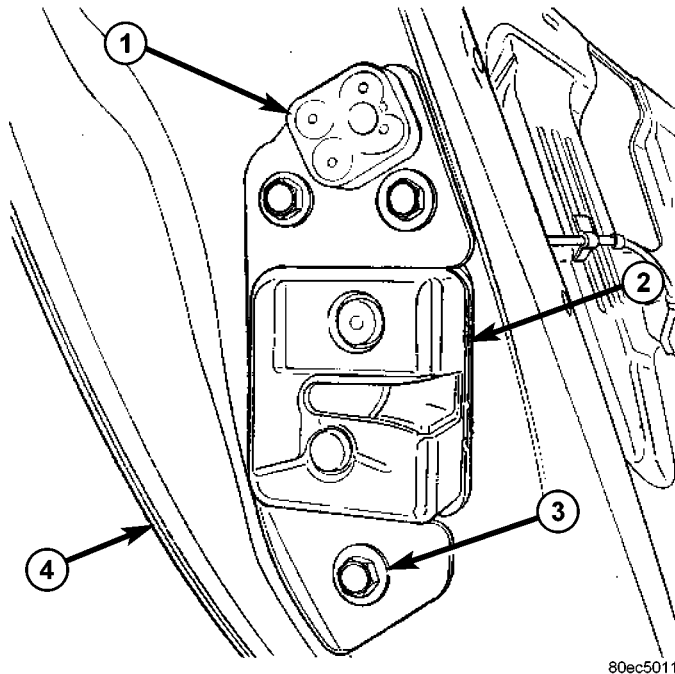
**NOTE:** Use a suitable body sealer on the hinge to body mating surfaces prior to installation.

- (1) Position the hinge on the roof panel and on the liftgate.
- (2) Install and tighten hinge screws at roof panel to 28 N·m (21 ft. lbs.).
- (3) Install hinge screws at liftgate and tighten to 28 N·m (21 ft. lbs.).
- (4) Install the upper liftgate opening trim panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/LIFTGATE OPENING UPPER TRIM - INSTALLATION)
- (5) Check the liftgate for proper alignment and operation. (Refer to 23 - BODY/BODY STRUCTURE/GAP AND FLUSH - SPECIFICATIONS)
- (6) Check for water leaks at hinge to body screws.

## LATCH/GUIDE PLATE

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove the liftgate insulator pad. (Refer to 23 - BODY/LIFTGATE/LIFTGATE INSULATOR PAD - REMOVAL)
- (2) Remove the three bolts attaching the latch and guide plate to the liftgate. (Fig. 6)
- (3) Remove the latch.
- (4) Squeeze the cable retainer clips and remove the cable housing from the latch assembly. (Fig. 7)
- (5) Disconnect the latch cable from the latch lever and remove the cable.

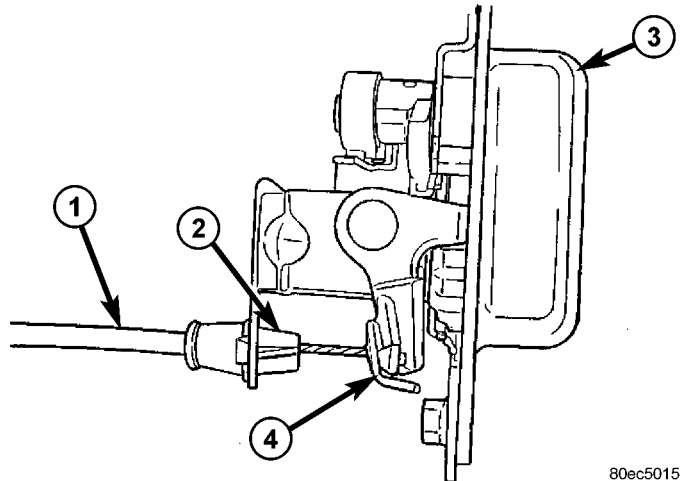


**Fig. 6 LATCH**

- 1 - LATCH GUIDE PLATE
- 2 - LATCH
- 3 - BOLTS (3)
- 4 - LIFTGATE

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Connect the latch cable to the latch and install the latch.
- (2) Install the guide plate and install the bolts.
- (3) Tighten the bolts to 16 N·m (12 ft. lbs.).
- (4) Verify liftgate latches are timed correctly. (Refer to 23 - BODY/LIFTGATE/LATCH - ADJUSTMENTS)
- (5) Install the insulator pad. (Refer to 23 - BODY/LIFTGATE/LIFTGATE INSULATOR PAD - INSTALLATION)



80ec5015

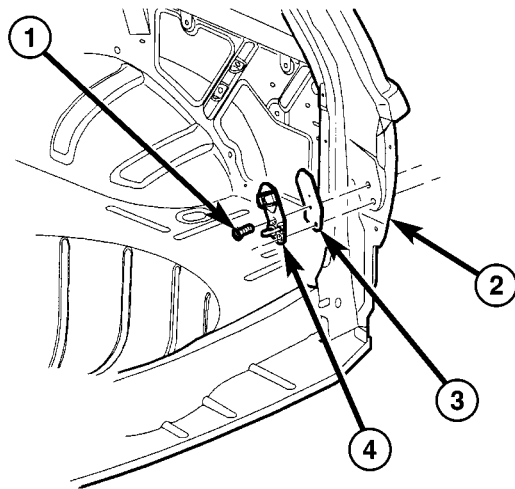
**Fig. 7 LATCH/CABLE CONNECTION**

- 1 - LATCH CABLE
- 2 - RETAINER CLIP
- 3 - LATCH ASSEMBLY
- 4 - LATCH LEVER

## LATCH STRIKER

### REMOVAL

- (1) Open liftgate.
- (2) Remove bolts attaching striker to d-pillar (Fig. 8).
- (3) Separate striker from d-pillar.



80e6b379

**Fig. 8 LATCH STRIKER**

- 1 - BOLTS (2 PER SIDE)
- 2 - D-PILLAR
- 3 - STRIKER SHIM (IF EQUIPPED)
- 4 - STRIKER

## LATCH STRIKER (Continued)

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Position the striker on the d-pillar.
- (2) Install the bolts attaching the striker to the d-pillar and tighten to 28 N·m (20 ft. lbs.) (Fig. 8).
- (3) Install the tail lamp (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/LAMPS/LIGHTING - EXTERIOR/TAIL LAMP - INSTALLATION).
- (4) Verify the striker wedge and latch guide plate are correctly aligned and striker is positioned in the center of the latch fishmouth opening. (Fig. 6)

## LIFTGATE

## REMOVAL

**CAUTION:** Do not disconnect the support rod cylinders with the liftgate closed. The support rod pistons are operated by high pressure gas. This pressure could cause damage and /or personal injury if they are removed while the pistons are compressed.

- (1) Open and support the liftgate.
- (2) Remove the trim panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/LIFTGATE/TRIM PANEL - REMOVAL)
- (3) Remove the prop rods from the liftgate.
- (4) Disconnect the wire harnesses and the washer hose.
- (5) Using a grease pencil or equivalent, mark the hinge location.
- (6) Remove the liftgate to hinge screws and remove liftgate from vehicle. (Fig. 9)

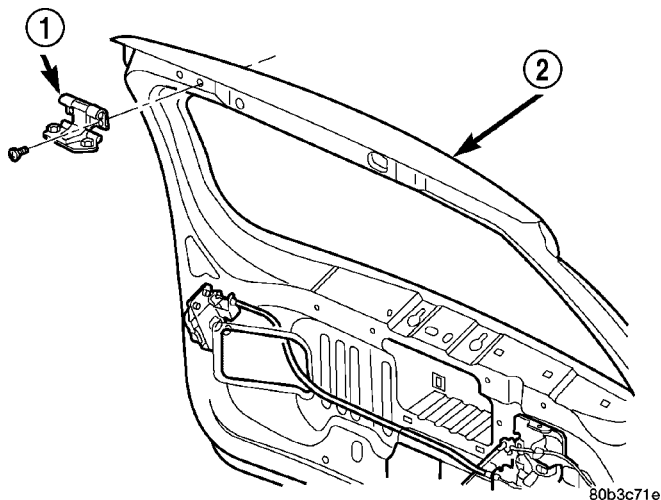


Fig. 9 LIFTGATE

1 - HINGE  
2 - LIFTGATE

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Position the liftgate on the vehicle and align the witness marks.
- (2) Install the hinge screws at liftgate and tighten to 28 N·m (20 ft. lbs.).
- (3) Connect the wire harnesses and the washer hose.
- (4) Install the trim panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/LIFTGATE/TRIM PANEL - INSTALLATION)
- (5) Install the prop rods.
- (6) Close the liftgate and check for proper latching and alignment. Adjust as necessary. (Refer to 23 - BODY/LIFTGATE/LIFTGATE - ADJUSTMENTS)

## ADJUSTMENTS

**NOTE:** The position of the liftgate can be adjusted upward or downward by the use of slots in the hinge. An inward or outward adjustment is achieved by use of slots in the body. If an inward or outward adjustment is needed, use a body sealer on the hinge to body mating surface.

## In/out

- (1) Remove the upper liftgate trim. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/LIFTGATE OPENING UPPER TRIM - REMOVAL)
- (2) For the upper lift gate adjustments, loosen the hinge to header bolts and adjust to specifications (Fig. 4). (Refer to 23 - BODY/BODY STRUCTURE/GAP AND FLUSH - SPECIFICATIONS)
- (3) Tighten the hinge bolts to 28 N·m (20 ft. lbs.).
- (4) For the lower lift gate adjustments, loosen the striker screws and adjust to specifications (Fig. 8). (Refer to 23 - BODY/BODY STRUCTURE/GAP AND FLUSH - SPECIFICATIONS)
- (5) Tighten the striker screws to 28 N·m (20 ft. lbs.).
- (6) Install the upper liftgate opening trim. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/LIFTGATE OPENING UPPER TRIM - INSTALLATION)

## Up/Down and Left/Right

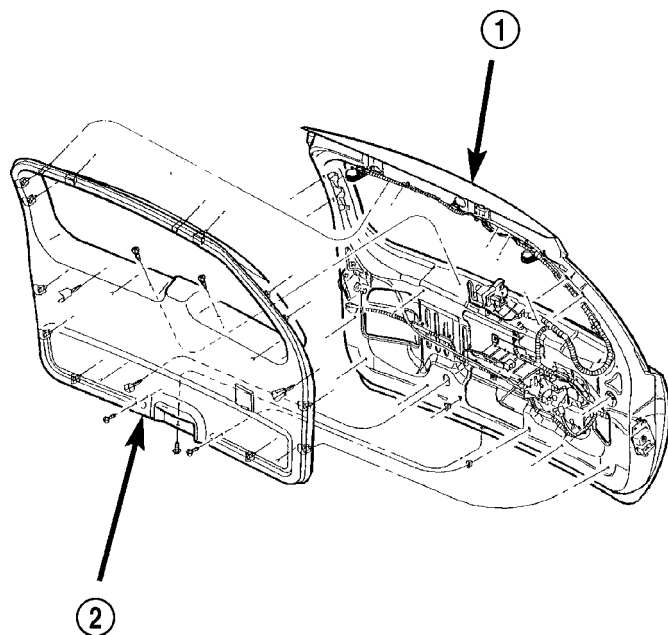
- (1) Loosen the hinge to liftgate bolts (Fig. 9).
- (2) Loosen the striker screws (Fig. 8).
- (3) Adjust the liftgate up/down position and tighten the hinge bolts to 28 N·m (20 ft. lbs.). (Refer to 23 - BODY/BODY STRUCTURE/GAP AND FLUSH - SPECIFICATIONS)
- (4) Confirm the lower liftgate in/out position and tighten the striker screws to 10 N·m (85 in. lbs.).

## TRIM PANEL

### REMOVAL

**NOTE:** The liftgate trim panel is attached with screws and clips.

- (1) Raise the liftgate.
- (2) Remove the screws securing the liftgate trim panel to the liftgate (Fig. 10).
- (3) Disconnect the rear window defroster wires.
- (4) Using a trim stick C-4755 or equivalent, pry the liftgate trim panel off the liftgate.



**Fig. 10 LIFTGATE TRIM PANEL**

1 - LIFTGATE  
2 - LIFTGATE TRIM PANEL

### INSTALLATION

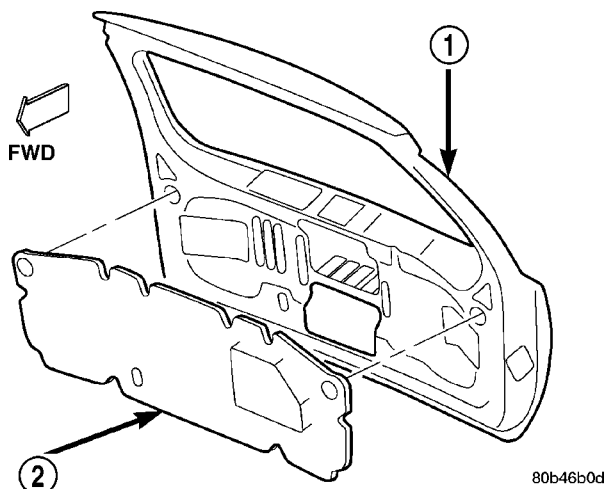
**NOTE:** The liftgate trim panel is attached with screws and clips.

- (1) Align the liftgate trim panel spring clips and press the panel into the liftgate.
- (2) Install the trim panel screws.
- (3) Connect the rear defroster wires.

## LIFTGATE INSULATOR PAD

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove the trim panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/LIFTGATE/TRIM PANEL - REMOVAL)
- (2) Separate the liftgate insulator from the liftgate and trim panel (Fig. 11).



**Fig. 11 LIFTGATE INSULATOR PAD**

1 - LIFTGATE  
2 - INSULATION PAD

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Thoroughly clean the area of any adhesive or insulation material.
- (2) Install the insulator in the liftgate.
- (3) Install the trim panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/LIFTGATE/TRIM PANEL - INSTALLATION)

80ba7980

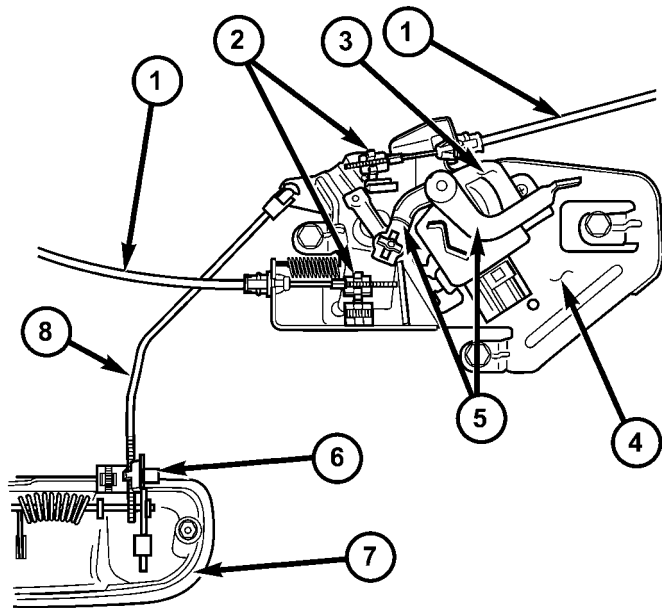
80b46b0d



## LATCH - CONTROL ASSEMBLY

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove the liftgate insulator pad. (Refer to 23 - BODY/LIFTGATE/LIFTGATE INSULATOR PAD - REMOVAL)
- (2) Disconnect the electrical connector.
- (3) Disconnect the outside handle link from the latch. (Fig. 12)
- (4) Open the plastic retention clips and separate the latch cables from the control assembly.
- (5) Remove the three bolts and remove the control assembly. (Fig. 13)



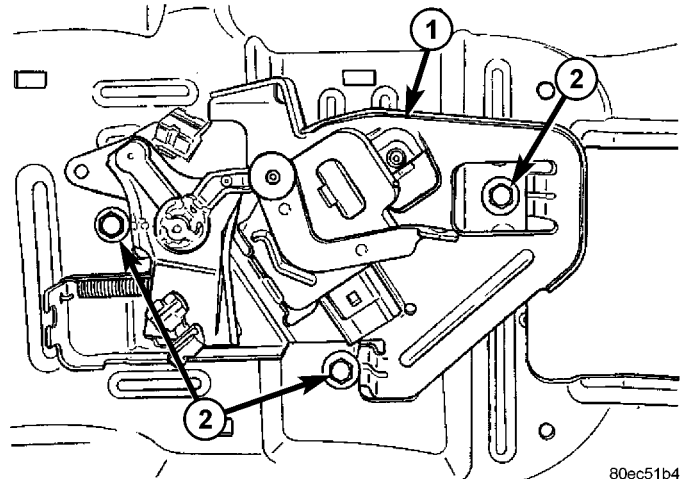
80e8dc7d

**Fig. 12 LATCH CONTROL ASSEMBLY & HANDLE**

- 1 - LATCH CABLES (ADJUSTABLE)
- 2 - LATCH CABLE PLASTIC RETENTION CLIPS (CLIP SHOWN WITH COVER OPEN)
- 3 - LATCH ACTUATOR/POWER LOCK MOTOR (CAN BE SERVICE SEPARATELY)
- 4 - LATCH CONTROL ASSEMBLY METAL BRACKET
- 5 - MANUAL LOCK/UNLOCK LEVER MECHANISM
- 6 - LATCH ROD PLASTIC RETENTION CLIP (CLIP SHOWN WITH OPEN COVER)
- 7 - OUTSIDE LIFTGATE LATCH HANDLE (REAR VIEW)
- 8 - LATCH ROD (ADJUSTABLE)

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Install the control assembly.
- (2) Install the three bolts and tighten to 10 N·m (90 in. lbs.).
- (3) Connect the outside handle link.
- (4) Connect the latch cables.
- (5) Connect the electrical connector.
- (6) Adjust the outside handle. (Refer to 23 - BODY/LIFTGATE/LATCH - CONTROL ASSEMBLY - ADJUSTMENTS)



80ec51b4

**Fig. 13 LATCH FASTENERS**

- 1 - LATCH CONTROL ASSEMBLY
- 2 - BOLTS (3)

- (7) Adjust the latch cables. (Refer to 23 - BODY/LIFTGATE/LATCH - CABLE - ADJUSTMENTS)
- (8) Install the liftgate insulator pad. (Refer to 23 - BODY/LIFTGATE/LIFTGATE - INSULATOR PAD - INSTALLATION)

## ADJUSTMENTS

### ADJUSTMENT

- (1) Remove the insulator pad. (Refer to 23 - BODY/LIFTGATE/LIFTGATE - INSULATOR PAD - REMOVAL)
- (2) With the liftgate closed, slowly open the liftgate using the outside handle.
- (3) Determine if excessive handle travel is required to unlatch the liftgate. If so, adjustment to the latch rod may be required.
- (4) Open the liftgate.
- (5) Open the plastic latch rod retention clip on the outside handle and disconnect the latch rod from the outside handle. (Fig. 12)
- (6) Verify that the latch control assembly is in its fully returned position.

**NOTE: Do not pre-load the latch rod when attaching.**

- (7) Attach the threaded end of the latch rod to the open retention clip. Make sure all excess play has been removed between the outside liftgate handle and the latch assembly.

- (8) Fully close the plastic retention clip.
- (9) Cycle the outside handle and verify smooth operation.

- (10) Install the insulator pad. (Refer to 23 - BODY/LIFTGATE/LIFTGATE - INSULATOR PAD - INSTALLATION)

## LATCH - CABLES

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove the latch. (Refer to 23 - BODY/LIFTGATE/LATCH/GUIDE PLATE - REMOVAL)
- (2) Open the cable plastic retention clip. (Fig. 12)
- (3) Separate the cable from the control assembly. (Fig. 12)
- (4) Release the support clips, if equipped, and remove the cable.

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Install the cable and attach it to the latch.
- (2) Connect the cable to the control assembly and secure the retainer clips.
- (3) Attach the support clips if equipped.
- (4) Install the latch. (Refer to 23 - BODY/LIFTGATE/LATCH/GUIDE PLATE - INSTALLATION)
- (5) Adjust the cables. (Refer to 23 - BODY/LIFTGATE/LATCH - CABLES - ADJUSTMENTS)

## ADJUSTMENTS

### ADJUSTMENT

- (1) Remove the trim panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/LIFTGATE/TRIM PANEL - REMOVAL)
- (2) With the liftgate closed, slowly open the liftgate using the outside handle.
- (3) Determine if one of more of the following occurs:
  - Excessive handle travel is required to unlatch the liftgate.
  - Only one side of the liftgate will unlatch.
  - As one side of the liftgate unlatches, more than 2 mm (0.08 in.) of additional outside handle travel is required to unlatch the other side (latches are not synchronized/timed).

**NOTE:** Do not close the liftgate during the adjustment procedure.

- (4) To adjust the latch cables, open the liftgate.
- (5) Open the plastic latch rod retention clip on the outside handle and disconnect the latch rod from the outside handle. (Fig. 12)
- (6) Open both latch cable retention clips and remove the threaded end of the cable from each clip.
- (7) Verify that the latch control assembly is in its fully returned position.
- (8) Verify that both latch cables slide smoothly and do not bind.

**NOTE:** The latches must be in their fully closed position to properly adjust the latch cables. The following step is necessary to remove excess cable play at the latch end of the cable.

- (9) Using a suitable tool, fully latch (close) both liftgate latches.
- (10) Gently pull on the latch cable threaded end to remove any excess play in the cable.
- (11) Remove the excess play from the other latch cable and seat both cable threaded ends into their respective opened retention clips.

**NOTE:** Apply a small bead of RTV to both open cable retention clips and threaded cable ends to prevent the threaded ends from rotating within the retention clips.

- (12) Close both cable retention clips. Verify complete clip closure.
- (13) Adjust the outside handle rod. (Refer to 23 - BODY/LIFTGATE/LATCH - ADJUSTMENTS)
- (14) While the liftgate is open and the latch control assembly is still uncovered, slowly open the outside latch handle to unlatch both side latches. Verify both latches unlatch.
- (15) Cycle the liftgate closed and open to verify correct operation of the liftgate latch system.
- (16) Install the insulator pad. (Refer to 23 - BODY/LIFTGATE/LIFTGATE INSULATOR PAD - INSTALLATION)

## DOOR - FRONT

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>CHECK STRAP</b>		<b>INSTALLATION</b>	29
REMOVAL	24	<b>LATCH</b>	
INSTALLATION	24	REMOVAL	29
<b>DOOR</b>		INSTALLATION	29
REMOVAL	25	ADJUSTMENTS	
INSTALLATION	25	ADJUSTMENT	30
ADJUSTMENTS		<b>LATCH STRIKER</b>	
ADJUSTMENT	25	REMOVAL	30
<b>DOOR GLASS</b>		INSTALLATION	30
REMOVAL	26	<b>LOCK CYLINDER</b>	
INSTALLATION	26	REMOVAL	30
<b>EXTERIOR HANDLE</b>		INSTALLATION	30
REMOVAL	27	<b>TRIM PANEL</b>	
INSTALLATION	27	REMOVAL	31
<b>GLASS RUN CHANNEL</b>		INSTALLATION	31
REMOVAL	27	<b>WATERDAM</b>	
INSTALLATION	27	REMOVAL	31
<b>HINGE</b>		INSTALLATION	31
REMOVAL	28	<b>WINDOW REGULATOR</b>	
INSTALLATION	28	REMOVAL	32
<b>INSIDE HANDLE ACTUATOR</b>		INSTALLATION	32
REMOVAL	29		

## CHECK STRAP

## REMOVAL

- (1) Remove the waterdam. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/WATERDAM - REMOVAL)
- (2) Remove screws attaching door check to A-pillar.
- (3) Remove nuts attaching door check to door (Fig. 1).
- (4) Remove door check through speaker location hole.

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Position door check on door through speaker location hole (Fig. 1).
- (2) Install nuts attaching door check to door and tighten to 11 N·m (8 ft. lbs.).
- (3) Install screws attaching door check to a-pillar and tighten to 15 N·m (11 ft. lbs.).
- (4) Install the waterdam. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/WATERDAM - INSTALLATION)

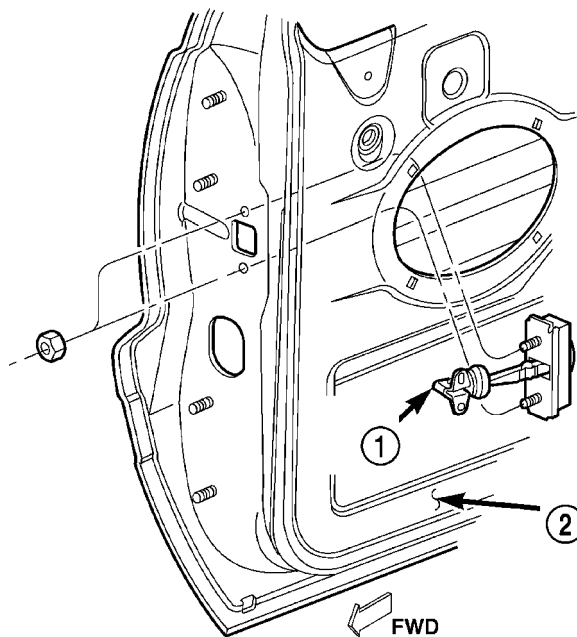


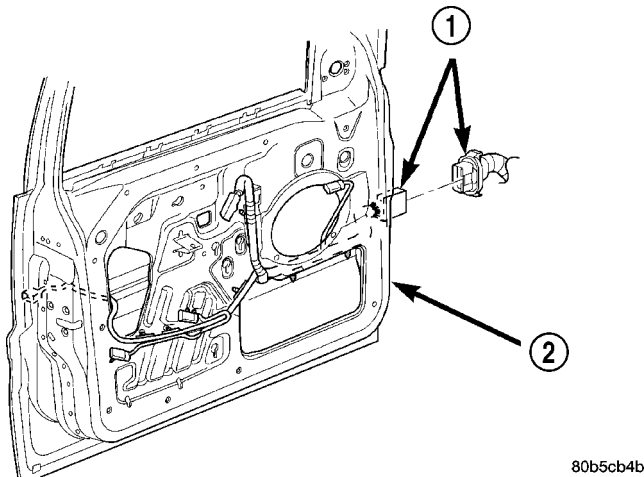
Fig. 1 DOOR CHECK

- 1 - DOOR CHECK
- 2 - FRONT DOOR

## DOOR

### REMOVAL

- (1) Disconnect front door harness connector (Fig. 2).
- (2) Support door with padded floor jack.
- (3) Remove the check strap to body screws. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/CHECK STRAP - REMOVAL)
- (4) Remove the four nuts from the door hinge studs. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/HINGE - REMOVAL)
- (5) Separate door from vehicle.



**Fig. 2 FRONT DOOR HARNESS CONNECTOR**

- 1 - HARNESS CONNECTOR  
2 - DOOR

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Position door at vehicle and align hinges.
- (2) Install the hinge nuts. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/HINGE - INSTALLATION)
- (3) Connect front door harness connector (Fig. 2).
- (4) Install the check strap to body screws. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/CHECK STRAP - INSTALLATION)

## ADJUSTMENTS

### ADJUSTMENT

**NOTE:** For vehicles with four doors, it is recommended that you adjust the rear door before adjusting the front door. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOORS - REAR/DOOR - ADJUSTMENTS)

- Door adjustment measurements should be taken from stationary or welded body panels like the roof, rocker or quarter panels.

- During adjustment procedures, it is recommended that all the hinge fasteners be loosened

except for the upper most fasteners. Adjustments can be made using the upper bolts to hold the door with final torque of the fasteners occurring after correct door positioning is achieved.

- A suitable body sealant should be used when removing or moving the hinges.

### FORE/AFT

**NOTE:** Fore/aft (lateral) door adjustment is done by loosening the hinge to the hinge pillar fasteners one hinge at a time and moving the door to the correct position.

- (1) Support the door with a suitable lifting device.
- (2) Loosen the hinge to hinge pillar fasteners. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/HINGE - REMOVAL)
- (3) Adjust the door to the correct position. (Refer to 23 - BODY/BODY STRUCTURE/GAP AND FLUSH - SPECIFICATIONS)
- (4) Tighten the hinge pillar fasteners to 28 N·m (21 ft. lbs.).

### UP/DOWN

**NOTE:** Up/down door adjustment is done by loosening either the hinge to the hinge pillar fasteners or the hinge to door fasteners and moving the door to the correct position.

**NOTE:** When adjustment of the door requires the loosening of the door to hinge fasteners, it will be necessary to separate the epoxy bonded washers with a chisel or other suitable tool.

**NOTE:** When the up/down adjustments are done correctly, the top of the door is positioned over flush to the roof. (Refer to 23 - BODY/BODY STRUCTURE/GAP AND FLUSH - SPECIFICATIONS)

- (1) Support the door with a suitable lifting device.
- (2) Loosen the latch striker bolts. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/LATCH STRIKER - REMOVAL)
- (3) Loosen the hinge to door fasteners (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/DOOR - REMOVAL) or loosen the hinge to hinge pillar fasteners (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/HINGE - REMOVAL).
- (4) Adjust the door to the correct position. (Refer to 23 - BODY/BODY STRUCTURE/GAP AND FLUSH - SPECIFICATIONS)
- (5) Tighten the hinge pillar fasteners or the door to hinges fasteners to 28 N·m (21 ft. lbs.).

## DOOR (Continued)

(6) Tighten the latch striker bolts. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/LATCH STRIKER - INSTALLATION)

## IN/OUT

**NOTE:** In/out door adjustment is done by loosening the hinge to door fasteners one hinge at a time and moving the door to the correct position.

**NOTE:** When adjustment of the door requires the loosening of the door to hinge fasteners, it will be necessary to separate the epoxy bonded washers with a chisel or other suitable tool.

- (1) Support the door with a suitable lifting device.
- (2) Loosen the latch striker bolts. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/LATCH STRIKER - REMOVAL)
- (3) Loosen the hinge to door fasteners. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/DOOR - REMOVAL)
- (4) Adjust the door to the correct position. (Refer to 23 - BODY/BODY STRUCTURE/GAP AND FLUSH - SPECIFICATIONS)
- (5) Tighten the door to hinges fasteners to 28 N·m (21 ft. lbs.).
- (6) Tighten the latch striker bolts. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/LATCH STRIKER - INSTALLATION)

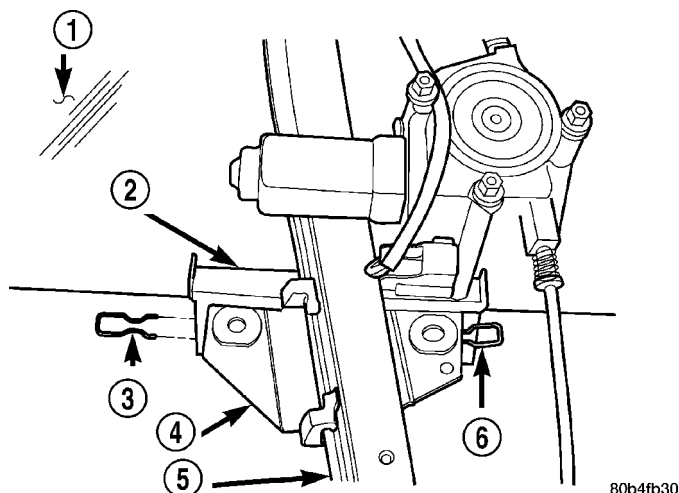
## DOOR GLASS

## REMOVAL

- (1) Locate glass to half down position.
- (2) Remove the waterdam, (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/WATERDAM - REMOVAL).
- (3) Remove inner belt weatherstrip, (Refer to 23 - BODY/WEATHERSTRIP/SEALS/FDR INNER BELT WEATHERSTRIP - REMOVAL).
- (4) Using a long flat blade or hook type tool, disengage clips (Fig. 3) attaching glass liftplate to the regulator.
- (5) Carefully push bottom of glass panel outward to disengage glass retainer studs from lift plate (Fig. 4).
- (6) Lift glass upward and out of door.

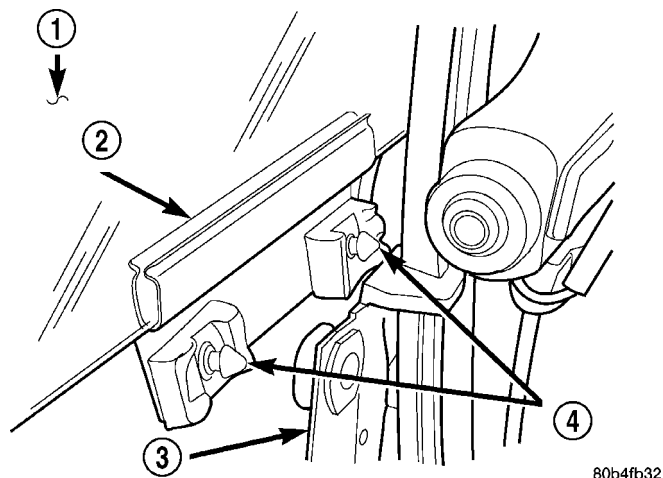
## INSTALLATION

- (1) Lower glass into position.
- (2) Carefully align glass lift plate studs with regulator lift plate and insert studs into lift plate.
- (3) Engage clips attaching glass lift plate to regulator lift plate.



**Fig. 3 FRONT DOOR GLASS CLIPS**

- 1 - GLASS
- 2 - GLASS LIFT PLATE
- 3 - CLIP
- 4 - REGULATOR LIFT PLATE
- 5 - REGULATOR
- 6 - CLIP



**Fig. 4 FRONT DOOR GLASS RETAINER**

- 1 - GLASS
- 2 - GLASS LIFT PLATE
- 3 - REGULATOR LIFT PLATE
- 4 - STUD

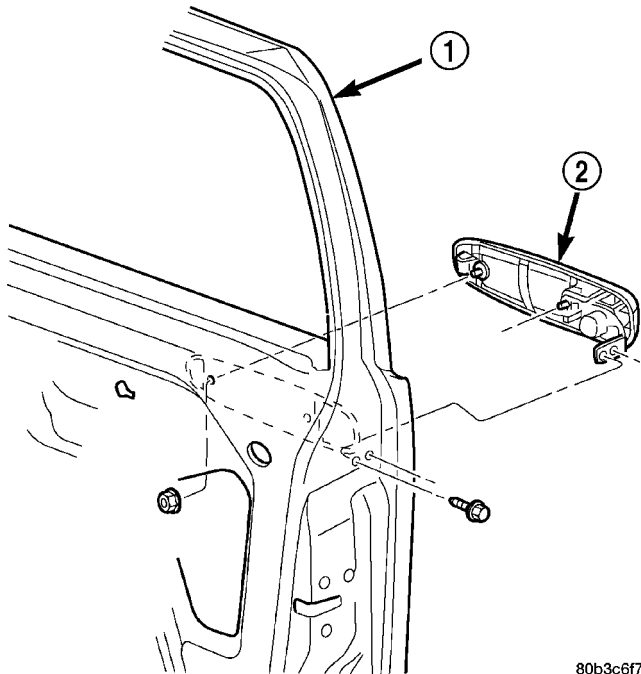
- (4) Install inner belt weatherstrip, (Refer to 23 - BODY/WEATHERSTRIP/SEALS/FDR INNER BELT WEATHERSTRIP - INSTALLATION).
- (5) Install waterdam. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/WATERDAM - INSTALLATION)



## EXTERIOR HANDLE

### REMOVAL

- (1) Raise the glass to the full up position and remove glass run channel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/GLASS RUN CHANNEL - REMOVAL).
- (2) For the drivers door, disconnect lock cylinder to latch rod.
- (3) Disconnect exterior handle to latch rod
- (4) Remove fasteners attaching outside handle to door (Fig. 5).
- (5) Remove outside handle from door.
- (6) Disconnect anti-theft harness connector, if equipped.
- (7) Separate outside handle from vehicle.



80b3c6f7

**Fig. 5 FRONT DOOR OUTSIDE HANDLE**

- 1 - DOOR  
2 - OUTSIDE HANDLE

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Position exterior handle at door (Fig. 5).
- (2) Connect anti-theft harness connector, if equipped.
- (3) Position the handle on the door and slide fully toward the rear of the door.
- (4) Install nuts attaching exterior handle to door and tighten to 6 N·m (55 in. lbs.).
- (5) For the drivers door, install the screws attaching the key cylinder screws bracket and tighten to 6 N·m (55 in. lbs.).
- (6) Connect exterior handle to latch rod
- (7) For the drivers door, connect lock cylinder to latch rod.

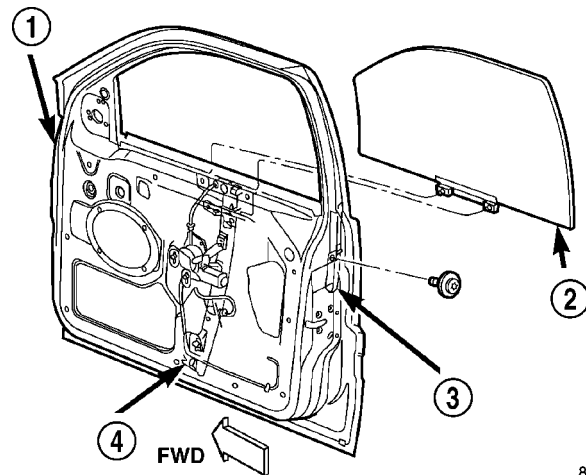
- (8) Install glass run channel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/GLASS RUN CHANNEL - INSTALLATION)

## GLASS RUN CHANNEL

### REMOVAL

**NOTE:** Only the rearward glass run channel is serviceable.

- (1) Remove the waterdam. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/WATERDAM - REMOVAL)
- (2) Remove bolt attaching run channel to inner door panel (Fig. 6).
- (3) Peel back glass run channel weatherstrip on rear run channel.
- (4) Pull glass run channel downward to separate from door.
- (5) Remove glass run channel from door.



80b46b3b

**Fig. 6 FRONT DOOR GLASS RUN CHANNEL**

- 1 - DOOR  
2 - GLASS  
3 - GLASS RUN CHANNEL  
4 - REGULATOR

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Position glass run channel in door (Fig. 6).
- (2) Align glass run channel with door frame run channel and slide channel upward to secure door.
- (3) Press glass run channel weatherstrip into rear run channel.
- (4) Install bolt attaching run channel to inner door panel.
- (5) Install the waterdam, (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/WATERDAM - INSTALLATION).



## HINGE

## REMOVAL

**NOTE:** The hinges may be removed and replaced one at a time to make the door fit adjustment easier.

(1) Open and support door with a suitable lifting device.

(2) Using a grease pencil or equivalent, mark the hinge location.

(3) Disconnect the door wire harness.

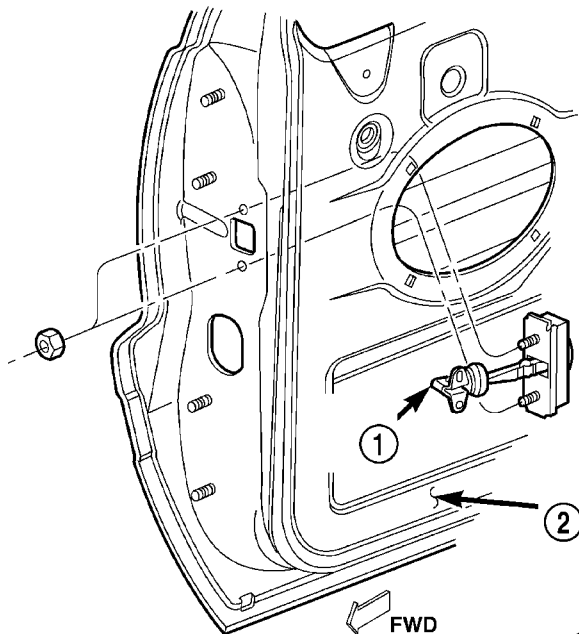
(4) If replacing both hinges at the same time, remove the bolts and disconnect the door check from the a-pillar. (Fig. 7)

**NOTE:** The epoxy coated washers should not be removed from the hinges. If the washers are removed the door may have to be re-adjusted.

(5) Remove the door hinge to the door nuts. (Fig. 8)

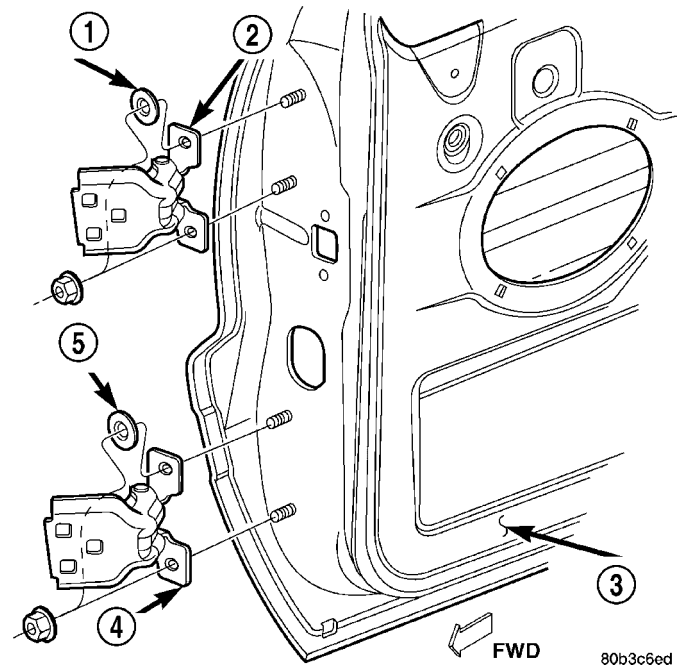
(6) If replacing both hinges at the same time, remove the door.

(7) Remove the bolts and remove the hinge from the a-pillar.



**Fig. 7 FRONT DOOR CHECK**

- 1 - DOOR CHECK
- 2 - FRONT DOOR



**Fig. 8 Front Door Hinges**

- 1 - WASHER
- 2 - UPPER HINGE
- 3 - FRONT DOOR
- 4 - LOWER HINGE
- 5 - WASHER

## INSTALLATION

**NOTE:** Use 3M® Fast and Firm or equivalent on the hinge to body mating surface as a sealant.

(1) Position hinge on a-pillar.

(2) Install hinge to body bolts, but do not tighten.

(3) Align the hinge to the reference marks and torque the bolts to 28 N·m (21 ft. lbs.).

(4) Install the door on the hinge and align with the reference marks.

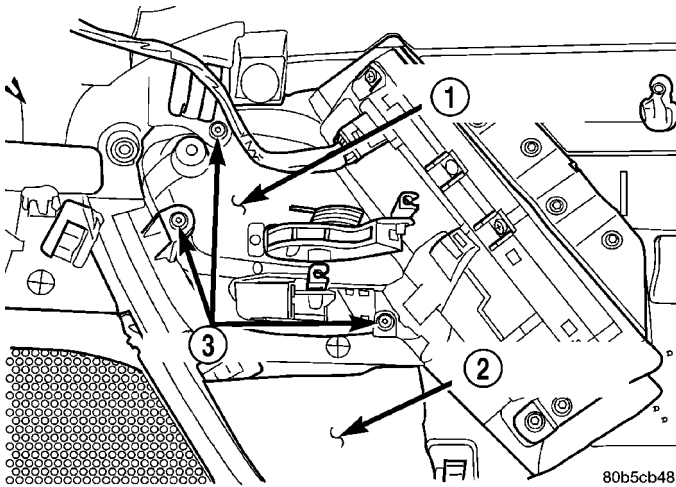
(5) Install the nuts and washers and tighten 31 N·m (23 ft. lbs.). (Fig. 8)

(6) Check and adjust the door position if necessary. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/DOOR - ADJUSTMENTS)

## INSIDE HANDLE ACTUATOR

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove the trim panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/TRIM PANEL - REMOVAL)
- (2) Remove screws attaching inside handle actuator to trim panel (Fig. 9).
- (3) Separate inside handle actuator from trim panel.



**Fig. 9 FRONT DOOR INSIDE HANDLE ACTUATOR**

- 1 - INSIDE HANDLE ACTUATOR
- 2 - DRIVER'S DOOR TRIM PANEL
- 3 - SCREW

### INSTALLATION

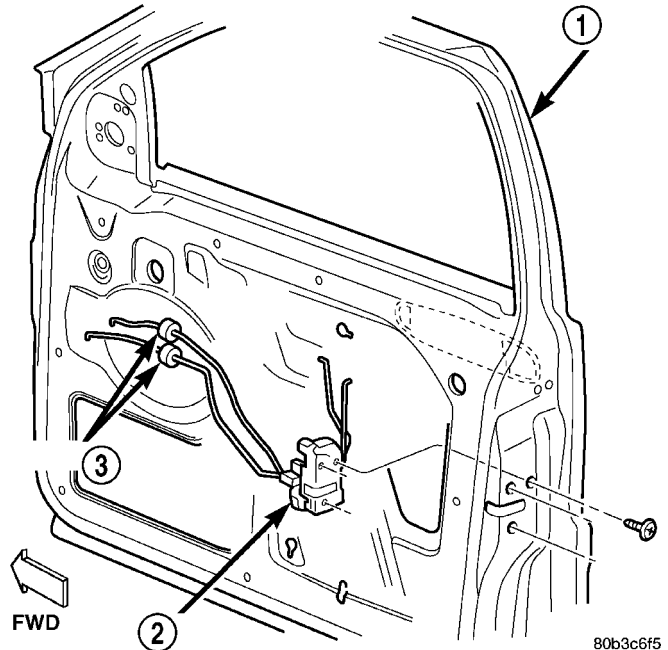
- (1) Position inside handle actuator in trim panel.
- (2) Install screws attaching inside handle actuator to trim panel (Fig. 9).
- (3) Install the trim panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/TRIM PANEL - INSTALLATION)

## LATCH

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove glass run channel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/GLASS RUN CHANNEL - REMOVAL)

- (2) Remove screws attaching door latch to door (Fig. 10).
- (3) Disconnect all rods from door latch.
- (4) Disconnect wire harness connector.
- (5) Separate door latch from door.



**Fig. 10 DOOR LATCH**

- 1 - DOOR
- 2 - LATCH
- 3 - ISOLATOR

### INSTALLATION

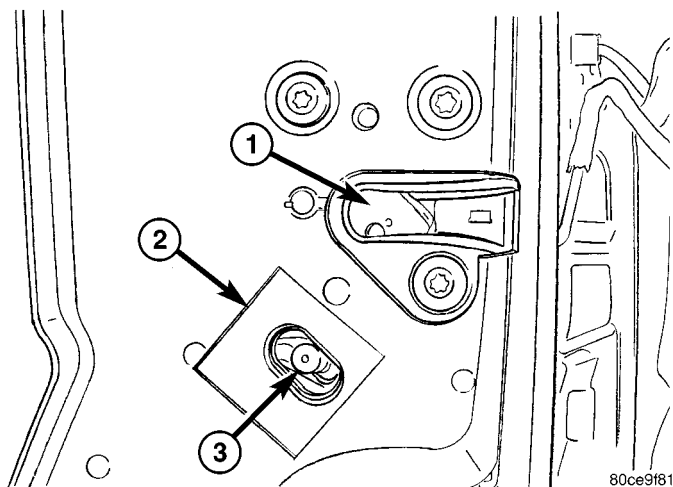
- (1) Position door latch at door.
- (2) Connect wire harness connector.
- (3) Connect all rods to door latch.
- (4) Install screws attaching door latch to door and tighten to 11 N·m (8 ft. lbs.). (Fig. 10)
- (5) Install glass run channel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/GLASS RUN CHANNEL - INSTALLATION)
- (6) Adjust the latch. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/LATCH - ADJUSTMENTS)

## LATCH (Continued)

## ADJUSTMENTS

## ADJUSTMENT

- (1) Locate access hole and remove the mylar tape covering it. (Fig. 11)
- (2) Insert a 5/32-inch hex-wrench through hole and into adjustment screw. Loosen screw.
- (3) Operate outside handle several times to release any restriction because of mis-alignment.
- (4) Tighten adjustment screw to 3 N·m (30 in. lbs.).
- (5) Test handle for proper operation.

**Fig. 11 LATCH ADJUSTMENT SCREW - TYPICAL**

- 1 - DOOR LATCH
- 2 - MYLAR TAPE
- 3 - ADJUSTMENT SCREW

## LATCH STRIKER

## REMOVAL

- (1) Remove screws attaching striker to b-pillar.
- (2) Separate striker and spacer from b-pillar (Fig. 12).

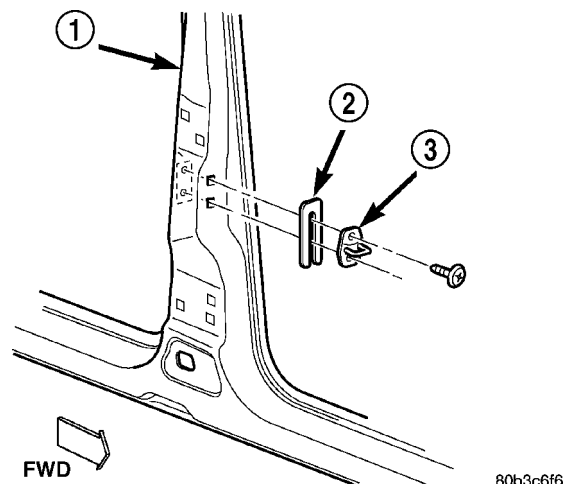
## INSTALLATION

- (1) Position striker and spacer on b-pillar.
- (2) Install screws attaching striker to b-pillar and tighten to 28 N·m (21 ft. lbs.). (Fig. 12)

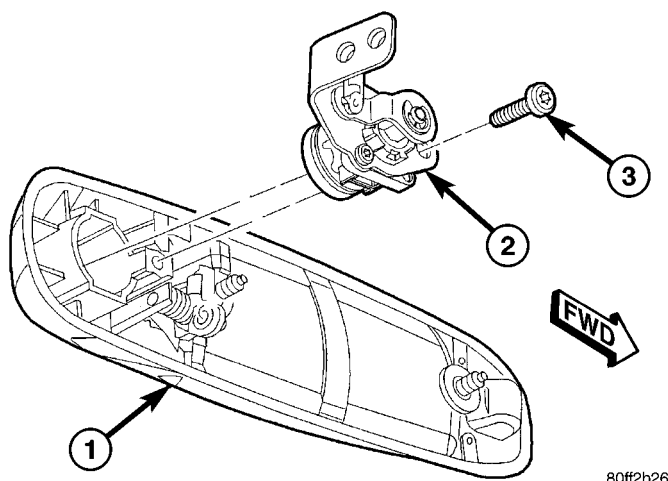
## LOCK CYLINDER

## REMOVAL

- (1) Remove exterior handle. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/EXTERIOR HANDLE - REMOVAL)
- (2) Remove screw securing lock cylinder retainer to outside door handle (Fig. 13).
- (3) Separate lock cylinder from door handle.
- (4) Disconnect lock cylinder switch, if equipped.

**Fig. 12 FRONT DOOR LATCH STRIKER**

- 1 - B-PILLAR
- 2 - SPACER
- 3 - STRIKER

**Fig. 13 FRONT DOOR LOCK CYLINDER**

- 1 - OUTSIDE DOOR HANDLE
- 2 - LOCK CYLINDER
- 3 - SCREW

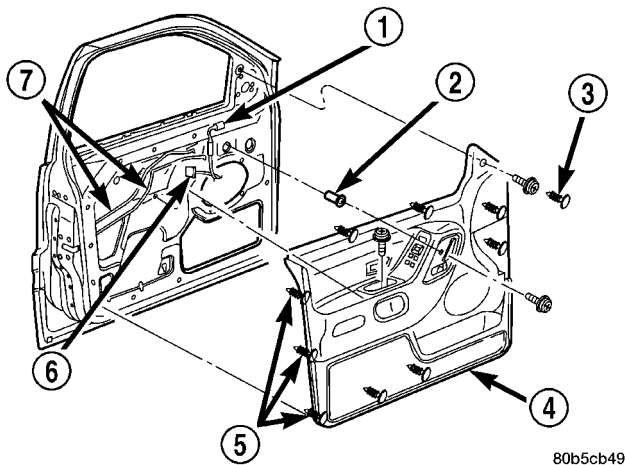
## INSTALLATION

- (1) Connect lock cylinder switch, if equipped.
- (2) Position lock cylinder in door handle.
- (3) Position lock cylinder retainer and install screw (Fig. 13).
- (4) Install exterior handle. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/EXTERIOR HANDLE - INSTALLATION)

## TRIM PANEL

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove trim plug from mirror flag bezel.
- (2) Remove three screws attaching trim panel to door (Fig. 14).
- (3) Using a trim stick C-4829 or equivalent, detach trim panel perimeter push-in fasteners from door inner panel.
- (4) Lift trim panel upward and separate from door.
- (5) Disconnect latch rods from inside handle actuator.
- (6) Disconnect harness connectors for power accessories.
- (7) Separate trim panel from vehicle.



**Fig. 14 FRONT DOOR TRIM PANEL**

- 1 - HARNESS CONNECTOR
- 2 - NUTSERT
- 3 - TRIM PLUG
- 4 - TRIM PANEL
- 5 - PUSH-IN FASTENER
- 6 - HARNESS CONNECTOR
- 7 - LATCH RODS

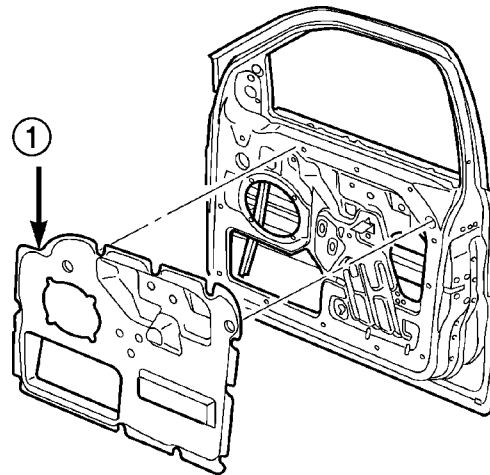
### INSTALLATION

- (1) Connect harness connectors to power accessories.
- (2) Connect latch rods to inside handle actuator.
- (3) Position trim panel on door inner panel.
- (4) Press trim panel push-in fasteners inward around perimeter of door.
- (5) Install screws attaching trim panel to door (Fig. 14).
- (6) Install trim plug in mirror flag bezel.

## WATERDAM

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove the door speaker. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/AUDIO/SPEAKER - REMOVAL)
- (2) Peel the waterdam from door.
- (3) Route all harnesses and linkage rods through waterdam as necessary.
- (4) Separate waterdam from door (Fig. 15).



80b46b2f

**Fig. 15 FRONT DOOR WATERDAM**

1 - INSULATOR PAD/WATERDAM

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Using MOPAR® Super Kleen solvent or equivalent, clean the waterdam contact surface of contaminants.
- (2) Route all harnesses and linkage rods through waterdam as necessary.
- (3) Position waterdam on door and align all holes.
- (4) Press waterdam on door (Fig. 15).
- (5) Install the door speaker. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/AUDIO/SPEAKER - INSTALLATION)

## WINDOW REGULATOR

### REMOVAL

(1) Remove the waterdam, (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/WATERDAM - REMOVAL).

(2) Using a long flat blade or hook type tool, disengage clips attaching glass liftplate to the regulator, (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/DOOR GLASS - REMOVAL).

(3) Secure glass in up position using a wood wedge, tape, or equivalent.

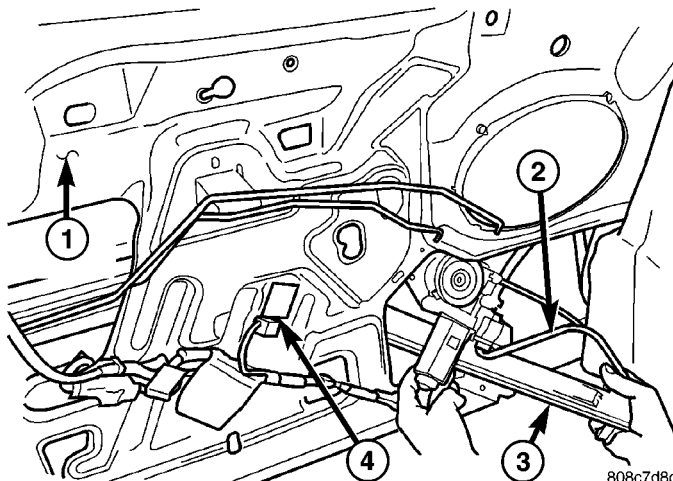
(4) Loosen the regulator bolts located at the key-hole slots in the inner door panel (Fig. 16).

(5) Remove the remaining bolts attaching regulator to inner door panel.

(6) Disengage power window regulator harness connector, if equipped.

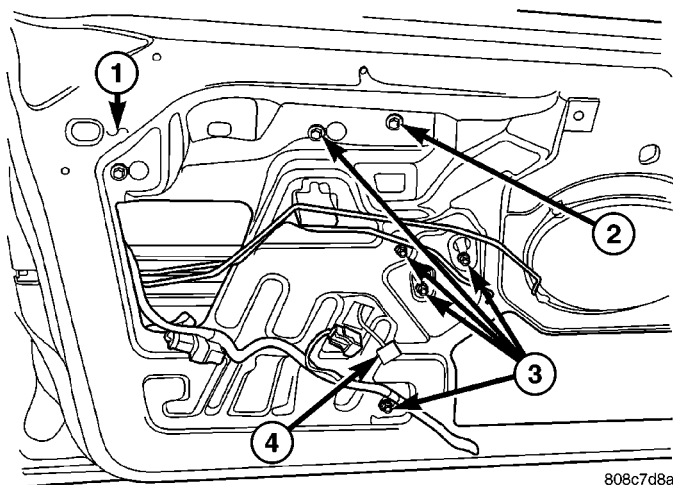
(7) Lift regulator upward to disengage bolts from door inner panel (Fig. 17).

(8) Remove regulator through access hole in door.



**Fig. 17 FRONT DOOR WINDOW REGULATOR**

- 1 - FRONT DOOR
- 2 - REGULATOR PIGTAIL
- 3 - REGULATOR
- 4 - PIGTAIL WIRING PASS THROUGH HOLE



**Fig. 16 FRONT DOOR REGULATOR BOLTS**

- 1 - FRONT DOOR
- 2 - REMOVE BOLT
- 3 - LOOSEN BOLTS
- 4 - REGULATOR WIRING PIGTAIL

### INSTALLATION

(1) Position regulator in door through access hole.

(2) Lift regulator upward and engage bolts in door inner panel key hole slots.

(3) Route the regulator wiring pigtail through the hole in the inner panel and connect, if equipped.

(4) Install bolt attaching regulator to inner door panel.

(5) Tighten bolts attaching regulator to inner door panel to 9 N·m (80 in. lbs.).

(6) Remove glass support and then position glass lift plate to regulator lift plate.

(7) Engage clips attaching glass lift plate to regulator lift plate, (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/DOOR GLASS - INSTALLATION).

(8) Install waterdam, (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/WATERDAM - INSTALLATION).

## DOORS - REAR

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>CHECK STRAP</b>		INSTALLATION	36
REMOVAL	33	<b>LATCH</b>	
INSTALLATION	33	REMOVAL	37
<b>DOOR</b>		INSTALLATION	37
REMOVAL	34	ADJUSTMENTS	
INSTALLATION	34	ADJUSTMENT	37
ADJUSTMENTS		<b>LATCH STRIKER</b>	
ADJUSTMENT	34	REMOVAL	38
<b>DOOR GLASS</b>		INSTALLATION	38
REMOVAL	35	<b>TRIM PANEL</b>	
INSTALLATION	35	REMOVAL	38
<b>EXTERIOR HANDLE</b>		INSTALLATION	38
REMOVAL	35	<b>WATERDAM</b>	
INSTALLATION	35	REMOVAL	39
<b>HINGE</b>		INSTALLATION	39
REMOVAL	36	<b>WINDOW REGULATOR</b>	
INSTALLATION	36	REMOVAL	39
<b>INSIDE HANDLE ACTUATOR</b>		INSTALLATION	39
REMOVAL	36		

## CHECK STRAP

## REMOVAL

- (1) Remove waterdam.(Refer to 23 - BODY/DOORS - REAR/WATERDAM - REMOVAL)
- (2) Remove screws attaching door check to b-pillar.
- (3) Remove nuts attaching door check to door (Fig. 1).
- (4) Remove door check through speaker location hole.

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Position door check on door through speaker location hole.
- (2) Install nuts attaching door check to door and tighten to 11 N·m (8 ft. lbs.). (Fig. 1)
- (3) Install screws attaching door check to b-pillar and tighten to 15 N·m (11 ft. lbs.).
- (4) Install waterdam. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOORS - REAR/WATERDAM - INSTALLATION)

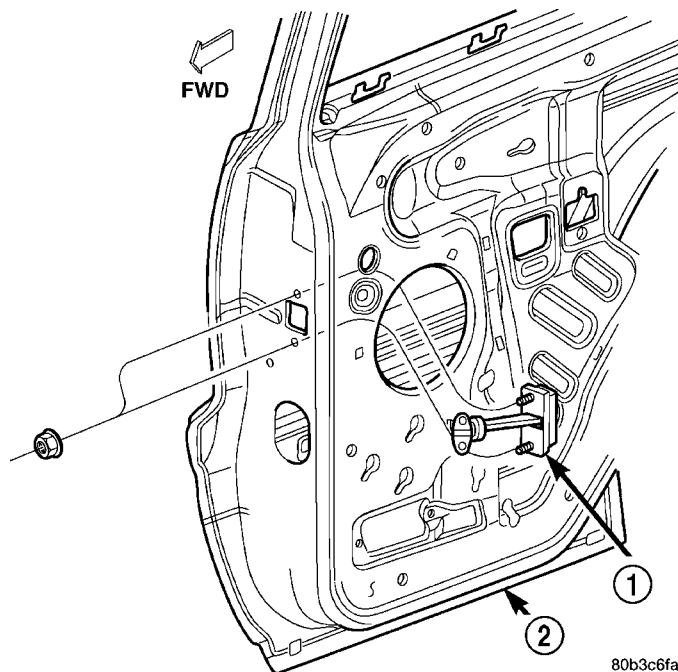


Fig. 1 DOOR CHECK

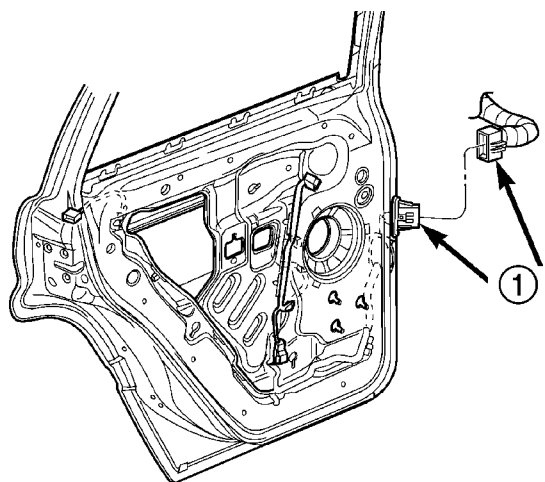
- 1 - DOOR CHECK
- 2 - REAR DOOR



## DOOR

### REMOVAL

- (1) Disconnect rear door harness connector (Fig. 2).
- (2) Support door with suitable lifting device.
- (3) Remove the check strap screws to the b-pillar. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOORS - REAR/CHECK STRAP - REMOVAL)
- (4) Remove the four nuts from the door hinge studs. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOORS - REAR/HINGE - REMOVAL)
- (5) Separate door from vehicle.



80b5cb4c

**Fig. 2 REAR DOOR HARNESS CONNECTOR**

1 - HARNESS CONNECTOR

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Position door at vehicle and align hinges.
- (2) Install the hinge nuts. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOORS - REAR/HINGE - INSTALLATION)
- (3) Install the check strap to body screws. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOORS - REAR/CHECK STRAP - INSTALLATION)
- (4) Connect rear door harness connector (Fig. 2).

## ADJUSTMENTS

### ADJUSTMENT

**NOTE:** For vehicles equipped with four doors, it is recommended that you adjust the rear door before adjusting the front door.

- Door adjustment measurements should be taken from stationary or welded body panels like the roof, rocker or quarter panels.
- During adjustment procedures, it is recommended that all the hinge fasteners be loosened except for the upper most fasteners. Adjustments can be made using the upper fasteners to hold the

door with final torque of the fasteners occurring after correct door positioning is achieved.

### FORE/AFT

**NOTE:** Fore/aft (lateral) door adjustment is done by loosening the hinge to the hinge pillar fasteners one hinge at a time and moving the door to the correct position.

- (1) Support the door with a suitable lifting device.
- (2) Loosen the hinge to hinge pillar fasteners. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOORS - REAR/HINGE - REMOVAL)
- (3) Adjust the door to the correct position. (Refer to 23 - BODY/BODY STRUCTURE/GAP AND FLUSH - SPECIFICATIONS)
- (4) Tighten to hinge pillar fasteners to 28 N·m (21 ft. lbs.). (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOORS - REAR/HINGE - INSTALLATION)

**NOTE:** Use a suitable body sealer on the hinge to body mating surfaces.

### UP/DOWN

**NOTE:** Up/down door adjustment is done by loosening either the hinge to the hinge pillar fasteners or the hinge to door fasteners and moving the door to the correct position.

**NOTE:** When adjustment of the door requires the loosening of the door to hinge fasteners, it will be necessary to separate the epoxy bonded washers with a chisel or other suitable tool.

**NOTE:** When the up/down adjustments are done correctly, the top of the door is positioned over flush to the roof. (Refer to 23 - BODY/BODY STRUCTURE/GAP AND FLUSH - SPECIFICATIONS)

- (1) Support the door with a suitable lifting device.
- (2) Loosen the latch striker. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOORS - REAR/LATCH STRIKER - REMOVAL)
- (3) Loosen the hinge to hinge pillar fasteners (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOORS - REAR/HINGE - REMOVAL) or loosen the hinge to door fasteners (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOORS - REAR/DOOR - REMOVAL).
- (4) Adjust the door to the correct position. (Refer to 23 - BODY/BODY STRUCTURE/GAP AND FLUSH - SPECIFICATIONS)
- (5) Tighten to hinge pillar fasteners or the door to hinges fasteners and fasteners to 28 N·m (21 ft. lbs.).

## DOOR (Continued)

(Refer to 23 - BODY/DOORS - REAR/HINGE - INSTALLATION)

(6) Tighten the latch striker. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOORS - REAR/LATCH STRIKER - INSTALLATION)

## IN/OUT

**NOTE:** In/out door adjustment is done by loosening the hinge to door fasteners one hinge at a time and moving the door to the correct position.

**NOTE:** When adjustment of the door requires the loosening of the door to hinge fasteners, it will be necessary to separate the epoxy bonded washers with a chisel or other suitable tool.

- (1) Support the door with a suitable lifting device.
- (2) Loosen the latch striker. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOORS - REAR/LATCH STRIKER - REMOVAL)
- (3) Loosen the hinge to door fasteners. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOORS - REAR/DOOR - REMOVAL)
- (4) Adjust the front of the door to the correct position. (Refer to 23 - BODY/BODY STRUCTURE/GAP AND FLUSH - SPECIFICATIONS)
- (5) Tighten the door to hinges fasteners to 28 N·m (21 ft. lbs.).
- (6) Tighten the latch striker. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOORS - REAR/LATCH STRIKER - INSTALLATION)

## DOOR GLASS

## REMOVAL

- (1) Remove stationary glass. (Refer to 23 - BODY/STATIONARY GLASS/DOOR GLASS - REMOVAL)
- (2) Disengage clips attaching window glass to lift plate.
- (3) Press studs out of lift plate.
- (4) Lift window glass from door (Fig. 3).

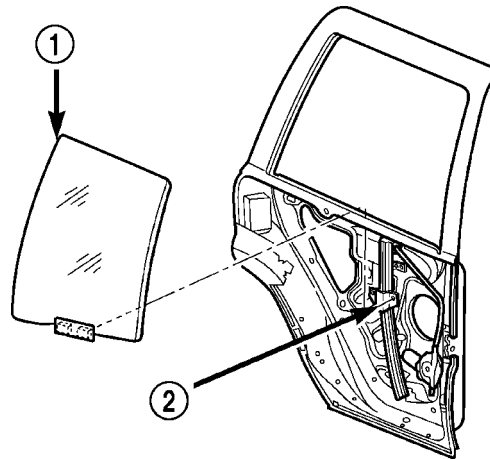
## INSTALLATION

- (1) Position window glass in door (Fig. 3).
- (2) Engage clips attaching window glass to lift plate.
- (3) Engage studs into lift plate.
- (4) Install stationary glass. (Refer to 23 - BODY/STATIONARY GLASS/DOOR GLASS - INSTALLATION)

## EXTERIOR HANDLE

## REMOVAL

- (1) Remove waterdam. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOORS - REAR/WATERDAM - REMOVAL)

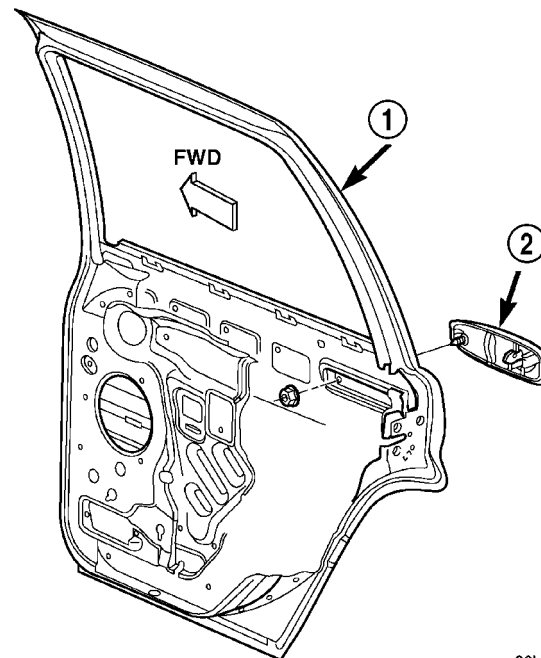


80b46b1f

Fig. 3 GLASS CHANNEL

- 1 - GLASS
- 2 - REGULATOR

- (2) Disconnect exterior handle to latch rod.
- (3) Remove fasteners attaching exterior handle to door (Fig. 4).
- (4) Remove exterior handle from door.
- (5) Separate exterior handle from vehicle.



80b46a1c

Fig. 4 FRONT

- 1 - DOOR
- 2 - OUTSIDE HANDLE

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Position exterior handle in door.
- (2) Install fasteners attaching exterior handle to door (Fig. 4).
- (3) Connect exterior handle to latch rod.
- (4) Install waterdam. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOORS - REAR/WATERDAM - INSTALLATION)

## HINGE

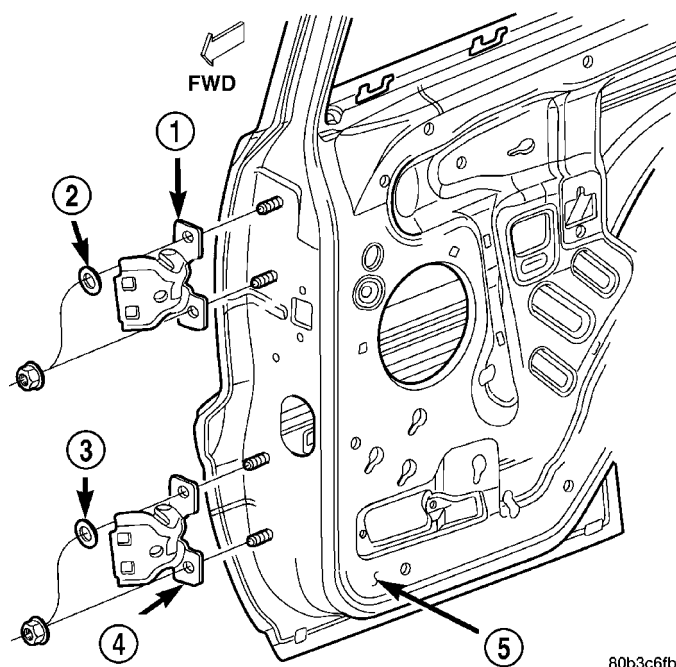
### REMOVAL

**NOTE:** The hinges may be removed and replaced one at a time to make the door fit adjustment easier.

- (1) Open front door and rear door.
- (2) Using a grease pencil or equivalent, mark hinges for installation (Fig. 5).
- (3) Support rear door with suitable lifting device.
- (4) If replacing both hinges at the same time, disconnect rear door harness connector (Fig. 2).
- (5) If replacing both hinges at the same time, remove the bolts and disconnect the door check from the b-pillar. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOORS - REAR/CHECK STRAP - REMOVAL)
- (6) Remove the lower b-pillar trim. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/B-PILLAR LOWER TRIM - REMOVAL)

**NOTE:** The epoxy coated washers should not be removed from the hinges. If the washers are removed the door may have to be re-adjusted.

- (7) Remove nuts holding door to hinge and remove the door.
- (8) Remove the two outside bolts and the one inside bolt holding hinge to b-pillar.



**Fig. 5 Rear Door Hinge**

- 1 - UPPER HINGE
- 2 - WASHER
- 3 - WASHER
- 4 - LOWER HINGE
- 5 - REAR DOOR

### INSTALLATION

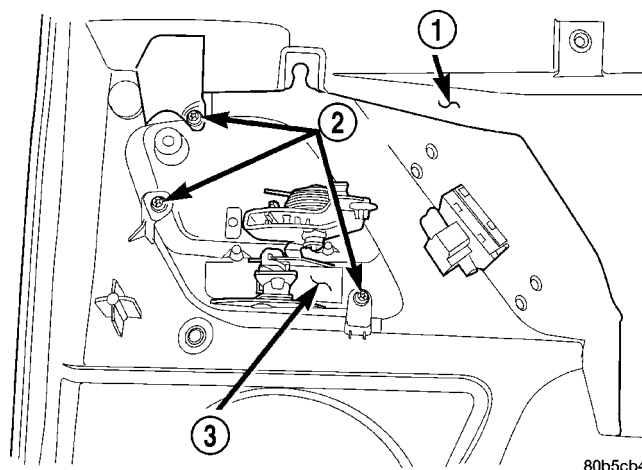
**NOTE:** Use 3M® Fast and Firm or equivalent on the hinge to body mating surface as a sealant.

- (1) Install hinge on b-pillar and align reference marks (Fig. 5).
- (2) Install bolts holding hinge to b-pillar and tighten to 28N·m (21 ft. lbs.).
- (3) Install door on hinge and align reference marks.
- (4) Install nuts, the epoxy washers if necessary, and tighten to 31 N·m (23 ft. lbs.).
- (5) Check door for fit and ease of operation. Adjust as necessary, refer to (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/DOOR - ADJUSTMENTS).
- (6) Install the lower b-pillar trim. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/B-PILLAR LOWER TRIM - INSTALLATION)

## INSIDE HANDLE ACTUATOR

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove the trim panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOORS - REAR/TRIM PANEL - REMOVAL)
- (2) Disconnect latch and lock rods from inside handle actuator.
- (3) Remove screws attaching inside handle actuator to trim panel (Fig. 6).
- (4) Separate inside handle actuator from trim panel.



**Fig. 6 REAR DOOR INSIDE HANDLE ACTUATOR**

- 1 - REAR DOOR TRIM PANEL
- 2 - SCREW
- 3 - INSIDE HANDLE ACTUATOR

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Position inside handle actuator in trim panel.
- (2) Install screws attaching inside handle actuator to trim panel (Fig. 6).
- (3) Connect latch and lock rods to inside handle actuator.

## INSIDE HANDLE ACTUATOR (Continued)

(4) Install door trim panel, refer to (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOORS - REAR/TRIM PANEL - INSTALLATION).

## LATCH

## REMOVAL

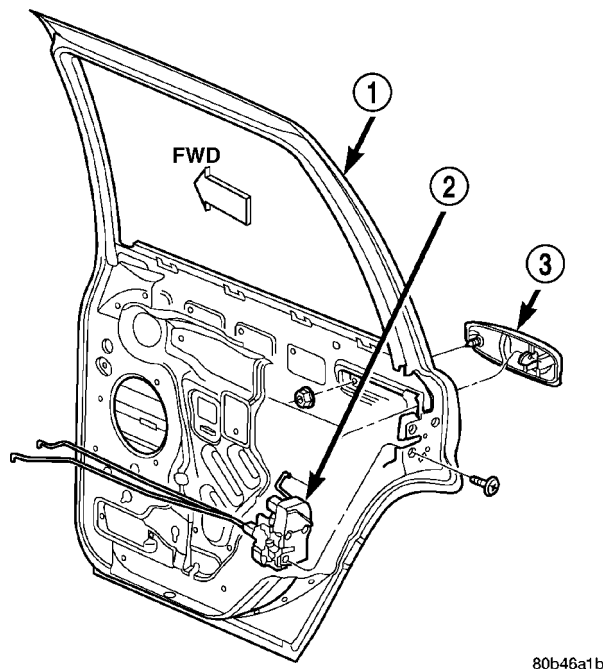
(1) Remove waterdam. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOORS - REAR/WATERDAM - REMOVAL).

(2) Remove screws attaching latch to door (Fig. 7).

(3) Disconnect the electrical harness connector.

(4) Disconnect rods from door latch.

(5) Separate door latch from door.



**Fig. 7 REAR DOOR LATCH**

- 1 - DOOR
- 2 - LATCH
- 3 - OUTSIDE HANDLE

## INSTALLATION

(1) Connect the electrical harness electrical connector and position the latch in door.

(2) Connect rods to door latch.

(3) Install screws attaching latch to door and tighten to 11 N·m (8 ft. lbs.). (Fig. 7)

(4) Install waterdam. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOORS - REAR/WATERDAM - INSTALLATION).

(5) Verify proper power lock and ajar switch operation.

## ADJUSTMENTS

## ADJUSTMENT

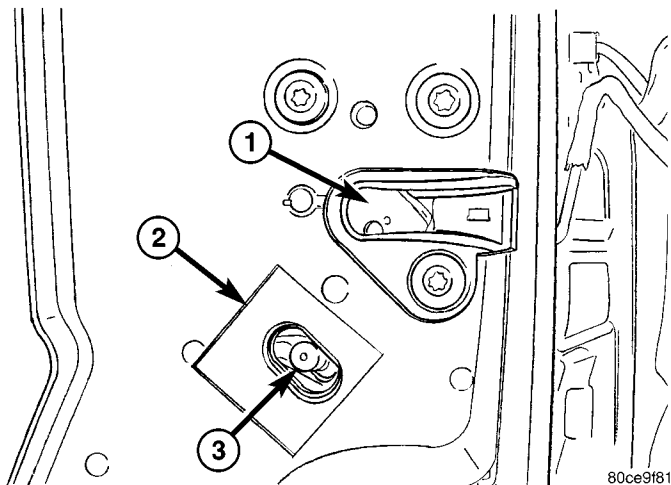
(1) Locate access hole and remove the mylar tape covering it. (Fig. 8)

(2) Insert a 5/32-inch hex-wrench through hole and into adjustment screw. Loosen screw.

(3) Operate outside handle several times to release any restriction because of mis-alignment.

(4) Tighten adjustment screw to 3 N·m (30 in. lbs.).

(5) Test handle for proper operation.



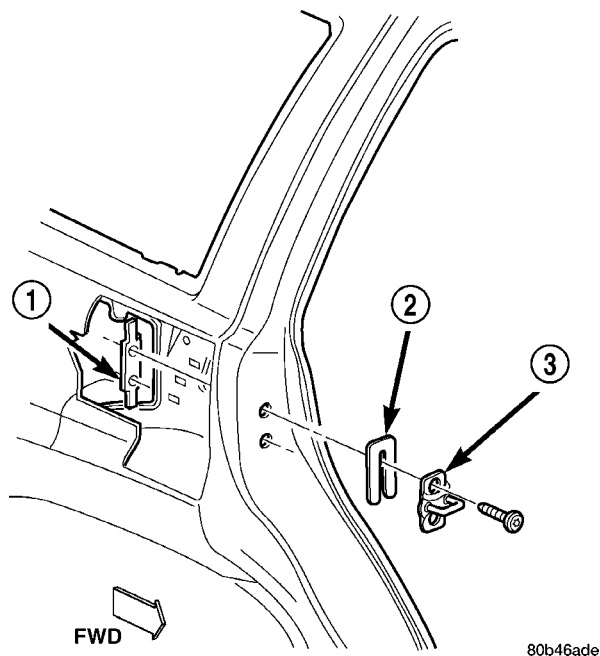
**Fig. 8 LATCH ADJUSTMENT SCREW - TYPICAL**

- 1 - DOOR LATCH
- 2 - MYLAR TAPE
- 3 - ADJUSTMENT SCREW

## LATCH STRIKER

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove screws attaching striker to C-pillar (Fig. 9).
- (2) Separate striker and spacer from vehicle.



**Fig. 9 REAR DOOR LATCH STRIKER**

- 1 - TAPPING PLATE
- 2 - SPACER
- 3 - STRIKER

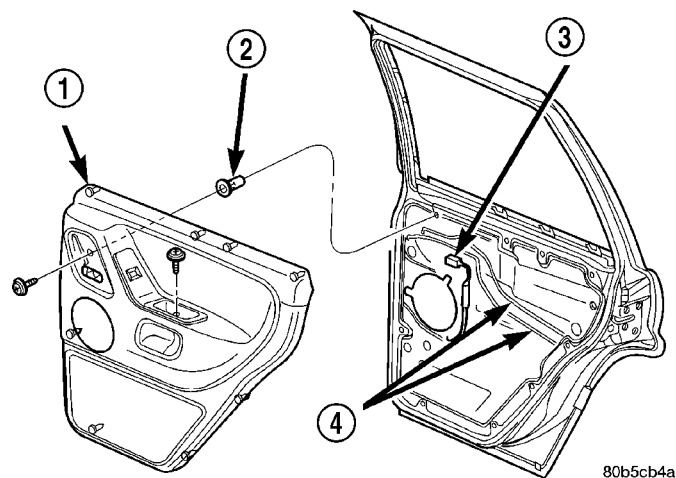
### INSTALLATION

- (1) Position striker and spacer on C-pillar.
- (2) Install screws and tighten to 28 N·m (21 ft. lbs.).
- (3) Check door fit and adjust striker as necessary. (Refer to 23 - BODY/BODY STRUCTURE/GAP AND FLUSH - SPECIFICATIONS)

## TRIM PANEL

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove screws attaching trim panel to door (Fig. 10).
- (2) Using a trim stick C-4829 or equivalent, detach trim panel perimeter push-in fasteners from door inner panel.
- (3) Lift trim panel upward and separate from door.
- (4) Disconnect latch rods from inside handle actuator.
- (5) Disconnect harness connectors for power accessories.
- (6) Separate trim panel from vehicle.



**Fig. 10 REAR DOOR TRIM PANEL**

- 1 - TRIM PANEL
- 2 - NUTSERT
- 3 - HARNESS CONNECTOR
- 4 - LATCH RODS

### INSTALLATION

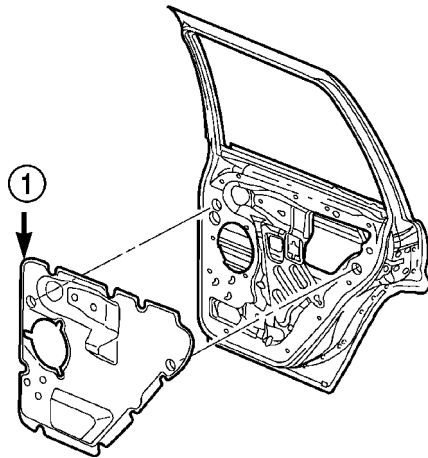
- (1) Connect harness connectors to power accessories.
- (2) Connect latch rods to inside handle actuator.
- (3) Position trim panel on door inner panel.
- (4) Press trim panel push-in fasteners inward around perimeter of door.
- (5) Install screws attaching trim panel to door (Fig. 10).



## WATERDAM

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove the door speaker. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/AUDIO/SPEAKER - REMOVAL)
- (2) Peel the waterdam from door.
- (3) Route all harnesses and linkage rods through waterdam as necessary.
- (4) Separate waterdam from door (Fig. 11).



80b46b0f

**Fig. 11 REAR DOOR WATERDAM**

1 - INSULATOR PAD

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Waterdam contact surface must be free of contaminants. Clean as necessary.
- (2) Route all harnesses and linkage rods through waterdam as necessary.
- (3) Position waterdam on door and align all holes (Fig. 11).
- (4) Press waterdam on door.
- (5) Install the door speaker. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/AUDIO/SPEAKER - INSTALLATION)

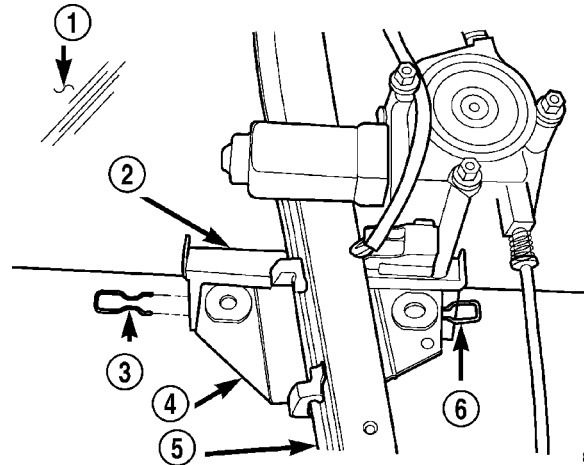
## WINDOW REGULATOR

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove the waterdam, (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOORS - REAR/WATERDAM - REMOVAL).
- (2) Using a long flat blade or hook type tool, disengage clips attaching glass liftplate to the regulator (Fig. 12).
- (3) Secure glass in up position using a wood wedge, tape, or equivalent.
- (4) Remove the fasteners retaining the regulator (Fig. 13).
- (5) Disconnect the electrical harness from the regulator pigtail.
- (6) Remove the regulator.

### INSTALLATION

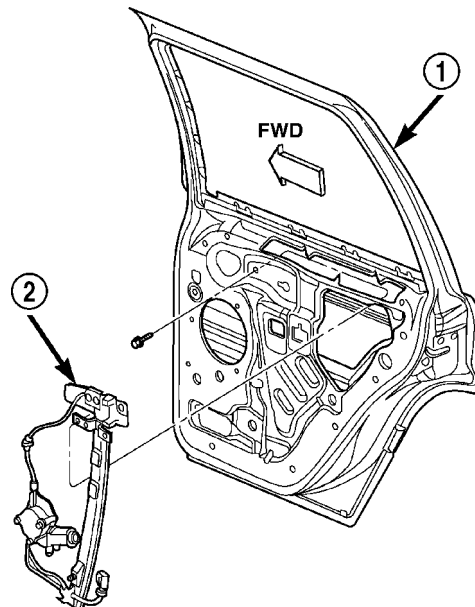
- (1) Position the window regulator in the door.



80b4fb30

**Fig. 12 WINDOW REGULATOR RETAINER CLIPS**

- 1 - GLASS
- 2 - GLASS LIFT PLATE
- 3 - CLIP
- 4 - REGULATOR LIFT PLATE
- 5 - REGULATOR
- 6 - CLIP



80b3c6f8

**Fig. 13 REAR DOOR WINDOW REGULATOR**

- 1 - DOOR
- 2 - REGULATOR

- (2) Install the fasteners retaining the regulator and tighten to 9 N·m (80 in. lbs.) (Fig. 13).
- (3) Connect the electrical harness and regulator pigtail connector.
- (4) Remove glass support and then position glass lift plate to regulator lift plate.
- (5) Engage clips attaching glass lift plate to regulator lift plate, (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOORS - REAR/DOOR GLASS - INSTALLATION).
- (6) Install waterdam, (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOORS - REAR/WATERDAM - INSTALLATION).
- (7) Cycle the glass and check for proper operation.



## EXTERIOR

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>BODY SIDE MOLDINGS</b>		INSTALLATION	44
REMOVAL	40	<b>GRILLE</b>	
INSTALLATION	41	REMOVAL	
<b>COWL GRILLE</b>		REMOVAL	44
REMOVAL	41	REMOVAL - EXPORT	44
INSTALLATION	41	INSTALLATION	
<b>D-PILLAR APPLIQUE</b>		INSTALLATION	44
REMOVAL	42	INSTALLATION - EXPORT	45
INSTALLATION	42	<b>HEADLAMP MOUNTING MODULE (HMM)</b>	
<b>EXHAUSTER - RIGHT D-PILLAR</b>		REMOVAL	45
REMOVAL	42	INSTALLATION	45
INSTALLATION	42	<b>LUGGAGE RACK</b>	
<b>EXHAUSTER - TAIL LAMP</b>		REMOVAL	46
REMOVAL	42	INSTALLATION	46
INSTALLATION	42	<b>SIDE VIEW MIRROR GLASS</b>	
<b>EXHAUSTER - LEFT QUARTER PANEL</b>		REMOVAL	46
REMOVAL	42	INSTALLATION	46
INSTALLATION	42	<b>SIDE VIEW MIRROR</b>	
<b>EXTERIOR NAME PLATES</b>		REMOVAL	46
REMOVAL	42	INSTALLATION	47
INSTALLATION	42	<b>ROCK RAIL</b>	
<b>FRONT FENDER</b>		REMOVAL	47
REMOVAL	43	INSTALLATION	47
INSTALLATION	44		
<b>FUEL FILL DOOR</b>			
REMOVAL	44		

## BODY SIDE MOLDINGS

## REMOVAL

## Doors

- (1) Open the door.
- (2) Using a trim stick C-4755 or equivalent, pry the upper rear edge off the door. Continue to the front edge of the front door. (Fig. 1) and (Fig. 2).
- (3) Using a heat gun, warm the adhesive tape on the lower edge of the cladding and pull the cladding from the door.

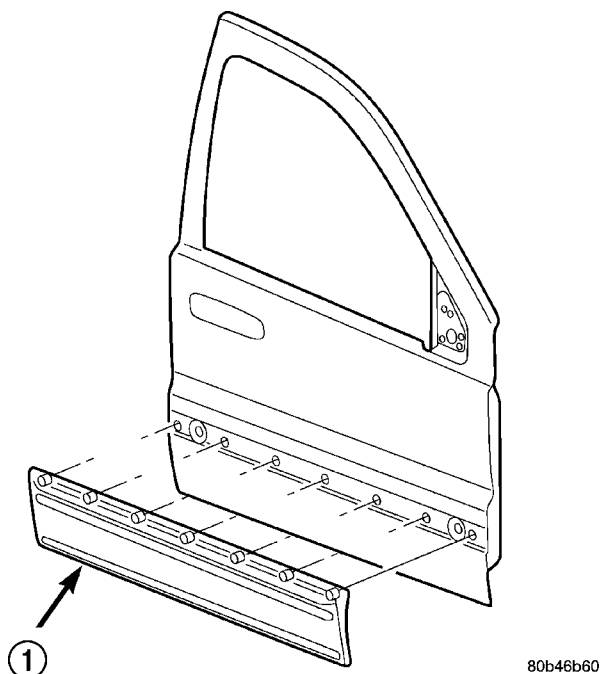
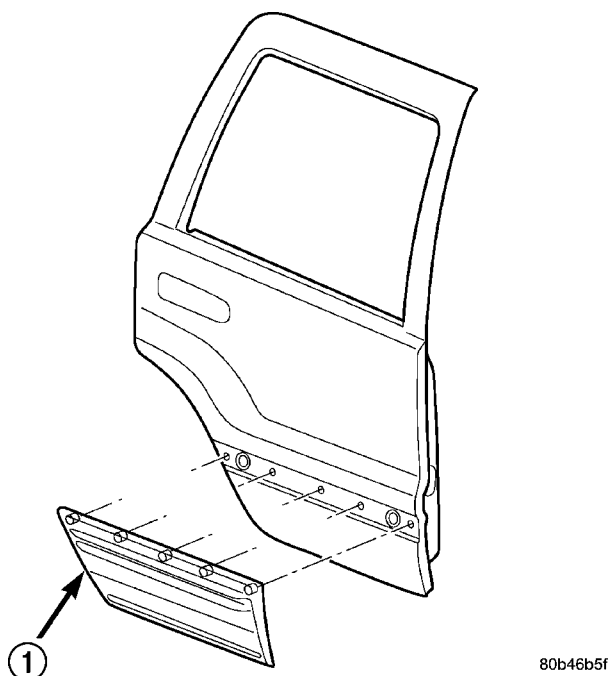


Fig. 1 FRONT DOOR CLADDING

1 - CLADDING

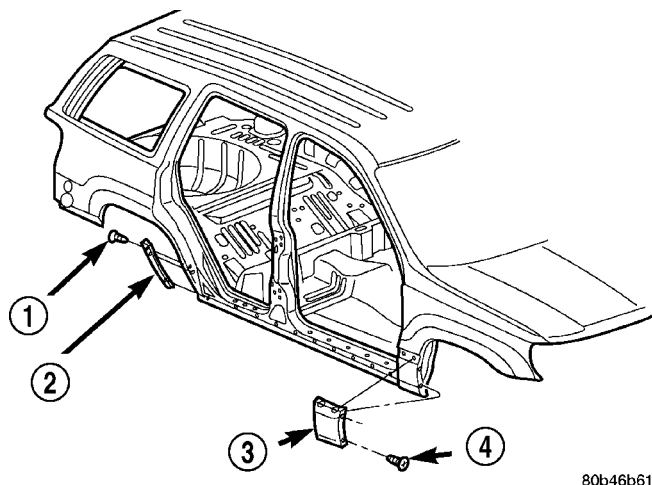
## BODY SIDE MOLDINGS (Continued)

**Fig. 2 REAR DOOR CLADDING**

1 - CLADDING

**Fender/Quarter Panel**

- (1) Remove the screws at wheel opening (Fig. 3).
- (2) Using a trim stick C-4755 or equivalent, gently pry bottom of cladding up.
- (3) Lift upwards and remove cladding.

**Fig. 3 FRONT FENDER/ QUARTER PANEL**

1 - SCREW  
 2 - QUARTER PANEL CLADDING  
 3 - FRONT FENDER CLADDING  
 4 - SCREW

**INSTALLATION****Doors**

- (1) Clean the area thoroughly with MOPAR® Super Kleen, or equivalent.

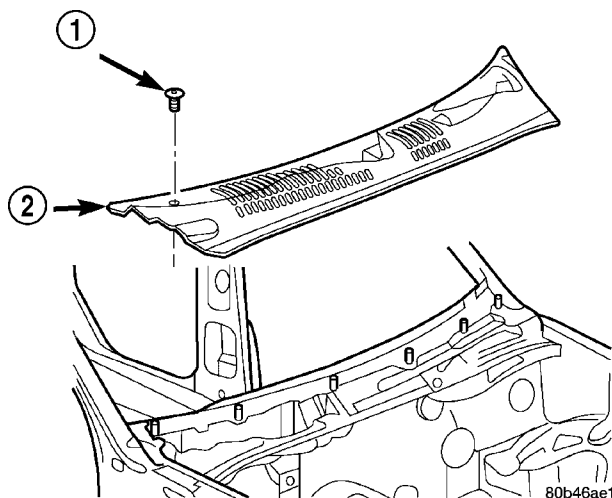
- (2) Align the body side cladding with the slots in the door. Press the adhesive pad to the door and snap the retainers into the slots.

**Fender/Quarter Panel**

- (1) Thoroughly clean the area with MOPAR® Super Kleen, or equivalent.
- (2) Align the cladding with the screw holes in the fender.
- (3) Press the cladding in place.
- (4) Install the screws at the wheel opening.

**COWL GRILLE****REMOVAL**

- (1) Remove wiper arms. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/WIPERS/WASHERS/WIPER ARMS - REMOVAL)
- (2) Remove plenum seal.
- (3) Remove plastic push nuts attaching cowl cover to cowl (Fig. 4).
- (4) Remove windshield washer tubes at connector.
- (5) Remove cowl cover from cowl.

**Fig. 4 COWL COVER**

1 - PLASTIC NUT  
 2 - COWL COVER

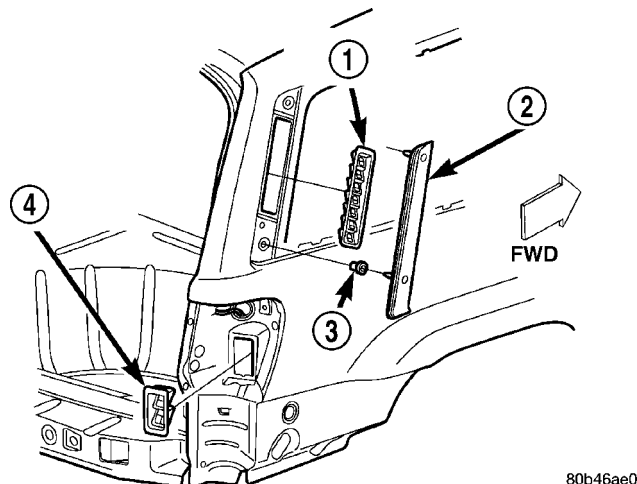
**INSTALLATION**

- (1) Position cowl cover on cowl.
- (2) Install windshield washer tubes at connector.
- (3) Install plastic push nuts attaching cowl cover to cowl (Fig. 4).
- (4) Install plenum seal.
- (5) Install windshield wiper arms. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/WIPERS/WASHERS/WIPER ARMS - INSTALLATION)

## D-PILLAR APPLIQUE

### REMOVAL

(1) Using a trim stick C-4755 or equivalent, carefully pry applique from panel (Fig. 5).



**Fig. 5 D - PILLAR APPLIQUE & AIR EXHAUSTER**

- 1 - D - PILLAR EXHAUSTER
- 2 - D - PILLAR APPLIQUE
- 3 - CLIP
- 4 - TAIL LAMP EXHAUSTER

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Position applique on panel with retainers aligned.
- (2) Press applique firmly in place.

## EXHAUSTER - RIGHT D-PILLAR

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove D-pillar applique. (Refer to 23 - BODY/EXTERIOR/COWL GRILLE SCREEN - REMOVAL)
- (2) Carefully pry air exhauster from D-pillar using a flat blade screwdriver (Fig. 5).

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Reseal air exhauster using foam tape.
- (2) Install air exhauster on D-pillar.
- (3) Install D-pillar applique. (Refer to 23 - BODY/EXTERIOR/COWL GRILLE SCREEN - INSTALLATION)

## EXHAUSTER - TAIL LAMP

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove tail lamp. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/LAMPS/LIGHTING - EXTERIOR/TAIL LAMP - REMOVAL)
- (2) Using a trim stick C-4755 or equivalent, pry the top of the air exhauster downward to detach the retaining clips.

- (3) Separate air exhauster from vehicle (Fig. 5).

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Position air exhauster in opening.
- (2) Press air exhauster inward to secure.
- (3) Install tail lamp. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/LAMPS/LIGHTING - EXTERIOR/TAIL LAMP - INSTALLATION)

## EXHAUSTER - LEFT QUARTER PANEL

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove the rear fascia. (Refer to 13 - FRAME & BUMPERS/BUMPERS/REAR FASCIA - REMOVAL)
- (2) Using a trim stick C-4755 or equivalent, pry air exhauster from panel.

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Using a foam tape, reseal the air exhauster.
- (2) Install the exhauster onto the quarter panel.
- (3) Install the rear fascia. (Refer to 13 - FRAME & BUMPERS/BUMPERS/REAR FASCIA - INSTALLATION)

## EXTERIOR NAME PLATES

### REMOVAL

**NOTE:** Exterior nameplates are attached to body panels with adhesive tape.

- (1) Apply a length of masking tape on the body, parallel to the top edge of the nameplate to use as a guide, if necessary.
- (2) If temperature is below 21°C (70°F) warm emblem with a heat lamp or gun. Do not exceed 52°C (120°F) when heating emblem.
- (3) Using a trim stick C-4755 or a hard wood wedge behind the emblem to separate the adhesive backing from the body.
- (4) Clean adhesive residue from body with MOPAR® Super Clean solvent or equivalent.

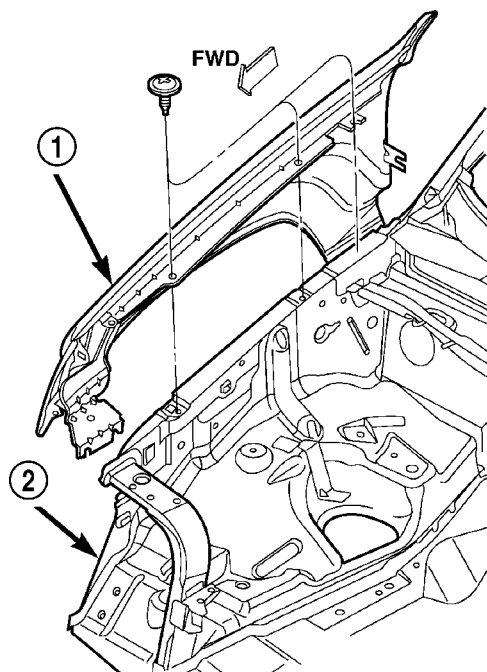
### INSTALLATION

- (1) Remove protective cover from adhesive tape on back of emblem.
- (2) Position emblem properly on body.
- (3) Press emblem firmly to body with palm of hand.
- (4) If temperature is below 21°C (70°F) warm emblem with a heat lamp or gun to assure adhesion. Do not exceed 52°C (120°F) when heating emblem.

## FRONT FENDER

### REMOVAL

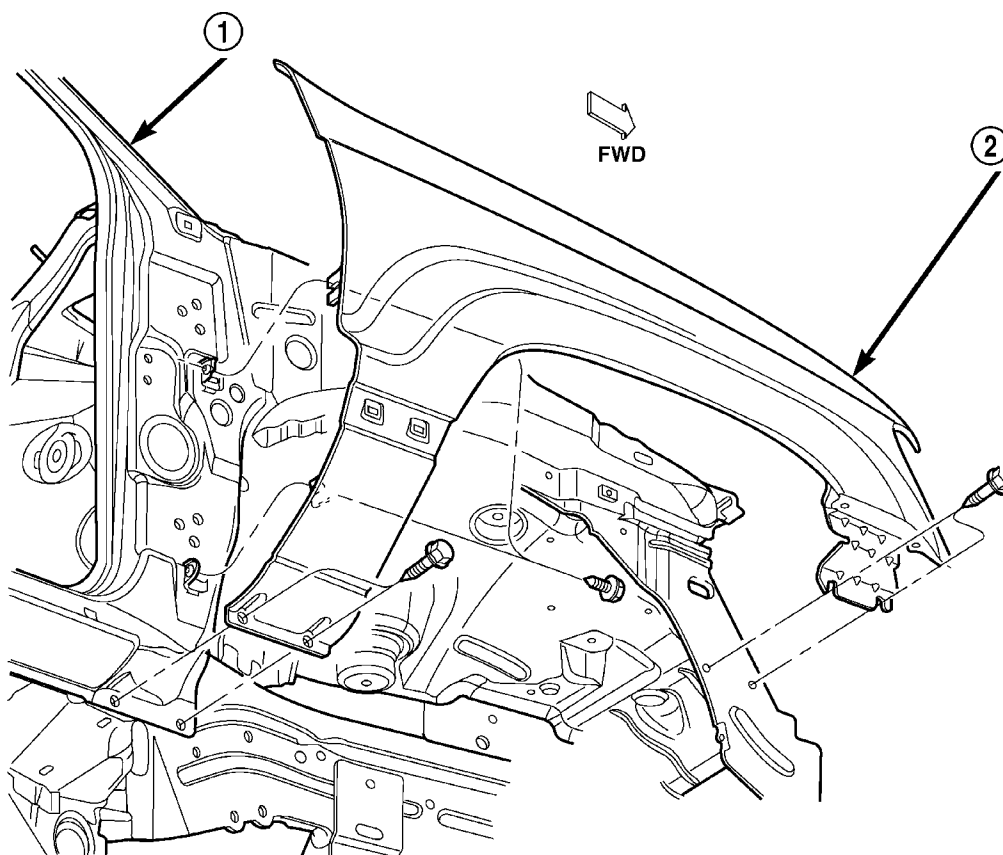
- (1) Using a grease pencil or equivalent, mark position of fender.
- (2) Remove front fender liner.
- (3) Pull back fascia and remove screws attaching fender to fascia.
- (4) Remove screws attaching lower fender bracket located behind fascia.
- (5) Remove screws attaching fender to rocker panel (Fig. 6).
- (6) Remove screws attaching rear of fender to A-pillar brackets.
- (7) Open hood.
- (8) Loosen screw under hood hinge, attaching fender to engine compartment rail.
- (9) Remove screws attaching fender to engine compartment rail (Fig. 7).
- (10) Right fender only:
  - (a) If equipped, remove radio antenna. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/AUDIO/ANTENNA BODY & CABLE - REMOVAL)
- (11) Separate fender from body.



80b3c70d

**Fig. 7 UPPER FENDER MOUNTING**

1 - FENDER  
2 - BODY



**Fig. 6 FENDER MOUNTING**

80b34e99

1 - BODY

2 - FENDER

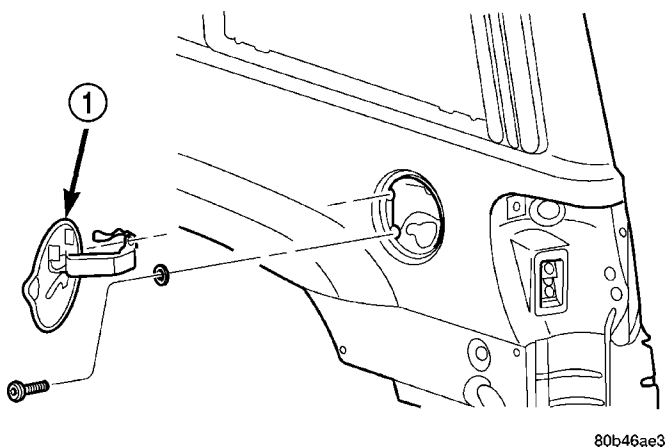
## FRONT FENDER (Continued)

**INSTALLATION**

- (1) Position fender on body.
- (2) If equipped, install radio antenna. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/AUDIO/ANTENNA BODY & CABLE - INSTALLATION)
- (3) Install all screws finger-tight.
- (4) Align fender with adjacent body panels and reference marks. (Refer to 23 - BODY/BODY STRUCTURE/GAP AND FLUSH - SPECIFICATIONS)
- (5) Tighten all screws to 12 N·m (9 ft. lbs.).
- (6) Install inner fender liner.

**FUEL FILL DOOR****REMOVAL**

- (1) Open the fuel filler door.
- (2) Remove the screws attaching the door to the quarter panel (Fig. 8).
- (3) Remove the door from the panel.



80b46ae3

**Fig. 8 FUEL FILLER DOOR**

1 - FUEL FILL DOOR

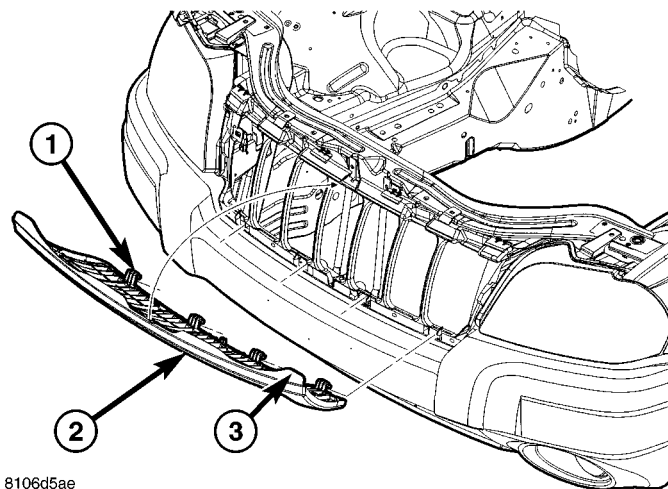
**INSTALLATION**

- (1) Position the fuel filler door on the quarter panel with the screw holes aligned.
- (2) Install the screws attaching the fuel filler door to the quarter panel and tighten to 9 N·m (80 in. lbs.).

**GRILLE****REMOVAL****REMOVAL**

- (1) Using a trim stick C-4755 or equivalent, separate the top of the grille by releasing the five upper clips.

- (2) Roll the grille forward and release the four lower retaining tabs and remove the grille. (Fig. 9)



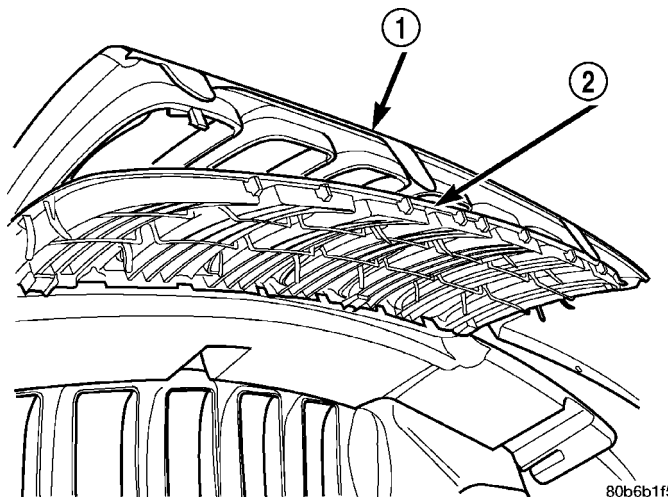
8106d5ae

**Fig. 9 GRILLE**

- 1 - LOWER RETAINING TABS (4)
- 2 - GRILLE
- 3 - UPPER RETAINING CLIPS (5)

**REMOVAL - EXPORT**

- (1) Remove fascia. (Refer to 13 - FRAMES & BUMPERS/BUMPERS/FRONT FASCIA - REMOVAL - EXPORT)
- (2) Disengage retainers attaching grille insert to grille/fascia.
- (3) Separate grille insert from grille/fascia (Fig. 10).



80b6b1f5

**Fig. 10 Grille Insert - Export**

- 1 - GRILLE/FASCIA
- 2 - INSERT

**INSTALLATION****INSTALLATION**

- (1) Position the grille onto the fascia and engage the lower retaining tabs. (Fig. 9)



## GRILLE (Continued)

(2) Rotate the grille up and engage the upper retaining clips beginning at the center and moving outward.

**INSTALLATION - EXPORT**

- (1) Position grille insert in grille/fascia (Fig. 10).
- (2) Engage retainers attaching grille insert to grille/fascia.
- (3) Install fascia. (Refer to 13 - FRAMES & BUMPERS/BUMPERS/FRONT FASCIA - INSTALLATION - EXPORT)

**HEADLAMP MOUNTING MODULE (HMM)****REMOVAL**

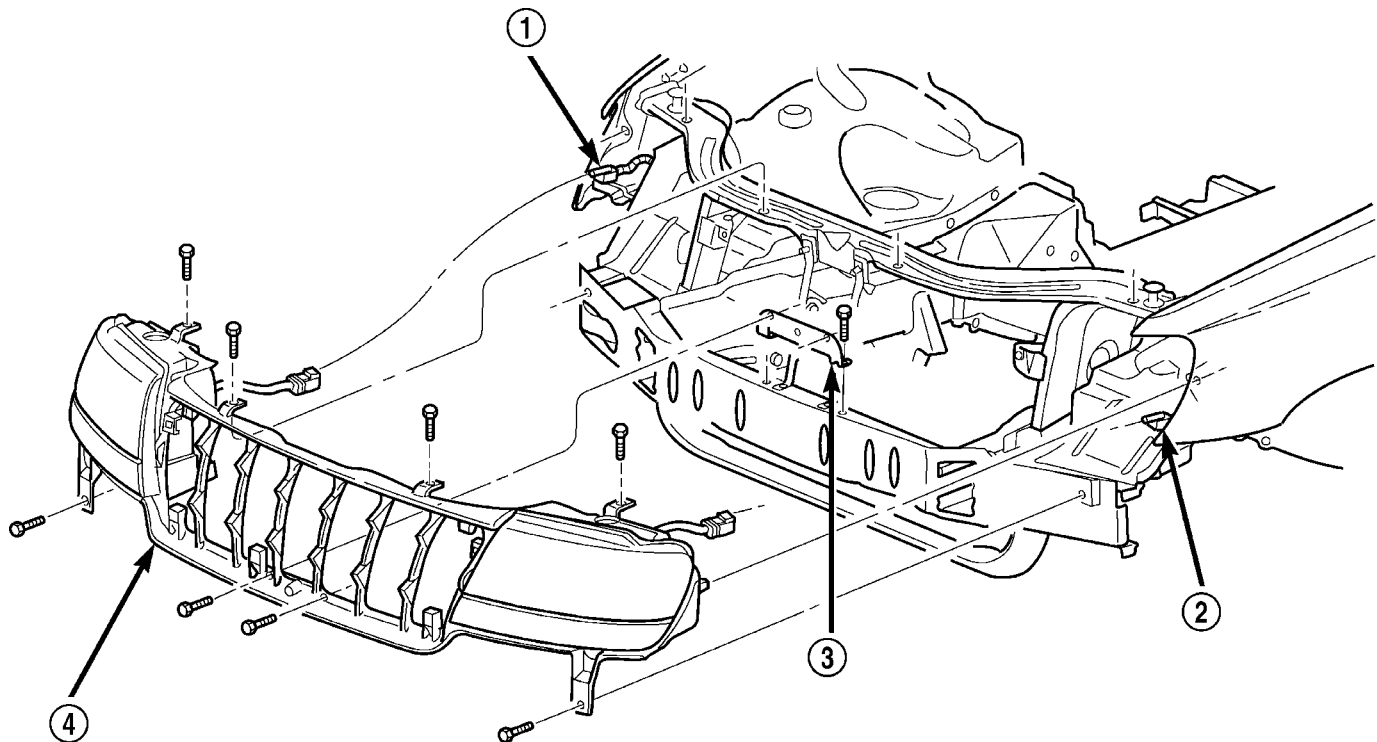
**CAUTION:** Take special care when handling the Headlight Mounting Module (HMM) not to damage the upper mounting tabs. Step #3 must be performed prior to removing HMM from the vehicle to prevent damage to HMM.

- (1) Remove fascia. (Refer to 13 - FRAMES & BUMPERS/BUMPERS/FRONT FASCIA - REMOVAL)

- (2) Remove inner fender liner.
- (3) Reach into the wheelhouse opening and disengage the retainer attaching the HMM to each side of the body.
- (4) Remove bolts attaching headlamp mounting module to body (Fig. 11).
- (5) Disconnect headlamp wire harness connectors.
- (6) Separate headlamp mounting module from vehicle.

**INSTALLATION**

- (1) Position headlamp mounting module (HMM) at vehicle.
- (2) Connect headlamp wire harness connectors.
- (3) Engage the retainer attaching the HMM to each side of the body.
- (4) Install bolts attaching headlamp mounting module to body and tighten to 6 Nm (55 in. lbs.). (Fig. 11)
- (5) Install inner fender liner.
- (6) Install front fascia, refer to (Refer to 13 - FRAMES & BUMPERS/BUMPERS/FRONT FASCIA - INSTALLATION).



80b46cd0

**Fig. 11 HEADLAMP MOUNTING MODULE**

1 - CONNECTOR  
2 - CONNECTOR

3 - MOUNTING BRACKET  
4 - HEADLAMP MODULE



## LUGGAGE RACK

### REMOVAL

**NOTE:** The skid strips are attached to the roof panel with adhesive.

- (1) Using a trim stick C-4755 or equivalent, pry support cover off.
- (2) If necessary, slide the crossbars to expose the screws attaching the slide rails to the supports.
- (3) Remove the screws retaining the slide rails to the supports.
- (4) Remove the screws attaching the supports to the roof panel.
- (5) Separate the supports from the roof panel.

**NOTE:** If a crossbar needs to be serviced, the forward or rearward supports will have to be removed.

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Position the supports on the roof panel and install the screw. Be sure that the gasket is properly seated.
- (2) Position the luggage rack on the supports.
- (3) Install the screws attaching the side rails to the supports.
- (4) Position the supports covers on the supports and press into place.

## SIDE VIEW MIRROR GLASS

### REMOVAL

**WARNING: ALWAYS WEAR EYE AND HAND PROTECTION WHEN SERVICING THE MIRROR ASSEMBLY. FAILURE TO OBSERVE THESE WARNINGS MAY RESULT IN PERSONAL INJURY FROM BROKEN GLASS.**

- (1) Carefully pull/pry the broken glass holder from the mirror assembly.
- (2) Disconnect the heated mirror electrical connectors from the terminals on the mirror glass holder, if equipped.

### INSTALLATION

**CAUTION:** It is important to make sure the motor is square to the glass holder (attaching fingers) prior to glass holder attachment, otherwise the glass holder could be installed incorrectly causing poor retention and possible repeat failure.

- (1) Position the new mirror glass holder to the mirror assembly.

**NOTE:** Position the mirror glass holder so that the moisture drain hole on the mirror glass holder assembly is facing downward.

- (2) Align the mirror glass holder's attaching fingers to the mirror motor housing.

**NOTE:** Ensure that the protective rubber cover of the mirror motor housing is positioned correctly around the bottom of the fingers area.

- (3) Using one hand, firmly press the mirror glass holder assembly into place while at the same time supporting the housing assembly from the backside with the other hand.

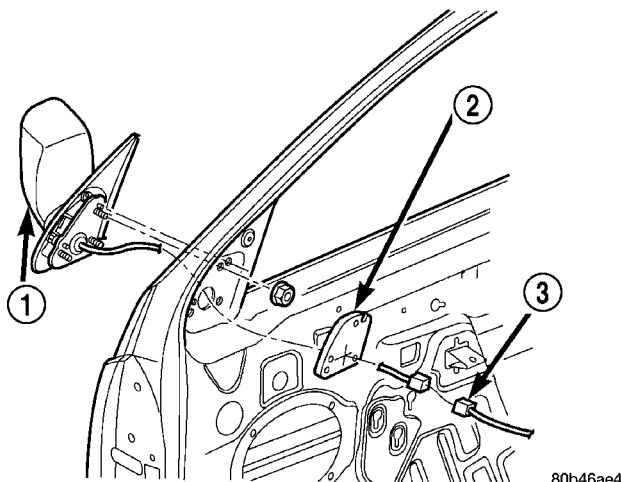
**NOTE:** Pressure must be applied equally over the center portion of the mirror to engage the mirror glass holder's attaching fingers to the corresponding fingers on the housing assembly. One or more clicks may be heard when finger engagement takes place.

- (4) Verify retention of the mirror glass holder assembly by gently pulling outward on the mirror glass holder.

## SIDE VIEW MIRROR

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove door trim panel, refer to (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/TRIM PANEL - REMOVAL).
- (2) Disengage power mirror harness connector, if equipped.
- (3) Remove mirror flag seal.
- (4) Remove nuts attaching mirror to door (Fig. 12).
- (5) Separate mirror from door.



**Fig. 12 SIDE VIEW MIRROR**

- 1 - SIDEVIEW MIRROR
- 2 - MIRROR FLAG SEAL
- 3 - CONNECTOR

80b46ae4

## SIDE VIEW MIRROR (Continued)

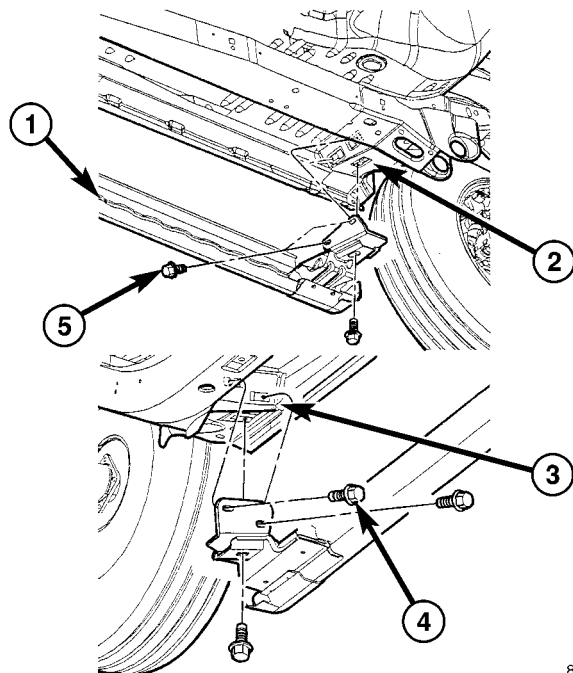
## INSTALLATION

- (1) Position mirror on door. Verify that gasket seal is properly positioned.
- (2) Install nuts attaching mirror to door (Fig. 12).
- (3) Install mirror retaining nuts and tighten to 7 N·m (60 in. lbs.).
- (4) Install mirror flag seal.
- (5) Engage power mirror harness connector, if equipped.
- (6) Install door trim panel, refer to (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/TRIM PANEL - INSTALLATION).

## ROCK RAIL

## REMOVAL

- (1) Remove the bolts and remove the rock rail. (Fig. 13)



80cf181b

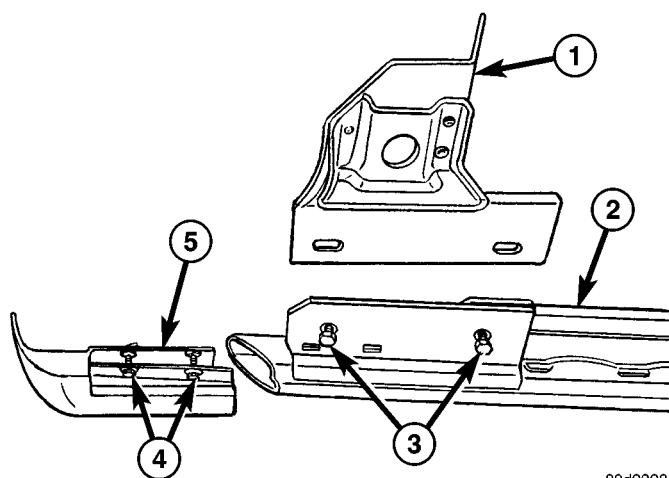
**Fig. 13 ROCK RAIL**

- 1 - ROCK RAIL
- 2 - J-NUTS (3)
- 3 - J-NUTS (3)
- 4 - BOLTS (3)
- 5 - BOLTS (3)

## INSTALLATION

**NOTE:** Shims may be used to adjust rock rail positioning, if required.

- (1) Loosen the rear bracket slide bolts. (Fig. 14)
- (2) Install the rock rail and install the bolts.
- (3) Tighten the front bolts to 27 N·m (20 ft. lbs.).
- (4) Slide the rear bracket to contact the mounting surface and tighten the rear mounting bolts to 27 N·m (20 ft. lbs.).
- (5) Tighten the slide bolts to 27 N·m (20 ft. lbs.).
- (6) Loosen the end cap bolts and slide the end caps against the body.
- (7) Tighten the end cap bolts.



80d9398a

**Fig. 14 REAR ROCK RAIL BRACKET**

- 1 - REAR BRACKET
- 2 - ROCK RAIL
- 3 - REAR BRACKET BOLTS (2)
- 4 - END CAP BOLTS (2 PER CAP)
- 5 - END CAP (2)

## HOOD

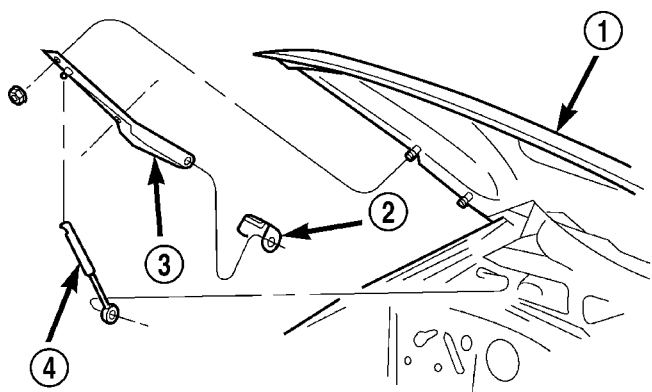
## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page	page
<b>GAS PROP</b>		
REMOVAL .....	48	
INSTALLATION .....	48	
<b>HINGE</b>		
REMOVAL .....	48	
INSTALLATION .....	48	
<b>HOOD</b>		
REMOVAL .....	49	
INSTALLATION .....	49	
ADJUSTMENTS		
HOOD ADJUSTMENT .....	49	
<b>INSULATION</b>		
REMOVAL .....	49	
INSTALLATION .....	49	
<b>LATCH</b>		
REMOVAL .....	49	
INSTALLATION .....	49	
<b>LATCH RELEASE CABLE</b>		
REMOVAL .....	50	
INSTALLATION .....	50	

## GAS PROP

## REMOVAL

- (1) Raise and support hood.
- (2) Using a small flat blade, pry the retainer attaching hood support prop to lower ball stud.
- (3) Slide retainer attaching hood support prop upper ball stud downward.
- (4) Disconnect hood support prop from lower ball stud and rotate support prop upward and disconnect from upper ball stud (Fig. 1).



80b3c6fc

Fig. 1 HOOD SUPPORT PROP

- 1 - HOOD  
2 - COVER  
3 - HINGE  
4 - PROP

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Position hood support prop on upper ball stud (Fig. 1).
- (2) Slide retainer upward to secure support prop to upper ball stud.

- (3) Position support prop on lower ball stud and press retainer inward to secure.

## HINGE

## REMOVAL

**NOTE:** It is not necessary to remove the hood to replace one or both hinges. The hinges can be replaces one at a time.

- (1) Raise and support hood.
- (2) Using a grease pencil or equivalent, mark the position of the hinge.
- (3) Remove the hood hinge gas prop. (Refer to 23 - BODY/HOOD/GAS PROP - REMOVAL)
- (4) Remove thenuts attaching hinge to hood (Fig. 1).
- (5) Remove the bolts attaching hinge to body.
- (6) Separate the hinge from vehicle.

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Position hinge on vehicle and align reference marks.
- (2) Install bolts attaching hinge to body and tighten to 12 N·m (9 ft. lbs.).
- (3) Install nuts attaching hinge to hood and tighten to 12 N·m (9 ft. lbs.).
- (4) Install hood hinge prop rod. (Refer to 23 - BODY/HOOD/GAS PROP - INSTALLATION)
- (5) Check hood fit and adjust if required. (Refer to 23 - BODY/BODY STRUCTURE/GAP AND FLUSH - SPECIFICATIONS)

## HOOD

### REMOVAL

- (1) Raise and support the hood.
- (2) If equipped, disconnect underhood lamp harness connector. (Connector is located under cowl cover).
- (3) Using a grease pencil or equivalent, mark location of hood hinges on hood for installation alignment.
- (4) Remove hood gas props. (Refer to 23 - BODY/HOOD/GAS PROP - REMOVAL)
- (5) Remove bolts attaching hinges to hood.
- (6) With the aid of a helper, remove hood from vehicle.

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Position hood on hinges.
- (2) Install bolts finger-tight.
- (3) Align hinges with installation reference marks and tighten bolts 12 N·m (9 ft. lbs.).
- (4) Install hood gas props. (Refer to 23 - BODY/HOOD/GAS PROP - INSTALLATION)
- (5) Connect underhood lamp connector.
- (6) Inspect hood for proper alignment and adjust as necessary. (Refer to 23 - BODY/HOOD/HOOD - ADJUSTMENTS)

## ADJUSTMENTS

### HOOD ADJUSTMENT

**NOTE:** The hood attaching holes are enlarged to aid front, back and side to side adjustment.

- (1) Check the hood alignment. (Refer to 23 - BODY/BODY STRUCTURE/GAP AND FLUSH - SPECIFICATIONS)
- (2) If hood is low in relation to cowl panel, insert shims between hinge and hood.
- (3) Adjust hood bumper in or out to adjust hood-to-fender height alignment.
- (4) Adjust the hood latch as necessary. Tighten the nuts to 11N·m (8 ft. lbs.).
- (5) Align the latch striker so that striker enters the latch squarely and without binding.

## INSULATION

### REMOVAL

- (1) Raise the hood.
- (2) Remove the insulation panel fasteners.
- (3) Remove the hood insulation panel.

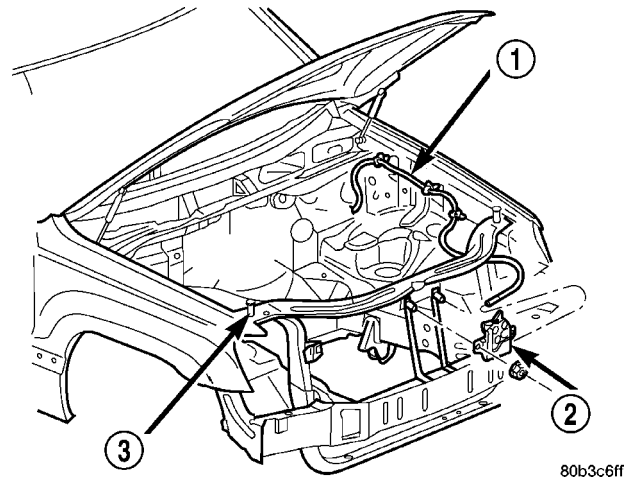
### INSTALLATION

- (1) Position the insulation panel on the underside of the hood.
- (2) Install the insulation panel fasteners.
- (3) Close the hood.

## LATCH

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove nuts attaching latch to radiator cross-member support (Fig. 2).
- (2) Disconnect hood release cable from latch.
- (3) Separate latch from vehicle.



**Fig. 2 HOOD LATCH**

- 1 - HOOD RELEASE CABLE
- 2 - LATCH
- 3 - BUMPER

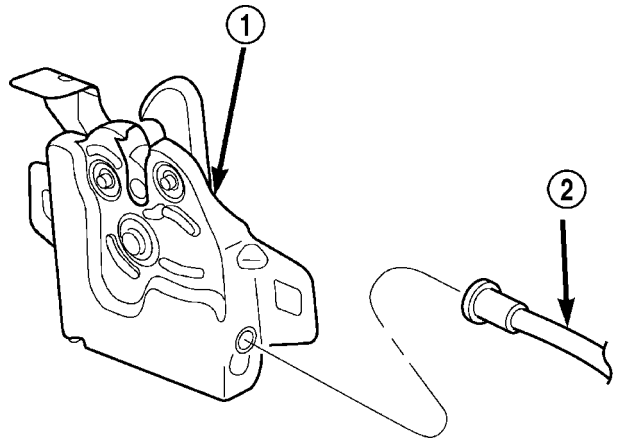
### INSTALLATION

- (1) Connect latch release cable to latch.
- (2) Position latch on radiator crossmember support.
- (3) Install nuts attaching latch to radiator cross-member support. Tighten nuts to 11 N·m (8 ft. lbs.) torque (Fig. 2).
- (4) Check hood fit and adjust if required. (Refer to 23 - BODY/BODY STRUCTURE/GAP AND FLUSH - SPECIFICATIONS)

## LATCH RELEASE CABLE

### REMOVAL

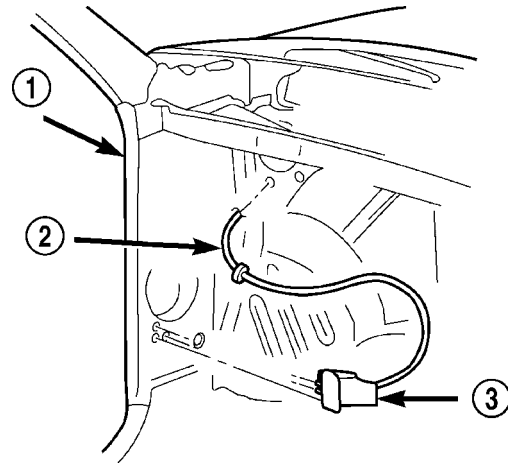
- (1) Disconnect cable from hood latch (Fig. 3).
- (2) Disconnect cable from retaining clips on left inner fender panel.
- (3) Remove left cowl side trim panel.
- (4) Remove fasteners attaching cable bracket to cowl side panel (Fig. 4).
- (5) Route cable through dash panel and remove it from under instrument panel.



80b3c70a

**Fig. 3 HOOD LATCH**

- 1 - HOOD LATCH
- 2 - HOOD RELEASE CABLE



80b3c6fe

**Fig. 4 HOOD RELEASE CABLE**

- 1 - LOWER COWL
- 2 - HOOD RELEASE CABLE
- 3 - RELEASE HANDLE

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Route cable through hole in dash panel into engine compartment.
- (2) Pull cable forward and seat grommet in dash panel.
- (3) Position cable bracket on cowl side panel and install fasteners (Fig. 4).
- (4) Install left cowl side trim panel.
- (5) Route and install cable in retaining clips on left inner fender panel.
- (6) Connect cable to hood latch (Fig. 3).

## INSTRUMENT PANEL SYSTEM

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>CLUSTER BEZEL</b>		<b>INSTRUMENT PANEL CENTER FLOOR</b>	
REMOVAL .....	51	<b>TUNNEL BRACKET</b>	
INSTALLATION .....	52	REMOVAL .....	64
<b>GLOVE BOX</b>		INSTALLATION .....	65
STANDARD PROCEDURE - GLOVE BOX		<b>INSTRUMENT PANEL COURTESY LAMP</b>	
ROLL DOWN .....	52	<b>BRACKET</b>	
REMOVAL .....	53	REMOVAL .....	65
INSTALLATION .....	54	INSTALLATION .....	66
<b>GLOVE BOX LATCH</b>		<b>INSTRUMENT PANEL INTERMEDIATE</b>	
REMOVAL .....	54	<b>BRACKET</b>	
INSTALLATION .....	55	REMOVAL .....	66
<b>GLOVE BOX LATCH STRIKER</b>		INSTALLATION .....	67
REMOVAL .....	55	<b>INSTRUMENT PANEL LOWER RIGHT CENTER</b>	
INSTALLATION .....	55	<b>BEZEL</b>	
<b>INSTRUMENT PANEL END CAP</b>		REMOVAL .....	67
REMOVAL .....	56	INSTALLATION .....	67
INSTALLATION .....	56	<b>INSTRUMENT PANEL STEERING COLUMN</b>	
<b>INSTRUMENT PANEL STRUCTURAL DUCT</b>		<b>BRACKET</b>	
REMOVAL .....	57	REMOVAL .....	68
INSTALLATION .....	57	INSTALLATION .....	68
<b>INSTRUMENT PANEL TOP COVER</b>		<b>INSTRUMENT PANEL STEERING COLUMN</b>	
REMOVAL .....	57	<b>SUPPORT BRACKET</b>	
INSTALLATION .....	58	REMOVAL .....	69
<b>INSTRUMENT PANEL TOP PAD</b>		INSTALLATION .....	69
REMOVAL .....	58	<b>INSTRUMENT PANEL TRIM BEZEL - DRIVER</b>	
INSTALLATION .....	60	REMOVAL .....	70
<b>INSTRUMENT PANEL C-CHANNEL COVER</b>		INSTALLATION .....	70
<b>BRACKET</b>		<b>INSTRUMENT PANEL TRIM BEZEL -</b>	
REMOVAL .....	61	<b>PASSENGER</b>	
INSTALLATION .....	62	REMOVAL .....	71
<b>INSTRUMENT PANEL CENTER BEZEL -</b>		INSTALLATION .....	71
<b>LOWER</b>		<b>STEERING COLUMN OPENING COVER</b>	
REMOVAL .....	62	REMOVAL .....	71
INSTALLATION .....	63	INSTALLATION .....	72
<b>INSTRUMENT PANEL CENTER BEZEL - UPPER</b>		<b>INSTRUMENT PANEL ASSEMBLY</b>	
REMOVAL .....	63	REMOVAL .....	72
INSTALLATION .....	64	INSTALLATION .....	78

## CLUSTER BEZEL

## REMOVAL

**WARNING:** ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE,

**THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

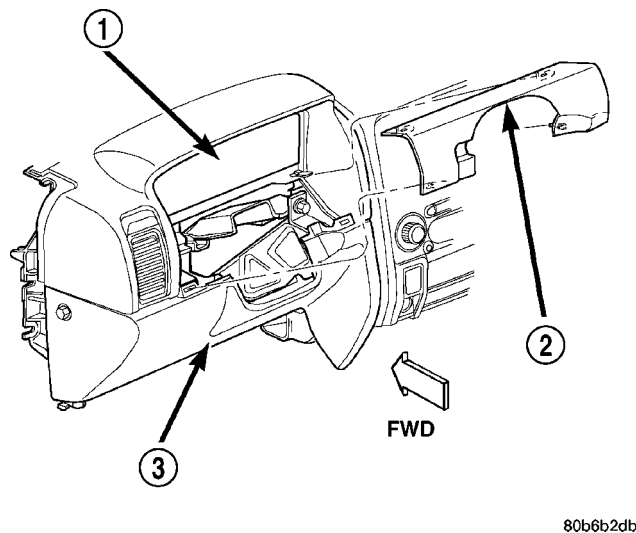
(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.



## CLUSTER BEZEL (Continued)

(2) Place the tilt steering wheel in its fully lowered position.

(3) Using a trim stick C-4755 or equivalent, gently pry each of the four corners of the cluster bezel away from the instrument panel far enough to disengage the four snap clips from their receptacles (Fig. 1).



**Fig. 1 CLUSTER BEZEL REMOVE/INSTALL**

- 1 - INSTRUMENT CLUSTER
- 2 - INSTRUMENT PANEL CLUSTER BEZEL
- 3 - STEERING COLUMN OPENING COVER

(4) Being certain not to scratch the instrument cluster lens with the two snap clips on the lower edge of the cluster bezel, roll the top of the cluster bezel rearward over the top of the steering column.

(5) If equipped, reach behind the cluster bezel to access and disconnect the instrument panel wire harness connector for the headlamp leveling switch from the switch connector receptacle.

(6) Remove the cluster bezel from the instrument panel.

## INSTALLATION

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Position the cluster bezel onto the instrument panel (Fig. 1).

(2) If equipped, reach behind the cluster bezel to access and reconnect the instrument panel wire harness connector for the headlamp leveling switch to the switch connector receptacle.

(3) Being certain not to scratch the instrument cluster lens with the two snap clips on the lower edge of the cluster bezel, slide the lower edge of the cluster bezel forward and down over the top of the steering column to position it onto the instrument panel.

(4) Align the two snap clips on the lower edge of the cluster bezel with their receptacles in the instrument panel.

(5) Press firmly on the cluster bezel over each of the lower snap clip locations until each of the snap clips is fully engaged in its receptacle.

(6) Align the two receptacles on the upper edge of the cluster bezel with the snap clips on the instrument panel.

(7) Press firmly on the cluster bezel over each of the upper snap clip locations until each of the snap clips is fully engaged in its receptacle.

(8) Connect the battery negative cable.

## GLOVE BOX

### STANDARD PROCEDURE - GLOVE BOX ROLL DOWN

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

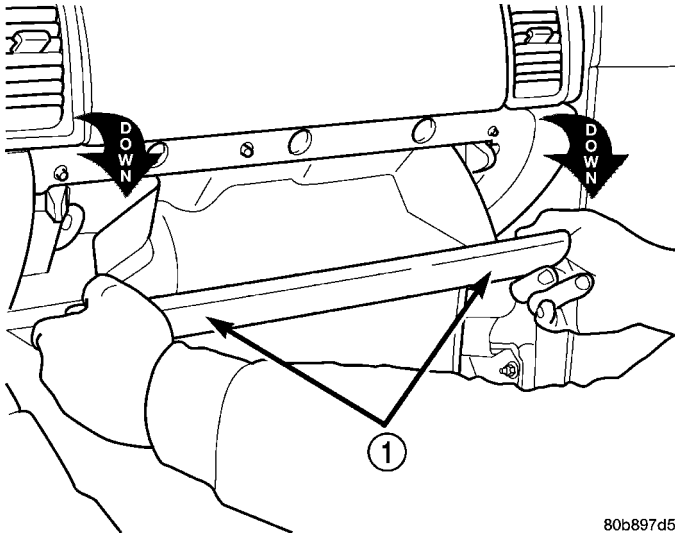
(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Open the glove box until the integral stops on the back edge of the glove box bin are resting against the rubber stop bumpers in the upper glove box opening reinforcement.

(3) Reach into the glove box and with the middle finger of each hand, deflect the rubber flap of the two glove box stop bumpers on the upper glove box opening reinforcement toward the front of the vehicle.

## GLOVE BOX (Continued)

(4) With the glove box stop bumpers deflected, roll the glove box door downward until the integral stops on the back edge of the glove box bin pass through the rubber stop bumper openings in the upper glove box opening reinforcement (Fig. 2)



80b897d5

**Fig. 2 GLOVE BOX ROLL DOWN**

1 - GLOVE BOX DOOR

(5) Before rolling the glove box back up into the instrument panel, grasp the pneumatic glove box damper arm and pull the connector feature rearward to the end of its travel. The rubber stop bumpers will be deflected automatically by the integral stops on the back of the glove box when the glove box is rolled back up into the instrument panel.

(6) With the glove box stops oriented behind the stop bumpers, position the connector feature of the damper to the keyed slot on the outboard end of the glove box bin.

(7) Using hand pressure, press downward on the damper arm until the damper connector feature snaps back into the keyed slot.

**REMOVAL**

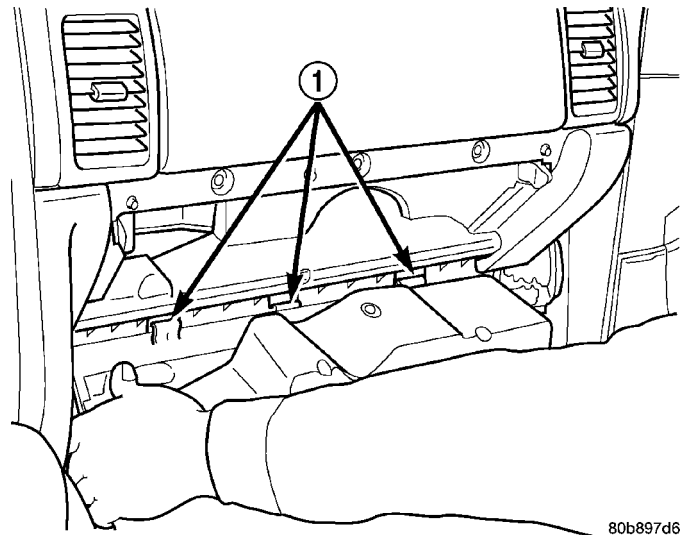
**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Roll the glove box down from the instrument panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/ GLOVE BOX - STANDARD PROCEDURE - GLOVE BOX ROLL DOWN).

**NOTE:** Be certain to use care not to damage or remove the glove box hinge bumpers on the lower instrument panel glove box opening reinforcement when removing the glove box from the instrument panel.

(3) Firmly grip both ends of the glove box door, then twist and pull the door as necessary to disengage the inboard hinge hook from the inboard hinge pin on the instrument panel and reorient the hook to the underside of the hinge pin (Fig. 3).



80b897d6

**Fig. 3 GLOVE BOX REMOVE/INSTALL**

1 - GLOVE BOX HINGE HOOKS AND HINGE PINS (3)

(4) Raise the glove box door until it is perpendicular to the instrument panel.

(5) Twist the door slightly in the counterclockwise direction and use a jiggling action to disengage the remaining two hinge hooks from their respective hinge pins on the instrument panel.

(6) Remove the glove box from the instrument panel.

## GLOVE BOX (Continued)

## INSTALLATION

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

**NOTE:** Be certain to use care not to damage or remove the glove box hinge bumpers on the lower instrument panel glove box opening reinforcement when installing the glove box onto the instrument panel.

(1) Position the glove box to the instrument panel with the outboard hinge hook oriented over the outboard hinge pin and the center hinge hook oriented under the center hinge pin (Fig. 3).

(2) Raise the glove box door until it is perpendicular to the instrument panel.

(3) Firmly grip both ends of the glove box door and twist the door slightly in the clockwise direction to engage the inboard glove box hinge hook over the inboard hinge pin on the instrument panel.

(4) Roll the glove box back up into the instrument panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/ GLOVE BOX - STANDARD PROCEDURE - GLOVE BOX ROLL DOWN).

(5) Connect the battery negative cable.

## GLOVE BOX LATCH

## REMOVAL

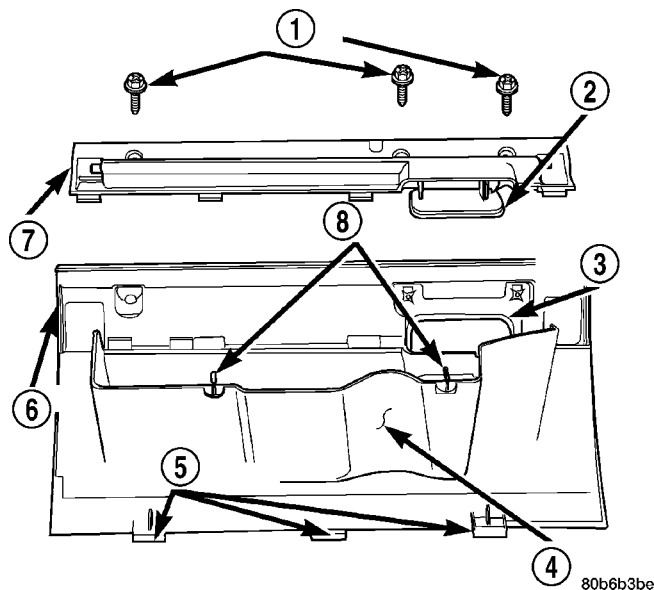
**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE,**

**THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Roll down the glove box from the instrument panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/ GLOVE BOX - STANDARD PROCEDURE - GLOVE BOX ROLL DOWN).

(3) Remove the three screws that secure the glove box latch to the inner glove box door (Fig. 4).



**Fig. 4 GLOVE BOX LATCH REMOVE/INSTALL**

- 1 - SCREW (3)
- 2 - LATCH HANDLE
- 3 - LATCH HANDLE POCKET
- 4 - BIN
- 5 - HINGE HOOKS
- 6 - DOOR
- 7 - GLOVE BOX LATCH
- 8 - STOPS

(4) Lift up on the latch handle on the outer glove box door far enough to loosen the latch assembly on the inner glove box door.

(5) Remove the latch unit from the inner glove box door.

## GLOVE BOX LATCH (Continued)

## INSTALLATION

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

- (1) Position the latch unit to the inner glove box door (Fig. 4).
- (2) Guide the latch handle into the latch handle pocket on the outer glove box door.
- (3) Install and tighten the three screws that secure the glove box latch to the inner glove box door.
- (4) Roll the glove box back up into the instrument panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/ GLOVE BOX - STANDARD PROCEDURE - GLOVE BOX ROLL DOWN).
- (5) Connect the battery negative cable.

## GLOVE BOX LATCH STRIKER

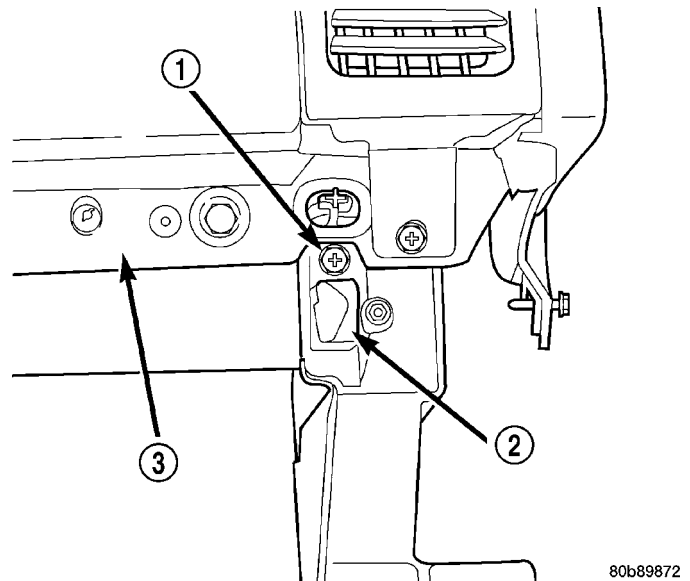
## REMOVAL

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

- (1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.
- (2) If the inboard glove box latch striker is being serviced, remove the lower right center bezel from the instrument panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/INSTRUMENT PANEL LOWER RIGHT CENTER BEZEL - REMOVAL). If the outboard glove box latch striker is being serviced,

remove the end cap from the instrument panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/INSTRUMENT PANEL END CAP - REMOVAL).

- (3) Remove the one screw that secures the upper mounting flange of the glove box latch striker to the instrument panel structural duct at either side of the glove box opening (Fig. 5).



**Fig. 5 GLOVE BOX LATCH STRIKER REMOVE/INSTALL**

- 1 - SCREW
- 2 - GLOVE BOX LATCH STRIKER
- 3 - INSTRUMENT PANEL TOP PAD

- (4) Pull the upper mounting flange of the glove box latch striker downward to disengage the hook formation on the lower end of the striker from the mounting hole in the instrument panel structural duct.

- (5) Remove the glove box latch striker from the instrument panel.

## INSTALLATION

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**



## GLOVE BOX LATCH STRIKER (Continued)

(1) Position the glove box latch striker to the instrument panel.

(2) Engage the hook formation on the lower end of the glove box latch striker in the mounting hole in the instrument panel structural duct.

(3) Roll the upper mounting flange of the glove box latch striker upward until it is flush with the instrument panel structural duct on either side of the glove box opening.

(4) Install and tighten the screw that secures the upper mounting flange of the glove box latch striker to the instrument panel structural duct (Fig. 5).

(5) If the inboard glove box latch striker was serviced, reinstall the lower right center bezel onto the instrument panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/INSTRUMENT PANEL LOWER RIGHT CENTER BEZEL - INSTALLATION). If the outboard glove box latch striker was serviced, reinstall the end cap onto the instrument panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/INSTRUMENT PANEL END CAP - INSTALLATION).

(6) Connect the battery negative cable.

## INSTRUMENT PANEL END CAP

## REMOVAL

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

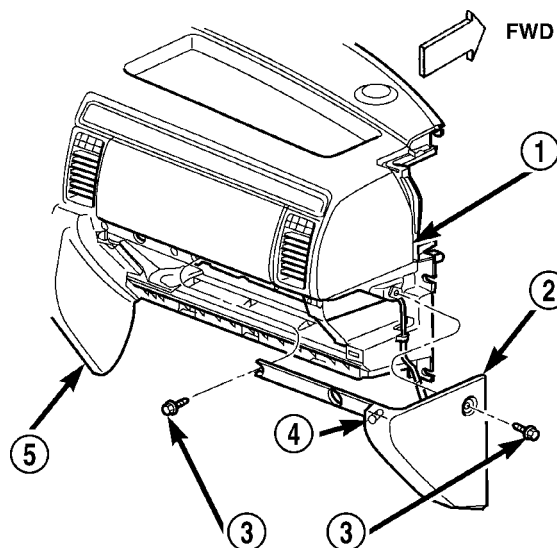
(2) Unlatch and open the glove box.

(3) Remove the one screw that secures the outboard end of the end cap to the instrument panel top pad (Fig. 6).

(4) Remove the three screws that secure the end cap to the instrument panel glove box opening.

(5) Pull the end cap straight back from the instrument panel to disengage the one snap clip that secures it to the receptacle in the instrument panel structural duct.

(6) Remove the end cap from the instrument panel.



80b6b329

**Fig. 6 INSTRUMENT PANEL END CAP REMOVE/INSTALL**

- 1 - INSTRUMENT PANEL TOP PAD
- 2 - END CAP
- 3 - SCREW (4)
- 4 - BUMPER
- 5 - LOWER RIGHT CENTER BEZEL

## INSTALLATION

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Be certain that the glove box catch bumper is installed in the mounting hole nearest the outboard end of the end cap extension over the instrument panel upper glove box opening reinforcement (Fig. 6).

(2) Position the end cap to the instrument panel. Be certain that the end of the end cap extension near the center of the upper glove box opening reinforcement is positioned underneath the end of the extension from the lower right center bezel.

(3) Align the snap clip on the end cap with the receptacle on the instrument panel structural duct.

(4) Press firmly on the instrument panel end cap over the snap clip location until the snap clip is fully engaged in its receptacle.

## INSTRUMENT PANEL END CAP (Continued)

(5) Install and tighten the three screws that secure the end cap to the instrument panel glove box opening.

(6) Install and tighten the one screw that secures the outboard end of the end cap to the instrument panel top pad.

(7) Close and latch the glove box.

(8) Connect the battery negative cable.

INSTRUMENT PANEL  
STRUCTURAL DUCT

## REMOVAL

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Remove the instrument panel from the vehicle. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL - REMOVAL).

(3) Place the instrument panel on a suitable work surface. Be certain to take the proper precautions to protect the instrument panel from any possible cosmetic damage.

(4) Remove all of the individual components that remain secured to the instrument panel structural duct as described elsewhere in this service information.

## INSTALLATION

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISO-**

**LATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Install all of the individual components that were removed from the instrument panel structural duct as described elsewhere in this service information.

(2) Install the instrument panel into the vehicle. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL - INSTALLATION).

(3) Connect the battery negative cable.

INSTRUMENT PANEL TOP  
COVER

## REMOVAL

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

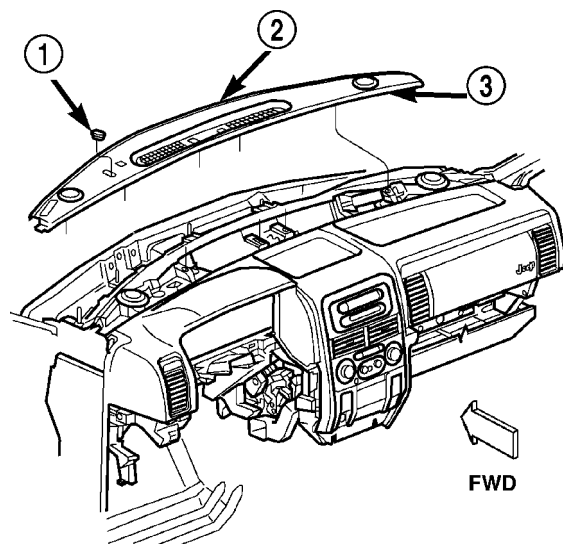
(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Using a trim stick C-4755 or equivalent, gently pry the rear edge (farthest from the windshield) of the top cover up and away from the instrument panel far enough to disengage the four snap clip retainers from their receptacles in the instrument panel top pad (Fig. 7).

(3) Remove the top cover from the top of the instrument panel.



## INSTRUMENT PANEL TOP COVER (Continued)



80b6b323

**Fig. 7 INSTRUMENT PANEL TOP COVER REMOVE/INSTALL**

- 1 - ULTRA LIGHT SENSOR PLUG
- 2 - SEAL
- 3 - INSTRUMENT PANEL TOP COVER

## INSTALLATION

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) If the vehicle is not equipped with the optional automatic headlamps light sensor/vehicle theft security system indicator, be certain that the hole plug is installed in the clearance hole located to the outboard side of the driver side defroster outlet in the instrument panel top cover (Fig. 7).

(2) Before installing the top cover onto the top of the instrument panel, be certain that the rubber top cover seal is properly positioned on the forward edge of the top cover panel.

(3) Position the top cover onto the top of the instrument panel.

(4) Align the four snap clips on the top cover with the snap clip receptacles in the instrument panel top pad.

(5) Press firmly downward on the top cover over each of the four snap clip locations until each of the snap clips is fully seated in their receptacles in the instrument panel top pad.

(6) Connect the battery negative cable.

## INSTRUMENT PANEL TOP PAD

## REMOVAL

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Remove the trim from the right and left A-pillars. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/A-PILLAR TRIM - REMOVAL).

(3) Remove the top cover from the instrument panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/INSTRUMENT PANEL TOP COVER - REMOVAL).

(4) Remove the four nuts that secure the instrument panel top pad to the studs on the dash panel near the windshield fence line (Fig. 8).

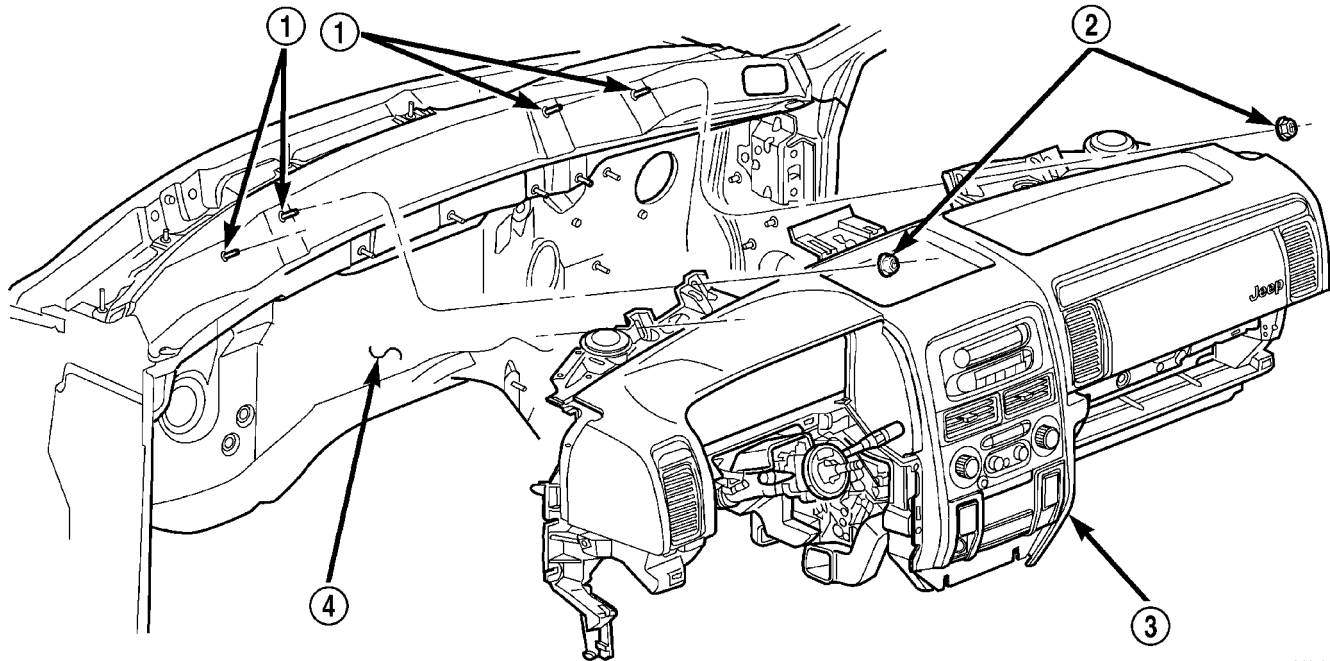
(5) Remove the speakers from the instrument panel top pad. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/AUDIO/SPEAKER - REMOVAL - INSTRUMENT PANEL SPEAKER).

(6) Disengage the retainer that secures each of the two instrument panel wire harness speaker take outs to the mounting hole in the instrument panel top pad. Tuck the loose ends of these speaker take outs down the defroster ducts to keep them out of the way during the remainder of this procedure.

(7) If equipped, remove the two screws that secure the automatic headlamp light sensor/vehicle theft security system indicator unit to the instrument panel top pad just outboard of the driver side defroster outlet. Move the sensor/indicator unit towards the windshield to keep it out of the way during the remainder of this procedure.

(8) Remove the cluster bezel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/CLUSTER BEZEL - REMOVAL).

## INSTRUMENT PANEL TOP PAD (Continued)



80b3c645

**Fig. 8 INSTRUMENT PANEL TOP PAD TO DASH PANEL MOUNTING**

1 - STUD (4)  
2 - NUT (4)

3 - INSTRUMENT PANEL  
4 - DASH PANEL

(9) Remove the instrument cluster. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - REMOVAL).

(10) Remove the steering column opening cover. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/STEERING COLUMN OPENING COVER - REMOVAL).

(11) Roll the glove box down. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/GLOVE BOX - STANDARD PROCEDURE - GLOVE BOX ROLL DOWN).

(12) Remove the end cap from the passenger side lower outboard end of the instrument panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/INSTRUMENT PANEL END CAP - REMOVAL).

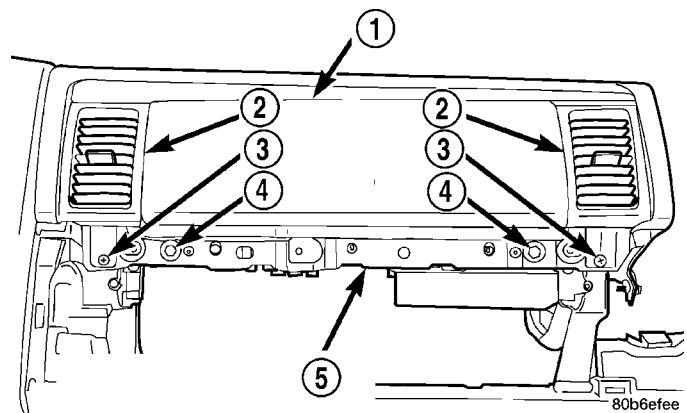
(13) Remove the lower right center bezel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/INSTRUMENT PANEL LOWER RIGHT CENTER BEZEL - REMOVAL).

(14) Remove the glove box lamp and switch. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/LAMPS/LIGHTING - INTERIOR/GLOVE BOX LAMP/SWITCH - REMOVAL).

(15) Remove the two large screws on the glove box opening upper reinforcement that secure the top pad to the instrument panel structural duct (Fig. 9).

(16) Remove the two small screws on the glove box opening upper reinforcement that secure the panel outlets to the instrument panel structural duct.

(17) Remove the center upper bezel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/INSTRUMENT PANEL CENTER BEZEL - UPPER - REMOVAL).



80b6efee

**Fig. 9 INSTRUMENT PANEL TOP PAD TO GLOVE BOX OPENING MOUNTING**

1 - PASSENGER SIDE TRIM BEZEL

2 - PANEL OUTLETS

3 - SMALL SCREWS

4 - LARGE SCREWS

5 - GLOVE BOX OPENING UPPER REINFORCEMENT

(18) Remove the center lower bezel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/INSTRUMENT PANEL CENTER BEZEL - LOWER - REMOVAL).

(19) Remove the four screws that secure the radio to the instrument panel structural duct. Pull the radio out of the instrument panel only far enough to access the screws that secure the top pad to the instrument panel structural duct.

## INSTRUMENT PANEL TOP PAD (Continued)

(20) Remove the four screws that secure the heater-A/C control to the instrument panel structural duct. Pull the heater-A/C control out of the instrument panel only far enough to access the screws that secure the top pad to the instrument panel structural duct.

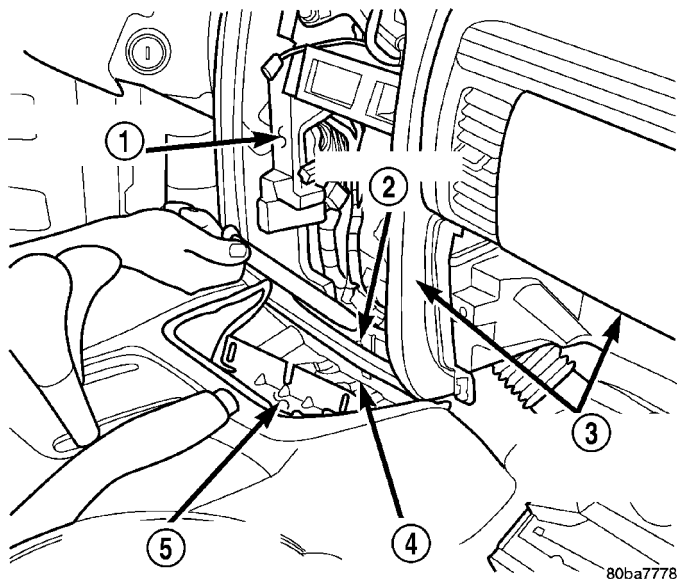
(21) Remove all of the screws that secure the perimeter of the top pad to the instrument panel structural duct.

(22) Remove the front bin from the floor console. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/FLOOR CONSOLE - REMOVAL).

(23) Reach through the front bin opening of the floor console to access and remove the two screws that secure the center floor tunnel bracket to the instrument panel.

(24) Reach through the front bin opening of the floor console to access and loosen the two nuts that secure the center floor tunnel bracket to the studs on the floor panel transmission tunnel.

(25) Slide the center floor tunnel bracket rearward in the vehicle far enough to disengage the locating hole in the lower flange of the top pad from the locating pin on the instrument panel structural duct (Fig. 10).



**Fig. 10 INSTRUMENT PANEL TOP PAD REMOVE/INSTALL**

- 1 - STRUCTURAL DUCT
- 2 - LOCATING PIN
- 3 - INSTRUMENT PANEL TOP PAD
- 4 - LOWER FLANGE
- 5 - CENTER FLOOR TUNNEL BRACKET

(26) Remove the instrument panel top pad from the instrument panel structural duct.

## INSTALLATION

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

If the top pad is being replaced with a new unit, be certain to transfer or install the panel outlets and the passenger side trim bezel to the new unit before it is installed on the instrument panel structural duct. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/DISTRIBUTION/AIR OUTLETS - REMOVAL) and (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/INSTRUMENT PANEL TRIM BEZEL - PASSENGER - REMOVAL).

(1) Position the instrument panel top pad over the instrument panel structural duct and the studs on the dash panel near the windshield fence line.

(2) Route the instrument panel wire harness take out for the glove box lamp and switch unit to the switch mounting hole in the upper glove box opening reinforcement.

(3) Reach through the front bin opening of the floor console to engage the locating hole in the lower flange of the top pad with the locating pin on the instrument panel structural duct (Fig. 10).

(4) Reach through the front bin opening of the floor console to slide the center floor tunnel bracket forward in the vehicle far enough to capture the lower flange of the top pad between the bracket and the structural duct.

(5) Reach through the front bin opening of the floor console to install the two screws that secure the center floor tunnel bracket to the instrument panel and tighten to 11 N·m (8 ft. lbs.).

(6) Reach through the front bin opening of the floor console to install the two nuts that secure the center floor tunnel bracket to the studs on the floor panel transmission tunnel and tighten to 11 N·m (8 ft. lbs.).

(7) Install the front bin into the floor console. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/FLOOR CONSOLE - INSTALLATION).

## INSTRUMENT PANEL TOP PAD (Continued)

(8) Install all of the screws that secure the perimeter of the top pad to the instrument panel structural duct.

(9) Install the four screws that secure the heater-A/C control to the instrument panel structural duct.

(10) Install the four screws that secure the radio to the instrument panel structural duct.

(11) Install the center lower bezel.(Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/INSTRUMENT PANEL CENTER BEZEL - LOWER - INSTALLATION).

(12) Install the center upper bezel.(Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/INSTRUMENT PANEL CENTER BEZEL - UPPER - INSTALLATION).

(13) Install the two large screws on the glove box opening upper reinforcement that secure the top pad to the instrument panel structural duct (Fig. 9) and tighten to 11 N·m (8 ft. lbs.).

(14) Install the two small screws on the glove box opening upper reinforcement that secure the panel outlets to the instrument panel structural duct.

(15) Install the glove box lamp and switch.(Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/LAMPS/LIGHTING - INTERIOR/GLOVE BOX LAMP/SWITCH - INSTALLATION).

(16) Install the lower right center bezel.(Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/INSTRUMENT PANEL LOWER RIGHT CENTER BEZEL - INSTALLATION).

(17) Install the end cap.(Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/INSTRUMENT PANEL END CAP - INSTALLATION).

(18) Roll the glove box back up.(Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/GLOVE BOX - STANDARD PROCEDURE - GLOVE BOX ROLL DOWN).

(19) Install the steering column opening cover.(Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/STEERING COLUMN OPENING COVER - INSTALLATION).

(20) Install the instrument cluster.(Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - INSTALLATION).

(21) Install the cluster bezel onto the instrument panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/CLUSTER BEZEL - INSTALLATION).

(22) If equipped, position the automatic headlamp light sensor/vehicle theft security system indicator unit to the instrument panel top pad just outboard of the driver side defroster outlet. Install and tighten the two screws that secure the sensor/indicator unit.

(23) Engage the retainer that secures each of the two instrument panel wire harness speaker take outs to the mounting hole in the instrument panel top pad.

(24) Install the speakers onto the instrument panel top pad. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/AUDIO/SPEAKER - INSTALLATION - INSTRUMENT PANEL SPEAKER).

(25) Install the four nuts that secure the instrument panel top pad to the studs on the dash panel near the windshield fence line (Fig. 8), and tighten the nuts to 11 N·m (8 ft. lbs.).

(26) Install the top cover onto the instrument panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/INSTRUMENT PANEL TOP COVER - INSTALLATION).

(27) Install the trim onto the right and left A-pillars. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/A-PILLAR TRIM - INSTALLATION).

(28) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

## INSTRUMENT PANEL C-CHANNEL COVER BRACKET

## REMOVAL

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Remove the instrument panel from the vehicle. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL - REMOVAL).

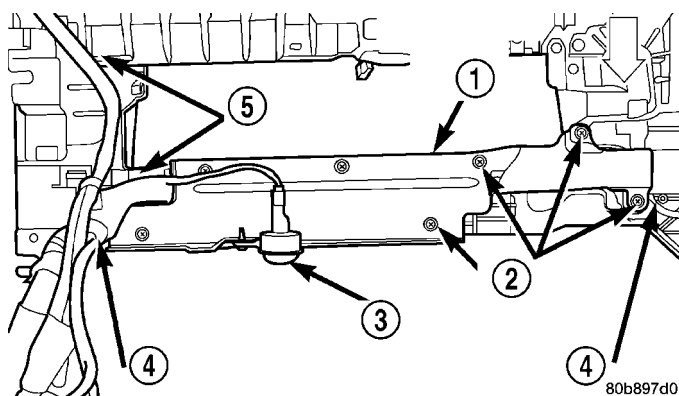
(3) Place the instrument panel top down on a suitable work surface. Be certain to take the proper precautions to protect the top of the instrument panel from any possible cosmetic damage.

(4) Disengage the radio antenna coaxial cable retainer from the mounting hole in the instrument panel wire harness mounting tab on the passenger side outboard end of the instrument panel c-channel cover bracket.



## INSTRUMENT PANEL C-CHANNEL COVER BRACKET (Continued)

(5) Remove the screw that secures the instrument panel wire harness mounting tab on the passenger side outboard end of the instrument panel c-channel cover bracket (Fig. 11).



**Fig. 11 INSTRUMENT PANEL c-channel COVER BRACKET REMOVE/INSTALL**

- 1 - C-CHANNEL COVER BRACKET
- 2 - SCREWS (8)
- 3 - PASSENGER SIDE COURTESY LAMP
- 4 - INSTRUMENT PANEL WIRE HARNESS
- 5 - STRUCTURAL DUCT

(6) Remove the screw that secures the passenger side courtesy lamp to the lower tab of instrument panel c-channel cover bracket.

(7) Remove the eight screws that secure the c-channel cover bracket to the instrument panel structural duct.

(8) Remove the c-channel cover bracket from the instrument panel structural duct.

## INSTALLATION

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Position the c-channel cover bracket to the instrument panel structural duct.

(2) Install the eight screws that secure the c-channel cover bracket to the instrument panel structural duct (Fig. 11).

(3) Position the passenger side courtesy lamp to the lower tab of instrument panel c-channel cover bracket.

(4) Install the screw that secures the passenger side courtesy lamp to the lower tab of instrument panel c-channel cover bracket.

(5) Position the instrument panel wire harness mounting tab to the passenger side outboard end of the instrument panel c-channel cover bracket.

(6) Install the screw that secures the instrument panel wire harness mounting tab to the passenger side outboard end of the instrument panel c-channel cover bracket.

(7) Engage the radio antenna coaxial cable retainer in the mounting hole in the instrument panel wire harness mounting tab on the passenger side outboard end of the instrument panel c-channel cover bracket.

(8) Install the instrument panel into the vehicle. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL - INSTALLATION).

(9) Connect the battery negative cable.

## INSTRUMENT PANEL CENTER BEZEL - LOWER

### REMOVAL

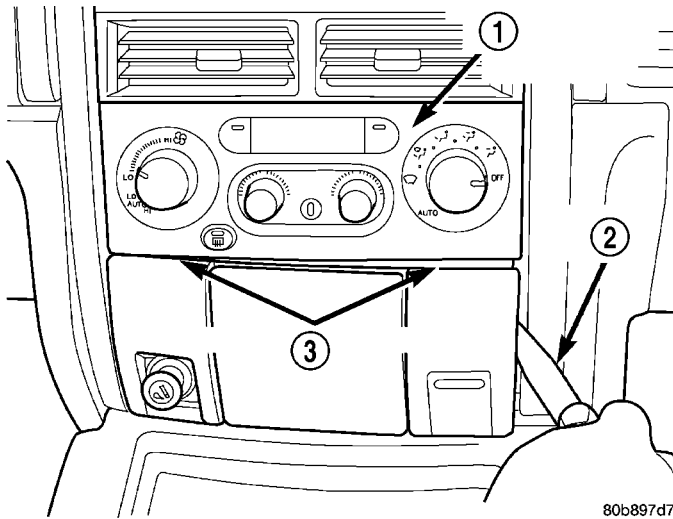
**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Using a trim stick C-4755 or equivalent, gently pry each of the four corners of the center lower bezel away from the instrument panel far enough to disengage the four snap clips from their receptacles (Fig. 12).

(3) Pull the center lower bezel away from the instrument panel far enough to access the instrument panel wire harness connectors.

## INSTRUMENT PANEL CENTER BEZEL - LOWER (Continued)



**Fig. 12 INSTRUMENT PANEL CENTER LOWER BEZEL REMOVE/INSTALL**

- 1 - HEATER AND AIR CONDITIONER CONTROLS  
2 - TRIM STICK  
3 - CENTER LOWER BEZEL

(4) Squeeze the mounting legs of the ash receiver lamp hood and remove it from the rectangular hole in the ash receiver flame shield.

(5) If equipped, disconnect the instrument panel wire harness connectors for the two heated seat switches from the switch connector receptacles.

(6) Disconnect the instrument panel wire harness connectors for the cigar lighter and accessory power outlet from the lighter and outlet connector receptacles.

(7) Remove the center lower bezel from the instrument panel.

## INSTALLATION

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Position the center lower bezel to the instrument panel.

(2) Connect the instrument panel wire harness connectors for the cigar lighter and the accessory

power outlet to the lighter and outlet connector receptacles.

(3) If equipped, connect the instrument panel wire harness connectors for the two heated seat switches to the switch connector receptacles.

(4) Squeeze the mounting legs of the ash receiver lamp hood and install them into the rectangular hole in the ash receiver flame shield.

(5) Align the two lower snap clips on the center lower bezel with their receptacles in the instrument panel top pad.

(6) Using hand pressure, press firmly and evenly on the center lower bezel over each of the lower snap clip locations until each of the snap clips is fully engaged in its receptacle.

(7) Align the two upper snap clips on the center lower bezel with their receptacles in the instrument panel top pad.

(8) Using hand pressure, press firmly and evenly on the center lower bezel over each of the upper snap clip locations until each of the snap clips is fully engaged in its receptacle.

(9) Connect the battery negative cable.

## INSTRUMENT PANEL CENTER BEZEL - UPPER

### REMOVAL

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

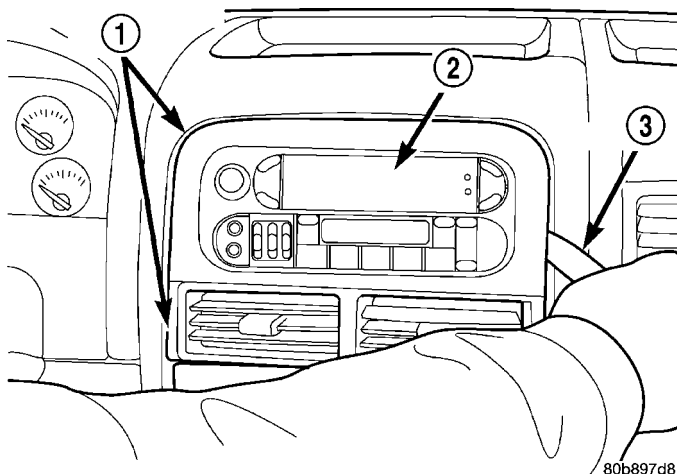
(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Using a trim stick C-4755 or equivalent, gently pry each of the four corners of the center upper bezel away from the instrument panel far enough to disengage the four snap clips from their receptacles (Fig. 13).

(3) Remove the center upper bezel from the instrument panel.



## INSTRUMENT PANEL CENTER BEZEL - UPPER (Continued)



**Fig. 13 INSTRUMENT PANEL CENTER UPPER BEZEL REMOVE/INSTALL**

- 1 - CENTER UPPER BEZEL
- 2 - RADIO
- 3 - TRIM STICK

## INSTALLATION

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

- (1) Position the center upper bezel onto the instrument panel.
- (2) Align the four snap clips on the center upper bezel with their receptacles in the instrument panel top pad.
- (3) Using hand pressure, press firmly and evenly on the center upper bezel over each of the snap clip locations until each of the snap clips is fully engaged in its receptacle.
- (4) Connect the battery negative cable.

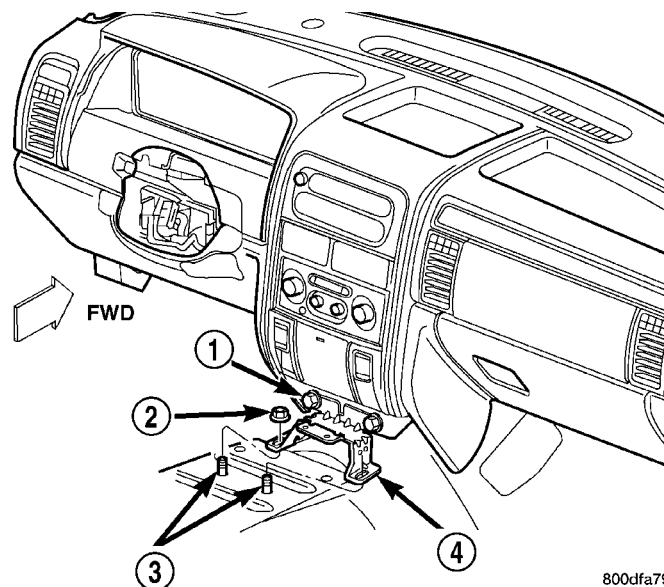
## INSTRUMENT PANEL CENTER FLOOR TUNNEL BRACKET

## REMOVAL

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE**

**ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

- (1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.
- (2) Remove the front bin from the floor console. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/FLOOR CONSOLE - REMOVAL).
- (3) Reach through the front bin opening of the floor console to access and disengage the instrument panel wire harness retainer from the mounting hole on the driver side of the instrument panel center floor tunnel bracket.
- (4) Remove the two screws that secure the center floor tunnel bracket to the instrument panel (Fig. 14).



**Fig. 14 INSTRUMENT PANEL CENTER FLOOR TUNNEL BRACKET REMOVE/INSTALL**

- 1 - SCREW (2)
- 2 - NUT (2)
- 3 - STUDS
- 4 - CENTER FLOOR TUNNEL BRACKET

- (5) Remove the two nuts that secure the center floor tunnel bracket to the studs on the floor panel transmission tunnel.
- (6) Remove the center floor tunnel bracket from the instrument panel and the floor panel transmission tunnel.

## INSTRUMENT PANEL CENTER FLOOR TUNNEL BRACKET (Continued)

## INSTALLATION

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Position the center floor tunnel bracket over the floor panel transmission tunnel studs and slide it up against the instrument panel (Fig. 14).

(2) Install the two nuts that secure the center floor tunnel bracket to the studs on the floor panel transmission tunnel and tighten to 11 N·m (8 ft. lbs.).

(3) Install the two screws that secure the center floor tunnel bracket to the instrument panel and tighten the screws to 11 N·m (8 ft. lbs.).

(4) Reach through the front bin opening of the floor console to access and engage the instrument panel wire harness retainer with the mounting hole on the driver side of the instrument panel center floor tunnel bracket.

(5) Install the front bin into the floor console. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/FLOOR CONSOLE - INSTALLATION).

(6) Connect the battery negative cable.

INSTRUMENT PANEL  
COURTESY LAMP BRACKET

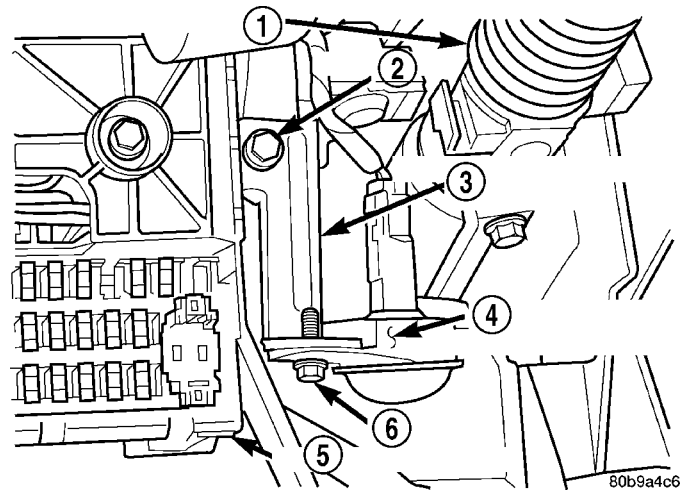
## REMOVAL

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Remove the instrument panel fuse cover from the bottom of the junction block (JB) and body control module (BCM) unit. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/POWER DISTRIBUTION/FUSE COVER - REMOVAL).

(3) Reach under the steering column opening cover to access and remove the screw that secures the courtesy lamp unit to the lower end of the instrument panel courtesy lamp bracket near the inboard side of the JB (Fig. 15).



**Fig. 15 INSTRUMENT PANEL COURTESY LAMP BRACKET REMOVE/INSTALL**

- 1 - STEERING COLUMN
- 2 - SCREW
- 3 - COURTESY LAMP BRACKET
- 4 - DRIVER SIDE COURTESY LAMP
- 5 - JUNCTION BLOCK
- 6 - SCREW

(4) Remove the courtesy lamp from the lower end of the courtesy lamp bracket.

(5) Reach under the steering column opening cover to access and remove the screw that secures the courtesy lamp bracket and the inboard side of the JB to the instrument panel steering column support bracket.

(6) Remove the courtesy lamp bracket from the inboard side of the JB and the instrument panel steering column support bracket.

## INSTRUMENT PANEL COURTESY LAMP BRACKET (Continued)

## INSTALLATION

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Reach under the instrument panel to position the upper end of the courtesy lamp bracket to the inboard side of the junction block (JB) and the instrument panel steering column support bracket (Fig. 15).

(2) Install the screw that secures the courtesy lamp bracket and the inboard side of the JB to the instrument panel steering column support bracket.

(3) Position the courtesy lamp to the lower end of the courtesy lamp bracket.

(4) Install the screw that secures the courtesy lamp to the lower end of the courtesy lamp bracket.

(5) Install the instrument panel fuse cover to the bottom of the JB and body control module (BCM) unit. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/POWER DISTRIBUTION/FUSE COVER - INSTALLATION).

(6) Connect the battery negative cable.

INSTRUMENT PANEL  
INTERMEDIATE BRACKET

## REMOVAL

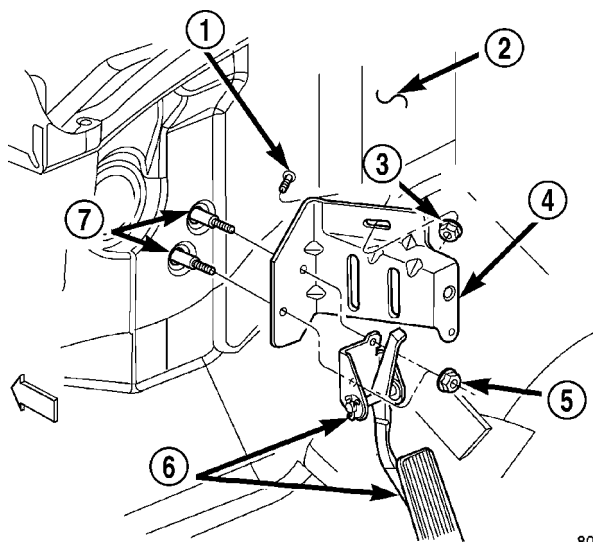
**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Remove the accelerator pedal assembly from the shoulder studs on the dash panel. (Refer to 14 - FUEL SYSTEM/FUEL INJECTION/ACCELERATOR PEDAL - REMOVAL).

(3) Remove the instrument panel from the vehicle. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL - REMOVAL).

(4) Remove the one nut that secures the instrument panel intermediate bracket to the stud on the dash panel (Fig. 16).



80b6f01b

**Fig. 16 INSTRUMENT PANEL INTERMEDIATE  
BRACKET REMOVE/INSTALL**

- 1 - STUD
- 2 - DASH PANEL
- 3 - NUT (2)
- 4 - INTERMEDIATE BRACKET
- 5 - NUT (2)
- 6 - ACCELERATOR PEDAL
- 7 - SHOULDER STUDS

(5) Remove the instrument panel intermediate bracket from the two shoulder studs and the one stud on the dash panel.

## INSTRUMENT PANEL INTERMEDIATE BRACKET (Continued)

## INSTALLATION

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Position the instrument panel intermediate bracket to the two shoulder studs and the one stud on the dash panel (Fig. 16).

(2) Loosely install the one nut that secures the intermediate bracket to the one stud on the dash panel.

(3) Install the instrument panel into the vehicle. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL - INSTALLATION).

(4) Install the accelerator pedal assembly onto the shoulder studs on the dash panel. (Refer to 14 - FUEL SYSTEM/FUEL INJECTION/ACCELERATOR PEDAL - INSTALLATION).

(5) Connect the battery negative cable.

## INSTRUMENT PANEL LOWER RIGHT CENTER BEZEL

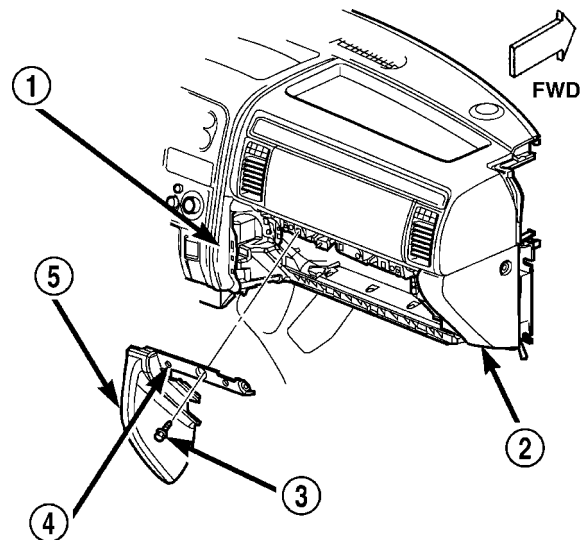
## REMOVAL

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Unlatch and open the glove box.

(3) Remove the three screws that secure the lower right center bezel to the instrument panel glove box opening (Fig. 17).



80b6b32c

**Fig. 17 INSTRUMENT PANEL LOWER RIGHT CENTER BEZEL REMOVE/INSTALL**

- 1 - INSTRUMENT PANEL TOP PAD
- 2 - END CAP
- 3 - SCREWS (3)
- 4 - BUMPER
- 5 - LOWER RIGHT CENTER BEZEL

(4) Pull the lower right center bezel straight back from the instrument panel to disengage the two snap clips that secure it to the receptacles in the instrument panel top pad.

(5) Remove the lower right center bezel from the instrument panel.

## INSTALLATION

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Be certain that the glove box catch bumper is installed in the mounting hole nearest the inboard end of the lower right center bezel extension over the



## INSTRUMENT PANEL LOWER RIGHT CENTER BEZEL (Continued)

instrument panel upper glove box opening reinforcement.

(2) Position the lower right center bezel to the instrument panel. Be certain that the end of the lower right center bezel extension near the center of the upper glove box opening reinforcement is positioned on top of the end of the extension from the end cap (Fig. 17).

(3) Align the snap clips on the lower right center bezel with the receptacles in the instrument panel top pad.

(4) Using hand pressure, press firmly on the lower right center bezel over each of the snap clip locations until the snap clips are fully engaged in their receptacles.

(5) Install the three screws that secure the lower right center bezel to the instrument panel glove box opening.

(6) Close and latch the glove box.

(7) Connect the battery negative cable.

## INSTRUMENT PANEL STEERING COLUMN BRACKET

### REMOVAL

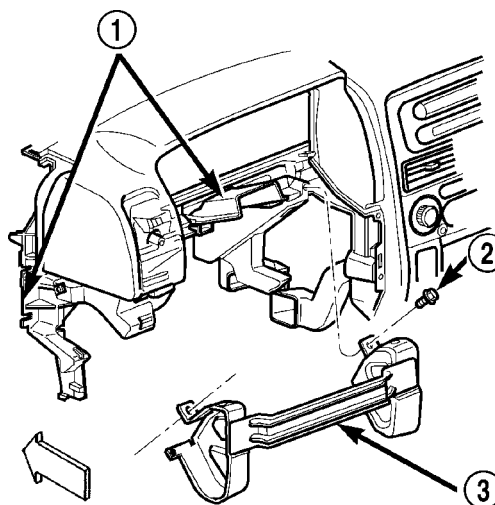
**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Remove the steering column opening cover from the instrument panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/STEERING COLUMN OPENING COVER - REMOVAL).

(3) Remove the four screws that secure the steering column bracket to the instrument panel steering column support bracket (Fig. 18).

(4) Remove the steering column bracket from the instrument panel steering column support bracket.



80b6b32d

**Fig. 18 INSTRUMENT PANEL STEERING COLUMN BRACKET REMOVE/INSTALL**

1 - INSTRUMENT PANEL STEERING COLUMN SUPPORT BRACKET

2 - SCREW (4)

3 - INSTRUMENT PANEL STEERING COLUMN BRACKET

### INSTALLATION

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Position the steering column bracket to the instrument panel steering column support bracket (Fig. 18).

(2) Install the four screws that secure the steering column bracket to the instrument panel steering column support bracket and tighten the screws to 11 N·m (9 ft. lbs.).

(3) Install the steering column opening cover. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/STEERING COLUMN OPENING COVER - INSTALLATION).

(4) Connect the battery negative cable.

## INSTRUMENT PANEL STEERING COLUMN SUPPORT BRACKET

### REMOVAL

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Remove the instrument cluster. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - REMOVAL).

(3) Remove the instrument panel plenum bracket from the steering column support bracket. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/INSTRUMENT PANEL PLENUM BRACKET - REMOVAL).

(4) Remove the three screws that secure the instrument panel wire harness mounting tabs to the back of the steering column support bracket.

(5) Remove the two screws that secure the 16-way data link connector to the instrument panel steering column support bracket and remove the connector from the bracket (Fig. 19).

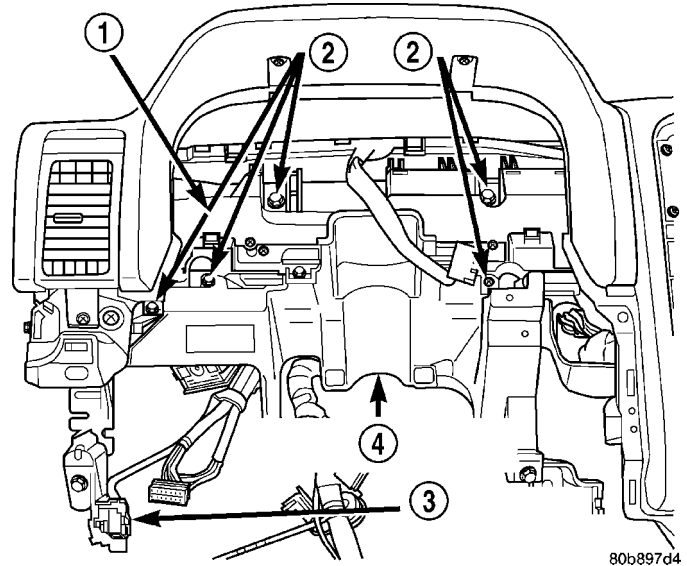
(6) Remove the junction block (JB) and body control module (BCM) unit from the instrument panel steering column support bracket, but do not disconnect any of the instrument panel wire harness connectors from the unit. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/POWER DISTRIBUTION/JUNCTION BLOCK - REMOVAL).

(7) From the face of the instrument panel, remove the five screws that secure the steering column support bracket to the instrument panel structural duct.

(8) Remove the steering column support bracket from the instrument panel structural duct.

### INSTALLATION

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING**



**Fig. 19 INSTRUMENT PANEL STEERING COLUMN  
SUPPORT BRACKET REMOVE/INSTALL**

- 1 - STRUCTURAL DUCT
- 2 - SCREWS (5)
- 3 - 16-WAY DATA LINK CONNECTOR
- 4 - STEERING COLUMN SUPPORT BRACKET

**COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Position the steering column support bracket to the instrument panel structural duct.

(2) From the face of the instrument panel, install the five screws that secure the steering column support bracket to the instrument panel structural duct (Fig. 19), and tighten the screws to 11 N·m (8 ft. lbs.).

(3) Position the instrument panel wire harness mounting tabs to the back of the steering column support bracket.

(4) Install the three screws that secure the instrument panel wire harness mounting tabs to the back of the steering column support bracket.

(5) Install the instrument panel plenum bracket onto the steering column support bracket. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/INSTRUMENT PANEL PLENUM BRACKET - INSTALLATION).

(6) Install the junction block (JB) and body control module (BCM) unit onto the instrument panel steering column support bracket. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRI-



## INSTRUMENT PANEL STEERING COLUMN SUPPORT BRACKET (Continued)

CAL/POWER DISTRIBUTION/JUNCTION BLOCK - INSTALLATION).

(7) Position the 16-way data link connector to the instrument panel steering column support bracket.

(8) Install the two screws that secure the 16-way data link connector to the instrument panel steering column support bracket.

(9) Install the instrument cluster onto the instrument panel. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - INSTALLATION).

(10) Connect the battery negative cable.

## INSTRUMENT PANEL TRIM BEZEL - DRIVER

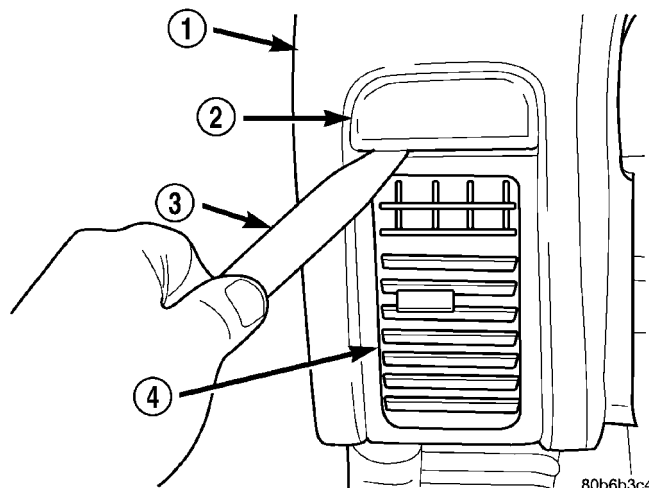
### REMOVAL

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Using a trim stick C-4755 or equivalent, gently pry the edges of the driver side trim bezel up and away from the instrument panel far enough to disengage the two snap clips from their receptacles (Fig. 20).

(3) Remove the driver side trim bezel from the instrument panel top pad.



**Fig. 20 INSTRUMENT PANEL DRIVER SIDE TRIM BEZEL REMOVE/INSTALL**

- 1 - INSTRUMENT PANEL TOP PAD
- 2 - DRIVER SIDE TRIM BEZEL
- 3 - TRIM STICK
- 4 - PANEL OUTLET

### INSTALLATION

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Position the driver side trim bezel to the instrument panel top pad.

(2) Align the snap clips on the driver side trim bezel with the receptacles in the instrument panel top pad.

(3) Using hand pressure, press firmly and evenly on the driver side trim bezel over the snap clip locations until each of the snap clips is fully engaged in its receptacle.

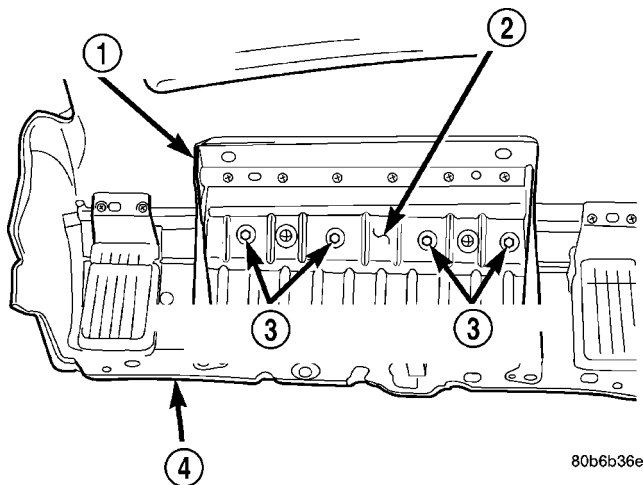
(4) Connect the battery negative cable.

## INSTRUMENT PANEL TRIM BEZEL - PASSENGER

### REMOVAL

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

- (1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.
- (2) Remove the top pad from the instrument panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/INSTRUMENT PANEL TOP PAD - REMOVAL).
- (3) From the underside of the top pad, remove the four screws from the top of the passenger airbag door that secure the passenger side trim bezel to the instrument panel (Fig. 21).



**Fig. 21 INSTRUMENT PANEL PASSENGER SIDE TRIM BEZEL REMOVE/INSTALL**

- 1 - INSTRUMENT PANEL AIRBAG DOOR REINFORCEMENT
- 2 - PASSENGER AIRBAG DOOR
- 3 - PASSENGER SIDE TRIM BEZEL SCREWS (4)
- 4 - INSTRUMENT PANEL TOP PAD

- (4) Remove the passenger side trim bezel from the instrument panel top pad.

### INSTALLATION

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

- (1) Position the passenger side trim bezel to the instrument panel top pad.
- (2) From the underside of the top pad, install the four screws through the passenger airbag door that secure the passenger side trim bezel to the instrument panel (Fig. 21), and tighten the screws to 11 N·m (8 ft. lbs.).
- (3) Install the top pad onto the instrument panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/INSTRUMENT PANEL TOP PAD - INSTALLATION).
- (4) Connect the battery negative cable.

## STEERING COLUMN OPENING COVER

### REMOVAL

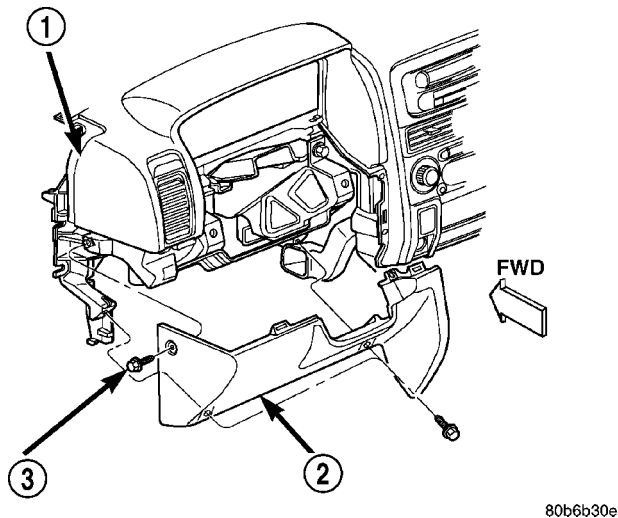
**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

- (1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.
- (2) Remove the fuse cover from the junction block (JB) and body control module (BCM) unit under the driver side outboard end of the instrument panel. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/POWER DISTRIBUTION/FUSE COVER - REMOVAL).

## STEERING COLUMN OPENING COVER (Continued)

(3) Remove the cluster bezel from the instrument panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/CLUSTER BEZEL - REMOVAL).

(4) Remove the one screw that secures the outboard end of the steering column opening cover to the u-nut on the outboard end of the instrument panel top pad (Fig. 22).



**Fig. 22 STEERING COLUMN OPENING COVER REMOVE/INSTALL**

- 1 - INSTRUMENT PANEL TOP PAD  
2 - STEERING COLUMN OPENING COVER  
3 - SCREW (3)

(5) Remove the two screws that secure the lower edge of the steering column opening cover to the u-nuts on the instrument panel steering column support bracket.

(6) Pull the steering column opening cover rearward to disengage the three snap clips (one outboard and two inboard) that secure it to the receptacles in the instrument panel.

(7) Remove the steering column opening cover from the instrument panel.

## INSTALLATION

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Position the steering column opening cover onto the instrument panel (Fig. 22).

(2) Align the three snap clips on the steering column opening cover with their receptacles in the instrument panel.

(3) Using hand pressure, press firmly and evenly on the steering column opening cover over the snap clip locations until each of the snap clips is fully engaged in its receptacle.

(4) Install the two screws that secure the lower edge of the steering column opening cover to the instrument panel steering column support bracket.

(5) Install the one screw that secures the outboard end of the steering column opening cover to the u-nut on the outboard end of the instrument panel top pad.

(6) Install the cluster bezel onto the instrument panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/CLUSTER BEZEL - INSTALLATION).

(7) Install the fuse cover onto the junction block (JB) and body control module (BCM) unit under the driver side outboard end of the instrument panel. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/POWER DISTRIBUTION/FUSE COVER - INSTALLATION).

(8) Connect the battery negative cable.

## INSTRUMENT PANEL ASSEMBLY

### REMOVAL

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

**NOTE: Before starting this procedure, be certain to turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position.**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Remove the trim from the right and left A-pillars. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/A-PILLAR TRIM - REMOVAL).

(3) Remove the top cover. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/INSTRUMENT PANEL TOP COVER - REMOVAL).

# INSTRUMENT PANEL ASSEMBLY (Continued)

(4) Remove the four nuts that secure the instrument panel to the studs on the dash panel near the windshield fence line (Fig. 23).

(5) Remove the scuff plates from the right and left front door sills. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/DOOR SILL SCUFF PLATE - REMOVAL).

(6) Remove the trim panels from the right and left inner cowl sides. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/COWL TRIM - REMOVAL).

(7) Remove the console from the floor panel transmission tunnel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/FLOOR CONSOLE - REMOVAL).

(8) Remove the fuse cover from the junction block (JB). (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/POWER DISTRIBUTION/FUSE COVER - REMOVAL).

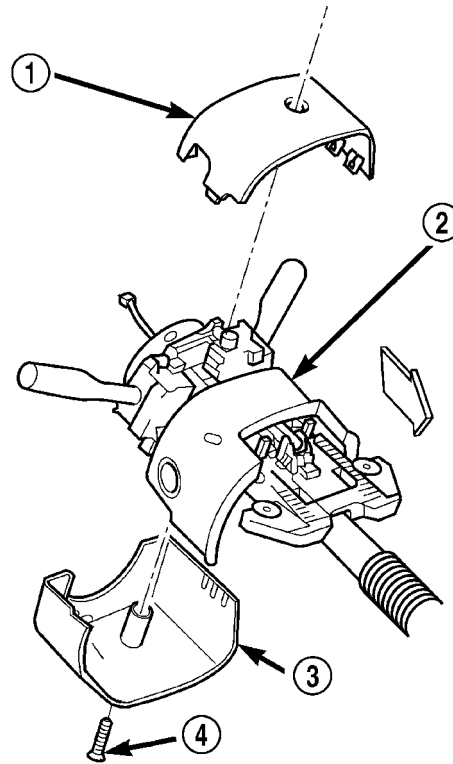
(9) Remove the cluster bezel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/CLUSTER BEZEL - REMOVAL).

(10) Remove the steering column opening cover. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/STEERING COLUMN OPENING COVER - REMOVAL).

(11) Remove the steering column bracket from the instrument panel steering column support bracket. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/INSTRUMENT PANEL STEERING COLUMN BRACKET - REMOVAL).

(12) Remove the screw that secures the lower tilting steering column shroud to the steering column multi-function switch mounting housing (Fig. 24).

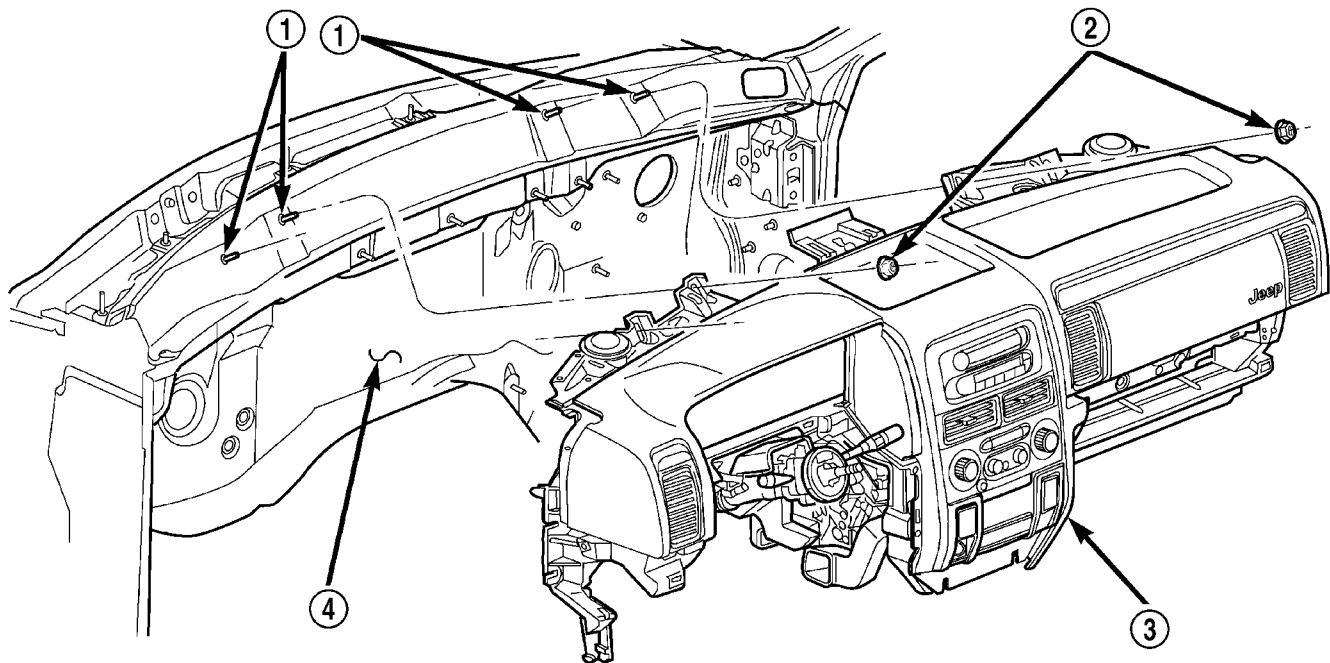
(13) Unsnap the two halves of the tilting steering column shroud from each other and remove both halves from the steering column.



80b04f0f

**Fig. 24 STEERING COLUMN SHROUDS REMOVE/INSTALL**

- 1 - UPPER TILTING COLUMN SHROUD
- 2 - FIXED COLUMN SHROUD
- 3 - LOWER TILTING COLUMN SHROUD
- 4 - SCREW



**Fig. 23 INSTRUMENT PANEL TO DASH PANEL MOUNTING**

80b3c645

- 1 - STUD (4)
- 2 - NUT (4)

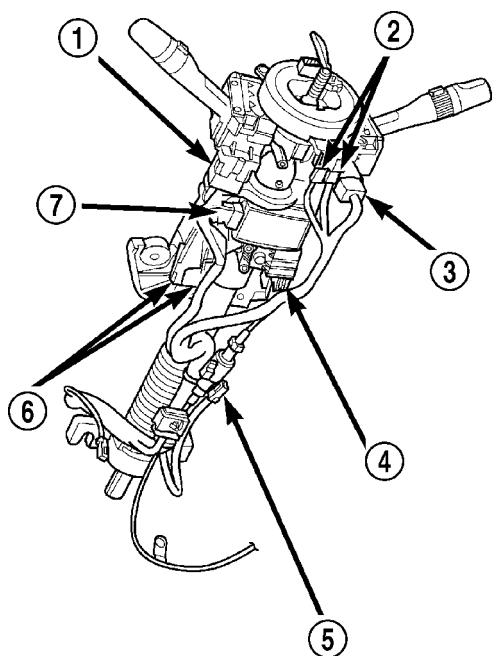
- 3 - INSTRUMENT PANEL
- 4 - DASH PANEL



## INSTRUMENT PANEL ASSEMBLY (Continued)

(14) Disconnect the instrument panel wire harness connectors from the following steering column components (Fig. 25):

- the two lower clockspring connector receptacles
- the left multi-function switch connector receptacle
- the right multi-function switch connector receptacle
- the two ignition switch connector receptacles
- the shifter interlock solenoid connector receptacle
- if equipped, the sentry key immobilizer module (SKIM) connector receptacle.



80b6b3a0

**Fig. 25 STEERING COLUMN CONNECTIONS**

- 1 - LEFT MULTIFUNCTION SWITCH CONNECTOR
- 2 - LOWER CLOCKSPRING CONNECTORS
- 3 - RIGHT MULTIFUNCTION SWITCH CONNECTOR
- 4 - SHIFTER INTERLOCK CABLE CONNECTOR
- 5 - SHIFTER INTERLOCK SOLENOID CONNECTOR
- 6 - IGNITION SWITCH CONNECTOR RECEPTACLES
- 7 - SKIM CONNECTOR

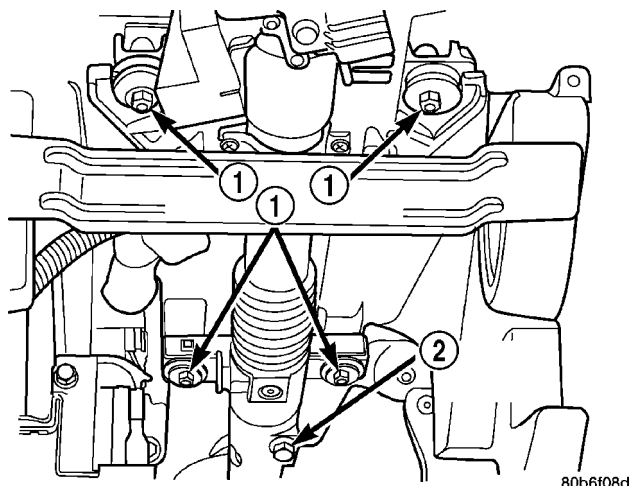
(15) Turn the ignition switch to the On position, then release and remove the shifter interlock cable connector from the ignition lock housing receptacle.

(16) Turn the ignition switch back to the Lock position to prevent steering wheel rotation and the loss of clockspring centering following steering column removal.

(17) Remove the bolt that secures the coupler to the lower steering column shaft (Fig. 26).

(18) Remove the four nuts that secure the steering column to the studs on the instrument panel steering column support bracket.

(19) Remove the steering column from the instrument panel. Be certain that the steering wheel is locked and secured from rotation to prevent the loss of clockspring centering.

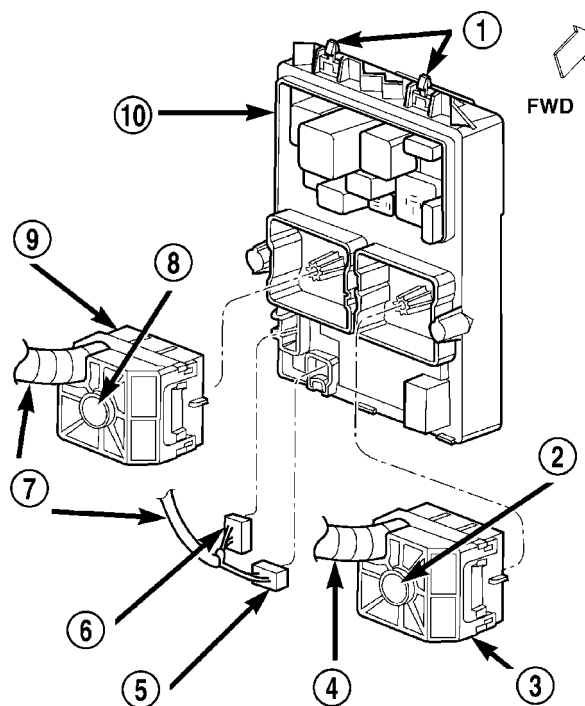


80b6f08d

**Fig. 26 STEERING COLUMN MOUNTING**

- 1 - COLUMN MOUNTING NUTS
- 2 - COUPLER BOLT

(20) Disconnect the left and right body wire harness connectors, the ignition off draw (IOD) wire harness connector and the fused B(+) wire harness connector from the connector receptacles of the JB (Fig. 27).



80b6b3ad

**Fig. 27 JUNCTION BLOCK CONNECTIONS**

- 1 - SNAP CLIPS
- 2 - SCREW
- 3 - CONNECTOR
- 4 - LEFT BODY WIRE HARNESS
- 5 - IOD CONNECTOR
- 6 - FUSED B+ CONNECTOR
- 7 - RIGHT BODY WIRE HARNESS
- 8 - SCREW
- 9 - CONNECTOR
- 10 - JUNCTION BLOCK

## INSTRUMENT PANEL ASSEMBLY (Continued)

(21) Disconnect the instrument panel wire harness connectors from the following floor panel transmission tunnel components (Fig. 28):

- the airbag control module (ACM) connector
- the park brake switch terminal
- the transmission shifter connector receptacle.

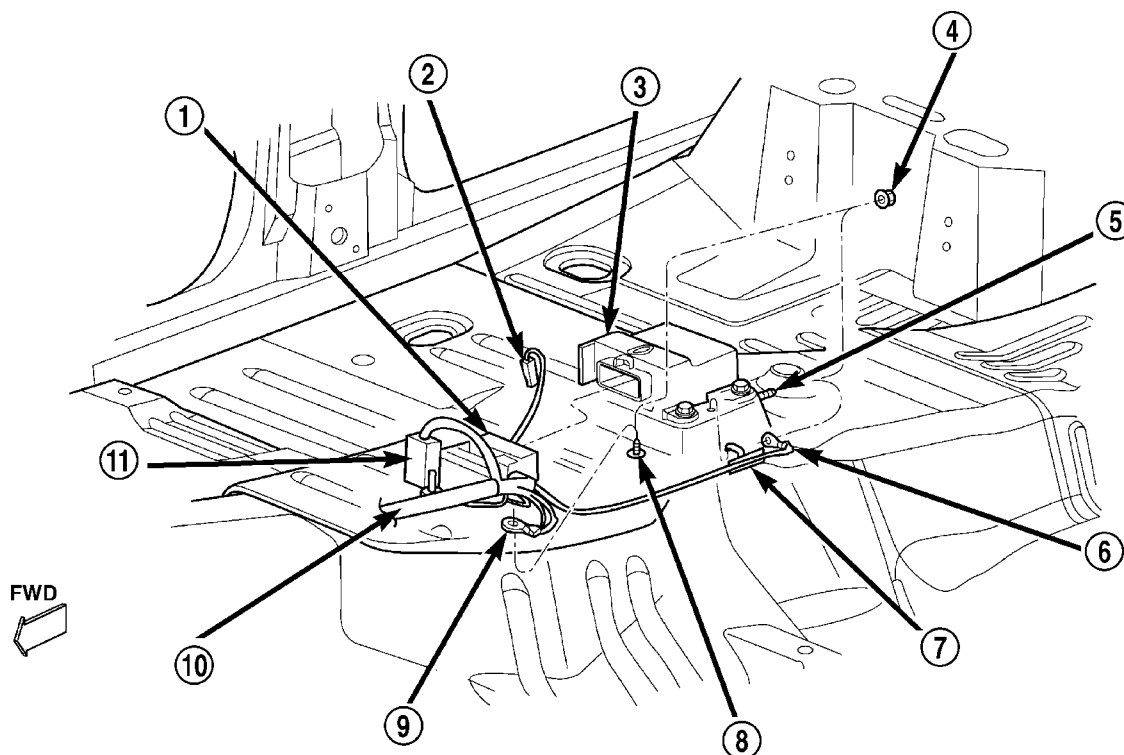
(22) Remove the two nuts that secure the instrument panel wire harness ground eyelets to the studs on the floor panel transmission tunnel in front of and behind the ACM.

(23) Disengage the retainers that secure the instrument panel wire harness to the floor panel transmission tunnel.

(24) Remove the instrument panel to center floor tunnel bracket from the instrument panel and the floor panel transmission tunnel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/INSTRUMENT PANEL CENTER FLOOR TUNNEL BRACKET - REMOVAL).

(25) Remove the one screw that secures the floor duct to the heater and air conditioner housing near the driver side of the floor panel transmission tunnel and remove the duct from the housing.

(26) If the vehicle is equipped with the manual heating and air conditioning system, disconnect the vacuum harness connector located near the driver side of the floor panel transmission tunnel behind the driver side floor duct.



80b3c644

**Fig. 28 FLOOR PANEL TRANSMISSION TUNNEL**

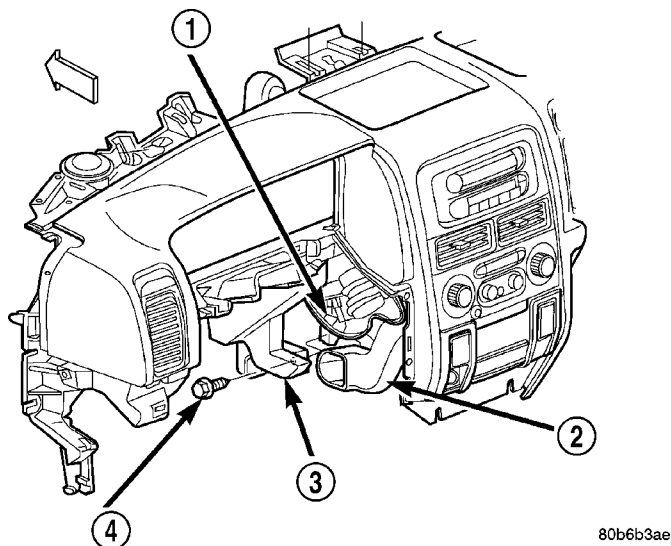
- 1 - AIRBAG CONTROL MODULE CONNECTOR
- 2 - PARK BRAKE SWITCH CONNECTOR
- 3 - AIRBAG CONTROL MODULE
- 4 - NUT (2)
- 5 - STUD
- 6 - GROUND EYELET

- 7 - RETAINER
- 8 - STUD
- 9 - GROUND EYELET
- 10 - INSTRUMENT PANEL WIRE HARNESS
- 11 - TRANSMISSION SHIFTER CONNECTOR



## INSTRUMENT PANEL ASSEMBLY (Continued)

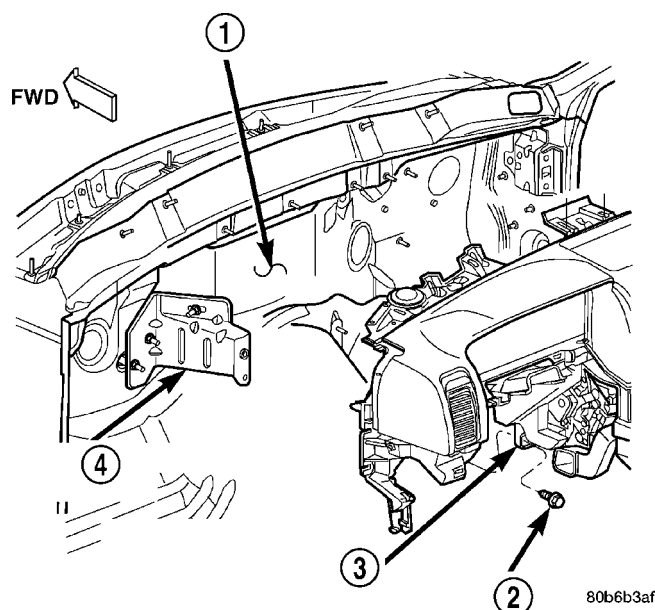
(27) Remove the one screw that secures the instrument panel steering column support bracket to the driver side end of the heater and air conditioner housing (Fig. 29).



**Fig. 29 INSTRUMENT PANEL TO HEATER-A/C HOUSING - DRIVER SIDE**

- 1 - HEATER AND AIR CONDITIONER HOUSING
- 2 - FLOOR DUCT
- 3 - INSTRUMENT PANEL STEERING COLUMN SUPPORT BRACKET
- 4 - SCREW

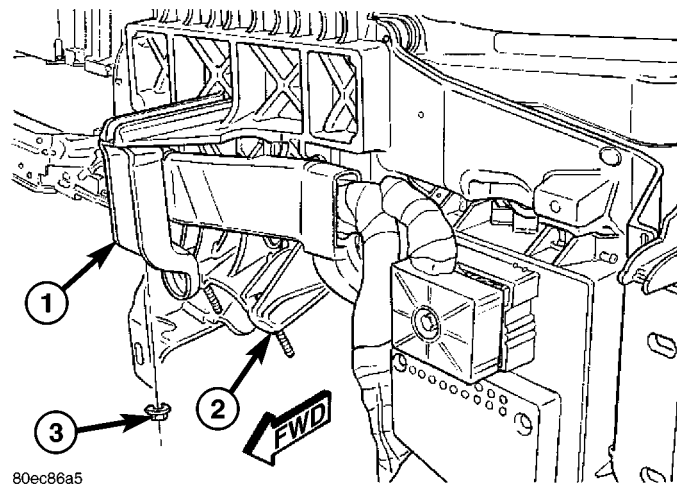
(28) Remove the one screw that secures the instrument panel steering column support bracket to the intermediate bracket on the driver side dash panel (Fig. 30).



**Fig. 30 INSTRUMENT PANEL TO INTERMEDIATE BRACKET MOUNTING**

- 1 - DASH PANEL
- 2 - SCREW
- 3 - INSTRUMENT PANEL STEERING COLUMN SUPPORT BRACKET
- 4 - INTERMEDIATE BRACKET

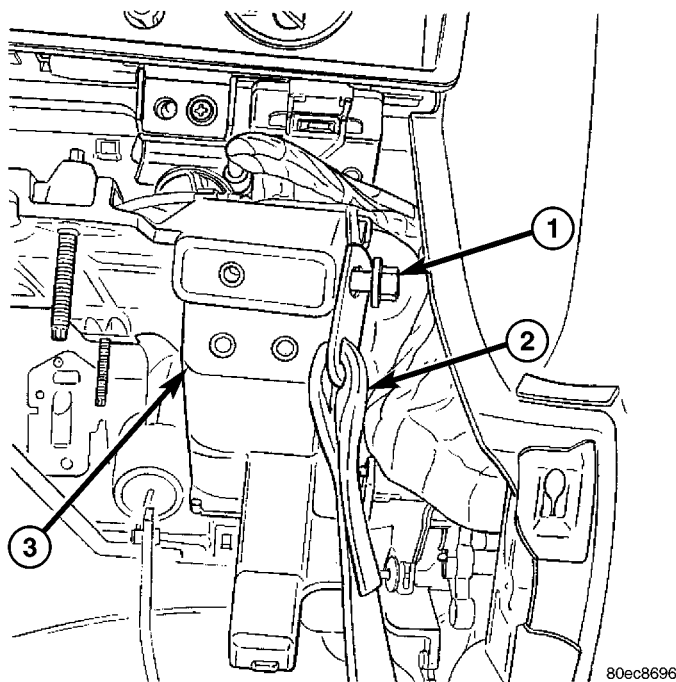
(29) Remove the nut that secures the instrument panel steering column support bracket to the stud on the driver side cowl plenum panel (Fig. 31).



**Fig. 31 PANEL TO COWL PLENUM**

- 1 - SECONDARY SUPPORT BRACKET
- 2 - STEERING COLUMN SUPPORT BRACKET
- 3 - NUT

(30) Remove the nut and disconnect the safety strap from the support bracket. (Fig. 32)

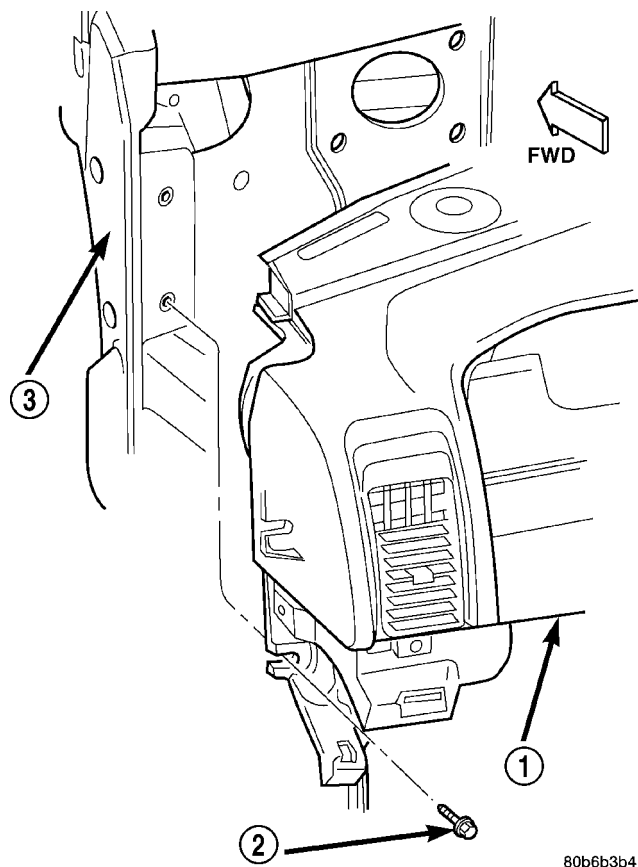


**Fig. 32 DRIVERS SIDE SAFETY STRAP**

- 1 - NUT/STUD
- 2 - STRAP
- 3 - STEERING COLUMN SUPPORT BRACKET

## INSTRUMENT PANEL ASSEMBLY (Continued)

(31) Remove the two screws that secure the instrument panel to the driver side cowl side inner panel (Fig. 33).



**Fig. 33 INSTRUMENT PANEL TO DRIVER SIDE COWL SIDE INNER PANEL MOUNTING**

- 1 - INSTRUMENT PANEL
- 2 - SCREW (2)
- 3 - COWL SIDE PANEL

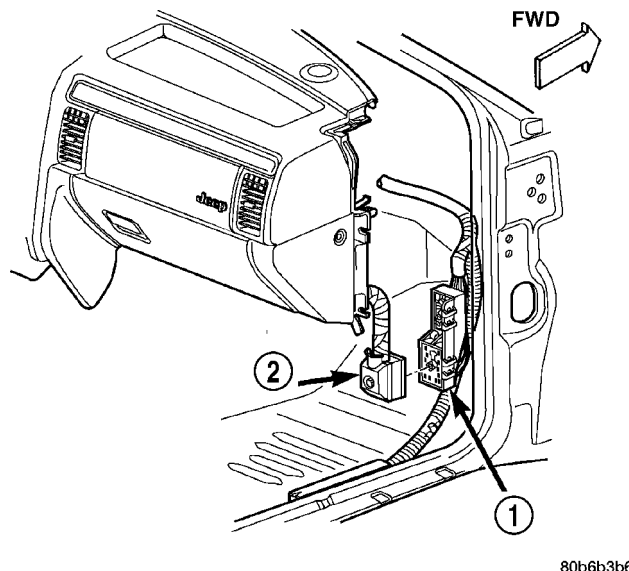
(32) Remove the end cap. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/INSTRUMENT PANEL END CAP - REMOVAL).

(33) Remove the lower right center bezel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/INSTRUMENT PANEL LOWER RIGHT CENTER BEZEL - REMOVAL).

(34) Remove the glove box. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/GLOVE BOX - REMOVAL)

(35) Disconnect the instrument panel wire harness connector from the lower cavity of the inline connector on the passenger side cowl side inner panel (Fig. 34).

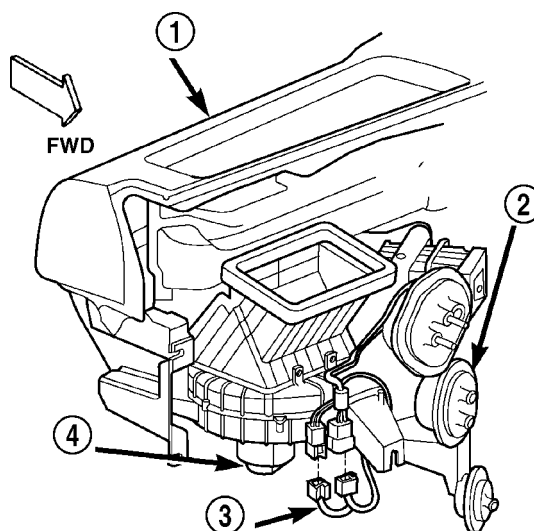
(36) Disconnect the two halves of the radio antenna coaxial cable connector near the right cowl side inner panel under the end of the instrument panel.



**Fig. 34 INSTRUMENT PANEL PASSENGER SIDE CONNECTION**

- 1 - INLINE CONNECTOR
- 2 - INSTRUMENT PANEL WIRE HARNESS CONNECTOR

(37) Disconnect the two instrument panel wire harness connectors from the two heater and air conditioner housing connectors located near the blower motor on the passenger side end of the housing (Fig. 35).

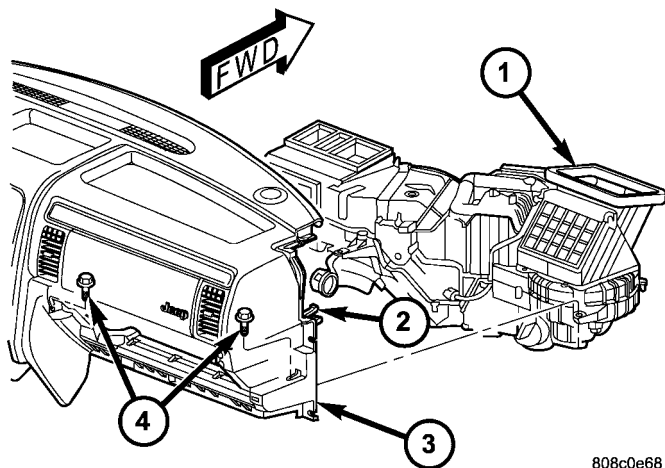


**Fig. 35 HEATER AND AIR CONDITIONER HOUSING CONNECTIONS**

- 1 - INSTRUMENT PANEL
- 2 - HVAC HOUSING
- 3 - INSTRUMENT PANEL WIRE HARNESS
- 4 - BLOWER MOTOR

## INSTRUMENT PANEL ASSEMBLY (Continued)

(38) Remove the two screws that secure the passenger side instrument panel structural duct to the heater and air conditioner housing (Fig. 36).



808c0e68

**Fig. 36 PASSENGER SIDE INSTRUMENT PANEL TO HEATER-A/C HOUSING MOUNTING**

- 1 - HEATER AND AIR CONDITIONER HOUSING
- 2 - RETAINER TAB
- 3 - INSTRUMENT PANEL STRUCTURAL DUCT
- 4 - SCREW (2)

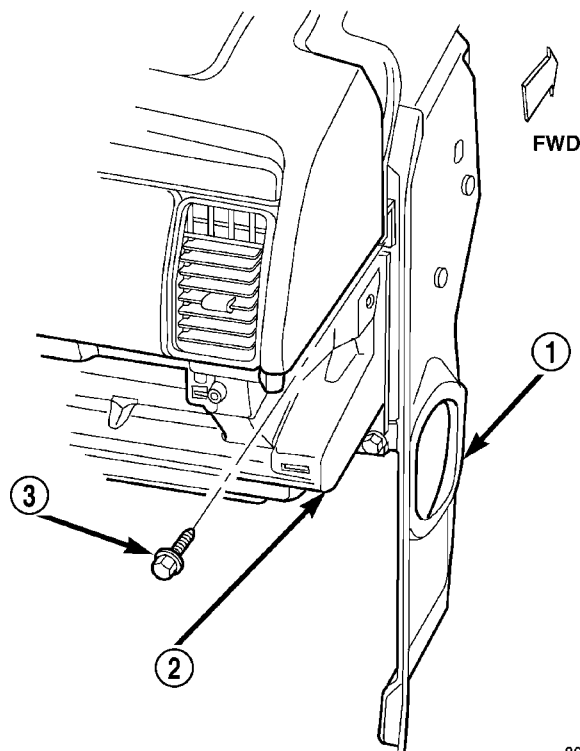
(39) Remove the two screws that secure the instrument panel to the passenger side cowl side inner panel (Fig. 37).

(40) Depress the tab on the passenger side and with the aid of an assistant, lift the instrument panel assembly upward off of the studs on the dash panel near the windshield fence line and pull the instrument panel rearward from the dash panel and the cowl side inner panels and remove it through the driver side front door of the vehicle. (Fig. 38)

## INSTALLATION

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

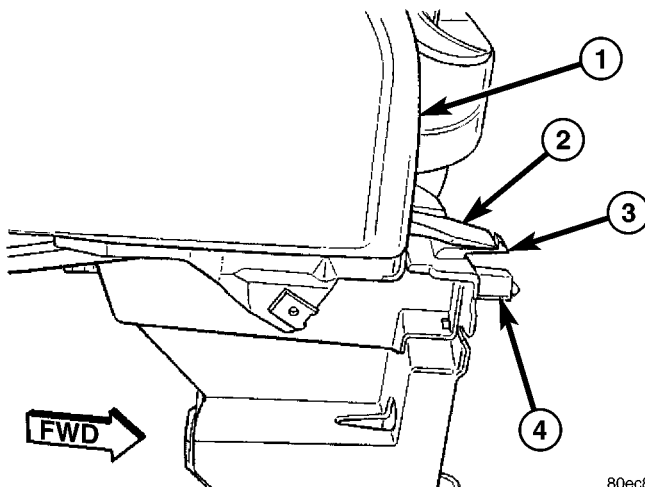
(1) Prior to installing the instrument panel into the vehicle, loosen the three nuts that secure the instrument panel intermediate bracket and the accel-



80b6b3b9

**Fig. 37 INSTRUMENT PANEL TO PASSENGER SIDE COWL SIDE INNER PANEL MOUNTING**

- 1 - COWL SIDE INNER PANEL
- 2 - INSTRUMENT PANEL STRUCTURAL DUCT
- 3 - SCREW (2)



80ec868c

**Fig. 38 PASSENGER SIDE RETAINER TAB**

- 1 - INSTRUMENT PANEL SIDE PANEL
- 2 - PRY BAR
- 3 - RETAINER TAB
- 4 - PASSANGER SIDE GUIDE/SUPPORT PIN

erator pedal assembly to the studs on the dash panel (Fig. 30).

(2) With the aid of an assistant, load the instrument panel assembly through the driver side front

## INSTRUMENT PANEL ASSEMBLY (Continued)

door of the vehicle and hang it on the studs on the dash panel near the windshield fence line (Fig. 23).

(3) Be certain that the molded plastic guide/pin formations on the instrument panel structural duct are inserted into and seated in the guide holes at each cowl side inner panel.

(4) Loosely install the two screws that secure each end of the instrument panel to the cowl side inner panels.

(5) Install the two screws that secure the passenger side instrument panel structural duct to the heater and air conditioner housing (Fig. 36), and tighten to 11 N·m (8 ft. lbs.).

(6) Install the one screw that secures the instrument panel steering column support bracket to the driver side end of the heater and air conditioner housing (Fig. 29), and tighten the to 11 N·m (8 ft. lbs.).

(7) Tighten the two screws that secure each end of the instrument panel to the cowl side inner panels (Fig. 33) and (Fig. 37), to 11 N·m (8 ft. lbs.).

(8) Install the one screw that secures the instrument panel steering column support bracket to the intermediate bracket on the driver side dash panel (Fig. 30), and tighten to 11 N·m (8 ft. lbs.).

(9) Tighten the three nuts that secure the instrument panel intermediate bracket and the accelerator pedal assembly to the studs on the dash panel to 11 N·m (8 ft. lbs.).

(10) Install the safety strap and tighten the nut.

(11) Install the four nuts that secure the instrument panel to the studs on the dash panel near the windshield fence line and tighten to 11 N·m (8 ft. lbs.).

(12) Install the nut that secures the instrument panel steering column support bracket to the stud on the driver side cowl plenum panel (Fig. 31), and tighten to 28 N·m (21 ft. lbs.).

(13) Install the instrument panel to center floor tunnel bracket onto the instrument panel and the floor panel transmission tunnel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/INSTRUMENT PANEL CENTER FLOOR TUNNEL BRACKET - INSTALLATION).

(14) Connect the two instrument panel wire harness connectors to the two heater and air conditioner housing connectors located near the blower motor on the passenger side end of the housing (Fig. 35).

(15) Connect the two halves of the radio antenna coaxial cable connector near the passenger cowl side inner panel under the end of the instrument panel.

(16) Connect the instrument panel wire harness connector to the lower cavity of the inline connector on the passenger side cowl side inner panel and tighten the connector screw (Fig. 34).

(17) Install the lower right center bezel onto the instrument panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/INSTRUMENT PANEL LOWER RIGHT CENTER BEZEL - INSTALLATION).

(18) Install the end cap onto the instrument panel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/INSTRUMENT PANEL END CAP - INSTALLATION).

(19) Install the glove box. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/GLOVE BOX - INSTALLATION).

(20) If equipped with the manual heating and air conditioning system, connect the vacuum harness connector located near the driver side of the floor panel transmission tunnel behind the driver side floor duct.

(21) Position the driver side floor duct to the heater and air conditioner housing near the driver side of the floor panel transmission tunnel (Fig. 29).

(22) Install the one screw that secures the driver side floor duct to the heater and air conditioner housing near the driver side of the floor panel transmission tunnel.

(23) Route the instrument panel wire harness to the floor panel transmission tunnel and engage the retainers that secure the harness to the mounting brackets on the tunnel (Fig. 28).

(24) Install the instrument panel wire harness ground eyelets to the studs on the floor panel transmission tunnel in front of and behind the airbag control module and secure the eyelets with nuts and tighten to 7 N·m (60 in. lbs.).

(25) Connect the instrument panel wire harness connectors to the following floor panel transmission tunnel components:

- the airbag control module (ACM) connector receptacle
- the park brake switch terminal
- the transmission shifter connector receptacle.

(26) Connect the left and right body wire harness connectors, the ignition off draw (IOD) wire harness connector and the fused B(+) wire harness connector to the connector receptacles of the junction block (JB) and tighten the connector screws (Fig. 27).

(27) Engage the lower steering column shaft with the steering shaft coupler and position the steering column to the mounting studs on the instrument panel steering column support bracket (Fig. 26).

(28) Install the four nuts that secure the steering column to the studs on the instrument panel steering column support bracket and tighten to 11 N·m (8 ft. lbs.).

(29) Install the bolt that secures the coupler to the lower steering column shaft and tighten to 49 N·m (36 ft. lbs.).

## INSTRUMENT PANEL ASSEMBLY (Continued)

(30) Turn the ignition switch to the On position, then install the shifter interlock cable connector into the ignition lock housing receptacle.

(31) Connect the instrument panel wire harness connectors to the following steering column components (Fig. 25):

- the two lower clockspring connector receptacles
- the left multi-function switch connector receptacle
- the right multi-function switch connector receptacle
- the two ignition switch connector receptacles
- the shifter interlock solenoid connector receptacle
- if the vehicle is so equipped, the sentry key immobilizer module (SKIM) connector receptacle.

(32) Position the lower tilting steering column shroud to the steering column multi-function switch mounting housing, then install and tighten the screw that secures the shroud to the housing (Fig. 24).

(33) Position the upper tilting steering column shroud over the steering column. Align the upper and lower shrouds with each other and snap the two halves together.

(34) Install the steering column bracket onto the instrument panel steering column support bracket. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/IN-

STRUMENT PANEL STEERING COLUMN BRACKET - INSTALLATION).

(35) Install the steering column opening cover. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/STEERING COLUMN OPENING COVER - INSTALLATION).

(36) Install the cluster bezel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/CLUSTER BEZEL - INSTALLATION).

(37) Install the fuse cover onto the JB. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/POWER DISTRIBUTION/FUSE COVER - INSTALLATION).

(38) Install the console onto the floor panel transmission tunnel. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/FLOOR CONSOLE - INSTALLATION).

(39) Install the trim panels onto the right and left inner cowl sides. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/COWL TRIM - INSTALLATION).

(40) Install the scuff plates onto the right and left front door sills. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/DOOR SILL SCUFF PLATE - INSTALLATION).

(41) Install the top cover. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/INSTRUMENT PANEL TOP COVER - INSTALLATION).

(42) Install the trim onto the right and left a-pillars. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/A-PILLAR TRIM - INSTALLATION).

(43) Connect the battery negative cable.



# INTERIOR

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>A-PILLAR TRIM/GRAB HANDLE</b>		INSTALLATION .....	88
REMOVAL .....	82	<b>FLOOR CONSOLE</b>	
INSTALLATION .....	82	REMOVAL .....	88
<b>ASSIST HANDLE</b>		INSTALLATION .....	88
REMOVAL .....	82	<b>HEADLINER</b>	
INSTALLATION .....	82	REMOVAL .....	90
<b>B-PILLAR LOWER TRIM</b>		INSTALLATION .....	90
REMOVAL .....	83	<b>LIFTGATE OPENING UPPER TRIM</b>	
INSTALLATION .....	83	REMOVAL .....	91
<b>B-PILLAR UPPER TRIM</b>		INSTALLATION .....	92
REMOVAL .....	83	<b>LIFTGATE SCUFF PLATE</b>	
INSTALLATION .....	83	REMOVAL .....	92
<b>CARPETS AND FLOOR MATS</b>		INSTALLATION .....	92
REMOVAL		<b>QUARTER TRIM PANEL</b>	
REMOVAL - FRONT CARPET .....	84	REMOVAL .....	92
REMOVAL - CARGO AREA CARPET .....	84	INSTALLATION .....	93
INSTALLATION		<b>REAR STORAGE BOX</b>	
INSTALLATION - FRONT CARPET .....	84	REMOVAL .....	93
INSTALLATION - CARGO AREA CARPET ...	84	INSTALLATION .....	93
<b>COWL TRIM</b>		<b>REAR VIEW MIRROR</b>	
REMOVAL .....	85	REMOVAL .....	94
INSTALLATION .....	85	INSTALLATION	
<b>C-PILLAR TRIM</b>		INSTALLATION .....	94
REMOVAL .....	85	INSTALLATION - REARVIEW MIRROR	
INSTALLATION .....	85	SUPPORT BRACKET .....	94
<b>DOOR SILL SCUFF PLATE</b>		<b>SUN VISOR</b>	
REMOVAL .....	87	REMOVAL .....	94
INSTALLATION .....	87	INSTALLATION .....	94
<b>DOOR SILL TRIM</b>		<b>COVER - FUEL FILLER</b>	
REMOVAL .....	87	REMOVAL .....	95
INSTALLATION .....	87	INSTALLATION .....	95
<b>D-PILLAR TRIM</b>			
REMOVAL .....	88		



## A-PILLAR TRIM/GRAB HANDLE

## REMOVAL

- (1) Open the trim plugs and remove the bolts. (Fig. 1)
- (2) Remove the a-pillar trim/grab handle from the a-pillar.

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Align pin to attach hole of a-pillar.
- (2) Seat trim onto clips fully.
- (3) Install bolts. (Fig. 1)
- (4) Close trim plugs.

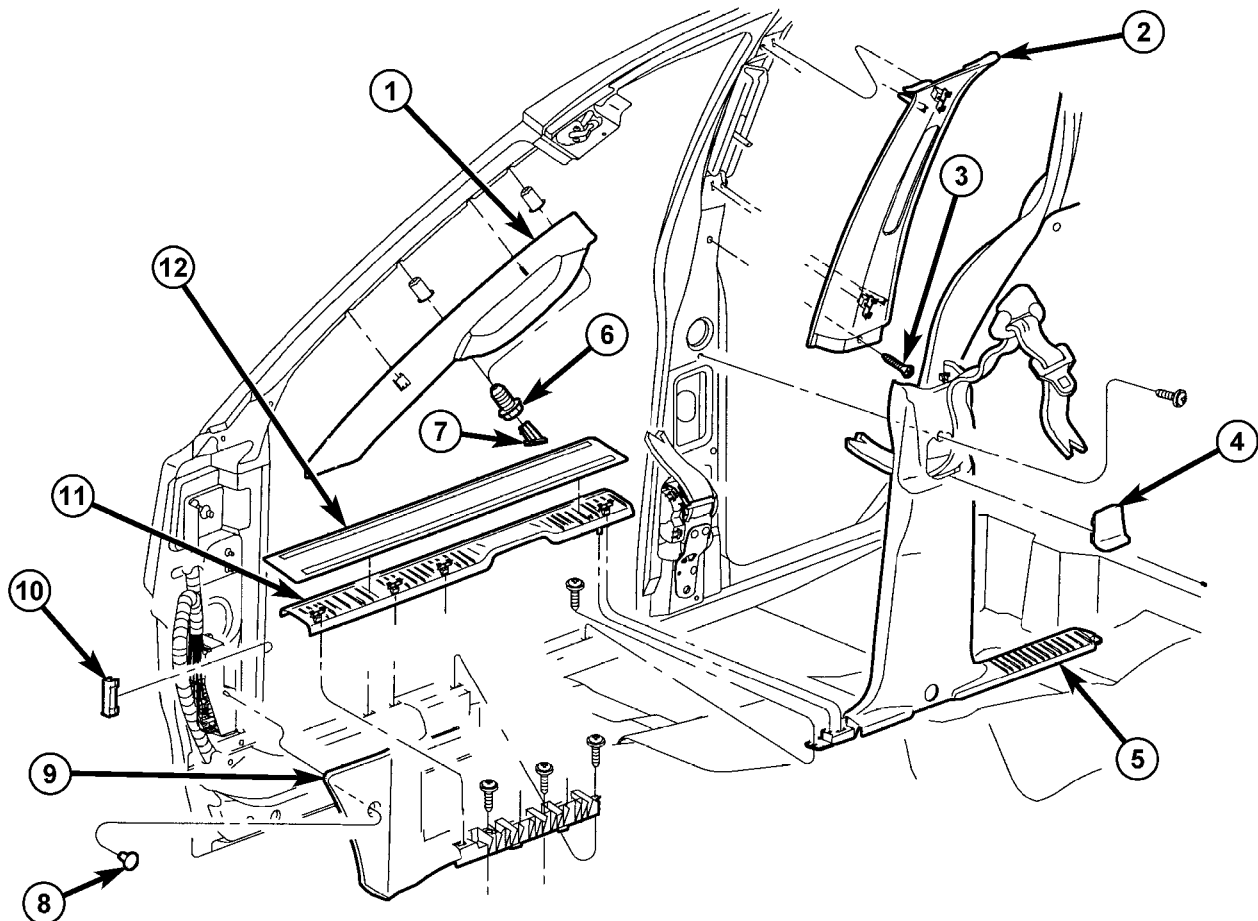
## ASSIST HANDLE

## REMOVAL

- (1) Remove the screws holding the assist handle to the roof panel.
- (2) Remove the assist handle from the roof panel.

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Align the assist handle with the screw holes in the roof panel.
- (2) Install the screws holding the assist handle to the roof panel.



810f7c2a

Fig. 1 INTERIOR TRIM

- 1 - A-PILLAR TRIM
- 2 - UPPER B-PILLAR TRIM
- 3 - SCREW
- 4 - ACCESS COVER
- 5 - LOWER B-PILLAR
- 6 - A-PILLAR BOLTS (2)

- 7 - TRIM PLUGS (2)
- 8 - PUSH PIN FASTENER
- 9 - COWL TRIM PANEL
- 10 - COWL TRIM CLIP
- 11 - DOOR SILL SCUFF PLATE
- 12 - DOOR SILL TRIM

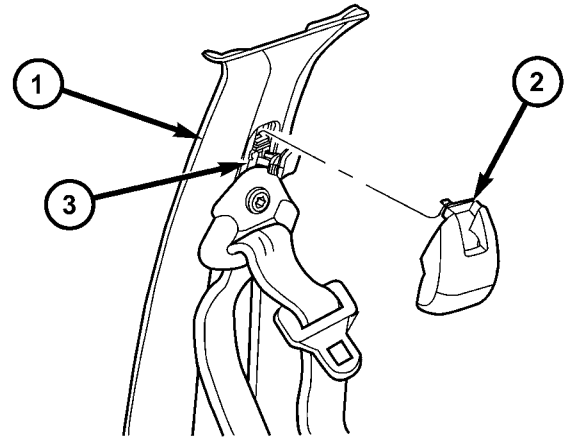
## B-PILLAR LOWER TRIM

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove front door sill trim (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/DOOR SILL TRIM - REMOVAL).
- (2) Remove the front seat belt as necessary. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS/SEAT BELT & RETRACTOR - REMOVAL)
- (3) Un-clip forward leg of quarter panel trim from b-pillar lower rear edge. Un-clip remaining clips along quarter panel trim leg for easier access to screws.
- (4) Remove screws attaching front and rear of b-pillar lower trim to floor. (Fig. 1)
- (5) Remove access cover and remove screw attaching b-pillar lower trim to b-pillar.
- (6) Grasp b-pillar lower trim and pull outward to separate from b-pillar.
- (7) Route seat/shoulder belt through access hole in b-pillar lower trim.
- (8) Separate b-pillar lower trim from b-pillar.

### INSTALLATION

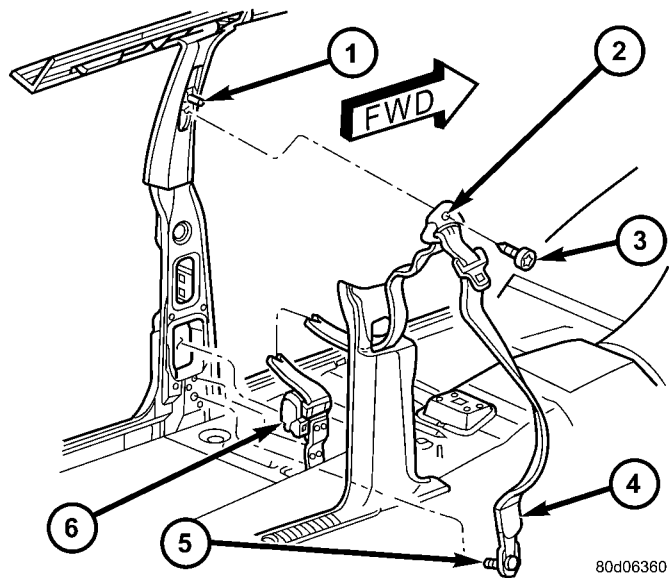
- (1) Position b-pillar lower trim panel at b-pillar. (Fig. 1)
- (2) Route seat/shoulder belt through access hole in b-pillar lower trim.
- (3) Press b-pillar lower trim onto b-pillar.
- (4) Install upper screw attaching b-pillar lower trim to b-pillar.
- (5) Install access cover.
- (6) Install screw attaching front and rear of b-pillar lower trim to floor.
- (7) Re-clip quarter trim panel leg to floor.
- (8) Install front seat shoulder belt. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS/SEAT BELT & RETRACTOR - INSTALLATION)
- (9) Install front door sill trim (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/DOOR SILL TRIM - INSTALLATION).



80d06382

**Fig. 2 Turning Loop Cover Remove/Install**

- 1 - PILLAR
- 2 - TRIM COVER
- 3 - ADJUSTER



80d06380

**Fig. 3 Front Seat Belt & Retractor Remove/Install**

- 1 - ADJUSTER
- 2 - TURNING LOOP
- 3 - SCREW
- 4 - LOWER ANCHOR
- 5 - SCREW
- 6 - RETRACTOR

## B-PILLAR UPPER TRIM

### REMOVAL

- (1) Using a trim stick or another suitable wide flat-bladed tool, gently pry the top of the turning loop trim cover to unsnap it from the height adjuster and access the screw that secures the front seat belt turning loop to the adjuster on the upper b-pillar. (Fig. 2)
- (2) Remove the screw that secures the seat belt turning loop to the height adjuster on the upper b-pillar. (Fig. 3)
- (3) Remove the seat belt turning loop from the height adjuster.
- (4) Remove the screw attaching lower b-pillar trim. (Fig. 1)

- (5) Pull lower b-pillar trim out far enough to remove upper trim panel.

- (6) Grasp upper b-pillar trim at lower edge and pull outward then down to detach from b-pillar.

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Position b-pillar trim panel on b-pillar. (Fig. 1)
- (2) Install screw attaching lower b-pillar trim panel.

## B-PILLAR UPPER TRIM (Continued)

(3) Position the seat belt turning loop onto the height adjuster on the upper B-pillar.

(4) Install screw that secures the seat belt turning loop to the height adjuster and tighten to 37 N·m (27 ft. lbs.).

(5) Using hand pressure, press the top of the turning loop trim cover to snap it onto the height adjuster and cover the screw that secures the front seat belt turning loop to the adjuster on the upper B-pillar. (Fig. 3)

## CARPETS AND FLOOR MATS

## REMOVAL

## REMOVAL - FRONT CARPET

(1) Remove door sill trim (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/DOOR SILL TRIM - REMOVAL).

(2) Remove the B-pillar lower trim, refer to (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/B-PILLAR LOWER TRIM - REMOVAL).

(3) Remove front seats (Refer to 23 - BODY/SEATS/SEAT - REMOVAL).

(4) Remove the rear seats lower cushions (Refer to 23 - BODY/SEATS/SEAT CUSHION - REMOVAL).

(5) Remove center floor console (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/FLOOR CONSOLE - REMOVAL).

(6) Disconnect air ducts from instrument panel to carpet at tunnel near instrument panel (both sides).

(7) Remove any other interfering trim or molding.

(8) Lift carpet and mat from floor panel.

## REMOVAL - CARGO AREA CARPET

(1) Lift tailgate.

(2) Fold rear seat cushions forward.

(3) Remove rear seat backs (Refer to 23 - BODY/SEATS/REAR SEAT BACK - REMOVAL).

(4) Remove rear shoulder belts (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS/REAR SEAT BELT & RETRACTOR - REMOVAL).

(5) Remove retractable security cargo cover assembly.

(6) Remove spare tire cover.

(7) Remove rear cargo tie down footman loops. The side mounted footman loops are retained by screws. The floor footman loops are riveted (Fig. 4).

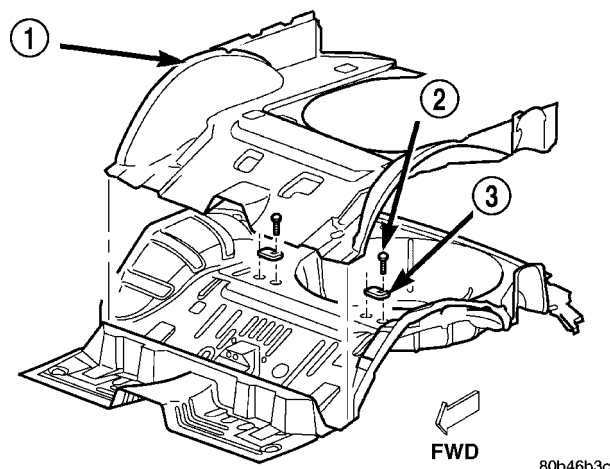
(8) Remove quarter trim. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/QUARTER TRIM PANEL - REMOVAL)

(9) Remove CD changer, if equipped (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/AUDIO/CD CHANGER - REMOVAL).

(10) Remove jack tools and jack.

(11) Remove Infinity amp, if equipped (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/AUDIO/AMPLIFIER - REMOVAL).

(12) Remove carpet.



**Fig. 4 CARGO AREA CARPET**

- 1 - CARGO AREA CARPET
- 2 - RIVET
- 3 - CARGO TIE-DOWN LOOP

## INSTALLATION

## INSTALLATION - FRONT CARPET

(1) Carefully lay the carpet and mat on the floor panel. Align the carpet to allow installation of the components fastened to the floor panel.

(2) Connect instrument panel air ducts to carpet at each side of tunnel near instrument panel.

(3) Install the center console (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/FLOOR CONSOLE - INSTALLATION).

(4) Install the front seats (Refer to 23 - BODY/SEATS/SEAT - INSTALLATION).

(5) Install the rear seat cushions (Refer to 23 - BODY/SEATS/SEAT CUSHION - INSTALLATION).

(6) Install the lower B pillar trim (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/B-PILLAR LOWER TRIM - INSTALLATION).

(7) Install the door sill trim (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/DOOR SILL TRIM - INSTALLATION).

(8) Install any other moldings or trim panels removed.

## INSTALLATION - CARGO AREA CARPET

(1) Thoroughly clean the area with Mopar Super Kleen®, or equivalent.

(2) Install carpet

(3) Install quarter trim. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/QUARTER TRIM PANEL - INSTALLATION)

(4) Install CD changer, if equipped (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/AUDIO/CD CHANGER - INSTALLATION).

(5) Install footman loops (Fig. 4).

(6) Install rear shoulder belts (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/RESTRAINTS/REAR SEAT BELT & RETRACTOR - INSTALLATION).

## CARPETS AND FLOOR MATS (Continued)

(7) Install rear seat backs (Refer to 23 - BODY/SEATS/REAR SEAT BACK - INSTALLATION).

(8) Install Infinity amp, if equipped (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/AUDIO/AMPLIFIER - INSTALLATION).

(9) Install jack tools and jack.

(10) Install spare tire cover.

(11) Install retractable security cover.

## COWL TRIM

## REMOVAL

(1) Remove front door sill trim (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/DOOR SILL TRIM - REMOVAL).

(2) Remove screws attaching cowl trim to floor.

(3) Remove plastic nut.

(4) Grasp cowl trim and pull outward to separate from clip.

(5) Separate cowl trim from vehicle.

## INSTALLATION

(1) Position cowl trim and press into place.

(2) Install screws attaching cowl trim to floor.

(3) Install plastic nut.

(4) Install front door sill trim (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/DOOR SILL TRIM - INSTALLATION).

## C-PILLAR TRIM

## REMOVAL

(1) Fold the rear seat cushion forward against the back of the front bucket seat.

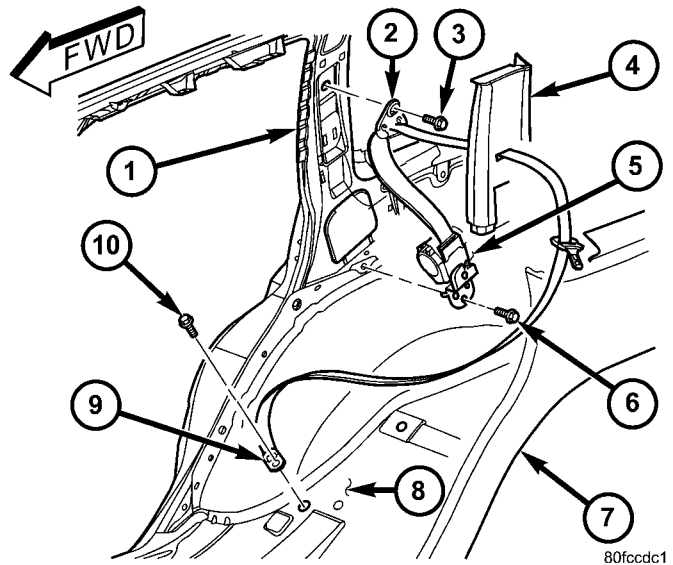
(2) Remove the screw that secures the rear outboard seat belt lower anchor to the rear floor panel. (Fig. 5)

(3) Un-clip forward leg of quarter panel trim and position aside as necessary. (Fig. 6)

(4) Grasp upper c-pillar trim at lower edge and pull outward then down to detach from c-pillar.

(5) Route rear shoulder belt through access hole.

(6) Separate c-pillar upper trim from vehicle.



**Fig. 5 REAR OUTBOARD SEAT BELT & RETRACTOR REMOVE/INSTALL**

- 1 - C-PILLAR
- 2 - TURNING LOOP
- 3 - SCREW
- 4 - UPPER C-PILLAR TRIM
- 5 - RETRACTOR
- 6 - SCREW
- 7 - QUARTER TRIM PANEL
- 8 - REAR FLOOR PANEL
- 9 - LOWER ANCHOR
- 10 - SCREW

## INSTALLATION

(1) Position c-pillar upper trim at c-pillar. (Fig. 6)

(2) Route rear shoulder belt through access hole.

(3) Press upper edge of c-pillar upper trim onto c-pillar and slide up into place onto the upper hook fasteners.

(4) Seat the lower edge clip fully.

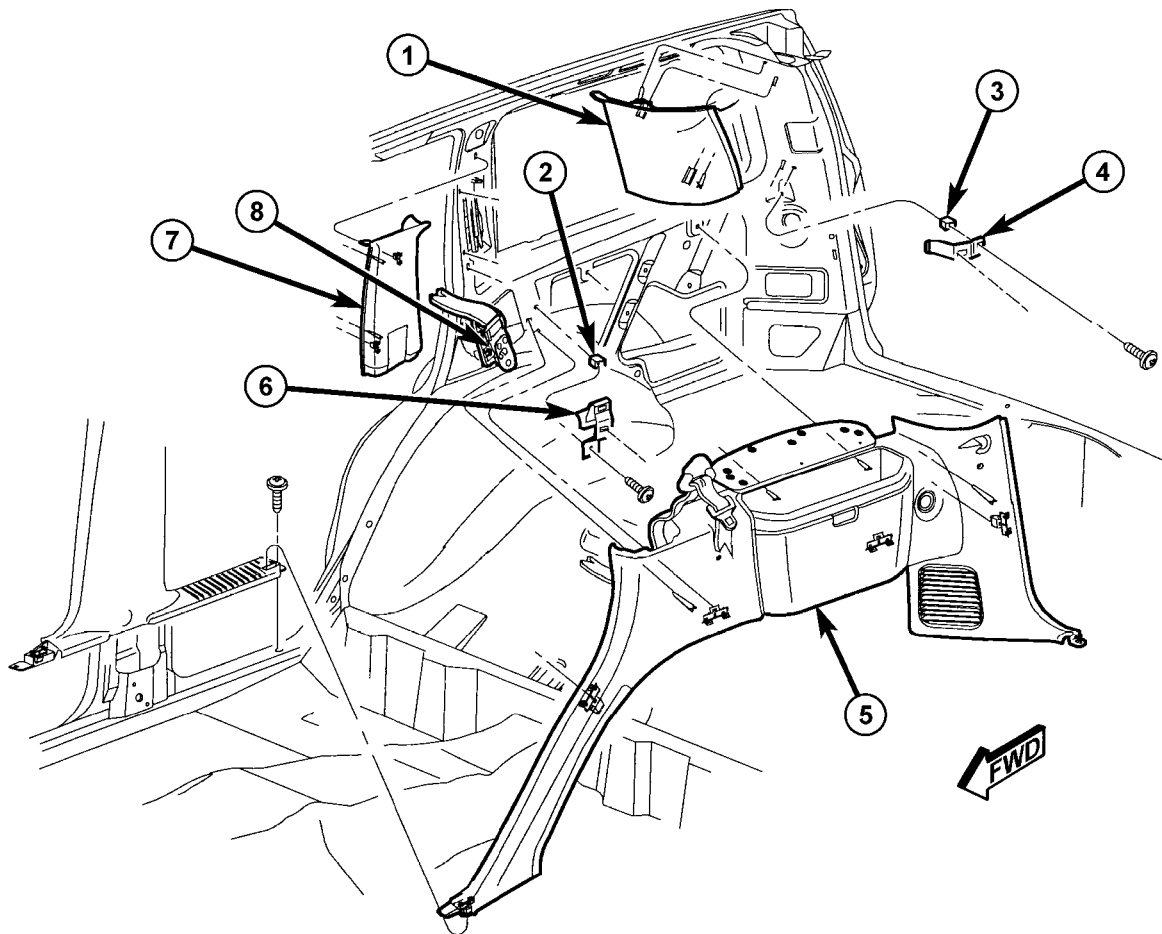
(5) Press quarter panel trim into place as necessary.

(6) Ensure front edge of trim is covered by weatherstrip.

(7) Position the rear outboard seat belt lower anchor to the rear floor panel. (Fig. 5)

(8) Install screw that secures the rear outboard seat belt lower anchor to the rear floor panel and tighten to 43 N·m (32 ft. lbs.).

## C-PILLAR TRIM (Continued)



810f7f4a

**Fig. 6 RIGHT SIDE TRIM PANEL**

- 1 - UPPER D-PILLAR TRIM
- 2 - SNAP-IN NUT
- 3 - SNAP IN NUT
- 4 - BRACKET

- 5 - QUARTER TRIM PANEL ASSEMBLY
- 6 - BRACKET
- 7 - UPPER C-PILLAR TRIM
- 8 - SEAT BELT RETRACTOR

## DOOR SILL SCUFF PLATE

## REMOVAL

- (1) Using a trim stick C-4755 or equivalent, carefully pry up the scuff plate from the door sill. (Fig. 7)
- (2) Remove the scuff plate.

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Install the scuff plate on the door sill (Fig. 7).
- (2) Press the molded in snap retainers into the door sill.

## DOOR SILL TRIM

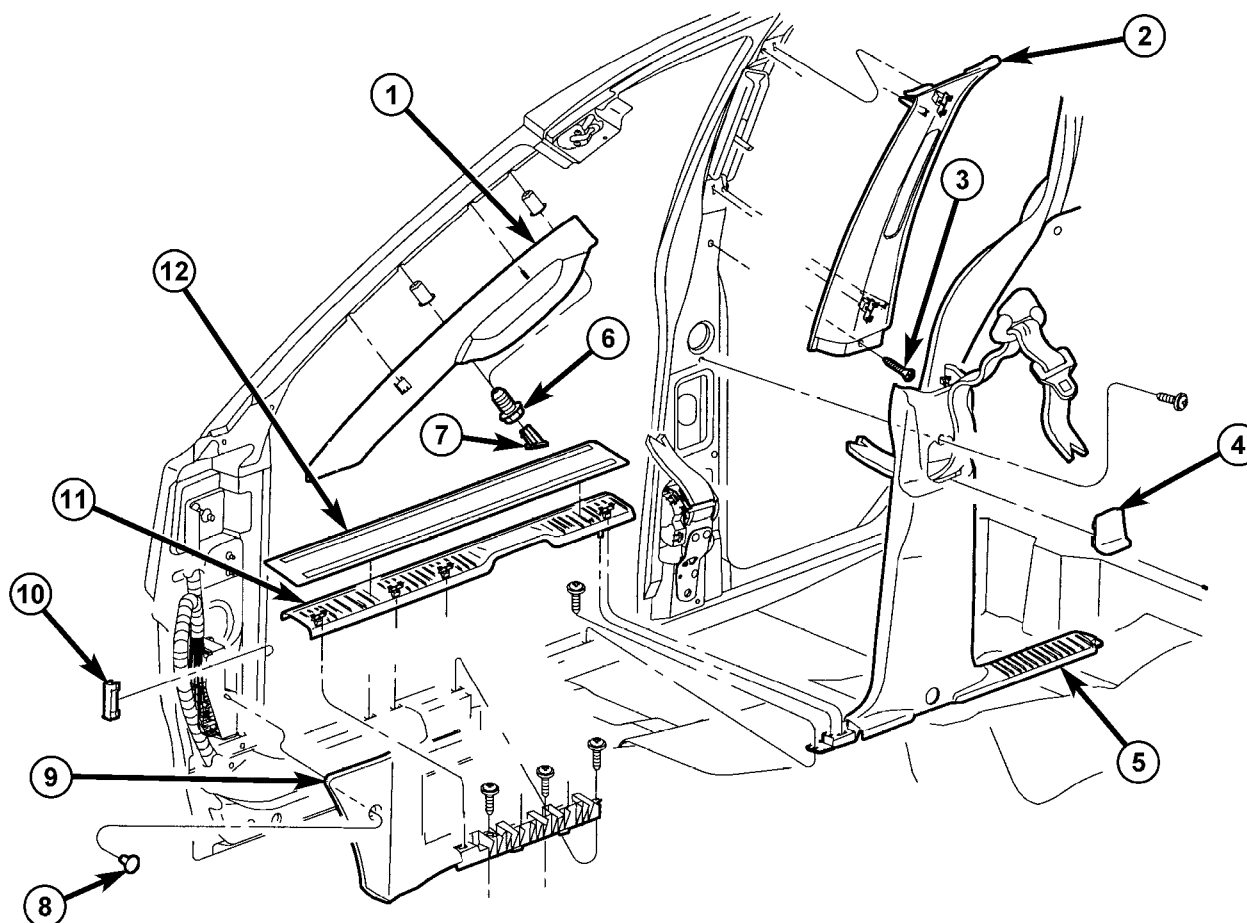
## REMOVAL

The sill trim molding is held in place with molded in snap retainers (Fig. 7).

- (1) Using a trim stick C-4755 or equivalent, carefully pry up one corner of the sill trim.
- (2) Grasp the edge of the trim and pull up gently to release the snap retainers.

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Position the sill molding on the door sill.
- (2) Press the snap retainers into place.



810f7c2a

Fig. 7 INTERIOR TRIM

- 1 - A-PILLAR TRIM
- 2 - UPPER B-PILLAR TRIM
- 3 - SCREW
- 4 - ACCESS COVER
- 5 - LOWER B-PILLAR
- 6 - A-PILLAR BOLTS (2)

- 7 - TRIM PLUGS (2)
- 8 - PUSH PIN FASTENER
- 9 - COWL TRIM PANEL
- 10 - COWL TRIM CLIP
- 11 - DOOR SILL SCUFF PLATE
- 12 - DOOR SILL TRIM

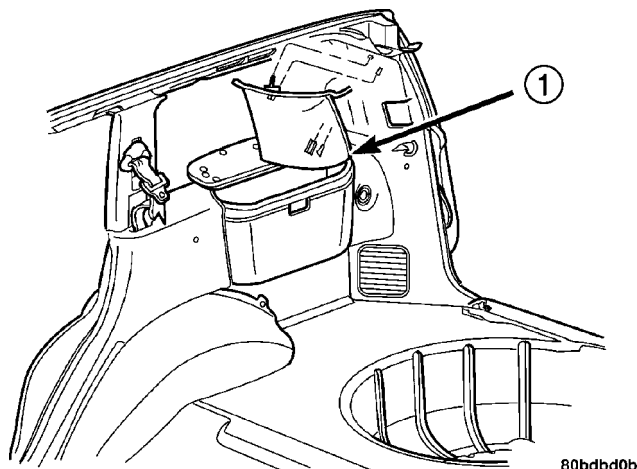


## D-PILLAR TRIM

### REMOVAL

The d-pillar trim is attached to the d-pillar with spring clips (Fig. 8).

- (1) Remove liftgate opening upper trim panel (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/LIFTGATE OPENING UPPER TRIM - REMOVAL).
- (2) Grasp d-pillar trim and pull outward from d-pillar.
- (3) Separate d-pillar trim from d-pillar.



**Fig. 8 D-PILLAR UPPER TRIM**

1 - D-PILLAR UPPER TRIM

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Position d-pillar trim panel at d-pillar and press into place.
- (2) Install upper liftgate opening trim panel (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/LIFTGATE OPENING UPPER TRIM - INSTALLATION).

## FLOOR CONSOLE

### REMOVAL

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY OPERATION REQUIRING THE KEY TO BE TURNED "ON", WHILE WORKING IN THE CONSOLE AREA. E.G. CONSOLE, CARPET, OR SEAT REMOVAL OR INSTALLATION; SHIFTER LINKAGE ADJUSTMENT OR REPLACEMENT; PARKING BRAKE CABLE REPLACEMENT OR ADJUSTMENT. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES**

**FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

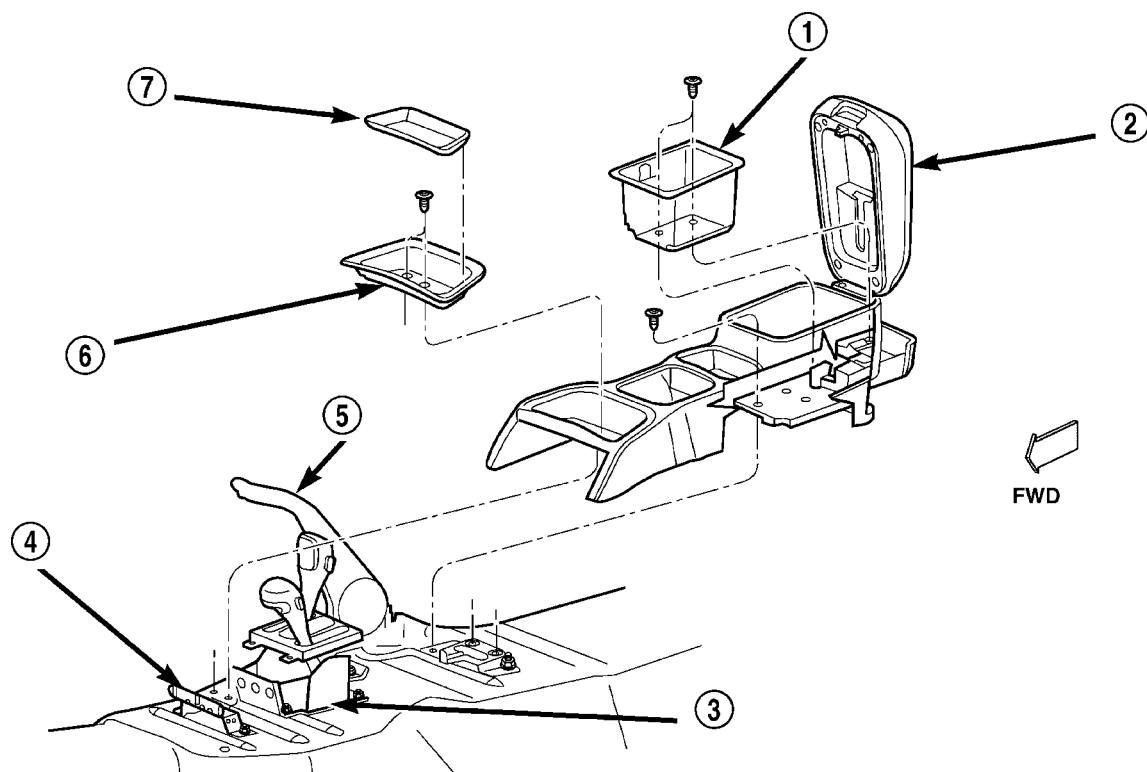
- (1) Set park brake.
- (2) Place transmission shift lever and transfer case lever in full rearward position.
- (3) Remove mat from front bin and remove screws attaching front of console to floor (Fig. 9).
- (4) Remove screws attaching rear bin to console.
- (5) Remove rear bin.
- (6) Pull rear passenger cupholder outward to access screws.
- (7) Remove screws attaching rear of console to floor.
- (8) Lift the console upward and rearward.
- (9) Remove console from vehicle.

### INSTALLATION

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY OPERATION REQUIRING THE KEY TO BE TURNED "ON", WHILE WORKING IN THE CONSOLE AREA. E.G. CONSOLE, CARPET, OR SEAT REMOVAL OR INSTALLATION; SHIFTER LINKAGE ADJUSTMENT OR REPLACEMENT; PARKING BRAKE CABLE REPLACEMENT OR ADJUSTMENT. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

- (1) Position console in vehicle. Ensure rear passenger HEVAC duct is engaged.
- (2) Install screws attaching rear of console to floor.
- (3) Position rear bin in console.
- (4) Install screws attaching rear bin to console.
- (5) Install screws attaching front of console to floor and place front bin mat in front bin.
- (6) Return transmission shift lever and transfer case lever to original position.
- (7) Release park brake.

## FLOOR CONSOLE (Continued)



80b46cd1

**Fig. 9 FLOOR CONSOLE**

- 1 - REAR BIN
- 2 - CONSOLE LID
- 3 - SHIFTER CONSOLE
- 4 - BRACKET

- 5 - PARKING BRAKE
- 6 - FRONT PIN
- 7 - MAT

## HEADLINER

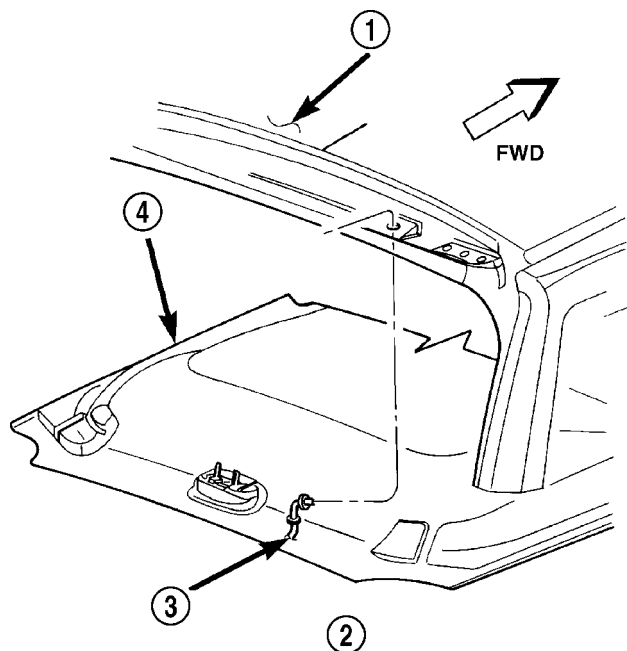
### REMOVAL

**CAUTION:** The headliner is a one-piece, molded component. It has limited flexibility and must not be bent. Damage may possibly result.

- (1) Record radio presets and disconnect negative battery cable.
- (2) Remove a-pillar trim moldings (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/A-PILLAR TRIM - REMOVAL).
- (3) Remove b-pillar upper trim moldings (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/B-PILLAR UPPER TRIM - REMOVAL).
- (4) Remove c-pillar trim moldings (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/C-PILLAR TRIM - REMOVAL).
- (5) Remove d-pillar trim molding (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/D-PILLAR TRIM - REMOVAL).
- (6) Remove the sun visors (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/SUN VISOR - REMOVAL).
- (7) Disconnect the vanity lamp electrical connector.
- (8) Remove assist handles from roof rails (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/ASSIST HANDLE - REMOVAL).
- (9) Remove dome lamp and overhead console, if equipped.
- (10) Remove rear cargo/dome lamp.
- (11) Roll sunroof welt under headliner edge so headliner can be removed.
- (12) Disengage rear washer hose from liftgate (Fig. 10).
- (13) Disengage the wire harness connectors at rear of headliner.
- (14) Disconnect the rear washer hose at the left a-pillar (Fig. 11).
- (15) Disengage the wire harness for the sunroof, if equipped.
- (16) Fold down the rear seats, move the front seats full forward, and lower the front seat backs.
- (17) Partially lower the headliner and disengage the sunroof drain hoses, if equipped (Fig. 12).
- (18) With the aid of an assistant, remove the headliner through the liftgate opening.

### INSTALLATION

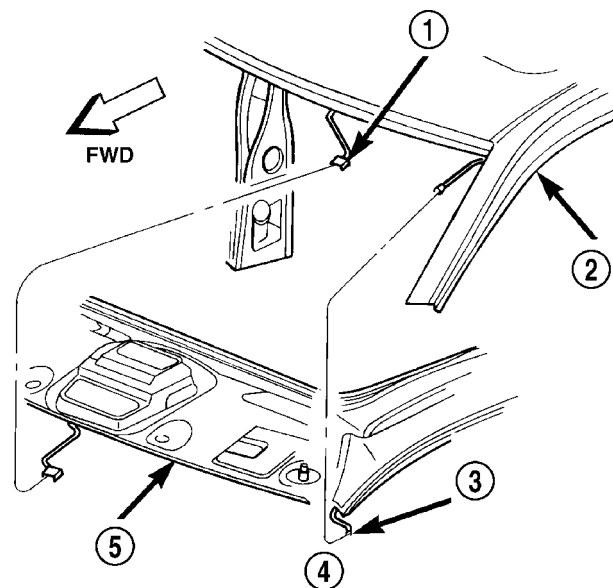
- (1) With the aid of an assistant, position the headliner in the vehicle.
- (2) Connect the sunroof drain hoses, if equipped.
- (3) Connect the sunroof harness, the rear wire harnesses, and the washer hose at the a-pillar and at the liftgate.
- (4) Roll sunroof weld edge back over headliner edge.



80b9a4cf

**Fig. 10 LIFTGATE WASHER HOSE ROUTING AT REAR OF HEADLINER**

- 1 - ROOF
- 2 - REAR WASHER HOSE ROUTING
- 3 - REAR WASHER HOSE
- 4 - HEADLINER

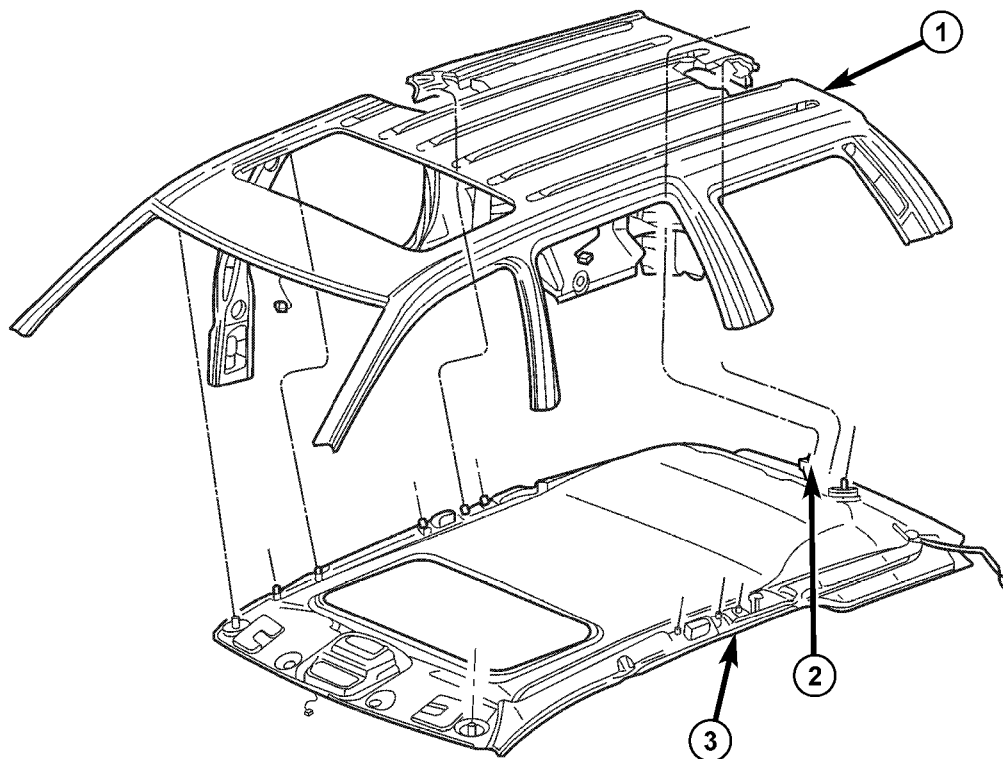


80b9a4d0

**Fig. 11 REAR LIFTGATE WASHER HOSE ROUTING AT A PILLAR**

- 1 - OVERHEAD CONSOLE WIRE HARNESS
- 2 - ROOF
- 3 - REAR WASHER HOSE
- 4 - REAR WASHER HOSE ROUTING
- 5 - HEADLINER

## HEADLINER (Continued)



808c8017

**Fig. 12 HEADLINER**

- 1 - SUNROOF PINCH WELT  
2 - ROOF  
3 - REAR WASHER HOSE

- 4 - HEADLINER  
5 - SUNROOF

(5) Install the roof rail assist handles (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/ASSIST HANDLE - INSTALLATION).

(6) Install the sun visors (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/SUN VISOR - INSTALLATION).

(7) Install the overhead console, if equipped.

(8) Install the rear cargo/dome lamp.

(9) Install the d-pillar trim (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/D-PILLAR TRIM - INSTALLATION).

(10) Install the c-pillar trim (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/C-PILLAR TRIM - INSTALLATION).

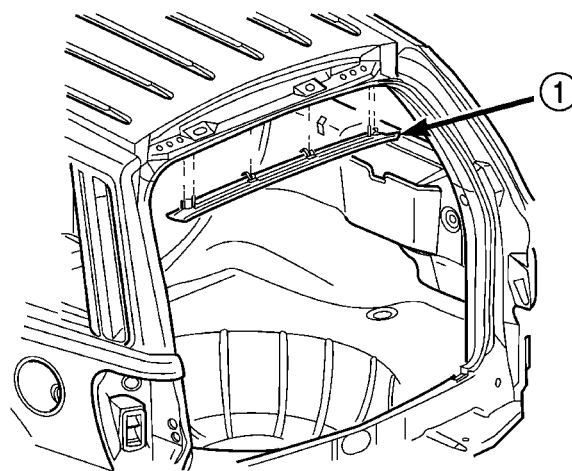
(11) Install the upper b-pillar trim (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/B-PILLAR UPPER TRIM - INSTALLATION).

(12) Install the a-pillar trim (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/A-PILLAR TRIM - INSTALLATION).

(13) Connect the negative battery cable.

(1) Grasp the rear of the trim piece and pull down and back to disengage clips (Fig. 13).

(2) Slide the trim piece to the rear to disengage headliner locating hooks.



80bdbce8

**Fig. 13 UPPER LIFTGATE OPENING TRIM**

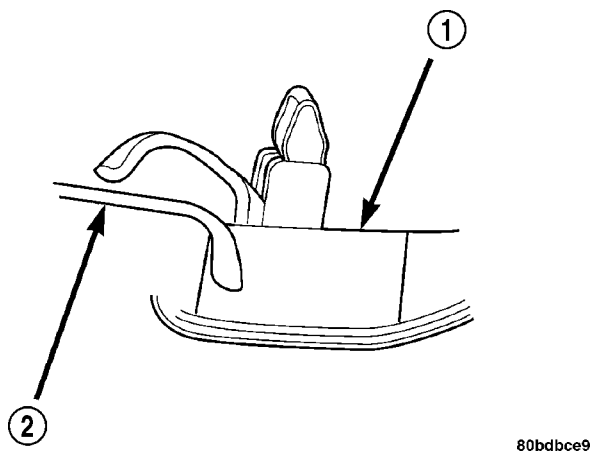
- 1 - UPPER LIFTGATE OPENING TRIM

## LIFTGATE OPENING UPPER TRIM

### REMOVAL

The upper liftgate opening trim is held on with spring clips.

## LIFTGATE OPENING UPPER TRIM (Continued)

**Fig. 14 HEADLINER LOCATING HOOKS**

- 1 - UPPER LIFTGATE OPENING TRIM  
2 - HEADLINER

**INSTALLATION**

The liftgate upper opening trim piece is equipped with headliner locating hooks (Fig. 14).

(1) Align the locating hooks with the slots in the headliner.

(2) Engage the spring clips and press the liftgate upper opening trim panel into place.

**LIFTGATE SCUFF PLATE****REMOVAL**

(1) Remove screws at outboard end of lower liftgate trim panel.

(2) Open the spare tire cover and remove the screws near the center of the lower liftgate trim panel (Fig. 15).

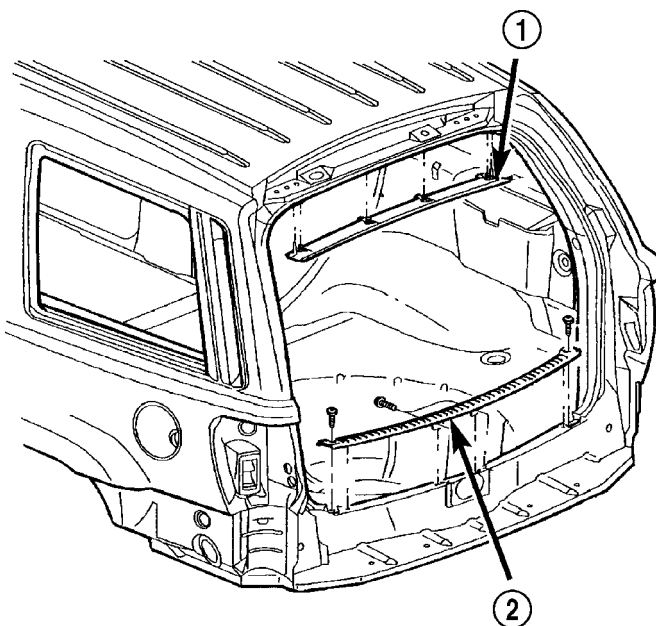
(3) Remove the lower liftgate trim panel.

**INSTALLATION**

(1) Align the screw holes and locators to the holes in the liftgate opening.

(2) Install the screws in the liftgate opening trim panel.

(3) Install the spare tire cover.

**Fig. 15 LIFTGATE OPENING TRIM PANEL**

- 1 - UPPER LIFTGATE OPENING TRIM PANEL  
2 - LOWER LIFTGATE OPENING TRIM PANEL

**QUARTER TRIM PANEL****REMOVAL**

(1) Move rear seat to cargo position.

(2) If equipped, remove sunshade cover.

(3) Open liftgate.

(4) Remove upper and lower liftgate opening trim panels (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/LIFTGATE OPENING UPPER TRIM - REMOVAL).

(5) Remove d-pillar upper trim (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/D-PILLAR TRIM - REMOVAL).

(6) Remove storage bin (right side only) (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/REAR STORAGE BOX - REMOVAL).

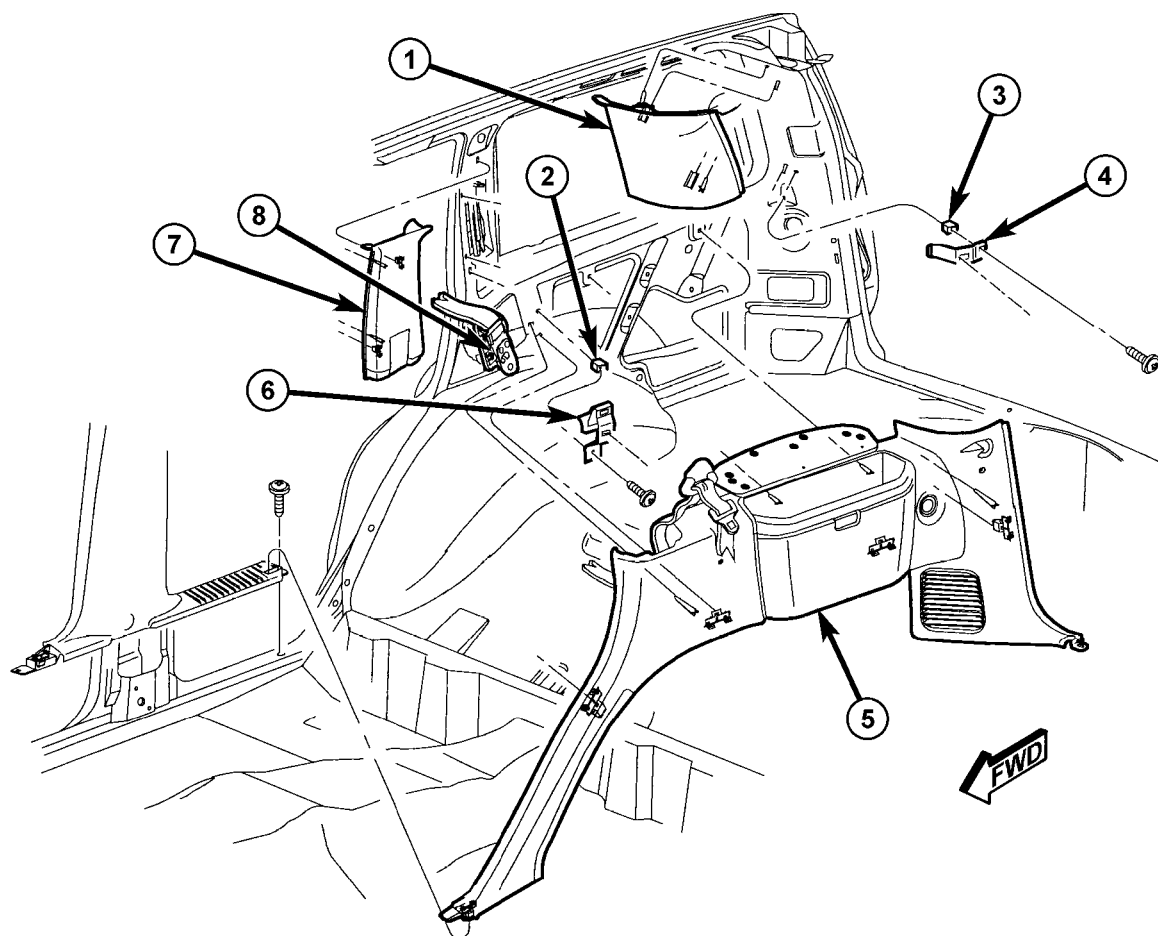
(7) Remove mounting screws. (Fig. 16)

(8) Pull quarter trim panel forward and disengage connectors for CD player and power outlet, if equipped.

(9) Pull quarter trim panel extension in the rear door opening upward.

(10) Remove rear quarter trim panel.

## QUARTER TRIM PANEL (Continued)



810f7f4a

**Fig. 16 RIGHT SIDE TRIM PANEL**

- 1 - UPPER D-PILLAR TRIM
- 2 - SNAP-IN NUT
- 3 - SNAP IN NUT
- 4 - BRACKET

- 5 - QUARTER TRIM PANEL ASSEMBLY
- 6 - BRACKET
- 7 - UPPER C-PILLAR TRIM
- 8 - SEAT BELT RETRACTOR

**INSTALLATION**

(1) Position quarter trim panel, engage connectors for CD player and power outlet, if equipped, and align screw holes.

(2) Install quarter trim panel.

(3) Install storage bin (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/REAR STORAGE BOX - INSTALLATION).

(4) Install d-pillar upper trim panel (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/D-PILLAR TRIM - INSTALLATION).

(5) Install upper and lower liftgate opening trim panels (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/LIFTGATE OPENING UPPER TRIM - INSTALLATION).

(6) If equipped, install sunshade cover.

(7) Install cargo loops.

(8) Move the rear seat to the upright position.

**REAR STORAGE BOX****REMOVAL**

(1) Open the storage bin lid and remove screws on each side of the lid hinge.

(2) Pull upward sharply on the bottom of the bin to disengage hooks.

(3) Raise bin and move inboard to disengage the quarter trim panel.

**INSTALLATION**

(1) Position the bin hooks high in the slots on the quarter trim panel.

(2) Push downward until the bin snaps into place.

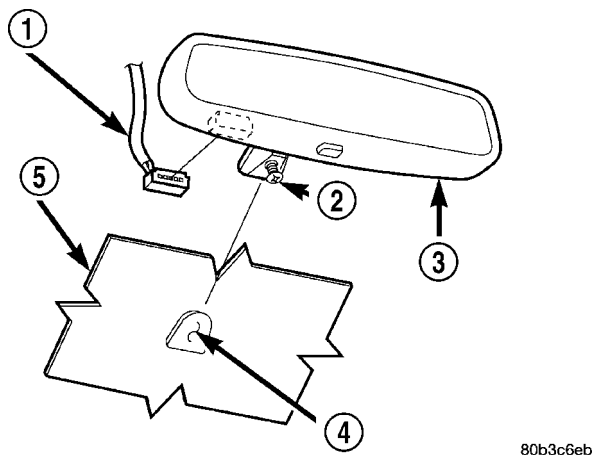
(3) Install the hinge screws.



## REAR VIEW MIRROR

### REMOVAL

- (1) If equipped, disconnect mirror harness connector.
- (2) Loosen the mirror base setscrew (Fig. 17).
- (3) Slide the mirror base upward and off the bracket.



80b3c6eb

**Fig. 17 REAR VIEW MIRROR**

- 1 - CONNECTOR
- 2 - SCREW
- 3 - REAR VIEW MIRROR
- 4 - SUPPORT BUTTON
- 5 - WINDSHIELD

### INSTALLATION

#### INSTALLATION

- (1) Position the mirror base at the bracket and slide it downward onto the support bracket (Fig. 17).
- (2) Tighten the setscrew 1 N·m (15 in. lbs.) torque.
- (3) If equipped, connect mirror harness connector.

#### INSTALLATION - REARVIEW MIRROR SUPPORT BRACKET

- (1) Mark the position for the mirror bracket on the outside of the windshield glass with a wax pencil.
- (2) Clean the bracket contact area on the glass. Use a mild powdered cleanser on a cloth saturated with isopropyl (rubbing) alcohol. Finally, clean the glass with a paper towel dampened with alcohol.
- (3) Sand the surface on the support bracket with fine grit-sandpaper. Wipe the bracket surface clean with a paper towel.
- (4) Apply accelerator to the surface on the bracket according to the following instructions:
  - (a) Crush the vial to saturate the felt applicator.
  - (b) Remove the paper sleeve.
  - (c) Apply accelerator to the contact surface on the bracket.
  - (d) Allow the accelerator to dry for five minutes.

- (e) Do not touch the bracket contact surface after the accelerator has been applied.

- (5) Apply adhesive accelerator to the bracket contact surface on the windshield glass. Allow the accelerator to dry for one minute. Do not touch the glass contact surface after the accelerator has been applied.

- (6) Install the bracket according to the following instructions:

- (a) Apply one drop of adhesive at the center of the bracket contact-surface on the windshield glass.
- (b) Apply an even coat of adhesive to the contact surface on the bracket.
- (c) Align the bracket with the marked position on the windshield glass.
- (d) Press and hold the bracket in place for at least one minute.

**NOTE:** Verify that the mirror support bracket is correctly aligned, because the adhesive will cure rapidly.

- (7) Allow the adhesive to cure for 8-10 minutes. Remove any excess adhesive with an alcohol-dampened cloth.

- (8) Allow the adhesive to cure for an additional 8-10 minutes before installing the mirror.

## SUN VISOR

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove screws attaching sunvisor arm support bracket to headliner and roof panel.
- (2) Disengage electrical connections for vanity mirror, if equipped.
- (3) Detach sunvisor from support bracket.
- (4) Remove sunvisor from vehicle.
- (5) Remove retaining screw and support bracket.

### INSTALLATION

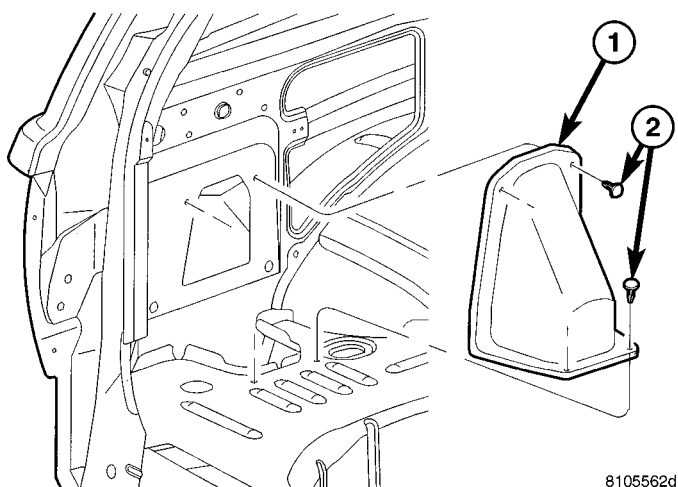
- (1) Install the retaining screw and support bracket.
- (2) Position the sunvisor in the vehicle.
- (3) Connect the electrical harness for the lighted vanity mirror, if equipped.
- (4) Attach the sunvisor to the support bracket.
- (5) Install the support bracket w/sunvisor onto the headliner and roof panel.

## COVER - FUEL FILLER

### REMOVAL

**NOTE:** In the event of a collision, the fuel filler cover is serviceable using the following procedure.

- (1) Remove the push pin fasteners. (Fig. 18)
- (2) Using a chisel or other suitable tool, remove the damaged cover.
- (3) Remove any remaining adhesive and clean mating surfaces.



**Fig. 18 FUEL FILLER COVER**

- 1 - FUEL FILLER COVER  
2 - PUSH PIN FASTENERS (4)

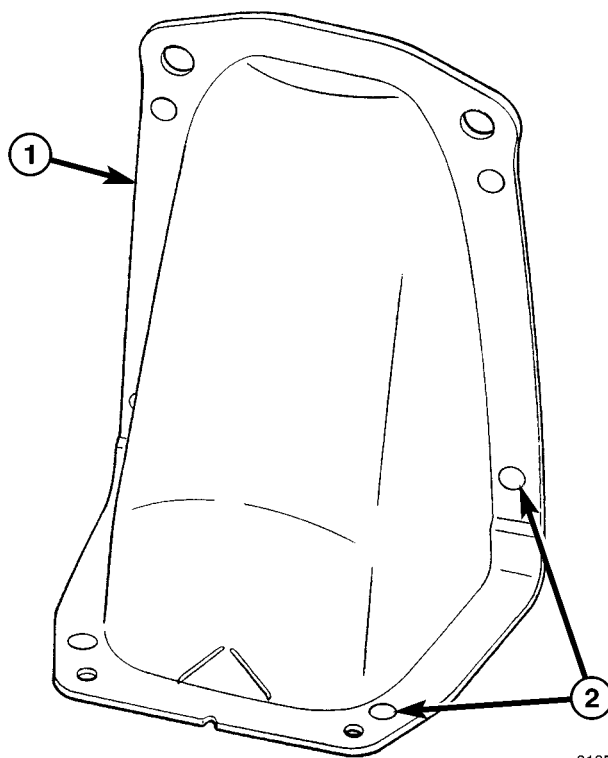
### INSTALLATION

**NOTE:** In the event of a collision, the fuel filler cover is serviceable using the following procedure.

- (1) Add a roap bead of butyl sealer to the sealing surface of the new cover.
- (2) Position the new cover and install the push pin fasteners.

**CAUTION:** Do not drill holes or install fasteners along the centerline of the cover. Do not use screws or other sharp fasteners during installation of the replacement cover.

- (3) Drill six 1/8 in holes in the locations indicated. (Fig. 19)
- (4) Install six 1/8 inch rivets that have a 1/2 inch reach into the six holes.



**Fig. 19 FUEL FILLER COVER HOLE LOCATIONS**

- 1 - FUEL FILLER COVER  
2 - HOLE DRILL LOCATIONS (6)

# PAINT

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>PAINT</b>		<b>PAINT TOUCH-UP</b>	
SPECIFICATIONS - PAINT CODES .....	96	DESCRIPTION .....	97
<b>PAINT CODE</b>		STANDARD PROCEDURE - PAINT TOUCH-UP ..	97
DESCRIPTION .....	96	<b>FINESSE SANDING/BUFFING &amp; POLISHING</b>	
<b>BASECOAT/CLEARCOAT FINISH</b>		DESCRIPTION .....	97
DESCRIPTION .....	97		

## PAINT

### SPECIFICATIONS - PAINT CODES

#### EXTERIOR COLORS

EXTERIOR COLOR	DAIMLERCHRYSLER CODE
Deep Lava Red Pearlcoat	ZMQ
Inferno Red Tinted Pearlcoat	WEL
Light Pewter Metallic Clearcoat	YFF
Onyx Green Pearlcoat	YJR
Steel Blue Pearlcoat	XBQ
Midnight Blue Pearlcoat	BB8
Bright Silver Metallic Clearcoat	WSB
Graphite Metallic Clearcoat	ZDR
Brilliant Black Crystal Pearlcoat	AXR
Stone White Clearcoat	SW1

#### INTERIOR COLORS

INTERIOR COLOR	DAIMLERCHRYSLER CODE
Dark Slate Gray	DV
Taupe	L5
Sandstone	T5
Dark Slate Gray/Light Slate Gray	DB

#### LAREDO FASCIA/CLADDING COLORS

COLOR	DAIMLERCHRYSLER CODE
Deep Gray	ZSP
Taupe	WLP

## PAINT CODE

### DESCRIPTION

Exterior vehicle body colors are identified on the Vehicle Safety Certification Label (Refer to VEHICLE DATA/VEHICLE INFORMATION/VEHICLE SAFETY CERTIFICATION LABEL - DESCRIPTION) or the Body Code Plate (Refer to VEHICLE DATA/VEHICLE INFORMATION/BODY CODE PLATE - DESCRIPTION). The first digit of the paint code listed on the vehicle indicates the sequence of application, i.e.: P = primary coat, Q = secondary coat. The color names provided in the Paint and Trim Code Description chart are the color names used on most repair product containers. (Refer to 23 - BODY/PAINT - SPECIFICATIONS)

## BASECOAT/CLEARCOAT FINISH

### DESCRIPTION

The original equipment finish is a multi step process that involves cleaning, applying electro deposition (E-coat), anti-chip primer, basecoat, and clearcoat steps.

On most vehicles a two-part paint application (basecoat/clearcoat) is used. Color paint that is applied to primer is called basecoat. The clearcoat protects the basecoat from ultraviolet light and provides a durable high-gloss finish.

**CAUTION: Do not use abrasive chemicals or compounds on painted surfaces. Damage to finish can result.**

**Do not use harsh alkaline based cleaning solvents on painted surfaces. Damage to finish or color can result.**

## PAINT TOUCH-UP

### DESCRIPTION

When a painted metal surface has been scratched or chipped, it should be touched-up as soon as possible to avoid corrosion. For best results, use MOPAR® Scratch Filler/Primer, Touch-Up Paints and Clear Top Coat. (Refer to VEHICLE DATA/VEHICLE INFORMATION/BODY CODE PLATE - DESCRIPTION) for Body Code Plate information.

**WARNING: USE AN OSHA APPROVED RESPIRATOR AND SAFETY GLASSES WHEN SPRAYING PAINT OR SOLVENTS IN A CONFINED AREA. PERSONAL INJURY CAN RESULT.**

### STANDARD PROCEDURE - PAINT TOUCH-UP

(1) Scrape loose paint and corrosion from inside scratch or chip.

(2) Clean affected area with MOPAR® Tar/Road Oil Remover or equivalent, and allow to dry.

(3) Fill the inside of the scratch or chip with a coat of filler/primer. Do not overlap primer onto good sur-

face finish. The applicator brush should be wet enough to puddle-fill the scratch or chip without running. Do not stroke brush applicator on body surface. Allow the filler/primer to dry hard.

(4) Cover the filler/primer with color touch-up paint. Do not overlap touch-up color onto the original color coat around the scratch or chip. Butt the new color to the original color, if possible. Do not stroke applicator brush on body surface. Allow touch-up paint to dry hard.

(5) On vehicles without clearcoat, the touch-up color can be lightly finesse sanded (1500 grit) and polished with rubbing compound.

(6) On vehicles with clearcoat, apply clear top coat to touch-up paint with the same technique as described in Step 4. Allow clear top coat to dry hard. If desired, Step 5 can be performed on clear top coat.

**WARNING: AVOID PROLONGED SKIN CONTACT WITH PETROLEUM OR ALCOHOL – BASED CLEANING SOLVENTS. PERSONAL INJURY CAN RESULT. AVOID PROLONGED SKIN CONTACT WITH PETROLEUM OR ALCOHOL – BASED CLEANING SOLVENTS. PERSONAL INJURY CAN RESULT.**

## FINESSE SANDING/BUFFING & POLISHING

### DESCRIPTION

**CAUTION: Do not remove more than .5 mils of clearcoat finish, if equipped. Basecoat paint must retain clearcoat for durability.**

**Use a Paint Thickness Gauge #PR-ETG-2X or equivalent to determine film thickness before and after the repair.**

Minor acid etching, orange peel, or smudging in clearcoat or single-stage finishes can be reduced with light finesse sanding, hand buffing, and polishing. **If the finish has been finesse sanded in the past, it cannot be repeated. Finesse sanding operation should be performed by a trained automotive paint technician.**

## SEATS

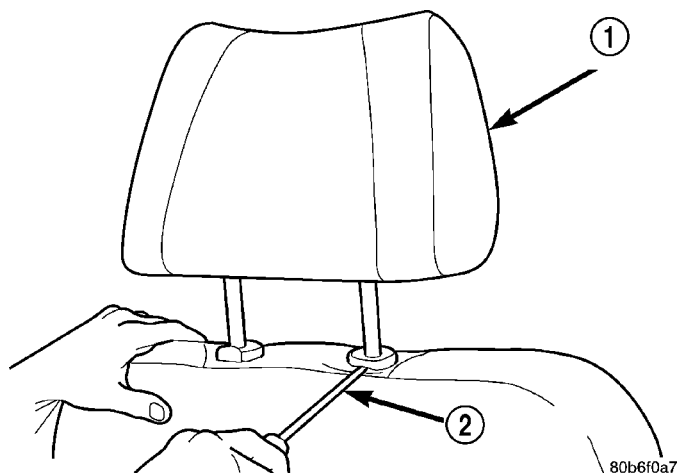
## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>FRONT HEADREST</b>		<b>REAR HEADREST RELEASE KNOB</b>	
REMOVAL .....	99	REMOVAL .....	104
INSTALLATION .....	99	INSTALLATION .....	104
<b>FRONT HEADREST SLEEVE</b>		<b>REAR HEADREST FOLDING MECHANISM</b>	
REMOVAL .....	99	REMOVAL .....	104
INSTALLATION .....	99	INSTALLATION .....	104
<b>FRONT SEAT</b>		<b>REAR HEADREST SLEEVE</b>	
REMOVAL .....	100	REMOVAL .....	104
INSTALLATION .....	100	INSTALLATION .....	104
<b>FRONT SEAT BACK</b>		<b>REAR SEAT BACK</b>	
REMOVAL .....	100	REMOVAL .....	105
INSTALLATION .....	100	INSTALLATION .....	105
<b>FRONT SEAT BACK COVER</b>		<b>REAR SEAT BACK COVER</b>	
REMOVAL .....	101	REMOVAL .....	105
INSTALLATION .....	101	INSTALLATION .....	105
<b>FRONT SEAT CUSHION/COVER</b>		<b>REAR SEAT CUSHION</b>	
REMOVAL .....	101	REMOVAL .....	106
INSTALLATION .....	101	INSTALLATION .....	106
<b>FRONT SEAT SIDE SHIELD</b>		<b>REAR SEAT CUSHION COVER</b>	
REMOVAL .....	102	REMOVAL .....	106
INSTALLATION .....	102	INSTALLATION .....	106
<b>SEAT TRACK &amp; RECLINER ASSEMBLY</b>		<b>REAR SEAT CUSHION RELEASE LATCH</b>	
REMOVAL .....	102	REMOVAL .....	106
INSTALLATION .....	102	INSTALLATION .....	106
<b>SEAT TRACK ADJUSTER</b>		<b>FOLDING REAR SEAT BACK LATCH HANDLE</b>	
REMOVAL .....	102	REMOVAL .....	107
INSTALLATION .....	103	INSTALLATION .....	107
<b>REAR HEADREST</b>		<b>FOLDING REAR SEAT BACK LATCH/HINGE</b>	
REMOVAL .....	103	REMOVAL .....	107
INSTALLATION .....	103	INSTALLATION .....	107

## FRONT HEADREST

### REMOVAL

- (1) Lift head restraint to full up position.
- (2) Using a small flat blade, depress tab on right side head restraint release button and using your hand, simultaneously press tab on left side head restraint release button (Fig. 1), and pull head restraint up to separate from seat back.



**Fig. 1 HEAD RESTRAINT**

- 1 - HEAD RESTRAINT  
2 - FLAT BLADE

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Position head restraint in seat back, press tab on left side head restraint release button and push down head restraint to secure.

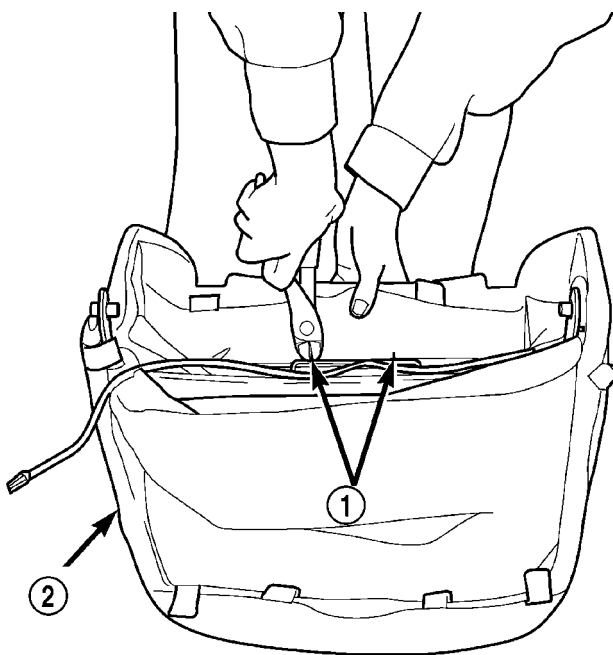
## FRONT HEADREST SLEEVE

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove head restraint (Refer to 23 - BODY/SEATS/FRONT HEADREST - REMOVAL).
- (2) Remove seat back cover (Refer to 23 - BODY/SEATS/FRONT SEAT BACK COVER - REMOVAL).
- (3) Remove hog rings attaching cushion pad to seat back frame (Fig. 2).
- (4) Remove cushion pad from seat back frame.
- (5) Rotate head restraint sleeve 1/4 turn counter-clockwise to release retaining tab.
- (6) Pull sleeve from seat back frame (Fig. 3).

### INSTALLATION

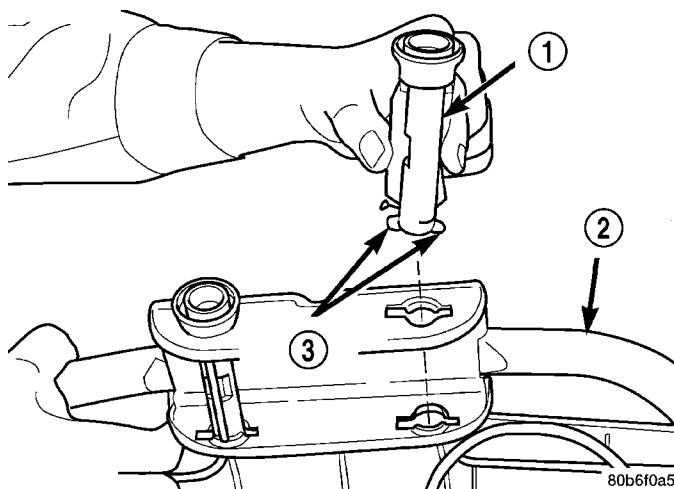
- (1) Position sleeve in seat back frame.
- (2) Rotate head restraint sleeve 1/4 turn clockwise to engage retaining tab.
- (3) Install cushion pad onto seat back frame.
- (4) Install hog rings attaching cushion pad to seat back frame.



80b6f0a4

**Fig. 2 CUSHION PAD**

- 1 - HOG RING  
2 - SEAT BACK CUSHION PAD



80b6f0a5

**Fig. 3 HEAD RESTRAINT SLEEVE**

- 1 - HEAD RESTRAINT SLEEVE  
2 - SEAT BACK FRAME  
3 - RETAINING TAB

- (5) Install seat back cover (Refer to 23 - BODY/SEATS/FRONT SEAT BACK COVER - INSTALLATION).

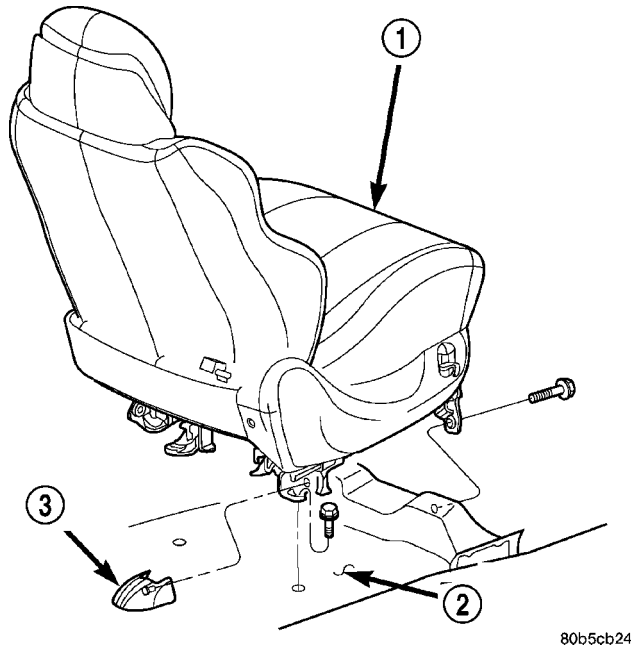
- (6) Install head restraint (Refer to 23 - BODY/SEATS/FRONT HEADREST - INSTALLATION).



## FRONT SEAT

### REMOVAL

- (1) Move seat to full rearward position.
- (2) Remove front bolts attaching seat to floor pan (Fig. 4).
- (3) Move seat to full forward position.
- (4) Using a trim stick C-4755 or equivalent, pry cover from seat track (power seat only).
- (5) Remove rear bolts attaching seat to floor pan.
- (6) If equipped, disconnect power seat wire harness connector.
- (7) Remove seat from vehicle.



**Fig. 4 FRONT BUCKET SEAT**

- 1 - POWER BUCKET SEAT  
2 - FLOOR PAN  
3 - SEAT TRACK COVER

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Position seat on floor pan.
- (2) If equipped, connect power seat wire harness connector.
- (3) Install rear bolts attaching seat to floor pan and tighten to 40 N·m (30 ft. lbs.).
- (4) If equipped, install cover on seat track.
- (5) Move seat to full rearward position.
- (6) Install front bolts attaching seat to floor pan and tighten to 40 N·m (30 ft. lbs.).

## FRONT SEAT BACK

### REMOVAL

- (1) Move seat to full rearward position.
- (2) Remove inboard bolt attaching seat back frame to seat cushion frame.
- (3) Move seat to full forward position.
- (4) Move seat back to full recline position.
- (5) Remove screws attaching seat side shield to seat frame.
- (6) Disconnect wire harness connector from recliner motor, if equipped.
- (7) From the underside of the seat, disconnect the wire harness connector for the power lumbar and/or heated seat, if equipped.
- (8) Remove outboard bolts attaching recliner to seat cushion frame.
- (9) Route the power lumbar and/or heated seat harness through the seat cushion cover, if equipped.
- (10) Separate seat back from seat cushion.

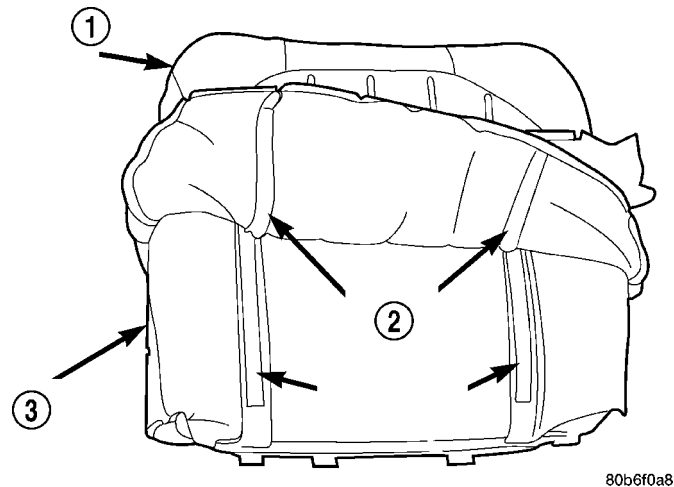
### INSTALLATION

- (1) Position seat back on seat cushion.
- (2) Route the power lumbar and heater harness through the seat cushion cover, if equipped.
- (3) Install recliner bolts attaching seat back frame to seat cushion frame and tighten to 28 N·m (20 ft. lbs.).
- (4) Install the inboard bolt attaching seat back frame to seat cushion frame and tighten to 47 N·m (35 ft.lbs.).
- (5) Connect wire harness connector to recliner motor and/or heated seat, if equipped.
- (6) From the underside of the seat, connect the power lumbar and/or heated seat wire harness connector to the seat harness, if equipped.
- (7) Install screws attaching seat side shield to seat frame.

## FRONT SEAT BACK COVER

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove head restraint (Refer to 23 - BODY/SEATS/FRONT HEADREST - REMOVAL).
- (2) Using a trim stick C-4755 or equivalent, carefully pry head restraint release button caps from the top of seat back.
- (3) Remove seat back (Refer to 23 - BODY/SEATS/FRONT SEAT BACK - REMOVAL).
- (4) Disengage J-strap at base of seat back.
- (5) Slide hand between the face of the seat back pad and the cushion cover and carefully separate hook and loop fastener (Fig. 5).
- (6) Roll cover upward and disengage hog rings.
- (7) Roll cover upward to top of seat back.
- (8) Separate cover from seat back.



**Fig. 5 SEAT BACK COVER**

- 1 - SEAT BACK COVER  
2 - HOOK AND LOOP FASTENER  
3 - SEAT BACK PAD

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Position cover inside-out at the top of seat back.
- (2) Roll cover downward.
- (3) Engage hog rings.
- (4) Align seat back cover with hook and loop fasteners and secure.
- (5) Roll cover downward.
- (6) Engage J-strap at base of seat back.
- (7) Install seat back (Refer to 23 - BODY/SEATS/FRONT SEAT BACK - INSTALLATION).

**NOTE:** The taller head restraint release button cap is positioned on the left hand side and the head restraint button cap with the hidden button is positioned on the right hand side.

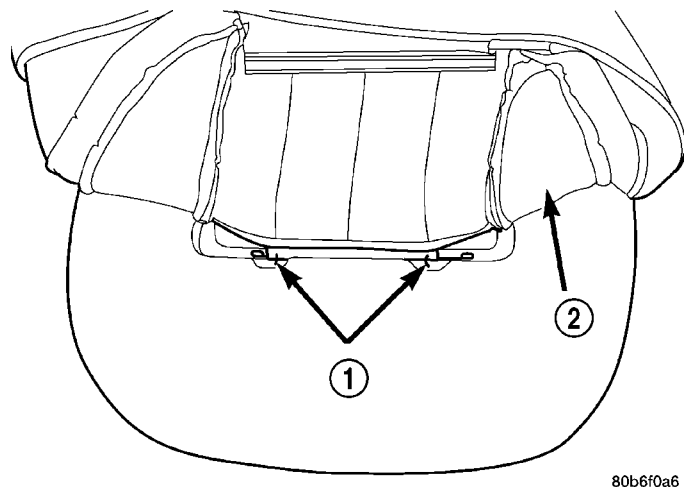
(8) Position head restraint release button caps on head restraint sleeves and press to secure.

(9) Install head restraint (Refer to 23 - BODY/SEATS/FRONT HEADREST - INSTALLATION).

## FRONT SEAT CUSHION/COVER

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove seat from vehicle (Refer to 23 - BODY/SEATS/FRONT SEAT - REMOVAL).
- (2) Remove seat back (Refer to 23 - BODY/SEATS/FRONT SEAT BACK - REMOVAL).
- (3) Disengage J-straps attaching cushion cover to seat cushion frame.
- (4) Disengage hog rings attaching cushion cover to cushion frame at rear of seat along bottom of cushion cover (Fig. 6).
- (5) Roll up edges of cover and route seat function switches through access hole on outboard side of seat cushion, if equipped.
- (6) Disengage seat cushion heater element connector, if equipped.
- (7) Disengage hog rings attaching cover to cushion along cover insert.
- (8) Separate seat cushion cover from seat cushion.



**Fig. 6 SEAT CUSHION COVER**

- 1 - HOG RING  
2 - CUSHION COVER

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Position seat cover on cushion.
- (2) Engage hog rings attaching cushion cover to cushion along insert.
- (3) Engage seat cushion heater element connector, if equipped.
- (4) Route seat function switches through access hole on outboard side of seat cushion, if equipped.
- (5) Engage J-straps attaching cushion cover to seat cushion frame.

## FRONT SEAT CUSHION/COVER (Continued)

(6) Engage hog rings attaching cushion cover to cushion frame.

(7) Install seat back (Refer to 23 - BODY/SEATS/FRONT SEAT BACK - INSTALLATION).

(8) Install seat (Refer to 23 - BODY/SEATS/FRONT SEAT - INSTALLATION).

## FRONT SEAT SIDE SHIELD

## REMOVAL

(1) Remove screws attaching side shield to seat frame.

(2) Disconnect wire harness connectors from power seat and power lumbar switches, if equipped.

(3) Separate side shield from seat.

## INSTALLATION

(1) Position side shield on seat.

(2) Connect wire harness connectors to power seat and power lumbar switches, if equipped.

(3) Install screws attaching side shield to seat frame.

## SEAT TRACK &amp; RECLINER ASSEMBLY

## REMOVAL

(1) Remove seat back (Refer to 23 - BODY/SEATS/FRONT SEAT BACK - REMOVAL).

(2) Disengage J-strap at base of seat back.

(3) Roll seat back cover upward to access bolts attaching recliner to seat back frame.

(4) Remove bolts attaching recliner to seat back frame.

(5) Separate recliner from seat back.

## INSTALLATION

(1) Position recliner on seat back.

(2) Install bolts attaching recliner to seat back frame and tighten to 28 N·m (20 ft. lbs.).

(3) Roll seat back cover downward.

(4) Engage J-strap at base of seat back.

(5) Install seat back (Refer to 23 - BODY/SEATS/FRONT SEAT BACK - INSTALLATION).

## SEAT TRACK ADJUSTER

## REMOVAL

(1) Remove seat (Refer to 23 - BODY/SEATS/FRONT SEAT - REMOVAL).

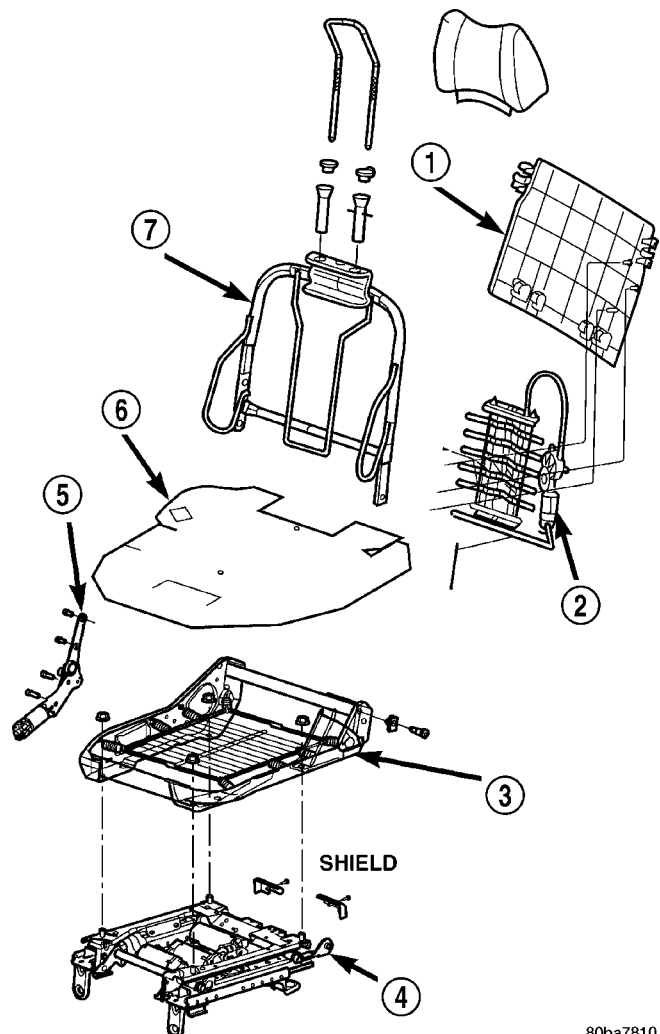
(2) Remove side shield (Refer to 23 - BODY/SEATS/FRONT SEAT SIDE SHIELD - REMOVAL).

(3) Remove nuts attaching seat track adjuster to seat cushion frame (Fig. 7) and (Fig. 8). Roll cushion trim cover up to access the two front nuts.

(4) Disengage clips attaching wire harness to adjuster.

(5) Disengage seat memory module connector, if equipped.

(6) Separate seat track from seat cushion frame.

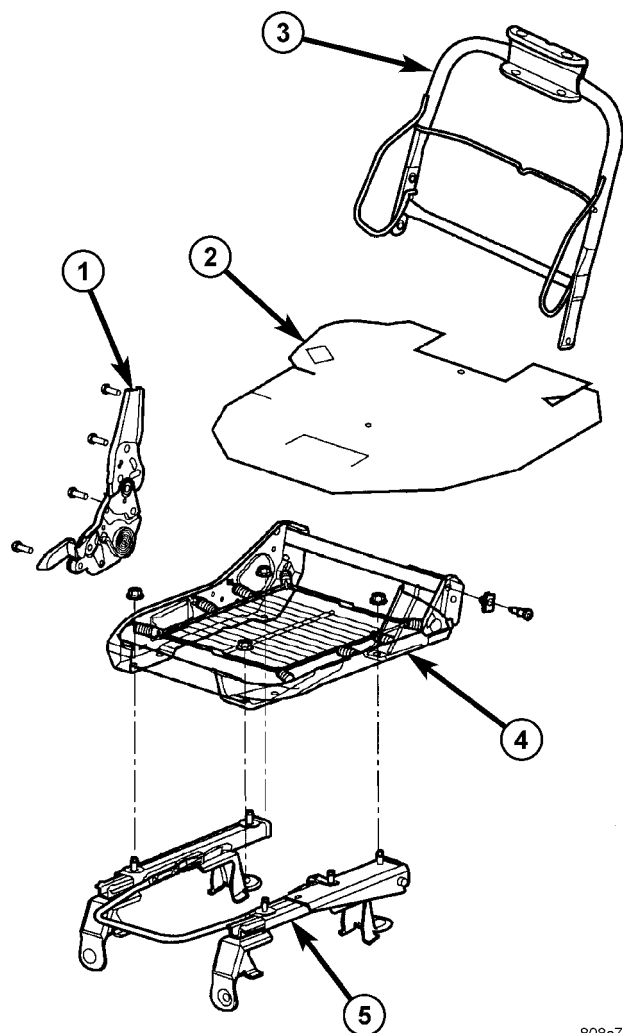


80ba7810

**Fig. 7 SEAT TRACK ADJUSTER-POWER**

- 1 - BACK PANEL
- 2 - LUMBAR ASSEMBLY
- 3 - SEAT CUSHION FRAME
- 4 - POWER SEAT TRACK ADJUSTER
- 5 - POWER RECLINER
- 6 - SEAT CUSHION PAD
- 7 - SEAT BACK FRAME

## SEAT TRACK ADJUSTER (Continued)



808c7a5d

**Fig. 8 SEAT TRACK ADJUSTER - MANUAL**

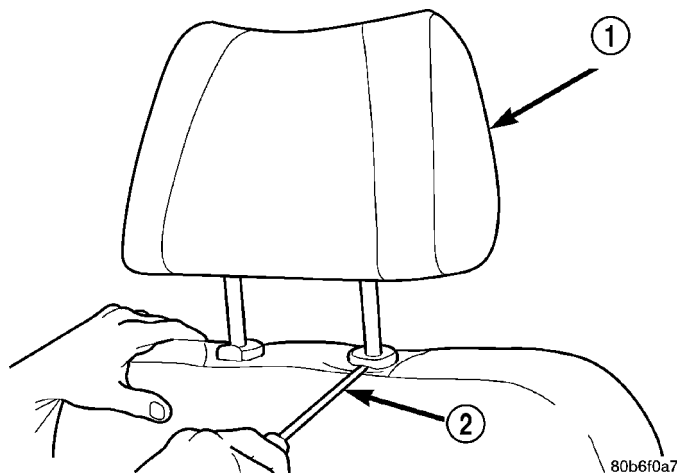
- 1 - MANUAL RECLINER
- 2 - SEAT CUSHION PAD
- 3 - SEAT BACK FRAME
- 4 - SEAT CUSHION FRAME
- 5 - MANUAL SEAT TRACK ADJUSTER

**INSTALLATION**

- (1) Transfer seat memory module, if equipped.
- (2) Position seat track on seat cushion frame.
- (3) Route harness through frame and engage clips attaching wire harness to adjuster.
- (4) Engage seat memory module connector, if equipped.
- (5) Install nuts attaching seat track adjuster to seat cushion frame and tighten to 28 N·m (20 ft. lbs.).
- (6) Install the side shield (Refer to 23 - BODY/SEATS/Front Seat Side Shield - Installation).
- (7) Install seat (Refer to 23 - BODY/SEATS/Front Seat - Installation).

**REAR HEADREST****REMOVAL**

- (1) Depress head rest release button and lift head rest to full up position.
- (2) Using a small flat blade, depress tab on out-board side head rest release button and using your hand, simultaneously press tab on in-board side head rest release button (Fig. 9) and pull head rest up to separate from seat back.



80b6f0a7

**Fig. 9 HEAD REST**

- 1 - HEAD RESTRAINT
- 2 - FLAT BLADE

**INSTALLATION**

- (1) Position head rest in seat back, press tab on inboard side head rest release button cap and push down head restraint to secure.

## REAR HEADREST RELEASE KNOB

### REMOVAL

- (1) Using a razor knife or equivalent, cut the release knob from the release lever.
- (2) Pull the release knob from the lever (Fig. 10).

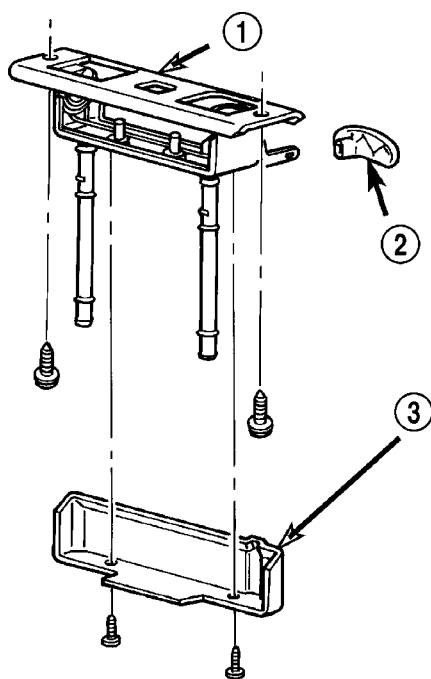
### INSTALLATION

- (1) Position the release knob on the lever and press to snap in place.

## REAR HEADREST FOLDING MECHANISM

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove the head rest (Refer to 23 - BODY/SEATS/REAR HEADREST - REMOVAL).
- (2) Remove folding mechanism cover (Fig. 10).
- (3) Remove the screws that secure the head rest bun to the folding mechanism.



80ba7809

**Fig. 10 Rear Seat Head Rest Folding Mechanism**

- 1 - REAR SEAT HEAD REST FOLDING MECHANISM  
 2 - RELEASE KNOB  
 3 - FOLDING MECHANISM COVER

**NOTE:** The folding release knob is always located on the outboard side.

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Position the head rest bun on the folding mechanism and install the screws.
- (2) Install the folding mechanism cover.
- (3) Install the head restraint (Refer to 23 - BODY/SEATS/REAR HEADREST - INSTALLATION).

## REAR HEADREST SLEEVE

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove seat back (Refer to 23 - BODY/SEATS/REAR SEAT BACK - REMOVAL).
- (2) Remove head rest (Refer to 23 - BODY/SEATS/REAR HEADREST - REMOVAL).
- (3) Remove head rest caps.
- (4) Remove seat back cover (Refer to 23 - BODY/SEATS/REAR SEAT BACK COVER - REMOVAL).
- (5) Rotate head rest sleeve 1/4 turn counter-clockwise to release retaining tab.
- (6) Pull sleeve from seat back frame.

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Position sleeve in seat back frame.
- (2) Rotate head rest sleeve 1/4 turn clockwise to engage retaining tab.
- (3) Install seat back cover (Refer to 23 - BODY/SEATS/REAR SEAT BACK COVER - INSTALLATION).
- (4) Install head rest caps.

**NOTE:** The taller head restraint release button cap is positioned on the left hand side and the head restraint button cap with the hidden button is positioned on the right hand side.

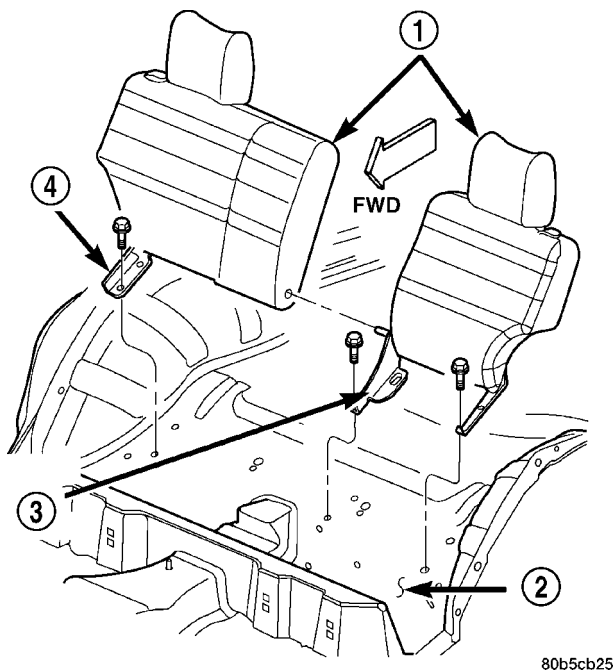
- (5) Install the head rest (Refer to 23 - BODY/SEATS/REAR HEADREST - INSTALLATION).
- (6) Install the seat back (Refer to 23 - BODY/SEATS/REAR SEAT BACK - INSTALLATION).



## REAR SEAT BACK

### REMOVAL

- (1) Move rear seat cushions to forward cargo position.
- (2) Remove bolts attaching seatback side support bracket to floor pan (right side) (Fig. 11).
- (3) Tilt seatback forward, and slide it outboard to detach it from pin on center pivot bracket.
- (4) Remove right side (60%) seatback from vehicle.
- (5) Remove bolts attaching seatback side support bracket and center pivot bracket to floor pan (left side).
- (6) Remove left side (40%) seatback from vehicle.



**Fig. 11 Rear Seat Back**

- 1 - SEAT BACK
- 2 - FLOOR PAN
- 3 - CENTER PIVOT BRACKET
- 4 - SIDE SUPPORT BRACKET

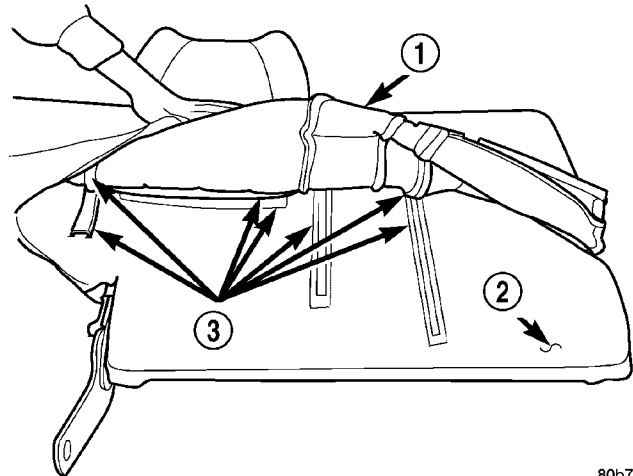
### INSTALLATION

- (1) Position left side (40%) seatback in vehicle.
- (2) Position left side support bracket and center pivot bracket with bolt holes aligned and install bolts. Tighten bolts to 50 N·m (37 ft. lbs.) torque.
- (3) Position right side (60%) seatback in vehicle.
- (4) Install seatback onto center pivot bracket pin. Ensure seat back is properly engaged on the center pivot pin.
- (5) Position right side support bracket with bolt holes aligned and install bolts. Tighten bolts to 50 N·m (37 ft. lbs.) torque.
- (6) Return seat cushions to seating position.

## REAR SEAT BACK COVER

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove seat back (Refer to 23 - BODY/SEATS/REAR SEAT BACK - REMOVAL).
- (2) Remove head restraint (Refer to 23 - BODY/SEATS/REAR HEADREST - REMOVAL).
- (3) Remove head restraint caps.
- (4) Disengage J-straps on outboard side of seat back.
- (5) Disengage J-straps at base of seat back.
- (6) Remove push-pin fasteners attaching cover near bottom edge at latch restraint bar locations.
- (7) Remove screws attaching latch release handle to seat back frame.
- (8) Roll seat back cover upward.
- (9) Disengage hook and loop fasteners attaching seat back cover to seat back pad (Fig. 12).
- (10) Roll seat back cover upward and route latch release handle through seat back cover.
- (11) Separate seat back cover from seat back.
- (12) Separate seat back pad from seat back frame.



**Fig. 12 Rear Seat Back Cover**

- 1 - SEAT BACK COVER
- 2 - SEAT BACK PAD
- 3 - HOOK AND LOOP FASTENER

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Position seat back cover and pad on seat back frame.
- (2) Route latch release handle through seat back cover.
- (3) Roll seat back cover partially downward aligning holes in seat back cover for head restraint and latch release handle.
- (4) Roll seat back cover downward align and engage hook and loop fasteners to seat back pad.
- (5) Engage J-straps at base of seat back.
- (6) Engage J-straps on outboard side of seat back.



## REAR SEAT BACK COVER (Continued)

(7) Install push-pin fasteners attaching cover near bottom edge at latch restraint bar locations.

(8) Install screws attaching latch release handle to seat back frame.

(9) Install head restraint (Refer to 23 - BODY/SEATS/REAR HEADREST - INSTALLATION).

(10) Install seat back (Refer to 23 - BODY/SEATS/REAR SEAT BACK - INSTALLATION).

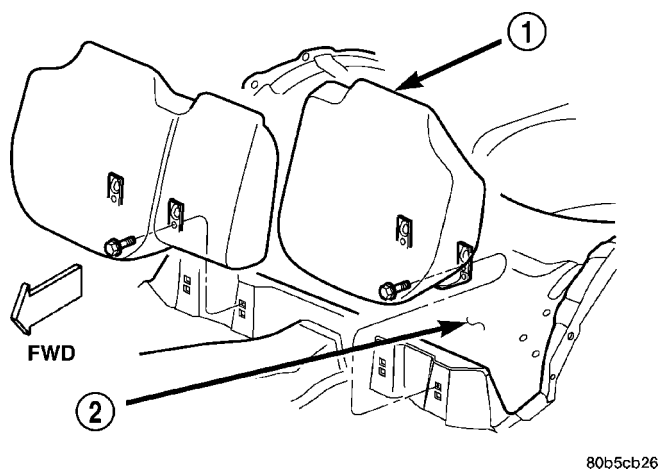
## REAR SEAT CUSHION

## REMOVAL

(1) Disengage seat cushion at rear by pulling upward on release strap.

(2) Remove bolts attaching seat cushion to floor pan (Fig. 13).

(3) Remove seat cushion from vehicle.



**Fig. 13 Rear Seat Cushion**

- 1 - SEAT CUSHION  
2 - FLOOR PAN

## INSTALLATION

(1) Position seat cushion in vehicle.

(2) Install bolts attaching seat cushion to floor pan. Tighten bolts to 11 N·m (8 ft. lbs.) torque.

(3) Lock seat cushion down by pressing firmly on center then outboard edge of cushion until latch engages.

## REAR SEAT CUSHION COVER

## REMOVAL

(1) Remove rear seat cushion (Refer to 23 - BODY/SEATS/REAR SEAT CUSHION - REMOVAL).

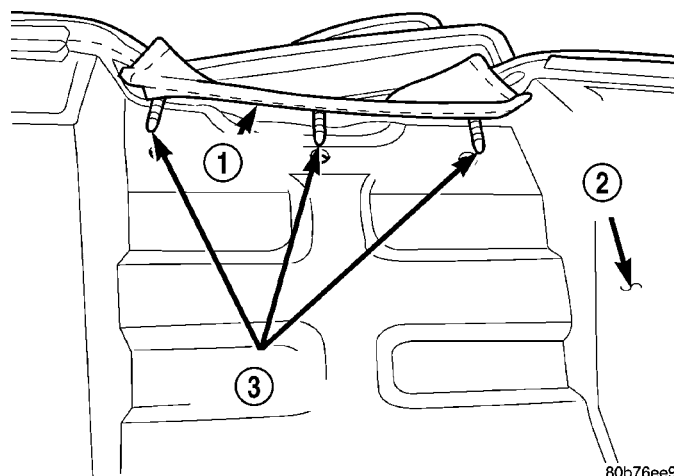
(2) From the underside of the seat, disengage J-straps attaching cover to seat cushion base panel.

(3) Remove push-in fasteners attaching cushion cover to seat cushion base panel (Fig. 14).

(4) Roll back cover.

(5) Disengage hog rings attaching cushion cover to seat cushion foam pad.

(6) Separate cushion cover from seat cushion foam pad.



**Fig. 14 Push-in Fasteners**

- 1 - CUSHION COVER  
2 - SEAT CUSHION BASE PANEL  
3 - PUSH-IN FASTENER

## INSTALLATION

(1) Position cushion cover on seat cushion foam pad.

(2) Engage hog rings attaching cushion cover to seat cushion foam pad.

(3) Align cushion cover and engage J-straps attaching cushion cover to seat cushion base panel.

(4) Install push-in fasteners attaching cushion cover to seat cushion base panel.

(5) Install rear seat cushion (Refer to 23 - BODY/SEATS/REAR SEAT CUSHION - INSTALLATION).

REAR SEAT CUSHION  
RELEASE LATCH

## REMOVAL

(1) Unlatch seat and pivot seat upward.

(2) Disengage J-strap at seat cushion base panel.

(3) Roll back cushion cover.

(4) Remove screws attaching latch to base panel.

(5) Separate latch from base panel.

## INSTALLATION

(1) Position latch on base panel.

(2) Install screws attaching latch to base panel. Tighten screws to 8 N·m (75 in. lbs.) torque.

(3) Route the cushion release strap from the loop on the latch through the slot in the trim cover.

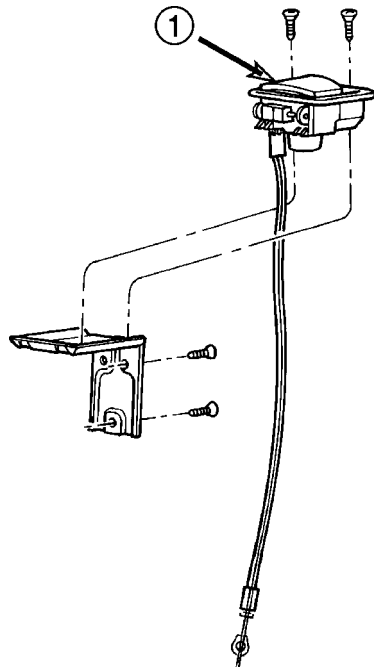
(4) Engage J-strap at seat cushion base panel.

(5) latch seat.

## FOLDING REAR SEAT BACK LATCH HANDLE

### REMOVAL

- (1) Pull handle to release latch.
- (2) Remove screws attaching release handle to seat back frame.
- (3) Using a small flat blade, disengage retainers securing latch release cable housing to latch release handle.
- (4) Rotate cable end until barrel end aligns with key hole slot in latch release handle.
- (5) Disengage cable barrel end from release handle.
- (6) Separate latch release handle from seat back (Fig. 15).



80ba780a

**Fig. 15 Rear Seat Release Handle**

1 - REAR SEAT FOLDING RELEASE HANDLE

## FOLDING REAR SEAT BACK LATCH/HINGE

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove seat back (Refer to 23 - BODY/SEATS/ REAR SEAT BACK - REMOVAL).
- (2) Disengage J-straps on outboard side of seat back.
- (3) Disengage release cable from latch.
- (4) Remove bolts attaching latch/hinge to seat back frame.
- (5) Separate latch/hinge from seat back frame.

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Position latch/hinge on seat back frame.
- (2) Install bolts attaching latch/hinge to seat back frame. Tighten bolts to 50 N·m (37 ft. lbs.) torque.
- (3) Engage latch release cable.
- (4) Engage J-straps on outboard side of seat back.
- (5) Install seat back (Refer to 23 - BODY/SEATS/ REAR SEAT BACK - INSTALLATION).

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Route cable end into latch release handle.
- (2) Rotate cable end until barrel end aligns with key hole slot in latch release handle and insert into handle.
- (3) Engage retainers securing latch release cable housing to latch release handle.
- (4) Position latch release handle in seat back. Ensure seat back cover is properly aligned.
- (5) Install screws attaching release handle to seat back frame.

## STATIONARY GLASS

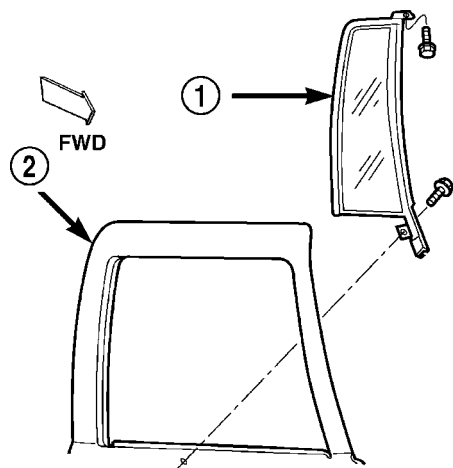
## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>DOOR GLASS</b>		INSTALLATION	108
REMOVAL	108	<b>WINDSHIELD</b>	
INSTALLATION	108	REMOVAL	109
<b>QUARTER WINDOW</b>		INSTALLATION	109
REMOVAL	108		

## DOOR GLASS

## REMOVAL

- (1) Place door window fully down.
- (2) Remove waterdam. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOORS - REAR/WATERDAM - REMOVAL)
- (3) Remove inner belt weatherstrip. (Refer to 23 - BODY/WEATHERSTRIP/SEALS/RDR INNER BELT WEATHERSTRIP - REMOVAL)
- (4) Remove bolt attaching bottom of rear glass run channel to door.
- (5) Pull run channel downward and separate from door.
- (6) Remove screws attaching stationary door glass frame to door. (Fig. 1).
- (7) Separate stationary door glass from door.



80b46b2b

Fig. 1 STATIONARY DOOR GLASS

- 1 - STATIONARY DOOR GLASS  
2 - DOOR

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Position stationary door glass in door.
- (2) Install screws attaching stationary door glass frame to door.
- (3) Install glass run channel.
- (4) Install inner belt weatherstrip. (Refer to 23 - BODY/WEATHERSTRIP/SEALS/RDR INNER BELT WEATHERSTRIP - INSTALLATION)

- (5) Install waterdam. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOORS - REAR/WATERDAM - INSTALLATION)

## QUARTER WINDOW

## REMOVAL

- (1) Cut urethane bonding from around quarter window glass using a suitable sharp cold knife. A pneumatic cutting device can be used if available.

**CAUTION:** Care should be taken when removing the glass to avoid scratching the exterior paint surface.

- (2) Separate glass from vehicle.

## INSTALLATION

**CAUTION:** Open a window before installing glass. This will avoid pressurizing the passenger compartment. If a door or liftgate is slammed before urethane is cured, water leaks can result.

The window opening fence should be cleaned of old urethane bonding material.

- (1) Clean inside of glass with Mopar Glass Cleaner and lint-free cloth.
- (2) Apply clear PVC (vinyl) primer 25 mm (1 in.) wide around edge of glass. Wipe with clean/dry lint-free cloth.

**NOTE:** Make sure primer does not flow passed the black frit.

- (3) Apply black primer 25 mm (1 in.) wide around edge of glass. Allow at least eighteen minutes drying time.

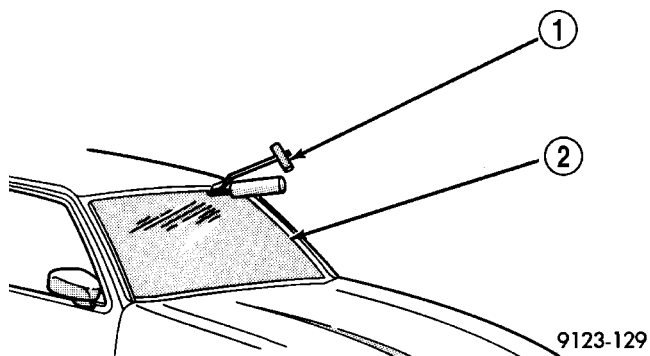
- (4) Apply a 16 mm (0.6 in.) high by 10 mm (0.4 in.) wide triangular bead of urethane around window vinyl border location.

- (5) Position glass into window opening and lock the four clips into place.

## WINDSHIELD

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove inside rear view mirror.
- (2) Remove cowl cover.
- (3) Remove screws attaching windshield side molding to A-pillar (Fig. 2).
- (4) Remove upper windshield molding.
- (5) Cut urethane bonding from around windshield using a suitable sharp cold knife. A pneumatic cutting device can be used if available (Fig. 3).
- (6) Separate windshield from vehicle.



**Fig. 3 Cut Urethane Around Windshield—Typical**

- 1 - COLD KNIFE  
2 - WINDSHIELD

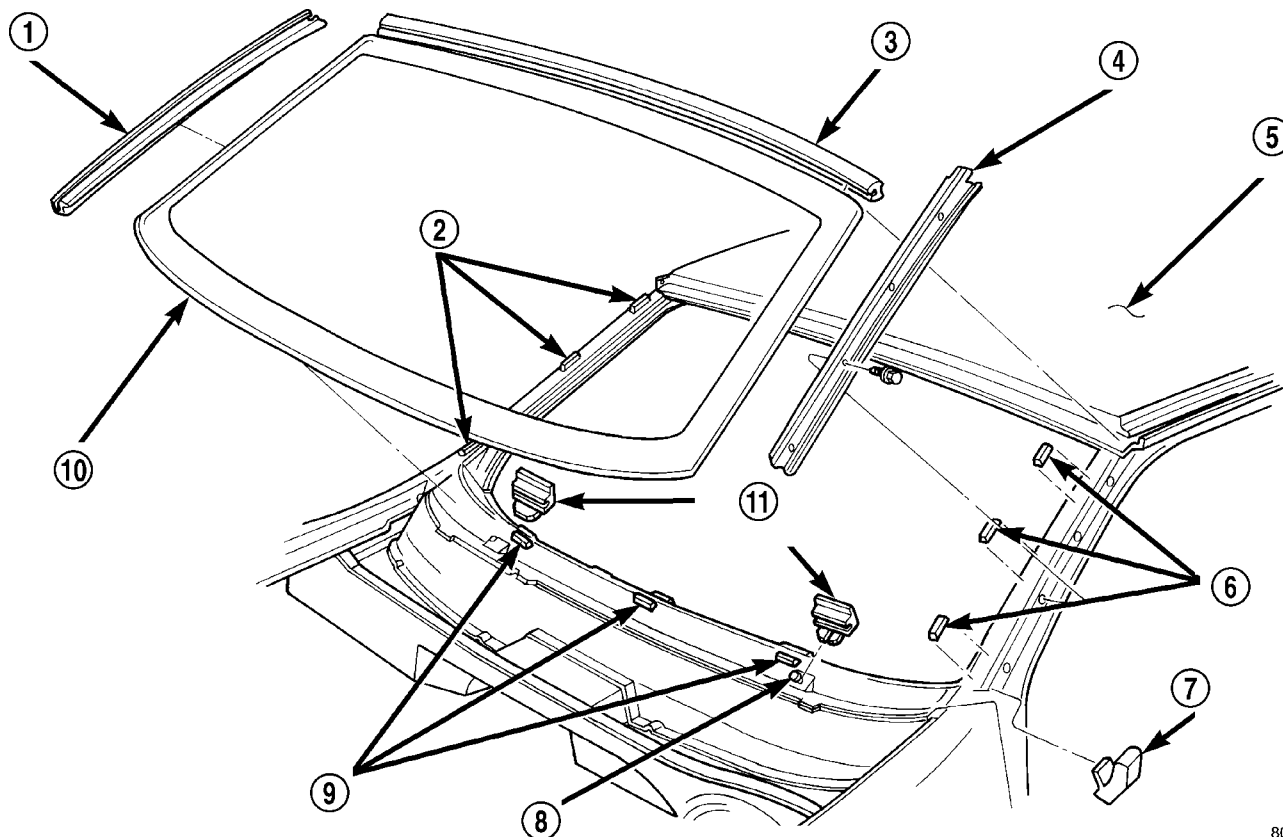
### INSTALLATION

**WARNING: REVIEW ALL WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS IN THIS GROUP BEFORE PRECEDING WITH INSTALLATION.**

**CAUTION: Open a window before installing windshield. This will avoid pressurizing the passenger**

**compartment. If a door or liftgate is slammed before urethane is cured, water leaks can result.**

The windshield fence should be cleaned of old urethane bonding material. Support spacers should be cleaned and properly installed on weld studs or repair screws at bottom of windshield opening.



80500535

**Fig. 2 Windshield**

- 1 - SIDE MOLDING  
2 - SUPPORT SPACER  
3 - UPPER MOLDING  
4 - SIDE MOLDING  
5 - ROOF PANEL  
6 - SUPPORT SPACER

- 7 - BLOCKER  
8 - STUD  
9 - SUPPORT SPACER  
10 - WINDSHIELD  
11 - ALIGNMENT SPACER

## WINDSHIELD (Continued)

(1) Place replacement windshield into windshield opening. Position glass in the center of the opening against the support spacers. Mark the glass at the support spacers with a grease pencil or masking tape and ink pen to use as a reference for installation. Remove replacement windshield from windshield opening (Fig. 4).

(2) Position the windshield inside up on a suitable work surface with two padded, wood 10 cm by 10 cm by 50 cm (4 in. by 4 in. by 20 in.) blocks, placed parallel 75 cm (2.5 ft.) apart (Fig. 5).

(3) Clean inside of windshield with Mopar Glass Cleaner and lint-free cloth.

(4) Apply clear glass primer 25 mm (1 in.) wide around edge of windshield. Wipe with clean/dry lint-free cloth.

(5) Apply black-out primer 25 mm (1 in.) wide on top and sides of windshield and 25 mm (1 in.) on bottom of windshield. Allow at least three minutes drying time.

**NOTE: Make sure the clear and black primers do not flow passed the black frit.**

(6) Position windshield spacers on lower fence above support spacers at the edge of the windshield opening (Fig. 2).

(7) Apply a 16 mm (0.6 in.) high by 10 mm (0.4 in.) wide triangular bead of urethane around perimeter of windshield along the inside of the moldings. Apply two beads along the bottom edge.

(8) Install upper molding onto windshield.

(9) Apply fence primer around the perimeter of the windshield opening fence. Allow at least 18 minutes drying time.

(10) With aid of a helper, position windshield over windshield opening. Align reference marks at bottom of windshield to support spacers.

(11) Slowly lower windshield glass to windshield opening fence. Guide top molding into proper position if necessary. Push windshield inward to fence spacers at bottom and until top molding is flush to roof line.

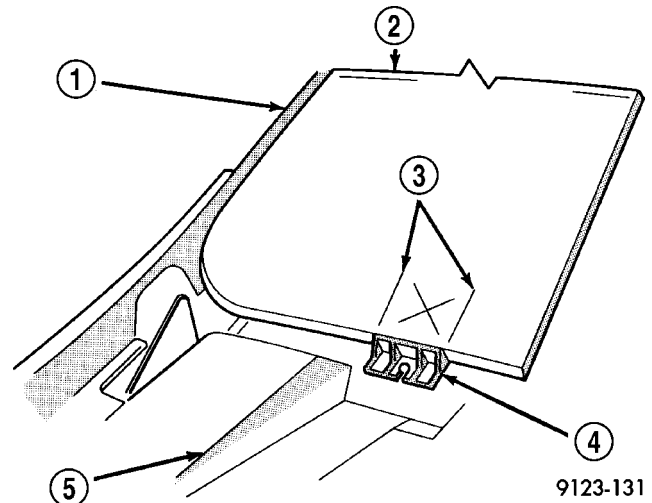
(12) Clean excess urethane from exterior with Mopar Super Clean or equivalent.

(13) Install windshield side moldings.

(14) Install cowl cover and wipers.

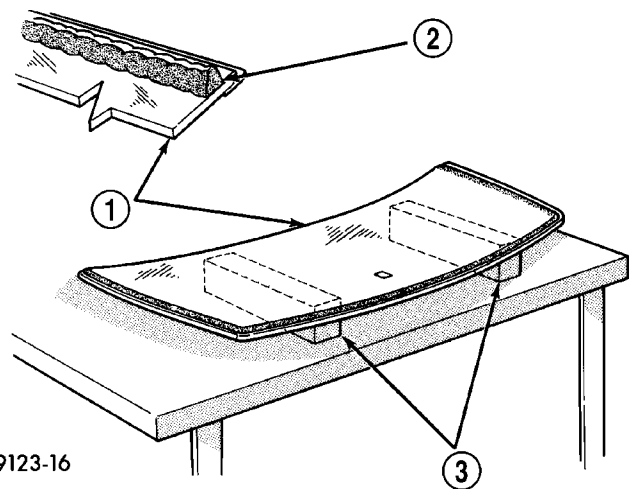
(15) Install inside rear view mirror.

(16) After urethane has cured, water test windshield to verify repair.



**Fig. 4 Center Windshield and Mark at Support Spacers**

- 1 - A-PILLAR
- 2 - WINDSHIELD
- 3 - MARKS
- 4 - SUPPORT SPACER
- 5 - COWL



**Fig. 5 Work Surface Set up and Molding Installation**

- 1 - WINDSHIELD AND MOULDINGS
- 2 - TRIANGULAR URETHANE BEAD AROUND GLASS 16 mm (0.6 in.) HIGH BY 10 mm (0.4 in.) WIDE
- 3 - BLOCKS



# SUNROOF

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>SUNROOF</b>		<b>GLASS PANEL</b>	
DESCRIPTION .....	111	REMOVAL .....	117
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - SUNROOF .....	111	INSTALLATION .....	117
<b>DRAIN TUBE</b>		ADJUSTMENTS	
REMOVAL .....	115	ADJUSTMENTS - FIT .....	117
INSTALLATION .....	115	ADJUSTMENT - TIMING .....	118
<b>CONTROL MODULE</b>		<b>SUNSHADE</b>	
REMOVAL .....	115	REMOVAL .....	118
INSTALLATION .....	116	INSTALLATION .....	118
<b>DRIVE MOTOR</b>		<b>HOUSING ASSEMBLY</b>	
REMOVAL .....	116	REMOVAL .....	119
INSTALLATION .....	116	INSTALLATION .....	119
<b>WIND DEFLECTOR</b>		<b>SUNSHADE - SLIDE BLOCK AND SPRING</b>	
REMOVAL .....	117	REMOVAL .....	119
INSTALLATION .....	117	INSTALLATION .....	119

## SUNROOF

### DESCRIPTION

**WARNING:** Keep fingers and other body parts out of sunroof opening at all times.

The sunroof features a power sliding glass panel and a sunshade which can be manually positioned anywhere along its travel, rearward of glass panel front edge.

The sunroof is electrically operated from a switch located on the mini overhead console. To operate the sunroof the ignition switch must be in the On/Run position. The sunroof has both manual and Express Open modes of operation when opening. To open the sunroof in the Express Open mode, the switch is pressed rearward for less than **1 second**. This causes the sunroof glass to automatically retract and stop at a position slightly forward of full open that reduces low speed wind buffeting. The sunroof can also be opened manually by pressing and holding the switch rearward. Once the switch is held rearward for more than **1 second**, the glass will retract in the manual mode. Releasing the switch at any time during travel will cause the sunroof to stop at the current position.

To close the sunroof from an open position, the switch must be pushed forward and held until the sunroof glass comes to a complete stop. Releasing the switch at any time in this mode will cause the sunroof to stop at the current position.

To vent the sunroof from the closed position, the switch is pushed forward and held. Releasing the switch at any time during travel will cause the sunroof to stop at the current vent position. To reach the fully vented position, continue to hold the switch forward until vent motion stops. To close the sunroof from the vent position, push and hold the switch rearward until the glass comes to a complete stop.

### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - SUNROOF

**CAUTION:** The sunroof motor is only to be powered through the vehicle battery and vehicle wire harness. Applying power to the sunroof motor leads will cause failure of the sunroof control unit.

Before beginning sunroof diagnostics verify that all other power accessories are in proper operating condition. Refer to Sunroof Diagnostic Chart for possible causes. If not, a common electrical problem may exist. Refer to Group 8W, Wiring Diagrams, of this publication for circuit, splice and component descriptions. Check the condition of the circuit protection (20 amp high current fuse (battery feed) located in the Power Distribution Center (PDC). Check the cover of the PDC for location of the fuse. Check for correct operation of the sunroof delay relay. Inspect all wiring connector pins for proper engagement and continuity. Check for battery voltage at battery and ignition pins of the power sunroof express module wiring connector. Refer to Group 8W, Wiring Diagrams, for circuit information. The controller will not



## SUNROOF (Continued)

operate at less than 10 volts. Check the ground at the sunroof express module.

Before beginning diagnosis for wind noise or water leaks, verify that the problem was not caused by releasing the control switch before the sunroof was fully closed. The sunroof module has a water-management system. During washing high-pressure water may be forced between the glass panel seal and the roof opening. Normally this water will drain.

However, when some type of drying blower system is used, like those found in automatic car washes, the water may not have a chance to drain before the blower forces air between the seal and the roof opening. This causes the water to blow over the edge of the module and onto the headlining.

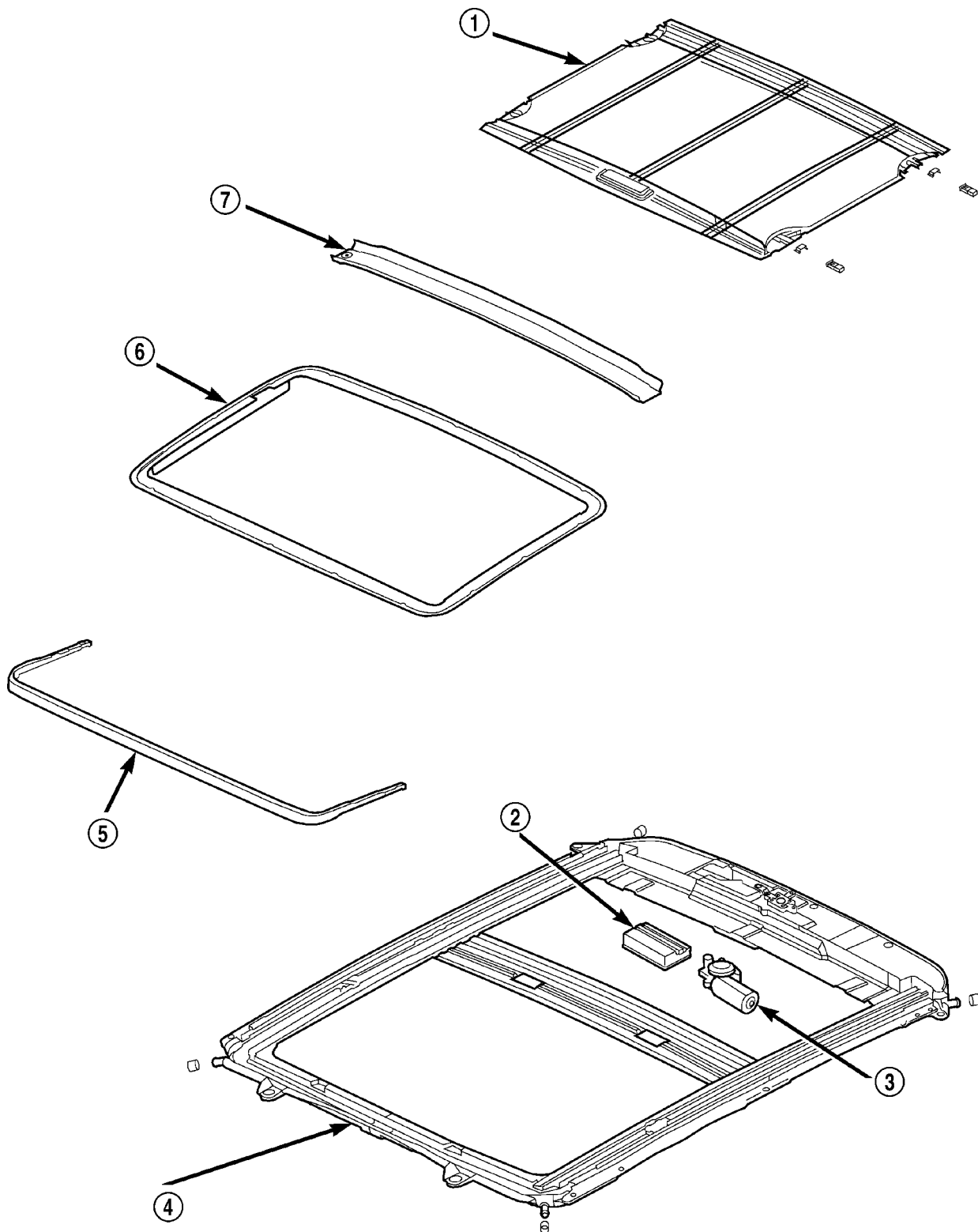
Refer to (Fig. 1) Sunroof Assembly for exploded view of the sunroof.

SYMPTOM	STEP	POSSIBLE CAUSE
Sunroof squeaks when opening/closing.	1	Identify if the cause is a seal squeak. If seal is worn, replace the seal.
	2	Check seal compression for uniformity in opening, If not uniform, glass is not centered in opening.
	3	Re-center glass by repositioning module in opening.
	4	Identify if mechanism squeaks.
	5	Check for lubrication, re-lube if necessary.
	6	Check for dirt/debris in tracks, clean and re-lube.
	7	Identify if motor squeaks, replace the motor.
Water leaks into the vehicle.	1	Check for a good connection at the drain tubes, re-connect where needed.
	2	Check for plugged/pinched hoses throughout.
	3	Adjust the glass panel. Refer to glass panel adjustments in this section.
	4	Check seal for wear/damage, replace glass as necessary.
Motor inoperative.	1	Check connectors at the motor, switch, control module and power source.
	2	Check for defective control module, replace if necessary.
	3	Replace the motor.
Motor noise when opening/closing.	1	Identify if motor noise, replace motor.
	2	Insure noise is from the motor and not cables, (cable ratcheting).
Grinding noise when opening/closing. (Mechanism noise, scraping.)  (Cable ratcheting.)	1	Identify if the motor is grinding, replace motor.
	2	Check for lubrication in tracks and mechanism, re-lube if necessary.
	3	Check for dirt/debris in tracks, clean and re-lube.
	4	Cables ratchet at the motor pinion; mechanism jammed, fix mechanism and replace cables and motor bracket.
Wind noise when sunroof fully closed.	1	Check seal compression for uniformity in opening, If not uniform, glass is not centered in opening.
	2	Glass not adjusted flush to roof. Refer to glass panel adjustments in this section.
	3	Mechanism not fully closed. A) Motor out of time, re-time motor/mechanism. Refer to glass panel adjustments in this section. B) Cable ratcheting, replace cables and motor bracket.
	4	Seal worn, replace glass.

## SUNROOF (Continued)

SYMPTOM	STEP	POSSIBLE CAUSE
Sunroof will not open/close.	1	Check switch and switch connection.
	2	Check mechanism for binding (result of forcing the glass closed/broken components).
	3	See motor inoperative above.
Sunroof "rattles", anytime, closed/open.	1	Loose attachment screws (module), re-fasten and adjust module.
	2	Loose glass panel, re-fasten and adjust glass panel.
	3	Loose drain channel, refasten/secure to repair.
	4	Broken mechanism, replace the sunroof assembly module.
	5	Mechanism not fully closed. A) Motor out of time, re-time motor/mechanism. Refer to glass panel adjustments in this section. B) Cable ratcheting, replace cables and motor bracket.
	6	Check for sunshade out of track or for sunshade broken slide block.
	7	Loose wind deflector. Replace if broken.
	8	Loose wind deflector spring. Replace if loose.
Sunshade squeaks/rattles, anytime.  -OR- Sunshade force high/low or binding during operation.	1	Sunshade slide blocks out of track(s), put back in tracks.
	2	Missing felt pads on the drain channel, add felt pads.
	3	Felt on the drain channel rolling off, (sunshade rubs on adhesive), replace felt pads.
	4	Slide block binding in sunshade, free-up slide block by actuating a couple times, grease slide block(s) and spring(s).
	5	Broken slide block in sunshade, replace slide block.
	6	Slide block spring missing, replace spring and slide block.
	7	Sunshade interference with drain channel or trim welt, replace trim welt and/or sunshade.
Motor/sunroof control module operation: Auto open doesn't work, or doesn't stop at closed position.	1	After power disconnect or replacement, sunroof module has to complete on full cycle to program the sunroof control module. Full cycle = close > open > close > vent > close.

## SUNROOF (Continued)

**Fig. 1 Sunroof Assembly**

80b2b6fe

- 1 - SUNSHADE
- 2 - EXPRESS MODULE
- 3 - DRIVE MOTOR
- 4 - FRAME ASSEMBLY

- 5 - WIND DEFLECTOR
- 6 - GLASS PANEL
- 7 - DRAIN CHANNEL

## DRAIN TUBE

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove the headliner. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/HEADLINER - REMOVAL)
- (2) Disengage clamps attaching drain tube to sunroof (Fig. 2).
- (3) Tape the end of the old drain tube to the new drain tube. Ensure that the tape build up on the tube ends is not excessive.
- (4) Remove front/rear trim panels as necessary to disengage clamps securing drain tube to body.
- (5) Remove the drain tube plug from the underside of the vehicle.
- (6) From the underside of the vehicle carefully, pull/route the drain tube through the body panel. Applying a soapy water solution to the new tube may aid in this procedure.

### INSTALLATION

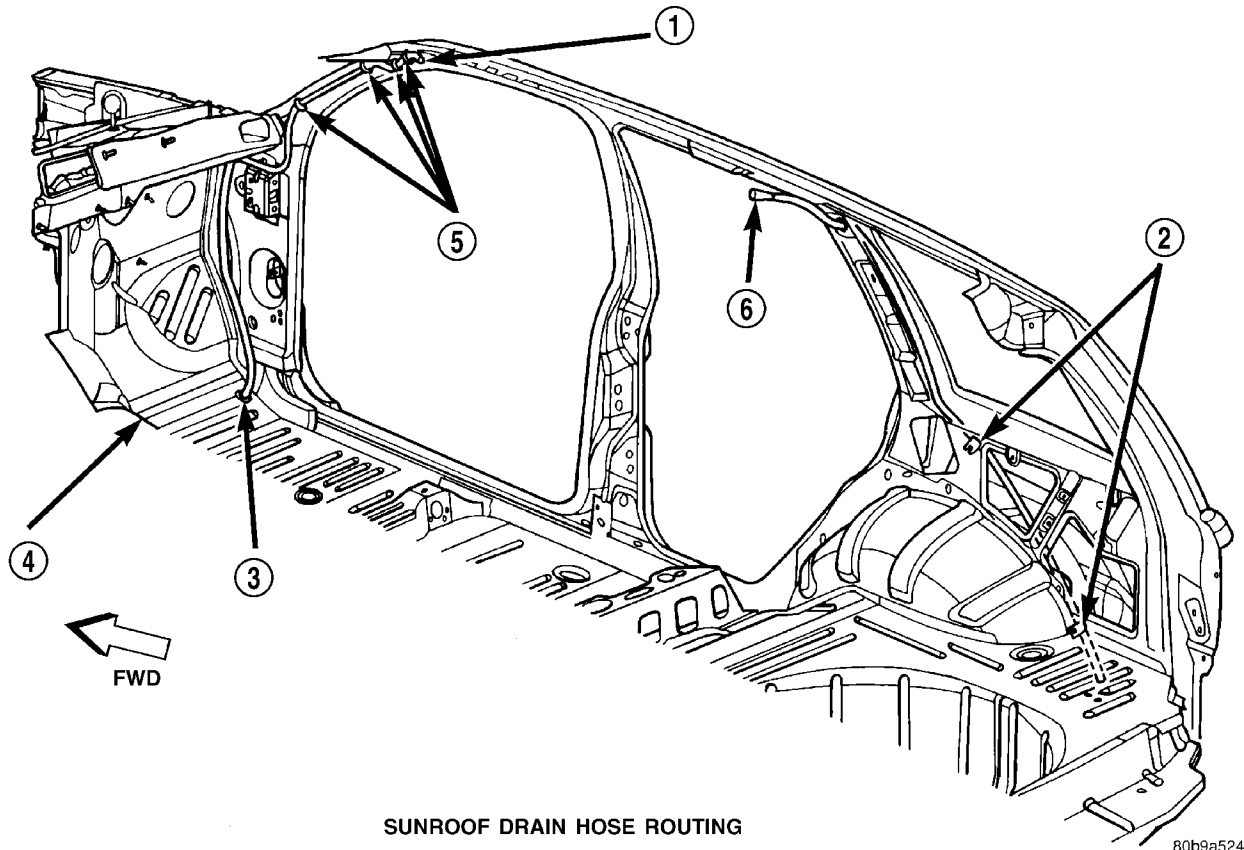
- (1) Install the plug adapter to the bottom of the drain tube.

- (2) Engage clamps securing drain tube to body (Fig. 2).
- (3) Install front/rear trim panels as necessary.
- (4) Install drain tube to sunroof and engage clamp.
- (5) Install the headliner. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/HEADLINER - INSTALLATION)

## CONTROL MODULE

### REMOVAL

- (1) Move the glass panel to the fully closed position.
- (2) Remove the A-pillar trim. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/A-PILLAR TRIM - REMOVAL)
- (3) Remove the sun visors. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/SUN VISOR - REMOVAL)
- (4) Remove the overhead console. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/OVERHEAD CONSOLE - REMOVAL)
- (5) Lower headliner as necessary to gain access to the sunroof express module.
- (6) Disconnect the express module wire harness connectors.
- (7) Remove express module screw.



SUNROOF DRAIN HOSE ROUTING

80b9a524

**Fig. 2 Sunroof Drain Hose Routing**

1 - DRAIN HOSE  
2 - CLAMPS  
3 - PLUG

4 - FLOOR  
5 - CLAMPS  
6 - DRAIN HOSE

## CONTROL MODULE (Continued)

(8) Remove express module from the keyway by sliding module towards the center of the vehicle.

## INSTALLATION

(1) Insert sunroof express module in the keyway located in the sunroof module and slide the module outward to lock it into position.

(2) Install the sunroof express module screw.

(3) Connect the wire connectors to the sunroof express module.

(4) Install the headliner into position.

(5) Install the overhead console. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/OVERHEAD CONSOLE - INSTALLATION)

(6) Install the sun visors. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/SUN VISOR - INSTALLATION)

(7) Install the A-pillar trim. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/A-PILLAR TRIM - INSTALLATION)

(8) Test sunroof operation, adjust if necessary. (Refer to 23 - BODY/SUNROOF/GLASS PANEL - ADJUSTMENTS)

## DRIVE MOTOR

## REMOVAL

**CAUTION:** The sunroof system is timed from the factory so that the motor shuts off automatically when the sunroof window reaches a certain position. Extreme care must be taken when removing the motor, timing may be thrown off causing possible damage to the sunroof system. Anytime the motor is removed from the sunroof assembly the sunroof glass panel must be in the **FULLY CLOSED POSITION** or the unit will be out of timing. The drive motor cannot be reset to the park position after being removed.

**CAUTION:** The sunroof motor should only be powered through the vehicle battery and sunroof wire harness. Applying power to the sunroof motor leads will cause failure of the control module.

(1) Move glass panel to the fully closed position.

(2) Remove the A-pillar trim. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/A-PILLAR TRIM - REMOVAL)

(3) Remove the B-pillar upper trim. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/B-PILLAR UPPER TRIM - REMOVAL)

(4) Remove the C-pillar trim. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/C-PILLAR TRIM - REMOVAL)

(5) Remove the D-pillar trim. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/D-PILLAR TRIM - REMOVAL)

(6) Remove the sunvisors. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/SUN VISOR - REMOVAL)

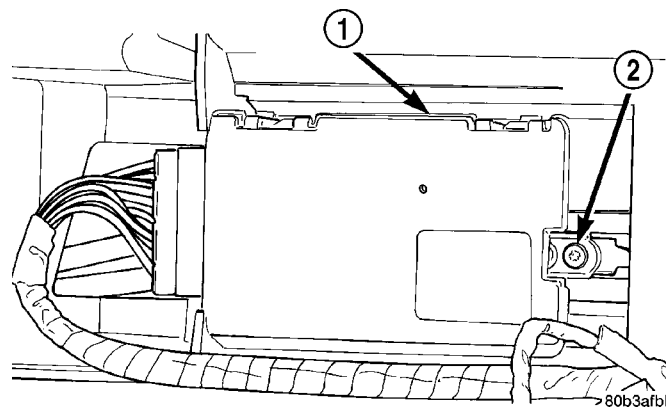
(7) Remove the overhead console. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/OVERHEAD CONSOLE - REMOVAL)

(8) Disconnect the control switch wire connector.

(9) Remove headliner as necessary to gain access to sunroof drive motor. Refer to Headliner Removal and Installation for proper procedures.

(10) Disconnect the drive motor wire harness connectors (Fig. 3).

(11) Remove drive motor fasteners and remove motor from the sunroof housing.



**Fig. 3 Sunroof Drive Motor and Express Module**

1 - EXPRESS MODULE

2 - SCREW

## INSTALLATION

(1) Ensure that the window is in the fully closed position before mounting the motor. If motor fails with the window in the open position the sunroof glass panel timing will have to be timed. The new motor comes in the fully closed position and with a gage for setting cable timing. (Refer to 23 - BODY/SUNROOF/GLASS PANEL - ADJUSTMENTS - TIMING)

(2) Place drive motor into position on the sunroof housing and install fasteners.

(3) Connect express module, drive motor, and control switch wire connectors.

(4) Set headliner into position.

(5) Test sunroof operation, adjust as necessary. (Refer to 23 - BODY/SUNROOF/GLASS PANEL - ADJUSTMENTS)

(6) Finish installing the headliner.

(7) Connect the control switch wire connector.

(8) Install the overhead console. (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/OVERHEAD CONSOLE - INSTALLATION)

(9) Install the sunvisors. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/SUN VISOR - INSTALLATION)

(10) Install the D-pillar trim. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/D-PILLAR TRIM - INSTALLATION)

(11) Install the C-pillar trim. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/C-PILLAR TRIM - INSTALLATION)

## DRIVE MOTOR (Continued)

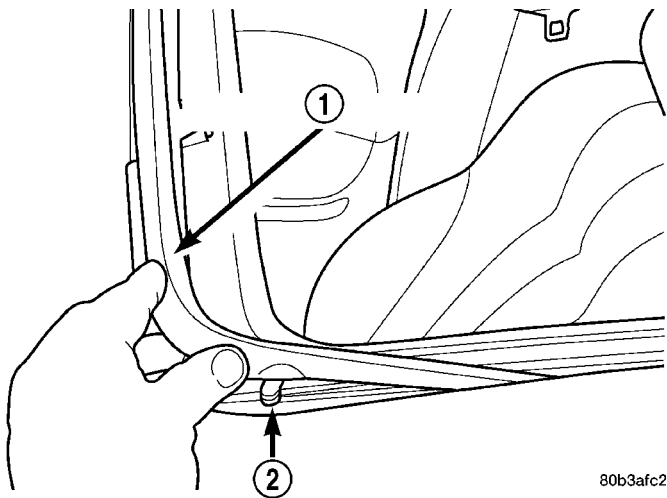
(12) Install the B-pillar upper trim. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/B-PILLAR UPPER TRIM - INSTALLATION)

(13) Install the A-pillar trim. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/A-PILLAR TRIM - INSTALLATION)

## WIND DEFLECTOR

## REMOVAL

- (1) Open sunroof glass panel.
- (2) Push down one corner of the wind deflector and let the other corner rise up (Fig. 4).
- (3) Push the low corner towards the opposite side of the vehicle until tab on sunshade clears the body. Then raise the corner up.
- (4) Repeat the procedure to the other corner.
- (5) Lift wind deflector to 90% of the way.
- (6) Push the attaching ends of the deflector to the rear of the vehicle to disengage the deflector.



**Fig. 4 Wind Deflector**

1 - WIND DEFLECTOR  
2 - TAB

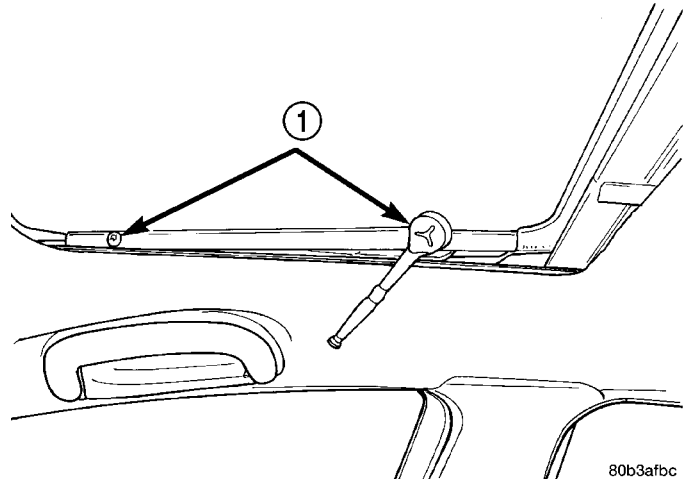
## INSTALLATION

- (1) Place wind deflector at 90% in the vertical position to the sunroof. With the sunroof open.
- (2) Push ends of the deflector towards the front of the vehicle to engage ends.
- (3) Lower wind deflector to normal position.
- (4) Push one corner to the opposite side of the vehicle until tab clears vehicle body and lower deflector for that corner.
- (5) Push the side that was just installed completely down.
- (6) Push the opposite corner cross vehicle until tab clears the body. Then lower deflector to position.
- (7) Test sunroof operation.

## GLASS PANEL

## REMOVAL

- (1) Slide sunshade rearward to the open position.
- (2) Move the glass panel to the fully closed position.
- (3) Remove the four attaching screws (Fig. 5).
- (4) Lift off glass panel and remove from vehicle.



**Fig. 5 Sunroof Glass Panel Removal**

1 - ATTACHING SCREW

## INSTALLATION

**NOTE:** Sunroof glass must be set in place and attached as close as possible to flush with the roof surface. For wind noise reasons, care must be taken to ensure that the glass is not remounted either a) Overflush to the roof surface at the front edge of the glass, or b) Underflush to the roof surface at the rear edge of the glass.

- (1) Position glass panel in to opening.
- (2) Start the four attaching screws.
- (3) Tighten screws.
- (4) Verify sunroof operation and alignment. Check fit and adjust as necessary. (Refer to 23 - BODY/SUNROOF/GLASS PANEL - ADJUSTMENTS - FIT)

## ADJUSTMENTS

## ADJUSTMENTS - FIT

- (1) Move the sunshade rearward to the open position.
- (2) Move the sunroof glass panel to the fully closed position.
- (3) Loosen the forward screws on each side enough to make the front adjustment.



## GLASS PANEL (Continued)

(4) Adjust the front of the sunroof glass panel 1 mm (1/32 inch) below the top surface of the roof panel.

(5) Tighten the front two screws.

(6) Loosen the rear screws on each side enough to make the rear adjustment.

(7) Adjust the rear of the sunroof glass panel 1 mm (1/32 inch) above the top surface of the roof panel.

(8) Tighten the rear two screws.

(9) Check for proper fit. If not OK, repeat glass panel adjustment.

## ADJUSTMENT - TIMING

**NOTE:** A gage comes with the new motor.

(1) If the glass panel was not in the fully closed position, when the motor was removed, the sunroof glass panel needs to be timed, before the new motor is installed.

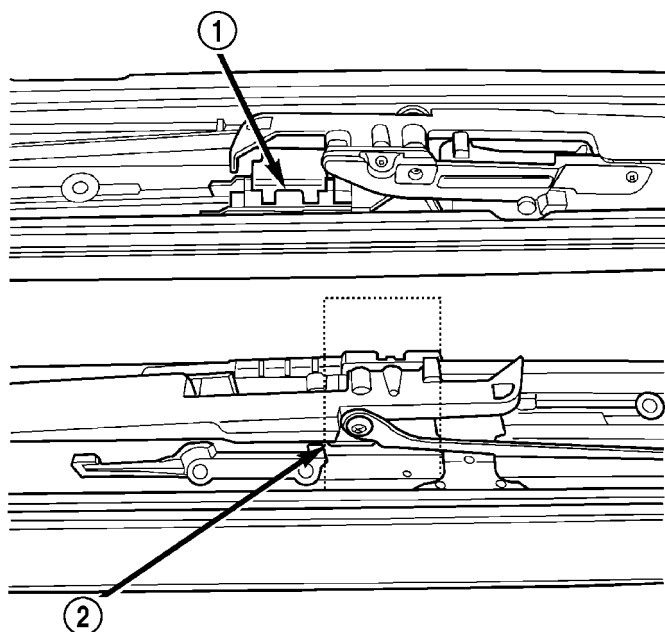
(2) Remove sunroof glass panel.

(3) Set gage into the track near the rear of the opening between the driver slide and the bracket (Fig. 6).

(4) Move the driver slide forward or aft to get proper setting.

(5) Repeat the operation on the other side.

(6) Install drive motor.



80b34e19

**Fig. 6 Sunroof Drive Cable Timing**

- 1 - MOVE DRIVER SLIDE FORWARD/AFT  
2 - GAGE

## SUNSHADE

## REMOVAL

(1) Open sunroof approximately 50% of the way.

(2) Push sunshade down until tabs clear glass.

(3) Move sunshade forward of glass panel.

(4) Compress the spring loaded plungers holding the guide blocks in the track.

(5) Slide the sunshade forward while lifting the front through the opening until the rear guide blocks are accessible.

**CAUTION:** Use care not to crease the sunshade when removing or installing.

(6) Disengage rear guide blocks from track.

## INSTALLATION

(1) Install the sunshade from outside of the vehicle with the sunroof fully open.

(2) Put rear guide blocks into sunshade guide track.

(3) Push sunshade back and down through the sunroof opening.

(4) Using a flat blade tool, put front guide blocks into the sunshade track. By pushing the block towards the center of the vehicle.

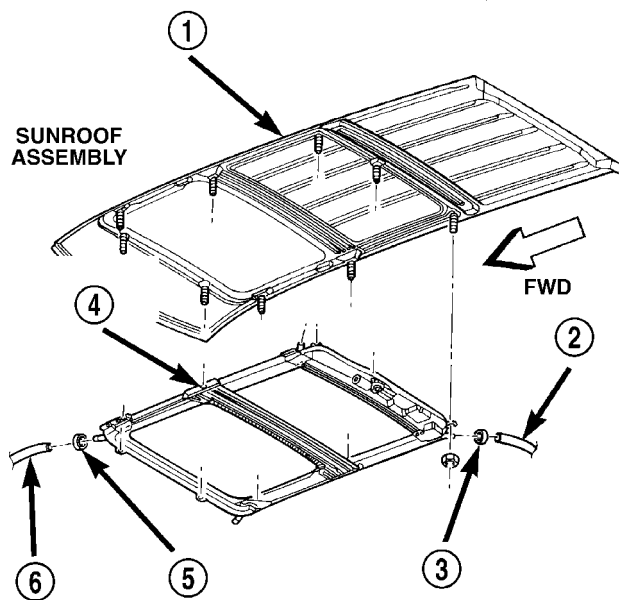
(5) Move the glass panel to approximately halfway to the fully closed position.

(6) Push sunshade down until the sunshade clears the glass then move sunshade rearward behind the glass panel.

## HOUSING ASSEMBLY

### REMOVAL

- (1) Move glass panel to the fully closed position.
- (2) Disconnect battery negative cable.
- (3) Recline both front seats.
- (4) Remove headliner. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/HEADLINER - REMOVAL)
- (5) Disconnect the drain tubes from sunroof housing (Fig. 7).
- (6) Loosen fasteners attaching sunroof housing assembly.
- (7) With the aid of a helper, remove fasteners attaching sunroof housing assembly to roof panel.



**Fig. 7 SUNROOF ASSEMBLY**

80b9a523

- 1 - ROOF
- 2 - DRAIN HOSE
- 3 - CLAMP
- 4 - SUNROOF ASSEMBLY
- 5 - CLAMP
- 6 - DRAIN HOSE

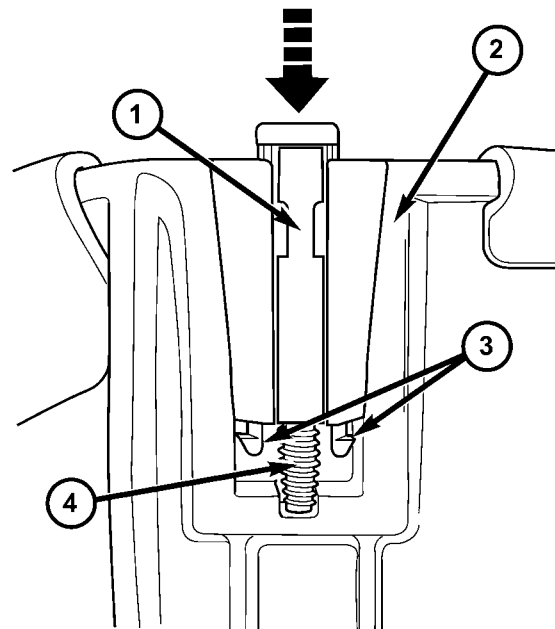
### INSTALLATION

- (1) Raise the sunroof housing assembly and guide into position and start fasteners (Fig. 7).
- (2) Tighten the fasteners, front to rear, attaching the sunroof module to roof panel. Tighten the fasteners, front to rear, to 11 N·m (97 in. lbs.) torque.
- (3) Connect the drain tubes to the sunroof housing.
- (4) Set headliner into position.
- (5) Connect express module, drive motor, and control switch wire connectors.
- (6) Test sunroof operation, adjust as necessary.
- (7) Finish installing the headliner. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/HEADLINER - INSTALLATION)
- (8) Connect battery negative cable.

## SUNSHADE - SLIDE BLOCK AND SPRING

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove sunshade. (Refer to 23 - BODY/SUNROOF/SUNSHADE - REMOVAL)
- (2) Compress guide block locking tabs to remove the old block and spring (Fig. 8).



8108058c

**Fig. 8 SUNSHADE GUIDE BLOCK AND SPRING**

- 1 - Sunshade Guide Block (Replace)
- 2 - Sunshade
- 3 - Guide Block Locking Tabs
- 4 - Guide Block Spring (Replace)

### INSTALLATION

**NOTE: MAKE CERTAIN THAT BOTH GUIDE BLOCK AND SPRING ARE REPLACED.**

- (1) Install guide block and spring assemblies.
- (2) Install the sunshade. (Refer to 23 - BODY/SUNROOF/SUNSHADE - INSTALLATION)

WEATHERSTRIP/SEALS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

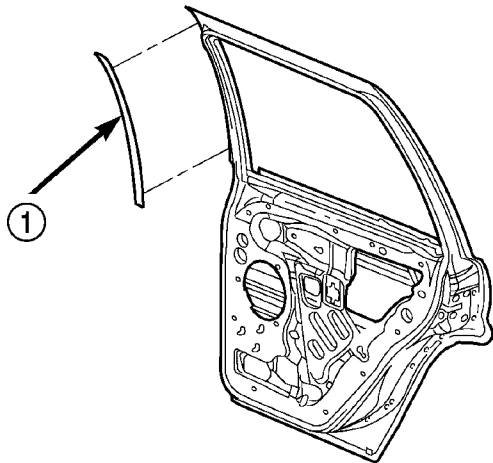
	page		page
<b>B-PILLAR DOOR SEAL</b>		<b>INSTALLATION</b>	123
REMOVAL	120	<b>HOOD SEAL</b>	
INSTALLATION	120	REMOVAL	123
<b>COWL WEATHERSTRIP</b>		INSTALLATION	123
REMOVAL	121	<b>LIFTGATE OPENING WEATHERSTRIP</b>	
INSTALLATION	121	REMOVAL	124
<b>FRONT DOOR GLASS RUN WEATHERSTRIP</b>		INSTALLATION	124
REMOVAL	121	<b>RDR INNER BELT WEATHERSTRIP</b>	
INSTALLATION	121	REMOVAL	124
<b>FRONT DOOR INNER BELT WEATHERSTRIP</b>		INSTALLATION	124
REMOVAL	121	<b>RDR OUTER BELT WEATHERSTRIP</b>	
INSTALLATION	121	REMOVAL	124
<b>FDR OUTER BELT WEATHERSTRIP</b>		INSTALLATION	124
REMOVAL	122	<b>RDR SECONDARY WEATHERSTRIP</b>	
INSTALLATION	122	REMOVAL	125
<b>FLIP-UP GLASS WEATHERSTRIP</b>		INSTALLATION	125
REMOVAL	122	<b>REAR DOOR WEATHERSTRIP</b>	
INSTALLATION	122	REMOVAL	125
<b>FRONT DOOR SECONDARY WEATHERSTRIP</b>		INSTALLATION	125
REMOVAL	122	<b>ROOF RAIL WEATHERSTRIP / RETAINR</b>	
INSTALLATION	122	REMOVAL	126
<b>FRONT DOOR WEATHERSTRIP</b>		INSTALLATION	126
REMOVAL	123		

B-PILLAR DOOR SEAL

REMOVAL

The B-pillar seal is attached to the rear door with adhesive tape.

- (1) Peel seal from the door (Fig. 1).



80b46b1e

Fig. 1 B-Pillar Seal

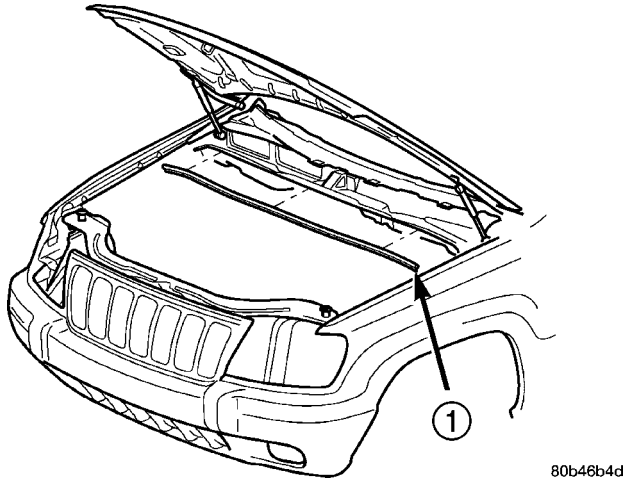
INSTALLATION

- (1) Clean contact area with Mopar® Super Kleen or equivalent.
- (2) Remove carrier from seal.
- (3) Align seal on door and press into place.

## COWL WEATHERSTRIP

### REMOVAL

- (1) Raise hood.
- (2) Pull cowl plenum seal from cowl.
- (3) Separate cowl plenum seal from cowl (Fig. 2).



**Fig. 2 Cowl Plenum Seal**

1 - PLENUM SEAL

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Position cowl plenum seal on cowl.
- (2) Press cowl plenum seal to seat.

## FRONT DOOR GLASS RUN CHANNEL WEATHERSTRIP

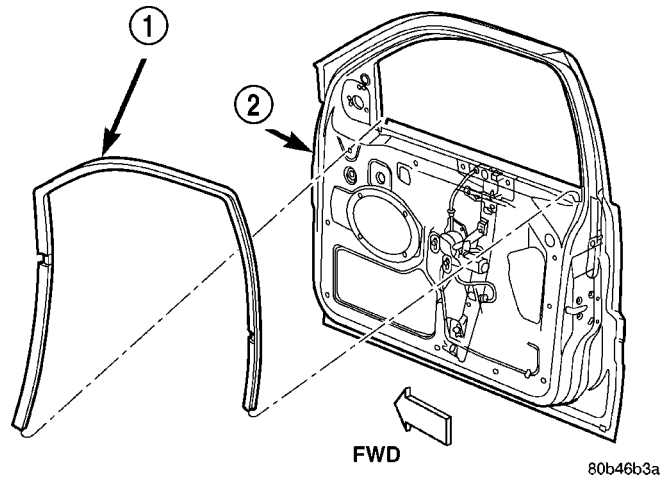
### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove the front door glass. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/DOOR GLASS - REMOVAL)
- (2) Grasp seal from upper run channel corner and firmly pull weatherstrip from flange and run channel (Fig. 3).
- (3) Remove the glass run from below the belt channels & separate from the door.

### INSTALLATION

**NOTE:** Soapy water may be used to aid in installation.

- (1) Position weatherstrip in channel aligning upper rear corner.
- (2) Press weatherstrip into position.
- (3) Press weatherstrip into lower glass run channels.
- (4) Install front door speaker.
- (5) Install the door glass. (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/DOOR GLASS - INSTALLATION)



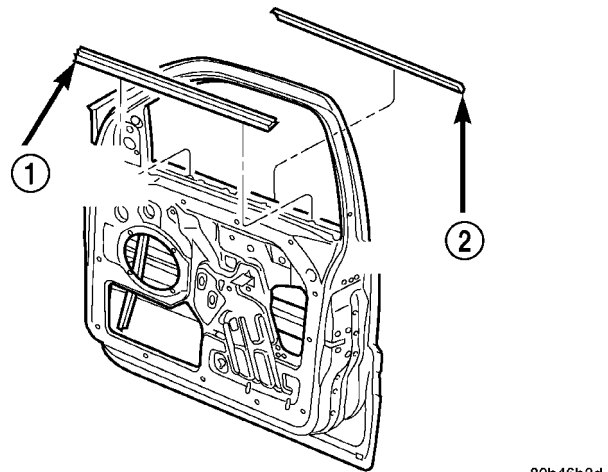
**Fig. 3 FRONT DOOR GLASS RUN CHANNEL WEATHERSTRIP**

1 - GLASS RUN CHANNEL WEATHERSTRIP  
2 - DOOR

## FRONT DOOR INNER BELT WEATHERSTRIP

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove door trim panel (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/TRIM PANEL - REMOVAL).
- (2) Using a trim stick or other suitable device, carefully pry up inner edge of seal (Fig. 4).
- (3) Grasp the edge of the seal and pull upward to remove seal from door flange.



**Fig. 4 Inner/Outer Belt Weather Strip**

1 - INNER BELT WEATHERSTRIP  
2 - OUTER BELT WEATHERSTRIP

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Position the seal on the door flange.
- (2) Firmly press downward to seat seal on the door flange.
- (3) Install the door trim panel (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOOR - FRONT/TRIM PANEL - INSTALLATION).

## FDR OUTER BELT WEATHERSTRIP

### REMOVAL

- (1) Lower the door glass.
- (2) Using a trim stick C-4755 or equivalent, pry seal up from flange. (Fig. 4)
- (3) Pull the seal rearward to release from the side view mirror bezel.
- (4) Lift seal and separate from door panel.

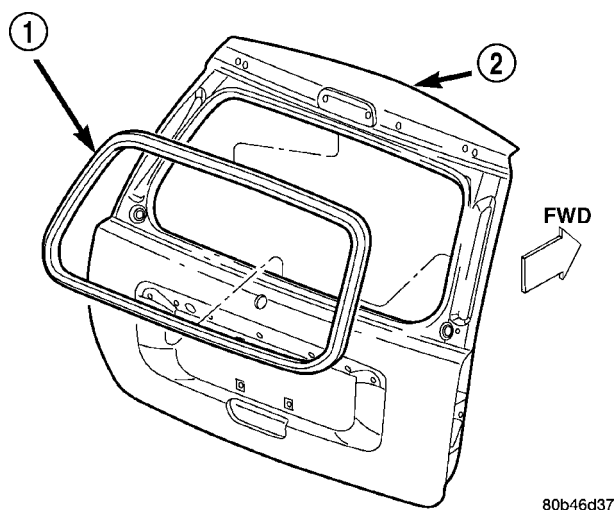
### INSTALLATION

- (1) Position seal on the door panel.
- (2) Push the seal forward to install under the side view mirror bezel.
- (3) Using a mallet or equivalent, tap seal into place.
- (4) Raise the door glass.

## FLIP-UP GLASS WEATHERSTRIP

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove the liftgate trim panel screws at the window opening.
- (2) Raise flip up glass.
- (3) Carefully pull the seal away from the flange around the edge of the glass opening (Fig. 5).
- (4) Remove it from the vehicle.



**Fig. 5 FLIP-UP GLASS WEATHERSTRIP**

1 - WEATHERSTRIP  
2 - LIFTGATE W/FLIP-UP GLASS

### INSTALLATION

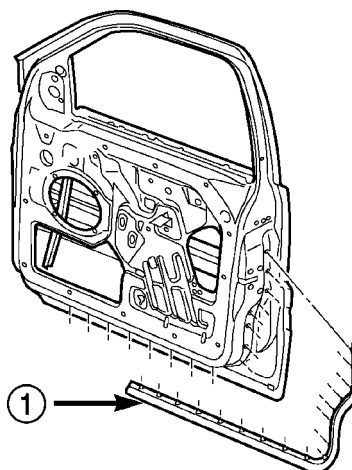
- (1) Thoroughly clean the surface of the flange as necessary.
- (2) Align the weather strip seal with the window opening corners.
- (3) Firmly seat the seal around the entire flange. Join the seal ends together and smooth out any remaining length.
- (4) Weatherstrip break should be 120mm left of latch opening.
- (5) Install the liftgate trim panel screws.

## FRONT DOOR SECONDARY WEATHERSTRIP

### REMOVAL

The front door secondary weatherstrip is attached to the door shutface with push-in fasteners.

- (1) Open door.
- (2) Using a trim panel removal tool, remove push-in fasteners attaching secondary weatherstrip to door shutface (Fig. 6).
- (3) Separate secondary weatherstrip from door.



80b46b2e

**Fig. 6 Front Door Secondary Weatherstrip**

1 - SECONDARY WEATHERSTRIP

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Clean contact area as necessary.
- (2) Position secondary weatherstrip on door shutface.
- (3) Install push-in fasteners attaching secondary weatherstrip to door shutface.



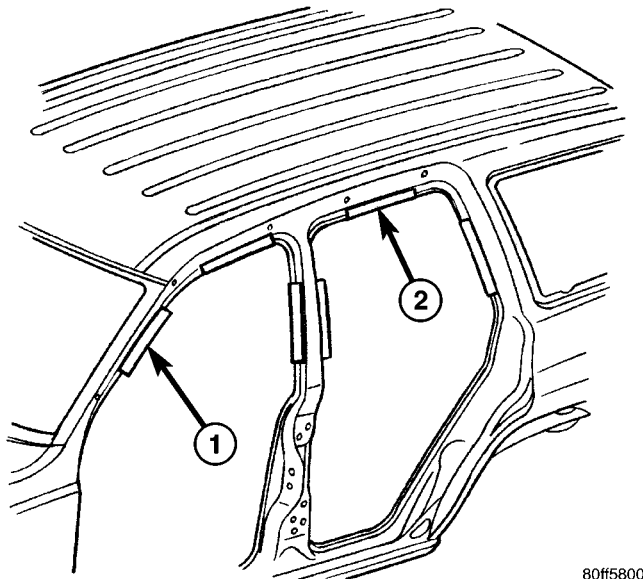
## FRONT DOOR WEATHERSTRIP

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove A-pillar trim (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/A-PILLAR TRIM - REMOVAL).
- (2) Remove B-pillar upper trim (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/B-PILLAR UPPER TRIM - REMOVAL).
- (3) Remove B-pillar lower trim (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/B-PILLAR LOWER TRIM - REMOVAL).
- (4) Pull weatherstrip from door opening flange.

### INSTALLATION

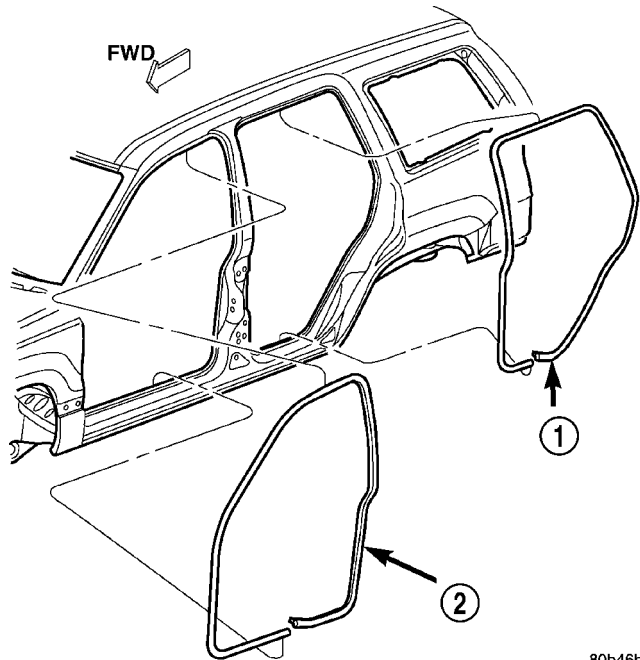
- (1) Apply three 12 inch strips of foam tape to the flange in the areas shown. (Fig. 7)
- (2) Position weatherstrip at corners.
- (3) Move upward and around edge of door opening seating weatherstrip onto flange (Fig. 8).
- (4) Engage connector plug with each end of weatherstrip at bottom of door opening.
- (5) Install B-pillar lower trim (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/B-PILLAR LOWER TRIM - INSTALLATION).
- (6) Install B-pillar upper trim (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/B-PILLAR UPPER TRIM - INSTALLATION).
- (7) Install A-pillar trim (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/A-PILLAR TRIM - INSTALLATION).



80ff5800

**Fig. 7 SEAL TAPE**

- 1 - FRONT DOOR FOAM TAPE (3 12 in. STRIPS)
- 2 - REAR DOOR FOAM TAPE (3 12 in. STRIPS)



80b46b4c

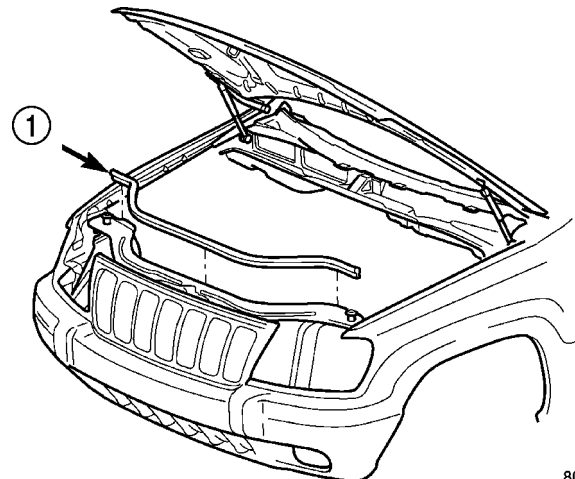
**Fig. 8 Door Opening**

- 1 - REAR DOOR OPENING WEATHERSTRIP
- 2 - FRONT DOOR OPENING WEATHERSTRIP

## HOOD SEAL

### REMOVAL

- (1) Raise hood.
- (2) Pull hood seal from upper radiator crossmember.
- (3) Separate seal from upper radiator crossmember (Fig. 9).



80b46b4e

**Fig. 9 Hood Seal**

- 1 - HOOD SEAL

### INSTALLATION

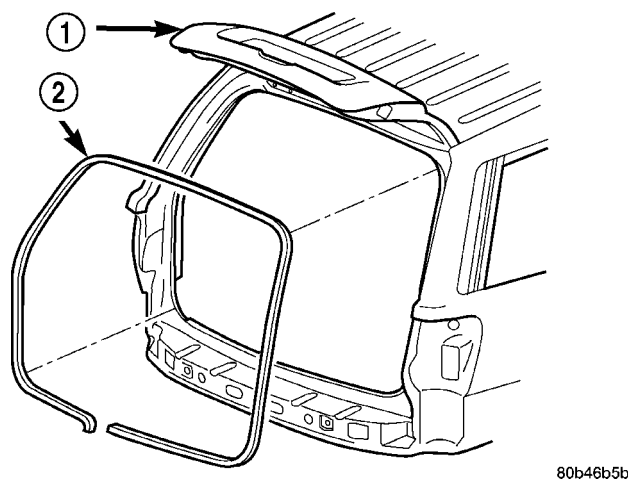
- (1) Position seal on upper radiator crossmember.
- (2) Press seal onto upper radiator crossmember to seat.



## LIFTGATE OPENING WEATHERSTRIP

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove the liftgate scuff plate trim. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/LIFTGATE SCUFF PLATE - REMOVAL)
- (2) Pull seal away from flange around edge of liftgate opening.
- (3) Separate weatherstrip from opening (Fig. 10).
- (4) Clean weatherstrip flange as necessary.



**Fig. 10 LIFTGATE OPENING WEATHERSTRIP**

- 1 - LIFTGATE  
2 - WEATHERSTRIP

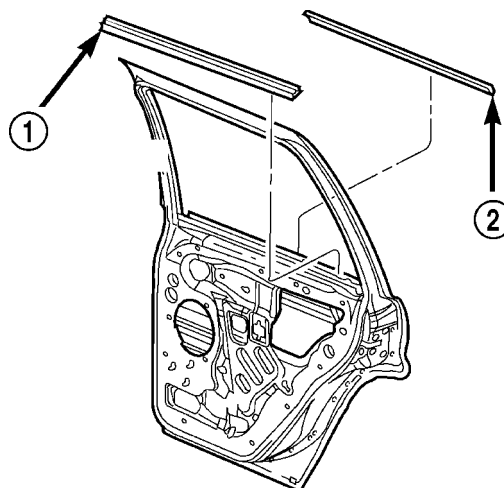
### INSTALLATION

- (1) Position weatherstrip in opening with left end of seal at opening centerline.
- (2) Press weatherstrip onto flange in a clockwise direction.
- (3) Center and butt weatherstrip ends together at centerline.
- (4) Install the liftgate scuff plate trim. (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/LIFTGATE SCUFF PLATE - INSTALLATION)

## RDR INNER BELT WEATHERSTRIP

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove door trim panel (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOORS - REAR/TRIM PANEL - REMOVAL).
- (2) Using a trim stick, carefully pry rear inner edge of inner belt weatherstrip upward.
- (3) Grasp weatherstrip and pull upward to separate from door flange (Fig. 11).



80b46b1c

**Fig. 11 Rear Door Inner/Outer Belt Weatherstrip**

- 1 - INNER BELT WEATHERSTRIP  
2 - OUTER BELT WEATHERSTRIP

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Position weatherstrip on door flange.
- (2) Firmly press downward to seat weatherstrip on flange.
- (3) Install trim panel (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOORS - REAR/TRIM PANEL - INSTALLATION).

## RDR OUTER BELT WEATHERSTRIP

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove trim panel (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOORS - REAR/TRIM PANEL - REMOVAL).
- (2) Using a small flat blade, disengage tangs attaching outer belt weatherstrip to inner door panel.
- (3) Lift weatherstrip upward and separate from door (Fig. 11).

### INSTALLATION

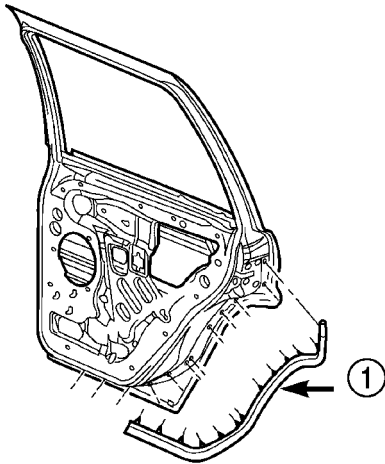
- (1) Position the weatherstrip onto the door flange.
- (2) Force the weatherstrip onto door flange and engage tangs. Continue rearward until it is seated on flange.
- (3) Install trim panel (Refer to 23 - BODY/DOORS - REAR/TRIM PANEL - INSTALLATION).

## RDR SECONDARY WEATHERSTRIP

### REMOVAL

The rear door secondary weatherstrip is attached to the door shutface with push-in fasteners.

- (1) Open door.
- (2) Using a trim panel removal tool, remove push-in fasteners attaching secondary weatherstrip to door shutface.
- (3) Separate secondary weatherstrip from door (Fig. 12).



80b46b1b

**Fig. 12 Rear Door Secondary Weatherstrip**

1 - SECONDARY WEATHERSTRIP

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Clean contact area as necessary.
- (2) Position secondary weatherstrip on door shutface.
- (3) Install push-in fasteners attaching secondary weatherstrip to door shutface.

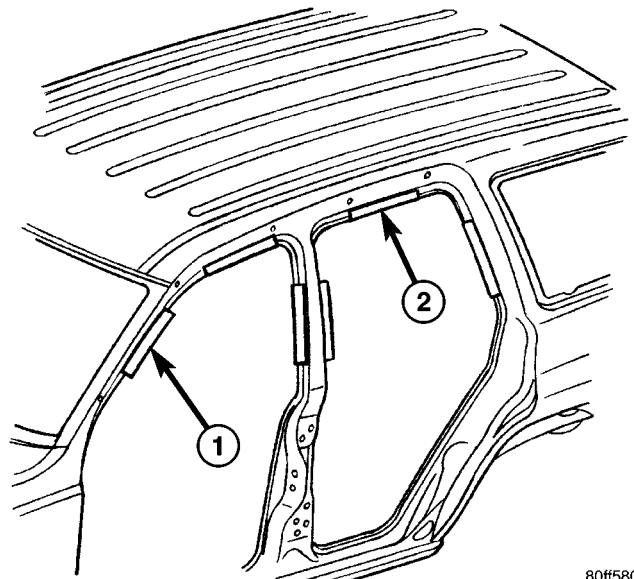
## REAR DOOR WEATHERSTRIP

### REMOVAL

- (1) Remove C-pillar trim (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/C-PILLAR TRIM - REMOVAL).
- (2) Remove B-pillar upper trim (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/B-PILLAR UPPER TRIM - REMOVAL).
- (3) Remove B-pillar lower trim (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/B-PILLAR LOWER TRIM - REMOVAL).
- (4) Remove screws at front of quarter trim panel.
- (5) Pull weatherstrip from door opening flange.

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Apply three 12 inch strips of foam tape to the flange in the areas shown. (Fig. 13)
- (2) Position weatherstrip at corners.
- (3) Move upward and around edge of door opening seating weatherstrip onto flange (Fig. 8).
- (4) Engage connector plug with each end of weatherstrip at bottom of door opening.
- (5) Install screws at front of quarter trim panel.
- (6) Install B-pillar lower trim (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/B-PILLAR LOWER TRIM - INSTALLATION).
- (7) Install B-pillar upper trim (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/B-PILLAR UPPER TRIM - INSTALLATION).
- (8) Install C-pillar trim (Refer to 23 - BODY/INTERIOR/C-PILLAR TRIM - INSTALLATION).



80ff5800

**Fig. 13 SEAL TAPE**

1 - FRONT DOOR FOAM TAPE (3 12 in. STRIPS)  
2 - REAR DOOR FOAM TAPE (3 12 in. STRIPS)

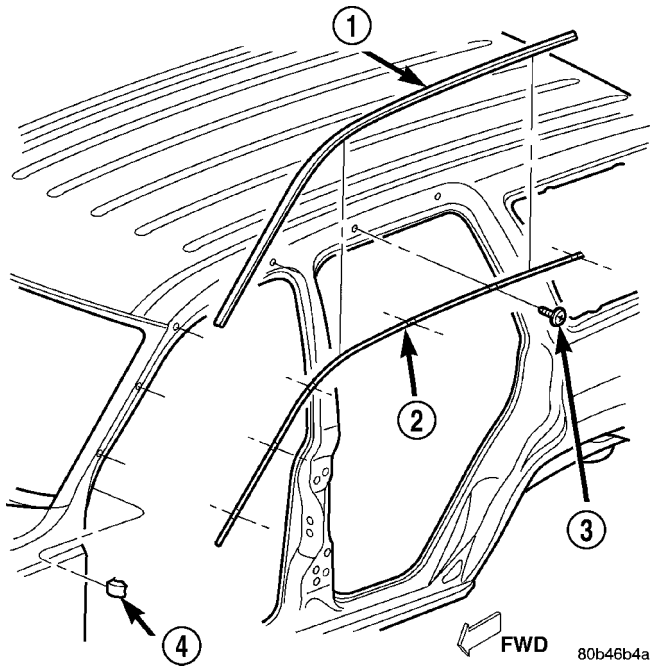
## ROOF RAIL WEATHERSTRIP / RETAINER

### REMOVAL

- (1) Open front and rear doors.
- (2) Remove secondary seal from retainer to access the screws holding the retainer to the A pillar and roof panel.
- (3) Remove the screws holding the retainer in place (Fig. 14).
- (4) Remove the retainer.

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Position the retainer on the A pillar and roof panel.
- (2) Align the screw holes and install the screws.
- (3) Install secondary seal.



**Fig. 14 Upper Body Seal With Retainer**

- 1 - ROOF RAIL WEATHERSTRIP
- 2 - RETAINER
- 3 - SCREW
- 4 - BLOCKER

BODY STRUCTURE

TABLE OF CONTENTS

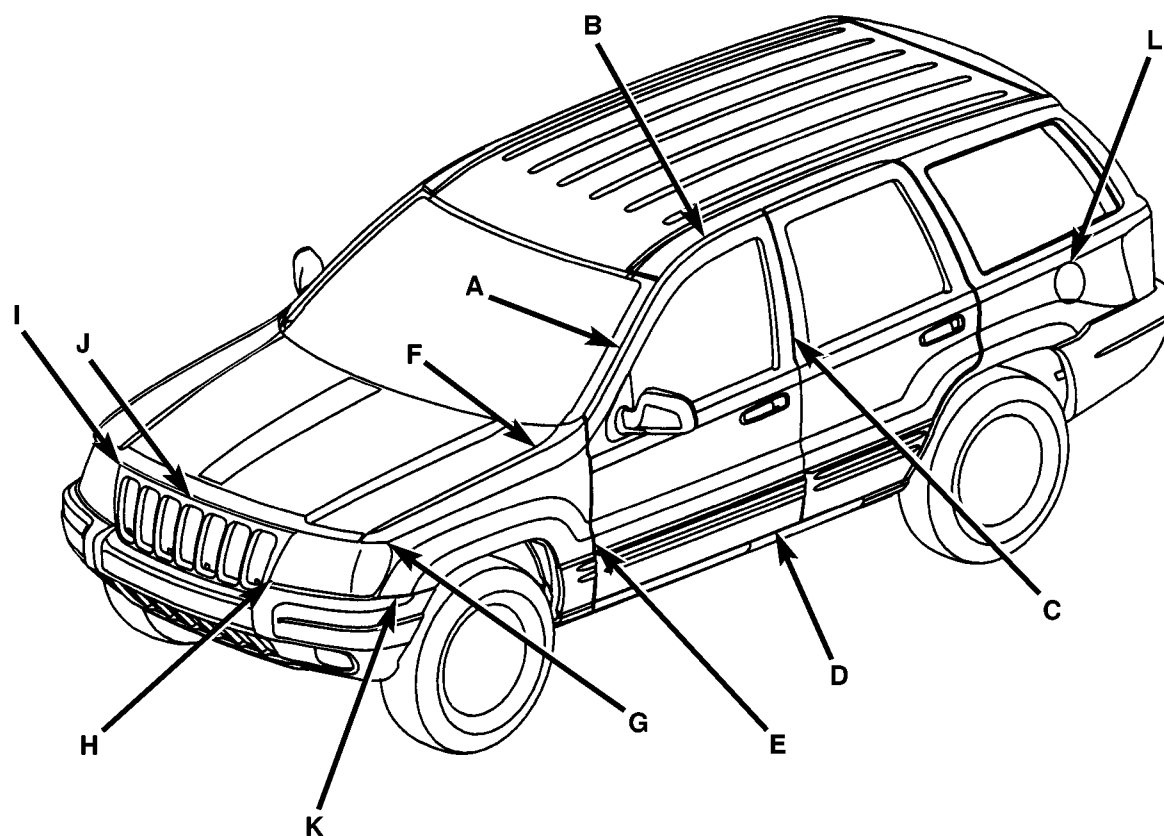
	page		page
<b>GAP AND FLUSH</b>		<b>STRUCTURAL ADHESIVE LOCATIONS</b>	
SPECIFICATIONS - GAP AND FLUSH      .....	127	SPECIFICATIONS - STRUCTURAL ADHESIVE	
<b>OPENING DIMENSIONS</b>		LOCATIONS      .....	153
SPECIFICATIONS - BODY OPENING		<b>WELD LOCATIONS</b>	
DIMENSIONS      .....	130	SPECIFICATIONS	
<b>SEALER LOCATIONS</b>		WELD LOCATIONS      .....	169
SPECIFICATIONS			
SEALER LOCATIONS      .....	134		

GAP AND FLUSH

SPECIFICATIONS - GAP AND FLUSH

DESCRIPTION	FIGURE
FRONT VIEW	1
REAR VIEW	2

## GAP AND FLUSH (Continued)



808c81fd

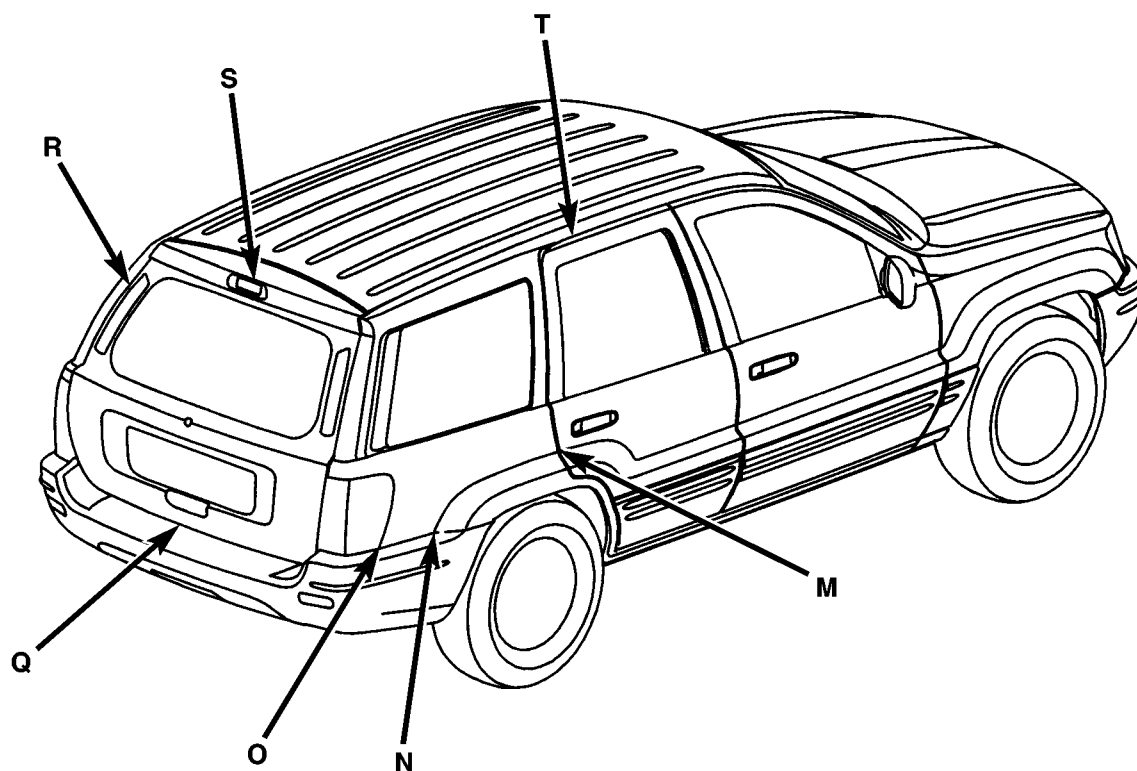
**Fig. 1 FRONT VIEW****NOTE:**

All measurements are in mm.

## FRONT VIEW

LOCATION	DESCRIPTION	GAP	FLUSH
A	Front Door to Windshield Pillar	N/A	3.0 +/- 1.0
B	Front Door Header to Aperture	6.0 +/- 1.5	1.0 +/- 1.5
C	Front Door to Rear Door	5.0 +/- 1.0	0.0 +1.5/-1.0
D	Front Door to Aperture at Sill	7.0 +/- 1.5	N/A
E	Front Door to Fender	5.0 +/- 1.0	1.0 +/- 1.5
F	Hood to Fender	5.0 +/- 1.0	0.0 +/- 1.0
G	Headlamp to Fender	5.0 +/- 2.0	3.0 +/- 2.0
H	Headlamp to Grille	5.5 +/- 2.0	0.0 +2.0/-1.0
I	Grille to Headlamp	N/A	0.0 +/- 1.0
J	Grille to Hood	8.75 +/- 2.25	0.8 +/- 2.0
K	Front Fascia to Fender	Net + 1.0 - 0.0	3.0 +/- 2.0
L	Fuel Filler Door to Bodyside	3.0 +/- 0.75	0.5 +/- 0.75

## GAP AND FLUSH (Continued)



808c8200

**Fig. 2 REAR VIEW****NOTE:**

All measurements are in mm.

## REAR VIEW

LOCATION	DESCRIPTION	GAP	FLUSH
M	Rear Door to Quarter Panel	5.0 +/- 1.0	0.5 +/- 1.0
N	Aperture to Rear Fascia	Net to 1.0	3.0 +/- 2.0
O	Taillamp to Quarter Panel	2.0 +/- 1.5	3.0 +/- 1.5
Q	Liftgate to Fascia	10.0 +/- 3.0	N/A
R	Liftgate to Aperture	5.0 +/- 1.5	1.0 +/- 1.5
S	Liftgate to Roof	11.0 +/- 1.5	0.0 +/- 1.0
T	Rear Door Header to Aperture	6.0 +/- 1.5	2.0 +/- 1.5

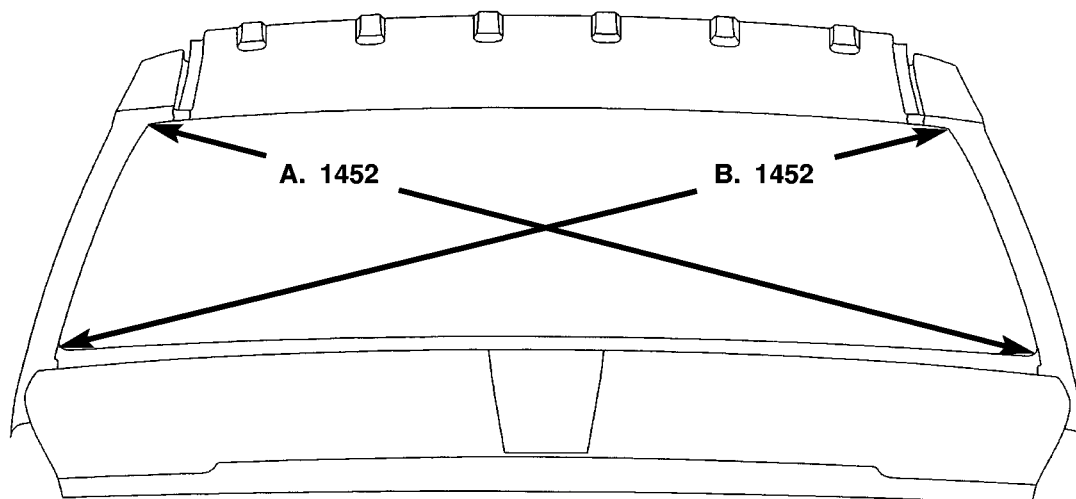


OPENING DIMENSIONS

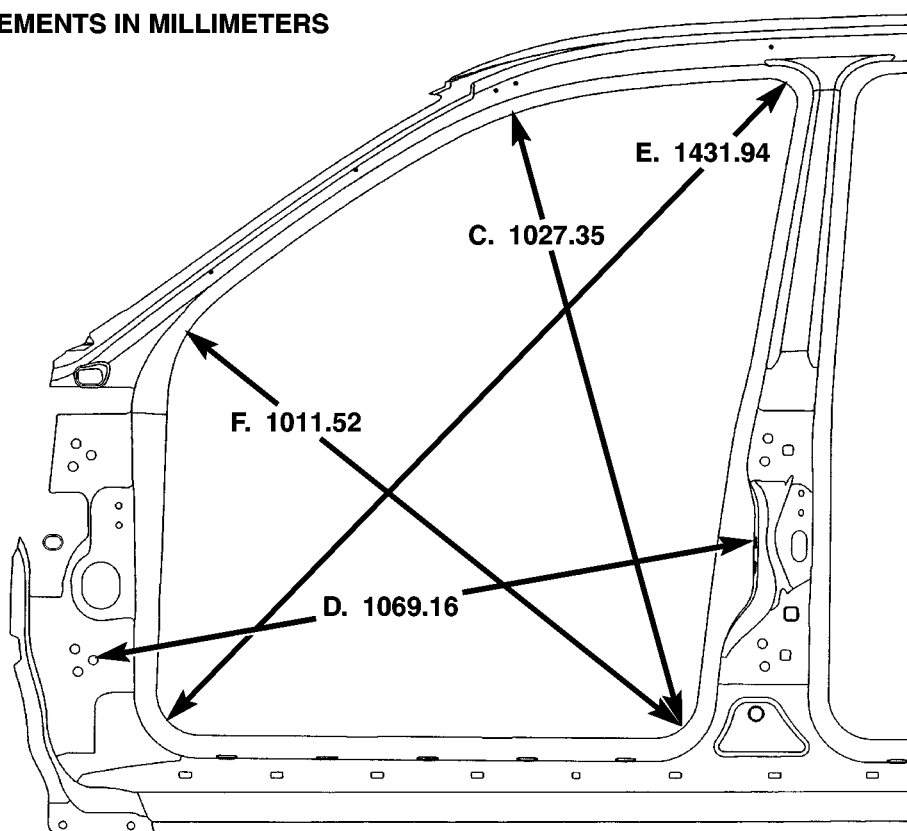
SPECIFICATIONS - BODY OPENING  
DIMENSIONS

DESCRIPTION	FIGURE
WINDSHIELD AND FRONT DOOR OPENING	3
REAR DOOR AND QUARTER GLASS OPENING	4
LIFTGATE OPENING AND ENGINE COMPARTMENT	5

## OPENING DIMENSIONS (Continued)



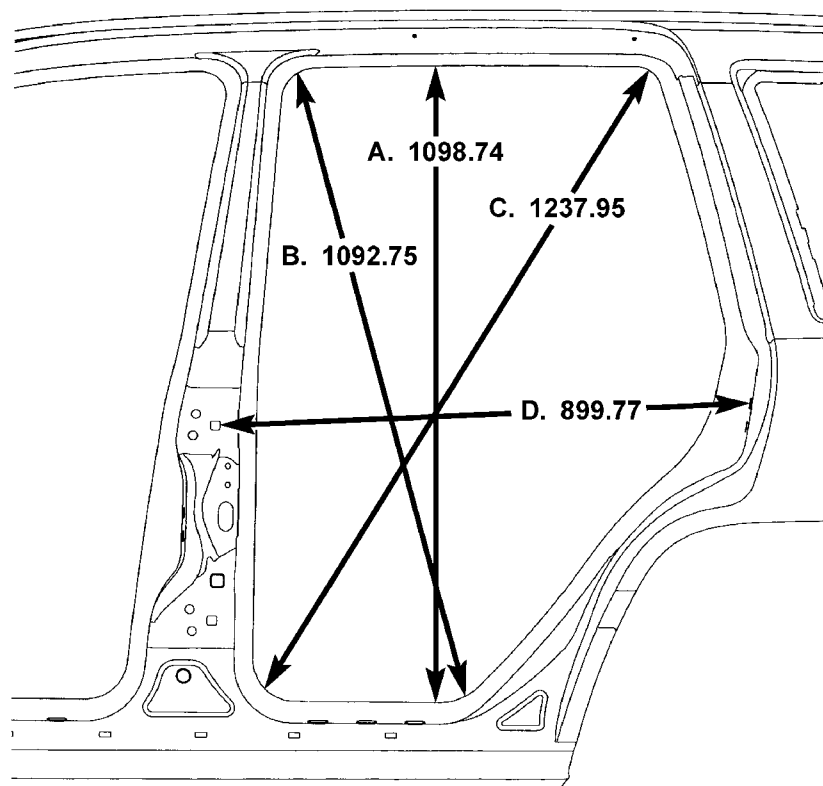
## ALL MEASUREMENTS IN MILLIMETERS



- A. & B.** Center of radius at bottom to center of radius at top.
- C.** Center of front door lower rear corner radius to center of A-pillar radius.
- D.** Center of door hinge mount to center of door striker mount.
- E.** Center of radius at bottom front to center of radius at top rear.
- F.** Center of radius at bottom rear to center of radius at lower A-pillar.

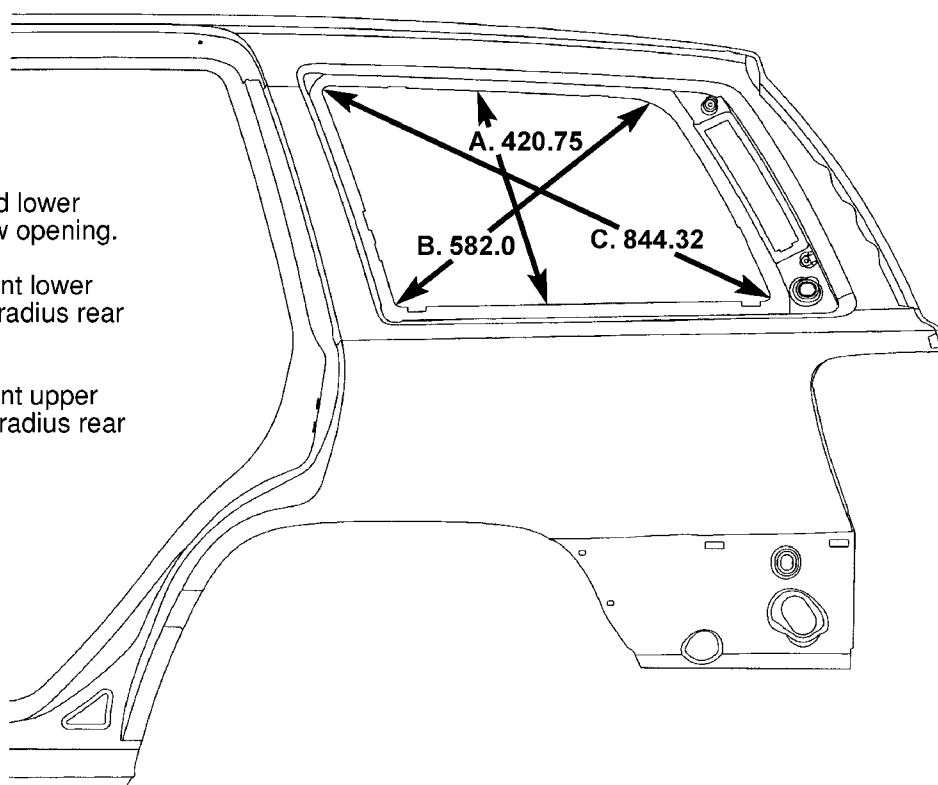
**Fig. 3 WINDSHIELD AND FRONT DOOR OPENING**

## OPENING DIMENSIONS (Continued)



- A. Quarter panel to front outer body side upper and lower seam.
- B. Center of front upper door radius to center of rear lower door radius.
- C. Center of front lower door radius to center of rear upper door radius.
- D. Rear door hinge mount to rear door striker mount.

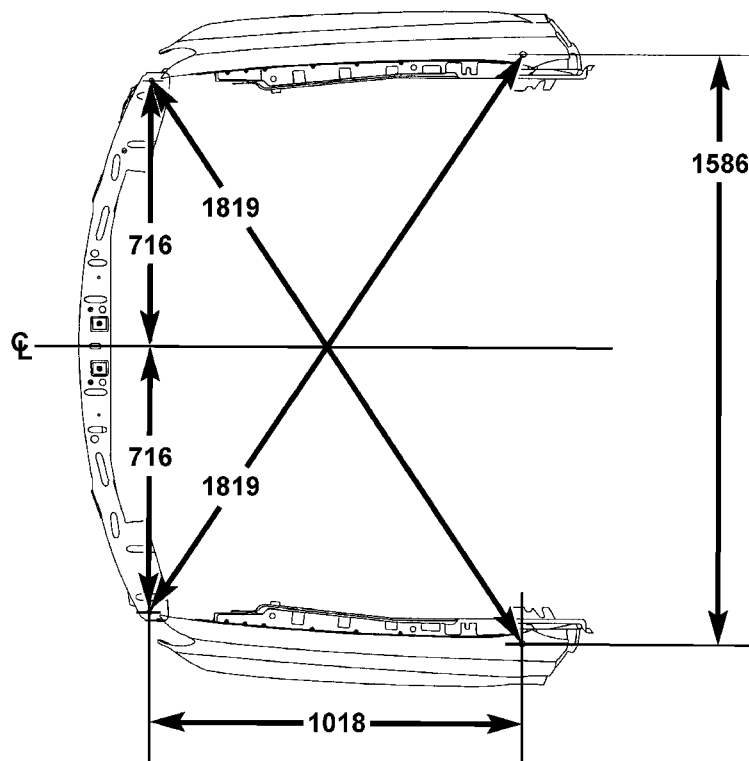
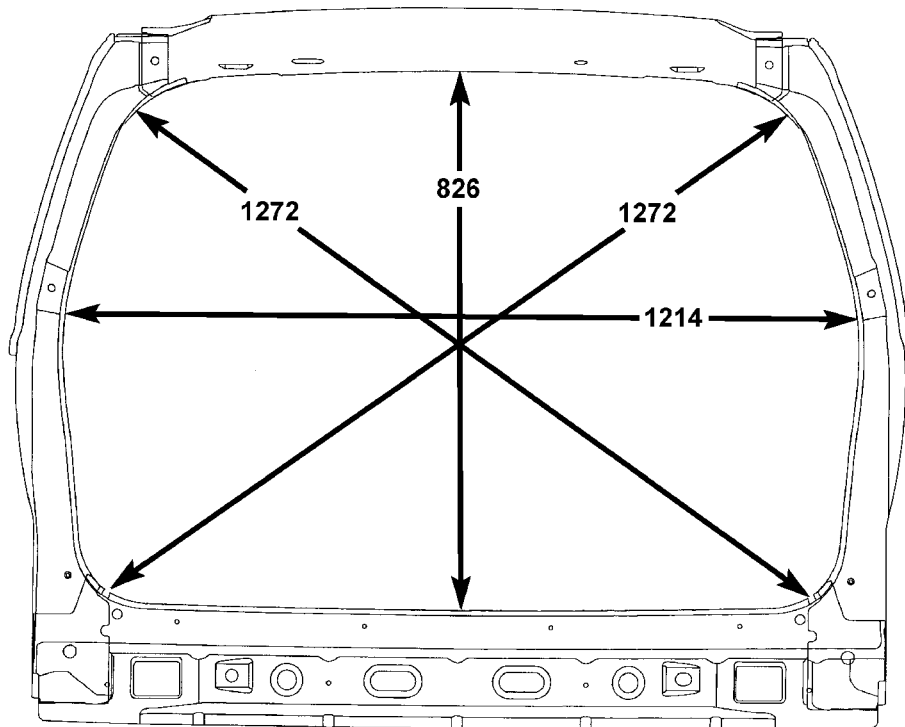
- A. Center of upper and lower rear quarter window opening.
- B. Center of radius front lower corner to center of radius rear upper corner.
- C. Center of radius front upper corner to center of radius rear lower corner.



**ALL MEASUREMENTS IN MILLIMETERS**

**Fig. 4 REAR DOOR AND QUARTER GLASS OPENING**

OPENING DIMENSIONS (Continued)



**ALL MEASUREMENTS IN MILLIMETERS**

**Fig. 5 LIFTGATE OPENING AND ENGINE COMPARTMENT**

## SEALER LOCATIONS

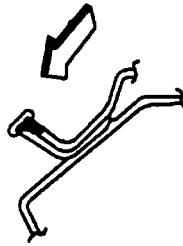
## SPECIFICATIONS

## SEALER LOCATIONS

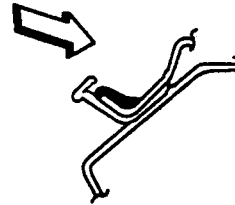
## INDEX

DESCRIPTION	FIGURE
APPLICATION METHODS	6
COWL PLENUM AND DASH PANEL	7
DASH, COWL AND PLENUM	8
INNER FENDER AND COWL	9
LOWER PLENUM AND BAFFLE	10
A-PILLAR	11
COWL SIDE ATTACHMENT	12
BODYSIDE ATTACHMENT	13
BODYSIDE INNER AND OUTER TO COWL	14
FENDER ATTACHMENT	15
DOOR HINGE BOLT HOLES	16
A-PILLAR AND B-PILLAR HINGE AREA	17
B-PILLAR AND SILL	18
SILL AND B-PILLAR	19
BODYSIDE APERTURE AND REAR WHEELHOUSE	20
FUEL FILLER GUSSET	21
OUTER WHEELHOUSE FLANGE	22
LIFTGATE OPENING	23
INNER WHEELHOUSE FLANGE TO BODYSIDE APERTURE	24
WHEELHOUSE LOWER	25
REAR INNER CROSSMEMBER	26
ROOF TO BODY SIDE APERTURE	27

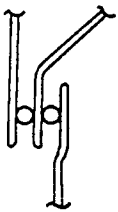
SEALER LOCATIONS (Continued)



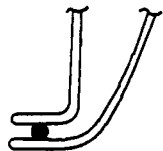
HOLD GUN NOZZLE IN DIRECTION OF ARROW IN ORDER TO EFFECTIVELY SEAL METAL JOINTS.



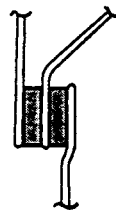
DO NOT HOLD GUN NOZZLE IN DIRECTION OF ARROW. SEALER APPLIED AS SHOWN IS INEFFECTIVE.



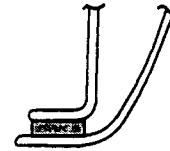
3 METAL THICKNESS



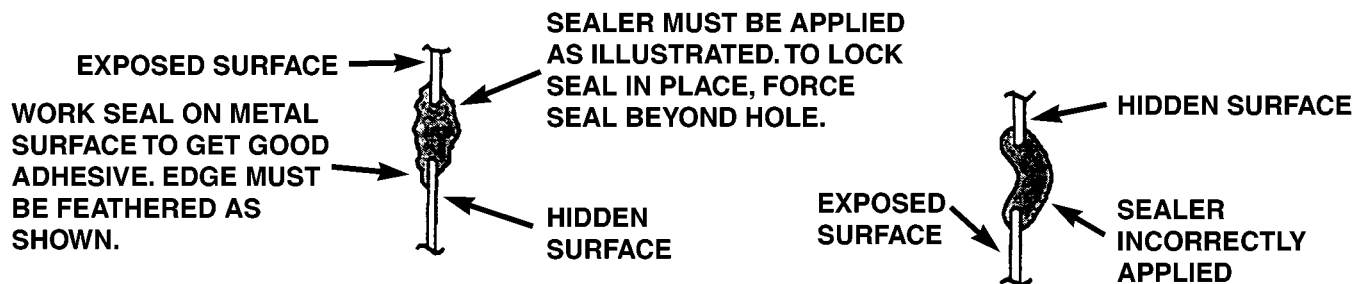
2 METAL THICKNESS



3 METAL THICKNESS



2 METAL THICKNESS






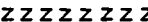
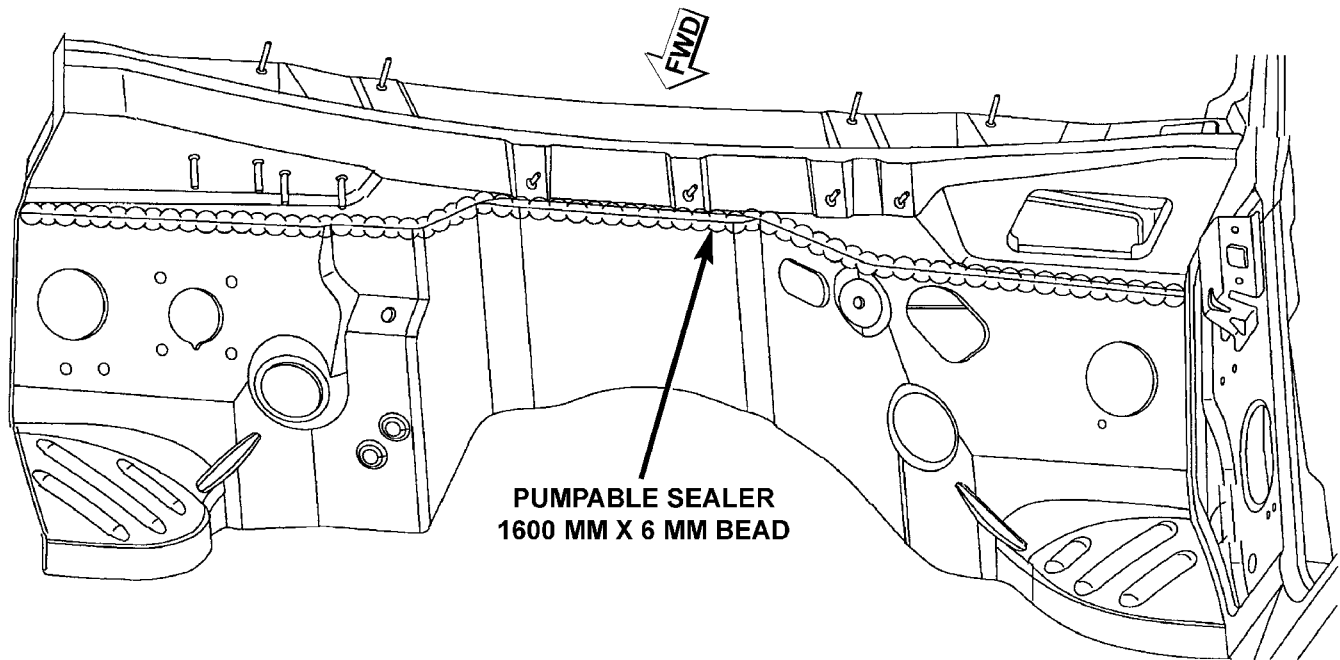
SYMBOLS	
	THUMBGRADEABLE SEALER
	EXTRUDABLE THERMOPLASTIC
	EXPOSED THERMOPLASTIC SEALANT
	HIDDEN SEALANT

Fig. 6 APPLICATION METHODS



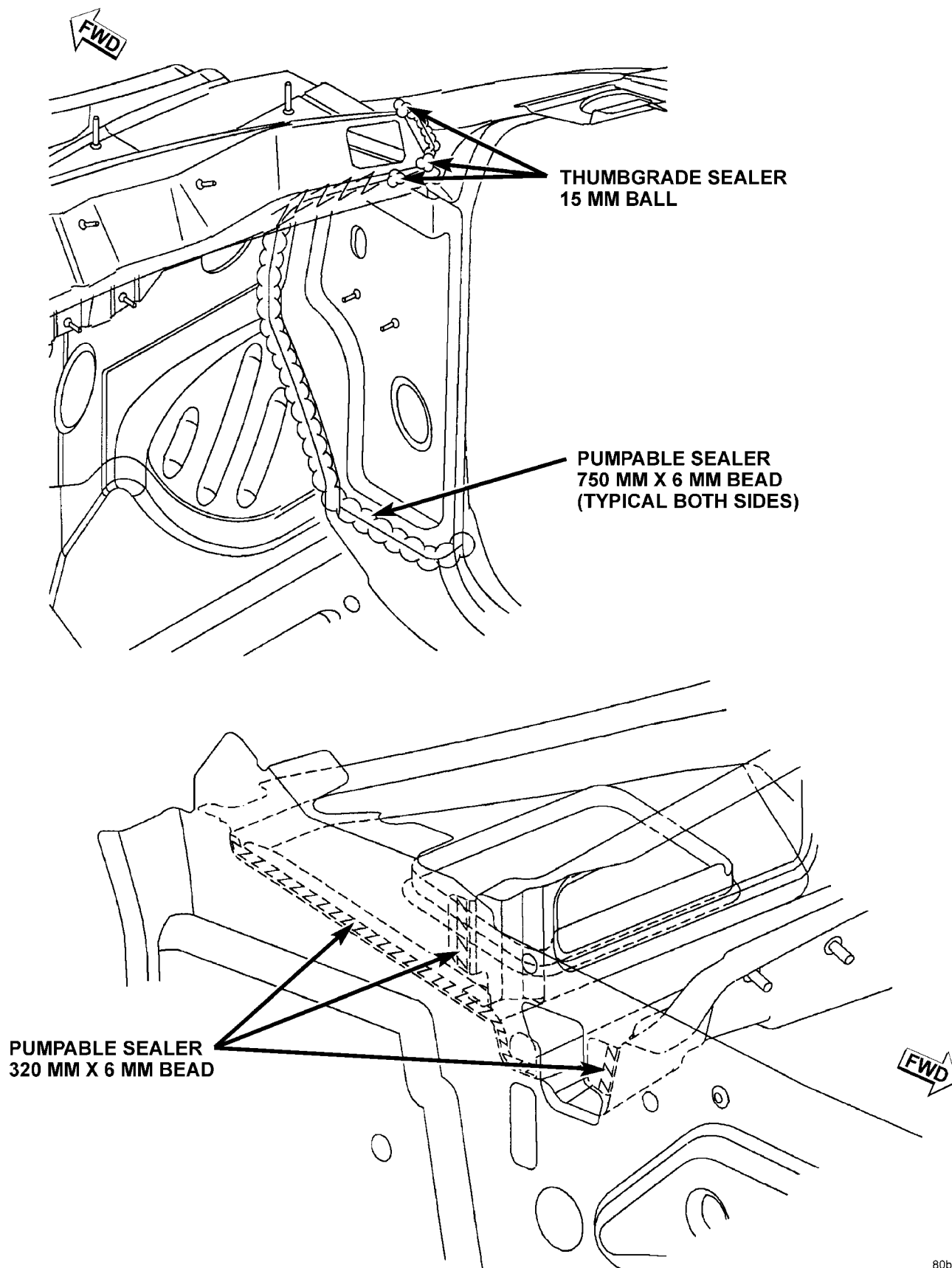
## SEALER LOCATIONS (Continued)



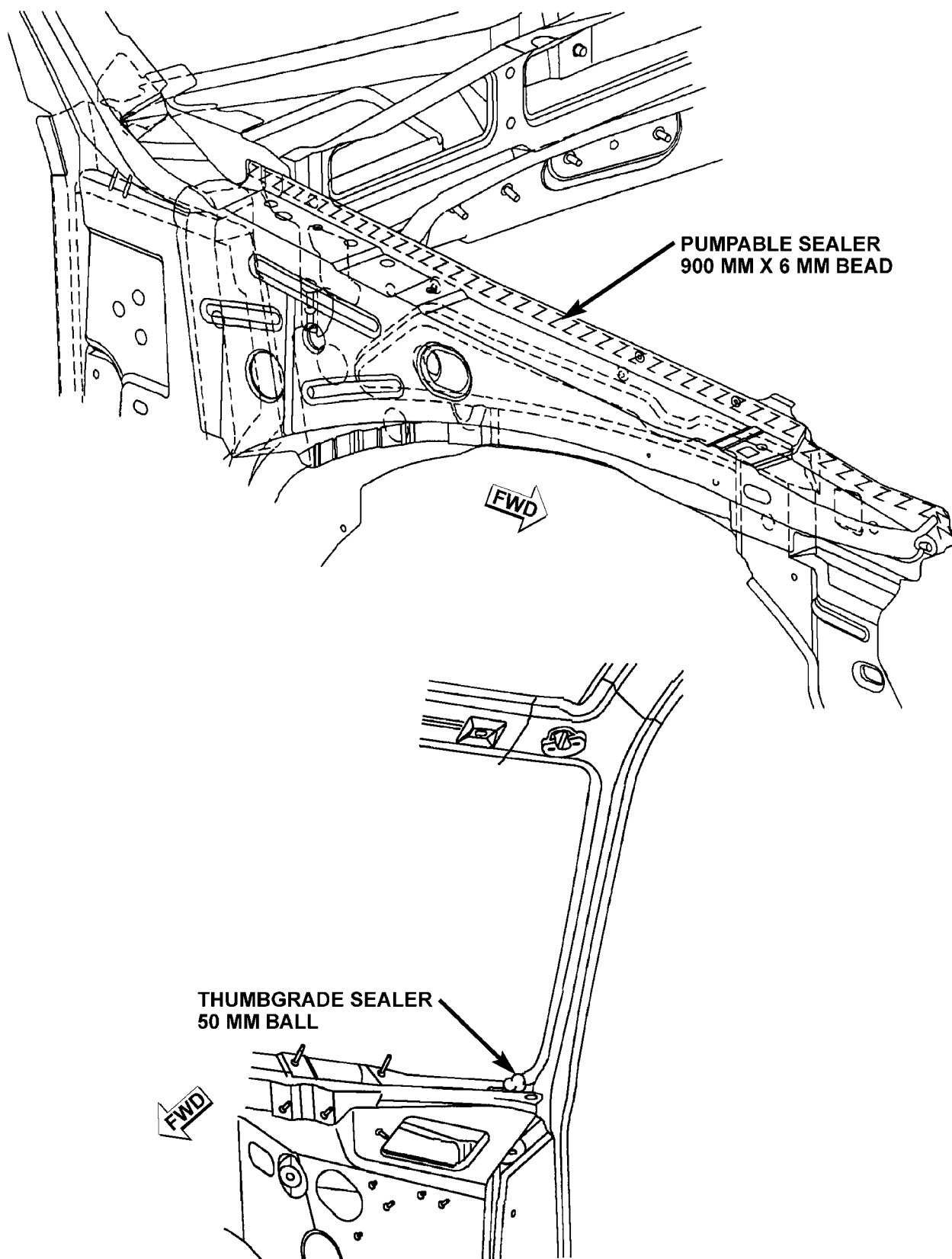
80b6fe1a

**Fig. 7 COWL PLENUM AND DASH PANEL**

## SEALER LOCATIONS (Continued)

*Fig. 8 DASH, COWL AND PLENUM*

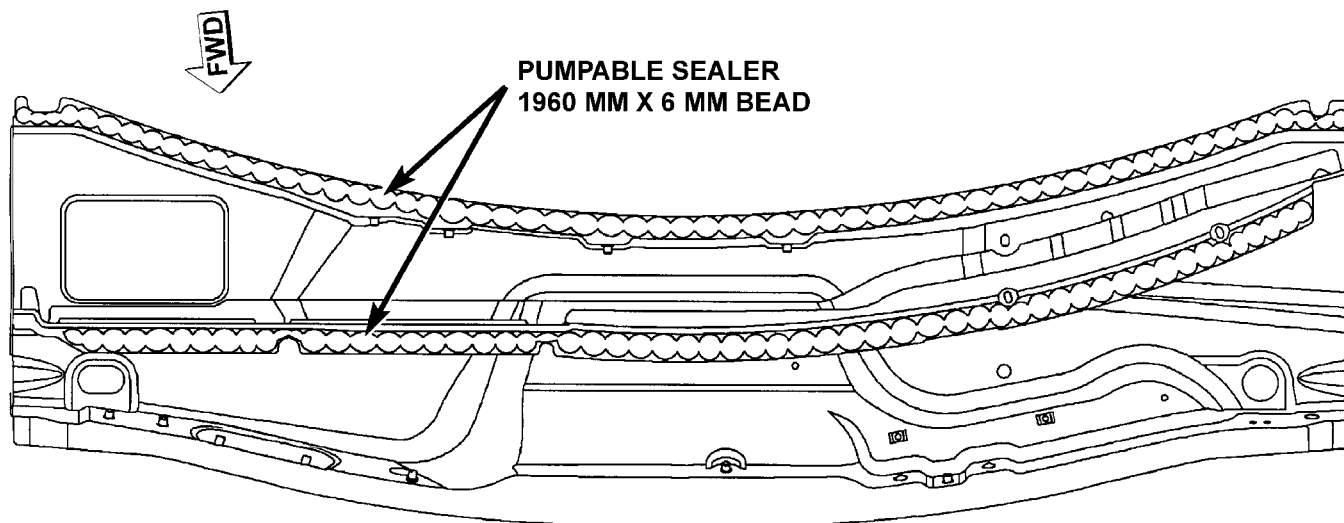
## SEALER LOCATIONS (Continued)



80b6fe50

*Fig. 9 INNER FENDER AND COWL*

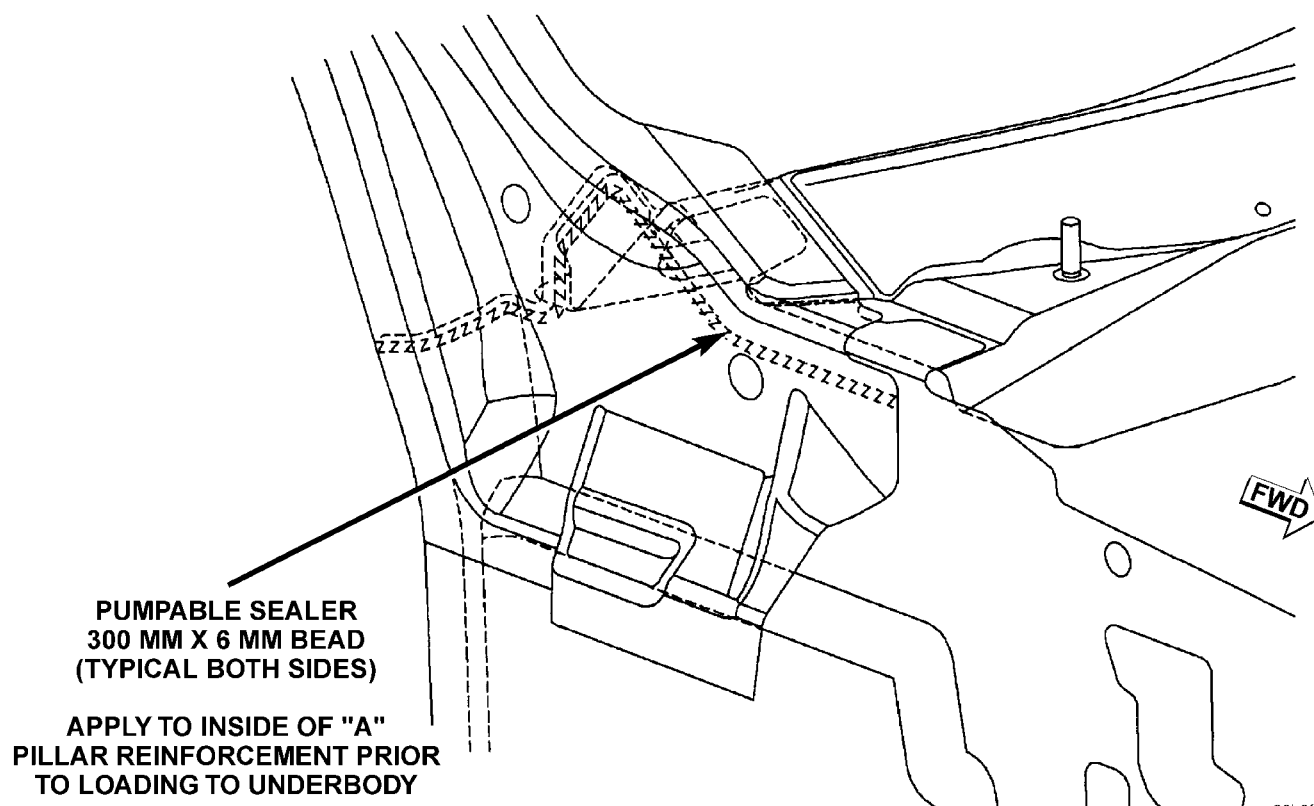
## SEALER LOCATIONS (Continued)



**APPLY TO PLENUM LOWER REAR FLANGE  
AND PLENUM BAFFLE FLANGE.**

80b6fe1b

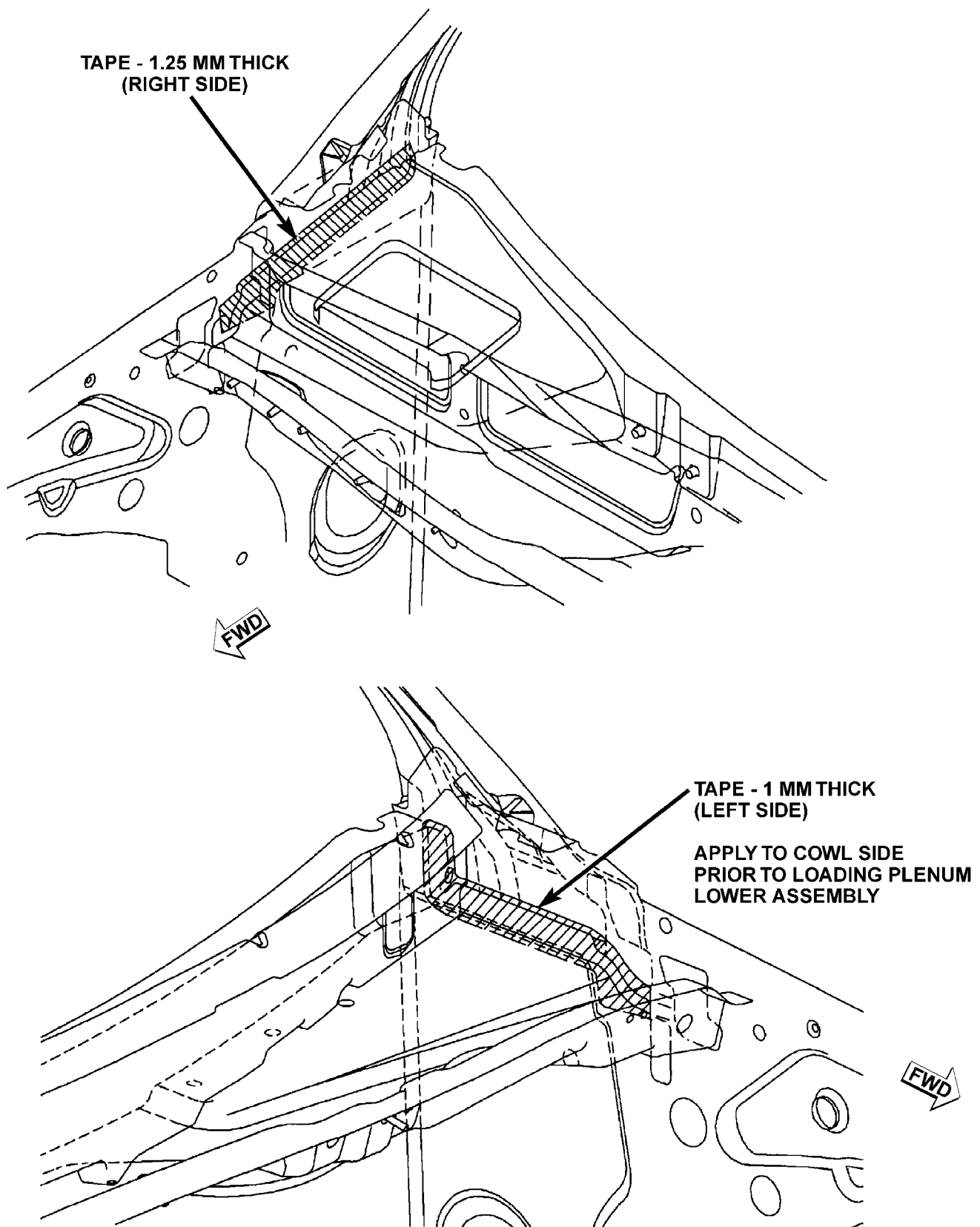
**Fig. 10 LOWER PLENUM AND BAFFLE**



80b6fe29

**Fig. 11 A-PILLAR**

## SEALER LOCATIONS (Continued)



80b6fe2a

Fig. 12 COWL SIDE ATTACHMENT

SEALER LOCATIONS (Continued)

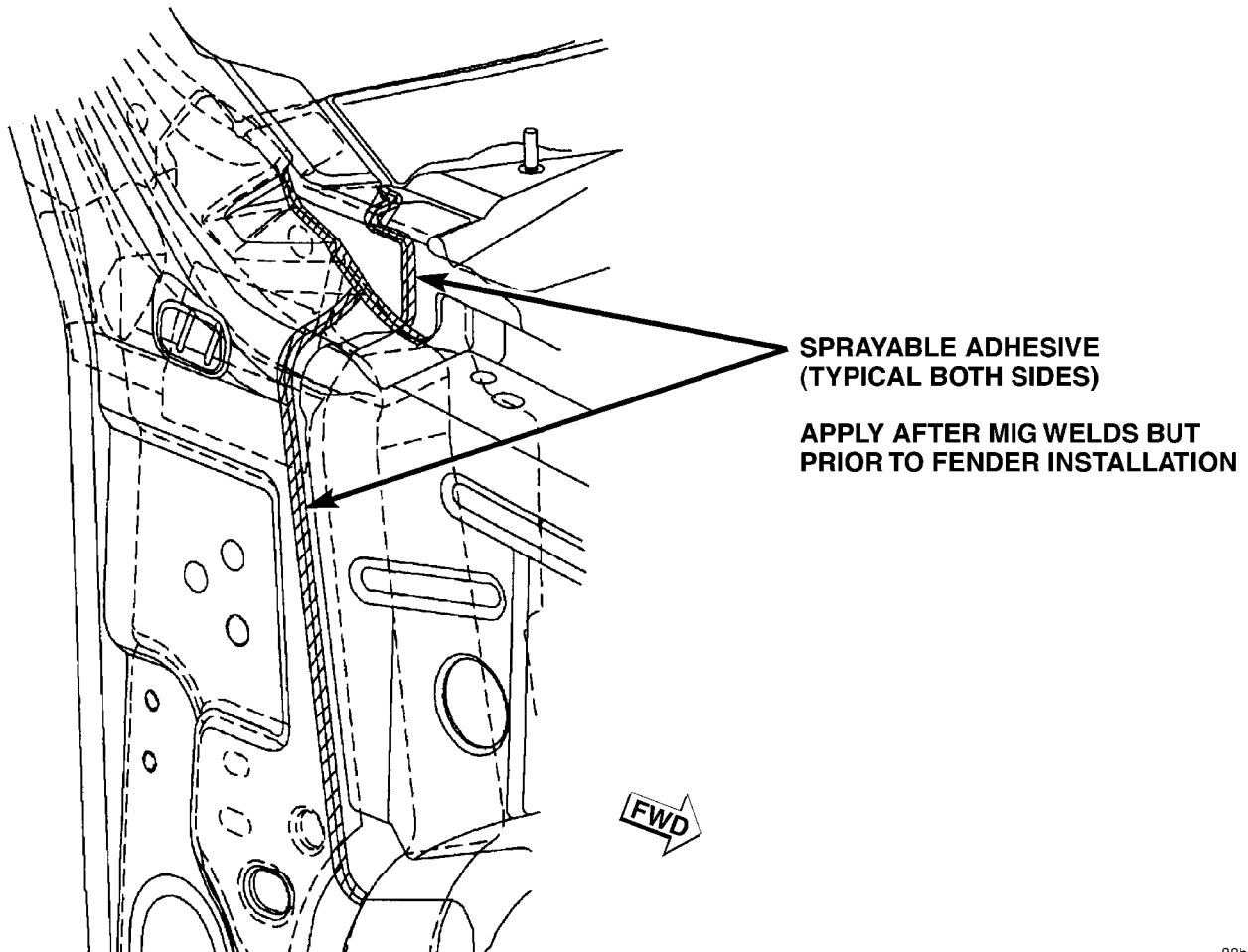
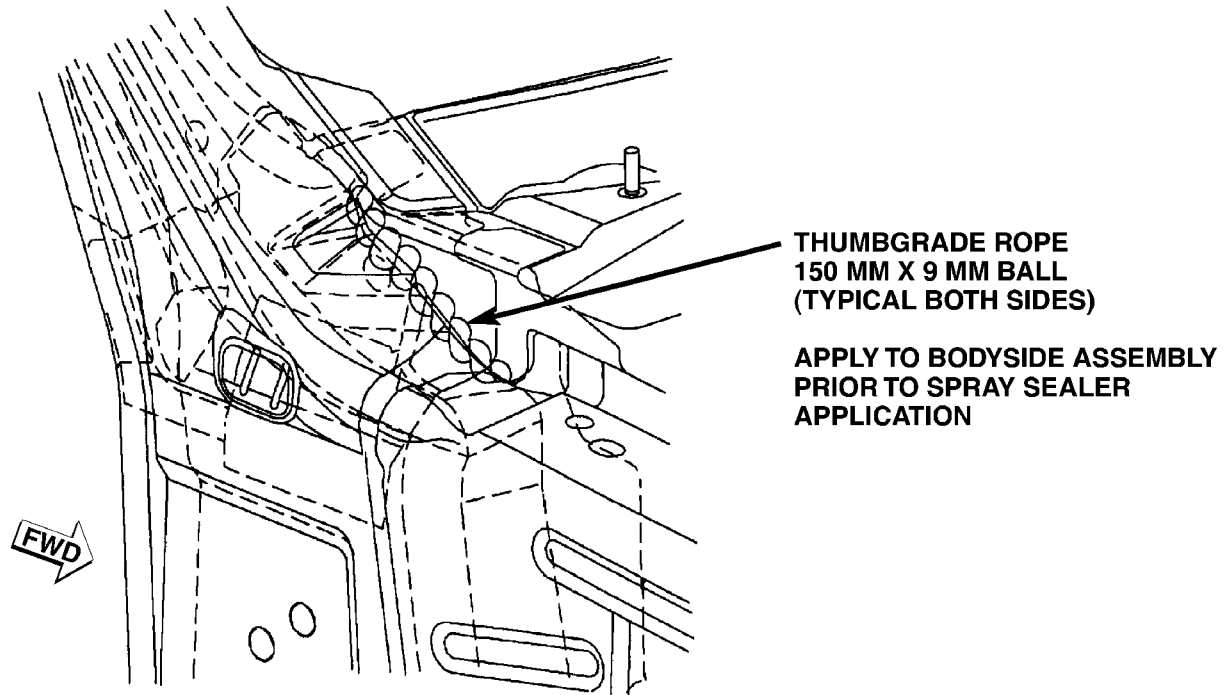
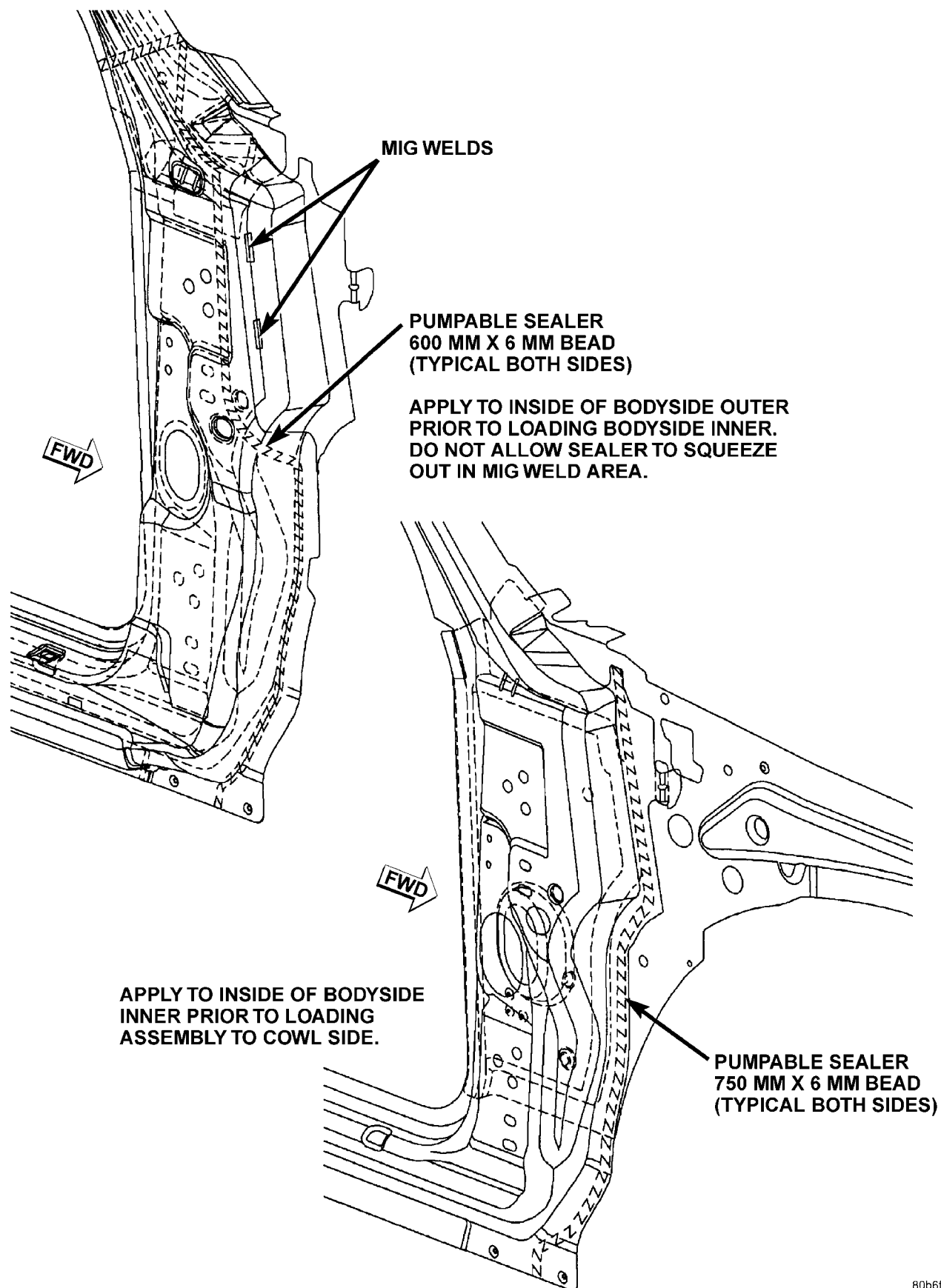


Fig. 13 BODYSIDE ATTACHMENT



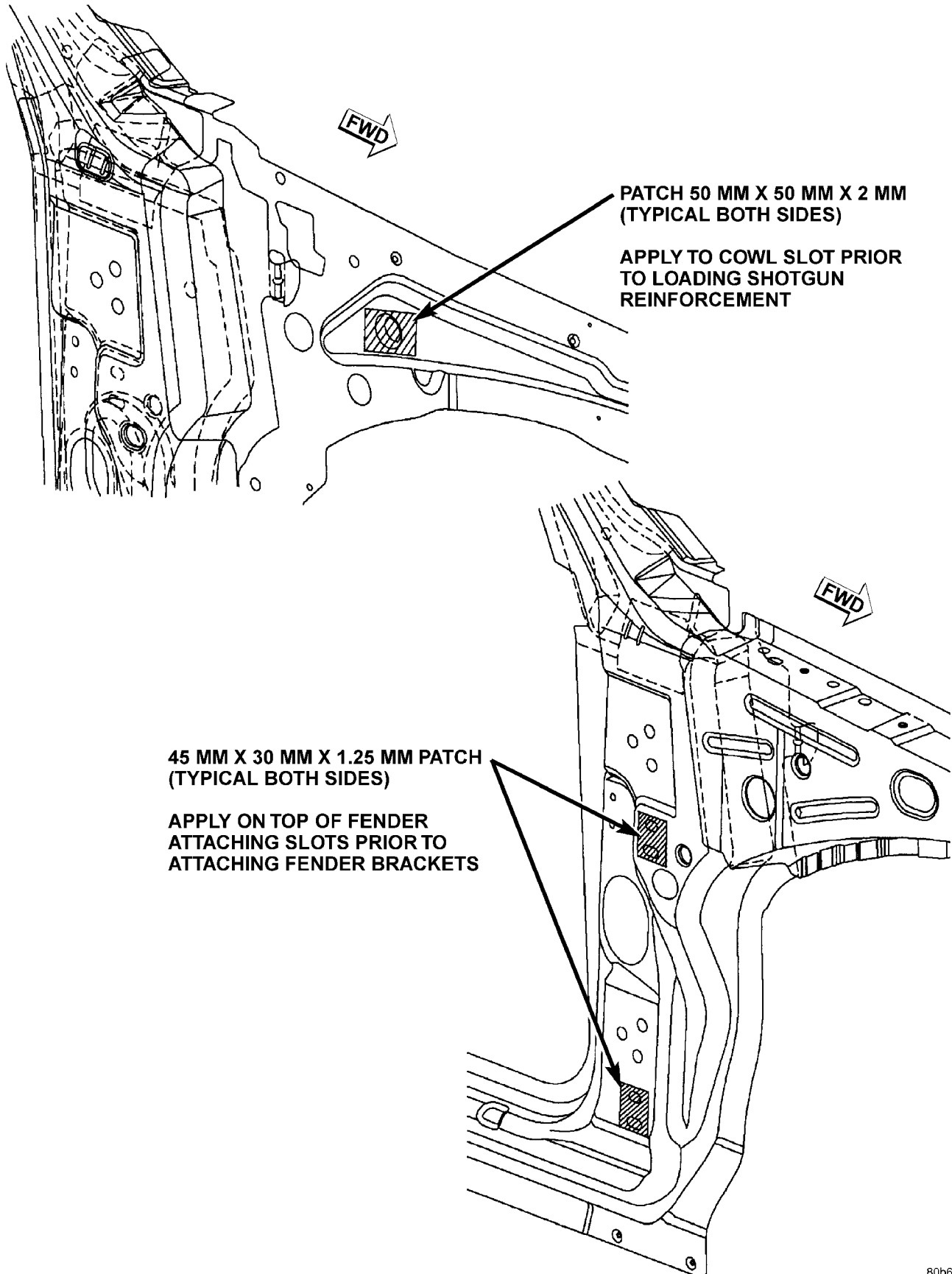
## SEALER LOCATIONS (Continued)



80b6fe2b

Fig. 14 BODYSIDE INNER AND OUTER TO COWL

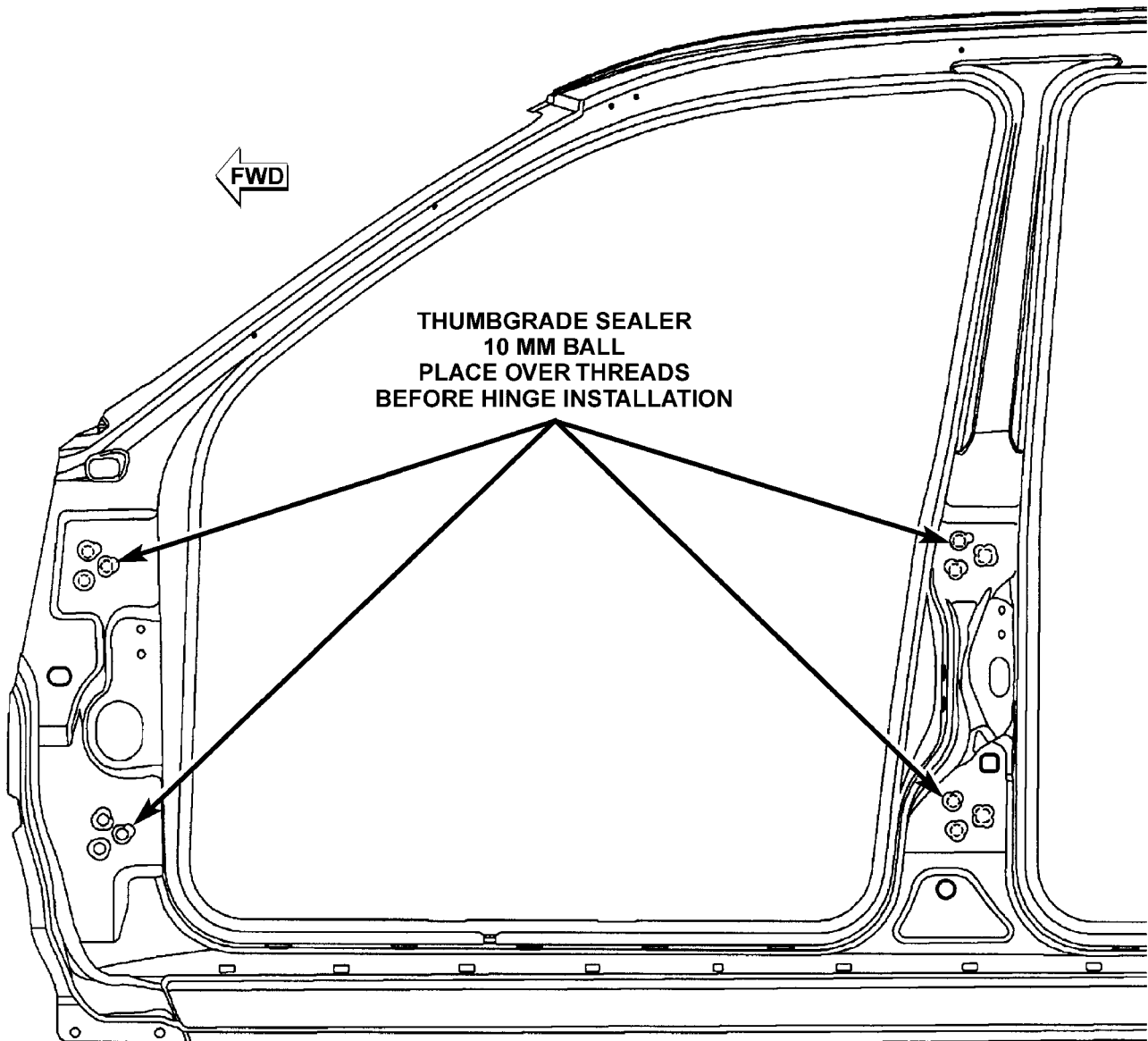
## SEALER LOCATIONS (Continued)



80b6fe2c

*Fig. 15 FENDER ATTACHMENT*

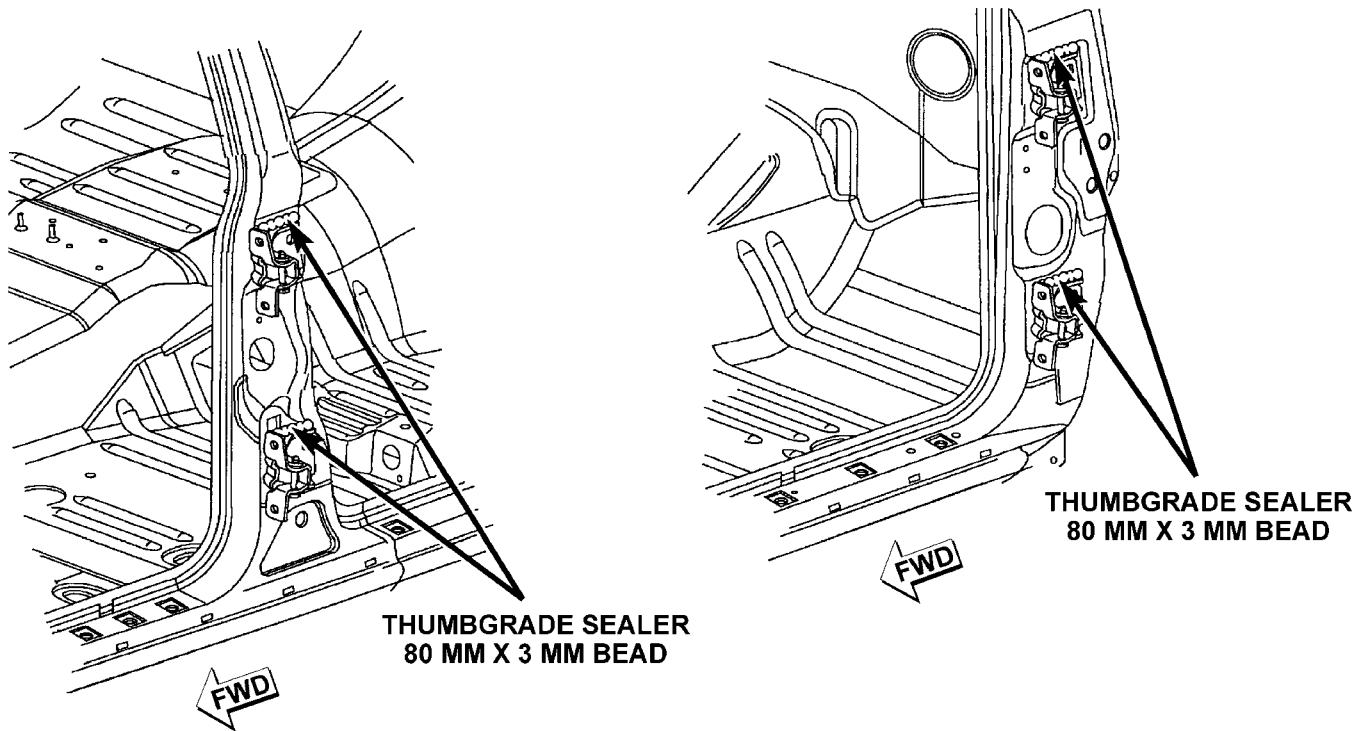
## SEALER LOCATIONS (Continued)



80b6fe1f

*Fig. 16 DOOR HINGE BOLT HOLES*

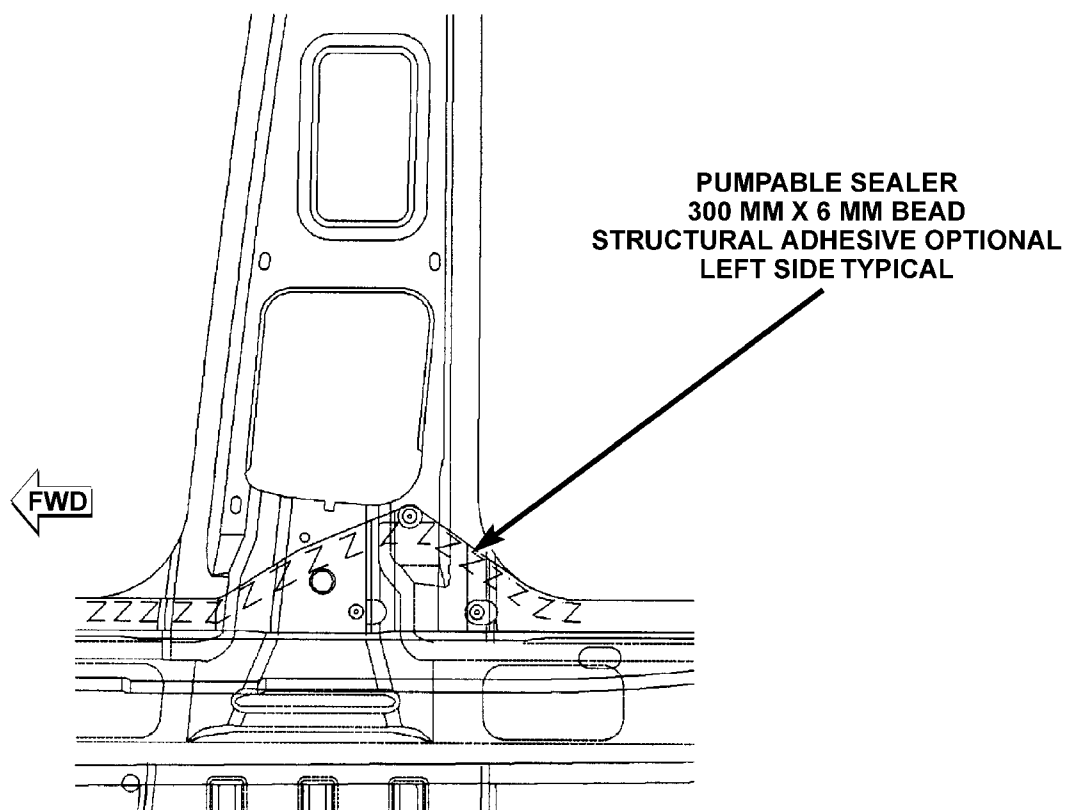
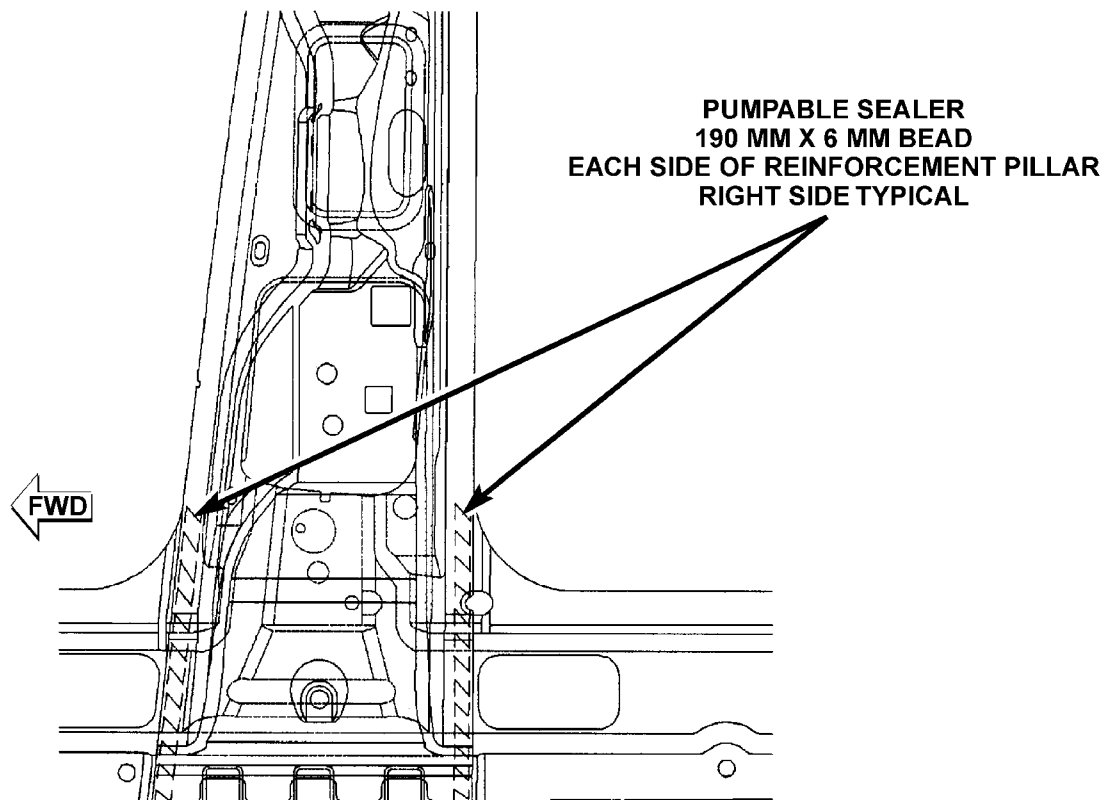
SEALER LOCATIONS (Continued)



80b6fe52

*Fig. 17 A-PILLAR AND B-PILLAR HINGE AREA*

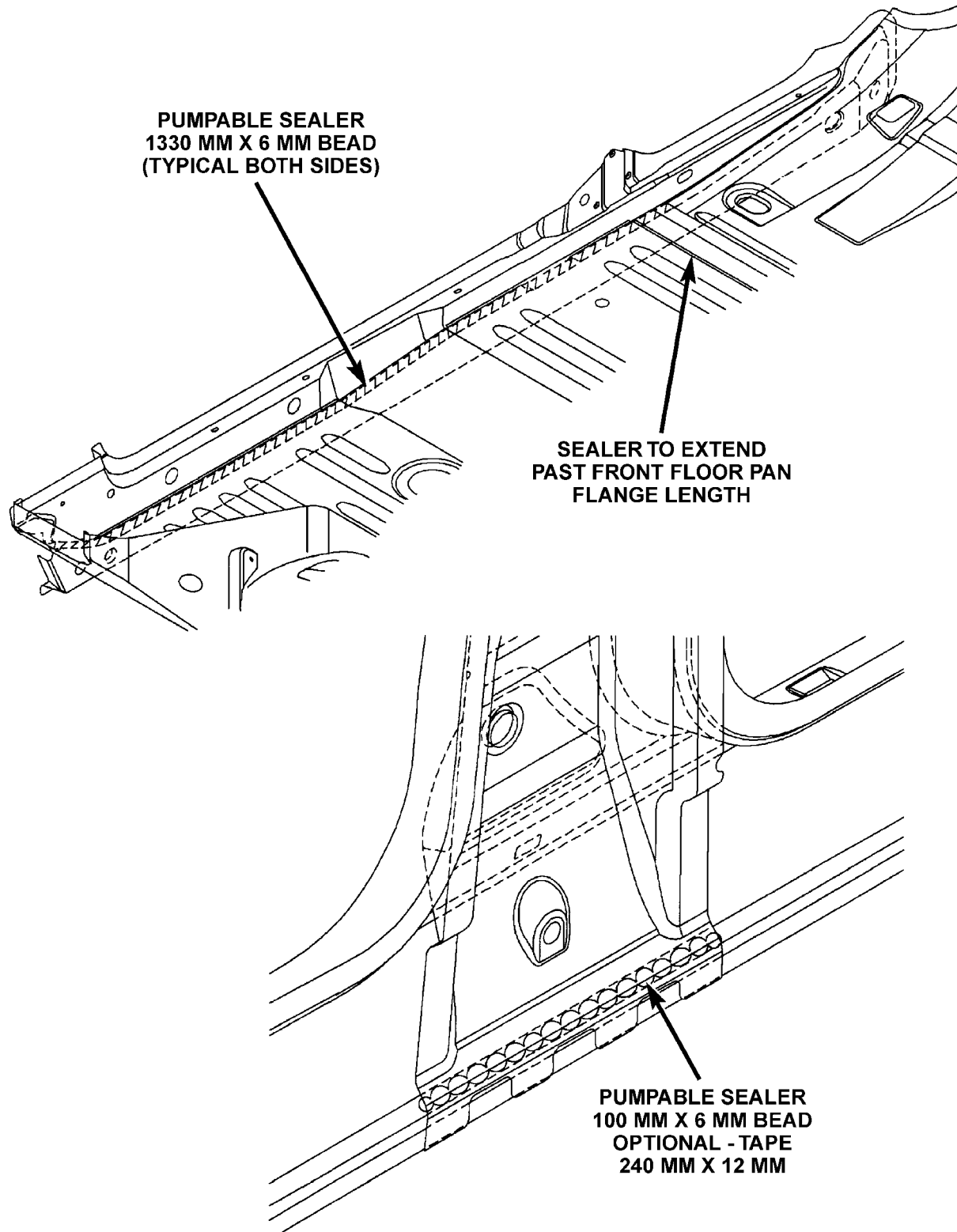
## SEALER LOCATIONS (Continued)



80b6fe20

*Fig. 18 B-PILLAR AND SILL*

SEALER LOCATIONS (Continued)

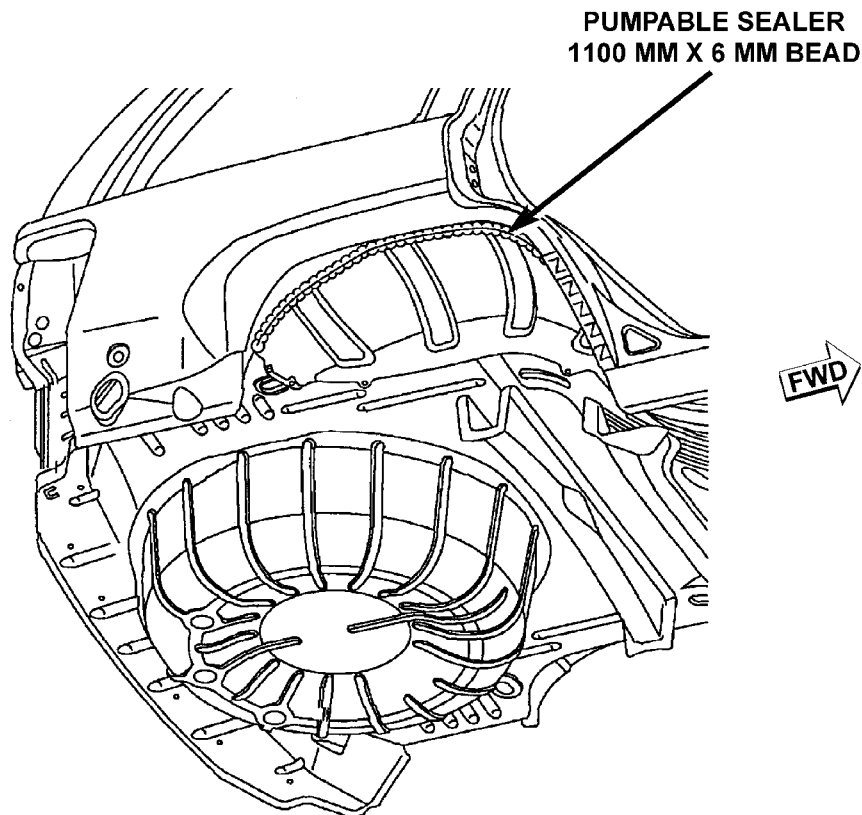


80b6fe53

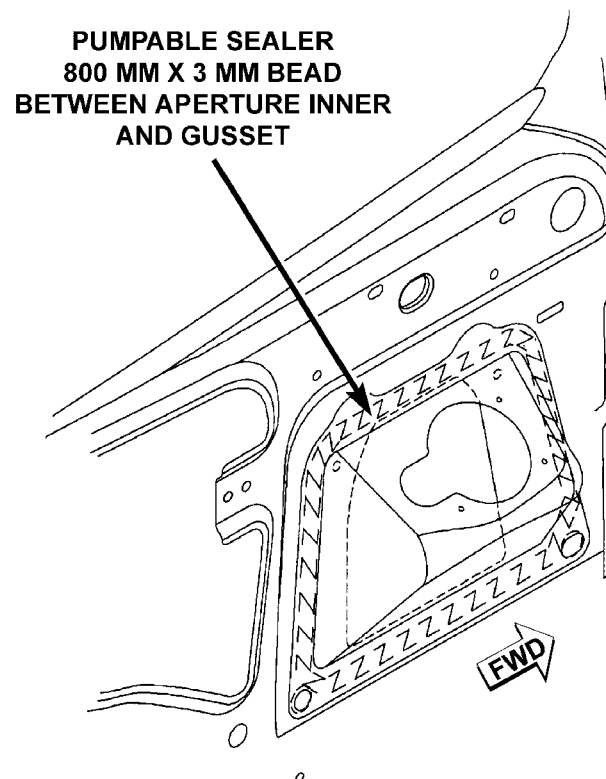
**Fig. 19 SILL AND B-PILLAR**



## SEALER LOCATIONS (Continued)



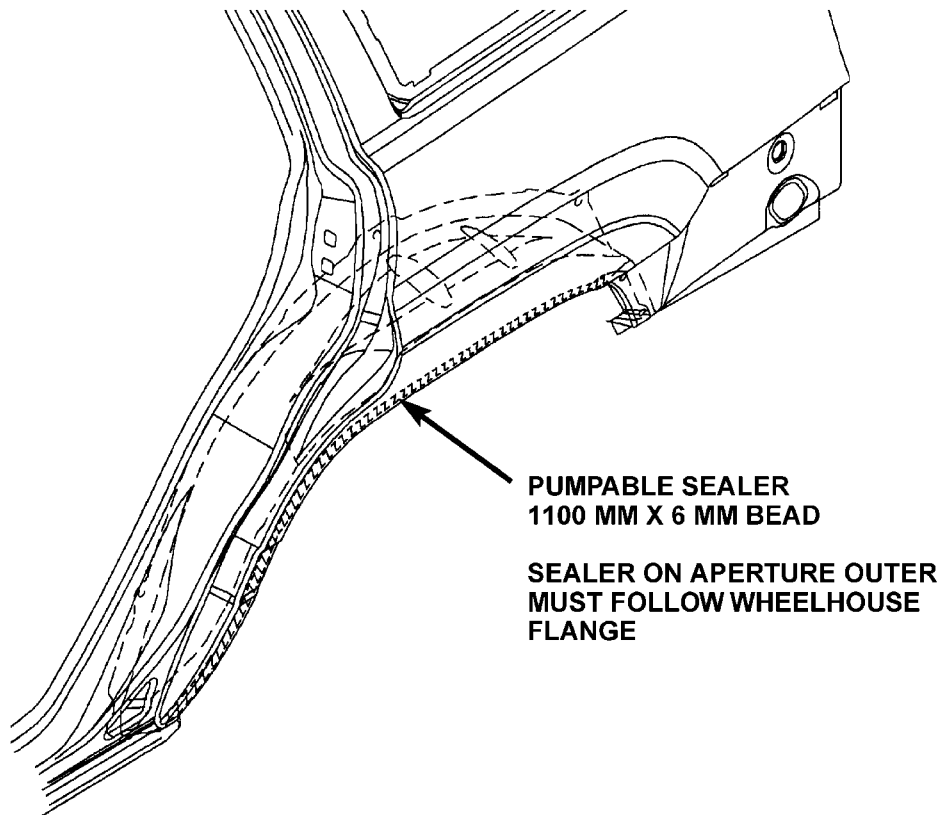
80b6fe21

**Fig. 20 BODYSIDE APERTURE AND REAR WHEELHOUSE**

80b6fe24

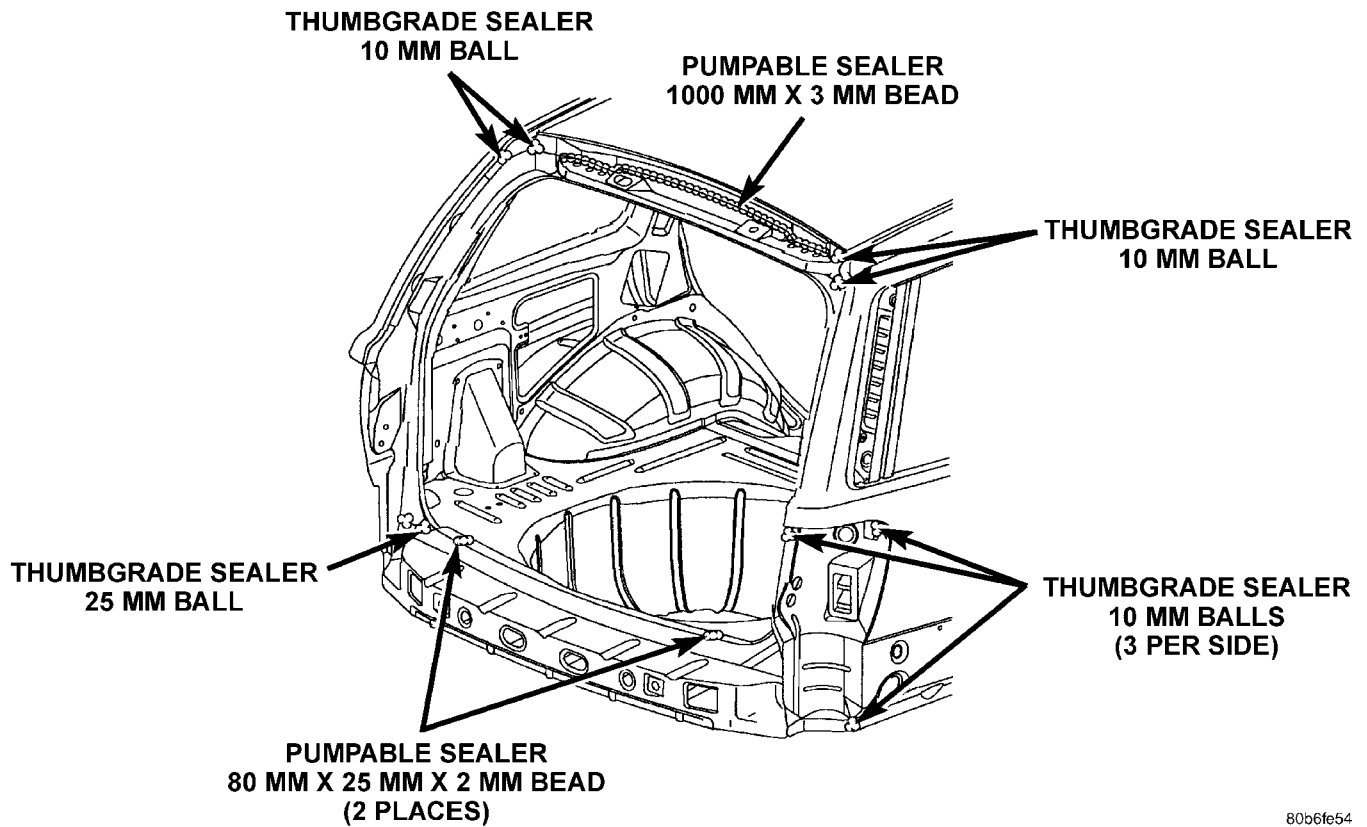
**Fig. 21 FUEL FILLER GUSSET**

SEALER LOCATIONS (Continued)



80b6fe55

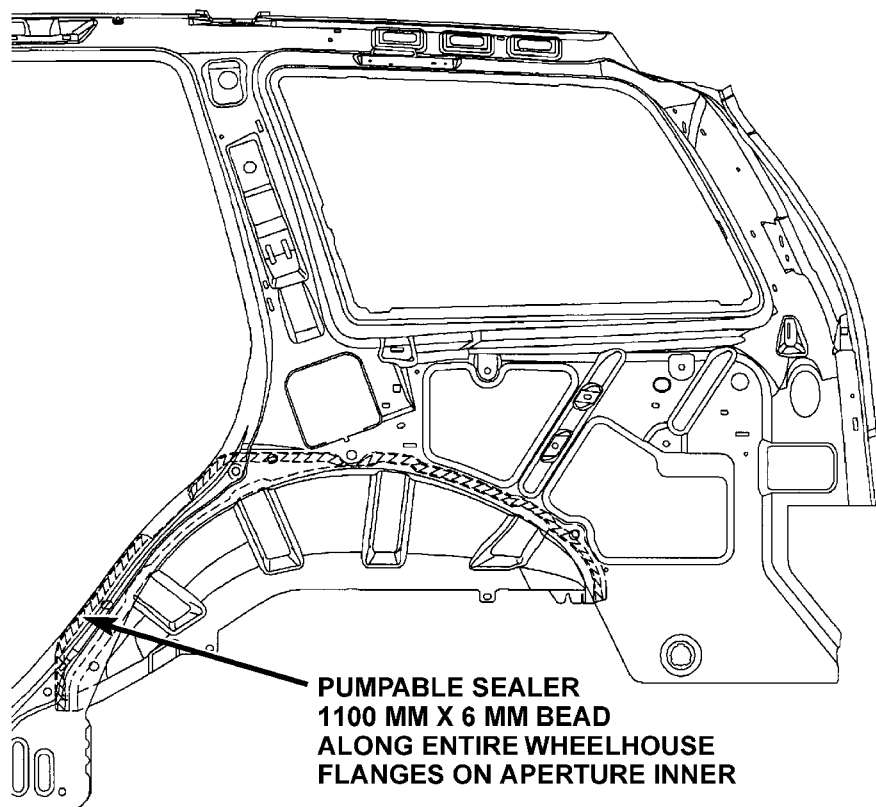
*Fig. 22 OUTER WHEELHOUSE FLANGE*



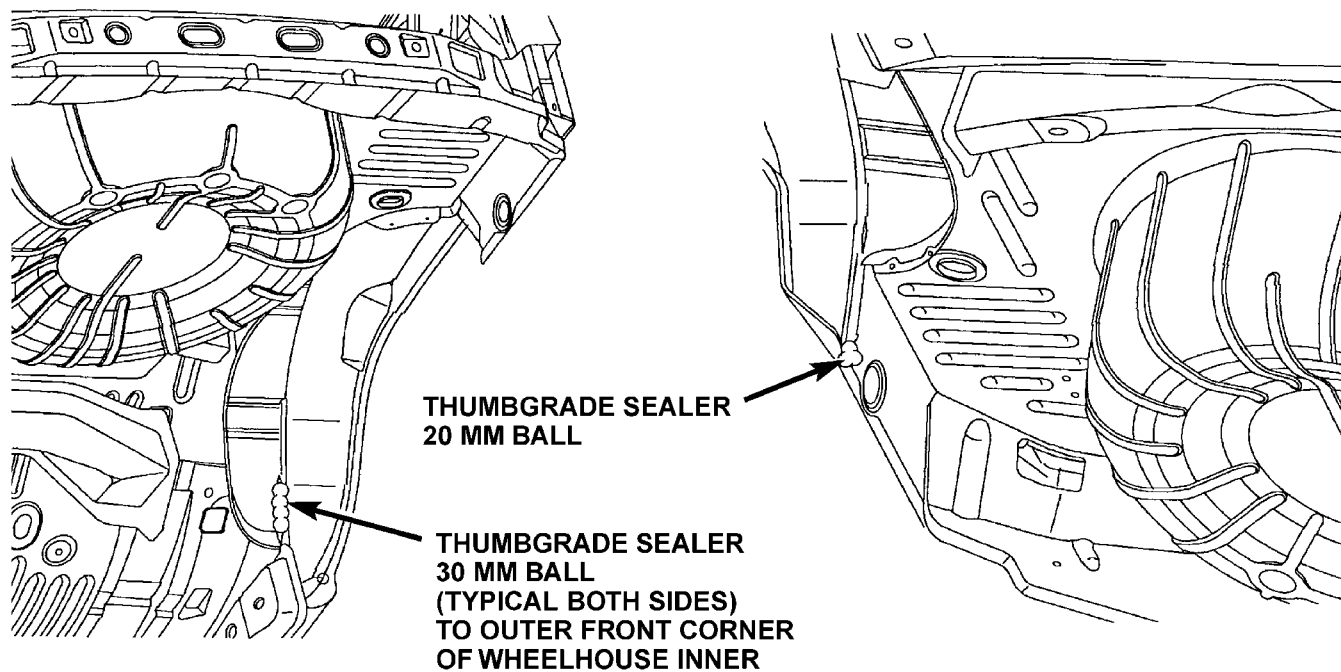
80b6fe54

*Fig. 23 LIFTGATE OPENING*

## SEALER LOCATIONS (Continued)



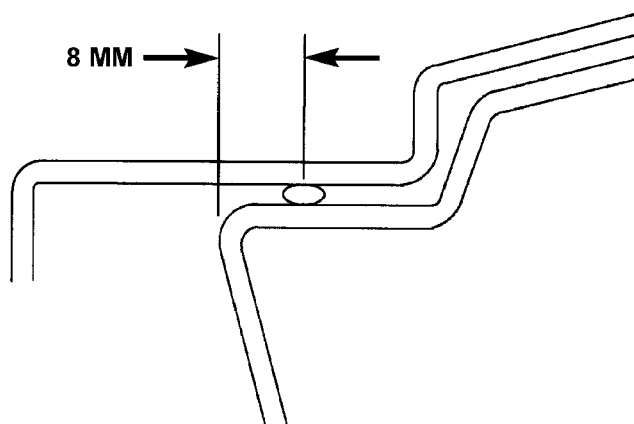
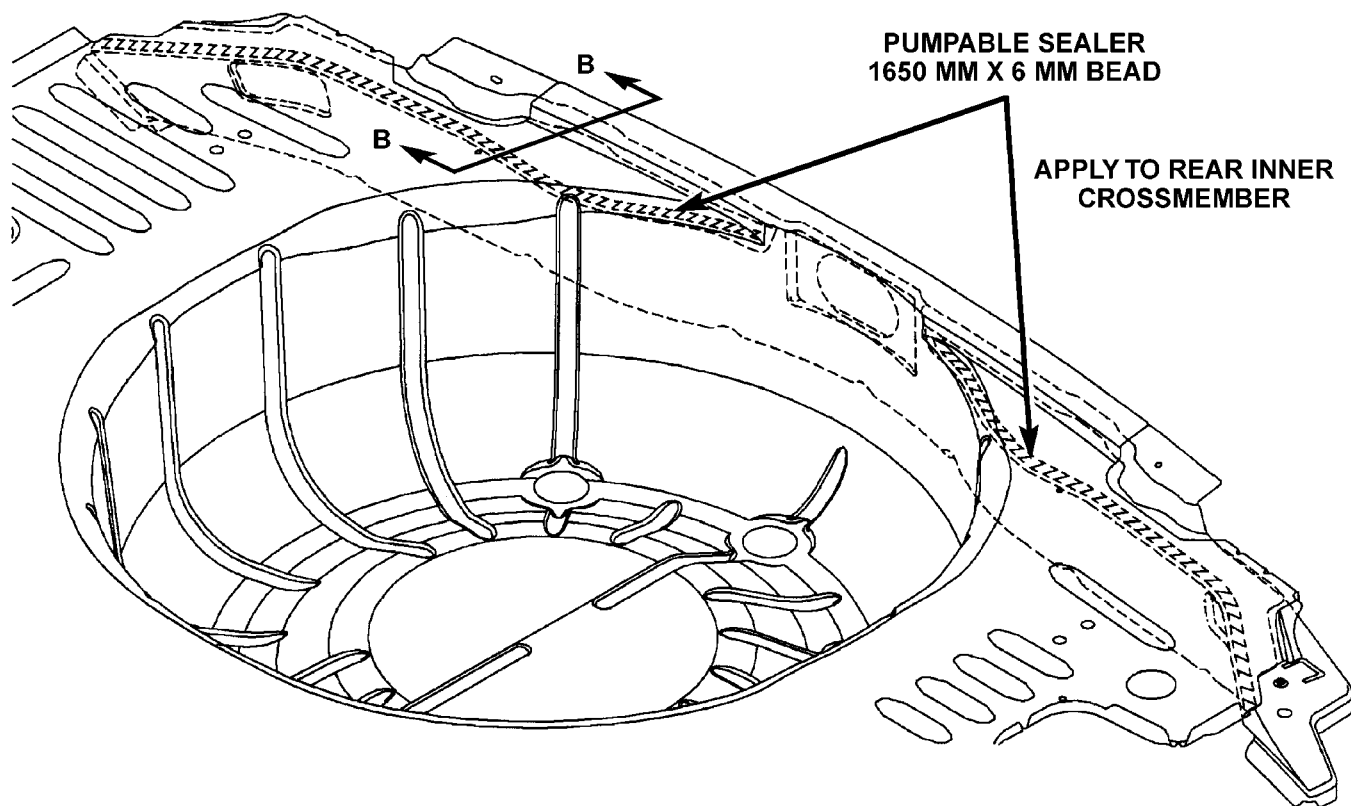
80b6fe56

*Fig. 24 INNER WHEELHOUSE FLANGE TO BODYSIDE APERTURE*

80b6fe57

*Fig. 25 WHEELHOUSE LOWER*

SEALER LOCATIONS (Continued)



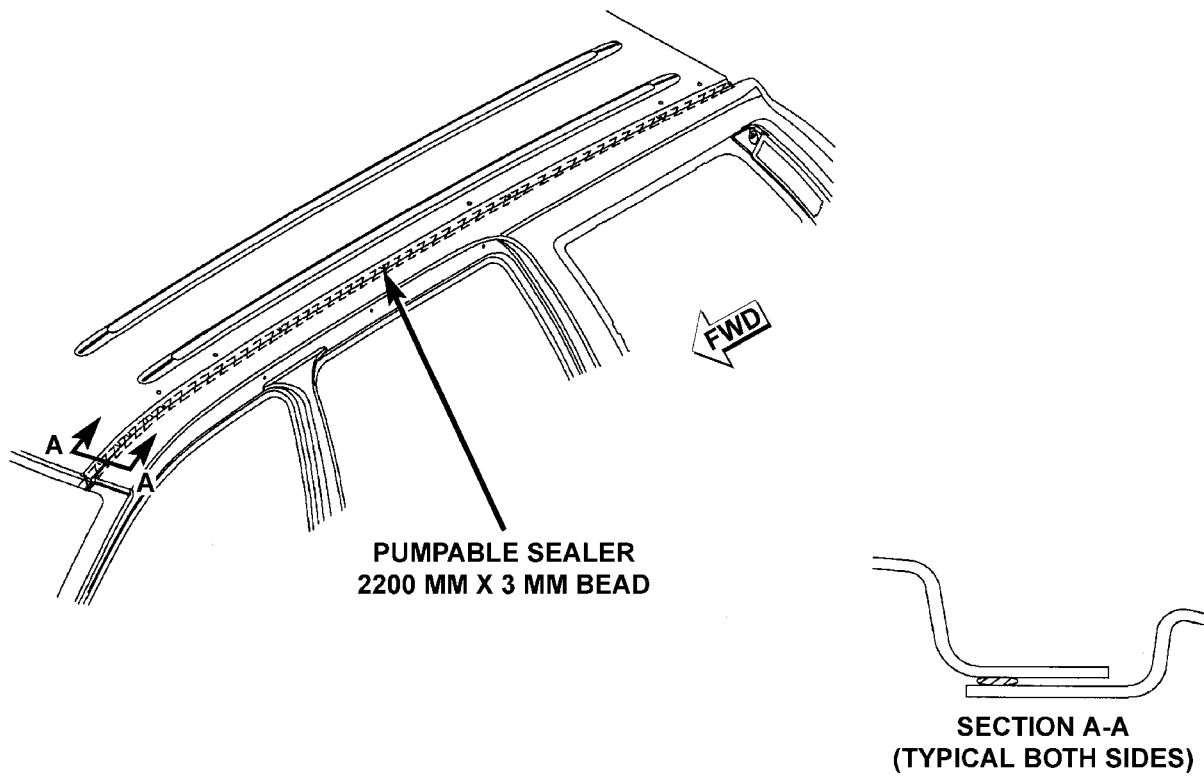
SECTION B - B

☿ OF SEALER BEAD  
TO BE APPROXIMATELY 8 MM  
REARWARD OF FRONT EDGE  
OF REAR INNER CROSSMEMBER

80b6fe58

Fig. 26 REAR INNER CROSSMEMBER

## SEALER LOCATIONS (Continued)



80b6fe25

*Fig. 27 ROOF TO BODY SIDE APERTURE*

## STRUCTURAL ADHESIVE LOCATIONS

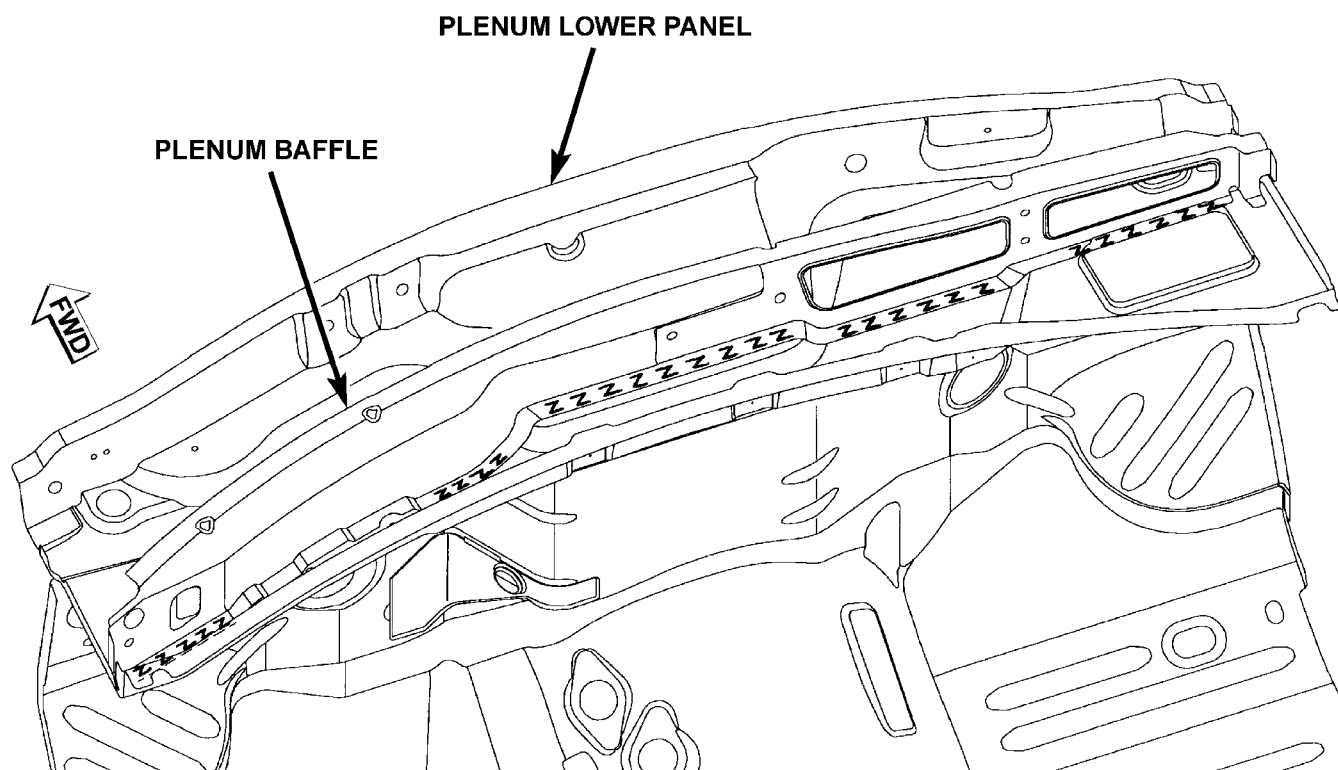
### SPECIFICATIONS - STRUCTURAL ADHESIVE LOCATIONS

#### INDEX

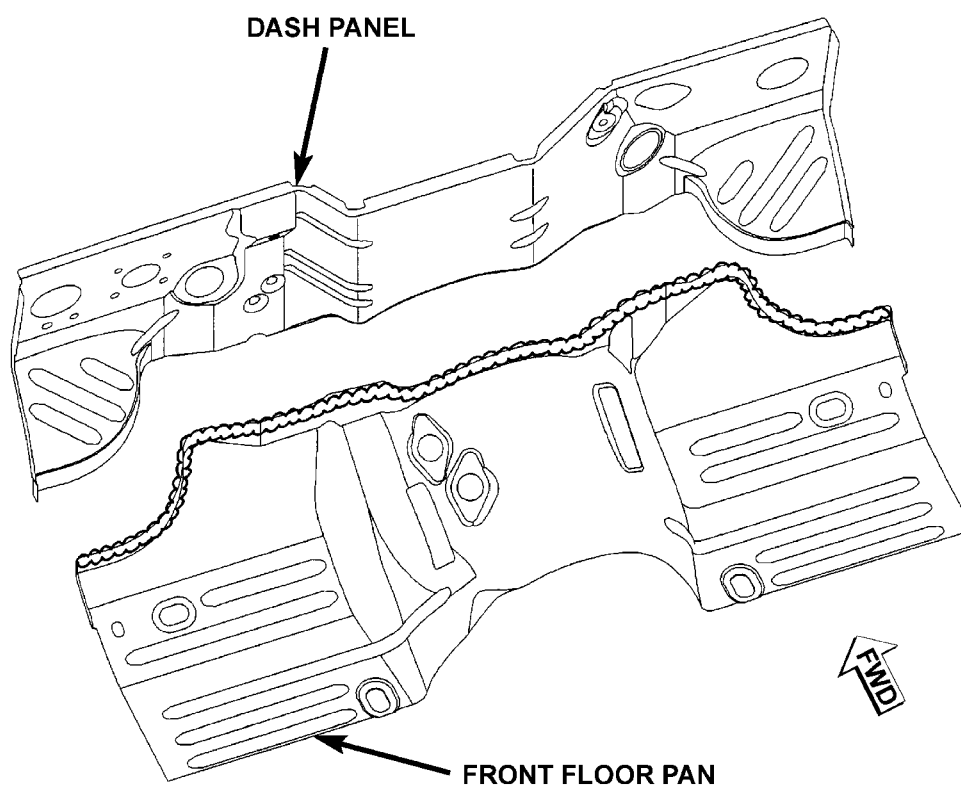
DESCRIPTION	FIGURE
COWL PLENUM	28
DASH PANEL AND FRONT FLOOR PAN	29
PLENUM AND WINDSHIELD WIPER MOUNTING	30
FRONT FLOOR PAN AND SILLS	31
FRONT AND CENTER FLOOR PAN	32
FRONT PAN AND INNER BODY SIDE APERTURE	33
REAR SEAT CROSSMEMBER	34
REAR INNER WHEELHOUSE	35
FLOOR PAN AND SILL ASSEMBLY	36
FLOOR PAN	37
REAR INNER WHEELHOUSE AND REAR FLOOR PAN	38
RIGHT INNER BODYSIDE APERTURE	39
BODY SIDE INNER PANEL AND WHEELHOUSE	40
BODY SIDE OUTER PANEL AND REAR WHEELHOUSE OUTER PANEL	41
D-PILLAR AND FUEL FILLER GUSSETS	42
LIFTGATE	43
TAILLAMP MOUNTING PANEL	44
TAILLAMP	45
REAR INNER CROSSMEMBER	46
ROOF BOWS	47
REAR LOWER HEADER	48



## STRUCTURAL ADHESIVE LOCATIONS (Continued)



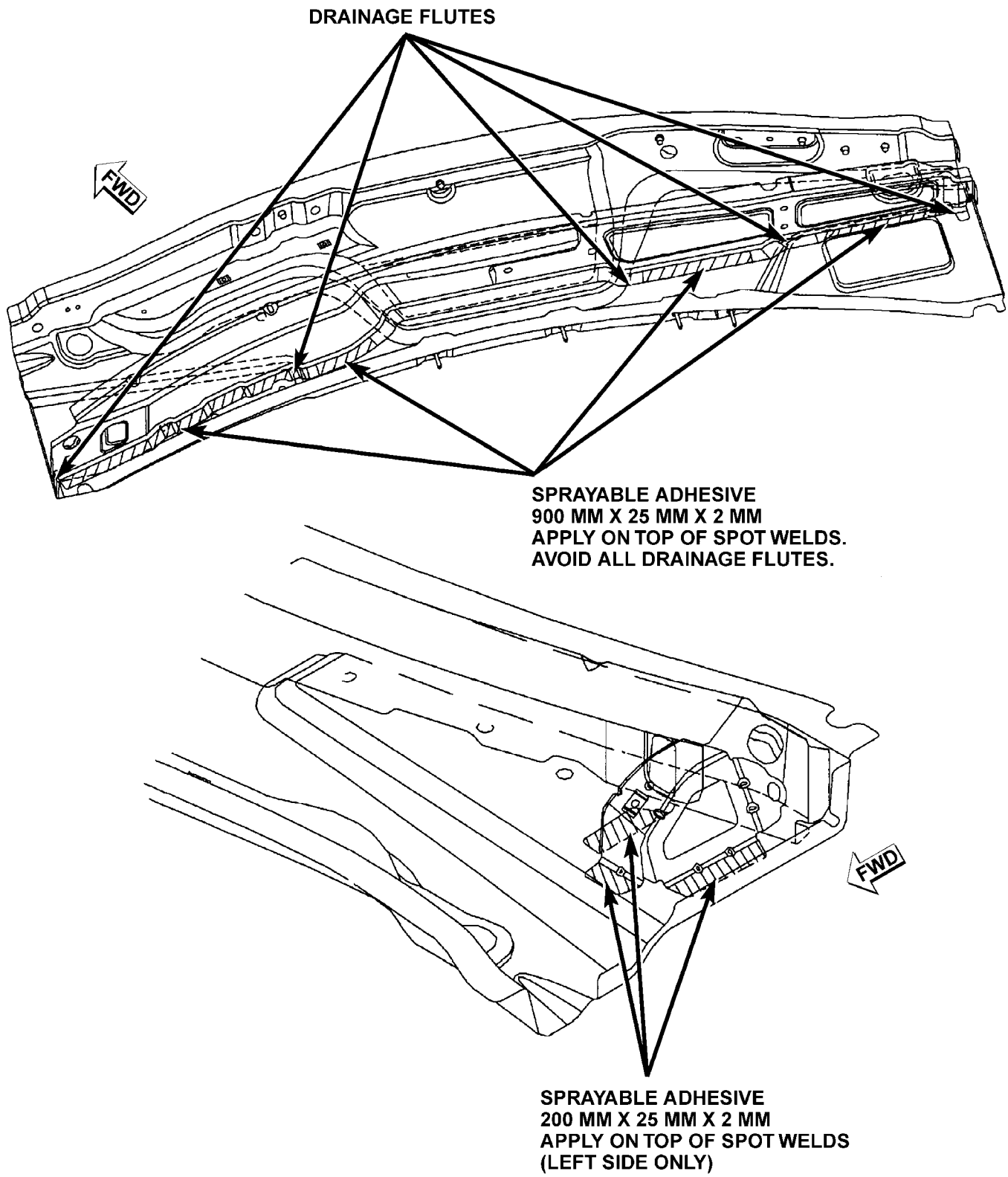
80b6fe97

*Fig. 28 COWL PLENUM*

80b6fe98

*Fig. 29 DASH PANEL AND FRONT FLOOR PAN*

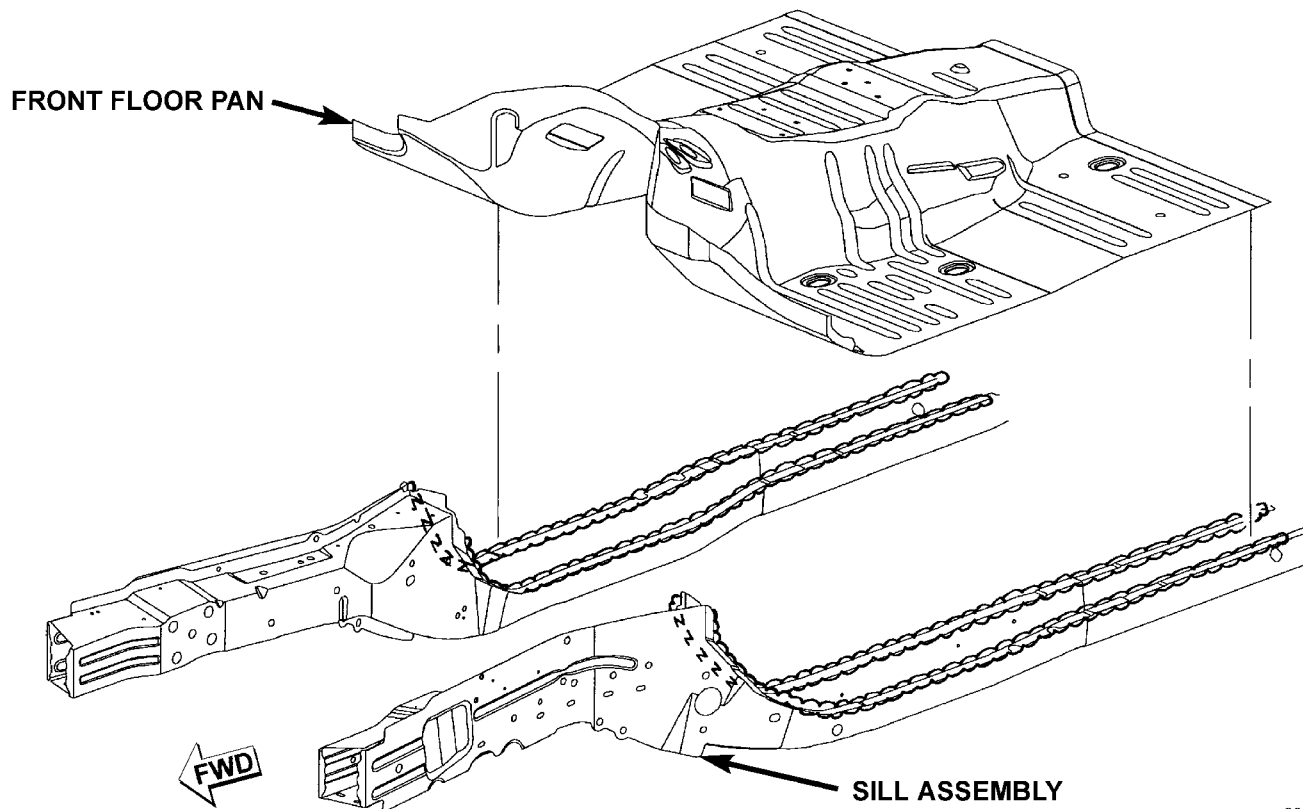
STRUCTURAL ADHESIVE LOCATIONS (Continued)



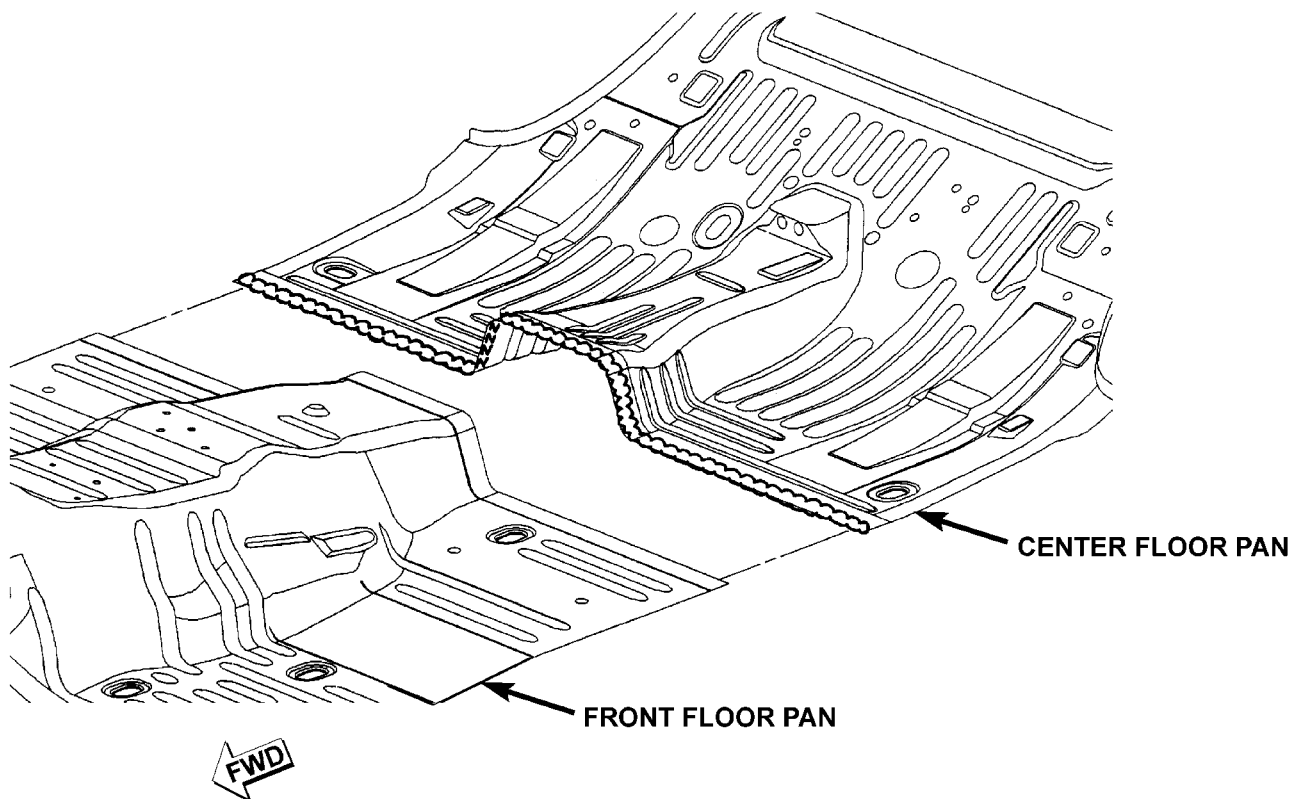
80b6fe1c

**Fig. 30 PLENUM AND WINDSHIELD WIPER MOUNTING**

## STRUCTURAL ADHESIVE LOCATIONS (Continued)



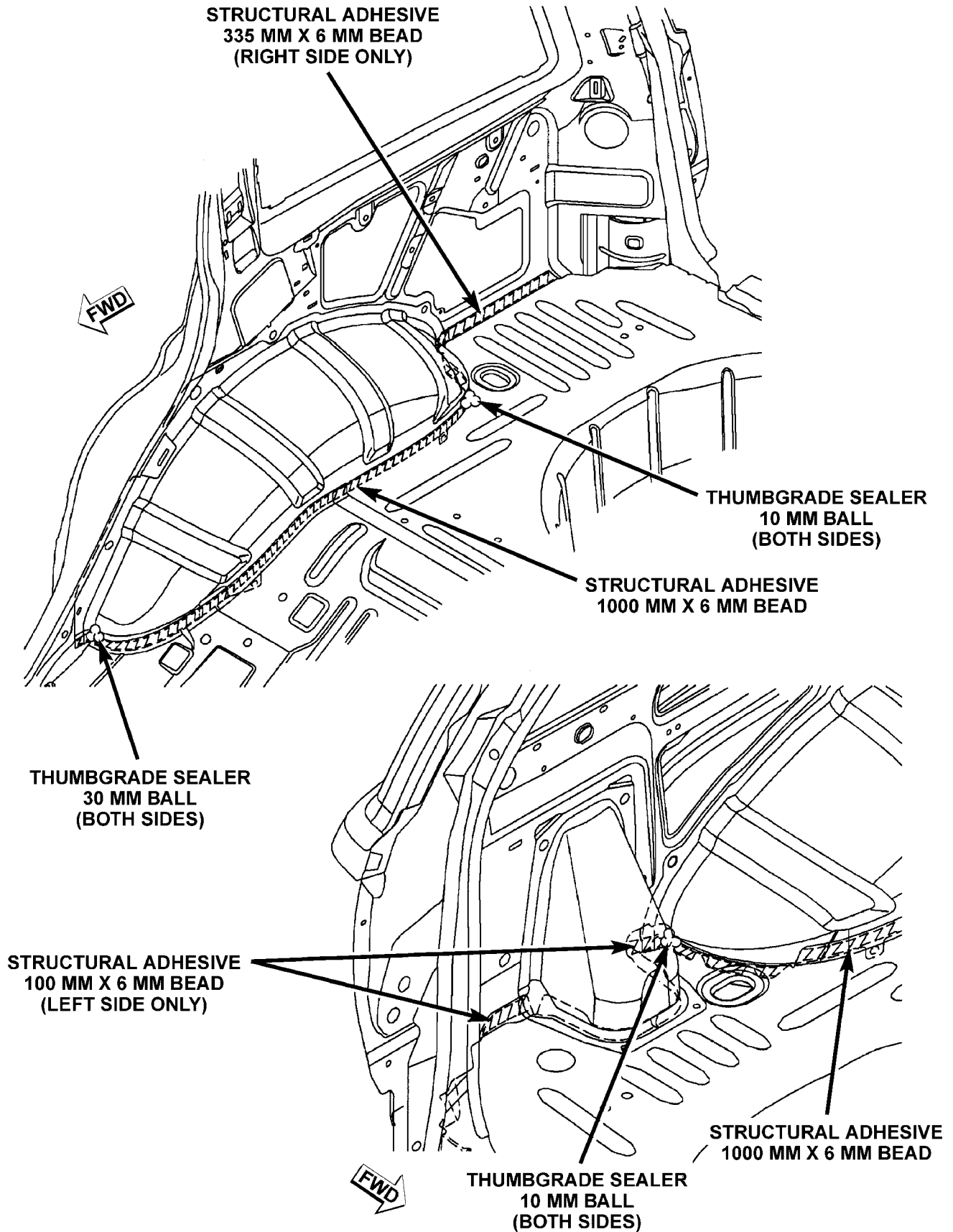
80b6fe99

**Fig. 31 FRONT FLOOR PAN AND SILLS**

80b6fe9a

**Fig. 32 FRONT AND CENTER FLOOR PAN**

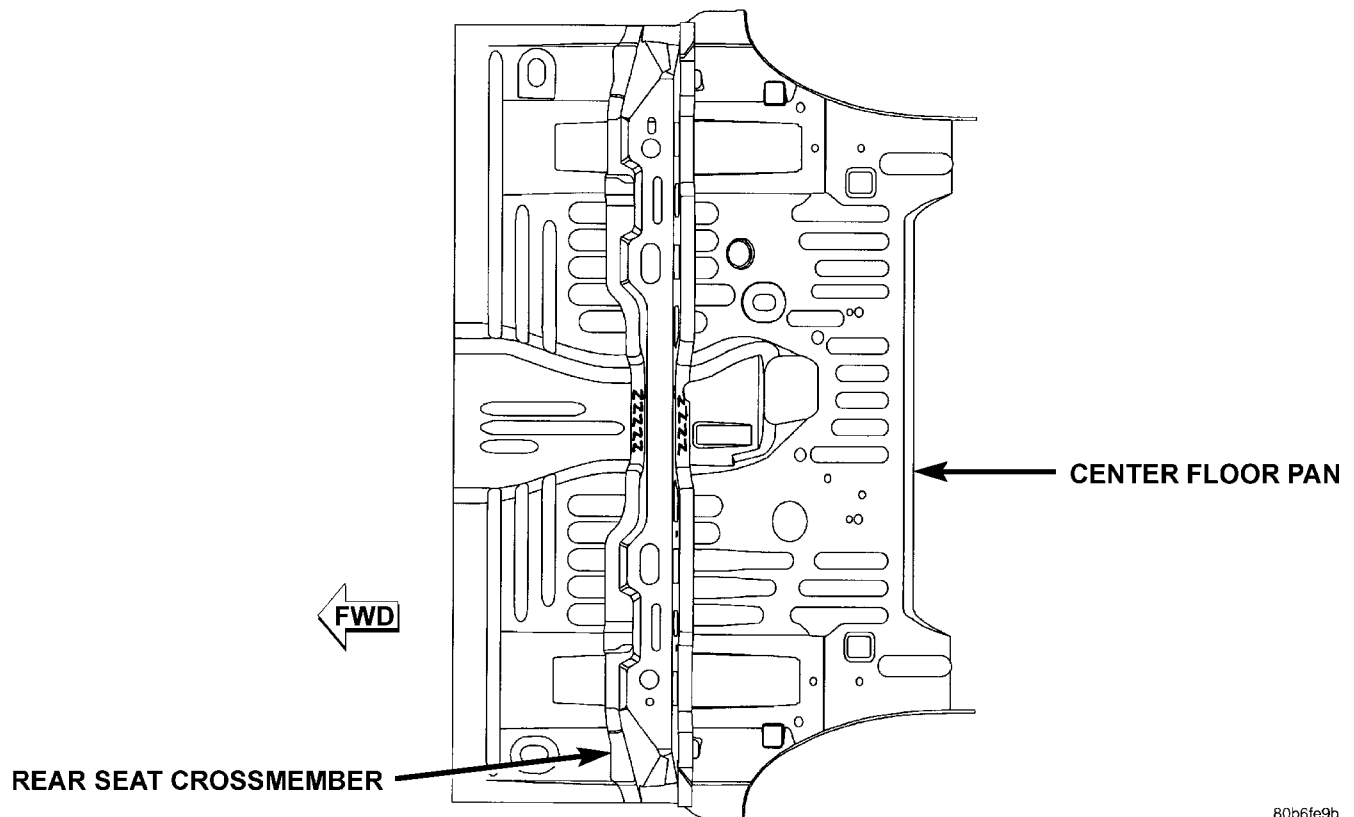
STRUCTURAL ADHESIVE LOCATIONS (Continued)



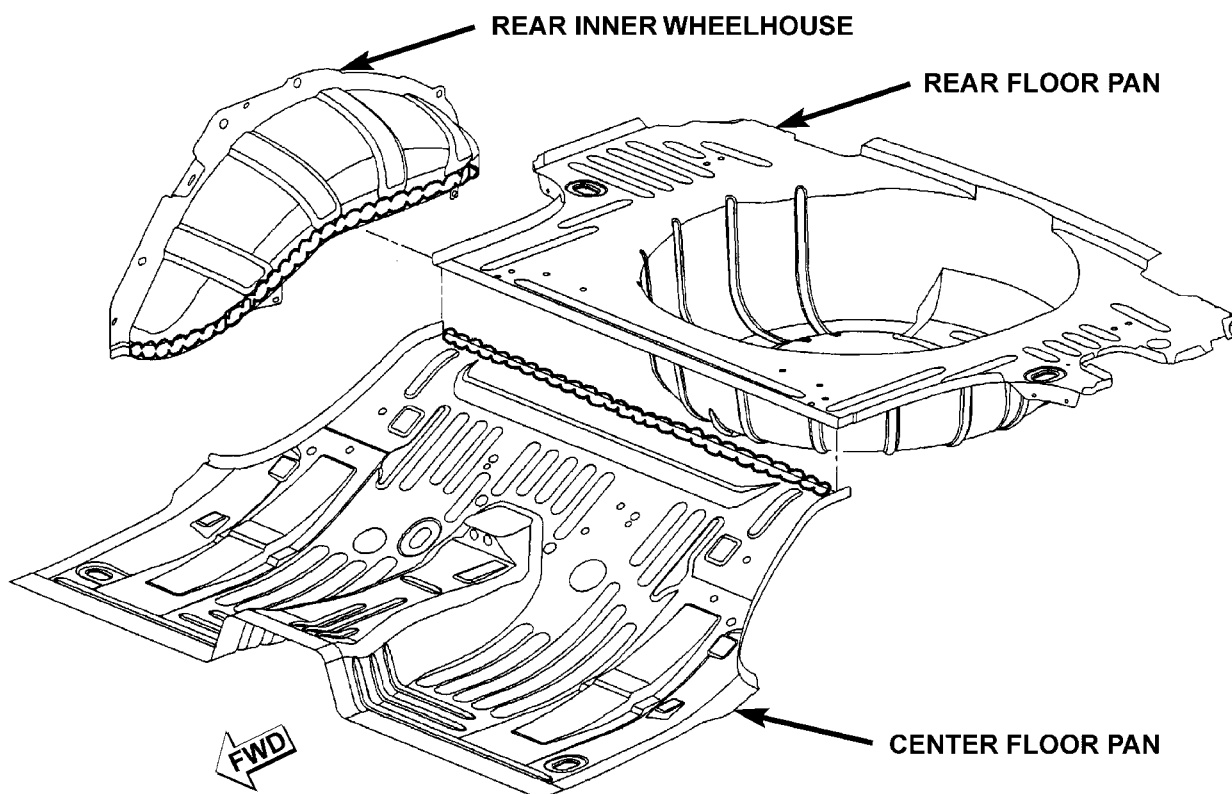
80b6fe22

Fig. 33 FRONT PAN AND INNER BODY SIDE APERTURE

## STRUCTURAL ADHESIVE LOCATIONS (Continued)



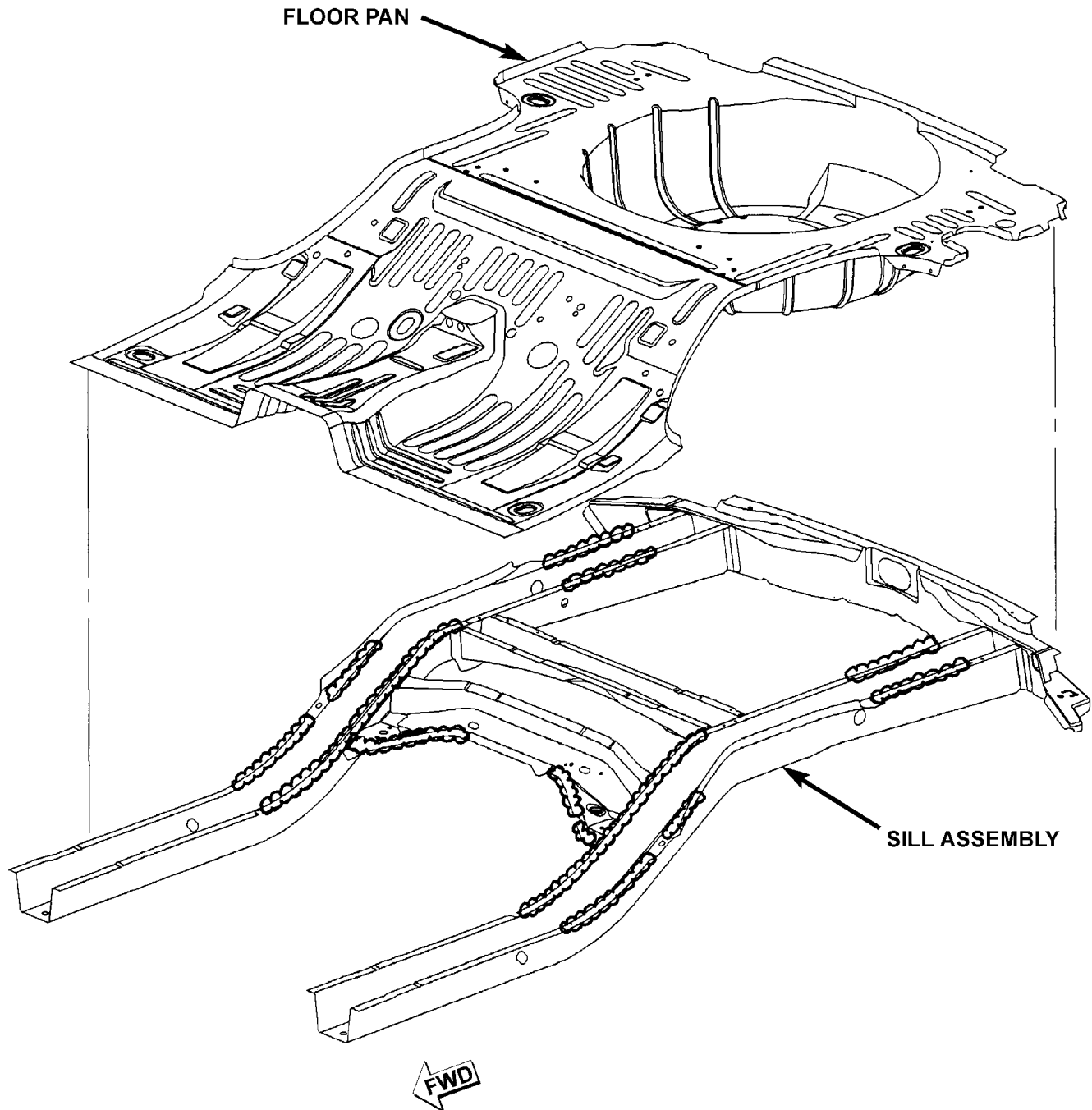
80b6fe9b

**Fig. 34 REAR SEAT CROSSMEMBER**

80b6fe9c

**Fig. 35 REAR INNER WHEELHOUSE**

STRUCTURAL ADHESIVE LOCATIONS (Continued)

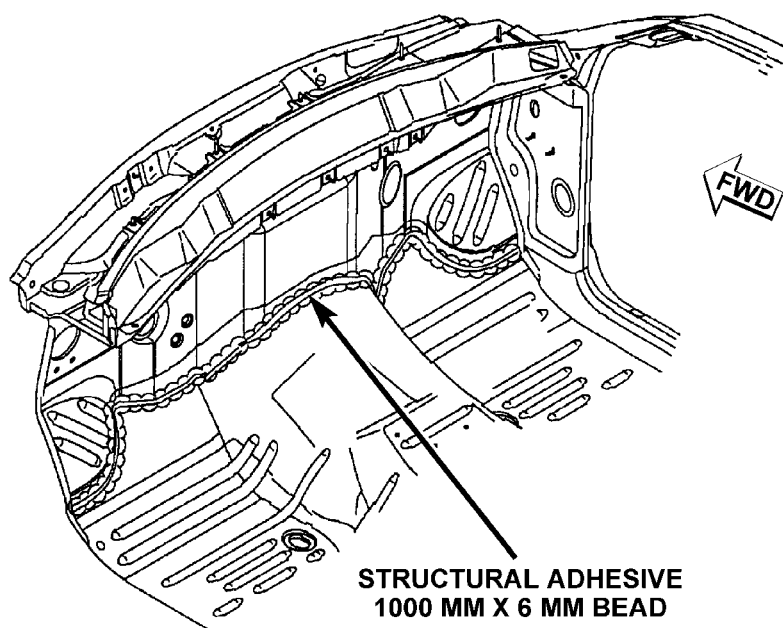


80b6fe9e

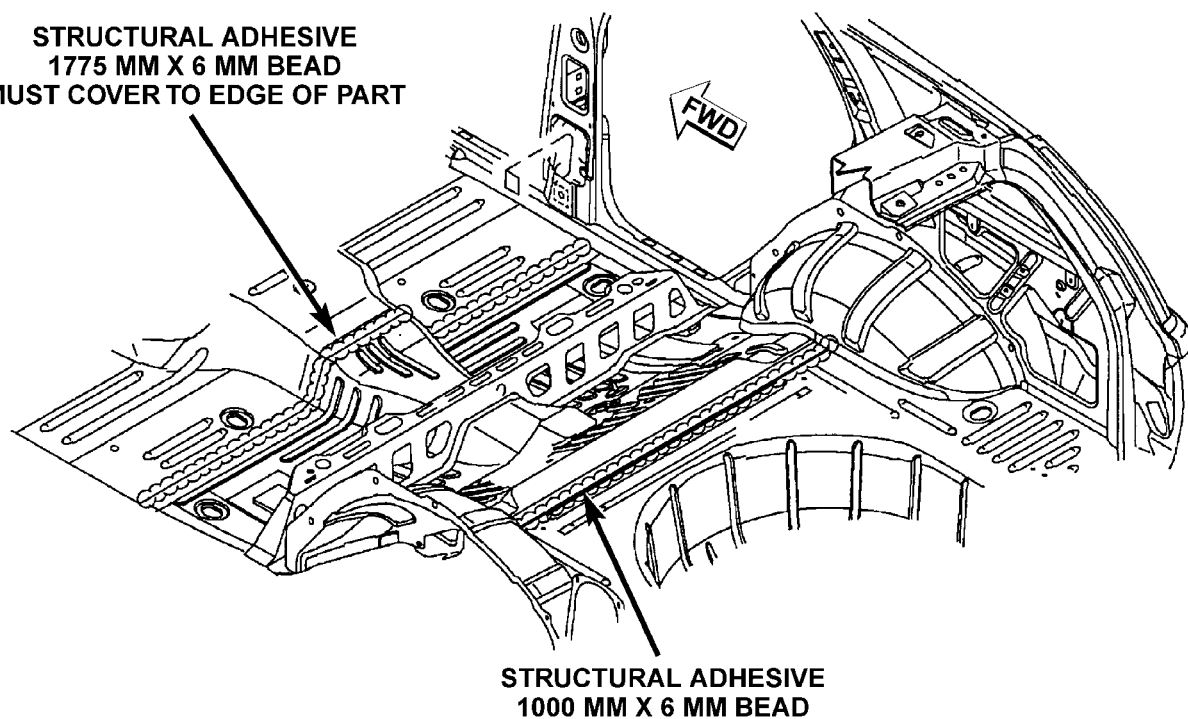
**Fig. 36 FLOOR PAN AND SILL ASSEMBLY**



## STRUCTURAL ADHESIVE LOCATIONS (Continued)



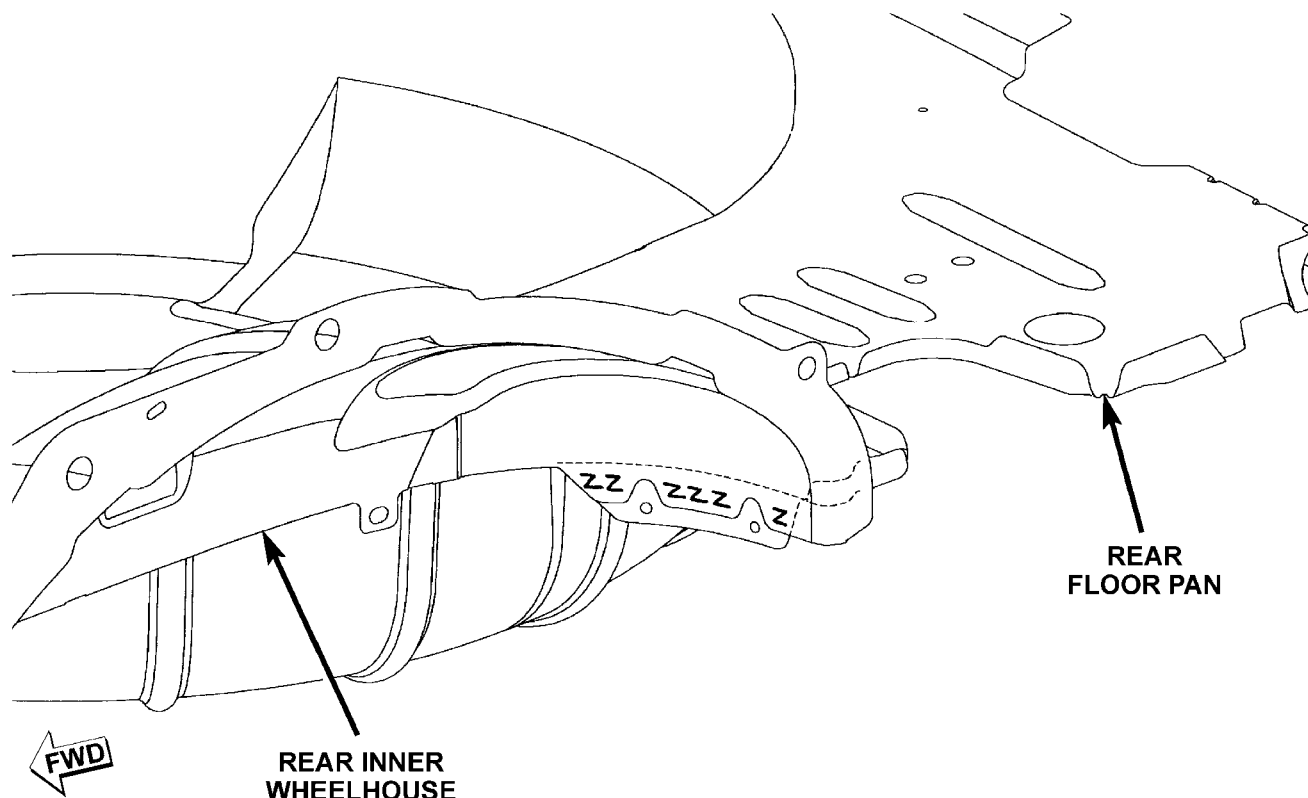
**STRUCTURAL ADHESIVE  
1775 MM X 6 MM BEAD  
MUST COVER TO EDGE OF PART**



80b6fe1e

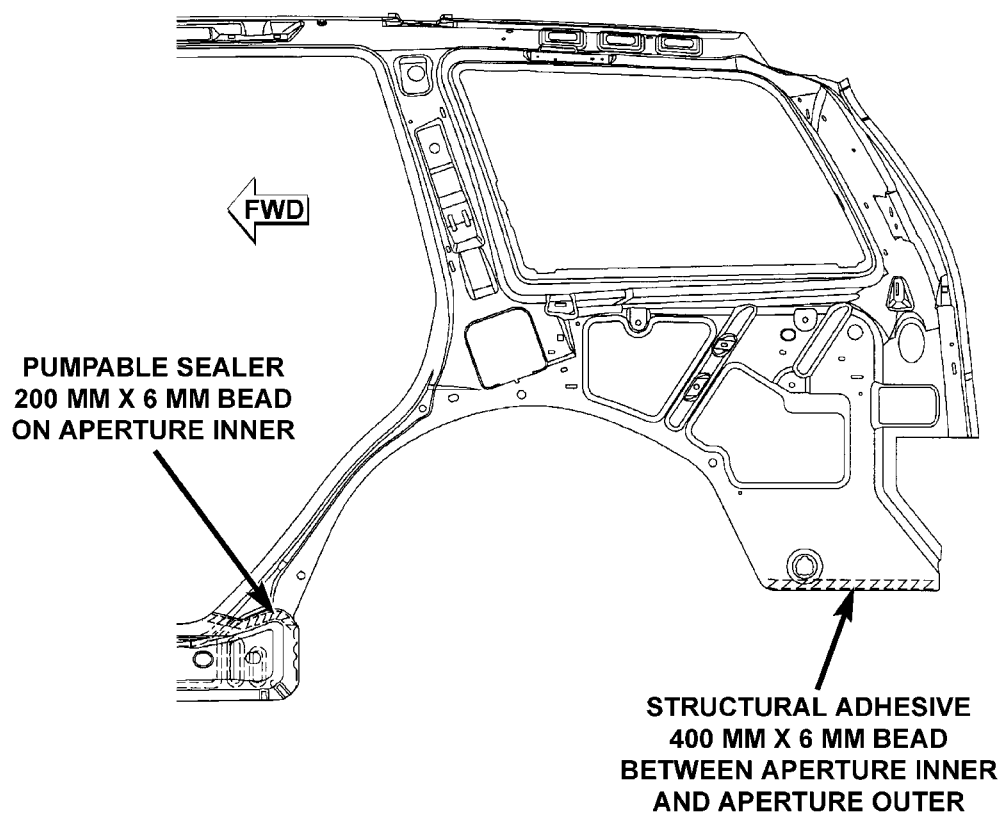
**Fig. 37 FLOOR PAN**

STRUCTURAL ADHESIVE LOCATIONS (Continued)



80b6fe9f

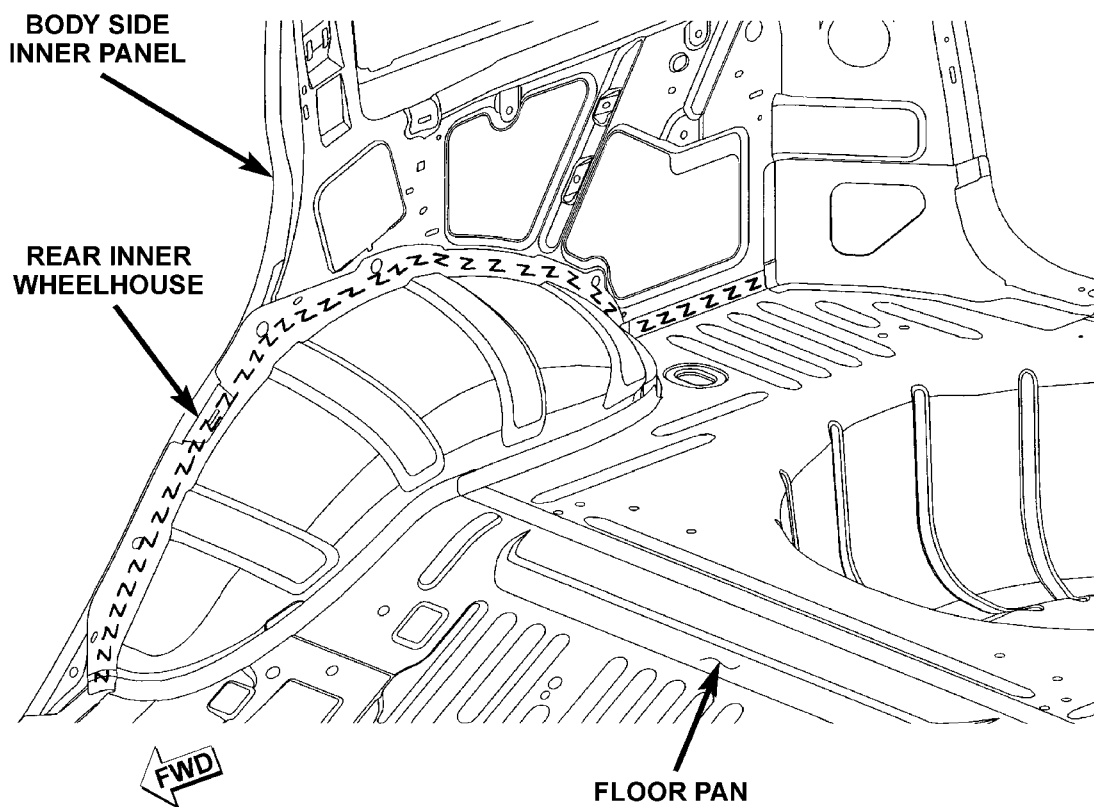
**Fig. 38 REAR INNER WHEELHOUSE AND REAR FLOOR PAN**



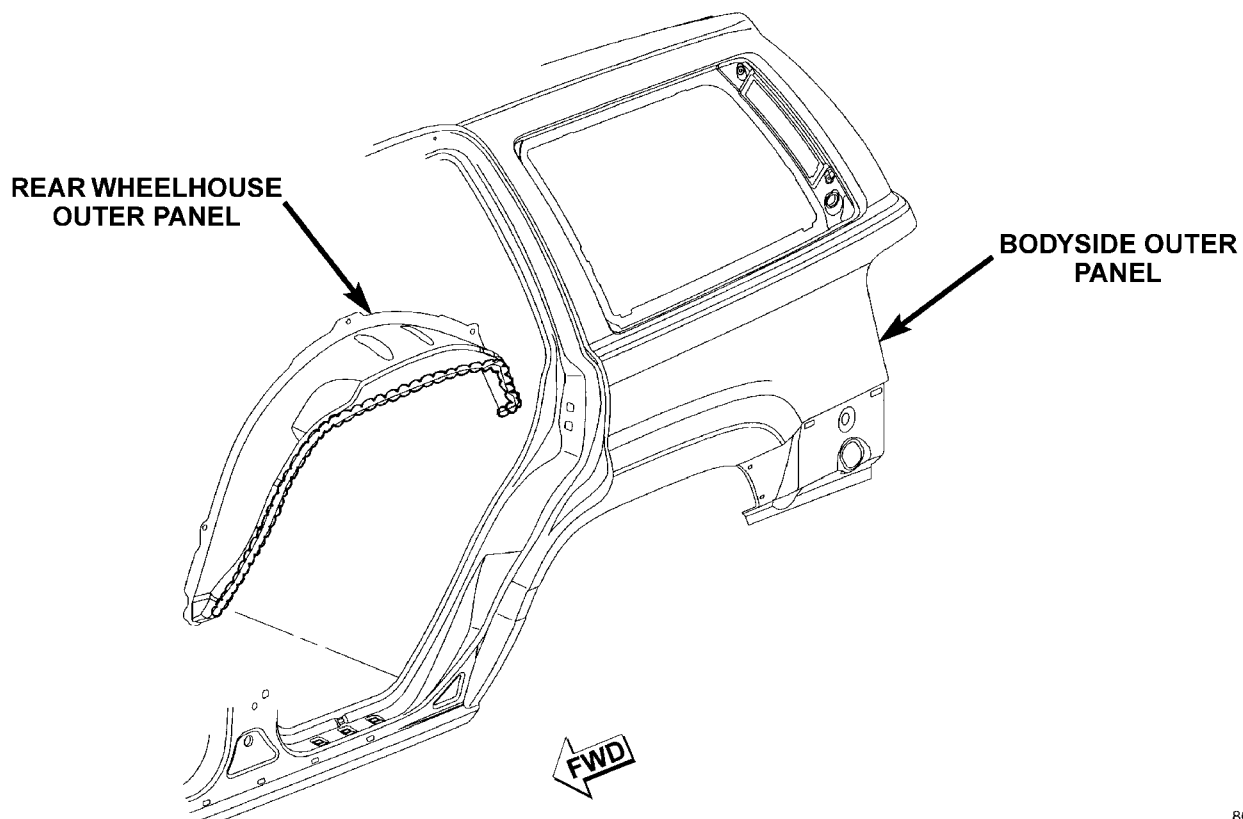
80b6fe23

**Fig. 39 RIGHT INNER BODYSIDE APERTURE**

## STRUCTURAL ADHESIVE LOCATIONS (Continued)



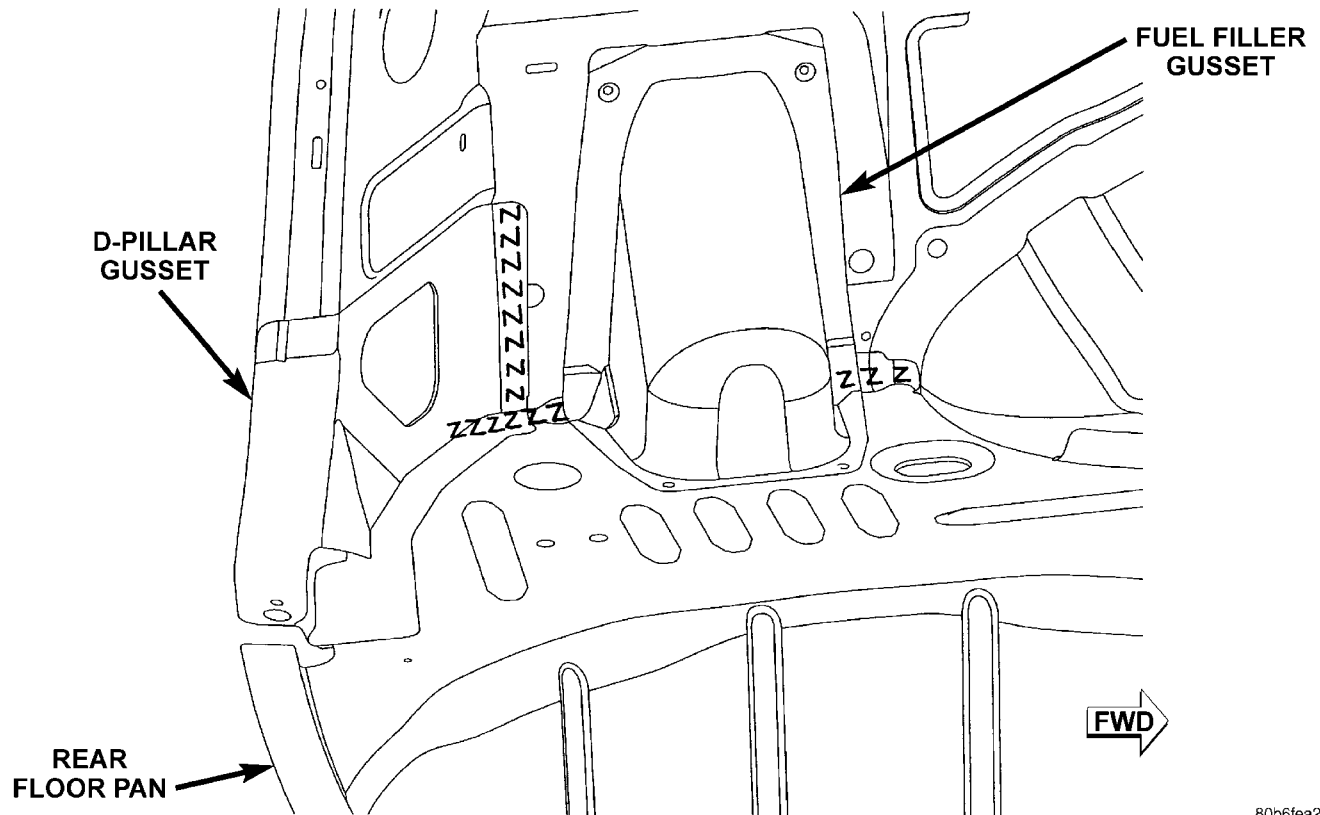
80b6fea0

**Fig. 40 BODY SIDE INNER PANEL AND WHEELHOUSE**

80b6fea1

**Fig. 41 BODY SIDE OUTER PANEL AND REAR WHEELHOUSE OUTER PANEL**

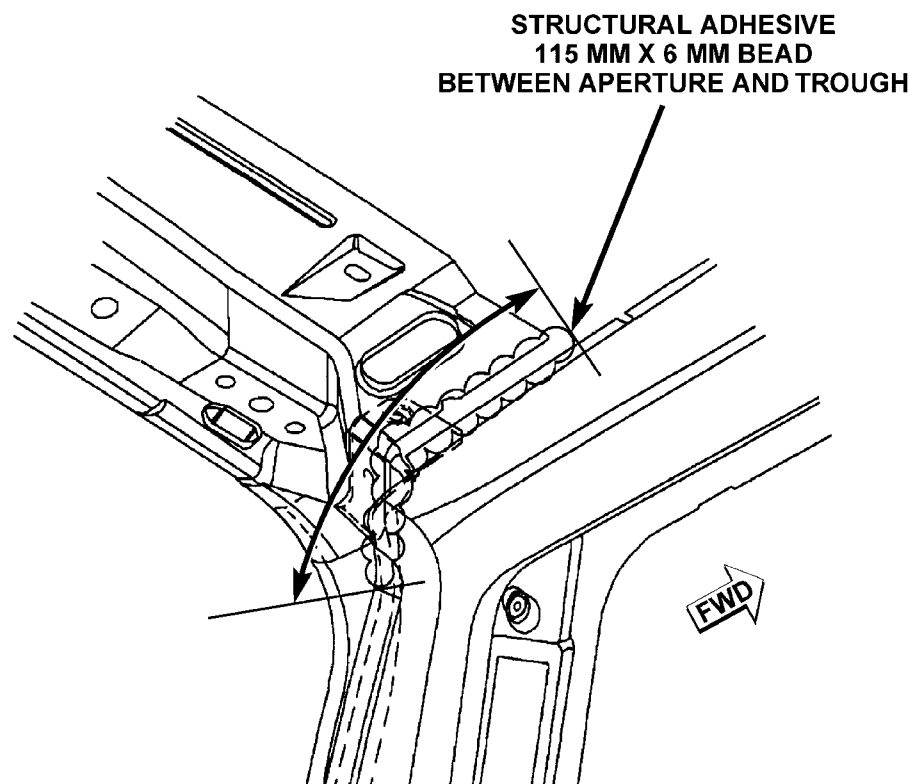
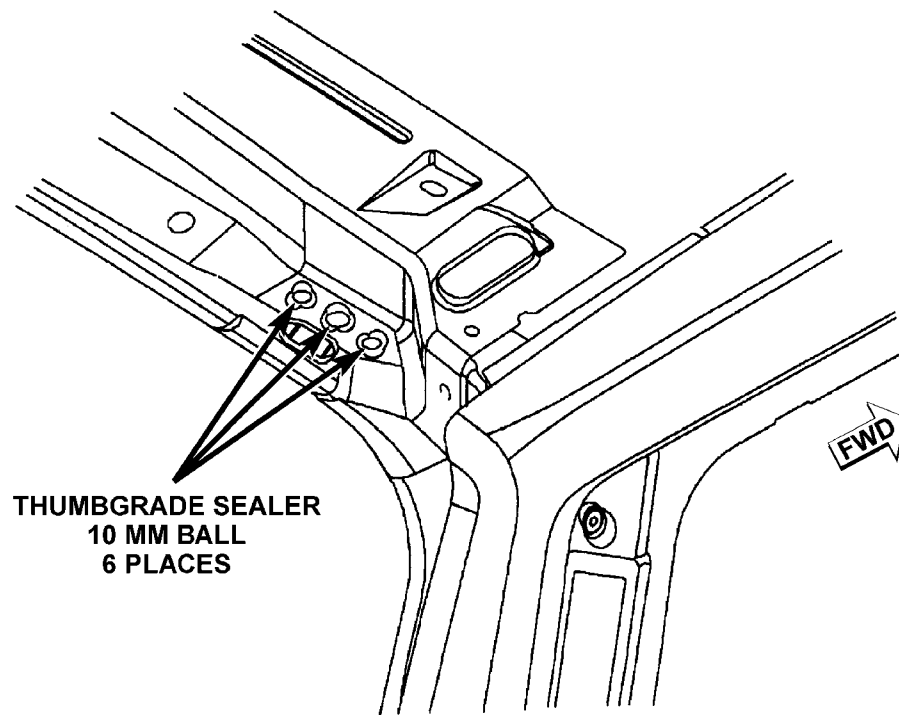
STRUCTURAL ADHESIVE LOCATIONS (Continued)



80b6fea2

**Fig. 42 D-PILLAR AND FUEL FILLER GUSSETS**

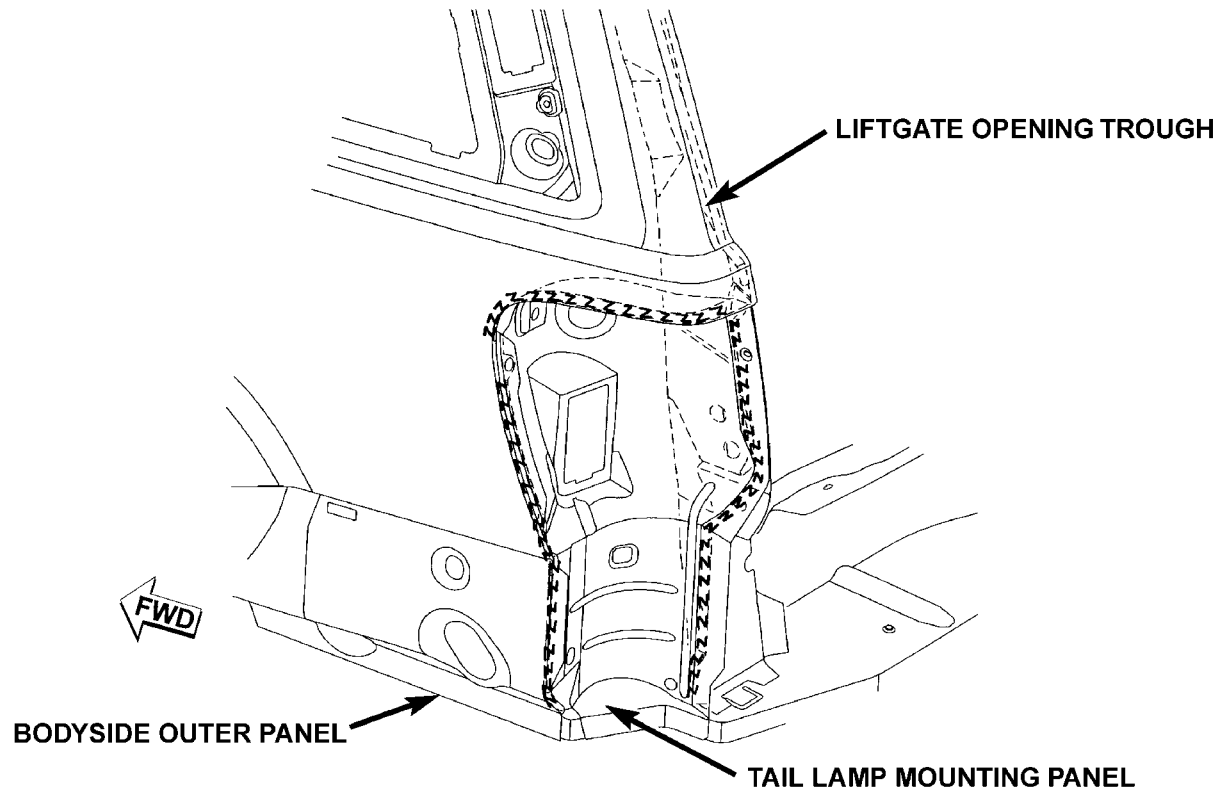
## STRUCTURAL ADHESIVE LOCATIONS (Continued)



80b6fe26

**Fig. 43 LIFTGATE**

STRUCTURAL ADHESIVE LOCATIONS (Continued)

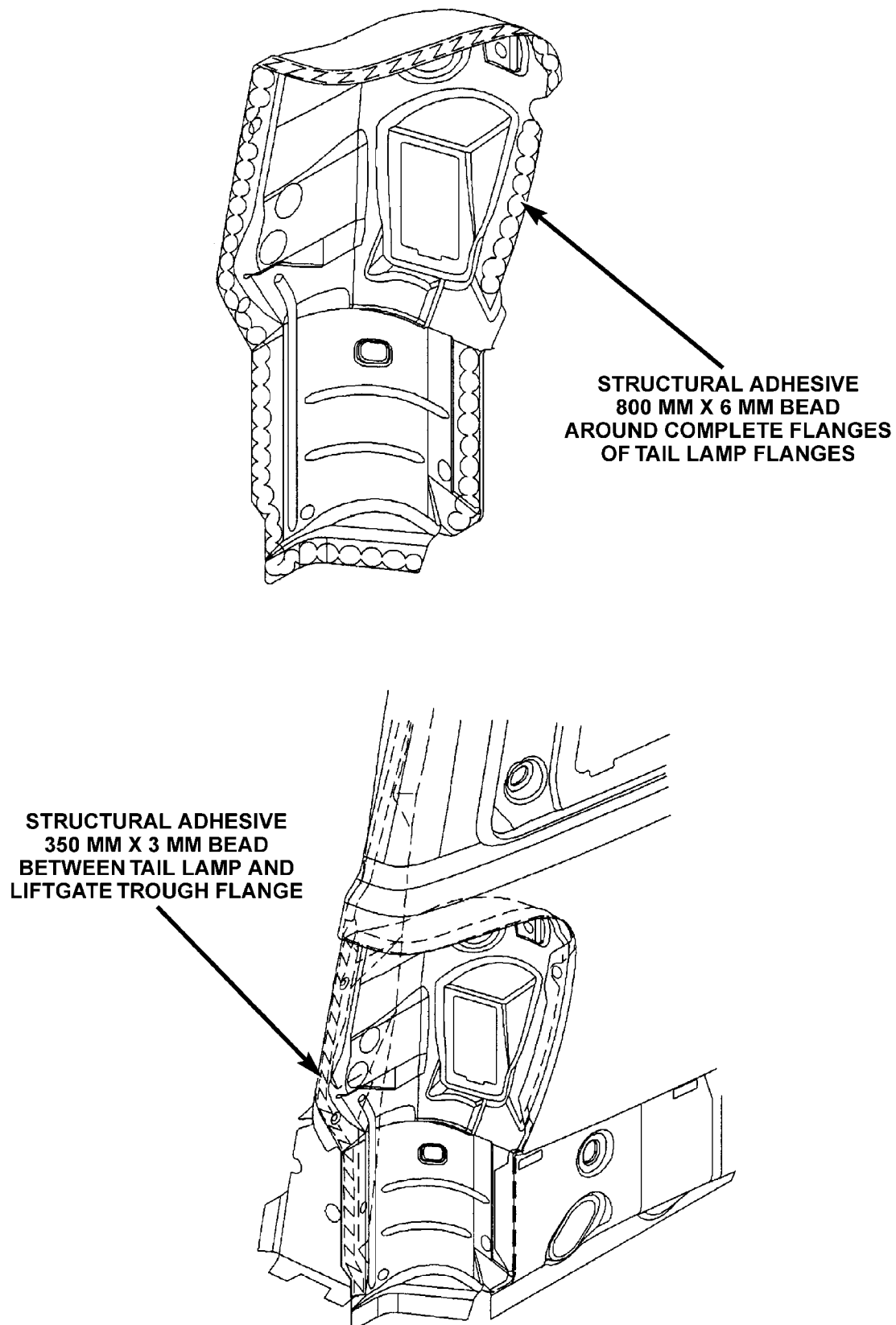


80b6fea3

**Fig. 44 TAILLAMP MOUNTING PANEL**



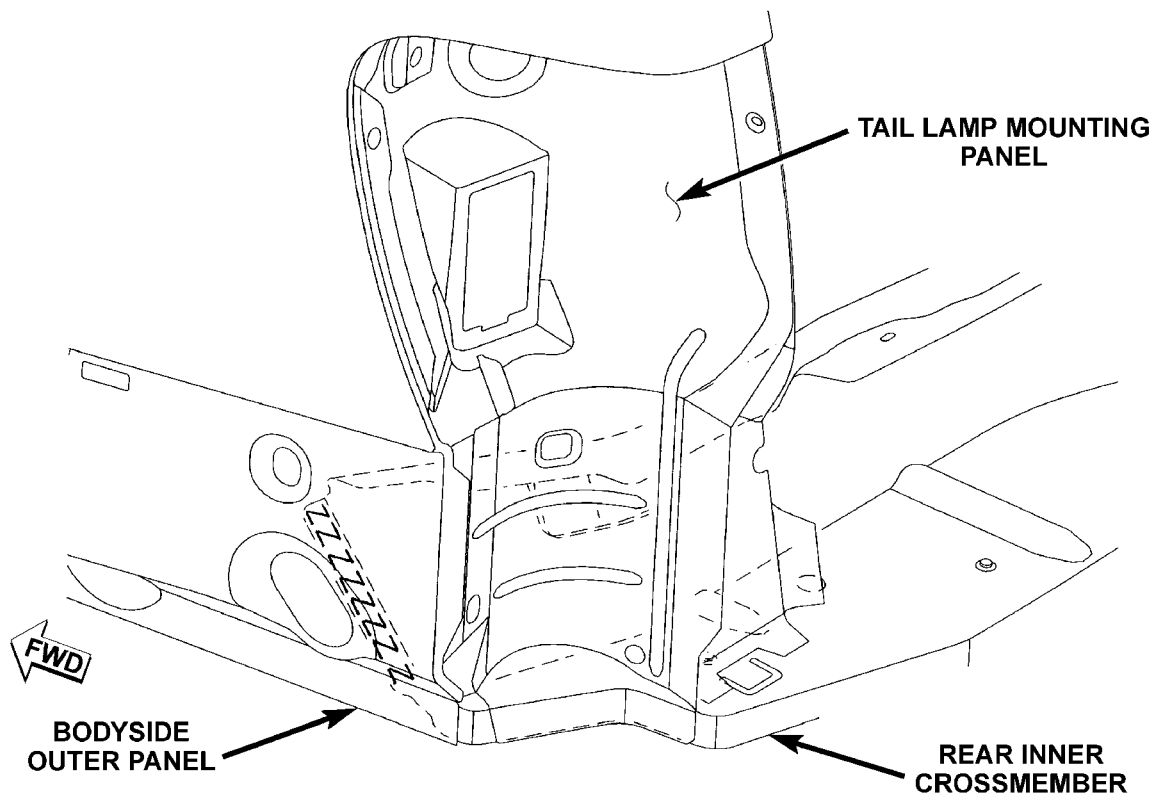
## STRUCTURAL ADHESIVE LOCATIONS (Continued)



80b6fe27

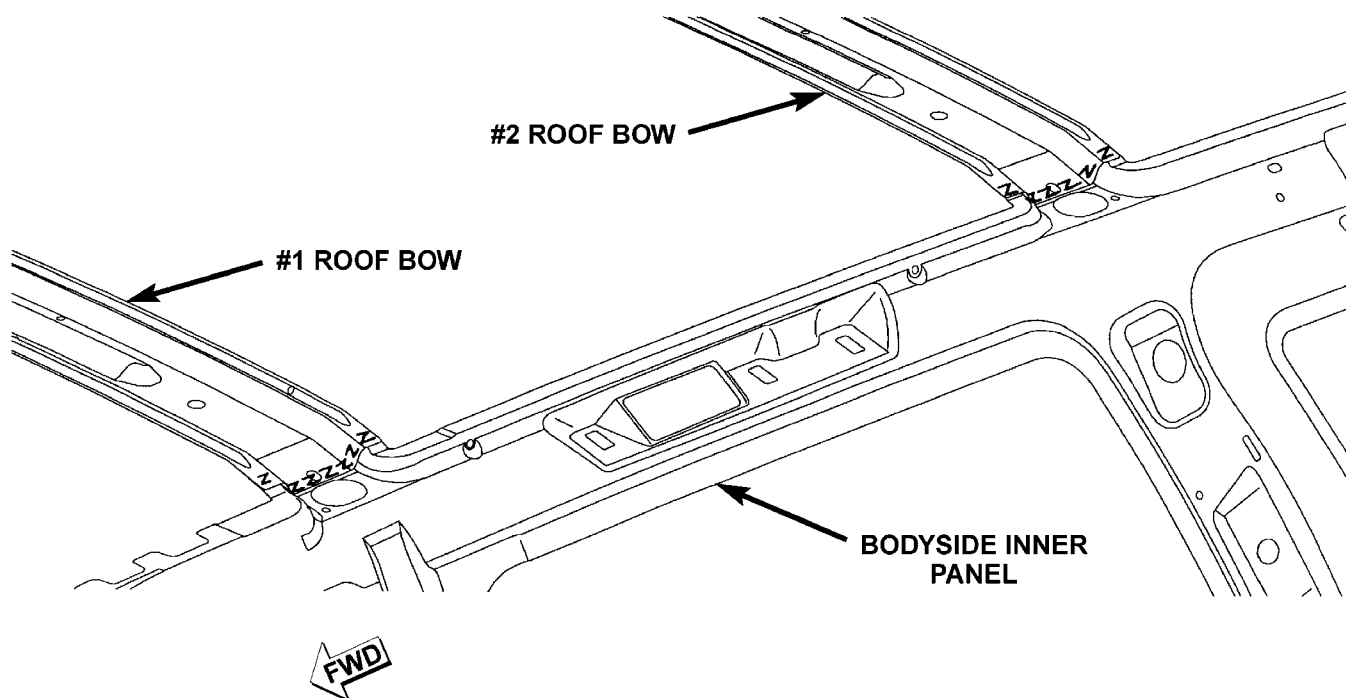
**Fig. 45 TAILLAMP**

STRUCTURAL ADHESIVE LOCATIONS (Continued)



80b6fea4

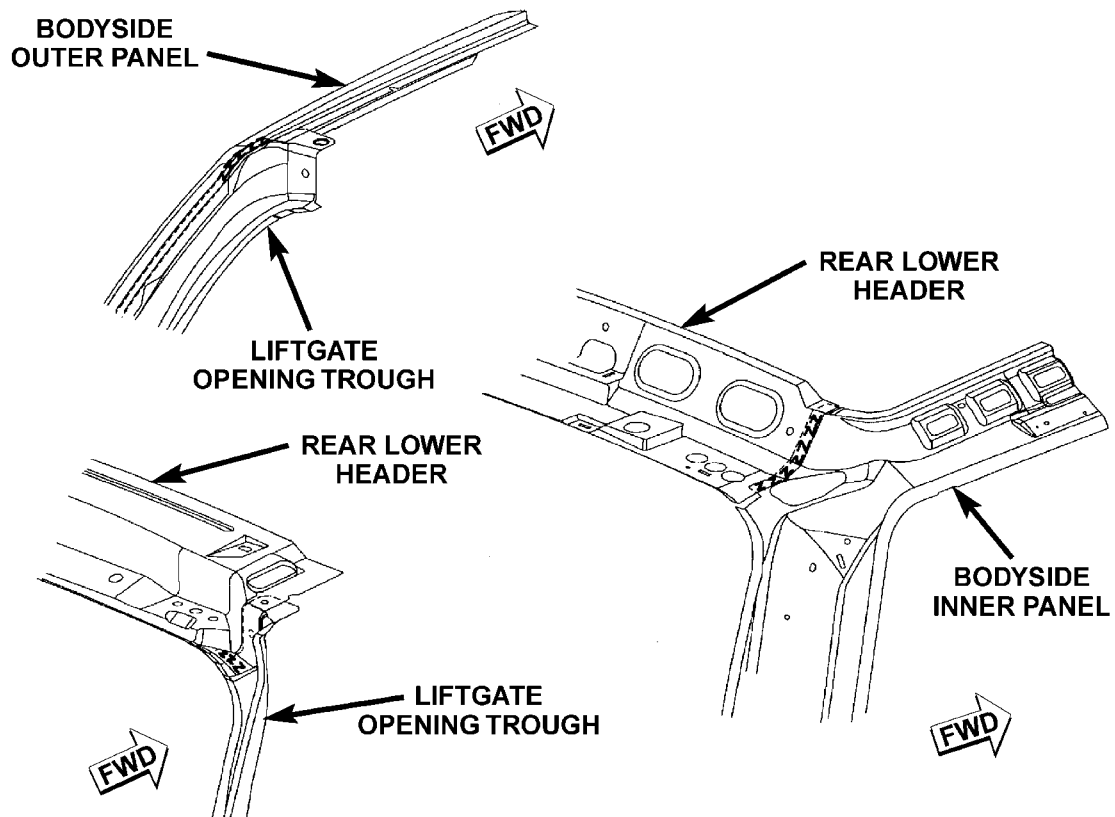
**Fig. 46 REAR INNER CROSSMEMBER**



80b6fe95

**Fig. 47 ROOF BOWS**

## STRUCTURAL ADHESIVE LOCATIONS (Continued)



80b6fe96

*Fig. 48 REAR LOWER HEADER*

## WELD LOCATIONS

## SPECIFICATIONS

## WELD LOCATIONS

## INDEX

DESCRIPTION	FIGURE
RADIATOR SUPPORT BRACKETS	49
FRONT SUSPENSION SUPPORT REINFORCEMENT	50
FRONT LOWER CROSSMEMBER TO COWL SIDE PANEL	51
FRONT SILL TO LOWER CROSSMEMBER	52
FRONT FENDER MOUNTING BRACKET AND REINFORCEMENT	53
FRONT SUSPENSION SUPPORT TO SILLS AND COWL SIDE PANEL	54
LEFT INSTRUMENT PANEL BRACKET TO COWL SIDE PANEL	55
COWL SIDE UPPER REINFORCEMENT TO COWL SIDE AND FRONT SUSPENSION SUPPORT	56
COWL SIDE PANEL TO DASH PANEL AND INNER BODYSIDE PANEL AND SILL	57
PLENUM ASSEMBLY TO COWL SIDE PANEL	58
FRONT LOWER CROSSMEMBER	59
FRONT SUSPENSION SUPPORT TO DASH	60
WIPER MOUNTING BRACKETS TO PLENUM ASSEMBLY	61
COWL TOP AND PLENUM ASSEMBLY	62
LOWER PLENUM REINFORCEMENT TO LOWER PLENUM PANEL	63
DASH PANEL TO LOWER PLENUM PANEL	64
PLENUM ASSEMBLY TO COWL	65
COWL PANEL TO BODYSIDE SILL	66
COWL PANEL TO FRONT FLOOR PAN	67
FRONT SILLS TO DASH AND FRONT FLOOR PAN	68
COWL SIDE PANEL DASH INNER BODYSIDE AND OUTER BODYSIDE PANELS	69
UPPER FRONT INNER PILLAR TO ROOF AND COWL	70
DOOR OPENINGS	71
B-PILLAR REINFORCEMENT TO INNER BODYSIDE APERTURE	72
REAR QUARTER WINDOW TO BODYSIDE APERTURE INNER AND OUTER	73
LOWER REAR QUARTER TO BODYSIDE APERTURE INNER AND OUTER	74
INNER TRACK BAR, LOWER CONTROL ARM AND TRANSMISSION CROSSMEMBER BRACKETS TO FRONT SILLS	75
TRANSMISSION CROSSMEMBER BRACKET AND REINFORCEMENT TO FRONT SILLS	76
UPPER SILLS AND UPPER CONTROL ARM REINFORCEMENT AND BRACKETS TO FRONT SILLS	77
REINFORCEMENT TO FRONT OUTER SILLS	78
FRONT INNER SILL TO FRONT OUTER SILL	79
OUTER TRACK BAR BRACKET TO FRONT OUTER SILL	80

## WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)

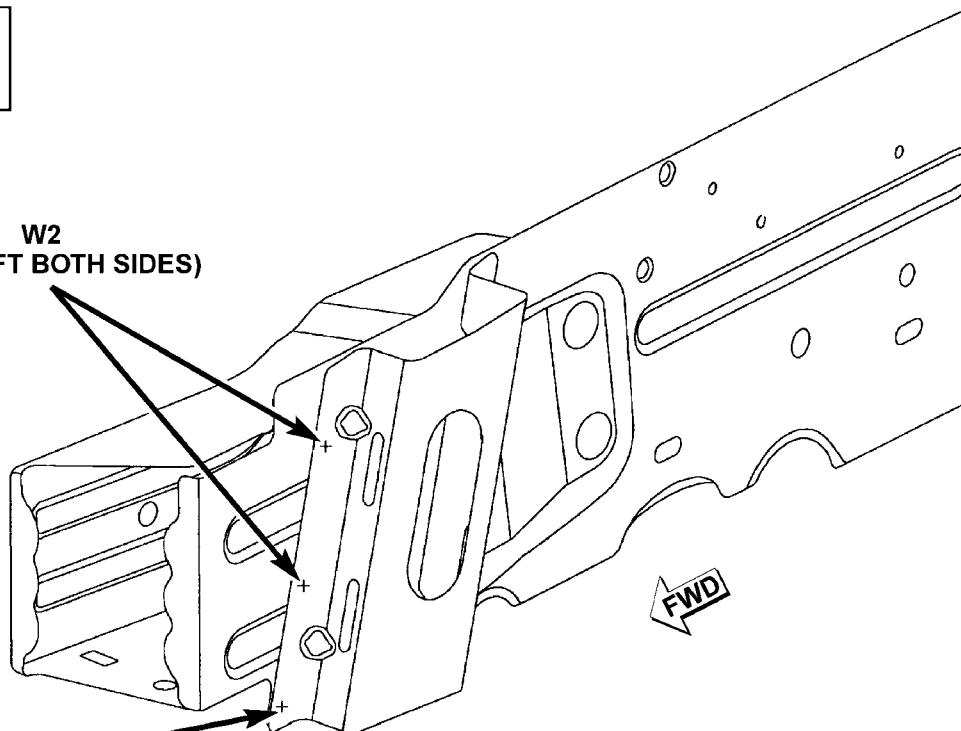
DESCRIPTION	FIGURE
REINFORCEMENT FOR FRONT ENGINE MOUNTING AND STEERING GEAR TO FRONT INNER SILL	81
LARGE AND SMALL SWAY BAR TAPPING PLATES TO FRONT INNER SILLS	82
FRONT AND REAR DOOR HINGE TAPPING PLATES	83
REAR DOOR STRIKER REINFORCEMENT	84
TAIL LAMP MOUNTING PANELS	85
ROOF PANEL TO BODYSIDE APERTURE	86
ROOF PANEL TO REAR HEADER	87
UPPER REAR HEADER TO LOWER HEADER	88
FRONT HEADER AND ROOF BOWS TO INNER PANEL	89
FRONT SEAT/SHOULDER BELT TO INNER PANEL REINFORCEMENT	90
REAR SEAT/SHOULDER BELT TO INNER PANEL REINFORCEMENT	91
FUEL FILLER GUSSET TO INNER QUARTER PANEL	92
FRONT FLOOR PAN TO SILL REINFORCEMENT	93
CENTER FLOOR PAN TO REAR SEAT CROSSMEMBER	94
FRONT FLOOR PAN TO FRONT SEAT REINFORCEMENT AND RAILS	95
CENTER FLOOR PAN TO UPPER CONTROL ARM CROSSMEMBER AND RAILS	96
REAR FLOOR PAN TO RAILS AND SPRING GUIDE CROSSMEMBER	97
REAR RAILS	98
UPPER CONTROL ARM CROSSMEMBER TO REAR RAIL	99
REAR RAIL REINFORCEMENT TO REAR RAILS	100
UPPER CONTROL ARM REINFORCEMENTS TO REAR RAIL	101
OUTER TRANSMISSION CROSSMEMBER REINFORCEMENT TO RAIL AND BODYSIDE SILL	102
BODYSIDE SILL TO FLOOR PAN	103
REAR RAILS TO REAR CROSSMEMBER	104
INNER WHEELHOUSE TO FLOOR PAN	105
INNER WHEELHOUSE TO INNER BODYSIDE APERTURE AND FLOOR PAN	106
OUTER WHEELHOUSE TO OUTER BODYSIDE APERTURE	107
OUTER WHEELHOUSE TO INNER BODYSIDE APERTURE	108
INNER BODYSIDE APERTURE TO OUTER BODYSIDE APERTURE	109
REAR INBOARD SEAT BELT REINFORCEMENT TO FLOOR PAN	110

WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)

W2 - WELDING OF 2 PARTS  
W3 - WELDING OF 3 PARTS  
W4 - WELDING OF 4 PARTS

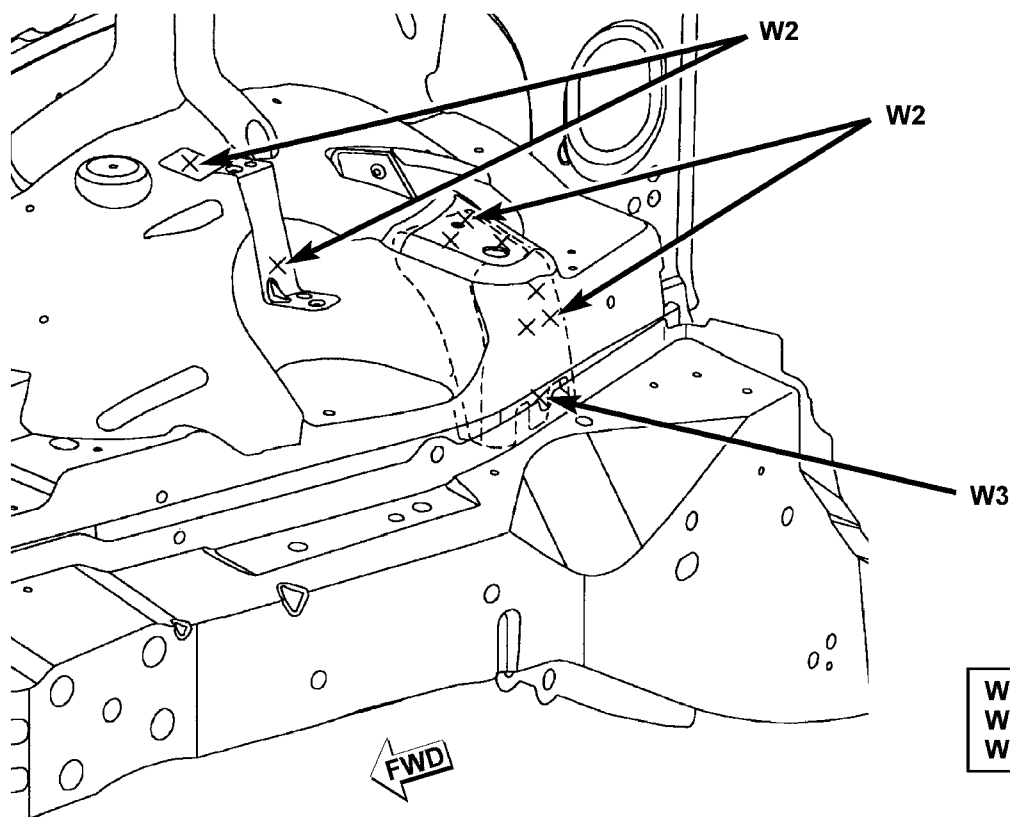
W2  
(FORE/AFT BOTH SIDES)

W3  
(FORE/AFT BOTH SIDES)



80b6fe8a

Fig. 49 RADIATOR SUPPORT BRACKETS



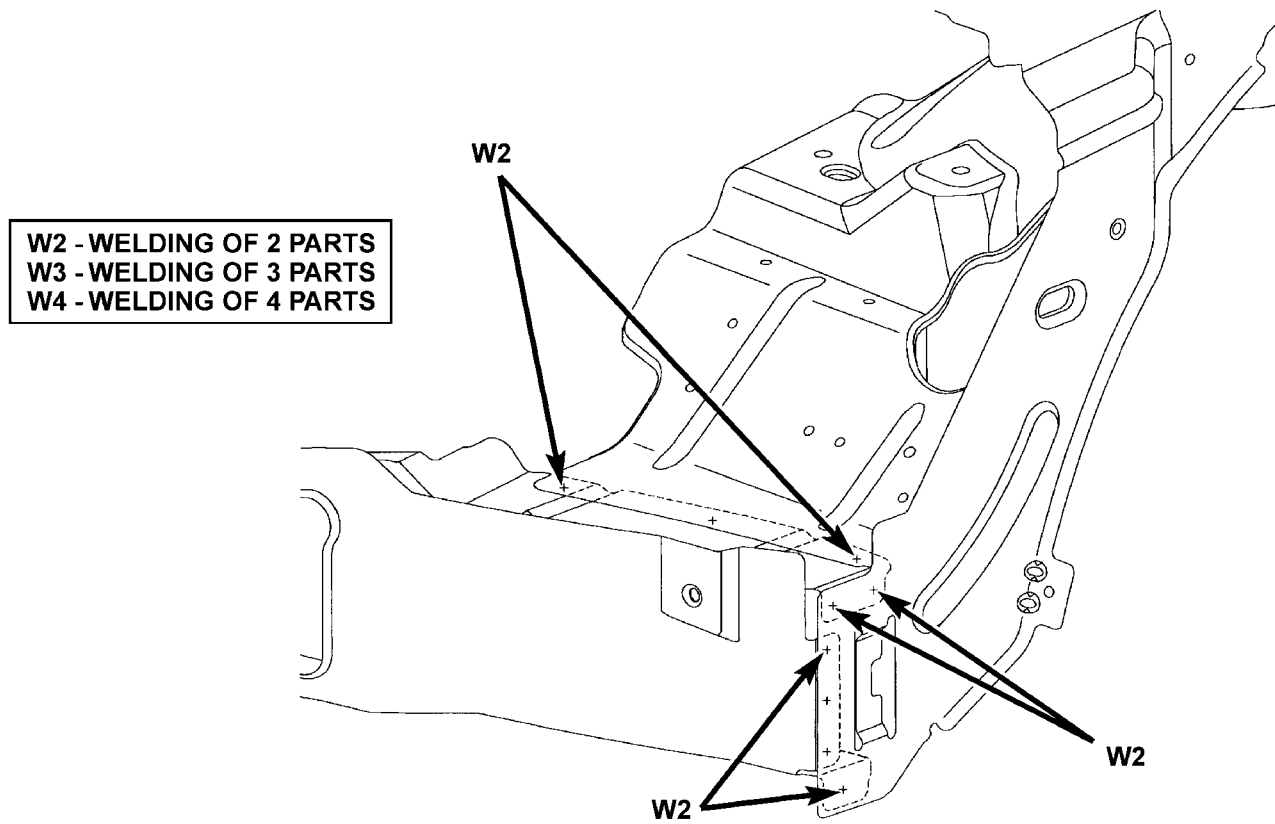
W2 - WELDING OF 2 PARTS  
W3 - WELDING OF 3 PARTS  
W4 - WELDING OF 4 PARTS

80b6fe8b

Fig. 50 FRONT SUSPENSION SUPPORT REINFORCEMENT



## WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)



80b6fe8c

*Fig. 51 FRONT LOWER CROSSMEMBER TO COWL SIDE PANEL*

## WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)

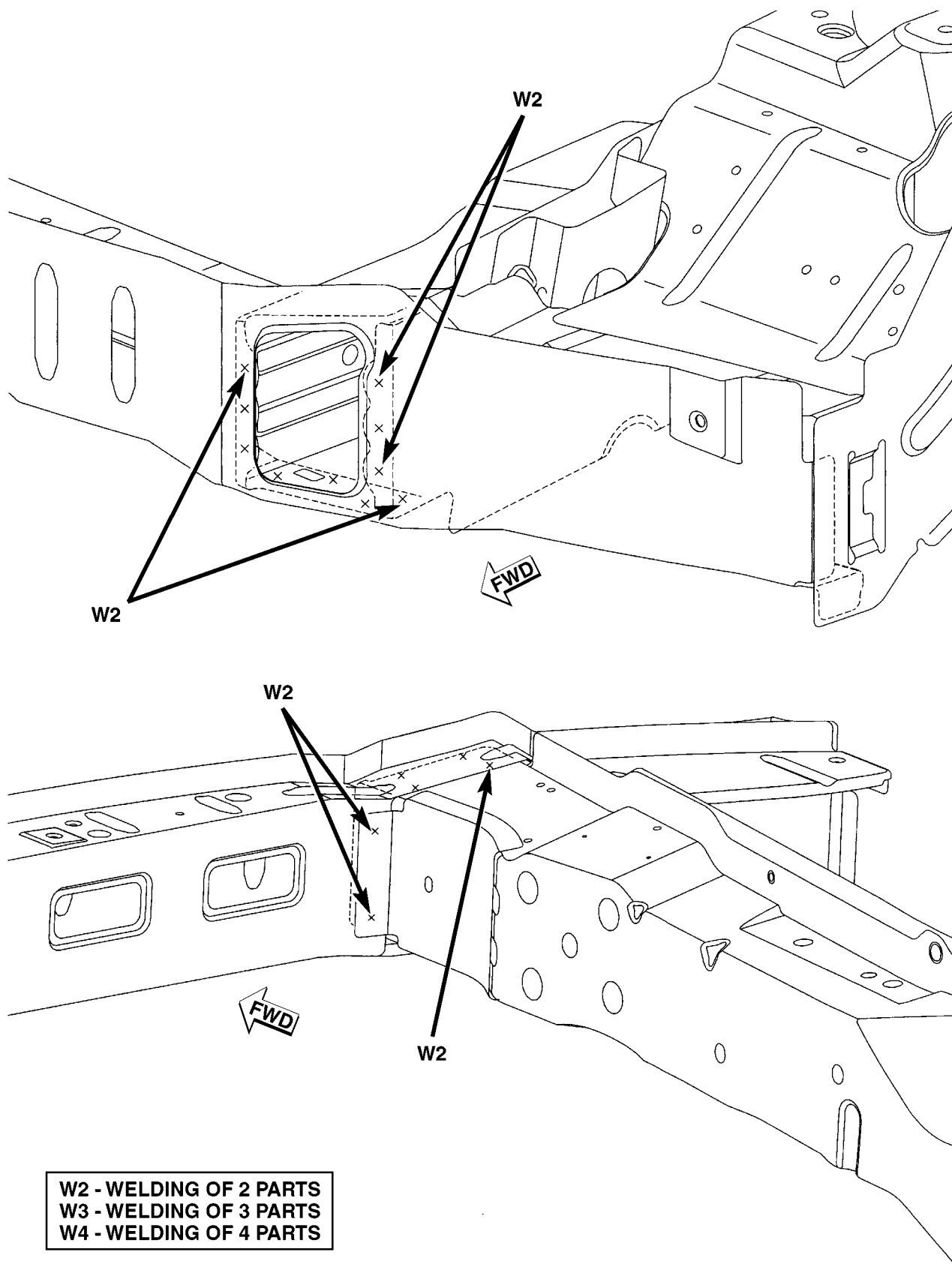
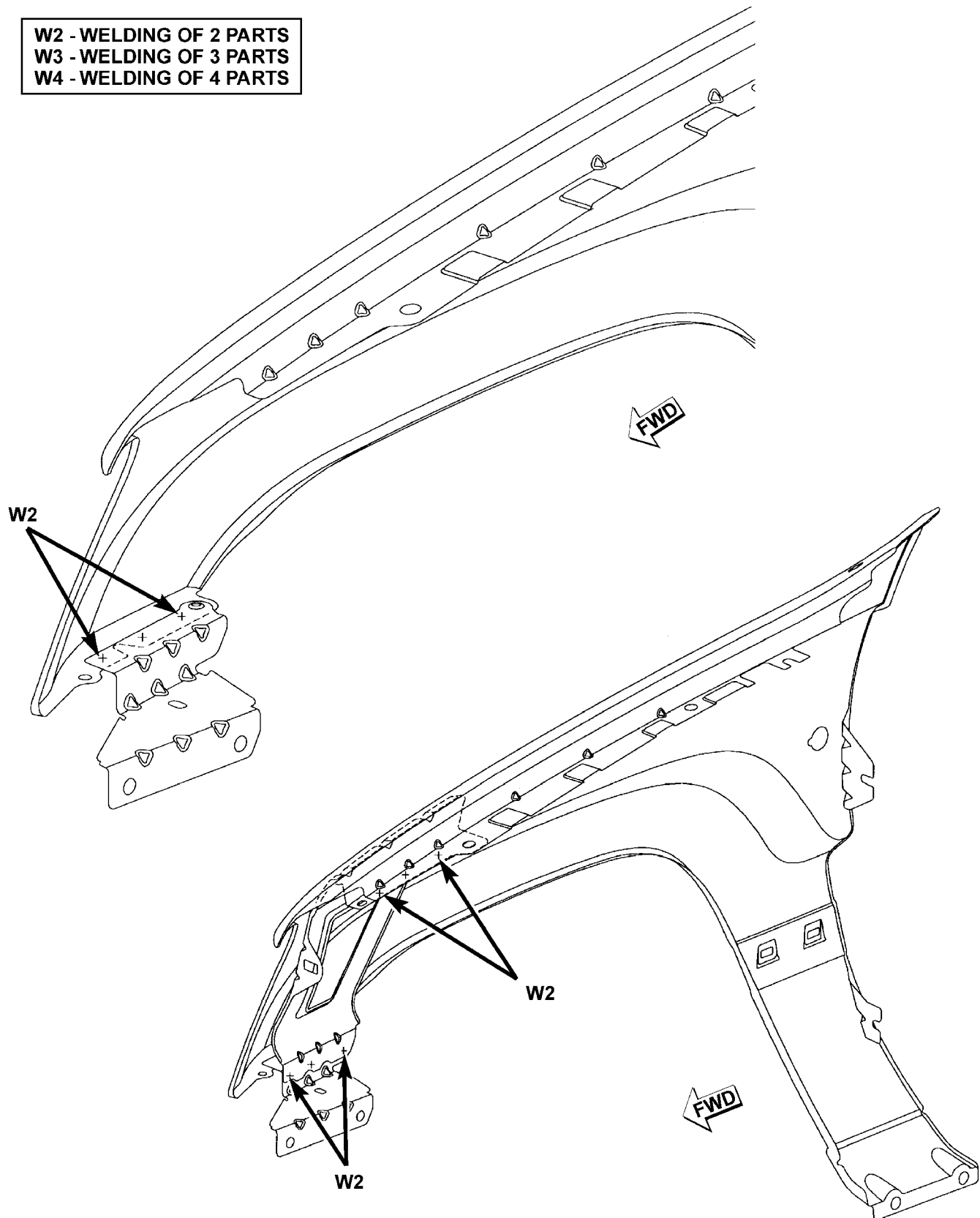


Fig. 52 FRONT SILL TO LOWER CROSSMEMBER

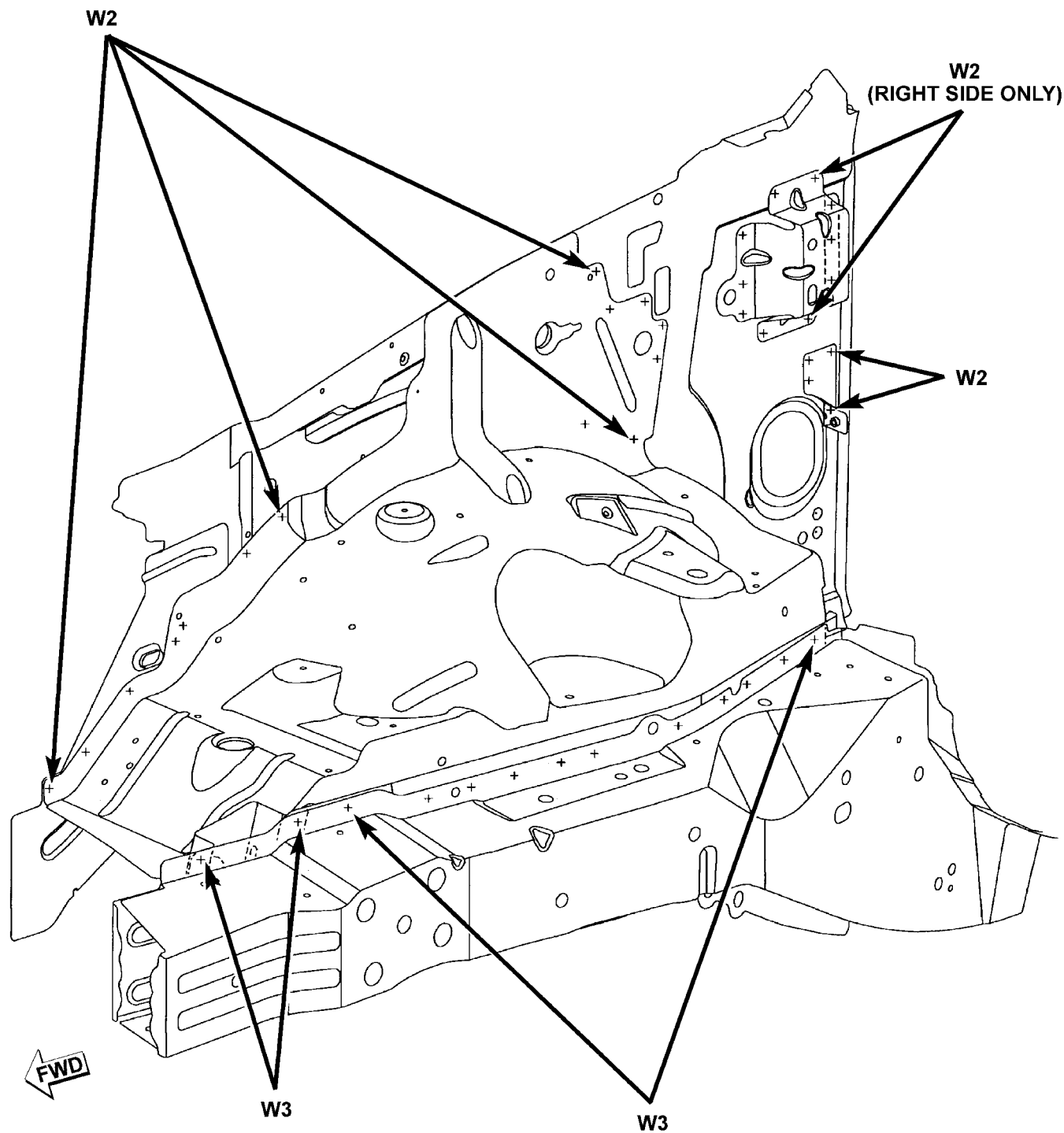
## WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)



80b6fe8e

**Fig. 53 FRONT FENDER MOUNTING BRACKET AND REINFORCEMENT**

## WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)

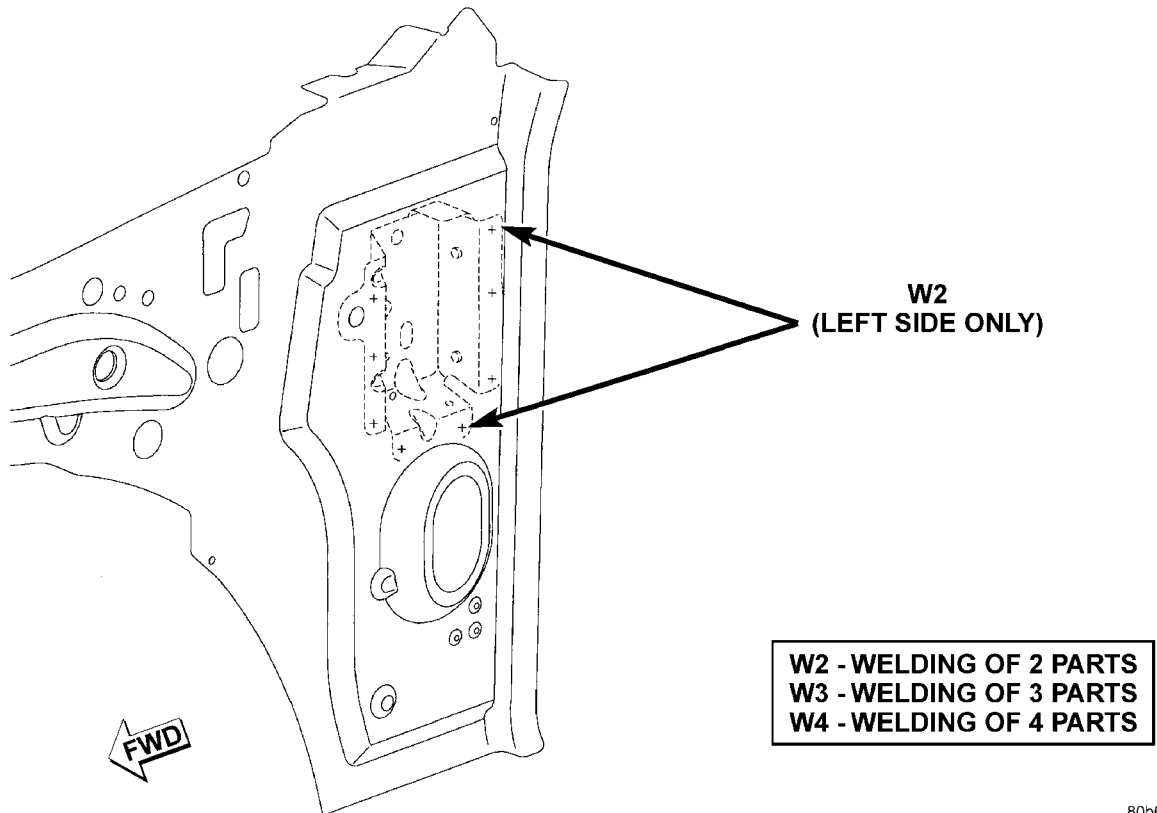


W2 - WELDING OF 2 PARTS  
W3 - WELDING OF 3 PARTS  
W4 - WELDING OF 4 PARTS

80b6fe59

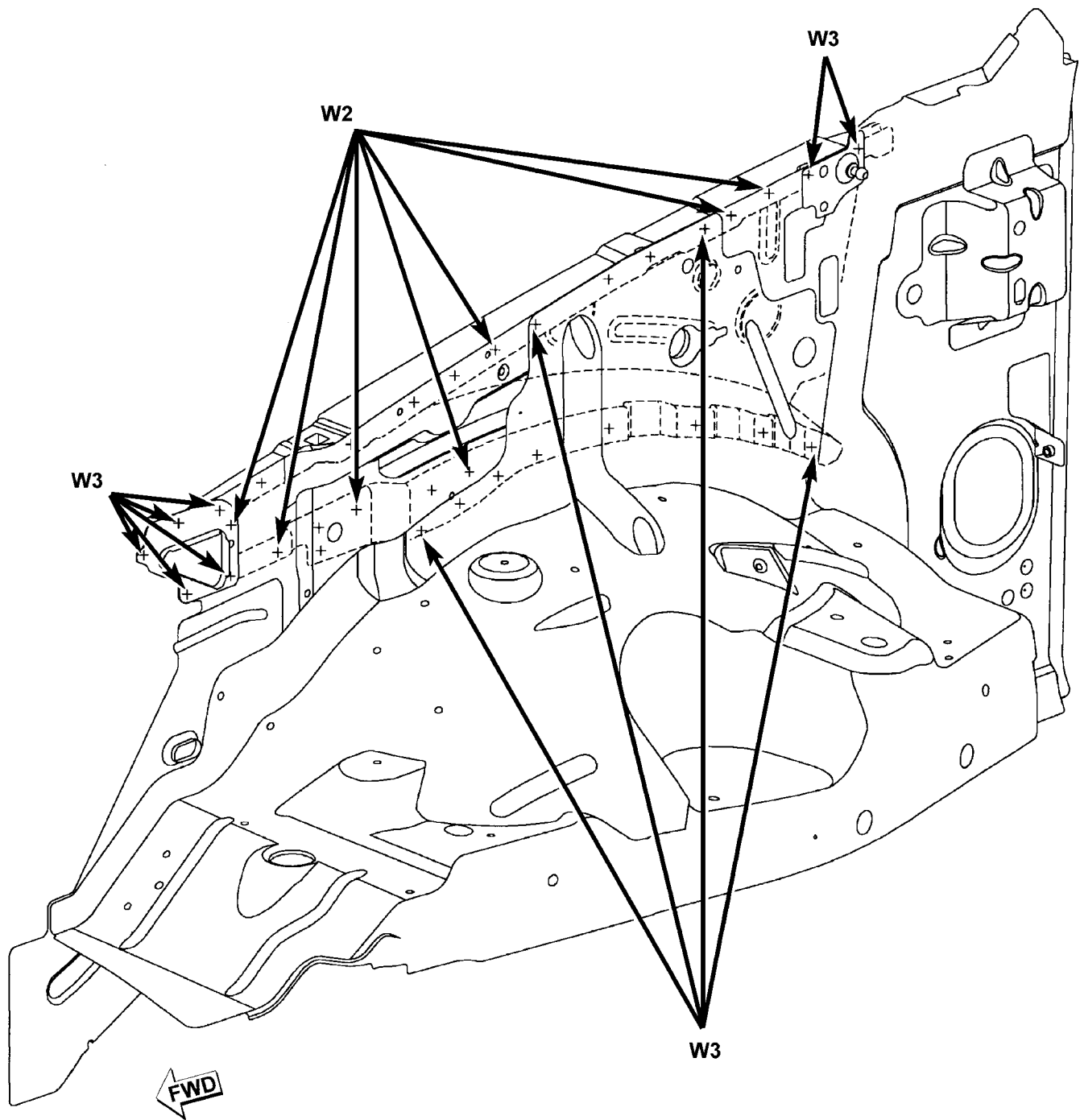
*Fig. 54 FRONT SUSPENSION SUPPORT TO SILLS AND COWL SIDE PANEL*

## WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)



**Fig. 55 LEFT INSTRUMENT PANEL BRACKET TO COWL SIDE PANEL**

## WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)



W2 - WELDING OF 2 PARTS  
W3 - WELDING OF 3 PARTS  
W4 - WELDING OF 4 PARTS

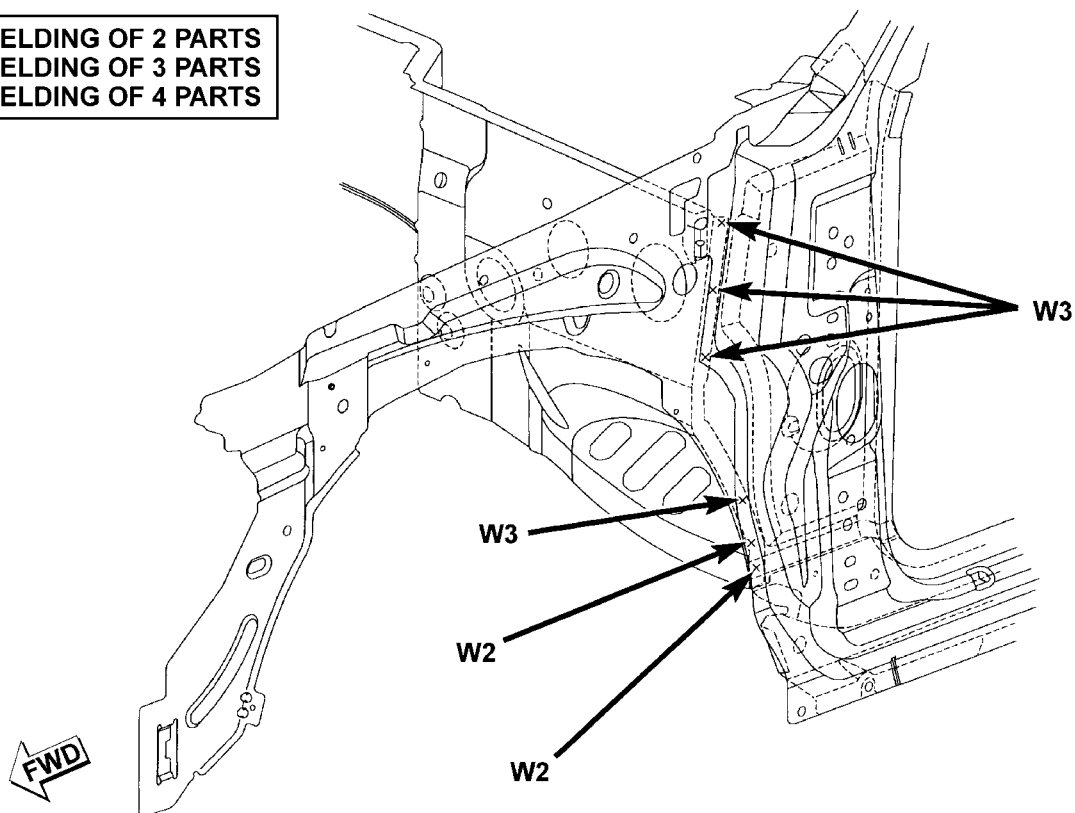
80b6fe5b

Fig. 56 COWL SIDE UPPER REINFORCEMENT TO COWL SIDE AND FRONT SUSPENSION SUPPORT



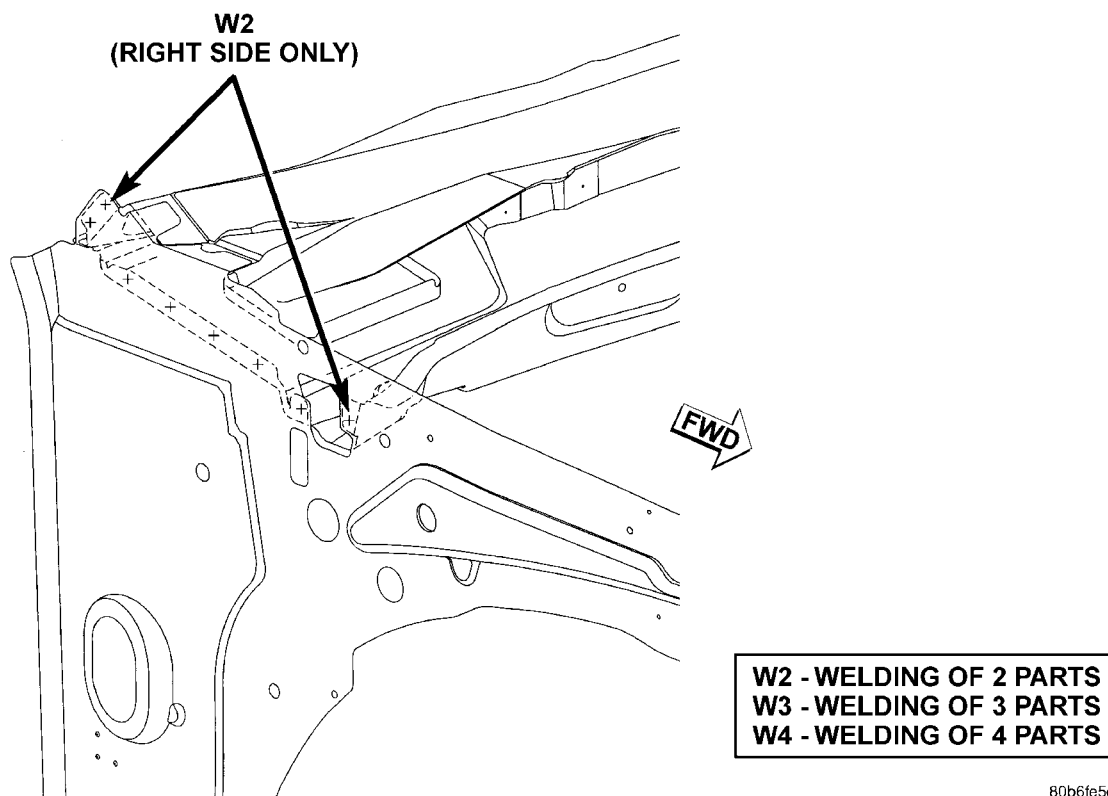
## WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)

W2 - WELDING OF 2 PARTS  
W3 - WELDING OF 3 PARTS  
W4 - WELDING OF 4 PARTS



80b6feb3

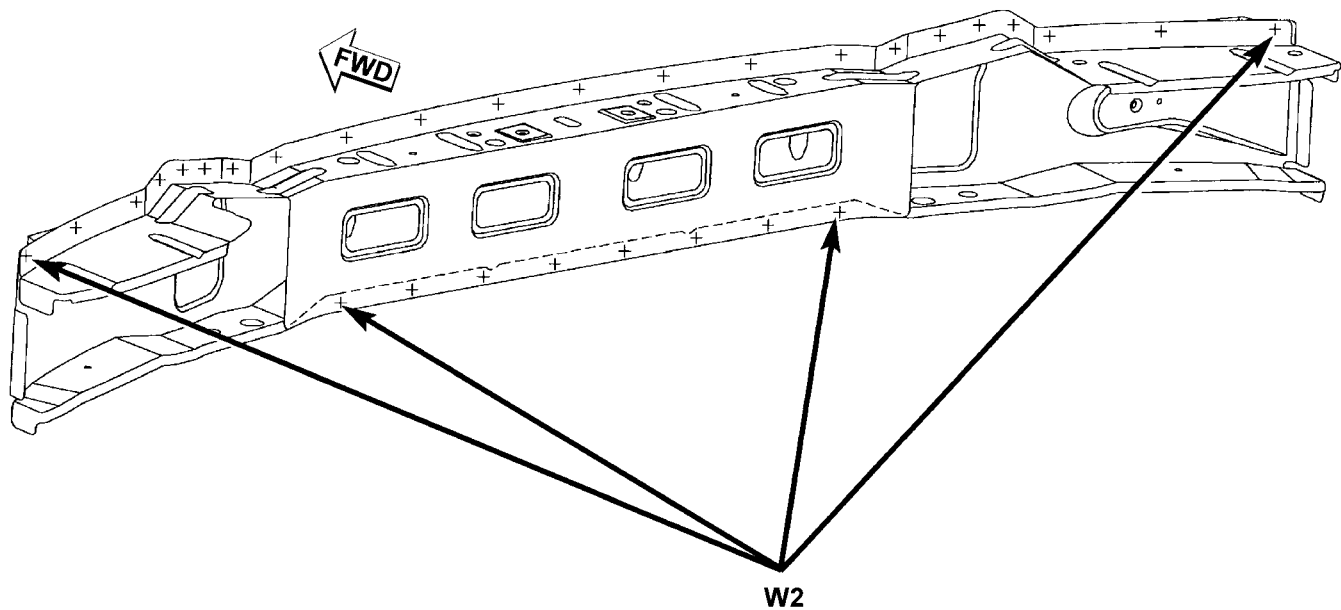
Fig. 57 COWL SIDE PANEL TO DASH PANEL AND INNER BODYSIDE PANEL AND SILL



80b6fe5c

Fig. 58 PLENUM ASSEMBLY TO COWL SIDE PANEL

## WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)



W2 - WELDING OF 2 PARTS  
W3 - WELDING OF 3 PARTS  
W4 - WELDING OF 4 PARTS

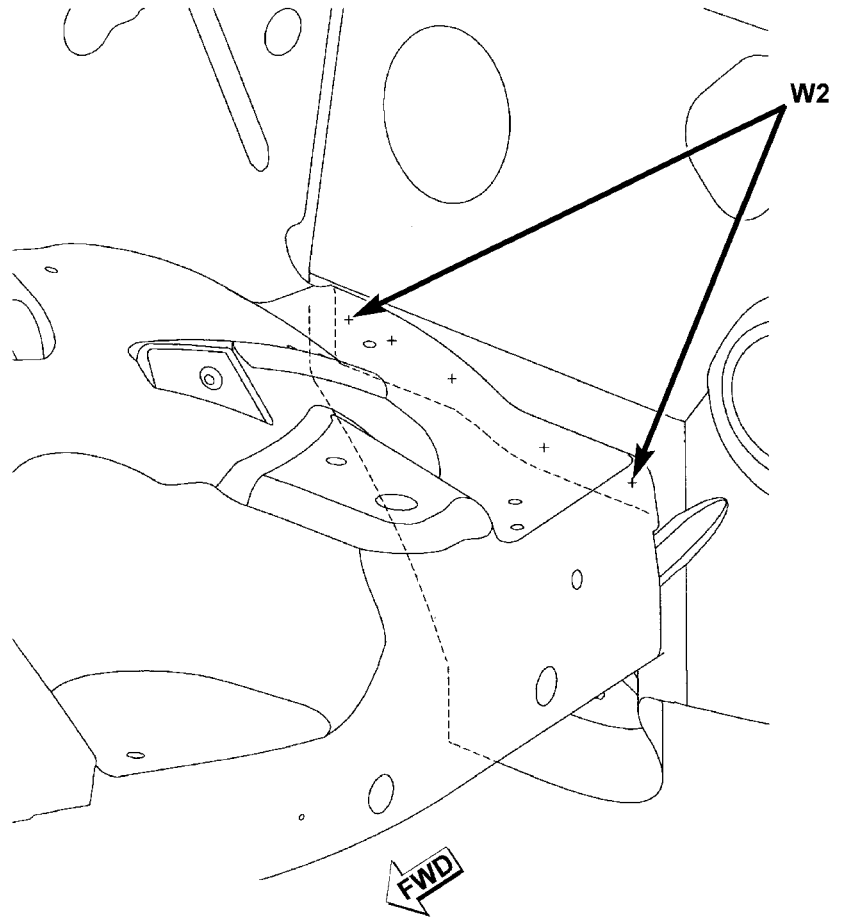
80b6fe7e

*Fig. 59 FRONT LOWER CROSSMEMBER*

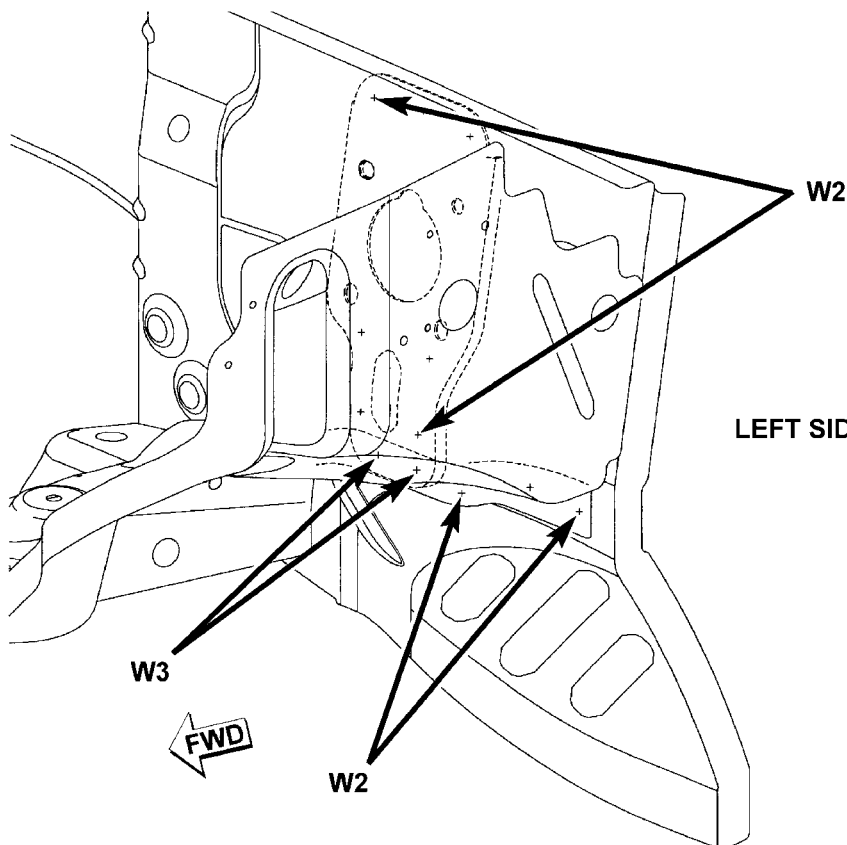
## WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)

W2 - WELDING OF 2 PARTS  
W3 - WELDING OF 3 PARTS  
W4 - WELDING OF 4 PARTS

RIGHT SIDE ONLY



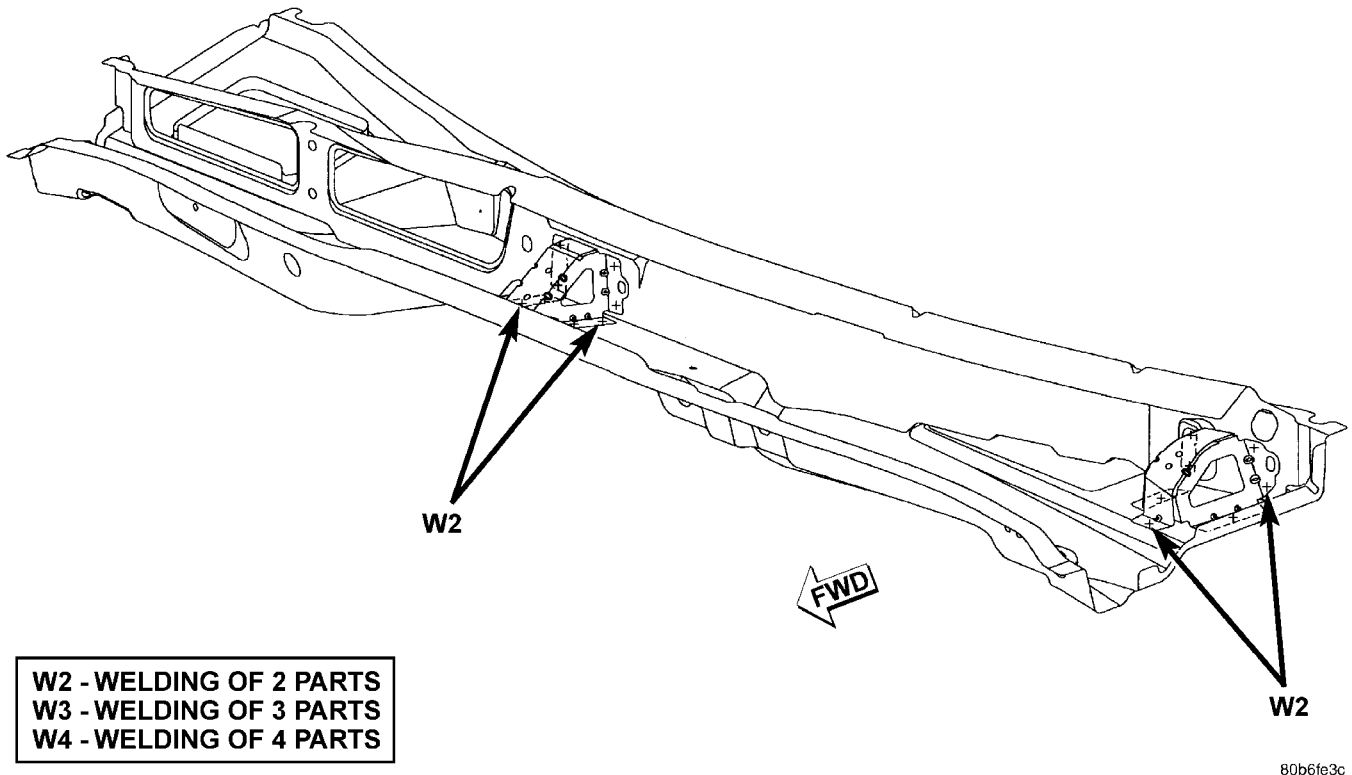
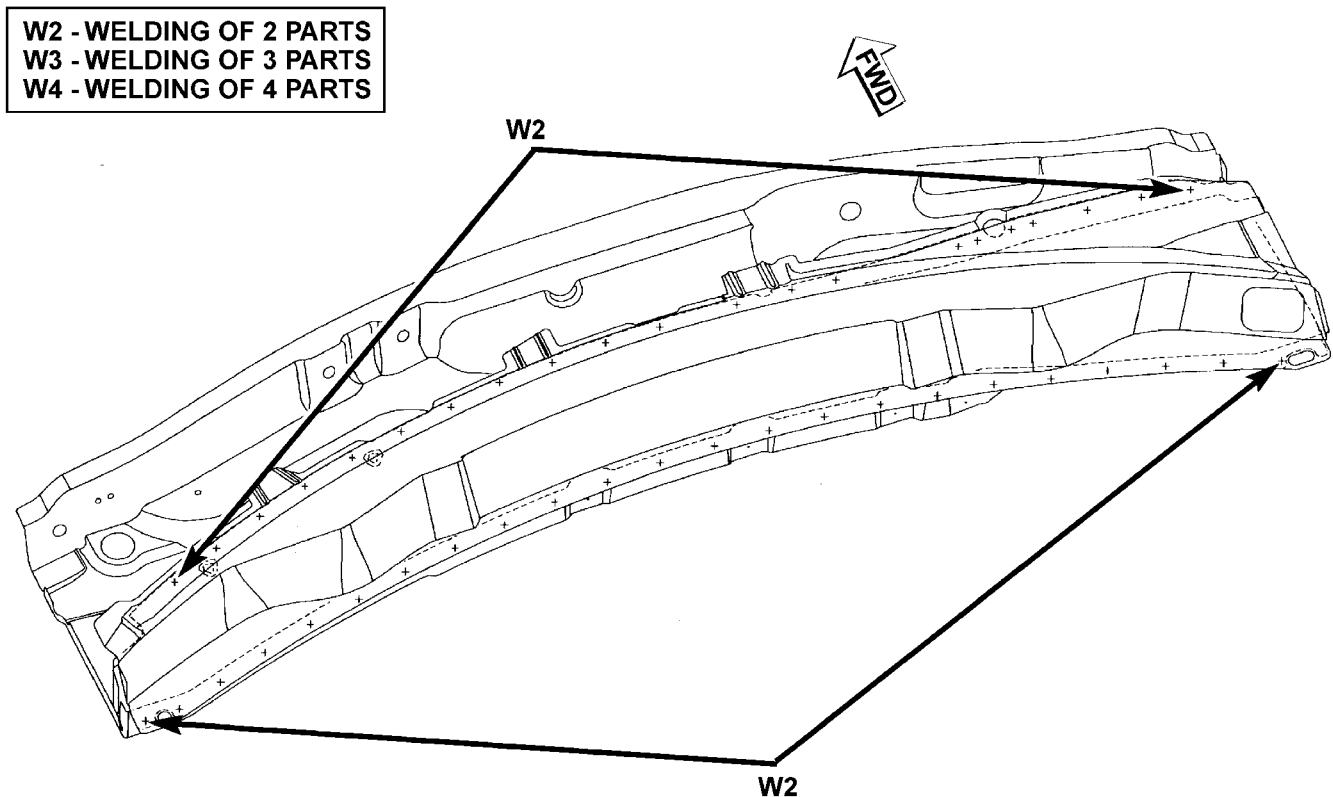
LEFT SIDE ONLY



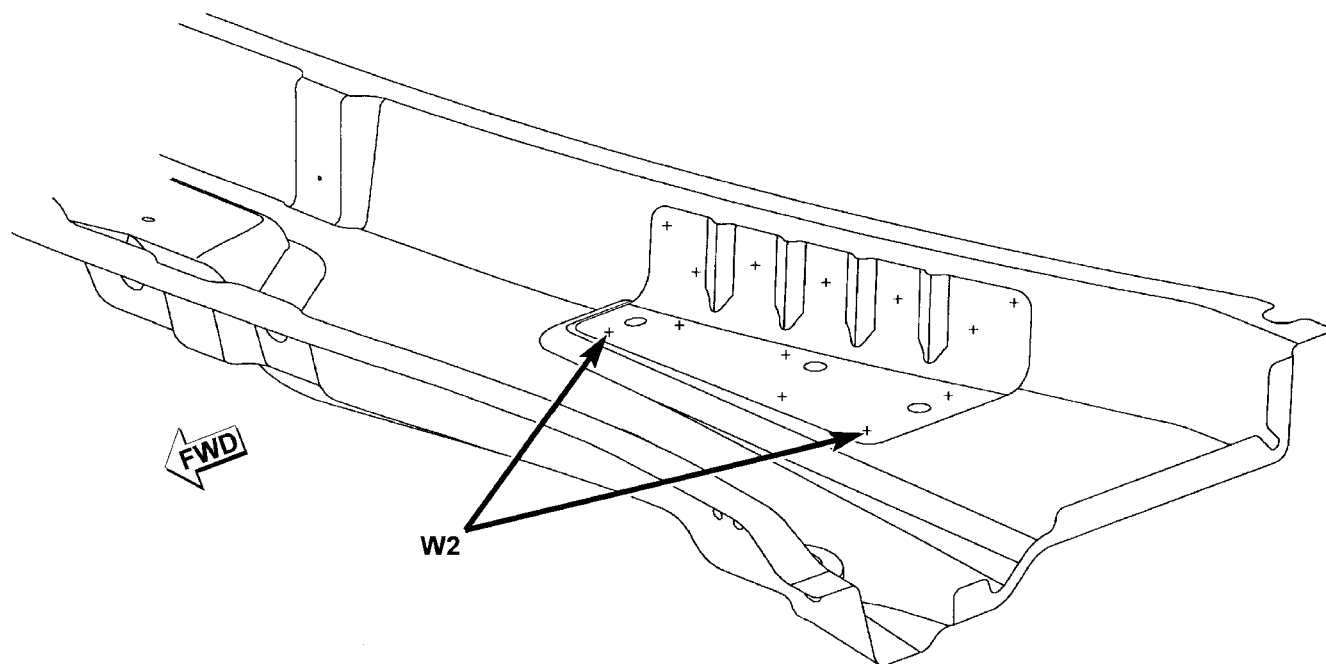
80b6fe3b

Fig. 60 FRONT SUSPENSION SUPPORT TO DASH

## WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)

*Fig. 61 WIPER MOUNTING BRACKETS TO PLENUM ASSEMBLY**Fig. 62 COWL TOP AND PLENUM ASSEMBLY*

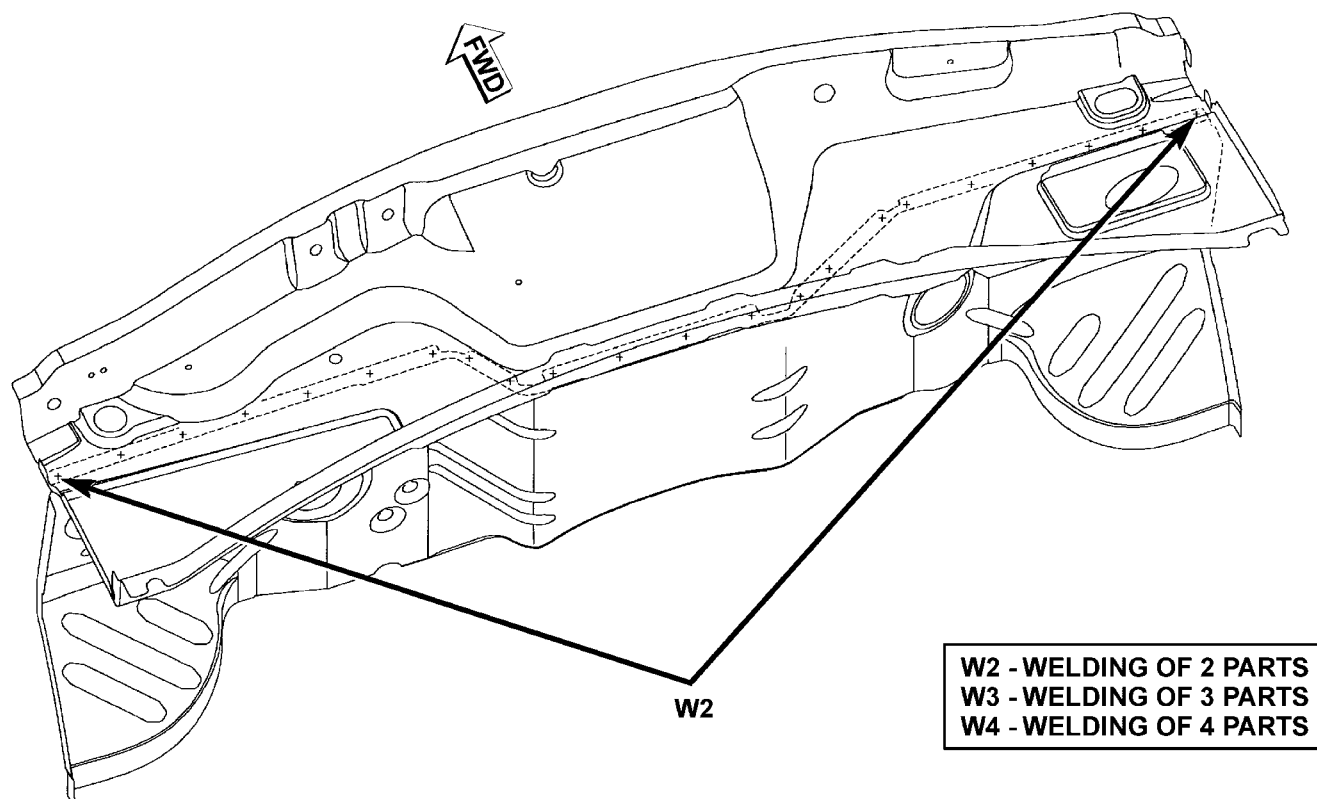
## WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)



W2 - WELDING OF 2 PARTS  
W3 - WELDING OF 3 PARTS  
W4 - WELDING OF 4 PARTS

80b6fe3f

**Fig. 63 LOWER PLENUM REINFORCEMENT TO LOWER PLENUM PANEL**

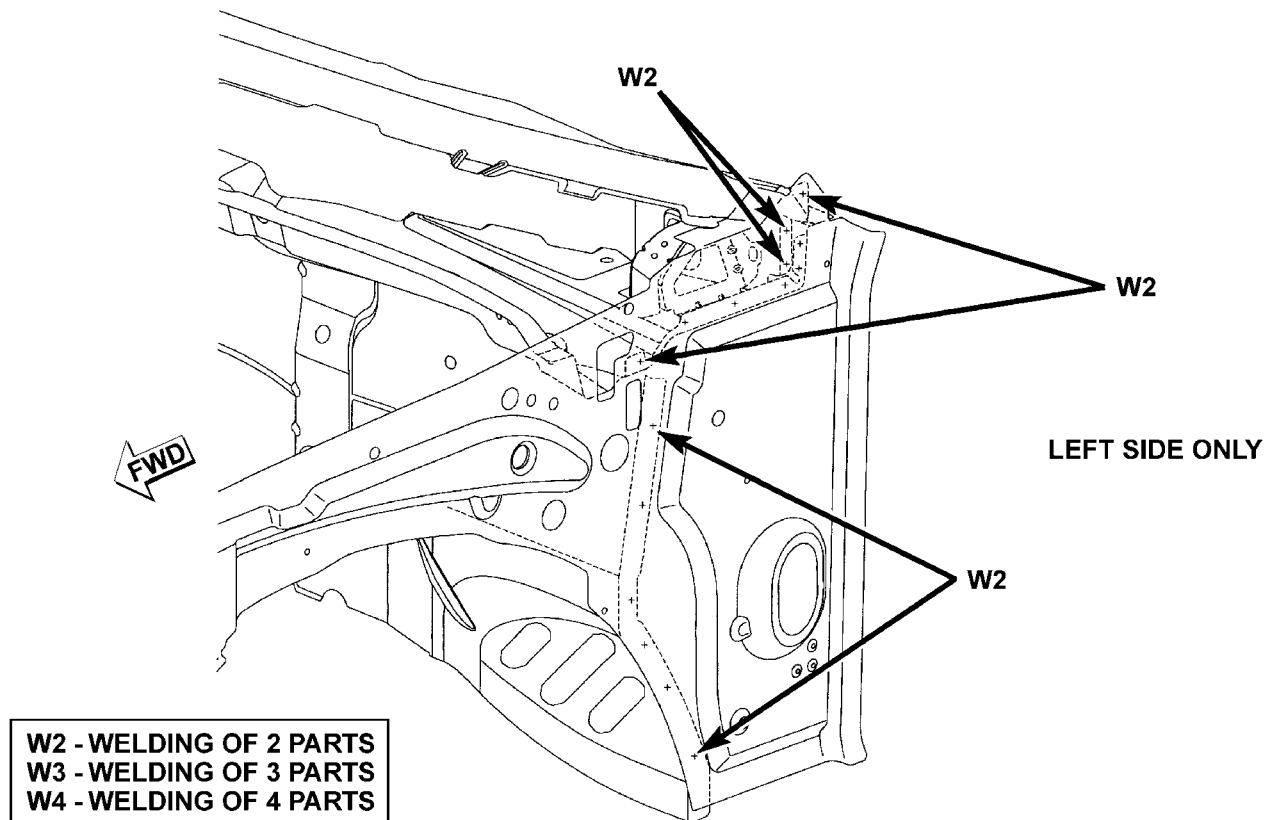


W2 - WELDING OF 2 PARTS  
W3 - WELDING OF 3 PARTS  
W4 - WELDING OF 4 PARTS

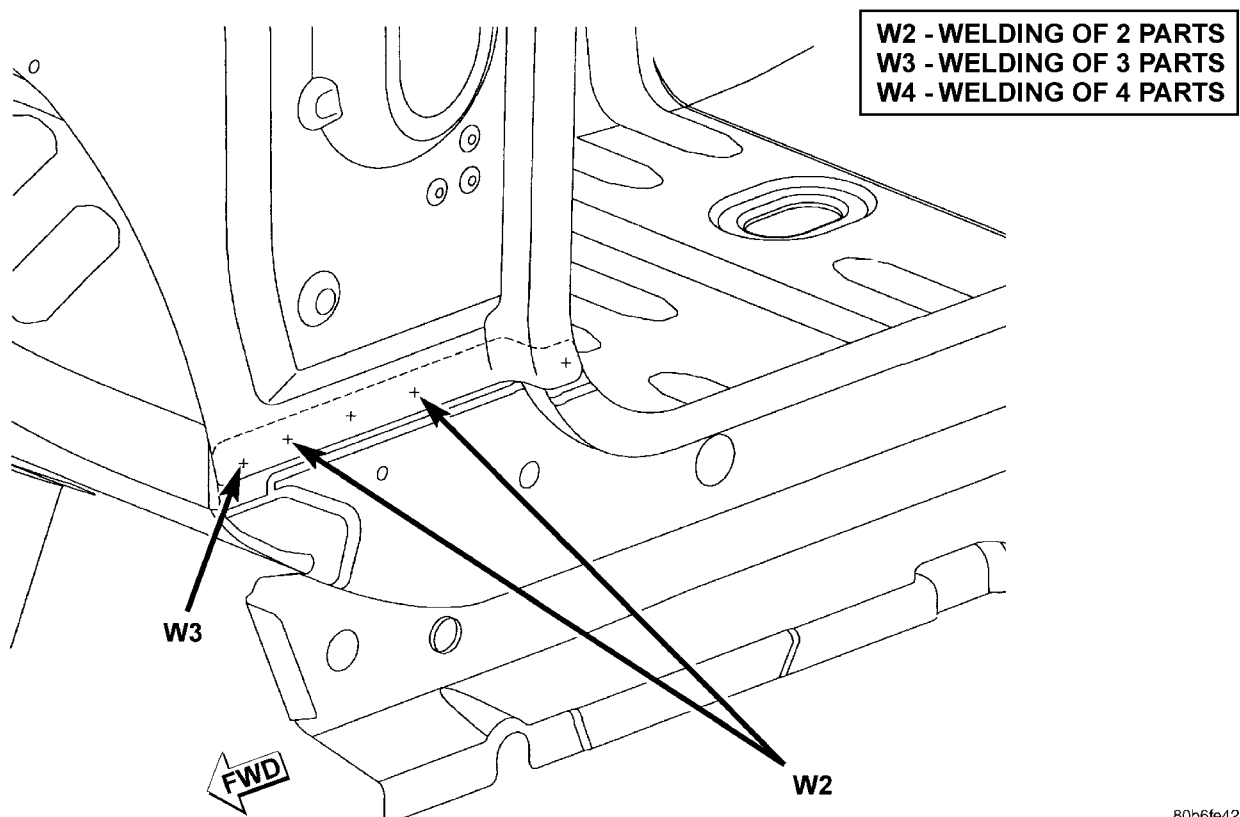
80b6fe40

**Fig. 64 DASH PANEL TO LOWER PLENUM PANEL**

## WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)



80b6fe41

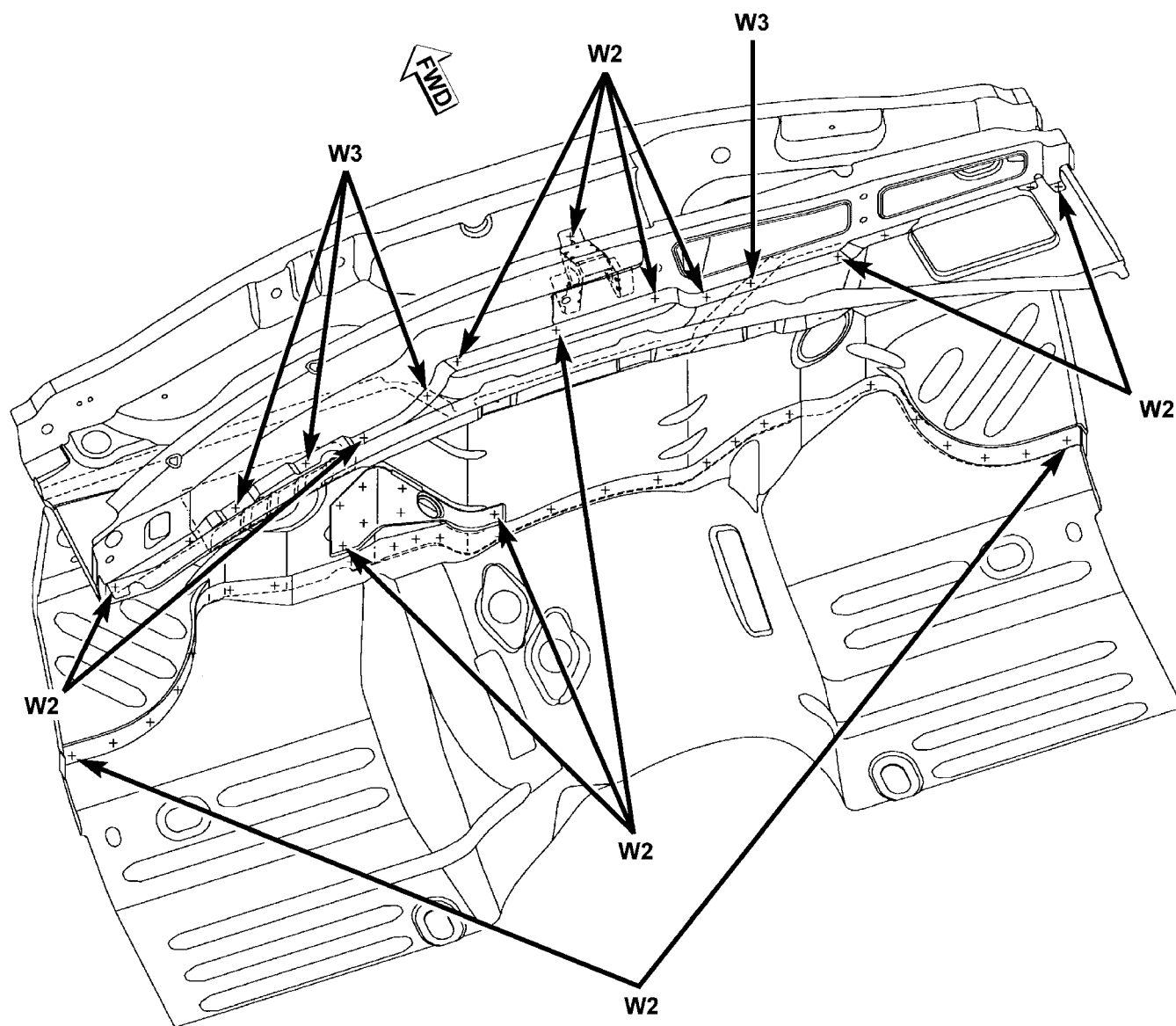
*Fig. 65 PLENUM ASSEMBLY TO COWL*

80b6fe42

*Fig. 66 COWL PANEL TO BODYSIDE SILL*



## WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)

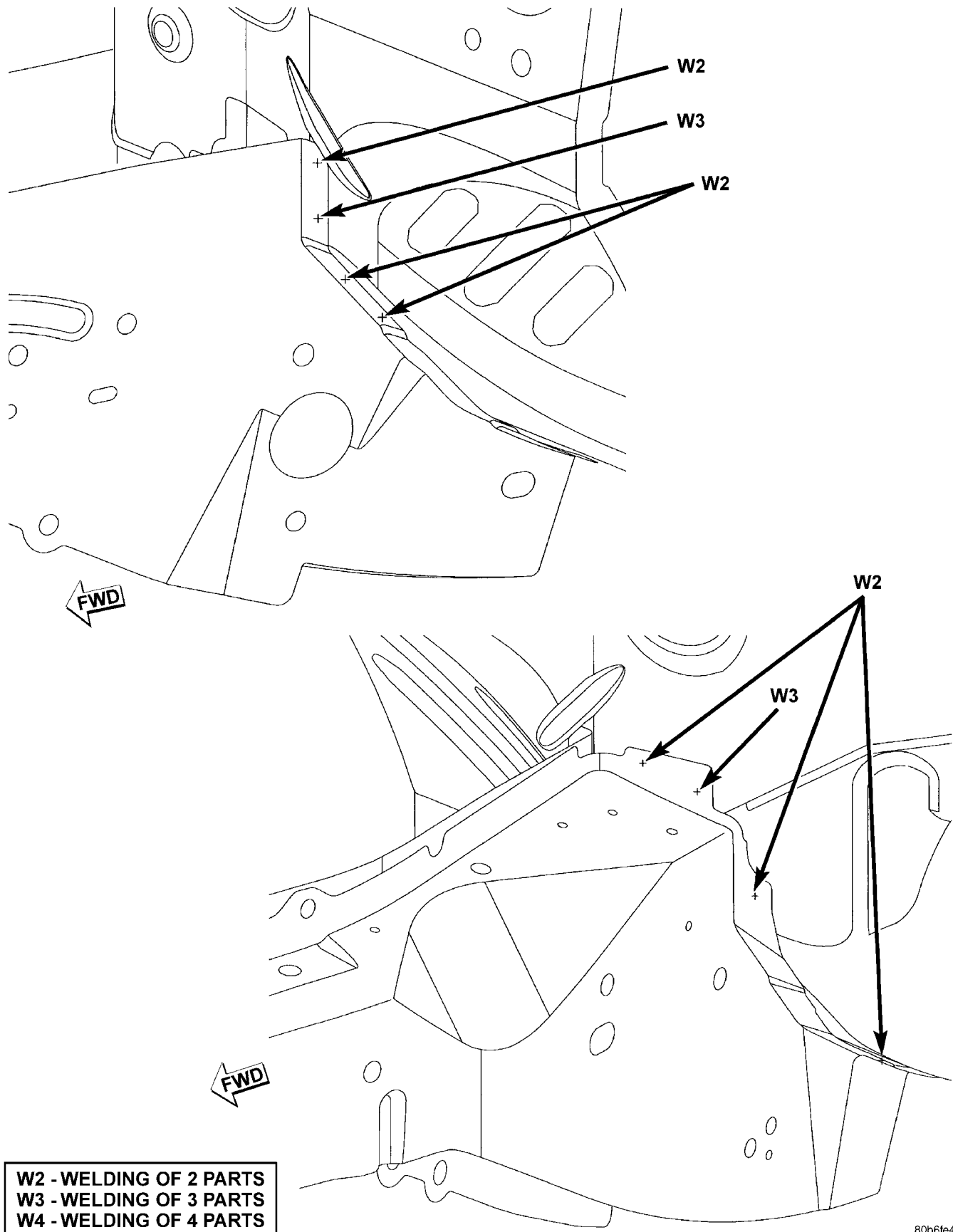


W2 - WELDING OF 2 PARTS  
W3 - WELDING OF 3 PARTS  
W4 - WELDING OF 4 PARTS

80b6fe47

*Fig. 67 COWL PANEL TO FRONT FLOOR PAN*

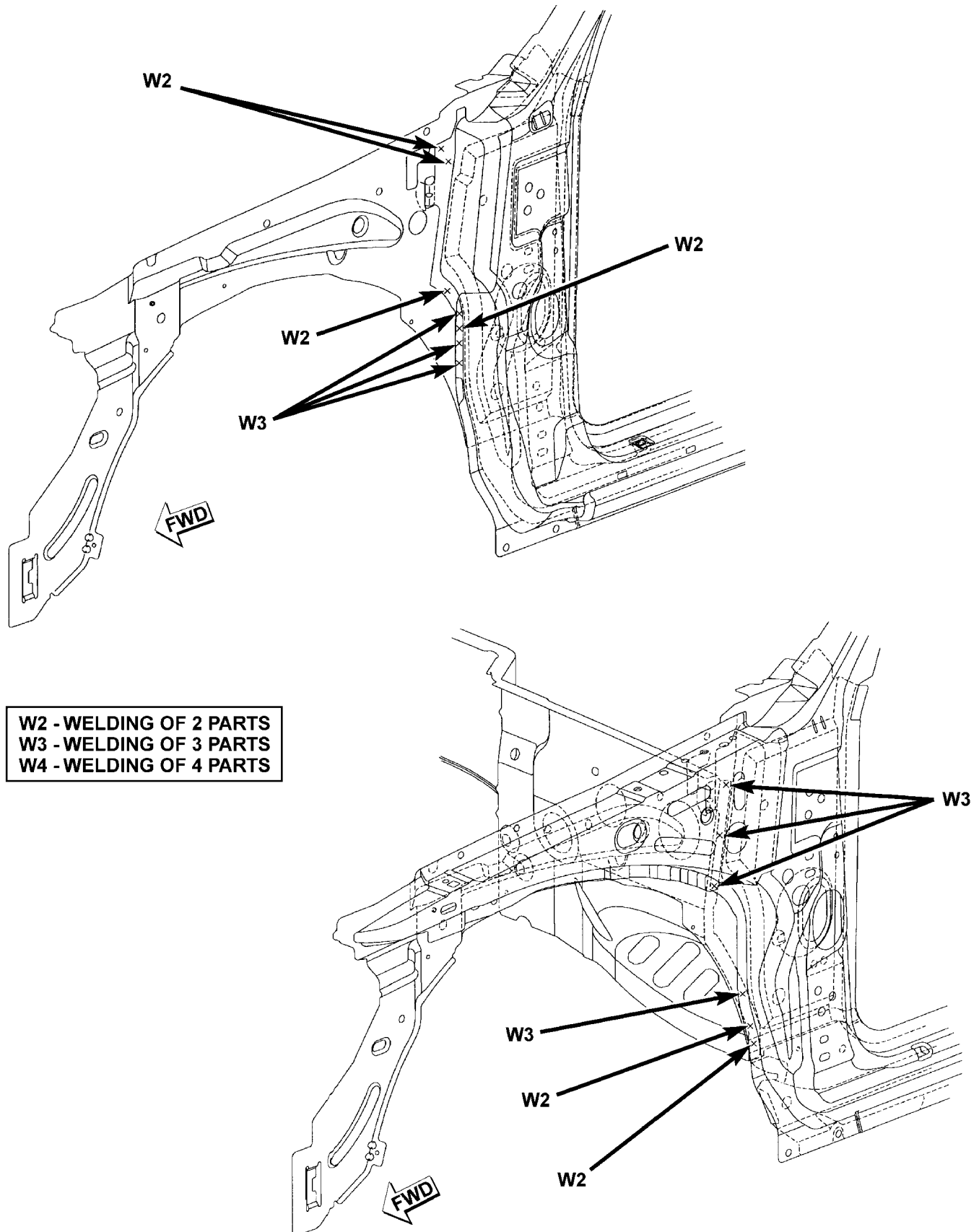
## WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)



80b6fe48

Fig. 68 FRONT SILLS TO DASH AND FRONT FLOOR PAN

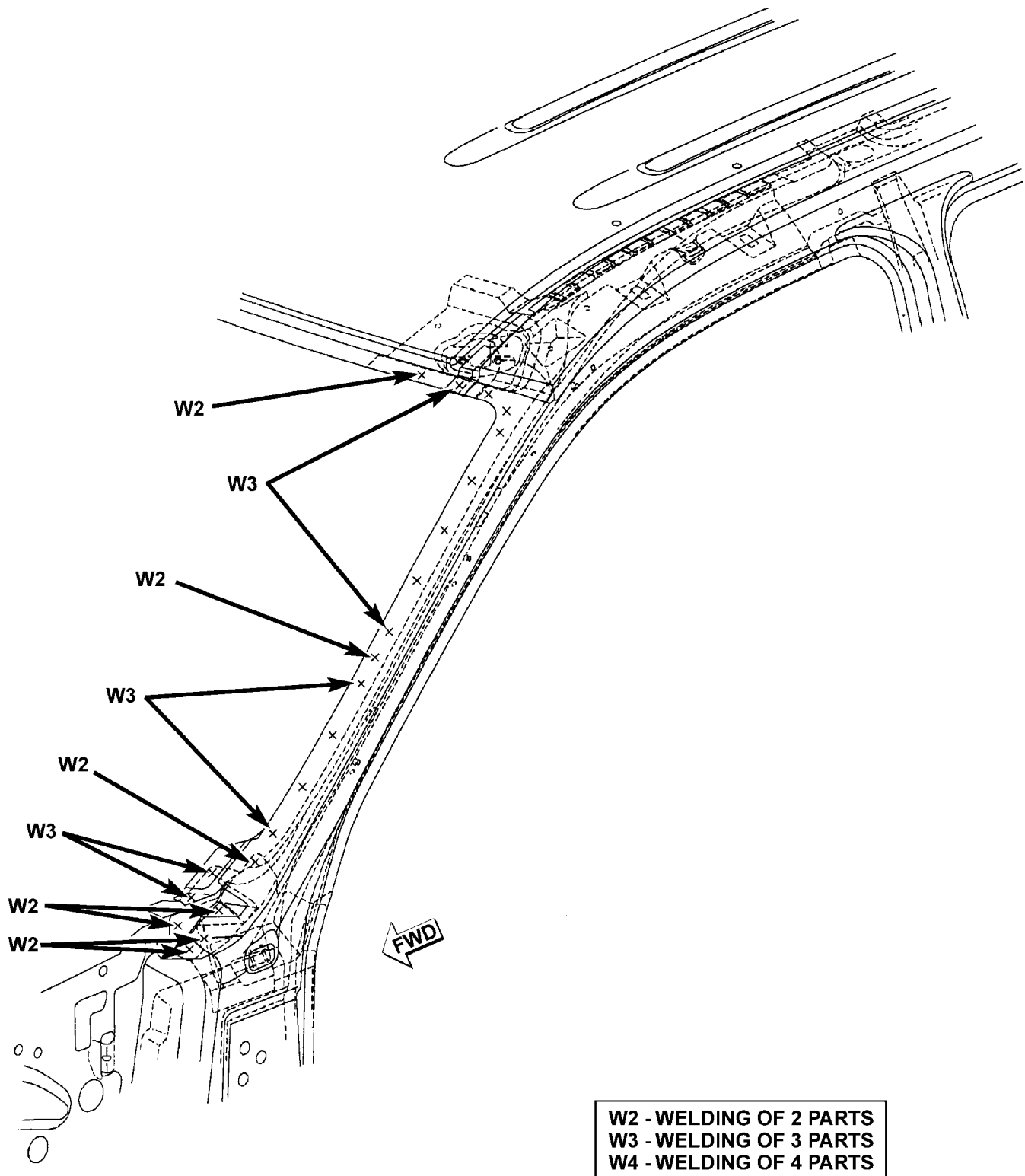
## WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)



80b6fe8f

**Fig. 69 COWL SIDE PANEL DASH INNER BODYSIDE AND OUTER BODYSIDE PANELS**

WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)



8006fe90

Fig. 70 UPPER FRONT INNER PILLAR TO ROOF AND COWL

## WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)

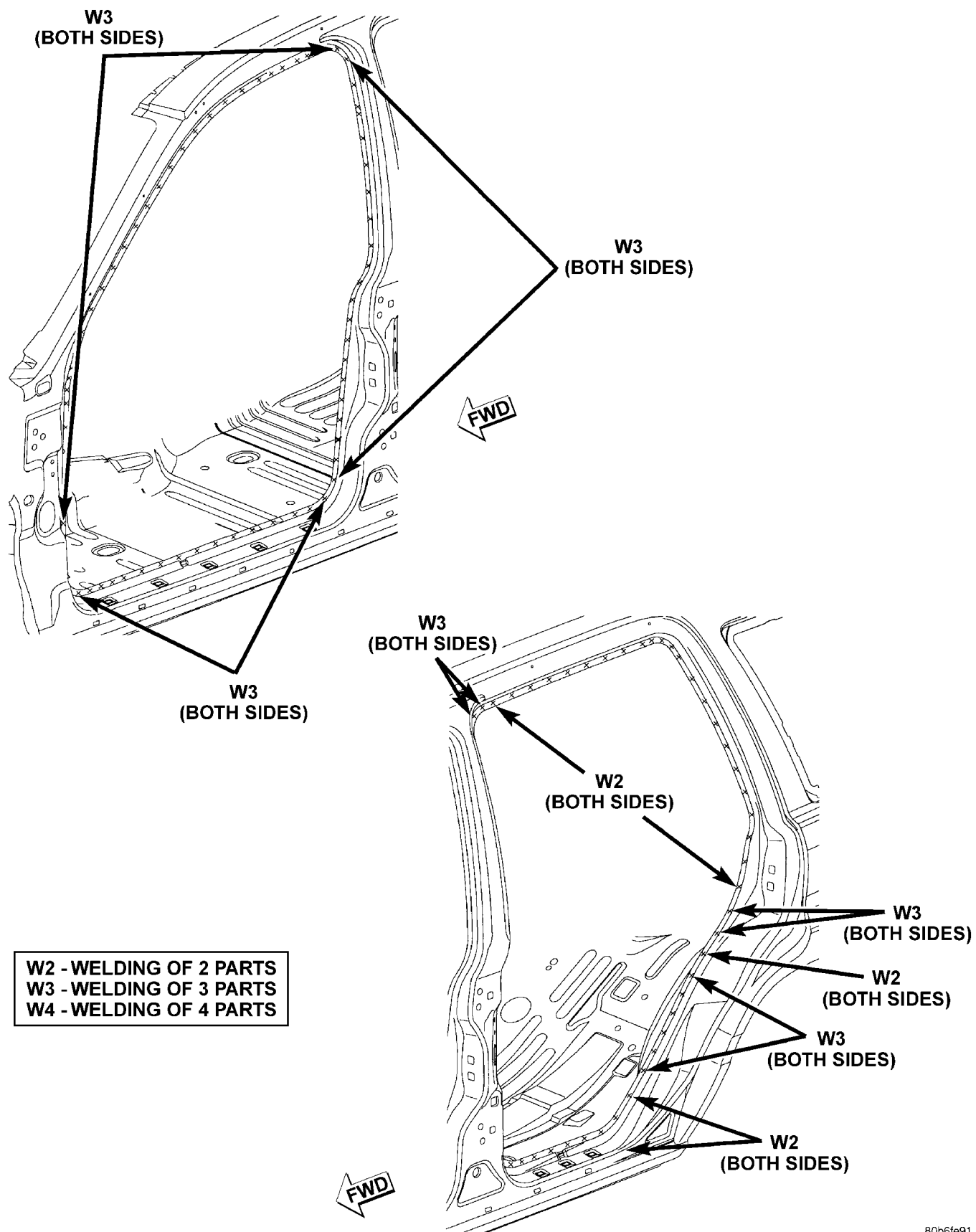
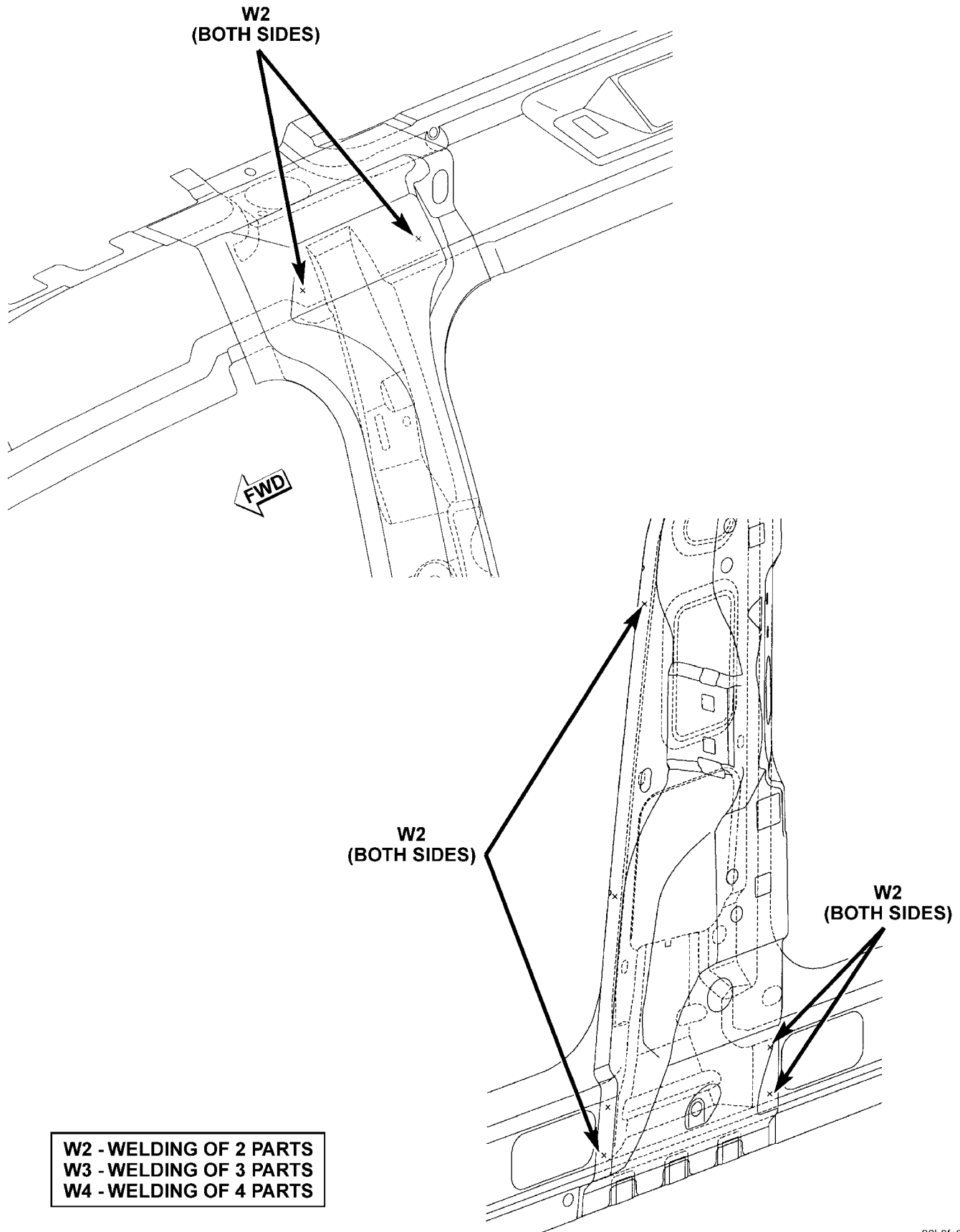


Fig. 71 DOOR OPENINGS

## WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)



80b6fe92

*Fig. 72 B-PILLAR REINFORCEMENT TO INNER BODYSIDE APERTURE*



## WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)

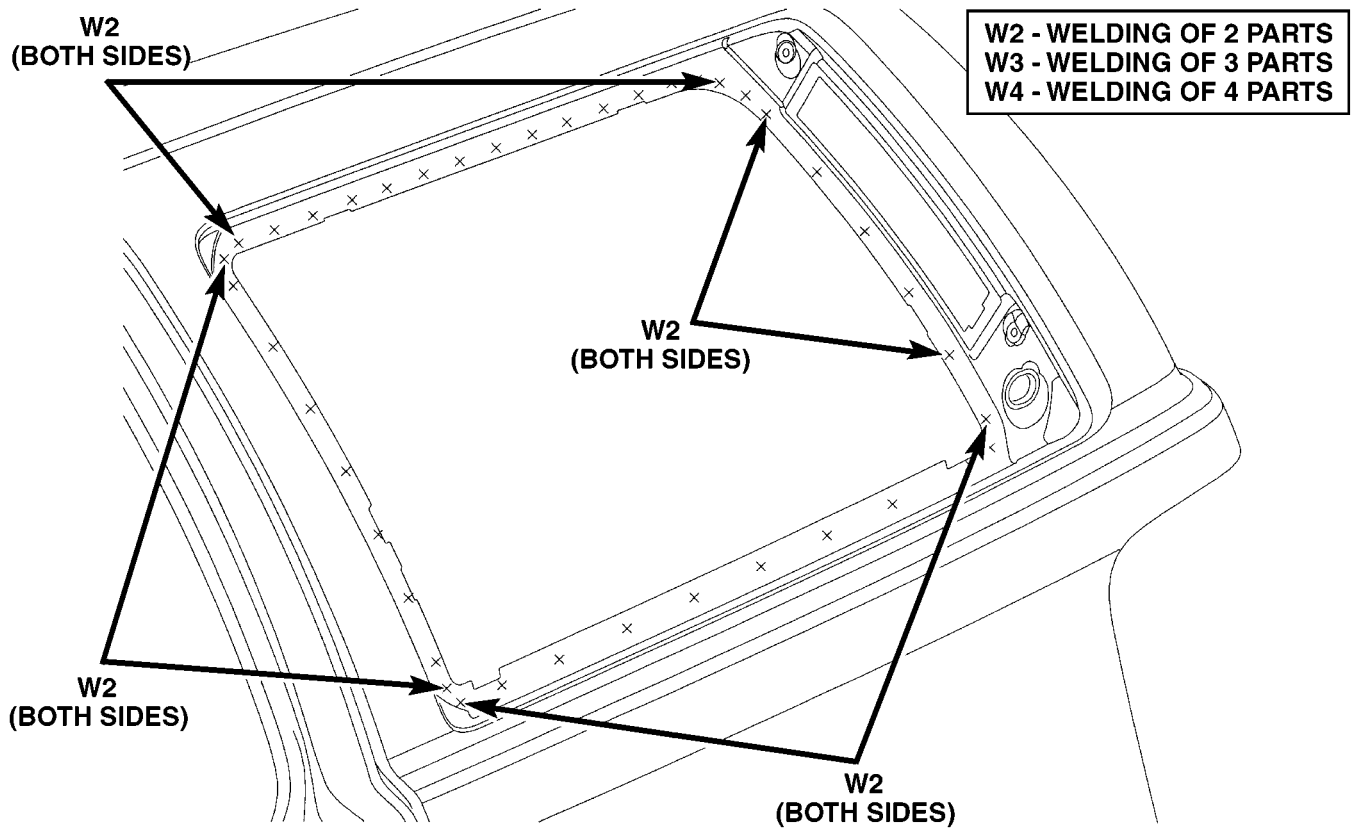


Fig. 73 REAR QUARTER WINDOW TO BODY SIDE APERTURE INNER AND OUTER

80febccd

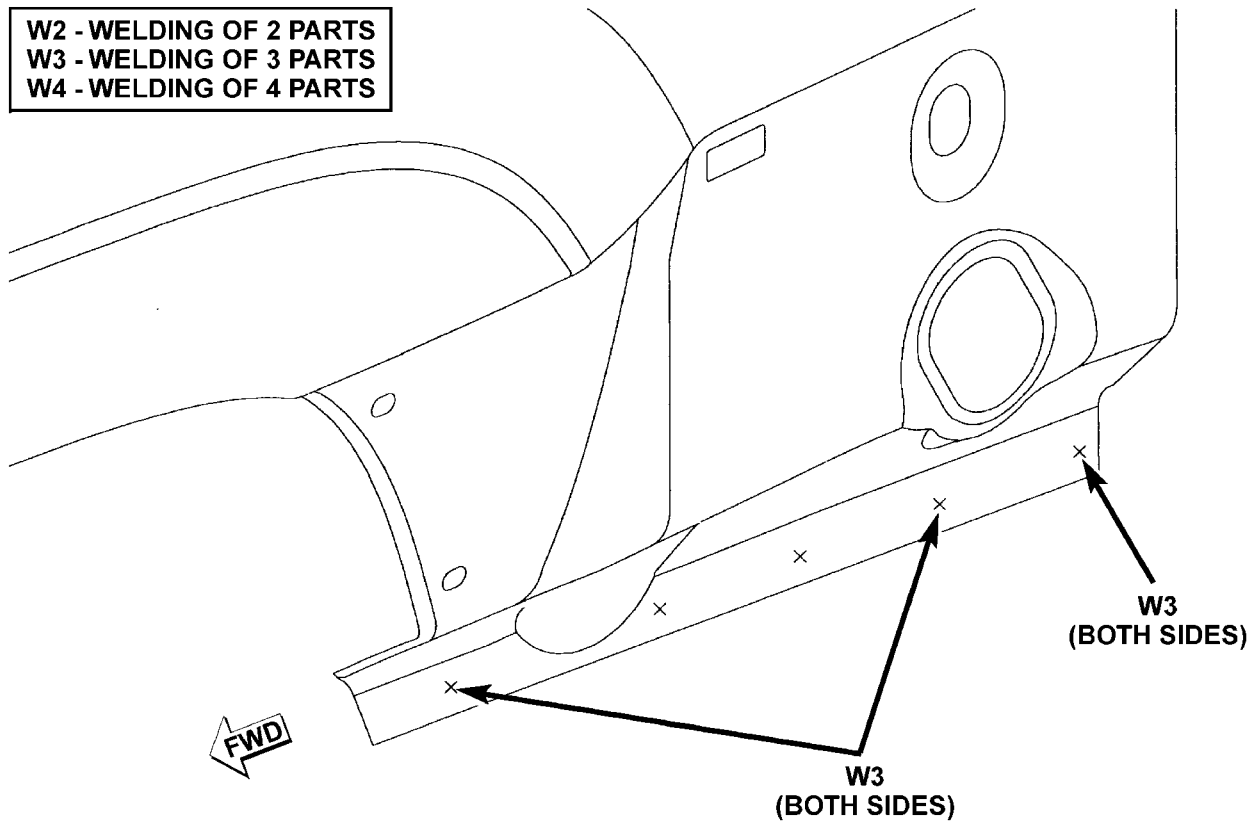
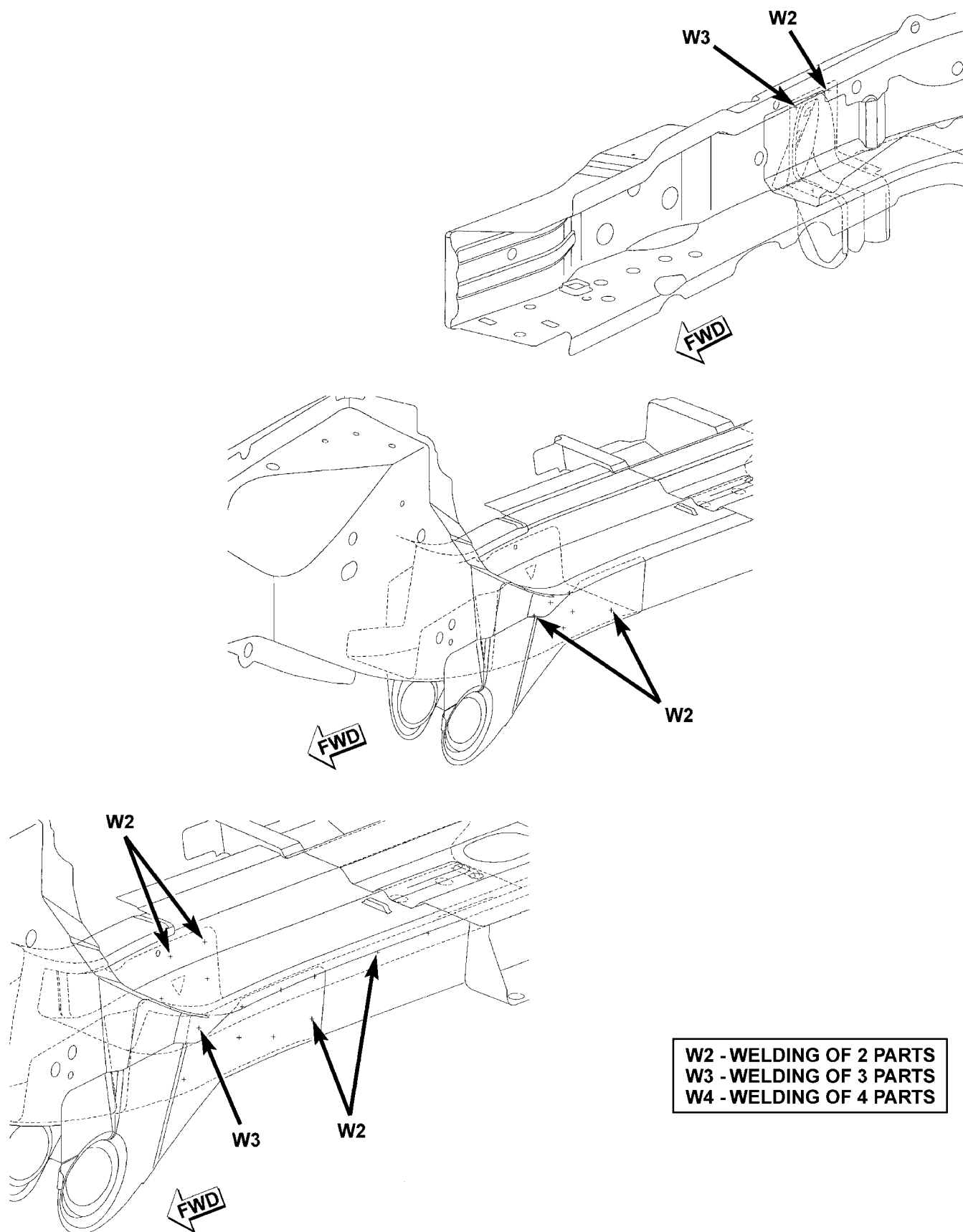


Fig. 74 LOWER REAR QUARTER TO BODYSIDE APERTURE INNER AND OUTER

80b6fe94

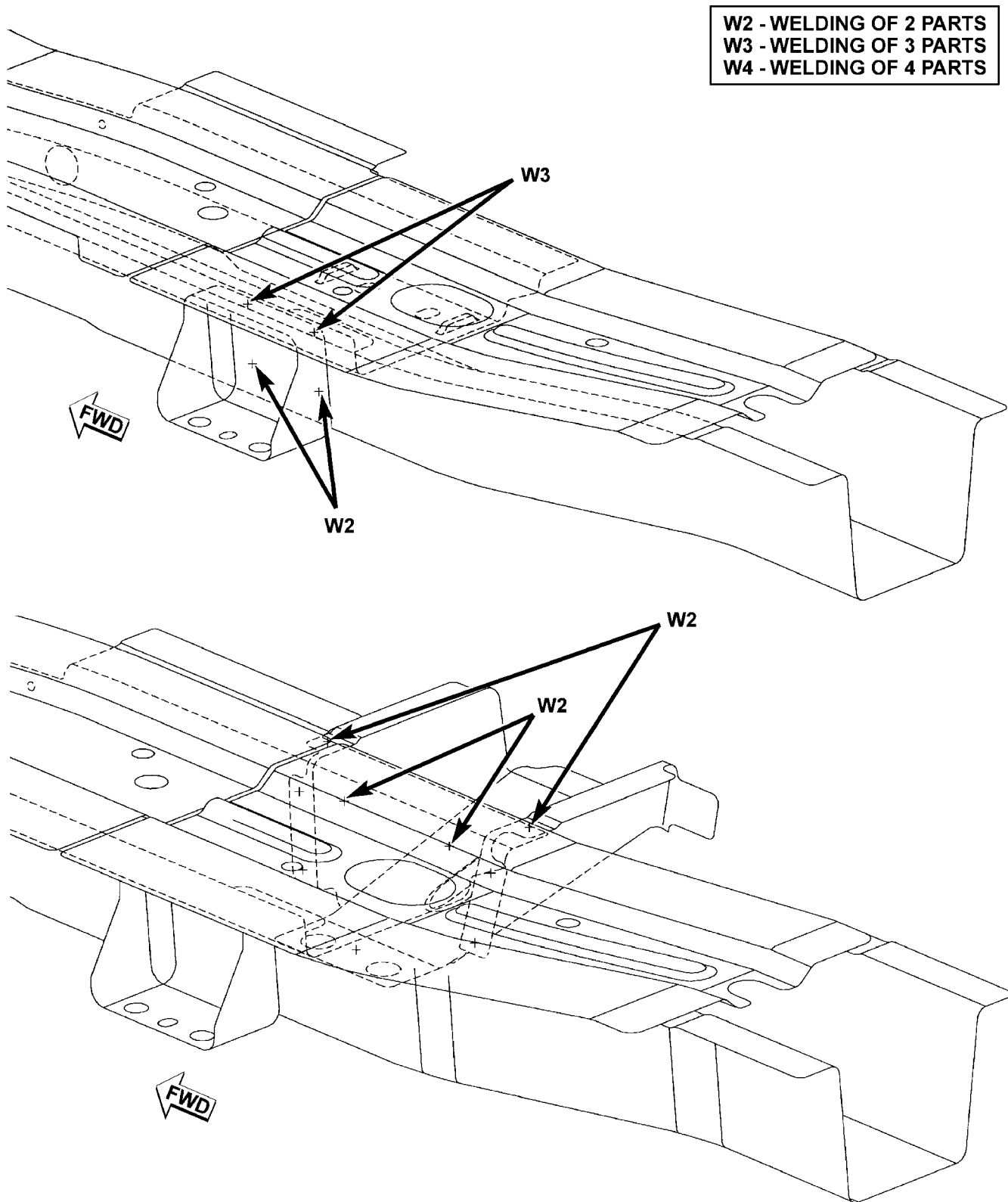
## WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)



80b6fe82

**Fig. 75 INNER TRACK BAR, LOWER CONTROL ARM AND TRANSMISSION CROSSMEMBER  
BRACKETS TO FRONT SILLS**

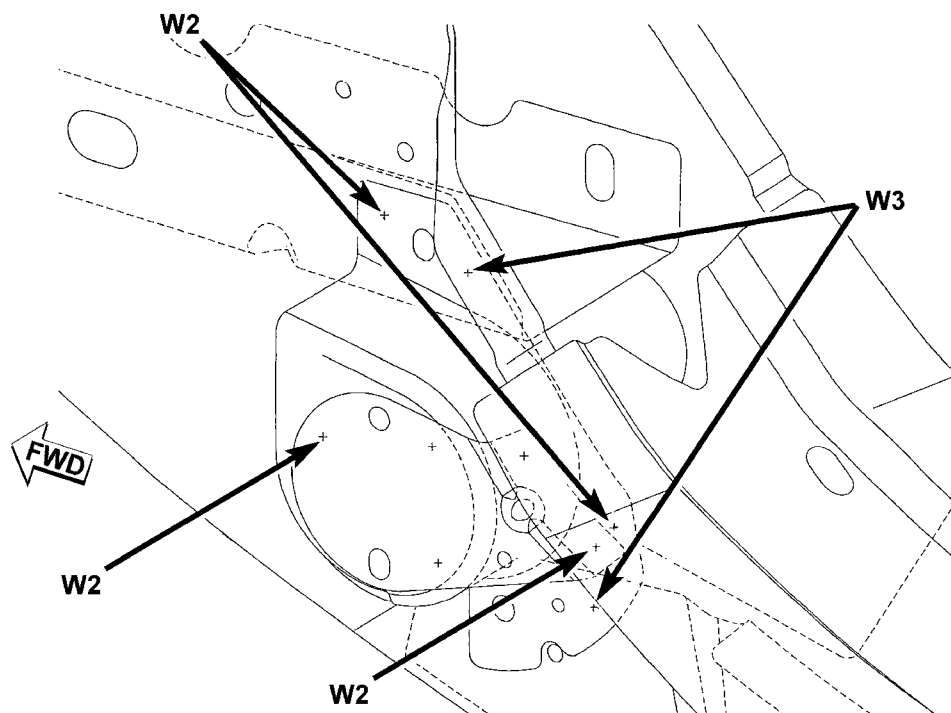
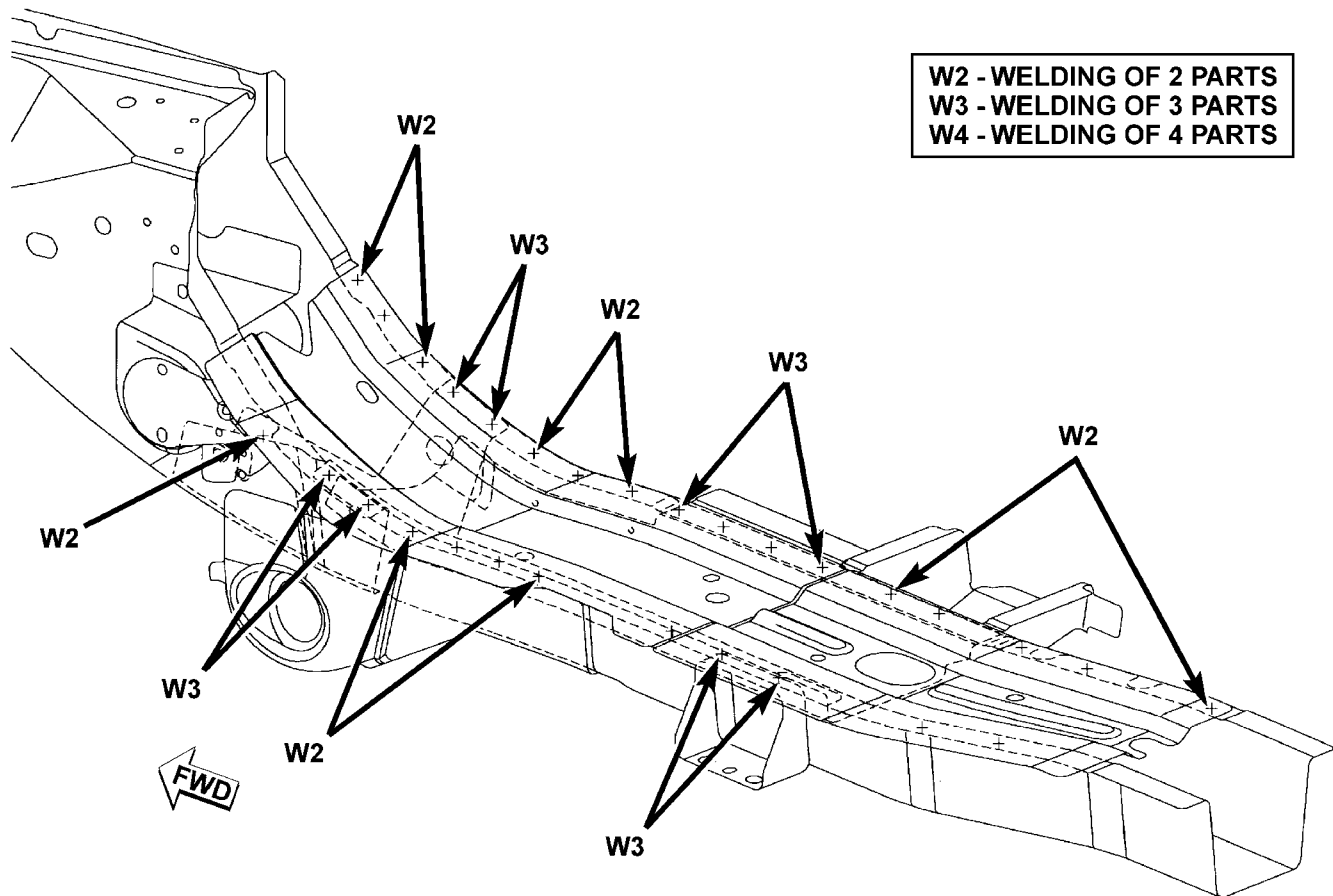
## WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)



80b6fe83

**Fig. 76 TRANSMISSION CROSSMEMBER BRACKET AND REINFORCEMENT TO FRONT SILLS**

## WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)

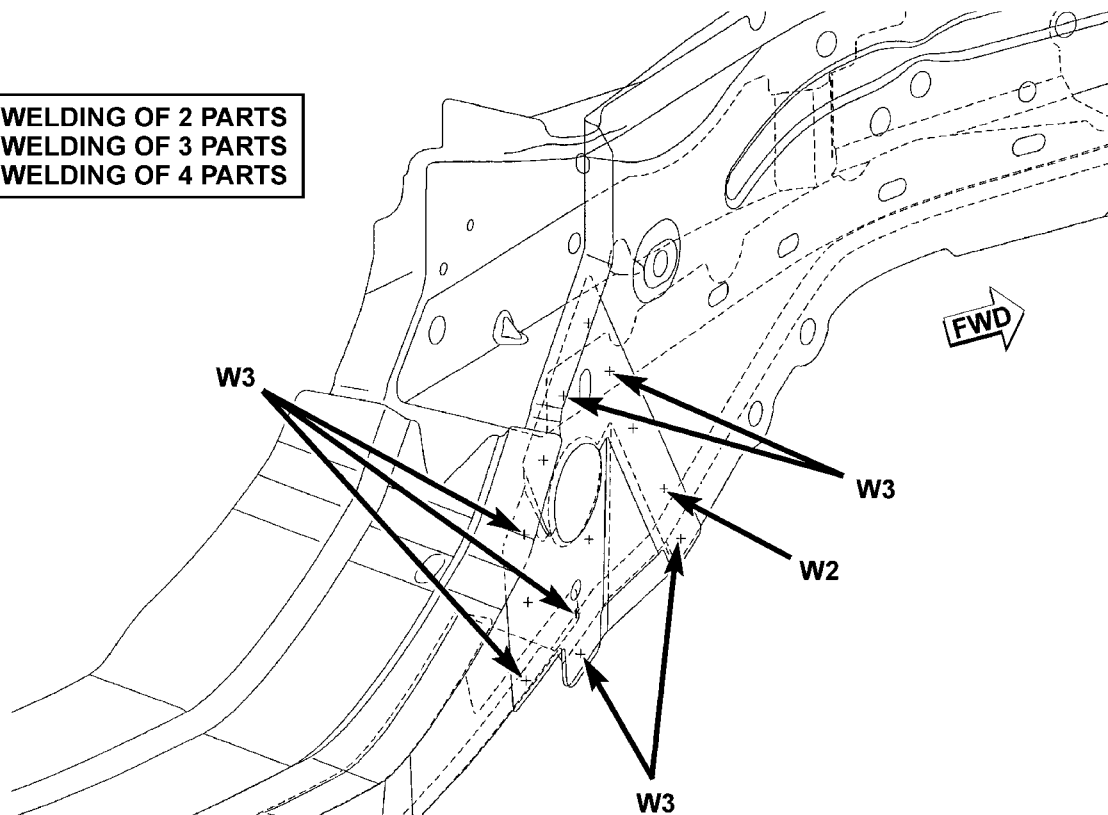


80b6te84

**Fig. 77 UPPER SILLS AND UPPER CONTROL ARM REINFORCEMENT AND BRACKETS TO FRONT SILLS**

## WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)

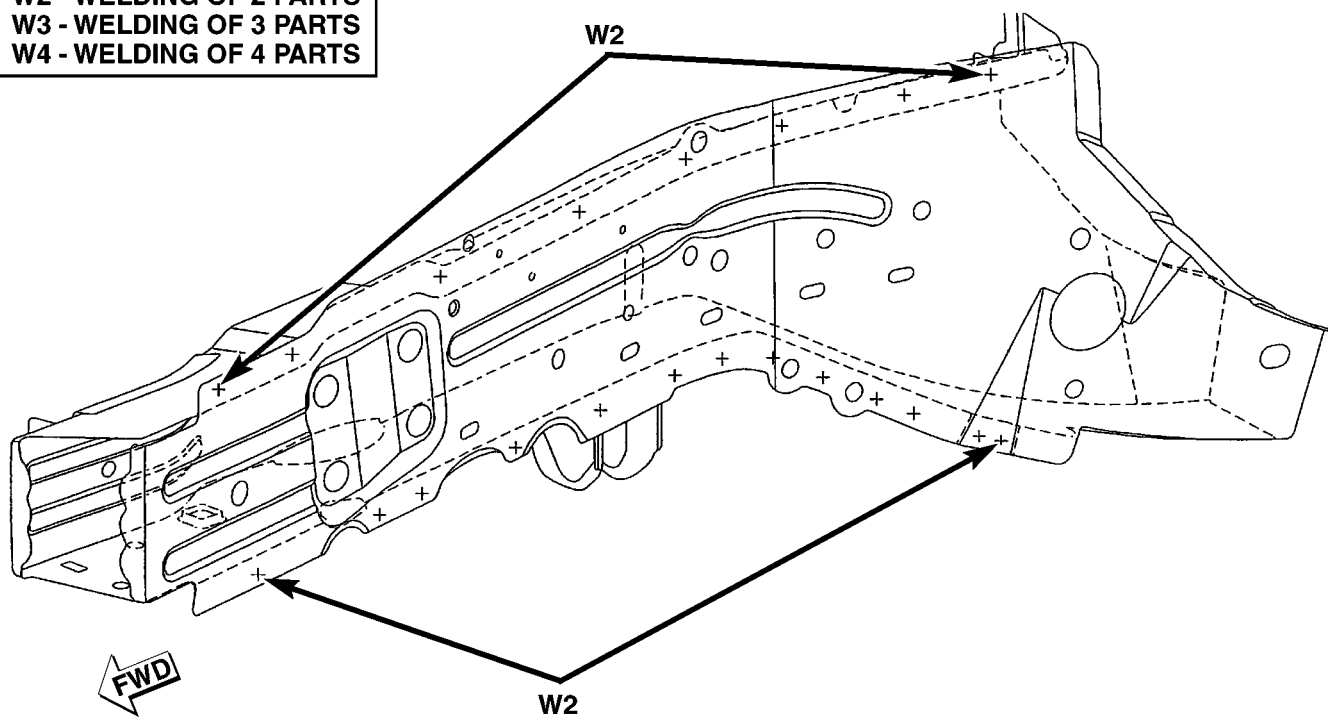
W2 - WELDING OF 2 PARTS  
W3 - WELDING OF 3 PARTS  
W4 - WELDING OF 4 PARTS



80b6fe85

Fig. 78 REINFORCEMENT TO FRONT OUTER SILLS

W2 - WELDING OF 2 PARTS  
W3 - WELDING OF 3 PARTS  
W4 - WELDING OF 4 PARTS

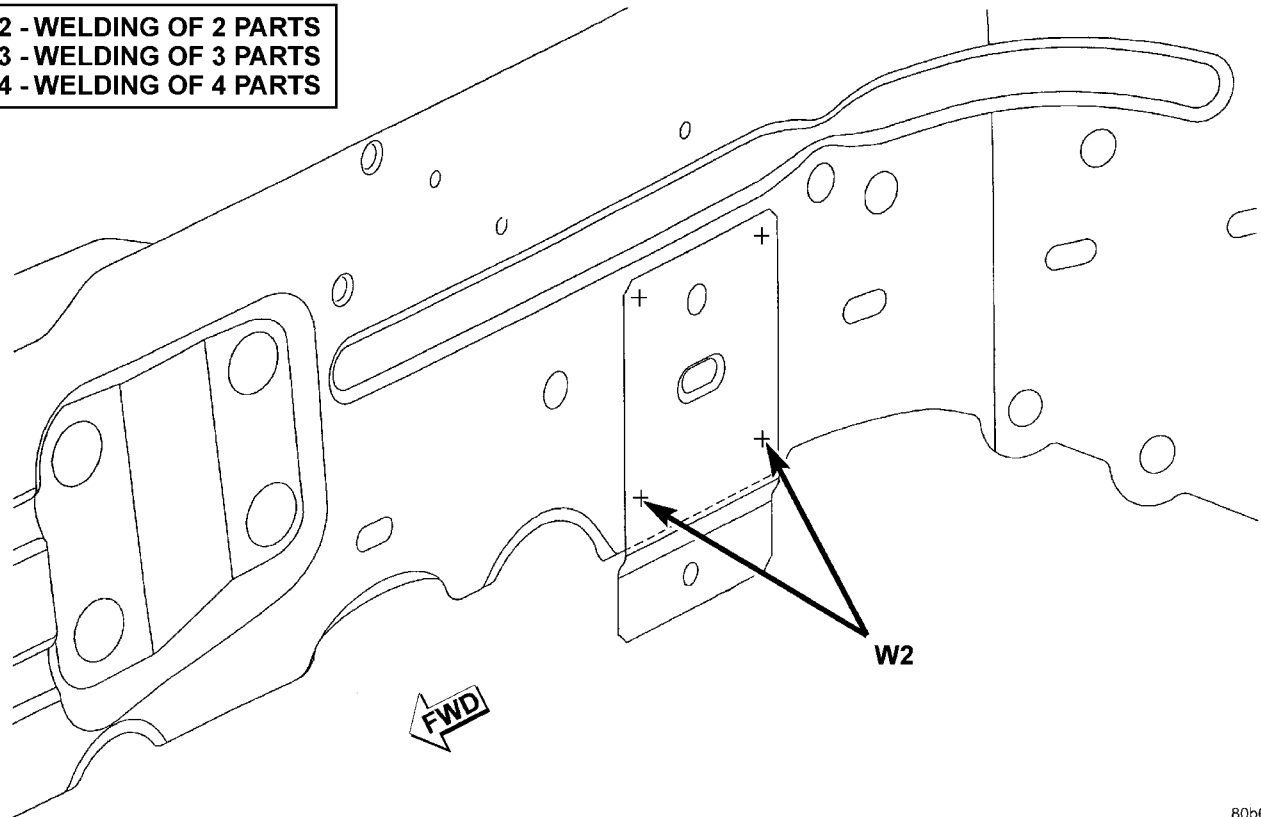


80febcd1

Fig. 79 FRONT INNER SILL TO FRONT OUTER SILL

## WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)

**W2 - WELDING OF 2 PARTS**  
**W3 - WELDING OF 3 PARTS**  
**W4 - WELDING OF 4 PARTS**

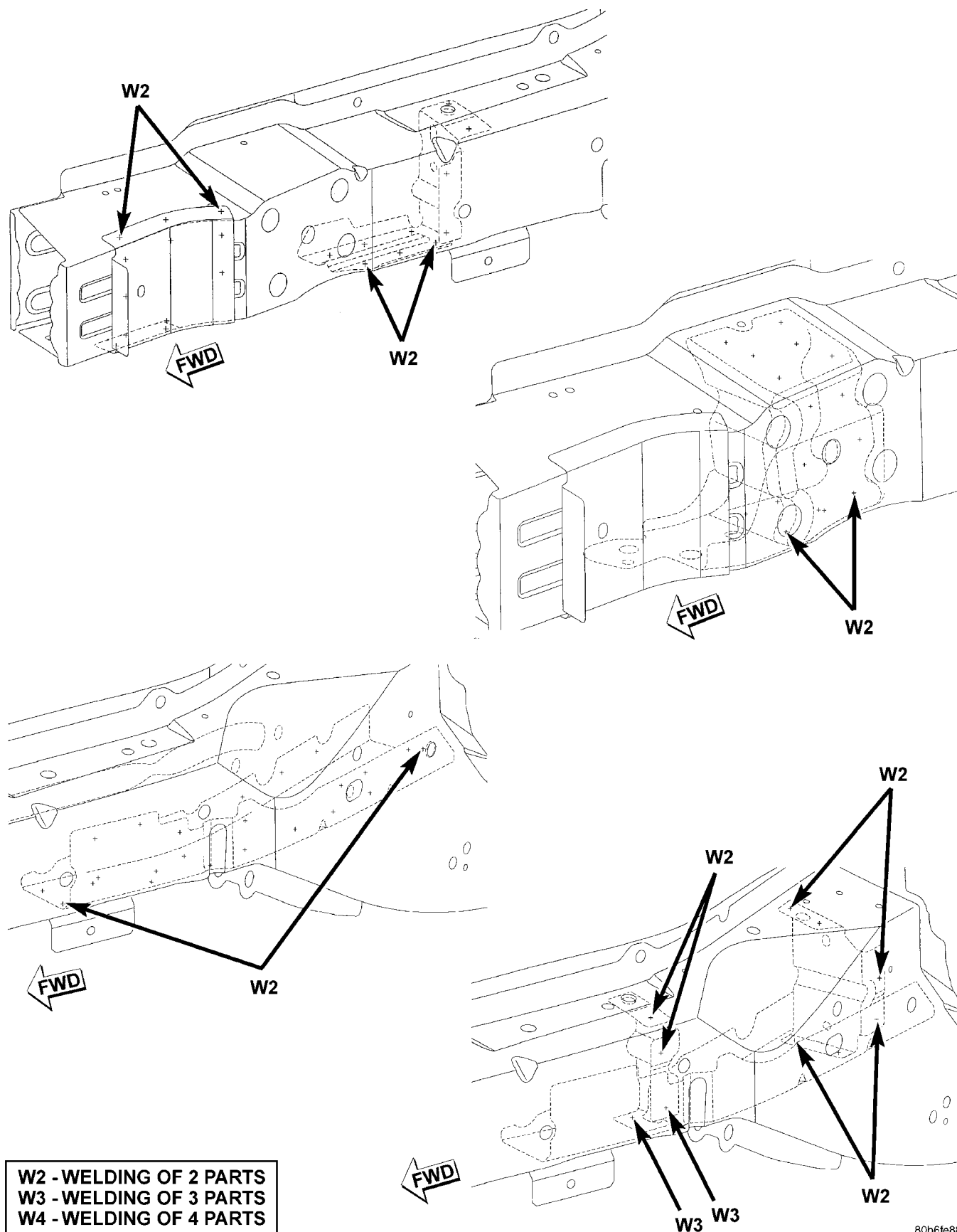


80b6fe87

**Fig. 80 OUTER TRACK BAR BRACKET TO FRONT OUTER SILL**

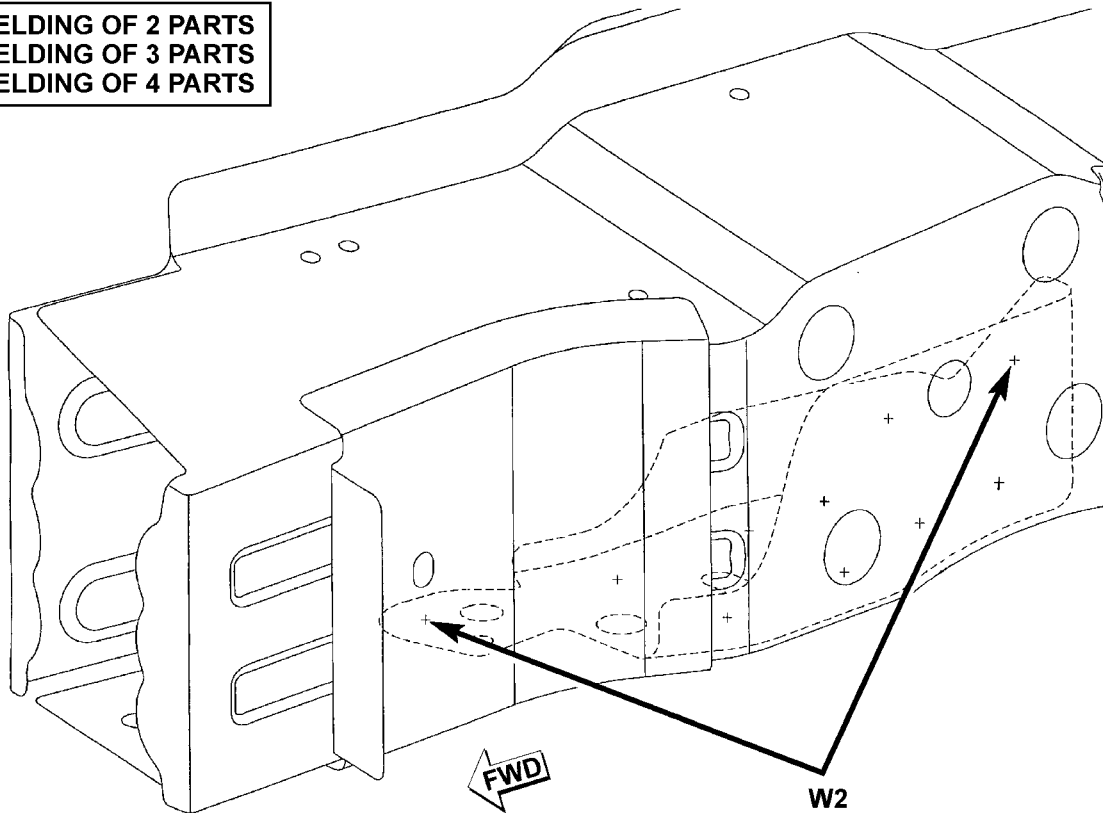


## WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)

**Fig. 81 REINFORCEMENT FOR FRONT ENGINE MOUNTING AND STEERING GEAR TO FRONT INNER SILL**

## WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)

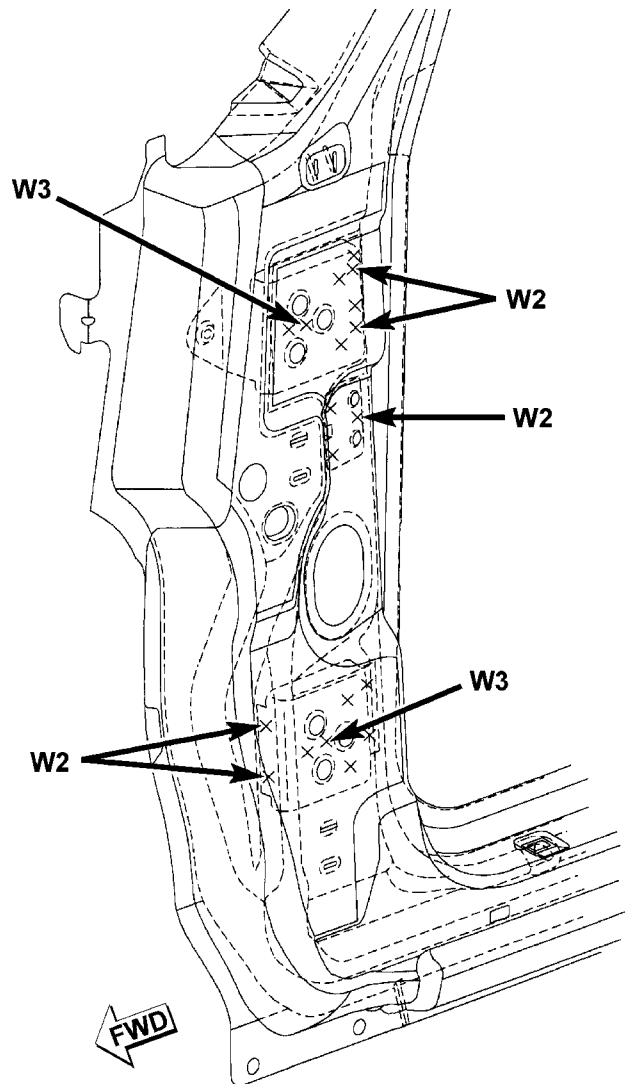
**W2 - WELDING OF 2 PARTS**  
**W3 - WELDING OF 3 PARTS**  
**W4 - WELDING OF 4 PARTS**



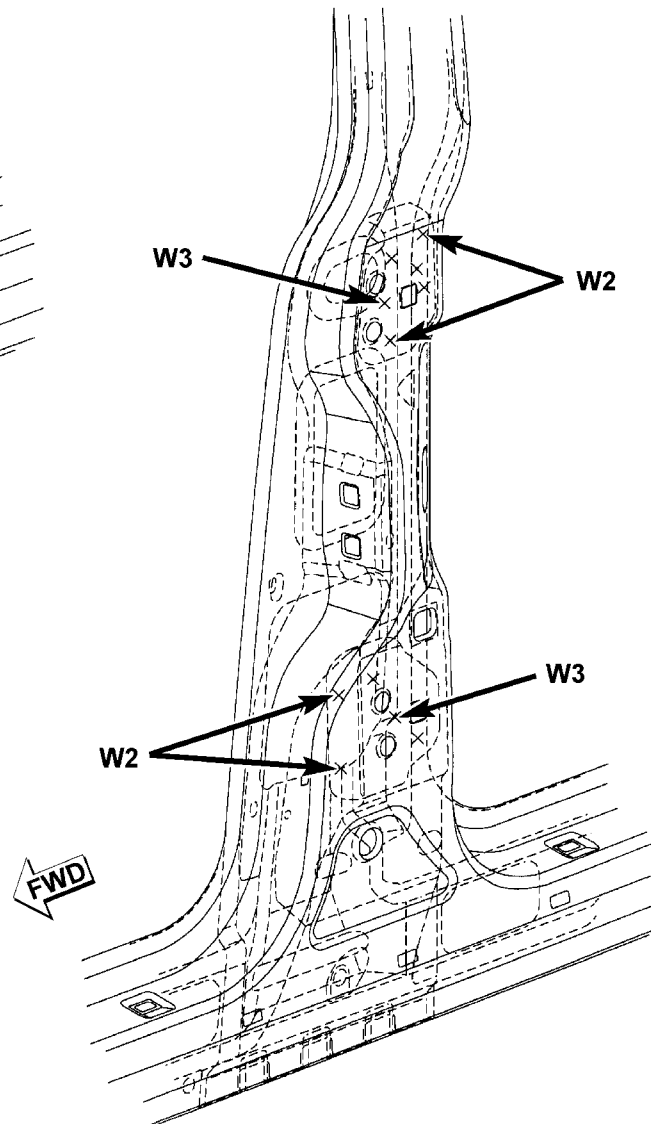
80b6fe89

**Fig. 82 LARGE AND SMALL SWAY BAR TAPPING PLATES TO FRONT INNER SILLS**

## WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)



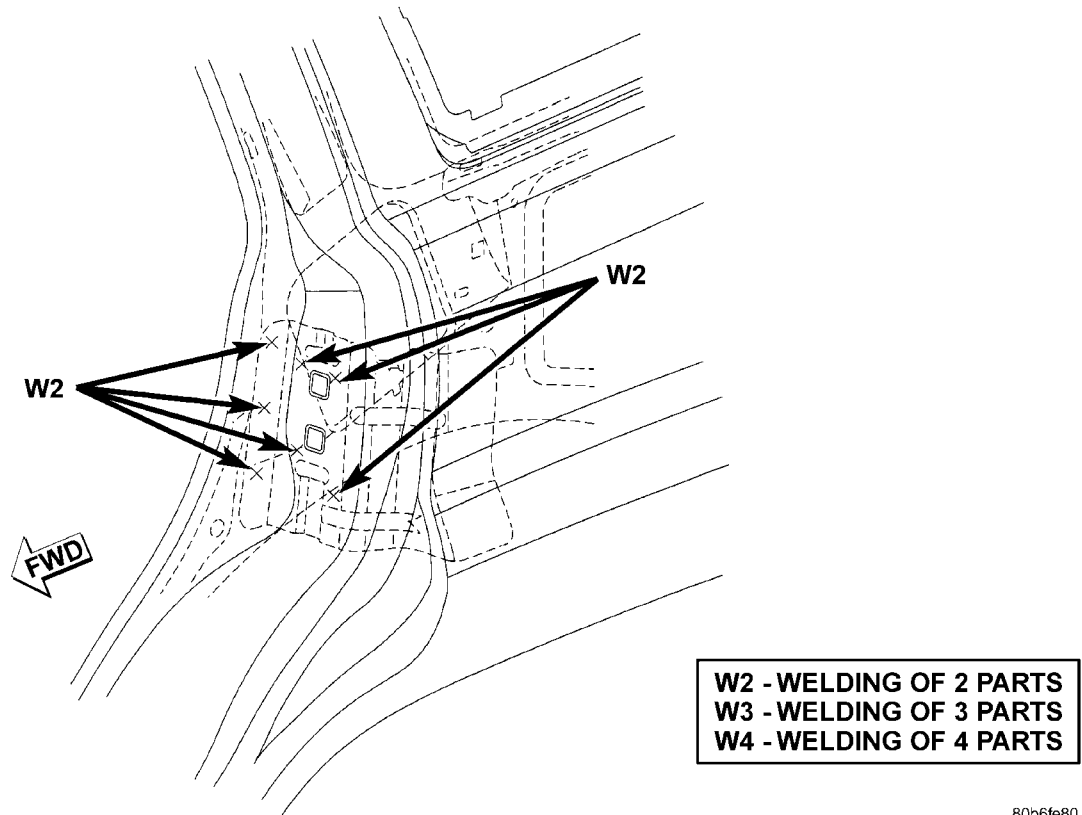
**W2 - WELDING OF 2 PARTS**  
**W3 - WELDING OF 3 PARTS**  
**W4 - WELDING OF 4 PARTS**



80b6fe7f

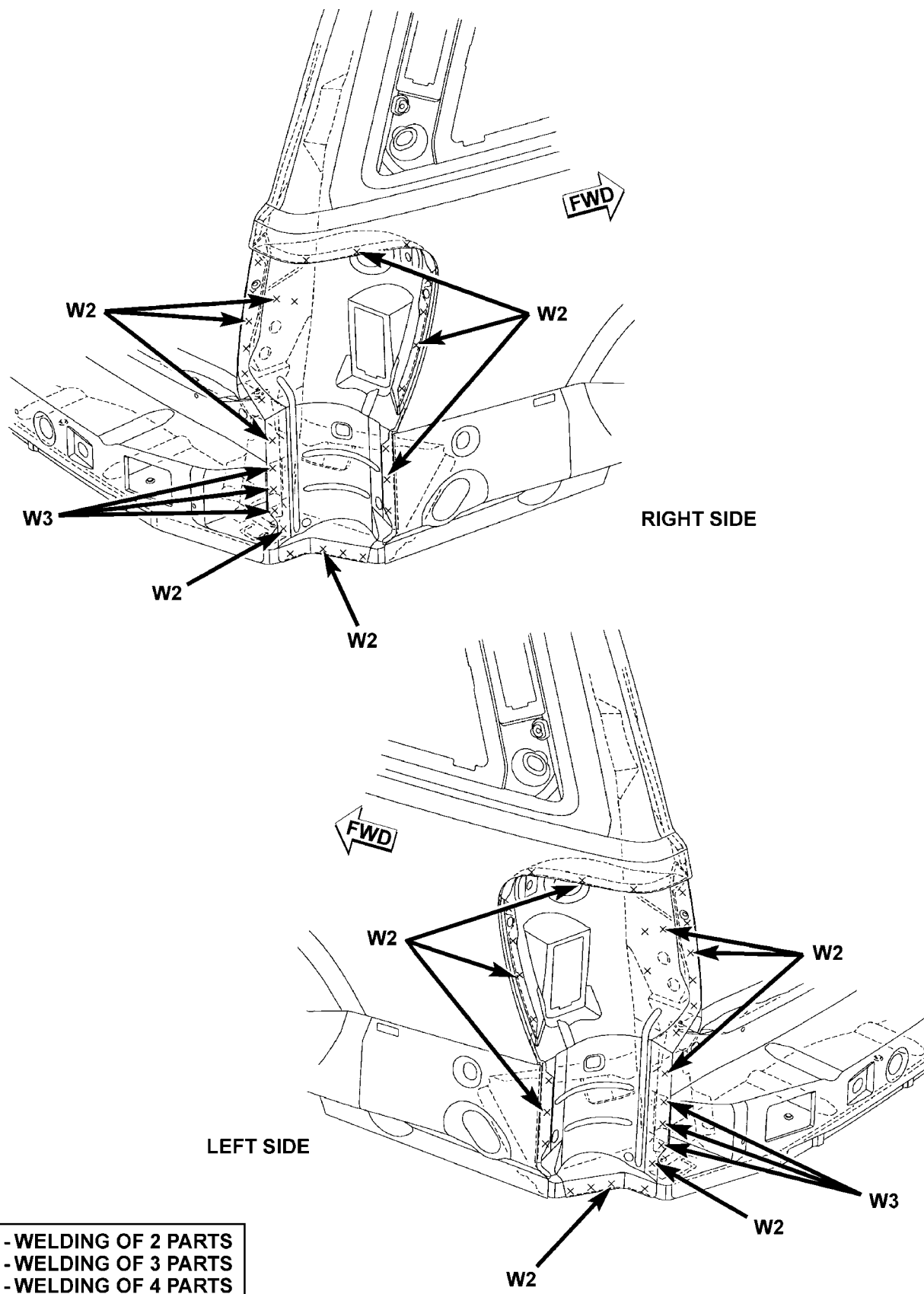
**Fig. 83 FRONT AND REAR DOOR HINGE TAPPING PLATES**

## WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)



**Fig. 84 REAR DOOR STRIKER REINFORCEMENT**

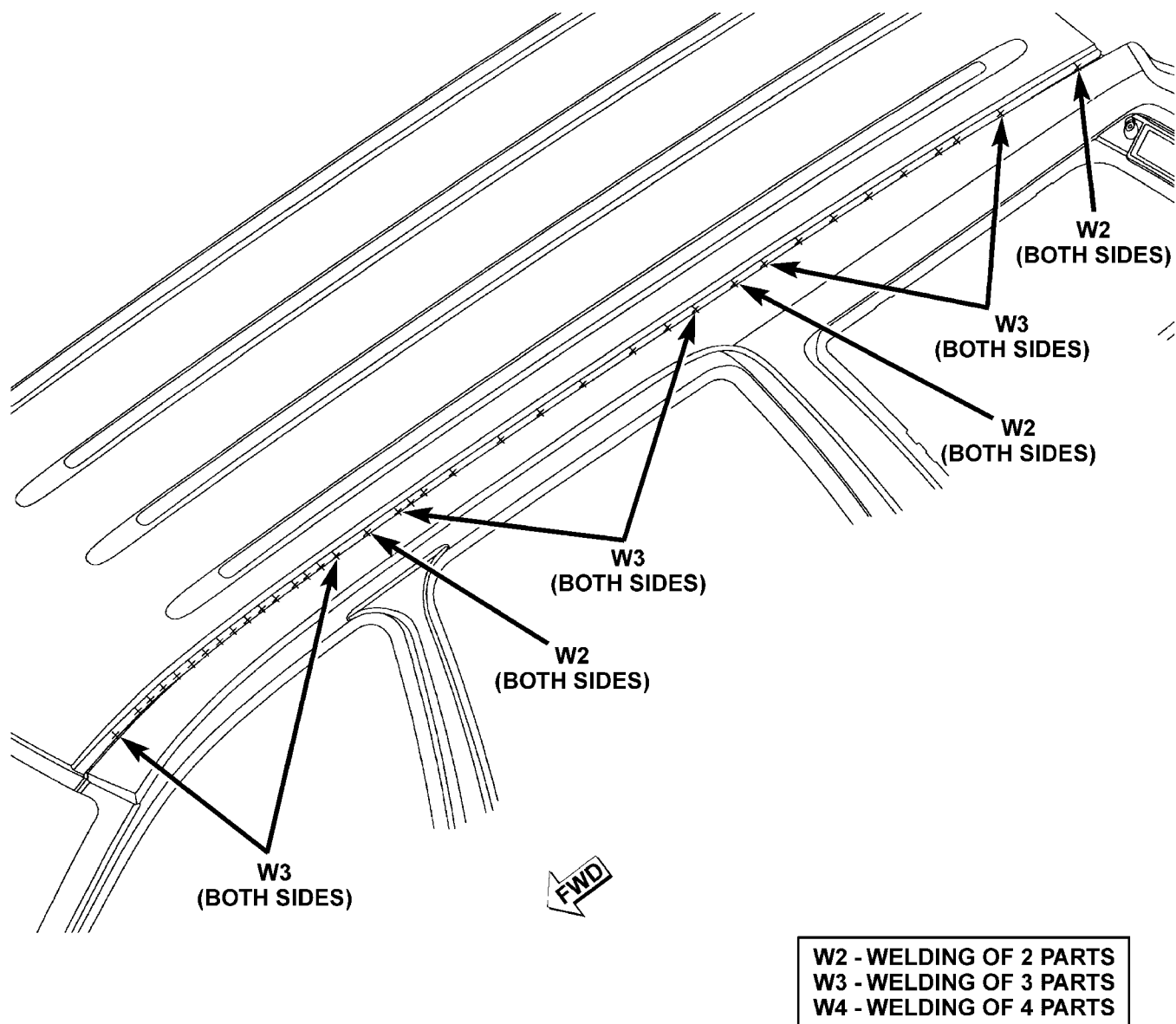
## WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)



80b6fe81

Fig. 85 TAIL LAMP MOUNTING PANELS

## WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)

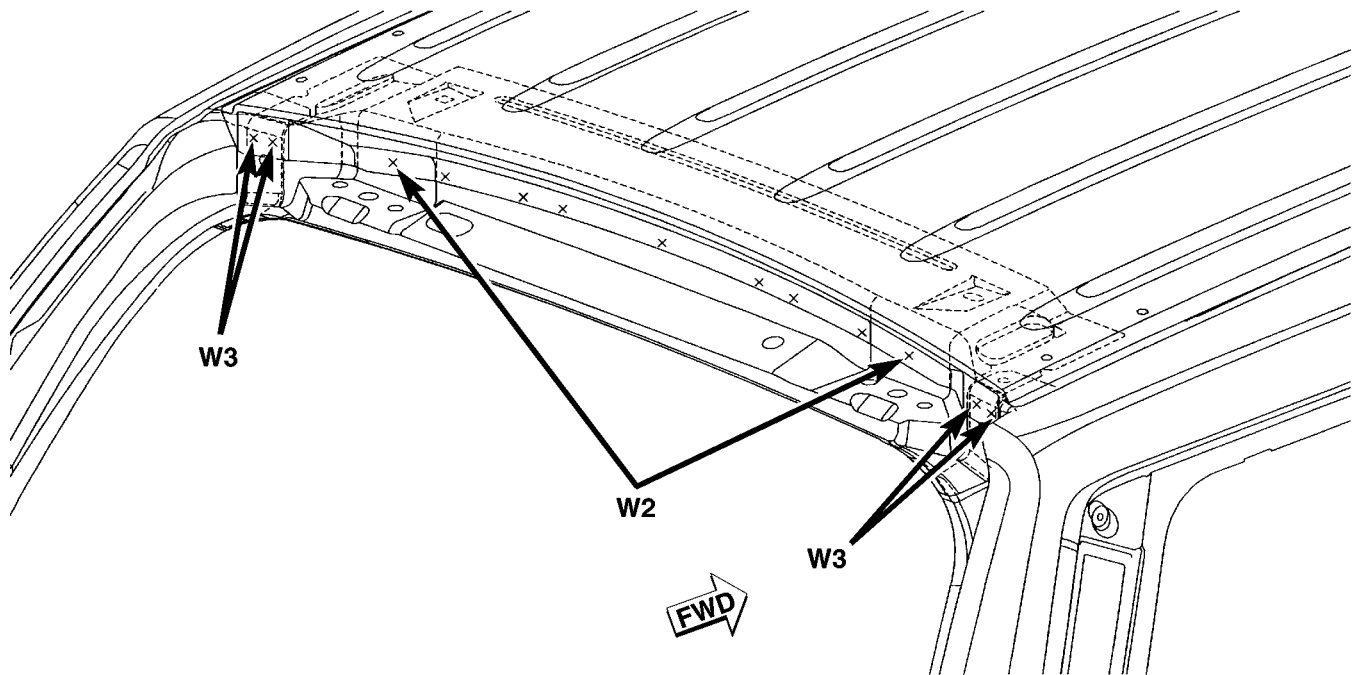


80b6fe49

**Fig. 86 ROOF PANEL TO BODYSIDE APERTURE**



## WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)

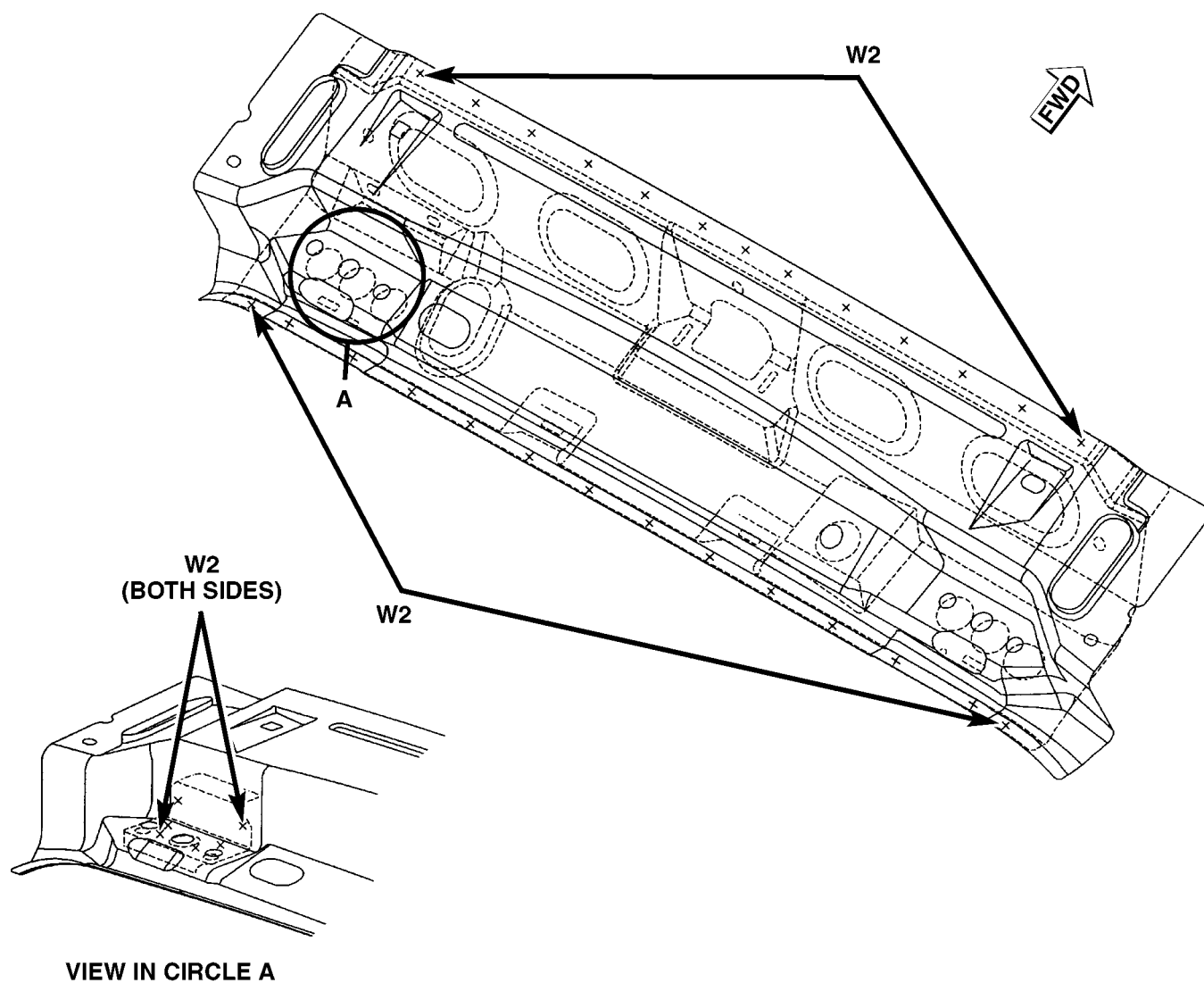


W2 - WELDING OF 2 PARTS  
W3 - WELDING OF 3 PARTS  
W4 - WELDING OF 4 PARTS

80febcd5

*Fig. 87 ROOF PANEL TO REAR HEADER*

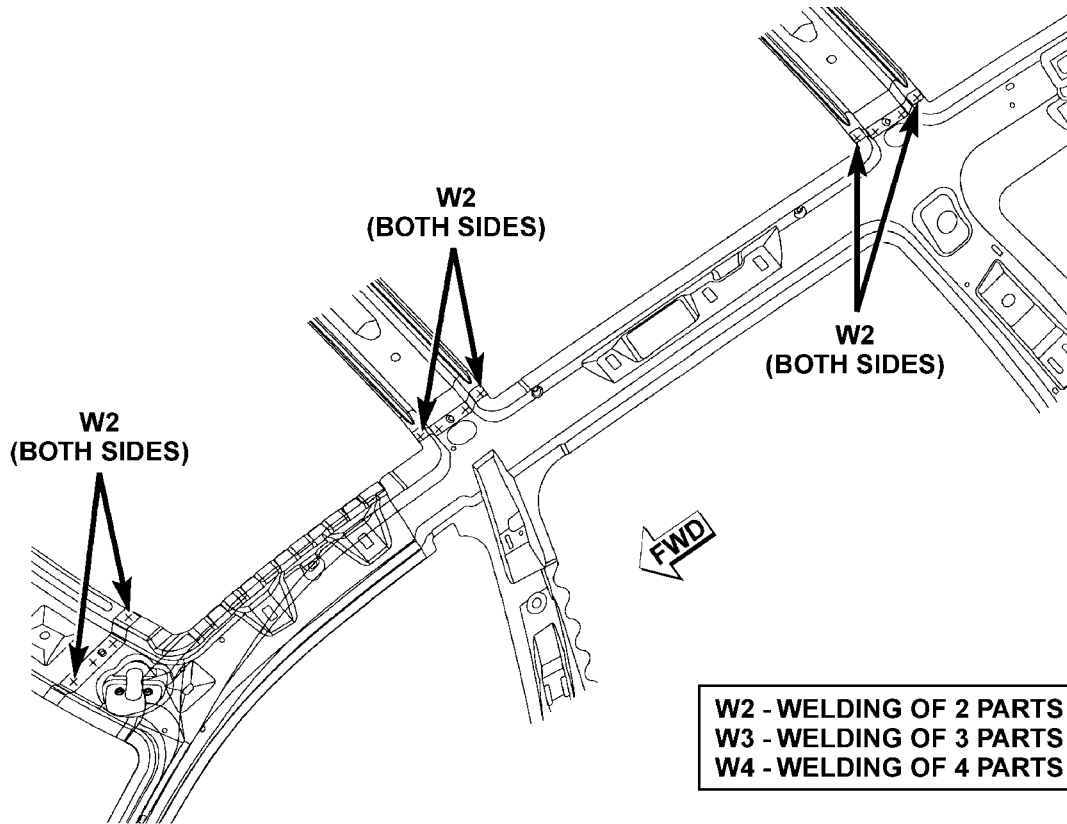
## WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)



W2 - WELDING OF 2 PARTS  
W3 - WELDING OF 3 PARTS  
W4 - WELDING OF 4 PARTS

Fig. 88 UPPER REAR HEADER TO LOWER HEADER

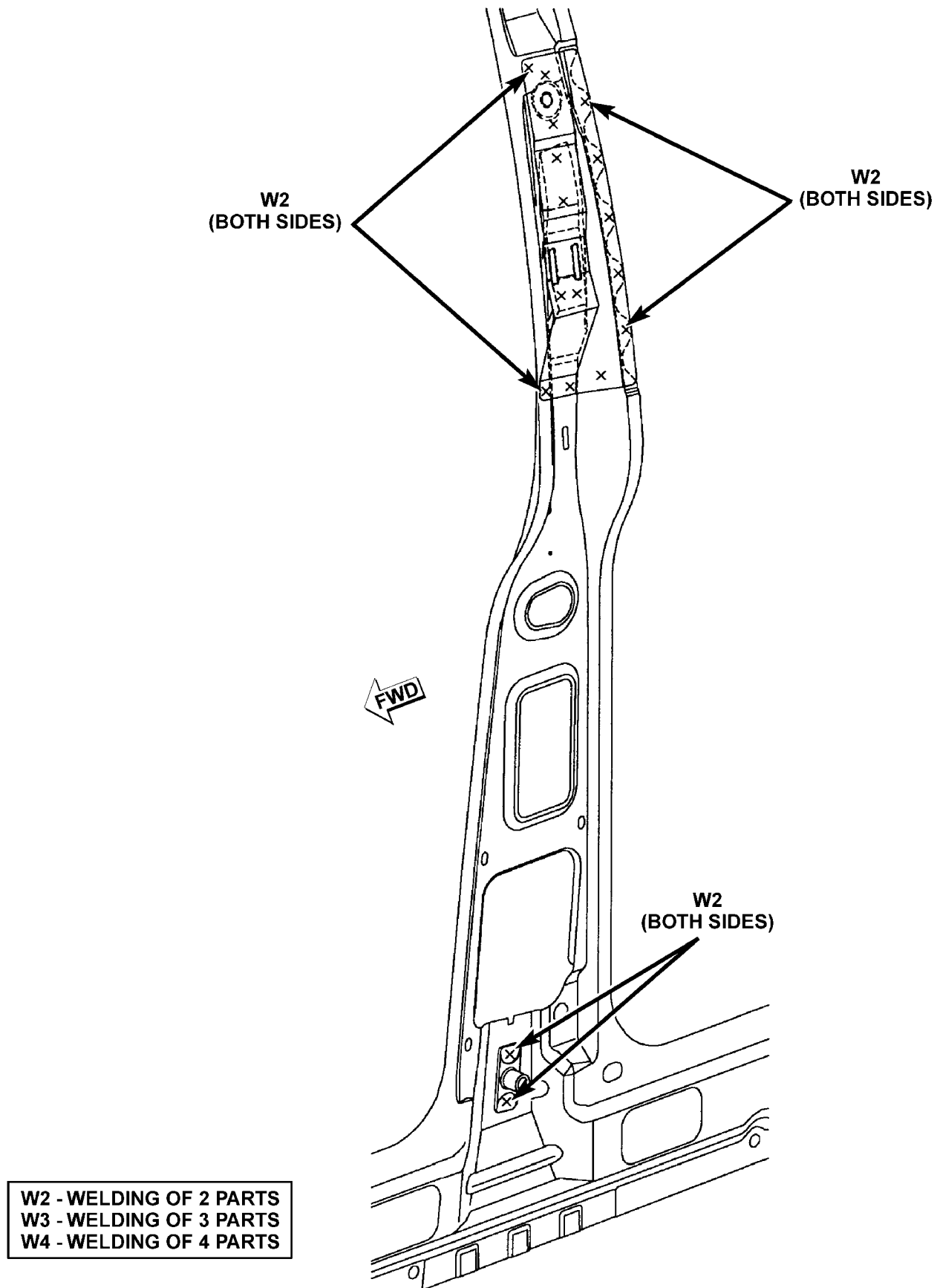
## WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)



80b6fe4c

*Fig. 89 FRONT HEADER AND ROOF BOWS TO INNER PANEL*

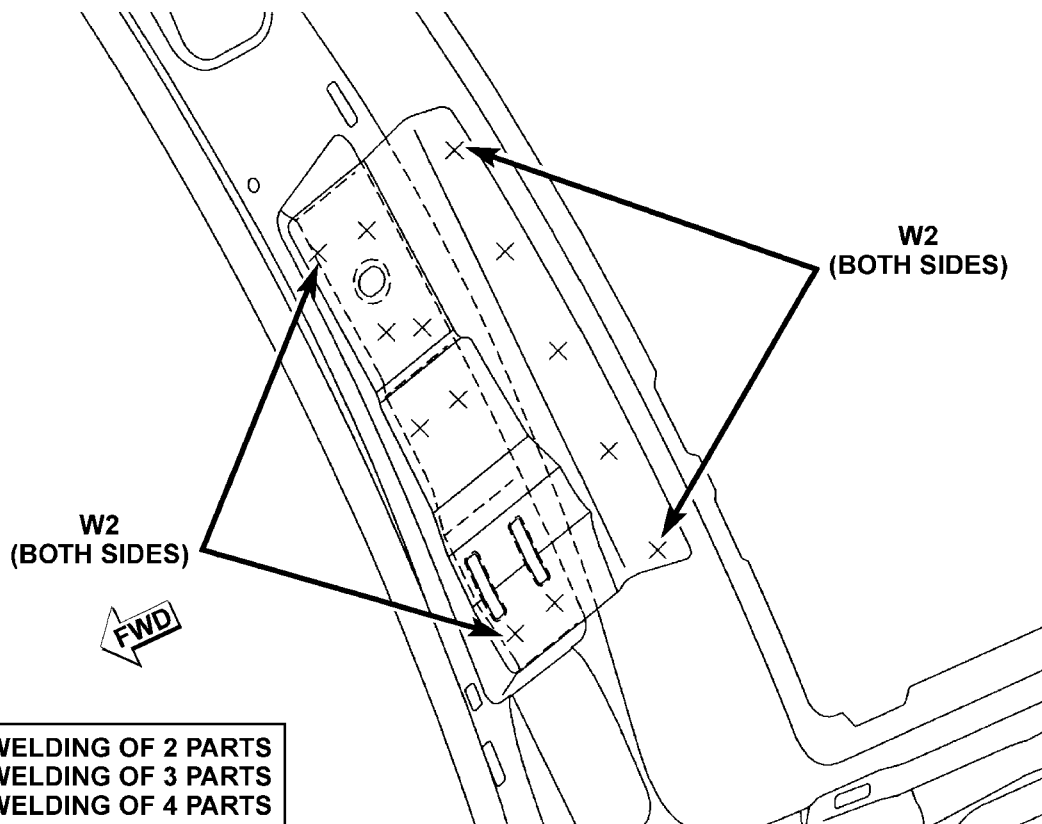
## WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)



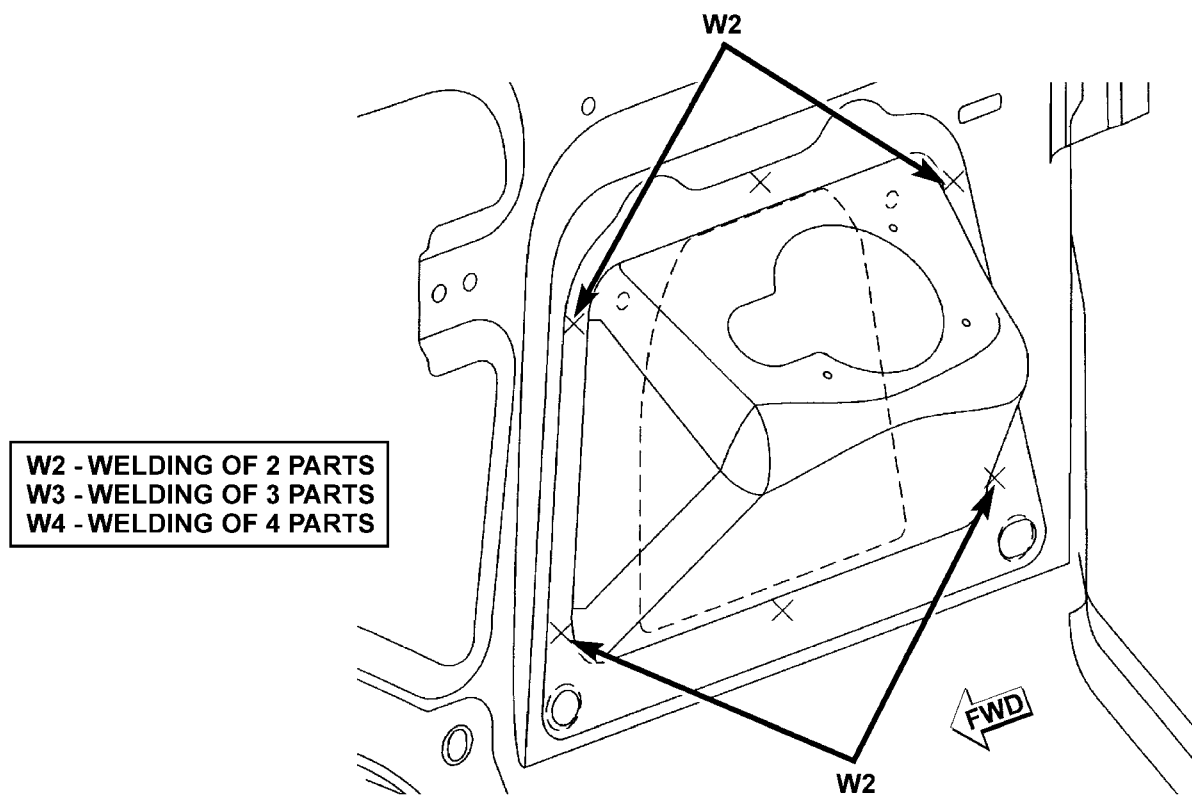
80b6fe4d

**Fig. 90 FRONT SEAT/SHOULDER BELT TO INNER PANEL REINFORCEMENT**

## WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)



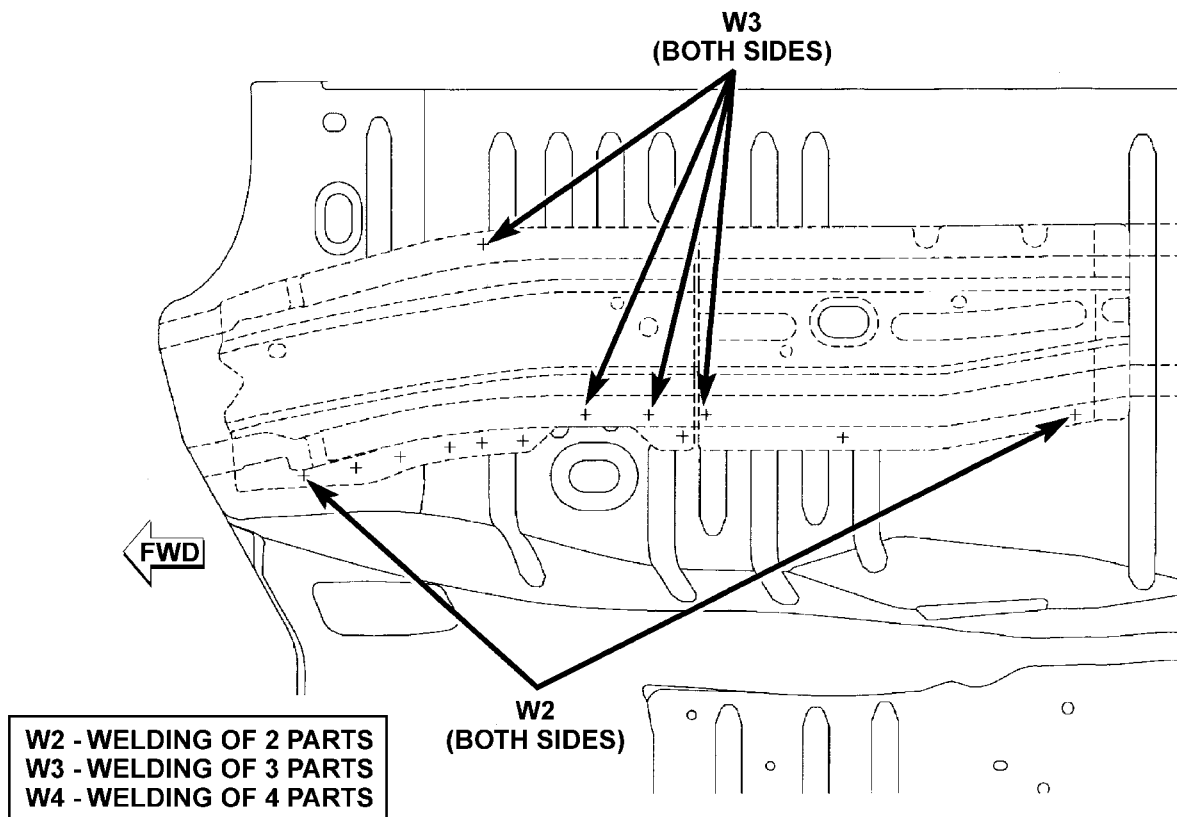
80b6fe4e

*Fig. 91 REAR SEAT/SHOULDER BELT TO INNER PANEL REINFORCEMENT*

80b6fe4f

*Fig. 92 FUEL FILLER GUSSET TO INNER QUARTER PANEL*

## WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)

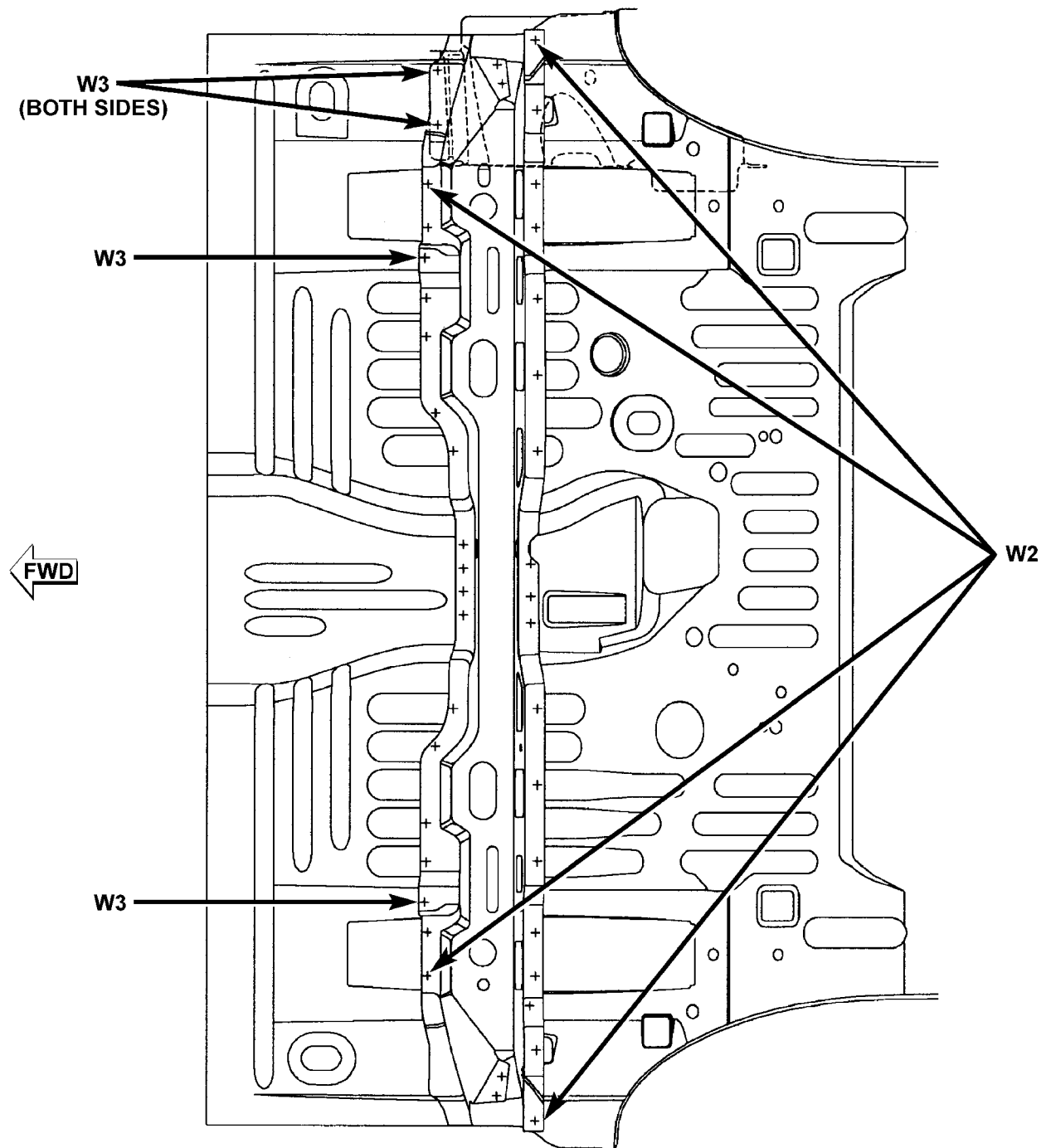


80b6fe2d

*Fig. 93 FRONT FLOOR PAN TO SILL REINFORCEMENT*



## WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)

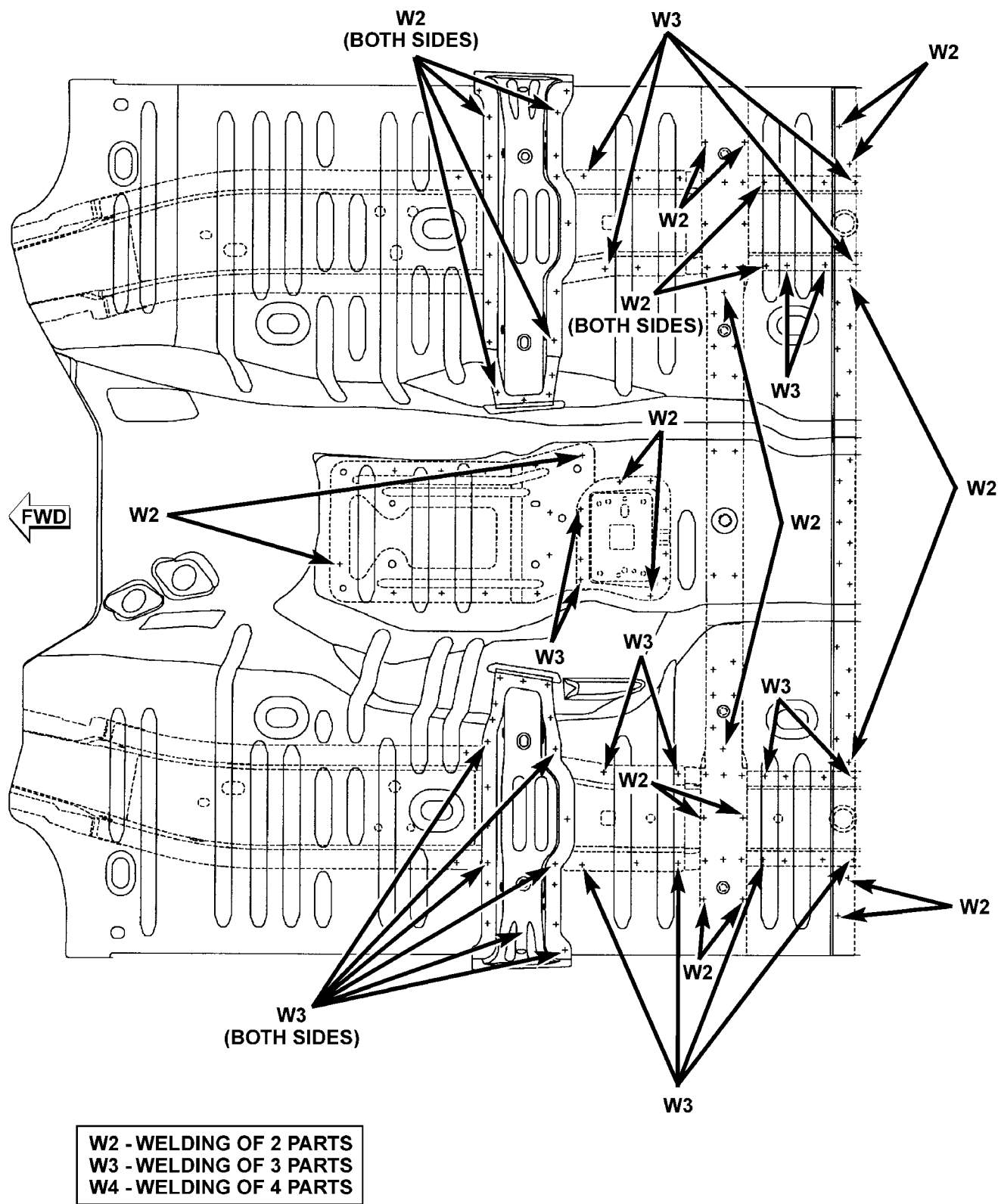


W2 - WELDING OF 2 PARTS  
W3 - WELDING OF 3 PARTS  
W4 - WELDING OF 4 PARTS

80b6fe2e

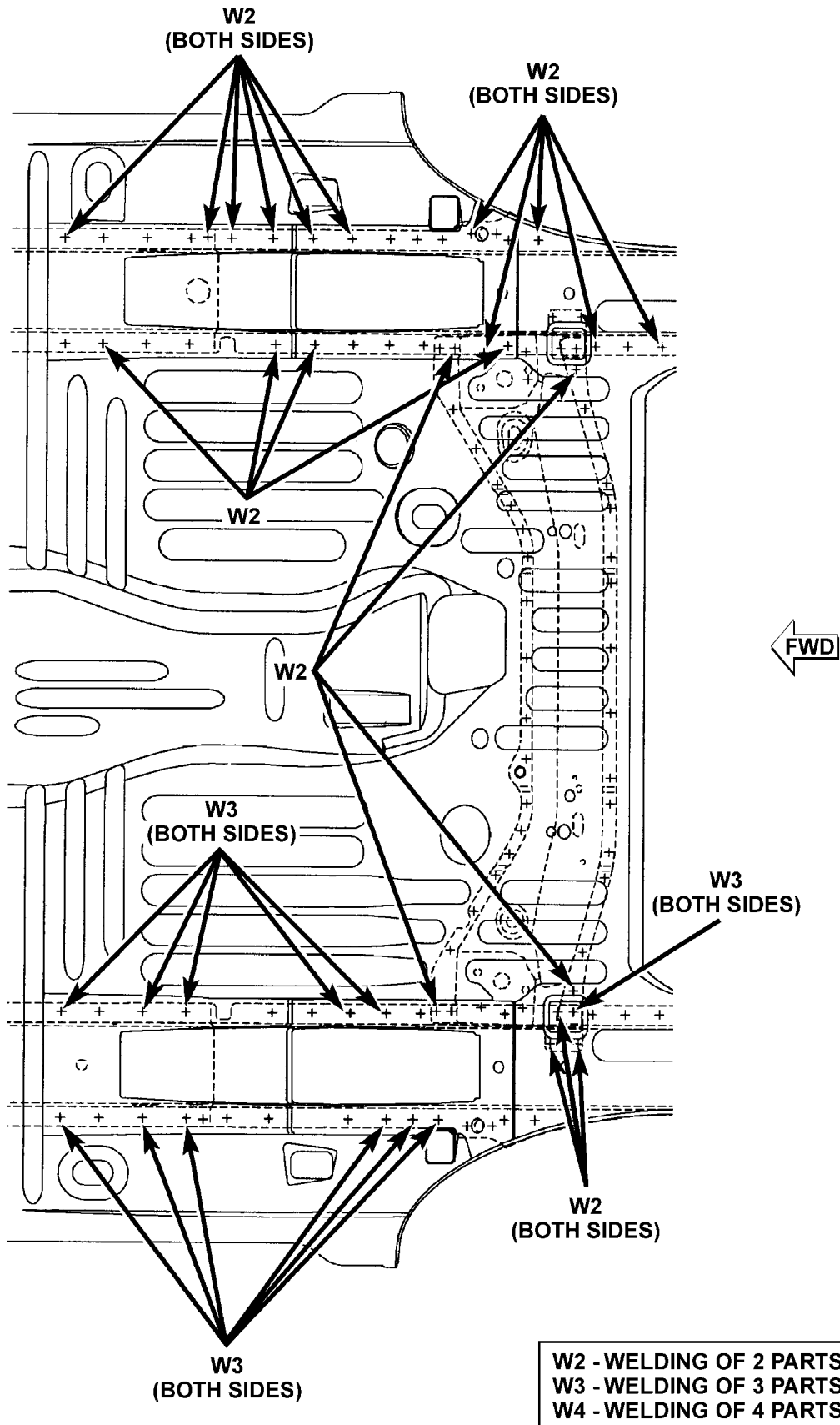
*Fig. 94 CENTER FLOOR PAN TO REAR SEAT CROSSMEMBER*

## WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)



**Fig. 95 FRONT FLOOR PAN TO FRONT SEAT REINFORCEMENT AND RAILS**

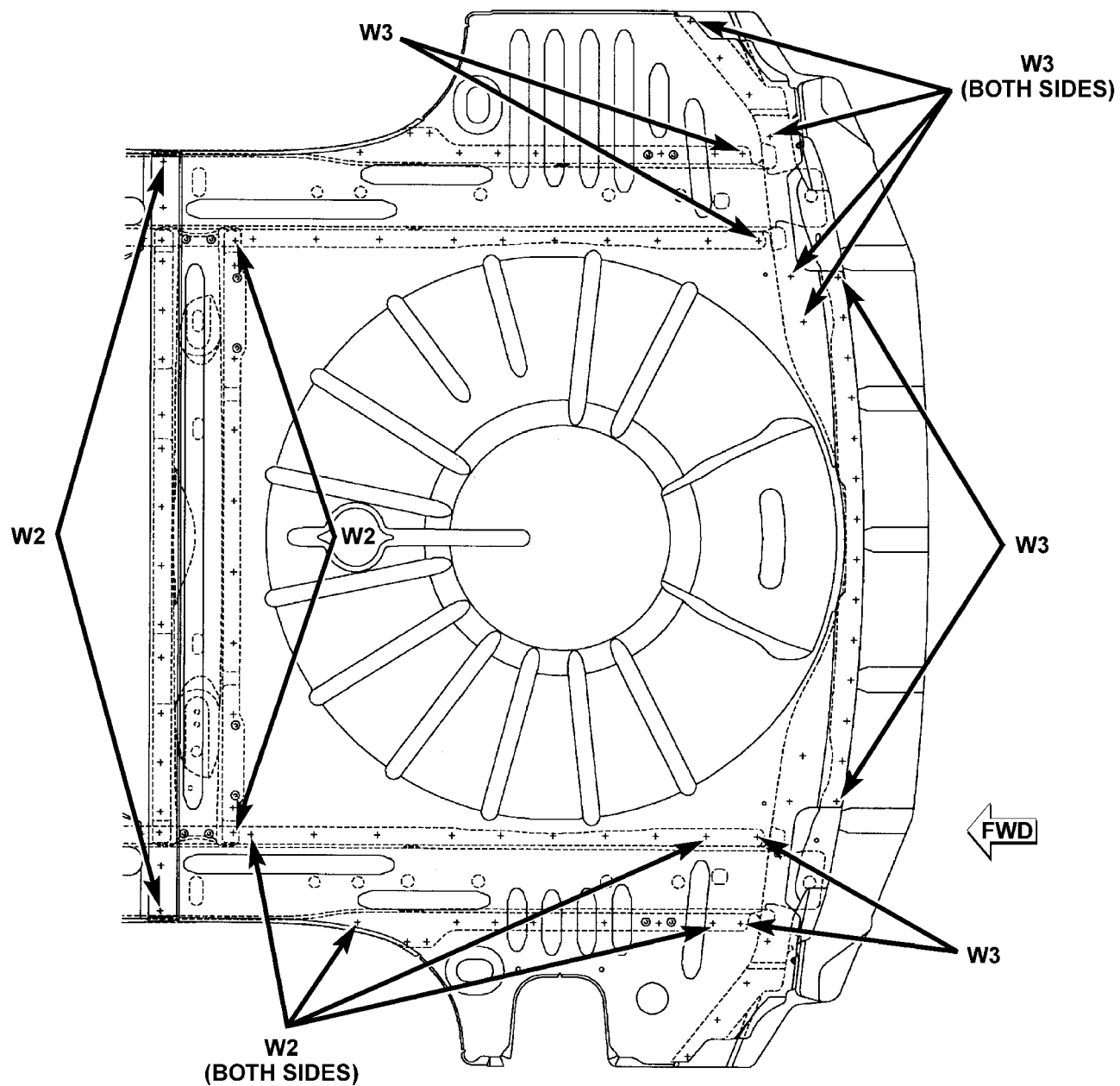
## WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)



80b6fe30

Fig. 96 CENTER FLOOR PAN TO UPPER CONTROL ARM CROSSMEMBER AND RAILS

## WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)

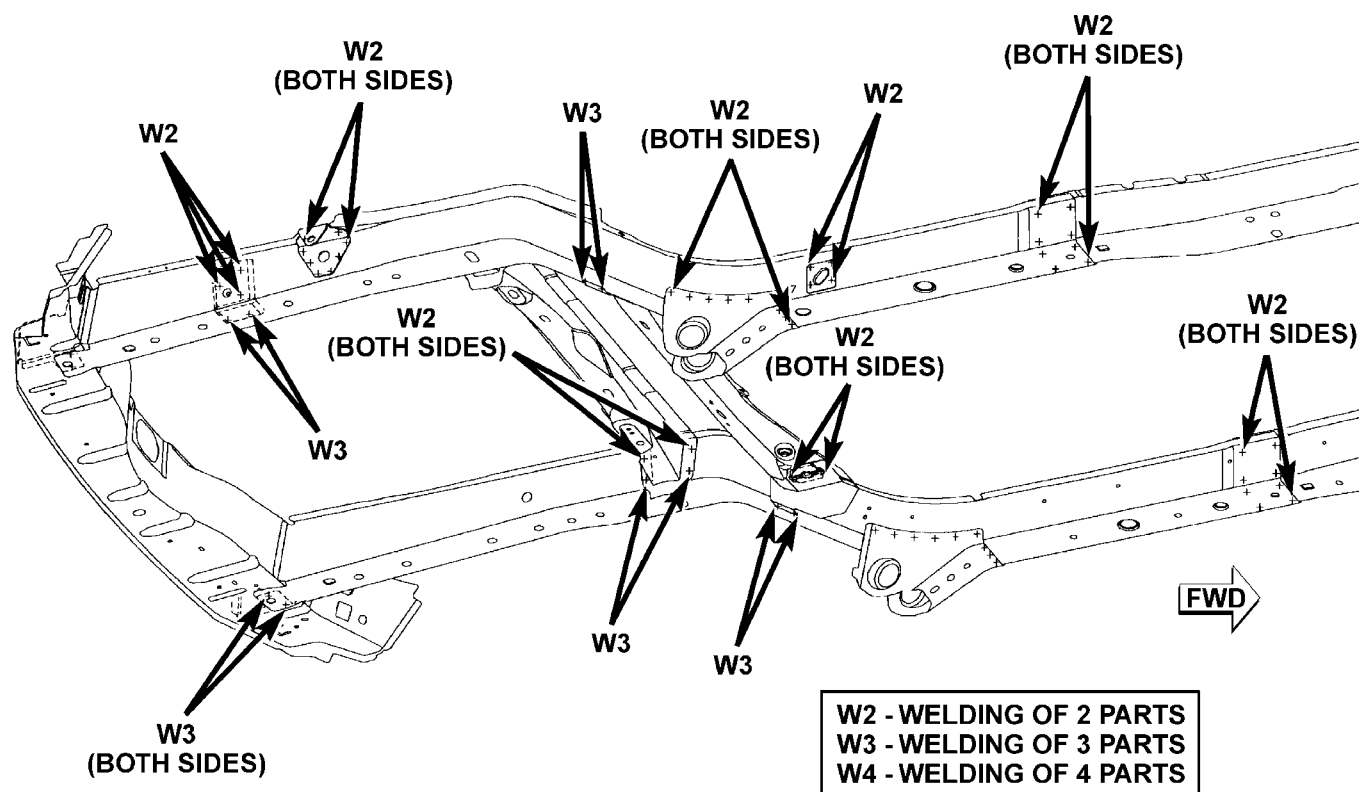


W2 - WELDING OF 2 PARTS  
W3 - WELDING OF 3 PARTS  
W4 - WELDING OF 4 PARTS

80b6fe31

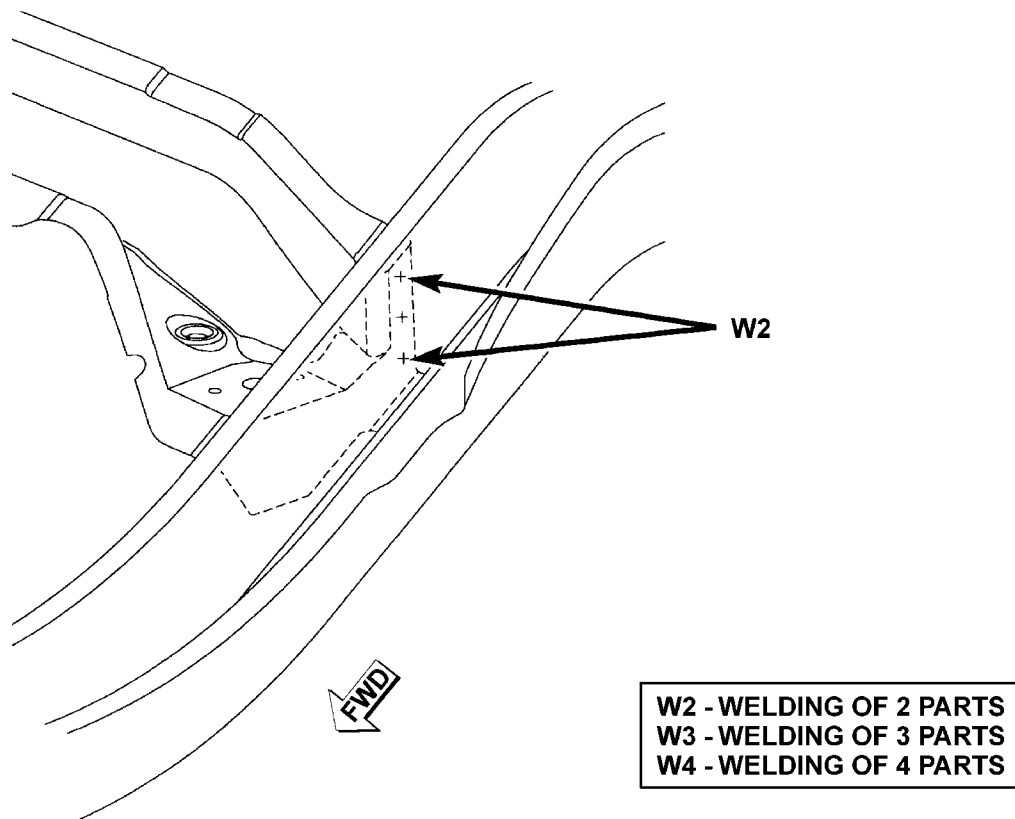
Fig. 97 REAR FLOOR PAN TO RAILS AND SPRING GUIDE CROSSMEMBER

## WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)



80b6fe32

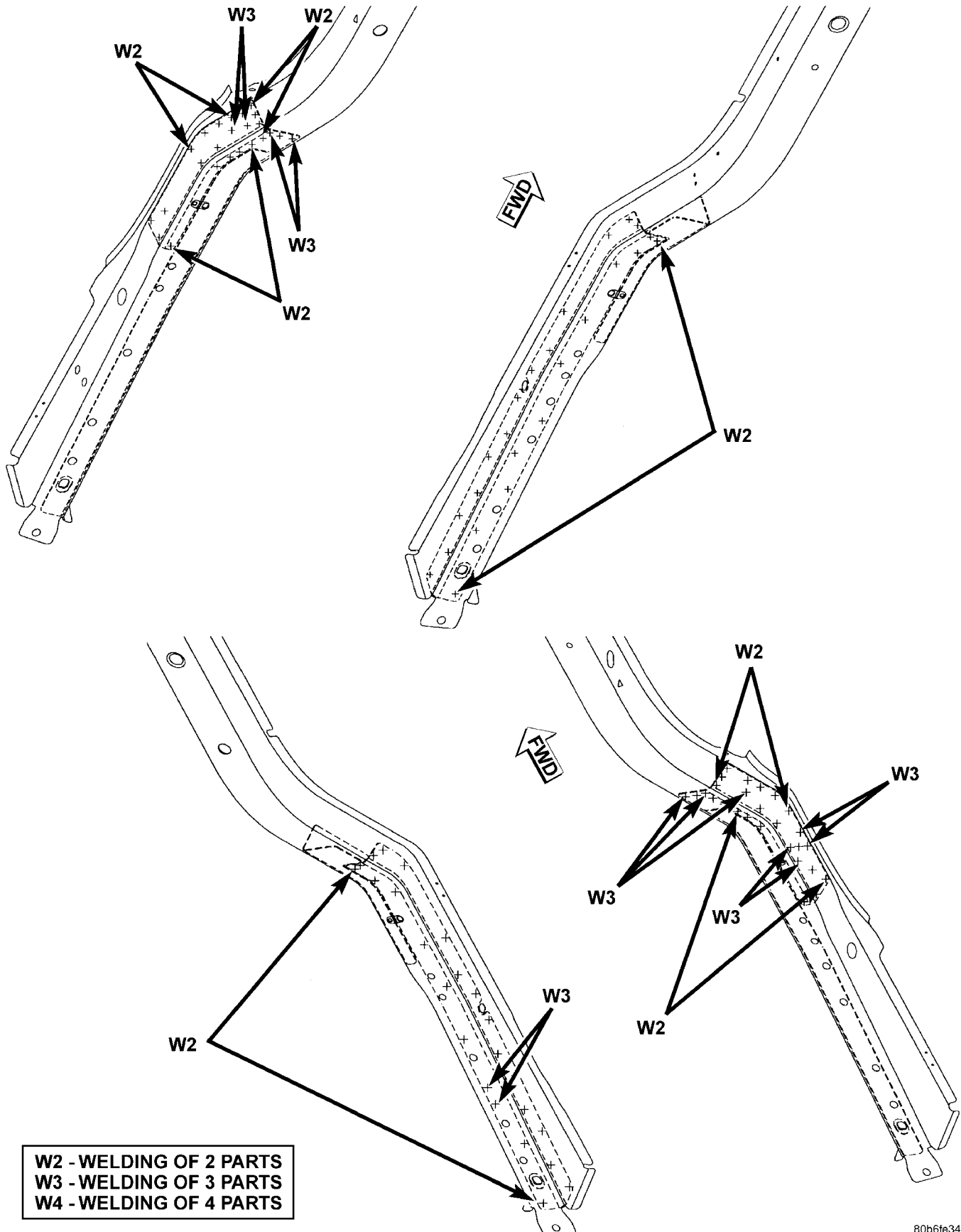
Fig. 98 REAR RAILS



80b6fe33

Fig. 99 UPPER CONTROL ARM CROSSMEMBER TO REAR RAIL

## WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)



80b6fe34

*Fig. 100 REAR RAIL REINFORCEMENT TO REAR RAILS*



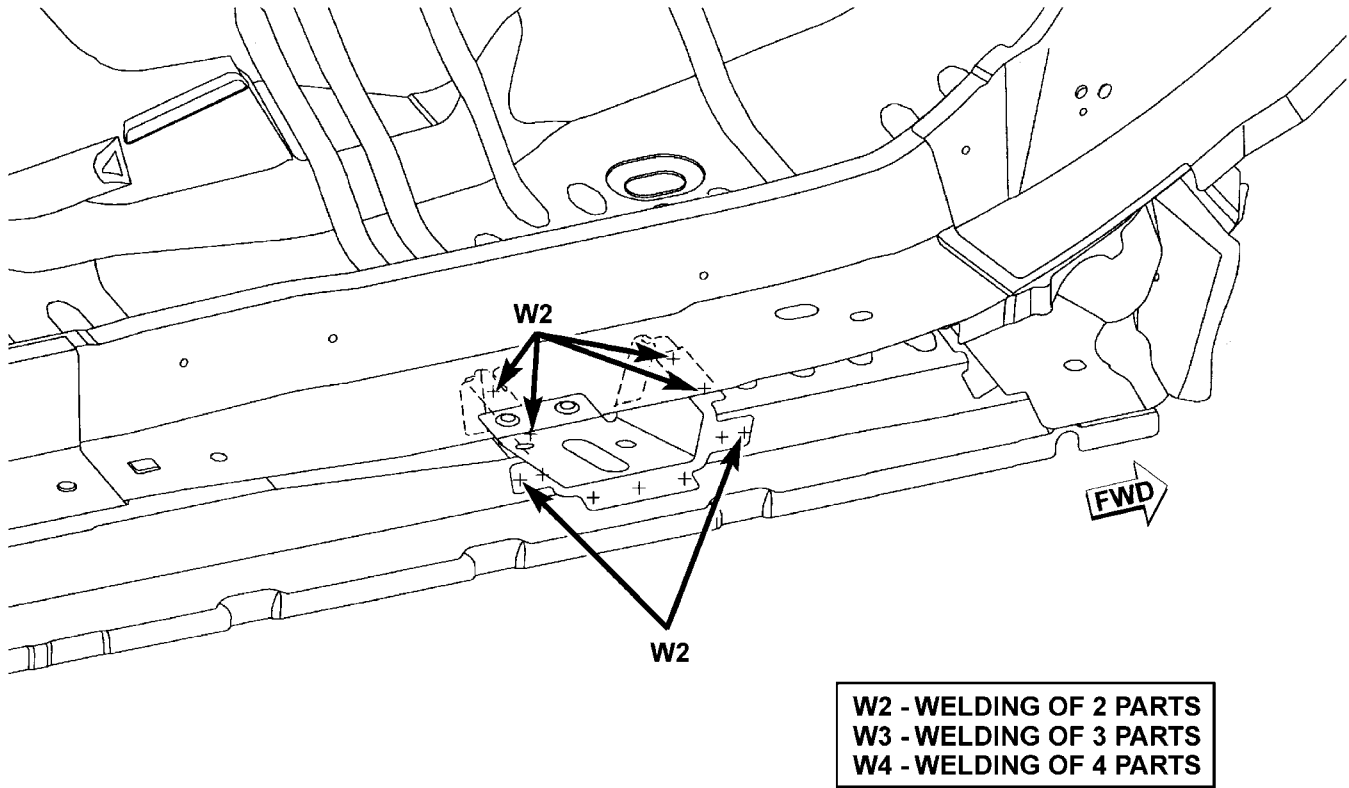
Diagram illustrating the weight distribution points (W2 and W3) for the rear fuselage structure, labeled as (BOTH SIDES). The diagram shows the rear fuselage structure with various components and weight points. A 'FWD' arrow indicates the forward direction. The weight points are labeled as follows:

- W2 (BOTH SIDES) - Points to the main fuselage structure.
- W3 (BOTH SIDES) - Points to the rear fuselage structure.
- W2 (BOTH SIDES) - Points to the rear fuselage structure.
- W3 (BOTH SIDES) - Points to the rear fuselage structure.
- W2 (BOTH SIDES) - Points to the rear fuselage structure.
- W3 (BOTH SIDES) - Points to the rear fuselage structure.
- W2 (BOTH SIDES) - Points to the rear fuselage structure.
- W3 (BOTH SIDES) - Points to the rear fuselage structure.

80b6fe35

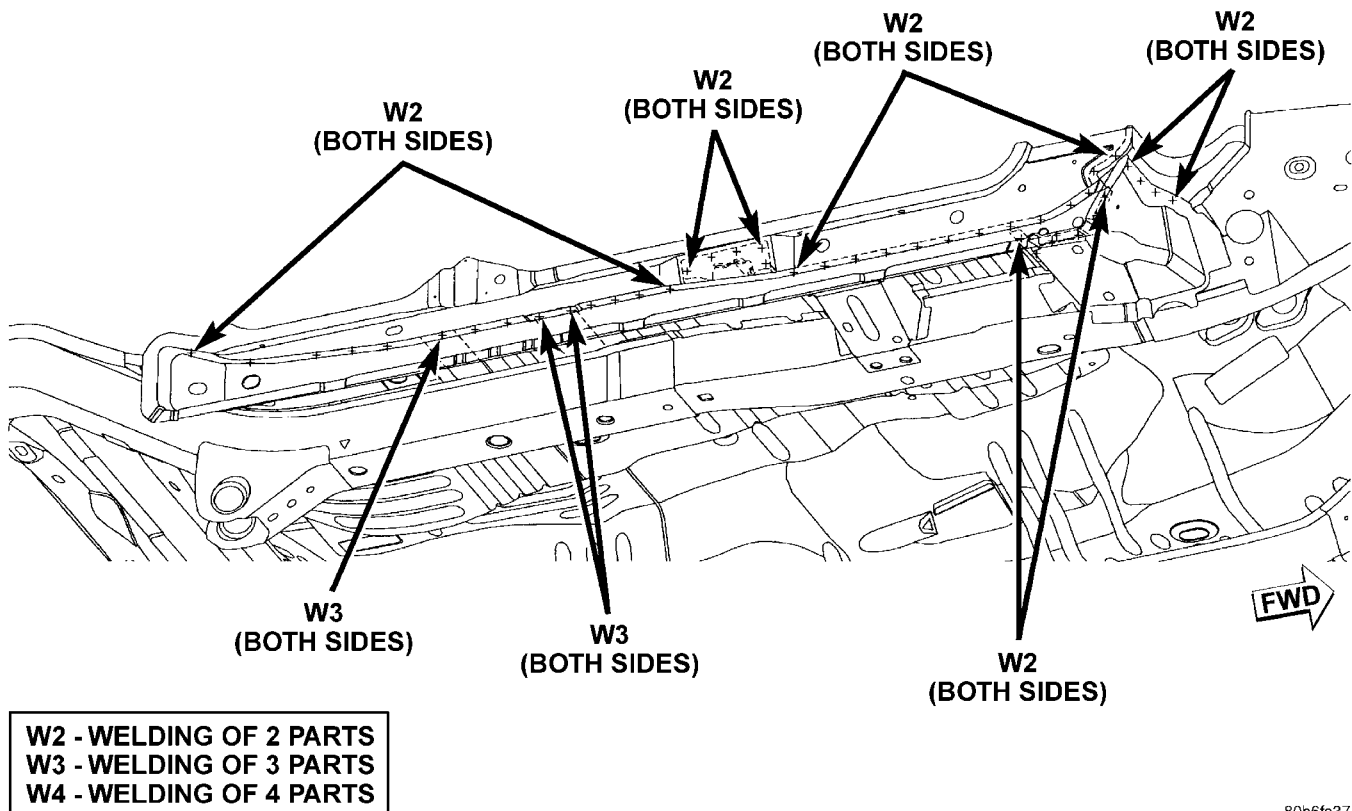
**Fig. 101 UPPER CONTROL ARM REINFORCEMENTS TO REAR RAIL**

WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)



80b6fe36

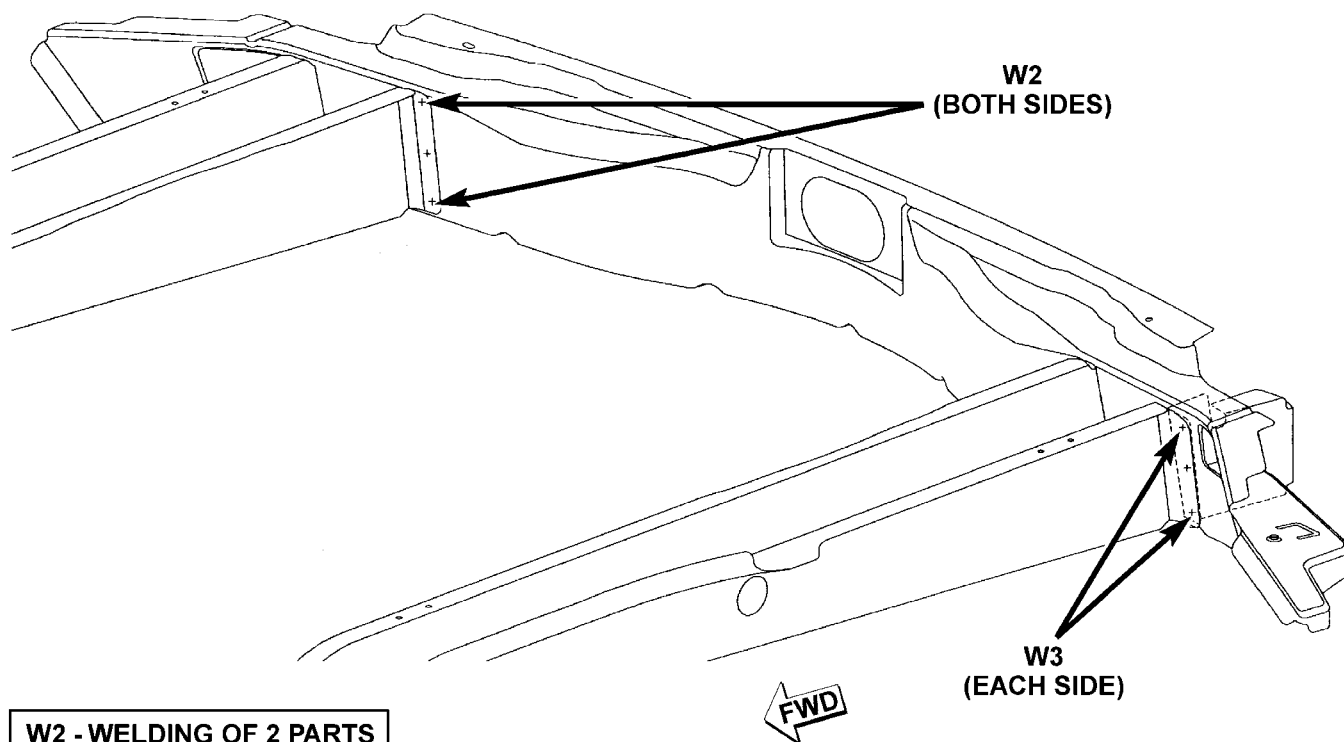
Fig. 102 OUTER TRANSMISSION CROSSMEMBER REINFORCEMENT TO RAIL AND BODYSIDE SILL



80b6fe37

Fig. 103 BODYSIDE SILL TO FLOOR PAN

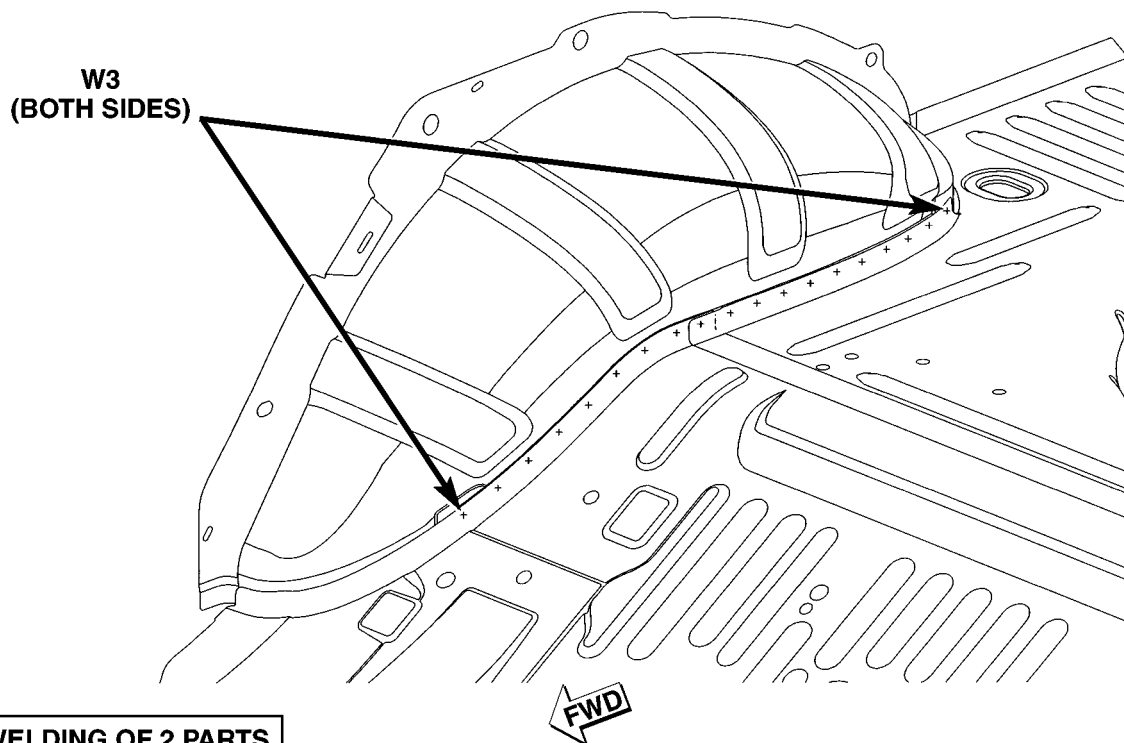
## WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)



W2 - WELDING OF 2 PARTS  
W3 - WELDING OF 3 PARTS  
W4 - WELDING OF 4 PARTS

80b6fe38

*Fig. 104 REAR RAILS TO REAR CROSSMEMBER*



W2 - WELDING OF 2 PARTS  
W3 - WELDING OF 3 PARTS  
W4 - WELDING OF 4 PARTS

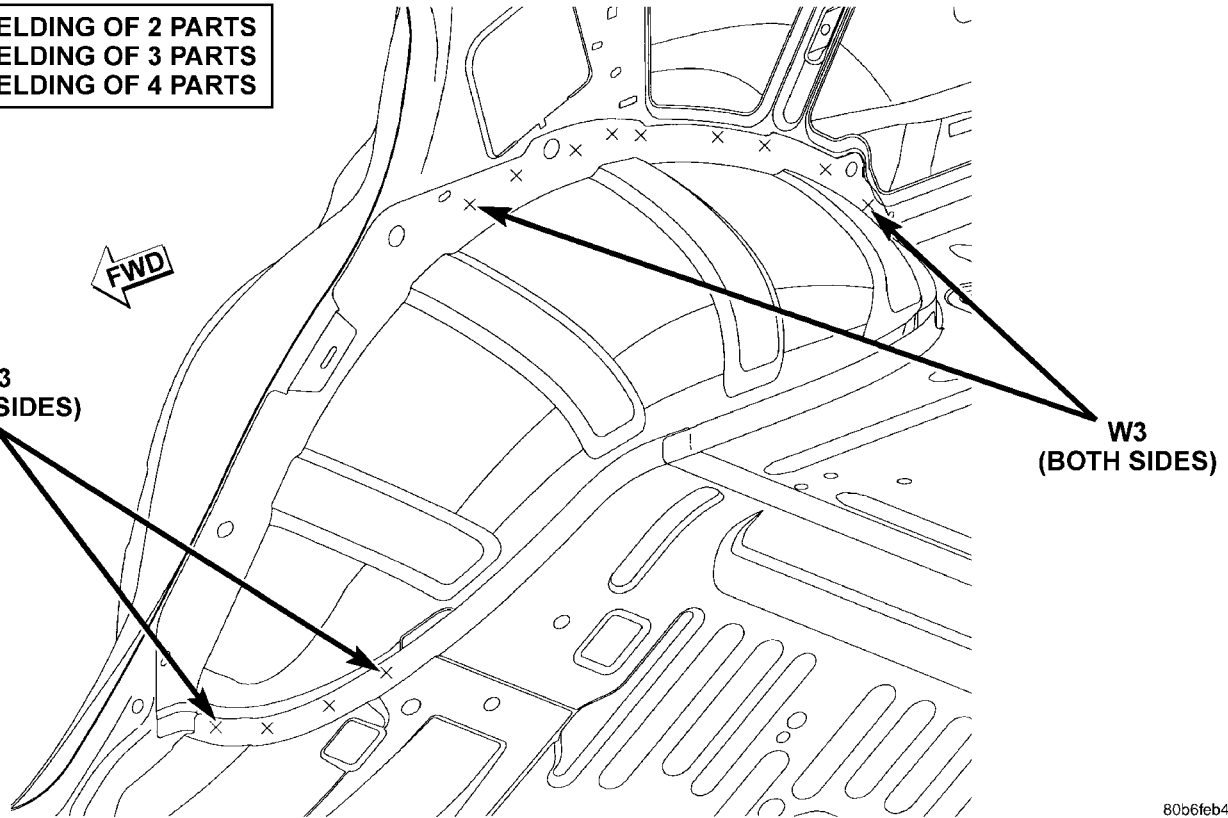
80febd03

*Fig. 105 INNER WHEELHOUSE TO FLOOR PAN*

## WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)

W2 - WELDING OF 2 PARTS  
W3 - WELDING OF 3 PARTS  
W4 - WELDING OF 4 PARTS

W3  
(BOTH SIDES)



80b6feb4

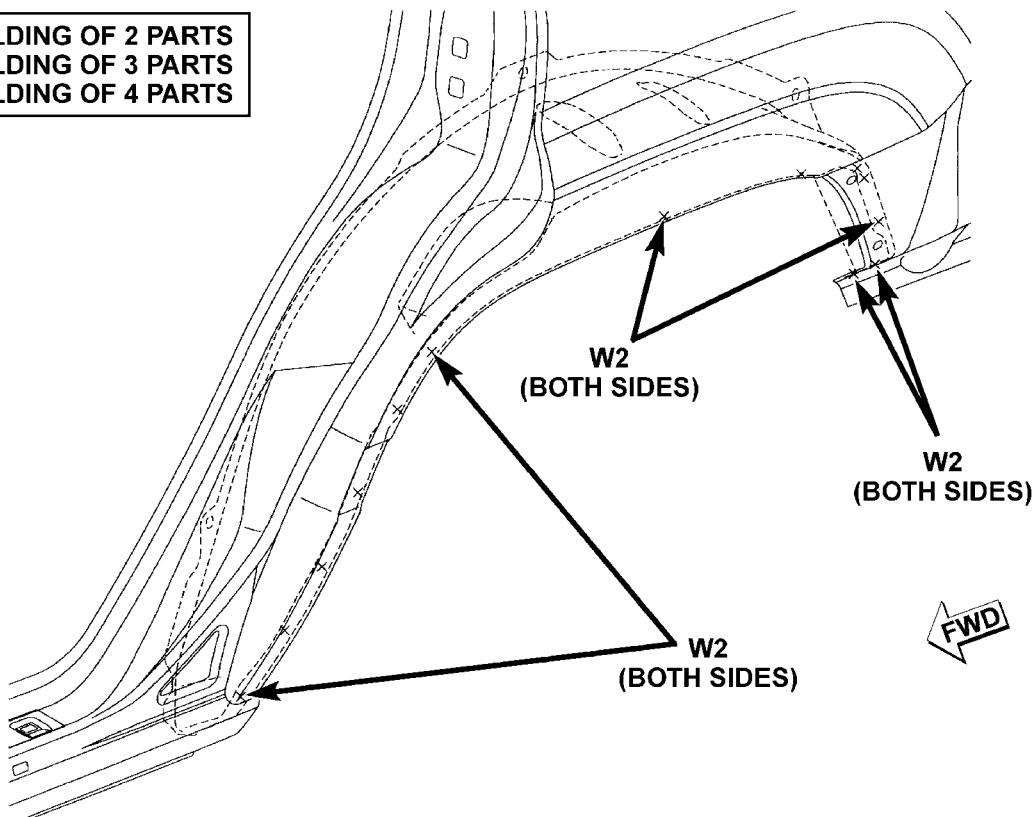
**Fig. 106 INNER WHEELHOUSE TO INNER BODYSIDE APERTURE AND FLOOR PAN**

W2 - WELDING OF 2 PARTS  
W3 - WELDING OF 3 PARTS  
W4 - WELDING OF 4 PARTS

W2  
(BOTH SIDES)

W2  
(BOTH SIDES)

W2  
(BOTH SIDES)

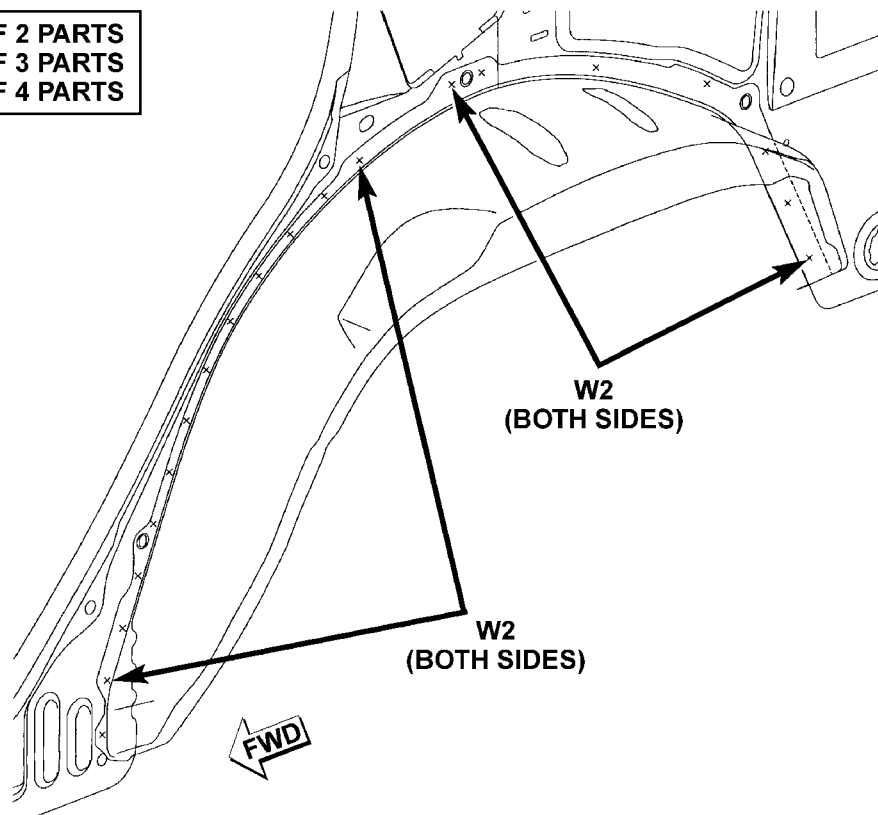


80b6feb5

**Fig. 107 OUTER WHEELHOUSE TO OUTER BODYSIDE APERTURE**

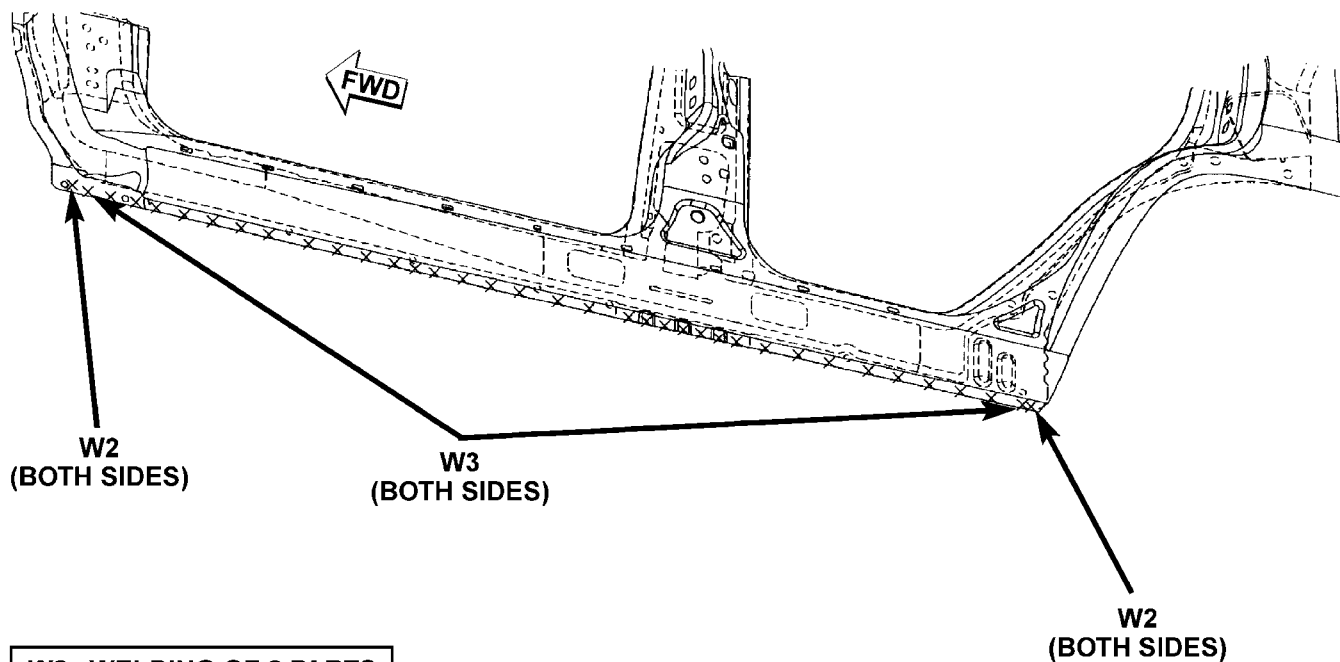
## WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)

W2 - WELDING OF 2 PARTS  
W3 - WELDING OF 3 PARTS  
W4 - WELDING OF 4 PARTS



80b6feb6

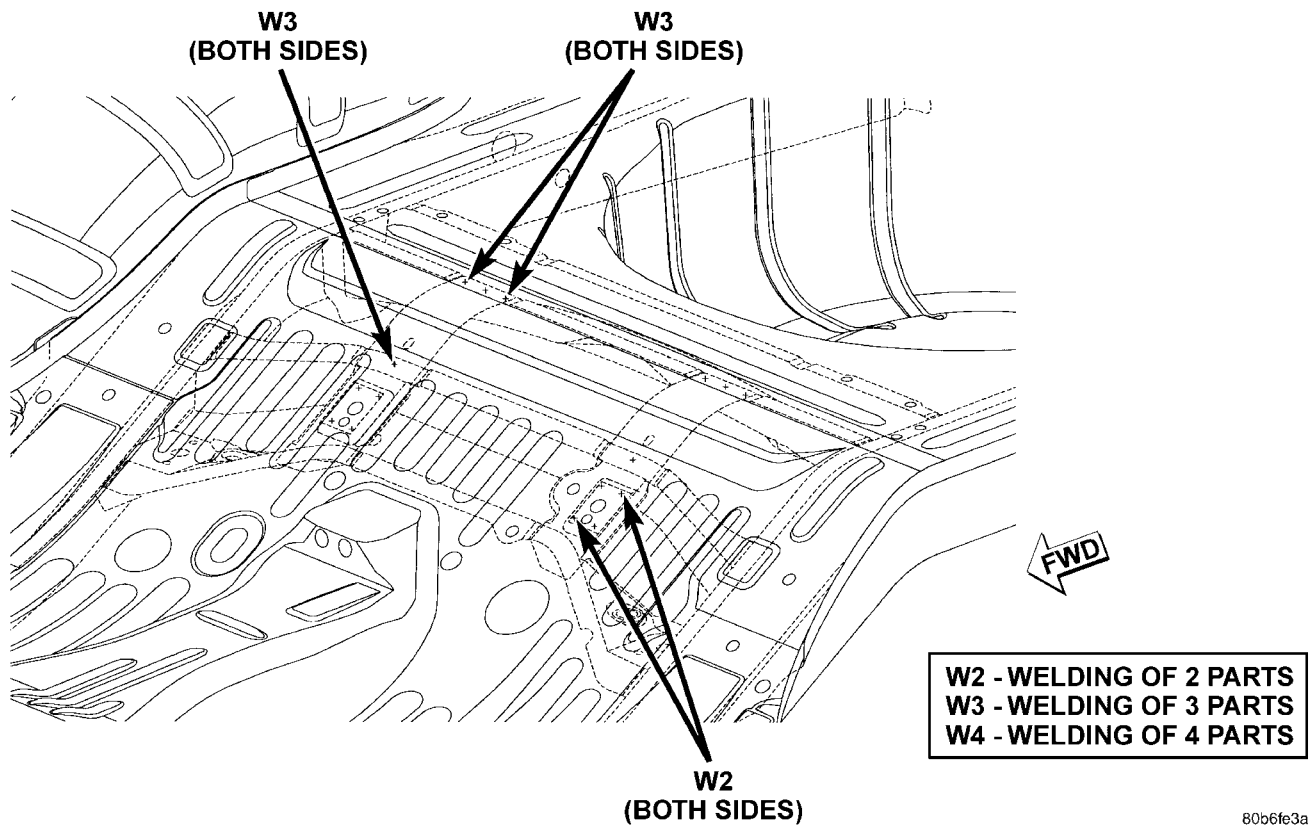
*Fig. 108 OUTER WHEELHOUSE TO INNER BODYSIDE APERTURE*



80b6feb7

*Fig. 109 INNER BODYSIDE APERTURE TO OUTER BODYSIDE APERTURE*

## WELD LOCATIONS (Continued)



**Fig. 110 REAR INBOARD SEAT BELT REINFORCEMENT TO FLOOR PAN**





# HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page	page
<b>HEATING &amp; AIR CONDITIONING</b>		
DESCRIPTION		
DESCRIPTION - COOLING SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS.....	1	
DESCRIPTION - HEATER AND AIR CONDITIONER .....	1	
DESCRIPTION - REFRIGERANT SYSTEM SERVICE PORT.....	1	
OPERATION		
OPERATION - HEATER AND AIR CONDITIONER .....	2	
OPERATION - REFRIGERANT SYSTEM SERVICE PORT.....	2	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING		
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - A/C PERFORMANCE .....	2	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - HEATER PERFORMANCE .....	6	
SPECIFICATIONS		
A/C APPLICATION TABLE .....	7	
TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS .....	8	
<b>CONTROLS</b> .....	9	
<b>DISTRIBUTION</b> .....	38	
<b>PLUMBING</b> .....	52	
<b>CABIN HEATER</b> .....	77	

## HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING

### DESCRIPTION

#### DESCRIPTION - COOLING SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

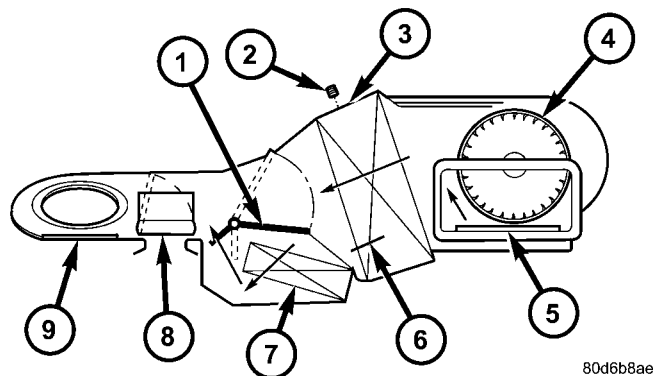
To maintain the performance level of the heating-air conditioning system, the engine cooling system must be properly maintained. The use of a bug screen is not recommended. Any obstructions in front of the radiator or condenser will reduce the performance of the air conditioning and engine cooling systems.

The engine cooling system includes the heater core and the heater hoses. Refer to Cooling for more information before opening, or attempting any service to the engine cooling system.

#### DESCRIPTION - HEATER AND AIR CONDITIONER

A manual temperature control type heating-air conditioning system is standard factory-installed equipment on this model. An electronically controlled Automatic Zone Control (AZC) type heating-air conditioning system is an available factory-installed option.

All vehicles are equipped with a common HVAC housing assembly (Fig. 1). The system combines air conditioning, heating, and ventilating capabilities in a single unit housing mounted under the instrument panel.



**Fig. 1 Blend-Air HVAC System - (typical)**

- 1 - Blend Door
- 2 - Expansion Valve
- 3 - Evaporator Core
- 4 - Blower Assembly
- 5 - Recirculation Door
- 6 - Evaporator Probe
- 7 - Heater Core
- 8 - Heat/Defrost Door
- 9 - Panel/Defrost Door

#### DESCRIPTION - REFRIGERANT SYSTEM SERVICE PORT

The two refrigerant system service ports are used to charge, recover/recycle, evacuate, and test the air conditioning refrigerant system. Unique service port coupler sizes are used on the R-134a system to ensure that the refrigerant system is not accidentally contaminated by the use of the wrong refrigerant (R-12), or refrigerant system service equipment.

## HEATING &amp; AIR CONDITIONING (Continued)

## OPERATION

## OPERATION - HEATER AND AIR CONDITIONER

Outside fresh air enters the vehicle through the cowl top opening at the base of the windshield, and passes through a plenum chamber to the HVAC system blower housing. Air flow velocity can then be adjusted with the blower motor speed selector switch on the a/c heater control panel. The air intake openings must be kept free of snow, ice, leaves, and other obstructions for the HVAC system to receive a sufficient volume of outside air.

It is also important to keep the air intake openings clear of debris because leaf particles and other debris that is small enough to pass through the cowl plenum screen can accumulate within the HVAC housing. The closed, warm, damp and dark environment created within the HVAC housing is ideal for the growth of certain molds, mildews and other fungi. Any accumulation of decaying plant matter provides an additional food source for fungal spores, which enter the housing with the fresh air. Excess debris, as well as objectionable odors created by decaying plant matter and growing fungi can be discharged into the passenger compartment during HVAC system operation.

Both the manual and AZC heater and air conditioner are blend-air type systems. In a blend-air system, a blend door controls the amount of unconditioned air (or cooled air from the evaporator) that is allowed to flow through, or around, the heater core. A temperature control knob on the a/c heater control panel determines the discharge air temperature by energizing the blend door actuator, which operates the blend door. This allows an almost immediate control of the output air temperature of the system. The AZC system will have separate blend doors and temperature controls for each front seat occupant.

The mode control knob on the a/c heater control panel is used to direct the conditioned air to the selected system outlets. On manual temperature control systems, the mode control knob switches engine vacuum to control the mode doors, which are operated by vacuum actuators. On AZC systems, the mode control knob switches electrical current to control the mode doors, which are operated by electronic actuators.

The outside air intake can be shut off on manual temperature control systems by selecting the Recirculation Mode with the mode control knob. The outside

air intake can be shut off on Automatic Zone Control (AZC) type system by pushing the Recirculation Mode button. This will operate the recirculation door that closes off the outside fresh air intake and recirculates the air that is already inside the vehicle.

The air conditioner for all models is designed for the use of non-CFC, R-134a refrigerant. The air conditioning system has an evaporator to cool and dehumidify the incoming air prior to blending it with the heated air. This air conditioning system uses a thermal expansion valve to meter refrigerant flow to the evaporator coil. To maintain minimum evaporator temperature and prevent evaporator freezing, the system utilizes an evaporator thermister probe with the appropriate operating logic located in the body control module (BCM).

## OPERATION - REFRIGERANT SYSTEM SERVICE PORT

The high pressure service port is located on the liquid line near the receiver/drier. The low pressure service port is located on the suction line near the evaporator at the rear of the engine compartment.

Each of the service ports has a threaded plastic protective cap installed over it from the factory. After servicing the refrigerant system, always reinstall both of the service port caps.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - A/C PERFORMANCE

The air conditioning system is designed to provide the passenger compartment with low temperature and low specific humidity air. The evaporator, located in the HVAC housing on the dash panel below the instrument panel, is cooled to temperatures near the freezing point. As warm damp air passes through the cooled evaporator, the air transfers its heat to the refrigerant in the evaporator and the moisture in the air condenses on the evaporator fins. During periods of high heat and humidity, an air conditioning system will be more effective in the Recirculation Mode. With the system in the Recirculation Mode, only air from the passenger compartment passes through the evaporator. As the passenger compartment air dehumidifies, the air conditioning system performance levels improve.

## HEATING &amp; AIR CONDITIONING (Continued)

Humidity has an important bearing on the temperature of the air delivered to the interior of the vehicle. It is important to understand the effect that humidity has on the performance of the air conditioning system. When humidity is high, the evaporator has to perform a double duty. It must lower the air temperature, and it must lower the temperature of the moisture in the air that condenses on the evaporator fins. Condensing the moisture in the air transfers heat energy into the evaporator fins and tubing. This reduces the amount of heat the evaporator can absorb from the air. High humidity greatly reduces the ability of the evaporator to lower the temperature of the air.

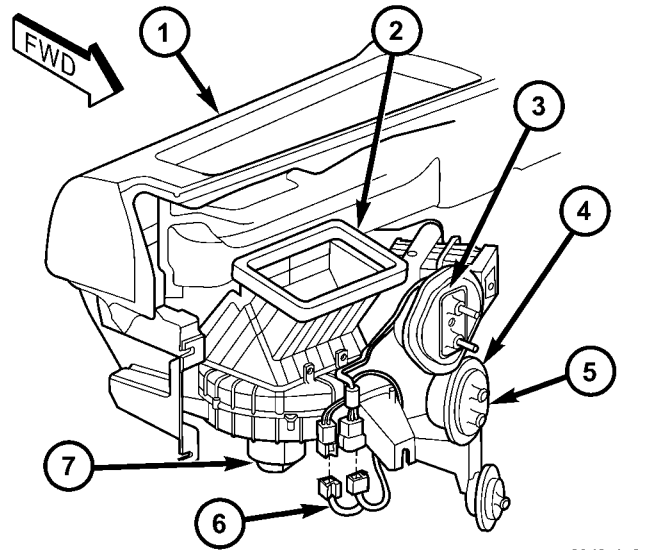
However, evaporator capacity used to reduce the amount of moisture in the air is not wasted. Wringing some of the moisture out of the air entering the vehicle adds to the comfort of the passengers. Although, an owner may expect too much from their air conditioning system on humid days. A performance test is the best way to determine whether the system is performing up to standard. This test also provides valuable clues as to the possible cause of trouble with the air conditioning system.

If the vehicle has the optional Automatic Zone Control (AZC) system, and has intermittent operational problems or fault codes, be certain that the wire harness connectors on the HVAC housing are properly seated (Fig. 2). To check this condition, unplug the two wire harness connector halves, then plug them in again.

Before performing the following procedure, (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - CAUTION) (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - WARNING). The air temperature in the test room and in the vehicle must be a minimum of 21° C (70° F) for this test.

(1) Connect a tachometer and a manifold gauge set.

(2) If the vehicle has the standard manual temperature control, set the A/C Heater mode control switch knob in the Panel position, the temperature control knob in the full cool (Fresh Air Mode) position, the A/C button in the On position, and the blower motor switch knob in the highest speed position. If the vehicle has the optional AZC, set the A/C Heater mode control switch knob in the Panel position, the temperature control knob in the full cool position, the A/C button in the On position, and the blower motor switch knob in the highest (manual) speed position.



80d6c1a0

**Fig. 2 HVAC Housing - (rear view)**

- 1 - Instrument Panel
- 2 - Air Intake
- 3 - Expansion Valve
- 4 - HVAC Housing
- 5 - Heater Core Input/Output Ports
- 6 - Instrument Panel Wiring Harness
- 7 - Blower Motor

(3) Start the engine and hold the idle at 1,300 rpm with the compressor clutch engaged.

(4) The engine should be at operating temperature. The doors and windows must be open.

(5) Insert a thermometer in the driver side center A/C (panel) outlet. Operate the engine for five minutes.

(6) The compressor clutch may cycle, depending upon the ambient temperature and humidity.

(7) With the compressor clutch engaged, record the discharge air temperature and the compressor discharge pressure.

(8) Compare the discharge air temperature to the Performance Temperature and Pressure chart. If the discharge air temperature is high, (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - REFRIGERANT SYSTEM LEAKS) and (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFRIGERANT SYSTEM CHARGE).

## HEATING &amp; AIR CONDITIONING (Continued)

Performance Temperature and Pressure					
Ambient Air Temperature and Humidity	21° C (70° F @ 80% humidity)	27° C (80° F @ 80% humidity)	32° C (90° F @ 80% humidity)	38° C (100° F @ 50% humidity)	43° C (110° F @ 20% humidity)
Air Temperature at Center Panel Outlet	10 to 13° C (50 to 55° F)	14 to 17° C (58 to 63° F)	15 to 18° C (60 to 65° F)	17 to 20° C (63 to 68° F)	14 to 17° C (58 to 63° F)
Evaporator Inlet Pressure at Charge Port	241 to 276 kPa (35 to 40 psi)	262 to 290 kPa (38 to 42 psi)	269 to 296 kPa (39 to 43 psi)	275 to 303 kPa (40 to 44 psi)	262 to 290 kPa (38 to 42 psi)
Compressor Discharge Pressure	1241 to 1792 kPa (180 to 260 psi)	1380 to 1930 kPa (200 to 280 psi)	1380 to 1930 kPa (200 to 280 psi)	1655 to 2206 kPa (240 to 320 psi)	1567 to 2068 kPa (220 to 300 psi)

Note: The discharge air temperatures will be lower if the humidity is less than the percentages shown.

(9) Compare the compressor discharge pressure to the Performance Temperature and Pressure chart. If the compressor discharge pressure is high, see the Pressure Diagnosis chart.

Pressure Diagnosis		
Condition	Possible Causes	Correction
Rapid compressor clutch cycling (ten or more cycles per minute).	1. Low refrigerant system charge.	1. See Plumbing/Diagnosis and Testing - Refrigerant System Leaks in this group. Test the refrigerant system for leaks. Repair, evacuate and charge the refrigerant system, if required.
Equal pressures, but the compressor clutch does not engage.	1. No refrigerant in the refrigerant system.  2. Faulty fuse.  3. Faulty a/c compressor clutch coil.  4. Faulty compressor clutch relay.  6. Faulty a/c high pressure transducer.  7. Faulty Fin Probe. 8. Faulty Powertrain Control Module (PCM).	1. See Plumbing/Diagnosis and Testing - Refrigerant System Leaks in this group. Test the refrigerant system for leaks. Repair, evacuate and charge the refrigerant system, if required.  2. Check the fuses in the Power Distribution Center and the junction block. Repair the shorted circuit or component and replace the fuses, if required.  3. See A/C Compressor/Diagnosis and Testing - Compressor Clutch Coil in this group. Test the compressor clutch coil and replace, if required.  4. See A/C Compressor Clutch Relay/Diagnosis and Testing - Compressor Clutch Relay in this group. Test the compressor clutch relay and relay circuits. Repair the circuits or replace the relay, if required.  6. See A/C High Pressure Transducer/Diagnosis and Testing in this group. Test the a/c high pressure transducer and replace, if required.  7. Check for open circuit.  8. Refer to the proper Diagnostic Procedures manual for testing of the PCM. Test the PCM and replace, if required.

## HEATING &amp; AIR CONDITIONING (Continued)

Pressure Diagnosis		
Condition	Possible Causes	Correction
Normal pressures, but A/C Performance Test air temperatures at center panel outlet are too high.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Excessive refrigerant oil in system.</li> <li>2. Blend door inoperative or sealing improperly.</li> <li>3. Blend door actuator faulty or inoperative.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. See Refrigerant Oil/Standard Procedure - Refrigerant Oil Level in this group. Recover the refrigerant from the refrigerant system and inspect the refrigerant oil content. Restore the refrigerant oil to the proper level, if required.</li> <li>2. See Blend Door in this group. Inspect the blend door for proper operation and sealing and correct, if required.</li> <li>3. Perform blend door actuator diagnosis, replace if faulty.</li> </ol>
The low side pressure is normal or slightly low, and the high side pressure is too low.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Low refrigerant system charge.</li> <li>2. Refrigerant flow through the receiver-drier is restricted.</li> <li>3. Refrigerant flow through the evaporator coil is restricted.</li> <li>4. Faulty compressor.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. See Plumbing/Diagnosis and Testing - Refrigerant System Leaks in this group. Test the refrigerant system for leaks. Repair, evacuate and charge the refrigerant system, if required.</li> <li>2. See Receiver-Drier in this group. Replace the restricted receiver-drier, if required.</li> <li>3. See A/C Evaporator in this group. Replace the restricted evaporator coil, if required.</li> <li>4. See A/C Compressor in this group. Replace the compressor, if required.</li> </ol>
The low side pressure is normal or slightly high, and the high side pressure is too high.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Condenser air flow restricted.</li> <li>2. Inoperative cooling fan.</li> <li>3. Refrigerant system overcharged.</li> <li>4. Air in the refrigerant system.</li> <li>5. Engine overheating.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the condenser for damaged fins, foreign objects obstructing air flow through the condenser fins, and missing or improperly installed air seals. Refer to Cooling for more information on air seals. Clean, repair, or replace components as required.</li> <li>2. Refer to Cooling for more information. Test the cooling fan and replace, if required.</li> <li>3. See Plumbing/Standard Procedure - Refrigerant System Charge in this group. Recover the refrigerant from the refrigerant system. Charge the refrigerant system to the proper level, if required.</li> <li>4. See Plumbing/Diagnosis and Testing - Refrigerant System Leaks in this group. Test the refrigerant system for leaks. Repair, evacuate and charge the refrigerant system, if required.</li> <li>5. Refer to Cooling for more information. Test the cooling system and repair, if required.</li> </ol>
The low side pressure is too high, and the high side pressure is too low.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Accessory drive belt slipping.</li> <li>2. Faulty compressor.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Refer to Cooling for more information. Inspect the accessory drive belt condition and tension. Tighten or replace the accessory drive belt, if required.</li> <li>2. See A/C Compressor in this group. Replace the compressor, if required.</li> </ol>



## HEATING &amp; AIR CONDITIONING (Continued)

Pressure Diagnosis		
Condition	Possible Causes	Correction
The low side pressure is too low, and the high side pressure is too high.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Restricted refrigerant flow through the refrigerant lines.</li> <li>2. Restricted refrigerant flow through the a/c expansion valve.</li> <li>3. Restricted refrigerant flow through the condenser.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. See Liquid, Suction, and Discharge Line in this group. Inspect the refrigerant lines for kinks, tight bends or improper routing. Correct the routing or replace the refrigerant line, if required.</li> <li>2. See A/C Expansion Valve in this group. Replace the Expansion Valve if restricted.</li> <li>3. See A/C Condenser in this group. Replace the restricted condenser, if required.</li> </ol>

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - HEATER PERFORMANCE

Before performing the following tests, refer to Cooling for the procedures to check the radiator coolant level, serpentine drive belt tension, radiator air flow and the radiator fan operation. Also be certain that the accessory vacuum supply line is connected at the engine intake manifold for the manual temperature control system.

## MAXIMUM HEATER OUTPUT

Engine coolant is delivered to the heater core through two heater hoses. With the engine idling at normal operating temperature, set the temperature control knob in the full hot position, the mode control switch knob in the floor heat position, and the blower motor switch knob in the highest speed position. Using a test thermometer, check the temperature of the air being discharged at the HVAC housing floor outlets. Compare the test thermometer reading to the Temperature Reference chart.

Temperature Reference				
Ambient Air Temperature	15.5° C (60° F)	21.1° C (70° F)	26.6° C (80° F)	32.2° C (90° F)
Minimum Air Temperature at Floor Outlet	62.2° C (144° F)	63.8° C (147° F)	65.5° C (150° F)	67.2° C (153° F)

If the floor outlet air temperature is too low, refer to Cooling to check the engine coolant temperature specifications. Both of the heater hoses should be hot to the touch. The coolant return heater hose should be slightly cooler than the coolant supply heater hose. If the return hose is much cooler than the supply hose, locate and repair the engine coolant flow obstruction in the cooling system. Refer to Cooling for the procedures.

## OBSTRUCTED COOLANT FLOW

Possible locations or causes of obstructed coolant flow:

- Pinched or kinked heater hoses.
- Improper heater hose routing.
- Plugged heater hoses or supply and return ports at the cooling system connections.
- A plugged heater core.

If proper coolant flow through the cooling system is verified, and heater outlet air temperature is still low, a mechanical problem may exist.

## MECHANICAL PROBLEMS

Possible locations or causes of insufficient heat:

- An obstructed cowl air intake.
- Obstructed heater system outlets.
- A blend door not functioning properly.

## TEMPERATURE CONTROL

If the heater outlet air temperature cannot be adjusted with the temperature control knob(s) on the A/C Heater control panel, the following could require service:

- The A/C heater control.
- The blend door actuator(s).
- The wire harness circuits for the A/C heater control or the blend door actuator(s).
- The blend door(s).
- Improper engine coolant temperature.

## HEATING &amp; AIR CONDITIONING (Continued)

## SPECIFICATIONS

## A/C APPLICATION TABLE

Item	Description	Notes
VEHICLE	WJ - Grand Cherokee	
SYSTEM	R134a w/ expansion valve	
COMPRESSOR	Nippondenso 10PA17	ND-8 PAG oil
Freeze-up Control	Evaporator Probe	Evaporator mounted
Low psi Control	opens < 22 psi - resets > 34-38 psi	
High psi Control	opens > 450-490 psi - resets < 270-330 psi	line mounted
CONTROL HEAD	Manual type	manual controls
	Automatic Zone Control (AZC)	Automatic Zone Control (AZC) with dual infrared sensing

Item	Description	Notes
Mode Doors	Vacuum actuators (manual)	electric actuator (AZC)
Blend Door	Electric actuator	(manual and AZC)
Blend Door (passenger)	Electric actuator	(AZC only)
Recirculation Door	Vacuum actuator (manual)	electric actuator (AZC)
Blower Motor	Hardwired to control head	resistor block (manual), blower controller (AZC)
COOLING FAN	Hybrid - viscous clutch/electric	PCM output
CLUTCH		
Control	Relay	PCM controlled
Draw	2.0-3.9 amps @ 12 V	± 0.5V @ 70° F
Gap	0.016"-0.031"	
DRB III®		
Reads	TPS, RPM, A/C switch	
Actuators	Clutch relay	

## HEATING &amp; AIR CONDITIONING (Continued)

## TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS

## TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS

DESCRIPTION	N·m	Ft. Lbs.	In. Lbs.
A/C COMPRESSOR SHAFT BOLT	13	9.6	115
A/C COMPRESSOR LINE MANIFOLD FASTENERS 4.0L/4.7L	25.4	18.75	225
A/C COMPRESSOR LINE MANIFOLD FASTENERS 2.7L DIESEL	22	16.2	195
A/C COMPRESSOR TO ENGINE BLOCK BOLTS - 4.0L/4.7L	45-65	33-48	398-575
A/C COMPRESSOR TO ENGINE BLOCK BOLTS - 2.7L DIESEL	30	22	266
A/C COMPRESSOR REAR BRACE BOLTS - 4.0L	40-55	30-41	354-487
A/C COMPRESSOR REAR BRACE BOLTS - 4.7L	35-45	26-33	310-398
A/C CONDENSER TO REFRIG. LINE FASTENERS	28	21	248
A/C EVAPORATOR LINE to TXV FASTENERS	28	21	247
BLOWER MOTOR SCREWS	2.2	1.7	20
DOOR ACTUATOR SCREWS	2.2	1.7	20
HVAC HOUSING SCREWS	2.2	1.7	20
HVAC HOUSING TO DASH PANEL NUTS (ENGINE COMP. SIDE)	7	5	62
HVAC HOUSING TO DASH PANEL NUTS (PASSENGER COMP. SIDE)	4.5	3.3	40
EXPANSION VALVE TO HVAC FASTENERS	20	15	177

# CONTROLS

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>CONTROLS</b>		<b>DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - BLOWER</b>	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - VACUUM		MOTOR SWITCH-MANUAL TEMPERATURE	
SYSTEM .....	10	CONTROL SYSTEM .....	29
<b>A/C COMPRESSOR CLUTCH</b>		REMOVAL .....	29
DESCRIPTION .....	13	<b>IN-CAR TEMPERATURE SENSOR</b>	
OPERATION .....	13	DESCRIPTION .....	30
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - COMPRESSOR		OPERATION .....	30
CLUTCH COIL .....	13	REMOVAL .....	30
STANDARD PROCEDURE - COMPRESSOR		<b>BLEND DOOR ACTUATOR</b>	
CLUTCH BREAK-IN .....	14	DESCRIPTION .....	30
REMOVAL .....	14	REMOVAL	
INSPECTION .....	15	REMOVAL - Manual & AZC Systems	
INSTALLATION .....	15	(Driverside only on AZC) .....	30
<b>A/C COMPRESSOR CLUTCH RELAY</b>		REMOVAL - AZC System (Passenger side	
DESCRIPTION .....	16	only) .....	31
OPERATION .....	16	INSTALLATION	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - A/C		INSTALLATION - Manual & AZC (Driverside	
COMPRESSOR CLUTCH RELAY .....	16	only) .....	31
REMOVAL .....	17	INSTALLATION - AZC (Passenger side only) ..	32
INSTALLATION .....	17	<b>MODE DOOR ACTUATOR</b>	
<b>A/C HEATER CONTROL</b>		DESCRIPTION .....	32
DESCRIPTION .....	17	REMOVAL	
OPERATION .....	17	REMOVAL - HEAT/DEFROST - PANEL/	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - AUTOMATIC		DEFROST DOOR ELECTRIC ACTUATOR ...	32
ZONE CONTROL SYSTEM .....	18	REMOVAL - HEAT/DEFROST DOOR	
REMOVAL .....	25	VACUUM ACTUATOR .....	33
INSTALLATION .....	25	REMOVAL - PANEL/DEFROST DOOR	
<b>A/C PRESSURE TRANSDUCER</b>		VACUUM ACTUATOR .....	33
DESCRIPTION .....	26	INSTALLATION	
OPERATION .....	26	INSTALLATION - HEAT/DEFROST -	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - A/C PRESSURE		PANEL/DEFROST DOOR ELECTRIC	
TRANSDUCER .....	26	ACTUATOR .....	33
REMOVAL .....	27	INSTALLATION - HEAT/DEFROST DOOR	
INSTALLATION .....	27	VACUUM ACTUATOR .....	34
<b>BLOWER MOTOR CONTROLLER</b>		INSTALLATION - PANEL/DEFROST DOOR	
DESCRIPTION .....	27	VACUUM ACTUATOR .....	34
OPERATION .....	27	<b>RECIRCULATION DOOR ACTUATOR</b>	
REMOVAL .....	27	DESCRIPTION .....	34
INSTALLATION .....	27	REMOVAL	
<b>BLOWER MOTOR RESISTOR BLOCK</b>		REMOVAL - RECIRCULATION DOOR	
DESCRIPTION .....	28	VACUUM ACTUATOR .....	34
OPERATION .....	28	REMOVAL - RECIRCULATION DOOR	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - BLOWER		ELECTRIC ACTUATOR .....	35
MOTOR RESISTOR BLOCK .....	28	INSTALLATION	
REMOVAL .....	28	INSTALLATION - RECIRCULATION DOOR	
INSTALLATION .....	28	VACUUM ACTUATOR .....	35
<b>BLOWER MOTOR SWITCH</b>		INSTALLATION - RECIRCULATION DOOR	
DESCRIPTION .....	29	ELECTRIC ACTUATOR .....	35
OPERATION .....	29		

**VACUUM CHECK VALVE**

DESCRIPTION .....	35
OPERATION .....	35
REMOVAL .....	36
INSTALLATION .....	36

**VACUUM RESERVOIR**

DESCRIPTION .....	36
OPERATION .....	36

REMOVAL .....	36
INSTALLATION .....	36

**EVAPORATOR TEMPERATURE SENSOR**

DESCRIPTION .....	36
OPERATION .....	36
REMOVAL .....	36
INSTALLATION .....	37

## CONTROLS

### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - VACUUM SYSTEM

Vacuum control is used to operate the mode doors in the standard equipment manual temperature control system HVAC housing. Testing of the A/C Heater mode control switch operation will determine if the vacuum and electrical controls are functioning. However, it is possible that a vacuum control system that operates perfectly at engine idle (high engine vacuum) may not function properly at high engine speeds or loads (low engine vacuum). This can be caused by leaks in the vacuum system, or a faulty vacuum check valve.

A vacuum system test will help to identify the source of poor vacuum system performance or vacuum system leaks. Before starting this test, stop the engine and make certain that the problem isn't a disconnected vacuum supply tube at the engine intake manifold vacuum tap or the vacuum reservoir.

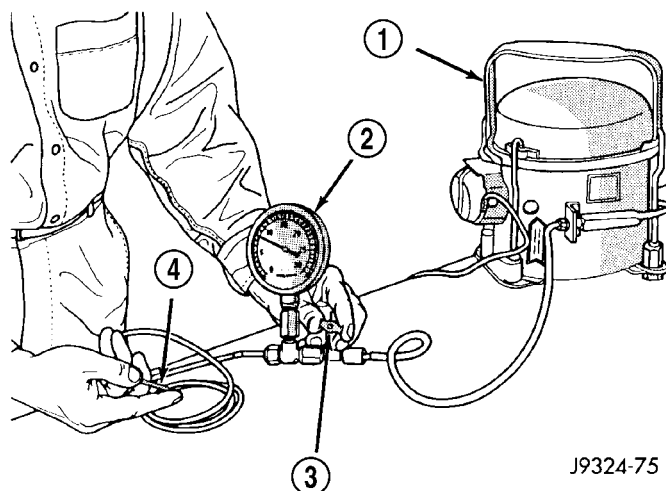
Use an adjustable vacuum test set (Special Tool C-3707-B) and a suitable vacuum pump to test the HVAC vacuum control system. With a finger placed over the end of the vacuum test hose probe (Fig. 1), adjust the bleed valve on the test set gauge to obtain a vacuum of exactly 27 kPa (8 in. Hg.). Release and block the end of the probe several times to verify that the vacuum reading returns to the exact 27 kPa (8 in. Hg.) setting. Otherwise, a false reading will be obtained during testing.

### VACUUM CHECK VALVES

(1) Remove the vacuum check valve to be tested. The valves are located in the (black) vacuum supply tubes at either the engine intake manifold vacuum tap, or on the bottom of the HVAC unit behind the passenger front floor duct.

(2) Connect the test set vacuum supply hose to the A/C Heater control side of the valve. When connected to this side of the check valve, no vacuum should pass and the test set gauge should return to the 27 kPa (8 in. Hg.) setting. If OK, go to Step 3. If not OK, replace the faulty valve.

(3) Connect the test set vacuum supply hose to the engine vacuum side of the valve. When connected to this side of the check valve, vacuum should flow



J9324-75

**Fig. 1 ADJUST VACUUM TEST BLEED VALVE - TYPICAL**

- 1 - VACUUM PUMP TOOL C-4289
- 2 - VACUUM TEST SET C-3707
- 3 - BLEED VALVE
- 4 - PROBE

through the valve without restriction. If not OK, replace the faulty valve.

### A/C HEATER CONTROL

(1) Connect the test set vacuum probe to the HVAC vacuum supply (black) tube in the engine compartment. Position the test set gauge so that it can be viewed from the passenger compartment.

(2) Place the A/C Heater mode control switch knob in each mode position, one position at a time, and pause after each selection. The test set gauge should return to the 27 kPa (8 in. Hg.) setting shortly after each selection is made. If not OK, a component or vacuum line in the vacuum circuit of the selected mode has a leak. See the procedure in Locating Vacuum Leaks.

**CAUTION:** Do not use lubricant on the switch ports or in the holes in the plug, as lubricant will ruin the vacuum valve in the switch. A drop of clean water in the connector plug holes will help the connector slide onto the switch ports.

## CONTROLS (Continued)

## LOCATING VACUUM LEAKS

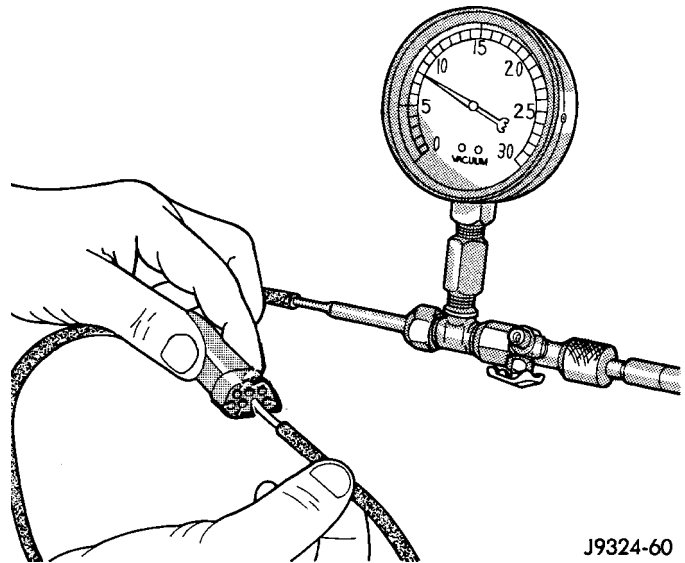
**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN AN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Disconnect the vacuum harness connector from the back of the A/C Heater mode control switch on the control panel.

(2) Connect the test set vacuum hose probe to each port in the vacuum harness connector, one at a time, and pause after each connection (Fig. 2). The test set gauge should return to the 27 kPa (8 in. Hg.) setting shortly after each connection is made. If OK, replace the faulty mode control switch. If not OK, go to Step 3.

(3) Determine the vacuum line color of the vacuum circuit that is leaking. To determine the vacuum line colors, refer to the Vacuum Circuits chart (Fig. 3).

(4) Disconnect and plug the vacuum line from the component (fitting, actuator, valve, switch, or reservoir) on the other end of the leaking circuit. Instrument panel disassembly or removal may be necessary to gain access to some components.



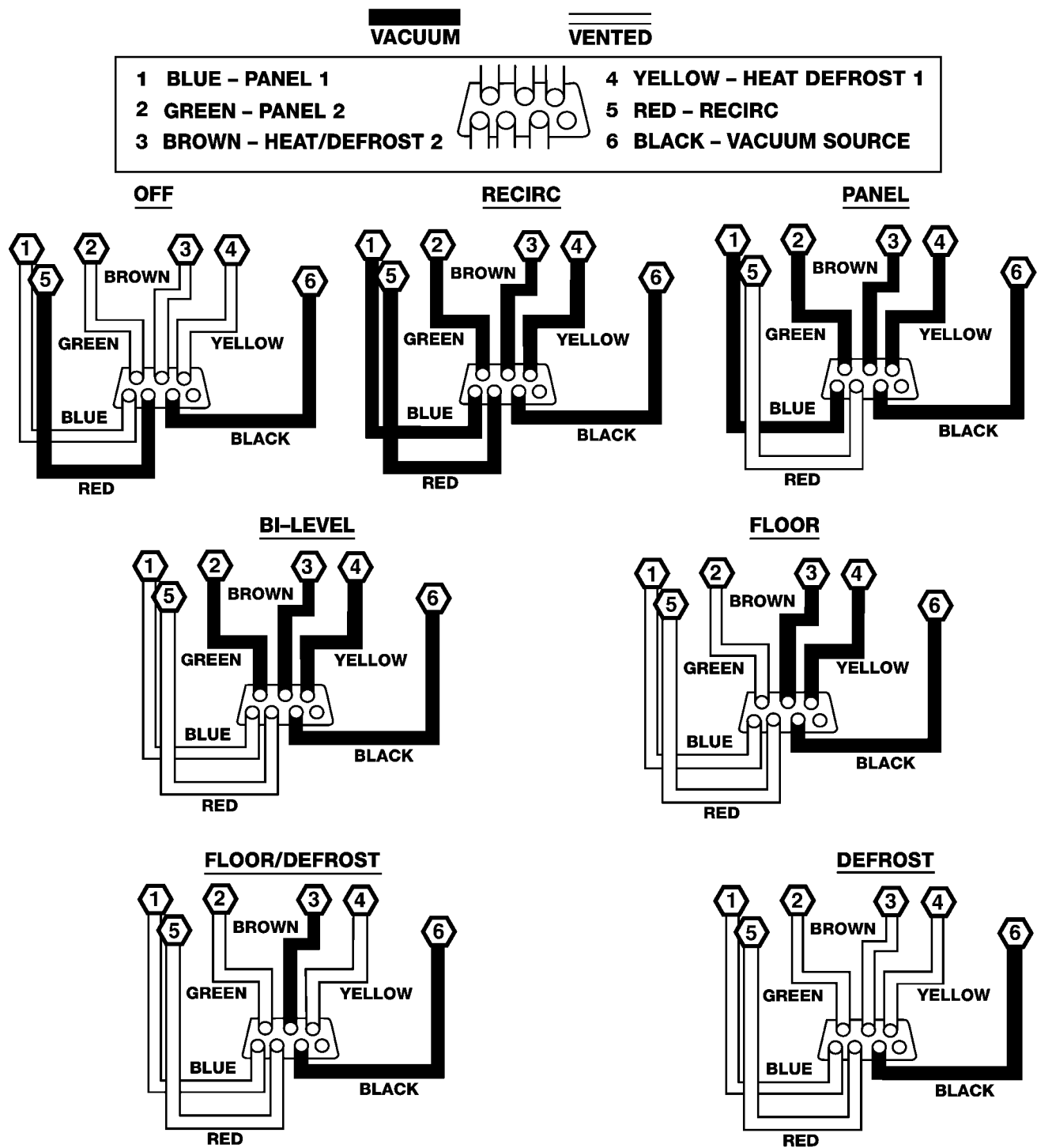
J9324-60

**Fig. 2 VACUUM CIRCUIT TEST**

(5) Connect the test set hose or probe to the open end of the leaking circuit. The test set gauge should return to the 27 kPa (8 in. Hg.) setting shortly after each connection is made. If OK, replace the faulty disconnected component. If not OK, go to Step 6.

(6) To locate a leak in a vacuum line, leave one end of the line plugged and connect the test set hose or probe to the other end. Run your fingers slowly along the line while watching the test set gauge. The vacuum reading will fluctuate when your fingers contact the source of the leak. To repair the vacuum line, cut out the leaking section of the line. Then, insert the loose ends of the line into a suitable length of 3 millimeter (1/8-inch) inside diameter rubber hose.

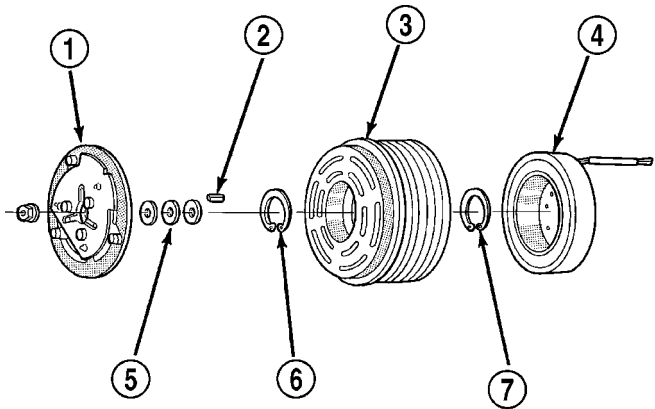




## A/C COMPRESSOR CLUTCH

### DESCRIPTION

The compressor clutch assembly consists of a stationary electromagnetic coil, a hub bearing and pulley assembly, and a clutch plate (Fig. 4). The electromagnetic coil unit and the hub bearing and pulley assembly are each retained on the nose of the compressor front housing with snap rings. The clutch plate is keyed to the compressor shaft and secured with a bolt.



J9524-33

**Fig. 4 COMPRESSOR CLUTCH - TYPICAL**

- 1 - CLUTCH PLATE
- 2 - SHAFT KEY
- 3 - PULLEY
- 4 - COIL
- 5 - CLUTCH SHIMS
- 6 - SNAP RING
- 7 - SNAP RING

### OPERATION

The compressor clutch components provide the means to engage and disengage the compressor from the engine serpentine accessory drive belt. When the clutch coil is energized, it magnetically draws the clutch into contact with the pulley and drives the compressor shaft. When the coil is not energized, the pulley freewheels on the clutch hub bearing, which is part of the pulley. The compressor clutch and coil are the only serviced parts on the compressor.

The compressor clutch engagement is controlled by several components: the a/c switch on the a/c heater control panel, the Automatic Zone Control (AZC) control module (if the vehicle is so equipped), the evaporator probe, the a/c high pressure transducer, the a/c compressor clutch relay, the body control module (BCM) and the Powertrain Control Module (PCM). The PCM may delay compressor clutch engagement for up to thirty seconds. Refer to Electronic Control Modules for more information on the PCM controls.

### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - COMPRESSOR CLUTCH COIL

For circuit descriptions and diagrams, refer to the appropriate wiring diagrams. The battery must be fully-charged before performing the following tests. Refer to Battery for more information.

(1) Connect an ammeter (0 to 10 ampere scale) in series with the clutch coil terminal. Use a voltmeter (0 to 20 volt scale) with clip-type leads for measuring the voltage across the battery and the compressor clutch coil.

(2) With the a/c heater mode control switch in any a/c mode, the a/c heater control a/c switch in the ON position, and the blower motor switch in the lowest speed position, start the engine and run it at normal idle.

(3) The compressor clutch coil voltage should read within 0.2 volts of the battery voltage. If there is voltage at the clutch coil, but the reading is not within 0.2 volts of the battery voltage, test the clutch coil feed circuit for excessive voltage drop and repair as required. If there is no voltage reading at the clutch coil, use a DRBIII® scan tool and the appropriate diagnostic information for testing of the compressor clutch circuit. The following components must be checked and repaired as required before you can complete testing of the clutch coil:

- Fuses in the junction block and the Power Distribution Center (PDC)
- A/C heater mode control switch
- A/C compressor clutch relay
- A/C high pressure transducer
- A/C evaporator probe
- Powertrain Control Module (PCM)
- Body Control Module (BCM)

(4) The compressor clutch coil is acceptable if the current draw measured at the clutch coil is 2.0 to 3.9 amperes with the electrical system voltage at 11.5 to 12.5 volts. This should only be checked with the work area temperature at 21° C (70° F). If system voltage is more than 12.5 volts, add electrical loads by turning on electrical accessories until the system voltage drops below 12.5 volts.

(a) If the clutch coil current reading is four amperes or more, the coil is shorted and should be replaced.

(b) If the clutch coil current reading is zero, the coil is open and should be replaced.

## A/C COMPRESSOR CLUTCH (Continued)

**STANDARD PROCEDURE - COMPRESSOR CLUTCH BREAK-IN**

After a new compressor clutch has been installed, cycle the compressor clutch approximately twenty times (five seconds on, then five seconds off). During this procedure, set the A/C Heater control in the Recirculation Mode, the A/C button in the on position, the blower motor switch in the highest speed position, and the engine speed at 1500 to 2000 rpm. This procedure (burnishing) will seat the opposing friction surfaces and provide a higher compressor clutch torque capability.

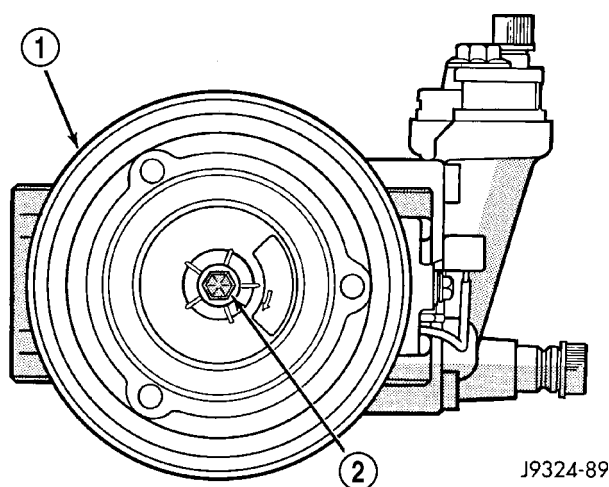
**REMOVAL**

The refrigerant system can remain fully-charged during compressor clutch, pulley, or coil replacement. The compressor clutch can be serviced in the vehicle.

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Remove the serpentine drive belt. Refer to Cooling for the procedures.

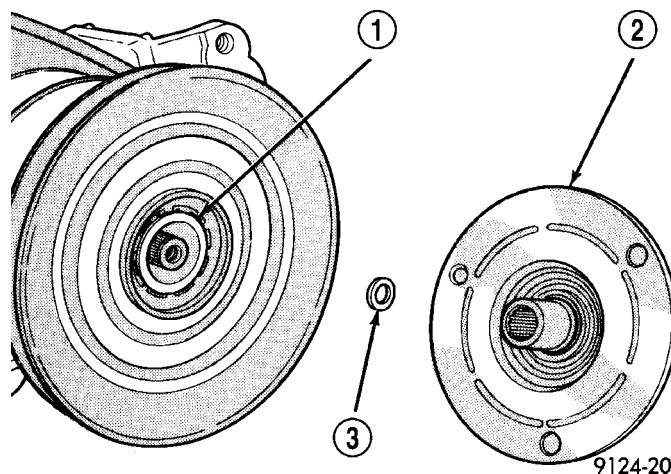
(3) Remove the bolt that secures the compressor clutch to the compressor shaft (Fig. 5). A band-type oil filter wrench may be used to secure the clutch during bolt removal.

**Fig. 5 COMPRESSOR SHAFT BOLT**

- 1 - COMPRESSOR CLUTCH PLATE
- 2 - COMPRESSOR SHAFT BOLT

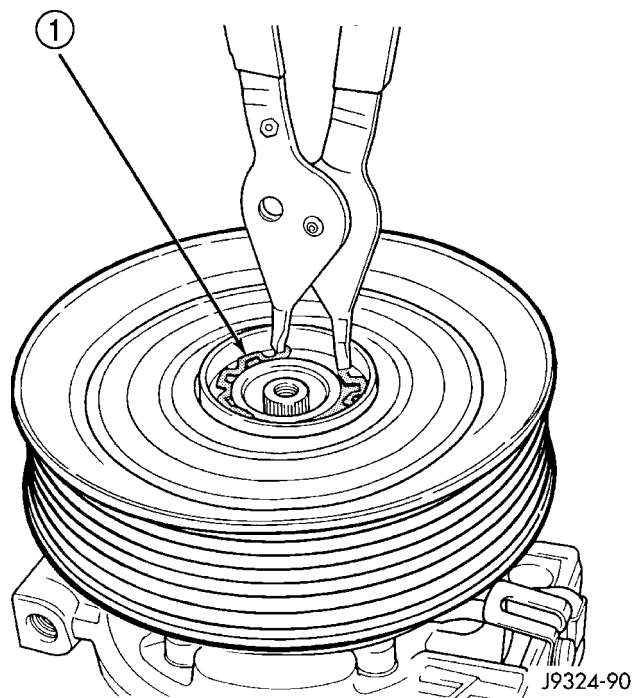
(4) Tap the clutch plate with a plastic mallet to release it from the splines on the compressor shaft. Remove the clutch plate and shim(s) from the compressor shaft (Fig. 6).

**CAUTION:** Do not pry between the clutch plate assembly and the pulley to remove it from the compressor shaft. Prying may damage the clutch plate assembly.

**Fig. 6 CLUTCH PLATE AND SHIM(S)**

- 1 - COMPRESSOR SHAFT
- 2 - CLUTCH PLATE
- 3 - CLUTCH PLATE SHIM

(5) Remove the external snap ring that secures the compressor clutch pulley to the nose of the compressor front housing with snap ring pliers (Special Tool C-4574) and slide the pulley assembly off of the compressor (Fig. 7).

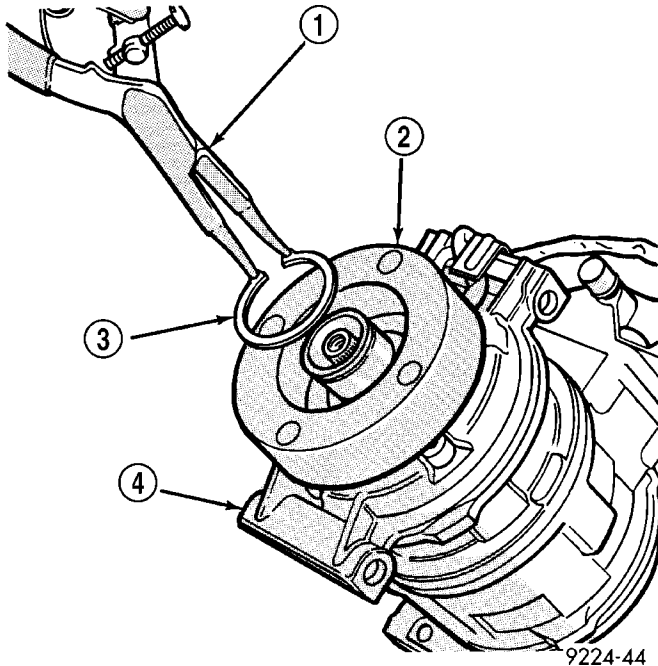
**Fig. 7 PULLEY SNAP RING**

- 1 - SNAP RING

## A/C COMPRESSOR CLUTCH (Continued)

(6) Remove the screw and retainer from the clutch coil lead wire harness on the compressor front housing.

(7) Remove the external snap ring that secures the compressor clutch coil to the nose of the compressor front housing with snap ring pliers and slide the coil assembly off of the compressor (Fig. 8).



**Fig. 8 CLUTCH COIL SNAP RING**

- 1 - SNAP RING PLIERS
- 2 - CLUTCH COIL
- 3 - SNAP RING
- 4 - COMPRESSOR

## INSPECTION

Examine the friction surfaces of the clutch pulley and the clutch plate for wear. The pulley and plate should be replaced if there is excessive wear or scoring.

If the friction surfaces are oily, inspect the shaft and nose area of the compressor for refrigerant oil. Remove the felt wick from around the shaft inside the nose of the compressor front housing. If the felt is saturated with refrigerant oil, the compressor shaft seal is leaking and the compressor must be replaced.

Check the clutch pulley bearing for roughness or excessive leakage of grease. Replace the bearing, if required.

## INSTALLATION

(1) Align the dowel pin on the back of the clutch field coil with the hole in the compressor front housing and press the field coil into place over the nose of the compressor.

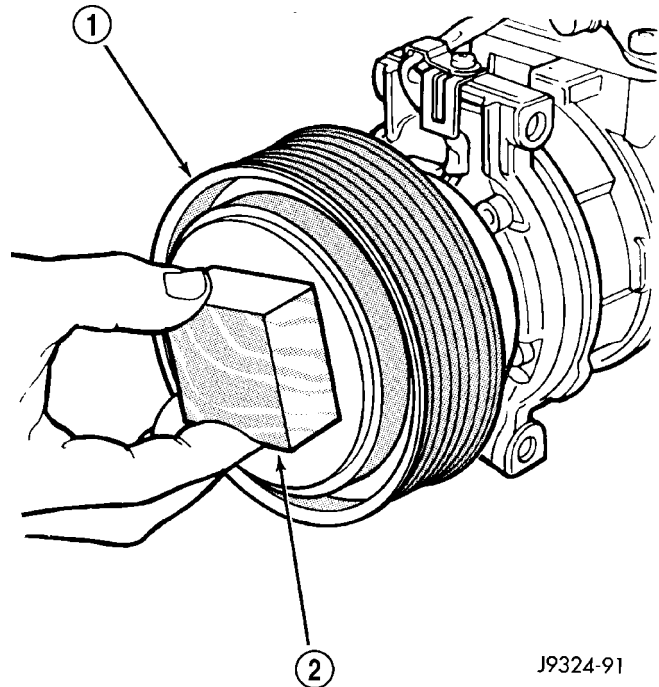
(2) Install the clutch coil lead wire harness retaining clip on the compressor front housing and tighten the retaining screw.

(3) Install the clutch field coil and snap ring with snap ring pliers (Special Tool C-4574). The bevel side of the snap ring must be facing outward. Also, both eyelets of the snap ring must be to the right or left of the pin on the compressor. Press in on the snap ring to be certain that it is properly seated in the groove.

**CAUTION:** If the snap ring is not fully seated in the groove it will vibrate out, resulting in a clutch failure and severe damage to the front housing of the compressor.

(4) Install the pulley assembly onto the compressor. If necessary, place a block of wood on the friction surface and tap gently with a hammer (Fig. 9).

**CAUTION:** Do not mar the pulley friction surface.



**Fig. 9 PULLEY ASSEMBLY INSTALL**

- 1 - PULLEY ASSEMBLY
- 2 - WOOD BLOCK

(5) Install the pulley assembly retaining snap ring (bevel side outward) with snap ring pliers (Special Tool C-4574). Press in on the snap ring to be certain that it is properly seated in the groove.

(6) If the original clutch plate assembly and pulley assembly are to be reused, the old shim(s) can be used. If not, place a stack of shim(s) equal to the old shim(s) on the shaft against the shoulder.

(7) Install the clutch plate assembly onto the shaft.



## A/C COMPRESSOR CLUTCH (Continued)

(8) With the clutch plate assembly tight against the shim(s), measure the air gap between the clutch plate and the pulley face with feeler gauges. The air gap should be between 0.35 to 0.65 millimeter (0.014 to 0.026 inch). If the proper air gap is not obtained, add or subtract shims as needed until the desired air gap is obtained.

(9) Install the compressor shaft bolt. Tighten the bolt to 13 N·m (115 in. lbs.).

**NOTE:** The shims may compress after tightening the shaft bolt. Check the air gap in four or more places to verify the air gap is still correct. Spin the pulley before performing a final check of the air gap.

(10) To complete the installation, (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING/A/C COMPRESSOR - INSTALLATION)

## A/C COMPRESSOR CLUTCH RELAY

## DESCRIPTION

The compressor clutch relay is a International Standards Organization (ISO) micro-relay. The terminal designations and functions are the same as a conventional ISO relay. However, the micro-relay terminal orientation (footprint) is different, the current capacity is lower, and the relay case dimensions are smaller than those of the conventional ISO relay.

## OPERATION

The compressor clutch relay is a electromechanical device that switches battery current to the compressor clutch coil when the Powertrain Control Module (PCM) grounds the coil side of the relay. The PCM responds to inputs from the a/c compressor switch on the a/c heater control panel, the Automatic Zone Control (AZC) control module (if the vehicle is so equipped), the a/c fin probe, and the a/c high pressure transducer. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/CONTROLS/A/C COMPRESSOR CLUTCH RELAY - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING)

The compressor clutch relay is located in the Power Distribution Center (PDC) in the engine compartment. Refer to the PDC label for relay identification and location.

The compressor clutch relay cannot be repaired and, if faulty or damaged, it must be replaced.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - A/C COMPRESSOR CLUTCH RELAY

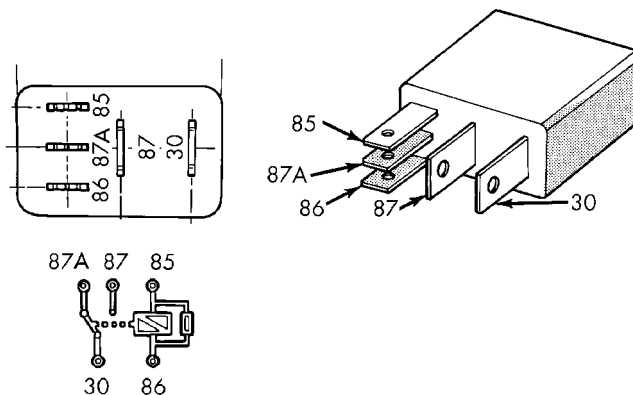
For circuit descriptions and diagrams, refer to the appropriate wiring information.

The compressor clutch relay (Fig. 10) is located in the Power Distribution Center (PDC). Refer to the PDC label for relay identification and location. Remove the relay from the PDC to perform the following tests:

(1) A relay in the de-energized position should have continuity between terminals 87A and 30, and no continuity between terminals 87 and 30. If OK, go to Step 2. If not OK, replace the faulty relay.

(2) Resistance between terminals 85 and 86 (electromagnet) should be  $75 \pm 5$  ohms. If OK, go to Step 3. If not OK, replace the faulty relay.

(3) Connect a battery to terminals 85 and 86. There should now be continuity between terminals 30 and 87, and no continuity between terminals 87A and 30. If OK, see the Relay Circuit Test procedure in this group. If not OK, replace the faulty relay.



**Fig. 10 A/C COMPRESSOR CLUTCH RELAY**

30 - COMMON FEED  
85 - COIL GROUND  
86 - COIL BATTERY  
87 - NORMALLY OPEN  
87A - NORMALLY CLOSED

## RELAY CIRCUIT TEST

For circuit descriptions and diagrams, refer to the appropriate wiring information..

(1) The relay common feed terminal cavity (30) is connected to fused battery feed. There should be battery voltage at the cavity for relay terminal 30 at all times. If OK, go to Step 2. If not OK, repair the open circuit to the fuse in the PDC as required.

(2) The relay normally closed terminal cavity (87A) is not used in this application. Go to Step 3.

(3) The relay normally open terminal cavity (87) is connected to the compressor clutch coil. There should be continuity between this cavity and the A/C compressor clutch relay output circuit cavity of the compressor clutch coil wire harness connector. If OK, go to Step 4. If not OK, repair the open circuit as required.

(4) The relay coil battery terminal (86) is connected to the fused ignition switch output (run/start) circuit. There should be battery voltage at the cavity

## A/C COMPRESSOR CLUTCH RELAY (Continued)

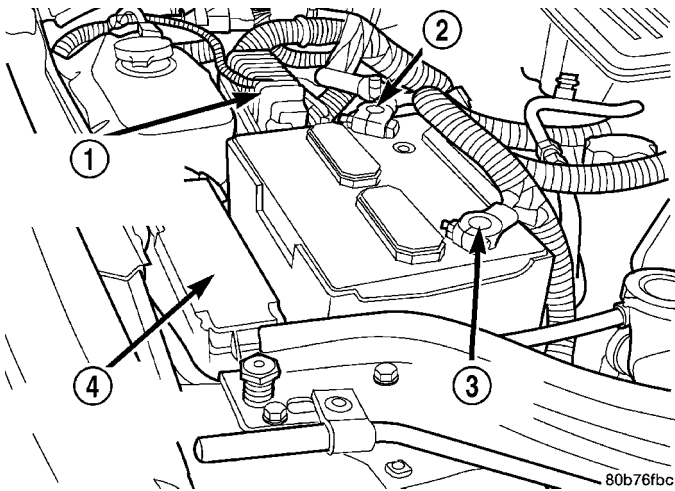
for relay terminal 86 with the ignition switch in the On position. If OK, go to Step 5. If not OK, repair the open circuit to the fuse in the junction block as required.

(5) The coil ground terminal cavity (85) is switched to ground through the Powertrain Control Module (PCM). There should be continuity between this cavity and the A/C compressor clutch relay control circuit cavity of the PCM wire harness connector C (gray) at all times. If not OK, repair the open circuit as required.

## REMOVAL

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Remove the cover from the Power Distribution Center (PDC) (Fig. 11).



**Fig. 11 POWER DISTRIBUTION CENTER (PDC)**

- 1 - TRANSMISSION CONTROL MODULE (TCM)
- 2 - NEGATIVE CABLE
- 3 - POSITIVE CABLE
- 4 - POWER DISTRIBUTION CENTER (PDC)

(3) Refer to the label on the PDC for compressor clutch relay identification and location.

(4) Unplug the compressor clutch relay from the PDC.

## INSTALLATION

(1) Install the compressor clutch relay by aligning the relay terminals with the cavities in the PDC and pushing the relay firmly into place.

(2) Install the PDC cover.

(3) Connect the battery negative cable.

(4) Test the relay operation.

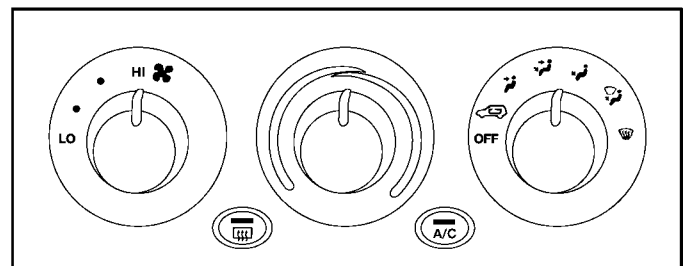
## A/C HEATER CONTROL

## DESCRIPTION

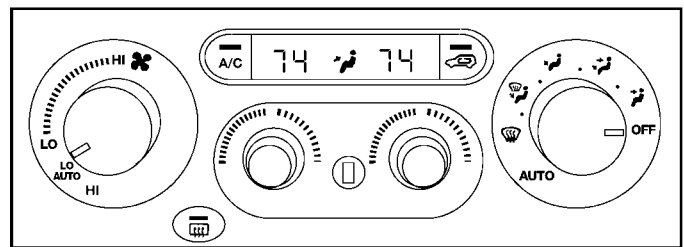
The manual temperature control HVAC system uses a combination of electrical, and vacuum controls. The Automatic Zone Control (AZC) HVAC system uses only electrical controls. These controls provide the vehicle operator with a number of setting options to help control the climate and comfort within the vehicle. Refer to the owner's manual in the vehicle glove box for more information on the suggested operation and use of these controls.

Both a/c heater control panels are located on the instrument panel inboard of the steering column and below the radio (Fig. 12). Both control panels contain rotary-type temperature control knob(s), a rotary-type mode control switch knob, a rotary-type blower motor speed switch knob and an air conditioning compressor push button switch. The rear window defogger push button switch is also located on a/c heater control panel. The AZC control panel also features a recirculation push button switch and a vacuum fluorescent display area.

## MANUAL AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM



## AUTOMATIC ZONE CONTROL SYSTEM



**Fig. 12 A/C HEATER CONTROL PANELS**

## OPERATION

The AZC control module uses infrared sensing technology to control occupant comfort levels, not the actual passenger compartment air temperature. Dual infrared sensors mounted in the face of the control unit independently measure the surface temperature to maintain customer-perceived comfort temperature under changing conditions. Dual Zone temperature control provides wide side-to-side variation in comfort



## A/C HEATER CONTROL (Continued)

temperature to exceed the needs of either front seat occupant. This sensing system replaces interior air temperature and solar sensors used to approximate direct sensing control through complex control programs.

Both the manual A/C Heater control panel and the AZC control panel are serviced only as complete units and cannot be repaired. If faulty or damaged, the entire control panel unit must be replaced.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - AUTOMATIC ZONE CONTROL SYSTEM

The Automatic Zone Control (AZC) control module has a system self-diagnostic mode which continuously monitors various parameters during normal system operation. If a system fault is detected, a current and historical fault is recorded. When the current fault is cleared, the historical fault remains until reset (manually or automatically). Both the current and historical fault codes can be accessed through either the front panel, or over the Programmable Communications Interface (PCI) bus using a DRBIII® scan tool, and the appropriate diagnostic information.

The AZC control module is capable of three different types of self-diagnostic tests, as follows:

- Fault Code Tests
- Input Circuit Tests
- Output Circuit/Actuator Tests

The information that follows describes:

- How to read the self-diagnostic display
- How to enter the AZC control module self-diagnostic test mode

- How to select the self-diagnostic test types
- How to perform the different tests

## ENTERING THE AZC SELF-DIAGNOSTIC MODE

To enter the AZC self-diagnostic mode, perform the following:

(1) Depress the a/c and recirc buttons at the same time and hold. Rotate the left temperature control knob clockwise (CW) one detent.

(2) If you continue to keep the a/c and recirc buttons depressed, the AZC control module will perform a Segment Test of the Vacuum Fluorescent (VF) display. In the Segment Test you should see all of the display segments illuminate as long as both buttons are held. If a display segment fails to illuminate, the vacuum fluorescent display is faulty and the a/c heater control must be replaced.

(3) After viewing the Segment Test, release the A/C and Recirc buttons and the display will clear momentarily. **If a 0 is displayed, then no faults are set in the system.** Should there be any faults, either "current" or "historical", all fault codes will be displayed in ascending numerical sequence (note no effort is made to display fault codes in chronological order). Each fault code is displayed for one second before the next code is displayed. Once all fault codes have been displayed, the system will then repeat the fault code numbers. This will continue until the left side set temperature control is moved at least one detent position in the CW direction or the ignition is turned "OFF".

## A/C HEATER CONTROL (Continued)

**FAULT CODE TESTS**

Fault codes are two-digit numbers that identify a circuit that is malfunctioning. There are two different kinds of fault codes.

1. **Current Fault Codes** - Current means the fault is present right now. There are two types of current faults: input faults, and system faults.

2. **Historical Fault Codes** - Historical or stored means that the fault occurred previously, but is not present right now. A majority of historical fault codes are caused by intermittent wire harness or wire harness connector problems.

CURRENT FAULT CODES	
Input faults	01 = IR thermister circuit open
	02 = IR thermister circuit shorted
	03 = Fan pot shorted
	04 = Fan pot open
	05 = Mode pot shorted
	06 = Mode pot open
	07 = IR sensor delta too large
	08 = Reserved
	09 = Reserved
	10 = One of four motor drivers has drive "A" shorted to ground
	11 = Engine air intake temperature Buss message missing
	12 = Country code Buss message missing

CURRENT FAULT CODES	
System Faults	13 = Mode motor not responding
	14 = AI (Recirc) motor not responding
	15 = Left temperature door not responding
	16 = Right temperature door not responding
	17 = Mode door travel range too small
	18 = Mode door travel range too large
	19 = AI (Recirc) door travel too small
	20 = AI (Recirc) door travel too large
	21 = Left temperature door travel too small
	22 = Left temperature door travel too large
	23 = Right temperature door travel too small
	24 = Right temperature door travel too large
	25 = Calibration check sum error
	26 = Engine coolant temp bus message missing
	27 = Vehicle speed bus message missing
	28 = Engine RPM bus message missing
	29 = OAT bus message missing
	30 = Display intensity bus message missing
	31 = VIN number bus message missing
	32 = Raw OAT bus message missing

## A/C HEATER CONTROL (Continued)

HISTORICAL FAULT CODES	
Input faults	33 = IR thermister circuit was open
	34 = IR thermister circuit was shorted
	35 = Fan pot was shorted
	36 = Fan pot was open
	37 = Mode pot was shorted
	38 = Mode pot was open
	39 = IR sensor delta was too large
	40 = Reserved
	41 = Reserved
	42 = One of four motor drivers had drive "A" shorted to ground
	43 = Engine air intake temperature Buss message missing
	44 = Country code Buss message missing
System Faults	45 = Mode motor was not responding
	46 = AI (Recirc) motor was not responding
	47 = Left temperature door was not responding
	48 = Right temperature door was not responding
	49 = Mode door travel range too small
	50 = Mode door travel range too large
	51 = AI (Recirc) door travel range too small
	52 = AI (Recirc) door travel range too large
	53 = Left temperature door travel too small
	54 = Left temperature door travel too large
	55 = Right temperature door travel too small
	56 = Right temperature door travel too large
	57 = Calibration check sum error
	58 = Engine coolant temp bus message missing
	59 = Vehicle speed bus message missing
	60 = Engine RPM bus message missing
	61 = OAT bus message missing
	62 = Display intensity bus message missing
	63 = VIN number bus message missing
	64 = Raw OAT bus message was missing
	65 = Reserved
	66 = Reserved
	67 = Reserved

**NOTE:** A battery disconnect will erase all faults stored in Random Access Memory (RAM) of the AZC control module. It is recommended that all faults be recorded before they are erased.

## RETRIEVING FAULT CODES

(1) To begin the fault code tests, depress the A/C and Recirc buttons at the same time and rotate the left temperature control knob clockwise (CW) one detent, then release the push-button.

## A/C HEATER CONTROL (Continued)

(2) **If there are no fault codes, the "00" display value will remain in the VF window.** Should there be any codes, each will be displayed for one second in ascending numerical sequence (note: no effort is made to display faults in the order they occurred). The left side set temperature display will be blanked and the right side set temperature display will indicate current and historical codes (8 historical max) presently active. Once all codes have been displayed, the system will repeat the fault code numbers. This will continue until the left side set temperature control is moved at least one detent position in either direction, by pressing both the A/C and Recirc buttons at the same time, or the ignition is turned off. Record all of the fault codes, then see the Current and Historical Fault Code charts for the descriptions.

## CLEARING FAULT CODES

Current faults cannot be electronically cleared. Repair must be made to the system to eliminate the fault causing code. Historical fault codes can be cleared manually, or automatically. To clear a historical fault manually, depress and hold either the A/C or Recirc button for at least three seconds while the display is in the fault code mode of operation. Historical fault codes are cleared automatically when the corresponding current fault code has been cleared, and has remained cleared for a number of ignition cycles. The faults have been cleared when two horizontal bars appear in the Test Selector display.

## EXITING SELF-DIAGNOSTIC MODE

The self-diagnostic mode can be exited by pressing both the A/C and Recirc buttons at the same time, or turning off the ignition.

## MONITOR CURRENT PARAMETERS

While in the display fault code mode of operation, current system parameters can also be monitored

and/or forced. Rotating the left side set temperature control clockwise will increase the pointer number while rotating the control counter clockwise will decrease the pointer number. Rotating the right set temperature control will have no impact on pointer value or the value of the parameter being monitored. Once the desired pointer number has been selected, pressing either the AC or Recirc buttons will display the current value of the selected parameter. **The right side set temperature display is only capable of displaying only values ranging from 0 to 99, the left side set temperature display is used for values greater than 99. If the value is less than 99, the left side set temperature display remains blanked.** While a parameter is being overridden, the system will continue to function normally except for the parameter which is being manually controlled.

For values < 0, the "G" segment in the left side set temperature Most Significant Digit (MSD)(or left-most number in the pair) will be used to indicate a negative number. For values between -01 to -99 the Least Significant Digit (LSD)(or right-most number of the pair) in the left side set temperature will remain blank. System control of parameter being displayed can be overridden by rotating the right set temperature control in either direction. Rotating the right temperature control in the CW direction, the selected parameter value is overridden and incremented beginning at the value which was being displayed. Rotating the right temperature control in the CCW direction, the selected parameter value is overridden and decremented beginning at the value which was being displayed. The rate at which incrementing and decrement occurs is one unit value per set temperature detent position.

## A/C HEATER CONTROL (Continued)

HVAC SYSTEM POINTER		
Pointer Number	DESCRIPTION	Value Displayed
01	A/C Enable	0 or 1
		0 = disabled 1 = enabled
02	Final fan PWM duty cycle	0 to 255
	While the value of this pointer is being displayed, turning the right set temperature control either direction will manually control the value. CW = increase; CCW = decrease	
03	Left NPRG *	0 to 255
* NPRG equals a calculated number based on outside and in-vehicle conditions. This value is used by the AZC to position the Mode motor, Air Inlet motor, and control blower motor speed.		
	While the value of this pointer is being displayed, turning the right set temperature control either direction will manually control the value. CW = increase; CCW = decrease	
04	Right NPRG	0 to 255
	While the value of this pointer is being displayed, turning the right set temperature control either direction will manually control the value. CW = increase; CCW = decrease	
05	Avg NPRG	0 TO 255
	While the value of this pointer is being displayed, turning the right set temperature control either direction will manually control the value. CW = increase; CCW = decrease	
06	Primary control side	0 or 1
		0 = left 1 = right
07	EE Check sum (calculated)	0 to 255
08	Target intensity (in % ON time)	0 to 255

HVAC SYSTEM POINTER		
	While the value of this pointer is being displayed, turning the right set temperature control either direction will manually control the value. CW = increase; CCW = decrease	
09	Not Used	0 to 0
10	Not Used	0 to 0
11	Right NINC *	0 to 255
* NINC equals a calculated number based on the IR sensor and IR thermistor values used to calculate the NPRG.		
	While the value of this pointer is being displayed, turning the right set temperature control either direction will manually control the value. CW = increase; CCW = decrease	
12	Left NINC	0 to 255
	While the value of this pointer is being displayed, turning the right set temperature control either direction will manually control the value. CW = increase; CCW = decrease	
13	Right NMIX *	0 to 255
* NMIX equals a calculated number based on outside and in-vehicle conditions used by the AZC to position the Temperature motors.		
	While the value of this pointer is being displayed, turning the right set temperature control either direction will manually control the value. CW = increase; CCW = decrease	
14	Left NMIX	0 to 255
	While the value of this pointer is being displayed, turning the right set temperature control either direction will manually control the value. CW = increase; CW = decrease	
15	Not Used	0 to 0
16	Not Used	0 to 0
17	Reserved	
18	Reserved	
19	Reserved	

## A/C HEATER CONTROL (Continued)

MODE VALUE POINTER		
Pointer Number	DESCRIPTION	Value Displayed
20	mode range in delta counts	0 to 9999
21	Current mode position (in counts)	0 to 9999
22	mode target position in ratio	0 to 255
	While the value of this pointer is being displayed, turning the right set temperature control either direction will manually control the value. CW = increase; CCW = decrease	
23	mode target position in counts	0 to 9999
24	Not Used	0 to 0
25	number of valve moves since last index	0 to 9999
26	Not Used	0 to 0
27	Not Used	0 to 0
28	Not Used	0 to 0
29	mode motor state	0 to 5
	0 = in position, 1 = moving toward panel, 2 = moving toward defrost, 3 = searching range, 4 = stalled moving toward panel, 5 = stalled moving toward defrost	

LEFT SIDE TEMPERATURE POINTER		
Pointer Number	DESCRIPTION	Value Displayed
30	Left side temp range in delta counts	0 to 9999
31	Current left side temp position (in counts)	0 to 9999
32	Left side temp target position (in ratio)	0 to 255
	While the value of this pointer is being displayed, turning the right set temperature control either direction will manually control the value. CW = increase; CCW = decrease	
33	Left side temp target in counts	0 to 9999
34	Not used	0 to 0

LEFT SIDE TEMPERATURE POINTER		
35	number of valve moves since last index	0 to 9999
36	Not used	0 to 0
37	Not used	0 to 0
38	Not used	0 to 0
39	Left side temp motor state	0 to 5
	0 = in position, 1 = moving toward panel, 2 = moving toward defrost, 3 = searching range, 4 = stalled moving toward panel, 5 = stalled moving toward defrost	

RIGHT SIDE TEMPERATURE POINTER		
Pointer Number	DESCRIPTION	Value Displayed
40	Right side temp range in delta counts	0 to 9999
41	Current right side temp position (in counts)	0 to 9999
42	Right side temp target position (in ratio)	0 to 255
	While the value of this pointer is being displayed, turning the right set temperature control either direction will manually control the value. CW = increase; CCW = decrease	
43	Right side temp target in counts	0 to 9999
44	Not used	0 to 0
45	number of valve moves since last index	0 to 9999
46	Not used	0 to 0
47	Not used	0 to 0
48	Not used	0 to 0
49	Right side temp motor state	0 to 5
	0 = in position, 1 = moving toward panel, 2 = moving toward defrost, 3 = searching range, 4 = stalled moving toward panel, 5 = stalled moving toward defrost	



## A/C HEATER CONTROL (Continued)

AIR INLET POINTER		
Pointer Number	DESCRIPTION	Value Displayed
50	Air inlet range (in counts)	0 to 9999
51	Current air inlet position (in counts)	0 to 9999
52	Air inlet target position (in ratio)	0 to 255
	While the value of this pointer is being displayed, turning the right set temperature control either direction will manually control the value. CW = increase; CCW = decrease	
53	Air inlet target in counts	0 to 9999
54	Not used	0 to 0
55	number of motor moves since last index	0 to 9999
56	Not used	0 to 0
57	Not used	0 to 0
58	Not used	0 to 0
59	Air inlet motor state	0 to 5
	0 = in position, 1 = moving toward panel, 2 = moving toward defrost, 3 = searching range, 4 = stalled moving toward panel, 5 = stalled moving toward defrost	
60	Reserved	
61	Actual Outside Air Temp (in degrees F)	-40 to 215
62	Not used	0 to 0
63	Engine Intake Air Temperature (in degrees F)	-40 to 215
64	Vehicle speed in MPH	0 to 255
65	Engine RPM/100	-0 to 82
66	Engine Coolant Temp - 40 (in degrees F)	-40 to 215
67	Country Code	0 to 255
68	Not used	0 to 0
69	Not used	0 to 0

IR SENSOR POINTER		
Pointer Number	DESCRIPTION	Value Displayed
70	Thermistor temp (in degrees)	-40 to 215
71	Left side sensor A/D (filtered)	0 to 255
72	Right side sensor A/D (filtered)	0 to 255
73	Left side temp (in degrees F)	-40 to 140
74	Right side temp (in degrees F)	-40 to 140
75	Not used	0 to 0
76	Not used	0 to 0
77	Not used	0 to 0
78	Not used	0 to 0
79	Not used	0 to 0

IDENTIFICATION POINTER		
Pointer Number	DESCRIPTION	Value Displayed
80	ROM bit pattern number (digits 1,2,3 & 4)	0 to 9999
81	ROM bit pattern number (digits 5,6,7 & 8)	0 to 9999
82	CAL bit pattern number (digits 1,2,3 & 4)	0 to 9999
83	CAL bit pattern number (digits 5,6,7 & 8)	0 to 9999
84	Not used	0 to 0
85	Not used	0 to 0
86	Not used	0 to 0
87	Not used	0 to 0
88	Not used	0 to 0
89	Not used	0 to 0

## A/C HEATER CONTROL (Continued)

## OUTPUT CIRCUIT/ACTUATOR TESTS

In the Output Circuit/Actuator Test mode, the output circuits can be viewed, monitored, overridden, and tested. If a failure occurs in an output circuit, test the circuit by overriding the system. Test the actuator through its full range of operation.

(1) To begin the Output Circuit/Actuator Tests you must be in the Select Test mode.

(2) With a "00" value displayed in the Test Selector and no stick man, turn the rotary temperature control knob until the test number you are looking for appears in the Test Selector display. See the Circuit Testing charts for a listing of the test numbers, test items, test types, system tested, and displayed values.

(3) To see the output value, depress the a/c or recirc button. The values displayed will represent the output from the AZC control module.

(4) To enter the actuator test, depress the a/c or recirc button. Then, rotate the right temperature set knob to the desired position.

## REMOVAL

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN AN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

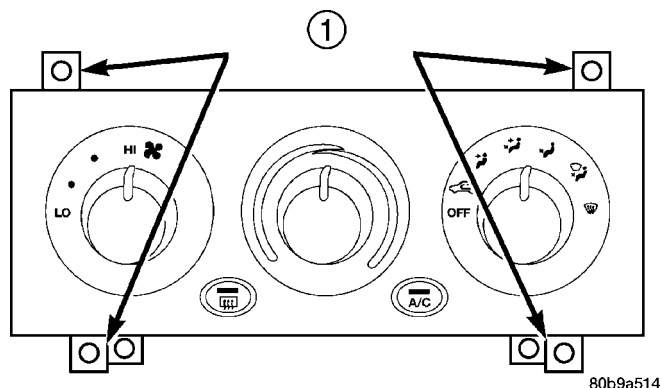
(2) Remove the center upper, and center lower bezels from the instrument panel. Refer to Instrument Panel System for the procedures.

(3) Remove the 4 screws that secure the a/c heater control to the instrument panel (Fig. 13).

(4) Pull the a/c heater control assembly away from the instrument panel far enough to access the connections on the back of the control.

(5) Unplug the wire and/or vacuum harness connectors from the back of the a/c heater control (Fig. 14).

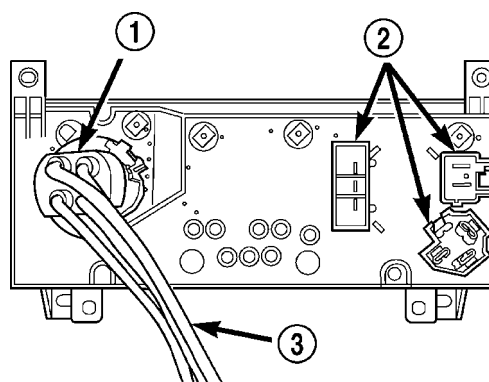
(6) Remove the a/c heater control from the instrument panel.



80b9a514

**Fig. 13 A/C HEATER CONTROL REMOVE/INSTALL**

1 - MOUNTING SCREW TABS



80b9a515

**Fig. 14 A/C HEATER CONTROL CONNECTIONS**

1 - MODE SWITCH  
2 - ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS  
3 - VACUUM HARNESS

## INSTALLATION

(1) Plug the wire harness and/or vacuum harness connectors into the back of the a/c heater control.

(2) Position the a/c heater control in the instrument panel and secure it with 4 screws. Tighten the screws to 2.2 N·m (20 in. lbs.).

(3) Reinstall the center upper, and center lower bezels onto the instrument panel. Refer to Instrument Panel System for the procedures.

(4) Connect the battery negative cable.

## A/C PRESSURE TRANSDUCER

### DESCRIPTION

The A/C pressure transducer is installed on a fitting located on the refrigerant discharge line near the condenser. An internally threaded hex fitting on the transducer connects it to the externally threaded Schrader-type fitting on the discharge line. A rubber O-ring seals the connection between the transducer and the discharge line fitting. Three terminals within a molded plastic connector receptacle on the top of the transducer connect it to the vehicle electrical system through a take out and connector of the headlamp and dash wire harness.

The A/C pressure transducer cannot be adjusted or repaired and if faulty or damaged, it must be replaced.

### OPERATION

The A/C pressure transducer monitors the pressures in the high side of the refrigerant system through its connection to a fitting on the discharge line. The transducer will change its internal resistance in response to the pressures it monitors. The Powertrain Control Module (PCM) provides a five volt reference signal and a sensor ground to the transducer, then monitors the output voltage of the transducer on a sensor return circuit to determine refrigerant pressure. The PCM is preprogrammed to respond to this and other sensor inputs by controlling the operation of the air conditioning compressor clutch and the radiator cooling fan to help optimize

air conditioning system performance and to protect the system components from damage. The A/C pressure transducer input to the PCM will also prevent the air conditioning compressor clutch from engaging when the ambient temperatures are below about 0.556° C (33° F) due to the pressure/temperature relationship of the refrigerant. The Schrader-type valve in the liquid line fitting permits the A/C pressure transducer to be removed or installed without disturbing the refrigerant in the system. The A/C pressure transducer is diagnosed using the DRBIII® scan tool. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information.

### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - A/C PRESSURE TRANSDUCER

The A/C pressure transducer is tested using a DRBIII® scan tool. Refer to the appropriate diagnostic information. Before testing the A/C pressure transducer, be certain that the transducer wire harness connection is clean of corrosion and properly connected. For the air conditioning system to operate, an A/C pressure transducer voltage reading between 0.7 and 4.56 volts is required. Voltage outside this range indicate a low or high refrigerant system pressure condition to the Powertrain Control Module (PCM). The PCM is programmed to respond to a low or high refrigerant system pressure by suppressing operation of the compressor. Refer to the A/C Pressure Transducer Voltage table for the possible condition indicated by the transducer voltage readings.

A/C PRESSURE TRANSDUCER VOLTAGE	
VOLTAGE	POSSIBLE INDICATION
0.0	1. NO SENSOR SUPPLY VOLTAGE FROM PCM. 2. SHORTED SENSOR CIRCUIT. 3. FAULTY TRANSDUCER
0.150 TO 0.450	1. AMBIENT TEMPERATURE BELOW 10° c (50° F). 2. LOW REFRIGERANT SYSTEM PRESSURE.
0.451 TO 4.519	1. NORMAL REFRIGERANT SYSTEM PRESSURE.
4.520 TO 4.850	1. HIGH REFRIGERANT SYSTEM PRESSURE.
5.0	1. OPEN SENSOR CIRCUIT. 2. FAULTY TRANSDUCER.

## A/C PRESSURE TRANSDUCER (Continued)

## REMOVAL

**WARNING:** Transducer can be removed without recovering the system, but some loss of refrigerant can be expected (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - WARNING) and (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - CAUTION).

- (1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.
- (2) Disconnect the headlamp and dash wire harness connector for the A/C pressure transducer from the transducer connector receptacle.
- (3) Using an open end wrench, unscrew the A/C pressure transducer from the fitting on the discharge line.
- (4) Remove the seal from the A/C pressure transducer fitting and discard.

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Lubricate a new O-ring seal with clean refrigerant oil and install it on the A/C pressure transducer fitting.
- (2) Using an open end wrench, install and tighten the A/C pressure transducer onto the fitting on the discharge line.
- (3) Reconnect the headlamp and dash wire harness connector for the A/C pressure transducer to the transducer connector receptacle.
- (4) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

## BLOWER MOTOR CONTROLLER

## DESCRIPTION

Models equipped with the optional Automatic Zone Control (AZC) system have a blower motor controller. The controller allows the selection of almost infinitely variable blower motor speeds. The controller is mounted to the HVAC housing, under the instrument panel and just inboard of the blower motor, in the same location used for the blower motor resistor on manual temperature control systems. It can be accessed without removing any other components.

## OPERATION

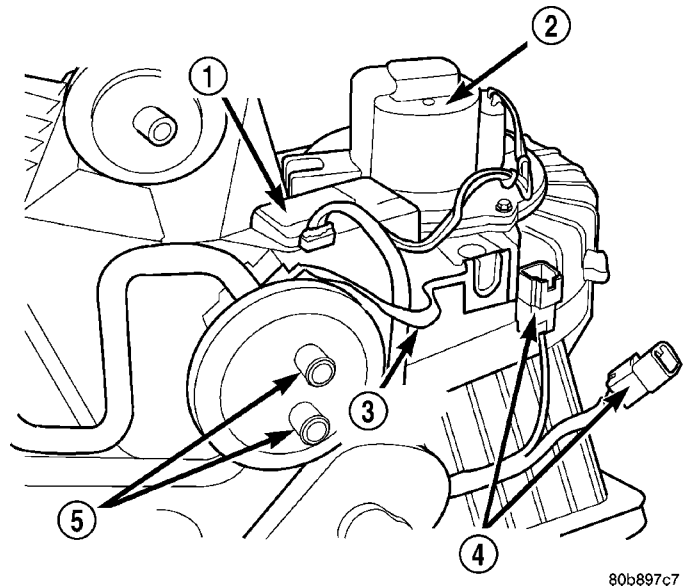
The blower motor controller output to the blower motor can be adjusted by the blower motor speed switch knob on the AZC A/C Heater control panel, or it can be adjusted automatically by the logic circuitry and programming of the AZC control module. In either case, the AZC control module sends the correct pulse width modulated signal to the blower motor

controller to obtain the selected or programmed blower motor speed.

The blower motor controller cannot be repaired and, if faulty or damaged, it must be replaced.

## REMOVAL

- (1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.
- (2) Depress locking tab and unplug the wire harness connector from the blower motor controller.
- (3) Depress locking tab and unplug the controller connector from the blower motor.
- (4) Remove the 2 screws that secure the blower motor controller to the HVAC housing.
- (5) Remove the blower motor controller from the HVAC housing (Fig. 15).



80b897c7

**Fig. 15 BLOWER MOTOR CONTROLLER REMOVE/INSTALL**

- 1 - BLOWER MOTOR CONTROLLER
- 2 - BLOWER MOTOR
- 3 - GROUND STRAP
- 4 - ELECTRICAL CONNECTORS
- 5 - HEATER CORE TUBES

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Install the blower motor controller in the HVAC housing. The housing is indexed to allow controller mounting in only one position. Tighten the mounting screws to 2.2 N·m (20 in. lbs.).
- (2) Plug in the wire harness connector to the blower motor controller.
- (3) Plug in the connector from the blower motor controller to the blower motor.
- (4) Connect the battery negative cable.

## BLOWER MOTOR RESISTOR BLOCK

### DESCRIPTION

Models with the standard manual temperature control system have a blower motor resistor. The blower motor resistor is mounted to the bottom of the HVAC housing, under the instrument panel and just inboard of the blower motor. It can be accessed for service without removing any other components.

### OPERATION

The resistor has multiple resistor wires, each of which will reduce the current flow to the blower motor to change the blower motor speed by changing the resistance in the blower motor ground path. The blower motor switch directs the ground path through the correct resistor wire to obtain the selected speed.

With the blower motor switch in the lowest speed position, the ground path for the motor is applied through all of the resistor wires. Each higher speed selected with the blower motor switch applies the blower motor ground path through fewer of the resistor wires, increasing the blower motor speed. When the blower motor switch is in the highest speed position, the blower motor resistor is bypassed and the blower motor receives a direct path to ground.

The blower motor resistor cannot be repaired and, if faulty or damaged, it must be replaced.

### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - BLOWER MOTOR RESISTOR BLOCK

For circuit descriptions and diagrams, refer to the appropriate wiring information.

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN AN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Unplug the wire harness connector from the blower motor resistor.

(3) Check for continuity between each of the blower motor switch input terminals of the resistor and the resistor output terminal. In each case there should be continuity. If OK, repair the wire harness circuits between the blower motor switch and the blower motor resistor or blower motor as required. If not OK, replace the faulty blower motor resistor.

### REMOVAL

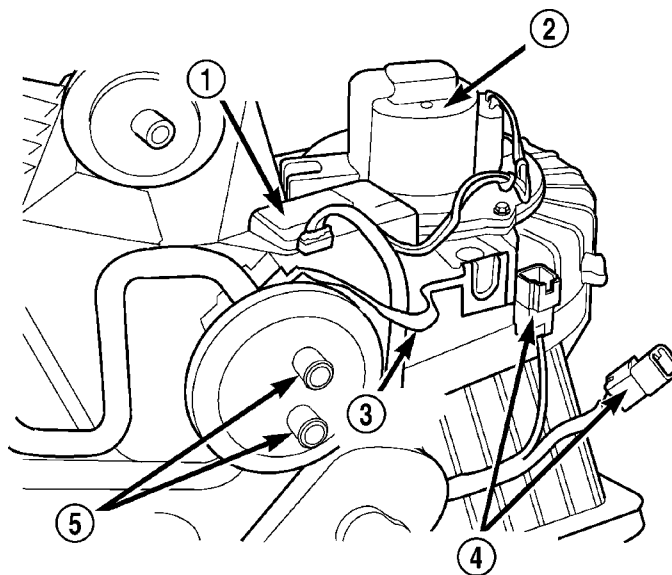
(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Depress locking tab and unplug the wire harness connector from the blower motor resistor.

(3) Depress locking tab and unplug the resistor connector from the blower motor.

(4) Remove the 2 screws that secure the blower motor resistor to the HVAC housing.

(5) Remove the blower motor resistor from the HVAC housing (Fig. 16).



80b897c7

**Fig. 16 BLOWER MOTOR RESISTOR REMOVE/INSTALL**

- 1 - BLOWER MOTOR RESISTOR
- 2 - BLOWER MOTOR
- 3 - GROUND STRAP - (If Equipped)
- 4 - ELECTRICAL CONNECTORS
- 5 - HEATER CORE TUBES

### INSTALLATION

(1) Install the blower motor resistor in the HVAC housing. The housing is indexed to allow mounting in only one position. Tighten the mounting screws to 2.2 N·m (20 in. lbs.).

(2) Plug in the wire harness connector to the blower motor resistor.

(3) Plug in the connector from the blower motor resistor to the blower motor.

(4) Connect the battery negative cable.



## BLOWER MOTOR SWITCH

### DESCRIPTION

The A/C Heater blower motor is controlled by a rotary-type blower motor switch, mounted in the A/C Heater control panel. On vehicles with manual temperature control systems, the switch allows the selection of four blower motor speeds, but will only operate with the ignition switch in the On position and the A/C Heater mode control switch in any position, except Off. On vehicles with the Automatic Zone Control (AZC) systems, the switch allows the selection of Lo Auto, Hi Auto, and ten speed settings between Lo and Hi.

### OPERATION

On manual temperature control systems, the blower motor switch is connected in series with the blower motor ground path through the a/c heater mode control switch. The blower motor switch directs this ground path to the blower motor through the blower motor resistor wires, or directly to the blower motor, as required to achieve the selected blower motor speed.

On AZC systems, the blower motor switch is just one of many inputs to the AZC control module. In the manual blower modes, the AZC control module adjusts the blower motor speed through the blower motor controller as required to achieve the selected blower switch position. In the auto blower modes, the AZC control assembly is programmed to select and adjust the blower motor speed through the blower motor controller as required to achieve and maintain the selected comfort level.

The blower motor switch cannot be repaired and, if faulty or damaged, it must be replaced. The switch is serviced only as a part of the a/c heater control assembly.

### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - BLOWER MOTOR SWITCH-MANUAL TEMPERATURE CONTROL SYSTEM

For circuit descriptions and diagrams, refer to the appropriate wiring information.

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG**

**SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN AN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Check for battery voltage at the fuse in the Power Distribution Center (PDC). If OK, go to Step 2. If not OK, repair the shorted circuit or component as required and replace the faulty fuse.

(2) Turn the ignition switch to the Off position. Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable. Remove the a/c heater control from the instrument panel. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/CONTROLS/A/C HEATER CONTROL - REMOVAL) Check for continuity between the ground circuit cavity of the a/c heater control wire harness connector and a good ground. There should be continuity. If OK, go to Step 3. If not OK, repair the open circuit to ground as required.

(3) With the a/c heater control wire harness connector unplugged, place the a/c heater mode control switch knob in any position except the Off position. Check for continuity between the ground circuit terminal and each of the blower motor driver circuit terminals of the a/c heater control as you move the blower motor switch knob to each of the four speed positions. There should be continuity at each driver circuit terminal in only one blower motor switch speed position. If OK, test and repair the blower driver circuits between the a/c heater control connector and the blower motor resistor as required. If not OK, replace the faulty a/c heater control unit.

### REMOVAL

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN AN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

The blower motor switch cannot be adjusted or repaired, and if faulty or damaged, the a/c heater control must be replaced. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/CONTROLS/A/C HEATER CONTROL - REMOVAL)



## IN-CAR TEMPERATURE SENSOR

### DESCRIPTION

Models equipped with the optional Automatic Zone Control (AZC) system use automatic dual zone temperature control with infrared sensing technology. The temperature sensor is located in the center instrument panel, between the dual temperature knobs of the AZC.

### OPERATION

The Automatic Zone Control uses infrared sensing technology to control occupant comfort levels, not the actual passenger compartment air temperature. Dual infrared sensors mounted in the face of the control unit independently measure the surface temperature to maintain customer-perceived comfort temperature under changing conditions. Dual Zone temperature control provides wide side-to-side variation in comfort temperature to exceed the needs of either front seat occupant. This sensing system replaces interior air temperature and solar sensors used to approximate direct sensing control through complex control programs.

The infrared temperature sensor cannot be adjusted or repaired and, if faulty or damaged, the AZC head must be replaced.

**NOTE:** The infrared sensor window may be permanently damaged if any type of cosmetic vinyl dressings are allowed to contact the lens. Avoid spraying or wiping this area with any cleaner or conditioner. This may result in impaired temperature sensing and control.

### REMOVAL

The infrared temperature sensor cannot be adjusted or repaired and, if faulty or damaged, the AZC head must be replaced. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/CONTROLS/A/C HEATER CONTROL - REMOVAL)

## BLEND DOOR ACTUATOR

### DESCRIPTION

The blend door for all models is actuated by an electric actuator, while the AZC system uses 2 separate actuators to allow the driver and passenger to select individual comfort levels. In the following procedures, service for both types of actuators is covered.

### REMOVAL

#### REMOVAL - Manual & AZC Systems (Driverside only on AZC)

**WARNING:** ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN AN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.

The blend door actuator is used on all models, whether equipped with manual or Automatic Zone Control (AZC). This actuator is located on the front of the HVAC housing to the right of the floor panel transmission tunnel, and can be removed from the passenger compartment without instrument panel or HVAC housing removal.

**NOTE:** This procedure is for Manual systems and AZC systems (Driverside only).

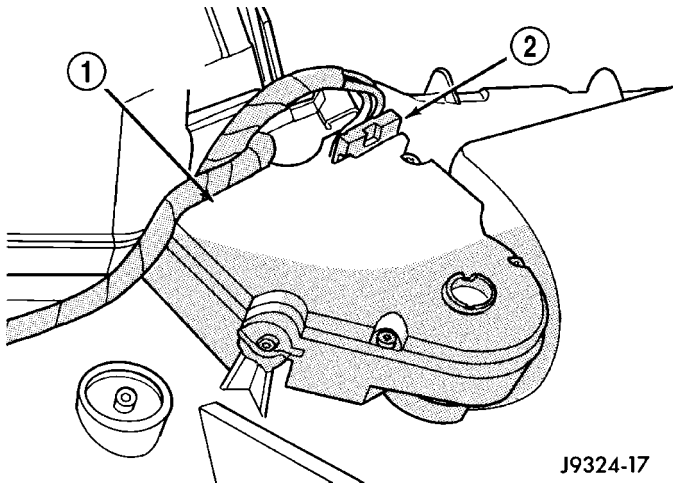
## BLEND DOOR ACTUATOR (Continued)

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Remove the glove box door.(Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/GLOVE BOX - REMOVAL)

(3) Remove the lower I/P glove box door surround panel.(Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/GLOVE BOX - REMOVAL).

(4) Unplug the wire harness connector from the blend door actuator (Fig. 17).



**Fig. 17 BLEND DOOR ACTUATOR**

1 - BLEND DOOR ACTUATOR  
2 - ELECTRICAL CONNECTOR

(5) Remove the 2 screws that secure the blend door actuator to the HVAC housing.

(6) Remove the blend door actuator from the HVAC housing.

### REMOVAL - AZC System (Passenger side only)

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN AN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

The passenger side blend door actuator is used on all models equipped with Automatic Zone Control (AZC). This actuator is located on the front of the

HVAC housing to the right of the floor panel transmission tunnel, and cannot be removed from the passenger compartment without instrument panel or HVAC housing removal.

**NOTE: This procedure is for AZC systems (Passenger side only).**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

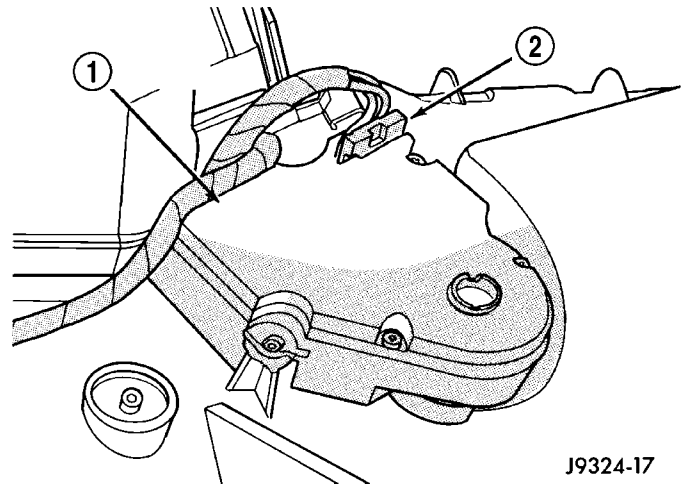
(2) Remove the glove box door.(Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/GLOVE BOX - REMOVAL)

(3) Remove the lower I/P glove box door surround panel.(Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/GLOVE BOX - REMOVAL).

(4) Remove the dash assembly(Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/INSTRUMENT PANEL ASSEMBLY - REMOVAL).

(5) Remove the HVAC assembly(Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/DISTRIBUTION/HVAC HOUSING - REMOVAL).

(6) Unplug the wire harness connector from the blend door actuator (Fig. 18).



**Fig. 18**

(7) Remove the 2 screws that secure the blend door actuator to the HVAC housing.

(8) Remove the blend door actuator from the HVAC housing.

## INSTALLATION

### INSTALLATION - Manual & AZC (Driverside only)

(1) Install the blend door actuator on the HVAC housing and tighten the two mounting screws to 2.2 N·m (20 in. lbs.).

(2) Plug in the wire harness connector to the blend door actuator.

## BLEND DOOR ACTUATOR (Continued)

(3) Install the glove box door(Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/GLOVE BOX - INSTALLATION).

(4) Install the lower I/P glove box door surround panel(Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/GLOVE BOX - INSTALLATION).

(5) Connect and the battery negative cable.

**INSTALLATION - AZC (Passenger side only)**

(1) Install the blend door actuator on the HVAC housing and tighten the two mounting screws to 2.2 N·m (20 in. lbs.).

(2) Plug in the wire harness connector to the blend door actuator.

(3) Install the HVAC unit into the vehicle(Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/DISTRIBUTION/HVAC HOUSING - ASSEMBLY).

(4) Install the instrument panel assembly into the vehicle(Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/INSTRUMENT PANEL ASSEMBLY - INSTALLATION).

(5) Evacuate the HVAC system(Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

(6) Recharge the HVAC system(Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

(7) Connect and the battery negative cable.

## MODE DOOR ACTUATOR

**DESCRIPTION**

The mode door actuators for vehicles equipped with the standard equipment manual temperature control system are vacuum controlled. The optional Automatic Zone Control (AZC) system uses electric motors to actuate all mode doors. The service procedures for both types of actuators are covered by the following procedures.

**REMOVAL****REMOVAL - HEAT/DEFROST - PANEL/DEFROST DOOR ELECTRIC ACTUATOR**

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS**

**IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN AN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

These actuators are used only on models equipped with the optional Automatic Zone Control (AZC) system.

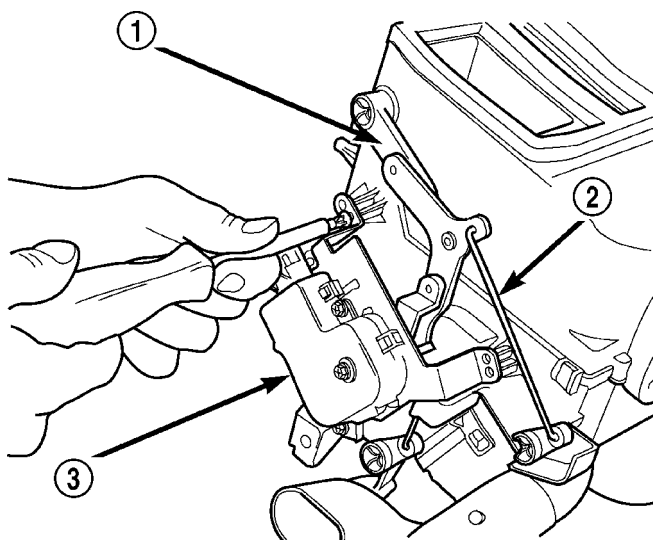
(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Remove the two bolts that secure the center instrument panel support bracket to the left side of the floor panel transmission tunnel.

(3) Remove the two bolts that secure the center instrument panel support bracket to the instrument panel.

(4) Remove the center instrument panel support bracket from the vehicle.

(5) Unplug the wire harness connector from the heat/defrost - panel/defrost door actuator (Fig. 19).



80b897c8

**Fig. 19 HEAT/DEFROST - PANEL/DEFROST DOOR ACTUATOR**

- 1 - LEVER ASSEMBLY
- 2 - LINKAGE
- 3 - ELECTRIC ACTUATOR

(6) Remove the three screws that secure the heat/defrost-panel/defrost door motor to the HVAC housing.

(7) Remove the heat/defrost-panel/defrost door motor from the HVAC housing.

## MODE DOOR ACTUATOR (Continued)

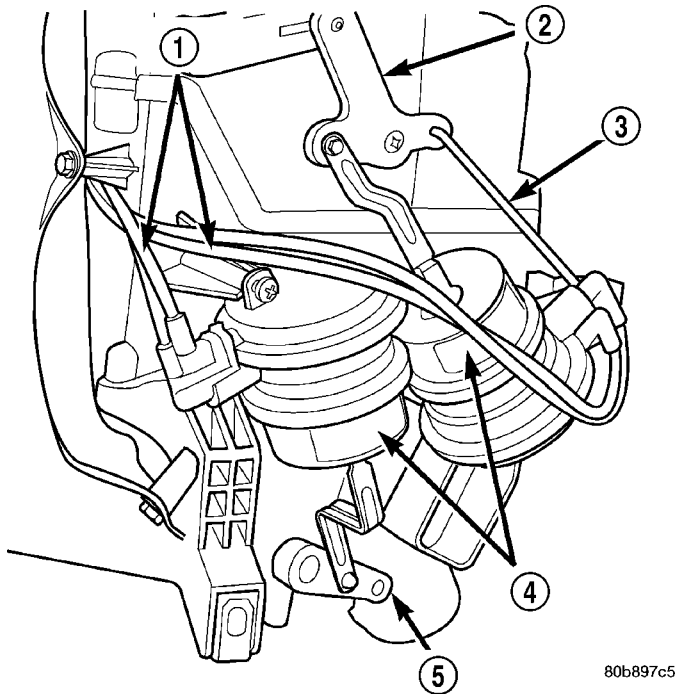
**REMOVAL - HEAT/DEFROST DOOR VACUUM ACTUATOR**

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN AN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

This actuator is used only on models equipped with the standard manual temperature control system.

(1) Remove the HVAC housing from the vehicle. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/DISTRIBUTION/HVAC HOUSING - REMOVAL)

(2) Unplug the vacuum harness connector from the heat/defrost door vacuum actuator (Fig. 20).



80b897c5

**Fig. 20 MODE DOOR ACTUATORS-MANUAL SYSTEM**

- 1 - VACUUM LINES
- 2 - ACTUATING LEVERS
- 3 - LINKAGE
- 4 - VACUUM ACTUATORS
- 5 - ACTUATING LEVER

(3) Disengage the heat/defrost door pivot connection from the heat/defrost door pivot pin.

(4) Remove the screws that secure the heat/defrost door vacuum actuator to the HVAC housing.

(5) Remove the heat/defrost door vacuum actuator from the HVAC housing.

**REMOVAL - PANEL/DEFROST DOOR VACUUM ACTUATOR**

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN AN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

This actuator is used only on models equipped with the standard manual temperature control system.

(1) Remove the HVAC housing from the vehicle. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/DISTRIBUTION/HVAC HOUSING - REMOVAL)

(2) Unplug the vacuum harness connector from the heat/defrost door vacuum actuator (Fig. 21).

(3) Disengage the panel/defrost door pivot connection from the panel/defrost door pivot pin.

(4) Remove the screws that secure the panel/defrost door vacuum actuator to the HVAC housing.

(5) Remove the panel/defrost door vacuum actuator from the HVAC housing.

**INSTALLATION****INSTALLATION - HEAT/DEFROST - PANEL/DEFROST DOOR ELECTRIC ACTUATOR**

(1) Install the heat/defrost-panel/defrost door actuator on the HVAC housing, and tighten the three mounting screws to 2.2 N·m (20 in. lbs.).

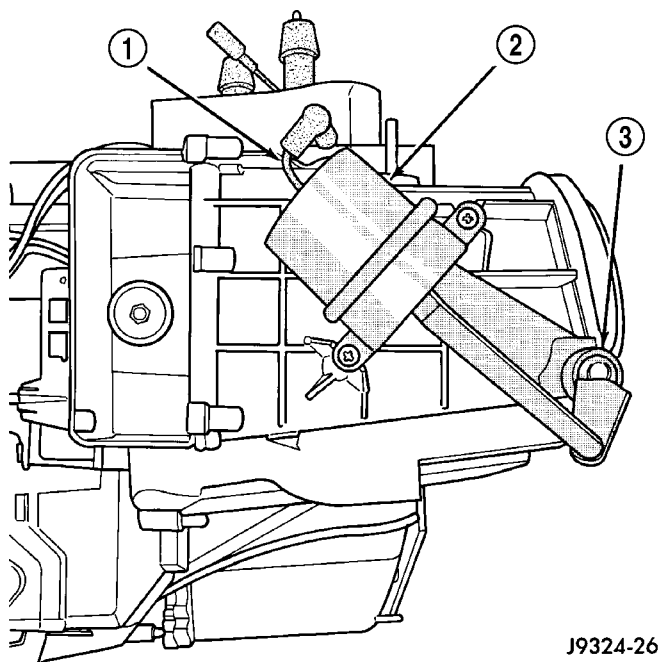
(2) Plug in the wire harness connector to the heat/defrost - panel/defrost door actuator.

(3) Install the center instrument panel support bracket on the vehicle.

(4) Install the two bolts that secure the center instrument panel support bracket to the instrument panel.



## MODE DOOR ACTUATOR (Continued)



J9324-26

**Fig. 21 PANEL/DEFROST DOOR ACTUATOR**

- 1 - VACUUM LINE  
 2 - PANEL/DEFROST DOOR ACTUATOR  
 3 - SHAFT RETAINER

(5) Install the two bolts that secure the center instrument panel support bracket to the left side of the floor panel transmission tunnel.

(6) Connect the battery negative cable.

### INSTALLATION - HEAT/DEFROST DOOR VACUUM ACTUATOR

(1) Install the heat/defrost door vacuum actuator on the HVAC housing and tighten the mounting screws to 2.2 N·m (20 in. lbs.).

(2) Engage the heat/defrost door pivot connection with the heat/defrost door pivot pin.

(3) Plug in the vacuum harness connector to the heat/defrost door vacuum actuator.

(4) Install the HVAC housing in the vehicle. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/DISTRIBUTION/HVAC HOUSING - INSTALLATION)

### INSTALLATION - PANEL/DEFROST DOOR VACUUM ACTUATOR

(1) Install the panel/defrost door vacuum actuator on the HVAC housing and tighten the mounting screws to 2.2 N·m (20 in. lbs.).

(2) Engage the panel/defrost door pivot connection with the panel/defrost door pivot pin.

(3) Plug in the vacuum harness connector to the heat/defrost door vacuum actuator.

(4) Install the HVAC housing in the vehicle. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/DISTRIBUTION/HVAC HOUSING - INSTALLATION)

## RECIRCULATION DOOR ACTUATOR

### DESCRIPTION

The recirculation door actuator for vehicles equipped with the standard equipment manual temperature control system is vacuum controlled. The optional Automatic Zone Control (AZC) system uses an electric recirculation door actuator. In the following procedures, service for both types of actuators is covered.

### REMOVAL

#### REMOVAL - RECIRCULATION DOOR VACUUM ACTUATOR

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN AN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

This actuator is used only on models equipped with the standard manual temperature control system.

(1) Remove the instrument panel from the vehicle. Refer to Instrument Panel System for the procedures.

(2) Unplug the vacuum harness connector from the recirculation door vacuum actuator.

(3) Disengage the recirculation door pivot connection from the door pivot pin.

(4) Disengage the recirculation door actuating rod from the recirculation door lever.

(5) Remove the screws that secure the recirculation door vacuum actuator to the HVAC housing.

(6) Remove the recirculation door vacuum actuator from the HVAC housing.

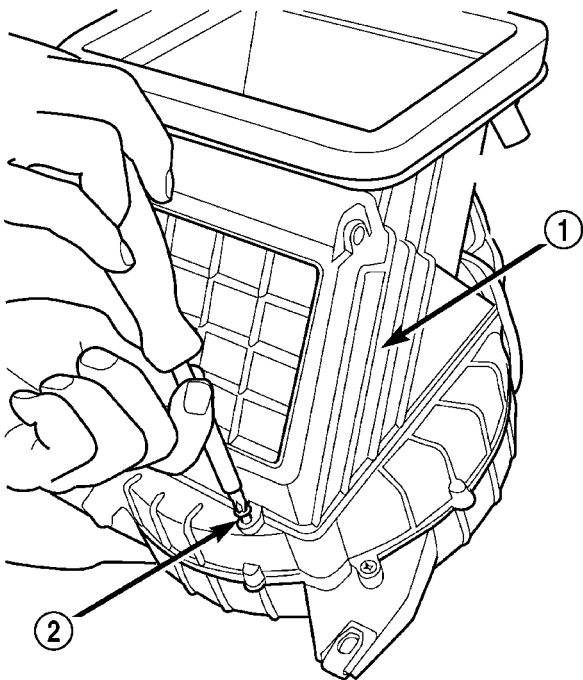
## RECIRCULATION DOOR ACTUATOR (Continued)

**REMOVAL - RECIRCULATION DOOR ELECTRIC ACTUATOR**

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN AN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

This actuator is used only on models equipped with the optional Automatic Zone Control (AZC) system.

- (1) Remove the instrument panel from the vehicle. Refer to Instrument Panel System for the procedures.
- (2) Unplug the wire harness connector from the recirculation door actuator.



80b897cd

**Fig. 22 RECIRCULATION DOOR HOUSING**

- 1 - RECIRCULATION DOOR HOUSING  
2 - ATTACHING SCREWS

- (3) Remove the 2 screws securing the recirculation door housing to the HVAC unit (Fig. 22). Tilt the front of the housing up while reaching around the back releasing 2 tangs holding the rear of the housing down.

- (4) Remove the recirculation door housing from the HVAC unit.
- (5) Remove the screws that secure the recirculation door actuator to the HVAC housing.
- (6) Remove the recirculation door actuator from the HVAC housing.

**INSTALLATION****INSTALLATION - RECIRCULATION DOOR VACUUM ACTUATOR**

- (1) Install the recirculation door vacuum actuator on the HVAC housing and tighten the mounting screws to 2.2 N·m (20 in. lbs.).
- (2) Engage the recirculation door actuating rod with the recirculation door lever.
- (3) Engage the recirculation door pivot connection with the door pivot pin.
- (4) Plug in the vacuum harness connector to the recirculation door vacuum actuator.
- (5) Install the instrument panel in the vehicle. Refer to Instrument Panel System for the procedures.

**INSTALLATION - RECIRCULATION DOOR ELECTRIC ACTUATOR**

- (1) Install the recirculation door actuator on the recirculation door housing and tighten the mounting screws to 2.2 N·m (20 in. lbs.).
- (2) Install the recirculation door housing on the HVAC unit and tighten the mounting screws to 2.2 N·m (20 in. lbs.).
- (3) Plug in the wire harness connector to the recirculation door actuator.
- (4) Install the instrument panel in the vehicle. Refer to Instrument Panel System for the procedures.

**VACUUM CHECK VALVE****DESCRIPTION**

Two vacuum check valves (non AZC only) are installed on the vacuum supply system. One is on the accessory vacuum supply line in the engine compartment, near the vacuum tap on the engine intake manifold. A second vacuum check valve is located on the bottom of the HVAC unit behind the passenger front floor duct on the black vacuum line. The vacuum check valves are designed to allow vacuum to flow in only one direction through the accessory vacuum supply circuits.

**OPERATION**

The use of a vacuum check valve helps to maintain the system vacuum needed to retain the selected A/C Heater mode settings. The check valve will prevent



## VACUUM CHECK VALVE (Continued)

the engine from bleeding down system vacuum through the intake manifold during extended heavy engine load (low engine vacuum) operation.

The vacuum check valve cannot be repaired and, if faulty or damaged, it must be replaced.

### REMOVAL

(1) Unplug the HVAC vacuum supply line connector at the vacuum check valve near the engine intake manifold vacuum adapter fitting.

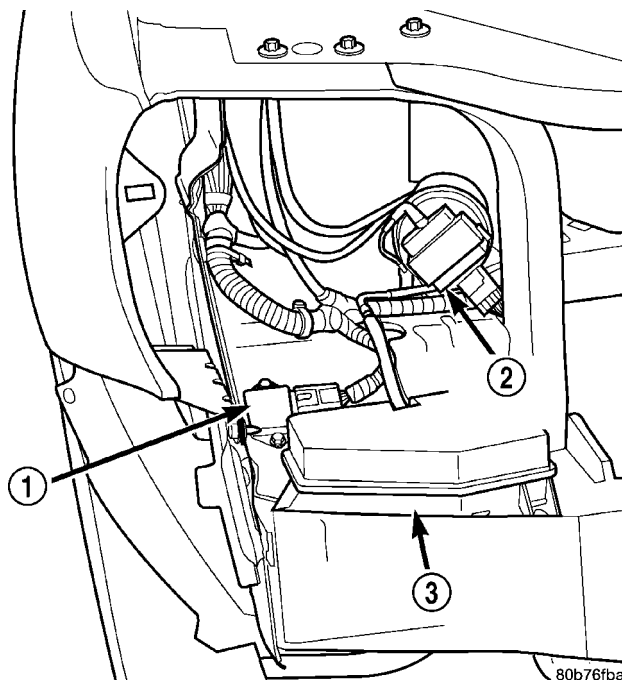
(2) Note the orientation of the check valve in the vacuum supply line for correct installation.

(3) Unplug the vacuum check valve from the vacuum supply line fittings.

### INSTALLATION

(1) Plug in the vacuum check valve at the vacuum supply line fittings, noting the orientation of the check valve in the vacuum supply line for correct installation.

(2) Plug in the HVAC vacuum supply line connector at the vacuum check valve near the engine intake manifold vacuum adapter fitting.



**Fig. 23 VACUUM RESERVOIR**

- 1 - FAN RELAY
- 2 - SPEED CONTROL SERVO
- 3 - VACUUM RESERVOIR

## VACUUM RESERVOIR

### DESCRIPTION

The vacuum reservoir is mounted in the right front of the vehicle behind the headlamp mounting module (Fig. 23). The headlamp mounting module and headlamp assembly must be removed from the vehicle to access the vacuum reservoir for service. Refer to Lamps/Lighting for the procedures.

### OPERATION

Engine vacuum is stored in the vacuum reservoir. The stored vacuum is used to operate the vacuum-controlled vehicle accessories during periods of low engine vacuum such as when the vehicle is climbing a steep grade, or under other high engine load operating conditions.

The vacuum reservoir cannot be repaired and, if faulty or damaged, it must be replaced.

### REMOVAL

(1) Remove the right side headlamp mounting module and headlamp assembly. Refer to Lamps/Lighting for the procedures.

(2) Remove the two screws that secure the vacuum reservoir to the base of the radiator closure panel.

(3) Remove the vacuum reservoir.

### INSTALLATION

(1) Install the vacuum reservoir in the vehicle and tighten the two screws to 3.4 N·m (30 in. lbs.).

(2) Install the right side headlamp mounting module and headlamp assembly. Refer to Lamps/Lighting for the procedures.

## EVAPORATOR TEMPERATURE SENSOR

### DESCRIPTION

The evaporator probe is a 2 wire temperature sensing element located at the coldest point on the face of the evaporator. The switch is attached to the evaporator coil fins. The evaporator temperature probe prevents condensate water on the evaporator coil from freezing and obstructing A/C system air flow.

### OPERATION

The probe is used to switch the clutch OFF before evaporator freeze-up occurs. Output from the probe is sampled by the Body Control Module (BCM). The clutch is switched OFF when the probe temperature reaches 1.1° C (34° F). It is allowed to switch ON when the probe temperature reaches 2.2° C (36° F).

### REMOVAL

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

## EVAPORATOR TEMPERATURE SENSOR (Continued)

(2) Remove the HVAC housing from the vehicle(Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/DISTRIBUTION/HVAC HOUSING - REMOVAL).

(3) Disassemble the HVAC housing(Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/DISTRIBUTION/HVAC HOUSING - DISASSEMBLY).

(4) Carefully pull the probe out of the evaporator core.

**INSTALLATION**

(1) Install the new probe into the evaporator.

**NOTE: The new probe must not go into the same hole (in the evaporator core) that the old probe was removed from.**

(2) Reassemble the HVAC housing(Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/DISTRIBUTION/HVAC HOUSING - ASSEMBLY).

(3) Reinstall the HVAC assembly in the vehicle(Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/DISTRIBUTION/HVAC HOUSING - INSTALLATION).

(4) Reconnect the battery negative cable.

## DISTRIBUTION

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>AIR OUTLETS</b>		<b>INSTALLATION</b>	42
REMOVAL	38	<b>HVAC HOUSING</b>	
INSTALLATION	38	REMOVAL	42
<b>BLOWER MOTOR</b>		DISASSEMBLY	44
DESCRIPTION	39	ASSEMBLY	45
OPERATION	39	INSTALLATION	46
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - BLOWER		<b>BLEND DOOR</b>	
MOTOR	39	REMOVAL	47
REMOVAL	39	INSTALLATION	47
INSTALLATION	40	<b>MODE DOOR</b>	
<b>DEFROSTER DUCTS</b>		REMOVAL	
REMOVAL	40	REMOVAL - PANEL OUTLET DOOR	48
INSTALLATION	41	REMOVAL - HEAT/DEFROST DOOR	48
<b>FLOOR DISTRIBUTION DUCTS</b>		REMOVAL - PANEL/DEFROST DOOR	50
REMOVAL	41	INSTALLATION	
INSTALLATION	41	INSTALLATION - PANEL OUTLET DOOR	50
<b>INSTRUMENT PANEL DUCTS</b>		INSTALLATION - HEAT/DEFROST DOOR	50
REMOVAL	41	INSTALLATION - PANEL/DEFROST DOOR	50
INSTALLATION	42	<b>RECIRCULATION DOOR</b>	
<b>REAR FLOOR HEAT DUCT</b>		REMOVAL	51
REMOVAL	42	INSTALLATION	51

## AIR OUTLETS

## REMOVAL

The driver side, and passenger side panel outlets are available for service. The center outlets are only serviced as part of the instrument cluster center bezel unit.

(1) Remove the instrument panel top pad from the instrument panel. Refer to Instrument Panel System for the procedures.

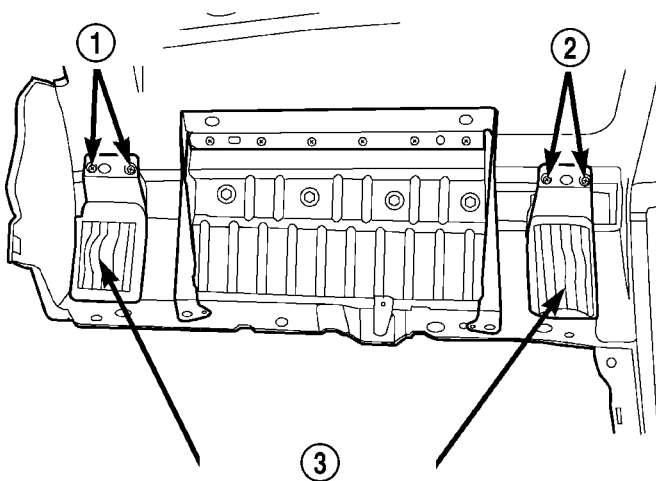
(2) Remove the two screws that secure each outlet to the backside of the instrument panel top pad (Fig. 1).

(3) Remove the outlet from the top pad.

## INSTALLATION

(1) Fasten the outlet to the top pad. Tighten the mounting screws to 2.2 N·m (20 in. lbs.).

(2) Install the instrument panel top pad on the instrument panel. Refer to Instrument Panel System for the procedures.



80ba7781

**Fig. 1 PANEL OUTLETS (PASSENGER SIDE)**

- 1 - MOUNTING SCREWS
- 2 - MOUNTING SCREWS
- 3 - PANEL OUTLETS

## BLOWER MOTOR

### DESCRIPTION

The blower motor and blower wheel are located in the passenger side end of the HVAC housing, below the glove box module. The blower motor controls the velocity of the air flowing through the HVAC housing by spinning a squirrel cage-type blower wheel within the housing at the selected speed. The blower motor and blower wheel can be serviced from the passenger compartment side of the housing.

### OPERATION

The blower motor will only operate when the ignition switch is in the On position, and the a/c heater mode control switch is in any position, except off. The blower motor circuit is protected by a fuse in the junction block. On models with the standard manual temperature control system, the blower motor speed is controlled by regulating the battery feed through the blower motor switch and the blower motor resistor. On models with the optional Automatic Zone Control (AZC) system, the blower motor speed is controlled by using Pulse Width Modulation (PWM). The blower motor controller adjusts the battery feed voltage to the blower motor, based upon an input from the blower motor switch, through the AZC control module. Pulse width modulation of blower power allows the blower to operate at any speed from stationary, to full speed.

The blower motor and blower motor wheel cannot be repaired, and if faulty or damaged, they must be replaced. The blower motor and blower wheel are each serviced separately.

### DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - BLOWER MOTOR

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN AN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

For circuit descriptions and diagrams, refer to the appropriate wiring information. Possible causes of an inoperative blower motor include:

- Faulty fuse

- Faulty blower motor circuit wiring or wire harness connections
- Faulty blower motor resistor (if the vehicle is so equipped)
- Faulty blower motor controller (if the vehicle is so equipped)
- Faulty blower motor switch
- Faulty a/c heater mode control switch
- Faulty blower motor.

Possible causes of the blower motor not operating in all speeds include:

- Faulty fuse
- Faulty blower motor switch
- Faulty blower motor resistor (if the vehicle is so equipped)
- Faulty blower motor controller (if the vehicle is so equipped)
- Faulty AZC module (if the vehicle is so equipped)
- Faulty blower motor circuit wiring or wire harness connections.

### VIBRATION

Possible causes of blower motor vibration include:

- Improper blower motor mounting
- Improper blower wheel mounting
- Blower wheel out of balance or bent
- Blower motor faulty.

### NOISE

To verify that the blower is the source of the noise, unplug the blower motor wire harness connector and operate the HVAC system. If the noise goes away, possible causes include:

- Foreign material in the HVAC housing
- Improper blower motor mounting
- Improper blower wheel mounting
- Blower motor faulty.

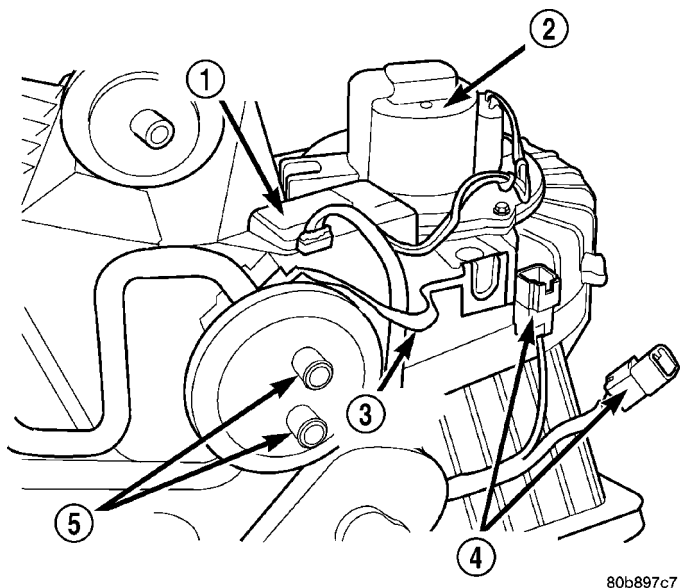
### REMOVAL

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN AN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

## BLOWER MOTOR (Continued)

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Pinch the connector retainer and unplug the blower motor wire harness from the blower motor (Fig. 2).



**Fig. 2 BLOWER MOTOR (HOUSING REMOVED FROM VEHICLE)**

- 1 - BLOWER MOTOR RESISTOR
- 2 - BLOWER MOTOR
- 3 - GROUND STRAP - (If Equipped)
- 4 - ELECTRICAL CONNECTORS
- 5 - HEATER CORE TUBES

(3) Remove the three screws that secure the blower motor and blower wheel assembly to the HVAC housing, using either a T-25 Torx® head or flat-bladed screwdriver.

(4) Lower the blower motor and wheel from the HVAC housing.

(5) Remove the blower wheel retainer clip (Fig. 3).

(6) Remove the wheel from the blower motor shaft.

## INSTALLATION

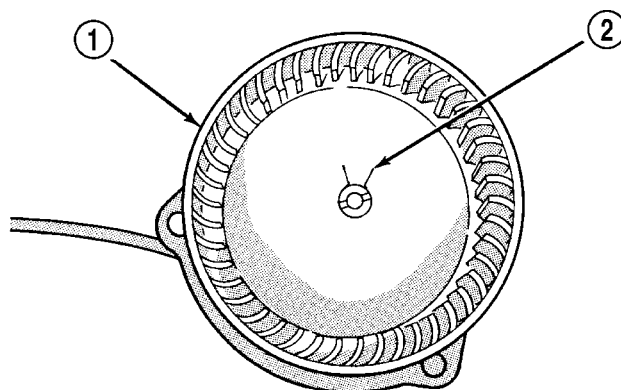
(1) Press the blower wheel hub onto the blower motor shaft. Be sure the flat on the blower motor shaft is indexed to the flat on the inside of the blower wheel hub.

(2) Install the retainer clip over the blower wheel hub.

(3) Install the blower motor in the HVAC housing with three mounting screws. Tighten the mounting screws to 2.2 N·m (20 in. lbs.).

(4) Plug the blower motor wire harness connector into the blower motor socket.

(5) Connect the battery negative cable.



J9324-92

**Fig. 3 BLOWER MOTOR WHEEL REMOVE/INSTALL**

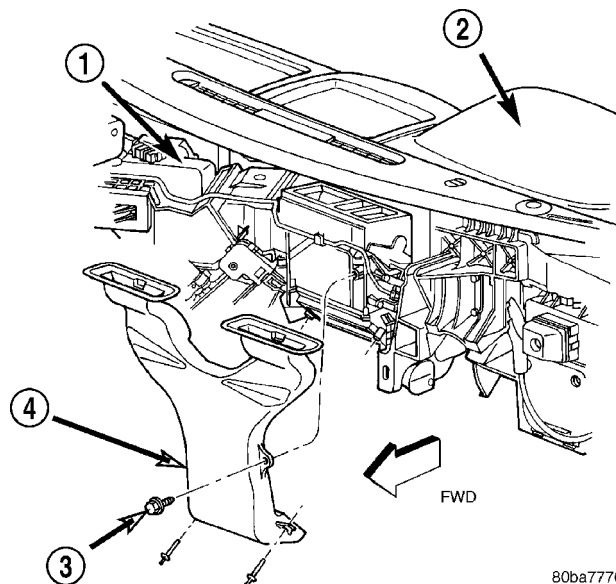
- 1 - BLOWER MOTOR WHEEL
- 2 - RETAINER CLIP

## DEFROSTER DUCTS

## REMOVAL

(1) Remove the instrument panel assembly from the vehicle (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL - REMOVAL).

(2) Remove the three screws that secure the defroster duct to the HVAC unit housing (Fig. 4).



80ba7776

**Fig. 4 HVAC DEFROSTER DUCT**

- 1 - HVAC UNIT HOUSING
- 2 - INSTRUMENT PANEL
- 3 - SCREWS
- 4 - DEFROSTER DUCT

(3) Remove the defroster duct from the HVAC unit housing.



## DEFROSTER DUCTS (Continued)

## INSTALLATION

(1) Install the defroster duct on the HVAC unit housing.

(2) Install the three screws that secure the defroster duct to the HVAC unit housing. Tighten the mounting screws to 2.2 N·m (20 in. lbs.).

(3) Install the instrument panel assembly in the vehicle (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL - INSTALLATION).

## FLOOR DISTRIBUTION DUCTS

## REMOVAL

(1) To remove the driver side floor duct from the vehicle, remove the knee blocker panel for access to attaching screw. See Instrument Panel System for the procedures.

(2) The passenger side floor duct fastener can be accessed under the right-center instrument panel.

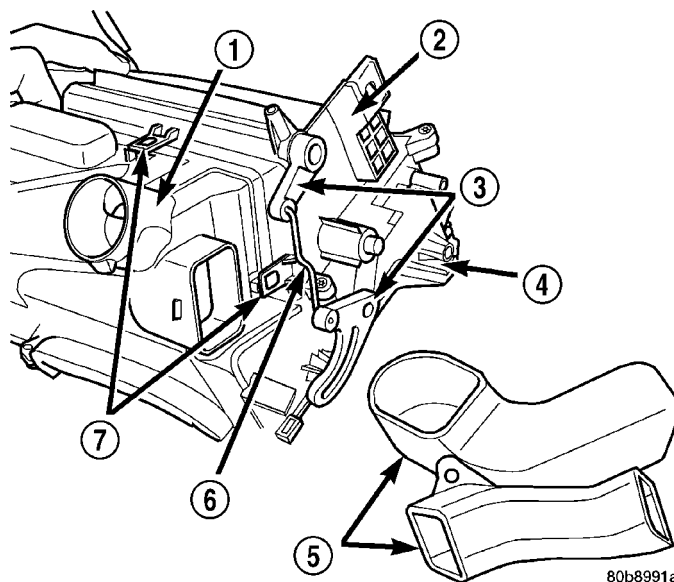
(3) Remove the screw that secures the floor duct(s) to the HVAC housing (Fig. 5).

## INSTALLATION

(1) Attach the floor duct(s) to the HVAC housing.

(2) Install the screw that secures the floor duct(s) to the HVAC housing. Tighten the mounting screws to 2.2 N·m (20 in. lbs.).

(3) Install the knee blocker panel. See Instrument Panel System for the procedures.



**Fig. 5 FLOOR DUCTS (HOUSING REMOVED)**

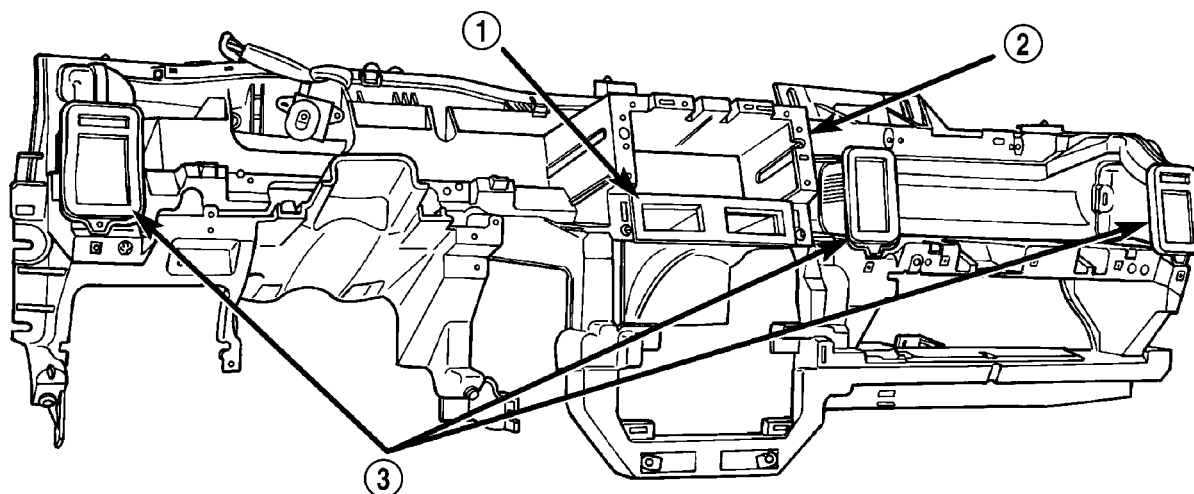
- 1 - FLOOR DUCT ADAPTER
- 2 - HEAT/DEFROST DOOR SUB-ASSEMBLY
- 3 - DOOR LEVERS
- 4 - LOWER HOUSING
- 5 - FLOOR DUCTS
- 6 - LINKAGE
- 7 - RETAINING TABS

## INSTRUMENT PANEL DUCTS

## REMOVAL

(1) Remove the instrument panel top pad from the vehicle (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/INSTRUMENT PANEL TOP COVER - REMOVAL).

(2) Unsnap the duct extension(s) from the instrument panel structural duct assembly (Fig. 6).



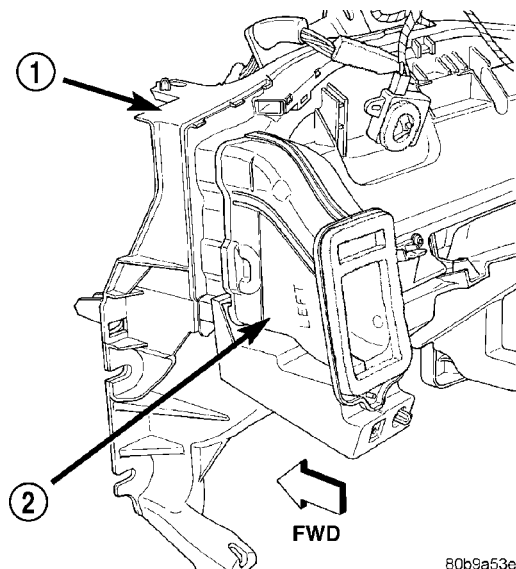
**Fig. 6 INSTRUMENT PANEL STRUCTURAL DUCT ASSEMBLY**

- 1 - CENTER DUCT
- 2 - INSTRUMENT PANEL STRUCTURAL DUCT ASSEMBLY
- 3 - PANEL DUCT EXTENSIONS



## INSTRUMENT PANEL DUCTS (Continued)

(3) Remove the duct extension(s) from the instrument panel (Fig. 7).



**Fig. 7 INSTRUMENT PANEL DUCT EXTENSION**

- 1 - INSTRUMENT PANEL STRUCTURAL DUCT ASSEMBLY  
2 - PANEL DUCT EXTENSION

## INSTALLATION

(1) Connect the duct extension(s) to the instrument panel.

(2) Snap the duct extension(s) to the instrument panel structural duct assembly.

(3) Install the instrument panel top pad in the vehicle (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL/INSTRUMENT PANEL TOP COVER - INSTALLATION).

## REAR FLOOR HEAT DUCT

## REMOVAL

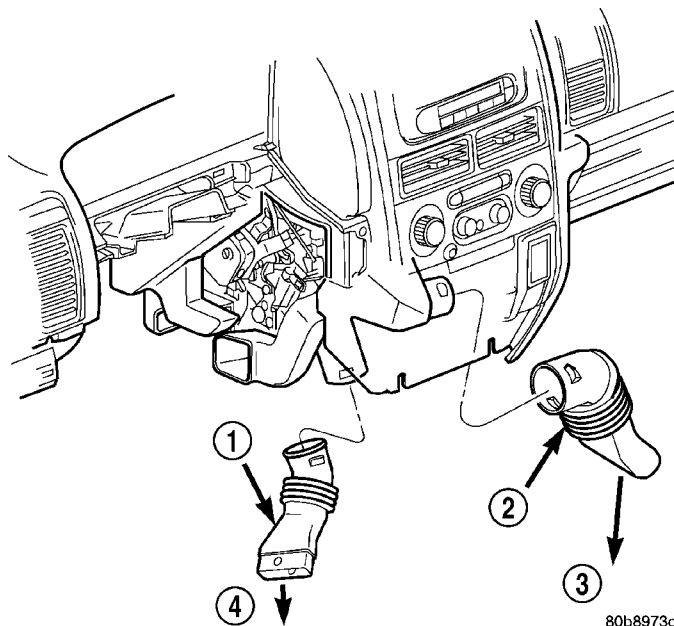
(1) To remove the rear floor ducts from the vehicle, remove the knee blocker panels for access, and pull carpeting back.

(2) Pull the floor ducts from the HVAC housing (Fig. 8).

**NOTE:** The ductwork running from the HVAC housing rearward through the passenger compartment is molded into the carpeting, and must be replaced as a unit if damaged.

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Attach the floor ducts to the HVAC housing.
- (2) Install the knee blocker panels.
- (3) Install the carpeting back in its original position.



**Fig. 8 REAR FLOOR DUCTS**

- 1 - LEFT REAR PASSENGER FLOOR AIR DUCT  
2 - RIGHT REAR PASSENGER FLOOR AIR DUCT  
3 - TO CARPET DUCT  
4 - TO CARPET DUCT

## HVAC HOUSING

## REMOVAL

The HVAC housing assembly must be removed from the vehicle and the two halves of the housing separated for service access of the heater core, evaporator coil, blend door(s), and each of the various mode doors.

**WARNING:** ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN AN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.

**WARNING:** REVIEW THE WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS IN PLUMBING BEFORE PERFORMING THE FOLLOWING OPERATION. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - WARNING) (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - CAUTION)

- (1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

## HVAC HOUSING (Continued)

(2) Remove the instrument panel from the vehicle (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL - REMOVAL).

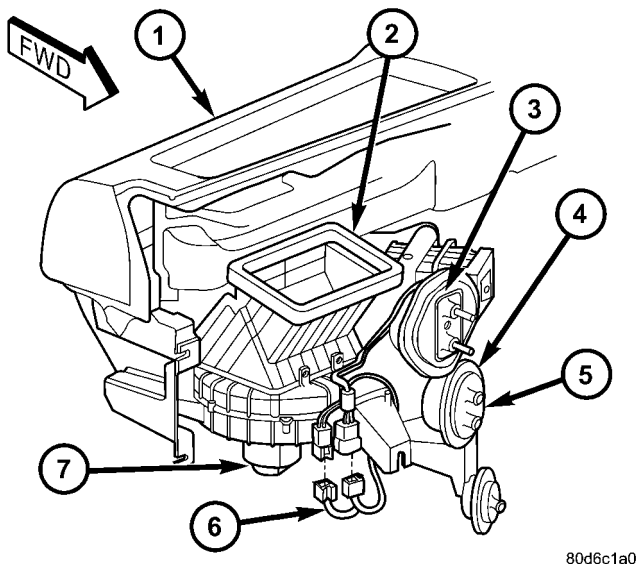
(3) Recover the refrigerant from the refrigerant system. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFRIGERANT RECOVERY)

(4) Disconnect the liquid line refrigerant line from the evaporator inlet tube (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING/LIQUID LINE - REMOVAL) or (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING/LIQUID LINE - REMOVAL). Install plugs in, or tape over all of the opened refrigerant line fittings.

(5) Disconnect the suction line refrigerant line from the evaporator outlet tube (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING/SUCTION LINE - REMOVAL), (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING/SUCTION LINE - REMOVAL) or (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING/SUCTION LINE - REMOVAL). Install plugs in, or tape over all of the opened refrigerant line fittings.

(6) Disconnect the heater hoses from the heater core tubes. Clamp off the heater hoses to prevent loss of coolant. Refer to Cooling for the procedures. Install plugs in, or tape over the opened heater core tubes.

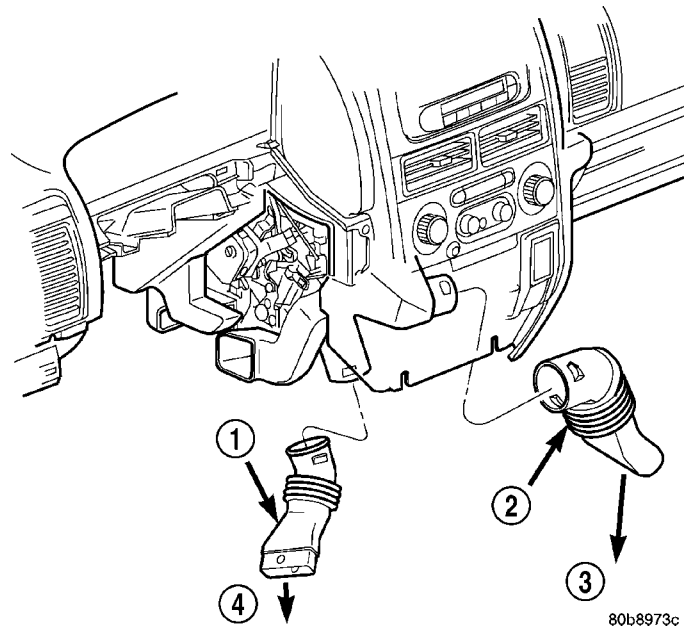
(7) Remove the bolt from the HVAC housing mounting stud on the engine compartment side of the dash panel (Fig. 9).



**Fig. 9 HVAC Housing - (rear view)**

- 1 - Instrument Panel
- 2 - Air Intake
- 3 - Expansion Valve
- 4 - HVAC Housing
- 5 - Heater Core Input/Output Ports
- 6 - Instrument Panel Wiring Harness
- 7 - Blower Motor

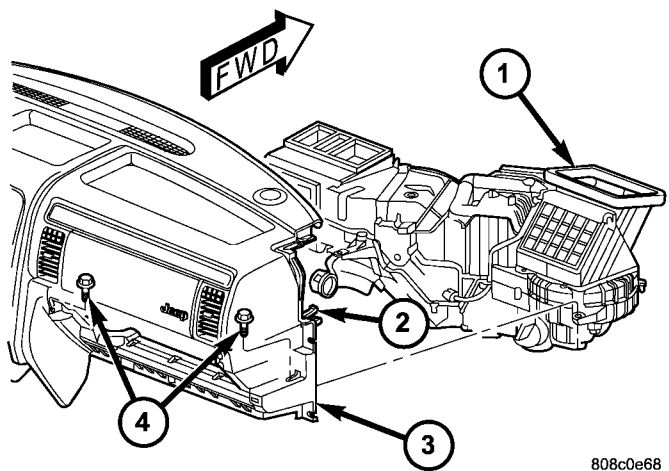
(8) Remove the rear floor heat ducts from the floor heat duct outlets (Fig. 10).



**Fig. 10 REAR FLOOR DUCTS**

- 1 - LEFT REAR PASSENGER FLOOR AIR DUCT
- 2 - RIGHT REAR PASSENGER FLOOR AIR DUCT
- 3 - TO CARPET DUCT
- 4 - TO CARPET DUCT

(9) Remove the HVAC housing mounting nuts from the studs on the passenger compartment side of the dash panel (Fig. 11).



**Fig. 11 Passenger Side Instrument Panel to Heater-A/C Housing Mounting**

- 1 - HEATER AND AIR CONDITIONER HOUSING
- 2 - RETAINER TAB
- 3 - INSTRUMENT PANEL STRUCTURAL DUCT
- 4 - SCREW (2)

(10) Remove the HVAC housing from the vehicle, ensuring that the interior is covered in case of loss of fluids.

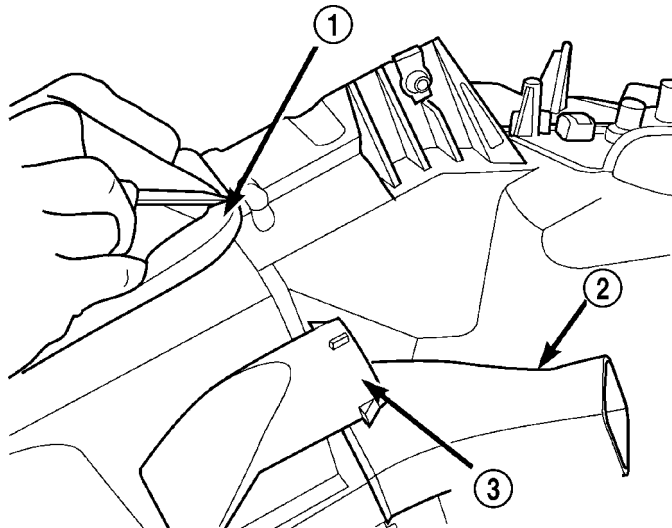
## HVAC HOUSING (Continued)

**DISASSEMBLY**

(1) Remove the HVAC housing from the vehicle. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/DISTRIBUTION/HVAC HOUSING - REMOVAL)

(2) Place the HVAC housing with the tubing side down on a work bench, making allowance for leakage of fluids.

(3) Using a sharp knife, split the foam seal surrounding the panel outlet opening, at the dividing line of the upper and lower cases (Fig. 12).



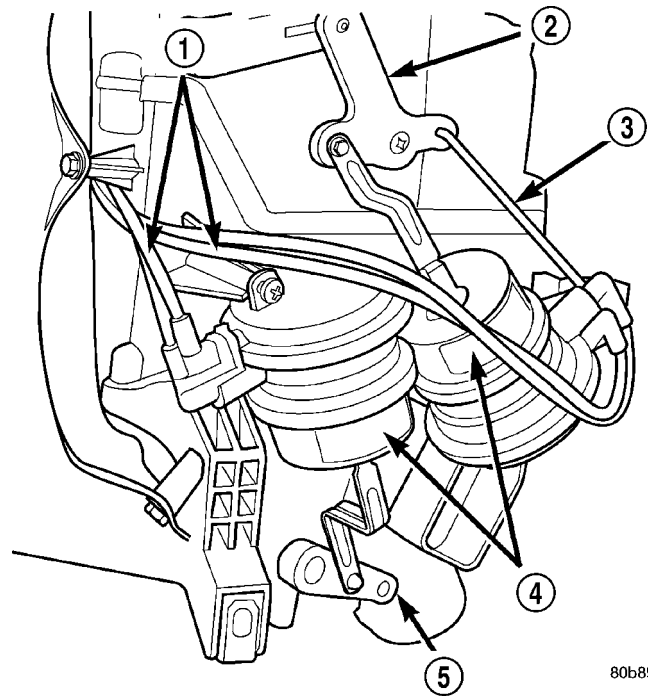
80b897ca

**Fig. 12 SPLIT FOAM SEAL AT PANEL OUTLET**

- 1 - ONE PIECE FOAM SEAL
- 2 - FLOOR DUCT
- 3 - TO REAR PASSENGER FLOOR AIR DUCT

(4) Place the HVAC housing in the upright position on the work bench.

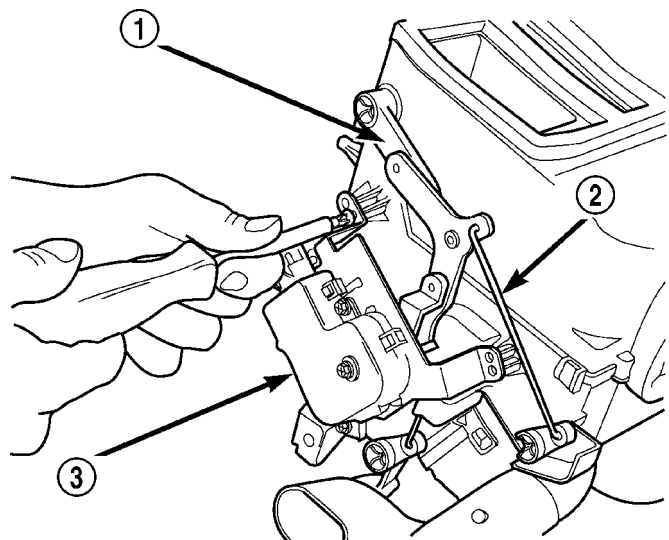
(5) Remove the mode door actuator on the left side of the housing, which controls the mode door in the top of the case (Fig. 13) (Fig. 14).



80b897c5

**Fig. 13 MODE DOOR ACTUATORS - MANUAL SYSTEM**

- 1 - VACUUM LINES
- 2 - ACTUATING LEVERS
- 3 - LINKAGE
- 4 - VACUUM ACTUATORS
- 5 - ACTUATING LEVER



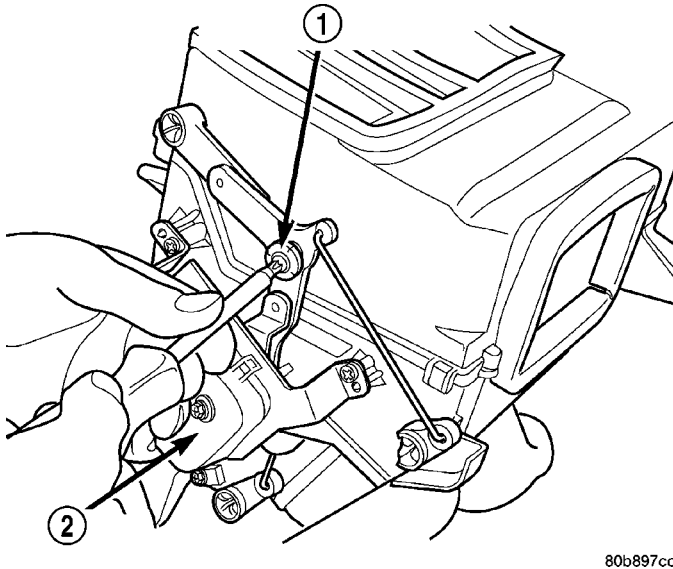
80b897c8

**Fig. 14 MODE DOOR ACTUATOR - AZC SYSTEM**

- 1 - LEVER ASSEMBLY
- 2 - LINKAGE
- 3 - ELECTRIC ACTUATOR

## HVAC HOUSING (Continued)

(6) Remove the screw with plastic washer holding the lever assembly to the upper case section, and move aside (Fig. 15).

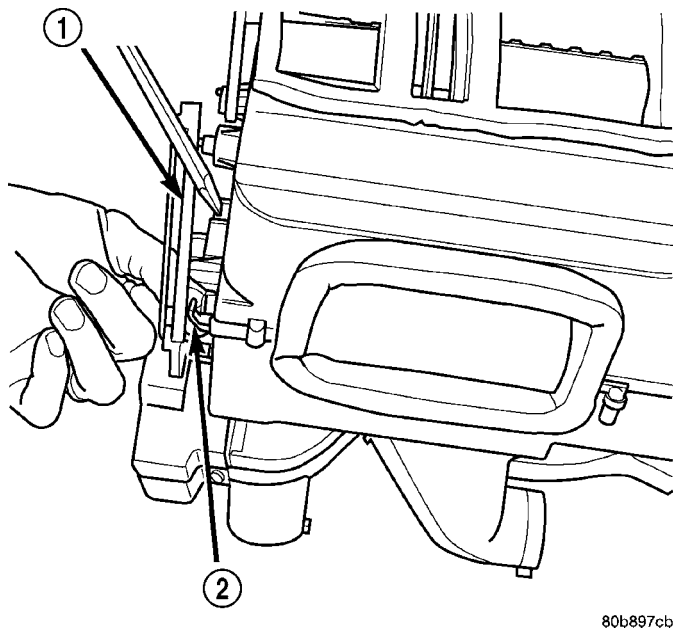


80b897cc

**Fig. 15 REMOVE SCREW WITH PLASTIC WASHER**

- 1 - SCREW WITH PLASTIC WASHER  
2 - ELECTRIC ACTUATOR

(7) Remove the 5 clips that secure the two housing halves to each other. There are 2 on either side at the center, and 1 located at the forward end of the mode door side of the case (Fig. 16).

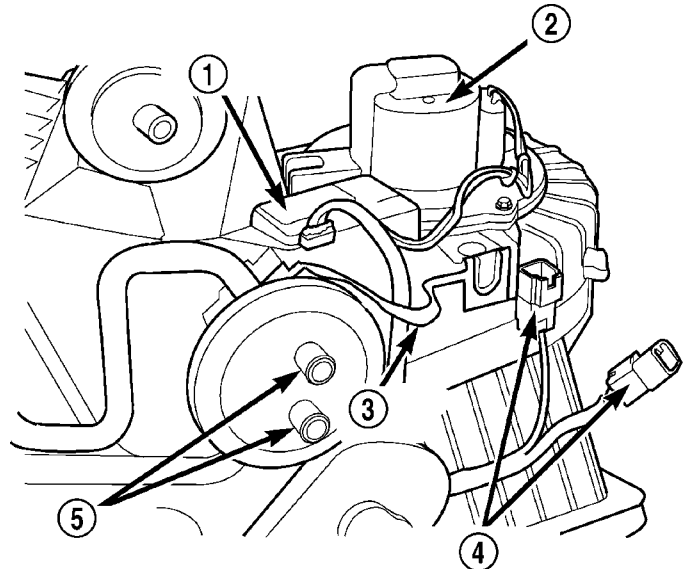


80b897cb

**Fig. 16 HVAC HOUSING CLIPS**

- 1 - ACTUATING LEVERS AND LINKAGE  
2 - HOUSING CLIP

(8) Release the wire harness electrical connector(s) from the mounts on the lower case at the blower motor end of the unit (Fig. 17).



80b897c7

**Fig. 17 WIRE HARNESS ELECTRICAL CONNECTOR(S)**

- 1 - BLOWER MOTOR RESISTOR  
2 - BLOWER MOTOR  
3 - GROUND STRAP  
4 - ELECTRICAL CONNECTORS  
5 - HEATER CORE TUBES

(9) Remove the 10 screws that secure the two housing halves to each other.

(10) Separate the top half of the HVAC housing from the bottom half (Fig. 18).

**NOTE:** The blend door sub-assembly is attached to the housing with 2 screws, and may be removed for service (Fig. 19).

## ASSEMBLY

(1) Place the top half of the HVAC housing on the bottom half. Be certain that each of the door pivot pins align with the pivot holes in the HVAC housing.

(2) Install the 10 screws that secure the two housing halves to each other. Tighten the HVAC housing screws to 2.2 N·m (20 in. lbs.).

(3) Attach the wire harness electrical connector(s) to the mounts on the lower case at the blower motor end of the unit.

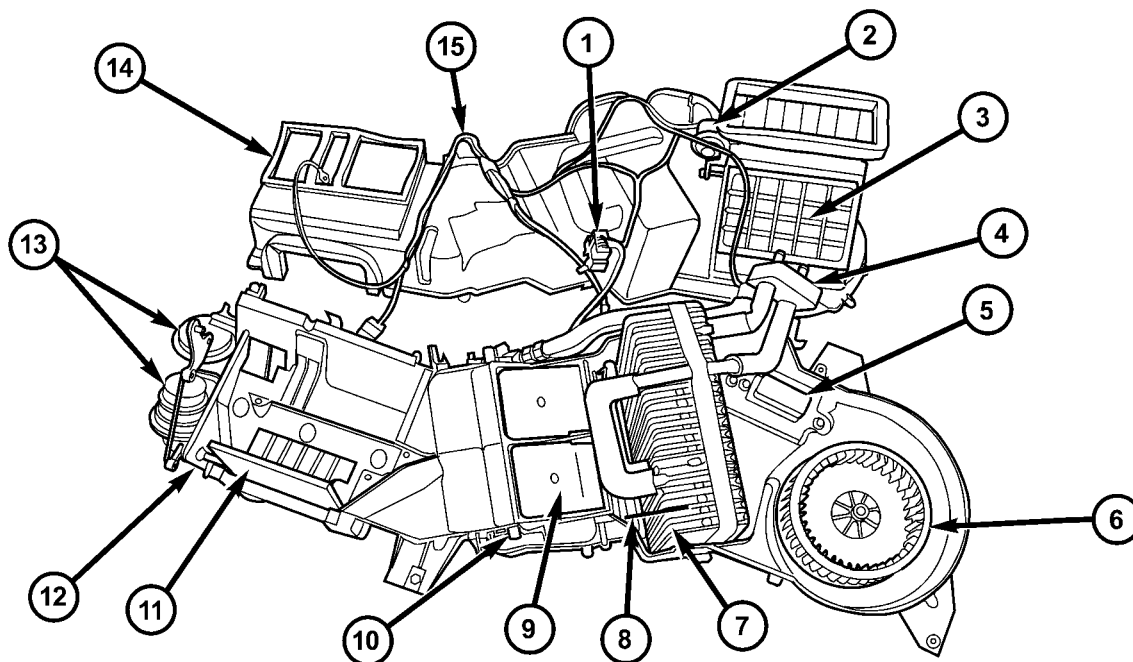
(4) Install the 5 clips that secure the two housing halves to each other. Check doors for binding after replacement, and after assembly of housing.

(5) Install the screw with plastic washer holding the lever assembly to the upper case section.

(6) Install the mode door actuator on the left side of the housing.



## HVAC HOUSING (Continued)

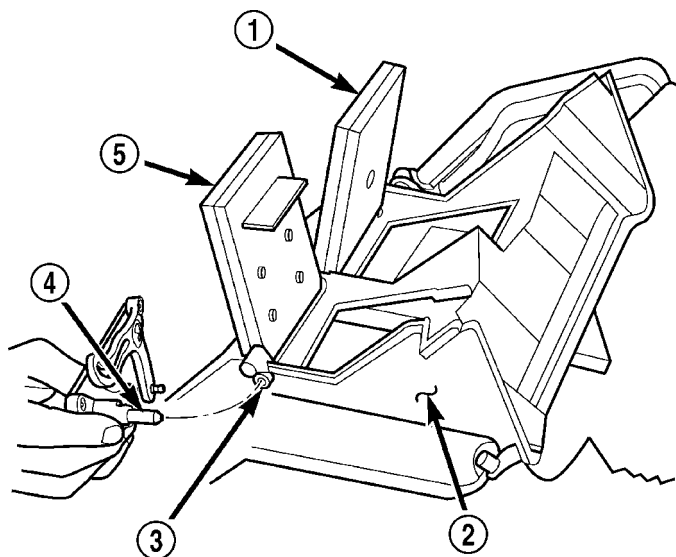


80d6e6dd

**Fig. 18 HVAC HOUSING- CASE SEPARATED**

- 1 - ELECTRICAL CONNECTORS
- 2 - VACUUM ACTUATOR
- 3 - RECIRCULATION DOOR
- 4 - THERMAL EXPANSION VALVE
- 5 - BLOWER MOTOR RESISTOR/CONTROLLER
- 6 - BLOWER WHEEL
- 7 - EVAPORATOR AND TUBES
- 8 - FIN SENSOR PROBE

- 9 - BLEND DOOR
- 10 - PIVOT SHAFT (MOTOR REMOVED)
- 11 - PANEL/OUTLET DOOR
- 12 - LOWER HOUSING
- 13 - VACUUM ACTUATORS
- 14 - UPPER HOUSING
- 15 - VACUUM HARNESS



80b8990e

**Fig. 19 BLEND DOOR SUB-ASSEMBLY (AZC)**

- 1 - PASSENGER SIDE BLEND DOOR
- 2 - BLEND DOOR SUB-ASSEMBLY
- 3 - DOOR PIVOT SHAFT BUSHING
- 4 - DOOR SHAFT LEVER
- 5 - DRIVER SIDE BLEND DOOR

**INSTALLATION**

**WARNING: REVIEW THE WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS IN PLUMBING BEFORE PERFORMING THE FOLLOWING OPERATION. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - WARNING) (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - CAUTION)**

Any kinks or sharp bends in the refrigerant plumbing will reduce the capacity of the entire air conditioning system. Kinks and sharp bends reduce the flow of refrigerant in the system. A good rule for the flexible hose refrigerant lines is to keep the radius of all bends at least ten times the diameter of the hose. In addition, the flexible hose refrigerant lines should be routed so they are at least 80 millimeters (3 inches) from the exhaust manifold.

High pressures are produced in the refrigerant system when the air conditioning compressor is operating. Extreme care must be exercised to make sure that each of the refrigerant system connections is pressure-tight and leak free. It is a good practice to inspect all flexible hose refrigerant lines at least once

## HVAC HOUSING (Continued)

a year to make sure they are in good condition and properly routed.

(1) Position the HVAC housing to the dash panel. Be certain that the evaporator condensate drain tube and the housing mounting studs are inserted into their correct mounting holes.

(2) Install the HVAC housing mounting nuts to the studs on the passenger compartment side of the dash panel. Tighten the nuts to 4.5 N·m (40 in. lbs.).

(3) Connect the HVAC housing wire harness connectors.

(4) Reinstall the rear floor heat ducts to the center floor heat duct outlets.

(5) Install and tighten the bolt onto the HVAC housing mounting stud on the engine compartment side of the dash panel. Tighten the nuts to 7 N·m (60 in. lbs.).

(6) Unclamp/unplug the heater core hoses and tubes. Connect the heater hoses to the heater core tubes and fill the engine cooling system. Refer to Cooling for the procedures.

(7) Unplug or remove the tape from the suction line and the evaporator outlet tube fittings. Connect the suction line to the evaporator outlet tube. Tighten retaining nut to 28 N·m (250 in. lbs.).

(8) Unplug or remove the tape from the liquid line and the evaporator inlet tube fittings. Connect the liquid line to the evaporator inlet tube. Tighten retaining nut to 28 N·m (250 in. lbs.).

(9) Evacuate the refrigerant system. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFRIGERANT SYSTEM EVACUATE)

(10) Charge the refrigerant system. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFRIGERANT SYSTEM CHARGE)

(11) Install the instrument panel in the vehicle (Refer to 23 - BODY/INSTRUMENT PANEL - INSTALLATION).

(12) Connect the battery negative cable.

(13) Start the engine and check for proper operation of the heating and air conditioning systems.

## BLEND DOOR

## REMOVAL

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PER-**

**FORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN AN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Remove and disassemble the HVAC housing. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/DISTRIBUTION/HVAC HOUSING - REMOVAL) (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/DISTRIBUTION/HVAC HOUSING - DISASSEMBLY)

(2) Remove evaporator from lower case to ease access to plastic door shaft bushing.

(3) Pinch the retention tabs holding the blend door pivot shaft to the case. The 3 plastic tabs, located on the inside of the case, are part of the shaft retainer.

(4) Remove door(s).

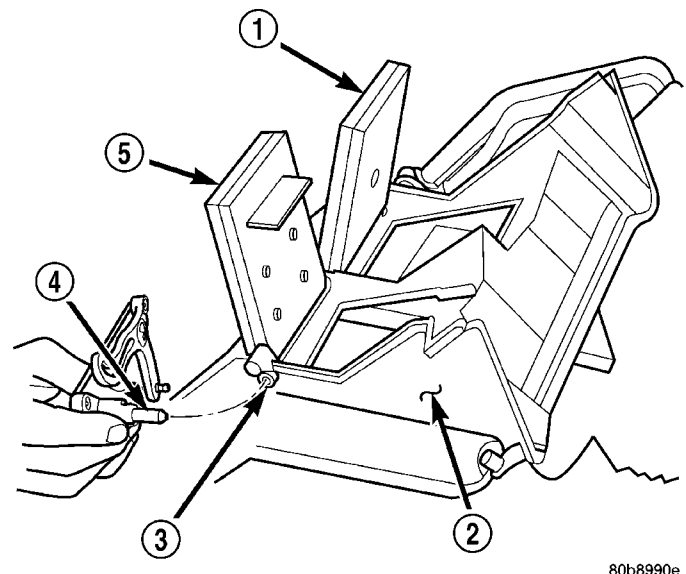
## INSTALLATION

(1) Install the blend door(s) by snapping the pivot shaft into the HVAC case.

(2) Install the evaporator in the lower case.

(3) Reassemble the HVAC housing and install in the vehicle. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/DISTRIBUTION/HVAC HOUSING - ASSEMBLY) (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/DISTRIBUTION/HVAC HOUSING - INSTALLATION)

**NOTE: The blend door sub-assembly is attached to the housing with 2 screws, and may be removed for service (Fig. 20).**



**Fig. 20 BLEND DOOR SUB-ASSEMBLY**

- 1 - PASSENGER SIDE BLEND DOOR
- 2 - BLEND DOOR SUB-ASSEMBLY
- 3 - DOOR PIVOT SHAFT BUSHING
- 4 - DOOR SHAFT LEVER
- 5 - DRIVER SIDE BLEND DOOR



## MODE DOOR

### REMOVAL

#### REMOVAL - PANEL OUTLET DOOR

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN AN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Remove and disassemble the HVAC housing. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/DISTRIBUTION/HVAC HOUSING - REMOVAL) (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/DISTRIBUTION/HVAC HOUSING - DISASSEMBLY)

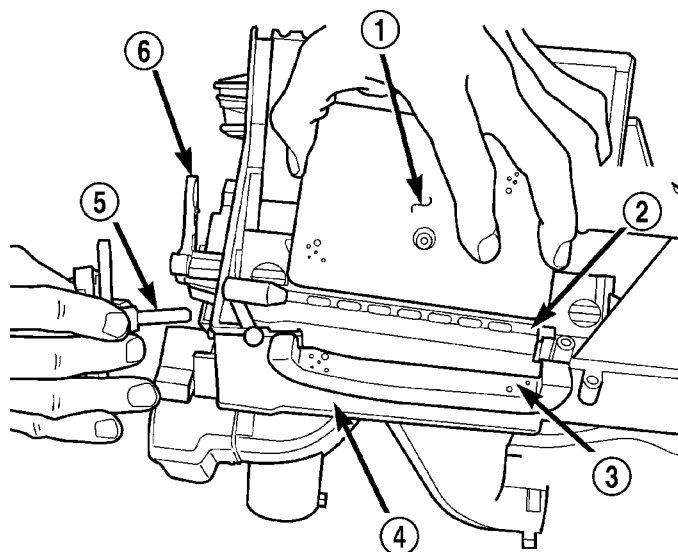
(2) Pinch the retention tabs holding the panel outlet door pivot shaft to the case. The 3 plastic tabs, located on the inside of the case, are part of the shaft retainer (Fig. 21).

(3) Using a trim stick or another suitable wide flat-bladed tool, gently pry the panel outlet door pivot shaft retainer from the pivot shaft.

(4) Remove the panel outlet door from the HVAC housing.

#### REMOVAL - HEAT/DEFROST DOOR

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY**



**Fig. 21 PANEL OUTLET DOOR**

80b8990f

- 1 - PANEL/OUTLET DOOR
- 2 - DOOR SHAFT
- 3 - FOAM SEAL (SPLIT)
- 4 - LOWER HOUSING
- 5 - PANEL OUTLET DOOR LEVER
- 6 - LEVER

**NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN AN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

(1) Remove and disassemble the HVAC housing. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/DISTRIBUTION/HVAC HOUSING - REMOVAL) (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/DISTRIBUTION/HVAC HOUSING - DISASSEMBLY)

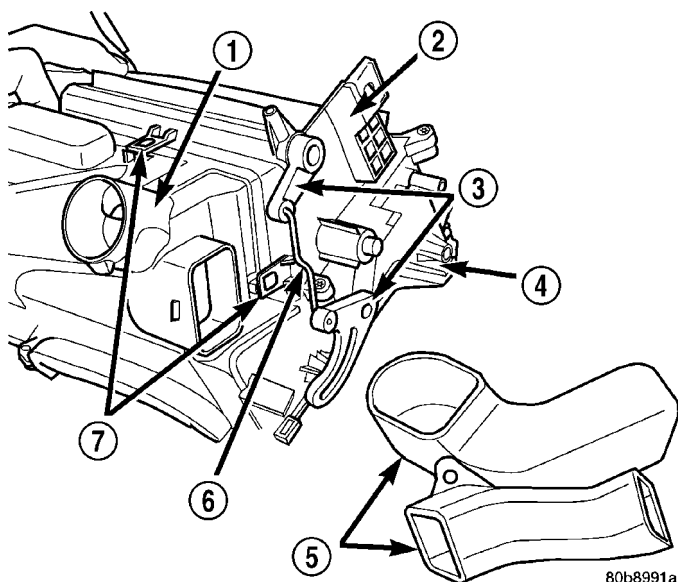
(2) Remove the evaporator, and styrofoam tray from the lower case.

(3) Place the HVAC housing upside down on a work bench.

(4) Unscrew and remove the 2 floor heat ducts.

## MODE DOOR (Continued)

(5) Unsnap and remove the duct adapter from the bottom of the heat/defrost door sub-assembly (Fig. 22).



**Fig. 22 HEAT/DEFROST DOOR DUCTS, AND ADAPTER**

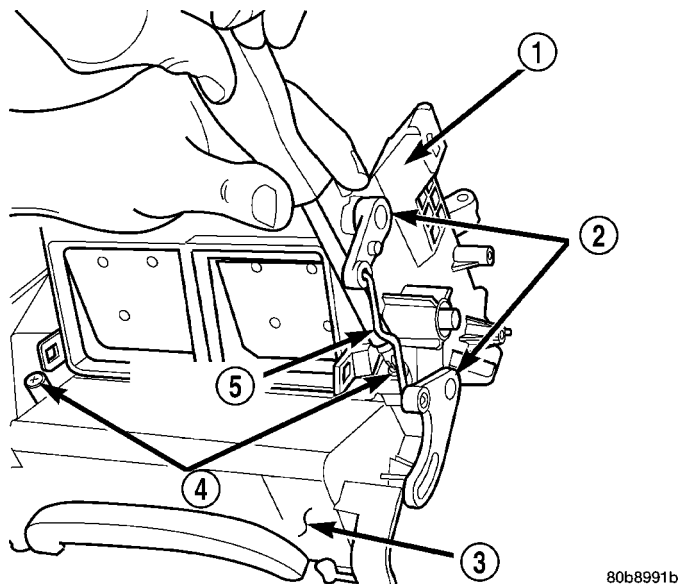
- 1 - FLOOR DUCT ADAPTER
- 2 - HEAT/DEFROST DOOR SUB-ASSEMBLY
- 3 - DOOR LEVERS
- 4 - LOWER HOUSING
- 5 - FLOOR DUCTS
- 6 - LINKAGE
- 7 - RETAINING TABS

(6) Gently pry the metal linkage from the heat/defrost door lever.

(7) Remove the heat/defrost door sub-assembly, which is attached to the housing with 4 screws (Fig. 23).

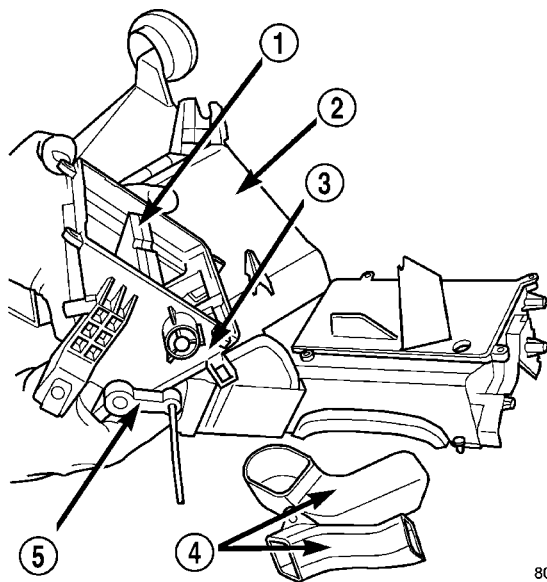
(8) Pinch the retention tabs holding the heat/defrost door pivot shaft lever to the case. The 3 plastic tabs, located on the inside of the case, are part of the shaft retainer.

(9) Remove the heat/defrost door (Fig. 24).



**Fig. 23 HEAT/DEFROST DOOR SUB-ASSEMBLY REMOVAL**

- 1 - HEAT/DEFROST DOOR SUB-ASSEMBLY
- 2 - LEVERS
- 3 - LOWER HOUSING
- 4 - SCREWS
- 5 - LINKAGE



**Fig. 24 HEAT/DEFROST DOOR REMOVAL**

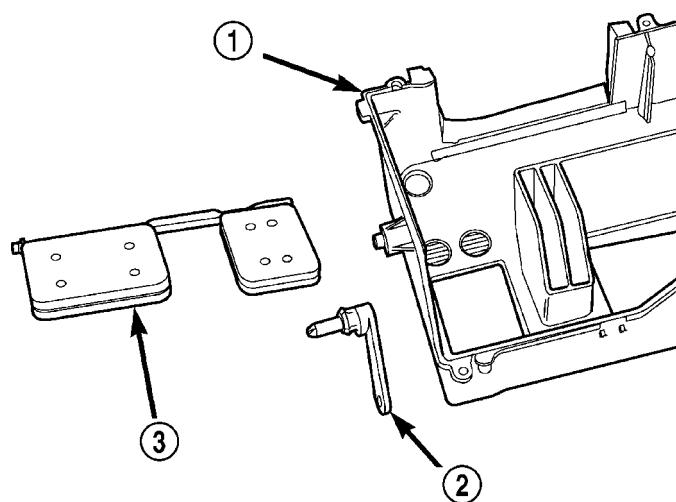
- 1 - HEAT/DEFROST DOOR
- 2 - LOWER HOUSING
- 3 - HEAT/DEFROST DOOR SUB-ASSEMBLY
- 4 - FLOOR DUCTS
- 5 - DOOR LEVER

## MODE DOOR (Continued)

## REMOVAL - PANEL/DEFROST DOOR

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN AN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

- (1) Remove and disassemble the HVAC housing. See HVAC Housing in this group for the procedures.
- (2) Pinch the retention tabs holding the panel/defrost door pivot shaft to the case. The 3 plastic tabs, located on the inside of the case, are part of the shaft retainer (Fig. 25).



**Fig. 25 PANEL/DEFROST DOOR**

- 1 - UPPER HOUSING
- 2 - LEVER
- 3 - PANEL/DEFROST MODE DOOR

- (3) Using a trim stick or another suitable wide flat-bladed tool, gently pry the panel/defrost door pivot shaft retainer from the pivot shaft.

- (4) Remove the panel/defrost door from the HVAC housing.

## INSTALLATION

## INSTALLATION - PANEL OUTLET DOOR

- (1) Snap the panel outlet door pivot shaft retainer on the pivot shaft.
- (2) Attach the panel outlet door pivot shaft to the HVAC case.
- (3) Reassemble the HVAC housing and install in the vehicle. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/DISTRIBUTION/HVAC HOUSING - ASSEMBLY) (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/DISTRIBUTION/HVAC HOUSING - INSTALLATION)

## INSTALLATION - HEAT/DEFROST DOOR

- (1) Install the heat/defrost door by snapping the heat/defrost door pivot shaft into the HVAC case.
- (2) Install the heat/defrost door sub-assembly and tighten the mounting screws to 2.2 N·m (20 in. lbs.).
- (3) Attach the metal linkage to the heat/defrost door lever.
- (4) Snap the duct adapter to the bottom of the heat/defrost door sub-assembly.
- (5) Install the 2 floor heat ducts and tighten the mounting screws to 2.2 N·m (20 in. lbs.).
- (6) Install the evaporator, and styrofoam tray in the lower case.
- (7) Reassemble the HVAC housing and install in the vehicle. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/DISTRIBUTION/HVAC HOUSING - ASSEMBLY) (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/DISTRIBUTION/HVAC HOUSING - INSTALLATION)

## INSTALLATION - PANEL/DEFROST DOOR

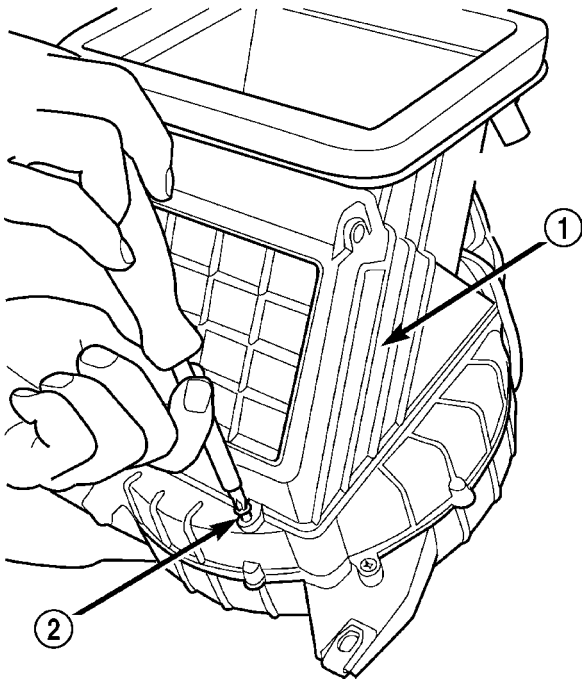
- (1) Snap the panel/defrost door pivot shaft retainer on the pivot shaft.
- (2) Attach the panel/defrost door pivot shaft to the HVAC case.
- (3) Reassemble the HVAC housing and install in the vehicle. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/DISTRIBUTION/HVAC HOUSING - ASSEMBLY) (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/DISTRIBUTION/HVAC HOUSING - INSTALLATION)

## RECIRCULATION DOOR

### REMOVAL

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN AN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

- (1) Remove the HVAC housing from the vehicle. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/DISTRIBUTION/HVAC HOUSING - REMOVAL)
- (2) Place the HVAC housing right side up on the work bench.
- (3) Unplug the wire/vacuum connector from the recirculation door actuator.
- (4) Remove the 2 screws fastening the recirculation door sub-assembly to the main housing (Fig. 26).



80b897cd

**Fig. 26 RECIRCULATION DOOR HOUSING**

- 1 - RECIRCULATION DOOR HOUSING  
2 - ATTACHING SCREWS

(5) Raise the front of the door sub-assembly while releasing the 2 tabs holding the rear to the main housing, and remove the recirculation door housing.

(6) Remove the electric/vacuum actuator from the recirculation door sub-assembly and set aside.

(7) Pinch the retention tabs holding the recirculation door pivot shaft to the case. The 3 plastic tabs, located on the inside of the case, are part of the shaft retainer.

(8) Remove the recirculation door from the recirculation air door housing.

### INSTALLATION

(1) Install the recirculation door in the recirculation air door housing by snapping the pivot shaft retention tabs into the case.

(2) Install the electric/vacuum actuator on the recirculation door sub-assembly. Check door for binding after replacement.

(3) Install the recirculation door housing on the HVAC case and tighten the 2 screws to 2.2 N-m (20 in. lbs.).

(4) Plug in the wire/vacuum connector to the recirculation door actuator.

(5) Install the HVAC housing in the vehicle. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/DISTRIBUTION/HVAC HOUSING - INSTALLATION)

# PLUMBING

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>PLUMBING</b>		<b>INSTALLATION</b>	
DESCRIPTION - REFRIGERANT LINE	53	INSTALLATION - 2.7L TURBO DIESEL	65
OPERATION - REFRIGERANT LINE	53	INSTALLATION	65
WARNING	53	<b>A/C EXPANSION VALVE</b>	
CAUTION		DESCRIPTION	66
CAUTION	54	OPERATION	66
REFRIGERANT HOSES/LINES/TUBES		DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - A/C EXPANSION	
PRECAUTIONS	54	VALVE	66
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - REFRIGERANT		REMOVAL	66
SYSTEM LEAKS	55	INSTALLATION	67
STANDARD PROCEDURE		<b>LIQUID LINE</b>	
STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFRIGERANT		REMOVAL	
SYSTEM SERVICE EQUIPMENT	55	REMOVAL	67
STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFRIGERANT		REMOVAL - 2.7L TURBO DIESEL	67
RECOVERY	56	INSTALLATION	
STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFRIGERANT		INSTALLATION	67
SYSTEM EVACUATE	56	INSTALLATION - 2.7L TURBO DIESEL	67
STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFRIGERANT		<b>SUCTION LINE</b>	
SYSTEM CHARGE	57	REMOVAL	
SPECIFICATIONS		REMOVAL	68
CHARGE CAPACITY	58	REMOVAL - 2.7L TURBO DIESEL	68
<b>A/C COMPRESSOR</b>		INSTALLATION	
DESCRIPTION		INSTALLATION	69
DESCRIPTION - A/C COMPRESSOR	58	INSTALLATION - 2.7L TURBO DIESEL	69
DESCRIPTION - HIGH PRESSURE RELIEF		<b>A/C EVAPORATOR</b>	
VALVE	58	DESCRIPTION	70
OPERATION		OPERATION	70
OPERATION - A/C COMPRESSOR	58	REMOVAL	70
OPERATION - HIGH PRESSURE RELIEF		INSTALLATION	70
VALVE	58	<b>HEATER CORE</b>	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - COMPRESSOR		DESCRIPTION	71
NOISE	59	OPERATION	71
REMOVAL		REMOVAL	71
REMOVAL	59	INSTALLATION	73
REMOVAL - 2.7L TURBO DIESEL	60	<b>RECEIVER / DRIER</b>	
INSTALLATION		DESCRIPTION	73
INSTALLATION	61	OPERATION	73
INSTALLATION - 2.7L TURBO DIESEL	62	REMOVAL	73
<b>A/C CONDENSER</b>		INSTALLATION	75
DESCRIPTION	62	<b>REFRIGERANT</b>	
OPERATION	62	DESCRIPTION	75
REMOVAL	63	OPERATION	75
INSTALLATION	63	<b>REFRIGERANT OIL</b>	
<b>A/C DISCHARGE LINE</b>		DESCRIPTION	76
REMOVAL		OPERATION	76
REMOVAL - 2.7L TURBO DIESEL	64	STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFRIGERANT	
REMOVAL	65	OIL LEVEL	76



## PLUMBING

### DESCRIPTION - REFRIGERANT LINE

The refrigerant lines and hoses are used to carry the refrigerant between the various air conditioning system components. A barrier hose design with a nylon tube, which is sandwiched between rubber layers, is used for the R-134a air conditioning system on this vehicle. This nylon tube helps to further contain the R-134a refrigerant, which has a smaller molecular structure than R-12 refrigerant. The ends of the refrigerant hoses are made from lightweight aluminum or steel, and commonly use braze-less fittings.

Any kinks or sharp bends in the refrigerant plumbing will reduce the capacity of the entire air conditioning system. Kinks and sharp bends reduce the flow of refrigerant in the system. A good rule for the flexible hose refrigerant lines is to keep the radius of all bends at least ten times the diameter of the hose. In addition, the flexible hose refrigerant lines should be routed so they are at least 80 millimeters (3 inches) from the exhaust manifold.

### OPERATION - REFRIGERANT LINE

High pressures are produced in the refrigerant system when the air conditioning compressor is operating. Extreme care must be exercised to make sure that each of the refrigerant system connections is pressure-tight and leak free. It is a good practice to inspect all flexible hose refrigerant lines at least once a year to make sure they are in good condition and properly routed.

The refrigerant lines and hoses cannot be repaired and, if faulty or damaged, they must be replaced.

## WARNING

**WARNING: THE AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM CONTAINS REFRIGERANT UNDER HIGH PRESSURE. SEVERE PERSONAL INJURY MAY RESULT FROM IMPROPER SERVICE PROCEDURES. REPAIRS SHOULD ONLY BE PERFORMED BY QUALIFIED SERVICE PERSONNEL.**

**AVOID BREATHING THE REFRIGERANT AND REFRIGERANT OIL VAPOR OR MIST. EXPOSURE MAY IRRITATE THE EYES, NOSE, AND/OR THROAT. WEAR EYE PROTECTION WHEN SERVICING THE AIR CONDITIONING REFRIGERANT SYSTEM. SERIOUS EYE INJURY CAN RESULT FROM DIRECT CONTACT WITH THE REFRIGERANT. IF EYE CONTACT OCCURS, SEEK MEDICAL ATTENTION IMMEDIATELY.**

**DO NOT EXPOSE THE REFRIGERANT TO OPEN FLAME. POISONOUS GAS IS CREATED WHEN REFRIGERANT IS BURNED. AN ELECTRONIC LEAK DETECTOR IS RECOMMENDED.**

**IF ACCIDENTAL SYSTEM DISCHARGE OCCURS, VENTILATE THE WORK AREA BEFORE RESUMING SERVICE. LARGE AMOUNTS OF REFRIGERANT RELEASED IN A CLOSED WORK AREA WILL DISPLACE THE OXYGEN AND CAUSE SUFFOCATION. THE EVAPORATION RATE OF R-134a REFRIGERANT AT AVERAGE TEMPERATURE AND ALTITUDE IS EXTREMELY HIGH. AS A RESULT, ANYTHING THAT COMES IN CONTACT WITH THE REFRIGERANT WILL FREEZE. ALWAYS PROTECT THE SKIN OR DELICATE OBJECTS FROM DIRECT CONTACT WITH THE REFRIGERANT.**

**THE R-134a SERVICE EQUIPMENT OR THE VEHICLE REFRIGERANT SYSTEM SHOULD NOT BE PRESSURE TESTED OR LEAK TESTED WITH COMPRESSED AIR. SOME MIXTURES OF AIR AND R-134a HAVE BEEN SHOWN TO BE COMBUSTIBLE AT ELEVATED PRESSURES. THESE MIXTURES ARE POTENTIALLY DANGEROUS, AND MAY RESULT IN FIRE OR EXPLOSION CAUSING INJURY OR PROPERTY DAMAGE.**



## PLUMBING (Continued)

## CAUTION

## CAUTION

**CAUTION:** Liquid refrigerant is corrosive to metal surfaces. Follow the operating instructions supplied with the service equipment being used.

Never add R-12 to a refrigerant system designed to use R-134a. Damage to the system will result.

R-12 refrigerant oil must not be mixed with R-134a refrigerant oil. They are not compatible.

Do not use R-12 equipment or parts on the R-134a system. Damage to the system will result.

Do not overcharge the refrigerant system. This will cause excessive compressor head pressure and can cause noise and system failure.

Recover the refrigerant before opening any fitting or connection. Open the fittings with caution, even after the system has been discharged. Never open or loosen a connection before recovering the refrigerant.

The refrigerant system must always be evacuated before charging.

Do not open the refrigerant system or uncap a replacement component until you are ready to service the system. This will prevent contamination in the system.

Before disconnecting a component, clean the outside of the fittings thoroughly to prevent contamination from entering the refrigerant system.

Immediately after disconnecting a component from the refrigerant system, seal the open fittings with a cap or plug.

Before connecting an open refrigerant fitting, always install a new seal or gasket. Coat the fitting and seal with clean refrigerant oil before connecting.

Do not remove the sealing caps from a replacement component until it is to be installed.

When installing a refrigerant line, avoid sharp bends that may restrict refrigerant flow. Position the refrigerant lines away from exhaust system components or any sharp edges, which may damage the line.

Tighten refrigerant fittings only to the specified torque. The aluminum fittings used in the refrigerant system will not tolerate overtightening.

When disconnecting a refrigerant fitting, use a wrench on both halves of the fitting. This will prevent twisting of the refrigerant lines or tubes.

Refrigerant oil will absorb moisture from the atmosphere if left uncapped. Do not open a container of refrigerant oil until you are ready to use it. Replace the cap on the oil container immediately after using. Store refrigerant oil only in a clean, airtight, and moisture-free container.

Keep service tools and the work area clean. Contamination of the refrigerant system through careless work habits must be avoided.

## REFRIGERANT HOSES/LINES/TUBES PRECAUTIONS

Kinks or sharp bends in the refrigerant plumbing will reduce the capacity of the entire system. High pressures are produced in the system when it is operating. Extreme care must be exercised to make sure that all refrigerant system connections are pressure tight.

A good rule for the flexible hose refrigerant lines is to keep the radius of all bends at least ten times the diameter of the hose. Sharp bends will reduce the flow of refrigerant. The flexible hose lines should be routed so they are at least 80 millimeters (3 inches) from the exhaust manifold. It is a good practice to inspect all flexible refrigerant system hose lines at least once a year to make sure they are in good condition and properly routed.

There are two types of refrigerant fittings:

- All fittings with O-rings need to be coated with refrigerant oil before installation. Use only O-rings that are the correct size and approved for use with R-134a refrigerant. Failure to do so may result in a leak.

- Unified plumbing connections with gaskets cannot be serviced with O-rings. The gaskets are not reusable and new gaskets do not require lubrication before installing.

Using the proper tools when making a refrigerant plumbing connection is very important. Improper tools or improper use of the tools can damage the refrigerant fittings. Always use two wrenches when loosening or tightening tube fittings. Use one wrench to hold one side of the connection stationary, while loosening or tightening the other side of the connection with a second wrench.

The refrigerant must be recovered completely from the system before opening any fitting or connection. Open the fittings with caution, even after the refrigerant has been recovered. If any pressure is noticed as a fitting is loosened, tighten the fitting and recover the refrigerant from the system again.

Do not discharge refrigerant into the atmosphere. Use an R-134a refrigerant recovery/recycling device that meets SAE Standard J2210.

The refrigerant system will remain chemically stable as long as pure, moisture-free R-134a refrigerant and refrigerant oil is used. Dirt, moisture, or air can upset this chemical stability. Operational troubles or serious damage can occur if foreign material is present in the refrigerant system.

When it is necessary to open the refrigerant system, have everything needed to service the system

## PLUMBING (Continued)

ready. The refrigerant system should not be left open to the atmosphere any longer than necessary. Cap or plug all lines and fittings as soon as they are opened to prevent the entrance of dirt and moisture. All lines and components in parts stock should be capped or sealed until they are to be installed.

All tools, including the refrigerant recycling equipment, the manifold gauge set, and test hoses should be kept clean and dry. All tools and equipment must be designed for R-134a refrigerant.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - REFRIGERANT SYSTEM LEAKS

**WARNING: REVIEW THE WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS IN THE FRONT OF THIS SECTION BEFORE PERFORMING THE FOLLOWING OPERATION. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - WARNING) (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - CAUTION)**

If the air conditioning system is not cooling properly, determine if the refrigerant system is fully-charged. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - A/C PERFORMANCE)

An electronic leak detector designed for R-134a refrigerant is recommended for locating and confirming refrigerant system leaks. Refer to the operating instructions supplied by the equipment manufacturer for proper care and use of this equipment.

An oily residue on or near refrigerant system lines, connector fittings, components, or component seals can indicate the general location of a possible refrigerant leak. However, the exact leak location should be confirmed with an electronic leak detector prior to component repair or replacement.

To detect a leak in the refrigerant system, perform one of the following procedures:

### SYSTEM EMPTY

(1) Evacuate the refrigerant system. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFRIGERANT SYSTEM EVACUATE)

(2) Connect and dispense 0.283 kilograms (0.625 pounds or 10 ounces) of R-134a refrigerant into the evacuated refrigerant system. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFRIGERANT SYSTEM CHARGE)

(3) Position the vehicle in a wind-free work area. This will aid in detecting small leaks.

(4) With the engine not running, use a electronic R-134a leak detector and search for leaks. Because R-134a refrigerant is heavier than air, the leak detec-

tor probe should be moved slowly along the bottom side of all refrigerant lines, connector fittings and components.

(5) To inspect the evaporator coil for leaks, insert the electronic leak detector probe into the center instrument panel outlet. Set the blower motor switch to the lowest speed position, the A/C button in the On position, and select the Recirculation Mode.

### SYSTEM LOW

(1) Position the vehicle in a wind-free work area. This will aid in detecting small leaks.

(2) Bring the refrigerant system up to operating temperature and pressure. This is done by allowing the engine to run with the air conditioning system turned on for five minutes.

(3) With the engine not running, use a electronic R-134a leak detector and search for leaks. Because R-134a refrigerant is heavier than air, the leak detector probe should be moved slowly along the bottom side of all refrigerant lines, connector fittings and components.

(4) To inspect the evaporator coil for leaks, insert the electronic leak detector probe into the center instrument panel outlet. Set the blower motor switch to the lowest speed position, the A/C button in the On position, and select the Recirculation Mode.

## STANDARD PROCEDURE

### STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFRIGERANT SYSTEM SERVICE EQUIPMENT

**WARNING: EYE PROTECTION MUST BE WORN WHEN SERVICING AN AIR CONDITIONING REFRIGERANT SYSTEM. TURN OFF (ROTATE CLOCKWISE) ALL VALVES ON THE EQUIPMENT BEING USED, BEFORE CONNECTING TO OR DISCONNECTING FROM THE REFRIGERANT SYSTEM. FAILURE TO OBSERVE THESE WARNINGS MAY RESULT IN PERSONAL INJURY.**

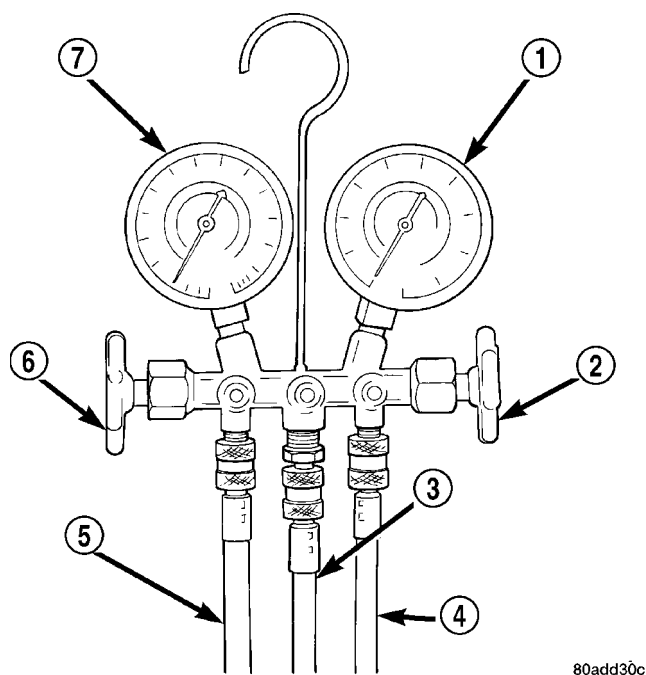
**WARNING: REVIEW THE WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS IN THE FRONT OF THIS SECTION BEFORE PERFORMING THE FOLLOWING OPERATION. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - WARNING) (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - CAUTION)**

When servicing the air conditioning system, a R-134a refrigerant recovery/recycling/charging station that meets SAE Standard J2210 must be used. Contact an automotive service equipment supplier for refrigerant recovery/recycling/charging equipment. Refer to the operating instructions supplied by the

## PLUMBING (Continued)

equipment manufacturer for proper care and use of this equipment.

A manifold gauge set may be needed with some recovery/recycling/charging equipment (Fig. 1). The service hoses on the gauge set being used should have manual (turn wheel), or automatic back-flow valves at the service port connector ends. This will prevent refrigerant from being released into the atmosphere.



**Fig. 1 MANIFOLD GAUGE SET - TYPICAL**

- 1 - HIGH PRESSURE GAUGE
- 2 - VALVE
- 3 - VACUUM/REFRIGERANT HOSE (YELLOW W/ BLACK STRIPE)
- 4 - HIGH PRESSURE HOSE (RED W/ BLACK STRIPE)
- 5 - LOW PRESSURE HOSE (BLUE W/ BLACK STRIPE)
- 6 - VALVE
- 7 - LOW PRESSURE GAUGE

## MANIFOLD GAUGE SET CONNECTIONS

**CAUTION:** Do not use an R-12 manifold gauge set on an R-134a system. The refrigerants are not compatible and system damage will result.

**LOW PRESSURE GAUGE HOSE** The low pressure hose (Blue with Black stripe) attaches to the suction service port. This port is located on the suction line near the dash panel.

**HIGH PRESSURE GAUGE HOSE** The high pressure hose (Red with Black stripe) attaches to the discharge service port. This port is located on the discharge line between the compressor and the condenser inlet.

**RECOVERY/RECYCLING/EVACUATION/CHARGING HOSE** The center manifold hose (Yellow, or White, with Black stripe) is used to recover, evacu-

ate, and charge the refrigerant system. When the low or high pressure valves on the manifold gauge set are opened, the refrigerant in the system will escape through this hose.

## STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFRIGERANT RECOVERY

**WARNING: REVIEW THE WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS IN THE FRONT OF THIS SECTION BEFORE PERFORMING THE FOLLOWING OPERATION.** (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - WARNING) (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - CAUTION)

A R-134a refrigerant recovery/recycling/charging station that meets SAE Standard J2210 must be used to recover the refrigerant from an R-134a refrigerant system. Refer to the operating instructions supplied by the equipment manufacturer for the proper care and use of this equipment.

## STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFRIGERANT SYSTEM EVACUATE

**WARNING: REVIEW THE WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS IN THE FRONT OF THIS SECTION BEFORE PERFORMING THE FOLLOWING OPERATION.** (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - WARNING) (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - CAUTION)

If the refrigerant system has been open to the atmosphere, it must be evacuated before the system can be charged. If moisture and air enters the system and becomes mixed with the refrigerant, the compressor head pressure will rise above acceptable operating levels. This will reduce the performance of the air conditioner and damage the compressor. Evacuating the refrigerant system will remove the air and boil the moisture out of the system at near room temperature. To evacuate the refrigerant system, use the following procedure:

(1) Connect a R-134a refrigerant recovery/recycling/charging station that meets SAE Standard J2210 and a manifold gauge set to the refrigerant system of the vehicle.

(2) Open the low and high side valves and start the charging station vacuum pump. When the suction gauge reads 88 kPa (26 in. Hg.) vacuum or greater, close all of the valves and turn off the vacuum pump.

(a) If the refrigerant system fails to reach the specified vacuum, the system has a leak that must be corrected. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CON-

## PLUMBING (Continued)

**CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - REFRIGERANT SYSTEM LEAKS)**

(b) If the refrigerant system maintains the specified vacuum for five minutes, restart the vacuum pump, open the suction and discharge valves and evacuate the system for an additional ten minutes.

(3) Close all of the valves, and turn off the charging station vacuum pump.

(4) The refrigerant system is now ready to be charged with R-134a refrigerant. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFRIGERANT SYSTEM CHARGE)

**STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFRIGERANT SYSTEM CHARGE**

**WARNING: REVIEW THE WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS IN THE FRONT OF THIS SECTION BEFORE PERFORMING THE FOLLOWING OPERATION. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - WARNING) (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - CAUTION)**

After the refrigerant system has been tested for leaks and evacuated, a refrigerant charge can be injected into the system. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - SPECIFICATIONS - CHARGE CAPACITY)

A R-134a refrigerant recovery/recycling/charging station that meets SAE Standard J2210 must be used to charge the refrigerant system with R-134a refrigerant. Refer to the operating instructions supplied by the equipment manufacturer for proper care and use of this equipment.

**PARTIAL CHARGE METHOD**

**WARNING: REVIEW THE WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS IN THE FRONT OF THIS SECTION BEFORE PERFORMING THE FOLLOWING OPERATION. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - WARNING) (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - CAUTION)**

The partial charge method is used to add a partial charge to a refrigerant system that is low on refrigerant. To perform this procedure the evaporator inlet and outlet tube temperatures are measured. The temperature difference is measured with a temperature meter with one or two clamp-on thermocouple probes. The difference between the evaporator inlet and outlet tube temperatures will determine the amount of refrigerant needed.

Before adding a partial refrigerant charge, check for refrigerant system leaks. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - DIAGNOSIS

AND TESTING - REFRIGERANT SYSTEM LEAKS) If a leak is found, make the necessary repairs before attempting a full or partial refrigerant charge.

(1) Attach a manifold gauge set to the refrigerant system service ports.

(2) Attach the two clamp-on thermocouple probes to the inlet and outlet tubes of the evaporator coil.

- If a single thermocouple probe is used, attach the probe to the evaporator inlet tube just before the collar of the refrigerant line connector fitting. The probe must make contact with the bottom surface of the evaporator inlet tube.

- If dual thermocouple probes are used, attach probe 1 to the evaporator inlet tube, and probe 2 to the evaporator outlet tube. Attach both probes to the evaporator tubes just before the collar of the refrigerant line connector fittings. The probes must make contact with the bottom surfaces of the evaporator inlet and outlet tubes.

(3) Open all of the windows or doors of the passenger compartment.

(4) Set the A/C button on the A/C Heater controls to the on position, the temperature control knob in the full cool position, select Recirculation Mode, and place the blower motor switch in the highest speed position.

(5) Start the engine and hold the engine idle speed at 1,000 rpm. Allow the engine to warm up to normal operating temperature.

(6) The compressor clutch may cycle, depending upon ambient temperature, humidity, and the refrigerant system charge level.

(7) Hold the engine idle speed at 1,000 rpm.

(8) Allow three to five minutes for the refrigerant system to stabilize, then record the temperatures of the evaporator inlet and outlet tubes.

- If a single probe is used, record the temperature of the evaporator inlet tube. Then remove the probe from the inlet tube and attach it to the evaporator outlet tube just before the collar of the refrigerant line connector fitting. The probe must make contact with the bottom surface of the evaporator outlet tube. Allow the thermocouple and meter time to stabilize, then record the temperature of the evaporator outlet tube. Subtract the inlet tube temperature reading from the outlet tube temperature reading.

- If dual probes are used, record the temperatures of both the evaporator inlet and outlet tubes. Then subtract the inlet tube temperature reading from the outlet tube temperature reading.

(9) If the measured temperature differential is higher than 22° C to 26° C (40° F to 47° F), add 0.4 kilograms (14 ounces) of refrigerant.

(10) Allow three to five minutes for the refrigerant system to stabilize, then take a second set of thermo-



## PLUMBING (Continued)

couple measurements. Record the temperature difference to determine if an additional charge is required.

(11) Record the compressor discharge pressure. If the reading is higher than the pressure shown in the

Compressor Discharge Pressure Chart, the system could be overcharged. If the reading is equal to, or lower, than the pressure shown in the chart, continue with this procedure.

Compressor Discharge Pressure Chart						
Ambient Temperature	16°C (60°F)	21°C (70°F)	27°C (80°F)	32°C (90°F)	38°C (100°F)	43°C (110°F)
Compressor Discharge Pressure	1378 kPa (200 psi)	1516 kPa (220 psi)	1723 kPa (250psi)	1930 kPa (280 psi)	2206 kPa (320 psi)	2413 kPa (350 psi)

(12) **EXAMPLE:** The ambient temperature is 21° C (70° F). The evaporator inlet tube temperature is 12° C (54° F) and the evaporator outlet tube temperature is 10° C (50° F). Subtract the inlet tube temperature from the outlet tube temperature. The difference is -2° C (-4° F). With a -2° C (-4° F) temperature differential at 21° C (70° F) ambient temperature, the system is fully charged.

(13) Add enough refrigerant to bring the refrigerant system up to a full charge.

caused by condenser air flow restriction or an overcharge of refrigerant.

## OPERATION

### OPERATION - A/C COMPRESSOR

The compressor is driven by the engine through an electric clutch, drive pulley and belt arrangement. The compressor is lubricated by refrigerant oil that is circulated throughout the refrigerant system with the refrigerant.

The compressor draws in low-pressure refrigerant vapor from the evaporator through its suction port. It then compresses the refrigerant into a high-pressure, high-temperature refrigerant vapor, which is then pumped to the condenser through the compressor discharge port.

The compressor cannot be repaired. If faulty or damaged, the entire compressor assembly must be replaced. The compressor clutch, pulley, and coil, are available for service.

### OPERATION - HIGH PRESSURE RELIEF VALVE

The high pressure relief valve vents the system when a discharge pressure of 3445 to 4135 kPa (500 to 600 psi) or above is reached. The valve closes when a minimum discharge pressure of 2756 kPa (400 psi) is reached.

The high pressure relief valve vents only enough refrigerant to reduce the system pressure, and then re-seats itself. The majority of the refrigerant is conserved in the system. If the valve vents refrigerant, it does not mean that the valve is faulty.

The high pressure relief valve is a factory-calibrated unit. The valve cannot be adjusted or repaired, and must not be removed or otherwise disturbed. The valve is only serviced as a part of the compressor assembly.

## SPECIFICATIONS

### CHARGE CAPACITY

The R-134a refrigerant system charge capacity for this vehicle is 0.765 kilograms (1.687 pounds/27 ounces).

## A/C COMPRESSOR

### DESCRIPTION

#### DESCRIPTION - A/C COMPRESSOR

The air conditioning system uses a Nippondenso 10PA17 ten cylinder, double-acting swash plate-type compressor on all models. This compressor has a fixed displacement of 170 cubic centimeters (10.374 cubic inches), and has both the suction and discharge ports located on the cylinder head. A label identifying the use of R-134a refrigerant is located on the compressor.

#### DESCRIPTION - HIGH PRESSURE RELIEF VALVE

A high pressure relief valve is located on the compressor manifold, which is on the side of the compressor. This mechanical valve is designed to vent refrigerant from the system to protect against damage to the compressor and other system components,

## A/C COMPRESSOR (Continued)

**DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - COMPRESSOR NOISE**

When investigating an air conditioning related noise, you must first know the conditions under which the noise occurs. These conditions include: weather, vehicle speed, transmission in gear or neutral, engine speed, engine temperature, and any other special conditions. Noises that develop during air conditioning operation can often be misleading. For example: What sounds like a failed front bearing or connecting rod, may be caused by loose bolts, nuts, mounting brackets, or a loose compressor clutch assembly.

Drive belts are speed sensitive. At different engine speeds and depending upon belt tension, belts can develop noises that are mistaken for a compressor noise. Improper belt tension can cause a misleading noise when the compressor clutch is engaged, which may not occur when the compressor clutch is disengaged. Check the serpentine drive belt condition and tension as described in Cooling before beginning this procedure.

(1) Select a quiet area for testing. Duplicate the complaint conditions as much as possible. Switch the compressor on and off several times to clearly identify the compressor noise. Listen to the compressor while the clutch is engaged and disengaged. Probe the compressor with an engine stethoscope or a long screwdriver with the handle held to your ear to better localize the source of the noise.

(2) Loosen all of the compressor mounting hardware and retighten. Tighten the compressor clutch mounting nut. Be certain that the clutch coil is mounted securely to the compressor, and that the clutch plate and pulley are properly aligned and have the correct air gap. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/CONTROLS/A/C COMPRESSOR CLUTCH - INSTALLATION)

(3) To duplicate a high-ambient temperature condition (high head pressure), restrict the air flow through the condenser. Install a manifold gauge set to be certain that the discharge pressure does not exceed 2760 kPa (400 psi).

(4) Check the refrigerant system plumbing for incorrect routing, rubbing or interference, which can cause unusual noises. Also check the refrigerant lines for kinks or sharp bends that will restrict refrigerant flow, which can cause noises. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - CAUTION - REFRIGERANT HOSES/LINES/TUBES PRECAUTIONS)

(5) If the noise is from opening and closing of the high pressure relief valve, reclaim, evacuate, and recharge the refrigerant system. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFRIGERANT RECOVERY)

(Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFRIGERANT SYSTEM EVACUATE) (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFRIGERANT SYSTEM CHARGE) If the high pressure relief valve still does not seat properly, replace the a/c compressor. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING/A/C COMPRESSOR - REMOVAL)

(6) If the noise is from liquid slugging on the suction line, check the refrigerant oil level and the refrigerant system charge. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING/REFRIGERANT OIL - STANDARD PROCEDURE) (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - SPECIFICATIONS - CHARGE CAPACITY).

(7) If the noise continues, replace the compressor and repeat Step 1.

**REMOVAL****REMOVAL**

The compressor may be removed and repositioned without disconnecting the refrigerant lines or discharging the refrigerant system. Discharging is not necessary if servicing the compressor clutch or clutch coil, the engine, the cylinder head, or the generator.

**WARNING: REVIEW THE WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS IN THE FRONT OF THIS SECTION BEFORE PERFORMING THE FOLLOWING OPERATION. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - WARNING) (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - CAUTION)**

(1) Recover the refrigerant from the system. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFRIGERANT RECOVERY)

(2) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(3) Remove the serpentine drive belt. Refer to Cooling for the procedures.

**NOTE: With the 4.0L engine it is necessary to remove the following two additional items.**

(4) Remove the air cleaner assembly (Refer to 9 - ENGINE/AIR INTAKE SYSTEM/AIR CLEANER HOUSING - REMOVAL).

(5) Remove and set aside the power steering pump. It is not necessary to disconnect the lines or remove the pump from the vehicle.

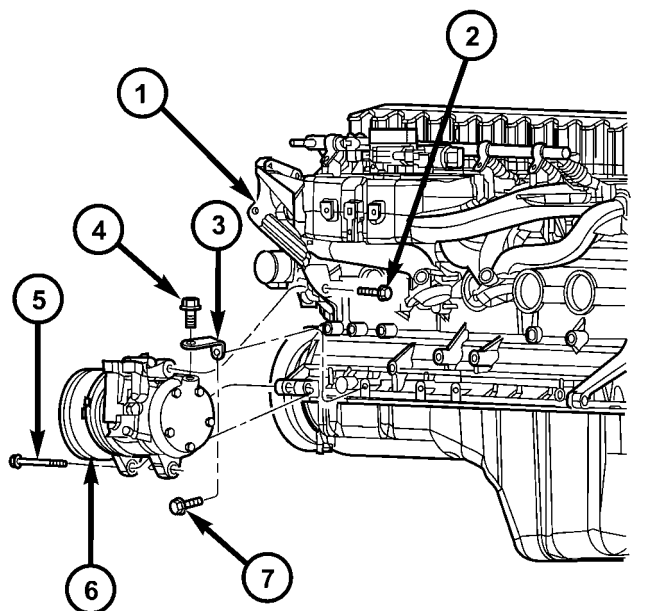
(6) Unplug the compressor clutch coil wire harness connector.



## A/C COMPRESSOR (Continued)

(7) Remove the (2) refrigerant line retaining bolts that secure the suction line and discharge line to the compressor. Install plugs in, or tape over all of the opened refrigerant fittings.

(8) Remove the bolts that secure the compressor (Fig. 2) or (Fig. 3) and (Fig. 4).



809e76c1

**Fig. 2 COMPRESSOR REMOVE/INSTALL - 4.0L ENGINE**

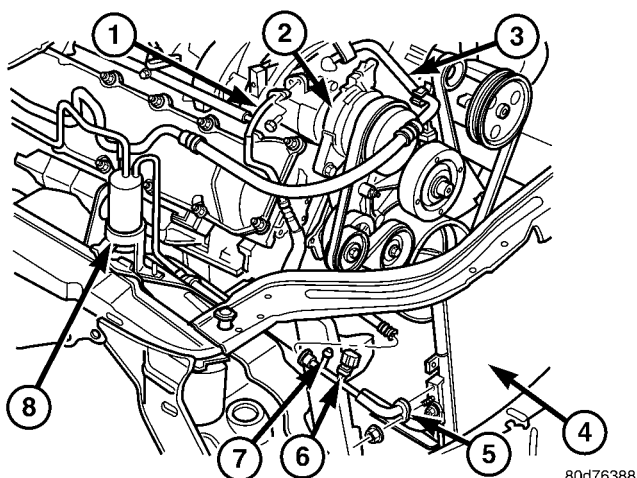
- 1 - POWER STEERING PUMP MOUNTING BRACKET
- 2 - BOLT
- 3 - BRACE
- 4 - BOLT
- 5 - BOLT
- 6 - A/C COMPRESSOR
- 7 - BOLT

(9) Remove the compressor.

## REMOVAL - 2.7L TURBO DIESEL

**WARNING: REVIEW THE WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS IN THE FRONT OF THIS SECTION BEFORE PERFORMING THE FOLLOWING OPERATION. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - WARNING) (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - CAUTION)**

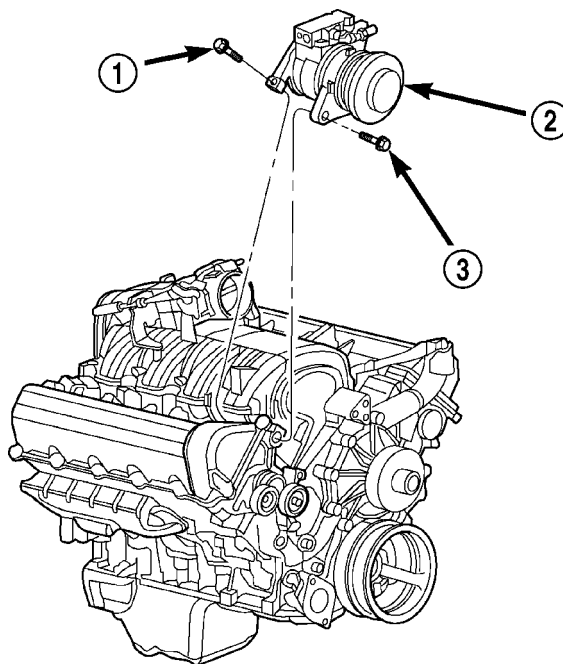
- (1) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (2) Recover the refrigerant from the refrigerant system. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFRIGERANT RECOVERY)
- (3) Remove the accessory drive belt from the compressor clutch. Refer to Cooling for the procedure (Fig. 5).
- (4) Raise the vehicle on a hoist.



80d76388

**Fig. 3 COMPRESSOR AND A/C LINES - V8**

- 1 - DISCHARGE LINE
- 2 - A/C COMPRESSOR
- 3 - SUCTION LINE
- 4 - A/C CONDENSOR
- 5 - DISCHARGE LINE TO CONDENSOR
- 6 - A/C PRESSURE TRANSDUCER SWITCH
- 7 - A/C SERVICE PORT
- 8 - RECEIVER DRIER



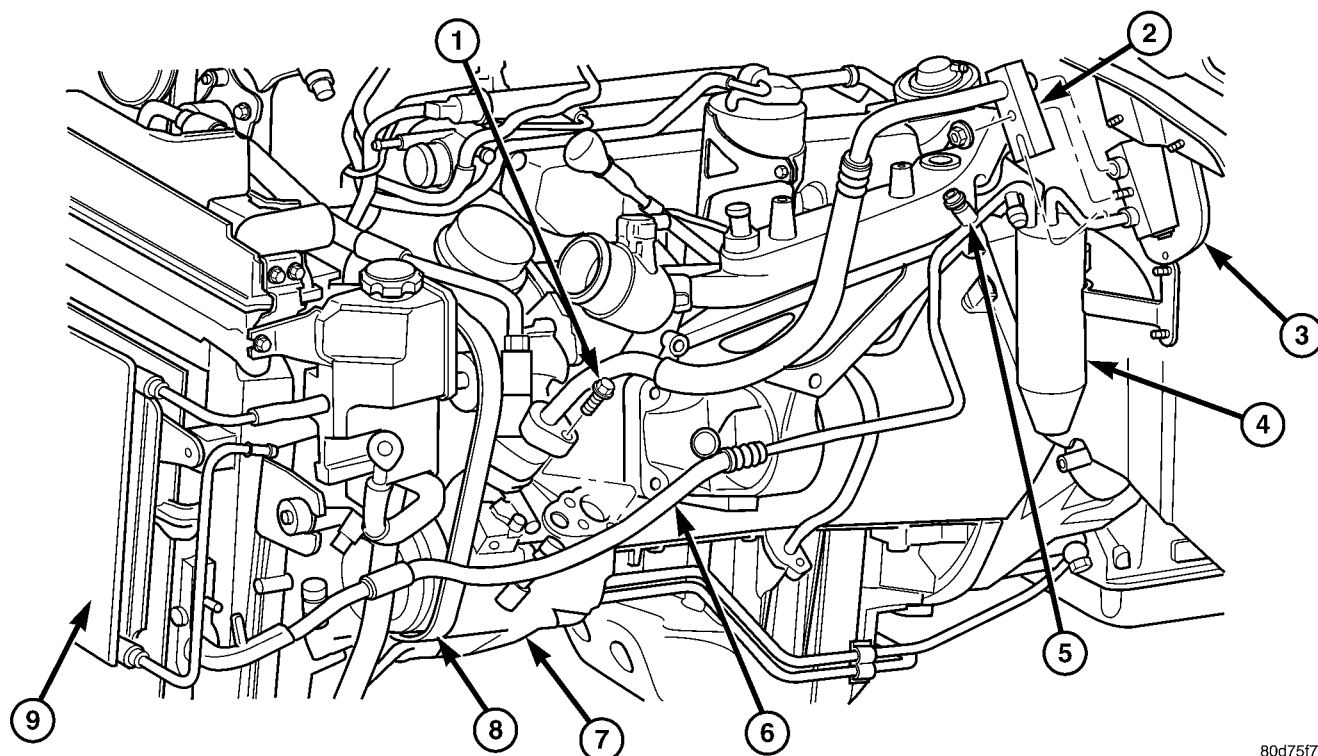
80b76feb

**Fig. 4 COMPRESSOR REMOVE/INSTALL - V8 ENGINE - RIGHT VIEW**

- 1 - BOLT
- 2 - A/C COMPRESSOR
- 3 - BOLT

- (5) Remove the front splash shield (if equipped).
- (6) Remove the (2) refrigerant line retaining bolts from the compressor. Remove both lines from the compressor and cover all openings.

## A/C COMPRESSOR (Continued)



80d75f70

**Fig. 5 2.7L Diesel Compressor-RHD (LHD typical)**

- 1 - SUCTION LINE MOUNTING SCREW
- 2 - SUCTION LINE TO H-BLOCK
- 3 - H-BLOCK
- 4 - RECEIVER DRIER
- 5 - LIQUID LINE SERVICE PORT

- 6 - LIQUID LINE AND RECEIVER DRIER
- 7 - A/C COMPRESSOR
- 8 - A/C COMPRESSOR DRIVE BELT
- 9 - RADIATOR - CONDENSOR ASSEMBLY

(7) Disconnect the compressor clutch electrical connector.

(8) Remove the compressor mounting bolts and remove the compressor from the vehicle.

**INSTALLATION****INSTALLATION**

**WARNING: REVIEW THE WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS IN THE FRONT OF THIS SECTION BEFORE PERFORMING THE FOLLOWING OPERATION. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - WARNING) (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - CAUTION)**

Any kinks or sharp bends in the refrigerant plumbing will reduce the capacity of the entire air conditioning system. Kinks and sharp bends reduce the flow of refrigerant in the system. A good rule for the flexible hose refrigerant lines is to keep the radius of all bends at least ten times the diameter of the hose. In addition, the flexible hose refrigerant lines should

be routed so they are at least 80 millimeters (3 inches) from the exhaust manifold.

High pressures are produced in the refrigerant system when the air conditioning compressor is operating. Extreme care must be exercised to make sure that each of the refrigerant system connections is pressure-tight and leak free. It is a good practice to inspect all flexible hose refrigerant lines at least once a year to make sure they are in good condition and properly routed.

**NOTE: If a replacement compressor is being installed, be certain to check the refrigerant oil level. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING/REFRIGERANT OIL - STANDARD PROCEDURE) Use only refrigerant oil of the type recommended for the compressor in the vehicle. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING/REFRIGERANT OIL - DESCRIPTION)**

(1) Install the compressor. Tighten the 4.0L mounting bolts fastening the compressor to the block to 45-65 N·m (35-50 ft. lbs.). Tighten the mounting bolts holding the rear brace to the compressor and block to 40-55 N·m (30-40 ft. lbs.). Tighten the 4.7L

## A/C COMPRESSOR (Continued)

compressor front mounting screws to 45-65 N·m (35-50 ft. lbs.), and the rear mounting screws to 35-45 N·m (25-35 ft. lbs.).

(2) Remove the tape or plugs from all of the opened refrigerant line fittings. Install the suction line and discharge line fittings to the manifold on the compressor. Tighten the mounting bolts to 25.4 N·m (225 in. lbs.).

(3) Install the serpentine drive belt. Refer to Cooling for the procedures.

(4) Plug in the compressor clutch coil wire harness connector.

**NOTE:** With the 4.0L Engine it is necessary to install the following two additional items.

(5) Install the power steering pump(Refer to 19 - STEERING/PUMP - INSTALLATION).

(6) Install the air cleaner assembly(Refer to 9 - ENGINE/AIR INTAKE SYSTEM/AIR CLEANER HOUSING - INSTALLATION).

(7) Connect the battery negative cable.

(8) Evacuate the refrigerant system. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFRIGERANT SYSTEM EVACUATE)

(9) Charge the refrigerant system. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFRIGERANT SYSTEM CHARGE)

## INSTALLATION - 2.7L TURBO DIESEL

**CAUTION:** Check the oil level before installing the new compressor. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING/REFRIGERANT OIL - STANDARD PROCEDURE)

**WARNING:** REVIEW THE WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS IN THE FRONT OF THIS SECTION BEFORE PERFORMING THE FOLLOWING OPERATION. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - WARNING) (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - CAUTION)

Any kinks or sharp bends in the refrigerant plumbing will reduce the capacity of the entire air conditioning system. Kinks and sharp bends reduce the flow of refrigerant in the system. A good rule for the flexible hose refrigerant lines is to keep the radius of all bends at least ten times the diameter of the hose. In addition, the flexible hose refrigerant lines should be routed so they are at least 80 millimeters (3 inches) from the exhaust manifold.

High pressures are produced in the refrigerant system when the air conditioning compressor is operat-

ing. Extreme care must be exercised to make sure that each of the refrigerant system connections is pressure-tight and leak free. It is a good practice to inspect all flexible hose refrigerant lines at least once a year to make sure they are in good condition and properly routed.

(1) Lift the compressor into position and install the (4) mounting bolts. Torque the bolts to 41 N·m (30 ft. lbs.).

(2) Connect the compressor clutch electrical connector.

(3) Install both refrigerant lines on the compressor. Make certain the sealing O-rings are free of tears and well lubricated with R-134a refrigerant oil. Torque the line retaining bolts to 22 N·m (200 in. lbs.).

(4) Install the front splash shield (if equipped).

(5) Lower the vehicle from the hoist.

(6) Install the accessory drive belt on the compressor clutch. Refer to Cooling for the procedure.

(7) Evacuate the refrigerant system. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFRIGERANT SYSTEM EVACUATE)

(8) Charge the refrigerant system. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFRIGERANT SYSTEM CHARGE)

(9) Connect the negative battery cable.

## A/C CONDENSER

## DESCRIPTION

The condenser is located in the air flow in front of the engine cooling radiator. The condenser is a heat exchanger that allows the high-pressure refrigerant gas being discharged by the compressor to give up its heat to the air passing over the condenser fins.

## OPERATION

When the refrigerant gas gives up its heat, it condenses. When the refrigerant leaves the condenser, it has become a high-pressure liquid refrigerant. The volume of air flowing over the condenser fins is critical to the proper cooling performance of the air conditioning system. Therefore, it is important that there are no objects placed in front of the radiator grille openings in the front of the vehicle or foreign material on the condenser fins that might obstruct proper air flow. Also, any factory-installed air seals or shrouds must be properly reinstalled following radiator or condenser service.

The condenser cannot be repaired and, if faulty or damaged, it must be replaced.

## A/C CONDENSER (Continued)

## REMOVAL

**WARNING: REVIEW THE WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS IN THE FRONT OF THIS SECTION BEFORE PERFORMING THE FOLLOWING OPERATION. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - WARNING) (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - CAUTION)**

**WARNING: REVIEW THE WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS IN THE FRONT OF THIS GROUP BEFORE PERFORMING THE FOLLOWING OPERATION.**

**CAUTION:** Before removing the condenser, note the location of each of the radiator and condenser air seals. These seals are used to direct air through the condenser and radiator. The air seals must be reinstalled in their proper locations in order for the air conditioning and engine cooling systems to perform as designed.

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Recover the refrigerant from the refrigerant system. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFRIGERANT RECOVERY)

(3) Remove the screws attaching the grille and headlamp mounting module to the upper crossmember of the vehicle. Refer to Body for this and further steps in the procedure.

(4) Remove the headlamps from their mounts.

(5) Remove the nuts that secure the hood latch and brace to the upper crossmember.

(6) The radiator upper crossmember can be adjusted left or right through the use of its slotted mounting holes. Before removal, mark the original position of the crossmember.

(7) Remove the bolts that secure the radiator to the upper crossmember and set it aside (Fig. 6).

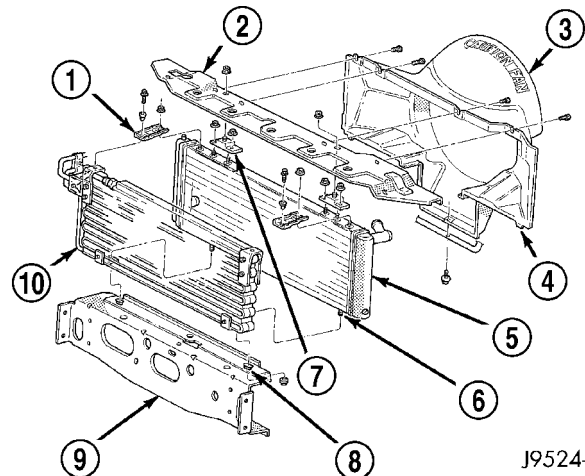
(8) Remove the engine air filter inlet duct secured at the headlamp mounting module.

(9) Remove the headlamp mounting module and front fascia for access to the condenser and fittings.

(10) Disconnect the discharge line and liquid line refrigerant line fittings from the condenser. Install plugs in, or tape over all of the opened refrigerant line fittings.

(11) Remove the bolts that secure the upper condenser and transmission cooler.

(12) Carefully lift the condenser out of the vehicle.



J9524-13

**Fig. 6 CONDENSER MOUNTING - TYPICAL**

- 1 - CONDENSER-TO-RADIATOR MOUNTING BRACKETS (2)
- 2 - UPPER CROSSMEMBER
- 3 - FAN SHROUD
- 4 - ALIGNMENT TABS
- 5 - RADIATOR
- 6 - ALIGNMENT DOWELS (2)
- 7 - RUBBER ISOLATORS (2)
- 8 - RUBBER GROMMETS (2)
- 9 - LOWER CROSSMEMBER
- 10 - CONDENSER

## INSTALLATION

**WARNING: REVIEW THE WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS IN THE FRONT OF THIS SECTION BEFORE PERFORMING THE FOLLOWING OPERATION. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - WARNING) (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - CAUTION)**

Any kinks or sharp bends in the refrigerant plumbing will reduce the capacity of the entire air conditioning system. Kinks and sharp bends reduce the flow of refrigerant in the system. A good rule for the flexible hose refrigerant lines is to keep the radius of all bends at least ten times the diameter of the hose. In addition, the flexible hose refrigerant lines should be routed so they are at least 80 millimeters (3 inches) from the exhaust manifold.

High pressures are produced in the refrigerant system when the air conditioning compressor is operating. Extreme care must be exercised to make sure that each of the refrigerant system connections is pressure-tight and leak free. It is a good practice to inspect all flexible hose refrigerant lines at least once a year to make sure they are in good condition and properly routed.



## A/C CONDENSER (Continued)

**CAUTION:** Before removing the condenser, note the location of each of the radiator and condenser air seals. These seals are used to direct air through the condenser and radiator. The air seals must be reinstalled in their proper locations in order for the air conditioning and engine cooling systems to perform as designed.

- (1) Carefully position the condenser in the vehicle.
- (2) Install the bolts that secure the upper condenser and transmission cooler.
- (3) Remove the tape or plugs from the refrigerant line fittings on the condenser inlet and the discharge line. Connect the discharge line to the condenser inlet. Tighten the retaining nut to 28 N·m (250 in. lbs.).
- (4) Remove the tape or plugs from the refrigerant line fittings on the condenser outlet and the liquid line. Connect the liquid line to the condenser outlet. Tighten the retaining nut to 28 N·m (250 in. lbs.).
- (5) Install the headlamp mounting module and grill. Refer to Body for the procedure.
- (6) Install the engine air filter inlet duct.
- (7) Install the bolts that secure the radiator to the upper crossmember.
- (8) Install the nuts that secure the hood latch and brace to the upper crossmember.
- (9) Install the headlamps in their mounts.
- (10) Install the screws attaching the grille and headlamp mounting module to the upper crossmember of the vehicle. Refer to Body for this and further steps in the procedure.
- (11) Evacuate and Recharge the refrigerant system. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFRIGERANT SYSTEM EVACUATE) (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFRIGERANT SYSTEM CHARGE)
- (12) Connect the battery negative cable.

**NOTE:** If the condenser is replaced, add 30 milliliters (1 fluid ounce) of refrigerant oil to the refrigerant system. Use only refrigerant oil of the type recommended for the compressor in the vehicle. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING/REFRIGERANT OIL - DESCRIPTION)

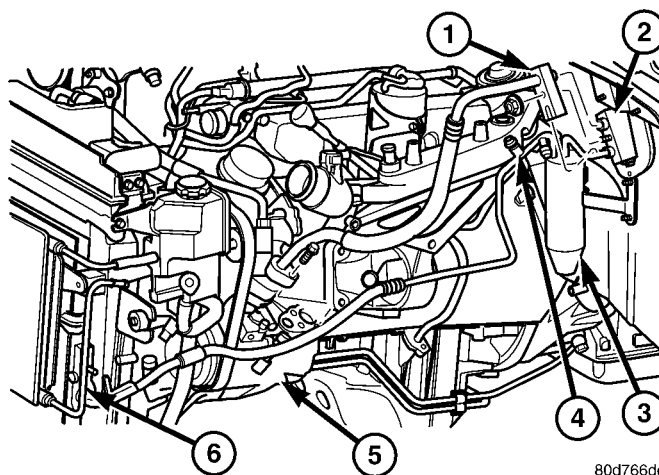
## A/C DISCHARGE LINE

## REMOVAL

## REMOVAL - 2.7L TURBO DIESEL

**WARNING: REVIEW THE WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS IN THE FRONT OF THIS SECTION BEFORE PERFORMING THE FOLLOWING OPERATION. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - WARNING) (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - CAUTION)**

- (1) Disconnect and isolate the negative battery cable.
- (2) Recover the refrigerant system. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFRIGERANT RECOVERY)
- (3) Remove the a/c high pressure transducer (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/CONTROLS/A/C PRESSURE TRANSDUCER - REMOVAL).
- (4) Remove the grill assembly (Refer to 23 - BODY/EXTERIOR/GRILLE - REMOVAL) (Fig. 7).



80d766dd

**Fig. 7 Suction-Discharge Lines- RHD (LHD-typical)**

- 1 - SUCTION LINE
- 2 - THERMAL EXPANSION VALVE
- 3 - RECEIVER DRIER
- 4 - DISCHARGE LINE & SERVICE PORT
- 5 - A/C COMPRESSOR
- 6 - DISCHARGE LINE & CONDENSOR CONNECTION

(5) Remove the refrigerant line retaining fastener from the condenser inlet fitting. Remove the line and cap the condenser inlet tube to prevent contamination of the system.

- (6) Raise the vehicle on a hoist.
- (7) Remove the front splash shield (if equipped).

## A/C DISCHARGE LINE (Continued)

(8) Remove the refrigerant line retaining fastener from the compressor outlet fitting. Remove the line and cap the compressor outlet opening to prevent contamination of the system.

(9) Unclip and remove the discharge line from the vehicle.

**REMOVAL**

**WARNING: REVIEW THE WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS IN THE FRONT OF THIS SECTION BEFORE PERFORMING THE FOLLOWING OPERATION. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - WARNING) (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - CAUTION)**

**WARNING: REVIEW THE WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS IN THE FRONT OF THIS GROUP BEFORE PERFORMING THE FOLLOWING OPERATION.**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Recover the refrigerant from the refrigerant system. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFRIGERANT RECOVERY)

(3) Remove the a/c high pressure transducer (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/CONTROLS/A/C PRESSURE TRANSDUCER - REMOVAL).

(4) Remove the grill assembly (Refer to 23 - BODY/EXTERIOR/GRILLE - REMOVAL).

(5) Disconnect the discharge line from the condenser inlet. Install plugs in, or tape over all of the opened refrigerant line fittings.

(6) Remove the bolt that secures the discharge line fitting to compressor. Install plugs in, or tape over all of the opened refrigerant line fittings.

(7) Remove the discharge line assembly from the vehicle.

**INSTALLATION****INSTALLATION - 2.7L TURBO DIESEL**

**WARNING: REVIEW THE WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS IN THE FRONT OF THIS SECTION BEFORE PERFORMING THE FOLLOWING OPERATION. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - WARNING) (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - CAUTION)**

Any kinks or sharp bends in the refrigerant plumbing will reduce the capacity of the entire air conditioning system. Kinks and sharp bends reduce the

flow of refrigerant in the system. A good rule for the flexible hose refrigerant lines is to keep the radius of all bends at least ten times the diameter of the hose. In addition, the flexible hose refrigerant lines should be routed so they are at least 80 millimeters (3 inches) from the exhaust manifold.

High pressures are produced in the refrigerant system when the air conditioning compressor is operating. Extreme care must be exercised to make sure that each of the refrigerant system connections is pressure-tight and leak free. It is a good practice to inspect all flexible hose refrigerant lines at least once a year to make sure they are in good condition and properly routed.

(1) Carefully position the discharge line in the vehicle.

(2) Remove the cap and install the discharge line on the compressor. Be certain the sealing o-ring is well lubricated with PAG oil and free of tears. Torque the retaining fastener to 22 N·m (200 in. lbs.).

(3) Install the front splash shield (if equipped).

(4) Lower the vehicle from the hoist.

(5) Remove the cap and install the discharge line on the condenser. Be certain the sealing o-ring is well lubricated with PAG oil and free of tears. Torque the retaining fastener to 28 N·m (21 ft. lbs.).

(6) Install the grill assembly (Refer to 23 - BODY/EXTERIOR/GRILLE - INSTALLATION).

(7) Install the a/c high pressure transducer, and connect the electrical connector (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/CONTROLS/A/C PRESSURE TRANSDUCER - INSTALLATION).

(8) Evacuate the refrigerant system. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFRIGERANT SYSTEM EVACUATE)

(9) Charge the refrigerant system. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFRIGERANT SYSTEM CHARGE)

(10) Connect the negative battery cable.

**INSTALLATION**

**WARNING: REVIEW THE WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS IN THE FRONT OF THIS SECTION BEFORE PERFORMING THE FOLLOWING OPERATION. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - WARNING) (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - CAUTION)**

Any kinks or sharp bends in the refrigerant plumbing will reduce the capacity of the entire air conditioning system. Kinks and sharp bends reduce the flow of refrigerant in the system. A good rule for the flexible hose refrigerant lines is to keep the radius of all bends at least ten times the diameter of the hose.



## A/C DISCHARGE LINE (Continued)

In addition, the flexible hose refrigerant lines should be routed so they are at least 80 millimeters (3 inches) from the exhaust manifold.

High pressures are produced in the refrigerant system when the air conditioning compressor is operating. Extreme care must be exercised to make sure that each of the refrigerant system connections is pressure-tight and leak free. It is a good practice to inspect all flexible hose refrigerant lines at least once a year to make sure they are in good condition and properly routed.

(1) Remove the tape or plugs from the discharge line block fitting and the manifold on the compressor. Install the discharge line block fitting to the manifold on the compressor. Tighten the mounting bolt to 25.4 N·m (225 in. lbs.).

(2) Remove the tape or plugs from the refrigerant line fittings on the condenser inlet and the discharge line. Connect the discharge line to the condenser inlet. Tighten the retaining nut to 28 N·m (250 in. lbs.).

(3) Install the a/c high pressure transducer (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/CONTROLS/A/C PRESSURE TRANSDUCER - INSTALLATION).

(4) Install the grill assembly (Refer to 23 - BODY/EXTERIOR/GRILLE - INSTALLATION).

(5) Connect the battery negative cable.

(6) Evacuate the refrigerant system. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFRIGERANT SYSTEM EVACUATE)

(7) Charge the refrigerant system. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFRIGERANT SYSTEM CHARGE)

## A/C EXPANSION VALVE

## DESCRIPTION

The "H" valve type thermal expansion valve (TXV) is located at the front of the heater-A/C housing between the liquid and suction lines and the evaporator coil.

The expansion valve is a factory calibrated unit and cannot be adjusted or repaired. If faulty or damaged, the expansion valve must be replaced.

## OPERATION

High-pressure, high temperature liquid refrigerant from the liquid line passes through the expansion valve orifice, converting it into a low-pressure, low-temperature mixture of liquid and gas before it enters the evaporator coil. A temperature sensor in the expansion valve control head monitors the tem-

perature of the refrigerant leaving the evaporator coil through the suction line, and adjusts the orifice size at the liquid line to let the proper amount of refrigerant into the evaporator coil to meet the vehicle cooling requirements. Controlling the refrigerant flow through the evaporator ensures that none of the refrigerant leaving the evaporator is still in a liquid state, which could damage the compressor.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - A/C EXPANSION VALVE

The expansion valve is located on the engine side of the dash panel near the shock tower.

The expansion valve can fail in three different positions (open, closed or restricted).

**In an Open Position:** this will result in a noisy compressor or no cooling. The cause can be broken spring, broken ball or excessive moisture in the A/C system. If the spring or ball are found to be defective, replace the expansion valve. If excessive moisture is found in the A/C system, recycle the refrigerant.

**In a Closed Position:** There will be low suction pressure and no cooling. This may be caused by a failed power dome or excessive moisture in the A/C system. If the power dome on the expansion valve is found to be defective replace the expansion valve. If excessive moisture is found recycle the refrigerant.

**A Restricted Orifice:** There will be low suction pressure and no cooling. This may be caused by debris in the refrigerant system. If debris is believed to be the cause, recycle the refrigerant and replace the expansion valve and the receiver/drier.

## REMOVAL

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Recover the refrigerant from the A/C system (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

(3) Disconnect the the A/C lines from the expansion valve. Cap or tape over the open A/C lines.

(4) Remove the lines from the expansion valve (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING/LIQUID LINE - REMOVAL), (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING/LIQUID LINE - REMOVAL), (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING/A/C DISCHARGE LINE - REMOVAL) and (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING/A/C DISCHARGE LINE - REMOVAL).

(5) Remove the expansion valve retainer screw from the expansion valve.

(6) Remove the expansion valve.

(7) Remove the expansion valve gasket.

## A/C EXPANSION VALVE (Continued)

**INSTALLATION**

- (1) Install a NEW gasket and install the expansion valve to the evaporator.
- (2) Install the expansion valve bolts and tighten to 11 N·m (100 in. lbs.).
- (3) Install NEW seals on the A/C lines and install the lines to the expansion valve (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING/A/C DISCHARGE LINE - INSTALLATION), (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING/A/C DISCHARGE LINE - INSTALLATION), (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING/LIQUID LINE - INSTALLATION) and (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING/LIQUID LINE - INSTALLATION).
- (4) Evacuate the A/C system (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).
- (5) Recharge the A/C system (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).
- (6) Connect the battery negative cable.

**LIQUID LINE****REMOVAL****REMOVAL**

**WARNING: REVIEW THE WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS IN THE FRONT OF THIS SECTION BEFORE PERFORMING THE FOLLOWING OPERATION.** (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - WARNING) (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - CAUTION)

- (1) The liquid line is serviced as an integral part of the receiver/drier assembly (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING/RECEIVER / DRIER - REMOVAL) or (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING/RECEIVER / DRIER - REMOVAL).

**REMOVAL - 2.7L TURBO DIESEL**

**WARNING: REVIEW THE WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS IN THE FRONT OF THIS SECTION BEFORE PERFORMING THE FOLLOWING OPERATION.** (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - WARNING) (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - CAUTION)

- (1) The liquid line is service as an integral part of the receiver/drier assembly (Refer to 24 - HEATING &

AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING/RECEIVER / DRIER - REMOVAL).

**INSTALLATION****INSTALLATION**

**WARNING: REVIEW THE WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS IN THE FRONT OF THIS SECTION BEFORE PERFORMING THE FOLLOWING OPERATION.** (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - WARNING) (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - CAUTION)

Any kinks or sharp bends in the refrigerant plumbing will reduce the capacity of the entire air conditioning system. Kinks and sharp bends reduce the flow of refrigerant in the system. A good rule for the flexible hose refrigerant lines is to keep the radius of all bends at least ten times the diameter of the hose. In addition, the flexible hose refrigerant lines should be routed so they are at least 80 millimeters (3 inches) from the exhaust manifold.

High pressures are produced in the refrigerant system when the air conditioning compressor is operating. Extreme care must be exercised to make sure that each of the refrigerant system connections is pressure-tight and leak free. It is a good practice to inspect all flexible hose refrigerant lines at least once a year to make sure they are in good condition and properly routed.

- (1) The liquid line is serviced as an integral part of the receiver/drier assembly (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING/RECEIVER / DRIER - INSTALLATION) or (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING/RECEIVER / DRIER - INSTALLATION).

**INSTALLATION - 2.7L TURBO DIESEL**

**WARNING: REVIEW THE WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS IN THE FRONT OF THIS SECTION BEFORE PERFORMING THE FOLLOWING OPERATION.** (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - WARNING) (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - CAUTION)

Any kinks or sharp bends in the refrigerant plumbing will reduce the capacity of the entire air conditioning system. Kinks and sharp bends reduce the flow of refrigerant in the system. A good rule for the flexible hose refrigerant lines is to keep the radius of all bends at least ten times the diameter of the hose. In addition, the flexible hose refrigerant lines should be routed so they are at least 80 millimeters (3 inches) from the exhaust manifold.

## LIQUID LINE (Continued)

High pressures are produced in the refrigerant system when the air conditioning compressor is operating. Extreme care must be exercised to make sure that each of the refrigerant system connections is pressure-tight and leak free. It is a good practice to inspect all flexible hose refrigerant lines at least once a year to make sure they are in good condition and properly routed.

(1) The liquid line is serviced as an integral part of the receiver/drier bottle assembly (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING/RECEIVER / DRIER - INSTALLATION).

## SUCTION LINE

## REMOVAL

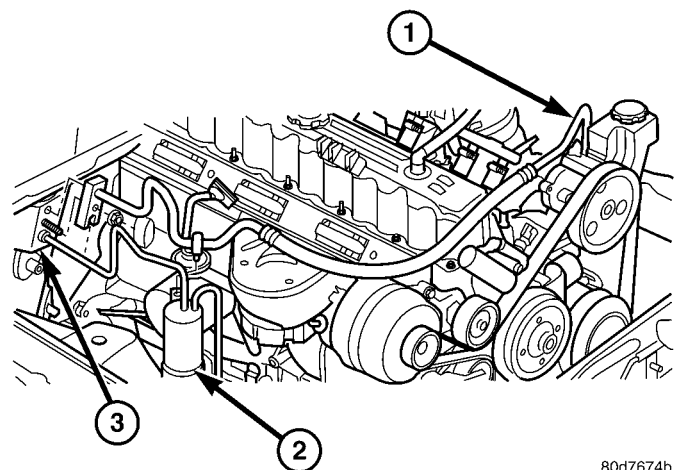
## REMOVAL

**WARNING: REVIEW THE WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS IN THE FRONT OF THIS SECTION BEFORE PERFORMING THE FOLLOWING OPERATION. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - WARNING) (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - CAUTION)**

(1) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(2) Recover the refrigerant from the refrigerant system. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFRIGERANT RECOVERY)

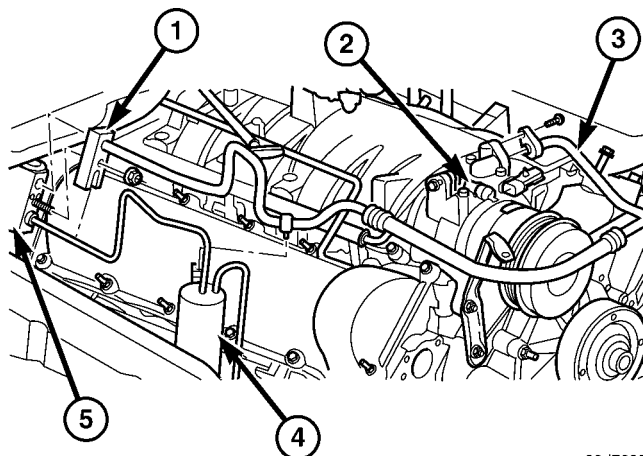
(3) Remove the retainer nut from the evaporator connection (Fig. 8) or (Fig. 9).



80d7674b

**Fig. 8 SUCTION LINE - I-6**

- 1 - SUCTION LINE
- 2 - RECEIVER DRIER - LIQUID LINE
- 3 - H-BLOCK



80d76855

**Fig. 9 V-8 Suction Line**

- 1 - SUCTION LINE TO H-BLOCK
- 2 - A/C COMPRESSOR
- 3 - SUCTION LINE TO COMPRESSOR
- 4 - RECEIVER DRIER ASSEMBLY
- 5 - H-BLOCK

(4) Slide the suction line off the stud and liquid line. Install plugs in, or tape over all the opened refrigerant line fittings. Remove from clip.

(5) Remove the bolt that secures the suction line fitting to compressor. Install plugs in, or tape over all of the opened refrigerant line fittings.

(6) Remove the suction line assembly from the vehicle.

## REMOVAL - 2.7L TURBO DIESEL

**WARNING: REVIEW THE WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS IN THE FRONT OF THIS SECTION BEFORE PERFORMING THE FOLLOWING OPERATION. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - WARNING) (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - CAUTION)**

(1) Disconnect the negative battery cable.  
(2) Recover the refrigerant system. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFRIGERANT RECOVERY)

(3) Remove the refrigerant line retaining fastener from the thermal expansion valve body (Fig. 10). Remove the line and gasket from the thermal expansion valve body and cap or tape over both ends.

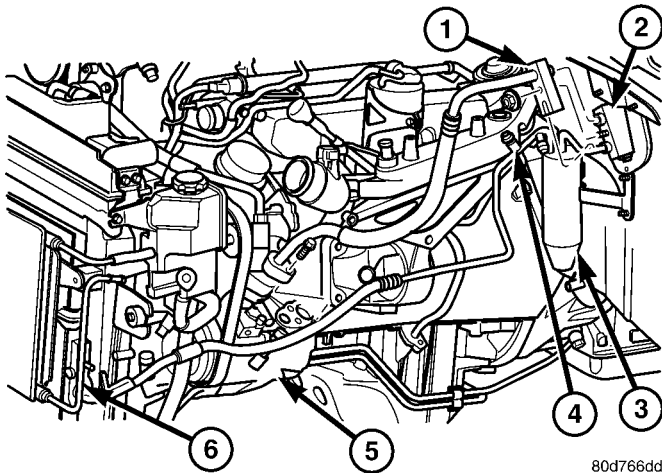
(4) Remove the refrigerant line support bracket bolt from the cylinder head cap.

(5) Remove the refrigerant line retaining fastener from the compressor inlet fitting. Remove the line and cap the compressor outlet tube to prevent contamination of the system.

(6) Unclip and remove the suction line from the vehicle.



## SUCTION LINE (Continued)



**Fig. 10 Suction-Discharge Lines- RHD (LHD-typical)**

- 1 - SUCTION LINE
- 2 - THERMAL EXPANSION VALVE
- 3 - RECEIVER DRIER
- 4 - DISCHARGE LINE & SERVICE PORT
- 5 - A/C COMPRESSOR
- 6 - DISCHARGE LINE & CONDENSOR CONNECTION

## INSTALLATION

## INSTALLATION

**WARNING: REVIEW THE WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS IN THE FRONT OF THIS SECTION BEFORE PERFORMING THE FOLLOWING OPERATION. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - WARNING) (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - CAUTION)**

Any kinks or sharp bends in the refrigerant plumbing will reduce the capacity of the entire air conditioning system. Kinks and sharp bends reduce the flow of refrigerant in the system. A good rule for the flexible hose refrigerant lines is to keep the radius of all bends at least ten times the diameter of the hose. In addition, the flexible hose refrigerant lines should be routed so they are at least 80 millimeters (3 inches) from the exhaust manifold.

High pressures are produced in the refrigerant system when the air conditioning compressor is operating. Extreme care must be exercised to make sure that each of the refrigerant system connections is pressure-tight and leak free. It is a good practice to inspect all flexible hose refrigerant lines at least once a year to make sure they are in good condition and properly routed.

(1) Remove the tape or plugs from the suction line block fitting and the manifold on the compressor. Install the suction line block fitting to the manifold on the compressor. Tighten the mounting bolt to 25.4 N·m (225 in. lbs.).

(2) Remove the tape or plugs from the refrigerant line fittings on the evaporator outlet and the suction line. Slide the suction line connection block over the liquid line and evaporator stud. Tighten the retaining nut to 28 N·m (250 in. lbs.).

(3) Connect the battery negative cable.

(4) Evacuate the refrigerant system. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFRIGERANT SYSTEM EVACUATE)

(5) Charge the refrigerant system. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFRIGERANT SYSTEM CHARGE)

## INSTALLATION - 2.7L TURBO DIESEL

**WARNING: REVIEW THE WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS IN THE FRONT OF THIS SECTION BEFORE PERFORMING THE FOLLOWING OPERATION. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - WARNING) (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - CAUTION)**

Any kinks or sharp bends in the refrigerant plumbing will reduce the capacity of the entire air conditioning system. Kinks and sharp bends reduce the flow of refrigerant in the system. A good rule for the flexible hose refrigerant lines is to keep the radius of all bends at least ten times the diameter of the hose. In addition, the flexible hose refrigerant lines should be routed so they are at least 80 millimeters (3 inches) from the exhaust manifold.

High pressures are produced in the refrigerant system when the air conditioning compressor is operating. Extreme care must be exercised to make sure that each of the refrigerant system connections is pressure-tight and leak free. It is a good practice to inspect all flexible hose refrigerant lines at least once a year to make sure they are in good condition and properly routed.

(1) Carefully position the suction line in the vehicle.

(2) Remove the cap or tape and install the suction line on the compressor. Be certain the sealing o-ring is well lubricated with PAG oil and free of tears. Torque the retaining fastener to 22 N·m (200 in. lbs.).

(3) Position and install the refrigerant line support bracket bolt on the cylinder head cap. Torque the bolt to 20 N·m (177 in. lbs.).

(4) Remove the cap or tape and install the suction line on the thermal expansion valve body. Be certain the sealing O-ring is well lubricated with PAG oil and free of tears. Torque the retaining fastener to 28 N·m (21 ft. lbs.).

(5) Install the tie-straps retaining the wire harness on the suction line.

## SUCTION LINE (Continued)

(6) Evacuate the refrigerant system. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFRIGERANT SYSTEM EVACUATE)

(7) Charge the refrigerant system. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFRIGERANT SYSTEM CHARGE)

(8) Connect the negative battery cable.

## A/C EVAPORATOR

## DESCRIPTION

The evaporator coil is located in the HVAC housing, under the instrument panel. The evaporator coil is positioned in the HVAC housing so that all air that enters the housing must pass over the fins of the evaporator before it is distributed through the system ducts and outlets. However, air passing over the evaporator coil fins will only be conditioned when the compressor is engaged and circulating refrigerant through the evaporator coil tubes.

## OPERATION

Refrigerant enters the evaporator from the thermal expansion valve as a low-temperature, low-pressure liquid. As air flows over the fins of the evaporator, the humidity in the air condenses on the fins, and the heat from the air is absorbed by the refrigerant. Heat absorption causes the refrigerant to boil and vaporize. The refrigerant becomes a low-pressure gas before it leaves the evaporator.

The evaporator coil cannot be repaired and, if faulty or damaged, it must be replaced.

## REMOVAL

**WARNING: ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN AN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.**

**WARNING: REVIEW THE WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS IN THE FRONT OF THIS SECTION BEFORE PERFORMING THE FOLLOWING OPERATION. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - WARNING) (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - CAUTION)**

(1) Remove and disassemble the HVAC housing. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/DISTRIBUTION/HVAC HOUSING - REMOVAL) (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/DISTRIBUTION/HVAC HOUSING - DISASSEMBLY)

(2) Lift the evaporator coil unit out of the lower half of the HVAC housing (Fig. 11).

## INSTALLATION

**WARNING: REVIEW THE WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS IN THE FRONT OF THIS SECTION BEFORE PERFORMING THE FOLLOWING OPERATION. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - WARNING) (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - CAUTION)**

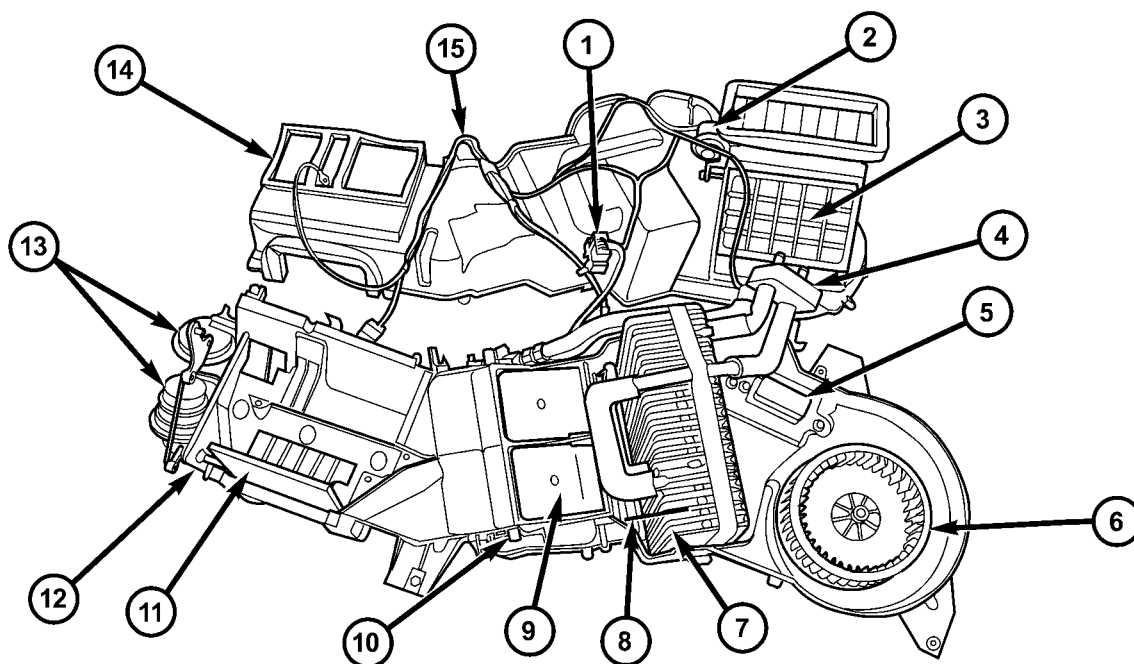
Any kinks or sharp bends in the refrigerant plumbing will reduce the capacity of the entire air conditioning system. Kinks and sharp bends reduce the flow of refrigerant in the system. A good rule for the flexible hose refrigerant lines is to keep the radius of all bends at least ten times the diameter of the hose. In addition, the flexible hose refrigerant lines should be routed so they are at least 80 millimeters (3 inches) from the exhaust manifold.

High pressures are produced in the refrigerant system when the air conditioning compressor is operating. Extreme care must be exercised to make sure that each of the refrigerant system connections is pressure-tight and leak free. It is a good practice to inspect all flexible hose refrigerant lines at least once a year to make sure they are in good condition and properly routed.

(1) Install the evaporator coil in the bottom half of the HVAC housing. Be certain that the evaporator foam insulator wrap is reinstalled.

(2) Reassemble the HVAC housing and install in the vehicle. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/DISTRIBUTION/HVAC HOUSING - ASSEMBLY) (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/DISTRIBUTION/HVAC HOUSING - INSTALLATION)

## A/C EVAPORATOR (Continued)



80d6e6dd

**Fig. 11 HVAC HOUSING- CASE SEPARATED**

- |                                      |                                  |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 - ELECTRICAL CONNECTORS            | 9 - BLEND DOOR                   |
| 2 - VACUUM ACTUATOR                  | 10 - PIVOT SHAFT (MOTOR REMOVED) |
| 3 - RECIRCULATION DOOR               | 11 - PANEL/OUTLET DOOR           |
| 4 - THERMAL EXPANSION VALVE          | 12 - LOWER HOUSING               |
| 5 - BLOWER MOTOR RESISTOR/CONTROLLER | 13 - VACUUM ACTUATORS            |
| 6 - BLOWER WHEEL                     | 14 - UPPER HOUSING               |
| 7 - EVAPORATOR AND TUBES             | 15 - VACUUM HARNESS              |
| 8 - FIN SENSOR PROBE                 |                                  |

**NOTE:** If the evaporator is replaced, add 60 milliliters (2 fluid ounces) of refrigerant oil to the refrigerant system.

The heater core cannot be repaired and, if faulty or damaged, it must be replaced. Refer to Cooling for more information on the engine cooling system, the engine coolant and the heater hoses.

## HEATER CORE

### DESCRIPTION

The heater core is located in the HVAC housing, under the instrument panel. It is a heat exchanger made of rows of tubes and fins.

### OPERATION

Engine coolant is circulated through heater hoses to the heater core at all times. As the coolant flows through the heater core, heat removed from the engine is transferred to the heater core fins and tubes. Air directed through the heater core picks up the heat from the heater core fins. The temperature control door allows control of the heater output air temperature by controlling how much of the air flowing through the HVAC housing is directed through the heater core. The blower motor speed controls the volume of air flowing through the HVAC housing.

### REMOVAL

**WARNING:** ON VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AIRBAGS, DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM BEFORE ATTEMPTING ANY STEERING WHEEL, STEERING COLUMN, OR INSTRUMENT PANEL COMPONENT DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. DISCONNECT AND ISOLATE THE BATTERY NEGATIVE (GROUND) CABLE, THEN WAIT TWO MINUTES FOR THE AIRBAG SYSTEM CAPACITOR TO DISCHARGE BEFORE PERFORMING FURTHER DIAGNOSIS OR SERVICE. THIS IS THE ONLY SURE WAY TO DISABLE THE AIRBAG SYSTEM. FAILURE TO TAKE THE PROPER PRECAUTIONS COULD RESULT IN AN ACCIDENTAL AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT AND POSSIBLE PERSONAL INJURY.



## HEATER CORE (Continued)

**WARNING: REVIEW THE WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS IN THE FRONT OF THIS SECTION BEFORE PERFORMING THE FOLLOWING OPERATION. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - WARNING) (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - CAUTION)**

(1) Remove the HVAC housing from the vehicle. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/DISTRIBUTION/HVAC HOUSING - REMOVAL)

(2) Remove the foam gasket surrounding the core tubes.

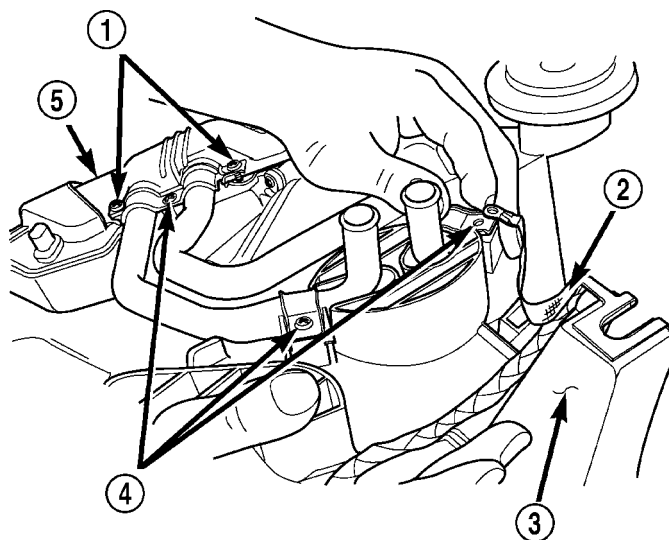
**NOTE:** Notice the orientation of the irregularly shaped gasket on the tubes. The gasket must be placed correctly to ensure proper sealing against the body during reinstallation.

(3) Remove the screws and retainers that secure the heater core and tubes to the HVAC housing (Fig. 12).

(4) Remove the mode door actuator if necessary, for clearance to remove the core.

(5) Lift the heater core straight up and out of the HVAC housing (Fig. 13).

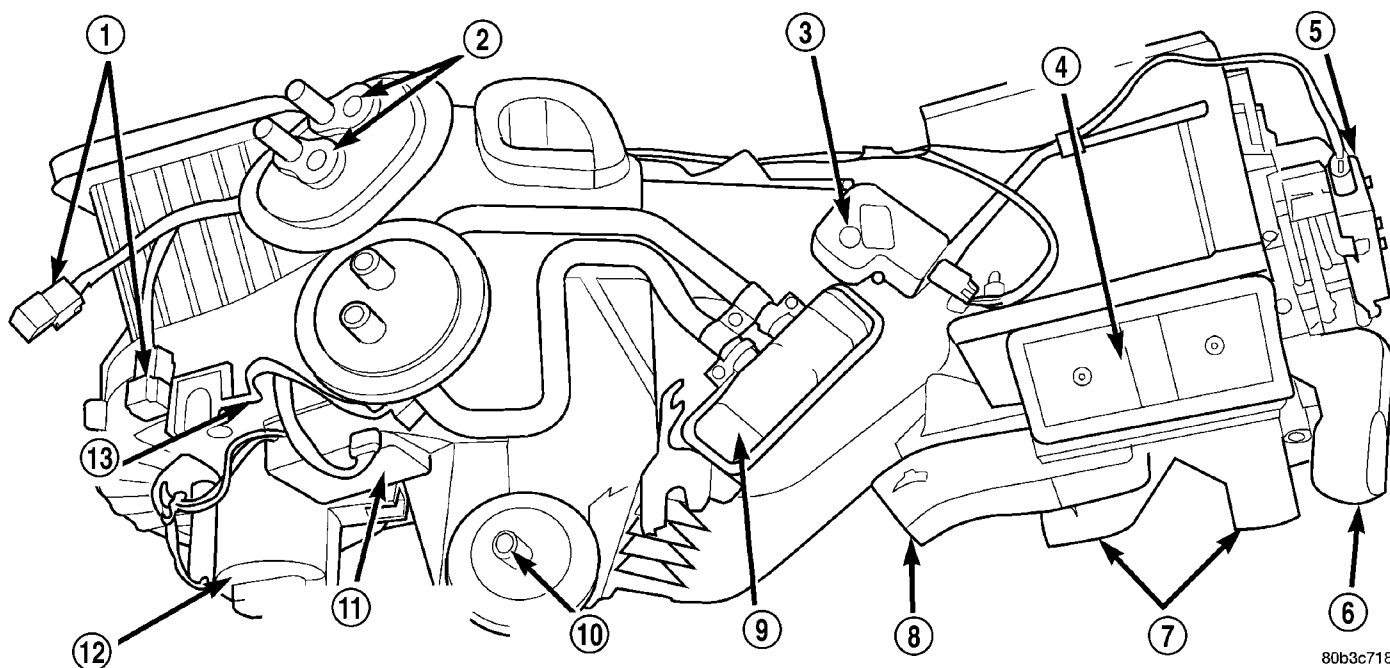
(6) When replacing individual tubes, loosen and remove the round tube-to-core clamp, and pull tube from core.



80b8989c

**Fig. 12 HEATER CORE, TUBES, AND RETAINERS**

- 1 - TUBE-TO-CORE CLAMPS
- 2 - GROUND STRAP (IF EQUIPPED)
- 3 - HVAC HOUSING
- 4 - TUBE RETAINERS AND SCREWS
- 5 - HEATER CORE



80b3c718

**Fig. 13 HEATER CORE AND TUBES - (Typical)**

- |                                       |                                       |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1 - ELECTRICAL CONNECTORS             | 8 - FLOOR DUCT                        |
| 2 - EXPANSION VALVE                   | 9 - HEATER CORE AND TUBES             |
| 3 - ELECTRIC ACTUATOR                 | 10 - HOUSING DRAIN                    |
| 4 - OUTLET TO DEFROSTER DUCTS         | 11 - BLOWER MOTOR RESISTOR/CONTROLLER |
| 5 - ELECTRIC ACTUATOR                 | 12 - BLOWER MOTOR                     |
| 6 - FLOOR DUCT                        | 13 - GROUND STRAP (IF EQUIPPED)       |
| 7 - TO REAR PASSENGER FLOOR AIR DUCTS |                                       |

## HEATER CORE (Continued)

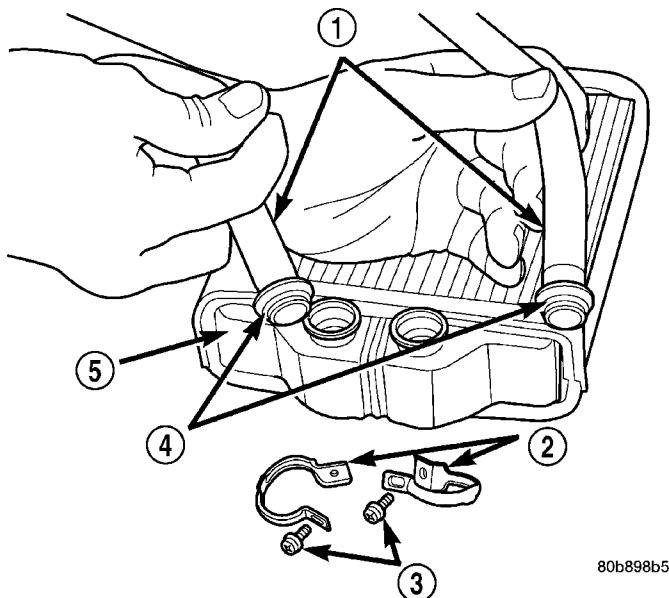
## INSTALLATION

**WARNING: REVIEW THE WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS IN THE FRONT OF THIS SECTION BEFORE PERFORMING THE FOLLOWING OPERATION. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - WARNING) (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - CAUTION)**

Any kinks or sharp bends in the refrigerant plumbing will reduce the capacity of the entire air conditioning system. Kinks and sharp bends reduce the flow of refrigerant in the system. A good rule for the flexible hose refrigerant lines is to keep the radius of all bends at least ten times the diameter of the hose. In addition, the flexible hose refrigerant lines should be routed so they are at least 80 millimeters (3 inches) from the exhaust manifold.

High pressures are produced in the refrigerant system when the air conditioning compressor is operating. Extreme care must be exercised to make sure that each of the refrigerant system connections is pressure-tight and leak free. It is a good practice to inspect all flexible hose refrigerant lines at least once a year to make sure they are in good condition and properly routed.

(1) When installing individual tubes, insert tube into core ensuring that tube O-ring is seated in core and not pinched. Hold tube in seated position while installing the round tube-to-core clamp (Fig. 14).



**Fig. 14 HEATER CORE, TUBES, AND O-RINGS**

- 1 - HEATER CORE TUBES
- 2 - TUBE-TO-CORE CLAMPS
- 3 - SCREWS
- 4 - O-RINGS
- 5 - HEATER CORE

**NOTE: The round tube-to-heater-core clamp should be left loose enough to turn the tube in the core. Position the core in the housing, and then tighten the tube-to-heater-core clamp after orienting the tubes to the molded HVAC housing.**

(2) Lower the heater core into the HVAC housing.  
(3) Install the mode door actuator, if removed from housing for core removal.

(4) Position the retainers over the heater core tubes. Install and tighten the screws that secure the heater core and retainers to the HVAC housing. Tighten the screws to 2.2 N·m (20 in. lbs.).

**NOTE: The grounding strap is to be attached to the lower heater core tube retainer. (If Equipped)**

(5) Reinstall the HVAC housing to the vehicle. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/DISTRIBUTION/HVAC HOUSING - INSTALLATION)

## RECEIVER / DRIER

## DESCRIPTION

The receiver/drier is mounted in the engine compartment between the condenser and is part of the liquid line assembly. The filter/drier cannot be repaired, if the filter/drier is faulty, damaged, left open to the atmosphere or contaminated the line assembly must be replaced.

## OPERATION

The filter-drier performs a filtering action to prevent foreign material in the refrigerant from contaminating the expansion valve. A desiccant bag is mounted inside the filter-drier canister to absorb any moisture which may have nettered and become trapped within the refrigerant system. In addition, during periods of high demand air conditioner operation, the filter-drier acts as a reservoir to store surplus refrigerant. Refrigerant enters the filter-drier as a high-pressure, low-temperature liquid.

## REMOVAL

**WARNING: REVIEW THE WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS IN THE FRONT OF THIS SECTION BEFORE PERFORMING THE FOLLOWING OPERATION. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - WARNING) (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - CAUTION)**

(1) Recover the refrigerant from the refrigerant system (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - STANDARD PROCEDURE).

## RECEIVER / DRIER (Continued)

(2) Remove the battery and the battery tray (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/BATTERY SYSTEM/BATTERY - REMOVAL) and (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/BATTERY SYSTEM/TRAY - REMOVAL).

(3) Remove the grill assembly (Refer to 23 - BODY/EXTERIOR/GRILLE - REMOVAL).

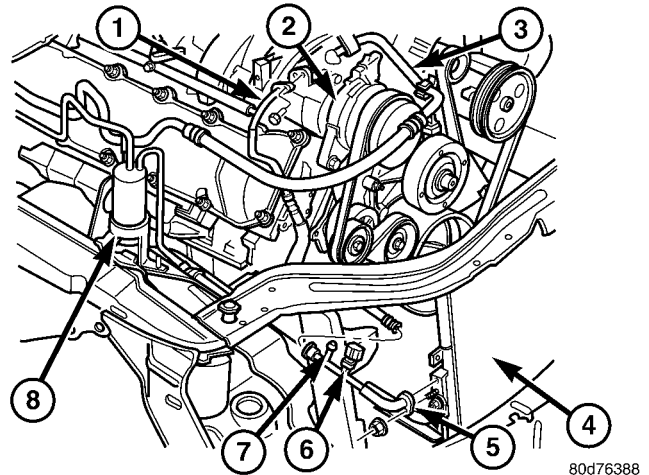
(4) Remove the screw from the receiver/drier bracket (Fig. 15) or (Fig. 16).

(5) Remove the retaining nut from the evaporator connection and then slide the suction line off the stud and liquid line.

(6) Remove the receiver/drier bracket from the stud and disconnect the liquid line from the evaporator inlet. Install plugs in or tape over all of the evaporator connection openings and opened refrigerant line fittings.

(7) Disconnect the liquid line from the condenser outlet. Install plugs in, or tape over all of the opened refrigerant line fittings.

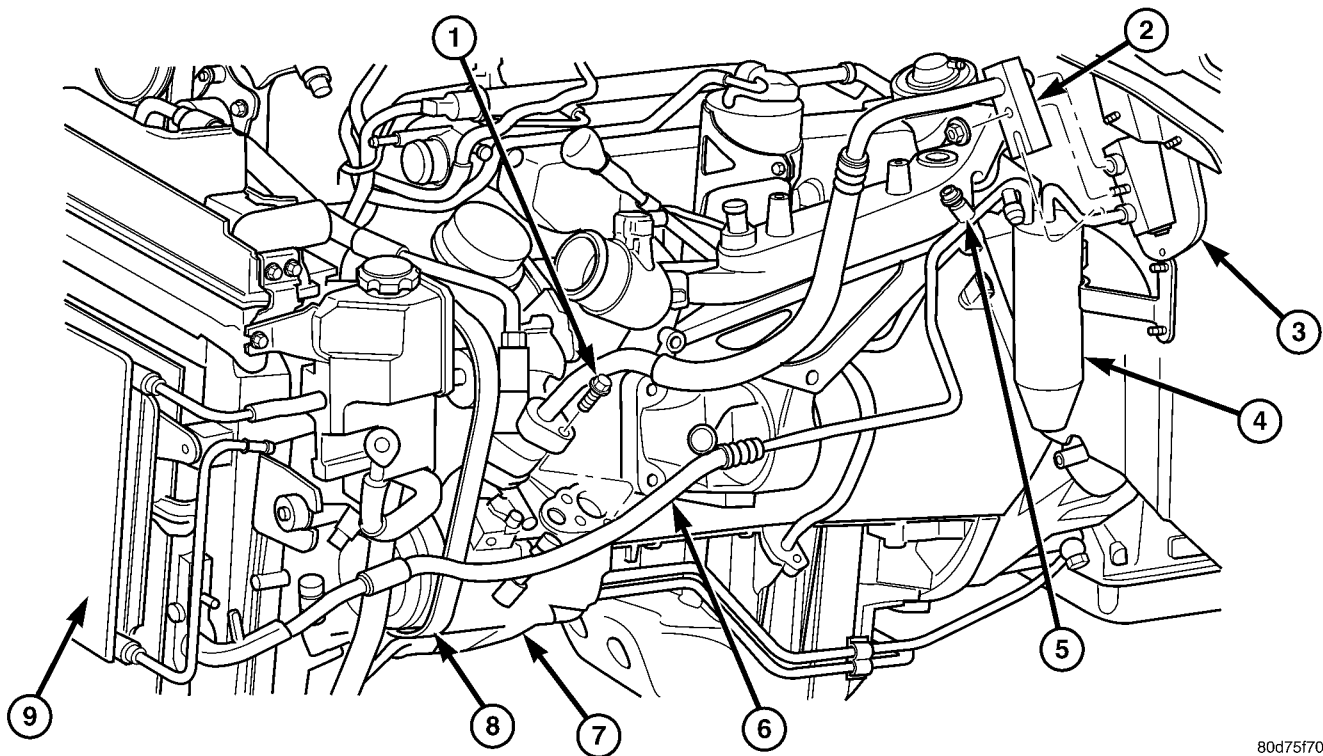
(8) Remove liquid line assembly.



**Fig. 15 COMPRESSOR AND A/C LINES - V8**

- 1 - DISCHARGE LINE
- 2 - A/C COMPRESSOR
- 3 - SUCTION LINE
- 4 - A/C CONDENSOR
- 5 - DISCHARGE LINE TO CONDENSOR
- 6 - A/C PRESSURE TRANSDUCER SWITCH
- 7 - A/C SERVICE PORT
- 8 - RECEIVER DRIER

80d76388



80d75f70

**Fig. 16 2.7L Diesel Compressor-RHD (LHD typical)**

- 1 - SUCTION LINE MOUNTING SCREW
- 2 - SUCTION LINE TO H-BLOCK
- 3 - H-BLOCK
- 4 - RECEIVER DRIER
- 5 - LIQUID LINE SERVICE PORT
- 6 - LIQUID LINE AND RECEIVER DRIER
- 7 - A/C COMPRESSOR
- 8 - A/C COMPRESSOR DRIVE BELT
- 9 - RADIATOR - CONDENSOR ASSEMBLY

## RECEIVER / DRIER (Continued)

## INSTALLATION

**WARNING: REVIEW THE WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS IN THE FRONT OF THIS SECTION BEFORE PERFORMING THE FOLLOWING OPERATION. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - WARNING) (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - CAUTION)**

Any kinks or sharp bends in the refrigerant plumbing will reduce the capacity of the entire air conditioning system. Kinks and sharp bends reduce the flow of refrigerant in the system. A good rule for the flexible hose refrigerant lines is to keep the radius of all bends at least ten times the diameter of the hose. In addition, the flexible hose refrigerant lines should be routed so they are at least 80 millimeters (3 inches) from the exhaust manifold.

High pressures are produced in the refrigerant system when the air conditioning compressor is operating. Extreme care must be exercised to make sure that each of the refrigerant system connections is pressure-tight and leak free. It is a good practice to inspect all flexible hose refrigerant lines at least once a year to make sure they are in good condition and properly routed.

(1) Remove the tape or plugs from the refrigerant line fittings on the condenser outlet and the condenser end of the liquid line. Connect the liquid line to the condenser outlet. Tighten the retaining nut to 20.16 N·m (180 in. lbs.).

(2) Remove the tape or plugs from the refrigerant line fittings on the evaporator end of the liquid line and the evaporator inlet. Place the receiver/drier bracket on the stud and connect the liquid line to the evaporator inlet.

(3) Remove the tape or plugs from the suction line and evaporator outlet. Slide the suction line connection block on the liquid line on the evaporator connection stud. Tighten the retaining nut to 20.16 N·m (180 in. lbs.).

(4) Insert a screw for the receiver/drier bracket and hand turn three turns. Tighten the screw to 10.64 N·m (95 in. lbs.).

(5) Install the grill assembly (Refer to 23 - BODY/EXTERIOR/GRILLE - INSTALLATION).

(6) Install the battery tray and the battery (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/BATTERY SYSTEM/TRAY - INSTALLATION) and (Refer to 8 - ELECTRICAL/BATTERY SYSTEM/BATTERY - INSTALLATION).

(7) Evacuate the refrigerant system. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING -

STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFRIGERANT SYSTEM EVACUATE)

(8) Charge the refrigerant system. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING - STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFRIGERANT SYSTEM CHARGE)

**NOTE: If the receiver/drier is replaced, add 120 milliliters (4 fluid ounces) of refrigerant oil to the refrigerant system. Use only refrigerant oil of the type recommended for the compressor in the vehicle. (Refer to 24 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING/PLUMBING/REFRIGERANT OIL - DESCRIPTION)**

## REFRIGERANT

## DESCRIPTION

The refrigerant used in this air conditioning system is a HydroFluoroCarbon (HFC), type R-134a. Unlike R-12, which is a ChloroFluoroCarbon (CFC), R-134a refrigerant does not contain ozone-depleting chlorine. R-134a refrigerant is a non-toxic, non-flammable, clear, and colorless liquefied gas.

Even though R-134a does not contain chlorine, it must be reclaimed and recycled just like CFC-type refrigerants. This is because R-134a is a greenhouse gas and can contribute to global warming.

## OPERATION

R-134a refrigerant is not compatible with R-12 refrigerant in an air conditioning system. Even a small amount of R-12 added to an R-134a refrigerant system will cause compressor failure, refrigerant oil sludge or poor air conditioning system performance. In addition, the PolyAlkylene Glycol (PAG) synthetic refrigerant oils used in an R-134a refrigerant system are not compatible with the mineral-based refrigerant oils used in an R-12 refrigerant system.

R-134a refrigerant system service ports, service tool couplers and refrigerant dispensing bottles have all been designed with unique fittings to ensure that an R-134a system is not accidentally contaminated with the wrong refrigerant (R-12). There are also labels posted in the engine compartment of the vehicle and on the compressor identifying to service technicians that the air conditioning system is equipped with R-134a.



## REFRIGERANT OIL

### DESCRIPTION

The refrigerant oil used in R-134a refrigerant systems is a synthetic-based, PolyAlkyene Glycol (PAG), wax-free lubricant. Mineral-based R-12 refrigerant oils are not compatible with PAG oils, and should never be introduced to an R-134a refrigerant system.

There are different PAG oils available, and each contains a different additive package. The 10PA17 compressor used in this vehicle is designed to use an ND8 PAG refrigerant oil. Use only refrigerant oil of this same type to service the refrigerant system.

### OPERATION

After performing any refrigerant recovery or recycling operation, always replenish the refrigerant system with the same amount of the recommended refrigerant oil as was removed. Too little refrigerant oil can cause compressor damage, and too much can reduce air conditioning system performance.

PAG refrigerant oil is much more hygroscopic than mineral oil, and will absorb any moisture it comes into contact with, even moisture in the air. The PAG oil container should always be kept tightly capped until it is ready to be used. After use, recap the oil container immediately to prevent moisture contamination.

### STANDARD PROCEDURE - REFRIGERANT OIL LEVEL

When an air conditioning system is assembled at the factory, all components except the compressor are refrigerant oil free. After the refrigerant system has been charged and operated, the refrigerant oil in the compressor is dispersed throughout the refrigerant system. The accumulator, evaporator, condenser, and compressor will each retain a significant amount of the needed refrigerant oil.

It is important to have the correct amount of oil in the refrigerant system. This ensures proper lubrication of the compressor. Too little oil will result in damage to the compressor. Too much oil will reduce the cooling capacity of the air conditioning system.

It will not be necessary to check the oil level in the compressor or to add oil, unless there has been an oil loss. An oil loss may occur due to a rupture or leak from a refrigerant line, a connector fitting, a component, or a component seal. If a leak occurs, add 30 milliliters (1 fluid ounce) of refrigerant oil to the refrigerant system after the repair has been made. Refrigerant oil loss will be evident at the leak point by the presence of a wet, shiny surface around the leak.

Refrigerant oil must be added when a accumulator, evaporator coil, or condenser are replaced. See the Refrigerant Oil Capacities chart. When a compressor is replaced, the refrigerant oil must be drained from the old compressor and measured. Drain all of the refrigerant oil from the new compressor, then fill the new compressor with the same amount of refrigerant oil that was drained out of the old compressor.

Refrigerant Oil Capacities		
Component	ml	fl oz
A/C System	130	4.40
Receiver Drier	70	2.37
Condenser	10	0.34
Evaporator	50	1.69
Compressor	drain and measure the oil from the old compressor - see text.	

# CABIN HEATER

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>VISCOUS HEATER</b>		<b>OPERATION - VISCOUS HEATER CLUTCH</b>	... 77
OPERATION - VISCOUS HEATER	..... 77	<b>REMOVAL - VISCOUS HEATER CLUTCH</b>	..... 78
REMOVAL - VISCOUS HEATER	..... 77	<b>INSTALLATION - VISCOUS</b>	
INSTALLATION	..... 77	<b>HEATER CLUTCH</b>	..... 78
<b>VISCOUS HEATER CLUTCH</b>			
DESCRIPTION - VISCOUS HEATER CLUTCH	.. 77		

## VISCOUS HEATER

### OPERATION - VISCOUS HEATER

The Viscous Heater is driven by the engine fan belt. The Viscous Heater has an electro-mechanical clutch that receives a signal from the HVAC control head and the Viscous Heater controller that energizes and engages the clutch. Once engaged the clutch allows the Viscous Heater to increase the temperature of the coolant flowing to the heater core, which provides heat to the passenger compartment quicker than normal engines without the Viscous Heater. The Viscous Heater generates heat by means of friction which heats a special Silicon Oil within its housing which is then transferred to the engine coolant when the coolant passes over fins within the pump. Please note that the coolant is isolated from the silicon oil within the pump housing. When demand for passenger compartment heat decreases the Viscous Heater clutch will receive an input from the Viscous heater controller to disengage.

### REMOVAL - VISCOUS HEATER

- (1) Drain the engine coolant(Refer to 7 - COOLING/ENGINE - STANDARD PROCEDURE).
- (2) Remove the engine accessory drive belt(Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - REMOVAL).
- (3) Remove the heater hose clamps at the Viscous Heater.
- (4) Remove the heater hoses from the Viscous Heater.
- (5) Unplug the Viscous Heater clutch electrical connector.
- (6) Remove the bolts holding the Viscous Heater to the mounting bracket.
- (7) Remove the Viscous Heater from the vehicle.

### INSTALLATION

- (1) Install Viscous Heater to engine mounting bracket.

- (2) Install the Viscous Heater mounting bolts and tighten to 33 N·m ( 25 ft. lbs.).
- (3) Plug the wiring harness electrical connector to the Viscous Heater clutch.
- (4) Install heater hoses to the Viscous Heater connections.
- (5) Install heater hose clamps to Viscous Heater connections.
- (6) Install the engine accessory drive belt(Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - INSTALLATION).
- (7) Refill the engine cooling system(Refer to 7 - COOLING/ENGINE - STANDARD PROCEDURE).
- (8) Reconnect the battery negative cable.
- (9) Operate vehicle and check for any coolant leaks, repair as required.

## VISCOUS HEATER CLUTCH

### DESCRIPTION - VISCOUS HEATER CLUTCH

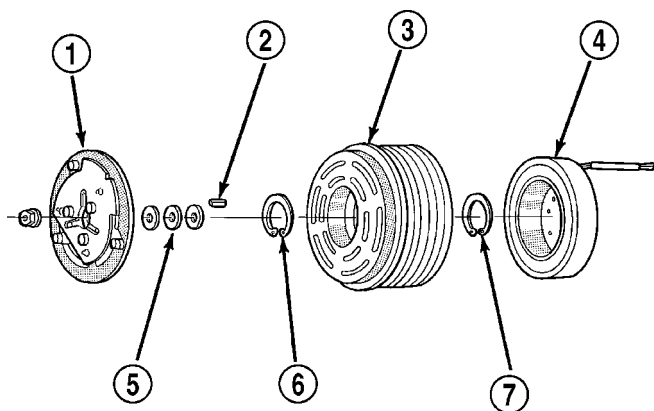
The basic viscous heater clutch assembly consists of a stationary electromagnetic coil, a hub bearing and pulley assembly and a clutch plate. The electromagnetic coil unit and the hub bearing and pulley assembly are each retained on the nose of the compressor front housing with snap rings (Fig. 1). The clutch plate is keyed to the viscous heater shaft and secured with a nut. These components provide the means to engage and disengage the viscous heater from the engine accessory drive belt.

### OPERATION - VISCOUS HEATER CLUTCH

When the clutch coil is energized, it magnetically draws the clutch into contact with the pulley and drives the viscous heater shaft. When the coil is not energized the pulley freewheels on the clutch hub bearing, which is part of the pulley. The viscous heater clutch and coil are the only serviced parts on the viscous heater assembly. If the viscous heater is inoperative or damaged the entire assembly must be replaced. The viscous heater clutch engagement is



## VISCOUS HEATER CLUTCH (Continued)



**Fig. 1 CLUTCH ASSEMBLY- typical** J9524-33

- 1 - CLUTCH PLATE
- 2 - SHAFT KEY
- 3 - PULLEY
- 4 - COIL
- 5 - CLUTCH SHIMS
- 6 - SNAP RING
- 7 - SNAP RING

controlled by several components: the viscous heater controller, the engine powertrain control module and the HVAC control head.

## REMOVAL - VISCOUS HEATER CLUTCH

(1) The viscous heater clutch can be serviced in the vehicle and the cooling system does not have to be drained.

(2) Disconnect and isolate the battery negative cable.

(3) Remove the serpentine drive belt (Refer to 7 - COOLING/ACCESSORY DRIVE/DRIVE BELTS - REMOVAL).

(4) Unplug the clutch coil wire harness connector.

(5) Remove the bolts that secure the viscous heater to the mounting bracket.

(6) Remove the viscous heater from the mounting bracket. Support the viscous heater in the engine compartment while servicing the clutch.

(7) Insert the two pins of the spanner wrench (special Tool C-4489 or equivalent) into the holes of the clutch plate. Hold the clutch plate stationary and remove the hex nut (Fig. 2).

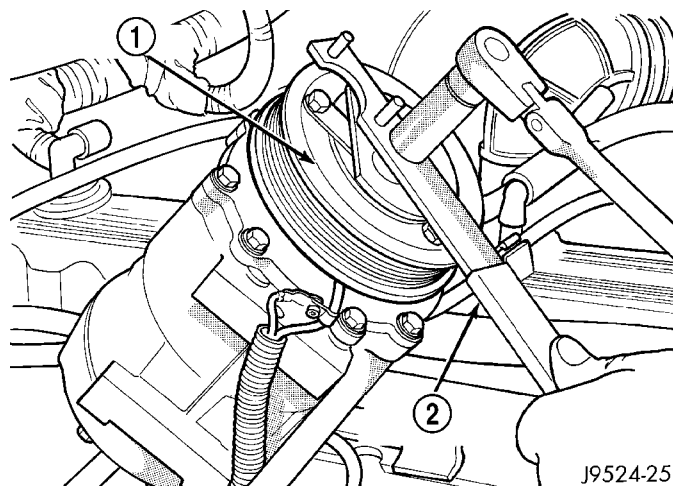
(8) Remove the clutch plate.

(9) Remove the clutch shims.

(10) Remove the external front housing snap ring with snap ring pliers (Fig. 3).

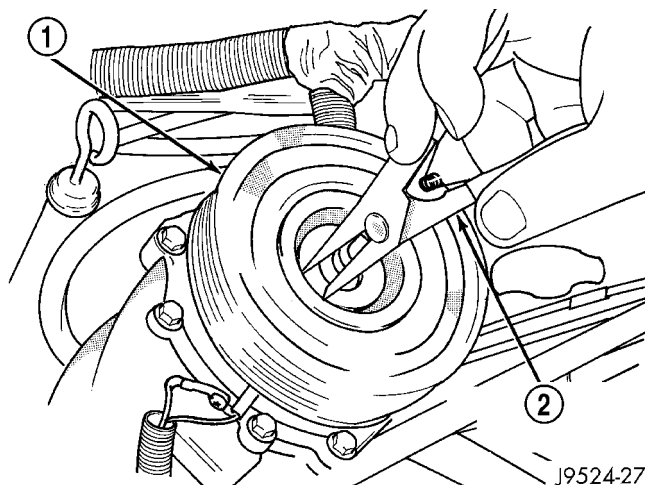
(11) Install the lip of the rotor puller (Special Tool C-6141-1 or equivalent) into the snap ring groove exposed in the previous step, and install the shaft protector (Special Tool C-6141-2 or equivalent) (Fig. 4).

(12) Install the puller through bolts (Special Tool C-6461 or equivalent) through the puller flange and into the jaws of the rotor puller and tighten. Turn the puller center bolt clockwise until the rotor is free (Fig. 5).



**Fig. 2 CLUTCH NUT REMOVE-typical**

- 1 - CLUTCH PLATE
- 2 - SPANNER



**Fig. 3 EXTERNAL SNAP RING REMOVE- typical**

- 1 - PULLEY
- 2 - SNAP RING PLIERS

(13) Remove the screw and retainer from the clutch coil lead wire harness on the viscous heater housing.

(14) Remove the snap ring from the hub and remove the clutch field coil (Fig. 6). Slide the clutch field coil off of the hub.

## INSTALLATION - VISCOUS HEATER CLUTCH

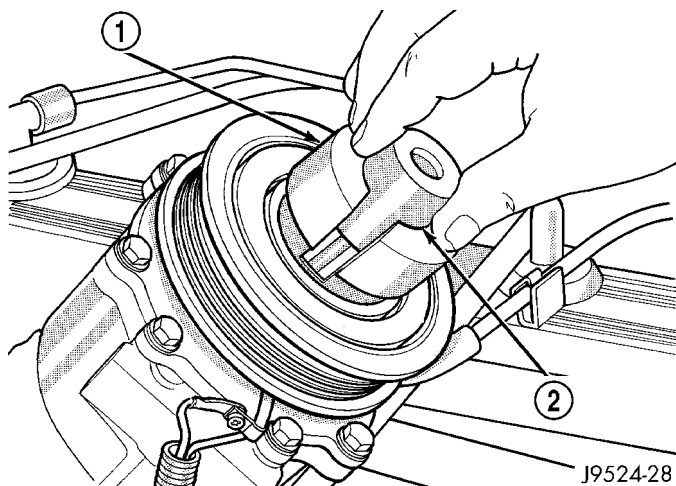
(1) Install the clutch field coil and snap ring.

(2) Install the screw and retainer on the clutch coil lead wire harness on the viscous heater housing. Tighten the screw to 2.2 N·m (20 in. lbs.).

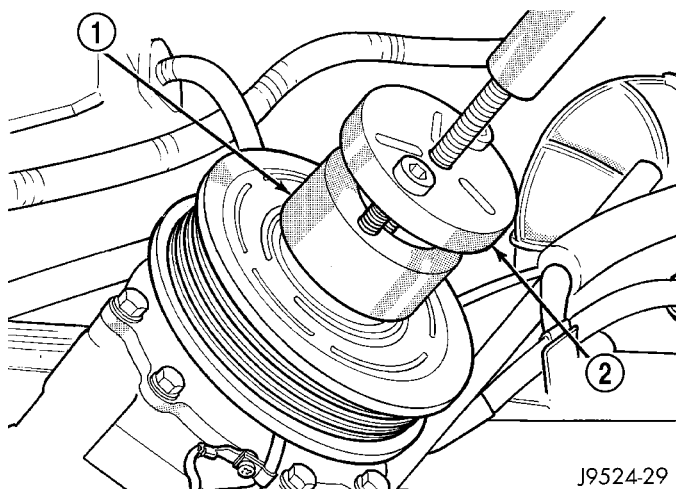
(3) Align the rotor assembly squarely on the front housing hub.

(4) Install the rotor bearing assembly with the installer (Special Tool C-6871 or equivalent). Thread

## VISCOUS HEATER CLUTCH (Continued)

**Fig. 4 SHAFT PROTECTOR AND PULLER- typical**

- 1 - PULLER JAW  
2 - SHAFT PROTECTOR

**Fig. 5 INSTALL PULLER PLATE- typical**

- 1 - PULLER JAW  
2 - PULLER

the installer on the shaft, then turn the nut until the rotor assembly is seated.

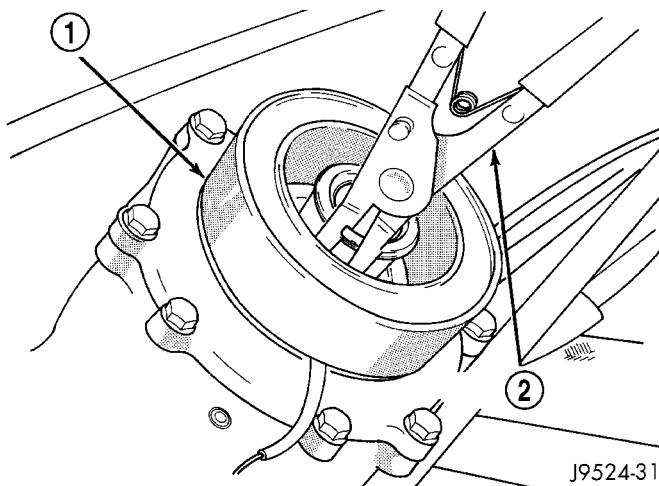
(5) Install the external front housing snap ring with snap ring pliers. The bevel side of the snap ring must be facing outward. Press the snap ring to make sure it is properly seated in the groove.

**CAUTION:** If the snap ring is not fully seated in the groove it will vibrate out, resulting in a clutch failure and severe damage to the front housing of the compressor.

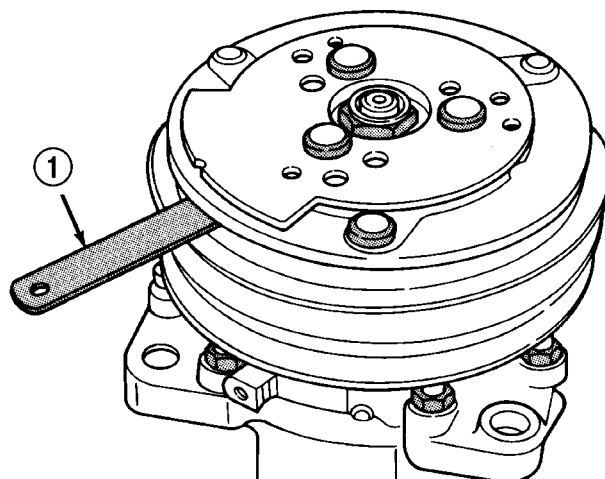
(6) Install the original clutch shims on the shaft.

(7) Install the clutch plate. Install the shaft hex nut and tighten to 15–20 N·m (11–15 ft. lbs.).

(8) Check the clutch air gap with a feeler gauge (Fig. 7). If the gap does not meet specification, add or

**Fig. 6 CLUTCH FIELD COIL SNAP RING REMOVE- typical**

- 1 - COIL  
2 - SNAP RING PLIERS

**Fig. 7 CHECK CLUTCH AIR GAP- typical**

- 1 - FEELER GAUGE

subtract shims as required. The air gap specification is 0.41 to 0.79 millimeters (0.016 to 0.031 inches).

**NOTE:** The air gap is determined by the spacer shims. When installing an original, or a new clutch assembly, try the original shims first. When installing a new clutch (and not having the old shims available) use a 1.0, 0.50 and 0.13 millimeter (0.040, 0.020 and 0.005 inch) shim from the new clutch hardware package that is provided with the new clutch.

(9) Reinstall the viscous heater to the mounting bracket. Tighten the mounting screws to 33 N·m (25 ft. lbs.).

(10) Reinstall the battery negative cable.



## EMISSIONS CONTROL 4.0L/4.7L

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page	page
<b>EMISSIONS CONTROL 4.0L/4.7L</b>		
DESCRIPTION		
DESCRIPTION - EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM . . . . .	1	DESCRIPTION - TASK MANAGER . . . . . 2
DESCRIPTION - STATE DISPLAY TEST MODE . . . . .	1	DESCRIPTION - MONITORED SYSTEMS . . . . 2
DESCRIPTION - CIRCUIT ACTUATION TEST MODE . . . . .	1	DESCRIPTION - TRIP DEFINITION . . . . . 4
DESCRIPTION - DIAGNOSTIC TROUBLE CODES . . . . .	2	DESCRIPTION - COMPONENT MONITORS . . 5
		DESCRIPTION - NON-MONITORED CIRCUITS . . . . . 5
		DESCRIPTION - HIGH AND LOW LIMITS . . . 6
		DESCRIPTION - LOAD VALUE . . . . . 6
		OPERATION - TASK MANAGER . . . . . 6
		<b>EVAPORATIVE EMISSIONS</b> . . . . . 10

## EMISSIONS CONTROL 4.0L/4.7L

### DESCRIPTION

#### DESCRIPTION - EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

The Powertrain Control Module (PCM) monitors many different circuits in the fuel injection, ignition, emission and engine systems. If the PCM senses a problem with a monitored circuit often enough to indicate an actual problem, it stores a Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) in the PCM's memory. If the code applies to a non-emissions related component or system, and the problem is repaired or ceases to exist, the PCM cancels the code after 40 warm-up cycles. Diagnostic trouble codes that affect vehicle emissions illuminate the Malfunction Indicator (check engine) Lamp. Refer to Malfunction Indicator Lamp in this section.

Certain criteria must be met before the PCM stores a DTC in memory. The criteria may be a specific range of engine RPM, engine temperature, and/or input voltage to the PCM.

The PCM might not store a DTC for a monitored circuit even though a malfunction has occurred. This may happen because one of the DTC criteria for the circuit has not been met. **For example**, assume the diagnostic trouble code criteria requires the PCM to monitor the circuit only when the engine operates between 750 and 2000 RPM. Suppose the sensor's output circuit shorts to ground when engine operates above 2400 RPM (resulting in 0 volt input to the PCM). Because the condition happens at an engine speed above the maximum threshold (2000 rpm), the PCM will not store a DTC.

There are several operating conditions for which the PCM monitors and sets DTC's. Refer to Monitored Systems, Components, and Non-Monitored Circuits in this section.

Technicians must retrieve stored DTC's by connecting the DRB scan tool (or an equivalent scan tool) to the 16-way data link connector (Fig. 1).

**NOTE:** Various diagnostic procedures may actually cause a diagnostic monitor to set a DTC. For instance, pulling a spark plug wire to perform a spark test may set the misfire code. When a repair is completed and verified, connect the DRB scan tool to the 16-way data link connector to erase all DTC's and extinguish the MIL (check engine lamp).

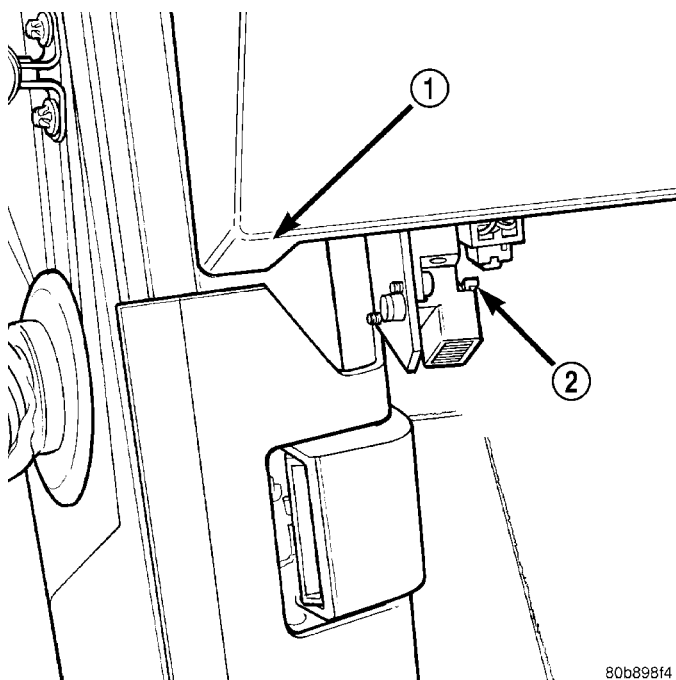
#### DESCRIPTION - STATE DISPLAY TEST MODE

The switch inputs to the Powertrain Control Module (PCM) have two recognized states; HIGH and LOW. For this reason, the PCM cannot recognize the difference between a selected switch position versus an open circuit, a short circuit, or a defective switch. If the State Display screen shows the change from HIGH to LOW or LOW to HIGH, assume the entire switch circuit to the PCM functions properly. Connect the DRB scan tool to the data link connector and access the state display screen. Then access either State Display Inputs and Outputs or State Display Sensors.

#### DESCRIPTION - CIRCUIT ACTUATION TEST MODE

The Circuit Actuation Test Mode checks for proper operation of output circuits or devices the Powertrain Control Module (PCM) may not internally recognize. The PCM attempts to activate these outputs and allow an observer to verify proper operation. Most of

## EMISSIONS CONTROL 4.0L/4.7L (Continued)



80b898f4

**Fig. 1 Data Link (Diagnostic) Connector Location**

- 1 - INSTRUMENT PANEL LOWER/LEFT EDGE  
2 - DATA LINK CONNECTOR

the tests provide an audible or visual indication of device operation (click of relay contacts, fuel spray, etc.). Except for intermittent conditions, if a device functions properly during testing, assume the device, its associated wiring, and driver circuit work correctly. Connect the DRB scan tool to the data link connector and access the Actuators screen.

## DESCRIPTION - DIAGNOSTIC TROUBLE CODES

A Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) indicates the PCM has recognized an abnormal condition in the system.

**Remember that DTC's are the results of a system or circuit failure, but do not directly identify the failed component or components.**

### BULB CHECK

Each time the ignition key is turned to the ON position, the malfunction indicator (check engine) lamp on the instrument panel should illuminate for approximately 2 seconds then go out. This is done for a bulb check.

### OBTAINING DTC'S USING DRB SCAN TOOL

- (1) Obtain the applicable Powertrain Diagnostic Manual.
- (2) Obtain the DRB Scan Tool.
- (3) Connect the DRB Scan Tool to the data link (diagnostic) connector. This connector is located in the passenger compartment; at the lower edge of instrument panel; near the steering column.

(4) Turn the ignition switch on and access the "Read Fault" screen.

(5) Record all the DTC's and "freeze frame" information shown on the DRB scan tool.

(6) To erase DTC's, use the "Erase Trouble Code" data screen on the DRB scan tool. **Do not erase any DTC's until problems have been investigated and repairs have been performed.**

## DESCRIPTION - TASK MANAGER

The PCM is responsible for efficiently coordinating the operation of all the emissions-related components. The PCM is also responsible for determining if the diagnostic systems are operating properly. The software designed to carry out these responsibilities is referred to as the "Task Manager".

## DESCRIPTION - MONITORED SYSTEMS

There are new electronic circuit monitors that check fuel, emission, engine and ignition performance. These monitors use information from various sensor circuits to indicate the overall operation of the fuel, engine, ignition and emission systems and thus the emissions performance of the vehicle.

The fuel, engine, ignition and emission systems monitors do not indicate a specific component problem. They do indicate that there is an implied problem within one of the systems and that a specific problem must be diagnosed.

If any of these monitors detect a problem affecting vehicle emissions, the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) will be illuminated. These monitors generate Diagnostic Trouble Codes that can be displayed with the MIL or a scan tool.

The following is a list of the system monitors:

- Misfire Monitor
- Fuel System Monitor
- Oxygen Sensor Monitor
- Oxygen Sensor Heater Monitor
- Catalyst Monitor
- Leak Detection Pump Monitor (if equipped)

All these system monitors require two consecutive trips with the malfunction present to set a fault.

**Refer to the appropriate Powertrain Diagnostics Procedures manual for diagnostic procedures.**

The following is an operation and description of each system monitor:

## OXYGEN SENSOR (O2S) MONITOR

Effective control of exhaust emissions is achieved by an oxygen feedback system. The most important element of the feedback system is the O2S. The O2S is located in the exhaust path. Once it reaches operating temperature 300° to 350°C (572° to 662°F), the sensor generates a voltage that is inversely propor-



## EMISSIONS CONTROL 4.0L/4.7L (Continued)

tional to the amount of oxygen in the exhaust. The information obtained by the sensor is used to calculate the fuel injector pulse width. This maintains a 14.7 to 1 Air Fuel (A/F) ratio. At this mixture ratio, the catalyst works best to remove hydrocarbons (HC), carbon monoxide (CO) and nitrogen oxide (NOx) from the exhaust.

The O2S is also the main sensing element for the Catalyst and Fuel Monitors.

The O2S can fail in any or all of the following manners:

- slow response rate
- reduced output voltage
- dynamic shift
- shorted or open circuits

Response rate is the time required for the sensor to switch from lean to rich once it is exposed to a richer than optimum A/F mixture or vice versa. As the sensor starts malfunctioning, it could take longer to detect the changes in the oxygen content of the exhaust gas.

The output voltage of the O2S ranges from 0 to 1 volt. A good sensor can easily generate any output voltage in this range as it is exposed to different concentrations of oxygen. To detect a shift in the A/F mixture (lean or rich), the output voltage has to change beyond a threshold value. A malfunctioning sensor could have difficulty changing beyond the threshold value.

### OXYGEN SENSOR HEATER MONITOR

If there is an oxygen sensor (O2S) shorted to voltage DTC, as well as a O2S heater DTC, the O2S fault MUST be repaired first. Before checking the O2S fault, verify that the heater circuit is operating correctly.

Effective control of exhaust emissions is achieved by an oxygen feedback system. The most important element of the feedback system is the O2S. The O2S is located in the exhaust path. Once it reaches operating temperature 300° to 350°C (572 ° to 662°F), the sensor generates a voltage that is inversely proportional to the amount of oxygen in the exhaust. The information obtained by the sensor is used to calculate the fuel injector pulse width. This maintains a 14.7 to 1 Air Fuel (A/F) ratio. At this mixture ratio, the catalyst works best to remove hydrocarbons (HC), carbon monoxide (CO) and nitrogen oxide (NOx) from the exhaust.

The voltage readings taken from the O2S sensor are very temperature sensitive. The readings are not accurate below 300°C. Heating of the O2S sensor is done to allow the engine controller to shift to closed loop control as soon as possible. The heating element used to heat the O2S sensor must be tested to ensure that it is heating the sensor properly.

The O2S sensor circuit is monitored for a drop in voltage. The sensor output is used to test the heater by isolating the effect of the heater element on the O2S sensor output voltage from the other effects.

### LEAK DETECTION PUMP MONITOR (IF EQUIPPED)

The leak detection assembly incorporates two primary functions: it must detect a leak in the evaporative system and seal the evaporative system so the leak detection test can be run.

The primary components within the assembly are: A three port solenoid that activates both of the functions listed above; a pump which contains a switch, two check valves and a spring/diaphragm, a canister vent valve (CVV) seal which contains a spring loaded vent seal valve.

Immediately after a cold start, between predetermined temperature thresholds limits, the three port solenoid is briefly energized. This initializes the pump by drawing air into the pump cavity and also closes the vent seal. During non test conditions the vent seal is held open by the pump diaphragm assembly which pushes it open at the full travel position. The vent seal will remain closed while the pump is cycling due to the reed switch triggering of the three port solenoid that prevents the diaphragm assembly from reaching full travel. After the brief initialization period, the solenoid is de-energized allowing atmospheric pressure to enter the pump cavity, thus permitting the spring to drive the diaphragm which forces air out of the pump cavity and into the vent system. When the solenoid is energized and de energized, the cycle is repeated creating flow in typical diaphragm pump fashion. The pump is controlled in 2 modes:

**Pump Mode:** The pump is cycled at a fixed rate to achieve a rapid pressure build in order to shorten the overall test length.

**Test Mode:** The solenoid is energized with a fixed duration pulse. Subsequent fixed pulses occur when the diaphragm reaches the Switch closure point.

The spring in the pump is set so that the system will achieve an equalized pressure of about 7.5" water. The cycle rate of pump strokes is quite rapid as the system begins to pump up to this pressure. As the pressure increases, the cycle rate starts to drop off. If there is no leak in the system, the pump would eventually stop pumping at the equalized pressure. If there is a leak, it will continue to pump at a rate representative of the flow characteristic of the size of the leak. From this information we can determine if the leak is larger than the required detection limit (currently set at .040" orifice by CARB). If a leak is revealed during the leak test portion of the test, the test is terminated at the end of the test mode and no further system checks will be performed.



## EMISSIONS CONTROL 4.0L/4.7L (Continued)

After passing the leak detection phase of the test, system pressure is maintained by turning on the LDP's solenoid until the purge system is activated. Purge activation in effect creates a leak. The cycle rate is again interrogated and when it increases due to the flow through the purge system, the leak check portion of the diagnostic is complete.

The canister vent valve will unseal the system after completion of the test sequence as the pump diaphragm assembly moves to the full travel position.

Evaporative system functionality will be verified by using the stricter evap purge flow monitor. At an appropriate warm idle the LDP will be energized to seal the canister vent. The purge flow will be clocked up from some small value in an attempt to see a shift in the O<sub>2</sub> control system. If fuel vapor, indicated by a shift in the O<sub>2</sub> control, is present the test is passed. If not, it is assumed that the purge system is not functioning in some respect. The LDP is again turned off and the test is ended.

### MISFIRE MONITOR

Excessive engine misfire results in increased catalyst temperature and causes an increase in HC emissions. Severe misfires could cause catalyst damage. To prevent catalytic convertor damage, the PCM monitors engine misfire.

The Powertrain Control Module (PCM) monitors for misfire during most engine operating conditions (positive torque) by looking at changes in the crankshaft speed. If a misfire occurs the speed of the crankshaft will vary more than normal.

### FUEL SYSTEM MONITOR

To comply with clean air regulations, vehicles are equipped with catalytic converters. These converters reduce the emission of hydrocarbons, oxides of nitrogen and carbon monoxide. The catalyst works best when the Air Fuel (A/F) ratio is at or near the optimum of 14.7 to 1.

The PCM is programmed to maintain the optimum air/fuel ratio of 14.7 to 1. This is done by making short term corrections in the fuel injector pulse width based on the O<sub>2</sub>S sensor output. The programmed memory acts as a self calibration tool that the engine controller uses to compensate for variations in engine specifications, sensor tolerances and engine fatigue over the life span of the engine. By monitoring the actual fuel-air ratio with the O<sub>2</sub>S sensor (short term) and multiplying that with the program long-term (adaptive) memory and comparing that to the limit, it can be determined whether it will pass an emissions test. If a malfunction occurs such that the PCM cannot maintain the optimum A/F ratio, then the MIL will be illuminated.

### CATALYST MONITOR

To comply with clean air regulations, vehicles are equipped with catalytic converters. These converters reduce the emission of hydrocarbons, oxides of nitrogen and carbon monoxide.

Normal vehicle miles or engine misfire can cause a catalyst to decay. This can increase vehicle emissions and deteriorate engine performance, driveability and fuel economy.

The catalyst monitor uses dual oxygen sensors (O<sub>2</sub>S's) to monitor the efficiency of the converter. The dual O<sub>2</sub>S's sensor strategy is based on the fact that as a catalyst deteriorates, its oxygen storage capacity and its efficiency are both reduced. By monitoring the oxygen storage capacity of a catalyst, its efficiency can be indirectly calculated. The upstream O<sub>2</sub>S is used to detect the amount of oxygen in the exhaust gas before the gas enters the catalytic converter. The PCM calculates the A/F mixture from the output of the O<sub>2</sub>S. A low voltage indicates high oxygen content (lean mixture). A high voltage indicates a low content of oxygen (rich mixture).

When the upstream O<sub>2</sub>S detects a lean condition, there is an abundance of oxygen in the exhaust gas. A functioning converter would store this oxygen so it can use it for the oxidation of HC and CO. As the converter absorbs the oxygen, there will be a lack of oxygen downstream of the converter. The output of the downstream O<sub>2</sub>S will indicate limited activity in this condition.

As the converter loses the ability to store oxygen, the condition can be detected from the behavior of the downstream O<sub>2</sub>S. When the efficiency drops, no chemical reaction takes place. This means the concentration of oxygen will be the same downstream as upstream. The output voltage of the downstream O<sub>2</sub>S copies the voltage of the upstream sensor. The only difference is a time lag (seen by the PCM) between the switching of the O<sub>2</sub>S's.

To monitor the system, the number of lean-to-rich switches of upstream and downstream O<sub>2</sub>S's is counted. The ratio of downstream switches to upstream switches is used to determine whether the catalyst is operating properly. An effective catalyst will have fewer downstream switches than it has upstream switches i.e., a ratio closer to zero. For a totally ineffective catalyst, this ratio will be one-to-one, indicating that no oxidation occurs in the device.

The system must be monitored so that when catalyst efficiency deteriorates and exhaust emissions increase to over the legal limit, the MIL will be illuminated.

### DESCRIPTION - TRIP DEFINITION

The term "Trip" has different meanings depending on what the circumstances are. If the MIL (Malfunc-

## EMISSIONS CONTROL 4.0L/4.7L (Continued)

tion Indicator Lamp) is OFF, a Trip is defined as when the Oxygen Sensor Monitor and the Catalyst Monitor have been completed in the same drive cycle.

When any Emission DTC is set, the MIL on the dash is turned ON. When the MIL is ON, it takes 3 good trips to turn the MIL OFF. In this case, it depends on what type of DTC is set to know what a "Trip" is.

For the Fuel Monitor or Mis-Fire Monitor (continuous monitor), the vehicle must be operated in the "Similar Condition Window" for a specified amount of time to be considered a Good Trip.

If a Non-Continuous OBDII Monitor fails twice in a row and turns ON the MIL, re-running that monitor which previously failed, on the next start-up and passing the monitor, is considered to be a Good Trip. These will include the following:

- Oxygen Sensor
- Catalyst Monitor
- Purge Flow Monitor
- Leak Detection Pump Monitor (if equipped)
- EGR Monitor (if equipped)
- Oxygen Sensor Heater Monitor

If any other Emission DTC is set (not an OBDII Monitor), a Good Trip is considered to be when the Oxygen Sensor Monitor and Catalyst Monitor have been completed; or 2 Minutes of engine run time if the Oxygen Sensor Monitor or Catalyst Monitor have been stopped from running.

It can take up to 2 Failures in a row to turn on the MIL. After the MIL is ON, it takes 3 Good Trips to turn the MIL OFF. After the MIL is OFF, the PCM will self-erase the DTC after 40 Warm-up cycles. A Warm-up cycle is counted when the ECT (Engine Coolant Temperature Sensor) has crossed 160°F and has risen by at least 40°F since the engine has been started.

## DESCRIPTION - COMPONENT MONITORS

There are several components that will affect vehicle emissions if they malfunction. If one of these components malfunctions the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) will illuminate.

Some of the component monitors are checking for proper operation of the part. Electrically operated components now have input (rationality) and output (functionality) checks. Previously, a component like the Throttle Position sensor (TPS) was checked by the PCM for an open or shorted circuit. If one of these conditions occurred, a DTC was set. Now there is a check to ensure that the component is working. This is done by watching for a TPS indication of a greater or lesser throttle opening than MAP and engine rpm indicate. In the case of the TPS, if engine vacuum is high and engine rpm is 1600 or greater and the TPS indicates a large throttle opening, a

DTC will be set. The same applies to low vacuum if the TPS indicates a small throttle opening.

All open/short circuit checks or any component that has an associated limp in will set a fault after 1 trip with the malfunction present. Components without an associated limp in will take two trips to illuminate the MIL.

Refer to the Diagnostic Trouble Codes Description Charts in this section and the appropriate Powertrain Diagnostic Procedure Manual for diagnostic procedures.

## DESCRIPTION - NON-MONITORED CIRCUITS

The PCM does not monitor the following circuits, systems and conditions that could have malfunctions causing driveability problems. The PCM might not store diagnostic trouble codes for these conditions. However, problems with these systems may cause the PCM to store diagnostic trouble codes for other systems or components. For example, a fuel pressure problem will not register a fault directly, but could cause a rich/lean condition or misfire. This could cause the PCM to store an oxygen sensor or misfire diagnostic trouble code

### FUEL PRESSURE

The fuel pressure regulator controls fuel system pressure. The PCM cannot detect a clogged fuel pump inlet filter, clogged in-line fuel filter, or a pinched fuel supply or return line. However, these could result in a rich or lean condition causing the PCM to store an oxygen sensor or fuel system diagnostic trouble code.

### SECONDARY IGNITION CIRCUIT

The PCM cannot detect an inoperative ignition coil, fouled or worn spark plugs, ignition cross firing, or open spark plug cables.

### CYLINDER COMPRESSION

The PCM cannot detect uneven, low, or high engine cylinder compression.

### EXHAUST SYSTEM

The PCM cannot detect a plugged, restricted or leaking exhaust system, although it may set a fuel system fault.

### FUEL INJECTOR MECHANICAL MALFUNCTIONS

The PCM cannot determine if a fuel injector is clogged, the needle is sticking or if the wrong injector is installed. However, these could result in a rich or lean condition causing the PCM to store a diagnostic trouble code for either misfire, an oxygen sensor, or the fuel system.

## EMISSIONS CONTROL 4.0L/4.7L (Continued)

## EXCESSIVE OIL CONSUMPTION

Although the PCM monitors engine exhaust oxygen content when the system is in closed loop, it cannot determine excessive oil consumption.

## THROTTLE BODY AIRFLOW

The PCM cannot detect a clogged or restricted air cleaner inlet or filter element.

## VACUUM ASSIST

The PCM cannot detect leaks or restrictions in the vacuum circuits of vacuum assisted engine control system devices. However, these could cause the PCM to store a MAP sensor diagnostic trouble code and cause a high idle condition.

## PCM SYSTEM GROUND

The PCM cannot determine a poor system ground. However, one or more diagnostic trouble codes may be generated as a result of this condition. The mod-

ule should be mounted to the body at all times, also during diagnostic.

## PCM CONNECTOR ENGAGEMENT

The PCM may not be able to determine spread or damaged connector pins. However, it might store diagnostic trouble codes as a result of spread connector pins.

## DESCRIPTION - HIGH AND LOW LIMITS

The PCM compares input signal voltages from each input device with established high and low limits for the device. If the input voltage is not within limits and other criteria are met, the PCM stores a diagnostic trouble code in memory. Other diagnostic trouble code criteria might include engine RPM limits or input voltages from other sensors or switches that must be present before verifying a diagnostic trouble code condition.

## DESCRIPTION - LOAD VALUE

ENGINE	IDLE/NEUTRAL	2500 RPM/NEUTRAL
All Engines	2% to 8% of Maximum Load	9% to 17% of Maximum Load

## OPERATION - TASK MANAGER

The Task Manager determines which tests happen when and which functions occur when. Many of the diagnostic steps required by OBD II must be performed under specific operating conditions. The Task Manager software organizes and prioritizes the diagnostic procedures. The job of the Task Manager is to determine if conditions are appropriate for tests to be run, monitor the parameters for a trip for each test, and record the results of the test. Following are the responsibilities of the Task Manager software:

- Test Sequence
- MIL Illumination
- Diagnostic Trouble Codes (DTCs)
- Trip Indicator
- Freeze Frame Data Storage
- Similar Conditions Window

## Test Sequence

In many instances, emissions systems must fail diagnostic tests more than once before the PCM illuminates the MIL. These tests are known as 'two trip monitors.' Other tests that turn the MIL lamp on after a single failure are known as 'one trip monitors.' A trip is defined as 'start the vehicle and operate it to meet the criteria necessary to run the given monitor.'

Many of the diagnostic tests must be performed under certain operating conditions. However, there

are times when tests cannot be run because another test is in progress (conflict), another test has failed (pending) or the Task Manager has set a fault that may cause a failure of the test (suspend).

- Pending

Under some situations the Task Manager will not run a monitor if the MIL is illuminated and a fault is stored from another monitor. In these situations, the Task Manager postpones monitors **pending** resolution of the original fault. The Task Manager does not run the test until the problem is remedied.

For example, when the MIL is illuminated for an Oxygen Sensor fault, the Task Manager does not run the Catalyst Monitor until the Oxygen Sensor fault is remedied. Since the Catalyst Monitor is based on signals from the Oxygen Sensor, running the test would produce inaccurate results.

- Conflict

There are situations when the Task Manager does not run a test if another monitor is in progress. In these situations, the effects of another monitor running could result in an erroneous failure. If this **conflict** is present, the monitor is not run until the conflicting condition passes. Most likely the monitor will run later after the conflicting monitor has passed.

For example, if the Fuel System Monitor is in progress, the Task Manager does not run the EGR Monitor. Since both tests monitor changes in air/fuel

## EMISSIONS CONTROL 4.0L/4.7L (Continued)

ratio and adaptive fuel compensation, the monitors will conflict with each other.

- Suspend

Occasionally the Task Manager may not allow a two trip fault to mature. The Task Manager will **suspend** the maturing of a fault if a condition exists that may induce an erroneous failure. This prevents illuminating the MIL for the wrong fault and allows more precise diagnosis.

For example, if the PCM is storing a one trip fault for the Oxygen Sensor and the EGR monitor, the Task Manager may still run the EGR Monitor but will suspend the results until the Oxygen Sensor Monitor either passes or fails. At that point the Task Manager can determine if the EGR system is actually failing or if an Oxygen Sensor is failing.

### MIL Illumination

The PCM Task Manager carries out the illumination of the MIL. The Task Manager triggers MIL illumination upon test failure, depending on monitor failure criteria.

The Task Manager Screen shows both a Requested MIL state and an Actual MIL state. When the MIL is illuminated upon completion of a test for a third trip, the Requested MIL state changes to OFF. However, the MIL remains illuminated until the next key cycle. (On some vehicles, the MIL will actually turn OFF during the third key cycle) During the key cycle for the third good trip, the Requested MIL state is OFF, while the Actual MIL state is ON. After the next key cycle, the MIL is not illuminated and both MIL states read OFF.

### Diagnostic Trouble Codes (DTCs)

With OBD II, different DTC faults have different priorities according to regulations. As a result, the priorities determine MIL illumination and DTC erasure. DTCs are entered according to individual priority. DTCs with a higher priority overwrite lower priority DTCs.

#### Priorities

- Priority 0 — Non-emissions related trouble codes
- Priority 1 — One trip failure of a two trip fault for non-fuel system and non-misfire.
- Priority 2 — One trip failure of a two trip fault for fuel system (rich/lean) or misfire.
- Priority 3 — Two trip failure for a non-fuel system and non-misfire or matured one trip comprehensive component fault.
- Priority 4 — Two trip failure or matured fault for fuel system (rich/lean) and misfire or one trip catalyst damaging misfire.

Non-emissions related failures have no priority. One trip failures of two trip faults have low priority.

Two trip failures or matured faults have higher priority. One and two trip failures of fuel system and misfire monitor take precedence over non-fuel system and non-misfire failures.

### DTC Self Erasure

With one trip components or systems, the MIL is illuminated upon test failure and DTCs are stored.

Two trip monitors are components requiring failure in two consecutive trips for MIL illumination. Upon failure of the first test, the Task Manager enters a maturing code. If the component fails the test for a second time the code matures and a DTC is set.

After three good trips the MIL is extinguished and the Task Manager automatically switches the trip counter to a warm-up cycle counter. DTCs are automatically erased following 40 warm-up cycles if the component does not fail again.

For misfire and fuel system monitors, the component must pass the test under a Similar Conditions Window in order to record a good trip. A Similar Conditions Window is when engine RPM is within  $\pm 375$  RPM and load is within  $\pm 10\%$  of when the fault occurred.

**NOTE:** It is important to understand that a component does not have to fail under a similar window of operation to mature. It must pass the test under a Similar Conditions Window when it failed to record a Good Trip for DTC erasure for misfire and fuel system monitors.

DTCs can be erased anytime with a DRB III. Erasing the DTC with the DRB III erases all OBD II information. The DRB III automatically displays a warning that erasing the DTC will also erase all OBD II monitor data. This includes all counter information for warm-up cycles, trips and Freeze Frame.

### Trip Indicator

The **Trip** is essential for running monitors and extinguishing the MIL. In OBD II terms, a trip is a set of vehicle operating conditions that must be met for a specific monitor to run. All trips begin with a key cycle.

#### Good Trip

The Good Trip counters are as follows:

- Specific Good Trip
- Fuel System Good Trip
- Misfire Good Trip
- Alternate Good Trip (appears as a Global Good Trip on DRB III)

#### Trip on DRB III)

- Comprehensive Components
- Major Monitor
- Warm-Up Cycles

#### Specific Good Trip



## EMISSIONS CONTROL 4.0L/4.7L (Continued)

The term Good Trip has different meanings depending on the circumstances:

- If the MIL is OFF, a trip is defined as when the Oxygen Sensor Monitor and the Catalyst Monitor have been completed in the same drive cycle.
- If the MIL is ON and a DTC was set by the Fuel Monitor or Misfire Monitor (both continuous monitors), the vehicle must be operated in the Similar Condition Window for a specified amount of time.
- If the MIL is ON and a DTC was set by a Task Manager commanded once-per-trip monitor (such as the Oxygen Sensor Monitor, Catalyst Monitor, Purge Flow Monitor, Leak Detection Pump Monitor, EGR Monitor or Oxygen Sensor Heater Monitor), a good trip is when the monitor is passed on the next start-up.
- If the MIL is ON and any other emissions DTC was set (not an OBD II monitor), a good trip occurs when the Oxygen Sensor Monitor and Catalyst Monitor have been completed, or two minutes of engine run time if the Oxygen Sensor Monitor and Catalyst Monitor have been stopped from running.

**Fuel System Good Trip**

To count a good trip (three required) and turn off the MIL, the following conditions must occur:

- Engine in closed loop
- Operating in Similar Conditions Window
- Short Term multiplied by Long Term less than threshold
- Less than threshold for a predetermined time

If all of the previous criteria are met, the PCM will count a good trip (three required) and turn off the MIL.

**Misfire Good Trip**

If the following conditions are met the PCM will count one good trip (three required) in order to turn off the MIL:

- Operating in Similar Condition Window
- 1000 engine revolutions with no misfire

**Warm-Up Cycles**

Once the MIL has been extinguished by the Good Trip Counter, the PCM automatically switches to a Warm-Up Cycle Counter that can be viewed on the DRB III. Warm-Up Cycles are used to erase DTCs and Freeze Frames. Forty Warm-Up cycles must occur in order for the PCM to self-erase a DTC and Freeze Frame. A Warm-Up Cycle is defined as follows:

- Engine coolant temperature must start below and rise above 160° F
- Engine coolant temperature must rise by 40° F
- No further faults occur

**Freeze Frame Data Storage**

Once a failure occurs, the Task Manager records several engine operating conditions and stores it in a

Freeze Frame. The Freeze Frame is considered one frame of information taken by an on-board data recorder. When a fault occurs, the PCM stores the input data from various sensors so that technicians can determine under what vehicle operating conditions the failure occurred.

The data stored in Freeze Frame is usually recorded when a system fails the first time for two trip faults. Freeze Frame data will only be overwritten by a different fault with a higher priority.

**CAUTION: Erasing DTCs, either with the DRB III or by disconnecting the battery, also clears all Freeze Frame data.**

**Similar Conditions Window**

The Similar Conditions Window displays information about engine operation during a monitor. Absolute MAP (engine load) and Engine RPM are stored in this window when a failure occurs. There are two different Similar conditions Windows: Fuel System and Misfire.

**FUEL SYSTEM**

• **Fuel System Similar Conditions Window** — An indicator that 'Absolute MAP When Fuel Sys Fail' and 'RPM When Fuel Sys Failed' are all in the same range when the failure occurred. Indicated by switching from 'NO' to 'YES'.

• **Absolute MAP When Fuel Sys Fail** — The stored MAP reading at the time of failure. Informs the user at what engine load the failure occurred.

• **Absolute MAP** — A live reading of engine load to aid the user in accessing the Similar Conditions Window.

• **RPM When Fuel Sys Fail** — The stored RPM reading at the time of failure. Informs the user at what engine RPM the failure occurred.

• **Engine RPM** — A live reading of engine RPM to aid the user in accessing the Similar Conditions Window.

• **Adaptive Memory Factor** — The PCM utilizes both Short Term Compensation and Long Term Adaptive to calculate the Adaptive Memory Factor for total fuel correction.

• **Upstream O2S Volts** — A live reading of the Oxygen Sensor to indicate its performance. For example, stuck lean, stuck rich, etc.

• **SCW Time in Window (Similar Conditions Window Time in Window)** — A timer used by the PCM that indicates that, after all Similar Conditions have been met, if there has been enough good engine running time in the SCW without failure detected. This timer is used to increment a Good Trip.

• **Fuel System Good Trip Counter** — A Trip Counter used to turn OFF the MIL for Fuel System DTCs. To increment a Fuel System Good Trip, the

## EMISSIONS CONTROL 4.0L/4.7L (Continued)

engine must be in the Similar Conditions Window, Adaptive Memory Factor must be less than calibrated threshold and the Adaptive Memory Factor must stay below that threshold for a calibrated amount of time.

- **Test Done This Trip** — Indicates that the monitor has already been run and completed during the current trip.

**MISFIRE**

- **Same Misfire Warm-Up State** — Indicates if the misfire occurred when the engine was warmed up (above 160° F).

- **In Similar Misfire Window** — An indicator that 'Absolute MAP When Misfire Occurred' and 'RPM When Misfire Occurred' are all in the same range when the failure occurred. Indicated by switching from 'NO' to 'YES'.

- **Absolute MAP When Misfire Occurred** — The stored MAP reading at the time of failure. Informs the user at what engine load the failure occurred.

- **Absolute MAP** — A live reading of engine load to aid the user in accessing the Similar Conditions Window.

- **RPM When Misfire Occurred** — The stored RPM reading at the time of failure. Informs the user at what engine RPM the failure occurred.

- **Engine RPM** — A live reading of engine RPM to aid the user in accessing the Similar Conditions Window.

- **Adaptive Memory Factor** — The PCM utilizes both Short Term Compensation and Long Term Adaptive to calculate the Adaptive Memory Factor for total fuel correction.

- **200 Rev Counter** — Counts 0–100 720 degree cycles.

- **SCW Cat 200 Rev Counter** — Counts when in similar conditions.

- **SCW FTP 1000 Rev Counter** — Counts 0–4 when in similar conditions.

- **Misfire Good Trip Counter** — Counts up to three to turn OFF the MIL.

- **Misfire Data**— Data collected during test.

- **Test Done This Trip**— Indicates YES when the test is done.



## EVAPORATIVE EMISSIONS

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
<b>EVAPORATIVE EMISSIONS</b>		<b>REMOVAL</b> .....	16
DESCRIPTION		<b>LEAK DETECTION PUMP</b>	
DESCRIPTION - EVAPORATION CONTROL SYSTEM .....	11	DESCRIPTION .....	16
DESCRIPTION - CCV SYSTEM .....	12	OPERATION .....	17
DESCRIPTION - PCV SYSTEM .....	12	DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - ENABLING CONDITIONS TO RUN EVAP LEAK	
OPERATION		DETECTION TEST .....	19
OPERATION - 4.0L CCV SYSTEM .....	12	REMOVAL .....	21
OPERATION - 4.7L PCV SYSTEM .....	13	INSTALLATION .....	21
SPECIFICATIONS		<b>ORVR</b>	
TORQUE - EVAPORATION SYSTEM .....	14	DESCRIPTION .....	23
<b>CCV HOSE</b>		OPERATION .....	23
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - CCV SYSTEM - 4.0L .....	14	<b>PCV VALVE</b>	
REMOVAL - FIXED ORIFICE FITTING .....	15	DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - PCV VALVE/PCV SYSTEM - 4.7L .....	23
INSTALLATION - FIXED ORIFICE FITTING .....	15	REMOVAL - PCV VALVE - 4.7L .....	25
<b>EVAP/PURGE SOLENOID</b>		INSTALLATION - PCV VALVE - 4.7L .....	25
DESCRIPTION .....	15	<b>VACUUM LINES</b>	
OPERATION .....	15	DESCRIPTION .....	25
REMOVAL .....	15	<b>VAPOR CANISTER</b>	
INSTALLATION .....	16	DESCRIPTION .....	25
<b>FUEL FILLER CAP</b>		OPERATION .....	25
DESCRIPTION .....	16	REMOVAL .....	25
OPERATION .....	16	INSTALLATION .....	26

## EVAPORATIVE EMISSIONS

### DESCRIPTION

#### DESCRIPTION - EVAPORATION CONTROL SYSTEM

The evaporation control system prevents the emission of fuel tank vapors into the atmosphere. When fuel evaporates in the fuel tank, the vapors pass through the control valve, through the fuel management valve, and through vent hoses and tubes to a charcoal filled evaporative canister. The canister temporarily holds the vapors. The Powertrain Control Module (PCM) allows intake manifold vacuum to draw vapors into the combustion chambers during certain operating conditions.

Gas powered engines use a duty cycle purge system. The PCM controls vapor flow by operating the duty cycle EVAP purge solenoid. Refer to Duty Cycle EVAP Canister Purge Solenoid.

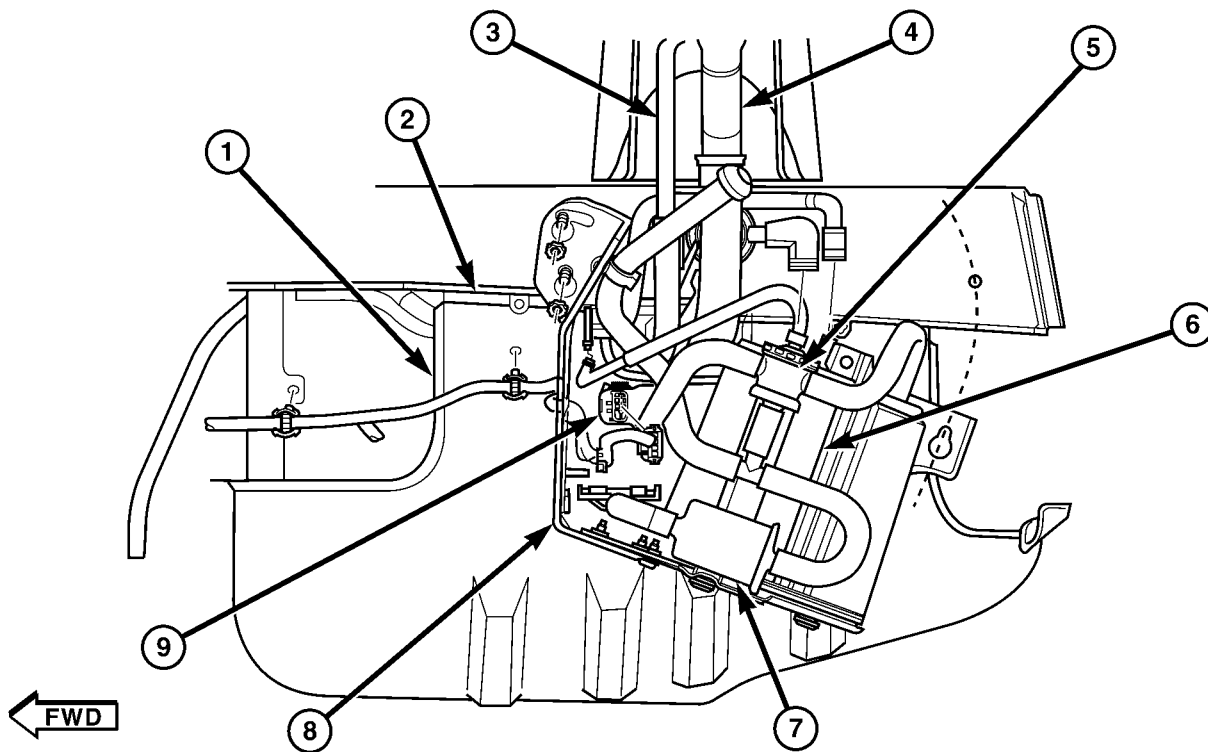
When equipped with certain emissions packages, a Leak Detection Pump (LDP) will be used as part of

the evaporative system for OBD II requirements. Also refer to Leak Detection Pump.

Vehicles powered with gasoline engines are also equipped with ORVR (On-Board Refueling Vapor Recovery). Refer to ORVR for additional information.

**NOTE:** The evaporative system uses specially manufactured lines/hoses. If replacement becomes necessary, only use fuel resistant, low permeation hose.

Certain components can be found in (Fig. 1).



80d5a281

**Fig. 1 ORVR / LDP COMPONENTS**

- 1 - FUEL TANK (LEFT SIDE)
- 2 - FRAME RAIL (LEFT-REAR OUTSIDE)
- 3 - FUEL VENT TUBE
- 4 - FUEL FILL TUBE
- 5 - CONTROL VALVE

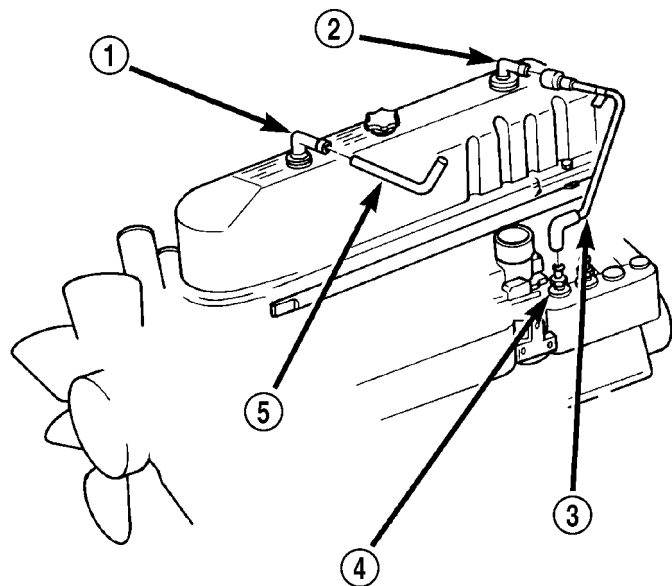
- 6 - EVAP CANISTER
- 7 - LDP FILTER
- 8 - TWO-PIECE SUPPORT BRACKET
- 9 - LEAK DETECTION PUMP (LDP)

## EVAPORATIVE EMISSIONS (Continued)

## DESCRIPTION - CCV SYSTEM

The 4.0L 6-cylinder engine is equipped with a Crankcase Ventilation (CCV) system. The system consists of:

- A fixed orifice fitting of a calibrated size. This fitting is pressed into a rubber grommet located on the top/rear of cylinder head (valve) cover (Fig. 2).
- a pair of breather tubes (lines) to connect the system components.
- the air cleaner housing.
- an air inlet fitting (Fig. 2).



80b898f9

**Fig. 2 CCV System—4.0L Engine**

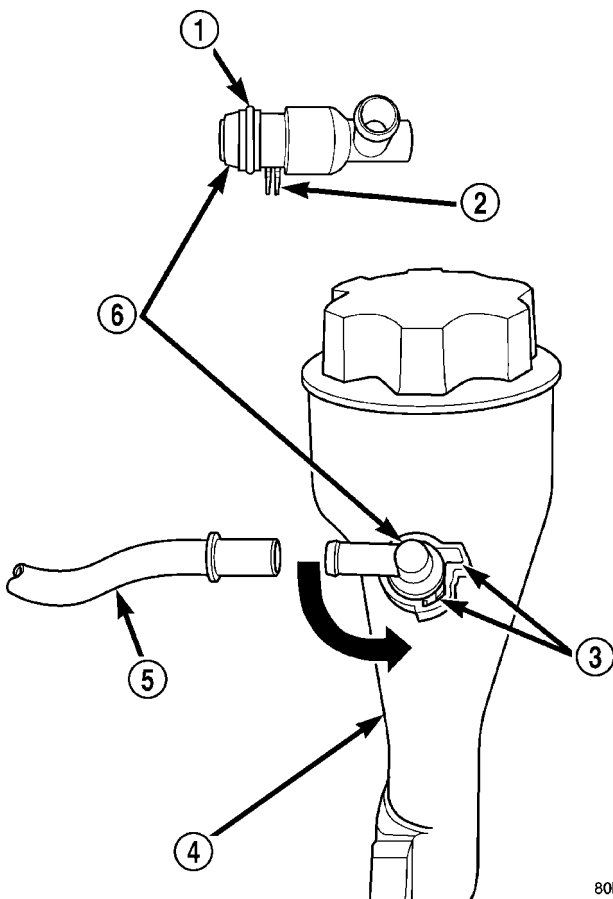
- 1 - AIR INLET FITTING
- 2 - FIXED ORIFICE FITTING
- 3 - CCV BREATHER TUBE (REAR)
- 4 - INT. MAN. FITTING
- 5 - CCV BREATHER TUBE (FRONT)

## DESCRIPTION - PCV SYSTEM

The 4.7L V-8 engine is equipped with a closed crankcase ventilation system and a Positive Crankcase Ventilation (PCV) valve.

This system consists of:

- a PCV valve mounted to the oil filler housing (Fig. 3). The PCV valve is sealed to the oil filler housing with an o-ring.
- the air cleaner housing
- two interconnected breathers threaded into the rear of each cylinder head (Fig. 4).
- tubes and hose to connect the system components.



80b89905

**Fig. 3 PCV Valve/Oil Filler Tube (Housing)—4.7L Engine**

- 1 - O-RING
- 2 - LOCATING TABS
- 3 - CAM LOCK
- 4 - OIL FILLER TUBE
- 5 - PCV LINE/HOSE
- 6 - PCV VALVE

## OPERATION

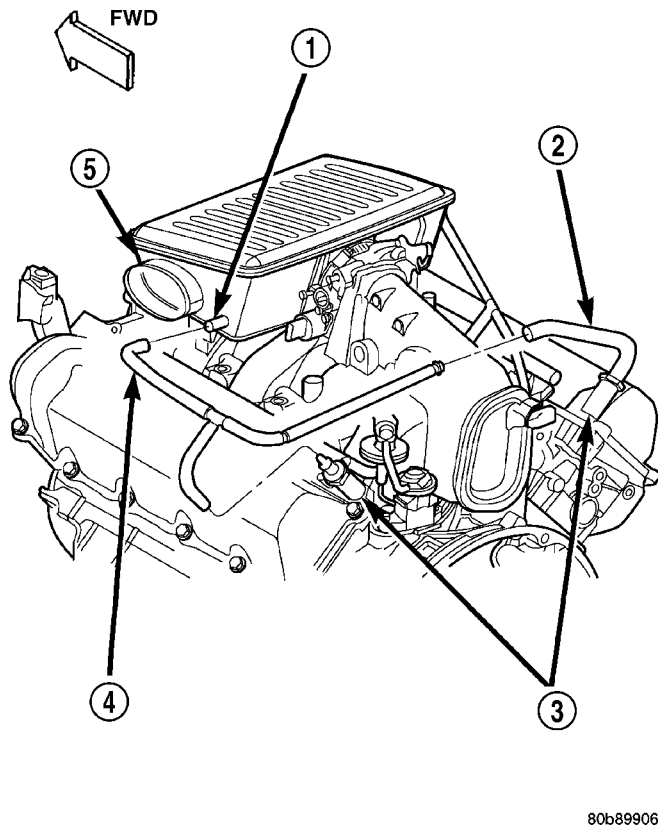
## OPERATION - 4.0L CCV SYSTEM

The CCV system performs the same function as a conventional PCV system, but does not use a vacuum controlled PCV valve.

The fixed orifice fitting meters the amount of crankcase vapors drawn out of the engine.

When the engine is operating, fresh air enters the engine and mixes with crankcase vapors. Engine vacuum draws the vapor/air mixture through the fixed orifice and into the intake manifold. The vapors are then consumed during engine combustion.

## EVAPORATIVE EMISSIONS (Continued)

**Fig. 4 PCV System Hoses/Tubes—4.7L Engine**

- 1 - FRESH AIR FITTING
- 2 - CONNECTING TUBES/HOSES
- 3 - CRANKCASE BREATHERS (2)
- 4 - RUBBER HOSE
- 5 - AIR CLEANER RESONATOR

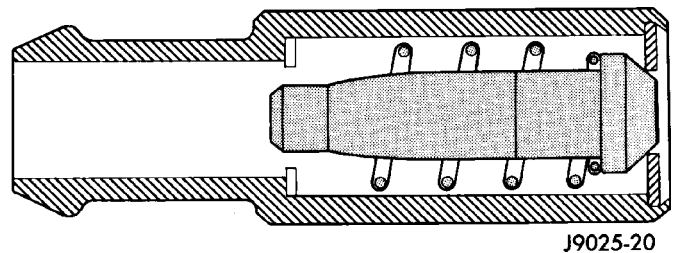
**OPERATION - 4.7L PCV SYSTEM**

The PCV system operates by engine intake manifold vacuum. Filtered air is routed into the crankcase through the air cleaner hose and crankcase breathers. The metered air, along with crankcase vapors, are drawn through the PCV valve and into a passage in the intake manifold. The PCV system manages crankcase pressure and meters blow-by gases to the intake system, reducing engine sludge formation.

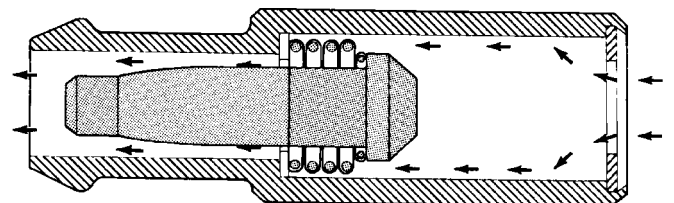
The PCV valve contains a spring loaded plunger. This plunger meters the amount of crankcase vapors routed into the combustion chamber based on intake manifold vacuum.

**TYPICAL** PCV valves are shown in (Fig. 5), (Fig. 6) and (Fig. 7).

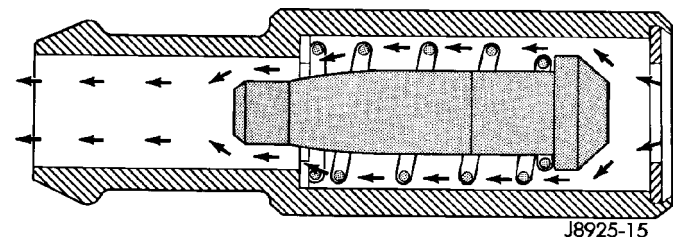
When the engine is not operating, or during an engine pop-back, the spring forces the plunger back against the seat (Fig. 5). This will prevent vapors from flowing through the valve.

**Fig. 5 Engine Off or Engine Pop-Back—No Vapor Flow**

During periods of high manifold vacuum, such as idle or cruising speeds, vacuum is sufficient to completely compress spring. It will then pull the plunger to the top of the valve (Fig. 6). In this position there is minimal vapor flow through the valve.

**Fig. 6 High Intake Manifold Vacuum—Minimal Vapor Flow**

During periods of moderate manifold vacuum, the plunger is only pulled part way back from inlet. This results in maximum vapor flow through the valve (Fig. 7).

**Fig. 7 Moderate Intake Manifold Vacuum—Maximum Vapor Flow**

## EVAPORATIVE EMISSIONS (Continued)

## SPECIFICATIONS

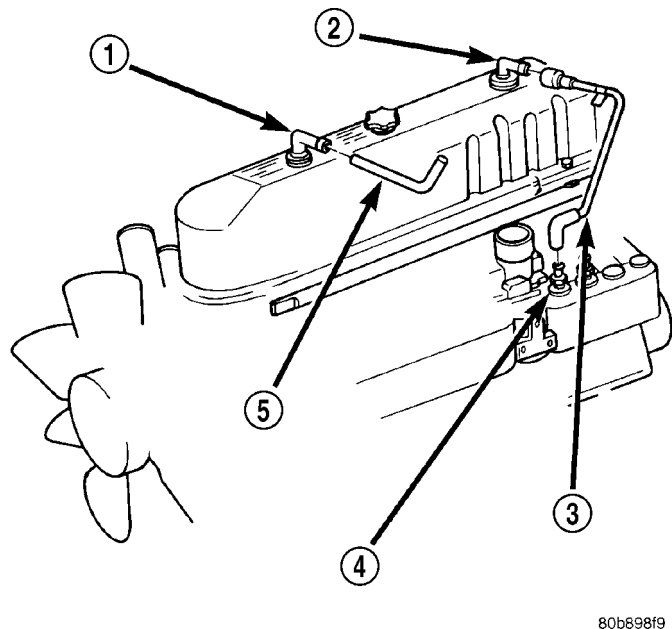
## TORQUE - EVAPORATION SYSTEM

DESCRIPTION	N-m	Ft. Lbs.	In. Lbs.
Crankcase Breathers - 3.7L / 4.7L	12	-	106
EVAP Canister Mounting	11	-	100
EVAP Canister Purge Solenoid Mounting Nuts	9	-	80
LDP Pump-to-Support Bracket	2	-	20
LDP Pump Support Bracket-to-Frame	28	-	250

## CCV HOSE

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - CCV SYSTEM - 4.0L

Before attempting diagnosis, be sure locations of fixed orifice fitting and air inlet fitting (Fig. 8) have not been inadvertently exchanged. The fixed orifice fitting is light grey in color and is located at **rear** of valve cover. The air inlet fitting is black in color and is located at **front** of valve cover.



80b698f9

**Fig. 8 Fixed Orifice Fitting and CCV System—4.0L Engine**

- 1 - AIR INLET FITTING
- 2 - FIXED ORIFICE FITTING
- 3 - CCV BREATHER TUBE (REAR)
- 4 - INT. MAN. FITTING
- 5 - CCV BREATHER TUBE (FRONT)

(1) Pull fixed orifice fitting (Fig. 8) from valve cover and leave tube attached.

(2) Start engine and bring to idle speed.

(3) If fitting is not plugged, a hissing noise will be heard as air passes through fitting orifice. Also, a strong vacuum should be felt with a finger placed at fitting inlet.

(4) If vacuum is not present, remove fitting orifice fitting from tube. Start engine. If vacuum can now be felt, replace fixed orifice fitting. Do not attempt to clean plastic fitting.

(5) If vacuum is still not felt at hose, check line/hose for kinks or for obstruction. If necessary, clean out intake manifold fitting at intake manifold. Do this by turning a 1/4 inch drill (by hand) through the fitting to dislodge any solid particles. Blow out the fitting with shop air. If necessary, use a smaller drill to avoid removing any metal from the fitting.

(6) Return fixed orifice fitting to valve cover and leave tube attached.

(7) Disconnect air inlet fitting and its attached hose at front of valve cover (Fig. 8). Start engine and bring to idle speed. Hold a piece of stiff paper (such as a parts tag) loosely over the rubber grommet (opening) of the disconnected air inlet fitting.

(8) The paper should be drawn against the rubber grommet with noticeable force. This will be after allowing approximately one minute for crankcase pressure to reduce.

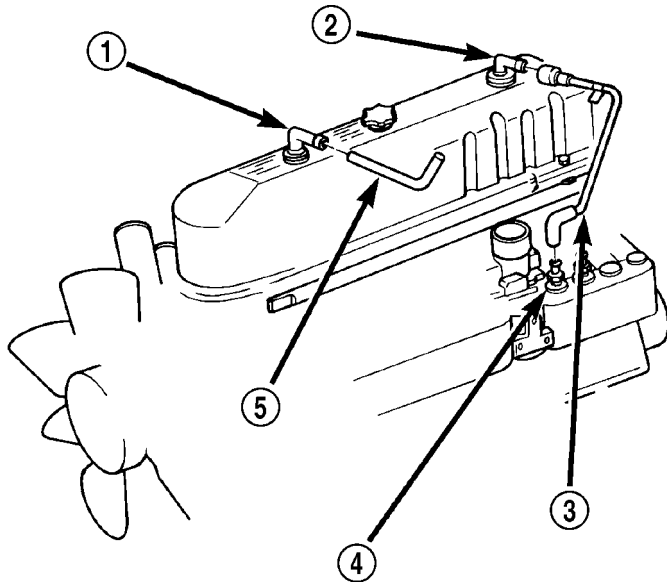
(9) If vacuum is not present, check breather hoses/tubes/lines for obstructions or restrictions.

(10) After testing, reconnect all system hoses/tubes/lines.

## CCV HOSE (Continued)

### REMOVAL - FIXED ORIFICE FITTING

When installing fixed orifice fitting, be sure locations of fixed orifice fitting and air inlet fitting (Fig. 9) have not been inadvertently exchanged. The fixed orifice fitting is light grey in color and is located at **rear** of valve cover. The air inlet fitting is black in color and is located at **front** of valve cover.



80b898f9

**Fig. 9 FIXED ORIFICE FITTING - 4.0L**

- 1 - AIR INLET FITTING
- 2 - FIXED ORIFICE FITTING
- 3 - CCV BREATHER TUBE (REAR)
- 4 - INT. MAN. FITTING
- 5 - CCV BREATHER TUBE (FRONT)

(1) Pull fixed orifice fitting (Fig. 9) from valve cover grommet.

(2) Separate fitting from CCV breather tube.

### INSTALLATION - FIXED ORIFICE FITTING

When installing fixed orifice fitting, be sure locations of fixed orifice fitting and air inlet fitting (Fig. 9) have not been inadvertently exchanged. The fixed orifice fitting is light grey in color and is located at **rear** of valve cover. The air inlet fitting is black in color and is located at **front** of valve cover.

(1) Connect fitting to CCV breather tube.

(2) Return fixed orifice fitting to valve cover grommet.

## EVAP/PURGE SOLENOID

### DESCRIPTION

The duty cycle EVAP canister purge solenoid (DCP) regulates the rate of vapor flow from the EVAP can-

ister to the intake manifold. The Powertrain Control Module (PCM) operates the solenoid.

### OPERATION

During the cold start warm-up period and the hot start time delay, the PCM does not energize the solenoid. When de-energized, no vapors are purged. The PCM de-energizes the solenoid during open loop operation.

The engine enters closed loop operation after it reaches a specified temperature and the time delay ends. During closed loop operation, the PCM cycles (energizes and de-energizes) the solenoid 5 or 10 times per second, depending upon operating conditions. The PCM varies the vapor flow rate by changing solenoid pulse width. Pulse width is the amount of time that the solenoid is energized. The PCM adjusts solenoid pulse width based on engine operating condition.

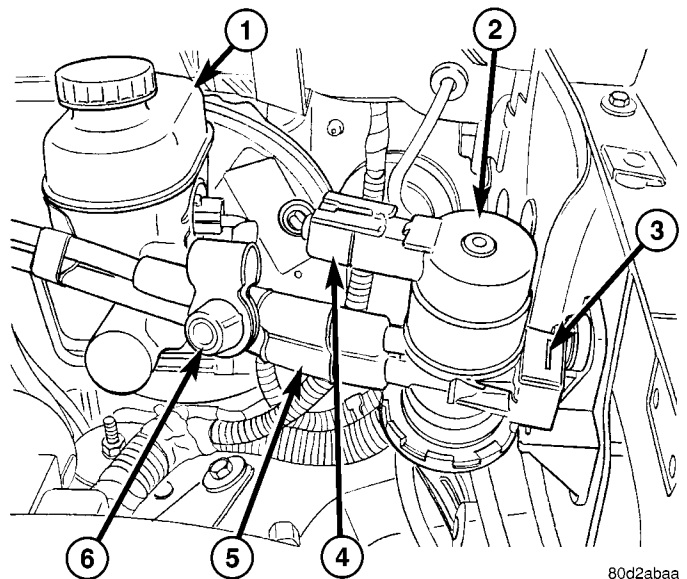
### REMOVAL

The duty cycle evaporative (EVAP) canister purge solenoid is located in the engine compartment near the brake master cylinder (Fig. 10).

(1) Disconnect electrical connector at solenoid.

(2) Disconnect vacuum lines at solenoid.

(3) Lift solenoid slot (Fig. 10) from mounting bracket for removal.



80d2abaa

**Fig. 10 EVAP/PURGE SOLENOID LOCATION**

- 1 - BRAKE MASTER CYLINDER
- 2 - EVAP SOLENOID
- 3 - SLOT
- 4 - ELEC. CONNec.
- 5 - VACUUM LINE CONNec.
- 6 - TEST PORT



## EVAP/PURGE SOLENOID (Continued)

## INSTALLATION

- (1) Position solenoid slot to mounting bracket.
- (2) Connect vacuum lines to solenoid. Be sure vacuum lines are firmly connected and not leaking or damaged. If leaking, a Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) may be set with certain emission packages.
- (3) Connect electrical connector to solenoid.

## FUEL FILLER CAP

## DESCRIPTION

The plastic fuel tank filler tube cap is threaded onto the end of the fuel fill tube. Certain models are equipped with a 1/4 turn cap.

## OPERATION

The loss of any fuel or vapor out of fuel filler tube is prevented by the use of a pressure-vacuum fuel fill cap. Relief valves inside the cap will release fuel tank pressure at predetermined pressures. Fuel tank vacuum will also be released at predetermined values. This cap must be replaced by a similar unit if replacement is necessary. This is in order for the system to remain effective.

**CAUTION:** Remove fill cap before servicing any fuel system component to relieve tank pressure. If equipped with a California emissions package and a Leak Detection Pump (LDP), the cap must be tightened securely. If cap is left loose, a Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) may be set.

## REMOVAL

If replacement of the 1/4 turn fuel tank filler tube cap is necessary, it must be replaced with an identical cap to be sure of correct system operation.

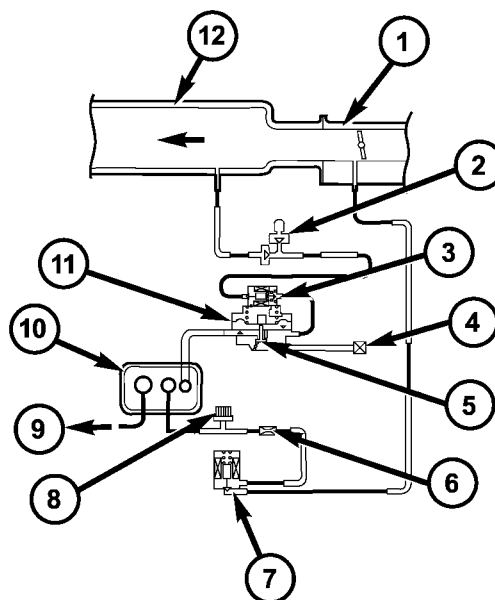
**CAUTION:** Remove the fuel tank filler tube cap to relieve fuel tank pressure. The cap must be removed prior to disconnecting any fuel system component or before draining the fuel tank.

## LEAK DETECTION PUMP

## DESCRIPTION

The evaporative emission system is designed to prevent the escape of fuel vapors from the fuel system (Fig. 11). Leaks in the system, even small ones, can allow fuel vapors to escape into the atmosphere. Government regulations require onboard testing to make sure that the evaporative (EVAP) system is functioning properly. The leak detection system tests for EVAP system leaks and blockage. It also performs

self-diagnostics. During self-diagnostics, the Powertrain Control Module (PCM) first checks the Leak Detection Pump (LDP) for electrical and mechanical faults. If the first checks pass, the PCM then uses the LDP to seal the vent valve and pump air into the system to pressurize it. If a leak is present, the PCM will continue pumping the LDP to replace the air that leaks out. The PCM determines the size of the leak based on how fast/long it must pump the LDP as it tries to maintain pressure in the system.



80ce7614

**Fig. 11 TYPICAL SYSTEM COMPONENTS**

- 1 - Throttle Body
- 2 - Service Vacuum Supply Tee (SVST)
- 3 - LDP Solenoid
- 4 - EVAP System Air Filter
- 5 - LDP Vent Valve
- 6 - EVAP Purge Orifice
- 7 - EVAP Purge Solenoid
- 8 - Service Port
- 9 - To Fuel Tank
- 10 - EVAP Canister
- 11 - LDP
- 12 - Intake Air Plenum

## EVAP LEAK DETECTION SYSTEM COMPONENTS

**Service Port:** Used with special tools like the Miller Evaporative Emissions Leak Detector (EELD) to test for leaks in the system.

**EVAP Purge Solenoid:** The PCM uses the EVAP purge solenoid to control purging of excess fuel vapors stored in the EVAP canister. It remains closed during leak testing to prevent loss of pressure.

**EVAP Canister:** The EVAP canister stores fuel vapors from the fuel tank for purging.

## LEAK DETECTION PUMP (Continued)

EVAP Purge Orifice: Limits purge volume.

EVAP System Air Filter: Provides air to the LDP for pressurizing the system. It filters out dirt while allowing a vent to atmosphere for the EVAP system.

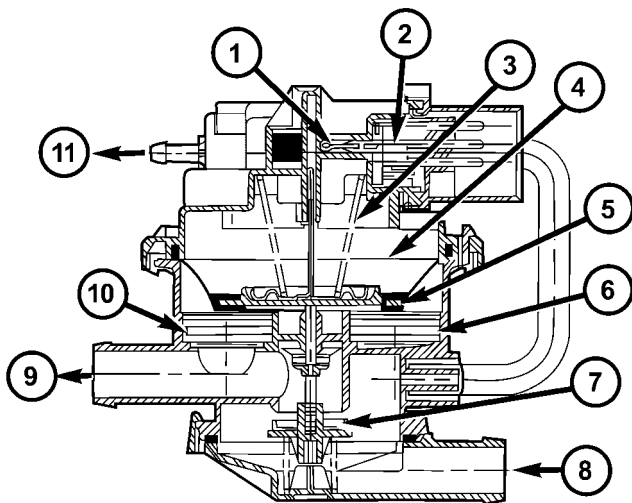
## OPERATION

The main purpose of the LDP is to pressurize the fuel system for leak checking. It closes the EVAP system vent to atmospheric pressure so the system can be pressurized for leak testing. The diaphragm is powered by engine vacuum. It pumps air into the EVAP system to develop a pressure of about 7.5" H<sub>2</sub>O (1/4) psi. A reed switch in the LDP allows the PCM to monitor the position of the LDP diaphragm. The PCM uses the reed switch input to monitor how fast the LDP is pumping air into the EVAP system. This allows detection of leaks and blockage. The LDP assembly consists of several parts (Fig. 12). The solenoid is controlled by the PCM, and it connects the upper pump cavity to either engine vacuum or atmospheric pressure. A vent valve closes the EVAP system to atmosphere, sealing the system during leak testing. The pump section of the LDP consists of a diaphragm that moves up and down to bring air in through the air filter and inlet check valve, and

pump it out through an outlet check valve into the EVAP system. The diaphragm is pulled up by engine vacuum, and pushed down by spring pressure, as the LDP solenoid turns on and off. The LDP also has a magnetic reed switch to signal diaphragm position to the PCM. When the diaphragm is down, the switch is closed, which sends a 12 V (system voltage) signal to the PCM. When the diaphragm is up, the switch is open, and there is no voltage sent to the PCM. This allows the PCM to monitor LDP pumping action as it turns the LDP solenoid on and off.

## LDP AT REST (NOT POWERED)

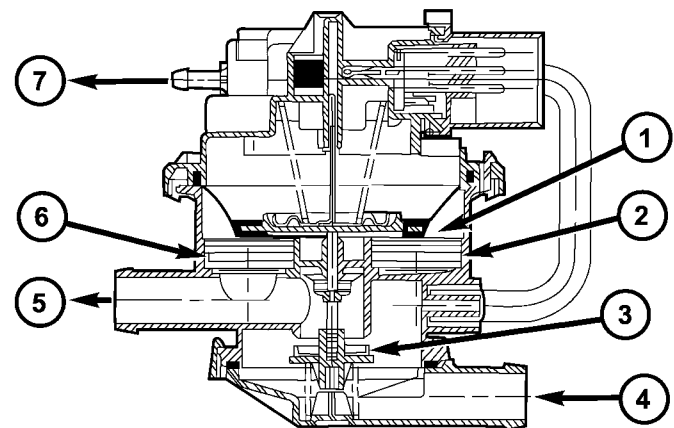
When the LDP is at rest (no electrical/vacuum) the diaphragm is allowed to drop down if the internal (EVAP system) pressure is not greater than the return spring. The LDP solenoid blocks the engine vacuum port and opens the atmospheric pressure port connected through the EVAP system air filter. The vent valve is held open by the diaphragm. This allows the canister to see atmospheric pressure (Fig. 13).



80ce4021

**Fig. 12 EVAP LEAK DETECTION SYSTEM COMPONENTS**

- 1 - Reed Switch
- 2 - Solenoid
- 3 - Spring
- 4 - Pump Cavity
- 5 - Diaphragm
- 6 - Inlet Check Valve
- 7 - Vent Valve
- 8 - From Air Filter
- 9 - To Canister
- 10 - Outlet Check Valve
- 11 - Engine Vacuum



80ce401e

**Fig. 13 LDP AT REST**

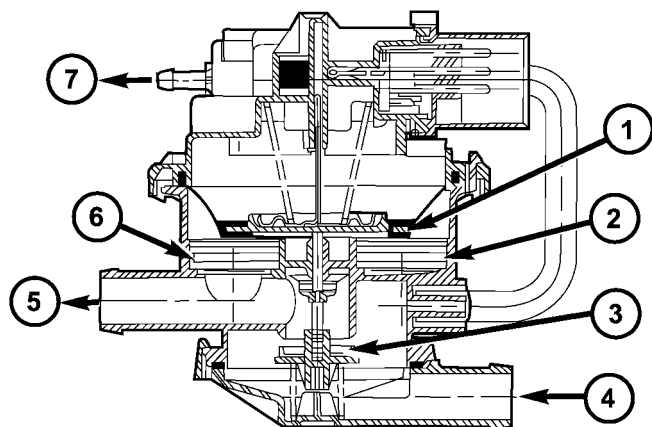
- 1 - Diaphragm
- 2 - Inlet Check Valve (Closed)
- 3 - Vent Valve (Open)
- 4 - From Air Filter
- 5 - To Canister
- 6 - Outlet Check Valve (Closed)
- 7 - Engine Vacuum (Closed)

## DIAPHRAGM UPWARD MOVEMENT

When the PCM energizes the LDP solenoid, the solenoid blocks the atmospheric port leading through the EVAP air filter and at the same time opens the engine vacuum port to the pump cavity above the diaphragm. The diaphragm moves upward when vacuum above the diaphragm exceeds spring force. This

## LEAK DETECTION PUMP (Continued)

upward movement closes the vent valve. It also causes low pressure below the diaphragm, unseating the inlet check valve and allowing air in from the EVAP air filter. When the diaphragm completes its upward movement, the LDP reed switch turns from closed to open (Fig. 14).



80ce4017

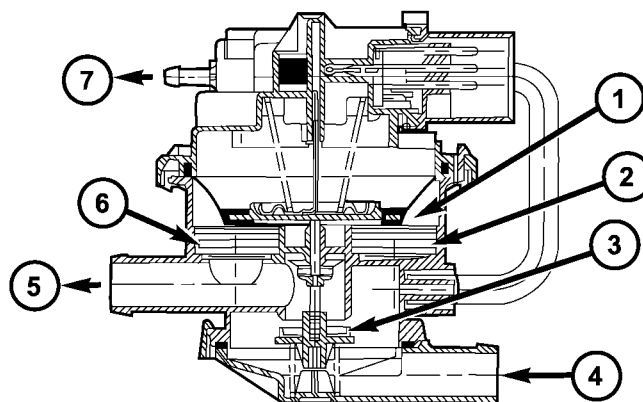
**Fig. 14 DIAPHRAGM UPWARD MOVEMENT**

- 1 - Diaphragm
- 2 - Inlet Check Valve (Open)
- 3 - Vent Valve (Closed)
- 4 - From Air Filter
- 5 - To Canister
- 6 - Outlet Check Valve (Closed)
- 7 - Engine Vacuum (Open)

**DIAPHRAGM DOWNWARD MOVEMENT**

Based on reed switch input, the PCM de-energizes the LDP solenoid, causing it to block the vacuum port, and open the atmospheric port. This connects the upper pump cavity to atmosphere through the EVAP air filter. The spring is now able to push the diaphragm down. The downward movement of the diaphragm closes the inlet check valve and opens the outlet check valve pumping air into the evaporative system. The LDP reed switch turns from open to closed, allowing the PCM to monitor LDP pumping (diaphragm up/down) activity (Fig. 15). During the pumping mode, the diaphragm will not move down far enough to open the vent valve. The pumping cycle is repeated as the solenoid is turned on and off. When the evaporative system begins to pressurize, the pressure on the bottom of the diaphragm will begin to oppose the spring pressure, slowing the pumping action. The PCM watches the time from when the solenoid is de-energized, until the dia-

phragm drops down far enough for the reed switch to change from opened to closed. If the reed switch changes too quickly, a leak may be indicated. The longer it takes the reed switch to change state, the tighter the evaporative system is sealed. If the system pressurizes too quickly, a restriction somewhere in the EVAP system may be indicated.



80ce401c

**Fig. 15 DIAPHRAGM DOWNWARD MOVEMENT**

- 1 - Diaphragm
- 2 - Inlet Check Valve (Closed)
- 3 - Vent Valve (Closed)
- 4 - From Air Filter
- 5 - To Canister
- 6 - Outlet Check Valve (Open)
- 7 - Engine Vacuum (Closed)

**PUMPING ACTION**

**Action :** During portions of this test, the PCM uses the reed switch to monitor diaphragm movement. The solenoid is only turned on by the PCM after the reed switch changes from open to closed, indicating that the diaphragm has moved down. At other times during the test, the PCM will rapidly cycle the LDP solenoid on and off to quickly pressurize the system. During rapid cycling, the diaphragm will not move enough to change the reed switch state. In the state of rapid cycling, the PCM will use a fixed time interval to cycle the solenoid. If the system does not pass the EVAP Leak Detection Test, the following DTCs may be set:

- P0442 - EVAP LEAK MONITOR 0.040" LEAK DETECTED
- P0455 - EVAP LEAK MONITOR LARGE LEAK DETECTED

## LEAK DETECTION PUMP (Continued)

- P0456 - EVAP LEAK MONITOR 0.020" LEAK DETECTED
- P1486 - EVAP LEAK MON PINCHED HOSE FOUND
- P1494 - LEAK DETECTION PUMP SW OR MECH FAULT
- P1495 - LEAK DETECTION PUMP SOLENOID CIRCUIT

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - ENABLING CONDITIONS TO RUN EVAP LEAK DETECTION TEST

- Cold start: with ambient temperature (obtained from modeling the inlet air temperature sensor on passenger vehicles and the battery temperature sensor on Jeep & Dodge Truck vehicles) between 4° C (40° F) and 32° C (90° F) for 0.040 leak. Between 4° C (40° F) and 29° C (85° F) for 0.020 leak.
- Engine coolant temperature within:-12° to -8° C (10° to 18° F) of battery/ambient.
- Battery voltage between 10 and 15 volts.
- Low fuel warning light off (fuel level must be between 15% and 85%).
- MAP sensor reading 22 in Hg or above (This is the manifold absolute pressure, not vacuum).
- No engine stall during test.

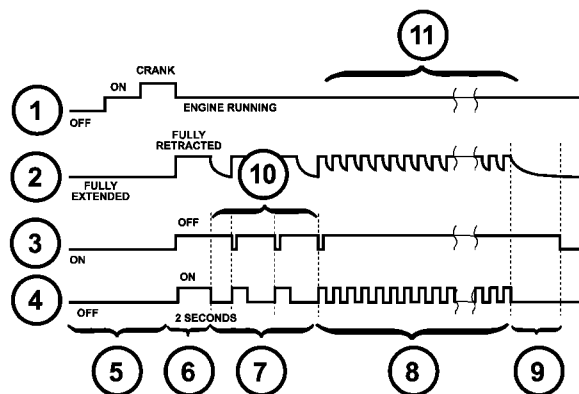
**NOTE: IF BATTERY VOLTAGE DROPS BELOW 10 VOLTS FOR MORE THAN 5 SECONDS DURING ENGINE CRANKING, THE EVAP LEAK DETECTION TEST WILL NOT RUN.**

**NOTE: THE FOLLOWING VALUES ARE APPROXIMATE AND VEHICLE SPECIFIC. USE THE VALUES SEEN IN PRE TEST/MONITOR TEST SCREEN ON THE DRB III®. SEE TSB 25-02-98 FOR MORE DETAIL.**

A DTC will not be set if a one-trip fault is set or if the MIL is illuminated for any of the following:

- Purge Solenoid Electrical Fault
- All TPS Faults
- All Engine Controller Self Test Faults
- LDP Pressure Switch Fault
- All Cam and/or Crank Sensor Fault
- EGR Solenoid Electrical Fault
- All MAP Sensor Faults
- All Injector Faults
- Ambient/Battery Temperature Sensor Electrical Faults
- Baro Out of Range
- Vehicle Speed Faults
- All Coolant Sensor Faults
- LDP Solenoid Circuit

## EVAP LEAK DETECTION TEST SEQUENCE



80ce75b1

## EVAP LDP TEST SEQUENCE

- 1 - IGNITION SWITCH
- 2 - LDP DIAPHRAM
- 3 - LDP SWITCH
- 4 - LDP SOLENOID
- 5 - SECTION 1
- 6 - SECTION 2
- 7 - SECTION 3
- 8 - SECTION 4
- 9 - SECTION 5
- 10 - 3 TEST CYCLES TO TEST FOR BLOCKAGE
- 11 - RAPID PUMP CYCLING FOR 70 CYCLES

**NOTE: IF BATTERY TEMPERATURE IS NOT WITHIN RANGE, OR IF THE ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE IS NOT WITHIN A SPECIFIED RANGE OF THE BATTERY TEMPERATURE, THE PCM WILL NOT RUN TESTS FOR DTC P1494, P1486, P0442, P0455 AND P0441. THESE TEMPERATURE CALIBRATIONS MAY BE DIFFERENT BETWEEN MODELS.**

**SECTION 1 - P1495 Leak Detection Pump Solenoid Circuit-** When the ignition key is turned to "ON", the LDP diaphragm should be in the down position and the LDP reed switch should be closed. If the EVAP system has residual pressure, the LDP diaphragm may be up. This could result in the LDP reed switch being open when the key is turned to "ON" and a P1494 fault could be set because the PCM is expecting the reed switch to be closed.

After the key is turned "ON", the PCM immediately tests the LDP solenoid circuit for electrical faults. If a fault is detected, DTC P1495 will set, the MIL will illuminate, and the remaining EVAP Leak Detection Test is canceled.

**SECTION 2 - P1494 Leak Detection Pump Switch or Mechanical Fault-** If DTC P1495 is not set, the PCM will check for DTC P1494. If the LDP reed switch was closed when the key was turned to "ON", the PCM energizes the LDP solenoid for up to



## LEAK DETECTION PUMP (Continued)

8 seconds and monitors the LDP switch. As the LDP diaphragm is pulled up by engine vacuum, the LDP reed switch should change from closed to open. If it does not, the PCM sets a temporary fault (P1494) in memory, and waits until the next time the Enabling Conditions are met to run the test again. If this is again detected, P1494 is stored and the MIL is illuminated. If the problem is not detected during the next enabling cycle, the temporary fault will be cleared.

However, if the PCM detects the reed switch open when the key is turned to "ON", the PCM must determine if this condition is due to residual pressure in the EVAP system, or an actual fault. The PCM stores information in memory on EVAP system purging from previous engine run or drive cycles.

If little or no purging took place, residual pressure could be holding the LDP diaphragm up, causing the LDP switch to be open. Since this is not a malfunction, the PCM cancels the EVAP Leak Detection Test without setting the temporary fault.

If there was sufficient purging during the previous cycle to eliminate EVAP system pressure, the PCM judges that this is a malfunction and sets a temporary fault in memory. The next time that the Enabling Conditions are met, the test will run again. If the fault is again detected, the MIL will illuminate and DTC P1494 will be stored. If the fault is not detected, the temporary fault will be cleared.

**SECTION 3 - P1486 EVAP Leak Monitor Pinched Hose Found-** If no fault has been detected so far, the PCM begins testing for possible blockage in the EVAP system between the LDP and the fuel tank. This is done by monitoring the time required for the LDP to pump air into the EVAP system during two to three pump cycles. If no blockage is present, the LDP diaphragm is able to quickly pump air out of the LDP each time the PCM turns off the LDP solenoid. If a blockage is present, the PCM detects that the LDP takes longer to complete each pump cycle. If the pump cycles take longer than expected (approximately 6 to 10 seconds) the PCM will suspect a blockage. On the next drive when Enabling Conditions are met, the test will run again. If blockage is again detected, P1486 is stored, and the MIL is illuminated.

**SECTION 4 - No DTC Can Be Set During This Time-** After the LDP blockage tests are completed, the PCM then tests for EVAP system leakage. First, the PCM commands the LDP to rapidly pump for 20 to 50 seconds (depending on fuel level) to build pressure in the EVAP system. This evaluates the system J18-24-0 to see if it can be sufficiently pressurized. This evaluation (rapid pump cycling) may occur several times prior to leak checking. The LDP reed switch does not close and open during rapid pumping

because the diaphragm does not travel through its full range during this part of the test.

**SECTION 5 - P0456, P0442, P0455 EVAP Leak Monitor and Leak Detected-** Next, the PCM performs one or more test cycles by monitoring the time required for the LDP reed switch to close (diaphragm to drop) after the LDP solenoid is turned off.

If the switch does not close, or closes after a long delay, it means that the system does not have any significant leakage and the EVAP Leak Detection Test is complete.

However, if the LDP reed switch closes quickly, there may be a leak or the fuel level may be low enough that the LDP must pump more to finish pressurizing the EVAP system. In this case, the PCM will rapidly pump the LDP again to build pressure in the EVAP system, and follow that by monitoring the time needed for several LDP test cycles. This process of rapid pumping followed by several LDP test cycles may repeat several times before the PCM judges that a leak is present.

When leaks are present, the LDP test cycle time will be inversely proportional to the size of the leak. The larger the leak, the shorter the test cycle time. The smaller the leak, the longer the test cycle time. DTC's may be set when a leak as small as 0.5 mm (0.020") diameter is present.

If the system detects a leak, a temporary fault will be stored in PCM memory. The time it takes to detect a .020, .040, or Large leak is based on calibrations that vary from model to model. The important point to remember is if a leak is again detected on the next EVAP Leak Detection Test, the MIL will illuminate and a DTC will be stored based on the size of leak detected. If no leak is detected during the next test, the temporary fault will be cleared.

**DIAGNOSTIC TIPS** During diagnosis, you can compare the LDP solenoid activity with the monitor sequence in Figure 6. If the PCM detects a problem that could set a DTC, the testing is halted and LDP solenoid activity will stop. As each section of the test begins, it indicates that the previous section passed successfully. By watching to see which tests complete, you can see if any conditions are present that the PCM considers abnormal.

For example, if the LDP solenoid is energized for the test cycles to test for blockage (P1486), it means that the LDP has already passed its test for P1494. Then, if the PCM detects a possible blockage, it will set a temporary fault without turning on the MIL and continue the leak portion of the test. However, the PCM will assume that the system is already pressurized and skip the rapid pump cycles.

Always diagnose leaks, if possible, before disconnecting connections. Disconnecting connections may mask a leak condition.

## LEAK DETECTION PUMP (Continued)

Keep in mind that if the purge solenoid seat is leaking, it could go undetected since the leak would end up in the intake manifold. Disconnect the purge solenoid at the manifold when leak checking. In addition, a pinched hose fault (P1486) could set if the purge solenoid does not purge the fuel system properly (blocked seat). The purge solenoid must vent the fuel system prior to the LDP system test. If the purge solenoid cannot properly vent the system the LDP cannot properly complete the test for P1486 and this fault can set due to pressure being in the EVAP system during the test sequence.

Multiple actuation's of the DRB III® Leak Detection Pump (LDP) Monitor Test can hide a 0.020 leak because of excess vapor generation. Additionally, any source for additional vapor generation can hide a small leak in the EVAP system. Excess vapor generation can delay the fall of the LDP diaphragm thus hiding the small leak. An example of this condition could be bringing a cold vehicle into a warm shop for testing or high ambient temperatures.

Fully plugged and partially plugged underhood vacuum lines have been known to set MIL conditions. P1494 and P0456 can be set for this reason. Always, thoroughly, check plumbing for pinches or blockage before condemning components.

**TEST EQUIPMENT** The Evaporative Emission Leak Detector (EELD) Miller Special Tool 8404 is capable of visually detecting leaks in the evaporative system and will take the place of the ultrasonic leak detector 6917A. The EELD utilizes shop air and a smoke generator to visually detect leaks down to 0.020 or smaller. The food grade oil used to make the smoke includes an UV trace dye that will leave tell-tale signs of the leak under a black light. This is helpful when components have to be removed to determine the exact leak location. For detailed test instructions, follow the operators manual packaged with the EELD.

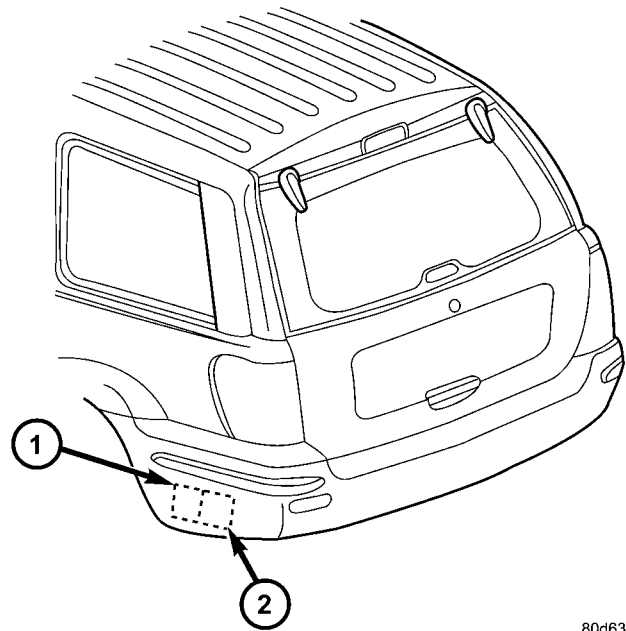
**NOTE:** Be sure that the PCM has the latest software update. Reprogram as indicated by any applicable Technical Service Bulletin. After LDP repairs are completed, verify the repair by running the DRB III® Leak Detection Pump (LDP) Monitor Test as described in Technical Service Bulletin 18-12-99.

## REMOVAL

The Leak Detection Pump (LDP) is located under the left quarter panel behind the left/rear wheel (Fig. 16). It is attached to a two-piece support bracket (Fig. 17). The LDP and LDP filter are replaced (serviced) as one unit.

- (1) Remove stone shield behind left/rear wheel (Fig. 18). Drill out plastic rivets for removal.
- (2) Remove 3 LDP mounting bolts (Fig. 19).

- (3) Remove support bracket brace bolt (Fig. 17).
- (4) Loosen, but do not remove 2 support bracket nuts at frame rail (Fig. 19).
- (5) To separate and lower front section of two-piece support bracket, remove 3 attaching bolts on bottom of support bracket (Fig. 17). While lowering support bracket, disconnect LDP wiring clip (Fig. 20).
- (6) Disconnect electrical connector at LDP (Fig. 20).
- (7) Carefully remove vapor/vacuum lines at LDP (Fig. 20).
- (8) Remove LDP.



80d63c7a

**Fig. 16 LOCATION, LDP / EVAP CANISTER**

- 1 - LEAK DETECTION PUMP  
2 - EVAP CANISTER

## INSTALLATION

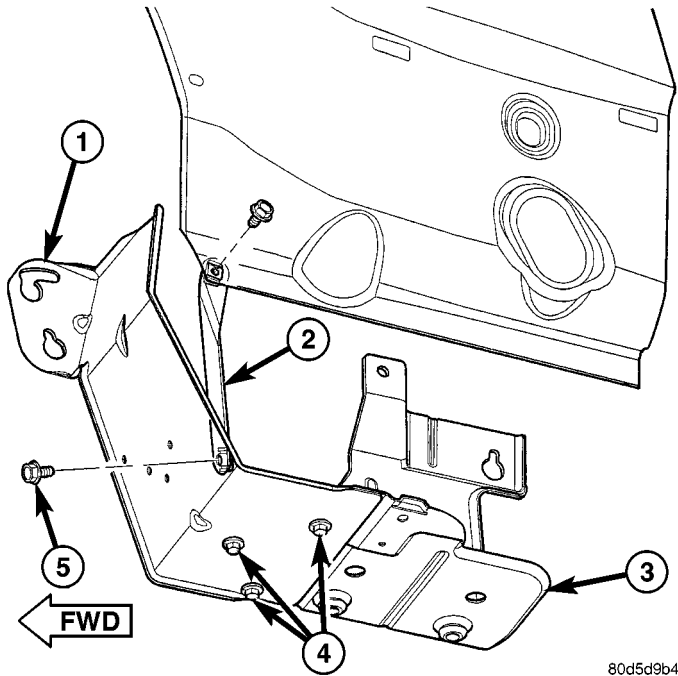
The LDP is located in the left quarter panel behind the left/rear wheel. It is attached to a two-piece support bracket (Fig. 17). The LDP and LDP filter are replaced (serviced) as one unit.

(1) Position LDP and carefully install vapor/vacuum lines to LDP and LDP filter. **The vapor/vacuum lines and hoses must be firmly connected. Check the vapor/vacuum lines at the LDP, LDP filter and EVAP canister purge solenoid for damage or leaks. If a leak is present, a Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) may be set.**

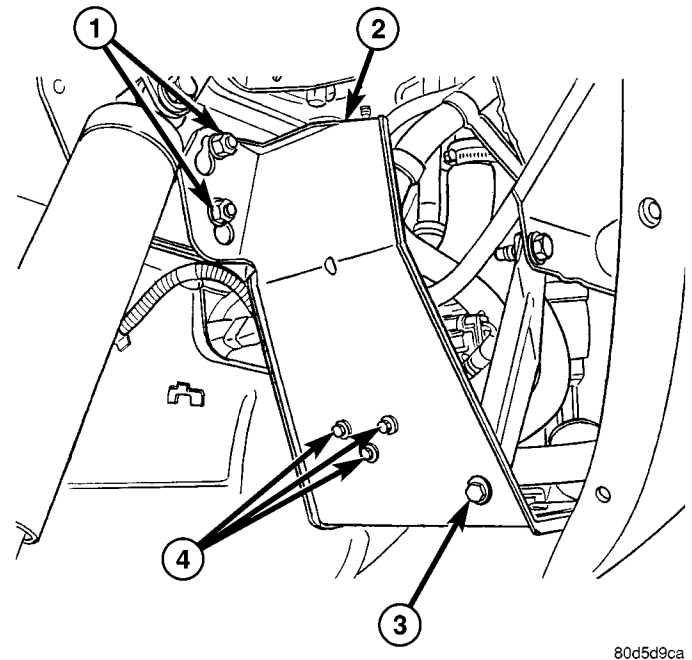
- (2) Connect electrical connector to LDP.
- (3) While raising front section of support bracket, connect LDP wiring clip (Fig. 20).
- (4) Install 3 LDP mounting bolts (Fig. 19). Refer to Torque Specifications.



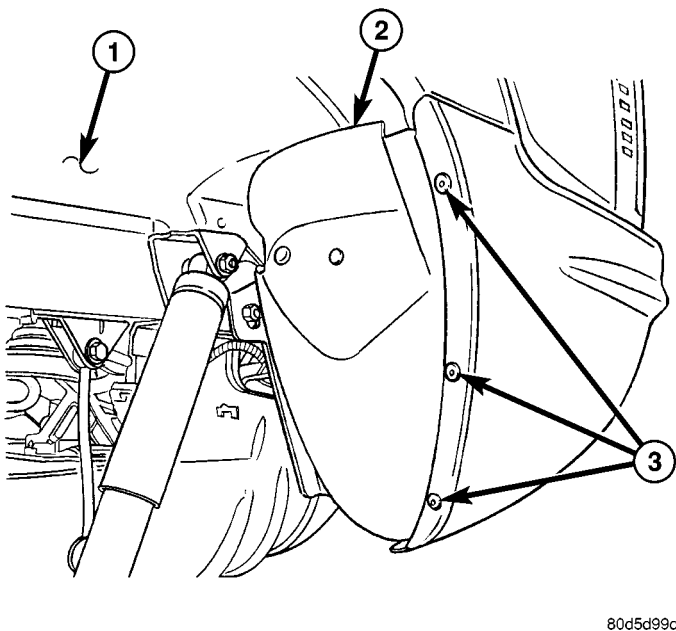
## LEAK DETECTION PUMP (Continued)

**Fig. 17 TWO-PIECE SUPPORT BRACKET**

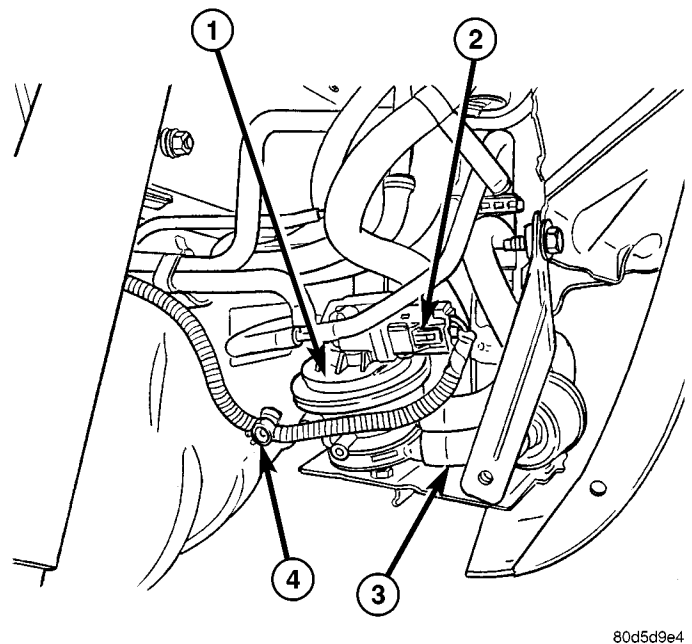
- 1 - TWO-PIECE SUPPORT BRACKET (FRONT)
- 2 - SUPPORT BRACKET BRACE
- 3 - TWO-PIECE SUPPORT BRACKET (REAR)
- 4 - SUPPORT BRACKET ATTACHING BOLTS (3)
- 5 - SUPPORT BRACKET BRACE BOLT

**Fig. 19 LDP MOUNTING BOLTS**

- 1 - SUPPORT BRACKET NUTS (2)
- 2 - SUPPORT BRACKET (FRONT)
- 3 - SUPPORT BRACKET BRACE BOLT
- 4 - LDP MOUNTING BOLTS (3)

**Fig. 18 STONE SHIELD**

- 1 - LEFT-REAR WHEELHOUSE
- 2 - STONE SHIELD
- 3 - PLASTIC RIVETS

**Fig. 20 LDP REMOVAL / INSTALLATION**

- 1 - LDP
- 2 - ELEC. CONNECT.
- 3 - VAPOR / VACUUM LINES
- 4 - WIRING CLIP

## LEAK DETECTION PUMP (Continued)

(5) Join front and rear sections of two-piece support bracket by installing 3 bolts on bottom of support bracket (Fig. 17). Do not tighten bolts at this time.

(6) Install support bracket brace bolt (Fig. 17). Do not tighten bolt at this time.

(7) Tighten 2 support bracket nuts at frame rail (Fig. 19). Refer to Torque Specifications.

(8) Tighten 3 support bracket bolts and brace bolt. Refer to Torque Specifications.

(9) Position stone shield behind left/rear wheel (Fig. 18). Install new plastic rivets.

## ORVR

## DESCRIPTION

The ORVR (On-Board Refueling Vapor Recovery) system consists of a unique fuel tank, flow management valve, fluid control valve, one-way check valve and vapor canister. Certain ORVR components can be found in (Fig. 1).

## OPERATION

The ORVR (On-Board Refueling Vapor Recovery) system is used to remove excess fuel tank vapors. This is done while the vehicle is being refueled. Certain ORVR components can be found in (Fig. 1).

Fuel flowing into the fuel filler tube (approx. 1" I.D.) creates an aspiration effect drawing air into the fuel fill tube. During refueling, the fuel tank is vented to the EVAP canister to capture escaping vapors. With air flowing into the filler tube, there are no fuel vapors escaping to the atmosphere. Once the refueling vapors are captured by the EVAP canister, the vehicle's computer controlled purge system draws vapor out of the canister for the engine to burn. The vapor flow is metered by the purge solenoid so that there is no, or minimal impact on driveability or tailpipe emissions.

As fuel starts to flow through the fuel fill tube, it opens the normally closed check valve and enters the fuel tank. Vapor or air is expelled from the tank through the control valve and on to the vapor canister. Vapor is absorbed in the EVAP canister until vapor flow in the lines stops. This stoppage occurs following fuel shut-off, or by having the fuel level in the tank rise high enough to close the control valve. This control valve contains a float that rises to seal the large diameter vent path to the EVAP canister. At this point in the refueling process, fuel tank pressure increases, the check valve closes (preventing liquid fuel from spitting back at the operator), and fuel then rises up the fuel filler tube to shut off the dispensing nozzle.

## PCV VALVE

## DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - PCV VALVE/PCV SYSTEM - 4.7L

(1) Disconnect PCV line/hose (Fig. 21) by disconnecting rubber connecting hose at PCV valve fitting.

(2) Remove PCV valve at oil filler tube by rotating PCV valve downward until locating tabs have been freed at cam lock (Fig. 21). After tabs have cleared, pull valve straight out from filler tube. **To prevent damage to PCV valve locating tabs, valve must be pointed downward for removal. Do not force valve from oil filler tube.**

(3) After valve is removed, check condition of valve o-ring (Fig. 21). Also, PCV valve should rattle when shaken.

(4) Reconnect PCV valve to its connecting line/hose.

(5) Start engine and bring to idle speed.

(6) If valve is not plugged, a hissing noise will be heard as air passes through valve. Also, a strong vacuum should be felt with a finger placed at valve inlet.

(7) If vacuum is not felt at valve inlet, check line/hose for kinks or for obstruction. If necessary, clean out intake manifold fitting at rear of manifold. Do this by turning a 1/4 inch drill (by hand) through the fitting to dislodge any solid particles. Blow out the fitting with shop air. If necessary, use a smaller drill to avoid removing any metal from the fitting.

(8) **Do not attempt to clean the old PCV valve.**

(9) Return PCV valve back to oil filler tube by placing valve locating tabs (Fig. 21) into cam lock. Press PCV valve in and rotate valve upward. A slight click will be felt when tabs have engaged cam lock. Valve should be pointed towards rear of vehicle.

(10) Connect PCV line/hose and connecting rubber hose to PCV valve.

(11) Disconnect rubber hose from fresh air fitting at left side of air cleaner resonator box (Fig. 22). Start engine and bring to idle speed. Hold a piece of stiff paper (such as a parts tag) loosely over the opening of the disconnected rubber hose.

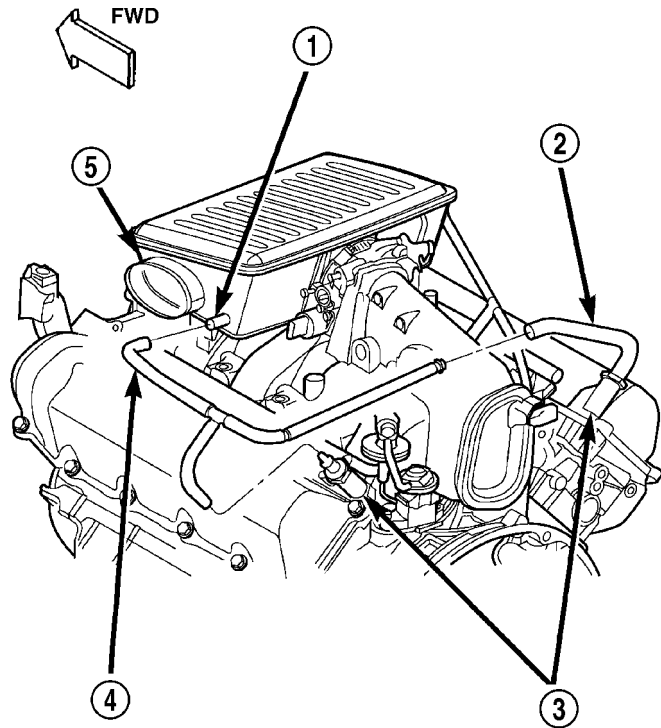
(12) The paper should be drawn against the hose opening with noticeable force. This will be after allowing approximately one minute for crankcase pressure to reduce.

## PCV VALVE (Continued)

(13) If vacuum is not present, disconnect each PCV system hose at top of each breather (Fig. 22). Check for obstructions or restrictions.

(14) If vacuum is still not present, remove each PCV system breather (Fig. 22) from each cylinder head. Check for obstructions or restrictions. If plugged, replace breather. Tighten breather to 12 N·m (106 in. lbs.) torque. Do not attempt to clean breather

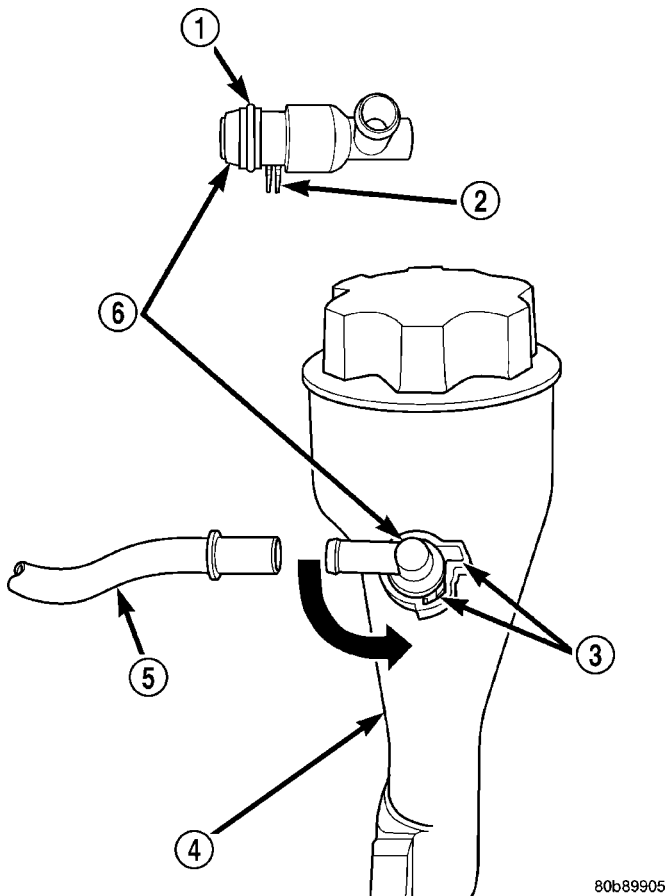
(15) If vacuum is still not present, disconnect each PCV system hose at each fitting and check for obstructions or restrictions.



80b89906

**Fig. 22 PCV Breathers/Tubes/Hoses—4.7L V-8 Engine**

- 1 - FRESH AIR FITTING
- 2 - CONNECTING TUBES/HOSES
- 3 - CRANKCASE BREATHERS (2)
- 4 - RUBBER HOSE
- 5 - AIR CLEANER RESONATOR



80b89905

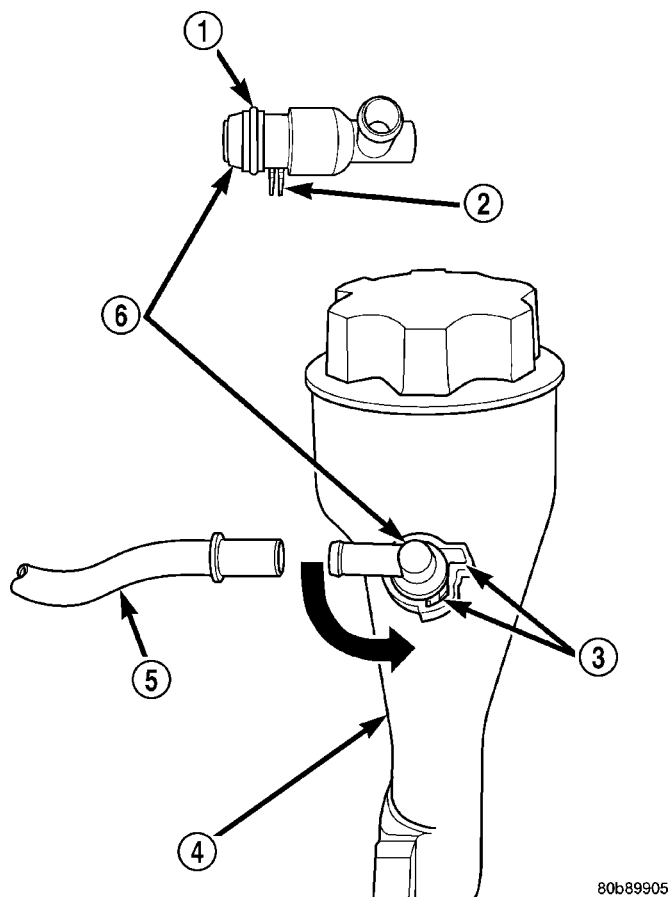
**Fig. 21 PCV Valve/Oil Filler Tube—4.7L V-8 Engine**

- 1 - O-RING
- 2 - LOCATING TABS
- 3 - CAM LOCK
- 4 - OIL FILLER TUBE
- 5 - PCV LINE/HOSE
- 6 - PCV VALVE

## PCV VALVE (Continued)

## REMOVAL - PCV VALVE - 4.7L

The PCV valve is located on the oil filler tube (Fig. 23). Two locating tabs are located on the side of the valve (Fig. 23). These 2 tabs fit into a cam lock in the oil filler tube. An o-ring seals the valve to the filler tube.



**Fig. 23 PCV Valve/Oil Filler Tube Location**

- 1 - O-RING
- 2 - LOCATING TABS
- 3 - CAM LOCK
- 4 - OIL FILLER TUBE
- 5 - PCV LINE/HOSE
- 6 - PCV VALVE

(1) Disconnect PCV line/hose (Fig. 23) by disconnecting rubber hose at PCV valve fitting.

(2) Remove PCV valve at oil filler tube by rotating PCV valve downward (counter-clockwise) until locating tabs have been freed at cam lock (Fig. 23). After tabs have cleared, pull valve straight out from filler tube. **To prevent damage to PCV valve locating tabs, valve must be pointed downward for removal. Do not force valve from oil filler tube.**

(3) After valve is removed, check condition of valve o-ring (Fig. 23).

## INSTALLATION - PCV VALVE - 4.7L

The PCV valve is located on the oil filler tube (Fig. 23). Two locating tabs are located on the side of the valve (Fig. 23). These 2 tabs fit into a cam lock in the oil filler tube. An o-ring seals the valve to the filler tube.

(1) Return PCV valve back to oil filler tube by placing valve locating tabs (Fig. 23) into cam lock. Press PCV valve in and rotate valve upward. A slight click will be felt when tabs have engaged cam lock. Valve should be pointed towards rear of vehicle.

(2) Connect PCV line/hose and rubber hose to PCV valve.

## VACUUM LINES

## DESCRIPTION

A vacuum schematic for emission related items can be found on the VECI label. Refer to Vehicle Emission Control Information (VECI) Label for label location.

## VAPOR CANISTER

## DESCRIPTION

A maintenance free, EVAP canister is used on all gasoline powered models. The canister is attached to a two-piece support bracket located behind the left-rear wheel.

## OPERATION

The EVAP canister is filled with granules of an activated carbon mixture. Fuel vapors entering the EVAP canister are absorbed by the charcoal granules.

The canister serves two functions: as a temporary fuel vapor storage point while refueling the vehicle for the ORVR system, as a temporary vapor storage point while the engine is running.

Fuel tank pressure vents into the EVAP canister. Fuel vapors are temporarily held in the canister until they can be drawn into the intake manifold. The duty cycle EVAP canister purge solenoid allows the EVAP canister to be purged at predetermined times and at certain engine operating conditions.

Refer to ORVR for additional information.

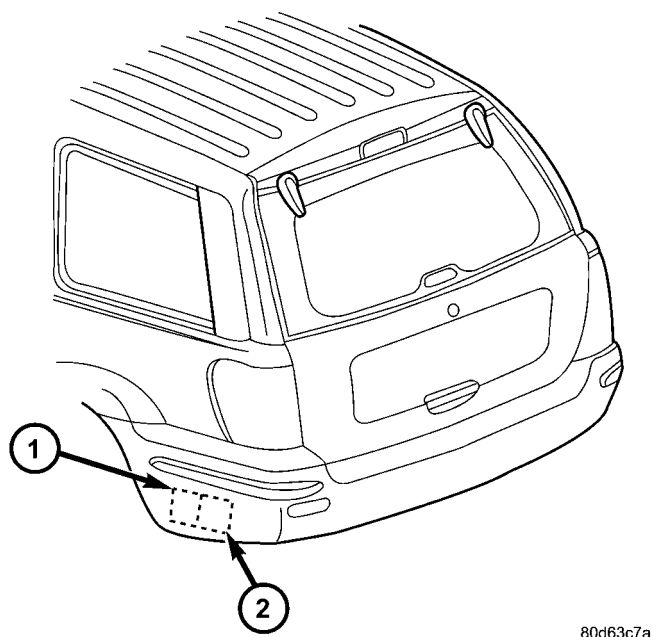
## REMOVAL

The EVAP canister is located behind the left-rear wheel (Fig. 24). It is attached to a two-piece support bracket (Fig. 25).

(1) **Equipped With Rear Tow Hooks:** Remove tow hook support bar (2 bolts). This bar is located near the upper / rear support bracket bolt (#2) (Fig. 27).

## VAPOR CANISTER (Continued)

- (2) Remove 1 support bracket brace bolt (Fig. 25).
- (3) Loosen, but do not remove 2 support bracket nuts (Fig. 26).
- (4) Remove upper/rear support bracket mounting bolt (Fig. 27).
- (5) Carefully lower support bracket assembly to gain access to vapor / vacuum lines. To prevent damage to lines, suspend bracket assembly with rope or string.
- (6) Disconnect necessary vacuum / vapor lines at EVAP canister.
- (7) Remove EVAP canister mounting bolt (Fig. 28).
- (8) Lift canister from support bracket (2 pins are used to align canister into support bracket)



80d63c7a

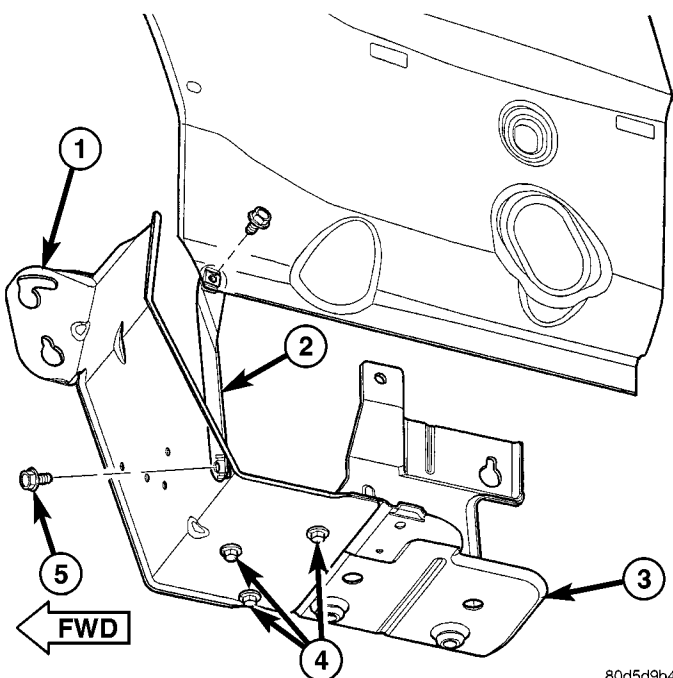
**Fig. 24 LOCATION, LDP / EVAP CANISTER**

- 1 - LEAK DETECTION PUMP
- 2 - EVAP CANISTER

**INSTALLATION**

The EVAP canister is located behind the left-rear wheel (Fig. 24). It is attached to a two-piece support bracket (Fig. 25).

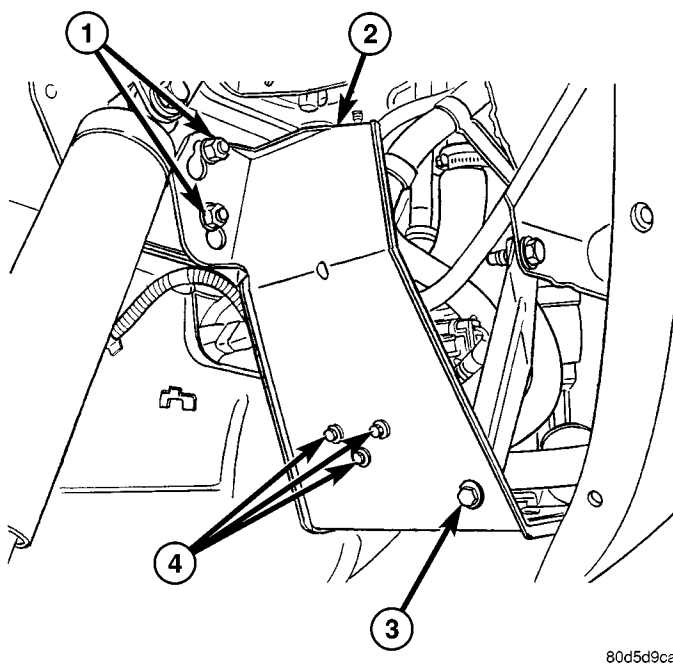
- (1) Position canister to support bracket. Guide 2 alignment pins into support bracket.
- (2) Install EVAP canister mounting bolt (Fig. 28). Refer to Torque Specifications.
- (3) Carefully install vapor / vacuum lines to canister. **The vapor/vacuum lines and hoses must be firmly connected. Check the vapor/vacuum lines at the LDP, LDP filter and EVAP canister purge solenoid for damage or leaks. If a leak is present, a Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) may be set.**



80d5d9b4

**Fig. 25 TWO-PIECE SUPPORT BRACKET**

- 1 - TWO-PIECE SUPPORT BRACKET (FRONT)
- 2 - SUPPORT BRACKET BRACE
- 3 - TWO-PIECE SUPPORT BRACKET (REAR)
- 4 - SUPPORT BRACKET ATTACHING BOLTS (3)
- 5 - SUPPORT BRACKET BRACE BOLT



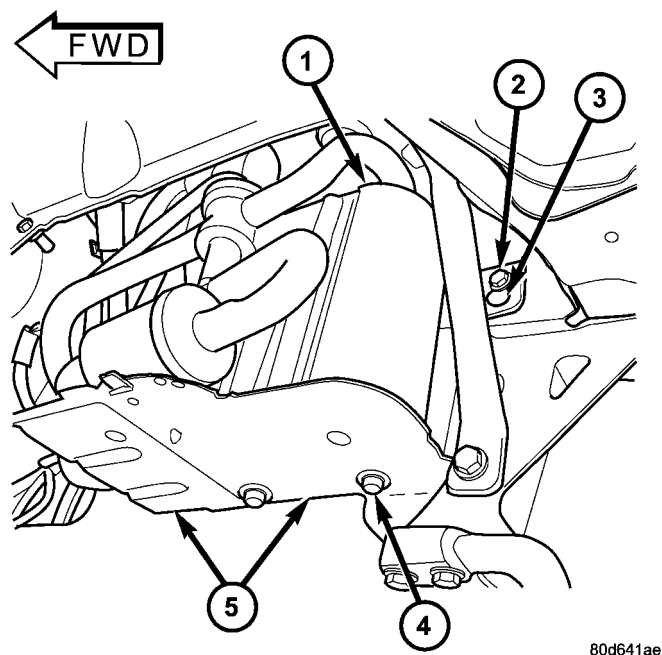
80d5d9ca

**Fig. 26 SUPPORT BRACKET NUTS**

- 1 - SUPPORT BRACKET NUTS (2)
- 2 - SUPPORT BRACKET (FRONT)
- 3 - SUPPORT BRACKET BRACE BOLT
- 4 - LDP MOUNTING BOLTS (3)



## VAPOR CANISTER (Continued)



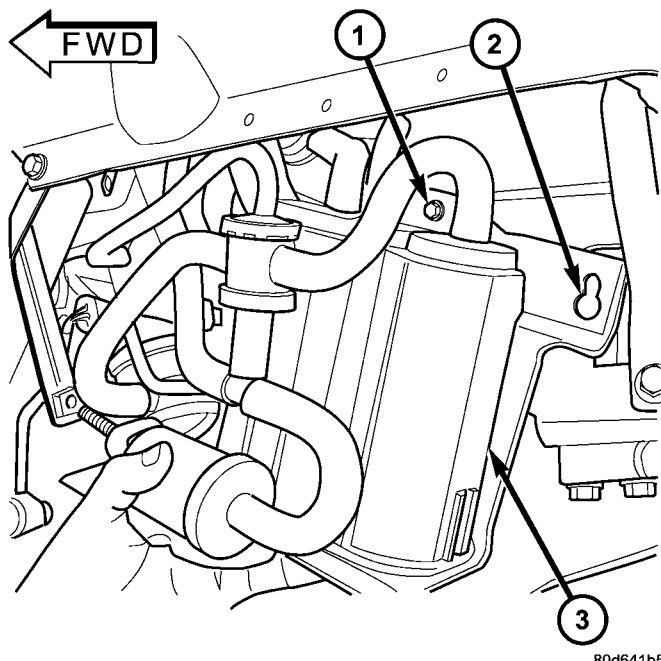
80d641ae

**Fig. 27 SUPPORT BRACKET BOLT**

- 1 - EVAP CANISTER
- 2 - UPPER / REAR SUPPORT BRACKET BOLT
- 3 - SLOTTED HOLE
- 4 - ALIGNMENT PINS (2)
- 5 - TWO-PIECE SUPPORT BRACKET

(4) Carefully raise support bracket assembly to frame rail. Install 1 support bracket brace bolt (Fig. 25) and 2 support bracket nuts (Fig. 26).

(5) Install upper/rear support bracket mounting bolt (Fig. 27). Refer to Torque Specifications.



80d641b5

**Fig. 28 EVAP CANISTER REMOVE / INSTALL**

- 1 - EVAP CANISTER MOUNTING BOLT
- 2 - SLOTTED HOLE
- 3 - EVAP CANISTER (LOWERED)

(6) **Equipped With Rear Tow Hooks:** Install tow hook support bar.





Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page
ABS - DESCRIPTION, BRAKES	5-42	ACTUATOR - INSTALLATION, RECIRCULATION DOOR VACUUM	24-35	AIRBAG - DESCRIPTION, SIDE CURTAIN	80-45
ABS - OPERATION, BRAKES	5-42	ACTUATOR - REMOVAL, HEAT/DEFROST - PANEL/DEFROST DOOR ELECTRIC	24-32	AIRBAG - DISASSEMBLY, DRIVER	80-22
ABS BRAKE SYSTEM - STANDARD PROCEDURE, BLEEDING	5-43	ACTUATOR - REMOVAL, HEAT/DEFROST DOOR VACUUM	24-33	AIRBAG - INSTALLATION, DRIVER	80-25
ABS INDICATOR - DESCRIPTION	8J-14	ACTUATOR - REMOVAL, INSIDE HANDLE	23-29, 23-36	AIRBAG - INSTALLATION, PASSENGER	80-36
ABS INDICATOR - OPERATION	8J-14	ACTUATOR - REMOVAL, PANEL/DEFROST DOOR VACUUM	24-33	AIRBAG - INSTALLATION, SIDE CURTAIN	80-47
ABSORBER - INSTALLATION, FRONT	13-1	ACTUATOR - REMOVAL, RECIRCULATION DOOR ELECTRIC	24-35	AIRBAG - OPERATION, DRIVER	80-21
ABSORBER - INSTALLATION, REAR	13-3	ACTUATOR - REMOVAL, RECIRCULATION DOOR VACUUM	24-34	AIRBAG - OPERATION, PASSENGER	80-35
ABSORBER - REMOVAL, FRONT	13-1	ADAPTER - INSTALLATION, DISC BRAKE CALIPER	5-32	AIRBAG - OPERATION, SIDE CURTAIN	80-45
ABSORBER - REMOVAL, REAR	13-3	ADAPTER - REMOVAL, DISC BRAKE CALIPER	5-32	AIRBAG - REMOVAL, DRIVER	80-21
A/C APPLICATION TABLE, SPECIFICATIONS	24-7	ADAPTER HOUSING SEAL - INSTALLATION	21-229	AIRBAG - REMOVAL, PASSENGER	80-36
A/C COMPRESSOR - DESCRIPTION	24-58	ADAPTER HOUSING SEAL - REMOVAL	21-229	AIRBAG - REMOVAL, SIDE CURTAIN	80-46
A/C COMPRESSOR - OPERATION	24-58	ADDING ADDITIONAL COOLANT - STANDARD PROCEDURE, ADDING	7-14	AIRBAG CONTROL MODULE - DESCRIPTION	80-10
A/C COMPRESSOR CLUTCH - DESCRIPTION	24-13	ADHESIVE LOCATIONS - SPECIFICATIONS, STRUCTURAL	23-153	AIRBAG CONTROL MODULE - INSTALLATION	80-12
A/C COMPRESSOR CLUTCH - INSPECTION	24-15	ADJUSTABLE PEDAL SWITCH - INSTALLATION	5-8	AIRBAG CONTROL MODULE - OPERATION	80-10
A/C COMPRESSOR CLUTCH - INSTALLATION	24-15	ADJUSTABLE PEDAL SWITCH - REMOVAL	5-8	AIRBAG CONTROL MODULE - REMOVAL	80-11
A/C COMPRESSOR CLUTCH - OPERATION	24-13	ADJUSTABLE PEDALS - DESCRIPTION	5-24	AIRBAG INDICATOR - DESCRIPTION	8J-14
A/C COMPRESSOR CLUTCH - REMOVAL	24-14	ADJUSTABLE PEDALS - INSTALLATION	5-26	AIRBAG INDICATOR - OPERATION	8J-15
A/C COMPRESSOR CLUTCH RELAY - DESCRIPTION	24-16	ADJUSTABLE PEDALS - REMOVAL	5-25	AJAR SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, DOOR	8L-39
A/C COMPRESSOR CLUTCH RELAY - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	24-16	ADJUSTABLE PEDALS MODULE - INSTALLATION	8E-3	AJAR SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, FLIP UP GLASS	8L-39
A/C COMPRESSOR CLUTCH RELAY - INSTALLATION	24-17	ADJUSTABLE PEDALS MODULE - REMOVAL	8E-2	AJAR SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, HOOD	8Q-9
A/C COMPRESSOR CLUTCH RELAY - OPERATION	24-16	ADJUST - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, HYDRAULIC LASH	9-86, 9-99	AJAR SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, LIFTGATE	8L-40
A/C COMPRESSOR CLUTCH RELAY - REMOVAL	24-17	ADJUST - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, POWER LUMBAR	8N-26	AJAR SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, DOOR	8L-40
A/C CONDENSER - DESCRIPTION	24-62	ADJUST - INSTALLATION, SEAT BELT TURNING LOOP	80-44	AJAR SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, HOOD	8Q-9
A/C CONDENSER - INSTALLATION	24-63	ADJUST - INSTALLATION, SEAT TRACK	23-103	AJAR SWITCH - INSTALLATION, HOOD	8Q-10
A/C CONDENSER - OPERATION	24-62	ADJUST - REMOVAL, SEAT BELT TURNING LOOP	80-44	AJAR SWITCH - OPERATION, DOOR	8L-40
A/C CONDENSER - REMOVAL	24-63	ADJUST - REMOVAL, SEAT TRACK	23-102	AJAR SWITCH - OPERATION, FLIP UP GLASS	8L-40
A/C EVAPORATOR - DESCRIPTION	24-70	ADJUSTER ASSEMBLY - CLEANING, ROCKER ARM	9-27	AJAR SWITCH - OPERATION, HOOD	8Q-9
A/C EVAPORATOR - INSTALLATION	24-70	ADJUSTER ASSEMBLY - DESCRIPTION, ROCKER ARM	9-108, 9-27, 9-97	AJAR SWITCH - OPERATION, LIFTGATE	8L-40
A/C EVAPORATOR - OPERATION	24-70	ADJUSTER ASSEMBLY - INSPECTION, ROCKER ARM	9-27	AJAR SWITCH - REMOVAL, HOOD	8Q-10
A/C EVAPORATOR - REMOVAL	24-70	ADJUSTER ASSEMBLY - INSTALLATION, ROCKER ARM	9-108, 9-28, 9-97	AJAR SWITCH BRACKET - INSTALLATION, HOOD	8Q-10
A/C EXPANSION VALVE - DESCRIPTION	24-66	ADJUSTER ASSEMBLY - OPERATION, ROCKER ARM	9-27	AJAR SWITCH BRACKET - REMOVAL, HOOD	8Q-10
A/C EXPANSION VALVE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	24-66	ADJUSTER ASSEMBLY - REMOVAL, ROCKER ARM	9-108, 9-27, 9-97	ALIGNMENT - DESCRIPTION, WHEEL	2-3
A/C EXPANSION VALVE - INSTALLATION	24-67	ADJUSTING TOOL - ADJUSTMENT, WITH	5-41	ALIGNMENT - OPERATION, WHEEL	2-3
A/C EXPANSION VALVE - OPERATION	24-66	AFTER A SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT DEPLOYMENT - STANDARD PROCEDURE, SERVICE	80-7	ALIGNMENT - STANDARD PROCEDURE, INTERNATIONAL HEADLAMP	8L-5
A/C EXPANSION VALVE - REMOVAL	24-66	AIR CHECKING TRANSMISSION CLUTCH AND BAND OPERATION - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	21-15	ALIGNMENT, SPECIFICATIONS	2-5
A/C HEATER CONTROL - DESCRIPTION	24-17	AIR CHECKING TRANSMISSION CLUTCH OPERATION - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	21-184	ALUMINUM THREAD REPAIR - STANDARD PROCEDURE	21-185, 21-28
A/C HEATER CONTROL - INSTALLATION	24-25	AIR CONDITIONER - DESCRIPTION, HEATER	24-1	AMBIENT TEMPERATURE SENSOR - DESCRIPTION	8M-13
A/C HEATER CONTROL - OPERATION	24-17	AIR CONDITIONER - OPERATION, HEATER	24-2	AMBIENT TEMPERATURE SENSOR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8M-14
A/C HEATER CONTROL - REMOVAL	24-25	AIR CONTROL MOTOR - DESCRIPTION, IDLE	14-31	AMBIENT TEMPERATURE SENSOR - OPERATION	8M-13
A/C PERFORMANCE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	24-2	AIR CONTROL MOTOR - OPERATION, IDLE	14-32	AMBIENT TEMPERATURE SENSOR - CIRCUIT - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8M-14
A/C PRESSURE TRANSDUCER - DESCRIPTION	24-26	AIR OUTLETS - INSTALLATION	24-38	AMERICA - INSTALLATION, EXCEPT NORTH	80-34
A/C PRESSURE TRANSDUCER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	24-26	AIR OUTLETS - REMOVAL	24-38	AMERICA - INSTALLATION, NORTH	80-33
A/C PRESSURE TRANSDUCER - INSTALLATION	24-27	AIR TEMPERATURE SENSOR - DESCRIPTION, INTAKE	14-33	AMERICA - REMOVAL, EXCEPT NORTH	80-33
A/C PRESSURE TRANSDUCER - OPERATION	24-26	AIR TEMPERATURE SENSOR - OPERATION, INTAKE	14-33	AMERICA - REMOVAL, NORTH	80-32
A/C PRESSURE TRANSDUCER - REMOVAL	24-27	AIRBAG - ASSEMBLY, DRIVER	80-24	AMPLIFIER - DESCRIPTION	8A-5
ACCELERATOR PEDAL - INSTALLATION	14-27	AIRBAG - DESCRIPTION, DRIVER	80-20	AMPLIFIER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8A-5
ACCELERATOR PEDAL - REMOVAL	14-27	AIRBAG - DESCRIPTION, PASSENGER	80-35	AMPLIFIER - INSTALLATION	8A-6
ACCUMULATOR - DESCRIPTION	21-61			AMPLIFIER - OPERATION	8A-5
ACCUMULATOR - INSPECTION	21-62			AMPLIFIER - REMOVAL	8A-5
ACCUMULATOR - OPERATION	21-61			ANCHOR - DESCRIPTION, CHILD RESTRAINT	80-13
ACTION TEST MODE - DESCRIPTION, CIRCUIT	25-1			ANCHOR - INSTALLATION, CHILD RESTRAINT	80-15
ACTUATOR - DESCRIPTION, BLEND DOOR	24-30			ANCHOR - OPERATION, CHILD RESTRAINT	80-15
ACTUATOR - DESCRIPTION, MODE DOOR	24-32			ANCHOR - REMOVAL, CHILD RESTRAINT	80-15
ACTUATOR - DESCRIPTION, RECIRCULATION DOOR	24-34			ANTENNA - EXPORT - DESCRIPTION, QUARTER GLASS INTEGRAL	8A-15
ACTUATOR - INSTALLATION, HEAT/DEFROST - PANEL/DEFROST DOOR ELECTRIC	24-33			ANTENNA - EXPORT - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, QUARTER GLASS INTEGRAL	8A-15
ACTUATOR - INSTALLATION, HEAT/DEFROST DOOR VACUUM	24-34			ANTENNA - EXPORT - OPERATION, QUARTER GLASS INTEGRAL	8A-15
ACTUATOR - INSTALLATION, INSIDE HANDLE	23-29, 23-36			ANTENNA - NAVIGATION RADIO - INSTALLATION	8A-9
ACTUATOR - INSTALLATION, PANEL/DEFROST DOOR VACUUM	24-34			ANTENNA - NAVIGATION RADIO - REMOVAL	8A-9
ACTUATOR - INSTALLATION, RECIRCULATION DOOR ELECTRIC	24-35			ANTENNA BODY & CABLE - DESCRIPTION	8A-6

Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page
ANTENNA BODY & CABLE - INSTALLATION	8A-9	AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE - OPERATION	21-5	BALL JOINT - DESCRIPTION, UPPER SUSPENSION ARM, BUSHINGS	2-21
ANTENNA BODY & CABLE - OPERATION	8A-6	AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 545RFE - DESCRIPTION	21-180	BALL JOINT - INSTALLATION, UPPER	2-22
ANTENNA BODY & CABLE - REMOVAL	8A-8	AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 545RFE - OPERATION	21-181	BALL JOINT - OPERATION, UPPER SUSPENSION ARM, BUSHINGS	2-21
ANTENNA BODY AND CABLE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8A-6	AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	21-11,21-181	BALL JOINT - REMOVAL, LOWER	2-11
ANTENNA CABLE - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT PANEL	8A-14	AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID - DESCRIPTION	0-5	BALL JOINT - REMOVAL, UPPER	2-15,2-21
ANTENNA CABLE - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT PANEL	8A-14	AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID - NAG1 - DESCRIPTION	0-5	BAND OPERATION - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, AIR CHECKING	21-15
ANTENNA MODULE - EXPORT - DESCRIPTION	8A-10	AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID - OPERATION	0-6	BANDS - ADJUSTMENT	21-63
ANTENNA MODULE - EXPORT - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8A-10	AUTOMATIC ZONE CONTROL SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	24-18	BANDS - DESCRIPTION	21-62
ANTENNA MODULE - EXPORT - INSTALLATION	8A-11	AXLE - 186FBI - ADJUSTMENTS, FRONT	3-21	BANDS - OPERATION	21-63
ANTENNA MODULE - EXPORT - OPERATION	8A-10	AXLE - 186FBI - DESCRIPTION, FRONT	3-17	BAR - DESCRIPTION, STABILIZER	2-14,2-21
ANTENNA MODULE - EXPORT - REMOVAL	8A-10	AXLE - 186FBI - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, FRONT	3-17	BAR - DESCRIPTION, TRACK	2-14
ANTILOCK BRAKE - DESCRIPTION, CONTROLLER	8E-6	AXLE - 186FBI - INSTALLATION, FRONT	3-21	BAR - INSTALLATION, STABILIZER	2-14,2-21
ANTILOCK BRAKE - INSTALLATION, CONTROLLER	8E-7	AXLE - 186FBI - OPERATION, FRONT	3-17	BAR - INSTALLATION, TRACK	2-15
ANTILOCK BRAKE - OPERATION, CONTROLLER	8E-6	AXLE - 186FBI - REMOVAL, FRONT	3-21	BAR - OPERATION, STABILIZER	2-14,2-21
ANTILOCK BRAKE - REMOVAL, CONTROLLER	8E-7	AXLE - 186FBI - SPECIAL TOOLS, FRONT	3-30	BAR - OPERATION, TRACK	2-14
ANTILOCK BRAKES - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	5-43	AXLE - 186FBI - SPECIFICATIONS, FRONT	3-29	BAR - REMOVAL, STABILIZER	2-14,2-21
A-PILLAR TRIM/GRAB HANDLE - INSTALLATION	23-82	AXLE - 198RBI - ADJUSTMENTS, REAR	3-53	BAR - REMOVAL, TRACK	2-14
A-PILLAR TRIM/GRAB HANDLE - REMOVAL	23-82	AXLE - 198RBI - DESCRIPTION, REAR	3-49	BASE - DESCRIPTION, BRAKES	5-3
APPLICATION, SPECIFICATIONS - BULB	8L-38	AXLE - 198RBI - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, REAR	3-49	BASE BRAKE SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	5-3
APPLICATION, SPECIFICATIONS - EXPORT BULB	8L-7	AXLE - 198RBI - INSTALLATION, REAR	3-52	BASE BRAKES, SPECIAL TOOLS	5-8
APPLICATION TABLE, SPECIFICATIONS - A/C	24-7	AXLE - 198RBI - OPERATION, REAR	3-49	BASECOAT/CLEARCOAT FINISH - DESCRIPTION	23-97
APPLIQUE - INSTALLATION, D-PILLAR	23-42	AXLE - 198RBI - REMOVAL, REAR	3-52	BATTERIES - STANDARD PROCEDURE, RKE TRANSMITTER	8N-10
APPLIQUE - REMOVAL, D-PILLAR	23-42	AXLE - 198RBI - SPECIAL TOOLS, REAR	3-62	BATTERY - DESCRIPTION	8F-7
ARM - DESCRIPTION, FRONT WIPER	8R-14	AXLE - 198RBI - SPECIFICATIONS, REAR	3-61	BATTERY - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8F-8
ARM - DESCRIPTION, LOWER CONTROL	2-11,2-19	AXLE - 226RBA - ADJUSTMENTS, REAR	3-87	BATTERY - OPERATION	8F-8
ARM - DESCRIPTION, PITMAN	19-31	AXLE - 226RBA - DESCRIPTION, REAR	3-82	BATTERY CABLE - DESCRIPTION	8F-18
ARM - DESCRIPTION, REAR WIPER	8R-44	AXLE - 226RBA - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, REAR	3-82	BATTERY CABLE - INSTALLATION	8F-21
ARM - DESCRIPTION, UPPER CONTROL	2-16,2-22	AXLE - 226RBA - INSTALLATION, REAR	3-86	BATTERY CABLE - OPERATION	8F-18
ARM - INSTALLATION, FRONT WIPER	8R-16	AXLE - 226RBA - OPERATION, REAR	3-82	BATTERY CABLE - REMOVAL	8F-20
ARM - INSTALLATION, LOWER CONTROL	2-12,2-19	AXLE - 226RBA - REMOVAL, REAR	3-86	BATTERY CABLES - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8F-19
ARM - INSTALLATION, PITMAN	19-31	AXLE - 226RBA - SPECIAL TOOLS, REAR	3-95	BATTERY CHARGING - STANDARD PROCEDURE	8F-9
ARM - INSTALLATION, REAR WIPER	8R-45	AXLE - 226RBA - SPECIFICATIONS, REAR	3-94	BATTERY ELECTROLYTE LEVEL - STANDARD PROCEDURE, CHECKING	8F-14
ARM - INSTALLATION, UPPER CONTROL	2-16,2-23	AXLE - C/V JOINT - INSTALLATION	3-35	BATTERY HOLDDOWN - DESCRIPTION	8F-16
ARM - OPERATION, FRONT WIPER	8R-15	AXLE - C/V JOINT - REMOVAL	3-34	BATTERY HOLDDOWN - INSTALLATION	8F-17
ARM - OPERATION, LOWER CONTROL	2-11,2-19	AXLE - DESCRIPTION	0-5	BATTERY HOLDDOWN - OPERATION	8F-16
ARM - OPERATION, PITMAN	19-31	AXLE - INSTALLATION, FRONT TUBE	3-16	BATTERY HOLDDOWN - REMOVAL	8F-17
ARM - OPERATION, REAR WIPER	8R-44	AXLE - REMOVAL, FRONT TUBE	3-16	BATTERY SYSTEM - CLEANING	8F-5
ARM - OPERATION, UPPER CONTROL	2-16,2-22	AXLE - U-JOINT - INSTALLATION	3-36	BATTERY SYSTEM - DESCRIPTION	8F-2
ARM - REMOVAL, FRONT WIPER	8R-15	AXLE - U-JOINT - REMOVAL	3-35	BATTERY SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8F-2
ARM - REMOVAL, LOWER CONTROL	2-11,2-19	AXLE BEARINGS/SEALS - INSTALLATION	3-66,3-99	BATTERY SYSTEM - INSPECTION	8F-6
ARM - REMOVAL, PITMAN	19-31	AXLE BEARINGS/SEALS - REMOVAL	3-65,3-98	BATTERY SYSTEM - OPERATION	8F-2
ARM - REMOVAL, REAR WIPER	8R-44	AXLE SHAFT SEALS - INSTALLATION	3-34	BATTERY SYSTEM - SPECIFICATIONS	8F-6
ARM - REMOVAL, UPPER CONTROL	2-16,2-22	AXLE SHAFT SEALS - REMOVAL	3-34	BATTERY SYSTEM SPECIAL TOOLS, SPECIAL TOOLS	8F-7
ARM, BUSHINGS, AND BALL JOINT - DESCRIPTION, UPPER SUSPENSION	2-21	AXLE SHAFTS - INSTALLATION	3-33,3-64,3-98	BATTERY TEMPERATURE SENSOR - DESCRIPTION	8F-27
ARM, BUSHINGS, AND BALL JOINT - OPERATION, UPPER SUSPENSION	2-21	AXLE SHAFTS - REMOVAL	3-33,3-64,3-98	BATTERY TEMPERATURE SENSOR - INSTALLATION	8F-27
ARM PARK RAMP - INSTALLATION, WIPER	8R-49	AZC (DRIVERSIDE ONLY) - INSTALLATION, MANUAL	24-31	BATTERY TEMPERATURE SENSOR - OPERATION	8F-27
ARM PARK RAMP - REMOVAL, WIPER	8R-49	AZC (PASSENGER SIDE ONLY) - INSTALLATION	24-32	BATTERY TEMPERATURE SENSOR - REMOVAL	8F-27
ASD SENSE - PCM INPUT - OPERATION	8I-4	AZC SYSTEM (PASSENGER SIDE ONLY) - REMOVAL	24-31	BATTERY TESTER - STANDARD PROCEDURE, USING MICRO 420	8F-10
ASSIST HANDLE - INSTALLATION	23-82	AZC SYSTEMS (DRIVERSIDE ONLY ON AZC) - REMOVAL, MANUAL	24-30	BATTERY TRAY - DESCRIPTION	8F-22
ASSIST HANDLE - REMOVAL	23-82	BACK - INSTALLATION, FRONT SEAT	23-100	BATTERY TRAY - OPERATION	8F-22
AUDIO - DESCRIPTION	8A-2	BACK - INSTALLATION, REAR SEAT	23-105	BEAM INDICATOR - DESCRIPTION, HIGH	8J-22
AUDIO - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8A-2	BACK - REMOVAL, FRONT SEAT	23-100	BEAM INDICATOR - OPERATION, HIGH	8J-23
AUDIO - OPERATION	8A-2	BACK - REMOVAL, REAR SEAT	23-105	BEARING - DESCRIPTION, HUB	2-9
AUDIO SYSTEMS, SPECIAL TOOLS	8A-5	BACK COVER - INSTALLATION, FRONT SEAT	23-101	BEARING - FITTING - STANDARD PROCEDURE, CRANKSHAFT MAIN	9-115
AUTO HEADLAMP SENSOR - INSTALLATION	8L-7	BACK COVER - INSTALLATION, REAR SEAT	23-105	BEARING - INSTALLATION, HUB	2-10
AUTO HEADLAMP SENSOR - REMOVAL	8L-7	BACK COVER - REMOVAL, FRONT SEAT	23-101	BEARING - INSTALLATION, OUTPUT SHAFT FRONT	21-87
AUTO HEADLAMP SENSOR (AHL) - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8L-7	BACK COVER - REMOVAL, REAR SEAT	23-105	BEARING - INSTALLATION, OUTPUT SHAFT REAR	21-88
AUTOMATIC DAY / NIGHT MIRROR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8N-13	BACK LATCH HANDLE - INSTALLATION, FOLDING REAR SEAT	23-107	BEARING - INSTALLATION, PITMAN SHAFT	19-23
AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - 42RE - DESCRIPTION	21-3	BACK LATCH HANDLE - REMOVAL, FOLDING REAR SEAT	23-107	BEARING - OPERATION, HUB	2-9
		BACK LATCH/HINGE - INSTALLATION, FOLDING REAR SEAT	23-107	BEARING - REMOVAL, HUB	2-9
		BACK LATCH/HINGE - REMOVAL, FOLDING REAR SEAT	23-107	BEARING - REMOVAL, OUTPUT SHAFT FRONT	21-87
		BALANCE - STANDARD PROCEDURE, TIRE AND WHEEL	22-2	BEARING - REMOVAL, OUTPUT SHAFT REAR	21-87
				BEARING - REMOVAL, PITMAN SHAFT	19-23
				BEARING FITTING - STANDARD PROCEDURE, CONNECTING ROD	9-110

Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page
BEARINGS - DESCRIPTION, CAMSHAFT	9-31	BEZEL - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT PANEL		BODY & CABLE - REMOVAL, ANTENNA	8A-8
BEARINGS - INSPECTION, CAMSHAFT	9-32	LOWER RIGHT CENTER	23-67	BODY - CLEANING, VALVE	21-168,21-281
BEARINGS - INSPECTION, CRANKSHAFT		BEZEL - UPPER - INSTALLATION,		BODY - DESCRIPTION, THROTTLE	14-41
MAIN	9-116,9-39	INSTRUMENT PANEL CENTER	23-64	BODY - DESCRIPTION, VALVE	21-137,21-277
BEARINGS - INSTALLATION, CAMSHAFT	9-32	BEZEL - UPPER - REMOVAL,		BODY - DISASSEMBLY, VALVE	21-157,21-279
BEARINGS - INSTALLATION,		INSTRUMENT PANEL CENTER	23-63	BODY - INSPECTION, VALVE	21-168,21-282
CRANKSHAFT MAIN	9-40	BLADE - DESCRIPTION, FRONT WIPER	8R-16	BODY - INSTALLATION, VALVE	21-176,21-283
BEARINGS - INSTALLATION,		BLADE - DESCRIPTION, REAR WIPER	8R-46	BODY - OPERATION, THROTTLE	14-41
DIFFERENTIAL CASE	3-114,3-44,3-76	BLADE - INSTALLATION, FRONT WIPER	8R-17	BODY - OPERATION, VALVE	21-141,21-277
BEARINGS - REMOVAL, CAMSHAFT	9-31	BLADE - INSTALLATION, REAR WIPER	8R-47	BODY - REMOVAL, VALVE	21-156,21-278
BEARINGS - REMOVAL, CRANKSHAFT		BLADE - OPERATION, FRONT WIPER	8R-16	BODY AND CABLE - DIAGNOSIS AND	
MAIN	9-39	BLADE - OPERATION, REAR WIPER	8R-46	TESTING, ANTENNA	8A-6
BEARINGS - REMOVAL, DIFFERENTIAL		BLADE - REMOVAL, FRONT WIPER	8R-17	BODY CODE PLATE - DESCRIPTION	Intro.-1
CASE	3-113,3-44,3-75	BLADE - REMOVAL, REAR WIPER	8R-46	BODY CONTROL MODULE -	
BEARINGS - STANDARD PROCEDURE,		BLEEDING - STANDARD PROCEDURE,		DESCRIPTION	8E-3
FITTING CONNECTING ROD	9-34	MANUAL	5-5	BODY CONTROL MODULE - DIAGNOSIS	
BEARINGS - STANDARD PROCEDURE,		BLEEDING - STANDARD PROCEDURE,		AND TESTING	8E-4
FITTING CRANKSHAFT MAIN	9-36	PRESSURE	5-5	BODY CONTROL MODULE -	
BEARINGS/SEALS - INSTALLATION,		BLEEDING ABS BRAKE SYSTEM -		INSTALLATION	8E-5
AXLE	3-66,3-99	STANDARD PROCEDURE	5-43	BODY CONTROL MODULE - OPERATION	8E-3
BEARINGS/SEALS - REMOVAL, AXLE	3-65,3-98	BLEEDING PROCEDURE - STANDARD		BODY CONTROL MODULE - REMOVAL	8E-5
BELT / CHAIN COVER(S) -		PROCEDURE, MASTER CYLINDER	5-23	BODY GROUND STRAP - INSTALLATION,	
INSTALLATION, TIMING	9-148,9-59	BLEND DOOR - INSTALLATION	24-47	ENGINE TO	8A-18
BELT / CHAIN COVER(S) - REMOVAL,		BLEND DOOR - REMOVAL	24-47	BODY LUBRICANTS, SPECIFICATIONS	23-13
TIMING	9-147,9-59	BLEND DOOR ACTUATOR -		BODY LUBRICATION - STANDARD	
BELT - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING,		DESCRIPTION	24-30	PROCEDURE	23-3
SERPENTINE DRIVE	7-18	BLOCK - CLEANING, ENGINE	9-109,9-30	BODY OPENING DIMENSIONS -	
BELT & RETRACTOR - INSTALLATION,		BLOCK - DESCRIPTION, BLOWER		SPECIFICATIONS	23-130
FRONT SEAT	80-31	MOTOR RESISTOR	24-28	BODY PANEL REPAIR - STANDARD	
BELT & RETRACTOR - INSTALLATION,		BLOCK - DESCRIPTION, ENGINE	9-109	PROCEDURE, PLASTIC	23-3
REAR CENTER SEAT	80-38	BLOCK - DESCRIPTION, JUNCTION	8W-97-4	BODY SIDE MOLDINGS - INSTALLATION	23-41
BELT & RETRACTOR - INSTALLATION,		BLOCK - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING,		BODY SIDE MOLDINGS - REMOVAL	23-40
REAR OUTBOARD SEAT	80-41	BLOWER MOTOR RESISTOR	24-28	BODY, SPECIAL TOOLS	23-13
BELT & RETRACTOR - REMOVAL, FRONT		BLOCK - INSPECTION, ENGINE	9-110,9-30	BOOSTER - DESCRIPTION, POWER	
SEAT	80-29	BLOCK - INSTALLATION, BLOWER		BRAKE	5-27
BELT & RETRACTOR - REMOVAL, REAR		MOTOR RESISTOR	24-28	BOOSTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING,	
CENTER SEAT	80-38	BLOCK - INSTALLATION, JUNCTION	8W-97-6	MASTER CYLINDER/POWER	5-22
BELT & RETRACTOR - REMOVAL, REAR		BLOCK - OPERATION, BLOWER MOTOR		BOOSTER - INSTALLATION, POWER	
OUTBOARD SEAT	80-40	RESISTOR	24-28	BRAKE	5-27
BELT BUCKLE - INSTALLATION, REAR		BLOCK - OPERATION, JUNCTION	8W-97-5	BOOSTER - OPERATION, POWER BRAKE	5-27
SEAT	80-42	BLOCK - REMOVAL, BLOWER MOTOR		BOOSTER - REMOVAL, POWER BRAKE	5-27
BELT BUCKLE - REMOVAL, REAR SEAT	80-41	RESISTOR	24-28	BORE HONING - STANDARD	
BELT SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, SEAT	80-42	BLOCK - REMOVAL, JUNCTION	8W-97-5	PROCEDURE, CYLINDER	9-109,9-11
BELT SWITCH - OPERATION, SEAT	80-43	BLOCK AND SPRING - INSTALLATION,		BOX - INSTALLATION, GLOVE	23-54
BELT TENSIONER - DESCRIPTION, SEAT	80-43	SUNSHADE - SLIDE	23-119	BOX - INSTALLATION, REAR STORAGE	23-93
BELT TENSIONER - OPERATION, SEAT	80-43	BLOCK AND SPRING - REMOVAL,		BOX - REMOVAL, GLOVE	23-53
BELT TURNING LOOP ADJUSTER -		SUNSHADE - SLIDE	23-119	BOX - REMOVAL, REAR STORAGE	23-93
INSTALLATION, SEAT	80-44	BLOCK HEATER - DIAGNOSIS AND		BOX LAMP/SWITCH - INSTALLATION,	
BELT TURNING LOOP ADJUSTER -		TESTING, ENGINE	7-32	GLOVE	8L-41
REMOVAL, SEAT	80-44	BLOCK HEATER - OPERATION, ENGINE	7-32	BOX LAMP/SWITCH - REMOVAL, GLOVE	8L-41
BELT WEATHERSTRIP - INSTALLATION,		BLOWER MOTOR - DESCRIPTION	24-39	BOX LATCH - INSTALLATION, GLOVE	23-55
FDR OUTER	23-122	BLOWER MOTOR - DIAGNOSIS AND		BOX LATCH - REMOVAL, GLOVE	23-54
BELT WEATHERSTRIP - INSTALLATION,		TESTING	24-39	BOX LATCH STRIKER - INSTALLATION,	
FRONT DOOR INNER	23-121	BLOWER MOTOR - INSTALLATION	24-40	GLOVE	23-55
BELT WEATHERSTRIP - INSTALLATION,		BLOWER MOTOR - OPERATION	24-39	BOX LATCH STRIKER - REMOVAL,	
RDR INNER	23-124	BLOWER MOTOR - REMOVAL	24-39	GLOVE	23-55
BELT WEATHERSTRIP - INSTALLATION,		BLOWER MOTOR CONTROLLER -		BOX ROLL DOWN - STANDARD	
RDR OUTER	23-124	DESCRIPTION	24-27	PROCEDURE, GLOVE	23-52
BELT WEATHERSTRIP - REMOVAL, FDR		BLOWER MOTOR CONTROLLER -		B-PILLAR DOOR SEAL - INSTALLATION	23-120
OUTER	23-122	INSTALLATION	24-27	B-PILLAR DOOR SEAL - REMOVAL	23-120
BELT WEATHERSTRIP - REMOVAL,		BLOWER MOTOR CONTROLLER -		B-PILLAR LOWER TRIM - INSTALLATION	23-83
FRONT DOOR INNER	23-121	OPERATION	24-27	B-PILLAR LOWER TRIM - REMOVAL	23-83
BELT WEATHERSTRIP - REMOVAL, RDR		BLOWER MOTOR CONTROLLER -		B-PILLAR UPPER TRIM - INSTALLATION	23-83
INNER	23-124	REMOVAL	24-27	B-PILLAR UPPER TRIM - REMOVAL	23-83
BELT WEATHERSTRIP - REMOVAL, RDR		BLOWER MOTOR RESISTOR BLOCK -		BRACKET - INSTALLATION, FRONT	
OUTER	23-124	DESCRIPTION	24-28	IMPACT SENSOR	80-28
BELT/CHAIN AND SPROCKETS -		BLOWER MOTOR RESISTOR BLOCK -		BRACKET - INSTALLATION, HOOD AJAR	
INSPECTION, TIMING	9-152	DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	24-28	SWITCH	8Q-10
BELT/CHAIN AND SPROCKETS -		BLOWER MOTOR RESISTOR BLOCK -		BRACKET - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT	
INSTALLATION, TIMING	9-152,9-61	INSTALLATION	24-28	PANEL C-CHANNEL COVER	23-62
BELT/CHAIN AND SPROCKETS -		BLOWER MOTOR RESISTOR BLOCK -		BRACKET - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT	
REMOVAL, TIMING	9-149,9-60	OPERATION	24-28	PANEL CENTER FLOOR TUNNEL	23-65
BEZEL - DRIVER - INSTALLATION,		BLOWER MOTOR RESISTOR BLOCK -		BRACKET - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT	
INSTRUMENT PANEL TRIM	23-70	REMOVAL	24-28	PANEL COURTESY LAMP	23-66
BEZEL - DRIVER - REMOVAL,		BLOWER MOTOR SWITCH -		BRACKET - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT	
INSTRUMENT PANEL TRIM	23-70	DESCRIPTION	24-29	PANEL INTERMEDIATE	23-67
BEZEL - INSTALLATION, CLUSTER	23-52	BLOWER MOTOR SWITCH - OPERATION	24-29	BRACKET - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT	
BEZEL - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT		BLOWER MOTOR SWITCH - REMOVAL	24-29	PANEL STEERING COLUMN	23-68
PANEL LOWER RIGHT CENTER	23-67	BLOWER MOTOR SWITCH-MANUAL		BRACKET - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT	
BEZEL - LOWER - INSTALLATION,		TEMPERATURE CONTROL SYSTEM -		PANEL STEERING COLUMN SUPPORT	23-69
INSTRUMENT PANEL CENTER	23-63	DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	24-29	BRACKET - INSTALLATION, REARVIEW	
BEZEL - LOWER - REMOVAL,		BODY - ADJUSTMENTS, VALVE	21-177	MIRROR SUPPORT	23-94
INSTRUMENT PANEL CENTER	23-62	BODY - ASSEMBLY, VALVE	21-169,21-283	BRACKET - REMOVAL, FRONT IMPACT	
BEZEL - PASSENGER - INSTALLATION,		BODY & CABLE - DESCRIPTION,		SENSOR	80-28
INSTRUMENT PANEL TRIM	23-71	ANTENNA	8A-6	BRACKET - REMOVAL, HOOD AJAR	
BEZEL - PASSENGER - REMOVAL,		BODY & CABLE - INSTALLATION,		SWITCH	8Q-10
INSTRUMENT PANEL TRIM	23-71	ANTENNA	8A-9	BRACKET - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT	
BEZEL - REMOVAL, CLUSTER	23-51	BODY & CABLE - OPERATION, ANTENNA	8A-6	PANEL C-CHANNEL COVER	23-61



Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page
BRACKET - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT PANEL CENTER FLOOR TUNNEL	23-64	BRAKE PADS - DESCRIPTION, REAR DISC	5-10	BUSHINGS, AND BALL JOINT - OPERATION, UPPER SUSPENSION ARM	2-21
BRACKET - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT PANEL COURTESY LAMP	23-65	BRAKE PADS - INSTALLATION, REAR DISC	5-14	BUZZ, SQUEAK & RATTLE - STANDARD PROCEDURE	23-10
BRACKET - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT PANEL INTERMEDIATE	23-66	BRAKE PADS - OPERATION, FRONT DISC	5-11	BYPASS - DESCRIPTION, WATER PUMP	7-46
BRACKET - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT PANEL STEERING COLUMN	23-68	BRAKE PADS - OPERATION, REAR DISC	5-11	BYPASS - OPERATION, WATER PUMP	7-46
BRACKET - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT PANEL STEERING COLUMN SUPPORT	23-69	BRAKE PADS - REMOVAL, REAR DISC	5-12	CABLE - ADJUSTMENTS, GEARSHIFT	21-237,21-82
BRAKE - CLEANING, REAR DRUM IN HAT	5-38	BRAKE ROTOR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, FRONT DISC	5-29	CABLE - ADJUSTMENTS, TRANSMISSION THROTTLE VALVE	21-129
BRAKE - DESCRIPTION, CONTROLLER ANTILOCK	8E-6	BRAKE ROTOR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, REAR DISC	5-30	CABLE - DESCRIPTION	8P-3
BRAKE - DESCRIPTION, ELECTRIC	5-44	BRAKE ROTOR - INSTALLATION, FRONT DISC	5-31	CABLE - DESCRIPTION, ANTENNA BODY	8A-6
BRAKE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, PARKING	5-33	BRAKE ROTOR - INSTALLATION, REAR DISC	5-32	CABLE - DESCRIPTION, BATTERY	8F-18
BRAKE - INSPECTION, REAR DRUM IN HAT	5-39	BRAKE ROTOR - REMOVAL, FRONT DISC	5-31	CABLE - DESCRIPTION, THROTTLE VALVE	21-128
BRAKE - INSTALLATION, CONTROLLER ANTILOCK	8E-7	BRAKE ROTOR - REMOVAL, REAR DISC	5-31	CABLE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, ANTENNA BODY	8A-6
BRAKE - OPERATION, CONTROLLER ANTILOCK	8E-6	BRAKE ROTOR MACHINING - STANDARD PROCEDURE, DISC	5-31	CABLE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, GEARSHIFT	21-235,21-81
BRAKE - OPERATION, ELECTRIC	5-44	BRAKE (ROTOR REMOVED) - ADJUSTMENT, REAR DRUM IN HAT PARK	5-39	CABLE - INSTALLATION, ANTENNA BODY	8A-9
BRAKE - OPERATION, PARKING	5-32	BRAKE SHOES - INSTALLATION, FRONT DISC	5-14	CABLE - INSTALLATION, BATTERY	8F-21
BRAKE - REMOVAL, CONTROLLER ANTILOCK	8E-7	BRAKE SHOES - REMOVAL, FRONT DISC	5-12	CABLE - INSTALLATION, FRONT PARKING BRAKE	5-35
BRAKE BOOSTER - DESCRIPTION, POWER	5-27	BRAKE SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, BASE	5-3	CABLE - INSTALLATION, GEARSHIFT	21-236,21-82
BRAKE BOOSTER - INSTALLATION, POWER	5-27	BRAKE SYSTEM - STANDARD PROCEDURE, BLEEDING ABS	5-43	CABLE - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT PANEL ANTENNA	8A-14
BRAKE BOOSTER - OPERATION, POWER	5-27	BRAKE TRANSMISSION SHIFT INTERLOCK - ADJUSTMENTS	21-231,21-66	CABLE - INSTALLATION, LATCH RELEASE	23-50
BRAKE BOOSTER - REMOVAL, POWER	5-27	BRAKE TRANSMISSION SHIFT INTERLOCK - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	21-230,21-65	CABLE - INSTALLATION, PARK LOCK	21-111,21-260
BRAKE CABLE - INSTALLATION, FRONT PARKING	5-35	BRAKE TRANSMISSION SHIFT INTERLOCK MECHANISM - DESCRIPTION	21-230,21-64	CABLE - INSTALLATION, SHIFT	21-337,21-364
BRAKE CABLE - REMOVAL, FRONT PARKING	5-33	BRAKE TRANSMISSION SHIFT INTERLOCK MECHANISM - OPERATION	21-230,21-65	CABLE - OPERATION	8P-3
BRAKE CABLES - INSTALLATION, REAR PARKING	5-35	BRAKE TRANSMISSION SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, RED	5-8	CABLE - OPERATION, ANTENNA BODY	8A-6
BRAKE CABLES - REMOVAL, REAR PARKING	5-34	BRAKE TRANSMISSION SWITCH - OPERATION, RED	5-8	CABLE - OPERATION, BATTERY	8F-18
BRAKE CALIPER - ASSEMBLY, FRONT DISC	5-18	BRAKE WARNING LAMP - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, RED	5-8	CABLE - REMOVAL, ANTENNA BODY	8A-8
BRAKE CALIPER - ASSEMBLY, REAR DISC	5-19	BRAKE/PARK BRAKE INDICATOR - DESCRIPTION	8J-15	CABLE - REMOVAL, BATTERY	8F-20
BRAKE CALIPER - CLEANING, DISC	5-17	BRAKE/PARK BRAKE INDICATOR - OPERATION	8J-15	CABLE - REMOVAL, FRONT PARKING BRAKE	5-33
BRAKE CALIPER - DISASSEMBLY, FRONT DISC	5-16	BRAKES - ABS - DESCRIPTION	5-42	CABLE - REMOVAL, GEARSHIFT	21-235,21-81
BRAKE CALIPER - DISASSEMBLY, REAR DISC	5-16	BRAKES - ABS - OPERATION	5-42	CABLE - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT PANEL ANTENNA	8A-14
BRAKE CALIPER - INSPECTION, DISC	5-18	BRAKES - BASE - DESCRIPTION	5-3	CABLE - REMOVAL, LATCH RELEASE	23-50
BRAKE CALIPER - INSTALLATION, FRONT DISC	5-20	BRAKES - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, ANTILOCK	5-43	CABLE - REMOVAL, PARK LOCK	21-110,21-259
BRAKE CALIPER - INSTALLATION, REAR DISC	5-20	BRAKES, SPECIAL TOOLS - BASE BREAK-IN - STANDARD PROCEDURE, COMPRESSOR CLUTCH	24-14	CABLE - REMOVAL, SHIFT	21-337,21-363
BRAKE CALIPER - REMOVAL, FRONT DISC	5-14	BUCKLE - INSTALLATION, REAR SEAT BELT	80-42	CABLES - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, BATTERY	8F-19
BRAKE CALIPER - REMOVAL, REAR DISC	5-14	BUCKLE - REMOVAL, REAR SEAT BELT	80-41	CABLES - INSTALLATION, LATCH	23-23
BRAKE CALIPER ADAPTER - INSTALLATION, DISC	5-32	BULB - INSTALLATION	8L-19,8L-25,8L-36,8L-39, 8L-9	CABLES - INSTALLATION, REAR PARKING BRAKE	5-35
BRAKE CALIPER ADAPTER - REMOVAL, DISC	5-32	BULB - REMOVAL	8L-19,8L-25,8L-36,8L-39,8L-9	CABLES - REMOVAL, LATCH	23-23
BRAKE COMPONENTS, SPECIFICATIONS	5-6	BULB APPLICATION, SPECIFICATIONS - EXPORT	8L-38	CABLES - REMOVAL, REAR PARKING BRAKE	5-34
BRAKE FLUID CONTAMINATION - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	5-21	BULBS - INSTALLATION	8L-32,8L-35	CALIBRATION - STANDARD PROCEDURE, COMPASS	8M-5
BRAKE FLUID LEVEL SWITCH - INSTALLATION	5-8	BULBS - REMOVAL	8L-32,8L-35	CALIPER - ASSEMBLY, FRONT DISC BRAKE	5-18
BRAKE FLUID LEVEL SWITCH - REMOVAL	5-8	BURNT FLUID - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, CAUSES OF	21-232,21-72	CALIPER - ASSEMBLY, REAR DISC BRAKE	5-19
BRAKE HOSES AND LINES - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	5-9	BUSHING - INSTALLATION, EXTENSION HOUSING	21-71	CALIPER - CLEANING, DISC BRAKE	5-17
BRAKE INDICATOR - DESCRIPTION, BRAKE/PARK	8J-15	BUSHING - REMOVAL, EXTENSION HOUSING	21-71	CALIPER - DISASSEMBLY, FRONT DISC BRAKE	5-16
BRAKE INDICATOR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8J-16	BUSHING AND SEAL - INSTALLATION, REAR RETAINER	21-302,21-363	CALIPER - DISASSEMBLY, REAR DISC BRAKE	5-16
BRAKE INDICATOR - OPERATION, BRAKE/PARK	8J-15	BUSHING AND SEAL - NV242HD - INSTALLATION, REAR RETAINER	21-336	CALIPER - INSPECTION, DISC BRAKE	5-18
BRAKE LAMP SWITCH - DESCRIPTION	8L-7	BUSHING AND SEAL - NV242HD - REMOVAL, REAR RETAINER	21-336	CALIPER - INSTALLATION, FRONT DISC BRAKE	5-20
BRAKE LAMP SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8L-7	BUSHING AND SEAL - REMOVAL, REAR RETAINER	21-301,21-362	CALIPER - INSTALLATION, REAR DISC BRAKE	5-20
BRAKE LAMP SWITCH - INSTALLATION	8L-8	BUSHINGS - INSTALLATION	2-9	CALIPER - REMOVAL, FRONT DISC BRAKE	5-14
BRAKE LAMP SWITCH - OPERATION	8L-7	BUSHINGS - REMOVAL	2-9	CALIPER - REMOVAL, REAR DISC BRAKE	5-14
BRAKE LAMP SWITCH - REMOVAL	8L-8	BUSHINGS, AND BALL JOINT - DESCRIPTION, UPPER SUSPENSION ARM	2-21	CALIPER ADAPTER - INSTALLATION, DISC BRAKE	5-32
BRAKE LINES - DESCRIPTION	5-9			CALIPER ADAPTER - REMOVAL, DISC BRAKE	5-32
BRAKE PADS - DESCRIPTION, FRONT DISC	5-10			CAM - DESCRIPTION, TURN SIGNAL CANCEL	8L-36

Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page
CAM/OVERDRIVE PISTON RETAINER - DISASSEMBLY, OVERRUNNING CLUTCH . . . . .	21-108	CASE - NV242 - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, TRANSFER . . . . .	21-304	CENTER - REMOVAL, ELECTRONIC VEHICLE INFO . . . . .	8M-11
CAM/OVERDRIVE PISTON RETAINER - INSPECTION, OVERRUNNING CLUTCH . . . . .	21-109	CASE - NV242 - DISASSEMBLY, TRANSFER . . . . .	21-305	CENTER - REMOVAL, POWER DISTRIBUTION . . . . .	8W-97-7
CAM/OVERDRIVE PISTON RETAINER - OPERATION, OVERRUNNING CLUTCH . . . . .	21-108	CASE - NV242 - INSPECTION, TRANSFER . . . . .	21-316	CENTER ASSEMBLY, ASSEMBLY - POWER DISTRIBUTION . . . . .	8W-97-10
CAMSHAFT & BEARINGS - DESCRIPTION . . . . .	9-31	CASE - NV242 - INSTALLATION, TRANSFER . . . . .	21-331	CENTER BEZEL - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT PANEL LOWER RIGHT . . . . .	23-67
CAMSHAFT - INSPECTION . . . . .	9-32	CASE - NV242 - OPERATION, TRANSFER . . . . .	21-304	CENTER BEZEL - LOWER - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT PANEL . . . . .	23-63
CAMSHAFT - INSTALLATION . . . . .	9-33	CASE - NV247 - ASSEMBLY, TRANSFER . . . . .	21-349	CENTER BEZEL - LOWER - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT PANEL . . . . .	23-62
CAMSHAFT - REMOVAL . . . . .	9-31	CASE - NV247 - CLEANING, TRANSFER . . . . .	21-348	CENTER BEZEL - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT PANEL LOWER RIGHT . . . . .	23-67
CAMSHAFT BEARINGS - INSPECTION . . . . .	9-32	CASE - NV247 - DESCRIPTION, TRANSFER . . . . .	0-5	CENTER BEZEL - UPPER - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT PANEL . . . . .	23-64
CAMSHAFT BEARINGS - INSTALLATION . . . . .	9-32	CASE - NV247 - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, TRANSFER . . . . .	21-340	CENTER BEZEL - UPPER - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT PANEL . . . . .	23-63
CAMSHAFT BEARINGS - REMOVAL . . . . .	9-31	CASE - NV247 - DISASSEMBLY, TRANSFER . . . . .	21-342	CENTER DISASSEMBLY, DISASSEMBLY - POWER DISTRIBUTION . . . . .	8W-97-8
CAMSHAFT(S) - LEFT - DESCRIPTION . . . . .	9-90	CASE - NV247 - INSPECTION, TRANSFER . . . . .	21-348	CENTER FLOOR TUNNEL BRACKET - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT PANEL . . . . .	23-65
CAMSHAFT(S) - LEFT - INSTALLATION . . . . .	9-92	CASE - NV247 - INSTALLATION, TRANSFER . . . . .	21-359	CENTER FLOOR TUNNEL BRACKET - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT PANEL . . . . .	23-64
CAMSHAFT(S) - LEFT - REMOVAL . . . . .	9-90	CASE - NV247 - OPERATION, TRANSFER . . . . .	21-340	CENTER PROGRAMMING - STANDARD PROCEDURE, ELECTRONIC VEHICLE INFORMATION . . . . .	8M-2
CAMSHAFT(S) - RIGHT - DESCRIPTION . . . . .	9-101	CASE - NV247 - REMOVAL, TRANSFER . . . . .	21-341	CENTER SEAT BELT & RETRACTOR - INSTALLATION, REAR . . . . .	80-38
CAMSHAFT(S) - RIGHT - INSTALLATION . . . . .	9-103	CASE BEARINGS - INSTALLATION, DIFFERENTIAL . . . . .	3-114,3-44,3-76	CENTER SEAT BELT & RETRACTOR - REMOVAL, REAR . . . . .	80-38
CAMSHAFT(S) - RIGHT - REMOVAL . . . . .	9-101	CASE BEARINGS - REMOVAL, DIFFERENTIAL . . . . .	3-113,3-44,3-75	CENTERING - STANDARD PROCEDURE, CLOCKSPRING . . . . .	80-17
CANCEL CAM - DESCRIPTION, TURN SIGNAL . . . . .	8L-36	CASE, NV147 - TRANSFER . . . . .	21-299	CERTIFICATION LABEL - DESCRIPTION, VEHICLE SAFETY . . . . .	Intro-3
CANCEL CAM - OPERATION, TURN SIGNAL . . . . .	8L-36	CASE, NV242 - TRANSFER . . . . .	21-332	CHAIN COVER(S) - INSTALLATION, TIMING BELT . . . . .	9-148,9-59
CANISTER - DESCRIPTION, VAPOR . . . . .	25-25	CASE, NV247 - TRANSFER . . . . .	21-360	CHAIN COVER(S) - REMOVAL, TIMING BELT . . . . .	9-147,9-59
CANISTER - INSTALLATION, VAPOR . . . . .	25-26	CASE SKID PLATE - INSTALLATION, TRANSFER . . . . .	13-9	CHAIN WEAR - STANDARD PROCEDURE, MEASURING TIMING . . . . .	9-146
CANISTER - OPERATION, VAPOR . . . . .	25-25	CASE SKID PLATE - REMOVAL, TRANSFER . . . . .	13-9	CHANGER - DESCRIPTION, CD . . . . .	8A-11
CANISTER - REMOVAL, VAPOR . . . . .	25-25	CASTER - STANDARD PROCEDURE . . . . .	2-4	CHANGER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, CD . . . . .	8A-12
CAP - CLEANING, RADIATOR PRESSURE . . . . .	7-52	CATALYTIC CONVERTER - 4.0L - INSPECTION . . . . .	11-5	CHANGER - INSTALLATION, CD . . . . .	8A-13
CAP - DESCRIPTION, FUEL FILLER . . . . .	25-16	CATALYTIC CONVERTER - 4.0L - INSTALLATION . . . . .	11-5	CHANGER - OPERATION, CD . . . . .	8A-11
CAP - DESCRIPTION, RADIATOR PRESSURE . . . . .	7-51	CATALYTIC CONVERTER - 4.0L - REMOVAL . . . . .	11-4	CHANGER - REMOVAL, CD . . . . .	8A-13
CAP - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, RADIATOR PRESSURE . . . . .	7-51	CATALYTIC CONVERTER - 4.0L ENGINE - DESCRIPTION . . . . .	11-4	CHANNEL - INSTALLATION, GLASS RUN . . . . .	23-27
CAP - INSPECTION, RADIATOR PRESSURE . . . . .	7-52	CATALYTIC CONVERTER - 4.7L - INSPECTION . . . . .	11-7	CHANNEL - REMOVAL, GLASS RUN . . . . .	23-27
CAP - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT PANEL END . . . . .	23-56	CATALYTIC CONVERTER - 4.7L - INSTALLATION . . . . .	11-7	CHARGE - STANDARD PROCEDURE, REFRIGERANT SYSTEM . . . . .	24-57
CAP - OPERATION, FUEL FILLER . . . . .	25-16	CATALYTIC CONVERTER - 4.7L - REMOVAL . . . . .	11-6	CHARGE CAPACITY, SPECIFICATIONS . . . . .	24-58
CAP - OPERATION, RADIATOR PRESSURE . . . . .	7-51	CAUSES OF BURNT FLUID - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING . . . . .	21-232,21-72	CHARGING - DESCRIPTION . . . . .	8F-25
CAP - REMOVAL, FUEL FILLER . . . . .	25-16	CAUTION - CAUTION . . . . .	24-54	CHARGING - OPERATION . . . . .	8F-25
CAP - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT PANEL END . . . . .	23-56	CAUTION - REFRIGERANT HOSES/LINES/ TUBES PRECAUTIONS . . . . .	24-54	CHARGING - STANDARD PROCEDURE, BATTERY . . . . .	8F-9
CAPACITIES - SPECIFICATIONS, FLUID . . . . .	0-6	CAUTION, CAUTION . . . . .	24-54	CHARGING SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING . . . . .	8F-25
CAPACITOR - DESCRIPTION, IGNITION COIL . . . . .	8I-13	CAUTIONS - STANDARD PROCEDURE, SERVICE WARNINGS . . . . .	2-6	CHART - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, COOLING SYSTEM DIAGNOSIS . . . . .	7-5
CAPACITOR - INSTALLATION, IGNITION COIL . . . . .	8I-13	CAUTIONS, DESCRIPTION - SERVICE WARNINGS . . . . .	19-7	CHART, SPECIFICATIONS - TORQUE . . . . .	5-43,5-7
CAPACITOR - OPERATION, IGNITION COIL . . . . .	8I-13	C-CHANNEL COVER BRACKET - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT PANEL . . . . .	23-62	CHART, SPECIFICATIONS - TORQUE . . . . .	19-12,19-37
CAPACITOR - REMOVAL, IGNITION COIL . . . . .	8I-13	C-CHANNEL COVER BRACKET - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT PANEL . . . . .	23-61	CHART, SPECIFICATIONS - TORQUE . . . . .	2-18,2-7
CAPACITY, SPECIFICATIONS - CHARGE . . . . .	24-58	CCV SYSTEM - 4.0L - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING . . . . .	25-14	CHART, SPECIFICATIONS - TORQUE . . . . .	22-12,22-13
CARDAN UNIVERSAL JOINTS - ASSEMBLY, DOUBLE . . . . .	3-12	CCV SYSTEM - DESCRIPTION . . . . .	25-12	CHARTS - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, DIAGNOSIS . . . . .	21-16
CARDAN UNIVERSAL JOINTS - ASSEMBLY, SINGLE . . . . .	3-11	CCV SYSTEM - OPERATION, 4.0L . . . . .	25-12	CHECK - STANDARD PROCEDURE, FLUID LEVEL . . . . .	21-233,21-72
CARDAN UNIVERSAL JOINTS - DISASSEMBLY, DOUBLE . . . . .	3-11	CD CHANGER - DESCRIPTION . . . . .	8A-11	CHECK - STANDARD PROCEDURE, OIL PUMP VOLUME . . . . .	21-254
CARDAN UNIVERSAL JOINTS - DISASSEMBLY, SINGLE . . . . .	3-10	CD CHANGER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING . . . . .	8A-12	CHECK GAUGES INDICATOR - DESCRIPTION . . . . .	8J-17
CARGO AREA CARPET - INSTALLATION . . . . .	23-84	CD CHANGER - INSTALLATION . . . . .	8A-13	CHECK GAUGES INDICATOR - OPERATION . . . . .	8J-17
CARGO AREA CARPET - REMOVAL . . . . .	23-84	CD CHANGER - OPERATION . . . . .	8A-11	CHECK STRAP - INSTALLATION . . . . .	23-24,23-33
CARPET - INSTALLATION, CARGO AREA . . . . .	23-84	CD CHANGER - REMOVAL . . . . .	8A-13	CHECK STRAP - REMOVAL . . . . .	23-24,23-33
CARPET - INSTALLATION, FRONT . . . . .	23-84	CENTER - DESCRIPTION, ELECTRONIC VEHICLE INFO . . . . .	8M-7	CHECK VALVE - DESCRIPTION, FRONT . . . . .	8R-10
CARPET - REMOVAL, CARGO AREA . . . . .	23-84	CENTER - DESCRIPTION, POWER DISTRIBUTION . . . . .	8W-97-7	CHECK VALVE - DESCRIPTION, VACUUM . . . . .	24-35
CARPET - REMOVAL, FRONT . . . . .	23-84	CENTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, ELECTRONIC VEHICLE INFORMATION . . . . .	8M-10	CHECK VALVE - INSTALLATION, FRONT . . . . .	8R-11
CASE - NV147 - ASSEMBLY, TRANSFER . . . . .	21-291	CENTER - INSTALLATION, ELECTRONIC VEHICLE INFO . . . . .	8M-11	CHECK VALVE - INSTALLATION, VACUUM . . . . .	24-36
CASE - NV147 - CLEANING, TRANSFER . . . . .	21-290	CENTER - OPERATION, ELECTRONIC VEHICLE INFO . . . . .	8M-9	CHECK VALVE - OPERATION, FRONT . . . . .	8R-11
CASE - NV147 - DESCRIPTION, TRANSFER . . . . .	0-5	CENTER - OPERATION, POWER DISTRIBUTION . . . . .	8W-97-7	CHECK VALVE - OPERATION, VACUUM . . . . .	24-35
CASE - NV147 - DESCRIPTION, TRANSFER . . . . .	21-284			CHECK VALVE - REMOVAL, FRONT . . . . .	8R-11
CASE - NV147 - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, TRANSFER . . . . .	21-285			CHECK VALVE - REMOVAL, VACUUM . . . . .	24-36
CASE - NV147 - DISASSEMBLY, TRANSFER . . . . .	21-286			CHECKING BATTERY ELECTROLYTE LEVEL - STANDARD PROCEDURE . . . . .	8F-14
CASE - NV147 - INSPECTION, TRANSFER . . . . .	21-290				
CASE - NV147 - INSTALLATION, TRANSFER . . . . .	21-298				
CASE - NV147 - OPERATION, TRANSFER . . . . .	21-285				
CASE - NV147 - REMOVAL, TRANSFER . . . . .	21-286				
CASE - NV242 - ASSEMBLY, TRANSFER . . . . .	21-319				
CASE - NV242 - CLEANING, TRANSFER . . . . .	21-316				
CASE - NV242 - DESCRIPTION, TRANSFER . . . . .	0-5				
CASE - NV242 - DESCRIPTION, TRANSFER . . . . .	21-303				



Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page
CHECKING TRANSMISSION CLUTCH AND BAND OPERATION - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, AIR	21-15	CLUTCH - OPERATION, A/C COMPRESSOR	24-13	COLLAPSIBLE SPACER - REMOVAL	3-102,3-37,3-69
CHECKING TRANSMISSION CLUTCH OPERATION - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, AIR	21-184	CLUTCH - OPERATION, FRONT	21-75	COLUMN BRACKET - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT PANEL STEERING	23-68
CHECKS - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, PRELIMINARY	7-4	CLUTCH - OPERATION, OVERDRIVE	21-88	COLUMN BRACKET - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT PANEL STEERING	23-68
CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR - DESCRIPTION	80-13	CLUTCH - OPERATION, REAR	21-120	COLUMN OPENING COVER - INSTALLATION, STEERING	23-72
CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR - INSTALLATION	80-15	CLUTCH - OPERATION, VISCOUS HEATER	24-77	COLUMN OPENING COVER - REMOVAL, STEERING	23-71
CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR - OPERATION	80-15	CLUTCH - REMOVAL, A/C COMPRESSOR	24-14	COLUMN, SPECIAL TOOLS - STEERING	19-12
CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR - REMOVAL	80-15	CLUTCH - REMOVAL, VISCOUS HEATER	24-78	COLUMN SUPPORT BRACKET - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT PANEL STEERING	23-69
CHIME WARNING SYSTEM - DESCRIPTION	8B-1	CLUTCH AND BAND OPERATION - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, AIR CHECKING TRANSMISSION	21-15	COLUMN SUPPORT BRACKET - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT PANEL STEERING	23-69
CHIME WARNING SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8B-2	CLUTCH ASSEMBLY - ASSEMBLY, INPUT	21-245	COMBINATION FLASHER - DESCRIPTION	8L-10
CHIME WARNING SYSTEM - OPERATION	8B-1	CLUTCH ASSEMBLY - DESCRIPTION, INPUT	21-240	COMBINATION FLASHER - INSTALLATION	8L-12
CHMSL - INSTALLATION	8L-9	CLUTCH ASSEMBLY - DISASSEMBLY, INPUT	21-241	COMBINATION FLASHER - OPERATION	8L-10
CHMSL - REMOVAL	8L-9	CLUTCH ASSEMBLY - OPERATION, INPUT	21-240	COMBINATION FLASHER - REMOVAL	8L-12
CIGAR LIGHTER OUTLET - DESCRIPTION	8W-97-2	CLUTCH BREAK-IN - STANDARD PROCEDURE, COMPRESSOR	24-14	COMBUSTION PRESSURE LEAKAGE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, CYLINDER	9-70,9-8
CIGAR LIGHTER OUTLET - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8W-97-2	CLUTCH CAM/OVERDRIVE PISTON RETAINER - ASSEMBLY, OVERRUNNING	21-109	COMMUNICATION - DESCRIPTION	8E-6
CIGAR LIGHTER OUTLET - OPERATION	8W-97-2	CLUTCH CAM/OVERDRIVE PISTON RETAINER - CLEANING, OVERRUNNING	21-108	COMMUNICATION - OPERATION	8E-6
CIGAR LIGHTER OUTLET DOOR SPRING - INSTALLATION	8W-97-3	CLUTCH CAM/OVERDRIVE PISTON RETAINER - DESCRIPTION, OVERRUNNING	21-108	COMPASS CALIBRATION - STANDARD PROCEDURE	8M-5
CIGAR LIGHTER OUTLET DOOR SPRING - REMOVAL	8W-97-3	CLUTCH CAM/OVERDRIVE PISTON RETAINER - DISASSEMBLY, OVERRUNNING	21-108	COMPASS DEMAGNETIZING - STANDARD PROCEDURE	8M-4
CIRCUIT - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, AMBIENT TEMPERATURE SENSOR	8M-14	CLUTCH CAM/OVERDRIVE PISTON RETAINER - INSPECTION, OVERRUNNING	21-109	COMPASS VARIATION ADJUSTMENT - STANDARD PROCEDURE	8M-6
CIRCUIT ACTUATION TEST MODE - DESCRIPTION	25-1	CLUTCH CAM/OVERDRIVE PISTON RETAINER - OPERATION, OVERRUNNING	21-108	COMPRESSION PRESSURE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, CYLINDER	9-70,9-8
CIRCUIT FUNCTIONS - DESCRIPTION	8W-01-6	CLUTCH COIL - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, COMPRESSOR	24-13	COMPRESSOR - DESCRIPTION, A/C	24-58
CIRCUIT INFORMATION - DESCRIPTION	8W-01-5	CLUTCH OPERATION - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, AIR CHECKING TRANSMISSION	21-184	COMPRESSOR - OPERATION, A/C	24-58
CIRCUIT SENSE - DESCRIPTION, IGNITION	8E-15	CLUTCH RELAY - DESCRIPTION, A/C COMPRESSOR	24-16	COMPRESSOR CLUTCH - DESCRIPTION, A/C	24-13
CIRCUIT SENSE - OPERATION, IGNITION	8E-16	CLUTCH RELAY - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, A/C COMPRESSOR	24-16	COMPRESSOR CLUTCH - INSPECTION, A/C	24-15
CIRCUITS - DESCRIPTION, NON-MONITORED	25-5	CLUTCH RELAY - INSTALLATION, A/C COMPRESSOR	24-17	COMPRESSOR CLUTCH - INSTALLATION, A/C	24-15
CLAMPS - DESCRIPTION, HOSE	7-2	CLUTCH RELAY - OPERATION, A/C COMPRESSOR	24-16	COMPRESSOR CLUTCH - OPERATION, A/C	24-13
CLAMPS - OPERATION, HOSE	7-3	CLUTCH RELAY - REMOVAL, A/C COMPRESSOR	24-17	COMPRESSOR CLUTCH - REMOVAL, A/C	24-14
CLOCKSPRING - DESCRIPTION	80-16	CLUTCHES - DESCRIPTION, HOLDING	21-238	COMPRESSOR CLUTCH BREAK-IN - STANDARD PROCEDURE	24-14
CLOCKSPRING - INSTALLATION	80-19	CLUTCHES - OPERATION, HOLDING	21-239	COMPRESSOR CLUTCH COIL - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	24-13
CLOCKSPRING - OPERATION	80-17	CODE - DESCRIPTION, PAINT	23-96	COMPRESSOR CLUTCH RELAY - DESCRIPTION, A/C	24-16
CLOCKSPRING - REMOVAL	80-18	CODE PLATE - DESCRIPTION, BODY	Intro-1	COMPRESSOR CLUTCH RELAY - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, A/C	24-16
CLOCKSPRING CENTERING - STANDARD PROCEDURE	80-17	CODES - DESCRIPTION, DIAGNOSTIC TROUBLE	25-2	COMPRESSOR CLUTCH RELAY - INSTALLATION, A/C	24-17
CLUSTER - ASSEMBLY, INSTRUMENT	8J-12	CODES - SPECIFICATIONS, PAINT	23-96	COMPRESSOR CLUTCH RELAY - OPERATION, A/C	24-16
CLUSTER - DESCRIPTION, INSTRUMENT	8J-2	CODES - STANDARD PROCEDURE, ERASING TRANSMITTER	8M-12	COMPRESSOR CLUTCH RELAY - REMOVAL, A/C	24-17
CLUSTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, INSTRUMENT	8J-8	CODES - STANDARD PROCEDURE, SETTING TRANSMITTER	8M-12	COMPRESSOR NOISE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	24-59
CLUSTER - DISASSEMBLY, INSTRUMENT	8J-10	COIL - DESCRIPTION, IGNITION	8I-11	CONDENSER - DESCRIPTION, A/C	24-62
CLUSTER - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT	8J-13	COIL - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, COMPRESSOR CLUTCH	24-13	CONDENSER - INSTALLATION, A/C	24-63
CLUSTER - OPERATION, INSTRUMENT	8J-4	COIL - INSTALLATION, IGNITION	8I-12	CONDENSER - OPERATION, A/C	24-62
CLUSTER - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT	8J-10	COIL - OPERATION, IGNITION	8I-12	CONDENSER - REMOVAL, A/C	24-63
CLUSTER BEZEL - INSTALLATION	23-52	COIL - REMOVAL, IGNITION	8I-12	CONNECT FITTING - DESCRIPTION, QUICK	14-21
CLUSTER BEZEL - REMOVAL	23-51	COIL CAPACITOR - DESCRIPTION, IGNITION	8I-13	CONNECTING ROD - CLEANING, PISTON	9-120
CLUTCH - 4.0L - DESCRIPTION, FAN DRIVE VISCOUS	7-38	COIL CAPACITOR - INSTALLATION, IGNITION	8I-13	CONNECTING ROD - DESCRIPTION, PISTON	9-119,9-44
CLUTCH - 4.0L - OPERATION, FAN DRIVE VISCOUS	7-39	COIL CAPACITOR - OPERATION, IGNITION	8I-13	CONNECTING ROD - INSPECTION, PISTON	9-120
CLUTCH - ASSEMBLY, FRONT	21-78	COIL CAPACITOR - REMOVAL, IGNITION	8I-13	CONNECTING ROD - INSTALLATION, PISTON	9-121,9-46
CLUTCH - ASSEMBLY, LOW/REVERSE	21-252	COIL RAIL - DESCRIPTION	8I-9	CONNECTING ROD - REMOVAL, PISTON	9-119,9-45
CLUTCH - ASSEMBLY, REAR	21-122	COIL RAIL - INSTALLATION	8I-10	CONNECTING ROD BEARING FITTING - STANDARD PROCEDURE	9-110
CLUTCH - CLEANING, LOW/REVERSE	21-252	COIL RAIL - OPERATION	8I-10	CONNECTING ROD BEARINGS - STANDARD PROCEDURE, FITTING	9-34
CLUTCH - CLEANING, REAR	21-121	COIL RAIL - REMOVAL	8I-10	CONNECTOR - DESCRIPTION, DATA LINK	8E-7
CLUTCH - DESCRIPTION, A/C COMPRESSOR	24-13	COIL RESISTANCE, 4.0L ENGINE - IGNITION	8I-2	CONNECTOR - DESCRIPTION, IOD WIRE HARNESS	8W-97-15
CLUTCH - DESCRIPTION, FRONT	21-75	COIL RESISTANCE, 4.7L V-8 ENGINE - IGNITION	8I-2	CONNECTOR - INSTALLATION	8W-01-11
CLUTCH - DESCRIPTION, OVERDRIVE	21-88	COLLAPSIBLE SPACER - INSTALLATION	3-102,3-38,3-69	CONNECTOR - OPERATION, DATA LINK	8E-7
CLUTCH - DESCRIPTION, REAR	21-120			CONNECTOR - OPERATION, IOD WIRE HARNESS	8W-97-15
CLUTCH - DESCRIPTION, VISCOUS HEATER	24-77			CONNECTOR - REMOVAL	8W-01-11
CLUTCH - DISASSEMBLY, FRONT	21-77				
CLUTCH - DISASSEMBLY, LOW/REVERSE	21-251				
CLUTCH - DISASSEMBLY, REAR	21-121				
CLUTCH - INSPECTION, A/C COMPRESSOR	24-15				
CLUTCH - INSPECTION, FRONT	21-78				
CLUTCH - INSPECTION, LOW/REVERSE	21-252				
CLUTCH - INSPECTION, REAR	21-121				
CLUTCH - INSTALLATION, A/C COMPRESSOR	24-15				
CLUTCH - INSTALLATION, VISCOUS HEATER	24-78				

Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page
CONNECTOR, GROUND AND SPICE INFORMATION - DESCRIPTION	8W-01-7	CONTROL SYSTEM - DESCRIPTION, EVAPORATION	25-11	COOLER HOSE (2.7L DIESEL) - INSTALLATION, OUTLET	19-46
CONNECTOR/GROUND/SPICE LOCATION - DESCRIPTION	8W-97-1	CONTROL SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, AUTOMATIC ZONE	24-18	COOLER HOSE (2.7L DIESEL) - REMOVAL, INLET	19-44
CONSOLE - DESCRIPTION, OVERHEAD	8M-1	CONTROL SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, BLOWER MOTOR SWITCH-MANUAL TEMPERATURE	24-29	COOLER HOSE (2.7L DIESEL) - REMOVAL, OUTLET	19-44
CONSOLE - INSTALLATION, FLOOR	23-88	CONTROLLER - DESCRIPTION, BLOWER MOTOR	24-27	COOLING FAN - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, ELECTRIC	7-45
CONSOLE - OPERATION, OVERHEAD	8M-1	CONTROLLER - INSTALLATION, BLOWER MOTOR	24-27	COOLING, SPECIAL TOOLS	7-16
CONSOLE - REMOVAL, FLOOR	23-88	CONTROLLER - OPERATION, BLOWER MOTOR	24-27	COOLING SYSTEM - 4.0L ENGINE - STANDARD PROCEDURE, DRAINING	7-14
CONSOLE SPECIAL TOOLS, SPECIAL TOOLS - OVERHEAD	8M-7	CONTROLLER - REMOVAL, BLOWER MOTOR	24-27	COOLING SYSTEM - 4.0L ENGINE - STANDARD PROCEDURE, REFILLING	7-14
CONTAINER - DESCRIPTION, COOLANT RECOVERY	7-26	CONTROLLER ANTILOCK BRAKE - DESCRIPTION	8E-6	COOLING SYSTEM - 4.7L ENGINE - STANDARD PROCEDURE, DRAINING	7-13
CONTAINER - INSTALLATION, COOLANT RECOVERY	7-26	CONTROLLER ANTILOCK BRAKE - INSTALLATION	8E-7	COOLING SYSTEM - OPERATION	7-3
CONTAINER - REMOVAL, COOLANT RECOVERY	7-26	CONTROLLER ANTILOCK BRAKE - OPERATION	8E-6	COOLING SYSTEM - REVERSE FLUSHING - STANDARD PROCEDURE	7-15
CONTAMINATION - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, BRAKE FLUID	5-21	CONTROLLER ANTILOCK BRAKE - REMOVAL	8E-7	COOLING SYSTEM 4.0L ENGINE - DESCRIPTION	7-2
CONTAMINATION - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, FLUID	21-233,21-72	CONTROLS - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, OVERDRIVE ELECTRICAL	21-89	COOLING SYSTEM 4.7L ENGINE - DESCRIPTION	7-1
CONTINUITY - STANDARD PROCEDURE, TESTING	8W-01-9	CONVERTER - 4.0L - INSPECTION, CATALYTIC	11-5	COOLING SYSTEM 4.7L ENGINE - STANDARD PROCEDURE, REFILLING	7-13
CONTROL ARM - DESCRIPTION, LOWER	2-11,2-19	CONVERTER - 4.0L - INSTALLATION, CATALYTIC	11-5	COOLING SYSTEM DEAERATION - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	7-13
CONTROL ARM - DESCRIPTION, UPPER	2-16,2-22	CONVERTER - 4.0L - REMOVAL, CATALYTIC	11-4	COOLING SYSTEM DIAGNOSIS CHART - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	7-5
CONTROL ARM - INSTALLATION, LOWER	2-12,2-19	CONVERTER - 4.0L ENGINE - DESCRIPTION, CATALYTIC	11-4	COOLING SYSTEM LEAKS - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	7-11
CONTROL ARM - INSTALLATION, UPPER	2-16,2-23	CONVERTER - 4.7L - INSPECTION, CATALYTIC	11-7	COOLING SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS - DESCRIPTION	24-1
CONTROL ARM - OPERATION, LOWER	2-11,2-19	CONVERTER - 4.7L - INSTALLATION, CATALYTIC	11-7	COOLING SYSTEM ROUTING - 4.7L ENGINE - DESCRIPTION	7-1
CONTROL ARM - OPERATION, UPPER	2-16,2-22	CONVERTER - 4.7L - REMOVAL, CATALYTIC	11-6	COOLING SYSTEM ROUTING 4.0L ENGINE - DESCRIPTION	7-2
CONTROL ARM - REMOVAL, LOWER	2-11,2-19	CONVERTER - DESCRIPTION, CATALYTIC	11-6	CORE - DESCRIPTION, HEATER	24-71
CONTROL ARM - REMOVAL, UPPER	2-16,2-22	CONVERTER - DESCRIPTION, TORQUE	21-130,21-268	CORE - INSTALLATION, HEATER	24-73
CONTROL ASSEMBLY - INSTALLATION, LATCH	23-22	CONVERTER - INSTALLATION, TORQUE	21-135,21-273	CORE - OPERATION, HEATER	24-71
CONTROL ASSEMBLY - REMOVAL, LATCH	23-22	CONVERTER - OPERATION, TORQUE	21-134,21-272	CORE - REMOVAL, HEATER	24-71
CONTROL INFORMATION (VEC) - DESCRIPTION, VEHICLE EMISSION	Intro-3	CONVERTER - REMOVAL, TORQUE	21-135,21-273	CORE AND OIL GALLERY PLUGS - STANDARD PROCEDURE, ENGINE	9-11,9-72
CONTROL MODULE - 4.0L - DESCRIPTION, PWM FAN	7-39	CONVERTER DRAINBACK VALVE - DESCRIPTION, TORQUE	21-136	COURTESY LAMP BRACKET - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT PANEL	23-66
CONTROL MODULE - 4.0L - INSTALLATION, PWM FAN	7-40	CONVERTER DRAINBACK VALVE - OPERATION, TORQUE	21-136	COURTESY LAMP BRACKET - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT PANEL	23-65
CONTROL MODULE - 4.0L - OPERATION, PWM FAN	7-39	CONVERTER DRAINBACK VALVE - STANDARD PROCEDURE, TORQUE	21-136	COURTESY LAMP REPLACEMENT - STANDARD PROCEDURE	8M-2
CONTROL MODULE - 4.0L - REMOVAL, PWM FAN	7-40	COOLANT - DESCRIPTION, ENGINE	7-24	COVER - DESCRIPTION, STRUCTURAL	9-125
CONTROL MODULE - DESCRIPTION, AIRBAG	80-10	COOLANT - DESCRIPTION, ENGINE	0-2	COVER - FUEL FILLER - INSTALLATION	23-95
CONTROL MODULE - DESCRIPTION, BODY	8E-3	COOLANT - DESCRIPTION, HOAT	7-24	COVER - FUEL FILLER - REMOVAL	23-95
CONTROL MODULE - DESCRIPTION, TRANSMISSION	8E-20	COOLANT - STANDARD PROCEDURE, ADDING ADDITIONAL	7-14	COVER - INSTALLATION, FRONT SEAT BACK	23-101
CONTROL MODULE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, BODY	8E-4	COOLANT LEVEL SENSOR - INSTALLATION	7-25	COVER - INSTALLATION, FUSE	8W-97-16
CONTROL MODULE - INSTALLATION	23-116	COOLANT LEVEL SENSOR - REMOVAL	7-25	COVER - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT PANEL TOP	23-58
CONTROL MODULE - INSTALLATION, AIRBAG	80-12	COOLANT LOW INDICATOR - DESCRIPTION	8J-18	COVER - INSTALLATION, REAR SEAT BACK	23-105
CONTROL MODULE - INSTALLATION, BODY	8E-5	COOLANT LOW INDICATOR - OPERATION	8J-18	COVER - INSTALLATION, REAR SEAT CUSHION	23-106
CONTROL MODULE - OPERATION, AIRBAG	80-10	COOLANT RECOVERY CONTAINER - DESCRIPTION	7-26	COVER - INSTALLATION, STEERING COLUMN OPENING	23-72
CONTROL MODULE - OPERATION, BODY	8E-3	COOLANT RECOVERY CONTAINER - INSTALLATION	7-26	COVER - INSTALLATION, STRUCTURAL	9-125
CONTROL MODULE - OPERATION, TRANSMISSION	8E-20	COOLANT RECOVERY CONTAINER - REMOVAL	7-26	COVER - OPERATION, STRUCTURAL	9-125
CONTROL MODULE - REMOVAL	23-115	COOLANT TEMP SENSOR - DESCRIPTION, ENGINE	7-34	COVER - REMOVAL, FRONT SEAT BACK	23-101
CONTROL MODULE - REMOVAL, AIRBAG	80-11	COOLANT TEMP SENSOR - OPERATION, ENGINE	7-34	COVER - REMOVAL, FUSE	8W-97-15
CONTROL MODULE - REMOVAL, BODY	8E-5	COOLER - DESCRIPTION, FLUID	19-38	COVER - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT PANEL TOP	23-57
CONTROL MOTOR - DESCRIPTION, IDLE AIR	14-31	COOLER - DESCRIPTION, TRANS	7-54	COVER - REMOVAL, REAR SEAT BACK	23-105
CONTROL MOTOR - OPERATION, IDLE AIR	14-32	COOLER - INSTALLATION, FLUID	19-39	COVER - REMOVAL, REAR SEAT CUSHION	23-106
CONTROL RELAY - DESCRIPTION, TRANSMISSION	21-274	COOLER - REMOVAL, FLUID	19-38	COVER - REMOVAL, STEERING COLUMN OPENING	23-71
CONTROL RELAY - OPERATION, TRANSMISSION	21-274	COOLER HOSE - INSTALLATION, INLET	19-43	COVER - REMOVAL, STRUCTURAL	9-125
CONTROL SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, LUMBAR	8N-24	COOLER HOSE - INSTALLATION, OUTLET	19-43	COVER BRACKET - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT PANEL C-CHANNEL	23-62
CONTROL SWITCH - INSTALLATION, LUMBAR	8N-26	COOLER HOSE - REMOVAL, INLET	19-42	COVER BRACKET - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT PANEL C-CHANNEL	23-61
CONTROL SWITCH - OPERATION, LUMBAR	8N-24	COOLER HOSE - REMOVAL, OUTLET	19-42	COVER(S) - CLEANING, CYLINDER HEAD	9-23
CONTROL SWITCH - REMOVAL, LUMBAR	8N-25	COOLER HOSE (2.7L DIESEL) - INSTALLATION, INLET	19-46	COVER(S) - DESCRIPTION, CYLINDER HEAD	9-22
CONTROL SYSTEM - DESCRIPTION, EMISSION	25-1			COVER(S) - INSPECTION, CYLINDER HEAD	9-23
				COVER(S) - INSTALLATION, CYLINDER HEAD	9-23
				COVER(S) - INSTALLATION, TIMING BELT / CHAIN	9-148,9-59

Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page
COVER(S) - LEFT - CLEANING, CYLINDER HEAD	9-94	CYLINDER HEAD - INSTALLATION	9-21	DEFOGGER SWITCH - REMOVAL, REAR WINDOW	8G-7
COVER(S) - LEFT - DESCRIPTION, CYLINDER HEAD	9-94	CYLINDER HEAD - REMOVAL	9-20	DEFOGGER SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, REAR WINDOW	8G-2
COVER(S) - REMOVAL, CYLINDER HEAD	9-23	CYLINDER HEAD COVER(S) - CLEANING	9-23	DEFROSTER DUCTS - INSTALLATION	24-41
COVER(S) - REMOVAL, TIMING BELT / CHAIN	9-147,9-59	CYLINDER HEAD COVER(S) - DESCRIPTION	9-22	DEFROSTER DUCTS - REMOVAL	24-40
COVER(S) - RIGHT - CLEANING, CYLINDER HEAD	9-105	CYLINDER HEAD COVER(S) - INSPECTION	9-23	DEMAGNETIZING - STANDARD PROCEDURE, COMPASS	8M-4
COVER(S) - RIGHT - DESCRIPTION, CYLINDER HEAD	9-105	CYLINDER HEAD COVER(S) - INSTALLATION	9-23	DEPLOYMENT - STANDARD PROCEDURE, SERVICE AFTER A SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT	80-7
COWL GRILLE - INSTALLATION	23-41	CYLINDER HEAD COVER(S) - LEFT - CLEANING	9-94	DETECTION PUMP - DESCRIPTION, LEAK	25-16
COWL GRILLE - REMOVAL	23-41	CYLINDER HEAD COVER(S) - LEFT - DESCRIPTION	9-94	DETECTION PUMP - INSTALLATION, LEAK	25-21
COWL TRIM - INSTALLATION	23-85	CYLINDER HEAD COVER(S) - REMOVAL	9-23	DETECTION PUMP - OPERATION, LEAK	25-17
COWL TRIM - REMOVAL	23-85	CYLINDER HEAD COVER(S) - RIGHT - CLEANING	9-105	DETECTION PUMP - REMOVAL, LEAK	25-21
COWL WEATHERSTRIP - INSTALLATION	23-121	CYLINDER HEAD COVER(S) - RIGHT - DESCRIPTION	9-105	DETECTION TEST - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, ENABLING CONDITIONS TO RUN EVAP LEAK	25-19
COWL WEATHERSTRIP - REMOVAL	23-121	CYLINDER HEAD GASKET - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	9-86,9-98	DEVICES - STANDARD PROCEDURE, ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) SENSITIVE	8W-01-8
C-PILLAR TRIM - INSTALLATION	23-85	CYLINDER LOCK SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, DOOR	8N-7	DIAGNOSTIC TROUBLE CODES - DESCRIPTION	25-2
C-PILLAR TRIM - REMOVAL	23-85	CYLINDER LOCK SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, DOOR	8Q-7	DIAGNOSTICS (OBD) - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, ON-BOARD	7-4
CRANKSHAFT - DESCRIPTION	9-112,9-36	CYLINDER LOCK SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, DOOR	8Q-8	DIAGRAMS - DESCRIPTION, HOW TO USE WIRING	8W-01-1
CRANKSHAFT - INSPECTION	9-113	CYLINDER LOCK SWITCH - INSTALLATION, DOOR	8Q-8	DIAGRAMS - HYDRAULIC SCHEMATICS, SCHEMATICS	21-203,21-44
CRANKSHAFT - INSTALLATION	9-113	CYLINDER LOCK SWITCH - OPERATION, DOOR	8N-7	DIESEL - INSTALLATION, 2.7L	19-37,19-47, 19-48
CRANKSHAFT - REMOVAL	9-112	CYLINDER LOCK SWITCH - OPERATION, DOOR	8Q-8	DIESEL - INSTALLATION, 2.7L TURBO	24-62, 24-65,24-67,24-69
CRANKSHAFT END PLAY - STANDARD PROCEDURE, MEASURING	9-112	CYLINDER LOCK SWITCH - REMOVAL, DOOR	8Q-8	DIESEL - REMOVAL, 2.7L	19-36,19-46,19-47
CRANKSHAFT MAIN BEARING - FITTING - STANDARD PROCEDURE	9-115	CYLINDER/POWER BOOSTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, MASTER	5-22	DIESEL - REMOVAL, 2.7L TURBO	24-60,24-64, 24-67,24-68
CRANKSHAFT MAIN BEARINGS - INSPECTION	9-116,9-39	DAMAGED OR WORN THREADS - STANDARD PROCEDURE, REPAIR	9-10,9-71	DIESEL ENGINES - DESCRIPTION, ENGINE OIL	0-6
CRANKSHAFT MAIN BEARINGS - INSTALLATION	9-40	DAMPER - DESCRIPTION	19-30	DIFFERENTIAL - ASSEMBLY	3-106,3-41,3-73
CRANKSHAFT MAIN BEARINGS - REMOVAL	9-39	DAMPER - INSTALLATION	19-30	DIFFERENTIAL - DESCRIPTION	3-104,3-39,3-71
CRANKSHAFT MAIN BEARINGS - STANDARD PROCEDURE, FITTING	9-36	DAMPER - INSTALLATION, VIBRATION	9-124,9-50	DIFFERENTIAL - DISASSEMBLY	3-106,3-40,3-73
CRANKSHAFT OIL SEAL - FRONT - INSTALLATION	9-117,9-42	DAMPER - OPERATION	19-30	DIFFERENTIAL - INSTALLATION	3-106,3-42,3-73
CRANKSHAFT OIL SEAL - FRONT - REMOVAL	9-116,9-41	DAMPER - REMOVAL	19-30	DIFFERENTIAL - OPERATION	3-104,3-39,3-71
CRANKSHAFT OIL SEAL - REAR - INSTALLATION	9-118,9-42	DAMPER - REMOVAL, VIBRATION	9-124,9-50	DIFFERENTIAL - REMOVAL	3-104,3-39,3-71
CRANKSHAFT OIL SEAL - REAR - REMOVAL	9-118,9-42	DATA LINK CONNECTOR - DESCRIPTION	8E-7	DIFFERENTIAL - TRAC-LOK - ASSEMBLY	3-111
CRUISE INDICATOR - DESCRIPTION	8J-19	DATA LINK CONNECTOR - OPERATION	8E-7	DIFFERENTIAL - TRAC-LOK - DESCRIPTION	3-108
CRUISE INDICATOR - OPERATION	8J-19	DAY / NIGHT MIRROR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, AUTOMATIC	8N-13	DIFFERENTIAL - TRAC-LOK - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	3-108
CURTAIN AIRBAG - DESCRIPTION, SIDE	80-45	DAYTIME RUNNING LAMP MODULE - DESCRIPTION	8L-12	DIFFERENTIAL - TRAC-LOK - DISASSEMBLY	3-109
CURTAIN AIRBAG - INSTALLATION, SIDE	80-47	DAYTIME RUNNING LAMP MODULE - INSTALLATION	8L-12	DIFFERENTIAL - TRAC-LOK - OPERATION	3-108
CURTAIN AIRBAG - OPERATION, SIDE	80-45	DAYTIME RUNNING LAMP MODULE - OPERATION	8L-12	DIFFERENTIAL - VARI-LOK - DESCRIPTION	3-113,3-43
CURTAIN AIRBAG - REMOVAL, SIDE	80-46	DAYTIME RUNNING LAMP MODULE - REMOVAL	8L-12	DIFFERENTIAL - VARI-LOK - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	3-113,3-43
CUSHION - INSTALLATION, REAR SEAT	23-106	DEAERATION - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, COOLING SYSTEM	7-13	DIFFERENTIAL - VARI-LOK - OPERATION	3-113,3-43
CUSHION - REMOVAL, REAR SEAT	23-106	DEFINITION - DESCRIPTION, TRIP	25-4	DIFFERENTIAL CASE BEARINGS - INSTALLATION	3-114,3-44,3-76
CUSHION COVER - INSTALLATION, REAR SEAT	23-106	DEFLECTOR - INSTALLATION, WIND	23-117	DIFFERENTIAL CASE BEARINGS - REMOVAL	3-113,3-44,3-75
CUSHION COVER - REMOVAL, REAR SEAT	23-106	DEFLECTOR - REMOVAL, WIND	23-117	DIMENSIONS - SPECIFICATIONS, BODY OPENING	23-130
CUSHION RELEASE LATCH - INSTALLATION, REAR SEAT	23-106	DEFOGGER - DESCRIPTION, REAR WINDOW	8G-1	DIMENSIONS, SPECIFICATIONS - FRAME	13-5
CUSHION RELEASE LATCH - REMOVAL, REAR SEAT	23-106	DEFOGGER - OPERATION, REAR WINDOW	8G-2	DIODE - INSTALLATION	8W-01-14
CUSHION/COVER - INSTALLATION, FRONT SEAT	23-101	DEFOGGER GRID - DESCRIPTION, REAR WINDOW	8G-3	DIODE - REMOVAL	8W-01-14
CUSHION/COVER - REMOVAL, FRONT SEAT	23-101	DEFOGGER GRID - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, REAR WINDOW	8G-3	DISC BRAKE CALIPER - ASSEMBLY, FRONT	5-18
C/V FRONT - INSTALLATION, PROPELLER SHAFT	3-7	DEFOGGER GRID - OPERATION, REAR WINDOW	8G-3	DISC BRAKE CALIPER - ASSEMBLY, REAR	5-19
C/V FRONT - REMOVAL, PROPELLER SHAFT	3-6	DEFOGGER RELAY - DESCRIPTION, REAR WINDOW	8G-5	DISC BRAKE CALIPER - CLEANING	5-17
C/V JOINT - INSTALLATION, AXLE	3-35	DEFOGGER RELAY - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, REAR WINDOW	8G-5	DISC BRAKE CALIPER - DISASSEMBLY, FRONT	5-16
C/V JOINT - REMOVAL, AXLE	3-34	DEFOGGER RELAY - INSTALLATION, REAR WINDOW	8G-6	DISC BRAKE CALIPER - DISASSEMBLY, REAR	5-16
CYLINDER - DESCRIPTION, MASTER	5-22	DEFOGGER RELAY - OPERATION, REAR WINDOW	8G-5	DISC BRAKE CALIPER - INSPECTION	5-18
CYLINDER - INSTALLATION, KEY	19-15	DEFOGGER RELAY - REMOVAL, REAR WINDOW	8G-6	DISC BRAKE CALIPER - INSTALLATION, FRONT	5-20
CYLINDER - INSTALLATION, LOCK	23-30	DEFOGGER SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, REAR WINDOW	8G-6	DISC BRAKE CALIPER - INSTALLATION, REAR	5-20
CYLINDER - INSTALLATION, MASTER	5-23	DEFOGGER SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, REAR WINDOW	8G-7	DISC BRAKE CALIPER - REMOVAL, FRONT	5-14
CYLINDER - OPERATION, MASTER	5-22	DEFOGGER SWITCH - OPERATION, REAR WINDOW	8G-7	DISC BRAKE CALIPER - REMOVAL, REAR	5-14
CYLINDER - REMOVAL, KEY	19-14			DISC BRAKE CALIPER ADAPTER - INSTALLATION	5-32
CYLINDER - REMOVAL, LOCK	23-30				
CYLINDER - REMOVAL, MASTER	5-23				
CYLINDER BLEEDING PROCEDURE - STANDARD PROCEDURE, MASTER	5-23				
CYLINDER BORE HONING - STANDARD PROCEDURE	9-109,9-11				
CYLINDER COMBUSTION PRESSURE LEAKAGE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	9-70,9-8				
CYLINDER COMPRESSION PRESSURE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	9-70,9-8				
CYLINDER HEAD - CLEANING	9-21				
CYLINDER HEAD - DESCRIPTION	9-20,9-86,9-98				
CYLINDER HEAD - INSPECTION	9-21				



Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page
DISC BRAKE CALIPER ADAPTER - REMOVAL	5-32	DOOR ELECTRIC ACTUATOR - INSTALLATION, HEAT/DEFROST - PANEL/DEFROST	24-33	DRAINBACK VALVE - OPERATION, TORQUE CONVERTER	21-136
DISC BRAKE PADS - DESCRIPTION, FRONT	5-10	DOOR ELECTRIC ACTUATOR - INSTALLATION, RECIRCULATION	24-35	DRAINBACK VALVE - STANDARD PROCEDURE, TORQUE CONVERTER	21-136
DISC BRAKE PADS - DESCRIPTION, REAR	5-10	DOOR ELECTRIC ACTUATOR - REMOVAL, HEAT/DEFROST - PANEL/DEFROST	24-32	DRAINING COOLING SYSTEM - 4.0L ENGINE - STANDARD PROCEDURE	7-14
DISC BRAKE PADS - INSTALLATION, REAR	5-14	DOOR ELECTRIC ACTUATOR - REMOVAL, RECIRCULATION	24-35	DRAINING COOLING SYSTEM - 4.7L ENGINE - STANDARD PROCEDURE	7-13
DISC BRAKE PADS - OPERATION, FRONT	5-11	DOOR GLASS - INSTALLATION	23-108,23-26,23-35	DRAIN/REFILL - STANDARD PROCEDURE, FLUID	21-300,21-334,21-361
DISC BRAKE PADS - OPERATION, REAR	5-11	DOOR GLASS - REMOVAL	23-108,23-26,23-35	DRAW TEST - STANDARD PROCEDURE, IGNITION-OFF	8F-13
DISC BRAKE PADS - REMOVAL, REAR	5-12	DOOR GLASS RUN WEATHERSTRIP - INSTALLATION, FRONT	23-121	DRIER - DESCRIPTION, RECEIVER	24-73
DISC BRAKE ROTOR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, FRONT	5-29	DOOR GLASS RUN WEATHERSTRIP - REMOVAL, FRONT	23-121	DRIER - INSTALLATION, RECEIVER	24-75
DISC BRAKE ROTOR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, REAR	5-30	DOOR INNER BELT WEATHERSTRIP - INSTALLATION, FRONT	23-121	DRIER - OPERATION, RECEIVER	24-73
DISC BRAKE ROTOR - INSTALLATION, FRONT	5-31	DOOR INNER BELT WEATHERSTRIP - REMOVAL, FRONT	23-121	DRIER - REMOVAL, RECEIVER	24-73
DISC BRAKE ROTOR - INSTALLATION, REAR	5-32	DOOR MODULE - DESCRIPTION	8E-7	DRIVE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, VISCOUS FAN	7-39
DISC BRAKE ROTOR - REMOVAL, FRONT	5-31	DOOR MODULE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8E-10	DRIVE BELT - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, SERPENTINE	7-18
DISC BRAKE ROTOR - REMOVAL, REAR	5-31	DOOR MODULE - INSTALLATION	8E-10	DRIVE LEARN - STANDARD PROCEDURE	8E-23
DISC BRAKE ROTOR MACHINING - STANDARD PROCEDURE	5-31	DOOR MODULE - OPERATION	8E-9	DRIVE MOTOR - INSTALLATION	23-116
DISC BRAKE SHOES - INSTALLATION, FRONT	5-14	DOOR MODULE - REMOVAL	8E-10	DRIVE MOTOR - REMOVAL	23-116
DISC BRAKE SHOES - REMOVAL, FRONT	5-12	DOOR SEAL - INSTALLATION, B-PILLAR	23-120	DRIVE (RHD) VEHICLES - STEERING LINKAGE, RIGHT HAND	19-27
DISCHARGE (ESD) SENSITIVE DEVICES - STANDARD PROCEDURE, ELECTROSTATIC	8W-01-8	DOOR SEAL - REMOVAL, B-PILLAR	23-120	DRIVE SYSTEM - DESCRIPTION, TIMING	9-143
DISPLAY TEST MODE - DESCRIPTION, STATE	25-1	DOOR SECONDARY WEATHERSTRIP - INSTALLATION, FRONT	23-122	DRIVE SYSTEM - OPERATION, TIMING	9-143
DISTRIBUTION - DESCRIPTION, POWER	8W-97-1	DOOR SECONDARY WEATHERSTRIP - REMOVAL, FRONT	23-122	DRIVE VISCOUS CLUTCH - 4.0L - DESCRIPTION, FAN	7-38
DISTRIBUTION - OPERATION, POWER	8W-97-1	DOOR SILL SCUFF PLATE - INSTALLATION	23-87	DRIVE VISCOUS CLUTCH - 4.0L - OPERATION, FAN	7-39
DISTRIBUTION CENTER - DESCRIPTION, POWER	8W-97-7	DOOR SILL SCUFF PLATE - REMOVAL	23-87	DRIVER - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT PANEL TRIM BEZEL	23-70
DISTRIBUTION CENTER - OPERATION, POWER	8W-97-7	DOOR SILL TRIM - INSTALLATION	23-87	DRIVER - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT PANEL TRIM BEZEL	23-70
DISTRIBUTION CENTER - REMOVAL, POWER	8W-97-7	DOOR SILL TRIM - REMOVAL	23-87	DRIVER AIRBAG - ASSEMBLY	80-24
DISTRIBUTION CENTER ASSEMBLY, ASSEMBLY - POWER	8W-97-10	DOOR SPEAKER - INSTALLATION, FRONT	8A-25	DRIVER AIRBAG - DESCRIPTION	80-20
DISTRIBUTION CENTER DISASSEMBLY, DISASSEMBLY - POWER	8W-97-8	DOOR SPEAKER - INSTALLATION, REAR	8A-24	DRIVER AIRBAG - DISASSEMBLY	80-22
DISTRIBUTION DUCTS - INSTALLATION, FLOOR	24-41	DOOR SPEAKER, REMOVAL - FRONT	8A-24	DRIVER AIRBAG - INSTALLATION	80-25
DISTRIBUTION DUCTS - REMOVAL, FLOOR	24-41	DOOR SPEAKER, REMOVAL - REAR	8A-23	DRIVER AIRBAG - OPERATION	80-21
DISTRIBUTION SYSTEMS, SPECIAL TOOLS - POWER	8W-97-2	DOOR SPRING - INSTALLATION, CIGAR LIGHTER OUTLET	8W-97-3	DRIVER AIRBAG - REMOVAL	80-21
DOOR - INSTALLATION	23-25,23-34	DOOR SPRING - REMOVAL, CIGAR LIGHTER OUTLET	8W-97-3	DRIVER HEATED SEAT SWITCH - DESCRIPTION	8G-11
DOOR - INSTALLATION, BLEND	24-47	DOOR VACUUM ACTUATOR - INSTALLATION, HEAT/DEFROST	24-34	DRIVER HEATED SEAT SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8G-11
DOOR - INSTALLATION, FUEL FILL	23-44	DOOR VACUUM ACTUATOR - INSTALLATION, PANEL/DEFROST	24-34	DRIVER HEATED SEAT SWITCH - INSTALLATION	8G-13
DOOR - INSTALLATION, HEAT/DEFROST	24-50	DOOR VACUUM ACTUATOR - INSTALLATION, RECIRCULATION	24-35	DRIVER HEATED SEAT SWITCH - OPERATION	8G-11
DOOR - INSTALLATION, PANEL OUTLET	24-50	DOOR VACUUM ACTUATOR - REMOVAL, HEAT/DEFROST	24-33	DRIVER HEATED SEAT SWITCH - REMOVAL	8G-13
DOOR - INSTALLATION, PANEL/DEFROST	24-50	DOOR VACUUM ACTUATOR - REMOVAL, PANEL/DEFROST	24-33	DRIVER SEAT SWITCH - DESCRIPTION	8N-21
DOOR - INSTALLATION, RECIRCULATION	24-51	DOOR VACUUM ACTUATOR - REMOVAL, RECIRCULATION	24-34	DRIVER SEAT SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8N-22
DOOR - REMOVAL	23-25,23-34	DOOR WEATHERSTRIP - INSTALLATION, FRONT	23-123	DRIVER SEAT SWITCH - INSTALLATION	8N-23
DOOR - REMOVAL, BLEND	24-47	DOOR WEATHERSTRIP - INSTALLATION, REAR	23-125	DRIVER SEAT SWITCH - OPERATION	8N-21
DOOR - REMOVAL, FUEL FILL	23-44	DOOR WEATHERSTRIP - REMOVAL, FRONT	23-123	DRIVER SEAT SWITCH - REMOVAL	8N-23
DOOR - REMOVAL, HEAT/DEFROST	24-48	DOOR WEATHERSTRIP - REMOVAL, REAR	23-125	DROP - STANDARD PROCEDURE, TESTING FOR A VOLTAGE	8W-01-10
DOOR - REMOVAL, PANEL OUTLET	24-48	DOUBLE CARDAN UNIVERSAL JOINTS - ASSEMBLY	3-12	DRUM IN HAT BRAKE - CLEANING, REAR	5-38
DOOR - REMOVAL, PANEL/DEFROST	24-50	DOUBLE CARDAN UNIVERSAL JOINTS - DISASSEMBLY	3-11	DRUM IN HAT BRAKE - INSPECTION, REAR	5-39
DOOR - REMOVAL, RECIRCULATION	24-51	DOUBLE INVERTED FLARING - STANDARD PROCEDURE	5-9	DRUM IN HAT PARK BRAKE (ROTOR REMOVED) - ADJUSTMENT, REAR	5-39
DOOR ACTUATOR - DESCRIPTION, BLEND	24-30	D-PILLAR - INSTALLATION, EXHAUSTER - RIGHT	23-42	DUCT - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT PANEL STRUCTURAL	23-57
DOOR ACTUATOR - DESCRIPTION, MODE	24-32	D-PILLAR - REMOVAL, EXHAUSTER - RIGHT	23-42	DUCT - INSTALLATION, REAR FLOOR HEAT	24-42
DOOR ACTUATOR - DESCRIPTION, RECIRCULATION	24-34	D-PILLAR APPLIQUE - INSTALLATION	23-42	DUCT - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT PANEL STRUCTURAL	23-57
DOOR AJAR SWITCH - DESCRIPTION	8L-39	D-PILLAR APPLIQUE - REMOVAL	23-42	DUCT - REMOVAL, REAR FLOOR HEAT	24-42
DOOR AJAR SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8L-40	D-PILLAR TRIM - INSTALLATION	23-88	DUCTS - INSTALLATION, DEFROSTER	24-41
DOOR AJAR SWITCH - OPERATION	8L-40	D-PILLAR TRIM - REMOVAL	23-88	DUCTS - INSTALLATION, FLOOR DISTRIBUTION	24-41
DOOR CYLINDER LOCK SWITCH - DESCRIPTION	8N-7	D-RAG LINK - DESCRIPTION	19-30	DUCTS - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT PANEL	24-42
DOOR CYLINDER LOCK SWITCH - DESCRIPTION	8Q-7	D-RAG LINK - INSTALLATION	19-30	DUCTS - REMOVAL, DEFROSTER	24-40
DOOR CYLINDER LOCK SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8Q-8	D-RAG LINK - OPERATION	19-30	DUCTS - REMOVAL, FLOOR DISTRIBUTION	24-41
DOOR CYLINDER LOCK SWITCH - INSTALLATION	8Q-8	D-RAG LINK - REMOVAL	19-30	DUCTS - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT PANEL	24-41
DOOR CYLINDER LOCK SWITCH - OPERATION	8N-7	DRAIN TUBE - INSTALLATION	23-115	EFFECTS OF INCORRECT FLUID LEVEL - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	21-232,21-72
DOOR CYLINDER LOCK SWITCH - OPERATION	8Q-8	DRAIN TUBE - REMOVAL	23-115	ELECTRIC ACTUATOR - INSTALLATION, HEAT/DEFROST - PANEL/DEFROST	24-33
DOOR CYLINDER LOCK SWITCH - REMOVAL	8Q-8	DRAINBACK VALVE - DESCRIPTION, TORQUE CONVERTER	21-136		

Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page
ELECTRIC ACTUATOR - INSTALLATION, RECIRCULATION DOOR	24-35	ENGINE - INSTALLATION, 4.7L	7-18,7-21,7-33,7-35,7-37	ENTRY SYSTEM - OPERATION, REMOTE KEYLESS	8N-5
ELECTRIC ACTUATOR - REMOVAL, HEAT/DEFROST - PANEL/DEFROST DOOR	24-32	ENGINE - INSTALLATION, 4.7L	19-36	ENTRY TRANSMITTER - DESCRIPTION, REMOTE KEYLESS	8N-9
ELECTRIC ACTUATOR - REMOVAL, RECIRCULATION DOOR	24-35	ENGINE - INSTALLATION, GAS	8F-23	ENTRY TRANSMITTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, REMOTE KEYLESS	8N-9
ELECTRIC BRAKE - DESCRIPTION	5-44	ENGINE - REMOVAL, 4.0L	7-17,7-20,7-32,7-34,7-36	ENTRY TRANSMITTER - OPERATION, REMOTE KEYLESS	8N-9
ELECTRIC BRAKE - OPERATION	5-44	ENGINE - REMOVAL, 4.0L	19-35	EQUIPMENT - STANDARD PROCEDURE, REFRIGERANT SYSTEM SERVICE	24-55
ELECTRIC COOLING FAN - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	7-45	ENGINE - REMOVAL, 4.7L	7-17,7-20,7-32,7-34,7-37	ERASING TRANSMITTER CODES - STANDARD PROCEDURE	8M-12
ELECTRICAL CONTROLS - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, OVERDRIVE	21-89	ENGINE - REMOVAL, GAS	8F-22	EVAQUATE - STANDARD PROCEDURE, REFRIGERANT SYSTEM	24-56
ELECTROLYTE LEVEL - STANDARD PROCEDURE, CHECKING BATTERY	8F-14	ENGINE - SPECIFICATIONS, 4.7L H.O	9-78	EVAP LEAK DETECTION TEST - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, ENABLING CONDITIONS TO RUN	25-19
ELECTRONIC GOVERNOR - DESCRIPTION	21-67	ENGINE - STANDARD PROCEDURE, DRAINING COOLING SYSTEM - 4.0L	7-14	EVAPORATION CONTROL SYSTEM - DESCRIPTION	25-11
ELECTRONIC GOVERNOR - INSTALLATION	21-70	ENGINE - STANDARD PROCEDURE, DRAINING COOLING SYSTEM - 4.7L	7-13	EVAPORATION SYSTEM - TORQUE	25-14
ELECTRONIC GOVERNOR - OPERATION	21-67	ENGINE - STANDARD PROCEDURE, REFILLING COOLING SYSTEM - 4.0L	7-14	EVAPORATOR - DESCRIPTION, A/C	24-70
ELECTRONIC GOVERNOR - REMOVAL	21-69	ENGINE - STANDARD PROCEDURE, REFILLING COOLING SYSTEM 4.7L	7-13	EVAPORATOR - INSTALLATION, A/C	24-70
ELECTRONIC VEHICLE INFO CENTER - DESCRIPTION	8M-7	ENGINE - TORQUE, 4.0L	9-18	EVAPORATOR - OPERATION, A/C	24-70
ELECTRONIC VEHICLE INFO CENTER - INSTALLATION	8M-11	ENGINE, 4.0L	9-14	EVAPORATOR - REMOVAL, A/C	24-70
ELECTRONIC VEHICLE INFO CENTER - OPERATION	8M-9	ENGINE BLOCK - CLEANING	9-109,9-30	EVAPORATOR TEMPERATURE SENSOR - DESCRIPTION	24-36
ELECTRONIC VEHICLE INFO CENTER - REMOVAL	8M-11	ENGINE BLOCK - DESCRIPTION	9-109	EVAPORATOR TEMPERATURE SENSOR - INSTALLATION	24-37
ELECTRONIC VEHICLE INFORMATION CENTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8M-10	ENGINE BLOCK - INSPECTION	9-110,9-30	EVAPORATOR TEMPERATURE SENSOR - OPERATION	24-36
ELECTRONIC VEHICLE INFORMATION CENTER PROGRAMMING - STANDARD PROCEDURE	8M-2	ENGINE BLOCK HEATER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	7-32	EVAPORATOR TEMPERATURE SENSOR - REMOVAL	24-36
ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) SENSITIVE DEVICES - STANDARD PROCEDURE	8W-01-8	ENGINE BLOCK HEATER - OPERATION	7-32	EVAP/PURGE SOLENOID - DESCRIPTION	25-15
ELEMENT - DESCRIPTION, HEATED SEAT	8G-13	ENGINE COOLANT - DESCRIPTION	7-24	EVAP/PURGE SOLENOID - INSTALLATION	25-16
ELEMENT - INSTALLATION, HEATED SEAT	8G-14	ENGINE COOLANT - DESCRIPTION	0-2	EVAP/PURGE SOLENOID - OPERATION	25-15
ELEMENT - OPERATION, HEATED SEAT	8G-13	ENGINE COOLANT TEMP SENSOR - DESCRIPTION	7-34	EVAP/PURGE SOLENOID - REMOVAL	25-15
ELEMENT - REMOVAL, HEATED SEAT	8G-14	ENGINE COOLANT TEMP SENSOR - OPERATION	7-34	EXCEPT NORTH AMERICA - INSTALLATION	80-34
ELEMENTS - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, HEATED SEAT	8G-14	ENGINE CORE AND OIL GALLERY PLUGS - STANDARD PROCEDURE	9-11,9-72	EXCEPT NORTH AMERICA - REMOVAL	80-33
EMERGENCY TOW HOOKS - DESCRIPTION	0-15	ENGINE DIAGNOSIS - INTRODUCTION - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	9-3,9-65	EXHAUST MANIFOLD - DESCRIPTION	9-59
EMISSION CONTROL INFORMATION (VECI) - DESCRIPTION, VEHICLE	Intro-3	ENGINE DIAGNOSIS - LUBRICATION - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	9-69	EXHAUST MANIFOLD - INSTALLATION	9-59
EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM - DESCRIPTION	25-1	ENGINE DIAGNOSIS - MECHANICAL - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	9-6,9-68	EXHAUST MANIFOLD - LEFT - CLEANING	9-139
ENABLING CONDITIONS TO RUN EVAP LEAK DETECTION TEST - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	25-19	ENGINE DIAGNOSIS - PERFORMANCE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	9-4,9-66	EXHAUST MANIFOLD - LEFT - DESCRIPTION	9-139
END - DESCRIPTION, TIE ROD	19-31	ENGINE FIRING ORDER, 4.0L 6-CYLINDER ENGINE	8I-2	EXHAUST MANIFOLD - LEFT - INSPECTION	9-139
END - INSTALLATION, TIE ROD	19-31	ENGINE FIRING ORDER, 4.7L V-8 ENGINE	8I-2	EXHAUST MANIFOLD - LEFT - INSTALLATION	9-140
END - OPERATION, TIE ROD	19-31	ENGINE GASKET SURFACE PREPARATION - STANDARD PROCEDURE	9-72	EXHAUST MANIFOLD - LEFT - REMOVAL	9-139
END - REMOVAL, TIE ROD	19-31	ENGINE OIL - DESCRIPTION	0-4	EXHAUST MANIFOLD - REMOVAL	9-59
END CAP - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT PANEL	23-56	ENGINE OIL - DIESEL ENGINES - DESCRIPTION	0-6	EXHAUST MANIFOLD - RIGHT - CLEANING	9-141
END CAP - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT PANEL	23-56	ENGINE OIL - STANDARD PROCEDURE	9-131	EXHAUST MANIFOLD - RIGHT - DESCRIPTION	9-141
END PLAY - STANDARD PROCEDURE, MEASURING CRANKSHAFT	9-112	ENGINE OIL, DESCRIPTION	0-3	EXHAUST MANIFOLD - RIGHT - INSPECTION	9-141
ENGINE - 4.0L - DESCRIPTION	9-3	ENGINE OIL LEAK - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	9-130,9-53	EXHAUST MANIFOLD - RIGHT - INSTALLATION	9-141
ENGINE - DESCRIPTION, 4.0L	7-31,7-35	ENGINE OIL PRESSURE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	9-129,9-53	EXHAUST MANIFOLD - RIGHT - REMOVAL	9-141
ENGINE - DESCRIPTION, 4.7L	7-35	ENGINE OIL PRESSURE SENSOR - DESCRIPTION	9-57	EXHAUST PIPE - 4.0L - INSPECTION	11-8
ENGINE - DESCRIPTION, 4.7L	9-64	ENGINE OIL PRESSURE SENSOR - OPERATION	9-57	EXHAUST PIPE - 4.0L - INSTALLATION	11-8
ENGINE - DESCRIPTION, CATALYTIC CONVERTER - 4.0L	11-4	ENGINE OIL SERVICE - STANDARD PROCEDURE	9-54	EXHAUST PIPE - 4.0L - REMOVAL	11-8
ENGINE - DESCRIPTION, COOLING SYSTEM 4.0L	7-2	ENGINE, SPECIAL TOOLS - 4.7L	9-82	EXHAUST PIPE - 4.7L - INSPECTION	11-10
ENGINE - DESCRIPTION, COOLING SYSTEM 4.7L	7-1	ENGINE, SPECIFICATIONS - 4.7L	9-76	EXHAUST PIPE - 4.7L - INSTALLATION	11-10
ENGINE - DESCRIPTION, COOLING SYSTEM ROUTING - 4.7L	7-1	ENGINE TEMPERATURE GAUGE - DESCRIPTION	8J-20	EXHAUST PIPE - 4.7L - REMOVAL	11-10
ENGINE - DESCRIPTION, COOLING SYSTEM ROUTING 4.0L	7-2	ENGINE TEMPERATURE GAUGE - OPERATION	8J-20	EXHAUST SYSTEM - DESCRIPTION	11-1
ENGINE - ENGINE FIRING ORDER, 4.0L 6-CYLINDER	8I-2	ENGINE TIMING - VERIFICATION - STANDARD PROCEDURE	9-144	EXHAUST SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	11-3
ENGINE - ENGINE FIRING ORDER, 4.7L V-8	8I-2	ENGINE TO BODY GROUND STRAP - INSTALLATION	8A-18	EXHAUSTER - LEFT QUARTER PANEL - INSTALLATION	23-42
ENGINE - IGNITION COIL RESISTANCE, 4.0L	8I-2	ENGINES - DESCRIPTION, ENGINE OIL - DIESEL	0-6	EXHAUSTER - LEFT QUARTER PANEL - REMOVAL	23-42
ENGINE - IGNITION COIL RESISTANCE, 4.7L V-8	8I-2	ENGINE-TO-BODY GROUND STRAP - REMOVAL	8A-18	EXHAUSTER - RIGHT D-PILLAR - INSTALLATION	23-42
ENGINE - INSTALLATION, 4.0L	7-18,7-21,7-34,7-35,7-37	ENTRY MODULE - DESCRIPTION, REMOTE KEYLESS	8N-9	EXHAUSTER - RIGHT D-PILLAR - REMOVAL	23-42
ENGINE - INSTALLATION, 4.0L	19-36	ENTRY MODULE - OPERATION, REMOTE KEYLESS	8N-9	EXHAUSTER - TAIL LAMP - INSTALLATION	23-42
		ENTRY SYSTEM - DESCRIPTION, REMOTE KEYLESS	8N-2	EXHAUSTER - TAIL LAMP - REMOVAL	23-42
		ENTRY SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, REMOTE KEYLESS	8N-6	EXHAUST-TO-BODY GROUND STRAP - INSTALLATION	8A-19
				EXHAUST-TO-BODY GROUND STRAP - REMOVAL	8A-18
				EXPANSION VALVE - DESCRIPTION, A/C	24-66
				EXPANSION VALVE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, A/C	24-66
				EXPANSION VALVE - INSTALLATION, A/C	24-67

Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page
EXPANSION VALVE - OPERATION, A/C	24-66	FASTENER USAGE - DESCRIPTION	Intro.-6	FLIP-UP GLASS POWER RELEASE	
EXPANSION VALVE - REMOVAL, A/C	24-66	FDR OUTER BELT WEATHERSTRIP -		SYSTEM - OPERATION, LIFTGATE	8N-5
EXPORT - DESCRIPTION, ANTENNA		INSTALLATION	23-122	FLIP-UP GLASS SWITCH -	
MODULE	8A-10	FDR OUTER BELT WEATHERSTRIP -		INSTALLATION	23-17
EXPORT - DESCRIPTION, POWER		REMOVAL	23-122	FLIP-UP GLASS SWITCH - REMOVAL	23-17
FOLD-AWAY MIRROR	8N-14	FENDER - INSTALLATION, FRONT	23-44	FLIP-UP GLASS WEATHERSTRIP -	
EXPORT - DESCRIPTION, QUARTER		FENDER - REMOVAL, FRONT	23-43	INSTALLATION	23-122
GLASS INTEGRAL ANTENNA	8A-15	FILL - STANDARD PROCEDURE,		FLIP-UP GLASS WEATHERSTRIP -	
EXPORT - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING,		TRANSMISSION	21-235,21-74	REMOVAL	23-122
ANTENNA MODULE	8A-10	FILL DOOR - INSTALLATION, FUEL	23-44	FLOOR CONSOLE - INSTALLATION	23-88
EXPORT - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING,		FILL DOOR - REMOVAL, FUEL	23-44	FLOOR CONSOLE - REMOVAL	23-88
POWER FOLD-AWAY MIRROR	8N-14	FILL/CHECK LOCATIONS - INSPECTION,		FLOOR DISTRIBUTION DUCTS -	
EXPORT - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING,		FLUID	0-7	INSTALLATION	24-41
QUARTER GLASS INTEGRAL ANTENNA	8A-15	FILLER - INSTALLATION, COVER - FUEL	23-95	FLOOR DISTRIBUTION DUCTS -	
EXPORT - INSTALLATION	23-45	FILLER - REMOVAL, COVER - FUEL	23-95	REMOVAL	24-41
EXPORT - INSTALLATION	13-3	FILLER CAP - DESCRIPTION, FUEL	25-16	FLOOR HEAT DUCT - INSTALLATION,	
EXPORT - INSTALLATION, ANTENNA		FILLER CAP - OPERATION, FUEL	25-16	REAR	24-42
MODULE	8A-11	FILLER CAP - REMOVAL, FUEL	25-16	FLOOR HEAT DUCT - REMOVAL, REAR	24-42
EXPORT - OPERATION, ANTENNA		FILTER - INSTALLATION, INLET	14-20	FLOOR TUNNEL BRACKET -	
MODULE	8A-10	FILTER - INSTALLATION, OIL	9-133,9-55	INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT PANEL	
EXPORT - OPERATION, POWER		FILTER - REMOVAL, INLET	14-20	CENTER	23-65
FOLD-AWAY MIRROR	8N-14	FILTER - REMOVAL, OIL	9-133,9-54	FLOOR TUNNEL BRACKET - REMOVAL,	
EXPORT - OPERATION, QUARTER GLASS		FILTER REPLACEMENT - STANDARD		INSTRUMENT PANEL CENTER	23-64
INTEGRAL ANTENNA	8A-15	PROCEDURE, FLUID	21-233,21-74	FLOW AND PRESSURE - DIAGNOSIS	
EXPORT - REMOVAL	23-44	FILTER/PRESSURE REGULATOR -		AND TESTING, STEERING	19-4
EXPORT - REMOVAL	13-1	DESCRIPTION, FUEL	14-5	FLUID - DESCRIPTION, AUTOMATIC	
EXPORT - REMOVAL, ANTENNA MODULE	8A-10	FILTER/PRESSURE REGULATOR -		TRANSMISSION	0-5
EXPORT - REMOVAL, POWER		INSTALLATION, FUEL	14-6	FLUID - DESCRIPTION, POWER	
FOLD-AWAY MIRROR	8N-14	FILTER/PRESSURE REGULATOR -		STEERING	0-6
EXPORT BULB APPLICATION,		OPERATION, FUEL	14-5	FLUID - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING,	
SPECIFICATIONS	8L-7	FILTER/PRESSURE REGULATOR -		CAUSES OF BURNT	21-232,21-72
EXTENSION HOUSING BUSHING -		REMOVAL, FUEL	14-5	FLUID - NAG1 - DESCRIPTION,	
INSTALLATION	21-71	FINESSE SANDING/BUFFING &		AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION	0-5
EXTENSION HOUSING BUSHING -		POLISHING - DESCRIPTION	23-97	FLUID - OPERATION, AUTOMATIC	
REMOVAL	21-71	FINISH - DESCRIPTION, BASECOAT/		TRANSMISSION	0-6
EXTENSION HOUSING SEAL -		CLEARCOAT	23-97	FLUID AND FILTER REPLACEMENT -	
INSTALLATION	21-71	FIRING ORDER, 4.0L 6-CYLINDER		STANDARD PROCEDURE	21-233,21-74
EXTENSION HOUSING SEAL - REMOVAL	21-71	ENGINE - ENGINE	8I-2	FLUID CAPACITIES - SPECIFICATIONS	0-6
EXTERIOR HANDLE - INSTALLATION	23-15,	FIRING ORDER, 4.7L V-8 ENGINE -		FLUID CONTAMINATION - DIAGNOSIS	
23-27,23-35		ENGINE	8I-2	AND TESTING	21-233,21-72
EXTERIOR HANDLE - REMOVAL	23-15,23-27,	FITTING - DESCRIPTION, QUICK		FLUID CONTAMINATION - DIAGNOSIS	
23-35		CONNECT	14-21	AND TESTING, BRAKE	5-21
EXTERIOR NAME PLATES -		FITTING - INSTALLATION, FIXED ORIFICE	25-15	FLUID COOLER - DESCRIPTION	19-38
INSTALLATION	23-42	FITTING - REMOVAL, FIXED ORIFICE	25-15	FLUID COOLER - INSTALLATION	19-39
EXTERIOR NAME PLATES - REMOVAL	23-42	FITTING - STANDARD PROCEDURE,		FLUID COOLER - REMOVAL	19-38
FAN - DESCRIPTION, RADIATOR	7-27	CONNECTING ROD BEARING	9-110	FLUID DRAIN/REFILL - STANDARD	
FAN - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING,		FITTING - STANDARD PROCEDURE,		PROCEDURE	21-300,21-334,21-361
ELECTRIC COOLING	7-45	CRANKSHAFT MAIN BEARING	9-115	FLUID FILL/CHECK LOCATIONS -	
FAN - OPERATION, RADIATOR	7-27	FITTING - STANDARD PROCEDURE,		INSPECTION	0-7
FAN CONTROL MODULE - 4.0L -		PISTON	9-119,9-45	FLUID LEAK - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING,	
DESCRIPTION, PWM	7-39	FITTING - STANDARD PROCEDURE,		CONVERTER HOUSING	21-16,21-184
FAN CONTROL MODULE - 4.0L -		PISTON RING	9-122,9-47	FLUID LEVEL - DIAGNOSIS AND	
INSTALLATION, PWM	7-40	FITTING CONNECTING ROD BEARINGS -		TESTING, EFFECTS OF INCORRECT	21-232,21-72
FAN CONTROL MODULE - 4.0L -		STANDARD PROCEDURE	9-34	FLUID LEVEL CHECK - STANDARD	
OPERATION, PWM	7-39	FITTING CRANKSHAFT MAIN BEARINGS		PROCEDURE	21-233,21-72
FAN CONTROL MODULE - 4.0L -		- STANDARD PROCEDURE	9-36	FLUID LEVEL SWITCH - DESCRIPTION,	
REMOVAL, PWM	7-40	FITTINGS - STANDARD PROCEDURE,		WASHER	8R-26
FAN DRIVE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING,		QUICK-CONNECT	14-21	FLUID LEVEL SWITCH - INSTALLATION,	
VISCOUS	7-39	FIXED ORIFICE FITTING - INSTALLATION	25-15	BRAKE	5-8
FAN DRIVE VISCOUS CLUTCH - 4.0L -		FIXED ORIFICE FITTING - REMOVAL	25-15	FLUID LEVEL SWITCH - INSTALLATION,	
DESCRIPTION	7-38	FLARING - STANDARD PROCEDURE,		WASHER	8R-27
FAN DRIVE VISCOUS CLUTCH - 4.0L -		DOUBLE INVERTED	5-9	FLUID LEVEL SWITCH - OPERATION,	
OPERATION	7-39	FLARING - STANDARD PROCEDURE, ISO	5-10	WASHER	8R-26
FAN MODULE (2.7L DIESEL) -		FLASHER - DESCRIPTION, COMBINATION	8L-10	FLUID LEVEL SWITCH - REMOVAL,	
INSTALLATION, PRESSURE HOSE -		FLASHER - INSTALLATION,		BRAKE	5-8
GEAR TO HYDRAULIC	19-45	COMBINATION	8L-12	FLUID LEVEL SWITCH - REMOVAL,	
FAN MODULE (2.7L DIESEL) -		FLASHER - OPERATION, COMBINATION	8L-10	WASHER	8R-27
INSTALLATION, PRESSURE HOSE		FLASHER - REMOVAL, COMBINATION	8L-12	FLUID RESERVOIR - INSTALLATION	5-21
PUMP TO THE HYDRAULIC	19-45	FLEX PLATE - INSTALLATION	9-119	FLUID RESERVOIR - REMOVAL	5-21
FAN MODULE (2.7L DIESEL) -		FLEX PLATE - REMOVAL	9-119	FLUID, SPECIFICATIONS - BRAKE	5-21
INSTALLATION, RETURN HOSE -		FLIP UP GLASS AJAR SWITCH -		FLUSH - SPECIFICATIONS, GAP	23-127
RESERVOIR TO THE HYDRAULIC	19-45	DESCRIPTION	8L-39	FLUSHING - STANDARD PROCEDURE,	
FAN MODULE (2.7L DIESEL) - REMOVAL,		FLIP UP GLASS AJAR SWITCH -		COOLING SYSTEM - REVERSE	7-15
PRESSURE HOSE - GEAR TO THE		OPERATION	8L-40	FOG LAMP - DESCRIPTION, REAR	8L-33
HYDRAULIC	19-44	FLIP-UP GLASS - INSTALLATION	23-16	FOG LAMP - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING,	
FAN MODULE (2.7L DIESEL) - REMOVAL,		FLIP-UP GLASS - REMOVAL	23-16	REAR	8L-33
PRESSURE HOSE - PUMP TO THE		FLIP-UP GLASS LATCH - INSTALLATION	23-17	FOG LAMP - INSTALLATION	8L-13
HYDRAULIC	19-43	FLIP-UP GLASS LATCH - REMOVAL	23-17	FOG LAMP - INSTALLATION, REAR	8L-33
FAN MODULE (2.7L DIESEL) - REMOVAL,		FLIP-UP GLASS LATCH STRIKER -		FOG LAMP - OPERATION, REAR	8L-33
RETURN HOSE - RESERVOIR TO THE		INSTALLATION	23-17	FOG LAMP - REMOVAL	8L-12
HYDRAULIC	19-44	FLIP-UP GLASS LATCH STRIKER -		FOG LAMP - REMOVAL, REAR	8L-33
FAN SOLENOID - INSTALLATION,		REMOVAL	23-17	FOG LAMP ADJUSTMENT,	
RADIATOR	7-53	FLIP-UP GLASS POWER RELEASE		ADJUSTMENTS	8L-13
FAN SOLENOID - REMOVAL, RADIATOR	7-52	SYSTEM - DESCRIPTION, LIFTGATE	8N-4	FOG LAMP INDICATOR - DESCRIPTION,	
FASCIA - INSTALLATION, REAR	13-5	FLIP-UP GLASS POWER RELEASE		FRONT	8J-21
FASCIA - REMOVAL, REAR	13-3	SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING,		FOG LAMP INDICATOR - DESCRIPTION,	
FASTENER IDENTIFICATION -		LIFTGATE	8N-6	REAR	8J-28
DESCRIPTION	Intro.-3				



Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page
FOG LAMP INDICATOR - OPERATION, FRONT	8J-21	FRONT DISC BRAKE ROTOR - REMOVAL	5-31	FRONT SKID PLATE - INSTALLATION	13-8
FOG LAMP INDICATOR - OPERATION, REAR	8J-28	FRONT DISC BRAKE SHOES - INSTALLATION	5-14	FRONT SKID PLATE - REMOVAL	13-8
FOG LAMP SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, REAR	8L-32	FRONT DISC BRAKE SHOES - REMOVAL	5-12	FRONT SUSPENSION, SPECIAL TOOLS	2-8
FOG LAMP SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, REAR	8L-32	FRONT DOOR GLASS RUN WEATHERSTRIP - INSTALLATION	23-121	FRONT TOW HOOK - INSTALLATION	13-8
FOG LAMP SWITCH - REMOVAL, REAR	8L-32	FRONT DOOR GLASS RUN WEATHERSTRIP - REMOVAL	23-121	FRONT TOW HOOK - REMOVAL	13-8
FOG LAMP UNIT - INSTALLATION	8L-13	FRONT DOOR INNER BELT WEATHERSTRIP - INSTALLATION	23-121	FRONT TUBE AXLE - INSTALLATION	3-16
FOG LAMP UNIT - REMOVAL	8L-13	FRONT DOOR INNER BELT WEATHERSTRIP - REMOVAL	23-121	FRONT TUBE AXLE - REMOVAL	3-16
FOLD-AWAY MIRROR - EXPORT - DESCRIPTION, POWER	8N-14	FRONT DOOR SECONDARY WEATHERSTRIP - INSTALLATION	23-122	FRONT WASHER HOSES/TUBES - DESCRIPTION	8R-12
FOLD-AWAY MIRROR - EXPORT - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, POWER	8N-14	FRONT DOOR SECONDARY WEATHERSTRIP - REMOVAL	23-122	FRONT WASHER HOSES/TUBES - OPERATION	8R-12
FOLD-AWAY MIRROR - EXPORT - OPERATION, POWER	8N-14	FRONT DOOR WEATHERSTRIP - REMOVAL	23-123	FRONT WASHER NOZZLE - DESCRIPTION	8R-12
FOLD-AWAY MIRROR - EXPORT - REMOVAL, POWER	8N-14	FRONT DOOR WEATHERSTRIP - REMOVAL	23-123	FRONT WASHER NOZZLE - INSTALLATION	8R-13
FOLDING MECHANISM - INSTALLATION, REAR HEADREST	23-104	FRONT FENDER - INSTALLATION	23-44	FRONT WASHER NOZZLE - OPERATION	8R-12
FOLDING MECHANISM - REMOVAL, REAR HEADREST	23-104	FRONT FENDER - REMOVAL	23-43	FRONT WASHER NOZZLE - REMOVAL	8R-12
FOLDING REAR SEAT BACK LATCH HANDLE - INSTALLATION	23-107	FRONT FOG LAMP INDICATOR - DESCRIPTION	8J-21	FRONT WASHER PUMP/MOTOR - DESCRIPTION	8R-13
FOLDING REAR SEAT BACK LATCH HANDLE - REMOVAL	23-107	FRONT FOG LAMP INDICATOR - OPERATION	8J-21	FRONT WASHER PUMP/MOTOR - INSTALLATION	8R-14
FOLDING REAR SEAT BACK LATCH/HINGE - INSTALLATION	23-107	FRONT HEADREST - INSTALLATION	23-99	FRONT WASHER PUMP/MOTOR - OPERATION	8R-13
FOLDING REAR SEAT BACK LATCH/HINGE - REMOVAL	23-107	FRONT HEADREST - REMOVAL	23-99	FRONT WASHER PUMP/MOTOR - REMOVAL	8R-14
FORM-IN-PLACE GASKETS AND SEALERS - STANDARD PROCEDURE	9-71,9-9	FRONT HEADREST SLEEVE - INSTALLATION	23-99	FRONT WHEEL SPEED SENSOR - DESCRIPTION	5-44
FRAME DIMENSIONS, SPECIFICATIONS	13-5	FRONT HEADREST SLEEVE - REMOVAL	23-99	FRONT WHEEL SPEED SENSOR - INSTALLATION	5-44
FRONT - DESCRIPTION	2-6	FRONT IMPACT SENSOR & BRACKET - INSTALLATION	80-28	FRONT WHEEL SPEED SENSOR - OPERATION	5-44
FRONT - INSTALLATION, CRANKSHAFT OIL SEAL	9-117,9-42	FRONT IMPACT SENSOR & BRACKET - REMOVAL	80-28	FRONT WHEEL SPEED SENSOR - REMOVAL	5-44
FRONT - INSTALLATION, PROPELLER SHAFT - C/V	3-7	FRONT IMPACT SENSOR - DESCRIPTION	80-26	FRONT WIPER & WASHER SYSTEM - CLEANING	8R-9
FRONT - INSTALLATION, PROPELLER SHAFT - U-JOINT	3-7	FRONT IMPACT SENSOR - INSTALLATION	80-27	FRONT WIPER & WASHER SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8R-6
FRONT - REMOVAL, CRANKSHAFT OIL SEAL	9-116,9-41	FRONT IMPACT SENSOR - OPERATION	80-26	FRONT WIPER & WASHER SYSTEM - INSPECTION	8R-9
FRONT - REMOVAL, PROPELLER SHAFT - C/V	3-6	FRONT IMPACT SENSOR - REMOVAL	80-26	FRONT WIPER ARM - DESCRIPTION	8R-14
FRONT - REMOVAL, PROPELLER SHAFT - U-JOINT	3-7	FRONT MOUNT - INSTALLATION	9-126	FRONT WIPER ARM - INSTALLATION	8R-16
FRONT ABSORBER - INSTALLATION	13-1	FRONT MOUNT - REMOVAL	9-126	FRONT WIPER ARM - OPERATION	8R-15
FRONT ABSORBER - REMOVAL	13-1	FRONT OUTPUT SHAFT SEAL - INSTALLATION	21-301,21-334,21-362	FRONT WIPER ARM - REMOVAL	8R-15
FRONT AXLE - 186FBI - ADJUSTMENTS	3-21	FRONT OUTPUT SHAFT SEAL - REMOVAL	21-301,21-334,21-362	FRONT WIPER BLADE - DESCRIPTION	8R-16
FRONT AXLE - 186FBI - DESCRIPTION	3-17	FRONT PARKING BRAKE CABLE - INSTALLATION	5-35	FRONT WIPER BLADE - INSTALLATION	8R-17
FRONT AXLE - 186FBI - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	3-17	FRONT PARKING BRAKE CABLE - REMOVAL	5-33	FRONT WIPER BLADE - OPERATION	8R-16
FRONT AXLE - 186FBI - INSTALLATION	3-21	FRONT POSITION LAMP - DESCRIPTION	8L-14	FRONT WIPER BLADE - REMOVAL	8R-17
FRONT AXLE - 186FBI - OPERATION	3-17	FRONT POSITION LAMP - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8L-14	FRONT WIPER MODULE - DESCRIPTION	8R-17
FRONT AXLE - 186FBI - REMOVAL	3-21	FRONT POSITION LAMP - INSTALLATION	8L-15	FRONT WIPER MODULE - INSTALLATION	8R-18
FRONT AXLE - 186FBI - SPECIAL TOOLS	3-30	FRONT POSITION LAMP - OPERATION	8L-14	FRONT WIPER MODULE - OPERATION	8R-18
FRONT AXLE - 186FBI - SPECIFICATIONS	3-29	FRONT POSITION LAMP - REMOVAL	8L-15	FRONT WIPER MODULE - REMOVAL	8R-18
FRONT BEARING - INSTALLATION, OUTPUT SHAFT	21-87	FRONT POWER OUTLET - DESCRIPTION	8W-97-12	FRONT WIPERS/WASHERS - DESCRIPTION	8R-2
FRONT BEARING - REMOVAL, OUTPUT SHAFT	21-87	FRONT POWER OUTLET - OPERATION	8W-97-12	FRONT WIPERS/WASHERS - OPERATION	8R-4
FRONT CARPET - INSTALLATION	23-84	FRONT SEAL - INSTALLATION, OIL PUMP	21-258	FUEL DELIVERY - DESCRIPTION	14-2
FRONT CARPET - REMOVAL	23-84	FRONT SEAL - REMOVAL, OIL PUMP	21-258	FUEL DELIVERY - OPERATION	14-2
FRONT CHECK VALVE - DESCRIPTION	8R-10	FRONT SEAT - INSTALLATION	23-100	FUEL DELIVERY - TORQUE	14-3
FRONT CHECK VALVE - INSTALLATION	8R-11	FRONT SEAT - REMOVAL	23-100	FUEL FILL DOOR - INSTALLATION	23-44
FRONT CHECK VALVE - OPERATION	8R-11	FRONT SEAT BACK - INSTALLATION	23-100	FUEL FILL DOOR - REMOVAL	23-44
FRONT CHECK VALVE - REMOVAL	8R-11	FRONT SEAT BACK - REMOVAL	23-100	FUEL FILLER - INSTALLATION, COVER	23-95
FRONT CLUTCH - ASSEMBLY	21-78	FRONT SEAT BACK COVER - INSTALLATION	23-101	FUEL FILLER - REMOVAL, COVER	23-95
FRONT CLUTCH - DESCRIPTION	21-75	FRONT SEAT BACK COVER - REMOVAL	23-101	FUEL FILLER CAP - DESCRIPTION	25-16
FRONT CLUTCH - DISASSEMBLY	21-77	FRONT SEAT BELT & RETRACTOR - INSTALLATION	80-31	FUEL FILLER CAP - OPERATION	25-16
FRONT CLUTCH - INSPECTION	21-78	FRONT SEAT BELT & RETRACTOR - REMOVAL	80-29	FUEL FILLER CAP - REMOVAL	25-16
FRONT CLUTCH - OPERATION	21-75	FRONT SEAT CUSHION/COVER - INSTALLATION	23-101	FUEL FILTER/PRESSURE REGULATOR - DESCRIPTION	14-5
FRONT DISC BRAKE CALIPER - ASSEMBLY	5-18	FRONT SEAT CUSHION/COVER - REMOVAL	23-101	FUEL FILTER/PRESSURE REGULATOR - INSTALLATION	14-6
FRONT DISC BRAKE CALIPER - DISASSEMBLY	5-16	FRONT SEAT SIDE SHIELD - INSTALLATION	23-102	FUEL FILTER/PRESSURE REGULATOR - OPERATION	14-5
FRONT DISC BRAKE CALIPER - INSTALLATION	5-20	FRONT SEAT SIDE SHIELD - REMOVAL	23-102	FUEL FILTER/PRESSURE REGULATOR - REMOVAL	14-5
FRONT DISC BRAKE CALIPER - REMOVAL	5-14	FRONT SERVO - ASSEMBLY	21-81	FUEL GAUGE - DESCRIPTION	8J-21
FRONT DISC BRAKE PADS - DESCRIPTION	5-10	FRONT SERVO - CLEANING	21-80	FUEL GAUGE - OPERATION	8J-22
FRONT DISC BRAKE PADS - OPERATION	5-11	FRONT SERVO - DESCRIPTION	21-79	FUEL INDICATOR - DESCRIPTION, LOW	8J-23
FRONT DISC BRAKE ROTOR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	5-29	FRONT SERVO - DISASSEMBLY	21-80	FUEL INDICATOR - OPERATION, LOW	8J-23
FRONT DISC BRAKE ROTOR - INSTALLATION	5-31	FRONT SERVO - INSPECTION	21-80	FUEL INJECTION - TORQUE	14-26
		FRONT SERVO - OPERATION	21-79	FUEL INJECTOR - DESCRIPTION	14-30

Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page
FUEL PUMP - OPERATION	14-8	GEAR TO HYDRAULIC FAN MODULE		GLASS WEATHERSTRIP - REMOVAL,	
FUEL PUMP MODULE - DESCRIPTION	14-8	(2.7L DIESEL) - INSTALLATION,		FLIP-UP	23-122
FUEL PUMP MODULE - INSTALLATION	14-9	PRESSURE HOSE	19-45	GLOVE BOX - INSTALLATION	23-54
FUEL PUMP MODULE - OPERATION	14-9	GEAR TO THE HYDRAULIC FAN MODULE		GLOVE BOX - REMOVAL	23-53
FUEL PUMP MODULE - REMOVAL	14-9	(2.7L DIESEL) - REMOVAL, PRESSURE		GLOVE BOX LAMP/SWITCH -	
FUEL PUMP RELAY - DESCRIPTION	14-31	HOSE	19-44	INSTALLATION	8L-41
FUEL PUMP RELAY - OPERATION	14-31	GEAR/RING GEAR - INSTALLATION,		GLOVE BOX LAMP/SWITCH - REMOVAL	8L-41
FUEL SYSTEM PRESSURE RELEASE -		PINION	3-116,3-46,3-78	GLOVE BOX LATCH - INSTALLATION	23-55
STANDARD PROCEDURE	14-2	GEAR/RING GEAR - REMOVAL, PINION	3-114,	GLOVE BOX LATCH - REMOVAL	23-54
FUEL SYSTEM PRESSURE,		3-44,3-76		GLOVE BOX LATCH STRIKER -	
SPECIFICATIONS	14-3	GEARSHIFT CABLE - ADJUSTMENTS	21-237,	INSTALLATION	23-55
FUEL SYSTEM, SPECIAL TOOLS	14-4	21-82		GLOVE BOX LATCH STRIKER - REMOVAL	23-55
FUEL TANK - DESCRIPTION	14-14	GEARSHIFT CABLE - DIAGNOSIS AND		GLOVE BOX ROLL DOWN - STANDARD	
FUEL TANK - INSTALLATION	14-19	TESTING	21-235,21-81	PROCEDURE	23-52
FUEL TANK - OPERATION	14-14	GEARSHIFT CABLE - INSTALLATION	21-236,	GOVERNOR - DESCRIPTION,	
FUEL TANK - REMOVAL	14-14	21-82		ELECTRONIC	21-67
FUEL TANK SKID PLATE - DESCRIPTION	13-8	GEARSHIFT CABLE - REMOVAL	21-235,21-81	GOVERNOR - INSTALLATION,	
FULL SIZE, SPARE WHEEL WITH		GEARTRAIN - ASSEMBLY, PLANETARY	21-265	ELECTRONIC	21-70
MATCHING TIRE - DESCRIPTION	22-11	GEARTRAIN - CLEANING, PLANETARY	21-264	GOVERNOR - OPERATION, ELECTRONIC	21-67
FUNCTION SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND		GEARTRAIN - DESCRIPTION,		GOVERNOR - REMOVAL, ELECTRONIC	21-69
TESTING, LEFT MULTI	8L-27	PLANETARY	21-263	GRID - DESCRIPTION, REAR WINDOW	
FUNCTIONS - DESCRIPTION, CIRCUIT	8W-01-6	GEARTRAIN - DISASSEMBLY,		DEFOGGER	8G-3
FUSE - DESCRIPTION, IOD	8W-97-3	PLANETARY	21-264	GRID - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, REAR	
FUSE - INSTALLATION, IOD	8W-97-4	GEARTRAIN - INSPECTION, PLANETARY	21-264	WINDOW DEFOGGER	8G-3
FUSE - OPERATION, IOD	8W-97-4	GEARTRAIN - OPERATION, PLANETARY	21-263	GRID - OPERATION, REAR WINDOW	
FUSE - REMOVAL, IOD	8W-97-4	GEARTRAIN/OUTPUT SHAFT -		DEFOGGER	8G-3
FUSE COVER - INSTALLATION	8W-97-16	ASSEMBLY, PLANETARY	21-115	GRID REPAIR - STANDARD PROCEDURE,	
FUSE COVER - REMOVAL	8W-97-15	GEARTRAIN/OUTPUT SHAFT -		REAR GLASS HEATING	8G-4
FUSES POWERING SEVERAL LOADS -		DESCRIPTION, PLANETARY	21-114	GRILLE - INSTALLATION, COWL	23-41
STANDARD PROCEDURE, TESTING		GEARTRAIN/OUTPUT SHAFT -		GRILLE - REMOVAL, COWL	23-41
FOR A SHORT TO GROUND ON	8W-01-10	DISASSEMBLY, PLANETARY	21-114	GROUND - STANDARD PROCEDURE,	
GALLERY PLUGS - STANDARD		GEARTRAIN/OUTPUT SHAFT -		TESTING FOR A SHORT TO	8W-01-9
PROCEDURE, ENGINE CORE AND OIL	9-11,9-72	INSPECTION, PLANETARY	21-115	GROUND AND SPICE INFORMATION -	
GAP AND FLUSH - SPECIFICATIONS	23-127	GEARTRAIN/OUTPUT SHAFT -		DESCRIPTION, CONNECTOR	8W-01-7
GAS ENGINE - INSTALLATION	8F-23	OPERATION, PLANETARY	21-114	GROUND ON FUSES POWERING	
GAS ENGINE - REMOVAL	8F-22	GENERAL - WARNINGS	8W-01-7	SEVERAL LOADS - STANDARD	
GAS POWERED - GENERATOR RATINGS	8F-26	GENERATOR - DESCRIPTION	8F-28	PROCEDURE, TESTING FOR A SHORT	
GAS POWERED - STARTER MOTOR	8F-36	GENERATOR - INSTALLATION	8F-29	TO	8W-01-10
GAS POWERED - TORQUE	8F-26	GENERATOR - OPERATION	8F-28	GROUND STRAP - DESCRIPTION, RADIO	
GAS PROP - INSTALLATION	23-48	GENERATOR - REMOVAL	8F-28	NOISE SUPPRESSION	8A-17
GAS PROP - REMOVAL	23-48	GENERATOR RATINGS, GAS POWERED	8F-26	GROUND STRAP - INSTALLATION,	
GASKET - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING,		GLASS - INSTALLATION, DOOR	23-108,23-26,	ENGINE TO BODY	8A-18
CYLINDER HEAD	9-86,9-98	23-35		GROUND STRAP - INSTALLATION,	
GASKET SURFACE PREPARATION -		GLASS - INSTALLATION, FLIP-UP	23-16	EXHAUST-TO-BODY	8A-19
STANDARD PROCEDURE, ENGINE	9-72	GLASS - INSTALLATION, SIDE VIEW		GROUND STRAP - REMOVAL,	
GASKETS AND SEALERS - STANDARD		MIRROR	23-46	ENGINE-TO-BODY	8A-18
PROCEDURE, FORM-IN-PLACE	9-71,9-9	GLASS - REMOVAL, DOOR	23-108,23-26,23-35	GROUND STRAP - REMOVAL,	
GAUGE - DESCRIPTION, ENGINE		GLASS - REMOVAL, FLIP-UP	23-16	EXHAUST-TO-BODY	8A-18
TEMPERATURE	8J-20	GLASS - REMOVAL, SIDE VIEW MIRROR	23-46	GROUNDS - DESCRIPTION, POWER	8E-15
GAUGE - DESCRIPTION, FUEL	8J-21	GLASS AJAR SWITCH - DESCRIPTION,		G-SENSOR - DESCRIPTION	5-45
GAUGE - DESCRIPTION, OIL PRESSURE	8J-26	FLIP UP	8L-39	GUIDES - DESCRIPTION, VALVE	9-86,9-98
GAUGE - DESCRIPTION, VOLTAGE	8J-35	GLASS AJAR SWITCH - OPERATION,		HAND DRIVE (RHD) VEHICLES -	
GAUGE - OPERATION, ENGINE		FLIP UP	8L-40	STEERING LINKAGE, RIGHT	19-27
TEMPERATURE	8J-20	GLASS HEATING GRID REPAIR -		HANDLE - INSTALLATION, A-PILLAR	
GAUGE - OPERATION, FUEL	8J-22	STANDARD PROCEDURE, REAR	8G-4	TRIM/GRAB	23-82
GAUGE - OPERATION, OIL PRESSURE	8J-26	GLASS INTEGRAL ANTENNA - EXPORT -		HANDLE - INSTALLATION, ASSIST	23-82
GAUGE - OPERATION, VOLTAGE	8J-35	DESCRIPTION, QUARTER	8A-15	HANDLE - INSTALLATION, EXTERIOR	23-15,
GAUGES - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING,		GLASS INTEGRAL ANTENNA - EXPORT -		23-27,23-35	
PRESSURE	22-7	DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, QUARTER	8A-15	HANDLE - INSTALLATION, FOLDING	
GAUGES INDICATOR - DESCRIPTION,		GLASS INTEGRAL ANTENNA - EXPORT -		REAR SEAT BACK LATCH	23-107
CHECK	8J-17	OPERATION, QUARTER	8A-15	HANDLE - REMOVAL, A-PILLAR	
GAUGES INDICATOR - OPERATION,		GLASS LATCH - INSTALLATION, FLIP-UP	23-17	TRIM/GRAB	23-82
CHECK	8J-17	GLASS LATCH - REMOVAL, FLIP-UP	23-17	HANDLE - REMOVAL, ASSIST	23-82
GEAR - DESCRIPTION	19-17	GLASS LATCH STRIKER - INSTALLATION,		HANDLE - REMOVAL, EXTERIOR	23-15,23-27,
GEAR - INSTALLATION	19-17	FLIP-UP	23-17	23-35	
GEAR - INSTALLATION, PINION		GLASS LATCH STRIKER - REMOVAL,		HANDLE - REMOVAL, FOLDING REAR	
GEAR/RING	3-116,3-46,3-78	FLIP-UP	23-17	SEAT BACK LATCH	23-107
GEAR - OPERATION	19-17	GLASS PANEL - INSTALLATION	23-117	HANDLE ACTUATOR - INSTALLATION,	
GEAR - REMOVAL	19-17	GLASS PANEL - REMOVAL	23-117	INSIDE	23-29,23-36
GEAR - REMOVAL, PINION GEAR/RING	3-114,	GLASS POWER RELEASE SYSTEM -		HANDLE ACTUATOR - REMOVAL,	
3-44,3-76		DESCRIPTION, LIFTGATE FLIP-UP	8N-4	INSIDE	23-29,23-36
GEAR, ADJUSTMENTS - STEERING	19-18	GLASS POWER RELEASE SYSTEM -		HANDLING NON-DEPLOYED	
GEAR OUTLET HOSE - DESCRIPTION,		DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, LIFTGATE		SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINTS -	
3/8"	19-40	FLIP-UP	8N-6	STANDARD PROCEDURE	80-6
GEAR OUTLET HOSE - INSTALLATION,		GLASS POWER RELEASE SYSTEM -		HARNES - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING,	
3/8"	19-43	OPERATION, LIFTGATE FLIP-UP	8N-5	WIRING	8W-01-7
GEAR OUTLET HOSE - OPERATION, 3/8"	19-41	GLASS RUN CHANNEL - INSTALLATION	23-27	HARNES CONNECTOR - DESCRIPTION,	
GEAR OUTLET HOSE - REMOVAL, 3/8"	19-42	GLASS RUN CHANNEL - REMOVAL	23-27	IOD WIRE	8W-97-15
GEAR OUTLET HOSE (2.7L DIESEL) -		GLASS RUN WEATHERSTRIP -		HARNES CONNECTOR - OPERATION,	
INSTALLATION, 3/8"	19-45	INSTALLATION, FRONT DOOR	23-121	IOD WIRE	8W-97-15
GEAR OUTLET HOSE (2.7L DIESEL) -		GLASS RUN WEATHERSTRIP -		HAT BRAKE - CLEANING, REAR DRUM	
REMOVAL, 3/8"	19-44	REMOVAL, FRONT DOOR	23-121	IN	5-38
GEAR, SPECIAL TOOLS - POWER		GLASS SWITCH - INSTALLATION,		HAT BRAKE - INSPECTION, REAR DRUM	
STEERING	19-20	FLIP-UP	23-17	IN	5-39
GEAR, SPECIFICATIONS - POWER		GLASS SWITCH - REMOVAL, FLIP-UP	23-17	HAT PARK BRAKE (ROTOR REMOVED) -	
STEERING	19-19	GLASS WEATHERSTRIP - INSTALLATION,		ADJUSTMENT, REAR DRUM IN	5-39
		FLIP-UP	23-122	HAZARD WARNING SYSTEM -	
				DESCRIPTION, TURN SIGNAL	8L-2

Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page
HAZARD WARNING SYSTEM - OPERATION, TURN SIGNAL	8L-3	HEADREST RELEASE KNOB - INSTALLATION, REAR	23-104	HEATER AND AIR CONDITIONER - DESCRIPTION	24-1
HAZARD WARNING SYSTEMS - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, TURN SIGNAL	8L-4	HEADREST RELEASE KNOB - REMOVAL, REAR	23-104	HEATER AND AIR CONDITIONER - OPERATION	24-2
HCU (HYDRAULIC CONTROL UNIT) - DESCRIPTION	5-46	HEADREST SLEEVE - INSTALLATION, FRONT	23-99	HEATER CLUTCH - DESCRIPTION, VISCIOUS	24-77
HCU (HYDRAULIC CONTROL UNIT) - INSTALLATION	5-47	HEADREST SLEEVE - INSTALLATION, REAR	23-104	HEATER CLUTCH - INSTALLATION, VISCIOUS	24-78
HCU (HYDRAULIC CONTROL UNIT) - OPERATION	5-46	HEADREST SLEEVE - REMOVAL, FRONT	23-99	HEATER CLUTCH - OPERATION, VISCIOUS	24-77
HCU (HYDRAULIC CONTROL UNIT) - REMOVAL	5-47	HEADREST SLEEVE - REMOVAL, REAR	23-104	HEATER CLUTCH - REMOVAL, VISCIOUS	24-78
HEAD - CLEANING, CYLINDER	9-21	HEAT DUCT - INSTALLATION, REAR FLOOR	24-42	HEATER CONTROL - DESCRIPTION, A/C	24-17
HEAD - DESCRIPTION, CYLINDER	9-20, 9-86, 9-98	HEAT DUCT - REMOVAL, REAR FLOOR	24-42	HEATER CONTROL - INSTALLATION, A/C	24-25
HEAD - INSPECTION, CYLINDER	9-21	HEAT SHIELDS - DESCRIPTION	11-12	HEATER CONTROL - OPERATION, A/C	24-17
HEAD - INSTALLATION, CYLINDER	9-21	HEAT/DEFROST - PANEL/DEFROST DOOR ELECTRIC ACTUATOR - INSTALLATION	24-33	HEATER CONTROL - REMOVAL, A/C	24-25
HEAD - REMOVAL, CYLINDER	9-20	HEAT/DEFROST - PANEL/DEFROST DOOR ELECTRIC ACTUATOR - REMOVAL	24-32	HEATER CORE - DESCRIPTION	24-71
HEAD COVER(S) - CLEANING, CYLINDER	9-23	HEAT/DEFROST DOOR - INSTALLATION	24-50	HEATER CORE - INSTALLATION	24-73
HEAD COVER(S) - DESCRIPTION, CYLINDER	9-22	HEAT/DEFROST DOOR - REMOVAL	24-48	HEATER CORE - OPERATION	24-71
HEAD COVER(S) - INSPECTION, CYLINDER	9-23	HEAT/DEFROST DOOR VACUUM ACTUATOR - INSTALLATION	24-34	HEATER CORE - REMOVAL	24-71
HEAD COVER(S) - INSTALLATION, CYLINDER	9-23	HEAT/DEFROST DOOR VACUUM ACTUATOR - REMOVAL	24-33	HEATER PERFORMANCE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	24-6
HEAD COVER(S) - LEFT - CLEANING, CYLINDER	9-94	HEATED MIRRORS - DESCRIPTION	8G-8	HEATER RELAY - DESCRIPTION, O2S	14-37
HEAD COVER(S) - LEFT - DESCRIPTION, CYLINDER	9-94	HEATED MIRRORS - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8G-8	HEATER RELAY - INSTALLATION, O2S	14-37
HEAD COVER(S) - REMOVAL, CYLINDER	9-23	HEATED MIRRORS - OPERATION	8G-8	HEATER RELAY - OPERATION, O2S	14-37
HEAD COVER(S) - RIGHT - CLEANING, CYLINDER	9-105	HEATED SEAT ELEMENT - DESCRIPTION	8G-13	HEATER RELAY - REMOVAL, O2S	14-37
HEAD COVER(S) - RIGHT - DESCRIPTION, CYLINDER	9-105	HEATED SEAT ELEMENT - INSTALLATION	8G-14	HEATING GRID REPAIR - STANDARD PROCEDURE, REAR GLASS	8G-4
HEAD GASKET - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, CYLINDER	9-86, 9-98	HEATED SEAT ELEMENT - OPERATION	8G-13	HIGH AND LOW LIMITS - DESCRIPTION	25-6
HEADLAMP - DESCRIPTION	8L-15	HEATED SEAT ELEMENT - REMOVAL	8G-14	HIGH BEAM INDICATOR - DESCRIPTION	8J-22
HEADLAMP - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8L-19	HEATED SEAT ELEMENTS - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8G-14	HIGH BEAM INDICATOR - OPERATION	8J-23
HEADLAMP - OPERATION	8L-15	HEATED SEAT SENSOR - DESCRIPTION	8G-15	HIGH PRESSURE RELIEF VALVE - DESCRIPTION	24-58
HEADLAMP ALIGNMENT - STANDARD PROCEDURE, INTERNATIONAL	8L-5	HEATED SEAT SENSOR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8G-15	HIGH PRESSURE RELIEF VALVE - OPERATION	24-58
HEADLAMP LEVELING MOTOR - DESCRIPTION	8L-19	HEATED SEAT SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, DRIVER	8G-11	HIGH SPEED - DESCRIPTION, TIRE PRESSURE	22-7
HEADLAMP LEVELING MOTOR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8L-20	HEATED SEAT SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, PASSENGER	8G-15	HIGH/LOW RELAY - DESCRIPTION, WIPER	8R-30
HEADLAMP LEVELING MOTOR - OPERATION	8L-19	HEATED SEAT SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, DRIVER	8G-11	HIGH/LOW RELAY - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, WIPER	8R-31
HEADLAMP LEVELING SWITCH - DESCRIPTION	8L-20	HEATED SEAT SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, PASSENGER	8G-16	HIGH/LOW RELAY - INSTALLATION, WIPER	8R-31
HEADLAMP LEVELING SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8L-20	HEATED SEAT SWITCH - INSTALLATION, DRIVER	8G-13	HIGH/LOW RELAY - OPERATION, WIPER	8R-30
HEADLAMP LEVELING SWITCH - INSTALLATION	8L-21	HEATED SEAT SWITCH - INSTALLATION, PASSENGER	8G-17	HIGH/LOW RELAY - REMOVAL, WIPER	8R-31
HEADLAMP LEVELING SWITCH - OPERATION	8L-20	HEATED SEAT SWITCH - OPERATION, DRIVER	8G-11	HINGE - INSTALLATION	23-18, 23-28, 23-36, 23-48
HEADLAMP LEVELING SWITCH - REMOVAL	8L-21	HEATED SEAT SWITCH - OPERATION, PASSENGER	8G-16	HINGE - REMOVAL	23-18, 23-28, 23-36, 23-48
HEADLAMP LEVELING SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8L-4	HEATED SEAT SWITCH - REMOVAL, DRIVER	8G-13	HITCH - INSTALLATION, TRAILER	13-9
HEADLAMP MOUNTING MODULE (HMM) - INSTALLATION	23-45	HEATED SEAT SWITCH - REMOVAL, PASSENGER	8G-17	HITCH - REMOVAL, TRAILER	13-9
HEADLAMP MOUNTING MODULE (HMM) - REMOVAL	23-45	HEATED SEAT SYSTEM - DESCRIPTION	8G-9	H.O. ENGINE - SPECIFICATIONS, 4.7L	9-78
HEADLAMP SENSOR - INSTALLATION, AUTO	8L-7	HEATED SEAT SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8G-10	HOAT COOLANT - DESCRIPTION	7-24
HEADLAMP SENSOR - REMOVAL, AUTO	8L-7	HEATED SEAT SYSTEM - OPERATION	8G-10	HOAT COOLANT - DESCRIPTION	0-2
HEADLAMP SENSOR (AHL) - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, AUTO	8L-7	HEATED SEAT/MIRROR MODULE - DESCRIPTION, MEMORY	8E-10	HOISTING AND JACKING RECOMMENDATIONS - STANDARD PROCEDURE	0-14
HEADLAMP SWITCH - DESCRIPTION	8L-22	HEATED SEAT/MIRROR MODULE - DESCRIPTION, MEMORY	8G-17	HOLDDOWN - DESCRIPTION, BATTERY	8F-16
HEADLAMP SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8L-22	HEATED SEAT/MIRROR MODULE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, MEMORY	8E-11	HOLDDOWN - INSTALLATION, BATTERY	8F-17
HEADLAMP SWITCH - OPERATION	8L-22	HEATED SEAT/MIRROR MODULE - INSTALLATION, MEMORY	8E-11	HOLDDOWN - OPERATION, BATTERY	8F-16
HEADLAMP SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8L-16	HEATED SEAT/MIRROR MODULE - INSTALLATION, MEMORY	8G-19	HOLDDOWN - REMOVAL, BATTERY	8F-17
HEADLAMP UNIT - ADJUSTMENTS	8L-23	HEATED SEAT/MIRROR MODULE - OPERATION, MEMORY	8E-11	HOLDING CLUTCHES - DESCRIPTION	21-238
HEADLAMP UNIT - INSTALLATION	8L-23	HEATED SEAT/MIRROR MODULE - OPERATION, MEMORY	8G-18	HOLDING CLUTCHES - OPERATION	21-239
HEADLAMP UNIT - REMOVAL	8L-22	HEATED SEAT/MIRROR MODULE - REMOVAL, MEMORY	8E-11	HOLE REPAIR - DESCRIPTION, THREADED	Intro.-6
HEADLINER - INSTALLATION	23-90	HEATED SEAT/MIRROR MODULE - REMOVAL, MEMORY	8G-18	HONING - STANDARD PROCEDURE, CYLINDER BORE	9-109, 9-11
HEADLINER - REMOVAL	23-90	HEATED SEAT/MIRROR MODULE - REMOVAL, MEMORY	8G-18	HOOD - INSTALLATION	23-49
HEADREST - INSTALLATION, FRONT	23-99	HEATED SEAT/MIRROR MODULE - REMOVAL, MEMORY	8G-18	HOOD - REMOVAL	23-49
HEADREST - INSTALLATION, REAR	23-103	HEATER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, ENGINE BLOCK	7-32	HOOD ADJUSTMENT, ADJUSTMENTS	23-49
HEADREST - REMOVAL, FRONT	23-99	HEATER - INSTALLATION, VISCIOUS	24-77	HOOD AJAR SWITCH - DESCRIPTION	8Q-9
HEADREST - REMOVAL, REAR	23-103	HEATER - OPERATION, ENGINE BLOCK	7-32	HOOD AJAR SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8Q-9
HEADREST FOLDING MECHANISM - INSTALLATION, REAR	23-104	HEATER - OPERATION, VISCIOUS	24-77	HOOD AJAR SWITCH - INSTALLATION	8Q-10
HEADREST FOLDING MECHANISM - REMOVAL, REAR	23-104	HEATER - REMOVAL, VISCIOUS	24-77	HOOD AJAR SWITCH - OPERATION	8Q-9
				HOOD AJAR SWITCH - REMOVAL	8Q-10
				HOOD AJAR SWITCH BRACKET - INSTALLATION	8Q-10
				HOOD AJAR SWITCH BRACKET - REMOVAL	8Q-10
				HOOD AJAR SWITCH STRIKER - INSTALLATION	8Q-10
				HOOD AJAR SWITCH STRIKER - REMOVAL	8Q-10
				HOOD SEAL - INSTALLATION	23-123
				HOOD SEAL - REMOVAL	23-123
				HOOK - INSTALLATION, FRONT TOW	13-8
				HOOK - INSTALLATION, REAR TOW	13-8
				HOOK - REMOVAL, FRONT TOW	13-8
				HOOK - REMOVAL, REAR TOW	13-8



Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page
HOOKS - DESCRIPTION, EMERGENCY TOW	0-15	HOSES/LINES/TUBES PRECAUTIONS, CAUTION - REFRIGERANT	24-54	IGNITION CIRCUIT SENSE - DESCRIPTION	8E-15
HORN - DESCRIPTION	8H-3	HOSES/TUBES - DESCRIPTION, FRONT WASHER	8R-12	IGNITION CIRCUIT SENSE - OPERATION	8E-16
HORN - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8H-3	HOSES/TUBES - DESCRIPTION, REAR WASHER	8R-40	IGNITION COIL - DESCRIPTION	8I-11
HORN - INSTALLATION	8H-4	HOSES/TUBES - OPERATION, FRONT WASHER	8R-12	IGNITION COIL - INSTALLATION	8I-12
HORN - OPERATION	8H-3	HOSES/TUBES - OPERATION, REAR WASHER	8R-41	IGNITION COIL - OPERATION	8I-12
HORN - REMOVAL	8H-3	HOUSING - ASSEMBLY, HVAC	24-45	IGNITION COIL - REMOVAL	8I-12
HORN RELAY - DESCRIPTION	8H-4	HOUSING - DISASSEMBLY, HVAC	24-44	IGNITION COIL CAPACITOR - DESCRIPTION	8I-13
HORN RELAY - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8H-4	HOUSING - INSTALLATION, HVAC	24-46	IGNITION COIL CAPACITOR - INSTALLATION	8I-13
HORN RELAY - INSTALLATION	8H-5	HOUSING - INSTALLATION, MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH MOUNTING	8L-31	IGNITION COIL CAPACITOR - OPERATION	8I-13
HORN RELAY - OPERATION	8H-4	HOUSING - INSTALLATION, STUB SHAFT	19-26	IGNITION COIL CAPACITOR - REMOVAL	8I-13
HORN RELAY - REMOVAL	8H-5	HOUSING - REMOVAL, HVAC	24-42	IGNITION COIL RESISTANCE, 4.0L ENGINE	8I-2
HORN SWITCH - DESCRIPTION	8H-6	HOUSING - REMOVAL, MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH MOUNTING	8L-29	IGNITION COIL RESISTANCE, 4.7L V-8 ENGINE	8I-2
HORN SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8H-6	HOUSING - REMOVAL, STUB SHAFT	19-26	IGNITION CONTROL - 4.0L/4.7L - DESCRIPTION	8I-1
HORN SWITCH - INSTALLATION	8H-7	HOUSING ASSEMBLY - INSTALLATION	23-119	IGNITION CONTROL - 4.0L/4.7L - OPERATION	8I-1
HORN SWITCH - OPERATION	8H-6	HOUSING ASSEMBLY - REMOVAL	23-119	IGNITION SWITCH - DESCRIPTION	19-12
HORN SWITCH - REMOVAL	8H-6	HOUSING BUSHING - INSTALLATION, EXTENSION	21-71	IGNITION SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, KEY-IN	19-13
HORN SYSTEM - DESCRIPTION	8H-1	HOUSING BUSHING - REMOVAL, EXTENSION	21-71	IGNITION SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	19-12
HORN SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8H-2	HOUSING FLUID LEAK - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, CONVERTER	21-16,21-184	IGNITION SWITCH - OPERATION, KEY-IN	19-14
HORN SYSTEM - OPERATION	8H-2	HOUSING SEAL - INSTALLATION, ADAPTER	21-229	IGNITION SWITCH, DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - KEY-IN	19-14
HOSE - DESCRIPTION, 1/2" PRESSURE	19-40	HOUSING SEAL - INSTALLATION, EXTENSION	21-71	IGNITION SWITCH INSTALLATION, INSTALLATION	19-13
HOSE - DESCRIPTION, 1/2" RETURN	19-40	HOUSING SEAL - REMOVAL, ADAPTER	21-229	IGNITION SWITCH REMOVAL, REMOVAL	19-13
HOSE - DESCRIPTION, 3/8" GEAR OUTLET	19-40	HOUSING SEAL - REMOVAL, EXTENSION	21-71	IGNITION SYSTEM - TORQUE	8I-3
HOSE - DESCRIPTION, 3/8" PRESSURE	19-40	HUB / BEARING - DESCRIPTION	2-9	IGNITION TIMING, SPECIFICATIONS	8I-3
HOSE - DESCRIPTION, 3/8" RETURN	19-41	HUB / BEARING - INSTALLATION	2-10	IGNITION-OFF DRAW TEST - STANDARD PROCEDURE	8F-13
HOSE - GEAR TO HYDRAULIC FAN MODULE (2.7L DIESEL) - INSTALLATION, PRESSURE	19-45	HUB / BEARING - OPERATION	2-9	ILLUMINATION - DESCRIPTION, TRANS RANGE INDICATOR	8L-42
HOSE - GEAR TO THE HYDRAULIC FAN MODULE (2.7L DIESEL) - REMOVAL, PRESSURE	19-44	HUB / BEARING - REMOVAL	2-9	IMMOBILIZER MODULE - DESCRIPTION, SENTRY KEY	8E-17
HOSE - INSTALLATION, 1/2" PRESSURE	19-42	HVAC HOUSING - ASSEMBLY	24-45	IMMOBILIZER MODULE - INSTALLATION, SENTRY KEY	8E-19
HOSE - INSTALLATION, 1/2" RETURN	19-42	HVAC HOUSING - DISASSEMBLY	24-44	IMMOBILIZER MODULE - OPERATION, SENTRY KEY	8E-17
HOSE - INSTALLATION, 3/8" GEAR OUTLET	19-43	HVAC HOUSING - INSTALLATION	24-46	IMMOBILIZER MODULE - REMOVAL, SENTRY KEY	8E-19
HOSE - INSTALLATION, 3/8" PRESSURE	19-43	HVAC HOUSING - REMOVAL	24-42	IMMOBILIZER SYSTEM - DESCRIPTION, SENTRY KEY	8Q-2
HOSE - INSTALLATION, INLET COOLER	19-43	HYDRAULIC - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, 4.7L	19-5	IMMOBILIZER SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, SENTRY KEY	8Q-4
HOSE - INSTALLATION, OUTLET COOLER	19-43	HYDRAULIC FAN MODULE (2.7L DIESEL) - INSTALLATION, PRESSURE HOSE - GEAR TO	19-45	IMMOBILIZER SYSTEM - OPERATION, SENTRY KEY	8Q-4
HOSE - OPERATION, 1/2" PRESSURE	19-41	HYDRAULIC FAN MODULE (2.7L DIESEL) - INSTALLATION, PRESSURE HOSE - PUMP TO THE	19-45	IMPACT SENSOR & BRACKET - INSTALLATION, FRONT	80-28
HOSE - OPERATION, 1/2" RETURN	19-41	HYDRAULIC FAN MODULE (2.7L DIESEL) - INSTALLATION, RETURN HOSE - RESERVOIR TO THE	19-45	IMPACT SENSOR & BRACKET - REMOVAL, FRONT	80-28
HOSE - OPERATION, 3/8" GEAR OUTLET	19-41	HYDRAULIC FAN MODULE (2.7L DIESEL) - REMOVAL, PRESSURE HOSE - PUMP TO THE	19-43	IMPACT SENSOR - DESCRIPTION, FRONT	80-26
HOSE - OPERATION, 3/8" PRESSURE	19-41	HYDRAULIC FAN MODULE (2.7L DIESEL) - REMOVAL, RETURN HOSE - RESERVOIR TO THE	19-44	IMPACT SENSOR - DESCRIPTION, SIDE	80-48
HOSE - OPERATION, 3/8" RETURN	19-41	HYDRAULIC LASH ADJUSTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	9-86,9-99	IMPACT SENSOR - INSTALLATION, FRONT	80-27
HOSE - OPERATION, 3/8" PRESSURE	19-41	HYDRAULIC LIFTERS - CLEANING	9-43	IMPACT SENSOR - INSTALLATION, SIDE	80-50
HOSE - OPERATION, 3/8" RETURN	19-41	HYDRAULIC LIFTERS - DESCRIPTION	9-43	IMPACT SENSOR - OPERATION, FRONT	80-26
HOSE - OPERATION, 3/8" PRESSURE	19-41	HYDRAULIC LIFTERS - INSPECTION	9-43	IMPACT SENSOR - OPERATION, SIDE	80-49
HOSE - OPERATION, 3/8" RETURN	19-41	HYDRAULIC LIFTERS - INSTALLATION	9-44	IMPACT SENSOR - REMOVAL, FRONT	80-26
HOSE - OPERATION, 3/8" PRESSURE	19-41	HYDRAULIC LIFTERS - REMOVAL	9-43	IMPACT SENSOR - REMOVAL, SIDE	80-49
HOSE - OPERATION, 3/8" RETURN	19-41	HYDRAULIC PRESSURE TEST - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	21-12,21-183	IN-CAR TEMPERATURE SENSOR - DESCRIPTION	24-30
HOSE - PUMP TO THE HYDRAULIC FAN MODULE (2.7L DIESEL) - REMOVAL, PRESSURE	19-43	HYDRAULIC SCHEMATICS, SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS	21-203,21-44	IN-CAR TEMPERATURE SENSOR - OPERATION	24-30
HOSE - REMOVAL, 1/2" PRESSURE	19-41	HYDROSTATIC LOCK - STANDARD PROCEDURE	9-10	IN-CAR TEMPERATURE SENSOR - REMOVAL	24-30
HOSE - REMOVAL, 1/2" RETURN	19-41	IDENTIFICATION - DESCRIPTION, FASTENER	Intro.-3	INCORRECT FLUID LEVEL - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, EFFECTS OF	21-232,21-72
HOSE - REMOVAL, 3/8" GEAR OUTLET	19-42	IDENTIFICATION AND INFORMATION - DESCRIPTION, SECTION	8W-01-6	INDICATOR - DESCRIPTION, ABS	8J-14
HOSE - REMOVAL, 3/8" PRESSURE	19-41	IDENTIFICATION NUMBER - DESCRIPTION, VEHICLE	Intro.-1	INDICATOR - DESCRIPTION, AIRBAG	8J-14
HOSE - REMOVAL, 3/8" RETURN	19-41	IDLE AIR CONTROL MOTOR - DESCRIPTION	14-31	INDICATOR - DESCRIPTION, BRAKE/PARK BRAKE	8J-15
HOSE - REMOVAL, INLET COOLER	19-42	IDLE AIR CONTROL MOTOR - OPERATION	14-32	INDICATOR - DESCRIPTION, CHECK GAUGES	8J-17
HOSE - REMOVAL, OUTLET COOLER	19-42	IDLER SHAFT - INSTALLATION	9-155	INDICATOR - DESCRIPTION, COOLANT LOW	8J-18
HOSE - RESERVOIR TO THE HYDRAULIC FAN MODULE (2.7L DIESEL) - INSTALLATION, RETURN	19-45	IDLER SHAFT - REMOVAL	9-155	INDICATOR - DESCRIPTION, CRUISE	8J-19
HOSE - RESERVOIR TO THE HYDRAULIC FAN MODULE (2.7L DIESEL) - REMOVAL, RETURN	19-44			INDICATOR - DESCRIPTION, FRONT FOG LAMP	8J-21
HOSE - RESERVOIR TO THE PUMP (2.7L DIESEL) - INSTALLATION, RETURN	19-45			INDICATOR - DESCRIPTION, HIGH BEAM	8J-22
HOSE - RESERVOIR TO THE PUMP (2.7L DIESEL) - REMOVAL, RETURN	19-44			INDICATOR - DESCRIPTION, LOW FUEL	8J-23
HOSE (2.7L DIESEL) - INSTALLATION, 3/8" GEAR OUTLET	19-45				
HOSE (2.7L DIESEL) - INSTALLATION, INLET COOLER	19-46				
HOSE (2.7L DIESEL) - INSTALLATION, OUTLET COOLER	19-46				
HOSE (2.7L DIESEL) - REMOVAL, 3/8" GEAR OUTLET	19-44				
HOSE (2.7L DIESEL) - REMOVAL, INLET COOLER	19-44				
HOSE (2.7L DIESEL) - REMOVAL, OUTLET COOLER	19-44				
HOSE CLAMPS - DESCRIPTION	7-2				
HOSE CLAMPS - OPERATION	7-3				
HOSE PUMP TO THE HYDRAULIC FAN MODULE (2.7L DIESEL) - INSTALLATION, PRESSURE	19-45				
HOSES AND LINES - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, BRAKE	5-9				

Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page
INDICATOR - DESCRIPTION, OVERDRIVE OFF	8J-27	INLET COOLER HOSE (2.7L DIESEL) - INSTALLATION	19-46	INSTRUMENT PANEL STEERING COLUMN BRACKET - INSTALLATION	23-68
INDICATOR - DESCRIPTION, REAR FOG LAMP	8J-28	INLET COOLER HOSE (2.7L DIESEL) - REMOVAL	19-44	INSTRUMENT PANEL STEERING COLUMN BRACKET - REMOVAL	23-68
INDICATOR - DESCRIPTION, SEATBELT	8J-29	INLET FILTER - INSTALLATION	14-20	INSTRUMENT PANEL STEERING COLUMN SUPPORT BRACKET - INSTALLATION	23-69
INDICATOR - DESCRIPTION, SKIS	8J-30	INLET FILTER - REMOVAL	14-20	INSTRUMENT PANEL STEERING COLUMN SUPPORT BRACKET - REMOVAL	23-69
INDICATOR - DESCRIPTION, TRANS TEMP	8J-33	INLET TUBE - INSTALLATION, WATER PUMP	7-52	INSTRUMENT PANEL STRUCTURAL DUCT - INSTALLATION	23-57
INDICATOR - DESCRIPTION, TURN SIGNAL	8J-34	INLET TUBE - REMOVAL, WATER PUMP	7-52	INSTRUMENT PANEL STRUCTURAL DUCT - REMOVAL	23-57
INDICATOR - DESCRIPTION, VTSS	8Q-15	INNER BELT WEATHERSTRIP - INSTALLATION, FRONT DOOR	23-121	INSTRUMENT PANEL TOP COVER - INSTALLATION	23-58
INDICATOR - DESCRIPTION, WAIT-TO-START	8J-36	INNER BELT WEATHERSTRIP - INSTALLATION, RDR	23-124	INSTRUMENT PANEL TOP COVER - REMOVAL	23-57
INDICATOR - DESCRIPTION, WATER-IN-FUEL	8J-36	INNER BELT WEATHERSTRIP - REMOVAL, FRONT DOOR	23-121	INSTRUMENT PANEL TOP PAD - INSTALLATION	23-60
INDICATOR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, BRAKE	8J-16	INNER BELT WEATHERSTRIP - REMOVAL, RDR	23-124	INSTRUMENT PANEL TOP PAD - REMOVAL	23-58
INDICATOR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, TURN SIGNAL	8J-34	INPUT - OPERATION, ASD SENSE - PCM	8I-4	INSTRUMENT PANEL TRIM BEZEL - DRIVER - INSTALLATION	23-70
INDICATOR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, VTSS	8Q-16	INPUT CLUTCH ASSEMBLY - ASSEMBLY	21-245	INSTRUMENT PANEL TRIM BEZEL - DRIVER - REMOVAL	23-70
INDICATOR - OPERATION, ABS	8J-14	INPUT CLUTCH ASSEMBLY - DESCRIPTION	21-240	INSTRUMENT PANEL TRIM BEZEL - PASSENGER - INSTALLATION	23-71
INDICATOR - OPERATION, AIRBAG	8J-15	INPUT CLUTCH ASSEMBLY - DISASSEMBLY	21-241	INSTRUMENT PANEL TRIM BEZEL - PASSENGER - REMOVAL	23-71
INDICATOR - OPERATION, BRAKE/PARK BRAKE	8J-15	INPUT CLUTCH ASSEMBLY - OPERATION	21-240	INSULATION - INSTALLATION	23-49
INDICATOR - OPERATION, CHECK GAUGES	8J-17	INPUT SPEED SENSOR - DESCRIPTION	21-249	INSULATION - REMOVAL	23-49
INDICATOR - OPERATION, COOLANT LOW	8J-18	INPUT SPEED SENSOR - INSTALLATION	21-250	INSULATOR PAD - INSTALLATION, LIFTGATE	23-21
INDICATOR - OPERATION, CRUISE	8J-19	INPUT SPEED SENSOR - OPERATION	21-249	INSULATOR PAD - REMOVAL, LIFTGATE	23-21
INDICATOR - OPERATION, FRONT FOG LAMP	8J-21	INPUT SPEED SENSOR - REMOVAL	21-250	INTAKE AIR TEMPERATURE SENSOR - DESCRIPTION	14-33
INDICATOR - OPERATION, HIGH BEAM	8J-23	INSIDE HANDLE ACTUATOR - INSTALLATION	23-29, 23-36	INTAKE AIR TEMPERATURE SENSOR - OPERATION	14-33
INDICATOR - OPERATION, LOW FUEL	8J-23	INSIDE HANDLE ACTUATOR - REMOVAL	23-29, 23-36	INTAKE MANIFOLD - CLEANING	9-138
INDICATOR - OPERATION, OVERDRIVE OFF	8J-27	INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - ASSEMBLY	8J-12	INTAKE MANIFOLD - DESCRIPTION	9-137, 9-57
INDICATOR - OPERATION, REAR FOG LAMP	8J-28	INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - DESCRIPTION	8J-2	INTAKE MANIFOLD - INSPECTION	9-138
INDICATOR - OPERATION, SEATBELT	8J-29	INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8J-8	INTAKE MANIFOLD - INSTALLATION	9-138, 9-58
INDICATOR - OPERATION, SKIS	8J-30	INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - DISASSEMBLY	8J-10	INTAKE MANIFOLD - REMOVAL	9-137, 9-58
INDICATOR - OPERATION, TRANS TEMP	8J-33	INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - INSTALLATION	8J-13	INTAKE MANIFOLD LEAKAGE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	9-137, 9-57
INDICATOR - OPERATION, TURN SIGNAL	8J-34	INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - OPERATION	8J-4	INTAKE/EXHAUST VALVES & SEATS - DESCRIPTION	9-105, 9-24, 9-95
INDICATOR - OPERATION, VTSS	8Q-15	INSTRUMENT CLUSTER - REMOVAL	8J-10	INTAKE/EXHAUST VALVES & SEATS - INSTALLATION	9-107, 9-26, 9-96
INDICATOR - OPERATION, WAIT-TO-START	8J-36	INSTRUMENT PANEL ANTENNA CABLE - INSTALLATION	8A-14	INTAKE/EXHAUST VALVES & SEATS - REMOVAL	9-106, 9-25, 9-95
INDICATOR - OPERATION, WATER-IN-FUEL	8J-37	INSTRUMENT PANEL ANTENNA CABLE - REMOVAL	8A-14	INTEGRAL ANTENNA - EXPORT - DESCRIPTION, QUARTER GLASS	8A-15
INDICATOR ILLUMINATION - DESCRIPTION, TRANS RANGE	8L-42	INSTRUMENT PANEL ASSEMBLY - INSTALLATION	23-78	INTEGRAL ANTENNA - EXPORT - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, QUARTER GLASS	8A-15
INDICATOR LAMP - DESCRIPTION, SKIS	8Q-14	INSTRUMENT PANEL ASSEMBLY - REMOVAL	23-72	INTEGRAL ANTENNA - EXPORT - OPERATION, QUARTER GLASS	8A-15
INDICATOR LAMP - OPERATION, SKIS	8Q-14	INSTRUMENT PANEL C-CHANNEL COVER BRACKET - INSTALLATION	23-62	INTERLOCK - ADJUSTMENTS, BRAKE TRANSMISSION SHIFT	21-231, 21-66
INDICATOR LAMP (MIL) - DESCRIPTION, MALFUNCTION	8J-24	INSTRUMENT PANEL C-CHANNEL COVER BRACKET - REMOVAL	23-61	INTERLOCK - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, BRAKE TRANSMISSION SHIFT	21-230, 21-65
INDICATOR LAMP (MIL) - OPERATION, MALFUNCTION	8J-24	INSTRUMENT PANEL CENTER BEZEL - LOWER - INSTALLATION	23-63	INTERLOCK MECHANISM - DESCRIPTION, BRAKE TRANSMISSION SHIFT	21-230, 21-64
INDICATOR SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, RED BRAKE WARN	5-8	INSTRUMENT PANEL CENTER BEZEL - LOWER - REMOVAL	23-62	INTERLOCK MECHANISM - OPERATION, BRAKE TRANSMISSION SHIFT	21-230, 21-65
INDICATOR SWITCH - OPERATION, RED BRAKE WARN	5-8	INSTRUMENT PANEL CENTER BEZEL - UPPER - INSTALLATION	23-64	INTERMEDIATE BRACKET - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT PANEL	23-67
INDICATOR TEST - STANDARD PROCEDURE, BUILT-IN	8F-11	INSTRUMENT PANEL CENTER BEZEL - UPPER - REMOVAL	23-63	INTERMEDIATE BRACKET - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT PANEL	23-66
INDICATOR (TRANSFER CASE) - DESCRIPTION, SHIFT	8J-29	INSTRUMENT PANEL CENTER FLOOR TUNNEL BRACKET - INSTALLATION	23-65	INTERNATIONAL HEADLAMP ALIGNMENT - STANDARD PROCEDURE	8L-5
INDICATOR (TRANSFER CASE) - OPERATION, SHIFT	8J-30	INSTRUMENT PANEL CENTER FLOOR TUNNEL BRACKET - REMOVAL	23-64	INTERNATIONAL SYMBOLS - DESCRIPTION	Intro-6
INDICATORS - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, TREAD WEAR	22-7	INSTRUMENT PANEL COURTESY LAMP BRACKET - INSTALLATION	23-66	INTERNATIONAL SYMBOLS - DESCRIPTION	0-1
INFLATION PRESSURES - DESCRIPTION, TIRE	22-6	INSTRUMENT PANEL COURTESY LAMP BRACKET - REMOVAL	23-65	INTRODUCTION - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, ENGINE DIAGNOSIS	9-3, 9-65
INFO CENTER - DESCRIPTION, ELECTRONIC VEHICLE	8M-7	INSTRUMENT PANEL DUCTS - INSTALLATION	24-42	INTRUSION TRANSCIEVER MODULE - DESCRIPTION	8Q-11
INFO CENTER - INSTALLATION, ELECTRONIC VEHICLE	8M-11	INSTRUMENT PANEL DUCTS - REMOVAL	24-41	INTRUSION TRANSCIEVER MODULE - INSTALLATION	8Q-12
INFO CENTER - OPERATION, ELECTRONIC VEHICLE	8M-9	INSTRUMENT PANEL END CAP - INSTALLATION	23-56	INTRUSION TRANSCIEVER MODULE - OPERATION	8Q-11
INFO CENTER - REMOVAL, ELECTRONIC VEHICLE	8M-11	INSTRUMENT PANEL END CAP - REMOVAL	23-56	INTRUSION TRANSCIEVER MODULE - REMOVAL	8Q-12
INITIAL OPERATION - 4.0L - STANDARD PROCEDURE	19-34	INSTRUMENT PANEL INTERMEDIATE BRACKET - INSTALLATION	23-67		
INITIAL OPERATION - 4.7L - STANDARD PROCEDURE	19-34	INSTRUMENT PANEL INTERMEDIATE BRACKET - REMOVAL	23-66		
INITIALIZATION - STANDARD PROCEDURE, SKIS	8Q-6	INSTRUMENT PANEL LOWER RIGHT CENTER BEZEL - INSTALLATION	23-67		
INJECTION - TORQUE, FUEL	14-26	INSTRUMENT PANEL LOWER RIGHT CENTER BEZEL - REMOVAL	23-67		
INJECTOR - DESCRIPTION, FUEL	14-30	INSTRUMENT PANEL SPEAKER - INSTALLATION	8A-24		
INLET COOLER HOSE - INSTALLATION	19-43	INSTRUMENT PANEL SPEAKER, REMOVAL	8A-24		
INLET COOLER HOSE - REMOVAL	19-42				

Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page
INVERTED FLARING - STANDARD PROCEDURE, DOUBLE	5-9	KNUCKLE - INSTALLATION	2-10	LAMP/SWITCH - INSTALLATION, GLOVE BOX	8L-41
IOD FUSE - DESCRIPTION	8W-97-3	KNUCKLE - OPERATION	2-10	LAMP/SWITCH - REMOVAL, GLOVE BOX	8L-41
IOD FUSE - INSTALLATION	8W-97-4	KNUCKLE - REMOVAL	2-10	LASH ADJUSTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, HYDRAULIC	9-86,9-99
IOD FUSE - OPERATION	8W-97-4	LABEL - DESCRIPTION, VEHICLE SAFETY CERTIFICATION	Intro-3	LATCH - CABLES - INSTALLATION	23-23
IOD FUSE - REMOVAL	8W-97-4	LAMP - DESCRIPTION, FRONT POSITION	8L-14	LATCH - CABLES - REMOVAL	23-23
IOD WIRE HARNESS CONNECTOR - DESCRIPTION	8W-97-15	LAMP - DESCRIPTION, READING	8L-42	LATCH - CONTROL ASSEMBLY - INSTALLATION	23-22
IOD WIRE HARNESS CONNECTOR - OPERATION	8W-97-15	LAMP - DESCRIPTION, REAR FOG	8L-33	LATCH - CONTROL ASSEMBLY - REMOVAL	23-22
ISO FLARING - STANDARD PROCEDURE	5-10	LAMP - DESCRIPTION, SIDE REPEATER	8L-34	LATCH - INSTALLATION	23-29,23-37,23-49
JACKING RECOMMENDATIONS - STANDARD PROCEDURE, HOISTING	0-14	LAMP - DESCRIPTION, SKIS INDICATOR	80-14	LATCH - INSTALLATION, FLIP-UP GLASS	23-17
JOINT - DESCRIPTION, UPPER SUSPENSION ARM, BUSHINGS, AND BALL	2-21	LAMP - DESCRIPTION, TAIL	8L-35	LATCH - INSTALLATION, GLOVE BOX	23-55
JOINT - INSTALLATION, AXLE - C/V	3-35	LAMP - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, FRONT POSITION	8L-14	LATCH - INSTALLATION, REAR SEAT CUSHION RELEASE	23-106
JOINT - INSTALLATION, UPPER BALL	2-22	LAMP - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, REAR FOG	8L-33	LATCH - REMOVAL	23-29,23-37,23-49
JOINT - OPERATION, UPPER SUSPENSION ARM, BUSHINGS, AND BALL	2-21	LAMP - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, RED BRAKE WARNING	5-8	LATCH - REMOVAL, FLIP-UP GLASS	23-17
JOINT - REMOVAL, AXLE - C/V	3-34	LAMP - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, SIDE REPEATER	8L-34	LATCH - REMOVAL, GLOVE BOX	23-54
JOINT - REMOVAL, LOWER BALL	2-11	LAMP - INSTALLATION	8L-25,8L-36,8L-37,8L-39	LATCH - REMOVAL, REAR SEAT CUSHION RELEASE	23-106
JOINT - REMOVAL, UPPER BALL	2-15,2-21	LAMP - INSTALLATION, EXHAUSTER - TAIL	23-42	LATCH - REMOVAL, REAR SEAT FOLDING REAR SEAT BACK	23-107
JOINTS - ASSEMBLY, DOUBLE CARDAN UNIVERSAL	3-12	LAMP - INSTALLATION, FOG	8L-13	LATCH - REMOVAL, REAR SEAT FOLDING REAR SEAT BACK	23-107
JOINTS - ASSEMBLY, SINGLE CARDAN UNIVERSAL	3-11	LAMP - INSTALLATION, FRONT POSITION	8L-15	LATCH RELEASE CABLE - INSTALLATION	23-50
JOINTS - DISASSEMBLY, DOUBLE CARDAN UNIVERSAL	3-11	LAMP - INSTALLATION, READING	8L-42	LATCH RELEASE CABLE - REMOVAL	23-50
JOINTS - DISASSEMBLY, SINGLE CARDAN UNIVERSAL	3-10	LAMP - INSTALLATION, REAR FOG	8L-33	LATCH STRIKER - INSTALLATION	23-20,23-30,23-38
JUMP STARTING - STANDARD PROCEDURE	0-14	LAMP - INSTALLATION, VANITY	8L-42	LATCH STRIKER - INSTALLATION, FLIP-UP GLASS	23-17
JUNCTION BLOCK - DESCRIPTION	8W-97-4	LAMP - OPERATION, FRONT POSITION	8L-14	LATCH STRIKER - INSTALLATION, GLOVE BOX	23-55
JUNCTION BLOCK - INSTALLATION	8W-97-6	LAMP - OPERATION, READING	8L-42	LATCH STRIKER - REMOVAL	23-19,23-30,23-38
JUNCTION BLOCK - OPERATION	8W-97-5	LAMP - OPERATION, REAR FOG	8L-33	LATCH STRIKER - REMOVAL, FLIP-UP GLASS	23-17
JUNCTION BLOCK - REMOVAL	8W-97-5	LAMP - OPERATION, SIDE REPEATER	8L-34	LATCH STRIKER - REMOVAL, GLOVE BOX	23-55
KEY - DESCRIPTION, TRANSPONDER	80-15	LAMP - OPERATION, SKIS INDICATOR	80-14	LATCH/GUIDE PLATE - INSTALLATION	23-19
KEY - OPERATION, TRANSPONDER	80-15	LAMP - OPERATION, TAIL	8L-35	LATCH/GUIDE PLATE - REMOVAL	23-19
KEY CYLINDER - INSTALLATION	19-15	LAMP - REMOVAL	8L-25,8L-35,8L-36,8L-39	LATCH/HINGE - INSTALLATION, FOLDING REAR SEAT BACK	23-107
KEY CYLINDER - REMOVAL	19-14	LAMP - REMOVAL, EXHAUSTER - TAIL	23-42	LATCH/HINGE - REMOVAL, FOLDING REAR SEAT BACK	23-107
KEY IMMOBILIZER MODULE - DESCRIPTION, SENTRY	8E-17	LAMP - REMOVAL, FOG	8L-12	LEAD - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, TIRE/VEHICLE	22-8
KEY IMMOBILIZER MODULE - INSTALLATION, SENTRY	8E-19	LAMP - REMOVAL, FRONT POSITION	8L-15	LEAK - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, CONVERTER HOUSING FLUID	21-16,21-184
KEY IMMOBILIZER MODULE - OPERATION, SENTRY	8E-17	LAMP - REMOVAL, READING	8L-42	LEAK - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, ENGINE OIL	9-130,9-53
KEY IMMOBILIZER MODULE - REMOVAL, SENTRY	8E-19	LAMP - REMOVAL, REAR FOG	8L-33	LEAK DETECTION PUMP - DESCRIPTION	25-16
KEY IMMOBILIZER SYSTEM - DESCRIPTION, SENTRY	8Q-2	LAMP - REMOVAL, VANITY	8L-42	LEAK DETECTION PUMP - INSTALLATION	25-21
KEY IMMOBILIZER SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, SENTRY	8Q-4	LAMP ADJUSTMENT, ADJUSTMENTS - FOG	8L-13	LEAK DETECTION PUMP - OPERATION	25-17
KEY IMMOBILIZER SYSTEM - OPERATION, SENTRY	8Q-4	LAMP BRACKET - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT PANEL COURTESY	23-66	LEAK DETECTION PUMP - REMOVAL	25-21
KEY TRANSPONDER PROGRAMMING - STANDARD PROCEDURE, SENTRY	8Q-6	LAMP BRACKET - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT PANEL COURTESY	23-65	LEAK DETECTION TEST - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, ENABLING CONDITIONS TO RUN EVAP	25-19
KEY-IN IGNITION SWITCH - DESCRIPTION	19-13	LAMP INDICATOR - DESCRIPTION, FRONT FOG	8J-21	LEAKAGE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, CYLINDER COMBUSTION PRESSURE	9-70,9-8
KEY-IN IGNITION SWITCH - OPERATION	19-14	LAMP INDICATOR - DESCRIPTION, REAR FOG	8J-28	LEAKAGE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, INTAKE MANIFOLD	9-137,9-57
KEY-IN IGNITION SWITCH, DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	19-14	LAMP INDICATOR - OPERATION, FRONT FOG	8J-21	LEAKAGE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, PUMP	19-34
KEYLESS ENTRY MODULE - DESCRIPTION, REMOTE	8N-9	LAMP INDICATOR - OPERATION, REAR FOG	8J-28	LEAKS - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, COOLING SYSTEM	7-11
KEYLESS ENTRY MODULE - OPERATION, REMOTE	8N-9	LAMP (MIL) - DESCRIPTION, MALFUNCTION INDICATOR	8J-24	LEAKS - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, REAR SEAL AREA	9-130,9-9
KEYLESS ENTRY SYSTEM - DESCRIPTION, REMOTE	8N-2	LAMP (MIL) - OPERATION, MALFUNCTION INDICATOR	8J-24	LEAKS - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, REFRIGERANT SYSTEM	24-55
KEYLESS ENTRY SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, REMOTE	8N-6	LAMP MODULE - DESCRIPTION, DAYTIME RUNNING	8L-12	LEAKS - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, WATER	23-1
KEYLESS ENTRY SYSTEM - OPERATION, REMOTE	8N-5	LAMP MODULE - INSTALLATION, DAYTIME RUNNING	8L-12	LEAKS - STANDARD PROCEDURE, REPAIRING	22-8
KEYLESS ENTRY TRANSMITTER - DESCRIPTION, REMOTE	8N-9	LAMP MODULE - OPERATION, DAYTIME RUNNING	8L-12	LEARN - STANDARD PROCEDURE, DRIVE	8E-23
KEYLESS ENTRY TRANSMITTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, REMOTE	8N-9	LAMP MODULE - REMOVAL, DAYTIME RUNNING	8L-12	LEARN - STANDARD PROCEDURE, TCM QUICK	8E-23
KEYLESS ENTRY TRANSMITTER - OPERATION, REMOTE	8N-9	LAMP REPLACEMENT - STANDARD PROCEDURE, COURTESY	8M-2	LENS REPLACEMENT - STANDARD PROCEDURE, MODULE	8M-2
KNOB - INSTALLATION, REAR HEADREST RELEASE	23-104	LAMP REPLACEMENT - STANDARD PROCEDURE, MODULE	8M-2	LEVEL - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, EFFECTS OF INCORRECT FLUID	21-232,21-72
KNOB - REMOVAL, REAR HEADREST RELEASE	23-104	LAMP SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, BRAKE FOG	8L-7	LEVEL - STANDARD PROCEDURE, CHECKING BATTERY ELECTROLYTE	8F-14
KNOCK SENSOR - DESCRIPTION	8I-13	LAMP SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, BRAKE	8L-7	LEVEL - STANDARD PROCEDURE, REFRIGERANT OIL	24-76
KNOCK SENSOR - INSTALLATION	8I-15	LAMP SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, REAR FOG	8L-32	LEVEL CHECK - STANDARD PROCEDURE, FLUID	21-233,21-72
KNOCK SENSOR - OPERATION	8I-13	LAMP SWITCH - INSTALLATION, BRAKE	8L-8		
KNOCK SENSOR - REMOVAL	8I-14	LAMP SWITCH - OPERATION, BRAKE	8L-7		
KNUCKLE - DESCRIPTION	2-10	LAMP SWITCH - REMOVAL, BRAKE	8L-8		
		LAMP SWITCH - REMOVAL, REAR FOG	8L-32		
		LAMP UNIT - INSTALLATION, FOG PLATE	8L-13		
		LAMP UNIT - INSTALLATION, LICENSE PLATE	8L-25		
		LAMP UNIT - REMOVAL, FOG	8L-13		
		LAMP UNIT - REMOVAL, LICENSE PLATE	8L-25		



Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page
LEVEL SENDING UNIT / SENSOR - DESCRIPTION, FUEL	14-6	LINE - DESCRIPTION, REFRIGERANT	24-53	LOWER CONTROL ARM - INSTALLATION	2-12, 2-19
LEVEL SENDING UNIT / SENSOR - INSTALLATION, FUEL	14-7	LINE - DESCRIPTION, RETURN	19-39	LOWER CONTROL ARM - OPERATION	2-11, 2-19
LEVEL SENDING UNIT / SENSOR - OPERATION, FUEL	14-6	LINE - OPERATION, PRESSURE	19-39	LOWER CONTROL ARM - REMOVAL	2-11, 2-19
LEVEL SENDING UNIT / SENSOR - REMOVAL, FUEL	14-7	LINE - OPERATION, REFRIGERANT	24-53	LOWER RIGHT CENTER BEZEL - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT PANEL	23-67
LEVEL SENSOR - INSTALLATION, COOLANT	7-25	LINE - OPERATION, RETURN	19-39	LOWER RIGHT CENTER BEZEL - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT PANEL	23-67
LEVEL SENSOR - REMOVAL, COOLANT	7-25	LINE PRESSURE (LP) SENSOR - DESCRIPTION	21-250	LOWER TRIM - INSTALLATION, B-PILLAR	23-83
LEVEL SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, WASHER FLUID	8R-26	LINE PRESSURE (LP) SENSOR - INSTALLATION	21-251	LOWER TRIM - REMOVAL, B-PILLAR	23-83
LEVEL SWITCH - INSTALLATION, BRAKE FLUID	5-8	LINE PRESSURE (LP) SENSOR - OPERATION	21-250	LOW/REVERSE CLUTCH - ASSEMBLY	21-252
LEVEL SWITCH - INSTALLATION, WASHER FLUID	8R-27	LINE PRESSURE (LP) SENSOR - REMOVAL	21-250	LOW/REVERSE CLUTCH - CLEANING	21-252
LEVEL SWITCH - OPERATION, WASHER FLUID	8R-26	LINES - DESCRIPTION, BRAKE	5-9	LOW/REVERSE CLUTCH - DISASSEMBLY	21-251
LEVEL SWITCH - REMOVAL, BRAKE FLUID	5-8	LINES - DESCRIPTION, FUEL	14-7	LOW/REVERSE CLUTCH - INSPECTION	21-252
LEVEL SWITCH - REMOVAL, WASHER FLUID	8R-27	LINES - DESCRIPTION, VACUUM	25-25	LUBRICANT RECOMMENDATIONS - STANDARD PROCEDURE, PARTS	0-1
LEVELING MOTOR - DESCRIPTION, HEADLAMP	8L-19	LINES - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, BRAKE HOSES	5-9	LUBRICANTS, SPECIFICATIONS - BODY	23-13
LEVELING MOTOR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, HEADLAMP	8L-20	LINK - DESCRIPTION, DRAG	19-30	LUBRICATION - DESCRIPTION	9-128, 9-51
LEVELING MOTOR - OPERATION, HEADLAMP	8L-19	LINK - INSTALLATION, DRAG	19-30	LUBRICATION - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, ENGINE DIAGNOSIS	9-69
LEVELING SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, HEADLAMP	8L-20	LINK - OPERATION, DRAG	19-30	LUBRICATION - OPERATION	9-129, 9-51
LEVELING SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, HEADLAMP	8L-20	LINK - REMOVAL, DRAG	19-30	LUBRICATION - STANDARD PROCEDURE, BODY	23-3
LEVELING SWITCH - INSTALLATION, HEADLAMP	8L-21	LINK CONNECTOR - DESCRIPTION, DATA	8E-7	LUGGAGE RACK - INSTALLATION	23-46
LEVELING SWITCH - OPERATION, HEADLAMP	8L-20	LINK CONNECTOR - OPERATION, DATA	8E-7	LUGGAGE RACK - REMOVAL	23-46
LEVELING SWITCH - REMOVAL, HEADLAMP	8L-21	LINKAGE, RIGHT HAND DRIVE (RHD) VEHICLES - STEERING	19-27	LUMBAR ADJUSTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, POWER	8N-26
LEVELING SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, HEADLAMP	8L-4	LINKAGE, SPECIAL TOOLS - STEERING	19-29	LUMBAR CONTROL SWITCH - DESCRIPTION	8N-24
LEVER - INSTALLATION	5-36	LOAD VALUE - DESCRIPTION	25-6	LUMBAR CONTROL SWITCH - INSTALLATION	8N-26
LEVER - REMOVAL	5-36	LOADS - STANDARD PROCEDURE, TESTING FOR A SHORT TO GROUND ON FUSES POWERING SEVERAL	8W-01-10	LUMBAR CONTROL SWITCH - OPERATION	8N-24
LICENSE PLATE LAMP UNIT - INSTALLATION	8L-25	LOCATION - DESCRIPTION, CONNECTOR/ GROUND/SPLICE	8W-97-1	LUMBAR CONTROL SWITCH - REMOVAL	8N-25
LICENSE PLATE LAMP UNIT - REMOVAL	8L-25	LOCATIONS - INSPECTION, FLUID FILL/CHECK	0-7	LUMBAR MOTOR - DESCRIPTION	8N-26
LIFTERS - CLEANING, HYDRAULIC	9-43	LOCATIONS - SPECIFICATIONS, STRUCTURAL ADHESIVE	23-153	LUMBAR MOTOR - OPERATION	8N-26
LIFTERS - DESCRIPTION, HYDRAULIC	9-43	LOCATIONS, SPECIFICATIONS - SEALER	23-134	LUMBAR SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, POWER	8N-25
LIFTERS - INSPECTION, HYDRAULIC	9-43	LOCATIONS, SPECIFICATIONS - WELD	23-169	MACHINING - STANDARD PROCEDURE, DISC BRAKE ROTOR	5-31
LIFTERS - INSTALLATION, HYDRAULIC	9-44	LOCK - STANDARD PROCEDURE, HYDROSTATIC	9-10	MAIN BEARING - FITTING - STANDARD PROCEDURE, CRANKSHAFT	9-115
LIFTERS - REMOVAL, HYDRAULIC	9-43	LOCK CABLE - INSTALLATION, PARK	21-111, 21-260	MAIN BEARINGS - INSPECTION, CRANKSHAFT	9-116, 9-39
LIFTGATE - ADJUSTMENTS	23-20	LOCK CABLE - REMOVAL, PARK	21-110, 21-259	MAIN BEARINGS - INSTALLATION, CRANKSHAFT	9-40
LIFTGATE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	23-15	LOCK CYLINDER - INSTALLATION	23-30	MAIN BEARINGS - REMOVAL, CRANKSHAFT	9-39
LIFTGATE - INSTALLATION	23-20	LOCK CYLINDER - REMOVAL	23-30	MAIN BEARINGS - STANDARD PROCEDURE, FITTING CRANKSHAFT	9-36
LIFTGATE - REMOVAL	23-20	LOCK MOTOR - DESCRIPTION, POWER	8N-7	MAINTENANCE SCHEDULES - DESCRIPTION	0-7
LIFTGATE AJAR SWITCH - DESCRIPTION	8L-40	LOCK MOTOR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, POWER	8N-8	MALFUNCTION INDICATOR LAMP (MIL) - DESCRIPTION	8J-24
LIFTGATE AJAR SWITCH - OPERATION	8L-40	LOCK MOTOR - OPERATION, POWER	8N-7	MALFUNCTION INDICATOR LAMP (MIL) - OPERATION	8J-24
LIFTGATE FLIP-UP GLASS POWER RELEASE SYSTEM - DESCRIPTION	8N-4	LOCK SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, DOOR CYLINDER	8N-7	MANAGER - DESCRIPTION, TASK	25-2
LIFTGATE FLIP-UP GLASS POWER RELEASE SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8N-6	LOCK SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, POWER	8N-8	MANAGER - OPERATION, TASK	25-6
LIFTGATE FLIP-UP GLASS POWER RELEASE SYSTEM - OPERATION	8N-5	LOCK SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, DOOR CYLINDER	8Q-8	MANIFOLD - CLEANING, INTAKE	9-138
LIFTGATE INSULATOR PAD - INSTALLATION	23-21	LOCK SWITCH - INSTALLATION, DOOR CYLINDER	8Q-8	MANIFOLD - DESCRIPTION, EXHAUST	9-59
LIFTGATE INSULATOR PAD - REMOVAL	23-21	LOCK SWITCH - OPERATION, DOOR CYLINDER	8N-7	MANIFOLD - DESCRIPTION, INTAKE	9-137, 9-57
LIFTGATE OPENING UPPER TRIM - INSTALLATION	23-92	LOCK SWITCH - OPERATION, POWER	8N-8	MANIFOLD - INSPECTION, INTAKE	9-138
LIFTGATE OPENING UPPER TRIM - REMOVAL	23-91	LOCK SWITCH - REMOVAL, DOOR CYLINDER	8Q-8	MANIFOLD - INSTALLATION, EXHAUST	9-59
LIFTGATE OPENING WEATHERSTRIP - INSTALLATION	23-124	LOCK SYSTEM - DESCRIPTION, POWER	8N-1	MANIFOLD - INSTALLATION, INTAKE	9-138, 9-58
LIFTGATE OPENING WEATHERSTRIP - REMOVAL	23-124	LOCK SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, POWER	8N-5	MANIFOLD - LEFT - CLEANING, EXHAUST	9-139
LIFTGATE SCUFF PLATE - INSTALLATION	23-92	LOCK SYSTEM - OPERATION, POWER	8N-4	MANIFOLD - LEFT - DESCRIPTION, EXHAUST	9-139
LIFTGATE SCUFF PLATE - REMOVAL	23-92	LOOP ADJUSTER - INSTALLATION, SEAT BELT TURNING	8Q-44	MANIFOLD - LEFT - INSPECTION, EXHAUST	9-139
LIGHTER OUTLET - DESCRIPTION, CIGAR	8W-97-2	LOOP ADJUSTER - REMOVAL, SEAT BELT TURNING	8Q-44	MANIFOLD - LEFT - INSTALLATION, EXHAUST	9-140
LIGHTER OUTLET - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, CIGAR	8W-97-2	LOW FUEL INDICATOR - DESCRIPTION	8J-23	MANIFOLD - LEFT - REMOVAL, EXHAUST	9-139
LIGHTER OUTLET - OPERATION, CIGAR	8W-97-2	LOW FUEL INDICATOR - OPERATION	8J-23	MANIFOLD - REMOVAL, EXHAUST	9-59
LIGHTER OUTLET DOOR SPRING - INSTALLATION, CIGAR	8W-97-3	LOW INDICATOR - DESCRIPTION, COOLANT	8J-18	MANIFOLD - REMOVAL, INTAKE	9-137, 9-58
LIGHTER OUTLET DOOR SPRING - REMOVAL, CIGAR	8W-97-3	LOW INDICATOR - OPERATION, COOLANT	8J-18	MANIFOLD - RIGHT - CLEANING, EXHAUST	9-141
LIMITS - DESCRIPTION, HIGH AND LOW	25-6	LOW LIMITS - DESCRIPTION, HIGH	25-6	MANIFOLD - RIGHT - DESCRIPTION, EXHAUST	9-141
LINE - DESCRIPTION, PRESSURE	19-39	LOWER - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT PANEL CENTER BEZEL	23-63	MANIFOLD - RIGHT - INSPECTION, EXHAUST	9-141
		LOWER - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT PANEL CENTER BEZEL	23-62	MANIFOLD - RIGHT - INSTALLATION, EXHAUST	9-141
		LOWER BALL JOINT - REMOVAL	2-11	MANIFOLD - RIGHT - REMOVAL, EXHAUST	9-141
		LOWER CONTROL ARM - DESCRIPTION	2-11, 2-19	MANIFOLD LEAKAGE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, INTAKE	9-137, 9-57

Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page
MANUAL & AZC (DRIVERSIDE ONLY) - INSTALLATION	24-31	MIRROR - EXPORT - OPERATION, POWER FOLD-AWAY	8N-14	MODULE - INSTALLATION, CONTROL	23-116
MANUAL & AZC SYSTEMS (DRIVERSIDE ONLY ON AZC) - REMOVAL	24-30	MIRROR - EXPORT - REMOVAL, POWER FOLD-AWAY	8N-14	MODULE - INSTALLATION, DAYTIME RUNNING LAMP	8L-12
MANUAL BLEEDING - STANDARD PROCEDURE	5-5	MIRROR - INSTALLATION, SIDE VIEW	23-47	MODULE - INSTALLATION, DOOR	8E-10
MASTER CYLINDER - DESCRIPTION	5-22	MIRROR - OPERATION, OUTSIDE REAR VIEW	8N-13	MODULE - INSTALLATION, FRONT WIPER	8R-18
MASTER CYLINDER - INSTALLATION	5-23	MIRROR - OPERATION, REAR VIEW	8N-13	MODULE - INSTALLATION, FUEL PUMP	14-9
MASTER CYLINDER - OPERATION	5-22	MIRROR - OPERATION, SIDEVIEW	8N-15	MODULE - INSTALLATION, INTRUSION TRANSCIEVER	8Q-12
MASTER CYLINDER - REMOVAL	5-23	MIRROR - REMOVAL, REAR VIEW	23-94	MODULE - INSTALLATION, MEMORY HEATED SEAT/MIRROR	8E-11
MASTER CYLINDER BLEEDING PROCEDURE - STANDARD	5-23	MIRROR - REMOVAL, SIDE VIEW	23-46	MODULE - INSTALLATION, MEMORY HEATED SEAT/MIRROR	8G-19
MASTER CYLINDER/POWER BOOSTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	5-22	MIRROR GLASS - INSTALLATION, SIDE VIEW	23-46	MODULE - INSTALLATION, RAIN SENSOR	8R-21
MATCH MOUNTING - STANDARD PROCEDURE	22-4	MIRROR GLASS - REMOVAL, SIDE VIEW	23-46	MODULE - INSTALLATION, REAR WIPER	8R-49
MATCHING TIRE - DESCRIPTION, FULL SIZE, SPARE WHEEL WITH	22-11	MIRROR SUPPORT BRACKET - INSTALLATION, REARVIEW	23-94	MODULE - INSTALLATION, SENTRY KEY IMMOBILIZER	8E-19
MEASURING CRANKSHAFT END PLAY - STANDARD PROCEDURE	9-112	MIRROR SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, POWER	8N-15	MODULE - OPERATION, AIRBAG CONTROL	8Q-10
MEASURING TIMING CHAIN WEAR - STANDARD PROCEDURE	9-146	MIRROR SWITCH - OPERATION, POWER	8N-15	MODULE - OPERATION, BODY CONTROL	8E-3
MECHANICAL - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, ENGINE DIAGNOSIS	9-6,9-68	MIRRORS - DESCRIPTION, HEATED	8G-8	MODULE - OPERATION, DAYTIME RUNNING LAMP	8L-12
MECHANISM - DESCRIPTION, BRAKE TRANSMISSION SHIFT INTERLOCK	21-230, 21-64	MIRRORS - DESCRIPTION, POWER	8N-11	MODULE - OPERATION, DOOR	8E-9
MECHANISM - DESCRIPTION, SHIFT	21-125, 21-266	MIRRORS - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, HEATED	8G-8	MODULE - OPERATION, FRONT WIPER	8R-18
MECHANISM - INSTALLATION, REAR HEADREST FOLDING	23-104	MIRRORS - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, POWER	8N-12	MODULE - OPERATION, FUEL PUMP	14-9
MECHANISM - INSTALLATION, SHIFT	21-127, 21-266	MIRRORS - OPERATION, HEATED	8G-8	MODULE - OPERATION, INTRUSION TRANSCIEVER	8Q-11
MECHANISM - OPERATION, BRAKE TRANSMISSION SHIFT INTERLOCK	21-230, 21-65	MIRRORS - OPERATION, POWER	8N-12	MODULE - OPERATION, MEMORY HEATED SEAT/MIRROR	8E-11
MECHANISM - OPERATION, SHIFT	21-125, 21-266	MODE - DESCRIPTION, CIRCUIT ACTUATION TEST	25-1	MODULE - OPERATION, MEMORY HEATED SEAT/MIRROR	8G-18
MECHANISM - REMOVAL, REAR HEADREST FOLDING	23-104	MODE - DESCRIPTION, STATE DISPLAY TEST	25-1	MODULE - OPERATION, RAIN SENSOR	8R-19
MECHANISM - REMOVAL, SHIFT	21-125,21-266	MODE DOOR ACTUATOR - DESCRIPTION	24-32	MODULE - OPERATION, REAR WIPER	8R-47
MEMORY HEATED SEAT/MIRROR MODULE - DESCRIPTION	8E-10	Modes of OPERATION, DESCRIPTION	8E-12	MODULE - OPERATION, REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY	8N-9
MEMORY HEATED SEAT/MIRROR MODULE - DESCRIPTION	8G-17	MODULE - 4.0L - DESCRIPTION, PWM FAN CONTROL	7-39	MODULE - OPERATION, SENTRY KEY IMMOBILIZER	8E-17
MEMORY HEATED SEAT/MIRROR MODULE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8E-11	MODULE - 4.0L - INSTALLATION, PWM FAN CONTROL	7-40	MODULE - OPERATION, TRANSMISSION CONTROL	8E-20
MEMORY HEATED SEAT/MIRROR MODULE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8G-18	MODULE - 4.0L - OPERATION, PWM FAN CONTROL	7-39	MODULE - REMOVAL, ADJUSTABLE PEDALS	8E-2
MEMORY HEATED SEAT/MIRROR MODULE - INSTALLATION	8E-11	MODULE - 4.0L - REMOVAL, PWM FAN CONTROL	7-40	MODULE - REMOVAL, AIRBAG CONTROL	8Q-11
MEMORY HEATED SEAT/MIRROR MODULE - INSTALLATION	8G-19	MODULE - DESCRIPTION, AIRBAG CONTROL	8Q-10	MODULE - REMOVAL, BODY CONTROL	8E-5
MEMORY HEATED SEAT/MIRROR MODULE - OPERATION	8E-11	MODULE - DESCRIPTION, BODY CONTROL	8E-3	MODULE - REMOVAL, CONTROL	23-115
MEMORY HEATED SEAT/MIRROR MODULE - OPERATION	8G-18	MODULE - DESCRIPTION, DAYTIME RUNNING LAMP	8L-12	MODULE - REMOVAL, DAYTIME RUNNING LAMP	8L-12
MEMORY HEATED SEAT/MIRROR MODULE - REMOVAL	8E-11	MODULE - DESCRIPTION, DOOR	8E-7	MODULE - REMOVAL, DOOR	8E-10
MEMORY HEATED SEAT/MIRROR MODULE - REMOVAL	8G-18	MODULE - DESCRIPTION, FRONT WIPER	8R-17	MODULE - REMOVAL, FRONT WIPER	8R-18
MEMORY SET SWITCH - DESCRIPTION	8N-27	MODULE - DESCRIPTION, FUEL PUMP	14-8	MODULE - REMOVAL, FUEL PUMP	14-9
MEMORY SET SWITCH - INSTALLATION	8N-28	MODULE - DESCRIPTION, INTRUSION TRANSCIEVER	8Q-11	MODULE - REMOVAL, INTRUSION TRANSCIEVER	8Q-12
MEMORY SET SWITCH - OPERATION	8N-27	MODULE - DESCRIPTION, MEMORY HEATED SEAT/MIRROR	8E-10	MODULE - REMOVAL, MEMORY HEATED SEAT/MIRROR	8E-11
MEMORY SET SWITCH - REMOVAL	8N-28	MODULE - DESCRIPTION, MEMORY HEATED SEAT/MIRROR	8G-17	MODULE - REMOVAL, MEMORY HEATED SEAT/MIRROR	8G-18
MEMORY SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8N-27	MODULE - DESCRIPTION, RAIN SENSOR	8R-19	MODULE - REMOVAL, RAIN SENSOR	8R-20
MEMORY SYSTEM - DESCRIPTION	8N-19	MODULE - DESCRIPTION, REAR WIPER	8R-47	MODULE - REMOVAL, REAR WIPER	8R-48
MEMORY SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS & TESTING	8N-20	MODULE - DESCRIPTION, REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY	8N-9	MODULE - REMOVAL, SENTRY KEY IMMOBILIZER	8E-19
MEMORY SYSTEM - OPERATION	8N-20	MODULE - DESCRIPTION, SENTRY KEY IMMOBILIZER	8E-17	MODULE (2.7L DIESEL) - INSTALLATION, PRESSURE HOSE - GEAR TO HYDRAULIC FAN	19-45
METRIC SYSTEM - DESCRIPTION	Intro-7	MODULE - DESCRIPTION, TRANSMISSION CONTROL	8E-20	MODULE (2.7L DIESEL) - INSTALLATION, PRESSURE HOSE PUMP TO THE HYDRAULIC FAN	19-45
MICRO 420 BATTERY TESTER - STANDARD PROCEDURE, USING	8F-10	MODULE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, BODY CONTROL	8E-4	MODULE (2.7L DIESEL) - INSTALLATION, RETURN HOSE - RESERVOIR TO THE HYDRAULIC FAN	19-45
MIRROR - DESCRIPTION, OUTSIDE REAR VIEW	8N-13	MODULE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, DOOR	8E-10	MODULE (2.7L DIESEL) - REMOVAL, PRESSURE HOSE - GEAR TO THE HYDRAULIC FAN	19-44
MIRROR - DESCRIPTION, REAR VIEW	8N-12	MODULE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, MEMORY HEATED SEAT/MIRROR	8E-11	MODULE (2.7L DIESEL) - REMOVAL, PRESSURE HOSE - PUMP TO THE HYDRAULIC FAN	19-43
MIRROR - DESCRIPTION, SIDEVIEW	8N-15	MODULE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, MEMORY HEATED SEAT/MIRROR	8G-18	MODULE (2.7L DIESEL) - REMOVAL, RETURN HOSE - RESERVOIR TO THE HYDRAULIC FAN	19-44
MIRROR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, AUTOMATIC DAY / NIGHT	8N-13	MODULE - EXPORT - DESCRIPTION, ANTENNA	8A-10	MODULE (HMM) - INSTALLATION, HEADLAMP MOUNTING	23-45
MIRROR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, SIDEVIEW	8N-15	MODULE - EXPORT - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, ANTENNA	8A-10	MODULE (HMM) - REMOVAL, HEADLAMP MOUNTING	23-45
MIRROR - EXPORT - DESCRIPTION, POWER FOLD-AWAY	8N-14	MODULE - EXPORT - INSTALLATION, ANTENNA	8A-11	MODULE LAMP REPLACEMENT - STANDARD PROCEDURE	8M-2
MIRROR - EXPORT - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, POWER FOLD-AWAY	8N-14	MODULE - EXPORT - OPERATION, ANTENNA	8A-10	MODULE LENS REPLACEMENT - STANDARD PROCEDURE	8M-2
		MODULE - EXPORT - REMOVAL, ANTENNA	8A-10	MOLDINGS - INSTALLATION, BODY SIDE	23-41
		MODULE - INSTALLATION, ADJUSTABLE PEDALS	8E-3	MOLDINGS - REMOVAL, BODY SIDE	23-40
		MODULE - INSTALLATION, AIRBAG CONTROL	8Q-12		
		MODULE - INSTALLATION, BODY CONTROL	8E-5		

Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page
MONITORED SYSTEMS - DESCRIPTION	25-2	MOUNTING - STANDARD PROCEDURE, MATCH	22-4	NV147 - INSPECTION, TRANSFER CASE	21-290
MONITORING SYSTEM - DESCRIPTION, TIRE PRESSURE	22-13	MOUNTING HOUSING - INSTALLATION, MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH	8L-31	NV147 - INSTALLATION, TRANSFER CASE	21-298
MONITORING SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, TIRE PRESSURE	22-13	MOUNTING HOUSING - REMOVAL, MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH	8L-29	NV147 - OPERATION, TRANSFER CASE	21-285
MONITORING SYSTEM - OPERATION, TIRE PRESSURE	22-13	MOUNTING MODULE (HMM) - INSTALLATION, HEADLAMP	23-45	NV147 - REMOVAL, TRANSFER CASE	21-286
MONITORS - DESCRIPTION, COMPONENT	25-5	MOUNTING MODULE (HMM) - REMOVAL, HEADLAMP	23-45	NV147 - TRANSFER CASE	21-299
MOTOR - DESCRIPTION, BLOWER	24-39	MUFFLER - DESCRIPTION	11-12	NV242 - ASSEMBLY, TRANSFER CASE	21-319
MOTOR - DESCRIPTION, HEADLAMP LEVELING	8L-19	MUFFLER - INSTALLATION	11-13	NV242 - CLEANING, TRANSFER CASE	21-316
MOTOR - DESCRIPTION, IDLE AIR CONTROL	14-31	MUFFLER - REMOVAL	11-12	NV242 - DESCRIPTION, TRANSFER CASE	0-5
MOTOR - DESCRIPTION, LUMBAR	8N-26	MULTI - FUNCTION SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, LEFT	8L-27	NV242 - DESCRIPTION, TRANSFER CASE	21-303
MOTOR - DESCRIPTION, POWER LOCK	8N-7	MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, LEFT	8L-26	NV242 - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, TRANSFER CASE	21-304
MOTOR - DESCRIPTION, RECLINER	8N-31	MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, RIGHT	8R-21	NV242 - DISASSEMBLY, TRANSFER CASE	21-305
MOTOR - DESCRIPTION, STARTER	8F-36	MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, RIGHT	8R-23	NV242 - INSPECTION, TRANSFER CASE	21-316
MOTOR - DESCRIPTION, WINDOW	8N-39	MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH - INSTALLATION, LEFT	8L-30	NV242 - INSTALLATION, TRANSFER CASE	21-331
MOTOR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, BLOWER	24-39	MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH - INSTALLATION, RIGHT	8R-25	NV242 - OPERATION, TRANSFER CASE	21-304
MOTOR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, HEADLAMP LEVELING	8L-20	MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH - OPERATION, LEFT	8L-26	NV242 - REMOVAL, TRANSFER CASE	21-305
MOTOR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, POWER LOCK	8N-8	MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH - OPERATION, RIGHT	8R-22	NV242 - TRANSFER CASE	21-332
MOTOR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, RECLINER	8N-31	MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH - REMOVAL, LEFT	8L-29	NV242HD - INSTALLATION, REAR RETAINER BUSHING AND SEAL	21-336
MOTOR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, STARTER	8F-37	MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH - REMOVAL, RIGHT	8R-25	NV242HD - REMOVAL, REAR RETAINER BUSHING AND SEAL	21-336
MOTOR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, WINDOW	8N-39	MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH MOUNTING HOUSING - INSTALLATION	8L-31	NV247 - ASSEMBLY, TRANSFER CASE	21-349
MOTOR - INSTALLATION, BLOWER	24-40	MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH MOUNTING HOUSING - REMOVAL	8L-29	NV247 - CLEANING, TRANSFER CASE	21-348
MOTOR - INSTALLATION, DRIVE	23-116	NAG1 - DESCRIPTION, AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID	0-5	NV247 - DESCRIPTION, TRANSFER CASE	0-5
MOTOR - INSTALLATION, PEDAL	5-27	NAME PLATES - INSTALLATION, EXTERIOR	23-42	NV247 - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, TRANSFER CASE	21-340
MOTOR - INSTALLATION, STARTER	8F-39	NAME PLATES - REMOVAL, EXTERIOR	23-42	NV247 - DISASSEMBLY, TRANSFER CASE	21-342
MOTOR - INSTALLATION, WINDOW	8N-40	NAVIGATION RADIO - INSTALLATION, ANTENNA	8A-9	NV247 - INSPECTION, TRANSFER CASE	21-348
MOTOR - OPERATION, BLOWER	24-39	NAVIGATION RADIO - REMOVAL, ANTENNA	8A-9	NV247 - INSTALLATION, TRANSFER CASE	21-359
MOTOR - OPERATION, HEADLAMP LEVELING	8L-19	NIGHT MIRROR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, AUTOMATIC DAY	8N-13	NV247 - OPERATION, TRANSFER CASE	21-340
MOTOR - OPERATION, IDLE AIR CONTROL	14-32	NOISE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, COMPRESSOR	24-59	NV247 - REMOVAL, TRANSFER CASE	21-341
MOTOR - OPERATION, LUMBAR	8N-26	NOISE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, WIND	23-2	NV247 - TRANSFER CASE	21-360
MOTOR - OPERATION, POWER LOCK	8N-7	NOISE OR VIBRATION - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, TIRE	22-8	O2S HEATER RELAY - DESCRIPTION	14-37
MOTOR - OPERATION, RECLINER	8N-31	NOISE SUPPRESSION GROUND STRAP - DESCRIPTION, RADIO	8A-17	O2S HEATER RELAY - INSTALLATION	14-37
MOTOR - OPERATION, STARTER	8F-37	NON-ADJUSTABLE PEDAL - INSTALLATION	5-26	O2S HEATER RELAY - OPERATION	14-37
MOTOR - OPERATION, WINDOW	8N-39	NON-ADJUSTABLE PEDAL - REMOVAL	5-24	O2S HEATER RELAY - REMOVAL	14-37
MOTOR - REMOVAL, BLOWER	24-39	NON-DEPLOYED SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINTS - STANDARD PROCEDURE, HANDLING	80-6	O2S SENSOR - DESCRIPTION	14-37
MOTOR - REMOVAL, DRIVE	23-116	NON-MONITORED CIRCUITS - DESCRIPTION	25-5	O2S SENSOR - INSTALLATION	14-39
MOTOR - REMOVAL, PEDAL	5-27	NORTH AMERICA - INSTALLATION, EXCEPT	80-33	O2S SENSOR - OPERATION	14-37
MOTOR - REMOVAL, STARTER	8F-38	NOZZLE - DESCRIPTION, FRONT WASHER	8R-12	O2S SENSOR - REMOVAL	14-38
MOTOR - REMOVAL, WINDOW	8N-40	NOZZLE - DESCRIPTION, REAR WASHER	8R-41	ODOMETER - DESCRIPTION	8J-25
MOTOR CONTROLLER - DESCRIPTION, BLOWER	24-27	NOZZLE - INSTALLATION, FRONT WASHER	8R-13	ODOMETER - OPERATION	8J-25
MOTOR CONTROLLER - INSTALLATION, BLOWER	24-27	NOZZLE - INSTALLATION, REAR WASHER	8R-42	OIL - DESCRIPTION, ENGINE	0-4
MOTOR CONTROLLER - OPERATION, BLOWER	24-27	NOZZLE - OPERATION, FRONT WASHER	8R-12	OIL - DESCRIPTION, REFRIGERANT	24-76
MOTOR CONTROLLER - REMOVAL, BLOWER	24-27	NOZZLE - OPERATION, REAR WASHER	8R-41	OIL - STANDARD PROCEDURE, ENGINE	9-131
MOTOR, GAS POWERED - STARTER	8F-36	NOZZLE - REMOVAL, FRONT WASHER	8R-12	OIL, DESCRIPTION - ENGINE	0-3
MOTOR RELAY - DESCRIPTION, STARTER	8F-39	NOZZLE - REMOVAL, REAR WASHER	8R-42	OIL FILTER - INSTALLATION	9-133,9-55
MOTOR RELAY - INSTALLATION, STARTER	8F-40	NUMBER - DESCRIPTION, VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION	Intro-1	OIL FILTER - REMOVAL	9-133,9-54
MOTOR RELAY - OPERATION, STARTER	8F-39	NV147 - ASSEMBLY, TRANSFER CASE	21-291	OIL GALLERY PLUGS - STANDARD PROCEDURE, ENGINE CORE	9-11,9-72
MOTOR RELAY - REMOVAL, STARTER	8F-40	NV147 - CLEANING, TRANSFER CASE	21-290	OIL LEAK - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, ENGINE	9-130,9-53
MOTOR RESISTOR BLOCK - DESCRIPTION, BLOWER	24-28	NV147 - DESCRIPTION, TRANSFER CASE	0-5	OIL LEVEL - STANDARD PROCEDURE, REFRIGERANT	24-76
MOTOR RESISTOR BLOCK - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, BLOWER	24-28	NV147 - DESCRIPTION, TRANSFER CASE	21-284	OIL PAN - CLEANING	9-133
MOTOR RESISTOR BLOCK - INSTALLATION, BLOWER	24-28	NV147 - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, TRANSFER CASE	21-285	OIL PAN - DESCRIPTION	9-133,9-55
MOTOR RESISTOR BLOCK - OPERATION, BLOWER	24-28	NV147 - DISASSEMBLY, TRANSFER CASE	21-286	OIL PAN - INSPECTION	9-134
MOTOR RESISTOR BLOCK - REMOVAL, BLOWER	24-28			OIL PAN - INSTALLATION	9-134,9-55
MOTOR SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, BLOWER	24-29			OIL PAN - REMOVAL	9-133,9-55
MOTOR SWITCH - OPERATION, BLOWER	24-29			OIL PRESSURE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, ENGINE	9-129,9-53
MOTOR SWITCH - REMOVAL, BLOWER	24-29			OIL PRESSURE GAUGE - DESCRIPTION	8J-26
MOTOR SWITCH-MANUAL TEMPERATURE CONTROL SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, BLOWER	24-29			OIL PRESSURE GAUGE - OPERATION	8J-26
MOUNT - INSTALLATION, FRONT	9-126			OIL PRESSURE SENSOR - DESCRIPTION, ENGINE	9-57
MOUNT - INSTALLATION, REAR	9-127			OIL PRESSURE SENSOR - OPERATION, ENGINE	9-57
MOUNT - REMOVAL, FRONT	9-126			OIL PRESSURE SENSOR/SWITCH - DESCRIPTION	9-134
MOUNT - REMOVAL, REAR	9-127			OIL PRESSURE SENSOR/SWITCH - INSTALLATION	9-135
				OIL PRESSURE SENSOR/SWITCH - OPERATION	9-134
				OIL PRESSURE SENSOR/SWITCH - REMOVAL	9-134
				OIL PUMP - ASSEMBLY	9-136
				OIL PUMP - ASSEMBLY	21-257,21-86
				OIL PUMP - CLEANING	9-135
				OIL PUMP - CLEANING	21-257,21-85



Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page
OIL PUMP - DESCRIPTION	21-253,21-83	OUTLET COOLER HOSE - REMOVAL	19-42	OVERRUNNING CLUTCH CAM/ OVERDRIVE PISTON RETAINER - DISASSEMBLY	21-108
OIL PUMP - DISASSEMBLY	9-135	OUTLET COOLER HOSE (2.7L DIESEL) - INSTALLATION	19-46	OVERRUNNING CLUTCH CAM/ OVERDRIVE PISTON RETAINER - INSPECTION	21-109
OIL PUMP - DISASSEMBLY	21-255,21-83	OUTLET COOLER HOSE (2.7L DIESEL) - REMOVAL	19-44	OVERRUNNING CLUTCH CAM/ OVERDRIVE PISTON RETAINER - OPERATION	21-108
OIL PUMP - INSPECTION	9-135	OUTLET DOOR - INSTALLATION, PANEL	24-50	PAD - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT PANEL TOP	23-60
OIL PUMP - INSPECTION	21-257,21-85	OUTLET DOOR - REMOVAL, PANEL	24-48	PAD - INSTALLATION, LIFTGATE INSULATOR	23-21
OIL PUMP - INSTALLATION	9-136,9-57	OUTLET DOOR SPRING - INSTALLATION, CIGAR LIGHTER	8W-97-3	PAD - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT PANEL TOP	23-58
OIL PUMP - OPERATION	21-253,21-83	OUTLET DOOR SPRING - REMOVAL, CIGAR LIGHTER	8W-97-3	PAD - REMOVAL, LIFTGATE INSULATOR	23-21
OIL PUMP - REMOVAL	9-135,9-57	OUTLET HOSE - DESCRIPTION, 3/8" GEAR	19-40	PADS - DESCRIPTION, FRONT DISC BRAKE	5-10
OIL PUMP FRONT SEAL - INSTALLATION	21-258	OUTLET HOSE - INSTALLATION, 3/8" GEAR	19-43	PADS - DESCRIPTION, REAR DISC BRAKE	5-10
OIL PUMP FRONT SEAL - REMOVAL	21-258	OUTLET HOSE - OPERATION, 3/8" GEAR	19-41	PADS - INSTALLATION, REAR DISC BRAKE	5-14
OIL PUMP VOLUME CHECK - STANDARD PROCEDURE	21-254	OUTLET HOSE - REMOVAL, 3/8" GEAR	19-42	PADS - OPERATION, FRONT DISC BRAKE	5-11
OIL SEAL - FRONT - INSTALLATION, CRANKSHAFT	9-117,9-42	OUTLET HOSE (2.7L DIESEL) - INSTALLATION, 3/8" GEAR	19-45	PADS - OPERATION, REAR DISC BRAKE	5-11
OIL SEAL - FRONT - REMOVAL, CRANKSHAFT	9-116,9-41	OUTLET HOSE (2.7L DIESEL) - REMOVAL, 3/8" GEAR	19-44	PADS - REMOVAL, REAR DISC BRAKE	5-12
OIL SEAL - REAR - INSTALLATION, CRANKSHAFT	9-118,9-42	OUTLET RELAY - DESCRIPTION, POWER	8W-97-13	PAINT CODE - DESCRIPTION	23-96
OIL SEAL - REAR - REMOVAL, CRANKSHAFT	9-118,9-42	OUTLET RELAY - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, POWER	8W-97-13	PAINT CODES - SPECIFICATIONS	23-96
OIL SERVICE - STANDARD PROCEDURE, ENGINE	9-54	OUTLET RELAY - INSTALLATION, POWER	8W-97-14	PAINT TOUCH-UP - DESCRIPTION	23-97
ON-BOARD DIAGNOSTICS (OBD) - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	7-4	OUTLET RELAY - OPERATION, POWER	8W-97-13	PAINT TOUCH-UP - STANDARD PROCEDURE	23-97
ON/OFF RELAY - DESCRIPTION, WIPER	8R-32	OUTLET RELAY - REMOVAL, POWER	8W-97-14	PAN - CLEANING, OIL	9-133
ON/OFF RELAY - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, WIPER	8R-32	OUTLETS - INSTALLATION, AIR	24-38	PAN - DESCRIPTION, OIL	9-133,9-55
ON/OFF RELAY - INSTALLATION, WIPER	8R-33	OUTLETS - REMOVAL, AIR	24-38	PAN - INSPECTION, OIL	9-134
ON/OFF RELAY - OPERATION, WIPER	8R-32	OUTPUT - DESCRIPTION, PCM	8I-4	PAN - INSTALLATION, OIL	9-134,9-55
ON/OFF RELAY - REMOVAL, WIPER	8R-33	OUTPUT - OPERATION, PCM	8I-4	PAN - REMOVAL, OIL	9-133,9-55
OPEN-CIRCUIT VOLTAGE TEST - STANDARD PROCEDURE	8F-12	OUTPUT SHAFT FRONT BEARING - INSTALLATION	21-87	PANEL - INSTALLATION, EXHAUSTER - LEFT QUARTER	23-42
OPENING COVER - INSTALLATION, STEERING COLUMN	23-72	OUTPUT SHAFT FRONT BEARING - REMOVAL	21-87	PANEL - INSTALLATION, GLASS	23-117
OPENING COVER - REMOVAL, STEERING COLUMN	23-71	OUTPUT SHAFT REAR BEARING - INSTALLATION	21-88	PANEL - INSTALLATION, QUARTER TRIM	23-93
OPENING DIMENSIONS - SPECIFICATIONS, BODY	23-130	OUTPUT SHAFT REAR BEARING - REMOVAL	21-87	PANEL - INSTALLATION, TRIM	23-21,23-31, 23-38
OPENING UPPER TRIM - INSTALLATION, LIFTGATE	23-92	OUTPUT SHAFT SEAL - INSTALLATION, FRONT	21-301,21-334,21-362	PANEL - REMOVAL, EXHAUSTER - LEFT QUARTER	23-42
OPENING UPPER TRIM - REMOVAL, LIFTGATE	23-91	OUTPUT SHAFT SEAL - REMOVAL, FRONT	21-301,21-334,21-362	PANEL - REMOVAL, GLASS	23-117
OPENING WEATHERSTRIP - INSTALLATION, LIFTGATE	23-124	OUTPUT SPEED SENSOR - DESCRIPTION	21-258	PANEL - REMOVAL, QUARTER TRIM	23-92
OPENING WEATHERSTRIP - REMOVAL, LIFTGATE	23-124	OUTPUT SPEED SENSOR - INSTALLATION	21-259	PANEL - REMOVAL, TRIM	23-21,23-31,23-38
ORDER, 4.0L 6-CYLINDER ENGINE - ENGINE FIRING	8I-2	OUTPUT SPEED SENSOR - OPERATION	21-258	PANEL ANTENNA CABLE - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT	8A-14
ORDER, 4.7L V-8 ENGINE - ENGINE FIRING	8I-2	OUTPUT SPEED SENSOR - REMOVAL	21-259	PANEL ANTENNA CABLE - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT	8A-14
ORIFICE FITTING - INSTALLATION, FIXED	25-15	OUTSIDE REAR VIEW MIRROR - DESCRIPTION	8N-13	PANEL ASSEMBLY - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT	23-78
ORIFICE FITTING - REMOVAL, FIXED	25-15	OUTSIDE REAR VIEW MIRROR - OPERATION	8N-13	PANEL ASSEMBLY - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT	23-72
ORVR - DESCRIPTION	25-23	OVERDRIVE CLUTCH - DESCRIPTION	21-88	PANEL C-CHANNEL COVER BRACKET - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT	23-62
ORVR - OPERATION	25-23	OVERDRIVE CLUTCH - OPERATION	21-88	PANEL C-CHANNEL COVER BRACKET - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT	23-61
OUTBOARD SEAT BELT & RETRACTOR - INSTALLATION, REAR	80-41	OVERDRIVE ELECTRICAL CONTROLS - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	21-89	PANEL CENTER BEZEL - LOWER - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT	23-63
OUTBOARD SEAT BELT & RETRACTOR - REMOVAL, REAR	80-40	OVERDRIVE OFF INDICATOR - DESCRIPTION	8J-27	PANEL CENTER BEZEL - LOWER - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT	23-62
OUTER BELT WEATHERSTRIP - INSTALLATION, FDR	23-122	OVERDRIVE OFF INDICATOR - OPERATION	8J-27	PANEL CENTER BEZEL - UPPER - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT	23-64
OUTER BELT WEATHERSTRIP - INSTALLATION, RDR	23-124	OVERDRIVE OFF SWITCH - DESCRIPTION	21-89	PANEL CENTER BEZEL - UPPER - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT	23-63
OUTER BELT WEATHERSTRIP - REMOVAL, FDR	23-122	OVERDRIVE OFF SWITCH - OPERATION	21-89	PANEL CENTER FLOOR TUNNEL BRACKET - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT	23-65
OUTER BELT WEATHERSTRIP - REMOVAL, RDR	23-124	OVERDRIVE SWITCH - DESCRIPTION	21-259	PANEL CENTER FLOOR TUNNEL BRACKET - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT	23-64
OUTLET - DESCRIPTION, CIGAR LIGHTER	8W-97-2	OVERDRIVE SWITCH - OPERATION	21-259	PANEL COURTESY LAMP BRACKET - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT	23-66
OUTLET - DESCRIPTION, FRONT POWER	8W-97-12	OVERDRIVE UNIT - ASSEMBLY	21-97	PANEL COURTESY LAMP BRACKET - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT	23-65
OUTLET - DESCRIPTION, REAR POWER	8W-97-16	OVERDRIVE UNIT - CLEANING	21-97	PANEL DUCTS - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT	24-42
OUTLET - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, CIGAR LIGHTER	8W-97-2	OVERDRIVE UNIT - DISASSEMBLY	21-90	PANEL DUCTS - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT	24-41
OUTLET - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, POWER	8W-97-12	OVERDRIVE UNIT - INSPECTION	21-97	PANEL END CAP - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT	23-56
OUTLET - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, REAR POWER	8W-97-17	OVERDRIVE UNIT - INSTALLATION	21-107	PANEL END CAP - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT	23-56
OUTLET - INSTALLATION, POWER	8W-97-13	OVERDRIVE UNIT - REMOVAL	21-89	PANEL INTERMEDIATE BRACKET - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT	23-67
OUTLET - INSTALLATION, REAR POWER	8W-97-18	OVERHEAD CONSOLE - DESCRIPTION	8M-1	PANEL INTERMEDIATE BRACKET - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT	23-66
OUTLET - OPERATION, CIGAR LIGHTER	8W-97-2	OVERHEAD CONSOLE - OPERATION	8M-1		
OUTLET - OPERATION, FRONT POWER	8W-97-12	OVERHEAD CONSOLE SPECIAL TOOLS, SPECIAL TOOLS	8M-7		
OUTLET - OPERATION, REAR POWER	8W-97-16	OVERRUNNING CLUTCH CAM/ OVERDRIVE PISTON RETAINER - ASSEMBLY	21-109		
OUTLET - REMOVAL, POWER	8W-97-12	OVERRUNNING CLUTCH CAM/ OVERDRIVE PISTON RETAINER - CLEANING	21-108		
OUTLET - REMOVAL, REAR POWER	8W-97-17	OVERRUNNING CLUTCH CAM/ OVERDRIVE PISTON RETAINER - DESCRIPTION	21-108		
OUTLET COOLER HOSE - INSTALLATION	19-43				

Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page
PANEL LOWER RIGHT CENTER BEZEL - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT	23-67	PASSENGER AIRBAG - REMOVAL	80-36	PISTON RETAINER - DISASSEMBLY, OVERRUNNING CLUTCH CAM/ OVERDRIVE	21-108
PANEL LOWER RIGHT CENTER BEZEL - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT	23-67	PASSENGER HEATED SEAT SWITCH - DESCRIPTION	8G-15	PISTON RETAINER - INSPECTION, OVERRUNNING CLUTCH CAM/ OVERDRIVE	21-109
PANEL OUTLET DOOR - INSTALLATION	24-50	PASSENGER HEATED SEAT SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8G-16	PISTON RETAINER - OPERATION, OVERRUNNING CLUTCH CAM/ OVERDRIVE	21-108
PANEL OUTLET DOOR - REMOVAL	24-48	PASSENGER HEATED SEAT SWITCH - INSTALLATION	8G-17	PISTON RING FITTING - STANDARD PROCEDURE	9-122,9-47
PANEL REPAIR - STANDARD PROCEDURE, PLASTIC BODY	23-3	PASSENGER HEATED SEAT SWITCH - OPERATION	8G-16	PISTONS - DESCRIPTION	21-112,21-261
PANEL SPEAKER - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT	8A-24	PASSENGER HEATED SEAT SWITCH - REMOVAL	8G-17	PISTONS - OPERATION	21-112,21-261
PANEL SPEAKER, REMOVAL - INSTRUMENT	8A-24	PASSENGER SEAT SWITCH - DESCRIPTION	8N-28	PISTON/VALVE ASSEMBLY - INSTALLATION, RACK	19-25
PANEL STEERING COLUMN BRACKET - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT	23-68	PASSENGER SEAT SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8N-29	PISTON/VALVE ASSEMBLY - REMOVAL, RACK	19-24
PANEL STEERING COLUMN BRACKET - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT	23-68	PASSENGER SEAT SWITCH - INSTALLATION	8N-30	PITMAN ARM - DESCRIPTION	19-31
PANEL STEERING COLUMN SUPPORT BRACKET - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT	23-69	PASSENGER SEAT SWITCH - OPERATION	8N-28	PITMAN ARM - INSTALLATION	19-31
PANEL STEERING COLUMN SUPPORT BRACKET - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT	23-69	PASSENGER SEAT SWITCH - REMOVAL	8N-30	PITMAN ARM - OPERATION	19-31
PANEL STRUCTURAL DUCT - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT	23-57	PATTERNS - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, TIRE WEAR	22-8	PITMAN ARM - REMOVAL	19-31
PANEL STRUCTURAL DUCT - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT	23-57	PCM - DESCRIPTION	8E-12	PITMAN SHAFT - INSTALLATION	19-22
PANEL TOP COVER - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT	23-58	PCM - OPERATION	8E-15	PITMAN SHAFT - REMOVAL	19-21
PANEL TOP COVER - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT	23-57	PCM INPUT - OPERATION, ASD SENSE	8I-4	PITMAN SHAFT BEARING - INSTALLATION	19-23
PANEL TOP PAD - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT	23-60	PCM OUTPUT - DESCRIPTION	8I-4	PITMAN SHAFT BEARING - REMOVAL	19-23
PANEL TOP PAD - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT	23-58	PCM OUTPUT - OPERATION	14-31	PITMAN SHAFT SEAL - INSTALLATION	19-24
PANEL TRIM BEZEL - DRIVER - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT	23-70	PCM OUTPUT - OPERATION	8I-4	PITMAN SHAFT SEAL - REMOVAL	19-24
PANEL TRIM BEZEL - DRIVER - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT	23-70	PCM/SKIM PROGRAMMING - STANDARD PROCEDURE	8E-1	PLANETARY GEARTRAIN - ASSEMBLY	21-265
PANEL TRIM BEZEL - PASSENGER - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT	23-71	PCV SYSTEM - DESCRIPTION	25-12	PLANETARY GEARTRAIN - CLEANING	21-264
PANEL TRIM BEZEL - PASSENGER - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT	23-71	PCV SYSTEM - OPERATION, 4.7L	25-13	PLANETARY GEARTRAIN - DESCRIPTION	21-263
PANEL/DEFROST DOOR - INSTALLATION	24-50	PCV VALVE - 4.7L - INSTALLATION	25-25	PLANETARY GEARTRAIN - DISASSEMBLY	21-264
PANEL/DEFROST DOOR - REMOVAL	24-50	PCV VALVE - 4.7L - REMOVAL	25-25	PLANETARY GEARTRAIN - INSPECTION	21-264
PANEL/DEFROST DOOR ELECTRIC ACTUATOR - INSTALLATION, HEAT/DEFROST	24-33	PCV VALVE/PCV SYSTEM - 4.7L - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	25-23	PLANETARY GEARTRAIN - OPERATION	21-263
PANEL/DEFROST DOOR ELECTRIC ACTUATOR - REMOVAL, HEAT/ DEFROST	24-32	PEDAL - DESCRIPTION, STANDARD	5-24	PLANETARY GEARTRAIN/OUTPUT SHAFT - ASSEMBLY	21-115
PANEL/DEFROST DOOR VACUUM ACTUATOR - INSTALLATION	24-34	PEDAL - INSTALLATION, ACCELERATOR	14-27	PLANETARY GEARTRAIN/OUTPUT SHAFT - DESCRIPTION	21-114
PANEL/DEFROST DOOR VACUUM ACTUATOR - REMOVAL	24-33	PEDAL - INSTALLATION, NON- ADJUSTABLE	5-26	PLANETARY GEARTRAIN/OUTPUT SHAFT - DISASSEMBLY	21-114
PARK BRAKE (ROTOR REMOVED) - ADJUSTMENT, REAR DRUM IN HAT	5-39	PEDAL - REMOVAL, ACCELERATOR	14-27	PLANETARY GEARTRAIN/OUTPUT SHAFT - INSPECTION	21-115
PARK LOCK CABLE - INSTALLATION	21-111, 21-260	PEDAL - REMOVAL, NON-ADJUSTABLE	5-24	PLANETARY GEARTRAIN/OUTPUT SHAFT - OPERATION	21-114
PARK LOCK CABLE - REMOVAL	21-110,21-259	PEDAL MOTOR - INSTALLATION	5-27	PLASTIC BODY PANEL REPAIR - STANDARD PROCEDURE	23-3
PARK RAMP - INSTALLATION, WIPER ARM	8R-49	PEDAL MOTOR - REMOVAL	5-27	PLATE - DESCRIPTION, BODY CODE	Intro.-1
PARK RAMP - REMOVAL, WIPER ARM	8R-49	PEDAL SWITCH - INSTALLATION, ADJUSTABLE	5-8	PLATE - DESCRIPTION, FUEL TANK SKID	13-8
PARKING BRAKE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	5-33	PEDAL SWITCH - REMOVAL, ADJUSTABLE	5-8	PLATE - INSTALLATION, DOOR SILL SCUFF	23-87
PARKING BRAKE - OPERATION	5-32	PEDALS - DESCRIPTION, ADJUSTABLE	5-24	PLATE - INSTALLATION, FLEX	9-119
PARKING BRAKE CABLE - INSTALLATION, FRONT	5-35	PEDALS - INSTALLATION, ADJUSTABLE	5-26	PLATE - INSTALLATION, FRONT SKID	13-8
PARKING BRAKE CABLE - REMOVAL, FRONT	5-33	PEDALS - REMOVAL, ADJUSTABLE	5-25	PLATE - INSTALLATION, LATCH/GUIDE	23-19
PARKING BRAKE CABLES - INSTALLATION, REAR	5-35	PEDALS MODULE - INSTALLATION, ADJUSTABLE	8E-3	PLATE - INSTALLATION, LIFTGATE SCUFF	23-92
PARKING BRAKE CABLES - REMOVAL, REAR	5-34	PEDALS MODULE - REMOVAL, ADJUSTABLE	8E-2	PLATE - INSTALLATION, TRANSFER CASE SKID	13-9
PARK/NEUTRAL POSITION SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	21-111	PINION GEAR/RING GEAR - INSTALLATION	3-116,3-46,3-78	PLATE - REMOVAL, DOOR SILL SCUFF	23-87
PARK/NEUTRAL POSITION SWITCH - INSTALLATION	21-112	PINION GEAR/RING GEAR - REMOVAL	3-114, 3-44,3-76	PLATE - REMOVAL, FLEX	9-119
PARK/NEUTRAL POSITION SWITCH - REMOVAL	21-112	PINION SEAL - INSTALLATION	3-101,3-37,3-67	PLATE - REMOVAL, FRONT SKID	13-8
PARTS & LUBRICANT RECOMMENDATIONS - STANDARD PROCEDURE	0-1	PINION SEAL - REMOVAL	3-100,3-36,3-67	PLATE - REMOVAL, LATCH/GUIDE	23-19
PASSENGER - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT PANEL TRIM BEZEL	23-71	PIPE - 4.0L - INSPECTION, EXHAUST	11-8	PLATE - REMOVAL, LIFTGATE SCUFF	23-92
PASSENGER - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT PANEL TRIM BEZEL	23-71	PIPE - 4.0L - INSTALLATION, EXHAUST	11-8	PLATE - REMOVAL, TRANSFER CASE SKID	13-9
PASSENGER AIRBAG - DESCRIPTION	80-35	PIPE - 4.0L - REMOVAL, EXHAUST	11-8	PLATE LAMP UNIT - INSTALLATION, LICENSE	8L-25
PASSENGER AIRBAG - INSTALLATION	80-36	PIPE - 4.7L - INSPECTION, EXHAUST	11-10	PLATE LAMP UNIT - REMOVAL, LICENSE	8L-25
PASSENGER AIRBAG - OPERATION	80-35	PIPE - 4.7L - INSTALLATION, EXHAUST	11-10	PLATES - INSTALLATION, EXTERIOR NAME	23-42
		PIPE - 4.7L - REMOVAL, EXHAUST	11-10	PLATES - REMOVAL, EXTERIOR NAME	23-42
		PISTON & CONNECTING ROD - CLEANING	9-120	PLAY - STANDARD PROCEDURE, MEASURING CRANKSHAFT END	9-112
		PISTON & CONNECTING ROD - DESCRIPTION	9-119,9-44	PLUG - CLEANING, SPARK	8I-18
		PISTON & CONNECTING ROD - INSPECTION	9-120	PLUG - DESCRIPTION, SPARK	8I-15
		PISTON & CONNECTING ROD - INSTALLATION	9-121,9-46	PLUG - INSTALLATION, SPARK	8I-18
		PISTON & CONNECTING ROD - REMOVAL	9-119,9-45	PLUG - REMOVAL, SPARK	8I-18
		PISTON FITTING - STANDARD PROCEDURE	9-119,9-45	PLUG CONDITIONS - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, SPARK	8I-16
		PISTON RETAINER - ASSEMBLY, OVERRUNNING CLUTCH CAM/ OVERDRIVE	21-109	PLUGS - STANDARD PROCEDURE, ENGINE CORE AND OIL GALLERY	9-111,9-72
		PISTON RETAINER - CLEANING, OVERRUNNING CLUTCH CAM/ OVERDRIVE	21-108	PLUGS, SPECIFICATIONS - SPARK	8I-3
		PISTON RETAINER - DESCRIPTION, OVERRUNNING CLUTCH CAM/ OVERDRIVE	21-108	PLUMBING - WARNING	24-53

Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page
POSITION - STANDARD PROCEDURE, TOE	2-4	POWER OUTLET - OPERATION, REAR	8W-97-16	PRESSURE GAUGE - DESCRIPTION, OIL	8J-26
POSITION LAMP - DESCRIPTION, FRONT	8L-14	POWER OUTLET - REMOVAL	8W-97-12	PRESSURE GAUGE - OPERATION, OIL	8J-26
POSITION LAMP - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, FRONT	8L-14	POWER OUTLET - REMOVAL, REAR	8W-97-17	PRESSURE GAUGES - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	22-7
POSITION LAMP - INSTALLATION, FRONT	8L-15	POWER OUTLET RELAY - DESCRIPTION	8W-97-13	PRESSURE HOSE - DESCRIPTION, 1/2"	19-40
POSITION LAMP - OPERATION, FRONT	8L-15	POWER OUTLET RELAY - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8W-97-13	PRESSURE HOSE - DESCRIPTION, 3/8"	19-40
POSITION LAMP - REMOVAL, FRONT	8L-15	POWER OUTLET RELAY - REMOVAL	8W-97-14	PRESSURE HOSE - GEAR TO HYDRAULIC FAN MODULE (2.7L DIESEL) - INSTALLATION	19-45
POSITION SENSOR - DESCRIPTION	21-335	POWER OUTLET RELAY - OPERATION	8W-97-13	PRESSURE HOSE - GEAR TO THE HYDRAULIC FAN MODULE (2.7L DIESEL) - REMOVAL	19-44
POSITION SENSOR - DESCRIPTION, THROTTLE	14-45	POWER OUTLET RELAY - REMOVAL	8W-97-14	PRESSURE HOSE - INSTALLATION, 1/2"	19-42
POSITION SENSOR - INSTALLATION	21-336	POWER RELEASE SYSTEM - DESCRIPTION, LIFTGATE FLIP-UP GLASS	8N-4	PRESSURE HOSE - INSTALLATION, 3/8"	19-43
POSITION SENSOR - OPERATION	21-335	POWER RELEASE SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, LIFTGATE FLIP-UP GLASS	8N-6	PRESSURE HOSE - OPERATION, 1/2"	19-41
POSITION SENSOR - OPERATION, THROTTLE	14-45	POWER RELEASE SYSTEM - OPERATION, LIFTGATE FLIP-UP GLASS	8N-5	PRESSURE HOSE - OPERATION, 3/8"	19-41
POSITION SENSOR - REMOVAL	21-336	POWER SEAT SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS & TESTING	8N-20	PRESSURE HOSE - PUMP TO THE HYDRAULIC FAN MODULE (2.7L DIESEL) - REMOVAL	19-43
POSITION SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, PARK/NEUTRAL	21-111	POWER SEAT SYSTEM - OPERATION	8N-20	PRESSURE HOSE - REMOVAL, 1/2"	19-41
POSITION SWITCH - INSTALLATION, PARK/NEUTRAL	21-112	POWER SEAT TRACK - DESCRIPTION	8N-32	PRESSURE HOSE - REMOVAL, 3/8"	19-41
POSITION SWITCH - REMOVAL, PARK/NEUTRAL	21-112	POWER SEAT TRACK - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8N-33	PRESSURE HOSE PUMP TO THE HYDRAULIC FAN MODULE (2.7L DIESEL) - INSTALLATION	19-45
POTENTIAL - STANDARD PROCEDURE, TESTING OF VOLTAGE	8W-01-9	POWER SEAT TRACK - OPERATION	8N-33	PRESSURE LEAKAGE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, CYLINDER COMBUSTION	9-70,9-8
POWER BRAKE BOOSTER - DESCRIPTION	5-27	POWER STEERING FLUID - DESCRIPTION	0-6	PRESSURE LINE - DESCRIPTION	19-39
POWER BRAKE BOOSTER - INSTALLATION	5-27	POWER STEERING GEAR, SPECIAL TOOLS	19-20	PRESSURE LINE - OPERATION	19-39
POWER BRAKE BOOSTER - OPERATION	5-27	POWER STEERING GEAR, SPECIFICATIONS	19-19	PRESSURE (LP) SENSOR - DESCRIPTION, LINE	21-250
POWER BRAKE BOOSTER - REMOVAL	5-27	POWER STEERING PUMP, SPECIAL TOOLS	19-38	PRESSURE (LP) SENSOR - INSTALLATION, LINE	21-251
POWER DISTRIBUTION - DESCRIPTION	8W-97-1	POWER STEERING SYSTEM - DESCRIPTION	19-1	PRESSURE (LP) SENSOR - OPERATION, LINE	21-250
POWER DISTRIBUTION - OPERATION	8W-97-1	POWER STEERING SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	19-2	PRESSURE (LP) SENSOR - REMOVAL, LINE	21-250
POWER DISTRIBUTION CENTER - DESCRIPTION	8W-97-7	POWER STEERING SYSTEM - OPERATION	19-1	PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM - DESCRIPTION, TIRE	22-13
POWER DISTRIBUTION CENTER - OPERATION	8W-97-7	POWER WINDOW SWITCH - DESCRIPTION	8N-37	PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, TIRE	22-13
POWER DISTRIBUTION CENTER - REMOVAL	8W-97-7	POWER WINDOW SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8N-38	PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM - OPERATION, TIRE	22-13
POWER DISTRIBUTION CENTER ASSEMBLY, ASSEMBLY	8W-97-10	POWER WINDOW SWITCH - INSTALLATION	8N-39	PRESSURE RELEASE - STANDARD PROCEDURE, FUEL SYSTEM	14-2
POWER DISTRIBUTION CENTER DISASSEMBLY, DISASSEMBLY	8W-97-8	POWER WINDOW SWITCH - OPERATION	8N-37	PRESSURE RELIEF VALVE - DESCRIPTION, HIGH	24-58
POWER DISTRIBUTION SYSTEMS, SPECIAL TOOLS	8W-97-2	POWER WINDOW SWITCH - REMOVAL	8N-38	PRESSURE RELIEF VALVE - OPERATION, HIGH	24-58
POWER FOLD-AWAY MIRROR - EXPORT - DESCRIPTION	8N-14	POWER WINDOWS - DESCRIPTION	8N-34	PRESSURE SENSOR - DESCRIPTION, ENGINE OIL	9-57
POWER FOLD-AWAY MIRROR - EXPORT - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8N-14	POWER WINDOWS - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8N-35	PRESSURE SENSOR - OPERATION, ENGINE OIL	9-57
POWER FOLD-AWAY MIRROR - EXPORT - OPERATION	8N-14	POWERED - GENERATOR RATINGS, GAS	8F-26	PRESSURE SENSOR RETRAIN - STANDARD PROCEDURE, TIRE	22-14
POWER FOLD-AWAY MIRROR - EXPORT - REMOVAL	8N-14	POWERED - STARTER MOTOR, GAS	8F-36	PRESSURE SENSOR/SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, OIL	9-134
POWER GROUNDS - DESCRIPTION	8E-15	POWERED - TORQUE, GAS	8F-26	PRESSURE SENSOR/SWITCH - INSTALLATION, OIL	9-135
POWER LOCK MOTOR - DESCRIPTION	8N-7	POWERING SEVERAL LOADS - STANDARD PROCEDURE, TESTING FOR A SHORT TO GROUND ON FUSES	8W-01-10	PRESSURE SENSOR/SWITCH - OPERATION, OIL	9-134
POWER LOCK MOTOR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8N-8	PRECAUTIONS AND WARNINGS, WARNING - SAFETY	23-1	PRESSURE SENSOR/SWITCH - REMOVAL, OIL	9-134
POWER LOCK MOTOR - OPERATION	8N-7	PRECAUTIONS, CAUTION - REFRIGERANT HOSES/LINES/TUBES	24-54	PRESSURE SENSOR/TRANSMITTER - INSTALLATION, TIRE	22-15
POWER LOCK SWITCH - DESCRIPTION	8N-8	PRELIMINARY - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	21-11,21-182	PRESSURE SENSOR/TRANSMITTER - REMOVAL, TIRE	22-14
POWER LOCK SWITCH - OPERATION	8N-8	PRELIMINARY CHECKS - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	7-4	PRESSURE, SPECIFICATIONS - FUEL SYSTEM	14-3
POWER LOCK SYSTEM - DESCRIPTION	8N-1	PREPARATION - STANDARD PROCEDURE, ENGINE GASKET SURFACE	9-72	PRESSURE SYSTEM TEST - STANDARD PROCEDURE, TIRE	8M-11
POWER LOCK SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8N-5	PRESSURE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, CYLINDER COMPRESSION	9-70,9-8	PRESSURE TEST - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, HYDRAULIC	21-12,21-183
POWER LOCK SYSTEM - OPERATION	8N-4	PRESSURE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, ENGINE OIL	9-129,9-53	PRESSURE TRANSDUCER - DESCRIPTION, A/C	24-26
POWER LUMBAR ADJUSTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8N-26	PRESSURE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, STEERING FLOW	19-4	PRESSURE TRANSDUCER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, A/C	24-26
POWER LUMBAR SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8N-25	PRESSURE BLEEDING - STANDARD PROCEDURE	5-5	PRESSURE TRANSDUCER - INSTALLATION, A/C	24-27
POWER MIRROR SWITCH - DESCRIPTION	8N-15	PRESSURE CAP - CLEANING, RADIATOR	7-52	PRESSURE TRANSDUCER - OPERATION, A/C	24-26
POWER MIRROR SWITCH - OPERATION	8N-15	PRESSURE CAP - DESCRIPTION, RADIATOR	7-51	PRESSURE TRANSDUCER - REMOVAL, A/C	24-27
POWER MIRRORS - DESCRIPTION	8N-11	PRESSURE CAP - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, RADIATOR	7-51	PRESSURES - DESCRIPTION, TIRE INFLATION	22-6
POWER MIRRORS - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8N-12	PRESSURE CAP - INSPECTION, RADIATOR	7-52	PROGRAMMING - STANDARD PROCEDURE, ELECTRONIC VEHICLE INFORMATION CENTER	8M-2
POWER MIRRORS - OPERATION	8N-12	PRESSURE CAP - OPERATION, RADIATOR	7-51		
POWER OUTLET - DESCRIPTION, FRONT	8W-97-12	PRESSURE FOR HIGH SPEED - DESCRIPTION, TIRE	22-7		
POWER OUTLET - DESCRIPTION, REAR	8W-97-16				
POWER OUTLET - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8W-97-12				
POWER OUTLET - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, REAR	8W-97-17				
POWER OUTLET - INSTALLATION	8W-97-13				
POWER OUTLET - INSTALLATION, REAR	8W-97-18				
POWER OUTLET - OPERATION, FRONT	8W-97-12				



Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page
PROGRAMMING - STANDARD PROCEDURE, PCM/SKIM	8E-1	PUMP/MOTOR - INSTALLATION, FRONT WASHER	8R-14	RAMP - REMOVAL, WIPER ARM PARK	8R-49
PROGRAMMING - STANDARD PROCEDURE, RKE TRANSMITTER	8N-10	PUMP/MOTOR - INSTALLATION, REAR WASHER	8R-43	RANGE INDICATOR ILLUMINATION - DESCRIPTION, TRANS	8L-42
PROGRAMMING - STANDARD PROCEDURE, SENTRY KEY TRANSPONDER	8Q-6	PUMP/MOTOR - OPERATION, FRONT WASHER	8R-13	RANGE SENSOR - DESCRIPTION, TRANSMISSION	21-274
PROP - INSTALLATION, GAS	23-48	PUMP/MOTOR - OPERATION, REAR WASHER	8R-43	RANGE SENSOR - OPERATION, TRANSMISSION	21-274
PROP - REMOVAL, GAS	23-48	PUMP/MOTOR - REMOVAL, FRONT WASHER	8R-14	RATINGS, GAS POWERED - GENERATOR	8F-26
PROPELLER SHAFT - C/V FRONT - INSTALLATION	3-7	PUMP/MOTOR - REMOVAL, REAR WASHER	8R-43	RATTLE - STANDARD PROCEDURE, BUZZ, SQUEAK	23-10
PROPELLER SHAFT - C/V FRONT - REMOVAL	3-6	PWM FAN CONTROL MODULE - 4.0L - DESCRIPTION	7-39	RDR INNER BELT WEATHERSTRIP - INSTALLATION	23-124
PROPELLER SHAFT - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	3-1	PWM FAN CONTROL MODULE - 4.0L - INSTALLATION	7-40	RDR INNER BELT WEATHERSTRIP - REMOVAL	23-124
PROPELLER SHAFT - REAR - INSTALLATION	3-8	PWM FAN CONTROL MODULE - 4.0L - OPERATION	7-39	RDR OUTER BELT WEATHERSTRIP - INSTALLATION	23-124
PROPELLER SHAFT - REAR - REMOVAL	3-8	PWM FAN CONTROL MODULE - 4.0L - REMOVAL	7-40	RDR OUTER BELT WEATHERSTRIP - REMOVAL	23-124
PROPELLER SHAFT - SPECIAL TOOLS	3-6	QUARTER GLASS INTEGRAL ANTENNA - EXPORT - DESCRIPTION	8A-15	RDR SECONDARY WEATHERSTRIP - INSTALLATION	23-125
PROPELLER SHAFT - SPECIFICATIONS	3-6	QUARTER GLASS INTEGRAL ANTENNA - EXPORT - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8A-15	RDR SECONDARY WEATHERSTRIP - REMOVAL	23-125
PROPELLER SHAFT - STANDARD PROCEDURE	3-4	QUARTER GLASS INTEGRAL ANTENNA - EXPORT - OPERATION	8A-15	RE TRANSMISSIONS, SPECIAL TOOLS	21-58
PROPELLER SHAFT - U-JOINT FRONT - INSTALLATION	3-7	QUARTER PANEL - INSTALLATION, EXHAUSTER - LEFT	23-42	READING LAMP - DESCRIPTION	8L-42
PROPELLER SHAFT - U-JOINT FRONT - REMOVAL	3-7	QUARTER PANEL - REMOVAL, EXHAUSTER - LEFT	23-42	READING LAMP - INSTALLATION	8L-42
PUMP - 4.0L - CLEANING, WATER	7-49	QUARTER TRIM PANEL - INSTALLATION	23-93	READING LAMP - OPERATION	8L-42
PUMP - 4.0L - DESCRIPTION, WATER	7-48	QUARTER TRIM PANEL - REMOVAL	23-92	READING LAMP - REMOVAL	8L-42
PUMP - 4.0L - INSPECTION, WATER	7-50	QUARTER WINDOW - INSTALLATION	23-108	REAR - DESCRIPTION	2-17
PUMP - 4.0L - INSTALLATION, WATER	7-50	QUARTER WINDOW - REMOVAL	23-108	REAR - INSTALLATION, CRANKSHAFT OIL SEAL	9-118,9-42
PUMP - 4.0L - REMOVAL, WATER	7-48	QUICK CONNECT FITTING - DESCRIPTION	14-21	REAR - INSTALLATION, PROPELLER SHAFT	3-8
PUMP - 4.7L - DESCRIPTION, WATER	7-45	QUICK LEARN - STANDARD PROCEDURE, TCM	8E-23	REAR - REMOVAL, CRANKSHAFT OIL SEAL	9-118,9-42
PUMP - ASSEMBLY, OIL	9-136	QUICK-CONNECT FITTINGS - STANDARD PROCEDURE	14-21	REAR - REMOVAL, PROPELLER SHAFT	3-8
PUMP - ASSEMBLY, OIL	21-257,21-86	RACK - INSTALLATION, LUGGAGE	23-46	REAR - WARNING	2-17
PUMP - CLEANING, OIL	9-135	RACK - REMOVAL, LUGGAGE	23-46	REAR ABSORBER - INSTALLATION	13-3
PUMP - CLEANING, OIL	21-257,21-85	RACK PISTON/VALVE ASSEMBLY - INSTALLATION	19-25	REAR ABSORBER - REMOVAL	13-3
PUMP - DESCRIPTION, FUEL	14-8	RACK PISTON/VALVE ASSEMBLY - REMOVAL	19-24	REAR AXLE - 198RBI - ADJUSTMENTS	3-53
PUMP - DESCRIPTION, LEAK DETECTION	25-16	RADIAL-PLY TIRES - DESCRIPTION	22-6	REAR AXLE - 198RBI - DESCRIPTION	3-49
PUMP - DESCRIPTION, OIL	21-253,21-83	RADIATOR - DESCRIPTION	7-41	REAR AXLE - 198RBI - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	3-49
PUMP - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, WATER	7-47	RADIATOR FAN - DESCRIPTION	7-27	REAR AXLE - 198RBI - INSTALLATION	3-52
PUMP - DISASSEMBLY, OIL	9-135	RADIATOR FAN - OPERATION	7-27	REAR AXLE - 198RBI - OPERATION	3-49
PUMP - DISASSEMBLY, OIL	21-255,21-83	RADIATOR FAN SOLENOID - INSTALLATION	7-53	REAR AXLE - 198RBI - REMOVAL	3-52
PUMP - INSPECTION, OIL	9-135	RADIATOR FAN SOLENOID - REMOVAL	7-52	REAR AXLE - 198RBI - SPECIAL TOOLS	3-62
PUMP - INSPECTION, OIL	21-257,21-85	RADIATOR PRESSURE CAP - CLEANING	7-52	REAR AXLE - 198RBI - SPECIFICATIONS	3-61
PUMP - INSTALLATION, LEAK DETECTION	25-21	RADIATOR PRESSURE CAP - DESCRIPTION	7-51	REAR AXLE - 226RBA - ADJUSTMENTS	3-87
PUMP - INSTALLATION, OIL	9-136,9-57	RADIATOR PRESSURE CAP - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	7-51	REAR AXLE - 226RBA - DESCRIPTION	3-82
PUMP - OPERATION, FUEL	14-8	RADIATOR PRESSURE CAP - INSPECTION	7-52	REAR AXLE - 226RBA - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	3-82
PUMP - OPERATION, LEAK DETECTION	25-17	RADIATOR PRESSURE CAP - OPERATION	7-51	REAR AXLE - 226RBA - INSTALLATION	3-86
PUMP - OPERATION, OIL	21-253,21-83	RADIO - DESCRIPTION	8A-15	REAR AXLE - 226RBA - OPERATION	3-82
PUMP - OPERATION, WATER	7-46	RADIO - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8A-15	REAR AXLE - 226RBA - REMOVAL	3-86
PUMP - REMOVAL, LEAK DETECTION	25-21	RADIO - INSTALLATION	8A-17	REAR AXLE - 226RBA - SPECIAL TOOLS	3-95
PUMP - REMOVAL, OIL	9-135,9-57	RADIO - INSTALLATION, ANTENNA - NAVIGATION	8A-9	REAR AXLE - 226RBA - SPECIFICATIONS	3-94
PUMP (2.7L DIESEL) - INSTALLATION, RETURN HOSE - RESERVOIR TO THE	19-45	RADIO - OPERATION	8A-15	REAR BEARING - INSTALLATION, OUTPUT SHAFT	21-88
PUMP (2.7L DIESEL) - REMOVAL, RETURN HOSE - RESERVOIR TO THE	19-44	RADIO - REMOVAL	8A-16	REAR BEARING - REMOVAL, OUTPUT SHAFT	21-87
PUMP BYPASS - DESCRIPTION, WATER	7-46	RADIO - REMOVAL, ANTENNA - NAVIGATION	8A-9	REAR CENTER SEAT BELT & RETRACTOR - INSTALLATION	80-38
PUMP BYPASS - OPERATION, WATER	7-46	RADIO NOISE SUPPRESSION GROUND STRAP - DESCRIPTION	8A-17	REAR CENTER SEAT BELT & RETRACTOR - REMOVAL	80-38
PUMP FRONT SEAL - INSTALLATION, OIL	21-258	RAIL - DESCRIPTION, COIL	8I-9	REAR CLUTCH - ASSEMBLY	21-122
PUMP FRONT SEAL - REMOVAL, OIL	21-258	RAIL - INSTALLATION, COIL	8I-10	REAR CLUTCH - CLEANING	21-121
PUMP INLET TUBE - INSTALLATION, WATER	7-52	RAIL - INSTALLATION, ROCK	23-47	REAR CLUTCH - DESCRIPTION	21-120
PUMP INLET TUBE - REMOVAL, WATER	7-52	RAIL - OPERATION, COIL	8I-10	REAR CLUTCH - DISASSEMBLY	21-121
PUMP LEAKAGE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	19-34	RAIL - REMOVAL, COIL	8I-10	REAR CLUTCH - INSPECTION	21-121
PUMP MODULE - DESCRIPTION, FUEL	14-8	RAIL - REMOVAL, ROCK	23-47	REAR CLUTCH - OPERATION	21-120
PUMP MODULE - INSTALLATION, FUEL	14-9	RAIL WEATHERSTRIP / RETAINR - INSTALLATION, ROOF	23-126	REAR DISC BRAKE CALIPER - ASSEMBLY	5-19
PUMP MODULE - OPERATION, FUEL	14-9	RAIL WEATHERSTRIP / RETAINR - REMOVAL, ROOF	23-126	REAR DISC BRAKE CALIPER - DISASSEMBLY	5-16
PUMP MODULE - REMOVAL, FUEL	14-9	RAIN SENSOR MODULE - DESCRIPTION	8R-19	REAR DISC BRAKE CALIPER - INSTALLATION	5-20
PUMP RELAY - DESCRIPTION, FUEL	14-31	RAIN SENSOR MODULE - INSTALLATION	8R-21	REAR DISC BRAKE CALIPER - REMOVAL	5-14
PUMP RELAY - OPERATION, FUEL	14-31	RAIN SENSOR MODULE - OPERATION	8R-19	REAR DISC BRAKE PADS - DESCRIPTION	5-10
PUMP, SPECIAL TOOLS - POWER STEERING	19-38	RAIN SENSOR MODULE - REMOVAL	8R-20	REAR DISC BRAKE PADS - INSTALLATION	5-14
PUMP TO THE HYDRAULIC FAN MODULE (2.7L DIESEL) - INSTALLATION, PRESSURE HOSE	19-45	RAMP - INSTALLATION, WIPER ARM PARK	8R-49	REAR DISC BRAKE PADS - OPERATION	5-11
PUMP TO THE HYDRAULIC FAN MODULE (2.7L DIESEL) - REMOVAL, PRESSURE HOSE	19-43			REAR DISC BRAKE PADS - REMOVAL	5-12
PUMP VOLUME CHECK - STANDARD PROCEDURE, OIL	21-254			REAR DISC BRAKE ROTOR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	5-30
PUMP/MOTOR - DESCRIPTION, FRONT WASHER	8R-13			REAR DISC BRAKE ROTOR - INSTALLATION	5-32
PUMP/MOTOR - DESCRIPTION, REAR WASHER	8R-42			REAR DISC BRAKE ROTOR - REMOVAL	5-31

Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page
REAR DOOR SPEAKER - INSTALLATION	8A-24	REAR SEAT BELT BUCKLE - REMOVAL	80-41	REAR WIPER & WASHER SYSTEM -	
REAR DOOR SPEAKER, REMOVAL	8A-23	REAR SEAT CUSHION - INSTALLATION	23-106	INSPECTION	8R-39
REAR DOOR WEATHERSTRIP -		REAR SEAT CUSHION - REMOVAL	23-106	REAR WIPER ARM - DESCRIPTION	8R-44
INSTALLATION	23-125	REAR SEAT CUSHION COVER -		REAR WIPER ARM - INSTALLATION	8R-45
REAR DOOR WEATHERSTRIP -		INSTALLATION	23-106	REAR WIPER ARM - OPERATION	8R-44
REMOVAL	23-125	REAR SEAT CUSHION COVER -		REAR WIPER ARM - REMOVAL	8R-44
REAR DRUM IN HAT BRAKE - CLEANING	5-38	REMOVAL	23-106	REAR WIPER BLADE - DESCRIPTION	8R-46
REAR DRUM IN HAT BRAKE -		REAR SEAT CUSHION RELEASE LATCH -		REAR WIPER BLADE - INSTALLATION	8R-47
INSPECTION	5-39	INSTALLATION	23-106	REAR WIPER BLADE - OPERATION	8R-46
REAR DRUM IN HAT PARK BRAKE		REAR SEAT CUSHION RELEASE LATCH -		REAR WIPER BLADE - REMOVAL	8R-46
(ROTOR REMOVED) - ADJUSTMENT	5-39	REMOVAL	23-106	REAR WIPER MODULE - DESCRIPTION	8R-47
REAR FASCIA - INSTALLATION	13-5	REAR SERVO - ASSEMBLY	21-125	REAR WIPER MODULE - INSTALLATION	8R-49
REAR FASCIA - REMOVAL	13-3	REAR SERVO - CLEANING	21-125	REAR WIPER MODULE - OPERATION	8R-47
REAR FLOOR HEAT DUCT -		REAR SERVO - DESCRIPTION	21-124	REAR WIPER MODULE - REMOVAL	8R-48
INSTALLATION	24-42	REAR SERVO - DISASSEMBLY	21-124	REAR WIPERS/WASHERS -	
REAR FLOOR HEAT DUCT - REMOVAL	24-42	REAR SERVO - OPERATION	21-124	DESCRIPTION	8R-34
REAR FOG LAMP - DESCRIPTION	8L-33	REAR STORAGE BOX - INSTALLATION	23-93	REAR WIPERS/WASHERS - OPERATION	8R-36
REAR FOG LAMP - DIAGNOSIS AND		REAR STORAGE BOX - REMOVAL	23-93	REARVIEW MIRROR SUPPORT BRACKET	
TESTING	8L-33	REAR SUSPENSION - DIAGNOSIS AND		- INSTALLATION	23-94
REAR FOG LAMP - INSTALLATION	8L-33	TESTING	2-18	RECEIVER / DRIER - DESCRIPTION	24-73
REAR FOG LAMP - OPERATION	8L-33	REAR SUSPENSION, SPECIAL TOOLS	2-19	RECEIVER / DRIER - INSTALLATION	24-75
REAR FOG LAMP - REMOVAL	8L-33	REAR TOW HOOK - INSTALLATION	13-8	RECEIVER / DRIER - OPERATION	24-73
REAR FOG LAMP INDICATOR -		REAR TOW HOOK - REMOVAL	13-8	RECEIVER / DRIER - REMOVAL	24-73
DESCRIPTION	8J-28	REAR VIEW MIRROR - DESCRIPTION	8N-12	RECIRCULATION DOOR - INSTALLATION	24-51
REAR FOG LAMP INDICATOR -		REAR VIEW MIRROR - DESCRIPTION,		RECIRCULATION DOOR - REMOVAL	24-51
OPERATION	8J-28	OUTSIDE	8N-13	RECIRCULATION DOOR ACTUATOR -	
REAR FOG LAMP SWITCH -		REAR VIEW MIRROR - OPERATION	8N-13	DESCRIPTION	24-34
DESCRIPTION	8L-32	REAR VIEW MIRROR - OPERATION,		RECIRCULATION DOOR ELECTRIC	
REAR FOG LAMP SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS		OUTSIDE	8N-13	ACTUATOR - INSTALLATION	24-35
AND TESTING	8L-32	REAR VIEW MIRROR - REMOVAL	23-94	RECIRCULATION DOOR ELECTRIC	
REAR FOG LAMP SWITCH - REMOVAL	8L-32	REAR WASHER HOSES/TUBES -		ACTUATOR - REMOVAL	24-35
REAR GLASS HEATING GRID REPAIR -		DESCRIPTION	8R-40	RECIRCULATION DOOR VACUUM	
STANDARD PROCEDURE	8G-4	REAR WASHER HOSES/TUBES -		ACTUATOR - INSTALLATION	24-35
REAR HEADREST - INSTALLATION	23-103	OPERATION	8R-41	RECIRCULATION DOOR VACUUM	
REAR HEADREST - REMOVAL	23-103	REAR WASHER NOZZLE - DESCRIPTION	8R-41	ACTUATOR - REMOVAL	24-34
REAR HEADREST FOLDING MECHANISM		REAR WASHER NOZZLE - INSTALLATION	8R-42	RECLINER ASSEMBLY - INSTALLATION,	
- INSTALLATION	23-104	REAR WASHER NOZZLE - OPERATION	8R-41	SEAT TRACK	23-102
REAR HEADREST FOLDING MECHANISM		REAR WASHER NOZZLE - REMOVAL	8R-42	RECLINER ASSEMBLY - REMOVAL, SEAT	
- REMOVAL	23-104	REAR WASHER PUMP/MOTOR -		TRACK	23-102
REAR HEADREST RELEASE KNOB -		DESCRIPTION	8R-42	RECLINER MOTOR - DESCRIPTION	8N-31
INSTALLATION	23-104	REAR WASHER PUMP/MOTOR -		RECLINER MOTOR - DIAGNOSIS AND	
REAR HEADREST RELEASE KNOB -		INSTALLATION	8R-43	TESTING	8N-31
REMOVAL	23-104	REAR WASHER PUMP/MOTOR -		RECLINER MOTOR - OPERATION	8N-31
REAR HEADREST SLEEVE -		OPERATION	8R-43	RECOMMENDATIONS - STANDARD	
INSTALLATION	23-104	REAR WASHER PUMP/MOTOR -		PROCEDURE, HOISTING AND JACKING	0-14
REAR HEADREST SLEEVE - REMOVAL	23-104	REMOVAL	8R-43	RECOMMENDATIONS - STANDARD	
REAR MOUNT - INSTALLATION	9-127	REAR WHEEL SPEED SENSOR -		PROCEDURE, PARTS & LUBRICANT	0-1
REAR MOUNT - REMOVAL	9-127	DESCRIPTION	5-45	RECOMMENDATIONS - STANDARD	
REAR OUTBOARD SEAT BELT &		REAR WHEEL SPEED SENSOR -		PROCEDURE, TOWING	0-16
RETRACTOR - INSTALLATION	80-41	INSTALLATION	5-45	RECOVERY - STANDARD PROCEDURE,	
REAR OUTBOARD SEAT BELT &		REAR WHEEL SPEED SENSOR -		REFRIGERANT	24-56
RETRACTOR - REMOVAL	80-40	OPERATION	5-45	RECOVERY CONTAINER - DESCRIPTION,	
REAR PARKING BRAKE CABLES -		REAR WHEEL SPEED SENSOR -		COOLANT	7-26
INSTALLATION	5-35	REMOVAL	5-45	RECOVERY CONTAINER - INSTALLATION,	
REAR PARKING BRAKE CABLES -		REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER -		COOLANT	7-26
REMOVAL	5-34	DESCRIPTION	8G-1	RECOVERY CONTAINER - REMOVAL,	
REAR POWER OUTLET - DESCRIPTION	8W-97-16	REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER -		COOLANT	7-26
REAR POWER OUTLET - DIAGNOSIS		OPERATION	8G-2	RED BRAKE WARN INDICATOR SWITCH	
AND TESTING	8W-97-17	REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER GRID -		- DESCRIPTION	5-8
REAR POWER OUTLET -		DESCRIPTION	8G-3	RED BRAKE WARN INDICATOR SWITCH	
INSTALLATION	8W-97-18	REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER GRID -		- OPERATION	5-8
REAR POWER OUTLET - OPERATION	8W-97-16	DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8G-3	RED BRAKE WARNING LAMP -	
REAR POWER OUTLET - REMOVAL	8W-97-17	REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER GRID -		DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	5-8
REAR RETAINER BUSHING AND SEAL -		OPERATION	8G-3	REFACING - STANDARD PROCEDURE	9-105,9-95
INSTALLATION	21-302,21-363	REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER RELAY -		REFERENCES - DESCRIPTION, TORQUE	Intro-9
REAR RETAINER BUSHING AND SEAL -		DESCRIPTION	8G-5	REFILLING COOLING SYSTEM - 4.0L	
NV242HD - INSTALLATION	21-336	REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER RELAY -		ENGINE - STANDARD PROCEDURE	7-14
REAR RETAINER BUSHING AND SEAL -		DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8G-5	REFILLING COOLING SYSTEM 4.7L	
NV242HD - REMOVAL	21-336	REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER RELAY -		ENGINE - STANDARD PROCEDURE	7-13
REAR RETAINER BUSHING AND SEAL -		INSTALLATION	8G-6	REFRIGERANT - DESCRIPTION	24-75
REMOVAL	21-301,21-362	REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER RELAY -		REFRIGERANT - OPERATION	24-75
REAR SEAL AREA LEAKS - DIAGNOSIS		OPERATION	8G-5	REFRIGERANT HOSES/LINES/TUBES	
AND TESTING	9-130,9-9	REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER RELAY -		PRECAUTIONS, CAUTION	24-54
REAR SEAT BACK - INSTALLATION	23-105	REMOVAL	8G-6	REFRIGERANT LINE - DESCRIPTION	24-53
REAR SEAT BACK - REMOVAL	23-105	REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER SWITCH -		REFRIGERANT LINE - OPERATION	24-53
REAR SEAT BACK COVER -		DESCRIPTION	8G-6	REFRIGERANT OIL - DESCRIPTION	24-76
INSTALLATION	23-105	REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER SWITCH -		REFRIGERANT OIL - OPERATION	24-76
REAR SEAT BACK COVER - REMOVAL	23-105	DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8G-7	REFRIGERANT OIL LEVEL - STANDARD	
REAR SEAT BACK LATCH HANDLE -		OPERATION	8G-7	PROCEDURE	24-76
INSTALLATION, FOLDING	23-107	REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER SWITCH -		REFRIGERANT RECOVERY - STANDARD	
REAR SEAT BACK LATCH HANDLE -		REMOVAL	8G-7	PROCEDURE	24-56
REMOVAL, FOLDING	23-107	REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER SYSTEM -		REFRIGERANT SYSTEM CHARGE -	
REAR SEAT BACK LATCH/HINGE -		DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8G-2	STANDARD PROCEDURE	24-57
INSTALLATION, FOLDING	23-107	REAR WIPER & WASHER SYSTEM -		REFRIGERANT SYSTEM EVACUATE -	
REMOVAL, FOLDING	23-107	CLEANING	8R-39	STANDARD PROCEDURE	24-56
REAR SEAT BELT BUCKLE -		REAR WIPER & WASHER SYSTEM -		REFRIGERANT SYSTEM LEAKS -	
INSTALLATION	80-42	DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8R-37	DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	24-55

Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page
REFRIGERANT SYSTEM SERVICE EQUIPMENT - STANDARD PROCEDURE . . .	24-55	RELEASE CABLE - REMOVAL, LATCH . . . . .	23-50	RESISTANCE, 4.0L ENGINE - IGNITION COIL . . . . .	81-2
REFRIGERANT SYSTEM SERVICE PORT - DESCRIPTION . . . . .	24-1	RELEASE KNOB - INSTALLATION, REAR HEADREST . . . . .	23-104	RESISTANCE, 4.7L V-8 ENGINE - IGNITION COIL . . . . .	81-2
REFRIGERANT SYSTEM SERVICE PORT - OPERATION . . . . .	24-2	RELEASE KNOB - REMOVAL, REAR HEADREST . . . . .	23-104	RESISTOR BLOCK - DESCRIPTION, BLOWER MOTOR . . . . .	24-28
REGULATOR - DESCRIPTION, FUEL FILTER/PRESSURE . . . . .	14-5	RELEASE LATCH - INSTALLATION, REAR SEAT CUSHION . . . . .	23-106	RESISTOR BLOCK - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, BLOWER MOTOR . . . . .	24-28
REGULATOR - DESCRIPTION, VOLTAGE . . . . .	8F-29	RELEASE LATCH - REMOVAL, REAR SEAT CUSHION . . . . .	23-106	RESISTOR BLOCK - INSTALLATION, BLOWER MOTOR . . . . .	24-28
REGULATOR - INSTALLATION, FUEL FILTER/PRESSURE . . . . .	14-6	RELEASE SYSTEM - DESCRIPTION, LIFTGATE FLIP-UP GLASS POWER . . . . .	8N-4	RESISTOR BLOCK - OPERATION, BLOWER MOTOR . . . . .	24-28
REGULATOR - INSTALLATION, WINDOW . . . . .	23-32, 23-39	RELEASE SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, LIFTGATE FLIP-UP GLASS POWER . . . . .	8N-6	RESISTOR BLOCK - REMOVAL, BLOWER MOTOR . . . . .	24-28
REGULATOR - OPERATION, FUEL FILTER/PRESSURE . . . . .	14-5	RELEASE SYSTEM - OPERATION, LIFTGATE FLIP-UP GLASS POWER . . . . .	8N-5	RESTRAINT ANCHOR - DESCRIPTION, CHILD . . . . .	80-13
REGULATOR - OPERATION, VOLTAGE . . . . .	8F-29	RELIEF VALVE - DESCRIPTION, HIGH PRESSURE . . . . .	24-58	RESTRAINT ANCHOR - INSTALLATION, CHILD . . . . .	80-15
REGULATOR - REMOVAL, FUEL FILTER/PRESSURE . . . . .	14-5	RELIEF VALVE - OPERATION, HIGH PRESSURE . . . . .	24-58	RESTRAINT ANCHOR - OPERATION, CHILD . . . . .	80-15
REGULATOR - REMOVAL, WINDOW . . . . .	23-32, 23-39	REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY MODULE - DESCRIPTION . . . . .	8N-9	RESTRAINT ANCHOR - REMOVAL, CHILD . . . . .	80-15
RELAY - DESCRIPTION, A/C COMPRESSOR CLUTCH . . . . .	24-16	REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY MODULE - OPERATION . . . . .	8N-9	RESTRAINT DEPLOYMENT - STANDARD PROCEDURE, SERVICE AFTER A SUPPLEMENTAL . . . . .	80-7
RELAY - DESCRIPTION, FUEL PUMP . . . . .	14-31	REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY SYSTEM - DESCRIPTION . . . . .	8N-2	RESTRAINT SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, SUPPLEMENTAL . . . . .	80-6
RELAY - DESCRIPTION, HORN . . . . .	8H-4	REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING . . . . .	8N-6	RESTRAINT SYSTEM - WARNINGS . . . . .	80-5
RELAY - DESCRIPTION, O2S HEATER . . . . .	14-37	REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY SYSTEM - OPERATION . . . . .	8N-5	RESTRAINTS - DESCRIPTION . . . . .	80-2
RELAY - DESCRIPTION, POWER OUTLET . . . . .	8W-97-13	REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY TRANSMITTER - DESCRIPTION . . . . .	8N-9	RESTRAINTS - OPERATION . . . . .	80-4
RELAY - DESCRIPTION, REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER . . . . .	8G-5	REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY TRANSMITTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING . . . . .	8N-9	RESTRAINTS - STANDARD PROCEDURE, HANDLING NON-DEPLOYED SUPPLEMENTAL . . . . .	80-6
RELAY - DESCRIPTION, STARTER MOTOR . . . . .	8F-39	REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY TRANSMITTER - OPERATION . . . . .	8N-9	RETAINER - ASSEMBLY, OVERRUNNING CLUTCH CAM/OVERDRIVE PISTON . . . . .	21-109
RELAY - DESCRIPTION, TRANSMISSION CONTROL . . . . .	21-274	REMOTE SWITCHES - DESCRIPTION . . . . .	8A-19	RETAINER - CLEANING, OVERRUNNING CLUTCH CAM/OVERDRIVE PISTON . . . . .	21-108
RELAY - DESCRIPTION, WIPER HIGH/LOW . . . . .	8R-30	REMOTE SWITCHES - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING . . . . .	8A-19	RETAINER - DESCRIPTION, OVERRUNNING CLUTCH CAM/OVERDRIVE PISTON . . . . .	21-108
RELAY - DESCRIPTION, WIPER ON/OFF . . . . .	8R-32	REMOTE SWITCHES - INSTALLATION . . . . .	8A-21	RETAINER - DISASSEMBLY, OVERRUNNING CLUTCH CAM/OVERDRIVE PISTON . . . . .	21-108
RELAY - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, A/C COMPRESSOR CLUTCH . . . . .	24-16	REMOTE SWITCHES - OPERATION . . . . .	8A-19	RETAINER - INSPECTION, OVERRUNNING CLUTCH CAM/OVERDRIVE PISTON . . . . .	21-109
RELAY - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, HORN . . . . .	8H-4	REMOTE SWITCHES - REMOVAL . . . . .	8A-20	RETAINER - OPERATION, OVERRUNNING CLUTCH CAM/OVERDRIVE PISTON . . . . .	21-108
RELAY - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, POWER OUTLET . . . . .	8W-97-13	REPAIR - DESCRIPTION, THREADED HOLE . . . . .	Intro-6	RETAINER BUSHING AND SEAL - INSTALLATION, REAR . . . . .	21-302, 21-363
RELAY - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER . . . . .	8G-5	REPAIR - STANDARD PROCEDURE, ALUMINUM THREAD . . . . .	21-185, 21-28	RETAINER BUSHING AND SEAL - NV242HD - INSTALLATION, REAR . . . . .	21-336
RELAY - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, STARTER . . . . .	8F-39	REPAIR - STANDARD PROCEDURE, PLASTIC BODY PANEL . . . . .	23-3	RETAINER BUSHING AND SEAL - NV242HD - REMOVAL, REAR . . . . .	21-336
RELAY - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, WIPER HIGH/LOW . . . . .	8R-31	REPAIR - STANDARD PROCEDURE, REAR GLASS HEATING GRID . . . . .	8G-4	RETAINER BUSHING AND SEAL - REMOVAL, REAR . . . . .	21-301, 21-362
RELAY - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, WIPER ON/OFF . . . . .	8R-32	REPAIR DAMAGED OR WORN THREADS - STANDARD PROCEDURE . . . . .	9-10, 9-71	RETAINER/BULKHEAD - ASSEMBLY, 4C . . . . .	21-228
RELAY - INSTALLATION, A/C COMPRESSOR CLUTCH . . . . .	24-17	REPAIRING LEAKS - STANDARD PROCEDURE . . . . .	22-8	RETAINER/BULKHEAD - DISASSEMBLY, 4C . . . . .	21-228
RELAY - INSTALLATION, HORN . . . . .	8H-5	REPEATER LAMP - DESCRIPTION, SIDE . . . . .	8L-34	RETAIRN - INSTALLATION, ROOF RAIL WEATHERSTRIP . . . . .	23-126
RELAY - INSTALLATION, O2S HEATER . . . . .	14-37	REPEATER LAMP - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, SIDE . . . . .	8L-34	RETAIRN - REMOVAL, ROOF RAIL WEATHERSTRIP . . . . .	23-126
RELAY - INSTALLATION, POWER OUTLET . . . . .	8W-97-14	REPEATER LAMP - OPERATION, SIDE . . . . .	8L-34	RETRACTOR - INSTALLATION, FRONT SEAT BELT . . . . .	80-31
RELAY - INSTALLATION, REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER . . . . .	8G-6	REQUIREMENTS - DESCRIPTION, COOLING SYSTEM . . . . .	24-1	RETRACTOR - INSTALLATION, REAR CENTER SEAT BELT . . . . .	80-38
RELAY - INSTALLATION, STARTER MOTOR . . . . .	8F-40	RESERVOIR - DESCRIPTION, VACUUM . . . . .	24-36	RETRACTOR - INSTALLATION, REAR OUTBOARD SEAT BELT . . . . .	80-41
RELAY - INSTALLATION, WIPER HIGH/LOW . . . . .	8R-31	RESERVOIR - DESCRIPTION, VACUUM . . . . .	8P-7	RETRACTOR - REMOVAL, FRONT SEAT BELT . . . . .	80-29
RELAY - OPERATION, A/C COMPRESSOR CLUTCH . . . . .	24-16	RESERVOIR - DESCRIPTION, WASHER . . . . .	8R-28	RETRACTOR - REMOVAL, REAR CENTER SEAT BELT . . . . .	80-38
RELAY - OPERATION, FUEL PUMP . . . . .	14-31	RESERVOIR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, VACUUM . . . . .	8P-8	RETRACTOR - REMOVAL, REAR OUTBOARD SEAT BELT . . . . .	80-40
RELAY - OPERATION, HORN . . . . .	8H-4	RESERVOIR - INSTALLATION, FLUID . . . . .	5-21	RETRAIN - STANDARD PROCEDURE, TIRE PRESSURE SENSOR . . . . .	22-14
RELAY - OPERATION, O2S HEATER . . . . .	14-37	RESERVOIR - INSTALLATION, VACUUM . . . . .	24-36	RETURN - DESCRIPTION, SENSOR . . . . .	8E-15
RELAY - OPERATION, POWER OUTLET . . . . .	8W-97-13	RESERVOIR - INSTALLATION, VACUUM . . . . .	8P-8	RETURN HOSE - DESCRIPTION, 1/2" . . . . .	19-40
RELAY - OPERATION, REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER . . . . .	8G-6	RESERVOIR - INSTALLATION, WASHER . . . . .	8R-29	RETURN HOSE - DESCRIPTION, 3/8" . . . . .	19-41
RELAY - OPERATION, STARTER MOTOR . . . . .	8F-39	RESERVOIR - OPERATION, VACUUM . . . . .	24-36	RETURN HOSE - INSTALLATION, 1/2" . . . . .	19-42
RELAY - OPERATION, TRANSMISSION CONTROL . . . . .	21-274	RESERVOIR - OPERATION, VACUUM . . . . .	8P-7	RETURN HOSE - INSTALLATION, 3/8" . . . . .	19-43
RELAY - OPERATION, WIPER HIGH/LOW . . . . .	8R-30	RESERVOIR - OPERATION, WASHER . . . . .	8R-28	RETURN HOSE - OPERATION, 1/2" . . . . .	19-41
RELAY - OPERATION, WIPER ON/OFF . . . . .	8R-32	RESERVOIR - REMOVAL, FLUID . . . . .	5-21	RETURN HOSE - REMOVAL, 1/2" . . . . .	19-41
RELAY - REMOVAL, A/C COMPRESSOR CLUTCH . . . . .	24-17	RESERVOIR - REMOVAL, VACUUM . . . . .	24-36	RETURN HOSE - REMOVAL, 3/8" . . . . .	19-41
RELAY - REMOVAL, HORN . . . . .	8H-5	RESERVOIR - REMOVAL, VACUUM . . . . .	8P-8	RETURN HOSE - RESERVOIR TO THE HYDRAULIC FAN MODULE (2.7L DIESEL) - INSTALLATION . . . . .	19-45
RELAY - REMOVAL, O2S HEATER . . . . .	14-37	RESERVOIR - REMOVAL, WASHER . . . . .	8R-28		
RELAY - REMOVAL, POWER OUTLET . . . . .	8W-97-14	RESERVOIR TO THE HYDRAULIC FAN MODULE (2.7L DIESEL) - INSTALLATION, RETURN HOSE . . . . .	19-45		
RELAY - REMOVAL, REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER . . . . .	8G-6	RESERVOIR TO THE HYDRAULIC FAN MODULE (2.7L DIESEL) - REMOVAL, RETURN HOSE . . . . .	19-44		
RELAY - REMOVAL, STARTER MOTOR . . . . .	8F-40	RESERVOIR TO THE PUMP (2.7L DIESEL) - INSTALLATION, RETURN HOSE . . . . .	19-45		
RELAY - REMOVAL, WIPER HIGH/LOW . . . . .	8R-31	RESERVOIR TO THE PUMP (2.7L DIESEL) - REMOVAL, RETURN HOSE . . . . .	19-45		
RELAY - REMOVAL, WIPER ON/OFF . . . . .	8R-33				
RELEASE - STANDARD PROCEDURE, FUEL SYSTEM PRESSURE . . . . .	14-2				
RELEASE CABLE - INSTALLATION, LATCH . . . . .	23-50				



Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page
RETURN HOSE - RESERVOIR TO THE HYDRAULIC FAN MODULE (2.7L DIESEL) - REMOVAL	19-44	SAFETY CERTIFICATION LABEL - DESCRIPTION, VEHICLE	Intro.-3	SEAT BELT & RETRACTOR - INSTALLATION, REAR OUTBOARD	80-41
RETURN HOSE - RESERVOIR TO THE PUMP (2.7L DIESEL) - INSTALLATION	19-45	SAFETY PRECAUTIONS AND WARNINGS, WARNING	23-1	SEAT BELT & RETRACTOR - REMOVAL, FRONT	80-29
RETURN HOSE - RESERVOIR TO THE PUMP (2.7L DIESEL) - REMOVAL	19-44	SANDING/BUFFING & POLISHING - DESCRIPTION, FINESSE	23-97	SEAT BELT & RETRACTOR - REMOVAL, REAR CENTER	80-38
RETURN LINE - DESCRIPTION	19-39	SCHEDULES - DESCRIPTION, MAINTENANCE	0-7	SEAT BELT & RETRACTOR - REMOVAL, REAR OUTBOARD	80-40
RETURN LINE - OPERATION	19-39	SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS - HYDRAULIC SCHEMATICS	21-203,21-44	SEAT BELT BUCKLE - INSTALLATION, REAR	80-42
REVERSE FLUSHING - STANDARD PROCEDURE, COOLING SYSTEM	7-15	SCHEMATICS, SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS - HYDRAULIC	21-203,21-44	SEAT BELT BUCKLE - REMOVAL, REAR	80-41
RFE TRANSMISSION, SPECIAL TOOLS	21-225	SCUFF PLATE - INSTALLATION, DOOR SILL	23-87	SEAT BELT SWITCH - DESCRIPTION	80-42
RING FITTING - STANDARD PROCEDURE, PISTON	9-122,9-47	SCUFF PLATE - INSTALLATION, LIFTGATE	23-92	SEAT BELT SWITCH - OPERATION	80-43
RKE TRANSMITTER BATTERIES - STANDARD PROCEDURE	8N-10	SCUFF PLATE - REMOVAL, DOOR SILL	23-87	SEAT BELT TENSIONER - DESCRIPTION	80-43
RKE TRANSMITTER PROGRAMMING - STANDARD PROCEDURE	8N-10	SCUFF PLATE - REMOVAL, LIFTGATE	23-92	SEAT BELT TENSIONER - OPERATION	80-43
ROAD TEST - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8P-2	SEAL - FRONT - INSTALLATION, CRANKSHAFT OIL	9-117,9-42	SEAT BELT TURNING LOOP ADJUSTER - INSTALLATION	80-44
ROAD TESTING - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	21-11,21-182	SEAL - FRONT - REMOVAL, CRANKSHAFT OIL	9-116,9-41	SEAT BELT TURNING LOOP ADJUSTER - REMOVAL	80-44
ROCK RAIL - INSTALLATION	23-47	SEAL - INSTALLATION, ADAPTER HOUSING	21-229	SEAT CUSHION - INSTALLATION, REAR	23-106
ROCK RAIL - REMOVAL	23-47	SEAL - INSTALLATION, B-PILLAR DOOR	23-120	SEAT CUSHION - REMOVAL, REAR	23-106
ROCKER ARM / ADJUSTER ASSEMBLY - CLEANING	9-27	SEAL - INSTALLATION, EXTENSION HOUSING	21-71	SEAT CUSHION COVER - INSTALLATION, REAR	23-106
ROCKER ARM / ADJUSTER ASSEMBLY - DESCRIPTION	9-108,9-27,9-97	SEAL - INSTALLATION, FRONT OUTPUT SHAFT	21-301,21-334,21-362	SEAT CUSHION COVER - REMOVAL, REAR	23-106
ROCKER ARM / ADJUSTER ASSEMBLY - INSPECTION	9-27	SEAL - INSTALLATION, HOOD	23-123	SEAT CUSHION RELEASE LATCH - INSTALLATION, REAR	23-106
ROCKER ARM / ADJUSTER ASSEMBLY - INSTALLATION	9-108,9-28,9-97	SEAL - INSTALLATION, OIL PUMP FRONT	21-258	SEAT CUSHION RELEASE LATCH - REMOVAL, REAR	23-106
ROCKER ARM / ADJUSTER ASSEMBLY - OPERATION	9-27	SEAL - INSTALLATION, PINION	3-101,3-37,3-67	SEAT CUSHION/COVER - INSTALLATION, FRONT	23-101
ROCKER ARM / ADJUSTER ASSEMBLY - REMOVAL	9-108,9-27,9-97	SEAL - INSTALLATION, PITMAN SHAFT	19-24	SEAT CUSHION/COVER - REMOVAL, FRONT	23-101
ROD - CLEANING, PISTON & CONNECTING	9-120	SEAL - INSTALLATION, REAR RETAINER BUSHING	21-302,21-363	SEAT ELEMENT - DESCRIPTION, HEATED	8G-13
ROD - DESCRIPTION, PISTON & CONNECTING	9-119,9-44	SEAL - NV242HD - INSTALLATION, REAR RETAINER BUSHING	21-336	SEAT ELEMENT - INSTALLATION, HEATED	8G-14
ROD - INSPECTION, PISTON & CONNECTING	9-120	SEAL - NV242HD - REMOVAL, REAR RETAINER BUSHING	21-336	SEAT ELEMENT - OPERATION, HEATED	8G-13
ROD - INSTALLATION, PISTON & CONNECTING	9-121,9-46	SEAL - REAR - INSTALLATION, CRANKSHAFT OIL	9-118,9-42	SEAT ELEMENT - REMOVAL, HEATED	8G-14
ROD - REMOVAL, PISTON & CONNECTING	9-119,9-45	SEAL - REAR - REMOVAL, CRANKSHAFT OIL	9-118,9-42	SEAT ELEMENTS - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, HEATED	8G-14
ROD BEARING FITTING - STANDARD PROCEDURE, CONNECTING	9-110	SEAL - REMOVAL, ADAPTER HOUSING	21-229	SEAT SENSOR - DESCRIPTION, HEATED	8G-15
ROD BEARINGS - STANDARD PROCEDURE, FITTING CONNECTING	9-34	SEAL - REMOVAL, B-PILLAR DOOR	23-120	SEAT SENSOR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, HEATED	8G-15
ROD END - DESCRIPTION, TIE	19-31	SEAL - REMOVAL, EXTENSION HOUSING	21-71	SEAT SENSOR - REMOVAL, HEATED	8G-15
ROD END - INSTALLATION, TIE	19-31	SEAL - REMOVAL, FRONT OUTPUT SHAFT	21-301,21-334,21-362	SEAT SIDE SHIELD - INSTALLATION, FRONT	23-102
ROD END - OPERATION, TIE	19-31	SEAL - REMOVAL, HOOD	23-123	SEAT SIDE SHIELD - REMOVAL, FRONT	23-102
ROD END - REMOVAL, TIE	19-31	SEAL - REMOVAL, OIL PUMP FRONT	21-258	SEAT SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, DRIVER	8N-21
ROLL DOWN - STANDARD PROCEDURE, GLOVE BOX	23-52	SEAL - REMOVAL, PINION	3-100,3-36,3-67	SEAT SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, DRIVER HEATED	8G-11
ROOF RAIL WEATHERSTRIP / RETAINR - INSTALLATION	23-126	SEAL - REMOVAL, PITMAN SHAFT	19-24	SEAT SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, PASSENGER	8N-28
ROOF RAIL WEATHERSTRIP / RETAINR - REMOVAL	23-126	SEAL - REMOVAL, REAR RETAINER BUSHING	21-301,21-362	SEAT SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, PASSENGER HEATED	8G-15
ROTATION - STANDARD PROCEDURE, TIRE	22-5	SEAL AREA LEAKS - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, REAR	9-130,9-9	SEAT SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, DRIVER	8N-22
ROTOR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, FRONT DISC BRAKE	5-29	SEALER LOCATIONS, SPECIFICATIONS	23-134	SEAT SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, DRIVER HEATED	8G-11
ROTOR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, REAR DISC BRAKE	5-30	SEALERS - STANDARD PROCEDURE, FORM-IN-PLACE GASKETS	9-71,9-9	SEAT SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, PASSENGER	8N-29
ROTOR - INSTALLATION, FRONT DISC BRAKE	5-31	SEALS - DESCRIPTION, VALVE STEM	9-109, 9-28,9-98	SEAT SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, PASSENGER HEATED	8G-16
ROTOR - INSTALLATION, REAR DISC BRAKE	5-32	SEALS - INSTALLATION, AXLE SHAFT	3-34	SEAT SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, PASSENGER HEATED	8G-16
ROTOR - REMOVAL, FRONT DISC BRAKE	5-31	SEALS - REMOVAL, AXLE SHAFT	3-34	SEAT SWITCH - INSTALLATION, DRIVER	8N-23
ROTOR - REMOVAL, REAR DISC BRAKE	5-31	SEAT - INSTALLATION, FRONT	23-100	SEAT SWITCH - INSTALLATION, DRIVER HEATED	8G-13
ROTOR MACHINING - STANDARD PROCEDURE, DISC BRAKE	5-31	SEAT - REMOVAL, FRONT	23-100	SEAT SWITCH - INSTALLATION, PASSENGER	8N-30
ROUTING - 4.7L ENGINE - DESCRIPTION, COOLING SYSTEM	7-1	SEAT BACK - INSTALLATION, FRONT	23-100	SEAT SWITCH - INSTALLATION, PASSENGER HEATED	8G-17
ROUTING 4.0L ENGINE - DESCRIPTION, COOLING SYSTEM	7-2	SEAT BACK - INSTALLATION, REAR	23-105	SEAT SWITCH - OPERATION, DRIVER	8N-21
RUNNING LAMP MODULE - DESCRIPTION, DAYTIME	8L-12	SEAT BACK - REMOVAL, FRONT	23-100	SEAT SWITCH - OPERATION, DRIVER HEATED	8G-11
RUNNING LAMP MODULE - INSTALLATION, DAYTIME	8L-12	SEAT BACK - REMOVAL, REAR	23-105	SEAT SWITCH - OPERATION, PASSENGER	8N-28
RUNNING LAMP MODULE - OPERATION, DAYTIME	8L-12	SEAT BACK COVER - INSTALLATION, FRONT	23-101	SEAT SWITCH - OPERATION, PASSENGER HEATED	8G-16
RUNNING LAMP MODULE - REMOVAL, DAYTIME	8L-12	SEAT BACK COVER - INSTALLATION, REAR	23-105	SEAT SWITCH - REMOVAL, DRIVER	8N-23
RUNOUT - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, TIRE AND WHEEL	22-1	SEAT BACK COVER - REMOVAL, FRONT	23-101	SEAT SWITCH - REMOVAL, DRIVER HEATED	8G-13
		SEAT BACK COVER - REMOVAL, REAR	23-105	SEAT SWITCH - REMOVAL, PASSENGER HEATED	8G-17
		SEAT BACK LATCH HANDLE - INSTALLATION, FOLDING REAR	23-107	SEAT SYSTEM - DESCRIPTION, HEATED	8G-9
		SEAT BACK LATCH HANDLE - REMOVAL, FOLDING REAR	23-107	SEAT SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS & TESTING, POWER	8N-20
		SEAT BACK LATCH/HINGE - INSTALLATION, FOLDING REAR	23-107	SEAT SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, HEATED	8G-10
		SEAT BACK LATCH/HINGE - REMOVAL, FOLDING REAR	23-107	SEAT SYSTEM - OPERATION, HEATED	8G-10
		SEAT BELT & RETRACTOR - INSTALLATION, FRONT	80-31		
		SEAT BELT & RETRACTOR - INSTALLATION, REAR CENTER	80-38		

Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page
SEAT SYSTEM - OPERATION, POWER	8N-20	SENSOR - DESCRIPTION, FUEL LEVEL		SENSOR - OPERATION, TRANSMISSION	
SEAT TRACK - DESCRIPTION, POWER	8N-32	SENDING UNIT	14-6	TEMPERATURE	21-137,21-276
SEAT TRACK - DIAGNOSIS AND		SENSOR - DESCRIPTION, HEATED SEAT	8G-15	SENSOR - REMOVAL, AUTO HEADLAMP	8L-7
TESTING, POWER	8N-33	SENSOR - DESCRIPTION, IN-CAR		SENSOR - REMOVAL, BATTERY	
SEAT TRACK - OPERATION, POWER	8N-33	TEMPERATURE	24-30	TEMPERATURE	8F-27
SEAT TRACK & RECLINER ASSEMBLY -		SENSOR - DESCRIPTION, INPUT SPEED	21-249	SENSOR - REMOVAL, COOLANT LEVEL	7-25
INSTALLATION	23-102	SENSOR - DESCRIPTION, INTAKE AIR		SENSOR - REMOVAL, EVAPORATOR	
SEAT TRACK & RECLINER ASSEMBLY -		TEMPERATURE	14-33	TEMPERATURE	24-36
REMOVAL	23-102	SENSOR - DESCRIPTION, KNOCK	8I-13	SENSOR - REMOVAL, FRONT IMPACT	80-26
SEAT TRACK ADJUSTER - INSTALLATION	23-103	SENSOR - DESCRIPTION, LINE		SENSOR - REMOVAL, FRONT WHEEL	
SEAT TRACK ADJUSTER - REMOVAL	23-102	PRESSURE (LP)	21-250	SPEED	5-44
SEATBELT INDICATOR - DESCRIPTION	8J-29	SENSOR - DESCRIPTION, O2S	14-37	SENSOR - REMOVAL, FUEL LEVEL	
SEATBELT INDICATOR - OPERATION	8J-29	SENSOR - DESCRIPTION, OUTPUT		SENDING UNIT	14-7
SEAT/MIRROR MODULE - DESCRIPTION,		SPEED	21-258	SENSOR - REMOVAL, HEATED SEAT	8G-15
MEMORY HEATED	8E-10	SENSOR - DESCRIPTION, POSITION	21-335	SENSOR - REMOVAL, IN-CAR	
SEAT/MIRROR MODULE - DESCRIPTION,		SENSOR - DESCRIPTION, REAR WHEEL		TEMPERATURE	24-30
MEMORY HEATED	8G-17	SPEED	5-45	SENSOR - REMOVAL, INPUT SPEED	21-250
SEAT/MIRROR MODULE - DIAGNOSIS		SENSOR - DESCRIPTION, SIDE IMPACT	80-48	SENSOR - REMOVAL, KNOCK	8I-14
AND TESTING, MEMORY HEATED	8E-11	SENSOR - DESCRIPTION, SPEED	21-128	SENSOR - REMOVAL, LINE PRESSURE	
SEAT/MIRROR MODULE - DIAGNOSIS		SENSOR - DESCRIPTION, THROTTLE		(LP)	21-250
AND TESTING, MEMORY HEATED	8G-18	POSITION	14-45	SENSOR - REMOVAL, O2S	14-38
SEAT/MIRROR MODULE -		SENSOR - DESCRIPTION,		SENSOR - REMOVAL, OUTPUT SPEED	21-259
INSTALLATION, MEMORY HEATED	8E-11	TRANSMISSION RANGE	21-274	SENSOR - REMOVAL, POSITION	21-336
SEAT/MIRROR MODULE -		SENSOR - DESCRIPTION,		SENSOR - REMOVAL, REAR WHEEL	
INSTALLATION, MEMORY HEATED	8G-19	TRANSMISSION TEMPERATURE	21-136,21-276	SPEED	5-45
SEAT/MIRROR MODULE - OPERATION,		SENSOR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING,		SENSOR - REMOVAL, SIDE IMPACT	80-49
MEMORY HEATED	8E-11	AMBIENT TEMPERATURE	8M-14	SENSOR (AHL) - DIAGNOSIS AND	
SEAT/MIRROR MODULE - OPERATION,		SENSOR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING,		TESTING, AUTO HEADLAMP	8L-7
MEMORY HEATED	8G-18	HEATED SEAT	8G-15	SENSOR CIRCUIT - DIAGNOSIS AND	
SEAT/MIRROR MODULE - REMOVAL,		SENSOR - INSTALLATION, AUTO		TESTING, AMBIENT TEMPERATURE	8M-14
MEMORY HEATED	8E-11	HEADLAMP	8L-7	SENSOR MODULE - DESCRIPTION, RAIN	8R-19
SEAT/MIRROR MODULE - REMOVAL,		SENSOR - INSTALLATION, BATTERY		SENSOR MODULE - INSTALLATION,	
MEMORY HEATED	8G-18	TEMPERATURE	8F-27	RAIN	8R-21
SEATS - DESCRIPTION, INTAKE/		SENSOR - INSTALLATION, COOLANT		SENSOR MODULE - OPERATION, RAIN	8R-19
EXHAUST VALVES	9-105,9-24,9-95	LEVEL	7-25	SENSOR MODULE - REMOVAL, RAIN	8R-20
SEATS - INSTALLATION, INTAKE/		SENSOR - INSTALLATION, EVAPORATOR		SENSOR RETRAIN - STANDARD	
EXHAUST VALVES	9-107,9-26,9-96	TEMPERATURE	24-37	PROCEDURE, TIRE PRESSURE	22-14
SEATS - REMOVAL, INTAKE/EXHAUST		SENSOR - INSTALLATION, FRONT		SENSOR RETURN - DESCRIPTION	8E-15
VALVES	9-106,9-25,9-95	IMPACT	80-27	SENSOR/SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, OIL	
SECONDARY WEATHERSTRIP -		SENSOR - INSTALLATION, FRONT		PRESSURE	9-134
INSTALLATION, FRONT DOOR	23-122	WHEEL SPEED	5-44	SENSOR/SWITCH - INSTALLATION, OIL	
SECONDARY WEATHERSTRIP -		SENSOR - INSTALLATION, FUEL LEVEL		PRESSURE	9-135
INSTALLATION, RDR	23-125	SENDING UNIT	14-7	SENSOR/SWITCH - OPERATION, OIL	
SECONDARY WEATHERSTRIP -		SENSOR - INSTALLATION, INPUT SPEED	21-250	PRESSURE	9-134
REMOVAL, FRONT DOOR	23-122	SENSOR - INSTALLATION, KNOCK	8I-15	SENSOR/SWITCH - REMOVAL, OIL	
SECONDARY WEATHERSTRIP -		SENSOR - INSTALLATION, LINE		PRESSURE	9-134
REMOVAL, RDR	23-125	PRESSURE (LP)	21-251	SENSOR/TRANSMITTER - INSTALLATION,	
SECTION IDENTIFICATION AND		SENSOR - INSTALLATION, O2S	14-39	TIRE PRESSURE	22-15
INFORMATION - DESCRIPTION	8W-01-6	SENSOR - INSTALLATION, OUTPUT		SENSOR/TRANSMITTER - REMOVAL,	
SECURITY SYSTEM - DESCRIPTION,		SPEED	21-259	TIRE PRESSURE	22-14
VEHICLE THEFT	8Q-1	SENSOR - INSTALLATION, POSITION	21-336	SENTRY KEY IMMOBILIZER MODULE -	
SECURITY SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND		SENSOR - INSTALLATION, REAR WHEEL		DESCRIPTION	8E-17
TESTING, VEHICLE THEFT	8Q-4	SPEED	5-45	SENTRY KEY IMMOBILIZER MODULE -	
SECURITY SYSTEM - OPERATION,		SENSOR - INSTALLATION, SIDE IMPACT	80-50	INSTALLATION	8E-19
VEHICLE THEFT	8Q-2	SENSOR - OPERATION, AMBIENT		SENTRY KEY IMMOBILIZER MODULE -	
SENDING UNIT / SENSOR -		TEMPERATURE	8M-13	OPERATION	8E-17
DESCRIPTION, FUEL LEVEL	14-6	SENSOR - OPERATION, BATTERY		SENTRY KEY IMMOBILIZER MODULE -	
SENDING UNIT / SENSOR -		TEMPERATURE	8F-27	REMOVAL	8E-19
INSTALLATION, FUEL LEVEL	14-7	SENSOR - OPERATION, ENGINE		SENTRY KEY IMMOBILIZER SYSTEM -	
SENDING UNIT / SENSOR - OPERATION,		COOLANT TEMP	7-34	DESCRIPTION	8Q-2
FUEL LEVEL	14-6	SENSOR - OPERATION, ENGINE OIL		SENTRY KEY IMMOBILIZER SYSTEM -	
SENDING UNIT / SENSOR - REMOVAL,		PRESSURE	9-57	DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8Q-4
FUEL LEVEL	14-7	SENSOR - OPERATION, EVAPORATOR		SENTRY KEY IMMOBILIZER SYSTEM -	
SENSE - DESCRIPTION, IGNITION		TEMPERATURE	24-36	OPERATION	8Q-4
CIRCUIT	8E-15	SENSOR - OPERATION, FRONT IMPACT	80-26	SENTRY KEY TRANSPONDER	
SENSE - OPERATION, IGNITION CIRCUIT	8E-16	SENSOR - OPERATION, FRONT WHEEL		PROGRAMMING - STANDARD	
SENSE - PCM INPUT - OPERATION, ASD	8I-4	SPEED	5-44	PROCEDURE	8Q-6
SENSITIVE DEVICES - STANDARD		SENSOR - OPERATION, FUEL LEVEL		SERPENTINE DRIVE BELT - DIAGNOSIS	
PROCEDURE, ELECTROSTATIC		SENDING UNIT	14-6	AND TESTING	7-18
DISCHARGE (ESD)	8W-01-8	SENSOR - OPERATION, IN-CAR		SERVO - ASSEMBLY, FRONT	21-81
SENSOR & BRACKET - INSTALLATION,		TEMPERATURE	24-30	SERVO - ASSEMBLY, REAR	21-125
FRONT IMPACT	80-28	SENSOR - OPERATION, INPUT SPEED	21-249	SERVO - CLEANING, FRONT	21-80
SENSOR & BRACKET - REMOVAL,		SENSOR - OPERATION, INTAKE AIR		SERVO - CLEANING, REAR	21-125
FRONT IMPACT	80-28	TEMPERATURE	14-33	SERVO - DESCRIPTION	8P-5
SENSOR - DESCRIPTION, AMBIENT		SENSOR - OPERATION, KNOCK	8I-13	SERVO - DESCRIPTION, FRONT	21-79
TEMPERATURE	8M-13	SENSOR - OPERATION, LINE PRESSURE		SERVO - DESCRIPTION, REAR	21-124
SENSOR - DESCRIPTION, BATTERY		(LP)	21-250	SERVO - DISASSEMBLY, FRONT	21-80
TEMPERATURE	8F-27	SENSOR - OPERATION, O2S	14-37	SERVO - DISASSEMBLY, REAR	21-124
SENSOR - DESCRIPTION, ENGINE		SENSOR - OPERATION, OUTPUT SPEED	21-258	SERVO - INSPECTION, FRONT	21-80
COOLANT TEMP	7-34	SENSOR - OPERATION, POSITION	21-335	SERVO - INSTALLATION	8P-6
SENSOR - DESCRIPTION, ENGINE OIL		SENSOR - OPERATION, REAR WHEEL		SERVO - OPERATION	8P-5
PRESSURE	9-57	SPEED	5-45	SERVO - OPERATION, FRONT	21-79
SENSOR - DESCRIPTION, EVAPORATOR		SENSOR - OPERATION, SIDE IMPACT	80-49	SERVO - OPERATION, REAR	21-124
TEMPERATURE	24-36	SENSOR - OPERATION, SPEED	21-128	SERVO - REMOVAL	8P-5
SENSOR - DESCRIPTION, FRONT		SENSOR - OPERATION, THROTTLE		SET SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, MEMORY	8N-27
IMPACT	80-26	POSITION	14-45	SET SWITCH - INSTALLATION, MEMORY	8N-28
SENSOR - DESCRIPTION, FRONT WHEEL		SENSOR - OPERATION, TRANSMISSION		SET SWITCH - OPERATION, MEMORY	8N-27
SPEED	5-44	RANGE	21-274	SET SWITCH - REMOVAL, MEMORY	8N-28

Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page
SETTING TRANSMITTER CODES - STANDARD PROCEDURE	8M-12	SHOCK - OPERATION	2-12,2-19	SLEEVE - INSTALLATION, FRONT HEADREST	23-99
SEVERAL LOADS - STANDARD PROCEDURE, TESTING FOR A SHORT TO GROUND ON FUSES POWERING	8W-01-10	SHOCK - REMOVAL	2-12,2-19	SLEEVE - INSTALLATION, REAR HEADREST	23-104
SHAFT - ASSEMBLY, PLANETARY GEARTRAIN/OUTPUT	21-115	SHOES - DESCRIPTION	5-37	SLEEVE - REMOVAL, FRONT HEADREST	23-99
SHAFT - C/V FRONT - INSTALLATION, PROPELLER	3-7	SHOES - INSTALLATION	5-39	SLEEVE - REMOVAL, REAR HEADREST	23-104
SHAFT - C/V FRONT - REMOVAL, PROPELLER	3-6	SHOES - INSTALLATION, FRONT DISC BRAKE	5-14	SLIDE BLOCK AND SPRING - INSTALLATION, SUNSHADE	23-119
SHAFT - DESCRIPTION, PLANETARY GEARTRAIN/OUTPUT	21-114	SHOES - OPERATION	5-37	SLIDE BLOCK AND SPRING - REMOVAL, SUNSHADE	23-119
SHAFT - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, PROPELLER	3-1	SHOES - REMOVAL	5-37	SOLENOID - DESCRIPTION	21-127
SHAFT - DISASSEMBLY, PLANETARY GEARTRAIN/OUTPUT	21-114	SHOES - REMOVAL, FRONT DISC BRAKE	5-12	SOLENOID - DESCRIPTION, EVAP/PURGE	25-15
SHAFT - INSPECTION, PLANETARY GEARTRAIN/OUTPUT	21-115	SHORT TO GROUND - STANDARD PROCEDURE, TESTING FOR A	8W-01-9	SOLENOID - INSTALLATION, EVAP/PURGE	25-16
SHAFT - INSTALLATION, IDLER	9-155	SIDE - INSTALLATION, LEFT	9-94	SOLENOID - INSTALLATION, RADIATOR FAN	7-53
SHAFT - INSTALLATION, PITMAN	19-22	SIDE - INSTALLATION, RIGHT	9-105	SOLENOID - OPERATION	21-128
SHAFT - OPERATION, PLANETARY GEARTRAIN/OUTPUT	21-114	SIDE - REMOVAL, LEFT	9-94	SOLENOID - OPERATION, EVAP/PURGE	25-15
SHAFT - REAR - INSTALLATION, PROPELLER	3-8	SIDE - REMOVAL, RIGHT	9-105	SOLENOID - REMOVAL, EVAP/PURGE	25-15
SHAFT - REAR - REMOVAL, PROPELLER	3-8	SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG - DESCRIPTION	80-45	SOLENOID - REMOVAL, RADIATOR FAN	7-52
SHAFT - REMOVAL, IDLER	9-155	SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG - INSTALLATION	80-47	SOLENOID SWITCH VALVE - DESCRIPTION	21-268
SHAFT - REMOVAL, PITMAN	19-21	SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG - OPERATION	80-45	SOLENOID SWITCH VALVE - OPERATION	21-268
SHAFT - SPECIAL TOOLS, PROPELLER	3-6	SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG - REMOVAL	80-46	SOLENOIDS - DESCRIPTION	21-268
SHAFT - SPECIFICATIONS, PROPELLER	3-6	SIDE IMPACT SENSOR - DESCRIPTION	80-48	SOLENOIDS - OPERATION	21-268
SHAFT - STANDARD PROCEDURE, PROPELLER	3-4	SIDE IMPACT SENSOR - INSTALLATION	80-50	SOLENOID/TRS ASSEMBLY - DESCRIPTION, TRANSMISSION	21-275
SHAFT - U-JOINT FRONT - INSTALLATION, PROPELLER	3-7	SIDE IMPACT SENSOR - OPERATION	80-49	SOLENOID/TRS ASSEMBLY - INSTALLATION, TRANSMISSION	21-276
SHAFT - U-JOINT FRONT - REMOVAL, PROPELLER	3-7	SIDE IMPACT SENSOR - REMOVAL	80-49	SOLENOID/TRS ASSEMBLY - OPERATION, TRANSMISSION	21-275
SHAFT BEARING - INSTALLATION, PITMAN	19-23	SIDE MOLDINGS - INSTALLATION, BODY	23-41	SOLENOID/TRS ASSEMBLY - REMOVAL, TRANSMISSION	21-276
SHAFT BEARING - REMOVAL, PITMAN	19-23	SIDE MOLDINGS - REMOVAL, BODY	23-40	SPACER - INSTALLATION, COLLAPSIBLE	3-102, 3-38,3-69
SHAFT FRONT BEARING - INSTALLATION, OUTPUT	21-87	SIDE REPEATER LAMP - DESCRIPTION	8L-34	SPACER - REMOVAL, COLLAPSIBLE	3-102,3-37, 3-69
SHAFT FRONT BEARING - REMOVAL, OUTPUT	21-87	SIDE REPEATER LAMP - INSTALLATION, FRONT SEAT	23-102	SPARE / TEMPORARY TIRE - DESCRIPTION	22-11
SHAFT HOUSING - INSTALLATION, STUB	19-26	SIDE SHIELD - REMOVAL, FRONT SEAT	23-102	SPARE WHEEL WITH MATCHING TIRE - DESCRIPTION, FULL SIZE	22-11
SHAFT HOUSING - REMOVAL, STUB	19-26	SIDE VIEW MIRROR - INSTALLATION	23-47	SPARK PLUG - CLEANING	8I-18
SHAFT REAR BEARING - INSTALLATION, OUTPUT	21-88	SIDE VIEW MIRROR - REMOVAL	23-46	SPARK PLUG - DESCRIPTION	8I-15
SHAFT REAR BEARING - REMOVAL, OUTPUT	21-87	SIDE VIEW MIRROR GLASS - INSTALLATION	23-46	SPARK PLUG - INSTALLATION	8I-18
SHAFT SEAL - INSTALLATION, FRONT OUTPUT	21-301,21-334,21-362	SIDE VIEW MIRROR GLASS - REMOVAL	23-46	SPARK PLUG - REMOVAL	8I-18
SHAFT SEAL - INSTALLATION, PITMAN	19-24	SIDEVIEW MIRROR - DESCRIPTION	8N-15	SPARK PLUG CONDITIONS - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8I-16
SHAFT SEAL - REMOVAL, FRONT OUTPUT	21-301,21-334,21-362	SIDEVIEW MIRROR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8N-15	SPARK PLUGS, SPECIFICATIONS	8I-3
SHAFT SEAL - REMOVAL, PITMAN	19-24	SIDEVIEW MIRROR - OPERATION	8N-15	SPEAKER - DESCRIPTION	8A-21
SHAFT SEALS - INSTALLATION, AXLE	3-34	SIGNAL & HAZARD WARNING SYSTEM - DESCRIPTION, TURN	8L-2	SPEAKER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8A-22
SHAFT SEALS - REMOVAL, AXLE	3-33,3-64,3-98	SIGNAL & HAZARD WARNING SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, TURN	8L-3	SPEAKER - INSTALLATION, FRONT DOOR	8A-25
SHAFTS - INSTALLATION, AXLE	3-33,3-64,3-98	SIGNAL & HAZARD WARNING SYSTEMS - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, TURN	8L-4	SPEAKER - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT PANEL	8A-24
SHIELD - INSTALLATION, FRONT SEAT SIDE	23-102	SIGNAL CANCEL CAM - DESCRIPTION, TURN	8L-36	SPEAKER - INSTALLATION, REAR DOOR	8A-24
SHIELD - REMOVAL, FRONT SEAT SIDE	23-102	SIGNAL CANCEL CAM - OPERATION, TURN	8L-36	SPEAKER - OPERATION	8A-21
SHIELDS - DESCRIPTION, HEAT	11-12	SIGNAL INDICATOR - DESCRIPTION, TURN	8J-34	SPEAKER, REMOVAL - FRONT DOOR	8A-24
SHIFT CABLE - INSTALLATION	21-337,21-364	SIGNAL INDICATOR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, TURN	8J-34	SPEAKER, REMOVAL - INSTRUMENT PANEL	8A-24
SHIFT CABLE - REMOVAL	21-337,21-363	SIGNAL INDICATOR - OPERATION, TURN	8J-34	SPEAKER, REMOVAL - REAR DOOR	8A-23
SHIFT INDICATOR (TRANSFER CASE) - DESCRIPTION	8J-29	SILL SCUFF PLATE - INSTALLATION, DOOR	23-87	SPECIFICATIONS	22-10
SHIFT INDICATOR (TRANSFER CASE) - OPERATION	8J-30	SILL SCUFF PLATE - REMOVAL, DOOR	23-87	SPEED - DESCRIPTION, TIRE PRESSURE FOR HIGH	22-7
SHIFT INTERLOCK - ADJUSTMENTS, BRAKE TRANSMISSION	21-231,21-66	SILL TRIM - INSTALLATION, DOOR	23-87	SPEED CONTROL - DESCRIPTION	8P-1
SHIFT INTERLOCK - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, BRAKE TRANSMISSION	21-230,21-65	SILL TRIM - REMOVAL, DOOR	23-87	SPEED CONTROL - OPERATION	8P-1
SHIFT INTERLOCK MECHANISM - DESCRIPTION, BRAKE TRANSMISSION	21-230, 21-64	SINGLE CARDAN UNIVERSAL JOINTS - ASSEMBLY	3-11	SPEED CONTROL - TORQUE	8P-2
SHIFT INTERLOCK MECHANISM - OPERATION, BRAKE TRANSMISSION	21-230, 21-65	SINGLE CARDAN UNIVERSAL JOINTS - DISASSEMBLY	3-10	SPEED SENSOR - DESCRIPTION	21-128
SHIFT MECHANISM - DESCRIPTION	21-125, 21-266	SIREN - DESCRIPTION	8Q-13	SPEED SENSOR - DESCRIPTION, FRONT WHEEL	5-44
SHIFT MECHANISM - INSTALLATION	21-127, 21-266	SIREN - INSTALLATION	8Q-14	SPEED SENSOR - DESCRIPTION, INPUT	21-249
SHIFT MECHANISM - OPERATION	21-125, 21-266	SIREN - OPERATION	8Q-13	SPEED SENSOR - DESCRIPTION, OUTPUT	21-258
SHIFT MECHANISM - REMOVAL	21-125,21-266	SIREN - REMOVAL	8Q-13	SPEED SENSOR - DESCRIPTION, REAR WHEEL	5-45
SHOCK - DESCRIPTION	2-12,2-19	SIZE, SPARE WHEEL WITH MATCHING TIRE - DESCRIPTION, FULL	22-11	SPEED SENSOR - INSTALLATION, FRONT WHEEL	5-44
SHOCK - INSTALLATION	2-13,2-19	SKID PLATE - DESCRIPTION, FUEL TANK	13-8	SPEED SENSOR - INSTALLATION, INPUT	21-250
		SKID PLATE - INSTALLATION, FRONT	13-8	SPEED SENSOR - INSTALLATION, OUTPUT	21-259
		SKID PLATE - INSTALLATION, TRANSFER CASE	13-9	SPEED SENSOR - INSTALLATION, REAR WHEEL	5-45
		SKID PLATE - REMOVAL, FRONT	13-8	SPEED SENSOR - OPERATION	21-128
		SKID PLATE - REMOVAL, TRANSFER CASE	13-9	SPEED SENSOR - OPERATION, FRONT WHEEL	5-44
		SKIS INDICATOR - DESCRIPTION	8J-30	SPEED SENSOR - OPERATION, INPUT	21-249
		SKIS INDICATOR - OPERATION	8J-30	SPEED SENSOR - OPERATION, OUTPUT	21-258
		SKIS INDICATOR LAMP - DESCRIPTION	8Q-14	SPEED SENSOR - OPERATION, REAR WHEEL	5-45
		SKIS INDICATOR LAMP - OPERATION	8Q-14		
		SKIS INITIALIZATION - STANDARD PROCEDURE	8Q-6		



Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page
SPEED SENSOR - REMOVAL, FRONT WHEEL	5-44	STEERING LINKAGE, RIGHT HAND DRIVE (RHD) VEHICLES	19-27	SUPPORT BRACKET - INSTALLATION, REARVIEW MIRROR	23-94
SPEED SENSOR - REMOVAL, INPUT	21-250	STEERING LINKAGE, SPECIAL TOOLS	19-29	SUPPORT BRACKET - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT PANEL STEERING COLUMN	23-69
SPEED SENSOR - REMOVAL, OUTPUT	21-259	STEERING PUMP, SPECIAL TOOLS - POWER	19-38	SUPPRESSION GROUND STRAP - DESCRIPTION, RADIO NOISE	8A-17
SPEED SENSOR - REMOVAL, REAR WHEEL	5-45	STEERING SYSTEM - DESCRIPTION, POWER	19-1	SURFACE PREPARATION - STANDARD PROCEDURE, ENGINE GASKET	9-72
SPEEDOMETER - DESCRIPTION	8J-31	STEERING SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, POWER	19-2	SUSPENSION - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, REAR	2-18
SPEEDOMETER - OPERATION	8J-31	STEERING SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, SUSPENSION	2-1	SUSPENSION AND STEERING SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	2-1
SPICE INFORMATION - DESCRIPTION, CONNECTOR, GROUND	8W-01-7	STEERING SYSTEM - OPERATION, POWER	19-1	SUSPENSION ARM, BUSHINGS, AND BALL JOINT - DESCRIPTION, UPPER	2-21
SPlicing - STANDARD PROCEDURE, WIRE	8W-01-15	STEERING WHEEL - INSTALLATION	19-16	SUSPENSION ARM, BUSHINGS, AND BALL JOINT - OPERATION, UPPER	2-21
SPRING - DESCRIPTION	2-13,2-20	STEERING WHEEL - REMOVAL	19-15	SUSPENSION, SPECIAL TOOLS - FRONT	2-8
SPRING - INSTALLATION	2-13,2-20	STEM SEALS - DESCRIPTION, VALVE	9-109, 9-28, 9-98	SUSPENSION, SPECIAL TOOLS - REAR	2-19
SPRING - INSTALLATION, CIGAR LIGHTER OUTLET DOOR	8W-97-3	STORAGE BOX - INSTALLATION, REAR	23-93	SWITCH - DESCRIPTION	8P-6
SPRING - INSTALLATION, SUNSHADE - SLIDE BLOCK	23-119	STORAGE BOX - REMOVAL, REAR	23-93	SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, BLOWER MOTOR	24-29
SPRING - OPERATION	2-13,2-20	STRAP - DESCRIPTION, RADIO NOISE SUPPRESSION GROUND	8A-17	SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, BRAKE LAMP	8L-7
SPRING - REMOVAL	2-13,2-20	STRAP - INSTALLATION, CHECK	23-24, 23-33	SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, DOOR AJAR	8L-39
SPRING - REMOVAL, CIGAR LIGHTER OUTLET DOOR	8W-97-3	STRAP - INSTALLATION, ENGINE TO BODY GROUND	8A-18	SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, DOOR CYLINDER LOCK	8N-7
SPRING - REMOVAL, SUNSHADE - SLIDE BLOCK	23-119	STRAP - INSTALLATION, EXHAUST-TO-BODY GROUND	8A-19	SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, DOOR CYLINDER LOCK	8Q-7
SPRING TENSION TEST - STANDARD PROCEDURE, VALVE	9-28	STRAP - REMOVAL, CHECK	23-24, 23-33	SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, DRIVER HEATED SEAT	8G-11
SPRINGS - DESCRIPTION, VALVE	9-109, 9-28, 9-98	STRAP - REMOVAL, ENGINE-TO-BODY GROUND	8A-18	SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, DRIVER SEAT	8N-21
SPRINGS - INSTALLATION, VALVE	9-29	STRAP - REMOVAL, EXHAUST-TO-BODY GROUND	8A-18	SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, FLIP UP GLASS AJAR	8L-39
SPRINGS - REMOVAL, VALVE	9-29	STRIP - REMOVAL, RADIO NOISE SUPPRESSION GROUND	8A-17	SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, HEADLAMP	8L-22
SPROCKETS - INSPECTION, TIMING BELT/CHAIN	9-152	STRIP - INSTALLATION, CHECK	23-24, 23-33	SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, HEADLAMP LEVELING	8L-20
SPROCKETS - INSTALLATION, TIMING BELT/CHAIN	9-152, 9-61	STRIP - INSTALLATION, ENGINE TO BODY GROUND	8A-18	SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, HOOD AJAR	8Q-9
SPROCKETS - REMOVAL, TIMING BELT/CHAIN	9-149, 9-60	STRIP - REMOVAL, EXHAUST-TO-BODY GROUND	8A-18	SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, HORN	8H-5
SQUEAK & RATTLE - STANDARD PROCEDURE, BUZZ	23-10	STRIP - REMOVAL, HOOD AJAR SWITCH	8Q-10	SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, IGNITION	19-12
STABILIZER BAR - DESCRIPTION	2-14,2-21	STRIP - REMOVAL, LATCH	23-20, 23-30, 23-38	SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, KEY-IN IGNITION	19-13
STABILIZER BAR - INSTALLATION	2-14,2-21	STRIKER - INSTALLATION, FLIP-UP GLASS LATCH	23-17	SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, LEFT MULTI-FUNCTION	8L-26
STABILIZER BAR - OPERATION	2-14,2-21	STRIKER - INSTALLATION, GLOVE BOX LATCH	23-55	SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, LIFTGATE AJAR	8L-40
STABILIZER BAR - REMOVAL	2-14,2-21	STRIKER - INSTALLATION, HOOD AJAR SWITCH	8Q-10	SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, LUMBAR CONTROL	8N-24
STANDARD PEDAL - DESCRIPTION	5-24	STRIKER - REMOVAL, FLIP-UP GLASS LATCH	23-17	SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, MEMORY SET	8N-27
STARTER - TORQUE	8F-36	STRIKER - REMOVAL, GLOVE BOX LATCH	23-55	SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, OVERDRIVE	21-259
STARTER MOTOR - DESCRIPTION	8F-36	STRIKER - REMOVAL, HOOD AJAR SWITCH	8Q-10	SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, OVERDRIVE OFF	21-89
STARTER MOTOR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8F-37	STRIKER - REMOVAL, LATCH	23-19, 23-30, 23-38	SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, PASSENGER HEATED SEAT	8G-15
STARTER MOTOR - INSTALLATION	8F-39	STRUCTURAL ADHESIVE LOCATIONS - SPECIFICATIONS	23-153	SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, PASSENGER SEAT	8N-28
STARTER MOTOR - OPERATION	8F-37	STRUCTURAL COVER - DESCRIPTION	9-125	SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, POWER LOCK	8N-8
STARTER MOTOR - REMOVAL	8F-38	STRUCTURAL COVER - INSTALLATION	9-125	SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, POWER MIRROR	8N-15
STARTER MOTOR, GAS POWERED	8F-36	STRUCTURAL COVER - OPERATION	9-125	SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, POWER WINDOW	8N-37
STARTER MOTOR RELAY - DESCRIPTION	8F-39	STRUCTURAL COVER - REMOVAL	9-125	SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, REAR FOG LAMP	8L-32
STARTER MOTOR RELAY - INSTALLATION	8F-40	STRUCTURAL DUCT - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT PANEL	23-57	SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER	8G-6
STARTER MOTOR RELAY - OPERATION	8F-39	STRUCTURAL DUCT - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT PANEL	23-57	SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, RED BRAKE WARN INDICATOR	5-8
STARTER MOTOR RELAY - REMOVAL	8F-40	STRUCTURAL SUPPORT - INSTALLATION	9-50	SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, RIGHT MULTI-FUNCTION	8R-21
STARTER RELAY - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8F-39	STRUCTURAL SUPPORT - REMOVAL	9-50	SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, SEAT BELT	8O-42
STARTING - DESCRIPTION	8F-30	STUB SHAFT HOUSING - INSTALLATION	19-26	SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, WASHER FLUID LEVEL	8R-26
STARTING - OPERATION	8F-31	STUB SHAFT HOUSING - REMOVAL	19-26	SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, BRAKE LAMP	8L-7
STARTING - STANDARD PROCEDURE, JUMP	0-14	STUDS - INSTALLATION	22-12	SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, DOOR AJAR	8L-40
STARTING SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8F-31	STUDS - REMOVAL	22-12	SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, DOOR CYLINDER LOCK	8Q-8
STATE DISPLAY TEST MODE - DESCRIPTION	25-1	SUN VISOR - INSTALLATION	23-94	SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, DRIVER HEATED SEAT	8G-11
STEERING COLUMN BRACKET - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT PANEL	23-68	SUN VISOR - REMOVAL	23-94	SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, DRIVER SEAT	8N-22
STEERING COLUMN BRACKET - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT PANEL	23-68	SUNROOF - DESCRIPTION	23-111	SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, HEADLAMP	8L-22
STEERING COLUMN OPENING COVER - INSTALLATION	23-72	SUNROOF - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	23-111	SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, HEADLAMP LEVELING	8L-20
STEERING COLUMN OPENING COVER - REMOVAL	23-71	SUNSHADE - INSTALLATION	23-118	SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, HOOD AJAR	8Q-9
STEERING COLUMN, SPECIAL TOOLS	19-12	SUNSHADE - REMOVAL	23-118	SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, HORN	8H-6
STEERING COLUMN SUPPORT BRACKET - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT PANEL	23-69	SUNSHADE - SLIDE BLOCK AND SPRING - INSTALLATION	23-119		
STEERING COLUMN SUPPORT BRACKET - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT PANEL	23-69	SUNSHADE - SLIDE BLOCK AND SPRING - REMOVAL	23-119		
STEERING FLOW AND PRESSURE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	19-4	SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT DEPLOYMENT - STANDARD PROCEDURE, SERVICE AFTER A SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	80-7		
STEERING FLUID - DESCRIPTION, POWER	0-6	SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	80-6		
STEERING GEAR, ADJUSTMENTS	19-18	SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINTS - STANDARD PROCEDURE, HANDLING NON-DEPLOYED	80-6		
STEERING GEAR, SPECIAL TOOLS - POWER	19-20	SUPPLIES - DESCRIPTION, 5 VOLT	8E-15		
STEERING GEAR, SPECIFICATIONS - POWER	19-19	SUPPLIES - OPERATION, 5 VOLT	8E-16		
		SUPPORT - INSTALLATION, STRUCTURAL	9-50		
		SUPPORT - REMOVAL, STRUCTURAL	9-50		
		SUPPORT BRACKET - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT PANEL STEERING COLUMN	23-69		

Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page
SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, IGNITION	19-12	SWITCH - OPERATION, POWER MIRROR	8N-15	TAIL LAMP - REMOVAL, EXHAUSTER	23-42
SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, LEFT MULTI - FUNCTION	8L-27	SWITCH - OPERATION, POWER WINDOW	8N-37	TAILPIPE - DESCRIPTION	11-13
SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, MEMORY	8N-27	SWITCH - OPERATION, REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER	8G-7	TAILPIPE - OPERATION	11-13
SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, PARK/NEUTRAL POSITION	21-111	SWITCH - OPERATION, RED BRAKE WARN INDICATOR	5-8	TANK - DESCRIPTION, FUEL	14-14
SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, PASSENGER HEATED SEAT	8G-16	SWITCH - OPERATION, RIGHT MULTI-FUNCTION	8R-22	TANK - INSTALLATION, FUEL	14-19
SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, PASSENGER SEAT	8N-29	SWITCH - OPERATION, SEAT BELT	8O-43	TANK - OPERATION, FUEL	14-14
SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, POWER LUMBAR	8N-25	SWITCH - OPERATION, WASHER FLUID LEVEL	8R-26	TANK - REMOVAL, FUEL	14-14
SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, POWER WINDOW	8N-38	SWITCH - REMOVAL	8P-7	TANK SKID PLATE - DESCRIPTION, FUEL	13-8
SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, REAR FOG LAMP	8L-32	SWITCH - REMOVAL, ADJUSTABLE PEDAL	5-8	TASK MANAGER - DESCRIPTION	25-2
SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER	8G-7	SWITCH - REMOVAL, BLOWER MOTOR	24-29	TASK MANAGER - OPERATION	25-6
SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, RIGHT MULTI-FUNCTION	8R-23	SWITCH - REMOVAL, BRAKE FLUID LEVEL	5-8	TCM QUICK LEARN - STANDARD PROCEDURE	8E-23
SWITCH - INSTALLATION	8P-7	SWITCH - REMOVAL, BRAKE LAMP	8L-8	TEMP INDICATOR - DESCRIPTION, TRANS	8J-33
SWITCH - INSTALLATION, ADJUSTABLE PEDAL	5-8	SWITCH - REMOVAL, DOOR CYLINDER LOCK	8Q-8	TEMP INDICATOR - OPERATION, TRANS	8J-33
SWITCH - INSTALLATION, BRAKE FLUID LEVEL	5-8	SWITCH - REMOVAL, DRIVER HEATED SEAT	8G-13	TEMP SENSOR - DESCRIPTION, ENGINE COOLANT	7-34
SWITCH - INSTALLATION, BRAKE LAMP	8L-8	SWITCH - REMOVAL, DRIVER SEAT	8N-23	TEMP SENSOR - OPERATION, ENGINE COOLANT	7-34
SWITCH - INSTALLATION, DOOR CYLINDER LOCK	8Q-8	SWITCH - REMOVAL, FLIP-UP GLASS	23-17	TEMPERATURE CONTROL SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, BLOWER MOTOR SWITCH-MANUAL	24-29
SWITCH - INSTALLATION, DRIVER HEATED SEAT	8G-13	SWITCH - REMOVAL, HEADLAMP LEVELING	8L-21	TEMPERATURE GAUGE - DESCRIPTION, ENGINE	8J-20
SWITCH - INSTALLATION, DRIVER SEAT	8N-23	SWITCH - REMOVAL, HOOD AJAR	8Q-10	TEMPERATURE GAUGE - OPERATION, ENGINE	8J-20
SWITCH - INSTALLATION, FLIP-UP GLASS	23-17	SWITCH - REMOVAL, HORN	8H-6	TEMPERATURE SENSOR - DESCRIPTION, AMBIENT	8M-13
SWITCH - INSTALLATION, HEADLAMP LEVELING	8L-21	SWITCH - REMOVAL, LEFT MULTI-FUNCTION	8L-29	TEMPERATURE SENSOR - DESCRIPTION, BATTERY	8F-27
SWITCH - INSTALLATION, HOOD AJAR	8Q-10	SWITCH - REMOVAL, LUMBAR CONTROL	8N-25	TEMPERATURE SENSOR - DESCRIPTION, IN-CAR	24-30
SWITCH - INSTALLATION, HORN	8H-7	SWITCH - REMOVAL, MEMORY SET	8N-28	TEMPERATURE SENSOR - DESCRIPTION, INTAKE AIR	14-33
SWITCH - INSTALLATION, LEFT MULTI-FUNCTION	8L-30	SWITCH - REMOVAL, PARK/NEUTRAL POSITION	21-112	TEMPERATURE SENSOR - DESCRIPTION, TRANSMISSION	21-136,21-276
SWITCH - INSTALLATION, LUMBAR CONTROL	8N-26	SWITCH - REMOVAL, PASSENGER HEATED SEAT	8G-17	TEMPERATURE SENSOR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, AMBIENT	8M-14
SWITCH - INSTALLATION, MEMORY SET	8N-28	SWITCH - REMOVAL, PASSENGER SEAT	8N-30	TEMPERATURE SENSOR - INSTALLATION, BATTERY	8F-27
SWITCH - INSTALLATION, PARK/NEUTRAL POSITION	21-112	SWITCH - REMOVAL, POWER WINDOW	8N-38	TEMPERATURE SENSOR - INSTALLATION, EVAPORATOR	24-37
SWITCH - INSTALLATION, PASSENGER HEATED SEAT	8G-17	SWITCH - REMOVAL, REAR FOG LAMP	8L-32	TEMPERATURE SENSOR - OPERATION, AMBIENT	8M-13
SWITCH - INSTALLATION, PASSENGER SEAT	8N-30	SWITCH - REMOVAL, REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER	8G-7	TEMPERATURE SENSOR - OPERATION, BATTERY	8F-27
SWITCH - INSTALLATION, POWER WINDOW	8N-39	SWITCH - REMOVAL, RIGHT MULTI-FUNCTION	8R-25	TEMPERATURE SENSOR - OPERATION, EVAPORATOR	24-36
SWITCH - INSTALLATION, RIGHT MULTI-FUNCTION	8R-25	SWITCH - REMOVAL, WASHER FLUID LEVEL	8R-27	TEMPERATURE SENSOR - OPERATION, IN-CAR	24-30
SWITCH - INSTALLATION, WASHER FLUID LEVEL	8R-27	SWITCH BRACKET - INSTALLATION, HOOD AJAR	8Q-10	TEMPERATURE SENSOR - OPERATION, INTAKE AIR	14-33
SWITCH - OPERATION	8P-6	SWITCH BRACKET - REMOVAL, HOOD AJAR	8Q-10	TEMPERATURE SENSOR - OPERATION, TRANSMISSION	21-137,21-276
SWITCH - OPERATION, BLOWER MOTOR	24-29	SWITCH, DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING - KEY-IN IGNITION	19-14	TEMPERATURE SENSOR - REMOVAL, BATTERY	8F-27
SWITCH - OPERATION, BRAKE LAMP	8L-7	SWITCH INSTALLATION, INSTALLATION - IGNITION	19-13	TEMPERATURE SENSOR - REMOVAL, EVAPORATOR	24-36
SWITCH - OPERATION, DOOR AJAR	8L-40	SWITCH MOUNTING HOUSING - INSTALLATION, MULTI-FUNCTION	8L-31	TEMPERATURE SENSOR - REMOVAL, IN-CAR	24-30
SWITCH - OPERATION, DOOR CYLINDER LOCK	8N-7	SWITCH MOUNTING HOUSING - REMOVAL, MULTI-FUNCTION	8L-29	TEMPERATURE SENSOR CIRCUIT - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, AMBIENT	8M-14
SWITCH - OPERATION, DOOR CYLINDER LOCK	8Q-8	SWITCH REMOVAL, REMOVAL - IGNITION	19-13	TEMPORARY TIRE - DESCRIPTION, SPARE	22-11
SWITCH - OPERATION, DRIVER HEATED SEAT	8G-11	SWITCH STRIKER - INSTALLATION, HOOD AJAR	8Q-10	TENSION TEST - STANDARD PROCEDURE, VALVE SPRING	9-28
SWITCH - OPERATION, DRIVER SEAT	8N-21	SWITCH STRIKER - REMOVAL, HOOD AJAR	8Q-10	TENSIONER - DESCRIPTION, SEAT BELT	8O-43
SWITCH - OPERATION, FLIP UP GLASS AJAR	8L-40	SWITCH VALVE - DESCRIPTION, SOLENOID	21-268	TENSIONER - OPERATION, SEAT BELT	8O-43
SWITCH - OPERATION, HEADLAMP	8L-22	SWITCH VALVE - OPERATION, SOLENOID	21-268	TERMINAL - INSTALLATION	8W-01-14
SWITCH - OPERATION, HEADLAMP LEVELING	8L-20	SWITCHES - DESCRIPTION, REMOTE	8A-19	TERMINAL - REMOVAL	8W-01-14
SWITCH - OPERATION, HOOD AJAR	8Q-9	SWITCHES - INSTALLATION, REMOTE	8A-21	TEST - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, ENABLING CONDITIONS TO RUN EVAP LEAK DETECTION	25-19
SWITCH - OPERATION, HORN	8H-6	SWITCHES - OPERATION, REMOTE	8A-19	TEST - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, HYDRAULIC PRESSURE	21-12,21-183
SWITCH - OPERATION, KEY-IN IGNITION	19-14	SWITCHES - REMOVAL, REMOTE	8A-20	TEST - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, ROAD	8P-2
SWITCH - OPERATION, LEFT MULTI-FUNCTION	8L-26	SWITCH-MANUAL TEMPERATURE CONTROL SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, BLOWER MOTOR	24-29	TEST - STANDARD PROCEDURE, BUILT-IN INDICATOR	8F-11
SWITCH - OPERATION, LIFTGATE AJAR	8L-40	SYMBOLS - DESCRIPTION, INTERNATIONAL	Intro.-6	TEST - STANDARD PROCEDURE, IGNITION-OFF DRAW	8F-13
SWITCH - OPERATION, LUMBAR CONTROL	8N-24	SYMBOLS - DESCRIPTION, INTERNATIONAL	0-1	TEST - STANDARD PROCEDURE, OPEN-CIRCUIT VOLTAGE	8F-12
SWITCH - OPERATION, MEMORY SET	8N-27	TABLE, SPECIFICATIONS - A/C APPLICATION	24-7	TEST - STANDARD PROCEDURE, TIRE PRESSURE SYSTEM	8M-11
SWITCH - OPERATION, OVERDRIVE	21-259	TACHOMETER - DESCRIPTION	8J-32	TEST - STANDARD PROCEDURE, VALVE SPRING TENSION	9-28
SWITCH - OPERATION, OVERDRIVE OFF	21-89	TACHOMETER - OPERATION	8J-32		
SWITCH - OPERATION, PASSENGER HEATED SEAT	8G-16	TAIL LAMP - DESCRIPTION	8L-35		
SWITCH - OPERATION, PASSENGER SEAT	8N-28	TAIL LAMP - INSTALLATION, EXHAUSTER	23-42		
SWITCH - OPERATION, POWER LOCK	8N-8	TAIL LAMP - OPERATION	8L-35		

Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page
TEST - STANDARD PROCEDURE, VERIFICATION	80-9	TIRES, SPECIFICATIONS	22-10	TRANSCIVER MODULE - DESCRIPTION, INTRUSION	80-11
TEST MODE - DESCRIPTION, CIRCUIT ACTUATION	25-1	TIRE/VEHICLE LEAD - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	22-8	TRANSCIVER MODULE - INSTALLATION, INTRUSION	80-12
TEST MODE - DESCRIPTION, STATE DISPLAY	25-1	TOE POSITION - STANDARD PROCEDURE	2-4	TRANSCIVER MODULE - OPERATION, INTRUSION	80-11
TESTER - STANDARD PROCEDURE, USING MICRO 420 BATTERY	8F-10	TOOL - ADJUSTMENT, WITH ADJUSTING	5-41	TRANSCIVER MODULE - REMOVAL, INTRUSION	80-12
THEFT SECURITY SYSTEM - DESCRIPTION, VEHICLE	80-1	TOOLS - 4.7L ENGINE, SPECIAL	9-82	TRANSDUCER - DESCRIPTION, A/C PRESSURE	24-26
THEFT SECURITY SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, VEHICLE	80-4	TOOLS - AUDIO SYSTEMS, SPECIAL	8A-5	TRANSDUCER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, A/C PRESSURE	24-26
THEFT SECURITY SYSTEM - OPERATION, VEHICLE	80-2	TOOLS - BASE BRAKES, SPECIAL	5-8	TRANSDUCER - INSTALLATION, A/C PRESSURE	24-27
THERMOSTAT - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	7-36	TOOLS - BATTERY SYSTEM SPECIAL TOOLS, SPECIAL	8F-7	TRANSDUCER - OPERATION, A/C PRESSURE	24-26
THREAD REPAIR - STANDARD PROCEDURE, ALUMINUM	21-185,21-28	TOOLS - BODY, SPECIAL	23-13	TRANSDUCER - REMOVAL, A/C PRESSURE	24-27
THREADED HOLE REPAIR - DESCRIPTION	Intro.-6	TOOLS - COOLING, SPECIAL	7-16	TRANSFER CASE - NV147 - ASSEMBLY	21-291
THREADS - STANDARD PROCEDURE, REPAIR DAMAGED OR WORN	9-10,9-71	TOOLS - FRONT SUSPENSION, SPECIAL	2-8	TRANSFER CASE - NV147 - CLEANING	21-290
THROTTLE BODY - DESCRIPTION	14-41	TOOLS - FUEL SYSTEM, SPECIAL	14-4	TRANSFER CASE - NV147 - DESCRIPTION	0-5
THROTTLE BODY - OPERATION	14-41	TOOLS - OVERHEAD CONSOLE SPECIAL TOOLS, SPECIAL	8M-7	TRANSFER CASE - NV147 - DESCRIPTION	21-284
THROTTLE POSITION SENSOR - DESCRIPTION	14-45	TOOLS - POWER DISTRIBUTION SYSTEMS, SPECIAL	8W-97-2	TRANSFER CASE - NV147 - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	21-285
THROTTLE POSITION SENSOR - OPERATION	14-45	TOOLS - POWER STEERING GEAR, SPECIAL	19-20	TRANSFER CASE - NV147 - DISASSEMBLY	21-286
THROTTLE VALVE CABLE - ADJUSTMENTS, TRANSMISSION	21-129	TOOLS - POWER STEERING PUMP, SPECIAL	19-38	TRANSFER CASE - NV147 - INSPECTION	21-290
THROTTLE VALVE CABLE - DESCRIPTION	21-128	TOOLS - RE TRANSMISSIONS, SPECIAL	21-58	TRANSFER CASE - NV147 - INSTALLATION	21-298
TIE ROD END - DESCRIPTION	19-31	TOOLS - REAR SUSPENSION, SPECIAL	2-19	TRANSFER CASE - NV147 - OPERATION	21-285
TIE ROD END - INSTALLATION	19-31	TOOLS - RFE TRANSMISSION, SPECIAL	21-225	TRANSFER CASE - NV147 - REMOVAL	21-286
TIE ROD END - OPERATION	19-31	TOOLS - STEERING COLUMN, SPECIAL	19-12	TRANSFER CASE - NV242 - ASSEMBLY	21-319
TIE ROD END - REMOVAL	19-31	TOOLS - STEERING LINKAGE, SPECIAL	19-29	TRANSFER CASE - NV242 - CLEANING	21-316
TIMING - ADJUSTMENT	23-118	TOOLS - WIRING/TERMINAL, SPECIAL	8W-01-10	TRANSFER CASE - NV242 - DESCRIPTION	0-5
TIMING - VERIFICATION - STANDARD PROCEDURE, ENGINE	9-144	TOOLS, FRONT AXLE - 186FBI - SPECIAL	3-30	TRANSFER CASE - NV242 - DESCRIPTION	21-303
TIMING BELT / CHAIN COVER(S) - INSTALLATION	9-148,9-59	TOOLS, PROPELLER SHAFT - SPECIAL	3-6	TRANSFER CASE - NV242 - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	21-304
TIMING BELT / CHAIN COVER(S) - REMOVAL	9-147,9-59	TOOLS, REAR AXLE - 198RBI - SPECIAL	3-62	TRANSFER CASE - NV242 - DISASSEMBLY	21-305
TIMING BELT/CHAIN AND SPROCKETS - INSPECTION	9-152	TOOLS, REAR AXLE - 226RBA - SPECIAL	3-95	TRANSFER CASE - NV242 - INSPECTION	21-316
TIMING BELT/CHAIN AND SPROCKETS - INSTALLATION	9-152,9-61	TOOLS, SPECIAL TOOLS - BATTERY SYSTEM SPECIAL	8F-7	TRANSFER CASE - NV242 - INSTALLATION	21-331
TIMING BELT/CHAIN AND SPROCKETS - REMOVAL	9-149,9-60	TOOLS, SPECIAL TOOLS - OVERHEAD CONSOLE SPECIAL	8M-7	TRANSFER CASE - NV242 - OPERATION	21-304
TIMING CHAIN WEAR - STANDARD PROCEDURE, MEASURING	9-146	TOOLS, SPECIFICATIONS - SPECIAL	8F-27	TRANSFER CASE - NV242 - REMOVAL	21-305
TIMING DRIVE SYSTEM - DESCRIPTION	9-143	TOP COVER - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT PANEL	23-58	TRANSFER CASE - NV247 - ASSEMBLY	21-349
TIMING DRIVE SYSTEM - OPERATION	9-143	TOP COVER - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT PANEL	23-57	TRANSFER CASE - NV247 - CLEANING	21-348
TIMING, SPECIFICATIONS - IGNITION	8I-3	TOP PAD - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT PANEL	23-60	TRANSFER CASE - NV247 - DESCRIPTION	0-5
TIRE - DESCRIPTION, FULL SIZE, SPARE WHEEL WITH MATCHING	22-11	TOP PAD - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT PANEL	23-58	TRANSFER CASE - NV247 - DESCRIPTION	21-339
TIRE - DESCRIPTION, SPARE / TEMPORARY	22-11	TOUCH-UP - DESCRIPTION, PAINT	23-97	TRANSFER CASE - NV247 - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	21-340
TIRE AND WHEEL BALANCE - STANDARD PROCEDURE	22-2	TOUCH-UP - STANDARD PROCEDURE, PAINT	23-97	TRANSFER CASE - NV247 - DISASSEMBLY	21-342
TIRE AND WHEEL RUNOUT - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	22-1	TOW HOOK - INSTALLATION, FRONT	13-8	TRANSFER CASE - NV247 - INSPECTION	21-348
TIRE INFLATION PRESSURES - DESCRIPTION	22-6	TOW HOOK - INSTALLATION, REAR	13-8	TRANSFER CASE - NV247 - INSTALLATION	21-359
TIRE NOISE OR VIBRATION - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	22-8	TOW HOOK - REMOVAL, FRONT	13-8	TRANSFER CASE - NV247 - OPERATION	21-340
TIRE PRESSURE FOR HIGH SPEED - DESCRIPTION	22-7	TOW HOOKS - REMOVAL, REAR	13-8	TRANSFER CASE - NV247 - REMOVAL	21-341
TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM - DESCRIPTION	22-13	TOW HOOKS - DESCRIPTION, EMERGENCY	0-15	TRANSFER CASE, NV147	21-299
TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	22-13	TOWING RECOMMENDATIONS - STANDARD PROCEDURE	0-16	TRANSFER CASE, NV242	21-332
TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM - OPERATION	22-13	TRACK - DESCRIPTION, POWER SEAT	8N-32	TRANSFER CASE, NV247	21-360
TIRE PRESSURE SENSOR RETRAIN - STANDARD PROCEDURE	22-14	TRACK - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, POWER SEAT	8N-33	TRANSFER CASE SKID PLATE - INSTALLATION	13-9
TIRE PRESSURE SENSOR/TRANSMITTER - INSTALLATION	22-15	TRACK - OPERATION, POWER SEAT	8N-33	TRANSFER CASE SKID PLATE - REMOVAL	13-9
TIRE PRESSURE SENSOR/TRANSMITTER - REMOVAL	22-14	TRACK & RECLINER ASSEMBLY - INSTALLATION, SEAT	23-102	TRANSMISSION - 42RE - DESCRIPTION, AUTOMATIC	21-3
TIRE PRESSURE SYSTEM TEST - STANDARD PROCEDURE	8M-11	TRACK & RECLINER ASSEMBLY - REMOVAL, SEAT	23-102	TRANSMISSION - 42RE - OPERATION, AUTOMATIC	21-5
TIRE ROTATION - STANDARD PROCEDURE	22-5	TRACK ADJUSTER - INSTALLATION, SEAT	23-103	TRANSMISSION - 545RFE - DESCRIPTION, AUTOMATIC	21-180
TIRE WEAR PATTERNS - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	22-8	TRACK ADJUSTER - REMOVAL, SEAT	23-102	TRANSMISSION - 545RFE - OPERATION, AUTOMATIC	21-181
TIRES - DESCRIPTION	22-5	TRACK BAR - DESCRIPTION	2-14	TRANSMISSION - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, AUTOMATIC	21-11,21-181
TIRES - DESCRIPTION, RADIAL-PLY	22-6	TRACK BAR - INSTALLATION	2-15	TRANSMISSION CLUTCH AND BAND OPERATION - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, AIR CHECKING	21-15
TIRES - DESCRIPTION, REPLACEMENT	22-7	TRACK BAR - OPERATION	2-14	TRANSMISSION CLUTCH OPERATION - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, AIR CHECKING	21-184
		TRACK BAR - REMOVAL	2-14	TRANSMISSION CONTROL MODULE - DESCRIPTION	8E-20
		TRAC-LOK - ASSEMBLY, DIFFERENTIAL	3-111		
		TRAC-LOK - DESCRIPTION, DIFFERENTIAL	3-108		
		TRAC-LOK - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, DIFFERENTIAL	3-108		
		TRAC-LOK - DISASSEMBLY, DIFFERENTIAL	3-109		
		TRAC-LOK - OPERATION, DIFFERENTIAL	3-108		
		TRAILER HITCH - INSTALLATION	13-9		
		TRAILER HITCH - REMOVAL	13-9		
		TRANS COOLER - DESCRIPTION	7-54		
		TRANS RANGE INDICATOR ILLUMINATION - DESCRIPTION	8L-42		
		TRANS TEMP INDICATOR - DESCRIPTION	8J-33		
		TRANS TEMP INDICATOR - OPERATION	8J-33		



Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page
TRANSMISSION CONTROL MODULE - OPERATION	8E-20	TRIM - REMOVAL, LIFTGATE OPENING UPPER	23-91	UNIVERSAL JOINTS - DISASSEMBLY, DOUBLE CARDAN	3-11
TRANSMISSION CONTROL RELAY - DESCRIPTION	21-274	TRIM BEZEL - DRIVER - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT PANEL	23-70	UNIVERSAL JOINTS - DISASSEMBLY, SINGLE CARDAN	3-10
TRANSMISSION CONTROL RELAY - OPERATION	21-274	TRIM BEZEL - DRIVER - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT PANEL	23-70	UNIVERSAL TRANSMITTER - DESCRIPTION	8M-12
TRANSMISSION FILL - STANDARD PROCEDURE	21-235,21-74	TRIM BEZEL - PASSENGER - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT PANEL	23-71	UNIVERSAL TRANSMITTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8M-12
TRANSMISSION FLUID - DESCRIPTION, AUTOMATIC	0-5	TRIM BEZEL - PASSENGER - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT PANEL	23-71	UNIVERSAL TRANSMITTER - OPERATION	8M-12
TRANSMISSION FLUID - NAG1 - DESCRIPTION, AUTOMATIC	0-5	TRIM PANEL - INSTALLATION	23-21,23-31,23-38	UP GLASS AJAR SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, FLIP	8L-39
TRANSMISSION FLUID - OPERATION, AUTOMATIC	0-6	TRIM PANEL - INSTALLATION, QUARTER	23-93	UP GLASS AJAR SWITCH - OPERATION, FLIP	8L-40
TRANSMISSION RANGE SENSOR - DESCRIPTION	21-274	TRIM PANEL - REMOVAL	23-21,23-31,23-38	UPPER - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT PANEL CENTER BEZEL	23-64
TRANSMISSION RANGE SENSOR - OPERATION	21-274	TRIM PANEL - REMOVAL, QUARTER	23-92	UPPER - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT PANEL CENTER BEZEL	23-63
TRANSMISSION SHIFT INTERLOCK - ADJUSTMENTS, BRAKE	21-231,21-66	TRIM/GRAB HANDLE - INSTALLATION, A-PILLAR	23-82	UPPER BALL JOINT - INSTALLATION	2-22
TRANSMISSION SHIFT INTERLOCK - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, BRAKE	21-230,21-65	TRIM/GRAB HANDLE - REMOVAL, A-PILLAR	23-82	UPPER BALL JOINT - REMOVAL	2-15,2-21
TRANSMISSION SHIFT INTERLOCK MECHANISM - DESCRIPTION, BRAKE	21-230,21-64	TRIP DEFINITION - DESCRIPTION	25-4	UPPER CONTROL ARM - DESCRIPTION	2-16,2-22
TRANSMISSION SHIFT INTERLOCK MECHANISM - OPERATION, BRAKE	21-230,21-65	TROUBLE CODES - DESCRIPTION, DIAGNOSTIC	25-2	UPPER CONTROL ARM - INSTALLATION	2-16,2-23
TRANSMISSION SOLENOID/TRS ASSEMBLY - DESCRIPTION	21-275	TUBE - INSTALLATION, DRAIN	23-115	UPPER CONTROL ARM - OPERATION	2-16,2-22
TRANSMISSION SOLENOID/TRS ASSEMBLY - INSTALLATION	21-276	TUBE - INSTALLATION, WATER PUMP INLET	7-52	UPPER CONTROL ARM - REMOVAL	2-16,2-22
TRANSMISSION SOLENOID/TRS ASSEMBLY - OPERATION	21-275	TUBE - REMOVAL, DRAIN	23-115	UPPER SUSPENSION ARM, BUSHINGS, AND BALL JOINT - DESCRIPTION	2-21
TRANSMISSION SOLENOID/TRS ASSEMBLY - REMOVAL	21-276	TUBE - REMOVAL, WATER PUMP INLET	7-52	UPPER SUSPENSION ARM, BUSHINGS, AND BALL JOINT - OPERATION	2-21
TRANSMISSION, SPECIAL TOOLS - RFE	21-225	TUBE AXLE - INSTALLATION, FRONT	3-16	UPPER TRIM - INSTALLATION, B-PILLAR	23-83
TRANSMISSION, SPECIFICATIONS	21-224,21-56	TUBE AXLE - REMOVAL, FRONT	3-16	UPPER TRIM - INSTALLATION, LIFTGATE OPENING	23-92
TRANSMISSION TEMPERATURE SENSOR - DESCRIPTION	21-136,21-276	TUNNEL BRACKET - INSTALLATION, INSTRUMENT PANEL CENTER FLOOR	23-65	UPPER TRIM - REMOVAL, B-PILLAR	23-83
TRANSMISSION TEMPERATURE SENSOR - OPERATION	21-137,21-276	TUNNEL BRACKET - REMOVAL, INSTRUMENT PANEL CENTER FLOOR	23-64	UPPER TRIM - REMOVAL, LIFTGATE OPENING	23-91
TRANSMISSION THROTTLE VALVE CABLE - ADJUSTMENTS	21-129	TURBO DIESEL - INSTALLATION, 2.7L	24-62,24-65,24-67,24-69	USAGE - DESCRIPTION, FASTENER	Intro-6
TRANSMISSIONS, SPECIAL TOOLS - RE	21-58	TURBO DIESEL - REMOVAL, 2.7L	24-60,24-64,24-67,24-68	USE WIRING DIAGRAMS - DESCRIPTION, HOW TO	8W-01-1
TRANSMITTER - DESCRIPTION, REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY	8N-9	TURN SIGNAL & HAZARD WARNING SYSTEM - DESCRIPTION	8L-2	USING MICRO 420 BATTERY TESTER - STANDARD PROCEDURE	8F-10
TRANSMITTER - DESCRIPTION, UNIVERSAL	8M-12	TURN SIGNAL & HAZARD WARNING SYSTEM - OPERATION	8L-3	V-8 ENGINE - ENGINE FIRING ORDER, 4.7L	8I-2
TRANSMITTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY	8N-9	TURN SIGNAL & HAZARD WARNING SYSTEMS - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8L-4	V-8 ENGINE - IGNITION COIL RESISTANCE, 4.7L	8I-2
TRANSMITTER - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, UNIVERSAL	8M-12	TURN SIGNAL CANCEL CAM - DESCRIPTION	8L-36	VACUUM ACTUATOR - INSTALLATION, HEAT/DEFROST DOOR	24-34
TRANSMITTER - OPERATION, REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY	8N-9	TURN SIGNAL CANCEL CAM - OPERATION	8L-36	VACUUM ACTUATOR - INSTALLATION, PANEL/DEFROST DOOR	24-34
TRANSMITTER - OPERATION, UNIVERSAL	8M-12	TURN SIGNAL INDICATOR - DESCRIPTION	8J-34	VACUUM ACTUATOR - INSTALLATION, RECIRCULATION DOOR	24-35
TRANSMITTER BATTERIES - STANDARD PROCEDURE, RKE	8N-10	TURN SIGNAL INDICATOR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8J-34	VACUUM ACTUATOR - REMOVAL, HEAT/DEFROST DOOR	24-33
TRANSMITTER CODES - STANDARD PROCEDURE, ERASING	8M-12	TURN SIGNAL INDICATOR - OPERATION	8J-34	VACUUM ACTUATOR - REMOVAL, PANEL/DEFROST DOOR	24-33
TRANSMITTER CODES - STANDARD PROCEDURE, SETTING	8M-12	TURNING LOOP ADJUSTER - INSTALLATION, SEAT BELT	80-44	VACUUM ACTUATOR - REMOVAL, RECIRCULATION DOOR	24-34
TRANSMITTER PROGRAMMING - STANDARD PROCEDURE, RKE	8N-10	TURNING LOOP ADJUSTER - REMOVAL, SEAT BELT	80-44	VACUUM CHECK VALVE - DESCRIPTION	24-35
TRANSPONDER KEY - DESCRIPTION	8Q-15	U-JOINT - INSTALLATION, AXLE	3-36	VACUUM CHECK VALVE - INSTALLATION	24-36
TRANSPONDER KEY - OPERATION	8Q-15	U-JOINT - REMOVAL, AXLE	3-35	VACUUM CHECK VALVE - OPERATION	24-35
TRANSPONDER PROGRAMMING - STANDARD PROCEDURE, SENTRY KEY	8Q-6	U-JOINT FRONT - INSTALLATION, PROPELLER SHAFT	3-7	VACUUM CHECK VALVE - REMOVAL	24-36
TRAY - DESCRIPTION, BATTERY	8F-22	U-JOINT FRONT - REMOVAL, PROPELLER SHAFT	3-7	VACUUM LINES - DESCRIPTION	25-25
TRAY - OPERATION, BATTERY	8F-22	UNIT - ADJUSTMENTS, HEADLAMP	8L-23	VACUUM RESERVOIR - DESCRIPTION	24-36
TREAD WEAR INDICATORS - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	22-7	UNIT - ASSEMBLY, OVERDRIVE	21-97	VACUUM RESERVOIR - DESCRIPTION	8P-7
TRIM - INSTALLATION, B-PILLAR LOWER	23-83	UNIT - CLEANING, OVERDRIVE	21-97	VACUUM RESERVOIR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8P-8
TRIM - INSTALLATION, B-PILLAR UPPER	23-83	UNIT - DISASSEMBLY, OVERDRIVE	21-90	VACUUM RESERVOIR - INSTALLATION	24-36
TRIM - INSTALLATION, COWL	23-85	UNIT - INSPECTION, OVERDRIVE	21-97	VACUUM RESERVOIR - INSTALLATION	8P-8
TRIM - INSTALLATION, C-PILLAR	23-85	UNIT - INSTALLATION, FOG LAMP	8L-13	VACUUM RESERVOIR - OPERATION	24-36
TRIM - INSTALLATION, DOOR SILL	23-87	UNIT - INSTALLATION, HEADLAMP	8L-23	VACUUM RESERVOIR - OPERATION	8P-7
TRIM - INSTALLATION, D-PILLAR	23-88	UNIT - INSTALLATION, LICENSE PLATE LAMP	8L-25	VACUUM RESERVOIR - REMOVAL	24-36
TRIM - INSTALLATION, LIFTGATE OPENING UPPER	23-92	UNIT - INSTALLATION, OVERDRIVE	21-107	VACUUM RESERVOIR - REMOVAL	8P-8
TRIM - REMOVAL, B-PILLAR LOWER	23-83	UNIT - REMOVAL, FOG LAMP	8L-13	VACUUM SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	24-10
TRIM - REMOVAL, B-PILLAR UPPER	23-83	UNIT - REMOVAL, HEADLAMP	8L-22	VALUE - DESCRIPTION, LOAD	25-6
TRIM - REMOVAL, COWL	23-85	UNIT - REMOVAL, LICENSE PLATE LAMP	8L-25	VALVE - 4.7L - INSTALLATION, PCV	25-25
TRIM - REMOVAL, C-PILLAR	23-85	UNIT - REMOVAL, OVERDRIVE	21-89	VALVE - 4.7L - REMOVAL, PCV	25-25
TRIM - REMOVAL, DOOR SILL	23-87	UNIT / SENSOR - DESCRIPTION, FUEL LEVEL SENDING	14-6	VALVE - DESCRIPTION, A/C EXPANSION	24-66
TRIM - REMOVAL, D-PILLAR	23-88	UNIT / SENSOR - INSTALLATION, FUEL LEVEL SENDING	14-7	VALVE - DESCRIPTION, FRONT CHECK RELIEF	24-58
		UNIT / SENSOR - OPERATION, FUEL LEVEL SENDING	14-6	VALVE - DESCRIPTION, HIGH PRESSURE	24-58
		UNIT / SENSOR - REMOVAL, FUEL LEVEL SENDING	14-7	VALVE - DESCRIPTION, SOLENOID SWITCH	21-268
		UNIVERSAL JOINTS - ASSEMBLY, DOUBLE CARDAN	3-12	VALVE - DESCRIPTION, TORQUE CONVERTER DRAINBACK	21-136
		UNIVERSAL JOINTS - ASSEMBLY, SINGLE CARDAN	3-11	VALVE - DESCRIPTION, VACUUM CHECK	24-35
				VALVE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, A/C EXPANSION	24-66
				VALVE - INSTALLATION, A/C EXPANSION	24-67

Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page
VALVE - INSTALLATION, FRONT CHECK	8R-11	VERIFICATION - STANDARD		WARNINGS, WARNING - SAFETY	
VALVE - INSTALLATION, VACUUM CHECK	24-36	PROCEDURE, ENGINE TIMING	9-144	PRECAUTIONS	23-1
VALVE - OPERATION, A/C EXPANSION	24-66	VERIFICATION TEST - STANDARD		WASHER FLUID LEVEL SWITCH -	
VALVE - OPERATION, FRONT CHECK	8R-11	PROCEDURE	80-9	DESCRIPTION	8R-26
VALVE - OPERATION, HIGH PRESSURE		VIBRATION - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING,		WASHER FLUID LEVEL SWITCH -	
RELIEF	24-58	TIRE NOISE OR	22-8	INSTALLATION	8R-27
VALVE - OPERATION, SOLENOID SWITCH	21-268	VIBRATION DAMPER - INSTALLATION	9-124,	WASHER FLUID LEVEL SWITCH -	
VALVE - OPERATION, TORQUE		9-50		OPERATION	8R-26
CONVERTER DRAINBACK	21-136	VIBRATION DAMPER - REMOVAL	9-124,9-50	WASHER FLUID LEVEL SWITCH -	
VALVE - OPERATION, VACUUM CHECK	24-35	VIEW MIRROR - DESCRIPTION, OUTSIDE		REMOVAL	8R-27
VALVE - REMOVAL, A/C EXPANSION	24-66	REAR	8N-13	WASHER HOSES/TUBES - DESCRIPTION,	
VALVE - REMOVAL, FRONT CHECK	8R-11	VIEW MIRROR - DESCRIPTION, REAR	8N-12	FRONT	8R-12
VALVE - REMOVAL, VACUUM CHECK	24-36	VIEW MIRROR - INSTALLATION, SIDE	23-47	WASHER HOSES/TUBES - DESCRIPTION,	
VALVE - STANDARD PROCEDURE,		VIEW MIRROR - OPERATION, OUTSIDE		REAR	8R-40
TORQUE CONVERTER DRAINBACK	21-136	REAR	8N-13	WASHER HOSES/TUBES - OPERATION,	
VALVE BODY - ADJUSTMENTS	21-177	VIEW MIRROR - OPERATION, REAR	8N-13	FRONT	8R-12
VALVE BODY - ASSEMBLY	21-169,21-283	VIEW MIRROR - REMOVAL, REAR	23-94	WASHER HOSES/TUBES - OPERATION,	
VALVE BODY - CLEANING	21-168,21-281	VIEW MIRROR - REMOVAL, SIDE	23-46	REAR	8R-41
VALVE BODY - DESCRIPTION	21-137,21-277	VIEW MIRROR GLASS - INSTALLATION,		WASHER NOZZLE - DESCRIPTION,	
VALVE BODY - DISASSEMBLY	21-157,21-279	SIDE	23-46	FRONT	8R-12
VALVE BODY - INSPECTION	21-168,21-282	VIEW MIRROR GLASS - REMOVAL, SIDE	23-46	WASHER NOZZLE - DESCRIPTION, REAR	8R-41
VALVE BODY - INSTALLATION	21-176,21-283	VISCOUS CLUTCH - 4.0L -		WASHER NOZZLE - INSTALLATION,	
VALVE BODY - OPERATION	21-141,21-277	DESCRIPTION, FAN DRIVE	7-38	FRONT	8R-13
VALVE BODY - REMOVAL	21-156,21-278	VISCOUS CLUTCH - 4.0L - OPERATION,		WASHER NOZZLE - INSTALLATION,	
VALVE CABLE - ADJUSTMENTS,		FAN DRIVE	7-39	REAR	8R-42
TRANSMISSION THROTTLE	21-129	VISCOUS FAN DRIVE - DIAGNOSIS AND		WASHER NOZZLE - OPERATION, FRONT	8R-12
VALVE CABLE - DESCRIPTION,		TESTING	7-39	WASHER NOZZLE - OPERATION, REAR	8R-41
THROTTLE	21-128	VISCOUS HEATER - INSTALLATION	24-77	WASHER NOZZLE - REMOVAL, FRONT	8R-12
VALVE GUIDES - DESCRIPTION	9-86,9-98	VISCOUS HEATER - OPERATION	24-77	WASHER NOZZLE - REMOVAL, REAR	8R-42
VALVE SERVICE - STANDARD		VISCOUS HEATER - REMOVAL	24-77	WASHER PUMP/MOTOR - DESCRIPTION,	
PROCEDURE	9-24	VISCOUS HEATER CLUTCH -		FRONT	8R-13
VALVE SPRING TENSION TEST -		DESCRIPTION	24-77	WASHER PUMP/MOTOR - DESCRIPTION,	
STANDARD PROCEDURE	9-28	VISCOUS HEATER CLUTCH -		REAR	8R-42
VALVE SPRINGS - DESCRIPTION	9-109,9-28,	INSTALLATION	24-78	WASHER PUMP/MOTOR -	
9-98		VISCOUS HEATER CLUTCH - OPERATION	24-77	INSTALLATION, FRONT	8R-14
VALVE SPRINGS - INSTALLATION	9-29	VISCOUS HEATER CLUTCH - REMOVAL	24-78	WASHER PUMP/MOTOR -	
VALVE SPRINGS - REMOVAL	9-29	VISOR - INSTALLATION, SUN	23-94	INSTALLATION, REAR	8R-43
VALVE STEM SEALS - DESCRIPTION	9-109,9-28,	VISOR - REMOVAL, SUN	23-94	WASHER PUMP/MOTOR - OPERATION,	
9-98		VOLT SUPPLIES - DESCRIPTION, 5	8E-15	FRONT	8R-13
VALVE/PCV SYSTEM - 4.7L - DIAGNOSIS		VOLT SUPPLIES - OPERATION, 5	8E-16	WASHER PUMP/MOTOR - OPERATION,	
AND TESTING, PCV	25-23	VOLTAGE DROP - STANDARD		REAR	8R-43
VALVES & SEATS - DESCRIPTION,		PROCEDURE, TESTING FOR A	8W-01-10	WASHER PUMP/MOTOR - REMOVAL,	
INTAKE/EXHAUST	9-105,9-24,9-95	VOLTAGE GAUGE - DESCRIPTION	8J-35	FRONT	8R-14
VALVES & SEATS - INSTALLATION,		VOLTAGE GAUGE - OPERATION	8J-35	WASHER PUMP/MOTOR - REMOVAL,	
INTAKE/EXHAUST	9-107,9-26,9-96	VOLTAGE POTENTIAL - STANDARD		REAR	8R-43
VALVES & SEATS - REMOVAL,		PROCEDURE, TESTING OF	8W-01-9	WASHER RESERVOIR - DESCRIPTION	8R-28
INTAKE/EXHAUST	9-106,9-25,9-95	VOLTAGE REGULATOR - DESCRIPTION	8F-29	WASHER RESERVOIR - INSTALLATION	8R-29
VANITY LAMP - INSTALLATION	8L-42	VOLTAGE REGULATOR - OPERATION	8F-29	WASHER RESERVOIR - OPERATION	8R-28
VANITY LAMP - REMOVAL	8L-42	VOLTAGE TEST - STANDARD		WASHER RESERVOIR - REMOVAL	8R-28
VAPOR CANISTER - DESCRIPTION	25-25	PROCEDURE, OPEN-CIRCUIT	8F-12	WASHER SYSTEM - CLEANING, FRONT	
VAPOR CANISTER - INSTALLATION	25-26	VOLUME CHECK - STANDARD		WIPER	8R-9
VAPOR CANISTER - OPERATION	25-25	PROCEDURE, OIL PUMP	21-254	WASHER SYSTEM - CLEANING, REAR	
VAPOR CANISTER - REMOVAL	25-25	VTSS INDICATOR - DESCRIPTION	8Q-15	WIPER	8R-39
VARIATION ADJUSTMENT - STANDARD		VTSS INDICATOR - DIAGNOSIS AND		WASHER SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND	
PROCEDURE, COMPASS	8M-6	TESTING	8Q-16	TESTING, FRONT WIPER	8R-6
VARI-LOK - DESCRIPTION,		VTSS INDICATOR - OPERATION	8Q-15	WASHER SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND	
DIFFERENTIAL	3-113,3-43	WAIT-TO-START INDICATOR -		TESTING, REAR WIPER	8R-37
VARI-LOK - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING,		DESCRIPTION	8J-36	WASHER SYSTEM - INSPECTION, FRONT	
DIFFERENTIAL	3-113,3-43	WAIT-TO-START INDICATOR -		WIPER	8R-9
VARI-LOK - OPERATION, DIFFERENTIAL	3-113,	OPERATION	8J-36	WASHER SYSTEM - INSPECTION, REAR	
3-43		WARN INDICATOR SWITCH -		WIPER	8R-39
VEHICLE EMISSION CONTROL		DESCRIPTION, RED BRAKE	5-8	WATER LEAKS - DIAGNOSIS AND	
INFORMATION (VECI) - DESCRIPTION	Intro-3	WARN INDICATOR SWITCH -		TESTING	23-1
VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER -		OPERATION, RED BRAKE	5-8	WATER PUMP - 4.0L - CLEANING	7-49
DESCRIPTION	Intro-1	WARNING - SAFETY PRECAUTIONS AND		WATER PUMP - 4.0L - DESCRIPTION	7-48
VEHICLE INFO CENTER - DESCRIPTION,		WARNINGS	23-1	WATER PUMP - 4.0L - INSPECTION	7-50
ELECTRONIC	8M-7	WARNING LAMP - DIAGNOSIS AND		WATER PUMP - 4.0L - INSTALLATION	7-50
VEHICLE INFO CENTER - INSTALLATION,		TESTING, RED BRAKE	5-8	WATER PUMP - 4.0L - REMOVAL	7-48
ELECTRONIC	8M-11	WARNING, PLUMBING	24-53	WATER PUMP - 4.7L - DESCRIPTION	7-45
VEHICLE INFO CENTER - OPERATION,		WARNING, REAR	2-17	WATER PUMP - DIAGNOSIS AND	
ELECTRONIC	8M-9	WARNING SYSTEM - DESCRIPTION,		TESTING	7-47
VEHICLE INFO CENTER - REMOVAL,		CHIME	8B-1	WATER PUMP - OPERATION	7-46
ELECTRONIC	8M-11	WARNING SYSTEM - DESCRIPTION,		WATER PUMP BYPASS - DESCRIPTION	7-46
VEHICLE INFORMATION CENTER -		TURN SIGNAL & HAZARD	8L-2	WATER PUMP BYPASS - OPERATION	7-46
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING,		WARNING SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND		WATER PUMP INLET TUBE -	
ELECTRONIC	8M-10	TESTING, CHIME	8B-2	INSTALLATION	7-52
VEHICLE INFORMATION CENTER		WARNING SYSTEM - OPERATION,		WATER PUMP INLET TUBE - REMOVAL	7-52
PROGRAMMING - STANDARD		CHIME	8B-1	WATERDAM - INSTALLATION	23-31,23-39
PROCEDURE, ELECTRONIC	8M-2	WARNING SYSTEM - OPERATION, TURN		WATERDAM - REMOVAL	23-31,23-39
VEHICLE SAFETY CERTIFICATION LABEL		SIGNAL & HAZARD	8L-3	WATER-IN-FUEL INDICATOR -	
- DESCRIPTION	Intro-3	WARNING SYSTEMS - DIAGNOSIS AND		DESCRIPTION	8J-36
VEHICLE THEFT SECURITY SYSTEM -		TESTING, TURN SIGNAL & HAZARD	8L-4	WATER-IN-FUEL INDICATOR -	
DESCRIPTION	8Q-1	WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS -		OPERATION	8J-37
VEHICLE THEFT SECURITY SYSTEM -		STANDARD PROCEDURE, SERVICE	2-6	WEAR - STANDARD PROCEDURE,	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8Q-4	DESCRIPTION - SERVICE	19-7	MEASURING TIMING CHAIN	9-146
VEHICLE THEFT SECURITY SYSTEM -		WARNINGS, GENERAL	8W-01-7	WEAR INDICATORS - DIAGNOSIS AND	
OPERATION	8Q-2	WARNINGS, RESTRAINT SYSTEM	80-5	TESTING, TREAD	22-7

Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page	Description	Group-Page
WEAR PATTERNS - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, TIRE	22-8	WHEEL SPEED SENSOR - OPERATION, FRONT	5-44	WIPER & WASHER SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, REAR	8R-37
WEATHERSTRIP - INSTALLATION, COWL	23-121	WHEEL SPEED SENSOR - OPERATION, REAR	5-45	WIPER & WASHER SYSTEM - INSPECTION, FRONT	8R-9
WEATHERSTRIP - INSTALLATION, FDR OUTER BELT	23-122	WHEEL SPEED SENSOR - REMOVAL, FRONT	5-44	WIPER & WASHER SYSTEM - INSPECTION, REAR	8R-39
WEATHERSTRIP - INSTALLATION, FLIP-UP GLASS	23-122	WHEEL SPEED SENSOR - REMOVAL, REAR	5-45	WIPER ARM - DESCRIPTION, FRONT	8R-14
WEATHERSTRIP - INSTALLATION, FRONT DOOR	23-123	WHEEL WITH MATCHING TIRE - DESCRIPTION, FULL SIZE, SPARE	22-11	WIPER ARM - DESCRIPTION, REAR	8R-44
WEATHERSTRIP - INSTALLATION, FRONT DOOR GLASS RUN	23-121	WHEELS - DESCRIPTION	22-11	WIPER ARM - INSTALLATION, FRONT	8R-16
WEATHERSTRIP - INSTALLATION, FRONT DOOR INNER BELT	23-121	WIND DEFLECTOR - INSTALLATION	23-117	WIPER ARM - INSTALLATION, REAR	8R-45
WEATHERSTRIP - INSTALLATION, FRONT DOOR SECONDARY	23-122	WIND DEFLECTOR - REMOVAL	23-117	WIPER ARM - OPERATION, FRONT	8R-15
WEATHERSTRIP - INSTALLATION, LIFTGATE OPENING	23-124	WIND NOISE - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	23-2	WIPER ARM - OPERATION, REAR	8R-44
WEATHERSTRIP - INSTALLATION, RDR INNER BELT	23-124	WINDOW - INSTALLATION, QUARTER	23-108	WIPER ARM - REMOVAL, FRONT	8R-15
WEATHERSTRIP - INSTALLATION, RDR OUTER BELT	23-124	WINDOW - REMOVAL, QUARTER	23-108	WIPER ARM - REMOVAL, REAR	8R-44
WEATHERSTRIP - INSTALLATION, RDR SECONDARY	23-125	WINDOW DEFOGGER - DESCRIPTION, REAR	8G-1	WIPER ARM PARK RAMP - INSTALLATION	8R-49
WEATHERSTRIP - INSTALLATION, REAR DOOR	23-125	WINDOW DEFOGGER - OPERATION, REAR	8G-2	WIPER ARM PARK RAMP - REMOVAL	8R-49
WEATHERSTRIP - REMOVAL, COWL	23-121	WINDOW DEFOGGER GRID - DESCRIPTION, REAR	8G-3	WIPER BLADE - DESCRIPTION, FRONT	8R-16
WEATHERSTRIP - REMOVAL, FDR OUTER BELT	23-122	WINDOW DEFOGGER GRID - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, REAR	8G-3	WIPER BLADE - DESCRIPTION, REAR	8R-46
WEATHERSTRIP - REMOVAL, FLIP-UP GLASS	23-122	WINDOW DEFOGGER GRID - OPERATION, REAR	8G-3	WIPER BLADE - INSTALLATION, FRONT	8R-17
WEATHERSTRIP - REMOVAL, FRONT DOOR	23-123	WINDOW DEFOGGER RELAY - DESCRIPTION, REAR	8G-5	WIPER BLADE - INSTALLATION, REAR	8R-47
WEATHERSTRIP - REMOVAL, FRONT DOOR GLASS RUN	23-121	WINDOW DEFOGGER RELAY - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, REAR	8G-5	WIPER BLADE - OPERATION, FRONT	8R-16
WEATHERSTRIP - REMOVAL, FRONT DOOR INNER BELT	23-121	WINDOW DEFOGGER RELAY - INSTALLATION, REAR	8G-6	WIPER BLADE - OPERATION, REAR	8R-46
WEATHERSTRIP - REMOVAL, FRONT DOOR SECONDARY	23-122	WINDOW DEFOGGER RELAY - OPERATION, REAR	8G-5	WIPER BLADE - REMOVAL, FRONT	8R-17
WEATHERSTRIP - REMOVAL, LIFTGATE OPENING	23-124	WINDOW DEFOGGER RELAY - REMOVAL, REAR	8G-6	WIPER BLADE - REMOVAL, REAR	8R-46
WEATHERSTRIP - REMOVAL, RDR INNER BELT	23-124	WINDOW DEFOGGER SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, REAR	8G-6	WIPER HIGH/LOW RELAY - DESCRIPTION	8R-30
WEATHERSTRIP - REMOVAL, RDR OUTER BELT	23-124	WINDOW DEFOGGER SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, REAR	8G-7	WIPER HIGH/LOW RELAY - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8R-31
WEATHERSTRIP - REMOVAL, RDR SECONDARY	23-125	WINDOW DEFOGGER SWITCH - OPERATION, REAR	8G-7	WIPER HIGH/LOW RELAY - INSTALLATION	8R-31
WEATHERSTRIP - REMOVAL, REAR DOOR	23-125	WINDOW DEFOGGER SWITCH - REMOVAL, REAR	8G-7	WIPER HIGH/LOW RELAY - OPERATION	8R-30
WEATHERSTRIP / RETAINR - INSTALLATION, ROOF RAIL	23-126	WINDOW DEFOGGER SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, REAR	8G-2	WIPER HIGH/LOW RELAY - REMOVAL	8R-31
WEATHERSTRIP / RETAINR - REMOVAL, ROOF RAIL	23-126	WINDOW MOTOR - DESCRIPTION	8N-39	WIPER MODULE - DESCRIPTION, FRONT	8R-17
WELD LOCATIONS, SPECIFICATIONS	23-169	WINDOW MOTOR - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8N-39	WIPER MODULE - DESCRIPTION, REAR	8R-47
WHEEL - INSTALLATION, STEERING	19-16	WINDOW MOTOR - INSTALLATION	8N-40	WIPER MODULE - INSTALLATION, REAR	8R-18
WHEEL - REMOVAL, STEERING	19-15	WINDOW MOTOR - OPERATION	8N-39	WIPER MODULE - OPERATION, FRONT	8R-18
WHEEL ALIGNMENT - DESCRIPTION	2-3	WINDOW MOTOR - REMOVAL	8N-40	WIPER MODULE - OPERATION, REAR	8R-47
WHEEL ALIGNMENT - OPERATION	2-3	WINDOW REGULATOR - INSTALLATION	23-32, 23-39	WIPER MODULE - REMOVAL, FRONT	8R-18
WHEEL BALANCE - STANDARD PROCEDURE, TIRE	22-2	WINDOW REGULATOR - REMOVAL	23-32, 23-39	WIPER MODULE - REMOVAL, REAR	8R-48
WHEEL INSPECTION - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	22-11	WINDOW SWITCH - DESCRIPTION, POWER	8N-37	WIPER ON/OFF RELAY - DESCRIPTION	8R-32
WHEEL INSTALLATION - STANDARD PROCEDURE	22-5	WINDOW SWITCH - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, POWER	8N-38	WIPER ON/OFF RELAY - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8R-32
WHEEL REPLACEMENT - STANDARD PROCEDURE	22-11	WINDOW SWITCH - INSTALLATION, POWER	8N-39	WIPER ON/OFF RELAY - INSTALLATION	8R-33
WHEEL RUNOUT - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, TIRE	22-1	WINDOW SWITCH - OPERATION, POWER	8N-37	WIPER ON/OFF RELAY - OPERATION	8R-32
WHEEL SPEED SENSOR - DESCRIPTION, FRONT	5-44	WINDOW SWITCH - REMOVAL, POWER	8N-38	WIPER ON/OFF RELAY - REMOVAL	8R-33
WHEEL SPEED SENSOR - DESCRIPTION, REAR	5-45	WINDOWS - DESCRIPTION, POWER	8N-34	WIPERS/WASHERS - DESCRIPTION, FRONT	8R-2
WHEEL SPEED SENSOR - INSTALLATION, FRONT	5-44	WINDOWS - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, POWER	8N-35	WIPERS/WASHERS - DESCRIPTION, REAR	8R-34
WHEEL SPEED SENSOR - INSTALLATION, REAR	5-45	WINDOWS - OPERATION, POWER	8N-35	WIPERS/WASHERS - OPERATION, FRONT	8R-4
		WINDSHIELD - INSTALLATION	23-109	WIPERS/WASHERS - OPERATION, REAR	8R-36
		WINDSHIELD - REMOVAL	23-109	WIRE HARNESS CONNECTOR - DESCRIPTION, IOD	8W-97-15
		WIPER & WASHER SYSTEM - CLEANING, FRONT	8R-9	WIRE HARNESS CONNECTOR - OPERATION, IOD	8W-97-15
		WIPER & WASHER SYSTEM - CLEANING, REAR	8R-39	WIRE SPLICING - STANDARD PROCEDURE	8W-01-15
		WIPER & WASHER SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, FRONT	8R-6	WIRING DIAGRAMS - DESCRIPTION, HOW TO USE	8W-01-1
				WIRING HARNESS - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	8W-01-7
				WIRING/TERMINAL, SPECIAL TOOLS	8W-01-10
				WORN THREADS - STANDARD PROCEDURE, REPAIR DAMAGED OR	9-10, 9-71
				ZONE CONTROL SYSTEM - DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING, AUTOMATIC	24-18





# SERVICE MANUAL COMMENTS

What errors(s) have you found?

---

---

---

---

In order for us to assist you, please include as much details as possible when reporting an error

Comments / Suggestions

---

---

---

---

☐

Dealership Technician  
Dealer Code: \_\_\_\_\_

Retail Customer

☐

Manual Title, Year, Number and Page: \_\_\_\_\_

---

Your Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Address: \_\_\_\_\_

---

---

All comments become property of DaimlerChrysler and may be used without compensation.

(FOLD HERE)



**BUSINESS REPLY MAIL**

FIRST CLASS MAIL PERMIT NO. 124 CENTER LINE, MI

POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY ADDRESSEE

**DaimlerChrysler Corporation**  
**Dealer Technical Operations**  
**800 Chrysler Drive**  
**CIMS 486-02-76**  
**Auburn Hills, MI 48326-2757**

NO POSTAGE  
NECESSARY  
IF MAILED  
IN THE  
UNITED  
STATES



(FOLD HERE)